

IGNATAVICIUS • WORKMAN

MEDICAL- SURGICAL NURSING

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care

7th
Edition

ELSEVIER

<http://evolve.elsevier.com>

CONTENTS

UNIT I FOUNDATIONS FOR MEDICAL-SURGICAL NURSING

- 1 Introduction to Medical-Surgical Nursing, 1
- 2 Introduction to Complementary and Alternative Therapies, 8
- 3 Common Health Problems of Older Adults, 15
- 4 Cultural Aspects of Health and Illness, 30
- 5 Pain: The Fifth Vital Sign, 39
- 6 Genetic Concepts for Medical-Surgical Nursing, 64
- 7 Evidence-Based Practice in Medical-Surgical Nursing, 79
- 8 Rehabilitation Concepts for Chronic and Disabling Health Problems, 89
- 9 End-of-Life Care, 106

UNIT II CONCEPTS OF EMERGENCY CARE AND DISASTER PREPAREDNESS

- 10 Concepts of Emergency and Trauma Nursing, 121
- 11 Care of Patients with Common Environmental Emergencies, 136
- 12 Concepts of Emergency and Disaster Preparedness, 155

UNIT III MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

- 13 Assessment and Care of Patients with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances, 165
- 14 Assessment and Care of Patients with Acid-Base Imbalances, 196
- 15 Infusion Therapy, 210

UNIT IV MANAGEMENT OF PERIOPERATIVE PATIENTS

- 16 Care of Preoperative Patients, 239
- 17 Care of Intraoperative Patients, 263
- 18 Care of Postoperative Patients, 284

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: PROTECTION

UNIT V PROBLEMS OF PROTECTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

- 19 Inflammation and the Immune Response, 302
- 20 Care of Patients with Arthritis and Other Connective Tissue Diseases, 318
- 21 Care of Patients with HIV Disease and Other Immune Deficiencies, 357
- 22 Care of Patients with Immune Function Excess: Hypersensitivity (Allergy) and Autoimmunity, 383
- 23 Cancer Development, 396

- 24 Care of Patients with Cancer, 408
- 25 Care of Patients with Infection, 434

UNIT VI PROBLEMS OF PROTECTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS

- 26 Assessment of the Skin, Hair, and Nails, 451
- 27 Care of Patients with Skin Problems, 470
- 28 Care of Patients with Burns, 511

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: OXYGENATION AND TISSUE PERFUSION

UNIT VII PROBLEMS OF OXYGENATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

- 29 Assessment of the Respiratory System, 543
- 30 Care of Patients Requiring Oxygen Therapy or Tracheostomy, 562
- 31 Care of Patients with Noninfectious Upper Respiratory Problems, 580
- 32 Care of Patients with Noninfectious Lower Respiratory Problems, 600
- 33 Care of Patients with Infectious Respiratory Problems, 640
- 34 Care of Critically Ill Patients with Respiratory Problems, 662

UNIT VIII PROBLEMS OF CARDIAC OUTPUT AND TISSUE PERFUSION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

- 35 Assessment of the Cardiovascular System, 686
- 36 Care of Patients with Dysrhythmias, 711
- 37 Care of Patients with Cardiac Problems, 744
- 38 Care of Patients with Vascular Problems, 772
- 39 Care of Patients with Shock, 808
- 40 Care of Patients with Acute Coronary Syndromes, 828

UNIT IX PROBLEMS OF TISSUE PERFUSION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM

- 41 Assessment of the Hematologic System, 855
- 42 Care of Patients with Hematologic Problems, 869

MEDICAL- SURGICAL NURSING

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care

YOU'VE JUST PURCHASED MORE THAN A TEXTBOOK

ACTIVATE THE COMPLETE LEARNING EXPERIENCE
THAT COMES WITH YOUR BOOK BY REGISTERING AT
<http://evolve.elsevier.com/lggy/>

Once you register, you will have access to your
FREE STUDY TOOLS:

- **Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination**
Interactive NCLEX® Examination–style review questions, including prioritization and delegation and pharmacology questions, are divided by chapter to help you review and apply important content and study for the NCLEX® Examination.
- **Answer Guidelines for Decision-Making Challenges and NCLEX® Examination Challenges**
The Decision-Making Challenges and NCLEX Examination Challenges that appear throughout the text provide a safe and effective means of practicing the clinical reasoning and clinical decision-making skills you will need in the clinical setting. Suggested Answer Guidelines are provided on Evolve for these exercises, allowing you to gauge your mastery of essential content and your readiness for clinical practice.
- **Printable Expanded Key Points**
Downloadable, printable files provide an innovative way to review essential chapter content and study for exams. The Key Points include expanded point-by-point highlights from each chapter.
- **Interactive Case Studies**
Interactive Case Studies, including documentation questions, offer an opportunity to apply important concepts of nursing care to realistic medical-surgical scenarios. Compare your answers with an expert's response at the click of a button.
- **Additional Resources**
Audio Glossary, Concept Map Creator, Fluids & Electrolytes Tutorial, Health Assessment Image Collection, Video Clips, Audio Clips, Animations, Tips for Student Success, and more!



REGISTER TODAY!

MEDICAL- SURGICAL NURSING

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care

7th

Edition

Donna D. Ignatavicius, MS, RN, ANEF

Speaker and Curriculum Consultant for Academic Nursing Programs
Founder, Boot Camp for Nurse Educators®
President, DI Associates, Inc.
Placitas, New Mexico

M. Linda Workman, PhD, RN, FAAN

Senior Volunteer Faculty
College of Nursing
University of Cincinnati
Cincinnati, Ohio;
Formerly Gertrude Perkins Oliva Professor of Oncology
Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing
Case Western Reserve University
Cleveland, Ohio

ELSEVIER

MEDICAL-SURGICAL NURSING:

ISBN (single volume): 978-1-4377-2801-9

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE-

ISBN (2-volume set): 978-1-4377-2799-9

Copyright © 2013, 2010, 2006, 2002, 1999, 1995, 1991 by Saunders, an imprint of Elsevier Inc.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

"Nursing Diagnoses—Definitions and Classification 2012-2014. Copyright © 2011, 2009, 2007, 2005, 2003, 2001, 1998, 1996, 1994 by NANDA International. Used by arrangement with Blackwell Publishing Limited, a company of John Wiley and Sons, Inc. In order to make safe and effective judgments using NANDA-I nursing diagnoses it is essential that nurses refer to the definitions and defining characteristics of the diagnoses listed in the work."

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

With respect to any drug or pharmaceutical products identified, readers are advised to check the most current information provided (i) on procedures featured or (ii) by the manufacturer of each product to be administered, to verify the recommended dose or formula, the method and duration of administration, and contraindications. It is the responsibility of practitioners, relying on their own experience and knowledge of their patients, to make diagnoses, to determine dosages and the best treatment for each individual patient, and to take all appropriate safety precautions.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

International Standard Book Number (single volume): 978-1-4377-2801-9

International Standard Book Number (2-volume set): 978-1-4377-2799-9

Proudly sourced and uploaded by [StormRG]
Kickass Torrents | The Pirate Bay | ExtraTorrent

Executive Content Strategist: Lee Henderson

Senior Content Development Specialist: Rae L. Robertson

Publishing Services Manager: Deborah L. Vogel

Senior Project Manager: Jodi M. Willard

Design Direction: Paula Catalano

CONSULTANTS AND CONTRIBUTORS

OSEN CONSULTANTS

Gail Armstrong, DNP, ACNS-BC, CNE
Assistant Professor
University of Colorado—Denver
College of Nursing
Denver, Colorado

Mary A Dolansky, PhD, RN
Veterans Administration Quality
Scholarship Faculty
Assistant Professor
Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing
Case Western Reserve University
Cleveland, Ohio

CONTRIBUTORS

Judy Laver Bierschbach, MSN, ARNP
Nurse Practitioner
Center for Perioperative Care, UC Health
Cincinnati, Ohio

Deanne A. Blach, MSN, RN
Nurse Educator;
President, DB Productions
Green Forest, Arkansas
Concept Maps

Katherine L. Byar, MSN, ANP-BC
Hematological Malignancy Nurse
Practitioner
University of Nebraska Medical Center
Omaha, Nebraska

Robin Chard, PhD, RN, CNOR
Adjunct Faculty
College of Allied Health & Nursing
Nova Southeastern University
Fort Lauderdale, Florida

Tammy L. Coffee, MSN
Acute Care Nurse Practitioner
MetroHealth Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

Janice Cuzzell, RN, MA
Certified Wound Specialist and Clinical
Consultant
Savannah, Georgia

Laura M. Dechant, APN, MSN, CCRN, CCNS, BC
Clinical Nurse Specialist
Christiana Care Health System
Newark, Delaware

Cheryl J. Dumont, PhD, RN
Director of Nursing Research and Vascular
Access Team
Winchester Medical Center
Winchester, Virginia

Ronald L. Hickman, Jr., PhD, RN, ACNP-BC
Assistant Professor
Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing
Case Western Reserve University
Cleveland, Ohio

Mary Justice, MSN, CNE
Associate Professor
University of Cincinnati—Raymond
Walters College
Cincinnati, Ohio

Mary K. Kazanowski, APRN, PhD, CHPN
Palliative Care Nurse Practitioner
VNA Home Care and Hospice of
Manchester and Southern New
Hampshire
Manchester, New Hampshire;
Concord Hospital
Concord, New Hampshire

Linda A. LaCharity, PhD, RN
Accelerated Program Director
Assistant Professor
College of Nursing
University of Cincinnati
Cincinnati, Ohio

Linda Laskowski-Jones, RN, MS, ACNS-BC, CEN, FAWM
Vice President, Emergency, Trauma &
Aeromedical Services
Christiana Care Health System
Wilmington, Delaware

Rona F. Levin, PhD, RN
Professor
Pace University
Pleasantville, New York

Richard Lintner, RT(R), (CV), (MR), (CT), ARRT
Program Director
School of Interventional Radiology;
Manager
Interventional Radiology
Kansas University Medical Center
Kansas City, Kansas
Interventional radiology content

Tami Kathleen Little, MS, RN
Nursing Faculty
School of Nursing
Brookline College
Phoenix, Arizona

Margaret Elaine McLeod, MSN, BC-ADM, ACNS-BC, CDE
Clinical Nurse Specialist
Veterans Administration Medical Center
Tennessee Valley Healthcare System
Nashville, Tennessee

Rachel L. Palmieri, MS, RN-C/ANP
Adult Nurse Practitioner
Armed Forces Services Corporation
Arlington, Virginia

Cherie R. Rebar, PhD, RN, MBA, FNP
Associate Director, Division of Nursing;
Chair, AS & BSN Nursing Programs
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

Harry C. Rees III, MSN, ACNP-BC
Acute Care Nurse Practitioner
Anesthesia Critical Care
Cleveland Clinic;
Anticoagulation Clinic
MetroHealth Medical Center
Cleveland, Ohio

James G. Sampson, DNP, ANP-C, AAHNS

Adult Nurse Practitioner, Clinical Supervisor
Infectious Disease/AIDS Clinic
Denver Health Medical Center
Denver, Colorado

Karen Toulson, MSN, RN, MBA, CEN, NE-BC

Nurse Manager, Emergency Department
Christiana Care Health System
Newark, Delaware

Shirley E. Van Zandt, MS, MPH, CRNP
Instructor and Nurse Practitioner, School of Nursing

Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, Maryland

Chris Winkelman, PhD, RN, CCRN, ACNP

Associate Professor
Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing
Case Western Reserve University;
Cleveland, Ohio

Fay Wright, RN, MS, ACNP-BC
Doctoral Student
College of Nursing
New York University
New York, New York

Pamela C. Zickafoose, EdD, MSN, RN, CNA-BC, CNE

Instructor of Nursing
Delaware Technical & Community College—Terry Campus
Dover, Delaware

CONTRIBUTORS TO TEACHING/LEARNING RESOURCES

Audience Response System Questions (in PowerPoint® Slides)

Mary Beth Flynn Makic, PhD, RN, CNS, CCNS, CCRN

Assistant Professor, Adjoint
College of Nursing
University of Colorado—Anschutz Medical Campus;
Research Nurse Scientist
University of Colorado Hospital
Aurora, Colorado

QSEN Content in *TEACH® for Nurses Lesson Plans*

Gail Armstrong, DNP, ACNS-BC, CNE

Assistant Professor
College of Nursing
University of Colorado
Denver, Colorado

Tammy Sue Spencer, RN, MS, CNE, ACNS-BC, CCNS

Senior Instructor
Department of Nursing
University of Colorado College of Nursing
Aurora, Colorado

PowerPoint® Slides

Katrina Allen, RN, MSN, CCRN

Nursing Instructor, Clinical Coordinator
Faulkner State Community College
Bay Minette, Alabama

Linda A. LaCharity, PhD, RN

Accelerated Program Director
Assistant Professor
College of Nursing
University of Cincinnati
Cincinnati, Ohio

Cherie R. Rebar, PhD, MBA, RN, FNP

Associate Director, Division of Nursing;
Chair, AS & BSN Nursing Programs
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

TEACH® for Nurses Lesson Plans

Carolyn Gersch, MSN, RN, CNE

Assistant Director; Associate Professor
Division of Nursing
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

Cherie R. Rebar, PhD, MBA, RN, FNP

Associate Director, Division of Nursing;
Chair, AS & BSN Nursing Programs
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

Teaching Tips

Rosalinda Alfaro-LeFevre, RN, MSN, ANEF

President
Teaching Smart/Learning Easy
Stuart, Florida

Gail Armstrong, DNP, ACNS-BC, CNE

Assistant Professor
College of Nursing
University of Colorado
Denver, Colorado

Amy J. Barton, PhD, RN, FAAN

Professor and Associate Dean, Clinical and Community Affairs
College of Nursing
University of Colorado—Anschutz Medical Campus
Aurora, Colorado

Tim Bristol, PhD, RN, CNE

Director
Nursing Education Consultants
Ingram, Texas

Test Bank

Meg Blair, PhD, MSN, RN, CEN

Associate Professor, Nursing
Nebraska Methodist College
Omaha, Nebraska

Linda Hughes, PhD, RN, CCRN

Director of Undergraduate Programs,
Nursing
Nebraska Methodist College
Omaha, Nebraska

Tami Little, MS, RN

Nursing Faculty
School of Nursing
Brookline College
Phoenix, Arizona

Karen Montalto, PhD

BSN Chair and Associate Professor
School of Nursing and Allied Health Professions
Holy Family University
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Key Points (Expanded)

Peggy Slota, RN, DNP, FAAN

Associate Professor; Director
DNP and Graduate Nursing Leadership Programs
School of Nursing
Carlow University
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

NCLEX® Examination Challenge and Decision-Making Challenge Answers

Nancy Haugen, PhD, MN, RN

Associate Professor and ABSN Program Chair
Samuel Merritt University
Oakland, California

Tamara Kear, PhD, RN

Assistant Professor of Nursing
College of Nursing
Villanova University
Villanova, Pennsylvania

M. Linda Workman, PhD, RN, FAAN

Senior Volunteer Faculty
College of Nursing
University of Cincinnati
Cincinnati, Ohio;
Formerly Gertrude Perkins Oliva Professor
of Oncology
Frances Payne Bolton School of Nursing
Case Western Reserve University
Cleveland, Ohio

**Review Questions for the
NCLEX® Examination****Susan Nickell Behmke, MS, RN**

Professor
College of Southern Maryland
La Plata, Maryland

**Stephanie C. Butkus, MSN, APRN,
CPNP**

Associate Professor
Division of Nursing
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

Marilyn J. Herbert-Ashton, MS, RN, BC

Associate Professor
Virginia Western Community College
Roanoke, Virginia

Lisa A. Hollett, BSN, RN, MA, MICN

Trauma Program Manager
Department of Trauma Services
St. John Medical Center
Tulsa, Oklahoma

Andrea Rothman Mann, MSN, RN, CNE

Third Level Chair and Instructor
Aria Health School of Nursing
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Mitch Seal, EDD, Med-IT, RN-BC

Commander, Nurse Corps, U.S. Navy
Associate Director of Standards &
Evaluation
Medical Education & Training Campus
Fort Sam Houston, Texas

REVIEWERS

Diane K. Daddario, MSN, ACNS-BC, RN-BC, CMSRN

Nursing Instructor
Pennsylvania College of Technology
Williamsport, Pennsylvania;
Nurse Specialist
Geisinger Medical Center
Danville, Pennsylvania;
Staff Nurse
Evangelical Community Hospital
Lewisburg, Pennsylvania

Fernande E. Deno, MSN, RN
Anoka Ramsey Community College
Coon Rapids, Minnesota

Jennifer Duhon, RN, MS
Director of Health Services
Lutheran Hillside Village
Peoria, Illinois

Helen Freeman, MSN, RN, BC
Web Development Manager
Chamberlain College of Nursing
Columbus, Ohio

Bradley R. Harrell, DNP, ACNP-BC, CRN
Assistant Professor
School of Nursing
Union University
Germantown, Tennessee

Mimi Haskins, MS, RN, CMSRN
Roswell Park Cancer Institute
Buffalo, New York

Nancy Haugen, PhD, MN, RN
Associate Professor and ABSN Program
Chair
Samuel Merritt University
Oakland, California

LaWanda Herron, PhD, RN, MSA, FNP-BC
Holmes Community College
Grenada, Mississippi

Paula Hopper, MSN, RN
Jackson Community College
Jackson, Mississippi

Jamie Lynn Jones, MSN, RN
University of Arkansas at Little Rock
Little Rock, Arkansas

Tamara Marie Kear, PhD, RN
Gwynedd-Mercy College
Gwynedd Valley, Pennsylvania

Mary Ann Kolis, MSN, RN, ANP-BC, APNP
Instructor
Gateway Technical College
Kenosha, Wisconsin

Charles Preston Molsbee, EdD, MSN, RN, CNE
University of Arkansas at Little Rock
Little Rock, Arkansas

Jason Mott, MSN, RN
Instructor of Nursing
School of Nursing
Bellin College
Green Bay, Wisconsin

Kristin E. Oneail, MSN, RN
Instructor
University of Detroit Mercy
Detroit, Michigan

Rebecca Lynn Purdy, MSN, RN
Assistant Professor of Nursing
Morehead State University
Morehead, Kentucky

Cherie R. Rebar, PhD, MBA, RN, FNP
Associate Director, Division of Nursing;
Chair, AS & BSN Nursing Programs
Kettering College
Kettering, Ohio

Mary Lou Robinson, PhD, RN
Professor and Assistant to the Chair
Lewis-Clark State College
Lewiston, Idaho

Mitchell J. Seal, EdD, Med-IT, RN-BC
Deputy Director of Standards & Evaluation
Medical Education & Training Campus;
Adjunct Faculty
Cerro Coso College
San Antonio, Texas

Susan M. Seiboldt, MSN, RN, CNE
Assistant Professor of Nursing
Carl Sandburg College
Galesburg, Illinois

Denise Sevigny, RN, MSN
Adjunct Faculty
School of Nursing
Old Dominion University
Norfolk, Virginia

Brenda K. Shelton, MS, RN, CCRN, AOCN
The Sidney Kimmel Comprehensive Cancer
Center at Johns Hopkins
Baltimore, Maryland

Leah R. Shreves, MSN, RN
Assistant Professor of Nursing
Edison Community College
Piqua, Ohio

Karyn Skiathitis, MSN, RN, CPAN
Clinical Coordinator/Faculty
Department of Nursing
California State University—Northridge
Northridge, California

Jana Wiscaver Thompson, MSNc, RN
Assistant Professor
Department of Nursing
University of Arkansas at Little Rock
Little Rock, Arkansas

Cynthia W. Ward, MSN, RN-BC, CMSRN, ACNS-BC
RN IV
Centra—Lynchburg General Hospital
Lynchburg, Virginia

Julie M. Willenbrink, MSN, RN
Edison Community College
Piqua, Ohio

Lisa J. Wolf, MS, RN, CMSRN
Mount Carmel West Hospital
Columbus, Ohio

The first edition of this textbook, entitled *Medical-Surgical Nursing: A Nursing Process Approach*, received widespread acclaim in the early 1990s. The following five editions built on that achievement and further solidified the book's position as a major trendsetter for the practice of adult health nursing. Now in its seventh edition, "Iggy" charts an essential course for the future of adult nursing practice—a course reflected in its current title: *Medical-Surgical Nursing: Patient-Centered Collaborative Care*. The focus of this new edition continues to be to help students learn how to provide safe, quality care that is patient-centered, evidence-based, and collaborative.

The book's subtitle was carefully chosen to emphasize the nurse's role in providing patient care in collaboration with members of the interdisciplinary team in both acute care and community-based settings. The Institute of Medicine (IOM), The Joint Commission, the National Quality Forum, and other health care organizations have called for all health professionals to coordinate and deliver patient care as a collaborative care team. In addition, the 2010 IOM *Future of Nursing* report states that nurses need to have requisite competencies, including research and evidence-based practice, and teamwork and collaboration to deliver safe, high-quality care in specific content areas such as community health and geriatrics.

Patient safety is also emphasized in this edition with references to The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals initiative (http://www.jointcommission.org/standards_information/npsgs.aspx). A new feature for the seventh edition, Nursing Safety Priority boxes, enables students to immediately identify the most important care needed for patients with specific health problems. These highlighted features are further classified as Action Alerts, Drug Alerts, or Critical Rescue boxes.

KEY THEMES FOR THE 7TH EDITION

The seventh edition continues to use the term "patient" instead of "client" throughout. Although the use of these terms remains a subject of discussion among nursing educators, we have not defined the patient as a dependent person. Rather, the patient can be an individual, a family, or a group, all of whom have rights that are respected in a mutually trusting nurse-patient relationship. Most health care agencies and professional organizations use "patient" in their practice and publications. In addition, many nursing organizations support the term.

As in the sixth edition, the seventh edition relates the focus of critical thinking to an emphasis on nursing judgment to make timely and appropriate clinical decisions. To help achieve that focus, all new case-based Decision-Making Challenges based on the Quality and Safety Education (QSEN) core competencies have been integrated throughout the text. These exercises provide clinical situations in which students can practice on-the-spot decision making to help prepare them for the fast-paced world of medical-surgical nursing and become competent nurses. Suggested answer guidelines

for these Decision-Making Challenges are provided on the book's Evolve website (<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>).

In addition to this key theme of clinical decision-making, the seventh edition also emphasizes "readiness"—readiness for the NCLEX® Examination, readiness for major emergencies such as we saw in the aftermath of the events of 9/11 and recent natural disasters, readiness for safe drug administration, and readiness for the new world of genetics and genomics that is unfolding before us. An increased number of NCLEX® Examination Challenges, now including some with alternate-format items, are interspersed throughout the text to allow students the opportunity for practice in test-taking.

As the nursing shortage becomes more acute, it is more critical than ever that students be ready to pass the licensure exam on the first try. To help both students and faculty achieve that outcome, chapter-opening Learning Outcomes are consistent with the objectives outlined in the detailed NCLEX-RN® Test Plan. The seventh edition also continues to include an innovative end-of-chapter feature called "Get Ready for the NCLEX® Examination!" This unique and popular learning aid consists of a list of Key Points *organized by Client Needs Category* as found in the NCLEX-RN® Test Plan.

To further help students connect previously learned concepts with new information in the text, six Concept Overviews introduce groups of content units. These unique features review basic concepts learned in nursing fundamentals courses—such as oxygenation and protection—to help students make connections between fundamental concepts and patient care for medical-surgical conditions. At the end of each body system chapter, Nursing Concept Reviews apply these same concepts to the health problems presented in the chapter. Dr. Christine Tanner's clinical judgment framework is used to help students apply these concepts (Tanner, 2006). The components of this model include that clinical nurses use nursing judgment to provide quality care by:

- Noticing
- Interpreting
- Responding
- Reflecting

This seventh edition includes a new chapter—**Chapter 7: Evidence-Based Practice in Medical-Surgical Nursing**—written by evidence-based practice (EBP) experts Dr. Rona F. Levin and Fay Wright. This chapter discusses the importance of EBP and incorporating it into nursing care. This chapter, along with the Evidence-Based Practice boxes throughout the book, offers a solid foundation in this increasingly important aspect of nursing practice emphasized by the QSEN initiative.

Additional themes carried over from the previous edition are an emphasis on women's health issues, genetic/genomic considerations, cultural awareness, complementary and alternative therapies, and the special needs of older adults. In addition, concepts of case management and community-based care are interwoven throughout to help students identify the role of the nurse in providing continuing patient care.

CLINICAL CURRENCY AND ACCURACY

To ensure the book's currency and accuracy, we listened to students and faculty who have used the previous editions, focusing on their impressions of and experiences with the book. We reviewed documents crafted by a variety of health care organizations, including the Institute of Medicine (IOM), The Joint Commission (TJC), and the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). Recent nursing education publications were also examined, such as those authored by the National League for Nursing (NLN), the American Association of Colleges of Nursing (AACN), and Dr. Patricia Benner and her colleagues in their book *Educating Nurses: A Call for Radical Transformation* (2010). A thorough nursing education literature search of best current evidence helped us validate best practices and national health care trends to help shape the focus of the seventh edition.

We also commissioned in-depth reviews of every chapter by clinicians and instructors from across the United States and used their reviews to guide us in revising the chapters into their final form. A well-respected interventional radiologist ensured the accuracy of selected diagnostic testing procedures and associated patient care.

The results of these efforts are reflected in the seventh edition's:

- Strong, consistent focus on NCLEX-RN® Examination preparation, clinical decision making, patient-centered collaborative care, pathophysiology, drug therapy, evidence-based clinical practice, and community-based care
- Foundation of relevant research and best practice guidelines
- Emphasis on the critical “need to know” information that beginning nurses must master to provide safe patient care

Best Practice for Patient Safety & Quality Care charts help highlight the most important nursing care. Our Evidence-Based Practice boxes include a Commentary section, as well as a rating of the level of evidence based on a well-respected scale outlined in [Chapter 7](#).

With today's knowledge explosion, it is easy for a book to become larger with each new edition. However, today's nursing students have a limited time to absorb and begin to apply the information essential for medical-surgical nursing care. Therefore in this seventh edition we eliminated some of the content found in previous foundation courses or other specialty textbooks. We limited our discussions to how these concepts are used in adult nursing and focused on content that was “need to know” for safe, quality nursing practice.

OUTSTANDING READABILITY

Today's students need to be able to read information once and understand it; they do not have time to repeatedly read the same information. To achieve this level of readability, the text has a more direct-address style (wherever appropriate) that speaks directly to the reader, and sentences are as short as possible without sacrificing essential content.

Reading level is highly influenced by the length of sentences and the length of words. Although we can control the length of the sentences, medical terms are often 4 to 5 syllables long and tend to skew a chapter's reading level.

Nevertheless, the result of our efforts is a med-surg text of consistently outstanding readability. The average reading level is 10th to 11th grade. It is important to note that reducing the reading level of this edition did not reduce the quality or depth of content that students need to know. Instead, the content is clear, focused, and accessible.

EASE OF ACCESS

To make the text as easy to use as possible, we have maintained the previous editions' approach of smaller chapters of more uniform length. Although we eliminated some of the foundational content in the first unit of the last edition and added one new chapter, the seventh edition remains 76 chapters long.

We also have maintained the unit structure of previous editions, with vital body systems (cardiovascular, respiratory, and neurologic) appearing earlier in the book. In these three units we continue to provide complex care content in separate chapters that discuss managing critically ill patients with coronary artery disease, respiratory health problems, and neurologic health problems.

To help break up long blocks of text and also to highlight key information, we continue to include numerous headings, bulleted lists, tables, charts, and in-text highlights. Key Terms are in boldface color type and are defined in the text to foster the learning of need-to-know vocabulary. A glossary is located in the back of the book. Chapter bibliographies have been moved to the back of the book to save space in chapters for need-to-know content. These current bibliographic resources include research articles, nationally accepted clinical guidelines, and other sources of evidence when available for each chapter. Classic sources from before 2008 are noted with an asterisk (*).

A PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE APPROACH

As in all previous editions, we take a collaborative care approach to patient care. We believe that in the real world of health care, nurses, patients, and other health care providers (including physicians, advanced-practice nurses, and physician's assistants) *share* responsibility for the management of patient problems. Thus we present patient care in a collaborative care framework. In this framework we make no *artificial* distinctions between medical treatment and nursing care. Instead, under each Patient-Centered Collaborative Care heading we discuss how the nurse coordinates care and interacts with members of the health care team as appropriate for the patient's health problems, including health promotion and illness prevention.

This edition includes newly redesigned patient-centered Concept Maps that underscore this collaborative care approach. Each Concept Map contains a case scenario. It then shows how a selected complex health problem is addressed. Each Concept Map spells out the steps of the nursing process and related concepts to illustrate the relationships among disease processes, priority patient problems, collaborative management, and more.

Although our approach is collaborative, the text is first and foremost a *nursing* text. We therefore use a nursing process approach as a tool to organize discussions of patient health problems and their management. Discussions of *major* health

problems follow a full nursing process format using this structure:

- [Health problem]
 - Pathophysiology
 - Etiology (and Genetic Risk when appropriate)
 - Incidence/Prevalence
 - Health Promotion and Maintenance (when appropriate)
 - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care
 - Assessment
 - Analysis
 - Planning and Implementation
 - [Collaborative Intervention Statement (based on priority patient problems)]
 - Planning: Expected Outcomes
 - Interventions
 - Community-Based Care
 - Home Care Management
 - Teaching for Self-Management
 - Health Care Resources
 - Evaluation: Outcomes

The Analysis sections list the priority patient problems (collaborative problems and nursing diagnoses) associated with major medical disorders. This seventh edition uses official NANDA-I nursing diagnosis language where it applies; however, most health care agencies prefer to identify collaborative patient problems or needs as the basis for the interdisciplinary plan of care rather than being restricted to NANDA-I language, which addresses primarily nursing-oriented patient problems. With its more flexible interweaving of NANDA-I diagnoses and collaborative patient problems or needs, the seventh edition more closely aligns with the language of actual clinical practice. The nursing diagnoses used in this edition are the 2012-2014 NANDA-I diagnoses—the most recently approved diagnoses at the time of publication of this edition. Health Promotion and Maintenance sections are found in selected discussions.

Discussions of less common or less complex disorders, although not given this complete subhead structure, nonetheless follow the same basic format: a discussion of the problem itself (including pertinent information on pathophysiology) followed by a section on collaborative care of patients with the disorder. To demonstrate our commitment to providing the content foundational to nursing education and consistent with the recommendations of Benner and colleagues through the Carnegie Foundation for the Future of Nursing Education, we highlight throughout this edition essential pathophysiologic concepts that are key to understanding the basis for collaborative management.

Integral to this collaborative care approach is a clear delineation of just who is responsible for what. When a responsibility is primarily the nurse's, the text says so. When a decision must be made jointly by the patient, nurse, physician, and physical therapist, for example, this is clearly stated. When different health care practitioners in different care settings might be involved in the patient's care, this is stated.

ORGANIZATION

The 76 chapters of *Medical-Surgical Nursing: Patient-Centered Collaborative Care* are grouped into 16 units. Unit 1, Foundations for Medical-Surgical Nursing, lays the

foundation for the health care concepts incorporated throughout the text. Unit 2 consists of three chapters on concepts of emergency and trauma care and disaster preparedness.

Unit 3 consists of three chapters on the management of patients with fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances. Chapters 13 and 14 review key assessments and related patient care in a clear, concise discussion. The chapter on infusion therapy (Chapter 15) is supplemented with an online Fluids & Electrolytes Tutorial on the companion Evolve website.

Unit 4 presents the perioperative nursing content that medical-surgical nurses need to know. This content provides a solid foundation to help the student better understand the collaborative care required for the surgical patient.

Unit 5 provides core content on health problems related to immune system function. This content includes normal inflammation and the immune response, altered cell growth and cancer development, and interventions for patients with connective tissue disease, HIV infection, and other immunologic disorders, cancers, and infections.

The remaining 11 units, subdivided and introduced by the six Concept Overviews, cover medical-surgical content by body system. Each of these units begins with an Assessment chapter and continues with one or more Nursing Care chapters for patients with selected health problems in that body system. This framework is familiar to students who learn the body systems in preclinical foundational science courses such as anatomy and physiology.

MULTINATIONAL, MULTICULTURAL, MULTIGENERATIONAL FOCUS

To reflect the increasing diversity of our society, *Medical-Surgical Nursing: Patient-Centered Collaborative Care* takes a multinational, multicultural, and multigenerational focus. Addressing the needs of both U.S. and Canadian readers, we have included examples of trade names of drugs available in the United States and in Canada. Drugs that are available only in Canada are designated with a 🍁 symbol. When appropriate, we identify specific Canadian health care resources, including their websites.

To help nurses provide quality care for patients whose cultural background may differ from their own, numerous Cultural Awareness boxes highlight important aspects of culturally competent care throughout the text. A revised and expanded cultural health chapter (Chapter 4) includes specific information about lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender (LGBT) health and health care, as well as special needs associated with homelessness and dwarfism. Located in an appendix is an innovative Communication Quick Reference for Spanish-Speaking Patients. This Quick Reference helps ensure clear communication between native English speakers and the rapidly growing population who speak Spanish as a first language.

Increases in life expectancy and the “graying” of the baby-boom generation add up to a steadily increasing older adult population. To help equip nurses for this challenge, the seventh edition continues to provide thorough coverage of the care of older adults. Chapter 3 offers content on the role of the nurse and health care team in promoting health for older adults in the community. It also provides coverage of common health problems that older adults may have in the

health care setting, such as falls and inadequate nutrition. The text includes many Nursing Focus on the Older Adult charts. Laboratory values and drug dosages typical for older patients are also included throughout the book. Charts specifying normal physiologic changes to expect in the older population are found in each Assessment chapter. In addition, Considerations for Older Adults boxes are included throughout the text to emphasize key points to consider when caring for these patients.

Also appearing throughout the text are Women's Health Considerations boxes, which address topics of concern to women and their health care providers. These in-text highlights alert the reader to gender-related differences in assessment parameters and in the incidence, severity, and treatment of common health problems.

ADDITIONAL LEARNING AIDS

As in previous editions, the seventh edition continues to include a rich array of learning aids geared toward adult learners to help students quickly identify and understand key information and to serve as study aids.

- Written in “patient-friendly” language, Patient and Family Education: Preparing for Self-Management charts provide the types of instructions that nurses must learn to provide to patients and their families to help them cope with life changes caused by illness.
- Laboratory Profile charts summarize important information on laboratory tests commonly used to evaluate health problems. Information typically includes normal ranges of laboratory values (including differences for older adults, when appropriate) and the possible significance of abnormal findings.
- Common Examples of Drug Therapy charts summarize important information about commonly used drugs. Most charts include both U.S. and Canadian trade names for typically used drugs, usual dosages (including dosages for older patients, as appropriate), and nursing interventions with rationales.
- Key Features charts highlight the clinical manifestations of important health problems based on pathophysiologic concepts.
- Evidence-Based Practice boxes, provided in nearly every chapter, give synopses of recent nursing research articles and other scientific articles applicable to nursing. Each box provides a brief summary of the research, its level of evidence (LOE), and a brief commentary with implications for nursing practice and future research. The purpose of this feature is to help students identify the strengths and weaknesses of the research and to see how research guides nursing practice.
- As in the previous editions, Home Care Assessment charts serve as a convenient summary of essential assessment points for patients who need follow-up home health nursing care.
- Assessment Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns charts provide a convenient one-stop list of questions to ask patients about the impact of health conditions on everyday function.
- New to this edition, subtypes of Decision-Making Challenges emphasize the six QSEN core competencies:

Patient-Centered Care, Teamwork and Collaboration, Evidence-Based Practice, Quality Improvement, Safety, and Informatics.

AN INTEGRATED MULTIMEDIA RESOURCE BASED ON PROVEN STRATEGIES FOR STUDENT ENGAGEMENT AND LEARNING

Medical-Surgical Nursing: Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 7th edition, is the centerpiece of a comprehensive package of electronic and print learning resources that break new ground in the application of proven strategies for student engagement, learning, and evidence-based educational practice. This integrated multimedia resource actively engages the student in problem solving and practicing clinical decision-making skills.

Resources for Instructors

For the convenience of faculty, all Instructor Resources are available on a streamlined, secure instructor area of the Evolve website (<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>). Included among these Instructor Resources are the exciting new *TEACH for Nurses* Lesson Plans. These Lesson Plans focus on the most important content from each chapter and provide innovative strategies for student engagement and learning. Lesson Plans are provided for each chapter and are categorized into several parts:

- Objectives
- Teaching Focus
- Key Terms
- Nursing Curriculum Standards
 - QSEN
 - Concepts
 - BSN Essentials
- Student Chapter Resources
- Instructor Chapter Resources
- Teaching Strategies

Additional Instructor Resources provided on the Evolve website include:

- A completely revised, updated, high-quality Test Bank consisting of 2260 items, both traditional multiple-choice and NCLEX-RN® “alternate” item types. Each question is coded for correct answer, rationale, cognitive level, NCLEX Integrated Process, and NCLEX Client Needs Category. Page references are provided for Remembering (Knowledge)- and Understanding (Comprehension)-level questions. (Questions at the Applying [Application] and above cognitive level require the student to draw on understanding of multiple or broader concepts not limited to a single textbook page, so page cross references are not provided for these higher-level critical thinking questions.) The Test Bank is provided in ExamView, ParTest, and rich-text formats.
- An electronic Image Collection containing all images from the book (approximately 630 images), delivered in a format that makes incorporation into lectures, presentations, and online courses easier than ever.
- PowerPoint Presentations—a collection of over 2000 slides corresponding to each chapter in the text and highlighting key content with integrated images and

Unfolding Case Studies. Audience Response System Questions (three discussion-oriented questions per chapter for use with iClicker and other audience response systems) are folded into these slide presentations.

- Guest Lectures—Seven ready-to-use narrated PowerPoint presentations by Dr. Workman covering topics with which both students and faculty tend to struggle.
- Faculty Development Videos—two videos by Donna Ignatavicius addressing (1) the implications of changes in the NCLEX-RN® Examination for faculty and (2) curriculum transformation.

Also available for adoption and separate purchase, Simulation Learning System (SLS) helps faculty make the best use of high-fidelity patient simulators.

Resources for Students

Resources for students include a revised and updated Clinical Decision-Making Study Guide, a Clinical Companion, a Virtual Clinical Excursions workbook/CD-ROM, and Evolve Learning Resources.

The *Clinical Decision-Making Study Guide* has been revised and updated and features a continued emphasis on clinical decision making, priorities of delegation, management of care, and pharmacology. The use of Case Studies is expanded in this edition, and documentation questions have been added to most chapters to provide practice with this important aspect of the evaluation step of the nursing process.

The pocket-sized *Clinical Companion* is a handy clinical resource that retains a popular alphabetical organization and streamlined format. It now includes new “Critical Rescue,” “Drug Alert,” and “Action Alert” highlights throughout based on the Nursing Safety Priority features in the textbook. National Patient Safety Goals highlights underscore the importance of observing vital patient safety standards. This “pocket-sized Iggy” has been tailored to the special needs of students preparing for clinicals and clinical practice.

The *Virtual Clinical Excursions 3.0* workbook/CD-ROM package, featuring an updated and easy-to-navigate “virtual” clinical setting, will once again be available for the seventh edition. This unique learning tool guides students through a

virtual clinical environment and helps them “learn by doing” in the safety of a “virtual” hospital. The clinical simulations and workbook represent the next generation of research-based learning tools to promote critical thinking and meaningful learning.

Also available for students is a dynamic collection of Evolve Student Resources, available at <http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>. The Evolve Student Resources —organized by student learning needs—include the following:

- Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
- Answer Guidelines for NCLEX® Examination and Decision-Making Challenges
- Interactive Case Studies
- Concept Maps (digital versions of the 12 Concept Maps from the text)
- Concept Map Creator (a handy tool for creating customized Concept Maps)
- Fluid & Electrolyte Tutorial (a complete self-paced tutorial on this perennially difficult content)
- Chapter Reviews (downloadable expanded key points for each chapter)
- Health Assessment Image Collection (supplemental images of common assessment findings)
- Audio Glossary
- Audio Clips, Animations, and Video Clips
- Content Updates

For more information on any of these innovative companion resources, contact your Elsevier Educational Solutions Consultant, visit <http://www.us.elsevierhealth.com/>, or contact Elsevier Faculty Support at 1-800-222-9570 or sales.inquiry@elsevier.com.

In summary, *Medical-Surgical Nursing: Patient-Centered Collaborative Care*, 7th edition, together with its fully integrated multimedia ancillary package, provides the tools you will need to meet the challenge of nursing in the second decade of the 21st century and beyond. The only elements that remain to be added to this package are those that you alone can provide—your diligence, your commitment, your innovation, *your nursing expertise*.

Donna D. Ignatavicius
M. Linda Workman

To Charles and Stephanie
Thank you for your unending support, love, and understanding
during every edition; I could not do this without you!
Stephanie, I especially appreciate your editorial help.

To students and faculty
Thank you for your feedback, support, and guidance
during my journey as an author over many years.

Donna

To students everywhere, who inspire us to make each edition better.

To GBW: Your courage and integrity are limitless.

Linda

ABOUT THE AUTHORS



Donna D. Ignatavicius received her diploma in nursing from the Peninsula General School of Nursing in Salisbury, Maryland. After working as a charge nurse in medical-surgical nursing, she became an instructor in staff development at the University of Maryland Medical Center. She then received her BSN from the University of Maryland School of Nursing. For 5 years she taught in several schools of nursing while working toward her MS in Nursing, which she received in 1981. Donna then taught in the BSN program at the University of Maryland, after which she continued to pursue her interest in gerontology and accepted the position of Director of Nursing of a major skilled-nursing facility in her home state of Maryland. Since that time, she has served as an instructor in several associate degree nursing programs. Through her consulting activities and faculty development workshops, Donna has gained national recognition in nursing education. She is currently the President of DI Associates, Inc. (<http://www.diassociates.com/>), a company dedicated to improving health care through education and consultation for faculty. In recognition of her contributions to the field, she was inducted as a charter Fellow of the prestigious Academy of Nursing Education in 2007.



M. Linda Workman, a native of Canada, received her BSN from the University of Cincinnati College of Nursing and Health. After serving in the U.S. Army Nurse Corps and working as an Assistant Head Nurse and Head Nurse in civilian hospitals, Linda earned her MSN from the University of Cincinnati College of Nursing and a PhD in Developmental Biology from the University of Cincinnati College of Arts and Sciences. Linda's 30-plus years of academic experience include teaching at the diploma, associate degree, baccalaureate, and master's levels. Her areas of teaching expertise include medical-surgical nursing, physiology, pathophysiology, genetics, oncology, and immunology. Linda has been recognized nationally for her teaching expertise and was inducted as a Fellow into the American Academy of Nursing in 1992. She received Excellence in Teaching awards at the University of Cincinnati and at Case Western Reserve University. She is a former American Cancer Society Professor of Oncology Nursing and held an endowed chair in oncology for 5 years. In addition to authoring several textbooks and serving as a consult for major universities, she is Senior Volunteer Faculty at the College of Nursing, University of Cincinnati.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Publishing a textbook and ancillary package of this depth and breadth would not be possible without the combined efforts of many people. Stephanie M. Ignatavicius assisted with literature searches and the revision of [Chapter 4](#) (Cultural Aspects of Health and Illness). Paul W. Elliott, Jr. helped develop the Concept Overview feature for Mobility, Sensation, and Cognition.

Our contributing authors once again provided consistently excellent manuscripts in a timely fashion. Special thanks to Deanne Blach, who redesigned our Concept Maps. Our reviewers—expert clinicians and instructors from around the United States and Canada—provided invaluable suggestions and encouragement throughout the book's development.

The staff of Elsevier/Saunders once again provided us with crucial guidance and support throughout the planning, writing, revision, and production of the seventh edition. In particular, Executive Content Strategist Lee Henderson worked closely with us from the early stages of this edition to help us hone and focus our revision plan, and Lee coordinated the project from start to finish. Senior Content Development Specialist Rae Robertson then worked with us step-by-step to bring the seventh edition from vision to publication. Rae, Julia Curcio, and Kelly McGowan held the reins of our complex ancillary package and worked with a gifted group of writers and content experts to provide an outstanding library of resources to complement and enhance the text. Special thanks to Content Coordinator Kelly McGowan, who not only managed the *Clinical Companion* but also handled the countless administrative details associated with a project of this size.

Senior Project Manager Jodi Willard was once again a joy to work with. If, as is said, the mark of a good editor is that her work is invisible to the reader, then Jodi is the consummate editor. Her unwavering attention to detail, flexibility, and conscientiousness not only helped to make this edition the most consistently readable ever, but also made the entire production process incredibly smooth.

Special thanks also to Publishing Services Manager Debbie Vogel. For three editions now, Debbie has worked quietly behind the scenes to help bring the book to publication precisely on schedule and with a very high level of quality.

Designer Paula Catalano is responsible for the beautiful cover and the completely new interior design of the seventh edition. The praise of a book designer's work is often unsung, but Paula's work on this edition has cast important features in exactly the right light, with neither too much nor too little emphasis, making this edition not only practical and easy to read, but also beautiful.

Our acknowledgments would not be complete without recognizing our dedicated team of Educational Solutions Consultants and other key members of the Sales and Marketing staff who helped to put this book into your hands.

Finally, we wish to thank Sally Schreffer (Managing Director, Nursing and Health Professions), Loren Wilson (Vice President and Publisher, Nursing), Tom Wilhelm (Vice President, eSolutions, Nursing), and Robin Carter (Director, eContent Solutions, Nursing) for their ongoing vision, direction, and support for state-of-the-art educational resources for nurses.

**Donna D. Ignatavicius
M. Linda Workman**

UNIT I FOUNDATIONS FOR MEDICAL-SURGICAL NURSING

1 Introduction to Medical-Surgical Nursing, 1

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- National Patient Safety Goals, 2
- Protecting Five Million Lives from Harm, 2
- Institute of Medicine/Quality and Safety Education for Nurses Core Competencies, 3
 - Patient-Centered Care, 3
 - Teamwork and Collaboration, 4
 - Evidence-Based Practice, 5
 - Quality Improvement, 5
 - Informatics, 6
 - Safety, 6

2 Introduction to Complementary and Alternative Therapies, 8

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- Overview, 8
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 9
- CAM Categories, 9
 - Natural Products, 9
 - Mind-Body Therapies, 10
 - Manipulative and Body-Based Therapies, 13
 - Other CAM Therapies, 13

3 Common Health Problems of Older Adults, 15

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- Overview, 15
- Health Issues for Older Adults in Community-Based Settings, 16
 - Decreased Nutrition and Hydration, 16
 - Decreased Mobility, 17
 - Stress and Loss, 18
 - Accidents, 19
 - Drug Use and Misuse, 20
 - Mental Health/Behavioral Health Problems, 22
 - Elder Neglect and Abuse, 25
- Health Care Issues for Older Adults in Hospitals and Nursing Homes, 26
 - Sleep, Nutrition, and Incontinence, 26
 - Confusion, Falls, and Skin Breakdown, 26

4 Cultural Aspects of Health and Illness, 30

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- Culture and Cultural Competence, 31
- Health and Health Care Disparities, 32
- Purnell's Domains of Culture, 32
 - Culture Overview and Communication, 32
 - Family and Workplace Issues, 33
 - Biologic Ecology, 35
 - Nutrition, 35
 - Spirituality, 36
 - Health Care Practices and Practitioners, 36

5 Pain: The Fifth Vital Sign, 39

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- Overview, 40
- Definitions of Pain, 40

Scope of the Problem, 40

Categorizing Pain, 40

Theoretical Bases for Pain, 40

Addiction, Pseudoaddiction, Tolerance, and Physical Dependence, 44

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 46

6 Genetic Concepts for Medical-Surgical Nursing, 64

M. Linda Workman

Genetic Biology, 65

DNA, 66

Gene Structure and Function, 68

Gene Expression, 70

Protein Synthesis, 70

Mutations, 71

Patterns of Inheritance, 72

Pedigree, 72

Autosomal Dominant Pattern of Inheritance, 72

Autosomal Recessive Pattern of Inheritance, 74

Sex-Linked Recessive Pattern of Inheritance, 74

Complex Inheritance and Familial Clustering, 74

Genetic Testing, 74

Purpose of Genetic Testing, 74

Benefits and Risks of Genetic Testing, 75

Genetic Counseling, 75

Ethical Issues, 76

The Role of the Medical-Surgical Nurse in Genetic Counseling, 77

Communication, 77

Privacy and Confidentiality, 77

Information Accuracy, 77

Patient Advocacy and Support, 77

7 Evidence-Based Practice in Medical-Surgical Nursing, 79

Rona F. Levin and Fay Wright

Overview, 79

Definitions of Evidence-Based Practice, 79

Steps of the Evidence-Based Practice Process, 80

Models and Frameworks for Implementing Evidence-Based Practice, 83

Iowa Model, 83

Reavy and Tavernier Model, 83

ARCC Model, 83

Evidence-Based Practice Improvement (EBPI) Model, 84

Steps of the EBPI Model, 84

Application of the EBPI Model to Clinical Practice: A Case Study, 85

8 Rehabilitation Concepts for Chronic and Disabling Health Problems, 89

Donna D. Ignatavicius

Overview, 89

Concepts Related to Rehabilitation, 90

The Rehabilitation Team, 90

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 92

9 End-of-Life Care, 106

Mary K. Kazanowski

- Overview of Death and Dying, 106
 - Perception of Death in the United States, 106
 - Pathophysiology of Dying, 107
 - Incidence of Death, 107
 - Planning for End-of-Life and Advance Directives, 107
 - Desired Outcomes for End-of-Life Care, 108
 - Hospice and Palliative Care, 108
- Signs and Symptoms at End of Life, 110
- Postmortem Care, 118
- Euthanasia, 119

UNIT II CONCEPTS OF EMERGENCY CARE AND DISASTER PREPAREDNESS

10 Concepts of Emergency and Trauma Nursing, 121

Linda Laskowski-Jones and Karen L. Toulson

- The Emergency Department Environment of Care, 122
 - Demographic Data, 122
 - Special Nursing Teams, 122
 - Interdisciplinary Team Collaboration, 122
- Staff and Patient Safety Considerations, 124
 - Staff Safety, 124
 - Patient Safety, 124
- Scope of Emergency Nursing Practice, 125
 - Core Competencies, 125
 - Training and Certification, 127
- Emergency Nursing Principles, 127
 - Triage, 127
 - Disposition, 128
- Trauma Nursing Principles, 130
 - Trauma Centers and Trauma Systems, 130
 - Mechanism of Injury, 131
 - Primary Survey and Resuscitation Interventions, 132
 - The Secondary Survey and Resuscitation Interventions, 134
 - Disposition, 134

11 Care of Patients with Common Environmental Emergencies, 136

Linda Laskowski-Jones

- Heat-Related Illnesses, 136
 - Health Promotion and Maintenance, 137
 - Heat Exhaustion, 137
 - Heat Stroke, 137
- Snakebites, 139
 - Health Promotion and Maintenance, 140
 - North American Pit Vipers, 140
 - Coral Snakes, 141
- Arthropod Bites and Stings, 142
 - Brown Recluse Spider, 142
 - Black Widow Spider, 144
 - Scorpions, 144
 - Bees and Wasps, 145
- Lightning Injuries, 146
- Cold-Related Injuries, 148
 - Health Promotion and Maintenance, 148
 - Hypothermia, 148

Frostbite, 149

Altitude-Related Illnesses, 150

Drowning, 152

12 Concepts of Emergency and Disaster

Preparedness, 155

Linda Laskowski-Jones

- Types of Disasters, 155
- Impact of Recent External Disasters, 156
- Emergency Preparedness and Response, 157
 - Mass Casualty Triage, 157
 - Notification and Activation of Emergency Preparedness/Management Plans, 159
 - Hospital Emergency Preparedness: Personnel Roles and Responsibilities, 159
- Event Resolution and Debriefing, 162
 - Critical Incident Stress Debriefing, 162
 - Administrative Review, 163
- Role of Nursing in Community Emergency Preparedness and Response, 163
- Psychosocial Response of Survivors to Mass Casualty Events, 163

UNIT III MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH FLUID, ELECTROLYTE, AND ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

13 Assessment and Care of Patients with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances, 165

M. Linda Workman

- Homeostasis, 166
- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 166
 - Physiologic Influences on Fluid and Electrolyte Balance, 166
- Fluid Balance, 169
 - Body Fluids, 169
 - Hormonal Regulation of Fluid Balance, 171
 - Significance of Fluid Balance, 172
- Fluid Imbalances, 173
 - Dehydration, 173
 - Fluid Overload, 178
- Electrolyte Balance and Imbalances, 180
 - Sodium, 180
 - Potassium, 183
 - Calcium, 187
 - Phosphorus, 191
 - Magnesium, 192
 - Chloride, 194

14 Assessment and Care of Patients with Acid-Base Imbalances, 196

M. Linda Workman

- Acid-Base Balance, 196
 - Acid-Base Chemistry, 197
 - Body Fluid Chemistry, 198
 - Acid-Base Regulatory Actions and Mechanisms, 199
- Acid-Base Imbalances, 202
 - Acidosis, 202
 - Alkalosis, 207

15 Infusion Therapy, 210

Cheryl J. Dumont

- Overview, 210
- Types of Infusion Therapy Fluids, 211

- Prescribing Infusion Therapy, 212
- Vascular Access Devices, 212
- Peripheral Intravenous Therapy, 213
 - Short Peripheral Catheters, 213
 - Midline Catheters, 215
- Central Intravenous Therapy, 216
 - Peripherally Inserted Central Catheters, 216
 - Nontunneled Percutaneous Central Venous Catheters, 217
 - Tunneled Central Venous Catheters, 218
 - Implanted Ports, 218
 - Hemodialysis Catheters, 220
- Infusion Systems, 220
 - Containers, 220
 - Administration Sets, 220
 - Rate-Controlling Infusion Devices, 222
- Nursing Care for Patients Receiving Intravenous Therapy, 223
 - Educating the Patient, 223
 - Performing the Nursing Assessment, 223
 - Securing and Dressing the Catheter, 224
 - Changing Administration Sets and Needleless Connectors, 225
 - Controlling Infusion Pressure, 225
 - Flushing the Catheter, 225
 - Obtaining Blood Samples from Central Venous Catheters, 226
 - Removing the Vascular Access Device, 226
 - Documenting Intravenous Therapy, 226
- Complications of Intravenous Therapy, 227
 - Catheter-Related Bloodstream Infection, 227
 - Other Complications of Intravenous Therapy, 227
- IV Therapy and Care of the Older Adult, 227
 - Skin Care, 227
 - Vein and Catheter Selection, 227
 - Cardiac and Renal Changes, 233
- Alternative Sites for Infusion, 234
 - Subcutaneous Infusion, 234
 - Intraosseous Therapy, 234
 - Intra-arterial Therapy, 235
 - Intraperitoneal Infusion, 236
 - Intraspinal Infusion, 236

UNIT IV MANAGEMENT OF PERIOPERATIVE PATIENTS

- 16 **Care of Preoperative Patients, 239**
Robin Chard
 - Overview, 240
 - Categories and Purposes of Surgery, 240
 - Surgical Settings, 240
 - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 242
- 17 **Care of Intraoperative Patients, 263**
Robin Chard
 - Overview, 264
 - Members of the Surgical Team, 264
 - Preparation of the Surgical Suite and Team Safety, 266
 - Anesthesia, 270
 - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 277

- 18 **Care of Postoperative Patients, 284**
Robin Chard
 - Overview, 285
 - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 285

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: PROTECTION

UNIT V PROBLEMS OF PROTECTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE IMMUNE SYSTEM

- 19 **Inflammation and the Immune Response, 302**
M. Linda Workman
 - Overview, 303
 - Self Versus Non-Self, 303
 - Organization of the Immune System, 304
 - Inflammation, 305
 - Infection, 306
 - Cell Types Involved in Inflammation, 306
 - Phagocytosis, 307
 - Sequence of Inflammatory Responses, 308
 - Immunity, 309
 - Antibody-Mediated Immunity, 309
 - Cell-Mediated Immunity, 313
 - Transplant Rejection, 314
- 20 **Care of Patients with Arthritis and Other Connective Tissue Diseases, 318**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Osteoarthritis, 319
 - Rheumatoid Arthritis, 333
 - Lupus Erythematosus, 343
 - Systemic Sclerosis, 347
 - Gout, 349
 - Other Connective Tissue Diseases, 351
 - Polymyositis/Dermatomyositis, 351
 - Systemic Necrotizing Vasculitis, 351
 - Polymyalgia Rheumatica and Temporal Arteritis, 351
 - Ankylosing Spondylitis, 351
 - Reiter's Syndrome, 352
 - Marfan Syndrome, 352
 - Infectious Arthritis, 352
 - Lyme Disease, 352
 - Pseudogout, 353
 - Psoriatic Arthritis, 353
 - Other Disease-Associated Arthritis, 353
 - Fibromyalgia Syndrome, 353
 - Chronic Fatigue Syndrome, 354
 - Mixed Connective Tissue Disease, 354
- 21 **Care of Patients with HIV Disease and Other Immune Deficiencies, 357**
James G. Sampson and M. Linda Workman
 - Acquired (Secondary) Immune Deficiencies, 358
 - HIV Infection and AIDS, 358
 - Therapy-Induced Immune Deficiencies, 380
 - Congenital (Primary) Immune Deficiencies, 381
 - Selective Immunoglobulin A Deficiency, 381
 - Bruton's Agammaglobulinemia, 382
 - Common Variable Immunodeficiency, 382

22 Care of Patients with Immune Function Excess: Hypersensitivity (Allergy) and Autoimmunity, 383

M. Linda Workman

- Hypersensitivities/Allergies, 383
 - Type I: Rapid Hypersensitivity Reactions, 384
 - Type II: Cytotoxic Reactions, 391
 - Type III: Immune Complex Reactions, 391
 - Type IV: Delayed Hypersensitivity Reactions, 392
 - Type V: Stimulatory Reactions, 392
- Autoimmunity, 392
 - Sjögren's Syndrome, 393
 - Goodpasture's Syndrome, 394

23 Cancer Development, 396

M. Linda Workman

- Pathophysiology, 396
 - Biology of Normal Cells, 397
 - Biology of Abnormal Cells, 398
- Cancer Development, 399
 - Carcinogenesis/Oncogenesis, 399
 - Cancer Classification, 401
 - Cancer Grading, Ploidy, and Staging, 401
 - Cancer Etiology and Genetic Risk, 403
- Cancer Prevention, 406
 - Primary Prevention, 406
 - Secondary Prevention, 407

24 Care of Patients with Cancer, 408

M. Linda Workman

- General Disease-Related Consequences of Cancer, 409
 - Reduced Immunity and Blood-Producing Functions, 409
 - Altered GI Structure and Function, 409
 - Motor and Sensory Deficits, 409
 - Reduced Oxygenation, 410
- Cancer Management, 410
 - Surgery, 410
 - Radiation Therapy, 411
 - Chemotherapy, 414
 - Hormonal Manipulation, 424
 - Photodynamic Therapy, 425
 - Immunotherapy: Biological Response Modifiers, 426
 - Targeted Therapy, 427
- Oncologic Emergencies, 430
 - Sepsis and Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation, 430
 - Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone, 430
 - Spinal Cord Compression, 431
 - Hypercalcemia, 431
 - Superior Vena Cava Syndrome, 431
 - Tumor Lysis Syndrome, 432

25 Care of Patients with Infection, 434

Donna D. Ignatavicius

- Overview of the Infectious Process, 434
 - Transmission of Infectious Agents, 435
 - Physiologic Defenses for Infection, 437
- Health Promotion and Maintenance, 437
 - Infection Control in Inpatient Health Care Agencies, 437

Infection Control in Community-Based Settings, 438

Methods of Infection Control, 438

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Transmission-Based Guidelines, 440

Standard Precautions, 440

Transmission-Based Precautions, 440

Multidrug-Resistant Organism Infections and Colonizations, 440

Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 442

Vancomycin-Resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE), 443

Other Multidrug-Resistant Organisms, 443

Occupational Exposure to Sources of Infection, 443

Problems from Inadequate Antimicrobial Therapy, 443

Critical Issues: Bioterrorism and Emerging Infections, 449

UNIT VI PROBLEMS OF PROTECTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE SKIN, HAIR, AND NAILS

26 Assessment of the Skin, Hair, and Nails, 451

Janice Cuzzell and M. Linda Workman

Anatomy and Physiology Review, 452

Structure of the Skin, 452

Structure of the Skin Appendages, 453

Functions of the Skin, 454

Skin Changes Associated with Aging, 454

Assessment Methods, 454

Patient History, 454

Nutrition Status, 458

Family History and Genetic Risk, 458

Current Health Problems, 458

Skin Assessment, 458

Hair Assessment, 463

Nail Assessment, 463

Skin Assessment Techniques for Patients with Darker Skin, 465

Psychosocial Assessment, 467

Diagnostic Assessment, 467

27 Care of Patients with Skin Problems, 470

Janice Cuzzell and M. Linda Workman

Minor Skin Irritations, 471

Dryness, 471

Pruritus, 471

Sunburn, 472

Urticaria, 472

Trauma, 472

Pressure Ulcers, 474

Common Infections, 490

Cutaneous Anthrax, 494

Parasitic Disorders, 496

Pediculosis, 496

Scabies, 496

Bedbugs, 496

Common Inflammations, 497

Psoriasis, 498

- Benign Tumors, 501
 - Cysts, 501
 - Seborrheic Keratoses, 501
 - Keloids, 501
 - Nevi, 502
- Skin Cancer, 502
- Plastic or Reconstructive Surgery, 505
- Other Skin Disorders, 508
 - Acne, 508
 - Lichen Planus, 508
 - Pemphigus Vulgaris, 508
 - Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis, 508
 - Stevens-Johnson Syndrome, 508
 - Leprosy, 509

28 Care of Patients with Burns, 511

Tammy Coffee

- Introduction to the Burn Problem, 512
- Health Promotion and Maintenance, 519
- Resuscitation Phase of Burn Injury, 520
- Acute Phase of Burn Injury, 530
- Rehabilitative Phase of Burn Injury, 538

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: OXYGENATION AND TISSUE PERFUSION

UNIT VII PROBLEMS OF OXYGENATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

29 Assessment of the Respiratory System, 543

Harry C. Rees

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 544
 - Upper Respiratory Tract, 544
 - Lower Respiratory Tract, 546
 - Oxygen Delivery and the Oxygen-Hemoglobin Dissociation Curve, 547
 - Respiratory Changes Associated with Aging, 548
- Assessment Methods, 548
 - Patient History, 548
 - Physical Assessment, 551
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 555
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 556

30 Care of Patients Requiring Oxygen Therapy or Tracheostomy, 562

Harry C. Rees

- Oxygen Therapy, 563
- Tracheostomy, 570

31 Care of Patients with Noninfectious Upper Respiratory Problems, 580

M. Linda Workman

- Disorders of the Nose and Sinuses, 581
 - Fracture of the Nose, 581
 - Epistaxis, 582
 - Nasal Polyps, 583
 - Cancer of the Nose and Sinuses, 583
 - Facial Trauma, 583
- Obstructive Sleep Apnea, 584
- Disorders of the Larynx, 585
 - Vocal Cord Paralysis, 585
 - Vocal Cords Nodules and Polyps, 585

- Laryngeal Trauma, 586
- Other Upper Airway Disorders, 586
 - Upper Airway Obstruction, 586
 - Neck Trauma, 588
 - Head and Neck Cancer, 588

32 Care of Patients with Noninfectious Lower Respiratory Problems, 600

M. Linda Workman

- Chronic Airflow Limitation, 601
 - Asthma, 601
 - Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, 611
- Cystic Fibrosis, 623
- Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension, 626
- Interstitial Pulmonary Diseases, 627
 - Sarcoidosis, 627
 - Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis, 628
- Occupational Pulmonary Disease, 628
- Bronchiolitis Obliterans Organizing Pneumonia, 630
- Lung Cancer, 630

33 Care of Patients with Infectious Respiratory Problems, 640

M. Linda Workman

- Disorders of the Nose and Sinuses, 641
 - Rhinitis, 641
 - Sinusitis, 641
- Disorders of the Oral Pharynx and Tonsils, 642
 - Pharyngitis, 642
 - Tonsillitis, 644
 - Peritonsillar Abscess, 644
- Disorders of the Larynx and Lungs, 644
 - Laryngitis, 644
 - Seasonal Influenza, 645
 - Pandemic Pneumonia, 645
 - Pneumonia, 647
 - Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS), 652
 - Pulmonary Tuberculosis, 653
 - Lung Abscess, 658
 - Inhalation Anthrax, 658
 - Pulmonary Empyema, 659

34 Care of Critically Ill Patients with Respiratory Problems, 662

Ronald L. Hickman

- Pulmonary Embolism, 663
- Acute Respiratory Failure, 669
- Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome, 671
- The Patient Requiring Intubation and Ventilation, 674
- Chest Trauma, 682

UNIT VIII PROBLEMS OF CARDIAC OUTPUT AND TISSUE PERFUSION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

35 Assessment of the Cardiovascular System, 686

Tami Kathleen Little

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 687

- Heart, 687
- Vascular System, 690
- Cardiovascular Changes Associated with Aging, 692
- Assessment Methods, 692
- Patient History, 692
- Functional History, 696
- Physical Assessment, 697
- Psychosocial Assessment, 701
- Diagnostic Assessment, 701
- 36 Care of Patients with Dysrhythmias, 711**
Pamela C. Zickafoose
 - Review of Cardiac Conduction System, 711
 - Electrocardiography, 713
 - Lead Systems, 713
 - Continuous Electrocardiographic Monitoring, 714
 - Electrocardiographic Complexes, Segments, and Intervals, 714
 - Determination of Heart Rate, 717
 - Electrocardiographic Rhythm Analysis, 718
 - Normal Rhythms, 718
 - Dysrhythmias, 719
- 37 Care of Patients with Cardiac Problems, 744**
Laura M. Dechant
 - Heart Failure, 745
 - Valvular Heart Disease, 758
 - Inflammations and Infections, 763
 - Infective Endocarditis, 763
 - Pericarditis, 765
 - Rheumatic Carditis, 766
 - Cardiomyopathy, 767
- 38 Care of Patients with Vascular Problems, 772**
Tami Kathleen Little
 - Arteriosclerosis and Atherosclerosis, 772
 - Hypertension, 775
 - Peripheral Arterial Disease, 785
 - Acute Peripheral Arterial Occlusion, 791
 - Aneurysms of Central Arteries, 792
 - Aneurysms of the Peripheral Arteries, 796
 - Aortic Dissection, 796
 - Buerger's Disease, 797
 - Subclavian Steal, 797
 - Thoracic Outlet Syndrome, 797
 - Raynaud's Phenomenon/Disease, 798
 - Peripheral Venous Disease, 798
 - Venous Thromboembolism, 799
 - Venous Insufficiency, 803
 - Varicose Veins, 805
 - Phlebitis, 805
 - Vascular Trauma, 805
- 39 Care of Patients with Shock, 808**
M. Linda Workman
 - Overview, 809
 - Review of Oxygenation and Tissue Perfusion, 809
 - Types of Shock, 811
 - Hypovolemic Shock, 812
 - Sepsis and Septic Shock, 819

- 40 Care of Patients with Acute Coronary Syndromes, 828**
Laura M. Dechant
 - Pathophysiology, 829
 - Chronic Stable Angina Pectoris, 829
 - Acute Coronary Syndromes, 829
 - Etiology and Genetic Risk, 831
 - Incidence/Prevalence, 831
 - Health Promotion and Maintenance, 831
 - Reducing Elevated Serum Lipid Levels, 832
 - Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies, 833
 - Eliminating Tobacco Use, 833
 - Increasing Physical Activity, 833
 - Managing Other Factors, 833
 - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 834

UNIT IX	PROBLEMS OF TISSUE PERFUSION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM
----------------	---

- 41 Assessment of the Hematologic System, 855**
M. Linda Workman
 - Anatomy and Physiology Review, 856
 - Bone Marrow, 856
 - Blood Components, 856
 - Accessory Organs of Blood Formation, 858
 - Hemostasis/Blood Clotting, 858
 - Anti-Clotting Forces, 859
 - Hematologic Changes Associated with Aging, 860
 - Assessment Methods, 861
 - Patient History, 861
 - Nutrition Status, 862
 - Family History and Genetic Risk, 862
 - Current Health Problems, 862
 - Physical Assessment, 862
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 864
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 864
- 42 Care of Patients with Hematologic Problems, 869**
Katherine I. Byar
 - Red Blood Cell Disorders, 870
 - Anemia, 870
 - Polycythemia, 878
 - Myelodysplastic Syndromes, 879
 - White Blood Cell Disorders, 880
 - Leukemia, 880
 - Malignant Lymphomas, 892
 - Coagulation Disorders, 895
 - Platelet Disorders, 895
 - Clotting Factor Disorders, 896
 - Transfusion Therapy, 897
 - Pretransfusion Responsibilities, 897
 - Transfusion Responsibilities, 899
 - Types of Transfusions, 899

Acute Transfusion Reactions, 900
Autologous Blood Transfusions, 901

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: MOBILITY, SENSATION, AND COGNITION

UNIT X PROBLEMS OF MOBILITY, SENSATION, AND COGNITION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

- 43 **Assessment of the Nervous System, 905**
Rachel L. Palmieri
Anatomy and Physiology Review, 906
Nervous System Cells: Structure and Function, 906
Central Nervous System: Structure and Function, 906
Peripheral Nervous System: Structure and Function, 910
Autonomic Nervous System: Structure and Function, 911
Neurologic Changes Associated with Aging, 911
Assessment Methods, 913
Patient History, 913
Physical Assessment, 913
Psychosocial Assessment, 919
Diagnostic Assessment, 919
- 44 **Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Brain, 927**
Rachel L. Palmieri
Headaches, 928
Migraine Headache, 928
Cluster Headache, 931
Seizures and Epilepsy, 932
Infections, 937
Meningitis, 937
Encephalitis, 940
Parkinson Disease, 941
Alzheimer's Disease, 946
Huntington Disease, 955
- 45 **Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Spinal Cord, 959**
Rachel L. Palmieri and Donna D. Ignatavicius
Back Pain, 960
Lumbosacral Back Pain (Low Back Pain), 960
Cervical Neck Pain, 966
Spinal Cord Injury, 967
Spinal Cord Tumors, 976
Multiple Sclerosis, 978
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis, 983
- 46 **Care of Patients with Problems of the Peripheral Nervous System, 986**
Rachel L. Palmieri
Guillain-Barré Syndrome, 987
Myasthenia Gravis, 991
Peripheral Nerve Trauma, 997
Restless Legs Syndrome, 999
Diseases of the Cranial Nerves, 999

Trigeminal Neuralgia, 1000
Facial Paralysis, 1001

- 47 **Care of Critically Ill Patients with Neurologic Problems, 1004**
Rachel L. Palmieri and Donna D. Ignatavicius
Transient Ischemic Attack and Reversible Ischemic Neurologic Deficit, 1005
Stroke (Brain Attack), 1005
Traumatic Brain Injury, 1020
Brain Tumors, 1031
Brain Abscess, 1036

UNIT XI PROBLEMS OF SENSATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE SENSORY SYSTEM

- 48 **Assessment of the Eye and Vision, 1039**
M. Linda Workman
Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1040
Structure, 1040
Function, 1041
Eye Changes Associated with Aging, 1043
Health Promotion and Maintenance, 1044
Assessment Methods, 1045
Patient History, 1045
Physical Assessment, 1046
Psychosocial Assessment, 1048
Diagnostic Assessment, 1048
- 49 **Care of Patients with Eye and Vision Problems, 1052**
M. Linda Workman
Eyelid Disorders, 1052
Blepharitis, 1053
Entropion and Ectropion, 1053
Hordeolum, 1053
Chalazion, 1055
Keratoconjunctivitis Sicca, 1056
Conjunctival Disorders, 1056
Hemorrhage, 1056
Conjunctivitis, 1056
Trachoma, 1056
Corneal Disorders, 1057
Corneal Abrasion, Ulceration, and Infection, 1057
Keratoconus and Corneal Opacities, 1057
Cataract, 1059
Glaucoma, 1062
Vitreous Hemorrhage, 1067
Uveitis, 1068
Retinal Disorders, 1068
Macular Degeneration, 1068
Retinal Holes, Tears, and Detachments, 1069
Retinitis Pigmentosa, 1069
Refractive Errors, 1070
Trauma, 1071
Hyphema, 1071
Contusion, 1071
Foreign Bodies, 1071
Lacerations, 1071
Penetrating Injuries, 1072
Ocular Melanoma, 1072
Reduced Vision, 1073

50 Assessment of the Ear and Hearing, 1077*Judith Laver Bierschbach*

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1077
 - Structure, 1077
 - Function, 1079
 - Ear and Hearing Changes Associated with Aging, 1079
- Assessment Methods, 1080
 - Patient History, 1080
 - Physical Assessment, 1082
 - General Auditory Assessment, 1084
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 1084
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 1084

51 Care of Patients with Ear and Hearing Problems, 1088*Judith Laver Bierschbach*

- Conditions Affecting the External Ear, 1088
 - External Otitis, 1089
 - Furuncle, 1090
 - Perichondritis, 1090
 - Cerumen or Foreign Bodies, 1090
- Conditions Affecting the Middle Ear, 1092
 - Otitis Media, 1092
 - Mastoiditis, 1093
 - Trauma, 1094
 - Neoplasms, 1094
- Conditions Affecting the Inner Ear, 1095
 - Tinnitus, 1095
 - Vertigo and Dizziness, 1095
 - Labyrinthitis, 1095
 - Ménière's Disease, 1096
 - Acoustic Neuroma, 1097
- Hearing Loss, 1097

UNIT XII PROBLEMS OF MOBILITY: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

52 Assessment of the Musculoskeletal System, 1106*Donna D. Ignatavicius*

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1107
 - Skeletal System, 1107
 - Muscular System, 1109
- Musculoskeletal Changes Associated with Aging, 1109
- Assessment Methods, 1110
 - Patient History, 1110
 - Assessment of the Skeletal System, 1111
 - Assessment of the Muscular System, 1113
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 1113
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 1113

53 Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal Problems, 1119*Donna D. Ignatavicius*

- Metabolic Bone Diseases, 1120
 - Osteoporosis, 1120
 - Osteomalacia, 1127
 - Paget's Disease of the Bone, 1128
- Osteomyelitis, 1131
- Benign Bone Tumors, 1133
- Bone Cancer, 1134

Disorders of the Hand, 1138

- Dupuytren's Contracture, 1138
- Ganglion, 1138

Disorders of the Foot, 1138

- Foot Deformities, 1138
- Morton's Neuroma, 1139
- Plantar Fasciitis, 1139
- Other Problems of the Foot, 1139

Scoliosis, 1139**Progressive Muscular Dystrophies, 1140****54 Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal****Trauma, 1143***Donna D. Ignatavicius*

- Fractures, 1144
- Fractures of Specific Sites, 1159
 - Upper Extremity Fractures, 1159
 - Lower Extremity Fractures, 1159
 - Fractures of the Chest and Pelvis, 1162
 - Compression Fractures of the Spine, 1162
 - Fractures at Other Sites, 1163
- Amputations, 1163
- Complex Regional Pain Syndrome, 1168
- Sports-Related Injuries, 1169
 - Knee Injuries: Patellofemoral Pain Syndrome, 1169
 - Knee Injuries: Meniscus, 1169
 - Knee Injuries: Ligaments, 1170
- Other Injuries, 1170
 - Carpal Tunnel Syndrome, 1170
 - Tendinopathy and Joint Dislocation, 1172
 - Strains and Sprains, 1173
 - Rotator Cuff Injuries, 1173

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: NUTRITION, METABOLISM, AND BOWEL ELIMINATION

UNIT XIII PROBLEMS OF DIGESTION, NUTRITION, AND ELIMINATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM

55 Assessment of the Gastrointestinal System, 1177*Donna D. Ignatavicius*

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1178
 - Overview of the Gastrointestinal System, 1178
 - Oral Cavity, 1179
 - Esophagus, 1179
 - Stomach, 1179
 - Pancreas, 1179
 - Liver and Gallbladder, 1179
 - Small Intestine, 1180
 - Large Intestine, 1180
- Gastrointestinal Changes Associated with Aging, 1180
- Assessment Methods, 1181
 - Patient History, 1181
 - Nutrition History, 1181
 - Family History and Genetic Risk, 1182
 - Current Health Problems, 1182
 - Physical Assessment, 1183

- Psychosocial Assessment, 1184
- Diagnostic Assessment, 1184
- 56 **Care of Patients with Oral Cavity Problems, 1192**
Cherie R. Rebar
 - Stomatitis, 1193
 - Oral Tumors, 1195
 - Premalignant Lesions, 1195
 - Oral Cancer, 1195
 - Disorders of the Salivary Glands, 1200
 - Acute Sialadenitis, 1200
 - Post-Irradiation Sialadenitis, 1201
 - Salivary Gland Tumors, 1201
- 57 **Care of Patients with Esophageal Problems, 1203**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease, 1203
 - Hiatal Hernia, 1208
 - Esophageal Tumors, 1211
 - Esophageal Diverticula, 1217
 - Esophageal Trauma, 1218
- 58 **Care of Patients with Stomach Disorders, 1220**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Gastritis, 1220
 - Peptic Ulcer Disease, 1225
 - Zollinger-Ellison Syndrome, 1233
 - Gastric Cancer, 1234
- 59 **Care of Patients with Noninflammatory Intestinal Disorders, 1240**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Irritable Bowel Syndrome, 1240
 - Herniation, 1243
 - Colorectal Cancer, 1245
 - Intestinal Obstruction, 1254
 - Abdominal Trauma, 1258
 - Polyps, 1260
 - Hemorrhoids, 1260
 - Malabsorption Syndrome, 1262
- 60 **Care of Patients with Inflammatory Intestinal Disorders, 1266**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Acute Inflammatory Bowel Disorders, 1266
 - Appendicitis, 1267
 - Peritonitis, 1268
 - Gastroenteritis, 1270
 - Chronic Inflammatory Bowel Disease, 1272
 - Ulcerative Colitis, 1272
 - Crohn's Disease, 1280
 - Diverticular Disease, 1284
 - Anal Disorders, 1287
 - Anorectal Abscess, 1287
 - Anal Fissure, 1287
 - Anal Fistula, 1288
 - Parasitic Infection, 1288
 - Food Poisoning, 1289
 - Salmonellosis, 1289
 - Staphylococcal Infection, 1290
 - Escherichia coli* Infection, 1290
 - Botulism, 1290
- 61 **Care of Patients with Liver Problems, 1293**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Cirrhosis, 1293
 - Hepatitis, 1305
 - Fatty Liver (Steatosis), 1309

- Hepatic Abscess, 1310
- Liver Trauma, 1310
- Cancer of the Liver, 1310
- Liver Transplantation, 1311

- 62 **Care of Patients with Problems of the Biliary System and Pancreas, 1315**
Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Gallbladder Disorders, 1316
 - Cholecystitis, 1316
 - Cancer of the Gallbladder, 1320
 - Pancreatic Disorders, 1321
 - Acute Pancreatitis, 1321
 - Chronic Pancreatitis, 1326
 - Pancreatic Abscess, 1328
 - Pancreatic Pseudocyst, 1329
 - Pancreatic Cancer, 1329
- 63 **Care of Patients with Malnutrition and Obesity, 1335**
Cherie R. Rebar and Donna D. Ignatavicius
 - Nutrition Standards for Health Promotion and Maintenance, 1336
 - Nutritional Assessment, 1337
 - Initial Nutritional Screening, 1337
 - Anthropometric Measurements, 1337
 - Malnutrition, 1340
 - Obesity, 1349

UNIT XIV PROBLEMS OF REGULATION AND METABOLISM: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

- 64 **Assessment of the Endocrine System, 1358**
M. Linda Workman
 - Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1359
 - Hypothalamus and Pituitary Glands, 1361
 - Gonads, 1361
 - Adrenal Glands, 1362
 - Thyroid Gland, 1363
 - Parathyroid Glands, 1364
 - Pancreas, 1364
 - Endocrine Changes Associated with Aging, 1365
 - Assessment Methods, 1365
 - Patient History, 1365
 - Physical Assessment, 1367
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 1368
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 1369
- 65 **Care of Patients with Pituitary and Adrenal Gland Problems, 1371**
M. Linda Workman
 - Disorders of the Anterior Pituitary Gland, 1372
 - Hypopituitarism, 1372
 - Hyperpituitarism, 1374
 - Disorders of the Posterior Pituitary Gland, 1378
 - Diabetes Insipidus, 1378
 - Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone, 1380
 - Disorders of the Adrenal Gland, 1381
 - Adrenal Gland Hypofunction, 1381
 - Adrenal Gland Hyperfunction, 1384

66 Care of Patients with Problems of the Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands, 1393

M. Linda Workman

- Thyroid Disorders, 1393
 - Hyperthyroidism, 1393
 - Hypothyroidism, 1400
 - Thyroiditis, 1404
 - Thyroid Cancer, 1405
- Parathyroid Disorders, 1406
 - Hyperparathyroidism, 1406
 - Hypoparathyroidism, 1408

67 Care of Patients with Diabetes Mellitus, 1410

Margaret Elaine McLeod

- Pathophysiology, 1411
 - Classification of Diabetes, 1411
 - The Endocrine Pancreas, 1411
 - Glucose Homeostasis, 1411
 - Absence of Insulin, 1412
 - Acute Complications of Diabetes, 1413
 - Chronic Complications of Diabetes, 1413
 - Etiology and Genetic Risk, 1416
 - Incidence/Prevalence, 1417
- Health Promotion and Maintenance, 1418
- Patient-Centered Collaborative Care, 1418

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: URINARY ELIMINATION

UNIT XV PROBLEMS OF EXCRETION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE RENAL/URINARY SYSTEM

68 Assessment of the Renal/Urinary System, 1465

Chris Winkelman

- Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1466
 - Kidneys, 1466
 - Ureters, 1471
 - Urinary Bladder, 1471
 - Urethra, 1472
 - Kidney and Urinary Changes Associated with Aging, 1472
- Assessment Methods, 1473
 - Patient History, 1473
 - Physical Assessment, 1475
 - Psychosocial Assessment, 1476
 - Diagnostic Assessment, 1476

69 Care of Patients with Urinary Problems, 1489

Chris Winkelman

- Infectious Disorders, 1490
 - Cystitis, 1490
 - Urethritis, 1496
- Noninfectious Disorders, 1497
 - Urethral Strictures, 1497
 - Urinary Incontinence, 1497
 - Urolithiasis, 1507
 - Urothelial Cancer, 1512
 - Bladder Trauma, 1516

70 Care of Patients with Renal Disorders, 1518

Chris Winkelman

- Congenital Disorders, 1518
 - Polycystic Kidney Disease, 1518
- Obstructive Disorders, 1522

Hydronephrosis, Hydroureter, and Urethral Stricture, 1522

Infectious Disorders: Pyelonephritis, 1523

Immunologic Kidney Disorders, 1526

Acute Glomerulonephritis, 1527

Rapidly Progressive Glomerulonephritis, 1528

Chronic Glomerulonephritis, 1528

Nephrotic Syndrome, 1529

Immunologic Interstitial and

Tubulointerstitial Disorders, 1530

Degenerative Disorders, 1530

Nephrosclerosis, 1530

Renovascular Disease, 1530

Diabetic Nephropathy, 1531

Renal Cell Carcinoma, 1532

Kidney Trauma, 1533

71 Care of Patients with Acute Kidney Injury and Chronic Kidney Disease, 1537

Linda LaCharity

Acute Kidney Injury, 1538

Chronic Kidney Disease, 1547

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: SEXUALITY

UNIT XVI PROBLEMS OF REPRODUCTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

72 Assessment of the Reproductive System, 1575

Donna D. Ignatavicius

Anatomy and Physiology Review, 1576

Structure and Function of the Female

Reproductive System, 1576

Structure and Function of the Male

Reproductive System, 1577

Reproductive Changes Associated with

Aging, 1578

Assessment Methods, 1578

Patient History, 1578

Physical Assessment, 1580

Psychosocial Assessment, 1581

Diagnostic Assessment, 1581

73 Care of Patients with Breast Disorders, 1588

Mary Justice

Benign Breast Disorders, 1588

Fibroadenoma, 1589

Fibrocystic Breast Condition, 1589

Ductal Ectasia, 1590

Intraductal Papilloma, 1590

Issues of Large-Breasted Women, 1590

Issues of Small-Breasted Women, 1590

Gynecomastia, 1591

Breast Cancer, 1591

74 Care of Patients with Gynecologic Problems, 1611

Donna D. Ignatavicius

Endometriosis, 1611

Dysfunctional Uterine Bleeding, 1613

Vulvovaginitis, 1613

Toxic Shock Syndrome, 1614

Pelvic Organ Prolapse, 1615

Benign Neoplasms, 1617

- Ovarian Cyst, 1617
- Uterine Leiomyoma, 1617
- Bartholin Cyst, 1620
- Cervical Polyp, 1621
- Gynecologic Cancers, 1621
 - Endometrial (Uterine) Cancer, 1621
 - Cervical Cancer, 1624
 - Ovarian Cancer, 1626
- 75 Care of Male Patients with Reproductive Problems, 1629
 - Donna D. Ignatavicius*
 - Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia, 1630
 - Prostate Cancer, 1637
 - Erectile Dysfunction, 1642
 - Testicular Cancer, 1643
 - Other Problems Affecting the Testes and Adjacent Structures, 1646
 - Hydrocele, 1646
 - Spermatocele, 1647
 - Varicocele, 1647
 - Cancer of the Penis, 1647
 - Phimosis and Paraphimosis, 1648
 - Priapism, 1648
 - Prostatitis, 1649
 - Epididymitis, 1650
 - Orchitis, 1650
- 76 Care of Patients with Sexually Transmitted Disease, 1652
 - Shirley E. Van Zandt*
 - Overview, 1652
 - Infections Associated with Ulcers, 1654
 - Syphilis, 1654
 - Genital Herpes, 1656
 - Infections of the Epithelial Structures, 1658
 - Condylomata Acuminata (Genital Warts), 1658
 - Gonorrhea, 1659
 - Chlamydia Infection, 1662
 - Other Gynecologic Conditions, 1663
 - Pelvic Inflammatory Disease, 1663
 - Vaginal Infections, 1666
 - Other Sexually Transmitted Diseases, 1666
- Bibliography, 1668
- Appendixes
 - A Do-Not-Use Abbreviations and Symbols, 1720
 - B Communication Quick Reference for Spanish-Speaking Patients, 1723
- Glossary, 1727
- NCLEX® Examination Challenge Answer Key, AK-1
- Illustration Credits, IC-1

GUIDE TO SPECIAL FEATURES

ASSESSMENT USING GORDON'S FUNCTIONAL HEALTH PATTERNS

Acid-Base Assessment, 204
Cardiovascular Assessment, 693
Ear and Hearing Assessment, 1080
Endocrine Assessment, 1366
Eye and Vision Assessment, 1045
Fluid and Electrolyte Assessment, 175
Gastrointestinal Assessment, 1182
Hematologic Assessment, 861
Musculoskeletal Assessment, 1110
Neurologic Assessment, 914
Renal/Urinary Assessment, 1474
Reproductive Assessment, 1580
Respiratory Assessment, 550

BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Acute Adrenal Insufficiency, 1382
AIDS, Infection Control for Home Care, 379
Altitude-Related Illnesses, Preventing, Recognizing, and Treating, 152
Alzheimer's Disease, Promoting Communication, 952
Anaphylaxis, 390
Anterior Nosebleed, 582
Anticoagulant Therapy, 801
Anticoagulant, Fibrinolytic, or Antiplatelet Therapy, Prevention of Injury, 668
Arteriovenous Fistula or Arteriovenous Graft, 1562
Artificial Airway, Suctioning, 574
Aspiration Prevention During Swallowing, 577, 595
Autologous Blood Salvage and Transfusion, 278
Autonomic Dysreflexia, 974
Benzodiazepine Overdose, 293
Breast Mass Assessment, 1598
Breast Reconstruction, Postoperative Care, 1605
Burns, 520
Cancer, Colorectal, Screening Recommendations, 1246
Cancer, Gynecologic, Brachytherapy, 1623
Caregiver Stress Reduction, 954
Carpal Tunnel Syndrome Prevention, 1171
Catheter-Related Infection Prevention, 1492
Cervical Discectomy and Fusion, 966
Chest Discomfort, 836
Chest Tube Drainage Systems, 637
Colonoscopy, 1190
Communicating with Non-English-Speaking Patients, 33
Communicating with Patients Unable to Speak, 587
Continuous Passive Motion Machine, 330
Contracture Prevention, 537
Contrast Agent Precautions for Diagnostic Testing, 921
Contrast Media, Assessing the Patient, 1484
Dark Skin, Assessing Changes, 467
Dehydration, 177

Diarrhea, Skin Care, 1263
Driver Safety Improvement, Older Adults, 20
Dying Patient and the Family, Psychosocial Interventions, 116
Dysrhythmias, 731
Ear Irrigation, 1091
Eardrops Instillation, 1089
Electroencephalogram, 922
Emergency Department, Maintaining Patient and Staff Safety, 124
Endocrine Testing, 1369
Endotracheal Tube, Oral and Nasal, 676
Energy Conservation, 890
Extravasation Documentation, 417
Extremity Fracture, 1150
Eye Patch Application, 1055
Eyedrops Instillation, 1050
Fall Prevention in Older Adults, 27
Falls Precautions, 176
Feeding Tube Maintenance, 1346
Fires in Health Care Facility, Response, 156
Fluid Resuscitation for Burns, 526
Fluid Volume Management, 1553
Fundoplication, Assessment of Complications, 1211
Gait Training, 98
Genetic Testing and Counseling, 76
Genital Herpes, 1657
Hand Hygiene, 438
Hearing Impairment and Communication, 1103
Heart Transplant Rejection, 770
Heat Stroke, 139
Hemodialysis, 1563
HIV, Occupational Postexposure Prophylaxis, 364
HIV, Recommendations for Preventing Transmission by Health Care Workers, 364
Home Hospice, Symptom Relief, 118
Hypertensive Crisis, 784
Hypokalemia, 185
Hypophysectomy, 1377
Hypovolemic Shock, 818
Immunosuppressed Patient, 371
Infection Risks, 437
Inflammatory Bowel Disease, Pain Control and Skin Care, 1278
Intraoperative Positioning, Prevention of Complications, 281
Lumbar Spinal Surgery, Assessment and Management of Complications, 964
Magnetic Resonance Imaging, 1116
Malignant Hyperthermia, 273
Mechanical Ventilation, 677
Meningitis, 939
Mental Status Assessment, 914
Musculoskeletal Injury, Assessment of Neurovascular Status, 1149
Myasthenia Gravis, Improving Nutrition, 995
Myelosuppression, 420
Myxedema Coma, 1403

Nasogastric Tube After Esophageal Surgery, 1216
 Nasogastric Tubes, 1232
 Neutropenia, 420
 Nursing Database, 913
 Nutritional Screening Assessment, 1337
 Ocular Irrigation, 1072
 Ocular Prosthesis, Insertion and Removal, 1073
 Ophthalmic Ointment Instillation, 1053
 Opioid Overdose, 299
 Oral Cavity Problems, 1194
 Osteoporosis and Assessment of Risk Factors, 1120
 Oxygen Therapy, 563
 Pain, Reducing Postoperatively with Nonpharmacologic Interventions, 299
 Paracentesis, 1300
 Parkinson Disease, 943
 Pericarditis, 766
 Perineal Comfort Promotion, 1287
 Perineal Wound Care, 1251
 Peripheral Venous Catheters, Placement, 214
 Peritoneal Dialysis Catheter, 1567
 Phlebostatic Axis Identification, 708
 Plasmapheresis Complications, 989
 Postmortem Care, 119
 Postoperative Hand-off Report, 285
 Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder Prevention in Staff During a Mass Casualty Event, 162
 Pressure Ulcer Prevention, 476
 Pressure Ulcers and Wound Management, 483
 Prostatectomy, 1639
 Pulmonary Embolism Care, 665
 Pulmonary Embolism Prevention, 663
 Radioactive Sealed Implants, 413
 Recombinant Tissue Plasminogen Activator Administration, Nursing Interventions, 1014
 Relocation Stress in Older Adults, Minimizing Effects, 19
 Reproductive Health Problems, 1580
 Restraint Alternatives, 28
 Sick Cell Crisis, 874
 Sinus Surgery, 642
 Skin Problems, Nursing History, 458
 Spinal Cord Injury and Motor Function Assessment, 969
 Sports-Related Injuries, 1169
 Surgical Wound Evisceration, 296
 Systemic Sclerosis and Esophagitis, 348
 Thrombocytopenia, 889
 Thrombocytopenia, Prevention of Injury, 421
 Thyroid Storm, 1400
 Tonic-Clonic or Complete Partial Seizure, 935
 Total Parenteral Nutrition, 1348
 Tracheostomy Care, 576
 Transfer Techniques, 97
 Transfusion Therapy, 898
 Transfusion, Older Adult, 899
 Transurethral Resection of the Prostate, 1636
 Tube Feeding Care and Maintenance, 1345
 Urinary Incontinence Reduction with Bladder Training and Habit Training, 1504
 Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia Prevention, 648
 Vertebroplasty or Kyphoplasty, Nursing Care, 1163
 Viral Hepatitis Prevention in Health Care Workers, 1307
 Vision Reduction, Care, 1074

Wandering, Prevention in Hospitalized Patients, 953
 Wound Monitoring, 489
 Z-Track Injection Method, 877

COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Adrenal Gland Hypofunction, 1384
 Anaphylaxis, 390
 Anthrax, Prophylaxis and Treatment, 659
 Antiepileptic Drugs, 934
 Arthritis and Connective Tissue Disease, 338
 Asthma, 607
 Burns, 534
 Cardiac Arrest, 734
 Coronary Artery Disease, 838
 Diabetes Insipidus, 1379
 Diabetes Mellitus, 1423
 Dysrhythmias, 723
 Eye Inflammation and Infection, 1054
 Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease, 1207
 Glaucoma, 1066
 HIV Infection, 372
 Hypertension, 781
 Hyperthyroidism, 1398
 Hypovolemic Shock, 819
 Kidney Disease, 1544
 Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 495
 Nausea and Vomiting, Chemotherapy-Induced, 423
 Osteoporosis, 1126
 Pain, Postoperative, 298
 Peptic Ulcer Disease, 1223
 Plaque Psoriasis, 501
 Pulmonary Embolism, 666
 Tuberculosis, 656
 Urinary Incontinence, 1502
 Urinary Tract Infections, 1495
 Vasodilators and Inotropes, Intravenous, 843

CONCEPT MAP

Bacterial Pneumonia, 649
 Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia, 1634
 Cancer Pain, Chronic, 42
 Cirrhosis, 1301
 Diabetes Mellitus—Type 2, 1422
 End-Stage Kidney Disease, 1554
 Glaucoma, 1064
 Hypertension, 779
 Hypovolemic Shock, 815
 Multiple Sclerosis, 981
 Pressure Ulcer, 484
 Respiratory Acidosis (COPD Related), 615

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Analgesic Use in Older Adults with Pain and Dementia, 50
 Atrial Fibrillation and Obesity, 727
 Blood Pressure Self-Management, 785
 Bowel Control and Manual Disimpaction in Patients with Spinal Cord Injury, 103
 Breast Cancer and Dietary Soy Intake, 1600
 Burns and Music Therapy, 529

Cardiac Events and Post-Acute Care Programs, 851
 Colonoscopy, Pain and Anxiety Reduction, 1189
 Depression and Despair in Older Adults, Improvement Through Reflective Activities, 24
 Diabetes and Missed Prescribed Insulin Doses, 1432
 Emergency Department Visits and Homeless Adults, 130
 End-of-Life Care, Cultural Preferences in Developed Countries, 110
 Fractured Hip and Best Practices for Acute Pain Management, 1161
 Guideline Implementation, 253
 Hearing Loss in Older Adults, 1099
 Heart Failure Patients, Telephone Visits and Quality of Life, 758
 Heat Stroke, Predicting Factors, 138
 Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation and Infection Prevention, 888
 Intestinal Ostomies and Sexuality Challenges in Men, 1253
 Mechanical Ventilation and Turning, 673
 Medication Error Prevention Recommendations, 732
 Multiple Sclerosis and Sexual Function, 980
 Oral Hygiene in Older Adults, 1193
 Osteoporosis Diagnosis in Skilled Nursing Facilities, 1122
 Pain, Effect of Music Therapy and Relaxation Compared with Pain Management Teaching, 12
 Parkinson's Disease, Telehealth Technology, and Learning, 945
 Radiation Skin Effects and Skin Care Products, 414
 Septic Shock and Procalcitonin Levels, 824
 Smoking Cessation and Confidence, 598
 Strokes, Rates of Recurrence in Various Ethnic Groups, 1008
 Urinary Diversion for Bladder Cancer and Sexual Expression, 1515

FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

AIDS, 379
 Cancer, Oral, Older Adults, 1199
 Diabetic Foot, 1447
 Diabetic Patient, Home or Clinic Visit, 1461
 Hearing Loss, 1099
 Hysterectomy, Total Abdominal, 1620
 Infection Risk, 883
 Kidney Disease, Chronic, 1571
 Pneumonia, 652
 Postanesthesia Care Unit Discharge to Medical-Surgical Unit, 288
 Preoperative Patient, 250
 Seizures, Nursing Observations and Documentation, 936
 Sexually Transmitted Disease, 1655
 Testicular Lump, 1644
 Tracheostomy, 576
 Urinary Incontinence, 1500

HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

Amputation, Lower Extremity, 1168
 Breast Cancer Surgery, 1608
 Cataract Surgery, 1062
 Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, 623
 Colostomy, 1253

Heart Failure, 756
 Hyperpituitarism, Transsphenoidal or Endoscopic Nasal Hypophysectomy, 1377
 Inflammatory Bowel Disease, 1280
 Laryngectomy, 596
 Myocardial Infarction, 850
 Peripheral Vascular Disease, 791
 Pressure Ulcers, 490
 Pulmonary Embolism, 669
 Sepsis, 826
 Thyroid Dysfunction, 1405
 Ulcer Disease, 1233

KEY FEATURES

Acidosis, 204
 Adrenal Insufficiency, 1382
 AIDS, 365
 Alkalosis, 208
 Alzheimer's Disease, 948
 Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis, 983
 Anaphylaxis, 389
 Anemia, 871
 Angina and Myocardial Infarction, 835
 Anthrax, 659
 Asthma Control and Step System for Medication, 604
 Asthma, 603
 Autonomic Dysreflexia, 973
 Bowel Obstructions, Small and Large, 1255
 Brain Tumors, 1032
 Cancer, Gastric, Early Versus Advanced, 1235
 Cancer, Oral, 1196
 Cancer, Pancreatic, 1330
 Cervical Discectomy and Fusion, 967
 Cholecystitis, 1317
 Compartment Syndrome, 1146
 Cor Pulmonale, 614
 Diabetes Insipidus, 1378
 Endocarditis, Infective, 764
 Fluid Overload, 179
 Gastritis, 1222
 Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease, 1204
 GI Bleeding, 1227
 Giant Cell (Temporal) Arteritis, 351
 Guillain-Barré Syndrome, 987
 Heart Failure, Left-Sided, 749
 Heart Failure, Right-Sided, 749
 Heat Stroke, 138
 Hernias, 1209
 Hypercortisolism (Cushing's Disease/Syndrome), 1385
 Hyperthyroidism, 1394
 Hypothermia, 149
 Hypothyroidism, 1401
 Intracranial Pressure, Increased, 1014
 Kidney Disease, Chronic, Severe, 1551
 Kidney Injury, Acute, 1541
 Leukemia, Acute, 882
 Liver Trauma, 1310
 Meningitis, 938
 Migraine Headaches, 929
 Multiple Sclerosis, 979
 Myasthenia Gravis, 991

Nephrotic Syndrome, 1530
 Occupational Pulmonary Diseases, 629
 Osteomyelitis, Acute and Chronic, 1132
 Paget's Disease of the Bone, 1129
 Pancreatitis, Chronic, 1326
 Parkinson Disease, 942
 Peripheral Arterial Disease, Chronic, 786
 Peritonitis, 1268
 Pharyngitis, Acute Viral and Bacterial, 643
 Pituitary Hyperfunction, 1376
 Pituitary Hypofunction, 1373
 Polycystic Kidney Disease, 1520
 Pressure Ulcers, 480
 Pulmonary Edema, 755
 Pulmonary Emboli: Fat Embolism Versus Blood Clot Embolism, 1147
 Pulmonary Embolism, 664
 Pyelonephritis, Acute, 1524
 Pyelonephritis, Chronic, 1524
 Renovascular Disease, 1531
 Rheumatoid Arthritis, 334
 Shock, 810
 Skin Conditions, Inflammatory, 498
 Skin Infections, 491
 Spinal Cord Tumors, 977
 Stroke Syndromes, 1009
 Strokes, Left and Right Hemisphere, 1011
 Systemic Lupus Erythematosus and Systemic Sclerosis, 344
 Tachydysrhythmias and Bradydysrhythmias, Sustained, 719
 Tonsillitis, Acute, 644
 Toxic Shock Syndrome, 1615
 Transient Ischemic Attack, 1005
 Traumatic Brain Injury, 1021
 Tumors, Esophageal, 1213
 Ulcers, Lower Extremity, 788
 Uremia, 1547
 Urinary Tract Infection, 1493
 Valvular Heart Disease, 759

LABORATORY PROFILE

Acid-Base Assessment, 199
 Acid-Base Imbalances, 205
 Adrenal Gland Assessment, 1383
 Anticoagulation Therapy, Blood Tests, 667
 Blood Glucose Values, 1419
 Burn Assessment During the Resuscitation Phase, 524
 Cardiovascular Assessment, 702
 Connective Tissue Disease, 336
 Gastrointestinal Assessment, 1186
 Hematologic Assessment, 865
 Hypovolemic Shock, 817
 Kidney Disease, 1542
 Musculoskeletal Assessment, 1114
 Parathyroid Function, 1407
 Perioperative Assessment, 249
 Renal Function Blood Studies, 1477
 Reproductive Assessment, 1582
 Respiratory Assessment, 557
 Thyroid Function, 1396
 Urinalysis, 1478
 Urine Collections, 24-Hour, 1481

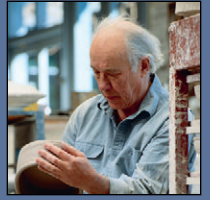
NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Acid-Base Imbalance, 202
 Burn Injury Complications, 521
 Cancer, 405
 Cardiovascular System Changes, 692
 Cerumen Impaction, 1091
 Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery, 850
 Coronary Artery Disease, 841
 Diverticulitis, 1286
 Dysrhythmias, 740
 Ear and Hearing Changes, 1080
 Electrolyte Values, 170
 Endocrine System Changes, 1365
 Eye and Vision Changes, 1043
 Fecal Impaction, Prevention, 1258
 Fluid Balance, 170
 Gastrointestinal System Changes, 1181
 Head Injury, 1025
 Heat-Related Illness Prevention, 137
 Hematologic Assessment, 861
 Immune Function Changes, 304
 Impaired Vision, Promoting Independent Living, 1065
 Infection, Risk Factors, 436
 Integumentary System Changes, 455
 Intraoperative Nursing Interventions, 279
 Low Back Pain, 960
 Malnutrition, Risk Assessment, 1340
 Musculoskeletal System Changes, 1109
 Nervous System Changes, 912
 Nutritional Intake, 1343
 Pain, 45
 Preoperative Considerations for Care Planning, 246
 Renal/Urinary System Changes, 1473
 Reproductive System Changes, 1579
 Respiratory Disorder, Chronic, 601
 Respiratory System Changes, 549
 Shock, Risk Factors, 823
 Skin Care, Postoperative, 294
 Spinal Cord Injury, 975
 Surgical Risk Factors, 245
 Thyroid Problems, 1404
 Total Hip Arthroplasty, 326
 Urinary Incontinence, 1499

PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Arthritis, Energy Conservation, 342
 Arthropod Bite/Sting Prevention, 143
 Asthma Management, 606
 Back Injury Prevention Through Proper Body Mechanics, 965
 Bariatric Surgery, Discharge Teaching, 1355
 Beta Blocker/Digoxin Therapy, 757
 Bleeding and Injury Prevention, 669
 Bleeding or Injury Prevention, 422
 Bleeding, Risk, 892
 Blood Glucose Testing, 1419
 Breast Cancer Surgery, Recovery, 1607
 Breathing Exercises, 619
 Cancer, Dietary Habits to Reduce Risk, 404

- Cancer, Skin, Prevention, 503
Cast Removal, Extremity Care, 1158
Catheter Care, Home, 1641
Central Venous Catheter, Home Care, 891
Cerumen Removal, Self-Ear Irrigation, 1081
Cervical Ablation Therapy, 1625
Cervical Biopsy, 1585
Chest Pain, Home Management, 852
Cirrhosis, 1304
Condoms, 1658
Coronary Artery Disease and Activity, 852
Coronary Artery Disease Prevention, 832
Cortisol Replacement Therapy, 1389
Death, Emotional Signs of Approaching, 112
Death, Physical Signs and Symptoms of Approaching, 111
Death, Signs That Has Occurred, 118
Diabetes and Exercise, 1442
Diabetes, Sick-Day Rules, 1456
Diabetes, Travel Tips, 1460
Dry Powder Inhaler, 610
Dry Skin Prevention, 471
Dysrhythmias, How to Prevent or Decrease, 740
Ear Infection or Trauma, Prevention, 1102
Ear Surgery, Recovery, 1094
Epilepsy, Health Teaching, 935
Epinephrine Injectors, 388
Excretory Urogram, 1484
Eyedrops, 1044
Foot Care Instructions, 1448
Gastritis Prevention, 1222
Gastroenteritis, Transmission Prevention, 1272
Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease, Postoperative Instructions, 1208
Glucosamine Supplements, 323
Halo Device, 975
Head Injury, Minor, 1030
Hearing Aid Care, 1101
HIV Testing Recommendations, 364
HIV, Nonoccupational Postexposure Prophylaxis, 363
Hyperkalemia, Nutritional Management, 188
Hypoglycemia, Home Treatment, 1453
Hypophosphatemia, Nutritional Management, 192
Hysterectomy, Total Abdominal, 1620
Ileostomy Care, 1279
Implantable Cardioverter-Defibrillator, 742
Infection Precautions, 826
Infection Prevention, 370, 420, 891
Inhaler Use, 609
Insulin Administration, Subcutaneous, 1435
Insulin Mixing, 1435
Joint Protection Instructions, 332
Kidney and Genitourinary Trauma, Prevention, 1534
Kidney and Urinary Problems, Prevention, 1550
Laparoscopic Nissen Fundoplication, Postoperative Instructions, 1210
Laryngectomy, Home Care, 597
Leg Exercises, Postoperative, 257
Lightning Strike Prevention, 147
Low Back Pain and Injury, Prevention, 961
Low Back Pain Exercises, 962
Lupus Erythematosus, Skin Protection, 346
Lyme Disease, Prevention and Early Detection, 353
Migraine Attack, Triggers, 931
Mouth Care for Mucositis, 424
MRSA, Prevention of Spread, 493
Myasthenia Gravis, Medication Teaching, 996
Ocular Compress Application, 1055
Oral Cancer Care, 1200
Oral Cavity Maintenance, 1193
Osteoarthritis or Rheumatoid Arthritis Exercises, 332
Pacemakers, Permanent, 741
Pancreatitis, Chronic, Enzyme Replacement, 1327
Pancreatitis, Chronic, Prevention of Exacerbations, 1328
Peak Flowmeter, 606
Pelvic Muscle Exercises, 1501
Peripheral Neuropathy and Safety, 1447
Peripheral Neuropathy, Chemotherapy-Induced, 425
Peripheral Vascular Disease, Foot Care, 791
Photodynamic Therapy, 426
Pneumonia Prevention, 648
Polycystic Kidney Disease, 1522
Polycythemia Vera, 879
Postmastectomy Exercises, 1603
Radioactive Isotope, Unsealed, Safety Precautions, 1398
Reflux Control, 1206
Respiratory Care, Perioperative, 256
Sexually Transmitted Diseases, Condom Use for Prevention, 362
Sexually Transmitted Diseases, Oral Antibiotic Therapy, 1665
Sickle Cell Crisis Prevention, 875
Skin Protection During Radiation Therapy, 413
Smoking Cessation, 605
Snakebite Prevention, 140
Sperm Banking, 1644
STEC (*E. coli*) Infection Prevention, 1290
Stroke, Risk Factors, 1007
Supraglottic Method of Swallowing, 595
Testicular Self-Examination, 1643
Total Hip Arthroplasty, 327
Toxic Shock Syndrome, Prevention, 1615
Urinary Calculi, 1512
Urinary Incontinence, 1507
Urinary Tract Infection Prevention, 1493
Vaginal Infections, 1614
Valvular Heart Disease, 763
Venous Insufficiency, 804
Viral Hepatitis, 1309
Viral Hepatitis, Prevention, 1307
Vulvovaginitis, Prevention, 1614
Warfarin (Coumadin), Interference of Food and Drugs, 803
Wellness Promotion Through Lifestyles and Practices, 16
West Nile Virus Prevention, 941



CHAPTER

1

Introduction to Medical-Surgical Nursing

Donna D. Ignatavicius

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>Audio Glossary
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

1. Describe the scope of medical-surgical nursing.
2. Explain the recent increased focus on patient safety and quality of care.
3. Identify the purpose of the Rapid Response Team (RRT).
4. Explain when to call the RRT.
5. Differentiate the six core competencies that health care professionals need to provide safe, quality health care.
6. Identify three ethical principles that help guide clinical decision making.
7. Explain the importance of communication when collaborating with the interdisciplinary team.
8. Outline the five rights of the delegation and supervision process.
9. Describe the SBAR procedure for successful communication in health care agencies.
10. Describe the nurse's role in the systematic quality improvement process.
11. Identify three ways that informatics and technology are used in health care.

The scope of medical-surgical nursing, sometimes called *adult health nursing*, is to promote health and prevent illness or injury in patients from 18 to older than 100 years of age. A separate chapter on care of older adults is part of this textbook because the majority of medical-surgical patients are older than 65 years (see [Chapter 3](#)). To be consistent with the most recent health care literature, the authors use the term *patient* rather than *client* (except in *NCLEX Examination*

Challenge questions). The *family* refers to the patient's relatives or significant others in the patient's life.

The primary focus of medical-surgical nursing care is to meet the biologic, psychosocial, cultural, and spiritual needs of the adult patient in a mutually trusting, respectful, and caring relationship. These basic needs, also referred to as *concepts*, were introduced in your Fundamentals of Nursing course. This textbook builds on those concepts but focuses

most on the role of nurses in meeting biologic (physiologic) needs for patients with selected medical-surgical health problems. Discussions of psychosocial (emotional), cultural, and spiritual needs are presented when appropriate to describe a holistic approach to patient care.

To further build a bridge between your basic fundamentals course and medical-surgical nursing care, several special features at the beginning of each textbook section review these selected concepts:

- Protection
- Oxygenation and Tissue Perfusion
- Mobility, Sensation, and Cognition
- Nutrition, Metabolism, and Bowel Elimination
- Urinary Elimination
- Sexuality

Nurses who practice medical-surgical nursing must have a broad knowledge base to meet the needs of patients in a variety of health care settings across the continuum (Academy of Medical-Surgical Nursing [AMSN], 2007). Rapid advances in technology, massive increases in knowledge, and dramatic changes in the health care delivery system require that medical-surgical nurses use expert clinical judgment to ensure patient safety as the priority in practice.

Health care errors by physicians, nurses, and other health care professionals have been widely publicized for the past 15 years. Many of these errors have resulted in patient deaths and injuries and increased health care costs. As a result of these findings, a number of national and international organizations have implemented new programs and standards to combat this growing problem.

NATIONAL PATIENT SAFETY GOALS

In 2000, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) stated in its *To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health Care System* publication that between 44,000 and 98,000 patient deaths result each year from preventable errors in acute care hospitals. The report identified several factors that contribute to these findings and motivated other national bodies to examine ways they could improve patient safety and quality care. One of these groups, The Joint Commission (TJC), requires that health care organizations create a *culture of safety and encourage patients and families to become safety partners in protecting patients from harm*.

The **Joint Commission** is a national organization that offers peer evaluation for accreditation every 3 years for all types of U.S. health care agencies that meet their standards. Although acute care hospitals are accredited more often than other types of settings, many home care agencies, nursing homes, and ambulatory care centers are also TJC-accredited. Some agencies chose accreditation by other organizations other than TJC, but safety is a major focus for all of them.

In 2002, TJC published its first annual **National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs)**. These Goals require health care organizations to focus on specific priority safety practices, many of which involve nursing care. Since that time, TJC continues to add new Goals each year. NPSGs address high-risk issues such as drug administration, fall reduction, pressure ulcer prevention, and communication among health care team members. When appropriate, this textbook discusses related NPSGs. A complete list of these goals can be found on TJC website at www.jointcommission.org.

TABLE 1-1 IHI INTERVENTIONS TO SAVE PATIENT LIVES AND PREVENT PATIENT HARM

INTERVENTIONS TO SAVE PATIENT LIVES	INTERVENTIONS TO PREVENT PATIENT HARM
Deploy Rapid Response Teams.	Prevent harm from High-Alert Drugs (e.g., anticoagulants, insulin, opioids).
Provide reliable, evidence-based care for acute myocardial infarction.	Reduce surgical complications.
Prevent central line infections.	Prevent pressure ulcers.
Prevent adverse drug events (ADEs).	Reduce methicillin-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> (MRSA) infections.
Prevent surgical site infections (SSIs).	Provide reliable, evidence-based care for congestive heart failure.
Prevent ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP).	Get boards of health care organizations to support measures to promote safe patient care.

IHI, Institute for Healthcare Improvement.

PROTECTING FIVE MILLION LIVES FROM HARM

As a result of the IOM report and other data from national studies, the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI) estimates that there are nearly 15 million health care errors in U.S. hospitals each year, or 40,000 per day (IHI, 2005). In 2004, the IHI and its partner health care organizations launched the *100,000 Lives Campaign*—an effort to save patient lives over an 18-month targeted time frame. Six interventions for quality improvement changes in care were implemented by partnering health care agencies (Table 1-1). As a result of this project, an estimated 122,000 patient lives were saved!

The next IHI objective was to *protect patients from five million incidents of medical harm* over a 2-year period (December 2006–December 2008) (IHI, 2005). **Medical harm** refers not just to physician incidents but to errors caused by all members of the health care team or system that lead to patient injury or death. To meet this IHI objective, six interventions for changes in care were added to the original list. As seen in Table 1-1, many of these interventions are within the scope of nursing practice and are therefore emphasized throughout this textbook. Some interventions, such as pressure ulcer prevention and adverse drug event reduction, are also part of TJC's National Patient Safety Goals.

One of the most successful IHI initiatives was the creation of the Rapid Response Team (RRT), also called the *Medical Emergency Team (MET)*. **Rapid Response Teams** save lives

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Early clinical changes in condition occur in most patients for up to 48 hours before a "Code Blue." Therefore observe for, document, and communicate early indicators of patient decline, including decreasing blood pressure, increasing heart rate, and changes in mental status.

and decrease the risk for harm by providing care to patients *before* a respiratory or cardiac arrest occurs. Although the RRT does not replace the Code Team who responds to patient arrests, it intervenes rapidly when needed for those who are *beginning* to clinically decline.

Members of an RRT are critical care experts who are on-site and available at any time. Although membership varies among facilities, the team may consist of an ICU nurse, respiratory therapist, **intensivist** (physician who specializes in critical care), and/or **hospitalist** (family practitioner or internist employed by the hospital). In other hospitals, acute care nurse practitioners or medical residents may be part of the team. The team responds to emergency calls, usually from nurses, according to established agency protocols and policies. Patient families may also activate the RRT (Bogert et al., 2010). Outcome data demonstrate that the RRT approach to emergency care reduces medical complications and decreases the number of cardiac and respiratory arrests.

TJC's National Patient Safety Goals also include the need for early intervention for patients who are clinically changing. They require each health care organization to establish criteria for patients, families, or staff to call for additional assistance in response to an actual or perceived change in the patient's condition.

INSTITUTE OF MEDICINE/QUALITY AND SAFETY EDUCATION FOR NURSES CORE COMPETENCIES

The Institute of Medicine (IOM) published many reports during the past 15 years suggesting ways to improve patient safety and quality care. One of its reports, *Health Professions Education: A Bridge to Quality*, identified five broad core competencies for health care professionals to ensure patient safety and quality care (IOM, 2003). All of these competencies are interrelated and include:

- Provide patient-centered care.
- Collaborate with the interdisciplinary health care team.
- Implement evidence-based practice.

- Use quality improvement in patient care.
- Use informatics in patient care.

Several years later, the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) initiative validated the IOM competencies for nursing practice and added *safety* as a separate competency to emphasize its importance. In addition, the QSEN project team created specific knowledge, skills, and attitudes (KSAs) needed to develop each core competency, using a Delphi research approach.

This text highlights the QSEN competencies in its *Decision-Making Challenges*. Teaching/learning activities to help students develop specific KSAs can be found in the *Instructor Resources (IR)* on the *Evolve* website and accompanying *Student Study Guide*. Each QSEN competency is briefly described in the following six sections.

Patient-Centered Care

To be competent in **patient-centered care**, the medical-surgical nurse recognizes “the patient or designee as the source of control and full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for [the] patient’s preferences, values, and needs” (*Quality and Safety Education for Nurses [QSEN]*, 2011). The KSAs for competence in patient-centered care focus on communication, compassion, culture, patient education and empowerment, and respect for patients and their families (Table 1-2).

Nurses also provide family-centered care. As an advocate for the patient and family, teach them how to be empowered and have more control over their care. To assist in this process, The Joint Commission recently started a Speak Up™ campaign to provide information to patients and families to increase their empowerment (The Joint Commission, 2011). The basic framework of the campaign urges patients and their families to:

- **Speak up** if you have questions or concerns, and if you don’t understand, ask again. It’s your body and you have a right to know.
- **Pay attention** to the care you are receiving. Make sure you’re getting the right treatments and medications by the right health care professionals. Don’t assume anything.

TABLE 1-2 EXAMPLES OF KNOWLEDGE, SKILLS, AND ATTITUDES NEEDED TO DEVELOP THE IOM/QSEN PATIENT-CENTERED CARE COMPETENCY

KNOWLEDGE	SKILLS	ATTITUDES
Describe how diverse cultural, ethnic, and social backgrounds function as sources of patient, family, and community values.	Provide patient-centered care with sensitivity and respect for the diversity of human experience.	Recognize personally held attitudes about working with different ethnic, cultural, and social backgrounds.
Demonstrate comprehensive understanding of the concepts of pain and suffering, including physiologic models of pain and comfort.	Assess presence and extent of pain and suffering.	Recognize personally held values and beliefs about the management of pain and suffering.
Examine how the safety, quality, and cost-effectiveness of health care can be improved through the active involvement of patients and families.	Engage patients or designated surrogates in active partnerships that promote health, safety and well-being, and self-care management.	Respect patient preferences for degree of active engagement in care processes.
Explore ethical and legal implications of patient-centered care.	Facilitate informed patient consent for care.	Respect and encourage individual expression of patient values, preferences, and expressed needs.

Data from Quality and Safety Education for Nurses, 2011 (www.qsen.org).
IOM, Institute of Medicine; QSEN, Quality and Safety Education for Nurses.

- **E**ducate yourself about your diagnosis, the medical tests you are undergoing, and your treatment plan.
- **A**sk a trusted family member or friend to be your advocate.
- **K**now what medications you take and why you take them. Medication errors are the most common health care errors.
- **U**se a hospital, clinic, surgery center, or other type of health care organization that has undergone a rigorous on-site evaluation against established state-of-the-art quality and safety standards, such as that provided by The Joint Commission.
- **P**articipate in all decisions about your treatment. You are the center of the health care team.

Patient empowerment is one way to demonstrate respect for patients in their ability to be care partners. Respect for people is the basis for three essential *ethical principles* that nurses and other health care professionals should use as a guide for clinical decision making. Respect implies that patients are treated as autonomous individuals capable of making informed decisions about their care. This patient autonomy is referred to as **self-determination** or **self-management**. When the patient is not capable of self-determination, you are ethically obligated to protect him or her as an advocate within the professional scope of practice, according to the American Nurses Association (ANA) Code of Ethics for Nurses (Fowler, 2008).

The second ethical principle is **beneficence**, which emphasizes the importance of preventing harm and ensuring the patient's well-being. Harm can be avoided only if its causes or possible causes are identified. As described earlier in this chapter, patient safety is currently a major national focus to prevent deaths and injuries.

Social justice, the third principle, refers to equality; that is, all patients should be treated equally and fairly. For example, a patient who cannot afford health care should receive the same quality and level of care as one who has extensive insurance coverage. An older patient with dementia should be shown the same respect as a younger patient who can communicate.

Teamwork and Collaboration

To provide patient- and family-centered care, the nurse “functions effectively within nursing and inter-professional teams, fostering open communication, mutual respect, and shared decision-making to achieve quality patient care” (QSEN, 2011). Therefore the KSAs for this competency emphasize the importance of communication and team functioning. Communication is an essential process for successful collaboration. **Collaboration** entails planning, implementing, and evaluating patient care together using an interdisciplinary (ID) plan of care. To help meet this purpose, health care agencies have frequent and regular ID meetings and conduct ID patient care rounds.

Electronic mail (e-mail) allows for quick communication among health care professionals to enhance collaboration and coordination of care. *However, it should not replace face-to-face and phone communication.*

While there are many health care team members, some caregivers work more closely with nurses than others. For example, the physician or other health care provider and medical-surgical nurse collaborate frequently in a given day

regarding patient care. The occupational therapist may not work as closely with the nurse unless the patient is receiving rehabilitation services. Collaboration with the rehabilitation team is discussed in **Chapter 8**.

One of the most important members of the ID team is the case manager (CM), who is typically a nurse or social worker in acute care hospitals. The purpose of the **case management** process is to provide quality and cost-effective services and resources to achieve positive patient outcomes. In collaboration with the nurse, the CM coordinates inpatient and community-based care before discharge from a hospital or other facility. Part of that process may involve communicating with other CMs who are employed by third-party health care payers (e.g., Medicare).

Communication

Poor communication between professional caregivers and health care agencies causes many medical errors and patient safety risks. In 2006, The Joint Commission began to require systematic strategies for improving communication. Two years later, another National Patient Safety Goal mandated that nurses communicate continuing patient care needs, such as pain management or respiratory support, to post-discharge caregivers.

To improve communication between staff members and health care agencies, procedures for hand-off communication were established. A popular procedure used in many agencies today is called SBAR (pronounced S-Bar). **SBAR** is a formal method of communication between two or more members of the health care team. The SBAR process includes these four steps:

- **Situation:** Describe what is happening at the time to require this communication.
- **Background:** Explain any relevant background information that relates to the situation.
- **Assessment:** Provide an analysis of the problem or patient need based on assessment data.
- **Recommendation:** State what is needed or what the desired outcome is.

Several modifications of SBAR include I-SBAR and I-SBAR-R. In these procedures, the “I” reminds the individual to identify himself or herself. The last “R” stands for the response that the receiver provides based on the information given.

Other agency-specific hand-off communication methods may be used. For example, Schroeder (2006) described a method for patient reporting called *PACE*. PACE stands for Patient Problem, Assessment/Actions, Continuing/Changes, and Evaluation. This type of focused information helps the receiving nurse maintain continuity of care and address any new patient problems that may have occurred. Be sure to follow the established documentation and reporting protocols in your agency.

One of the most recent projects to improve communication was provided in 2010 by the Center for Transforming Health Care (www.centerfortransforminghealthcare.org). Every transition of care is potentially risky for patients because vital information needs to be communicated among caregivers and from one health care agency to another to keep patients safe. This quality improvement (QI) project recommends these targeted solutions to ensure successful communication using the acronym **SHARE** as outlined in **Table 1-3**.

TABLE 1-3 CENTER FOR TRANSFORMING HEALTH CARE TARGETED SOLUTIONS TO ENHANCE SUCCESSFUL HAND-OFF COMMUNICATION: SHARE

TARGETED SOLUTION	DESCRIPTION OF SOLUTION
S tandardize critical content.	Providing details of the patient's history to the receiver, emphasizing key information about the patient, and synthesizing information from various sources before passing it on.
H ardwire within your system.	Developing standardized forms, tools, and methods, such as checklists; identifying new and existing technologies to assist in successful hand-off; and stating expectations about how to conduct a successful hand-off.
A llow opportunity to ask questions.	Using critical-thinking skills when discussing a patient's case as well as sharing and receiving information as an interdisciplinary team ("pit crew"). Receivers should expect to receive all key information about the patient, scrutinize and question the data, and exchange contact information with the sender for additional questions.
R einforce quality and measurement.	Demonstrating leadership commitment to successful hand-offs, such as holding staff accountable, monitoring compliance with use of standardized forms, and using data to determine a systematic approach for improvement.
E ducate and coach.	Teaching staff throughout the organization about what constitutes a successful hand-off, standardizing training on how to conduct a hand-off, providing performance feedback at the time of the hand-off, and making successful hand-offs an organizational priority.

Data from The Joint Commission Center for Transforming Healthcare. (2010). Joint Commission Center for Transforming Healthcare tackles miscommunication among caregivers. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from www.centerfortransforminghealthcare.com.

Delegation and Supervision

As a nursing leader, you will delegate certain nursing tasks and activities to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), such as patient care technicians (PCTs) or patient care assistants (PCAs). **Delegation** is the process of transferring to a competent person the authority to perform a selected nursing task or activity in a selected patient care situation. This process requires precise and accurate communication. *The nurse is always accountable for the task or activity that is delegated!*

An important process that is sometimes not consistently performed by busy medical-surgical nurses is supervision of the UAP to whom the task or activity has been delegated. **Supervision** is guidance or direction, evaluation, and follow-up by the nurse to ensure that the task or activity is performed appropriately (National Council of State Boards of Nursing, 1995). Examples of delegated tasks are turning and positioning, vital signs, and intake and output measurements.

Be sure to follow these five rights when you delegate and supervise a nursing task or activity to a UAP:

- **Right task:** The task is within the UAP's scope of practice and competence.
- **Right circumstances:** The patient care setting and resources are appropriate for the delegation.
- **Right person:** The UAP is competent to perform the delegated task or activity.
- **Right communication:** The nurse provides a clear and concise explanation of the task or activity, including limits and expectations.
- **Right supervision:** The nurse appropriately monitors, evaluates, intervenes, and provides feedback on the delegation process as needed.

Other activities or patient care responsibilities may be assigned by an RN to another RN or to a licensed practical or vocational nurse (LPN/LVN). Each state designates which tasks may be safely delegated and assigned to nursing team members. Interventions that you can typically delegate or assign in any state are indicated throughout this text. Some of the *NCLEX Examination Challenges* throughout this book

will test your understanding of the delegation and supervision process.

Evidence-Based Practice

Evidence-based practice (EBP) is the integration of the best current evidence to make decisions about patient care. It considers the patient's preferences and values, as well as one's own clinical expertise for the delivery of optimal health care (Melnik & Fineout-Overholt, 2011; QSEN, 2011).

The best source of evidence is research. However, available nursing research is limited and, in some areas, may not reflect the highest or best level of evidence. Some nursing research is designed as small, descriptive studies to explore new concepts. The findings of these studies cannot be generalized, but they provide a basis for future larger and better-controlled research.

This edition of our text devotes a new chapter devoted to EBP (Chapter 7). In addition, *Evidence-Based Practice* boxes are found throughout the text to provide the most current research that serves as a basis for nursing practice. Each of these features presents a brief summary of the research, identifies the level (strength) of evidence using the scales in Chapter 7, and concludes with a "Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research" discussion to help you apply the findings of the study to your daily practice.

Quality Improvement

Ensuring patient and staff safety requires individual and systematic evaluation and change. To meet the **quality improvement** competency, nurses are expected to "use data to monitor the outcomes of care processes and use improvement methods to design and test changes to continuously improve the quality and safety of health care systems" (QSEN, 2011). The KSAs stress the importance of learning how to use specific QI tools, participating in root cause analyses, and impacting changes in care processes.

As a medical-surgical nurse, you will be expected to:

- Identify indicators to monitor quality and effectiveness of health care.



FIG. 1-1 An electronic documentation system that is used at the bedside.

- Access and evaluate data to monitor the quality and effectiveness of health care.
- Recommend ways to improve care processes.
- Implement activities to improve care processes.

Additional information about the QI process can be found in nursing leadership and management resources.

Informatics

Informatics involves using information and technology to communicate, manage knowledge, mitigate error, and support decision-making (Yoder-Wise, 2011; QSEN, 2011). The emphasis of the KSAs for informatics is documentation, electronic data access, and data utilization.

Although most health care settings have information technology (IT) departments, nurses retrieve and use valuable information for patient care. The largest application of health care informatics is use of the electronic health record (EHR) (also called *electronic patient record [EPR]* or *electronic medical record [EMR]*) for documenting nursing and interdisciplinary care. Computers may be centrally located or at the patient's bedside or treatment room. Handheld mobile devices are becoming more popular because of their ease of use and portability (Fig. 1-1).

Another major purpose of informatics is for retrieval of data for the evidence-based practice process described in Chapter 7. The Internet provides ways to search for multiple sources of information very efficiently. However, all data sources must be evaluated for their credibility and reliability. Some health care agencies provide handheld mobile devices, such as the iPod Touch™, to health care professionals for data access and team communication via text or e-mail.

New technologies for patient, staff, and resource (inventory) management are emerging in health care agencies to promote patient safety and improve efficiency. An example

of these technologies is radio frequency identification (RFID). RFID allows any person or object to be tracked electronically. For example, patients wear electronic identification wristbands.

As a result of their large qualitative study, Fisher and Monahan (2008) found that staff, especially nurses, expressed concerns about the surveillance potential of these tracking systems, particularly related to privacy rights of both patients and staff. Nurses were also concerned about the additional work that would be added to their busy day. The authors concluded that RFID systems, like any technology, need to be designed and implemented to prevent increased workloads and preserve privacy.

Nurses need to be involved in decisions about introducing new or advanced health care technologies into the health care agency. They should also be included in designing technology that improves the effectiveness and efficiency of health care while providing for patient and staff privacy.

Safety

As discussed earlier in this chapter, nurses play a key role in promoting safety and preventing errors, including “missed nursing care.” The nurse “minimizes risk of harm to patients and providers through both system effectiveness and individual performance” (QSEN, 2011). The KSAs for safety stress the importance of examining care processes (QI), integrating national patient resources, and using appropriate tools to reduce reliance on memory, such as checklists.

The National Council of State Boards of Nursing (NCSBN) recently published findings of an extensive study of nursing practice breakdowns (Benner et al., 2010). These results identified nine key areas where nursing practice should be improved, including:

- Medication administration
- Clearly communicating patient data and clinical assessments
- Attentiveness/surveillance of patients
- Clinical reasoning or judgment
- Prevention of errors or complications
- Intervention (carrying out nursing actions in an appropriate and timely manner)
- Interpretation of authorized provider orders
- Professional responsibility and patient advocacy
- Mandatory reporting

The research report also provided case examples and analyses to assist in the development of quality improvement processes.

Three types of “Nursing Safety Priority” boxes are found throughout this text to emphasize the importance of safety when in daily practice. These features delineate safety based on patient need. For example, “Nursing Safety Priority: Critical Rescue” emphasizes the need for action for potential or actual life-threatening problems. “Nursing Safety Priority: Action Alert” boxes focus on the need for action but not necessarily for life-threatening situations. These safety alerts are essential, though, to ensure optimal patient outcomes. As the name implies, “Nursing Safety Priority: Drug Alert” boxes specify actions needed to ensure safety related to drug administration, monitoring, or related patient and family education.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points.

- Medical-surgical nursing requires a broad knowledge base to meet the needs of adult patients in a variety of settings across the continuum.
- The Joint Commission requires that health care organizations create a *culture of safety* by following the National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs).
- The Institute of Healthcare Improvement (IHI) interventions to save lives and prevent patient harm are listed in [Table 1-1](#).
- Rapid Response Teams (RRTs) save lives and decrease the risk for patient harm before a respiratory or cardiac arrest occurs.
- Remember to always observe for slow and sudden changes in patient condition, especially changes in vital signs and mental status.
- Medical-surgical nurses help meet human needs of adult patients, such as mobility and oxygenation, in a caring, mutually respectful relationship.
- A vital role of the nurse is as an advocate to empower patients and their families to have control over their health care.
- The six core competencies for health care professionals based on research by the Institute of Medicine (IOM) and Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN) are patient-centered care, teamwork and collaboration, evidence-based practice, quality improvement, informatics, and safety.
- Examples of the knowledge, skills, and attitudes needed for patient-centered care are found in [Table 1-2](#).
- Three essential ethical principles to consider when making clinical decisions are self-determination, beneficence, and justice.
- Nurses function as coordinators of care by communicating and collaborating with members of the health care team.
- The SBAR procedure or similar established protocol is used for successful communication between caregivers and between health care agencies.
- Evidence-based practice (EBP) is the integration of best current evidence to make decisions about patient care. It considers the patient's preferences and values, as well as one's own clinical expertise.
- Nurses are active participants in the systematic quality improvement process in their health care agency.
- Informatics and technology are used for patient documentation, electronic data access, and health care resource tracking.

Introduction to Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Health Promotion and Maintenance

1. Teach patients about uses, precautions, and adverse effects associated with using natural products.
2. Describe special considerations related to complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) usage among older adults.

Physiological Integrity

3. Identify the role of the nurse in using mind-body therapies.

4. Explain the role of music therapy for patients in institutional facilities and community settings.
5. Assess the patient's need or desire for CAM therapies.
6. Incorporate appropriate CAM therapies into the patient's plan of care.
7. Evaluate patient outcomes when using CAM therapies.

OVERVIEW

Western biomedicine is the predominant health care system in the United States and other Western countries. However, during the past 30 years, a growing interest in **complementary** (together with traditional treatment) and **alternative** (in place of traditional treatment) medicine has rapidly evolved. **Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM)** is a diverse group of systems, practices, and products that are not an official part of today's U.S. traditional biomedical health care system. However, there is growing scientific evidence that some CAM therapies are as effective as traditional or conventional therapies. **Integrative medicine** combines therapies from traditional Western medicine and CAM. A growing number of health care systems have an integrated medicine or CAM department.

Most people who seek complementary and alternative therapies pay for them out-of-pocket because most third-party payers reimburse for only selected therapies such as chiropractic treatment and acupuncture. More women than

men and people with high formal educational levels are most likely to use CAM (National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine [NCCAM], 2008).

Unlike traditional medicine, CAM therapies are part of the **holistic care** movement—the connection and integration of the mind, body, and spirit. Four common alternative holistic systems practiced in the United States are homeopathic, naturopathic, Ayurvedic, and Traditional Chinese Medicine. Homeopathic and naturopathic medicine started in Germany in the 1800s and have been used in the United States for less than 100 years. Ayurvedic medicine originated in India over 3000 years ago and is gaining popularity in the United States. Traditional Chinese Medicine is the oldest medical system in the world and is commonly practiced in the United States today. Acupressure and acupuncture therapies are used most often; these therapies are described on p. 12 in this chapter.

Homeopaths plan individualized care by prescribing small doses of specially prepared plant and animal extracts and minerals to promote healing. **Naturopaths** are more

holistic in that they use a combination of physical therapies, herbal preparations, homeopathic remedies, acupuncture, and lifestyle changes to improve health. Both homeopaths and naturopaths complete specialized training and certification but are not recognized in all U.S. states. Practitioners of Ayurvedic medicine (also called *Ayurveda*) employ a variety of CAM therapies to eliminate impurities from the body, reduce symptoms, increase resistance to disease, and promote balance and harmony. Examples of therapies used for these purposes include meditation, massage, herbs, and exercise (NCCAM, 2011c).

Nurses and other health care providers believe in a holistic, caring approach to practice. Many CAM therapies do not require special or advanced training to use them with patients. Others, such as acupuncture, require specialized education and, in some states, licensure or certification. This chapter briefly *introduces* some of the common CAM therapies used by patients and nurses in a variety of settings. More detailed discussions of specific CAM usage for selected health problems and associated nursing implications are found throughout this text in sections labeled with the heading “Complementary and Alternative Therapies.” Medical-surgical nurses play a key role in assessing the need for CAM and teaching patients and their families about how to safely use CAM therapies.

NATIONAL CENTER FOR COMPLEMENTARY AND ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE

As a result of growing interest in CAM, the National Institutes of Health established the *National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine* (NCCAM). The purposes of this center are to:

- Fund studies examining the effectiveness of various complementary therapies
- Advance the knowledge about complementary therapies of health professionals
- Serve as a clearinghouse for information about these therapies

NCCAM classifies complementary and alternative medicine into four major categories, as summarized in Table 2-1. These categories include:

- Natural products
- Mind-body therapies
- Manipulative and body-based therapies
- Other CAM modalities, such as energy and cognitive-behavioral therapies

CAM CATEGORIES

Natural Products

Most natural products are either nutraceuticals (dietary and herbal supplements) or probiotics. As a group, these products are thought to provide health and medical benefits and are used widely, especially by older adults (Zarowitz, 2010). In the United States, *nutraceuticals* and *probiotics* are regulated as food and nutritional supplements by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). However, these regulations are less strict than those for drug therapy, which has raised increasing concern about their safety. Dietary and herbal supplements do not receive the same stringent oversight in their preparation and use as drugs. Therefore they cause a

TABLE 2-1 NCCAM CATEGORIES OF CAM WITH EXAMPLES

DOMAIN	EXAMPLES
Natural products	Nutraceuticals (dietary supplements), such as calcium and magnesium; probiotics, including foods (e.g., yogurt) and supplements (e.g., <i>Lactobacillus</i>)
Mind-body therapies	Imagery, meditation, music, humor, biofeedback, yoga, prayer, pet therapy
Manipulative and body-based therapies	Chiropractic treatment, massage, tai chi
Other CAM therapies	Healing Touch, Therapeutic Touch, Reiki

CAM, Complementary and alternative medicine; NCCAM, National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine.

range of patient responses depending on their nature and how they were prepared. Herbal preparations that are sold as standardized extracts are more likely to contain larger amounts of the herb or nutritional element and less likely to contain inactive ingredients or fillers. *Teach patients that because an herb is labeled as “natural,” it does not mean that the herb is safe. Because it may be safe does not mean that it is effective.*

Some dietary and herbal supplements have pharmacologic effects that can be serious or deadly, as in cases of overuse, inappropriate use, supplement toxicities, and supplement-drug and supplement-supplement interactions.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults in the community often overuse dietary and herbal supplements to help prevent potentially life-threatening health problems and promote quality of life. For example, older women may take too much calcium because they want to prevent osteoporosis. As a result, excess calcium can deposit in kidneys as renal calculi (stones). Teach women the importance of collaborating with their health care provider to monitor serum calcium levels and kidney function before and during calcium supplementation.

Older adults who live in independent and assisted-living communities often self-administer a variety of supplements without telling their nurses or primary care providers. Nurses working in these settings need to talk with their residents about the safety and efficacy of CAM therapies. To prevent toxicities and supplement-drug interactions, encourage residents to inform the health care team about which supplements they are taking (Moquin et al., 2009).

In some cases, herbal preparations are self-administered to treat a serious health problem that could more effectively be treated by conventional medicine, potentially resulting in a delay of diagnosis and treatment. For example, patients may take St. John’s wort for depression rather than be evaluated for possible psychotherapy and/or drug therapy. In other cases, patients may neglect or choose not to tell their health care providers about their use of supplements. As a result, they may take conventional drugs and natural products to treat the same condition. The resulting drug-supplement interactions may be harmful or life threatening.

Caution patients about unreliable sources of health information, and refer them to credible resources for herbal remedies. Examples of excellent websites for accurate information

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When caring for patients in any health care setting, ask them if they use herbs or nutritional supplements and, if so, for what purpose. Ask about the frequency and dose of the products used. To prevent complications, remind patients of the importance of telling all health care providers about dietary supplement or herbal therapy use. For example, to avoid increased risks of bleeding, one should not use ginkgo, ginseng, or garlic for at least 3 days before surgery. Table 2-2 lists several commonly used herbs, their uses, and their precautions. Teach patients about these precautions and how to safely use them.

are the Herb Research Foundation (www.herbs.org) and The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (www.nccam.nih.gov).

Probiotics, another commonly used group of products, are live microorganisms that are similar to those naturally found in the GI tract. When taken orally, these organisms colonize to enhance the immune response and stabilize the GI mucosal barrier. Most probiotics are bacteria that come from two groups—*Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium*. Within each of these main groups are different species or strains. A few probiotics are yeasts.

Probiotics are available in foods and dietary supplements. Examples of foods containing probiotics are yogurt, miso, tempeh, and some soy and juice beverages. Dietary supplements include capsules, tablets, and powders. Patients use probiotics to treat antibiotic-associated diarrhea (AAD), irritable bowel syndrome, bladder and intestinal infections, and lactose intolerance (NCCAM, 2011e).

Research on the effectiveness of probiotics has been promising but sometimes conflicting. A recent meta-analysis of 10 randomized controlled trials on the role of *Lactobacillus* to prevent AAD reported that the risk for developing AAD was significantly lower when probiotics were compared with placebo usage (Kale-Pradhan et al., 2010). Additional studies are underway to determine the safety and effectiveness of other probiotic types and strains (Zarowitz, 2010).

Teach patients that side effects of probiotics include gas and bloating. Remind them to take the product with meals. As always, tell patients to check with their health care providers before taking these products and inform future providers that probiotics are being used.

Aromatherapy also uses natural products; it is one of the fastest growing complementary therapies. Clinical **aromatherapy** uses essential oils from various parts of plants and trees to enhance psychological and physical well-being. Essential oils may be applied in compresses, used in baths, or applied topically to the skin to stimulate the brain to decrease pain, improve mood, or enhance cognitive function.

Numerous oils can be used. For example, lavender and rose are two common oils that promote relaxation and sleep. Peppermint has been used for stimulation and to promote concentration. Sandalwood, jasmine, and lavender may improve mood in patients with depression (NCCAM, 2011b). *Before using aromatherapy, assess the patient for any allergies and any negative associations with particular smells.* Some aromas can cause nausea and vomiting. Essential oils are potent and need to be diluted before being applied topically.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement by a client about herbal supplements indicates a need for further teaching by the nurse?

- A. "I only take my herbs as instructed on the label of the containers."
- B. "I'll tell my doctor that I'm on these herbs after I see if they work."
- C. "I will report any new side effects that I get from taking these herbs."
- D. "I will continue taking the medicine that was prescribed by my doctor."

Mind-Body Therapies

Mind-body therapies are the most commonly used category of CAM. Because they are thought to enhance the mind's ability to affect body function, they fit with the holistic, caring philosophy of nursing. Nurses have traditionally used a number of mind-body therapies such as prayer, imagery, meditation, music, and pet therapy. *Prayer is the most commonly used mind-body therapy by health care professionals and patients with a variety of health care problems.* Chapter 4 discusses this practice as part of spiritual well-being.

Other mind-body therapies include yoga, acupuncture, and acupressure. The latter two techniques are provided

TABLE 2-2 COMMONLY USED HERBAL PREPARATIONS: DESIRED EFFECTS AND PRECAUTIONS

HERB	DESIRED EFFECTS/USES	HEALTH TEACHING/PRECAUTIONS
<i>Ginkgo biloba</i>	Reduces memory problems, dementia, peripheral vascular disease; has antioxidant and vasodilator properties.	Use with anticoagulants may cause bleeding; rarely dizziness, headache, GI upset.
Garlic	Lowers cholesterol or blood pressure; acts as a natural antibiotic; acts as an antiplatelet agent.	Bleeding can occur when used with other antiplatelet agents; potentiates action of antidiabetic drugs; avoid several days before surgery.
Glucosamine sulfate	Decreases inflammation; effective for knee osteoarthritic pain.	Takes several weeks to be effective; monitor for increased INR in patients taking warfarin; can cause GI upset—take with meals.
Ginseng	Promotes general well-being; anti-aging.	Observe INR with warfarin. Side effects depend on type of ginseng used.
Saw palmetto	Decreases prostatic hyperplasia.	Discontinue 2 weeks before surgery because it inhibits platelet aggregation (clotting).

INR, International normalized ratio.

by practitioners who have many years of education and experience.

Imagery

Imagery has been used for many years in nursing. **Imagery** is the formation of a mental representation of an object, place, event, or situation that is perceived through the patient's senses. Visualization is sometimes used interchangeably with imagery, but in reality, all senses can be used in imagery. Incorporate imagery techniques into the patient's plan of care as needed. For example, while changing dressings or doing other procedures that may produce pain, ask the patient to think about a beautiful scene or smelling fragrant flowers.

Imagery has been used for a wide variety of reasons, including:

- Reducing pain
- Reducing nausea and vomiting
- Decreasing anxiety
- Promoting comfort during treatment for cancer

Many techniques can be used to help people use their senses to create images. **Guided imagery** in which the patient is provided with images or prompts by a nurse, a family member, or a friend or via a tape is a technique frequently used by nurses. Before suggestions for imagery are presented, provide the patient with instructions that will help produce relaxation. These may include tensing and relaxing muscle groups and focusing attention on one's breathing, a technique called *progressive muscle relaxation*.

When the person seems relaxed (slower respirations and relaxed muscles), give specific suggestions for imagery. The patient may be asked to choose a place he or she enjoys and to think about the sights, smells, tastes, and feelings associated with the place. Time allowed for imagery varies but usually lasts between 15 and 20 minutes. Opportunities are provided for the person to enjoy being in this place; tell the patient that he or she can return to this "place" at any time. Some patients like to create their own imagery tape to listen to, whereas others prefer listening to commercial tapes or having the nurse or family member guide them through the session. Use of guided imagery has few risks. However, be attentive to any adverse effects such as heightened anxiety or difficulty in breathing.

Meditation

Meditation has been a part of many religions and cultures for thousands of years. Although often thought of in terms of religion, meditation, or focusing on the moment, can be used in a nonreligious context. Meditation has been used to reduce anxiety, reduce pain, relieve symptoms of psoriasis, lower blood pressure, and promote health (NCCAM, 2011d) (Fig. 2-1). Teach patients with these problems about the successful use of this therapy. Teach patients about resources that can help them learn how to use meditation.

Meditation is a self-directed practice for relaxing the body and mind. Some of the most common types of meditation are:

- Mental repetition such as using a mantra
- Physical repetition such as focusing on breathing or walking
- Problem contemplation such as solving a riddle
- Visual concentration that is similar to imagery

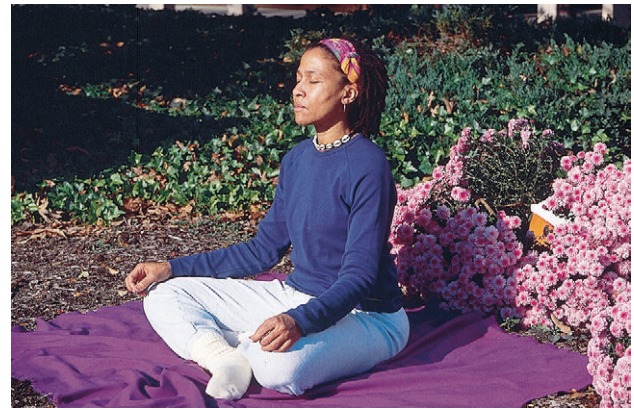


FIG. 2-1 Meditation can be used to relax the body and calm the mind.

Walking meditation, a commonly used type, contains both active and meditative elements. While walking, the person focuses attention on the sound of the foot hitting the ground, the feelings in the muscles and joints, or the movements of the body. This type of meditation may be appealing to persons who are more active and have difficulty concentrating while sitting. The walking meditation should be done for about 20 minutes.

The labyrinth is an ancient form of walking meditation that has attracted renewed attention. Labyrinths are found in many cultures such as Hindu, Hopi Indian, Crete, and medieval European religions. The labyrinth is not a maze. The person walks the circles meditatively. Walkers may ask themselves a question and search for answers, they may pray, or they might focus on feelings they are experiencing.

Music Therapy

Music therapy has been part of CAM for many years. Nursing homes and other long-term care settings commonly enjoy music as an important part of their activity program. Music often calms agitated patients and provides reminiscence for older adults, particularly when familiar music is played during meals (Wall & Duffy, 2010). It may also improve depression and lower blood pressure (Chan et al., 2009) and help reduce postoperative abdominal pain during the first 24 hours after surgery (Good et al., 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 12).

A large systematic review of the literature conducted by Richards et al. (2007) found that music therapy decreased pain and anxiety in the hospital setting. It also showed that patients were more satisfied with their care when music therapy was provided. Results were better when an individual patient listened to calming live music such as that provided by a harp, when compared with listening to recorded music and other instruments.

Assess whether the patient wants to hear music. Be sure to provide music that is generation-appropriate and ask the patient or family what type of music is preferred. To promote relaxation, use calming music rather than music with a fast tempo.

Pet Therapy

It is not unusual to see dogs, cats, or other animals when visiting a hospital or nursing home. Since the 1970s, studies

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Relaxation and Music for Postoperative Pain Compared with Pain Management Teaching

Good, M., Albert, J.M., Anderson, G.C., Wotman, S., Cong, X., Lane, D., et al. (2010). Supplementing relaxation and music for pain after surgery. *Nursing Research*, 59(4), 259-269.

Most patients having abdominal surgery experience unrelieved pain despite the use of patient-controlled analgesia (PCA). The researchers randomized 517 patients ages 18 to 75 years having abdominal surgery with PCA into four groups: pain management teaching only (PT), relaxation and music (RM), a combination of teaching and relaxation and music (PTRM), and a control group. Effects of pain were measured using visual analog sensation and distress scales during the first 2 days.

Using multivariate analysis of covariance with contrasts and pretest control, the two groups who had RM experienced pain reduction immediately after surgery. Surprisingly, pain management teaching had no effect on pain control. The researchers concluded that relaxation and music play an important role in pain control for postoperative abdominal patients during the first 2 days after surgery.

Level of Evidence: 2

This study used a randomized control design for a large number of patients. Randomization is an appropriate method for answering the research question.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The findings of this study demonstrate the value of CAM therapies in pain management for patients who typically cannot achieve pain control after abdominal surgery. Nurses are in an ideal position to implement CAM therapies such as music and relaxation techniques. More research needs to be conducted on other therapies to increase their use in hospitals and other health care settings.

have sought to validate the link between animal companionship and positive health outcomes. Pet therapy includes both animal-assisted therapy (AAT) and pet visitation. In AAT, the animal (often a dog) is an integral part of the treatment plan. For example, a dog may be used to assist a patient to improve motor skills or increase ability to concentrate.

In contrast, the purpose of pet visitation is aimed more at increasing socialization or keeping the person in touch with reality. Residents in assisted-living and long-term care facilities enjoy visiting with gentle, quiet pets, especially large, non-intimidating dogs. Collaborate with the activity therapist to include pet therapy for residents on a regular basis.

Pet therapy has been used with many different patient groups including hospice and behavioral health problems. It may be used in an institutional facility or in the community. Facilities that plan to implement pet therapy should first develop guidelines that specify the inclusion and exclusion criteria for patients who might receive it, the procedure to be used during the visitation, and the responsibilities of the nursing staff.

Some facilities also have pets or fish that live there. For example, a dog or cat may be “adopted” by residents in a nursing home or assisted-living facility. Many institutions have large aquariums in their lobby or other common area to enjoy a variety of fish or other sea life. Watching the activity within the aquarium can be very relaxing and therapeutic for some patients.



FIG. 2-2 Yoga can reduce stress and improve posture.

Yoga

Yoga is a popular mind-body therapy used around the world. An estimated 11 million people in the United States practice yoga to improve their breathing and posture through stretching, positioning, and posturing exercises (Fig. 2-2). Studies conducted throughout the world show that yoga also helps decrease blood pressure, increase heart and respiratory function, improve physical fitness, and decrease anxiety. It also is used as an adjunct in management of patients with multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, and other chronic, potentially debilitating diseases (NCCAM, 2011f).

**NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY****Action Alert**

Teach patients to check with their health care provider before starting yoga because it can be very strenuous. Encourage older adults to take a course that is designed for people older than 60 years. Inform them about community resources for yoga classes or DVDs that can be used at home for yoga practice.

Acupressure and Acupuncture

Acupressure, a Traditional Chinese Medicine therapy, is used in health care for a number of conditions, particularly in the treatment of pain, nausea, and vomiting. **Acupressure** is an ancient healing art that uses the fingers to press certain points on the body to stimulate the body's self-healing ability. According to the philosophy of Traditional Chinese Medicine, *qi* or energy flows along 12 major meridians. Symptoms like pain occur when the flow of *qi* is blocked or diminished. Therefore the purpose of acupressure is to improve energy flow and decrease symptoms.

The philosophy of acupuncture is similar to acupressure. For **acupuncture**, very small needles are inserted on one of the 365 to 700 **acupoints** that are located on meridians throughout the body to release the flow of *qi*. This therapy is one of the oldest healing methods in the world. It has been shown to be effective in managing a number of health problems, including urinary incontinence, back pain, joint pain, and post-traumatic stress disorder (Engberg et al., 2009; NCCAM, 2011a). Some patients have been able to stop the habit of smoking by using acupuncture.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An 80-year-old adult with severe back pain from osteoarthritis tells the nurse that she wants to participate in complementary and alternative therapies. Which therapies will the nurse recommend for this client? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Back massage
- B. Imagery
- C. Glucosamine
- D. Meditation
- E. Yoga

Manipulative and Body-Based Therapies

Three large groups of therapies make up the manipulative and body-based NCCAM category: chiropractic, osteopathy, and massage. Chiropractic and osteopathic medicine require years of specialized training. Massage and tai chi are common manipulative and body-based therapies that nurses can learn and teach to their patients.

Massage

Massage has a long history within nursing. Until recently, back rubs were a standard nursing procedure provided for all hospitalized patients on a daily basis. **Massage** involves using various strokes and pressure to manipulate soft tissues for therapeutic purposes. Many types of massage exist: Swedish (rather vigorous massage with long, flowing strokes), Esalen (light touch), neuromuscular (deep tissue), Shiatsu (Japanese pressure-point), and reflexology (massage of various points on the foot). Massage can be of the entire body or of selected areas such as foot, hand, shoulder/neck, or back (Fig. 2-3). Specialized licensed therapists use various types of massage in both health care and non-health care settings.

Massage can be used to produce relaxation and help lessen aggressive behaviors in patients with dementia (Holliday-Welsh et al., 2009). It may also reduce pain and blood pressure in some patients (Albert et al., 2009).

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because of cultural differences related to touch and personal preferences related to touch, be sure to obtain the patient's permission before using massage. Do not massage over reddened, bruised, or infected areas of skin.

Tai Chi

Tai chi is a holistic movement therapy that has wide popularity in China, Taiwan, and Japan. It is a traditional Chinese martial art that has been adapted to be a mind-body exercise. The purpose is to integrate body movements, mind concentration, muscle relaxation, and breathing to achieve the desired outcome. Several styles of tai chi exist: *chen* (quick and slow large movements), *yang* (slow large movements), *sun* (quick compact), and tai chi *chih* (simple repetitive movements). The latter is a style that is popular in the United States and Canada and originated in the West. Like other Traditional Chinese Medicine, tai chi promotes



FIG. 2-3 Massage therapy can be effectively used to relieve tension.

the flow of *qi* or energy throughout the body to reduce symptoms.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Tai chi has been used successfully with older adults in community and health care settings. For example, Tsai et al. (2009) found that knee osteoarthritic pain decreased when cognitively impaired older adults practiced tai chi on a regular basis. In their study of residents living in a long-term care (LTC) facility, Lee et al. (2009) found that those who participated in the tai chi program had significant improvements in both the physical and mental components of the Health-Related Quality of Life assessment tool. The researchers recommended that tai chi exercise be offered regularly to LTC residents to improve their quality of life.

Other CAM Therapies

Energy therapies include both biofield therapies and bioelectromagnetics. They are based on the belief that the body has a subtle energy that extends beyond it. In nursing, biofield therapies are most commonly used. Examples include Therapeutic Touch (TT) and Reiki. Therapeutic Touch, *the most well-known energy therapy*, was developed by Dolores Krieger, a U.S. nurse, in the 1970s. Reiki is a Japanese spiritual healing therapy that has been used for almost 100 years. Both of these therapies can be learned and used by nurses in a variety of settings.

Therapeutic Touch is based on the assumption that illness is an imbalance in the flow of energy or the energy pattern within the body. Using TT, the practitioner intervenes in the patient's energy field to stimulate healing potential. This therapy has been used to achieve numerous health outcomes: reduced anxiety, decreased pain, improved immune system, and improved functional ability.

TT consists of five steps: centering, assessing the energy field, clearing and mobilizing the patient's energy field, directing energy for healing, and balancing the energy field. In centering, the practitioner is quiet and focuses attention on the patient with the intention to heal. The practitioner uses his or her hands to assess the flow of energy. They are then moved from head to foot, noting any blockages in the flow of energy or absences or excesses in energy in a particular spot. In the clearing and mobilizing step, the practitioner holds his or her hands 2 to 4 inches from the patient's body



FIG. 2-4 In Therapeutic Touch, the practitioner directs her own interpersonal energy to help or heal another.

and moves them with the palms facing the patient, from head to foot in a sweeping motion (Fig. 2-4). This process may be repeated. Based on the assessment, the practitioner directs energy so that imbalances are resolved. The practitioner's hands are placed on the patient, and energy is directed toward him or her. Finally, the practitioner seeks to balance the patient's energy by using head-to-toe clearing motions with the intention of smoothing the energy.

Reiki is also a healing therapy in which the healer uses 12 to 15 positions while holding his or her hands over the patient's body to decrease stress and promote relaxation. Both the healer and patient may feel warmth, coolness, and/or tingling as energy flows throughout the patient's body.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be aware that some patients experience dizziness and nausea during the energy therapy session. For that reason, use with caution in older adults and monitor them carefully during the therapy.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice

A patient with liver cancer is experiencing increased pain and wants to supplement his drug therapy to prevent sedation and decreased alertness. He continues to go into the office where he works every day as a manager of a large clothing store. He tells you as his office nurse that it is getting harder to concentrate as his opioid doses increase.

1. Based on current evidence, what CAM therapies do you think would be best for the patient at this time and why?
2. What tools and resources did you use to answer Question 1?
3. How will you evaluate whether CAM therapies have been effective for this patient?

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients taking herbal preparations about their uses, toxicities, herb-herb interactions, and herb-drug interactions (see Table 2-2).
- Teach patients about the value of probiotics and expected side effects.
- Teach patients the importance of telling their health care provider about the desire to use CAM therapies; remind them to inform future providers that therapies are being used.
- Use caution when using CAM therapies for older adults.

Physiological Integrity

- Complementary and alternative therapies include a broad range of healing approaches and therapies that are becoming more widely used in the United States. Many of these therapies are derived from Eastern medicine, such as Traditional Chinese Medicine (e.g., acupuncture).

- As part of the National Institutes of Health, the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) is funding research to determine the usefulness of selected therapies.
- The four major categories of CAM as specified by the NCCAM are listed with examples in Table 2-1.
- Include CAM therapies in the patient's plan of care as needed, especially those classified as mind-body therapies.
- Examples of mind-body therapies are prayer, imagery, meditation, music therapy, and pet therapy.
- Imagery is often used for reducing pain, nausea and vomiting, and anxiety.
- Massage is a commonly used manipulative and body-based therapy in nursing; do not massage over reddened or infected skin areas.
- Therapeutic Touch promotes healing by balancing a person's energy field.
- Evaluate whether CAM therapies are effective for patients in a variety of settings.

Common Health Problems of Older Adults

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Recognize the benefits of interdisciplinary health care team collaboration in the care of older adults.
2. Identify risk factors for falls and driving ability in older adults who live in the community or are hospitalized.
3. Explain falls risk and prevention interventions for older adults in the hospital and community.
4. Describe best practices to promote patient safety when using restraints.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach selected evidence-based lifestyle practices to promote healthy activities in older adults.
6. Conduct a medication assessment for potential risks for adverse drug events in older adults.
7. Teach older adults about safe medication administration.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Assess the older patient's risk for and signs of neglect and abuse.
9. Use valid and reliable tools to assess for mental/behavioral health problems in the older adult.
10. Compare characteristics of depression, delirium, and dementia.
11. Develop a plan of care to assist the older adult to cope with relocation stress syndrome.

Physiological Integrity

12. Identify four subgroups of older adults.
13. Explain factors that contribute to nutrition-related problems among older adults in the community and inpatient facilities.
14. Describe the effects of drugs on the older adult.
15. Assess for adverse drug effects of psychoactive drugs when taken by older adults.

About 13% of the people in the United States are older than 65 years. Women live longer than men, although the exact reason for this difference is not known. The older population is expected to grow as more “baby boomers” approach late adulthood during this decade. Most patients on adult acute care units are older than 65 years; many of these patients are discharged for home health services. Over 90% of patients in long-term care (LTC) facilities are older than 65 years. Therefore nurses and other health care professionals need to know about the special needs of older adults to care for them in a variety of settings.

This chapter describes the major health issues associated with late adulthood in community and inpatient settings. The

care of older adults (sometimes referred to as *elders*) with specific acute and chronic health problems is discussed as appropriate throughout this text. Nursing Focus on the Older Adult charts and Considerations for Older Adults headings highlight the most important information. A brief review of major physiologic changes of aging are listed in the Assessment chapter of each body system unit.

OVERVIEW

Late adulthood can be divided into four subgroups:

- 65 to 74 years of age: the young old
- 75 to 84 years of age: the middle old

- 85 to 99 years of age: the old old
- 100 years of age or older: the elite old

The fastest growing subgroup is the old old, sometimes referred to as the advanced older adult population. Members of this subgroup are sometimes referred to as the “frail elderly,” although a number of 85 to 95 year olds are very healthy and do not meet the criteria for being frail. Frailty is a clinical syndrome in which the older adult has unintentional weight loss, weakness and exhaustion, and slowed physical activity, including walking. Frail older adults are also at high risk for adverse outcomes (Rocchiccioli & Sanford, 2009).

The vast majority of older adults live in the community at home, in assisted-living facilities, or in retirement or independent living complexes. Men older than 65 years are less likely to live alone than women of that age. Of all older adults, 5% reside in LTC facilities (mostly nursing homes) and another 10% to 15% are ill but are cared for at home. Older adults from any setting usually experience one or more hospitalizations in their lifetime. About half of all older adults will be admitted at some time during their life for short-term stays in a skilled unit of a LTC facility, usually for rehabilitation or complex medical-surgical follow-up care.

Other institutions also have an increase in aging adults. For example, men older than 50 years are the fastest growing group of prisoners today. Like the rest of the older population, older prisoners have multiple chronic health problems. However, these problems are complicated by a history of alcohol and substance abuse and poor nutrition that require deliberate management strategies. Nurses who work in these settings need to develop expertise in care of older adults.

The number of homeless people older than 60 years is also growing. The inability to pay for housing and family/partner relationship problems are primary factors that contribute to this trend. Most homeless adults have one or more chronic health problems, including mental/behavioral health disorders. [Chapter 4](#) discusses issues related to the homeless population in more detail.

HEALTH ISSUES FOR OLDER ADULTS IN COMMUNITY-BASED SETTINGS

Health is a major concern for many older adults. Health status can affect the ability to perform ADLs and to participate in social roles. A failure to perform these activities may increase dependence on others and may have a negative effect on morale and life satisfaction. When older adults lose the ability to function independently, they often feel empty and worthless. Loss of autonomy is a painful event related to the physical and mental changes of aging.

Older adults may also experience a number of losses that can affect a sense of control over their lives, such as the death of a spouse and friends or the loss of social and work roles. Nurses need to support their self-esteem and feelings of independence by encouraging them to maintain as much control as possible over their lives, to participate in decision making, and to perform as many tasks as possible.

Like younger and middle-aged adults, older adults need to practice health promotion and illness prevention to maintain or achieve a high level of wellness. Teach them the importance of promoting wellness and strategies for meeting this outcome ([Chart 3-1](#)).

CHART 3-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Lifestyles and Practices to Promote Wellness

Health-Protecting Behaviors

- Have yearly influenza vaccinations (after October 1).
- Obtain a pneumococcal vaccination. (A routine revaccination may be necessary.)
- Have a tetanus immunization, and get a booster every 10 years.
- Wear seat belts when you are in an automobile.
- Use alcohol in moderation or not at all.
- Avoid smoking; if you do smoke, do not smoke in bed.
- Install and maintain working smoke detectors and/or sprinklers.
- Create a hazard-free environment to prevent falls; eliminate hazards such as scatter rugs and waxed floors.
- Use medications, herbs, and nutritional supplements according to your health care provider's prescription.
- Avoid over-the-counter medications unless your physician directs you to use them.

Health-Enhancing Behaviors

- Have a yearly physical examination; see your health care provider more often if health problems occur.
- Reduce dietary fat to not more than 30% of calories; saturated fat should provide less than 10% of your calories.
- Increase your dietary intake of complex carbohydrate and fiber-containing food to five or more servings of fruits and vegetables and six or more servings of grain products daily.
- Increase calcium intake to between 1000 and 1500 mg daily; take a vitamin D supplement every day if not exposed daily to sunlight.
- Allow at least 10 to 15 minutes of sun exposure two or three times weekly for vitamin D intake; avoid prolonged sun exposure.
- Exercise regularly three to five times a week.
- Manage stress through coping mechanisms that have been successful in the past.
- Get together with people in different settings to socialize.
- Reminisce about your life through reflective discussions or journaling.

Common health issues and problems that often affect older adults in the community include:

- Decreased nutrition and hydration
- Decreased mobility
- Stress and loss
- Accidents
- Drug use and misuse
- Mental health/behavioral health problems (including substance abuse)
- Elder neglect and abuse

Decreased Nutrition and Hydration

The minimum nutritional requirements of the human body remain consistent from youth through old age, with a few exceptions. Older adults need an increased dietary intake of calcium, vitamin D, vitamin C, and vitamin A because aging changes disrupt the ability to store, use, and absorb these substances. A sedentary lifestyle and reduced metabolic rate require a reduction in total caloric intake to maintain an ideal body weight. Malnutrition or nutrition-related problems can occur in older adults when these needs are not met.

Many physical aging changes influence nutritional status or the ability to consume needed nutrients. Diminished

senses of taste and smell often result in a loss of desire for food. Older adults have less ability to taste sweet and salt than to taste bitter and sour. This aging change may result in an overuse of table sugar and salt to compensate. Some older adults consume numerous desserts and other sweet foods, which can cause them to become overweight or obese. Teach older adults how to balance their diets with healthy food selections. Remind them to substitute herbs and spices to season food and vary the textures of food substances to feel satisfied.

Tooth loss and poorly fitting dentures from inadequate dental care or calcium loss can also cause the older adult to avoid important nutritious foods. Unlike today, dental preventive programs were not readily available or stressed as being important when today's older adults were younger. Older people with dentition problems eat soft, high-calorie foods such as ice cream and mashed potatoes, which lack roughage and fiber. Unless the person carefully chooses more nutritious soft foods, vitamin deficiencies, constipation, and other problems can result. The extensive use of prescribed and over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, including herbal supplements, may affect appetite, food tolerances, and food absorption and use.

Reduced income, chronic disease, fatigue, and decreased ability to perform ADLs are other factors that contribute to inadequate nutrition among older adults. "Fast food" is often inexpensive and requires no preparation. However, it is usually high in fat, carbohydrates, and calories but lacking in healthy nutrients. Older adults can become overweight or obese when they consume a diet high in fast food.

Other older adults may reduce their intake of food to near-starvation levels, even with the availability of programs such as food stamps, food banks, and Meals on Wheels. Many senior centers and homeless shelters offer meals, as well as group social activities. The lack of transportation, the necessity of traveling to obtain such services, and the inability to carry large or heavy groceries prevent some older adults from taking advantage of food programs. Others are too proud to accept free services.

Inadequate nutrition may also be related to loneliness. Older adults may respond to loneliness, depression, and boredom by not eating, which can lead to under-nutrition. Many who live alone lose the incentive to prepare or eat balanced diets, especially if they do not "feel well." Men who live at home alone are especially at risk for not eating enough calories to maintain their weight. Other factors associated with under-eating include being hospitalized before starting home health care, having a primary care provider who is not a female family member, and having a low level of education (Volkert et al., 2010).

Today more baby boomers and older adults recognize that healthy diet and plenty of hydration improve health and help restore body tissues. As a result, the organic food industry is rapidly expanding as some individuals try to make the best possible food choices. Organic foods, though, are typically more expensive than non-organic foods, and some older adults cannot afford them. Organic foods are also not readily available in all parts of the country.

Some older adults are at risk for **geriatric failure to thrive (GFTT)**—a complex syndrome including under-nutrition, impaired physical functioning, depression, and cognitive impairment (Rocchiccioli & Sanford, 2009). However, drug

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Perform nutritional screening for older adults in the community who are at risk for inadequate nutrition—either under-nutrition or obesity. Ask the individual about unintentional weight loss or gain, eating habits, appetite, prescribed and over-the-counter drugs, and current health problems. Determine contributing factors for older adults who have or are at risk for poor nutrition, such as transportation issues or loneliness. Based on these data, develop and implement a plan of care in collaboration with appropriate members of the health care team. [Chapter 63](#) describes nutritional assessment and management of nutrition problems in detail.

therapy, chronic diseases, major losses, and poor socioeconomic status can cause these same health problems. Be sure to consider these factors when screening for GFTT. For those at risk for or who have GFTT, collaborate with the older adult and family to plan referral to his or her primary care provider for extensive evaluation. Early supportive intervention can help prevent advanced levels of deterioration.

People older than 65 years are also at risk for dehydration because they have less body water content than younger adults. In severe cases, they require emergency department visits or hospital stays.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Older adults sometimes limit their fluid intake, especially in the evening, because of problems associated with mobility, prescribed diuretics, and urinary incontinence. *Teach older adults that fluid restrictions make them susceptible to dehydration and electrolyte imbalances (especially sodium and potassium) that can cause serious illness or death.*

Incontinence may actually increase because the urine becomes more concentrated and irritating to the bladder and urinary sphincter. Teach older adults the importance of drinking 6 to 8 glasses of water a day plus other fluids as desired. Remind them to avoid excessive caffeine and alcohol because they can cause dehydration. [Chapter 13](#) discusses fluid and electrolyte imbalances in detail.

Decreased Mobility

Exercise and activity are important for older adults as a means of promoting and maintaining health ([Fig. 3-1](#)). Physical activity can help keep the body in shape and maintain an optimal level of functioning. Regular exercise has many benefits for older adults in community-based settings. The advantages of maintaining appropriate levels of physical activity include:

- Decreased risk for falls
- Increased muscle strength and balance
- Increased mobility
- Increased sleep
- Reduced or maintained weight
- Improved sense of well-being and self-esteem
- Decreased depression symptoms
- Improved longevity
- Reduced risks for diabetes, coronary artery disease, and dementia

A study by Weeks et al. (2008) found that past life experience, life transitions, and future health concerns affect the participation of older adults in physical activity. For example,



FIG. 3-1 Exercise is important to older adults for health promotion and maintenance.

women who worked outside the home and/or reared multiple children stated that they did not have the time or energy to exercise when they were young. Others thought that their current health status prevented them from engaging in exercise. Some older adults worried that increasing their activity level might increase their risk for hip fracture or arthritis.

Weeks et al. (2008) also found that when compared with seniors living independently, nursing home residents had a very low level of physical activity. The researchers suggested that nursing home staff members need to be trained in how to promote resident exercise at least twice a week. Nurses who work in nursing homes must collaborate with physical and occupational therapists to plan this training and implement a regular exercise program.

Assess older adults in any setting regarding their history of exercise and any health concerns they may have. For independent older adults, remind them to check with their health care provider to implement a supervised plan for regular physical activity. Teach all older adults about the value of physical activity.

For people who are homebound, focus on functional fitness, such as performing ADLs. For those who are not homebound, teach the importance of other types of exercise. Resistance exercise, for example, maintains muscle mass. Aerobic exercise, like walking, improves strength and endurance. One of the best exercises is walking at least 30 minutes, three to five times a week. The person may walk for 30 continuous minutes or walk 3 times a day for 10 minutes. During the winter, indoor shopping centers and other public places can be used. In addition, many senior centers and community centers offer exercise programs for older adults.

Swimming is also recommended but does not offer the weight-bearing advantage of walking. Weight bearing helps build bone, an especially important advantage for older women to prevent osteoporosis (see [Chapter 53](#)). Teach older adults who have been sedentary to start their exercise programs slowly and gradually increase the frequency and duration of activity over time, under the direction of their health care provider.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement by an older adult regarding her diet indicates a need for further teaching by the nurse?

- A. "I need to eat more calories to help me keep warm this winter."
- B. "I plan to eat more dairy foods like milk and yogurt every day."
- C. "I'm going to have dinner with my friends more often."
- D. "I plan to eat more raw fruits and whole grain foods every day."

Stress and Loss

Stress can speed up the aging process over time, or it can lead to diseases that increase the rate of degeneration. It can also impair the reserve capacity of older adults and lessen their ability to respond and adapt to changes in their environment.

Although no period of the life cycle is free from stress, the later years can be a time of especially high risk. Frequent sources of stress for the older population include:

- Rapid environmental changes that require immediate reaction
- Changes in lifestyle resulting from retirement or physical incapacity
- Acute or chronic illness
- Loss of significant others
- Financial hardships
- Relocation

How people react to these stresses depends on their personal coping skills and support networks. The loss of roles experienced by older adults often limits the availability of external support networks. For instance, losses leave many older adults without friends for support and help. As a result, many must rely solely on their personal resources to maintain their mental health/behavioral health. A combination of poor physical health and social problems leaves older adults susceptible to stress overload, which can result in illness and premature death.

The ways in which people adapt to old age depend largely on the personality traits and coping strategies that have characterized them throughout their lives. Establishing and maintaining relationships with others throughout life is especially important to the older person's happiness. Even more important than having friends is the nature of the friendships. People who have close, intimate, stable relationships with others in whom they confide are more likely to cope with crisis.

Some older adults have chosen to return to work at least on a part-time basis to increase their income and socialize with other people. If an individual retired between the ages of 55 and 65 years and lives into his or her 80s, funds can deplete; additional income is needed to meet basic needs, including money for prescription drugs. Although U.S. government Medicare Part A pays for inpatient hospital care, older adults pay for Medicare Part B to reimburse for 80% of most outpatient services, Medicare Part D for prescription drugs, and often a private Medi-Gap insurance (like United or Blue Cross/Blue Shield) to cover the costs not paid for by Medicare. The premiums for these insurances are very expensive and still require that older adults pay out-of-pocket copayments for health care services and prescription drugs.

Fortunately, most older adults are relatively healthy and live in and own their own homes. Physical and/or mental health

CHART 3-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Minimizing the Effects of Relocation Stress in Older Adults

- Provide opportunities for the patient to assist in decision making.
- Carefully explain all procedures and routines to the patient before they occur.
- Ask the family or significant other to provide familiar or special keepsakes to keep at the patient's bedside (e.g., family picture, favorite hairbrush).
- Reorient the patient frequently to his or her location.
- Ask the patient about his or her expectations during hospitalization or assisted-living or nursing home stay.
- Encourage the patient's family and friends to visit often.
- Establish a trusting relationship with the patient as early as possible.
- Assess the patient's usual lifestyle and daily activities, including food likes and dislikes and preferred time for bathing.
- Avoid unnecessary room changes.
- If possible, have a family member, significant other, staff member, or volunteer accompany the patient when leaving the unit for special procedures or therapies.

problems may force some to relocate to a retirement center or an assisted-living facility, although these facilities can be very expensive. Others move in with family members or apartment buildings funded and designated for seniors. Older adults usually have more difficulty adjusting to major change when compared with younger and middle-aged adults. Being admitted to a hospital or nursing home is a particularly traumatic experience. Older adults often suffer from relocation stress syndrome, also known as *relocation trauma*. **Relocation stress syndrome** is the physical and emotional distress that occurs after the person moves from one setting to another. Examples of physiologic behaviors are sleep disturbance and increased physical symptoms, such as GI distress. Examples of emotional manifestations are withdrawal, anxiety, anger, and depression. **Chart 3-2** lists nursing interventions that may help decrease the effects of relocation.

Family members and facility staff need to be aware that older adults need personal space in their new surroundings. Older adults need to participate in deciding how the space will be arranged and what they can keep in their new home to help offset potential feelings of powerlessness. Suggest that the patient or family bring in personal items, such as pictures of relatives and friends, favorite clothing, and valued knick-knacks, to assist in making the new setting seem more familiar and comfortable. This same intervention can be carried out in a hospital setting.

Accidents

Accidents are very common among older adults; falls are the most common. Motor vehicle crashes increase as well because of physiologic changes of aging or chronic diseases like Alzheimer's or arthritis.

Fall Prevention

Most accidents occur at home. Teach older adults about the need to be aware of safety precautions to prevent accidents, such as falls. Incapacitating accidents are a primary cause of

decreased mobility and chronic pain in old age. Some people develop **fallopobia** (fear of falling) and avoid leaving their homes.

Home modifications may help prevent falls. Collaborate with family and significant others when recommending useful changes to prevent older adult injury. Safeguards such as handrails, slip-proof pads for rugs, and adequate lighting are essential in the home. Avoiding scatter rugs, slippery floors, and clutter is also important to prevent falls. Installing grab bars and using non-slip bathmats can help prevent falls in the bathroom. Raised toilet seats are also important. Remind older adults to avoid going out on days when steps are wet or icy and to ask for help when ambulating. To minimize sensory overload, advise the older adult to concentrate on one activity at a time.

Changes in vision, touch, and motor ability can create challenges for older adults in any environment. For example, **presbyopia** (farsightedness that worsens with aging) may make walking more difficult; the person is less aware of the location of each step. In addition, the older adult may have disorders that affect visual acuity, such as macular degeneration, cataracts, glaucoma, or diabetic retinopathy. Teach the person to look down at where he or she is walking and have frequent eye examinations to update glasses or contact lenses to improve vision. Drug therapy or surgery may be needed to correct glaucoma or cataracts.

A reduced sense of touch decreases the awareness of body orientation (e.g., whether the foot is squarely on the step). The decreased reaction time that commonly results from age-related changes in the neurologic system may also impair the ability to recognize or move from a dangerous setting. Chronic diseases can affect mobility and sensation in the older adult as well, such as peripheral neuropathy and arthritis. If needed, encourage the use of visual, hearing, or ambulatory assistive devices. High costs and a fear of appearing old sometimes prevent older adults from obtaining or using hearing aids, eyeglasses, walkers, or canes.

Once an older person has been identified as being at high risk for falls, choose interventions that help prevent falls and possible serious injury. For those in the community, tai chi exercise is very helpful to improve balance and functional mobility, as well as to decrease the fear of falling, especially among older women (Wooten, 2010). Tai chi is described in **Chapter 2**.

Driving Safety

Motor vehicle crashes are the most common cause of injury-related death in the young-old population, those between 65 and 74 years of age. Increased national concerns about this growing problem have prompted many states to require more frequent testing for older drivers. As one ages, reaction time and the ability to multitask decrease. Sleep disturbances, especially insomnia, are also common in older adults but are *not* part of normal aging. Some crashes occur because the person falls asleep while driving.

The older the person, the more likely he or she will have chronic diseases and the drugs needed to manage them. These health problems and treatments can contribute to motor vehicle crashes. For instance, drugs used for hypertension can cause orthostatic hypotension (low blood pressure when changing body position from a supine to sitting or standing position).

CHART 3-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Recommendations for Improving Older Driver Safety

- Discuss driving ability with the patient to assess his or her perception.
- Assess physical and mental deficits that could affect driving ability.
- Consult with appropriate health care providers to treat health problems that could interfere with driving.
- Suggest community-based transportation options, if available, instead of driving.
- Discuss driving concerns with patients and their families.
- Remind the patient to wear glasses and hearing aids, if prescribed.
- Encourage driver refresher classes, often offered by AARP (formerly the American Association of Retired Persons).
- Consult a certified driving specialist for an on-road driving assessment.
- Encourage avoiding high-risk driving locations or conditions, such as busy urban interstates and wet or icy weather conditions.
- Report unsafe drivers to the state department of motor vehicles if they continue to drive.

Physicians and other health care professionals play a major role in identifying driver safety issues. Yet, many are reluctant to intervene because older patients feel they will lose their independence if they cannot drive. They may also be angry and resistant to the idea of giving up perhaps their only means of transportation. As an alternative, health care professionals can recommend driving refresher courses and suggest that high-risk driving conditions, like wet roads, be avoided. Newer vehicles have some safety features to help older adults, such as large-print digital readouts for speed and other data. [Chart 3-3](#) lists additional ways to improve older adult driver safety.

Drug Use and Misuse

Drug therapy for the older population is another major health issue. Because of the multiple chronic and acute health problems that occur in this age-group, drugs for older adults account for about one third of all prescription drug costs. The term **polymedicine** has been used to describe the use of many drugs to treat multiple health problems for older adults. **Polypharmacy** is the use of multiple drugs, duplicative drug therapy, high-dosage medications, and drugs prescribed for too long a period of time (Planton & Edlund, 2010). In other words, polypharmacy occurs when there is inappropriate or unnecessary prescribing that results in negative outcomes.

Older adults commonly take multiple nonprescription (OTC) drugs, such as analgesics, antacids, cold and cough preparations, laxatives, and herbal/nutritional supplements, often without consulting a health care provider. Therefore this population is at high risk for adverse drug events (ADEs) directly related to the number of drugs taken and the frequency with which they are taken. Drug-drug, food-drug, drug-herb, and drug-disease interactions are common ADEs that often lead to hospital admission.

Effects of Drugs on Older Adults

Older adults often do not tolerate the standard dosage of drugs traditionally prescribed for younger adults. The physiologic changes related to aging make drug therapy more

complex and challenging. These changes affect the absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion of drugs from the body. Even common antibiotics can lead to temporary memory loss or acute confusion.

Age-related changes that can potentially affect drug *absorption* from an oral route include an increase in gastric pH, a decrease in gastric blood flow, and a decrease in GI motility. Despite these changes, older adults do not have major absorption difficulties because of age-related changes alone.

Age-related changes that affect drug *distribution* include smaller amounts of total body water, an increased ratio of adipose tissue to lean body mass, a decreased albumin level, and a decreased cardiac output. Increased adipose tissue in proportion to lean body mass can cause increased storage of lipid-soluble drugs. This leads to a decreased concentration of the drug in plasma but an increased concentration in tissue.

Drug *metabolism* often occurs in the liver. Age-related changes affecting metabolism include a decrease in liver size, a decrease in liver blood flow, and a decrease in serum liver enzyme activity. These changes can result in increased plasma concentrations of a drug. Monitor liver function studies, and teach older adults to have regular physical examinations.

Changes in the kidneys can also result in high plasma concentrations of drugs. The *excretion* of drugs usually involves the renal system. Age-related changes of the renal system include decreased renal blood flow and reduced glomerular filtration rate. These changes result in a decreased creatinine clearance and thus a slower excretion time for medications. Consequently, serum drug levels can become toxic and the patient can become extremely ill or die. Monitor renal studies, especially serum creatinine and creatinine clearance, when giving drugs to older adults.

A creatinine clearance test measures the glomerular filtration rate of the kidneys. A commonly used formula for calculating creatinine clearance for men rather than directly measuring it is:

$$\frac{(140 - \text{Age in years}) \times \text{Lean body weight in kg}}{\text{Serum creatinine in mg/dL} \times 72}$$

For women, use this formula and multiply the answer by 0.85. A normal creatinine clearance for men is 107 to 139 mL/min and for women is 87 to 107 mL/min. Values decrease by 6.5 mL/min for each decade of life after 20 years of age (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

When chronic disease is added to the physiologic changes of aging, drug reactions have a more dramatic effect and take a longer time to correct. Often a lower dose of a drug is necessary to prevent ADEs. The policy of “start low, go slow” is essential when health care providers prescribe drugs for older adults. The physiologic changes of aging are highly individual. Alterations in drug therapy should always be individualized according to the actual physiologic changes present and the occurrence and severity of chronic disease. Common ADEs are listed in [Table 3-1](#).

Self-Administration of Drugs

Most people older than 65 years take their own medications. Because the risk for drug toxicity is considerably increased in the older population, assist patients in assuming this task responsibly. Teach patients and their caregivers, providing

TABLE 3-1 COMMON ADVERSE DRUG EVENTS (ADES) IN OLDER ADULTS

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| • Edema | • Dizziness |
| • Severe nausea and vomiting | • Syncope |
| • Anorexia | • Urinary retention |
| • Dehydration | • Diarrhea |
| • Dysrhythmias | • Constipation/Impaction |
| • Fatigue | • Hypotension |
| • Weakness | • Acute confusion |

**FIG. 3-2** A medication system for safe self-administration.

clear and concise directions and developing ways to assist them in overcoming difficulties with self-administration.

Older adults may make errors in self-administration or do not adhere to the drug regimen for several reasons. First, they may simply forget. In the rush of daily activities, they may not take their drugs or may take them too often because they cannot remember when or whether they have taken the medications. It is often helpful if they associate pill taking with daily events (e.g., meals) or keep a simple chart or calendar. Pill boxes are available for a daily, weekly, or monthly supply of medicine that can be placed in small compartments (Fig. 3-2). Egg cartons can be very cost-effective pill boxes. Large print on the drug label assists patients who have poor vision. Writing the drug regimen on the top of the bottle with large letters and numbers is helpful for some older adults. Colored labels or dots can also be applied. Easy-open bottle caps help older adults with limited hand mobility or strength.

A second reason for drug errors is poor communication with health care professionals. These problems result from poor explanations that are not understood because of educational limitations, language barriers, or difficulty with hearing and vision. Health care professionals often presume that their patients have learned the information if they have taught them about the drugs. Assist older adults in planning their drug therapy schedules as needed.

A third reason for errors is the varying ways that patients take their medications. Some add to their drug regimen by taking over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, which can interact with prescription drugs and cause serious problems. For example, a patient receiving warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone) for anticoagulation may take ibuprofen (Motrin) regularly for arthritis or garlic for hypertension. Because ibuprofen and garlic can inhibit clotting, this combination can cause serious bleeding. When obtaining a drug history, ask patients about all OTC drugs, including herbal and food supplements. Chapter 2 discusses herbal therapy in more detail.

TABLE 3-2 EXAMPLES OF BEERS CRITERIA FOR POTENTIALLY INAPPROPRIATE MEDICATION USE IN OLDER ADULTS

- | | |
|---|---|
| • meperidine (Demerol) | • promethazine (Phenergan) |
| • cyclobenzaprine (Flexeril) | • ketorolac (Toradol) |
| • digoxin (Lanoxin) (Should not exceed 0.125 mg daily except for atrial fibrillation) | • Short-acting nifedipine (e.g., Procardia) |
| • ticlopidine (Ticlid) | • ferrous sulfate (Iron) (Should not exceed 325 mg/day) |
| • fluoxetine (Prozac) | • chlorpropamide (Diabinese) |
| • amitriptyline (Elavil) | • diphenhydramine (Benadryl) |
| • diazepam (Valium) | |

Some other older adults avoid taking their prescribed drugs. The fear of dependency or the cost of the drugs may cause many to discontinue their drug therapy too soon or not begin taking the drug. In addition, the actions or side effects of some drugs may not be desirable. For example, diuretics may cause incontinence when patients cannot get to the bathroom quickly enough. Others may think that two pills are twice as effective and, therefore, better than taking just one. Some older adults take drugs that are leftover from a previous illness or one that is borrowed from someone else. Teach patients to take their medications exactly as prescribed by their health care providers.

Medication Assessment and Health Teaching

The Beers Criteria for Potentially Inappropriate Medication Use in Older Adults assessment tool, also known as the *Beers criteria*, is very useful in screening for medication-related risks in older adults who have chronic health problems (Molony, 2009). The tool lists multiple medications and related concerns. Examples of these “at-risk” drugs are listed in Table 3-2.

To reduce drug-related risks in older adults, perform a medication assessment every 6 months or more often if an acute illness or exacerbation of a chronic disease occurs. Be sure to:

- Obtain a list of all medications taken on a regular and as-needed basis; include OTC and prescribed drugs, herbs, and nutritional supplements. If a list is not available, ask the older adult or family to gather all ointments, pills, lotions, eyedrops, inhalers, injectable solutions, vitamins, minerals, and other OTC medications and place into a bag for review (Greenawalt, 2009).
- Highlight all medications that are part of the Beers criteria; highlight any medication where the indication for its use is not clear, inappropriate, or could be discontinued (e.g., duplicative drug).
- Collaborate with the older adult, family, pharmacist, and primary health care provider if appropriate to determine the need for medication changes. Suggest once-a-day dosing if possible.
- Give older adults verbal and written information (at the appropriate reading level) regarding any change or new medication prescribed.
- Promote adherence to the drug therapy regimen exactly as prescribed; remind older adults to check with their primary care provider if they want to change their

regimen or add an OTC medication or natural product (nutritional or herbal supplement, or probiotic).

- Encourage lifestyle changes and other nonpharmacologic interventions to help manage or prevent health problems.
- Remind older adults not to share or borrow medications.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A community health nurse conducts an assessment of an older adult's medications. Which medication taken by the client every day has the highest risk for adverse drug events?

- A. Digoxin (Lanoxin) 0.375 mg
- B. Acetaminophen (Tylenol) 650 mg
- C. Furosemide (Lasix) 180 mg
- D. Amlodipine (Norvasc) 5 mg

Mental Health/Behavioral Health Problems

Older adults are usually mentally sound and competent. A few changes in cognition have been identified as age related and are linked to specific cognitive functions rather than intellectual capacity. These changes include a decreased reaction time to stimuli and an impaired memory for recent events. *However, severe cognitive impairment, depression, hallucinations, and delusions are not part of the normal aging process.*

Two forms of competence exist: legal competence and clinical competence. A person is **legally competent** if he or she is:

- 18 years of age or older
- Pregnant or a married minor
- A legally emancipated (free) minor who is self-supporting
- Not declared incompetent by a court of law

If a court determines that a person is not legally competent, a **guardian** is appointed to make health care decisions. Guardians may be family members or a person who is not related to the patient. When no one is available, a guardian may be appointed from a local Area Agency on Aging, an organization with services and resources for older adults.

A person is **clinically competent** if he or she is legally competent and can make clinical decisions. Decisional capacity is determined by a person's ability to identify problems, recognize options, make decisions, and provide the rationale supporting the decisions. Selected behavioral/mental illnesses often affect both legal and clinical competence.

Nurses are in a unique position to teach older adults about ways to promote cognitive health. In a recent systematic literature review, Williams and Kemper (2010) found that collaborative interventions targeting cognitive training (e.g., learning a new skill), physical activity, social engagement, and nutrition were the most helpful in optimizing cognitive aging.

As older adults age, they are at increasing risk for cognitive health problems—depression, delirium, and dementia, often referred to as the 3Ds. Many older veterans of the Korean and Vietnam wars also suffer from chronic pain, depression, post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), and severe anxiety. Substance abuse, especially alcoholism, is common among veterans and older adults in general. Alcoholism can

contribute to cognitive decline and may be used as a coping mechanism for loss. Several behavioral health problems are discussed briefly here; more comprehensive discussions can be found in mental health/behavioral health textbooks.

Depression

Depression is the most common mental health/behavioral health problem among older adults in the community, affecting 15 of every 100 older adults (National Institute of Mental Health, 2011). It increases in incidence when older adults are admitted to the hospital or nursing home. **Depression** is broadly defined as a mood disorder that can have cognitive, affective, and physical manifestations. It can be primary or secondary and can range from mild to severe, or major. As a *primary* problem, depression is thought to result from a lack of the neurotransmitters *norepinephrine* and *serotonin* in the brain. *Secondary* depression, sometimes called *situational* depression, can result when there is a sudden change in the person's life, such as an illness or loss. Common illnesses that can cause secondary depression include stroke, arthritis, and cardiac disease. It is often underdiagnosed by physicians and is therefore undertreated.

Families and nurses are in the best position to suspect depression in an older adult. Several screening tools are available to help determine if the patient has clinical depression. The **Geriatric Depression Scale—Short Form (GDS-SF)** is a valid and reliable screening tool and is available in multiple languages. The patient selects “yes” or “no” to 15 questions, or a nurse or other health care professional can ask the questions to the patient. A score of 10 or greater is consistent with a possible diagnosis of clinical depression (Fig. 3-3). These patients are then evaluated more thoroughly by the health care provider for treatment. Without diagnosis and treatment, depression can result in:

- Worsening of medical conditions
- Risk for physical illness
- Alcoholism and drug abuse
- Increased pain and disability
- Delayed recovery from illness
- Suicide

Older adults have the highest suicide rate of any age-group. Non-Hispanic white men who are 75 to 85 years of age are the most likely to die from suicide than any other older subgroup.

Older adults with depression may have early morning insomnia, excessive daytime sleeping, poor appetite, a lack of energy, and an unwillingness to participate in social and recreational activities. The primary treatment for depression usually includes drug therapy and psychotherapy.

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are the first choice for drug therapy but take 2 to 3 weeks to work. They act by increasing the amount of serotonin and norepinephrine at nerve synapses in the brain.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Tricyclic antidepressants should not be used because they have anticholinergic properties that can cause acute confusion, severe constipation, and urinary incontinence. For older adults who may be prescribed this group of drugs, question the health care provider and request an SSRI or other treatment.

Geriatric Depression Scale—Short Form

Choose the best answer for how you have felt over the past week:

1. Are you basically satisfied with your life? YES / **NO**
2. Have you dropped many of your activities and interests? **YES** / NO
3. Do you feel that your life is empty? **YES** / NO
4. Do you often get bored? **YES** / NO
5. Are you in good spirits most of the time? YES / **NO**
6. Are you afraid that something bad is going to happen to you? **YES** / NO
7. Do you feel happy most of the time? YES / **NO**
8. Do you often feel helpless? **YES** / NO
9. Do you prefer to stay at home, rather than going out and doing new things? **YES** / NO
10. Do you feel you have more problems with memory than most? **YES** / NO
11. Do you think it is wonderful to be alive now? YES / **NO**
12. Do you feel pretty worthless the way you are now? **YES** / NO
13. Do you feel full of energy? YES / **NO**
14. Do you feel that your situation is hopeless? **YES** / NO
15. Do you think that most people are better off than you are? **YES** / NO

Answers in bold indicate depression. Score 1 point for each bolded answer.

A score > 5 points is suggestive of depression.

A score ≥ 10 points is almost always indicative of depression.

A score > 5 points should warrant a follow-up comprehensive assessment.

FIG. 3-3 The Geriatric Depression Scale—Short Form.

Recent research has demonstrated that reminiscence or reflective therapies also help older adults overcome feelings of depression and despair. A study by McCaffrey et al. (2010) determined that frequent walking through a large garden and reflective journaling decreased depression as measured by the Geriatric Depression Scale (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 24). More information about depression, including strategies for preventing depression, is available in mental health/behavioral health nursing textbooks.

Dementia

Dementia is a broad term used for a syndrome that involves a slowly progressive cognitive decline, sometimes referred to as *chronic confusion*. This syndrome represents a global impairment of intellectual function and is generally chronic and progressive. There are many types of dementia, the most common being Alzheimer's disease. Multi-infarct dementia, the second most common dementia, is a vascular disorder and accounts for 20% to 25% of all dementias. [Chapter 44](#) discusses dementias in detail, with a focus on Alzheimer's disease.

Delirium

Whereas dementia is a chronic, progressive disorder, **delirium** is an *acute* state of confusion. Delirium also differs from dementia in that it is often short-term and reversible within

a month or less. It is often seen among older adults in a setting with which they are unfamiliar. It occurs in up to 50% of older adults who are hospitalized (Sendelbach & Guthrie, 2009). In addition to cognitive changes, some patients have physical and emotional manifestations. The types of delirium are *hyperactive*, *hypoactive*, *mixed*, and *unclassifiable*. *Hyperactive* patients may try to climb out of bed or become agitated, restless, and aggressive. *Hypoactive* patients are quiet, apathetic, and withdrawn. *Mixed* delirium patients have a combination of hyperactive and hypoactive manifestations. Others cannot be classified in one of these categories.

Some of the multiple factors that can cause delirium are:

- Drug therapy (especially anticholinergic and psychoactive drugs)
- Electrolyte imbalances
- Infections, especially urinary tract, pneumonia, and sepsis
- Fecal impaction or severe diarrhea
- Surgery
- Metabolic problems, such as hypoglycemia
- Neurologic disorders, such as tumors
- Circulatory, renal, and pulmonary disorders
- Nutritional deficiencies
- Hypoxia
- Relocation
- Major loss

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Do Reflective Activities Improve Symptoms of Depression and Despair in Older Adults?

McCaffrey, R., Hanson, C., & McCaffrey, W. (2010). Garden walking for depression: A research report. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 24(5), 252-259.

Depression affects 15 of every 100 older adults at some point in their later years, which leads to physical, mental, and social dysfunction. In this mixed-method design study, the researchers created a walking guide and reflective journal entitled *Stroll for Well-Being: Garden Walks at the Morikami Museum* (Stroll) to be used by 40 community-dwelling older adults at their convenience for 12 visits over a period of 6 months. The participants were either self-diagnosed or were being treated by a health care provider for depression. The sample was 62.5% white and 12.5% African American. The remaining group was a mix of ethnic backgrounds. Most participants were educated at a high school level or higher.

The *Stroll* was structured so that they would spend about 2 hours each at 6 stops in the Morikami Museum and Japanese Gardens. At each stop, the participants made entries into a reflective journal to share their lived experience.

Using the short-form Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS) as a quantitative measure before and after the intervention, the researchers found a statistically significant change in depression scores, with lower scores indicating less depression. For the qualitative aspect of the study, a 4-step thematic analysis of the journal entries included:

- Being forced to spend time away from pressures of the day
- A sense of the beauty of nature
- Using the gardens to provide insight and depth to the experience
- Gratitude for the beauty of nature and the “life I have led”

Level of Evidence: 4

This study is a small descriptive study but includes both quantitative and qualitative methods to study the effect of the intervention for a selected convenience sample.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Depression is usually treated with psychotherapy and drugs, which often cause adverse drug effects in older adults. When nurses care for older adults with depression, they need to recommend alternative and complementary interventions that may help relieve depressive symptoms and possibly decrease dependence on drug therapy. Using the findings of this study, it is clear that enjoying the beauty of nature and reflecting on life experiences can benefit patients who have been diagnosed with or suspect that they have depression.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Acutely confused patients who are discharged from the hospital are at an increased risk for functional decline, falls, and incontinence at home. Therefore carefully assess older patients in any setting for acute confusion.

A number of tools have been developed for assessing delirium, including the Confusion Assessment Method (CAM), Delirium Index (DI), NEECHAM Confusion Scale, and Mini-Cog (Sendelbach & Guthrie, 2009). Although the CAM is easy to use (Table 3-3), the nurse-developed NEECHAM Confusion Scale is also popular. The CAM consists of nine open-ended questions and a diagnostic algorithm for determining delirium. The Delirium Index is adapted from the CAM and serves as a measure of severity of delirium based on patient observation. The NEECHAM measures the level of confusion in cognitive processing, behavior, and

TABLE 3-3 THE CONFUSION ASSESSMENT METHOD (CAM)

1. Acute onset and fluctuating course (e.g., Is there evidence of an acute change in mental status from the patient's baseline?)
2. Inattention (e.g., Does the patient have difficulty focusing attention or keeping track of what is being said?)
3. Disorganized thinking (e.g., Is the patient's thinking and conversation disorganized or incoherent?)
4. Altered level of consciousness (e.g., Is the patient lethargic, hyperalert, or difficult to arouse?)

The diagnosis of delirium by the CAM is the presence of features 1 and 2 and either 3 or 4.

physiologic control. The lower the patient's score, the more severe his or her delirium is (Lyons et al., 2008).

To help prevent and manage delirium, use a calm voice to frequently reorient the patient. A number of other nursing interventions have been used with some success. For example, playing tapes of soothing music may have a calming effect. Providing a doll or stuffed animal to “fidget” with may prevent the patient from removing important medical tubes or equipment. Some nurses believe that providing dolls and stuffed animals is treating the adult like a child, but this intervention can sometimes be very effective when used for therapeutic purposes. If the patient has a favorite item, such as an afghan blanket or a picture, ask the family or significant others to provide it for the same purpose.

Table 3-4 highlights the major differences between delirium and dementia and lists the major nursing considerations for each. The most difficult challenge is caring for a patient who is experiencing both problems at the same time (Lyons et al., 2008).

Alcohol Use and Abuse

Excessive alcohol consumption increases the risk for falls and other accidents, affects mood and cognitive ability, and leads to complications of chronic diseases like diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) (Naegle, 2008). Isolation, depression, and delirium can result from alcohol abuse. The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA) recommends that people older than 65 years have no more than one alcoholic drink a day or seven drinks in a week (NIAAA, 2011).

The Short Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test—Geriatric Version (SMAST-G) is often used by nurses and other health care professionals in ambulatory care settings to detect alcohol abuse or alcoholism. The 10 yes/no question test is available in English and Spanish and can be either self-administered or administered by a clinician. Examples of questions on the tool are:

- Do you drink to take your mind off your problems?
- When you feel lonely, does having a drink help?

A “yes” answer is worth one point. A total score of 2 or more points indicates that the individual has a problem with alcohol.

Other screening tools for alcohol misuse in older adults include the CAGE questionnaire and the Alcohol-Related Problems Survey (ARPS) and the Short ARPS (shARPS). The acronym CAGE comes from four questions:

- Have you ever tried to cut down on your drinking?
- Have people annoyed you by criticizing your drinking?

TABLE 3-4 DIFFERENCES IN THE CHARACTERISTICS OF DELIRIUM AND DEMENTIA

VARIABLE	DEMENTIA	DELIRIUM
Description	A chronic, progressive cognitive decline	An acute confusional state
Onset	Slow	Fast
Duration	Months to years	Hours to less than 1 month
Cause	Unknown, possibly familial, chemical	Multiple, such as surgery, infection, drugs
Reversibility	None	Usually
Management	Treat signs and symptoms	Remove or treat the cause
Nursing interventions	Reorientation not effective in the late stages; use validation therapy (acknowledge the patient's feelings, and do not argue); provide a safe environment; observe for associated behaviors, such as delusions and hallucinations	Reorient the patient to reality; provide a safe environment

- Have you ever felt bad or guilty about your drinking?
- Have you ever had a drink first thing in the morning to settle your nerves to get rid of a hangover (eye-opener)?

The ARPS and sARPS were created specifically for use with older adults. In a classic study by Fink et al. (2002), these tools were shown to be more sensitive than the SMAST-G and CAGE screening tests in identifying older adults at risk for alcohol abuse. Those who were identified as non-hazardous and harmful drinkers by the ARPS tool were not identified by other tools. These groups were not diagnosed as having alcoholism, but were at risk for this problem.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety

A 75-year-old man recently lost his life partner after living with him for over 40 years. He visits his physician and reports decreased appetite, extreme fatigue, and insomnia. He also states that he finds it difficult to be in a good mood anymore since his partner died. When giving his medical history, he admits that he is a social drinker and his drinking recently increased.

1. What do you think caused this man's new symptoms and why?
2. As this man's office nurse, what other assessment data do you need to collect? What screening tools might you use?
3. For what is this older adult at high risk and why?
4. With whom might you collaborate to develop his plan of care?
5. What treatment options does this man have?

Elder Neglect and Abuse

Another problem for some older adults is neglect and abuse, both verbal and physical. Some older adults are more vulnerable to these problems than others, especially widows who may have difficulty being assertive. Elder abuse and neglect is a serious problem that affects an estimated 700,000 to 1.2 million older adults each year (Fulmer, 2008). Older persons who are neglected or abused are often physically dependent. The abuser is often a family member who becomes frustrated or distraught over the burden of caring for the older adult. Unfortunately, only 1 case of elder abuse in 10 is reported. Be sure to screen for abuse and neglect of older adults using an appropriate assessment tool.

Prolonged caregiving by a family member is a new and unexpected role for adult children, usually women. This new role may result in role fatigue, conflict, and strain. As a result,

neglect can occur when a caregiver fails to provide for an older adult's basic needs, such as food, clothing, medications, or assistance with ADLs. The caregiver refuses to let other people, like nursing assistants or home care nurses, into the home. Whether intentional or unintentional, neglect accounts for almost half of all cases of actual elder abuse.

Physical abuse is the use of physical force that results in bodily injury, especially in the "bathing suit" zone (abdomen, buttocks, genital area, upper thighs). Examples of physical abuse are hitting, burning, pushing, and molesting the patient. Sedating the older adult is also abusive. **Financial abuse** occurs when the older adult's property or resources are mismanaged or misused; this is more common than physical abuse. **Emotional abuse** is the intentional use of threats, humiliation, intimidation, and isolation toward older adults.

Carefully assess the patient for signs of abuse, such as bruises in clusters or regular patterns; burns, commonly to the buttocks or the soles of the feet; unusual hair loss; or multiple injuries, especially fractures. If the older adult is too weak or has no other resources or support systems, he or she may not admit that abuse is occurring. Neglect may be manifested by pressure ulcers, contractures, dehydration or malnutrition, urine burns, excessive body odor, and listlessness. Depression and dementia are common in community older adults who are abused or neglected.

The Elder Assessment Instrument (EAI) is a 41-item tool that can be used by nurses and other health care professionals to screen for elder abuse and neglect (Fulmer, 2008). The older adult should be referred to the appropriate service when there is:

- Evidence of mistreatment without sufficient clinical explanation
- Complaint by an older adult of being abused or neglected
- A belief by the health care professional that there is a high risk for or probable abuse, neglect, abandonment, or exploitation

All states in the United States and other Western countries have laws requiring health care professionals to report suspected elder abuse. In the community, if physical abuse or neglect is suspected, notify the local Adult Protective Services agency. In a hospital or nursing home, notify the social worker or case manager, who then will report the problem to the appropriate agency.

HEALTH CARE ISSUES FOR OLDER ADULTS IN HOSPITALS AND NURSING HOMES

Older adults who are admitted to hospitals and nursing homes have special needs and potential problems. Many of these problems are similar to those seen among community older adults as discussed in this chapter. Whereas nursing homes have multiple federal and state laws to prevent negative patient outcomes, hospitals are not required to follow these protective laws. However, The Joint Commission and other agencies have recently addressed some of the most common problems seen in older adults. In addition, since 1996, the Hartford Institute for Gerontological Nursing has worked to ensure that all hospitalized patients 65 years of age and older be given quality care.

Nurses may not be aware that the needs of older adults differ from those of younger adults (Fulmer, 2007). Some health care systems have designated Acute Care of the Elderly (ACE) units with geriatric resources nurses and geriatric clinical nurse specialists. The patients are cared for by geriatricians who specialize in the care of older adults.

Other hospitals have developed interdisciplinary programs system-wide to meet the special needs of older patients. The incentive for these new programs is the Nurses Improving Care for Health System Elders (NICHE) project, which continues to generate evidence-based practice guidelines for older adult care.

The purpose of all of these programs and units is to focus on the special health care issues seen in the older population. The **Fulmer SPICES** framework was developed as part of the NICHE project and identifies six serious “marker conditions” that can lead to longer hospital stays, higher medical costs, and even deaths. These conditions are:

- Sleep disorders
- Problems with eating or feeding
- Incontinence
- Confusion
- Evidence of falls
- Skin breakdown

Each of these problems is briefly described here and also is discussed in more detail in other parts of this chapter and the textbook. Other problems, such as depression and constipation, are also common in older hospitalized patients. Rather than being fully comprehensive, the SPICES framework is intended to be an easy tool that has been called “geriatric vital signs” (Fulmer, 2007).

Sleep, Nutrition, and Incontinence

Sleep disorders are common in hospitalized patients, especially older adults. Adequate rest is important for healing, as well as for physical and mental functioning. Pain, chronic disease, environmental noise and lighting, and staff conversations are a few of the many contributing factors to insomnia in the acute and long-term care setting. Assess the patient, and ask how he or she is sleeping. If the patient is not able to answer, observe for restlessness and other behaviors that could indicate lack of adequate rest. Manage the patient’s pain by giving pain medication before bedtime. Attempt to keep patients awake during the day to prevent insomnia. Keep staff conversations as quiet as possible and away from patients’ rooms. Dim the lights to make the patient area as dark as possible. Postpone treatments until waking hours or early

morning if they can be delayed safely. If possible, place a “Do not Disturb” sign on the patient’s door to avoid unnecessary interruptions in sleep (Cole & Richards, 2007).

Problems with eating and feeding prevent the older patient from receiving adequate nutrition. Malnutrition is common among older adults and is associated with poor clinical outcomes, including death. In a study by Volkert et al. (2010), nutrition-related problems were present in half of 205 older patients admitted to a community hospital, but only 8.3% of them received enteral nutrition supplements. The researchers concluded that nutritional screenings and standard protocols should be implemented for older patients in all hospitals. Nurses need to perform nutritional screenings on the first day of patient admission, including a thorough nutritional history, weight, height, and body mass index (BMI) calculation. **Chapter 63** describes nutritional screening in more detail.

Collaborate with the registered dietitian (RD) about the patient’s nutritional status as needed. Consider cultural preferences, and determine what foods the patient likes. Manage symptoms such as pain, nausea, and vomiting. If the patient has difficulty chewing or swallowing, coordinate a plan of care with the speech-language pathologist and dietitian. If there are no dietary restrictions, encourage family members or friends to bring in food that the patient might enjoy. Additional interventions to prevent nutrition-related problems are discussed in **Chapter 63**.

Incontinence varies in type and severity and may be caused by many factors, including acute or chronic disease, ADL ability, and available staff. Assess the patient to identify causes for incontinence. *Incontinence is not a physiologic change of aging, but it is very common in both the hospital and long-term care setting.* Place the patient on a toileting schedule or a bowel or bladder training program, if appropriate. Delegate and supervise this activity to unlicensed assistive personnel. **Chapters 8 and 69** discuss bladder training in detail; **Chapter 8** describes bowel training as well.

Confusion, Falls, and Skin Breakdown

Acute and chronic confusion affect many older patients in both the hospital and nursing home. Whereas chronic confusion states such as dementia are not reversible, acute confusion, or delirium, may be avoidable and is often reversible when the cause is resolved or removed. For example, avoiding multiple drugs and promoting adequate sleep can help prevent acute confusion. Help the patient by reorienting him or her to reality as much as needed. Keep the patient as comfortable as possible; for example, provide interventions to control pain. Delirium is discussed earlier in this chapter. **Chapter 44** describes dementia in detail.

The most common accident among older patients in a hospital or nursing home setting is falling. A **fall** is an unintentional change in body position that results in the patient’s body coming to rest on the floor or ground. Some falls result in serious injuries such as fractures and head trauma. The Joint Commission’s **National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs)** require that all inpatient health care settings have admission and daily fall risk assessment tools and a fall reduction program for patients who are at high risk.

Assess all older patients for risk for falls. Many assessment tools, such as the Morse Falls Scale, have been developed to help the nurse focus on factors that increase an older person’s risk for falling. **Chart 3-4** lists some of the common risk factors

CHART 3-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing Risk Factors and Preventing Falls in Older Adults

Assess for the presence of these risk factors:

- History of falls
- Advanced age (>80 years)
- Multiple illnesses
- Generalized weakness or decreased mobility
- Gait and postural instability
- Disorientation or confusion
- Use of drugs that can cause increased confusion, mobility limitations, or orthostatic hypotension
- Urinary incontinence
- Communication impairments
- Major visual impairment or visual impairment without correction
- Alcohol or other substance abuse
- Location of patient's room away from the nurses' station (in the hospital or nursing home)
- Change of shift or mealtime (in the hospital or nursing home)

Implement these nursing interventions for all patients, regardless of risk:

- Monitor the patient's activities and behavior as often as possible, preferably every 30 to 60 minutes.
- Teach the patient and family about the Fall Prevention program to become safety partners.
- Remind the patient to call for help before getting out of bed or a chair.
- Help the patient to get out of bed or a chair if needed; lock all equipment, such as beds and wheelchairs, before transferring patients.
- Teach patients to use the grab bars when walking in the hall without assistive devices or when using the bathroom.

- Provide or remind the patient to use a walker or cane for ambulating if needed; educate him or her on how to use these devices.
- Remind the patient to wear eyeglasses or a hearing aid if needed.
- Help the incontinent patient to toilet every 1 to 2 hours.
- Clean up spills immediately.
- Arrange the furniture in the patient's room or hallway to eliminate clutter or obstacles that could contribute to a fall.
- Provide adequate lighting at all times, especially at night.
- Observe for side effects and toxic effects of drug therapy.
- Orient the patient to the environment.
- Keep the call light and patient care articles within reach; ensure that the patient can use the call light.
- Place the bed in the lowest position with the brakes locked.
- Place objects that the patient needs within reach.
- Ensure that adequate handrails are present in the patient's room, bathroom, and hall.
- Have the physical therapist assess the patient for mobility and safety.

For patients at a high risk for falls:

- Implement all assessments and interventions listed above.
- Relocate the patient for best visibility and supervision.
- Encourage family members or significant other to stay with the patient.
- Collaborate with other members of the health care team, especially the rehabilitative services.
- Use technologic devices to alert staff to patients getting out of bed, such as mattress sensor pads.
- Use low beds or futon-type beds to prevent injury if the patient falls out of bed.

that should be assessed and evidence-based, collaborative interventions for preventing falls in high-risk patients. *A recent history of falling is the single most important predictor for falls.*

Older patients often have **nocturia** (urination at night) and get out of bed to go to the bathroom. They may forget to ask for assistance and may subsequently fall as a result of disorientation in the darkness in an unfamiliar environment. In some cases, they may crawl over the siderail, which can make the fall more serious. Because of this, full or split siderails are used far less often in both hospitals and nursing homes. In both settings, siderails are classified as restraints unless the use of rails helps patients increase mobility.

A **restraint** is any device or drug that prevents the patient from moving freely and must be prescribed by a health care provider. In 1990, the federal government enforced a law that gives nursing home residents the right to be restraint free. Removing physical restraints from nursing home residents has reduced serious injuries, although falls and minor injuries have increased in some cases. Mattresses placed on floors next to patient beds or "low beds" have helped reduce injury. The Joint Commission's NPSGs require hospitals to reduce the risk for patient harm resulting from falls.

Hospitals have also reduced the use of physical restraints. The Joint Commission has specific standards that limit the use of physical restraints in hospitals and nursing homes. Chemical restraints (psychoactive drugs) such as haloperidol (Haldol) have sometimes been used in place of physical restraints.

Experts agree that older adults should not be placed in a physical restraint or sedated just because they are old. Use alternatives before applying any type of restraint (Chart 3-5). However, if all other interventions (e.g., reminding patients to call for assistance when needed; asking a family member to stay with patients) are not effective in fall prevention, a physical restraint may be required for a limited period. Applying a restraint is a serious intervention and should be analyzed for its risk versus its benefit. Check the patient in a restraint every 30 to 60 minutes, and release the restraint at least every 2 hours for turning, repositioning, and toileting. Physical restraints such as vests have caused serious injury and even death. *If restraint is needed, use the least restrictive device first. Be sure to follow your facility's policy and procedure for using restraints.*

Chemical restraints are often overused in hospital settings. Examples include:

- Antipsychotic drugs
- Antianxiety drugs
- Antidepressant drugs
- Sedative-hypnotic drugs

The most potent group of psychoactive drugs is the antipsychotics. These drugs are appropriate only for the control of certain behavioral problems, such as delusions, acute psychosis, and schizophrenia. Typical antipsychotic drugs include haloperidol (Haldol, Peridol ) and thiothixene (Navane). These drugs should not be used to treat anxiety or induce sedation.

CHART 3-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Using Restraint Alternatives

- If the patient is acutely confused, reorient him or her to reality as often as possible.
- If the patient has dementia, use validation to reaffirm his or her feelings and concerns.
- Check the patient often, at least every hour.
- If the patient pulls tubes and lines, cover them with roller gauze or another protective device; be sure that IV insertion sites are visible for assessment.
- Keep the patient busy, with an activity, pillow or apron, puzzle, or art project.
- Provide soft, calming music.
- Place the patient in an area where he or she can be supervised. (If the patient is agitated, do not place him or her in a noisy area.)
- Turn off the television if the patient is agitated.
- Ask a family member or friend to stay with the patient at night.
- Help the patient to toilet every 2 to 3 hours, including during the night.
- Be sure that the patient's needs for food, fluids, and comfort are met.
- If agency policy allows, provide the patient with a pet visit.
- Provide familiar objects or cherished items that the patient can touch.
- Document the use of all alternative interventions.
- If a restraint is applied, use the least restrictive device (e.g., mitts rather than wrist restraints, a roller belt rather than a vest).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Closely monitor older adults receiving antipsychotics for adverse drug events (ADEs). Assess patients for:

- Anticholinergic effects, the most common problem, causing constipation, dry mouth, and urinary retention
- Orthostatic hypotension, which increases the patient's risk for falls and fractures
- Parkinsonism, including tremors, bradycardia, and a shuffling gait
- Restlessness and the inability to stay still in any one position
- Hyperglycemia and diabetes mellitus, which occur more with drugs like risperidone (Risperdal) and quetiapine (Seroquel) (Abdallah et al., 2008)

If any of these ADEs occur, notify the health care provider immediately.

Skin breakdown, especially pressure ulcers, is a major problem among older adults in hospitals and nursing homes. In some cases, these wounds cause death from infection. Therefore prevention is the best approach. The Joint Commission's NPSGs require that all health care agencies have a program to prevent agency-associated pressure ulcers. The program should include these evidence-based interventions:

- Nutritional support
- Avoidance of skin injury from friction or shearing forces

- Repositioning and support surfaces
- A plan to increase mobility and activity level, when appropriate
- Skin cleansing and use of moisture barriers

Assess older adults for their risk for pressure ulcers, using an assessment tool such as the Braden Scale for Predicting Pressure Sore Risk (see [Chapter 27](#)). Implement evidence-based interventions to prevent agency-acquired pressure ulcers. Coordinate these interventions with members of the health care team, including the dietitian and wound care specialist.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Supervise unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) for frequent turning and repositioning for the patient who is immobile. Assess the skin every 8 hours for reddened areas that do not blanch. Remind UAP to keep the skin clean and dry. Use pressure-relieving mattresses, and avoid briefs or absorbent pads that can cause skin irritation and excess moisture. [Chapter 27](#) describes additional interventions for prevention and management of pressure ulcers in detail.

Skin tears are also common in older adults, especially the old-old group and those who are on chronic steroid therapy. Teach UAP to use extreme caution when handling these patients. Use a gentle touch, and report any open areas. Avoid bruising because older adults have increased capillary fragility.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Coordinate care by collaborating with members of the health care team when providing care to older adults in the community or inpatient setting.
- Assess all older adults for risk for falls and driving ability (see [Charts 3-3 and 3-4](#)).

- Assess for signs of elder neglect and abuse; if suspected, it should be reported.
- Physical and chemical restraints should not be used for older adults until all other alternatives have been tried.
- Follow The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals and federal/state standards when using patient restraints.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

- Relocation stress syndrome is the reaction of an older adult when transferred to a different environment; ways to minimize this problem are listed in [Chart 3-2](#).
- Decreased nutrition and mobility are two health problems experienced by older adults.
- Teach older adults about the benefits of regular physical exercise.
- Provide information regarding community resources for older adults to help them meet their basic needs.
- Teach health promotion practices as listed in [Chart 3-1](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Depression is the most common yet most underdiagnosed and undertreated mental health/behavioral health disorder among older adults.
- Delirium is acute confusion; dementia is chronic confusion (see [Tables 3-3 and 3-4](#)). Confusion is not part of the normal aging process.
- Screen older adults for alcohol abuse or alcoholism, and refer those with identified problems to appropriate resources.
- Elder neglect and abuse are serious problems; family caregivers are usually the abusers.
- Many older adults return to work to help pay for health care and other expenses and to provide socialization.

Physiological Integrity

- The four subgroups of the older adult population are the young old, middle old, old old, and elite old.
- The biggest concern regarding accidents among older adults in both the community and inpatient setting is falls.
- Physiologic changes of aging predispose older adults to toxic effects of medication; drugs are absorbed, metabolized, and distributed more slowly than in younger people. They are also excreted more slowly by the kidneys.
- Medication use in older adults is often a problem when they commit errors when self-medicating, avoid needed medications, or have problems understanding their medication regimen.
- Follow The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals and best practice guidelines to prevent agency-acquired pressure ulcers.
- Promote sleep and rest for older adults to decrease the incidence of delirium and to prevent falls.
- Use alternatives for physical or chemical restraints to provide patient safety, as listed in [Chart 3-5](#).
- Use the SPICES assessment tool for identifying serious health problems that can be prevented or managed early.

Cultural Aspects of Health and Illness

Donna D. Ignatavicius*

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Health Promotion and Maintenance

1. Explain the purpose of *Healthy People 2020* as related to culture.
2. Incorporate cultural practices and beliefs into the patient's plan of care.

Psychosocial Integrity

3. Define culture, cultural diversity, cultural competence, and cultural sensitivity.
4. Discuss specific cultural practices, such as family roles and nutrition, which should be part of a cultural assessment.

5. Describe the best approach for caring for patients who are homeless.
6. Identify two major health issues related to the lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender (LGBT) population.
7. Identify two influences of culture on drug therapy.
8. Collaborate with the professional chaplain to manage a patient's spiritual distress.
9. Describe two examples of generic and folk medicine that are used in the United States today.
10. Explain ways that nurses can communicate sensitively with patients from various cultural groups.

In the 1950s, Madeline Leininger, a nurse anthropologist and theorist, provided a large body of knowledge called transcultural nursing. She defined **transcultural nursing** as an area of study and practice that focuses on the care, health, and illness patterns of people with similarities and differences in their cultural beliefs, values, and practices. Since that time, other researchers have continued her work as the United States has become more culturally diverse.

It is still the case that the majority of people in the United States are white and of European descent (Euro-American;

also called *Caucasian*). However, the population is increasing by more than 2.5 million people *each year*, and 1 million of them are newcomers (also called *immigrants*) from other countries. In 2008, the number of minority populations in the United States accounted for 31% of the total population; Hispanics/Latinos are the largest minority group at over 15%; the black population represents about 12%. Asian Americans are currently the fastest growing group at 5% of the U.S. population.

In addition to racial and ethnic diversity, people differ in gender, age (generation), education, occupation, geographic location, and religion. Each of these differences represents varying cultures. As a nurse, you will care for many diverse patients and work with diverse staff. Therefore you will need to learn about cultural diversity and become culturally competent.

*Special thanks to Stephanie M. Ignatavicius, B.A., for her contributions to this chapter in these areas: LGBT, homeless, and little people issues.



FIG. 4-1 Healthy self-esteem in young adulthood is tied to appreciation of one's cultural heritage. These Korean Americans demonstrate pride in their cultural heritage through participation in a cultural celebration.

CULTURE AND CULTURAL COMPETENCE

When considering cultural aspects of health, nurses and other health care staff need to understand the differences in commonly used terms: culture, cultural diversity, cultural competency, and cultural sensitivity. Culture is not restricted to race or ethnicity. Instead, **culture** is a broad term that refers to integrated patterns of behavior acquired over time, including beliefs, values, customs, norms, habits, language, thoughts, and ways of life. It is learned and transmitted primarily within the family unit, generation, and/or other social organizations and is shared by most of the members of the group. A person's culture provides his or her worldview, which helps guide decision making and enhances self-worth (Fig. 4-1). Be sure to respect the clinical decisions made by all patients and their families, even if they differ from what you think the decisions should be.

Cultural diversity refers to differences among people, which may or may not be visible. For example, a person's *race* describes his or her visible physical characteristics, such as skin tone, head shape, and hair texture. *Ethnicity* describes common social customs, values, and beliefs of a group. *A person's race does not determine his or her ethnicity.* For instance, a woman may be white and of Russian descent. Therefore her customs and beliefs about health care or family roles may be different from those of a white woman from Italian ancestry. Another example is the use of the U.S. census category "African American," which implies that all black people come from an African background. There are a number of problems with that assumption. First, all African countries do not have the same customs and values. Second, although many black people are of African heritage, some are from Haiti, Jamaica, and other countries. Therefore to refer to all black people as African American is not culturally correct or sensitive.

Cultural competence is a process that involves respecting all differences and not letting one's own biases influence others. It requires having the knowledge, skills, and

TABLE 4-1 CAMPINHA-BACOTE'S ASKED MODEL OF CULTURAL COMPETENCE

Awareness: Are you aware of your personal biases and prejudices toward cultures different from yours?
Skill: Do you have the skill to conduct a cultural assessment and perform a culturally based physical assessment?
Knowledge: Do you have knowledge of the patient's worldview (the way that a person looks at the universe to form values in his or her life and the world)?
Encounters: How many face-to-face encounters have you had with patients from diverse cultural backgrounds?
Desire: What is your desire to want to be culturally competent?

Data from Dr. Josie Campinha-Bacote, expert in cultural nursing.

understanding about diverse groups. In health care, cultural competence refers to the *ability of health care providers and organizations to understand and respond effectively to the cultural and linguistic needs that patients bring to the health care setting.* The Joint Commission standards and National Patient Safety Goals require that cultural differences be respected and incorporated into the plan of care for patient safety and quality care.

Becoming culturally competent first requires you to examine your feelings and experiences regarding diversity, starting with an understanding of your own heritage. Then you will need to learn more about specific cultural differences so you can develop an appreciation for the values and beliefs of both patients and staff co-workers. Campinha-Bacote's (2003) **ASKED** Model of Cultural Competence provides a beginning, basic self-assessment tool. Ask yourself the questions listed in Table 4-1.

Cultural sensitivity occurs when a person is aware of, respects, and appreciates cultural differences and thus avoids biased, negative, impolite, and offensive language and actions when interacting with people of diverse cultures. Sensitivity also means avoiding stereotyping. **Stereotyping** occurs when you assume that all people in a particular culture have the group's values and beliefs or practice the group's customs. Everyone in a particular group is a unique person.

Some groups continually strive to preserve their heritage. The most common example is the American Indian (also called Native American) population, which consists of many subgroups, also called *councils* or *nations*, across the United States. This multi-cultural group teaches the importance of maintaining traditions from generation to generation. However, specific beliefs and rituals vary among its subgroups. For instance, the Lakota council is made up of several tribes that have specific customs. These customs differ from those of other American Indians like the Cherokee or Navajo nations. However, some generalizations apply to all American Indians, such as their value for respect, spirituality, and nature.

According to U.S. government treaties in the 1800s, the Lakotas and other like subgroups are American Indians, not Native Americans. For that reason, they prefer to call themselves *American Indian* because that is their legal designated name (Ogala Lakota College, Pine Ridge, SD, personal communication, August 6, 2003). This textbook uses *American Indian* rather than *Native American* to refer to this large cultural group. Keep in mind that other nations or pueblos may prefer the term *Native Americans*. Remember to always ask the

patient what term he or she prefers and use that term during conversation.

HEALTH AND HEALTH CARE DISPARITIES

Health disparities are the differences in the incidence of health care problems among minority racial and ethnic groups when compared with the white majority. To date, no research has definitely supported either a genetic or environmental cause for these disparities, but both may contribute to the problem. Disparities in health care quality may also help explain the differences in health status among minority groups. Possible factors that may contribute to this problem include socioeconomic status, individual discrimination, access to care, and language barriers.

The *Healthy People 2020* health promotion initiative reflects assessments of major risks to health and wellness, changing public health priorities, and emerging issues related to our nation's health preparedness and prevention, including reducing disparities in health and health care among populations living in the United States. Whereas many objectives of the initiative are the same as those of *Healthy People 2010*, many others were modified and some objectives were added. Several new areas of public health concern were added to the list or greatly expanded, such as access to health care, genomics, and global health. Where appropriate, this book includes tables that outline specific *Healthy People 2020* objectives with abbreviated action plans related to selected health problems or health care issues.

PURNELL'S DOMAINS OF CULTURE

No one is expected to know the specific traits of every type of culture, including racial and ethnic groups. But you will need to continue learning as you interact with more and more diverse groups to develop cultural competence. Purnell & Paulanka (2008) have suggested 12 essential areas, or domains, to assess and understand any culture (Table 4-2). The most relevant of these cultural practices for nursing care are briefly reviewed here.

Culture Overview and Communication

The first domain includes *overview and localities*. This area refers to a person's residence (where he or she lives), heritage, education, and occupation.

Overview and Localities

The ancestors of a large portion of the U.S. population left their native countries many decades or centuries ago. One of

the biggest movements of newcomers was in the early 1940s. Many of these people were European, fleeing persecution or war-torn countries. More recent immigrants come to the United States for better opportunities for education, jobs, religious freedom, and democracy (Purnell & Paulanka, 2008).

Although ethnic minorities can be found anywhere throughout the United States, some have chosen to live in specific geographic areas with members of their culture for support and practice of traditional customs. For example, Asian Americans are concentrated in New York City and California. Hispanics, especially Mexicans and Latinos, tend to reside in the Southwestern United States, Texas, Florida, and California (Purnell & Paulanka, 2008). New York City also has a high percentage of people of Hispanic descent.

Other types of cultural groups are also attracted to specific geographic locations. For instance, older adults tend to retire to warmer climates like Florida and Arizona. Many younger people are attracted to large urban areas for access to multiple social activities and job opportunities. When you are caring for patients, assess where they live and whether they have a support system within their culture.

Homelessness

A special group of people, the *homeless*, is increasing because of the recent recession and high unemployment. According to the National Coalition for the Homeless, each night in the United States, an estimated 700,000 to 800,000 people are homeless (National Coalition for the Homeless, 2009). The homeless are a mix of people who vary in age, ethnicity, education, and occupation. In the past 10 years, this group has become increasingly diverse. Most homeless people are single adults with little or no family support.

Homelessness can be either absolute or relative. Absolute homelessness is defined as having no physical home; those who are relatively homeless have some sort of shelter, although it may not be safe or sanitary (Badiaga et al., 2008). The severity of health care needs of this population is increasing while available resources are shrinking (Drury, 2008). Most patients use the emergency department for primary care and seek health care only because of complications of chronic disease. In many cases, these complications could be prevented with consistent treatment and follow-up. Major reasons that explain why the homeless avoid the health care community include (Jones et al., 2009):

- Mistrust of health care providers
- Fear of discrimination
- Language barriers
- Inability to understand medical information
- Inability to adhere to treatment

The homeless are particularly prone to *cardiovascular disease* (CVD) because of poor nutrition, stress, and lack of preventive and follow-up care. The stress of being homeless, coupled with lack of ongoing health care, leads to hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and high cholesterol (Jones et al., 2009). To add to these risks, the typical diet of a homeless person includes high intake of saturated fats, sodium, and cholesterol. Stress-coping behaviors such as smoking, excessive alcohol, and illicit drug use also increase the risk for CVD.

Poor nutrition, alcohol, and stress also increase the risk for *infection* among homeless people. Common infections in this population include tuberculosis, human immune deficiency

TABLE 4-2 PURNELL'S DOMAINS FOR ASSESSING CULTURAL GROUPS OR PERSONS

• Nutrition • Communication • Family roles and organization • Workforce issues • Biocultural ecology • High-risk behaviors	• Overview (e.g., heritage) • Pregnancy and childbirth practices • Death rituals • Spirituality • Health care practices • Health care practitioners
---	--

Data from Purnell, L. (2000). A description of the Purnell model for cultural competence. *Journal of Transcultural Nursing*, 11(1), 40-46.

virus (HIV), hepatitis B and hepatitis C, and skin disorders such as scabies and pediculosis (body lice). These infections occur as a result of:

- Staying in overcrowded shelters
- Using IV drugs
- Having limited access to bathing and clean clothing
- Sharing bedding and clothing with others
- Having sex with multiple partners, especially without condoms

Mental health disorders are particularly common among the homeless population. According to the Interagency Council on Homelessness, 36% are chronic substance abusers and over 26% have other mental health problems; 17% are veterans of war (Interagency Council on Homelessness, 2009). The homeless are also exposed to unsafe environments that can cause illness, trauma, or death, such as violence and extremes of heat and cold.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The primary approach to caring for a homeless patient is to establish trust. Many of these patients have experienced discrimination and therefore do not trust nurses or other health care professionals. When talking with a homeless patient, avoid discriminatory language and do not make assumptions. Take time to communicate, empathize, and show concern to build trust and assess the patient's needs (Drury, 2008; Jones et al., 2009).

Second, while caring for the patient, remember that he or she does not have the same comforts as other patients, such as adequate bathing, cooking, and rest areas. These obstacles need to be considered when developing an ongoing plan of care. Ask the patient what resources he or she has available.

To compensate for limited time with homeless patients, develop a simple treatment plan. Fill prescriptions, provide supplies, and give necessary immunizations and screening tests so that fewer visits might be needed (Drury, 2008).

Communication

Another area to assess in Purnell's first domain of culture is the ability of your patient to *communicate*. Language continues to be the largest barrier for people who do not speak English or cannot communicate in English effectively. If your patient is not fluent in English, determine his or her primary language. The Joint Commission National Patient Safety Goals require that professional *interpreters* (also called *trained medical interpreters* or *medical language interpreters*) be available in health care facilities to prevent errors in communication that could lead to patient harm. In addition, telephone interviews with patients who cannot communicate in English should involve the use of telephonic interpretation services, such as Language Line Services (www.language-line.com) or Language Services Associates (www.lsaweb.com). **Chart 4-1** lists guidelines to help you communicate with non-English-speaking patients. Remember that many groups (e.g., Japanese Americans, Appalachians, and Mexican Americans) are not as open with expressing their feelings to strangers as most Euro-Americans.

Communication also includes nonverbal forms, such as body language, eye contact, facial expression, and touch. *Be sure to find out which forms are acceptable for your patient.* For instance, eye contact can be interpreted differently depending

CHART 4-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Guidelines for Communicating with Non-English-Speaking Patients

- Use dialect-specific interpreters who are the same gender and about the same age as the patient if possible.
- Use interpreters who are familiar with health and health care.
- Avoid the use of relatives to prevent bias and misinterpretation.
- Speak slowly, and allow the patient time to translate and process what is being discussed.
- Use common words in the patient's language if known; become familiar with Spanish terms that are frequently used in health care.
- Maintain eye contact with the patient and family while communicating, unless it is not culturally acceptable.
- Remember that most patients can understand English better than they can speak it.
- Be careful with nonverbal facial expressions and body language.

on the patient's cultural background. Some American Indians find it offensive to make direct eye contact. Many Middle-Eastern cultures are not likely to accept touch by strangers.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A homeless client enters the emergency department smelling strongly of alcohol and having an offensive body odor. He is drowsy and disoriented and has a staggering gait. What is the nurse's first priority in caring for this client?

- Establish trust to enhance communication.
- Notify the social worker or case manager on call.
- Keep the client safe to prevent a fall or other injury.
- Ask a nursing assistant to bathe the client.

Family and Workplace Issues

Ask about *family roles, organization, and lifestyle*, as well as *workforce issues*. Information about family and gender roles will influence your plan of care. For example, an Arab Muslim woman cannot be exposed and only a female is allowed to care for her. If you are preparing the patient for a procedure, keep her entire body including her head covered and provide additional draping. Make sure that all staff caring for her are female.

Assess who makes the decisions in the family; do not assume that the patient will want to make them. Autonomy and independence are traditional Euro-American values but may not be valued by some patients. The family as a unit may make decisions—not the individual patient. In cultures in which men dominate, the husband makes all decisions for the woman. If the woman works outside the home, she may have difficulty being assertive or making workplace decisions. This is especially true among Nigerian, Chinese, and Iranian women (Purnell & Paulanka, 2008).

In some cultures, entire families insist on staying with patients while they are hospitalized to show their love and support. On the other hand, some patients may not want family members present. Strive to meet the needs of your patients and negotiate with both families and administration. For example, request extra cots or recliners for family sleeping arrangements, if possible.

Another aspect of family roles and organization is how members view and treat their older adult relatives. Some groups, such as Asian subcultures, highly value and respect older adults. Euro-Americans tend to value children and their immediate nuclear families more than their extended families, including grandparents, cousins, and uncles.

The makeup of a family in the United States varies greatly. For example, some families have single parents; some have same-sex parents, and others have grandparents who rear their grandchildren. Domestic partnerships without the formality of marriage with the opposite or same gender are also very common and acceptable in most societies. However, the health status and the quality of health care may differ depending on a person's sexual identity. Do not assume that every patient is heterosexual or clearly gendered. *Include questions about sexual identity and sexual activity as part of your patient's health assessment.*

The health care system, like other facets of society, often overlooks sexualities and genders that are alternative to the standard of heterosexuality and clearly delineated maleness or femaleness. As a health care professional, it is essential to not be restricted by rigid standards of identity. A good way of rethinking concepts of sexuality and gender is to think of each as existing along a spectrum as opposed to the confinement of heterosexual/homosexual and male/female. This textbook uses **LGBT** to refer to the lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender population to best characterize the spectrum of identities. This terminology is widely accepted by the LGBT community and is commonly seen in the literature. This term is also known as **LGBTQI** to include questioning/queer and intersex individuals. Questioning or queer individuals prefer not having strict labels on their sexualities or genders; intersex individuals have ambiguous genitals or other reproductive anatomy.

Members within this population vary by race, ethnicity, and age. The exact size of the group is not known, but it is estimated to be between 2% and 5% of the adult U.S. population (Mayer et al., 2008).

Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Health

LGBT health has not been widely studied because the group is very diverse. Selecting an accurate sample is difficult and therefore may not represent the entire group. As a result, any research findings may be less reliable than desired and more difficult to generalize for the entire culture.

In 1999, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) drafted a classic document to summarize its findings of *lesbian health* and recommendations for improvement. In 2001, the United States Department of Health and Human Services (USDHHS) published a companion document for the *Healthy People 2010* program on LGBT health. However, the research findings may have limitations because of inaccuracies in sample identity.

Using the best evidence available, the USDHHS report outlined major health disparities between lesbian and non-lesbian women. Women who identify as lesbians have a higher incidence of substance abuse and obesity than non-lesbian women. In addition, lesbians are twice as likely to smoke heavily when compared with their non-lesbian counterparts. These factors make lesbians more prone to lung cancer, cardiovascular disease (CVD), and other health issues associated with smoking and obesity (USDHHS, 2001). Greater rates of substance abuse, obesity, and smoking may be the result of

stress experienced by minority groups and the internalization of the homophobia (fear of LGBT people) they encounter on a regular basis (Hamilton & Mahalik, 2009). This stress may also be a contributing factor to the high incidence of depression and suicide among lesbians.

Lesbians are also at greater risk for women-specific cancers, including breast, ovarian, and cervical cancers because of several factors (USDHHS, 2001):

- Substance abuse, obesity, and smoking are cancer risks.
- Nulliparity (not giving birth to a child) or low parity is also a risk factor for gynecologic cancer.
- Lesbians are less likely to have routine mammograms, pap smears, and sexually transmitted disease (STD) testing because of the false assumption that lack of heterosexual sex eliminates their risk for these problems.

Bisexual women engage in more substance abuse than heterosexual women. They also report more frequent episodes of back problems, digestive disorders, and chronic fatigue. The causes of these differences are not well-researched (Weisz, 2009).

Gay men or men having sex with men have a higher incidence of anal and colon cancer than other men. Emerging research suggests that routine anal Pap testing for HIV-infected men helps detect anal cancer early so that it can be treated successfully (Mayer et al., 2008).

Recent studies have linked stress from homophobia and pressure to conform to the masculine ideal to health issues in gay men, including substance abuse, risky sexual behaviors, eating disorders, and high rates of depression and suicide (Hamilton & Mahalik, 2009). Acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)-related complications such as Kaposi's sarcoma are also more likely to occur in gay men when compared with other men (USDHHS, 2001).

Transgender people often undergo hormone therapy to facilitate their transitions to the desired gender. Exogenous hormones can lead to cardiovascular risks, especially for those who also smoke, are older, are obese, and/or have a history of hypertension or other CVD. Biologic males taking estrogens and progestins to transition to being female may also develop thrombosis, liver disease, and diabetes mellitus. Biologic females taking testosterone may have high serum lipid levels, infertility, and benign or malignant hepatic tumors. Cross-sex hormone therapy can also increase serum lipids in those who are HIV-infected (Mayer et al., 2008).

Quality of LGBT Health Care

LGBT people experience prejudice and hostility frequently in their lives; they should not need to fear this type of treatment from health care professionals. As a result of this fear, many are hesitant to seek medical treatment or have routine check-ups and screening tests. Health care professionals should provide culturally safe care and respect patient diversity. Respect the patient's right to have his or her partner present when interacting with the health care community.

Part of culturally safe care requires that nurses and other providers know their patient's sexual and gender identities. When learning the patient's name, establish his or her preferred gender identity and pronoun (he or she); do not assume this identity based on appearance. Document the patient's identity on the assessment form. Assessment forms traditionally ask questions such as "Are you

TABLE 4-3 RECOMMENDED PATIENT INTERVIEW QUESTIONS ABOUT SEXUAL IDENTITY AND HEALTH CARE

- Do you have sex with men, women, with both, or neither?
- Does anyone live with you in your household?
- Are you in a relationship with someone who does not live with you?
- If you have a sexual partner, have you or your partner been evaluated about the possibility of transmitting infections to each other?
- If you have more than one sexual partner, how are you protecting both of you from infections, such as hepatitis B or hepatitis C or HIV?
- Have you disclosed your sexual identity and sexual activity to your health care provider?
- If you have not, may I have your permission to provide that information to members of the health care team who are involved in your care?
- Who do you consider as your closest family members?

HIV, Human immune deficiency virus.

married, divorced, widowed, or single?” Using this question, there is no option for LGBT patients to answer. This type of barrier interferes with communication between the patient and the nurse. Better questions to ask about sexual identity during a patient interview are recommended in Table 4-3.

Once trust and communication have been established, teach patients about the need for screening tests and health promotion activities to decrease risks. Refer patients who are substance abusers or depressed to a mental health specialist or substance abuse intervention programs as needed.

Biologic Ecology

Biologic ecology includes biologic variations, health disparities, and drug metabolism differences. Race/ethnic, gender, and health disparities have been discussed. A common biologic variation relates to adult body size and type, such as dwarfism.

Dwarfism

People with dwarfism are defined as having a height below 4 feet 10 inches and are properly referred to as *little people (LP)*, *dwarves*, or *short-statured*. Dwarfism presents in numerous forms. All forms of dwarfism are considered as either proportionate or disproportionate. Proportionate LP are smaller versions of average-height people, whereas disproportionate LP have limbs and features that are not in proportion with the relative size of their other parts. Dwarfism results most often from genetic mutations and hormone imbalance.

Little people experience many health problems as they age. Common problems include arthritis, hydrocephaly, ear infections, and obesity. LP often have curvature and/or compression of the spine and may have knock-knees or bow-legs. These conditions can be very painful and require drug therapy. Patients with achondroplasia have a higher risk for spinal stenosis. Those with hydrocephalus may have shunts.

LP also have numerous ear infections that may require a myringotomy to insert ear tubes. Females with dwarfism are more likely to experience menstrual complications, reduced fertility, fibroids, and early menopause than average-height women.

Many LP require surgeries to treat skeletal abnormalities, such as spinal fusion, laminectomy, total joint replacement, and osteotomy (to correct bowed or knock-knee legs). They may also have leg-lengthening surgeries in which the leg bones are broken and screws are inserted and regularly rotated in miniscule increments to lengthen the bones as they heal.

When taking care of patients after surgery, be aware that they may be at high risk for falls because of their size. LP often require adaptive resources such as footstools and reaching tools to perform ADLs independently. Be sure to know their health history because previous health problems and surgeries can affect the management of current problems.

Like all patients, little people often benefit from support groups in their community. The largest nonprofit organization for this population is the Little People of America (LPA) (www.lpaonline.org). The primary purpose of this organization is to provide parent and peer support for people of short stature. Refer patients to the state chapter of the LPA if they are interested in resources and peer support.

Ethnopharmacology

A new field related to culture is ethnopharmacology. **Ethnopharmacology** is the study of the effect of ethnicity on how drugs work in the body, including drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion. For example, some angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors for hypertension typically work better for Euro-American patients than for African Americans and other blacks. On the other hand, the thiazide diuretics are more effective for lowering blood pressure in African Americans and other blacks when compared with Euro-Americans. The exact causes for these differences are being studied. Although nurse generalists do not prescribe drug therapy, they need to understand why selected drugs are given to certain groups.

The lifestyle and values of patients can also affect drug response. For instance, excess tobacco and alcohol use can increase or decrease the rate at which a drug is metabolized and excreted, depending on the specific drug. Another concern about drug therapy is whether the patient adheres to the drug regimen. For example, older adults may be less likely than younger adults to follow the prescribed therapy because of drug costs. The reasons for the differences among cultural groups are unknown but may include language or transportation barriers. Consider these cultural factors when teaching patients about their drug therapy.

Nutrition

Nutritional assessment is part of the comprehensive health assessment (see Chapter 63). Determine what food means to your patient and which foods are preferred. For example, Korean and Chinese foods tend to be high in salt; other Asian cultures prepare very spicy food that can contribute to GI cancers. Also assess the patient's eating patterns, which may be different from your own. Some patients are vegetarians; others are vegan (no food or food products made with dairy, eggs, or meat). Respect the patient's preferences and beliefs about food and what it means to them.

Rituals and customs surrounding food are also important to assess. American Indian subgroups often celebrate Feast Days. Muslims may observe Ramadan by fasting during the day; Catholics may give up a certain food during Lent. The British have tea in the afternoon, and many people in

the United States have coffee during their morning breaks. Hot dogs and sports events seem to go together, and turkey is traditionally served at Thanksgiving. Assess how your patient connects food with customs or rituals, especially if the patient is being cared for during one of these special times.

Some ethnic groups have food intolerances. For example, many Vietnamese Americans, African Americans, and other blacks are lactose intolerant. Some Greek Americans have glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, an enzyme problem (Purnell & Paulanka, 2008). Coordinate the diet with the registered dietitian to ensure that patients receive foods that they can tolerate and are culturally appropriate. For new immigrants who may not know where to obtain ethnic foods, provide a list of specialty stores in the community.

Spirituality

Spirituality is a broad concept that involves the behaviors that give purpose to life and provide individual strength; it may or may not include religious practices. Religion is a more narrow term and refers to a formal belief system that is expressed in public.

Only some of your patients will state their religion, but everyone is spiritual, including people who do not believe in God or other Supreme Being. Therefore many of your patients will have spiritual needs or experience spiritual distress. Patients often rate emotional and spiritual needs as an important aspect of their hospital care. Spiritual practices such as prayer often influence patient healing. Helping patients meet their spiritual needs improves satisfaction and helps them cope with their health problems or crisis. *Respect your patient's beliefs about religion and spirituality, even if they differ from your own.*

The Joint Commission requires all health care facilities and agencies to address the spiritual needs of their patients. Yet nurses may not know how to help them or may not feel they have time for this aspect of care. Today professional chaplains are specifically trained and certified to help patients meet their spiritual needs in hospitals and other health care agencies.

Since 2000, The Joint Commission has required hospitals to have a qualified chaplain as part of the health care team. Chaplains may come from any religious affiliation, but all must know about health problems, health care, and interpersonal skills. Although they may perform religious ceremonies or rituals, their role is much broader. Chaplains have the time and expertise to manage spiritual distress. They are uniquely qualified to help patients cope with their responses to health crises, which are typically guilt and anger. They can also assist families to allay fear and anxiety and help them cope with their loved one's illness or end of life. Collaborate with your facility's chaplain if patients or families have any of these needs.

In addition to providing direct services to patients and their families, chaplains can be a liaison between patients and families and clinical staff. They can also support staff when difficult situations occur, such as a serious illness or death of a staff member. Do not hesitate to ask a chaplain to help you or your health care team.

Health Care Practices and Practitioners

Assess your patient's health promotion and maintenance practices, such as exercise and a healthy diet. Ask about preventive screening tests, such as mammograms and prostate

examinations, and current immunizations, such as the influenza vaccine. Recent newcomers may not have been tested or immunized if they came from less affluent countries where the technology and resources are not available. Other patients may have access to resources but may choose or not be able to follow recommended testing or other health promotion practices.

Determine if your patient is able to afford health care and what type of insurance coverage he or she has. Many people have health insurance through their employer, but if the patient is not employed or is working part-time, he or she may not have that benefit. Collaborate with the case manager or social worker to help find resources to pay for health care.

Another aspect of health care practices that is important to ask about is the use of alternative health care systems and healers. Although many people in the United States use the traditional medical and nursing system for health care, some do not seek professional care for many reasons, such as:

- Transportation difficulties
- High cost of care
- Fear and distrust of health care workers
- Poor communication between patients and professionals

Therefore cultural ways of healing might be sought before or while seeking care from the traditional health care system. Although considered unscientific and strange to many health care professionals, it is essential to assess and support patients in their cultural practices when appropriate.

Many cultures work to preserve both their heritage and their health. Folk health beliefs, practices, and values are learned from experience and observations. They are passed down from generation to generation and have been found to be valuable. For example, acupuncture is an ancient Chinese therapy widely used today. Information about these treatments and other common complementary and alternative therapies is found in [Chapter 2](#). In addition, they are discussed in many interventions chapters as they relate to specific health problems.

Generic and folk systems of caring for and curing people have been around for thousands of years. For example, early ancestors found they could prevent or cure disease with plants. Digitalis (which comes from the foxglove plant) and belladonna have been used for many generations to treat heart failure and tuberculosis. Methods other than plants are also used. There are also numerous hot/cold beliefs related to healing. These beliefs may not necessarily be based on a nurse's definition of temperature. Hot/cold theories of healing are found among Hispanic, Arab, Asian, Southeast Indian, Southern Anglo-American, African-American, and other black cultures. For example, some Hispanic women believe that partaking of "cold" foods and medicines after pregnancy will cause bleeding to stop. They believe this blood is reabsorbed into the body to cause nervousness or insanity later in life. A similar belief is that cold can get into the open vagina after childbirth and stay in the body to cause arthritis in adult life. Health care providers must realize that the patient's view of the cause of the problem may be quite different from the scientific explanation.

The "evil eye" is a prominent belief in some cultures, including Hispanic and Arab cultures. The Spanish term for this belief is *mal de ojo*. Some people believe that "the gods" give the evil eye when they become envious or jealous when



FIG. 4-2 “Hand of God” amulet to protect the wearer from the “evil eye.”

a person is excessively praised or admired. Another belief is that a person who is angry with another person can “put the evil eye” on him or her. Various amulets are worn to reflect the evil eye back onto the person who caused it (Fig. 4-2).

A very important point to consider with folk medicine is the use of particular phrases to describe health problems. Some African Americans and others refer to blood in various ways. For example, “high blood” can mean hypertension, or too much blood in the body, or it can mean the movement of blood to a higher part of the body such as the brain or head. The movement of blood into the head is commonly believed to cause strokes or nervousness or to make the person “fall out” (faint). A similar situation is “low blood,” which can mean low blood pressure or anemia. These



FIG. 4-3 Within the Mexican-American folk medicine system, the *curandero* is the folk healer.

different terms can cause communication problems. When taking care of your patients, ask questions to determine the intended meaning of certain phrases.

Some patients may not seek traditional health care providers, such as physicians and nurse practitioners, as their first source for treatment. Instead, they go to cultural healers, especially in American Indian and some Hispanic cultures. For instance, in the Mexican-American medicine system, the folk healer is called a **curandero** (male) or **curandera** (female). He or she considers health and health care from a holistic, spiritual perspective rather than the traditional scientific viewpoint (Fig. 4-3).

When performing a cultural assessment, be sure to ask your patients whom they consider as their primary source of treatment or healing and what methods they use. Do not be judgmental, and show respect for their values and beliefs at all times. Use an interpreter if you cannot understand their responses.

Culture is a very broad area but an essential aspect of nursing care. Be sure to document your cultural assessment findings for communication with other members of the health care team. For additional information about cultural assessment, review the culture chapter in your fundamentals textbook. For more information about specific cultures, refer to the bibliography resources.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points.

- Culture refers to integrated patterns of behavior acquired over time that includes thought, language, beliefs, customs, norms, and ways of life.
- Cultural competence is the ability of health care providers and organizations to understand and respond effectively to the cultural and linguistic needs of patients.
- To assess your cultural competence, answer the questions in Table 4-1.
- One of the major purposes of *Healthy People 2020* is to eliminate differences in health and health care access and focus on public health issues that need improvement.
- Nurses need to be educated in and assess specific cultural practices that affect assessment and planning of patient care, including spirituality, nutrition, and communication (see Table 4-2).
- The homeless population is increasing because of the recession and high unemployment.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- The homeless are very prone to cardiovascular disease (CVD), infections, substance abuse, and other mental health disorders.
- Be sure to establish trust with homeless patients and keep the plan of care simple.
- Communication techniques vary among cultural groups and may be misinterpreted; nurses need to learn how groups communicate (verbal and nonverbal) to avoid misperceptions.
- The Joint Commission requires that professional interpreters be available to prevent communication errors with patients and their families.
- Two major issues related to the very diverse LGBT culture are health disparities and the quality of LGBT health care.
- Use the recommendations in [Table 4-3](#) when communicating about sexual identity.
- Dwarfism is a common biologic variation; dwarves are also called *people of short stature* and *little people*.
- Little people have many orthopedic problems that often require surgery. Assess these patients for risk for falling, and be sure they have adaptive resources to help with ADLs.
- Be aware that certain drugs work differently for some patients based on race or ethnicity.
- Be sure to identify and help meet patients' spiritual needs; certified health care chaplains can assist in meeting these needs.
- Patients may avoid the traditional health care system because of transportation problems, high cost of care, fear and distrust of health care staff, or poor communication between patients and health care providers; generic or folk medicine may be used as an alternative.
- Examples of generic and folk medicine are the use of the *curandero* by some members of the Mexican-American culture and the use of clay for healing in some Southeastern and Appalachian people.

Pain: The Fifth Vital Sign

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Chronic Cancer Pain
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Identify the role of the nurse as an advocate for patients in acute pain and chronic pain.
2. Explain the importance of collaborating with the health care team in developing the pain management plan of care.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Develop a teaching plan for patients to include complementary and alternative therapies for pain management.
4. Incorporate special considerations for older adults related to pain assessment and management.
5. Describe how to provide patient-centered care by respecting patients' preferences, values, and beliefs regarding pain and its management.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Discuss the attitudes and knowledge of patients and their families regarding pain assessment and management.

Physiological Integrity

7. Perform a complete pain assessment, and document per agency policy.
8. Differentiate between addiction, pseudoaddiction, tolerance, and physical dependence.
9. Compare and contrast the characteristics of the major types of pain and examples of each.
10. Explain the role of non-opioid analgesics in pain management.
11. Develop a plan of care to prevent common side effects of opioid analgesics.
12. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of drug administration routes.
13. Determine the patient's need for pain medication, including PRN and adjuvant therapy.
14. Prioritize care for the patient receiving patient-controlled analgesia.
15. Outline care for a patient receiving epidural analgesia.
16. Identify the importance of incorporating nonpharmacologic interventions into the patient's plan of care as needed to control pain.

Pain is a universal, complex, subjective experience. It is the most common reason for a patient to seek medical care and the number-one reason for a person to take medication. It alters or diminishes quality of life more than any other single health-related problem. Despite more than 35 years of work by clinicians and professional and lay organizations, unrelieved and undertreated pain remains a

major yet often avoidable public health problem in the world.

The nurse's primary role in pain management is to advocate for the patient by *believing* reports of pain and acting promptly to relieve it, while respecting the patient's preferences and values (Quality and Safety Education for Nurses [QSEN], 2011). Even though some nurses with many

years of experience think that they can identify patients in pain, it is sometimes not easy to do.

In response to mandates by The Joint Commission and other organizations, many hospitals and other health care agencies in the United States have **interdisciplinary pain teams**, also known as **analgesia teams**, who consult with staff and prescribers on how best to control the patient's pain. The team typically consists of one or more nurses, pharmacists, case managers, and physicians. In larger facilities, pain teams may specialize by type of pain (e.g., cancer pain team). Although a large part of the team's plan may center on drug therapy, this group also recommends nonpharmacologic measures as appropriate.

OVERVIEW

Everyone experiences pain at some point in life. Because pain is such a private and personal experience, it may be difficult to describe or explain to others. The amount of pain and responses to it vary from person to person; therefore interpreting pain solely on actions or behaviors can be misleading.

Pain is generally related to some type of tissue damage and serves as a warning signal. Although pain is familiar to most people, it is so complex that there is no single, universal treatment.

Definitions of Pain

Pain is an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage. In their classic work, McCaffery and Pasero (1999) offered a more personal explanation of pain when they stated that pain is whatever the experiencing person says it is and exists whenever he or she says it does. This understanding of pain requires that the patient be seen as the authority on the pain and as the *only* one who can define the experience. *In other words, self-report is always the most reliable indication of pain.* Nurses who approach pain from this perspective can help the patient achieve effective pain management by advocating for proper control. Of course, if the patient cannot communicate, self-report is not possible. In this case, a variety of methods and observation of nonverbal indicators are used to assess the pain, as described later in this chapter.

Scope of the Problem

Pain is also a major economic problem and a leading cause of disability that hampers the lives of many people, especially older adults. Chronic pain is the most common cause of long-term disability, affecting millions of Americans and others throughout the world.

Pain is not adequately treated in all areas of health care. Populations at the highest risk are older adults, substance abusers, and those whose primary language differs from that of the health care professional. Older adults in nursing homes are especially at risk because of lack of professional staff and communication problems. In patients who are substance abusers, unrelieved pain can contribute to relapses or increased substance use.

Inadequate pain management can lead to many consequences affecting the patient and family members. These consequences often affect the patient's and family's quality of life (Table 5-1). Therefore, as a nurse, you have a legal and

TABLE 5-1 IMPACT OF UNRELIEVED PAIN

Physiologic Impact

- Prolongs stress response
- Increases heart rate, blood pressure, and oxygen demand
- Decreases GI motility
- Causes immobility
- Decreases immune response
- Delays healing
- Increases risk for chronic pain

Quality-of-Life Impact

- Interferes with ADLs
- Causes anxiety, depression, hopelessness, fear, anger, and sleeplessness
- Impairs family, work, and social relationships

Financial Impact

- Costs Americans billions of dollars per year
- Increases hospital lengths of stay
- Leads to lost income and productivity

TABLE 5-2 CHARACTERISTICS OF ACUTE PAIN AND CHRONIC PAIN

ACUTE	CHRONIC* (OR PERSISTENT)
• Has short duration • Usually has a well-defined cause • Decreases with healing • Is reversible • Serves a biologic purpose (warning sign) • Ranges from mild to severe intensity • May be accompanied by anxiety and restlessness	• Lasts longer than 3 months • May or may not have well-defined cause • Begins gradually and persists • Is exhausting and serves no biologic purpose • Ranges from mild to severe intensity • May be accompanied by depression and fatigue, as well as decreased functional ability

*Includes chronic cancer pain and chronic non-cancer pain.

ethical responsibility to ensure that patients receive adequate pain control. In 2000, The Joint Commission (TJC) published pain standards approved by the American Pain Society. TJC states that patients in all health care settings, including home care, have a right to effective pain management.

Patients rely on nurses and other health care professionals to adequately assess and manage their pain. As the coordinator of patient care, be sure to accurately document your assessments and actions, including patient and caregiver teaching.

Categorizing Pain

Pain can be categorized in two ways: by type related to the characteristics of the pain (Table 5-2) or by the physiologic source of the pain. The two major types of pain are acute and chronic. *Acute pain* often results from sudden, accidental trauma (e.g., fractures, burns, lacerations) or from surgery, ischemia, or acute inflammation. *Chronic pain* or *persistent pain* is further divided into two subtypes. **Chronic cancer pain** is pain associated with cancer or another progressive disease such as acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). The cause of pain is usually life threatening. **Chronic non-cancer pain** is associated with tissue injury that has healed or is not associated with cancer, such as arthritis or chronic back pain. This type of pain is the most common.

Acute Pain

Almost everyone experiences acute pain at some time. The major distinction between acute pain and chronic pain is the effect on biologic responses. **Acute pain** serves a biologic purpose. It acts as a warning signal by activating the sympathetic nervous system and causing various physiologic responses. These responses are similar to those found in “fight-or-flight” reactions and include:

- Increased heart rate
- Increased blood pressure
- Increased respiratory rate
- Dilated pupils
- Sweating

Behavioral signs of acute pain may include restlessness (especially among older adults), an inability to concentrate, apprehension, and overall distress.

Acute pain is usually temporary, has a sudden onset, and is easily localized. The pain is typically confined to the injured area and may subside with or without treatment. As the injured area heals, the pain sensation changes. Although possibly severe, acute pain is limited over time and generally can be managed successfully. Both the caregiver and the patient can see an end to the pain, which makes coping somewhat easier.

Pain that accompanies surgery is one of the most common examples of acute pain, but it is not always well managed. Usually, poorly managed postoperative pain is a result of inadequate drug therapy.

The severity of postoperative pain may be a predictor of long-term pain. The use of **preemptive analgesia** is a technique designed to decrease pain in the postoperative period, decrease the requirements for a postoperative analgesic, prevent morbidity, and decrease hospital stay. Preemptive analgesia includes administering local anesthetics, opioids, and other drugs in the preoperative, intraoperative, and/or postoperative period. This intervention may inhibit changes in the spinal cord—changes that can lead to a central sensitization that results in chronic pain.

In general, intrathoracic and upper intra-abdominal surgical approaches are associated with more severe, steady wound pain and with pain on movement after surgery. Many patients who undergo superficial surgery of the head and neck, chest wall, or limbs report minimal postoperative pain. Muscle-splitting procedures, like thoracotomy, are generally far more painful than muscle-stretching procedures, such as open hysterectomy. Patients who have joint replacements for severe arthritic pain often report less pain after surgery than before surgery because the damaged joint cartilage has been removed.

Chronic Pain

Chronic pain or **persistent pain** is often defined as pain that lasts or recurs for indefinite periods, usually for more than 3 months. The onset is gradual, and the character and quality of the pain change over time. Because chronic pain often involves deep body structures, it is usually poorly localized (hard to pinpoint) and often difficult to describe. If the underlying cause cannot be treated, controlling the long-term effects of chronic pain may be a difficult clinical challenge.

Because chronic pain persists for extended periods, it can interfere with personal relationships and ADLs. It can also result in emotional and financial burdens. Some patients feel

depressed and hopeless because of uncontrolled chronic pain and its consequences. *Although many characteristics of chronic pain are similar in different patients, be aware that each patient is unique and requires a highly specialized plan of care.*

Chronic Cancer Pain. Most patients with advanced cancer have moderate to severe pain. What is frustrating is that we have known for over 30 years that 90% of cancer pain can be successfully managed by giving adequate amounts of oral opioids around the clock. Yet patients with terminal cancer are often inadequately treated for their excruciating pain.

Most cancer pain is caused by the disease itself. The sources of pain include nerve compression, invasion of tissue, and/or bone metastasis, an extremely painful condition. Cancer treatments also can cause pain (e.g., from surgery and toxicities from chemotherapy and radiation therapy).

Patients with cancer pain generally have pain in two or more areas but usually talk about only the primary area of pain. Be sure to perform a complete pain assessment to ensure an effective plan of care (see the Concept Map on p. 42).

Chronic Non-Cancer Pain. Chronic non-cancer pain is an even larger global health problem, occurring most often in people older than 65 years. *Unlike acute pain, chronic pain serves no biologic purpose.* After the initial warning signal of pain, the body must learn to adapt to the persistent pain impulses by blocking or adjusting to sympathetic nervous system response (which causes the fight-or-flight reaction in acute pain). Because of this adaptation, the symptoms often associated with acute pain, such as increased pulse, are *absent* with chronic pain.

Chronic non-cancer pain was formerly called *chronic non-malignant pain*. However, most pain experts, and certainly patients who suffer with daily pain, believe that all pain is malignant—thus the newer term. Chronic non-cancer pain may be caused by chronic diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis, back injuries, and fibromyalgia.

Pain is also categorized as either nociceptive (normal processing of pain) or neuropathic (abnormal pain processing). **Nociceptive pain** is either visceral or somatic (Table 5-3). **Somatic pain** arises from the skin and musculoskeletal structures, and **visceral pain** arises from organs. **Neuropathic pain** is one of the most challenging types of chronic non-cancer pains; it results from some type of nerve injury. Neuropathic pain is still not completely understood. It is divided into centrally or peripherally generated pain. Regardless of the cause, neuropathic pain is described as burning (most common), shooting, stabbing, and feeling “pins and needles.”

Theoretical Bases for Pain

Pain Transmission

Painful stimuli often originate in the periphery (extremities) of the body. To be perceived, the stimuli must be transmitted first to the spinal cord and then to the central areas of the brain. If the pain impulse is not transmitted to the brain, the person feels no pain. In the periphery, two specific fibers can transmit stimuli: (1) A delta fibers, which are found primarily in the skin and muscle; and (2) C fibers, which are distributed in muscle, periosteum, and viscera. Both of these nerve fibers are capable of accepting nociceptive stimuli.

A delta fibers are myelinated fibers that carry rapid, sharp, pricking, or piercing sensations. A person feeling these sensations can generally localize them readily to a fairly

Concept Map: Chronic Cancer Pain

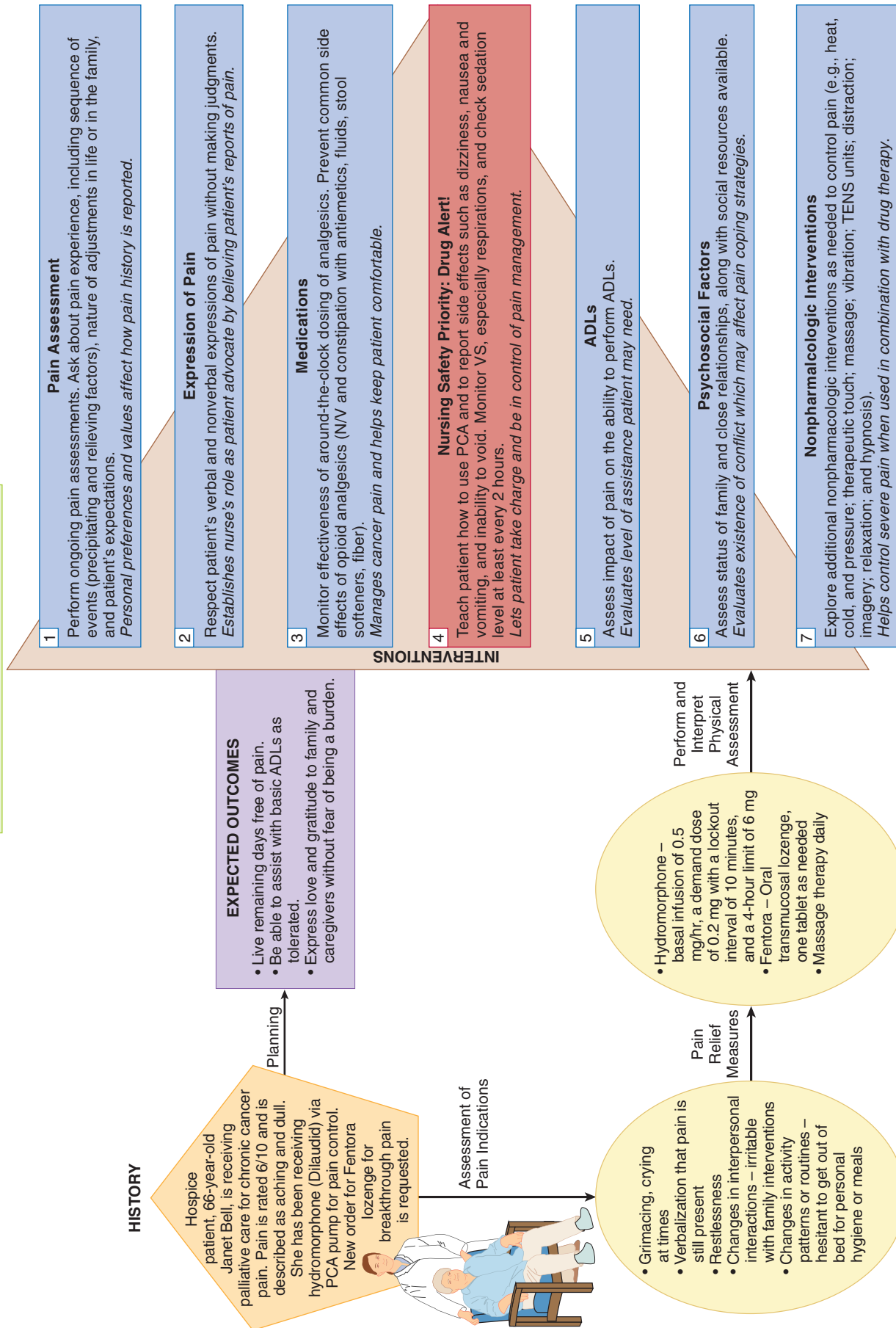


TABLE 5-3 PHYSIOLOGIC SOURCES OF PAIN

PHYSIOLOGIC STRUCTURE	CHARACTERISTICS OF PAIN	SOURCES OF ACUTE POSTOPERATIVE PAIN	SOURCES OF CHRONIC PAIN SYNDROMES
Nociceptive Pain			
Somatic Pain			
Cutaneous or superficial: skin and subcutaneous tissues	Sharp, burning	Incisional pain, pain at insertion sites of tubes and drains, wound complications, orthopedic procedures, skeletal muscle spasms	Bony metastases, osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis, low back pain, peripheral vascular diseases
Deep somatic: bone, muscle, blood vessels, connective tissues	Dull, aching, cramping		
Visceral Pain			
Organs and the linings of the body cavities	Poorly localized Diffuse, deep cramping or splitting, sharp, stabbing	Chest tubes, abdominal tubes and drains, bladder distention or spasms, intestinal distention	Pancreatitis, liver metastases, colitis, appendicitis
Neuropathic Pain			
Nerve fibers, spinal cord, and central nervous system	Poorly localized Shooting, burning, fiery, shocklike, sharp, painful numbness	Phantom limb pain, postmastectomy pain, nerve compression	HIV-related pain, diabetic neuropathy, postherpetic neuralgia, chemotherapy-induced neuropathies, cancer-related nerve injury, radiculopathies

HIV, Human immune deficiency virus.

well-defined area. Because these fibers respond mainly to mechanical rather than chemical or thermal stimuli, they are called *mechanical nociceptors*.

C fibers are unmyelinated or poorly myelinated fibers that conduct thermal, chemical, and strong mechanical impulses. Pain conduction from C fibers is slow, more diffuse (widespread) and dull, burning, or achy—quite different from the sensations of A delta fibers. In contrast to the intermittent nature of A delta sensations, C fibers usually produce persistent pain.

Although many theories of pain have been discussed, the classic **gate control theory** by Melzack and Wall (1982) still forms the basis of what is believed by most pain researchers today. According to this theory, a gating mechanism occurs in the spinal cord. Nerve fibers (A delta and C fibers) transmit pain impulses from the periphery of the body. These impulses travel to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord, specifically to the *substantia gelatinosa*, where the gating mechanism occurs. When the gate is opened, pain impulses ascend to the brain; when the gate is closed, the impulses do not get through and pain is not perceived (Fig. 5-1).

Morphine-like substances called **endorphins** are released when the large-diameter nerve fibers are stimulated. These fibers close the gate and decrease pain transmission. This helps explain why many noninvasive pain management techniques work to relieve pain. Endorphins are thought to be a gene product, and producing them requires a stimulus to the brain.

Similar gating mechanisms exist in the nerve fibers descending from the thalamus and cerebral cortex. These areas of the brain regulate thoughts and emotions, including beliefs and values. When pain occurs, a person's thoughts and emotions can modify one's perceptions as they reach the level of conscious awareness.

The gate control theory has helped nurses and other health care professionals recognize the *holistic* nature of

pain. As a result, many cognitive-behavioral therapies (e.g., imagery and distraction described on p. 60) are used to help relieve pain.

Attitudes and Practices Related to Pain

The attitudes of health care professionals toward pain influence the way they perceive and interact with patients in pain. Without adequate assessment skills or knowledge of pain and analgesic therapy, they may not be able to understand their patients' pain.

Nurses who have little personal experience with pain may not appreciate the scope of painful conditions associated with diseases and medical or surgical interventions. They may expect patients with chronic pain to react similarly to those with acute pain. Nurses may assume that reactions to pain fall within a certain norm based on their own cultural values. The more that a patient's response varies from these expected norms, the more likely that a nurse's attitude toward the patient will be positively or negatively biased.

Not only do health care professionals need continued education about pain management, but the public needs education as well. Nurses can help patients and their families achieve and maintain successful pain management through education.

Many patients are reluctant to report pain. When they do, they may underreport its severity. Patients may not share their existence of pain because they want to be "good" patients or do not want to bother or distract their caregivers from other issues in their care. In patients with a history of cancer, pain can be an unwanted reminder of the disease and its progression.

Some patients are also reluctant to take pain medications, especially opioid analgesics, because they fear becoming addicted to or used to the drug, especially older adults. Educate patients and reassure them that these drugs are not likely to cause addiction in those having pain.

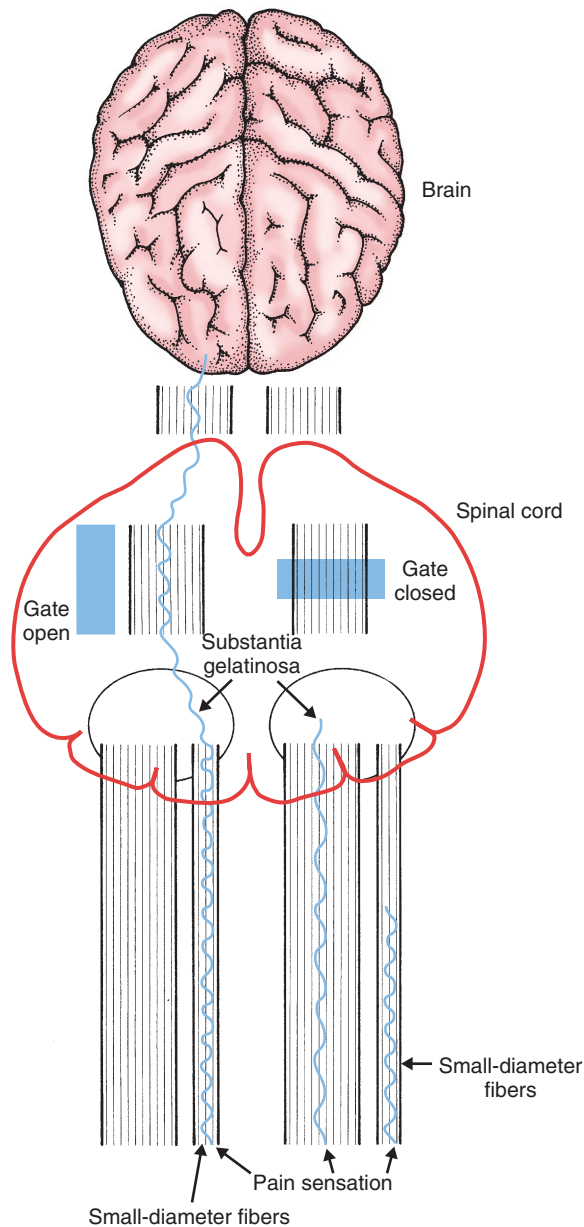


FIG. 5-1 The gate control theory of pain.

Pain Perception

Many variables affect the perception of and response to pain. Factors such as age, gender, sociocultural background, and genetics influence the patient's ability to process and react to pain. These factors also put patients at risk for undertreatment.

Certain painful conditions are more common in either men or women. Most chronic pain sufferers are women. Women have more migraine headaches, tension headaches, rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis, fibromyalgia, and multiple sclerosis. Men have more cluster headaches, back pain, gout, peripheral vascular disease, and postherpetic neuralgia.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Age can influence how pain is perceived, assessed, and treated. It has been well documented that the incidence of pain in older adults is high, as is risk for undertreatment. [Chart 5-1](#) addresses special considerations for assessing and managing pain in older adults.

Addiction, Pseudoaddiction, Tolerance, and Physical Dependence

It is crucial that nurses and other health care professionals not label a patient as an "addict," "clock-watcher," or "drug seeker." These labels have caused biases and have a negative impact on the patient-nurse relationship.

In their classic position statement, the American Society for Pain Management Nursing (ASPMN) states that **addiction** is (ASPMN, 2002):

... a primary, chronic neurobiologic disease with genetic, psychosocial, and environmental factors influencing its development and manifestations. It is characterized by behaviors that include one or more of the following: impaired control over drug use, compulsive use, continued use despite harm, and craving. (p. 1)

Addiction occurs over a long time—not as a result of one hospital stay or treatment for one episode of acute pain.

The danger of addiction to pain medication is vastly overrated. Although available data on addiction consistently show that it is rarely a result of using opioids for pain relief, health care professionals still have exaggerated fears. Patients and families also have fears related to addiction. Carefully explain the difference between physical dependence and addiction whenever a patient starts on opioid therapy.

Pseudoaddiction is (ASPMN, 2002):

... an iatrogenic syndrome created by the undertreatment of pain. It is characterized by patient behaviors such as anger and escalating demands for more or different medications, and results in suspicion and avoidance by staff. (p. 1)

Pseudoaddiction can be distinguished from true addiction in that the behaviors resolve when pain is effectively treated.

Tolerance is (ASPMN, 2002):

... a state of adaptation in which exposure to a drug induces changes that result in a decrease in one or more of the drug's effects over time. (p. 1)

Some of these changes include increasing drug excretion and reducing the number of receptors to bind the drug. Many advanced cancer patients find that they need increasing doses of opioids to control their pain.

Physical dependence is the (ASPMN, 2002):

... adaptation manifested by a drug-class-specific withdrawal syndrome that can be produced by abrupt cessation, rapid dose reduction, decreasing blood level of the drug, and/or administration of an antagonist. (p. 1)

A person who is drug tolerant, however, does not experience withdrawal, even when the drug is stopped suddenly.

Physical dependence occurs in *everyone* who takes opioids over a period of time. *It is important to prevent physical withdrawal.* So-called **withdrawal** or **abstinence syndrome** results when a patient who is physically

CHART 5-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Pain**Prevalence of Pain**

- Recognize that older adults are at great risk for undertreated pain.
- Consider the older adult at risk for the undertreatment of cancer pain because of inappropriate beliefs about pain sensitivity, tolerance, and ability to take opioids.

Beliefs About Pain

- In addition to receiving less analgesia, older adults tend to report pain less often than do younger adults. These findings may be related to beliefs and concerns about pain and the reporting of pain. Many older people hold these beliefs and concerns about pain:
 - Pain is something that must be lived with.
 - Expressing pain is unacceptable or is a sign of weakness.
 - Reporting pain will result in being labeled as a “bad” patient.
 - Nurses are too busy to listen to reports of pain.
 - Pain signifies a serious illness or impending death.
- Nurses should be aware of the beliefs of older patients regarding pain management. Nurses and other caregivers often undermedicate these patients and are sometimes reluctant to administer the prescribed analgesics.

Assessment

- Ask about present pain only; ask the patient to assess his or her pain whenever possible.
- Ask the patient’s family or other caregiver whenever the patient cannot respond appropriately.
- Document using a standard behavioral pain assessment scale.
- Explain the scale each time it is used.
- Use verbal descriptions such as “ache,” “sore,” and “hurt,” *rather than the word “pain.”*
- Use visual representations of pain measures rather than mental images of pain rating scales. Be sure that the patient is wearing glasses and hearing aids if needed and available.

- Alter a written pain scale to include large lettering, adequate space between lines, non-glossy paper, and color for increased visualization.
- Provide adequate lighting and privacy to avoid distracting background noise.

Considerations for Cognitively Impaired Patients

- Assess for nonverbal indicators of pain (facial expressions, grimacing, vocalizations, body movements, behavioral changes).
- Remember to “assume pain is present” (APP) in cognitively impaired patients with diseases and conditions commonly associated with pain.

Management of Pain

- Use around-the-clock dosing of analgesics.
- Consider an analgesic trial in a cognitively impaired patient.
- Beware of adverse effects of acetaminophen (hepatotoxicity, nephrotoxicity) and NSAIDs (GI bleeding, nephrotoxicity).
- Start low and go slow with drug dosing, especially opioids.
- Avoid the use of meperidine, codeine, and propoxyphene (available in combination with acetaminophen, as Darvocet).
- Do not give meperidine to older adults and those with renal disease because of the prolonged half-life of its drug metabolite *normeperidine*.
- Use non-drug pain relief measures or adjuvant drugs as appropriate.
- To promote drug adherence, suggest using a pillbox to organize each day’s medications.
- Teach the patient and family or other caregiver about the drug regimen and when to notify the primary care provider if adverse drug effects occur.

dependent on opioids abruptly ceases using them. *Abstinence syndrome may also occur if a patient on opioids receives a reversal agent, such as naloxone (Narcan).* These symptoms result from autonomic nervous system responses and include nausea and vomiting, abdominal cramping, muscle twitching, profuse perspiration, delirium, and convulsions. When necessary to discontinue opioid analgesia for a patient who is opioid dependent, a slow tapering (weaning) of the drug dosage lessens or alleviates the physical withdrawal symptoms. Doses of opioids should be tapered by 10% to 20% daily for patients on chronic opioid therapy. Clonidine (Catapres, Dixarit ) may be used to help alleviate the distressing symptoms of withdrawal in younger adults. It should not be given to older adults because of its side effects.

Although tolerance, physical dependence, and addiction are different conditions, they may coexist. However, it is important to distinguish tolerance and physical dependence from addiction.

Patients who are substance abusers often have traumatic injuries and other health problems that cause pain. Keep in mind that substance abusers, typically those abusing opioids, are often tolerant to the pain-relieving effects of opioid analgesics and generally require increased doses. Abrupt physiologic withdrawal is always a danger when recreational users of opioid agonists are given mixed agonist-antagonists and partial agonists.

The clinical use of placebos in non-research-based therapies has not been shown to have a sustained effect on pain relief. A **placebo** is any medical treatment or nursing care that produces an effect in a patient because of its therapeutic intent and not because of its actual physical or chemical properties. When a patient responds favorably to a placebo, it is known as the **placebo effect**. Placebos do not indicate whether or not a patient has real pain.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Because of the deception involved and the need for informed consent, never administer a placebo to your patient.

As required by most health care accrediting or regulatory agencies, health care agencies have developed programs to educate professionals about pain management, including the inappropriate use of placebos. Because of The Joint Commission’s commitment to effective pain control, a policy against the use of placebos is recommended to be in place in all accredited institutions and agencies. The American Society for Pain Management Nursing (ASPMN) has a position statement available on the website against the use of placebos for the management of pain (ASPMN, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

The American Pain Society refers to pain as the *fifth vital sign*. Like for vital signs, health care agencies require initial and ongoing pain assessments. Begin by asking the patient about the:

- Pain experience, including the sequence of events (precipitating and relieving factors)
- Nature of adjustments, if any, in life or in the family
- Beliefs about the cause of the pain and what should be done about it (patient's expectations)

Remember that the patient's personal preferences and values affect how he or she reports the pain history. When culturally appropriate, be sure to include families and significant others in this information-gathering process to be family-centered.

Patients may report pain in the absence of any observable or documented physiologic changes. To be patient-centered, respect the patient's verbal and nonverbal expressions of pain without making judgments or inferences about the reality of the pain. If patients perceive that health care professionals doubt the existence of their pain, mistrust and other negative feelings can arise and interfere with a therapeutic nurse-patient relationship.

Assess the length of time the patient has experienced pain. Patients may welcome an opportunity to discuss acute pain with the nurse because it is a relatively short-term experience and is easily described. However, those with chronic pain can become frustrated when they are unable to adequately describe their often vague and diffuse pain experience. Structured interviews using assessment aids (e.g., pain scales, descriptors) often help patients express their pain.

Information about a person's pain can be helpful in understanding the factors associated with the present pain or previous episodes of pain. If the patient is in pain when you are obtaining the history, keep the session reasonably short or continue later. Essential data include:

- **Precipitating factors.** Does the person associate any activities, food, or other environmental factors with the onset of pain? What does the patient think causes the present pain? Was the onset of pain sudden or slow? Has the patient done anything or taken anything to relieve the pain? What were the results of the intervention?
- **Aggravating factors.** What factors make the pain worse? What influence has this pain had on the patient's activity? What lifestyle changes have been affected (e.g., diet, job, sleep)?
- **Localization of pain.** Can the person localize the pain or describe where it travels or radiates?
- **Character and quality of pain.** What words does the patient use to describe the pain and its character, quality, or intensity?
- **Duration of pain.** How long has the patient experienced this pain?

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

People with *acute pain* may have physiologic changes, such as tachycardia and blood pressure changes. Blood pressure is

usually increased initially and then decreased. However, not all patients with acute pain have these signs, so *his or her statement of pain is the only reliable indicator*.

A person with *chronic pain* usually adapts to these physiologic changes as the body attempts to compensate for and adapt to noxious stimuli. The pain no longer serves as a necessary warning. Patients with chronic pain, then, often develop coping skills and may appear to look quite well.

Certain motor or body movements may be associated with either acute or chronic pain. Some may be more exaggerated or obvious than others. Patients in pain may support or shield ("splint"), holding painful body parts while moving, or they may lie listlessly because they are afraid to move. Assess the functional status and degree of impairment in the patient with pain.

The mnemonic **PQRST** may be helpful in organizing the pain assessment (Jarvis, 2012):

P: Precipitating or palliative. What brings it on? What makes it better? Worse? When did you first notice it?

Q: Quality or quantity. How does it look, feel, or sound? How intense/severe is it?

R: Region or radiation. Where is it? Does it spread anywhere?

S: Severity scale. How bad is it (on a scale of 1 to 10)? Is it getting better, worse, or staying the same?

T: Timing. Onset—Exactly when did it first occur? Duration—How long did it last? Frequency—How often does it occur?

Location of Pain. Assess the level and location of pain. If oriented, most patients can usually describe the severity of acute pain or chronic pain. The actual area or location of the pain, however, may not be as easily identified. Ask the patient whether the pain is superficial or deep. In general, those with pain involving superficial or cutaneous (skin) structures describe their pain as superficial and can often localize the pain to a specific area.

Pain may be described as belonging to one of four categories related to its location:

- **Localized pain** is pain confined to the site of origin.
- **Projected pain** is pain along a specific nerve or nerves.
- **Radiating pain** is diffuse pain around the site of origin that is not well localized.
- **Referred pain** is pain perceived in an area distant from the site of painful stimuli.

Ask the patient who has difficulty specifying the exact location of pain to point to the painful areas on his or her own body or on another person. If the patient is able to communicate, have him or her point to or shade in the painful areas on a diagram of the front and back of the human body (Fig. 5-2). Encourage those who cannot identify the painful areas and state that they just "hurt all over" to focus on parts of the body that are not painful. Ask the patient to concentrate on different body parts, beginning with the hand and fingers of one extremity, and identify the presence or absence of pain. By focusing attention on selected areas of the body, the patient is assisted in localizing painful areas. People who state that they hurt everywhere often begin to realize that some parts of the body are not painful.

Patients may present with more than one specific painful site. Identifying painful areas helps the patient understand the origin of the pain. This understanding is particularly

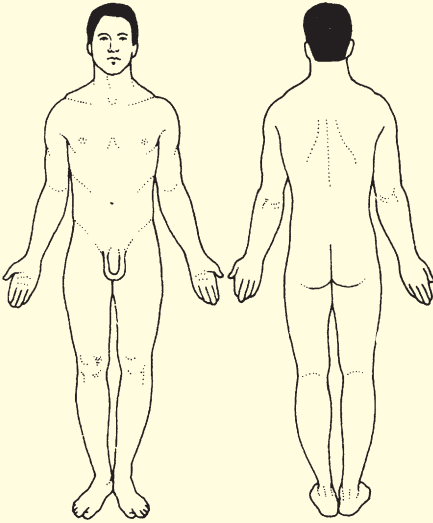
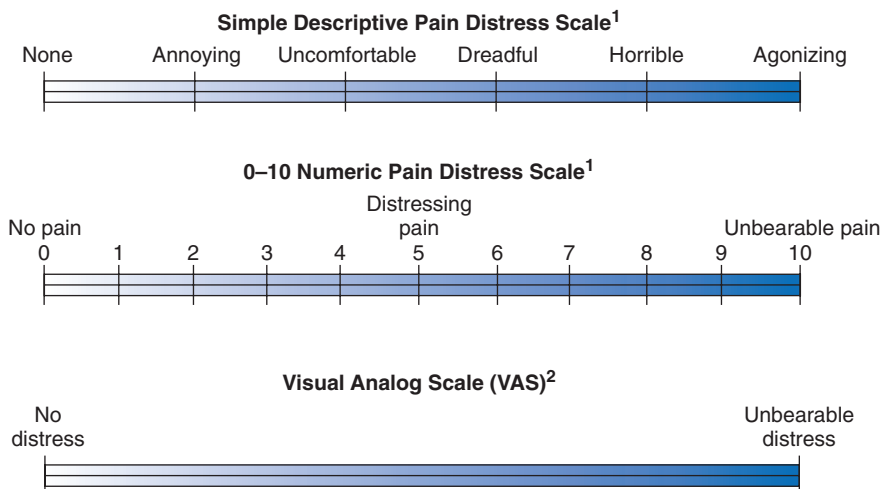
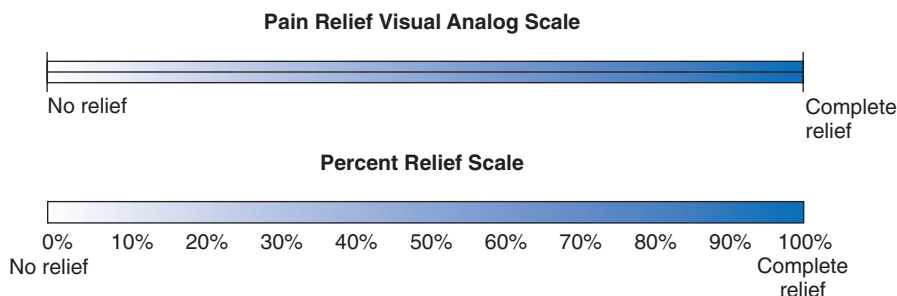
McGill-Melzack PAIN QUESTIONNAIRE Patient's name _____ Age _____ File No. _____ Date _____ Clinical category (e.g., cardiac, neurologic) _____ Diagnosis: _____ _____ _____ Analgesic (if already administered): 1. Type _____ 2. Dosage _____ 3. Time given in relation to this test _____ Patient's intelligence: circle number that represents best estimate. 1 (low) 2 3 4 5 (high) ***** This questionnaire has been designed to tell us more about your pain. Four major questions we ask are 1. Where is your pain? 2. What does it feel like? 3. How does it change with time? 4. How strong is it? It is important that you tell us how your pain feels now. Please follow the instructions at the beginning of each part. _____ © R. Melzack, Oct. 1970	Part 2. What Does Your Pain Feel Like? Some of the words below describe your <i>present</i> pain. Circle <i>ONLY</i> those words that best describe it. Leave out any category that is not suitable. Use only a single word in each appropriate category — the one that applies best. <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> 1 Flickering Quivering Pulsing Throbbing Beating Pounding 2 Jumping Flashing Shooting 3 Pricking Boring Drilling Stabbing Lancinating 4 Sharp Cutting Lacerating 5 Pinching Pressing Gnawing Cramping Crushing </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> 6 Tugging Pulling Wrenching 7 Hot Burning Scalding Searing 8 Tingling Itchy Smarting Stinging 9 Dull Sore Hurting Aching Heavy 10 Tender Taut Rasping Splitting </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> 11 Tiring Exhausting 12 Sickening Suffocating 13 Fearful Frightful Terrifying 14 Punishing Grueling Cruel Vicious Killing 15 Wretched Blinding 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing </td> <td style="vertical-align: top;"> 16 Annoying Troublesome Miserable Intense Unbearable 17 Spreading Radiating Penetrating Piercing 18 Tight Numb Drawing Squeezing Tearing 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing </td> </tr> </table>	1 Flickering Quivering Pulsing Throbbing Beating Pounding 2 Jumping Flashing Shooting 3 Pricking Boring Drilling Stabbing Lancinating 4 Sharp Cutting Lacerating 5 Pinching Pressing Gnawing Cramping Crushing	6 Tugging Pulling Wrenching 7 Hot Burning Scalding Searing 8 Tingling Itchy Smarting Stinging 9 Dull Sore Hurting Aching Heavy 10 Tender Taut Rasping Splitting	11 Tiring Exhausting 12 Sickening Suffocating 13 Fearful Frightful Terrifying 14 Punishing Grueling Cruel Vicious Killing 15 Wretched Blinding 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing	16 Annoying Troublesome Miserable Intense Unbearable 17 Spreading Radiating Penetrating Piercing 18 Tight Numb Drawing Squeezing Tearing 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing								
1 Flickering Quivering Pulsing Throbbing Beating Pounding 2 Jumping Flashing Shooting 3 Pricking Boring Drilling Stabbing Lancinating 4 Sharp Cutting Lacerating 5 Pinching Pressing Gnawing Cramping Crushing	6 Tugging Pulling Wrenching 7 Hot Burning Scalding Searing 8 Tingling Itchy Smarting Stinging 9 Dull Sore Hurting Aching Heavy 10 Tender Taut Rasping Splitting	11 Tiring Exhausting 12 Sickening Suffocating 13 Fearful Frightful Terrifying 14 Punishing Grueling Cruel Vicious Killing 15 Wretched Blinding 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing	16 Annoying Troublesome Miserable Intense Unbearable 17 Spreading Radiating Penetrating Piercing 18 Tight Numb Drawing Squeezing Tearing 19 Cool Cold Freezing 20 Nagging Nauseating Agonizing Dreadful Torturing										
Part 1. Where Is Your Pain? Please mark, on the drawings below, the areas where you feel pain. Put E if external, or I if internal, near the areas you mark. Put EI if both external and internal. 	Part 3. How Does Your Pain Change With Time? 1. Which word or words would you use to describe the <i>pattern</i> of your pain? <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Continuous</td> <td>Rhythmic</td> <td>Brief</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Steady</td> <td>Periodic</td> <td>Momentary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Constant</td> <td>Intermittent</td> <td>Transient</td> </tr> </table> 2. What kind of things <i>relieve</i> your pain? 3. What kind of things <i>increase</i> your pain?	1	2	3	Continuous	Rhythmic	Brief	Steady	Periodic	Momentary	Constant	Intermittent	Transient
1	2	3											
Continuous	Rhythmic	Brief											
Steady	Periodic	Momentary											
Constant	Intermittent	Transient											
Part 4. How Strong Is Your Pain? People agree that the following 5 words represent pain of increasing intensity. They are: <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mild</td> <td>Discomforting</td> <td>Distressing</td> <td>Horrible</td> <td>Excruciating</td> </tr> </table> To answer each question below, write the number of the most appropriate word in the space beside the question. 1. Which word describes your pain right now? _____ 2. Which word describes it at its worst? _____ 3. Which word describes it when it is least? _____ 4. Which word describes the worst toothache you ever had? _____ 5. Which word describes the worst headache you ever had? _____ 6. Which word describes the worst stomachache you ever had? _____		1	2	3	4	5	Mild	Discomforting	Distressing	Horrible	Excruciating		
1	2	3	4	5									
Mild	Discomforting	Distressing	Horrible	Excruciating									

FIG. 5-2 The McGill-Melzack Pain Questionnaire.

PAIN INTENSITY SCALES



PAIN RELIEF SCALES



¹If used as a graphic rating scale, a 10-cm baseline is recommended.

²A 10-cm baseline is recommended for VAS scales.

FIG. 5-3 Pain rating scales and pain relief scales.

important for those with cancer, because every new pain often raises the suspicion of metastasis (spread of disease). The pain may have other causes, such as immobility or constipation.

Intensity and Quality of Pain. After asking the patient to locate the pain, ask him or her to describe it. He or she may use one word or a group of words to convey the sensations or feelings of the pain. *Avoid suggesting descriptive words for the pain.*

Subjective measurements of pain intensity are more reliable and accurate than observable qualities of pain. Only the patient can determine the amount or severity of pain being experienced. Various visual analog scales (VASs), number rating scales (NRSs), descriptive word scales, and other measures have been designed to help patients communicate the magnitude or severity of pain and to help nurses quantify the pain (Fig. 5-3).

Use pain intensity scales to measure pain in the clinical or home setting and to assess and determine the effectiveness of pain relief interventions. For most pain scales, the patient is

asked to rate the amount of painful stimuli. Patients with more than one discrete painful site may wish to specify their pain levels by location. Some scales also assess the emotional aspect of pain. Be sure to use the *same* scale over time for the patient, and assess pain intensity both with and without activity.

Verbal descriptive scales typically group words such as “none,” “moderate,” or “severe” and permit an intensity rating of pain. However, the 0-to-10 or 1-to-10 NRS is used most commonly in clinical practice for adult patients who can communicate in English (see Fig. 5-3). For culturally diverse patients with language barriers, the Wong-Baker FACES Pain Rating Scale (pain rating scale of smile to frown) may be helpful. This scale is also used for children, older adults, and developmentally disabled populations (Flaherty, 2008).

Assessing Pain in Cognitively Impaired or Critically Ill Nonverbal Patients. Although it seems obvious, nonverbal, intubated, and cognitively impaired patients do feel pain! It is important to be proactive and assume pain is present, or “APP.”

In 2006, the American Society for Pain Management Nursing published its classic position statement on evidence-based recommendations when performing pain assessments for nonverbal patients (Herr et al., 2006). Five general recommendations for pain assessment were presented:

- Use self-report (when possible).
- Search for potential causes of pain.
- Observe patient behaviors.
- Recognize the value of surrogate reporting (e.g., family member or life partner).
- Attempt an analgesic trial.

Nurses and other clinicians have recently been researching assessment tools to measure observable nonverbal behaviors that indicate the patient is in pain. A variety of valid and reliable tools are published in the literature (Federico, 2009). Most of them are designed to be used for patients with severe dementia. Examples of commonly used assessment tools that can be used for patients with acute confusion or dementia include:

- Pain Assessment Tool for Confused Older Adults (used for hospitalized patients)
- Pain Assessment in Advanced Dementia Scale (PAINAD)
- Discomfort in Dementia of the Alzheimer's Type Scale
- Faces, Legs, Activity, Crying and Consolability Tool
- Non-Communicative Patient's Pain Assessment Instrument (NOPPAIN)
- Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators

The Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators is based on the work of The American Geriatrics Society (AGS) Panel on Persistent Pain in Older Persons. The panel found six common pain indicators that you can observe and document to indicate pain (AGS, 2002):

- Facial expression (e.g., grimacing, crying)
- Verbalizations or vocalizations (e.g., screaming)
- Body movements (e.g., restlessness)
- Changes in interpersonal interactions
- Changes in activity patterns or routines
- Mental status changes (e.g., confusion, increased confusion)



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older woman is admitted to the unit after her emergency abdominal surgery on PCA morphine. She has early Alzheimer's disease and is attempting to pull out her IV line. What is the first method the nurse will use to assess this client's pain level?

- Ask her family or caregiver what they think her pain level is.
- Ask the client what her pain level is.
- Observe her body movements and facial expression.
- Assume she has pain and give her a bolus of PCA morphine.

Psychosocial Assessment

All pain holds significant meaning for the person experiencing it. Patients having *acute pain* from surgery may interpret their pain as necessary and expected. It may be viewed with relief as a sign that some greater problem has been resolved or alleviated by the surgery. Knowing that the duration of the pain is limited may allow the patient to deal with unpleasant sensations without too much difficulty. In contrast, acute chest pain associated with angina may mark the beginning of a life of fear and uncertainty.

Various psychosocial factors influence *chronic pain*. Some factors are similar to those found in the acute pain experience, such as anxiety or fear related to the meaning of the pain. Because chronic pain persists or is perhaps only partially relieved, the patient may feel powerless, angry, hostile, or desperate. He or she is also vulnerable to labels such as "chronic complainer" or "fake." *Remain objective, and advocate for proper pain control for all patients.*

Assess the status of family and other close relationships, along with the range of social resources available to the patient with chronic pain. The existence of a pain-specific conflict with a spouse or significant other may affect or limit pain coping strategies. Other people may react to chronic pain with depression, social withdrawal, and preoccupation with physical symptoms.

If the chronic pain is associated with a progressive disease such as cancer, rheumatoid arthritis, or peripheral vascular disease, the patient may have worries and concerns about the consequences of the illness. People with cancer-related pain may fear death or body mutilation. Some may think they are being punished for some wrongdoing in life. Others may attach a religious or spiritual significance to lingering pain.

Ask open-ended questions (e.g., "Tell me how your pain has affected your job or role as a mother.") to allow the patient to describe personal attitudes about pain and its influence on life. This opportunity can help someone whose life has been changed by pain. However, some patients choose not to share their private information or fears. As a patient-centered nurse, you should respect their preferences and values. Assess the impact of the pain on ability to function. Is the patient able to perform ADLs independently, or is assistance needed?

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for managing pain are individualized with consideration of the patient's preferences and values. Drug therapy and/or nonpharmacologic interventions are used by nurses and the interdisciplinary health care team.

Drug Therapy

Drug therapy is commonly added for pain control if nonpharmacologic methods are not helpful. The type of drug, how it is administered, and when it is given depend on the type, intensity, and quality of the pain. For example, patients with painful chronic conditions such as arthritis, osteoporosis, cancer, pressure ulcers, and contractures should receive a trial of around-the-clock analgesics, particularly if they are cognitively impaired or cannot communicate. Elliott and Horgas (2009) found that an analgesic trial with acetaminophen reduced pain in community older adults with dementia (see the [Evidence-Based Practice box](#) on p. 50).

Remember to give analgesics before painful procedures such as suctioning, drain removal, and wound care (especially bedside surgical débridement and complex dressing changes). Be sure to plan adequate time for the drugs to take effect so that the patient will be comfortable.

Three groups of drugs can be used to manage pain: non-opioids, opioids, and adjuvants. To advocate for your patient, a thorough understanding of the drugs used to treat pain is necessary (Table 5-4).

Non-Opioid Analgesics. The non-opioid analgesics are the first-line therapy for mild to moderate pain. The two most

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Does an Analgesic Trial Decrease Pain in Older Adults with Dementia Who Live in the Community?

Elliott, A.F., & Horgas, A.L. (2009). Effects of an analgesic trial in reducing pain behaviors in community-dwelling older adults with dementia. *Nursing Research*, 58, 140-145.

Older adults who have dementia often cannot verbalize the quality and intensity of their pain. A few studies have examined the use of an around-the-clock analgesic trial for demented older adults in nursing homes. However, none have focused on older adults in the community.

The authors used a within-subjects alternating (ABAB) withdrawal research design to determine if a trial of extended-release acetaminophen (given every 8 hours) would relieve the subjects' pain. Three Caucasian subjects who met specific study criteria were followed daily for 24 days. Two nontreatment (baseline) phases were alternated with two treatment phases to observe the effect of the drug on pain-related behaviors. Pain behaviors were measured during a daily videotaped activity-based protocol designed to elicit pain. The results showed that

pain behaviors decreased during the treatment phases in both frequency and duration.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although the study sample was small, it is an appropriate size for an ABAB research design in which the subjects undergo periods of treatment and nontreatment, a type of quasi-experimental study.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

This study suggests that around-the-clock analgesia using acetaminophen every 8 hours would decrease pain behaviors among older adults with dementia who live in the community. Managing pain for cognitively impaired patients is a challenge, especially for older adults with arthritic pain. Larger studies need to be conducted to investigate analgesic trials in other racial and ethnic groups because the sample in this study was Caucasian.

TABLE 5-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF ANALGESICS BY CLASSIFICATION

NON-OPIOIDS	ADJUVANTS
Acetaminophen (Tylenol)	Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs):
NSAIDs (nonselective):	Duloxetine (Cymbalta)
Aspirin	Venlafaxine (Effexor)
Ibuprofen (Motrin)	Antiepileptic drugs (AEDs):
Naproxen (Naprosyn)	Gabapentin (Neurontin)
Ketoprofen (Toradol, Orudis)	Pregabalin (Lyrica)
NSAIDs (selective):	Valproic acid (Depakene)
Celecoxib (Celebrex)	Topiramate (Topamax)
OPIOIDS	Muscle relaxants/antispasmodic drugs:
Pure agonists:	Cyclobenzaprine (Flexeril)
Morphine (MS Contin, Kadian, Roxanol, Duramorph)	Baclofen (Lioresal)
Fentanyl (Duragesic, Actiq, Fentora)	Alpha-2 adrenergics:
Hydrocodone (Vicodin)	Tizanidine (Zanaflex)
Oxycodone (OxyContin, Percodan [also contains aspirin])	Local anesthetics/analgesics:
Hydromorphone (Dilaudid, Hydromorph)	Mexiletine (Mexitol)
Methadone	Lidocaine patch (Lidoderm)
Codeine	Diclofenac patch (Flector)
	NMDA antagonists:
	Ketamine
	Dextromethorphan
	Cannabinoids (cannabis extracts)

NMDA, N-methyl-D-aspartate.

common non-opioids are acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) and acetaminophen (Tylenol). The analgesic effects are the same in equal doses. The single optimal dose of aspirin or acetaminophen is between 650 and 1000 mg.

The analgesic effect of these non-opioids has a ceiling. In other words, if the dose of the non-opioid analgesic is greater than 1000 mg, there will be no additional analgesic effect—only more side effects. Many people underestimate the effectiveness of non-opioid analgesics, also referred to as *peripheral-acting analgesics*. For mild pain, the non-opioids aspirin 650 mg and acetaminophen (Tylenol) 650 mg produce

pain relief comparable to that of the opioids codeine 32 mg orally and meperidine (Demerol) 50 mg orally. Most non-opioids (other than acetaminophen) are potent anti-inflammatory agents called **nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)**.

Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs. Aspirin and other NSAIDs are very effective for inflammatory-type pain, such as early rheumatoid arthritis, mild to moderate postoperative pain, dental pain, menstrual pain, migraines, and muscle pain. These agents inhibit the synthesis of prostaglandins, which are fatty-acid substances found throughout the body. The release of prostaglandins in inflamed tissues causes pain, edema, and inflammation. By inhibiting the synthesis of these prostaglandins, anti-inflammatory drugs decrease inflammation and pain. NSAIDs are particularly useful in the management of acute inflammation such as that which causes postoperative pain.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Aspirin and other NSAIDs can cause GI disturbances and decrease platelet aggregation (clumping together), which can result in bleeding. Therefore observe the patient for gastric discomfort or vomiting and for bleeding or bruising. If any of these problems occur, teach the patient and family to stop taking these drugs and to report side effects to the health care provider immediately.

When taking a patient history, ask about the use of NSAIDs, keeping in mind that the patient may not recognize store brand names as over-the-counter (OTC) NSAIDs. For example, Walprofen is Wal-Mart's brand name for ibuprofen; Walprofen is Wal-Mart's brand name for naproxen. Orudis contains ketoprofen, and Aleve contains naproxen. Ask the patient or patient's family to provide the name of each drug (prescription or OTC) that the patient is taking, as well as the daily dosage. Some patients may unknowingly take several types of NSAIDs at the same time, putting them at a high risk for adverse drug effects (ADEs).

The side effects of individual NSAIDs differ. For example, ibuprofen (Motrin) and naproxen (Naprosyn) appear to cause fewer GI problems than ketoprofen (Orudis). By adding

a GI protective drug such as misoprostol (Cytotec), GI side effects may be reduced.

Because of the high incidence of GI bleeding caused by NSAID use, particularly in older adults, selective cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors, such as celecoxib (Celebrex), are recommended for long-term use. The COX-2 inhibitors selectively block the COX-2 enzyme responsible for inflammation and the production of substances associated with pain (e.g., prostaglandins). However, all COX-2 inhibitors have recently been associated with increased cardiovascular disease and may have limited use or be unavailable in the future.

Most older NSAIDs like ibuprofen block both COX-1 and COX-2 enzymes. The COX-1 enzyme is responsible for the gastric and renal side effects associated with older NSAID use. Patients may also become hypernatremic and experience hypertension from the resulting fluid retention. The primary cause of acute renal failure is long-term use of NSAIDs. Teach the patient to inform his or her primary care provider if taking OTC NSAIDs. Providers typically request follow-up laboratory testing to monitor for early indications of adverse drug events.

Patients with dental pain, osteoarthritis, and early rheumatoid arthritis treated with COX-2 inhibitors often demonstrate effective analgesia without GI side effects. There is no difference in the COX-2 analgesic efficacy or in renal side effects, but the decreased risk for GI bleeding makes these drugs more beneficial.

Acetaminophen. Unlike the rest of the non-opioid analgesics, acetaminophen (Tylenol) has few anti-inflammatory properties. Health care providers commonly prescribe acetaminophen for pain or fever. It exerts its analgesic action by blocking peripheral pain receptors, thus increasing the threshold of these receptors to painful stimuli.

Acetaminophen has some advantages over aspirin in that it is available in a liquid form (which is the best way to take oral analgesics) and it can be taken on an empty stomach. It causes no adverse GI effects. Therefore it is preferred for any patient who has a history of peptic ulcer disease. Acetaminophen also has no effect on platelet aggregation as most of the other non-opioids do. This drug is preferred, then, for people in whom bleeding is likely, such as preoperative or postoperative patients.

Acetaminophen does have several serious side effects, however, especially hepatotoxicity (liver toxicity) and **nephrotoxicity** (renal toxicity) with long-term use. Reports of liver toxicity have been associated with higher doses of the drug (1000 mg) taken more frequently than every 4 hours for long-term use. Teach patients that current recommendations restrict the total daily amount of acetaminophen to no more than 4000 mg (4 g). For *long-term* use, teach patients that no more than 3600 mg daily should be taken. Less than 2400 mg daily should be used in older adults.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients to tell their health care provider about the amount of acetaminophen they take each day. Remind them to have liver and renal function laboratory tests done on a regular basis as prescribed to monitor for early indicators of adverse drug events.

Teach patients to be aware of the amount of acetaminophen in combination products such as hydrocodone (e.g., Vicodin) and propoxyphene (e.g., Darvocet). The acetaminophen in these products limits their use for chronic pain. In addition, propoxyphene has a very long half-life and therefore should not be used for older adults. Patients with a decreased metabolism (e.g., hypothyroidism) should also avoid the use of long-term Darvocet. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration recently warned health care providers and patients to avoid taking propoxyphene in any form because it can cause life-threatening cardiac dysrhythmias or myocardial infarction.

Opioid Analgesics. Opioid analgesics are the mainstay in the management of all types of moderate to severe pain (see Table 5-4). They work centrally by blocking the release of neurotransmitters in the brain and/or spinal cord. Opioids are classified as full or mu agonists (morphine-like), partial agonists, or mixed agonists/antagonists. There are no advantages to the partial or mixed agonists, and they could precipitate a withdrawal if given to someone taking a full agonist.

The opioid **full agonists** bind to opioid pain (e.g., mu) receptors in the brain and block the release of substance P, decreasing pain sensation (Lilley et al., 2011). Agonists are the most potent of all analgesics.

Most opioid agonists are similar in pharmacologic effects, so a patient does not need more than one. Response varies widely from one person to another. Most opioids can be administered in many different routes—oral, transdermal, and IV. IM administration is seldom used because of uneven drug absorption and tissue pain and bruising. For patients on very large doses of opioids in end-of-life care, “opioid rotation” is another choice when ineffective analgesia or intolerable side effects occur.

There is no ceiling in the dose of a pure opioid agonist. The use of an equianalgesic chart when changing opioids is necessary, though, because these drugs vary in their oral to parenteral dosage strengths. The term **equianalgesic** refers to the dose and route of administration of one drug that produces about the same degree of analgesia as the given dose and route of another drug. This chart is useful to the health care provider when switching opioids or routes of administration of opioids.

Most commonly, 10 mg of morphine is the standard dose against which other opioids are measured. Equianalgesic opioid drug guides provide only the comparative analgesic potencies among these drugs. Dose modifications may be necessary according to each patient’s response.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

For older adults, the guideline is to “start low and go slow” with drug dosing, initially using no more than half of the recommended dose. Evaluate the patient’s response including whether the analgesic is effective in relieving pain. Although older adults may not be as sensitive as younger adults to mild pain, they feel moderate and severe pain as much as adults of any age (Baumann, 2009).

Examples of Opioid Drugs. A number of opioids can be used for pain control. Some are not as strong as others in their ability to control pain and are therefore not used as commonly. For instance, **codeine** is a short-acting weak drug that is the only opioid with a ceiling effect. It is considered a prodrug and is converted to morphine after ingestion. An

enzyme is necessary to convert a small amount of the codeine to morphine to be effective. An estimated 5% to 10% of people lack this enzyme, which could account for codeine's ineffectiveness in certain patients. For these patients, the conversion of codeine is so slow the drug is excreted before pain is relieved. This drug also has limited value for severe pain and should not be used in older adults because of the possible accumulation of a toxic metabolite, as well as constipation. For these reasons, it is more commonly used as an antitussive in a number of cough preparations unless the drug is combined with acetaminophen or other preparation.

Hydrocodone is similar to codeine and is available as a combination product with acetaminophen (Lortab, Vicodin) and ibuprofen (Vicoprofen). Because of this, the dose cannot be escalated because of the toxicities from the non-opioids. Therefore hydrocodone drugs have limited usefulness.

Other opioids are available when weaker drugs are not appropriate for the level of pain or if they are ineffective in controlling pain. Oxycodone is recommended for both acute and chronic pain. It is available as a single-agent, both in short-acting preparations (immediate-release) (OxyIR, Norvo [high-strength oral oxycodone]) and long-acting forms (OxyContin, Supeudol ♣). Any drug that ends in "Contin" is long-acting and therefore acts continuously. Oxycodone is also available in combination with aspirin (Percodan), or acetaminophen (Percocet, Tylox, Roxicet, Oxycocet ♣). Percodan is no longer on the market in Canada, but Oxycocet is available.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Give the long-acting form, *OxyContin*, every 12 hours and never crush or break the capsule. Teach the patient to swallow the drug whole rather than chew it, to allow the "time release" function of the drug. Liquid and rectal suppository forms of oxycodone are available for patients who cannot swallow the capsules.

Morphine (Roxanol, Avinza, Kadian ♣) is the gold standard opioid for both acute and chronic pain. It is available in many dosage strengths (both short- and long-acting) and can be given in virtually any route, including rectally. The immediate-release form is known as *MSIR*. MS Contin, Kadian, and Statex ♣ are examples of long-acting or slow-release forms of the drug. Liquid forms of these drugs are available for patients who cannot swallow the extended-release capsules. Morphine may also be administered by the subcutaneous, IV (diluted continuous or intermittent as needed), epidural, intrathecal, rectal, and IM (least preferred) routes. An intranasal form is also available, but the drug is poorly absorbed using this route.

Hydromorphone (Dilaudid, PMS-Hydromorphone ♣) is eight times more potent than morphine. It is available in both short-acting and long-acting forms (Palladone, Hydromorph Contin). Like morphine, hydromorphone is useful for all types of moderate to severe acute pain and chronic pain. Hydromorphone is being used more frequently for patients on IV patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pumps or administered slowly as an IV push drug every 3 hours as needed for acute pain. The drug can also be given rectally in suppository form, intranasally, subcutaneously, or IM (least preferred).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client has an order for hydromorphone (Dilaudid) IV push 1 mg every 3 hours. The drug is available as 4 mg/mL. The nurse administers _____ mL of hydromorphone for one dose.

Fentanyl (Sublimaze) may be used for chronic and acute pain. It is a potent opioid available in several forms for *chronic* pain:

- 72-Hour transdermal patch (Duragesic)
- Oral transmucosal lozenge (Actiq)
- Effervescent buccal oralets (Fentora)
- Intranasal spray (Instanyl)

Duragesic is used on a continuous basis to maintain pain control, especially in terminal cancer patients. Actiq lozenges and Fentora tablets are indicated for breakthrough cancer pain and should not be given to opioid-naïve patients (i.e., those who are not on opioids) (D'Arcy, 2007b). Breakthrough pain occurs primarily in patients with severe terminal cancer pain. The patient with breakthrough pain experiences pain between scheduled doses of the drug regimen. Other drugs may also be used for this purpose, but lozenges and buccal tablets are less invasive. Actiq is being used also for procedural-type pain.

For *acute* pain, fentanyl can be administered either IV push, with a PCA pump, or as an iontophoretic transdermal system (IONSYS). IONSYS is a needle-free, patient-activated transdermal system that forces medication deep into the skin using a weak electrical current powered by a battery-operated device. The most common use for this system is for patients with acute postoperative pain.

Methadone (Dolophine, Methadose) is the only full opioid agonist with a dual mechanism of action. It works on both the mu receptors and the N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors and is available in tablet, liquid, or subcutaneous form. Methadone is inexpensive and very effective for chronic pain but very complex and potentially unsafe to use. Practitioners need to be educated on the many drug/drug interactions, potential cardiac toxicity, and long half-life (24 to 36 hours). The FDA has recently come out with a black box warning because of several fatal overdoses. Analgesia lasts only 4 hours, but because of the long half-life, sedation and respiratory depression can occur more frequently than with other opioids. Patients must be monitored for sedation (especially days 2 to 3), and the drug should be used cautiously in older adults. When managing pain in a patient in a methadone maintenance program for substance abuse, be sure to increase the methadone dose for pain relief or add a second opioid.

Meperidine (Demerol) used to be routinely prescribed in acute care settings. Most health care agencies now have policies in place restricting its use to no more than 600 mg in 24 hours for no more than 2 consecutive days (Dobbins, 2010). Most agencies have discontinued its use altogether for older adults because of the resulting toxicities. Because of the accumulation and renal excretion of the toxic metabolite *normeperidine*, central nervous system toxicities may occur. Repeated doses of meperidine, particularly in older adults or in people with decreased renal clearance, may cause tremors, nervousness, delirium (acute confusion), seizures, and psychoses. Do not give meperidine in any form to older adults.

Oral and continuous infusions of the drug should not be administered to any patient.

The drug also blocks the reuptake of both serotonin and norepinephrine by the neurons and can cause serotonin syndrome. This potentially fatal condition is seen in patients taking meperidine with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), tricyclic antidepressants, triptan migraine drugs, or monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs). The early manifestations of this combination are central nervous system abnormalities like muscle rigidity and delirium, but the condition can progress to life-threatening cardiac dysrhythmias, hyperthermia, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

Side Effects of Opioids. The most important type of opioid receptor is the mu receptor. **Mu opioids** cause side and adverse effects that include constipation, nausea and vomiting, urinary retention, pruritus (itching), sedation, and respiratory depression. These effects may be mistakenly viewed as allergies, but it is rare to be allergic to morphine-type drugs. The side effects (other than constipation in older adults) are time limited and easily managed (Table 5-5).

Nausea and vomiting may occur initially as a side effect in patients taking opioids for pain relief. Treating the nausea and vomiting with an appropriate antiemetic usually helps. In addition, if the patient needs to continue the opioid therapy longer than 1 week, the problem usually resolves on its own.

Opioids inhibit peristalsis in the GI tract. Patients who take regular doses of opioids almost always become *constipated*. Also, many patients in pain lack proper exercise and have an inadequate diet, both making the problem of constipation worse. Although constipation may seem like a minor side effect, it is not to the patient, especially the older adult. Often the discomfort of constipation is more distressing to the older adult than the pain itself.

Whenever a patient is started on regular doses of opioids at home, teach him or her how to prevent constipation (see Table 5-5). If the patient is unable to provide self-care, provide these interventions in the inpatient facility.

Because opioids have a depressant effect on the central nervous system, some drowsiness can be anticipated. However, *severe sedation* is not always caused by opioids. If the patient is still in pain, other causes of sedation should be ruled out before decreasing the opioid dosage or changing drugs. For example, drugs such as hypnotics or tranquilizers (diazepam [Valium], alprazolam [Xanax], or promethazine [Phenergan]) can cause sedation. Often the elimination of other central nervous system–depressant medications resolves the sedation problem.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The key to assessing sedation is determining how easily the patient is aroused. *Stop the medication if the patient is difficult to arouse!* Assess each person's response to the first dose of an opioid. Be sure to assess the patient's level of consciousness. Monitor respiratory rate and depth, especially while sleeping.

Sedation occurs before opioid-induced respiratory depression, so nurse-monitored sedation levels are recommended by use of a sedation scale for opioid-naïve (not currently on an opioid) patients or those receiving opioids IV or epidurally. An example of a sedation scale is shown in Table 5-6.

TABLE 5-5 NURSING INTERVENTIONS TO PREVENT SIDE EFFECTS OF OPIOIDS

Constipation

- Assess previous bowel habits.
- Use measures to *prevent* this problem because constipation is the most common side effect (push fluids, encourage activity, give foods high in bulk and roughage).
- Keep a record of bowel movements.
- Administer stool softeners and stimulant laxatives.
- If ineffective, try suppository or Fleet's enema.

Nausea and Vomiting (N/V)

- Assess actual cause of nausea.
- Recognize that N/V may be only an initial, temporary side effect for the first 24 to 48 hours because tolerance seems to develop quickly to this side effect.
- Try an antiemetic prophylactically before administration as prescribed.
- Treat with antiemetic drug as prescribed.
- Give metoclopramide (Reglan) 10 mg before meals and at bedtime, or ondansetron (Zofran) 4 mg IV.

Sedation and Confusion

- Assess actual cause of sedation because the patient may also be on hypnotics and anxiolytic agents; eliminate unnecessary sedating medications.
- Recall that tolerance to this side effect generally occurs after 2 to 3 days.
- Be aware that stimulants such as caffeine may counteract opioid-induced sedation.
- Consider opioid rotation using an equianalgesic chart.

Respiratory Depression

- Be aware that clinically significant respiratory depression is rarely seen in patients with severe pain caused by cancer, even when large doses of opioids are given.
- Recognize that pain and stress seem to counteract the respiratory depression effects of opioids.
- Recall that respiratory depression occurs before sedation and possible lethal overdose.
- Monitor sedation level and respiratory status frequently for the first 24 to 48 hours, especially in opioid-naïve patients.
- If increased sedation occurs, decrease opioid dose and attempt to stimulate patient.
- Be aware that respiratory rate alone is not indicative of respiratory status.
- If absolutely necessary in an unresponsive patient, administer naloxone (Narcan) 0.4 mg diluted in 10 mL of normal saline; push 0.5 mL IV slowly for 2 minutes and observe the patient.

TABLE 5-6 EXAMPLE OF A SEDATION SCALE*

SCORE	MEANING
1	Awake and alert
2	Slightly drowsy, but easy to arouse
3	Always drowsy, but arousable
4	Somnolent, little or no response to stimuli

*For scores of 3 or 4, stop the medication and notify the health care provider.

A main reason for inadequate pain control is the exaggerated fear of respiratory depression. However, this problem rarely occurs, especially in patients taking opioids for chronic, long-term pain.

Patients develop tolerance to respiratory depression at the same time that they become tolerant to the analgesic effect of

an opioid. Pain appears to be nature's antidote to the respiratory depressant effects of opioids.

Opioid-induced respiratory depression can be treated. Respiratory depression is generally more likely to occur in an opioid-naïve patient than in an opioid-tolerant (currently on an opioid) one. It most often occurs at the onset and peak effect of the opioid. Naloxone (Narcan) and naltrexone HCl (Revia) are fast-acting IV opioid antagonists given to reverse the opioid effect and treat respiratory depression. These drugs should be administered only when absolutely necessary because they cancel the pain relieving effects of the opioid and can lead to withdrawal symptoms.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When giving opioid antagonists, administer them slowly until respirations increase to eight or more per minute. Continue to monitor the patient after giving these drugs because respiratory depression can recur. An opioid overdose can occur if the respiratory depression is not treated. Patients who are overdosed have only a few respirations each minute and constricted pupils. In some cases, respiratory arrest occurs.

Common Parenteral Routes of Opioid Administration. Opioids can be administered by all medication routes. Table 5-7 lists the routes with advantages and disadvantages. Effective management of pain requires the knowledge that the oral route is always the preferred route for most types of pain. The IV route is the most efficient route because of its rapid titration. Opioids are often given as IV push drugs or by patient-controlled analgesia. The IM route is not preferred for pain management because of its ineffectiveness in controlling pain and varying patient responses.

Patient-Controlled Analgesia. Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) is a common way to combat the problem of inadequate analgesia by allowing the patient to control the dosage of opioid received. This approach to pain control can improve pain relief and increase patient satisfaction. It can also decrease the amount of opioid consumption per day when compared with nurse-administered intermittent dosing methods.

Patients who have ready access to an analgesic are more likely to medicate themselves before the pain becomes severe, and thus they may require a reduced amount. Having such control over drug administration also reduces anxiety, which helps relieve pain.

PCA is achieved using a PCA infusion pump (Fig. 5-4). Both stationary pole pumps (for hospital use) and ambulatory pumps (for nursing home or home use) are available. The infusion pump delivers the desired amount of drug through an IV access for pain. Morphine, fentanyl, and hydromorphone are the most commonly used drugs for PCA. Standing or preprinted orders from the health care provider are commonly used for PCA administration.

Drug security to avoid overdosing is achieved through a locked syringe pump system or locked drug reservoir system. The device is programmed to deliver a certain amount of drug (**demand dose**) within a specific interval known as a **lockout interval**. The health care provider specifies the amount of the demand dose. Morphine doses are typically 1 mg/mL, hydromorphone 0.2 mg/mL, and fentanyl 10 mcg/mL. Doses vary according to the patient's degree of pain. The lockout interval is typically 5 to 15 minutes.



FIG. 5-4 An ambulatory patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) infusion pump.

To prevent drug errors, two nurses program the dosing parameters into the PCA delivery device. When the patient presses the button or pendant (on ambulatory pumps), the appropriate bolus or demand dose is delivered. No drug is administered if the patient attempts to access the drug before the programmed time interval between doses. With this technique, there is little chance that patients will overmedicate themselves. *It is also recommended that all pumps have warning labels with large print that read "Patient only to push button" to prevent other people or staff from administering the medication, unless otherwise designated.*

The PCA regimen may consist of a demand-dosing-only schedule or a continuous infusion or **basal rate** with demand dosing. With demand or self-administered dosing only, the patient relies solely on a push of the pendant or bolus feature to seek pain relief. Continuous infusion of the opioid in addition to demand dosing provides more consistent analgesia and allows the patient to sleep without fear of missing any pain medication. However, when a continuous infusion is added to the regimen, some patients may be at greater risk for opioid-induced side effects (e.g., nausea and vomiting, sedation, respiratory depression), especially if the hourly dose is too high.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients how to use the PCA and to report side effects, such as dizziness, nausea and vomiting, and inability to void. As with all opioids, monitor the patient's vital signs, particularly respirations, and check sedation level at least every 2 hours or per agency protocol.

When a patient is cognitively impaired or unable to push the PCA button, another method of administration should be considered. PCA means **patient-controlled**, so having someone else push the button defeats the purpose (PCA by Proxy). More important, this practice can cause oversedation and possible serious safety issues. *Because of serious sentinel events related to PCA overdoses, PCA by Proxy is not recommended but may be used in special cases.* Clear

TABLE 5-7 ROUTES OF ANALGESIC ADMINISTRATION

Oral**Advantages**

- Preferred route of analgesic
- Allows greater mobility and convenience
- Drug levels peak in 1 to 2 hours
- Greater patient satisfaction
- If patient is NPO or has a nasogastric or gastrostomy tube, medications can still be given enterally in liquid form
- Cost efficient
- Relatively steady blood levels produced

Disadvantages

- Slow onset
- Long-acting opioids cannot be crushed, broken, or chewed
- Some patients are unable to swallow or are NPO
- Requires functional GI system

Rectal**Advantages**

- Good for patients who are NPO, nauseated, or at home
- Easy for patients or caregiver to administer, especially older adults
- Duration of action may be immediate or extended depending on drug action
- Any opioid can be compounded by a pharmacist for rectal route
- Clinical practice suggests oral and rectal doses of analgesics fairly equal

Disadvantages

- May be more expensive than oral route and difficult to obtain
- Contraindicated in neutropenic patients and those with diarrhea, colostomy, or hemorrhoids
- May be culturally unacceptable

Intramuscular**Advantages**

- Used for acute short-term pain

Disadvantages

- Rapid peak effect but short duration of action and rapid fall-off
- Problems with absorption lead to inconsistent blood levels
- Painful administration
- Not recommended for chronic long-term pain, especially cancer pain
- Patient depends on others to administer injection
- Not recommended for use with emaciated patients or patients with decreased muscle mass
- Long-term use can cause fibrosis and sterile abscesses

Transdermal**Advantages**

- Most common example is fentanyl (Duragesic) used for breakthrough pain
- May improve patient adherence to drug regimen
- Noninvasive, convenient, and well accepted by patients

Disadvantages

- Because of gradual increases in plasma concentration, may need to supplement with short-acting analgesics for first 12 to 24 hours after initial application
- Appropriate only for patients who are opioid-tolerant
- Difficult to adjust dose
- Febrile patients absorb medication quickly
- Less useful for patients with generalized edema

Transmucosal**Advantages**

- Good bioavailability, rapid peak effect
- FDA-approved for breakthrough cancer pain
- May be useful for procedural pain
- Faster for pain relief than oral forms

Disadvantages

- Sweetened matrix contains 2 g sugar, but still may taste bitter
- Short-acting, short half-life
- Must be swabbed inside mouth for at least 10 minutes to dissolve completely
- Not useful for cognitively impaired patients

Topical**Advantages**

- Easy to use
- Little systemic absorption
- Lidoderm patch, EMLA topical cream, and capsaicin cream are examples

Disadvantages

- May cause skin reactions
- Capsaicin causes burning initially

Sublingual**Advantages**

- Most opioids can be absorbed sublingually
- Good for patients with no IV access and/or impaired swallowing

Disadvantages

- May not be absorbed or may cause mucosal irritation

Intranasal**Advantages**

- Fentanyl is commonly given this way; sumatriptan for migraine headaches is also available in this form
- Convenient and easy to use
- Effective and fast pain relief
- Appropriate for ambulatory care use

Disadvantages

- Cannot be used by patients with cognitive impairment or by those who are extremely ill or in a coma

Subcutaneous**Advantages**

- Available as bolus, continuous infusion, or continuous infusion with patient-controlled analgesia (PCA)
- Avoids need for IV access and cheaper than IV
- Readily managed at home
- Recommended for cancer patients who cannot take anything by mouth and in whom IV access is not desirable
- Avoids repetitive injections and is less painful
- Continuous infusion
- Avoids peaks and valleys in bloodstream; maintains steady blood level
- Provides prolonged parenteral administration of opioid
- No delay in drug administration

Disadvantages

- Subcutaneous boluses have slower onset and a lower peak effect than IV boluses
- Requires use of ambulatory infusion pump, which is not always patient acceptable

Continued

TABLE 5-7 ROUTES OF ANALGESIC ADMINISTRATION—cont'd

Intravenous

- Available as bolus (IV push), continuous infusion, or PCA IV bolus on demand

Advantages

- Good for acute pain or procedures
- Immediate pain relief
- Provides fastest onset but shortest duration
- Peaks in 5 to 15 minutes
- Eliminates anxiety and prevents pain
- Recommended when unable to achieve pain control through oral or rectal routes with high dosages of opioid or unable to use oral/rectal route
- Continuous IV administration provides steady blood level

Disadvantages

- Not recommended for constant pain because of peaks and valleys in bloodstream
- Requires use of infusion pump with an alarm

Patient-Controlled Analgesia (PCA)**Advantages**

- Allows patient to receive a predetermined IV bolus of an opioid by hitting a syringe pump mechanism
- Gives patient sense of control, less anxiety
- Provides quick and consistent pain relief
- Maintains a constant level of pain relief

- Eliminates the need for repeated injections

- Saves time
- Especially recommended for acute pain such as postoperative pain

Disadvantages

- Requires use of a pump
- Requires reinforced patient teaching for maximum effectiveness
- Requires two nurses to program to prevent errors (in hospitals)
- Requires designated person to hit button if patient cannot

Spinal (Epidural and Intrathecal) Administration**Advantages**

- Opioid (usually morphine or fentanyl) administered through catheter into epidural or intrathecal space; ziconotide (Prialt) used intrathecally
- Preservative-free morphine or fentanyl used
- Useful for postoperative pain (abdominal, thoracic, orthopedic) or chronic pain
- May be intermittent bolus or by continuous infusion pump

Disadvantages

- Careful patient selection is necessary because procedure is expensive and may be risky
- Side effects include nausea, vomiting, pruritus, sedation, urinary retention, and respiratory depression
- Possible complication of hematoma and infection and/or meningitis

FDA, Food and Drug Administration.

guidelines and monitoring procedures must be in place for PCA use. In the event that a patient is unable to push the button, *one authorized agent*, such as a close family member, for controlled analgesia may be clearly designated.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

A nursing assistant reports that a client receiving PCA morphine is very drowsy and has a respiratory rate of 10 breaths/min. What is the nurse's best action at this time?

- Continue to monitor the client for further changes.
- Assess the client with a focus on sedation and respirations.
- Stop the PCA morphine infusion immediately.
- Call the physician to report the client's changes.

Epidural Analgesia. **Epidural analgesia** (also known as *peridural* or *extradural analgesia*) refers to the instillation of a pain-blocking agent, usually an opioid analgesic alone or in combination with a local anesthetic like bupivacaine, into the epidural space. Epidural analgesia is used for the management of acute pain, such as postoperative pain, and chronic cancer pain. It has been used since the 1950s but has become more popular as newer and more innovative approaches to acute pain control are explored. Epidural analgesia is used primarily in patients who are predisposed to respiratory complications, including those undergoing thoracic, orthopedic, and abdominal surgery, those with pre-existing respiratory disease, and those who are obese. In some states, the nurse practice act allows registered nurses to remove epidural catheters. All practitioners who care for patients with

epidural catheters must be properly educated. If given, low-molecular-weight heparin is withheld on the day the epidural is to be discontinued. This intervention reduces the chance of bleeding complications.

Morphine (preservative free), hydromorphone (Dilaudid), and fentanyl (Sublimaze) are the most commonly used opioids for epidural administration and are often given by a patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA) pump. Sufentanil (Sufenta), a derivative of fentanyl but more potent, may also be used. A local anesthetic such as bupivacaine (Marcaine), which affects both sensory and motor nerves, may be given alone or in combination with an opioid. *Low* concentrations of local anesthetics are used to prevent significant sensory and motor deficits. Lower motor weakness is far less common with ropivacaine (Naropin) when compared with bupivacaine because it is more selective for sensory nerves.

Using a combination of opioids, non-opioids, and local anesthetics for postoperative pain (as just described) is sometimes referred to as **multimodal analgesia** or **balanced analgesia**. The advantage of these drug combinations is to provide better pain control at lower doses than any single drug does. Another advantage is that these drugs *decrease* the surgical stress response, which is typically mediated by multiple endocrine and metabolic changes. These changes contribute to increased pain, GI distress, confusion (especially in older adults), and cardiopulmonary complications. Balanced analgesia, then, not only decreases pain but also helps decrease other problems that result from the stress of surgery. It is especially appropriate for patients having complex surgeries, such as those undergoing abdominal or thoracic procedures.

A temporary, externalized epidural catheter is used for acute pain control. This device is not sutured to the skin and is easily dislodged. Be sure to tape the catheter in two places to anchor it properly. Some clinicians do not recommend transparent dressings because the catheter may be dislodged when the dressing is removed. The catheter is generally placed in either the lumbar or the thoracic region. Rarely is the catheter placed above the level of the sixth thoracic vertebra, because the diaphragmatic muscle may be affected by the analgesic.

Complications that occur with epidural analgesia are directly related to catheter placement, catheter maintenance, and type of analgesic. Infection, *although rare*, results from a failure to maintain aseptic technique during catheter placement, direct drug instillation, and infusion solution and tubing changes. Infection also results from a failure to maintain aseptic conditions for indwelling catheters at the site of insertion or at the site of tube junctions. To prevent infections, ensure that all catheter line connections are secure and that an occlusive sterile dressing is maintained over the site.

For some surgical patients, a single injection of a morphine sulfate extended-release drug (DepoDur, Duramorph, Epimorph) may be administered. Duramorph may also be given intrathecally or IV. This procedure does not require an indwelling epidural catheter and can be given before or after surgery. Most typically, this drug is used for patients having total joint replacements or abdominal surgery. The drug often lasts up to 48 hours, which reduces the patient's need for usual postoperative medications.

Pruritus (itching) and nausea and vomiting are common side effects of epidural opioids. Pruritus is first treated with a small amount of naloxone (Narcan). Because epidural-induced pruritus does not appear to be caused by histamine release, diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl) may not be effective in relieving itching and may work only via its sedating effects. The health care provider usually prescribes an antiemetic as needed for nausea and vomiting.

Patients who receive epidural opioids are also at risk for respiratory depression resulting from high plasma or cerebrospinal fluid concentrations of the instilled drug. Those receiving epidural therapy with only a local anesthetic are not at risk for respiratory depression. Because of its potential for greater spread up the spinal cord, morphine is more likely than fentanyl to cause respiratory depression. Morphine is preferred to fentanyl when a larger distribution of analgesia is required (e.g., pain relief from extensive abdominal wounds).

Monitor the patient's respirations and sedation level at frequent intervals during and after the administration of epidural opioids, and immediately report any concerns to the health care provider (see Table 5-6). Opioid-induced respiratory depression usually occurs within the first few hours of administering fentanyl but may not be seen for 12 hours or more when morphine is given. This complication is managed by administering low doses (0.2 mg) of IV naloxone (Narcan).

Urinary retention is another common problem associated with epidural analgesia, but it occurs no more frequently than urinary retention after surgery in patients not receiving epidural analgesia. Although the cause is not clear, this problem usually occurs during the first or second day of analgesic administration and may be treated with bethanechol chloride (Urecholine) or intermittent urinary catheterization. The

incidence of this complication is less than 25% and is more likely to occur in men than in women.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Lower motor weakness is common when an epidural local anesthetic is used in combination with the opioid. Assist patients who get out of bed for the first time to determine the degree of leg weakness. Do not delegate this activity and assessment to unlicensed assistive personnel!

Epidural analgesia may also be used for *long-term* chronic pain relief. Such pain is usually the result of cancer or central sensitization. A permanent epidural catheter may be inserted, and several catheter devices are available for this purpose. The DuPen Silastic catheter (Davol) is a commonly used **external catheter**. A portion of the catheter exits the skin. Drugs can be intermittently injected into this portion, or the catheter can be attached to an infusion device for continuous drug administration.

Implantable devices are also used to treat chronic pain. The epidural Port-A-Cath (SIMS Deltec, Inc.) is implanted under the skin, and the catheter portion is inserted into the epidural space. As with the DuPen catheter, this device can be injected with drugs intermittently or can be connected to an infusion device for continuous opioid delivery. Injectable ports are shown to reduce the incidence of catheter dislodgement and early infection. Systems consisting of either an externalized catheter or a drug delivery device are rarely used for intrathecal drug administration. The SynchroMed pump (Medtronic, Inc.) is a totally implantable system that contains a drug reservoir. The drug reservoir is filled on a routine basis and is capable of continuously administering a certain volume of drug each day (Fig. 5-5). However, this device must be used cautiously due to its potential for injecting too much medication into the patient.

The side effects of long-term epidural opioids are common in patients who have had little exposure to opioids. Those who receive this therapy are usually more tolerant of the effects of opioids and may not require the rigorous monitoring needed for postoperative analgesia. Male patients receiving long-term epidural opioids may have sexual dysfunction, decreased libido, and difficulty maintaining an erection; female patients may experience amenorrhea. Testosterone injections seem to help improve sexual function in males.

Intrathecal Analgesia. **Intrathecal (subarachnoid) analgesia**, in which a pain-blocking agent is introduced into the space between the arachnoid mater and pia mater of the spinal cord (where cerebrospinal fluid is located), may be considered for long-term management of **intractable pain** (chronic pain that cannot be managed using standard therapies).

Ziconotide (Prialt) is an effective non-opioid analgesic that is infused intrathecally using an implanted pump and catheter. Like many other drugs, it is best tolerated when started at a low dose and increased slowly no more than once a week. Ziconotide is most effective for neuropathic, nociceptive, and mixed pain (Mitchell et al., 2008). The most common adverse effects are dizziness, nausea, and confusion, which often disappear after a dose reduction. More severe, but far less common, effects include psychosis and neurologic impairment. About 40% of patients on the drug have elevated

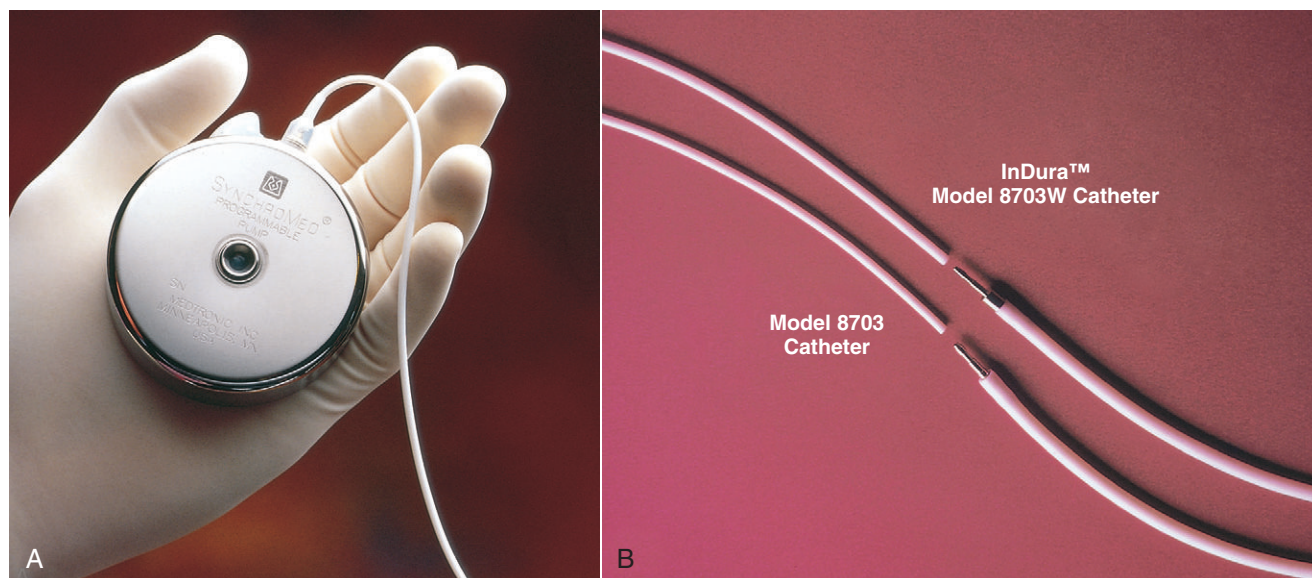


FIG. 5-5 A SynchroMed implantable pump (**A**) and spinal catheters (**B**) for delivery of a precise volume of long-term intraspinal analgesic each day.

serum creatine kinase levels, but patients are usually not symptomatic. Teach patients and their families to closely monitor for neuromuscular symptoms, such as myalgias or muscle cramps (Mitchell et al., 2008). Tell them to inform the health care provider immediately if these manifestations occur.

Adjuvant Analgesics. Always consider the use of adjuvant analgesics, especially for patients with chronic pain or complex pain syndromes. Although not true analgesics, the **adjuvant drugs** relieve pain either alone or in combination with analgesics. These drugs can potentiate or enhance the effectiveness of the analgesic.

The use of adjuvant analgesics not only can provide additional pain relief in some cases but also can help control other discomforts associated with pain (anxiety, depression, nausea, insomnia). Table 5-4 gives examples of adjuvant medications.

Some **antiepileptic drugs** (AEDs or anticonvulsants), such as gabapentin (Neurontin) and pregabalin (Lyrica), are effective in treating postherpetic neuralgia, fibromyalgia (Lyrica), and the painful neuropathy associated with diabetes mellitus and cancer. They have been useful in many patients with neuropathic pain from back injuries as well. Doses of gabapentin can be escalated up to 3600 mg daily with few side effects compared with other anticonvulsants. Topiramate (Topamax) is another AED with promise for neuropathic pain, and it causes weight loss, rather than gain like most of the tricyclic antidepressants. Because most AEDs can cause hyponatremia, monitor electrolyte values carefully, especially in older adults.

The older **tricyclic antidepressants**, such as amitriptyline (Elavil), nortriptyline (Pamelor), and imipramine (Tofranil), have been beneficial in treating chronic neuropathic pain. However, the newer **serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors** (SNRIs), such as duloxetine (Cymbalta) and venlafaxine (Effexor), are more often used, especially for older adults. Severe adverse drug events are associated with the

longer-acting tricyclic drugs (e.g., constipation, urinary retention, confusion). The tricyclics are also contraindicated in people with a history of seizures or cardiac disease.

In some cases, **antianxiety agents** help relax the patient and thus help relieve pain. However, many of these drugs cause confusion, drowsiness, and hypotension; the health care provider selects the drugs with the fewest side effects. Examples of antianxiety agents are alprazolam (Xanax), lorazepam (Ativan), and oxazepam (Serax, Zapex). Clonazepam (Klonopin), also used for anxiety, has been shown to be particularly helpful for certain types of nerve injury pain.

Although used for centuries in China and other eastern countries, **cannabinoids** are just now gaining a role in pain management in the United States. Several states allow medical marijuana for pain management under the supervision of a licensed primary care provider. Oral extract and smoked forms of the drug are available, but the few existing studies have only examined the effectiveness of oral forms. For patients taking these drugs, observe for sedation, ataxia, vertigo, and disorientation. A 5-mg to 10-mg dose is usually recommended. Cannabinoids are used most often for patients with chronic pain, but studies have demonstrated their effectiveness in relieving acute pain (Gevirtz, 2009).

Oral local anesthetics, such as mexiletine (Mexitil), act by suppressing the electrical activity of both peripheral nerves and neurons in the central nervous system. They are useful for electric shock-like pain and continuous pain. Mexiletine is contraindicated for patients who have cardiac conduction defects or dysrhythmias or are currently taking cardiac anti-dysrhythmia drugs.

A more recent technique used for adjuvant postoperative pain management is **local anesthesia infusion pumps**. Several brands are on the market: ON-Q PainBuster® (see Fig. 15-13 in Chapter 15) and I-Flow®. These pumps are filled with a local anesthetic, such as bupivacaine, and slowly release the drug over several days. They are inserted by the surgeon and used mainly for spinal fusions, total hip repair, and other

orthopedic surgeries. Most patients are taught to remove the pump themselves when they return home. Health professionals need to be aware that some of these pumps may contain latex, so people with allergies must be made aware. The principle of combination treatment is very useful with these pumps because patients use less systemic drugs and therefore experience fewer side effects.

Topical drugs can be useful, particularly for localized neuropathic pain, and have no major systemic effects. For example, the *lidocaine patch* (Lidoderm) is approved for postherpetic neuralgia. Up to three patches can be applied at once, or they can be fitted to the painful area. The patch should be put on for 12 hours and removed for 12 hours. There is virtually no systemic absorption of lidocaine.

The *diclofenac patch* (Flector) is a fairly new NSAID drug for topical pain control. It is used to help manage mild musculoskeletal pain (e.g., sprains, strains) and is a safer option than oral NSAIDs. It should not be used if the patient is taking other NSAIDs. Long-term use of the patch can cause similar side effects to those caused by the oral form.

EMLA and *ELA-Max* creams are combinations of topical lidocaine and prilocaine. These must be applied to intact skin at least 45 minutes before needle sticks. The topical medications for pain relief have rare side effects, including local skin reactions.

Local short-acting gels and creams may provide *cryotherapy* to decrease pain, especially for muscle aches and pains. These products can often be bought over-the-counter (OTC) (e.g., BENGAY, Icy Hot). The effects of this type of application last about 1 to 2 hours, depending on the patient.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

A middle-aged nurse educator was recently diagnosed with four bulging disks in her neck. She has had severe neuropathic pain for several months and has self-medicated with high doses of ibuprofen and acetaminophen. The adult nurse practitioner also started her on Tylenol #3 one tablet every 4 hours as needed for pain. The patient does not want to have surgery unless she develops spinal cord compression. As her office nurse, you are providing health teaching.

1. What questions will you ask the patient at this time in preparation for teaching?
2. How might you find the best evidence to help prepare her teaching plan?
3. What adjuvant drugs might this patient take to help her with her type of pain?
4. In view of her profession, what nonpharmacologic methods might benefit her? How will you determine if they are appropriate for her values and beliefs?

Nonpharmacologic Interventions

A number of effective interventions for pain are nonpharmacologic. These may be used alone for mild to moderate pain or in combination with drug therapy for more severe pain. Nonpharmacologic therapies are classified as either physical measures or cognitive-behavioral measures. Some may be referred to as part of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM), such as imagery, therapeutic touch, and hypnosis. CAM is not considered part of conventional medicine. Many patients pay a great deal of money out of pocket because these techniques are not commonly covered by insurance. These therapies often enhance, not

replace, drugs for pain management. Chapter 2 discusses CAM in more detail.

Physical Measures. Physical measures may be used instead of or in addition to drug therapy to relieve pain. Most of these measures are categorized in the literature as complementary and alternative therapies. *Cutaneous (skin) stimulation* strategies to relieve pain have been in use for many years. Various types of stimulation to the skin and subcutaneous tissue produce pain relief. Nurses play an important role in educating patients about these techniques. Methods of cutaneous stimulation include these techniques:

- Application of heat, cold, and pressure
- Therapeutic touch
- Massage
- Vibration

Whichever method is used, several issues must be considered:

- The benefits of these techniques are highly unpredictable and may vary from application to application.
- Pain relief is generally sustained only as long as the stimulation continues.
- Multiple trials may be necessary to establish the desired effects.
- Stimulation itself may aggravate pre-existing pain or may produce new pain.

Despite the drawbacks to cutaneous stimulation, it can be effective in the management of both acute pain and chronic pain. These techniques have both physiologic and psychological effects on the patient. Cutaneous stimulation techniques also give patients an opportunity to participate actively in the management of their pain.

Collaborate with the physical or occupational therapist for patients having pain to increase function, decrease pain, compensate for decreased function, and prevent further deterioration. Exercises and physical modalities such as heat, cold, or massage may be used. Expected patient outcomes include an increase in the range of motion, strength, and function of the affected area, and an improved quality of life.

The occupational therapist may also help decrease pain by making one or more splints to rest severely inflamed joints. These devices are most often used short-term and intermittently for patients with osteoarthritis or rheumatoid arthritis.

Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) may be used as an adjunctive treatment for pain (Baumann, 2009). For older adults, it may be safer and just as effective as drug therapy. Although there are several types of TENS units, each involves the use of a battery-operated device capable of delivering small electrical currents through up to four electrodes applied to the painful area (Fig. 5-6). The voltage or current is regulated by adjusting a dial to the point at which the patient perceives a prickly “pins-and-needles” sensation. The current is adjusted based on the degree of pain relief and level of comfort.

Other cutaneous techniques, such as touch, pressure, massage, vibration, and heat and cold application, stimulate the skin and somehow interrupt the pain pathway. These interventions are relatively easy to learn and are fairly economical. Cold applications are especially helpful for inflamed areas. Heat is appropriate when an increased blood flow is desired, such as for patients with chronic arthritis. Paraffin dips for the hands are particularly helpful for those patients

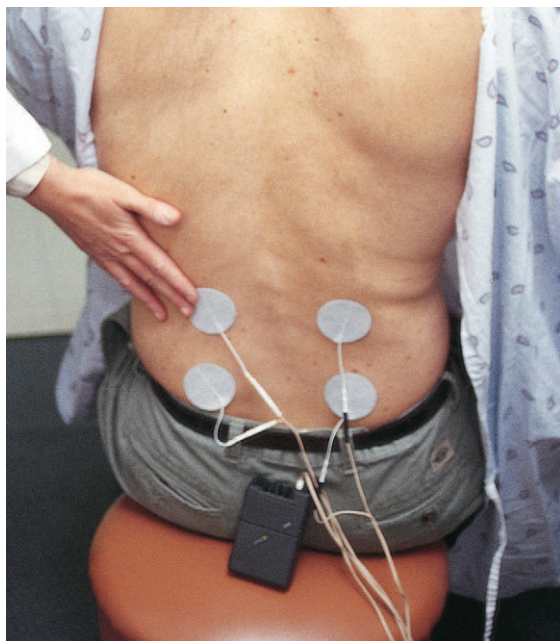


FIG. 5-6 Application of a transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) unit.

to increase movement. Warm showers and compresses that can be done at home are also useful in reducing stiffness and promoting movement in patients with arthritis, especially after awakening.

Cognitive-Behavioral Pain Management. Cognitive-behavioral pain management (CBPM) has been popular for years, mainly as an adjunct to drug therapy. Theoretical explanations for the effectiveness of these measures reflect the premises of the gate control theory. Examples of CBPM strategies are distraction, imagery, relaxation, and hypnosis. (See [Chapter 2](#) for further discussion of cognitive-behavioral complementary therapies.)

Distraction can be an effective method of acute pain relief. Simple measures such as holding a patient's hand, taking him or her for a walk, or encouraging deep-breathing exercises can divert attention from the pain. Nurses often observe that patients request less pain medication when family members are present and when talking on the phone. After visiting hours, many patients request something for pain because they are no longer distracted.

Distraction alters the perception of pain but does not influence the cause or peripheral mechanism of pain. Visual distractors (e.g., pictures, television) can divert the attention to something pleasant or interesting. Auditory distractors, including music or relaxation tapes, can have a calming effect. Changing the environment can remove unpleasant stressors or reminders that may enhance pain. Physical distractions (e.g., deep-breathing exercises) help the patient concentrate on other physiologic sensations. Respect the patient's preferences and values when suggesting these management modalities.

Distraction can be particularly useful in these situations:

- Exacerbations of pain
- Painful procedures (e.g., dressing changes, invasive procedures)
- Interrupting the patient's constant perception of pain

Imagery is a form of distraction in which the patient is encouraged to visualize or think about some pleasant or desirable feeling, sensation, or event. Guided imagery occurs when a person, often a nurse, assists the patient in sustaining a sequence of thoughts aimed at diverting attention away from the pain. Intense concentration is required to visualize images. Those who are extremely anxious, agitated, or unable to concentrate may first benefit from mild distraction.

Imagery is particularly useful for chronic pain; however, it works for some patients but not for others. Patients who practice this technique can mentally and vividly experience sights, sounds, smells, events, or other sensations. The nurse first assesses the patient's level of concentration to determine whether he or she can sustain a particular thought or thoughts for a desired time. The time interval for mental imagery can vary from 5 to 60 minutes. Behaviors that are helpful in assessing the capacity for imagery include:

- Reading and comprehending the newspaper
- Listening to music or other auditory stimuli
- Having the ability to follow and participate in sustained conversation
- Having an interest in environmental surroundings

When the patient has demonstrated some ability to concentrate, assist him or her in identifying a pleasant or favorable thought. Encourage the patient to focus on this thought to divert attention away from painful stimuli. Audiotapes or CDs may help form and maintain images. The nurse, patient, or family may wish to create these, or commercially available tapes and CDs may be used. This is an example of guided imagery instructions:

Imagine being on the beach of a deserted island. You can hear the sound of waves rushing onto the shore, the cry of seagulls flying high above, and the rustling of trees as they are brushed gently by the wind. You can feel the warmth of the sun over your body and the cooling breeze.

Patients may also use *relaxation techniques* to reduce anxiety, tension, and emotional stress, all of which may exacerbate pain. Techniques to promote relaxation can be both physical and psychological. Physical relaxation techniques include:

- Receiving a body massage, back rub, or warm or hot bath
- Modifying the environment to reduce distractions
- Moving into a comfortable position

Psychological relaxation techniques include:

- Pleasant conversation
- Music
- Relaxation tapes

Some relaxation tapes assist the patient with progressive relaxation of the muscles. Relaxation exercises can be effectively coupled with guided imagery, distraction, and hypnosis.

Hypnosis is an altered state of consciousness in which a person enters a trance and loses an overall sense of reality. Although the person is in a trance, he or she has some sense of awareness and contact with reality and has an understanding of what is actually happening. Hypnosis can be used to treat a variety of pain syndromes, particularly chronic pain. It is used to help patients overcome the emotional consequences of pain and can promote a positive state of mind. Although nurses do not usually teach hypnosis, they are in a key position to help clarify misconceptions, instruct patients

about relaxation and distraction, and encourage them to practice self-hypnosis.

Other Complementary and Alternative Therapies. The data are controversial regarding the usefulness of other pain management techniques, such as magnet therapy and herbal supplements like glucosamine for osteoarthritis. Although not supported by research, some patients believe that magnets applied to the skin or worn in shoes can reduce pain. This is a noninvasive therapy, and there is no harm to those who use this modality.

The ancient Chinese practice of *acupuncture* is becoming more popular in Western countries for the treatment of pain and for anesthetic purposes during diagnostic procedures, labor and delivery, and surgery. It is also used to help patients change certain behaviors (e.g., smoking cessation). [Chapter 2](#) describes this complementary therapy in more detail.

Invasive Techniques for Chronic Pain

Invasive techniques are used to interrupt the pain pathways when pain is intractable (not able to be relieved) or severely debilitating. Depending on the technique, some degree of neurologic deficit and nerve destruction is expected. Various invasive techniques are used when chronic or persistent pain can no longer be adequately controlled with drugs or other pain-reducing methods. Examples include temporary or permanent *nerve blocks* with local anesthetics or other agents. *Because of high failure rates and serious neurologic complications, these procedures are rarely used.*

Spinal cord stimulation offers a more invasive method of nerve stimulation and is becoming more popular as a method of chronic pain control when other methods fail. This technique involves the use of electrodes implanted under the skin and into the area of the nerve responsible for the pain. At first, a trial of spinal cord stimulation is attempted using temporary externalized electrodes that are implanted and connected to a stimulator device. The amount of electrical current is adjusted to provide pain relief without additional discomfort. If this trial is successful, the patient undergoes surgery for placement of a permanent implantable stimulator.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After surgery, be sure to perform frequent neurologic assessments, especially on the lower extremities. If the patient reports any changes in movement ability or sensation, report these findings to the surgeon immediately and document carefully. Hematoma formation or other complications can lead to paralysis.

Community-Based Care

The pain experience extends beyond hospitalization. Many patients have chronic pain but are not hospitalized. Others are in nursing homes or assisted-living facilities and have chronic pain, often not well managed. If the patient is hospitalized, coordinate continuing pain management strategies before discharge. Ensure that the patient, especially one who is on opioids, has a prescription for pain medication to last at least until the first follow-up visit.

Home Care Management

Together with the patient and family, the nurse, case manager, discharge planner, or occupational therapist determines

whether modifications are necessary for maintaining a reasonably pain-free regimen after discharge. Fatigue heightens the awareness of pain. If physical modifications (e.g., installing a downstairs bathroom) are unrealistic, suggest schedule changes, role responsibilities, and daily routines to help avoid fatigue.

At home, patients may require a referral for physical therapy, especially to start or continue treatment with cutaneous stimulation or heat or cold techniques. Patients may need a clinical nurse specialist in pain management or a social worker to assist them in developing coping strategies or maintaining adequate family dynamics. A hospice referral (hospital- or community-based) can help maintain continuity of care in the management of terminally ill patients. Those with cancer may be at risk for developing uncontrolled pain that results in hospitalization if it cannot be managed at home.

Home infusion therapy programs provide a wide variety of services to patients who require technology-supported pain care at home. Many of these services depend on approval by the insurance carrier, usually before analgesic options are considered and therapy is started. Well-defined home agency practices and professional support at home are required if patients leave the hospital with infusion therapy for pain management.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient and family about analgesic regimens, including any technical skills needed to administer or deliver the analgesic, the purpose and action of various drugs, their side effects or adverse reactions, and the importance of dosage intervals. Explain how to prevent or treat the constipation commonly associated with taking opioid analgesics and other pain medications.

In addition, explain that, ideally, the analgesic regimen should not interfere with the patient's sleep, rest, appetite, level of physical mobility, or driving ability. If this problem occurs, encourage the family or other caregiver to consult with the health care provider or home care nurse, as appropriate.

In patients with pain from advanced cancer, all efforts are directed toward maximizing pain relief and symptom control at home to eliminate unnecessary re-admissions. This may mean that the health care provider prescribes a flexible analgesic schedule that allows the patient to adjust analgesics according to the amount of pain. Teach the patient and family how to safely increase the drug within the prescribed dosing guidelines.

Evaluate family support systems to assist the patient in adhering to and continuing the proposed medical treatment and nursing plans. Inform and include family members in activities during and after hospitalization.

To achieve a reasonable level of expectation for the patient, suggest ways to continue participation in household, social, sexual, and work-oriented activities after discharge. Help identify important activities, and plan them around adequate rest schedules.

The patient with chronic pain needs continued support to cope with the anxiety, fear, and powerlessness that often accompany this pain. Help the patient and family or significant others identify coping strategies that have worked in the past. Outside support systems are also identified, such as self-help organizations.

Health Care Resources

Refer the patient to home health when you anticipate that he or she will require assistance or supervision with the pain relief regimen at home. This referral should include specific information about the patient's overall physical condition, general level of sedation, weakness or fatigue, possible constipation or nutritional problem, sleep patterns, and functional status. Use a structured procedure such as SBAR to communicate this information.

In addition to explaining the patient's physical status to the home care nurse, describe the patient's level of anxiety and general expectations about pain status after discharge. Close relationships and available support network are

important factors in providing ongoing support for effective pain intervention strategies.

Referral to an advanced practice nurse pain specialist, social worker, or psychologist is an appropriate way to continue providing support to the patient and family, reinforce instructions for cognitive-behavioral strategies to deal with pain, and evaluate overall physical and emotional adaptation after discharge. When severe chronic or intractable pain exists, health care professionals should direct the patient and family to appropriate resources such as pain centers or health care providers who specialize in long-term pain management.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- The nurse is legally and ethically responsible for acting as an advocate for patients experiencing pain.
- Coordinate the patient's plan of care as he or she transfers between health care agencies; be sure that the plan of care is communicated clearly.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Provide information to the patient and family about complementary and alternative therapies as needed; these modalities are additions to, not replacements for, the established plan of care.
- Consider the special needs of older adults when assessing and managing their pain (see [Chart 5-1](#)).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Be aware that some nurses and physicians have biases about pain assessment and management; be objective when caring for any patient in pain.
- Provide information to patients who have misperceptions about pain and pain management.

Physiological Integrity

- Pain is what the patient says it is; self-report is always the most reliable indication of pain.
- Perform a complete pain assessment, including duration, location, intensity, and quality of pain.
- Three major types of pain have been identified—acute, chronic cancer, and chronic non-cancer.
- Acute pain serves as a warning to the body, causing sympathetic responses such as increased heart rate, increased blood pressure and pulse, dilated pupils, and sweating.
- Both types of chronic pain do not cause sympathetic reactions; therefore some patients do not appear to be in pain, even when they are.

- The gate control theory has helped explain the mechanism of pain and its management.
- Factors that affect pain and its management include age, gender, genetics, and culture.
- Tolerance implies that the patient has adapted to a drug and that, over time, its effects decline; physical dependence is manifested by a withdrawal reaction; addiction is a primary, chronic disease that occurs over a long period. Behaviors in addiction include craving, compulsive drug use, and continued use despite harm.
- Never use placebos for any patient; their use in non-research-based practice is unethical.
- Non-opioid drugs are the first-line therapy for mild to moderate pain; NSAIDs and acetaminophen (Tylenol) are commonly used drugs in this category.
- NSAIDs should be used with caution in older adults because of adverse effects, such as GI disturbances, bleeding, and sodium and water retention.
- Acetaminophen can cause hepatotoxicity and nephrotoxicity with long-term use.
- The opioid full agonists are most effective for both acute and chronic pain management; they bind to mu receptors and block pain transmission.
- Equianalgesic charts are useful when changing from one opioid to another; morphine 10 mg is the standard dose against which other opioids are measured.
- Morphine and *similar mu agonists* are the gold standard drugs for both acute and chronic pain and are available in many forms, both short acting and long acting.
- Other commonly used mu agonists include oxycodone, hydromorphone, and fentanyl.
- Meperidine is an outdated drug and is rarely used. Its toxic metabolite (normeperidine) can accumulate, especially in the older adult or someone with decreased renal clearance, and can cause seizures and confusion.
- Observe for and prevent common side effects of opioids including nausea and vomiting, constipation, sedation, and respiratory depression (see [Table 5-5](#)).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Table 5-7 summarizes the advantages and disadvantages of drug therapy by route of administration.
- Multimodal (balanced) analgesia for epidural pain management is a combination of opioids, non-opioids, and/or local anesthetics to relieve acute pain, usually postoperative pain.
- Assess for sedation in patients receiving PCA or epidural medication.
- Common adjuvant analgesics, as an addition to other drug regimens, are listed in Table 5-4.
- Nonpharmacologic therapies for pain management may be used in place of or in combination with drug therapy; these therapies are classified as physical measures or cognitive-behavioral therapies.
- Examples of physical measures to manage pain are transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), heat, cold, and massage.
- Distraction, imagery, relaxation techniques, and hypnosis are examples of cognitive-behavioral therapies.
- Acupuncture, magnet therapy, and herbal supplements are examples of other complementary and alternative therapies used for chronic pain management.
- Pain can be managed in any setting, including the home. Some patients require parenteral pain medications at home; therefore provide health teaching to ensure continuity of care.
- Refer patients whose pain is difficult to manage to pain specialists and/or pain centers.

Genetic Concepts for Medical-Surgical Nursing

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Hereditary Traits

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Coordinate with health care team members and genetics professionals when providing genetic testing information to patients and families.
2. Advocate for the patient with regard to whether or not to have genetic testing, informed consent before testing, and sharing of test results.
3. Ensure that confidentiality of genetic test results is maintained by all health care team members.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach the patient and family who are at increased genetic risk for a disease or disorder to implement environmental modifications to reduce risk.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Assess patient and family responses to the findings of genetic testing.

6. Support the decision of the patient and family to have or not to have genetic counseling or testing.

Physiological Integrity

7. Compare the concepts of phenotype and genotype.
8. Compare the patterns of inheritance for single gene traits.
9. Explain how genetic variations can affect adult health problems and their management.
10. Construct a three-generation pedigree from data obtained during the family history section of patient assessment.
11. Identify patients at increased genetic risk for health problems.
12. Explain how genetic testing is different from other laboratory tests.
13. Describe the role of the medical-surgical nurse in genetic counseling.

Genetics, *genomics*, and *genomic health care* are common terms in health care today. **Genetics** is concerned with the general mechanisms of heredity and the variation of inherited traits. The definition of **genomics** is both broader and more specific, focusing on the function of all of the human DNA, including genes and noncoding DNA regions. **Genomic health care** is the application of known genetic variation to enhance health care to individuals and their families.

How does genomic health care relate to medical-surgical nursing? Many adult-onset health problems have a genetic basis, meaning that genetic variation at the cellular level

contributes to the person's risk for disease development. Some of these health problems also demonstrate **heritability**, meaning that the risk for developing the disorder can be transmitted to one's children in a recognizable pattern. Some adult-onset disorders, such as Huntington disease, are unavoidable when a person inherits a specific genetic mutation that causes the disorder. For other health problems, the risk is increased but is not absolute, indicating a predisposition or susceptibility toward the problem when a specific genetic mutation is inherited. Such a disorder may never occur, depending on what additional environmental factors

interact with the increased genetic risk. For example, certain gene variations increase the risk for type 2 diabetes in some people; however, the disease is much more likely to develop only when the person with the genetic variation has a sedentary lifestyle and is overweight. Thus, although obesity is not good for anyone, it is clearly more dangerous for some people than others. One outcome of genomic health care is to identify personal risk for disease development and assist the person to reduce the risk by modifying his or her environment.

Although not everything is known about human genomics, specific discoveries regarding each person's genetic differences are being used to assess disease risk, enhance disease prevention strategies, and personalize disease management approaches. As a result, all health care professionals, including registered nurses, are expected to have at least a minimum knowledge of basic genetics to provide the best possible care for patients and families. Professional organizations, such as the American Nurses Association, the American Association of Colleges of Nursing, the American Academy of Nursing, and the National League for Nursing, as well as many specialty nursing organizations, support this position. These groups have agreed with the competencies established by the National Coalition for Health Professional Education in Genetics (NCHPEG) as the minimum essential genetic competencies required for safe nursing practice and have defined additional selected competencies. Table 6-1 lists selected genetic competencies considered particularly important in medical-surgical nursing.

The purpose of this chapter is to build on what you have learned about basic genetics in your science classes and to apply this information to adult health care. Although nurses are not expected to be genetic experts, they need to know enough about basic genetics to recognize when a patient or family has a possible genetic risk for a health problem and to coordinate the attention of health care team members to ensure appropriate care.

GENETIC BIOLOGY

Genes are the instructions for the making of all the different substances the human body produces. Think of all the hormones, enzymes, and other proteins the human body makes. It is the specific genes that tell each cell what protein to make, how to make it, when to make it, and how much to make. Think of each gene as a specific “recipe” for making a protein.

Most genes (more than 99%) are located in the nucleus of body cells. An important fact to remember is that every human cell with a nucleus contains the entire set of human genes. This complete set of genes is called the **genome**. (Mature red blood cells do not have a nucleus and thus contain no genes.) The human genome contains between 20,000 and 25,000 genes. For example, all cells have the gene for insulin. However, even though all cells have the gene for insulin, the only cell type that allows the insulin gene to be active and make insulin is the beta cell of the pancreas. So, although the insulin gene is present in skin cells, heart cells, brain cells, and other cells, only in the beta cells is this gene selectively “turned on” (**expressed**) when insulin is needed.

Genes are composed of DNA, which is present as 46 separate large chunks within the nucleus (Fig. 6-1). During cell

TABLE 6-1 SELECTED ESSENTIAL GENETIC COMPETENCIES FOR MEDICAL-SURGICAL NURSING PRACTICE

- Use appropriate genetic terminology.
- Recognize that a person/family with an identified genetic variation is a full member of society deserving of the same quality of health care as that provided to all others.
- Differentiate between genetic predisposition to a health problem and the actual expression or diagnosis of the health problem.
- Recognize the genetic and environmental influences on development of common adult-onset health problems.
- Be aware of genetic-based individual variation in responses to drug therapy.
- Consider genetic transmission patterns when performing a detailed patient and family history assessment.
- Ask appropriate questions during assessment to obtain information relevant to potential genetic risk or predisposition to a specific health problem(s).
- Construct a family pedigree, using standard symbols, that encompasses at least three generations.
- Identify patients/families at increased genetic risk for potential disease development.
- Ensure that patients/families identified to be at increased genetic risk for potential disease development are referred to the appropriate level of genetics professional.
- Individualize patient teaching about genetic issues using terminology and language the patient/family understands.
- Inform patients/families about potential risks and potential benefits of genetic testing.
- Advocate for patients with regard to their rights of accurate information, informed consent, competent counseling, refusal of genetic testing, freedom from coercion, and sharing of testing results.
- Assist patients/families to find credible resources regarding a specific genetic issue.
- Maintain patient/family confidentiality regarding any issue related to genetic testing, genetic predisposition, or genetic diagnosis, including whether genetic testing is even being considered.
- Support the patient's/family's decisions regarding any aspect of genetic testing or genetic diagnosis.

Adapted from competencies identified by American Association of Colleges of Nursing. (2008). *The essentials of baccalaureate education for nursing practice*. Washington, DC: Author; American Nurses Association. (2008). *Essentials of genetic and genomic nursing: Competencies, curricula guidelines, and outcome indicators* (2nd ed.). Silver Springs, MD: Author; National Coalition for Health Professional Education in Genetics. (2007). Core competencies in genetics for health professionals (3rd ed.). Retrieved October 2010, from www.nchpeg.org/core/core_comps_english2007.pdf.

division, each large chunk of DNA replicates and then organizes into a chromosome form to ensure precise delivery of the genetic information to each of the two new daughter cells. Thus DNA, chromosomes, and genes are all the same basic thing; only the structures differ.

Each chromosome has many genes within it. Humans have 23 pairs of chromosomes—46 individual chromosomes. The Y chromosome, a small chromosome, has fewer than 100 genes. Larger chromosomes, such as the number 1 chromosome, contain thousands of genes.

One way to think of it is to consider all the DNA in any cell's nucleus to be a giant “cookbook” containing all the recipes needed to make all the proteins, hormones, enzymes, and other substances your body needs. The chromosome pairs are the different book chapters (so the human genome cookbook has 23 chapters), and the genes are the individual recipes contained within the chapters.

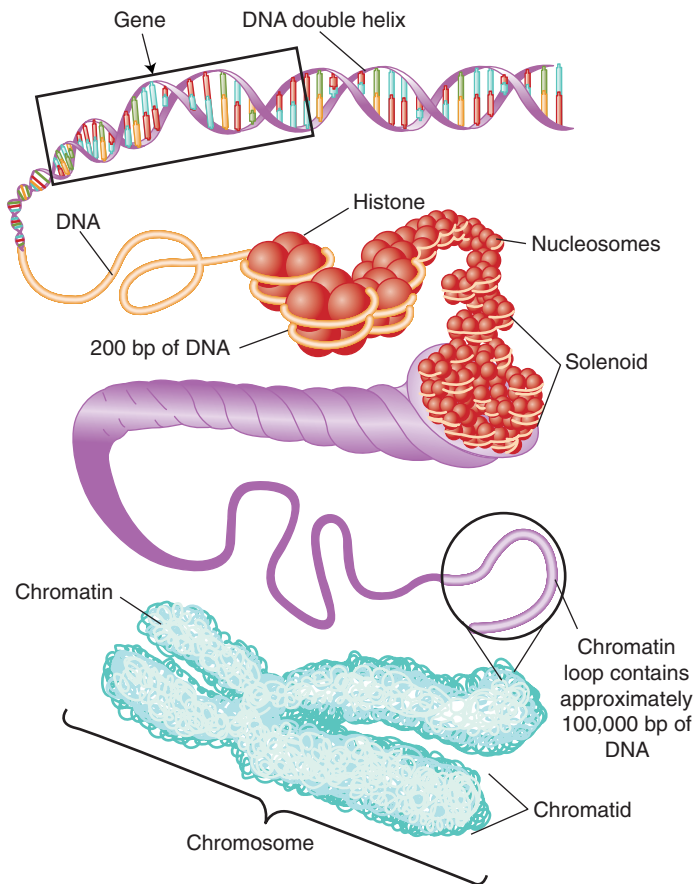


FIG. 6-1 The various forms of DNA from loose to coiling DNA tightly into a chromosome. *bp*, Base pair.

There is a specific chromosome location (**locus**) for every gene. For example, the locus for the gene for blood type is on chromosome 9. The locus for the gene for part of hemoglobin is on chromosome 11. We now know the location and the exact DNA sequence for many, but not all, genes.

DNA

DNA Structure

In humans, DNA is a linear, double-stranded structure composed of multiple units of four different nitrogenous bases, each attached to a sugar molecule. The bases in each strand are linked together by phosphate groups. These two individual strands are held together loosely. This double-stranded DNA is arranged like a long set of railroad tracks. The “backbones” of the track are the two long steel rails. For DNA, these backbones are the phosphate groups that hold the bases in place. The bases are the individual railroad ties. Think of each tie as having two pieces—one piece attached to the right-hand rail and one piece attached to the left-hand rail.

Fig. 6-2 shows a very small piece of double-stranded DNA on the left (containing only four base pairs) taken from the larger piece of DNA on the right. The phosphate groups that hold the nucleotides together as a strand are in the red box. The green box in the lower left-hand section shows a whole nucleotide (a base with the sugar and the phosphate group) in place in the left-hand DNA strand. The blue box in the

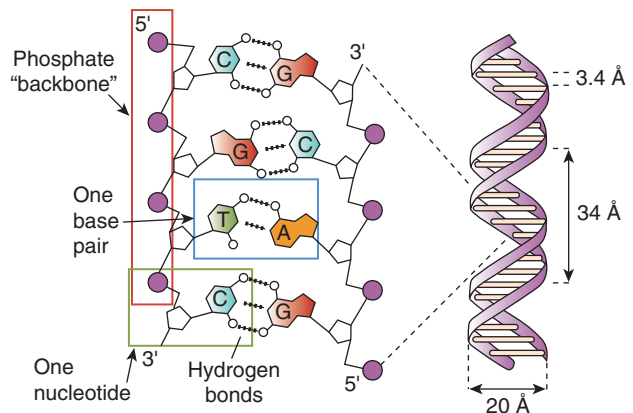


FIG. 6-2 The structure of DNA.

middle of the two strands shows how the base from the left strand lines up with and pairs to a complementary base in the right strand.

Bases are the essential parts of DNA. Many trillions of bases in the DNA are found in the nucleus of just one cell. In fact, if a cell could be cracked open like an egg and the nucleus (yolk) extracted and opened, the amount of DNA in the nucleus, stretched out, would be about 6 feet long. If the DNA in one cell could be made large enough to see and touch (about the width of a tape measure), it would be long

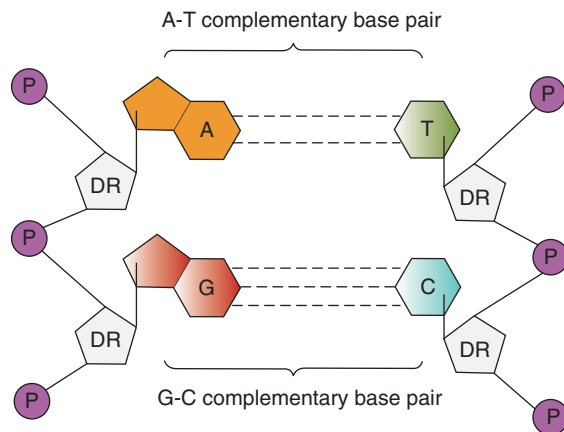


FIG. 6-3 Close view of DNA with four bases converted into nucleotides held loosely together by hydrogen bonds forming complementary base pairs. — — — = weak hydrogen bonds.



FIG. 6-4 Complementary strands of DNA.

enough to stretch out more than 1000 feet! There is much more DNA in each nucleus than is needed for the 25,000 genes. The gene DNA makes up only about 5% of all the DNA in each cell.

The four bases in DNA are adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), and thymine (T). Each base becomes a complete **nucleotide** when a five-sided sugar (known as a *deoxyribose sugar*) and a phosphate group are attached (Fig. 6-3). Nucleotides form the DNA strands with the phosphate groups holding the bases in place.

Base pairs are the linked bases in the two opposite strands of DNA. The bases always link together across from each other in a very specific way. Thymine always forms a pair with adenine, and cytosine always forms a pair with guanine. Thus the bases of each pair are complementary to each other. Because these complementary base pairs in DNA are specific, if the base sequence of one strand of DNA is known, the opposite strand's sequence could be accurately predicted. For example, if the left-hand section of DNA (strand 1 in Fig. 6-4) had the sequence A-G-G-C-T-C-A-A-C-C-T-G,

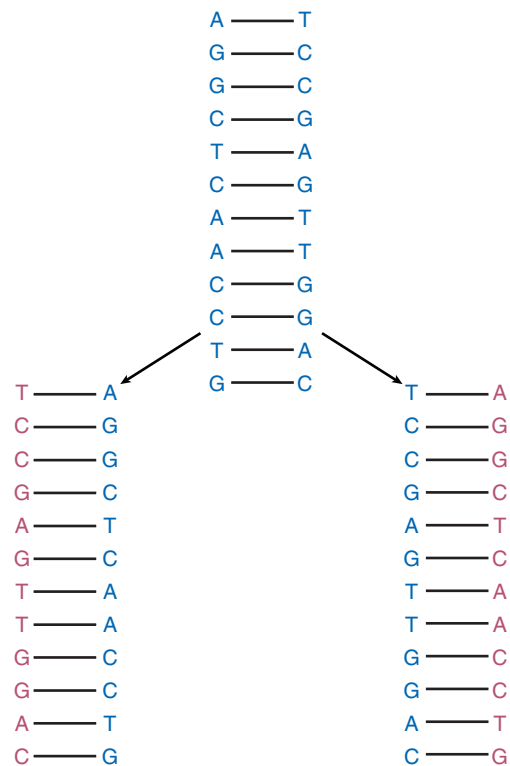


FIG. 6-5 DNA replication. Blue type, Original DNA; red type, newly replicated DNA.

the corresponding (complementary) right-hand section (strand 2 in Fig. 6-4) of DNA would have the sequence T-C-C-G-A-G-T-T-G-G-A-C.

When the two strands of DNA are lined up properly, they twist into a loose helical shape (see Fig. 6-1). In this shape, the DNA is so fine that it can be seen only with electron microscopes. Only when a cell begins to divide (i.e., undergoes mitosis) does the DNA super-coil tightly into dense pieces called *chromosomes* (see Fig. 6-1), which can be seen with standard microscopes.

DNA Replication

DNA must reproduce itself (**replicate**) every time a cell divides. Cell division (**mitosis**) occurs in a regulated pattern known as the *cell cycle*. The purpose of mitosis is for one cell to reproduce into two new cells, each of which is identical to the cell that started mitosis. For each new cell to have exactly the right amount of DNA and genes, the DNA in the dividing cell must exactly replicate. This process involves having the double strands of DNA separate and then enzymes read the sequence of the original strands and build two new strands that are perfectly complementary to the original strands (Fig. 6-5).

When DNA synthesis is complete, the result is two sets of double-stranded DNA. Each of the two sets has one old strand and one new strand. At the time of actual cell division with the separation into two new cells, one set of DNA will move into one of the two new cells made during mitosis and the second set will move into the other new cell. In this way, every new cell ends up with exactly the right amount of DNA with all the genes.

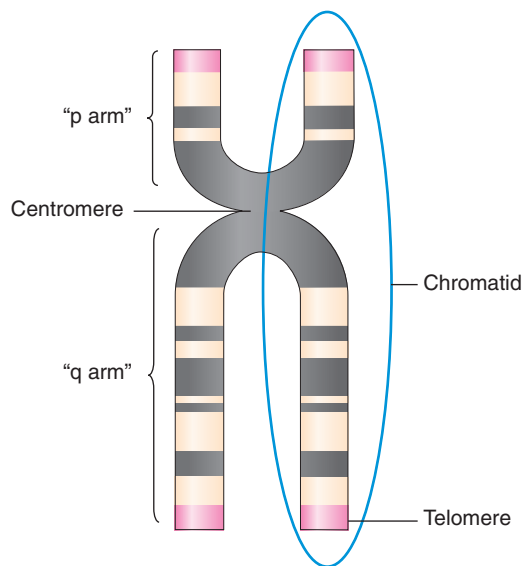


FIG. 6-6 A single metaphase chromosome.

Chromosomes

As shown in Fig. 6-1, a chromosome is a specific large chunk of highly condensed double-stranded DNA, with each chunk containing billions of bases and hundreds (and sometimes thousands) of genes. Each chromosome forms and moves to the center of the cell that is about to divide. Just before the cell splits into two cells, each chromosome is pulled apart so that half of each chromosome goes into one new cell and the other half goes into the other new cell. Thus chromosomes are temporary structures, but their job is important: precise delivery of DNA to the two new cells. Humans have 46 chromosomes divided into 23 pairs. This number is the “diploid” number of chromosomes for humans.

Fig. 6-6 shows a metaphase chromosome. The “pinched in” area of the chromosome is the centromere. Each left and right half of the chromosome is a chromatid. The “arms” above the centromere are the short arms, or the “p” arms. The longer arms (not legs) below the centromere are the “q” arms. A particular gene may be listed as located on 9q, meaning that the gene has its location (**locus**) on the long arm of the number 9 chromosome.

Some things about a person can be known by examining his or her chromosomes. It is important to remember that the information that can be obtained by chromosomal analysis is limited because each chromosome is composed of a large chunk of DNA. Only very large deletions, additions, or rearrangements of DNA show up at the level of the chromosome. Losses or gains of just a few bases (or even tens of thousands) cannot be detected by chromosome analysis.

A **karyotype** is an organized arrangement of all of the chromosomes present in a cell during the metaphase section of mitosis (Fig. 6-7). A picture of the chromosomes is made. Chromosomes are first paired up and then arranged according to size (largest first) and centromere position. This gross organization of DNA can be used to determine missing or extra whole chromosomes and some large structural rearrangements. A *missing gene or a mutated gene would not show up at this level of analysis.* What can be learned about the

person from whom the karyotype in Fig. 6-7 was made is that the person is human, female, and **euploid** (has the correct number of chromosome pairs for the species). This person is chromosomally “normal,” although she might have one or more genes that are mutated. If the karyotype is abnormal in any way (had more or less than the normal number or had broken chromosomes), the karyotype would be called **aneuploid**.

Autosomes are the 22 pairs of human chromosomes (numbered 1 through 22) that do not code for the sexual differentiation of a person. Autosomal chromosomes contain genes that code for all the structures and regulatory proteins needed for normal function. **Sex chromosomes** are the pair of chromosomes that include the genes for the sexual differentiation of the person. Chromosomally normal males have an X and a Y as the sex chromosomes. Chromosomally normal females have two XXs as the sex chromosomes (see Fig. 6-7).

Gene Structure and Function

A **gene** is a specific segment(s) of DNA that contains the code (recipe) for a specific protein (see Fig. 6-1). One gene usually codes for one protein; thus genes are the smallest functional unit of the DNA. Each chromosome contains hundreds of genes (and each chromosome is made up of a large segment of DNA). Thus an individual gene is a very small segment of DNA.

For many human traits, one gene controls the expression of that trait in any person. Such traits are known as “single gene traits” (monogenic traits). For each single gene, we have two alleles. An **allele** (pronounced “ah-lee-el”) is an alternate form (or variation) of a gene. For example, there is one gene for blood type but there are three possible gene alleles (A, B, and O). Each person has only two of the three specific gene alleles for blood type. One of these alleles is on one chromosome 9 of the pair; the other allele is located on the other number 9 chromosome. Because each person only has two number 9 chromosomes, he or she can have only two alleles for blood type. One gene allele was inherited from the person’s mother, and the other gene allele was inherited from the person’s father. *Some traits have even more than three possible alleles, but each person has only two.* Which blood type gene alleles are inherited from a person’s parents determines which blood type he or she expresses.

If a person has inherited a blood type A allele from his or her mother and a blood type B allele from his or her father, he or she has the A and B alleles; the blood type expressed when the blood bank determines type is type AB. Fig. 6-8 shows this concept. In Fig. 6-8, two people are about to become pregnant. What are the possibilities for this baby to have a specific type of ear shape (pointy, rounded, square, triangular)? The gene for ear shape is trait 1, and it (for the purposes of this explanation) is on chromosome number 6.

Each of the father’s sperm contains only one number 6 chromosome, and each of the mother’s eggs contains only one number 6 chromosome (so that when the sperm fertilizes the egg, the resulting person conceived will have only one pair of chromosome number 6 instead of two pairs of chromosome number 6). In Fig. 6-8, the paternal chromosomes are represented in blue and the maternal chromosomes are represented in pink. Throughout this text, when single gene health problems are described using either

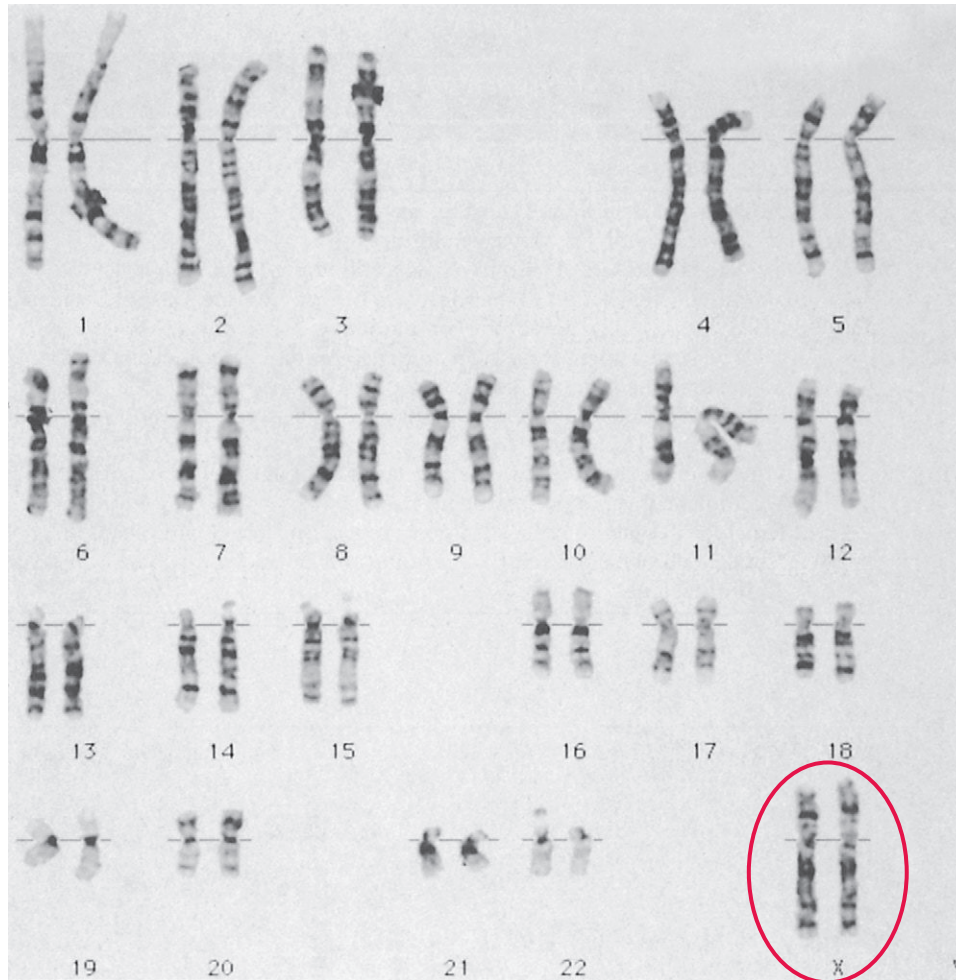


FIG. 6-7 A karyotype of a chromosomally normal female. (The sex chromosomes are circled in red.)

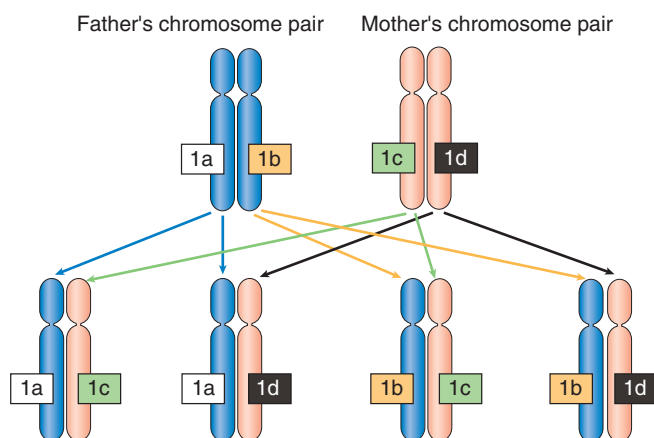


FIG. 6-8 Inheritance of four possible alleles for the single gene trait 1. (Any one person can have only two alleles for a single gene trait.)

a chromosome depiction or a Punnett square depiction, paternal genetic input is represented in blue and maternal genetic input is represented in pink.

Half the father's sperm have the 1a allele for ear shape, and the other half have allele 1b for ear shape. Half the

mother's eggs have 1c for ear shape, and the other half have 1d. The resulting baby can inherit only a 1a or a 1b from the father, not both; and this same baby can inherit only a 1c or a 1d from the mother—again, not both. The lower portion of Fig. 6-8 shows all the combinations possible for each ear shape gene alleles for any child these two people have.

If a person has two identical alleles for a single gene trait, that person is said to be *homozygous* for that trait. So if a person has an A blood-type gene allele on one number 9 chromosome and an A blood-type gene allele on the other number 9 chromosome, he or she is homozygous for that trait and will express the A blood type.

If a person has two different alleles for a single gene trait, he or she is *heterozygous* for that trait. So if a person has an A blood-type gene allele on one number 9 chromosome and a B blood-type gene allele on the other number 9 chromosome, that person is heterozygous for that trait and will express the AB blood type. Because the A and B alleles are equally dominant (*co-dominant*), they will both be expressed in the actual blood type.

There are differences in expression of the alleles for a trait depending on whether an allele is dominant or is recessive. If a person has an A blood-type gene allele on one number 9

chromosome and an O blood-type gene allele on the other number 9 chromosome, that person is heterozygous for that trait and expresses only the A blood type. Because the A allele is dominant and the O allele is recessive, they will not both be expressed in the actual blood type. Only the dominant allele is expressed, and the recessive allele is “silent.” More information about dominant, recessive, and co-dominant expression is presented later in the “Patterns of Inheritance” section on p. 72.

Phenotype

The **phenotype** of any gene for a person is what characteristic can actually be observed or, in some cases, determined by a laboratory test. For example, the person who has the AO gene alleles for blood type has the phenotype of type A blood. A person with curly hair has a curly hair phenotype regardless of whether he or she has two alleles for curly hair or one allele for curly hair and one allele for straight hair.

Genotype

The **genotype** for a person’s single gene trait is what the actual alleles are for that trait—not just what can be observed. A person with a phenotype of type A blood could have either an AA genotype or an AO genotype. The person who has type O blood would have an OO genotype. When a person has homozygous alleles for a trait, we would expect the genotype and phenotype to be the same. When a person has heterozygous alleles for a trait, the phenotype and the genotype are not always the same. *Recessive traits are expressed only when the person is homozygous for the alleles.* Thus for expressed recessive traits, phenotype and genotype are the same. Dominant traits are expressed whether the person is homozygous for the gene alleles or heterozygous for the gene alleles. Thus for dominant traits, phenotype and genotype can be the same but do not have to be the same.

Gene Expression

The purpose of a gene is to code for the making of a specific protein used by a cell, tissue, or organ within a person. For example, the hormone *insulin* is a protein. When a person’s blood glucose level starts to rise, the beta cells of the pancreas rapidly make insulin to meet the immediate needs of the person for blood glucose homeostasis.

To continue the cookbook analogy, each gene is the recipe needed to make a specific protein. All the “stuff” that a human body makes—every hormone, every enzyme, every growth factor, every chemical needed to keep the person functioning—is a protein. These proteins are *gene products* because they are produced when the right gene is “turned on” or *expressed*. Just a few examples of gene products are insulin, hemoglobin, erythropoietin, angiotensin, and estrogen.

Protein Synthesis

Protein synthesis is the process by which genes are used to make the proteins needed for physiologic function. Remember from your science classes, proteins are made up of individual amino acids hooked together like beads on a string. There are 22 different amino acids. Every protein has a specific number of each of the amino acids and a specific order in which they are placed. *If even one amino acid is out of order or completely deleted from the sequence, the protein will be less*

functional or, perhaps, nonfunctional and unable to perform its job in the body.

For example, the hormone *insulin* is a protein that contains 51 amino acids in a specific sequence. If some of the amino acids are missing or are in the wrong position, the protein made would be different from real insulin and could not reduce blood glucose levels. *Thus the actual order of the amino acids is critical for the final function of any protein.*

Within the DNA there is a code for each amino acid (Table 6-2). Each amino acid code is three bases (nucleotides) long. A gene is the recipe for making a specific protein. It contains all the amino acid codes in exactly the right order for that protein. For example, the final active form of the protein *insulin* has 51 amino acids. Thus the minimum number of bases needed in the gene for insulin would be 153 (3 bases per amino acid $\times$ 51 amino acids). Fig. 6-9 shows an example of a short protein made up of only 7 amino acids.

The process of making proteins involves first identifying the gene and copying it into messenger RNA (transcription), and then translating the message in the RNA into the actual protein. To think of this process in terms of the cookbook, the entire genome in each cell is the giant cookbook in the library. When a specific protein needs to be made, the chapter for that protein is opened (the chromosome) and the right recipe is found (the gene). The recipe is copied (transcribed) onto a note card (messenger ribonucleic acid, or mRNA) and taken to the kitchen (endoplasmic reticulum). In the kitchen, all the ingredients (amino acids) are put together (translated) in the right order with the help of bowls, ovens, pans, potholders, and other kitchen tools (adapter and transfer molecules). The key for making a functional protein is accurate placement of all the amino acids in the order specified by the gene. When problems exist in the base sequence of a gene, its expression may not result

TABLE 6-2 EXAMPLES OF DNA CODES AND RNA CODONS FOR SELECTED AMINO ACIDS

AMINO ACID	DNA CODE(S)	RNA CODONS
Alanine	CGA, CGG, CGT, CGC	GCU, GCC, GCA, GCG
Glycine	CCA, CCG, CCT, CCC	GGU, GGC, GGA, GGG
Isoleucine	TAA, TAG, TAT	AUU, AUC, AUA
Lysine	TTT, TTC	AAA, AAG
Tryptophan	ACC	UGG
Tyrosine	ATA, ATG	UAU, UAC
Start		AUG
Stop		UAA, UAG, UGA

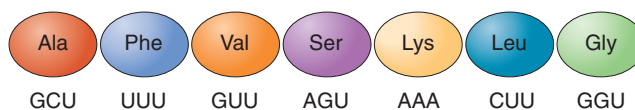


FIG. 6-9 A sample protein composed of seven amino acids. The RNA codons for the individual amino acids are listed below each amino acid.

in a functional protein. In addition, the process of protein synthesis involves many complex steps and a problem at any step could result in the failure to produce a functional protein.

Mutations

Many human genes have been sequenced, meaning that their base sequence is known and so is the sequence of their amino acids in the expressed proteins. Most people have the same base sequence for a specific gene, like the gene for insulin. When this sequence is the most common one found in a large population of humans, it is referred to as the *wild-type* gene sequence. Think of the term *wild-type* as meaning “normal” or “expected.” When a person has a different sequence for a gene compared with the known wild-type sequence, the gene has a variation or mutation. Mutations as small variations in gene sequences are more common for very large genes (which may contain more than a million bases), and the significance of some of these changes is not known. It is these differences or variations in the sequences of some genes that are now being considered in health care.

Mutations are DNA changes that are passed from one generation to another and thus are *inherited*. An inherited mutation does not have to mean that the mutation is passed from one human generation to another. It can mean that the mutation is passed from one *cell* generation to another and may affect only certain tissues within a person rather than be a problem within a family. These mutations occur in general body cells (somatic cells) and are known as *somatic mutations*. Because these mutations occur in a person's cells after conception, the person cannot pass a somatic mutation on to his or her children. One possible outcome of somatic mutations is an increased risk for cancer in cells with such mutations.

When mutations occur in sex cells, they are called *germline mutations*. A germline mutation can be passed on to a person's children, and each of that child's cells, including his or her somatic cells, will contain the mutated DNA.

DNA bases can be altered or “mutated” accidentally. Sometimes the wrong base is put into a certain position in the newly made DNA strand during cell division. It is also possible for a base to be accidentally deleted or an extra base placed into the strand. Usually most errors that occur during the making of DNA are corrected at that time, although some changes probably occur daily and escape correction in any one person. If these changes occur in a gene area of the DNA, the change can alter the expression of that gene and an incorrect gene product (protein) might result. So mutations can have serious results, although some mutations may actually be beneficial. Gene mutations or variations that increase the risk for a disorder are known as *susceptibility* genes. Gene mutations or variations that decrease the risk for a disorder are known as *protective* or *resistance* genes.

As stated earlier, the gene sequences for most proteins are generally the same in all people. Sometimes a base in one person's gene for a specific protein is not the same as that in the wild-type. Either this difference can be a variation known as a *single nucleotide polymorphism*, or *SNP* (“snip”), or it can be a mutation. When a base difference allows the protein to be made but there are differences in how well the protein works, the difference is called a *variation* or a **polymorphism**.

When a base difference causes a loss of protein function, it is called a **mutation**. The two types of mutations are point mutations and frameshift mutations.

Point Mutations

Point mutations are the substitution of one base for another. A change has been made at a single point of DNA, and the type of change is a base substitution, not a deletion or addition. So the triplets, or three-base codes, remain intact, although one may be incorrect. This change may or may not alter amino acid position or protein synthesis.

Below is an analogy to a point mutation. The top sentence represents the “reading sequence” for a specific gene:

THE BIG DOG ATE THE CAT
THE BIG DOG ATE THE CAP

A point mutation, as seen in the bottom sentence, has changed the *t* in cat to a *p*. The coded message is similar but not exactly the same.

Sometimes a point mutation can change the protein (gene product) a little but it can still function. Sometimes, however, a point mutation changes the protein just enough that it does not work at all. It all depends on how critical the amino acid that changed was to the function of the protein.

Clinically, many SNPs exist within different people in the genes of a large family of enzymes involved in drug metabolism. These enzymes are the cytochrome P-450 family, coded for by at least ten separate extremely large genes, with as many as 100 subsets of genes. Cytochrome p is abbreviated as CYP (pronounced “sip”). SNPs in these genes can make the resulting enzyme less active than normal or more active than normal. Either way, a change in activity of any one of these enzymes can affect a person's response to drug therapy. For example, the drug *warfarin* (Coumadin) is metabolized for elimination primarily by two enzymes from this system, CYP2C9 and CYP2C19. About 17% to 37% of white people have a SNP variation in CYP2C9 that slows the metabolism of warfarin. This means that warfarin remains in the person's system longer, greatly increasing the risk for bleeding and other side effects. For people who have this gene mutation, warfarin doses need to be much lower than those for the general population.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Most people of Asian heritage have a SNP in the *CYP2C19* gene that results in low activity of the enzyme produced. This mutation greatly reduces the metabolism of warfarin, leading to increased bleeding risks and other serious side effects. Any person of Asian heritage who needs anticoagulation therapy should be started on very low dosages of warfarin and have his or her international normalized ratio (INR) monitored more frequently than people who do not have a variation of the *CYP2C19* gene.

Frameshift Mutations

Frameshift mutations are those that occur as a result of adding or deleting a single base or a group of bases. This type of mutation always alters amino acid position, disrupts the reading frame, and stops protein synthesis. These changes ruin the reading sequence of the gene from the mutation on down. *These changes are very serious because a normal product cannot be made from a gene with such a mutation.*

Below is an analogy to a frameshift mutation. The top sentence represents the correct “reading sequence” for a specific gene:

THE BIG DOG ATE THE CAT
 THB IGD OGA TET HEC AT
 THE PBI GDO GAT ETH ECA T

A base deletion mutation, as seen in the middle sentence, has removed the *E* in “THE,” shifting the rest of the bases to the left (for the three-base codes) and disrupting the reading frame. A base addition mutation, as seen in the bottom sentence, has added a *P* to “BIG,” shifting the three-base reading codes to the right and disrupting the reading frame. The coded message (recipe) has been lost completely.

Changes in genes, even small changes, can have serious results. Some changes would inactivate a protein. Other changes may alter how often or how well a group of cells divides. Gene variations may cause one person to have a greater-than-normal risk for developing a disease. A different variation in the same gene may cause another person to have a smaller-than-normal risk for developing the same disease.

PATTERNS OF INHERITANCE

For every single gene trait, a person inherits one allele for that gene from his or her mother and one allele from his or her father. How these traits are expressed depends on whether one or both alleles are “dominant” or whether one or both alleles are “recessive.” Expression also depends on whether the gene for the trait is located on an autosome or on a sex chromosome.

It is possible to determine how the gene for a specific trait is passed from one human generation to the next (transmitted). By looking at how that trait is expressed through several generations of a family, patterns emerge that indicate whether the gene for the trait is dominant or recessive and whether it is located on an autosomal chromosome or on one of the sex chromosomes. This information can be determined through pedigree analysis. Determining inheritance patterns for a specific trait makes it possible to predict the risk for any one person to have a trait or transmit that trait to his or her children.

Pedigree

A **pedigree** is a graph of a family history for a specific trait or health problem over several generations. Fig. 6-10 shows common symbols used when creating a pedigree. Fig. 6-11 shows a typical three-generation pedigree. Although the term *pedigree* is the correct genetic term, some patients are offended by this term. Use the term *family tree* in place of pedigree when talking with patients. Construct a pedigree that includes at least three generations when taking the family history. When analyzing a pedigree, note the answers to these:

- Is any pattern of inheritance recognized, or does the trait appear sporadic?
- Is the trait expressed equally among male and female family members or unequally?
- Is the trait present in every generation, or does it skip one or more generations?

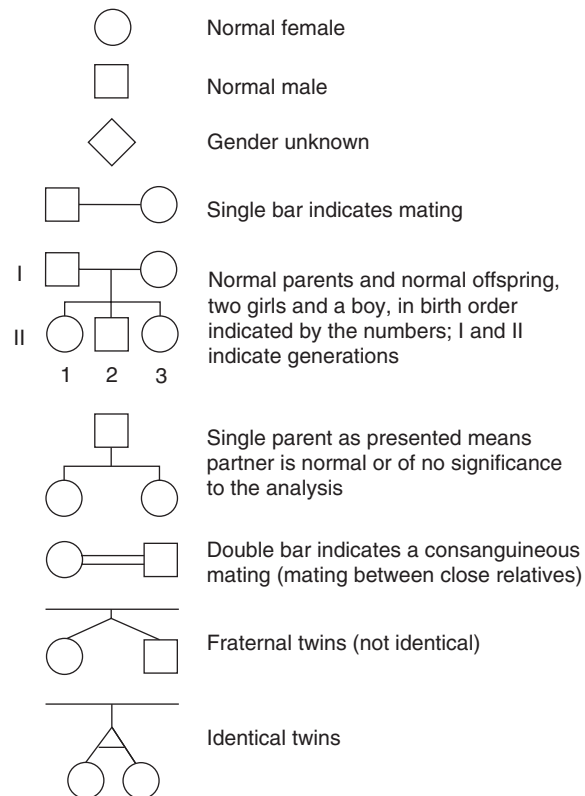


FIG. 6-10 Standard pedigree symbols.

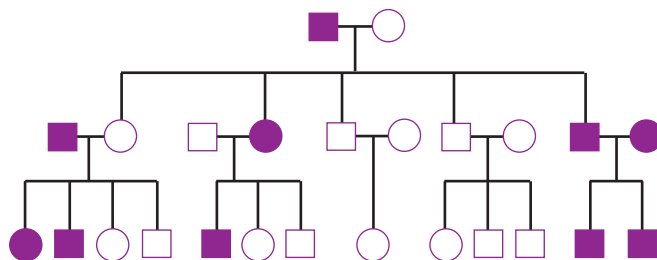


FIG. 6-11 A three-generation pedigree showing an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance.

- Do only affected people have children affected with the trait, or do unaffected people also have children who express the trait?

The four types of inheritance patterns associated with single gene-controlled traits are autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, sex-linked dominant, and sex-linked recessive. Each inheritance pattern has specific defining criteria. Table 6-3 lists the patterns of inheritance for some disorders that either are identified in adults or may be identified in children who live to adulthood.

Some traits and disorders cluster within a family but do not follow any known pattern of inheritance. Although no specific single gene has yet been found for some of these disorders, the clustering suggests a genetic basis. It is thought that for some of the disorders that show familial clustering, environmental factors may modify a genetic predisposition. Continued genetic research may solve the familial clustering gene puzzle.

TABLE 6-3 PATTERNS OF INHERITANCE FOR GENETIC DISORDERS AMONG ADULTS

PATTERN OF INHERITANCE	DISORDER
Autosomal dominant	Breast cancer* (mutation of <i>BRCA1</i> or <i>BRCA2</i> genes)
	Diabetes mellitus type 2*
	Familial adenomatous polyposis
	Familial melanoma
	Familial hypercholesterolemia
	Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC)
	Huntington disease
	Long QT syndrome and sudden cardiac death
	Malignant hyperthermia (MH)
	Marfan syndrome
	Myotonic dystrophy
	Neurofibromatosis (types 1 and 2)
	Ovarian cancer* (mutation of <i>BRCA1</i> genes)
	Polycystic kidney disease† (types 1 and 2)
	Retinitis pigmentosa†
	von Willebrand's disease
Autosomal recessive	Albinism
	Alpha ₁ -antitrypsin deficiency
	Beta thalassemia
	Bloom syndrome
	Cystic fibrosis
	Hereditary hemochromatosis
	Sickle cell disease
Sex-linked recessive	Xeroderma pigmentosum
	Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency
	Hemophilia
Complex disorders/ Familial clustering	Red-green color blindness
	Alzheimer's disease
	Autoimmune disorders
	Bipolar disorder
	Parkinson disease
	Schizophrenia
	Hypertension
	Rheumatoid arthritis

*Some disorders have both a genetic and nongenetic form.

†Some disorders have more than one genetic form and can also be autosomal recessive.

Autosomal Dominant Pattern of Inheritance

Autosomal dominant (AD) single gene traits require that the gene alleles controlling the trait be located on an autosomal chromosome. A dominant gene allele is expressed even when only one allele of the pair is dominant. Other criteria for AD patterns of inheritance include:

- The trait appears in every generation with no skipping.
- The risk for an affected person to pass the trait to a child is 50% with each pregnancy.
- Unaffected people do not have affected children; therefore their risk is essentially 0%.
- The trait is found about equally in males and females.

An example of an AD trait is blood type A. If a person is homozygous for the blood type A allele, he or she will express type A blood (with genotype being identical to the phenotype). If a person is heterozygous for the blood type A allele with the other allele being type O (which is a recessive trait),

he or she will also express type A blood. In this case, however, the phenotype is not identical to the genotype. *When a dominant allele is paired with a recessive allele, only the dominant allele is expressed.* The blood type B allele is a dominant allele. When a B allele is paired with an O allele, B blood type is expressed. When a person has one blood type A allele and a blood type B allele, however, both alleles are expressed (because they are equally dominant) and the person has type AB blood.

When a person actually has a specific gene allele, he or she is said to “carry” that gene allele. This issue is different from being a “carrier” of a recessive allele. Carrier status is discussed in the “Autosomal Recessive Pattern of Inheritance” section on p. 74.

Some health problems inherited as autosomal dominant (AD) single gene traits are not apparent at birth but develop as the person ages (see Table 6-3). Two factors that affect the expression of some AD single gene traits are penetrance and expressivity.

Penetrance

Penetrance is how often or how well, within a population, a gene is expressed when it is present. Some genes are more penetrant than others. For example, the gene for Huntington disease (HD) has an autosomal dominant pattern of transmission. Therefore a person who has one HD allele is at risk for developing HD. This gene is “highly penetrant” (sometimes called “fully penetrant”). This means that if a person has the HD gene allele, his or her risk for expressing the gene and developing the disease is about 99.99%.

Some dominant gene alleles have “reduced” penetrance. This means that a person who has the gene mutation has a lower risk for this gene being expressed and actually developing the disorder.

Penetrance is calculated by examining a population of people known to have the gene mutation and assessing the percentage that go on to express the gene by developing the disorder. For example, the *BRCA2* gene mutation increases a person's risk for breast cancer. This gene is not fully penetrant, so some women (and men) who have the gene do not develop breast cancer. The penetrance rate for this gene mutation is calculated to be between 60% and 80%, meaning that a person who has the gene mutation has a 60% to 80% risk for developing breast cancer. Although this risk is far higher than among people who do not have the mutated gene, the risk is not 100%. Having the gene mutation does not absolutely predict that the person will develop breast cancer—just that the risk is high.

Expressivity

Expressivity is the degree of expression a person has when a dominant gene is present. So it is a personal issue, not a population issue. The gene is *always* expressed, but some people have more severe problems than do other people. For example, the gene mutation for one form of neurofibromatosis (NF1) is dominant. Some people with this gene mutation have only a few light brown skin tone areas known as *café au lait spots*. These skin lesions can be so minor that the person may not even be aware that they are present. Other people with the same gene mutation develop hundreds of tumors (neurofibromas) that protrude through the skin. Expressivity accounts for some variation in genetic disease severity.

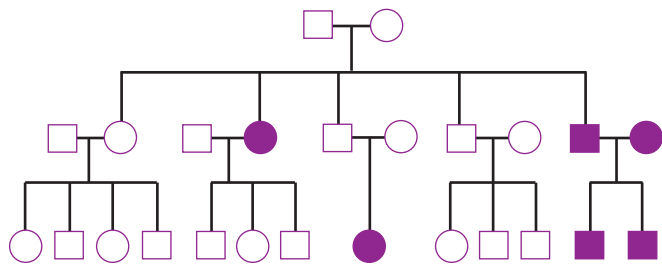


FIG. 6-12 A typical pedigree showing an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance.

Autosomal Recessive Pattern of Inheritance

Autosomal recessive (AR) single gene traits require that the gene controlling the trait be located on an autosomal chromosome. The trait can be expressed *only* when both alleles are present. Table 6-3 lists some AR adult disorders. Fig. 6-12 shows a typical pedigree for an AR disorder. Criteria for AR patterns of inheritance include:

- The trait may not appear in all generations of any one branch of a family.
- The trait often first appears only in siblings rather than in the parents.
- About 25% of a family will be affected and express the trait.
- The children of two affected parents will *always* be affected (risk is 100%).
- Unaffected people who are carriers (heterozygous for the trait) and do not express the trait themselves *can* transmit the trait to their children if their partner either is also a carrier or is affected.
- The trait is found about equally in male and female members of the same family.

An example of an AR trait is type O blood. The blood-type O allele is recessive, and both alleles must be type O (homozygous) for the person to express type O blood. If only one allele is a type O allele and the other allele is either type A or type B, the dominant allele will be expressed and the O allele, although present, is not expressed. For AR single gene traits, phenotype and genotype are always the same.

A person who has one mutated allele for a recessive genetic disorder is a **carrier**. A carrier, even though he or she may have one mutated allele, does not usually have any manifestations of the disorder but can pass this mutated allele on to his or her children. For some autosomal recessive disorders, a carrier may have very mild manifestations. One example is sickle cell trait. A person with two sickle cell alleles has the disease and has many associated health problems. A carrier with one sickle cell allele (has “sickle cell trait”) may be healthy most of the time and have manifestations only under conditions of severe hypoxia.

Sex-Linked Recessive Pattern of Inheritance

Some genes are present only on the sex chromosomes. The Y chromosome has only a few genes that are not also present on the X chromosome. These few genes are important for male sexual development. The X chromosome, however, has many single genes that are not present on the Y or elsewhere in the human genome. Some of these genes are specific for female sexual development, but there are also several hundred genes on the X chromosome that code for other

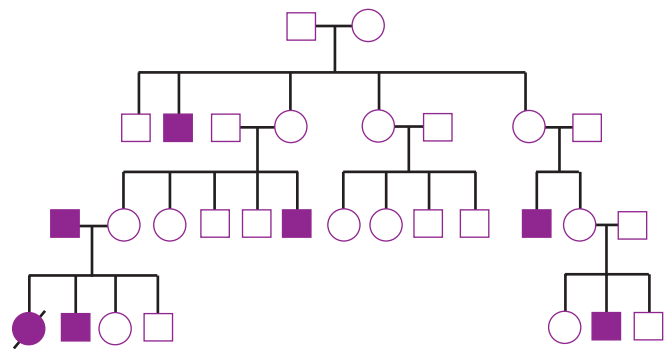


FIG. 6-13 A typical pedigree showing a sex-linked (X-linked) recessive pattern of inheritance.

functions. Few traits or disorders have an X-linked dominant pattern of expression, and they are not discussed in this chapter.

Because the number of X chromosomes in males and females is not the same (1:2), the number of X-linked chromosome genes in the two genders is also unequal. Males have only one X chromosome. As a result, X-linked recessive genes have dominant expression in males and recessive expression in females. This difference in expression is because males do not have a second X chromosome to balance the presence of a recessive gene on the first X chromosome.

Sex-linked (X-linked) recessive single gene traits require that the gene allele be present on both of the X chromosomes for the trait to be expressed in females (homozygous) and on only one X chromosome for the trait to be expressed in males. Fig. 6-13 shows a typical pedigree for a sex-linked recessive disorder. Features of a sex-linked recessive pattern of inheritance include:

- The incidence of the trait is much higher among males in a family than among females.
- The trait cannot be passed down (transmitted) from father to son.
- Transmission of the trait is from father to all daughters (who will be carriers).
- Female carriers have a 50% risk (with each pregnancy) of passing the gene to their children.

Complex Inheritance and Familial Clustering

Some health problems appear in families at a rate higher than normal and greater than can be accounted for by chance alone; however, no specific pattern occurs within a family. Although clusters suggest a genetic influence, it is likely that additional factors, such as gender and the environment, also influence disease development or disease severity. Such disorders include Alzheimer’s disease, type 1 diabetes, and many others. These disorders are often called *complex* and *multifactorial*, because although an increased genetic risk may be present, the risk is changed by diet, lifestyle, exposure to toxins, infectious agents, and other factors.

GENETIC TESTING

Purpose of Genetic Testing

Many people are eager to have genetic testing but also are fearful of genetic testing. The lay public often believes that a single genetic test can “tell everything about a person.”

Although genetic testing has the potential to be that informative, this is not currently the case. *It is important to remember that no single person is genetically perfect.*

Genetic testing can be performed with many different techniques. Some genetic tests are specific for a disorder. Others may show a gene variation but the significance of the variation may not be known. Unexpected information can be found during genetic testing. Some ordinary tests, such as blood typing and tissue typing, provide genetic information. Tests that measure the amount of an enzyme or protein also provide genetic information.

Actual genetic testing can be performed at many levels. Cellular or biochemical tests provide information about gene products made by a cell, tissue, or organ. Chromosomes can be assessed for missing, extra, or broken chromosomes. Chromosome segments can be analyzed for abnormalities or changes from normal positions. The sequence of a gene can be examined to determine variation or mutation. At present, not all genes can be analyzed and the analysis of even one gene is limited by expense and availability. Specific base pairs can be evaluated for mutations. These tests are expensive, and the results may not be conclusive. Table 6-4 lists purposes of genetic testing for adults.

Benefits and Risks of Genetic Testing

Genetic testing is different from any other type of testing for many reasons. *It is important to remember that just because the technology exists does not mean it should be used in all cases.* Informed consent is required before genetic testing is undertaken. The person tested is the one who gives consent, even though genetic testing *always* gives information about a family and family members—not just the patient.

Benefits of genetic testing include the ability to confirm a diagnosis or to test people who are at risk for a health problem but do not as yet have any symptoms (presymptomatic testing). The information can help a person, family, and their health care provider develop a specific plan of care or early detection. For example, in the case of a strong genetic predisposition for colon cancer, identifying a patient before symptoms appear allows interventions to prevent the disease or to diagnosis it earlier, when cure is more likely.

Risks are associated with genetic testing that are not associated with other types of tests. Genetic testing results do not change. This means that a positive test result cannot be “taken back.” The risks of genetic testing may include psychological or social risks, as well as a risk for family disruption. Often genetic tests are expensive and may not be covered by insurance. Some genetic tests have limited value for predicting future risk. Testing may identify a patient at great risk for the future development of a serious health problem that cannot be prevented. Such a disorder is Huntington disease (HD), which currently has no treatment. Knowing positive test results in this case can lead to depression, blame, and guilt.

Another risk of genetic testing is that positive results may be used to discriminate against a person or a family. Some protection is in place to prevent health insurance companies from failing to insure a person or dropping the coverage of a person who is at high risk for developing a serious illness (e.g., breast or ovarian cancer). However, there are no protections against rate hikes or exclusions of specific treatments. Patients often fear workplace

TABLE 6-4 PURPOSES OF GENETIC TESTING FOR ADULTS

PURPOSE/TYPE	DEFINITION
Carrier testing	Determining whether a patient without symptoms has an allele for a recessive disorder that could be transmitted to his or her children. Disorders for which carrier testing is common include sickle cell disease, hemophilia, hereditary hemochromatosis, cystic fibrosis, beta thalassemia, and Tay-Sachs disease.
Diagnostic testing	Determining whether a patient has or does not have a mutation that increases the risk for a specific disorder.
Symptomatic	Patient has clinical manifestations; test results confirm a diagnosis.
Presymptomatic	Patient has no clinical manifestations but is at high risk for inheriting a specific genetic disorder for which there is no known prevention or treatment. A disorder for which presymptomatic testing is commonly performed is Huntington disease.
Predisposition	Family history or genetic testing indicates risk is high for a known genetic disorder. The patient does not have any manifestations but wants to know whether he or she has the specific mutation and what the chances are that it will be expressed. Disorders for which predisposition testing is often performed include hereditary breast/ovarian cancer and hereditary colorectal cancers. The advantage of predisposition testing is that the patient can then engage in heightened screening activities or medical and surgical interventions that reduce risk.

discrimination and personal discrimination if positive test results become known.

Genetic Counseling

Genetic testing is not a standard test that any person should have performed without knowing the advantages and disadvantages. Counseling patients before, during, and after testing is critical. Entire families may be a part of the genetic evaluation and follow-up. For example, a 45-year-old woman has breast cancer. In her family, her mother, grandmother, brother, and one sister have all had breast cancer. Genetic testing indicates that she has a *BRCA1* gene mutation. This woman's older daughter wonders whether she has a gene mutation for breast cancer and asks to be tested. When she and her younger sister are tested, the older daughter does not have the mutation but the younger sister does.

Genetic counseling is a process—not a single session or a single recommendation. This process should begin when the patient or family is first identified as potentially having a genetic problem. The process continues through actual testing if the decision to test is made, and it continues through interpretation of results and follow-up. Steps in the process are listed in Chart 6-1.

As a nurse and patient advocate, determine whether the patient understands the consequences of testing. Often a

CHART 6-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Steps for Genetic Testing and Counseling**Pre-Testing Assessment and Patient Education (May Take Multiple Sessions)**

- Determining patient understanding and why testing or counseling is being sought
- Determining whether testing is reasonable (considering cost of the test, specificity, probable risk, accuracy of testing)
- Establishing a trusting professional relationship
- Ensuring privacy and confidentiality
- Reviewing informed consent procedures
- Assessing the patient's ability to communicate accurately (including language issues, cognitive function, sensory perception)
- Assessing the patient's psychosocial status and availability of social support
- Taking a detailed patient health history (including drugs, diet, exercise, hormonal history, lifestyle issues)
- Obtaining physical assessment data relevant to the at-risk disorder
- Taking a detailed family history and constructing a three-generation pedigree (minimum)
- Obtaining and verifying information obtained from:
 - Patient
 - Family members
 - Medical records
 - Pathology reports
 - Death certificates
- Interpreting the family history
- Discussing the consequences of testing

- Discussing patient rights and obligations regarding disclosure of information
- Discussing testing options
- Assessing to determine whether coercion is occurring
- Obtaining material to be tested (usually blood)

Test Result Presentation

- Re-assessing the patient's wish to know or not know the test results
- Respecting the patient's decision not to know the test results
- Ensuring privacy and confidentiality
- Presenting the test results
- Interpreting the test results
- Assessing the patient's perception of the test results

Follow-Up

- Supporting the patient's decision to disclose or not disclose the information to other family members
- Discussing the potential risks for other family members
- Ensuring privacy and confidentiality
- Addressing the patient's concerns
- Discussing prevention, early detection, and treatment options
- Discussing family concerns
- Addressing psychosocial issues
- Discussing available resources for information, support, and further counseling
- Providing summary of results and consultation to the patient

patient may request genetic testing even when there is no indication of an increased risk for a genetic disorder. Counseling and evaluation can help patients understand whether any useful information could be obtained from testing.

Counseling is performed by a professional or a team who have defined expertise in interpretation of genetic testing results. Such professionals include advanced practice nurses with specialization in genetics, certified genetic counselors, clinical geneticists, and medical geneticists. Each profession has a different level of preparation in genetics and different skills or roles in the counseling process. For example, an advanced practice nurse may counsel a patient about the Huntington disease (HD) gene mutation because this test is not ambiguous and the gene is highly penetrant. When a genetic test shows a variation or mutation in an unusual gene region or when penetrance is reduced, the patient may best be served by counseling from a certified genetic counselor or a clinical or medical geneticist.

No matter which professional is involved in genetic counseling, a key feature of this counseling is to be "nondirective." When using a nondirective approach, the counselor provides as much information as possible about the risks and benefits but does not in any way influence the patient's decision to test or not to test. Once the patient has made the decision, the counselor supports the patient and the decision.

Ethical Issues

Many ethical issues are involved with genetic testing. Some of the most important issues focus on the patient's right to know versus the right not to know his or her gene status, confidentiality, coercion, and sharing of information.

The right to know genetic risk versus the right not to know is the individual patient's choice. Sometimes a patient's right

to know has an impact on the right of another family member not to know. For example, if a patient's maternal grandfather had HD and the patient wants to know whether he or she has that gene, he or she is tested. This person's mother does not want to know whether she has the gene. If the patient is tested and found to have the gene, because HD is autosomal dominant, the only way he or she could have the gene is if this person's mother also has it. Thus when the patient finds out he or she is positive and tells the mother, the mother will learn that she is also positive, even if she did not want to know.

Confidentiality is crucial to the genetic counseling process. The results of a genetic test must remain confidential to the patient. The results cannot be given to a family member, other health care provider, or insurance carrier without the patient's permission.

Coercion is possible by other family members and even by health care professionals.

The final decision to have genetic testing or not to have testing rests with the patient. Other people may believe it is important for the patient to have the test; however, the patient must make the decision without such pressures. As a patient advocate, assess whether the patient is freely making the decision to have genetic testing or whether someone else is urging the patient to test. This important issue can be difficult to assess. Ask the patient who else in his or her family wants to know the results of testing. An important question to ask is, Will you do anything differently for screening or treatment if the test is positive versus if the test is negative?

Sharing of test result information, negative or positive, can induce stress. The patient makes the final decision to share the information with family members. Some patients

choose not to share this information even when other family members may also be at risk. This can be difficult for the health care provider who knows the patient has a positive test result for a serious inherited condition and the patient chooses not to tell other family members who may be at risk. For example, hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) has an autosomal dominant inheritance pattern and each child of the patient has a 50% risk for having the gene. If the patient chooses not to tell his or her grown children, they then do not have the opportunity for increased screening to find the cancer at an early stage when cure is possible. An ethical dilemma arises when the health care provider wants to inform the children of their risk.

THE ROLE OF THE MEDICAL-SURGICAL NURSE IN GENETIC COUNSELING

Medical-surgical nurses help patients during the assessing, testing, and counseling processes in many areas, although they do not provide in-depth genetic counseling. Patients often feel most comfortable sharing information with nurses and asking nurses to clarify information.

Nurses may be the first health care professionals to identify a patient at specific genetic risk. Some of the “red flags” that a patient may have an increased genetic risk for a disease or disorder are:

- The disease or disorder occurs at a higher incidence within the family compared with the general population.
- The patient or close family members have another identified genetic problem.
- The incidence of a specific disease or disorder occurs in the patient or in family members at an unusually early age.
- A rare disease is present in two or more family members.
- More than one type of cancer is present in any one person.
- The specific manifestation is associated with one or more genetic disorders (e.g., unusual freckling or skin pigmentation, bicuspid aortic valve, deafness).

The nurse may be the health care professional who first verifies information to bring a genetic problem to light. For example, during an assessment, a patient reveals that her mother died of bone cancer when she was 40 years old. Bone cancer is quite rare among adults; thus the nurse might then ask, Did your mother ever have any other type of cancer? Often the patient may then reveal that her mother had breast cancer some years before that (“bone cancer” was actually breast cancer that had spread to the bones). Breast cancer at an early age can indicate a genetic predisposition.

Patients may ask questions that indicate they have an interest in genetic testing. These are examples of questions that may be cues that the patient has genetic concerns:

- Will my children get this disease?
- Because my sister has this problem, what are the chances I might also develop it?
- Is there a way to test and see whether my chances of getting this disease or problem are high or low?

Areas of responsibility for any medical-surgical nurse in working with a patient who is considering or having genetic

testing include communication, privacy and confidentiality, information accuracy, patient advocacy, and support.

Communication

Act as a patient advocate by ensuring that communication between the patient and whoever is providing the genetic information is clear. First, assess the patient’s ability to receive and process information. Can the patient see and hear clearly, or are assistive devices needed? Does the patient understand English, or will an interpreter be needed? Does the patient have adequate cognition at the time of meeting with the genetic professional, or is it impaired by medication, disease, anxiety, or fear?

If the patient appears not to understand terms or jargon during a discussion between him or her and a genetic professional, ask the professional to use common terms and examples for the patient. Verify with the patient that he or she understands or does not understand.

After any discussion about genetic risk or genetic testing, assess the patient’s understanding of what was said. Ask the patient to explain, in his or her own words, what the issue means and what his or her expectations are.

Privacy and Confidentiality

All conversations regarding potential diagnoses or genetic testing need to occur in a private environment. The patient has the right to determine who may be a part of the discussion. The patient can decide to exclude his or her primary physician and any family member from the discussion with a genetic professional. It is important that health care professionals who may be present during such discussion do not disclose information, formally or informally, without the patient’s permission. It is the nurse’s responsibility to protect this information from improper disclosure to family members, other health care professionals, other patients, insurance providers, or anyone not specified by the patient.

Information Accuracy

Correct myths about genetic disorders, and teach patients about the nature of genetic testing. In addition, help patients find accurate and helpful resource materials or websites. Medical-surgical nurses are not genetics experts and would not be expected to be the final source of definitive information; however, they can help ensure that the patient is referred to the correct level of genetic counseling. If you are present during the patient’s discussions with a genetics professional, assess whether the patient understands the issues regarding his or her health problem.

Patient Advocacy and Support

Ensure that the patient’s rights are not neglected or ignored. Ask the patient privately what his or her wishes are regarding genetic testing. Ask whether another person or agency is insisting on the testing. Remind the patient that he or she does not have to agree to be tested. Verify that he or she has signed an informed consent statement for the test.

Considering or having genetic testing is a stressful experience. The patient and family require strong support and may need help to find the best way to cope. Genetic testing should be performed only after genetic counseling has occurred and should be followed with an opportunity for more counseling.

Patients may feel anger, depression, guilt, or hopelessness. Patients who have positive results (results that indicate a specific mutation is present) from genetic testing may have issues of role changes, risk for early death or disability, and the possibility of having passed the risk for a health problem on to their children. Patients who have an ambiguous test result or one of unknown significance may feel that they have agonized over a decision, spent money, and still have no clear answer or direction. Even patients who have negative genetic test results (results that indicate a specific gene mutation is not present) need counseling and support. Some patients may have an unrealistic view of what a negative result means for their general health. Others may feel guilty that they were “spared” when other family members were not.

Assess the patient’s response to genetic test results. Ask about how he or she may have used coping mechanisms in the past. If the patient has disclosed information to family members, assess whether they can help provide patient support or need support themselves. Assess whether the information about positive test results has strained family relationships. Refer the patient to appropriate support groups and general counseling services.

For some positive genetic test results, such as having a *BRCA1* gene mutation, the risk for developing breast cancer

is high but is not a certainty. Because the risk is high, the patient should have a plan for prevention and risk reduction. One form of prevention is early detection. Thus a patient who tests positive for a *BRCA1* mutation should have at least yearly mammograms and ovarian ultrasounds to detect cancer at an early stage when it is more easily cured. Teach the patient who has positive test results that indicate an increased risk for a specific health problem about the types of screening procedures that are available and how often screening should occur. For example, some patients at known high genetic risk for breast cancer and ovarian cancer choose the primary prevention methods of bilateral prophylactic mastectomies (surgical removal of the breasts) and oophorectomies (surgical removal of the ovaries). Although these strategies are severe, they are effective and the patient should be informed about their availability.

In addition to increased screening, teach patients at known high genetic risk for a specific disorder how to modify the environment to reduce risk. For example, a patient who has a specific mutation in the *α1AT* (alpha₁-antitrypsin) gene is at increased risk for early-onset emphysema. The onset of emphysema is even earlier when the patient smokes or is chronically exposed to inhalation irritants. By modifying his or her environment, the disease can be delayed or the symptoms reduced.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Determine whether an informed consent statement was obtained before any genetic test is performed.
- Keep all patient and family information regarding genetic testing confidential.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients and families at increased genetic risk for disease or disorder.
- Teach patients and families at known increased risk for disease or disorder what types of screening procedures and schedules are most appropriate (check specific disorder chapters for the appropriate screening guidelines).
- Teach patients and families at known increased risk for disease or disorder what types of environmental modifications can reduce risk, delay disease onset, or reduce symptom severity (check specific disorder chapters for appropriate modifications).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess patients who have received results of genetic testing for responses such as anger, guilt, or depression.

- Allow the patient and family who have been identified as being at increased genetic risk for serious health problems to express concerns and feelings.
- Ensure that the patient who undergoes genetic testing is appropriately counseled before testing, while waiting for test results, and after test results are obtained.

Physiological Integrity

- DNA, genes, and chromosomes are different forms of the same substance.
- All human cells with a nucleus contain all the genes.
- Every time a cell divides, it must replicate its DNA.
- The normal human chromosome number is 46.
- The purpose of a gene is to serve as the instructions for making a specific protein.
- Mutations can change the activity of a protein and have adverse effects on health.
- Many common adult diseases or disorders have a genetic basis (hypertension, diabetes, cancer) although some of these diseases also may occur among people with no genetic risk.
- Having a gene for a disorder does not necessarily mean that the disorder will ever develop.
- Genetic testing reveals information about the patient and his or her family members.

Evidence-Based Practice in Medical-Surgical Nursing

Rona F. Levin and Fay Wright



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

1. Define evidence-based practice (EBP).
2. Describe the process of how best current evidence is used to make clinical decisions.
3. Explain how to use an EBP approach to identifying a clinical problem, issue, or challenge.
4. Formulate a focused clinical question about clinical practice.
5. List the steps of how to perform a systematic literature review to answer clinical questions.
6. Briefly describe two models of EBP.
7. Explain the steps of the evidence-based practice improvement (EBPI) model.
8. Discuss how the EBPI model can be used to guide a clinical practice improvement project.

OVERVIEW

All health care professionals need to understand and use an evidence-based practice (EBP) approach to practice. In 2003, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) published a report entitled *Health Professions Education: A Bridge to Quality*. That report contained the following mandate: “All health professionals should be educated to deliver patient-centered care as members of an interdisciplinary team, emphasizing evidence-based practice, quality improvement approaches and informatics” (p. 3).

In 2010, the IOM in partnership with the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation published *The Future of Nursing: Leading Change, Advancing Health* (Institute of Medicine, 2010). Among the four major recommendations is “Nurses should be full partners, with physicians and other health care professionals, in redesigning health care in the United States” (p. 3). The specifics of this recommendation include the need for nurses to be prepared to be full partners in health care improvement efforts. Aspects of this role include “taking responsibility for identifying problems and areas of system waste, devising and developing improvement plans, [and] tracking improvement over time ...” (p. 3).

Definitions of Evidence-Based Practice

According to several nursing experts and the Quality and Safety Education for Nurses (QSEN), EBP incorporates the best current evidence with the expertise of the clinician and the patient’s values and preferences to make a decision about health care (Levin & Lane, 2006; Melnyk & Fineout-Overholt, 2011). This definition was based on the work of Sackett et al. (2000), who had proposed three components of EBP—best evidence, clinical expertise, and patient values and preferences—as part of the definition of evidence-based medicine.

Ervin (2002) proposed this definition of EBP for nursing: “Evidence-based nursing practice is practice in which nurses make clinical decisions using the best available research and other evidence that is reflected in approved policies, procedures, and clinical guidelines in a particular healthcare agency” (p. 12). DiCenso et al. (2005) further extended this definition to include information about the patient’s clinical state and the setting or circumstances in which health care is being provided.

The EBP process is collaborative and involves all members of the health care team. This model is shared by many health

care professions and is not unique to nursing. Therefore, although other professions might refer to the model as evidence-based medicine (EBM) or evidence-based social work similar to how DiCenso et al. (2005) specified the practice of nursing, the authors of this text refer to the model as EBP.

Steps of the Evidence-Based Practice Process

The process of EBP is systematic and includes several steps as presented by Sackett et al. (2000) in the context of practicing and teaching medicine.

1. Asking “burning” clinical questions
2. Finding the very best evidence to try to answer those questions
3. Critically appraising and synthesizing the relevant evidence
4. Making recommendations for practice improvement
5. Implementing accepted recommendations
6. Evaluating outcomes

Asking “Burning” Clinical Questions

Clinical questions are derived when clinicians do not have all the information they need to make the best possible decisions about patient care. A “burning” clinical question is one that usually arises in daily practice or when attending a class or reading a professional journal. The question may arise in relation to an individual patient, a group or population of patients, or a patient care unit or larger organizational area. An example of an *individual* patient question that a nurse might ask is, My older hospitalized patient who has been placed on fall precautions fell in the bathroom. What else could I have done to prevent this patient from falling, and what can I do to prevent her from falling in the future? At a *group or population* level, the nurse might ask, What are current best practices for assessing in the hospital patients’ risk for falls, and/or what are best practices for fall prevention in patients who are at risk for falls? At a *unit or organizational* level, the question might be, Is the current policy and procedure for assessing patients’ risk for falls and for implementing preventive practices based on the best available evidence?

Once you critically think about and pose a question about clinical practice, you will need to find out at what level the question needs to be answered (i.e., at the individual patient level, patient population level, or organizational level). If the latter two levels are where the problem exists, then begin to gather background information from the literature and internal evidence from your organization to describe the problem more fully (Levin et al., 2010).

One way you can begin to use EBP in your practice is to review the policy and procedure for a specific nursing practice in your clinical setting and determine what type of evidence was used as the basis for that policy and procedure. Does the protocol list references? What types of references are cited?

Once you have described the clinical practice problem and can focus on exactly what concerns you have, ask yourself whether the question is a *background* or a *foreground* question. A *background* question usually asks for a fact, a statement on which most authorities or experts would agree. For example, What is the etiology of congestive heart failure? What are the most frequently prescribed analgesics for the management of postoperative pain? The answers to these

types of questions can usually be found in a textbook and are not controversial. A *foreground* question, on the other hand, usually asks a question of relationship and may be controversial. An example of this type of question is, What are the most effective interventions for treating venous leg ulcers?

Qualitative Versus Quantitative Questions. If you are asking a foreground question, develop a more specific, detailed clinical question to guide your search for evidence. The two types of clinical questions are qualitative and quantitative. A **qualitative question** focuses on the meanings and interpretations of human phenomena or experience of people and usually analyzes the content of what a person says during an interview or what a researcher observes. Examples of qualitative questions are:

- What is the experience of having cancer like for young adults?
- How do older women respond to a residential move to assisted-living facilities?
- What are the differences in nurses’ work culture between acute care and home care agencies?

A **quantitative question** asks about the relationship between or among defined, measurable phenomena and includes statistical analysis of information that is collected to answer a question. Examples of quantitative questions are:

- What is the effect of using a new assessment tool to predict the likelihood of falling to frequency and severity of falls in patients undergoing hip replacement?
- What is the effect of hydrocolloid dressings compared with silver-impregnated dressings on the rate of wound healing in patients with postsurgical incision wounds?

PICO(T) Format. Nursing authors suggest framing clinical questions in a PICO (Cullum et al., 2008; Levin & Lane, 2006) or PICO(T) format. The PICO(T) format is outlined in [Table 7-1](#). The major components of a focused clinical question are the **population**, **intervention**, **comparison**, and **outcome**, with an added **time** component when appropriate.

The *population* indicates the specific group of patients to whom the question applies. This component is important because evidence that may support an intervention with one group of patients may not apply to another group of patients. For example, a fall prevention program for older adults who live at home may be very different from a fall prevention program for patients who attend a rehabilitation program. Be sure to think about the age, gender, ethnicity/race, and disorder to narrow your population of interest.

The *intervention* component pertains to the therapeutic effectiveness of a new treatment and may include (1) exposure to disease or harm, (2) a prognostic factor, or (3) a risk behavior or factor (e.g., the need for toileting to help prevent falls) (Melnik & Fineout-Overholt, 2005). For example, one might compare a group of smokers to a group of nonsmokers to determine the relationship of smoking to bladder cancer.

The *comparison* component of the clinical question may be either the standard or current treatment or may be another intervention with which the innovative practice is compared. In the case of prognostic questions, the comparison may consider another factor or potential influence that could affect the outcome of the patient’s health. A preventive question might examine the absence of the risk factor as the comparison; for example, the need for toileting compared with no need for toileting to prevent falls.

TABLE 7-1 EXAMPLES OF COMPONENTS OF PICO(T) QUESTIONS IN RELATION TO TYPE OF QUESTION

	THERAPY	ETIOLOGY	DIAGNOSIS	PREVENTION	PROGNOSIS	MEANING
Population						
Intervention						
Comparison						
Outcome						
Time						

The *outcome* component specifies the measurable and desired outcomes of your practice innovation, diagnosis, or prevention intervention. Outcomes may include measures of the results of an intervention (e.g., patients' perception of pain, number of days spent in a hospital, or need for rehabilitative services). Or your outcome might focus on the sensitivity and specificity of a diagnostic test or nursing assessment tool (e.g., what is the best tool for assessing the risk for patient falls on an orthopedic unit?).

Fineout-Overholt and Stillwell (2011) advocated adding a *time* component or time frame to the focused clinical question. The question may include specifying within what time period one would expect the outcome(s) to occur. An example of a completed PICO(T) question is, What is the effect of adding hourly rounding to the standard falls protocol for the geriatric unit (patients 65 years or older) in hospital Y on the process of care provision (to be more specifically defined) and the outcomes of rate of falls, fall morbidity, and clinician satisfaction within a 3-month period?

Arriving at the focused clinical question is not an easy task, even for seasoned clinicians. Defining the specific question requires these three steps—identifying the problem, clarifying the problem, and focusing the question (Levin & Lane, 2006).

Finding the Best Evidence

Finding the best available evidence to answer a focused clinical question has been a challenge for clinicians and health care agencies. The major barrier that prevents nurses from engaging in evidence-based practice is lack of time. Other barriers include:

- Lack of value for research in practice
- Lack of understanding of organization or structure of electronic databases
- Difficulty accessing research materials
- Lack of computer skills
- Difficulty understanding research articles.

The health care system is addressing these challenges in many settings to improve the safety and quality of patient care. Many hospitals and community health care agencies are involved in promoting evidence-based practices and projects to reach national safety goals. An example of how staff nurses are essential contributors and collaborators on such projects is presented at the end of this chapter in the "Application of the EBPI Model to Clinical Practice" section.

Levels of evidence refers to the status or rank of evidence. Most evidence hierarchies are pyramids with the highest level of evidence at the top (Fig. 7-1). The type of evidence needed depends on the nature of the clinical question—Is the question quantitative or qualitative? For example, if you are asking about the effectiveness of different types of compression

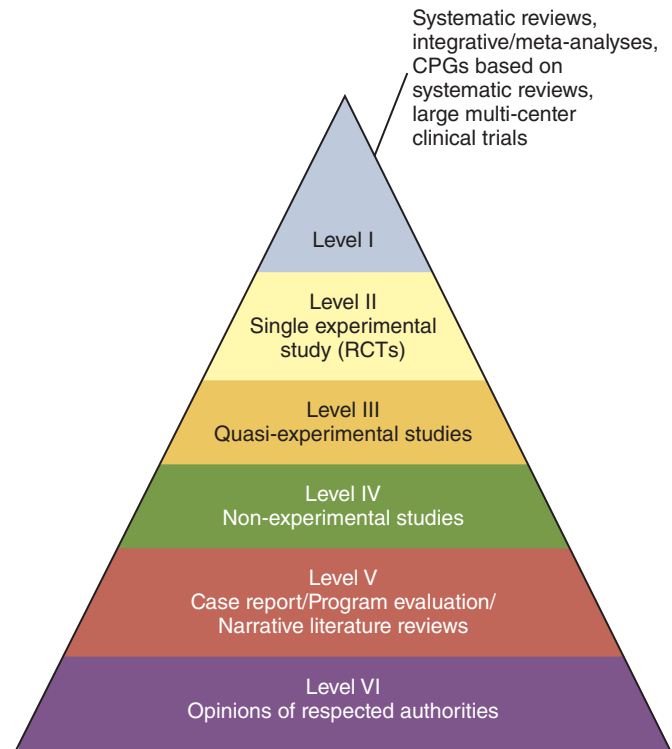


FIG. 7-1 Pyramid of evidence for questions of therapy. CPGs, Clinical practice guidelines; RCTs, randomized controlled trials.

bandages on healing of venous leg ulcers, you would want to *measure* the change in size of the ulcer as one indication of healing (*quantitative*). On the other hand, you might be interested in what the experience of having a chronic venous ulcer is like for women (*qualitative*). Each type of question requires different types and sources of evidence to find an answer. Table 7-2 provides an internationally accepted hierarchy for qualitative levels of evidence.

A preliminary evidence search entails identifying whether quality clinical practice guidelines (CPGs) exist to answer the clinical question. A **clinical practice guideline** is an "official recommendation" based on evidence to diagnose and/or manage a health problem (e.g., pain management). If these guidelines are of high quality and they contain the answer to your question, the search may be complete (Levin et al., 2007).

If the guidelines do not provide a sufficient answer to your question and/or they are not based on high quality evidence, you need to search the "Fantastic Four" databases:

- Cochrane Library of Systematic Reviews
- Joanna Briggs Institute (JBI) systematic reviews

- Medline (or PubMed)
- Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL)

Other databases may also contain a wealth of information depending on the nature of the question. For example, if you are asking a psychological question about the best way to help patients deal with anxiety, then PsycINFO would be a good source. The instructional or health sciences librarian at the local college/university or clinical agency can assist in finding the best current evidence to answer your question. In some cases, you may need to revise the search if the original terms used did not access relevant citations. Table 7-3 provides a template that you can use for any evidence search that you undertake.

If a continued literature search is needed for *quantitative* clinical questions, start with looking for the top level of evidence (i.e., systematic reviews, clinical practice guidelines based on top level evidence, and/or randomized or multi-site clinical trials) (see Fig. 7-1). If searching for answers to *qualitative* questions, look first for meta-analyses or meta-syntheses. The major purpose of providing systematic reviews of evidence on a topic is so that busy clinicians will not have to spend many hours finding original single studies and then reviewing, critiquing, and synthesizing each study's evidence. In some cases, evidence summaries are available (Table 7-4). Fig. 7-2 provides a guide for conducting a systematic evidence search.

Critically Appraising and Synthesizing Evidence

The key to this step is a collaborative team effort. One effective strategy is to have each member of an EBP team take responsibility for summarizing and critically appraising a select number of articles (depending, of course, on the

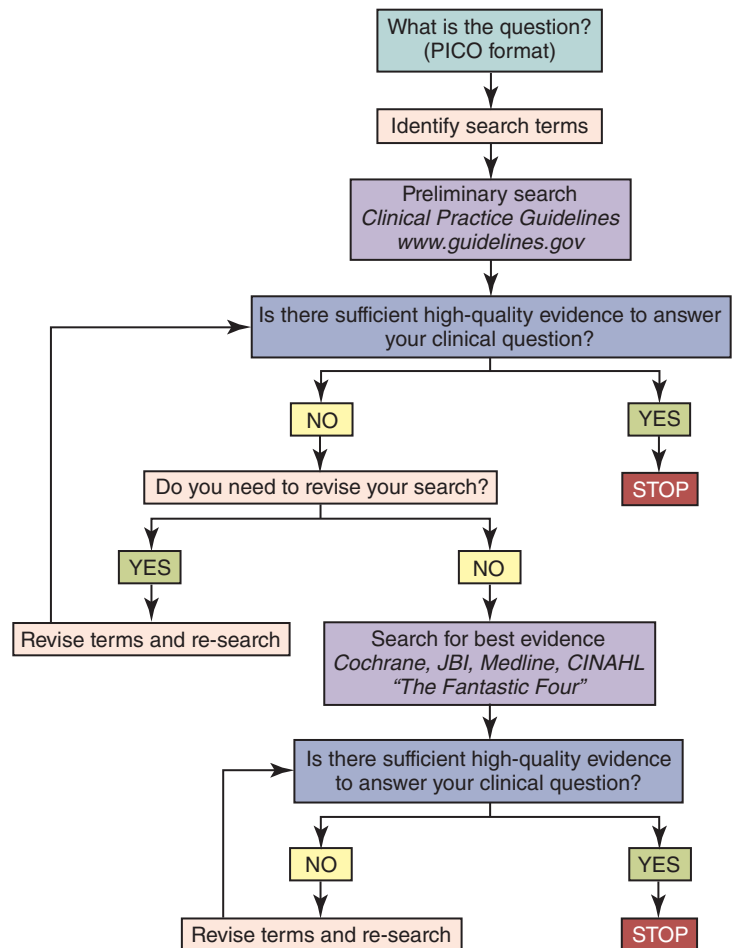


FIG. 7-2 Algorithm for systematic review of the published evidence. CINAHL, Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature.

TABLE 7-2 JBI LEVELS OF QUALITATIVE EVIDENCE FOR MEANINGFULNESS*

LEVEL OF EVIDENCE	MEANINGFULNESS M (1-4)
1	Meta-synthesis of research with unequivocal synthesized findings
2	Meta-synthesis of research with credible synthesized findings
3	a. Meta-synthesis of text/opinion with credible synthesized findings b. One or more single research studies of high quality
4	Expert opinion

*From Joanna Briggs Institute. (2008). *Reviewer's manual*. Adelaide, Australia: Author.

TABLE 7-4 SOURCES FOR PRE-APPRAISED EVIDENCE GUIDELINES/SUMMARIES

PUBLISHER	WEBSITE
BMJ Clinical Evidence	www.clinicalevidence.com
DynaMed	www.ebscohost.com/dynamed
USPSTF Guidelines	www.ahrq.gov/clinic/prevenix.htm
AHRQ Evidence Reports	www.ahrq.gov/clinic/epcix.htm

For additional sources of evidence syntheses and summaries go to <http://healthlinks.washington.edu/ebp/ebpools.html>.
BMJ, British Medical Journal; USPSTF, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force; AHRQ, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality.

TABLE 7-3 EXAMPLE OF A SEARCH STRATEGY TABLE WITH HYPOTHETICAL DATA

DATABASE	KEY WORDS	DATE RANGE	PEER REVIEWED	# OF CITATIONS	# RETRIEVED	# USED
Medline (PubMed)	Pain Postoperative Behavioral Assessment Scale	2002-2010	All	5	3	0
CINAHL	Pain Postoperative Behavioral Pain Scales	2000-2010	All	13	2	2

number of relevant articles your search revealed) and then presenting the review to all team members. This helps clarify, extend, and come to consensus on what the best evidence is to answer the clinical question.

Making Recommendations to Improve Practice

Once you have reviewed and critically appraised all the relevant evidence, you are ready to make practice recommendations in a written report to whoever needs to review them for potential approval. The clinical application at the end of the chapter illustrates this process.

Implementing Recommendations

This step is perhaps the most exciting and energizing component of an EBP project. After all the hard work of focusing the practice problem, critically appraising the evidence, and getting practice recommendations approved, the protocol and implementation plan can be developed. This plan should improve practice, patient outcomes, and the desired outcomes of the system (e.g., cost savings). Approaches to implementation are varied. Examples of models to guide EBP projects are presented in the next section of this chapter.

Keep in mind that the process of implementation needs to be systematic, shared, and consistent. That is, the implementation protocol has to be followed strictly so that any outcomes that are achieved are actually based on the new EBP innovation being implemented. Therefore complete buy-in from the people who will be involved in implementing the new practice is essential.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice; Quality Improvement; Safety

An 82-year-old alert and oriented woman was admitted with a diagnosis of congestive heart failure. She also has urinary frequency. You notice on her chart that she is a “high falls risk.” Over 70% of patients on your unit are also at high risk for falls. The written policy and procedure for fall prevention at your hospital states that patients at risk for falling should have:

- Their health care record flagged with a green star
- A green star placed on their room or bed
- A bed alarm installed
- Their siderails up at all times, except when a visitor, nurse, or nursing assistant is present

The patient felt the urge to urinate and pressed her call light. Someone on the intercom told her that she would assist her shortly. After 15 minutes, the patient had to make a decision to either urinate in bed or climb over the siderails to go to the bathroom. She decided to climb over the siderails and fell. The bed alarm went off after she left the bed.

1. Considering that over 70% of patients admitted to your unit are flagged as “at risk for falls,” how do you think the nurses decide that a patient is at risk for falling? Are they using valid, reliable, sensitive, and specific assessment tools to make this determination?
2. In a population of inpatient older adults, what factors can predict patient falls with a high degree of accuracy?
3. Does the best available evidence support the use of bed alarms as an intervention that prevents falls in inpatient adults of any age?
4. In a population of adult inpatients, what are the factors that have been shown by research to be the most predictive of falls?
5. What interventions have been shown to decrease the fall rates in acute care institutions with this population?

Evaluating Outcomes

Evaluating outcomes requires valid and reliable measurement tools. For example, if the clinical question is evaluating the effect of music therapy on reducing postoperative abdominal pain, then a tool to measure pain intensity and quality would be used. Many of these tools are cited in the literature and can be used without permission. Others require that permission be obtained in writing. Be sure to determine whether permission is needed before you use any measurement tool.

MODELS AND FRAMEWORKS FOR IMPLEMENTING EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Several authors have attempted to develop models or conceptual frameworks to facilitate an understanding of the complex process of introducing evidence-based improvement efforts (Rycroft-Malone & Bucknall, 2010). Each model highlights factors or processes that need to be considered when attempting to implement practice change.

Iowa Model

The major purpose of the Iowa model of EBP is to help health care professionals use evidence to improve patient outcomes. Originally developed as a model for research utilization, Titler revised and enhanced the model in 2010 to incorporate the elements of EBP. Important aspects of the current model include the (Titler, 2010):

- Triggers that lead to clinical questions
- Assessment of whether these questions are priorities for the health care organization
- Focus on forming a team to develop an EBP initiative
- General overview or steps for deciding about whether to implement and then adopt a change in practice

Reavy and Tavernier Model

Reavy and Tavernier (2008) developed a model and process to implement EBP that uses concepts from previously developed models (e.g., Stetler model, Iowa model) and builds upon them. The emphasis of the Reavy and Tavernier model is on the crucial role of the direct caregiver (e.g., the staff nurse) in making changes to enhance clinical practice. The authors of the model view the staff nurse as the clinical expert and believe that the expertise of a nurse researcher is needed to facilitate the EBP process by serving as a teacher, role model, and support nursing staff in identifying areas for improvement, assisting staff with literature reviews and synthesis of evidence, and helping with the implementation and evaluation of EBP projects. Reavy and Tavernier suggest that if a nurse researcher is not available in the practice setting, then a clinical nurse specialist, advanced practice nurse, or nurse manager might provide the needed support to staff nurses. Also included in this model is an emphasis on patient preferences and values, yet there is little explanation of the crucial role of patient as stakeholder in any practice improvement efforts. See Table 7-5 for a more detailed description of this model.

ARCC Model

The Advancing Research and Clinical Practice through Close Collaboration (ARCC) model of evidence-based practice was

TABLE 7-5 PROCESSES USED FOR IMPLEMENTATION OF THE REAVY AND TAVERNIER EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE MODEL FOR STAFF NURSES

	PATIENT VALUES AND PREFERENCES	STAFF NURSE/CLINICAL EXPERT	NURSE RESEARCHER/BEST AVAILABLE EVIDENCE
Assessment	Give verbal and nonverbal communication	Receive verbal and nonverbal messages (collect data)	
Identification and evaluation of problem		1. Identify problem(s) 2. Discuss potential interventions and outcome 3. Conduct literature search	Assist with literature search as needed
Analysis and synthesis of best available evidence		1. Analyze and critique best available evidence 2. Synthesize evidence	Assist with analysis and critique as needed
Planning		1. Assess feasibility of change 2. Define proposed change 3. Identify resources 4. Define desired outcome	
Implementation and evaluation	Receive nursing care based on best evidence	1. Design and implement peer teaching strategies 2. Implement change 3. Conduct pilot study 4. Evaluate findings 5. Decide to adopt or reject change 6. Communicate findings	1. Provide assistance with pilot study 2. Receive communication related to ideas for research
Integration and maintenance	Receive nursing care based on best evidence	1. Integrate into policies 2. Monitor process 3. Monitor outcomes 4. Communicate updates	Receive communication related to ideas for research

Data from Reavy, K., & Tavernier, S. (2008). Nurses reclaiming ownership of their practice: Implementation of an evidence-based practice model and process. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing*, 39(4), 166-172.

originally developed by Bernadette Melnyk in 1999 and has been enhanced by Melnyk and Fineout-Overholt over the past 10 years (Melnik & Fineout-Overholt, 2010). The current version of the model consists of several components and how they relate to each other. The major components of the model are:

- Organizational assessment and readiness to implement EBP
- Identification of strengths and barriers to EBP implementation
- Development and use of EBP mentors
- Implementation of EBP
- Measurement of nurse, system, and patient outcomes

Key to this model is the development and use of EBP mentors who teach, guide, and facilitate agency staff in the implementation and evaluation of evidence-based practices (Melnik & Fineout-Overholt, 2010).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE IMPROVEMENT (EBPI) MODEL

Steps of the EBPI Model

The EBPI model developed by Levin et al. from the Visiting Nurse Service of New York (Levin et al., 2010) combines the best of the EBP and PI/QI (process/quality improvement) systems into one approach for implementing practice improvement. The model is prescriptive and easy for guiding health care practitioners from any discipline and setting to achieve positive change. As depicted in Fig. 7-3, the model includes:

- The description of the practice problem
- The formulation of a focused clinical question (in PICO format)
- The search for evidence to answer the question
- The appraisal and synthesis of relevant evidence
- The development of an aim statement or project goal
- The development, implementation, and evaluation of the protocol for practice improvement
- The use of small tests of change or plan, do, study, act (PDSA) cycles to test methods
- The dissemination of best practices

Adopted from the process improvement approach is the idea of PDSA cycles or small tests of change (Langley et al., 2009). Many professionals in health care, business, and other fields implement what they believe is a good idea for an improvement on too-large a scale before they have perfected the new practice or even assessed how successful it may or may not be in their setting with their populations (patients or consumers). One of the most important benefits of small tests of change is that you have a chance to perfect the process or practice that you want to implement before disseminating and using the practice on a wide scale. Small tests of change for EBPI projects in health care are conducted with a small group of people (e.g., patients or staff) for a short period and may be repeated several times until the implementation protocol is perfected (Levin, 2009).

During small tests of change, it is helpful to use the concept of **PDSA** cycles to guide the activities.

- “P” stands for “plan” and is the first step in introducing a practice change. During this phase, a project team develops a protocol for implementation, which includes

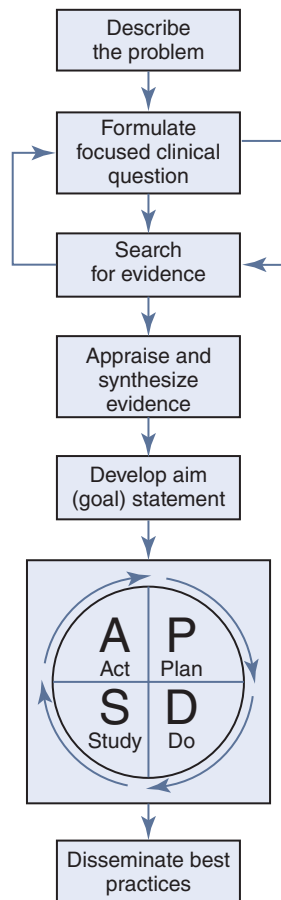


FIG. 7-3 The EBPI model.

not only the protocol or procedure for the practice innovation but also a total plan for the exact process that will be followed for implementing the project. It includes who will be administering the new practice, how it will be implemented, the time frame for implementation, and how the particular processes implemented for each small test of change will be evaluated.

- “D” stands for “do” and is the action-oriented phase of the process. The new innovation or a portion of it is tested according to the plan.
- “S” stands for “study” and refers to the review and analysis of data collected during the “do” phase of the cycle.
- “A” is the “analysis” and evaluation of results from the small test to guide decisions about how to proceed.

Decisions then need to be made about how to revise or refine the practice protocol and institute another small test of change to try out the refined protocol and/or whether the plan is worth continuing.

Application of the EBPI Model to Clinical Practice: A Case Study

Describe the Practice Problem

On an adult general surgical unit in a community hospital, the nursing staff identified that assessing patients’

postoperative pain with the current practice of using a numeric 10-point rating scale did not seem to be an effective assessment tool when the patient was lying quietly or appeared to be asleep. The nurses thought that to ask the restful patient to scale his or her pain refocused the patient on the pain and was not supportive of patient relaxation and pain relief. When this type of clinical observational pain assessment was performed, the nurse often did not chart the assessment in the medical record: How could the nurse label the level of pain on the scale when patient behaviors were used to assess pain? To document pain assessment and management in the patient’s health record, the nurse would make up a pain rating score. A nurse’s note could have been added to the medical record to describe pain behaviors the nurse identified as indicators that pain appeared to be decreasing and pain medication was working. However, the nurses on the unit did not write notes until the end of the shift. Thus the health record appeared as if no re-assessment had taken place and that the nurses were not following hospital policy.

The nurses on the unit identified that pain assessment needed to be improved for quality patient care. A small team of staff nurses who understand the EBP process was formed to lead the project to address the clinical concerns. The staff identified that the main focus of the problem was assessment of patients who were asleep or appeared asleep. Was there a reliable and valid method to assess pain by observing behaviors without disturbing the patient? The nurses identified that the numeric rating scale worked for most postoperative patients after the second postoperative day. The clinical concern was assessing and re-evaluating pain management within the first 24 hours after surgery when patients were tired and often asleep because of the remnants of anesthetic and being heavily medicated for pain.

A chart audit confirmed that the nursing staff consistently assessed and re-evaluated pain with the numeric rating scale on the second postoperative day. Pain was assessed according to standards 95% of the time. On the first day after surgery, the pain scale was documented only 12% of the time. Nurses’ notes to describe the patients’ pain were written only 60% of the time during the first postoperative day. Clearly, there was a problem documenting pain assessment on the first postoperative day.

No one doubted that the nurses assessed pain frequently and provided pain relief; however, only the administration of pain medication was documented. Pain assessments were not consistently charted and, from a legal standpoint, the pain assessment was not done. When the numeric pain scale was used, the nurses consistently met hospital standards for pain assessment and evaluation of pain relief. The chart audit showed that a new, easy-to-use tool that assessed pain behaviors was needed to improve the documentation of pain assessment.

Formulate a Focused Clinical Question

After conducting the chart audit, the EBP team defined the clinical problem and framed a PICO question to focus the literature search for evidence-based strategies to improve pain assessment. The PICO question developed was, In the adult hospitalized patient (P), does the implementation of a behavioral pain scale (I) compared with the use of a visual analog scale (C) improve the assessment and management of pain in patients on the first postoperative day (O)?

Search for Evidence

The EBP team went to the hospital library and accessed the CINAHL database. The initial search term used was “Pain Assessment.” This search provided 2934 article results for the years 1971 to 2010 (www.EBSCOHOST.com, retrieved August 30, 2010). No matter how many nurses worked on the project, it would be impossible to read and evaluate over 2000 articles. The team then remembered to use the PICO template as a guide to focus the search. Limits to narrow the search were added to request only articles for pain assessment or measurement in adults ages 19 years and older. Just limiting the articles by the age of the patient reduced the number of articles to 586 (www.EBSCOHOST.com, retrieved August 30, 2010). This was a more manageable number of articles but still a huge number to review from a practical standpoint. Articles from 2010 appeared on the first page of the search screen. The titles revealed many interesting yet varied article topics. The search retrieved articles that addressed pain assessment with culture and pain assessment methods for specific medical diagnoses. Yet articles that specifically addressed behavioral pain assessment tools were not immediately apparent in a list of 586 articles.

The team realized that using the PICO question keywords might help narrow the search to the specific topic of interest and to a manageable number of articles to review. Using the search options of “postoperative pain” and “clinical assessment tools,” the search engine revealed 117 articles for review (www.EBSCOHOST.com, retrieved August 30, 2010). The nurses then saved the complete search so that they could refer to the list and read other articles as they explored solutions to the PICO question.

The EBP team reviewed the search results and identified five articles that appeared to address the clinical question specifically. One article discussed the use of three evidence-based practices for postoperative pain assessment (Carlson, 2009). The nurses were intrigued by the title of this article—is it possible that the authors have already evaluated three different methods that address their specific clinical question and that it can be read in one article? Another article examined abdominal surgery patients’ pain management from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) to the surgical unit (Wilding et al., 2009). Since PACU-to-unit transition takes place during the early postoperative period, the time that pain assessment using current practice is a concern, this article seemed to address the PICO question. The third article identified behavioral pain indicators of postoperative pain with delirium (Decker, 2009).

Although the nurses did not specifically identify delirium as a concern, perhaps the behavioral pain tool discussed in the article could be applicable to other populations of patients besides those with delirium. The fourth article focused on pain assessment tools in the critical care unit (Hall, 2007). This article evaluated three pain assessment tools. Thus the nurses chose to review this article to see if any of the tools discussed could be used on the general surgical floor. Finally, the nurses chose to review an article discussing the Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators (CNPI) (Feldt, 2000) because this tool repeatedly appeared in the literature search. Even though the CNPI was developed to assess pain in cognitively impaired adults, the nurses thought that because many patients on the postoperative unit are older, the tool might be promising.

Appraise and Synthesize the Evidence

The team read the articles and completed tables of evidence (TOEs) so the information from the articles could be organized and discussed. The TOEs also helped the nurses systematically organize what they read in a consistent format for group discussion and analysis (Table 7-6). These tables were used as the group discussed their individual review of the articles, which included a summary of the evidence contained in the article, the strengths and limitations of the evidence, and potential application to their specific PICO question. As the nurses critically appraised the evidence, the group referred to the quantitative evidence pyramid in Fig. 7-1 to identify the level of evidence of each article. The colorful pyramid was posted during the discussion for ease of reference. Through dialog about each article, the authors’ methods, outcomes, and the limitations of the different tools to measure pain, the group rated the quality of the articles. This process was used to make an informed decision about the strength of the evidence before any practice recommendations could be made. The staff wanted to use the highest level of evidence possible to inform the practice change. The critical care article was identified as a level III quasi-experimental study and presented a description of a tool that was reported as “easy to use” and reliable for nonverbal patients (Hall, 2007). The staff returned to the literature search to find more information on one of the behavioral pain tools discussed in the same article.

Develop the Aim Statement

After reviewing the evidence to answer the focused clinical question, the nurses developed the following aim statement: Improve the frequency of nurses’ assessment of first-day postoperative pain from 12% to 70% after 2 weeks of introducing a new behavioral pain assessment tool.

Implement the PDSA Cycles

After the second search for evidence to answer the clinical question and additional review of the new evidence, the team of nurses **planned** to make a practice change. A small test of the utility of the tool needed to be performed to see if the nurses could accurately assess pain using the behavioral assessment tool and to determine its practicality for use. To evaluate the inter-rater reliability of the tool to determine if the nurses could consistently assess a patient’s pain in the same way with the same tool, three of the nurses used the tool simultaneously to assess pain in 10 postoperative patients (**Do**). The assessment results were compared and evaluated to identify whether the nurses were using the tool consistently (**Study**). This small test of change resulted in positive feedback from nurses as to the practicality of the tool, and inter-rater reliability was high (i.e., different nurses observing patients and assessing their pain at the same time using the new tool came up with consistently similar ratings of these patients’ pain).

The next step was to perform another small test of change (**Act**) to evaluate if nurses on the EBP team could use the pain assessment tool effectively in the clinical unit to improve patient pain assessment. The team used the tool for 1 week on all first-day postoperative patients. Patient records were monitored daily by the nurse educator and unit manager to evaluate the frequency of pain assessment. Because the team had the initial chart audit data, collecting the same data with

TABLE 7-6 SAMPLE ENTRY FOR A TABLE OF EVIDENCE

NORTHERN WESTCHESTER HOSPITAL DEPARTMENT OF PATIENT CARE SERVICES TABLE OF EVIDENCE					
PROJECT TITLE: PAIN ASSESSMENT			REVIEWER: F. WRIGHT		
DATE OF REVIEW: MAY 2009					
ARTICLE INFORMATION: AUTHORS, TITLE, DATE PUBLISHED, JOURNAL	SAMPLE CHARACTERISTICS AND SIZE	STUDY DESIGN, PATIENT SELECTION, EVIDENCE LEVEL/QUALITY RATING	INTERVENTION	AUTHORS' CONCLUSIONS	REVIEWER'S COMMENTS (STRENGTHS, LIMITATIONS, POTENTIAL PRACTICE CHANGE?)
Feldt, K. (2000). The Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators (CNPI). <i>Pain Management Nursing</i> , 1(1), 13-21.	88 Patients with surgical repair of hip fracture on third postoperative day 88% Women with a mean age of 83.2 yrs	Prospective comparison to determine if there were differences in observed pain behaviors between cognitively impaired and non-cognitively impaired adults. This is a test of validity of the CNPI instrument. Level III: quasi-experimental design	Patients' pain assessed using the Ferrell Pain Experience Interview, Visual Distress Survey, and the CNPI. Also, cognitive status assessed with the Mini-Mental State Examination. The CNPI was used to assess pain and compare the results with the other tools and compare the results between cognitively and non-cognitively impaired patients.	Initial CNPI instrument testing: good face validity; 93% inter-rater reliability; Kappa statistic was 0.625 to 0.819 ($p = .019$ to $.0057$). The cognitively and non-cognitively impaired groups' CNPI scores did not differ significantly in total scores. The cognitively impaired group had more pain behaviors identified at rest than the non-cognitively impaired group.	This was an initial test of the CNPI in cognitively impaired older adults. It seems to be reliable and simple to use. The CNPI seems to be most effective in non-cognitively impaired patients with more nursing assessment needed to follow up on assessment of patients at rest.

the new tool in use would help identify if the behavioral scale for assessment of pain was completed and documented more consistently than before the new scale was introduced. In addition, the EBP nurse team was able to develop a step-by-step process for use of the tool.

The next step in the EBPI implementation process was for the project team to educate the rest of the unit staff on all shifts about the evidence-based intervention—the behavioral pain assessment tool and the process for its use. The TOEs were summarized and discussed to provide the staff with concrete information about the new tool. The EBP nurse team demonstrated how the tool was used. A member of the project team pretended to be asleep in a bed as a patient so that the nurses could role-play how to perform the pain assessment with the proposed tool. Informational posters were placed on the unit and multiple copies were made of the tool for use during the small test of change. The unit secretaries were involved in the education since they were responsible for providing the tools and collecting them when they were completed.

For 2 weeks, the nursing staff used the new tool to assess the pain of first-day postoperative patients. The team reviewed patient charts daily and answered questions about the use of the tool and the documentation of the pain assessment. At the completion of this third small test of change, the team reviewed the chart audits and found that the unit nurses had appropriately documented pain assessment on the first postoperative day 85% of the time—a huge improvement! A short

questionnaire was distributed to the nursing staff to determine their feedback about the use and effectiveness of the tool. All unit staff found the new tool easy to use and expressed positive beliefs in its value. They also were very proud to have achieved an outcome that exceeded their outcome in the aim statement.

Disseminate Best Practices

Given the success the nurses achieved on this one postoperative unit with their small tests of change using PDSA cycles, they recommended the introduction of the new behavioral pain assessment tool to the Hospital Standards of Practice Committee. The Committee, consisting of a multidisciplinary team of nurses, physicians, pharmacists, and other health care professionals, was excited about the evidence-based practice improvement effort. They decided to pilot the new tool on all surgical units for 1 month to see if the same results could be achieved with wider dissemination. If the initial benchmark of 70% was achieved in the pilot, then the new protocol for assessment of pain on the first postoperative day would be instituted hospital-wide as the standard of practice. At completion of the pilot, the benchmark of 70% was achieved and the Committee voted to incorporate the new policy and procedure as standard practice.

All nurses who worked on surgical units, the operating suites, and PACU were educated about the new hospital standards for pain assessment. The plan for evaluation of the new practice was to conduct random patient record audits each

month for 6 months to determine whether the improvement effort continued after 6 months. The nurse educator and the EBP mentor worked with the initial EBP nurse team (three staff nurses) to submit an abstract for presentation at

an EBP conference. The Vice President of Patient Care Services agreed to pay all expenses for the five nurses who led the project to attend the conference if the abstract was accepted for presentation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points.

- Evidence-based practice (EBP) is a strategy for making clinical decisions about how we practice nursing and other health care professions.
- EBP incorporates the expertise of the clinician and the patient's values and preferences to make decisions about health care.
- The first step of the EBP process is to ask a clinical "burning" question using the PICO(T) format (see [Table 7-1](#)).
- Quantitative questions focus on the relationship among measurable phenomena and include statistical analysis of information.
- Qualitative questions focus on the meanings and interpretations of human phenomena or experiences of people using interview or observation.
- Levels of evidence refer to the status or rank of evidence (as shown in [Fig. 7-1](#) and [Table 7-2](#)).
- Examples of models of EBP include the Iowa model, Reavy and Tavernier model (see [Table 7-5](#)), and the evidence-based practice improvement (EBPI) model.
- When performing a literature search on current evidence to answer the clinical question, organize the data into a table of evidence like the one shown in [Table 7-6](#).
- When making changes based on findings from the literature, use PDSA cycles to test the changes on a small scale. PDSA stands for "Plan," "Do," "Study," and "Analyze."

Rehabilitation Concepts for Chronic and Disabling Health Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Identify the roles of each member of the interdisciplinary rehabilitation team.
2. Explain the importance of collaborating with members of the rehabilitation team when providing patient care.
3. Delegate and supervise selected nursing tasks as part of care for the rehabilitation patient.
4. Coordinate recommendations for home modifications with the patient, family, occupational therapist, and case manager.
5. Use safe patient handling practices based on current evidence to prevent self-injury.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

6. Develop a teaching plan to prevent complications for the rehabilitation patient who has impaired physical mobility.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Assess the patient's response to chronic or disabling health problems.
8. Identify special considerations for older adults undergoing rehabilitative care.

Physiological Integrity

9. Interpret health assessment findings to plan appropriate collaborative care for the rehabilitation patient.
10. Assess the ability of patients to use assistive/adaptive devices to promote functional ability.
11. Plan interventions to prevent skin breakdown for rehabilitation patients.
12. Differentiate retraining methods for a patient with a spastic versus flaccid bladder and bowel.
13. Explain the primary concerns for patients being discharged to home after rehabilitation.

A **chronic health problem** is one that has existed for at least 3 months. A **disabling health problem** is any physical or mental health/behavioral health problem that can cause disability. This text focuses on physical health problems; mental health/behavioral health problems are discussed in textbooks on mental health/behavioral health nursing.

Patients with chronic and disabling health problems often participate in rehabilitation programs to prevent further disability, maintain functional ability, and restore as much function as possible. The rehabilitation nurse collaborates with the nursing and health care team and coordinates the patient's interdisciplinary care.

OVERVIEW

Chronic and disabling illnesses are a major health problem in the United States, with almost half of the population having one or more chronic health problems. Complications of chronic disease account for the majority of all deaths, and associated medical costs account for over two thirds of the nation's health care cost. The rate of chronic and disabling conditions is expected to increase as more "baby boomers" approach late adulthood. Some people with chronic and disabling problems are in inpatient settings like rehabilitation centers and skilled nursing facilities, whereas others are managed at home.

Stroke, coronary artery disease, cancer, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), asthma, and arthritis are common chronic diseases that can result in varying degrees of disability. Most occur in people older than 65 years. Younger adults are also living longer with potentially disabling congenital or genetic disorders that, in the past, would have shortened life expectancy. These specific health problems are discussed throughout this text.

Chronic and disabling conditions are not always illnesses (e.g., heart disease); they may also result from accidents. Accidents are a leading cause of death among young and middle-aged adults. Increasing numbers of people survive accidents because of advances in medical technology and safety equipment such as motor vehicle air bags. As a result, they are often faced with chronic, disabling neurologic conditions, such as traumatic brain injuries (TBIs) and spinal cord injuries (SCIs).

These health problems are also common among military survivors who served in Iraq and Afghanistan. The most common complications of these wars are TBI and single or multiple limb amputations. These disabilities require months to years of follow-up health care after returning to the community. Because of people living longer with chronic and disabling health problems, the need for rehabilitation is on the rise.

A growing number of middle-aged and older adults have total joint replacements, most often hips and knees. Many of these patients need daily (5-day-a-week) rehabilitation in skilled or transitional care units, often within long-term care (LTC) settings such as nursing homes. Older adults generally do not want to be admitted to nursing homes. The nurse or case manager needs to explain that the nursing home stay will be short, ranging from 1 to 6 weeks depending on the patient.

Some facilities have dedicated units for patients having short-term rehabilitation. Others have devoted units to geriatric rehabilitation or ventilator weaning. Follow-up rehabilitation therapy three times a week can be continued at home or on an outpatient (ambulatory care) basis.

Concepts Related to Rehabilitation

Rehabilitation is the continuous process of learning to live with and manage chronic and disabling conditions, often those resulting from trauma. The main outcome of rehabilitation is that the patient will return to the best possible physical, mental, social, vocational, and economic capacity. Rehabilitation is not limited to the return of function in post-traumatic situations. It also includes education and therapy for any chronic illness characterized by a change in a body system function or body structure. Rehabilitation programs related to respiratory, cardiac, and musculoskeletal health problems are common examples that do not involve trauma.

After the acute condition or injury has been stabilized in a hospital, the patient may be discharged to continue the healing process at home, generally under the follow-up care of a nonhospital health care provider (e.g., a family physician). The nurse provides home care preparation, health teaching, psychosocial preparation, and information about various health care resources to help the patient resume his or her usual roles in society.

Some health problems require the intermediate step of rehabilitation (“rehab”), which can occur in a number of settings. Rehabilitation starts in the acute care hospital (sometimes called *acute rehabilitation*) and continues after discharge

from the hospital. The nurse coordinates care from acute care through community-based care to ensure successful rehabilitation.

For continuing rehabilitation services, the most common inpatient rehabilitation facilities (IRFs) are freestanding rehabilitation hospitals, rehabilitation or skilled units within hospitals (e.g., transitional care units [TCUs]), and skilled nursing facilities (SNFs) to which the patient is typically admitted for 1 to 3 weeks.

Ambulatory care rehabilitation departments and home rehabilitation programs may be needed for continuing less-intensive services. Some agencies have specialized clinics focused on rehabilitation of patients with specific health problems, such as those that care for patients with strokes; amputations; and large, chronic, and/or non-healing wounds. After disabled patients become more confident and independent, they may choose to live at home or in a group home. Group homes are facilities in which patients live independently together with other disabled adults. Each patient or group of patients has a care provider, such as a personal care aide, to assist with ADLs and decisions requiring accurate judgments. The patients may or may not be employed. The purpose of these centers is to provide independent living arrangements outside an institution, especially for younger patients with TBI or SCI.

The Rehabilitation Team

Successful rehabilitation depends on the coordinated effort of a group of the patient, family, and health care professionals in planning, implementing, and evaluating patient-centered care. The focus of the rehabilitation team is to restore and maintain the patient’s function to the extent possible.

In addition to the patient, family, and/or significant others, members of the interdisciplinary health care team in the rehabilitation setting may include:

- Physicians
- Nurses and nursing assistants
- Physical therapists and assistants
- Occupational therapists and assistants
- Speech-language pathologists and assistants
- Rehabilitation assistants/restorative aides
- Recreational or activity therapists
- Cognitive therapists or neuropsychologists
- Social workers
- Clinical psychologists
- Vocational counselors
- Spiritual care counselors
- Registered dietitians (RDs)

Not all settings that offer rehabilitation services have all of these members on their team. Not all patients require the services of all health care team members.

A physician who specializes in rehabilitative medicine is called a **physiatrist**. Most inpatient rehabilitation settings employ physiatrists. A primary care physician may also oversee care for the patient’s medical problems.

Rehabilitation nurses in the inpatient setting coordinate the efforts of health care team members and therefore function as the patient’s case manager. Nurses also create a rehabilitation milieu, which includes (Pryor, 2010):

- Allowing time for patients to practice self-management skills
- Encouraging patients and providing emotional support

TABLE 8-1 NURSE'S ROLE IN THE REHABILITATION TEAM

- Advocates for the patient and family
- Creates a therapeutic rehabilitation milieu
- Provides and coordinates holistic patient care in a variety of health care settings, including the home
- Collaborates with the rehabilitation team to establish expected patient outcomes to develop a plan of care
- Coordinates rehabilitation team activities to ensure implementation of the plan of care
- Acts as a resource to the rehabilitation team having specialized knowledge and clinical skills needed to care for patient with chronic and disabling health problems
- Communicates effectively with all members of the rehabilitation team, including the patient and family
- Plans continuity of care when the patient is discharged from the health care facility
- Evaluates the effectiveness of the interdisciplinary plan of care for the patient and family

Adapted from Association of Rehabilitation Nurses. (2008). *Standards and scope of rehabilitation nursing practice*. Glenview, IL: Author.

- Protecting patients from embarrassment (e.g., bowel training)
- Making the inpatient unit a more homelike environment

Table 8-1 summarizes the nurse's role as part of the rehabilitation team. Because of an increase in the need for older adult rehabilitation, some nurses specialize in gerontologic rehabilitation (Association of Rehabilitation Nurses, 2008b). Nurses and other health care professionals may be designated as **rehabilitation case managers** in the home or in acute care settings. Case management is described in Chapter 1.

Physical therapists intervene to help the patient achieve self-management by focusing on gross mobility skills (e.g., by facilitating ambulation and teaching the patient to use a walker) (Fig. 8-1). They may also teach techniques for performing certain ADLs, such as transferring (e.g., moving into and out of bed), ambulating, and toileting, and can assist with cognitive retraining (often for patients with TBI). Physical therapy assistants (PTAs) may be employed to help the PT.

Occupational therapists work to develop the patient's fine motor skills used for ADL self-management, such as those required for eating, hygiene, and dressing. OTs also teach patients how to perform independent living skills, such as cooking and shopping. Many inpatient rehabilitation facilities have fully furnished and equipped apartments where patients can practice independent living skills in a mock setting under supervision. To accomplish these outcomes, OTs teach skills related to coordination (e.g., hand movements) and cognitive retraining (Fig. 8-2). Occupational therapy assistants (OTAs) may be available to help the OT.

Speech-language pathologists (SLPs) evaluate and retrain patients with speech, language, or swallowing problems. *Speech* is the ability to say words, and *language* is the ability to understand and put words together in a meaningful way. Some patients, especially those who have experienced a head injury or stroke, have difficulty with both speech and language. Those who have had a stroke also may have dysphagia (difficulty with swallowing). SLPs provide screening and testing for dysphagia. If the patient has this problem, the SLP recommends appropriate foods and feeding techniques.



FIG. 8-1 A physical therapist helping a patient ambulate with a walker.



FIG. 8-2 A registered occupational therapist working with a patient on improving hand strength.

Speech-language pathology assistants (SLPAs) may be employed to help the SLP.

PTs, OTs, and SLPs are collectively referred to as *rehabilitation therapists*. Assistants to PTs, OTs, and SLPs are called *rehabilitation assistants*. **Restorative aides**, usually in the nursing department, continue the rehabilitation therapy plan of care when therapists are not available. This model of care is common in long-term care settings, such as nursing homes.

Recreational or **activity therapists** work to help patients continue or develop hobbies or interests. These therapists often coordinate their efforts with those of the OT.

Cognitive therapists, usually neuropsychologists, work primarily with patients who have experienced head injuries with cognitive impairments. These therapists often use computers to assist with cognitive retraining.

Registered dietitians (RDs) may be needed to ensure that patients meet their nutritional needs. For example, for patients who need weight reduction, a restricted calorie diet can be planned. For patients who need additional calories or other nutrients, including vitamins, nutritionists can plan a patient-specific diet.

As their name implies, **nursing assistants** or **nursing technicians** assist in the care of patients. These members of the rehabilitation team are under the direct supervision of the registered nurse (RN) or licensed practical or vocational nurse (LPN or LVN).

Various counselors are helpful in promoting community reintegration of the patient and acceptance of the disability or chronic illness. **Social workers** help patients identify support services and resources, including financial assistance, and coordinate transfers to or discharges from the rehabilitation setting. **Clinical psychologists** also counsel patients and families on their psychological problems and on strategies to cope with disability. They may also perform a battery of cognitive assessments. **Spiritual counselors**, usually members of the clergy, specialize in spiritual assessments and care.

Vocational counselors assist with job placement, training, or further education. Work-related skills are taught if the patient needs to change careers because of the disability. If the patient has not yet completed high school, tutors may help with completion of the requirements for graduation.

Depending on the patient's health care needs, additional team members may be included in the rehabilitation program, such as the geriatrician, respiratory therapist, pharmacist, and prosthetist. Interdisciplinary team conferences for planning care and evaluating the patient's progress are held regularly with the patient, family members and significant others, and health care providers. The interdisciplinary patient record is shared and read by all team members.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Collect the history of the patient's present condition, any current drug therapy, and any treatment programs in progress. Begin by obtaining general background data about the patient and family. This information includes cultural practices and the patient's home situation. In collaboration with the occupational therapist, the nurse or case manager addresses the layout of the home. Together they discuss whether the physical layout at home, such as stairs or the width of doorways, will present a problem to the patient after discharge.

Assess the patient's usual daily schedule and habits of everyday living. These include hygiene practices, eating, elimination, sexual activity, and sleep. Ask about the patient's preferred method and time of bathing and hygiene activity. In assessing dietary patterns, note food likes and dislikes. Also, obtain information about bowel and bladder function and the normal pattern of elimination.

In assessing sexuality patterns, ask about changes in sexual function since the onset of the disability. The patient's current and previous sleep habits, patterns, usual number of hours of sleep, and use of hypnotics are also assessed. Question whether the patient feels well rested after sleep. Sleep patterns have a significant impact on activity patterns. The assessment of activity patterns focuses on work, exercise, and recreational activities.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults who need rehabilitation often have other chronic diseases that need to be managed, including diabetes mellitus, coronary artery disease, osteoporosis, and arthritis. These health problems added to the normal physiologic changes associated with aging predispose the older adult to falls, pressure ulcers, and pneumonia. When discharged from a hospital setting, some older patients are undernourished, which causes weakness and fatigue. The longer the hospital stay, the more debilitated the older adult can become.

Health teaching may be challenging because some older patients may have beginning cognitive changes, including short-term memory loss. Sensory losses, like vision and hearing, also affect their ability to give an accurate history or grasp new information.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Upon admission for baseline and every day thereafter according agency policy and type of setting, collect the physical assessment data systematically according to major body systems (Table 8-2). The focus of the assessment related to

TABLE 8-2 ASSESSMENT OF PATIENTS IN REHABILITATION SETTINGS

BODY SYSTEM	RELEVANT DATA
Cardiovascular system	Chest pain Fatigue Fear of heart failure
Respiratory system	Shortness of breath or dyspnea Activity tolerance Fear of inability to breathe
Gastrointestinal system and nutrition	Oral intake, eating pattern Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting Dysphagia Laboratory data (e.g., serum prealbumin level) Weight loss or gain Bowel elimination pattern or habits Change in stool (constipation or diarrhea) Ability to get to toilet
Renal-urinary system	Urinary pattern Fluid intake Urinary incontinence or retention Urine culture and urinalysis
Neurologic system	Motor function Sensation Perceptual ability Cognitive abilities
Musculoskeletal system	Functional ability Range of motion Endurance Muscle strength
Integumentary system	Risk for skin breakdown Presence of skin lesions

rehabilitation and chronic disease is on the functional abilities of the patient.

Cardiovascular and Respiratory Assessment. An alteration in cardiac status may affect the patient's cardiac output or cause activity intolerance. Assess associated signs and symptoms of decreased cardiac output (e.g., chest pain, fatigue). If present, determine when the patient experiences these symptoms and what relieves them. The physician may prescribe a change in drug therapy or may prescribe a prophylactic dose of nitroglycerin to be taken before the patient resumes activities. Collaborate with the physician and appropriate therapists to determine whether activities need to be modified.

For the patient showing fatigue, the nurse and patient plan methods for using limited energy resources. For instance, frequent rest periods can be taken throughout the day, especially before performing activities. Major tasks could be performed in the morning because most people have the most energy at that time.

A hindrance to rehabilitation for patients with cardiac disorders is fear, particularly for older adults. These patients may have survived a life-threatening experience (e.g., myocardial infarction) and may be so afraid of recurrence or death that they are unable or unwilling to resume any activity. They usually benefit from participation in a structured cardiac rehabilitation program. (See Chapter 40 for a complete description of cardiac rehabilitation.)

Ask the patient whether he or she has shortness of breath, chest pain, or severe weakness and fatigue during or after activity. *Determine the level of activity that can be accomplished without these symptoms.* For example, can the patient climb one flight of stairs without shortness of breath or does shortness of breath occur after climbing only two steps?

The fear associated with any inability to breathe normally can make a person dependent in many aspects of life. Some problems related to disorders of the respiratory system can be resolved or diminished, but some chronic diseases, such as emphysema, often continue to worsen.

Gastrointestinal and Nutritional Assessment. Monitor the patient's oral intake and pattern of eating. Also, assess for the presence of anorexia, dysphagia, nausea, vomiting, or discomfort that may interfere with oral intake. Determine whether the patient wears dentures and, if so, whether they fit. Review the patient's height, weight, hemoglobin and hematocrit levels, serum prealbumin, and blood glucose levels (see Chapter 63 for discussion of how to perform a nutritional assessment). Weight loss or weight gain is particularly significant and may be related to an associated disease or to the illness that caused the disability.

Bowel elimination habits vary from person to person. They are often related to daily job or activity schedules, dietary patterns, age, and family or cultural background. Elimination habits may be difficult to assess, because many nurses are hesitant to request (and many patients are afraid to volunteer) information pertaining to elimination. Ask about usual bowel patterns before the injury or the illness.

Note any changes in the patient's bowel routine or stool consistency. The most common problem for rehabilitation patients is constipation. In their classic best practice guidelines, the Association of Rehabilitation Nurses (2002) defines constipation as the passage of hard, dry stool less than 3 times a week or significant change in the patient's usual habits for

more than 3 months. Examples of important changes include abdominal fullness and bloating and straining when having a bowel movement.

If the patient reports any alteration in elimination pattern, try to determine whether it is due to a change in diet, activity pattern, or medication use. Bowel habits are always evaluated based on what is normal for that person.

Ask whether the patient can manage bowel function independently. Independence in bowel elimination requires cognition, manual dexterity, sensation, muscle control, and mobility. If the patient requires help, determine whether someone is available at home to provide the assistance. Also assess the patient's and family's ability to cope with any dependency in bowel elimination.

Renal and Urinary Assessment. Ask about the patient's baseline urinary patterns, including the number of times he or she usually voids. Determine whether he or she routinely awakens during the night to empty the bladder (nocturia) or has uninterrupted sleep. Record fluid intake patterns and volume, including the type of fluids ingested and the time they were consumed.

Question whether the patient has ever had any problems with urinary incontinence or retention. Also, monitor laboratory reports, especially the results of the urinalysis and culture and sensitivity, if needed. Urinary tract infections (UTIs) among older adults are often missed because acute confusion may be the only indicator of the infection. Many health care professionals expect older patients to be confused and may not detect this problem. If untreated, UTIs can lead to kidney infection and possible failure.

Neurologic and Musculoskeletal Assessment. In rehabilitation, the neurologic assessment includes motor function, sensation, and cognition. Assess the patient's pre-existing problems, general physical condition, and communication abilities. Patients may have dysphasia (slurred speech) because of facial muscle weakness or may have aphasia (inability to speak or comprehend), usually the result of a cerebral stroke or traumatic brain injury (TBI). These communication problems are discussed in detail in the unit on problems of the nervous system.

Determine if the patient has **paresis** (weakness) or **paralysis** (absence of movement). Observe the patient's gait. Identify sensory-perceptual changes, such as visual acuity, that could contribute to the patient's risk for injury. Assess his or her response to light touch, hot or cold temperature, and position change in each extremity and on the trunk. Identify levels of decreased sensation. For a perceptual assessment, the nurse evaluates the patient's ability to receive and understand what is heard and seen and the ability to express appropriate motor and verbal responses. During this portion of the assessment, begin to assess short-term and long-term memory.

Assess the patient's cognitive abilities, especially if there is a head injury or stroke. Several tools are available to evaluate cognition. One of the most common is the Mini-Mental State Examination, which is described in detail in Chapter 44.

As with other body systems, nursing assessment of the musculoskeletal system focuses on function. Assess the patient's musculoskeletal status, response to the impairment, and demands of the home, work, or school environment. Determine the patient's endurance level, and measure active and passive joint range of motion (ROM). Review the results of manual muscle testing by physical therapy, which identifies

the patient's ROM and resistance against gravity. In this procedure, the therapist determines the degree of muscle strength present in each body segment.

Skin Assessment. Identify actual or potential interruptions in skin integrity. To maintain healthy skin, the body must have adequate food, water, and oxygen intake; intact waste-removal mechanisms; sensation; and functional mobility. Changes in any of these variables can lead to rapid and extensive skin breakdown. If the patient cannot protect or maintain the skin, assess and plan for his or her needs.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be sure to remind unlicensed assistive personnel to report changes in the patient's skin promptly, including any new onset of redness. Assess the patient frequently to determine the risk for skin breakdown before it occurs! Older adults are at a very high risk for heel and sacral pressure ulcers.

Most rehabilitation settings use special skin assessment tools to identify patients at risk for skin breakdown. For example, the classic Braden Scale for Predicting Pressure Ulcer Risk (see [Chapter 27](#)) assesses several areas: sensory perception, skin moisture, activity level, nutritional status, and potential for friction and shear.

Other skin risk assessment tools are available. Some tools also include additional indicators of nutritional status, such as the serum prealbumin. When these levels are low, the patient is at high risk for pressure ulcers. Some tools include incontinence and altered mental state as risk factors.

If a pressure ulcer or other change in skin integrity develops, accurately assess the problem and its possible causes. Inspect the skin every 2 hours until the patient learns to inspect his or her own skin several times a day. Measure the depth and diameter of any open skin areas in inches or centimeters, depending on the policy of the facility. Assess the area around the open lesion to determine the presence of cellulitis or other tissue damage. [Chapter 27](#) includes several widely used classification systems for assessing skin breakdown. Determine the patient's knowledge about the cause and treatment of skin breakdown, as well as his or her ability to inspect the skin and participate in maintaining skin integrity.

In most health care agencies, a skin assessment and documentation tool ("skin sheet") is used to keep track of each area of skin breakdown. A baseline assessment is conducted on admission to the agency, and the form is updated periodically depending on the agency's policy and the nurse's judgment. In most long-term care, acute care, and rehabilitation settings, and with the patient's (or family's if the patient cannot communicate) permission, photographs of the skin are taken on admission and at various intervals for documentation.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

An 88-year-old woman is admitted for cardiac rehabilitation after an insertion of two coronary artery stents. While ambulating with her walker, the client reports chest pain. What is the nurse's first action?

- Take her heart rate and blood pressure.
- Stop her activity and provide a rest period.
- Call her health care provider immediately.
- Perform a stat electrocardiogram.

Functional Assessment

Functional ability refers to the ability to perform **activities of daily living (ADLs)**, such as bathing, dressing, feeding, and ambulating, and **independent living skills**, including using the telephone, shopping, preparing food, and housekeeping. These latter skills are sometimes referred to as **instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs)**. Functional assessment tools are used to assess a patient's abilities. Rehabilitation nurses, physiatrists, or rehabilitation therapists complete one or more of these assessment tools based on the patient's abilities and the policy of the health care setting.

One uniform data system used for outcome data collection across the United States is the Functional Independence Measure (FIM) developed by Granger and Gresham (1984). As a basic indicator of the severity of a disability, the FIM attempts to quantify what the person actually does, whatever the diagnosis or impairment. It does not measure what a person should do or how the person would perform under a different set of circumstances. To eliminate the bias of a particular discipline, the assessment may be performed by trained clinicians. The entire assessment may be performed by one person, or certain categories may be completed by professionals from various disciplines.

Categories for assessment are self-care, sphincter control, mobility and locomotion, communication, and cognition. Scoring is done with numbers that use predetermined criteria for measurement. The patient is evaluated when he or she is admitted to and discharged from a rehabilitation institution and at other specified times to determine progress. The FIM system has also been adapted for use in other health care settings, including acute care and home care, and is available in multiple languages.

In U.S. long-term care settings, the interdisciplinary Minimum Data Set (MDS) is used to assess patients (residents) in nursing homes. The resident's motor ability, sensation, and cognition are evaluated, as well as the overall health status. Similar to the FIM, all health care team members involved in the resident's care record their assessments on the MDS and the RN coordinates the comprehensive assessment.

Psychosocial Assessment

Assess the patient's body image and self-esteem through verbal indicators and descriptions of self-care. Encourage the family to allow the patient to perform as many functions as possible independently to build feelings of self-worth.

Assess the patient's use of defense mechanisms and manifestations of anxiety. To assess the patient's response to loss, ask him or her to describe feelings concerning the loss of a body part or function. Assess for the presence of any stress-related physical problem. Some patients have symptoms of depression, such as fatigue, a change in appetite, or feelings of powerlessness. See [Chapter 9](#) for a more thorough discussion of loss and grieving and [Chapter 3](#) for a brief description of depression among the older adult population.

Determine the availability of support systems for the patient. The major support system is typically the family or significant others. Patients who do not have these support systems are more likely to develop depression. Assess the patient's spiritual and/or religious needs, and refer to an appropriate health care team member as needed.

Vocational Assessment

To assist patients in maximizing functional status, encourage them to resume usual activities. Vocational counselors can help patients find meaningful training, education, or employment after discharge from the rehabilitation setting, if needed.

Patients in the United States should be informed about the Americans with Disabilities Act, which was passed by Congress in 1991 to prevent employer discrimination against disabled people. The employer must offer *reasonable* assistance to a disabled employee to allow him or her to perform the job. For example, if an employee has a severe hearing loss, the employer may need to hire an interpreter for sign language. Workers have a right to ask for special adaptations based on their disabilities.

The rehabilitation team assesses the cognitive and physical demands of the patient's job to determine whether he or she can return to the former job or whether retraining in another field is necessary. The physical demands of jobs range from light in sedentary occupations (0 to 10 lbs often lifted) to heavy (more than 100 lbs often lifted). The nurse must also consider other aspects of the job, such as mobility or senses required (e.g., hearing).

Job analysis also involves assessing the work environment of the patient's former job. Collaborate with the vocational counselor to determine whether the environment is conducive to the patient's return. Job modifications may be needed to accommodate the patient at work. If an injured worker requires vocational rehabilitation, refer him or her to vocational rehabilitation personnel to evaluate present skills and learn new skills for employment if needed. In most states, Workers' Compensation insurance helps support vocational rehabilitation.

ANALYSIS

Regardless of age or specific disability, these priority patient problems are common. Additional problems depend on the patient's specific chronic illness or disability.

1. Decreased physical mobility related to neuromuscular impairment, sensory-perceptual impairment, and/or chronic pain
2. Decreased functional ability related to neuromuscular impairment and/or perceptual or cognitive impairment
3. Risk for Impaired Skin Integrity related to altered sensation and/or altered nutritional state
4. Urinary incontinence or Urinary Retention related to neurologic dysfunction and/or trauma or disease affecting spinal cord nerves
5. Constipation related to neurologic impairment, inadequate nutrition, or decreased mobility

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Improving Physical Mobility

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with chronic illness or disability is expected to reach a level of physical mobility that allows him or her to function independently with or without assistive devices. In addition, the patient is expected to be free of complications of immobility.

Interventions. Most problems requiring rehabilitation relate to decreased physical mobility. For example, patients

with neurologic disease or injury, amputations, arthritis, and cardiopulmonary disease usually experience some degree of immobility. Coordinate care with physical and occupational therapists as the key rehabilitation team members in helping patients meet their mobility outcomes. Depending on the setting, patients initially spend 3 to 6 hours at least 5 days a week working in rehabilitation therapy departments to regain function and self-management skills.

Safe Patient Handling Practices. Before they learn to become independent, patients with decreased mobility in any health care setting or at home often need assistance with bed mobility and transfers, such as from a bed to a chair, commode, or wheelchair. Patients may not be able to bear full weight, have inadequate balance, and/or are very obese. For many years, nurses relied on "body mechanics" to prevent staff injury when moving patients or assisting them to move. This traditional, but outdated, approach was based on the belief that correct body positioning by staff members would protect them from the force of lifting and moving. For example, if the patient could not bear weight or did not have sufficient balance (e.g., quadriplegic spinal cord injury), nurses and therapists used a "bear hug" technique to lift the patient from bed to chair or back again. Obese patients were also lifted with multiple staff assistance.

Heavy lifting and dependent transfers by staff members have resulted in a very high incidence of **work-related musculoskeletal disorders (MSDs)**, most often chronic back injuries, which can be prevented. As a response to this costly problem, the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) recently published evidence-based guidelines for safe patient handling. Based on this document, the American Nurses Association, in partnership with NIOSH and the Veterans Health Administration, developed a curriculum for all nursing students and practicing nurses on how to safely handle and move patients in any health care setting or home environment. In collaboration with other health care team members, nurses assess patient mobility and use best practices for safe patient handling (SPH).

Because each patient has unique needs and characteristics, assess the patient's mobility level using a standardized tool to plan interventions for SPH. An example of an appropriate assessment tool for this purpose is shown in Fig. 8-3. Before moving the patient, assess his or her environment for potential hazards that could cause injury, such as a slippery or uneven floor.

Use these general SPH practices, and teach to staff members:

- Maintain a wide, stable base with your feet.
- Put the bed at the correct height—waist level while providing direct care and hip level when moving patients.
- Try to keep the patient or work directly in front of you to prevent your spine from rotating.
- Keep the patient as close to your body as possible to prevent reaching.

The Veterans Health Administration and many other health care systems follow a no-lift or limited-lift policy for all of their facilities due in large part to technology. That means that nurses and therapists either rely on the patient to independently move and transfer or use a powered, mechanical full-body lift that is either ceiling- or wall-mounted or

Assessment Tool and Care Plan for Safe Patient Handling and Movement

I. Patient's Level of Assistance

- ☐ Independent—Patient performs task safely, with or without staff assistance, with or without assistive devices.
☐ Partial Assist—Patient requires no more help than standby, cueing, or coaxing, or caregiver is required to lift no more than 35 lbs of a patient's weight.
☐ Dependent—Patient requires nurse to lift more than 35 lbs of the patient's weight, or patient is unpredictable in the amount of assistance offered. In this case, assistive devices should be used.

An assessment should be made before each task if the patient has a varying level of ability to assist because of medical reasons, fatigue, medications, etc. When in doubt, assume the patient cannot assist with the transfer/repositioning.

II. Weight-Bearing Capability

- ☐ Full
☐ Partial
☐ None

III. Bilateral Upper-Extremity Strength

- ☐ Yes
☐ No

IV. Patient's Level of Cooperation and Comprehension

- ☐ Cooperative—May need prompting; able to follow simple commands.
☐ Unpredictable or variable (patient whose behavior changes frequently should be considered unpredictable)—Not cooperative or unable to follow simple commands.

V. Weight _____ Height _____

Body Mass Index (BMI) (needed if patient's weight is over 300 lbs)*
If BMI exceeds 50, institute Bariatric Algorithms.

The presence of the following conditions is likely to affect the transfer/repositioning process and should be considered when identifying equipment and techniques needed to move the patient.

VI. Check Applicable Conditions Likely to Affect Transfer/Repositioning Techniques

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| ☐ Hip/knee/shoulder replacements | ☐ Respiratory/cardiac compromise | ☐ Fractures |
| ☐ History of falls | ☐ Wounds affecting transfer/positioning | ☐ Splints/traction |
| ☐ Paralysis/paresis | ☐ Amputation | ☐ Severe osteoporosis |
| ☐ Unstable spine | ☐ Urinary/fecal stoma | ☐ Severe pain/discomfort |
| ☐ Severe edema | ☐ Contractures/spasms | ☐ Postural hypotension |
| ☐ Very fragile skin | ☐ Tubes (IV, chest, etc.) | |

Comments: _____

VII. Appropriate Lift/Transfer Devices Needed

Vertical Lift:

Horizontal Lift:

Other Patient-Handling Devices Needed:

Sling Type

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| ☐ Seated | ☐ Seated (Amputee) | ☐ Standing |
| ☐ Supine | ☐ Ambulation | ☐ Limb Support |

Sling Size _____

Signature _____ Date _____

*If patient weighs more than 300 lbs, the BMI is needed. For online BMI table and calculator, see http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/obesity/bmi_tbl.htm.

FIG. 8-3 Example of a tool to assess physical mobility.

portable (mobile) (Fig. 8-4). Most lifts use slings that are comfortable, safe, and easy to apply. Electric-powered, portable sit-to-stand devices are also available.

In 2002, the U.S. government requested that nursing homes voluntarily use mechanical lifts rather than manual transfers. Instead of a no-lift policy, though, some long-term care facilities limit lifting to 35 pounds (15.9 kg). These changes involve intensive staff training and compliance to prevent staff injury. Mechanical lifts are also available for home use.

For patients who are learning to become independent in transfer or bed mobility skills, the physical or occupational therapist usually specifies the procedure for these maneuvers. For example, a quadriplegic patient may use a sliding board for transfer, whereas a paraplegic patient may need a wheelchair with removable arms. A patient still in bed may be taught to turn independently using the siderails. In any case, for safety, always plan or teach the patient to plan the transfer technique before initiating it. The desired outcome is that the patient will eventually be able to transfer independently and safely.

Basic techniques for teaching the patient how to transfer from a bed to a chair or wheelchair (and vice versa) are identified in Chart 8-1. Teach these techniques to the family member or other caregiver who will be supervising the patient at home. Additional information about transfers can be found in basic nursing textbooks.



FIG. 8-4 Example of powered, mechanical full-body lift.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Before any transfer, carefully observe for potential problems. Orthostatic, or postural, hypotension is a common problem in rehabilitation settings and contributes to falls, which are common for any patient with impaired mobility. If the patient moves from a lying to a sitting or standing position too quickly, his or her blood pressure drops; as a result, he or she becomes dizzy or faints. This problem is worsened by antihypertensive drugs, especially in older adults. To prevent this situation, help the patient change positions slowly, with frequent rest periods to allow the blood pressure to stabilize. If needed, measure blood pressure with the patient in the lying, sitting, and standing positions to examine the differences. Orthostatic hypotension is indicated by a drop of more than 20 mm Hg in systolic pressure or 10 mm Hg in diastolic pressure between positions. Notify the health care provider and the therapists about this change.

If the patient has problems maintaining blood pressure while out of bed, the physical therapist may start him or her on a tilt table to gradually increase tolerance. A low blood pressure is a particularly common problem for patients who are quadriplegic because they have a delayed blood flow to the brain and upper part of the body.

Weight gain is another potential problem when rehabilitation patients have impaired mobility. Excessive weight hinders transfers both for the nurse or the therapist who is assisting and for the patient who is learning to transfer independently. Weight is usually checked every week to monitor gains or losses.

Gait Training. The physical therapist works with patients for gait training if they are able to ambulate. While regaining the ability to ambulate, patients may need to use assistive devices, such as a variety of canes or walkers (Fig. 8-5). The specific device selected for each patient depends on the amount of weight bearing that is allowed or tolerated. For example, a stroke patient who has problems with maintaining balance or a steady gait when walking might need a walker. Some patients use walkers with rollers made of tennis ball materials; others who fatigue easily may need a walker with a built-in seat to rest at intervals. A patient who had a total knee replacement 6 weeks ago may be able to use a straight (also called single-point) cane.

When working with patients who are using these devices, also known as **ambulatory aids**, the physical therapist ensures that there is a level surface on which to walk. The patient wears a transfer (gait) belt for safety so that the therapist or

CHART 8-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Transfer Techniques for Stroke Patients

Bed to Wheelchair or Chair

- Be sure that the patient wears a transfer (gait) belt.
- Place the chair at an angle to the bed on the patient's strong side.
- Lock the wheelchair brakes, or secure the chair position.
- While holding on to the transfer belt, ask the patient to stand and move his or her strong hand to the armrest.
- Remind the patient to keep his or her body weight forward, and pivot.
- When the patient's legs touch the chair edge, guide the patient into a sitting position in the chair.
- Keep the transfer belt in place for transfer back into bed.

Wheelchair or Chair to Bed

- Place the chair with the patient's strong side next to the bed.
- Lock the wheelchair brakes, or secure the chair position.
- Ask the patient to stand, and move his or her strong hand to the armrest.
- Remind the patient to keep his or her body weight forward, and pivot.
- When the patient's legs touch the bed edge, guide the patient until sitting and then reclining.



FIG. 8-5 Assistive devices for ambulation. Assistive devices vary in the amount of support they provide. A straight (single-point) cane provides less support than a walker (**A**) or quadripod cane (**B**).

CHART 8-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Gait Training with Selected Ambulatory Aids

Walker Assisted

- Apply a transfer belt around the patient's waist.
- Guide the patient to a standing position.
- Remind the patient in placing both hands on the walker.
- Ensure that the patient is well balanced.
- Teach the patient repeatedly to perform this sequence:
 - Lift the walker.
 - Move the walker about 2 feet forward, and set it down on all legs.
 - While resting on the walker, take small steps.
 - Check balance.
 - Repeat the sequence.

Cane Assisted

- Apply a transfer belt around the patient's waist.
- Guide the patient to a standing position.
- Be sure the cane is at the height of the patient's wrist when the arm is placed at his or her side. (Many canes can be adjusted to the required height.)
- Remind the patient to place his or her strong hand on the cane.
- Ensure that the patient is well balanced.
- Teach the patient to perform this sequence repeatedly:
 - Move the cane and weaker leg forward at the same time.
 - Move the stronger leg one step forward.
 - Check balance and repeat the sequence.

nurse can guide him or her during ambulation to help prevent falls. Use of transfer belts are recommended as one of the best practices for safe patient handling (Waters & Rockefeller, 2010).

Reinforce the physical therapist's instructions and encourage practice, with the outcome being to walk independently with or without an assistive device. Older patients typically use a walker, with or without rollers, for a broader base of support. Younger or minimally impaired patients often progress to the use of a hemi-cane or straight cane. [Chart 8-2](#) outlines best practices for patient safety when teaching patients how to use ambulatory aids.

Some patients never regain the ability to walk because of their impairment, such as advanced multiple sclerosis or complete high spinal cord injury. They may become wheelchair dependent and need to learn wheelchair or motorized scooter mobility skills. With the help of physical and occupational therapy, most patients can learn to move anywhere in a wheelchair or scooter. For example, quadriplegic patients often use motorized wheelchairs that can be directed and propelled by moving their head or blowing into a device. Patients with multiple sclerosis often use scooters to get around.

During the rehabilitation phase, patients are at risk for complications of immobility. [Table 8-3](#) lists some of the

common complications and strategies the nurse can use to help prevent each complication. Implementing range-of-motion (ROM) routines, adhering to schedules for turning and repositioning, and maintaining skin care are constant components of rehabilitation nursing care to prevent complications of immobility. The key is to increase mobility.

One way to increase mobility, even with patients who are bedridden, is through ROM exercises. ROM techniques are beneficial for any patient with decreased mobility. Although simple ROM techniques are presented in basic nursing textbooks, a few key principles are pertinent to rehabilitation nursing care:

- The human body contains more joints than simply the knees, hips, elbows, and shoulders. For ROM techniques to be effective in preventing musculoskeletal contractures, the patient must exercise all joints, including each joint of the fingers, hands, toes, and so forth.
- In performing ROM activities, the nurse or patient performs full-range movement of each joint at least five times and completes the entire process at least three times daily.
- The nurse does not move the joints beyond the point at which the patient expresses pain or beyond the point at which resistance occurs.

TABLE 8-3 PREVENTION OF THE COMMON COMPLICATIONS OF IMMOBILITY

BODY SYSTEM	COMPLICATIONS	PREVENTION
Musculoskeletal	Contractures Footdrop Osteoporosis Susceptibility to fractures Muscular atrophy	Foot support while in bed, range-of-motion exercises, high-top tennis shoes Ambulation if possible (walking) Other weight-bearing exercises
Gastrointestinal	Constipation	Sitting in an upright position Increased activity level Increased fluid and fiber intake
Cardiovascular	Decreased cardiac output Increased venous stasis Thrombus formation Embolism	Range-of-motion exercises Exercise Antiembolism stockings Avoidance of leg massage Low-molecular-weight heparin or other anticoagulant
Neurologic	Disorientation	Sleep-wake schedule in accord with light-dark pattern Reorientation (to person, place, time) Control of sensory stimulation
Renal/urinary	Calculi	Decreased dietary calcium level, if needed Increased fluid intake Ensuring low post-void residuals Intermittent catheterization instead of indwelling if possible
Respiratory	Infection Pneumonia	Frequent oral hygiene Frequent repositioning in wheelchair or bed Breathing exercises
Integumentary (Skin)	Pressure ulcers	Frequent repositioning in wheelchair or bed Pressure reduction or relief devices (in bed and wheelchair) Meticulous skin care Adequate nutrition Frequent skin assessments

Patients with decreased mobility who are able to follow directions are taught by the nurse and the physical therapist to perform active or active-assisted ROM exercises.

Increasing Functional Mobility

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with chronic illness or disability is expected to increase functional ability in self-care and other self-management skills with or without assistive/adaptive devices.

Interventions. ADLs, or self-care activities, include eating, bathing, dressing, grooming, and toileting. Encourage the patient to perform as much self-care as possible. Be patient because he or she often takes more time to complete a task than healthy adults do. Collaborate with the occupational therapist (OT) to identify ways in which self-care activities can be modified so the patient can perform them independently and with minimal frustration if possible. For example, the OT teaches a hemiplegic patient to put on a shirt by first placing the affected arm in the sleeve and then putting the unaffected arm in the appropriate sleeve. Slip-on shoes or shoes with Velcro straps may be recommended for some patients. Encourage patients to practice, and allow them time to try to be independent in ADLs.

In long-term care (LTC) settings (e.g., nursing homes), federal regulations require that residents not lose their functional skills while they are in the facility. Therefore most facilities have developed *restorative nursing* programs and have coordinated these programs with rehabilitation therapy and activity therapy. The focus of this coordinated effort includes:

- Bed mobility
- Walking

- Transfers
- Dressing
- Grooming
- Active range of motion
- Communication

A variety of devices are available for patients with chronic illness and disability for *assisting with self-care*. An **assistive/adaptive device**, or self-care support device, is any item that enables the patient to perform all or part of an activity independently and safely. Examples include long-handled shoe-horns and reachers to prevent bending and losing one's balance. Table 8-4 identifies common devices and describes their use.

Many department stores and large pharmacies carry clothing and assistive/adaptive devices designed for patients with disabilities. The occupational therapist determines specific patient needs for this equipment. Collaborate with the occupational therapist to look for creative and inexpensive alternatives to meeting these needs. For example, barbecue tongs may be used as "reachers" for pulling up pants or obtaining items on high shelves. A foam curler with the plastic insert removed may be placed over a pencil or eating utensil to make a built-up device. The patient might use an extended shoe-horn to operate light switches from wheelchair height. Hook-and-loop fasteners (Velcro) sewn on clothes can prevent the frustrations caused by buttons and zippers.

Assistive technology has further increased the ability for disabled patients to care for themselves using electronic equipment. For example, telephones can be dialed using a voice-activated dialing device. Computer keyboards also can be operated by voice-activation devices.

TABLE 8-4 EXAMPLES AND USES OF COMMON ASSISTIVE/ADAPTIVE DEVICES

DEVICE	USE
Buttonhook	Threaded through the buttonhole to enable patients with weak finger mobility to button shirts Alternative uses include serving as pencil holder or cigarette holder
Extended shoehorn	Assists in the application of shoes for patients with decreased mobility Alternative uses include turning light switches off or on while patient is in a wheelchair
Plate guard and spork (spoon and fork in one utensil)	Applied to a plate to assist patients with weak hand and arm mobility to feed themselves; spork allows one utensil to serve two purposes
Gel pad	Placed under a plate or a glass to prevent dishes from slipping and moving Alternative uses include placement under bathing and grooming items to prevent them from moving
Foam buildups	Applied to eating utensils to assist patients with weak hand grasps to feed themselves Alternative uses include application to pens and pencils to assist with writing or over a buttonhook to assist with grasping the device
Hook and loop fastener (Velcro) straps	Applied to utensils, a buttonhook, or a pencil to slip over the hand and provide a method of stabilizing the device when the patient's hand grasp is weak
Long-handled reacher	Assists in obtaining items located on high shelves or at ground level for patients who are unable to change positions easily
Elastic shoelaces or Velcro shoe closure	Prevents the need for tying shoes

Fatigue often occurs with chronic and disabling conditions. Therefore collaborate with the occupational therapist to assess the patient's self-care abilities and to determine possible ways of *conserving energy*. Coordinate with the therapist to develop strategies for energy conservation after evaluating the patient's self-care routines. Preparation for ADLs can help reduce effort and energy expenditure (e.g., gathering all necessary equipment before starting grooming routines). If a patient has high energy levels in the morning, he or she can be taught to schedule energy-intensive activities in the morning rather than later in the day or evening. Spacing activities is also helpful for conserving energy. In addition, allowing time to rest before and after eating and toileting decreases the strain on energy level.

Maintaining Skin Integrity

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with chronic illness or disability is expected to have intact skin.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

A 70-year old man is admitted to an inpatient facility for rehabilitation after a right knee replacement for severe osteoarthritis from obesity. He lost 52 pounds before having surgery 2 days ago because his left knee also is arthritic. The patient lives alone in a third-floor apartment and has a daughter nearby who visits at least twice a week. His wife recently died, and he does not cook. His favorite food is hamburgers and French fries from McDonald's. He is retired from his manufacturing job but works part-time at Wal-Mart as a greeter. As his nurse, you complete his admission assessment.

1. What are this patient's priority problems?
2. With what health care team members will you need to collaborate?
3. What do you need to assess before planning how to safely move this patient?
4. What safe patient handling practices would you need to use?
5. What type of ambulatory assistive device would be most appropriate for him at this time?

Interventions. The best intervention to prevent skin breakdown is frequent position changes in combination with adequate skin care and sufficient nutritional intake. Teach staff to turn and reposition all patients at least every 2 hours if they are unable to perform this activity. This time frame may not be sufficient for people who are frail and have thin skin, especially older adults. To determine the best turning schedule, assess the patient's skin condition during each turning and repositioning. For example, if the patient has been sleeping for 2 hours and the nursing assistant decides to postpone turning for 1 hour, reddened areas over the bony prominences may be present. If reddened areas do not fade within 30 minutes after pressure relief or do not blanch, they may be classified as pre-ulcer areas, or stage I pressure areas (see Chapter 27).

Patients who sit for prolonged periods in a wheelchair need to be repositioned at least every 1 to 2 hours. Each patient is evaluated by the physical or occupational therapist for the best seating pad or cushion that is comfortable yet reduces pressure on bony prominences. Patients who are able are taught to perform "wheelchair push-ups" by using their arms to lift their buttocks off the wheelchair seat for 10 seconds or longer every hour, or more often if needed. The physical therapist helps them strengthen their arm muscles in preparation for performing wheelchair push-ups.

If the patient wears high-top tennis shoes for foot positioning to prevent footdrop, remove the shoes and assess for pressure areas every 2 hours. Many patients with neurologic problems have decreased or absent sensation and may not be able to feel the discomfort of increased pressure. Also, check patients who are sitting in wheelchairs for signs of pressure, especially on the lower legs where the leg of the wheelchair could rub against the skin.

Adequate skin care is an essential component of prevention. Perform or assist patients in completing skin care each time they are turned, repositioned, or bathed. Delegate and supervise skin care to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), including cleaning soiled areas, drying carefully, and applying a moisturizer. If a patient is incontinent, use topical barrier creams or ointments to help protect the skin from moisture, which can contribute to skin breakdown. To prevent damage

to the already fragile capillary system, teach UAP to avoiding rubbing reddened areas. Instead, carefully observe the areas for further breakdown and relieve pressure on the areas as much as possible. Bed pillows are often good pressure-relieving devices. (See Chapter 27 for a complete discussion of skin care interventions.)

Sufficient nutrition is needed both to repair wounds and to prevent pressure ulcers. Collaborate with the registered dietitian (RD) to assess the patient's food selection and ensure that it contains adequate protein and carbohydrates. Both the nurse and the nutritionist closely monitor the patient's weight and serum prealbumin levels. If either of these indices decreases significantly, the patient may need high-protein, high-carbohydrate food supplements (e.g., milkshakes) or commercial preparations. Chapter 63 describes nutritional supplementation in detail.

Pressure-relieving or pressure-reducing devices include waterbeds, gel mattresses or pads, air mattresses, low-air loss overlays or beds, and air-fluidized beds. Mattress overlays, such as air and gel types, and replacement mattresses are often effective in reducing pressure. *The use of any mechanical device (except air-fluidized beds) does not eliminate the need for turning and repositioning.*

Specialty beds are categorized as either "low air loss" or "air fluidized." Air-fluidized therapy (e.g., Clinitron Rite Hite bed) provides the most effective pressure relief by distributing the patient's weight to prevent pressure in any one area. These beds are not often used to prevent skin breakdown because insurers may not reimburse the agency for the use of the bed. Therefore these special beds are more often reserved for severe skin problems that have not healed with the use of a conventional bed or other mechanical device. The primary disadvantage of this therapy is its expense, which may exceed several hundred dollars for each day of use. Patients also report discomfort from the heat generated by the bed. Although air-fluidized beds are heavy to move, lighter and more portable versions are available for home use. The cost of air-fluidized therapy is reimbursed by some health insurance providers if the bed is deemed medically necessary for the patient's skin problem.

Establishing Urinary Continence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. Most patients with chronic illness or disability are expected to have normal patterns of urinary continence without retention, infection, or incontinence.

Interventions. Neurologic disabilities often interfere with successful bladder control in a patient undergoing rehabilitation. These disabilities result in two basic functional types of neurogenic bladder: overactive (e.g., reflex or spastic bladder) and underactive (e.g., hypotonic or flaccid bladder).

An overactive **spastic** (upper motor neuron) **bladder** causes incontinence with sudden, gushing voids. The bladder does not usually empty completely, and the patient is at risk for urinary tract infection. Neurologic problems affecting the upper motor neuron typically occur in patients with strokes or with high-level spinal cord injuries (cervical) or those above the mid-thoracic region. These injuries result in a failure of impulse transmission from the lower spinal cord areas to the cortex of the brain. Therefore when the bladder fills and transmits impulses to the spinal cord, the patient cannot perceive the sensation. Because there is no injury to

the lower spinal cord and the voiding reflex arc is intact, the efferent (motor) impulse from a distended bladder is relayed and the bladder contracts.

Experimental technology using sacral neuromodulation is being tested with complete spinal cord-injury patients. The results have been positive in preventing urinary incontinence in patients with spastic bladders (Sievert et al., 2010).

An underactive **flaccid** or **areflexic** (lower motor neuron) **bladder** results in urinary retention and overflow (dribbling). Injuries that damage the lower motor neuron at the spinal cord level of S2-4 (e.g., multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injury or tumor below T12) may directly interfere with the reflex arc or may result in inaccurate interpretation of impulses to the brain. The bladder fills, and afferent (sensory) impulses conduct the message via the spinal cord to the brain cortex. Because of the injury, the impulse is not interpreted correctly by the brain's bladder center and there is a failure to respond with a message for the bladder to contract.

Post-Void Residual Assessment. Patients who cannot completely empty their bladder are at risk for post-void residual urine and subsequent possible urinary tract infection. **Post-void residual (PVR)** is the amount of urine remaining in the bladder within 20 minutes after voiding. PVR assessments using a noninvasive ultrasound device called the *BladderScan* are performed by nurses at the bedside. The residual amount measured is accurate if the device is used correctly. It is not accurate when used for morbidly obese patients. The outcome of bladder ultrasonography is to prevent an indwelling urinary catheter. Long-term urinary catheters cause urinary tract infections that are often chronic. A picture of the *BladderScan* device is in Chapter 68 (see Fig. 68-10).

Bladder Retraining. The nurse can teach a variety of techniques to assist the patient in retraining or repatterning voiding, including (Table 8-5):

- Facilitating, or triggering, techniques
- Intermittent catheterization
- Consistent scheduling of toileting routines; "timed void"

These techniques may not be as effective in patients with physiologic changes associated with aging, including stress incontinence in women with weak pelvic floor muscles and overflow incontinence in men with enlarged prostate glands.

Facilitating (triggering) techniques are used to stimulate voiding. If there is an upper motor neuron problem but the reflex arc is intact (reflex bladder pattern), the voiding response can be initiated by any stimulus that sends the message to the spinal cord level S2-4 that the bladder might be full. Such techniques include stroking the medial aspect of the thigh, pinching the area above the groin, massaging the penoscrotal area, pinching the posterior aspect of the glans penis, and providing digital anal stimulation.

When the patient has a lower motor neuron problem, the voiding reflex arc is not intact (flaccid bladder pattern) and additional stimulation may be needed to initiate voiding. Two techniques used to facilitate voiding are the Valsalva maneuver and the Credé maneuver. In teaching the Valsalva maneuver, teach the patient to hold his or her breath and bear down as if trying to defecate. Assist the patient in performing the **Credé maneuver** by placing the patient's hand in a cupped position directly over the bladder area and instructing him

TABLE 8-5 MANAGEMENT OF NEUROGENIC BLADDER

FUNCTIONAL TYPE	NEUROLOGIC DISABILITY	DYSFUNCTION	RE-ESTABLISHING VOIDING PATTERNS
Reflex (spastic)	Upper motor neuron spinal cord injury above T12	Urinary frequency, incontinence but may not empty completely	Triggering or facilitating techniques Drug therapy, as appropriate Bedside bladder ultrasound Intermittent catheterization Consistent toileting schedule Indwelling urinary catheter (as last resort) Increased fluids
Flaccid	Lower motor neuron spinal cord injury below T12 (affects S2-4 reflex arc)	Urinary retention, overflow	Valsalva and Credé maneuvers Increased fluids Intermittent or indwelling urinary catheterization

or her to push inward and downward gently as if massaging the bladder to empty.

Intermittent catheterization may be needed for a flaccid or spastic bladder. Initially, a urinary catheter is inserted to drain urine every few hours—after the patient has attempted voiding and has used the Valsalva and Credé maneuvers. If less than 100 to 150 mL of post-void residual is obtained, the nurse typically increases the interval between catheterizations. *The patient should not go beyond 8 hours between catheterizations.* If intermittent self-catheterization is needed at home after discharge from the rehabilitation facility, the patient may use a specialized appliance to help perform the procedure, especially if he or she has problems with manual dexterity. For patients who cannot catheterize themselves, a family member or significant other may need to be taught how to perform the procedure.

Most patients who need intermittent catheterization have chronic bacteruria (bacteria in the urine with a positive culture), especially those with spinal cord injury (SCI). Unless the patient has symptoms of a urinary tract infection (UTI), such as fever or burning when voiding, the infection is not treated.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To *prevent* UTI, teach patients and their caregivers to wash their hands thoroughly before and after catheterization and clean the genital area well. Remind the patient to drink at least 8 to 10 glasses of fluid (two quarts) every day before dinner and avoid carbonated beverages. If patients have indwelling urinary catheters, remind them to drink 15 glasses of fluid (three quarts) each day before dinner and avoid carbonated beverages.

The Natural Medicines Comprehensive Database states that cranberry juice or extract may be effective to help *prevent* UTI (U.S. National Library of Medicine [NIH], 2011). It is not effective for *treating* urinary infection.

Consistent toileting routines may be the best way to re-establish voiding continence when the patient has an overactive bladder. Assess the patient's previous voiding pattern, and determine his or her daily routine. At a minimum, the nurse or nursing staff assists the patient with voiding after awakening in the morning, before and after meals, before and after physical activity, and at bedtime. *Remind the staff to toilet the patient every 2 hours during the day and every 3 to 4 hours at night.*

Consider the patient's bladder capacity, which may range from 100 to 500 mL, as well as mobility limitations and

restrictive clothing. Bladder capacity is determined by measuring urine output. Ensure that the patient is aware of nearby bathrooms at all times or has a call system to contact the nurse or unlicensed assistive personnel for assistance. [Chapter 69](#) also describes methods of achieving bladder control.

Drug Therapy. Drugs are not commonly used for urinary elimination problems. Mild overactive bladder problems may be treated with antispasmodics (e.g., oxybutynin chloride [Ditropan, Apo-Oxybutynin] or flavoxate [Urispas]) to prevent incontinence on a short-term basis. Patients with symptomatic UTIs are managed with short-term antibiotics, such as trimethoprim (Trimplex) or trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (Septra, Bactrim). Report the patient's progress in bladder training to the rehabilitation team so that the best decision regarding drug therapy can be made.

Establishing Bowel Continence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with chronic illness or disability is expected to have regular evacuation of stool without constipation. If possible, patients will control their bowel elimination schedule.

Interventions. Neurologic problems often affect the patient's bowel pattern by causing a reflex (spastic) bowel, a flaccid bowel, or an uninhibited bowel. Bowel retraining programs are designed for each patient to best meet the expected outcomes ([Table 8-6](#)).

Upper motor neuron diseases and injuries, such as a cervical or mid-level spinal cord injury, may result in a reflex (spastic) bowel pattern, with defecation occurring suddenly and without warning. With a reflex pattern, any facilitating or triggering mechanism may lead to defecation if the lower colon contains stool. An example of facilitating or triggering techniques is digital stimulation. For this technique, use a lubricated glove or finger cot and massage the anus in a circular motion for no less than 1 full minute.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Do not use digital stimulation for patients with cardiac disease because of the risk for inducing a vagal nerve response. This response causes a rapid decrease in heart rate.

Lower motor neuron diseases and injuries interfere with transmission of the nervous impulse across the reflex arc and may result in a flaccid bowel pattern, with defecation occurring infrequently and in small amounts. The use of

TABLE 8-6 MANAGEMENT OF NEUROGENIC BOWEL

FUNCTIONAL TYPE	NEUROLOGIC DISABILITY	DYSFUNCTION	RE-ESTABLISHING DEFECATION PATTERNS
Reflex (spastic)	Upper motor neuron spinal cord injury above T12	Defecation without warning, but may not empty completely	Triggering mechanisms Facilitation techniques High-fiber diet Increased fluids Laxative use (for some patients) Consistent toileting schedule Manual disimpaction
Flaccid	Lower motor neuron spinal cord injury below T12 (affects S2-4 reflex arc)	Usually absent stools for patients with complete lesions	Triggering or facilitating techniques Increased fluids High-fiber diet Suppository use Consistent toileting schedule Manual disimpaction

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Necessity of Manual Disimpaction for Bowel Control in Patients with Spinal Cord Injury

Coggrave, M.J., & Norton, C. (2010). The need for manual evacuation and oral laxatives in the management of neurogenic bowel dysfunction after spinal cord injury: A randomized controlled trial of a stepwise protocol. *Spinal Cord*, 48(6), 504-510.

The researchers used a randomized controlled design to test interventions needed to maintain bowel continence among patients who had spinal cord injuries for many years. The 68 volunteers were randomized into an intervention group of 35 and a control group of 33. The control group used their usual bowel management program. The intervention group used oral laxatives and manual disimpaction in a stepwise protocol and in combination. All study participants kept bowel diaries for 6 weeks.

Findings from the study showed that manual disimpaction significantly improved bowel continence more than oral laxatives or other bowel management programs. Some patients needed both laxatives and disimpaction to maintain bowel continence.

Level of Evidence: 1

This study used a randomized controlled design to compare bowel management interventions between a control group and an experimental group that used two specific bowel management interventions—manual disimpaction and oral laxatives.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

This research added to the evidence for planning the best bowel management protocol for spinal cord-injured patients. Nurses can use this information to teach patients how to maintain bowel continence. Bowel control is a sensitive and embarrassing patient problem, and nurses can be instrumental in teaching patients about which methods achieve the best outcome.

manual disimpaction may get the best results. Some patients also need oral laxatives and/or stool softeners (Coggrave & Norton, 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box above).

Neurologic injuries that affect the brain may cause an uninhibited bowel pattern, with frequent defecation, urgency, and reports of hard stool. Patients may manage uninhibited bowel patterns through a consistent toileting schedule, a high-fiber diet, and the use of stool softeners.

In some cases, patients are not able to regain their previous level of control over their bowel function. The rehabilitation team assists in designing a bowel elimination program that accommodates the disability.

Collaborate with patients to schedule bowel elimination as close as possible to their previous routine. For example, a patient who had stools at noon every other day before the illness or injury should have the bowel program scheduled in the same way. An exception is the patient who prefers another time that best fits into his or her daily routine. If the patient is employed during the day, a time-consuming bowel elimination program in the morning may not work. The bowel protocol can then be changed to the evening when there is more time.

Bowel retraining programs for patients with neurologic problems are often designed to include a combination of

methods. Although drug therapy should not be a first choice when formulating a bowel training program, consider the need for a suppository if the patient does not re-establish defecation habits through a consistent toileting schedule, dietary modification, anal stimulation, and disimpaction.

Bisacodyl (Dulcolax), a commonly used laxative, may be prescribed either rectally or orally as part of a bowel training program. Suppositories must be placed against the bowel wall to stimulate the sacral reflex arc and promote rectal emptying. Results occur in 15 to 30 minutes. Administer the suppository when the patient expects to defecate, for example, after a meal to coincide with the gastrocolic reflex. Using the suppository every second or third day is usually effective in re-establishing defecation patterns.

Many rehabilitation patients are at high risk for constipation, especially older adults. Encourage fluids and 20 to 35 g of fiber in the diet. Teach patients to eat 2 to 3 daily servings of whole grains, legumes, and bran cereals and 5 daily servings of fruits and vegetables. Do not offer a bedpan when toileting. Instead, be sure that the patient sits upright on a bedside commode or bathroom toilet to facilitate defecation (Association of Rehabilitation Nurses [ARN], 2002).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

Which statement by a newly paraplegic client indicates a need for the nurse to provide further teaching about his bowel retraining?

- A. "I need to eat lots of high-fiber foods like beans and raw fruits."
- B. "I will drink at least 2 quarts of water or other liquids every day."
- C. "I'll take oral laxatives every morning so I can go every day."
- D. "I plan to exercise by lifting weights and propelling my wheelchair."

Community-Based Care

Discharge planning begins at the time of the patient's admission. If the patient is transferred from a hospital to a rehabilitation unit or long-term care facility, orient him or her to the change in routine and emphasize the importance of self-care. When the patient is admitted, a nurse, case manager, and/or OT assess his or her current living situation at home. Together with the patient and family members or significant others, they determine the adequacy of the current situation and the potential needs after discharge to home. The patient with chronic illness and disability may require home care, assistance with ADLs, nursing care, or physical or occupational therapy after discharge.

Other health care professionals may be necessary to meet the unique needs of special populations. For example, patients with brain injury may benefit from life planning—a process that examines and plans to meet lifelong needs. External case managers specializing in life planning may be part of the interdisciplinary rehabilitation team.

Home Care Management

Before the patient returns home, the nurse assesses his or her readiness for discharge from the rehabilitation facility or hospital. The home may be assessed in multiple ways.

Predischarge Assessment. Before discharge, the case manager or OT may visit the home to assess its layout and accessibility. These professionals may be employed by the health care agency or by a third-party payer, such as a health maintenance organization. Because of the stress of hospitalization, a patient with a fractured hip who is ambulating well with a walker may neglect to explain to the nurse that the bathroom in the home is accessible by stairway only. The patient may not consider it important to mention that throw rugs, which can cause falls, are scattered throughout the apartment. Fall prevention strategies in the home environment for older adults are discussed in [Chapter 3](#).

During a predischarge visit to the home, the accessibility of bathrooms, bedrooms, and kitchen is assessed. If the patient will be wheelchair dependent after discharge from the facility, home modifications may be needed, such as ramps to replace steps. Doorways should be checked for adequate width. A doorway width of 36 to 38 inches (slightly less than 1 meter [m]) is usually sufficient for a standard-size wheelchair. Obese patients require bariatric wheelchairs and furniture and therefore need a wider door opening. Any room that the patient needs to use is assessed. The bedroom should have sufficient space for the patient to maneuver transfers to and from the wheelchair and the bed, if needed. The bathroom may need a raised toilet seat to at least 17 inches (43 cm).

Space requirements depend on the patient's need to use a wheelchair, walker, or cane. In the bathroom, grab bars may

need to be installed before the patient comes home. Bathtub benches can provide support for the patient who has difficulty with mobility and, when used in combination with a handheld showerhead, can provide easily accessible bathing facilities. Assessment of the kitchen may or may not be critical, depending on whether the patient has help with cooking and preparing meals. If the patient will be cooking after discharge, the kitchen may need to be assessed for wheelchair or walker accessibility, appliance accessibility, and the need for adaptive equipment.

Leave-of-Absence Visit. A second method of assessing the patient's home is through a brief home visit, also called a *leave-of-absence (LOA) visit*, before discharge. Explain the need for the trial home visit, and assess the patient's comfort level with this idea. The patient who has been hospitalized for a lengthy period may feel intense anxiety about returning home. The nurse may allay such anxieties with careful preparation. Before the visit, the rehabilitation nurse meets with the patient and family members or significant others to set goals for the visit and to identify specific tasks to be attempted while at home. After the home visit, interview the patient to determine the success of the visit and to assess additional education or training needs before final discharge.

Going home may not be an option for everyone. Some patients may not have a support network of family members or significant others. For example, many older adults have no spouse or close friends living nearby. Children may live far away, which can make home care difficult. If no caregiver is available, the family must decide whether care can be provided in the home by an outside resource. The patient may need to be admitted to a 24-hour supervised health care setting, such as a nursing home. Continued rehabilitation services are available in most long-term care settings (skilled nursing facilities) at least 5 days a week if it is medically necessary.

Teaching for Self-Management

The OT and PT teach the patient to perform ADLs and IADLs independently. The patient's learning potential and cognitive capacity are assessed. The patient is asked to perform or direct each skill or technique independently to verify understanding. Written material explaining the steps in the procedure is provided to the patient and family members to reinforce learning and to provide support with the technique after discharge. Before distributing written material, the rehabilitation team assesses the reading level of the material and determines whether it is appropriate for the patient's reading ability and language skills.

Any chronic illness or disability necessitates changes in lifestyle and body image. Assist the patient in dealing with such changes by encouraging verbalization of feelings and emotions. A focus on existing capabilities instead of disabilities is emphasized.

The patient may fail to relate psychologically to the disability during hospitalization. For example, he or she may display anger or frustration in attempting to perform self-care routines before discharge from the rehabilitation facility. Encourage the patient to be open about such feelings and to talk about ways to prevent worries from becoming realities after discharge. If needed, refer the patient to a mental health professional to help with adjustment and coping strategies.

The LOA home visit assists the patient and family members or significant others in psychosocial preparation for discharge. It allows the experience of the home situation while being able to return to the hospital environment after a few hours. Often the patient finds new problems in the home that must be addressed before discharge. Review this information with the patient in preparation for discharge to the home.

Health Care Resources

After discharge to the home, various health care resources (e.g., physical therapy, home care nursing, vocational counseling) are available to the patient with chronic illness and disability. Assess the need for additional care and support throughout the hospitalization, and coordinate with the case manager and physician in arranging for home services. A new technology, tele-health, allows for care coordination in the home setting. Through the use of various electronic devices, a health care team member can monitor the

patient's vital signs, weight, and other assessment data via Internet.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

The patient and rehabilitation team evaluate the effectiveness of interdisciplinary interventions based on the common patient problems. Expected outcomes may include that the patient will:

- Reach a level of physical mobility that allows him or her to function independently with or without assistive devices
- Prevent complications of decreased physical mobility
- Perform self-care and other self-management skills independently or with minimal assistance, possibly using assistive/adaptive devices
- Have intact skin
- Establish urinary continence without infection or retention
- Have regular evacuation of stool, without constipation

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Rehabilitation is the process of learning to live with chronic and disabling conditions; the role of the rehabilitation nurse is outlined in [Table 8-1](#).
- Patients in a rehabilitation setting are managed by an interdisciplinary team of health care professionals; the patient and family are also members of the team.
- Collaborate with the rehabilitation health care team when planning and providing patient care.
- After assessing the home environment, the case manager, OT, and/or rehabilitation nurse make recommendations to the patient and family about home modifications.
- Use evidence-based safe patient handling practices when assessing and moving patients.
- The members of the interdisciplinary team teach patients transfer, bed mobility, and gait training techniques (see [Charts 8-1 and 8-2](#)).
- The patient is taught how to perform ADLs with or without using adaptive devices; encourage the patient to be as independent as possible.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- In coordination with the PT and OT, assess the patient's ability to perform ADLs using a functional assessment process.

- Prevent complications of immobility for patients, and teach them how to prevent complications by using interventions listed in [Table 8-3](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the patient's self-esteem and changes in body image caused by chronic or disabling health problems.
- Assess the patient's and family's response to chronic and disabling conditions, including feelings of loss and grief.
- Assist patients in coping with their loss, and assess the availability of patient support systems.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess rehabilitation patients as outlined in [Table 8-2](#).
- The Functional Independence Measure (FIM) system is one assessment tool used to assess functional ability of the patient in rehabilitation.
- Assess patients in rehabilitation for risk factors that make them likely to develop skin breakdown; interventions to prevent skin problems include repositioning and adequate nutrition.
- Prevent other problems of immobility as delineated in [Table 8-3](#).
- Patients with neurogenic bladder and bowel problems are managed by training programs; overactive (spastic or reflex) and underactive (hypotonic or flaccid) elimination problems are managed differently (see [Tables 8-5 and 8-6](#)).
- Evaluate the ability of patients to use assistive/adaptive devices to promote independence.

End-of-Life Care

Mary K. Kazanowski



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the purpose and procedure for advance directives to patients and their families.
2. Describe the importance of collaborating with members of the interdisciplinary team when caring for the dying patient and family or other caregivers.
3. Discuss the ethical and legal obligations of the nurse with regard to end-of-life care.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Assess the patient's and family's ability to cope with the dying process.
5. Assess and plan interventions to meet the dying patient's spiritual needs.

6. Incorporate the patient's cultural practices and beliefs when providing care during the dying process and death.
7. Identify the need for providing psychosocial support to the family or other caregivers during the patient's dying process.

Physiological Integrity

8. Assess patients for signs and symptoms related to the end of life.
9. Explain how to provide evidence-based end-of-life care to the dying patient.
10. Explain best practice guidelines for performing postmortem care.

OVERVIEW OF DEATH AND DYING

Although dying is part of the normal life cycle, it is often feared as a time of pain and suffering. For the family, death of a member is a life-altering loss that can cause significant and prolonged suffering. As sad and difficult as the death may be, the experience of dying need not be physically painful for the patient or emotionally agonizing for the family. The dying process is an opportunity to change a potentially difficult situation into one that is tolerable, peaceful, and meaningful for the patient and the family left behind.

Because nurses spend more time with patients than do any other health care providers, it is the nurse who often has the greatest impact on a person's experience with death. It is the nurse who can affect the dying process to prevent a death without dignity ("bad" death) from occurring, while striving

to promote a peaceful and meaningful death ("good death"). To accomplish this, the nurse needs to have knowledge of end-of-life care, compassion, advocacy, and therapeutic communication skills.

Perception of Death in the United States

The U.S. health care system is based on the acute care model, which is focused on prevention, early detection, and cure of disease. This focus and the advances in survival rates for once deadly diseases have made it difficult for many patients and health care providers to accept death as an outcome of disease. Many view death as a failure.

These negative views have led to a major deficiency in the quality of care provided to many Americans at the end of life. In 1995, a landmark study highlighted the poor quality of dying experienced by hospitalized patients. The Study to

Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks of Treatment (SUPPORT) showed that more than 50% of a sample of 9105 hospitalized patients with a life-threatening disease had moderate to severe pain during the last days of their lives. In addition, they did not have their wishes met, even when their wishes were known.

As a result of SUPPORT, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) studied death in America. The Institute recommended that a major initiative be undertaken to improve care at the end of life with the outcome of facilitating good death. A **good death** is one that is free from avoidable distress and suffering for patients, families, and caregivers; in agreement with patients' and families' wishes; and consistent with clinical practice standards. Pain, not having one's wishes followed at the end of one's life, isolation, abandonment, and agonizing about losses associated with death are characteristics of a **bad death**. In response to this initiative, core curricula on end-of-life care were developed and implemented to educate medical and nursing students, physicians, and nurses on how to provide quality end-of-life care.

Pathophysiology of Dying

Death is defined as the cessation of integrated tissue and organ function, manifested by lack of heartbeat, absence of spontaneous respirations, or irreversible brain dysfunction. It generally occurs as a result of an illness or trauma that overwhelms the compensatory mechanisms of the body, eventually leading to cardiopulmonary failure/arrest. Direct causes of death include:

- Heart failure secondary to cardiac dysrhythmias, myocardial infarction, or cardiogenic shock
- Respiratory failure secondary to pulmonary embolism, heart failure, pneumonia, lung disease, or respiratory arrest caused by increased intracranial pressure
- Shock secondary to infection, blood loss, or organ dysfunction, which leads to lack of blood flow (i.e., perfusion) to vital organs

Inadequate perfusion to body tissues deprives cells of their source of oxygen, which leads to anaerobic metabolism with acidosis, hyperkalemia, and tissue ischemia. Dramatic changes in vital organs lead to the release of toxic metabolites and destructive enzymes, referred to as *multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS)*. As illness or organ damage progresses, the syndrome occurs with renal and liver failure. Renal or liver failure can also start the dying process.

When the body is hypoxic and acidotic, a lethal dysrhythmia such as ventricular fibrillation or asystole can occur, which ultimately leads to the lack of cardiac output. Shortly after cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest occurs. When respiratory arrest occurs first, cardiac arrest follows within minutes.

Incidence of Death

Over 2 million deaths occur every year in the United States. The most common causes of death in the United States are diseases of the heart, followed by cancer (Table 9-1).

Of all people who die, only a few (<10%) die suddenly and unexpectedly. Most people die after a long period of illness (e.g., cardiac, renal, respiratory disease), with gradual deterioration until an active dying phase before the death. Most people who die are older than 65 years.

In general, about 25% of all deaths in the United States take place at home. The rest occur in hospitals or nursing

TABLE 9-1 LEADING CAUSES OF DEATH IN UNITED STATES

1. Heart disease	6. Diabetes mellitus
2. Cancer	7. Alzheimer's disease
3. Stroke	8. Influenza and pneumonia
4. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	9. Kidney disease
5. Accidents	10. Septicemia

homes, but exact numbers vary depending on the region of the country.

Planning for End-of-Life and Advance Directives

Most people would prefer to die at home. Providing the type of care a person prefers, including where he or she wants end-of-life care, positively affects the dying experience for both the patient and family. These preferences need to be written as legal documents called **advance directives**.

Most Americans do not have advance directives, and many health care providers do not talk with patients about their wishes for end-of-life (EOL) care until the patients are unable to make their own decisions. Recent data suggest that older adults want early discussions with their health care provider in preparation for death (Gillick, 2010).

The primary purpose of a written advance directive is to provide guidance, especially to health care professionals, regarding how to make decisions regarding life-sustaining treatment when one loses his or her decision-making ability. To have decision-making ability, a person must be able to perform three tasks:

1. Receive information (but not necessarily oriented ×4)
2. Evaluate, deliberate, and mentally manipulate information
3. Communicate a treatment preference

By definition, the comatose patient does not have decisional ability. In this case, it becomes unclear as to how health care decisions will be made, who has the authority to make them, and what the treatment should be (Perrin, 2010a).

There are two general types of **advance directives**. The first is an instructional directive, which states the type and amount of care a person would want if he or she were to become incapacitated. **Living wills** and medical directives, such as do not resuscitate (DNR) orders, are examples of instructional directives (Perrin, 2010a).

Ethics and DNR Orders

By law, health care providers must initiate cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) for a person who is not breathing or is pulseless unless that person has a DNR order. Although CPR may be effective in patients with reversible illness or single organ dysfunction, patients with terminal cancer, multisystem organ failure, and renal failure rarely survive after a cardiac arrest. Therefore a DNR order may be written in advance (called a *portable DNR*) before the patient is admitted to a health care facility. For patients who want this type of advance directive, remind them to follow their state's requirements. Most states that recognize portable DNR directives require that a state-designated, original and signed

wallet DNR card (usually pink or bright-colored) be with the patient at all times. Patients may also wear a special DNR bracelet or necklace but must have the signed wallet card with them to ensure that pre-hospital providers follow the advance directive.

Unfortunately, most patients do not obtain a portable DNR. In this case, DNR orders are usually written only a day or two before the patient's death. In general, physicians do not want to have emotional and time-consuming EOL conversations in advance. However, nurses are willing to discuss DNR options with patients and their families so that they can be involved in their own EOL decisions (Morrell et al., 2008). *According to the American Nurses Association Code of Ethics, nurses have an ethical obligation to ensure that the patient, health care proxy, or surrogate has timely information about expected care outcomes to help them make the best possible decisions* (Lachman, 2010).

A major problem with DNR orders is their unclear variations, including partial DNR (e.g., cardiac DNR or Do Not Intubate) or "slow code" orders. Several authors have suggested that these orders are medically and ethically inappropriate (Venneman et al., 2008). Instead, plans of care should be established for each person at the end of life.

Another problem with DNR orders is that they can be perceived by families and significant others that they are giving permission to end a patient's life. Some experts in death and dying have suggested that the term "allowing natural death" (AND) replace DNR. This newer term better describes a clearer intent and is less emotional and threatening than DNR (Venneman et al., 2008).

Durable Power of Attorney for Health Care

The second type of advance directive is the **durable power of attorney for health care (DPOAHC)**. The DPOAHC is a legal document in which a person appoints someone else (e.g., health care proxy) to make his or her health care decisions in the event he or she loses decision-making capacity (Fig. 9-1).

Advance directives vary from state to state but are readily available through Caring Connections, an online program of the National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization (2005) (www.caringinfo.org). Anyone can complete the advance directive forms without legal consultation. A copy of each directive should be given to the primary health care provider and health care proxy. Remind the patients and health care proxy to keep the advance directive(s) in a secure place, such as a safe deposit box or fireproof box. *Remind patients that they can change their mind at any time of their lives or at end of life.*

The Patient Self-Determination Act of 1990 requires that all patients admitted to health care agencies be asked if they have written advance directives (ADs). Patients who do not have them are provided with information on the value of having an AD in place, are advised on how they might want to choose as their DPOAHC, and are given the opportunity to complete the state-required forms. Ideally, they should be completed long before a medical crisis. Be sure to find out if your patients have these documents to ensure that the health care team follows each patient's preferences at the end of life. Because of conflict of interest, direct caregivers, such as nurses and physicians, should not witness the signature of any patient who signs advance directives.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Thomas et al. (2008) reviewed the literature on cultural preferences for advance directives. The researchers found that European Americans (whites) had a more positive attitude and more knowledge of AD than did Mexican Americans, Asian Americans, or African Americans. Possible factors influencing these differences are related to family relationships and religiosity. Non-European-American groups tend to be more family-centered and expect that family members will make the best possible decisions about the patient's death. Many also believe that God controls when and how death will occur (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 110).

Desired Outcomes for End-of-Life Care

The desired outcomes for a patient near the end of life (EOL) are that the patient will have:

- Needs and preferences met
- Control of symptoms of distress
- Meaningful interactions with family
- A peaceful death

Interventions are planned to meet the physical, psychological, social, and spiritual needs of patients using an interdisciplinary approach. The coordinated, interdisciplinary care of hospice is the most successful approach to end-of-life care to date. *Although the perception of hospice is that it provides care for the dying, the major focus of hospice care is on quality of life.*

Hospice and Palliative Care

The concept of hospice in the United States resulted from a grassroots effort in response to the unmet needs of terminally ill people. As both a philosophy and a system of care, **hospice care** uses an interdisciplinary approach to assess and address the holistic needs of patients and families to facilitate quality of life and a peaceful death (Taylor, 2009). This holistic approach neither hastens nor postpones death but provides relief of symptoms. Hospice systems of care are provided in a variety of settings. They are often affiliated with home care agencies, providing services to patients at home or in a long-term care or assisted-living facility. Some communities also have hospice houses, which provide care to patients in the terminal phase of their lives.

The *Medicare Hospice Benefits* serves as a guide for hospice care in the United States. These benefits pay for hospice services for Medicare recipients who have a prognosis of 6 months or less to live and who agree to forgo curative treatment for their terminal illness. Historically, those with terminal cancer have received hospice care more than other groups.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Patients with other life-limiting conditions and life expectancies of 6 months or less are also eligible for hospice, especially older adults. Examples of these conditions are end-stage heart failure, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and Alzheimer's disease. Assess older patients with these illnesses to determine if they would benefit from hospice care. Teach patients and their families about this valuable resource to promote comfort during the dying process.

Guidelines are available to assist health care providers and families in identifying who is entitled to hospice care under Medicare. Patients who do not qualify for Medicare may have benefits through private insurance or government programs like medical assistance programs (e.g., Medicaid).

NEW HAMPSHIRE DURABLE POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR HEALTH CARE	
INSTRUCTIONS	
PRINT YOUR NAME	I, _____, hereby appoint _____
	(name) (name of agent)
PRINT THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF YOUR AGENT	of _____ (address)
INSTRUCTION STATEMENTS	as my agent to make any and all health care decisions for me, except to the extent I state otherwise in this document or as prohibited by law. This durable power of attorney for health care shall take effect in the event I become unable to make my own health care decisions.
CIRCLE AND INITIAL THE RESPONSES THAT REFLECT YOUR WISHES	STATEMENT OF DESIRES, SPECIAL PROVISIONS, AND LIMITATIONS REGARDING HEALTH CARE DECISIONS. For your convenience in expressing your wishes, some general statements concerning the withholding or removal of life-sustaining treatment are set forth below. (Life-sustaining treatment is defined as procedures without which a person would die, such as but not limited to the following: cardiopulmonary resuscitation, mechanical respiration, kidney dialysis or the use of other external mechanical and technological devices, drugs to maintain blood pressure, blood transfusions, and antibiotics.) There is also a section that allows you to set forth specific directions for these or other matters. If you wish, you may indicate your agreement or disagreement with any of the following statements and give your agent power to act in those specific circumstances.
TERMINAL ILLNESS	1. If I become permanently incompetent to make health care decisions, and if I am also suffering from a terminal illness, I authorize my agent to direct that life-sustaining treatment be discontinued. YES NO (Circle your choice and initial beneath it.)
PERMANENTLY UNCONSCIOUS	2. Whether terminally ill or not, if I become permanently unconscious I authorize my agent to direct that life-sustaining treatment be discontinued. YES NO (Circle your choice and initial beneath it.)
ARTIFICIAL NUTRITION AND HYDRATION	3. I realize that situations could arise in which the only way to allow me to die would be to discontinue artificial feeding (artificial nutrition and hydration). In carrying out any instructions I have given above in #1 or #2 or any instructions I may write in #4 below, I authorize my agent to direct that (circle your choice of [a] or [b] and initial beside it): (a) artificial nutrition and hydration not be started or, if started, be discontinued, —OR— (b) although all other forms of life-sustaining treatment be withdrawn, artificial nutrition and hydration continue to be given to me.
ADD PERSONAL INSTRUCTIONS (IF ANY)	If you do not complete item 3, your agent will <u>not</u> have the power to direct the withdrawal of artificial nutrition and hydration. 4. Here you may include any specific desires or limitations you deem appropriate, such as when or what life-sustaining treatment you would want used or withheld, or instructions about refusing any specific types of treatment that are inconsistent with your religious beliefs or unacceptable to you for any other reason. You may leave this question blank if you desire.
ALTERNATE AGENT	(attach additional pages as necessary)
PRINT THE NAME AND ADDRESS OF YOUR ALTERNATE AGENT	In the event the person I appoint above is unable, unwilling or unavailable, or ineligible to act as my health care agent, I hereby appoint _____ of _____ (name of alternate agent) (address of alternate agent) as alternate agent.
LOCATION OF THE ORIGINAL AND COPIES	I hereby acknowledge that I have been provided with a disclosure statement explaining the effect of this document. I have read and understand the information contained in the disclosure statement.
DATE AND SIGN THE DOCUMENT HERE	The original of this document will be kept at _____ and the following persons and institutions will have signed copies: In witness, whereof, I have hereunto signed my name this _____ day of _____, 20 _____. (day) (month) (year)
WITNESSING PROCEDURE	_____ (signature)
WITNESSES MUST SIGN AND PRINT THEIR ADDRESSES	I declare that the principal appears to be of sound mind and free from duress at the time the durable power of attorney for health care is signed and that the principal has affirmed that he or she is aware of the nature of the document and is signing it freely and voluntarily.
AND A NOTARY PUBLIC OR JUSTICE OF THE PEACE MUST COMPLETE THIS SECTION	Witness: _____ Address: _____ Witness: _____ Address: _____
©2005 National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization 2006 Revised	STATE OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, COUNTY OF _____ The foregoing instrument was acknowledged before me this _____ day of _____, 20 ____, by _____. _____ Notary Public/Justice of the Peace My commission expires:

FIG. 9-1 An example of a durable power of attorney for health care (DPOAHC).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Are the Common Cultural Preferences for End-of-Life Care in Developed Countries?

Thomas, R., Wilson, D.M., Justice, C., Birch, S., & Sheps, S. (2008). A literature review of preferences for end-of-life care in developed countries by individuals with different cultural affiliations and ethnicity. *Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing*, 10(3), 142-161.

The researchers conducted a systematic review using the QUORUM process to determine cultural differences in end-of-life (EOL) care in the United States and other developed countries. The QUORUM process requires literature searching, selection, validity assessment, data abstraction study characteristics, and quantitative data synthesis. Most of the studies selected for the article were done in the United States.

While there were numerous findings, the key cultural differences were:

- European Americans (whites) were more knowledgeable and therefore had a more positive attitude about advance directives when compared with Mexican Americans, Asian Americans, and African Americans.
- Non-European Americans tend to be more centered on family and religion. They trust that their families and/or God will make the best decisions about end-of-life care and the dying process.
- Patients of any ethnic group were more involved in making EOL decisions if they spoke English. Those who could speak English received better pain management and more comfort measures than non-English-speaking patients.
- Non-European groups were more likely to want family present during the dying process when compared with European Americans.

- African Americans and those older than 75 years in any ethnic group had less family to rely on for comfort and decision-making support.

Level of Evidence: 1

This was a systematic study of existing qualitative research to draw conclusions about trends and differences among several ethnic groups regarding their EOL preferences. These conclusions can help guide practice for the interdisciplinary team who cares for these people at EOL.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

It is apparent that European Americans (whites) have more advance directives and are involved more in EOL decision making than other groups. As a result, they receive better management for their symptoms of distress. Nurses need to advocate for and educate non-white patients and their families about EOL care and decision options. If patients cannot understand English, interpreters need to be contacted and become an active part of the health care team during this time. For adults older than 75 years who may not have families or advance directives, nurses need to seek other support systems such as clergy or close friends. All patients have the right to a good death; nurses are advocates for all patients.

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Patient-Centered Care**

A 77-year old carpenter has difficulty swallowing, weight loss, severe anorexia, and weakness. After multiple tests, he was diagnosed with amyloidosis, a terminal illness that will likely cause cardiopulmonary failure in less than a year. The patient does not want to discuss advance directives (ADs) at this time. His daughter, however, wants him to have an AD in place and asks you as the home care nurse how you feel about his decision.

1. How will you respond to the daughter at this time?
2. Is the patient a candidate for hospice at this time? Why or why not?
3. What symptoms of distress do you anticipate that this patient will likely have and why?
4. What specific needs might he have for palliative care?
5. How will you help plan his care with him?

Because hospice benefits and care generally require a prognosis of 6 months or less, its use is limited. Many people with chronic, serious illness whose prognosis may be longer than 6 months often do not have access to the support services that work so well within the hospice model. In an attempt to address this need, palliative care has evolved.

Palliative care is both a philosophy of care and an organized, structured system for delivering care for people with serious illness who may not meet hospice eligibility criteria. The desired outcome for palliative care is to prevent and relieve suffering and to support the best possible quality of life for patients and their families, regardless of the stage of the disease or the need for other therapies. For older adults, palliation also includes enhancing or supporting functional independence as they transition between levels of care.

SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS AT END OF LIFE**Overview**

As death nears, patients often have signs and symptoms of decline in physical function, manifested as weakness, anorexia, and changes in cardiovascular function, breathing patterns, and GI and genitourinary function. As death nears, peripheral circulation decreases and the patient's skin is often cold, mottled, and cyanotic. Blood pressure decreases and often is only palpable. The dying person's heart rate may increase, become irregular, gradually decrease, and stop. Changes in breathing pattern are common, with breaths becoming very shallow and rapid. Periods of apnea and **Cheyne-Stokes respirations** (apnea alternating with periods of rapid breathing) are also common. Death occurs when respirations and heartbeat stop.

Although these signs and symptoms of physical decline are often disturbing to patients and families, they generally do not cause physical discomfort to the patient. *However, symptoms of distress that cause suffering can occur in patients with cancer and non-cancer diagnoses. Pain, weakness, and breathlessness are the most common symptoms near end of life.*

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults typically receive fewer interventions for their end-of-life symptoms when compared with younger adults. Yet they have the same symptoms that are often more severe because of physiologic changes of aging and multiple chronic illnesses. Some older adults do not report their symptoms because they expect them to be part of the terminal illness or the aging process. Collaborate with the health care team to ensure that these problems are appropriately treated at the end of life. Anticipate symptoms of distress even if older adults cannot or do not verbalize them.

CHART 9-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Common Physical Signs and Symptoms of Approaching Death**Coolness of Extremities**

Circulation to the extremities is decreased; the skin may become mottled or discolored.

- Cover the person with a blanket.
- Do not use an electric blanket, hot water bottle, electric heating pad, or hair dryer to warm the person.

Increased Sleeping

Metabolism is decreased.

- Spend time sitting quietly with the person.
- Do not force the person to stay awake.
- Talk to the person as you normally would, even if he or she does not respond.

Fluid and Food Decrease

Metabolic needs have decreased.

- Do not force the person to eat or drink.
- Offer small sips of liquids or ice chips at frequent intervals if the person is alert and able to swallow.
- Use moist swabs to keep the mouth and lips moist and comfortable.
- Coat the lips with lip balm.

Incontinence

The perineal muscles relax.

- Keep the perineal area clean and dry. Use disposable underpads (Chux) and disposable undergarments.
- If the person would be more comfortable, consider a Foley catheter.

Congestion and Gurgling

The person is unable to cough up secretions effectively.

- Position the patient on his or her side.
- Administer medications to decrease the production of secretions.

Breathing Pattern Change

Slowed circulation to the brain may cause the breathing pattern to become irregular, with brief periods of no breathing or shallow breathing.

- Elevate the person's head.
- Position the person on his or her side.

Disorientation

Decreased metabolism and slowed circulation to the brain may occur.

- Identify yourself whenever you communicate with the person.
- Reorient the patient as needed.
- Speak softly, clearly, and truthfully.

Restlessness

Decreased metabolism and slowed circulation to the brain may occur.

- Play soothing music, and use aromatherapy.
- Do not restrain the person.
- Massage the person's forehead.
- Reduce the number of people in the room.
- Talk quietly.
- Keep the room dimly lit.
- Keep the noise level to a minimum.
- Consider sedation if other methods do not work.

Modified from the Hospice of North Central Florida, Inc.

**PATIENT-CENTERED
COLLABORATIVE CARE****ASSESSMENT**

Obtain information about the patient's diagnosis, past medical history, and recent state of health to identify the risks for symptoms of distress at end of life. For example, people with lung cancer, heart failure, or chronic respiratory disease are at high risk for respiratory distress and dyspnea near death. Those with brain tumors are at risk for seizure activity. Patients with tumors near major arteries (e.g., head and neck cancer) are at risk for hemorrhage. Those who have been experiencing pain often continue to have pain at the end of life, which may increase, decrease, or remain at the same level of intensity.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Near the end of life, the patient often becomes weak and drowsy, often sleeping 23 or more hours of the day. Eventually he or she can become unresponsive. As the patient's ability to speak diminishes, it is difficult to assess his or her perception of symptoms. When caring for those who are unable to communicate their distress or needs, identify alternative ways to assess symptoms of distress. Teach family caregivers to watch closely for objective signs of discomfort (e.g., restlessness, grimacing, moaning) and identify when these symptoms occur in relation to positioning, movement, medication, or other external stimuli (Chart 9-1).

Although the patient's point of view is the most valid indicator of comfort or distress, the family's perception of symptoms is also important. Family caregivers, health care providers, and dying patients may differ in their perceptions of symptoms in terms of intensity, significance, and meaning. Whereas health care providers are often able to identify symptoms of distress, families are often more knowledgeable about the patient's habits and preferences. Incorporate all pertinent information into the plan for symptom management, and work with patients and families toward a common outcome.

Assess any symptom of distress in terms of intensity, frequency, duration, quality, exacerbating (worsening) and relieving factors, and effect on the patient's comfort when awake or asleep. A method for rating the intensity of symptoms should be used to facilitate ongoing assessments and evaluate treatment response. A rating scale of 0 to 10 is commonly used, with 0 indicating no distress and 10 indicating the worst possible distress. The intensity of the symptom before and after an intervention (e.g., medication) is documented by the nurse or the family caregiver and is used daily to evaluate the patient's overall comfort.

Psychosocial Assessment

People facing death may have coping problems, fear, and/or anxiety about their decline and/or impending death. Assess cultural considerations, values, and religious beliefs of the patient and family for their influence on the dying experience,

CHART 9-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Common Emotional Signs of Approaching Death**Withdrawal**

The person is preparing to “let go” from surroundings and relationships.

Vision-like Experiences

The person may talk to people you cannot see or hear and see objects and places not visible to you. These are not hallucinations or drug reactions.

- Do not deny or argue with what the person claims.
- Affirm the experience.

Letting Go

The person may become agitated or continue to perform repetitive tasks. Often this indicates that something is unresolved or is preventing

the person from letting go. As difficult as it may be to do or say, the dying person takes on a more peaceful demeanor when loved ones are able to say things such as “It’s okay to go. We’ll be all right.”

Saying Goodbye

When the person is ready to die and you are ready to let go, saying “goodbye” is important for both of you. Touching, hugging, crying, and saying “I love you,” “Thank you,” “I’m sorry,” or “I’ll miss you so much” are all natural expressions of sadness and loss. Verbalizing these sentiments can bring comfort both to the dying person and to those left behind.

Modified from the Hospice of North Central Florida, Inc.

control of symptoms, and family bereavement. Families of people near death are also likely to manifest fear, anxiety, and knowledge deficits regarding the process of death and their role in providing care.

Assess the patient and family members for their expectations regarding death and for fear and anxiety. Families may have a preconceived notion about the dying process that may or may not be realistic. Explain the common emotional signs of approaching death to the patient and family as described in [Chart 9-2](#).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Some patients, especially older adults, may develop hopelessness, helplessness, depression, and/or suicidal ideation during the dying process. These feelings are not a usual part of the process or aging and should therefore be aggressively treated. Assess the behavior and mood of older adults at the end of life, and collaborate with the health care team to develop an individualized plan of care to manage these feelings. Several excellent assessment tools are available for depression screening. See [Chapter 3](#) for more information on depression screening in older adults.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions to relieve symptoms of distress include positioning, administration of medications, and a variety of complementary and alternative therapies. When medications are used, they are often scheduled around the clock to maintain comfort and prevent reoccurrence of the symptom. The most common end-of-life symptoms are:

- Pain
- Weakness
- Breathlessness/dyspnea
- Nausea and vomiting
- Restlessness and agitation
- Seizures

Pain Management

Pain is the most distressing symptom that dying patients fear the most. Diseases such as cancer often cause tumor pain as a result of the infiltration of cancer cells into organs, nerves, and bones. Other causes of pain in dying patients include

osteoarthritis, muscle spasms, and stiff joints secondary to immobility.

Patients who have had their pain controlled with long-acting opioids continue their scheduled doses of opioids to prevent pain reoccurrence. Depending on the brand of long-acting opioid, oral capsules may be given rectally (same dose and same capsule) when swallowing is impaired. Increases in pain require immediate-relief analgesics (e.g., morphine sulfate immediate-release). Morphine sulfate elixir can be given sublingually, via the buccal mucosa, or rectally. It is quick-acting, effective, and safe to administer, even to comatose patients.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Research shows that pain relief is the priority need of older adults receiving palliative care. But, pain is often underreported and under-treated (Wijk & Grimby, 2008). Opioids should not be withheld from older adults. Instead, reduce starting doses, make dose increases slowly, and monitor for changes in mental status or excessive sedation.

Some experts in palliative care recommend discontinuing routine doses of opioids such as morphine when patients become oliguric or anuric. The rationale is to decrease the risk for delirium that may occur as the result of a failing kidney’s inability to excrete morphine metabolites from the body. This practice is not the standard of care, and the nurse should never discontinue administration of opioids without consulting with experts on end-of-life care.

For patients with known renal failure, fentanyl citrate is a safer opioid alternative to morphine because it lacks active metabolites. [Chapter 5](#) describes in detail the management of chronic malignant and nonmalignant pain.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Nonpharmacologic interventions are often integrated into the pain management plan. Some common approaches are presented here, as well as in [Chapters 2 and 5](#).

Massage has been shown to decrease pain in people with cancer and is one of the most popular complementary services used for patients at end of life. A qualitative study by Beck et al. (2009) found that daily massage also enhances

dignity and helps patients find inner peace when incorporated into the palliative plan of care. This technique involves manipulating the patient's muscles and soft tissue, which improves circulation and promotes relaxation. Patients who are severely weak, arthritic, or advanced age may not tolerate extensive massages but, rather, may benefit from a short treatment to sites of their choice. In working with patients with cancer, use light pressure and avoid deep or intense pressure. Massage should not be done over the site of tissue damage (e.g., open wounds, tissue undergoing radiation therapy), in patients with bleeding disorders, and in those who are uncomfortable with touch.

Music therapy is another complementary therapy used by people near end of life that has been shown to decrease pain. It is thought to decrease pain by promoting relaxation. Select music based on patient preferences.

Therapeutic Touch, which involves moving one's hands through the patient's energy field, has also been shown to relieve pain. Reiki therapy is another type of energy therapy being evaluated for its role in pain and symptom management. Use of Reiki requires a Reiki practitioner who is trained in the method.

Aromatherapy can be used in conjunction with other treatments to relieve pain near end of life. It is thought to decrease pain by promoting relaxation and reducing anxiety. Lavender, capsaicin, bergamot, chamomile, rose, ginger, rosemary, lemongrass, sage, and camphor have been used in palliative care. Some aromas increase nausea and/or vomiting.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client with terminal metastatic bone cancer is receiving palliative care including pain management. What interventions are the most appropriate for the nurse to implement for this client? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Provide pain medication when the client or family requests it.
- B. Use music therapy to help the client relax and decrease anxiety.
- C. Provide soft massage to help the client maintain his dignity.
- D. Help the client assume the best position of comfort.
- E. Use lavender as aromatherapy to help relax the client.

Weakness Management

Patients commonly experience weakness and fatigue as death nears. Weakness combined with decreased neurologic function may impair the ability to swallow (dysphagia). Once the patient is unable to swallow, oral intake should stop. Teach families about the risk for aspiration, and reassure them that anorexia is normal at this stage. Giving fluid or food can actually lead to discomfort. Families may have great difficulty accepting that their loved ones are not being fed and may request that IV fluids be started.

With great sensitivity, reinforce that stopping food and liquid intake and dehydration are natural processes. Inform families that giving fluids can actually increase discomfort in a person with multisystem slowdown. Discomfort from fluid replacement could lead to respiratory secretions (and distress), increased GI secretions, nausea, vomiting, edema, and ascites. Most experts believe that dehydration in the last hours of life (i.e., terminal dehydration) does not cause distress and may stimulate endorphin release that promotes a patient's sense of well-being. One side effect of dehydration that may

be uncomfortable is dry lips and mouth. Apply an emollient to soften the lips, and moisten the mouth and lips with applicators to help prevent and/or relieve this symptom.

Dysphagia near death presents a problem for oral drug therapy. Although some pills may be crushed, drugs such as sustained-release capsules should not be taken apart. Reassess the need for each drug. Collaborate with the prescriber about discontinuing drugs that are not needed to control pain, dyspnea, agitation, nausea, vomiting, cardiac workload, or seizures. In collaboration with a pharmacist experienced in palliative care, identify alternative routes and/or alternative medications to maintain control of symptoms. Choose the least invasive route such as oral, buccal mucosa (inside cheek), transdermal, or rectal. Many oral drugs can be given rectally. The subcutaneous or IV routes are used only if necessary, and the IM route is almost never used at the end of life. These methods are invasive and painful and can cause infection.

Breathlessness/Dyspnea Management

Dyspnea is a subjective experience in which the patient has an uncomfortable feeling of breathlessness, often described as terrifying. It is a common symptom of distress near the end of life, especially among older adults because of decreased oxygen reserves from aging. Patients, families, and health care providers consider it the major cause of suffering at end of life. Dyspnea can be:

- Directly related to the primary diagnosis (e.g., lung cancer, breast cancer, coronary artery disease)
- Secondary to the primary diagnosis (e.g., pleural effusion, metastasis to the lung or pleura)
- Related to treatment of the primary disease (e.g., heart failure caused by chemotherapy, constrictive pericarditis caused by radiation therapy, anemia related to chemotherapy)
- Unrelated to the primary disease (e.g., pneumonia)

Depending on the cause, the pathophysiology of dyspnea can involve:

- Obstructive, restrictive, or vascular disturbances in the airways with tumor or nodal involvement
- Pulmonary congestion secondary to fluid overload and/or cardiac dysfunction
- Bronchoconstriction and bronchospasm as seen with respiratory infection, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), or airway blockage by a tumor
- Decreased hemoglobin-carrying capacity, as with anemia
- Hyperventilation secondary to neuromuscular disease, with limited movement of the diaphragm



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Perform a thorough assessment of the patient's dyspnea. Include onset, severity (e.g., on a 1 to 10 scale), precipitating factors, and quality. Precipitating factors may include time of day, position, anxiety, or emotional distress. Also, ask about other symptoms that occur when dyspnea worsens, such as pain, cough, fever, or dizziness. This information helps with planning an individualized patient plan of care.

Pharmacologic interventions should begin early in the course of dyspnea near death. Nonpharmacologic interventions can be used in conjunction with, but not in place of, drug therapy.

Opioids such as morphine sulfate are the standard treatment for dyspnea near death. They work by (1) altering the perception of air hunger, reducing anxiety and associated oxygen consumption and (2) reducing pulmonary congestion by dilating pulmonary blood vessels. The optimum dose of morphine for breathlessness is generally less than that for pain relief. Patients who have not been receiving opioids are given starting doses of 5 to 6 mg (or less for a frail person) orally every 4 hours during the day and 10 mg at bedtime. If dyspnea is limited to activity, give morphine before the activity up to every 2 hours. Those who are taking morphine or other opioids for pain may need higher doses for breathlessness, at times up to 50% more than their usual dose. If IV access is available, health care providers may prescribe 1 to 2 mg of morphine to be given every 5 to 10 minutes until dyspnea is relieved.

Oxygen therapy for dyspnea near death has not been established as a standard of care for all patients. However, those who do not respond promptly to morphine or other drugs should be tried on oxygen (2 to 6 L by nasal cannula) to assess its effect. Patients often feel more comfortable when the oxygen saturation is greater than 90%. If possible, provide oxygen by nasal cannula (NC) because masks can be frightening. If oxygen is not effective, discontinue it.

Bronchodilators, such as albuterol (Proventil) or ipratropium bromide (Atrovent, Apo-Ipratent 🍀) via a metered dose inhaler (MDI) or nebulizer, may be given for symptoms of bronchospasm (heard as wheezes). *Corticosteroids*, such as prednisone (Deltasone, Winpred 🍀), may also be given for bronchospasm and inflammatory problems within and outside the lung. Superior vena cava syndrome and cancer-related lymphangitis causing dyspnea may also respond to corticosteroids.

People who have fluid overload with dyspnea, crackles on auscultation, peripheral edema, and other signs of heart failure may be given a *diuretic* such as furosemide (Lasix, Uritol 🍀) to decrease blood volume, reduce vascular congestion, and reduce the workload of the heart. Furosemide can be administered by mouth, IV, subcutaneously, or IM. IV push administration, which is effective within minutes, may be preferred for heart failure and pulmonary edema to promote comfortable breathing.

Antibiotics may be indicated for dyspnea from a respiratory infection. A thorough workup for a respiratory infection is not appropriate when death is imminent. However, if signs or symptoms of a respiratory infection occur along with the dyspnea, a trial of an appropriate antibiotic may be considered to make the patient comfortable.

Secretions in the respiratory tract and oral cavity may contribute to dyspnea near death. Loud, wet respirations (referred to as **death rattle**) are disturbing to family and caregivers even when they do not seem to cause dyspnea or respiratory distress. Reposition the patient onto one side to reduce gurgling, and place a small towel under his or her mouth to collect secretions. *Anticholinergics*, such as atropine ophthalmic solution 1% every 4 hours as needed or hyoscyamine (Levsin) every 6 hours are commonly given orally or sublingually to dry up secretions. Scopolamine may also be given transdermally or subcutaneously to reduce secretion production. Oropharyngeal suctioning is not recommended for loud secretions in the bronchi or oropharynx because it is not effective and may only agitate the patient.

Fear and anxiety may be components of respiratory distress at end of life. For this reason, benzodiazepines are commonly given when morphine does not fully control the person's dyspnea. Low-dose lorazepam (Ativan) is administered orally, sublingually, or IV every 4 hours as needed or around the clock.

Nonpharmacologic interventions include:

- Circulating cool air (e.g., via air conditioner and fan)
- Applying wet cloths on the patient's face
- Positioning the patient with the head of the bed up either in a hospital bed or a reclining chair to increase chest expansion
- Encouraging imagery and deep breathing

Insertion of a urinary (Foley) catheter to avoid the need for exertion with voiding may be a comfort measure if the patient or family agrees.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is caring for a client who has severe dyspnea because of end-stage chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Which interventions are the most appropriate to help improve his breathing? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Give the client humidified high-dose oxygen via facemask.
- B. Administer morphine sulfate on an around-the-clock schedule.
- C. Teach the client and family to keep him in a sitting position.
- D. Use a large electric fan to circulate the air.
- E. Keep the room temperature warm to prevent respiratory infection.
- F. Teach the client and family to use bronchodilators as prescribed.

Nausea and Vomiting Management

Although not as common a problem as pain or dyspnea, nausea and vomiting occurs frequently among terminally ill patients during the last week of life. It is particularly common in patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) or breast, stomach, or gynecologic cancers.

Other causes of nausea and vomiting at the end of life include:

- Uremia (increased serum urea nitrogen)
- Hypercalcemia
- Increased intracranial pressure
- Constipation or impaction
- Bowel obstruction

If constipation is identified as the cause, give the patient a biphosphate enema (e.g., Fleet) to release stool quickly. If stool in the rectum cannot be evacuated, a mineral oil enema followed by gentle disimpaction may relieve the patient's distress. Nausea and vomiting related to other causes can be controlled by one or more antiemetic agents such as prochlorperazine (Compazine, Stemetil 🍀), dexamethasone (Decadron, Deronil 🍀, Dexasone 🍀), or metoclopramide (Reglan, Maxeran 🍀). Based on a patient's response, one or more of these drugs may be combined and compounded into rectal suppositories, gels, or oral troches. In addition to providing medications, be sure to remove sources of odors and keep the room temperature at a level that the patient desires.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Aromatherapy using peppermint and rosewood may help relieve nausea for some patients. For other patients, any aroma worsens

their nausea. Aromatherapy using chamomile, camphor, fennel, lavender, peppermint, and rose may reduce or relieve vomiting.

Restlessness and Agitation Management

Agitation at the end of life first requires assessing for pain or urinary retention, constipation, or another reversible cause. If constipation is ruled out as the cause and if analgesia and catheterization do not relieve restlessness, another type of medication is administered. The type of medication chosen is based on the presence or absence of delirium. Delirium is a neuropsychiatric syndrome manifested by changes in level of consciousness, attention, and cognition, with an abrupt onset and a fluctuating course. It is very common in the last weeks of life. *Hypoactive (quiet)* delirium is probably not uncomfortable for patients. *Agitated (noisy)* delirium with emotional and behavioral symptoms (e.g., yelling, hallucinations) can be uncomfortable, especially for family.

Although a diagnostic workup is not appropriate when either type occurs near end of life, health care providers consider possible causes such as the adverse effects of opioids, benzodiazepines, anticholinergics, or steroids. In this case, these agents may be decreased or discontinued, particularly if the drugs were recently started. A low dose of haloperidol (Haldol, Peridol ) , an antipsychotic (also called a *neuroleptic*) drug, is the first-line therapy for terminal agitated delirium. Other antipsychotics may be used if this drug is not effective in managing behaviors. *Do not give the patient more than one antipsychotic drug at a time because of the risk for adverse drug events (ADEs).*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

In a patient with anxiety without signs of delirium, a benzodiazepine such as lorazepam may be tried for agitation or severe restlessness. Place lorazepam (Ativan, Apo-Lorazepam ) elixir or a tablet (0.5-1 mg) dissolved in 0.5 mL of water against the buccal mucosa. Most patients become more relaxed with 2 to 10 mg in 24 hours. To prevent agitation, give the drug every 3 to 4 hours around the clock. Development of increased agitation after receiving benzodiazepine could represent a paradoxical reaction—the opposite action from what is expected. If paradoxical agitation occurs, discontinue the lorazepam immediately and notify the physician. A neuroleptic such as haloperidol (0.5-2 mg IV, subcutaneously, or rectally) is usually given instead.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Music therapy may produce relaxation by quieting the mind and promoting a patient's restful state. Aromatherapy with chamomile may also help overcome anxiety, anger, tension, stress, and insomnia in dying patients.

Seizure Management

Seizures are not common at end of life but may occur with brain tumors, advanced AIDS, and pre-existing seizure disorders. Around-the-clock drug therapy is needed to maintain a high seizure threshold for patients who can no longer swallow antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) and are at risk for seizures. Benzodiazepines, such as diazepam (Valium) and lorazepam (Ativan), are the drugs of choice. For home use, rectal diazepam gel or sublingual lorazepam oral solution (2 mg/mL) is preferred. As a second choice, barbiturates such as phenobarbital may be given rectally, IV, or IM.

Management of the Refractory Symptoms of Distress

Patients receiving opioids for pain or dyspnea and other drugs such as antiemetics or antianxiety agents may experience mild sedation as a side effect to therapy. Depending on the patient and how soon death is expected, this side effect may decrease with time. What is important to understand is that drug therapy for symptoms of distress at end of life is guided by protocols, using medications that are safe, that are used with the intent of alleviating suffering, and that do not cause severe sedation or hasten death. *There is no evidence that administering medications for symptoms of distress using established protocols hastens deaths. The ethical responsibility of the nurse in caring for patients near death is to follow guidelines for drug use to manage symptoms and to facilitate prompt and effective symptom management until death.*

A small percentage of patients have refractory symptoms of distress that do not respond to treatment near the end of life. These patients may be candidates for **palliative sedation**—a care management approach involving the administration of drugs such as benzodiazepines (e.g., midazolam [Versed]), neuroleptics, barbiturates, or anesthetic agents (e.g., propofol [Diprivan]) for the purpose of “lowering of patient consciousness.” *The purpose of palliative sedation is to control symptoms of distress, not hasten the patient's death. The intent to promote comfort and not hasten death makes it different from euthanasia (discussed later in the chapter).*

Because of its promotion of deep sedation, palliative sedation has been controversial. However, with expert consultation, its use is supported by a consensus of experts in palliative care as a comfort therapy of last resort (Kirk et al., 2010).

Psychosocial Management

The personal experience of dying or of losing a loved one through death can be extremely difficult. But unexpected deaths, particularly in young people, tend to be most traumatic for families. When a person has a chronic life-threatening disease, he or she and the family often have some knowledge of the expected outcome. This knowledge and the gift of time may provide patients and families the opportunity to make their wishes known and develop plans of care consistent with their values and needs.

Whereas death is the termination of life, dying is a process. People facing death may demonstrate emotional signs and symptoms of their response to the dying process through behaviors that equate to saying goodbye or through actual withdrawal. Some patients attempt to make families feel better by reassuring them that everything will be fine. Teach families that such behaviors are normal to the process of dying (see [Chart 9-2](#)).

Assisting Patients During the Grieving Process. **Grief** is the emotional feeling related to the perception of the loss. **Mourning** is the outward social expression of the loss. Interventions to assist patients and families in grieving and mourning are based on their cultural beliefs, values, and practices. Some patients and their families express their grief openly and loudly, whereas others are more quiet and reserved. [Table 9-2](#) lists basic beliefs regarding death, dying, and afterlife for some of the major religions.

Nursing interventions are aimed at providing appropriate emotional support to allow patients and their families to verbalize their fears and concerns. Support includes keeping the patient and family involved in health care decisions and

TABLE 9-2 BASIC BELIEFS REGARDING CARE AT END OF LIFE AND DEATH RITUALS FOR SELECTED RELIGIONS**Christianity**

- Eternal life (Heaven) is a gift that is granted to all who accept salvation through Jesus Christ.
- Jesus Christ is believed to be the Son of God, both human and divine and a mediator between God and sinful human beings.
- There are many Christian denominations, which have variations in beliefs regarding medical care near end of life.
- Funerals tend to be highly involved ceremonies with defined rituals; family, friends, and acquaintances of the deceased make an effort to attend.
- Roman Catholics are encouraged to receive Sacrament of the Sick, administered by a priest at any point during an illness. Catholics no longer have Last Rites (Extreme Unction) given at the time of death.
- People may be baptized as Roman Catholics in an emergency situation (e.g., person is dying) by a layperson. Otherwise, they are baptized by a priest.
- Catholic Moral Tradition acknowledges that, in some situations, forgoing of treatment would be morally permissible (Supportive Care Coalition, 2008).

Judaism

- There is a strong belief in the sacredness of life, one God (YHWH), and the importance of community (i.e., belonging to a group).
- God and man are bound together by a covenant.
- Religious beliefs vary. It is not required that all Jewish believers accept all tenets of the Torah (the Five Books of Moses).
- If the person is suffering pain, we have an obligation to alleviate it, even if it contradicts achieving the maximum life span for this person. Torah law sanctions avoiding invasive procedures that do not offer hope of a cure.

- There is a belief that the soul does not completely leave this world until after burial.
- The body, which was the vessel and vehicle to the soul, deserves our reverence and respect.
- The body should not be left unattended until the funeral, which should take place as soon as possible (preferably within 24 hours).
- Autopsies should not be performed, except under special circumstances.
- The body should not be embalmed, displayed, or cremated.
- A 7-day mourning period, called *Shiva*, follows the person's death for the immediate next of kin.

Islam (Muslim)

- Based on belief in one God Allah and his prophet Muhammad. Qur'an is the scripture of Islam, composed of Muhammad's revelations of the Word of God (Allah).
- Life is meant to be a test for the preparation of everlasting life in the hereafter.
- God has prescribed an appointed time of death for everyone.
- Qur'an encourages humans to seek treatment and not to refuse treatment. Belief is that only Allah cures, but that Allah cures through the work of humans.
- Dying person of Muslim faith may wish to lie facing Mecca.
- Upon death, the eyelids are to be closed and the body should be covered. Before moving and handling the body, contact someone from the person's mosque to perform rituals of bathing and wrapping body in cloth.
- Preparation for burial takes place as soon as possible after death.
- Death is seen as the transition to the other side, with Islam being the vehicle that will take one there.

Data from www.chabad.org/jewish/end-of-life.htm and www.deathreference.com/Islam.html.

CHART 9-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE***Psychosocial Interventions for Care of the Dying Patient and the Family***

- Offer physical and emotional support by “being with” the patient.
- Respect cultural preferences.
- Be realistic.
- Encourage reminiscence.
- Promote spirituality.
- Foster hope.
- Avoid explanations of the loss.
- Communicate with the patient.
- Provide referrals to bereavement specialists.
- Teach about the physical signs of death (see [Chart 9-1](#)).
- Ensure that the patient is receiving palliative care, with an emphasis on symptom management.

emphasizing that the patient will remain as comfortable as possible until death. Interventions for providing psychosocial support are summarized in [Chart 9-3](#).

Intervene with those grieving an impending death by “being with” as opposed to “being there.” “Being with” implies that you are physically and psychologically with the grieving patient, empathizing to provide emotional support. Listening and acknowledging the legitimacy of the patient's and/or family's pain are often more therapeutic than speaking; this concept is often referred to as **presence**. Nurses facilitate the expression of grief by giving the person who is mourning permission to express himself or herself. Your manner and words show that these expressions of grief are acceptable and expected. An example of therapeutic communication might be “This must be very difficult for you” or “I'm sorry this is happening.”

A patient's or family member's pain of loss should not be minimized. Avoid trite assurances such as “Things will be fine.

Don't cry,” “Don't be upset. She wouldn't want it that way,” or “In a year you will have forgotten.” Such comments can be barriers to demonstrating care and concern. Accept whatever the grieving person says about the situation, and remain present, be ready to listen attentively, and guide gently. In this way, you can help the bereaved prepare for the necessary reminiscence and integration of the loss.

Storytelling through reminiscence and life review can be an important activity for patients who are dying. **Life review** is a structured process of reflecting on one's life, which is often facilitated by an interviewer. **Reminiscence** is the process of randomly reflecting on memories of events in one's life. The benefits of storytelling through either method provide the ability to attain perspective and enhance meaning. Suggest that the patient and family record autobiographic stories (print or video), write memories in a journal, or develop a scrapbook. Young dying parents often write letters for their children to read when they are older. If the patient does not

have enough energy for these activities, familiar objects such as photographs and favorite jewelry can be used to spark ideas for stories.

Meeting Spiritual Needs. **Spirituality** is whatever or whoever gives ultimate meaning and purpose in one's life that invites particular ways of being in the world in relation to others, oneself, and the universe. **Religion** is affiliation or membership in a particular faith community in which members share a set of beliefs, rituals, morals, and sometimes a health code, centered on a defined higher power, most frequently referred to as God. For some patients, spirituality and religion can help cope with the thought of death, contributing to quality of life during the dying process. Perform a spiritual assessment to identify the patient's spiritual needs and to facilitate open expression of his or her beliefs and needs. A spiritual assessment could start with questions such as "What is important to you?" or "What gives you meaning or purpose in your life?"

CULTURAL AWARENESS

When assessing the spiritual needs of the dying patient, consider end-of-life preferences based on ethnic beliefs and practices. For example, the medicine wheel represents the spiritual journey to find one's own path for indigenous people in many countries, including American Indians (e.g., Cherokee, Navajo, Lakota) and Aboriginal people (e.g., Inuit, First Nations) in Canada and Alaska (also known as *Alaska Natives*). The medicine wheel helps people in these groups maintain balance and harmony within four life dimensions (Clarke & Holtzlander, 2010) (Fig. 9-2). Depending on specific tribal practices and beliefs, the dimensions may be represented by colors, seasons, or directions. Patients in these groups experience life reviews based on the dimensions of the medicine wheel to have a meaningful death.

As part of the dying process, certain tribal ceremonies must also take place for patients to have a peaceful transition into the Spirit World and experience a "good death." One special ceremony involves smudging: Selected tribal medicines are burned, and the smoke is passed over the patient's body to cleanse it.

Be aware that supporting patients and their families within their cultural framework is essential as part of the dying process for all patients. Respect all practices, and allow for privacy during ceremonies and ritual practices.

Some patients do not identify with any religious or spiritual group; some patients are atheist or agnostic. Others who have been alienated from their religious or spiritual community may have difficulty finding meaning in their suffering, or approaching death causes spiritual distress. Possible causes include guilt, regrets, lack of meaning, poor relationships, and fear of the unknown. Acknowledge the patient's spiritual pain, if present, and encourage verbalization. Use a family tree to discuss relationships, fears, hopes, and unfinished business. Explore issues related to forgiveness for possible resolution if needed.

Hope involves picturing a reality that is not yet present and imagining what a situation might be like. This image sets the direction for patients and their families to provide purpose in life and to help them find the strength to go forward, even in the darkest times. *Foster hope for patients and their families by listening and caring, but remain realistic.*

Do not try to explain the loss in philosophic or religious terms. Statements such as "Everything happens for the best" or "God sends us only as much as we can bear" are not helpful when the bereaved person has yet to express feelings of anguish or

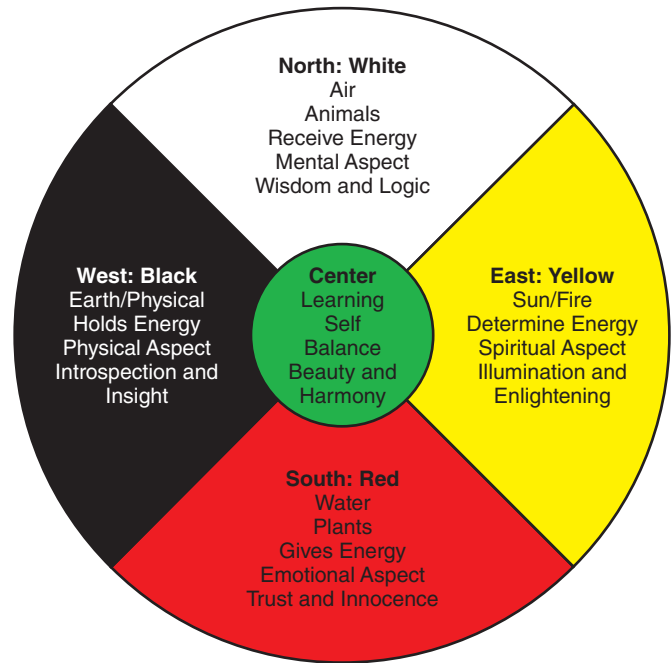


FIG. 9-2 An example of a medicine wheel used by indigenous people to provide harmony and balance in life and transition into the spirit world after death.

anger. Telling someone too soon that he or she has other children to rely on or that other family members need them does not diminish the intensity of the grief. In fact, doing so can create feelings of anger and resentment toward the nurse because it reflects insensitivity to the patient's emotional pain. "Being with" remains important as the weeks or months pass and the funeral crisis supports often disappear. The out-of-town relatives leave, and friends and local relatives resume their own lives. Consider contacting family members after the death to allow them the opportunity to voice their perceptions of the experience. Family caregivers who assumed the role of symptom manager in the home often welcome the opportunity to discuss their experience.

Patients near death are often obtunded or withdrawn from the external environment. However, it is believed that their sense of hearing remains intact until death. *Conversation in the room and near the patient should occur as if he or she is alert.* Encourage caregivers to talk softly to the patient and to touch and gently stroke the skin, if culturally acceptable. Although the dying person may not respond, these actions foster a sense of communication between the patient and the caregiver.

Assisting with Survivor Bereavement. **Bereavement** includes grief and mourning—the inner feelings and outward reactions of survivors. *Inform the patient and family about bereavement counselors who can assist them to cope both before and after the death.* Bereavement counselors are knowledgeable about the grieving process and can be accessed through hospice agencies. Any nurse caring for people who are dying or have died should know how to access this resource.

Participation in bereavement support groups by people who are grieving a person's pending or past death facilitates the grieving process. Being a part of a support group can help

people discover that others have suffered through an experience just as devastating as their own. This discovery makes them more likely to share their feelings with others and work toward some resolution of the experience.

Although emotionally challenging, witnessing the death of a loved one may help facilitate the family to accept death. Witnessing how ill a person is makes the event real and enhances an understanding of how disease affects bodily function and decline. If death is anticipated, use nontechnical language to give the patient and family information about the signs of death. Describe the physical signs in detail—realistic enough to be unmistakable yet not so graphic as to alarm the listeners. [Chart 9-1](#) describes the common signs and symptoms of approaching death, and [Chart 9-2](#) describes the common emotional signs of impending death.

Family and friends who are anticipating the death of a loved one often fear that dying is about pain and suffering. *Reassure families that patients whose symptoms are being well managed before death will likely die comfortably. Patients in health care settings will be monitored closely for any sign or symptom of distress, and appropriate interventions will be administered as needed.* Hospice nurses review signs and symptoms of distress and its treatment with families who are providing direct care in the home, and contact them daily to offer assistance with symptom management. The home care or hospice nurse also emphasizes that he or she is available by phone or e-mail 24 hours a day.

Most people who choose hospice care prefer the home to other environments during the final episodes of illness. Although there are exceptions, being surrounded by familiar people and things, having ready access to friends and family (including pets), and being free from institutional restrictions make the home setting more comfortable and give the person and family more control. If patients are not able to stay at home until death, provide information about the nearest inpatient hospice unit or facility. In these settings, families are allowed to remain with patients. Interdisciplinary hospice team meetings are routinely conducted in both home hospice and inpatient hospice agencies to review the patient's plan of care.

It is not always possible to predict the final phase of the terminal process or the development of symptoms of distress. To address this problem, many hospices have arranged for pharmacies to supply patients and their families with "symptom relief kits." These kits provide a limited amount of commonly used drugs that are effective in treating symptoms near death ([Chart 9-4](#)).

POSTMORTEM CARE

Nurses or family members usually recognize a person has died when they stop breathing. [Chart 9-5](#) lists other physical manifestations of death. If the death was in the home, and expected, emergency assistance is not notified. If the person was a patient in a hospice program, the family calls hospice. If a death is unexpected or suspicious, the medical examiner is notified. Otherwise, the nurse or physician performs the pronouncement and completes a death certificate.

Ask the family or other caregivers if they would like to spend time with the patient to assist them in coping with what has happened and say their good-byes. Even if the death has been anticipated, no one knows how he or she will feel

CHART 9-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Symptom Relief Kit for Patients in Home Hospice

- For unrelieved pain: Morphine solution (20 mg/1 mL solution) 0.25 to 0.5 mL orally or sublingually every 2 to 3 hours as needed.
- For unrelieved dyspnea: Morphine solution (20 mg/1 mL solution) 0.25 to 0.5 mL orally or sublingually every 2 hours as needed.
- For nausea or vomiting: Prochlorperazine 25-mg suppository rectally or 10-mg tablet orally every 6 hours as needed.
- For severe agitation and restlessness:
 - Determine if patient is in pain; treat accordingly.
 - Determine if patient is experiencing urinary retention; insert straight or Foley catheter.
 - Haloperidol 0.5 to 1 mg orally or sublingually every 4 hours.
 - Lorazepam 0.5 mg to 1 mg elixir or tablet dissolved in 0.5 mL water, administered against buccal mucosa every 4 hours to keep patient comfortable. If patient becomes more agitated after lorazepam, discontinue and contact hospice.
- For oral secretions or loud, wet respirations:
 - Atropine sulfate ophthalmic drops 1%, (2 drops orally or sublingually) every 4 hours as needed; or hyoscyamine (Levsin) (0.125-0.25 mg every 6 hours).
 - Scopolamine 1 to 3 transdermal patches every 72 hours.
- For unrelieved pain, dyspnea, nausea, vomiting, agitation, or secretions, call hospice.

CHART 9-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Signs That Death Has Occurred

- Breathing stops.
- Heart stops beating.
- Pupils become fixed and dilated.
- Body color becomes pale and waxy.
- Body temperature drops.
- Muscles and sphincters relax.
- Urine and stool may be released.
- Eyes may remain open, and there is no blinking.
- The jaw may fall open.
- Observers may hear trickling of fluids internally.

until it occurs. It may take hours to days to weeks or months for each person to realize the full effect of the event. Some family members may find it therapeutic to bathe and prepare the person's body for transfer to the funeral home or the hospital morgue. Offer families this opportunity if it is culturally acceptable.

Before preparing the body for transfer, ask the physician whether an autopsy will be ordered. When the death is expected, an autopsy is not likely. But when the physician or family members do not know the cause of death, an autopsy may be performed.

After the family or significant others view the body, follow agency procedure for preparing the patient for transfer to either the morgue or a funeral home. In the hospital, a postmortem kit is generally used with a shroud and identification tags. [Chart 9-6](#) describes best practice guidelines for postmortem care.

CHART 9-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Postmortem Care

- Provide all care with respect, to communicate that the person was important and valued.
- Ask the family or significant others if they wish to help wash the patient or comb his or her hair.
- If no autopsy is planned, remove or cut all tubes and lines according to agency policy.
- Close the patient's eyes.
- Insert dentures if the patient wore them.
- Straighten the patient, and lower the bed to a flat position.
- Place a pillow under the patient's head.
- Wash the patient as needed; comb and arrange the patient's hair.
- Place waterproof pads under the patient's hips and around the perineum to absorb any excrement.
- Clean the patient's room or unit.
- Allow the family or significant others to see the patient in private and to perform any religious or cultural customs they wish (e.g., prayer).
- Assess that all who need to see the patient have done so, before transferring to the funeral home or morgue.
- Notify the hospital chaplain or appropriate religious leader if requested by the family or significant others.
- Ensure that the nurse or physician has completed and signed the death certificate.
- Prepare the patient for transfer to either a morgue or funeral home; wrap the patient in a shroud and attach identification tags per agency policy.

EUTHANASIA

Nurses are usually in the best and most immediate position to discuss end-of-life issues. This includes assisting in the decision-making process regarding immediate or future needs. To do this, nurses must be knowledgeable about terminology and ethical issues related to death and dying (Table 9-3).

Much confusion exists regarding the concept of euthanasia. **Withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy**, formerly called **passive euthanasia**, involves discontinuing one or more therapies that might prolong the life of a person who cannot be cured by the therapy. Another phrase sometimes used is “letting the person die naturally” or “allowing natural death (AND),” as discussed earlier in this chapter. *In this situation, the withdrawal of the intervention does not*

TABLE 9-3 DEFINITIONS OF ETHICAL CONCEPTS RELATED TO ISSUES AT END OF LIFE

Withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy (formerly called **passive euthanasia**) An act of omission (e.g., withholding or withdrawing treatment) that might prolong the life of a person who cannot be cured by the treatment. In this situation, the withdrawal of the intervention does not directly cause the patient's death.

Principle of double effect Involves taking an action intended to have a good effect, which also has a known harmful effect. This is not active euthanasia.

Voluntary active euthanasia An act by which the causative agent or treatment in the death of a patient is administered directly by another.

Involuntary active euthanasia The action to end the patient's life is taken without the patient's consent.

Physician-assisted suicide A practice whereby a physician provides a means (e.g., medication) to a patient with the knowledge that the patient will use the means to commit suicide.

directly cause the patient's death. The progression of the patient's disease or poor health status is the cause of death. Professional organizations (e.g., American Nurses Association, American Medical Association) and religious communities (e.g., the Catholic church) support the right of patients and their surrogate decision makers to refuse or stop treatment (e.g., mechanical ventilation, antibiotics, IV fluids) when patients are close to death and interventions are considered medically futile and/or capable of causing harm. The U.S. court system also supports withdrawal of aggressive treatment and the rights of surrogate decision makers to refuse or stop treatment.

By contrast, **active euthanasia** requires that health care providers take action (e.g., give medication or treatment) that purposefully and directly causes the patient's death. *Active euthanasia is not supported by most professional organizations, including the American Nurses Association. In the states of Oregon and Washington, physician-assisted suicide is legal in certain situations. Nurses should not be involved in active euthanasia or physician-assisted euthanasia. They do, however, play a major role in end-of-life care by advocating for patients' wishes and ensuring quality symptom management and support at the end of life.*

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assess the patient and family to determine if they have written advance directives, such as a durable power of attorney for health care (DPOAHC), a living will, or portable DNR.
- Be aware that nurses have an ethical obligation to provide timely information about expected care outcomes so that patients and families can make the best EOL decisions.
- If needed, teach the patient and family that an advance directive is a written document that specifies what, if any, extraordinary actions that person would want if he or she could no longer make decisions about care.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Be aware that hospice care uses an interdisciplinary approach to assess and address the holistic needs of patients who are dying. Current criteria for Medicare hospice require a prognosis of 6 months or less.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the patient's emotional signs of impending death; assess coping ability of the patient and family or other caregiver.
- Incorporate the patient's personal cultural practices and beliefs regarding death and dying (see [Table 9-2](#)).
- Be aware that older adults who are dying may experience feelings of hopelessness or depression; assess all older adults for indications of these feelings, and collaborate with the health care team to treat them.
- Provide psychosocial interventions to support the patient and family during the dying process, as listed in [Chart 9-3](#).

Physiological Integrity

- Death is defined as the cessation of integrated tissue and organ function, manifested by cessation of heartbeat,

absence of spontaneous respirations, or irreversible brain dysfunction.

- Assess the patient for pain, dyspnea, agitation, nausea, and vomiting, which are common problems at the end of life.
- Recognize that older adults are often underdiagnosed and undertreated for EOL symptoms of distress.
- Assess for the common physical signs of approaching death, as listed in [Chart 9-1](#).
- Medications are frequently given to control dyspnea, pain, nausea and vomiting, and agitation in patients near death (see [Chart 9-4](#)).
- Common complementary and alternative therapies used for symptom management at end of life include aromatherapy, music therapy, and energy therapies, such as Therapeutic Touch.
- Withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy involves withholding treatment that might prolong a patient's life; active euthanasia involves giving a patient a treatment or agent that causes death (see [Table 9-3](#)).



CHAPTER 10

Concepts of Emergency and Trauma Nursing

Linda Laskowski-Jones and Karen L. Toulson

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Describe the emergency department (ED) environment, including vulnerable populations and interdisciplinary team members.
2. Identify the roles and responsibilities of the health care team members in the ED.
3. Plan and implement best practices to maintain staff and patient safety in the ED.
4. Explain selected core competencies that nurses need to function in the ED.
5. Triage patients in the ED to prioritize the order of care delivery.

6. Prioritize resuscitation interventions based on the primary survey of the injured patient.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Describe the role of the ED nurse in providing support for families after the death of a loved one.

Physiological Integrity

8. Describe the general process of admission through disposition of a patient in the ED.
9. Prevent or reduce common risk factors in the ED that contribute to adverse events in older adults.

The demand for emergency care in the United States is growing rapidly. Emergency departments (EDs) function as safety nets for communities of all sizes by providing services to both insured and uninsured patients seeking medical care. They are also responsible for public health surveillance and emergency disaster preparedness. Some hospital-based

emergency departments also provide observation, procedural care, and employee health services (Moskop et al., 2009). The role of the ED is so vital that the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (2010) has a process for designating small rural facilities of 25 inpatient beds or fewer as **critical access hospitals** if they provide around-the-clock emergency care

services 7 days per week. Critical access hospitals are considered *necessary providers of health care* to community residents that are not close to other hospitals in a given region.

Because of the multi-specialty nature of the environment, EDs play a unique role within the U.S. health care system. More than 119 million people visit the ED each year (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2010). The demand for emergency care has greatly increased over the past 15 years, and the health care consumer has higher expectations; however, the capacity to provide necessary resources has not kept pace in most systems. Emergency department crowding occurs when the need for care exceeds available resources in the department, hospital, or both (Howard, 2009).

THE EMERGENCY DEPARTMENT ENVIRONMENT OF CARE

In the emergency care environment, rapid change is the rule. The typical ED is fast paced and, at the height of activity, might even appear chaotic. Patients seek treatment for a number of physical, psychological, spiritual, and social reasons. In general, nurses work in this environment because they dislike routines and thrive in challenging, stimulating work settings. Although most EDs have treatment areas that are designated for certain populations such as patients with trauma or cardiac, psychiatric, or gynecologic problems, care can actually take place almost anywhere. In a crowded ED, patients may receive initial treatment outside of the usual treatment rooms, including the waiting room and hallways.

The ED is typically alive with activity and noise, although the pace decreases at times because arrivals are random. Emergency nurses can expect background sounds that include ringing telephones, monitor alarms, vocal patients, crying children, and radio transmissions between staff and incoming ambulance or helicopter personnel. Interruptions are the norm.

Demographic Data

Staff members in the ED provide care for people across the life span with a broad spectrum of issues, illnesses, and injuries—as well as various cultural and religious values. Especially vulnerable populations who visit the ED include the homeless, the poor, and older adults. During a given shift, for example, the emergency nurse may function as a cardiac nurse, a geriatric nurse, a psychiatric nurse, and a trauma

nurse. Patient acuity runs the range from life-threatening emergencies to minor symptoms that could be addressed in a primary care office or community clinic. Some of the most common reasons that people seek ED care are:

- Abdominal pain
- Chest pain
- Breathing difficulties
- Injuries (especially falls in older adults)
- Headache
- Fever
- Pain (the most common symptom)

Special Nursing Teams

Many EDs have specialized teams that deal with high-risk populations of patients. One example is the forensic nurse examiner team. **Forensic nurse examiners (RN-FNEs)** are educated to obtain patient histories, collect forensic evidence, and offer counseling and follow-up care for victims of rape, child abuse, and domestic violence—also known as *intimate partner violence (IPV)* (Scales et al., 2007). They are trained to recognize evidence of abuse and to intervene on the patient's behalf. Forensic nurses who specialize in helping victims of sexual assault are called *sexual assault nurse examiners (SANEs)* or *sexual assault forensic examiners (SAFEs)*.

Interventions performed by forensic nurses may include providing information about developing a safety plan or how to escape a violent relationship. Forensic nurse examiners document injuries and collect physical and photographic evidence. They may also provide testimony in court as to what was observed during the examination and information about the type of care provided.

The **psychiatric crisis nurse team** is another example of an ED specialty team. Many patients who visit the ED for their acute problems also have chronic mental health disorders. The availability of mental health nurses can improve the quality of care delivered to these patients who require specialized interventions in the ED and can offer valuable expertise to the emergency health care staff. For example, the team evaluates patients with emotional behaviors or mental illness and facilitates the follow-up treatment plan, including possible admission to an appropriate psychiatric facility. These nurses also interact with patients and families when sudden illness, serious injury, or death of a loved one may have caused a crisis. On-site interventions can help patients and families cope with these unexpected changes in their lives.

Interdisciplinary Team Collaboration

The emergency nurse is one member of the large interdisciplinary team who provides care for patients in the ED. A collaborative team approach to emergency care is considered a standard of practice. In this setting, the nurse coordinates care with all levels of health care team providers, from prehospital emergency medical services (EMS) personnel to physicians, hospital technicians, and professional and ancillary staff.

Prehospital Care Providers

Prehospital care providers are typically the first caregivers that patients see before transport to the ED by an ambulance or helicopter (Fig. 10-1). Local protocols define the skill level of the EMS responders dispatched to provide assistance. **Emergency medical technicians (EMTs)** offer basic life

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults usually visit the ED because of worsening of an existing chronic condition or because the condition affects their ability to perform ADLs. Many older adults seek ED services when they are seriously ill because they do not want to “bother” their health care provider with phone calls (Nolan, 2009).

Older adults are also sometimes admitted from nursing home or assisted-living facilities for procedures (e.g., insertion of a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy [PEG] tube or peripherally inserted central catheter [PICC]) or for treatments (e.g., blood transfusions). Some hospitals plan direct admission of the patient to same-day surgery or hold a bed for the procedure or treatment to bypass the ED. This arrangement decreases the patient's wait time and therefore decreases the risks for adverse events, such as pressure ulcer development or hospital-acquired infection.



FIG. 10-1 Advanced life support helicopter arriving at emergency department landing zone. Helicopters are used to rapidly transport critically ill and injured patients to the hospital for emergent care.



FIG. 10-2 Prehospital providers take a patient from the ambulance to be brought into the emergency department.

support (BLS) interventions such as oxygen, basic wound care, splinting, spinal immobilization, and monitoring of vital signs. Some units carry automatic external defibrillators (AEDs) and may be authorized to administer selected drugs such as an EpiPen or nitroglycerin based on established medical protocols. For patients who require care that exceeds BLS resources, paramedics are usually dispatched. **Paramedics** are advanced life support (ALS) providers who can perform advanced techniques, which may include cardiac monitoring, advanced airway management and intubation, establishing IV access, and administering drugs en route to the ED (Fig. 10-2).

The prehospital provider is a key source for valuable patient data. Emergency nurses rely on these providers to be the “eyes and ears” of the health care team in the prehospital setting and to communicate this information to other staff members for continuity of care.

Physicians and Other Health Care Providers

Another integral member of the emergency health care team is the **emergency medicine physician**. These medical professionals receive specialized education and training in emergency patient management. In the past, physicians of all types of skills rotated through the ED. As emergency care became increasingly complex and specialized, emergency medicine became a recognized physician specialty practice, complete with board certification requirements.

The emergency nurse interacts with a number of staff and community physicians involved in patient care but works most closely with emergency medicine physicians. Even though other physician specialists may be involved in ED patient treatment, the emergency medicine physician typically directs the overall care in the department. Many EDs also employ nurse practitioners (NPs) and physician assistants (PAs) to assume designated roles in patient assessment and treatment. Teaching hospitals also have resident physicians who train in the ED. They act in collaboration with or under the supervision of the emergency medicine physician to assist with emergency care delivery.

Support Staff

The emergency nurse interacts on a regular basis with professional and ancillary staff who function in support roles. These personnel include radiology and ultrasound technicians, respiratory therapists, laboratory technicians, social workers, nursing assistants, and clerical staff. Each support staff member is essential to the success of the emergency health care team. The ED nurse is accountable for communicating pertinent staff considerations, patient needs, and restrictions to support staff (e.g., physical limitations, isolation precautions) to ensure that ongoing patient and staff safety issues are addressed. For example, the respiratory therapist can assist the nurse to troubleshoot mechanical ventilator issues. Laboratory technicians can offer advice regarding best practice techniques for specimen collection. During the discharge planning process, social workers or case managers can be tremendous patient advocates in locating community resources, including temporary housing, durable medical equipment (DME), drug and alcohol counseling, health insurance information, and prescription services.

Inpatient Unit Staff

The emergency nurse’s interactions extend beyond the walls of the ED. Communication with staff nurses from the inpatient units is necessary to ensure continuity of patient care. Providing a concise but comprehensive report of the patient’s ED experience is essential for the *hand-off communication* process and patient safety (Mascioli et al., 2009). Information should include the patient’s:

- Situation (reason for being in the ED)
- Brief medical history
- Assessment and diagnostic findings
- Transmission-based precautions needed

- Interventions
- Response to those interventions

The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) (2010) require hospitals and other health care agencies to use a standardized approach to hand-off communications to prevent errors that are caused by poor or inadequate communication. Many agencies use the SBAR method (situation, background, assessment, response) or some variation of that method to ensure complete and clearly understood communication. Chapter 1 discusses the SBAR technique in more detail.

Both emergency nurses and nurses on inpatient units need to understand the unique aspects of their two practice environments to prevent conflicts. For example, nurses on inpatient units may be critical of the push to move patients out of the ED setting quickly, particularly when the unit activity is high. Similarly, the emergency nurse may be critical of the inpatient unit's lack of understanding or enthusiasm for accepting admissions rapidly. Effective interpersonal communication skills and respectful negotiation can optimize teamwork between the emergency nurse and the inpatient unit nurse. For instance, when ED patient volume or acuity is overwhelming, the unit nurse can volunteer to assist the ED nurse by moving a monitored patient to the hospital bed. The emergency nurse may decide to delay sending admitted patients to inpatient units during change of shift or crisis periods such as a cardiac arrest on the unit, whenever possible.

STAFF AND PATIENT SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS

In the emergency department (ED) setting, staff and patient safety are major concerns (Chart 10-1). *Staff safety* concerns center on the potential for transmission of disease and on personal safety when dealing with aggressive, agitated, or violent patients and visitors.

Staff Safety

The emergency nurse uses Standard Precautions at all times when a potential for contamination by blood or other body fluids exists. Patients with tuberculosis or other airborne pathogens are preferentially placed in a negative pressure room if available. The nurse wears a powered air-purifying respirator (PAPR) or a specially fitted facemask before engaging in any close interaction with these patients. Hostile patient and visitor behaviors also pose injury risks to staff members.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Be alert for volatile situations or people who demonstrate aggressive or violent tendencies through verbal abuse or acting out. Be sure to follow the hospital's security plan, including looking for an escape route or attempting de-escalation strategies before harm can occur. Emergency visits resulting from gang or domestic violence can produce particularly hazardous conditions.

Many EDs have at least one security guard present at all times for immediate assistance with these situations. Metal detectors may be used as a screening device for patients and visitors who are suspected of having weapons. Strategically located panic buttons and remote door access controls allow

CHART 10-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Maintaining Patient and Staff Safety in the Emergency Department

SAFETY CONSIDERATION	INTERVENTIONS TO MINIMIZE RISK
Patient identification	Provide an identification (ID) bracelet for each patient. Use two unique identifiers (e.g., name, date of birth). If patient identity is unknown, use a special identification system.
Injury prevention for patients	Keep rails up on stretcher. Keep stretcher in lowest position. Remind the patient to use call light/bell for assistance. Reorient confused patient frequently. If patient is confused, ask a family member or significant other to remain with him or her. Implement skin prevention measures for patient at risk for skin breakdown.
Risk for errors and adverse events	Obtain a thorough patient and family history. Check the patient for a medical alert bracelet or necklace. Search the patient's belongings for weapons or other harmful devices when he or she has altered mental status.
Injury prevention for staff	Use Standard Precautions at all times. Anticipate hostile, violent patient, family, and/or visitor behavior. Plan options if violence occurs, including assistance from the security department.

staff to get help and secure major ED or hospital entrances. The triage reception area—a particularly vulnerable access point into the ED—is often designed to serve as a security barrier with bullet-proof glass (Laskowski-Jones et al., 2005). Hospitals may even employ canine units made up of specially trained officers and dogs to patrol high-risk areas and respond to handle threatening situations (Johnson & Parker, 2009).

Patient Safety

In addition to concerns about staff safety, some of the most common *patient safety* issues are:

- Patient identification
- Fall risk
- Skin breakdown in vulnerable populations
- High risk for medical errors or adverse events

Hospital emergency departments have unique factors that can affect patient safety. These factors include the provision of complex emergency care, constant interruptions, and the need to interact with the many providers involved in caring for one patient.

Correct *patient identification* is critical in any health care setting. All patients are issued an identification bracelet at their point of entry of the ED—generally at the triage registration desk or at the bedside if emergent needs exist. For patients with an unknown identity and those with emergent conditions that prevent the proper identification process

(e.g., unconscious patient without identification, emergent trauma patient), hospitals commonly use a “Jane/John Doe” or another identification system. Whatever method is used, always verify the patient’s identity using two unique identifiers before each intervention and before medication administration per The Joint Commission’s 2010 National Patient Safety Goals. Examples of appropriate identifiers include the patient’s birth date, agency identification number, home telephone number or address, and/or Social Security number.

Fall prevention starts with identifying people at risk for falls and then applying appropriate fall precautions. Patients can enter the ED without apparent fall risk factors, but because of interventions such as pain medication, sedation, or lower extremity cast application, for example, they can become a risk for falls. Falls can also occur in patients with medical conditions or drugs that cause syncope (“black-outs”). Many older adults also experience orthostatic (postural) hypotension as a side effect of cardiovascular drugs. In this case, patients become dizzy when changing from a lying or sitting position.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Help patients move slowly from a supine to an upright position and when ambulating, if needed. Also, confirm that siderails are up and locked on stretchers, that the call bell or light is within reach, and that a patient’s fall risk is communicated clearly to visitors and staff members who may assume responsibility for care.

Older adults who are on beds or stretchers should *always* have all siderails up and the bed or stretcher in the lowest position. Access to a call bell or light is especially important; instruct the patient to call for the nurse if assistance is needed rather than attempt independent ambulation. Many older adults have difficulty adjusting to the noise and pace of the ED and/or have illnesses or injuries that cause delirium, an acute confusional state. Reorient the patient frequently, and re-assess mental status. Undiagnosed delirium increases the risk for mortality for older adults who are admitted to the hospital. Assess the need for a family member, significant other, or sitter to stay with the patient to prevent falls and assist with reorientation. Additional safety strategies are listed in [Chart 10-1](#).

Some patients spend a lengthy time on stretchers while awaiting unit bed availability—possibly as long as 1 to 2 days in hospitals. During that time, basic health needs require attention, including providing nutrition, hygiene, and privacy for all ED patients. Waiting in the ED can cause increased pain in patients with back pain or arthritis.

Protecting skin integrity also begins in the ED. Emergency nurses need to assess the skin frequently and implement preventive interventions into the ED plan of care, especially when caring for older adults or those of any age who are immobilized. Interventions that promote clean, dry skin for incontinent patients, mobility techniques that decrease shearing forces when moving the immobile patient, and routine turning help prevent skin breakdown. [Chapter 27](#) describes additional nursing interventions for preventing skin breakdown.

A significant risk for all patients who enter the emergency care environment is the *potential for medical errors or adverse events*, especially those associated with medication administration. The episodic and often chaotic nature of emergency management in an environment with frequent interruptions can easily lead to errors.

To reduce error potential, the emergency nurse makes every attempt to obtain essential and accurate medical history information from the patient, family, or reliable significant others as necessary. When dealing with patients who arrive with an altered mental status, a quick survey to determine whether the person is wearing a medical alert bracelet or necklace is important to gain medical information. In addition, a two-person search of patient belongings may yield medication containers; the name of a physician, pharmacy, or family contact person; or a medication list. In this case, the nurse serves as a detective to find clues, which may not only promote safety but also help determine the diagnosis and influence the overall emergency treatment plan. Automated electronic tracking systems are also available in some EDs to assist staff in identifying the location of patients at any given time and in monitoring the progress of care delivery during the visit. These valuable safety measures are especially important in large or busy EDs with a high population of older adults (Laskowski-Jones, 2008).

In addition to falls and pressure ulcer development, another adverse event that can result from a prolonged stay in the ED is a *hospital-acquired infection*. Older adults, in particular, are at risk for urinary tract or respiratory infections. Patients who are immune suppressed, especially those on chronic steroid therapy or immune modulators, are also at a high risk. Nurses and other ED personnel need to wash their hands frequently and thoroughly or use hand sanitizers to help prevent pathogen transmission.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Quality Improvement

The case manager and quality improvement coordinator of a large metropolitan ED conducted a retrospective chart review to determine which patient population is most likely to develop pressure ulcers after admission to the hospital from the ED. In your staff meeting, they report that adults older than 80 years admitted from long-term care facilities (nursing homes) and staying 10 hours or more in the ED are most likely to develop pressure ulcers after hospital admission.

1. Why are pressure ulcers common in older adults, especially those living in a nursing home?
2. What plan of action do you think would help decrease the incidence of pressure ulcer development in the identified highest-risk population?
3. What role might you play in implementing this plan as an ED nurse?
4. With what members of the interdisciplinary team might this plan be implemented?
5. What would be a reasonable outcome as a result of your plan of action?

SCOPE OF EMERGENCY NURSING PRACTICE

The scope of emergency nursing practice encompasses management of patients across the life span—from birth through death—and all health conditions that prompt a person of any age to seek emergency care.

Core Competencies

Emergency nursing practice requires that nurses be skilled in patient assessment, priority setting and clinical decision making, multitasking, and communication. A sound knowledge base is also essential. Flexibility and adaptability are vital

traits because situations within the ED, as well as individual patients, can change rapidly.

Like that of any nurse in practice, the foundation of the emergency nurse's skill base is *assessment*. He or she must be able to rapidly and accurately interpret assessment findings according to acuity and age. For example, mottling of the extremities may be a normal finding in a newborn but it may indicate poor peripheral perfusion and a shock state in an adult.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Some older adults may not be able to provide an accurate history because of memory loss or acute delirium. If possible, review their prior hospitalization records to obtain complete histories or ask a family member or friend for pertinent information. Older adults usually have many pre-existing diseases (comorbidities) that must be considered as part of the assessment. *Knowing the history is vital because these conditions might adversely affect or complicate the cause for the ED visit.* For example, a patient who has rib fractures but has a history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) may not be able to maintain adequate oxygenation without endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilatory support in the ED.

Another consideration for older adult assessment is that their presenting symptoms are often different or less specific than those of younger adults. For example, increasing weakness, fatigue, and confusion may be the only admission concerns. These vague symptoms can be caused by serious illnesses, such as an acute MI, urinary tract infection, or pneumonia. Diagnosing older adults often keeps them in the ED for extended periods, which can lead to patient safety concerns as discussed on p. 122.

Another skill for the emergency nurse is *priority setting*, which is essential in the triage process and is described on p. 127. Priority setting depends on accurate assessment, as well as good critical thinking and clinical decision-making skills. These skills are generally gained through hands-on clinical experience in the ED. However, discussion of case studies and the use of human patient simulation and simulation software can help prepare nurses to acquire this skill base in a nonthreatening environment and then apply it in the actual clinical situation (Wolf, 2008).

The knowledge base for emergency nurses is broad and ranges from critical care emergencies to less common problems, such as snakebites and hazardous materials contamination (see [Chapters 11 and 12](#)). ED nurses also learn to recognize and manage the legal implications of societal problems such as domestic violence, elder abuse, and sexual assault.

Although most EDs have physicians available around the clock who are physically located within the ED, the nurse often initiates interdisciplinary protocols for lifesaving interventions such as cardiac monitoring, oxygen therapy, insertion of IV catheters, and infusion of appropriate parenteral solutions. In many EDs, nurses function under clearly defined medical protocols that allow them to initiate drug therapy for emergent conditions such as anaphylactic shock and cardiac arrest. Emergency care principles extend to knowing what essential laboratory and diagnostic tests may be needed and, when necessary, obtaining them.

The emergency nurse must also be proficient in performing a variety of technical skills (multitasking), sometimes in a stressful, high-pressure environment such as a cardiac or trauma resuscitation. In addition to basic skills,

he or she may also need to be proficient with critical care equipment, such as invasive pressure monitoring devices and mechanical ventilators. This type of equipment is commonly found in EDs that are part of Levels I and II trauma centers.

The nurse also assists the physician with a number of procedures. Knowledge and skills related to procedural setup, patient preparation, teaching, and postprocedure care are key aspects of emergency nursing practice. Common ED procedures include:

- Simple and complex suturing for wound closure
- Foreign body removal
- Central line insertion
- Endotracheal intubation and initiation of mechanical ventilation
- Transvenous pacemaker insertion
- Lumbar puncture
- Pelvic examination
- Chest tube insertion
- Peritoneal lavage
- Paracentesis
- Fracture management

More than one nurse may be necessary to assist with some procedures. For example, if moderate sedation is used to produce amnesia and relaxation during fracture reduction, one nurse assists the physician with the actual procedure while the other nurse monitors the patient before, during, and after the moderate sedation medications are administered.

Finally, an essential aspect of the emergency nurse's skill base is *communication*. The ED environment is complex; therefore multiple barriers to effective communication are likely. One common barrier is the patient's cultural beliefs and practices, especially if they differ from those of the health care team. Assess each patient as an individual, and be careful not to stereotype anyone based on his or her ethnicity or religion.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Be aware of the various cultural and religious values of patients that may influence care. Many people have distinct beliefs that must be respected in the health care setting. For example, some Mexican Americans are modest and do not like to have their bodies exposed. They often tend to be very family-oriented and affectionate toward each other.

Patients with language barriers can present a challenge. The Spanish-speaking population in the United States, for instance, is rapidly increasing. When a bilingual staff member is not available to interpret, access resources such as telephone language lines and dedicated interpreters contracted by the hospital.

A religious belief system can also affect the delivery of care. For example, Jehovah's Witness patients do not accept blood transfusions. [Chapter 4](#) describes common belief systems and their impact of patient care.

ED crowding and insufficient nursing personnel to meet the demand for services also create difficulties with communication of pertinent patient information and quality of written documentation. The high-stress ED environment can negatively affect effective interpersonal behaviors, particularly when nurses must deal with angry, violent, or demanding patients.

TABLE 10-1 DESCRIPTIONS OF TRAINING AND CERTIFICATIONS FOR EMERGENCY NURSING

CERTIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Basic Life Support (BLS) (required)	Noninvasive assessment and management skills for airway maintenance and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)
Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) (usually required)	Invasive airway management skills, pharmacology, and electrical therapies, special resuscitation
Pediatric Advanced Life Support (PALS) (may be required)	Neonatal and pediatric resuscitation
Certified Emergency Nurse (CEN) (optional)	Validates core emergency nursing knowledge base

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Safe and Effective Care Environment**

An 88-year-old man is admitted to the ED from home with weakness and acute confusion. What is the nurse's priority for his care to maintain client safety?

- A. Assess his mental status every 30 minutes.
- B. Ensure that siderails are raised on his stretcher.
- C. Check his bowel sounds for intestinal obstruction.
- D. Teach him to move slowly when walking.

Training and Certification

Two general types of certification are referred to in emergency nursing practice: the “certification” that marks successful completion of a particular course of study; and emergency nursing specialty certification (Table 10-1). As part of the orientation and employment requirements for staff nurses in most U.S. EDs, successful completion of the Basic Life Support (BLS) for Healthcare Providers and Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) provider courses through the American Heart Association is necessary. These courses provide instruction in fundamental, evidence-based management theory and techniques for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Course participants include physicians, nurses, and prehospital personnel. BLS emphasizes hands-on noninvasive assessment and management skills to restore an effective airway, breathing, and circulation. The participant performs basic airway maneuvers and CPR. The ACLS course builds on the BLS content to include advanced concepts in cardiac monitoring, invasive airway management skills, pharmacologic and electrical therapies, intravascular access techniques, special resuscitation situations, and post-resuscitation management considerations.

EMERGENCY NURSING PRINCIPLES**Triage**

ED **triage** is an organized system for sorting or classifying patients into priority levels depending on illness or injury severity. The organization of emergency care and the ED is

structured through triage principles. The key concept is that patients who present to the ED with the highest acuity needs receive the quickest evaluation, treatment, and prioritized resource utilization such as x-ray studies, laboratory work, and computed tomography (CT) scans. These patients also have priority for hospital service areas, such as the operating room or cardiac catheterization laboratory. A person with a lower acuity problem may wait longer in the ED because the higher acuity patient is moved to the “head of the line.” The staff may need to explain this system to the patient and family who may not understand why other patients are treated first.

The triage nurse is the gatekeeper in the emergency care system. When patients present to the ED, regulatory standards dictate that a registered nurse (RN), physician, or physician assistant (PA) perform a rapid assessment to determine triage priority. However, the RN is typically the person assigned to perform the triage function in most hospitals. The triage nurse requires appropriate training and experience in both emergency nursing and triage decision-making concepts. In some instances, the triage nurse may seek the input of an emergency physician, advanced practice nurse (e.g., nurse practitioner [NP]), or PA to help establish the acuity level if the patient's presentation is highly unusual.

Based on the triage priority, patients may be rushed into a treatment room, directed to a lower acuity area within the ED, or asked to sit in the waiting room. Variations on this theme include:

- Triage nurse–initiated protocols for laboratory work or diagnostic studies that may be performed before the patient is actually evaluated by a physician
- Initiation of care while the patient is on a stretcher in the hallway of a crowded ED

These protocols are especially beneficial for certain populations who require rapid diagnosis and treatment within a defined time frame from ED arrival to meet established standards of care. Examples are patients with chest pain or those with a clinical presentation that seems to indicate stroke or pneumonia (VanHoy & Laskowski-Jones, 2006).

Emergent, Urgent, and Nonurgent Categories

Many triage systems can be used by a hospital ED. Any system must be applied consistently by triage nursing staff and endorsed by the emergency medicine physician staff. Based on the severity of the patient's condition, a well-known triage scheme used in the United States is the three-tiered model of “emergent, urgent, and nonurgent” (Table 10-2). In this system, for example, a patient experiencing crushing substernal chest pain, shortness of breath, and diaphoresis would be classified as emergent and triaged immediately to a treatment room within the ED. Similarly, a critically injured trauma patient or a person with an active hemorrhage would also be prioritized as emergent (Fig. 10-3). The **emergent triage** category implies that a condition exists that poses an immediate threat to life or limb.

The **urgent triage** category indicates that the patient should be treated quickly but that an immediate threat to life does not exist at the moment. Reassessment is needed if a physician cannot evaluate the patient in a timely manner. In people with evidence of clinical deterioration, triage priority may be upgraded from urgent to emergent. Examples of patients who typically fall into the urgent category are those with a new onset of pneumonia (as long as respiratory failure

TABLE 10-2 THREE-TIERED TRIAGE SYSTEM AND EXAMPLES OF PATIENTS TRIAGED IN EACH TIER

TIER LEVEL	EXAMPLES OF PATIENTS TRIAGED IN EACH TIER
Emergent (life threatening)	Respiratory distress Chest pain with diaphoresis Active hemorrhage Unstable vital signs
Urgent (needs quick treatment, but not immediately life threatening)	Severe abdominal pain Renal colic Displaced or multiple fractures Complex or multiple soft tissue injuries New-onset respiratory infection, especially pneumonia in older adults
Nonurgent (could wait several hours if needed without fear of deterioration)	Skin rash Strains and sprains "Colds" Simple fracture



FIG. 10-3 Emergency team assessing emergent triaged patient.

does not appear imminent), renal colic, complex lacerations not associated with major hemorrhage, displaced fractures or dislocations, and temperature greater than 101° F (38.3° C). Those categorized as **nonurgent** can generally tolerate waiting several hours for health care services without a significant risk for clinical deterioration. Conditions within this classification include patients with sprains and strains, simple fractures, "cold" symptoms, and skin rashes.

Other Multi-Tiered Models

To further sort patient conditions within an acuity classification or triage priority system, four- and five-tier triage models also exist. Such models are based either on comprehensive lists of conditions that indicate the particular triage priority to which a patient should be assigned or on the nature of resources that a patient will use in the ED setting. A patient situation may generate various triage classifications in different hospitals depending on the triage priority system used at that particular institution. Some schemes may even take into account the presence of pre-existing conditions such as a

history of anticoagulant use, diabetes, heart disease, and organ transplantation.

It is surprising that there is no universally accepted triage system recognized in the United States. Thus there is no standardization of triage acuity data to compare patient acuity among hospitals. Medical providers, health insurance companies, and patients often disagree on the definition of an emergent versus a nonurgent ED visit, making it essential to use a practical triage system to maintain department efficiency (Huryk, 2006). The Emergency Nurses Association in collaboration with the American College of Emergency Physicians studied the available research literature on acuity scales and concluded that two standardized five-level systems, the **Emergency Severity Index (ESI)** and the **Canadian Triage Acuity Scale (CTAS)**, are the most reliable (Fernandes et al., 2005). The ESI model uses an algorithm that fosters rapid, reliable, and clinically pertinent categorization of patients into five groups, from level 1 (emergent) to level 5 (nonurgent). The CTAS model differs from ESI in that lists of descriptors are used to establish the triage level.

Whatever triage model is used, triage nurses must employ a systematic approach, apply solid clinical decision-making skills, and maintain a caring ethic. Compassion fatigue, or burn-out, can hinder objectivity in dealing with patients who present to the ED. A biased approach threatens the ED nurse's ability to triage patients accurately. Mistriage is a patient safety risk that can be the "root cause" of delayed or inadequate treatment with potentially deadly consequences.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse assesses five clients who were just admitted to the ED. Triage these clients in the order that they should receive care.

- ☐ A. 27-year-old with flu-like symptoms
- ☐ B. 47-year-old with an abdominal gunshot wound
- ☐ C. 55-year-old with crushing chest pain
- ☐ D. 72-year-old with a possible hip fracture
- ☐ E. 90-year-old with a probable urinary tract infection

Disposition

At the conclusion of the assessment, the physician must make a decision regarding patient disposition (i.e., where the patient should go after being discharged from the ED). Should the patient be admitted to the hospital, transferred to a specialty care center, or be discharged to home with instructions for continued care and follow-up? Usually, the answer is straightforward. A patient who has an evolving myocardial infarction, stroke, or acute surgical need is admitted.

Sometimes, though, the ED disposition decision is less clear. Often the emergency nurse and physician discuss this decision collaboratively. The nurse may have a greater sense of how well a patient will manage in a home setting depending on whether other family members or friends are available to assist and are reliable. For example, in the event a patient with a minor head injury has suffered a loss of consciousness, someone is typically expected to remain with that person for the first 12 to 24 hours to be sure that he or she does not show any evidence of neurologic deterioration. Another common scenario involves the potential risk to the patient in cases of actual or suspected domestic violence. If discharge to home is not deemed safe, the patient may be admitted to the hospital

in an observation status until resources can be organized to provide for a safe environment. Coordinate the discharge plan and continuing care with the social worker or case manager.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

If discharge from the ED to home is possible, ensure that safety issues are considered. For example, evaluate the patient's prescription and over-the-counter medications to determine if the drug regimen should be continued. If not, be sure that the patient and family member or significant other has the new information in writing and that it is explained verbally. If needed, assess whether the patient has someone who can pre-pour weekly medications to ensure accuracy and prevent adverse drug events.

To prevent future ED visits, screen older adults per agency policy for functional assessment, cognitive assessment, and risk for falls. Depression screening is also important because suicide rates are two times higher among older adults when compared with younger adults. White men older than 85 years are at the highest risk (Nolan, 2009).

More than half of all older patients are admitted to the hospital directly from the ED (Nolan, 2009). If hospitalization is needed, determine if the patient has advance directives or is able to make decisions about advance directives before admission. If the patient was admitted from a nursing home, contact the facility to let them know the patient's status. If the patient was receiving home health services, notify the agency about the hospital admission. Contact the patient's primary physician and designated family member if he or she is not present with the patient.

Case Management

Some EDs employ registered nurse case managers who screen ED patients and intervene when necessary to arrange appropriate referral and follow-up. This is an evolving role in the ED setting that can be beneficial in providing comprehensive care and as a strategy to avoid inappropriate use of resources.

ED case managers, supported by electronic information systems, can review the ED census on both a "real-time" and a retrospective basis to determine which patients have visited the ED frequently in a given period. The case manager can then determine the reasons they sought emergency services, such as lack of a primary health care provider, exacerbation ("flare-up") of a chronic condition, or lack of health education. Case management interventions include facilitating referrals to primary care providers who are accepting new patients or to subsidized community-based health clinics for patients or families in need of routine services.

For those with needs related to chronic conditions, the case manager can arrange referral into appropriate disease management programs in the community if available. Disease management programs are specific to a particular condition such as asthma, COPD, diabetes, hypertension, heart failure, and renal failure. They help patients learn how to manage their condition on a day-to-day basis to prevent exacerbations or clinical deterioration. The desired outcome is to keep the person out of the hospital as long as possible. Health teaching is a key component of these programs. For other health teaching needs, the ED case manager directs the patient to the appropriate educational resources such as a health educator, registered dietitian, or community organization (e.g., the American Cancer Society, the American Heart Association).

Other functions of the ED case manager might include working with staff to plan disposition for homeless people,

locating a safe environment for victims of domestic violence or elder abuse, or providing information on resources for low-cost or free prescriptions. Homeless adults often have multiple chronic medical illnesses for which they visit emergency departments frequently. A large study of homeless adults with chronic medical illnesses demonstrated a decrease in ED visits and hospital admissions as a result of an organized follow-up system for housing and ongoing case management support (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 130).

Patient and Family Education

A key role of the emergency nurse is health teaching. At the most basic level, nurses review discharge instructions with the patient and family before signing them out of the department.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Most discharge instructions are either preprinted or computer generated and can be customized to address the patient's needs. Consider his or her reading level, primary language, and visual acuity. Educational materials and instructions should be available at no higher than the 6th-grade reading level. For patients who have English as a second language, many hospitals have educational materials available in Spanish and other regional languages. However, interpreters may be necessary to assist the health care provider customize the information appropriately. For older adults and others with vision deficits, large-print materials may be helpful.

In addition to discharge instructions, the ED environment and community-at-large present many opportunities for health education. Emergency nurses are in an ideal position to educate the public about wellness and injury-prevention strategies. If the patient presented after a motor vehicle crash, for instance, the nurse can reinforce the need to wear seat belts or use child safety seats correctly. ED visits that result from mishaps in the home provide an excellent opportunity to discuss home safety issues (e.g., the need for smoke detectors and carbon monoxide detectors) and fall prevention tips (e.g., the need for proper lighting, removal of throw rugs). Injury is not the only topic that affords a teaching opportunity. A new onset or an exacerbation of a medical condition also allows for education, such as how to measure blood glucose and ways to control blood pressure or reduce the risk for heart disease.

Death in the Emergency Department

Not all critically ill or injured patients who come to the ED can be saved. Sometimes a patient's death is expected by family members, typically when they have dealt with a loved one's terminal condition or age-related decline. Usually, however, a death in the ED is a sudden and unexpected event that produces a state of crisis and chaos for family and significant others. Emergency department staff members need to address the needs of the family members in this overwhelming time.

If resuscitation efforts are still underway when the family arrives, one or two family members may be given the opportunity to be present during lifesaving procedures. Family presence during resuscitation is gaining wider acceptance in the health care community.

If the patient has died by the time family members arrive, ED staff members must try to prepare the body and the room

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Reducing ED Visits By Homeless Adults

Sadowski, L.S., Kee, R.A., VanderWeele, T.J., & Buchanan, D. (2009). Effect of a housing and case management program on emergency department visits and hospitalizations among chronically ill homeless adults. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301(17), 1771-1778.

Homeless adults, especially those with chronic medical illnesses, are frequent users of ED and hospital services. The researchers conducted a randomized controlled trial study at a public teaching hospital and a private nonprofit hospital in Chicago. Participants in the study were 407 social worker-referred homeless adults with chronic illnesses who used ED services and were hospitalized over a 3-year period.

The study group received transitional housing after hospital discharge followed by placement in long-term housing. Case management services were also offered at hospital, transitional housing, and stable housing sites. The non-study group received usual discharge planning through hospital social services. The results clearly demonstrated that housing and case management interventions reduced ED visits by 24% and subsequent hospitalizations by 29% over 18 months. There were no significant differences between hospital outcomes.

Level of Evidence: 1

The strengths of this study are the rigorous design using randomization and a large sample that followed patients over a long period of time.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

ED nurses are involved in quality improvement activities, including ways to decrease ED visits or recurrent visits by patients who are chronically ill. The homeless are frequent users of ED services who rely solely on the hospital for medical and nursing care. Follow-up resources and systems to assist vulnerable populations, such as the homeless, need to be developed to improve quality care and decrease medical costs from multiple hospital stays.

for viewing by the family. However, certain types of ED deaths may require forensic investigation or become medical examiner's cases. Therefore ED staff may not be able to remove IV lines and indwelling tubes or clean the patient's skin if these actions could potentially damage evidence. Trauma deaths, suspected homicide, or abuse cases always fall into this category. In these situations, covering the body with a sheet or blanket while leaving the patient's face exposed and dimming the lights may be all that can be done in the ED before family viewing.

When dealing with family members in crisis, communication that is simple and concrete is best. Words such as *death* or *died*, although seemingly harsh, create less confusion than terms such as *expired* or *passed away*. Demonstrate caring, compassion, and empathy during all interactions, even in periods of heightened emotions. Intense grief can provoke a range of family reactions from silence to violence. If available, coordinate with crisis staff (social workers or psychiatric nurses) to assist families during this time. Offer the family the option of speaking with clergy or calling someone of their choice for additional support. A family member may need to be admitted to the ED to be treated for anxiety or physical manifestations of stress such as chest pain, difficulty breathing, or severe headache.

Dealing with death is often difficult for ED personnel, especially during busy periods when the ability to console family members may be limited. In response, some emergency departments have developed bereavement committees that focus on meeting the needs of grieving families. Activities such as sending sympathy cards, attending funerals, making follow-up phone calls, and creating memory boxes are common. These actions help communicate caring and compassion after the moment of crisis.

TRAUMA NURSING PRINCIPLES

The general public tends to use the term *trauma* to mean any type of crisis ranging from a heart attack to psychological stress. Among health care professionals, though, **trauma** refers to bodily injury. More than 180,000 people in the United States die each year as a result of injuries, and nearly 2 million are hospitalized, often with permanent and disabling consequences (National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, 2010). Injuries can be categorized as either intentional (i.e., assault, homicide, suicide) or unintentional (i.e., accidents). *Unintentional injury*, such as a motor vehicle crash, is the leading cause of death for Americans younger than 35 years and is one of today's most significant public health problems (National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, 2010).

Injury management is a key component of emergency department services. About 30 million people in the United States visit the ED each year to receive treatment for injuries (National Center for Injury Prevention and Control, 2010). Therefore an important part of emergency nursing practice is a core competency in general trauma care. For emergency nurses who work in accredited trauma centers, opportunities typically exist to further develop expertise in trauma nursing through ongoing clinical practice, specialty training programs, and continuing education. Trauma nursing is a field that encompasses the continuum of care from injury prevention and prehospital services, to acute care, rehabilitation, and, ultimately, community reintegration.

Trauma Centers and Trauma Systems

Trauma centers have their roots in military medicine. Injured soldiers who received rapid transport from the battlefield and treatment from skilled health care personnel had a survival advantage in the mobile army surgical hospital (MASH) units first deployed in the Korean and Vietnam wars. Consequently, the MASH unit became the original model for the development of civilian trauma centers. Today's **trauma center** in the United States is a specialty care facility that provides competent and timely trauma services to patients, depending on its designated level of capability.

Trauma Centers

Not all EDs that offer around-the-clock emergency services are trauma centers. The American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma (2006) has set forth national standards for trauma center accreditation and categorizes the resource requirements necessary for the highest capability trauma center (Level I) to the lowest (Level IV) (Table 10-3).

A **Level I trauma center** is a regional resource facility that is capable of providing leadership and total care for every aspect of injury, from prevention through

TABLE 10-3 LEVELS AND FUNCTIONS OF TRAUMA CENTERS

LEVELS OF TRAUMA CENTER	FUNCTIONS OF TRAUMA CENTER
Level I	Usually located in large teaching hospital systems in densely populated areas. Provides full continuum of trauma care for all patients.
Levels II and III	Both located in community hospitals. Level II provides care to most injured patients; Level III stabilizes patients with major injuries. Both levels often transport patients to higher trauma center levels if patient needs exceed resource capabilities.
Level IV	Located in rural and remote areas. Provides advanced life support. Transports to higher trauma center levels when able.

rehabilitation. These centers also have a responsibility to offer professional and community education programs, conduct research, and participate in system planning. Because a significant resource and experience commitment is required to maintain strict accreditation standards, Level I trauma centers are usually located in large teaching hospitals and serve dense population areas.

Level II trauma centers are usually located in community hospitals and are capable of providing care to the vast majority of injured patients. However, a Level II trauma center may not be able to meet the resource needs of patients who require very complex injury management, such as those in need of advanced surgical care. These people are generally transferred to a Level I trauma center for specialty care. In communities without a Level I trauma center, Level II centers play a significant leadership role in injury management, education, prevention, and emergency preparedness planning.

A **Level III trauma center** is a critical link to higher capability trauma centers in communities that do not have ready access to Level I or Level II centers. The primary focus is injury stabilization and patient transfer. Level III trauma centers are usually found in smaller, rural hospitals and serve areas with low population density. Because Level III trauma centers have general surgeons and orthopedic surgeons immediately available, patients with some major injuries may be admitted for care. However, if the injuries are severe or critical, transfer to a Level I or II trauma center occurs after ED assessment, resuscitation, and stabilization—sometimes after emergent, lifesaving surgery. Patients are typically transported out in either an advanced life support ambulance or helicopter with critical care transport personnel in attendance.

The function of a **Level IV trauma center** is to offer advanced life support care in rural or remote settings that do not have ready access to a higher-level trauma center, such as a ski area. Patients are stabilized to the best degree possible before transfer, using available personnel such as advanced practice nurses, physician assistants, nurses, and paramedics. Resources, including the consistent availability of a physician, may be extremely limited. Transport time to the final care

center can be prolonged because of both distance and bad weather conditions that may prevent transfer by air.

Level III and Level IV trauma centers establish close working relationships with Level I and Level II trauma centers. Based on accreditation standards, care providers at Levels I and II trauma centers have a responsibility to readily accept injured patients in transfer. They provide timely feedback to trauma personnel at referring hospitals and share expertise by offering educational opportunities to advance trauma care delivery in the region. In addition, personnel from all levels of trauma centers participate in focused system improvement and patient safety initiatives that enhance quality of care and solve identified problems.

Trauma Systems

Trauma centers save lives—but a trauma center is only as good as the overall trauma system that supports it. A **trauma system** is an organized and integrated approach to trauma care designed to ensure that all critical elements of trauma care delivery are aligned to meet the injured patient's needs. These elements include (Cooper & Laskowski-Jones, 2006):

- Access to care through communication technology (e.g., an enhanced 911 service)
- Timely availability of prehospital emergency medical care
- Rapid transport to a qualified trauma center
- Early provision of rehabilitation services
- System-wide injury prevention, research, and education initiatives

The overall desired outcome of an organized trauma system is to enable an injured patient not only to recover from trauma but also to return to a productive role in society.

A well-functioning trauma system is also essential to general public health and safety. It provides the structure necessary for disaster readiness and community emergency preparedness (see [Chapter 12](#)). Although most states now have at least some basic elements of a trauma system in place, significant gaps still exist in many regions.

Mechanism of Injury

The **mechanism of injury (MOI)** describes how the patient's traumatic event occurred, such as a high-speed motor vehicle crash, a fall from a standing height, or a gunshot wound to the torso. Knowing key details about the MOI can provide insight into the energy forces involved and may help trauma care providers predict injury types and, in some cases, patient outcomes. Prehospital care providers report the MOI as a communication standard when handing off care to ED and trauma personnel. Similarly, patients who present to the ED for medical care will often relate the MOI by describing the particular chain of events that caused their injuries.

Two of the most common injury-producing mechanisms are blunt trauma and penetrating trauma. **Blunt trauma** results from impact forces like those sustained in a motor vehicle crash, a fall, and an assault with fists, kicks, or a baseball bat. **Blast effect** from an exploding bomb also causes blunt trauma. The energy transmitted from a blunt trauma mechanism, particularly the rapid **acceleration-deceleration** forces involved in high-speed crashes or falls from a great height, produces injury by tearing, shearing, and compressing

anatomic structures. Trauma to bones, blood vessels, and soft tissues occurs.

Penetrating trauma is caused by injury from sharp objects and projectiles. Examples are wounds from knives, ice picks, and other comparable implements, as well as bullets or pellets. Fragments of metal, glass, or other materials that become airborne in an explosion (shrapnel) can also produce penetrating trauma. Each mechanism has the risk for specific injury patterns and severity that the trauma team considers when planning diagnostic evaluation and management strategies. Certain injury mechanisms, such as a gunshot wound to the chest or abdomen or a stab wound to the neck, are so highly associated with life-threatening consequences that they automatically require trauma team intervention for a rapid and coordinated resuscitation response.

Primary Survey and Resuscitation Interventions

A basic tenet of emergency care in any environment is scene safety. In the prehospital setting, emergency care providers must ensure that they are aware of any hazards that might pose a threat to rescuers and take actions to decrease or eliminate the risk. This same concept applies to the hospital ED setting. Before engaging in trauma resuscitation as a nurse member of the trauma team, keep in mind that there is a high risk of contamination with blood and body fluids. For this reason, use Standard Precautions in *all* resuscitation situations and at other times when exposure to blood and body fluids is likely. Proper attire consists of an impervious cover gown, gloves, eye protection, a facemask, and surgical cap, as well as shoe covers (if *significant* blood loss is anticipated, such as during an ED procedure).

The initial assessment of the trauma patient is called the **primary survey**, which is an organized system to rapidly identify and effectively manage immediate threats to life. The primary survey is based on a standard “ABC” mnemonic plus a “D” and “E” for trauma patients: airway/cervical spine (A); breathing (B); circulation (C); disability (D); and exposure (E). Resuscitation efforts occur simultaneously with each element of the primary survey (American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, 2008; Laskowski-Jones, 2009). Even though the resuscitation team may encounter multiple clinical problems or injuries, issues identified in the primary survey are managed before the team engages in interventions of lower priority, such as splinting fractures and dressing wounds.

A: Airway/Cervical Spine

Like for any patient, the highest priority intervention is to establish a patent airway. Even minutes without an adequate oxygen supply can lead to brain injury that can progress to anoxic brain death.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Clear the airway of any secretions or debris either with a suction catheter or manually if necessary. Protect the cervical spine in any trauma patient with the potential for spinal injury by manually aligning the neck in a neutral, in-line position and using a jaw-thrust maneuver when establishing an airway. Provide supplemental oxygen for all patients who require resuscitation.



FIG. 10-4 Emergency department trauma resuscitation room. Wearing Standard Precautions attire, trauma team members prepare to intubate the injured patient.

In general, a non-rebreather mask is best for the spontaneously breathing patient. Bag-valve-mask (BVM) ventilation with the appropriate airway adjunct and a 100% oxygen source is indicated for the person who needs ventilatory assistance during resuscitation. A patient with significantly impaired consciousness requires an endotracheal tube and mechanical ventilation (American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, 2008) (Fig. 10-4).

B: Breathing

After the airway is successfully secured, breathing becomes the next priority in the primary survey. *This assessment determines whether or not ventilatory efforts are effective—not only whether or not the patient is breathing.* Listen to breath sounds and evaluate chest expansion, respiratory effort, and any evidence of chest wall trauma or physical abnormalities. Both apneic patients and those with poor ventilatory effort need BVM ventilation for support until endotracheal intubation is performed and a mechanical ventilator is used. If cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) becomes necessary, the mechanical ventilator is disconnected and the patient is manually ventilated with a BVM device. Lung compliance can be assessed through sensing the degree of difficulty in ventilating the patient with the BVM.

Another lifesaving intervention that may be performed in this phase is chest decompression using a needle or chest tube

thoracostomy to vent trapped air. The main indication for chest decompression is clinical evidence of a tension pneumothorax, which can pose a critical threat to both breathing and circulation. Symptoms include:

- Decreased to absent breath sounds over the affected side
- Respiratory distress
- Hypotension
- Jugular vein distention
- Tracheal deviation (late symptom)

If unrelieved, a tension pneumothorax causes mediastinal shift, cardiovascular collapse, and death. Causes of tension pneumothorax include barotrauma from BVM ventilation or other positive-pressure ventilation, blunt or penetrating chest trauma, and progression of a simple pneumothorax. Further information on types and management of pneumothorax are discussed in [Chapter 34](#).

C: Circulation

When effective ventilation is ensured, the priority shifts to circulation. The adequacy of heart rate, blood pressure, and overall perfusion becomes the focus of the assessment. Common threats to circulation include cardiac arrest, myocardial dysfunction, and hemorrhage leading to a shock state. Interventions are targeted at restoring effective circulation through cardiopulmonary resuscitation, hemorrhage control, IV vascular access with fluid and blood administration as necessary, and drug therapy. *External hemorrhage is usually quite obvious and best controlled with firm, direct pressure on the bleeding site with thick, dry dressing material. This method is effective in decreasing blood flow for the majority of wounds—even those caused by amputations (Laskowski-Jones, 2009). Thus tourniquets that occlude arterial blood flow distal to the injury are best reserved to control bleeding when hemorrhage is so severe that the risk to limb viability is justified to save a life. Internal hemorrhage is a more hidden complication that must be suspected in injured patients or those who present in a shock state.*

In a resuscitation situation, blood pressure can be quickly and easily estimated before a manual cuff pressure can be obtained by palpating for the presence or absence of peripheral and central pulses:

- Presence of a radial pulse: BP at least 80 mm Hg systolic
- Presence of a femoral pulse: BP at least 70 mm Hg systolic
- Presence of a carotid pulse: BP at least 60 mm Hg systolic

By the time hypotension occurs, compensatory mechanisms used by the body in an attempt to maintain vital signs in a shock state have been exhausted. Timely, effective intervention is critical to preserve life and vital organ function.

IV access is best achieved initially with insertion of large-bore (16-gauge) peripheral IV lines in the antecubital area (inside bend of the elbow). Additional access can be obtained via central veins in the femoral, subclavian, or jugular sites using large-bore (8.5 Fr) central venous catheters. Intraosseous access is an excellent initial approach for critically ill patients when veins cannot be rapidly accessed by the resuscitation team (see [Chapter 15](#) for discussion of intraosseous infusion therapy). Resuscitation solutions of choice are Ringer's lactate and 0.9% normal saline (NS). Fluids and blood products should be warmed before administration to prevent hypothermia. A good rule of thumb is to consider the need

for blood product administration in a hemorrhagic shock state when significant hypotension persists after infusion of 2 L of solution.

D: Disability

The disability examination provides a rapid baseline assessment of neurologic status. A simple method to evaluate level of consciousness is the “AVPU” mnemonic:

- A: Alert
- V: Responsive to voice
- P: Responsive to pain
- U: Unresponsive

Another common way of determining and documenting level of consciousness is the [Glasgow Coma Scale \(GCS\)](#), an assessment that scores eye opening, verbal response, and motor response. The lowest score is 3, which indicates a totally unresponsive patient; a normal GCS score is 15. Metabolic abnormalities (e.g., severe hypoglycemia), hypoxia, neurologic injury, and illicit drugs or alcohol can impair level of consciousness. Frequent reassessment is needed for rapid intervention in the event of neurologic compromise or deterioration.

E: Exposure

The final component of the primary survey is [exposure](#).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Remove all clothing to allow for thorough assessment. Always *cut away* clothing with scissors (Laskowski-Jones, 2009):

- During resuscitation when rapid access to the patient's body is critical
- When manipulating a patient's limbs to remove clothing could cause further injury
- When thermal or chemical burns have caused fabrics to melt into the patient's skin

If evidence preservation is an issue, handle items per institutional policy. Evidence may include articles of clothing, impaled objects, weapons, drugs, and bullets. Emergency nurses are often called upon to provide testimony in court regarding their recall of the presentation and treatment of patients in the ED. Examples of types of cases in which evidence collection is vital are rape, elder abuse, domestic violence, homicide, suicide, drug overdose, and assault.

Once clothing is removed, hypothermia (body temperature less than or equal to 97° F [36° C]) poses a risk to injured patients, especially those with burns (Laskowski-Jones, 2009). Specifically, hypothermia complicates management of the injured patient by causing:

- Vasoconstriction
- Difficulty with venous access and arterial assessment
- Coagulopathy
- Increased bleeding
- Slowed drug metabolism

Interventions to prevent hypothermia are basic:

- Remove wet sheets or clothing.
- Cover the patient with blankets.
- Infuse only warm solutions and blood products.
- Set the room temperature at 75° to 80° F.
- Use devices such as heat lamps and warming blankets.

[Table 10-4](#) highlights the primary survey and associated resuscitation interventions.

TABLE 10-4 THE PRIMARY SURVEY AND RESUSCITATION INTERVENTIONS

PRIORITIES OF THE PRIMARY SURVEY	EXAMPLES OF SPECIFIC INTERVENTIONS
A: Airway/cervical spine	Establish a patent airway by positioning, suctioning, and oxygen as needed. Protect the cervical spine by maintaining alignment; use a jaw-thrust maneuver if there is a risk for spinal injury. If the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) score is 8 or less or the patient is at risk for airway compromise, prepare for endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation.
B: Breathing	Assess breath sounds and respiratory effort. Observe for chest wall trauma or other physical abnormality. Prepare for chest decompression if needed. Prepare to assist ventilations if needed.
C: Circulation	Monitor vital signs, especially blood pressure and pulse. Maintain vascular access using a large-bore catheter. Use direct pressure for external bleeding.
D: Disability	Evaluate the patient's level of consciousness (LOC) using the AVPU system and the GCS. Re-evaluate the patient's LOC frequently.
E: Exposure	Remove all clothing for a complete physical assessment. Prevent hypothermia (e.g., cover the patient with blankets, use heating devices, infuse warm solutions).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Safe and Effective Care Environment**

A client is admitted to the ED with multiple stab wounds to his chest, abdomen, and arms. What is the nurse's priority upon admission to the ED?

- A. Check for bleeding from the stab wounds.
- B. Assess and maintain the client's airway.
- C. Start two large-bore IV lines.
- D. Assess the level of consciousness.

The Secondary Survey and Resuscitation Interventions

After the ED resuscitation team addresses the immediate life threats, other activities that the emergency nurse can anticipate include insertion of a gastric tube for decompression of

the GI tract to prevent vomiting and aspiration, insertion of a urinary catheter to allow careful measure of urine output, and preparation for diagnostic studies. The resuscitation team also performs a more comprehensive head-to-toe assessment, known as the **secondary survey**, to identify other injuries or medical issues that need to be managed or that might affect the course of treatment.

Disposition

The patient may be transported immediately to the operating room or interventional radiology suite directly from the ED, depending on the nature of the injury. When no immediate procedural intervention is indicated, patients are admitted to the trauma or critical care unit, step-down unit, or medical-surgical unit for continued management and nursing care based on the nature and severity of their injuries, as well as any other pre-existing medical conditions (e.g., liver disease, heart disease, cancer) that could complicate trauma care. However, if the facility does not have the resource capabilities to manage the injured patient, the physician arranges for transfer to a higher level of care.

Collaborate with the interdisciplinary team to address the trauma patient's complex health care needs, including early consultation with social services and the rehabilitation team. Coordinate with other support services as necessary, such as pastoral care, nutrition support, psychiatry, behavioral health specialists, and substance abuse counselors. Trauma centers are required to incorporate systems to identify patients with high-risk alcohol use (American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma, 2006). An effective strategy is to implement an SBIRT (**s**creening, **b**rief **i**ntervention, and **r**eferral to **t**reatment) program in which interdisciplinary trauma team members, including nurses, are educated to assess patients for problem drinking. The typical interaction involves a brief, respectful conversation that offers feedback, advice, and motivation to reduce alcohol consumption (Barnard, 2009).

Consider the needs of family members in crisis and address them when planning nursing care. A trauma advanced practice nurse, if available, can help coordinate trauma care by offering clinical expertise, facilitating communication among caregivers, and serving as an educator for the patient, staff, and family (Mower-Wade & Pirrung, 2010). They can organize family meetings with the interdisciplinary team and arrange for necessary resources. If this resource is not available, a case manager or specially educated staff nurse may perform these functions.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Emergency departments (EDs) are fast-paced and often crowded environments where care occurs for patients across the life span with a variety of health problems.

- Vulnerable populations who present to the ED include patients who are uninsured (poor), homeless, and older adults.
- Anticipate that some of the most common reasons that patients seek ED care are chest pain, abdominal pain, difficulty breathing, injury, poisoning, headache, and fever.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- When caring for ED patients, collaborate with the interdisciplinary ED team, which includes prehospital providers, physicians, nurses, specialty teams, and support staff.
- Use the best practices listed in [Chart 10-1](#) to maintain safety in the ED.
- Core competencies for the ED nurse include assessment, priority setting, knowledge, technical skills, and communication.
- The three-level triage model categorizes patients as emergent, urgent, and nonurgent (see [Table 10-2](#)). The Emergency Severity Index is a five-tier triage system that uses both acuity and the prediction of necessary resources to rapidly categorize the priority of patients.
- Trauma centers are categorized as Levels I through IV, based on their resource capabilities as listed in [Table 10-3](#).
- The mechanism of injury describes the manner in which the traumatic event occurred.
- The two most common injury-producing mechanisms are blunt trauma and penetrating trauma.
- Implement the steps of the primary survey and trauma resuscitation interventions outlined in [Table 10-4](#).
- Patient education as part of the discharge plan is an important part of ED nursing practice.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Provide support for patients who lose a loved one; consult with the psychiatric crisis team as needed.

Physiological Integrity

- Patients who are admitted to the ED are treated and stabilized before discharge. Patients may be discharged to their homes or inpatient facilities.
- About half of all older adults who visit the ED are admitted to the hospital.
- ED nurses are accountable for preventing or reducing risks to older adults while in the ED, such as falls, medication errors, pressure ulcers, and hospital-acquired infections. Communication with the older adult may be challenging if he or she has memory loss or develops acute delirium while in the ED.

CHAPTER

11

Care of Patients with Common Environmental Emergencies

Linda Laskowski-Jones



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with the health care team when providing care for patients with common environmental emergencies.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify community resources for patients with insect bites and snakebites.
3. Teach people at risk how to prevent heat-related and cold-related injuries, especially older adults.
4. Teach people at risk how to prevent arthropod bites and stings and snakebites.

Physiological Integrity

5. Assess patients at high risk for environmental emergencies.

6. Prioritize first aid/prehospital interventions for patients who have heat-related or cold-related injuries.
7. Prioritize first aid/prehospital interventions for patients who have arthropod bites.
8. Prioritize first aid/emergency care interventions for patients who have venomous snakebites.
9. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology to identify best practices for care of patients with environmental emergencies.
10. Develop an evidence-based plan of care for a patient who is allergic to bees and is stung.
11. Prioritize care for patients who have been struck by lightning.
12. Prioritize care for patients who survive a drowning incident.
13. Explain best practices for patients who are at risk for or experience altitude-related illnesses.

Recreational activities, as well as home and work responsibilities, make people of all ages leave their homes to go outdoors. However, seemingly harmless outside activities can have associated environmental risks, especially for older adults. Some risks, such as insect bites or stings, reptile bites, and environmental conditions, may also pose threats indoors. This chapter provides an overview of selected environmental emergencies, their initial emergency management (first aid), and acute care interventions. Illness and injury prevention strategies for nurses to incorporate into their own lifestyle and health teaching opportunities are also discussed.

HEAT-RELATED ILLNESSES

High environmental temperature (above 95° F) and high humidity (above 80%) are the most common environmental factors causing heat-related illnesses. These illnesses include heat exhaustion and heat stroke. Some of the most vulnerable, at-risk populations for these problems are:

- Older adults
- Blacks (more than whites)
- People who work outside, such as construction and agricultural workers (more men than women)

- Homeless people
- Illicit drug users (especially cocaine users)
- Outdoor athletes (recreational and professional)
- Members of the military who are stationed in countries with hot climates (e.g., Iraq and Afghanistan)

Older adults have less body fluid volume and can easily become dehydrated when exposed to excessive heat and humidity. Blacks experience heat-related illnesses more than whites, probably because of social disadvantages (e.g., cannot afford air-conditioning, poor housing).

A patient's health status can also increase the risk for heat-related illness, especially obesity, heart disease, fever, strenuous exercise, seizures, and all degrees of burns (even sunburn). In addition, the use of certain prescribed drugs such as beta-adrenergic blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, and diuretics increases the risk for heat-related illness (Auerbach et al., 2008).

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

Teach older adults before participating in any hot weather activity how to consider their risks and to take steps to eliminate or minimize them whenever possible. Ask them to have a family member, friend, or neighbor check on them several times each day to ensure that there are no signs of heat-related illness. [Chart 11-1](#) lists other essential heat-related illness prevention strategies for older adults, many of which apply to adults of any age.

HEAT EXHAUSTION

Pathophysiology

Heat exhaustion is a syndrome resulting primarily from dehydration. It is caused by heavy perspiration, as well as inadequate fluid and electrolyte intake during heat exposure over hours to days. Patients feel ill, and their clinical manifestations resemble the flu. Although not a true emergency condition, *if untreated, heat exhaustion can lead to heat stroke, a much more serious problem.*

CHART 11-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Heat-Related Illness Prevention

- Avoid alcohol and caffeine.
- Prevent overexposure to the sun; use a sunscreen with an SPF of at least 30 with UVA and UVB protection.
- Rest frequently and take breaks from being in a hot environment. Plan to limit activity at the hottest time of day.
- Wear clothing suited to the environment. Lightweight, light-colored, and loose-fitting clothing is best.
- Pay attention to your personal physical limitations; modify activities accordingly.
- Take cool baths or showers to help reduce body temperature.
- Stay indoors in air-conditioned buildings, if possible.
- Ask a neighbor, friend, or family member to check on the older adult at least twice a day during a heat wave.

SPF, Sun protection factor; UVA, ultraviolet A; UVB, ultraviolet B.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

In heat exhaustion, patients usually have flu-like symptoms with headache, weakness, nausea, and/or vomiting. Body temperature is not significantly elevated in this condition. The patient may continue to perspire despite dehydration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess the patient for orthostatic hypotension and tachycardia, especially the older adult who is predisposed to rapid dehydration. Older adults who are already dehydrated often experience acute confusion and are at risk for falls.

Ask the person experiencing heat exhaustion to immediately stop physical activity; move him or her to a cool place, and use cooling measures. Effective cooling measures include placing cold packs on the neck, chest, abdomen, and groin; soaking the person in cool water; or fanning him or her while spraying water on the skin (Auerbach et al., 2008). Remove any constrictive clothing. Provide an oral rehydrating solution such as a sports drink. *Do not give salt tablets*—they can cause stomach irritation, nausea, and vomiting. If these signs and symptoms persist, call an ambulance to transport the patient to the hospital.

In the clinical setting, monitor vital signs. Rehydrate the patient with IV 0.9% saline solution if nausea or vomiting persists. Draw blood for serum electrolyte analysis. Hospital admission is indicated only for patients who have other health problems that are worsened by the heat-related illness or for those with severe dehydration. The management of hypovolemic dehydration is discussed in more detail in [Chapter 13](#).

HEAT STROKE

Pathophysiology

Heat stroke is a *true medical emergency* in which body temperature may exceed 104° F (40° C). It has a high mortality rate if not treated in a timely manner. The victim's heat regulatory mechanisms fail and cannot adjust for a critical elevation in body temperature (Laskowski-Jones, 2010). If the condition is not treated or the patient does not respond to treatment, organ dysfunction and death can result. In their cohort study of 16 emergency departments, Hausfater et al. (2010b) found that nine factors help predict mortality in patients admitted to emergency departments with non-exertional heat stroke (see Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 138).

The two major types of heat stroke are exertional and classic. **Exertional heat stroke** has a sudden onset and is often the result of strenuous physical activity in hot, humid conditions. Not being used to hot weather and wearing clothing too heavy for the environment are common contributing factors. **Classic heat stroke**, also referred to as non-exertional heat stroke, occurs over a period of time as a result of chronic exposure to a hot, humid environment, such as a home without air-conditioning in the high heat of the summer. It generally affects ill and older adults and causes several hundred deaths in the United States every year. The risk

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Factors Predict Who Will Develop Nonexertional Heat Stroke?

Hausfater, P., Megarbane, B., Dautheville, S., Patzak, A., Andronikof, M., Andre, S., et al. (2010). Prognostic factors in non-exertional heatstroke. *Intensive Care Medicine*, 36, 272-280.

Heat-related illnesses are often medical emergencies that can lead to death. The authors presented findings of a large multi-center observational cohort study of 1456 patients who were admitted to 16 emergency departments (EDs) in teaching hospitals during heat waves. The mean age of the sample was 79 years, and 391 of them were critically ill on admission. All of the study patients had an elevated core body temperature. The survival rate for the study sample was only 57% at 1 year after diagnosis.

On retrospective review of the patients' charts, it was found that nine factors negatively influenced survival rates. They included an age older than 80 years, body temperature of over 104° F (40° C), systolic blood pressure less than 100 mm Hg, Glasgow Coma Scale score of less than 12, presence of cancer and/or cardiac disease, previous treatment with diuretics, living in an institution, and transported to the ED by ambulance.

Level of Evidence: 4

This study is a nonexperimental or descriptive cohort study, but it used a large sample size in multiple emergency departments. Random assignment or comparison of two groups was not appropriate for answering the research question.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The results of this study indicate that older, institutionalized patients with cardiac disease or cancer and heat stroke have a high risk for not surviving a year after the heat-related illness. The major nursing implication from this study is that more emphasis on preventing heat-related illnesses in institutionalized patients is needed, particularly if they are older than 80 years. Nurses are in a key position to advocate for these patients and to implement interventions that can help prevent heat stroke. Early detection and treatment also are needed. [Chart 11-1](#) lists best practices for decreasing the risk for heat-related illnesses in older adults.

CHART 11-2 KEY FEATURES

Heat Stroke

- Body temperature more than 104° F (40° C)
- Hot and dry skin; may or may not perspire
- Mental status changes, such as:
 - Acute confusion
 - Bizarre behavior
 - Anxiety
 - Loss of coordination
 - Hallucinations
 - Agitation
 - Seizures
 - Coma
- Vital sign changes, including:
 - Hypotension
 - Tachycardia
 - Tachypnea (increased respiratory rate)
- Electrolyte imbalances, especially sodium and potassium
- Decreased renal function (oliguria)
- Coagulopathy (abnormal clotting)
- Pulmonary edema (crackles)

factors for heat stroke are similar to those for heat exhaustion.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Victims of heat stroke have a profoundly elevated body temperature (above 104° F [40° C]). *Although the patient's skin is hot and dry, the presence of sweating does not rule out heat stroke—people with heat stroke may continue to perspire.*

Mental status changes occur as a result of thermal injury to the brain. Manifestations can include confusion, bizarre behavior, seizures, or even coma ([Chart 11-2](#)). Vital sign abnormalities may include hypotension, tachycardia, and tachypnea. Recent research demonstrates that cardiac troponin I (cTnI) is frequently elevated during non-exertional

heat-related illnesses. A severe increase (>1.5 ng/mL) indicates severe myocardial damage and decreases the chance of patient survival 1 year after the event (Hausfater et al., 2010a).

Complications of classic heat stroke include multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), renal impairment, electrolyte and acid-base disturbances, coagulopathy (abnormal clotting), pulmonary edema, and cerebral edema (Johnson et al., 2008). Any of these problems can lead to death and are described in detail elsewhere in this book.

INTERVENTIONS

Coordinate care with the health care team to recognize and treat immediately and aggressively to achieve optimal patient outcomes. [Chart 11-3](#) lists evidence-based emergency care of patients with heat stroke.

First Aid/Prehospital Care

Do not give food or liquid by mouth because vomiting and aspiration are risks in patients with neurologic impairment, especially those older than 65 years. Immediate medical care using advanced life support is essential.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

After ensuring that the patient has a patent airway, effective breathing, and adequate circulation, use rapid cooling as the first priority for care. Methods for rapidly cooling include:

- Removing clothing
- Placing ice packs on the neck, axillae, chest, and groin
- Immersing the victim in cold water
- Wetting the patient's body with tepid water and then fanning rapidly to aid in cooling by evaporation

Drenching the victim with large amounts of icy water may be the fastest, most effective means to reduce core body temperature (Auerbach, 2009).

Hospital Care

The first priority for collaborative care is to monitor and support the patient's airway, breathing, and circulatory status. Provide

CHART 11-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Heat Stroke**At the Scene**

- Ensure a patent airway.
- Remove the patient from the hot environment (into air-conditioning or into the shade).
- Remove the patient's clothing.
- Pour or spray water on the patient's body and scalp.
- Fan the patient (not only the person providing care, but all surrounding people should fan the patient with newspapers or whatever is available).
- If ice is available, place ice in cloth or bags and position the packs on the patient's scalp, in the groin area, behind the neck, and in the armpits.
- Get the patient to the nearest emergency department.

At the Hospital

- Give oxygen by mask or nasal cannula.
- Start at least one IV with a large-bore needle or cannula.
- Administer normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride) as rapidly as possible, using cooled solutions if available.

- Use a cooling blanket.
- Do not give aspirin or any other antipyretics.
- Insert a rectal probe to measure core body temperature continuously, or use a rectal thermometer and assess temperature every 15 minutes.
- Insert a Foley catheter.
- Monitor vital signs frequently as clinically indicated.
- Obtain baseline laboratory tests as quickly as possible: serum electrolytes, cardiac enzymes, liver enzymes, and complete blood count (CBC).
- Assess arterial blood gases.
- Administer muscle relaxants (benzodiazepines) if the patient begins to shiver.
- Measure urine output and specific gravity to determine fluid needs.
- Slow cooling interventions when core body temperature is reduced to 102° F (39° C); stop cooling when rectal temperature is 100° F (37.8° C).
- Obtain urinalysis, and monitor urine output.

high-concentration oxygen therapy, start several IV lines with 0.9% saline solution, and insert a urinary catheter. Continue aggressive interventions to cool the patient until the rectal temperature is 100° F (37.8° C) (Auerbach, 2009). External continuous cooling methods include using cooling blankets and applying ice packs in the axilla and groin and on the neck and head. Internal cooling methods may include iced gastric and bladder lavage. Use a continuous core temperature-monitoring device (e.g., rectal or esophageal probe) or a temperature-monitoring urinary bladder catheter to prevent hypothermia.

If shivering occurs during the cooling process, give a parenteral benzodiazepine such as diazepam (Valium). Chlorpromazine (Thorazine) is an alternative agent. Because seizure activity can further elevate body temperature, be sure to have an IV benzodiazepine immediately available. Once the patient is stabilized, admission to a critical care unit is usually needed to monitor for complications such as multi-system organ dysfunction syndrome and severe electrolyte imbalances; these problems can lead to death.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

An older client with heat stroke is being cooled with a cooling blanket and ice packs under her arms and behind her neck. What assessment indicates to the nurse that the cooling process is effective?

- The client is alert and oriented.
- The client states that she feels cooler.
- The client's temperature is 100° F.
- The client's urinary output is 30 mL/hr.

SNAKEBITES

Although most snake species are nonvenomous (nonpoisonous) and harmless, there are two families of poisonous snakes in North America: pit vipers (*Crotalidae*) and coral snakes (*Elapidae*).



FIG. 11-1 Southern copperhead (*Agkistrodon contortrix*) has markings that make it almost invisible when lying in leaf litter.



FIG. 11-2 Cottonmouth water moccasin (*Agkistrodon piscivorus*). The open-mouthed threat gesture is characteristic of this semiaquatic pit viper.

Pit vipers are named for the characteristic depression between each eye and nostril that serves as a heat-sensitive organ for locating warm-blooded prey. They include various species of rattlesnakes, copperheads, and cottonmouths and account for the majority of the poisonous snakebites in the United States (Figs. 11-1 and 11-2).

Coral snakes are found from North Carolina to Florida and in the Gulf states through Texas and the southwestern

CHART 11-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Snakebite Prevention

- Do not keep venomous snakes as pets.
- Be extremely careful in locations where snakes may hide, such as tall grass, rock piles, ledges and crevices, woodpiles, brush, boxes, and cabinets. Snakes are most active on warm nights.
- Don protective attire such as boots, heavy pants, and leather gloves. When walking or hiking, use a walking stick or trekking poles.
- Inspect suspicious areas before placing hands and feet in them.
- Do not harass any snakes you may encounter. Striking distance is at least the length of the snake, and often longer. Even young snakes pose a threat; they are capable of envenomation from birth.
- Be aware that newly dead or decapitated snakes can inflict a bite for up to an hour after death because of persistence of the bite reflex.
- Avoid transporting the snake with the victim to the medical facility for identification purposes, unless the snake can be placed in a sealed container.

United States. They have broad bands of red and black rings, separated by yellow or cream rings. These nonaggressive snakes have short, fixed fangs and inject highly neurotoxic venom into prey.

Most snakes fear humans and attempt to avoid contact with them. Sudden, unexpected confrontations at close range often lead to defensive strikes. Awareness is the key to snakebite prevention.

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

Chart 11-4 provides common-sense actions to avoid being bitten by a poisonous snake. Teach people who own snakes to follow these precautions. Remind them that snakebites can be life threatening.

NORTH AMERICAN PIT VIPERS

North American pit vipers can be differentiated from harmless snakes by these key anatomic features:

- A heat-sensing “pit”
- A triangular head that indicates the presence of venom glands and elliptical pupils
- Two retractable, curved fangs that have canals for venom flow
- Up to three sets of developing “replacement” fangs behind the primary fangs

Unlike copperheads and cottonmouths, rattlesnakes also have interlocking horny rings in their tails that vibrate and serve as a characteristic warning signal. Pit vipers can regulate the amount of venom flow through their fangs, depending, in part, on the size of the prey. The amount of venom injected in bites to humans varies. A bite might actually be “dry,” meaning there is no **envenomation** (venom injection), yet there are distinctive fang marks on the patient. In contrast, “harmless” snakes do not have venom glands or fangs but can bite and leave skin marks.

Pathophysiology

When providing emergency care to a victim of snakebite, determine if the venom has been injected into the body. The primary functions of venom are to immobilize, kill, and aid in digestion of prey. Therefore venom causes local and systemic toxic effects. The enzymes in venom break down human tissue proteins, alter membrane integrity, and impair blood clotting. The pathophysiologic effects of pit viper envenomation can lead to local tissue necrosis, massive tissue swelling, intravascular fluid shifts and hypovolemic shock, pulmonary edema, renal failure, hemorrhagic complications from disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), and death. These complications are discussed elsewhere in this book.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The clinical manifestations of venom release are based on the type and amount of venom injected; the bite location; and the age, size, and health status of the victim. Puncture wounds in the skin are a key local sign of pit viper envenomation. One or more puncture wounds may be present, depending on how many fangs the snake has and how many times the snake struck the patient. Severe pain, swelling, and redness or **ecchymosis** (bruising) in the area around the bite are common. Hours later, vesicles or hemorrhagic bullae may form. Systemic responses to venom must be distinguished from the effects of anxiety and panic related to being bitten by a snake. Commonly reported complaints include a minty, rubbery, or metallic taste in the mouth and tingling or paresthesias of the scalp, face, and lips. Other effects include muscle **fasciculations** (twitching) and weakness, nausea, vomiting, hypotension, seizures, and **coagulopathy** (clotting abnormalities) or DIC. If the bite site does not show evidence of local tissue swelling or redness within 8 hours, systemic effects are less likely to develop.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

First aid interventions for snakebite should begin in the field and can improve the victim's outcome.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The first priority is to move the person to a safe area away from the snake and encourage rest to decrease venom circulation. Next, remove jewelry and constricting clothing before swelling worsens.

Immobilizing the affected extremity in a position of function with a splint helps limit the spread of the venom. Maintain the extremity at the level of the heart (Auerbach et al., 2008). Keep the person warm, and provide calm reassurance. Do not offer any alcohol because it can cause the venom to spread through vasodilation (Bledsoe et al., 2009). *Do not incise or suck the wound, apply ice to it, or use a tourniquet!*

Hospital Care

Acute care in a hospital is required as soon as possible because envenomation is a medical emergency. Supportive care includes

supplemental oxygen, two large-bore IV lines, and infusion of crystalloid fluids such as normal saline solution or Ringer's lactate solution. Apply continuous cardiac and blood pressure monitoring equipment to quickly detect clinical deterioration. Because venom can cause severe pain at the bite site, opioids are indicated. Provide tetanus prophylaxis and wound care as part of the collaborative plan of care.

Severe pit viper bites cause coagulopathy and promote hemorrhage and tissue destruction. Along with typical baseline laboratory studies, anticipate obtaining specimens for a coagulation profile, complete blood count (CBC), creatine kinase (CK), type and crossmatch for possible blood transfusion, and urinalysis. An electrocardiogram (ECG) is necessary to detect evidence of myocardial ischemia or other cardiac abnormalities.

Obtain pertinent patient history related to the event, including a full description of the snake's appearance, the time the bite occurred, prehospital interventions, and any past incidence of snakebite or antivenom use. To accurately assess the development of tissue edema at the bite site, measure and record the circumference of the bitten extremity every 15 to 30 minutes.

Venom potency varies. Not all snakebite victims need antivenom administration. The decision whether or not to give antivenom is based on the severity of the snakebite. [Table 11-1](#) classifies envenomation severity. *Contact the regional poison control center so that toxicologists can provide specific advice for antivenom dosing and medical management.*

The newest and safest antivenom for pit viper bites is Crotalidae Polyvalent Immune Fab (CroFab), which is derived from sheep (ovine). This drug consists of specific antibody fragments of immunoglobulin G (IgG) that bind, neutralize, and redistribute toxins in pit viper venom so that they may be removed from the patient's body (Schaeffer & Badillo, 2009). Unlike the older antivenoms that were derived from horse serum, serum sickness rarely occurs after IV CroFab administration. [Serum sickness](#) is a type III hypersensitivity reaction that develops within 3 to 21 days, first as a skin rash with progression to fever, joint pain, and [pruritus](#) (itching). Although mild to moderate allergic reactions such as pruritus

and [urticaria](#) (hives) can occur, anaphylaxis is rare. If the patient has a known hypersensitivity to papain or papaya, which is used during the manufacturing process, CroFab is contraindicated unless the benefits are believed to outweigh the risks (Protherics, Inc., 2008). Give CroFab cautiously to patients who have:

- A previous allergic reaction to antivenom therapy
- A hypersensitivity to bromelain (a pineapple-derived enzyme) or sheep protein
- Prior CroFab therapy for a past envenomation (patients can become sensitized to the foreign sheep protein)
- Pregnancy
- Sensitivity to mercury-containing products (the antivenom contains mercury)

CroFab should be given to patients as soon as possible, with the optimal timing within 6 hours of the bite (Protherics, Inc., 2008). The recommended initial IV dose is 4 to 6 vials infused over 60 minutes. During the first 10 minutes, the infusion should be slow (25-50 mL/hr). Monitor the patient closely for an allergic reaction (e.g., hives, rash, difficulty breathing). If symptoms are not effectively controlled with the first dose, an additional 4 to 6 vials are recommended. Once the symptoms are under control, 2 more vials of CroFab are administered every 6 hours for a total of 18 hours of administration (Protherics, Inc., 2008).

CORAL SNAKES

Pathophysiology

North American coral snakes are found in the southeastern and southwestern United States ([Fig. 11-3](#)). These snakes burrow into the ground and are nonaggressive. Coral snakes account for less than 1% of venomous snakebites in the United States (Norris, 2008). Their ability to inject venom is less efficient than that of the pit vipers. Their maxillary fangs are small and fixed in an upright position. Most bites occur when people attempt to handle the snake. Coral snake venom has two toxins: a nerve toxin and a muscle toxin. The amount of venom in an adult coral snake is enough to kill an adult.

Coral snakes can be recognized by bands of black, red, and yellow that circle around the body of the snake. If a black

TABLE 11-1 GRADES OF PIT VIPER ENVENOMATION

ENVENOMATION	CHARACTERISTICS
None	Fang marks, but no local or systemic reactions
Minimal	Fang marks, local swelling and pain, but no systemic reactions
Moderate	Fang marks and swelling progressing beyond the site of the bite; systemic signs and symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, paresthesias, and hypotension
Severe	Fang marks present with marked swelling of the extremity, subcutaneous ecchymosis, severe symptoms, including manifestations of coagulopathy

From Auerbach, P.S., Donner, H.J., & Weiss, E.A. (2009). *Field guide to wilderness medicine* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.



FIG. 11-3 Sonoran coral snake (*Micruroides euryxanthus*) is also known as the *Arizona coral snake*. No documented fatality has followed a bite by this species.

band lies between the red and yellow bands, the snake is often nonvenomous. Several harmless species closely resemble the coral snake. A helpful memory aid for identifying coral snakes is “red on yellow can kill a fellow” and “red and black, venom lack.” *Be aware that this saying applies only to coral snakes found in the United States!*

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Manifestations of coral snake envenomation are the result of its neurotoxic properties. The physiologic effect is to block neurotransmission, which produces ascending paralysis, reduced perception of pain, and, ultimately, respiratory paralysis (Wozniak et al., 2006). Unlike the pain from pit viper bites, pain at the coral snakebite site may be only mild and transient. The venom is spread via the lymphatic system, but swelling is unlikely. Fang marks may be difficult to find because of the coral snake’s small teeth. The toxic effects of coral snake venom also may be delayed up to 12 to 18 hours after a bite but then produce rapid clinical deterioration. Early signs and symptoms are nausea, vomiting, headache, pallor, and abdominal pain. Assess for neurologic manifestations, such as paresthesias (painful tingling), numbness, and mental status changes, as well as cranial nerve and peripheral nerve deficits. Total flaccid paralysis may occur later, and the patient may have difficulty speaking, swallowing, and breathing. Clotting changes do not occur.

Respiratory problems and cardiovascular collapse can occur in severe cases (Norris, 2008). Arterial blood gas analysis reveals respiratory insufficiency. The muscle toxin in the venom can cause an elevation in creatine kinase (CK) levels from muscle breakdown and produce **myoglobinuria** (release of muscle myoglobin into the urine). Despite these clinical effects, death is rare if the patient receives timely management.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

Because several varieties of harmless snakes resemble the coral snake, the first priority, if possible, is to identify the snake as a coral snake. *However, if the snake cannot be positively identified, the victim should be treated as if venom has been injected.* Because coral snake venom does not destroy tissue, the field treatment to limit the spread of venom includes the use of pressure immobilization techniques (Auerbach et al., 2008). The affected extremity is encircled snugly with an elastic bandage or roller gauze dressing to impede lymphatic flow and then splinted (Wozniak et al., 2006). *This compression bandage must not be so tight that it impairs arterial flow. It should not be removed until the victim is managed at an acute care facility* (Norris, 2008).

Hospital Care

Once in an acute care setting, patients who have had an actual or potential coral snake envenomation will have continuous cardiac, blood pressure, and pulse oximetry

monitoring and are admitted to a critical care unit. Prepare to provide aggressive airway management via endotracheal intubation if respiratory insufficiency or severe neurologic impairment occurs. Aspiration of secretions is a significant risk for this patient.

Early antivenom administration is recommended (Auerbach et al., 2008). The onset of symptoms after coral snake bites can be delayed but can persist for a week in spite of treatment (Norris, 2008). The antivenom for the North American coral snake is Antivenin *Micrurus fulvius* (Wyeth). However, this drug is no longer in active production by any drug manufacturer; only very limited supplies are available. *Contact the regional poison control center immediately for specific advice on antivenom administration and patient management.* The same precautions are applied when administering coral snake antivenom as with Crotalidae (pit viper) antivenom.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The most significant risk to the victim is an anaphylactic response to the antivenom. Therefore ensure that the patient’s IV lines are patent and that emergency drugs (e.g., epinephrine, antihistamines, steroids) and resuscitation equipment are immediately available.

A patient may survive a coral snake bite without antivenom but may require prolonged mechanical ventilation and supportive care (Norris, 2008).

ARTHROPOD BITES AND STINGS

Arthropods include spiders, scorpions, bees, and wasps. Unlike snakes, almost all species of spiders are venomous to some degree—most are not harmful to humans either because their mouth is too small to pierce human skin or the quantity or quality of their venom is inadequate to produce major health problems. Brown recluse and black widow spiders, scorpions, bees, and wasps are examples of venomous arthropods that can cause toxic reactions in humans. **Chart 11-5** lists actions that help prevent arthropod bites and stings.

BROWN RECLUSE SPIDER

Pathophysiology

Brown recluse spiders are known for producing bites that result in skin ulcers. Also known as “fiddlebacks” or “violin spiders,” they are medium-size spiders that are light brown and have a dark brown, fiddle-shaped mark that extends from their eyes down their back (**Fig. 11-4**). Like their name implies, brown recluse spiders are shy and hide in areas that are dark and secluded, such as boxes, closets, basements, sheds, and garages. Most indoor bites occur when people are sleeping, reaching into boxes or closets, or donning clothing that contains the spider. Few people ever see the spider that bit them. The only evidence may be a skin lesion; a necrotic wound; or, less often, systemic effects from the injected toxin, commonly referred to as **loxoscelism**.

CHART 11-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Arthropod Bite/Sting Prevention

- Wear protective clothing, including gloves and shoes, when working in areas known to harbor venomous arthropods, such as spiders, scorpions, bees, and wasps.
- Cover garbage cans. Bees and wasps are attracted to uncovered garbage.
- Use screens in windows and doors to prevent flying insects from entering buildings.
- Inspect clothing, shoes, and gear for insects before putting on these items.
- Shake out clothing and gear that have been on the ground to prevent arthropod “stowaways” and inadvertent bites and stings.
- Consult an exterminator to control arthropod populations in and around the home. Eliminating insects that are part of the arthropod’s food source may also limit their presence.
- Identify nesting areas such as yard debris and rock piles; remove them whenever possible.
- Do not place unprotected hands where the eyes cannot see.
- Avoid handling insects or keeping them as “pets.”
- Do not swat insects, wasps, and Africanized bees because they can send chemical signals that alert others to attack.
- Carry prescription epinephrine preparations and antihistamines if known to be allergic to bee and wasp stings.



FIG. 11-4 Brown recluse spider (*Loxosceles reclusa*).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Brown recluse spider venom causes cell damage. The bite may be described as painless or stinging to sharp and painful. Some victims are unaware that they were bitten until intense local aching and pruritus develop over minutes to hours. The central bite site may appear as a bleb or vesicle surrounded by edema and erythema, which may expand over the course of hours as the toxin spreads to surrounding tissues. The center of the bite becomes bluish purple. Some people have few or no tissue changes and therefore do not require medical attention.

For other people who are bitten, over the next 1 to 3 days the central part of the wound becomes dark and necrotic (Fig. 11-5). **Eschar** (a necrotic, leathery covering over the wound) eventually forms. The combination of these tissue changes is often referred to as the classic “red, white, and blue sign” that is associated with severe brown recluse spider bites.



FIG. 11-5 Brown recluse spider bite after 24 hours, with central ischemia and rapidly advancing cellulitis.

When the eschar sloughs, an open wound or ulcer can remain for weeks to months. In rare cases, some patients may also have manifestations of systemic toxicity to brown recluse spider bites. These can include a rash, fever, chills, nausea, vomiting, malaise, and joint pain. In the worst cases, hemolytic reactions, renal failure, pulmonary edema, cardiovascular collapse, and death can occur.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

The basic first aid for a brown recluse spider bite is to apply ice intermittently during the first 4 days after the bite (Auerbach et al., 2008). Ice helps decrease the enzyme activity of the venom and may limit tissue swelling and necrosis. *Do not use heat because it increases the enzyme activity and potentially worsens the wound.* Recommended actions include elevation of the affected extremity, local wound care, and rest.

Hospital Care

Supportive care and ongoing monitoring for complications meet the needs of most patients with a brown recluse spider bite. For patients with wounds that appear infected, a topical antiseptic and sterile dressing are necessary. Antibiotics may also be required.

A surgeon evaluates patients whose wounds require interventions beyond conservative management. Débridement (removal of necrotic tissue) and skin grafting may be required to promote healing in severe wounds. In all cases, provide tetanus prophylaxis. Where available, collaborate with a wound specialist nurse.

A small number of patients experience severe systemic complications (loxoscelism). Manifestations include:

- Fever and chills
- Nausea and vomiting
- Renal failure
- **Hemolytic anemia** (anemia caused by destruction of red blood cells)
- **Thrombocytopenia** (decreased platelets)
- Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
- Death

These problems are discussed elsewhere in this text. Critical care management, including aggressive hydration, blood transfusions, and supportive therapies, is required to prevent further deterioration and promote recovery.

BLACK WIDOW SPIDER

Pathophysiology

Black widow spiders can be found in every state in the United States except Alaska. They can inflict deadly bites and are found in cool, damp environments like outdoor log piles, vegetation, and rocks. They also commonly inhabit barns, sheds, and garages. The female spider is best identified by her shiny black color and the red hourglass pattern on her abdomen. Male spiders are smaller in size and lighter in color with white and gray markings. The hourglass pattern is faint in males. Black widow spiders carry neurotoxic venom. Bites to humans are usually defensive when the spider is at risk for being crushed.

The initial bite of a black widow spider ranges from nearly painless to sharply painful. Typically, the person notices a tiny papule or small, red punctate mark. Some people have intense pain, which seems out of proportion to the lesion. In many cases, the symptoms do not progress beyond a local reaction in the area of the bite site. If systemic signs and symptoms do occur, they generally develop within 1 hour and involve the neuromuscular system.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Black widow spider venom produces a syndrome known as **latrodectism**, in which the venom causes neurotransmitter release from nerve terminals. Severe abdominal pain, muscle rigidity and spasm, hypertension, and nausea and vomiting are common. The problem may be incorrectly diagnosed as an acute abdomen, and surgical consultation may be considered because of the clinical features similar to peritonitis (Weinstein et al., 2009). Muscle spasms involve the large muscles of the abdomen, back, and limbs. Other problems include facial edema, **ptosis** (eyelid drooping), diaphoresis, weakness, increased salivation, respiratory difficulty from excessive secretions, fasciculations (twitching), and **paresthesias** (painful tingling or numbness). The effects of the bite are self-limited and generally resolve in a few days. *However, older adults with other health problems like cardiovascular disease are at much higher risk for complications.*

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority intervention for a black widow spider bite in the prehospital setting is to apply an ice pack because cold application decreases the action of the neurotoxin.

Monitor the person for evidence of systemic toxicity as described in the previous Assessment section. If this problem occurs, support the patient's airway, breathing, and circulation. Patients should be transported to a medical facility as soon as possible for advanced life support care.

Hospital Care

In the emergency department, closely monitor vital signs, with special attention to blood pressure and respiratory function. Supportive therapy in the hospital includes administration of opioid pain medication and muscle relaxants such as diazepam (Valium). Provide tetanus prophylaxis as needed. Observe the patient for seizures related to a rapidly rising blood pressure (Auerbach et al., 2008). For some patients, antihypertensive agents are needed. Although relapses may occur, the patient usually recovers within a week.

Less often, pulmonary edema, uncontrollable hypertension, seizures, respiratory arrest, and shock occur. These patients require critical care management. Antivenom is available for black widow spider bites. Although it can cause anaphylaxis and serum sickness, antivenom is considered effective in treating severe reactions (Weinstein et al., 2009). The drug is also given to pregnant women because they may have uterine contractions from a black widow spider bite that can lead to a premature delivery (Auerbach, 2007). The regional poison control center provides information about antivenom dosing and management for women who are pregnant.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is bitten on the leg by a black widow spider and needs immediate intervention by his friend who is a nurse. What is the nurse's priority action?

- A. Take the client to the hospital immediately.
- B. Apply moist heat to promote healing.
- C. Elevate the affected extremity above the heart.
- D. Apply ice to the bite area to decrease neurotoxicity.

SCORPIONS

Pathophysiology

Scorpions are found in many states within the United States although not typically in the Midwest or New England. However, stings are always possible when people keep scorpions as pets or when scorpions are accidentally transported in baggage and packaging. Unlike spiders that envenom their prey by inflicting a bite, scorpions inject venom through a stinging apparatus on their tail. Most scorpion stings produce a mild reaction characterized by local pain, inflammation, and mild systemic symptoms. These effects are usually self-limiting and best treated by analgesics, supportive management, and basic wound care.

One species of scorpion found in the southwestern United States that can inflict a sting associated with a potentially fatal systemic response is the bark scorpion (Fig. 11-6). It is often found in trees and woodpiles and around debris. Humans are usually stung when the scorpion gets into clothing, shoes, blankets, and personal items left on the ground.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Because bark scorpion venom is neurotoxic, clinical manifestations result from cranial nerve and/or skeletal muscle



FIG. 11-6 *Centruroides exilicauda* (*C. sculpturatus*), the bark scorpion of Arizona.

involvement. The sting site may or may not show evidence of the venom release. There may be no redness or other obvious sign of inflammation. Gentle tapping at the potential sting site causing increased pain is associated with a bark scorpion sting (Suchard, 2007). The severity of the reaction varies from local pain to severe systemic manifestations, such as high fever, hypertension, GI disorders, tachycardia, cardiac dysfunction, pulmonary edema, and nervous system involvement. In rare cases, death can occur.

Symptoms usually begin immediately after the sting and can reach a crisis level within 12 hours. Recovery occurs gradually. Pain and paresthesias can remain for up to 2 weeks (Suchard, 2007).

INTERVENTIONS

The first priority of patient management is vital sign assessment and continuous monitoring for several hours in a hospital emergency department or critical care unit. As symptoms worsen, the patient may develop respiratory failure and need intubation and mechanical ventilation.

Provide supplemental oxygen and IV fluid replacement immediately. Apply an ice pack to the sting site to control pain. Give analgesic and sedative agents with caution in the non-intubated, spontaneously breathing patient. Potent opioids, benzodiazepines, and barbiturates can cause loss of airway reflexes and precipitate respiratory failure. Fever is treated with acetaminophen (Tylenol) and application of a cooling blanket as needed. Because scorpion stings produce a puncture wound, provide tetanus prophylaxis and basic wound care with an antiseptic agent. *Contact the poison control center as soon as possible to assist with patient management, particularly in regard to use of pharmacologic agents for scorpion stings.*

BEEES AND WASPS

Pathophysiology

Bees and wasps are also venomous arthropods. Stings can produce a wide range of reactions from discomfort at the sting site to severe pain, multi-system problems, and life-threatening anaphylaxis in allergic people. Bumblebees, hornets, and wasps are capable of stinging repeatedly when

disturbed. They have a smooth stinger that typically does not become lodged in the victim. Only the honeybees can sting just once. When a honeybee stings a person, the stinger and venom sac pull away from the bee. The bee dies, but venom injection continues because the stinger and sac remain in the victim.

“Africanized” bees, also called “killer bees,” are a very aggressive species found in the southwestern states that are known to attack in groups and can remain agitated for several hours. People under attack should attempt to outrun the bees, if possible, and keep their mouth and eyes protected from the swarm. A person should never go into a body of water because the bees will attack when he or she comes up for air. When a person sustains multiple stings, reactions are more severe and may be fatal because multiple venom doses have cumulative toxic effects.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Chart 11-5 lists actions that may help prevent arthropod bites and stings.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The person who is stung by a bee or wasp first has a local reaction of immediate pain and a wheal-and-flare skin reaction. For some people, swelling can be extensive and involve an entire limb or body area. Systemic effects can then develop based on the venom load and the person’s sensitivity to the venom. These effects may include generalized edema, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea and are reactions to the toxic effects of the venom itself, not necessarily an allergic reaction. Other toxic venom effects include destruction of red and white blood cells and platelets, damage to the blood vessel walls, acute renal failure, liver injury, and cardiac dysrhythmias (Mitchell, 2006).

If the patient has an *allergy to the venom*, then **urticaria** (hives), pruritus (itching), and swelling of the lips and tongue may occur. An allergic response can rapidly progress to an anaphylactic reaction in highly sensitive patients. **Anaphylaxis** is a life-threatening allergic response and is evidenced by respiratory distress with bronchospasm and laryngeal edema, hypotension, deterioration in mental status, and cardiac dysrhythmias. *This type of reaction constitutes a true medical emergency that is imminently life threatening and may lead to cardiac arrest.* Realize that initially it may be impossible to distinguish an allergic reaction from a toxic venom reaction because they both can cause the same types of early signs and symptoms.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Emergency Care

Basic emergency care for bee and wasp stings includes quick removal of the stinger (if present) and application of an ice pack (Laskowski-Jones, 2010). Tweezers formerly were avoided for stinger removal because it was believed that pinching the stinger would cause additional venom to be injected. However, this concern appears to be unfounded (Auerbach, 2009). The stinger is best removed with tweezers

or by gently scraping or brushing it off with the edge of a knife blade, credit card, or needle. The method used to remove the stinger is not as important as the speed of removal (Auerbach, 2009).

Advanced prehospital emergency care interventions are prioritized to ensure that airway, breathing, and circulation are maintained. First, determine whether the patient has a history of allergic reactions to bee stings and whether he or she has an epinephrine kit, also called a “bee kit.” These kits may also contain an antihistamine tablet. If the patient has a severe allergic reaction with wheezing, facial swelling, and respiratory distress, epinephrine is given immediately. Allergic adult patients typically carry an EpiPen. This device allows quick and simple epinephrine administration in an emergency because it delivers the right dose with just a click of a button. Other kits contain a prefilled epinephrine syringe. The IM route is recommended over the subcutaneous route because it has more predictable and rapid absorption. The dose should be repeated in 15 minutes if signs and symptoms persist (see [Chapter 22](#) for further discussion of epinephrine administration for anaphylaxis management).

After epinephrine administration, an antihistamine such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl ) or chlorpheniramine (Chlor-Trimeton, Novo-Pheniramin ) is also given. In the field setting, oral liquid diphenhydramine (available over the counter) may be easier for the victim to swallow than the tablet form if there is tongue or pharyngeal edema. *Call 911 to transport the patient to a medical facility as soon as possible.*

Hospital Care

Once in a clinical setting, patients who sustain serious reactions to bee or wasp stings need oxygen administration and continuous cardiac and blood pressure monitoring. Establish an IV infusion with normal saline solution to support blood pressure. Advanced life support drugs and equipment should be made immediately available. If epinephrine IM fails to relieve the life-threatening reaction, a stronger solution may be requested as a very slow IV bolus.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

IV epinephrine administration has much greater risk for adverse cardiovascular effects than IM epinephrine. Use the IV form of epinephrine with extreme caution, especially in older adults with cardiovascular disease, because it can increase pulse rate and blood pressure. Monitor the patient's vital signs every 10 to 15 minutes for 1 hour after IV administration.

Bronchospasm can be treated with albuterol (Proventil, Novo-Salmol ) via inhalation or a similar bronchodilating agent. Parenteral antihistamines, such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl ) and corticosteroids are also commonly prescribed to decrease the immune response. The toxin in the bee and wasp venom may outlast the effects of the initial doses of epinephrine and antihistamines and cause a recurrence of the allergic reaction over time. Therefore doses may need to be repeated for hours or days. Corticosteroids in tapered doses are often given to manage or prevent delayed allergic effects, termed a *biphasic reaction*, which generally occurs within 4 to 6 hours of the sting; however, the

evidence regarding the effectiveness of corticosteroid administration is unclear (Choo et al., 2010).

All patients who have sustained multiple stings (particularly more than 50) are observed in an emergency care setting for several hours to monitor for the development of toxic venom effects. A critical care admission may be needed.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach anyone who develops an allergic reaction to bee or wasp stings to always carry a prescription epinephrine emergency kit and wear a medical alert tag or bracelet.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice

A patient who is on vacation is admitted to a local rural emergency department after being stung 10 minutes ago by a small honeybee. The patient's husband states that she is allergic to bees and forgot her bee kit. As her nurse, you assess mild respiratory distress, upper arm swelling at the sting site, and increasing anxiety. Her lung assessment reveals wheezing on inspiration, her respiratory rate is 32, and her blood pressure is 158/70 mm Hg. She has no history of hypertension.

1. For what complications will you monitor and why?
2. The physician will likely prescribe epinephrine for this patient. What assessments will you perform after giving this medication and why?
3. What other drugs will likely be prescribed for this patient and why?
4. What is likely causing her elevated blood pressure at this time?

LIGHTNING INJURIES

Pathophysiology

Lightning is a year-round force of nature responsible for multiple injuries and deaths each year. It is caused by an electric charge generated within thunderclouds that may become cloud-to-ground lightning—the most dangerous form to people and structures. Young adult males account for the majority of lightning-related deaths. Most lightning-related injuries occur in the summer months during the afternoon and early evening because of increased thunderstorm activity and greater numbers of people spending time outside. Anyone without adequate shelter, including golfers, hikers, campers, beach-goers, and swimmers, is at risk.

Lightning has an enormous magnitude of energy and a different current flow than a typical high-voltage electric shock. The duration of contact is nearly instantaneous, resulting in a flashover phenomenon—an effect that may account for the relatively low overall mortality rate. Because water is a conductor of electricity and current takes the path of least resistance to the ground, any wetness on the body increases the flashover effect of a lightning strike. Lightning flashover produces an explosive force that can injure victims directly, as well as cause them to fall or to be thrown. The clothing and shoes of victims may be damaged or blown off in the process.

Lightning produces injury by directly striking a victim, by splashing off a nearby object, or by traveling through the

ground. Although few people die after a lightning strike, many survivors are left with permanent disabilities.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Injuries caused by lightning strike are highly preventable. Teach people to stay indoors during an electrical storm. [Chart 11-6](#) lists common prevention strategies.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Both the cardiopulmonary and the central nervous systems are profoundly affected by lightning injuries. *The most lethal initial effect of massive electrical current discharge on the cardiopulmonary system is cardiac arrest.* Because cardiac cells are autorhythmic, an effective cardiac rhythm may return spontaneously. However, prolonged respiratory arrest from impairment of the medullary respiratory center can produce hypoxia and, subsequently, a second cardiac arrest. Therefore, when attempting to manage multiple victims of a lightning strike, provide care to those who are in cardiopulmonary

arrest first. Initiate resuscitation measures with immediate airway and ventilatory management, chest compressions, and other appropriate life-support interventions.

People who survive the immediate lightning strike may be treated in a less emergent fashion. However, these victims can have serious myocardial injury, which may be manifested by ECG and myocardial perfusion abnormalities, such as angina and dysrhythmias. The initial appearance of mottled skin and decreased to absent peripheral pulses usually arises from arterial vasospasm and typically resolves spontaneously in several hours.

Central nervous system (CNS) injury is common in lightning strike victims. A classic finding is an immediate but temporary paralysis that affects the lower limbs to a greater extent than the upper limbs. This condition usually resolves within hours. Other clinical manifestations and complications resulting from lightning strikes are listed in [Chart 11-6](#). Lightning strikes also cause skin burns. Most burns are superficial and heal without incident. Patients may have full-thickness burns, charring, and contact burns from overlying metal objects. An uncommon but characteristic skin manifestation of lightning is the appearance of branching or ferning marks on the skin called [Lichtenberg figures](#).

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

Because of lightning's powerful impact to the body, patients are at great risk for multi-system trauma. The full extent of injury may not be known until thorough monitoring and diagnostic evaluation can be performed in the hospital. Initial care includes spinal immobilization with priority attention to stabilization of airway, breathing, and circulation through standard basic and advanced life support measures. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) is performed immediately when a person is in cardiac arrest. If cardiopulmonary or CNS injury is present, skin burns are *not* an initial priority. However, if time and resources permit, a sterile dressing may be applied to cover the sites. *Victims of lightning strike are not electrically charged; the rescuer is in no danger from physical contact.* Nonetheless, the storm can present a continued threat to everyone in the vicinity who lacks adequate shelter. Contrary to popular belief, lightning can and does strike in the same place more than once.

Hospital Care

Once in the acute care hospital setting, the focus of care is advanced life support management, including cardiac monitoring to detect cardiac dysrhythmias and a 12-lead ECG. The patient may require mechanical ventilation until spontaneous breathing returns. Collaborate with the health care team to perform a thorough physical and diagnostic evaluation to identify obvious and occult (hidden) traumatic injuries because the patient may have suffered a fall or blast effect during the strike. A creatine kinase (CK) measurement may be requested to detect skeletal muscle damage resulting from the lightning strike. In severe cases, rhabdomyolysis (circulation of by-products of skeletal muscle destruction) can lead to renal failure. Burn wounds are assessed and treated according to standard burn care protocols. Tetanus prophylaxis is necessary for burns or any break in skin integrity. Some institutions

CHART 11-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Lightning Strike Prevention

- Observe weather forecasts when planning to be outside.
- Seek shelter when you hear thunder. Safe areas include the nearest building or an enclosed vehicle. Isolated sheds and the entrances to caves are dangerous, however. Do not stand under an isolated tall tree or structure (e.g., ski lift, flagpole, boat mast, power line) in an open area such as a field, ridge, or hilltop; lightning seeks the highest point. A stand of dense trees offers better protection.
- Leave the water immediately (including an indoor shower or bathtub), and move away from any open bodies of water.
- Avoid metal objects like chairs or bleachers; put down tools, fishing rods, garden equipment, golf clubs, and umbrellas; stand clear of fences, exposed pipes, motorcycles, bicycles, tractors, and golf carts.
- If camping in a tent, stay away from the metal tent poles and wet walls.
- Once inside a building, stay away from open doors, windows, fireplaces, metal fixtures, and plumbing.
- Turn off electrical equipment including computers, televisions, and stereos.
- Stay off the telephone. Lightning can enter through the telephone line and produce head and neck trauma, including cataracts and tympanic membrane disruption. Death can result.
- If you are caught out in the open and cannot seek shelter, attempt to move to lower ground such as a ravine or valley; stay away from any tall trees or objects that could result in a lightning strike splashing over to you; place insulating material between you and the ground (e.g., sleeping pad, rain parka, life jacket). A lightning strike is imminent if your hair stands on end, you see blue halos around objects, and hear high-pitched or crackling noises. If you cannot move away from the area immediately, crouch on the balls of your feet and tuck your head down to minimize the target size; do not lie down on the ground or have hand contact with the ground.

transfer these victims to a burn center for follow-up management.

COLD-RELATED INJURIES

Two common cold-related injuries are hypothermia and frostbite. Both types of injuries can be prevented by implementing protection from the cold. Teach patients at risk ways to prevent these injuries, which can range from mild discomfort to major systemic complications.

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

When participating in cold weather activities, clothing choices are critical to the prevention of hypothermia and frostbite. Teach the importance of wearing synthetic clothing because it moves moisture away from the body and dries fast. Cotton clothing, especially as an undergarment, holds moisture, becomes wet, and contributes to the development of hypothermia. Cotton clothing should be strictly avoided in a cold outdoor environment; this rule applies to gloves and socks as well. Wet socks and gloves promote frostbite in the toes and fingers. Wearing too many pairs of socks can decrease circulation and lead to frostbite.

Clothing should be layered so that it can be easily added or removed as the temperature changes. The inner layers, such as polyester fleece, provide warmth and insulation. The outer layer's purpose is to block the wind and provide moisture protection. This layer is best made of a windproof, waterproof, breathable fabric such as GORE-TEX. A hat is an essential clothing item that significantly decreases body heat loss through the head. Face protection with a facemask should be used on particularly cold days when wind chill poses a risk. Sunscreen (SPF 30) and sunglasses are also important to protect skin and eyes from the sun's harmful rays.

When driving in winter cannot be avoided, teach people to keep water, extra clothing, and food in their car in case the vehicle becomes stranded. Maintaining personal fitness and conditioning are also important considerations to prevent hypothermia and frostbite. People should not diet or restrict food or fluid intake when participating in winter outdoor activities. Malnutrition and dehydration contribute to cold-related illnesses and injuries. Finally, it is important for people to know their physical limits and to come in out of the cold when these limits have been reached.

HYPOTHERMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypothermia is a core body temperature below 95° F (35° C). Common predisposing conditions that promote hypothermia include:

- Cold water immersion
- Acute illness (e.g., "flu")
- Traumatic injury
- Shock states
- Immobilization
- Cold weather (especially for the homeless and people working outdoors)

- Advanced age
- Selected medications (e.g., phenothiazines, barbiturates)
- Alcohol intoxication
- Malnutrition
- Hypothyroidism
- Inadequate clothing or shelter (e.g., the homeless population)

An environmental temperature below 82° F (28° C) can produce hypothermia in any susceptible person. *Therefore people, especially older adults, are actually at risk on a year-round basis in most areas of the world.* Wind chill is a significant factor: heat loss increases as wind speed rises. Wet conditions further increase heat loss through evaporation. Weather is the most common cause of hypothermia for outdoor sports enthusiasts and for those with inadequate clothing or shelter. It is also a problem for the older adult, the homeless, and the poor who cannot afford heating.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older client is preparing for a trip to a cold-weather area and asks the nurse how he can prevent hypothermia while visiting there. Which preventive actions will the nurse include in the health teaching? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Wear cotton clothing to help absorb moisture.
- B. Layer clothing to keep heat near the body.
- C. Avoid skiing if it is snowing heavily.
- D. Be sure to wear gloves and a hat.
- E. Do not wear too many pairs of socks.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Hypothermia is commonly divided into three categories by severity: *mild* (90° to 97° F [32° to 36° C]); *moderate* (82° to 90° F [28° to 32° C]); and *severe* (below 82° F [28° C]). Treatment decisions are based on the severity of hypothermia. **Chart 11-7** summarizes by category the common key features for the patient who is hypothermic.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

For treatment of *mild hypothermia*, the person needs to be sheltered from the cold environment, have all wet clothing removed, and undergo passive or active external rewarming. Passive methods involve applying warm clothing or blankets. Active methods incorporate heating blankets, warm packs, and convective air heaters or warmers to speed rewarming. If a heating blanket is used, monitor the patient's skin at least every 15 to 30 minutes to reduce the risk for burn injury.

In the case of mild, uncomplicated hypothermia as the only health problem, having the victim drink warm high-carbohydrate liquids that do not contain alcohol or caffeine can aid in rewarming. Alcohol is a peripheral vasodilator; both alcohol and caffeine are diuretics. These effects can potentially worsen dehydration and hypothermia.

CHART 11-7 KEY FEATURES

Hypothermia**Mild**

- Shivering
- Dysarthria (slurred speech)
- Decreased muscle coordination
- Impaired cognition (“mental slowness”)
- Diuresis (caused by shunting of blood to major organs)

Moderate

- Muscle weakness
- Increased loss of coordination
- Acute confusion
- Apathy
- Incoherence
- Possible stupor
- Decreased clotting (caused by impaired platelet aggregation and thrombocytopenia)

Severe

- Bradycardia
- Severe hypotension
- Decreased respiratory rate
- Cardiac dysrhythmias, including possible ventricular fibrillation or asystole
- Decreased neurologic reflexes
- Decreased pain responsiveness
- Acid-base imbalance

Hospital Care

General management principles apply to both *moderate* and *severe* hypothermia. Protect patients from further heat loss and handle them gently to prevent ventricular fibrillation. Positioning the patient in the supine position prevents orthostatic changes in blood pressure from cardiovascular instability. Follow standard resuscitation efforts with special attention to maintenance of airway, breathing, and circulation as recommended by the American Heart Association (2005b):

- Administer drugs with caution and/or spaced at longer intervals because metabolism is unpredictable in hypothermic conditions.
- Remember that drugs can accumulate without obvious therapeutic effect while the patient is cold but may become active and potentially lead to drug toxicity as effective rewarming is underway.
- Consider withholding IV drugs until the core temperature is above 86° F (30° C).
- Initiate CPR for patients without spontaneous circulation.
- Be aware that defibrillation attempts may be ineffective until the core temperature is above 86° F (30° C).

Treatment of *moderate* hypothermia may involve active external and core rewarming methods. Applying external heat with heating blankets can promote core temperature “after-drop” by producing peripheral vasodilation. “**After-drop**” is the continued decrease in core body temperature after the victim is removed from the cold environment; it is caused by the return of cold blood from the periphery to the central circulation. Therefore the patient’s trunk should be actively rewarmed before the extremities. Core rewarming methods

for moderate hypothermia include administration of warm IV fluids, heated oxygen or inspired gas to prevent further heat loss via the respiratory tract, and heated peritoneal, pleural, gastric, or bladder lavage.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Patients who are *severely* hypothermic are at high risk for cardiac arrest. Avoid using active *external* rewarming with heating devices because it is dangerous and contraindicated in this population due to rapid vasodilation.

The treatment of choice for *severe* hypothermia is to use *internal* rewarming methods such as cardiopulmonary bypass, hemodialysis, venovenous or arteriovenous rewarming, or intravascular rewarming via a closed-loop indwelling catheter (Lasater, 2008). Cardiopulmonary bypass is the fastest core rewarming technique. However, this device is not available in all hospitals. It also requires specialized personnel and resources to operate it properly. Monitor for early signs of complications that can occur after rewarming, such as fluid, electrolyte, and metabolic abnormalities; acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS); acute renal failure; and pneumonia.

A long-standing principle in the treatment of patients with hypothermic cardiac arrest is that “no one is dead until they are warm and dead.” There is a factual basis to this statement when considering the number of survivors who have suffered a prolonged hypothermic cardiac arrest. Prolonged resuscitation efforts may not be reasonable in cases in which survival appears highly unlikely, such as in an anoxic event followed by a hypothermic cardiac arrest.

FROSTBITE**Pathophysiology**

Another significant cold-related injury that may or may not be associated with hypothermia is frostbite. The main risk factor is inadequate insulation against cold weather; that is, either the skin is exposed to the cold or the person’s clothing offers insufficient protection. Wet clothing, in particular, is a poor insulator and facilitates the development of frostbite. Fatigue, dehydration, and poor nutrition are other contributing factors. People who smoke, consume alcohol, or have impaired peripheral circulation have a higher incidence of frostbite. Any previous history of frostbite further increases a person’s susceptibility.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Frostbite occurs when body tissue freezes and causes damage. Like burns, frostbite injuries can be superficial, partial, or full thickness. By contrast, **frostnip** is a type of superficial cold injury that may produce pain, numbness, and pallor of the affected area but is easily relieved by applying warmth; it does not cause tissue damage. Frostnip typically develops on skin areas such as the face, nose, finger, or



FIG. 11-7 Edema and blister formation 24 hours after frostbite injury occurring in an area covered by a tightly fitted boot.

toes. Untreated, it is a precursor to more severe forms of frostbite.

First-degree frostbite, the least severe type of frostbite, involves **hyperemia** (increased blood flow) of the involved area and edema formation. In *second-degree frostbite*, large fluid-filled blisters develop with partial-thickness skin necrosis (Fig. 11-7). *Third-degree frostbite* appears as small blisters that contain dark fluid and an affected body part that is cool, numb, blue, or red and does not blanch. Full-thickness and subcutaneous tissue necrosis occur and require débridement. In *fourth-degree frostbite*, the most severe form, there are no blisters or edema; the part is numb, cold, and bloodless. The full-thickness necrosis extends into the muscle and bone. At this stage, gangrene develops, which may require amputation of the affected part.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

Recognition of frostbite is essential to early, effective intervention and prevention of further tissue damage. Asking a partner to frequently observe for early signs of frostbite such as a white, waxy appearance to exposed skin, especially on the nose, cheeks, and ears, is an effective strategy to identify the problem before it worsens. In this case, the best remedy is to have the person seek shelter from the wind and cold and to attend to the affected body part (Laskowski-Jones, 2009). Superficial frostbite is easily managed using body heat to warm the affected area. Teach patients to place their warm hands over the affected areas on their face or to place cold hands under the arms.

Hospital Care

Patients with more severe and deeper forms of frostbite need aggressive management. For all degrees of partial-thickness to full-thickness frostbite, rapid rewarming in a water bath at a temperature range of 104° to 108° F (40° to 42° C) is indicated to thaw the frozen part (Auerbach et al., 2008). If a warming tub is not available, use hot towels instead. Because patients experience severe pain during the rewarming process, this intervention is best accomplished in a medical facility; however, it may be done in another setting if no other options exist for prompt transport or rescue. Administer analgesics, especially IV opiates, and IV rehydration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Do not apply dry heat or massage the frostbitten areas as part of the warming process. These actions can produce further tissue injury.

When the rewarming process is complete, handle the injured areas gently and elevate them above heart level if possible to decrease tissue edema. Sometimes splints are used to immobilize extremities during the healing process. Assess the person at least hourly for the development of compartment syndrome—a limb-threatening complication caused by severe neurovascular impairment. Observe for early manifestations, which include increasing pain (even after analgesics are given) and paresthesias (painful tingling and numbness). Compare the affected extremity with the unaffected one to assess for pallor. Assess for pulses and muscle weakness. Management of compartment syndrome is discussed in detail in Chapter 54.

Frostbite destroys tissue and produces a deep tetanus-prone wound; the patient should be immunized to prevent tetanus. Apply only loose, nonadherent sterile dressings to the damaged areas. Avoid compression of the injured tissues. Both topical and systemic antibiotics may be used. Once a patient's frozen part has thawed, do not allow it to refreeze, which worsens the injury. Antiprostaglandin therapy with ibuprofen may be used because it may decrease tissue damage for some patients (Auerbach et al., 2008).

In cases of severe, deep frostbite, débridement of necrotic tissue may be needed to evaluate tissue viability and provide wound management. Amputation may be indicated for patients with severe injuries or for those who develop gangrene or severe compartment syndrome.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

A patient is admitted with severe frostbite of both feet and toes as a result of getting lost while hiking in a mountainous area. He cannot feel the frostbitten areas, and the skin over his feet is red and blue. The affected skin does not blanch, and both feet are very swollen. He states that he is worried that he will “lose his feet.”

1. How will you respond to the patient's concern at this time?
2. The patient undergoes a warming process to thaw his feet. What response will the patient likely experience, and how will you be prepared to intervene?
3. After receiving morphine for increasing pain, the patient reports severe pain and burning in his feet. What is your best action at this time?
4. For what complications is this patient at risk and why?

ALTITUDE-RELATED ILLNESSES

Pathophysiology

High altitude illnesses, also known as **high altitude disease (HAD)** or *altitude sickness*, cause pathophysiologic responses in the body as a result of exposure to low partial pressure of oxygen at high elevations. Although most consider high altitude to be an elevation over 5000 feet, millions of people worldwide who ascend to or live at altitudes above 2500 feet are at risk for acute and chronic mountain sickness.

As altitude increases, atmospheric (barometric) pressure decreases. Oxygen makes up 21% of the pressure. Therefore, as this pressure falls, the partial pressure of oxygen in the air decreases, resulting in less available oxygen to humans. The pathophysiologic consequence is hypoxia. Hypoxia is more pronounced as elevation increases.

Elevations higher than 18,000 feet are extreme altitudes. Supplemental oxygen is necessary at these levels to prevent altitude-related illnesses, including death, from occurring during abrupt ascent.

The cause of HAD is an interaction of environmental and genetic factors (Guoen et al., 2009). Those who are obese or have chronic illnesses, especially cardiovascular problems, are more at risk than those who are thinner and healthier. Dehydration and central nervous system depressants, such as alcohol, also increase the risk. The age of the person does not seem to be a factor in altitude-related illnesses.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Genetic differences among certain ethnic groups who live in high altitude areas have been studied. For example, chronic mountain sickness is less common in Tibetans and Sherpas than in Andeans, Hans, or Peruvian Quechuas (Guoen et al., 2009).

In addition, the pathogenesis of mountain sickness is associated with unidentified mutant forms of hypoxia-related genes, the human leukocyte antigen (HLA) system, and certain genes that encode protein. Examples of genes that may mutate and contribute to the development of HAD include:

- *EPO* (erythropoietin), which regulates red blood cell production
- *HIF1A* (hypoxia inducible factor), which mediates the effects of hypoxia on body cells
- *EDN1* (endothelin), which causes vasoconstriction and thus increases blood pressure
- *NOS3* (endothelial nitric oxide synthase), which makes nitric acid in vascular tissue to maintain vessel tone and altitude adaptation

At this time, no clinical genetic testing to determine a person's risk of altitude sickness is available; however, further research is being conducted to identify specific gene mutations that contribute to altitude-related illnesses.

The process of adapting to high altitude is called *acclimatization*. **Acclimatization** involves physiologic changes that help the body adapt to less available oxygen in the atmosphere. As the carotid bodies sense a decline in P_{aO_2} at about 5000 feet, they increase the respiratory rate to improve oxygen delivery. This mechanism is called the “hypoxic-ventilatory response.” Increased respiratory rate causes **hypocapnia** (decreased carbon dioxide) and respiratory alkalosis, which limit further increases in respiratory rate. Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep is impaired. Hypoxia can occur from periods of apnea. Within 24 to 48 hours of being at high altitude, the kidneys excrete the excess bicarbonate, which helps the pH to return to normal and ventilatory rate to again increase.

Increased sympathetic nervous system activity increases heart rate, blood pressure, and cardiac output. Pulmonary artery pressure rises as an effect of generalized hypoxia-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction. Cerebral blood flow increases to maintain cerebral oxygen delivery. Hypoxia also induces red blood cell production by stimulating the release of erythropoietin. The result is an increase in red blood cells and hemoglobin concentration. Over time, polycythemia can develop in people who remain in a high altitude environment.

People who plan to climb to high altitudes are advised to ascend slowly, over the course of days or even weeks, depending on the degree of elevation. Ascending too rapidly is the primary cause of altitude-related illnesses. They are much

more common in people who sleep at elevations above 8000 feet.

The three most common clinical conditions that are considered high altitude illnesses are acute mountain sickness (AMS), high altitude cerebral edema (HACE), and high altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE). AMS may occur with HACE and/or HAPE; the underlying pathophysiology is hypoxia. Chronic mountain sickness can occur in people who live at high elevations. Although each syndrome has several unique manifestations, the basic assessment and management approach are the same.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Assessment findings for the typical patient with AMS include reports of throbbing headache, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. Feeling chilled, irritable, and apathetic are also associated with AMS. The syndrome produces effects similar to an alcohol-induced hangover. The patient may relate a feeling of extreme illness. Vital signs are variable: the patient can be tachycardic or bradycardic, have normal blood pressure, or have postural hypotension. He or she may experience dyspnea both on exertion and at rest. Exertional dyspnea is expected as a person adjusts to high altitude. However, dyspnea at rest is abnormal and may signal the onset of HAPE.

If AMS progresses to *high altitude cerebral edema (HACE)*, the extreme form of this disorder, the patient cannot perform ADLs and has extreme apathy. A key sign of HACE is the development of ataxia (defective muscular coordination). The patient also has a change in mental status with confusion and impaired judgment. Cranial nerve dysfunction and seizures may occur. If untreated, a further decline in the patient's level of consciousness results. Stupor, coma, and death can result from brain swelling and the subsequent damage caused by increased intracranial pressure over the course of 1 to 3 days.

High altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) often appears in conjunction with HACE but may occur during the progression of AMS within the first 2 to 4 days of a rapid ascent to high altitude, commonly on the second night. It is the most common cause of death associated with high altitude. Patients notice poor exercise tolerance and a prolonged recovery time after exertion. Fatigue and weakness, as well as other signs and symptoms of AMS, are present. Important clinical indicators of HAPE include a persistent dry cough and cyanosis of the lips and nail beds. Tachycardia and tachypnea occur at rest. Crackles may be auscultated in one or both lungs. Pink, frothy sputum is a late sign of HAPE. A chest x-ray demonstrates pulmonary infiltrates and pulmonary edema. Arterial blood gas analysis shows respiratory alkalosis and hypoxemia (decreased oxygen). Pneumonia also may be present. Pulmonary artery pressure is usually very elevated due to pulmonary edema.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Prehospital Care

The most important intervention to manage serious altitude-related illnesses is descent to a lower altitude. Patients must be monitored carefully for any evidence of symptom

progression. With mild AMS, the victim should be allowed to rest and acclimate at the current altitude. The person is instructed not to ascend to a higher altitude, especially for sleep, until symptoms lessen. If symptoms persist or worsen, he or she should be moved to a lower altitude as soon as possible. Even a descent of about 1600 feet may improve the patient's condition and reverse altitude-related pathologic effects. Oxygen should also be administered if available to effectively treat symptoms of AMS.

Prevention and Treatment

The oral drug *acetazolamide* (Diamox, Apo-Acetazolamide) is commonly used to both prevent and treat AMS (Luks & Swenson, 2008). Acetazolamide is a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor. It acts by causing a bicarbonate diuresis, which rids the body of excess fluid, and induces metabolic acidosis. The acidotic state increases respiratory rate and decreases the occurrence of periodic respiration during sleep at night. In this way, it helps patients acclimate faster to a high altitude. For best results, the drug should be taken 24 hours before ascent and be continued for the first 2 days of the trip.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Because acetazolamide is a sulfa drug, ask about an allergy to sulfa before the patient takes the drug because it may cause hypersensitivity reactions in those who are sulfa-sensitive.

Another drug that is indicated in the treatment of moderate to severe AMS is dexamethasone (Decadron, Deronil). This drug's mechanism of action is unclear for AMS treatment, but it reduces cerebral edema by dehydrating the central nervous system. It does not speed acclimatization like acetazolamide does, but it does relieve the symptoms of AMS. Symptoms may recur when the drug is stopped.

For the treatment of HACE, early recognition of ataxia or a change in level of consciousness should prompt a rapid descent by rescuers or companions to a lower altitude. While undergoing descent, the patient can be given supplemental oxygen and dexamethasone. If mental status is severely impaired and the patient's airway is at risk, all drugs should be given parenterally. Ultimately, the patient with HACE must be admitted to the hospital. Critical care management may be necessary.

Like HACE, early recognition of HAPE is essential to improve the patient's chance for survival. Phosphodiesterase inhibitors such as tadalafil (Cialis) and sildenafil (Viagra) may be used to prevent HAPE due to their pulmonary vasodilatory effects (Luks & Swenson, 2008). When it occurs, HAPE is a serious condition that requires quick evacuation to a lower altitude, oxygen administration, and bedrest to save the patient's life. If descent must be delayed because of weather conditions or other factors, oxygen administration is essential as soon as possible. Keep the patient warm at all times. Drugs are not substitutes for descent and oxygen. However, the treatment of HAPE may include the calcium channel blocker nifedipine (Procardia, Adalat PA) to decrease pulmonary vascular resistance (Luks & Swenson, 2008). Hospital admission is required. In uncomplicated cases of HAPE, recovery occurs quickly but effects such as weakness and fatigue may persist for 2 weeks.

CHART 11-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing, Recognizing, and Treating Altitude-Related Illnesses

- Plan a slow ascent to allow for acclimatization.
- Learn to recognize clinical manifestations of altitude-related illnesses.
- Avoid overexertion and overexposure to cold; rest at present altitude.
- Ensure adequate hydration and nutrition.
- Avoid alcohol and sleeping pills when at high altitude.
- For progressive or advanced acute mountain sickness (AMS), recognize symptoms and implement an immediate descent; provide oxygen at high concentration.
- To prevent the occurrence of AMS, discuss the use of acetazolamide (Diamox) and other agents as indicated with your health care provider.
- Protect skin and eyes from the sun's harmful ultraviolet rays at high altitude. Wear sunscreen (at least SPF 30) and high-quality wraparound sunglasses or goggles.

Chart 11-8 summarizes best practices for preventing, recognizing, and treating altitude-related illnesses.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client experiences altitude-related illness after visiting a ski resort in Colorado. What is the nurse's priority action when the client is admitted to the emergency department?

- Provide supplemental oxygen.
- Place the client on a ventilator.
- Perform an electrocardiogram.
- Insert a nasogastric tube.

DROWNING

Pathophysiology

Drowning is a leading cause of accidental death in the United States. It occurs when a person suffers primary respiratory impairment from submersion or immersion in a liquid medium (usually water) (Layon & Modell, 2009). **Near-drowning** was previously defined as recovery after submersion; however, this term is no longer used because language that describes drowning incidents has been standardized (American Heart Association, 2005a). Today the drowning process is considered a continuum with outcomes that range from survival to death. Approximately 1 of every 13 drowning victims dies in the United States (Layon & Modell, 2009).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Prevention is the key to avoiding drowning incidents. When providing health teaching, include these points:

- Constantly observe people who cannot swim and are in or around water.
- Do not swim alone.
- Test the water depth before diving in head first; never dive into shallow water.

- Avoid alcoholic beverages when swimming and boating and while in proximity to water.
- Ensure that water rescue equipment, such as life jackets, flotation devices, and rope, is immediately available when around water.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

When water is aspirated into the lungs, the makeup of the water is a factor in the pathophysiology of the drowning event. Aspiration of fresh water causes surfactant to wash out of the lungs. Surfactant reduces surface tension within the alveoli, increases lung compliance and alveolar radius, and decreases the work of breathing. Loss of surfactant from fresh water aspiration destabilizes the alveoli and leads to increased airway resistance. Conversely, salt water—a hypertonic fluid—creates an osmotic gradient that draws protein-rich fluid from the vascular space into the alveoli. Pulmonary edema results. Another concern is water quality during the submersion event. The victim's outcome may be negatively affected by contaminants in the water such as chemicals, algae, microbes, sand, and mud. These substances can worsen lung injury and cause a lung infection.

The duration and severity of hypoxia are the two most important factors that determine outcomes for victims of drowning. Very cold water seems to have a protective effect. Successful resuscitations have been reported even after prolonged arrest intervals. Hypothermia might offer some protection to the hypoxic brain by reducing cerebral metabolic rate. The diving reflex is a physiologic response to asphyxia, which produces bradycardia, a reduction in cardiac output, and vasoconstriction of vessels in the intestine, skeletal muscles, and kidneys. These physiologic effects are thought to reduce myocardial oxygen use and enhance blood flow to the heart and cerebral tissues. Survival may be linked to some combination of the effects of hypothermia and the diving reflex.

The cause of the submersion should also be determined, if possible. The patient may have suffered a medical condition or injury that caused the drowning event such as a seizure, myocardial infarction, stroke, or spinal cord injury while in the water. Injuries sustained from diving into shallow water or body surfing, such as cervical spine trauma, can also increase the difficulty of rescue and resuscitation efforts.

INTERVENTIONS

First Aid/Emergency Care

Immediate emergency care focuses on a safe rescue of the victim. Potential rescuers must consider their own swimming abilities and limitations, as well as any natural or human-made hazards, before attempting to save the victim; failure to do so could place additional lives in jeopardy. *Once rescuers gain access to the victim, the priority is safe removal from the water.* Spine stabilization with a board or floatation device should be considered only for those victims who are at high risk for spine trauma (e.g., history of diving, use of a water slide, signs of injury or alcohol intoxication), as opposed to all drowning victims (American Heart Association, 2005a). Time is of the essence; efforts directed toward a rapid rescue have the most potential benefit. Initiate airway clearance and ventilatory support measures as soon as possible—usually once the person is in shallow water or out of the water altogether, because effective airway and ventilation measures are very difficult to perform in deep water. If hypothermia is a concern, handle the victim gently to prevent ventricular fibrillation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Do not attempt to get the water out of the victim's lungs; deliver abdominal or chest thrusts only if airway obstruction is suspected.

Hospital Care

Once the person is safely removed from the water, airway and cardiopulmonary support interventions begin, including oxygen administration, endotracheal intubation, CPR, and defibrillation, if necessary. In the clinical setting, gastric decompression with a nasogastric or orogastric tube is needed to prevent aspiration of gastric contents and improve ventilatory function. After a period of artificial ventilation by mask, the victim typically has a distended abdomen, which impairs movement of the diaphragm and decreases lung ventilation. Patients who experience drowning require complex care to support their major body systems. The full spectrum of critical care technology may be needed to manage the pathophysiologic complications of drowning, including pulmonary infection, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), and CNS impairment. These complications are discussed elsewhere in this text.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assess high-risk patients, especially older adults, for their knowledge of safety precautions to prevent heat-related and cold-related injuries.

- Assess high-risk patients, including those who do not know how to swim, for their knowledge of safety precautions to avoid drowning events.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach people how to prevent heat-related illnesses as outlined in [Chart 11-1](#).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Teach people how to prepare for cold environments, including proper clothing (no cotton) and avoidance of wind and wet weather.
- Teach people how to prevent arthropod bites and stings as described in [Chart 11-5](#).
- Teach people how to avoid getting bitten by a snake as listed in [Chart 11-4](#).

Physiological Integrity

- Heat-related injuries can be mild (heat exhaustion) to severe (heat stroke).
- The priority for first aid for heat stroke, after a patent airway is established, is to cool the patient as quickly as possible (see [Chart 11-3](#)).
- North American pit vipers can be identified by the triangular-shaped head and retractable fangs; nonpoisonous snakes do not have these features.
- The management of a patient who has a snakebite depends on the severity of envenomation (venom injection) (see [Table 11-1](#)); both local and systemic manifestations can occur.
- The priority for first aid when a patient has a snakebite is to decrease the venom circulation.
- Antivenom drugs are available for most types of poisonous snakebites; monitor for an allergic response when these medications are given.
- The bite of a brown recluse spider can cause tissue necrosis; in rare cases, systemic manifestations can occur, including death.
- Cold applications, such as ice, should be used as first aid for poisonous spider bites.
- The venom of a bark scorpion is neurotoxic; monitor the patient for signs of respiratory failure that may require mechanical ventilation.
- Single bee and wasp stings cause local reactions unless the person is allergic to them.
- Epinephrine is the drug of choice for bee and wasp sting allergic reactions, followed by an antihistamine drug.
- The best way to prevent lightning injuries is to avoid places where lightning is likely to strike ([Chart 11-6](#)).
- Lightning causes central nervous system and cardiovascular complications, as well as skin burns.
- Two common cold injuries are hypothermia and frostbite; both may be prevented by selecting appropriate layered clothing; cotton should not be worn.
- In moderate to severe cases of hypothermia, coagulopathy (abnormal clotting) or cardiac failure can occur.
- The priority for care of a patient with a cold injury is warming; alcohol should be avoided.
- Frostbite can be mild (frostnip) to serious (fourth degree); severe frostbite can result in amputation due to compartment syndrome or gangrene.
- High altitude can cause a range of physiologic consequences in the body, primarily due to hypoxia.
- The priority for care of the patient with illness related to high altitude is descent to a lower altitude.
- Acetazolamide (Diamox, Apo-Acetazolamide 🍁) is the drug of choice for prevention and treatment of mild altitude-related illness.
- [Chart 11-8](#) outlines best practice strategies for preventing, recognizing, and treating altitude-related illnesses.
- Drowning victims often require cardiopulmonary support, including CPR.
- The patient who has been submersed in water is at risk for pulmonary infection, ARDS, and central nervous system impairment.

Concepts of Emergency and Disaster Preparedness

Linda Laskowski-Jones



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Apply principles of triage to prioritize care delivery in a disaster situation.
2. Identify the roles of the nurse in emergency preparedness and response.
3. Compare the key personnel roles in an emergency preparedness and response plan.
4. Describe the components of an emergency preparedness and response plan.

5. Develop a personal emergency preparedness plan.
6. Identify the type of patients to recommend for hospital discharge in a disaster situation.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Assess survivors for ability to adapt to the effects of disaster changes or traumatic events.
8. Provide support to the person and/or family in coping with life changes resulting from a disaster.

A **disaster** is commonly defined as an event in which illness or injuries exceed resource capabilities of a health care facility or community due to destruction and devastation. It can be either an internal or an external disaster.

TYPES OF DISASTERS

An *internal* disaster is any event inside a health care facility or campus that could endanger patients or staff. The event creates a need for evacuation or relocation. It often requires extra personnel and the activation of the facility's emergency preparedness and response plan (also called an *emergency management plan*). Examples of potential internal disasters include fire, explosion, and violence. Each health care facility develops policies and procedures for preventing these events through an organized security management plan. The most important outcome for any internal disaster is to maintain patient, staff, and visitor safety.

An *external* disaster is any event outside the health care facility or campus, somewhere in the community, which

requires the activation of the facility's emergency management plan. The number of facility staff is not adequate for the incoming emergency department (ED) patients. External disasters can be either natural, such as a hurricane, or technologic, such as a biologic terror attack.

Both internal and external disasters can result in many casualties, including death. Multi-casualty and mass casualty (disaster) events are not the same. The main difference is based on the scope and scale of the incident, considering the number and severity of victims or casualties involved. Both require specific response plans to activate necessary resources. In general, a **multi-casualty event** can be managed by a hospital using local resources; a **mass casualty event** overwhelms local medical capabilities and may require the collaboration of multiple agencies and health care facilities to handle the crisis (Smith, 2010). State, regional, and/or national resources may be needed to support the areas affected by the event. Trauma centers have a special role in all emergency preparedness activities because they provide a critical level of expertise in complex injury management.

CHART 12-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nurse's Role in Responding to Health Care Facility Fires

- Remove any patient or staff from immediate danger of the fire or smoke.
- Discontinue oxygen for all patients who can breathe without it.
- For patients on life support, maintain their respiratory status manually until removed from the fire area.
- Direct ambulatory patients to walk to a safe location.
- If possible, ask ambulatory patients to help push wheelchair patients out of danger.
- Move bedridden patients from the fire area in bed, by stretcher, or in a wheelchair; if needed, have one or two staff members move patients on blankets or carry them.
- After everyone is out of danger, seek to contain the fire by closing doors and windows and using an ABC extinguisher (can put out any type of fire), if possible.
- Do not risk injury to you or staff members while moving patients or attempting to extinguish the fire.

To maintain ongoing disaster preparedness, hospital personnel participate in emergency training and drills regularly. In the United States, The Joint Commission (2008) mandates that hospitals have an emergency preparedness plan that is tested through drills or actual participation in a real event at least twice yearly. One of the drills or events must involve community-wide resources and an influx of actual or simulated patients to assess the ability of collaborative efforts and command structures. In addition, accredited health care organizations are required to take an “all-hazards approach” to disaster planning. Using this approach, preparedness activities must address *all credible threats* to the community that could result in a disaster situation. Disaster drills, then, are ideally planned based on a risk assessment that identifies the events most likely to occur in a particular community. For example, a flood is more likely in the Gulf of Mexico and an avalanche is more likely in ski areas of the Rocky Mountains.

Hospitals are not the only health care agencies that are required to practice disaster drills. Nursing homes and other long-term care (LTC) facilities are also mandated to have annual drills to prepare for mass casualty events. Part of the response plan must include a method for evacuation of residents from the facility in a timely and safe manner.

An evacuation plan is also part of fire prevention and preparedness plans for health care facilities. The Life Safety Code® published by the National Fire Protection Association provides guidelines for building construction, design, maintenance, and evacuation. Every health care facility is required to practice at least one fire drill or actual fire response once a year. Patient evacuation is not required if the event is a drill. All facility personnel are mandated to have training on fire prevention and responsiveness each year. [Chart 12-1](#) lists general guidelines for fire responsiveness and building evacuation to ensure safety.

IMPACT OF RECENT EXTERNAL DISASTERS

The events of September 11, 2001, changed hospital and community disaster planning efforts. With the shocking terrorist



FIG. 12-1 Hazardous materials (HAZMAT) training to decontaminate people exposed to toxic agents in an outdoor decontamination area.

attacks on the Twin Towers of the World Trade Center and the Pentagon and the actual and perceived threat of domestic terrorism including anthrax exposure that followed, hospital emergency preparedness concepts became much more fully integrated into the daily operations of emergency departments (EDs) by necessity. Weapons of mass destruction (WMD) rapidly became the focus of public health risk.

The term “NBC” was coined to describe nuclear, biologic, and chemical threats. In response, emergency medical services (EMS) agencies and hospitals upgraded their decontamination facilities, equipment, and all levels of personal protective gear to better protect staff. ED physician and nursing staff underwent hazardous materials (HAZMAT) training and learned how to recognize patterns of illness in patients who present for treatment that potentially indicate biologic terrorism agents, such as anthrax or smallpox ([Fig. 12-1](#)). Protocols for the pharmacologic treatment of infectious disease agents, as well as stockpiles of antibiotics and nerve agent antidotes, were made readily available.

The most immediate outcome of improving emergency preparedness after September 11 is that the ability to competently handle the more typical multi-casualty or mass casualty incident such as a bus crash, tornado, or building collapse has been greatly improved in many communities. However, disaster situations can still exceed the scope of usual day-to-day crisis operations, pointing to the necessity of well-defined regional and national emergency preparedness plans.

In 2005, Hurricane Katrina made landfall in Louisiana and other Gulf states as a category-4 storm and caused more than 1000 deaths and devastating environmental and property damage ([Fig. 12-2](#)). Volunteers from all over the United States, as well as local, regional, and federal agencies, took part in the large-scale disaster evacuation, rescue, and relief effort that severely challenged available resources and established disaster plans. Critical systems failed and were eventually re-established through coordination with multiple agencies and people to ensure that the most basic human needs were met ([Fig. 12-3](#)). Hurricane Katrina overwhelmed the existing emergency care system and caused the mobilization of a national mutual aid response on a level that had not been experienced in recent U.S. history.



FIG. 12-2 Property damage resulting from Hurricane Katrina in New Orleans.



FIG. 12-3 Temporary shelter set up for homeless victims of Hurricane Katrina in New Orleans.

Lessons learned from Hurricane Katrina, as well as recent worldwide incidents such as the earthquake in Haiti, tsunamis, and terrorist attacks, enable improved preparation and coordination of efforts that are beneficial for future disasters. These insights also can be applied to health care facility and community agency plans for pandemic infections, including influenza.

A pandemic leads a vast number of people to seek medical care, even the “worried well.” Though not yet ill, the “worried well” want evaluation, preventive treatment, or reassurance from a health care provider. A pandemic influenza outbreak, such as 2009–2010 swine flu outbreak caused by the H1N1 virus, raised significant concerns that the resource capabilities of the entire health care system could be overwhelmed and that community systems and critical supply chains could be severely damaged. Worker illness, absenteeism, and personal choices to remain quarantined to avoid being exposed to the illness negatively affect the number of health care staff available to care for patients. Fortunately, because of widespread vaccination programs and public information campaigns, the swine flu pandemic of 2009–2010 was well managed. Concern

remains that avian influenza A strain (H5N1), also known as “bird flu,” could pose a global pandemic threat if a gene mutation occurs to allow human-to-human spread. Because of the mass casualty nature of pandemic influenza, emergency preparedness planners must incorporate strategies to handle an influx of ill patients into the system as part of ongoing disaster readiness. Quarantine of selected nursing units or the entire hospital could become necessary, prompting closure until the risk has passed.

Common to all mass casualty events, the desired outcome of **emergency preparedness** is to outline ways to meet the extraordinary need for hospital beds, staff, drugs, personal protective equipment (PPE), supplies, and medical devices, such as mechanical ventilators (Casani & Romanosky, 2006). The U.S. government stockpiles critical equipment and supplies in case they are needed for a pandemic influenza outbreak. In addition, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the first vaccine to protect humans against H5N1 avian influenza virus (see [Chapter 25](#) for more information on emerging infections). Each state has its own specific emergency preparedness plan for pandemic influenza, including who would receive vaccines in a mass casualty event. Most of these plans are posted on the Internet.

EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AND RESPONSE

Mass Casualty Triage

Triage Process

A key process in any multi-casualty or mass casualty response is effective **triage** to rapidly sort ill or injured patients into priority categories based on their acuity and survival potential.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

In mass casualty or disaster situations, implement a military form of triage with the overall desired outcome of doing the greatest good for the greatest number of people (Smith, 2010). This means that patients who are critically ill or injured and might otherwise receive attempted resuscitation during usual operations may be triaged into an “expectant” or “black-tagged” category and allowed to die or not be treated until others received care.

Typical examples of black-tagged patients are those with massive head trauma, extensive full-thickness body burns, and high cervical spinal cord injury requiring mechanical ventilation. The rationale for this seemingly heartless decision is that limited resources must be dedicated to saving the most lives rather than expending valuable resources to save one life at the possible expense of many others.

Triage functions may be performed by EMS providers in the field, such as:

- Emergency medical technicians (EMTs) and paramedics
- Nurse and physician field teams who are called from the hospital to a disaster scene to assist EMS providers
- Nurse and physician hospital teams to assess and reassess incoming patients

Before going to the incident in the field, nurses, physicians, and support staff must have adequate training to prepare

them to recognize the risks in an unstable environment (Laskowski-Jones, 2010). Such risks can include the potential for structural collapse, becoming the secondary target of a terrorist attack, interpersonal violence in unsecured locales, and working in an environment in which contagious diseases and natural hazards are common (e.g., poisonous snake bites and mosquito-borne illnesses). Disaster workers must take measures such as obtaining prophylactic medications and vaccinations, having a personal evacuation plan, and ensuring access to necessary supplies and protective equipment so that they do not become victims as well.

The National Disaster Life Support Foundation offers Basic Disaster Life Support and Advanced Disaster Life Support training courses that include all essential aspects of disaster response and management. They include the core competencies of disaster management to all levels of health care professionals (Subbarao et al., 2008). In addition, the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) provides Community Emergency Response Team (CERT) training so that people are better prepared for disasters and are able to respond more self-sufficiently to incidents and hazard situations in their own communities. These courses include mass casualty triage education.

Triage Method

An important point to recognize is that triage concepts in a mass casualty incident differ from the “civilian triage” methods discussed in Chapter 10 that are practiced during usual emergency department operations (Table 12-1). Although disaster triage practices can vary widely based on local EMS protocols, some concepts are fairly universal. Most mass casualty response teams both in the field (at the disaster site) and in the hospital setting use a **disaster triage tag system** that categorizes triage priority by color and number (Smith, 2010):

- Emergent (class I) patients are identified with a red tag.
- Patients who can wait a short time for care (class II) are marked with a yellow tag.
- Nonurgent or “walking wounded” (class III) patients are given a green tag.
- Patients who are expected to die or are dead are issued a black tag (class IV).

TABLE 12-1 COMPARISON OF TRIAGE UNDER USUAL VERSUS MASS CASUALTY CONDITIONS

TRIAGE UNDER USUAL CONDITIONS	TRIAGE UNDER MASS CASUALTY CONDITIONS
Emergent (immediate threat to life)	Emergent or class I (red tag) (immediate threat to life)
Urgent (major injuries that require immediate treatment)	Urgent or class II (yellow tag) (major injuries that require treatment)
Nonurgent (minor injuries that do not require immediate treatment)	Nonurgent or class III (green tag) (minor injuries that do not require immediate treatment)
Does not apply	Expectant or class IV (black tag) (expected and allowed to die)

In general, *red-tagged* patients have immediate threats to life, such as airway obstruction or shock, and require immediate attention. *Yellow-tagged* patients have major injuries, such as open fractures with a distal pulse and large wounds that need treatment within 30 minutes to 2 hours. *Green-tagged* patients have minor injuries that can be managed in a delayed fashion, generally more than 2 hours. Examples of green-tag injuries include closed fractures, sprains, strains, abrasions, and contusions.

The green-tagged patients are often referred to as the “walking wounded”; they may actually evacuate themselves from the mass casualty scene and go to the hospital in a private vehicle. Green-tagged patients usually make up the greatest number in most large-scale multi-casualty situations. Therefore they can overwhelm the system if provisions are not made to handle them as part of the disaster plan. Also, because they often come to the hospital on their own, the hospital may not be able to determine how many actual casualties will arrive. A related concern is that green-tagged patients who self-transport may unknowingly carry contaminants from a nuclear, biologic, or chemical incident into the hospital environment with potentially disastrous consequences. ED staff must anticipate these issues and devise emergency response plans accordingly, including appropriate decontamination measures.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is preparing to triage clients at the scene of an airplane crash. Which of these clients will the nurse identify as emergent?

- Young woman with closed fractures of her right leg and arm
- Older woman with abdominal bleeding who is dazed and confused
- Middle-aged man with third-degree burns over 90% of his body
- Young man with numerous bruises and superficial lacerations

Once patients are in the triage area of the hospital, they typically receive a special bracelet with a disaster number. Preprinted labels with this number can be applied to the patients’ chart forms and personal belongings. Digital photos may be used as part of the identification process in some systems. The standard hospital registration process and identification band can be applied after the patient’s identity is confirmed.

Automated tracking systems using infrared and radiofrequency technology are available in some emergency departments; these systems may be used to track a patient’s triage priority upon arrival, location, and process of care. The interactions the patient has with caregivers can also be tracked, an important safety strategy if the patient is later found to have contaminants or a disease that could pose a risk to staff members who had close contact and require decontamination or prophylaxis (Laskowski-Jones, 2008). These newer systems are valuable components of the hospital’s emergency preparedness infrastructure because they can rapidly portray the overall census and acuity of patients. They also enable ED leaders to determine how many casualties of a particular acuity level a hospital can safely accept from the incident scene in a disaster situation and to track contacts between patients and caregivers for management of actual or potential exposures to infectious or hazardous agents.

Notification and Activation of Emergency Preparedness/Management Plans

When the number of casualties exceeds the usual resource capabilities, a disaster situation exists. What may be a routine day in the emergency department of a large urban trauma center could be defined as a disaster for a small rural community hospital if the same number of patients were to arrive. Each facility, then, decides what a disaster situation is. Flexibility is needed because resources may change by time of day and by day of the week. For instance, hospitals typically have the fewest staff available after midnight on the weekend. An incident that occurs in this time frame may require activation of the emergency preparedness plan to bring extra resources into the hospital. The same incident during weekday business hours might be handled with on-site personnel alone without the need for activation of the plan.

Notification that a multi-casualty or mass casualty situation exists usually occurs by radio, cellular, or electronic communication between the ED and EMS providers at the scene. A state or regional emergency management agency may also notify the ED of the event. Each hospital has its own policy that specifies *who* has the authority to activate and *how* to activate the disaster or emergency preparedness plan. Group paging systems, telephone trees, and instant computer-based alert messages are the most common means of notifying essential personnel of a mass casualty incident or disaster.

A catastrophic event, such as a major earthquake or tornado, or a terrorist incident involving weapons of mass destruction (WMD) also requires volunteer assistance from all levels of health care providers in the region. In this case, the media may be contacted to broadcast messages to the health care community-at-large via television, radio, and electronic announcements. For such incidents, the National Guard, the American Red Cross, the public health department, various military units, a Medical Reserve Corps (MRC), or a Disaster Medical Assistance Team (DMAT) can be activated by state and federal government authorities.

An MRC is made up of a group of volunteer medical and public health care professionals, including physicians and nurses. They offer their services to health care facilities or to the community in a supportive or supplemental capacity during times of need such as a disaster or pandemic disease outbreak. This group may help staff hospitals or community health settings that face personnel shortages and establish first aid stations or special-needs shelters. The MRC may also set up an acute care center (ACC) in the community for patients who need acute care (but not intensive care) for days to weeks as a means to alleviate emergency department and hospital overcrowding (Casani & Romanosky, 2006).

A DMAT is a medical relief team made up of civilian medical, paraprofessional, and support personnel that is deployed to a disaster area with enough medical equipment and supplies to sustain operations for 72 hours (Merchant et al., 2010). DMATs are part of the National Disaster Medical System (NDMS) in the United States. They provide relief services ranging from primary health care and triage to evacuation and staffing to assist health care facilities that have become overwhelmed with casualties (Merchant et al., 2010). *Because licensed health care providers such as nurses act as federal employees when they are deployed, their professional licenses are recognized and valid in all states.*

Examples of what the NDMS provides are (U.S. Department of Health & Human Services, 2010):

- Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Teams (DMORTs) to manage mass fatalities
- National Veterinary Response Teams (NVRTs) for emergency animal care
- International Medical Surgical Response Teams (IMSuRTs) to establish fully functional field surgical facilities wherever they are needed in the world

Nurses can join these teams, complete the required training, and offer their expertise as part of a coordinated federal response team in times of critical need.

Hospital Emergency Preparedness: Personnel Roles and Responsibilities

Nurses play a major role in the emergency preparedness or emergency management plan. In the event of a disaster, the Hospital Incident Command System is established for organization and structure.

Hospital Incident Command System

The facility-level organizational model for disaster management is the **Hospital Incident Command System (HICS)**, which is a part of the National Incident Management System (NIMS) implemented by the Department of Homeland Security and the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) to standardize disaster operations. In this system, roles are formally structured under the hospital or long-term care facility incident commander with clear lines of authority and accountability for specific resources. Officers are named to oversee essential emergency preparedness functions such as public information, safety and security, and medical command. Chiefs are appointed to manage logistics, planning, finance, and operations as appropriate to the type and scale of the event. In turn, chiefs delegate specific duties to other departmental officers and unit leaders. The idea is to achieve a manageable span of control over the personnel or resources allocated to achieve efficiency (Sutingco, 2006). FEMA offers free courses on the NIMS model and HICS structure through their website (<http://training.fema.gov/IS/NIMS.asp>).

Because mass casualty events typically involve large numbers of people and can create a chaotic work environment, many EMS agencies and health care facilities use brightly colored vests with large lettering to help identify key leadership positions. Specific job action sheets are distributed to all personnel with leadership roles in HICS that pre-define reporting relationships and list prioritized tasks and responsibilities. The HICS personnel also establish an **emergency operations center (EOC)** or **command center** in a designated location with accessible communication technology. They then use their collective expertise to manage the overall incident (Sutingco, 2006). All internal requests for additional personnel and resources, as well as communication with field teams and external agencies, should be coordinated through the EOC to maintain unity of command.

The roles and responsibilities of health care personnel in a mass casualty event or disaster are defined within the institution's emergency response or preparedness plan (Table 12-2). Each plan can be as individual as the particular facility's operations. However, virtually all plans identify certain

TABLE 12-2 SUMMARY OF KEY PERSONNEL ROLES AND FUNCTIONS FOR EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AND RESPONSE PLAN

PERSONNEL ROLE	PERSONNEL FUNCTION
Hospital incident commander	Physician or administrator who assumes overall leadership for implementing the emergency plan
Medical command physician	Physician who decides the number, acuity, and resource needs of patients
Triage officer	Physician or nurse who rapidly evaluates each patient to determine priorities for treatment
Community relations or public information officer	Person who serves as a liaison between the health care facility and the media

key functions. For example, one of the primary roles in a hospital to be established at the onset of an incident is the role of a **hospital incident commander** who assumes overall leadership for implementing the institutional plan. This person is usually either a physician in the ED or a hospital administrator who has the authority to activate resources. The role can also be fulfilled by a nursing supervisor functioning as the on-site hospital administrator after usual business hours. The hospital incident commander's role is to take a global view of the entire situation and facilitate patient movement through the system. The commander brings in both personnel and supply resources to meet patient needs. For example, a hospital incident commander might dictate that all patients due to be discharged from an inpatient unit be moved to a lounge area immediately to free up hospital beds for mass casualty victims. He or she could also direct departments such as physical therapy or a surgical clinic to cancel their usual operations to convert the space into a minor treatment area. The incident commander assists in the organization of hospital-wide services to rapidly expand hospital capacity, recruit paid or volunteer staff, and ensure the availability of medical supplies.

Another typical role defined in hospital or other health care emergency preparedness plans is that of the **medical command physician**. He or she focuses on determining the number, acuity, and medical resource needs of victims arriving from the incident scene to the hospital and organizing the emergency health care team response to the injured or ill patients. Responsibilities include identifying the need for and calling in specialty-trained providers such as:

- Trauma surgeons
- Neurosurgeons
- Orthopedic surgeons
- Pulmonologists
- Plastic surgeons
- Burn surgeons
- Infectious disease physicians
- Industrial hygienists
- Radiation safety personnel

In smaller hospitals with limited specialty resources, the medical command physician might also help determine which patients should be transported out of the facility to a higher level of care or to a specialty hospital (e.g., burn center).

Closely affiliated with the medical command physician is the **triage officer**. This person is generally a physician in a large hospital who is assisted by triage nurses. When physician resources are limited, an experienced nurse may assume this role. The triage officer rapidly evaluates each person who presents to the hospital, even those who come in with triage tags in place. Patient acuity is re-evaluated for appropriate disposition to the area within the ED or hospital best suited to meet the patient's medical needs.

Many other roles and responsibilities can be defined within the institutional emergency response plan and may include the supply officer, the communications officer, the infection control officer, and the community relations/public information officer, to name a few. The community relations or public information officer is an especially important role to delineate in advance. Mass casualty incidents tend to attract a large amount of media attention. This staff member can draw media away from the clinical areas so that essential hospital operations are not hindered. He or she can also serve as the liaison between hospital administration and the media to release only appropriate and accurate information.

Role of Nursing in Health Care Facility Emergency Preparedness and Response

Nurses play key roles before, during, and after a disaster. Before an event, they contribute to developing internal and external emergency response plans, including defining specific nursing roles. Nurses take into account the security needs, communication methods, training, alternative treatment areas, staffing for high demand or surge situations, and requirements for resources, equipment, and supplies. They then test the plans by actively participating in disaster drills and evaluating the outcomes.

During an actual disaster, the ED charge nurse, trauma program manager, and other ED nursing leadership personnel act in collaboration with the medical command physician and triage officer to organize nursing and ancillary services to meet patient needs. Telephone trees may be activated to call in ED nurses who are not working or scheduled to work. ED areas are identified and prepared to stage, triage, resuscitate, and treat the disaster victims. Efforts are made to quickly discharge or admit other ED patients as appropriate to make room for the new arrivals. ED nurses apply principles of triage as disaster victims enter the system to prioritize care delivery and direct patients to the designated areas best suited to meet their needs.

Nursing roles in a disaster extend to all areas within a health care facility. The level of involvement is determined by the scope and scale of the disaster. In any mass casualty event, nurses from medical-surgical nursing units may be asked, in collaboration with the health care provider, to recommend patients for discharge to free up inpatient beds for disaster victims. Patients who are the most medically stable may be discharged early, including those who:

- Were admitted for observation and are not bedridden
- Are having diagnostic evaluations and are not bedridden
- Are soon scheduled to be discharged or could be cared for at home with support from family or home health services

- Have had no critical change in condition for the past 3 days
- Could be cared for in another health care facility, such as rehabilitation or long-term care

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A nurse needs to discharge two medical-surgical clients to make room for two victims of a tornado. Which of these clients could be discharged from the unit now? **Select all that apply.**

- A. 78-year-old with telemetry monitoring for chest pain last night
- B. 57-year-old who had a bowel resection for cancer 2 days ago
- C. 44-year-old who has received 3 days of IV antibiotics for pneumonia
- D. 61-year-old who had a thyroidectomy this morning
- E. 72-year-old who had a total hip replacement 2 days ago

General staff nurses also may be recruited to provide care for stable ED patients, thus allowing ED nurses to focus their efforts on aiding the mass casualty victims. Critical care unit nurses need to identify patients who can be transferred out of the unit to rapidly expand critical care bed capacity. In addition, they can supplement ED nurses in the resuscitation setting or assist in monitored care and transport to critical care units. Hospital and ED nurse leaders also typically direct the ancillary departments to deliver supplies, instrument trays, medications, food, and personnel to meet service demands.

Hospital staff of all levels may be required to alter their routine operations to accommodate a high volume of patients, including those with special needs such as decontamination, burn management, or quarantine. Emergency plans dictate specific actions by staff members, such as who should be called when the plan is activated, who should report, where to report, what supplies or equipment carts should be brought to a pre-designated location, and what type of paperwork or system should be implemented for patient identification in a large-scale event. Some staff may even have their roles changed completely. For example, nurses from the performance improvement department or case management may be reassigned to fulfill a clinical responsibility for a nursing unit. The key concept is that staff members are expected to remain flexible in a mass casualty situation and perform at their highest level to address the needs of both the health care system and the patients. The greatest good for the greatest number of people is still the organizing principle when considering roles and responsibilities in mass casualty events—not necessarily individual staff preferences. However, the safety of all patients is vital.

Creativity and flexibility of nursing leaders and nursing staff are essential to provide the staffing coverage necessary for a large-scale or extended incident. A **personal emergency preparedness plan** for each nurse can help in such situations. It should outline the preplanned specific arrangements that are to be made for childcare, pet care, and older adult care if the need arises, especially if the event prevents returning home for an extended period.

When called to respond to work during a mass casualty event, some nurses may experience ethical and moral conflict between their family obligations and professional responsibilities (Chaffee, 2006). The American Nurses Association's (ANA's) **Code of Ethics for Nurses with Interpretive Statements** (2001) does not offer clear guidance in this

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Include emergency contact names, addresses, and telephone numbers to use in a crisis as part of a personal emergency preparedness plan. In addition, pre-assemble **personal readiness supplies** or **"go bag"** (disaster supply kit) for the home and automobile with clothing and basic survival supplies, which allows for a rapid response for disaster staffing coverage (Table 12-3). "Go bags" are needed for all members of the family, including pets, in the event the disaster requires evacuation of the community or people to take shelter in their own homes.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

A coastal town where you live is struck by an F5 hurricane. Buildings have collapsed, power has been lost, and local emergency services are overwhelmed. Two victims next door are trapped by debris in two different rooms of a house and need immediate attention: an awake but unresponsive older woman with blood partially obstructing her airway and an open fracture of her leg; and her pale, unconscious 20-year-old granddaughter who has a profuse, pulsatile hemorrhage from a radial artery laceration caused by flying broken glass. No one is available to assist you at the moment.

1. Which injured person will you attend to first and why?
2. What is your priority for emergency care in this situation?
3. Without adequate medical supplies, how will you use your creativity to care for each of these women?
4. If one of these patients dies while you are caring for the other one, how do you think you would cope with this situation?

TABLE 12-3 BASIC SUPPLIES FOR PERSONAL PREPAREDNESS (3-DAY SUPPLY)

- Backpack
- Clean clothing, sturdy footwear
- Potable water—1 gallon per person per day for at least 3 days
- Food—non-perishable, no cooking required
- Flashlight—battery powered; extra batteries and/or chemical light sticks
- Pocket knife or multi-tool
- Personal ID with emergency contacts and phone numbers, allergies, and medical information; lists of credit card numbers and bank accounts (keep in watertight container)
- Towel and washcloth; towelettes, soap, hand sanitizer
- Paper, pens, and pencils; regional maps
- Cell phone
- Sunglasses/eyewear
- Emergency blanket and/or sleeping bag and pillow
- Work gloves
- Personal first aid kit with over-the-counter (OTC) and prescription medications/vitamins
- Rain gear
- Roll of duct tape and plastic sheeting
- Radio—battery powered or hand-crank generator
- Toiletries (toothbrush and toothpaste, comb, brush, razor, shaving cream, mirror, feminine supplies, deodorant, shampoo, lip balm, sunscreen, insect repellent, toilet paper)
- Plastic garbage bags and ties, re-sealable plastic bags
- Matches in a waterproof container
- Whistle
- Household liquid bleach for disinfection

situation. Each person has to make a choice about whether to be involved in helping during the emergency or when to become involved.

EVENT RESOLUTION AND DEBRIEFING

When the last major casualties have been treated and no more are expected to arrive in numbers that could overwhelm the health care system, the incident commander considers “standing down” or deactivating the emergency response plan. However, although the casualties may have left the ED, other areas in the hospital may still be under stress and need the support of the supplemental resources provided by emergency plan activation. Before terminating the response, it is essential to ensure that the needs of the other hospital departments have been met and all are in agreement to resume normal operations.

A vital consideration in event resolution is staff and supply availability to meet ongoing operational needs. If nursing staff and other personnel were called in from home during their off hours or if they worked well beyond their scheduled shifts to meet patient and departmental needs, provision for adequate rest periods should be made. Exhaustion poses a risk not only to patient safety but also to the nurse when he or she must drive home. Sleeping quarters at the hospital might be necessary in this case, especially if the disaster event contributed to treacherous travel conditions.

Severe shortages of supplies also pose a threat to usual operations at the conclusion of a mass casualty incident. Taking inventory and restocking the ED are high priority assignments. Collaboration between the ED and the central supply department is essential to resolving stock availability problems. Instrument trays must be washed, packaged, and re-sterilized. Critical supplies that have been depleted from hospital stores must be reordered and delivered to the hospital quickly. Contracts with key vendors outlining emergency re-supply expectations and arrangements should be a part of the hospital’s overall emergency preparedness plan.

Two general types of **debriefing**, or formal systematic review and analysis, occur after a mass casualty incident or disaster. The first type entails bringing in critical incident stress debriefing (CISD) teams to provide sessions for small groups of staff to promote effective coping strategies. The second type of debriefing involves an administrative review of staff and system performance during the event to determine whether opportunities for improvement in the emergency management plan exist.

Critical Incident Stress Debriefing

CISD is only one component of a much broader critical incident stress management (CISM) program. CISM programming addresses pre-crisis through post-crisis interventions for small to large groups, including communities. After working through the turmoil and the emotional impact of the incident as well as the aftermath, the staff may find it difficult to “get back to normal.” Without intervention during *and* after the emergency, they may develop post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). PTSD can lead to multiple

CHART 12-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing Staff Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD) During a Mass Casualty Event

- Use available counseling.
- Encourage and support co-workers.
- Monitor each other’s stress level and performance.
- Take breaks when needed.
- Talk about feelings with staff and managers.
- Drink plenty of water, and eat healthy snacks for energy.
- Keep in touch with family, friends, and significant others.
- Do not work for more than 12 hours per day.

Adapted from Papp, E. (2005). Preparing for disasters: Helping yourself as you help others. *AJN*, 105(5), 112.

characteristic psychological and physical effects, including flashbacks, avoidance, less interest in previously enjoyable events, and detachment, as well as rapid heart rate and insomnia. People suffering from PTSD can have great difficulty relating in their usual way to family and friends. Ultimately, professional “burnout” can stem from the inability to cope with the stress effectively. Occupational health nurses can serve as valuable resources to disaster response workers in promoting strategies for physical, emotional, and spiritual health (Tomczyk et al., 2008). [Chart 12-2](#) lists recommendations proposed by several national organizations to help prevent PTSD during the emergency situation.

A CISD team comprises two or three specially trained people who come together quickly when called to deal with the emotional needs of health care team members after a particularly devastating or disturbing incident. The team leader typically has background in a mental health/behavioral health field. The co-leader is ideally a peer of the group being debriefed. Thus, if nurses are debriefed, then a nurse member of the CISD team is generally assigned to the session. CISD-trained physicians, police, firefighters, EMTs, and paramedics may also be used, depending on the needs of the group. The third member of the team is known as the “doorkeeper.” This person is responsible for keeping inappropriate people out (e.g., media, spectators) and talking with anyone who leaves the session early in an effort to have him or her return or accept follow-up (Mitchell et al., 2003b). Staff involved in the incident need protected time to undergo stress debriefing, which generally lasts from 1 to 3 hours per session.

Typical “ground rules” for stress debriefing include strict confidentiality of information shared during the session and unconditional acceptance of the thoughts and feelings expressed by people within the group. The usual arrangement for the most effective group interaction is a circular configuration of chairs in a private setting. Food should be available so that hunger is not a distraction. CISD group leaders encourage group discussion through asking a series of questions designed to get everyone involved tell his or her own story about the incident and explain the personal impact. The group leaders enable participants to place the incident into perspective and dispel any feelings of blame or guilt. They also educate participants about self-care concepts and coping strategies to use immediately. People who require more than

a CISM session may need referral for mental health/behavioral health counseling. Research efforts using meta-analysis techniques have produced mixed results regarding the efficacy of CISM. However, the technique is thought to be clinically effective (Mitchell et al., 2003b).

Administrative Review

The second type of debriefing is an administrative evaluation directed at analyzing the hospital or agency response to an event while it is still in the forefront of the minds of everyone who participated in it. The goal of this type of debriefing is to discern what went right and what went wrong during activation and implementation of the emergency preparedness plan so that changes can be made. Typically, representatives from all groups that were involved in the incident come together soon after plan activation has been discontinued. They each are given an opportunity to hear and express both positive and negative comments related to their experiences with the event. Then, in the days after the plan activation, written critique forms are also solicited to gain additional information after participants have had time to consider their overall impressions of the response as well as the impact it had on their respective departments or clinical areas.

Although drills are important, implementing the emergency preparedness plan during an actual mass casualty event is the most effective means of “reality testing” the plan’s utility. Feedback provided by participants can be used to modify or revise the plan and create new processes in preparation for future events.

ROLE OF NURSING IN COMMUNITY EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS AND RESPONSE

During a community disaster, nurses and other emergency personnel may be needed for triage, first aid/emergency care, and shelter assistance. The first action of first-responders in a disaster is to remove people from danger, both the injured and uninjured. This job is typically managed by firefighters and other disaster-trained emergency personnel; nurses are not usually involved in this process.

After removal from danger, victims are triaged by health care personnel as described earlier in this chapter. Following triage, nurses often provide on-site first aid and emergency care. They may also be involved in teaching and supervising volunteers. The American Red Cross sets up shelters for people who have lost their homes or have been evacuated from their homes.

Nurses may also need to teach those living temporarily in shelters about procedures that will be needed when they return home. For example, safe drinking water may not be available for several days or longer. Community residents may need to boil their water for 5 to 10 minutes before drinking. If electricity and gas are not available, an outdoor grill or camp stove can be used. As alternative procedures, commercial water purification tablets or 10 to 20 drops of chlorine bleach added to a gallon of water will make the water safe to drink.

Human waste management creates another challenge if toilets do not flush. If not managed safely, enteric pathogens

spread disease. A toilet bowl or bucket lined with a plastic bag can be used for human waste. To sanitize it and provide odor control, chlorine bleach can be added and the bag tied and sealed. Portable toilet chemicals or chlorinated lime may be used as alternatives. To prevent a toxic gas reaction, remind residents not to mix any chemicals. Treated human waste bags can be buried in the ground. Emphasize the importance of handwashing with soap and water or using a hand sanitizer to prevent disease transmission.

PSYCHOSOCIAL RESPONSE OF SURVIVORS TO MASS CASUALTY EVENTS

One of the most important roles of the nurse after a community disaster is health assessment, including psychosocial health. Experiencing a disaster can produce both immediate and long-lasting psychosocial effects in people personally affected by the event. Depending on the nature and magnitude of the incident, survivors experience the tragic loss of loved ones, property, and valued possessions. They and their family members may have suffered injuries or illnesses brought about by the catastrophe. Lifestyles, roles, and routines are drastically altered, preventing people from achieving any sense of normalcy in the hours, the days, and perhaps even the weeks and months that follow a disaster. Coping abilities in survivors are severely stressed, leading to many individual responses that can range from functional and adaptive behaviors to maladaptive coping.

Survivors have to confront feelings of vulnerability resulting from the devastating event, knowing that it could occur again—a particularly relevant issue for people who live in areas prone to acts of terrorism or to natural disasters. The decision—be it voluntary or involuntary—to abandon a family home or geographic region and then relocate to a “safe” area either temporarily or permanently results in a further sense of loss and grief. Some people may feel guilty about living through an event that caused so many others to die. The range of intense emotions can appear as physical illness, as well as psychological and social dysfunction.

When helping people in crisis after a mass casualty event, be calm and reassuring. Establish rapport through active listening and honest communication. Survivors benefit from talking about their experiences and being helped as they work to problem-solve. Offer choices whenever possible to help survivors gain a sense of personal control. Help survivors adapt to their new surroundings and routines through simple, concrete explanations. Convey caring behaviors, and provide a sense of safety and security to the best extent possible.

A disaster may cause some survivors to develop post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), which can potentially last for a lifetime. People who are unable to sleep, are easily startled, have “flashbacks” to relive the disaster, or report “feeling numb” 2 weeks or more after a disaster or traumatic event are at risk for PTSD (Hyer & Brown, 2008).

Nurses caring for survivors with these manifestations should perform further assessment. One tool that can be used to assess survivor response to a disaster is the Impact of Event Scale—Revised (IES-R). The IES-R is a 22-item

self-administered questionnaire including several subscales, such as avoidance. Before giving the tool, determine the patient's reading level because it is written at a 10th-grade reading level. The tool should not be used for patients with short-term memory loss. For that reason, many older survivors are often not adequately assessed for post-disaster PTSD (Hyer & Brown, 2008). However, assess all older survivors of a disaster for this complication when possible.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

A high score on any IES-R subscale indicates a need for further evaluation and counseling. Refer the patient to a social worker or qualified mental health counselor. A high score on all subscales requires referral to a psychiatrist or clinical psychologist to evaluate the possibility of current or past trauma, such as abuse or neglect.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- All medical centers must have an emergency preparedness and response team in case of mass casualty (disaster).
- If a fire occurs in a health care facility, follow agency policy and procedures; use the guidelines in [Chart 12-1](#) to respond to a fire in any facility.
- The typical triage system for a mass casualty situation includes an additional category for those patients allowed to die (black-tagged) (see [Table 12-1](#)).
- Special roles are assigned in a mass casualty incident as identified in [Table 12-2](#).
- In the emergency department, assist in determining the need for initiating the emergency preparedness plan based on available resources, including staffing.
- Be prepared for an emergency, including a plan for child, pet, and older adult care; have a “to go” bag, or disaster supply kit, packed for both the automobile and the home (see [Table 12-3](#)).

- Two types of debriefing occur after a mass casualty event or period—critical incident stress debriefing and an administrative review or evaluation.
- Nurses have important roles in preparing for, managing, and debriefing after an internal health care facility disaster.
- Nurses play a major role in triage, first aid and emergency care, and shelter assistance in external community disasters.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess families and other survivors for their reaction to temporary or permanent loss as a result of a mass casualty event, including post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD).
- Provide emotional support by encouraging relaxation, listening to survivor feelings, and referring for appropriate counseling.
- Be honest with victims and their families, and help them adapt to their changed or new surroundings.
- Take precautions to prevent staff from developing post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) as outlined in [Chart 12-2](#).

Management of Patients with Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Imbalances



CHAPTER 13

Assessment and Care of Patients with Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Fluid and Electrolyte Tutorial
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Assess the patient with a fluid or electrolyte imbalance for falls, especially older adults.
2. Use safety precautions to prevent injury or death when administering parenteral potassium-containing solutions.
3. Supervise the oral fluid therapy and intake and output measurement aspects of care delegated to unlicensed assistive personnel.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach healthy adults and patients how to prevent dehydration.
5. Assess patients for factors that increase the risk for fluid and electrolyte imbalances, especially for older adults.
6. Teach patients at risk for fluid or electrolyte imbalances as a result of drug therapy about the manifestations of the imbalance.

Physiological Integrity

7. Explain the relationship between weight gain or loss and fluid imbalances.
8. Apply knowledge of the anatomic and physiologic responses to aging when assessing hydration status of an older adult.
9. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the presence of fluid or electrolyte imbalances.
10. Interpret blood chemistry laboratory results to determine whether the patient has a fluid or electrolyte imbalance and to determine effectiveness of interventions.
11. Assess the breathing effectiveness of any patient with skeletal muscle weakness from an electrolyte imbalance.
12. Prioritize interventions for patients who have dehydration or fluid overload.
13. Prioritize interventions for patients who have specific electrolyte imbalances.

HOMEOSTASIS

Proper functioning of all body systems requires a balance of fluids and electrolytes. The body works best when these substances are kept within a narrow range of normal. For example, no body system works well if 2 liters of blood volume are gained or lost. To keep conditions as close to normal as possible (a situation called **homeostasis**), the body has many control actions (**homeostatic mechanisms**) to prevent dangerous changes.

An important area for homeostasis is maintaining the body's normal fluid volume and composition. Water is the most common substance in the body, making up about 55% to 60% of total body weight for healthy younger adults and 50% to 55% of total body weight for healthy older adults. This water (fluid) is divided into two main spaces or compartments—the fluid outside the cells, which is the **extracellular fluid (ECF)**; and the fluid inside the cells, which is the **intracellular fluid (ICF)**. The ECF space contains about one third (about 15 L) of the total body water. The ECF includes **interstitial fluid** (fluid between cells, sometimes called the “third space”); blood, lymph, bone, and connective tissue water; and the transcellular fluids. **Transcellular fluids** are the fluids in special body spaces and include cerebrospinal fluid, synovial fluid, peritoneal fluid, and pleural fluid. ICF contains the remaining two thirds (about 25 L) of total body water. Fig. 13-1 shows the normal distribution of total body water.

Water is needed to deliver dissolved nutrients, electrolytes, and other substances to all organs, tissues, and cells. In the healthy adult, the volume of water in the fluid compartments remains within the normal range although the water moves constantly between compartments. Changes in either the amount of water or the amount of electrolytes in body fluids can affect the functioning of all cells, tissues, and organs. *For proper function, the volume of all body fluids and the types and amount of dissolved substances must be carefully balanced.*

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

PHYSIOLOGIC INFLUENCES ON FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE BALANCE

Body fluids are composed of water and particles dissolved or suspended in water. The **solvent** is the water portion of fluids. **Solutes** are the particles dissolved or suspended in the water.

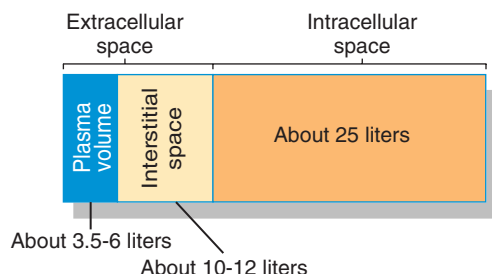


FIG. 13-1 Normal distribution of total body water in adults.

Solutes vary in type and amount from one fluid space to another. When solutes express an overall electrical charge, they are known as **electrolytes**. Body function depends on keeping the correct balance of fluid and electrolytes within each body fluid space.

Three processes are important to control normal fluid and electrolyte balance, and they work together to maintain balance so the internal environment remains stable even when the external environment changes. These processes are filtration, diffusion, and osmosis. They determine how, when, and where fluids and particles move across cell membranes.

Filtration

Physiologic Action

Filtration is the movement of fluid through a cell or blood vessel membrane because of hydrostatic pressure differences on both sides of the membrane. Filtration occurs because of differences in water volume pressing against confining walls.

Fluid weight in a confined space is related to the amount of fluid present in that area. Water molecules in a confined space constantly press outward against the confining walls. This pressing of water molecules is **hydrostatic pressure**. It is a “water-pushing” pressure, because it is the force that pushes water outward from a confined space through a membrane (Fig. 13-2).

The amount of water in any body fluid space determines the hydrostatic pressure of that space. Blood, a fluid that is “thicker” than water (more **viscous**), is confined within the blood vessels. Blood has hydrostatic pressure because of its weight and volume. An additional factor that affects blood hydrostatic pressure in arteries is the pumping action of the heart. This action has little impact on the hydrostatic pressure in the capillaries and veins.

The hydrostatic pressures of two fluid spaces can be compared whenever a porous (**permeable**) membrane separates the two spaces. If the hydrostatic pressure is the same in both fluid spaces, there is no pressure difference between the two spaces and the hydrostatic pressure is now at **equilibrium**. If the hydrostatic pressure is not the same in both spaces, **dis-equilibrium** exists. This means that the two spaces have a graded difference (**gradient**) for hydrostatic pressure: one space has a higher hydrostatic pressure than the other. *The human body constantly seeks equilibrium.* When a gradient exists, water movement (filtration) occurs until the hydrostatic pressure is the same in both spaces (see Fig. 13-2).

When nothing stops it, water moves through the membrane (**filters**) from the space with higher hydrostatic pressure to the space with lower pressure. This filtration continues only as long as the hydrostatic pressure gradient exists. Equilibrium is reached when enough fluid leaves one space and enters the other space to make the hydrostatic pressure in both spaces equal. At this point, water molecules may be exchanged evenly between two spaces in equilibrium but no net further filtration of fluid occurs. Neither space gains or loses water molecules, and the hydrostatic pressure in both spaces remains the same.

Clinical Significance

Blood pressure is an example of a hydrostatic filtering force. It moves whole blood from the heart to capillaries where filtration can occur to exchange water, nutrients, and waste

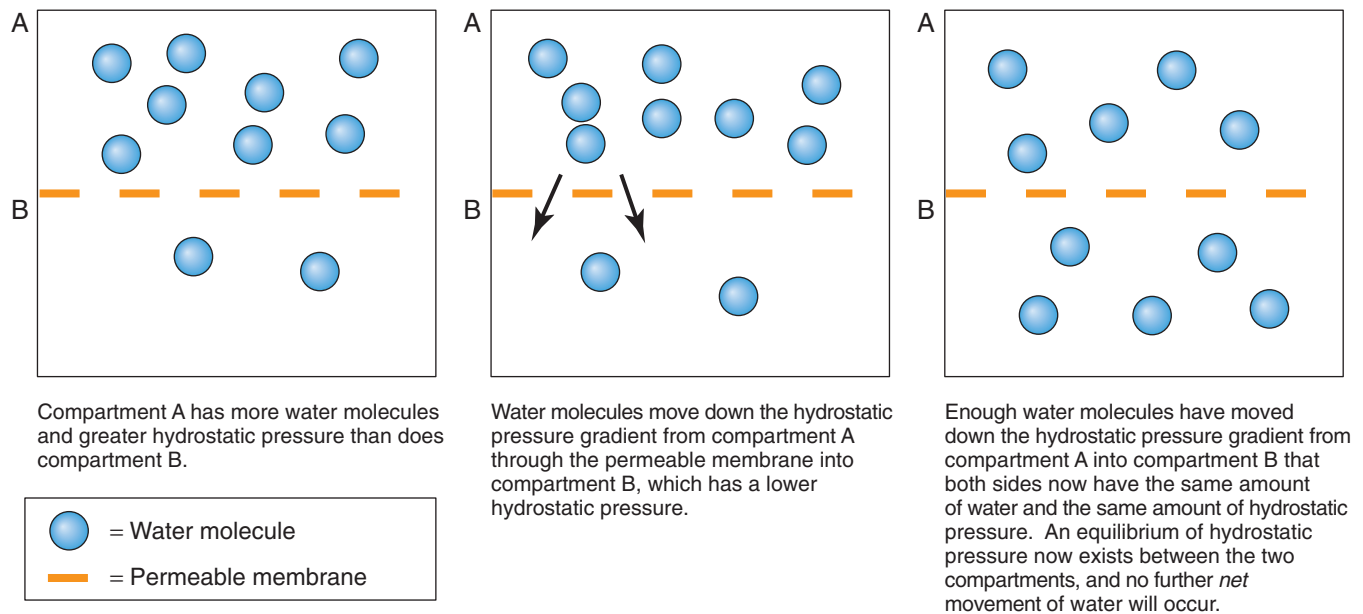


FIG. 13-2 The process of filtration.

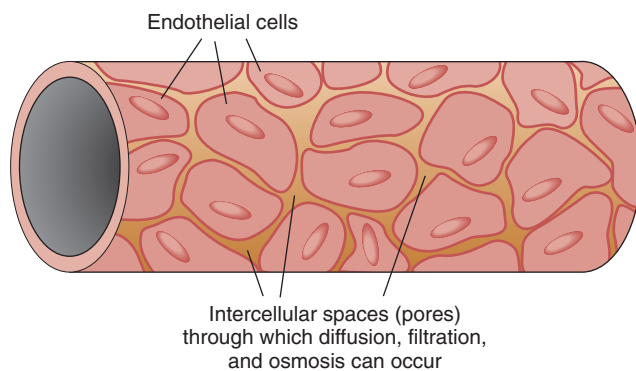


FIG. 13-3 The basic structure of a capillary.

products between the blood and the tissues. One factor that determines whether fluid leaves the blood vessels and enters the tissue spaces (*interstitial fluid*) is the difference between the hydrostatic pressure of capillary blood and that of the interstitial fluid.

Capillaries are only one cell layer thick, making a thin “wall” to hold blood in the capillaries. Large spaces (**pores**) in the capillary membrane help water filter freely when a hydrostatic pressure gradient is present (Fig. 13-3).

Edema (tissue swelling with fluid collection) develops with changes in normal hydrostatic pressure differences, such as in patients with right-sided heart failure. In this condition, the volume of blood in the right side of the heart increases greatly because the right ventricle is too weak to pump blood efficiently into the pulmonary blood vessels. As blood backs up into the venous system, venous hydrostatic pressure rises, which then causes capillary hydrostatic pressure to rise until it is higher than the hydrostatic pressure in the interstitial space. As a result, excess filtration of fluid from the capillaries into the interstitial tissue space occurs, forming visible edema.

Diffusion

Physiologic Action

Diffusion is the free movement of particles (solute) across a permeable membrane from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration (down a *concentration gradient*). This action controls the movement of solute particles in solution across various body membranes.

The diffusion of particles into and out from cells and fluid spaces occurs using the energy generated by the vibration of single molecules. This motion is totally random, allowing molecules to bump into each other within a confined space. Each collision increases the speed of particle movement.

As a result of the collisions, molecules in a solution spread out evenly through the available space. They move from an area of higher amounts (concentration) of molecules to an area of lower amounts until an equal amount is present in all areas. The number of collisions is related to the amount of molecules in a confined space. Fluid spaces with many particles have more collisions and faster particle movement than spaces with fewer particles.

A concentration gradient exists when two fluid spaces have different amounts of the same type of particles. Particle collisions cause them to move down the concentration gradient. Any membrane that separates two spaces is struck repeatedly by particles. When the particle strikes a pore in the membrane that is large enough for it to pass through, diffusion occurs (Fig. 13-4). The chance of any single particle hitting the membrane and going through a pore is much greater on the side of the membrane with a higher solute particle concentration.

The speed of diffusion is related to the difference in amount of particles (concentration gradient) between the two sides of the membrane. The degree of difference is the *steepness* of the gradient: the larger the concentration difference between the two sides, the steeper the gradient. Diffusion is more rapid when the gradient is steeper (just as a ball

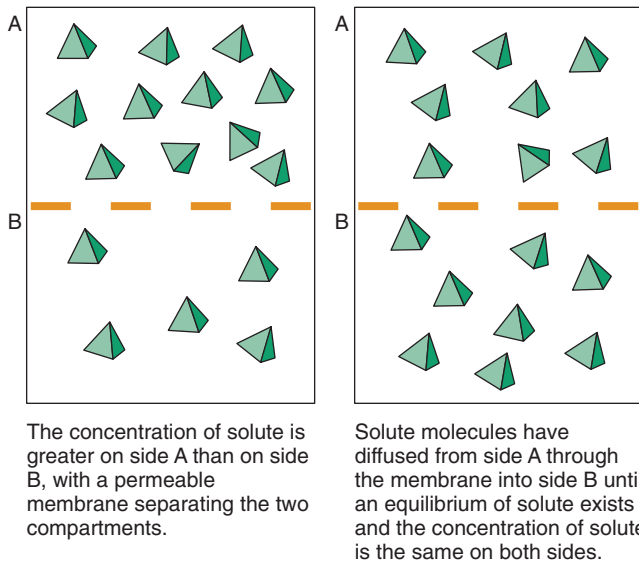


FIG. 13-4 Diffusion of solute particles through a permeable membrane from an area of higher solute concentration to an area of lower solute concentration until an equilibrium is reached.

rolls downhill more rapidly when the hill is steep than when the hill is nearly flat). Particles move from the fluid space with a higher concentration of solute particles to the fluid space with a lower concentration of solute particles.

Diffusion of particles continues as long as a concentration gradient exists between the two sides of the membrane. When the concentration of solute particles is the same on both sides of the membrane, the particles are in equilibrium and only an equal exchange of particles continues.

Clinical Significance

Diffusion is important in the transport of most electrolytes and other particles through cell membranes. Unlike capillary membranes, which permit the diffusion of most small-size particles down a gradient, cell membranes are *selective* in which particles can diffuse. They permit diffusion of some particles but not others. Some particles cannot move across a cell membrane, even when a steep “downhill” gradient exists, because the membrane is **impermeable** (not open) to that particle. For these particles, the concentration gradient is maintained across the membrane.

Impermeability and special transport systems cause differences in the amounts of specific particles from one fluid space to another. For example, usually the fluid outside the cell (the extracellular fluid [ECF]) has ten times more sodium ions than the fluid inside the cell (the intracellular fluid [ICF]). This extreme difference is caused by cell membrane impermeability to sodium and by special “sodium pumps” that move any extra sodium present inside the cell out of the cell “uphill” against its concentration gradient and back into the ECF.

In some instances, diffusion cannot occur without help, even down steep concentration gradients, because of selective membrane permeability. One example is glucose. Even though the amount of glucose may be much higher in the ECF than in the ICF (creating a steep gradient for glucose), glucose cannot cross most cell membranes without the help

of insulin. When insulin is present, it binds to insulin receptors on cell membranes, which then makes the membranes much more permeable to glucose. As a result, glucose can cross the cell membrane down its concentration gradient until equilibrium of glucose concentration is achieved.

Diffusion across a cell membrane that requires the assistance of a membrane-altering system (e.g., insulin) is called **facilitated diffusion** or **facilitated transport**. This type of movement is still a form of diffusion.

Osmosis

Physiologic Action

Osmosis is the movement of water only through a selectively permeable (*semipermeable*) membrane. For osmosis to occur, a membrane must separate two fluid spaces and one space must have particles that cannot move through the membrane. (The membrane is impermeable to this particle.) Some of the reasons a membrane may be impermeable to a particle are that the particle is too large or that it expresses an electrical charge. A concentration gradient of this particle must also exist. Because the membrane is impermeable to these particles, they cannot cross the membrane but water molecules can. (Usually water can *always* move through a cell membrane.)

For the fluid spaces to have equal concentrations of the particle, the water molecules move down their concentration gradient from the side with the higher concentration of water molecules (and thus a lower concentration of particles along with a greater hydrostatic pressure) to the side with the lower concentration of water molecules (and a higher concentration of particles along with a lower hydrostatic pressure). This movement continues until both spaces contain the same proportions of particles to water. Dilute (less concentrated) fluid has fewer particles and more water molecules than the more concentrated fluid. Thus water moves by osmosis down its hydrostatic pressure gradient from the dilute fluid to the more concentrated fluid until a concentration equilibrium occurs (Fig. 13-5).

At this point, the concentrations of particles in the fluid spaces on both sides of the membrane are equal even though the total amounts of particles and volumes of water are different. *The concentration equilibrium occurs by the movement of water molecules rather than the movement of solute particles.*

Particle concentration in body fluids is the major factor that determines whether and how fast osmosis and diffusion occur. This concentration is expressed in milliequivalents per liter (mEq/L), millimoles per liter (mmol/L), and milliosmoles per liter (mOsm/L). **Osmolarity** is the number of milliosmoles in a *liter* of solution; **osmolality** is the number of milliosmoles in a *kilogram* of solution. The normal osmolality value for plasma and other body fluids ranges from 270 to about 300 mOsm/L. The body functions best when the osmolality of the fluids in all body fluid spaces is close to 300 mOsm/L. When all body fluids have this particle concentration, the body fluids are **isosmotic** to each other. Another term with the same meaning is **isotonic** (also called **normotonic**).

Fluids with osmolalities greater than 300 mOsm/L are **hyperosmotic**, or **hypertonic**, compared with isosmotic fluids. These fluids have a *greater* osmotic pressure than do

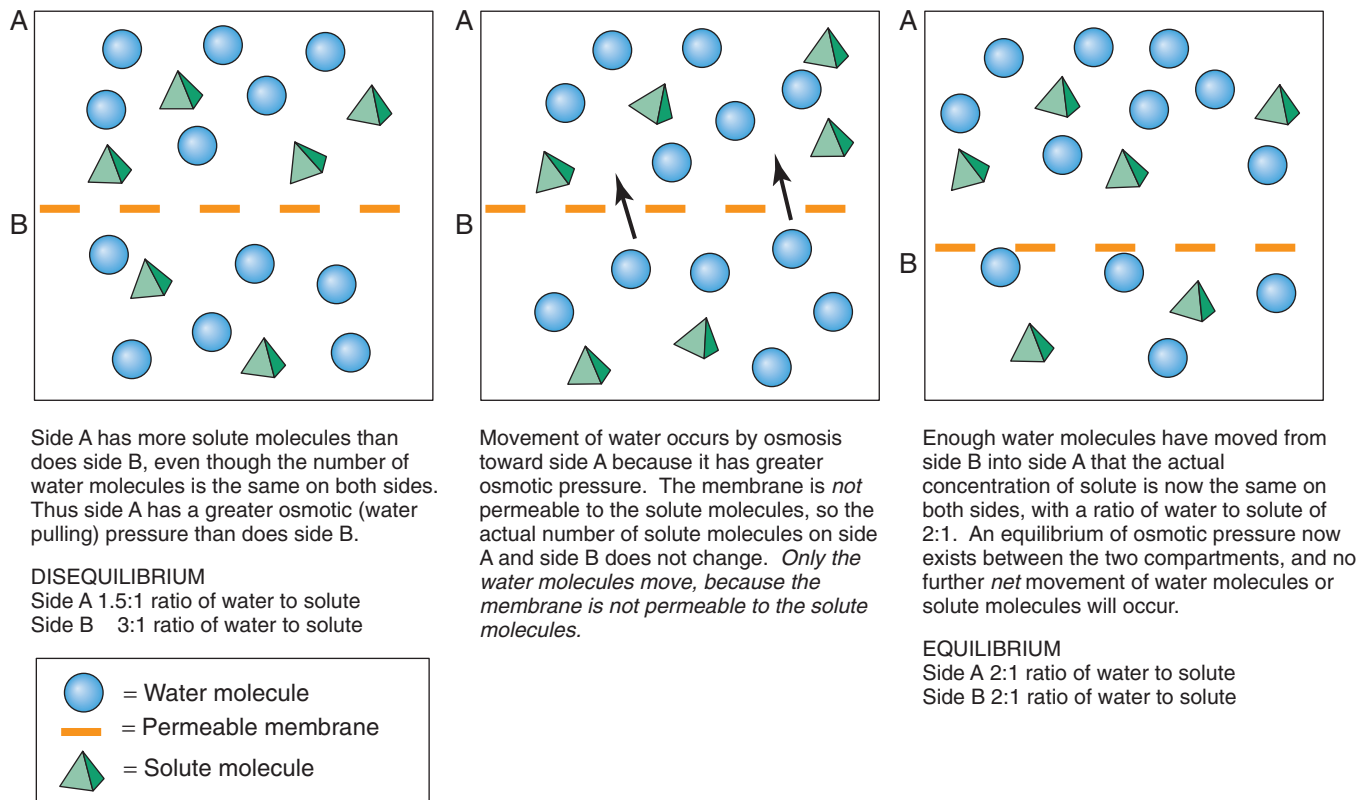


FIG. 13-5 The process of osmosis to generate a concentration equilibrium (but not a volume equilibrium) for a solute particle that cannot move through a cell membrane.

isotonic fluids and tend to pull water from the isotonic fluid space into the hypertonic fluid space until an osmotic balance occurs. If a hypertonic IV solution (e.g., 2% saline) were infused into a patient with normal ECF osmolarity, the infusing fluid would make the person's blood hypertonic. To balance this situation, the interstitial fluid would be pulled into the circulation in an attempt to dilute the blood osmolarity back to normal. As a result, the interstitial volume would shrink and the plasma volume would expand.

Fluids with osmolarities of less than 270 mOsm/L are **hypo-osmotic**, or **hypotonic**, compared with isotonic fluids. Hypo-osmolar fluids have a *lower* osmotic pressure than isotonic fluids, and water is pulled from the hypo-osmotic fluid space into the isotonic fluid space.

Solubility is how well a particle type dissolves in water. Fluids that have particles with greater solubility have higher osmotic pressures than fluids with insoluble particles.

Amount of membrane available for osmosis affects the speed of osmosis. More membrane increases the chances that water molecules will hit the membrane at a point where penetration is possible and thus increases the speed of osmosis.

Clinical Significance

Osmosis and filtration act together at the capillary membrane to maintain both extracellular fluid (ECF) and intracellular fluid (ICF) volumes within their normal ranges. The thirst mechanism is an example of how osmosis helps maintain homeostasis. The feeling of thirst is caused by the activation of cells in the brain that respond to changes in ECF osmolarity. These cells are so sensitive to changes in ECF osmolarity that they are called *osmoreceptors*. When a person loses body

water but most of the particles remain, such as through excessive sweating, ECF volume is decreased and osmolarity is increased (a hypertonic condition exists). The cells in the thirst center shrink as water moves from the cells into the hypertonic ECF. The shrinking of these cells triggers a person's awareness of thirst and increases the urge to drink. Drinking replaces the amount of water lost through sweating and dilutes the ECF osmolarity, restoring it to normal. *It is important to remember that the thirst mechanism is less sensitive in older adults, making them more at risk for dehydration.*

FLUID BALANCE

BODY FLUIDS

Fluid balance is closely linked to and affected by electrolyte concentrations. [Table 13-1](#) lists the normal ranges of the major serum electrolytes. [Chart 13-1](#) lists the normal electrolyte values for people older than 60 years.

A person's age, gender, and amount of fat affect the amount and distribution of body fluids. An older adult has less total body water than a younger adult. [Chart 13-2](#) discusses age-related changes in fluid balance. An obese person has less total water than a lean person of the same weight because fat cells contain almost no water.

Body fluids are constantly filtered and replaced as fluid balance is maintained through intake and output. The total amount of water within each fluid space is stable, but individual water molecules move continually among all spaces.

TABLE 13-1 MAJOR SERUM ELECTROLYTE CONCENTRATIONS AND SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL VALUES

ELECTROLYTE	REFERENCE RANGE	INTERNATIONAL RECOMMENDED UNITS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL VALUES
Sodium (Na ⁺)	136-145 mEq/L	136-145 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hypernatremia; dehydration; kidney disease; hypercortisolism <i>Low:</i> Hyponatremia; fluid overload; liver disease; adrenal insufficiency
Potassium (K ⁺)	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	3.5-5.0 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hyperkalemia; dehydration; kidney disease; acidosis; adrenal insufficiency; crush injuries <i>Low:</i> Hypokalemia; fluid overload; diuretic therapy; alkalosis; insulin administration; hyperaldosteronism
Calcium (Ca ²⁺)	9.0-10.5 mg/dL	2.25-2.75 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hypercalcemia; hyperthyroidism; hyperparathyroidism <i>Low:</i> Hypocalcemia; vitamin D deficiency; hypothyroidism; hypoparathyroidism; kidney disease; excessive intake of phosphorus-containing foods and drinks
Chloride (Cl ⁻)	98-106 mEq/L	98-106 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hyperchloremia; metabolic acidosis; respiratory alkalosis; hypercortisolism <i>Low:</i> Hypochloremia; fluid overload; excessive vomiting or diarrhea; adrenal insufficiency; diuretic therapy
Magnesium (Mg ²⁺)	1.3-2.1 mEq/L	0.65-1.05 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hypermagnesemia; kidney disease; hypothyroidism; adrenal insufficiency <i>Low:</i> Hypomagnesemia; malnutrition; alcoholism; ketoacidosis
Phosphorus (P)	3.0-4.5 mg/dL	0.97-1.45 mmol/L	<i>Elevated:</i> Hyperphosphatemia; kidney disease; hypoparathyroidism; acidosis; hypocalcemia <i>Low:</i> Hypophosphatemia; chronic antacid use; hyperparathyroidism; hypercalcemia; vitamin D deficiency; alcoholism; malnutrition

Data from Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

CHART 13-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Normal Plasma Electrolyte Values for People Older Than 60 Years

ELECTROLYTE	REFERENCE RANGE		INTERNATIONAL RECOMMENDED UNITS	
	60-90 YEARS	>90 YEARS	60-90 YEARS	>90 YEARS
Calcium (Ca ²⁺)	9.0-10.5 mg/dL	8.2-9.6 mg/dL	2.2-2.75 mmol/L	2.05-2.40 mmol/L
Chloride (Cl ⁻)	98-106 mEq/L	98-111 mEq/L	98-106 mmol/L	98-111 mmol/L
Magnesium (Mg ²⁺)	1.3-2.1 mEq/L	1.3-2.1 mEq/L	0.65-1.05 mmol/L	0.65-1.05 mmol/L
Phosphorus (P)	3.0-4.5 mg/dL	3.0-4.5 mg/dL	0.97-1.45 mmol/L	0.97-1.45 mmol/L
Potassium (K ⁺)	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	3.5-5.0 mmol/L	3.5-5.0 mmol/L
Sodium (Na ⁺)	136-145 mEq/L	132-146 mEq/L	136-145 mmol/L	132-146 mmol/L

Data for adults 60 to 90 years from Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Data for adults >90 years from Tietz, N.W. (Ed.). (1995). *Clinical guide to laboratory tests* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

CHART 13-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Impact of Age-Related Changes on Fluid Balance

SYSTEM	CHANGE	RESULT
Skin	Loss of elasticity Decreased turgor Decreased oil production	Skin becomes an unreliable indicator of fluid status, especially the back of the hand Dry, easily damaged skin
Kidney	Decreased glomerular filtration Decreased concentrating capacity	Poor excretion of waste products Increased water loss, increasing the risk for dehydration
Muscular	Decreased muscle mass	Decreased total body water Greater risk for dehydration
Neurologic	Diminished thirst reflex	Decreased fluid intake, increasing the risk for dehydration
Endocrine	Adrenal atrophy	Poor regulation of sodium and potassium, predisposing the patient to hyponatremia and hyperkalemia

TABLE 13-2 ROUTES OF FLUID INGESTION AND EXCRETION

INTAKE	OUTPUT
Measurable	
Oral fluids	Urine
Parenteral fluids	Emesis
Enemas*	Feces
Irrigation fluids*	Drainage from body cavities
Not Measurable	
Solid foods	Perspiration
Metabolism	Vaporization through the lungs

*Measured by subtracting the amount returned from the amount instilled.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Women of any age have less total body water than men of similar sizes and ages. This difference is because men have more muscle mass than women and because women have more body fat. (Muscle cells contain mostly water, and fat cells have little water.) This difference in water distribution may be responsible for differences seen in women's and men's responses to drugs.

As a result, water in all spaces is exchanged continually while maintaining constant fluid volume.

Fluid intake is regulated through the thirst drive. Fluids enter the body mainly as liquids (Table 13-2). Solid foods also contain up to 85% water, allowing some fluid to enter the body with ingested solid foods.

A rising blood osmolarity or a decreasing blood volume triggers the sensation of thirst. Sensations such as mouth dryness or the thought that a person has not had a drink recently also triggers the thirst drive. An adult drinks an average of 1500 mL of fluid per day and ingests an additional 800 mL of fluid from food.

Fluid loss occurs through several routes (see Table 13-2). Of all the water loss pathways, the kidney is the most important and the most sensitive. Water loss by the kidney is regulated and is adjustable. The volume of urine excreted daily varies depending on the amount of fluid taken in and the body's need to conserve fluids.

The minimum amount of urine per day needed to excrete toxic waste products is 400 to 600 mL. This minimum volume is called the **obligatory urine output**. If the 24-hour urine output falls below the obligatory output amount, wastes are retained and can cause lethal electrolyte imbalances, acidosis, and a toxic buildup of nitrogen.

The ability of the kidneys to make either concentrated or very dilute urine helps maintain fluid balance. The kidney works with various hormones to maintain fluid balance when extracellular fluid concentrations, volumes, or pressures change.

Other normal water loss occurs through the skin, the lungs, and the intestinal tract. Water losses also can result from salivation, drainage from fistulas and drains, and GI suction.

Water loss from the skin, lungs, and stool is called **insensible water loss**, because the body has no mechanisms to control this loss. The amount lost can be significant. In a healthy adult, insensible water loss is about 500 to 1000 mL/day. This loss increases greatly during thyroid crisis, trauma, burns, states of extreme stress, and fever. (For every

Celsius-degree increase in body temperature, insensible water loss increases by 10% to 25%.) Insensible water loss also increases when the environment is hot and dry. Patients at risk for increased insensible water loss include those being mechanically ventilated and those with rapid respirations (*tachypnea*). Insensible water loss, if not balanced by intake, can lead to severe dehydration and electrolyte imbalances.

Loss by sweating is variable and can reach a maximum rate of about 2 L/hr. Sweating is influenced by the autonomic nervous system, body temperature, and blood flow in the skin.

Water loss through stool is normally minimal. However, this loss can increase greatly with severe diarrhea or excessive fistula drainage.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse at a family picnic on a hot day in July is aware that which person is at greatest risk for dehydration while playing softball?

- A. 32-year-old male cousin who is a professional hockey player
- B. 28-year-old female cousin who has type 1 diabetes mellitus
- C. 72-year-old grandmother who is 15 pounds overweight
- D. 72-year-old grandfather who takes 81 mg of aspirin daily

HORMONAL REGULATION OF FLUID BALANCE

The endocrine system helps control fluid and electrolyte balance. Three hormones that help control these critical balances are aldosterone, antidiuretic hormone (ADH), and natriuretic peptide (NP).

Aldosterone is a hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex whenever sodium levels in the extracellular fluid (ECF) are decreased. Aldosterone prevents both water and sodium loss. When aldosterone is secreted, it acts on the kidney nephrons, triggering them to reabsorb sodium and water from the urine back into the blood. This action increases blood osmolarity and blood volume. Aldosterone prevents excessive kidney excretion of sodium. It also helps prevent blood potassium levels from becoming too high.

Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), or vasopressin, is produced in the brain and stored in the posterior pituitary gland. ADH release from the posterior pituitary gland is controlled by the hypothalamus in response to changes in blood osmolarity. The hypothalamus contains specialized cells (osmoreceptors) that are sensitive to changes in blood osmolarity. Increased blood osmolarity, especially an increase in the level of plasma sodium, results in a slight shrinkage of these cells and triggers ADH release from the posterior pituitary gland.

ADH acts directly on kidney tubules and collecting ducts, making them more permeable to water. As a result, more water is *reabsorbed* by these tubules and returned to the blood, decreasing blood osmolarity by making it more dilute. When blood osmolarity decreases, especially when the plasma sodium level is below normal, the osmoreceptors swell slightly and inhibit ADH release. Less water is then reabsorbed, and more is lost from the body in the urine. As a result, the amount of water in the extracellular fluid (ECF) decreases, bringing osmolarity up to normal.

Natriuretic peptides (NPs) are hormones secreted by special cells that line the atria of the heart (atrial natriuretic peptide

[ANP]) and the ventricles of the heart. (The peptide secreted by the heart ventricular cells is known as *brain natriuretic peptide* [BNP] because it was first discovered in the brain.) These peptides are secreted in response to increased blood volume and blood pressure, which stretch the heart tissue. NP binds to receptors in the nephrons, creating effects that are opposite of aldosterone. Kidney reabsorption of sodium is inhibited at the same time that glomerular filtration is increased, causing increased urine output. The outcome is decreased circulating blood volume and decreased blood osmolarity.

SIGNIFICANCE OF FLUID BALANCE

The Renin-Angiotensin II Pathway

The human body requires a balance of body fluids, electrolytes, and acids and bases for best function. The most important fluids to keep in balance are the blood volume (plasma volume) and the fluid inside the cells (intracellular fluid). Of these two, the most critical fluid balance to prevent death is maintaining blood volume at a sufficient level for blood pressure to remain high enough to ensure adequate perfusion and oxygenation of all organs and tissues. Balance of both water and electrolytes is needed for this very vital function.

Although having an excess of blood volume can be a problem, more conditions have the potential to lower blood volume and blood pressure to the point that tissues are not perfused well and do not receive sufficient oxygen to prevent cell death. Because low blood volume and low blood pressure can rapidly lead to death, the body has many specific actions

(mechanisms) that guard against excessive fluid loss from the plasma volume. These actions involve specific hormone levels, kidney function, and blood vessel responses to change how water and sodium are handled to maintain blood pressure.

Because the kidney is a major regulator of water and sodium balance to maintain blood pressure and perfusion to all tissues and organs, the kidneys monitor blood pressure, blood volume, blood oxygen levels, and blood osmolarity (related to sodium concentration). When the kidneys sense that any one of these parameters is getting low, they begin to secrete a substance called *renin* that sets into motion a group of hormonal and blood vessel responses to ensure that blood pressure is raised back up to normal. Fig. 13-6 summarizes these responses.

So, the triggering event is any change in the blood that indicates to the kidney that tissue and organ perfusion are at risk. Low blood pressure is a triggering event because when it gets too low, blood cannot flow through vessels into tissues and organs. Low blood volume is a triggering event because it is directly related to blood pressure. Anything that reduces blood volume (e.g., dehydration, hemorrhage) below a critical level *always* lowers blood pressure. Low blood oxygen levels also are triggering events because with too little oxygen in the blood, even if the blood reaches the tissues and organs, it cannot supply the needed oxygen and the tissues and organs could die. A low blood sodium level also is a triggering event because sodium and water are closely linked. Where sodium goes, water follows. So, anything that causes the blood to have too little sodium prevents water from staying in the blood.

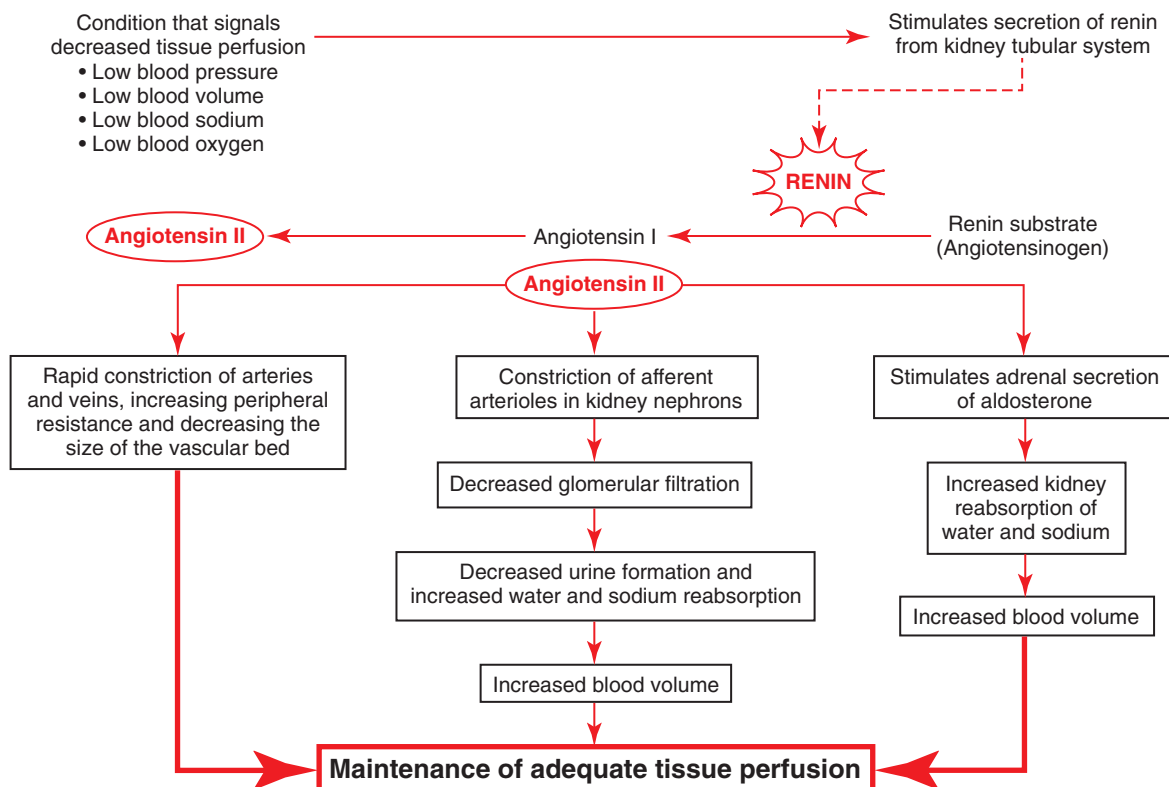


FIG. 13-6 The role of the renin-angiotensin II pathway in fluid and electrolyte balance and blood pressure regulation.

The result is low blood volume with low blood pressure and poor tissue perfusion.

Once the kidneys sense that tissue and organ perfusion are at risk, special cells in the kidney tubule (in an area of the nephron known as the *juxtaglomerular complex*) begin to secrete renin into the bloodstream. Renin is an enzyme that activates some blood proteins, one of which is *angiotensinogen*. Activated angiotensinogen is *angiotensin I*, which is relatively weak and has little action. It is then acted on by another enzyme known as *angiotensin-converting enzyme* or *ACE*, which converts angiotensin I into its most active form, *angiotensin II*.

Angiotensin II starts several different activities that all work to increase blood volume and blood pressure. First, because angiotensin II is a powerful vasoconstrictor, it causes constriction of small arteries and veins throughout the body. This action increases peripheral resistance and reduces the size of the vascular bed, which raises blood pressure without adding more blood volume. At the same time, a second action of angiotensin II is that it constricts the size of the arterioles that feed the kidney nephrons. This action results in a lower glomerular filtration rate and a huge reduction of urine output. Decreasing urine output prevents further loss of water so that more is retained in the blood to help raise blood pressure. The last and slightly slower action of angiotensinogen II is to cause the adrenal glands to secrete the hormone *aldosterone*. Aldosterone is nicknamed the “water- and sodium-saving hormone” because it causes the kidneys to reabsorb water and sodium, preventing them from being excreted into the urine. This response allows more water and sodium to be returned to the blood, increasing blood pressure and blood volume. All of these actions help maintain perfusion to vital organs.

Clinical Application

The renin-angiotensin II pathway is greatly stimulated whenever the patient is in shock or is stressed to the point that the stress response is stimulated. This is why urine output is used as an indicator of perfusion adequacy after surgery or any time the patient has undergone an invasive procedure.

An additional application of this pathway is related to management of hypertension (high blood pressure). Patients who have hypertension are often asked to limit their intake of sodium. The reason for this is that a high sodium intake raises the blood level of sodium, causing more water to be retained in the blood volume and raising blood pressure. Drug therapy for hypertension management may include diuretic drugs that increase the excretion of sodium so that less is present in the blood, resulting in a lower blood volume. Another class of drugs often used to manage blood pressure is the “ACE inhibitors.” These drugs disrupt the renin-angiotensin II pathway by reducing the amount of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) made so that less angiotensin II is present. With less angiotensin II, there is less vasoconstriction and reduced peripheral resistance, less aldosterone production, and greater excretion of water and sodium in the urine. All of these responses lead to decreased blood volume and blood pressure. One more class of drugs used to manage hypertension is the angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs). These drugs disrupt the renin-angiotensin II pathway by blocking the receptors that bind with angiotensin II so that the tissues cannot respond to it and blood pressure is lowered.

FLUID IMBALANCES

All patients are at risk for some degree of fluid imbalance because many health problems can disrupt fluid intake or output. Fluid imbalances can occur in any setting.

DEHYDRATION

Pathophysiology

In **dehydration**, fluid intake or fluid retention is less than what is needed to meet the body’s fluid needs, resulting in a fluid volume deficit, especially a plasma volume deficit. It is a condition rather than a disease and can be caused by many factors (Table 13-3). Dehydration may be an *actual* decrease in total body water caused by either too little intake of fluid or too great a loss of fluid. It also can occur without an actual loss of total body water, such as when water shifts from the plasma into the interstitial space. This condition is called *relative* dehydration.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older patients are at high risk for dehydration because they have less total body water than younger adults. In addition, many older adults have decreased thirst sensation and may have difficulty with walking or other motor skills needed for obtaining fluids. They also may take drugs such as diuretics, antihypertensives, and laxatives that increase fluid excretion.

Dehydration may occur with just water loss or with water and electrolyte loss (isotonic dehydration). *Isotonic dehydration is the most common type of fluid loss problem.* Fluid is lost only from the extracellular fluid (ECF) space, including both the plasma and the interstitial spaces. There is no shift of fluids between spaces, so the intracellular fluid (ICF) volume remains normal (Fig. 13-7). Circulating blood volume is decreased (**hypovolemia**) and leads to inadequate tissue perfusion. The body’s defenses adapt (compensate) during

TABLE 13-3 COMMON CAUSES OF FLUID IMBALANCES

DEHYDRATION	FLUID OVERLOAD
• Hemorrhage • Vomiting • Diarrhea • Profuse salivation • Fistulas • Ileostomy • Profuse diaphoresis • Burns • Severe wounds • Long-term nothing-by-mouth (NPO) status • Diuretic therapy • GI suction • Hyperventilation • Renal failure (early phase) • Diabetes insipidus • Difficulty swallowing • Impaired thirst • Unconsciousness • Fever • Impaired motor function	• Excessive fluid replacement • Kidney failure (late phase) • Heart failure • Long-term corticosteroid therapy • Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) • Psychiatric disorders with polydipsia • Water intoxication

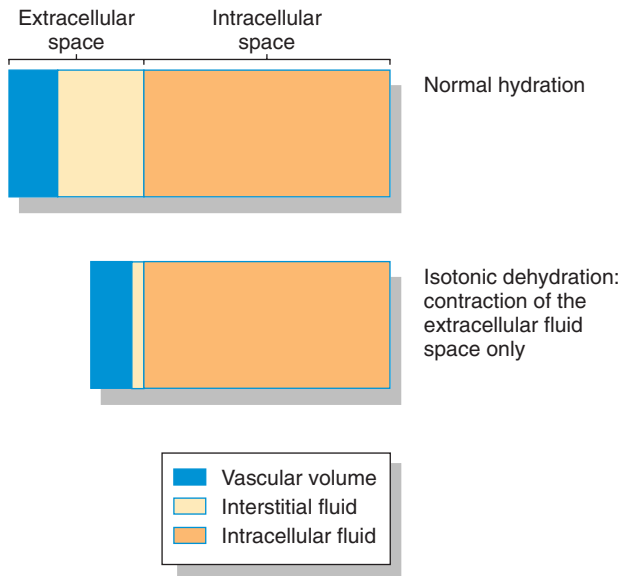


FIG. 13-7 Changes in fluid compartment volumes with dehydration.

dehydration to maintain adequate blood flow to vital organs in spite of hypovolemia (Fig. 13-8).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Mild dehydration is very common among healthy adults and is corrected or prevented easily by matching fluid intake with fluid output. Problems occur when people perform heavy exercise, especially in warm environments, without taking the time to replace excessive fluid losses. Dry climates and higher altitudes also increase fluid loss through the respiratory tract. Teach all patients to drink more fluids, especially water, whenever they engage in heavy physical activity or live in dry climates or at higher altitudes. Beverages with caffeine can increase fluid loss, as can drinks containing alcohol; thus these beverages should not be used to prevent or treat dehydration.

Moderate to severe dehydration is more likely to occur in people who are unable to obtain fluids without help. Older adults living in long-term care facilities and those adults with cognitive or motor problems depend on others for hydration. Dehydration in this population can be prevented with careful hydration programs. These programs include routinely offering residents a choice of fluids every hour or two during the

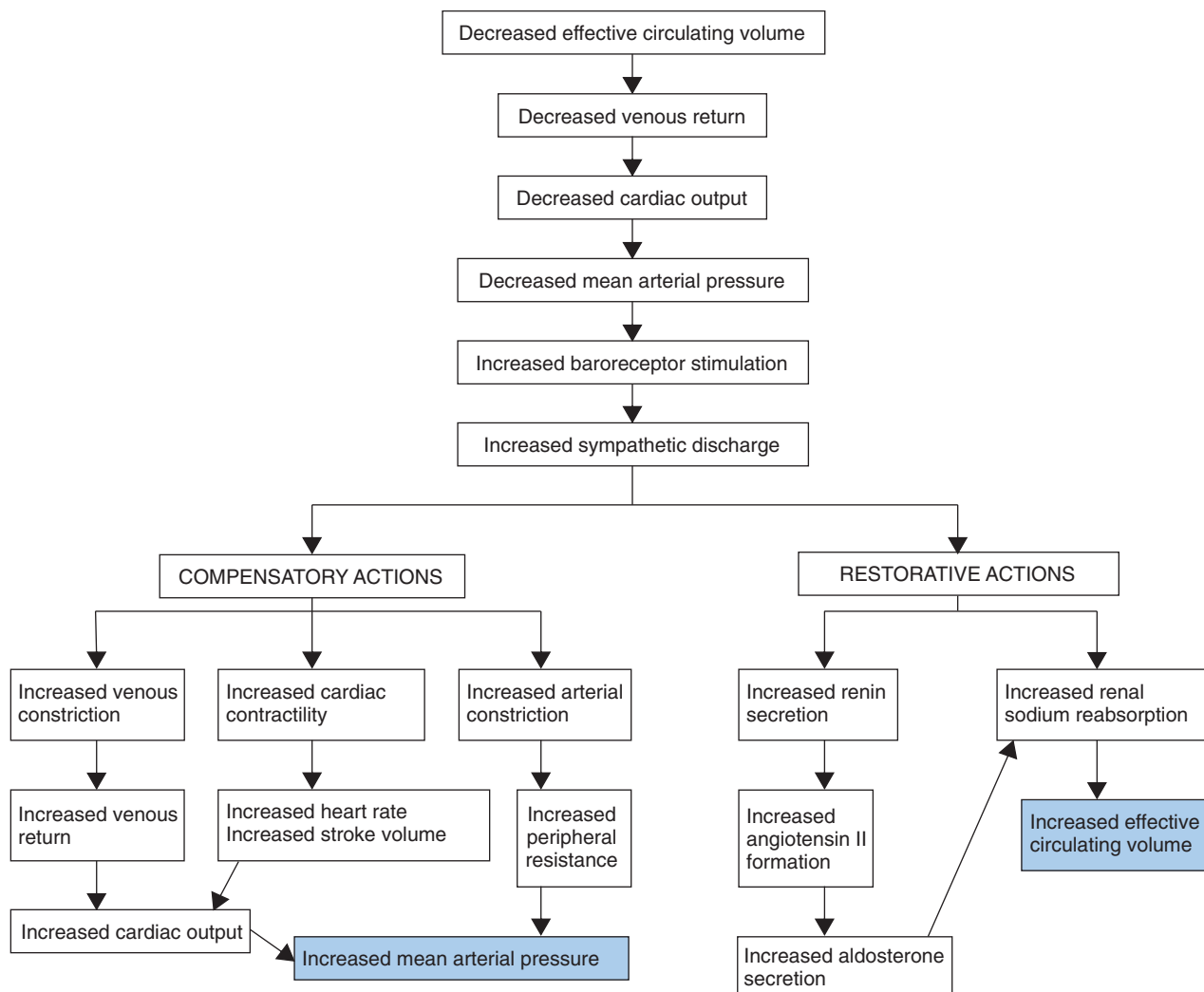


FIG. 13-8 Adaptive actions and mechanisms to preserve perfusion during dehydration.

day and at any other logical opportunity, such as when administering medications.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

One way of organizing history data to assess the patient's fluid status is to use Gordon's Functional Health Patterns (Gordon, 2010). The patterns that most affect fluid status are the Nutritional-Metabolic Pattern and the Elimination Pattern (Chart 13-3).

The nutritional history can reveal problems that affect fluid balance. Ask specific questions about food and liquid intake, and guide the patient in reporting accurately the amount of fluid ingested because he or she may not understand the connection between dietary intake and the onset of fluid imbalances. Also assess the types of fluids and foods ingested to determine amount and osmolarity. Many patients do not know that solid foods contain liquid. Solid foods such as ice cream, gelatin, and ices are liquids at body temperature, and these must be included when calculating fluid intake.

Collect specific information about output because exact intake and output volumes are important, as are serial daily weight measurements. If possible, weigh the patient directly rather than ask his or her weight because weight loss is an indication of dehydration. *Because 1 L of water weighs 2.2 pounds (1 kg), changes in daily weights are the best indicators of fluid losses or gains. A weight change of 1 pound corresponds to a fluid volume change of about 500 mL.*

Output includes losses not only as urine but also as sweat, diarrhea, and insensible loss during fevers. Ask specific

questions about prescribed and over-the-counter drugs, and check the dosage, the length of time taken, and the patient's adherence with the drug regimen.

Other important areas of the patient history include a sense of thirst or excessive drinking, exposure to hot environments, living at higher altitudes, and the presence of kidney or endocrine diseases. Assess the patient's level of consciousness and mental status, because changes in mental status occur with fluid imbalance. In such cases, you may need to check the accuracy of information with family members. Ask the patient about changes in ring or shoe tightness. A sudden decrease in tightness may indicate dehydration.

Older adults often use diuretics and laxatives, which can disturb fluid balance. Misuse and overuse of these drugs can lead to dehydration and electrolyte imbalances. An important issue for many older adults is that they may depend on other people to provide assistance in meeting fluid needs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Nearly all body systems are affected by dehydration to some degree. The most obvious changes occur in the cardiovascular and integumentary systems.

Cardiovascular changes are good indicators of hydration status because of the relationship between plasma fluid volume and blood pressure. Heart rate increases in an attempt to maintain blood pressure with less blood volume. Peripheral pulses are weak, difficult to find, and easily blocked with light pressure. The blood pressure also decreases, as does the pulse pressure, with a greater decrease in the systolic blood pressure. Hypotension is more severe with the patient in the standing position than in the sitting or lying position (**orthostatic** or **postural hypotension**). Because the blood pressure with the patient standing may be much lower than in other positions, first measure blood pressure with the patient lying down, then sitting, and finally standing. (These measures are also called "ortho checks" or "ortho changes.") As the blood pressure decreases when changing position, the person may not have sufficient blood flow to the brain, causing the sensations of light-headedness and dizziness. This problem increases the risk for falling, especially among older adults.

Neck veins are normally distended when a patient is in the supine position, and hand veins are distended when lower than the level of the heart. Neck veins normally flatten when the patient moves to a sitting position. With dehydration, neck and hand veins are flat, even when the neck and hands are not raised above the level of the heart.

Respiratory changes include an increased rate because the decreased blood volume reduces perfusion and oxygenation. The increased respiratory rate is an attempt to maintain oxygen delivery when perfusion is decreased.

Skin changes can indicate dehydration. Assess the skin and mucous membranes for color, moisture, and turgor. In older patients, this information is less reliable because of poor skin turgor resulting from the loss of elastic tissue and increased skin dryness from the loss of tissue fluids with aging. Assess skin turgor by checking:

- How easily the skin over the back of the hand and arm can be gently pinched between the thumb and the forefinger to form a "tent"
- How soon the pinched skin resumes its normal position after release

CHART 13-3 FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Nutritional-Metabolic Pattern

- What is your typical daily food intake? Describe a day's meals, snacks, and vitamins.
- How much salt do you typically add to your food? Do you use salt substitutes?
- How is your appetite?
- Do you have any difficulty chewing or swallowing?
- What is your typical daily fluid intake? What types of fluids (water, juices, soft drinks, coffee, tea, beer, other alcoholic drinks)? How much?
- Have you had any recent change in your weight? Weight gain? Weight loss? How much?
- Have you noticed a change in tightness of your rings or shoes? Tighter? Looser?

Elimination Pattern

- What is your usual bowel elimination pattern? Frequency? Character? Discomfort? Laxatives?
- What is your usual urinary elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Color? Odor? Control?
- Have you noticed a change in the amount of urine?
- Do you have any problem with excessive perspiration?
- Do you have any other type of drainage?

Based on Gordon, M. (2010). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

In generalized dehydration, skin turgor is poor, with the tent remaining for minutes after pinching the skin, and no skin depressions occur with gentle pressure. The skin is dry and scaly.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Assess skin turgor in an older adult by pinching the skin over the sternum or on the forehead, rather than the back of the hand, because these areas more reliably indicate hydration (Fig. 13-9). As a person ages, the skin loses elasticity and tents on hands and arms even when the person is well hydrated.

In dehydration, oral mucous membranes are not moist. They may be covered with a thick, sticky, pastelike coating and may have cracks and fissures. The surface of the tongue may have deep furrows. This manifestation may not be accurate for assessing dehydration in patients taking drugs that have the side effect of dry mouth.

Neurologic changes with dehydration include alterations of mental status and body temperature status because blood flow in the brain is reduced. Mental status changes, especially confusion, are more common among older adults and may be the first indication of a fluid balance problem. Check to determine whether the patient is alert and oriented. [Chapter 43](#) provides more information about assessment of mental status.

The patient with dehydration often has a low-grade fever, and fever can also cause dehydration. A patient with a temperature higher than 102° F (39° C) for longer than 6 hours is especially at risk because the increased body temperature increases the rate at which fluids are lost. For every degree (Celsius) increase in body temperature above normal, a minimum of an additional 500 mL of body fluid is lost. The older adult begins to lose more body water at lower levels of fever.

Kidney changes in dehydration affect urine volume and composition. Monitor urine output, comparing total output with total fluid intake and daily weights. The urine may be concentrated, with a specific gravity greater than 1.030. The color is dark amber and has a strong odor. *Urine output below 500 mL/day for any patient without kidney disease is cause for concern. Weigh the patient each day at the same time and on the same scale.* When possible, have the patient wear the same amount and type of clothing for each weigh-in. Any weight loss over a half pound per day is fluid loss.

Laboratory Assessment

No single laboratory test result confirms or rules out dehydration. Instead, dehydration is determined by laboratory findings along with clinical manifestations (see [Table 13-1](#)).



FIG. 13-9 Examining the skin turgor of an older patient.

Usually, laboratory findings with dehydration show elevated levels of hemoglobin, hematocrit, serum osmolarity, glucose, protein, blood urea nitrogen, and various electrolytes because more water is lost and other substances remain, increasing the osmolarity or concentration of the blood (**hemoconcentration**). Hemoconcentration is not present when dehydration is caused by hemorrhage, because loss of all blood and plasma products occurs together.

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of management for the patient with dehydration is to prevent injury, prevent further fluid losses, and increase fluid compartment volumes to normal ranges. Nursing priorities include patient safety, fluid replacement, and drug therapy.

Patient safety issues and strategies are priorities of care before and during other therapies for dehydration. Monitor vital signs, especially heart rate and blood pressure. The patient with dehydration is at risk for falls because of the accompanying orthostatic hypotension, dysrhythmia, muscle weakness, and possible confusion. Assess his or her muscle strength, gait stability, and level of alertness. Instruct the patient to get up slowly from a lying or sitting position and to immediately sit down if he or she feels light-headed. Implement the falls precautions listed in [Chart 13-4](#).

Fluid replacement is key to correcting dehydration and preventing death from reduced perfusion. Best practices for nursing care of the patient with dehydration are listed in [Chart 13-5](#). Mild to moderate dehydration is corrected with oral fluid replacement if the patient is alert enough to swallow and can tolerate oral fluids. Verify that he or she does not have a health problem that requires restriction of fluid volume or fluid types. Urge fluid intake, and measure the amount ingested.

Determine whether the patient has any special fluid needs (e.g., sugar-free fluids, thickened fluids). Provide fluids the patient enjoys, and carefully time the intake schedule. Dividing by nursing shifts the total amount of fluids needed helps meet fluid needs more evenly over 24 hours with less danger

CHART 13-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Falls Precautions

- Assess for orthostatic hypotension.
- Assess muscle strength in legs.
- Orient the patient to the environment.
- Remind the patient to call for help before getting out of bed or a chair.
- Help the patient get out of bed or a chair.
- Provide, or remind the patient to use, a walker or cane for ambulating.
- Help the incontinent patient toilet every 1 to 2 hours.
- Clean up spills immediately.
- Provide adequate lighting at all times, especially at night.
- Keep the call light within reach, and ensure that the patient can use it.
- Place the bed in the lowest position with the brakes locked.
- Place objects that the patient needs within reach.
- Ensure that adequate handrails are present in the patient's room, bathroom, and hall.
- Encourage family members or significant other to stay with the patient.

of overload. Offer the conscious patient small volumes of fluids every hour to increase intake.

Coordinate with unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to meet patients' specific fluid needs. Teach UAP to offer 2 to 4 ounces of fluid every hour to patients who are dehydrated or who are at risk for dehydration. If incontinence is a concern, ensure that UAP understand that withholding fluids is not an appropriate means to prevent the problem. Instruct them to take the time to stay with patients while they drink the fluid and to note the exact amount ingested. Direct UAP to report any difficulties patients may have in swallowing or managing fluids.

Oral rehydration therapy (ORT) is a cost-effective way to replace fluids for the patient with dehydration. Specifically

CHART 13-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient with Dehydration

- When possible, provide oral fluids that meet the patient's dietary restrictions (e.g., sugar-free, low-sodium, thickened).
- Collaborate with other members of the health care team to determine the amount of fluids needed during a 24-hour period.
- Ensure the fluids are offered and ingested on an even schedule at least every 2 hours throughout 24 hours.
- Teach unlicensed assistive personnel to actively participate in the hydration therapy and not to withhold fluids to prevent incontinence.
- Administer prescribed IV fluids at a rate consistent with hydration needs and any known cardiac, pulmonary, or kidney problems.
- Monitor the patient's response to fluid therapy at least every 2 hours for indicators of adequate rehydration or the need for continuing therapy, especially:
 - Pulse quality
 - Urine output
 - Pulse pressure
 - Weight (every 8 hours)
- Monitor for and report indicators of fluid overload, including:
 - Bounding pulse
 - Difficulty breathing
 - Neck vein distention in the upright position
 - Presence of dependent edema
- Assess the IV and the infusion site at least hourly for indications of infiltration, extravasation, or phlebitis (e.g., swelling around the site, pain, cord-like veins, reduced drip rate).
- Administer drugs prescribed to correct the underlying cause of the dehydration (e.g., antiemetics, antidiarrheals, antibiotics, antipyretics).

formulated solutions containing glucose and electrolytes are absorbed even when the patient is vomiting or has diarrhea. These are more often used in the home setting, in long-term care, and for patients who have poor veins, making IV therapy difficult. Available ORT solutions for adults include EQUALYTE, Oralyte, and Rehydralyte.

Drug therapy for dehydration is directed at restoring fluid balance and controlling the causes of dehydration. Whenever possible, fluids are replaced orally. When dehydration is severe or life threatening or the patient cannot tolerate oral fluids, IV fluid replacement is needed. Calculation of how much fluid to replace is based on the patient's weight loss and clinical manifestations. The rate of fluid replacement depends on the degree of dehydration and the presence of other cardiac, pulmonary, or kidney problems.

The type of fluid prescribed varies with the patient's cardiovascular status and the osmolarity of the blood. [Table 13-4](#) lists the composition of common IV fluids. *The two most important areas to monitor during rehydration are pulse rate and quality and urine output.*

Drug therapy may correct some causes of the dehydration. For example, antidiarrheal drugs are prescribed when diarrhea causes dehydration. Antimicrobial therapy may be used in patients with bacterial diarrhea. Antiemetics may be used when vomiting causes dehydration. Antipyretics to reduce fever are helpful when fever makes dehydration worse.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

A 70-year-old man is brought to the emergency department by his wife. They were traveling together on a 700-mile car trip. She is concerned that he might have Alzheimer's disease because he suddenly does not know where he is. She tells you that her husband has only a few health problems, including high blood pressure and benign prostatic hyperplasia. He usually takes hydrochlorothiazide (Diuril) for the high blood pressure, and he did take the drug this morning as usual. She also mentions that he drank only two cups of coffee yesterday and today so that he would not need to stop so frequently to use the bathroom.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for dehydration?
2. What other information should you ask the wife?
3. How are dehydration and confusion related?
4. What assessment data should you collect and in what order? Provide a rationale for the order.
5. What are the priority safety concerns for this patient?

TABLE 13-4 CHARACTERISTICS OF COMMON INTRAVENOUS THERAPY SOLUTIONS

SOLUTION	OSMOLARITY (MOSM/L)	PH	CALORIES* (KCAL)	TONICITY
0.9% saline	308	5	0	Isotonic
0.45% saline	154	5	0	Hypotonic
5% dextrose in water (D ₅ W)	272	3.5-6.5	170	Isotonic†
10% dextrose in water (D ₁₀ W)	500	3.5-6.5	340	Hypertonic†
5% dextrose in 0.9% saline	560	3.5-6.5	170	Hypertonic†
5% dextrose in 0.45% saline	406	4	170	Hypertonic†
5% dextrose in 0.225% saline	321	4	170	Isotonic†
Ringer's lactate	273	6.5	9	Isotonic
5% dextrose in Ringer's lactate	525	4-6.5	179	Hypertonic†

Data from Trissel, L. (2009). *Handbook on injectable drugs* (15th ed.). Bethesda, MD: American Society of Hospital-System Pharmacists.

*Calories are calculated on the basis of a volume of 1000 mL.

†Solution tonicity at the time of administration. Within a short time after administration, the dextrose is metabolized and the tonicity of the infused solution decreases in proportion to the osmolality or tonicity of the non-dextrose components (electrolytes) within the water.

FLUID OVERLOAD

Pathophysiology

Fluid overload, also called *overhydration*, is an excess of body fluid. It is not a disease but, rather, a clinical sign of a problem in which fluid intake or retention is greater than the body's fluid needs. Fluid overload may be either an actual excess of total body fluid or a relative fluid excess. The most common type of fluid overload is hypervolemia (Fig. 13-10) because the problems result from excessive fluid in the extracellular fluid (ECF) space. Most problems caused by fluid overload are related to excessive fluid in the vascular space or to dilution of specific electrolytes and blood components. The conditions leading to fluid overload are related to excessive intake or inadequate excretion of fluid. See Table 13-3 for causes of

fluid overload. Fig. 13-11 outlines the adaptive changes the body makes in response to mild or moderate fluid overload. When overload is severe or occurs in a person with poor cardiac or kidney function, it can lead to heart failure and pulmonary edema.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Patients with fluid overload often have pitting edema (Fig. 13-12). Other manifestations are usually seen in the

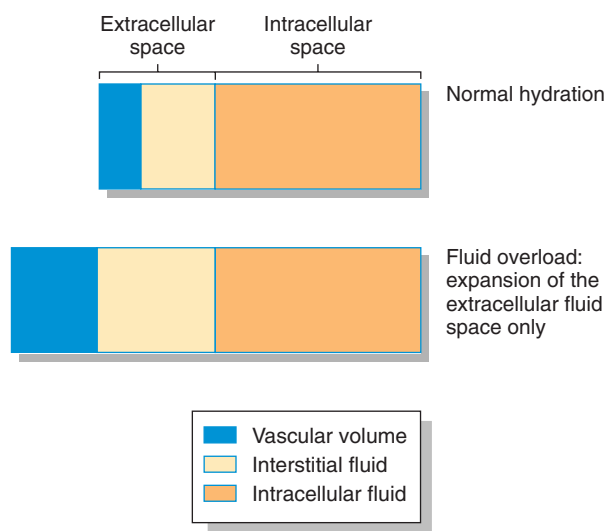


FIG. 13-10 Changes in fluid compartment volumes with fluid overload.



FIG. 13-12 Pitting edema of the left foot and ankle.

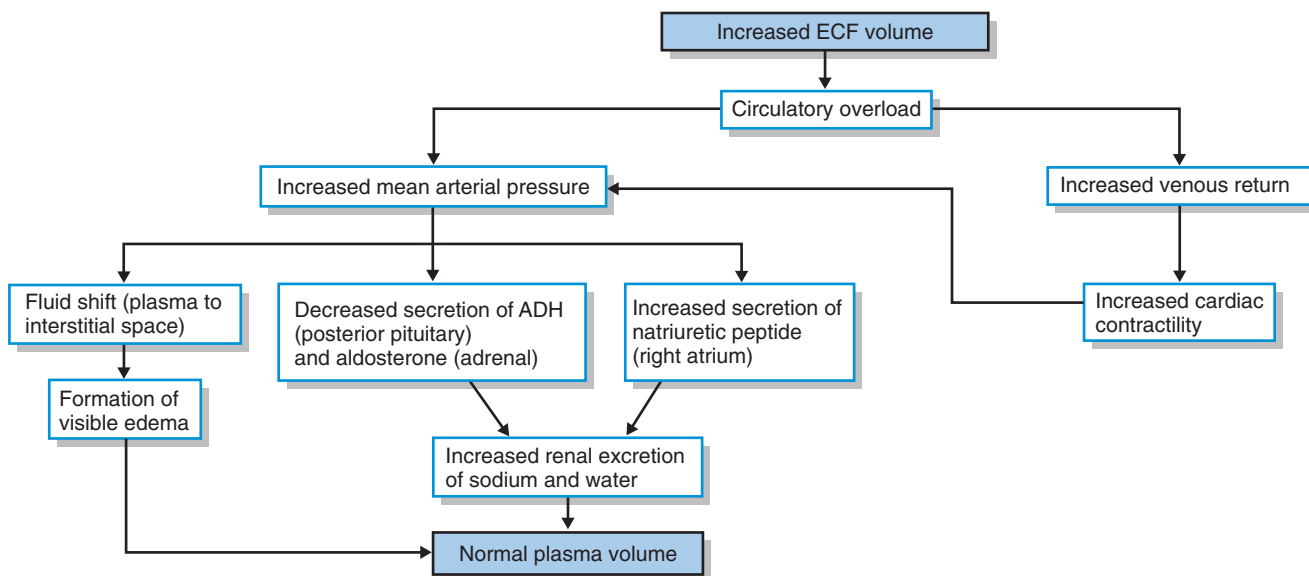


FIG. 13-11 Adaptive actions and mechanisms to prevent cardiac and pulmonary complications during fluid overload. (ADH, Antidiuretic hormone; ECF, extracellular fluid.)

cardiovascular, respiratory, neuromuscular, integumentary, and GI systems (Chart 13-6).

Fluid overload is diagnosed based on assessment findings and the results of laboratory tests. Usually, serum electrolyte values are normal, but decreased hemoglobin, hematocrit, and serum protein levels may result from excessive water in the vascular space (**hemodilution**).

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of priority nursing interventions for patients with fluid overload is to ensure patient safety, restore normal fluid balance, provide supportive care until the imbalance is resolved, and prevent future fluid overload. Drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and monitoring are the basis of intervention.

Patient safety is the first priority. Interventions are implemented to prevent fluid overload from becoming worse, leading to pulmonary edema and heart failure. Any patient with fluid overload, regardless of age, is at risk for these complications. Older adults or those with cardiac problems, kidney problems, pulmonary problems, or liver problems are at greater risk.

Monitor for indicators of increased fluid overload (bounding pulse, increasing neck vein distention, presence of crackles in lungs, increasing peripheral edema, reduced urine output) at least every 2 hours.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Pulmonary edema can occur very quickly and can lead to death. Notify the health care provider of any change that indicates the fluid overload either is not responding to therapy or is becoming worse.

The patient with fluid overload and edema is at risk for skin breakdown. Use a pressure-reducing or

pressure-relieving overlay on the mattress. Assess skin pressure areas daily for signs of redness or open area, especially the coccyx, elbows, hips, and heels. Because many patients with fluid overload may be receiving oxygen by mask or nasal cannula, check the skin integrity around the mask, nares, and ears and under the elastic band. Help the patient change positions every 2 hours, or ensure that unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) perform this action.

Drug therapy focuses on removing the excess fluid. Diuretics are prescribed for fluid overload if kidney failure is not the cause. These drugs increase kidney water or sodium excretion. High-ceiling (loop) diuretics, such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside ) , may be prescribed. (See Chapter 38 for discussion of diuretic therapy.) If there is concern that too much sodium and other electrolytes would be lost using loop diuretics or if the patient has syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), conivaptan (Vaprisol) or tolvaptan (Samsca) may be prescribed.

Monitor the patient for response to drug therapy, especially weight loss and increased urine output. Observe for manifestations of electrolyte imbalance, especially changes in electrocardiogram (ECG) patterns. Assess laboratory findings, especially sodium and potassium values, every 8 hours or whenever they are drawn.

Nutrition therapy for the patient with *chronic* fluid overload may involve restrictions of both fluid and sodium intake to control fluid volume. Review the patient's serum sodium levels whenever fluid overload is present. Often sodium restriction involves only "no added salt" to ordinary table foods when fluid overload is mild. For more severe fluid overload, the patient may be restricted to 2 g/day to 4 g/day of sodium. When sodium restriction is ongoing, teach the patient and family how to check food labels for sodium content and how to keep a daily record of sodium ingested. Explain to the patient and family the reason for any fluid restriction and the importance of adhering to the prescribed restriction.

Monitoring intake and output and weight provides information on therapy effectiveness. Teach UAP that these measurements need to be accurate, not just estimated, because treatment decisions are based on these findings. In addition to regulating the total amount of fluid ingested in a 24-hour period, schedule fluid offerings throughout the 24 hours. Teach UAP to check urine for color and character and to report these findings. Check the urine specific gravity (a specific gravity below 1.005 may indicate fluid overload). If the patient is receiving IV therapy, infuse the exact amount prescribed.

Fluid retention may not be visible. Remember that rapid weight gain is the best indicator of fluid retention and overload. Metabolism can account for no more than a half pound of weight gain in one day. Each pound of weight gained (after the first half pound) equates to 500 mL of retained water. Weigh the patient at the same time every day (before breakfast), using the same scale. Whenever possible, have the patient wear the same type of clothing for each weigh-in.

If the patient is discharged to home before the fluid overload has completely resolved or has continuing risk for fluid overload, teach him or her and the family to monitor weight at home. Suggest that a record of these daily weights be kept to show the health care provider at checkups. Also, instruct

CHART 13-6 KEY FEATURES

Fluid Overload

Cardiovascular Changes

- Increased pulse rate
- Bounding pulse quality
- Full peripheral pulses
- Elevated blood pressure
- Decreased pulse pressure
- Elevated central venous pressure
- Distended neck and hand veins
- Engorged varicose veins
- Weight gain

Respiratory Changes

- Increased respiratory rate
- Shallow respirations
- Increased dyspnea with exertion or in the supine position
- Moist crackles present on auscultation

Skin and Mucous Membrane Changes

- Pitting edema in dependent areas
- Skin pale and cool to touch

Neuromuscular Changes

- Altered level of consciousness
- Headache
- Visual disturbances
- Skeletal muscle weakness
- Paresthesias

Gastrointestinal Changes

- Increased motility
- Enlarged liver

the patient to call his or her health care provider for more than a 3-pound gain in a week or more than a 1- to 2-pound gain in 24 hours.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client who has fluid overload has been taking a diuretic for the past 2 days and now experiences these changes. Which change indicates to the nurse that the diuretic is effective?

- A. Weight loss of 7 pounds
- B. Heart rate increased from 72 to 80
- C. Respiratory rate decreased from 20 to 16
- D. Morning blood glucose decreased from 142 mg/dL to 110 mg/dL

ELECTROLYTE BALANCE AND IMBALANCES

Electrolytes, or **ions**, are substances in body fluids that carry an electrical charge. **Cations** have positive charges; **anions** have negative charges. Body fluids are electrochemically neutral, which means that the number of positive ions is balanced by an equal number of negative ions. However, the distribution of ions differs in the extracellular fluid (ECF) and the intracellular fluid (ICF) (Fig. 13-13).

Most electrolytes have different concentrations in the ICF and ECF. This concentration difference helps maintain membrane excitability and allows nerve impulse transmission. The normal ranges of electrolyte concentration are very narrow. So, even small changes in these levels can cause major problems.

Electrolyte imbalances can occur in healthy people as a result of changes in fluid intake and output. These imbalances are usually mild and are easily corrected. Severe electrolyte imbalances with actual losses or retention of specific electrolytes are life threatening and can occur in any setting. People at greatest risk for severe imbalances are older patients, patients with chronic kidney or endocrine disorders, patients who are mentally impaired, and patients who are taking drugs that alter fluid and electrolyte

levels. *All ill people are at some risk for electrolyte imbalances.*

Table 13-1 lists major electrolytes, their normal serum levels, and the significance of abnormal values. Most electrolytes enter the body in ingested food. The normal concentration of blood electrolytes changes slightly with the aging process. Chart 13-1 lists the normal electrolyte values for people older than 60 years.

Electrolyte homeostasis is controlled by balancing the dietary intake of electrolytes with the kidney excretion or reabsorption of electrolytes. For example, the plasma level of potassium is maintained between 3.5 and 5.0 mEq/L (mmol/L). The high potassium level in common foods such as meat and citrus fruit could increase the ECF potassium level and lead to major problems. Normally this does not occur because kidney excretion of potassium keeps pace with potassium intake and prevents major changes in the blood potassium level.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults are at risk for most electrolyte imbalances as a result of age-related organ changes, especially a reduction of kidney function. Older adults have less total body water than younger adults and therefore are more at risk for fluid imbalances. They are more likely to be taking drugs that affect fluid or electrolyte balance.

SODIUM

Sodium (Na^+), a mineral, is the major *cation* (positively charged particle) in the extracellular fluid (ECF) and maintains ECF osmolarity. Sodium levels of the ECF are high (136 to 145 mEq/L), and the intracellular fluid (ICF) sodium levels are low (about 14 mEq/L). Keeping this difference in sodium levels is vital for skeletal muscle contraction, cardiac contraction, nerve impulse transmission, and normal osmolarity and volume of the ECF. Sodium levels and movement influence water balance because “where sodium goes, water follows.” The ECF sodium level determines whether water is retained, excreted, or moved from one fluid space to another.

Plasma volume	Interstitial fluid	Intracellular fluid
Volume 3.5-5.5 L Osmolarity 270-300 mOsm Sodium 136-145 mEq/L Potassium 3.5-5.0 mEq/L Chloride 96-109 mEq/L Calcium 9.0-10.5 mg/dL Magnesium 1.3-2.1 mEq/L Protein 7-8 g/L	Volume ~10 L Osmolarity 270-300 mOsm Sodium 135-145 mEq/L Potassium 3.5-5.0 mEq/L Chloride ~118 mEq/L Calcium 7.0-9.0 mg/dL Magnesium ~1.3 mEq/L Protein ~2 g/L	Volume 25-30 L Osmolarity 270-300 mOsm Sodium 14 mEq/L Potassium 140 mEq/L Chloride ~4-6 mEq/L Calcium 1.0-8.0 mg/dL Magnesium 6-30 mEq/L Protein 16 g/L

FIG. 13-13 The electrolyte composition of various body fluids.

To maintain electrical balance, the sodium (a cation) level within a body fluid must be matched by an equal number of anions (negatively charged substances). Each positive charge in the ECF is balanced by a negative charge so the fluid does not carry either an overall positive or an overall negative charge. When this balance is present, the fluid is electrically neutral. Changes in plasma sodium levels seriously change fluid volume and the distribution of other electrolytes.

Sodium enters the body through the ingestion of many foods and fluids. Foods with the highest sodium levels are those that are processed or preserved, such as smoked or pickled foods. Snack foods are often very high in sodium. Condiments, such as salt, soy sauce, and relishes, are also high in sodium. Foods lowest in sodium include fresh fish and poultry and most fresh vegetables and fruit. The average dietary intake of sodium among North Americans is about 6 to 13 g/day. Sodium is also stored within the kidney tissues and is released to the ECF as needed.

Despite variation in sodium intake from one day to the next, the blood sodium level usually remains within the normal range. Serum sodium balance is regulated by the kidney under the influences of aldosterone, antidiuretic hormone (ADH), and natriuretic peptide (NP), as described on pp. 171-172.

Low serum sodium levels inhibit the secretion of ADH and NP and trigger aldosterone secretion. Together these actions increase serum sodium levels by increasing kidney reabsorption of sodium and enhancing kidney loss of water.

High serum sodium levels inhibit aldosterone secretion and directly stimulate secretion of ADH and NP. Together these hormones increase kidney excretion of sodium and kidney reabsorption of water.

HYPONATREMIA

Pathophysiology

Hyponatremia is a serum sodium (Na^+) level below 136 mEq/L (mmol/L). Sodium imbalances often occur with fluid volume imbalances because the same hormones regulate both sodium and water balance. The problems caused by hyponatremia involve two mechanisms—reduced excitable membrane depolarization and cellular swelling.

Excitable cell membrane depolarization depends on high extracellular fluid (ECF) levels of sodium being available to cross cell membranes and move into cells in response to a stimulus. Hyponatremia makes depolarization slower so that excitable membranes are less excitable.

With hyponatremia, the osmolarity of the ECF is lower than that of the intracellular fluid (ICF). As a result, water moves into the cell, causing swelling. Even a small amount of swelling can reduce cell function. Larger amounts of swelling can make the cell burst and die (*lysis*).

Many conditions and drugs can lead to hyponatremia (Table 13-5). One of the most common causes of low sodium levels is the prolonged use and overuse of diuretics, especially in older adults or in anyone who is also restricting sodium intake. When these drugs are used to manage fluid overload, sodium is lost along with the extra water. Hyponatremia can result from the loss of total body sodium, the movement of sodium from the blood to other fluid spaces, or the dilution of serum sodium from excessive water in the plasma.

TABLE 13-5 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPONATREMIA

Actual Sodium Deficits

- Excessive diaphoresis
- Diuretics (high-ceiling diuretics)
- Wound drainage (especially gastrointestinal)
- Decreased secretion of aldosterone
- Hyperlipidemia
- Kidney disease (scarred distal convoluted tubule)
- Nothing by mouth
- Low-salt diet
- Cerebral salt-wasting syndrome
- Hyperglycemia

Relative Sodium Deficits (Dilution)

- Excessive ingestion of hypotonic fluids
- Psychogenic polydipsia
- Freshwater submersion accident
- Kidney failure (nephrotic syndrome)
- Irrigation with hypotonic fluids
- Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion
- Heart failure

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The manifestations of hyponatremia are caused by its effects on excitable cellular activity. The cells especially affected are those involved in cerebral, neuromuscular, intestinal smooth muscle, and cardiovascular functions.

Cerebral changes are the most obvious problems of hyponatremia. First establishing the patient's usual cognitive and behavioral patterns is essential because either depressed activity or excessive activity (and sometimes both) may occur. Behavioral changes result from cerebral edema and increased intracranial pressure. Closely observe and document the patient's behavior, level of consciousness, and mental status. A sudden onset of acute confusion or increased confusion is often seen in older adults who have low serum sodium levels.

Neuromuscular changes are seen as general muscle weakness. Assess the patient's neuromuscular status during each nursing shift for changes from baseline. Deep tendon reflexes diminish, and muscle weakness is worse in the legs and arms. Assess muscle strength in several ways, including arm muscle strength and leg muscle strength. Test arm muscle strength first by having the patient squeeze your hand. Another way to test arm muscle strength is to have the patient flex his or her arms against the chest and keep them flexed while you attempt to pull them away from the chest. Test leg muscle strength by having the patient push both feet against a flat surface (like a box or a board) while you apply resistance to the opposite side of the flat surface.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If muscle weakness is present, immediately check respiratory effectiveness because ventilation depends on adequate strength of respiratory muscles.

Intestinal changes include increased motility, causing nausea, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping. Assess the GI system by listening to bowel sounds and observing stools. Bowel sounds are hyperactive, with rushes and gurgles over the splenic flexure and in the lower left quadrant. Bowel movements are frequent and watery.

Cardiovascular changes are seen as changes in cardiac output. The cardiac responses to hyponatremia with **hypovolemia** (decreased plasma volume) include a rapid, weak, thready pulse. Peripheral pulses are difficult to palpate and are easily blocked with light pressure. Blood pressure is decreased, and the patient may have severe hypotension when moving from a lying or sitting position to a standing position (orthostatic hypotension), leading to light-headedness or dizziness. The central venous pressure is low.

When hyponatremia occurs with **hypervolemia** (fluid overload), cardiac changes include a full or bounding pulse with normal or high blood pressure. Peripheral pulses are full and difficult to block; however, they may not be palpable if edema is present.

INTERVENTIONS

The health care provider determines the specific cause of the low sodium level to plan the most appropriate medical treatment. Interventions with drug therapy and nutrition therapy are used to restore serum sodium levels to normal and prevent complications from fluid overload or a too-rapid change in serum sodium level. *The priorities for nursing care of the patient with hyponatremia are monitoring the patient's response to therapy and preventing hypernatremia and fluid overload.*

Drug therapy first involves reducing the doses of any drugs that increase sodium loss, such as loop diuretics and thiazide diuretics. Other regimens vary depending on whether fluid imbalance occurs with hyponatremia. When hyponatremia occurs with a fluid deficit, IV saline infusions are prescribed to restore both sodium and fluid volume. Severe hyponatremia may be treated with small-volume infusions of hypertonic (2%-3%) saline. These infusions are delivered using a controller to prevent accidental increases in infusion rate. Monitor the infusion rate and the patient's response.

When hyponatremia occurs with fluid excess, drug therapy includes giving drugs that promote the excretion of water rather than sodium, such as conivaptan (Vaprisol) or tolvaptan (Samsca). Drug therapy for hyponatremia caused by inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) may also include agents that antagonize ADH, such as lithium and demeclocycline (Declomycin). Assess hourly for signs of excessive fluid loss, potassium loss, and increased sodium levels.

Nutrition therapy can help restore normal sodium balance in mild hyponatremia. Collaborate with the registered dietitian (RD) to teach the patient about which foods to increase in the diet. Therapy involves increasing oral sodium intake and restricting oral fluid intake. Fluid restriction may be needed long-term when fluid overload is the cause of the hyponatremia or when kidney fluid excretion is impaired. Nursing actions for patient safety, skin protection, measurement of fluid intake and output, and patient and family teaching are the same as those for fluid overload on pp. 179-180.

TABLE 13-6 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPERNATREMIA

Actual Sodium Excesses	Relative Sodium Excesses
• Hyperaldosteronism • Kidney failure • Corticosteroids • Cushing's syndrome or disease • Excessive oral sodium ingestion • Excessive administration of sodium-containing IV fluids	• Nothing by mouth • Increased rate of metabolism • Fever • Hyperventilation • Infection • Excessive diaphoresis • Watery diarrhea • Dehydration



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The family of a client with chronic hyponatremia asks if the water restriction is a punishment for his uncooperative behavior. What is the nurse's best response?

- "No, limiting fluid intake decreases the risk for kidney failure."
- "No, limiting water intake prevents him from losing too much fluid by vomiting."
- "No, limiting fluid intake keeps his blood from becoming more dilute and causing other complications."
- "No, limiting fluid decreases his sense of thirst and prevents him from drinking liquids that contain an excess of sodium."

HYPERNATREMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypernatremia is a serum sodium level over 145 mEq/L (mmol/L). High serum sodium levels can be caused by or can cause changes in fluid volumes. Table 13-6 lists common causes of hypernatremia.

As serum sodium level rises, a larger difference in sodium levels occurs between the extracellular fluid (ECF) and the intracellular fluid (ICF). More sodium is present to move rapidly across cell membranes during depolarization, making excitable tissues more easily excited. This condition is called **irritability**, and excitable tissues over-respond to stimuli. In addition, water moves from the cells into the ECF to dilute the hyperosmolar ECF. So, when serum sodium levels are high, severe cellular dehydration occurs. Eventually the dehydrated excitable tissues may no longer be able to respond to stimuli.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The manifestations of hypernatremia vary with the severity of sodium imbalance and whether a fluid imbalance is also present. Changes are first seen in excitable membrane activity, especially nerve, skeletal muscle, and cardiac function.

Nervous system changes start with altered cerebral function. Assess the patient's mental status for attention span, recall of recent events, and cognitive function. In hypernatremia with normal or decreased fluid volumes, the patient may have a short attention span and be agitated or confused about recent events. Manic episodes or seizures may occur if serum

sodium continues to rise. When hypernatremia occurs with fluid overload, the patient may be lethargic, drowsy, stuporous, and even comatose.

Skeletal muscle changes vary with the degree of sodium increases. Mild rises cause muscle twitching and irregular muscle contractions. As hypernatremia worsens, the muscles and nerves are less able to respond to a stimulus and muscles become progressively weaker. Late, the deep tendon reflexes are reduced or absent. Muscle weakness occurs bilaterally and has no specific pattern. Observe for twitching in muscle groups. Assess muscle strength by having the patient perform handgrip and arm flexion against resistance as described on p. 181. The advanced practice nurse may check reflexes by lightly tapping the patellar (knee) tendons and Achilles (heel) tendons with a reflex hammer and measuring the movement.

Cardiovascular changes include decreased contractility because high sodium levels slow the movement of calcium into the heart cells. Measure blood pressure and the rate and quality of the apical and peripheral pulses. Pulse rate and blood pressure may be normal, above normal, or below normal, depending on the fluid volume and how rapidly the imbalance occurred.

Pulse rate is increased in patients with hypernatremia and hypovolemia. Peripheral pulses are difficult to palpate and are easily blocked. Hypotension and severe orthostatic (postural) hypotension are present, and pulse pressure is reduced.

Patients with hypernatremia and hypervolemia have slow to normal bounding pulses. Peripheral pulses are full and difficult to block. Neck veins are distended, even with the patient in the upright position. Blood pressure, especially diastolic blood pressure, is increased.

INTERVENTIONS

Drug and nutrition therapies are used to prevent further increases in serum sodium and decrease high serum sodium levels. Other medical interventions used when sodium levels become life threatening include hemodialysis and blood ultrafiltration. *Priorities for nursing care of the patient with hypernatremia include monitoring his or her response to therapy and ensuring patient safety by preventing hyponatremia and dehydration.*

Drug therapy is used to restore fluid balance when hypernatremia is caused by fluid loss. Hypotonic IV infusions, usually 0.225% sodium chloride, are prescribed. Hypernatremia caused by fluid and sodium losses (in which sodium losses are less than fluid losses) may require fluid replacement with IV infusions of solutions that are still hypotonic but contain slightly higher concentrations of sodium (e.g., 0.45% sodium chloride). Hypernatremia caused by poor kidney excretion of sodium requires drug therapy with diuretics that promote sodium loss, such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside ) or bumetanide (Bumex). Assess the patient hourly for symptoms of excessive losses of fluid, sodium, or potassium.

Nutrition therapy can prevent or correct mild hypernatremia by ensuring adequate water intake, especially among older adults or those who may not have self-access to water. Dietary sodium restriction may be needed to prevent sodium excess when kidney problems are present. In addition, fluids must often be restricted. Collaborate with the dietitian to teach the patient how to determine the sodium content of

foods, beverages, and drugs. Nursing actions for patient safety, skin protection, measurement of fluid intake and output, and patient and family teaching are similar to those for fluid overload on pp. 179-180.

POTASSIUM

Potassium (K^+) is the major cation of the intracellular fluid (ICF). The normal plasma potassium level ranges from 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L (mmol/L) (see Table 13-1). The normal ICF potassium level is about 140 mEq/L (mmol/L). Because of its high levels inside cells, potassium has some control over intracellular osmolarity and volume. Keeping this large difference in potassium concentration between the ICF and the extracellular fluid (ECF) is critical for excitable tissues to depolarize and generate action potentials. Other functions of potassium include regulating protein synthesis and regulating glucose use and storage.

Because potassium levels in the blood and interstitial fluid are so low, any change seriously affects physiologic activities. For example, a decrease in blood potassium of only 1 mEq/L (from 4 mEq/L to 3 mEq/L) is a 25% difference in total ECF potassium concentration. In contrast, a 1 mEq/L decrease in blood sodium level (from 130 mEq/L to 129 mEq/L) is, overall, a much smaller change (less than 1%) in total ECF sodium concentration.

Almost all foods contain potassium. It is highest in meat, fish, and many (but not all) vegetables and fruits. It is lowest in eggs, bread, and cereal grains. Typical potassium intake is about 2 to 20 g/day. Despite heavy potassium intake, the healthy adult keeps plasma potassium levels within the narrow range of normal values needed for physiologic function.

The main controller of ECF potassium level is the sodium-potassium pump within the membranes of all body cells. This pump moves extra sodium ions from the ICF and moves extra potassium ions from the ECF back into the cell. In this way, the serum potassium level remains low and the cellular potassium remains high. At the same time, this action also helps the serum sodium level remain high and the cellular sodium level remain low.

Potassium control also occurs through kidney function, because about 80% of potassium removed from the body occurs by the kidney. Kidney excretion of potassium is enhanced by aldosterone. No hormone has been identified that enhances kidney reabsorption of potassium.

HYPOKALEMIA

Pathophysiology

Because 98% of total body potassium (K^+) is inside cells, minor changes in extracellular potassium levels cause major changes in cell membrane excitability and in other cellular processes. **Hypokalemia** is a serum potassium level below 3.5 mEq/L (mmol/L). *It can be life threatening because every body system is affected.*

Low serum potassium levels increase the difference in the amount of potassium between the fluid inside the cells (ICF) and the fluid outside the cells (ECF). This increased difference reduces the excitability of cells. As a result, the cell membranes of all excitable tissues, such as nerve and muscle, are less responsive to normal stimuli.

TABLE 13-7 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPOKALEMIA

Actual Potassium Deficits

- Inappropriate or excessive use of drugs:
 - Diuretics
 - Digitalis
 - Corticosteroids
- Increased secretion of aldosterone
- Cushing's syndrome
- Diarrhea
- Vomiting
- Wound drainage (especially gastrointestinal)
- Prolonged nasogastric suction
- Heat-induced excessive diaphoresis
- Kidney disease impairing reabsorption of potassium
- Nothing by mouth

Relative Potassium Deficits

- Alkalosis
- Hyperinsulinism
- Hyperalimentation
- Total parenteral nutrition
- Water intoxication
- IV therapy with potassium-poor solutions

When the loss of ECF potassium is gradual, cells adjust and cellular potassium decreases in proportion to the ECF potassium level. The potassium difference between the two fluid spaces remains unchanged, and symptoms of hypokalemia may not appear until the potassium loss is extreme. Rapid reduction of serum potassium levels causes dramatic changes in function.

Hypokalemia may result either from an *actual* total body potassium loss or from the movement of potassium from the ECF to the ICF, causing a *relative* decrease in extracellular potassium level. Table 13-7 lists the common causes of hypokalemia.

Actual potassium depletion occurs when potassium loss is excessive or when potassium intake is not adequate to match normal potassium loss. Relative hypokalemia occurs when total body potassium levels are normal but the potassium distribution between fluid spaces is abnormal, or it is diluted by excess water.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Age is important because the kidneys' ability to concentrate urine decreases with aging, which increases potassium loss. Older adults are more likely to use drugs that lead to potassium loss.

Drugs, especially diuretics, corticosteroids, and beta-adrenergic agonists or antagonists, can increase potassium loss through the kidneys. Ask about prescription and over-the-counter drug use. A common cause of hypokalemia is the prolonged use and misuse of diuretics. In patients taking digoxin (Lanoxin, Novodigoxin ) , hypokalemia increases the sensitivity of the cardiac muscle to the drug and may result in digoxin toxicity, even when the digoxin level is within the therapeutic range. Ask whether the patient takes a

potassium supplement, such as potassium chloride (KCl), or eats foods that have high concentrations of potassium, such as bananas, citrus fruits or juices, raisins, and meat. The patient may not be taking the supplement as prescribed because of its unpleasant taste.

Disease can lead to potassium loss. Ask the patient about chronic disorders, as well as recent illnesses and medical or surgical interventions. A thorough nutrition history, including a typical day's food and beverage intake, helps identify patients at risk for hypokalemia.

Respiratory changes are likely because of weakness of the muscles needed for breathing. Skeletal muscle weakness results in shallow respirations. *Thus respiratory status should be assessed first in any patient who might have hypokalemia.* Assess the patient's breath sounds, ease of respiratory effort, color of nail beds and mucous membranes, and rate and depth of respiration. Assess respiratory status at least every 2 hours because respiratory insufficiency is a major cause of death.

Musculoskeletal changes include skeletal muscle weakness in response to hypokalemia. A stronger stimulus is needed to begin muscle contraction. A patient may be so weak that he or she cannot stand. Hand grasps are weak, and a decreased response to deep tendon reflex stimulation (**hyporeflexia**) may be seen. Severe hypokalemia causes flaccid paralysis. Assess for muscle weakness, and determine the patient's ability to perform ADLs.

Cardiovascular changes are assessed by first palpating the peripheral pulses. In the patient with hypokalemia, the pulse is usually thready and weak. Palpation is difficult, and the pulse is easily blocked with light pressure. The pulse rate can range from very slow to very rapid, and an irregular heartbeat (dysrhythmia) may be present. Measure blood pressure with the patient in the lying, sitting, and standing positions, because orthostatic (postural) hypotension occurs with hypokalemia.

Neurologic changes from hypokalemia include altered mental status. The patient may have short-term irritability and anxiety followed by lethargy that progresses to acute confusion and coma as hypokalemia worsens.

Behavioral changes caused by hypokalemia can occur quickly. If needed, obtain information about the patient's behavior from close family members or friends if the patient is confused. The patient may be lethargic and unable to perform simple problem-solving tasks such as counting by threes. As hypokalemia progresses, the patient may become more confused, especially to time and place. In severe hypokalemia, coma may develop.

Intestinal changes occur with hypokalemia because smooth muscle contractions in the intestinal tract are decreased, which leads to decreased peristalsis. The patient has hypoactive bowel sounds and may have nausea, vomiting, constipation, and abdominal distention. Assess distention by measuring abdominal girth. Auscultate for bowel sounds in all four abdominal quadrants to assess the extent of decreased peristalsis. *Severe hypokalemia can cause the absence of peristalsis (paralytic ileus).*

Laboratory data confirm hypokalemia (serum potassium value below 3.5 mEq/L [mmol/L]). Hypokalemia causes ECG changes in the heart, including ST-segment depression, flat or inverted T waves, and increased U waves. *Dysrhythmias can lead to death, particularly in older adults who are taking digoxin.*

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

The patient is a 75-year-old woman who is admitted to the hospital with a diagnosis of possible paralytic ileus. She has no bowel sounds, and her abdomen is distended. She says her last bowel movement was 1 week ago. Her other health problems include mild congestive heart failure and hypertension. Her daily medications include:

Digoxin (Lanoxin) 0.125 mg orally

Furosemide (Lasix) 80 mg orally

Potassium (Klor-KonM20) 20 mEq (1 tablet) orally twice daily

When you ask her about her medications, she tells you that she takes her digoxin daily at 8 AM, as prescribed, but that she sometimes takes twice as much Lasix as prescribed and no longer takes the potassium because it bothers her stomach. She says, "I don't need the potassium because I always eat apples or grapefruit every day." Her vital signs are:

T = 98° F; P = 110, thready, slightly irregular; R = 30, shallow;
BP = 90/60; SPO₂ = 95%

1. What other assessment data should you obtain?
2. How can her drug therapy influence her intestinal tract?
3. Is this patient's dietary intake of potassium sufficient for potassium replacement? Why or why not?
4. Is she at risk for any other fluid or electrolyte imbalances? If so, which ones and why?
5. Should oxygen be applied? Why or why not?
6. Should she be monitored by ECG? Why or why not?
7. What are the priority safety concerns for this patient?

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for hypokalemia aim to prevent potassium loss, increase serum potassium levels, and ensure patient safety. Drug and nutrition therapies help restore normal serum potassium levels. *The priorities for nursing care of the patient with hypokalemia are (1) ensuring adequate oxygenation, patient safety for falls prevention, and prevention of injury from potassium administration and (2) monitoring the patient's response to therapy.* Chart 13-7 highlights best practice activities when caring for a patient with hypokalemia.

Drug therapy for the treatment and prevention of hypokalemia includes additional potassium and drugs to prevent potassium loss. Most potassium supplements are potassium chloride, potassium gluconate, or potassium citrate. The amount and the route of potassium replacement depend on the degree of loss.

Potassium is given IV for severe hypokalemia. The drug is available in different concentrations, and this drug carries a high alert warning as a concentrated electrolyte solution. The Joint Commission has mandated that concentrated potassium be diluted and added to IV solutions only in the pharmacy by a registered pharmacist and that vials of concentrated potassium not be available in patient care areas. *Before infusing any IV solution containing potassium chloride (KCl), check and re-check the dilution of the drug in the IV solution container.*

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

A dilution no greater than 1 mEq of potassium to 10 mL of solution is recommended for IV administration. The maximum recommended infusion rate is 5 to 10 mEq/hr; this rate is never to exceed 20 mEq/hr under any circumstances. Older patients may not be able to handle this rate. In accordance with the National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), potassium is not given by IV push to avoid causing cardiac arrest.

CHART 13-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient with Hypokalemia

- Question the continued use of drugs that increase excretion of potassium (e.g., thiazide and loop diuretics).
- Administer prescribed oral potassium supplement, well diluted and with a meal or just after a meal or snack to prevent nausea and vomiting.
- Prevent accidental overdose of IV potassium by checking and re-checking the concentration of potassium in the IV solution, ensuring that the maximum concentration is no greater than 1 mEq/10 mL of solution.
- Establish an IV access in a large vein with a high volume of flow, avoiding the hand.
- Assess the IV access for placement and an adequate blood return *before* administering potassium-containing solutions.
- Use a controller for solution delivery, maintaining an infusion rate not faster than 5 to 10 mEq of potassium per hour.
- Assess the IV site hourly.
- Stop the infusion immediately if the patient reports pain or burning or if any manifestation of infiltration occurs.
- If possible, monitor electrocardiography (ECG) continuously.
- Monitor patient responses every 1 to 2 hours to determine therapy effectiveness and the potential for hyperkalemia.
 - Indications of therapy effectiveness:
 - Respiratory rate is greater than 12 breaths per minute
 - Oxygen saturation is at least 95% (or has returned to the patient's normal baseline)
 - The patient can cough effectively
 - Hand grasp strength increases
 - Deep tendon reflexes are present
 - Bowel sounds are present and active
 - Pulse is easily palpated and regular
 - Systolic blood pressure when standing remains within 20 mm Hg of the systolic pressure obtained when the patient is sitting or lying down
 - ST segment returns to the isoelectric line
 - T waves increase in size and are positive
 - U waves decrease or disappear
 - Patient's cognition resembles his or her prehypokalemic state
 - Serum potassium level is between 3.5 and 5.0 mEq/L
 - Indications of hyperkalemia:
 - Heart rate is less than 60 beats per minute
 - P waves are absent
 - T waves are tall
 - PR intervals are prolonged
 - QRS complexes are wide
 - Deep tendon reflexes are hyperactive
 - Bowel sounds are hyperactive
 - Numbness or tingling is present in the hands and feet and around the mouth
 - The patient is anxious
 - Serum potassium level is above 5.0 mEq/L
- Keep patient on bedrest until hypokalemia resolves, or provide assistance when out of bed to prevent falls.

Potassium is a severe tissue irritant and is never given by IM or subcutaneous injection. Tissues damaged by potassium can become necrotic and slough, causing loss of function and requiring reconstructive surgery. IV potassium solutions irritate veins and can cause phlebitis. Check the prescription carefully to ensure that the patient receives the correct amount of potassium. Assess the IV site hourly, and ask the patient whether he or she feels burning or pain at the site.

Oral potassium preparations may be taken as liquids or solids. Potassium has a strong, unpleasant taste that is difficult to mask, although it can be mixed with many liquids.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

If infiltration of an IV solution containing potassium occurs, stop the IV solution immediately, remove the venous access, and notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team. Document these actions along with a complete description of the IV site.

Some preparations are already flavored. Because potassium chloride can cause nausea and vomiting, give the drug during or after a meal and advise patients using the drug at home not to take it on an empty stomach.

Diuretics that increase the kidney excretion of potassium can cause hypokalemia. These classes of diuretics include high-ceiling (loop) diuretics (e.g., furosemide [Lasix, Furoside ♣] and bumetanide [Bumex]) and the thiazide diuretics. Avoid these drugs in patients with hypokalemia. A potassium-sparing diuretic may be prescribed for patients with hypokalemia who need diuretic therapy. Potassium-sparing diuretics increase urine output without increasing potassium loss. Potassium-sparing diuretics include spironolactone (Aldactone, Novospiron ♣), triamterene (Dyrenium), and amiloride (Midamor).

Nutrition therapy involves coordination with a dietitian to teach the patient how to increase dietary potassium intake. Eating foods that are naturally rich in potassium helps prevent further loss, but supplementation is needed to restore normal potassium levels when hypokalemia is present.

Implement safety measures with a patient who has muscle weakness from hypokalemia, including the falls precautions listed in [Chart 13-4](#). Measures include eliminating hazards and assisting with ambulation. Instruct UAP to remove obstacles or slippery areas from the ambulation path, and make certain the patient wears nonslip footwear. Be sure to have the patient wear a gait belt when ambulating with assistance.

Respiratory monitoring is performed at least hourly for severe hypokalemia and includes rate and depth, especially checking for increasing rate and decreasing depth. Also check oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry to determine breathing effectiveness. Assess respiratory muscle effectiveness by checking the patient's ability to cough. Examine the face, oral mucosa, and nail beds for pallor or cyanosis. Evaluate arterial blood gas values (when available) for decreased blood oxygen

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE**Safety; Evidence-Based Practice**

The 75-year-old patient with hypokalemia described on p. 185 is receiving IV potassium replacement through a peripheral venous access in the left antecubital space. The IV contains 80 mEq of potassium chloride in 1000 mL of normal saline. It is infusing at a rate of 150 mL/hr using a controller. She reports pain and burning at the infusion site. When you check for a blood return, you find a blood return, but it is slow.

1. How should you manage this infusion? (Provide a rationale for your decision.)
2. How many mEq of potassium per hour is the patient receiving at this rate?
3. What clinical manifestations would indicate to you that she is responding well to this therapy?
4. What clinical manifestations would indicate to you that she is becoming hyperkalemic?
5. What dietary changes could this patient make to help ensure potassium balance?

TABLE 13-8 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPERKALEMIA**Actual Potassium Excesses**

- Overingestion of potassium-containing foods or medications:
 - Salt substitutes
 - Potassium chloride
 - Rapid infusion of potassium-containing IV solution
 - Bolus IV potassium injections
- Transfusions of whole blood or packed cells
- Adrenal insufficiency (Addison's disease, adrenalectomy)
- Kidney failure
- Potassium-sparing diuretics
- Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs)

Relative Potassium Excesses

- Tissue damage
- Acidosis
- Hyperuricemia
- Uncontrolled diabetes mellitus

levels (**hypoxemia**) and increased arterial carbon dioxide levels (**hypercapnia**), which indicate inadequate breathing effectiveness.

HYPERKALEMIA**Pathophysiology**

Hyperkalemia is a serum potassium level higher than 5.0 mEq/L (mmol/L). The normal range for serum potassium values is narrow, so even slight increases above normal values can affect excitable tissues, especially the heart.

A high serum potassium level decreases the potassium difference between the intracellular fluid (ICF) and the extracellular fluid (ECF). This decreased difference increases cell excitability; as a result, most excitable tissues respond to less intense stimuli and may even discharge spontaneously. The heart is very sensitive to serum potassium increases, and the most serious complications of hyperkalemia are heart block and ventricular fibrillation.

The problems that occur with hyperkalemia are related to how rapidly ECF potassium levels increase. Sudden rises in serum potassium cause severe problems at potassium levels between 6 and 7 mEq/L. When serum potassium rises slowly, problems may not occur until potassium levels reach 8 mEq/L or higher.

Hyperkalemia may result from an actual increase in total body potassium or from the movement of potassium from the cells into the blood. Hyperkalemia is rare in people with normal kidney function. Most cases of hyperkalemia occur in hospitalized patients and in those undergoing medical treatment. Those at greatest risk for hyperkalemia are chronically ill patients, debilitated patients, and older adults. [Table 13-8](#) lists common causes of hyperkalemia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Age is important because kidney function decreases with aging. Ask about chronic illnesses (particularly kidney disease and diabetes mellitus), recent medical or surgical treatment,

and urine output, including frequency and amount of voidings. Ask about drug use, particularly potassium-sparing diuretics and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors. Obtain a nutrition history to determine the intake of potassium-rich foods and the use of salt substitutes (which contain potassium).

Collect specific information about symptoms related to hyperkalemia. Ask whether the patient has had palpitations, skipped heartbeats, other cardiac irregularities, muscle twitching, weakness in the leg muscles, or unusual tingling or numbness in the hands, feet, or face. Ask about recent changes in bowel habits, especially diarrhea.

Cardiovascular changes are the most severe problems from hyperkalemia and are the most common cause of death in patients with hyperkalemia. Cardiac manifestations of hyperkalemia include bradycardia, hypotension, and ECG changes of tall, peaked T waves, prolonged PR intervals, flat or absent P waves, and wide QRS complexes. As serum potassium levels rise, heartbeats generated outside the normal conduction system in the ventricles (**ectopic beats**) may appear. Complete heart block, asystole, and ventricular fibrillation are life-threatening complications of severe hyperkalemia.

Neuromuscular changes with hyperkalemia have two phases. Skeletal muscles twitch in the early stages of hyperkalemia, and the patient may be aware of tingling and burning sensations followed by numbness in the hands and feet and around the mouth (**paresthesia**). As hyperkalemia worsens, muscle twitching changes to weakness followed by flaccid paralysis. The weakness moves up from the hands and feet and first affects the muscles of the arms and legs. Respiratory muscles are not affected until serum potassium levels reach lethal levels.

Intestinal changes include increased motility. The patient may have diarrhea and spastic colonic activity. Bowel sounds are hyperactive, with audible rushes and gurgles. Bowel movements are frequent and watery.

Laboratory data confirm hyperkalemia (potassium level over 5.0 mEq/L). If it is caused by dehydration, levels of other electrolytes, hematocrit, and hemoglobin also are elevated. Hyperkalemia caused by kidney failure occurs with elevated serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen, decreased blood pH, and normal or low hematocrit and hemoglobin levels.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for hyperkalemia focus on rapidly reducing the serum potassium level, preventing recurrences, and ensuring patient safety during the electrolyte imbalance. Drug therapy is the main medical intervention. *The priorities for nursing care of the patient with hyperkalemia are monitoring to prevent cardiac complications, patient safety for falls prevention, monitoring the patient's response to therapy, and health teaching.*

Drug therapy can restore normal potassium balance by enhancing potassium excretion and promoting the movement of potassium from the extracellular fluid (ECF) into the cells.

Eliminate extra potassium by stopping potassium-containing infusions. Keeping the IV access open is useful in managing hyperkalemia. Withhold oral potassium supplements, and provide a potassium-restricted diet.

Increasing potassium excretion helps reduce hyperkalemia if kidney function is normal. Potassium-excreting diuretics, such as furosemide, are prescribed. For a patient with kidney

problems, drug therapy to increase potassium excretion includes cation exchange resins that promote intestinal sodium absorption and potassium excretion, such as sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate). However, this therapy may take many hours to reduce potassium levels. If potassium levels are dangerously high, additional measures, such as dialysis, are needed.

Movement of potassium from the extracellular fluid (ECF) to the intracellular fluid (ICF) can help reduce serum potassium levels temporarily. Potassium movement into the cells is enhanced by insulin. Insulin increases the activity of the sodium-potassium pumps, which move potassium from the ECF into the cell. IV fluids containing glucose and insulin are prescribed to help decrease serum potassium levels (usually 100 mL of 10% to 20% glucose with 10 to 20 units of regular insulin). These IV solutions are hypertonic and are infused through a central line or in a vein with a high blood flow to avoid local vein inflammation. Observe the patient for manifestations of hypokalemia and hypoglycemia during this therapy.

Cardiac monitoring allows for the early recognition of dysrhythmias and other manifestations of hyperkalemia on cardiac muscle. Compare recent ECG tracings with the patient's baseline tracings or with tracings obtained when the patient's serum potassium level was close to normal.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team if the patient's heart rate falls below 60 beats per minute or if the T waves become spiked, both of which accompany hyperkalemia.

Health teaching is key to the prevention of hyperkalemia and the early detection of complications. The teaching plan for the patient at risk for hyperkalemia includes diet, drugs, and recognition of the manifestations of hyperkalemia. Collaborate with the dietitian to teach the patient and family about which foods to avoid (those high in potassium). Foods that contain little potassium and are allowed are listed in [Chart 13-8](#). Instruct the patient and family to read the labels on drug and food packages to determine the potassium content. Warn them to avoid salt substitutes, which contain potassium.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client receiving insulin and glucose infusion therapy for hyperkalemia now has a serum potassium level of 4.7 mEq/L. What is the nurse's best first action?

- A. Assess the client's respiratory status and then notify the Rapid Response Team.
- B. Stop the infusion and discontinue the IV access.
- C. Continue the infusion at the prescribed rate.
- D. Slow the infusion and notify the health care provider.

CALCIUM

Calcium (Ca^{2+}) is a mineral with functions closely related to those of phosphorus and magnesium. Calcium is an ion having two positive charges (**divalent cation**) that exists in

CHART 13-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Nutritional Management of Hyperkalemia

You Should Avoid

- Meats, especially organ meat and preserved meat
- Dairy products
- Dried fruit
- Fruits high in potassium:
 - Bananas
 - Cantaloupe
 - Kiwi
 - Oranges
- Vegetables high in potassium:
 - Avocados
 - Broccoli
 - Dried beans or peas
 - Lima beans
 - Mushrooms
 - Potatoes (white or sweet)
 - Seaweed
 - Soybeans
 - Spinach
- Cereals
- Sugar
- Fruits low in potassium (fresh, frozen, or canned):
 - Apples
 - Apricots
 - Berries
 - Cherries
 - Cranberries
 - Grapefruit
 - Peaches
 - Pineapple
- Vegetables low in potassium:
 - Alfalfa sprouts
 - Cabbage
 - Carrots
 - Cauliflower
 - Celery
 - Eggplant
 - Green beans
 - Lettuce
 - Onions
 - Peas
 - Peppers
 - Squash

You May Eat:

- Eggs
- Breads
- Butter

Data from Pennington, J. (2004). *Bowes and Church's food values of portions commonly used* (18th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.

the body in a bound form and an ionized (unbound or free) form.

Bound calcium is usually attached to serum proteins, especially albumin. Ionized calcium is present in the blood and other extracellular fluid (ECF) as free calcium. Free calcium is the active form and must be kept within a narrow range in the ECF. The body functions best when blood calcium levels are maintained between 9.0 and 10.5 mg/dL, or between 2.25 and 2.75 mmol/L (see Table 13-1). Calcium has a steep gradient between ECF and intracellular fluid (ICF) because the amount of calcium in the ICF is very low. This mineral is important for maintaining bone strength and density, activating enzymes, allowing skeletal and cardiac muscle contraction, controlling nerve impulse transmission, and allowing blood clotting.

Calcium enters the body by dietary intake and absorption through the intestinal tract. Dairy products are common foods high in calcium. Absorption of dietary calcium requires the active form of vitamin D. Calcium is stored in the bones. When both plasma calcium levels and stored calcium levels are adequate, intestinal absorption of dietary calcium is reduced and urine excretion of excess calcium increases. When more calcium is needed, parathyroid hormone (PTH) is released from the parathyroid glands. PTH increases serum calcium levels by:

- Releasing free calcium from bone storage sites (bone resorption of calcium)

- Stimulating vitamin D activation to help increase intestinal absorption of dietary calcium
- Inhibiting kidney calcium excretion
- Stimulating kidney calcium reabsorption

When excess calcium is present in plasma, PTH secretion is inhibited and the secretion of *thyrocalcitonin* (TCT), a hormone secreted by the thyroid gland, is increased. TCT causes the plasma calcium level to decrease by inhibiting bone resorption of calcium, inhibiting vitamin D–associated intestinal uptake of calcium, and increasing kidney excretion of calcium in the urine.

HYPOCALCEMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypocalcemia is a total serum calcium (Ca^{2+}) level below 9.0 mg/dL, or 2.25 mmol/L. Calcium is stored in bone, with only a small amount of total body calcium present in extracellular fluid (ECF). Because the normal blood level of calcium is so low, any change in calcium levels has major effects on function.

Calcium is an excitable membrane stabilizer, regulating depolarization and the generation of action potentials. It decreases sodium movement across excitable membranes, slowing the rate of depolarization. Low serum calcium levels increase sodium movement across excitable membranes, allowing depolarization to occur more easily and at inappropriate times.

Hypocalcemia is caused by many chronic and acute conditions, as well as medical or surgical treatments. Table 13-9 lists the common causes of hypocalcemia. Acute hypocalcemia results in the rapid onset of life-threatening manifestations, even when the serum calcium level is not very low. Chronic hypocalcemia occurs slowly over time, and excitable membrane manifestations may not be severe because the body has adjusted to the gradual reduction of serum calcium levels.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Lactose intolerance caused by a deficiency of the enzyme *lactase* occurs in 75% to 90% of all Asians, Blacks, and American Indians (McCance et al., 2010). Although this problem also does occur in Caucasians, the incidence is much higher in nonwhites. People with lactose intolerance cannot use the nutrients in milk and have cramping, diarrhea, and abdominal pain after ingesting dairy products. Dairy products, especially milk, are common and rich sources of both calcium and vitamin D. People with lactose intolerance may, therefore, have difficulty obtaining enough calcium and vitamin D from other sources to maintain normal calcium levels in the blood and bones.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Postmenopausal women are at risk for chronic calcium loss. This problem is related to reduced weight-bearing activities and a decrease in estrogen levels. In general, women have smaller frames than men and the female skeleton does not bear as much weight as the male skeleton. As they age, many women decrease weight-bearing activities such as running and walking, which allows osteoporosis to occur at a more rapid rate. Also, the estrogen secretion that protects against osteoporosis diminishes. (See Chapter 53 for a complete discussion of osteoporosis.)

TABLE 13-9 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPOCALCEMIA**Actual Calcium Deficits**

- Inadequate oral intake of calcium
- Lactose intolerance
- Malabsorption syndromes:
 - Celiac sprue
 - Crohn's disease
- Inadequate intake of vitamin D
- End-stage kidney disease
- Kidney failure—polyuric phase
- Diarrhea
- Steatorrhea
- Wound drainage (especially gastrointestinal)

Relative Calcium Deficits

- Hyperproteinemia
- Alkalosis
- Calcium chelators or binders
- Citrate
- Mithramycin
- Penicillamine
- Sodium cellulose phosphate (Calcibind)
- Aredia
- Acute pancreatitis
- Hyperphosphatemia
- Immobility
- Removal or destruction of parathyroid glands

Actual calcium loss (a reduction in total body calcium) occurs when the absorption of calcium from the GI tract slows or when calcium is lost from the body. Relative calcium loss causes total body calcium amounts to remain normal while serum calcium levels are low. This problem occurs when the unbound calcium in the body is reduced or when parathyroid gland function is decreased.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The nutrition history is important to assess for the risk for hypocalcemia. Ask the patient about his or her intake of dairy products and whether he or she takes a calcium supplement regularly.

One indicator of hypocalcemia is a report of frequent, painful muscle spasms (“charley horses”) in the calf or foot during rest or sleep. Other information that indicates possible hypocalcemia is a history of recent orthopedic surgery or bone healing. Endocrine disturbances and treatments are risk factors for hypocalcemia. A history of thyroid surgery, therapeutic irradiation of the upper middle chest and neck area, or a recent anterior neck injury increases the risk for hypocalcemia. Most manifestations of acute hypocalcemia are caused by overstimulation of the nerves and muscles.

Neuromuscular changes often occur first in the hands and feet. Paresthesias occur at first, with sensations of tingling and numbness. If hypocalcemia continues or worsens, actual muscle twitching or painful cramps and spasms occur. Tingling may also affect the lips, nose, and ears. These problems



FIG. 13-14 Palmar flexion indicating a positive Trousseau's sign in hypocalcemia.



FIG. 13-15 Facial muscle response indicating a positive Chvostek's sign in hypocalcemia.

may signal the onset of neuromuscular overstimulation and tetany.

Assess for hypocalcemia by testing for Trousseau's and Chvostek's signs. To test for Trousseau's sign, place a blood pressure cuff around the upper arm, inflate the cuff to greater than the patient's systolic pressure, and keep the cuff inflated for 1 to 4 minutes. Under these hypoxic conditions, a positive Trousseau's sign occurs when the hand and fingers go into spasm in palmar flexion (Fig. 13-14). To test for Chvostek's sign, tap the face just below and in front of the ear (over the facial nerve) to trigger facial twitching of one side of the mouth, nose, and cheek (Fig. 13-15).

Cardiovascular changes involve heart rate and ECG changes. The heart rate may be slower or slightly faster than normal, with a weak, thready pulse. Severe hypocalcemia causes severe hypotension and ECG changes of a prolonged ST interval and a prolonged QT interval.

Intestinal changes include increased peristaltic activity. Auscultate the abdomen for hyperactive bowel sounds. The patient may report painful abdominal cramping and diarrhea.

Skeletal changes are most common with chronic hypocalcemia. Calcium is moved from bone storage sites, causing a loss of bone density (osteoporosis). The bones are less dense, more brittle, and fragile. These bones break easily with even slight trauma. Vertebrae become more compact and may bend forward, leading to an overall loss of height. See [Chapter 53](#) for more discussion about osteoporosis.

Ask about changes in height and any unexplained bone pain. Observe for spinal curvatures and any unusual bumps or protrusions in bones that may indicate old fractures.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions focus on restoring normal calcium levels and preventing complications. These include drug therapy, nutrition therapy, reducing environmental stimuli, and preventing injury. Patient safety during restoration of serum calcium levels is a priority of nursing care.

Drug therapy for hypocalcemia includes direct calcium replacement (oral and IV) and drugs that enhance the absorption of calcium, such as aluminum hydroxide and vitamin D. When neuromuscular manifestations are troublesome, drugs that decrease nerve and muscle responses also may be used. These drugs may include magnesium sulfate and various muscle relaxants.

Nutrition therapy involves a high-calcium diet for patients with mild hypocalcemia and for those with chronic conditions that cause them to be at continuous risk for hypocalcemia. Coordinate with the dietitian to assist the patient in selecting calcium-rich foods.

Environmental management for safety is needed because the excitable membranes of the nervous system and the skeletal system are overstimulated in hypocalcemia. Interventions to reduce stimulation include keeping the room quiet, limiting visitors, adjusting the lighting, and using a soft but reassuring voice.

Use seizure precautions for the patient with hypocalcemia. Such precautions include either keeping the bed in the lowest possible position and the siderails of the bed in the “up” position. Alternately, a mattress can be placed on the floor on the side of the bed with the siderail down. Keep emergency equipment (e.g., oxygen, suction) at the bedside. Keep an emergency cart equipped with emergency drugs and an endotracheal tray just outside the patient’s room. If the patient does not have an IV access, one should be started.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The nurse takes the blood pressure of a client who is being treated for hypocalcemia. When the cuff is tightest, the client’s hand develops palmar flexion. After the cuff is deflated, the hand remains in palmar flexion. What is the nurse’s best first action?

- Apply oxygen.
- Alert the Rapid Response Team.
- Slow the calcium-containing IV solution.
- Turn the client onto the side opposite the hand with the flexion.

TABLE 13-10 COMMON CAUSES OF HYPERCALCEMIA

Actual Calcium Excesses

- Excessive oral intake of calcium
- Excessive oral intake of vitamin D
- Kidney failure
- Use of thiazide diuretics

Relative Calcium Excesses

- Hyperparathyroidism
- Malignancy:
 - Direct invasion (cancers of breast, lung, prostate, and osteoclastic bone and multiple myeloma)
 - Indirect resorption (liver cancer, small cell lung cancer, and cancer of the adrenal gland)
- Hyperthyroidism
- Immobility
- Use of glucocorticoids
- Dehydration

Injury prevention strategies are needed because the patient with long-standing calcium loss may have brittle, fragile bones that fracture easily and cause little pain. When lifting or moving a patient with fragile bones, use a lift sheet rather than pulling the patient. Observe for normal range of joint motion and for any unusual surface bumps or depressions over bony areas.

HYPERCALCEMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypercalcemia is a total serum calcium level above 10.5 mg/dL, or 2.75 mmol/L. Because the normal range for serum calcium is so narrow, even small increases have severe effects. Although the effects of hypercalcemia occur first in excitable tissues, all systems are affected.

Hypercalcemia means either that the amount of serum calcium is so great that the normal calcium-controlling mechanisms cannot keep pace or that at least one control mechanism is not functioning properly ([Table 13-10](#)). Hypercalcemia causes excitable tissues to be less sensitive to normal stimuli, thus requiring a stronger stimulus to function. The excitable tissues affected most by hypercalcemia are the heart, skeletal muscles, nerves, and intestinal smooth muscles.

Calcium is needed by many of the enzymes involved in blood clotting. Hypercalcemia causes faster clotting times. Clots may form when they are not needed to control bleeding. Excessive clotting from hypercalcemia occurs more easily in vessels with slow blood flow.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The manifestations of hypercalcemia are related to its severity and how quickly the imbalance occurred. The patient with a mild but rapidly occurring calcium excess usually has more severe problems than the patient whose imbalance is severe but has developed slowly.

Cardiovascular changes are the most serious and life-threatening problems of hypercalcemia. Mild hypercalcemia at first causes increased heart rate and blood pressure. Severe or prolonged calcium imbalance depresses electrical conduction, slowing heart rate.

Measure pulse rate and blood pressure, and observe for indications of poor tissue blood flow, such as cyanosis and pallor. Examine ECG tracings for dysrhythmias, especially a shortened QT interval.

Hypercalcemia allows blood clots to form more easily whenever blood flow is poor. Blood clotting is more likely in the lower legs, the pelvic region, areas where blood flow is blocked by internal or external constrictions, and areas where venous obstruction occurs.

Assess for slowed or impaired blood flow. Measure and record calf circumferences with a soft tape measure. Assess the feet for temperature, color, and capillary refill to determine the blood flow to and from the area.

Neuromuscular changes include severe muscle weakness and decreased deep tendon reflexes without paresthesia. The patient may have an altered level of consciousness that can range from confusion and lethargy to coma. Psychiatric problems also can occur.

Intestinal changes are first reflected as decreased peristalsis. Constipation, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain are common. Bowel sounds are hypoactive or absent. The abdomen increases in size because the intestinal contents remain in the tract instead of being moved forward. Assess abdominal size by measuring abdominal girth with a soft tape measure in a line circling the abdomen at the umbilicus.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for hypercalcemia aim to reduce serum calcium levels through drug therapy and dialysis. Rehydration and cardiac monitoring are also important.

Drug therapy involves preventing increases in calcium, as well as drugs to lower calcium levels. IV solutions containing calcium (e.g., Ringer's lactate) are stopped. Oral drugs containing calcium or vitamin D (e.g., calcium-based antacids) are discontinued.

Fluid volume replacement can help restore normal serum calcium levels. IV normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride) is usually given because sodium increases kidney excretion of calcium.

Thiazide diuretics are discontinued and are replaced with diuretics that enhance the excretion of calcium, such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside 🍁). Calcium chelators (calcium binders) help lower serum calcium levels. Such drugs include plicamycin (Mithracin) and penicillamine (Cuprimine, Pendramine 🍁).

Drugs to prevent hypercalcemia include agents that inhibit calcium resorption from bone, such as phosphorus, calcitonin (Calcimar), bisphosphonates (etidronate), and prostaglandin synthesis inhibitors (aspirin, NSAIDs).

Dialysis is used when severe hypercalcemia causes life-threatening cardiac problems and drug therapy may not reduce serum calcium levels fast enough to prevent death. Methods of dialysis for rapid calcium reduction are usually hemodialysis or blood ultrafiltration.

Cardiac monitoring of patients with hypercalcemia is needed to identify dysrhythmias and decreased cardiac

output. Compare recent ECG tracings with the patient's baseline tracings. Especially look for changes in the T waves and the QT interval and changes in rate and rhythm.

PHOSPHORUS

Phosphorus (P) is in the body in both inorganic and organic forms. Normal serum levels of phosphorus range from 3.0 to 4.5 mg/dL, or 0.97 to 1.45 mmol/L (see Table 13-1). Most phosphorus (80%) can be found in the bones. It is the major anion in the ICF, and its levels inside cells are much higher than in the ECF. Phosphorus is needed for activating vitamins and enzymes, forming adenosine triphosphate (ATP) for energy supplies, and assisting in cell growth and metabolism. It also functions in acid-base balance and calcium homeostasis.

The average North American diet is high in phosphorus (1 to 2 g/day). Food sources of phosphorus include meats, fish, dairy products, and nuts.

Phosphorus balance and calcium balance are intertwined. Plasma levels of calcium and phosphorus exist in a balanced, reciprocal relationship, which means that when you multiply the two values, the product remains constant. Therefore a change in the amount of plasma phosphorus results in an equal and opposite change in the amount of plasma calcium (and vice versa).

The regulation of ECF phosphorus occurs through the activity of parathyroid hormone (PTH). Increased PTH levels cause a net loss of phosphorus. Reduced PTH levels enhance kidney reabsorption of phosphorus, resulting in increased plasma levels of phosphorus.

HYPOPHOSPHATEMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypophosphatemia is a serum phosphorus level below 3.0 mg/dL. Even though the serum level has a narrow range of normal (3.0 to 4.5 mg/dL), body functions are not usually impaired with rapid, wide changes in serum phosphorus levels. Reduced function occurs more often with chronic hypophosphatemia.

Most of the effects of hypophosphatemia are related to decreased energy metabolism and imbalances of other electrolytes and body fluids. Because of the relationship between phosphorus and calcium, *decreases* in serum phosphorus levels cause *increases* in serum calcium levels.

Three main processes lead to decreased serum phosphorus levels: decreased absorption of phosphorus, increased excretion of phosphorus, and intracellular phosphorus shift (Table 13-11).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Manifestations occur when low serum phosphorus levels are severe or prolonged. They are related to the decreased amounts of high-energy compounds (e.g., adenosine triphosphate [ATP]) needed for normal metabolism. Manifestations are most apparent in the cardiac, musculoskeletal, hematologic, and central nervous systems.

TABLE 13-11 COMMON CAUSES OF PHOSPHORUS IMBALANCE**Hypophosphatemia**

- Malnutrition
- Starvation
- Use of aluminum hydroxide-based antacids
- Use of magnesium-based antacids
- Hyperparathyroidism
- Hypercalcemia
- Kidney failure
- Malignancy
- Hyperglycemia
- Hyperalimentation
- Respiratory alkalosis
- Uncontrolled diabetes mellitus
- Alcohol abuse

Hyperphosphatemia

- Decreased kidney excretion resulting from kidney disease
- Tumor lysis syndrome
- Increased intake of phosphorus
- Hypoparathyroidism

Cardiac changes include decreased stroke volume and decreased cardiac output. Peripheral pulses are slow, difficult to find, and easy to block. Cardiac depression is caused by low stores of intracellular energy. Without sufficient energy in myocardial cells, contractions are weak and ineffective. Prolonged hypophosphatemia causes progressive but reversible cardiac muscle damage.

Musculoskeletal changes include weak skeletal muscles that may progress to acute muscle breakdown (**rhabdomyolysis**). The weakness is generalized, and paresthesias usually are not present. When muscle weakness becomes profound, respiratory movements are ineffective, leading to respiratory failure. Assess for muscle strength, and observe respiratory effort.

The manifestations of *chronic* hypophosphatemia are most evident in the skeletal system. Bone density is decreased, which leads to fractures and changes in bone shape. These changes are caused by the bone calcium loss that occurs with hypophosphatemia. Assess the patient for unusual lumps or depressions over bony areas that indicate bone fractures.

Central nervous system changes are not apparent until hypophosphatemia is severe. These first appear as irritability and may progress to seizure activity followed by coma.

INTERVENTIONS

Drugs that promote phosphorus loss (e.g., antacids, osmotic diuretics, calcium supplements) are discontinued. Oral replacement of phosphorus along with a vitamin D supplement may correct moderate hypophosphatemia. IV phosphorus is given only when serum phosphorus levels fall below 1 mg/dL and the patient has serious manifestations. Infuse IV phosphorus slowly because the problems caused by hyperphosphatemia are equally serious.

Nutrition therapy involves increasing the intake of phosphorus-rich foods while decreasing the intake of calcium-rich foods (**Chart 13-9**). Collaborate with the dietitian to teach the patient and family which foods to eat and which to avoid.

CHART 13-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT**Nutritional Management of Hypophosphatemia**

YOU SHOULD AVOID	YOU MAY EAT
• Milk • Cheese • Yogurt • Collard greens • Rhubarb	• Fish • Beef • Chicken • Pork • Organ meats • Nuts • Whole-grain breads and cereals

HYPERPHOSPHATEMIA

Hyperphosphatemia is a serum phosphorus level above 4.5 mg/dL. High levels are well tolerated by most body systems.

The problems caused by hyperphosphatemia center on the hypocalcemia that results when serum phosphorus levels increase. These problems include increased membrane excitability (see pp. 188-190).

Causes of increased serum phosphorus levels include kidney disease, certain cancer treatments, increased phosphorus intake, and hypoparathyroidism. **Table 13-11** lists common causes of hyperphosphatemia.

Hyperphosphatemia causes few direct problems with body function. However, hypocalcemia is usually present because calcium and phosphorus exist in the blood in a balanced reciprocal relationship: when one increases, the other decreases. The hypocalcemia greatly alters many body system functions and can cause life-threatening side effects. Thus the management of hyperphosphatemia entails the management of hypocalcemia (see p. 190).

MAGNESIUM

Magnesium (Mg^{2+}) is a mineral that forms a cation when dissolved in water. Adults have an average total body level of 25 g of magnesium, most of which (60%) is stored in bones and cartilage. Little magnesium is present in the extracellular fluid (ECF). Plasma levels of free magnesium range from 1.3 to 2.1 mEq/L, or 0.65 to 1.05 mmol/L (see **Table 13-1**). Much more magnesium is present in the intracellular fluid (ICF), and it has more functions inside the cells than in the blood. Magnesium is critical for skeletal muscle contraction, carbohydrate metabolism, adenosine triphosphate (ATP) formation, vitamin activation, and cell growth. Extracellular magnesium regulates blood coagulation and skeletal muscle contractility.

The daily magnesium requirement for adults is about 300 mg. Magnesium is present in low levels in most foods.

Magnesium regulation occurs through the kidney and the intestinal tract although the exact mechanisms are not known. When blood magnesium levels are low, ingested magnesium is rapidly absorbed and kidney excretion of magnesium stops. When blood magnesium levels are high, little magnesium is absorbed from food and kidney magnesium excretion increases.

TABLE 13-12 COMMON CAUSES OF MAGNESIUM IMBALANCE**Hypomagnesemia**

- Malnutrition
- Starvation
- Diarrhea
- Steatorrhea
- Celiac disease
- Crohn's disease
- Drugs (diuretics, aminoglycoside antibiotics, cisplatin, amphotericin B, cyclosporine)
- Citrate (blood products)
- Ethanol ingestion

Hypermagnesemia

- Increased magnesium intake:
 - Magnesium-containing antacids and laxatives
 - IV magnesium replacement
- Decreased kidney excretion of magnesium resulting from kidney disease

HYPOMAGNESEMIA**Pathophysiology**

Hypomagnesemia is a serum magnesium (Mg^{2+}) level below 1.3 mEq/L. Most problems leading to hypomagnesemia are caused by decreased magnesium intake or increased magnesium loss. As a result, hypomagnesemia reflects a decrease in the total body magnesium content.

The effects of hypomagnesemia are caused by increased membrane excitability and the accompanying serum calcium and potassium imbalances. Excitable membranes, especially nerve cell membranes, may depolarize spontaneously.

Hypomagnesemia is caused by decreased absorption of dietary magnesium or increased kidney magnesium excretion. Table 13-12 lists the specific causes of hypomagnesemia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Common clinical manifestations of hypomagnesemia are seen in the neuromuscular, central nervous, and intestinal systems.

Neuromuscular changes are caused by increased nerve impulse transmission. Normally, magnesium inhibits nerve impulse transmission at synapse areas. Decreased levels increase impulse transmission from nerve to nerve or from nerve to skeletal muscle. The patient has hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, numbness and tingling, and painful muscle contractions. Positive Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs may be present because hypomagnesemia may occur with hypocalcemia (see the earlier discussion of these assessment signs of neuromuscular changes on pp. 189-190 in the *Hypocalcemia* section). Skeletal muscle weakness occurs when intracellular magnesium levels are also decreased. The patient may have tetany and seizures as hypomagnesemia worsens.

Central nervous system (CNS) changes are caused by increased nerve impulse transmission. These changes may present as psychological depression, psychosis, and confusion.

Intestinal changes are from decreased intestinal smooth muscle contraction. Reduced motility, anorexia, nausea, constipation, and abdominal distention are common. A paralytic ileus may occur when hypomagnesemia is severe.

Interventions for hypomagnesemia aim to correct the imbalance and manage the specific problem that caused it. In addition, because hypocalcemia often occurs with hypomagnesemia, interventions also aim to restore normal serum calcium levels.

Drugs that promote magnesium loss, such as high-ceiling (loop) diuretics, osmotic diuretics, aminoglycoside antibiotics, and drugs containing phosphorus, are discontinued. Magnesium is replaced intravenously with magnesium sulfate (MgSO_4) when hypomagnesemia is severe. *The IV route is used because MgSO_4 causes pain and tissue damage when injected IM.* Assess deep tendon reflexes at least hourly in the patient receiving IV magnesium to monitor effectiveness and prevent hypermagnesemia. Oral magnesium often causes diarrhea and can increase magnesium loss. If hypocalcemia is also present, drug therapy to increase serum calcium levels is prescribed.

HYPERMAGNESEMIA**Pathophysiology**

Hypermagnesemia is a serum magnesium level above 2.1 mEq/L. Magnesium is a membrane stabilizer. When magnesium excess occurs, excitable membranes are less excitable and need a stronger-than-normal stimulus to respond. With severe hypermagnesemia, excitable membranes may not respond to any stimulus.

The imbalance results from increased intake of magnesium coupled with decreased kidney excretion of magnesium. Table 13-12 lists the specific causes of hypermagnesemia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Most manifestations of hypermagnesemia occur as a result of reduced membrane excitability. They usually are not apparent until serum magnesium levels exceed 4 mEq/L. The most common problems are seen in the cardiac, central nervous, and neuromuscular systems.

Cardiac changes include bradycardia, peripheral vasodilation, and hypotension. These problems become more severe as serum magnesium levels increase. ECG changes show a prolonged PR interval with a widened QRS complex. Bradycardia can be severe, and cardiac arrest is possible. Hypotension is also severe, with a diastolic pressure lower than normal. *Patients with severe hypermagnesemia are in grave danger of cardiac arrest.*

Central nervous system changes result from depressed nerve impulse transmission. Patients may be drowsy or lethargic. Coma may occur if the imbalance is prolonged or severe.

Neuromuscular changes result from decreased nerve impulse transmission to the skeletal muscles. Deep tendon reflexes are reduced or even absent. Voluntary skeletal muscle contractions become progressively weaker and finally stop.

Hypermagnesemia has no direct effect on the lungs; however, when the respiratory muscles are weak, respiratory insufficiency can lead to respiratory failure and death.

Interventions for hypermagnesemia aim to reduce the serum level and correct the underlying problem that caused the imbalance.

All oral and parenteral magnesium is discontinued. When kidney failure is not present, giving magnesium-free IV fluids can reduce serum magnesium levels. High-ceiling (loop) diuretics such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside ) can further reduce serum magnesium levels. When cardiac problems are severe, giving calcium may reverse the cardiac effects of hypermagnesemia.

CHLORIDE

Chloride (Cl^-) is the major anion of the extracellular fluid (ECF) and works with sodium to maintain ECF osmotic pressure. Chloride is important in the formation of hydrochloric acid in the stomach. The normal plasma concentration of chloride ranges from 98 to 106 mEq/L (mmol/L) (see Table 13-1).

Only a small amount of chloride is present inside the cells because negative charges on the cell membrane repel chloride and prevent it from crossing the membrane. However, extracellular chloride can enter cells when exchanged for another anion that is leaving the cell. This situation, called a *chloride shift*, decreases plasma chloride without a net body loss of chloride. Bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) is the anion most commonly exchanged for chloride.

Chloride enters the body through dietary intake. Because chloride (along with sodium, potassium, and many other minerals) is a part of a salt, most diets contain enough chloride to meet the normal needs of the body.

Imbalances of chloride usually occur as a result of other electrolyte imbalances. An exception is chloride loss from excessive vomiting or prolonged gastric suction. Imbalances of chloride are usually corrected by interventions for correcting other electrolyte or acid-base problems.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assess any patient with a fluid or electrolyte imbalance for falls risk.
- Ensure access to adequate fluids for patients who cannot talk or who have limited mobility.
- Use a pump or controller to deliver IV fluids to patients with fluid overload.
- Do not give IV potassium at a rate greater than 20 mEq/hr.
- Never give potassium supplements by the IM, subcutaneous, or IV push routes.
- Use a pump or controller when giving IV potassium-containing solutions.
- Use a gait belt when assisting a patient with muscle weakness to walk or transfer.
- Collaborate with the dietitian to teach patients about diets that are restricted in potassium, sodium, or calcium.
- Use a lift sheet to move or reposition a patient with chronic hypocalcemia.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all patients to maintain an adequate fluid intake (minimum of 3 L per day) unless another condition requires fluid restriction.
- Teach all people to increase fluid intake when exercising, when in hot or dry environments, or during conditions that increase metabolism (e.g., fever).
- Instruct patients at risk for fluid imbalance to weigh themselves on the same scale daily, close to the same time each

day, and with about the same amount of clothing on each time and to monitor these daily weights for changes or trends.

- Instruct patients who exercise heavily (athletes) to take scheduled fluid replacement breaks.
- Instruct caregivers of older adults who have cognitive impairments or mobility problems to schedule offerings of fluids at regular intervals throughout the day.
- Teach patients how to determine electrolyte content of processed foods by reading labels.
- Teach patients who are prescribed to take diuretics to take the drugs as prescribed.
- Teach patients who are taking digoxin to measure their pulse for rate, rhythm, and quality.
- Teach patients who are taking diuretics to measure their pulse for rate, rhythm, and quality.
- Include the person who prepares the patient's meals when teaching about dietary electrolyte restrictions.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explain the purpose of fluid restriction to the patient and the family to ensure cooperation and prevent any misunderstandings.
- Assess patients who have a sudden change in cognition for fluid and electrolyte imbalances.
- Determine the patient's food preferences and dislikes when planning an electrolyte-restricted diet.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess skin turgor on the forehead or the sternum of older patients.
- Use daily weights to determine fluid gains or losses.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Ask patients about the use of drugs such as diuretics, laxatives, salt substitutes, and antihypertensives that may alter fluid and electrolyte status.
- Correctly interpret laboratory electrolyte values.
- Do not give oral fluids to an unconscious patient.
- Monitor the cardiac and pulmonary status at least every hour when patients with dehydration are receiving IV fluid replacement therapy.
- Offer or ensure that oral care is performed at least every 4 hours for patients with dehydration.
- Assess the IV site hourly of a person receiving IV solutions containing potassium, and document its condition.
- Immediately stop the infusion of potassium-containing solutions if infiltration is suspected.
- Avoid administering magnesium sulfate by the IM route.
- Assess all patients with hyperkalemia for cardiac dysrhythmias and ECG abnormalities, especially tall T waves, conduction delays, and heart block.
- Assess the respiratory status of all patients with hypokalemia.
- Assess the bowel sounds; heart rate, rhythm, and quality; and muscle strength to evaluate the patient's responses to therapy for an electrolyte imbalance.

Assessment and Care of Patients with Acid-Base Imbalances

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Identify patients at risk for falls as a result of acid-base imbalances, especially older adults.

Physiological Integrity

2. Describe the relationship between free hydrogen ion level and pH.
3. Explain the concept of compensation.

4. Compare the roles of the respiratory system and the kidneys in maintaining acid-base balance.
5. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the presence of acid-base imbalances.
6. Interpret arterial blood gases to determine whether acidosis is respiratory or metabolic in origin.
7. Prioritize nursing care for the patient with an acid-base imbalance.

Acid-base balance is the result of processes that carefully regulate hydrogen ion (H^+) production and elimination. Body fluid **pH** is a measure of the body fluid's free hydrogen ion level. *This value has the narrowest range of normal and the tightest control mechanisms of all the electrolytes.* The level of free hydrogen ions, formed from acids, must be rigidly controlled for proper function. Even small changes in the free hydrogen ion level, or pH, of body fluids can cause major problems in function. Keeping the pH within the normal range involves balancing acids and bases in body fluids. Normal pH ranges from 7.35 to 7.45 for arterial blood and from 7.31 to 7.41 for venous blood.

The normal free hydrogen ion level of blood and other body fluids is quite low (less than 0.0001 mEq/L) compared with the levels of other electrolytes (see [Chapter 13](#)). Because it is so low, it is not measured directly but, instead, is a calculated value. The pH value is calculated as the negative logarithm of the concentration in milliequivalents per liter. Because it is calculated in negative logarithm units, the value of pH is *inversely* related (negatively related) to the level of free hydrogen ions. In other words, the *lower* the pH value of a fluid, the *higher* the level of free hydrogen ions in that fluid. The pH of a solution may range from 1 (as acidic as possible)

to 14 (as alkaline as possible), with 7 being neutral. *A change of 1 pH unit actually represents a tenfold change in free hydrogen ion level.* Therefore any pH unit change (e.g., a change from 7.4 to 7.3) represents a very large increase in the free hydrogen ion level.

Keeping the pH of the blood within the normal range is important because changes from normal interfere with many functions. These include:

- Changing the shape and reducing the function of hormones and enzymes
- Changing the distribution of other electrolytes, causing fluid and electrolyte imbalances
- Changing excitable membranes, making the heart, nerves, muscles, and GI tract either less or more active than normal
- Decreasing the effectiveness of many drugs

Fortunately, the body has many mechanisms to ensure minimal changes in free hydrogen ion level.

ACID-BASE BALANCE

As discussed in [Chapter 13](#), body fluids are electrically neutral even though they contain ions with overall positive charges

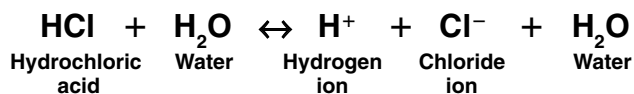


FIG. 14-1 Release of hydrogen ions by a strong acid (hydrochloric acid) in which the strong acid completely dissociates in water.

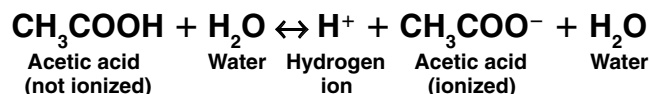
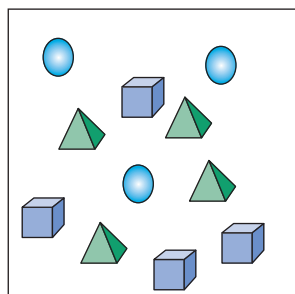
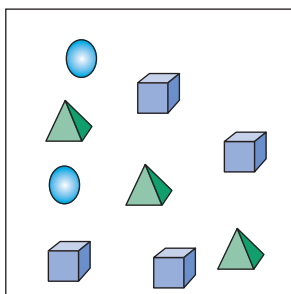


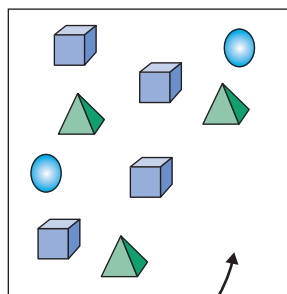
FIG. 14-2 Release of hydrogen ions by a weak acid (acetic acid) in which the weak acid only partially dissociates in water and most of its hydrogen ions remain bound.



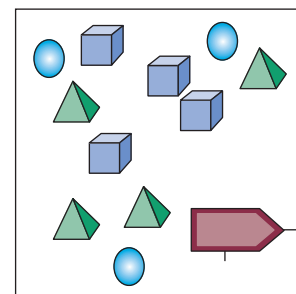
Fluid pH 7.38 (normal). The number and strength of acid components are equal to the number and strength of base components. Hydrogen ion concentration is limited and constant.



Fluid pH 7.51 (alkaline). The number and strength of base components are greater than the number and strength of acid components. Hydrogen ion concentration is below normal.



Buffer is added to the alkaline fluid.



The buffer acts as an acid, releasing a hydrogen ion.

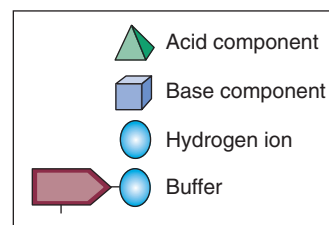


FIG. 14-3 Action of buffer in solution.

and ions with overall negative charges. When fluids contain an equal number of positive and negative charges, the electrical charge of the fluid is balanced and remains neutral. The body keeps blood pH between 7.35 and 7.45 in a similar manner; however, this value is not strictly neutral (7.0 is neutral) but, rather, is slightly alkaline. Normal body fluid pH remains at a near-neutral value when the acids and bases are nearly balanced, limiting the total number of free or unbalanced hydrogen ions. Acid-base balance occurs by matching the rate of hydrogen ion production (which is a continuous normal process) with hydrogen ion loss.

ACID-BASE CHEMISTRY

Acids

Acids are substances that release hydrogen ions when dissolved in water (H_2O). An acid in solution *increases* the amount of free hydrogen ions in that solution. The strength of an acid is measured by how easily it releases a hydrogen ion in solution. A strong acid, such as hydrochloric acid (HCl), separates (**dissociates**) completely in water and readily releases *all* of its hydrogen ions (Fig. 14-1).

A weak acid does not completely separate in water; it releases only *some* of its hydrogen ions. In the following example, each molecule of acetic acid (CH_3COOH), a weak acid, contains a total of four hydrogen molecules. When

acetic acid combines with water (Fig. 14-2), it releases only one of its four hydrogen molecules. The other three hydrogen molecules remain bound to the acetic acid molecule (CH_3COO^-).

Bases

A **base** is a substance that binds free hydrogen ions in solution. Thus bases are “hydrogen acceptors” that *lower* the amount of free hydrogen ions in solution. Strong bases bind hydrogen ions easily. Examples of strong bases include sodium hydroxide (NaOH) and ammonia (NH_3).

Weak bases bind hydrogen ions less readily. Examples of weak bases are aluminum hydroxide ($\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$) and bicarbonate (HCO_3^-). Although bicarbonate is a weak base, the many bicarbonate ions in the body are very important in preventing major changes in body fluid pH.

Buffers

Buffers are critical in keeping body fluid pH at normal levels because they can react in two ways: either as an acid (releasing a hydrogen ion) or as a base (binding a hydrogen ion). How a buffer reacts when dissolved in water depends on the existing acid-base balance of that fluid. Buffers always try to bring the fluid as close as possible to the normal body fluid pH of 7.35 to 7.45. If the fluid is basic (with few free hydrogen ions), the buffer *releases hydrogen ions* into the fluid (Fig. 14-3). If

AAABBB	AAAABBB	AAABBB
AAABBB	AAAABBB	AAABBB
AAABBB	AAAABBB	AAABBB

Neutral or acid-base balance

Acidic (acid excess) (actual acidosis)

Acidic (base deficit) (relative acidosis)

FIG. 14-4 Concept of acidic versus normal pH. (A = acid; B = base.)

AAABBB	AAABBBB	AABBB
AAABBB	AAABBBB	AABBB
AAABBB	AAABBBB	AABBB

Neutral

Alkaline (base excess)

Alkaline (acid deficit)

FIG. 14-5 Concept of alkaline versus normal pH. (A = acid; B = base.)

the fluid is acidic (with many free hydrogen ions), the buffer acts as a base, *binding some of the excess hydrogen ions*. In this way, buffers act like hydrogen ion “sponges,” soaking up hydrogen ions when too many are present and squeezing out hydrogen ions when too few are present. This flexibility allows buffers to keep body fluid pH in the normal range.

Liquids with a pH of 7.0 are neutral; they have a free hydrogen ion level in which the amount and strength of acids and bases are equal. Fig. 14-4 shows the concept of neutral pH. This figure shows that the combined *strength* and *amount* of all acids are equal to the combined *strength* and *amount* of all bases in a given solution. This is close to the actual case in human physiology. With human acid-base homeostasis, the relative amounts and strengths of acids and bases are nearly equal and, normally, hydrogen ion production is balanced with hydrogen ion loss so that the overall free hydrogen ion levels remain constant.

Liquids with a pH ranging from 1.0 to 6.99 have more or stronger (or both) acids compared with the amount or strength (or both) of bases. These liquids are *acidic* (see Fig. 14-4), which means that more free hydrogen ions are being released than bound, increasing the amount of free hydrogen ions in the liquid.

Liquids with a pH ranging from 7.01 to 14.0 have more or stronger (or both) bases compared with the amount or strength (or both) of acids. These liquids are *basic*, which means that more hydrogen ions are being bound than released, decreasing the amount of free hydrogen ions (Fig. 14-5).

BODY FLUID CHEMISTRY

Bicarbonate Ions

Body fluids contain many different types of acids and a few types of bases. The most common base in human body fluid is bicarbonate (HCO_3^-); the most common acid is carbonic acid (H_2CO_3). In health, the body keeps these substances at a constant ratio of 1 molecule of carbonic acid to 20 free bicarbonate ions (1:20) (Fig. 14-6). To maintain this ratio, both carbonic acid and bicarbonate must be carefully controlled. This constant ratio is related to balancing the production and elimination of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and hydrogen ions (H^+).

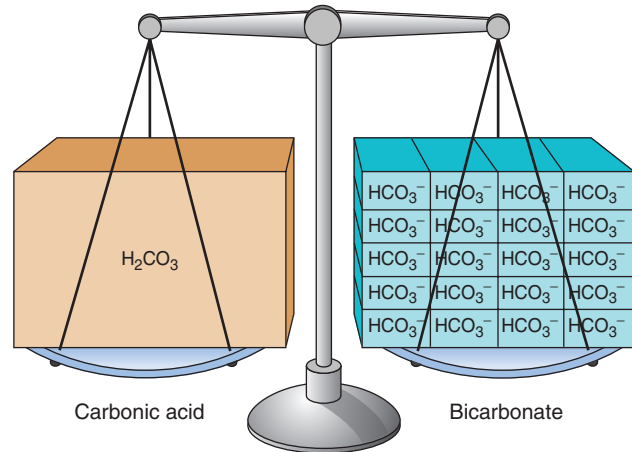


FIG. 14-6 Normal ratio of carbonic acid to bicarbonate is 1:20.



FIG. 14-7 The carbonic anhydrase equation showing that the concentration of carbon dioxide is directly related to the concentration of hydrogen ions.



FIG. 14-8 Increased carbon dioxide levels force the equation to the right and increase the concentration of hydrogen ions proportionately.

Relationship Between Carbon Dioxide and Hydrogen Ions

A key concept in understanding acid-base balance is the *carbonic anhydrase equation*. This equation, driven by the enzyme *carbonic anhydrase*, shows how *hydrogen ion levels and carbon dioxide levels are directly related to one another, so that an increase in one causes an equal increase in the other* (Fig. 14-7).

Carbon dioxide is a gas that forms carbonic acid when combined with water, making carbon dioxide a part of carbonic acid. Carbonic acid is not stable, and the body needs to keep a 1:20 ratio of carbonic acid to bicarbonate. When carbonic acid is formed from water and carbon dioxide, it begins to separate into free hydrogen ions and bicarbonate ions. *Therefore the carbon dioxide content of a fluid is directly related to the amount of hydrogen ions in that fluid. Whenever conditions cause carbon dioxide to increase, more free hydrogen ions are created. Likewise, whenever free hydrogen ion production increases, more carbon dioxide is produced.*

When excess carbon dioxide is produced, the amount of carbon dioxide increases and the equation shifts to the right, causing an *increase* in hydrogen ions (and a *decrease* in pH), as shown in Fig. 14-8. When very little carbon dioxide is produced, no free hydrogen ions are created by this equation. When excess hydrogen ions are produced or brought into the body, the carbonic anhydrase equation shifts to the left, causing the creation of more carbon dioxide, as shown in Fig. 14-9. When the amount of free hydrogen ions in body fluids is low, no extra carbon dioxide is produced.

How is the relationship between free hydrogen ions and carbon dioxide helpful? Carbon dioxide is a gas that can be

CHART 14-1 LABORATORY PROFILE

Acid-Base Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS		SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
	ARTERIAL	VENOUS	
pH			
Adult <90 yr	7.35-7.45	7.31-7.41	Increased: metabolic alkalosis, loss of gastric fluids, decreased potassium intake, diuretic therapy, fever, salicylate toxicity, respiratory alkalosis, hyperventilation Decreased: metabolic or respiratory acidosis, ketosis, renal failure, starvation, diarrhea, hyperthyroidism
>90 yr	7.25-7.45	7.31-7.41	
PaO₂			
Adult <90 yr	80-100 mm Hg		Increased: increased ventilation, oxygen therapy, exercise Decreased: respiratory depression, high altitude, carbon monoxide poisoning, decreased cardiac output
>90 yr	70-90 mm Hg		
PaCO₂	35-45 mm Hg	40-50 mm Hg	Increased: respiratory acidosis, emphysema, pneumonia, cardiac failure, respiratory depression Decreased: respiratory alkalosis, excessive ventilation, diarrhea
Bicarbonate	21-28 mEq/L	24-29 mEq/L	Increased: metabolic alkalosis, bicarbonate therapy Decreased: metabolic acidosis, diarrhea, pancreatitis
Lactate	3-7 mg/dL 0.3-0.8 mmol/L	5-20 mg/dL 0.6-2.2 mmol/L	Increased: hypoxia, exercise, insulin infusion, alcoholism, pregnancy Decreased: fluid overload

PaCO₂, Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; PaO₂, partial pressure of arterial oxygen.



FIG. 14-9 Increased hydrogen ion levels force the equation to the left and increase the concentration of carbon dioxide levels proportionately.

eliminated during exhalation, and this action is important for acid-base balance. When any condition causes the hydrogen ion concentration of body fluids to increase, extra CO₂ is produced in the same proportion. This extra CO₂ is eliminated during exhalation, helping to bring the hydrogen ion concentration down to normal. Whenever the CO₂ level changes, the pH changes to the same degree, in the opposite direction. Thus when the CO₂ level of a liquid increases, the pH drops, indicating more free hydrogen ions (more acidic). On the other hand, when the CO₂ level of a liquid decreases, the pH rises, indicating fewer free hydrogen ions (more alkaline).

An increase in bicarbonate causes the amount of hydrogen ions to decrease and the pH to increase, or become more alkaline (basic). On the other hand, an increase in the CO₂ level causes the free hydrogen ion level to increase and the pH to decrease, or become more acidic.

Because the kidneys control bicarbonate levels and the lungs control CO₂ levels in the healthy person, pH is also described as the function of the kidneys divided by the function of the lungs (Fig. 14-10).

Sources of Acids and Bicarbonate

Whenever acids are present in body fluids, free hydrogen ions are dissociated and must be controlled for pH balance. How are acids and hydrogen ions produced? Remember that whole body human function is dynamic and continuously working. The processes that allow the body to perform its work continuously generate acids and hydrogen ions as waste products of metabolism.

Normal metabolism of carbohydrate, protein, and fat creates natural waste products. Carbohydrate metabolism forms carbon dioxide (CO₂). Carbon dioxide is exhaled by the lungs during breathing. One factor that determines blood

$$\text{pH} = \frac{\text{Kidney function} = \text{Bicarbonate levels}}{\text{Lung function} = \text{Carbon dioxide levels}}$$

(Slow but powerful response) (Rapid but limited response)

FIG. 14-10 Contribution of pH balance by kidney and lung function.

pH is how much CO₂ is produced by body cells during metabolism versus how rapidly that CO₂ is removed by breathing. Protein breakdown forms sulfuric acid. Fat breakdown forms fatty acids and ketoacids.

Incomplete breakdown of glucose, which occurs whenever cells metabolize under **anaerobic** (no oxygen) conditions, forms lactic acid. Anaerobic conditions occur with hypoxia, sepsis, and shock. Incomplete breakdown of fatty acids, occurring when large amounts of fatty acids are being metabolized, forms ketoacids.

Destruction of cells allows cell contents to be released. Some cell structures (e.g., lysosomes) contain acids. When these acids are released into the extracellular fluid (ECF), free hydrogen ions are dissociated.

Bicarbonate, a weak base, is the main buffer of the ECF. It comes from the intestinal absorption of ingested bicarbonate, pancreatic production of bicarbonate, movement of cellular bicarbonate into the ECF, kidney reabsorption of filtered bicarbonate, and the breakdown of carbonic acid. Once bicarbonate is in the ECF, it is kept at a level 20 times greater than that of carbonic acid.

ACID-BASE REGULATORY ACTIONS AND MECHANISMS

As long as body cells are healthy, they continuously produce acids, carbon dioxide, and free hydrogen ions. Despite this production, hydrogen ion, bicarbonate, oxygen, and carbon dioxide levels are kept within normal limits when acid-base controlling actions/mechanisms are normal. Chart 14-1 lists normal values for these substances in arterial and venous blood. This homeostasis depends on:

TABLE 14-1 ACID-BASE REGULATORY MECHANISMS

MECHANISM TYPE	KEY CHARACTERISTICS
Chemical	
Protein buffers (albumin, globulins, hemoglobin)	Very rapid response
Chemical buffers (bicarbonate, phosphate)	Provide immediate response to changing conditions
	Can handle relatively small fluctuations in hydrogen ion production and elimination encountered under normal metabolic and health conditions
Respiratory	
Increased hydrogen ions or increased carbon dioxide	Primarily assist buffering systems when the fluctuation of hydrogen ion concentration is acute
Stimulates central respiratory neurons, leading to increased rate and depth of breathing, causing more carbon dioxide to be lost and decreasing the hydrogen ion concentration	
Decreased hydrogen ions or decreased carbon dioxide	
Inhibits central respiratory neurons, leading to decreased rate and depth of breathing, causing normally produced carbon dioxide to be retained, increasing the hydrogen ion concentration	
Kidney	
Actions to decrease pH	The most powerful regulator of acid-base balance
Increased kidney excretion of bicarbonate	Respond to large or chronic fluctuations in hydrogen ion production or elimination
Increased kidney reabsorption of hydrogen ions	Slowest response (hours to days)
Actions to increase pH	Longest duration
Decreased kidney excretion of bicarbonate	
Decreased kidney reabsorption of hydrogen ions	

- Hydrogen ion production being consistent and not excessive
- CO₂ loss from the body through breathing keeping pace with all forms of hydrogen ion production

To keep the free hydrogen ion level (pH) of the ECF within the narrow range of normal, the body has chemical, respiratory, and kidney actions (mechanisms) for acid-base balance (Table 14-1).

Chemical Acid-Base Control Actions and Mechanisms

Buffers are the first line of defense against changes in the amount of free hydrogen ions. Because they are always present in body fluids, buffers act fast to reduce or raise the amount of free hydrogen ions to normal. By acting as hydrogen ion “sponges,” buffers can bind hydrogen ions when too many are present or release hydrogen ions when not enough are present. Buffers are composed of chemicals or proteins.

Chemical buffers are paired mixtures—usually a weak base and an acid salt. The two most common chemical buffers are bicarbonate (which is active in both the extracellular fluid [ECF] and intracellular fluid [ICF]) and phosphate (which is active in the ICF).

Protein buffers are the most common buffers. Proteins in body fluids can either bind or release free hydrogen ions as needed. Both ICF and ECF proteins serve as buffers. Extracellular protein buffers are albumin and globulins. A major cell protein buffer is hemoglobin. Hemoglobin buffers hydrogen ions directly and also buffers acids formed during the production of carbon dioxide. When the amount of free hydrogen ions in the blood increases, some of the excess hydrogen ions cross the membranes of red blood cells and bind to the large numbers of hemoglobin molecules in each red blood cell. This binding of hydrogen ions to hemoglobin results in fewer hydrogen ions remaining in the blood, bringing blood pH back up toward normal.

Respiratory Acid-Base Control Actions and Mechanisms

When chemical buffers alone cannot prevent changes in blood pH, the respiratory system is the second line of defense against changes. Breathing controls the amount of free hydrogen ions by controlling the amount of carbon dioxide (CO₂) in arterial blood. Remember, because CO₂ is converted into hydrogen ions through the carbonic anhydrase reaction, the CO₂ level is *directly* related to the hydrogen ion level. Breathing rids the body of the excess CO₂ created through metabolism.

The amount of CO₂ in venous blood increases during normal metabolism. This CO₂ is moved in the blood to the lung capillaries. Because the amount (pressure) of CO₂ is far higher in capillary blood than in the air in the alveoli, CO₂ diffuses freely from the blood into the alveolar air. Once in the alveoli, CO₂ is exhaled during breathing and is lost from the body. Because the amount (pressure) of CO₂ in atmospheric air is nearly zero, CO₂ usually continues to be exhaled even when breathing is impaired.

Respiratory regulation of acid-base balance is under the control of the central nervous system (Fig. 14-11). Special receptors in the respiratory areas of the brain are sensitive to changes in the amount of CO₂ in brain tissues. As the amount of CO₂ begins to rise above normal in brain blood and tissues, these central receptors trigger the neurons to increase the rate and depth of breathing (**hyperventilation**). As a result, more CO₂ is exhaled (“blown off”) from the lungs and the amount of CO₂ in the ECF decreases. When the amount of arterial CO₂ returns back down to normal, the rate and depth of breathing return to levels that are normal for the person.

If the amount of ECF free hydrogen ions is too low, then the amount of CO₂ also is too low. Central receptors sense these low CO₂ levels and stop or slow the neuron activity in the respiratory centers of the brain, decreasing the rate and depth of breathing (**hypoventilation**). As a result, less CO₂ is lost through the lungs and more CO₂ is retained in arterial blood. This retention of already-formed CO₂, together with the normal production of CO₂ from metabolism, results in a rapid return of the arterial CO₂ levels (and hydrogen ion levels) back up to normal. When these levels are normal, the rate and depth of breathing also return to normal levels.

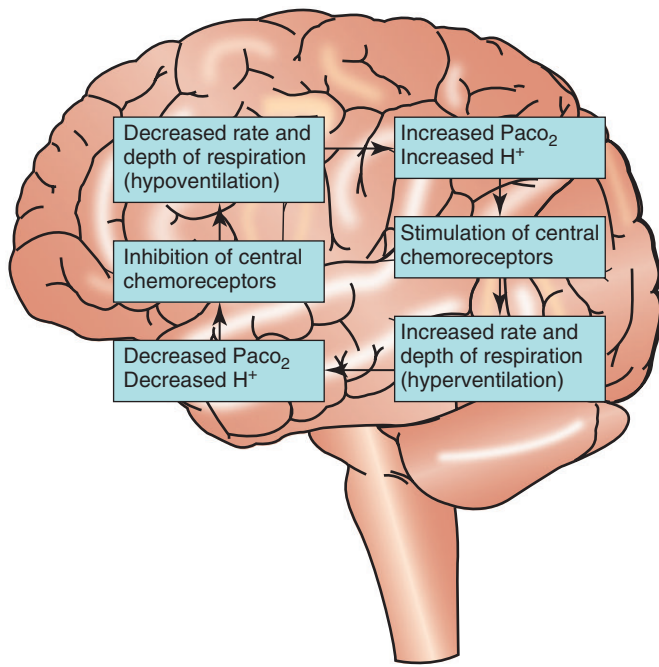


FIG. 14-11 Neural regulation of respiration and hydrogen ion concentration. (P_{aCO_2} , Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; H^+ , hydrogen ion.)

The respiratory system's response in acid-base balance is rapid. Changes in the rate and depth of breathing occur within minutes after changes in the hydrogen ion level or CO_2 level of the ECF occur.

Kidney Acid-Base Control Actions and Mechanisms

The kidneys are the third line of defense against wide changes in body fluid pH. Kidney actions are stronger for regulating acid-base balance but take longer than chemical and respiratory actions to completely respond. (They take 24 to 48 hours to respond.) When blood pH changes are persistent, kidney actions that increase excretion and reabsorption rates of acids or bases (depending on the direction of the pH changes) begin to operate. These actions are kidney movement of bicarbonate, formation of acids, and formation of ammonium.

Kidney movement of bicarbonate is the first kidney pH control action. It occurs in the kidney tubules in two ways: (1) kidney movement of bicarbonate produced elsewhere in the body and (2) kidney movement of bicarbonate produced in the kidneys. Much of the bicarbonate made in other body areas is excreted in the urine. When blood hydrogen ion levels are high, this bicarbonate is reabsorbed from the kidneys back into circulation, where it can help buffer excess hydrogen ions. In this situation, the kidney tubules also can make additional bicarbonate and reabsorb it for an increased buffer effect. When blood hydrogen ion levels are low, the bicarbonate remains in the urine and is excreted.

Formation of acids is the second kidney pH control action. It occurs through the phosphate-buffering system inside the cells of the kidney tubules. When the newly created

bicarbonate made in the kidney cells is reabsorbed into the blood along with sodium, the urine has an excess of anions, including phosphate (HPO_4^{2-}). This negatively charged fluid draws hydrogen ions (which carry a positive charge) into the urine. Once the hydrogen ion is in the urine, it binds to phosphate ions, forming an acid, H_2PO_4 , which is then excreted in the urine.

Formation of ammonium is the third kidney pH control action. Ammonia (NH_3), which is formed during normal protein breakdown, is converted into ammonium (NH_4^+). The ammonia is first secreted into the urine, where it can combine with excess hydrogen ions to form ammonium. The ammonium "traps" the hydrogen ions and then allows them to be excreted in the urine. The result is a loss of hydrogen ions and an increase in blood pH.

Compensation

In the process of *compensation*, the body adapts to attempt to correct changes in blood pH. A pH below 6.9 or above 7.8 is usually fatal. The normal pH range for human extracellular fluid (ECF) is 7.35 to 7.45. Both the kidneys and the lungs can compensate for acid-base imbalances, but they are not equal in their final responses. The respiratory system is much more sensitive to acid-base changes and can begin compensation efforts within seconds to minutes after a change in pH. However, these efforts are limited and can be overwhelmed easily. The kidney compensatory actions are much more powerful and result in rapid changes in ECF composition. However, these more powerful actions are not fully triggered unless the acid-base imbalance continues for several hours to several days.

Respiratory compensation occurs through the lungs, usually to correct for acid-base imbalances from metabolic problems. For example, when prolonged running causes buildup of lactic acid, hydrogen ion levels in the ECF increase and the pH drops. To bring the pH back to normal, breathing is triggered in response to increased carbon dioxide levels. Both the rate and depth of respiration increase. These respiratory efforts cause the blood to lose carbon dioxide with each exhalation, so ECF levels of carbon dioxide and free hydrogen ions gradually decrease. When the lungs can *fully compensate*, the pH returns to normal.

Kidney compensation results when a healthy kidney works to correct for changes in blood pH that occur when the respiratory system either is overwhelmed or is not healthy. For example, in a person with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), the respiratory system cannot exchange gases adequately. Carbon dioxide is retained continuously, hydrogen ion levels increase, and the blood pH falls (becomes more acidic). To oppose this process, the kidney excretes more hydrogen ions and increases the reabsorption of bicarbonate back into the blood. As a result, the blood pH remains either within or closer to the normal range. When these backup actions are completely effective, acid-base problems are *fully compensated* and the pH of the blood returns to normal even though the levels of oxygen and bicarbonate may be abnormal.

Sometimes, however, the respiratory problem causing the acid-base imbalance is so severe that kidney actions can only *partially compensate* and the pH is not quite normal. Partial compensation is helpful because it prevents the acid-base imbalance from becoming severe or life threatening.

ACID-BASE IMBALANCES

Acid-base imbalances are changes in the blood hydrogen ion level or pH. These changes are caused by problems with the acid-base regulatory actions and mechanisms of the body or by exposure to dangerous conditions. Imbalances in which blood pH is below normal reflect **acidosis**, and imbalances in which blood pH is above normal reflect **alkalosis**. Acid-base imbalances impair the function of many organs and can be life threatening.

ACIDOSIS

Pathophysiology

In acidosis, the acid-base balance of the blood and other extracellular fluid (ECF) is upset by an excess of hydrogen ions (H^+). This problem is reflected as an arterial blood pH below 7.35. The amount or strength (or both) of acids is greater than normal compared with the amount or strength of bases.

Acidosis is not a disease; it is a condition caused by a disorder or pathologic process. Acidosis can be caused by metabolic problems, respiratory problems, or both. Patients at greatest risk for acute acidosis are those with problems that impair breathing. Older adults with chronic health problems are at greater risk for developing acidosis (Chart 14-2).

CHART 14-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

The Older Patient Experiencing Acid-Base Imbalance

When Obtaining a Patient's History

- Assess risk factors for acid-base imbalance, including drugs, chronic health problems (especially kidney disease, pulmonary disease), and acute health problems.
- Obtain the history when the patient is awake and more familiar with his or her surroundings.
- Ask the patient to list all prescribed and over-the-counter drugs (especially diuretics and antacids). If he or she cannot recall this information or seems confused, ask the significant other to bring drugs from home to show the nurse.
- Ask the patient to recall what liquids he or she has taken in the past 24 hours and whether he or she has urinated as much as usual.

When Assessing the Patient

- Compare the patient's mental status with what the family, significant other, or health record states is the patient's baseline.
- Observe the rate and depth of respiration.
 - Can the patient complete a sentence without stopping to take a breath?
- Examine the color of the patient's nail beds and mucous membranes.
- Obtain a urine specimen, and observe for color and character. Test for specific gravity and pH.
- Examine skin turgor for dehydration. Attempt to pinch the skin to form a tent over the sternum and on the forehead. If a tent forms, record how long it remains.
- Measure the rate and quality of the pulse.
- Observe the patient's clinical responses and laboratory values carefully while the acid-base imbalance is being corrected.
- Administer IV therapy by pump or controller.

Acidosis can result from an actual or relative increase in the amount or strength of acids. An *actual acid excess* results in acidosis by either overproducing acids (and release of hydrogen ions) or undereliminating normally produced acids (retention of hydrogen ions). Either way, more hydrogen ions are present than should be. Examples of problems that actually increase acid production are diabetic ketoacidosis and seizures. Examples of problems that actually decrease acid elimination are respiratory impairment and kidney impairment.

In *relative acidosis*, the amount or strength of acids does not increase. Instead, the amount or strength (or both) of the bases decreases (to create a *base deficit*), which makes the fluid relatively more acidic than basic. A relative acidosis (*base deficit*) is caused by either overeliminating bases (bicarbonate ions [HCO_3^-]) or underproducing bases (see Fig. 14-4). Examples of problems that underproduce bases are pancreatitis and dehydration. A condition that overeliminates bases is diarrhea.

Regardless of its cause or type, acidosis causes major changes in body function. The main problems are related to the fact that hydrogen ions are positively charged ions. An increase in hydrogen ions creates imbalances of other positively charged electrolytes, especially potassium. The changes in potassium levels because of excess hydrogen ions is described on p. 205 in the Laboratory Assessment section for acidosis. These electrolyte imbalances then disrupt the functions of nerves, cardiac muscle, and skeletal muscle. The early manifestations of acidosis first appear in the musculoskeletal, cardiac, respiratory, and central nervous systems. Even slight increases in blood hydrogen ion levels reduce the activity of many hormones and enzymes, leading to death. Many drugs are less effective during acidosis.

Acidosis can be caused by metabolic problems, respiratory problems, or combined metabolic and respiratory problems. Specific causes of acidosis are listed in Table 14-2.

Metabolic Acidosis

Four processes can result in metabolic acidosis: overproduction of hydrogen ions, underelimination of hydrogen ions, underproduction of bicarbonate ions, and overelimination of bicarbonate ions.

Overproduction of hydrogen ions can occur with excessive breakdown of fatty acids, anaerobic glucose breakdown (*lactic acidosis*), and excessive intake of acids. Excessive breakdown of fatty acids occurs with diabetic ketoacidosis or starvation. When insufficient glucose is available for fuel, the body breaks down fats (lipids). The products of excessive fatty acid breakdown are strong acids (*ketoacids*), which release large amounts of hydrogen ions.

Lactic acidosis occurs when cells are forced to use glucose without adequate oxygen (*anaerobic metabolism*); as a result, glucose is incompletely broken down and forms lactic acid. Lactic acid leaves the cell, enters the blood, and releases hydrogen ions, causing acidosis. Lactic acidosis occurs whenever the body has too little oxygen to meet metabolic oxygen demands, such as during heavy exercise, seizure activity, fever, and reduced oxygen intake.

Excessive intake of acids floods the body with hydrogen ions. Agents that cause acidosis when ingested in excess include alcoholic beverages, methyl alcohol, and acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin).

Underelimination of hydrogen ions leads to acidosis when hydrogen ions are produced at the normal rate but are not removed at the same rate they are produced. Most hydrogen ion loss occurs through the lungs and the kidneys. Kidney failure causes acidosis when the kidney tubules cannot secrete hydrogen ions into the urine. As a result, too many hydrogen ions are retained. Severe lung problems also can result in retention of CO₂, which, because CO₂ concentration is directly related to hydrogen ion levels, means that hydrogen ions are also retained.

Underproduction of bicarbonate ions (base deficit) leads to acidosis when hydrogen ion production and removal are

normal but too few bicarbonate ions are present to balance the hydrogen ions. Such base deficits occur when bicarbonate ions are not produced at the normal rate. Because bicarbonate is made in the kidneys and in the pancreas, kidney failure and impaired liver or pancreatic function can cause a base-deficit acidosis.

Overelimination of bicarbonate ions (base-deficit) leads to acidosis when hydrogen ion production and removal are normal but too many bicarbonate ions have been lost. One cause of base-deficit acidosis is diarrhea.

Respiratory Acidosis

Respiratory acidosis results when any area of respiratory function is impaired, reducing the exchange of oxygen (O₂) and carbon dioxide (CO₂). This problem causes CO₂ retention. Because any increase in CO₂ levels causes the same increase in hydrogen ion levels, CO₂ retention leads to acidosis. (See the carbonic anhydrase equation in Fig. 14-7.)

Unlike metabolic acidosis, respiratory acidosis results from only one cause—retention of CO₂, causing increased production of free hydrogen ions. Four types of respiratory problems lead to overproduction of hydrogen ions: respiratory depression, inadequate chest expansion, airway obstruction, and reduced alveolar-capillary diffusion (see Table 14-2).

Respiratory depression results from depressed function of the brainstem neurons that trigger breathing movements. This reduces the rate and depth of breathing, which leads to poor gas exchange and retention of carbon dioxide. Respiration can be depressed by anesthetic agents, drugs (especially opioids), and poisons such as methyl alcohol, pesticides, and botulinus toxin. Specific electrolyte imbalances also inhibit these neurons (see Chapter 13 for electrolyte imbalances).

Physical depression of respiration occurs when neurons are damaged or destroyed by trauma or when problems in the brain increase the intracranial pressure. This increase causes edema, which presses on the respiratory centers located in the brainstem. Problems causing cerebral edema and respiratory depression include brain tumors, cerebral aneurysm, stroke, and overhydration.

Inadequate chest expansion reduces gas exchange and leads to acidosis. Chest expansion can be restricted by skeletal trauma or deformities, respiratory muscle weakness, or external constriction. Skeletal problems restrict chest wall movement when broken or malformed bones distort the shape of the chest or when the rigidity of the rib cage is lost (*flail chest*). Respiratory muscle weakness, caused by electrolyte imbalances, fatigue, muscular dystrophy, or muscle damage or breakdown reduces chest movement. External conditions also can restrict chest movement and gas exchange. Such conditions include body casts, tight scar tissue around the chest, obesity, and ascites.

Airway obstruction prevents air movement into and out from the lungs (*ventilation*) and leads to poor gas exchange, CO₂ retention, and acidosis. The upper airway can be obstructed externally by clothing, neck edema, and local lymph node enlargement. Internal obstruction of the upper airway can be caused by aspiration of foreign objects, bronchoconstriction, mucus, and edema.

Reduced alveolar-capillary diffusion causes poor gas exchange and leads to CO₂ retention and acidosis. Disorders that reduce diffusion include pneumonia, pneumonitis,

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse caring for a client who has been NPO for 5 days and receiving only dextrose 5% in lactated Ringer's solution (4 liters daily) reviews the client's most recent arterial blood gas results and observes that the pH is now 7.28. What is the most likely explanation for this finding?

- A. Acidosis in response to the presence of excessive ketoacids
- B. Acidosis in response to the presence of excessive lactic acid
- C. Alkalosis in response to the excessive loss of carbonic acid
- D. Alkalosis in response to the excessive loss of sulfuric acid

TABLE 14-2 COMMON CAUSES OF ACIDOSIS

PATHOLOGY	CONDITION
Metabolic Acidosis	
Overproduction of hydrogen ions	Excessive oxidation of fatty acids Diabetic ketoacidosis Starvation Hypermetabolism Heavy exercise Seizure activity Fever Hypoxia, ischemia Excessive ingestion of acids Ethanol intoxication Methanol ingestion Salicylate intoxication
Underelimination of hydrogen ions	Kidney failure
Underproduction of bicarbonate	Kidney failure Pancreatitis Liver failure Dehydration
Overelimination of bicarbonate	Diarrhea Buffering of organic acids
Respiratory Acidosis	
Underelimination of hydrogen ions	Respiratory depression Anesthetics Drugs (especially opioids) Electrolyte imbalance Head or neck trauma Inadequate chest expansion Skeletal deformities Muscle weakness Nonpulmonary restriction Obesity, casts, eschar Airway obstruction Alveolar-capillary block

tuberculosis, emphysema, acute respiratory distress syndrome, chest trauma, pulmonary emboli, pulmonary edema, and drowning. Cigarette smoking worsens gas exchange and leads to disorders that contribute to respiratory acidosis. Encourage any patient who has respiratory problems to stop smoking.

Combined Metabolic and Respiratory Acidosis

Metabolic and respiratory acidosis can occur at the same time. Uncorrected acute respiratory acidosis always leads to poor oxygenation and lactic acidosis (McCance et al., 2010). For example, a person who has diabetic ketoacidosis and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease has a combined metabolic and respiratory acidosis. Combined acidosis is more severe than either metabolic acidosis or respiratory acidosis alone.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Collect data about risk factors related to the development of acidosis, specifically age, nutrition, and presenting symptoms. One way of organizing data to assess acid-base status is to use Gordon's Functional Health Patterns, especially Activity-Exercise, Elimination, and the Cognitive-Perceptual patterns (Chart 14-3).

CHART 14-3 ACID-BASE ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Activity-Exercise Pattern

- Have you had any shortness of breath or difficulty breathing at rest or during activity?
- Have you noticed any changes in your breathing rate or depth?
- Do you have a hard time "catching" your breath?
- Do you have any difficulty clearing excretions?
- Do you feel the need for additional energy to accomplish routine tasks?
- Do you have any difficulty concentrating?
- Have you noticed any changes in your interest in normal daily activities?
- Have you noticed any changes in your leisure activities?

Elimination Pattern

- What is your usual urinary elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Color? Odor? Control?
- Have you noticed any changes in the amount of urine?
- Has your urine changed color or odor?
- What is your usual bowel elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Control?
- Have you noticed any changes in the number or consistency of your stools?

Cognitive-Perceptual Pattern

- Have you noticed any changes in memory lately?
- Have you noticed an increase in anxiety or feelings of apprehension?
- Are you sleeping more or sleeping less than usual for you?
- Have you noticed any changes in your attention span?
- Have your muscles seemed weak or "twitchy" lately?

Based on Gordon, M. (2010). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

Older adults are more at risk for problems leading to acid-base imbalance, including cardiac, kidney, or pulmonary impairment. In addition, older adults are more likely to be taking drugs that disrupt acid-base, fluid, and electrolyte balance, especially diuretics and aspirin. Ask about specific risk factors, such as any type of breathing problem, kidney failure, diabetes mellitus, diarrhea, pancreatitis, and fever.

Obtain a detailed nutrition history to determine total caloric intake and the proportions of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins ingested. Ask whether the patient has fasted or followed a strict diet within the past week.

Ask about headaches, behavior changes, increased drowsiness, reduced alertness, reduced attention span, lethargy, anorexia, abdominal distention, nausea or vomiting, muscle weakness, or increased fatigue. Having the patient relate activities of the previous 24 hours may help identify activity intolerance, behavior changes, and unexplained fatigue. Because the central nervous system is often depressed in acidosis, you may need to obtain this information from the patient's family.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Manifestations of acidosis are similar whether the cause is metabolic or respiratory (Chart 14-4). Acidosis reduces the ability of excitable membranes to respond appropriately, especially in cardiovascular tissue, neurons, skeletal muscle, and GI smooth muscle.

Cardiovascular changes are first seen with mild acidosis and are more severe as the condition worsens. Early changes include increased heart rate and cardiac output. With worsening acidosis or with acidosis and **hyperkalemia** (elevated blood potassium levels), heart rate decreases, T waves become tall and peaked, and QRS complexes are widened. Peripheral pulses may be hard to find and are easily blocked. Hypotension may occur as a result of vasodilation.

CHART 14-4 KEY FEATURES

Acidosis

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Delayed electrical conduction:
 - Ranges from bradycardia to heart block
 - Tall T waves
 - Widened QRS complex
 - Prolonged PR interval
- Hypotension
- Thready peripheral pulses

Central Nervous System Manifestations

- Depressed activity (lethargy, confusion, stupor, coma)

Neuromuscular Manifestations

- Hyporeflexia
- Skeletal muscle weakness
- Flaccid paralysis

Respiratory Manifestations

- Kussmaul respirations (in metabolic acidosis with respiratory compensation)
- Variable respirations (generally ineffective in respiratory acidosis)

Integumentary Manifestations

- Warm, flushed, dry skin in metabolic acidosis
- Pale to cyanotic and dry skin in respiratory acidosis

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Assess the cardiovascular system first in any patient at risk for acidosis.

Central nervous system (CNS) changes include depression of CNS function. Problems may range from lethargy to confusion, especially in older patients. As acidosis worsens, the patient may become unresponsive. Assess the patient's mental status (see [Chapter 43](#)).

Neuromuscular changes with acidosis include reduced muscle tone and deep tendon reflexes. The cause of these changes is hyperkalemia along with acidosis. Assess muscle strength in several ways, including arm muscle strength and leg muscle strength. Test arm muscle strength first by having the patient squeeze your hand. Another way to test arm muscle strength is to have the patient flex his or her arms against the chest and keep them flexed while you attempt to pull the arms away from the chest. Test leg muscle strength by having the patient push both feet against a flat surface (like a box or a board) while you apply resistance to the opposite side of the flat surface. This muscle weakness is bilateral and can progress to paralysis.

Respiratory changes may cause the acidosis and can be caused by the acidosis. Assess the patient's rate, depth, and ease of breathing. Use pulse oximetry to determine how well oxygen is delivered to the peripheral tissues.

If acidosis is metabolic in origin, the rate and depth of breathing increase as the hydrogen ion level rises. Breaths are deep and rapid and not under voluntary control. This breathing pattern is called **Kussmaul respiration**.

If acidosis is caused by respiratory problems, breathing efforts are reduced. Respirations are usually shallow and rapid. Muscle weakness makes this problem worse.

Skin changes occur with metabolic or respiratory acidosis. With metabolic acidosis, breathing is unimpaired and the rate is increased and CO_2 is lost. This causes vasodilation and makes the skin and mucous membranes warm, dry, and pink. With respiratory acidosis, breathing is ineffective and skin and mucous membranes are pale to cyanotic.

Psychosocial Assessment

It is vital to complete a psychosocial assessment, because behavioral changes may be the first manifestations of acidosis. Observe and document the patient's behavior by description

(objectively) rather than by interpretation (subjectively). For example, you should state that "the patient does not recognize close family members" rather than "the patient is confused." Ask family members if the patient's behavior is typical for him or her, and establish a baseline for comparison with later assessment findings.

Laboratory Assessment

Arterial blood pH is the laboratory value used to confirm acidosis. Acidosis is present when arterial blood pH is less than 7.35. However, this test alone does not indicate what is causing the acidosis. Manifestations of metabolic acidosis and respiratory acidosis are similar, but their treatments are different. *Therefore it is critical to obtain and interpret other laboratory data, such as arterial blood gas (ABG) values and blood levels of electrolytes (Chart 14-5).*

Metabolic acidosis is reflected by several changes in ABG values. The pH is low (<7.35) because buffering and respiratory compensation are not adequate to keep the amount of free hydrogen ions at a normal level. The bicarbonate level is low (<21 mEq/L). It is low because (1) bicarbonate has been lost, causing a base-deficit acidosis; (2) bicarbonate production is inadequate, causing a base-deficit acidosis; or (3) bicarbonate may be bound to other substances. The partial pressure of arterial oxygen (PaO_2) is normal because gas exchange is not impaired. The partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (PaCO_2) is normal or even slightly decreased because gas exchange is adequate and carbon dioxide retention is not a factor.

The serum potassium level is often high in acidosis as the body attempts to maintain electroneutrality during buffering. [Fig. 14-12](#) shows the movement of potassium ions as serum pH changes. As the blood hydrogen ion level rises, some of the excess hydrogen ions enter red blood cells for intracellular buffering. The movement of hydrogen ions into the cells creates an excess of positive ions inside the cells. To balance these extra positive charges, an equal number of potassium ions (that also have a positive charge) move from the cells into the blood. This increases the blood potassium level, causing hyperkalemia.

Respiratory acidosis is reflected by several changes in ABG values. The pH is low (<7.35) because of the increased amount of free hydrogen ions in the blood. Buffering and kidney compensation are not adequate to keep the amount of free hydrogen ions at a normal level. If the kidneys partially compensate for this acidosis, pH is low but not as abnormal as could be expected with the degree of CO_2 retention.

CHART 14-5 LABORATORY PROFILE**Acid-Base Imbalances (Uncompensated)**

IMBALANCE	LABORATORY VALUE CHANGES						
	pH	HCO_3^-	PaO_2	PaCO_2	K^+	Ca^{2+}	Cl^-
Metabolic acidosis	↓	↓	Ø	Ø and ↓	↑	Ø	Ø and ↑
Respiratory acidosis	↓	Ø	↓	↑	↑	Ø	↑ ↓
Combined acidosis	↓	↓ ↑	↓	↑	↑	Ø	↑
Metabolic alkalosis	↑	↑	Ø	Ø and ↑	↓	↓	↓
Respiratory alkalosis	↑	Ø	Ø	↓↓	↓	↓	↑
Combined alkalosis	↑	↑	Ø	↓	↓	↓	↓

↑, Above normal; ↓, below normal; ↑ ↓, value can increase or decrease depending on other factors; Ø, normal; Ca^{2+} , calcium ions; Cl^- , chloride ions; PaCO_2 , partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; PaO_2 , partial pressure of arterial oxygen; HCO_3^- , bicarbonate ions; K^+ , potassium ions.

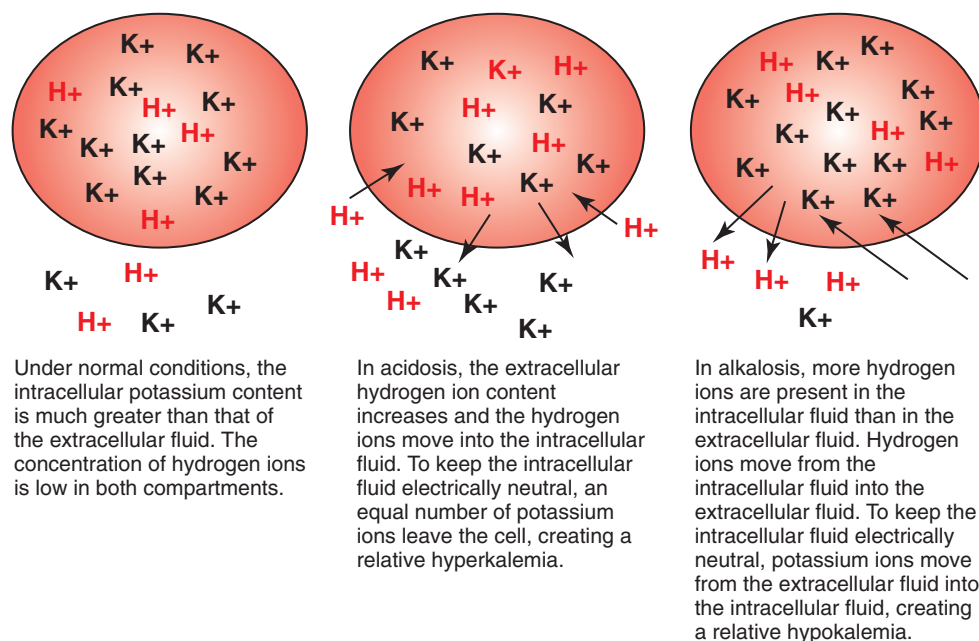


FIG. 14-12 Movement of potassium (K^+) in response to changes in the extracellular fluid hydrogen ion (H^+) concentration.

The partial pressure of arterial oxygen (P_{aO_2}) is low and the partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (P_{aCO_2}) is high because the pulmonary problem impairs gas exchange, causing poor oxygenation and CO_2 retention. (*The hallmarks of respiratory acidosis are a decreasing P_{aO_2} coupled with a rising P_{aCO_2} .*) Carbon dioxide is 20 times more able than oxygen to diffuse across the alveolar membrane. Therefore a decreased P_{aO_2} usually occurs before an increased P_{aCO_2} .

The serum bicarbonate level is variable. A patient with rapid onset of respiratory acidosis often has a normal bicarbonate level because kidney compensation has not started. When respiratory acidosis persists for 24 hours or longer, kidney compensation increases the levels of bicarbonate. Chronic respiratory acidosis is indicated by an elevated bicarbonate level and increased P_{aCO_2} .

Serum potassium levels are elevated in acute respiratory acidosis. They are normal or low in chronic respiratory acidosis when kidney compensation is present.

Priority Patient Problems

Priority problems for the patient experiencing acidosis are associated with the decreased function of excitable membranes. These problems include hypotension and decreased perfusion, impaired memory and cognition, and increased risk for falls.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for acidosis focus on correcting the underlying problem and monitoring for changes. To ensure appropriate interventions, the specific type of acidosis must first be identified.

Metabolic Acidosis

Interventions for metabolic acidosis include hydration and drugs or treatments to control the problem causing the

acidosis. For example, if the acidosis is a result of diabetic ketoacidosis, insulin is given to correct the hyperglycemia and halt the production of ketone bodies. Rehydration and antidiarrheal drugs are given if the acidosis is a result of prolonged diarrhea. Bicarbonate is administered only if serum bicarbonate levels are low.

Nursing priorities include continuously monitoring the patient for changes that indicate either he or she is responding to the treatment or the acidosis is becoming worse. The cardiovascular system and the skeletal muscle system are sensitive to acidosis and are the most important systems to monitor. Interpreting ABG results is an important part of monitoring.

Respiratory Acidosis

Priority interventions for respiratory acidosis are focused on improving ventilation and oxygenation and maintaining a patent airway. These include drug therapy, oxygen therapy, pulmonary hygiene (positioning and breathing techniques), ventilatory support, and prevention of complications. (See Chapter 32 for disorders causing respiratory acidosis.)

Drug therapy is focused on improving ventilation and oxygenation rather than directly on altering arterial pH. The major categories of drugs useful for respiratory problems that lead to acidosis include bronchodilators, anti-inflammatories, and mucolytics.

Oxygen therapy helps promote gas exchange for patients with respiratory acidosis. However, use caution when giving oxygen to patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and CO_2 retention as evidenced by a high P_{aCO_2} level. The only breathing trigger for these patients is a decreased arterial oxygen level. *Giving too much oxygen to these patients decreases their respiratory drive and may lead to respiratory arrest.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

When administering oxygen therapy to the patient with COPD and CO₂ retention who is not being artificially ventilated, assess respiratory effort and effectiveness hourly. Report a respiratory rate consistently lower than 10 breaths per minute to the Rapid Response Team.

Ventilation support with mechanical ventilation may be needed for patients who cannot keep their oxygen saturation at 90% or who have respiratory muscle fatigue. Chapter 34 discusses the nursing care needs of patients who are being mechanically ventilated.

Preventing complications is a nursing priority when caring for a patient with respiratory acidosis. Monitoring breathing status and intervening when changes occur are critical in preventing complications. For patients who have chronic respiratory acidosis, assess breathing status at least every 2 hours. Listen to breath sounds, and assess how easily air moves into and out of the lungs. Check for any muscle retractions, the use of accessory muscles (especially the neck muscles [sternocleidomastoids]), and whether breathing produces a sound (like a grunt or a wheeze) that can be heard without a stethoscope. Assess the color of the nail beds and oral membranes for cyanosis (a late finding).

ALKALOSIS**Pathophysiology**

In patients with alkalosis, the acid-base balance of the blood is disturbed and has an excess of bases, especially bicarbonate (HCO₃⁻). The amount or strength (or both) of the bases is greater than normal compared with the amount or strength of the acids. Alkalosis is a *decrease* in the free hydrogen ion level of the blood and is reflected by an arterial blood pH *above* 7.45. Like acidosis, alkalosis is not a disease but, rather, a manifestation of a problem. Alkalosis can be caused by metabolic problems, respiratory problems, or both (Table 14-3).

Alkalosis can result from an actual or relative increase in the amount or strength (or both) of bases. In an actual base excess, alkalosis occurs when base (usually bicarbonate) is either overproduced or undereliminated.

In *relative* alkalosis, the actual amount or strength of bases does not increase. Instead, the amount or strength (or both) of the acids decreases, creating an *acid deficit* and making the blood more basic than acidic. A relative base-excess alkalosis (acid deficit) results from an overelimination or underproduction of acids (Fig. 14-13).

The problems of alkalosis are serious and potentially life threatening. Management focuses on correcting the cause of alkalosis after identifying whether it is respiratory or metabolic in origin.

Whether metabolic, respiratory, or both, alkalosis affects specific functions. The pathologic effects are caused by the electrolyte imbalances that occur in response to decreased blood cation (positively charged particles) levels. Most problems of alkalosis are related to increased stimulation of the nervous, neuromuscular, and cardiac systems.

Metabolic alkalosis is caused by any condition that creates the acid-base imbalance through either an increase of bases

TABLE 14-3 COMMON CAUSES OF ALKALOSIS

PATHOLOGY	CONDITION
Metabolic Alkalosis	
Increase of base components	Oral ingestion of bases Antacids Milk-alkali syndrome Parenteral base administration Blood transfusion Sodium bicarbonate Total parenteral nutrition
Decrease of acid components	Prolonged vomiting Nasogastric suctioning Hypocortisolism Hyperaldosteronism Thiazide diuretics
Respiratory Alkalosis	
Excessive loss of carbon dioxide	Hyperventilation Fear, anxiety Mechanical ventilation Salicylate toxicity Hypoxemia-stimulated hyperventilation High altitudes Shock Early-stage acute pulmonary problems

AAABBB
AAABBB
AAABBB

Acid-base
balance

AAABBBB
AAABBBB
AAABBBB

Actual alkalosis
(base excess)

AABBB
AABBB
AABBB

Relative alkalosis
(acid deficit)

FIG. 14-13 Concepts of actual and relative alkalosis. (A = acid; B = base.)

(base excess) or a decrease of acids (acid deficit). Base excesses are caused by excessive intake of bicarbonates, carbonates, acetates, and citrates. Excessive use of oral antacids containing sodium bicarbonate or calcium carbonate can also cause a metabolic alkalosis. Other base excesses can occur during medical treatments, such as citrate excesses during massive blood transfusions and IV sodium bicarbonate given to correct acidosis. The hallmark of a base-excess alkalosis is an ABG result with an elevated pH and an elevated bicarbonate level along with normal oxygen and carbon dioxide levels.

Acid deficits can be caused by disease processes or medical treatment. Disorders causing acid deficits include prolonged vomiting, excess cortisol, and hyperaldosteronism. Medical treatments that promote acid loss causing metabolic alkalosis include thiazide diuretics and prolonged gastric suctioning.

Respiratory alkalosis is usually caused by an excessive loss of CO₂ through hyperventilation (rapid respirations). Patients may hyperventilate in response to anxiety, fear, or improper settings on mechanical ventilators. Hyperventilation can also result from direct stimulation of central respiratory centers because of fever, central nervous system lesions, and salicylates. The hallmark of respiratory alkalosis is an ABG result with an elevated pH coupled with a low carbon dioxide level. Usually, the oxygen and bicarbonate levels are normal.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Manifestations are the same for metabolic and respiratory alkalosis. Many symptoms are the result of the low calcium levels (**hypocalcemia**) and low potassium levels (**hypokalemia**) that usually occur with alkalosis (see Fig. 14-12). These problems change the function of the nervous, neuromuscular, cardiac, and respiratory systems (Chart 14-6).

Central nervous system (CNS) changes are caused by over-excitement of the nervous systems. Patients have dizziness, agitation, confusion, and hyperreflexia, which may progress to seizure activity. Tingling or numbness around the mouth and in the toes may be present. Other indicators of alkalosis with hypocalcemia are positive Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs (see Chapter 13).

Neuromuscular changes are related to the hypocalcemia and hypokalemia that occur with alkalosis. Hypocalcemia increases nervous system activity, causing muscle cramps, twitches, and "charley horses." Deep tendon reflexes are hyperactive. **Tetany** (continuous contractions) of muscle groups also may be present. Tetany is painful and indicates a rapidly worsening condition.

Skeletal muscles may contract as a result of nerve over-stimulation, but they become weaker because of the hypokalemia. Handgrip strength decreases, and the patient may be unable to stand or walk. Respiratory efforts become less effective as the skeletal muscles of respiration weaken.

Cardiovascular changes occur because alkalosis increases myocardial irritability, especially when accompanied by hypokalemia. Heart rate increases, and the pulse is thready. When hypovolemia (decreased blood volume) is also present, the patient may have severe hypotension. The hypokalemia increases myocardial sensitivity to digoxin, which increases the risk for digoxin toxicity.

Respiratory changes, especially increases in the rate of breathing, are the main causes of respiratory alkalosis.

Although the volume of air inhaled and exhaled with each breath is nearly normal, the total volume of air inhaled and exhaled each minute rises with the increased respiratory rate. The increased minute volume may be caused by anxiety or physiologic changes.

Arterial blood pH greater than 7.45 confirms alkalosis, but this test alone does not identify its cause. Because the manifestations of metabolic alkalosis and respiratory alkalosis are similar, it is critical to obtain additional laboratory data, especially arterial blood gas (ABG) values and specific serum electrolyte levels (see Chart 14-5).

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions are planned to prevent further losses of hydrogen, potassium, calcium, and chloride ions; to restore fluid balance; to monitor changes; and to provide for *patient safety*. Treatments that may have caused alkalosis (e.g., prolonged gastric suctioning, excessive infusion of IV solutions containing bases, drugs that promote hydrogen ion excretion) are modified or stopped. Drug therapy is used for alkalosis. Drugs are prescribed to resolve the causes of alkalosis and to restore normal fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance. For example, the patient with metabolic alkalosis caused by diuretic therapy receives fluid and electrolyte replacement, and the diuretic therapy is stopped, at least temporarily. Antiemetic drugs are prescribed if the cause of alkalosis is vomiting. Fluids and electrolytes are replaced orally or parenterally. Carefully monitor the patient's progress, and adjust fluid and electrolyte therapy. Serum electrolyte values are monitored daily until they return to normal or near normal.

During correction of alkalosis, a nursing care priority is prevention of injury caused by falls. The patient with alkalosis has hypotension and muscle weakness, both of which increase the risk for falls, especially among older adults. Implement the general falls prevention nursing interventions and the high-risk falls prevention nursing interventions outlined in Chart 3-4 in Chapter 3.

CHART 14-6 KEY FEATURES

Alkalosis

Central Nervous System Manifestations

- Increased activity
- Anxiety, irritability, tetany, seizures
- Positive Chvostek's sign
- Positive Trousseau's sign
- Paresthesias

Neuromuscular Manifestations

- Hyperreflexia
- Muscle cramping and twitching
- Skeletal muscle weakness

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Increased heart rate
- Normal or low blood pressure
- Increased digitalis toxicity

Respiratory Manifestations

- Increased rate and depth of ventilation in respiratory alkalosis
- Decreased respiratory effort associated with skeletal muscle weakness in metabolic alkalosis



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

The patient is a 55-year-old salesman who returned from a business trip to Mexico 2 days ago. He started feeling nauseated on the plane trip home and has been vomiting for the past 40 hours. His current arterial blood gas results are pH = 7.49; HCO_3^- = 26 mEq/L; PaCO_2 = 40 mm Hg; PaO_2 = 98 mm Hg. His current therapy includes IV antiemetics and an infusion of dextrose 5% in lactated Ringer's solution at 250 mL/hr. His other health problems include moderate hypertension managed with losartan (Cozaar) 50 mg daily and hydrochlorothiazide (HydroDIURIL) 25 mg daily, benign prostatic hyperplasia managed with tamsulosin (Flomax) 0.4 mg daily, and gastroesophageal reflux disease managed with esomeprazole (Nexium) 10 mg four times daily.

1. What specific type of acid-base problem does this patient have?
2. What is the most probable origin of the acid-base imbalance?
3. Could any of his prescription drugs have contributed to this problem? If so, which one(s) and how?
4. What nursing interventions for safety are most appropriate for this patient?
5. When he stops vomiting, which of these drugs should he receive and which should be withheld? Provide a rationale for your decisions.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use caution in giving oxygen to people who have COPD, and monitor their respiratory effort at least hourly.
- Identify patients at increased risk for falls as a result of muscle weakness with acid-base imbalances.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach all patients to take drugs as prescribed, especially diuretics, antihypertensives, and cardiac drugs.
- Instruct all patients at continuing risk for respiratory acidosis to stop smoking.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the oxygenation status of any patient with acute confusion.
- Monitor the neurologic status at least every 2 hours in patients being treated for an acid-base imbalance.
- Assist patients who have anxiety-induced respiratory alkalosis to identify causes of anxiety.
- Teach patients who have anxiety-induced respiratory alkalosis to use stress management techniques.

Physiological Integrity

- The normal pH of the body's extracellular fluids (including blood) is 7.35 to 7.45.
- The normal pH of arterial blood is slightly higher (less acidic) than venous blood.
- The more hydrogen ions present, the more acidic the fluid.
- The fewer hydrogen ions present, the more alkaline the fluid.
- Lower pH values (below 7.35) mean acidosis is present.
- Higher pH values (above 7.45) mean alkalosis is present.
- The concentration of CO_2 is directly related to the concentration of hydrogen ions.
- Anything that increases the CO_2 level in the blood increases the hydrogen ion content and lowers the pH.
- An acid gives up hydrogen ions in solution; a base binds hydrogen ions in solution.

- Acids are normally formed in the body as a result of metabolism and incomplete breakdown of glucose and fats.
- Acid-base balance is regulated by chemical, respiratory, and kidney actions.
- Chemical buffers are the immediate way that acid-base imbalances are corrected.
- The lungs control the amount of CO_2 that is retained or exhaled.
- The kidneys regulate the amount of hydrogen and bicarbonate ions that are retained or excreted by the body.
- Compensation is the process in which the body uses its three regulatory mechanisms to correct for changes in the pH of body fluids.
- If a lung problem causes retention of carbon dioxide, the healthy kidney compensates by increasing the amount of bicarbonate that is produced and retained.
- The best way to determine acid-base balance is to analyze arterial blood gases (ABGs).
- Check the serum potassium level for any patient who has acidosis.
- Assess heart rate and rhythm at least every 2 hours for any patient with an acid-base imbalance.
- Acidosis reduces the excitability of cardiovascular muscle, neurons, skeletal muscle, and GI smooth muscle.
- Alkalosis increases the sensitivity of excitable tissues allowing them to over-respond to normal stimuli and even respond without stimulation.
- Assess the airway of any patient who has acute respiratory acidosis.
- Monitor arterial blood gas values to evaluate the effectiveness of therapy for acid-base imbalances.
- The hallmark of a base-excess acidosis is an ABG result with an elevated pH and an elevated bicarbonate level along with normal oxygen and carbon dioxide levels.
- The hallmark of respiratory alkalosis is an ABG result with an elevated pH coupled with a low carbon dioxide level.
- Patients who have either acidosis or alkalosis are at risk for falls.

CHAPTER

15

Infusion Therapy*

Cheryl J. Dumont



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Prevent IV administration errors by following best practices that ensure patient and staff safety.
2. Explain how emerging technology related to infusion therapy can enhance patient safety.
3. Teach the patient and family about the type and care related to the patient's infusion therapy.
4. Identify the evidence-based recommendations for prevention of intravenous (IV) catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Describe the special needs and care for older adults receiving IV therapy.

Physiological Integrity

6. Check the accuracy of prescriptions for IV fluids and drug therapy.

7. Identify the appropriate veins for peripheral IV catheter insertion.
8. Differentiate types of vascular access devices (VADs) used for peripheral and central IV therapy.
9. Use best practice for inserting peripheral vascular access devices (VADs).
10. Assess the patient's infusion site frequently for local complications, such as phlebitis and infiltration.
11. Prioritize nursing interventions for maintaining an infusion system.
12. Assess, prevent, and manage systemic complications related to infusion therapy and VADs.
13. Identify nursing care associated with intra-arterial, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, intraosseous, and intraspinal infusion therapy.

Infusion therapy is the delivery of medications in solution and fluids by parenteral (piercing of skin or mucous membranes) route through a wide variety of catheter types and locations using multiple procedures. IV therapy is the most

common route for infusion therapy. It delivers solutions directly into the veins of the vascular system. This chapter focuses on access for and administration of all types of infusion therapy.

*Acknowledgment to Meredith Baker, BSN, RN, and Angela Tyus, RN, Winchester Medical Center Vascular Access Team nurses and Seth Flickinger, BS Engineering Science and Mechanics, Director of Bio-Medical, Valley Health for their assistance in reviewing this chapter.

OVERVIEW

Infusion therapy is delivered in all health care settings, including hospitals, home care, ambulatory clinics, physicians' offices, and long-term care facilities. The most common reasons for using infusion therapy are to:

- Maintain fluid balance or correct fluid imbalance
- Maintain electrolyte or acid-base balance or correct electrolyte or acid-base imbalance
- Administer medications
- Replace blood or blood products

IV therapy is the most common invasive therapy administered to hospitalized patients. Advances in medicine and technology have made it possible for people with chronic diseases such as diabetes mellitus, chronic kidney disease, and malabsorption syndromes to live long and productive lives. These patients are often dependent on long-term infusion therapy of some kind. They often have very poor vascular integrity and, therefore, accessing their peripheral veins takes a high level of skill.

Having a specialized team of infusion nurses to initiate and maintain infusion therapy is recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) to reduce complications of infusion therapy (O'Grady et al., 2011). These teams have demonstrated value in cost savings, patient satisfaction, and patient outcomes.

Infusion nurses may perform any or all of the following activities:

- Develop evidence-based policies and procedures
- Insert and maintain (sterile dressings and flushing) several types of peripheral and central venous catheters
- Monitor patient outcomes
- Educate staff, patients, and families
- Consult on product selection and purchasing decisions
- Therapies such as blood withdrawal, therapeutic phlebotomy, hypodermoclysis, intraosseous infusions, and administration of medications including chemotherapy

The registered nurse (RN) generalist is taught to insert peripheral IVs, and most institutions have a process of credentialing this skill. Depending on the state's nurse practice act, licensed practical/vocational nurses (LPNs/LVNs) and technicians can be trained and credentialed to perform the skill of peripheral IV insertion and assist with infusions, but the RN is ultimately accountable for all aspects of infusion therapy and delegation of associated tasks (*Infusion Nurses Society [INS], 2006*).

The Infusion Nurses Society (INS) publishes guidelines and standards of practice for policy and procedure development in all health care settings. These standards establish the criteria for all nurses delivering infusion therapy. The Infusion Nurses Certification Corporation (INCC) offers a written certifying examination. Nurses who successfully complete this examination have mastered an advanced body of knowledge in this specialty and may use the initials *CRNI*, which stand for *certified registered nurse infusion*.

Types of Infusion Therapy Fluids

Many types of parenteral fluids are used for infusion therapy. These fluids include:

- IV solutions, including parenteral nutrition
- Blood and blood components
- Drug therapy

Intravenous Solutions

More than 200 IV fluids (solutions) are available that meet the requirements established by the United States

Pharmacopeia (USP). Each solution is classified by its tonicity (concentration) and pH. Tonicity is typically categorized by comparison with normal blood plasma as osmolality (mOsm/L). As discussed in [Chapter 13](#), normal serum osmolality for adults is between 270 and 300 mOsm/L. Parenteral solutions within that normal range are **isotonic**; those fluids greater than 300 mOsm/L are **hypertonic**; and those fluids less than 270 mOsm/L are **hypotonic**. [Table 13-4](#) in [Chapter 13](#) lists common IV solutions according to their tonicity.

When an **isotonic infusate** (solution that is infused into the body) is used, water does not move into or out of the body's cells. Therefore patients receiving isotonic solutions are at risk for fluid overload, especially older adults. This complication is discussed in [Chapter 13](#). **Hypertonic** fluids are used to correct fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances by moving water out of the body's cells and into the bloodstream. Parenteral nutrition solutions are also hypertonic (see [Chapter 63](#)). Instead of moving water out of cells, **hypotonic** infusates move water into cells to expand them. Patients receiving either hypertonic or hypotonic fluids are at risk for phlebitis and infiltration. **Phlebitis** is the inflammation of a vein caused by mechanical, chemical, or bacterial irritation. **Infiltration** occurs when IV solution leaks into the tissues around the vein.

The pH of IV solutions measures the acidity or alkalinity and usually ranges from 3.5 to 6.2. Extremes of both osmolality and pH can cause vein damage leading to phlebitis and **thrombosis** (blood clot in the vein). Thus fluids and medications with a pH value less than 5 and more than 9 and with an osmolality more than 600 mOsm/L are best infused in the central circulation where greater blood flow provides adequate hemodilution ([Perucca, 2010](#)). For example, total parenteral nutrition (TPN) solutions have an osmolality greater than 1400 mOsm/L. TPN should not be infused in peripheral circulation because it can damage blood cells and the endothelial lining of the veins.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Drugs such as amiodarone (Cordarone), vancomycin (Vancocin), and ciprofloxacin (Cipro I.V.) are venous irritants and have a pH less than 5. Phlebitis occurs when patients require long-term infusion of these drugs in peripheral circulation. Drugs with vasoconstrictive action, such as dopamine, or chemotherapeutic agents, such as vinblastine, are vesicants that can cause extravasation. **Extravasation** results in severe tissue damage as manifested by blistering, tissue sloughing, or necrosis from infiltration into the surrounding tissues (see [Complications of Intravenous Therapy](#) section on p. 227 for further explanation and [Chapter 24](#) for more detail). Monitor the IV insertion site carefully for early manifestations of infiltration, including swelling, coolness, or redness. If any of these symptoms are present, discontinue the drug immediately and notify the infusion therapy team, if available. If an infusion specialist is not available, plan to remove the IV catheter and consider central line placement.

Blood and Blood Components

Blood transfusion is given by using packed red blood cells, created by removing a large portion of the plasma from whole blood. Other available blood components include platelets, fresh frozen plasma, albumin, and several specific clotting factors. Each component has detailed requirements for blood-type compatibility and infusion techniques. For patient safety,

The Joint Commission's 2010 National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) require agencies to ensure that blood components are properly ordered, handled and dispensed, and administered and that patients are appropriately monitored. Positive patient identification using two patient identifiers and requiring two qualified health care professionals is essential before any blood or blood component is administered. Most organizations use the International Society of Blood Transfusion (ISBT) universal bar-coding system to ensure the right blood for the right patient (Fig. 15-1). The ISBT system includes four components that must be present on the blood label both in bar code and in eye-readable format. These four components are (1) a unique facility identifier, (2) the lot number relating to the donor, (3) the product code, and (4) the ABO group and Rh type of the donor.

An acute hemolytic transfusion reaction caused by an incompatible blood transfusion is a “sentinel event” requiring an intense analysis of the contributing factors and corrective action. Established policies and procedures must be rigidly followed to ensure a safe transfusion and reduce the risk for complications. (See Chapter 42 for a complete discussion of blood transfusion administration.)

Drug Therapy

IV drugs provide a rapid therapeutic effect but can lead to immediate serious reactions, called **adverse drug events (ADEs)**. Hundreds of drugs are available for infusion by a variety of techniques. As with all drug administration, nurses must be knowledgeable about drug indications, proper dosage, contraindications, and precautions. IV administration also requires knowledge of appropriate dilution, rate of infusion, pH and osmolality, compatibility with other IV medications, appropriate infusion site (peripheral versus central circulation), potential for vesicant/irritant effects, and specific aspects of patient monitoring because of its immediate effect. *Regardless of familiarity with the drug, never assume that IV administration is the same as giving that drug by other routes.* New information is continuously being published, and new drugs are rapidly being introduced.



FIG. 15-1 Unit of blood showing the International Society of Blood Transfusion (ISBT) universal barcode for blood transfusions.

Medication safety is extremely important in all health care settings today. The Joint Commission publishes new and updated National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) every year. One major goal is improving the safety of high-alert drugs. An example of these drugs is concentrated electrolyte solutions (e.g., potassium chloride), which require restricted access, prominent warnings about the concentration, and storage in a secured location.

Procedures must be established to prevent errors resulting from look-alike, sound-alike drugs such as Celebrex IV (celecoxib) and Cerebyx (fosphenytoin). Other strategies to reduce errors include limiting available concentrations of drugs and dispensing all drugs, including catheter flush solutions, in single-dose containers. Smart pumps, with drug libraries (see **Infusion Systems** section), in combination with computer physician order entry (CPOE) and barcode medication administration (BCMA) systems, use recent technology to help reduce adverse drug events (ADEs). Electronic medication administration records (MARs) and multiple checks by pharmacists, as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, also help reduce errors.

Prescribing Infusion Therapy

A prescription for infusion therapy written by a physician or other authorized health care provider is necessary before IV therapy begins. To be complete, the prescription for infusion fluids should include:

- Specific type of fluid
- Rate of administration written in milliliters per hour, or the total amount of fluid and the total number of hours for infusion (e.g., 125 mL/hr or 1000 mL/8 hr)
- Drugs and the specific dose to be added to the solution, such as electrolytes or vitamins

A drug prescription should include:

- Drug name, preferably by generic name
- Specific dose and route
- Frequency of administration
- Time of administration
- Length of time for infusion
- Purpose (required in some health care agencies, especially nursing homes)

Some continuously infused drugs, such as those for pain management, are prescribed as milligrams per hour. The type and volume of dilution for infusion medications may be included in the prescription or calculated by the infusion pharmacist.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Determine that the IV prescription is appropriate for the patient and clarify any questions with the health care provider before administration. Be sure to check for the accuracy and completeness of the treatment prescription. An example of an incomplete one is “5% dextrose in water to keep the vein open” (TKO or KVO). This statement does not specify the rate of infusion and is not considered complete.

Vascular Access Devices

An infusion catheter, also known as a **vascular access device (VAD)**, is a plastic tube placed in a blood vessel to deliver fluids and medications. The specific type and purpose of the

therapy determine whether the infusion can be given safely through peripheral veins or if the large central veins of the chest are needed. Advances in catheter materials and insertion techniques have radically expanded the types of VADs currently used. This discussion includes the description of each type of catheter used for peripheral and central IV therapy. Seven major types are described:

- Short peripheral catheters
- Midline catheters
- Peripherally inserted central catheters (PICC)
- Nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheters (CVCs)
- Tunneled catheters
- Implanted ports
- Hemodialysis catheters

Assess the patient's needs for vascular access, and choose the device that has the best chance of infusing the prescribed therapy for the required length of time. Depending on the patient and type of VAD to be inserted, a topical anesthetic agent or intradermal lidocaine HCl 1% may be helpful to decrease patient discomfort. Obtain a health care provider's order and check for patient allergies before administering any anesthetic.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client receiving vancomycin intravenously reports that the peripheral IV insertion site has become painful and reddened. What is the nurse's first action?

- Report the change to the health care provider.
- Document the findings in the electronic patient record.
- Change the IV insertion site to a new location.
- Stop the infusion of the drug.

PERIPHERAL INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

Short infusion catheters are the most commonly used vascular access devices (VADs) for **peripheral IV therapy**. They are usually placed in the veins of the arm. Another catheter used for peripheral IV therapy is a midline catheter.

Short Peripheral Catheters

Short peripheral catheters are composed of a plastic cannula built around a sharp stylet extending slightly beyond the cannula (Fig. 15-2). The stylet (sharp) allows for the venipuncture, and the cannula is advanced into the vein. Once the cannula is advanced into the vein, the stylet is withdrawn. These catheters are designed with a safety mechanism to cover the sharp end of the stylet after it is removed from the patient. These stylets are hollow-bore, blood-filled needles

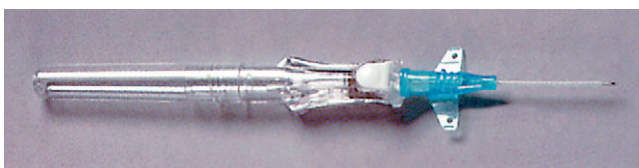


FIG. 15-2 BD Insite Autoguard IV catheter. With the push of a button, the needle instantly retracts, reducing the risk for accidental needle stick injuries.

that carry a high risk for exposure to bloodborne pathogens if needle stick injury occurs. A federal law enacted in 2000 amended the Bloodborne Pathogen Standards from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requiring the use of catheters with an engineered safety mechanism to prevent needle sticks.

Insertion and Placement Methods

Short peripheral catheters are usually inserted into superficial veins of the dorsal surface of the hand and the forearm using sterile technique. In emergent situations, these catheters can be used also in the external jugular vein of the neck. *Avoid the use of veins in the lower extremities of adults, if possible, because of an increased risk for deep vein thrombosis and infiltration.*

Short catheters range in length from $\frac{3}{4}$ inch to $1\frac{1}{4}$ inch with gauge sizes from 26 gauge (the smallest) to 14 gauge (large bore). *Choose the smallest gauge catheter capable of delivering the prescribed therapy.* Current design allows for a thin-wall construction, providing a larger lumen (opening) without increasing the outer diameter. This design improves the fluid flow through the catheter while using a smaller gauge and thereby decreases the possibility of vein irritation from a large catheter. For example, a thin-walled 24-gauge Insite (BD Medical) catheter has about the same flow-rate ability as a 22-gauge non-thin-walled Angiocath (BD Medical). Larger gauge sizes allow for faster flow rates but also cause phlebitis more often. Table 15-1 lists each gauge size and its common uses.

Short peripheral catheters are allowed to dwell (stay in) for 72 to 96 hours but then require removal and insertion at another venous site. If the patient's therapy is expected to be longer than 6 days, a midline catheter or PICC should be chosen (O'Grady et al., 2011). When selecting the site for insertion of a peripheral catheter, consider the patient's

TABLE 15-1 CHOOSING THE GAUGE SIZE FOR PERIPHERAL CATHETERS

CATHETER GAUGE	INDICATIONS	APPROXIMATE FLOW RATES
24-26 gauge Smallest, shortest ($\frac{3}{4}$ -inch length)	Not ideal for viscous infusions Expect blood transfusion to take longer Preferred for infants and small children	24 mL/min (1440 mL/hr)
22 gauge	Adequate for most therapies, blood can infuse without damage	38 mL/min (2280 mL/hr)
20 gauge (1- $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch length)	Adequate for all therapies Most anesthesiologists prefer not to use a smaller size than this for surgery cases	65 mL/min (3900 mL/hr)
18 gauge	Preferred size for surgery Vein needs to be large enough to accommodate the catheter	110 mL/min (6600 mL/hr)
14-16 gauge	For trauma and surgical patients requiring rapid fluid resuscitation Needs to be in a vein that can accommodate it	

CHART 15-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Placement of Short Peripheral Venous Catheters

- Verify that the prescription for infusion therapy is complete and appropriate for infusion through a short peripheral catheter.
- For adults, choose a site for placement in the upper extremity. DO NOT USE THE WRIST.
- Choose the patient's nondominant arm when possible.
- Choose a distal site, and make all subsequent venipunctures proximal to previous sites.
- Do not use the arm on the side of a mastectomy, lymph node dissection, arteriovenous shunt or fistula, or paralysis.
- Avoid choosing a site in an area of joint flexion.
- Avoid choosing a site in a vein that feels hard or cordlike.
- Avoid choosing a site close to areas of cellulitis, dermatitis, or complications from previous catheter sites.
- Choose a vein of appropriate length and width to fit the size of the catheter required for infusion.



FIG. 15-3 The AccuVein AV300 is a vein illumination device that helps health care professionals locate veins for blood draw, IV infusion, and blood donation by projecting a pattern of light on the patient's skin to reveal the position of underlying veins on the skin's surface. The device uses red and infrared light, which the hemoglobin in blood absorbs to detect the position of the vein.

age, history, and diagnosis; the type and duration of the prescribed therapy; and, whenever possible, the patient's preference. [Chart 15-1](#) lists the major criteria for the placement of peripheral VADs.

Though not yet widely used in most clinical settings, vein transilluminators and ultrasound devices are now available as tools to assist in IV line placement. Several different types of portable vein transilluminators are available, such as VeinViewer, Veinlite LED, and AccuVein ([Fig. 15-3](#)). Although they may have different mechanisms of action, some using infrared light and some using laser, these devices penetrate only up to approximately 10 mm and so are limited to finding superficial veins.

Ultrasound-guided peripheral IV insertion can allow insertion into deeper veins. Although this technology is very valuable, it may increase the risks for complications. Arteries and nerves lie parallel to deep veins, and special training is needed to learn to identify these structures and avoid damaging them. In addition, when deeper veins are accessed, infiltration may go undetected until a significant amount of fluid has collected in the tissues. This complication can be particularly devastating if the solution is an irritant or vesicant. If these devices are not used, nurses must rely on sight and touch to insert an IV catheter.

For patients who need IV access but are at risk for fluid overload or do not need extra IV fluids, the peripheral vascular access device (VAD) can be converted into an intermittent IV lock, also called a *saline lock*. This device allows administration of specific drugs given IV push (e.g., furosemide [Lasix, Furoside 

Site Selection and Skin Preparation

The most appropriate veins for peripheral catheter placement include the dorsal venous network, basilic, cephalic, and median veins, as well as their branches ([Fig. 15-4](#)). However, cannulation of veins on the hand is not appropriate for older patients with a loss of skin turgor and poor vein condition and for active patients receiving infusion therapy in an ambulatory clinic or home care. Use of veins on the dorsal surface of the hands should be reserved for short-term infusion of non-vesicant and non-irritant solutions.

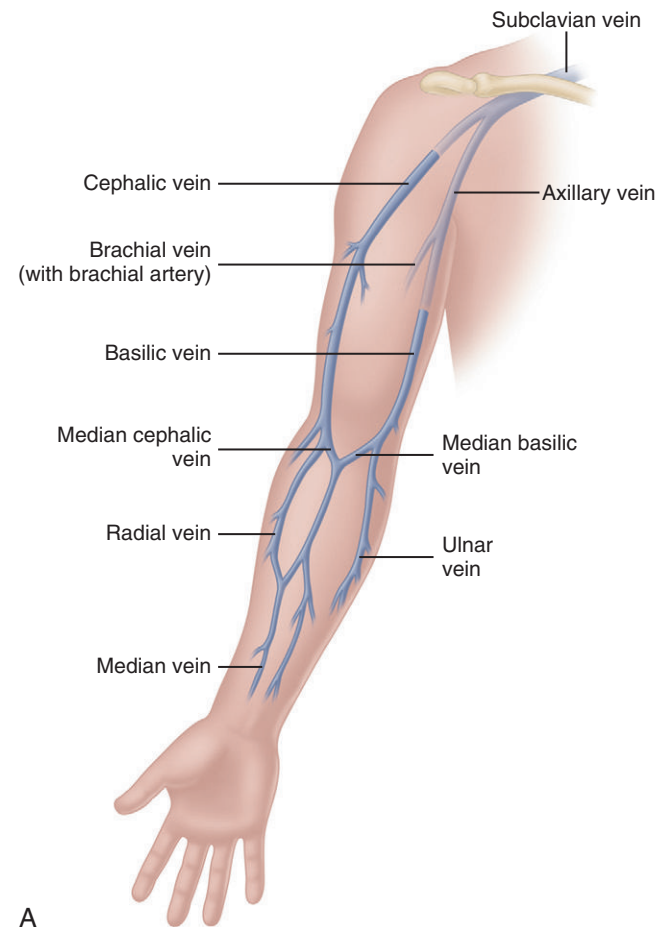
Mastectomy, axillary lymph node dissection, lymphedema, paralysis of the upper extremity, and the presence of dialysis grafts or fistulas alter the normal pattern of blood flow through the arm. Using veins in the extremity affected by these conditions requires a physician's request. Short peripheral catheters are not recommended for obtaining routine blood samples.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

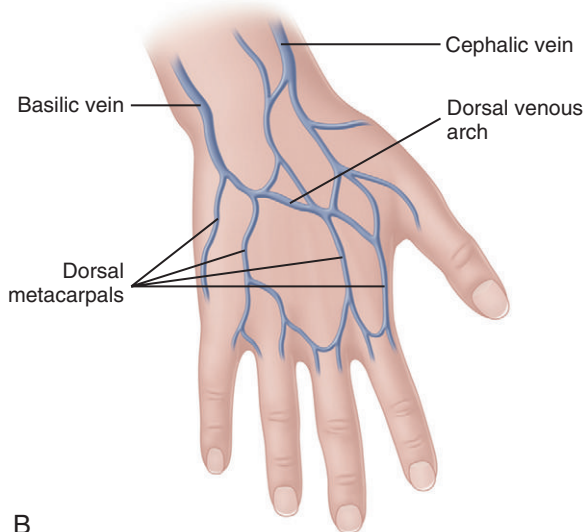
Critical Rescue

Avoid veins on the palmar side of the wrist because the median nerve is located close to veins in this area, making the venipuncture more painful and difficult to stabilize. The cephalic vein begins above the thumb and extends up the entire length of the arm. This vein is usually large and prominent, appearing as a prime site for catheter insertion. However, the sensory branch of the median nerve can intersect with the cephalic vein up to three times from its origin to about 4 to 5 inches up the lateral aspect of the arm. Damage to the nerve can result in permanent loss of function or complex regional pain syndrome, type 2 (CRPS) ([Masoorli, 2007](#)). Reports of tingling, feeling "pins and needles" in the extremity, or numbness during the venipuncture procedure can indicate nerve puncture. If any of these symptoms occur, stop the IV insertion procedure immediately, remove the catheter, and choose a new site.

Winged needles ("butterfly needles") are easy to insert but are associated with a high frequency of infiltration. They are most commonly used for injection of single-dose drugs or for drawing blood samples. Like a short peripheral catheter,



A



B

FIG. 15-4 Common IV sites. **A**, Inner arm. **B**, Dorsal surface of hand.

winged needles should also have an engineered safety mechanism to house the needle when removed.

Aseptic skin preparation and technique before IV insertion are crucial. Catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSI) can occur from a peripheral IV site. The CDC recommendations include:

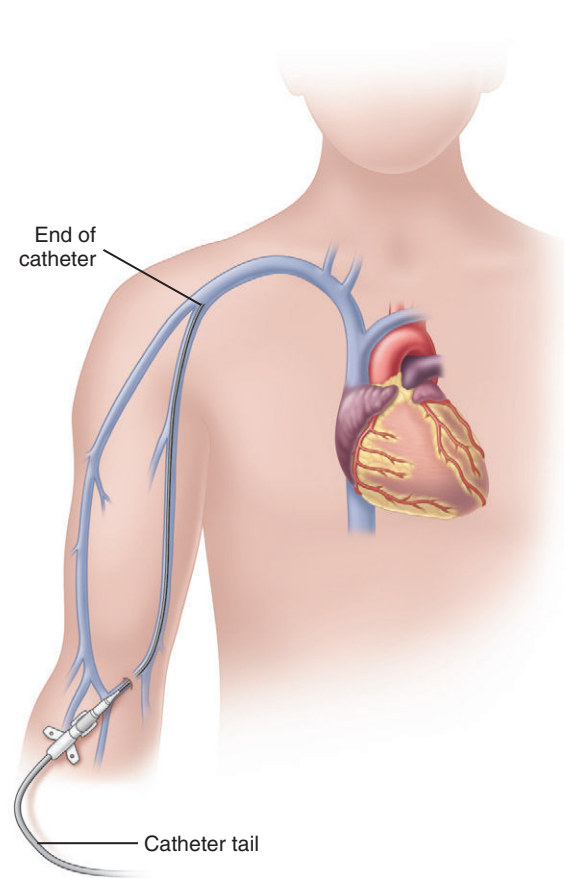


FIG. 15-5 Midline catheter; the tip of this catheter resides in a peripheral vein.

- Perform hand hygiene before palpating the insertion site.
- Clip hair—do not shave.
- Ensure that skin is clean.
- Wear clean gloves for peripheral IV insertion; do not touch the access site after application of antiseptics.
- Prepare clean skin with 70% alcohol (or chlorhexidine) before peripheral venous catheter insertion.
- Apply povidone-iodine to the skin, and allow it to dry for at least 2 minutes.

Midline Catheters

Midline catheters can be anywhere from 3 to 8 inches long, 3 to 5 Fr, and double or single lumen. They are inserted through the veins of the upper arm. The median antecubital vein is used most often if insertion is done without the aid of ultrasound guidance. With ultrasound guidance, deeper veins can be accessed and the insertion site can be further above the antecubital fossa. The basilic vein is preferred over the cephalic vein because of its larger diameter and straighter path. It also allows greater hemodilution of the fluids and medications being infused. The catheter tip is located in the upper arm with the tip residing no further into the venous network than the axillary vein (Fig. 15-5). These catheters are used for therapies lasting from 1 to 4 weeks; however, there are no recommendations for the optimal dwell time. Because

of the extended dwell time, strict sterile technique is used for insertion and dressing changes for a midline catheter (Rosenthal, 2008). Additional education and skill assessment are required for the nurse to be qualified to insert midline catheters.

A midline catheter can be used when skin integrity or limited peripheral veins make it difficult to maintain a short peripheral catheter. Patients who have received anticoagulation and/or steroid therapy can also benefit from avoidance of repeated IV sticks and the subsequent excessive bruising and hematoma formation.

Other indications include:

- Fluids for hydration
- Longer than 6 days and up to 4 weeks of therapy such as:
 - Antibiotics
 - Heparin infusions for deep vein thrombosis
 - Bronchodilators, such as aminophylline
 - Steroids

Midline catheters are considered to dwell in the peripheral circulation; the recommendations for infusates are the same as for short peripheral IVs. Fluids and medications infused through a midline catheter should have a pH between 5 and 9 and a final osmolarity of less than 600 mOsm/L (Perucca, 2010; Rosenthal, 2008). The pH and osmolarity outside these parameters increase the risk for complications like phlebitis and thrombosis. Midline catheters should not be used for infusion of **vesicant medications**—drugs that cause severe tissue damage if they escape into the subcutaneous tissue (**extravasation**). At a midline tip location, larger amounts of the drug can extravasate before the problem is detected.

All parenteral nutrition formulas, including those with low concentrations of dextrose, and solutions that have an osmolarity greater than 600 mOsm/L should not be infused through a midline catheter. Do not draw blood from these catheters routinely. Midline catheters should not be placed in extremities affected by mastectomy with lymphedema, paralysis, or dialysis grafts and fistulas. When using a double-lumen midline catheter, do not administer incompatible drugs simultaneously administered through both lumens because the blood flow rate in the axillary vein is not high enough to ensure adequate hemodilution and prevention of drug interaction in the vein.

Some midline catheters are designed with pressure-sensitive valves located near the internal catheter tip (e.g., Groshong, made by Bard Access Systems) or in the external catheter hub (e.g., PASV, made by Boston Scientific). These valves open when pressure is applied, allowing for infusion and aspiration. However, when no pressure is applied, they are closed to prevent blood refluxing (backing) into the lumen or air entering the bloodstream. The manufacturers of both catheters state to use only a saline flush for lines with pressure-sensitive valves.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The health care provider prescribes 3 L 5%D/0.45%NS to be infused over 24 hours. The nurse sets the rate at _____mL/hr of IV solution.

CENTRAL INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

In **central IV therapy**, the vascular access device (VAD) is placed in the central circulation, specifically within the superior vena cava (SVC) near its junction with the right atrium. Blood flow in the SVC is approximately 2 L/min compared with about 200 mL/min in the axillary vein. All central vascular access devices require confirmation of tip location by chest radiograph before solutions are infused (Hadaway, 2010a). However, the use of newer ultrasound systems, such as the Sherlock PICC tip location system, can decrease the need for repeated x-rays by confirming approximate catheter position. The practitioner inserts a specially designed magnetic stylet through the catheter before insertion into the patient so that the system can detect its tip location. These devices have been endorsed by the CDC and Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (Moreau, 2008a).

A number of types of central vascular access devices (CVADs) are available, depending on the purpose, duration, and insertion site availability. Several recent improvements in catheter materials allow antimicrobial and heparin coatings to reduce infection risk and improve the longevity of the catheter. Newer central catheters also allow for rapid injection rates required for contrast studies.

Peripherally Inserted Central Catheters

A **peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC)** is a long catheter inserted through a vein of the antecubital fossa (inner aspect of the bend of the arm) or the middle of the upper arm. Nurses who insert these CVADs require special training and certification.

In adults, the PICC length ranges from 18 to 29 inches (45–72 cm) with the tip residing in the superior vena cava (SVC) (Fig. 15–6). Placement of the catheter tip in veins distal to the SVC is avoided. This inappropriate tip location, often called a *mid-clavicular catheter*, is associated with much higher rates of thrombosis than when the tip is located in the SVC. Mid-clavicular tip locations are used only when anatomic or pathophysiologic changes prohibit placing the catheter into the SVC.

PICCs should be inserted early in the course of therapy before veins of the extremity have been damaged from multiple venipunctures and infusions. Insertion methods using guidewires and ultrasound systems greatly improve insertion success. The basilic vein is the preferred site for insertion; the cephalic vein can be used if necessary. *Sterile technique is used for insertion to reduce the risk for catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSIs). Before the catheter can be used for infusion, a chest x-ray indicating that the tip resides in the lower SVC is required when the catheter is not placed under fluoroscopy.*

PICCs are available in single-, dual-, or triple-lumen configurations and are available with both the Groshong valve and the pressure-activated safety valve (PASV). PICCs are also available as “Power PICCs” and can be used for contrast injection at a maximum of 5 mL/sec and a maximum pressure of 300 psi. They can also be connected to transducers and used to monitor central venous pressure (Bard Access Systems, 2011).

The most common complications from PICCs include phlebitis, thrombophlebitis, and CR-BSIs. Thrombophlebitis can be very serious and threatens the integrity of the vein.

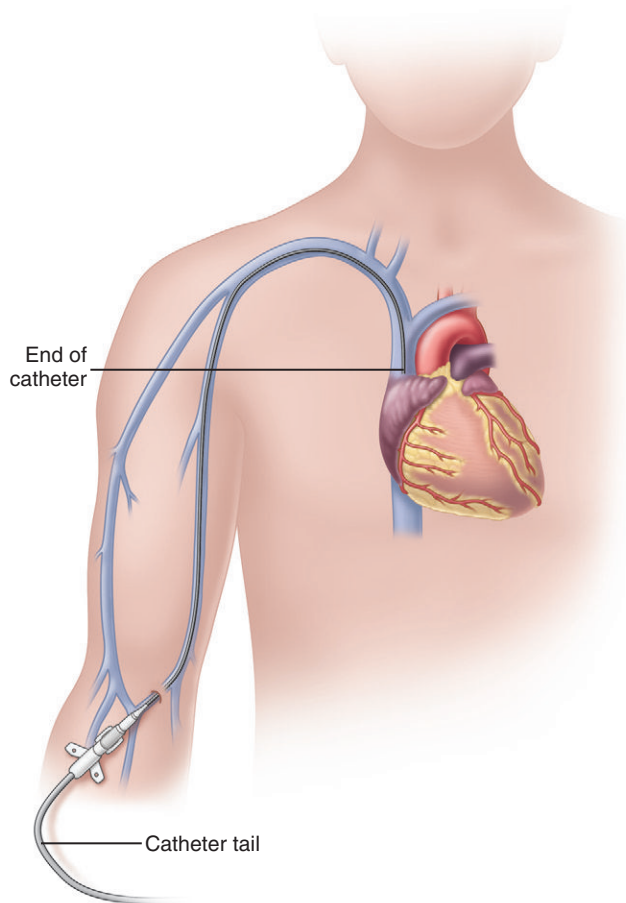


FIG. 15-6 Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) is placed peripherally in a vein of the upper arm with the tip resting in the superior vena cava.

CR-BSI has been noted to be less frequent in PICCs than in other central venous catheters (CVCs) because of the insertion site in the upper extremity. The cooler, drier skin of the upper arm has fewer types and numbers of microorganisms, leading to lower rates of infection. Accidental arterial puncture or excessive bleeding can occur on insertion and is controlled by direct pressure. Infiltration and extravasation are rare. Insertion complications such as pneumothorax associated with other CVCs do not occur with PICCs.

PICCs can accommodate infusion of all types of therapy because the tip resides in the SVC where the rapid blood flow quickly dilutes the fluids being infused. Therefore there are no limitations on the pH or osmolality of fluids that can be infused through a PICC. For example, patients requiring lengthy courses of antibiotics, chemotherapy agents, parenteral nutrition formulas, and vasopressor agents can benefit from this type of catheter. PICCs have been reported to dwell successfully for months or even years; however, the optimal dwell time is not known.

PICCs can be used for blood sampling; however, lumen sizes of 4 Fr or larger are recommended. Using lumens with small diameters may not yield a sample capable of producing the needed test results. Transfusion of blood through a PICC

usually requires the use of an infusion pump. Packed red blood cells are cold and viscous. The length of the catheter adds resistance and may prevent the blood from infusing within the 4-hour limit.

Teach patients with a PICC to perform usual ADLs; however, they should avoid excessive physical activity. Muscle contractions in the arm from physical activity like heavy lifting can lead to catheter dislodgment and possible lumen occlusion. PICCs may be contraindicated in paraplegic patients who rely on their arms for mobility.

PICC insertion is commonly performed in the patient's hospital room, an outpatient treatment facility, or the imaging department. Regardless of where they are inserted, the same precautions must be taken as with any other central line insertion using the catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI) prevention bundle. Major components of this prevention bundle include:

- Hand hygiene
- Maximal barrier precautions upon insertion
- Chlorhexidine skin antisepsis
- Optimal catheter site selection and post-placement care with avoidance of the femoral vein for central venous access in adult patients
- Daily review of line necessity with prompt removal of unnecessary lines

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The INS recommendation for flushing PICC lines not actively used is 5 mL of heparin (10 units/mL) in a 10-mL syringe at least daily. Ten mL of sterile saline is used to flush before and after medication administration, and 20 mL of sterile saline is flushed after drawing blood. Always use 10-mL barrel syringes to flush any central line because the pressure exerted by a smaller barrel poses a risk for rupturing the catheter.

Nontunneled Percutaneous Central Venous Catheters

Nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheters (CVCs) are inserted by a physician through the subclavian vein in the upper chest or the internal jugular veins in the neck using sterile technique. Occasionally the patient's condition may require insertion of the CVC in a femoral vein, but the rate of infection is very high. If the femoral site must be used, it is removed as soon as possible.

CVCs are usually 7 to 10 inches (18 to 25 cm) long and have one to as many as five lumens ([Fig. 15-7](#)). These catheters are also available with antimicrobial coatings such as chlorhexidine and silver sulfadiazine. The tip resides in the superior vena cava (SVC) and is confirmed by a chest x-ray. Nontunneled percutaneous CVCs are most commonly used for emergent or trauma situations, critical care, and surgery. There is no recommendation for optimal dwell time. However, these catheters are commonly used for short-term situations and are *not* the catheter of choice for home care or ambulatory clinic settings.

Insertion of these central catheters requires the patient to be placed in the Trendelenburg position, usually with a rolled towel between the shoulder blades. This position may be difficult or contraindicated for patients with respiratory conditions, spinal curvatures, and increased intracranial pressure,

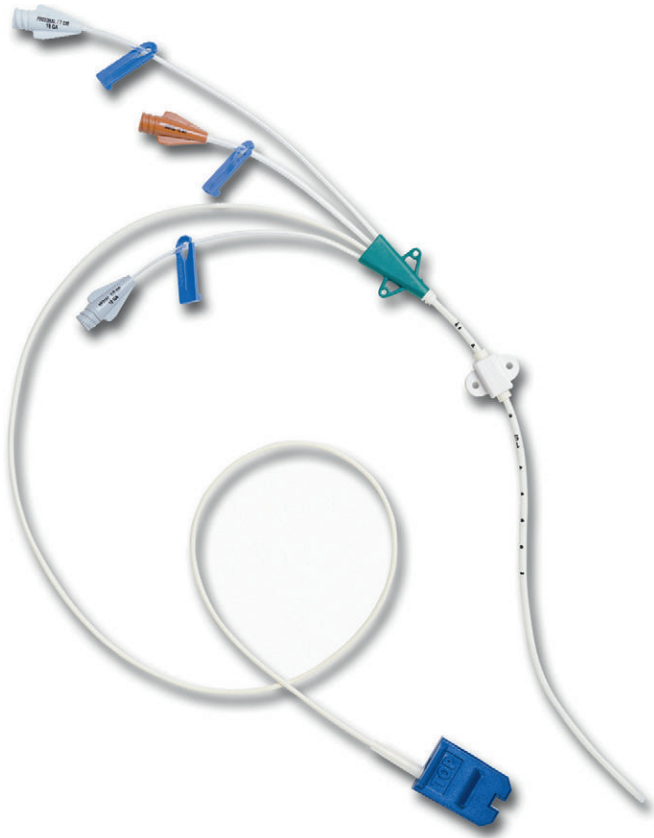


FIG. 15-7 The Edwards Lifesciences PreSep central venous catheter (CVC); often placed in the subclavian or internal jugular vein with the tip of the catheter resting in the superior vena cava.

especially for older adults. Trauma, surgery, or radiation in the neck or chest prohibits the use of these devices as well. The presence of a tracheotomy increases the risk for cross-contamination of the insertion site. The warmer, moister skin of the neck and upper chest has more types and higher numbers of microorganisms, resulting in more CR-BSIs with this type of catheter.

Tunneled Central Venous Catheters

Tunneled central venous catheters are VADs that have a portion of the catheter lying in a subcutaneous tunnel, separating the points where the catheter enters the vein from where it exits the skin. This separation is intended to prevent the organisms on the skin from reaching the bloodstream (Fig. 15-8). The catheter has a cuff made of a rough material that is positioned inside the subcutaneous tunnel. These cuffs commonly contain antibiotics, which also reduce the risk for infection. The tissue granulates into the cuff, providing a mechanical barrier to microorganisms and anchoring the catheter in place.

The design of tunneled CVCs requires surgical techniques for insertion and removal. Single-, dual-, and triple-lumens are available. These catheters were originally named for the physicians who designed them, including Broviac, Hickman, and Leonard catheters.

Tunneled catheters are used primarily when the need for infusion therapy is frequent and long-term. Patients needing

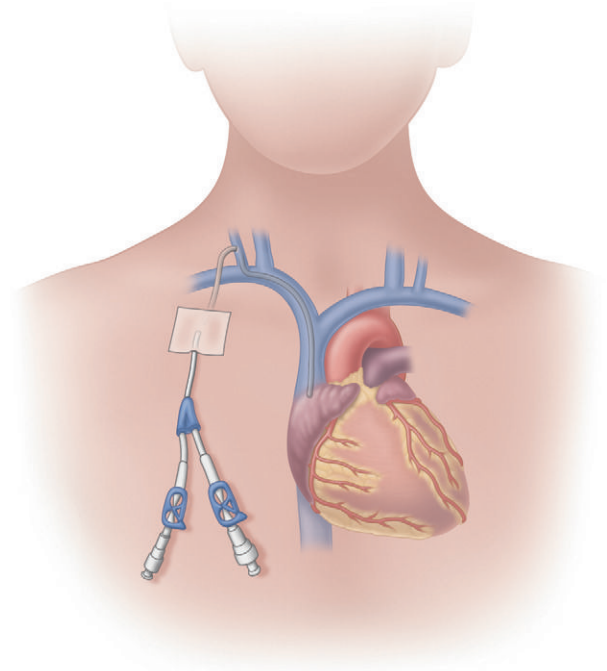


FIG. 15-8 Tunneled catheter. A portion of this catheter lies in a subcutaneous tunnel, separating the point where the catheter enters the vein from where it exits the skin.

parenteral nutrition for months, years, or the remainder of their life commonly choose a tunneled catheter. Tunneled catheters are also chosen when several weeks or months of infusion therapy are needed and a PICC is not a good choice. For example, paraplegic patients needing 6 to 8 weeks of antibiotics are not good candidates for a PICC because of the excessive use of the upper extremities for mobility. Some oncology patients may prefer a tunneled catheter instead of an implanted port because they cannot tolerate the needle sticks required for accessing those devices.

Implanted Ports

Implanted ports are very different from other central vascular access devices (CVADs). They consist of a portal body, a dense septum over a reservoir, and a catheter. They can be single- or double-lumen and come in various sizes. A subcutaneous pocket is surgically created to house the port body. The catheter is inserted into the vein and attached to the portal body. The septum is made of self-sealing silicone and is located in the center of the port body over the reservoir; the catheter extends from the side of the port body. The incision is closed, and no part of the catheter is visible externally; therefore this device has the least impact on body image (Fig. 15-9).

Some implanted ports are power-injectable and can be used for obtaining contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CECT). These devices can withstand 5 mL/sec at up to 300 psi pressure. The BARD PowerPort can be identified by palpation of three bumps on the top of the septum and a triangular-shaped port. Be careful not to press firmly on the bumps because it can be painful to the patient. Be sure to use a power-injection-rated noncoring needle with this type of port when it is used for this purpose. These needles come

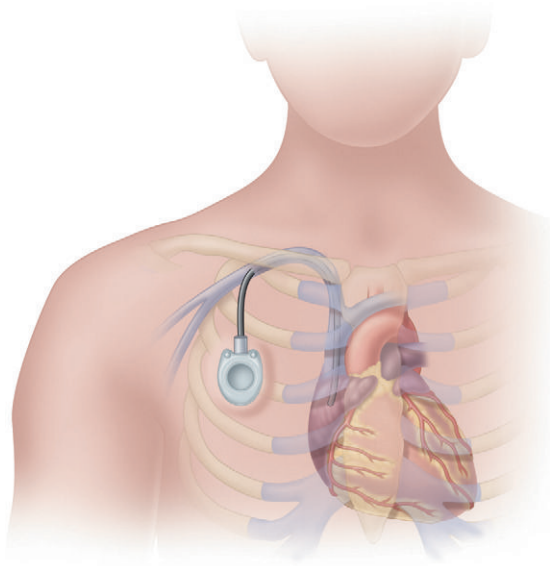


FIG. 15-9 Positioning of an implanted port.

with labeling identifying that they are power-injection rated (Fig. 15-10).

Venous ports may be placed on the upper chest or the upper extremity. The venous catheter may enter either the subclavian or internal jugular vein. Although an implanted port is most commonly used in the venous system, the catheter may be placed in arteries, the epidural space, or the peritoneal cavity, with the port pocket located over a bony prominence.

Implanted ports are accessed by using a noncoring needle (a common brand name is *Huber*) that is specially designed with a deflected tip (Fig. 15-11). This design slices through the dense septum without coring out a small piece of it, thus preserving the integrity of the septum. Port bodies placed in the chest have a larger septum and usually tolerate about 2000 punctures. Port bodies placed in the upper extremity are smaller and are rated to tolerate about 750 punctures.

Before puncture, palpate the port to locate the septum. Carefully palpate to feel the shape and depth of the port body to ensure puncture of the septum, not the attached catheter. Some have attached extension sets and wings to stabilize the needle. One important feature is an engineered safety mechanism to contain the needle when it is removed from the septum. Because the dense septum holds tightly to the needle, there can be a rebound when it is pulled from the septum, often resulting in needle stick injury to the nurse.

Implanted ports need to be flushed after each use and at least once a month between courses of therapy. This procedure is done to prevent clot formation in the internal chamber of the port and is often referred to as “locking” or “de-accessing.” The INS recommendation for locking or de-accessing a port is 5 mL of 100 units heparin/mL. However, locking a central line to prevent it from clotting is controversial and under-researched (Gorski et al., 2010). When the port is not accessed, there is no external catheter requiring a dressing. Puncture of the skin over the port is required to gain

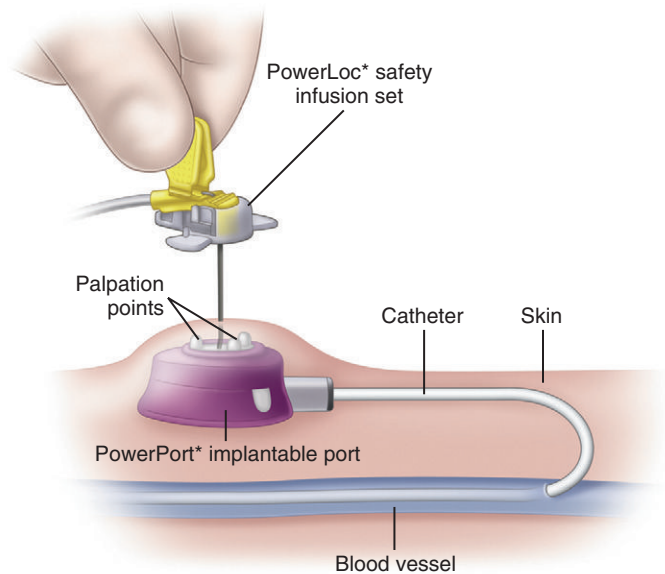


FIG. 15-10 A noncoring needle for accessing an implanted power port.

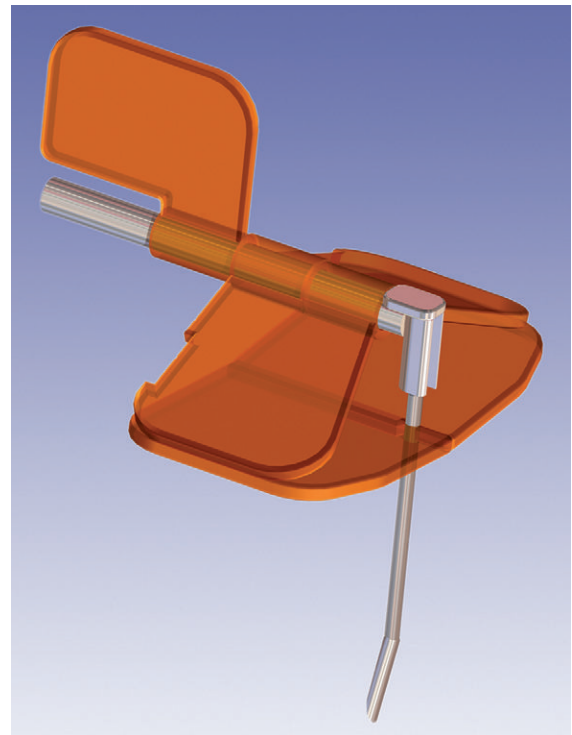


FIG. 15-11 Noncoring needle. The safety mechanism traps the needle to prevent needle stick injury.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Before giving a drug through an implanted port, always check for blood return. If there is no blood return, hold the drug until patency and adequate noncoring needle placement of the port are established. Serious extravasations of vesicant drugs can occur because a fibrin sheath (flap or tail) may occur at the tip of the catheter, clot it, and cause retrograde subcutaneous leakage.

access to the port body, causing pain for some patients. Topical anesthetic creams can be used to make the access procedure more tolerable.

Hemodialysis Catheters

Hemodialysis catheters have very large lumens to accommodate the hemodialysis procedure or a pheresis procedure that harvests specific blood cells. They may be tunneled for long-term needs or nontunneled for short-term needs. A hemodialysis catheter is critical to the management of renal failure and must function well. Catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSIs) and vein thrombosis are common problems; therefore this catheter should not be used for administration of other fluids or drugs except in an emergency.

The concentration of heparin used to lock hemodialysis catheters ranges from 1000 to 10,000 units/mL. Researchers have demonstrated that using 1,000 units/mL reduces the incidence of post-insertion bleeding but may be associated with an increased need for recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) to maintain patency. A flush of 1000 units heparin/mL or a solution of 4% sodium citrate in the amount of the dwell volume of each lumen has been recommended (Moran & Ash, 2010). Heparin is most often used because sodium citrate has not been as commercially available in the preparation needed. To prevent systemic anticoagulation and subsequent bleeding, be sure to aspirate the heparin from the lumens before use.

INFUSION SYSTEMS

Nurses administering infusion therapies need to understand how infusion systems work. This knowledge ensures that the patient can benefit from a particular system's advantages while minimizing any potential complications.

Containers

Infusion containers are made of glass or plastic. *Glass* bottles were the original fluid container to be mass produced. They are easily sterilized, and it is easy to read the amount of fluid remaining in the bottle. Also, glass is inert and so cannot interact with some drugs like plastic can. However, glass bottles are heavy and cannot easily be used in many situations, such as patient transport during emergencies. These containers require an air vent for fluids to flow freely from them. The most common method is to use an administration set with a special filtered vent. Some bottles may have a straw tube open to the room air through the rubber stopper in the bottle and extending to above the level of the fluid. Bottles with a venting straw do not have a barrier to prevent contaminants in the air from entering the fluid.

Plastic containers are considered *closed systems* because they do not rely on outside air to allow the fluid to infuse. Instead, atmospheric pressure pushes against the flexible sides of the container, allowing the fluid to flow by gravity. For this reason, plastic containers do not require vented administration sets. These containers are lightweight, resistant to breaking, easier to store, and easy to use in emergency conditions. Therefore they are used more frequently than glass containers.

All plastic containers were commonly made of polyvinyl chloride (PVC). To increase flexibility and strength, PVC required the addition of a plasticizer, such as

di-2-ethylhexyl-phthalate or DEHP. Concern has been growing in the past few years over the exposure of patients to this chemical because it can leach from the plastic fluid container or tubing and infuse into the patient with the IV fluid or medication. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has determined that there is little to no risk posed to most patients by exposure to the amount of DEHP released from IV bags with infusion of crystalloids or drugs. However, there is concern about the buildup of chemical exposure from many sources over a lifetime and specifically the potential effects of DEHP on the development of the male reproductive system. Therefore many hospitals are using PVC-free or DEHP-free IV bags, especially for high-risk groups such as neonates and children (Food and Drug Administration [FDA], 2009).

One disadvantage of removing DEHP from the plastic bags is that the bags are less pliable and more prone to rupture. Some institutions do not allow these bags to be sent through a pneumatic tube system because the pressure exerted has caused the bags to rupture during transport.

A problem with plastic containers is that they are not compatible with insulin, nitroglycerin, lorazepam (Ativan), fat emulsions, and lipid-based drugs. Nitroglycerin and insulin adhere to the walls of the PVC container, making it impossible to know exactly how much medication the patient is receiving. There is evidence that a priming volume of 20 mL of insulin solution is required to minimize the effect of insulin absorption losses to the plastics in IV lines (Goldberg et al., 2006).

Another concern with plastic bags is the accuracy of reading the amount of fluid remaining in the container. The middle graduations have been shown to be 10% above or below the actual amount of fluid, but the first and last markings could be inaccurate by as much as 40% (Perucca, 2010).

Semi-rigid containers are made of plastic but offer some of the benefits of glass, such as the absence of plasticizers and drug incompatibility. These containers are lightweight and unbreakable but are more bulky and less flexible. They also require an air vent to allow the fluid to flow freely.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Regardless of the type of fluid container being used, check it for cracks or pinholes before use. Always observe the fluid for **turbidity** (cloudiness) or any unusual color that could indicate contamination.

Administration Sets

The administration set is the connection between the catheter and the fluid container. Numerous sets are available in many different configurations. The type and purpose of the infusion determine the type of administration set needed. Some sets are *generic*, meaning that they are appropriate for most infusions. Other sets are used for specific types of infusions, such as blood transfusion. Still others are *dedicated*, meaning that they must be used with a specific manufacturer's infusion controlling device. Information that describes their proper use is provided on the packaging of administration sets.

Secondary Administration Sets

A primary continuous administration set is used to infuse the primary IV fluid by either a gravity infusion or an electronic

infusion pump. A short **secondary administration set**, also known as a **piggyback set**, is attached to the primary set at a Y-injection site and is used to deliver intermittent medications. Directions and diagrams for use are typically on the packaging. Once attached, these sets should remain connected together as an infusion system. If multiple intermittent medications are required, it may be possible to use only one secondary set rather than a secondary set for each medication. This depends on the compatibility of the drugs. Back flushing from the primary IV fluid may be performed to maintain the closed system and allow the secondary set to be used for multiple doses of the same or compatible medications. Change these sets every 72 to 96 hours.

Intermittent Administration Sets

When no primary continuous fluid is being infused, an intermittent administration set is used to infuse multiple doses of medications through a catheter that has been capped with a needleless connection device. The medication bag from the previous dose is removed and the new one attached. The sterile cap covering the distal end of the set is removed, and the set is attached to the catheter. Because both ends of the set are being manipulated with each dose, the INS standards of practice state that this set should be changed every 24 hours. If a secondary administration set is detached from the primary set, it should be considered an intermittent set and changed every 24 hours (INS, 2006). When the administration set is used for infusion of lipid solutions, change it every 24 hours. Change blood tubing within 4 hours and tubing used to infuse propofol (Diprivan) every 6 to 12 hours (McGoldrick, 2010). These fluids are thick and can clog the tubing.

Administration sets are sterile in the fluid pathway and under the sterile caps on each end of the set. The set is not packaged as a completely sterile product and cannot be added to a sterile field. Careful attention is required to maintain the sterility of the spike and the connection end of the tubing to prevent introduction of microorganisms into the catheter and bloodstream.

Add-on Devices

Several other types of add-on devices include short extension sets, injection caps, and filters. Extension sets may be packaged as a sterile product for adding to a sterile field; however, always check the product label to ascertain this information.

Administration sets have two ways to connect to the catheter hub: a slip lock or a Luer-Lok. The *slip lock* is a male end that slips into the female catheter hub. A *Luer-Lok* connection has the same male end with a threaded collar that requires twisting onto the corresponding threads of the catheter hub. All connections, including *extension sets*, should have a Luer-Lok design to ensure that the set remains firmly connected. Loose connections lead to fluid leakage and increase the risk for contamination and subsequent bloodstream infection. When using a central venous catheter, a Luer-Lok connection is critical to reduce the risk for air embolism. Tape is not considered an adequate mechanism for securing set connections.

Luer-Lok devices may be purposefully or accidentally disconnected. Patients or visitors may disconnect the system to allow the patient to get out of bed or the chair. Or, the device may become accidentally disconnected when the patient

turns or moves. In either case, be sure to reconnect the device by following the proper sequence to reassemble the IV system components. Fatalities have resulted when nurses have reconnected IV tubing to a tracheostomy or blood pressure cuff.

Filters may be part of the administration set or may be separate add-on pieces. Their purpose is to remove particulate matter, microorganisms, and air from the infusion system. Filter sizes depend on the pore size, with common sizes being 5 microns intended to remove gross particles, 1.2 microns used to filter lipid-containing parenteral nutrition, and 0.22 microns intended to remove all particles and microorganisms. Filters should be placed as close to the catheter hub as possible.

Particulate matter in the IV fluid, a primary reason to use filters, comprises undissolved, unintended substances and may include rubber pieces, glass particles, cotton fibers, drug particles, paper, and metal fibers. These particles become trapped in the small circulation of the lungs. A red blood cell is about 5 microns in diameter and is the largest size that can pass through the pulmonary capillary bed, and yet IV fluids may contain particles larger than this. For patients receiving infusion therapy for long periods, a significant number of particles could block the blood flow through the pulmonary circulation. Microcirculation in the spleen, kidneys, and liver could also be affected. Particulate matter has also been implicated in the development of phlebitis in peripheral veins.

Other concerns with using filters include the possibility for their rupture, their use with certain drugs that bind to the filter surface, using the correct size of filter for drugs with large molecules, and choosing a filter that will tolerate the pressure exerted by infusion pumps. Rupture is most commonly associated with the exertion of high pressure exceeding the limit tolerated by the specific filter. Some drugs cannot be filtered because they are retained inside the filter because of their chemical nature or molecule size. For these reasons, medication filtration during the process of admixing is commonly used today as an alternative to final filtration at the bedside. Drugs of a very small quantity should be administered below the filter.

Filters used on blood administration sets have much larger pore size and are not interchangeable with filters used for fluids and medications. A standard blood filter ranges from 170 to 220 microns and removes microclots and other debris caused by blood collection and storage. Microaggregate filters have a pore size of 20, 40, or 80 microns and are used to remove degenerating platelets, white blood cells, and fibrin strands. Leukocyte-removal filters are used to remove white blood cells that cause febrile and allergic blood transfusion reactions, cytomegalovirus, and some herpes viruses.

Needleless Connection Devices

In July 1992, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) published guidelines entitled *Occupational Exposure to Bloodborne Pathogens, Final Rule*. This document requires health care organizations to initiate engineering controls “that isolate or remove the bloodborne pathogen hazard from the workplace.” This standard was amended in 2001 with the passage of the Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act. This regulation requires the use of devices engineered with safety mechanisms and mandates that staff who perform these tasks be directly involved with selecting products. It also requires each employer to maintain a sharps injury log with

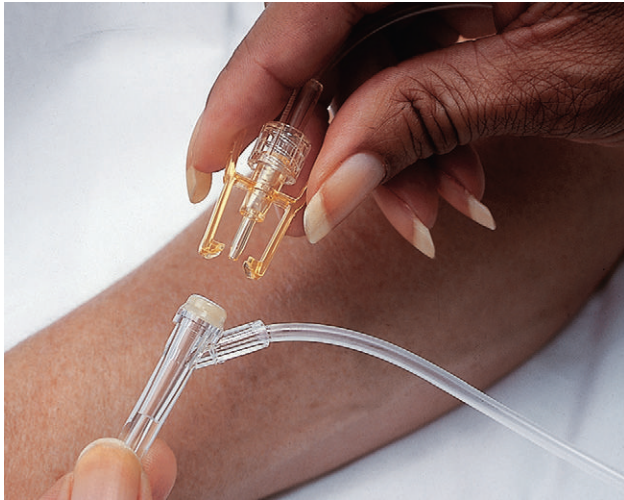


FIG. 15-12 Example of a needleless connector.

details of each incident. Many products are designed to minimize health care workers' exposure to contaminated needles. Luer-activated devices are the most common design for needleless systems today.

Although these devices have reduced the incidence of accidental needle sticks for health care professionals, concern remains about a possible increase in the risk for catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSIs) (Rosenthal, 2006a). This concern stems from the crevices created with the diaphragm and Luer-Lok design. Blood and bacteria can be trapped in the crevices, and meticulous cleaning is required with each use.

Various designs are available for connectors that provide positive or negative displacement of fluid when the needleless syringe is removed. Needleless positive-pressure valve (PPV) connectors were developed to prevent backflow of blood into the IV catheter, thereby decreasing chances of thrombus formation and CR-BSI. Several newer connectors are silver-impregnated to reduce bacterial growth (Fig. 15-12). Be sure to check which type of connector valve is used in your facility because the flushing technique differs depending on type. Researchers have found conflicting results about the relationships between these devices and CR-BSI and catheter occlusion (Khalidi et al., 2009; Mitchell et al., 2009; O'Grady et al., 2011).

Conclusive studies are needed to determine the best design for needleless systems. Until then, implement these interventions to reduce infection risk:

- Clean all needleless system connections vigorously with antimicrobial for 30 seconds (usually 70% alcohol or 2% chlorhexidine swabs) before connecting infusion sets or syringes, paying special attention to the small ridges in the Luer-Lok device.
- Do not tape connections between tubing sets.
- Use evidence-based hand hygiene guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the Occupational and Safety Health Administration (OSHA) in the United States.

Rate-Controlling Infusion Devices

The ability to regulate the rate and volume of infusions is critical to the safe and accurate administration of

medications and fluids to patients. Nurses have a choice of numerous devices that can be electronically or mechanically regulated.

Electronic infusion devices (IV pumps) are used universally in acute care institutions. They are also used in long-term care settings and at home. In addition, "smart pumps" provide the latest infusion computer technology to promote patient safety and save nursing time. *Remember that the use of pumps does not decrease your responsibility to carefully monitor the patient's infusion site and the infusion rate.*

In inpatient settings, IV pumps are pole-mounted. As their name implies, these electronic devices with battery backup pump drugs or fluids under pressure. They accurately measure the volume of fluid being infused by using one of three mechanisms:

- A syringe-type mechanism that fills and empties
- A wavelike, peristaltic action that pushes fluid along the tubing
- A series of microchambers that fill and empty

Regardless of the pumping mechanism, these devices require dedicated cassette tubing designed to match the pump.

Syringe pumps use an electronic or battery-powered piston to push the plunger continuously at a selected milliliter-per-hour rate. The use of syringe pumps is limited to small-volume continuous or intermittent infusions and depends on the syringe size. Antibiotics and patient-controlled analgesia are frequently delivered with syringe pumps. Patients requiring fluid restrictions can also benefit from using a syringe pump because smaller yet accurate volumes can be used to dilute medications.

Ambulatory pumps are generally used for home care patients and allow them to return to their usual activities while receiving infusion therapy. These pumps have a wide range of sizes, with some requiring a backpack, but they usually weigh less than 6 pounds. They are typically used to accurately deliver continuous infusions, such as parenteral nutrition, pain medication, and many programmable drug schedules. Frequent battery recharging or replacement is usually necessary.

Electronic infusion devices can be programmed in many different ways and require a thorough knowledge of the specific brand being used. Infusion rate and the volume to be infused are usually entered in single milliliter increments, but some can be programmed as fractions of a milliliter. Some pumps allow the rate to be programmed to taper or ramp up and down at the beginning and ending of the infusion. Secondary syringe infusion, secondary infusion rate, remote site programming, adjustable infusion pressure, and integration into the nurse call system also are possible.

Electronic infusion devices have a variety of alarms, such as air-in-line, upstream and downstream occlusion, infusion complete, and low-battery or power warnings. All devices must have some mechanism to prevent free flow of the infusing fluid or medication. When the cassette or tubing is removed from the pump, this mechanism automatically stops fluid flow until it is properly replaced in the pump. This safety measure prevents accidental rapid infusion of large amounts of fluid or medication, which could lead to serious clinical problems.

In the past few years, **smart pumps** (infusion pumps with dosage calculation software) have been promoted to reduce adverse drug events (ADEs). Incorrect programming of

pumps without this feature is one of the most common types of drug errors, especially in hospitals. Multiple libraries of drug information are stored in the pump manufacturer's medical management system. This software allows the facility to pre-program dosing limits, especially for high-alert drugs. Examples of smart pumps are the B. Braun Outlook® 400ES and the Baxter Sigma Spectrum infusion system.

The newest development in smart pumps is a wireless network connection. Drug libraries can be updated via a wireless connection, thus eliminating the necessity of manually updating each pump. In addition to preventing drug errors, smart pump systems record potential errors that would have occurred without these safety mechanisms (Jacobs, 2006).

Dose-track technology is intended to transmit the infusion data to the institution's pharmacy so that the correct patient receives the correct medication. Dose-guard technology alerts the nurse if institution-defined dose limits are exceeded. These newer technologies provide safeguards for patients to keep them safe. However, the "smarter" the pump, the more extensive the programming steps are and the more alarms that the nurse must respond to. In addition, technology and wireless connections can fail. The challenge for nurses is to maintain the skill of manual dose calculation and rate control, to acknowledge and validate all alarms, and to guard against becoming desensitized to alarms.

Mechanically regulated devices can be used to deliver intermittent medications such as antibiotics or continuous pain medications in community-based health or home care setting. In acute care settings, devices called "infusers" may be found in surgical services. They are powered by positive pressure from the collapsing balloon or roller returning to its coiled position.

The systems include elastomeric balloons, spring-coiled syringes and containers, and a multi-chambered fluid container placed in a mechanical roller (Accufuser or On-Q PainBuster) (Fig. 15-13). These small portable devices do not require power sources such as batteries or electricity. They deliver a preset infusion rate, and fluid volume is determined by the size of the fluid container; however, most hold only 50 to 100 mL.

NURSING CARE FOR PATIENTS RECEIVING INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

Educating the Patient

The current trend in health care demands that we partner with our patients to provide the best patient-centered care. In 2010, The Joint Commission added the requirement that all patients who have central lines placed in the hospital must have education on prevention of catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI). Before catheter insertion, educate the patient and family about:

- The type of catheter to be used
- Hand hygiene and aseptic technique for care of the catheter
- The therapy required
- Alternatives to the catheter and therapy
- Activity limitations
- Any signs or symptoms of complications that should be reported to a health care professional



FIG. 15-13 On-Q PainBuster pump (mechanical infuser).

Provide written information before placement of a long-term catheter, and continue to assess the patient's knowledge level and provide more information or answers as needed. Most manufacturers of PICCs, tunneled catheters, and implanted ports provide patient information booklets. However, specific information about the chosen procedures and supplies may be required. Conversation and pictures will be helpful for patients who are literacy challenged (have a low reading level).

Performing the Nursing Assessment

All central VADs require a postinsertion chest x-ray to document the tip location. The initial verbal and subsequent written report should contain specific information about the catheter tip location in relation to anatomic structures. The nurse's knowledge of accurate tip location is required before beginning infusion through the catheter. Repeating the x-ray during catheter use may be necessary if the patient reports unusual pain or sensation.

Nursing assessment for all infusion systems should be systematic. Begin with the insertion site and work upward, following the tubing. Know the type of catheter your patient has in place. Be sure to find out the length of catheter, the insertion site, and tip location to perform a complete assessment. Assess the insertion site by looking for redness, swelling, hardness, or drainage. Lightly palpate the area over the dressing. When a midline catheter or PICC is used, assess the entire extremity and upper chest for signs of phlebitis and thrombosis. When a tunneled catheter is used, assess the exit site, the entire length of the tunnel, and the point where the catheter enters the vein. For a well-healed catheter, it may not be possible to detect the vein entrance site. On newly inserted catheters, there could be a small puncture site with a suture or securement device. For implanted ports,

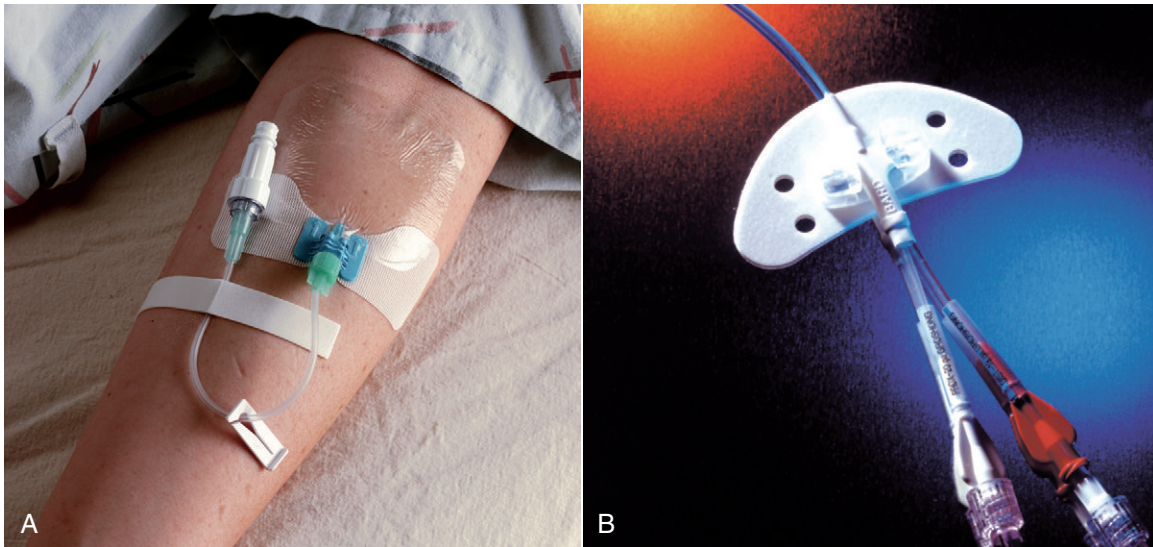


FIG. 15-14 The StatLock provides a standardized method to prevent catheter movement.

assess the incision and surgically created subcutaneous pocket.

Assess the integrity of the dressing, making sure it is clean, dry, and adherent to the skin on all sides. Check all connections on the administration set, and ensure that they are secure. Be sure they are not taped. Check the rate of infusion for all fluids by either counting drops or checking the infusion pump. Assess the amount of fluid that has infused from the container. Is it accurate, or is it infusing too fast or too slow? Adjust the rate to the prescribed flow rate. Check all labels on fluid containers for the patient's name and fluid or medication. *Be sure that the correct solution is being infused!*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Avoid taking blood pressures in an extremity with any type of catheter in place. If a short peripheral catheter is being used for continuous infusion, the compression while taking the blood pressure can increase venous pressure, causing fluid to overflow from the puncture site and infiltration. When a midline catheter or PICC is being used, compression from the blood pressure cuff could increase vein irritation and lead to phlebitis.

Draw blood samples in the extremity opposite from all catheters. Blood should not be drawn from a venipuncture site proximal to (above) an infusing peripheral catheter because the infusing fluid could alter the results of the test to be performed. Venipuncture at or near the insertion site of a midline catheter or PICC could damage the catheter and add to areas of venous inflammation.

Securing and Dressing the Catheter

Adequate catheter securement is vital to prevent many complications. Tape, sutures, and specially designed securement devices can be used for this purpose. For a short peripheral catheter, tape strips are most common; however, the tape should be *clean*. Tape strips from a peripheral IV start kit are preferred. Strips of tape should not be taken from rolls of tape moved between patient's rooms, from other procedures, or from uniform pockets. Precutting tape and placing it on the patient's bedrails, your uniform or scrubs, or other object should also be avoided to prevent infection.

Newer *securement devices* are designed for all catheter types and provide an evidence-based method to prevent VAD movement (INS, 2006). Recent studies have shown that these devices, such as the StatLock IV stabilization device, prevent peripheral and central catheters from becoming dislodged (Fig. 15-14). In addition, they prevent catheter complications, like phlebitis and infiltration. Use of securement devices, rather than tape, also provides significant cost savings by decreasing the number of IV restarts. To prevent skin tears, remove the adhesive on a StatLock with 70% alcohol.

PICCs and nontunneled percutaneous central catheters may be sutured in place; however, this creates additional breaks in the skin that could become infected. If these sutures are loose or broken, notify the health care provider to replace them. IV catheter sutures are being replaced with securement devices in some facilities.

Tunneled catheters usually have sutures placed near the skin exit site, which are removed after the tunnel has healed. The incision over a port pocket will have sutures until it has healed.

Sterile dressings used over the insertion site protect the skin and puncture site. For a short *peripheral* catheter, the transparent membrane dressings do not require routine changes; site rotation is every 72 to 96 hours. Tape and sterile gauze or a transparent membrane dressing can be used for midline catheters and all types of *central venous* dressings. Tape and gauze dressings should be changed every 48 hours; transparent membrane dressings, such as Tegaderm, are changed at least every 7 days (Gorski, 2007). The initial dressing on a midline catheter or PICC is usually tape and gauze, changed

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Site protection may be needed for short peripheral catheters or for port access needles. Plastic shields can be placed over the site to prevent accidental bumping or pressure from clothing. Make sure you can easily assess the site frequently. Never place a restraint or opaque dressing over a peripheral IV site, especially when infusing an irritant or vesicant.

within 24 hours after insertion because some bleeding is likely. Transparent membrane dressings can be used for subsequent dressing. Document all sterile dressing changes and IV site assessments in the appropriate patient record per agency policy.

When changing the dressing, remove it by pulling laterally from side to side. It can also be removed by holding the external catheter and pulling it off toward the insertion site. *Never pull it off by pulling away from the insertion site because this could dislodge the catheter!*

After removing the dressing from a midline catheter or any central venous catheter, note the external catheter length. Compare this length with the original length at insertion. If the length has changed, the catheter tip location has also changed and may no longer be in a vein appropriate for infusion. Follow agency policy or notify the health care provider about the length change. A repeat chest x-ray may be needed, and careful assessment of the type of therapy and remaining length of therapy will likely be required.

Protect the external catheter, dressing, and all attached tubing from water because it is a source of contamination. While bathing, be sure that the unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) cover the extremity. Plastic trash bags can be taped over the extremity; however, devices specially designed for this purpose are more convenient for the patient to use.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

You are a charge nurse on a busy medical unit where almost every patient has some type of IV therapy. While making rounds, you notice that an experienced nurse orientee pre-cut tape strips for securing a patient's peripheral VAD and placed them on the edge of the overbed table. After connecting the IV tubing to the catheter, he removed his gloves to apply the tape. You also notice that he did not label the tubing with today's date, time, and his initials as per agency policy. Today is his last day of orientation before having a full patient assignment on the unit.

1. What violations of the evidence-based interventions for preventing the IHI catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI) prevention bundle did you notice?
2. What will you do or say at this time while the orientee is caring for the patient?
3. After leaving the patient's room, what will you say to the orientee?
4. How can these violations be prevented in the future? What is the value of memory checklists to ensure consistency among nurses caring for patients with IVs?

Changing Administration Sets and Needleless Connectors

Primary and secondary administration sets are changed using sterile technique usually every 72 or 96 hours; however, certain types of fluids require more frequent change. These include lipid emulsion, blood products, and drugs such as propofol. Identify when the tubing was changed according to agency protocol, and document.

Plan the change of administration sets and fluid containers to occur at the same time, if possible, to minimize the number of times the system is opened. For short peripheral catheters, the administration set and catheter should also be changed at the same time to avoid excessive manipulation of the catheter. Document these changes per agency policy.

Needleless connector devices can be changed when the administration set is changed. If it is being used for intermittent infusions, the device should be changed at least once per week. Fluid leakage from the device indicates the integrity has been compromised, and it should be changed immediately.

Precautions to prevent *air emboli* are required when changing the set or connectors attached to any catheter; however, central venous catheters require special attention. Most catheters have a pinch clamp that can be closed during this procedure. Techniques used to increase the intrathoracic pressure and prevent air embolism during IV set change include:

- Placing the patient in a flat position to ensure that the catheter exit site is at or below the level of the heart
- Asking the patient to perform a Valsalva maneuver by holding his or her breath and bearing down
- Timing the IV set change to the expiratory cycle when the patient is spontaneously breathing
- Timing the IV set change to the inspiratory cycle when the patient is receiving positive-pressure mechanical ventilation.

Controlling Infusion Pressure

Fluid flow through the infusion system requires that the pressure on the external side be greater than the pressure at the catheter tip. Fluid flow can be slowed or obstructed by many causes. At or above the catheter hub, kinked tubing, tubing or syringe diameter, and fluid temperature or viscosity could create resistance to flow. Inside the catheter lumen, resistance is created by the catheter length and diameter or by deposits of fibrin, thrombus, or drug precipitate. Near the catheter tip, resistance to flow comes from the catheter tip impinging on the vein wall, thrombus, or venous spasm.

All catheter manufacturers have warnings about the use of excessive pressure. Gravity and infusion pumps do not exert pressure too high for the catheter to handle; however, excessive pressure from syringes can lead to catheter damage. For this reason, use 10-mL syringes for central venous catheters. Although these larger syringes generate less pressure, it is still possible to reach excessive pressure levels if great force is applied against a syringe attached to a catheter that is partially occluded.

Flushing the Catheter

Catheter flushing prevents contact between incompatible drugs and maintains patency of the lumens. Normal saline alone or normal saline followed by heparinized saline may be used. When using valved catheters and certain positive fluid-displacement needleless devices, normal saline alone is

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Assess catheter patency carefully before each use. Use sterile technique to flush with normal saline while applying slow, gentle pressure to the syringe plunger. If you feel any resistance, stop the procedure immediately! If you continue, catheter rupture or forcing a blood clot into circulation could result. During the flushing procedure, always aspirate for a brisk blood return from the catheter lumen.

If the catheter will not yield a blood return, further diagnostic studies may be needed to determine the cause of the problems. Thrombolytic agents such as alteplase (Cathflo Activase) may be used to dissolve blood clots in venous catheters (Genentech, 2011).

acceptable because these devices have mechanisms that prevent the backflow of blood into the catheter lumen.

For short peripheral catheters, usually 3 mL normal saline is adequate to flush the catheter. For all other catheters, 5 to 10 mL of preservative-free normal saline is needed. Bacteriostatic normal saline is limited to no more than 30 mL in a 24-hour period in adults. By using 10 mL before and after each dose of medication, it is easy to exceed this limitation. Check your agency's policy and procedure about specific flushing amounts.

Flush catheters immediately after each use. Delay in disconnecting the intermittent administration set and flushing the catheter could cause lumen occlusion from blood that backflows into the lumen when the infusion pressure is lower than venous pressure.

All fluids used to flush catheters should be obtained from single-dose containers or prefilled syringes. Vials used for multiple doses contribute to medication errors and increase the risk for contamination.

Obtaining Blood Samples from Central Venous Catheters

Short peripheral catheters should not be routinely used for obtaining blood samples. This additional manipulation could lead to vein irritation that requires removal of the catheter. Central venous catheters and midlines can be used for obtaining blood samples after a careful assessment of the risks versus the benefits. If your patient has no peripheral venipuncture sites or is fearful of needles, using the central venous catheter may be appropriate. The risks associated with obtaining blood samples from a central venous catheter are numerous. This procedure requires additional hub manipulation, which is a major cause of catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI). Consider the laboratory tests needed and the types of fluids that have recently been infused. Heparin interferes with coagulation studies. Electrolytes in the fluid may alter the results of serum electrolytes. Antibiotics such as vancomycin may interfere with measuring the peak serum levels of the drug. Drawing blood from catheters for blood culture should not be done within an hour of completion of antimicrobial infusions (Garcia & Isenberg, 2010).

If blood sampling from a central venous catheter is the best alternative, vigorous cleaning of the connections with 70% alcohol is necessary. Use methods that do not require needles. Vacuum tubes attached directly to the catheter hub eliminate the need to transfer the blood from a syringe into the tubes. For small-diameter catheters, the vacuum in the tube may cause the catheter to temporarily collapse, preventing the backflow of blood into the tube. In this situation, small syringes should be used because they create less pressure on aspiration, the opposite of what small syringes do on injection. Transfer of the blood from the syringe to the vacuum tube requires the use of a special transfer device to avoid the use of needles.

Removing the Vascular Access Device

Short peripheral catheters are usually removed 72 or 96 hours after insertion. If a complication develops, they should be removed immediately. Lift opposite sides of the transparent dressing and pull laterally to remove the dressing from the site while stabilizing the catheter. Slowly withdraw the catheter from the skin, and immediately cover the puncture site

with dry gauze. Do not use an alcohol pad because this will interfere with coagulation. Hold pressure on the site until hemostasis is achieved. Assess the catheter tip to make sure it is intact and completely removed. Document catheter removal and the appearance of the IV site.

Removal of midline catheters and PICCs must be performed with the same slow, gentle techniques used to insert the catheter. Veins can develop venospasms when rapid or forceful techniques are used. After explaining to the patient that this procedure will not be painful, remove the dressing and withdraw the catheter in short segments by pulling from the insertion site. *If you feel resistance, always stop and never apply force to the catheter. Extreme traction or force could cause the catheter to break and embolize to the heart or pulmonary circulation.*

Simple distraction techniques and deep breathing may be sufficient to relax the patient and remove the catheter. If these fail, replace the dressing and apply heat; allow time for the vein wall to relax. Keeping the extremity warm and dry and asking the patient to drink warm liquids could facilitate removal. Use of medications to relax the vein wall may be required if the catheter cannot be removed after several hours. Imaging studies may also be needed to determine whether the cause is a thrombosis instead of venospasm.

Nontunneled percutaneous central catheters are removed by clipping any sutures and withdrawing the catheter in short segments. Venospasm does not commonly occur when removing these catheters because the vein diameter is large.

For all catheters, immediately after the catheter comes out of the skin, apply digital pressure with a dry gauze dressing to stop any bleeding. Apply a sterile occlusive gauze dressing with an antiseptic ointment as per agency protocol or procedure. When a central venous catheter is removed, a tract between the skin and vein creates a conduit for air to be pulled into the vein. The ointment seals off the tract. After removal, measure the catheter length and compare it with the length documented on insertion. *If the entire catheter length was not removed, contact the health care provider immediately!*

Removal of tunneled catheters and implanted ports requires surgical techniques and is usually performed by nurse practitioners or physicians.

Documenting Intravenous Therapy

Nurses often are sued for malpractice related to infusion therapy, especially IV therapy. Therefore document after insertion of a vascular access device (VAD) and throughout the course of the therapy. When inserting a venous catheter, remember to document the:

- Date and time of the VAD insertion
- Name of the nurse (you) who inserted the VAD
- Vein that was used for insertion
- Type of VAD used
- Number of insertion attempts and locations of attempts before successful insertion
- Response of the patient to the VAD insertion process
- Type of dressing applied
- Type of securement device, if used
- Special barrier precautions used, if any
- Patient and family education provided related to IV therapy

During the course of the patient's infusion therapy, be sure to continue documenting your assessments and any interventions needed as a result of complications. Follow your agency's policies and procedures for additional requirements.

COMPLICATIONS OF INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

Complications from IV therapy can be minor and limited or life threatening. Serious life-altering or life-threatening complications are dramatically increasing in frequency and severity and present a tremendous financial burden to the U.S. health care system. Catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSIs) are one of the most serious problems, often resulting in patient death. They are more common in patients with central VADs than with peripheral catheters.

Catheter-Related Bloodstream Infection

The Institute for Healthcare Improvement identified catheter-related bloodstream infections (CR-BSI) as one of several preventable hospital-acquired infections (HAIs). They report that CR-BSIs are responsible for up to 28,000 deaths per year, and as part of their previous *100,000 Lives Campaign*, a number of evidence-based interventions were combined into the CR-BSI prevention bundle. As a nurse, your accountability is to ensure that these interventions are followed. The most common tool used to improve adherence is a memory checklist. Tell anyone who violates the following interventions to stop the procedure immediately.

Hand hygiene before inserting a central line must be thorough (i.e., no quick scrub). Anyone who touches the central line must also perform thorough hand hygiene. *Maximal barrier precautions* during line insertion require that the patient be draped from head to toe with a sterile barrier. The practitioner who inserts the VAD wears sterile gloves, gown, and mask. Anyone in the room during the procedure must also wear a mask, and traffic in and out of the room must be minimized. Chlorhexidine is used for skin disinfection because it has best outcomes for preventing infection. For infection control, subclavian sites are the most *appropriate sites* and are preferable to internal jugular and upper arm veins. PICC lines are preferable to subclavian vascular access devices (VADs). *Post-placement care* requires meticulous dressing changes and care of all parts of the IV system, such as keeping ports and stopcocks clean and hanging bags using sterile technique. Review daily the need for the patient's VAD. The incidence of CR-BSI increases each day the device is in place. As soon as it is determined that the patient no longer needs the IV line, it should be removed (*Institute for Healthcare Improvement [IHI], 2008*).

Other Complications of Intravenous Therapy

Local complications of IV therapy occur at or near the catheter. A priority for care for patients with IV therapy is to prevent, assess, and detect these complications. In some cases, nurses also manage these problems. Definitions, causes, signs and symptoms, treatment, and prevention of local complications are summarized in [Table 15-2](#). *Systemic complications* of IV therapy involve the entire vascular system or multiple systems. Information on common systemic complications can be found in [Table 15-3](#). For central venous catheters

(CVCs), complications can occur during the insertion procedure or during the dwell time; these problems are described in [Tables 15-4 and 15-5](#). [Tables 15-6 and 15-7](#) are the INS criteria for grading phlebitis and infiltrations. Document all assessments and complications in the patient's health record. Notify the infusion therapy team and/or health care provider per agency policy when complications occur.

IV THERAPY AND CARE OF THE OLDER ADULT

The aging process causes numerous changes in all body functions, and yet aging occurs differently in each person. Nutrition, environment, genetics, social factors, and education are just a few of the factors that influence the older adult's needs. Because all body functions are affected, IV therapy can be affected by these changes.

Skin Care

Aging skin becomes thinner and loses subcutaneous fat, decreasing the skin's ability for thermal regulation. Fewer nerve endings mean the decreased ability to feel pain. Older patients *may* not perceive pain from traumatic venipuncture requiring excessive probing or multiple attempts. However, this action increases the risk for fluid leakage and subsequent infiltration or extravasation injury. Inserting and removing a catheter and dressing could tear the skin layers.

Skin antisepsis is extremely important because of the decreased immunity seen as part of the aging process. Lipids are normally found in skin as a protective agent, and alcohol easily dissolves lipids. Although greater numbers of organisms may be killed, the skin can also become excessively dry and cracked. Current recommendations call for using friction when cleaning the skin to penetrate the layers of the epidermis. However, excessive friction may damage fragile skin. Chlorhexidine is now the preferred agent, and the product currently available contains alcohol. Check for allergies to iodine before using iodine or iodophors. Iodophors such as povidone-iodine require contact with the skin for a minimum of 2 minutes to be effective. All antiseptic solutions must be thoroughly dry before applying the dressing or tape.

Skin should never be shaved before venipuncture, but excessive amounts of hair should be clipped. Shaving causes micro-abrasions that can lead to infection. The skin of an older adult may be more delicate and therefore more easily nicked while shaving.

Skin integrity can easily be compromised by the application of tape or dressings. Use of skin protectant solutions puts a protective barrier between the skin and dressing and improves the adherence of the dressing to the skin. Removal of tape and dressings may require adhesive remover solutions, or an alcohol pad may accomplish the same purpose. Securement devices like the StatLock require the use of a skin protectant (e.g., Skin-Prep) before applying the device. The protectant prevents skin tearing when the device is removed.

Vein and Catheter Selection

Vein and catheter selection are of highest importance in older adults. Choose insertion sites carefully after consideration of the patient's skin integrity, vein condition, and functional ability. The general principle of starting with the most distal

TABLE 15-2 LOCAL COMPLICATIONS OF INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

COMPLICATION	CAUSE	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	TREATMENT	PREVENTION
Infiltration				
Leakage of a non-vesicant IV solution or medication into the extravascular tissue	Peripheral catheter has punctured opposite vein wall Obstruction of blood flow causing backflow through original entrance site Inflammatory process causing fluid leakage at the capillary level Fibrin sheath fully encasing a central venous catheter leading to retrograde flow and leakage from venipuncture site Damaged septum of implanted port Dislodged port access needle	IV rate slows Increasing edema around site Patient report of skin tightness; blanching or coolness of skin; burning, tenderness, or general discomfort at the insertion site; fluid leaking from puncture site; absence of a blood return (though this may not be reliable with a short peripheral catheter)	Stop infusion and remove short peripheral catheter immediately after identification of problem. Apply sterile dressing if weeping from tissue occurs. Elevate extremity. Warm or cold compresses may be used according to the solution infiltrated and organizational policy. Warm compresses increase circulation to the area and speed healing. Cool compresses may be used to relieve discomfort and reduce swelling. Insert a new catheter in the opposite extremity. For all central venous catheters, obtain a study to determine the cause of the problem. For implanted port, remove and insert a new port access needle. Rate the infiltration using the INS Infiltration Scale and document (Table 15-7).	Catheter stabilization—use smallest catheter appropriate; avoid area of flexion, or use arm board. Avoid placing restraints at the IV site. Make successive venipunctures proximal to the previous site. Monitor site frequently; educate patient about activities and signs and symptoms. Central venous catheters—obtain a brisk blood return before using the catheter for infusion. Frequently assess proper positioning of port access needle. Stabilize it well, and protect from clothing.
Extravasation				
Leakage of a vesicant IV solution or medication into the extravascular tissue This can occur with both peripheral and central catheters	Same as infiltration	Same as infiltration Blistering and tissue sloughing may not appear for a few days and resolves over 1-4 wk with infiltration of some chemotherapeutic agents such as anthracycline and alkylating agents	Stop infusion, and disconnect administration set. Aspirate drug from short peripheral catheter or port access needle. Leave short peripheral catheter or port access needle in place to deliver antidote, if indicated by established policy. If possible, aspirate residual drug from the exit site of a central venous catheter. Administer antidote according to established policy. Apply cold compresses for all drugs EXCEPT vinca alkaloids and epipodophyllotoxins. Photograph site. Monitor at 24 hr, 1 wk, 2 wk, and as needed. Surgical interventions may be required. Provide written instructions to patient and family.	Same as infiltration. Know the vesicant potential before giving any IV medication. Prevention is key.
Phlebitis				
Inflammation of the vein Post-infusion phlebitis presents within 48-96 hr after the catheter has been removed	Mechanical cause from insertion technique, catheter size, and lack of catheter securement Chemical cause from extremes of pH and/or osmolality of the fluid or medication Bacterial cause from a break in aseptic technique, poor securement, and extended dwell time	Patient may report pain at the IV site; nurse may observe that vein appears red and inflamed along the length; vein may become hard and cordlike (Table 15-6)	Remove short peripheral catheter at the first sign of phlebitis; use warm compresses to relieve pain. Monitor frequently. Document using Phlebitis Scale. Insert a new catheter using the opposite extremity. Mechanical phlebitis occurring in the first week after PICC insertion may be treated without catheter removal. Apply continuous heat; rest and elevate the extremity. Significant improvement is seen in 24 hr, and complete resolution is seen within 72 hr. Remove catheter if treatment is unsuccessful.	Choose the smallest-gauge catheter for the required therapy. Avoid sites of joint flexion, or stabilize with an armboard. Avoid infusing fluids or medications with a pH below 5 or above 9 through a peripheral vein. Avoid infusing fluids or medications with a final osmolality above 500 mOsm/L through a peripheral vein. Rotate sites every 72-96 hr according to established policy. Adequately secure the catheter. Use aseptic technique. For PICCs, teach patient to avoid excessive physical activity with the extremity.

Thrombosis

Blood clot inside the vein

Anything that damages the endothelial lining of the intima can initiate clot formation	Slowed or stopped infusion rate	Stop infusion and remove short peripheral catheter immediately.	Use evidence-based venipuncture technique. Make only two attempts to perform venipuncture. Choose the smallest-gauge catheter in the largest vein possible.
Traumatic venipuncture	Swollen extremity	Apply cold compresses to decrease blood flow and stabilize the clot.	Secure catheter adequately.
Multiple venipuncture attempts	Tenderness and redness	Elevate extremity.	Use armboards if short peripheral catheters are placed in areas of joint flexion.
Use of catheters too large for the chosen vein	Engorged peripheral veins of the ipsilateral chest and extremity	Surgical intervention may be required.	Ensure adequate hydration to avoid changes in blood composition and flexion of the extremity.
Hyper-coagulable state and venous stasis		For central venous catheters, notify the physician and obtain requests for a diagnostic study. Low-dose thrombolytic agents can be used to lyse the clot.	Prophylactic low-dose warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone 🍷) may be prescribed for patients with a central venous catheter.

Thrombophlebitis

The presence of a blood clot and vein inflammation

Same as phlebitis and thrombosis

Same as phlebitis and thrombosis.

Apply cold compresses initially, followed by warm.

Echymosis and Hematoma

Echymosis from infiltration of blood into the surrounding tissue
Hematoma results from uncontrolled bleeding

Unskilled or multiple attempts
Patients with coagulopathy or fragile veins (e.g., older adults and patients on steroids)
Accidental laceration of a large vein or artery

When removing device, apply light pressure, excessive pressure could cause other fragile veins in the area to rupture.
For hematoma, apply direct pressure until bleeding has stopped. Elevate extremity, apply ice for first 24 hours, then warm compress for comfort.

Avoid veins that cannot be easily seen or palpated.
Use extra caution in patients with coagulopathies.
Use good venipuncture technique.

Site Infection

Invasion of microorganisms at the insertion site in the absence of simultaneous bloodstream infection
Infection localized at the insertion site, the port pocket, or subcutaneous tunnel

Clean exit site with alcohol, expressing drainage if present.
For short peripheral catheter, midline catheter, or PICC, remove using sterile technique and avoid contact between skin and catheter.
Send catheter tip for culture, if requested.
Clean site with alcohol, and cover with dry sterile dressing; physician to evaluate for septic phlebitis and need for antimicrobial therapy or surgical intervention.

Use strict aseptic technique when inserting, maintaining, or removing catheters.
Practice good hand hygiene.
Ensure dressing remains clean, dry, and adherent to skin at all times.

Venous Spasm

A sudden contraction of the vein

A normal response to irritation or injury of the vein wall

Cramping or pain at or above the insertion site
Numbness in the area
Slowing of the infusion rate
Inability to withdraw midline catheter or PICC

Allow time for vein diameter to return to normal after tourniquet removal and before advancing catheter.
Infuse fluids at room temperature, if possible.
For a midline catheter or PICC, gently withdraw the catheter in short segments.

Nerve Damage

Inadvertent piercing or complete transection of a nerve

Venipuncture near known nerve locations
Unanticipated nerve locations

Reports of tingling or feeling “pins and needles” at or below the insertion site
Numbness at or near the insertion site

Avoid using the cephalic vein near the wrist.
Avoid using veins on the palm side of the wrist.
Adequately secure the catheter, but avoid tape that is too tight.
Support areas of joint flexion with an armboard.

TABLE 15-3 SYSTEMIC COMPLICATIONS OF INTRAVENOUS THERAPY

COMPLICATION	CAUSE	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	TREATMENT	PREVENTION
Circulatory Overload				
Disruption of fluid homeostasis with excess fluid in the circulatory system	Infusion of fluids at a rate greater than the patient's system can accommodate	Patient may report shortness of breath and cough; patient's blood pressure is elevated, and there is puffiness around the eyes and edema in dependent areas; patient's neck veins may be engorged, and nurse may hear moist breath sounds.	Slow the IV rate, and notify physician; raise patient to an upright position; monitor vital signs, and administer oxygen as prescribed; administer diuretics as prescribed.	Monitor intake and output carefully, and notify physician as soon as an imbalance is noticed between the patient's intake and output.
Speed Shock				
Systemic reaction to the rapid infusion of a substance unfamiliar to the patient's circulatory system	Rapid infusion of drugs or bolus infusion, which causes the drug to reach toxic levels quickly	Patient may report lightheadedness or dizziness and chest tightness; nurse may note that patient has a flushed face and an irregular pulse; without intervention, patient may lose consciousness and go into shock and cardiac arrest.	Immediately discontinue the drug infusion and hang isotonic solution to keep the vein open; monitor vital signs carefully, and notify physician for further treatments.	Be aware of the appropriate infusion rate of medications and adhere to them; use of infusion control devices assists in prevention of speed shock.
Catheter Embolism				
A shaving or piece of catheter breaks off and floats freely in the vessel	Anything that damages the catheter—during insertion, dressing change, excessive force with flushing or medication administration	Depending on where the catheter embolizes, this could be life threatening Cardiopulmonary arrest could occur.	Emergently notify the physician. Remove the catheter, and apply a tourniquet high on the limb of the catheter site; inspect catheter to determine how much may have embolized; an x-ray is taken to determine the presence of any catheter piece; surgical intervention may be necessary.	When inserting over-the-needle catheters, never reinsert the needle into the catheter; avoid pulling a through-the-needle catheter back through the needle during insertion. Avoid scissors near the catheter with dressing changes.

sites usually indicates use of hand veins. *However, avoid fragile skin and small, tortuous veins on the back of the hand (dorsum); select the initial IV site higher on the arm.*

Venous distention must be accomplished with a flat tourniquet; however, the veins may require longer to distend adequately. Allowing a tourniquet to remain in place for extended periods causes an overfilling of the vein and can result in a hematoma when the vein is punctured. On extremely fragile skin, the tourniquet application can lead to ecchymotic areas or skin tears. A tourniquet may not be required in veins that are already distended; however, carefully palpate these veins to determine their condition. Avoid hard, cordlike veins. Blood pressure cuffs can also be used for venous distention. Inflate the cuff and release until the pressure is slightly less than diastolic pressure. Other methods to distend veins include:

- Tapping lightly, but avoiding forceful slapping
- Asking the patient to open and close the fist so the muscles can force blood into the veins, making sure the hand is relaxed when the venipuncture is attempted
- Placing the extremity lower than the heart
- Applying heat to the entire extremity for 10 to 20 minutes and removing just before making the venipuncture

As with all patients, venipuncture technique requires adequate skin and vein stabilization during the puncture and complete catheter advancement. Veins of an older adult are more likely to roll away from the needle. Low angles of 10 to

15 degrees between the skin and catheter will improve your success with venipuncture.

As soon as the catheter enters the vein, it may be necessary to release the tourniquet. Release of venous pressure from the puncture can lead to ecchymosis. Allowing the tourniquet to remain in place during the complete catheter advancement could increase this problem.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Catheter securement may mean that administration sets are placed out of easy reach of a confused patient. Use flexible netting over the extremity to help prevent the patient from pulling at the dressing or tubing, while allowing easy access to the site. A device such as the I.V. House UltraDome shown in Fig. 15-15 can also protect the site. Do not use rolled bandages to cover the extremity because they prevent insertion site assessment. Complications may progress to an advanced state before they are noticed.

Choosing a midline catheter or PICC may be best in older patients with poor skin turgor, limited venous sites, or veins that are fragile, tortuous, or hard. These catheters are placed in the upper extremity where venous distention techniques can be used. Inserting nontunneled percutaneous central catheters in older adults can be much more challenging. Venous distention for insertion requires the Trendelenburg position and a well-hydrated patient. Fluid volume deficit

TABLE 15-4 INSERTION-RELATED COMPLICATIONS OF CENTRAL VENOUS CATHETERS

COMPLICATION	CAUSE	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	TREATMENT	PREVENTION
Pneumothorax Collection of air in the pleural space	Puncture of the pleural covering of the lung by the introducer on insertion of a direct subclavian approach	Chest pain Dyspnea Apprehension Cyanosis Decreased breath sounds on the affected side Abnormal chest x-ray findings	Remove catheter, or assist with removal. Assess patient by monitoring vital signs, and assess breath sounds. Notify physician immediately if suspected after insertion. Administer oxygen as prescribed. Assist with insertion of a chest tube.	Use jugular or upper extremity insertion sites instead of subclavian sites. Use ultrasound to locate veins.
Hemothorax Collection of blood in the pleural cavity	Result of puncture or transection of the subclavian vein or artery	Similar to pneumothorax; usually see dyspnea first and then tachycardia Decreased hemoglobin because of blood pooling	Same as for pneumothorax. Apply pressure on insertion site after introducer needle and catheter are removed.	Use jugular or upper extremity insertion sites instead of subclavian sites. Use ultrasound to locate veins.
Chylothorax Lymph (chyle) enters the pleural cavity	Transection of the thoracic duct on the left side	Same as in hemothorax Usually noted on insertion with withdrawal of a milklike substance	Same as for pneumothorax.	Use right side for subclavian insertion. Use jugular or upper extremity insertion sites. Use ultrasound to locate veins.
Hydrothorax Infusion of IV fluids directly into the thoracic cavity	Transection of the subclavian vein and placement of the catheter into the thoracic cavity	Same as in pneumothorax with absence of vesicular breath sounds and a murmur with a flat sound over the location	Same as for pneumothorax with removal of the catheter and aspiration of fluid.	Use jugular or upper extremity insertion sites instead of subclavian sites. Use ultrasound to locate veins.
Air Embolism Air enters the central venous system through the catheter when the intrathoracic pressure is lower than the atmospheric pressure and the catheter provides an open conduit for the air	Air introduced into the central venous system during catheter insertion, accidental disconnection of tubing, tubing changes, catheter rupture, and catheter removal	Chest pain, dyspnea, hypoxia Anxiety, tachycardia, hypotension Nausea Light-headed, dizzy Loud churning heard over the pericardium on auscultation is possible but not always heard	Clamp catheter immediately. Place patient in left lateral Trendelenburg position. Notify physician immediately. Oxygen therapy. Arterial blood gases. Electrocardiogram.	Prevent inadvertent disconnection. Use Luer-Lok needleless connector caps. Close slide clamp on catheter extension when changing connector caps. When inserting or removing catheter, prevent negative intrathoracic pressure by placing the patient flat and having him or her perform a Valsalva maneuver or hold his or her breath if possible. Apply occlusive dressing with antiseptic ointment when removing a central venous catheter; allow to remain in place for at least 24 hr.
Arterial Puncture Laceration of an artery	Accessed the artery instead of the vein	Pulsating of bright red blood from the introducer needle	Remove needle immediately, and apply pressure to the site. Secure a pressure dressing for 5-10 min.	Use ultrasound to locate veins during insertion procedure.
Malpositioned Catheters Catheter has passed into the jugular vein, the right atrium, the azygos vein, or several other tributary veins	Improper patient positioning during insertion Insertion of catheter length that is too short or too long for patient	No signs or symptoms may be experienced before detection on initial chest radiograph to confirm tip location Ear, neck, or back pain Palpitations or dysrhythmias Inability to irrigate	Notify physician to reposition catheter by guidewire exchange. Refer to radiology for replacement under fluoroscopy.	Insert under fluoroscopy. Ensure proper patient measurement for catheter length. Position patient properly.

TABLE 15-5 COMPLICATIONS DURING THE DWELL OF CENTRAL VENOUS CATHETERS

COMPLICATION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	TREATMENT	PREVENTION
Catheter Migration				
Movement of a properly placed catheter tip to another vein	Changes in intrathoracic pressure caused by coughing, vomiting, sneezing, heavy lifting, and congestive heart failure	For migration to the jugular vein: reports of hearing a running stream or gurgling sound on the side of catheter insertion For migration to the azygos vein: back pain between the shoulder blades Neurologic complications if medications are infused	Stop all infusions, and flush catheter. Notify physician. Obtain a chest radiograph to assess tip location. Spontaneous repositioning back to the SVC is possible. Repositioning by radiology may be required.	Place catheter tip properly in the lower third of the SVC near the junction with the right atrium. Instruct patient to perform usual ADLs but to avoid excessive physical activity.
No change in the external catheter length				
Catheter Dislodgment				
Movement of catheter into or out of the insertion site	Inadequate catheter securement Excessive physical activity with a PICC	External catheter length has changed, also changing the internal tip location No other signs or symptoms may be immediately noticed	Stop all infusions, and flush catheter. NEVER re-advance the catheter into the insertion site. Determine the amount of external catheter length, and compare with the length documented on insertion. Notify the physician or nurse inserting the catheter for further assessment.	Proper catheter securement. Instruct patient to perform normal ADLs but to avoid excessive physical activity.
Catheter Rupture				
Catheter is broken, damaged, or separated from hub or port body	Forcefully flushing a catheter with any size syringe against resistance Using scissors to remove a dressing Catheter compression of a subclavian inserted catheter between the clavicle and first rib (also known as <i>pinch-off syndrome</i>)	Fluid leaking from insertion site Pain or swelling during infusion Reflux of blood into the catheter extension Inability to aspirate blood from catheter	Repair the damaged segment; depends on the availability of a repair kit designed for the specific brand of catheter being used; repair may be considered a temporary measure instead of a permanent treatment. Remove catheter.	NEVER use excessive force when flushing a catheter, regardless of syringe size. On injection, small syringes generate more pressure than larger syringes. Use of a 10-mL syringe is generally recommended for flushing procedures. Insert catheter through jugular or upper extremity sites instead of subclavian site.
Lumen Occlusion				
Catheter lumen is partially or totally blocked	Drug or mineral precipitate (calcium, diazepam, and phenytoin are common) Lipid sludge from long-term infusion of fat emulsion Blood clots and fibrin sheath caused by blood reflux into lumen Allowing administration sets to remain connected for extended periods after medication has infused	Infusion stops or pump alarm sounds Inability or difficulty administering fluids Inability or difficulty drawing blood Increased resistance to flushing of the catheter	Assess history of catheter use. A suddenly developing problem may indicate contact between incompatible medications. A problem that develops over an extended period may indicate a gradual clot formation. For drug precipitate, determine the pH of the precipitated drug. Use hydrochloric acid for acidic drug. Use sodium bicarbonate for alkaline drugs. For blood clot, use thrombolytic enzymes such as alteplase.	Always flush with normal saline between, before, and after each medication given through the catheter. Use positive-pressure flushing techniques when a negative fluid displacement needleless connector is being used. Use a positive fluid displacement needleless connector. Flush catheters immediately when medication infusion is complete.
Central Line–Related Bloodstream Infection (CR-BSI)				
Pathogenic organisms invade the patient's circulation The CDC has specific criteria to classify these infections	Lack of sterile field during insertion Inadequate skin antiseptic agents and application techniques Manipulation of the catheter hub leading to intraluminal contamination Inadequate hand hygiene Long dwell time	Early symptoms include fever, chills, headache, and general malaise	Change the entire infusion system from solution to IV device; notify physician, obtain cultures, and administer antibiotics as prescribed. If the infusate is the suspected cause, send a specimen to the laboratory for evaluation.	Maintain sterile technique. Use the recommended CR-BSI prevention bundle.



FIG. 15-15 I.V. House UltraDressing IV site protector, a safety device used for IV site protection, guards the integrity of the older adult's skin while helping secure the site.

TABLE 15-6 PHLEBITIS SCALE FROM INS STANDARDS OF PRACTICE

GRADE	CLINICAL CRITERIA
0	No symptoms
1	Erythema with or without pain
2	Pain at access site with erythema and/or edema
3	Pain at access site with erythema and/or edema Streak formation Palpable cord
4	Pain at access site with erythema and/or edema Streak formation Palpable venous cord more than 1 inch long Purulent drainage

Data from Infusion Nurses Society (INS). (2006). Infusion nursing standards of practice. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 29(1 Suppl. 6S), S1-S92.

prevents adequate distention of the subclavian or jugular veins. Patients with conditions like chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and kyphosis cannot tolerate the Trendelenburg position. Tunneled catheters and implanted ports may be appropriate after consideration of the surgical techniques required to insert these catheters.

Cardiac and Renal Changes

Because of changes in cardiac and renal status, the accuracy of infusion volume and flow rate measurements is very important in the older adult. The health care provider's prescription for infusion therapy should be assessed for appropriateness for the patient's condition. Older adults are very prone to fluid overload and resulting congestive heart failure. Electronic controlling devices may be required to ensure the necessary accuracy. Clinical manifestations of fluid overload are described in [Chapter 13](#).

TABLE 15-7 INFILTRATION SCALE FROM INS STANDARDS OF PRACTICE

GRADE	CLINICAL CRITERIA
0	No symptoms
1	Skin blanched Edema <1 inch in any direction Cool to touch With or without pain
2	Skin blanched Edema 1-6 inches in any direction Cool to touch With or without pain
3	Skin blanched, translucent Gross edema >6 inches in any direction Cool to touch Mild to moderate pain Possible numbness
4	Skin blanched, translucent Skin tight, leaking Skin discolored, bruised, swollen Gross edema >6 inches in any direction Deep pitting tissue edema Circulatory impairment Moderate to severe pain Infiltration of any amount of blood product, irritant, or vesicant

Data from Infusion Nurses Society (INS) (2006). *Standards of Practice*, Norwood, MA.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration; Informatics

A 75-year-old woman is transferred from the local community hospital to the skilled nursing facility (SNF) where you work as a charge nurse. The resident is being managed with IV cefazolin 2 g IVPB every 8 hours for right ankle osteomyelitis resulting from an arterial ulcer. On review of her admission orders, you note that she has a newly-inserted intermittent saline lock in her right forearm and is prescribed to receive the antibiotic for 6 more weeks.

1. The SNF policy for administration of drugs prescribed every 8 hours is a 6 PM-2 AM-10 AM schedule. Would you schedule her antibiotic at these times? Why or why not?
2. The resident states that she has not had a bath in 5 days and wants to take a shower. Will she be allowed to take a shower? Why or why not?
3. Two days later as you are planning to end your shift, the resident reports that her IV site seems swollen. What action will you take at this time? What will you document on the resident's medical record?
4. Is a peripheral vascular access device (VAD) the best choice for this resident? Why or why not? With whom will you or the oncoming nurse collaborate to make this decision? What does the evidence say about the type of VAD that would be best to meet this resident's needs? Where would you go to find the answer to this clinical question?
5. Using the SBAR technique, what will you report to the oncoming nurse about the resident's IV complications?

When fluid restrictions are required, medications could be diluted in small quantities and delivered using a syringe pump or a manual IV push. For instance, 1 g of an antibiotic could be diluted in 10 mL normal saline instead of the more common 50 mL. This alternative allows the patient to have

more fluid to drink. Serum sodium levels should be considered when normal saline is routinely used for dilution in patients with hypertension or cardiac problems.

For a poorly controlled diabetic patient, dextrose solutions for dilution may not be preferred, although well-controlled diabetic patients may not have a problem with the small amount of dextrose in the solution. Consult with the pharmacist and prescriber to answer these questions.

ALTERNATIVE SITES FOR INFUSION

An increasing number of patients with chronic illness require repeated and frequent IV therapies. Many of these patients are vein depleted and need vein preservation. Subcutaneous and intraosseous routes have demonstrated effectiveness in emergency resuscitation. These procedures may also be beneficial for routine infusion of isotonic, non-irritant, non-vesicant solutions in patients with chronic illness and vein depletion (Aguilar, 2010).

Specific therapies requiring infusion into arteries, peritoneum, epidural, and intrathecal space are also available. These therapies are most commonly used to administer chemotherapy, lytic therapy, or pain medication.

Subcutaneous Infusion

Subcutaneous therapy may be used in palliative care patients who cannot tolerate oral medications, when IM injections are too painful, or when vascular access is not available or is too difficult to obtain. Most often, this type of infusion is used in hospices for pain management.

Hypodermoclysis involves the slow infusion of isotonic fluids into the patient's subcutaneous tissue. Although common in the early twentieth to mid-twentieth century, this method had not been widely used again until the 1990s. The growth of geriatric and palliative health care has helped spur the use of this method of infusion therapy for selected patients (Khan & Younger, 2007).

Hypodermoclysis can be used for short-term fluid volume replacement. The patient must have sufficient sites of intact skin without infection, inflammation, bruising, scarring, or edema. The most common sites are the front and sides of the thighs and hips, the upper abdomen, and the area under the clavicle. Unlike IV therapy, the upper extremities should not be used because fluid is absorbed more readily from sites with larger stores of adipose tissue. Hypodermoclysis should not be used if the fluid replacement needs exceed 2000 to 3000 mL/day, in emergency situations, or if there are bleeding or coagulation problems (Khan & Younger, 2007).

Hyaluronidase 150 units may be mixed with each liter of infusion fluid. This is an enzyme that improves the absorption of the infusing fluids from the subcutaneous tissue. An intradermal test dose is required because of the possibility of an allergic reaction. If the enzyme is not used, the infusion may not be well absorbed and redness at the insertion site is more likely (Khan & Younger, 2007).

A small-gauge, winged infusion or "butterfly" needle, a small-gauge, short peripheral catheter, or an infusion set specially designed for subcutaneous infusion can be chosen. The subcutaneous infusion sets have a small needle extending at a right angle from a flat disk that helps stabilize the needle.

When choosing the infusion site, consider the patient's level of activity. The area under the clavicle or the abdomen

may interfere the least with ambulation. Clip excess hair in the area, and clean the chosen site with the antiseptic solution, preferably chlorhexidine gluconate. Prime the infusion tubing and the attached subcutaneous infusion set or winged needle. Gently pinch an area of about 2 inches (5 cm), and insert the needle using sterile technique. After securing the needle, cover the site with a transparent dressing. Hydrocortisone cream can be applied to the skin to prevent irritation.

Flow rates for hydration fluids begin at 30 mL/hr. After 1 hour, the rate can be increased if the patient has experienced no discomfort. The maximum rate is usually 75 to 80 mL/hr. For pain medication infusion, the flow rate is usually 2 or 3 mL/hr. If the infusion is required for adequate pain control, two subcutaneous sites may be needed.

Assess the site at least twice daily. Redness, heat, leakage, bruising, swelling, and reports of pain indicate tissue irritation, and the infusion needle should be removed. Rotate the subcutaneous site at least once per week.

Other complications include pooling of the fluid at the insertion site and an uneven fluid drip rate. Both of these problems may be resolved by restarting the infusion in another location. An infusion pump may also be used. Small ambulatory infusion pumps can be used to allow for greater mobility.

Intraosseous Therapy

Description

Intraosseous (IO) therapy allows access to the rich vascular network in the red marrow of bones. Although IO has previously been regarded as a pediatric procedure, it is now considered acceptable for use in adults. Victims of trauma, burns, cardiac arrest, diabetic ketoacidosis, and other life-threatening conditions benefit from this therapy because often clinicians cannot access these patients' vascular systems for traditional IV therapy (Aguilar, 2010). Intraosseous catheters may be established in the prehospital setting when IV access cannot be readily obtained in an emergency.

Absorption rates of large-volume parenteral (LVP) infusions and drugs administered via the IO route are similar to those achieved with peripheral or central venous administration. The IO route should be used only during the immediate period of resuscitation and should not be used longer than 24 hours (Aguilar, 2010). After establishing access, efforts should continue to obtain IV access as well.

There are few contraindications for intraosseous infusion. The only absolute contraindication is fracture in the bone to be used as a site. Conditions such as severe osteoporosis, osteogenesis imperfecta, or other conditions that increase the risk for fracture with insertion of the IO needle and skin infection over the site may also be contraindications for some patients. Repeated attempts to access the same site should be avoided (Madigan, 2008).

Any needle could be used to provide therapy and access the medullary space (marrow). However, 15- or 16-gauge needles specifically designed for IO are preferred because they have:

- A removable stylet that screws into the cannula to keep the needle from retracting during insertion
- A short shaft to eliminate accidental dislodgment after placement
- An adjustable guard to stabilize the needle at skin level

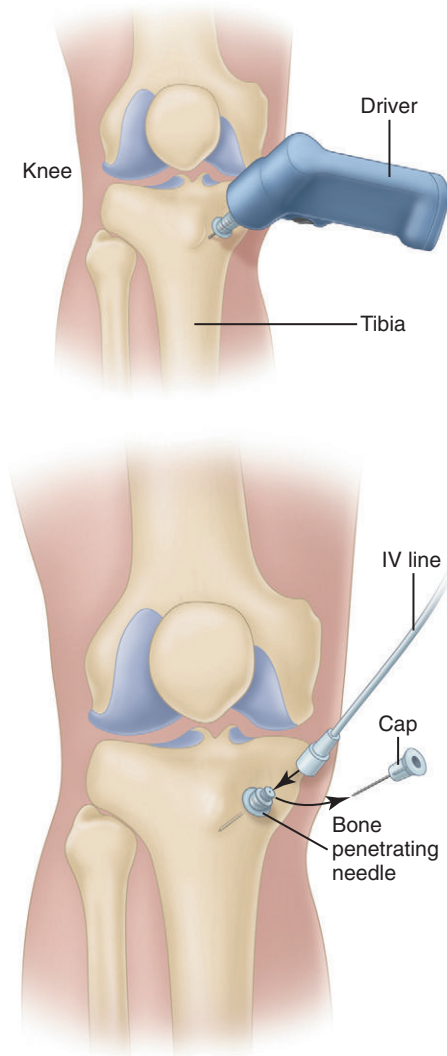


FIG. 15-16 Proximal tibial intraosseous (IO) access.

- Graduations along the needle to guide the practitioner during insertion

New technology using a battery-powered drill has improved the ease of IO insertion. A number of sites can be used, including the proximal tibia, distal femur, medial malleolus (inner ankle), proximal humerus, and iliac crest. The proximal tibia is the most common site accessed for IO therapy (Fig. 15-16).

Nursing Care

If IV access cannot be obtained within the first few minutes of resuscitation procedures, IO may be attempted. The leg is restrained, and the site is cleaned with an antiseptic agent such as chlorhexidine. After successful insertion, the needle must be secured to prevent movement out of the bone. The same doses of fluids and medications can be infused IO as IV. An infusion pump may be used for rapid flow rates.

During the procedure, most patients rate the pain as a 2 or 3 on a scale of 0 to 10. Lidocaine 1% is used to anesthetize the skin, the subcutaneous tissue, and the periosteum to promote comfort (Madigan, 2008).

Improper needle placement with infiltration into the surrounding tissue is the most common complication of IO therapy. An accumulation of fluid under the skin at either the insertion site or on the other side of the limb indicates that the needle either is not far enough in to penetrate the bone marrow or is too far into the limb and has protruded through the other side of the shaft. Needle obstruction occurs when the puncture has been accomplished but flushing has been delayed. This delay may cause the needle to become clotted with bone marrow.

Osteomyelitis is an unusual but serious complication of IO therapy. It is caused by allowing the IO needle to remain in place for a prolonged period.

Compartment syndrome is a condition in which increased tissue pressure in a confined anatomic space causes decreased blood flow to the area. The decreased circulation to the area leads to hypoxia and pain in the area. Although the complication is rare in IO therapy, the nurse should monitor the site carefully and alert the physician promptly if the patient exhibits any signs of decreased circulation to the limb, such as coolness, swelling, mottling, or discoloration. Without improvement in perfusion to the limb, the patient could ultimately require amputation of the limb. Nursing assessment and interventions for compartment syndrome are discussed in detail in Chapter 54.

Intra-arterial Therapy

Description

Catheters are placed into arteries to obtain repeated arterial blood samples, to monitor various hemodynamic pressures continuously, and to infuse chemotherapy agents. Catheters placed in the radial, brachial, or femoral arteries are used for obtaining blood samples or arterial pressure monitoring. Pulmonary artery pressure measures the function of the left heart and is accomplished by advancing a catheter through the central venous system, through the right heart chambers, and into the pulmonary artery (hemodynamic monitoring).

Catheters used for pressure monitoring are inserted percutaneously through veins of the upper extremity or the subclavian or jugular sites. Insertion procedures are similar to the procedures used for venous cannulation. Removal requires deflating arterial balloons, if used, and applying digital pressure for longer than when removing a venous catheter to prevent a significant hematoma from forming.

Arterial waveforms and pressures are converted to digital values displayed on attached monitors. Between the catheter and the monitor is a special administration set capable of handling high infusion pressure, a pressurized fluid container, a continuous flush attachment, a three-way stopcock, and a transducer. In the past, it was common to use a heparinized saline flush solution in the pressurized fluid container. Studies have shown that this solution increases the risk for heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, and the use of heparin is now generally avoided (Swanson, 2007). The transducer is positioned at the level of the patient's atrium and secured to an IV pole to enable correct arterial pressure measurements. Hemodynamic monitoring and how to interpret these values are described in Chapter 35.

Chemotherapy agents administered arterially allow infusion of a high concentration of drug directly to the tumor site before it is diluted in blood or metabolized by the liver or kidneys. Drug infusion through the same blood supply

feeding the tumor optimizes cell destruction at the tumor site while minimizing systemic side effects. The most common arterial sites include the hepatic and celiac arteries for liver tumors, although the carotid artery for tumors of the head, neck, or brain and pelvic arteries for cervical tumors have been used.

Arterial catheter insertion can be performed percutaneously, via a surgical procedure, or through an interventional radiologic procedure. Implanted ports are commonly used for extended therapies. For short-term therapy, an external catheter may be used for 3 to 7 days, although the risks for complications increase during dwell time.

Another device used for arterial infusion of chemotherapy agents is an implanted pump with an attached catheter. This small device holds 50 mL of fluid in an upper chamber. The lower chamber exerts pressure when the upper chamber is filled, causing the drug to flow at 1 to 2 mL/day. Changes in blood pressure, body temperature, and altitudes alter the flow rate. The patient must return for refilling the fluid chamber every 14 days.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Carefully secure all junctions on the administration sets with Luer-Lok devices. Life-threatening hemorrhage can occur if an accidental disconnection occurs! When an infusion pump is used, be sure that it had a pressure high enough to overcome arterial pressure. Closely monitor the arterial insertion site and affected extremity. Assess the extremity for warmth, sensation, capillary refill, and pulse.

Nursing Care

When the carotid artery is involved, perform neurologic assessments. When a femoral catheter is used, apply anti-embolic stockings or other measures to prevent deep vein thrombosis.

Complications from arterial catheters are similar to those from venous catheters, including infection, bleeding from the insertion site, hemorrhage from a catheter disconnection, catheter migration, infiltration, and catheter lumen or arterial occlusion.

Intraperitoneal Infusion

Intraperitoneal (IP) therapy is the administration of chemotherapy agents into the peritoneal cavity. IP therapy is used to treat intra-abdominal malignancies such as ovarian and gastrointestinal tumors that have moved into the peritoneum after surgery (Almadrones, 2007).

Catheters used for IP therapy may be an implanted port for long-term treatment or an external catheter for temporary use. These catheters, including those attached to an implanted port, have large internal lumens with multiple side-holes along the catheter length to allow for delivery of large quantities of fluid. Administration of IP therapy includes three phases: the instillation phase; the dwell phase, usually 1 to 4 hours; and the drain phase. Because this treatment involves the delivery of biohazardous agents, additional competency is required to handle the infusion properly.

The patient should be in the semi-Fowler's position for the infusion. He or she may experience nausea and vomiting caused by increasing pressure on the internal organs from the

infusing fluid. Pressure on the diaphragm may cause respiratory distress. Reducing the flow rate and treatment with anti-emetic drugs may be needed. Severe pain may indicate that the catheter has migrated, and an abdominal x-ray is needed to determine its location.

During the dwell and drainage phases, the patient may need assistance in frequently moving from side to side to distribute the fluid evenly around the abdominal cavity. After the fluid has drained, the catheter is flushed with normal saline, although heparinized saline may be used in implanted ports. Catheter lumen occlusion is caused by the formation of fibrous sheaths or fibrin clots or plugs inside the catheter or around the tip.

Exit site infection, indicated by redness, tenderness, and warmth of the tissue around the catheter, can occur. Microbial peritonitis and inflammation of the peritoneal membranes from the invasion of microorganisms are other complications. If peritonitis occurs, the patient may experience a fever and report abdominal pain. Abdominal rigidity and rebound tenderness may be present. This condition is preventable by using strict aseptic technique in the handling of all equipment and infusion supplies. Management includes antimicrobial therapy administered either IV or intraperitoneally.

Intraspinal Infusion

The spinal column is covered by three layers: the dura mater, or outermost covering; the arachnoid, or middle layer; and the pia mater, which is closest to the spinal cord. Two spaces used for infusion are the **epidural** space between the dura mater and vertebrae and the **subarachnoid** space. The epidural space consists of fat, connective tissue, and blood vessels that protect the spinal cord. Medications infused into the epidural space must diffuse through the dura mater, and there is the possibility that some drug will be absorbed systemically. **Intrathecal** medications are infused into the subarachnoid space closer to the spinal cord, allowing reduced doses.

Description

Postoperative and chronic pain management are the primary indications for epidural infusion. Opioids administered epidurally slowly diffuse across the dura mater to the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. They lock onto receptors and block pain impulses from ascending to the brain. The patient receives pain relief from the level of the injection caudally (toward the toes). Local anesthetics administered epidurally work on the sensory nerve roots in the epidural space to block pain impulses. The physician administers the first dose of medication; then, depending on state law, the type of medication, and facility policies, nurses trained in epidural therapy may administer subsequent doses.

Intrathecal infusion is used for treating cancers that cross the blood-brain barrier and involve the central nervous system (CNS). Some medications used to treat CNS neoplasms, such as methotrexate and cytarabine, are not effective IV because they cannot cross the blood-brain barrier. Others must be administered in large doses to cross this natural protective mechanism. It may not be possible to administer large doses of chemotherapeutic agents IV because of the severe systemic side effects associated with them. Administration of medications via the intrathecal route eliminates this problem because they are administered directly into the

cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Intrathecal infusion is also used to treat spasticity of neurologic diseases such as cerebral palsy, multiple sclerosis, reflex sympathetic dystrophy, and traumatic and anoxic acquired brain injuries.

A temporary catheter used for epidural therapy can be a percutaneous catheter that is secured at the site and extends up the back toward the shoulder. These catheters are used for postoperative pain management and usually dwell for only several hours or a few days. Infection and subsequent meningitis and catheter migration are the possible complications.

Epidural catheters used for longer periods include a tunneled catheter and implanted port. Tunneled catheters are tunneled toward the abdomen and have a subcutaneous cuff to act as a barrier to infection. The external catheter exits the skin on the abdomen, so it can be easily reached for use by the patient or caregiver. An epidural implanted port is the same design as an IV implanted port and is accessed with the same noncoring needle. The catheter extends from the lumbar puncture site to the port pocket and is located over a bony prominence on the abdomen through a subcutaneous tunnel. Surgically implanted pumps can also be used to deliver epidural and intrathecal infusion.

Nursing Care

Using sterile techniques, intraspinal catheters usually are inserted in the lumbar region. The external portion of a temporary epidural catheter is laid along the back toward the head and usually extends over the shoulder. The entire catheter length is taped for added security. Dressings are usually not routinely changed because they are used only for short periods. If bleeding or fluid leakage requires dressing removal, extreme care is required to prevent dislodging the catheter.

For a tunneled catheter or implanted port, the entire subcutaneous tunnel and port pocket should be frequently assessed. Measurement of an external catheter segment could help identify catheter migration.

An in-line filter is used on all intraspinal infusions to block the infusion of particulate matter. Medications commonly contain preservatives such as alcohol, phenols, or sulfites; however, these are toxic to the CNS. All medications used for intraspinal infusion must be free of preservatives. Alcohol and products containing alcohol should not be applied to the insertion site because the solution could track along the catheter and cause nerve damage. Povidone-iodine solutions are preferred for skin antisepsis before insertion and during catheter dwell, including tunneled catheter exit sites and implanted port pockets.

Complications from epidural and intrathecal infusion can be caused by the type of medication being infused or can be related to the catheter. It is important to know the specific location of the intraspinal catheter because the doses of medications are quite different. When used for pain management, doses are usually 10 times greater for epidural than for intrathecal infusion. Assess the patient for response to the drugs being given, level of alertness, respiratory status, and itching.

Catheter-related complications include infection, bleeding, leakage of CSF, occlusion of the catheter lumen, and catheter migration. Infection in the patient receiving either epidural or intrathecal therapy could be the result of a lack of asepsis when handling the medication or during the administration. Evidence of local infection, such as redness or swelling at the catheter exit site, may be present. The patient may also exhibit neurologic and systemic signs of infection (e.g., meningitis), such as headache, stiff neck, or temperature higher than 101° F (38.3° C). Report any neurologic change to the health care provider immediately!

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Check intravenous (IV) administration orders for accuracy and completeness before implementing them.
- Prevent IV administration errors by using smart pumps and other emerging technology-based safety infusion systems.
- Devices engineered with safety mechanisms are required by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) to prevent staff injuries from needles, thus preventing bloodborne pathogen hazards.
- Use the evidence-based catheter-related bloodstream infection (CR-BSI) prevention bundle during insertion and care of central lines.
- Teach patients and their families about the patient's infusion therapy, including purpose, type, and safety precautions.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Older adults present special challenges when infusion therapy is used; physiologic changes of the skin and cardiac/renal systems must be considered.
- Use small IV catheters for older adults, and insert using a 10- to 15-degree angle to prevent rolling of the vein.

Physiological Integrity

- Infusion therapy is the delivery of parenteral medications and fluids through a wide variety of catheters and locations.
- Infusion therapy is used for establishing fluid and electrolyte balance, achieving optimum nutrition, maintaining hemostasis, and treating or preventing illnesses with medications.
- Vascular access devices (VADs) are catheters that are used to deliver fluids, electrolytes, and medications into the intravascular space.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Common types of VADs include short peripheral catheters, midline catheters, peripherally inserted central catheters (PICCs), nontunneled percutaneous and tunneled central catheters, implanted ports, and hemodialysis catheters.
- Use best practice for placement of short peripheral VADs, including avoiding the small veins of the hands (see [Chart 15-1](#)).
- Document care for the patient receiving IV therapy, including the type of VAD inserted.
- The type of VAD that is used depends on the reason for infusion therapy, the patient's condition, and the length of therapy.
- Choose the appropriate peripheral catheter gauge size of the VAD depending on its purpose (see [Table 15-1](#)).
- PICCs, tunneled central catheters, and implanted ports are commonly used for long-term infusion therapy.
- Infusion controllers and pumps are electronic devices used to regulate the flow of infusion fluids and medications, but be sure to monitor the infusion rate.
- Nursing care for patients receiving all types of infusion therapy includes using sterile technique when starting the therapy and when changing components of the infusion system, changing and securing the site dressing, and assessing the site for local complications (see [Table 15-2](#)).
- Assess and document the presence of phlebitis using the INS Phlebitis Scale (see [Table 15-6](#)).
- Use normal saline to flush IV catheters on a periodic basis per agency policy.
- Assess, prevent, and manage systemic complications related to IV therapy as outlined in [Table 15-3](#).
- Assess for common complications associated with CVAD insertion as described in [Table 15-4](#).
- Assess, prevent, and manage complications during the course of central IV therapy as listed in [Table 15-5](#).
- Arterial therapy is used primarily for the administration of chemotherapy agents directly into a tumor site; the liver is the most common arterial site for this purpose.
- Intraperitoneal therapy is used for chemotherapy agent administration into the peritoneal cavity, especially for ovarian and gastrointestinal tumors that have metastasized into the peritoneum.
- Subcutaneous therapy of fluids (hypodermoclysis) involves a slow infusion for a short time; the thighs, hips, and abdomen are commonly used.
- Epidural and intrathecal administration of medications are the common uses for intraspinal infusion. Epidural infusions are usually for pain management; intrathecal infusions are usually chemotherapy agents used for cancers that cross the blood-brain barrier into the central nervous system.
- Intraosseous therapy allows fluids and medications to be absorbed by the rich vascular network of the bones; it is used for both children and adults, particularly in emergency situations.

CHAPTER
16

Care of Preoperative Patients

*Robin Chard***evolve** WEBSITE<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES**Safe and Effective Care Environment**

1. Differentiate among the various types and purposes of surgery.
2. Examine individual patient factors for potential threats to safety, especially for older adults.
3. Use appropriate patient identifiers when providing instruction, administering drugs, marking surgical sites, and performing any procedure.
4. Verify that the patient has given informed consent for the surgical procedure and that the presurgical checklist is complete and accurate.
5. Identify patient conditions or issues that need to be communicated to other members of the surgical and postoperative teams.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Use effective communication when teaching patients and family members about what to expect during the surgical experience.

7. Act as a patient advocate with regard to patients' rights, informed consent, and advance directives.
8. Identify learning needs for the patient preparing for surgery.

Physiological Integrity

9. Use knowledge of physiology and behavioral principles to describe an accurate and complete preoperative assessment.
10. Evaluate personal factors that increase the patient's risk for complications during and immediately after surgery.
11. Evaluate laboratory values for changes that may affect the patient's response to drugs, anesthesia, and surgery.
12. Explain the purposes and techniques commonly used for patient preoperative preparation.
13. Apply antiembolic stockings, sequential compression boots, or other devices to reduce or prevent vascular complications.

Advances that have provided many benefits to the patient undergoing surgery include those in surgical techniques, anesthesia, pharmacology, medical devices, and supportive interventions. Research defining best practices has resulted in improved outcomes in all areas of the perioperative experience. New diagnostic and intervention devices for the use and refinement of new surgical techniques are continually being developed. Examples of such technical advances now in common use include robotics and many other types of minimally invasive surgeries (MISs). Advances in anesthetic agents and techniques improve the ways that a surgical patient is treated and has made anesthesia safer than ever before. Many procedures that used to be performed only in the operating room are now being done in other departments such as interventional radiology, cardiac catheterization, and endoscopy. These changes affect the role of the perioperative nurse and have an impact on how patient teaching is performed.

Cost-reduction policies are also a driving force for the management of the surgical patient. Shortened stays and ambulatory surgical services are common. Some patients may only be observed after surgery and may not be admitted as an inpatient. In response to the ongoing health care delivery changes and the use of multiple settings, nurses have modified their interventions, remaining focused on patient care before (**preoperative**), during (**intraoperative**), and after (**postoperative**) surgery. Together, these time periods are known as the **perioperative** experience.

Patient safety throughout the perioperative period is the number-one priority for all personnel. Fig. 16-1 shows an overview of the preoperative activities for patient safety recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO), The Joint Commission (TJC), and the Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN).

Because surgery is invasive and involves exposure to various anesthetic agents and drugs, as well as positioning and other environmental hazards, complications are common. Some complications are predictable and are considered preventable. As a result, TJC has partnered with other groups and agencies and developed a plan for the reduction and eventual elimination of preventable surgical complications known as the Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP). Implementation of these core measures is now mandatory for patient safety. The current plan focuses on prevention of infection, prevention of serious cardiac events, and prevention of venous thromboembolism (VTE). Ten specific core measures have been identified as actions required for prevention of these complications in patients identified to be at risk. Table 16-1 provides an overview of these core measure areas. (The numbers associated with the core measures are not always chronological, indicating that some areas are still in development.) The preoperative areas of responsibility for these core measures and their prevention strategies are highlighted in the appropriate areas of this chapter. In addition, some core measures are discussed in patient care chapters most associated with the complication.

OVERVIEW

The preoperative period begins when the patient is scheduled for surgery and ends at the time of transfer to the surgical

suite. As a nurse, you will function as an educator, an advocate, and a promoter of health. The surgical environment demands the use of knowledge, judgment, and skills based on the principles of nursing science. Perioperative nursing places special emphasis on safety, advocacy, and patient education, although ensuring a “culture of safety” is the responsibility of all health care team members (Scherer & Fitzpatrick, 2008).

The patient’s readiness for surgery is critical to the outcome. Preoperative care focuses on preparing the patient for the surgery and patient safety. This care includes education and any intervention needed before surgery to reduce anxiety and complications and to promote patient cooperation in procedures after surgery. Use adult teaching and learning principles in teaching patients and families before surgery. Validate, clarify, and reinforce information the patient has received from the surgeon or other members of the surgical team. In addition, during the nursing assessment before surgery, problems may be identified that warrant further patient assessment or intervention before the procedure. As required by The Joint Commission’s National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), communication and collaboration with the surgical team are essential so that correct actions are taken to achieve the desired outcome.

Categories and Purposes of Surgery

Surgical procedures are categorized by the purpose, body location, extent, and degree of urgency. Table 16-2 explains the categories and gives examples of surgical procedures.

Surgical Settings

The term **inpatient** refers to a patient who is admitted to a hospital. The patient may be admitted the day before or, more often, the day of surgery (often termed same-day admission [SDA]), or the patient may already be an inpatient when surgery is needed. The terms **outpatient** and **ambulatory** refer to a patient who goes to the surgical area the day of the surgery and returns home on the same day (i.e., *same-day surgery* [SDS]). Hospital-based ambulatory surgical centers, freestanding surgical centers, physicians’ offices, and ambulatory care centers are common. More than half of all surgical procedures in North America are performed in ambulatory centers (CDC, 2008).

One advantage of outpatient surgery is that patients are not separated from the comfort and security of their home and family. With improvements in surgical techniques and anesthesia, more procedures are performed safely on an outpatient basis. Same-day surgery, however, presents new challenges for the patient who does not have an adequate or available support system. An older spouse may be unable to assist in care before or after surgery. Patients who are responsible for others may be unable to perform their usual tasks within the family. They may try to continue their family role but jeopardize their own health by doing so. As a result, their stress, fears, and anxieties about the surgical experience and about returning home immediately after surgery may increase. In these circumstances, a case manager may be assigned to coordinate post-discharge care for the patient.

COMPREHENSIVE SURGICAL CHECKLIST

Blue = World Health Organization (WHO) Green = The Joint Commission - Universal Protocol (JC) 2010 National Patient Safety Goals Orange = JC and WHO

PREPROCEDURE CHECK-IN	SIGN-IN	TIME-OUT	SIGN-OUT
In holding area	Before induction of anesthesia	Before skin incision	Before the patient leaves the operating room
Patient/patient representative actively confirms with registered nurse (RN): Identity ☐ Yes Procedure and procedure site ☐ Yes Consent(s) ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Site marked ☐ Yes ☐ N/A by person performing the procedure RN confirms presence of: History and physical ☐ Yes Preanesthesia assessment ☐ Yes Diagnostic and radiologic test results ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Blood products ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Any special equipment, devices, implants ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Include in preprocedure check-in as per institutional custom: Beta blocker medication given (SCIP) ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis ordered (SCIP) ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Normothermia measures (SCIP) ☐ Yes ☐ N/A	RN and anesthesia care provider confirm: Confirmation of: identity, procedure, procedure site and consent(s) ☐ Yes Site marked ☐ Yes ☐ N/A by the person performing the procedure Patient allergies ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Difficult airway or aspiration risk? ☐ No ☐ Yes (preparation confirmed) Risk of blood loss (>500 mL) ☐ Yes ☐ N/A # of units available _____ Anesthesia safety check completed ☐ Yes Briefing: All members of the team have discussed care plan and addressed concerns ☐ Yes	Initiated by designated team member All other activities to be suspended (unless a life-threatening emergency) Introduction of team members ☐ Yes All: Confirmation of the following: identity, procedure, incision site, consent(s) ☐ Yes Site is marked and visible ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Relevant images properly labeled and displayed ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Any equipment concerns? Anticipated Critical Events Surgeon: States the following: ☐ Critical or nonroutine steps ☐ Case duration ☐ Anticipated blood loss Anesthesia Provider: ☐ Antibiotic prophylaxis within one hour before incision ☐ Yes ☐ N/A ☐ Additional concerns? Scrub and Circulating Nurse: ☐ Sterilization indicators have been confirmed ☐ Additional concerns?	RN confirms: Name of operative procedure Completion of sponge, sharp, and instrument counts ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Specimens identified and labeled ☐ Yes ☐ N/A Any equipment problems to be addressed? ☐ Yes ☐ N/A To all team members: What are the key concerns for recovery and management of this patient? _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ April 2010



The JC does not stipulate which team member initiates any section of the checklist except for site marking.

The Joint Commission also does not stipulate where these activities occur. See the Universal Protocol for details on The Joint Commission requirements.

FIG. 16-1 An overview of perioperative activities for patient safety recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO), The Joint Commission (TJC), and the Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN).

TABLE 16-1 SURGICAL CARE IMPROVEMENT PROJECT CORE MEASURE OVERVIEW

CORE MEASURE IDENTIFICATION	MEASUREMENT NAME/DESCRIPTION
SCIP Infection-1 (SCIP Inf-1)	<i>Prophylactic Antibiotic Received Within One Hour Prior to Surgical Incision</i> The purpose is to use short-duration antibiotics to establish bactericidal blood and tissue levels by the time the surgical incision is made.
SCIP Infection-2 (SCIP Inf-2)	<i>Prophylactic Antibiotic Selection for Surgical Patients</i> The purpose is to ensure that prophylactic antibiotics are used for patients who are at increased risk for surgical site infections. The guidelines for risk and for the exact antibiotic to be used are specific to each type of surgical procedure and follow evidence-based published recommendations.
SCIP Infection-3 (SCIP Inf-3)	<i>Prophylactic Antibiotics Discontinued Within 24 Hours After Surgery End Time</i> The purpose is to ensure that prophylactic antibiotic therapy provides benefit without risk. Prolonged prophylactic antibiotic therapy has not been shown to increase benefit and is known to increase the risk for <i>C. difficile</i> infection and the development of microorganisms that are resistant to antimicrobial drugs.
SCIP Infection-4 (SCIP Inf-4)	<i>Cardiac Surgery Patients with Controlled 6 AM Postoperative Blood Glucose</i> (Applies to cardiac surgery patients only) The purpose is to avoid hyperglycemia (which is defined as blood glucose levels above 200 mg/dL and is associated with increased complications and mortality) in cardiac surgery patients, especially patients undergoing coronary artery bypass graft surgery and patients with diabetes who are having cardiac surgery.
SCIP Infection-6 (SCIP Inf-6)	<i>Surgery Patients with Appropriate Hair Removal</i> The purpose is to avoid hair removal procedures, specifically shaving, that cause skin abrasions and increase the risk for surgical site infections. If hair must be removed from the surgical site, removal is performed with electric clippers or chemical depilatories.
SCIP Infection-9 (SCIP Inf-9)	<i>Urinary Catheter Removed on Postoperative Day 1 (POD 1) or Postoperative Day 2 (POD 2) with Day of Surgery Being Day Zero</i> The purpose is to avoid urinary catheter-associated urinary tract infections, which increase with longer duration indwelling catheters. It is unacceptable to have an indwelling urinary catheter in place longer than 48 hours after surgery unless there is a documented specific and medically validated reason for it.
SCIP Infection-10 (SCIP Inf-10)	<i>Surgery Patients with Perioperative Temperature Management</i> The purpose is to prevent prolonged hypothermia, which is associated with impaired wound healing, serious cardiac complications, altered drug metabolism, coagulation problems, and a higher incidence of surgical site infections. Temperature must be measured within 15 minutes from the end of anesthesia administration. Intentional hypothermia must be documented.
SCIP CARD-2	<i>Surgery Patients on Beta-Blocker Therapy Prior to Arrival Who Received a Beta-Blocker During the Perioperative Period</i> The purpose is to ensure that patients with specific medical conditions receive beta-blocker therapy before surgery and continue the therapy in the immediate postoperative period. This evidence-based action has resulted in a significant reduction in coronary events, cardiovascular mortality, and overall mortality.
SCIP Venous thromboembolism-1 (SCIP VTE-1)	<i>Surgery Patients with Recommended Venous Thromboembolism Prophylaxis Ordered</i> The purpose is to reduce the complications from postoperative venous thromboembolism (VTE). Surgery is a major risk factor responsible for VTE formation and subsequent pulmonary embolism. Although VTE prophylaxis is effective, it is underused. Specific preoperative and postoperative VTE prophylaxis strategies are recommended on the basis of patient risk, type and duration of surgery, and extent of expected postoperative immobilization.
SCIP Venous thromboembolism-2 (SCIP VTE-2)	<i>Surgery Patients Who Received Appropriate Venous Thromboembolism Prophylaxis Within 24 Hours Prior to Surgery to 24 Hours After Surgery</i> The purpose is to reduce the complications from postoperative venous thromboembolism (VTE), particularly among patients undergoing the types of surgeries in which the risk is highest.

Information compiled from The Joint Commission. (2010). *National Patient Safety Goals*. Retrieved October 2010 from <http://www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/>.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Data collection about the patient before surgery begins in various settings (e.g., the surgeon's office, the preadmission or admission office, the inpatient unit, the telephone). Use privacy to increase the patient's comfort with the interview process. Anesthesia and surgery are both physical and emotional stressors. Collect these data:

- Age
- Use of tobacco, alcohol, or illicit substances, including marijuana
- Current drugs
- Use of complementary or alternative practices, such as herbal therapies, folk remedies, or acupuncture
- Medical history
- Prior surgical procedures and how these were tolerated
- Prior experience with anesthesia, pain control, and management of nausea or vomiting
- Autologous or directed blood donations
- Allergies, including sensitivity to latex products
- General health
- Family history
- Type of surgery planned
- Knowledge about and understanding of events during the perioperative period
- Adequacy of the patient's support system

TABLE 16-2 SELECTED CATEGORIES OF SURGICAL PROCEDURES

CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION	CONDITION OR SURGICAL PROCEDURE	CATEGORY	DESCRIPTION	CONDITION OR SURGICAL PROCEDURE
Reasons for Surgery			Degree of Risk of Surgery		
Diagnostic	Performed to determine the origin and cause of a disorder or the cell type for cancer	Breast biopsy Exploratory laparotomy Arthroscopy	Minor	Procedure without significant risk; often done with local anesthesia	Incision and drainage (I&D) Implantation of a venous access device (VAD) Muscle biopsy
Curative	Performed to resolve a health problem by repairing or removing the cause	Cholecystectomy Appendectomy Hysterectomy	Major	Procedure of greater risk; usually longer and more extensive than a minor procedure	Mitral valve replacement Pancreas transplant Lymph node dissection
Restorative	Performed to improve a patient's functional ability	Total knee replacement Finger reimplantation	Extent of Surgery		
Palliative	Performed to relieve symptoms of a disease process, but does not cure	Colostomy Nerve root resection Tumor debulking Ileostomy	Simple	Only the most overtly affected areas involved in the surgery	Simple/partial mastectomy
Cosmetic	Performed primarily to alter or enhance personal appearance	Liposuction Revision of scars Rhinoplasty Blepharoplasty	Radical	Extensive surgery beyond the area obviously involved; is directed at finding a root cause	Radical prostatectomy Radical hysterectomy
Urgency of Surgery			Minimally invasive surgery (MIS)	Surgery performed in a body cavity or body area through one or more endoscopes; can correct problems, remove organs, take tissue for biopsy, re-route blood vessels and drainage systems; is a fast-growing and ever-changing type of surgery	Arthroscopy Tubal ligation Hysterectomy Lung lobectomy Coronary artery bypass Cholecystectomy
Elective	Planned for correction of a nonacute problem	Cataract removal Hernia repair Hemorrhoidectomy Total joint replacement			
Urgent	Requires prompt intervention; may be life threatening if treatment is delayed more than 24 to 48 hr	Intestinal obstruction Bladder obstruction Kidney or ureteral stones Bone fracture Eye injury Acute cholecystitis			
Emergent	Requires immediate intervention because of life-threatening consequences	Gunshot or stab wound Severe bleeding Abdominal aortic aneurysm Compound fracture Appendectomy			

When taking a history, screen the patient for problems that increase the risk for complications during and after surgery. Some problems that increase the surgical risk or increase the risk for complications after surgery are listed in [Table 16-3](#).

Older patients are at increased risk for complications ([Doerflinger, 2009](#)). The normal aging process decreases immune system functioning and delays wound healing. The frequency of chronic illness increases in older patients. In addition, reductions of muscle mass and body water increase the risk for dehydration. See [Chart 16-1](#) for other changes in older adults that may alter the operative response or risk.

Drugs and substance use may affect patient responses to surgery. The use of tobacco increases the risk for pulmonary complications because of changes it causes to the lungs and chest cavity. Excessive alcohol and illicit substance use can alter the patient's responses to anesthesia and pain medication. Withdrawal of alcohol before surgery may lead to delirium tremens. Prescription and over-the-counter drugs may also affect how the patient reacts to the operative experience.

Adverse effects can occur with the use of some herbs, such as those listed in [Table 16-4](#).

Medical history is important to obtain because many chronic illnesses increase surgical risks and need to be considered when planning care ([Woolger, 2008](#)). For example, a patient with systemic lupus erythematosus may need additional drugs to offset the stress of the surgery. A patient with diabetes may need a more extensive bowel preparation because of decreased intestinal motility. An infection may need to be treated before surgery.

Ask the patient specifically about cardiac disease because complications from anesthesia occur more often in patients with cardiac problems ([Morse, 2009](#); [Johnson, 2011](#)). A patient with a history of rheumatic heart disease may be prescribed antibiotics before surgery. Cardiac problems that increase surgical risks include coronary artery disease, angina, myocardial infarction (MI) within 6 months before surgery, heart failure, hypertension, and dysrhythmias. These problems impair the patient's ability to withstand hemodynamic changes and alter the response to anesthesia. The risk for an

TABLE 16-3 SELECTED FACTORS THAT INCREASE SURGICAL RISK OR INCREASE THE RISK FOR POSTOPERATIVE COMPLICATIONS

Age

- Older than 65 years

Medications

- Antihypertensives
- Tricyclic antidepressants
- Anticoagulants
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

Medical History

- Decreased immunity
- Diabetes
- Pulmonary disease
- Cardiac disease
- Hemodynamic instability
- Multisystem disease
- Coagulation defect or disorder
- Anemia
- Dehydration
- Infection
- Hypertension
- Hypotension
- Any chronic disease

Prior Surgical Experiences

- Less-than-optimal emotional reaction
- Anesthesia reactions or complications
- Postoperative complications

Health History

- Malnutrition or obesity
- Drug, tobacco, alcohol, or illicit substance use or abuse
- Altered coping ability

Family History

- Malignant hyperthermia
- Cancer
- Bleeding disorder

Type of Surgical Procedure Planned

- Neck, oral, or facial procedures (airway complications)
- Chest or high abdominal procedures (pulmonary complications)
- Abdominal surgery (paralytic ileus, venous thromboembolism)

MI during surgery is higher in patients who have heart problems. Patients with cardiac disease may require perioperative therapy with beta-blocking drugs, as recommended by core measures for SCIP CARD-2 (see [Table 16-1](#)).

Pulmonary complications during or after surgery are more likely to occur in older patients, those with chronic respiratory problems, and smokers because of smoking- or age-related lung changes ([Doerflinger, 2009](#)). Increased chest rigidity and loss of lung elasticity reduce anesthetic excretion. Smoking increases the blood level of **carboxyhemoglobin** (carbon monoxide on oxygen-binding sites of the hemoglobin molecule), which decreases oxygen delivery to organs. Action of cilia in pulmonary mucous membranes decreases, which leads to retained secretions and predisposes the patient to infection (pneumonia) and **atelectasis** (collapse of alveoli). Atelectasis reduces gas exchange and causes intolerance of anesthesia. It is also a common problem after general anesthesia.

Chronic lung problems such as asthma, emphysema, and chronic bronchitis also reduce the elasticity of the lungs,

TABLE 16-4 POTENTIAL EFFECTS OF HERBS

HERB	POTENTIAL EFFECT
Black cohosh	Bradycardia, hypotension, joint pains
Bloodroot	Bradycardia, dysrhythmia, dizziness, impaired vision, intense thirst
Boneset	Liver toxicity, mental changes, respiratory problems
Coltsfoot	Fever, liver toxicity
Dandelion	Interactions with diuretics, increased concentration of lithium or potassium
Ephedra	Headache, dizziness, insomnia, tachycardia, hypertension, anxiety, irritability, dry mouth
Feverfew	Interference with blood-clotting mechanisms
Garlic	Hypotension, blood-clotting inhibition, potentiation of diabetes drugs
Ginseng	Headache, anxiety, insomnia, hypertension, tachycardia, asthma attacks, postmenopausal bleeding
Goldenseal	Vasoconstriction
Hawthorn	Hypotension
Kava	Damage to the eyes, skin, liver, and spinal cord from long-term use
Licorice	Hyperkalemia, hyponatremia
Lobelia	Hearing and vision problems
Motherwort	Increased anticoagulation
Nettle	Hypokalemia
Senna	Potentiation of digoxin
St. John's wort	Antidepressant, photosensitivity
Valerian root	Mild sedative or tranquilizer effect, hepatotoxicity

which reduces gas exchange. As a result, patients with these problems have reduced tissue oxygenation.

Previous surgical procedures and anesthesia affect the patient's readiness for surgery. Previous experiences, especially with complications, may increase anxiety about the scheduled surgery. Ask about the patient's experience with anesthesia and all allergies. These data provide information about tolerance of and possible fears about the use of anesthesia. The family medical history and problems with anesthetics may indicate possible reactions to anesthesia, such as malignant hyperthermia (see [Chapter 17](#)).

A sensitivity or allergy to certain substances alerts you to a possible reaction to anesthetic agents or to substances that are used before or during surgery. For example, povidone-iodine (e.g., Betadine) used for skin cleansing contains the same allergens found in shellfish. Patients who are allergic to shellfish may have an adverse reaction to povidone-iodine. The patient with an allergy to bananas and other fruits may also have a latex sensitivity or allergy.

Blood donation for surgery can be made by the patient (**autologous donations**) a few weeks just before the scheduled surgery date. Then, if blood is needed during or after surgery, an autologous blood transfusion can be given. This practice eliminates transfusion reactions and reduces the risk for acquiring bloodborne disease.

Patients can donate their own blood up to 5 weeks before surgery if they are infection free, have a hemoglobin level greater than 11 g/dL (110 g/L), and have a physician's

CHART 16-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes of Aging as Surgical Risk Factors

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Cardiovascular System Decreased cardiac output Increased blood pressure Decreased peripheral circulation	Determine normal activity levels, and note when the patient tires. Monitor vital signs, peripheral pulses, and capillary refill.	Knowing limits helps prevent fatigue. Having baseline data helps detect deviations.
Respiratory System Reduced vital capacity Loss of lung elasticity Decreased oxygenation of blood	Teach coughing and deep-breathing exercises. Monitor respirations and breathing effort.	Pulmonary exercises help prevent pulmonary complications. Having baseline data helps detect deviations.
Renal/Urinary System Decreased blood flow to kidneys Reduced ability to excrete waste Decline in glomerular filtration rate Nocturia common	Monitor intake and output. Assess overall hydration. Monitor electrolyte status. Assist frequently with toileting needs, especially at night.	Ongoing assessment helps detect fluid and electrolyte imbalances and decreased renal function. Frequent toileting helps prevent incontinence and falls.
Neurologic System Sensory deficits Slower reaction time Decreased ability to adjust to changes in the surroundings	Orient the patient to the surroundings. Allow extra time for teaching the patient. Provide for the patient's safety.	An individualized preoperative teaching plan is developed based on the patient's orientation and any neurologic deficits. Safety measures help prevent falls and injury.
Musculoskeletal System Increased incidence of deformities related to osteoporosis or arthritis	Assess the patient's mobility. Teach turning and positioning. Encourage ambulation. Place on falls precautions, if indicated.	Interventions help prevent complications of immobility. Safety measures help prevent injury.
Skin Dry with less subcutaneous fat makes the skin at greater risk for damage; slower skin healing increases risk for infection	Assess the patient's skin before surgery for lesions, bruises, and areas of decreased circulation. Pad bony prominences. Use pressure-avoiding or pressure-reducing overlays. Avoid applying tape to skin. Teach the patient to change position at least every 2 hours.	Having baseline data helps detect changes and evaluate interventions. Padding can protect at-risk areas. Overlays can prevent pressure ulcer formation by redistributing body weight. Tape removal damages thin skin. Changing position frequently helps prevent reduced blood flow to an area and changes external pressure patterns.

prescription. Patients with cardiac disease may need additional clearance from their cardiologist before making an autologous donation. The physician may prescribe supplemental iron before the first donation. Autologous donations can be made as often as every 3 days if other criteria are met. Usually a total of 2 to 4 units are donated. The last donation cannot be made within 72 hours before surgery.

A special tag is placed on the blood bag when an autologous blood donation has been made. The blood donor center gives the patient a matching tag that he or she wears or brings to the surgical area before surgery, as required by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs). This procedure helps ensure that patients receive only their own blood. If the blood is not used, some agencies discard it. In other agencies, the blood goes to the blood bank where it is processed into various blood components (e.g., plasma, packed cells, platelets) for infusion in other patients.

Patients may wish to have family and friends donate blood exclusively for their use, if needed. This practice (called *directed blood donation*) is possible only if the blood types are compatible and the donor's blood is acceptable. Patients

may fear disease transmission from unknown blood and feel more comfortable knowing who gave the blood. Many centers do not accept directed blood, stating that it gives a false sense of security. As with autologous blood donations, a special tag is attached to the blood bag. This tag notes the names of the patient and the donor and bears the patient's signature.

Ask whether autologous or directed blood donations have been made, and document this information in the chart. It is important to know the specific blood collection center where the donation was made and whether the blood has arrived before the patient goes into surgery. The hospital receives and stores the blood units until they are used or are no longer needed. Unused blood is returned to the collection center.

Increased use of "bloodless surgery" and minimally invasive surgery provides alternatives for patients with religious or medical restrictions to blood transfusions. These programs reduce the need for transfusion during and after surgery. Some techniques used are limiting blood samples (the number of samples, as well as the volume of blood drawn per sample) before surgery and stimulating the patient's own red

blood cell production with epoetin alpha (e.g., Epogen, Procrit) before, during, and after surgery. Supplemental iron, folic acid, vitamin B₁₂, and vitamin C may be prescribed before surgery to help red blood cell formation. Newer equipment and surgical techniques cause less blood loss than older techniques. Such advances include recycling blood suctioned during surgery and immediately transfusing it back into the patient. Assess, monitor, teach, and support the patient during the bloodless surgery process.

Discharge planning is started before surgery. Assess the patient's home environment, self-care capabilities, and support systems and anticipate postoperative needs before surgery. *All patients, regardless of how minor the procedure or how often they have had surgery, should have discharge planning.* Older patients and dependent adults may need transportation referrals to and from the physician's office or the surgical setting. A home care nurse may be needed to monitor recovery and to provide instructions. All patients with few support systems may need follow-up care at home. Some patients need a planned direct admission to a rehabilitation hospital or center for physical therapy after surgery, especially joint replacement surgery (Lucas, 2008). Shortened hospital stays require adequate discharge planning to achieve the desired outcomes after surgery.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

On admission to the preoperative area, the client scheduled for a hip replacement tells the nurse that three autologous blood donations for this surgery have been made in the past 3 weeks. What is the nurse's best action?

- Check the client's international normalized ratio (INR).
- Call the laboratory to ensure that the blood is physically at the operating facility.
- Ensure that the client has given consent to receive blood if a transfusion is necessary.
- Inform the client that an autologous transfusion does not eliminate the risk for development of bloodborne diseases.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The preoperative patient may be any age, with a health status that varies from well to debilitated. Perform a complete assessment before surgery to obtain baseline data. During assessment, identify current health problems, potential complications related to anesthesia, and possible complications that may occur after surgery.

When beginning the assessment, obtain a complete set of vital signs. You may need to obtain vital signs several times at different time intervals for accurate baseline values. Previous vital signs from another admission (if available) are helpful to compare with current vital signs. Abnormal vital signs may require postponement of surgery until the problem is treated and the patient's condition is stable. Also assess for anxiety, which could increase blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory rate. Document these findings as part of the overall assessment.

Throughout the physical assessment, focus on problem areas identified from the patient's history and on all body systems affected by the surgical procedure. The older adult (Chart 16-2; see also Chapter 3) or chronically ill patient is at increased risk for complications during and after surgery. The number of serious problems (**morbidity**) and death

CHART 16-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Specific Considerations When Planning Care for the Older Preoperative Patient

- Greater incidence of chronic illness
- Greater incidence of malnutrition
- More allergies
- Increased incidence of impaired self-care abilities
- Inadequate support systems
- Decreased ability to withstand the stress of surgery and anesthesia
- Increased risk for cardiopulmonary complications after surgery
- Risk for a change in mental status when admitted (e.g., related to unfamiliar surroundings, change in routine, drugs)
- Increased risk for a fall and resultant injury

(**mortality**) during or after surgery is higher in older and chronically ill patients (Morse, 2009).

Report any abnormal assessment findings to the surgeon and to anesthesia personnel, as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. In this way, you are a proactive patient advocate exercising professional legal responsibility. Often, established protocols or care maps identify what interventions are to be performed before surgery.

Cardiovascular status is critical to assess because cardiac problems may cause as many as 30% of surgery-related deaths. Check the patient for hypertension, which is common, is often undiagnosed, and can affect the response to surgery. Cardiac assessment includes listening to heart sounds for rate, regularity, and abnormalities. Ask whether the patient has ever had a venous thromboembolism (VTE). Examine the patient's hands and feet for temperature, color, peripheral pulses, capillary refill, and edema. Report any problems (e.g., absent peripheral pulses, pitting edema, cardiac symptoms, chest pain, shortness of breath, and dyspnea) to the physician for further assessment and evaluation. (Cardiac assessment is discussed further in Chapter 35.)

Respiratory status considers age, smoking history (including exposure to secondhand smoke), and any chronic illness (Doerflinger, 2009). Observe the patient's posture; respiratory rate, rhythm, and depth; overall respiratory effort; and lung expansion. Document any clubbing of the fingertips (swelling at the base of the nail beds caused by a chronic lack of oxygen) or cyanosis. Auscultate the lungs to assess for any abnormal breath sounds (crackles, wheezes, rubs). (More information on respiratory assessment is found in Chapter 29.)

Kidney function affects the excretion of drugs and waste products, including anesthetic and analgesic agents. If kidney function is reduced, fluid and electrolyte balance can be altered, especially in older patients. Ask about problems such as urinary frequency, **dysuria** (painful urination), **nocturia** (awakening during nighttime sleep because of a need to void), difficulty starting urine flow, and **oliguria** (scant amount of urine). Ask the patient about the appearance and odor of the urine. Equally important is an assessment of usual fluid intake and degree of continence. If the patient has kidney or urinary problems, consult with the physician about further workup. (Kidney/urinary assessment is discussed further in Chapter 68.)

Kidney impairment decreases the excretion of drugs and anesthetic agents. As a result, drug effectiveness may be altered. Scopolamine (Buscopan ) , morphine, other opioids, and barbiturates often cause confusion, disorientation, apprehension, and restlessness when given to patients with decreased kidney function.

Neurologic status includes the patient's overall mental status, level of consciousness, orientation, and ability to follow commands. This information is needed before planning preoperative teaching and care after surgery. A problem in any of these areas affects the type of care needed during the surgical experience. Determine the patient's baseline neurologic status to be able to identify changes that may occur later. Also assess for any motor or sensory deficits. (See [Chapter 43](#) for complete nervous system assessment.)

The usual neurologic status of a mentally impaired patient may be difficult to assess (Doerflinger, 2009; Grebe, 2007). The patient who has been independent and oriented at home may become disoriented in the hospital setting. Family members can often provide information about what the patient was like at home.

The Joint Commission's NPSGs require that you ensure patient safety by assessing the patient's risk for falling, especially older patients. Evaluate factors such as mental status, muscle strength, steadiness of gait, and sense of independence to determine the patient's risk. Document the patient's ability to ambulate and the steadiness of gait as baseline data.

Musculoskeletal status problems may interfere with positioning during and after surgery. For example, patients with arthritis may be able to assume surgical positions but have discomfort after surgery from prolonged joint immobilization. Other anatomic features, such as the shape and length of the neck and the shape of the chest cavity, may interfere with respiratory and cardiac function or require special positioning during surgery.

Ask about a history of joint replacement, and document the exact location of any prostheses. *During surgery, ensure that electrocautery pads, which could cause an electrical burn, are not placed on or near the area of the prosthesis.*

Nutritional status, especially malnutrition and obesity, can increase surgical risk (Woolger, 2008). Surgery increases metabolic rate and depletes potassium, vitamin C, and B vitamins, all of which are needed for wound healing and blood clotting. In malnourished patients, decreased serum protein levels slow recovery. Negative nitrogen balance may result from depleted protein stores. This problem increases the risk for skin breakdown, delayed wound healing, possible dehiscence or evisceration (see [Chapter 18](#)), dehydration, and sepsis.

Some older patients may have poor nutrition because of chronic illness, diuretic or laxative use, poor dietary planning or habits, anorexia, and lack of motivation or financial limitations (Touhy & Jett, 2010). Indications of poor fluid or nutritional status include:

- Brittle nails
- Muscle wasting
- Dry or flaky skin, decreased skin turgor, and hair changes (e.g., dull, sparse, dry)
- Orthostatic (postural) hypotension
- Decreased serum protein levels and abnormal serum electrolyte values

The obese patient is often malnourished because of an imbalanced diet. Obesity increases the risk for poor wound healing

because of excessive **adipose** (fatty) tissue. Fatty tissue has few blood vessels, little collagen, and decreased nutrients, all of which are needed for wound healing. Obesity stresses the heart and reduces the lung volumes, which can affect the surgery and recovery. In addition, obese patients may need larger doses of drugs and may retain them longer after surgery.

Skin assessment is important. Many insurers have denied coverage to hospitals for care provided to patients who develop skin breakdown or pressure ulcers during the perioperative period. Assess the patient's skin for signs of breakdown, open sores, or areas that may receive excessive pressure during the surgical procedure, and document these findings. Communicate this information to the circulating nurse so precautions can be taken to prevent injury.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client scheduled for knee replacement surgery today performed all of the following actions yesterday. Which action is most important for the nurse to report to the surgeon?

- A. Took 50 mg of diphenhydramine (Benadryl) at bedtime
- B. Smoked one pack of cigarettes instead of two
- C. Drank two 12-ounce glasses of beer
- D. Took two aspirins three times

Psychosocial Assessment

Perform a psychosocial assessment to determine the patient's level of anxiety, coping ability, and support systems. Provide information and offer support as needed.

Most patients have some degree of anxiety before surgery; others may be fearful. The extent of these reactions varies according to the type of surgery, the perceived effects of the surgery and its potential outcome, and the patient's personality. Surgery may be seen as a threat to life, body image, self-esteem, self-concept, or lifestyle. Patients may fear death, pain, helplessness, a change in role or work status, a diagnosis of life-threatening conditions, possible disabling or crippling effects, or the unknown.

Anxiety or fear affects the patient's ability to learn, cope, and cooperate with teaching and operative procedures. Anxiety may also influence the amount and type of anesthetic needed and may slow recovery. In addition, severe preoperative anxiety appears to increase the degree of pain some patients have after surgery. Be aware of potential anxiety when interviewing the patient and planning teaching.

Assess coping mechanisms used by the patient under similar situations or in the past when confronted with a stressful situation. Ask open-ended questions about the patient's feelings about the entire surgical experience. Factors that influence coping include age; previous surgical or sick-role experiences; and emotional and physical signs of fear, anxiety, or discomfort. Signs of anxiety include anger, crying, restlessness, profuse sweating, increased pulse rate, palpitations, sleeplessness, diarrhea, and urinary frequency.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests before surgery provide baseline data about the patient's health and help predict potential complications (Woolger, 2008). The patient scheduled for surgery in an ambulatory surgical center or admitted to the hospital on the morning of or day before surgery may have preadmission

testing (PAT) performed from 24 hours to 28 days before the scheduled surgery. These test results are usually valid unless there has been a change in the patient's condition that warrants repeated testing or the patient is taking drugs that can alter laboratory values (e.g., warfarin [Coumadin], aspirin, diuretics). Some facilities have time limits for tests, especially pregnancy testing or any other test results that would require altering the surgical plan.

The choice of laboratory testing before surgery varies among facilities and depends on the patient's age, medical history, and type of anesthesia planned (Rothrock & McEwen, 2007). The most common tests include:

- Urinalysis
- Blood type and screen
- Complete blood count or hemoglobin level and hematocrit
- Clotting studies (prothrombin time [PT], international normalized ratio [INR], activated partial thromboplastin time [aPTT], platelet count)
- Electrolyte levels
- Serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen levels
- Depending on a female patient's age and the nature of the planned procedure, a pregnancy test may also be needed

Urinalysis is performed to assess for abnormal substances in the urine such as protein, glucose, blood, and bacteria. If kidney disease is suspected or if the patient is older, the physician may request other tests to determine the type and degree of disease present.

Report electrolyte imbalances or other abnormal results to the anesthesia team and the surgeon before surgery. **Hypokalemia** (decreased serum potassium level) increases the risk for toxicity if the patient is taking digoxin, slows recovery from anesthesia, and increases cardiac irritability. **Hyperkalemia** (increased serum potassium level) increases the risk for dysrhythmias, especially with the use of anesthesia.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Any potassium imbalance—hypokalemia or hyperkalemia—must be corrected before surgery.

Other studies may be needed, depending on the patient's medical history. For example, baseline arterial blood gas (ABG) values are assessed before surgery for patients with chronic pulmonary problems. [Chart 16-3](#) lists abnormal laboratory findings and their possible causes.

Imaging Assessment

A chest x-ray may be requested before surgery. Often, young healthy adults are not required to have a chest x-ray. A chest x-ray determines the size and shape of the heart, lungs, and major vessels and provides evidence of the presence of pneumonia or tuberculosis. It also provides baseline data in case of complications. Abnormal x-ray findings alert the surgeon to potential cardiac or pulmonary complications. Heart failure, cardiomyopathy, pneumonia, or infiltrates may cause cancellation or delay of elective surgery. For emergency surgery, x-ray results assist the anesthesia provider in selecting anesthesia.

Other imaging studies are based on patient need, medical history, and the nature of the surgical procedure. For example,

a patient with back pain may have CT scans or MRI examinations before spinal surgery to identify the exact location of the problem.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

An electrocardiogram (ECG) may be required for all patients older than a specific age who are to have general anesthesia. The age varies among facilities but is often 40 to 45 years. An ECG may also be required for patients with a history of cardiac disease or those at risk for cardiac complications. It provides baseline information on new or existing cardiac problems, such as an old myocardial infarction (MI). A patient with a known cardiac problem may need a cardiology consultation before surgery. Drugs for problem prevention, such as nitroglycerin and antibiotics, may be needed throughout the surgical period to reduce or prevent stress on the heart. Abnormal or potentially life-threatening ECG results may cause the cancellation of surgery until the patient's cardiac status is stable.

A focused assessment of the preoperative patient is shown in [Chart 16-4](#).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

For which client preadmission testing laboratory result does the nurse take immediate action?

- International normalized ratio 0.9
- White blood cell count 8500/mm³
- Serum potassium level 2.8 mEq/L
- Serum sodium level 132 mEq/L

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for preoperative patients are:

- Insufficient information about the surgical experience related to unfamiliarity with surgical procedures and preparation
- Anxiety related to new or unknown experience, possibility of pain, and possible surgical outcomes

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

As the nurse, your role is to ensure coordination of care for the patient before surgery. This responsibility continues until the patient is transferred to the OR.

Providing Information

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient needs to know what to expect during and after surgery and participate in his or her recovery as indicated by consistently demonstrating these behaviors:

- Explaining in his or her own words the purpose and expected results of the planned surgery
- Asking questions when a term or procedure is not known
- Adhering to the NPO requirements
- Stating an understanding of preoperative preparations (e.g., skin preparation, bowel preparation)
- Demonstrating correct use of exercises and techniques to be used after surgery for the prevention of complications (e.g., splinting the incision, coughing/deep breathing, performing leg exercises, ambulating as early as permitted)

CHART 16-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Perioperative Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS	
		INCREASED IN	DECREASED IN
Potassium (K ⁺)	3.5-5.0 mEq/L, or 3.5-5.0 mmol/L	Dehydration Renal failure Acidosis Cellular/tissue damage Hemolysis of the specimen	NPO status when potassium replacement is inadequate Excessive use of non-potassium-sparing diuretics Vomiting Malnutrition Diarrhea Alkalosis
Sodium (Na ⁺)	90 yr or younger: 136-145 mEq/L, or 136-145 mmol/L Older than 90 yr: 132-146 mEq/L, or 132-146 mmol/L	Cardiac or renal failure Hypertension Excessive amounts of IV fluids containing normal saline Edema Dehydration (hemoconcentration)	Nasogastric drainage Vomiting or diarrhea Excessive use of laxatives or diuretics Excessive amounts of IV fluids containing water Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)
Chloride (Cl ⁻)	90 yr or younger: 98-106 mEq/L, or 98-106 mmol/L Older than 90 yr: 98-111 mEq/L, or 98-111 mmol/L	Respiratory alkalosis Dehydration Renal failure Excessive amounts of IV fluids containing sodium chloride (NaCl)	Excessive nasogastric drainage Vomiting Excessive use of diuretics Diarrhea
Carbon dioxide (CO ₂)	60 yr or younger: 23-30 mEq/L, or 23-30 mmol/L 60-90 yr: 23-31 mEq/L, or 23-31 mmol/L Older than 90 yr: 20-29 mEq/L, or 20-29 mmol/L	Chronic pulmonary disease Intestinal obstruction Vomiting or nasogastric suctioning Metabolic alkalosis	Hyperventilation Diabetic ketoacidosis Diarrhea Lactic acidosis Renal failure Salicylate toxicity
Glucose (fasting)	60 yr or younger: 70-110 mg/dL, or 4.1-5.9 mmol/L 60-90 yr: 82-115 mg/dL, or 4.6-6.4 mmol/L Older than 90 yr: 75-121 mg/dL, or 4.2-6.7 mmol/L	Hyperglycemia Excessive amounts of IV fluids containing glucose Stress Steroid use Pancreatic or hepatic disease	Hypoglycemia Excess insulin
Creatinine	<i>Females:</i> 60 yr or younger: 0.5-1.1 mg/dL, or 44-97 μmol/L 60-90 yr: 0.6-1.2 mg/dL, or 53-106 μmol/L Older than 90 yr: 0.6-1.3 mg/dL, or 53-115 μmol/L <i>Males:</i> 60 yr or younger: 0.6-1.2 mg/dL, or 53-106 μmol/L 60-90 yr: 0.8-1.3 mg/dL, or 71-115 μmol/L Older than 90 yr: 1.0-1.7 mg/dL, or 88-150 μmol/L	Renal damage with destruction of large number of nephrons Renal insufficiency Acute renal failure Chronic kidney disease End-stage kidney disease (ESKD)	Atrophy of muscle tissue
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	Younger than 60 yr: 10-20 mg/dL, or 2.1-7.1 mmol/L 60-90 yr: 8-23 mg/dL, or 2.9-8.2 mmol/L Older than 90 yr: 10-31 mg/dL, or 3.6-11.1 mmol/L	Dehydration Renal failure Excessive protein in diet Liver failure	Overhydration Malnutrition
Prothrombin time (pro time, PT)	11-12.5 sec, 85%-100%, or 1:1.1 patient-control ratio	Coagulation defect (bleeding disorder) Vitamin K deficiency	Coagulation (clotting) disorder, such as thrombophlebitis or pulmonary embolus
International normalized ratio (INR)	0.7-1.8	Anticoagulant therapy (aspirin, warfarin)	Extensive cancer
Partial thromboplastin time, activated (aPTT)	30-40 sec	Coagulation defect (bleeding disorder) Anticoagulant therapy (heparin) Liver disease	Coagulation (clotting) disorder, such as thrombophlebitis or pulmonary embolus Extensive cancer
White blood cell (WBC) count (leukocyte count)	Total: 5,000-10,000/mm ³	Infection Inflammation Stress Tissue necrosis	Immune disorder Immunosuppressant therapy

Continued

CHART 16-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Perioperative Assessment—cont'd

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS	
		INCREASED IN	DECREASED IN
Hemoglobin, total	<i>Females:</i> 18-44 yr: 12-16 g/dL, or 117-155 g/L 45-64 yr: 11.7-16.0 g/dL, or 117-160 g/L 65-74 yr: 11.7-16.1 g/dL, or 117-161 g/L <i>Males:</i> 18-44 yr: 14-18 g/dL, or 132-173 g/L 45-64 yr: 13.1-17.2 g/dL, or 131-172 g/L 65-74 yr: 12.6-17.4 g/dL, or 126-174 g/L	Dehydration Polycythemia Chronic pulmonary disease Congestive heart failure	Blood loss Anemia Renal failure
Hematocrit	<i>Females:</i> 18-44 yr: 35%-45% 45-74 yr: 37%-47% <i>Males:</i> 18-44 yr: 42%-52% 45-64 yr: 39%-50% 65-74 yr: 37%-51%	Dehydration Polycythemia High altitude	Blood loss Anemia Kidney failure

CHART 16-4 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Preoperative Patient

As part of the cardiopulmonary assessment, take and record vital signs; report:

- Hypotension or hypertension
- Heart rate less than 60 or more than 120 beats/min
- Irregular heart rate
- Chest pain
- Shortness of breath or dyspnea
- Tachypnea
- Pulse oximetry reading of less than 94%

Assess for and report any signs or symptoms of infection, including:

- Fever
- Purulent sputum
- Dysuria or cloudy, foul-smelling urine
- Any red, swollen, draining IV or wound site
- Increased white blood cell count

Assess for and report signs or symptoms that could contraindicate surgery, including:

- Increased prothrombin time (PT), international normalized ratio (INR), or activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT)
- Hypokalemia or hyperkalemia
- Patient report of possible pregnancy or positive pregnancy test

Assess for and report other clinical conditions that may need to be evaluated by a physician or advanced practice nurse before proceeding with the surgical plans, including:

- Change in mental status
- Vomiting
- Rash
- Recent administration of an anticoagulant drug

Interventions. Because the surgical experience is foreign to many people, focus on teaching the patient and family members (Kruzik, 2009). Teaching may begin in the surgeon's office for planned or elective surgery. Pamphlets, written instructions, and videotapes or DVDs may be given or sent to the patient. More teaching may occur when the patient has preadmission testing. Some facilities hold classes before surgery for groups of patients or show videos for those who are having the same or similar surgical procedures. A tour of the operating suite and the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) may be included.

Explore the patient's level of knowledge and understanding. Increased access to information via the Internet may be helpful but is also a concern. Some Internet information may not be accurate or may not apply to a specific patient's plan of care.

The Joint Commission's NPSGs require that you provide information about informed consent, dietary restrictions, specific preparation for surgery (bowel and skin preparations), exercises after surgery, and plans for pain management to promote patients' participation and help achieve the expected outcome. A sample educational checklist is shown in Table 16-5. Because education occurs in a variety of settings, coordination of patient teaching efforts is challenging. When you care for the patient just before surgery (same-day, ambulatory surgery [outpatient] unit, inpatient hospital unit), assess the patient's and family members' knowledge and provide additional information as needed. Document in the patient record information about who was involved in teaching, what specifically was taught, and what education materials were given to the patient and family.

Ensuring Informed Consent. Surgery of any type involves invasion of the body and requires informed consent from the patient or legal guardian (Fig. 16-2). The Joint Commission's NPSGs state that patients deserve to be informed and involved in decisions affecting their health care. Consent implies that the patient has sufficient information to understand:

- The nature of and reason for surgery
- Who will be performing the surgery and whether others will be present during the procedure (e.g., students)
- All available options and the risks associated with each option
- The risks associated with the surgical procedure and its potential outcomes
- The risks associated with the use of anesthesia

Informed consent is one way to help ensure patient safety. It helps protect the patient from any unwanted procedures and protects the surgeon and the facility from lawsuit claims related to unauthorized surgery or uninformed patients. Written record of informed consent is documented on a "consent form" but can also be documented in the surgeon's notes. The consent form documents the patient's consent and signature for the procedure listed.

TABLE 16-5 PREOPERATIVE TEACHING CHECKLIST

Consider these items when planning individualized preoperative teaching for patients and families:

- Fears and anxieties
- Surgical procedure
- Preoperative routines (e.g., NPO, blood samples, showering)
- Invasive procedures (e.g., lines, catheters)
- Coughing, turning, deep breathing
- Incentive spirometer
 - How to use
 - How to tell when used correctly
- Lower extremity exercises
- Stockings and pneumatic compression devices
- Early ambulation
- Splinting
- Pain management

As a competent adult, it is the patient's right to refuse treatment for any reason, even when refusal might lead to death. For example, in the case of Jehovah's Witnesses, some patients will not accept blood transfusions because of their religious convictions.

The surgeon is responsible for having the consent form signed before sedation is given and before surgery is performed. *You, as a nurse, are not responsible for providing detailed information about the surgical procedure. Rather, your role is to clarify facts that have been presented by the physician and dispel myths that the patient or family may have about the surgical experience. You verify that the consent form is signed, and you serve as a witness to the signature, not to the fact that the patient is informed.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If you believe that the patient has not been adequately informed, contact the surgeon and request that he or she see the patient for further clarification. Document this action in the medical record.

Patients who cannot write may sign with an X, which must be witnessed by two persons. In an emergency, telephone or telegram authorization is acceptable and should be followed up with written consent as soon as possible. The number of witnesses (usually two) and the type of documentation vary according to the facility's policy. In a life-threatening situation in which every effort has been made to contact the person with medical power of attorney, consent is desired but not essential. In place of written or oral consent, written consultation by at least two physicians who are not associated with the case may be requested by the physician. This formal consultation legally supports the decision for surgery until the appropriate person can sign a consent form. If the patient is not capable of giving consent and has no family, the court can appoint a legal guardian to represent the patient's best interests (Grebe, 2007).

A blind patient may sign his or her own consent form, which usually needs to be witnessed by two persons. Patients who have English as a second language (ESL), who do not speak the general language of the facility, or who are hearing impaired may require a qualified translator and a second witness. Many facilities have consent forms written in more than one language and also have health care professionals

who are proficient with American Sign Language. Qualified translators may be health care professionals, other types of hospital employee, or family members (Smith, 2007). They are required to keep patient information confidential.

Some surgical procedures, such as intraocular lens implants, sterilization, and experimental procedures, may require a special permit in addition to the standard consent. National and local governing bodies and the individual facility determine which procedures require a separate permit. Separate consents for anesthesia and blood products may be required.

Surgical procedures that are site-specific, such as left, right, or bilateral, require patient identification before surgery. As required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, to ensure the correct site is selected and the wrong site is avoided, the site is marked by a licensed independent practitioner and, whenever possible, involves the patient. The practitioner is accountable and should be present during the procedure. The nurse is an important part of this safety measure. Before starting the operative procedure, facilities use a "time-out" procedure to verify the correct site. The perioperative nurse is in a position of ensuring these safety measures are again implemented immediately before the procedure is started (Association of periOperative Registered Nurses [AORN], 2010a; Beyea, 2007; Cheek & Jones, 2009).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

At a minimum, the patient's identity, correct side and site, correct patient position, and agreement on the proposed procedure must be verified by all members of the surgical team.

Patient Self-Determination. Patients receiving medical care have the right to have or to initiate advance directives, such as a living will or durable power of attorney, as mandated by the Patient Self-Determination Act. Advance directives provide legal instructions to the health care providers about the patient's wishes and are to be followed. *Surgery does not provide an exception to a patient's advance directives or living will (AORN, 2010c).* Chapter 9 discusses advance directives in more detail.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client scheduled to have surgery today cannot read or write. The surgeon obtaining the consent wants to have the client's spouse sign the consent instead. What is the nurse's best action?

- A. Nothing; a signed informed consent statement does not need to be obtained from this client.
- B. Locate the spouse because the informed consent statement must be signed by the client's closest relative.
- C. Remind the surgeon that the client may sign the informed consent statement with an X in front of two witnesses.
- D. Notify the administration because the court must appoint a legal guardian to represent the client's best interests and give consent for all surgical procedures.

Implementing Dietary Restrictions. Regardless of the type of surgery and anesthesia planned, the patient is restricted to NPO status before surgery. **NPO** means no eating, drinking (including water), or smoking (nicotine stimulates gastric secretions). The exact amount of time a

patient must be NPO before surgery is controversial. Patients, especially older adults, who fast for 8 or more hours may have imbalances of fluids, electrolytes, and blood glucose levels. The American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) recommends a reduced NPO time—6 or more hours for easily digested solid food and 2 hours for clear liquids (*American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force, 1999; Crenshaw & Winslow, 2008*). A major problem is that these guidelines for duration of fasting have not been implemented universally (see the **Evidence-Based Practice box** at right).

NPO status ensures that the stomach contains a limited volume of gastric secretions, which decreases the risk for aspiration. Outpatients and patients who are scheduled for admission to the hospital on the same day that surgery is performed must receive written and oral instructions about when to begin NPO status.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Emphasize the importance of adherence to the prescribed NPO restriction. Failure to adhere can result in cancellation of surgery or increase the risk for aspiration during or after surgery.

Administering Regularly Scheduled Drugs. On the day of surgery, the patient's usual drug schedule may need to be altered. Consult the medical physician and the anesthesia provider for instructions about drugs such as those taken for diabetes, cardiac disease, or glaucoma, as well as regularly scheduled anticonvulsants, antihypertensives, anticoagulants, antidepressants, and corticosteroids. The physician may prescribe some drugs, including over-the-counter drugs such as aspirin, and herbal supplements to be stopped until after surgery. Other drugs may be given IV to maintain the drug level in the blood. *Drugs for cardiac disease, respiratory disease, seizures, and hypertension are commonly allowed with a sip of water before surgery.* Some antihypertensive or antidepressant drugs are withheld on the day of surgery to reduce adverse effects on blood pressure during surgery. Even when beta-blockers are not part of a patient's usual medications, they may be prescribed for some patients who are at risk for cardiac problems. Check with the health care provider, surgeon, or anesthesia provider to determine whether a specific patient requires perioperative therapy with beta-blocking drugs, as recommended by core measures for SCIP CARD-2 (see *Table 16-1*).

The patient with diabetes who takes insulin may be given a reduced dose of intermediate- or long-acting insulin based on the blood glucose level or may be given regular (fast-acting) insulin in divided doses on the day of surgery. As an alternative, an IV infusion of 5% dextrose in water may be given with the insulin to prevent low blood sugar during surgery. Because of the many treatment approaches to diabetes, clarify drug and IV prescriptions with the physician. (See *Chapter 67* for more information about diabetes.)

Intestinal Preparation. Bowel or intestinal preparations are performed to prevent injury to the colon and to reduce the number of intestinal bacteria. Evacuation of the bowel is needed when a patient is having major abdominal, pelvic, perineal, or perianal surgery. The surgeon's preference and the type of surgical procedure determine the type of bowel

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

How Long Will It Take for Guideline Implementation?

Crenshaw, J., & Winslow, E. (2008). Preoperative fasting duration and medication instruction: Are we improving? *AORN Journal*, 88(6), 963-976.

More than a decade ago, the American Society of Anesthesiologists examined the evidence for long duration of fasting (10 to 12 hours) before scheduled surgery and generated new guidelines for shortening the fasting duration for healthy adults. These landmark guidelines recommend a minimum fast of 2 hours for clear liquids and an 8-hour fast for a regular meal of solid food as being sufficient for the prevention of intraoperative regurgitation and aspiration. In addition, the guidelines indicate that important regularly scheduled oral medications, such as those for asthma control or hypertension and cardiac drugs, are permitted anytime before surgery with a small sip of water.

A variety of research reports and previous meta-analyses regarding duration of preoperative fasting as well as a comparison study indicate that implementation of the guidelines for shortened duration of fasting is not widespread. Most patients are still instructed to adhere to an NPO-after-midnight status, which often results in excessive fasting durations between 12 and 15 hours. In addition, although more patients are being instructed to take their important oral drugs, this practice is still not universal. The major barrier to guideline implementation is failure of surgeons and nurses to communicate during preoperative teaching both the shorter duration fasting and the importance of taking some oral medications during the fast. The authors indicate this failure appears to be related not just to being uninformed of the guidelines but, instead, has multiple roots, including resistance to taking the time to individualize patient teaching. However, when approached, surgeons consistently stated they would support whatever the anesthesiologists deemed best practice for preoperative fasting duration.

Level of Evidence: 1

The study is a comparison study of instruction practices before surgery between the years 2000 and 2004. It also includes a meta-analysis of previous findings on the topic of implementation of recommendations of duration of preoperative fasting. Although descriptive rather than experimental in nature, the methods used were appropriate to answer the question posed, and the large numbers of participants resulted in credible evidence to support the need for practice change.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The major problem interfering with practice change with the issue of duration of preoperative fasting for healthy adults is that the anesthesia provider seldom interacts with the patient until just before surgery, long after the fast has started. It is the nurse and the surgeon who have the initial contact and responsibility for preoperative teaching. When these professionals are not knowledgeable about the guidelines, the instructions for traditional NPO after midnight are reinforced. Having anesthesia providers be involved along with nurses in developing written materials for patient education with regard to preoperative instructions may help reinforce the changes to the professional staff. Starting small, with nurses instructing patients that clear liquids are permitted up to 2 hours before surgery, may begin to break the barriers for best practice. Other suggestions for how nursing and nurses can help speed up implementation of shorter fasting durations include the development of quality improvement projects in which the complications rate of patients who are permitted clear liquids up to 2 hours before surgery is compared with the complications rate of patients who are completely NPO after midnight until surgery.

preparation. Enemas ordered to be given until return flow is clear is a stressful procedure, especially for the older patient. Repeated enemas can cause electrolyte imbalance, fluid volume imbalances, vagal stimulation, and postural (orthostatic) hypotension. Enemas also cause severe anorectal discomfort in patients with hemorrhoids. Some physicians prescribe potent laxatives (e.g., polyethylene glycol electrolyte solution [GoLYTELY]) instead of enemas, especially for older patients. Bowel preparations can be exhausting, and you must take safety precautions to prevent falls.

Skin Preparation. The skin preparation may be embarrassing or uncomfortable for the patient, especially if the surgical site is in a sensitive or private body area. Provide a warm, comfortable, and private environment during the procedure. The skin is the body's first line of defense against infection. A break in this barrier increases the risk for infection, especially for older patients. Skin preparation before surgery is the first step to reduce the risk for surgical site infection (AORN, 2010d).

One or two days before the scheduled surgery, the surgeon may ask the patient to shower using an antiseptic solution. Instruct the patient to be especially careful to clean around the proposed surgical site. If the patient is hospitalized before surgery, showering and cleaning are repeated the night before surgery or in the morning before transfer to the surgical suite. This cleaning reduces contamination of the surgical field and reduces the number of organisms at the site (Roesler et al., 2010). Remove any soil or debris from the surgical site and surrounding areas.

Factors that predispose to wound contamination and surgical site infection include bacteria found in hair follicles, disruption of the normal protective mechanisms of the skin, and nicks in the skin. Shaving of hair creates the potential for infection. Hair clipping with electrical clippers and depilatories are to be used for hair removal as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. This type of skin preparation is part of the Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP) core measures for SCIP Inf-6 (see Table 16-1).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends that if shaving is necessary, the hair should be removed using disposable sterile supplies and aseptic principles *immediately* before the start of the surgical procedure. If needed, shaving is performed in the treatment room, the holding area of the operating suite, or the operating room (OR). Fig. 16-3 shows areas of hair removal for various surgical procedures.

Preparing the Patient for Tubes, Drains, and Vascular Access. Prepare the patient for possible placement of tubes, drains, and vascular access devices. Preparation reduces the patient's anxiety and fear and the family's negative reaction. Be careful not to scare the patient while providing information about the purpose of each tube.

Tubes of all sorts are common after surgery. The patient may need an indwelling urinary (Foley) catheter before, during, or after surgery to keep the bladder empty and to monitor kidney function. The patient having abdominal or genitourinary surgery usually has a Foley catheter.

A nasogastric (NG) tube may be inserted before abdominal surgery to decompress or empty the stomach and the upper bowel. More often, however, the tube is placed after the induction of anesthesia, when insertion is less disturbing to the patient and is easier to perform.

Drains are often placed during surgery to help remove fluid from the surgical site. Some drains are under the dressing; others are visible and require emptying. Drains come in various shapes and sizes (see Chapter 18). Inform the patient that drains are often used routinely and that generally they are not painful but may cause some discomfort. Discuss the reasons drains should not be kinked or pulled.

Vascular access is placed for patients receiving a general anesthetic and for most patients receiving other types of anesthetics. Access is needed to give drugs and fluids before, during, and after surgery. Patients who are dehydrated or are at risk for dehydration may receive fluids before surgery.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client is NPO for surgery scheduled to occur in 4 hours. It is now 9 AM, and the client's regularly prescribed oral drugs (digoxin 0.125 mg, docusate [Colace] 300 mg, and ferrous fumarate [Feostat] 325 mg) are due to be administered. The physician will not be available until the time of surgery. What is the nurse's best action?

- A. Administer digoxin with minimal water and hold the other drugs.
- B. Administer all medications parenterally.
- C. Administer all medications orally.
- D. Hold all medications.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adult patients are at greater risk for dehydration because their fluid reserves are lower than those of young or middle-aged adults. Carefully monitor older adult patients and patients with cardiac disease receiving IV fluids. (See Chapter 15 for more information on IV therapy.)

The IV access is usually placed in the arm using a large-bore, short catheter (e.g., 18-gauge, 1-inch catheter) or placed in the back of the hand using a smaller-bore (20-gauge) catheter. A larger vein provides the least resistance to fluid or blood infusion, especially in an emergency when rapid infusions may be needed. Depending on the patient's needs and the facility's policies, the IV access can be placed before surgery when the patient is in the hospital room, in the holding or admission area of the surgical suite, or in the OR.

Postoperative Procedures and Exercises. Teach the patient and family members about exercises and procedures (e.g., checking dressings, obtaining vital signs frequently) to be performed after surgery. Family members can be helpful in reminding patients to perform these exercises. Teaching before surgery reduces apprehension and fear, increases cooperation and participation in care after surgery, and decreases respiratory and vascular complications. When the fear or anxiety level is high, explore the patient's feelings before discussing procedures.

Discussion, demonstration with return demonstration, and practice by the patient aid in the ability to perform various breathing (Chart 16-5) and leg (Chart 16-6) exercises after surgery. Stress the need to begin exercises early in the recovery phase and to continue them, with 5 to 10 repetitions each, every 1 to 2 hours after surgery for at least the first 48 hours. Explain that the patient may need to be awakened for these activities.

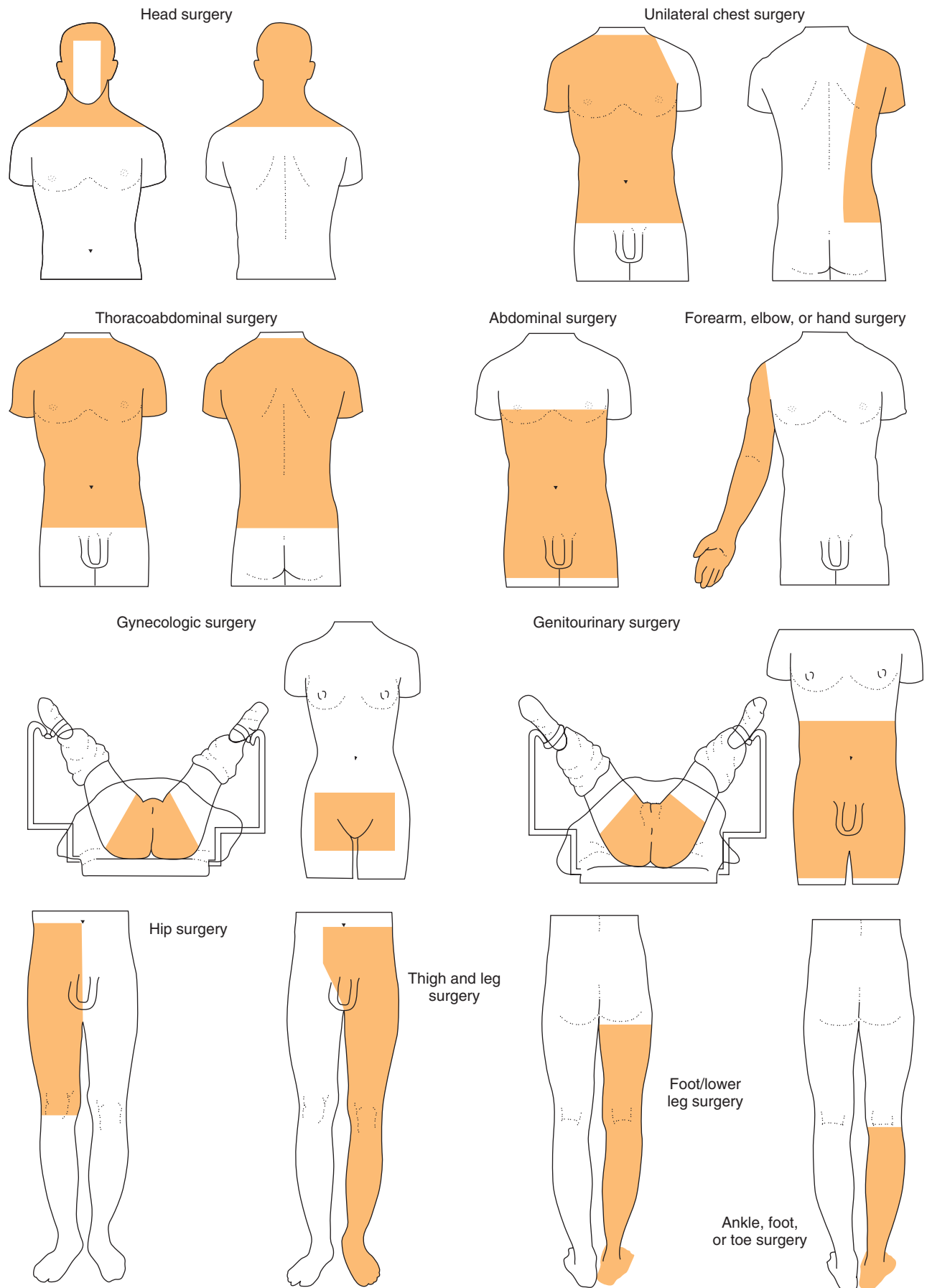


FIG. 16-3 Skin preparation of common surgical sites. *Shaded areas* indicate preparation areas.

CHART 16-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Perioperative Respiratory Care

Deep (Diaphragmatic) Breathing

1. Sit upright on the edge of the bed or in a chair, being sure that your feet are placed firmly on the floor or a stool. (After surgery, deep breathing is done with the patient in Fowler's position or in semi-Fowler's position.)
2. Take a gentle breath through your mouth.
3. Breathe out gently and completely.
4. Then take a deep breath through your nose and mouth, and hold this breath to the count of five.
5. Exhale through your nose and mouth.

Expansion Breathing

1. Find a comfortable upright position, with your knees slightly bent. (Bending the knees decreases tension on the abdominal muscles and decreases respiratory resistance and discomfort.)
2. Place your hands on each side of your lower rib cage, just above your waist.
3. Take a deep breath through your nose, using your shoulder muscles to expand your lower rib cage outward during inhalation.
4. Exhale, concentrating first on moving your chest, then on moving your lower ribs inward, while gently squeezing the rib cage and forcing air out of the base of your lungs.

Splinting of the Surgical Incision

1. Unless coughing is contraindicated, place a pillow, towel, or folded blanket over your surgical incision and hold the item firmly in place.
2. Take three slow, deep breaths to stimulate your cough reflex.
3. Inhale through your nose, and then exhale through your mouth.
4. On your third deep breath, cough to clear secretions from your lungs while firmly holding the pillow, towel, or folded blanket against your incision.

Procedures and Exercises to Prevent Respiratory Complications. Breathing exercises include deep, or diaphragmatic, breathing to enlarge the chest cavity and expand the lungs. After you demonstrate and explain the technique, urge the patient to practice the five steps of deep breathing.

For patients with chronic lung disease or limited chest expansion, as seen in older patients because of the aging process, expansion breathing exercises are useful. For the patient having chest surgery, expansion breathing exercises strengthen accessory muscles and are started before surgery. Expansion breathing may be used after surgery during chest physiotherapy (percussion, vibration, postural drainage) to help loosen secretions and maintain an adequate air exchange.

Incentive spirometry is another way to encourage the patient to take deep breaths. Its purpose is to promote complete lung expansion and to prevent pulmonary problems. Various types of incentive spirometers are available; Fig. 16-4 shows a patient using one type. With all types, the patient must be able to seal the lips tightly around the mouthpiece, inhale spontaneously, and hold his or her breath for 3 to 5 seconds for effective lung expansion. Goals (e.g., attaining specific volumes) can be set according to the patient's ability and the type of incentive spirometer. Seeing a light move up a column or a bellows expanding reinforces and motivates the patient to continue performance.



FIG. 16-4 A patient using an incentive spirometer.

Coughing and splinting may be performed along with deep breathing every 1 to 2 hours after surgery. The purposes of coughing are to expel secretions, keep the lungs clear, allow full aeration, and prevent pneumonia and atelectasis. Coughing may be uncomfortable for the patient, but when performed correctly, it should not harm the incision. Splinting (i.e., holding) the incision area provides support, promotes a feeling of security, and reduces pain during coughing. The proper technique for splinting the incision site and coughing is described in Chart 16-5. A folded bath blanket or pillow is helpful to use as a splint. Cardiac patients may receive their own heart-shaped pillow for splint use.

The use of routine coughing exercises after surgery is controversial. Some surgeons believe coughing may harm the surgical wound and that it would be better to use other, safer measures for lung hygiene, such as deep breathing and incentive spirometer exercises. When routine coughing exercises should be avoided for a specific patient, such as after a hernia repair or craniotomy, the surgeon usually writes a “do not cough” prescription.

Procedures and Exercises to Prevent Cardiovascular Complications. Venous stasis leading to thromboembolism (VTE) (a group of disorders that includes deep vein thrombosis [DVT] and pulmonary embolism [PE]) are potential but avoidable complications of surgery. These problems can lead to a pulmonary embolus (PE) if the blood clot breaks off and travels to the lungs. Patients at greater risk for VTE:

- Are obese
- Are older than 40 years
- Have cancer
- Have decreased mobility or are immobile
- Have a spinal cord injury
- Have a history of VTE, PE, varicose veins, or edema
- Are taking oral contraceptives
- Smoke
- Have decreased cardiac output
- Have hip fracture or total hip or total knee surgery

Always assess for VTE before surgery. Sudden swelling in one leg is a common physical finding of VTE. A patient may feel a dull ache in the calf area that becomes worse with ambulation. A careful assessment and timely intervention may prevent the fatal complication of pulmonary embolism.

Because surgical-related VTE can be prevented, prophylaxis is required by the Surgical Care Improvement Project

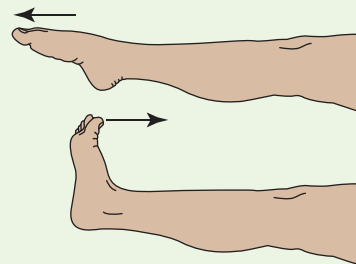
CHART 16-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Postoperative Leg Exercises**Exercise No. 1**

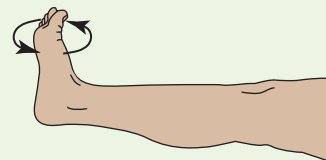
1. Lie in bed with the head of your bed elevated to about 45 degrees.
2. Beginning with your right leg, bend your knee, raise your foot off the bed, and hold this position for a few seconds.
3. Extend your leg by unbending your knee, and lower the leg to the bed.
4. Repeat this sequence four more times with your right leg; then perform this same exercise five times with your left leg.

**Exercise No. 2**

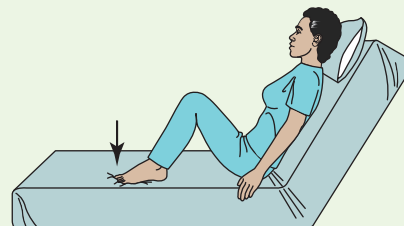
1. Beginning with your right leg, point your toes toward the bottom of the bed.
2. With the same leg, point your toes up toward your face.
3. Repeat this exercise several times with your right leg; then perform this same exercise with your left leg.

**Exercise No. 3**

1. Beginning with your right leg, make circles with your ankle, first to the left and then to the right.
2. Repeat this exercise several times with your right leg; then perform this same exercise with your left leg.

**Exercise No. 4**

1. Beginning with your right leg, bend your knee and *push* the ball of your foot into the bed or floor until you feel your calf and thigh muscles contracting.
2. Repeat this exercise several times with your right leg; then perform this same exercise with your left leg.



(SCIP) core measures (see Table 16-1). All patients should be evaluated for VTE risk based on history, type and duration of surgery, and expected time of immobilization after surgery. VTE prophylaxis may involve devices and drug therapy, depending on a specific patient's evaluated risk. Devices may be used during and after surgery along with leg exercises and early ambulation to promote venous return. Specific interventions depend on the patient's risk factors.

Antiembolism stockings (TED or Jobst stockings) and elastic (Ace) wraps provide graduated compression of the legs, starting at the end of the foot and ankle. Measure the patient's leg length and circumference before ordering the stocking size. Elastic wraps are used when the legs are too large or too small for the stockings. Assist the patient in applying the stockings or wraps, and ensure that they are neither too loose (are ineffective) nor too tight (inhibit blood flow). They need to be worn properly and should be removed one to three times per day for 30 minutes for skin inspection and care.

Pneumatic compression devices enhance venous blood flow by providing intermittent periods of compression on the legs (Cawley, 2008). Measure the patient's legs, and order the correct size. Place the boots on the patient's legs, and then set and check the compression pressures (usually 35-55 mm Hg).

Fig. 16-5 shows various types of sequential compression devices. Antiembolism stockings may be worn in addition to the boots and may reduce some of the uncomfortable sensations of the boots (e.g., itching, sweating, heat).

Leg exercises also promote venous return. Teach the leg exercises outlined in Chart 16-6, and then urge the patient to practice these exercises before surgery. The exercises are important, even when other devices are used.

Mobility soon after surgery (early ambulation) has many cardiovascular and other benefits (Winkelman, 2009). It stimulates intestinal motility, enhances lung expansion, mobilizes secretions, promotes venous return, prevents joint rigidity, and relieves pressure. For most types of surgery, teach the patient to turn at least every 2 hours after surgery while confined to bed. Teach patients how to use the bed siderails safely for turning and how to protect the surgical wound (splinting) when turning. Assure patients that assistance and pain drugs will be given as needed to reduce any anxiety and pain they may have with this activity.

For certain surgical procedures, such as some brain, spinal, and orthopedic procedures, the surgeon may prescribe turning restrictions. Ask the surgeon about other interventions to prevent complications of immobility in patients with



FIG. 16-5 Examples of external pneumatic compression devices used to promote venous return and prevent venous thromboembolism (VTE). **A**, Kendall SCD machine, sleeves, and TED stockings. **B**, Venodyne pneumatic compression system. **C**, Flowtron DVT calf garments.

turning restrictions. Inform the patient of anticipated turning restrictions during teaching before surgery.

Most patients are allowed and encouraged to get out of bed the day of or the day after surgery. Assist the patient into a chair or with ambulation after the surgery, the next day, or when the surgeon specifies. If a patient must remain in bed, help him or her turn, deep breathe, and perform leg exercises at least every 2 hours to prevent complications from immobility.

Minimizing Anxiety

Planning: Expected Outcomes. Before surgery, the patient is expected to have manageable anxiety as indicated by consistently demonstrating these behaviors:

- Expressing a reduced level of anxiety
- Showing an absence of body language indicators of anxiety (e.g., hand wringing, facial tension, restlessness, dilated pupils, sweating, elevated blood pressure, elevated pulse rate)

Interventions. Anxiety often causes restlessness and sleeplessness. The patient may perceive the surgical experience as a threat to life and function. Assess the patient's level of

anxiety, as discussed on p. 247 in the Psychosocial Assessment section. Interventions such as teaching and communicating with the patient before surgery, enabling the patient to use previously successful coping mechanisms, and giving anti-anxiety drugs help reduce the anxiety. Incorporate available support systems into the plan of care.

Preoperative teaching involves first assessing the patient's knowledge about the surgical experience (see pp. 248 and 250 in the Providing Information section) and then providing factual information to promote the patient's understanding. Allow ample time for questions. Respond to the questions accurately, and refer unanswered questions to the proper person. During the discussion, continually assess the patient's responses and anxiety level. Be careful not to provide information that might increase anxiety. Patients have ranked psychosocial support as the most important part of preoperative teaching. The informed, educated patient is better able to anticipate events and maintain self-control and is thus less anxious.

Encouraging communication by having the patient state feelings, fears, and concerns can help reduce anxiety. Use an honest and open approach so that the patient can express

feelings freely without fear of ridicule or judgment. Keep the patient informed by clarifying information, answering questions, and allaying fears about the surgery.

Promoting rest is helpful because the stress and anxiety of impending surgery often interfere with the patient's ability to sleep and rest the night before surgery. The period before surgery is physically and emotionally stressful. To help the patient relax, determine what he or she usually does to relax and fall asleep. If the patient is able, urge him or her to continue these methods of relaxation. A back rub is relaxing and can be performed by a nurse, UAP, or family member. The surgeon may prescribe a sedative or hypnotic drug to help the patient be well rested for surgery.

Distraction may be used as an intervention for anxiety, especially in the 24 hours immediately before surgery. Listening to music may decrease anxiety, as may watching television, reading, or visiting with family members.

Teaching family members helps reduce anxiety by increasing the likelihood of support and involvement in the patient's care. Assess the readiness and desire of the family to take an active part in the patient's care. A positive sign of family interest is that of members asking questions about the surgical experience. After family readiness is determined, keep family members informed and encourage their involvement in all aspects of education. Emphasize the important role of the family before surgery, but guide discussions and practice sessions so that family members do not dominate the sessions. Family members can encourage and help the patient practice exercises to be performed after surgery.

Inform the family of the time for surgery, if known, and of any schedule changes. If the patient is an outpatient, provide clear directions to the patient and family regarding any specific night-before procedures, what time and where to report, and what to bring with them. Encourage the family to stay with the patient before surgery for support.

Most families are anxious about the surgery planned for their loved one. To reduce their anxiety, explain the routines expected before, during, and after surgery. Tell the family that after the patient leaves the hospital room or admission area, there is usually a 30- to 60-minute preparation period in the operating area (holding room, treatment area) before the surgery actually begins. After surgery, the patient is taken to the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) for 1 to 2 hours before returning to the hospital room or discharge area. Tell the family about the best place to wait for the patient or surgeon according to the facility's policy and the physician's preference. Many hospitals and surgical centers have surgical waiting areas so that families can wait in comfortable surroundings and be easily located when the procedure is

completed. Often families are provided with a beeper to let them know when to report to a specific area to receive updates about the patient's status, meet with the surgeon, or see the patient.

Preoperative Chart Review

Review the patient's chart to ensure that all documentation, preoperative procedures, and orders are completed. Check the surgical informed consent form and, if indicated, any other special consent forms to see that they are signed and dated and that they contain the witnesses' signatures. Confirm that the scheduled procedure, including the identification of left versus right when necessary, is what is listed on the consent form. Even though it might be obvious, inform the patient that the area for surgery will be marked before the procedure begins. If possible, encourage the patient to assist with the marking, as suggested by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. Document allergies according to facility policy. Accurate measuring and recording of height and weight are important for proper dosage of the anesthetic agents. Ensure that the results of all laboratory, radiographic, and diagnostic tests are on the chart. Document any abnormal results, and report them to the surgeon and the anesthesia provider. If the patient is an autologous blood donor or has had directed blood donations made, those special slips must be included in the chart. Record a current set of vital signs (within 1 to 2 hours of the scheduled surgery time), and document any significant physical or psychosocial observations.

Report special needs, concerns, and instructions (advance directives) to the surgical team, as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. For example, advise the surgical team if the patient is a member of Jehovah's Witnesses and does not accept blood products or if the patient is hard of hearing and does not have his or her hearing aid. This information assists the surgical team in providing continuity of care while the patient is in the surgical area.

Preoperative Patient Preparation

Facilities usually require the patient to remove most clothing and wear a hospital gown into the OR; however, underwear may be worn in above-the-waist surgery and socks may be worn, except in foot or leg surgery. If prescribed by the surgeon, apply antiembolism stockings or pneumatic compression devices before surgery. In some ambulatory settings, such as for cataract surgery, no or minimal clothes are removed.

Patients are advised to leave all valuables at home. If he or she has valuables, including jewelry, money, or clothes, they are given to a family member or locked in a safe place, according to the facility's policy. If rings cannot be removed, tape them in place. Depending on the type and location of surgery, pierced jewelry may need to be removed. Religious emblems may be pinned or fastened securely to the patient's gown. Some facilities have paper emblems from a religious leader.

The patient wears an identification band that clearly gives the first and last name, hospital number, physician, and birth date. An additional bracelet, usually red, identifies any allergies. A bracelet indicating that a blood sample for type and screen has been drawn may be worn, depending on the facility's policy.

If dentures are to be removed, including partial dental plates, place them in a labeled denture cup. Denture removal

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety

The patient is a 70-year-old woman scheduled to have knee surgery. She has signed her consent form for a right total knee replacement. After confirming the identity of the patient and the correct site, side, and procedure, you inform her that the surgeon will be marking the operative site. The patient states that she wants her grandchild to mark the site because she promised him the chance to draw on grandma's leg.

1. How would you respond to the patient's request?
2. How can you include the grandchild in the process in order not to disregard the patient's request?

is a safety measure to prevent aspiration and obstruction of the airway. If a patient has any capped teeth, document this finding on the checklist.

All prosthetic devices, such as artificial eyes and limbs, are removed and given to a family member or safely stored, as are contact lenses, glasses, wigs, and toupees. Check and remove hairpins and clips, which can conduct electrical current used during surgery and cause scalp burns.

Some facilities allow hearing aids in the surgical suite to help communication before and after surgery. If the patient is sent to surgery with a hearing aid, communicate this to the surgical nurse to prevent accidental loss of or damage to the device. Some facilities allow dentures, wigs, and glasses to be worn into the operating suite to prevent embarrassment to the patient. These items are removed when absolutely necessary.

The removal of fingernail polish or artificial nails is controversial. Polish and artificial nails have been thought to affect the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings. Recent studies have indicated that pulse oximetry readings taken on fingers are affected by brown or blue polish but not by red or lighter color polish. In addition, pulse oximetry does not have to be measured on fingers only. Some facilities still require that at least one artificial nail must be removed to monitor oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry.

After the patient is prepared for surgery and the operating suite is ready to receive him or her, ask him or her to empty the bladder. This action prevents incontinence or overdistention and is a starting point for intake and output measurement. A full bladder may hinder access to the surgical site. Answer questions, offer reassurance as needed, and give prescribed drugs.

Preoperative Drugs

Preoperative drugs may be prescribed regardless of the type of planned anesthesia. Various drugs reduce anxiety, promote relaxation, reduce nasal and oral secretions, prevent laryngospasm, reduce vagal-induced bradycardia, inhibit gastric secretions, and decrease the amount of anesthetic needed for the induction and maintenance of anesthesia. Drug selection is based on the patient's age, physical and psychological condition, medical history, and height and weight; other drugs the patient takes routinely; test results; and the type and extent of the planned surgical procedure. If more than one response is required, combination therapy may be prescribed.

Drug types for preoperative preparation may include sedatives (e.g., hydroxyzine [Atarax, Vistaril]); hypnotics (e.g., lorazepam [Ativan]); anxiolytics (e.g., midazolam [Versed]); opioid analgesics (e.g., morphine, hydromorphone); and an anticholinergic agent (e.g., atropine). Other specific-purpose drugs also may be added. For example, if rapid emptying of the stomach is needed, metoclopramide (Reglan) may be prescribed. When procedures are long or stress ulcers are likely, an H₂ histamine blocker (e.g., cimetidine [Tagamet]; ranitidine [Zantac]) is used (DeLamar, 2007).

Preoperative drugs may be given when the patient is “on call” to the surgical suite. After positively identifying the patient as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, (using the armband and asking the patient to state his or her name) and making sure the operative permit is signed, give the correct drugs in the correct doses. Then raise the siderails,

place the call light within easy reach of the patient, and remind him or her not to try to get out of bed. Place the bed in a low position. Tell the patient that he or she may become drowsy and have a dry mouth as a result of the drugs.

A more common practice is for the preoperative drugs to be given *after* the patient is transferred to the operating area (DeLamar, 2007). This practice permits the surgical team and anesthesia personnel to make more accurate assessments and have last-minute discussions with a patient not yet affected by drugs. In addition, after the patient is in the preoperative area, drugs can be given by the IV route. Monitoring equipment such as continuous pulse oximetry and ECG are more readily available in this area. The oral or IM route is used less often because of variable absorption rates. The surgeon may order a prophylactic antibiotic to be given right before or during surgery to reduce the risk for a surgical site infection, as suggested by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. When needed, the antibiotic is given within 60 minutes before the incision is made, as mandated by the Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP) core measures, SCIP Inf-1 (see Table 16-1).

Patient Transfer to the Surgical Suite

In the immediate preoperative period, review and update the patient's chart, reinforce teaching, ensure that the patient is correctly dressed for surgery, and give prescribed preoperative drugs. Use a preoperative checklist for a smooth, efficient transfer to the surgical suite (Fig. 16-6). The patient, along with the signed consent form, the completed preoperative checklist, the chart, and the patient identification card, is transported to the surgical suite.

Most patients in the hospital setting are transferred to the surgical suite on a stretcher with the siderails up. In special circumstances (e.g., patients requiring traction, those having orthopedic surgery, those who should be moved as little as possible), the patient is transferred in the hospital bed. Other factors that influence the decision to transfer in a bed are the patient's age, size, and physical condition. In ambulatory settings, patients either walk or are transferred to the surgical suite on a stretcher or in a wheelchair.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration

You are about to send the patient, described earlier in the Decision-Making Challenge on p. 259, to the surgical suite. A partner of the operating surgeon, who has not met the patient, proceeds to implement the time-out, which provides a final assessment that includes that the correct patient, site, side, and procedure are identified. The patient is concerned, stating she thought that the surgeon would be here for this part.

1. As the patient advocate, how would you proceed with the time-out?
2. Which measures should the facility have in place to promote best practices for this process?
3. What steps can be taken to prevent such an occurrence in the future?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the preoperative patient based on the identified patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient:

- States understanding of the informed consent and preoperative procedures

PRESURGICAL CHECKLIST

Date: _____

Side 1

	INITIALS		COMMENTS
	UNIT	Prep & Holding	
1. Allergies: ☐ Latex ☐ Environmental ☐ Medications _____			Green allergy band intact if allergies are present
2. Isolation/Precautions: ☐ MRSA ☐ VRE ☐ C-diff Other: _____			☐ Operating Room notified (OR) ☐ Post-Anesthesia Care Unit notified (PACU)
3. Side/Site identification form completed			
4. Pre-Surgical Testing (RESULTS ON CHART) ☐ CBC ☐ SMA6 ☐ Glucose _____ ☐ Chest X-ray ☐ UA ☐ ECG ☐ Hemoglobin & Hematocrit ☐ Other: _____			Pending Results: _____ _____
5. Vital Signs: Time performed: _____ Temperature: _____ Blood Pressure: _____ Pulse: _____ SpO ₂ : _____ % Respiratory Rate: _____			
6. NPO since: _____ Solids: _____ Liquids: _____			
7. Weight (last 24 hours): _____ kg Height: _____ cm			
8. Last Menstrual Period: _____			
9. Patient's belongings including valuables secured/removed: ☐ wedding band taped ☐ dentures ☐ contact lenses ☐ glasses Drawer number (Surgicenter only): _____			Secure all valuables.
10. ☐ Type & Cross-Match ☐ Blood consent on chart # of autologous units available: _____			
11. Voiding or catheter: _____ (Time)			
12. Preoperative surgical antimicrobial prophylaxis guideline checklist instituted and faxed to pharmacy.			Call placed to physician if not ordered _____ (time) _____ initials
13. Intravenous antimicrobials should be administered within 0-60 minutes prior to surgical incision.			
14. Surgical site prep: ☐ Prep ordered by physician ☐ If no prep ordered, call placed to physician for Surgical Site prep order			☐ Clip Only ☐ Scrub Only Location: _____ ☐ Site prep location: _____ ☐ Clip & Scrub-Betadine ☐ Clip & Scrub-Hibiclens Signature: _____ Time: _____
15. Equipment to go to OR with patient ☐ X-ray films ☐ Old records ☐ Chart volumes			
Signature/Initials	Signature/Initials		
Print Name	Print Name		

FIG. 16-6 A preoperative checklist.

- Demonstrates postoperative exercises and techniques for prevention of complications
- Has reduced anxiety

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Ask the patient if an advance directive has been completed.
- Ask the patient to explain in his or her own words what surgical procedure is being done and why.
- If the patient's explanation of the scheduled surgery is not consistent with the documentation, notify the surgeon and request that he or she speak to the patient.
- Use at least two appropriate identifiers (e.g., hospital number, the identification band, asking the patient to state his or her name) to identify the patient. *Do not use room number or bed number to identify the patient.*
- Ensure that the patient is wearing proper identification.
- Ensure that the patient is not asked to sign an operative permit or any other legal document after the preoperative drugs have been given.
- After the patient has received preoperative drugs, keep the siderails up and the bed in the low position.
- Communicate to the surgeon and anesthesia personnel any physical or laboratory change that may alter the patient's response to drugs, anesthesia, or surgery.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients about dietary restrictions and preoperative preparations.

- Teach the patient specific interventions to perform after surgery to prevent complications (incision splinting, deep-breathing exercises, range-of-motion exercises—as described in [Charts 16-5 and 16-6](#)).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Pace your interview to match the learning needs and style of the individual patient.
- Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings regarding the surgical procedure or its possible outcome.
- Explain and provide written information for all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient and his or her family.
- Communicate to the surgeon and anesthesia personnel any concerns or fears the patient has.

Physiological Integrity

- Check that documentation for any procedure to be performed on one of a paired organ or extremity clearly indicates which organ or extremity is involved.
- If required, ensure that dentures and any other personal items are removed from the patient before he or she is transferred to the surgical suite.

Care of Intraoperative Patients

Robin Chard



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Use appropriate patient identifiers when administering drugs or marking surgical sites.
2. Verify that the patient has given informed consent for the surgical procedure.
3. Examine individual patient factors for potential threats to safety, especially for older adults.
4. Differentiate the roles and responsibilities of intraoperative personnel.
5. Understand the principles of infection prevention as they apply to aseptic technique in setting up a sterile field.
6. Explain correct technique to apply and remove surgical attire.
7. Understand the nurse's role in monitoring all OR personnel for possible breaks in sterile technique.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Apply nursing interventions to reduce patient and family anxiety.

9. Explain procedures to ensure the identity of the patient and the accuracy of the planned surgical procedure.
10. Act as a patient advocate with regard to patients' rights, informed consent, and advance directives.
11. Apply interventions to ensure the patient's safety and dignity during an operative procedure.

Physiological Integrity

12. Assess patients for specific problems related to positioning during surgical procedures.
13. Understand anatomic principles for modifying patient positioning and OR bed padding to prevent skin breakdown, promote comfort, and prevent positioning injury during surgical procedures.
14. Coordinate appropriate care for the patient with malignant hyperthermia.

The intraoperative period begins when the patient enters the surgical suite and ends at the time of transfer to the postanesthesia recovery area, same-day surgery unit, or the intensive care unit. The main concerns of perioperative nurses are the safety and advocacy for the patient during surgery. Nursing observations and actions can prevent, reduce, control, and manage many hazards. Once in the operating room (OR), the patient is at risk for infection, impaired skin integrity, increased anxiety, altered body temperature, and injury

related to positioning and other hazards. The surgical phase is filled with unfamiliar experiences and uncertain outcomes. Nursing care during this period is critical because the patient's physical needs, spiritual needs, comfort, safety, dignity, and psychological status depend on the perioperative nurse. Specific procedures and policies may differ among agencies but should all reflect the perioperative standards and recommended practices as published by the [Association of peri-Operative Registered Nurses \(AORN\)](#) (2010a). Perioperative

nurses practice within a specific, patient-focused model that incorporates professional practice with attainable, measurable outcomes.

OVERVIEW

MEMBERS OF THE SURGICAL TEAM

The surgical team consists of the surgeon, one or more surgical assistants, the anesthesia provider, and the OR nursing staff. Perioperative, or OR, nurses include the holding area nurse, circulating nurse, scrub nurse or a non-nurse “scrub person,” and specialty nurse. The number of assistants, circulating nurses, and scrub nurses depends on the complexity and projected length of the surgical procedure. For some minor procedures, only a circulating nurse and scrub person may be needed in addition to the surgeon. More complex procedures may require additional nursing staff to either circulate or scrub.

Surgeon and Surgical Assistant

The *surgeon* is a physician who assumes responsibility for the surgical procedure and any surgical judgments about the patient. The *surgical assistant* might be another surgeon (or physician, such as a resident or intern) or an advanced practice nurse, physician assistant, certified registered nurse first assistant (CRNFA), or surgical technologist. Under the direction of the surgeon and within the legal scope of practice for each state, the assistant may hold retractors, suction the wound (to improve viewing of the operative site), cut tissue, suture, and dress wounds.

Anesthesia Providers

The *anesthesiologist* is a physician who specializes in giving anesthetic agents. A *certified registered nurse anesthetist (CRNA)* is a registered nurse with additional education and credentials who delivers anesthetic agents under the supervision of an anesthesiologist, surgeon, dentist, or podiatrist. The anesthesia provider gives anesthetic drugs to induce and maintain anesthesia and delivers other drugs as needed to support the patient during surgery.

The anesthesia provider monitors the patient during surgery by assessing and monitoring:

- The level of anesthesia (i.e., by using a peripheral nerve stimulator or electroencephalogram [EEG] bispectral analysis)
- Cardiopulmonary function (using electrocardiographic [ECG] monitoring, pulse oximetry, end-tidal carbon dioxide monitoring, arterial blood gases [ABGs], and hemodynamic monitoring via arterial lines and/or pulmonary artery catheters)
- Capnography (monitors ventilation for non-intubated patients)
- Vital signs
- Intake and output

Depending on the patient's needs, anesthesia personnel give IV fluids, including blood and blood products.

Perioperative Nursing Staff

Perioperative, or OR, staff have several roles during surgery, depending on their education, experience, skill, and job responsibilities. Regardless of their role, the OR nurse uses

clinical decision-making skills, develops a plan of nursing care, and coordinates care delivery to patients and their family members.

Holding area nurses work in those operating suites that have a presurgical holding area next to the main ORs. The patient waits in this area until the OR is ready. The holding area nurse coordinates and manages the care while the patient is in this area. Responsibilities include greeting the patient on arrival, reviewing the medical record and preoperative checklist, verifying that the operative consent forms are signed, and documenting the risk assessment (Fig. 17-1). This nurse also assesses the patient's physical and emotional status, gives emotional support, answers questions, and provides additional education as needed.

The holding area is busy, with many staff members performing different procedures before surgery (e.g., starting IV lines, inserting epidural catheters). The holding area nurse promotes an atmosphere of comfort, privacy, and confidentiality. Depending on the facility's policy, family members may wait with the patient.

Circulating nurses or “circulators” are registered nurses who coordinate, oversee, and are involved in the patient's nursing care in the OR. The circulating nurse's actions are vital to the smooth flow of events before, during, and after surgery. He or she is responsible for coordinating all activities within that particular OR. The circulator sets up the OR and ensures that supplies, including blood products and diagnostic support, are available as needed. All anticipated equipment is gathered and inspected by the circulator to make certain that it is safe and functional before the surgery. Depending on the procedure and position required, the circulator makes up the operating bed (OR table) with gel pads (to prevent pressure ulcers), safety straps and armboards (for patient positioning), and either heating pads under the sheets or disposable warming blankets placed over the patient as indicated (to prevent hypothermia) (Weirich, 2008).

If there is no holding area nurse, the circulator assumes the responsibilities of that nursing role as well. Even when there is a holding area nurse, The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) require that the circulator also greets the patient and reviews findings with the holding area nurse.

Once the patient is ready to be moved into the OR, the circulating nurse, along with the OR team, assists the patient in transferring to the operating bed. The nurse positions the patient, protecting bony areas with extra padding while providing comfort and reassurance. While observing the patient, the circulating nurse also assists the anesthesia provider with the induction of anesthesia by positioning the patient and applying cricoid pressure, when requested. The circulator then may assist with additional positioning, insert a Foley catheter if needed, apply the grounding pad, test equipment, and “prep” (scrub) the surgical site before the patient is draped with sterile drapes.

Throughout the surgery, the circulating nurse:

- Protects the patient's privacy
- Ensures the patient's safety
- Monitors traffic in the room
- Assesses the amount of urine and blood loss
- Reports findings to the surgeon and anesthesia provider
- Ensures that the surgical team maintain sterile technique and a sterile field

Identification of Patient, Procedure, and Surgical Side/Sites, and Fire Risk Assessment

Procedure: _____ Date of Procedure: _____ Side 1

Preoperative verification process to be completed by assigned personnel in designated areas. Mark appropriate blocks.

PEP	Sending Unit	Prep & Holding/Admission Area	Surgical Site Marking Verification															
Posting Card	Patient verbalizes	Patient verbalizes	* Not applicable (N/A) meets exemption criteria (see instructions on side 2).															
Patient verbalizes	ID Bracelet (e.g., Name & DOB)	ID Bracelet (e.g., Name & DOB)	* After 2 methods of verification (patient verbalized, consent, H & P, other), the patient (in presence of RN) will write "Yes" with a permanent marker on or as near to surgical site: ☐ N/A ☐ RIGHT ☐ LEFT															
Other	OR Schedule	OR Schedule																
	Surgical Consent	Surgical Consent																
	Site marked with "Yes" ☐ N/A	Site marked with "Yes" ☐ N/A																
	H & P	H & P																
	X-ray Report / X-ray	X-ray Report / X-ray																
	Other studies	Other studies																
Signature:	Signature:	Signature:	Signature															
Print Name:	Print Name:	Print Name:	Print Name															
Date/Time:	Date/Time:	Date/Time:	Date / Time															
ANESTHESIA (Time-out)																		
CONFIRMATION OF PATIENT IDENTIFICATION, PROCEDURE, & SURGICAL SITE PRIOR TO THE START OF ANESTHESIA BLOCK																		
The anesthesiologist _____ (Provider Name(s)) and the identification assistant (perianesthesia nurse, operating room RN, another anesthesia provider, another physician or physician assistant) have verbally agreed that _____ (Patient Name) will have the following block performed: _____ Identification Assistant _____																		
Re-verification completed _____ Re-verification completed _____																		
SURGICAL TEAM (Time-out)																		
CONFIRMATION OF PATIENT IDENTIFICATION, PROCEDURE, SURGICAL SITE, AND AS APPLICABLE, IMPLANT WITH START OF PROCEDURE																		
The surgical team (Surgeon/Resident, Anesthesia Provider, and Circulating RN) has verbally agreed that _____ Patient Name _____																		
Document procedure/site only if the procedure/site is different or left blank at top of form. _____																		
Circulating RN: _____ Signature / Print Name _____ Date / Time _____																		
SURGICAL TEAM																		
SURGICAL SITE FIRE RISK ASSESSMENT SCORE																		
Alcohol based prep solution had sufficient time for fumes to dissipate. ☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ N/A																		
Verified by:																		
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th>Y</th> <th>N</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Surgical site or incision above the xiphoid</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Open oxygen source (Patient receiving supplemental oxygen via any variety of face mask or nasal cannula)</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Available ignition source (i.e., electrosurgery unit, laser, fiberoptic light source)</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Scoring 3 = High risk; 2 = Low risk w/potential to convert to high risk; 1 = Low risk</td> <td colspan="2">Total Score</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					Y	N	Surgical site or incision above the xiphoid	1	0	Open oxygen source (Patient receiving supplemental oxygen via any variety of face mask or nasal cannula)	1	0	Available ignition source (i.e., electrosurgery unit, laser, fiberoptic light source)	1	0	Scoring 3 = High risk; 2 = Low risk w/potential to convert to high risk; 1 = Low risk	Total Score	
	Y	N																
Surgical site or incision above the xiphoid	1	0																
Open oxygen source (Patient receiving supplemental oxygen via any variety of face mask or nasal cannula)	1	0																
Available ignition source (i.e., electrosurgery unit, laser, fiberoptic light source)	1	0																
Scoring 3 = High risk; 2 = Low risk w/potential to convert to high risk; 1 = Low risk	Total Score																	
(Complete this section if Risk Score increases to "3" during procedure) ☐ High Risk Fire Protocol Initiated Signature/Title: _____ Print Name: _____ Time: _____																		

FIG. 17-1 Identification of patient, procedure, and surgical side/sites, and fire risk assessment.

- Anticipates the patient's and surgical team's needs, providing supplies and equipment
- Communicates information about the patient's status to family members during long or unique procedures
- Documents care, events, interventions, and findings

Depending on facility policy, the circulating nurse may record drugs, blood, and blood components given. (This also may be a function of the anesthesia provider.)

Before the procedure is over, the circulating nurse completes documentation in the OR and nursing records,



FIG. 17-2 Setting up the sterile table.

including the presence of drains or catheters, the length of the surgery, and a count of all sponges, “sharp” (needles, blades), and instruments. He or she notifies the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) of the patient’s estimated time of arrival and any special needs.

Scrub nurses or scrub persons set up the sterile table (Fig. 17-2), drape the patient, and hand sterile supplies, sterile equipment, and instruments to the surgeon and the assistant. Knowledge of the surgical procedure allows the scrub person to anticipate which instruments and types of sutures the surgeon will need. Anticipating these needs reduces the duration of anesthesia for the patient. In addition, the surgeon’s anxiety and tension are reduced when the scrub nurse or person is familiar with the procedure and can anticipate and respond accordingly. Throughout the surgical procedure, the scrub person (with the circulating nurse) maintains an accurate count of sponges, sharps, and instruments and amounts of irrigation fluid and drugs used.

A specially trained person who is not a nurse may perform the scrub role. Such people are called *operating room technicians (ORTs)* or *surgical technologists*. Often certified surgical technologists (CSTs) are used in the OR.

Specialty nurses may be in charge of a particular type of surgical specialty (e.g., orthopedic, cardiac, ophthalmologic) and are responsible for nursing care specific to patients needing that type of surgery. The specialty nurse assesses, maintains, and recommends equipment, instruments, and supplies used in that specialty.

If the facility uses laser technology, a nurse specially trained in the use, care, and maintenance of the laser is needed. He or she may be called a *laser specialty nurse* or a *laser nurse coordinator*. (**L**aser is an acronym for **l**ight **a**mplification by the **s**timulated **e**mission of **r**adiation.) A laser gives off a high-powered beam of light that cuts tissue more cleanly than do scalpel blades. This process creates intense heat, rapidly clots blood vessels or tissue, and turns target tissue (e.g., a tumor) into vapor. All personnel must observe safety measures (e.g., wear eye shields, read door signs) during laser procedures to prevent injury to the patient and staff (AORN, 2010h).

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The client brought to the holding area before surgery tells the nurse he has never had surgery before and is afraid of anything “medical.” Which nursing action is most likely to reduce this client’s anxiety?

- A. Administering the preoperative medication as soon as possible.
- B. Assuring the client that his scheduled surgery is routine and that nothing will go wrong.
- C. Determining whether the client wants family members to be with him in the holding area.
- D. Explaining to the client that this hospital’s surgical area is the most technologically advanced in the city.

PREPARATION OF THE SURGICAL SUITE AND TEAM SAFETY

The patient is unable to protect himself or herself during surgery; protection is provided by all members of the surgical team. The OR layout helps prevent infection by reducing contaminants through air exchanges in the room, maintaining recommended temperature and humidity levels, and limiting the traffic and activities in the OR. Safety straps are used for the patient, and the operating bed is locked in place. Blankets or warming units are used to prevent hypothermia, and interventions are used to prevent skin breakdown.

The nurse ensures electrical safety through proper placement of grounding pads and use of electrical equipment that meets safety standards. All equipment used during surgery must be functional and in proper working condition as determined by the safety procedure of that facility. Equipment is cleaned and, when required, sterilized so that it can be used as a part of the procedure. The scrub and circulating nurses together ensure a correct count of surgical instruments, sharps, and sponges. Counts are performed before the procedure, during the procedure as items are added or at the time personnel are relieved from that assignment, at closure of the first layer of the surgical wound, and immediately before complete skin closure (AORN, 2010i; Jackson & Brady, 2008).

Fire prevention and prevention of complications from the use of hazardous or toxic substances are concerns of all OR personnel. Ignition sources, oxidizers, and fuels are present in the OR and increase the risk for fires. Such events are rare but can occur during any kind of procedure. A cool room temperature (between 68° and 73° F [20° and 23° C]) with low humidity (20% to 60%) is optimal. The nurse is aware of emergency measures to take in the event of a fire or spill.

Layout

The surgical suite is located out of the mainstream of the hospital and near the PACU and support services (e.g., blood bank, pathology, and laboratory departments). Traffic flow is patterned to reduce contamination from outside the suite. Within the suite, clean and contaminated areas are separate. The surgical area is divided into three zones—unrestricted, semirestricted, and restricted—to ensure proper movement of patients and personnel.

The size of a surgical suite depends on the size and surgical capabilities of the facility. Most suites contain staff areas as well as areas related to patient care, surgery, and surgical support. Staff areas include locker rooms and staff lounges. Patient care areas include an admission or preoperative

holding area and operating rooms. Surgical support areas include a number of ORs, cabinets for sterile supplies, separate utility rooms for clean and soiled equipment, and a clean linen room.

Fig. 17-3 shows a typical OR. The exact number of tables and equipment used in a room is based on the needs of each patient. A communication system links the OR and the main desk of the surgical suite. The system includes an intercom with separate systems for routine and emergency calls.

New OR designs use computers with the surgical equipment, lights, OR bed, and communications. These “hi-tech” rooms are similar to traditional ORs with the addition of computer equipment and panels. They are larger and more efficient for the surgical team with voice-activated commands operating some equipment that used to require manual operation.

Minimally Invasive and Robotic Surgery

Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) is now a common practice. Once used only for minor procedures and joint surgery, MIS is the preferred technique for many types of surgery, including cholecystectomy, cardiac surgery, splenectomy, and spinal surgery. It is even being used for cancer surgeries, such as the removal of a lung lobe (lobectomy) or even the entire lung (pneumonectomy) and colectomy. Research has verified many benefits of MIS, including reduced surgery time for some surgeries, smaller incisions, reduced blood loss, faster recovery time, and less pain and other discomfort after surgery.

MIS involves making one or more small incisions in the area of the surgery and placing an endoscope through the opening. An **endoscope** is a tube that allows viewing and manipulation of internal body areas (Fig. 17-4). Some endoscopes also magnify the view. These instruments may be rigid, semirigid, or flexible. Some have light sources, whereas others require that a separate light source be inserted into the surgical area. Endoscopes have different names and shapes for different surgical purposes. For example, laparoscopes are used for abdominal surgery, arthroscopes are used for joint surgery, and ureteroscopes are used for urinary tract surgery.

At one time, endoscopes were used only for examination and obtaining small specimens for biopsy. Now, these instruments can be used by surgeons for organ removal, reconstruction, blood vessel grafting, and many other procedures. Cutting, suturing, stapling, cautery, and laser surgery can all be performed through or with endoscopes. An important part of MIS for abdominal surgery, pelvic surgery, and surgery in some other body cavity areas is injecting gas or air into the cavity before the surgery to separate organs and improve visualization. This injection is known as **insufflation** and may contribute to complications and patient discomfort. It is one factor that is considered when deciding whether to perform a procedure by traditional “open” surgery or by endoscopy.

Patient preparation for endoscopic surgery is much the same as the preparation for the same procedure when performed by open surgical methods, especially for abdominal surgery. An endoscopic surgical procedure has a chance for becoming an open surgical procedure depending on what patient-related or procedure-related variables are discovered or develop during the surgery.

Robotic technology is drastically changing how surgery is performed and how the OR is organized. Robotic surgery takes minimally invasive surgery to a new level. Many gynecologic, urologic, and cardiovascular procedures are being performed by using robotics. The robotic system consists of several components (Fig. 17-5). These include a console, surgical arm cart, and video cart. Initially, the surgeon inserts the required instruments and positions the articulating arms; he or she then breaks scrub and performs the surgery while sitting at the console. A three-dimensional (3-D) view of the patient’s anatomy provides the surgeon with precise control and dexterity. The vision cart holds the monitors, cameras, and recorder equipment. This new technology requires a perioperative robotics nurse specialist who provides education for patients and family and training for members of the surgical team.

Mechanical trauma and thermal injury are two categories of injury that a patient can incur during MIS and robotic surgery (Ulmer, 2010). One limitation for both minimally invasive surgery and robotic surgery is the cost of special equipment and OR setting. In addition, surgeons require lengthy training and practice periods to become proficient in even one procedure performed using these endoscopic methods (Birch et al., 2007).

Health and Hygiene of the Surgical Team

People are a source of bacteria in the surgical setting. Everyone has bacteria on the skin and the hair and in the airways. Because these organisms can be transmitted to the patient, special health standards and dress are needed. Every surgical setting has policies and procedures for personnel and attire. Health standards require that all members of the surgical team and other support personnel in the surgical suite be free of communicable diseases. No one who has an open wound, cold, or any infection should participate in surgery.

Good personal hygiene helps prevent and control infection, as does frequent handwashing. Jewelry carries many organisms and should be minimal. All personnel must wash their hands between touching patients and performing procedures and more often when indicated. Hands of surgical personnel may be cultured on a regular basis to determine the potential for **nosocomial** (hospital-acquired) infections and to identify sources of pathogens. Further interventions or cultures are needed if quality reports (e.g., through the facility’s quality improvement program) indicate a problem. Routine cultures are usually obtained every 3 to 6 months. Surgical attire and the surgical scrub help prevent contaminations.

Surgical Attire

All members of the surgical team and all OR personnel must wear scrub attire while in the surgical suite. Scrub attire is provided by the hospital and is clean, not sterile. It is worn to reduce contamination from home and areas outside of the surgical setting. Basic surgical attire is a shirt and pants, a cap or hood (Fig. 17-6), and shoe coverings. *Staff change into clean surgical attire in the OR suite locker rooms, not at home (AORN, 2010o)*. All members of the surgical team must cover their hair, including any facial hair.

In addition to basic attire, everyone must wear protective attire. This includes a mask, eyewear, gloves, gown, and shoe covers. Everyone who enters an OR where a sterile field is present must wear a mask. Surgical team members who are



Monitor screen displaying patient's heart rate and rhythm, blood pressure, and other hemodynamic parameters

Printer to accompany the monitor

Ventilator bellows

Nitrous oxide, air, and oxygen flow meters

Anesthesia circuit

Carbon dioxide absorber

Anesthesia breathing bag

Suction canister

Pulse oximeter

Blood pressure monitor

Ventilator

Laboratory results

Vaporizers

Airway equipment (under sterile towel)

Extra supply of air (yellow) and oxygen (green)

Hazardous waste ("red bag" trash)

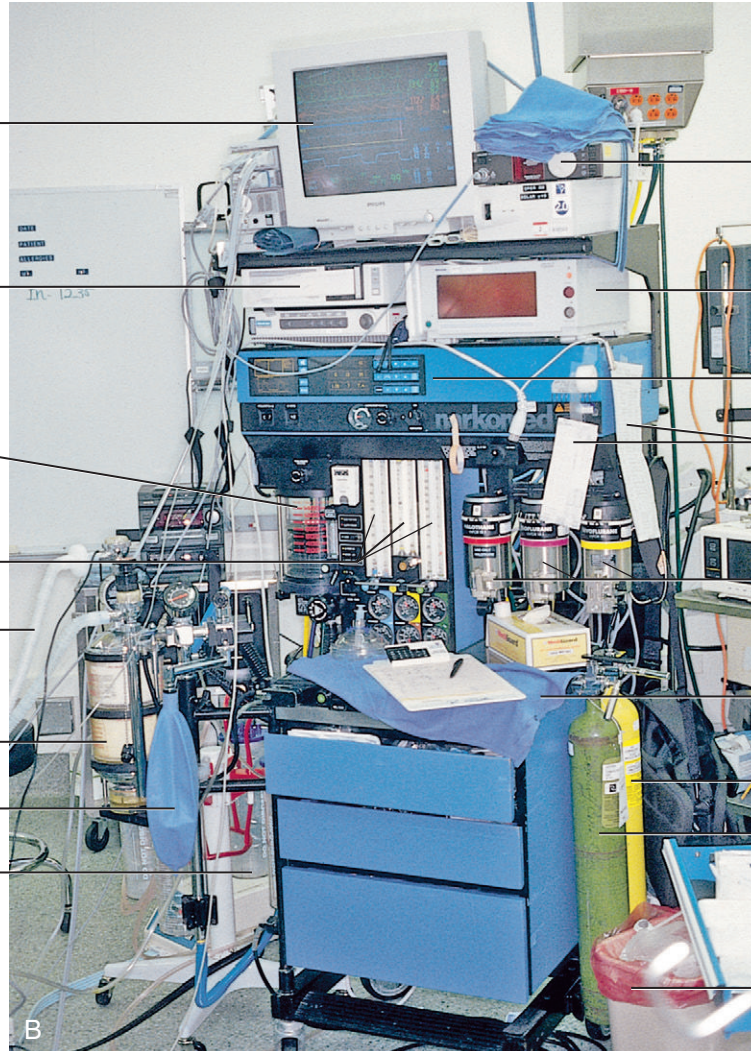


FIG. 17-3 **A**, A typical operating room. **B**, A typical anesthesia station with an anesthesia machine.

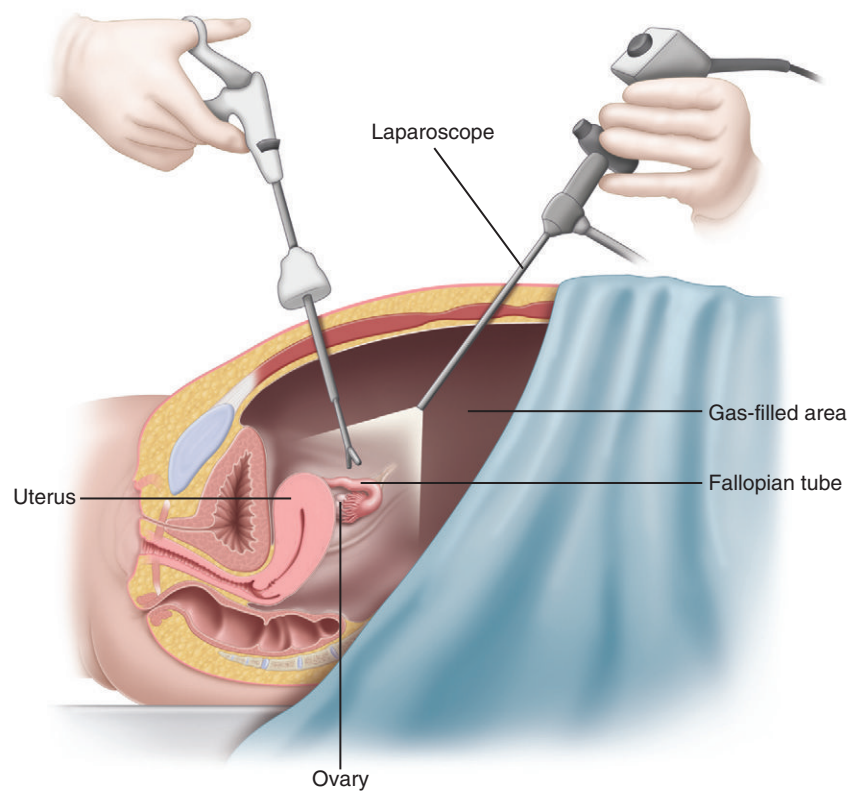


FIG. 17-4 How an operative laparoscope is used.

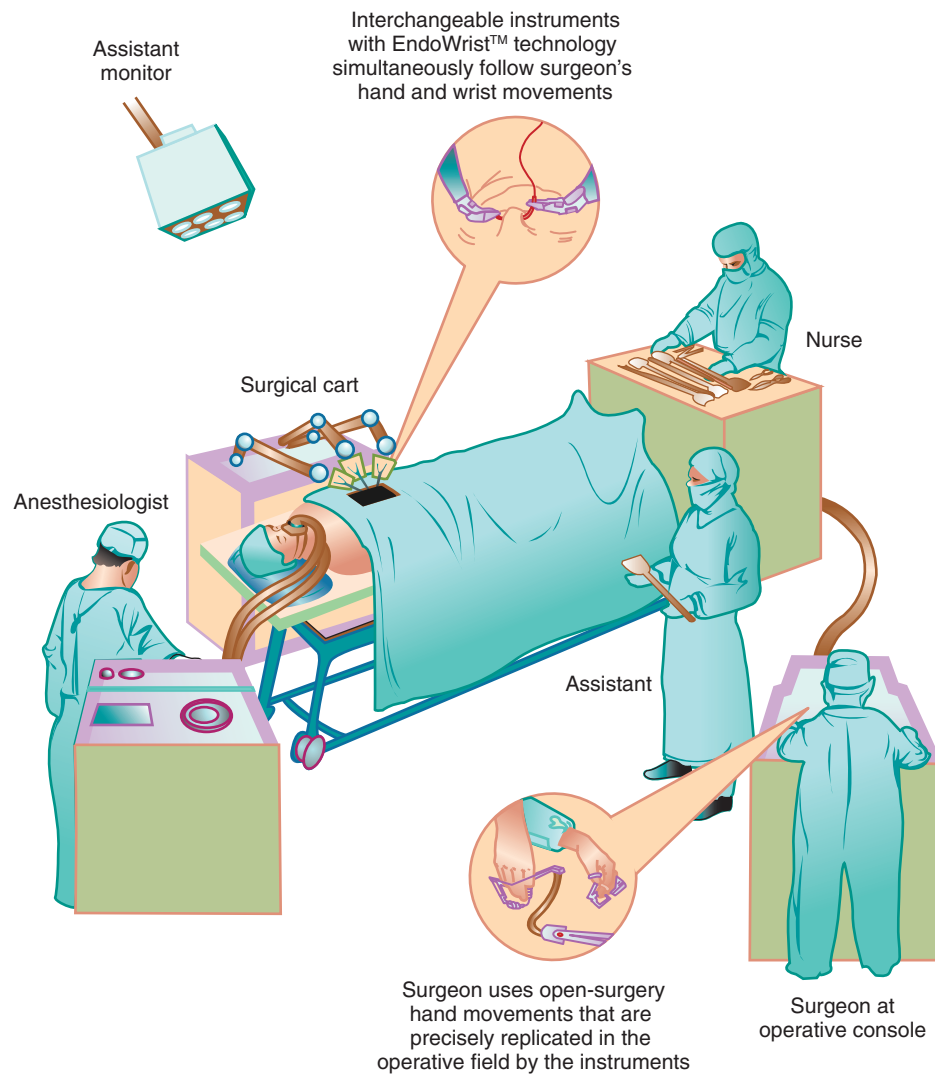


FIG. 17-5 The operating room layout for robotic surgery with the da Vinci Surgery System.



FIG. 17-6 Typical attire for all scrubbed personnel. Note complete hair covering, eye shields, mask, sterile gloves over the sleeves of the sterile gown, and shoe coverings. Note that when not in use, the hands are typically folded in front of the body, never below the waist.

scrubbed and at the patient's bedside during the surgery must also wear a sterile fluid-resistant gown, sterile gloves, and eye protectors, or face shields. Team members who are *not* scrubbed (e.g., anesthesia provider, circulating nurse) may wear cover scrub jackets that are snapped or buttoned closed (to prevent shedding of organisms from bare arms) and eyewear, as warranted.

Surgical Scrub

The surgeon, all assistants, and the scrub nurse perform a surgical scrub after putting on a mask and before putting on the sterile gown and gloves (Fig. 17-7). *The scrub does not make the hands and forearms sterile.* When the scrub is performed correctly, it reduces the number of organisms from the hands, arms, and nails. Rings, watches, and bracelets are removed before scrubbing because they may harbor organisms. Fingernails are kept short, clean, and healthy. Artificial nails are not worn because they too can harbor organisms.

A broad-spectrum, surgical antimicrobial solution is used for the surgical scrub. Plain or antimicrobial soap is used for washing hands immediately before the surgical scrub. Vigorous rubbing that creates friction is used from the fingertips to the elbow. The scrub continues for 3 to 5 minutes, followed by a rinse. During the rinse, hands and arms are positioned so that water runs off, rather than up or down, the arms (AORN, 2010p). After scrubbing, personnel enter the OR with their hands held higher than the elbows and thoroughly dry their hands and forearms with a sterile towel. This person

is then assisted into a sterile gown (“gowning”) and puts on sterile gloves (“gloving”). Newer, alcohol-based surgical scrub agents may or may not require the use of water. Operating room personnel wash and dry their hands with soap and water before applying the agent to their hands and forearms, rubbing thoroughly until dry.

Gowns, gloves, and materials used at the operative field must be sterile. These items are changed between surgical procedures and as they become contaminated. The areas of the surgical gown considered sterile are the front of the gown from the chest to the level of the sterile field. The entire sleeves of the gown are considered sterile from 2 inches above the elbow to the cuff. The back of the gown is not considered sterile because it cannot be consistently seen by the wearer. Only when they are properly scrubbed and attired do members of the surgical team handle sterile drapes and equipment.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The circulating nurse sees that a sponge is dropped onto the floor from the instrument table after the first surgical incision is opened. What is this nurse's best action?

- A. Obtain an additional sterile sponge to replace the contaminated one and place it on the instrument table.
- B. Place the sponge in the circulating area to include in the final count before incision closure.
- C. Pick up the sponge and throw it out so no one slips on it.
- D. Hand the sponge back to the scrub nurse.

ANESTHESIA

The word *anesthesia* means “negative sensation.” Anesthesia delivery is a precise science. It requires the skill of an anesthesiologist, a certified registered nurse anesthetist (CRNA) working under the direction of an anesthesiologist or another physician, or an anesthesiologist assistant (AA—similar to a physician assistant) working under the direction of an anesthesiologist.

Anesthesia is an induced state of partial or total loss of sensation, occurring with or without loss of consciousness. The purpose of anesthesia is to block nerve impulse transmission, suppress reflexes, promote muscle relaxation, and, in some cases, achieve a controlled level of unconsciousness. Anesthesia providers use a separate anesthesia record for documentation.

Usually the anesthesia provider selects the type of anesthesia to be used after consulting with the patient and surgeon and after considering specific patient-related factors. The nurse and patient communicate patient preferences and fears about anesthesia to the anesthesia provider. Patient health problems are major factors in the selection and dose of anesthetic. Selection is also influenced by:

- Type and duration of the procedure
- Area of the body having surgery
- Safety issues to reduce injury, such as airway management
- Whether the procedure is an emergency
- Options for management of pain after surgery
- How long it has been since the patient ate, had any liquids, or had any drugs
- Patient position needed for the surgical procedure
- Whether the patient must be alert enough to follow instructions during surgery



FIG. 17-7 The scrubbing, gowning, and gloving process. **A**, The surgical scrub. **B**, Rinsing. Note the water falling off the hands and arms. Also note the foot-operated handle that controls the water flow. (After scrubbing and rinsing, the scrub nurse dries his hands and arms with a sterile towel inside the operating room and then is assisted into a sterile gown.) **C**, The scrub nurse prepares sterile gloves. Note that the scrub nurse's hands are *inside* the sleeve of the gown and that he is touching the sterile gloves only with the sterile sleeve. **D**, The scrub nurse puts on his first sterile glove while the sterile gown is being tied in the back. Note again that his hand never emerges from under the sterile sleeve. **E**, The scrub nurse puts on his second sterile glove.

- The patient's previous responses and reactions to anesthesia

The physical status of a patient is ranked according to a classification system developed by the American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA). The anesthesiologist assesses the patient and assigns him or her to one of six categories based on current health and the presence of diseases and disorders. The categories rank patients in a range from a totally healthy patient (P1 ranking) to a patient who is brain dead (P6 ranking) (Johnson, 2011). This system is used to estimate potential risks during surgery and patient outcomes.

Anesthesia delivery begins with selecting and giving preoperative drugs (see Chapter 16). The nurse must know the actions of commonly used drugs and their effects during and after surgery. Anesthetic agents affect many systems and can worsen other health problems, increasing the patient's need for care. For example, most anesthetics are metabolized by the liver and excreted by the kidneys. Liver or kidney impairment increases anesthetic effects and the risk for toxicity. In addition, interactions may occur between the anesthetics and other drugs the patient has received.

Anesthesia can be induced in many ways (Table 17-1). The most common forms of anesthesia used in North America include general, regional, and local anesthesia. *Hypnosis* or *hypnoanesthesia* (which induces a passive, trance-like state),

cryothermia (use of cold [e.g., ice] to reduce the surface temperature of the surgical site), and acupuncture are used less often.

General Anesthesia

General anesthesia is a reversible loss of consciousness induced by inhibiting neuronal impulses in several areas of the central nervous system (CNS). This state can be achieved with a single agent or a combination of agents. General anesthesia depresses the CNS, resulting in **analgesia** (pain relief or pain suppression), **amnesia** (memory loss of the surgery), and unconsciousness, with loss of muscle tone and reflexes. The patient is unconscious and unaware. This type of anesthesia is used most often in surgery of the head, neck, upper torso, and abdomen. It may also be used when patients cannot cooperate.

Stages of General Anesthesia

Induction of general anesthesia involves four stages. Table 17-2 lists the expected patient responses and nursing care for each stage. The speed of **emergence** (recovery from the anesthesia) depends on the type of anesthetic agent, the length of time the patient is anesthetized, and whether a reversal agent is used. Retching, vomiting, and restlessness may occur during emergence, although not all patients have these responses.

TABLE 17-1 ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF VARIOUS TYPES OF ANESTHESIA

TYPE	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
General		
Inhalation	Most controllable method Induction and reversal accomplished with pulmonary ventilation Few side effects	Must be used in combination with other agents for painful or prolonged procedures Limited muscle relaxant effects Postoperative nausea and shivering common
Intravenous	Rapid and pleasant induction Low incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting Requires little equipment	Must be metabolized and excreted from the body for complete reversal Contraindicated in presence of liver or kidney disease Increased cardiac and respiratory depression Retained by fat cells
Balanced	Minimal disturbance to physiologic function Minimal side effects Can be used with older and high-risk patients	Drug interactions can occur Pharmacologic effects on the body may be unpredictable
Regional or Local		
	Gag and cough reflexes stay intact Allows participation and cooperation by the patient Less disruption of physical and emotional body functions Decreased chance of sensitivity to the agent Decreased intraoperative stress	Difficult to administer to an uncooperative or upset patient No way to control agent after administration Absorbs rapidly into the blood and causes cardiac depression (hypotension) or overdose Increased nervous system stimulation (overdose) Not practical for extensive procedures because of the amount of drug that would be required to maintain anesthesia
Cryothermia		
	Reflexes remain intact Decreases chance of adverse reactions Decreased intraoperative stress	No way to control depth of anesthesia Not used in long or extensive procedures May not be appropriate for an anxious patient
Hypnosis/Hypnoanesthesia		
	Reflexes remain intact	Requires patient cooperation Requires special training

TABLE 17-2 THE FOUR STAGES OF GENERAL ANESTHESIA AND RELATED NURSING INTERVENTIONS

DESCRIPTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Stage 1 (Analgesia and Sedation, Relaxation)		
Begins with induction and ends with loss of consciousness.	Close operating room doors, dim the lights, and control traffic in the operating room.	Avoiding external stimuli in the environment promotes relaxation.
Patient feels drowsy and dizzy, has a reduced sensation to pain, and is amnesic.	Position patient securely with safety belts.	Using safety measures in stage 1 prepares for stage 2.
Hearing is exaggerated.	Keep discussions about the patient to a minimum.	Being sensitive to the patient maintains his or her dignity.
Stage 2 (Excitement, Delirium)		
Begins with loss of consciousness and ends with relaxation, regular breathing, and loss of the eyelid reflex.	Avoid auditory and physical stimuli.	Sensory stimuli can contribute to the patient's response.
Patient may have irregular breathing, increased muscle tone, and involuntary movement of the extremities during this stage.	Protect the extremities.	Safety measures help prevent injury.
Laryngospasm or vomiting may occur.	Assist the anesthesiologist or CRNA with suctioning as needed.	Adequate suctioning of vomitus can prevent aspiration.
Patient is susceptible to external stimuli.	Stay with patient.	Staying with the patient is emotionally supportive.
Stage 3 (Operative Anesthesia, Surgical Anesthesia)		
Begins with generalized muscle relaxation and ends with loss of reflexes and depression of vital functions.	Assist the anesthesiologist or CRNA with intubation.	Providing assistance helps promote smooth intubation and prevent injury.
The jaw is relaxed, and breathing is quiet and regular.	Place patient into operative position.	Performing procedures as soon as possible promotes time management to minimize total anesthesia time for the patient.
The patient cannot hear.	Prep (scrub) the patient's skin over the operative site as directed.	
Sensations (i.e., to pain) are lost.		
Stage 4 (Danger)		
Begins with depression of vital functions and ends with respiratory failure, cardiac arrest, and possible death.	Prepare for and assist in treatment of cardiac and/or pulmonary arrest.	Teamwork and preparedness help decrease injuries and complications and promote the possibility of a desired outcome for the patient.
Respiratory muscles are paralyzed; apnea occurs.	Document occurrence in the patient's chart.	
Pupils are fixed and dilated.		

Suction equipment must be available to prevent aspiration. During recovery, shivering, rigidity, and slight cyanosis may occur. These responses are caused by a temporary change in the body's temperature control. The nurse provides warm blankets, radiant light, and oxygen to decrease the effects of emergence.

Administration of General Anesthesia

General anesthesia agents are administered by inhalation and IV injection. Table 17-3 lists common agents for general anesthesia along with their advantages and disadvantages. At times, both inhalation and IV agents are used together as “balanced anesthesia” to obtain specific effects. A combination is used to provide hypnosis, amnesia, analgesia, muscle relaxation, and reduced reflexes with minimal disturbance of physiologic function. This method provides safe and controlled anesthetic delivery, especially for older and high-risk patients. An example of balanced anesthesia is the use of thiopental for induction, nitrous oxide for amnesia, morphine for analgesia, and pancuronium for muscle relaxation. Many combinations are possible, and selection is based on the individual patient and the specific surgical procedure.

Other drugs, such as hypnotics, opioid analgesics, and neuromuscular blocking agents, may be used as part of the anesthesia regimen (see Table 17-3). Hypnotics and opioid analgesics can be used for sedation before surgery, for IV moderate sedation for short procedures, and as an adjunct to general anesthesia during surgery. The neuromuscular blocking agents are used to relax the jaw and vocal cords immediately after induction so that the endotracheal tube can be placed. These drugs also may be used during surgery to provide continued muscle relaxation.

Complications from General Anesthesia

Complications can range from minor and annoying (sore throat) to death. Improvement in anesthesia delivery and surgical techniques has resulted in a decline in anesthesia-related deaths, even among higher-risk patients. Although the anesthesia provider has the main responsibility for monitoring patient responses during surgery, the circulating nurse also remains alert for changes in the patient's condition.

Malignant hyperthermia (MH) is an acute, life-threatening complication of certain drugs used for general anesthesia. The reaction begins in skeletal muscle exposed to specific agents, causing increased calcium levels in muscle cells and increased muscle metabolism. Serum calcium and potassium levels are increased, as is the metabolic rate, leading to acidosis, cardiac dysrhythmias, and a high body temperature.

Onset of MH may occur immediately after induction of anesthesia, several hours into the procedure, or, rarely, even after the anesthetic has been terminated. Clinical features reflect the increased muscle calcium level and the greatly increased body metabolism. Manifestations include tachycardia, dysrhythmias, muscle rigidity (especially of the jaw and upper chest), hypotension, tachypnea, skin mottling, cyanosis, and **myoglobinuria** (presence of muscle proteins in the urine). *The most sensitive indication is an unexpected rise in the end-tidal carbon dioxide level with a decrease in oxygen saturation. Another early indication is sinus tachycardia. Extremely elevated temperature, as high as 111.2° F (44° C), is a late sign of MH.* Survival depends on early diagnosis and the actions of the entire surgical team. Time is crucial when

MH is diagnosed. Dantrolene sodium, a skeletal muscle relaxant, is the drug of choice along with other interventions (Kaplow, 2010).

For a known history or risk, the patient can be treated before, during, and after surgery with dantrolene to prevent this problem. Chart 17-1 lists best practices for care of the patient with MH. The AORN recommends that all operating

CHART 17-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Malignant Hyperthermia

- Stop all inhalation anesthetic agents and succinylcholine.
- If an endotracheal tube (ET) is not already in place, intubate immediately.
- Ventilate the patient with 100% oxygen, using the highest possible flow rate.
- Administer dantrolene sodium (Dantrium) IV at a dose of 2 to 3 mg/kg.
- Administer 100% oxygen.
- If possible, terminate surgery. If termination is not possible, continue surgery using anesthetic agents that do not trigger malignant hyperthermia (MH).
- Assess arterial blood gases (ABGs) and serum chemistries for metabolic acidosis and hyperkalemia.
- If metabolic acidosis is evident by ABG analysis, administer sodium bicarbonate IV.
- If hyperkalemia is present, administer 10 units of regular insulin in 50 mL of 50% dextrose IV.
- Use active cooling techniques:
 - Administer iced saline (0.9% NaCl) IV at a rate of 15 mL/kg every 15 minutes as needed.
 - Apply a cooling blanket over the torso.
 - Pack bags of ice around the patient's axillae, groin, neck, and head.
 - Lavage the stomach, bladder, rectum, and open body cavities with sterile iced normal saline.
- Insert a nasogastric tube and a rectal tube.
- Monitor core body temperature to assess effectiveness of interventions and to avoid hypothermia.
- Monitor cardiac rhythm by electrocardiography (ECG) to assess for dysrhythmias.
- Insert a Foley catheter to monitor urine output.
- Treat any dysrhythmias that do not resolve on correction of hyperthermia and hyperkalemia with antidysrhythmic agents *other than calcium channel blockers*.
- Administer IV fluids at a rate and volume sufficient to maintain urine output above 2 mL/kg/hr.
- Monitor urine for presence of blood or myoglobin.
- If urine output falls below 2 mL/kg/hr, consider using osmotic or loop diuretics, depending on the patient's cardiac and kidney status.
- Contact the Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States (MHAUS) hotline for more information regarding treatment: (800) 644-9737.
- Transfer the patient to the intensive care unit (ICU) when stable.
- Continue to monitor the patient's temperature, ECG, ABGs, electrolytes, creatine kinase, coagulation studies, and serum and urine myoglobin levels until they have remained normal for 24 hours.
- Instruct the patient and family about testing for MH risk.
- Refer the patient and family to the Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States at (800) 986-4287 or www.mhaus.org.
- Report the incident to the North American Malignant Hyperthermia Registry at the University of Pittsburgh: (412) 692-5464.

Data from Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States; and Hommertzhim, R., & Steinke, E.E. (2006). Malignant hyperthermia: The perioperative nurse's role. *AORN Journal*, 83(1), 149-164.

TABLE 17-3 ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF COMMON AGENTS FOR GENERAL ANESTHESIA

AGENT	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Inhalation Anesthetics		
Desflurane (Suprane)	Rapid induction and recovery	May increase heart rate and lower BP during induction Can induce malignant hyperthermia*
Enflurane (Ethrane)	Rapid induction and recovery Less likely to induce dysrhythmias	Respiratory depression may occur Hypotension may occur Can induce malignant hyperthermia* Lowers seizure threshold
Halothane (Fluothane)	Rapid and smooth induction Low incidence of postoperative nausea and vomiting Less irritating to the respiratory tract than other inhalation agents	Shivering common postoperatively Can induce malignant hyperthermia* Hypotension and bradycardia may occur Can increase dysrhythmias Can cause permanent liver damage (rare)
Isoflurane (Forane)	Rapid induction and recovery Induces additional muscle relaxation	Respiratory depression possible Irritating odor
Sevoflurane (Ultane)	Rapid induction and recovery Induces additional muscle relaxation	Can induce kidney impairment (rare)
Nitrous oxide (N ₂ O)	Rapid induction and recovery Useful for short procedures When used with other agents, reduces the required concentration of the other agents Minimal cardiovascular and respiratory depression	Relatively weak anesthetic agent May produce hypoxia if the concentration is high Needs addition of other agents for longer procedures
Intravenous Anesthetics		
Etomidate (Amidate)	Rapid induction and recovery Useful for short procedures Little “hang-over” effect	Can cause pain at injection site Laryngospasms (rare)
Ketamine (Ketalar)	Rapid induction and recovery Protective reflexes remain intact	Stimulates cardiovascular responses Dissociative emergence reactions Can induce nausea and vomiting
Midazolam (Versed)	Induces amnesia around the event	Slower induction than other IV agents
Propofol (Diprivan)	Rapid induction and recovery	Can cause pain at injection site May induce propofol infusion syndrome (PrIS): Severe metabolic acidosis, rhabdomyolysis, hyperkalemia, kidney injury, cardiovascular collapse
Methohexital sodium (Brevital)	Acts directly on the central nervous system	Can induce bradycardia and hypotension
Thiopental sodium (Pentothal)	Rapid induction and recovery	Can depress respiratory and cardiac functions
Neuromuscular Blockers		
Succinylcholine (SUX, Anectine)	Rapid induction and recovery	Causes fasciculations on induction Can cause malignant hyperthermia in conjunction with inhalation anesthetics*
Atracurium (Tracrium)	Rapid induction and recovery	Temporarily paralyzes muscles but does not block sensation
Cisatracurium (Nimbex)	Same as for atracurium	Same as for atracurium
Mivacurium (Mivacron)	Same as for atracurium	Same as for atracurium
Vecuronium (Norcuron)	Same as for atracurium	Same as for atracurium
Pancuronium (Pavulon)	Slower onset and longer duration than atracurium	Same as for atracurium
Opioids		
Alfentanil (Alfenta)	Rapid induction and recovery	
Fentanyl (Sublimaze)	Outstanding analgesia, anesthesia (epidural)	
Remifentanil (Ultiva)	Effective at very low doses	
Sufentanil (Sufenta)	Rapid induction and recovery	Can induce prolonged respiratory depression

*Can induce malignant hyperthermia only in susceptible people.

rooms have a dedicated MH cart containing drugs for management (normal saline, dantrolene, sodium bicarbonate, insulin, 50% dextrose, lidocaine, and calcium chloride), a protocol card listing interventions, and the MH hotline number. Additional nursing support is needed during this true perioperative emergency.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

MH is a genetic disorder with an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance. The patient with a genetic predisposition for MH is at risk for this complication from halothane, enflurane, isoflurane, desflurane, sevoflurane, and succinylcholine. This rare syndrome is most common in young adults. Males are affected more often than females (despite the autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance) because of gender differences in muscle mass. Once a patient or family history of MH is known, family members can have a muscle biopsy to determine whether they are at risk. The muscle biopsy tested with the caffeine halothane contracture test (CHCT) is still considered the “gold standard” for MH testing even though this disorder is inherited. Currently, no definitive genetic test identifies all people at risk for MH. When a patient is determined to be at risk for MH, he or she can still have anesthesia and surgery; however, more precautions are needed and different anesthetic agents are used.

Overdose of anesthetic can occur if the patient’s metabolism and drug elimination are slower than expected. This is more likely to occur in patients who are older or who have liver or kidney problems. Other drugs (e.g., antihypertensives) also alter metabolism, and interactions can occur between the anesthetic and the patient’s regular drugs. Accurate information about the patient’s height, weight, and medical history, especially liver and kidney function, is vital in determining the anesthetic type and dosage. Death during surgery is more often related to pre-existing health problems than to anesthetic overdose.

Unrecognized hypoventilation occurs as an anesthesia-induced complication. Failure to exchange gases adequately can lead to cardiac arrest, permanent brain damage, and death. Monitoring standards include the use of an end-tidal carbon dioxide monitor to confirm carbon dioxide in the patient’s expired gas and a breathing system disconnect monitor to detect any break in the breathing circuit equipment.

Intubation complications can include many problems (e.g., broken or injured teeth and caps, swollen lip, vocal cord trauma). Intubation may be difficult because of anatomic variance or disease presence (e.g., small oral cavity, tight jaw joint, presence of tumor). Improper neck extension during intubation also may cause injury. The surgeon should be in the operating room (OR) during the intubation process in case a tracheostomy is needed when the endotracheal tube (ET) is placed. ET placement causes tracheal irritation and edema. Often the patient has a sore throat after surgery.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The client undergoing induction of anesthesia with succinylcholine, a depolarizing blocker agent, begins to experience generalized muscle twitching. What is the circulating nurse’s best response?

- Call the anesthesia provider’s attention to this response.
- Ensure the client is secured to the table.
- Cover the client with a warm blanket.
- Document this expected response.

Local or Regional Anesthesia

Local or regional anesthesia briefly disrupts sensory nerve impulse transmission from a specific body area or region. Motor function may or may not be affected. The patient remains conscious and can follow instructions. Because the gag and cough reflexes remain intact, the risk for aspiration is low. Local or regional anesthesia is often supplemented with sedatives, opioid analgesics, or hypnotics to reduce anxiety and increase comfort. The OR nurse provides the patient with information, directions, and emotional support before, during, and after the procedure.

Local Anesthesia

Local anesthesia is delivered topically (applied to the skin or mucous membranes of the area to be anesthetized) and by local infiltration (injected directly *into* the tissue around an incision, wound, or lesion). Sometimes when the term *local* is used, it means *any* form of anesthesia that is not general anesthesia.

Regional Anesthesia

Regional anesthesia is a type of local anesthesia that blocks multiple peripheral nerves in a specific body region. It may be used when general anesthesia cannot be used because of medical problems, when the patient has had adverse reactions to general anesthesia, when the patient has a preference and a choice is possible, and when pain management after surgery is enhanced by regional anesthesia. If the patient has eaten and the surgery is an emergency, it may be possible to perform surgery with the patient under regional anesthesia (depending on the procedure) to decrease the risk for aspiration. Types of regional anesthesia include field block, nerve block, spinal, and epidural. [Table 17-4](#) defines the types of regional anesthesia. [Figs. 17-8 and 17-9](#) show common sites of nerve blocks, spinal anesthesia, and epidural anesthesia.

TABLE 17-4 TYPES OF REGIONAL ANESTHESIA

ANESTHESIA TYPE	DEFINITION AND COMMON USE
Field block	A series of injections <i>around</i> the operative field Most commonly used for chest procedures, hernia repair, dental surgery, and some plastic surgeries
Nerve block	Injection of the local anesthetic agent <i>into or around</i> one nerve or group of nerves in the involved area Most commonly used for limb surgery or to relieve chronic pain
Spinal anesthesia	Injection of an anesthetic agent into the cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space (see Fig. 17-9) Most commonly used for lower abdominal, pelvic, hip, and knee surgery
Epidural anesthesia	Injection of an agent into the epidural space (see Fig. 17-9) Most commonly used for anorectal, vaginal, perineal, hip, and lower extremity surgeries

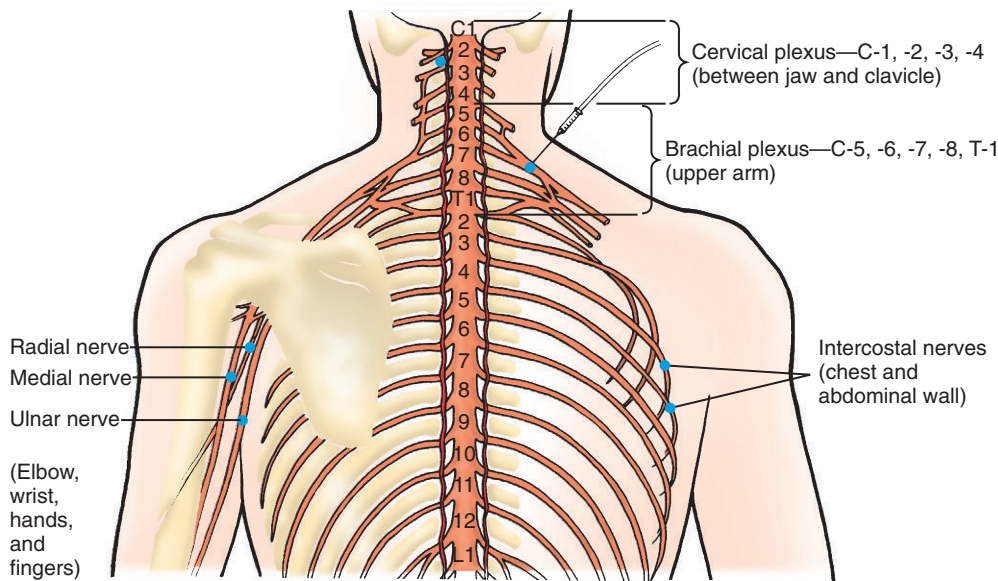


FIG. 17-8 Nerve block sites.

The nurse's role in the delivery of regional anesthesia consists of:

- Assisting the anesthesia provider
- Observing for breaks in sterile technique
- Providing emotional support for the patient
- Staying with the patient
- Offering information and reassurance
- Positioning the patient comfortably and safely

Complications of Local or Regional Anesthesia

Complications of local or regional anesthesia are related to patient sensitivity to the anesthetic agent (anaphylaxis), incorrect delivery technique, systemic absorption, and overdose. The nurse observes for central nervous system (CNS) stimulation followed by CNS and cardiac depression, which are signs of a systemic toxic reaction. The nurse also assesses for restlessness, excitement, incoherent speech, headache, blurred vision, metallic taste, nausea, vomiting, tremors, seizures, and increased pulse, respirations, and blood pressure. Interventions include establishing an open airway, giving oxygen, and notifying the surgeon. Usually a fast-acting barbiturate is needed for treatment. If the toxic reaction is untreated, unconsciousness, hypotension, apnea, cardiac arrest, and death may result.

Cardiac arrest may occur as a rare complication of spinal anesthesia. Epinephrine is given to prevent cardiac arrest in patients who develop sudden, unexplained bradycardia.

Local complications include edema and inflammation as early problems. Abscess formation, tissue necrosis, and/or gangrene may occur later. Abscesses result from contamination during injection of the agent. Necrosis and gangrene are rare but may occur as a result of prolonged blood vessel constriction in the injected area.

Moderate Sedation

Moderate sedation, formerly called *conscious sedation*, is the IV delivery of sedative, hypnotic, and opioid drugs to reduce the level of consciousness but allow the patient to maintain

a patent airway and to respond to verbal commands. The amnesia action is short, and the patient usually has a rapid return to ADLs. Etomidate (Amidate), diazepam (Valium, Vivol , Novo-Dipam , midazolam (Versed), fentanyl (Sublimaze), alfentanil (Alfenta), propofol (Diprivan), and morphine sulfate are the most commonly used drugs. Moderate sedation is used for endoscopy, cardiac catheterization, closed fracture reduction, cardioversion, and other special but short procedures.

Selection of patients for moderate sedation is based on specific criteria. The physician determines whether the patient is a candidate. In most states, a credentialed registered nurse may deliver moderate sedation under physician supervision and within the state-defined scope of nursing practice. Credentialing includes advanced training in IV drug delivery, airway management, and advanced cardiac life support (ACLS).

The nurse monitors the patient during and after the procedure for response to the procedure and the drugs. The airway, level of consciousness, capnography (measure of carbon dioxide level), oxygen saturation, ECG status, and vital signs are monitored every 15 to 30 minutes until the patient is awake and oriented and vital signs have returned to baseline levels (AORN, 2010i).

Evaluation of consciousness for recovery from moderate sedation is performed using the criteria of the Ramsay Sedation Scale (RSS) (Table 17-5). This scale lists specific patient responses or behaviors to a continuum of environmental stimulation; the measures in this scale demonstrate degree of arousal from sedation without hurting the patient or unduly startling him or her.

The patient receiving IV moderate sedation can be discharged to go home with a responsible adult if capnography indicates adequate gas exchange and arousal from sedation is at an RSS 2 level. If the patient returns to the general medical-surgical nursing unit, the unit staff nurses continue monitoring. The patient is expected to be sleepy but arousable for several hours after the procedure. Oral intake is not permitted

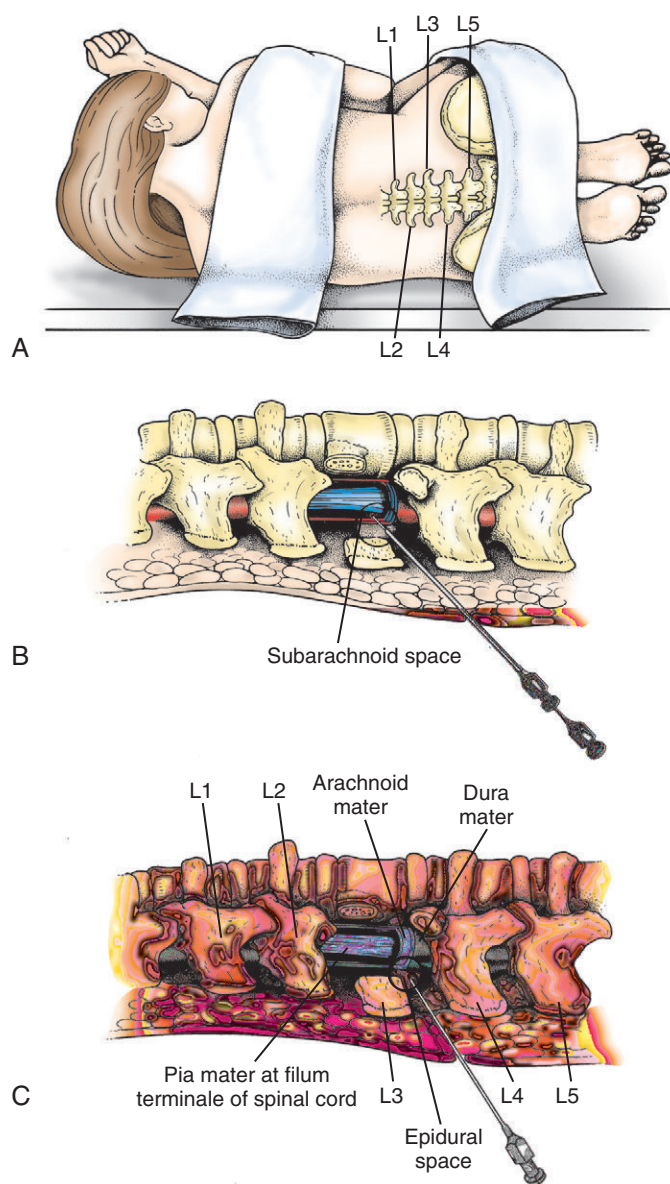


FIG. 17-9 Administration of spinal and epidural anesthesia.

A, Spinal or epidural anesthesia is administered by inserting a spinal needle between the second and third or the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae (L2-3 or L3-4). The patient is placed in the flexed lateral (fetal) position (*shown here*) or seated on the edge of the operating bed with the back arched and the chin tucked to the chest. **B,** Spinal anesthesia (*viewed from the side*). A large needle is inserted to the surface of the dura mater, and a second, smaller needle is passed through the first to penetrate the dura mater and arachnoid mater. An anesthetic is injected, sometimes through an indwelling catheter, directly into the cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space. **C,** Epidural anesthesia (*viewed from the side*). The needle is inserted to the surface of the dura mater, and the anesthetic is injected, usually through an indwelling catheter, into the epidural space.

TABLE 17-5 RAMSAY SEDATION SCALE FOR ASSESSING POST-SEDATION CONSCIOUSNESS

RAMSAY SCORE	RESPONSE DESCRIPTORS
RSS 1	Patient is anxious and agitated or restless, or both.
RSS 2	Patient is co-operative, oriented, and tranquil (calm, not agitated).
RSS 3	Patient responds quickly, but only to commands.
RSS 4	Patient exhibits brisk response to light tapping on the forehead above the nose between the eyebrows (glabella) or a loud noise (auditory stimulus) or responds slowly to commands.
RSS 5	Patient exhibits a sluggish response to light glabellar tapping or loud auditory stimulus.
RSS 6	Patient exhibits no response to light glabellar tapping or loud auditory stimulus, which indicates he or she is not conscious. The RSS must be reapplied at intervals until full consciousness is achieved.

Data from DeJonghe, B., Cook, D., Appere-de-Vecchi, C., et al. (2000). Using and understanding sedation scoring systems: A systematic review. *Intensive Care Medicine*, 26(3), 275-285.

until 30 minutes after the patient has received the sedation or according to the physician's prescription. If the patient was intubated or had oral endoscopy, return of the gag reflex is required before resumption of oral intake. When fluids are permitted, the nurse makes sure that the patient is awake and positioned to avoid aspiration.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

On arrival in the surgical suite, the patient is taken to the holding area or directly into the operating suite. The holding area nurse or the circulating nurse greets the patient on arrival. As indicated in The Joint Commission's NPSGs, correct identification of the patient is the responsibility of every member of the health care team. Check the patient's identification bracelet and ask, "What is your name and when were you born?" This practice prevents errors by drowsy or confused patients. For example, if a patient is asked "Are you

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The Joint Commission's NPSGs require that you verify the patient's identity with two types of identifiers (name, medical record number, telephone number, or other person-specific identifier). Ask the patient to tell you his or her name.

Mr. Gates?” he may respond inappropriately if he is anxious or sedated. The nurse always validates identification using the medical record and identification bracelet and by asking the patient or family.

After completing the identification process, the nurse validates that the surgical consent form has been signed and witnessed. The nurse asks, “What kind of operation are you having today?” to ascertain that the patient’s perception of the procedure, the operative permit, and the operative schedule are the same. When the procedure involves a specific site, validating the side on which a procedure is to be performed (e.g., for amputation, cataract removal, hernia repair) is the responsibility of each health care professional before and at the time of surgery. The Joint Commission now recommends that the patient and the professional who knows the most about the patient (usually the surgeon performing the surgery) mark the surgical site ([The Joint Commission \[TJC\], 2010](#)). Before proceeding, each health care professional thoroughly investigates any discrepancy and notifies the surgeon and anesthesia provider. The Joint Commission (TJC) has developed a Universal Protocol for Preventing Wrong Site, Wrong Procedure, Wrong Person Surgery, and the Association of periOperative Registered Nurses has developed recommendations based on this protocol (AORN, 2010s). The nurse asks the patient about any allergies and determines whether autologous blood was donated. A special allergy bracelet on the patient’s wrist and the medical record must be verified with what has been communicated.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient’s description of the surgical site is different from that listed on the informed consent, form a time-out with the patient, yourself, and the surgeon to ascertain and mark the correct site.

The nurse checks the patient’s attire to ensure adherence with facility policy. Dentures and dental prostheses (e.g., bridges, retainers), jewelry (including body piercing), eyeglasses, contact lenses, hearing aids, wigs, and other prostheses are removed. Denture removal before anesthesia is controversial (Conlon et al., 2007). Although the denture plate could become loose and obstruct the airway during surgery, the anesthesia provider may request that dentures be left in place to ensure a snug fit of the bag-mask. In some facilities, patients may wear eyeglasses and hearing aids until after anesthesia induction.

Medical Record Review

The circulating nurse and anesthesia provider review the patient’s medical record in the holding area or the operating room (OR). The medical record provides information needed to identify patient needs during surgery and allows the circulating nurse to assess and plan specific care during and after surgery. The medical record is the main source of information on the type and location of the planned surgery. The nurse checks the medical record to ensure required data are present before surgery is started.

Advance Directives and Do-Not-Resuscitate Orders.

Ethical dilemmas may occur during or after surgery. As a patient advocate, the nurse may have to intervene on behalf of the patient’s rights and wishes. The nurse must be familiar

with the advance directives and do-not-resuscitate (DNR) orders for each patient. It is difficult for some health care providers to not treat the patient in the OR for an emergency situation, and they may ignore an advance directive or living will. Some agencies suspend DNR orders while a patient is undergoing a surgical procedure. The position statement of the Association of periOperative Registered Nurses regarding the care of patients with DNR orders states that automatically suspending a DNR or allow-natural-death order during surgery undermines a patient’s right to self-determination (AORN, 2010b).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Advance directives are to be honored in the surgical environment regardless of the situation.

Allergies and Previous Reactions to Anesthesia or Transfusions. The nurse asks about allergies and previous reactions to anesthesia or blood transfusions. Allergies to iodine products or shellfish indicate a risk for a reaction to the agents used to clean the surgical area. Latex allergies are assessed with all patients. Latex-induced anaphylaxis accounts for about 10% of the anaphylactic reactions that occur during surgery (see [Chapters 19 and 22](#)). Latex-free equipment and supplies are used when there is a latex allergy. The nurse documents the allergy in the medical record and notifies the OR team.

The patient’s previous experience with anesthesia helps the nurse and anesthesia provider anticipate needs and plan interventions. For example, if a patient is restless or agitated as a reaction to anesthesia, the nurse can have padding for the siderails and protective restraints available. The use of blood and blood products during surgery may be influenced by the patient’s history, religious beliefs, preferences, and past transfusion reactions.

Autologous Blood Transfusion. Autologous blood transfusion (reinfusing the patient’s own blood) may be used for surgery. [Chapters 16 and 42](#) discuss autologous transfusion in more detail. [Chart 17-2](#) outlines best practices for autologous blood transfusion during surgery.

Laboratory and Diagnostic Test Results. The OR nurse reviews the most recent laboratory findings and test results to inform the surgical team about the patient’s health and to alert them for potential problems. These results are usually obtained within 24 to 48 hours before surgery for hospitalized patients and within 4 weeks for ambulatory surgery patients. The nurse reports all abnormal findings or results to the surgeon and anesthesia provider. Laboratory values

CHART 17-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Intraoperative Autologous Blood Salvage and Transfusion

- Be aware of the cell-processing method to be used.
- Make sure that collection containers are labeled for the patient.
- Assist with sterile setup as necessary.
- Assist with processing and reinfusing procedures as needed.
- Document the transfusion process.
- Monitor the patient’s vital signs during the transfusion procedure.

greater than or less than the normal range are potentially life threatening for the patient having surgery (see [Chapter 16](#)). For example, if the hemoglobin level is less than 10 g/dL, oxygen transport capacity is reduced, affecting the amount and type of anesthesia used as well as the impact of blood loss during surgery.

Medical History and Physical Examination Findings. The nurse performs a final assessment for threats to patient safety. This begins with the patient's age and general physical condition. Older patients and those who are thin or overweight are at greater risk for skin injury. Assessing mental status is important because confused patients and those who are unable to either follow instructions or communicate may not be able to tell you when a problem exists. Patients who have sensory impairment of any type are at increased risk for injury. Specific drugs, such as long-term steroid use (which increases capillary fragility and thins the skin) or fluoroquinolone antibiotics (which increase the risk for tendon rupture), as well as limitations of range or motion, require modification during positioning and threaten patient safety.

The OR nurse checks that the medical history and examination findings, including usual pulse and blood pressure, are recorded. This information provides the circulating nurse, surgeon, anesthesia provider, and PACU nurse with baseline data to assess the patient's reaction to the surgery and anesthesia. Drugs taken before surgery may affect the patient's reaction to surgery and wound healing. For example, aspirin reduces platelet action, increasing clotting time and the risk for hemorrhage.

Knowing the patient's medical history and age allows the nurse to plan interventions for the care and safety of high-risk patients ([Chart 17-3](#)). The nurse carefully monitors older patients and those with cardiac disease for potential fluid overload.

After completing the medical record review, the nurse may insert an IV catheter and perform a surgical skin preparation. The circulating nurse provides emotional support and explains procedures to the patient. If the patient is in the holding area, he or she is moved to the OR after the preoperative routine is completed.

CHART 17-3 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Intraoperative Nursing Interventions

- Allow patients to retain eyeglasses, dentures, and hearing aids until anesthesia has begun.
- Use a small pillow under the patient's head if his or her head and neck are normally bent slightly forward.
- Lift patients into position to prevent shearing forces on fragile skin.
- Position arthritic and artificial joints carefully to prevent postoperative pain and discomfort from strain on those joints.
- Pad bony prominences to prevent pressure sores.
- Provide extra padding for those patients with decreased peripheral circulation.
- Use warming devices to prevent hypothermia.
- Cover the patient's head and feet.
- Warm IV and irrigation fluids as indicated by agency policy and manufacturer's recommendations.
- Follow strict aseptic technique.
- Carefully monitor intake and output, including blood loss.

Data from Clayton, J. (2008). Special needs of older adults undergoing surgery. *AORN Journal*, 88(3), 557-570.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Once the patient has been moved into the holding area or the OR, do not leave him or her alone.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration; Quality Improvement

A very anxious patient, a 48-year-old attorney, has entered the preoperative holding area about 60 minutes before her scheduled procedure. Before the OR nurse can interview her, the patient is medicated with 2 mg midazolam (Versed). The OR schedule lists that she is scheduled to have a left breast lumpectomy as treatment for breast cancer. When you ask her what procedure she is having, her response is "I am going to have a lumpectomy of the RIGHT breast." Upon further review, you determine that the surgeon wrote, "operative consent for lumpectomy of the right breast." However, when you check the informed consent, the consent states lumpectomy, left breast, and the patient signature is present, as is the witness signature.

1. How should you proceed with the discrepancies surrounding the operative procedure among the patient, operative consent, and OR schedule?
2. Can the patient sign a new consent after she has been medicated with midazolam? Why or why not?
3. How could this have happened?
4. How can this occurrence be prevented in the future?

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for patients during surgery are:

1. Potential for injury related to improper positioning
2. Potential for infection related to invasive procedures
3. Potential for hypoventilation related to anesthesia, pain, reduced respiratory effort

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Preventing Injury

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to be free of injury as indicated by:

- Adequate capillary refill and peripheral pulses in all extremities
- Peripheral sensation and motor function after surgery at the same level as before surgery
- Absence of skin redness or open skin areas
- Absence of bruising

Interventions. Interventions are used to prevent injury from positioning during surgery. Because of anesthesia and the narrow OR bed, the patient's normal defense mechanisms cannot guard against nerve or joint damage and muscle stretch or strain. In addition, pressure ulcers often start to develop during surgery (Schoonhoven et al., 2002). Thus proper positioning is important. The circulating nurse pads the operating bed with foam and/or silicone gel pads and properly places the grounding pads. He or she coordinates the transfer to the operating bed and helps the patient to a comfortable position. The skin is assessed, especially of older patients, for bruising or injury, and extra padding is placed as indicated.

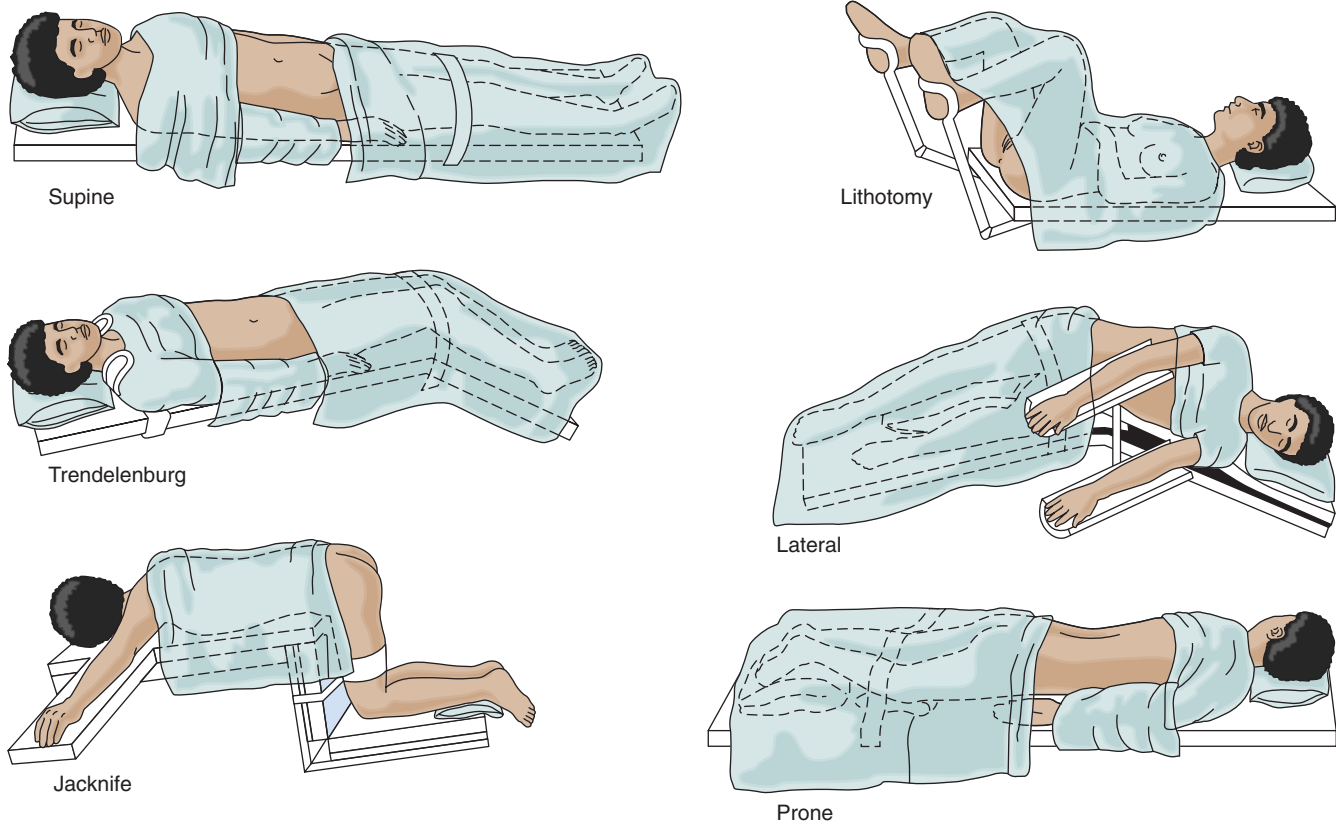


FIG. 17-10 Common surgical positions.

The patient is usually in a supine position after transfer to the operating bed. Anesthesia may be initiated with the patient supine, and he or she may then be repositioned for surgery (Fig. 17-10).

The circulating nurse coordinates positioning of the patient for surgery and modifies the position according to the patient's safety and special needs. The OR nurse ensures that there is an adequate number of personnel to assist in positioning the patient. Factors influencing the timing of repositioning include:

- The surgical site
- The age and size of the patient
- The anesthetic delivery technique
- Pain on movement (conscious patient)

Factors influencing the actual position include:

- The specific procedure being performed
- The surgeon's request
- The patient's age, size, and weight
- Any pulmonary, skeletal, or muscular limitations, such as arthritis, joint replacements, emphysema, or implanted devices

Chart 17-4 lists best practices to prevent complications related to prolonged immobility during surgery.

The dorsal recumbent (supine), prone, lithotomy, and lateral positions are most often used for surgery. Fig. 17-10 shows many surgical positions and the use of protective padding. When general anesthesia is used, the nurse positions the patient slowly to prevent hypotension from blood vessel dilation. Proper positioning is ensured by assessing for:

- Anatomic alignment
- Interference with circulation and breathing
- Protection of skeletal and neuromuscular structures
- Optimal exposure of the operative site and IV line
- Adequate access to the patient for the anesthesia provider
- The patient's comfort and safety
- Preservation of the patient's dignity

Care is modified to reduce the potential complications related to specific positions. For example, patients in the lithotomy position may develop leg swelling, pain in the legs or back, reduced foot pulses, or reduced sensation from compression of the peroneal nerve. The nurse ensures proper padding and position changes at regular intervals. He or she continually assesses adequacy of circulation by checking pulses and capillary refill below pressure points. Throughout the surgery, the nurse prevents obstruction of circulation, respiration, or nerve conduction caused by tight straps, poorly placed pads and pillows, or the position of the bed.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

The patient is a 50-year-old thin woman (115 lb) who will be placed in the prone position during surgery.

1. What general safety considerations should be taken for a patient in the prone position?
2. What areas on this patient are most likely to be injured as a result of poor positioning or inadequate padding?

CHART 17-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Complications Related to Intraoperative Positioning

Prevention of Brachial Plexus Complications (Paralysis, Loss of Sensation in Arm and Shoulder)

- Pad the elbow if tucked at the side.
- Avoid excessive abduction.
- Secure the arm firmly on a padded armboard, positioned at shoulder level, and extended less than 90 degrees.

Prevention of Radial Nerve Complications (Wrist Drop)

- Support the wrist with padding.
- Be careful not to overtighten wrist straps.

Prevention of Medial or Ulnar Nerve Complications (Hand Weakness, Claw Hand)

- Place the safety strap above or below the nerve locations.

Prevention of Peroneal Nerve Complications (Foot Drop)

- Pad knees and ankles.
- Maintain minimal external rotation of the hips.
- Support the lower extremities.
- Be careful not to overtighten leg straps.

Prevention of Tibial Nerve Complications (Loss of Sensation on the Plantar Surface of the Foot)

- Place the safety strap above the ankle.
- Do not place equipment on lower extremities.
- Urge OR personnel to avoid leaning on the patient's lower extremities.

Prevention of Joint Complications (Stiffness, Pain, Inflammation, Limited Motion)

- Place a pillow or foam padding under bony prominences.
- Maintain the patient's extremities in good anatomical alignment.
- Slightly flex joints and support with pillows, trochanter rolls, or pads.

Data from Association of periOperative Registered Nurses. (2010). Recommended practices for positioning the patient in the perioperative practice setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 327-350). Denver: Author.

Preventing Infection

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to have an uninfected surgical wound or wounds. Indicators include:

- Wound edges are closed and not excessively red or swollen
- Wound is free from purulent drainage
- White blood cell counts remain at expected levels after surgery
- Patient is afebrile

Interventions. Surgical wound infections interfere with the patient's recovery, delay wound healing, contribute to rising health care costs, and are a major source of nosocomial infections. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) defines surgical site infections as occurring 30 days post-surgery and up to 1 year for transplant surgery ([National Center for Health Statistics, 2007](#)). Aseptic technique must be strictly practiced by all OR personnel to ensure that the patient is free from infection, as required by The Joint Commission's NPSGs. The Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP), as described in [Table 16-1](#) of [Chapter 16](#), has

established core measures related to the prevention of surgical site infections.

Assess the risk for infection, including identifying patients with pre-existing health problems such as diabetes mellitus, immune deficiency, obesity, and kidney disease. The nurse performs the prescribed skin preparation, protects the patient's exposure to cross-contamination, keeps traffic to a minimum, and administers prescribed antimicrobial prophylaxis. Surgery places the patient at risk for wound complications (e.g., incisional tears, lacerations), infection, and loss of body fluids. Sterile surgical technique and the use of protective drapes, skin closures, and dressings reduce complications and promote wound healing. When a wound is already infected or is at high risk for infection, antibiotics may be used directly in the wound by irrigation or by placing the drug directly into the surgical site before wound closure.

Skin and tissue closures include sutures, staples, and special tape. [Fig. 17-11](#) shows commonly used wound closures. They are used to:

- Hold wound edges in place until wound healing is complete
- Occlude blood vessels, preventing hemorrhage and fluid loss
- Prevent wound contamination

Sutures are absorbable or nonabsorbable. **Absorbable sutures** are digested over time by body enzymes. **Nonabsorbable sutures** become encapsulated in the tissue during the healing process and remain in the tissue unless they are removed. Body enzymes do not affect nonabsorbable sutures. Retention (stay) sutures (see [Fig. 17-11](#)) may be used in addition to standard sutures for patients at high risk for impaired wound healing (those having major abdominal surgery, obese patients, patients with diabetes, and those taking steroids).

After the incision is closed, the surgeon may inject a local anesthetic or instill an antibiotic into the wound. A gauze or spray dressing may be applied to protect the incision from contamination. A variety of dressings may also be used to absorb drainage and support the incision. A pressure dressing may be applied to prevent bleeding. One or more drains (see [Chapter 18](#)) may be inserted to remove secretions and fluids from within tissues around the surgical area. These secretions, if not drained, slow healing and promote bacterial growth, which could result in wound infection.

After the dressing is secure, the nurse coordinates the surgical team in positioning and transferring the patient. A roller board or a lift sheet is used to move the patient from the operating bed to a stretcher or bed. Some patients are able to move themselves over to the stretcher. The circulating nurse and anesthesia provider go with the patient to the PACU and report the patient's surgical experience to the PACU nurse (see [Chapter 18](#)).

Preventing Hypoventilation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to be free of damaging events related to hypoventilation as indicated by:

- Maintenance of SaO_2 , PaO_2 , and blood pH within normal limits
- Vital signs within normal limits
- Return to presurgical level of cognitive function

Interventions. The purpose of interventions is to prevent injury resulting from anesthesia (see discussion on pp.

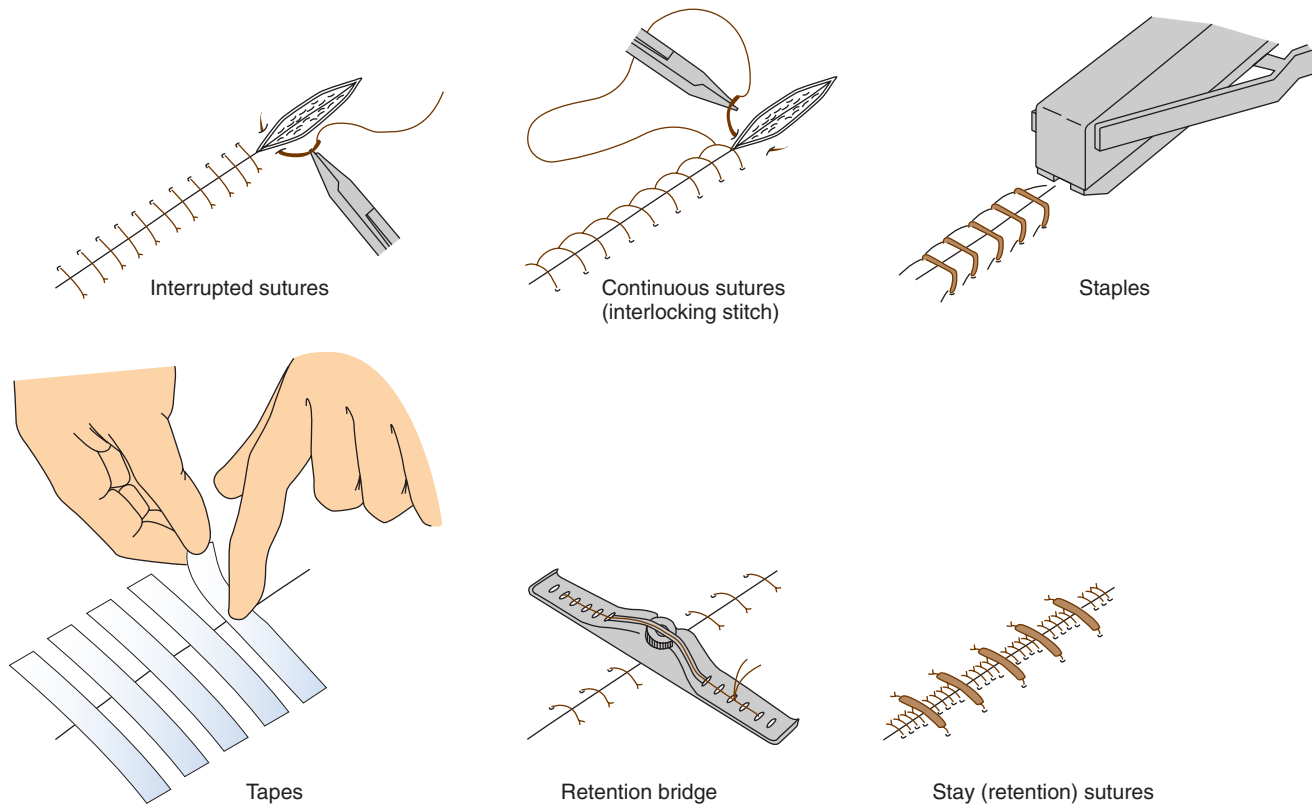


FIG. 17-11 Common skin closures.

273-276). The nurse, surgeon, and anesthesia provider monitor the patient according to official standards. These standards, adopted by both the American Society of Anesthesiologists and the American Association of Nurse Anesthetists, include continuous monitoring of breathing, circulation, and cardiac rhythms; blood pressure and heart rate recordings every 5 minutes; and the continuous presence of an anesthesia provider during the case.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

The nurse evaluates the care of the patient during surgery based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Is safely anesthetized without complications
- Does not experience any injury related to surgical positioning or equipment
- Is free of skin or tissue contamination during surgery
- Is free of skin tears, bruises, redness, abrasion, or maceration over pressure points and elsewhere
- Maintains normal body temperature

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Ensure that all personnel entering the OR are wearing proper OR attire for their role.
- Observe for and inform OR personnel of any break in sterile field or sterile technique.
- Use two identifiers to check the identity of the patient.

- Report to the surgeon any discrepancy between what type of surgery the patient says is going to be performed and what the informed consent form indicates.
- Review preoperative checklist and informed consent forms.
- Highlight any known allergies.
- Apply grounding pads as needed.
- Complete any needed skin preparation.
- Perform an accurate “sharps” and sponge count with the scrub nurse or surgical technologist.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

- Apply padding to the OR bed to maintain the patient's skin integrity.
- Position the patient comfortably and safely.
- Apply warming blanket to maintain normal body temperature.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Encourage the patient to express concerns about the surgical procedure or its possible outcome.
- Communicate patient preferences or fears about anesthesia to the anesthesia provider.
- Preserve the patient's privacy and dignity by keeping body exposure to a minimum.
- Stay with the patient during induction of anesthesia.
- Communicate information about the patient's status to waiting family members.

- Ensure that the patient's wishes, as expressed in the advance directives statement, are honored in the surgical setting.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient when was the last time he or she had anything to eat or drink.
- Assess the patient for tachycardia, increased end-tidal carbon dioxide level, and increased body temperature as indicators of malignant hyperthermia.
- Maintain the malignant hyperthermia cart.
- Monitor the patient's airway, level of consciousness, oxygen saturation, ECG, and vital signs during and immediately after moderate sedation.
- Assess all skin areas and document findings before transferring the patient to the postanesthesia care unit.

CHAPTER

18

Care of Postoperative Patients

Robin Chard



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Clip: Stridor
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Apply concepts of sterile technique, asepsis, and Standard Precautions during wound assessment and dressing changes.
2. Use specific agency criteria for determining readiness of the patient to be discharged from the postanesthesia care unit.
3. Examine individual patient factors for potential threats to safety, especially the risk for surgical site infection and venous thromboembolism.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Evaluate patient risk for complications of wound healing.
5. Provide postoperative education for patients and family members after surgery.

Physiological Integrity

6. Perform an ongoing head-to-toe assessment of the postoperative patient.

7. Prioritize nursing interventions for the patient recovering from surgery and anesthesia during the first 24 hours.
8. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology to monitor the patient for the complications of shock, respiratory depression, or impaired wound healing after surgery.
9. Assess the patient's level of postoperative pain, and evaluate his or her responses to coordinated pain management strategies and interventions.
10. Explain the actions, dosages, side effects, and nursing implications for different types of drug therapy for pain management after surgery.
11. Evaluate surgical incisions and wounds for complications.
12. Collaborate with health care team members to perform emergency care procedures for surgical wound dehiscence or wound evisceration.

Completion of surgery and transfer of the patient to either the postanesthesia care unit (PACU), the same-day surgery (SDS) unit (ambulatory care unit), or the intensive care unit (ICU) mark the beginning of the postoperative period. Patients are discharged from these areas when they are stable and have met specific discharge criteria. Many patients can be discharged to home shortly after the surgery is completed. They are observed and monitored until discharge criteria are

met and are then discharged. Some patients move from the specialized nursing care in the PACU to a hospital inpatient floor or ICU for additional nursing care.

The postoperative period continues after the patient's condition is stabilized, as well as after the patient is discharged from the ambulatory surgery facility or hospital. The actual time spent away from home after surgery varies according to age, physical health, self-care ability, support systems, type

and length of surgical procedure, anesthesia, any complications, and community resources. The measures recommended by the Surgical Care Improvement Project (SCIP) that were initiated during the preoperative period to prevent certain surgical complications are continued or re-evaluated during the postoperative period. (See [Chapter 16](#) and [Table 16-1](#) for an explanation of these measures.)

OVERVIEW

The purpose of a **postanesthesia care unit (PACU)** (recovery room) is the ongoing evaluation and stabilization of patients to anticipate, prevent, and manage complications after surgery. The PACU is usually located close to the surgical suite for ease of access and patient transfer. The unit is usually a large and open room to provide direct observation of all patients and easy access to supplies and emergency equipment. Adults are usually separated from children. The patient area may be divided into individual cubicles. So that each patient can be observed continuously, privacy curtains or screens are closed only during bedside procedures. Each cubicle has equipment to monitor and care for the patient, such as oxygen, suction equipment, cardiac monitors, pulse oximetry, airway equipment, and emergency drugs.

After the surgery is completed, the circulating nurse and the anesthesia provider accompany the patient to the PACU. When the patient is in critical condition, transfer may be directly from the operating room (OR) to the ICU. On arrival, The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) require that the anesthesia provider and the circulating nurse give the PACU nurse a verbal "hand-off" report to communicate the patient's condition and care needs.

A hand-off report that meets National Patient Safety Goal 2 requires effective communication between health care professionals. It is at least a two-way verbal interaction between the health care professional giving the report and the nurse receiving it. The language used by the person or persons giving the report is clear and cannot be interpreted in more than one way. The nurse receiving the report focuses on the report and is not distracted by the environment or other responsibilities. Standardizing the information reported helps prevent omission of critical patient-centered information and helps avoid irrelevant details ([Association of peri-Operative Registered Nurses \[AORN\], 2010](#)). The receiving nurse takes the time to restate (report back) the information to verify what was said and to make certain both the reporting person and the receiving nurse have the same understanding. The receiving nurse takes the time to ask questions and the reporting professional must respond to the questions until a common understanding is established. [Chart 18-1](#) gives an example of critical information to include in a standard hand-off report.

The PACU nurse is skilled in the care of patients with multiple medical and surgical problems immediately after a surgical procedure. This area requires in-depth knowledge of anatomy and physiology, anesthetic agents, pharmacology, pain management, extubation, surgical procedures, and advanced cardiac life support (ACLS). The PACU nurse is skilled in assessment and can make quick decisions if emergencies or complications occur. The patient is monitored closely. The anesthesia provider and surgeon are consulted as needed.

CHART 18-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Postoperative Hand-off Report

- Type and extent of the surgical procedure
- Type of anesthesia and length of time the patient was under anesthesia
- Tolerance of anesthesia and the surgical procedure
- Allergies (especially to latex or drugs)
- Any health problems or pathologic conditions
- Oxygen saturation
- Status of vital signs
- Core body temperature
- Type and amount of IV fluids and drugs administered
- Estimated blood loss (EBL)
- Any intraoperative complications, such as a traumatic intubation
- Preoperative drugs and patient responses
- Primary language, any sensory impairments, any communication difficulties
- Anxiety level before receiving anesthesia
- Special requests that were verbalized by the patient preoperatively
- Preoperative and intraoperative respiratory function and dysfunction
- Pertinent medical history, including substance abuse
- Location and type of incisions, dressings, catheters, tubes, drains, or packing
- Intake and output, including current IV fluid administration and estimated blood loss
- Prosthetic devices
- Joint or limb immobility while in the operating room, especially in the older patient
- Other intraoperative positioning that may be relevant in the postoperative phase
- Intraoperative complications, how managed, patient responses (e.g., laboratory values)
- Any other important intraoperative occurrences

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The postanesthesia recovery unit nurse is receiving a hand-off report from the nurse anesthetist and the circulating nurse for an 82-year-old client who had a 2-hour open reduction of a fractured elbow. For which reported information about the client or surgery does the receiving nurse ask the reporting team for more details?

- The client is Jewish.
- The estimated blood loss is 150 mL.
- The client reported an allergy to codeine.
- The total intraoperative urine output is 25 mL.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Use the surgical team's report to plan the care for an individual patient. After receiving the report and assessing the patient, review the medical record for information about the patient's history, presurgical physical condition, and emotional status. If the patient remains as an inpatient, the surgical and anesthesia information is incorporated into the postoperative plan of care. [Chapter 16](#) identifies situations that increase a patient's risk for the potential complications listed in [Table 18-1](#).

TABLE 18-1 GENERAL POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS OF SURGERY

Respiratory System Complications

- Atelectasis
- Pneumonia
- Pulmonary embolism (PE)
- Laryngeal edema
- Ventilator dependence
- Pulmonary edema

Cardiovascular Complications

- Hypertension
- Hypotension
- Hypovolemic shock
- Dysrhythmias
- Venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially deep vein thrombosis (DVT)
- Heart failure
- Sepsis
- Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
- Anemia
- Anaphylaxis

Skin Complications

- Pressure ulcers
- Wound infection
- Wound dehiscence
- Wound evisceration
- Skin rashes or contact allergies

Gastrointestinal Complications

- Paralytic ileus
- Gastrointestinal ulcers and bleeding

Neuromuscular Complications

- Hypothermia
- Hyperthermia
- Nerve damage and paralysis
- Joint contractures

Kidney/Urinary Complications

- Urinary tract infection
- Acute urinary retention
- Electrolyte imbalances
- Acute kidney injury (AKI)
- Stone formation

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess the patient, and record data on a PACU flow chart record (Fig. 18-1). Assessment data include level of consciousness, temperature, pulse, respiration, oxygen saturation, and blood pressure. Examine the surgical area for bleeding. Monitor vital signs as often as your facility's policy states, the patient's condition warrants, and the surgeon prescribes. Once the patient is discharged from the PACU, vital signs are often measured every 15 minutes for four times, every 30 minutes for four times, every hour for four times, and then every 4 hours for 24 to 48 hours if the patient's condition is stable. Thereafter, if the patient is admitted, vital signs are assessed according to the facility's policy, the patient's condition, and the nurse's judgment.

The health care team determines the patient's readiness for discharge from the PACU by the presence of a recovery score rating of 9 to 10 on the recovery scale (see Fig. 18-1). Other criteria for discharge (e.g., stable vital signs; normal body

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Respiratory assessment is the most critical assessment to perform after surgery for any patient who has undergone general anesthesia, moderate sedation, or has received sedative or opioid drugs.

temperature; no overt bleeding; return of gag, cough, and swallow reflexes; the ability to take liquids; and adequate urine output) may be specific to the facility. After you determine that all criteria have been met, the patient is discharged by the anesthesia provider to the hospital unit or to home. If an anesthesia provider has not been involved, which may be the case with local anesthesia or moderate sedation, the surgeon or nurse discharges the patient once the discharge criteria have been met.

Assessment continues from the PACU to the intensive care or medical-surgical nursing unit. If the patient is to be discharged from the PACU to home, assessment is continued by home care nurses or by the patient or family members after health teaching. When the patient is transferred to an inpatient unit, complete an initial assessment on arrival (Chart 18-2).

During the postoperative period, all patients remain at risk for pneumonia, shock, cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest, venous thromboembolism (VTE), and GI bleeding. These serious complications can be prevented or the consequences reduced with coordinated care. Nursing observations and interventions are part of critical rescue management for patient safety and quality care, as defined by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, to reduce the risk for an adverse patient outcome after surgery.

Respiratory System. When the patient is admitted to the PACU, immediately assess for a patent airway and adequate gas exchange. Although some patients may be awake and able to speak, talking is not a good indicator of adequate gas exchange. An artificial airway, such as an endotracheal tube (ET), a nasal trumpet, or an oral airway, may be in place. If the patient is receiving oxygen, document the type of delivery device and the concentration or liter flow of the oxygen. Continuously monitor pulse oximetry for oxygen saturation (SpO₂) while the patient is in the PACU. The SpO₂ should be above 95% (or at the patient's presurgery baseline).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the oxygen saturation drops below 95% (or the patient's presurgery baseline), notify the surgeon or anesthesia provider. If it drops by 10 percentage points and you are certain it is an accurate measure, call the Rapid Response Team.

Assess the rate, pattern, and depth of breathing to determine adequacy of gas exchange. A respiratory rate of less than 10 breaths per minute may indicate anesthetic- or opioid analgesic-induced respiratory depression. Rapid, shallow respirations may signal shock, cardiac problems, increased metabolic rate, or pain.

Listen to the lungs over all lung fields to assess breath sounds. Also check symmetry of breath sounds and chest wall movement. If, for example, the patient has an ET tube, it could move down into the right mainstem bronchus and prevent left lung expansion. In this case, lung sounds on the

CHART 18-2 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient on Arrival at the Medical-Surgical Unit After Discharge from the Postanesthesia Care Unit**Airway**

- Is it patent?
- Is the neck in proper alignment?

Breathing

- What is the quality and pattern of the breathing?
- What is the respiratory rate and depth?
- Is the patient receiving oxygen? At what setting? What is the pulse oximetry result?

Mental Status

- Is the patient awake, able to be aroused, oriented, and aware?
- Does the patient respond to verbal stimuli?

Surgical Incision Site

- How is it dressed?
- Review the amount of drainage on the dressing immediately.
- Is there any bleeding or drainage under the patient?
- Are any drains present?
- Are the drains set properly (e.g., compressed if they should be compressed, not kinked, patient not lying on them)?
- How much drainage is present in the drainage container?

Temperature, Pulse, and Blood Pressure

- Are these values within the patient's baseline range?
- Are these values significantly different from when the patient was in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU)?

Intravenous Fluids

- What type of solution is infusing and with what additives?
- How much solution was remaining on arrival?
- How much solution infused in the transport time from PACU?
- At what rate is the infusion supposed to be set? Is it?

Other Tubes

- Is there a nasogastric or intestinal tube?
- What is the color, consistency, and amount of drainage?
- Is suction applied to the tube if ordered? Is the suction setting correct?
- Is there a Foley catheter?
- Is the Foley draining properly?
- What is the color, clarity, and volume of urine output?

exchange. Indicators of muscle weakness include the inability to maintain a head lift, weak hand grasps, and an abdominal breathing pattern.

If the patient returns to an inpatient unit, complete an initial assessment on arrival (see [Chart 18-2](#)) and then continue to assess for respiratory depression or hypoxemia. Listen to the lungs to check for effective expansion and for abnormal breath sounds. Check the lungs at least every 4 hours during the first 24 hours after surgery and then every 8 hours, or more often, as indicated. Older patients, smokers, and patients with a history of lung disease are at greater risk for respiratory complications after surgery and need more frequent assessment (Sullivan, 2011). Obese patients are also at high risk for respiratory complications.

Cardiovascular System. *Vital signs* and heart sounds are assessed on admission to the PACU and then at least every 15 minutes until the patient's condition is stable. Automated

blood pressure cuffs and cardiac monitoring assist in continuous assessment.

Review vital signs after surgery for trends, and compare them with those taken before surgery. Report blood pressure changes that are 25% higher or lower than values obtained before surgery (or a 15- to 20-point difference, systolic or diastolic) to the anesthesia provider or the surgeon. Decreased blood pressure and pulse pressure and abnormal heart sounds indicate possible cardiac depression, fluid volume deficit, shock, hemorrhage, or the effects of drugs (see [Chapters 13 and 39](#)). Bradycardia could indicate an anesthesia effect or hypothermia. Older patients are at risk for hypothermia because of age-related changes in the hypothalamus (the temperature regulation center), low levels of body fat, and coolness of the OR suite (Touhy & Jett, 2010). An increased pulse rate could indicate hemorrhage, shock, or pain.

Cardiac monitoring is maintained until the patient is discharged from the PACU. For patients at risk for dysrhythmias, monitoring may continue either on telemetry units or on general medical-surgical units. In assessing the vital signs of a patient who is not being monitored continuously, compare the rate, rhythm, and quality of the apical pulse with the rate, rhythm, and quality of a peripheral pulse, such as the radial pulse. A **pulse deficit** (a difference between the apical and peripheral pulses) could indicate a dysrhythmia.

Peripheral vascular assessment needs to be performed because anesthesia and positioning during surgery (e.g., the lithotomy position for genitourinary procedures) may impair the peripheral circulation and contribute to venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially deep vein thrombosis (DVT) (Owens, 2008). Compare distal pulses on both feet for the quality of pulsation, observe the color and temperature of extremities, evaluate sensation, and determine the speed of capillary refill. Palpable pedal pulses indicate adequate circulation and perfusion of the legs.

In adherence to The Joint Commission's Surgical Care Improvement Project's (SCIP) core measures for prevention of VTE, continue the prophylactic measures initiated before surgery. Although these measures vary in type (e.g., drug therapy with anticoagulants or antiplatelet drugs, sequential compression devices, antiembolic stockings or elastic wraps, early ambulation) depending on the patient's specific risk factors and the type and extent of surgery, any preventive strategies started before surgery are usually needed for at least the first 24 hours after surgery. Reassessment of the patient's risk for VTE and the effectiveness of the preventive strategies is performed daily. Assess the feet and legs for redness, pain, warmth, and swelling, which may occur with DVT. Foot and leg assessment may be performed once during a nursing shift, once daily, or once per visit, depending on the patient's risk for complications and the facility's or agency's policy. (See [Chapters 16 and 38](#) for more information on VTE.)

Neurologic System. *Cerebral functioning* and the level of consciousness or awareness must be assessed in *all* patients who have received general anesthesia ([Table 18-2](#)) or any type of sedation. Observe for lethargy, restlessness, or irritability, and test coherence and orientation. Determine awareness by observing responses to calling the patient's name, touching the patient, and giving simple commands such as "Open your eyes" and "Take a deep breath." Eye opening in response to a command indicates wakefulness or arousability but not necessarily awareness. Determine the degree of orientation to

TABLE 18-2 IMMEDIATE POSTOPERATIVE NEUROLOGIC ASSESSMENT: RETURN TO PREOPERATIVE LEVEL

Order of Return to Consciousness After General Anesthesia

1. Muscular irritability
2. Restlessness and delirium
3. Recognition of pain
4. Ability to reason and control behavior

Order of Return of Motor and Sensory Functioning After Local or Regional Anesthesia

1. Sense of touch
2. Sense of pain
3. Sense of warmth
4. Sense of cold
5. Ability to move

person, place, and time by asking the conscious patient to answer questions such as “What is your name?” (person), “Where are you?” (place), and “What day is it?” (time).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

For an older adult, a rapid return to his or her level of orientation before surgery may not be realistic. Preoperative drugs and anesthetics often delay the older patient’s return of orientation (see [Chapters 16 and 17](#)).

Compare the patient’s baseline neurologic status (obtained before surgery) with the findings after surgery. Patients who had altered cerebral functioning before surgery because of another condition usually continue to have that alteration after surgery. After the patient is alert (and all other criteria have been met), he or she is discharged from the PACU. On the medical-surgical nursing unit, assess the level of consciousness every 4 to 8 hours or as indicated by the patient’s condition and the facility’s policy.

Motor function and sensory function are assessed for all patients who received general or regional anesthesia. General anesthesia depresses all voluntary motor function. Regional anesthesia alters the motor and sensory function of only part of the body. (See [Chapter 17](#) for more information on anesthesia.) *Motor and sensory assessment are very important after epidural or spinal anesthesia.* Evaluate motor function by asking the patient to move each extremity. The patient who had epidural or spinal anesthesia remains in the PACU until sensory function (feeling) and voluntary motor movement of the legs have returned (see [Table 18-2](#)). Also assess the strength of each limb, and compare the results on both sides.

Test for the return of sympathetic nervous system tone by gradually elevating the patient’s head and monitoring for hypotension. Begin this evaluation after the patient’s sensation has returned to at least the spinal dermatome level of T10. (See [Chapter 43](#) for further neurologic assessment.) After the patient is transferred to the nursing unit, continue neurologic assessment as indicated.

Fluid, Electrolyte, and Acid-Base Balance. Fasting before and during surgery, the loss of fluid during the procedure, and the type and amount of blood or fluid given affect the patient’s fluid and electrolyte balance after surgery. Fluid volume deficit or fluid volume overload may occur after

surgery. Sodium, potassium, chloride, and calcium imbalances also may result, as may changes in other electrolyte levels. Fluid and electrolyte imbalances occur more often in older or debilitated patients and in those with health problems such as diabetes mellitus, Crohn’s disease, or heart failure.

Intake and output measurement is part of the operative record and is reported by the circulating nurse to the PACU nurse. Record any intake or output, including IV fluid intake, vomitus, urine, wound drainage, and nasogastric (NG) tube drainage. You must know the total intake and output from both the OR and the PACU to assess fluid balance accurately and to complete the 24-hour intake and output record.

Hydration status is assessed in the PACU and the medical-surgical unit. To determine hydration status, inspect the color and moisture of mucous membranes; the turgor, texture, and “tenting” of the skin (test over the sternum or forehead of an older patient); the amount of drainage on dressings; and the presence of axillary sweat. Measure and compare total output (e.g., NG tube drainage, urine output, wound drainage) with total intake to identify a possible fluid imbalance. Consider insensible fluid loss, such as sweat, when reviewing total output. Continue to assess intake and output as long as the patient is at risk for fluid imbalances. Some facilities require intake and output to be measured if the patient receives IV fluids or has a catheter, drains, or an NG tube. In addition, patients who have heart disease or kidney disease may need a longer period of intake and output measurement.

IV fluids are closely monitored to promote fluid and electrolyte balance. Isotonic solutions such as lactated Ringer’s (LR), 0.9% sodium chloride (normal saline), and 5% dextrose with lactated Ringer’s (D₅/LR) are used for IV fluid replacement in the PACU. After the patient returns to the medical-surgical unit, the type and rate of IV infusions are based on need. A typical IV solution for the patient being admitted to the nursing unit is 5% dextrose with 0.45% normal saline (D₅ 0.45% NS). (See [Chapters 13 and 15](#) for further discussion of IV fluids, electrolyte balance, and hydration assessment.)

Acid-base balance is affected by the patient’s respiratory status before and during surgery; metabolic changes during surgery; and losses of acids or bases in drainage. For example, NG tube drainage or vomitus causes a loss of hydrochloric acid and leads to metabolic alkalosis. Examine arterial blood gas (ABG) values and other laboratory values. (See [Chapter 14](#) for more detailed information on acid-base imbalances.)



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A postoperative client’s arterial blood gas (ABG) values are pH 7.36, HCO₃⁻ 21 mEq/L, PaCO₂ 35 mm Hg, PaO₂ 98 mm Hg. What is the nurse’s priority action?

- A. Compare these values with the client’s preoperative ABG values.
- B. Assess the airway and notify the physician.
- C. Document the values as the only action.
- D. Increase the oxygen flow rate.

Kidney/Urinary System. Control of urination may return immediately after surgery or may not return for hours after general or regional anesthesia. The effects of preoperative drugs (especially atropine), anesthetic agents, or manipulation during surgery can cause urine retention. Assess for

urine retention by inspection, palpation, and percussion of the lower abdomen for bladder distention or by the use of a bladder scanner (see [Chapter 68](#)). Assessment may be difficult to perform after lower abdominal surgery. Urine retention is common early after surgery and requires intervention, such as intermittent (straight) catheterization, to empty the bladder.

When the patient has an indwelling urinary (Foley) catheter, assess the urine for color, clarity, and amount. If the patient is voiding, assess the frequency, amount per void, and any symptoms. Urine output should be close to the total intake for a 24-hour period. Consider other sources of output, such as sweat, vomitus, or diarrhea stools. Report a urine output of less than 30 mL/hr (240 mL per 8-hour nursing shift) to the physician. Decreased urine output may indicate hypovolemia or renal complications. (See [Chapter 68](#) for kidney/urinary assessment.)

Gastrointestinal System. *Postoperative nausea and vomiting (PONV)* are among the most common reactions after surgery. About 30% of patients who receive general anesthesia have some form of GI upset within the first 24 hours after surgery; however, some patients are more at risk than others (Bopp et al., 2010; [Fetzer, 2008](#)). Patients with a history of motion sickness are more likely to develop nausea and vomiting after surgery. Obese patients may be at risk because many anesthetics are retained by fat cells and remain in the body longer. Abdominal surgery and the use of opioid analgesics reduce intestinal peristalsis after surgery. These problems increase the risk for prolonged nausea and vomiting after surgery. Preventive drug therapy is effective in reducing the incidence. Drugs often used are ondansetron (Zofran), a serotonin antagonist, and meclizine (Antivert, Dramamine), a sedating H1 histamine antagonist (Bopp et al., 2010).

PONV can stress and irritate abdominal and GI wounds, increase intracranial pressure in patients who had head and neck surgery, elevate intraocular pressure in patients who had eye surgery, and increase the risk for aspiration. Assess the patient continuously for PONV. Often patients have nausea as the head of the bed is raised early after surgery. This symptom may occur with or without dizziness. You can help reduce this distressing symptom by having the patient in a side-lying position before raising the head slowly.

Intestinal peristalsis may be delayed because of prolonged anesthesia time, the amount of bowel handling during surgery, and opioid analgesic use. In the PACU and later on the medical-surgical unit, assess for the return of peristalsis. *Patients who are recovering from abdominal surgery often have decreased or no peristalsis for at least 24 hours.* This problem may persist for several days for those who have GI surgery.

Listen for bowel sounds in all four abdominal quadrants and at the umbilicus. If NG suction is being used, turn off the suction before listening to prevent mistaking the sound of the suction for bowel sounds. *The presence of active bowel sounds usually indicates return of peristalsis; however, the absence of bowel sounds does not confirm a lack of peristalsis. The best indicator of intestinal activity is the passage of flatus or stool.* Abdominal cramping along with distention denotes trapped, nonmoving gas—not peristalsis.

Decreased peristalsis occurs in patients who have a paralytic ileus. The abdominal wall is distended, and there is no movement of the intestinal wall. Assess for the manifestations of paralytic ileus (few or absent bowel sounds, a distended

TABLE 18-3 CALCULATING NASOGASTRIC TUBE DRAINAGE

Formula

Drainage in collection device – Amount of irrigant = True (actual) amount of drainage

Example

A patient's drainage container was marked at 150 mL at 7 AM. At 3 PM, there was 525 mL in the container. During the nursing shift, the nurse instilled 30 mL of saline as an irrigant into the tube four times, as prescribed by the physician.

525 mL – 150 mL = 375 mL of drainage

30 mL × 4 = 120 mL of irrigant

375 mL – 120 mL = 255 mL of actual drainage

abdomen, abdominal discomfort, vomiting, no passage of flatus or stool).

A nasogastric (NG) tube may be inserted during surgery to decompress and drain the stomach, to promote GI rest, and to allow the lower GI tract to heal. It may also be used to monitor any gastric bleeding and to prevent intestinal obstruction. One of the most common tubes used is the Salem sump. The Salem sump is a double-lumen tube with an air vent to keep the tube from grabbing the gastric mucosa. This feature allows easy drainage of the stomach and prevents mucosal damage. Less commonly used is the Levin tube, which is a single-lumen tube with no air vent. To promote drainage, suction (usually low) is applied to the NG tube. Suction is either continuous (recommended for the Salem sump) or intermittent.

Record the color, consistency, and amount of the NG drainage every 8 hours ([Table 18-3](#)). In some instances, an occult blood test (Gastrocull) may be performed. Normal NG drainage fluid is greenish yellow. Red drainage fluid indicates active bleeding, and brown liquid or drainage with a “coffee-ground” appearance indicates old bleeding. Assess that the NG tube is securely taped to the nose, and note any skin irritation.

Assess the patient for complications related to NG tube use, such as fluid and electrolyte imbalances, aspiration, and nares discomfort. To prevent aspiration, check the tube placement every 4 to 8 hours and before instilling any liquid into the tube. (See [Chapter 58](#) for information on tube placement and care.) Fluid and electrolyte imbalances can result from NG drainage and tube irrigation with water instead of saline. Imbalances include fluid volume deficit, hypokalemia and hyponatremia (see [Chapter 13](#)), hypochloremia, and metabolic alkalosis (see [Chapter 14](#)).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After gastric surgery, do not move or irrigate the NG tube unless prescribed by the surgeon.

Constipation may occur after surgery as a result of anesthesia, analgesia (especially opioid analgesics), decreased activity, and decreased oral intake. Assess the abdomen by inspection, auscultation, palpation, and percussion and record the elimination pattern to determine whether interventions are needed. For abdominal assessment, auscultate

before palpation or percussion because these two maneuvers can affect peristalsis. Increased dietary fiber intake, the use of mild laxatives or bulk-forming agents, or the use of enemas may be needed.

Skin Assessment. The clean surgical wound heals at skin level in about 2 weeks in the absence of trauma, connective tissue disease, malnutrition, or the use of some drugs, such as steroids. Smokers and patients who are older, obese, or diabetic or whose immunity is reduced have delayed wound healing. Complete healing of all tissue layers within the surgical wound may take 6 months to 2 years. The physical health and age of the patient, size and location of the wound, and stress on the wound all affect healing time. Head and facial wounds heal more quickly than abdominal and leg wounds because of the better blood flow to the head and neck.

Normal Wound Healing. During the first few days of normal wound healing, the incised tissue regains blood supply and begins to bind together. Fibrin and a thin layer of epithelial cells seal the incision. After 1 to 4 days, epithelial cells continue growing in the fibrin and strands of collagen begin to fill in the wound gaps. This process continues for 2 to 3 weeks. *At that time, the wound appears to be healed; however, healing is not complete for up to 2 years, until the scar is strengthened* (McEwen, 2007). (See Chapter 26 for discussion of wound healing and wound infection.)

When the patient is an inpatient, the surgeon usually removes the original dressing on the first or second day after surgery. Assess the incision on a regular basis, at least every 8 hours, for redness, increased warmth, swelling, tenderness or pain, and the type and amount of drainage. Some drainage, changing from **sanguineous** (bloody) to **serosanguineous** to **serous** (serum-like, or yellow), is normal during the first few days. Serosanguineous drainage continuing beyond the fifth day after surgery or increasing in amount instead of decreasing alerts you to the possibility of dehiscence (discussed below), and the surgeon should be notified. Crusting on the incision line is normal, as is a pink color to the line itself, which is caused by inflammation from the surgical procedure. Slight swelling under the sutures or staples is also normal. Redness or swelling of or around the incision line, excessive tenderness or pain on palpation, and purulent or odorous drainage indicate wound infection and must be reported to the surgeon.

Impaired Wound Healing. Impaired wound healing may be caused by infection, distention from edema or paralytic ileus, stress at the surgical site, and health problems that cause delayed wound healing (e.g., diabetes). Wound **dehiscence** is a partial or complete separation of the outer wound layers, sometimes described as a “splitting open of the wound.” **Evisceration** is the total separation of all wound layers and protrusion of internal organs through the open wound (Fig. 18-2). Both of these problems occur most often between the fifth and tenth days after surgery (Beattie, 2007). Wound separation occurs more often in obese patients and those with diabetes, immune deficiency, or malnutrition or who are using steroids (Baugh et al., 2007). Dehiscence or evisceration may follow forceful coughing, vomiting, or straining and when not splinting the surgical site during movement. The patient may state, “Something gave way” or “I feel as if I just split open.”

Dressings and Drains. Assess all dressings, including casts and elastic (Ace) bandages, for bleeding or other drainage

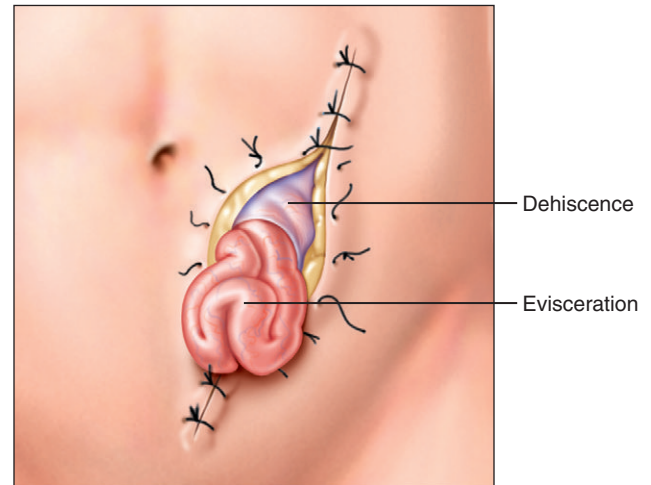


FIG. 18-2 Complications of wound healing.

on admission to the PACU and then hourly thereafter. When the patient is on the nursing unit, assess the dressing each time vital signs are taken (at least every 8 hours). During dressing inspection, check for drainage and record its amount, color, consistency, and odor. If drainage is present on a dressing or cast, monitor its progression by outlining it with a pencil and indicating the date and time. Check the area underneath the patient also, because drainage or blood may leak from the side of the dressing and not appear on the dressing itself.

Ensure that the dressing does not restrict circulation or sensation. This problem is most likely to occur when dressings are tight or completely encircle an arm or a leg. Chest dressings that are too tight or that encircle the chest can restrict breathing.

The surgeon inserts a drain into or close to the wound if more than a minimal amount of drainage is expected. A Penrose drain (a single-lumen, soft, open, latex tube) is a gravity-type drain under the dressing. Drainage on the dressing is expected with open tube drains but is not expected with closed drainage systems. Assess closed-suction drains, such as Hemovac, Vacu-Drain, and Jackson-Pratt drains, for maintenance of suction. Specialty drains, such as a T-tube, may be placed for specific drainage purposes. For example, a T-tube drains bile after a cholecystectomy. Chronic wounds or wounds that heal by delayed primary intention are drained with a negative pressure wound device. Fig. 18-3 shows commonly used drains.

Assess all drains for patency when the patient is admitted to the PACU and every time vital signs are taken. Monitor the amount, color, and type of drainage while the patient is in the PACU and at least every 8 hours after he or she is transferred to the medical-surgical nursing unit. Large amounts of sanguineous drainage may indicate internal bleeding.

Discomfort/Pain Assessment. The patient almost always has pain or discomfort after surgery. Pain is a subjective experience and may be more intense than the health care professional can appreciate. Pain after surgery is related to the surgical wound, tissue manipulation, drains, positioning during surgery, presence of an endotracheal (ET) tube, and the patient's experience with pain. In assessing his or her discomfort and need for medication, consider the type,

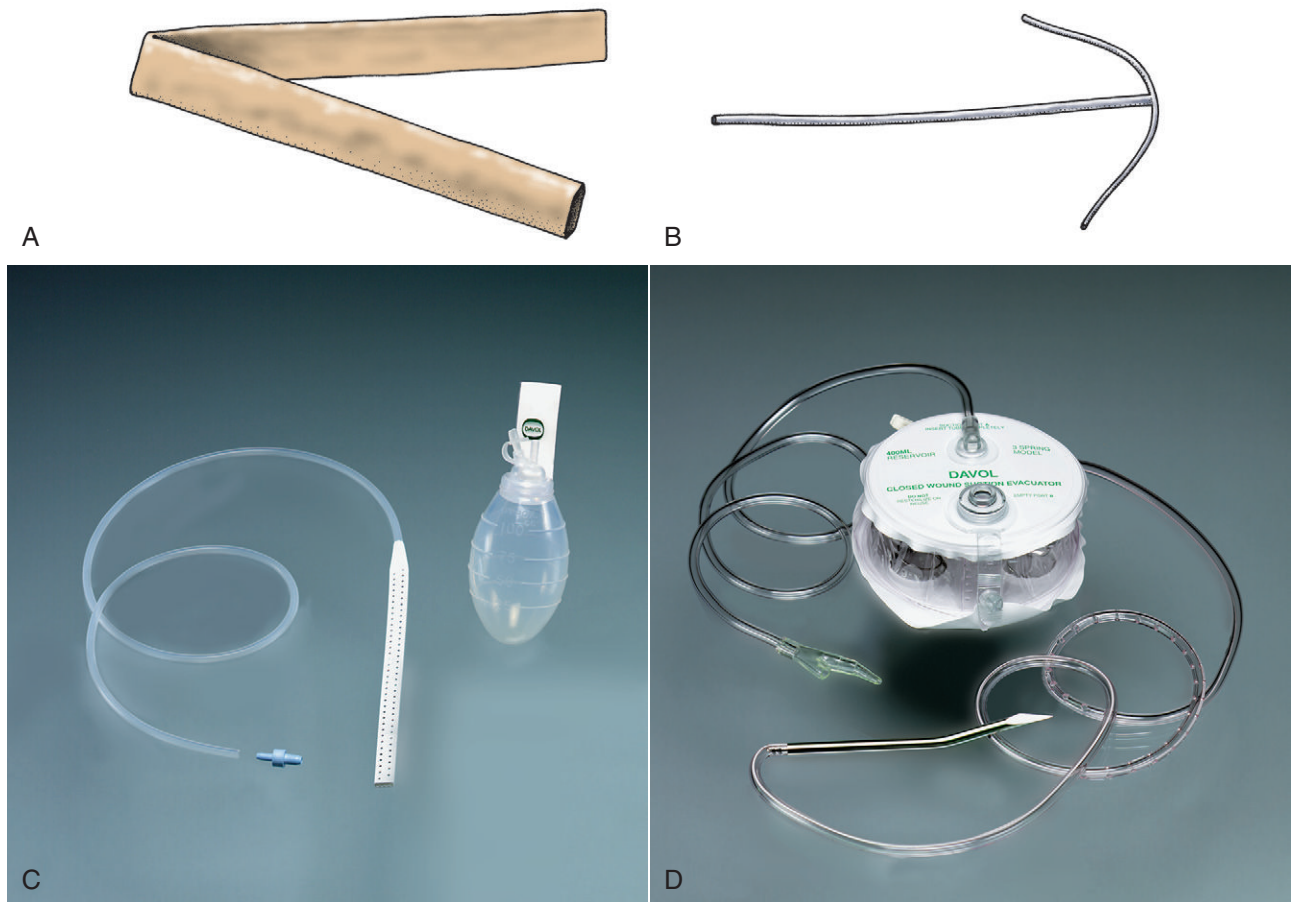


FIG. 18-3 Types of surgical drains. Gravity drains, such as the Penrose (**A**) and the T-tube (**B**) drain directly through a tube from the surgical area. In closed wound drainage systems, such as the Jackson-Pratt (**C**) and Hemovac (**D**), drainage collects in a collecting vessel by means of compression and re-expansion of the system.

extent, and length of the surgical procedure. Assess for physical and emotional signs of acute pain, such as increased pulse and blood pressure, increased respiratory rate, profuse sweating, restlessness, confusion (in the older adult), wincing, moaning, and crying. When possible, ask the patient to rate the pain before and after drugs are given (e.g., on a scale of 0 to 10, with 0 being no pain and 10 being extreme pain). Plan the patient's activities around the timing of analgesia to improve mobility. Observe for a return of normal (baseline) physical and emotional behaviors. (See [Chapter 5](#) for further discussion of pain assessment.)

Pain assessment is started by the PACU nurse. After the patient is transferred from the PACU, the medical-surgical nurse continues to assess the patient's comfort level. Pain usually reaches its peak on the second day after surgery, when the patient is more awake and more active and the anesthetic agents and drugs given during surgery have been excreted.

Psychosocial Assessment

Consider the psychological, social, and cultural issues of the patient after surgery as you provide physical care. This assessment may be delayed or difficult to perform in the PACU when the patient is drowsy or confused. Consider the patient's age and medical history, the surgical procedure, and the

impact of surgery on recovery, body image, roles, and lifestyle.

Physical signs of anxiety include restlessness; increased pulse, blood pressure, and respiratory rate; and crying. The patient may be anxious and ask questions about the results or findings of the surgical procedure. Reassure the patient that the surgeon will speak with him or her after he or she is fully awake. If the surgeon has already spoken with the patient, reinforce what was said.

After the patient returns to the medical-surgical unit, continue the psychosocial assessment and also assess significant others for psychological discomfort.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client who had neck surgery to remove the entire thyroid gland is transferred to the medical-surgical unit after 4 hours in the PACU. The client reports difficulty swallowing. What is the nurse's priority action?

- Assess the client's respiratory status.
- Inspect the client's throat with a penlight.
- Adjust the position of the drain in the incision.
- Reassure the client that this is a normal and common problem after anesthesia.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests are performed after surgery to monitor for complications. Tests are based on the surgical procedure, the patient's medical history, and clinical manifestations after surgery. Common tests include analysis of electrolytes and a complete blood count (see [Chart 16-3](#) in [Chapter 16](#)). A change in laboratory test results (e.g., electrolyte, hematocrit, hemoglobin levels) often occurs during the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery because of blood and fluid loss and the body's reaction to the surgical process. Fluid loss with minimal blood loss may cause hemoconcentration of laboratory values. Such test results are reported as increased but actually represent a concentrated normal value.

An indication of infection is an increase in the band cells (immature neutrophils) in the white blood cell differential count. This increase is termed a “left-shift” (sometimes called *bandemia*). The source of infection may be the respiratory system, urinary tract, surgical wound, or IV site. Obtain specimens for culture and sensitivity testing, and monitor the culture reports at 24, 48, and 72 hours. Notify the surgeon of positive culture results. (See [Chapters 19 and 25](#) for information on infection and assessment of immune function.)

Arterial blood gas (ABG) tests may be needed for patients who have respiratory or cardiac disease, those undergoing mechanical ventilation after surgery, and those who had chest surgery. Review ABG results, and notify the surgeon of any acid-base imbalance or hypoxemia. (For more discussion on arterial blood gases and acidosis, see [Chapter 14](#).)

Urine and kidney laboratory tests also may be obtained (e.g., urinalysis, urine electrolyte levels, serum creatinine levels). Other laboratory tests depend on the diagnosis, type of surgical procedure, and other health problems. Examples are a serum amylase level for a patient who had pancreatic surgery and a blood glucose level for a patient with diabetes.

ANALYSIS

Priority patient problems for the patient after surgery are:

1. Potential for hypoxemia related to the effects of anesthesia, pain, opioid analgesics, and immobility
2. Potential for wound infection and delayed healing related to wound location, decreased mobility, drains and drainage, and tubes
3. Pain related to the surgical incision, positioning during surgery, and endotracheal (ET) tube irritation

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Preventing Hypoxemia

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to attain or maintain optimal lung expansion and breathing patterns after surgery as indicated by:

- Partial pressure of arterial oxygen (PaO_2) within normal range
- Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (PaCO_2) within normal range
- Oxygen saturation values within normal range

Interventions

Airway Maintenance. After assessing the airway, you may need to insert an oral airway if the patient does not already have one. The oral airway pulls the tongue forward and holds it down to prevent obstruction. If the patient had oral surgery or has clenched teeth, a large tongue, or upper airway

CHART 18-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient Experiencing a Benzodiazepine Overdose

- Secure the airway and IV access before starting benzodiazepine antagonist therapy.
- Prepare to administer flumazenil (Romazicon)* in a dose of 0.2 mg to 1 mg IV.
- Repeat drug every 2 to 3 minutes up to 3 mg, as needed, depending on the patient's response.
- Give oxygen if hypoxia is present or if respirations are below 10 breaths per minute.
- Have suction equipment available because flumazenil can trigger vomiting and a drowsy patient is at risk for aspiration.
- Continuously monitor vital signs and level of consciousness for reversal of overdose.
- Do not leave the patient until he or she is fully responsive.
- Continue to monitor the patient's vital signs and level of consciousness every 10 to 15 minutes for the first 2 hours because flumazenil is eliminated from the body more quickly than is the benzodiazepine.
- Determine the need for additional flumazenil therapy 1 to 2 hours after the patient initially becomes fully responsive.
- Observe the patient for tremors or convulsions because flumazenil can lower the seizure threshold in patients who have seizure disorders.
- Assess the IV site every shift because flumazenil can cause thrombophlebitis at the injection site.
- Observe the patient for side effects of flumazenil, including skin rash, hot flushes, dizziness, headache, sweating, dry mouth, and blurred vision. The incidence of these side effects increases with higher total doses of flumazenil.

*There are other benzodiazepine antagonists; however, flumazenil is used most often to manage adult benzodiazepine overdose in the postoperative period.

obstruction, insert a nasal airway (nasal trumpet) to keep the airway open. Keep the manual resuscitation bag and emergency equipment for intubation or tracheostomy nearby. For patients whose only airway is a tracheostomy or laryngectomy stoma, alert other staff members by posting signs in the room and notes on the chart.

Monitoring. Monitor oxygen saturation (SpO_2) with pulse oximetry at least every hour or more often, according to the patient's condition. Patients who normally have a low PaO_2 , such as those with lung disease or older adults, are at higher risk for hypoxemia. An older adult is often prescribed low-dose oxygen for the first 12 to 24 hours after surgery to reduce confusion from anesthesia and sedation (Sullivan, 2011). A patient who received moderate sedation with a benzodiazepine such as midazolam (Versed) or lorazepam (Ativan, Nu-Loraz ) may be overly sedated or have respiratory depression sufficient to need reversal with flumazenil (Romazicon) ([Chart 18-3](#)). Hypothermia after surgery causes shivering that increases oxygen demand and can induce hypoxemia. Many rewarming methods can be used, although prevention is more important. The highest incidence of hypoxemia after surgery occurs on the second postoperative day.

Positioning. In the PACU, immediately position the patient in a semi-Fowler's position unless contraindicated. If the patient cannot have the head of the bed raised, either place him or her in a side-lying position or turn the head to the side to prevent aspiration.

Oxygen Therapy. Hypoxemia is prevented and managed with oxygen therapy. Apply oxygen by face tent, nasal cannula,

or mask to eliminate inhaled anesthetic agents, increase oxygen levels, raise the level of consciousness, and reduce confusion. After the patient is fully reactive and stable, raise the head of the bed to promote respiratory function.

Depending on the surgeon's preference and established guidelines, oxygen therapy may continue through the second day after surgery. When hypoxemia occurs despite preventive care, interventions such as respiratory treatments and mechanical ventilation may be used to manage the cause of the hypoxemia.

Breathing Exercises. After the patient regains the gag and cough reflexes and meets the agency's criteria for extubation (if intubated), remove the airway or ET tube. Usual extubation criteria include the ability to raise and hold the head up and evidence of thoracic breathing. Help the patient cough (with the incision splinted) and deep breathe to expand the lungs, promote gas exchange, and eliminate anesthetic agents. [Chart 16-5](#) in [Chapter 16](#) reviews breathing exercises and splinting of the surgical area. As soon as the patient is awake enough to follow commands, urge him or her to cough, use the incentive spirometer, and take deep breaths. Remind him or her to continue these activities every 1 to 2 hours throughout the postoperative period. The patient who is unable to remove mucus or sputum requires oral or nasal suctioning. Perform mouth care after removing secretions.

Movement. Assist the patient out of bed and to ambulate as soon as possible to help remove secretions and promote lung expansion. Even when the patient has had extensive surgery, the expectation may be to get out of bed the day of or the first day after surgery. If this is not possible, assist him or her to turn at least every 2 hours (side to side) and ensure that breathing exercises and leg exercises are performed (see [Charts 16-5 and 16-6](#) in [Chapter 16](#)). Early ambulation reduces the risk for pulmonary complications, especially after abdominal, pelvic, or spinal surgery. In addition, it improves circulation to the extremities and reduces the risk for venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially deep vein thrombosis (DVT). The patient may report pain and resist getting up, but you should stress the importance of activity to prevent complications. When indicated, offer pain medication 30 to 45 minutes before he or she gets out of bed.

Preventing Wound Infection and Delayed Healing

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to have incision healing without wound complications as indicated by:

- Wound edges remaining together
- No purulent drainage, induration, or redness in, from, or around the incision

Interventions. Nursing assessment of the surgical area is critical (see the discussion of [skin assessment](#) on p. 291). Although most wound complications do not require additional surgical intervention, emergency surgical procedures may be needed.

Nonsurgical Management. Wound care includes reinforcing the dressing, changing the dressing, assessing the wound for healing and infection, and caring for drains, including emptying drainage containers/reservoirs, measuring drainage, and documenting drainage features. Emphasize the importance of early deep-breathing exercises to prevent forceful coughing. Encourage hip flexion when the patient is in the supine position to reduce tension on a chest or

CHART 18-4 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Best Practice in Postoperative Skin Care

Improve perfusion to the wound to promote wound healing:

- Keep the patient adequately hydrated to maintain cardiac output.
- Keep the airway patent, and provide adequate oxygenation.
- Keep the patient's oxygen saturation on pulse oximetry at greater than 93%.

Conserve the patient's energy:

- Allow the patient to sleep in a darkened, quiet room.
- Administer drugs to combat pain and sleeplessness, as prescribed.
- Provide rest periods throughout the day.
- Control the patient's room temperature.
- Assist in ADLs.

Place the patient on a safety program to prevent falls, if indicated.

Use strict aseptic technique in caring for breaks in the integument (e.g., IV or other catheters, indwelling urethral catheter, wound).

Maintain the patient's psychosocial health:

- Prevent unnecessary stressors.
- Allow the patient liberal visitation of supportive others.
- Enable the patient to use individual successful coping mechanisms.
- Keep the patient well groomed and bathed.

Protect fragile skin:

- Minimize the use of tape on the skin.
- Use hypoallergenic tape or Montgomery straps.
- Change dressings as soon as they become wet.
- Lift the patient during transfer or repositioning.

Data from Jones, P.L., & Millman, A. (1990). Wound healing and the aged patient. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 25(1), 263-277.

abdominal wound. Remind the patient to always splint the incision when coughing. Promote wound healing and protection of the skin in general, especially for the older patient ([Sullivan, 2011](#)). [Chart 18-4](#) lists best practices for skin care of the older patient after surgery.

Dressings. The surgeon usually performs the first dressing change to assess the wound, remove any packing, and advance (pull partially out) or remove drains. Before the first dressing change, reinforce the dressing (add more dressing material to the existing dressing) if it becomes wet from drainage. Document the added material, as well as the color, type, amount, and odor of drainage fluid and time of observation. Assess the surgical site at least every shift, and report any unexpected findings to the surgeon.

After removal of the dressing, the surgeon may leave the suture or staple line open to the air, which allows easy assessment of the wound and early detection of poor wound edge adherence, drainage, swelling, or redness. Some surgeons believe that air-drying promotes healing. A draining wound, however, is always covered with a dressing.

Dressing changes are prescribed by the surgeon; however, the facility or unit may have standards or policies that dictate specific protocols for dressing changes and incision care. An unchanged wet or damp dressing is a source of infection. Change dressings using aseptic technique until the sutures or staples are removed.

Dressings vary with the surgical procedure and the surgeon's preference. Common dressings for large incisions consist of gauze or nonadherent pads covered with a larger absorbent pad held in place by tape, a tubular stretchy net, or Montgomery straps ([Figs. 18-4 and 18-5](#)). Some incisions

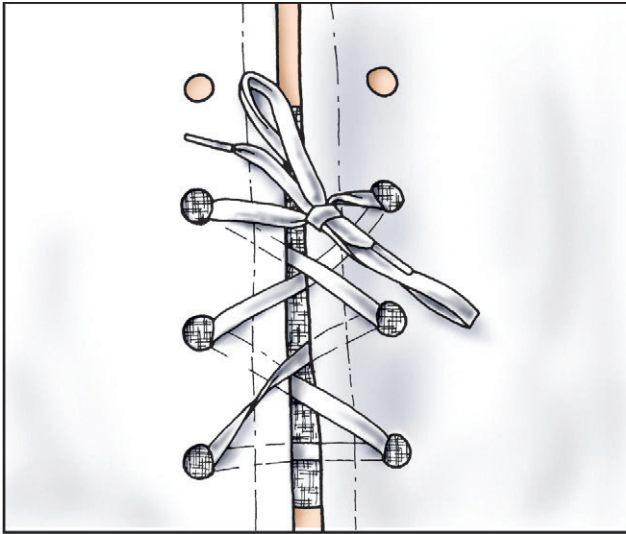


FIG. 18-4 Montgomery straps may be used when frequent dressing changes are anticipated. They help prevent skin irritation from frequent tape removal.



FIG. 18-5 Patient with a dressing held in place with Montgomery straps.

may be covered with a transparent plastic surgical dressing (e.g., OpSite) or a spray in the operating room. This type of dressing stays intact for 3 to 6 days and allows direct observation of the wound. It also prevents contamination and eliminates the need for dressing changes.

Wound or suture line care consists of changing gauze dressings at least once during a nursing shift or daily and may include cleaning the area with sterile saline or some other solution. Some suture lines are left open to air without any dressing to cover the incision. The hospital's policy, the unit's standards, and the surgeon's preference determine what solution, if any, is used to clean the wound and how often dressings are changed (McEwen, 2007). For large dressing changes or drain removal, offer the patient a prescribed analgesic before the procedure. Always assess the skin for redness, rash, or blisters in areas where tape has been used. Tape can cause a skin reaction after surgery even among patients who are not known to be tape sensitive.

Skin sutures or staples are usually removed 5 to 10 days after surgery, although this varies up to 30 days depending on the type of surgery and the patient's health. The incision may then be secured with SteriStrips. The surgeon or the nurse removes the sutures or staples, depending on the agency's policy. Clean the incision before removing sutures or staples. Before removing sutures, examine the condition and healing stage of the wound. First remove every other suture or staple and re-assess the wound for integrity. If wound healing is progressing normally, the rest of the sutures or staples may then be removed or may be removed the next day. If the wound does not appear to be healing well, notify the surgeon before removing any sutures.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

When changing the client's abdominal dressing on the second postoperative day, the nurse observes crusting on about half of the suture line and oozing of a small amount of serosanguineous drainage. What is the nurse's best action?

- Loosen the sutures or staples in the area where crusts have formed.
- Clean the suture line with sterile saline and apply new dressings.
- Gently remove the crusts and culture the material beneath.
- Apply pressure over the incision and notify the surgeon.

Drains. Drains (see Fig. 18-3) may be placed in the wound or through a separate small incision (known as a “stab” wound) close to the incision during surgery. Drains provide an exit route for air, blood, and bile. Drains also help prevent deep infections and abscess formation during healing.

The Penrose drain is placed into the external aspect of the incision and drains directly onto the dressing and skin around the incision. Change a damp or soiled dressing, and carefully clean under and around the Penrose drain. Then place absorbent pads under and around the exposed drain to prevent skin irritation and wound contamination. Whether sutured in place or not, the drain can be dislodged or pulled out accidentally during a dressing change. It is also possible for the drain to slip back through the wound into the patient. Usually this complication is prevented when the drain is first placed in the OR. The surgeon pins a sterile safety pin through the drain at an angle perpendicular to the drain and the wound. The safety pin acts as a barrier to prevent the drain from slipping. As the wound heals, the surgeon or nurse shortens (advances) the drain by pulling it out a short distance and trimming off the excess external portion so that only 2 to 3 inches of drain protrudes through the incision. The stabilizing safety pin must be repositioned each time the drain is advanced. The drain remains in place until drainage stops.

Jackson-Pratt and Hemovac drains are two self-contained drainage systems that drain wounds directly through a tube via gravity and vacuum. These drains are sutured in place with a suture that seals the area when the drain is removed. Use sterile technique to empty the reservoir. Record the amount and color of drainage during every nursing shift or more often if prescribed. After emptying and compressing the reservoir to restore suction, secure the drain to the patient's gown (never to the sheet or mattress) to prevent pulling and stress on the surgical wound.

Drug Therapy. Wound infection is a major complication after surgery. It usually results from contamination during surgery, preoperative infection, debilitation, or immunosuppression. In accordance with the Surgical Care Improvement Project's (SCIP) core measures for prevention of surgical site infection, a patient at risk for wound infection may have received antibiotic therapy with drugs that are effective against organisms common to the specific surgical site both before and during surgery. The need for these antibiotics is re-evaluated at 24 hours after surgery. Unless manifestations of infection are present, the antibiotic is discontinued at that time (SCIP Infection-3; see Table 16-1 in Chapter 16). If manifestations of wound infection are present, these must be documented to justify continuation of antibiotic therapy.

As suggested by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, wounds that become infected and open are treated with dressing changes and systemic antibiotic therapy. Depending on the surgeon's prescription, irrigate the wound (e.g., with sterile saline, hydrogen peroxide, povidone-iodine, or acetic acid), loosely pack it with solution-soaked gauze (e.g., neomycin, gentamicin, iodoform, povidone-iodine, saline, or acetic acid), and cover the wound with dry, sterile dressings. This procedure (wet-to-damp dressings) may be done one to three times daily. The packing promotes healing from within the wound and **débridement** (removal of the infected or dead tissue) as the wound heals.

Surgical Management. Poorly healing wounds, infected wounds, or complicated wounds may require surgical intervention.

Management of Dehiscence. If dehiscence (wound opening) occurs, apply a sterile nonadherent (e.g., Telfa) or saline dressing to the wound and notify the surgeon (Beattie, 2007). Instruct the patient to bend the knees and to avoid coughing. A wound that becomes infected dehisces by itself, or it may be opened by the surgeon through an incision and drainage (I&D) procedure. In either case, the wound is left open rather than re-sutured and is treated as described previously.

Management of Evisceration. An **evisceration** (a wound opening with protrusion of internal organs) is a surgical emergency (Beattie, 2007). Chart 18-5 lists best practices for emergency care of the patient with surgical wound evisceration. Provide emotional support by explaining what happened and reassuring the patient that the emergency will be handled competently.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When a surgical wound evisceration occurs, one nurse tends to the patient while another nurse immediately notifies the surgeon.

The surgeon may prescribe a nasogastric (NG) tube to decompress the stomach and relieve internal pressure or to remove the stomach's contents if the patient has been eating and general anesthesia is needed. Prepare the patient for surgery (see Chapter 16) to close the wound. Regional or local anesthesia may be used, depending on the location and type of wound. Nausea and vomiting, which stress the already fragile incision, are reduced when regional or local anesthesia is used. To increase the incision's integrity, stay or retention sutures of wire or nylon are used along with standard sutures or staples (see Fig. 17-11 in Chapter 17).

CHART 18-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Surgical Wound Evisceration

1. Call for help! Instruct the person who responds to notify the surgeon or Rapid Response Team immediately and to bring any needed supplies into the patient's room.
2. Stay with the patient.
3. Cover the wound with a nonadherent dressing premoistened with warmed sterile normal saline. **NOTE:** The supplies needed for this emergency should be in the patient's room, especially if the patient is at high risk.
4. If premoistened dressings are not available, moisten sterile gauze or sterile towels in a sterile irrigation tray with sterile saline and then cover the wound.
5. If saline is not immediately available, cover the wound with gauze and then moisten with sterile saline using a sterile irrigation tray as soon as someone brings saline.
6. Do not attempt to reinsert the protruding organ or viscera.
7. While covering the wound, note the patient's response and assess for manifestations of shock.
8. Place the patient in a supine position with the hips and knees bent.
9. Raise the head of the bed 15 to 20 degrees.
10. Take vital signs, and document them. **NOTE:** If the person who answered the call for help is back in the room before this, instruct him or her to take vital signs while you focus on covering the wound and repositioning the patient.
11. Provide support and reassurance to the patient.
12. Continue assessing the patient, including vital signs assessment, every 5 to 10 minutes until the surgeon arrives.
13. Keep dressings continuously moist by adding warmed sterile saline to the dressing as often as necessary. Do not let the dressing become dry.
14. When the surgeon arrives, report your finding and your interventions. Then follow the surgeon's directions.
15. Document the incident, the activity the patient was engaged in at the time of the incident, your actions, and your assessments.

Prevention. Patients also are at risk for developing pressure ulcers from positioning during surgery, prolonged contact with damp surgical linens, and contact with unpadding surfaces. Pressure ulcers acquired during the surgical period increase lengths of stay and the risk for complications. Addressing early-stage pressure ulcers can prevent progression and limit complications.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

A 55-year-old female patient with a history of smoking and obesity is returned to the surgical unit after a 3-hour abdominal procedure. She has a nasogastric tube with orders for intermittent suction, a Foley catheter draining clear amber urine, an IV of 0.9% saline at 100 mL/hr, and an abdominal dressing that is dry and intact. Her vital signs are as follows: HR = 65 beats/min; BP = 138/80 mm Hg; R = 20; and T = 98.9° F. After the patient has been moved to the bed, she reports dull pain in her right calf. She is wearing thigh-high antiembolism stockings.

1. What additional assessment data should you obtain?
2. Should the surgeon be notified? Why or why not?
3. If the physician diagnoses the patient with possible deep vein thrombosis, which tests and treatments should you anticipate for this patient?

Examine the patient's skin for areas of redness or open areas. Document and report any abnormalities. Use padding and positioning to relieve pressure. Treat any open areas according to facility guidelines and the surgeon's prescription. Ensure that information about the patient's skin condition in the PACU is communicated to the medical-surgical nurse.

Managing Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The postoperative patient is expected to attain or maintain optimal comfort levels. Indicators include:

- Reporting that pain is controlled
- Absence of physiologic indicators of acute pain (increased heart rate and blood pressure)
- Absence of facial grimacing, teeth clenching
- Willingness to move and participate in self-care

Interventions. Pain management after surgery includes drug therapy and other methods of management, such as positioning, massage, relaxation techniques, and diversion. Often the patient has better pain relief from a combination of approaches. Assess the patient's comfort level and the effectiveness of the therapies. See [Chapter 5](#) for discussion of pain assessment and management. The patient who has optimal pain control is better able to cooperate with the therapies and exercises to prevent complications and promote rehabilitation.

Drug Therapy. *The use of opioids or other analgesics for pain management may mask or increase the severity of symptoms of an anesthesia reaction. Therefore give these drugs with caution, especially in the PACU when the patient's condition is not stable.* When pain drugs are used in the PACU, they are usually given IV in small doses. After receiving any drug for pain, the patient remains in the PACU for a defined period (often 45 to 60 minutes). Assess for hypotension, respiratory depression, and other side effects. Within 5 to 10 minutes after an IV injection, assess the effectiveness of the drug (i.e., on a rating scale) in relieving pain.

Opioid analgesics are given during the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery to control acute pain. Around-the-clock scheduling is more effective than “on demand” scheduling because more constant blood levels are achieved. Drugs commonly used include morphine (Statex ) , hydromorphone (Dilaudid), ketorolac (Toradol), codeine, butorphanol (Stadol), and oxycodone with aspirin (Percodan) or oxycodone with acetaminophen (Tylox, Percocet).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The usual dosage for hydromorphone is much smaller (about one-fifth to one-tenth) that of morphine.

Assess the type, location, and intensity of the pain before and after giving medication (see also [Discomfort/Pain Assessment](#), pp. 291-292). Monitor the patient's vital signs for hypotension and hypoventilation after giving opioid drugs. [Chart 18-6](#) lists information about analgesics used after surgery.

Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) by IV infusion or internal pump (the catheter is sutured into or near the surgical area) and epidural analgesia are often used for better pain control. In PCA, the patient adjusts the dosage of the

analgesic based on the pain level and response to the drug. This method allows more consistent pain relief and more control by the patient. The maximum dose per hour is “locked in” to the pump so that the patient cannot accidentally overdose. The most common drugs given by the PCA method are morphine and hydromorphone.

Epidural analgesia can be given intermittently by the anesthesia provider or by continuous infusion through an epidural catheter left in place after epidural anesthesia. Drugs given by epidural catheter include the opioids fentanyl (Sublimaze), preservative-free morphine (Duramorph), and bupivacaine (Marcaine).

Take care not to overmedicate or undermedicate, especially with older patients. In assessing for overmedication, monitor vital signs, especially blood pressure and respiratory rate, and level of consciousness. Complications from the use of opioid analgesics include respiratory depression, hypotension, nausea, vomiting, and constipation. An opioid antagonist, such as naloxone (Narcan), may be needed to reverse the acute effects of opioid depression. Because of the short effect of the opioid antagonist, monitor the patient's blood pressure and respirations every 15 to 30 minutes until the full effect of the opioid analgesic has passed. You may need to give more doses of the antagonist during this time because it is eliminated from the body more quickly than is the opioid. (See [Chart 18-7](#) for more information on using opioid antagonists to reverse opioid overdose.) In addition, the patient has breakthrough pain after the opioid antagonist is given, so other interventions to promote comfort are needed.

Assess for undermedication by asking the patient about the effects of the drug and observing for nonverbal cues of pain or discomfort (e.g., restlessness, increased confusion, “picking” at bedcovers, aggressive behaviors). Offer prescribed pain drug(s) after checking for hypotension and respiratory depression.

As recovery progresses, reduce the doses and frequency of pain drugs. Drugs are changed from injectable or PCA to oral as soon as the patient can tolerate oral agents. Non-opioid analgesics, such as acetaminophen (Tylenol, Atasol ) , and NSAIDs, such as ibuprofen (Motrin, Novo-Profen ) , Amersol ) and ketorolac (Toradol), are used alone or with an opioid analgesic. Antianxiety drugs, such as hydroxyzine (Vistaril, Novo-Hydroxyzin ) , may be given with an opioid analgesic. This combination decreases pain-related anxiety, reduces muscle tension, and controls nausea.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not confuse Toradol with Tramadol (a drug used for central anesthesia).

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Provide other comfort measures that may lower the amount of pain drugs needed. These measures, such as positioning, massage, relaxation, and diversion, reduce anxiety and allow the patient to relax and rest.

In positioning the patient, consider the position during surgery, the location of the surgical incision and drains, and problems such as arthritis and chronic lung disease. Assist the patient to a position of comfort. Support the extremities with pillows. Turn or help the patient turn at least every 2 hours

CHART 18-6 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Management of Postoperative Pain

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Morphine sulfate (Epimorph  , Stalex )	2-15 mg IM or IV incrementally 10-30 mg orally every 4 hr Maximum 6 doses	Monitor respiratory status. Monitor blood pressure. Assess for GI motility and urine output.	Respiratory depression can be severe and require medical intervention. Hypotension, constipation, and urinary retention can occur.
Hydromorphone hydrochloride (Dilaudid)	1-4 mg IV or IM every 3-4 hr 2-4 mg orally every 3-4 hr	Monitor respirations. Monitor blood pressure. Monitor for food intolerance. Monitor fluid and electrolyte balance. Assess GI motility.	Respiratory depression, hypotension, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and constipation can occur.
Codeine sulfate, codeine phosphate (Paveral )	15-60 mg IM or orally every 4 hr Maximum 6 doses	Monitor respiratory status. Monitor for food intolerance. Monitor fluid and electrolyte balance. Assess GI motility.	Respiratory depression, nausea, and vomiting can occur. Constipation is common; prophylactic interventions may be indicated.
Butorphanol tartrate (Stadol)	1-4 mg IM every 3-4 hr 0.5-2 mg IV Maximum 6-8 doses	Monitor neurologic status and changes in level of consciousness. Monitor respiratory status.	Butorphanol can cause increased intracranial pressure and respiratory depression.
Oxycodone hydrochloride and aspirin (Percodan, Endodan  , Oxycodan )	1-2 tablets (5-10 mg) orally every 3-4 hr Maximum 80 mg	Assess GI tolerance of medication. Assess for GI bleeding. Monitor GI motility. Monitor coagulation studies (PT, aPTT). Monitor respiratory status.	The aspirin component can irritate the stomach and could cause GI bleeding. Bleeding times and other coagulation study results may be increased because of the aspirin component. Respiratory depression and constipation can be caused by the oxycodone component.
Oxycodone hydrochloride and acetaminophen (Tylox, Percocet, Endocet  , Oxycocet )	1-2 tablets (5-10 mg) orally every 3-4 hr Maximum 12 tablets	Monitor blood pressure and respiratory status. Assess for GI motility.	Respiratory depression, hypotension, and constipation can occur.
Ketorolac tromethamine (Toradol)	15-60 mg IM or IV every 6 hr Maximum 120 mg 5-day administration maximum	Monitor for GI bleeding. Monitor for renal effects, especially in older adults.	GI bleeding, ulceration, and perforation can occur. Decreased urine output, increased serum creatinine, hematuria, and proteinuria can occur. Ketorolac is cleared more slowly in older adults. Older persons are more sensitive to the renal effects of NSAIDs.
Ibuprofen (Motrin, Amersol  , Novoprofen )	300-800 mg orally every 4-6 hr Maximum 2400 mg daily	Monitor upper GI tolerance of medication. Give with food or milk. Monitor coagulation studies (PT, aPTT). Assess for signs of bleeding or delayed clotting.	Food or milk helps decrease irritation of the stomach. Bleeding times and other coagulation study results may be increased. Monitoring leads to early detection of complications.

aPTT, Activated partial thromboplastin time; GI, gastrointestinal; NSAID, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug; PT, prothrombin time.

while he or she is bedridden to prevent complications caused by immobility.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Unless the surgeon prescribes pillow support, place no pillows under the knees, and do not raise the knee gatch, because this position could restrict circulation and increase the risk for venous thromboembolism.

Based on the surgeon's prescription and your assessment of the patient's tolerance, urge the patient to increase

activity progressively. Activity decreases stiffness, helps lung expansion, and promotes venous blood return. When he or she is first allowed out of bed, assist the patient to the side of the bed and into a chair. Teach him or her to splint the surgical wound for support and comfort during the transfer.

Use gentle massage on stiff joints or a sore back to decrease discomfort. Assist the patient to a side-lying position, and apply lotion with smooth, gentle strokes to increase blood flow to the area and promote relaxation. *Do not massage the calves because of the risk for loosening a clot and causing a life-threatening pulmonary embolus.*

CHART 18-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient Experiencing an Opioid Overdose

- Prepare to administer naloxone hydrochloride (Narcan)* in a dose of 1 to 2 mg IV.
- Repeat naloxone every 2 to 3 minutes up to 10 mg, as needed, depending on the patient's response.
- Maintain an open airway.
- Give oxygen if hypoxia is present or if respirations are below 10 breaths per minute.
- Have suction equipment available because naloxone can trigger vomiting and a drowsy patient is at risk for aspiration.
- Continuously monitor vital signs and level of consciousness for reversal of overdose.
- Do not leave the patient until he or she is fully responsive.
- Assess the patient for pain because reversal of the opioid overdose also reverses the analgesic effects.
- Continue to monitor the patient's vital signs and level of consciousness every 10 to 15 minutes for the first hour. Naloxone is eliminated from the body more quickly than is the opioid, and it may induce side effects, including blood pressure changes, tachycardia, and dysrhythmias.
- Determine the need for additional antagonist therapy 1 hour after the patient initially becomes fully responsive.

*There are other opioid antagonists; however, naloxone hydrochloride is used most often to manage adult opioid overdose in the postoperative period.

CHART 18-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nonpharmacologic Interventions to Reduce Postoperative Pain and Promote Comfort

- Control or remove noxious stimuli.
- Cushion and elevate painful areas; avoid tension or pressure on those areas.
- Provide adequate rest to increase pain tolerance.
- Encourage the patient's participation in diversional activities.
- Instruct the patient in relaxation techniques; use audiotapes or CDs and breathing exercises.
- Provide opportunities for meditation.
- Help the patient stimulate sensory nerve endings near the painful areas to inhibit ascending pain impulses.
- Use ice to reduce and prevent swelling, as indicated.
- Find a general position of comfort for the patient.
- Help the patient stimulate the area contralateral (opposite) to the painful area.

Relaxation and diversion are also used to control acute episodes of pain that may occur during dressing changes and injections. [Chapters 2 and 5](#) discuss how to instruct and guide the patient through these pain control methods. Music and noise reduction have also been shown to decrease awareness of discomfort. [Chart 18-8](#) lists other interventions that may help reduce pain and promote comfort.

Community-Based Care

Many patients are discharged after a brief hospital stay or directly from the PACU to home. Because of the shortened length of hospital stays, discharge planning, teaching, and referral begin before surgery and continue after surgery.

Home Care Management

If the patient is discharged directly to home, assess information about the home environment for safety, cleanliness, and availability of caregivers. Use the database obtained on admission before surgery to determine the patient's needs. For example, if the patient is unable or not allowed to climb stairs and lives in a two-story house with only one bathroom, advise the patient to rent a bedside commode. Collaborate with the social worker or discharge planner to identify needs related to care after surgery, including meal preparation, dressing changes, drain management, drug administration, physical therapy, and personal hygiene. A referral to a home care nursing agency may be indicated.

The patient is usually concerned about complications, pain, changes in the usual activity level, or payment of the hospital bill. The more extensive the surgical procedure is, the more fearful the patient is of assuming self-care. Support the patient and family members as they make discharge plans. The patient with visible scars after surgery may need more emotional support from and acceptance by his or her family. The patient may be angry about the surgical outcome or about role changes. He or she may be concerned about financial matters and work. The surgical outcome may not have met the patient's expectations, and further interventions may be needed to assist in resolving his or her feelings. Ensure that referrals are made for additional counseling as indicated.

Teaching for Self-Management

The teaching plan for the patient and family after surgery includes:

- Prevention of infection
- Care and assessment of the surgical wound
- Management of drains or catheters
- Nutrition therapy
- Pain management
- Drug therapy
- Progressive increase in activity

If dressing changes and drain or catheter care are needed, instruct the patient and family members on the importance of proper handwashing to prevent infection. Explain and demonstrate wound care to the patient and family, who then perform a return demonstration. During teaching sessions, evaluate learning and promote adherence after discharge. At the same time, teach about the manifestations of complications such as wound infection. Also instruct the patient and family about what to do if complications occur.

A diet high in protein, calories, and vitamin C promotes wound healing. Supplemental vitamin C, iron, zinc, and other vitamins are often prescribed after surgery to aid in wound healing and red blood cell formation. Instruct the patient who needs dietary restrictions about the importance of following the prescribed diet while recovering from surgery. Encourage the older adult or debilitated patient to continue using dietary supplements, if prescribed, between meals until the wound is completely healed and the energy levels are restored.

Teach the patient about drugs for pain, especially about the proper dosage and frequency. Instruct the patient to notify the surgeon if pain is not controlled or if the pain suddenly increases. If antibiotics or other drugs are prescribed, stress the importance of completing the entire prescription.

Surgery stresses the body, and time and rest are needed for healing. Teach the patient to increase activity level slowly, rest often, and avoid straining the wound or the surrounding area. The surgeon decides when the patient may climb stairs, return to work, drive, and resume other usual activities, such as sexual intercourse. The amount of weight that the patient can lift safely after surgery is specifically defined by the surgeon (i.e., in pounds or kilograms). Remind patients of the weights of grocery bags, women's handbags, laundry baskets, children, and books.

Instruct the patient in the use of proper body mechanics. A patient whose work involves a moderate amount of physical labor may return to work about 6 weeks after abdominal surgery. However, he or she may be eager to return to normal activities and may not follow restrictions. Stress the importance of adherence to prevent complications or disability. A referral for a home care nurse may be needed for follow-up.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Always ensure that the patient and family receive written discharge instructions to follow at home.

Health Care Resources

After returning home, the patient may need supplies or equipment and assistance with dressing changes, ADLs, and meal preparation. Referral to a home care agency is made if needed. Home care may be paid for by third-party insurance payers, including Medicare, if the patient is homebound and requires skilled care such as dressing changes or physical therapy. The home care nurse provides skilled nursing assessments, dressing supplies, education in self-care, and referrals for services as needed. Such referrals include Meals on Wheels, support groups, and homemaker services (e.g., for housekeeping, food shopping).

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient after surgery based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient:

- Attains and maintains adequate lung expansion and respiratory function
- Has complete wound healing without complications
- Has acceptable comfort levels after surgery

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use aseptic technique during all dressing changes.
- Use established criteria to determine when a patient is ready to leave the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) for discharge to home or a medical-surgical nursing unit.
- Keep suction equipment, oxygen, and artificial breathing equipment near the patient in the PACU.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Reinforce to the patient after surgery the specific interventions to use to prevent complications (incision splinting, deep-breathing exercises, range-of-motion exercises—as described in [Charts 16-5](#) and [16-6](#) in [Chapter 16](#)).
- Encourage early ambulation.
- Stress the need for following the activity restrictions prescribed by the surgeon.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Allow the patient to express feelings about any change in physical appearance or lifestyle as a result of surgery.

- Reassure patients that taking pain medication when needed, even opioids, does not make them drug abusers.
- Remain with the patient if wound dehiscence or evisceration occurs.
- Offer alternative therapies for relaxation, pain reduction, and distraction, such as massage, music therapy, and guided imagery.

Physiological Integrity

- Begin every assessment of the patient after surgery by checking the airway and breathing effectiveness.
- Assess the incision site each shift (on the medical-surgical nursing unit).
- In the event of wound dehiscence or evisceration, have the patient lie flat (supine) with knees bent to reduce intra-abdominal pressure; apply sterile, nonadherent dressing materials to the wound; and follow the steps outlined in [Chart 18-5](#).
- Teach the patient about any drugs to be continued after discharge from the facility.
- Instruct the patient and family about the clinical manifestations of complications and when to seek assistance.

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

Protection

The human body works best when the internal environment is kept separate from the external environment. This is especially important for substances and organisms that could harm body cells, tissues, and organs. Normal protection is provided by three types of defenses—similar to how people living in a castle are protected against invaders (Fig. 1).

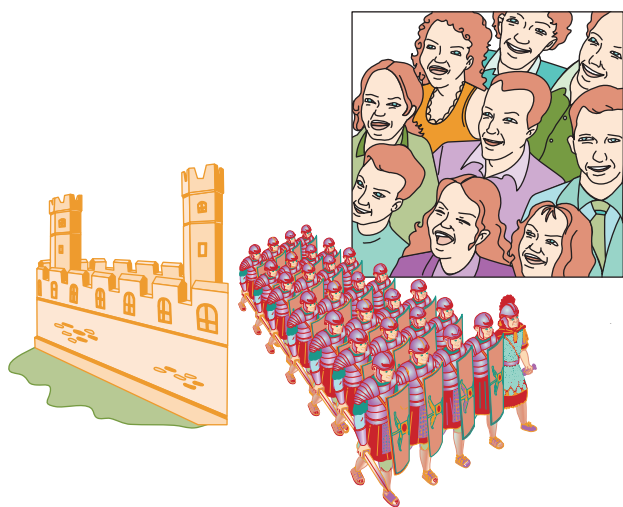


FIG. 1 Three levels of protection (moat, castle wall, knights and soldiers) for people.

The first defense is the moat surrounding the castle walls. Although the moat seldom kills invaders directly, it at least slows them down and sometimes repels them. The human “moat” is the normal flora on the surface of the skin and mucous membranes. This normal flora is made up of bacteria and other organisms that belong on the skin, live peacefully with the human host, and help repel more harmful microorganisms. When the normal flora is changed as a result of some types of drug therapy, procedures, diseases, excessive dryness, and normal aging, this small protection is damaged or lost.



The second defense is the castle wall and the “watchers” and alarm systems embedded within it. When it is tall, thick, and intact and when the watchers and alarms are working, penetration of the castle by invaders is greatly reduced. In humans, this type of protection is provided by intact skin and mucous membranes. These structures are a formidable barrier to invaders and help prevent dangerous changes in the internal environment. However, the castle walls do suffer some damage over time and must be repaired and maintained to provide continuing protection.

The last and strongest defense consists of the knights and soldiers within the castle. These individuals have the skills to capture or kill invaders. Some of these skills are common to all the knights and soldiers, and others are unique to different groups. In humans, the white blood cells (leukocytes) and the substances they produce serve as knights and soldiers. In addition to the work related directly to the invaders, this defense helps repair and maintain the castle walls. It is important to remember that this level of protection relies on the alarms of the castle wall and its physical barrier to recognize invaders and trigger the protective responses of the knights and soldiers.

Protection occurs best when all three defenses are intact and are working at their highest functional levels. These defenses begin at birth and are at the maximum function in early to middle adulthood. The defenses decline slowly over time, making an older adult at greater risk for illnesses related to invasion and a decreased ability to repair damage. External factors and health status can reduce the ability of these defenses to provide complete protection. Specific nursing strategies can help reduce risk and protect the person whose defenses are less than perfect.



UNIT V

Problems of Protection

Management of Patients with Problems of the Immune System

CHAPTER

19

Inflammation and the Immune Response

M. Linda Workman

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Function of B Cells

Animation: Function of T Cytotoxic Cells

Animation: Inflammatory Response

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Physiological Integrity

1. Describe the concept of self-tolerance.
2. Explain the differences between inflammation and immunity in terms of cells, functions, and features.
3. Use knowledge of physiology to describe the basis for the five cardinal manifestations of inflammation.
4. Discuss the influences of the aging process on inflammation and immunity and how these changes increase health risks for older adults.
5. Interpret a white blood cell count with differential to indicate no immune problems, immune suppression, infection, or an allergic reaction.
6. Differentiate the protection provided by active immunity, passive immunity, and cell-mediated immunity.
7. Describe the expected immune system responses to the presence of transplanted organs and the need for drug therapy to prevent transplant rejection.

Inflammatory responses and the immune system work with other defenses to provide *protection* from harmful microorganisms and cells. As indicated in the section opener defining the *concept of protection*, the cells and cell products of inflammation and immunity are represented mostly by the knights and soldiers behind the castle walls. The products made by cells, such as cytokines, growth factors, and antibodies, are the weapons of the knights and soldiers. In addition, some of

these cells serve as watchers and alarm systems actually within the castle walls (skin and mucous membranes). They also help maintain and repair these walls when damage occurs.

Infectious diseases are common. Most people, however, are healthy more often than they are ill. Inflammation and immunity are the major defenses that protect against disease when the body is invaded by organisms. These same defenses also help the body recover after tissue damage. For these

reasons, inflammation and immunity are critical to maintaining health and preventing disease. When all the different parts and functions of inflammation and immunity are working well, the person is **immunocompetent** and has maximum protection against infection.

Immune function is reduced by many diseases, injuries, and medical therapies. *Reduction of immune function may be temporary or permanent, but it always endangers the patient's health.* Chapter 21 discusses issues related to reduced protection from inadequate immunity or inflammatory responses. Other problems occur when immunity overfunctions or functions at inappropriate times, at which time this normally protective response becomes an enemy (Braun, 2010; Stevens, 2009). Chapters 20 and 22 discuss issues related to damage from excess or inappropriate inflammatory or immune responses.

OVERVIEW

Immunity is composed of many cell functions that protect people against the effects of injury or invasion. People interact with many other living organisms in the environment. The size of these organisms varies from large (other humans and animals) to microscopic (bacteria, viruses, molds, spores, pollens, protozoa, and cells from other people or animals). As long as organisms do not enter the body, they pose no health threat. The body has some defenses to prevent organisms from entering, such as intact skin and mucous membranes, skin surface normal flora, and natural chemicals that inhibit bacterial growth. These defenses are not perfect, and invasion of the body by organisms occurs often. Invasion occurs much more often than does an actual disease or illness because of proper immune functioning.

The purpose of inflammation and immunity is to provide *protection* by neutralizing, eliminating, or destroying organisms that invade the internal environment. To protect without

harming the body, immune system cells use protective actions only against non-self proteins and cells. Immune system cells can distinguish between the body's own healthy self cells and other, non-self proteins and cells.

Self Versus Non-Self

Non-self proteins and cells include infected body cells, cancer cells, cells from other people, and invading organisms. Recognizing self versus non-self, which is necessary to prevent healthy body cells from being destroyed along with the invaders, is called **self-tolerance**. The immune system cells are the only cells capable of determining self from non-self. Self-tolerance is possible because of the different proteins present on cell membranes.

Each cell is surrounded by a plasma membrane with different proteins protruding through the surface (Fig. 19-1). For example, in liver cells, many different protein types are present on the cell membrane surface. The amino acid sequence of each protein type differs from that of all other protein types. Some of these proteins are found on the liver cells of all animals (including humans) that have livers, because these protein types are specific to the liver and serve as a *marker* for liver tissues. Other protein types are found only on the liver cells of humans, because these protein types are specific markers for human tissues. In addition, each person's liver cells have surface proteins that are specific to that person. These unique proteins would be identical only to the proteins of an identical sibling. These unique proteins, known as **human leukocyte antigens (HLAs)**, are found on the surface of all body cells of that person and serve as a “universal product code” or a “cellular fingerprint” for that person. One person's HLAs are recognized as “foreign,” or non-self, by the immune system of another person. Because the cell-surface proteins are non-self to another person's immune system, they are **antigens**, which are proteins capable of stimulating an immune response.

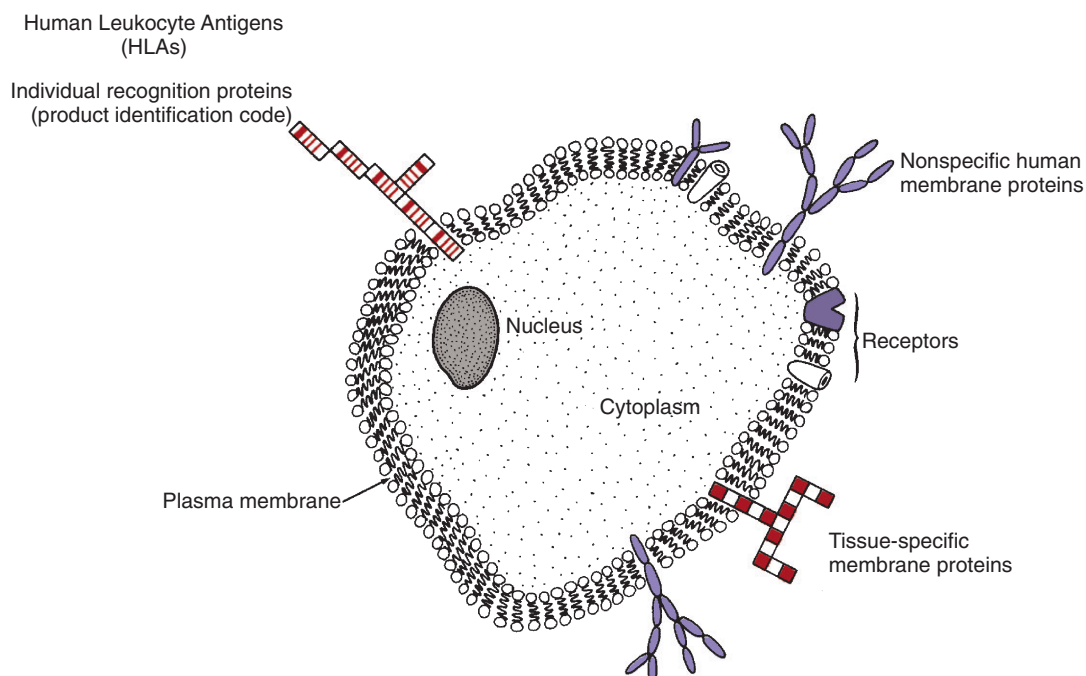


FIG. 19-1 Proteins on human cell plasma membranes.

Human leukocyte antigens are on the surfaces of most body cells—not just on leukocytes. They are a normal part of the person and act as antigens only if they enter another person's body. These antigens determine the *tissue type* of a person. Other names for these cellular fingerprints are *human transplantation antigens*, *human histocompatibility antigens*, and *class I antigens*.

Humans have about 40 major HLAs that are determined by a set of genes called the *major histocompatibility complex (MHC)*. The specific antigens that any person has (of a large number of possible antigens) are determined by which MHC gene alleles were inherited from his or her parents (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

The HLAs are key for recognition and self-tolerance. The immune system cells constantly come into contact with other body cells and with any invader that enters the body. At each encounter, the immune system cells compare the surface protein HLAs to determine whether the encountered cell belongs in the body (Fig. 19-2). If the encountered cell's HLAs perfectly match the HLAs of the immune system cell,

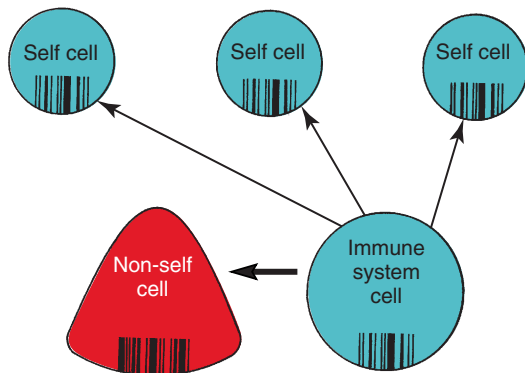


FIG. 19-2 Determination by immune system cell of self versus non-self cells.

the encountered cell is “self” and is not attacked by the immune system cell. If the encountered cell's HLAs do not perfectly match the HLAs of the immune system cell, the encountered cell is non-self, or foreign. The immune system cell then takes action to neutralize, destroy, or eliminate this foreign invader.

Immune function changes during a person's life, according to nutritional status, environmental conditions, drugs, disease, and age. Immune function is most efficient when people are in their 20s and 30s and slowly declines with increasing age (Graham et al., 2006; Touhy & Jett, 2010). Older adults have decreased immune function, increasing their risk for many health problems (Chart 19-1).

Organization of the Immune System

The immune system is not located in any one body area but, rather, is influenced by many systems, especially the nervous system, the endocrine system, and the GI system. Most immune system cells come from the bone marrow. Some cells mature in the bone marrow; others leave the bone marrow and mature in different body sites. When mature, many immune system cells are released into the blood, where they circulate to most body areas and have specific effects.

The bone marrow is the source of all blood cells, including immune system cells. The bone marrow produces immature, undifferentiated cells called **stem cells** (Abbas et al., 2010; Kaufman, 2011). Stem cells are **pluripotent**, meaning that each cell has more than one potential outcome. When the stem cell is first created in the bone marrow, it is undifferentiated. The cell is not yet committed to maturing into a specific blood cell type. At this stage, the stem cell is flexible (pluripotent) and could become any one of many mature blood cells. Fig. 19-3 shows the possible outcomes for maturation of stem cells. The type of mature cell that the stem cell becomes depends on which pathway it follows.

The maturational pathway of any stem cell depends on body needs and on the presence of specific growth factors

CHART 19-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in Immune Function Related to Aging

IMMUNE COMPONENT	FUNCTIONAL CHANGE	NURSING IMPLICATIONS
Inflammation	There is a probable defect in neutrophil function. Leukocytosis does not occur during episodes of acute infection. Older adults may not have a fever during inflammatory or infectious episodes.	Neutrophil counts may be normal, but activity is reduced or impaired, increasing the risk for infection. Patients may have an infection but not show expected changes in white blood cell counts. Not only is there potential loss of protection through inflammation, but also minor infections may be overlooked until the patient becomes severely infected or septic.
Antibody-mediated immunity	The total number of colony-forming B-lymphocytes and the ability of these cells to mature into antibody-secreting cells are diminished. There is a decline in natural antibodies, decreased response to antigens, and reduction in the amount of time the antibody response is maintained.	Older adults are less able to make new antibodies in response to the presence of new antigens. Thus they should receive immunizations, such as “flu shots,” the pneumococcal vaccination, and the shingles vaccination. Older adults may not have sufficient antibodies present to provide protection when they are re-exposed to microorganisms against which they have already generated antibodies. Thus older patients need to avoid people with viral infections and need to receive “booster” shots for old vaccinations and immunizations, especially tetanus and pertussis (whooping cough).
Cell-mediated immunity	Thymic activity decreases with aging, and the number of circulating T-lymphocytes decreases.	Skin tests for tuberculosis may be falsely negative. Older patients are more at risk for bacterial and fungal infections, especially on the skin and mucous membranes, in the respiratory tract, and in the genitourinary tract.

that direct the cell to a pathway. For example, erythropoietin is a growth factor for red blood cells (RBCs). When immature stem cells are exposed to erythropoietin, they commit to the erythrocyte pathway and eventually become mature RBCs.

White blood cells (**leukocytes or WBCs**) protect the body from the effects of invasion by organisms. These cells are the immune system cells—the knight and soldiers protecting the castle inhabitants after invaders get through the castle wall. Table 19-1 lists the functions of different immune system cells. The leukocytes provide protection through many defensive actions (Abbas et al., 2010; Stevens, 2009). These actions include:

- Recognition of self versus non-self
- Destruction of foreign invaders, cellular debris, and unhealthy or abnormal self cells
- Production of antibodies directed against invaders
- Complement activation
- Production of cytokines that stimulate increased formation of leukocytes in bone marrow and increase specific leukocyte activity

The three processes needed for human protection through immunity are (1) inflammation, (2) antibody-mediated immunity (AMI), and (3) cell-mediated immunity (CMI). Each process uses different defensive actions, and each influences or requires assistance from the other two processes (Fig. 19-4). Therefore full immunity (*immunocompetence*) requires the function and interaction of all three processes.

INFLAMMATION

Inflammation, also called *innate-native immunity* or *natural immunity*, provides immediate protection against the effects of tissue injury and invading foreign proteins. Innate-native immunity is any natural protective feature of a person. It can be a barrier to prevent organisms from entering the body or can be an attacking force that eliminates organisms that have already entered the body. This type of immunity cannot be developed or transferred from one person to another and is not an adaptive response to exposure or invasion by foreign proteins.

The inflammatory responses are part of innate immunity. Other parts of innate immunity include skin, mucosa, antimicrobial chemicals on the skin, complement, and natural killer cells (Abbas et al., 2010; Stevens, 2009).

The ability to produce an inflammatory response is critical to health and well-being. Inflammation differs from AMI and CMI in two important ways:

- Inflammatory protection is immediate but short-term against injury or invading organisms. It does not

TABLE 19-1 IMMUNE FUNCTIONS OF SPECIFIC LEUKOCYTES

VARIABLE	LEUKOCYTE	FUNCTION
Inflammation	Neutrophil	Nonspecific ingestion and phagocytosis of microorganisms and foreign protein
	Macrophage	Nonspecific recognition of foreign proteins and microorganisms; ingestion and phagocytosis
	Monocyte	Destruction of bacteria and cellular debris; matures into macrophage
	Eosinophil	Weak phagocytic action; releases vasoactive amines during allergic reactions
	Basophil	Releases histamine and heparin in areas of tissue damage
Antibody-mediated immunity	B-lymphocyte	Becomes sensitized to foreign cells and proteins
	Plasma cell	Secretes immunoglobulins in response to the presence of a specific antigen
	Memory cell	Remains sensitized to a specific antigen and can secrete increased amounts of immunoglobulins specific to the antigen on re-exposure
Cell-mediated immunity	Helper/inducer T-cell	Enhances immune activity through secretion of various factors, cytokines, and lymphokines
	Cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell	Selectively attacks and destroys non-self cells, including virally infected cells, grafts, and transplanted organs
	Natural killer cell	Nonselectively attacks non-self cells, especially body cells that have undergone mutation and become malignant; also attacks grafts and transplanted organs

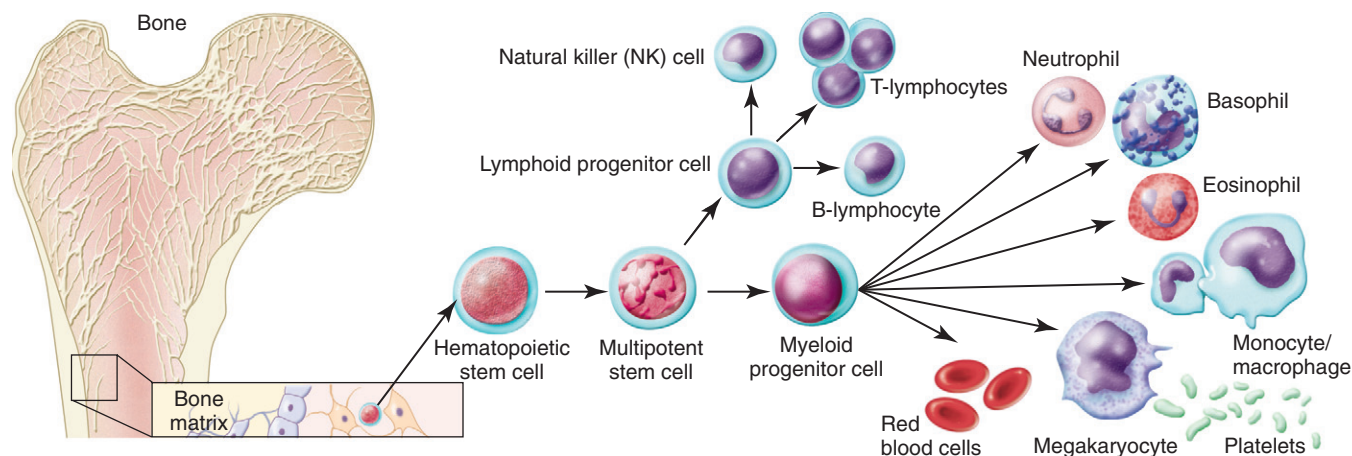


FIG. 19-3 Stem cell differentiation and maturation.

provide true immunity on repeated exposure to the same organisms.

- Inflammation is a *nonspecific* body defense to invasion or injury and can be started quickly by almost any event, regardless of where it occurs or what causes it.

So, inflammation triggered by a scald burn to the hand is the same as inflammation triggered by bacteria in the middle ear. How widespread the symptoms of inflammation are depends on the intensity, severity, and duration of exposure to the initiating event. For example, a splinter in the finger triggers inflammation only at the splinter site, whereas a burn injuring 50% of the skin leads to an inflammatory response involving the entire body.

Inflammatory responses start tissue actions that cause visible and uncomfortable symptoms. Despite the discomfort, these actions are important in ridding the body of harmful organisms. However, if the inflammatory response is excessive, tissue damage may result (Landis, 2009). Inflammatory responses also help start both antibody-mediated and cell-mediated actions to activate a full immune response.

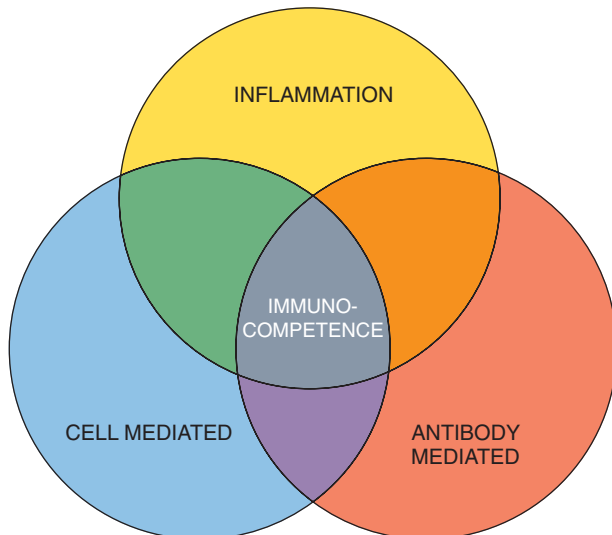


FIG. 19-4 The three divisions of immunity: inflammation, antibody-mediated immunity, and cell-mediated immunity. Optimal function of all three divisions is necessary for complete immunity.

Infection

A confusing issue about inflammation is that this process occurs in response to tissue injury, as well as to invasion by organisms. *Infection is usually accompanied by inflammation; however, inflammation can occur without infection.* Examples of inflammation without infection include joint sprain injuries, myocardial infarction, and blister formation. Examples of inflammation caused by noninfectious invasion include allergic rhinitis, contact dermatitis, and other allergic reactions. Inflammations from infection include otitis media, appendicitis, and viral hepatitis, among many others. *Inflammation does not always mean that an infection is present.*

Cell Types Involved in Inflammation

The leukocytes involved in inflammation are neutrophils, macrophages, eosinophils, and basophils. Neutrophils and macrophages use phagocytosis to destroy and eliminate foreign invaders. Basophils and eosinophils release chemicals that act on blood vessels to cause tissue-level responses that help neutrophil and macrophage actions.

Neutrophils

Mature neutrophils make up between 55% and 70% of the normal total white blood cell (WBC) count. Neutrophils come from the stem cells and complete the maturation process in the bone marrow (Fig. 19-5). They are also called *granulocytes* because of the large number of granules present inside each cell. Other names for neutrophils are based on their appearance and maturity. Mature neutrophils are also called *segmented neutrophils* (“segs”) or *polymorphonuclear cells* (“polys,” PMNs) because of their segmented nucleus. Less mature neutrophils are called *band neutrophils* (“bands” or “stabs”) because of their nuclear shape.

Usually, growth of a stem cell into a mature neutrophil requires 12 to 14 days. This time is shortened by the presence of specific growth factors (cytokines), such as granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF). The purpose and action of cytokines are described on p. 314 in the Cytokines section.

In the immunocompetent healthy person, more than 100 billion fresh, mature neutrophils are released from the bone marrow into the circulation daily (Abbas et al., 2010; Stevens, 2009). This huge production is needed because the life span of each neutrophil is short—about 12 to 18 hours.

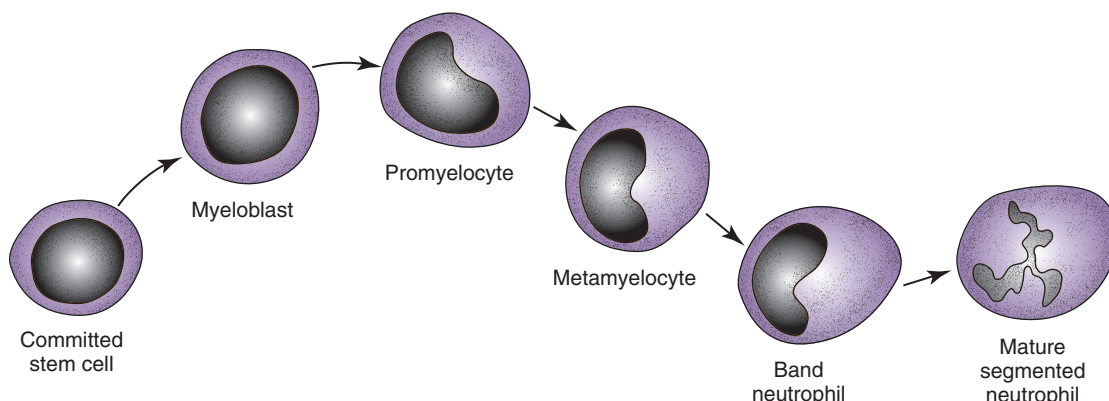


FIG. 19-5 Stem cell maturation into fully functional segmented neutrophils.

Neutrophil function provides protection after invaders, especially bacteria, enter the body. Although the neutrophils are the largest group of circulating leukocytes, each cell is small. This powerful army destroys invaders by phagocytosis and enzymatic digestion, although each cell is small and can take part in only one episode of phagocytosis.

Mature neutrophils are the only stage of this cell capable of phagocytosis. Because this cell type is responsible for continuous, instant, nonspecific protection against organisms, the percentage and actual number of mature circulating neutrophils are used to measure a patient's risk for infection: the higher the numbers, the greater the resistance to infection. This measurement is the **absolute neutrophil count (ANC)**, also called the *absolute granulocyte count* or *total granulocyte count*.

The differential of a normal white blood cell count shows the number and percent of the different types of circulating leukocytes (Table 19-2). Usually, most neutrophils released into the blood from the bone marrow are segmented neutrophils; only a small percentage are band neutrophils. Less mature neutrophil forms should not be in the blood. Some problems, such as sepsis, cause the neutrophils in the blood to change from being mostly segmented neutrophils to being less mature forms. This situation is termed a **left shift** or *bandemia* because the segmented neutrophil, which is seen at the far right of the neutrophil pathway (see Fig. 19-5), is no longer the most numerous type of circulating neutrophils. Instead, more of the circulating cells are bands—the less mature cell type found farther left on the neutrophil pathway.

A left shift indicates that the patient's bone marrow cannot produce enough mature neutrophils to keep pace with the continuing infection and is releasing immature neutrophils into the blood. Unfortunately, most of these immature cells are of no benefit because they are not capable of phagocytosis.

Macrophages

Macrophages come from the committed myeloid stem cells in the bone marrow and form the mononuclear-phagocyte system. The stem cells first form monocytes, which are released into the blood at this stage. Until they mature, monocytes have limited activity. Most monocytes move from the blood into body tissues, where they mature into macrophages. Some macrophages become “fixed” in position within the tissues, whereas others can move within and between tissues. Macrophages in various tissues have slightly different appearances and names (Table 19-3). The liver, spleen, and intestinal tract contain large numbers of these cells.

TABLE 19-2 VALUES OF A WHITE BLOOD CELL DIFFERENTIAL FOR PERIPHERAL BLOOD REPRESENTING A NORMAL COUNT

WBC TYPE	%	/MM ³
TOTAL WBC	100	10,000
Segs	62	6200
Bands	5	500
Monos	3	300
Lymphs	28	2800
Eosins	1.5	150
Basos	0.5	50

Macrophage function provides protection in several ways. These cells are important in immediate inflammatory responses and also stimulate the longer-lasting immune responses of antibody-mediated immunity (AMI) and cell-mediated immunity (CMI). Specific macrophage functions include phagocytosis, repair, antigen presenting/processing, and secretion of cytokines that help control the immune system.

The inflammatory function of macrophages is phagocytosis. Macrophages can easily distinguish between self and non-self, and their large size makes them very effective at trapping invading cells. Unlike neutrophils, macrophages have long life spans and can take part in many phagocytic events.

Basophils

Basophils come from myeloid stem cells and make up only about 1% of the total circulating WBC count. These cells cause the manifestations of inflammation.

Basophil function results in actions on blood vessels through the activity of basophil chemicals (vasoactive amines). These chemicals include heparin, histamine, serotonin, kinins, and leukotrienes. When released into the blood, most of these chemicals act on smooth muscle and blood vessel walls. Heparin inhibits blood and protein clotting. Histamine constricts small veins, inhibiting blood flow and decreasing venous return. This effect causes blood to collect in capillaries and arterioles. Kinins dilate arterioles and increase capillary permeability. These actions cause blood plasma to leak into the interstitial space (*vascular leak syndrome*).

Eosinophils

Eosinophils come from the myeloid line and contain many vasoactive chemicals. Usually, only 1% to 2% of the total white blood cell (WBC) count is composed of eosinophils.

Eosinophil function is very active against infestations of parasitic larvae and also limits inflammatory reactions. The eosinophil granules contain many different substances. Some are enzymes that degrade the vasoactive chemicals released by other leukocytes. This is why the number of circulating eosinophils increases during an allergic response.

Phagocytosis

A key process of inflammation is **phagocytosis**, the engulfing and destruction of invaders. This action also rids the body of debris after tissue injury. Neutrophils and macrophages are most efficient at phagocytosis. Phagocytosis involves the seven steps shown in Fig. 19-6.

TABLE 19-3 TISSUE MACROPHAGES

TISSUE	MACROPHAGE
Lung	Alveolar macrophage
Connective tissue	Histiocyte
Brain	Microglial cell
Liver	Kupffer cell
Peritoneum	Peritoneal macrophage
Bone	Osteoclast
Joint	Synovial type A cell
Kidney	Mesangial cell

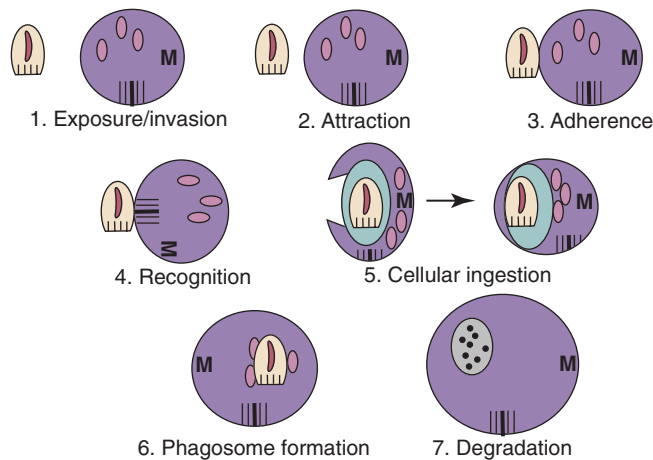


FIG. 19-6 Steps of phagocytosis.

Exposure and invasion occur as the first step. Leukocytes that engage in phagocytosis and stimulate inflammation are present in the blood and other extracellular fluids. For phagocytosis to start, the body must first be invaded by organisms, foreign proteins, or debris from damaged tissues. The process is triggered by injury or invasion.

Attraction is needed as the second step because phagocytosis can occur only when the WBC comes into direct contact with the target (antigen, invader, or foreign protein). Some substances (**chemotaxins**) attract neutrophils and macrophages. Damaged tissues secrete chemotaxins and release debris that can combine with the surface of invading foreign proteins.

Adherence is important because phagocytosis requires that the phagocytic cell first bind to the surface of the target. *Opsonins* are substances that increase contact of the cell with its target by coating the target cell (antigen or organism). During inflammation, coating the target makes it easier for phagocytic cells to stick to it. Many substances can act as opsonins. Some are particles from dead neutrophils, antibodies, and activated (fixated) complement components.

Complement activation and fixation are part of opsonization and help with adherence. Twenty different types of inactive complement proteins are present in the blood. When stimulated, each complement protein is activated, joins other activated complement proteins, surrounds an antigen, and “fixes” or sticks to the antigen. Complement fixation occurs quickly as a cascade or chain reaction.

Recognition occurs when the phagocytic cell sticks to the surface of the target cell and “recognizes” it as non-self. The phagocytic cells examine the universal product codes (human leukocyte antigens [HLAs]) of whatever they encounter. Recognition of non-self is made easier by opsonins on the target cell surface. Phagocytic cells start phagocytosis only when the target cell is recognized either as non-self or as debris from damaged self cells.

Cellular ingestion is needed because phagocytic destruction occurs inside the cell. The target cell is brought inside the phagocytic cell by phagocytosis (engulfment). The phagocytic cell bends its membrane around to enclose (engulf) the target cell and form a vacuole.

Phagosome formation occurs when the phagocyte’s granules are inside the vacuole. These granules break and release enzymes that attack the ingested target.

Degradation is the final step. The enzymes in the phagosome digest the engulfed target. The target is broken into smaller pieces until only small particles of debris remain.

Sequence of Inflammatory Responses

Inflammatory responses occur in a predictable sequence of three stages. The sequence is the same regardless of the triggering event. Responses at the tissue level cause the **five cardinal manifestations of inflammation**: warmth, redness, swelling, pain, and decreased function. The timing of the stages may overlap.

Stage I is the vascular part of the inflammatory response. In this stage, the early effects involve changes in blood vessels. Injured tissues and the leukocytes in this area secrete histamine, serotonin, and kinins that constrict the small veins and dilate the arterioles in the area of injury. These blood vessel changes cause redness and warmth of the tissues. This increased blood flow increases delivery of nutrients to injured tissues.

Blood flow to the area increases (**hyperemia**) and **edema** (swelling) forms at the site of injury or invasion. Capillary leak also occurs, allowing blood plasma to leak into the tissues. This response causes swelling and pain. Edema at the site of injury or invasion protects the area from further injury by creating a cushion of fluid. The extra fluid also can dilute any toxins or organisms that have entered the area. The duration of these responses depends on the severity of the initiating event, but usually they subside within 24 to 72 hours.

The macrophage is the major cell involved in stage I of inflammation. The action is rapid because macrophages are already in place at the site of injury or invasion. This action is limited because the number of macrophages is so small. To enhance the inflammatory response, the tissue macrophages secrete several cytokines. One cytokine is colony-stimulating factor (CSF), which triggers the bone marrow to shorten the length of time needed to produce white blood cells (WBCs) from 14 days to a matter of hours. Some of the cytokines also increase the release of neutrophils from the bone marrow and attract them to the site of injury or invasion, which leads to the next stage of inflammation.

Stage II is the cellular exudate part of the response. In this stage, **neutrophilia** (an increased number of circulating neutrophils) occurs. Exudate in the form of pus occurs, containing dead WBCs, necrotic tissue, and fluids that escape from damaged cells.

The most active cell in this stage is the neutrophil. Under the influence of cytokines, the neutrophil count can increase up to five times within 12 hours after the onset of inflammation. At the site of inflammation, neutrophils attack and destroy organisms and remove dead tissue through phagocytosis.

In acute inflammation, the healthy person produces enough mature neutrophils to keep pace with invasion and prevent the organisms from growing. At the same time, the WBCs and inflamed tissues secrete cytokines, which allow tissue macrophages to increase and trigger bone marrow production of monocytes. This reaction begins slowly, but its effects are long lasting.

During this phase, the arachidonic acid cascade starts to increase the inflammatory response. This action begins by the conversion of fatty acids in plasma membranes into

arachidonic acid (AA). The enzyme *cyclooxygenase* (COX) converts AA into many chemicals that are further processed into the substances that continue the inflammatory response in the tissues. Some of these substances (known as “mediators” because they promote continued inflammatory responses) include histamine, leukotrienes, prostaglandins, serotonin, and kinins. Many anti-inflammatory drugs, including NSAIDs, stop this cascade by preventing cyclooxygenase from converting AA into inflammatory mediators.

When an infection stimulating inflammation lasts longer than just a few days, the bone marrow cannot produce and release enough mature neutrophils to keep pace with the growth of organisms. In this situation, the bone marrow begins to release immature neutrophils, reducing the number of circulating mature neutrophils. This reduction of mature neutrophils limits the helpful effects of inflammation and increases the risk for sepsis.

Stage III features tissue repair and replacement. Although this stage is completed last, it begins at the time of injury and is critical to the final function of the inflamed area.

Some of the WBCs involved in inflammation start the replacement of lost tissues or repair of damaged tissues by inducing the remaining healthy cells to divide. In tissues that cannot divide, WBCs trigger new blood vessel growth (*angiogenesis*) and scar tissue formation. Because scar tissue does not behave like the tissue it replaces, function is lost wherever scar tissue forms. The degree of function lost depends on how much normal tissue is replaced by scar tissue. For example, when heart muscles are destroyed because of a myocardial infarction (heart attack), scar tissue forms in the area to prevent a hole from forming in the muscle wall as the ischemic cells die. (Remember that heart muscle is non-dividing tissue and the heart cannot replace these muscle cells.) The scar tissue serves only as a patch; it does not contract or act in any way like heart muscle. So, if 20% of the left ventricle is replaced with scar tissue, the effectiveness of left ventricular contraction is reduced by at least 20%.

Inflammation alone cannot provide immunity. Inflammatory cells must interact with lymphocytes to provide long-lasting immunity. Long-lasting immune actions develop through antibody-mediated immunity (AMI) and cell-mediated immunity (CMI).

IMMUNITY

Immunity is an *adaptive* internal protection that results in long-term resistance to the effects of invading microorganisms. This means that the responses are not automatic. The body has to learn to generate specific immune responses when it is infected by or exposed to specific organisms. Lymphocytes develop actions and products that provide the protection of true immunity. These cells develop specific actions in response to specific invasion (Fig. 19-7).

Antibody-Mediated Immunity

Antibody-mediated immunity (AMI), also known as *humoral immunity*, involves antigen-antibody interactions to neutralize, eliminate, or destroy foreign proteins. Antibodies are produced by sensitized B-lymphocytes (B-cells).

B-cells become sensitized to a specific foreign protein (antigen) and produce antibodies directed specifically against that protein. The antibody, rather than the actual B-cell, then

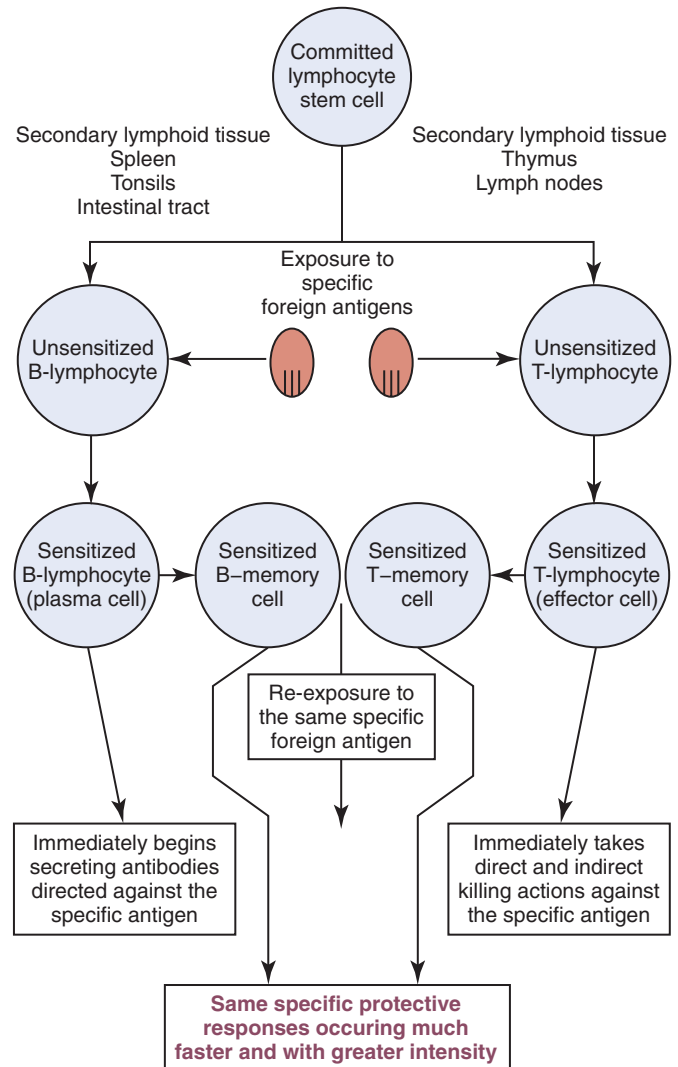


FIG. 19-7 B-lymphocyte and T-lymphocyte differentiation, maturation, and function.

causes one of several actions to neutralize, eliminate, or destroy that antigen.

B-cells have the most direct role in AMI. Macrophages and T-lymphocytes (discussed on p. 313 in the Cell-Mediated Immunity section) work with B-cells to start and complete antigen-antibody interactions. *For optimal AMI, the entire immune system must function adequately.*

B-cells start as stem cells in the bone marrow, the primary lymphoid tissue. Those stem cells that become B-cells commit early to the lymphocyte pathway (see Fig. 19-3) and are then restricted in development. The lymphocyte stem cells are released from the bone marrow into the blood. They then migrate into many secondary lymphoid tissues, where maturation is completed. The secondary lymphoid tissues for B-cell maturation are the spleen, parts of lymph nodes, tonsils, and the mucosa of the intestinal tract.

Antigen-Antibody Interactions

The body learns to make enough of any specific antibody to provide long-lasting immunity and protection against specific organisms or toxins. Seven steps are needed to produce a specific antibody directed against a specific antigen

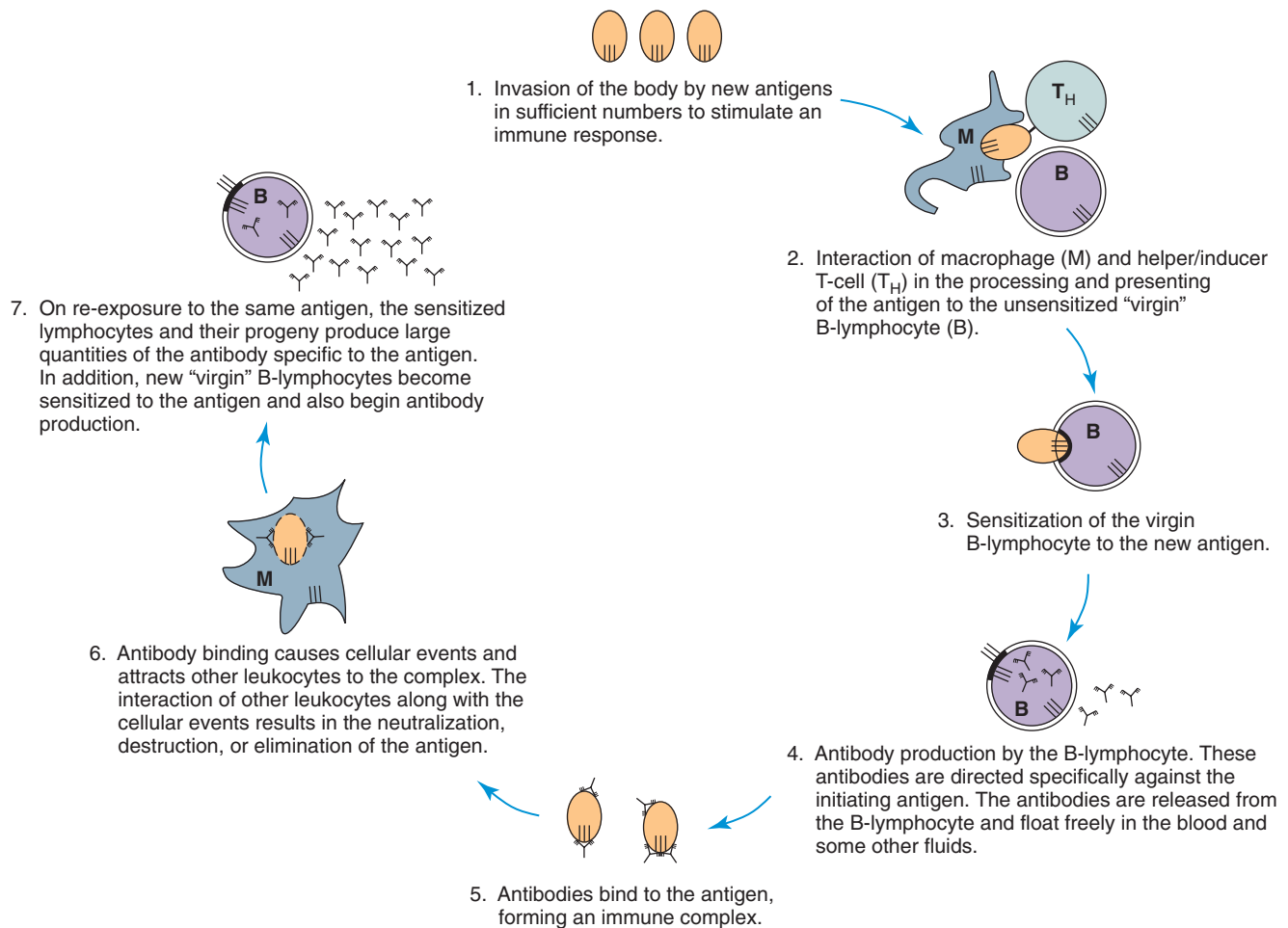


FIG. 19-8 Sequence of the seven steps required to stimulate antibody-mediated immunity.

whenever the person is exposed to that antigen. These steps are exposure (invasion), antigen recognition, lymphocyte sensitization, antibody production and release, antigen-antibody binding, antibody-binding reactions, and sustained immunity, or memory (Fig. 19-8).

Exposure or invasion is needed because antibody actions occur inside the body or on a few body surfaces. For a person to make an antibody that can exert its effects on a specific antigen, the antigen must first enter the person. Not all exposures or invasions result in antibody production. Invasion by the antigen must occur in such large numbers that some of the antigen evades detection by the body's natural nonspecific defenses or overwhelms the ability of the inflammatory response to get rid of the invader.

Take, for example, a person who has never been exposed to the childhood viral disease *chickenpox*. This person babysits for three children who develop chickenpox lesions within the next 10 hours. These children, in the pre-eruption stage, shed many millions of live chickenpox virus particles by droplets from the upper respiratory tract. Because small children are often unconcerned about the finer points of infection control, they drink out of the baby-sitter's cup, kiss him or her directly on the lips, and sneeze and cough directly into his or her face. During the 5 hours spent with the children, the baby-sitter is heavily invaded by the chickenpox virus (varicella-zoster) and will become sick with this disease

within 14 to 21 days. While the virus is growing and the disease is developing, the baby-sitter's white blood cells are taking part in antibody-antigen actions to prevent him or her from having chickenpox more than once.

Antigen recognition is the next step to begin making antibodies against an antigen. The unsensitized B-cell must first recognize the antigen as non-self. B-cells need the help of macrophages and helper/inducer T-cells to recognize an antigen.

Recognition is started by the macrophages. After the antigen surface has been altered by opsonization (see discussion of *adherence* on p. 308), the macrophage recognizes the invading antigen as non-self and physically attaches itself to the antigen. This attachment does not result in phagocytosis or in antigen destruction. Instead, the macrophage presents the attached antigen to the helper/inducer T-cell. Then, the helper/inducer T-cell and the macrophage together process the antigen to expose the antigen's recognition sites (universal product code). After processing the antigen, the helper/inducer T-cell brings the antigen into contact with the B-cell so that the B-cell can recognize the antigen as non-self.

Sensitization occurs when the B-cell recognizes the antigen as non-self and is now "sensitized" to this antigen. A single unsensitized B-cell can become sensitized only once. So, each B-cell can be sensitized to only one type of antigen.

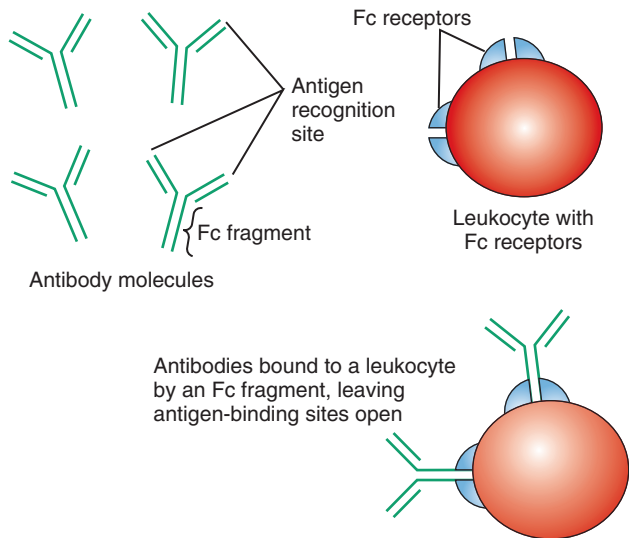


FIG. 19-9 Antibody structure and the Fc receptors on leukocytes.

Sensitizing allows this B-cell to respond to any substance that carries the same antigens (codes) as the original antigen. The sensitized B-cell always remains sensitized to that specific antigen. In addition, all cells produced by that sensitized B-cell also are already pre-sensitized to that same specific antigen.

Immediately after it is sensitized, the B-cell divides and forms two types of B-lymphocytes, each one remaining sensitized to that specific antigen (see Fig. 19-7). One new cell becomes a **plasma cell**, which starts immediately to produce antibodies against the sensitizing antigen. The other new cell becomes a memory cell. The **memory cell** is a sensitized B-cell but does not start to function until the next exposure to the same antigen (see discussion of *sustained immunity* [memory] on p. 312).

Antibody production and release allow the antibodies to search out specific antigens. Antibodies are produced by plasma cells. When fully stimulated, each plasma cell can make as many as 300 molecules of antibody per second. Each plasma cell produces antibody specific only to the antigen that originally sensitized the parent B-cell. For example, in the case of the baby-sitter who was exposed to and invaded by the chickenpox virus, the plasma cells from those B-cells sensitized to the chickenpox virus can make only anti-chickenpox antibodies. The antibody class (e.g., immunoglobulin G [IgG] or immunoglobulin M [IgM]) that the plasma cell produces may vary, but the antibody can be forever directed only against the chickenpox virus.

Antibody molecules made by plasma cells are released into the blood and other body fluids as free antibody. Each free antibody molecule remains in the blood for 3 to 30 days. Because the antibody is in body fluids (or body “humors”) and is separate from the B-cells, this type of immunity is sometimes called **humoral immunity** (Kaufman, 2011). *Circulating antibodies can be transferred from one person to another to provide the receiving person with immediate immunity of short duration.*

Antibody-antigen binding is needed for anti-antigen actions. Antibodies are Y-shaped molecules (Fig. 19-9). The tips of the short arms of the Y recognize the specific antigen

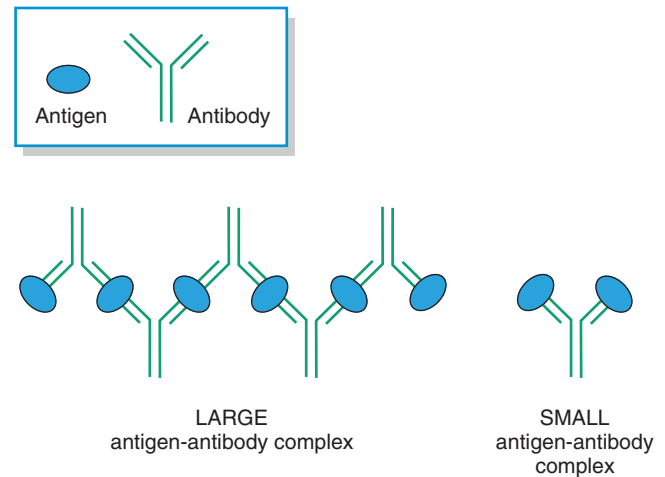


FIG. 19-10 Formation of large and small antigen-antibody complexes (immune complexes).

and bind to it. Because each antibody molecule has two tips (Fab fragments, or arms), each antibody can bind either to two separate antigens or to two areas of the same antigen.

The stem of the Y is the “Fc fragment.” This area can bind to Fc receptor sites on white blood cells (WBCs). The WBC then not only has its own means of attacking antigens but also has the added power of having surface antibodies that can stick to antigens (see Fig. 19-9).

The binding of antibody to antigen may not be lethal to the antigen. Instead, antibody-antigen binding starts other actions that neutralize, eliminate, or destroy the antigen.

Antibody-binding actions are triggered by binding of antibody to antigen. The resulting reactions neutralize, eliminate, or destroy the bound antigen. These actions include agglutination, lysis, complement fixation, precipitation, and inactivation or neutralization.

Agglutination is a clumping action that results from the antibody linking antigens together, forming large and small immune complexes (Fig. 19-10). Agglutination alone does not directly destroy the antigen, but it starts other defensive effects. It slows the movement of the antigen in body fluids. Also, the irregular shape of the antigen-antibody complex (see Fig. 19-10) allows that complex to be attacked more easily by macrophages and neutrophils.

Lysis is cell membrane destruction, and it occurs now because of antibody binding to membrane-bound antigens of some invaders. The actual binding makes holes in the invader’s membrane, weakening the invader. This response usually requires that complement be activated and “fixed” to the immune complex. Bacteria and viruses are the non-self cells that are damaged most through lysis caused by the binding of antibody to antigens.

Complement activation and fixation are actions triggered by some classes of antibodies that can remove or destroy antigen. (See discussion of *adherence* on p. 308 for an explanation of how complement assists in immunity.) The two classes of antibody that can activate the complement system are IgG and IgM. Binding of antibody from either of these classes to antigen provides a binding site for the first component of complement. Once the first complement molecule is activated, other proteins of the complement system are activated in a cascade.

Precipitation is similar to agglutination but has a larger response. With precipitation, antibody molecules bind so much antigen that large antigen-antibody complexes are formed. These complexes cannot stay in suspension in the blood. Instead, they form a large precipitate, which then can be acted on and removed by neutrophils and macrophages.

Inactivation (neutralization) is the process of making an antigen harmless without destroying it. Usually only a small area of the antigen, the active site, causes the harmful effects. The rest of the antigen may not be harmful to the host. When an antibody binds to an antigen and covers up the antigen's active site, the antigen is made harmless without destroying it.

Sustained immunity (memory) provides us with long-lasting immunity to a specific antigen. Sustained immunity results from memory B-cells made during the lymphocyte sensitization stage. These memory cells remain sensitized to the specific antigen to which they were originally exposed. On re-exposure to the same antigen, the memory cells rapidly respond by first dividing and forming new sensitized blast cells and plasma cells. The blast cells continue to divide, producing many more sensitized plasma cells. These new sensitized plasma cells rapidly make large amounts of the antibody specific for the sensitizing antigen.

This ability of the memory cells to respond on re-exposure to the same antigen that originally sensitized the B-cell allows a rapid and large immune (*anamnestic*) response to the antigen. Because so much antibody is made, often the invading organisms are removed completely and the person does not become ill. This process prevents people from becoming ill with chickenpox or any infectious disease more than once, even though they are exposed many times to the causative organism. Without immunologic memory, people would remain susceptible to specific diseases on subsequent exposure to the organisms and no long-term immunity would be generated (Abbas et al., 2010; McCance et al., 2010).

Antibody Classification

All antibodies are immunoglobulins, also called *gamma globulins*. These names are based on the structure and function of antibodies. A globulin is a protein that is globular rather than straight. Because antibodies are globular proteins, they are "globulins." The term **immunoglobulin** is used for antibodies because they are globular proteins that provide immunity. Antibodies also are called **gamma globulins** because all free antibodies in the plasma separate out in the gamma fraction of plasma proteins during electrophoresis. The five antibody types are classified by differences in size, location, amount, function, and timing (Table 19-4).

On first exposure to an antigen, the newly sensitized B-cell produces the IgM antibody type against the antigen. IgM is special because it forms itself into a five-member group. Each IgM group, then, has ten antigen binding sites. So, even though antibody production is slow on first exposure, the antibody type produced forms groups that are very efficient at antigen binding. This process ensures that the initial illness, like chickenpox, lasts only 5 to 10 days. On re-exposure to the same antigen, the already sensitized B-cell makes large amounts of the IgG type of antibody against that antigen. Although IgG does not form groups of five, the enormous amounts produced make IgG antibodies efficient at clearing the antigen and protecting the person from becoming ill with the disease again.

TABLE 19-4 ANTIBODY CLASSIFICATION

ANTIBODY	FUNCTION
IgA	"Secretory" antibody that forms a dimeric (two antibody group) structure Present in high concentrations in the secretions of mucous membranes and in the intestinal mucosa Very low circulating levels Most responsible for preventing infection in the upper and lower respiratory tracts, the GI tract, and the genitourinary tract
IgD	Present in low blood concentrations Co-expressed with IgM Acts as a receptor on unsensitized B-lymphocytes
IgE	Variable concentration in blood Associated with antibody-mediated hypersensitivity reactions Binds to mast cells and causes their degranulation when an allergen (antigen) binds to IgE antigen recognition sites
IgG	Composes at least 75% of circulating antibody population Is heavily expressed on second and subsequent exposures to antigens Is greatly responsible for providing sustained, long-term immunity against invading microorganisms Activates classic complement pathway, enhancing effectiveness of neutrophil and macrophage phagocytosis Involved in the antibody-dependent cell-mediated non-self cell killing action of natural killer cells
IgM	First antibody formed by a newly sensitized B-lymphocyte plasma cell Composes about 10% to 15% of circulating antibody population Especially effective at the antibody actions of agglutination and precipitation Largest antibody molecule forming a pentameric (five antibody group) structure with 10 potential binding sites Activates classic complement pathway

Acquiring Antibody-Mediated Immunity

Antibody-mediated immunity (AMI) is one type of adaptive immunity. **Adaptive immunity** is the immunity that a person's body learns to make (or can receive) as an adaptive response to invasion by organisms or foreign proteins. For example, antibody-mediated immunity is an acquired immunity. Adaptive immunity occurs either naturally or artificially through lymphocyte responses and can be either active or passive.

Active immunity occurs when antigens enter the body and the body responds by making specific antibodies against the antigen. This type of immunity is *active* because the body takes an active part in making antibodies. Active immunity occurs under natural or artificial conditions.

Natural active immunity occurs when an antigen enters the body without human assistance and the body responds by actively making antibodies against that antigen (e.g., chickenpox virus). Usually, the invasion that triggers antibody production also causes the disease. However, processes occurring in the body at the same time as infection create immunity to that antigen. Thus the person will not become ill after a second exposure to the same antigen. *This type of*

immunity is the most effective and the longest lasting (Abbas et al., 2010; McCance et al., 2010).

Artificial active immunity is the protection developed by vaccination or immunization. This type of immunity is used to prevent infections or illnesses (e.g., tetanus, diphtheria, polio) that have such serious consequences that avoiding the disease altogether is most desirable. Small amounts of specific antigens are placed as a vaccination into a person. The person's immune system responds by actively making antibodies against the antigen. Because antigens used for this procedure have been specially processed to make them less likely to grow in the body (**attenuated**), this exposure does not cause the disease. Artificial active immunity lasts many years, although repeated but smaller doses of the original antigen are required as a "booster" to retain the protection.

Passive immunity occurs when antibodies against an antigen are in a person's body but were not created there. Rather, these antibodies are transferred to the person's body after being made in the body of another person or animal. Because these antibodies are foreign to the receiving person, they are recognized as non-self and eliminated quickly. For this reason, passive immunity provides only immediate, short-term protection against a specific antigen.

Natural passive immunity occurs when antibodies are passed from the mother to the fetus via the placenta or to the infant through colostrum and breast milk.

Artificial passive immunity involves injecting a person with antibodies that were produced in another person or animal. This type of immunity is used when a person is exposed to a serious disease for which he or she has little or no actively acquired immunity. Instead, the injected antibodies are expected to inactivate the antigen. This type of immune protection is temporary, lasting only days to a few weeks. Artificial passive immunity may be used to prevent disease or death for patients exposed to rabies, tetanus, and poisonous snake bites.

AMI works with inflammation to protect against infection. However, AMI can provide the most effective long-lasting immunity only when its actions are combined with those of cell-mediated immunity.

Cell-Mediated Immunity

Cell-mediated immunity (CMI), or cellular immunity, involves many white blood cell (WBC) actions and interactions. This type of immunity, which is another type of adaptive or acquired true immunity, is provided by lymphocyte stem cells that mature in the secondary lymphoid tissues of the thymus and pericortical areas of lymph nodes (see Fig. 19-7). Certain CMI responses influence and regulate the activities of antibody-mediated immunity (AMI) and inflammation by producing and releasing cytokines. For total immunocompetence, then, CMI must function optimally.

Cell Types Involved in Cell-Mediated Immunity

The WBCs with the most important roles in CMI include several specific T-lymphocytes (T-cells) along with a special population of cells known as *natural killer (NK) cells*. T-cells have a variety of subsets, each of which has a specific function.

One way of identifying different T-cell subsets is to examine certain "marker proteins" (antigens) on the cell

membrane's surface. More than 200 different T-cell proteins have been identified on the cell membrane, and some of these are commonly used clinically to identify specific cells (Abbas et al., 2010). Antibodies have been made against each of these proteins. Thus each T-cell subset can be identified by its reaction to the commercial antibodies. Most T-cells have more than one antigen on their cell membrane. For example, all mature T-cells contain T1, T3, T10, and T11 proteins. Most T-cells also contain specific T-cell membrane antigens.

The names used to identify specific T-cell subsets include the specific membrane antigen and the overall actions of the cells in a subset. The three T-lymphocyte subsets that are critically important for the development and continuation of CMI are helper/inducer T-cells, suppressor T-cells, and cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells. An additional cell, the natural killer cell, although not a true T-cell, also contributes to CMI.

Helper/inducer T-cells have the T4 protein on their membranes. These cells are usually called *T4+ cells* or *T_H cells*. The most correct name for helper/inducer T-cells is *CD4+* (cluster of differentiation 4). Formerly, T4 cells have been referred to as cells that are *OKT4 positive* or *Leu-3 positive* because of the specific antigens on their membrane surfaces.

Helper/inducer T-cells easily recognize self cells versus non-self cells. In response to the recognition of non-self (antigen), helper/inducer T-cells secrete lymphokines that can enhance the activity of other WBCs.

Most lymphokines secreted by the helper/inducer T-cells increase immune function. These lymphokines increase bone marrow production of stem cells and speed up their maturation. Thus helper/inducer T-cells act as organizers in "calling to arms" various squads of WBCs involved in inflammatory, antibody, and cellular protective actions to destroy or neutralize antigens.

Suppressor T-cells have the T8-lymphocyte antigen on membrane surfaces. These cells are commonly called *T8+ cells*, *CD8+ cells*, or *T_S-cells*. Suppressor T-cells help regulate CMI.

Suppressor T-cells prevent **hypersensitivity** (immune overreactions) on exposure to non-self cells or proteins. This function is important in preventing the formation of antibodies directed against normal, healthy self cells, which is the basis for many autoimmune diseases (McCance et al., 2010).

The suppressor T-cells secrete lymphokines that have an overall *inhibitory* action on most cells of the immune system. These lymphokines inhibit both the growth and activation of immune system cells.

Suppressor T-cells have the opposite action of helper/inducer T-cells. For optimal function of CMI, then, a balance between helper/inducer T-cell activity and suppressor T-cell activity must be maintained. This balance occurs when the helper/inducer T-cells outnumber the suppressor T-cells by a ratio of 2:1. When this ratio increases, indicating that helper/inducer T-cells vastly outnumber the suppressor cells, overreactions can occur, some of which are tissue damaging as well as unpleasant. When the helper-suppressor ratio decreases, indicating fewer-than-normal helper/inducer T-cells, immune function is suppressed and the person's risk for infections increases.

Cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells are also called *T_C-cells*. Because they have the T8 protein present on their surfaces, they are a subset of suppressor cells. Cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells destroy cells that contain a processed antigen's human

leukocyte antigens (HLAs). This activity is most effective against self cells infected by parasites, such as viruses or protozoa.

Parasite-infected self cells have both self HLA proteins (universal product code) and the parasite's antigens on the cell surface. This allows the person's immune system cells to recognize the infected self cell as abnormal, and the cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell can bind to it.

When the cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell binds to the infected cell's HLAs, the cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell makes holes in the membrane of the infected cell and delivers a "lethal hit" of enzymes to the infected cell, causing it to lyse and die. Once the lethal hit has been delivered to the infected cell, the cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell releases the dying infected cell and can then attack and destroy other infected cells that express the same antigen HLAs.

Natural killer (NK) cells are also known as *CD16+ cells* and are very important in providing CMI. The actual site of NK cell differentiation and maturation is unknown. Although this cell type has some T-cell features, it is not a true T-cell subset (Abbas et al., 2010).

NK cells have direct cytotoxic effects on some non-self cells without first being sensitized. These killing actions of NK cells are in addition to the interactions of other WBCs. NK cells conduct "seek and destroy" missions in the body to eliminate non-self cells.

NK cells are most effective in destroying unhealthy or abnormal self cells. The non-self cells most often harmed by NK cells are cancer cells and virally infected body cells.

Cytokines

Cell-mediated immunity (CMI) regulates the immune system by the production and activity of cytokines. **Cytokines** are small protein hormones produced by the many WBCs (and some other tissues). Cytokines made by the macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils, and monocytes are called **monokines**. Cytokines produced by T-cells are called **lymphokines**.

Cytokines work like hormones: one cell produces a cytokine, which in turn exerts its effects on other cells of the immune system and on other body cells. The cells responding to the cytokine may be located close to or remote from the cytokine-secreting cell. Thus cytokines act like "messengers" that tell specific cells how and when to respond. The cells that change their activity when a cytokine is present are "responder" cells. For a responder cell to respond to the presence of a cytokine, the responder cell must have a specific receptor to which the cytokine can bind. Once the cytokine binds to its receptor, the responder cell changes its activity.

Cytokines control many inflammatory and immune responses and are controlled by interactions with other systems, especially the nervous system. Some cytokines are *pleiotropic* (their effects are widespread within the immune system) and set into motion many different immune actions. Other cytokines have specific actions limited to only one type of cell. Cytokines include the interleukins, interferons, colony-stimulating factors, and tumor necrosis factor. The interleukins are the largest group of cytokines, with interleukin-33 (IL-33) being the most recently defined. Although there are many cytokines, not all are clinically useful at this time; however, this is an area of continuing research and discovery. Table 19-5 lists the cytokines that have current clinical

TABLE 19-5 ACTIVITY OF SELECTED CYTOKINES

CYTOKINE	ACTIONS
Pro-inflammatory Cytokines	
Interleukin-1 (IL-1)	Induces fever Stimulates production of prostaglandins Increases growth of CD4+ T-cells
Interleukin-2 (IL-2)	Increases growth and differentiation of T-lymphocytes Enhances natural killer cell activity against cancer cells
Interleukin-6 (IL-6)	Stimulates liver to produce fibrinogen and protein C Increases rate of bone marrow production of stem cells Increases numbers of sensitized B-lymphocytes
Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF)	Induces fever Major cytokine involved in rheumatoid arthritis damage Major cytokine involved in the acute inflammatory response to infectious bacteria and starts many of the systemic complications of severe infection or sepsis Increases leukocyte adhesion Participates in graft rejection Induces cachexia and muscle breakdown Induces cell death Stimulates delayed hypersensitivity reactions and allergy
Growth Factors	
Granulocyte Colony-Stimulating Factor (G-CSF)	Increases numbers and maturity of neutrophils
Granulocyte-Macrophage Colony-Stimulating Factor (GM-CSF)	Increases growth and maturation of myeloid stem cells
Erythropoietin	Increases growth and differentiation of erythrocytes
Thrombopoietin	Increases growth and differentiation of platelets

importance. Chapters discussing specific diseases (e.g., lymphoma, rheumatoid arthritis) caused by or treated with certain cytokines have more information about the role of specific cytokines in the disease and its treatment.

Protection Provided by Cell-Mediated Immunity

Cell-mediated immunity (CMI) helps protect the body through the ability to differentiate self from non-self. The non-self cells most easily recognized by CMI are cancer cells and those self cells infected by organisms that live within host cells. CMI watches for and rids the body of self cells that might potentially harm the body. *CMI is important in preventing the development of cancer and metastasis after exposure to carcinogens.*

Transplant Rejection

Natural killer (NK) cells and cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells also destroy cells from other people or animals. Although this action is normal and is usually helpful, it is also responsible

for rejection of tissue grafts and transplanted organs (also termed *grafts*). Because the solid organ transplanted into the recipient is seldom a perfectly identical match of human leukocyte antigens (unless the organ is obtained from an identical sibling) between the donated organ and the recipient host, the patient's immune system cells recognize a newly transplanted organ as non-self. Without intervention, the recipient's immune system starts inflammatory and immunologic actions to destroy or eliminate these non-self cells. This activity causes rejection of the transplanted organ. Rejection of transplanted solid organs and other grafts is a result of a complex series of responses that change over time and involve different components of the immune system. Rejection can be hyperacute, acute, or chronic.

Hyperacute Rejection

Hyperacute rejection begins immediately on transplantation and is an antibody-mediated response. Antigen-antibody complexes form in the blood vessels of the transplanted organ. The recipient's (host's) blood has pre-existing antibodies to one or more of the antigens (including blood group antigens) present in the donated organ. The antigen-antibody complexes adhere to the lining of blood vessels and activate complement. The activated complement in the blood vessel linings triggers the blood clotting cascade, causing small clots to form throughout the new organ. Widespread clotting occludes blood vessels and leads to ischemic necrosis, inflammation with phagocytosis of the necrotic blood vessels, and release of lytic enzymes into the new organ. These enzymes cause massive cellular destruction within the transplanted organ and graft loss.

Hyperacute rejection occurs mostly in transplanted kidneys but is less common now as a result of greater efforts in HLA matching. The patients at greatest risk for hyperacute rejection are those who have received donated organs of an ABO blood type different from their own, have received multiple blood transfusions at any time in life before transplantation, have a history of multiple pregnancies, or have received a previous transplant.

The manifestations of hyperacute rejection are apparent within minutes of attachment of the donated organ to the recipient's blood supply. The process cannot be stopped once it has started, and the rejected organ is removed as soon as hyperacute rejection is diagnosed.

Acute Rejection

Acute rejection first occurs within 1 week to 3 months after transplantation and may occur sporadically after that. Two mechanisms are responsible. The first mechanism is antibody mediated and results in vasculitis within the transplanted organ. This reaction differs from hyperacute rejection in that blood vessel necrosis (not occlusion) leads to organ destruction.

The second mechanism is cellular. The recipient's cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells and NK cells enter the transplanted organ through the blood, penetrate the organ cells, start an inflammatory response, and cause lysis of the organ cells (Abbas et al., 2010).

Diagnosis of acute rejection is made by laboratory tests that show impaired function of the donated organ and by biopsy of the donated organ. Symptoms of acute rejection vary with each patient and with the specific organ

transplanted. For example, when acute rejection occurs in a transplanted kidney, the patient usually has some tenderness in the kidney area and may have other general symptoms of inflammation.

An episode of acute rejection after solid organ transplantation does not automatically mean that the patient will lose the new organ. Drug management of the recipient's immune responses at this time may limit the damage to the organ and allow the graft to be maintained.

Chronic Rejection

The origin of *chronic rejection* is not clear, but it is similar to chronic inflammation and scarring. The smooth muscles of blood vessels overgrow and occlude the vessels. The donated organ tissues are replaced with fibrotic, scarlike tissue. Because this fibrotic tissue is not organ tissue, the transplanted organ's function is reduced in proportion to the amount of normal tissue that is replaced by fibrotic tissue. This type of reaction is long-standing and occurs continuously as a response to chronic ischemia caused by blood vessel injury. The results of chronic rejection are unique to different transplanted organs. For example, in transplanted lungs, chronic rejection thickens small airways. In transplanted livers, chronic rejection destroys bile ducts. In transplanted hearts, this process is called *accelerated graft atherosclerosis (AGA)* and is the major cause of death in patients who have survived 1 or more years after heart transplantation.

Although good control over the recipient's immune function can delay this type of rejection, the process probably occurs to some degree with all transplanted solid organs obtained from donors who are not identical siblings of the recipients. Because the fibrotic changes are permanent, there is no cure for chronic graft rejection. When the fibrosis increases to the extent that the transplanted organ can no longer function, the only recourse is retransplantation.

Management of Transplant Rejection

Rejection of transplanted solid organs involves all three components of immunity, although cell-mediated immune (CMI) responses contribute the most to the rejection process.

Maintenance therapy is the continuous immunosuppression used after a solid organ transplant. The drugs used for routine therapy after solid organ transplantation are combinations of specific immunosuppressants (cyclosporine [Sandimmune, Neoral, Gengraf]); less specific immunosuppressants (azathioprine [Imuran] or mycophenolate [CellCept, Myfortic]); and one of the corticosteroids, such as prednisone (Apo-Prednisone, Deltasone) or prednisolone (Delta-Cortef). Cyclosporine induces the specific and effective suppression of rejection. This drug, however, induces major long-term adverse actions and is expensive. A new similar drug under investigation is gusperimus (Spanidin). The dosage of all immunosuppressive agents is adjusted to the immune response of each patient. Treatment with these agents increases the risk for bacterial and fungal infections and for cancer development.

Tacrolimus (Prograf) is similar to erythromycin and specifically suppresses T-cell actions, including production of interleukin-2 (IL-2). These effects occur through several mechanisms. Without continuous stimulation by IL-2, helper/inducer T-cells and cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells are slow to reproduce and do not perform their usual functions.

Suppression of these two cell populations allows the donated organ to remain free from immunologic destruction. The general immunosuppression is not as profound, and the patient's risk for infection is not greatly increased. Tacrolimus also prevents activation of unsensitized cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cells. Other drugs with similar actions include sirolimus (Rapamune) and the investigational drug everolimus (Certican).

Another approach to prevent transplant rejection for patients undergoing kidney transplantation is the use of monoclonal antibodies directed against the IL-2 receptor site on activated T-cells (especially helper/inducer T-cells). These antibodies, basiliximab (Simulect) or daclizumab (Zenapax), are given IV within 2 hours before the transplant surgery and within the first few days after the surgery. By binding the antibodies to the IL-2 receptor site, T-cell growth and activation are reduced for several months.

A drug used as cancer therapy, bortezomib (Velcade), is under investigation as a potential antirejection drug for kidney transplant. It is a proteasome inhibitor that works by inhibiting a large complex of proteins in cell fluid (cytoplasm) that regulate the expression of substances that promote cell division. This drug appears to work against transplant rejection by causing immunosuppression and possibly by reducing scar tissue formation stimulated by inflammatory responses.

Rescue therapy is used to treat acute rejection episodes. These agents may be used in addition to or in place of the maintenance drugs in the patient's normal treatment regimen.

Antilymphocyte globulin (ALG) is an antibody (or group of antibodies) produced in an animal (e.g., mouse, horse, rabbit) after the animal has been exposed to human

lymphocytes. The globulin can be made more specific by exposing the animal to human T-cells instead of mixed lymphocytes. When these antihuman lymphocyte antibodies are given to humans, the antibodies selectively attack and clear lymphocytes from body fluids, blood, and the transplanted organ. These agents are given only for a short time to combat the acute rejection episode because of the immunologic side effects, ranging from low-grade fever and malaise to serum sickness and anaphylaxis. The side effects usually increase in intensity on repeated exposure to ALG.

Muromonab-CD3 (OKT3) is an antibody directed specifically against the human T-cell cell-surface antigen CD3. This antibody is generated in mice rather than in horses. Because the agent is generated in mice, the patients receiving it rapidly develop antimouse antibodies. These antimouse antibodies attack the CD3 and prevent its anti-T-cell activities. This antibody is most effective against rejection during the first episode in which it is used. Its effectiveness in combating graft rejection decreases with each use. Like ALG, this drug is given only for a short time to combat the acute rejection episode because of the immunologic side effects, which increase in intensity on repeated exposure.

Antibodies made in other animals, especially mice, cause side effects in humans because the animal proteins in the antibodies are recognized as foreign by the human immune system. The incidence of side effects is decreasing because newer antibodies have been "humanized." This process removes most of the mouse-specific proteins from the antibody and replaces them with human-specific proteins. Many humanized antibodies made by mice now contain up to 95% human proteins rather than mouse proteins and some are fully humanized, containing no mouse proteins.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Physiological Integrity

- Inflammation and immunity are provided through the actions and products of white blood cells (WBCs), also called *leukocytes*.
- Different types of WBCs provide different types of immune or inflammatory protection.
- The differential of the WBC count can be used to determine the patient's risk for infection, the presence or absence of infection, the presence or absence of an allergic reaction, and whether an infection is bacterial or viral.
- WBCs are the only body cells able to recognize non-self cells and to attack them.
- Self-tolerance is the special ability of WBCs to recognize healthy self cells and not attempt to attack or destroy them.
- Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs) are a person's tissue type and are inherited from parents.
- Immunocompetence requires that all three parts of inflammation and immunity have optimal functioning.
- Inflammation is a general, nonspecific protective response.

- The five cardinal manifestations of inflammation are redness, warmth, swelling, pain, and loss of function.
- Inflammation and infection are not the same thing. Infection almost always is accompanied by inflammation, but inflammation often occurs without infection.
- The tissue responses to inflammation are helpful if confined to the area of invasion or infection and do not extend beyond the acute phase.
- Chronic inflammation can damage tissues and reduce function.
- The cells and actions of cell-mediated immunity control and coordinate the entire inflammatory and immune responses.
- Inflammatory protection cannot be transferred from one person to another.
- Immune function declines with age, making the older adult at increased risk for infection and cancer development.
- Antibody-mediated immunity (also known as *humoral immunity*) can be transferred from one person or animal to another.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Antibodies transferred from one person into another person have a short-term effect.
- Natural, active immunity is the most beneficial and long-lasting type of immunity.
- Vaccinations cause artificial active immunity and require “boosting” for best long-term effects.
- A person’s normal membrane proteins would be antigens in another person.
- Transplant rejection is a normal response of the immune system that can damage or destroy the transplanted organ.
- Patients who receive transplanted organs (unless from an identical sibling) need to take immunosuppressive drugs daily to prevent transplant rejection.
- Patients who take immunosuppressive drugs have an increased risk for infection and cancer development.

CHAPTER

20

Care of Patients with Arthritis and Other Connective Tissue Diseases

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with members of the health care team when providing care to patients with arthritis or other connective tissue disease (CTD).
2. Prioritize collaborative interventions for patients with osteoarthritis (OA) and rheumatoid arthritis (RA).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Identify community resources to help patients achieve or maintain independence in ADLs.
4. Identify risk factors for the development of arthritis and other CTDs.
5. Teach patients how to protect and exercise their joints and conserve their energy.
6. Teach patients how to prevent Lyme disease and detect it early if it occurs.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Assess the patient's and family's response to arthritis or other CTD, their support systems, and available resources.
8. Assess the patient's and family's sources of stress and coping mechanisms when living with arthritis or other CTD.

Physiological Integrity

9. Compare and contrast the pathophysiology and clinical manifestations of OA and RA.

10. Interpret laboratory findings for patients with RA and other autoimmune CTDs.
11. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology to monitor for and prevent complications of total hip and knee arthroplasty.
12. Teach patients and their families about the postoperative care required after a total joint arthroplasty.
13. Provide information for patients and families about the use and side effects of drug therapy for arthritis or other CTD.
14. Identify the nursing implications associated with drug therapy for patients with rheumatoid arthritis and other CTDs.
15. Evaluate and document patient response to drug therapy.
16. Differentiate between discoid lupus erythematosus and systemic lupus erythematosus.
17. Prioritize nursing interventions for patients who have systemic sclerosis.
18. Describe the patient-centered collaborative care of gout based on knowledge of pathophysiology.
19. Explain the differences between polymyositis, systemic necrotizing vasculitis, polymyalgia rheumatica, ankylosing spondylitis, Reiter's syndrome, and Sjögren's syndrome.
20. Describe current treatment strategies for patients with fibromyalgia syndrome and psoriatic arthritis.

Connective tissue disease (CTD) is the major focus of *rheumatology*, the study of rheumatic disease. A **rheumatic disease** is any disease or condition involving the musculoskeletal system. In this text, CTDs are discussed separately from other musculoskeletal conditions because most CTDs are classified as autoimmune disorders. In autoimmune disease, antibodies attack healthy normal cells and tissues. For reasons that are unclear, the immune system does not recognize body cells as self and therefore triggers an immune response. The usual *protective* nature of the immune system does not function properly in patients with autoimmune CTDs.

Most common CTDs are characterized by chronic pain and progressive joint deterioration, which results in decreased function. Some of these disorders have additional localized clinical manifestations, whereas others are systemic. The economic and social costs of these diseases are staggering and will increase steadily as “baby boomers” continue to age. Patient care usually requires an interdisciplinary approach, including medicine, surgery, nursing, rehabilitation therapy, and/or case management.

More than 46 million people in the United States have at least one of more than 100 types of CTDs, or “arthritis.” **Arthritis** means inflammation of one or more joints. In clinical practice, however, arthritis is categorized as either noninflammatory or inflammatory. Noninflammatory, localized arthritis such as osteoarthritis (OA) is not systemic; OA is not an autoimmune disease. Systemic autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) are inflammatory disorders.

OSTEOARTHRITIS

Pathophysiology

Osteoarthritis is the most common arthritis and a major cause of disability among adults in the United States and the world. It is sometimes called *osteoarthrosis* or *degenerative joint disease (DJD)*.

Osteoarthritis is the progressive deterioration and loss of cartilage in one or more joints (articular cartilage). Articular cartilage, also known as *hyaline cartilage*, contains 65% to 80% water. The remaining components form a matrix of:

- Proteoglycans (glycoproteins containing chondroitin, keratin sulfate, and other substances)
- Collagen (elastic substance)
- Chondrocytes (cartilage-forming cells)

As people age or experience joint trauma, proteoglycans decrease. The production of synovial fluid, which provides joint lubrication and nutrition, also declines because of the decreased synthesis of hyaluronic acid and less body fluid in the older adult.

In patients of any age with OA, enzymes, such as stromelysin, break down the articular matrix. In early disease, the cartilage changes from its normal bluish white, translucent color to an opaque and yellowish brown appearance. As cartilage and the bone beneath the cartilage begin to erode, the joint space narrows and **osteophytes** (bone spurs) form (Fig. 20-1). As the disease progresses, fissures, calcifications, and ulcerations develop and the cartilage thins. Inflammatory cytokines (enzymes) such as interleukin-1 (IL-1) enhance this deterioration. The body’s normal repair process cannot

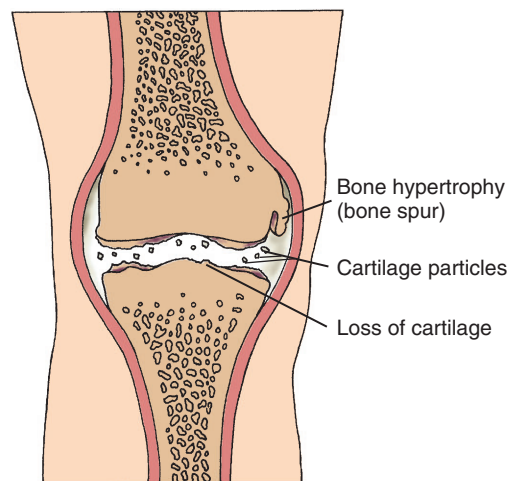


FIG. 20-1 Joint changes in degenerative joint disease.

overcome the rapid process of degeneration (McCance et al., 2010).

Eventually the cartilage disintegrates and pieces of bone and cartilage “float” in the diseased joint causing **crepitus**, a grating sound caused by the loosened bone and cartilage. The resulting joint pain and stiffness can lead to decreased mobility and muscle atrophy. Muscle tissue helps support joints, particularly those that bear weight (e.g., hips, knees).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The cause of OA is a combination of many factors. For patients with *primary* OA, the disease may be triggered by aging, genetic changes, obesity, and/or smoking. Weight-bearing joints (hips and knees), the vertebral column, and the hands are most commonly affected, probably because they are used most often or bear the mechanical stress of body weight and many years of use.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Some patients report a family history of OA, which supports a possible genetic cause, especially for women. Genetic changes may contribute to cartilage destruction, osteophyte formation, or the inability of the cartilage to repair itself.

A classic study reported by Sunk et al. (2007) found a specific genetic link in OA of the knee. They reported that an increase in *discoidin domain receptor 2 (DDR-2)* expression in diseased joint cartilage was correlated with the degree of tissue damage. The authors concluded that this change occurs after the decrease in proteoglycans from aging. Studies are being conducted to further explore the genetic factors related to OA.

Other factors that can lead to OA are obesity and smoking. Obesity causes joint degeneration, particularly in the knees. Smoking leads to knee cartilage loss, especially in patients with a family history of knee OA. This finding shows a gene-environment interaction in the cause of knee OA (Ding et al., 2007).

Secondary OA occurs less often than primary disease and can result from other musculoskeletal conditions, such as rheumatoid arthritis. Trauma to the joints from excessive use or abuse also predisposes a person to OA. Certain heavy manual occupations (e.g., carpet laying, construction, farming) cause high-intensity or repetitive stress to the joints.

The risk for hip and knee OA is also increased in professional athletes, especially football players, runners, and gymnasts.

In a small percentage of people, congenital anomalies, trauma, and joint sepsis can result in *secondary* OA. For example, injuries or joint surgeries resulting from motor vehicle crashes or falls can cause OA in later years. Certain metabolic diseases (e.g., diabetes mellitus, Paget's disease of the bone) and blood disorders (e.g., hemophilia, sickle cell disease) can also cause joint degeneration.

Incidence and Prevalence

The prevalence of OA varies among different populations but is a universal problem. Most people older than 60 years have joint changes that can be seen on x-ray examination, although not all of those people actually develop the disease. According to Arthritis Foundation estimates, 16 million women older than 40 years have OA compared with 11 million men. Although the cause for this difference is not known, a contributing factor is probably obesity. As women age and have children, they tend to gain more weight than men.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Based on the contributing factors for OA development, several lifestyle changes can help prevent or slow joint degeneration. These practices include:

- Keep body weight within normal limits; obesity causes excess wear on joints, especially hips and knees.
- Stop or do not start smoking.
- Avoid or limit activities that promote stress on joints, unless absolutely necessary.
- Limit participation in recreational sports that can damage joints, such as football.
- Wear supportive shoes to prevent falls and damage to foot joints, especially metatarsal joints.
- Do not perform repetitive stress activities, such as knitting or typing, for prolonged periods.
- Avoid risk-taking activities to prevent trauma that can result in OA later in life.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Patients with OA usually seek medical attention in ambulatory care settings for their joint pain. However, you will also care for those who have OA as a secondary diagnosis in acute and chronic care facilities. Ask the patient about the course of the disease. Collect information specifically related to OA, such as the nature and location of joint pain and how much pain he or she is experiencing. *Remember that older patients may underreport pain, resulting in inadequate pain management.* Use a 0-to-10 scale or other assessment tool to assess pain intensity. Chapter 5 discusses pain assessment in detail.

Other questions to ask include:

- If joint stiffness has occurred, where and for how long?
- When and where has any joint swelling occurred?
- What do you do to control the pain or stiffness?
- Do you have any loss of function or difficulty in performing ADLs?

Because this disease occurs more often in older women, age and gender are important factors for the nursing history. Ask patients about their occupation, nature of work, history of trauma or falls, weight history, smoking history, and current or previous involvement in sports, because these are all risk factors for the disease. A history of obesity is significant, even for those currently within the ideal range for body weight. Document any family history of arthritis. Determine whether the patient has a current or previous medical condition that may cause joint symptoms.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

In the early stage of the disease, the clinical manifestations of OA may appear similar to those of rheumatoid arthritis (RA). The distinction between OA and RA becomes more evident as the disease progresses. Table 20-1 compares the major characteristics of both diseases and their common drug therapy.

The typical patient with OA is a middle-aged or older woman who reports *chronic joint pain and stiffness*. Early in the course of the disease, the pain diminishes after rest and worsens after activity. Later the pain occurs with slight motion or even when at rest. Because cartilage has no nerve supply, the pain is probably caused by joint and soft-tissue involvement and by spasms of the surrounding muscles. During the joint examination, the patient may have pain or tenderness by palpation or by putting the joint through range of motion. Crepitus may be felt or heard as the joint goes through range of motion. One or more joints may be affected. The patient may also report joint stiffness that usually lasts less than 30 minutes after a period of inactivity.

On inspection, the joint is often enlarged because of bony hypertrophy. The joint feels hard on palpation. Although not common, the presence of inflammation in patients with OA indicates a secondary synovitis. About half of patients with hand involvement have **Heberden's nodes** (at the distal interphalangeal [DIP] joints) and **Bouchard's nodes** (at the proximal interphalangeal [PIP] joints). Although OA is *not* a bilateral, symmetric disease, these large bony nodes appear on both hands, especially in women. The nodes may be painful and red. Some patients experience pain in developing nodes or when nodes are palpated. These deformities tend to be familial and are often a cosmetic concern to patients.

Joint effusions (excess joint fluid) are common when the knees are involved. When trying to differentiate the presence of fluid from subcutaneous tissue, you may be able to move fluid from the **infrapatellar notch** (the area directly below the knee) into the **suprapatellar area** (directly above the knee).

Observe any *atrophy of skeletal muscle* from disuse. The vicious pain cycle of the disease discourages the movement of painful joints, which may result in contractures, muscle atrophy, and further pain. *Loss of function* may result, depending on which joints are involved. Hip or knee pain may cause the patient to limp and restrict walking distance.

Osteoarthritis (OA) can affect the spine, especially the lumbar region at the L3-4 level or the cervical region at C4-6 (neck). Compression of spinal nerve roots may occur as a result of vertebral facet bone spurs. The patient typically reports radiating pain, stiffness, and muscle spasms in one or both extremities.

TABLE 20-1 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS AND OSTEOARTHRITIS

CHARACTERISTIC	RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS	OSTEOARTHRITIS
Typical onset (age)	35-45 yr	Older than 60 yr
Gender affected	Female (3:1)	Female (2:1)
Risk factors or cause	Autoimmune (genetic basis) Emotional stress (triggers exacerbation) Environmental factors	Aging Genetic factor (possible) Obesity Trauma Occupation
Disease process	Inflammatory	Degenerative
Disease pattern	Bilateral, symmetric, multiple joints Usually affects upper extremities first Distal interphalangeal joints of hands spared Systemic	May be unilateral, single joint Affects weight-bearing joints and hands, spine Metacarpophalangeal joints spared Nonsystemic
Laboratory findings	Elevated rheumatoid factor, antinuclear antibody, ESR	Normal or slightly elevated ESR
Common drug therapy	NSAIDs (short-term use) Methotrexate Leflunomide (Arava) Corticosteroids Biological response modifiers Other immunosuppressive agents	NSAIDs (short-term use) Acetaminophen Other analgesics

ESR, Erythrocyte sedimentation rate; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

Severe pain and deformity interfere with ambulation and self-care. In addition to performing a musculoskeletal assessment, collaborate with the physical and occupational therapists to conduct a functional assessment. Assess the patient's mobility and ability to perform ADLs. [Chapter 8](#) describes functional assessment.

Psychosocial Assessment

OA is a chronic condition that may cause permanent changes in lifestyle. An inability to care for oneself in advanced disease can result in role changes and other losses. Constant pain interferes with quality of life. Chronic pain can also affect sexuality. Patients may not have the energy for sexual intercourse or may find positioning uncomfortable ([Gevirtz, 2008](#)).

Patients with continuous pain from arthritis may develop depression or anxiety. The patient may also have a role change in the family, workplace, or both. To identify changes that have been or need to be made, ask his or her roles before the disease developed. Identify coping strategies to help live with the disease. Ask the patient about his or her expectations regarding treatment for OA.

In addition to role changes, joint deformities and bony nodules often alter body image and self-esteem. Observe the patient's response to body changes. Does he or she ignore them or seem overly occupied with them? Ask the patients directly how they perceive their body image. Document your assessment findings in the interdisciplinary health care record per agency policy.

Laboratory Assessment

The health care provider uses the history and physical examination to make the diagnosis of OA. The results of routine laboratory tests are usually normal but can be helpful in screening for associated conditions. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP) may be slightly elevated when secondary synovitis

(synovial inflammation) occurs. The ESR also tends to rise with age, infection, and other inflammatory disorders.

Imaging Assessment

Routine x-rays are useful in determining structural joint changes. Specialized views are obtained when the disease cannot be visualized on standard x-ray film but is suspected. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be used to determine vertebral or knee involvement.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with osteoarthritis (OA) are:

1. Chronic Pain related to cartilage deterioration
2. Decreased mobility related to joint pain and muscle atrophy

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

In 2008, the Osteoarthritis Research Society International (OARSI) group published evidence-based expert consensus guidelines for patients with knee and hip OA ([Zhang et al., 2008](#)). These interdisciplinary best practice guidelines have major implications for nursing care and are reflected in the following discussion.

Managing Chronic Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with OA is expected to have pain control that is acceptable to the patient (e.g., at a 3 on a pain intensity scale of 0 to 10).

Interventions. Optimal management of patients with OA requires drug therapy and nonpharmacologic measures. If these measures are ineffective, surgery may be performed to reduce pain ([Zhang et al., 2008](#)). Perform a pain assessment before and after implementing interventions.

Nonsurgical Management. Management of chronic joint pain is difficult for both the patient and the health care

professional. A combination of modalities is often used, including analgesics, rest, positioning, thermal modalities, weight control, and integrative therapies. **Chapter 5** elaborates on methods of pain control for chronic pain.

Drug Therapy. The purpose of drug therapy is to reduce pain caused by cartilage destruction, muscle spasm, and/or secondary joint inflammation. The American Pain Society recommends regular *acetaminophen* (Tylenol, Atasol 🍀) as the primary drug of choice because OA is not a primary anti-inflammatory disorder.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Patients are at risk for liver damage if they take more than 4000 mg daily of acetaminophen, have alcoholism, or have liver disease. Older adults are particularly at risk because of normal changes of aging, such as slowed excretion of drug metabolites. Remind patients to read the labels of over-the-counter (OTC) or prescription drugs that could contain acetaminophen before taking them. Teach them that their liver enzyme levels will be monitored while taking this drug.

Topical drug applications may help with temporary relief of pain. Prescription lidocaine 5% patches (Lidoderm) have been approved by the Federal Drug Administration (FDA) for postherpetic neuralgia (nerve pain) but may also relieve joint pain (especially the knee) for some patients. Teach the patient to apply the patch on clean, intact skin for 12 hours each day. Up to three patches may be applied to painful joints at one time. Remind him or her that Lidoderm can cause skin irritation. Teach the patient that the lidocaine patch is contraindicated in those on class I antidysrhythmics. Topical salicylates, such as OTC Aspercreme patch, gel, or cream, are also useful for some patients as a temporary pain reliever, especially for knee pain.

If acetaminophen or topical agents do not relieve pain, the analgesic drug class of choice may be *nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)* if the patient can tolerate them (see **Chart 20-9** later in this chapter). Before beginning NSAID therapy, baseline laboratory information is obtained, including a complete blood count (CBC) and kidney and liver function tests. Celecoxib (Celebrex), a COX-2 inhibitor, is usually the first choice unless the patient has hypertension, renal disease, or cardiovascular disease.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

All of the COX-2 inhibiting drugs are thought to cause cardiovascular disease, such as myocardial infarction, and renal problems. All of these drugs may be unavailable at some time in the future. Older NSAIDs, such as ibuprofen, can cause severe GI side effects, bleeding, and acute renal failure. Teach your patient about adverse effects from NSAIDs and the need to report them to his or her health care provider. Examples include having dark, tarry stools; shortness of breath; and frequent dyspepsia (indigestion).

For temporary relief of pain in a single joint, the health care provider may inject an individual joint with cortisone. Patients may have the same joint injected up to four times a year, or once every 3 months. Frequently injected joints

include the knee, base of the thumb, shoulder, and trochanteric bursa, which people often call the *hip*.

Other agents, such as hyaluronate (Hyalgan) and hylan GF 20 (Synvisc), are specific injections for knee and hip pain associated with OA. These synthetic joint fluid implants replace or supplement the body's natural hyaluronic acid, which is broken down by inflammation and aging.

Muscle relaxants, such as cyclobenzaprine hydrochloride (Flexeril), are sometimes given for painful muscle spasms, especially those occurring in the back from OA of the vertebral column. These drugs should be used with caution in older adults because they can cause acute confusion. *Remind the patient not to drive or operate dangerous machinery when taking muscle relaxants.*

Nonpharmacologic Interventions. In addition to analgesics, many nonpharmacologic measures can be used for patients with OA, such as rest balanced with exercise, joint positioning, heat or cold applications, weight control, and a variety of complementary and alternative therapies. Several types of rest are used to treat patients with OA:

- **Local rest** involves immobilizing any unstable joint, most often the knee, with a brace or splint. Knee braces improve balance, prevent falls, and decrease pain. If needed, the patient should use an ambulatory aid, such as a cane, to decrease stress on weight-bearing joints. *The cane should be used on the strongest side of the body.* Collaborate with the physical therapist (PT) to fit the patient for the appropriate device and explain its use.
- **Systemic rest** refers to immobilizing the entire body, such as during a nap. Teach the patient about the importance of sleeping about 8 to 10 hours and, if possible, resting an additional 1 to 2 hours each day.
- **Psychological rest** is equally important because it allows relief from the daily stresses that can enhance pain.

Teach the patient to *position joints in their functional position*. For example, when in a supine position (recumbent), he or she should use a small pillow under the head or neck but avoid the use of other pillows. The use of large pillows under the knees or head may result in flexion contractures. If needed, the legs may be elevated 8 to 12 inches (20 to 30 cm) to reduce back discomfort. Remind him or her to use proper posture when standing and sitting to reduce undue strain on the vertebral column. Teach the patient to wear supportive shoes; foot insoles may be helpful to relieve pressure on painful metatarsal joints. Collaborate with the PT to plan a program for muscle-strengthening exercises to better support the joints.

Most patients apply *heat* or *cold* for temporary relief of pain, but not all patients find these modalities effective. Heat may help decrease the muscle tension around the tender joint and thereby decrease pain. Suggest hot showers and baths, hot packs or compresses, and moist heating pads. *Regardless of treatment, teach him or her to check that the heat source is not too heavy or so hot that it causes burns.* A temperature just above body temperature is adequate to promote comfort.

If needed, collaborate with the PT to provide special heat treatments, such as paraffin dips, diathermy (using electrical current), and ultrasonography (using sound waves). A 15- to 20-minute application usually is sufficient to temporarily reduce pain, spasm, and stiffness. Cold packs or gels that feel hot and cold at the same time may also be used.

Cold therapy has limited use for most patients in controlling pain. Cold works by numbing nerve endings and decreasing secondary joint inflammation, if present.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient to use ice packs that are not too heavy. Do not place them directly on skin; instead, wrap them in a towel or soft cloth.

There is no one food that causes or cures arthritis. Instead, a well-balanced diet is recommended. Gradual *weight loss* for obese patients may lessen the stress on weight-bearing joints, decrease pain, and perhaps slow joint degeneration. If needed, collaborate with the registered dietitian to provide more in-depth teaching and meal planning or make referrals to community resources.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. A variety of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) therapies, especially *acupuncture*, have been effective for some patients (see [Chapter 2](#)). Topical *capsaicin* products may also be used. This expensive OTC drug may work by blocking substance P, a neurotransmitter for pain. Tell the patient to expect a burning sensation for a short time after applying capsaicin. Recommend the use of plastic gloves for application. To prevent burning of eyes or other body areas, wash hands immediately after applying the substance.

Dietary supplements may complement traditional drug therapies. Glucosamine and chondroitin are widely used and are the most effective nonprescription supplements taken to decrease pain and improve functional ability (Zhang et al., 2008). These natural products are found in and around bone cartilage for repair and maintenance. **Glucosamine** may decrease inflammation, and **chondroitin** may play a role in strengthening cartilage. These supplements may be used topically or taken in oral form. If no improvement is evident in 6 months of use, they should be discontinued (Zhang et al., 2008). [Chart 20-1](#) summarizes what you should teach your patients about glucosamine, with or without chondroitin.

CHART 20-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Considerations for Taking Glucosamine Supplements

- Tell your health care provider if you decide to take glucosamine.
- Do not take glucosamine if you have hypertension.
- Do not take glucosamine if you are pregnant or breast-feeding.
- Monitor for bleeding if you take chondroitin with glucosamine or chondroitin alone if you are on anticoagulant therapy.
- If diabetic, monitor your blood glucose levels carefully because taking glucosamine for a prolonged time can increase them.
- Be aware that glucosamine can cause adverse effects such as a rash; GI disturbances, especially diarrhea; drowsiness; and headache.
- Be sure to take the recommended dosage based on your weight.
- Read drug labels to ensure that you do not take too much glucosamine for your weight; some drug names may not indicate they contain glucosamine (e.g., Bioflex, Arth-X Plus, Nutri-Joint).

Surgical Management. Surgery may be indicated when conservative measures no longer provide pain control, when mobility becomes so restricted that the patient cannot participate in activities he or she enjoys, and when he or she cannot maintain the desired quality of life. The most common surgical procedure performed for *older adults* with OA is **total joint arthroplasty (TJA)** (surgical creation of a joint), also known as **total joint replacement (TJR)**. Almost any synovial joint of the body can be replaced with a prosthetic system that consists of at least two parts, one for each joint surface. TJAs are expected to increase exponentially as baby boomers age over the next 20 years.

A less invasive procedure using arthroscopy may be used to remove damaged cartilage (see [Chapter 52](#)). An **osteotomy** (bone resection) may be performed to correct joint deformity, but this procedure is done most commonly for younger adults (Zhang et al., 2008).

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

A 60-year-old woman is admitted for an open reduction/internal fixation (ORIF) of her right ankle. After surgery, she will need to use crutches with no weight bearing on her affected leg for 4 to 6 weeks. When you are taking an admission history, she tells you that she has OA in her knees, feet, hands, and cervical spine. She takes ibuprofen when needed with some pain relief.

During her physical assessment, you note that the patient has multiple Heberden's and Bouchard's nodes on both hands. She has a joint effusion in her right third PIP, and she is right-handed.

1. What additional physical assessment do you need to perform to determine her level of functioning?
2. What other evidence-based interventions for OA pain might you recommend?
3. How might this patient's OA affect her ability to use crutches after surgery?
4. What health teaching is needed for this patient to help manage her OA and use crutches while her ankle heals?

Indications for Total Joint Arthroplasty. Total joint arthroplasty is a procedure used most often to manage the pain of OA and to improve mobility, although other conditions causing cartilage destruction may require the surgery. These disorders include RA, congenital anomalies, trauma, and osteonecrosis. **Osteonecrosis** is bony necrosis secondary to lack of blood flow, usually from trauma or chronic steroid therapy. Hip and knee joints are most commonly replaced, but finger and wrist joint, elbow, shoulder, toe joint, and ankle replacements have been improved in the past 15 years.

Contraindications to Total Joint Arthroplasty. The contraindications for TJA are active infection anywhere in the body, advanced osteoporosis, and rapidly progressive inflammation. An infection elsewhere in the body or from the joint being replaced can result in an infected TJA and subsequent prosthetic failure. Therefore if a patient has a urinary tract infection, for example, the physician treats the infection before surgery. Advanced osteoporosis can cause bone shattering during insertion of the prosthetic device. Severe medical problems, such as uncontrolled diabetes or hypertension, put the patient at risk for major postoperative complications and possible death.

As a group, TJAs are very successful. Many patients who have lived with chronic, unbearable pain for years and could not function independently at home or in the workplace now

longer experience pain in the diseased joint. The pain relief and psychological benefit often outweigh the perioperative risks and costs, but the surgeon and patient must make that decision. When the patient is older than 85 years, this decision may become an ethical issue in addition to a physical risk and cost-versus-benefit decision.

Total Hip Arthroplasty. The number of total hip arthroplasty (THA) procedures (also known as *total hip replacement [THR]*) has steadily increased over the past 30 years. The first time a patient receives any total joint arthroplasty, it is referred to as **primary arthroplasty**. If the implant loosens, **revision arthroplasty** may be performed. Availability of improved joint implant materials and better custom design features allow longer life of a replaced hip. Although patients of any age can undergo THR, the procedure is performed most often in those older than 60 years. The special needs and normal physiologic changes of older adults often complicate the perioperative period and may result in additional postoperative complications.

Preoperative Care. As with any procedure, preoperative care begins with assessing the patient's level of understanding about the surgery and his or her ability to participate in the postoperative plan of care. The surgeon explains the procedure and postoperative expectations (including possible complications) during the office visit, but this patient education may have occurred weeks or months before the scheduled surgery. Some patients may not know what questions to ask or may forget the important information that was taught. Information may be provided in a notebook or DVD format that the patient can take home to review and share with family. This is particularly useful to patients with poor reading skills or poor memory. Written materials or other media provided in the patient's language appropriate for the patient's educational level are essential.

An interdisciplinary plan of care that outlines expectations during preadmission, hospitalization, and posthospitalization phases of care should be reviewed with the patient and family or significant other. **Thomas and Sethares (2008)** investigated the effects of preoperative interdisciplinary patient education for patients having total hip or knee arthroplasty using a large quasi-experimental design. The researchers found that postoperative patients in the intervention group had a higher knowledge level than those patients who did not receive the structured preoperative education. A study by **Almada and Archer (2009)** described the positive outcomes for joint arthroplasty patients who were visited by an RN before and after surgery. Part of both visits included patient and family/caregiver education.

In some hospitals or orthopedic office practices, the physical therapist (PT) may have the patient practice transfers, positioning, and ambulation. An occupational therapist (OT) may partner with the PT to assist in exercises or learning to ambulate with an assistive device, such as crutches or a walker. In a systematic review of three available studies, **Barbay (2009)** found that preoperative exercises for patients having hip or knee arthroplasty had some benefits in improving postoperative outcomes, but the results were inconclusive.

The OT may also help obtain assistive/adaptive equipment that will be needed after surgery. The cost of some items, such as an elevated toilet seat, is covered by Medicare and other insurers because they are essential to prevent hip dislocation. Other helpful equipment may not be paid for by third-party

payers and can be purchased at local pharmacies or medical supply stores, based on the patient's specific needs. Examples include:

- Shower chair
- Handheld shower
- Long-handled sponge for bathing
- Reacher, grabber, or dressing stick
- Safety bars

All patients are also told to visit a dentist and have any necessary dental procedures done before surgery. After surgery, he or she must take extreme care not to acquire an infection that could migrate to the surgical area and cause prosthetic failure. *Remind the patient to tell any future health care provider that he or she has had a THA.*

In addition to usual preoperative laboratory tests, the surgeon may ask the patient with RA to have a cervical spine x-ray if he or she is having general anesthesia. Those with RA often have cervical spine disease that can lead to subluxation during intubation. Hip x-rays, computed tomography (CT) scan, and/or MRI may be done to assess the operative joint and surrounding soft tissues.

Because venous thromboembolism (VTE) is a serious postoperative complication, especially for hip surgery, the patient's risk factors for clotting problems are assessed, including history of previous clotting, obesity, smoking, and advanced age. *Drugs that increase the risks for clotting and bleeding, such as NSAIDs, vitamins C and E, and hormone replacement therapy (HRT), are discontinued about a week before surgery.*

Patients are also assessed for the need for possible blood transfusion after surgery. For patients who are at risk for postoperative anemia, one or more blood transfusions may be needed. Autologous (patient's own) or banked blood can be used. If desired, the patient may donate blood several weeks before surgery to be used after surgery. This pre-deposit autologous blood donation is a safe and cost-effective blood replacement alternative for those who are undergoing elective surgeries. It also decreases the risk for blood transfusion reactions.

For some patients, the surgeon may prescribe several weeks of epoetin alfa (Epogen, Procrit, Eprex ) with or without iron to prevent anemia that can occur after hip or knee replacement. Epoetin alfa is recombinant human erythropoietin, a substance that is essential for developing red blood cells. This drug is particularly useful for older adults, who frequently have mild anemia before surgery.

Remind patients that they will likely be asked to take a shower with special antiseptic soap the night before surgery to decrease bacteria that could cause infection after surgery. Tell them to wear clean nightwear after their shower and sleep on clean linen. Review which drugs are safe to take or necessary the morning of the operation, such as antihypertensives, and which ones should be avoided. Medication should be taken with a very small amount of water.

Operative Procedures. Similar to other orthopedic surgeries, the patient receives an IV antibiotic, usually a cephalosporin such as cefazolin (Ancef), at least 1 hour before the initial surgical incision is made or during the THA. Other drugs may be used for those who are allergic to cephalosporins.

The anesthesiologist or nurse anesthetist places the patient under general or **neuroaxial** (epidural/spinal) anesthesia for

lower extremity surgery. Neuroaxial induction reduces blood loss and the incidence of deep vein thrombosis. Intraoperative blood loss with hypotensive neuroaxial anesthesia is usually less than that with general anesthesia, thereby decreasing the need for postoperative blood transfusions.

Several types of incisions for hip replacement may be used. The more *traditional* 8-inch (20-cm) incision is usually longitudinal on the anterolateral thigh. The anterolateral approach results in more damage to muscle but less risk for dislocation. A posterior incision, posterolateral on the thigh and into the buttock, may be used to preserve muscle but may increase the risk for dislocation and sciatic nerve injury.

Some patients are candidates for *minimally invasive surgery* (MIS) using a smaller incision with special instruments to reduce muscle cutting. This newer technique cannot be used for patients who are obese or those with osteoporosis. It is done only for primary THAs, not for revision surgeries. Like those of any MIS, the benefits of minimally invasive THA are decreased soft tissue damage and postoperative pain. Patients often have a shorter hospital stay and quicker recovery. They are generally satisfied with the cosmetic appearance of the incision because there is less scarring. Postoperative complications are not as common in patients having minimally invasive (“mini”) hip replacements when compared with those having the traditional technique.

Regardless of procedure type, two components are used in the THA—the acetabular component and the femoral component (Fig. 20-2). A non-cemented prosthesis is most often used. Bone surfaces are smoothed as they are prepared to receive the artificial components. The non-cemented components are press-fitted into the prepared bone. The acetabular cup may be placed using computer assistance. If the prosthesis is cemented, polymethyl methacrylate (an acrylic fixating substance) is used. A closed wound drainage system may be placed in the wound before the surgeon closes the incision.

Considerations of a non-cemented prosthesis include protection of weight-bearing status to allow bone to grow into

the prosthesis and decreased problems with loosening of the prosthesis. With a cemented prosthesis, cement can fracture or deteriorate over time, leading to loosening of the prosthesis, which causes pain and can lead to the need for a revision arthroplasty. In revision arthroplasty, the old prosthesis is removed and new components are replaced. Bone graft may be placed if bone loss is significant. Outcomes from revision arthroplasty may not be as positive as with primary arthroplasty.

Postoperative Care. In addition to providing the routine postoperative care discussed in Chapter 18, assess for and help prevent possible postoperative complications. Table 20-2 summarizes these complications, including nursing measures for prevention, assessment, and intervention. Chart 20-2 highlights special concerns for the care of older adults in the postoperative period. Collaborate with your patient and his or her family to become safety partners to keep the patient free from harm, including complications, such as:

- Hip dislocation
- Venous thromboembolism (VTE)
- Infection
- Anemia
- Neurovascular compromise

Preventing Hip Dislocation. A major complication of THA is **subluxation** (partial dislocation) or total dislocation.

In some hospitals, abduction devices with straps are placed on patients who are restless or cannot follow instructions,

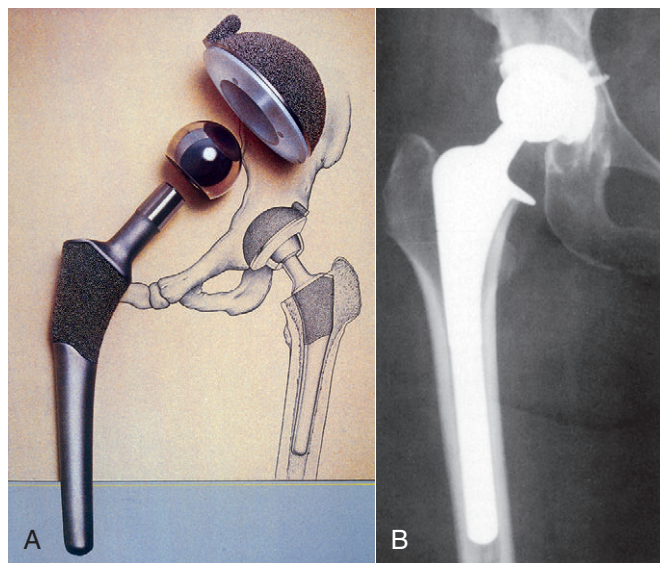


FIG. 20-2 A, Two major components of total hip arthroplasty. B, X-ray showing the components in place.

TABLE 20-2 NURSING INTERVENTIONS TO PREVENT COMPLICATIONS OF TOTAL JOINT ARTHROPLASTY

COMPLICATION	PREVENTION/INTERVENTION
Dislocation	Position correctly. For hip, keep leg slightly abducted. For hip, prevent hip flexion beyond 90 degrees. Assess for pain, rotation, and extremity shortening. Report immediately to physician.
Infection	Use aseptic technique for wound care and emptying of drains. Wash hands thoroughly when caring for patient. Culture drainage fluid, if change. Monitor temperature. Report excessive inflammation or drainage to physician.
Venous thromboembolism	Have patient wear elastic stockings and/or sequential compression device. Teach leg exercises to patient. Encourage fluid intake. Observe for signs of thrombosis (redness, swelling, or pain). Observe patient for changes in mental status. Administer anticoagulant as prescribed. Do not massage legs. Do not use knee gatch on bed.
Hypotension, bleeding, or infection	Take vital signs at least every 4 hours. Observe patient for bleeding. Report excessively low blood pressure or bleeding to physician.

especially older adults with delirium or dementia. One or two regular bed pillows are used in most cases to remind patients to keep their legs abducted. For devices with straps, be sure to loosen the straps every 2 hours and check the patient's skin for irritation or breakdown.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients to maintain correct positioning at all times. When the patient returns from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU), place him or her in a supine position with the head slightly elevated. Place a pillow between the patient's legs to prevent adduction beyond the midline of the body.

CHART 20-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Postoperative Care of the Older Adult with a Total Hip Arthroplasty

- Use an abduction pillow or splint to prevent adduction after surgery if the patient is very restless or has an altered mental state.
- Keep the patient's heels off the bed to prevent pressure ulcers.
- Do not rely on fever as a sign of infection; older patients often have infection without fever. Decreasing mental status typically occurs when the patient has an infection.
- When assisting the patient out of bed, move him or her slowly to prevent orthostatic (postural) hypotension.
- Encourage the patient to deep breathe and cough and to use the incentive spirometer every 2 hours to prevent atelectasis and pneumonia.
- As soon as permitted, get the patient out of bed to prevent complications of immobility.
- Anticipate the patient's need for pain medication, especially if he or she cannot verbalize the need for pain control.
- Expect a temporary change in mental state immediately after surgery as a result of the anesthetic and unfamiliar sensory stimuli. Reorient the patient frequently.

Place and support the affected leg in neutral rotation. *Keep the patient's heels off the bed to prevent skin breakdown, particularly older adults.* The procedure for postoperative turning is controversial and specified by agency policy or surgeon preference. In most cases, you are safe to turn the patient if the pillow is in place. Some surgeons allow only turning directly onto one side or the other, depending on the surgical approach.

Teach the patient and family about other precautions to prevent dislocation as outlined in [Chart 20-3](#). In addition to preventing adduction, remind them that the patient should avoid flexing the hips more than 90 degrees at all times. Use diagrams or demonstrate correct positioning to help reinforce this information before the patient gets out of bed ([Fig. 20-3](#)).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Observe for possible signs of hip dislocation, which include increased hip pain, shortening of the affected leg, and leg rotation. If any of these clinical manifestations occur, keep the patient in bed and notify the surgeon immediately!

If the hip is dislocated, the surgeon manipulates and relocates the affected hip after the patient receives moderate sedation. The hip is then immobilized by an abduction splint or other device until healing occurs—usually in about 6 weeks.

Preventing Venous Thromboembolism. The most potentially life-threatening complication after THA is venous thromboembolism (VTE), which includes deep venous thrombosis (DVT) and pulmonary embolism (PE). Older patients are especially at increased risk for VTE because of age and decreased circulation before surgery. Obese patients and those with a history of VTE are also at high risk for thrombi. Sequential compression devices and/or antiembolism stockings are typically applied.

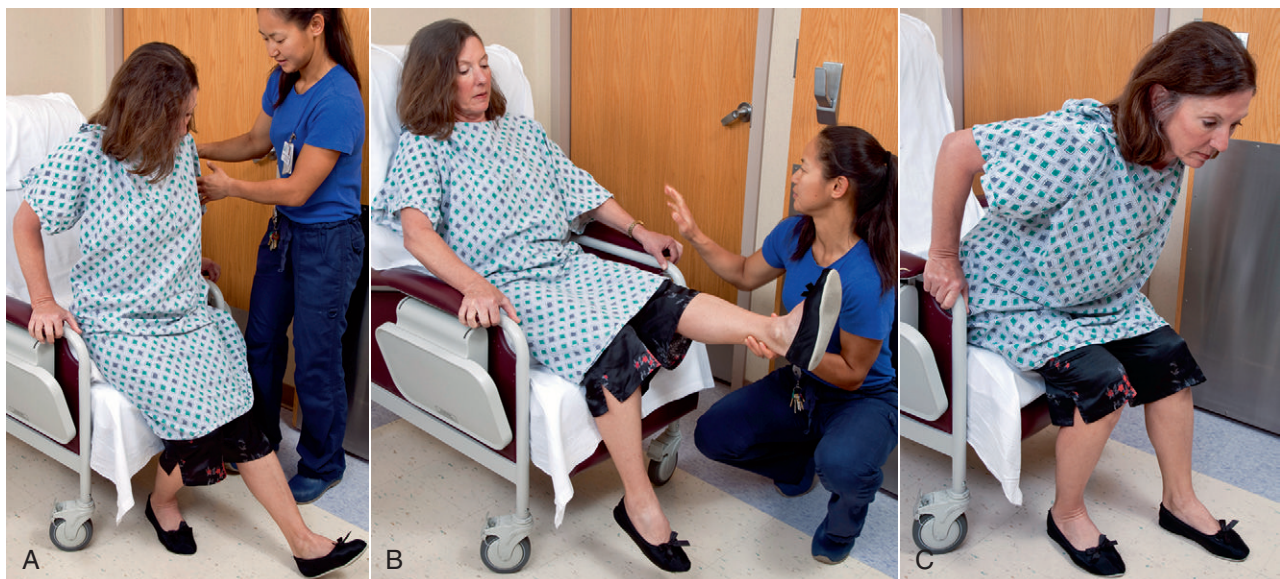


FIG. 20-3 Correct and incorrect hip flexion after a total hip replacement.

Anticoagulants, such as warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ) , subcutaneous low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH), or factor Xa inhibitors, help prevent VTE. Patients are usually on anticoagulants for 3 to 6 weeks after surgery, depending on the patient's response and risk factors. During the past 20 years, the use of LMWHs has markedly increased for patients with total hip and knee replacements. Examples include enoxaparin (Lovenox), dalteparin (Fragmin), and tinzaparin (Innohep). These drugs work to inhibit factor Xa, which is a key component in the clotting process. Given in a low prophylactic dose based on the patient's weight, they do not significantly affect prothrombin time (PT) or activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT).

Although not as commonly seen with these drugs when compared with unfractionated heparin (UFH), **thrombocytopenia** (decreased platelets) can occur. Therefore monitor the patient's complete blood count and platelet count per agency policy. Assess for bleeding, including occult blood in stool and bruising. Protamine sulfate can be given as an antidote for all heparins; however, it is not as effective for LMWH when compared with UFH. Be especially alert for signs and

symptoms of neurologic dysfunction because spinal and epidural hematomas can occur in patients who received neuroaxial anesthesia.

Fondaparinux (Arixtra), a factor Xa inhibiting agent, may also be prescribed for patients undergoing hip and knee arthroplasty. Its action is similar to that of LMWHs and has no effect on coagulation tests. Like other drugs, however, the patient is at risk for bleeding. No antidote exists at this time for fondaparinux. Like LMWHs, Arixtra is given for several days with an overlap while anticoagulants begin to work. A complete discussion of nursing care associated with patients taking anticoagulants and VTE is found in [Chapter 38](#). The Joint Commission's VTE Core Measures are also discussed in that chapter.

Early ambulation and exercise help prevent VTE. Teach the patient about leg exercises, which should begin in the immediate postoperative period and continue through the rehabilitation period. These exercises include plantar flexion and dorsiflexion (heel pumping), circumduction (circles) of the feet, gluteal and quadriceps muscle setting, and straight-leg raises (SLRs). Teach the patient to perform gluteal exercises by pushing the heels into the bed and achieve **quadriceps-setting exercises** ("quad sets") by straightening the legs and pushing the back of the knees into the bed. In addition to preventing clots, these exercises improve muscle tone, which helps restore the function of the extremity.

Preventing Infection. Another potential complication of hip replacement is infection. Infection can occur during hospitalization or months or years later. Most infections are caused by contamination during surgery.

Monitor the surgical incision and vital signs carefully—every 4 hours for the first 24 hours and every 8 to 12 hours thereafter. Observe for signs of infection, such as an elevated temperature and excessive or foul-smelling drainage from the incision. *An older patient may not have a fever with infection but, instead, may experience an altered mental state.* If you suspect infection, obtain a sample of any drainage for culture and sensitivity to determine the offending organisms and the antibiotics that may be needed for treatment.

Assessing for Bleeding and Managing Anemia. Observe the surgical hip dressing for bleeding or other type of drainage at least every 4 hours or when vital signs are taken. Empty and measure the bloody fluid in the surgical drain(s) every shift. The total amount of drainage is usually less than 50 mL/8 hr. Patients who have the minimally invasive procedure may not have a drain. The surgeon usually removes the drains and operative dressing 24 to 48 hours after surgery. *Take special care when removing tape from the skin to prevent tape burns as the surgical dressing is changed, especially for older adults.*

The surgeon also requests periodic hemoglobin and hematocrit (H&H) tests to assess for anemia. Although some patients receive several units of blood during surgery, the H&H levels may continue to fall; in this case, additional blood is given 1 to 2 days after surgery. Blood pressure may be lower than usual because of blood loss during surgery.

Assessing for Neurovascular Compromise. As with other musculoskeletal surgery, monitor neurovascular assessments frequently for a possible compromise in circulation to the affected distal extremity.

In addition to implementing interventions to prevent potential postoperative complications and monitoring for early signs of complications, the interdisciplinary team plans

CHART 20-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Care of Patients with Total Hip Arthroplasty After Hospital Discharge

Hip Precautions

- Do not sit or stand for prolonged periods.
- Do not cross your legs beyond the midline of your body.
- Do not bend your hips more than 90 degrees.
- Do not twist your body when standing.
- Use an ambulatory aid, such as a walker, when walking.
- Use assistive/adaptive devices for dressing, such as for putting on shoes and socks.
- Do not put more weight on your affected leg than allowed.
- Resume sexual intercourse as usual on the advice of your surgeon.

Pain Management

- Report increased hip pain to the physician immediately.
- Take oral analgesics as prescribed and only as needed.
- Do not overexert yourself; take frequent rests.

Incisional Care

- Inspect your hip incision every day for redness, heat, or drainage; if any of these are present, call your physician immediately.
- Cleanse your hip incision with a mild soap and water every day; be sure to dry it thoroughly.

Other Care

- Continue walking and performing the leg exercises as you learned in the hospital.
- Do not cross your legs to help prevent blood clots.
- Report pain, redness, or swelling in your legs to your physician immediately.
- Report chest pain or shortness of breath to your physician immediately.
- If you are taking an anticoagulant, follow the precautions learned in the hospital to prevent bleeding; avoid using a straight razor, avoid injuries, and report bleeding or excessive bruising to your surgeon immediately.
- Perform postoperative exercises as instructed, including straight leg raises, gluteal sets, ankle pumps, and "ham" sets.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Check and document color, temperature, distal pulses, capillary refill, movement, and sensation. Remember to compare the operative leg with the nonoperative leg. These assessments are performed at the same time the vital signs are checked. Report any changes in neurovascular assessment to the surgeon, and carefully monitor for changes. Early detection of changes in neurovascular status can prevent permanent tissue damage.

care to manage pain, improve mobility and activity, and promote self-management.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

An older woman had a left total hip arthroplasty yesterday afternoon. Which precautions will the nurse teach before helping the client transfer from the bed to the chair? **Select all that apply.**

- A. "Stand on your left leg and pivot to the chair."
- B. "Do not hyperflex your hips when sitting."
- C. "Cross your legs to be more comfortable."
- D. "Avoid twisting your body when moving."
- E. "Use your cane to help move into the chair."

Managing Pain. Although hip arthroplasty is performed to relieve joint pain, patients experience pain related to the surgical procedure. Many state that their pain is different and less severe than before surgery. Immediate pain control is typically achieved by extended-release epidural morphine (EREM) or patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with morphine or another opioid. A study by Smith-Miller et al. (2009) found that there was no difference in pain control when these two methods were compared. [Chapter 5](#) contains information on the nursing care associated with these acute pain modalities. *Keep in mind that the patient may also receive other analgesics or anti-inflammatory drugs for chronic arthritic pain in other joints.*

Regardless of the pain management method used, most patients do not require parenteral analgesics after the first day. Oral opioids, such as oxycodone plus acetaminophen (Percocet, Tylox), are then commonly prescribed until the pain can be controlled by NSAIDs such as ketorolac (Toradol, Acular) or ibuprofen (Motrin, Apo-Ibuprofen .

Nonpharmacologic methods for acute and chronic pain control can also be used to decrease the amount of drug therapy used (see [Chapter 5](#)). A study by [Thomas and Sethares \(2010\)](#) found that guided imagery can be helpful in controlling pain in patients with total joint arthroplasty.

Promoting Mobility and Activity. Depending on the time of day that the surgery is performed, the patient with a THA usually

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be sure to assist the patient the first time he or she gets out of bed to prevent falls and observe for dizziness. When getting the patient out of bed, stand on the same side of the bed as the affected leg. After the patient sits on the side of the bed, remind him or her to stand on the unaffected leg and pivot to the chair with guidance. *Do not lift the patient!*

gets out of bed the night of surgery to prevent complications (e.g., atelectasis, pneumonia), especially in older adults.

Remind the patient to avoid flexing the hips beyond 90 degrees as discussed earlier (see [Fig. 20-3](#)). Raised toilet seats and reclining chairs help prevent hyperflexion of the replaced hip joint. Be sure to teach the patient to also avoid twisting the body or crossing his or her legs to prevent hip dislocation.

The surgeon, type of prosthesis, and surgical procedure determine the amount of weight bearing that can be applied to the affected leg. A patient with a cemented implant is usually allowed immediate partial weight bearing (PWB) and progresses to full weight bearing (FWB). Typically, only "toe-touch" or minimal weight bearing is permitted for patients with uncemented prostheses. When x-ray evidence of bony ingrowth can be seen, the patient can progress to PWB and then to FWB.

In collaboration with the physical therapist (PT), teach the patient how to follow weight-bearing restrictions. Most patients use a walker (may be a rolling walker), but younger adults may use crutches. They are usually advanced to a single cane or crutch if they can walk without a severe limp 4 to 6 weeks after surgery. When the limp disappears, they no longer need an ambulatory/assistive device and may be permitted to sit in chairs of normal height, use regular toilets, and drive a car.

Promoting Self-Management. The hospital's occupational therapy department often supplies assistive/adaptive devices to help with ADLs, especially for those having traditional surgery. Particularly important are devices designed for reaching to prevent patients from bending or stooping and flexing the hips more than 90 degrees. Extended handles on shoehorns and dressing sticks may be very useful to achieve ADL independence. Third-party payers may or may not pay for these devices, depending on the patient's status.

For those who have *traditional surgery*, the length of stay in the acute care hospital is typically 3 days, but older adults or those experiencing postoperative complications may stay longer. Those who have the *minimally invasive THA* are discharged on the second postoperative day or the day of surgery (23-hour stay). Those patients are discharged to home on crutches to practice their own rehabilitative exercises. Most of them are able to return to work in 2 weeks. For that reason, some hospitals have started Rapid Recovery Hip Replacement programs for patients who are candidates for MIS.

Discharge for patients having *traditional surgery* may be to the home, a rehabilitation unit, a transitional care unit, or a skilled unit or long-term care facility for continued rehabilitation before discharge to home. The interdisciplinary team provides written instructions for posthospital care and reviews them with patients and their family members (see [Chart 20-3](#)). Be sure to provide a copy of these instructions for the patient.

Acute rehabilitation usually takes 1 to 2 weeks or longer, depending on the patient's age and tolerance and the type of prosthesis used. However, it often takes 6 weeks or longer for complete recovery. Some patients who are discharged to their home are able to attend physical therapy sessions in an office or ambulatory care setting. Others have no means or cannot use community resources and need physical therapy in the home, depending on their health insurance coverage.

Collaborate with the case manager to determine which option is best for your patient.

Total Knee Arthroplasty. Although many adults require total knee arthroplasty (TKA, also known as *total knee replacement* [TKR]), those who have a knee replaced are often younger than those who have a hip replaced. Continued improvements in total knee implants in the past 15 years have increased the expected life of a TKA to 20 years or more, depending on the age and activity level of the patient. An increasing number of patients who have TKAs are overweight or obese. Obesity increases wear and tear on weight-bearing joints, which can lead to revision surgeries. Unilateral (one joint) or bilateral joint replacements done at the same time may be performed, depending on the patient.

Preoperative Care. TKA, like hip replacement, is performed when joint pain cannot be managed by conservative measures. When activity and mobility severely prevent patients from participating in work or activities they enjoy, this procedure can restore a high quality of life. The preoperative care and teaching for patients undergoing a TKA are similar to that for total hip replacement. However, precautions for positioning are not the same. Differences in patient and family teaching depend on the procedure used by the orthopedic surgeon.

Like the minimally invasive surgery (MIS) for the hip, the knee can also be replaced using MIS. Candidates for mini-knee replacement cannot have severe bone loss, obesity, or previous knee surgery. They should be in good general health. Patients having MIS usually have less blood loss during surgery, less pain, more joint range of motion (less stiffness from scarring), and a faster recovery, leading to a shorter hospital stay. Rapid Recovery Knee Replacement programs for patients having minimally invasive TKA are becoming popular in a number of hospitals.

All patients are given verbal and either written or video preoperative instructions, which include the activity protocol to follow after surgery. The PT and OT provide information about transfers, ambulation, postoperative exercises, and ADL assistance. Patients may practice walking with walkers or crutches to prepare them for ambulation after TKA. Teach patients about the possible need for assistive-adaptive devices to assist with ADLs, including an elevated toilet seat, safety handrails, and dressing devices like a long-handled shoe-horn. Some third-party payers cover these devices, depending on the patient's condition and age; however, other insurers may not pay for them. Teach the patient and family where this equipment can be purchased to have it available after surgery.

Some surgeons prescribe a continuous passive motion (CPM) machine after knee surgery to increase joint mobility. Others have found that the range of motion for the surgical knee is not improved by using this device. If the patient will have a CPM machine after surgery, be sure to explain what it is and how it is used.

Routine diagnostic testing is requested, as well as any additional tests, such as cervical spine x-rays for patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) to determine if the patient can be intubated for anesthesia. Knee x-rays, CT scan, and/or MRI may be done to assess the joint and surrounding soft tissues.

Teach patients that they will need to shower with a special antiseptic soap the night before surgery to decrease bacteria on the skin that could cause infection after surgery. Remind

them to wear clean nightwear and sleep on clean linen. Ask them to check with their surgeon about what medications they can take the morning of surgery, including antihypertensives. Take these drugs with a small amount of water to prevent vomiting and aspiration during surgery.

Operative Procedures. As with the hip, the knee can be replaced with the patient under general or neuroaxial (epidural or spinal) anesthesia. An antibiotic, usually an IV ceph-alosporin, is given shortly before surgical opening. In the *traditional surgery*, the surgeon makes a central longitudinal incision about 8 inches (20 cm) long. Osteotomies of the femoral and tibial condyles and of the posterior patella are performed, and the surfaces are prepared for the prosthesis. The femoral component is often non-cemented (using a press-fit) with the tibial component being cemented. The surgeon typically inserts a surgical drain and applies a pressure dressing to decrease edema and bleeding.

Minimally invasive TKA may be performed using a shorter incision and special instruments to spare muscle and other soft tissue. Computer-guided equipment may be used to ensure accurate positioning of the knee implants. This procedure is referred to as a *computer-assisted TKA*.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. An experimental treatment to reduce the severe pain that occurs after knee arthroplasty is the intraoperative insertion of Adlea, a refined capsaicin product, directly into the surgical joint. Capsaicin binds to and opens C fiber receptors, especially TRPV1, which causes extra calcium to enter the nerve cells. The cells become overloaded and shut down, causing numbness. Preliminary results from several studies show that patients who were given Adlea during knee surgery had less acute postoperative pain when compared with others who did not receive the treatment. Additional studies for patients having total hip replacements and bunionectomies are currently being conducted. Adlea could help decrease the need for opioid analgesia for many patients having surgery (Remadevi & Szallisi, 2008).

Postoperative Care. Postoperative nursing care of the patient with a TKA is similar to that for the patient with a total hip arthroplasty; however, maintaining hip abduction is not necessary. The surgeon may prescribe a CPM machine, which can be applied in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) or soon after the patient is admitted to the postoperative unit (Fig. 20-4). The CPM machine keeps the prosthetic knee in motion and may prevent the formation of scar tissue, which could decrease knee mobility and increase postoperative pain. In the immediate postoperative period, the surgeon may also prescribe ice packs or other cold therapy to decrease swelling at the surgical site. Swelling and bruising are more common with this type of surgery than with hip surgery.

The surgeon, PT, or technician presets the CPM machine for the appropriate range of motion and cycles per minute. A typical initial setting is 20 to 30 degrees of flexion and full extension (0 degrees) at two cycles per minute, but this setting varies according to surgeon preference. The machine is generally used on an intermittent schedule of a designated number of hours several times a day, with the range of motion increased gradually. Observe and document the patient's response to the device, and follow the surgeon's protocol for settings. [Chart 20-4](#) outlines your responsibility when caring for a patient using the CPM machine.



FIG. 20-4 A continuous passive motion (CPM) machine in use.

CHART 20-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient Using a Continuous Passive Motion (CPM) Machine

- Ensure that the machine is well padded.
- Check the cycle and range-of-motion settings at least once every 8 hours.
- Ensure that the joint being moved is properly positioned on the machine.
- If the patient is confused, place the controls to the machine out of his or her reach.
- Assess the patient's response to the machine.
- Turn off the machine while the patient is having a meal in bed.
- When the machine is not in use, do not store it on the floor.

In general, pain-control measures for patients with TKA are similar to those with total hip arthroplasty. Many patients report high ratings on the pain intensity scale and require IV opioid medications longer than patients with THA, particularly if they have had bilateral surgery. *Be sure to manage your patient's pain to provide comfort, increase his or her participation in physical therapy, and improve joint mobility.*

One of the most recent advances in postoperative pain management for lower extremity total joint arthroplasty is *peripheral nerve blockade (PNB)*. In this procedure, the anesthesiologist injects the femoral or sciatic nerve with local anesthetic; the patient may receive a continuous infusion of the anesthetic by portable pump. This method of pain management not only decreases pain but also allows patients to participate in rehabilitation earlier than when using opioid analgesia alone. Patients having continuous femoral nerve blockade (CFNB) after TKA require less opioids and antiemetics when compared with patients receiving no CFNB and those who had a single-shot FNB. A study by [Leach and Bonfe \(2009\)](#) also found that patients with nerve blocks had better flexion and extension of the knee when compared with those who had either general or epidural/spinal anesthesia.

When caring for a patient receiving a CPNB, perform neurovascular assessments every 2 to 4 hours or according to hospital protocol. The patient should be able to plantar flex and dorsiflex the affected foot but not feel pain in the

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Monitor the patient for signs and symptoms that could indicate that the local anesthetic is getting into the patient's system, such as:

- Metallic taste
- Tinnitus
- Nervousness
- Slurred speech
- Bradycardia
- Hypotension
- Decreased respirations
- Seizures

Report any of these new signs and symptoms to the surgeon or anesthesiologist immediately, and carefully continue monitoring the patient for changes.

extremity. Check for movement, sensation, warmth, color, pulses, and capillary refill.

Because dislocation is a rare problem for a patient with TKA, special positioning to prevent adduction is not required. Maintain the knee in a neutral position and not rotated internally or externally. If a CPM machine is not used, the surgeon may recommend that the knee should rest flat on the bed or with one pillow under the lower calf and foot to encourage slight extension of the knee joint. Be sure that the surgical knee does not hyperextend.

Some complications that affect patients with total hip arthroplasty may also affect those having TKA, such as venous thromboembolism, infection, anemia, and neurovascular compromise. Assessments and interventions associated with these complications are described in the Postoperative Care section of the discussion of Total Hip Arthroplasty on pp. 325-328.

The desired outcome for discharge from the acute hospital unit is that the patient can walk independently with crutches, walker, or cane and has adequate flexion in the operative knee for ambulation. Patients who had minimally invasive TKA are discharged to home in 2 days with instructions for postoperative exercises, weight bearing, and activity progression. Many of these instructions (except for preventing hip dislocation) are similar to those provided for teaching patients after a total hip arthroplasty (see [Chart 20-3](#)).

Patients are able to partially weight bear unless the prosthesis is not cemented. During the home rehabilitation phase, the use of a stationary bicycle or CPM machine may help gain flexion. These patients can return to work and other usual activities in 2 to 3 weeks, depending on their age and other health status factors.

Acute rehabilitation for *traditional* TKA usually takes about 1 to 2 weeks longer, depending on the age and tolerance of the patient. These patients may be discharged to their home or to an acute rehabilitation unit, transitional care unit, skilled unit, or long-term care facility for therapy. If able, they may attend physical therapy sessions in an office or ambulatory care setting. If not, home care services can provide physical therapy in their home, depending on the insurance available. *Collaborate with the case manager to determine which option is best for your patient.* Total recovery from traditional TKA takes 6 weeks or longer, especially for those older than 75 years.

Other Joint Arthroplasties. After the hip and knee, the shoulder and hand are the most common joints replaced for

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A nursing assistant (NA) is assigned to care for a client who has a CPM machine in place after a total knee arthroplasty. Which statement by the NA indicates a need for further teaching and supervision by the nurse?

- A. "I will turn off the machine if the client has any pain."
- B. "I will turn off the machine when the client eats."
- C. "I will store the machine on a chair when not used."
- D. "I will check to make sure the client's leg is correctly placed."

severe OA, RA, or trauma. Elbow, wrist, ankle, and foot replacements are not performed as often as other types of arthroplasties. The shoulder and other upper extremity joints do not bear weight and therefore tend to have less degeneration and subsequent pain. Preoperative teaching for patients having any of these surgeries depends on the surgeon's technique and postoperative protocols. For example, the continuous passive motion (CPM) machine may be prescribed postoperatively in the hospital and in the posthospital setting (home or other facility). These devices are available for almost any joint surgery in the body. Some surgeons find that the CPM machine is not helpful in promoting joint mobility and may be uncomfortable for patients.

Total shoulder arthroplasty (TSA) has gained popularity as newer prostheses and technology have been developed. This procedure usually decreases arthritic pain and increases the patient's ability to perform ADLs. Because the shoulder joint is complex and has many **articulations** (joint surfaces), **subluxation** (partial dislocation) or complete dislocation is a major potential complication. Usually the glenohumeral joint, created by the glenoid cavity of the shoulder blade (scapula) and the head of the humerus, is replaced because it moves the most and is therefore most affected by arthritis. A **hemiarthroplasty** (replacement of part of the joint), typically the humeral component, may be performed as an alternative to TSA.

The surgeon makes an incision to replace the joint while the patient is under general anesthesia. The implant may be cemented or press-fitted without cement. Some surgeons perform *minimally invasive TSA*, which decreases postoperative complications like infection and nerve damage. A sling is applied to immobilize the joint until therapy begins.

In addition to dislocation, postoperative complications are similar to those for other total joint replacements and include infection and neurovascular compromise. Active and passive exercises are needed to begin shoulder movement. *As for any other total joint arthroplasty, perform frequent neurovascular assessments, at least every 4 to 8 hours.* The hospital stay for TSA is shorter than for a total hip or knee replacement—usually 1 to 2 days until pain is controlled. Rehabilitation with an occupational therapist generally takes several months.

Total elbow arthroplasty (TEA) is performed most often for patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA), but it is done for anyone whose severe arthritis limits movement and causes uncontrolled pain. TEA may be successful in increasing range of motion, but infection and loosening may occur because of extensive tissue cutting during surgery. Active and passive exercises are used postoperatively. In general, elbow motion is allowed as tolerated. Occupational therapy may not be necessary, but the need depends on the individual patient.

Lifting is usually restricted on a long-term basis after TEA. Generalized swelling usually resolves in 3 to 6 months.

Any joint of the hand or foot can be replaced (*phalangeal joint, metacarpal or metatarsal arthroplasties*), often for patients with RA. Hand prostheses are implanted without the use of cement because they stay in place and do not bear weight.

For the hand, a bulky dressing is used temporarily after surgery and is then replaced with a dynamic splint. Edema is controlled by having the patient elevate the arm as much as possible. The rehabilitation program for phalangeal joint arthroplasties may last for many weeks until normal function and strength return. These procedures are typically performed in specialized hand centers. Joint replacements in the toe usually require less rehabilitation.

Any bone of the *wrist* can also be replaced, including the heads of the radius and ulna. The postoperative pressure dressing is removed in 1 to 2 days, and a splint is applied. The patient usually regains full function within 6 to 12 weeks, but lifting may be restricted for a longer period. Special hand therapists work with these patients for the extensive rehabilitation that is required for phalangeal and wrist replacements.

Because the ankles support about 25% of the body's weight and are complex joints, developing an implant that is both small enough and strong enough has been difficult. Although total ankle arthroplasties (TAAs) have been problematic for more than three decades, newer non-cemented prosthetic systems have renewed interest in ankle replacements. Surgeons who specialize in foot and ankle surgeries are available in some parts of the country.

Postoperative complications include infection, delayed wound healing, nerve injuries, and loosening. Therefore TAA is not as successful as total hip or knee replacements. Non-cemented prostheses seem to be preferred over cemented ones to prevent loosening. The patient is allowed to begin weight bearing at about 6 weeks, and rehabilitation continues for about 3 months.

Improving Mobility

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with osteoarthritis (OA) is expected to maintain or improve a level of mobility and activity that allows him or her to function independently with or without an assistive ambulatory device.

Interventions. Management of the patient with OA is an interdisciplinary effort. If needed, collaborate with the physical therapist (PT) and occupational therapist (OT) to meet the outcome of independent function and mobility. Major interventions include therapeutic exercise and the promotion of ADLs and ambulation by teaching about health and the use of assistive devices.

Two types of *exercise* are recommended for the patient with OA: recreational and therapeutic. **Recreational exercise** includes hobbies and sports, with no planned purpose other than relaxation. **Therapeutic exercise** includes carefully planned activities that are designed to improve muscle strength, muscle tone, and joint range of motion. Therapeutic exercise can also reduce pain and improve the patient's psychological health.

Certain recreational activities may also be therapeutic, such as swimming to enhance chest and arm muscles. Aerobic exercises (e.g., walking, biking, swimming, aerobic dance) are

CHART 20-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Exercises for Patients with Osteoarthritis or Rheumatoid Arthritis

- Follow the exercise instructions that have been prescribed specifically for you. There are no universal exercises; your exercises have been specifically tailored to your needs.
- Do your exercises on both “good” and “bad” days. Consistency is important.
- Respect pain. If pain increases as you exercise, stop and report this to your health care provider.
- Use active rather than active-assist or passive exercise whenever possible.
- Reduce the number of repetitions when the inflammation is severe and you have more pain.
- Do not substitute your normal activities or household tasks for the prescribed exercises.
- Avoid resistive exercises when your joints are severely inflamed.

recommended. Exercises may be prescribed by rehabilitation therapists for the patient with OA, but you will need to reinforce their techniques and principles. The ideal time for exercise is immediately after the application of heat. To prevent further joint damage, teach patients to carefully follow the instructions for exercise outlined in [Chart 20-5](#).

Collaborate with the PT to evaluate the patient’s need for ambulatory aids such as canes, walkers, or platform crutches. Although some patients do not like to use these aids or may forget how to use them, they can help prevent further joint deterioration and pain. Collaborate with the OT, if needed, to provide suggestions and devices for assistance for ADLs.

Community-Based Care

The patient with OA is not usually hospitalized for the disease itself but for surgical management. Expect that any patient older than 60 years will have some degree of arthritis and possibly chronic pain that needs to be managed.

Home Care Management

If weight-bearing joints are severely involved, the patient may have difficulty going up or down stairs. Making arrangements to live on one floor with accessibility to all rooms is often the best solution. A home care nurse or case manager may collaborate with a rehabilitation therapist to assess the need for structural alterations to the home to accommodate ambulatory aids and enable the patient to perform ADLs. For example, a kitchen counter may need to be lowered or a seat and handrails may need to be installed in the shower. If the patient has undergone a total hip replacement, an elevated toilet seat is necessary for several weeks postoperatively to prevent excessive hip flexion. Patients who have TKAs may also find elevated toilet seats easier to use.

Teaching for Self-Management

Learning how to protect joints is the most important part of patient and family education. Preventing further damage to joints slows the progression of OA and minimizes pain. Explain the general principles of joint protection, and give practical examples ([Chart 20-6](#)).

CHART 20-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Evidence-Based Instructions for Joint Protection

- Use large joints instead of small ones; for example, place your purse strap over your shoulder instead of grasping the purse with your hand.
- Do not turn a doorknob clockwise. Turn it counterclockwise to avoid twisting your arm and promoting ulnar deviation.
- Use two hands instead of one to hold objects.
- Sit in a chair that has a high, straight back.
- When getting out of bed, do not push off with your fingers; use the entire palm of both hands.
- Do not bend at your waist; instead, bend your knees while keeping your back straight.
- Use long-handled devices, such as a hairbrush with an extended handle.
- Use assistive/adaptive devices, such as Velcro closures and built-up utensil handles, to protect your joints.
- Do not use pillows in bed except a small one under your head.
- Avoid twisting or wringing your hands.

As with other diseases in which drugs and nutritional therapy are used, teach the patient and family the drug therapy protocol, desired effects and potential side effects, and toxic effects. Emphasize the importance of reducing weight and eating a well-balanced diet to promote tissue healing.

Many patients with arthritis look for a cure after becoming frustrated and desperate about the course of the disease and treatment. Better control of arthritis is possible, but cure is not yet available. Unfortunately, tabloids, books, media, and the Internet often report “curative” remedies. People spend billions of dollars each year on quackery, including liniments, special diets, and copper bracelets. More hazardous substances, such as snake venom and industrial cleaners, are also advertised as remedies. Refer the patient to the Arthritis Foundation for up-to-date information about these “cures.” The practice of wearing a copper bracelet will not cure arthritis, but it will not cause harm. If the patient is using a potentially harmful substance or method, however, reinforce the need to avoid the unproven remedy and explain why it should not be used. Respect the patient’s preferences, values, and beliefs for using benign remedies that do not cause harm.

With most types of arthritis and connective tissue disease (CTD), patients must live with a chronic, unpredictable, and painful disorder. Their roles, self-esteem, and body image may be affected by these diseases. Body image is often not as devastating in OA as in the inflammatory arthritic diseases, such as RA. The psychosocial component is discussed in more detail in the Psychosocial Assessment section on p. 335 of the Rheumatoid Arthritis section.

Health Care Resources

The patient who has undergone surgery may need help from community resources. After an arthroplasty, he or she needs extensive assistance with mobility. The patient may be discharged to home or an inpatient unit. Collaborate with the case manager and surgeon to determine the best placement. If the patient is discharged to home, home care nurses may

be approved for third-party payment for several visits, depending on the presence of any existing systemic diseases. A home care aide may visit the home to help with hygiene-related needs, and a physical therapist may work with ambulatory and mobility skills. For older patients, a family member, significant other, or other caregiver should be in the home for at least the first few weeks when the patient needs the most assistance. Emphasize the need for patient safety, especially interventions to prevent falls as described in Chapter 3.

Provide written instructions about the required care, regardless of whether the patient goes home or to another inpatient facility. As required by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), hand-off communication with the new care provider is essential for seamless continuity of care.

The Arthritis Foundation (www.arthritis.org) is an important community resource for all patients with arthritis and CTD. This organization provides information to lay people and health care professionals and refers patients and their families to other resources as needed. Local support groups can help them cope with these diseases.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with OA on the basis of the identified priority problems. The expected outcomes are that he or she:

- Achieves pain control to a pain intensity level of 3 to 4 on a scale of 0 to 10 or at a level that is acceptable to for the patient
- Moves and functions in his or her own environment independently with or without assistive devices

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

Pathophysiology

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a common connective tissue disease that can be the most destructive to the joints. It is a chronic, progressive, systemic inflammatory autoimmune disease process that affects primarily the synovial joints. **Systemic** means this disease affects the body system, affecting many joints and other tissues. RA affects over 1.3 million people, and European Americans have the disease more often than other groups (Arthritis Foundation, 2011b). The cause for this trend is not known.

In RA, transformed autoantibodies (rheumatoid factors [RFs]) are formed that attack healthy tissue, especially synovium, causing inflammation. The disease then begins to involve the articular cartilage, joint capsule, and surrounding ligaments and tendons. Several processes cause cartilage damage in patients with RA (McCance et al., 2010):

- CD4 T-helper cells and other immune cells in synovial fluid promote cytokine release, especially interleukin-1 (IL-1) and tumor necrosis factor—alpha (TNF α), which attack cartilage.
- Neutrophils and other inflammatory cells in the joint are activated and break down the cartilage.
- Immune complexes deposit in synovium, and osteoclasts are activated.
- B- and T-lymphocytes of the immune system are stimulated and increase the inflammatory response. (Also

see Chapter 19 for a complete discussion of the inflammatory response.)

The synovium then thickens and becomes hyperemic, fluid accumulates in the joint space, and a pannus forms. The **pannus** is vascular granulation tissue composed of inflammatory cells; it erodes articular cartilage and eventually destroys bone. As a result, in late disease, fibrous adhesions, bony ankylosis, and calcifications occur; bone loses density, and secondary osteoporosis occurs.

Permanent joint changes may be avoided if RA is diagnosed early. Early, aggressive treatment to suppress synovitis may lead to a remission. RA is a disease characterized by natural remissions and exacerbations. Interdisciplinary management helps control the disease to decrease the intensity and number of exacerbations. Preventing flares helps prevent joint erosion and permanent joint damage.

Because rheumatoid arthritis is a systemic disease, areas of the body besides the synovial joints can be affected. Inflammatory responses similar to those occurring in synovial tissue may occur in any organ or body system in which connective tissue is prevalent. If blood vessel involvement (**vasculitis**) occurs, the organ supplied by that vessel can be affected. The result is malfunction and eventual failure of the organ or system. These pathologic changes may occur late in the disease process and cause life-threatening problems.

The etiology of RA remains unclear, but research suggests a *combination of environmental and genetic factors*. Some researchers also suspect that female reproductive hormones influence the development of RA because it affects women more often than men—usually young to middle-aged women. Others suspect that infectious organisms may play a role, particularly the Epstein-Barr virus (McCance et al., 2010). Physical and emotional stresses have been linked to exacerbations of the disorder and may be contributing factors or “triggers” to its development.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Research has shown that there is a strong association between RA and several human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR alleles. The cause of this association is not clear, but most HLA diseases are autoimmune (Nussbaum et al., 2007). DR alleles, especially *DR4* and *DRB1*, are the primary genetic factors contributing to the development of RA. *DR4* is associated with more severe forms of the disease (Klippel, 2007). Other contributing factors are being researched.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The onset of rheumatoid arthritis (RA) may be acute and severe or slow and progressive; patients may have vague symptoms that last for several months before diagnosis. The onset of the disease is more common in the winter months than in the warmer months. The manifestations of RA can be categorized as early or late disease and as articular (joint) or extra-articular (Chart 20-7).

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Early Disease Manifestations. The patient with RA typically reports joint stiffness, swelling, pain, and fatigue. He or she may report generalized weakness and morning stiffness.

CHART 20-7 KEY FEATURES

The Patient with Rheumatoid Arthritis**Early Manifestations****Joint**

- Inflammation

Systemic

- Low-grade fever
- Fatigue
- Weakness
- Anorexia
- Paresthesias

Late Manifestations**Joint**

- Deformities (e.g., swan neck or ulnar deviation)
- Moderate to severe pain and morning stiffness

Systemic

- Osteoporosis
- Severe fatigue
- Anemia
- Weight loss
- Subcutaneous nodules
- Peripheral neuropathy
- Vasculitis
- Pericarditis
- Fibrotic lung disease
- Sjögren's syndrome
- Renal disease
- Felty's syndrome

Anorexia and a weight loss of about 2 or 3 pounds (1 kg) usually occur early in the disease process. Persistent low-grade fever may accompany these manifestations. In patients with early disease, the upper-extremity joints are involved initially—often the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) and metacarpophalangeal (MCP) joints of the hands. These joints may be slightly reddened, warm, stiff, swollen, and tender or painful, particularly on palpation (caused by synovitis). The typical pattern of joint involvement in RA is bilateral and symmetric (e.g., both wrists), and the number of joints involved usually increases as the disease progresses. In early disease, the patient may report migrating symptoms known as **migratory arthritis**.

The presence of only *one* hot, swollen, painful joint (out of proportion to the other joints) may mean the joint is infected. *Refer the patient to the health care provider (generally the rheumatologist) immediately if this is the case.* Single hot, swollen joints are considered infected until proven otherwise and require immediate long-term antibiotic treatment.

Late Disease Manifestations. As the disease worsens, the joints become progressively inflamed and very painful. The patient usually has frequent morning stiffness (also called the **gel phenomenon**), which lasts for 45 minutes to several hours after awakening. On palpation, the joints feel soft and look puffy because of synovitis and **effusions** (joint swelling with fluid, especially the knees). The fingers often appear spindle-like. Note any muscle atrophy (which can result from disuse secondary to joint pain) and a decreased range of motion in the affected joints.



FIG. 20-5 Common joint deformities seen in rheumatoid arthritis.

Most or all synovial joints are eventually affected. The temporomandibular joint (TMJ) may be involved in severe disease, but such involvement is uncommon. When the TMJ is affected, the patient may have pain when chewing or opening the mouth.

When the spinal column is involved, the cervical joints are most likely to be affected. During clinical examination, gently palpate the posterior cervical spine and identify it as cervical pain, tenderness, or loss of motion.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Cervical disease may result in subluxation, especially the first and second vertebrae. This complication may be life threatening because branches of the phrenic nerve that supply the diaphragm are restricted and respiratory function may be compromised. The patient is also in danger of becoming quadriparetic (weak in all extremities) or quadriplegic (paralyzed in all extremities). If a person with RA reports cervical pain (may radiate down one arm) or loss of range of motion in the cervical spine, notify the health care provider immediately.

Joint Involvement. *Joint deformity* occurs as a late, articular manifestation, and secondary osteoporosis can cause bone fractures. Observe common deformities, especially in the hands and feet (Fig. 20-5). Extensive wrist involvement can result in carpal tunnel syndrome (see [Chapter 54](#) for assessment and management of carpal tunnel syndrome).

Gently palpate the tissues around the joints to elicit pain or tenderness associated with other rheumatoid complications, unless the patient is having severe joint pain. For example, **Baker's cysts** (enlarged popliteal bursae behind the knee) may occur and cause tissue compression and pain. Tendon rupture is also possible, particularly rupture of the Achilles tendon.

Systemic Complications. Numerous extra-articular clinical manifestations are associated with advanced disease. Assess other body systems to ascertain systemic involvement. In addition to increased joint swelling and tenderness, moderate to severe *weight loss, fever, and extreme fatigue* are common in late disease **exacerbations**, often called “flare-ups.” Some patients have the characteristic round, movable, nontender **subcutaneous nodules**, which usually appear on the ulnar surface of the arm, on the fingers, or along the Achilles tendon. These nodules can disappear and reappear

at any time and are associated with severe, destructive disease. Rheumatoid nodules usually are not a problem themselves; however, they occasionally open and become infected and may interfere with ADLs. Accidentally bumping the nodules may cause discomfort or pain. Occasionally, nodules occur in the lungs.

Inflammation of the blood vessels results in *vasculitis*, particularly of small to medium-size vessels. When arterial involvement occurs, major organs and body systems become ischemic and malfunction. Assess for ischemic skin lesions that appear in groups as small, brownish spots, most commonly around the nail bed (**periungual lesions**). Monitor the number of lesions, note their location each day, and report vascular changes to the health care provider. Increased lesions indicate increased vasculitis, and a decreased number indicates decreased vasculitis. Also carefully assess any larger lesions that appear on the lower extremities. These lesions can lead to ulcerations, which heal slowly as a result of decreased circulation. Peripheral neuropathy associated with decreased circulation can cause footdrop and **paresthesias** (burning and tingling sensations), usually in older adults.

Respiratory complications may manifest as *pleuritis*, *pneumonitis*, *diffuse interstitial fibrosis*, and *pulmonary hypertension*. Cardiac complications include *pericarditis* and *myocarditis*. These health problems are discussed elsewhere in this text. Assess for eye involvement, which typically manifests as *iritis* and *scleritis*. If either of these complications is present, the sclera of one or both eyes is reddened and the pupils have an irregular shape.

Associated Syndromes. Several syndromes are seen in patients with advanced RA. The most common is **Sjögren's syndrome**, which includes a triad of:

- Dry eyes (keratoconjunctivitis sicca [KCS], or the sicca syndrome)
- Dry mouth (**xerostomia**)
- Dry vagina (in some cases)

Note the patient's report of dry mouth or dry eyes. Some patients state that their eyes feel "gritty," as if sand is in their eyes. Inspect the mouth for dry, sticky membranes and the eyes for redness and lack of tearing.

Less commonly observed is **Felty's syndrome**, which is characterized by RA, hepatosplenomegaly (enlarged liver and spleen), and leukopenia. **Caplan's syndrome** is characterized by the presence of rheumatoid nodules in the lungs and pneumoconiosis, which is noted primarily in coal miners and asbestos removal workers.

Psychosocial Assessment

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) and other inflammatory types of arthritis are chronic diseases that can be crippling if not well controlled. Fear of becoming disabled and dependent, uncertainty about the disease process, altered body image, devaluation of self, frustration, and depression are common psychosocial problems. Physical limitations caused by disease may limit ADLs. These limitations result in role changes in the family and society. For example, the person may not be able to cook for the family or be an active sexual partner. In addition, extreme fatigue often causes patients to desire an early bedtime and may result in a reluctance to socialize.

Body changes caused by joint changes and steroid therapy (if used) may also cause poor self-esteem and body image.

Because many societies value people with physically fit, attractive bodies, the patient with RA may be embarrassed to be seen in public places. The patient may grieve or experience degrees of depression. He or she may have feelings of helplessness caused by a loss of control over a disease that can "consume" the body. Fortunately, newer drugs have improved the treatment of RA and provide the patient with hope and better disease control.

Living with a chronic disease and its pain is difficult for the patient and family. Patients may experience a loss of control and independence, especially if they are older than 65 years. Chronic suffering affects quality of life. Assess their emotional and mental status in relation to the disease and its problems. Evaluate their support systems and resources. Patients who are knowledgeable about their disease and treatment options feel emotionally stronger to cope with their disease and better able to discuss treatment options with their physician.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests help support a diagnosis of RA, but no single test or group of tests can confirm it. **Chart 20-8** summarizes the most common laboratory tests that the health care provider uses for diagnosing connective tissue diseases.

The test for *rheumatoid factor (RF)* measures the presence of unusual antibodies of the immunoglobulins G (IgG) and M (IgM) types that develop in a number of connective tissue diseases. Many patients with RA have a positive titer, but not all positive results indicate the disease, *especially in older adults* (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

The *antinuclear antibody (ANA)* test measures the titer of unusual antibodies that destroy the nuclei of cells and cause tissue death in patients with autoimmune disease. The fluorescent method is sometimes referred to as *FANA*. If this test result is positive (a value higher than 1:40), various subtypes of this antibody are identified and measured. ANA is often negative until later in the disease process and is positive in only 30% of patients with RA (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). It is more commonly positive in other rheumatic diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematosus and scleroderma.

When RA patients also have Sjögren's syndrome or if the syndrome occurs as a separate disease, several unusual anti-SS antibody types may be present. In particular, *anti-SS-A (Ro)* is positive in about 75% of those with RA or those with secondary Sjögren's with RA. The higher the titer of anti-SS antibodies, the more likely that Sjögren's syndrome is present (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Serum *complement*, especially C3 and C4, are usually decreased in autoimmune diseases, including RA and lupus. An elevated *erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)*, or "sed rate," can confirm inflammation or infection anywhere in the body. An elevated ESR helps confirm a diagnosis of an unspecified inflammatory disease. The test is most useful to monitor the course of a disease, especially for inflammatory autoimmune diseases. In general, the more severe the disease gets, the higher the ESR rises; as the disease improves or goes into remission, the ESR level decreases.

The *high-sensitivity C-reactive protein*, or *hsCRP*, is another useful test to measure inflammation and may be done with or instead of the ESR. As the name implies, it is more sensitive to inflammatory changes than the ESR. It is also very useful for detecting infection anywhere in the body.

CHART 20-8 LABORATORY PROFILE

Connective Tissue Disease

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Rheumatoid factor	Negative	Positive or increase indicative of possible RA or other CTD; may also be elevated in leukemia, liver disease, and renal disease
ANA (total)	Negative (if positive, types of ANA identified [e.g., anti-ENA, anti-Smith, anti-ss-A (Ro)] to indicate what part of cells are involved)	Elevations common in SLE, SSc, RA, and other inflammatory CTDs (5% of healthy adults have positive ANA results)
Serum complement	Total: 75-160 units/mL (C3: 55-120 mg/dL; C4: 20-50 mg/dL)	Decreased values indicative of active autoimmune disease, such as SLE, and other problems like anemia, infection, and malnutrition
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	Male: up to 15 mm/hr Female: up to 20 mm/hr	Increased in inflammatory diseases, like RA, SLE, PMR, temporal arteritis; also elevated in patients with bacterial infections or severe anemias
SPEP	Total: 6.4-8.3 g/dL	
Albumin	3.5-5.0 g/dL	Decreased level occurs with chronic inflammation or infection; also decreased in malnutrition and advanced cirrhosis
Globulin		
Alpha ₁ globulin	0.1-0.3 g/dL	Increased level possible in RA
Alpha ₂ globulin	0.6-1.0 g/dL	
Beta globulin	0.7-1.1 g/dL	
Gamma globulin	0.8-1.6 g/dL	Increased levels indicative of CTD (inflammatory type)
HLA testing (HLA-B27)	None	Presence of HLA-B27 indicative of Reiter's syndrome or ankylosing spondylitis

ANA, Antinuclear antibody; CTD, connective tissue disease; HLA, human leukocyte antigen; PMR, polymyalgia rheumatica; RA, rheumatoid arthritis; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus; SPEP, serum protein electrophoresis; SSc, systemic sclerosis.

The presence of most chronic diseases usually causes mild to moderate anemia, which contributes to the patient's fatigue. Therefore monitor the patient's complete blood count (CBC) for a low hemoglobin, hematocrit, and red blood cell (RBC) count. An increase in white blood cell (WBC) count is consistent with an inflammatory response. A decrease in the WBC count may indicate Felty's syndrome, a complication associated with late RA. Thrombocytosis (increased platelets) can also occur in patients with late RA. Additional laboratory tests may be performed depending on the body systems and organs that may be affected by the disease. For example, if heart involvement is suspected, the health care provider may request cardiac enzymes.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

A standard x-ray is used to visualize the joint changes and deformities typical of RA. A CT scan may help determine the presence and degree of cervical spine involvement.

An *arthrocentesis* is an invasive procedure that may be used for patients with joint swelling caused by excess synovial fluid (effusion). It may be performed at the bedside or in a physician's office or clinic. After administering a local anesthetic, the physician inserts a large-gauge needle into the joint (usually the knee) to aspirate a sample of synovial fluid to relieve pressure. The fluid is analyzed for inflammatory cells and immune complexes, including RF. Fluid from patients with RA shows increased WBCs, cloudiness, and volume.

Teach the patient to use ice and rest the affected joint for 24 hours after arthrocentesis. Often the health care provider will recommend acetaminophen as needed for pain. If increased pain or swelling occurs, teach the patient or family to notify the health care provider.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

After an arthrocentesis, monitor the insertion site for bleeding or leakage of synovial fluid. Notify the health care provider if either of these problems occurs.

A bone scan or joint scan can also assess the extent of joint involvement. MRI may be performed to assess spinal column disease or other joint involvement.

Because RA can affect multiple body systems, tests to diagnose specific systemic manifestations are performed as necessary. For example, electromyography helps confirm peripheral neuropathy. Pulmonary function tests help determine the presence of lung involvement.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Physiological Integrity**

Which assessment findings will the nurse expect for the client with late-stage rheumatoid arthritis? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Heberden's nodes
- B. High erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) values
- C. Positive antinuclear antibody (ANA) titer
- D. Subcutaneous nodules
- E. Anemia
- F. Red, swollen joints

INTERVENTIONS

As in other types of arthritis, the interdisciplinary health care team manages pain by using a combination of pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic measures. A **synovectomy** to remove

inflamed synovium may be needed for joints like the knee or elbow. Total joint arthroplasty (TJA) may be indicated when other measures fail to relieve pain. TJA is discussed in the Osteoarthritis section.

Managing Inflammation and Pain

Drug therapy and nonpharmacologic interventions are used to manage systemic inflammation and joint pain. The expected outcome is that the disease goes into remission and its progression slows.

Drug Therapy. Some drugs prescribed for RA have anti-inflammatory and/or analgesic actions. Other drugs are immunosuppressive and disease modifying, which may cause remission of the illness and prevent erosive joint changes. Biological response modifiers make up the newest class of disease-modifying drugs that help reduce signals for the immune system to cause inflammation (Chart 20-9). Patients with inflammatory diseases other than RA are also using various biological response modifying medications successfully. Future genetic research will further advance these medications to give even better control of autoimmune diseases. Although RA is a chronic disease and no cure is yet available, drugs now used can better control the disease and prevent further deterioration.

The health care provider, usually a rheumatologist, makes decisions about appropriate drug therapy for patients with rheumatoid disease based on the severity of the disease. Initially, most patients are managed with **disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs)**. As the name implies, these drugs are given to slow the progression of the disease.

Disease-Modifying Antirheumatic Drugs. Methotrexate (MTX) (Rheumatrex), an immunosuppressive medication, in a low, once-a-week dose (generally 25 mg or less per week) has become the mainstay of therapy for RA because it is effective and relatively inexpensive. It is a slow-acting drug, taking 4 to 6 weeks to begin to control inflammatory joint symptoms. Observe for desired drug effects, such as a decrease in joint pain and swelling.

Monitor patients for potential adverse effects, such as decreasing WBCs and platelets (as a result of bone marrow suppression) or elevations in liver enzymes or serum creatinine. *Patients taking MTX are at risk for infection. Teach them to avoid crowds and people who are ill. Remind patients to avoid alcoholic beverages while taking MTX to prevent liver toxicity. Teach them to observe and report other side and toxic effects, which include mouth sores and acute dyspnea from pneumonitis.* Rarely, lymph node tumor (lymphoma) has been associated in those who have RA and are taking MTX. Folic acid, one of the B vitamins, is often given to those who are taking MTX to help decrease some of the drug's side effects.

Pregnancy is not recommended while taking methotrexate because birth defects are possible. *Strict birth control is recommended for childbearing women who are in need of MTX to control their RA.* If pregnancy is ever desired, instruct the patient to consult the rheumatologist as well as an obstetric/gynecologic (OB/GYN) health care provider. Generally, the health care provider will discontinue the drug at least 3 months before planned pregnancy. MTX may be restarted after birth if the patient does not breast-feed.

Leflunomide (Arava) may be prescribed for some patients. It is a slow-acting immune-modulating medication that helps diminish inflammatory arthritis symptoms of joint swelling

and stiffness and improves mobility. The drug is generally prescribed as follows: a loading dose of 100 mg daily for 3 days followed by 20 mg daily thereafter. Inform the patient that Arava takes 4 to 6 weeks and sometimes up to 3 months before maximum benefit is realized.

Arava is a potent medication that is generally tolerated, but side effects of hair loss, diarrhea, decreased WBCs and platelets, or increased liver enzymes have been reported. *Teach patients to report these changes and monitor laboratory results carefully. Remind them to avoid alcohol. Inform them that Arava can cause birth defects, and therefore recommend strict birth control to women of childbearing age. Tell patients to contact the health care provider immediately if pregnancy occurs while taking the drug.* Cholestyramine (Questran) is available to help block the drug's action.

Another DMARD used for RA is hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil). This drug slows the progression of mild rheumatoid disease before it worsens (see Chart 20-9). It is an anti-malarial drug that helps decrease joint and muscle pain. Patients generally tolerate Plaquenil quite well. In a few cases, mild stomach discomfort, light-headedness, or headache has been reported.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The most serious adverse effect of Plaquenil is retinal damage. Teach patients to report blurred vision or headache. Remind them to have an eye examination every 6 months to detect changes in the cornea, lens, or retina. If this rare complication occurs, the health care provider discontinues the drug.

Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs. NSAIDs are sometimes used for inflammatory arthritis to relieve pain and inflammation (see Chart 20-9). The choice of which one to prescribe depends on the patient's needs and tolerance, as well as the scientific evidence supporting the drug therapy. To decrease GI problems, the NSAID may be given with an H₂-blocking agent, such as ranitidine (Zantac) or misoprostol (Cytotec). If there is no clinical change after 6 to 8 weeks, the health care provider may discontinue the current NSAID and try another one or change to a different drug class.

It was once thought that Celecoxib (Celebrex), a COX-2 inhibiting NSAID, should be given rather than the older NSAIDs like ibuprofen. However, all COX-2 inhibiting drugs have recently been associated with cardiovascular disease, such as myocardial infarction, and some have been taken off the market. The risk for GI bleeding is also high in patients taking Celebrex, and the drug cannot be given to those who have recent open heart surgery.

Biological Response Modifiers. As a group, **biological response modifiers (BRMs)**, sometimes called **biologics**, are one of the newest classes of DMARDs. Most BRMs neutralize the biologic activity of tumor necrosis factor—alpha (TNFA) by inhibiting its binding with TNF receptors. Any one of the BRMs may be tried. If one drug is not effective, the health care provider prescribes another drug in the same class. All these drugs are extremely expensive at this time, and insurance companies may not completely pay for their use. Some patients receive one of these drugs in addition to the drugs in this Drug Therapy section.

Patients with multiple sclerosis or tuberculosis are not given TNF inhibitors. Determine whether the patient has had

CHART 20-9 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Arthritis and Connective Tissue Disease*

DRUG AND USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE OF DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
NSAIDs Dosage varies depending on which drug is being used	Relieves chronic pain by inhibiting prostaglandin synthesis	Observe for fluid retention, increased blood pressure, and changes in renal function. Monitor electrolyte and CBC values. Observe for CNS changes (e.g., dizziness or confusion). Instruct patient to have frequent (every 6-12 mo) ophthalmologic examination. Monitor for side effects and toxic effects, including but not limited to nausea/vomiting, bone marrow suppression, and increased liver enzymes. Instruct patient to avoid crowds and people with infections such as influenza. If ill, seek medical attention.	Most NSAIDs cause sodium retention, which can lead to edema, hypertension, renal damage, and heart failure. Drugs should be used with caution in older adults. Most NSAIDs cause increased sodium levels and can cause bone marrow suppression. Most NSAIDs can cause CNS effects, especially in older adults. Drug can cause retinal damage. The side effects and toxic effects of these drugs can be devastating. Immunosuppression increases the risk for infection.
Hydroxychloroquine sulfate (Plaquenil) 200 mg orally daily Immunosuppressive agents (e.g., methotrexate [Rheumatrex] [most commonly used], azathioprine [Imuran], cyclophosphamide [Cytoxan]) Usual dose of oral methotrexate (MTX) is 7.5 to 20 mg/wk. Dosage of other drugs varies depending on disease activity and route of drug administration	An antimalarial agent that helps decrease inflammation and slow disease process Suppresses bone marrow to reduce immune response	Observe for cushingoid changes, such as moon face, buffalo hump, striae, acne, thin skin, bruising, fluid retention, and increased blood pressure. Monitor electrolyte and glucose levels. Monitor weight. Observe for long-term effects of chronic steroid therapy, such as osteoporosis, cataracts, hypertension, diabetes, and impaired healing. Teach patient to increase dietary calcium and vitamin D and to take a supplement. Instruct patient to avoid crowds and persons with infections such as influenza.	These changes are expected and tend to be dose related. Changes diminish as dose decreases. Chronic steroid therapy can cause sodium or fluid retention, potassium depletion, and elevated glucose level. These complications may need to be treated with other drugs or modalities. Drug suppresses immune system (lymphocytes) and increases risk for infection or decreased healing.
Prednisone (Deltasone, Apo-Prednisone ) 10 to 150 mg orally daily, for maintenance, attempt to give dose every other day (to allow patient's adrenal glands to function)	Decreases inflammatory and immune response by decreasing WBC count		

Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) 500 to 3000 mg orally daily in 2 to 4 doses	Decreases inflammation and slows disease process	Check for sulfa allergy or kidney or liver disease. Teach patient to drink adequate fluids. Teach men that the drug can lower sperm count. Teach patient to have prescribed laboratory tests, usually every 6 to 8 weeks. Avoid alcohol while taking drug. Remind patient to use strict birth control. Do not give BRMs if patient has a serious infection, TB, or MS. Teach patient to report site reaction.	Drug is a sulfa medication that has potential renal/liver toxicities. Failure to drink fluids may cause formation of urine crystals. Low sperm count may interfere with ability to conceive. Increased liver enzymes and decreased blood count have been reported. Alcohol can increase liver enzymes. Drug can cause birth defects. Drugs may exacerbate infections, MS, or lupus. Site reactions can be painful.
Leflunomide (Arava) 10 to 20 mg orally daily	Decreases inflammation by inhibiting an enzyme	Refrigerate all BRMs except Remicade. Teach patient to report chest pain or difficulty breathing during infusion; monitor blood pressure. Teach patients to report site reaction.	Refrigeration prevents drug decomposition. These are potentially life-threatening adverse drug events. Site reactions may occur.
Biological response modifiers (BRMs): <i>Etanercept (Enbrel)</i> : Usually 25 mg subcutaneously weekly <i>Infliximab (Remicade)</i> : Varies from 200 to 400 mg IV every 2 mo <i>Adalimumab (Humira)</i> : 40 mg subcutaneously every 2 wk with MTX or every week with no MTX <i>Anakinra (Kineret)</i> : Typically 100 mg subcutaneously daily	Neutralize biologic activity of either TNF or IL to decrease immune response	Teach patient to monitor site for reaction. Monitor WBC count. Report cough, dizziness, and sore throat. Monitor for dyspnea, wheezing, flushing, itching. Observe for infusion reaction as above.	Site reactions may occur. Drug can cause a severe decrease in WBC count and make patient very susceptible to infection. Serious infections can occur. This drug can cause a mild to moderate allergic reaction.
<i>Abatacept (Orencia)</i> : Based on body weight from 500 to 1000 mg IV each week for 3 wks; then every 2 wks <i>Rituximab (Rituxan)</i> : Two 1000-mg IV doses given 2 weeks apart			

CBC, Complete blood count; CNS, central nervous system; IL, interleukin; MS, multiple sclerosis; MTX, methotrexate; NSAIDs, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; TB, tuberculosis; TNF, tumor necrosis factor; WBC, white blood cell.

*This is not a comprehensive list; this chart lists only the common drugs used for arthritis and connective tissue disease.

a recent negative purified protein derivative (PPD) test. If not, a PPD skin test is typically administered and the selected BRM is not started until the results are known to be negative. Collaborate with the health care provider to ensure that this process is complete.

Etanercept (Enbrel) is given subcutaneously either as 50 mg once weekly or as 25 mg twice weekly. Immunosuppression with medications such as methotrexate is generally tried before using Enbrel or other biological response modifiers. Methotrexate may also be continued in combination with biologic therapies because the combination may be more effective than either drug alone. Most patients tolerate Enbrel or Enbrel and methotrexate together; however, laboratory monitoring is important. Combination therapy requires CBC, serum creatinine, and a liver panel to be drawn regularly, generally every 4 to 8 weeks. In general, clinical outcomes with Enbrel have been excellent.

Teach the patient or family member how to self-administer Enbrel injections. Injection site reactions and infections (especially respiratory) are possible adverse effects. Ice and hydrocortisone 1% cream can be used if a red, itchy rash at the injection site develops. The drug manufacturer cannot yet predict long-term potential side effects regarding severity of infection or cancer risk. To date, what has been seen is mild increase in upper respiratory infections with occasional serious infections. Teach the patient to notify the health care provider if infection or a delay in wound healing occurs.

Infliximab (Remicade), first approved to treat Crohn's disease, is given in a single IV infusion over several hours. The initial dose generally used for RA is 3 mg/kg of body weight. After the first few weeks of therapy, the drug is repeated at intervals between 2 and 8 weeks, depending on the response of the patient. Patients typically take methotrexate before starting Remicade and continue on combination therapy.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the patient to report and observe for symptoms of infusion reaction: chest discomfort, tachycardia, shortness of breath, or lightheadedness. If any of these symptoms are reported, decrease the IV rate or discontinue it!

The symptoms of infusion reaction generally subside, but the physician must be notified in case medical assistance is needed. Dose, rate, and interval changes may be needed. Acetaminophen and Benadryl are medications often given before the start of Remicade and are often used at the time of reported infusion reaction. Those who experience serious adverse effects, such as hypertension or anaphylaxis, require permanent discontinuation of the drug.

Adalimumab (Humira) is the first fully human TNFA inhibitor. It is a 40-mg, once every 2 weeks, subcutaneous injection. Symptoms of inflammatory arthritis tend to decrease with the use of Humira, including less joint swelling, less stiffness, and better movement.

Injection site reactions and adverse effects similar to the other TNFA inhibitors have been reported. Careful monitoring, especially with combination therapy of Humira and methotrexate or other immunosuppressive medication, is important and similar to combination therapy with other BRMs.

Anakinra (Kineret) is another biological response modifier. Instead of affecting tumor necrosis factor (TNF), however, it works to inhibit a different protein signal of the immune system called *interleukin-1 (IL-1)*. IL-1 is also a pro-inflammatory protein that signals the immune system to increase inflammation. It is thought that IL-1 is a weaker protein than TNF, but having an alternative drug that targets a different receptor site is helpful when a patient cannot take other biologics. Those who have multiple sclerosis or tuberculosis cannot take TNF inhibitors, but Kineret can be used with this population.

Injection site reactions occur more often with Kineret compared with other BRMs. Ice and hydrocortisone 1% cream are recommended. Remind patients to rotate injection sites. Kineret is administered with a simple jet for self-administration. The patient has the option to use the simple jet or administer the subcutaneous injection traditionally.

Abatacept (Orencia) and *rituximab (Rituxan, MabThera)* require IV infusions every 2 weeks to start and then may be more spread out, depending on the drug. Like the results of the other BRMs, patients usually report feeling a benefit from these drugs in 2 weeks, but it may take months for the maximum benefit to be seen. *Golimumab (Simponi)* is the first biologic that is administered only once each month for both RA and psoriatic arthritis.

The newest biologic that has been approved in the United States is *tocilizumab (Actemra)* and is given when the patient cannot tolerate other drug classes. Tocilizumab is different from other biologics because it is the first humanized interleukin-6 (IL-6) receptor-inhibiting monoclonal antibody that is available for patients with RA. It can be used alone or in combination with other DMARDs. Teach patients about adverse drug effects, including hypertension, GI distress, infection, and an increase in low-density lipoproteins (LDLs) and liver enzymes.

Other Drugs. A few drugs may be given as adjuncts to or instead of the previously described drugs. It is not unusual for a patient to be taking several disease-modifying drugs, such as methotrexate, a BRM, and an adjunct medication. Each drug works differently to relieve symptoms and slow the progression of the disease.

Glucocorticoids (steroids)—usually prednisone (Deltasone)—are given for their fast-acting anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive effects. Prednisone may be given in high dose for short duration (**pulse therapy**) or as a low chronic dose. Moderate-dose, short-term tapering bridge therapy may be used when inflammation is symptomatic and other RA medications are insufficient or have not yet had an effect.

Chronic steroid therapy can result in numerous complications, such as diabetes mellitus, infection, fluid and electrolyte imbalances, hypertension, osteoporosis, and glaucoma. Some drug effects are dose related, whereas others are not. Observe the patient for complications associated with chronic steroid therapy, and report them to the health care provider. For example, if blood pressure becomes elevated or significant laboratory values change, notify the health care provider.

Instruct patients taking chronic steroids to take calcium 1200 to 1500 mg daily plus vitamin D 400 mg daily to help prevent osteoporosis. Bisphosphonate drugs may also be prescribed. Periodic bone density measurements (DEXA scans) are done to monitor for bone loss.

Patients with RA may experience one or a few joints that have more pain and inflammation than the others. Cortisone injections in single joints may be used to relieve local pain and inflammation. Have the patient ice and rest the joint for 24 hours after the procedure. Oral analgesics also are sometimes needed during that time.

Other immunosuppressive agents that may be used are *azathioprine* (Imuran) and *cyclophosphamide* (Cytoxan). Cyclophosphamide is sometimes given specifically to control RA vasculitis. Such immunosuppressive drugs may cause bone marrow suppression and occasionally leukemia or lymphoma. White blood cell counts are expected to decrease 7 to 14 days after the administration of IV cyclophosphamide; therefore laboratory results are closely monitored to ensure safe limits. Hemorrhagic cystitis is a concern more with oral cyclophosphamide. Instruct the patient to drink water and void frequently (about every 2 hours while awake), which dilutes the urine and empties the bladder, thus decreasing opportunity for bladder irritation from residual drug. Hair thinning or loss can be seen with immunosuppressive medications. Cyclophosphamide may also cause sterility; strict birth control is recommended.

A new oral drug, R788, is awaiting FDA approval for use in patients with RA. It is the first in a new class of drugs that block synkinase, an enzyme that triggers inflammation. It is expected to be used for patients who are also taking MTX.

Nonpharmacologic Interventions

Adequate rest, proper positioning, and ice and heat applications are important in pain management. If acute inflammation is present, ice packs may be applied to “hot” joints for pain relief until the inflammation lessens. The ice pack should not be too heavy. At home, the patient can use a small bag of frozen peas or corn as an ice pack.

Heated paraffin (wax) dips may help decrease pain and increase comfort of arthritic hands. Finger and hand exercises are often done more easily after paraffin treatment. To relieve morning stiffness or the pain of late-stage disease, recommend a hot shower rather than a sponge bath or a tub bath. It is often difficult for the patient with RA to get into and out of a bathtub, although special hydraulic lifts and tub chairs may be available. Safety (grab) bars and nonskid tread in the tub or shower floor are important safety features to discuss with all patients. Some older adults prefer using shower chairs and a walk-in shower that does not have a ledge that could cause falls.

Hot packs applied directly to involved joints may be beneficial. Most physical therapy departments have machines that keep hot packs ready anytime they are needed. Teach patients to use the microwave or stovetop heating instructions to warm the heat pack at home. Remind them to follow the instructions given with each heating device used.

Plasmapheresis (sometimes called *plasma exchange*) is an in-hospital procedure prescribed by a health care provider in which the patient's plasma is treated to remove the antibodies causing the disease. Although not commonly done, this procedure may be combined with pulse therapy for patients with severe, life-threatening disease.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Some patients may have pain relief from hypnosis, acupuncture, imagery, music therapy, or other technique. Stress

management is also popular as a pain relief intervention. Chapters 2 and 5 discuss these therapies in more detail.

Adequate nutrition is an important part of the management of RA. Obesity should be avoided or treated if present. The inflammatory state may place a greater burden on the metabolism of some essential nutrients. This catabolic state may be related to increased cytokine production, specifically tumor necrosis factor.

According to the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, some supplements have been found to help decrease inflammation and prevent bone loss and include:

- Calcium supplements to prevent bone loss (should not be taken in excess to prevent kidney stones)
- Cold water fish or fish oil capsules containing omega-3 fatty acids at 2.5 to 5 g daily to reduce inflammation (should not be taken if the patient is taking anticoagulant therapy)
- Gamma-linolenic acid (GLA), an omega-6 fatty acid found in the oils of certain plant seeds, such as primrose and black currant

According to the Arthritis Foundation, no one food causes or cures RA; however, healthy nutrition in general is supported. Refer the patient to the Arthritis Foundation's pamphlet regarding diet and arthritis. Refer him or her to the dietitian for vitamin- and nutrition-specific questions or recommendations. Any herbal or nutrition supplement should be taken under the supervision of a qualified health care provider to prevent adverse events and drug-food or drug-drug interactions.

Other complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) therapies are safe and have been scientifically proven to be effective to help control RA pain for most people. Examples include mind-body therapies, such as relaxation techniques, tai chi, imagery, and spiritual practices (<http://nccam.nih.gov/health/RA>). For information about these techniques, see Chapter 2.

Promoting Self-Management

Although the physical appearance of a patient with severe RA may create the image that ADL independence is not possible, a number of alternative and creative methods can be used to perform these activities. *Do not perform these activities for the patient unless asked. Those with RA do not want to be dependent.* For example, hand deformities often prevent a patient from opening packages of food, such as a box of crackers; however, he or she may prefer to use the teeth to open the crackers rather than depend on someone else.

In the hospital or long-term care facility, a patient may not eat because of the barriers of heavy plate covers, milk cartons, small packages of condiments, and heavy containers. Styrofoam or paper cups may bend and collapse as he or she attempts to hold them. A china or heavy plastic cup with handles may be easier to manipulate. Collaborate with the dietitian to assist with access to food and total independence in eating.

When fine motor activities (e.g., squeezing a tube of toothpaste) become impossible, larger joints or body surfaces can substitute for smaller ones. For example, teach how to use the palm of the hand to press the paste onto the brush. Devices such as long-handled brushes can help patients brush their

hair; dressing sticks can assist with putting on pants. These examples illustrate the need to assess the problem area, suggest alternative methods, and refer the patient to an occupational or physical therapist for special assistive and adaptive devices if necessary.

Managing Fatigue

Nursing interventions depend in part on identifying the factors contributing to fatigue. For example, increases in pain, sleep disturbances, and weakness are positively associated with increased fatigue. Anemia may also be a contributing factor and may be treated with iron (if an iron deficiency anemia is present), folic acid, or vitamin supplements prescribed by the health care provider. Chronic normochromic or chronic hypochromic anemia often occurs in most chronic systemic diseases. Assess for drug-related blood loss, such as that caused by NSAIDs, by checking the stool for gross or occult blood. *Older white women are the most likely to experience GI bleeding as a result of taking these medications. The reason for this trend is not known.*

When fatigue results from muscle atrophy, the health care provider prescribes an aggressive physical therapy program to strengthen muscles and prevent further atrophy. Patients experience increased fatigue when pain prevents them from getting adequate rest and sleep. Measures to facilitate sleep include promoting a quiet environment, giving warm beverages, and administering hypnotics or relaxants as prescribed, if necessary.

In addition to identifying and managing specific reasons for fatigue, determine the patient's usual daily activities and teach principles of **energy conservation**, including:

- Pacing activities
- Allowing rest periods
- Setting priorities
- Obtaining assistance when needed

Chart 20-10 lists specific suggestions for conserving energy and thus increasing activity tolerance.

Enhancing Body Image

Body image may be affected by both the disease process and drug therapy. Steroids can cause a moonfaced appearance, acne, striae, "buffalo humps," and weight gain. Determine the patient's perception of these changes and the impact of the reactions of family and significant others. The most important intervention is communicating acceptance of the patient. When a trusting relationship is established, encourage him or her to express personal feelings.

CHART 20-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Energy Conservation for the Patient with Arthritis

- Balance activity with rest. Take one or two naps each day.
- Pace yourself; do not plan too much for one day.
- Set priorities. Determine which activities are most important, and do them first.
- Delegate responsibilities and tasks to your family and friends.
- Plan ahead to prevent last-minute rushing and stress.
- Learn your own activity tolerance, and do not exceed it.

Another way to improve body image while in the hospital or nursing home is to use personal items. A hospital gown reinforces the sick role. Encourage patients to wear their own clothes, to brush their hair, and to use makeup if desired. Assist or teach the family to assist the patient as needed. The use of colored hair accessories, nail polish, and perfume may improve a female's image and self-concept.

As a reaction to body image disturbance and the presence of a chronic, painful disease, some patients display behaviors indicative of loss. They may use coping strategies that range from denial or fear to anger or depression. In an attempt to regain control over the effects of the disease process, they may appear to be "manipulative and demanding" and sometimes may be referred to as having an "arthritis personality." *This personality, which represents a negative label, is a myth; using these terms should be avoided.* Patients are trying to cope with the effects of their illness and should be treated with patience and understanding. Continually assess and accept these behaviors, but remain realistic in discussing goals to improve self-esteem. Emphasize their strengths, and help them identify previously successful coping strategies.

Community-Based Care

Patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) are usually managed at home but, in a few cases, may be institutionalized in a long-term care facility if they become restricted to bed or a wheelchair. Some patients may be transferred to a rehabilitation facility for several weeks to aid in developing strategies, techniques, and skills for independent living at home.

Home Care Management

The amount of home care preparation depends on the severity of the disease. Structural changes may be necessary if there are deficits in ADLs or mobility. Doors must be wide enough to accommodate a wheelchair or walker if one is used. Ramps are needed to prevent the patient in a wheelchair from becoming homebound. If the person cannot use stairs, he or she must have access to facilities for all ADLs on one floor. Handrails should be available in the bathroom and halls.

To promote continued homemaking functions, countertops and appliances may require structural changes. The patient may also require handrails and elevated chairs and toilet seats, which facilitate transfers (Fig. 20-6). *These devices are especially important for older adults with arthritis.*



FIG. 20-6 Handrails and an elevated toilet seat make transfers easier for the patient.

Teaching for Self-Management

Health teaching is a vital role for nurses in the diagnosis and management of arthritis. Many people have signs and symptoms of joint inflammation but do not seek medical attention. Teach them to seek professional health care to reduce pain and disability.

Health teaching is also important for promoting adherence to a treatment plan. A patient who understands the disease process and the treatment rationale can better follow and ask questions about the treatment plan.

Teach patients to discuss any questions with their health care provider before trying any over-the-counter or home remedies. Some remedies may be harmful. Check with the Arthritis Foundation for the latest information on arthritis myths and quackery (www.arthritis.org).

Provide information to the patient and family about drug therapy, as well as joint protection, energy conservation, rest, and exercise. This health teaching is summarized in [Charts 20-5, 20-6, and 20-10](#).

Assess the patient's coping strategies. The patient with RA often reports being on an "emotional roller coaster" from coping with a chronic illness every day. Control over one's life is an important human need. The patient with an unpredictable chronic disease may lose this control, and this lowers self-esteem. Health care providers must allow the patient to make decisions about care. Families and significant others must also include him or her in decision making. Although the patient's behavior may be perceived as demanding or manipulative, his or her self-esteem cannot be improved without this important aspect of interpersonal relationships.

Increased dependency also affects a sense of control and self-esteem. Some people ignore their health needs and portray a tough image for others by insisting that they need no assistance. Emphasize to the patient and family that asking for help may be the best decision at times to prevent further joint damage and disease progression.

RA may also affect work and social roles. The patient may have physical difficulty doing tasks that require lifting, climbing, grasp, or gross or fine motor activities. The severity of RA disease may cause difficulty with total number of hours worked. Some people with RA can do their jobs well without problem; others may have varying degrees of difficulty. Those who can no longer do their job at work may need to discuss with their employer having a lighter workload, but some may need to file for disability with their company and Social Security.

Arthritis support groups and self-help courses provide the education and the support that patients, families, and friends need. Refer the patient to a psychological counselor or religious or spiritual leader for emotional support and guidance during times of crisis or as needed. Identify and recommend other support systems within the family and community when necessary.

Health Care Resources

The need for health care resources for the patient with RA is similar to that for the patient with osteoarthritis. A home care nurse or aide, physical therapist, or occupational therapist may be needed during severe exacerbations or as the disease progresses. In collaboration with the case manager, identify these resources and make sure they are available before

transfer or discharge. The Arthritis Foundation is an excellent source of information and support.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration; Safety

A 52-year-old woman with RA has been controlled with methotrexate and Celebrex for 10 years. Recently she has experienced increased joint pain and swelling, which have affected her mobility and activity level. Earlier in the week, she fell while walking to her car after she left the bank where she works as a teller. The rheumatologist plans to add adalimumab (Humira) to her drug regimen.

1. What additional nursing assessment is needed for this patient now and why?
2. With what members of the health care team might you collaborate as part of her plan of care?
3. What safety measures are needed before she begins Humira?
4. What health teaching will she need before starting Humira?
5. What options related to her current role at the bank might she have?

LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

Pathophysiology

In the mid-nineteenth century, the facial rash accompanying this disease was thought to look like the facial markings of a wolf. The rash was usually red, and thus the term *erythematosis*, a Latin word meaning "reddened," was added to describe the disease.

The two main classifications of lupus are discoid lupus erythematosus (DLE) and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE). A small percentage of patients with lupus have the DLE type, which affects only the skin.

Unlike DLE, **systemic lupus erythematosus** is a chronic, progressive, inflammatory connective tissue disorder that can cause major body organs and systems to fail. It is characterized by spontaneous remissions and **exacerbations** ("flare-ups"), and the onset may be acute or insidious (slow). The condition is potentially fatal, but the survival rate has improved dramatically when SLE is diagnosed early and treated adequately. Today most patients with SLE are living many years after diagnosis and can lead productive lives. Improvements in determining the cause, diagnosis, and treatment of lupus account for the prolonged survival.

Lupus is thought to be an autoimmune process. Antinuclear antibodies (ANAs) primarily affect the DNA, ribonucleic acid (RNA), and other components within the cell nuclei. As a result, immune complexes form in the serum and organ tissues, which cause inflammation, damage, and destruction (McCance et al., 2010). These complexes invade organs directly or cause **vasculitis** (vessel inflammation), which deprives the organs of arterial blood and oxygen.

Autoimmune complexes in SLE tend to be most attracted to the glomeruli of the kidneys. Therefore many of these patients have some degree of kidney involvement, called *lupus nephritis*—the leading cause of death. Other causes of death from the disease are cardiac and central nervous system involvement.

The onset of the disease occurs most often during the childbearing years (ages 20 to 40 years), but it has been reported in young children and older adults. A genetic predisposition is based on the trend to develop the disease in



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Lupus affects women 10 times more often than men; women of color are affected far more often than Euro-Americans. The reason for this difference is unknown (McCance et al., 2020). The disease also occurs among American Indians, Asian Americans, and Hispanics (Lupus Foundation of America, 2011).

some twins and the occurrence of autoimmune disease in some families of patients who have lupus. However, it is not the only basis of the disease. Like RA, lupus is probably caused by a *combination of genetic and environmental factors*.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Over the past several decades, more than 100 genetic risk factors have been identified as possible causes of lupus. The research challenge is that patients with lupus differ from each other in their genetic risk and makeup. To complicate this situation, environmental factors can trigger an autoimmune response in some people and not in others with the same risk. For example, SLE may be triggered by a virus, such as Epstein-Barr, in some people who have a genetic risk for the disease (Sestak et al., 2007).

A transient lupus-like syndrome can occur in some patients taking select medications, especially procainamide (Pronestyl) and hydralazine (McCance et al., 2010). When these drugs are discontinued, the syndrome usually resolves. Neither of these drugs is commonly used as much today. Long-term use of newer biological response modifiers (BRMs) like infliximab, which is used to treat RA and other autoimmune diseases, may also cause a lupus-like syndrome.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

It is impossible to describe a typical textbook picture of a patient with lupus because of the extreme range of symptoms. There is no classic presentation of this disease. When lupus is in remission, the patient may appear healthy and have few or no activity limitations. When the disease flares, some patients may be so ill that admission to a critical care unit is needed. [Chart 20-11](#) highlights the clinical manifestations that can occur with systemic lupus.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Skin Involvement. The major skin manifestation of DLE and SLE is a dry, scaly, raised rash on the face (**“butterfly” rash**) ([Fig. 20-7](#)). This rash may also appear on other sun-exposed areas. The rash is initially nonscarring and may increase in a lupus flare and disappear when the disease is in remission.

Individual round **discoid** (coinlike) **lesions** are the scarring lesions of discoid lupus. The lesions are especially evident when the patient is exposed to sunlight or ultraviolet light. Alopecia is also common in lupus. Observe and document all skin changes, and monitor them daily while the patient is in an acute care setting or during an ambulatory care or home visit. Mouth ulcers are not uncommon.

CHART 20-11 KEY FEATURES

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE) and Systemic Sclerosis (SSc)

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS	SYSTEMIC SCLEROSIS
Skin Manifestations	
Inflamed, red rash	Inflamed
Discoid lesions	Fibrotic
	Sclerotic
	Edematous
Renal Manifestations	
Nephritis	Renal failure
Cardiovascular Manifestations	
Pericarditis	Myocardial fibrosis
Raynaud’s phenomenon	Raynaud’s phenomenon
Pulmonary Manifestations	
Pleural effusions	Interstitial fibrosis
	Pulmonary hypertension
Neurologic Manifestations	
CNS lupus	Not common
Gastrointestinal Manifestations	
Abdominal pain	Esophagitis
	Ulcers
Musculoskeletal Manifestations	
Joint inflammation	Joint inflammation
Myositis	Myositis
Other Manifestations	
Fever	Fever
Fatigue	Fatigue
Anorexia	Anorexia
Vasculitis	Vasculitis

CNS, Central nervous system.



FIG. 20-7 The characteristic “butterfly” rash of systemic lupus erythematosus.

Other Manifestations. In addition to skin changes, *polyarthritis* occurs in most patients with SLE. The early joint changes are similar to those seen in rheumatoid arthritis (RA), but severe deformities are not common even in late disease. Small joints and the knees are most commonly involved. **Osteonecrosis** (bone necrosis from lack of oxygen) is often seen in those who have been treated for at least 5 years with steroids like prednisone. Chronic steroid therapy may cause the constriction of small blood vessels supplying the joint, which causes the tissue to die. The hip is most commonly affected, and reports of pain and decreased mobility result. As a result, a total hip arthroplasty may be done.

Observe for *muscle atrophy*, which can result from disuse, from skeletal muscle invasion by the immune complexes (**myositis**), or from chronic steroid therapy. Myalgia (muscle pain) may also occur. Inspect and palpate the major muscles, especially those in the extremities.

Because SLE is an inflammatory condition, *fever* and *fatigue* are common findings. *Fever is the classic sign of a flare, or exacerbation.* Various degrees of generalized weakness, fatigue, anorexia, and weight loss may occur. These signs may be the only evidence of disease, which makes diagnosis by the health care provider difficult. Therefore some patients have a diagnosis of “probable SLE.”

Any or all body systems may be affected by SLE. Because lupus nephritis is the leading cause of death, carefully assess for signs of renal involvement (e.g., changes in urine output, proteinuria, hematuria, fluid retention).

Pleural effusions or *pneumonia* is found in almost half of all cases of SLE, but this complication is usually not life threatening. Pulmonary restrictive or obstructive changes may not result in overt clinical signs; however, progressive involvement can lead to dyspnea and arterial blood gas abnormalities. Perform a complete respiratory assessment to determine any abnormalities in respiratory pattern or breath sounds.

Pericarditis is the most common cardiovascular manifestation and causes tachycardia, chest pain, and myocardial ischemia. Monitor the vital signs at least every 4 hours while the patient is in the hospital, and report chest pain immediately to the physician. *Anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia* are also common in patients with SLE.

Raynaud's phenomenon occurs in a small portion of lupus patients. On exposure to cold or extreme stress, the patient reports the characteristic red, white, and blue color changes and severe pain in the digits; these changes are caused by arteriolar vasospasm. Ask patients whether color changes occur when their hands or feet are exposed to cold or when they are extremely stressed.

Neurologic manifestations are varied. Central nervous system effects include psychoses, paresis, seizures, migraine headaches, and cranial nerve palsies. Peripheral neuropathies are also common. Perform a neurologic assessment as described in Chapter 43.

Monitor *abdominal pain*, which usually results from **serositis** (peritoneal involvement). Mesenteric arteritis, pancreatitis from arteritis of the pancreatic artery, and colonic ulcers also can cause abdominal pain with lupus. Jaundice is rare. Many patients have lymph enlargement, and a few have splenomegaly (enlarged spleen). Palpate the lymph nodes, and document findings. Vasculitis affecting any major or small vessels can lead to organ failure.

Psychosocial Assessment

The psychosocial results of lupus can be devastating. With either DLE or SLE, the rash can be disfiguring and embarrassing. Young adult women who never had a blemish are confronted with a rash that cannot be completely covered with makeup. If chronic steroid therapy is used, side effects such as acne, striae, fat pads, and weight gain intensify the problem of an already altered body image.

Chronic fatigue and generalized weakness may prevent the patient from being as active as in the past. He or she may avoid social gatherings and may withdraw from family activities. The unpredictability and chronicity of SLE can cause fear and anxiety. Fear may increase if the patient knows another person with the disease, particularly if the other person has more advanced severe disease. Unfortunately, the myth that lupus is fatal is still common. Inform the patient and family that control of lupus is generally possible with regular medical monitoring, medications, and healthy practices, such as limiting sun exposure to prevent exacerbation of the disease.

Assess the patient's and family's feelings about the illness to identify areas requiring intervention. Determine their usual coping mechanisms and support systems before developing a plan of care. See p. 335 in the Psychosocial Assessment section of the Rheumatoid Arthritis section for additional information.

Laboratory Assessment

Because discoid lupus erythematosus (DLE) is not a systemic condition, the only significant test is a *skin biopsy*. The physician gently scrapes skin cells from the rash for microscopic evaluation. The characteristic lupus cell and a number of inflammatory cells confirm the diagnosis.

Some of the immunologic-based laboratory tests used to diagnose SLE are the same as those performed for rheumatoid arthritis (RA): rheumatoid factor, antinuclear antibody, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, serum protein electrophoresis, serum complement (especially C3 and C4), and immunoglobulins (see Chart 20-8). A false-positive Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) syphilis test is common with lupus (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

More specific immunologic tests, such as anti-SS-a (Ro), anti-SS-b (La), anti-Smith (anti-Sm), anti-DNA, and extractable nuclear antigens (ENAs), are also performed. High titers of some of these antibodies are associated with lupus, but some of these antibodies can be found in people without the disease. Some patients with lupus do not have high titers of these antibodies.

A complete blood count (CBC) commonly shows **pancytopenia** (a decrease of all cell types), probably caused by direct attack of the blood cells or bone marrow by immune complexes. Serum electrolyte levels, renal function, cardiac and liver enzymes, and clotting factors are also routinely assessed to determine other body system functioning.

INTERVENTIONS

The health care provider often prescribes potent drugs that are used topically and systemically. In addition, precautions are taken to prevent further skin impairment and exacerbations. Many of the skin lesions do not disappear, even with treatment, but they usually fade when the disease is in remission.

Managing Lupus with Drug Therapy

With DLE, the patient's major concern is the rash or discoid lesions. Patients with SLE are also concerned about skin changes. Topical cortisone preparations help reduce inflammation and promote fading of the skin lesions. In addition, the health care provider may prescribe the anti-malarial agent *hydroxychloroquine* (Plaquenil) for some patients (see [Chart 20-9](#)). Plaquenil decreases the absorption of ultraviolet light by the skin and therefore decreases the risk for skin lesions. *Teach patients to have frequent eye examinations if they are receiving Plaquenil.*

Acetaminophen (Tylenol) or NSAIDs may be used to treat musculoskeletal problems like arthritis and myalgias. The aim of managing other systemic manifestations of SLE is to treat the disease aggressively until remission.

In addition to medications for skin lesions, the health care provider often prescribes chronic steroid therapy to treat the systemic disease process. For renal or central nervous system lupus, the health care provider may also prescribe immunosuppressive agents, such as methotrexate (Rheumatrex) or azathioprine (Imuran) (see [Chart 20-9](#)). Although clinical manifestations improve during remission, maintenance doses of these drugs are usually continued to prevent further exacerbations of the disease. These drugs make patients susceptible to infections.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When patients are taking steroids and/or immunosuppressants, stress the importance of avoiding large crowds and people who are ill. Teach patients to report any early sign of infection to their health care provider. Observe for side effects and toxic effects of these drugs, and report their occurrence immediately.

For severe renal involvement, immunosuppressants may be given in combination with steroids. For patients who do not respond to this regimen, a high-dose IV bolus of glucocorticoids, cyclophosphamide, and plasmapheresis may be tried for 3 consecutive days. Renal transplantation has been successful for some patients.

Two new drugs in clinical trials show promise for lupus patients—Lupuzor, a new oral drug, and belimumab (Benlysta), a monoclonal antibody (mAb). If approved, these drugs will be the first to be approved in 50 years for managing lupus.

Protecting the Skin

Teach patients to protect their skin to prevent an exacerbation of the disease.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Instruct patients to avoid prolonged exposure to sunlight and other forms of ultraviolet lighting, including certain types of fluorescent light. Remind them to wear long sleeves and a large-brimmed hat when outdoors. Patients should use sun-blocking agents with a sun protection factor (SPF) of 30 or higher on exposed skin surfaces.

In addition, teach patients to clean the skin with mild soap (e.g., Ivory) and to avoid harsh, perfumed substances. The skin should be rinsed and dried well and lotion applied.

CHART 20-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Evidence-Based Practice for Skin Protection in Patients with Lupus Erythematosus

- Cleanse your skin with a mild soap, such as Ivory.
- Dry your skin thoroughly by patting rather than rubbing.
- Apply lotion liberally to dry skin areas.
- Avoid powder and other drying agents, such as rubbing alcohol.
- Use cosmetics that contain moisturizers.
- Avoid direct sunlight and any other type of ultraviolet lighting, including tanning beds.
- Wear a large-brimmed hat, long sleeves, and long pants when in the sun.
- Use a sun-blocking agent with a sun protection factor (SPF) of at least 30.
- Inspect your skin daily for open areas and rashes.

Excess powder and other drying substances should be avoided. Cosmetics must be carefully selected and should include moisturizers and sun protectors. If desired, refer the patient to a medical cosmetologist who specializes in applying makeup for skin lesions of all types, if requested.

Patients' hair should receive special attention because alopecia (hair loss) is common. Recommend the use of mild protein shampoos and the avoidance of harsh treatments (e.g., permanents or highlights) until the hair regrows during remission.

Community-Based Care

Community-based care for the patient with lupus is similar to that for RA. In general, the patient is home but may need repeated hospitalizations during exacerbations of disease. He or she usually does not need rehabilitation unless having surgery, because severe joint deformity and prolonged immobility are not common in lupus.

Two major differences exist between SLE and RA in terms of education of the patient and family or significant others. First, instruct patients how to protect the skin ([Chart 20-12](#)). Second, teach them to monitor body temperature. Fever is the major sign of an exacerbation, during which they can become seriously ill. Teach the importance of reporting any other unusual or new clinical manifestations to the health care provider immediately.

Many patients become frustrated that family members, significant others, and lay people do not have a thorough understanding of lupus. When lupus is in complete remission, patients appear to be healthy; however, an exacerbation can lead to a critical care admission. This unpredictability disrupts the patient's life and can cause fear and anxiety. Help him or her identify coping strategies and support systems that can help with functioning in the community.

Teach the possible effects of the disease on lifestyle, including fatigue. Women of childbearing age need to know that pregnancy can be a stressor and can cause an exacerbation of the disease, either during pregnancy or after delivery. The pregnant woman also has an increased risk for miscarriage, stillbirth, or premature birth. Pregnancy is not recommended for those with cardiac, renal, or central nervous system involvement. Sexual counseling regarding contraception options may be necessary.

The Arthritis Foundation is a general resource for all patients with connective tissue disease. The Lupus Foundation (www.lupus.org) is a resource specific for patients with lupus. It is a national organization and has chapters in every state to provide information and assistance for patients with lupus and their families. Local support groups and services are offered free of charge.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

What health teaching by the nurse is the most important for clients diagnosed with discoid lupus erythematosus and managing the disease using topical steroid cream?

- A. "Take calcium supplements to prevent osteoporosis from the steroid."
- B. "Stay away from crowds and people with infections."
- C. "Avoid being in the sun to prevent disease flare-ups."
- D. "Use heavy powder makeup to cover skin lesions."

SYSTEMIC SCLEROSIS

Pathophysiology

Systemic sclerosis (SSc), also called *scleroderma*, is an uncommon chronic, inflammatory, autoimmune connective tissue disease. Formerly called *progressive systemic disease*, or *PSS*, this illness is not always progressive. **Scleroderma** means hardening of the skin, which is only one clinical manifestation of the problem. Some patients, often children, have only skin involvement, or localized scleroderma (also called *linear scleroderma*). However, adults usually have skin and other body system involvement. SSc is less common than systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) but is associated with a higher mortality rate. See [Chart 20-11](#) for a comparison of the clinical manifestations of these two diseases. The manifestations for both diseases vary widely from person to person.

The early inflammatory process of SSc is so similar to that of lupus that patients may first be diagnosed as having probable SLE until the disease progresses or until antibody testing supports the diagnosis. The inflamed tissue in patients with SSc becomes fibrotic and then **sclerotic** (hard). Renal involvement is the leading cause of death. Respiratory involvement and hypertension are also common. Patients with SSc do not respond well to the steroids and immunosuppressants used for lupus, and therefore the mortality rate is higher.

The classification for systemic sclerosis is:

- **Diffuse cutaneous SSc**—skin thickening on the trunk, face, and proximal and distal extremities (over most of the body)
- **Limited cutaneous SSc**—thickened skin limited to sites distal to the face, neck, and distal extremities

Patients with the *limited* form of the disease often have the **CREST syndrome**:

- Calcinosis (calcium deposits)
- Raynaud's phenomenon (first symptom that occurs)
- Esophageal dysmotility
- Sclerodactyly (scleroderma of the digits)
- Telangiectasia (spider-like hemangiomas)

The first symptom that usually occurs in patients with the *diffuse* form of the disease is hand and forearm edema, which may exist with bilateral carpal tunnel syndrome.

Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is commonly present in patients with either type of the disease.

Little is known about the cause of SSc, but autoimmunity is suspected. The occurrence of more than one case per family is uncommon, but other connective tissue diseases may be noted in the family history. At this time, specific genetic causes have not been confirmed.

Systemic sclerosis has been described in people of all races and in all geographic areas and affects over 300,000 people. Women are affected more often than men. The onset of the disease is usually between 25 and 55 years of age, with most women getting it in their 40s (Scleroderma Foundation, 2011).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Arthralgia (joint pain) and stiffness are common manifestations that you can assess during the musculoskeletal examination. The acute inflammation that occurs with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is not common, and deformities are rare.

Findings on inspection of the skin depend on the stage of the scleroderma. Typically, a painless, symmetric, pitting edema of the hands and fingers is present, especially in patients with the diffuse form of the disease. The edema may progress to include the entire upper and lower extremities and face. In this phase, the fingers are described as *sausage-like*. The skin is taut, shiny, and free of wrinkles. If diffuse scleroderma occurs, swelling is replaced by tightening, hardening, and thickening of skin tissue; this phase is sometimes called the *indurative phase* ([Fig. 20-8](#)). The skin loses its elasticity, and range of motion is markedly decreased; ulcerations may occur. Joint contractures may develop, and the patient may be unable to perform ADLs independently.

Major organ damage is likely to develop with diffuse scleroderma, specifically affecting the renal and cardiopulmonary systems. The initial GERD symptoms progress into other problems, especially affecting the esophagus. The esophagus loses its motility, resulting in *dysphagia* (*difficulty swallowing*). Assess for the ability of the patient to swallow before allowing him or her to drink or eat food. A small, sliding hiatal hernia may be present, and swallowing may be difficult. Reflux of the gastric contents can cause esophagitis and subsequent ulceration, particularly in the lower two thirds of the esophagus. Intestinal changes are similar to those of the esophagus. Peristalsis is diminished, which causes clinical manifestations similar to a partial bowel obstruction. Malabsorption is a common complication, causing malodorous *diarrheal stools*.

In addition to assessing problems of the digestive tract, observe for *cardiovascular manifestations*. *Raynaud's phenomenon* occurs in various degrees in most patients with SSc. On exposure to cold or emotional stress, the small arterioles in the digits of both hands and feet rapidly constrict, which causes decreased blood flow. In severe cases, the patient experiences digit necrosis, excruciating pain, and **autoamputation of the distal digits** (the tips of the digits fall off spontaneously). In many patients, vasculitic lesions, often around the nail beds (**periungual lesions**), are evident. *Myocardial fibrosis*, another common problem, is evidenced by



FIG. 20-8 Late-stage skin changes seen in patients with systemic sclerosis.

electrocardiographic (ECG) changes, cardiac dysrhythmias, and chest pain.

Lung involvement in the patient with SSc may go undetected until late in the disease or sometimes until autopsy. *Fibrosis of the alveoli and interstitial tissues* is present in almost all cases of the disease, but clinical manifestations may not be present. Patients with scleroderma and *pulmonary arterial hypertension* have a more serious prognosis. *Renal involvement* is an important aspect of the overall disease process and often causes malignant hypertension and death. Assess for signs of impending organ failure, such as changes in urine output and increased blood pressure.

Laboratory Assessment

The laboratory findings for SSc are similar to those for SLE. Clinical findings and the patient's response to drug therapy help the health care provider differentiate between the two diseases. Additional tests depend on which organs seem to be affected. Upper and lower GI series are commonly performed because of the frequency of GI clinical manifestations.

INTERVENTIONS

The medical management of SSc aims to force the disease into remission and thus slow disease progression. The health care provider uses drug therapy primarily for this purpose, but it is often unsuccessful. Systemic steroids and immunosuppressants are used in large doses and often in combination (see [Chart 20-9](#)). Another desired outcome of disease management is to identify early organ involvement and treat it before it becomes severe and irreversible. For example, a patient who has lung involvement receives aggressive respiratory therapy and other treatments as the condition requires. Recently, bosentan (Tracleer), the first of a new class of drugs called *endothelin receptor antagonists*, demonstrated improved walk tests for patients with class III or class IV pulmonary arterial hypertension. Various doses improved patients' breathing during exercise, but the potential for liver injury at the highest dose caused recommended doses to be lowered. Teach the patient the desired and potential adverse effects, including liver toxicity and birth defects. Remind him or her of the importance of follow-up testing for liver enzyme levels.

Local skin protective measures can help maintain skin integrity. Teach the patient to use mild soap and lotions and gentle cleaning techniques. Inspect the skin for further

CHART 20-13 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient with Systemic Sclerosis and Esophagitis

- Keep the patient's head elevated at least 60 degrees during meals and for at least 1 hour after each meal.
- Provide small, frequent meals rather than three large meals each day.
- Give the patient small amounts of food for each bite, and explain the importance of chewing each bite carefully before swallowing.
- Provide semisoft foods, such as mashed potatoes and pudding or custard; liquids are most likely to cause choking.
- Collaborate with the dietitian about the patient's diet.
- Teach the patient to avoid foods that increase gastric secretion, such as caffeine, pepper, and other spices.
- Give antacids or histamine antagonists as needed.

changes or open lesions. Skin ulcers are treated according to their type and location.

In addition to drug therapy to control the overall disease process, specific measures can provide comfort. The patient with SSc not only experiences chronic joint pain but also has severe, acute pain during episodes of Raynaud's phenomenon. Remind unlicensed nursing personnel to use a bed cradle and foot board to keep bed covers away from the skin in severe cases. Adjust the room temperature to prevent chilling, which can precipitate digit vasospasm. The patient who can tolerate touching of the affected areas can wear gloves and socks to increase warmth. Because cigarette smoking and extreme emotional stress can also cause symptoms to recur, teach the patient to avoid or minimize these factors as much as possible.

If the patient has esophageal involvement, collaborate with the speech and language pathologist to schedule a swallowing study. The patient may need small, frequent meals rather than the traditional three meals daily. He or she should minimize the intake of foods and liquids that stimulate gastric secretion (e.g., spicy foods, caffeine, alcohol). Teach the patient to keep his or her head elevated for 1 to 2 hours after meals. He or she may need to be in this position continuously. Histamine antagonists and antacids help reduce and neutralize gastric acid. To help prevent choking, collaborate with the dietitian for dietary changes ([Chart 20-13](#)).

Nursing care for the patient with joint pain and decreased mobility is very similar to that for rheumatoid arthritis (see the Interventions section of the Rheumatoid Arthritis section on p. 336). NSAIDs are given for inflammation and pain. Joint protection and energy conservation are also important for these patients.

Community-Based Care

Community-based care for the person with SSc is similar to that for lupus. The patient is treated at home but may need frequent hospitalizations if major organ involvement occurs during exacerbations. The Arthritis Foundation (www.arthritis.org) and Scleroderma Foundation (www.scleroderma.org) are excellent resources for more information about the disease and how to manage it.

GOUT

Pathophysiology

Gout, or gouty arthritis, is a systemic disease in which urate crystals deposit in the joints and other body tissues, causing inflammation. It is the most common inflammatory arthritis in older adults, affecting an estimated 6 million people (Arthritis Foundation, 2011a). The cause and treatment of gout have been firmly established. The classic case of well-advanced disease is seldom seen today unless the patient does not adhere to the therapeutic regimen. The two major types of gout are primary and secondary.

Primary gout is the most common type and results from one of several inborn errors of purine metabolism. An end product of purine metabolism is uric acid, which is usually excreted by the kidneys. In primary gout, the production of uric acid exceeds the excretion capability of the kidneys. Sodium urate is deposited in synovium and other tissues, resulting in inflammation. For some patients, primary gout is inherited as an X-linked trait; males are affected through female carriers. A number of patients have a family history of gout. Primary gout affects middle-aged and older men and postmenopausal women. The peak time of onset in men is between 40 and 50 years of age (McCance et al., 2010).

Secondary gout involves **hyperuricemia** (excessive uric acid in the blood) caused by another disease or factor. Secondary gout affects people of all ages. Renal insufficiency, diuretic therapy, “crash” diets, and certain chemotherapeutic agents decrease the normal excretion of uric acid and other waste products. Disorders such as multiple myeloma and certain carcinomas result in increased production of uric acid because of a greater turnover of cellular nucleic acids. Treatment involves management of the underlying disorder.

Hyperuricemia and gout are often seen in older patients with cardiovascular health problems. There is some debate as to whether gout actually contributes to the development of coronary artery disease (CAD). The exact cause of this relationship needs further study.

The three clinical stages of the primary disease process are asymptomatic hyperuricemia, acute gouty arthritis, and chronic or tophaceous gout (McCance et al., 2010). The patient is usually unaware of the *asymptomatic hyperuricemic stage* unless he or she has had a serum uric acid level determination. The serum level is elevated, but no obvious

signs of the disease are present. No treatment is needed in this stage.

The first “attack” of gouty arthritis begins the *acute stage*. The patient experiences excruciating pain and inflammation in one or more small joints, usually the metatarsophalangeal joint of the great toe, called **podagra**. The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is usually increased as a result of the inflammatory process. Months or years may pass before additional attacks occur. The patient is asymptomatic, and no abnormalities are found during examination of the joints.

After repeated episodes of acute gout, deposits of urate crystals develop under the skin and within the major organs, particularly in the renal system. The patient is then classified as having *chronic tophaceous gout*. In chronic gout, urate kidney stone formation is more common than renal insufficiency. Chronic gout can begin anywhere between 3 and 40 years after the initial gout symptoms occur (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Note the patient’s age, gender, and family history of gout. A complete history is needed to determine whether gout has been caused by another problem. Some women overuse diuretics, which can lead to secondary gout.

Acute Gout

Overt manifestations are present in the acute and chronic phases of gout. You will likely encounter a patient with acute gout, but chronic gout is not as common in the United States today. *Joint inflammation is the most common finding and is usually so painful that the patient seeks medical care immediately.* Inspect the inflamed area. It is usually too painful and swollen to be touched or moved.

The health care provider requests a serum uric acid level to check for hyperuricemia. Because the level can be altered by food intake, several measurements may be obtained. A consistent level of more than 6.5 mg/dL is generally considered abnormal. Urinary uric acid levels are also measured; an overproduction of uric acid is confirmed by an excretion of more than 750 mg/24 hr (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

The health care provider may request renal function tests, such as blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and serum creatinine levels, to monitor possible kidney involvement. A definitive diagnostic test for the disease is synovial fluid aspiration (arthrocentesis) to detect the needle-like crystals in the affected joint that are characteristic of the disorder.

Chronic Gout

With chronic gout, inspect the skin for **tophi**, or deposits of sodium urate crystals (Fig. 20-9). Although tophi may occur anywhere, they commonly appear on the outer ear. Other common sites for tophi are the arms and fingers near the joints. The tophi are hard on palpation and are irregular in shape. When the skin over the tophi is irritated, it may break open and a yellow, gritty substance is discharged. Infection may result.

Other manifestations of chronic gout include signs of renal calculi (stones) or renal dysfunction, such as severe pain

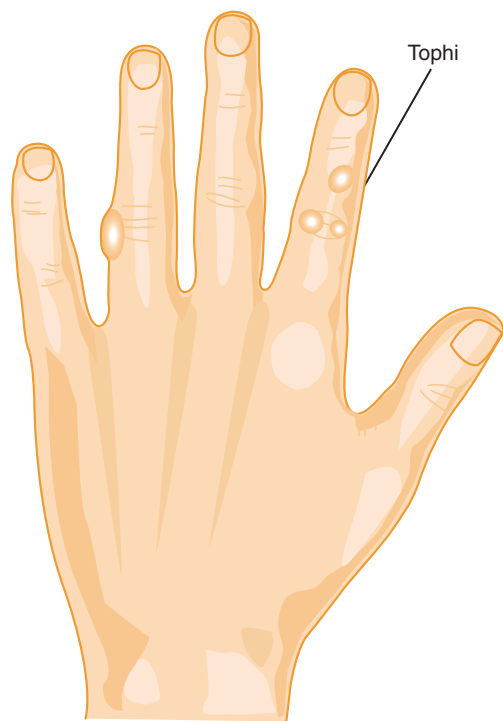


FIG. 20-9 Typical appearance of tophi, which may occur in chronic gout, on an index finger.

or changes in urinary output. In some cases, urate kidney stones occur before the arthritis is present.

INTERVENTIONS

Gout is one of the easiest diseases for the health care provider to diagnose and treat in its early phases. If the patient receives treatment and adheres to drug therapy, he or she should experience no further symptoms and no change in body image or lifestyle. The patient with gout is treated on an ambulatory basis, but hospitalized patients may have a secondary diagnosis of the disease.

Drug Therapy

Drug therapy is the key to managing patients with gout. In acute gouty “attacks,” the inflammation subsides spontaneously within 3 to 5 days; however, most patients cannot tolerate the pain for that long. The drugs used for acute gout are different from those used for chronic gout. The health care provider typically prescribes a combination of colchicine (Colsalide) and an NSAID, such as indomethacin (Indocin, Novomethacin ) or ibuprofen (Motrin, Amersol ) for acute gout. IV colchicine works within 12 hours. The patient takes oral medications until the inflammation subsides, usually for 4 to 7 days.

For patients with repeated acute episodes or with chronic gout, the health care provider prescribes drugs to promote uric acid excretion or to reduce its production on a continuous, maintenance basis. Allopurinol (Zyloprim, Purinol ) or febuxostat (Uloric) is the drug of choice. As xanthine oxidase inhibitors, these drugs prevent the conversion of xanthine to uric acid. Teach patients to take them after meals and drink a glass of water with each dose to prevent GI distress.

Drinking at least 8 glasses of water each day helps prevent renal dysfunction. Remind patients that periodic follow-up laboratory tests, including liver enzymes, renal function studies, and complete blood count, are important because xanthine oxidase inhibitors cause liver dysfunction and bone marrow suppression.

Probenecid (Benemid, Benuryl ) can also be effective as a uricosuric drug in gout because it promotes the excretion of excess uric acid. Combination drugs that contain probenecid and colchicine (e.g., ColBENEMID) are also available. The health care provider and nurse monitor serum uric acid levels to determine the effectiveness of these medications. Aspirin should be avoided because it inactivates the effects of the drug.

For patients with severe gout who do not respond to other drugs (refractory gout), pegloticase (Krystexxa) can be prescribed as an IV dose every 2 weeks. This drug is an enzyme that works directly on uric acid and converts it to allantoin, which can be excreted by the kidneys. Monitor patients carefully for allergic reactions, including anaphylaxis, during and immediately after drug administration because pegloticase is a protein that is foreign to the body.

Nutrition Therapy

Whether or not to recommend special nutritional restrictions for patients with gout is controversial. Some physicians advocate a strict low-purine diet and advise patients to avoid foods such as organ meats, shellfish, and oily fish with bones (e.g., sardines). Some health care providers and dietitians believe that limiting protein foods, especially red and organ meats, is sufficient. Still others do not believe that diet restrictions affect treatment. It is well known, however, that excessive alcohol intake and fad “starvation” diets can cause a gouty attack. *Teach patients to determine which foods precipitate acute attacks and try to avoid them.*

In addition to food and beverage restrictions, patients with gout should avoid all forms of aspirin and diuretics because they may precipitate an attack. Likewise, excessive physical or emotional stress can exacerbate the disease. Surgery or acute illness, like a myocardial infarction, can also trigger an attack. Stress-management techniques may be helpful for the patient with gout.

Teach the patient to drink plenty of fluids to prevent the formation of urinary stones. Increasing fluid intake helps dilute urine and prevent sediment formation. Uric acid is more soluble in urine with a high pH and therefore is less likely to form urinary stones in that environment. The patient’s urinary pH can be increased with an intake of alkaline ash foods, such as citrus fruits and juices, milk, and certain other dairy products. The value of adhering to a strict diet rich in these foods is questionable, however.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which drug is not appropriate to treat the disease with which it is matched?

- A. Rheumatoid arthritis—allopurinol (Zyloprim)
- B. Osteoarthritis—celecoxib (Celebrex)
- C. Acute gout—colchicine (Colsalide)
- D. Systemic lupus erythematosus—prednisone (Deltasone)

OTHER CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASES

The care of patients with connective tissue diseases (CTDs) is often similar regardless of the specific diagnosis. This section describes other fairly common diseases that are classified as CTDs.

Polymyositis/Dermatomyositis

Polymyositis is a diffuse inflammatory disease of skeletal (striated) muscle that causes symmetric weakness and atrophy. When a rash accompanies polymyositis, the disease is called **dermatomyositis**. Both diseases vary in their mode of onset and progression and are characterized by spontaneous remissions and exacerbations. Women are affected twice as often as men, and men and women between 30 and 60 years of age are most susceptible to either disease.

In addition to proximal muscle and possible skin involvement, patients typically have polyarthritis, **polyarthralgia** (aching around multiple joints), and Raynaud's phenomenon (see Chapter 38). Patients with dermatomyositis have the characteristic heliotrope (lilac) rash and periorbital (around the eyes) edema. Malignant neoplasms are more common in these patients than in the rest of the population; some patients older than 55 years have malignancies. Most patients develop difficulty swallowing or talking because of severe muscle weakness.

These conditions are treated with high-dose steroids, immunosuppressive agents, and supportive care. Particular attention is given to nutrition because of swallowing problems.

Systemic Necrotizing Vasculitis

Necrotizing vasculitis is a term for a group of diseases whose primary manifestation is **arteritis** (inflammation of arterial walls), which causes ischemia in the tissues usually supplied by the involved vessels. The drug of choice for most types of vasculitis is chronic steroid therapy (prednisone), although immunosuppressive drugs may be used also.

Polyarteritis nodosa affects middle-aged men most often and involves every body system. Treatment is similar to that for systemic lupus, but the prognosis is not as promising. Renal disorders and cardiac involvement are the most common causes of death. *Hypersensitivity vasculitis* is the most common form of vasculitis and primarily causes skin lesions as an allergic response to drugs, infections, or tumors. *Takayasu's arteritis*, or the *aortic arch syndrome*, is also called the "pulseless" disease. Women in their 20s, particularly those of Japanese descent, are affected most often. Cerebral ischemia is manifested by visual changes, syncope, and vertigo.

Polymyalgia Rheumatica and Temporal Arteritis

Polymyalgia rheumatica (PMR) is a clinical syndrome characterized by stiffness, weakness, and aching of the proximal musculature (i.e., the shoulder and pelvic girdles). Systemic manifestations such as low-grade fever, arthralgias (aching around joints) and stiffness, fatigue, and weight loss occur in most cases. The most common joints affected are the neck, shoulder, and hip joints. Stiffness is worse in the morning.

Most patients have an increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and a normochromic, normocytic anemia

CHART 20-14 KEY FEATURES

Giant Cell (Temporal) Arteritis

Systemic Manifestations

- Fatigue, malaise
- Fever
- Weight loss
- Night sweats

Myalgic Manifestations (if patient has polymyalgia rheumatica [PMR])

- Proximal, symmetric muscle pain
- Stiffness

Arteritic Manifestations

- Erythema
- Pain (especially localized temporal headache)
- Swelling
- Tenderness (especially scalp)
- Amaurosis fugax (temporary vision loss in one eye)
- Diplopia or any vision change (requires urgent management)

(see Chart 20-8). The disease commonly occurs in women older than 50 years and typically responds to low-dose steroid therapy in several days.

Giant cell arteritis (GCA), or *temporal arteritis (TA)*, occurs in as many as 20% of people with PMR. GCA is a systemic vasculitis that affects large and midsize arteries. Clinical manifestations may be classified as systemic, myalgic, and arteritic (Chart 20-14).

The cause of both PMR and GCA is unknown, but a genetic predisposition related to HLA-DRB1 is likely. The disorder is easy to miss because most patients are older women who report declining vision (also an age-related change). GCA is treated *urgently* with high doses of corticosteroids, often as high as 40 to 80 mg daily. Taking calcium and vitamin D is important for preventing osteoporosis that can result from steroid therapy, especially in middle-aged women.

Ankylosing Spondylitis

Ankylosing spondylitis (AS) is also known as *Marie-Strümpell disease* or *rheumatoid spondylitis*. The disease affects the vertebral column and causes spinal deformities. Although this disorder is present in both men and women at any age in adulthood, white men younger than 40 years are most commonly affected. Other features include **iritis** (inflammation of the iris), arthritis or **arthralgia** (joint aching), and nonspecific systemic manifestations such as malaise and weight loss.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Although the exact cause is unknown, ankylosing spondylitis is associated with the *HLA-B27* alleles. The risk for developing AS is 150 times greater for people with *HLA-B27* than for those without it. However, only a small percentage of people who have it actually develop the disease. One explanation is that there are many subtypes of *HLA-B27* that need further research for predicting who is most at risk for AS (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

Compromised respiratory function caused by a rigid chest wall is the major threat to health. Most patients function

normally but live with chronic discomfort. As in other types of inflammatory arthritis, anti-inflammatory drugs, heat applications, and physical therapy are the key components of management (see earlier discussion of pain management for rheumatoid arthritis, p. 337).

Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs), such as methotrexate (Rheumatrex), have been successful in slowing AS progress. Biological response modifiers (BRMs) (TNF inhibitors), such as infliximab (Remicade), have also been approved for managing ankylosing spondylitis. Teach the patient taking these drugs to avoid crowds and people who have infections because BRMs increase the patient's susceptibility to infection (see [Chart 20-9](#)). Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) may also be used to treat AS. Before beginning the drug, ask the patient if he or she is allergic to sulfa drugs.

Refer patients with AS and their families to the Spondylitis Association of America (www.spondylitis.org) for information and support. This organization also sponsors research for the management of AS.

Reiter's Syndrome

As with ankylosing spondylitis, Reiter's syndrome is associated with the HLA-B27 antigen. This disease usually affects young white men but can also affect women. The complete syndrome is a triad of arthritis, conjunctivitis, and **urethritis** (inflammation of the urethra) resulting from exposure to sexually transmitted disease, such as chlamydia, or intestinal infection, such as shigella or salmonella. Urethritis in men is often the first clinical manifestation. Although the disease is characterized by this triad of manifestations, other conditions such as **balanitis circinata** (ringlike inflammation of the glans penis) and skin lesions are equally significant for confirmation of the diagnosis.

Management is symptomatic and may be complex if there is organ involvement. Antibiotics such as minocycline (Minocin) and amoxicillin/clavulanate (Augmentin) are frequently used to manage the infection. NSAIDs, physical therapy, and other symptomatic treatment are used to manage the disease.

Marfan Syndrome

Marfan syndrome is an autosomal dominant connective tissue disease in which abnormalities of the skeletal, ocular, cardiopulmonary, and central nervous systems result from a basic defect in extracellular microfibrils. Microfibrils are very small fibers within cells.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Marfan syndrome results from mutations in the fibrillin 1 gene (*FBN1*). This gene encodes fibrillin 1, which forms microfibrils in both elastic and nonelastic tissues (e.g., the skin, the outer layer of the aorta). Patients with Marfan syndrome have a 50% chance of having a child with the disease (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Genetic counseling should also be part of the interdisciplinary plan of care, especially for women of childbearing age.

Patients with the classic form of Marfan syndrome tend to be excessively *tall* and have *elongated hands and feet*. The diagnosis of milder forms of Marfan syndrome is often missed in young men, especially athletes involved in sports such as basketball.

Other skeletal abnormalities include *scoliosis*, a funnel-shaped chest, loss of the normal cervical curve, and hyperextensibility of the joints. Subluxation of the lens is usually bilateral and occurs by the age of 5 years, causing decreased visual acuity or glaucoma.

Cardiovascular problems are responsible for most deaths resulting from Marfan syndrome. The average life span is shortened, often with death in the 30s. Mitral valve prolapse with regurgitation and aortic aneurysm with regurgitation and rupture are common. The patient is closely monitored by echocardiography.

Management is both palliative and preventive and includes careful monitoring, cardiovascular medications, and orthopedic surgery if needed.

Infectious Arthritis

Any infectious agent can invade the joint space and cause inflammation and tissue destruction. Certain pathogens, such as *Staphylococcus aureus*, destroy tissue rapidly; others, especially viruses, do not cause irreversible damage. The cornerstone of management is local or systemic antibiotic therapy for 6 to 8 weeks.

Lyme Disease

Lyme disease is a reportable systemic infectious disease caused by the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi* and results from the bite of an infected deer tick, also known as the *black-legged tick*. It is the most common vector-borne disease in the United States and Europe. Most cases of the disease in the United States are seen in New England; the mid-Atlantic states, including Maryland and Virginia; the upper Midwest, including Wisconsin and Minnesota; and northern California, especially during the summer months.

In the early and *localized stage I*, the patient appears with *flu-like symptoms*, **erythema migrans** (round or oval, flat or slightly raised rash), and *pain and stiffness in the muscles and joints*. Most patients in the United States tend to have only one lesion, sometimes referred to as a "*bull's-eye lesion*." Symptoms begin within 3 to 30 days of the tick bite, but most present in 7 to 14 days. Antibiotic therapy, such as doxycycline or amoxicillin, is prescribed during this uncomplicated stage for 14 to 21 days. Erythromycin can be used for patients who are allergic to penicillin. Without treatment, these symptoms tend to disappear in about 4 to 5 weeks.

If not treated or if treatment is not successful, the patient progresses to the more serious complications of Lyme disease. *Stage II (early disseminated stage)* occurs 2 to 12 weeks after the tick bite. The patient may develop *carditis* with *dysrhythmias*, *dyspnea*, *dizziness*, or *palpitations*, as well as central nervous system disorders such as *meningitis*, *facial paralysis* (often misdiagnosed as Bell's palsy), and *peripheral neuritis*. For severe disease, IV antibiotics (e.g., ceftriaxone or cefotaxime) are given for at least 30 days.

If Lyme disease is not diagnosed and treated in the earlier stages, later chronic complications (e.g., *arthritis*, *chronic fatigue*, *memory/thinking problems*) can result. This *late stage III (chronic persistent stage)* occurs months to years after the tick bite. *For some patients, the first and only sign of Lyme disease is arthritis.* In some cases, the disease may not respond to antibiotics in any stage and the patient develops permanent damage to joints and the nervous system. *Prevention is the best strategy for Lyme disease.* Teach patients to follow the

measures outlined in [Chart 20-15](#) to prevent Lyme and other tick-borne diseases. Tell them about community resources such as the Lyme Disease Foundation (www.lyme.org) for more information.

Pseudogout

Pseudogout is a disease that mimics the clinical manifestations of gout. In this disease, however, the crystals deposited in the joints are calcium pyrophosphate, not sodium urate. These crystals usually migrate to cartilage, but they can also deposit in tendons, ligaments, and synovium.

The patient most susceptible to pseudogout is an older hospitalized male. Although the cause is not certain, the incidence is highest in men with metastatic cancer or endocrine imbalances such as hypothyroidism. NSAIDs usually control manifestations of the disease.

Psoriatic Arthritis

Psoriatic arthritis (PsA) affects about 30% of people who have psoriasis—a skin condition characterized by a scaly, itchy rash, usually on the elbows, knees, and scalp (National Psoriasis Foundation). Fingernail and toenail lifting and pitting may also occur (see [Chapter 27](#) for discussion of this disease). The joint pain associated with psoriasis is often associated with stiffness, especially in the morning. Neck and back pain are particularly common, but various forms of the disease can cause small joint arthritis or involvement of the sacroiliac joints of the spine.

PsA occurs most often in people between 30 and 50 years of age in men and women of all races. Nail symptoms are common in patients who have the associated arthritis. Causes may include genetic and environmental factors, infectious agents, and immune system dysfunction.

CHART 20-15 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention and Early Detection of Lyme Disease

- Avoid heavily wooded areas or areas with thick underbrush, especially in the spring and summer months.
- Walk in the center of the trail.
- Avoid dark clothing. Lighter-colored clothing makes spotting ticks easier.
- Use an insect repellent (DEET) on your skin and clothes when in an area where ticks are likely to be found.
- Wear long-sleeved tops and long pants; tuck your shirt into your pants and your pants into your socks or boots.
- Wear closed shoes or boots and a hat or cap.
- Bathe immediately after being in an infested area, and inspect your body for ticks (about the size of a pinhead); pay special attention to your arms, legs, and scalp.
- Check your pets for ticks.
- Gently remove with tweezers or fingers covered with tissue or gloves any tick that you find (do not squeeze). Dispose of the tick by flushing it down the toilet (burning a tick could spread infection).
- After removal, clean the tick area with an antiseptic such as rubbing alcohol.
- Wait 4 to 6 weeks after being bitten by a tick before being tested for Lyme disease (testing before this time is not reliable).
- Report symptoms, such as a rash or influenza-like illness, to your physician immediately.

Most patients do not experience destructive and deforming arthritis affecting more than three joints, but those who do have a major impact on their quality of life. Treatment is focused on managing joint pain and inflammation, controlling skin lesions, and slowing the progression of the disease. Health teaching for skin care is similar to that for lupus. Management of joint inflammation is similar to that for rheumatoid arthritis. Methotrexate (Rheumatrex), sulfasalazine (Azulfidine), and biological response modifiers, such as etanercept (Enbrel) and golimumab (Simponi), have been used with success.

Several newer types of drugs have also been approved for psoriatic arthritis. Ustekinumab (Stelara) targets the cytokines interleukin (IL)-12 and IL-23 to decrease inflammation. Alefacept (Amevive) is an IV immunosuppressive drug (T-cell blocker) that is reserved for moderate to severe disease. Teach patients taking these drugs that they are prone to infection. Remind them to avoid crowds and anyone with an infection.

Acitretin (Soriatane) is an oral retinoid given for patients with severe disease. Teach patients to take the drug once a day with a meal and follow up with laboratory testing for liver enzymes.

The National Psoriasis Foundation (www.psoriasis.org) is an excellent community resource for patients and their families. Further discussion regarding management of psoriasis can be found in [Chapter 27](#).

Other Disease-Associated Arthritis

A number of other diseases can cause secondary arthritis. Tuberculosis, Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis, hemophilia, and sickle cell anemia are typical examples. To manage joint involvement, the primary disease is treated. For example, when a patient with Crohn's disease is in remission, joint manifestations also subside. Conditions in which joint involvement can occur are presented in [Table 20-3](#).

Fibromyalgia Syndrome

Fibromyalgia syndrome (FMS), also referred to as simply *fibromyalgia*, is a chronic pain syndrome, not an inflammatory disease. However, arthritis and other comorbidities are commonly present in patients diagnosed with FMS. Pain, stiffness, and tenderness are located at specific sites in the back of the neck, upper chest, trunk, low back, and extremities. These tender points are also known as **trigger points** and can typically be palpated to elicit pain in a predictable, reproducible pattern. The pain is typically described as burning and gnawing. Increased muscle tenderness may be caused by the inability to tolerate pain, possibly related to dysfunction in the brain, especially the thalamus and hypothalamus (McCance et al., 2010).

TABLE 20-3 COMMON DISORDERS ASSOCIATED WITH ARTHRITIS

• Crohn's disease	• Hyperparathyroidism
• Ulcerative colitis	• Hyperthyroidism
• Tuberculosis	• Diabetes mellitus
• Hemophilia	• Sickle cell anemia crisis
• Whipple's disease	• Psoriasis
• Intestinal bypass surgery	• Infection

The pain and tenderness tend to come and go but typically worsen in response to stress, increased activity, and weather conditions. The patient reports mild to severe fatigue, and sleep disturbances are common. Some people report numbness or tingling in their extremities, and others are sensitive to noxious odors, loud noises, and bright lights. Headaches and jaw pain are also common. Secondary FMS can accompany any connective tissue disease (CTD), particularly lupus and rheumatoid disease, and may not necessarily be related to sleep patterns.

Other symptoms include:

- Gastrointestinal (GI), including abdominal pain, diarrhea and constipation, and heartburn
- Genitourinary, including dysuria, urinary frequency, urgency, and pelvic pain
- Cardiovascular, including dyspnea, chest pain, and dysrhythmias
- Visual, including blurred vision and dry eyes
- Neurologic, including forgetfulness and concentration problems

Many with these symptoms become frustrated because they are not properly diagnosed and are in constant pain and discomfort.

Some patients are diagnosed as having chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS). CFS, migraine headache, irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), and myofascial pain are often present in those with FMS. As a result, patients can become depressed and anxious.

Most patients are women between 30 and 50 years of age. It is unlikely that the disease is caused by one factor. Possible precipitating factors include CFS, Lyme disease, trauma, and flu-like illness (McCance et al., 2010). FMS may also be aggravated by deep-sleep deprivation. Teach patients to limit caffeine, alcohol, or other unnecessary substances that could interfere with deep sleep. Establish a regular sleep pattern.

Pregabalin (Lyrica) and duloxetine HCl (Cymbalta), antidepressant drugs, are approved for fibromyalgia nerve pain. These drugs work to increase the release of serotonin and norepinephrine, neurotransmitters in the brain. Teach the patient that these drugs can cause drowsiness and sleepiness and that alcohol should be avoided while taking them.

Tricyclic antidepressive agents, such as amitriptyline (Elavil, Apo-Amitriptyline ♣) or nortriptyline (Pamelor), may promote sleep and reduce pain or muscle spasm. These drugs should be used with caution in older adults because they can cause confusion and orthostatic hypotension. Trazodone (Desyrel) may be preferred for this population because of its minimal side effects. Tramadol (Ultram) is also effective for managing fibromyalgia. This drug has tricyclic effects and opioid properties to help relieve pain.

Physical therapy along with NSAIDs and possibly muscle relaxants may also be prescribed to help decrease fibromyalgia pain. Instruct the patient to exercise regularly. Home exercise should include stretching, strengthening, and low-impact aerobic exercise. Walking, swimming, rowing, biking, and water exercise are good examples of low-impact exercise.

Complementary and alternative therapies, such as tai chi, acupuncture, hypnosis, and stress management, may help some patients with symptom relief. Refer patients to the land, water, and walking exercise pamphlets produced by the Arthritis Foundation (www.arthritis.org). Inform them about the National Fibromyalgia Association for additional information and patient and family support (www.fmaware.org).

Chronic Fatigue Syndrome

Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), also known as *chronic fatigue and immune dysfunction syndrome (CFIDS)*, is a chronic illness in which patients have severe fatigue for 6 months or longer, usually following flu-like symptoms. In addition, four or more of these criteria must be met for a diagnosis of CFS:

- Sore throat
- Substantial impairment in short-term memory or concentration
- Tender lymph nodes
- Muscle pain
- Multiple joint pain with redness or swelling
- Headaches of a new type, pattern, or severity (not familiar to the patient)
- Unrefreshing sleep
- Postexertional malaise lasting more than 24 hours

Chronic fatigue syndrome is most common in women and is not limited to any socioeconomic group or age. There is no laboratory test to confirm the diagnosis, and therefore many people with the disease probably have not been diagnosed. The cause is unknown, although immune, endocrine, neurologic, and environmental factors are being studied.

Management of the patient is challenging in that there is no cure for CFS. Treatment is supportive and focuses on alleviation or reduction of symptoms. For example, NSAIDs may help with body aches and pain. Low-dose antidepressants may also be effective in promoting sleep and preventing or treating depression. Teach the patient to follow healthy practices, such as adequate sleep, proper nutrition, regular exercise (but not excessive to increase fatigue), stress management, and energy conservation. Complementary and alternative therapies, such as acupuncture, tai chi, massage, and herbal supplements, may be helpful for some patients.

Refer the patient to the National Chronic Fatigue Syndrome and Fibromyalgia Association for information and support groups (www.ncfsa.org).

Mixed Connective Tissue Disease

A diagnosis of mixed CTD is made when a patient presents with clinical manifestations that are not typical of any one CTD. About 10% of patients with CTDs are classified as having mixed disease. Some of these are overlap syndromes, in which two or more diseases occur at the same time. Common examples are (1) systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) plus systemic sclerosis (SSc) and (2) rheumatoid arthritis (RA) plus SLE. Management depends on the clinical manifestations, but often the patient is treated as having SLE.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has impaired protection as a result of arthritis or other connective tissue disease (CTD)?

- Joint inflammation (redness, swelling, pain)
- Impaired joint mobility and stiffness
- Joint deformity
- Difficulty ambulating
- Fever
- Rash
- Report of weight loss and fatigue
- Other manifestations that indicate organ involvement, such as dysrhythmias (heart) and decreased urinary output (kidneys)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with impaired protection as a result of arthritis or other CTD?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Joint assessment, including range of motion
- ADL ability
- Pain intensity and quality
- Body weight
- Ability to cope with disease
- Vital signs
- Other assessments related to specific organ involvement (e.g., cardiac assessment)

Respond:

- Provide pain control interventions, including drug therapy and nonpharmacologic measures (e.g., music, diversional therapy).

- Collaborate with members of the health care team to improve mobility and ambulation, if needed.
- Teach about drug therapy, including the expected and adverse effects.
- Teach about nonpharmacologic measures to control pain, including ice and heat, and CAM therapies, such as glucosamine.
- Report manifestations of organ involvement to the health care provider for possible immediate intervention (e.g., drug therapy for severe dysrhythmias).
- Monitor laboratory test results to determine progress of treatment.
- Continue to assess for changes in the patient's condition, including new or additional manifestations of organ involvement.
- Encourage patients and their families to discuss their feelings about chronic illness and possible body image changes.
- Help identify coping strategies, and provide information about community and professional resources and support groups.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient's response to pain control interventions.
- Evaluate the patient's and family's knowledge of the disease and its management.
- Evaluate the patient's and family's stress levels and coping strategies.
- Think about what else you might do to promote mobility.
- Decide whether you need to provide alternative interventions or additional health teaching.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Collaborate with the health care team to manage chronic pain and increase mobility for patients with arthritis and other CTDs.
- Prioritize care for patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and systemic sclerosis (SSc) by monitoring for life-threatening complications, such as renal failure.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Provide information about community resources for patients, especially professional organizations such as the Arthritis Foundation and Lupus Foundation.
- Reinforce the importance of good health practices, such as adequate sleep, proper nutrition, regular exercise, and

stress-management techniques for patients with arthritis and other CTDs.

- Teach patients with arthritis what exercises to do ([Chart 20-5](#)), joint protection techniques ([Chart 20-6](#)), and energy conservation guidelines ([Chart 20-10](#)).
- Teach patients with SLE to avoid sunlight; exacerbations of the disease may be triggered.
- Remind patients with gout to avoid factors that trigger an attack, such as aspirin, organ meats, and alcohol.
- Teach people ways to prevent or detect early Lyme disease as listed in [Chart 20-15](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Recognize that patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) may have body image disturbance as a result of potentially deforming joint involvement and nodules.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Encourage patients with arthritis and connective tissue diseases to discuss their chronic illness and identify coping strategies that have previously been successful.
- Be aware that chronic, painful diseases affect the patient's quality of life and role performance.
- Recognize that patients with fibromyalgia syndrome (FMS) and chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) are often frustrated because they have not been diagnosed or have been misdiagnosed.
- Teach patients with FMS and CFS that antidepressant drugs can promote sleep and decrease pain, as well as prevent or treat the depression that is common with these illnesses.
- Remind patients to avoid crowds and other possible sources of infection when they are taking immunosuppressant drugs.
- Implement interventions for patients having total joint arthroplasty (TJA) to prevent venous thromboembolic complications (e.g., anticoagulants, exercises, sequential compression devices); observe the patient for bleeding when he or she is taking anticoagulants.
- Be careful when positioning a patient after a total hip arthroplasty (THA) to prevent dislocation; do not hyperflex the hips or adduct the legs (see [Chart 20-3](#)).
- Teach patients receiving biological response modifiers (BRMs) and other disease-modifying agents to avoid crowds and people with infections.

Physiological Integrity

- Be aware that most of the connective tissue diseases and arthritic disorders have a genetic basis as part of their etiology; most are also classified as autoimmune diseases and have remissions and exacerbations.
- Differentiate OA as primarily a degenerative joint problem and RA as a systemic disease.
- Realize that older patients have OA more than younger patients; younger patients have RA more than older adults; other differences between the two diseases are summarized in [Table 20-1](#).
- Teach patients who have osteoarthritis (OA) or are prone to the disease to lose weight (if obese), avoid trauma, and limit strenuous weight-bearing activities.
- Instruct patients with arthritic pain to use multiple modalities for pain relief, including ice/heat, rest, positioning, complementary and alternative therapies, and medications as prescribed.
- Teach patients to monitor and report side and adverse effects of drugs used to treat OA and connective tissue diseases.
- Teach patients who are taking hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil) to have frequent (every 6 months) eye examinations to monitor for retinal changes.
- Monitor and interpret laboratory test results for patients with autoimmune connective tissue diseases as highlighted in [Chart 20-8](#).
- Assess for therapeutic and adverse effects of drugs used for arthritis and connective tissue diseases as specified in [Chart 20-9](#).
- Be aware that disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) and BRMs slow the progression of connective tissue diseases, especially RA and SLE.
- Assess patients with rheumatoid arthritis for early or late clinical manifestations as listed in [Chart 20-7](#).
- Differentiate clinical manifestations and prognosis for patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) versus systemic sclerosis (SSc) as listed in [Chart 20-11](#).
- Prioritize care by assessing for swallowing ability in patients who have SSc; collaborate with the dietitian for food modifications if needed.
- Monitor for acute joint inflammation in patients with a history of gout; the great toe and other small joints are most typically affected.
- Assess for visual symptoms (indicating possible giant cell arteritis) in patients with polymyalgia rheumatica; report changes immediately to the health care provider.
- Be aware that arthritis often accompanies other diseases, such as psoriasis, Crohn's disease, and hemophilia.

Care of Patients with HIV Disease and Other Immune Deficiencies

James G. Sampson and M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Use appropriate techniques to reduce the risk for infection in an immunosuppressed patient.
2. Use Standard Precautions to prevent human immune deficiency virus (HIV) transmission to you, patients, and other members of the health care team.
3. Ensure that confidentiality of HIV status is maintained by all health care team members.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach all sexually active people to use safer sex practices.
5. Assess all patients for high-risk behaviors for HIV disease.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Teach family members reorientation techniques to use when the patient is confused.
7. Respect the patient's right to inform or not to inform family members about his or her HIV status.

8. Use a nonjudgmental approach when discussing sexual practices, sexual behaviors, and recreational drug use.

Physiological Integrity

9. Compare primary and secondary immune deficiencies for cause and onset of problems.
10. Explain the differences in nursing care required for a patient with a pathogenic infection versus a patient with an opportunistic infection.
11. Distinguish between the conditions of HIV infection and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) for clinical manifestations and risks for complications.
12. Describe the ways in which HIV is transmitted.
13. Coordinate nursing care for the patient with AIDS who has impaired gas exchange.
14. Identify teaching priorities for the HIV-positive patient receiving highly active antiretroviral therapy.

Immune system function is concerned with helping the body stay healthy by preventing the growth of infectious organisms and abnormal cells, such as cancer cells. It assists the body to monitor and maintain those cells and substances that are considered “self,” belonging to the body. For example, newly made cells and compatible blood transfusions are deemed self and safe by the immune system. However, when the immune system detects the presence of a protein or cell that does not belong to the body and represents a potential threat, its job is then to attack and destroy the “non-self” or “foreign”

substance. Infection is a major threat. We are exposed to many organisms every day. The efficiency of the immune system prevents disease despite this exposure.

When the immune system fails to recognize infectious agents, severe local and systemic infections are not suppressed or controlled. Immune system failure can be the result of a primary (congenital) immune deficiency in which one or more parts of the system are not functioning properly from birth. These problems are usually genetic mutations that are discovered in the infant or child who is repeatedly sick.

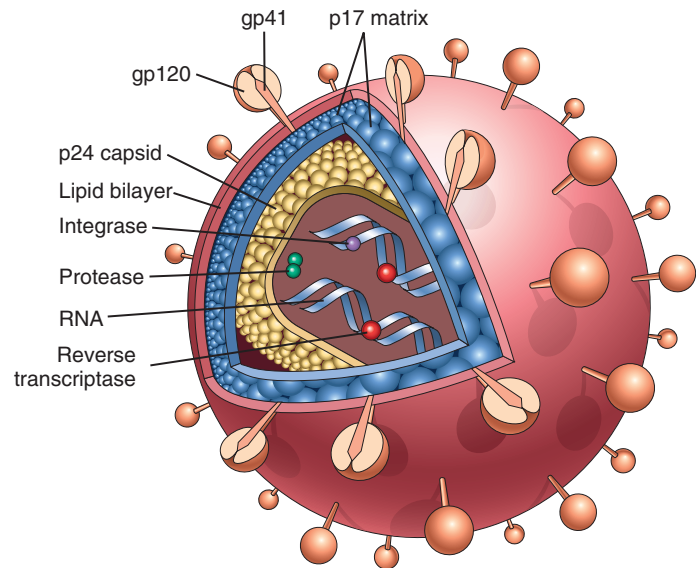


FIG. 21-1 The human immune deficiency virus (HIV).

Immune system failure can also be secondary (acquired after birth) as the result of viral infection, contact with a toxin, or medical therapy. These problems can cause a normal immune system to stop functioning or to function less efficiently. In either case, the immune system can no longer distinguish what should be in the body from a foreign invader. The consequences for the immune-deficient patient can range from mild, localized health problems to total immune system failure, leaving the body open to attack from any foreign pathogen.

ACQUIRED (SECONDARY) IMMUNE DEFICIENCIES

HIV INFECTION AND AIDS

Pathophysiology

Human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection can progress to acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), which is the most common secondary immune deficiency disease in the world (World Health Organization [WHO], 2010). First identified in 1981, HIV/AIDS is now a serious worldwide epidemic.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The cause of HIV infection is a virus—the human immune deficiency virus. Like most viruses, HIV is a parasite looking for a way into a cell, to take over the cell, and to force the cell into making more copies of the virus. These new virus particles then look for additional cells to infect, repeating the cycle as long as there are new host cells to infect.

The HIV Infectious Process. Viral particle features include an outer envelope with special “docking proteins,” known as *gp41* and *gp120*, that assist in finding a host (Fig. 21-1). Inside, the virus has two protein coatings and the genetic material along with the enzymes *reverse transcriptase* (RT) and *integrase*. The first challenge is for the HIV particle to get inside a host cell. HIV accomplishes this task by first finding

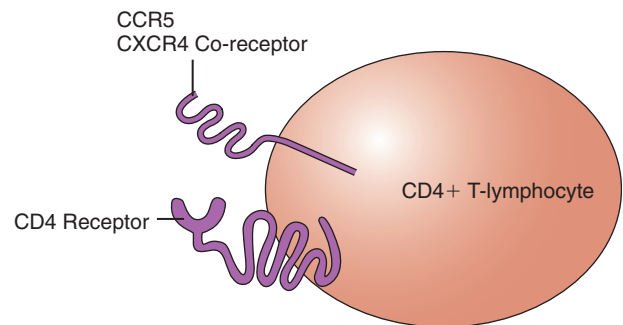


FIG. 21-2 The CD4+ T-lymphocyte receptors for the HIV “docking” proteins.

a way into the host’s bloodstream. Once in the blood, HIV “hijacks” certain cells. One of the cells that it hijacks is the *CD4 T-cell*, also known as the *CD4 cell*, *helper/inducer T-cell*, or *T4-cell* (Kaufman, 2011) (see Chapter 19). This cell directs immune system defenses and regulates the activity of all immune system cells. If HIV successfully enters a CD4 T-cell, it can then create more virus particles.

Virus-host interactions are needed for disease development. When a person is infected with HIV, the virus randomly “bumps” into many cells. The docking proteins on the outside of the virus try to find special receptors on a host cell that will allow the virus to bind and then enter the cell. The CD4+ T-cell has receptors on its surface known as *CD4*, *CCR5*, and *CXCR4* (Fig. 21-2). Proteins on the HIV particle surface, known as *gp120* and *gp41*, recognize these receptors on the CD4+ T-cell. For the virus to enter this cell, *both* the *gp120* and the *gp41* must bind to the receptors. The *gp120* first binds to the primary CD4 receptor, which changes its shape and allows the *gp41* to bind to one of the co-receptors (either the *CCR5* receptor or the *CXCR4* receptor). This attachment allows the virus to then enter the CD4+ T-cell (Fig. 21-3). *Viral binding to the CD4 receptor and to either of the co-receptors is needed to enter the cell.* (The new drug class

known as *entry inhibitors* works here to block the receptor and prevent the interaction needed for entry of HIV into the CD4+ T-cell.)

Viruses, like human cells, have genetic material. After entering a host cell, HIV must get its genetic material into the host cell's DNA. HIV belongs to a family of viruses called **retroviruses**. The genetic material of the human cell is double-stranded DNA (ds-DNA). The genetic material of HIV is single-stranded ribonucleic acid (RNA) (ss-RNA). To infect and take over a human cell, the genetic material must be the same. HIV overcomes this problem by bringing along an enzyme at the time of infection, *reverse transcriptase* (RT). RT takes HIV's ss-RNA and converts it into ds-DNA, which makes the viral genetic material the same as human DNA. (The drug classes known as *nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors* [NRTIs] and *non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors* [NNRTIs] work here to inhibit HIV reverse transcriptase.) Then HIV must get its DNA into the nucleus of the CD4+ T-cell and place it within the human DNA. HIV also brings an enzyme called *integrase*. This

enzyme allows the viral ds-DNA to be inserted into the host ds-DNA, which completes the infection of the CD4+ T-cell. (The drug class known as *integrase inhibitors* works here to prevent viral DNA from integrating into the cell's normal human DNA.)

HIV particles are made within the infected CD4+ T-cell, using all the metabolic machinery of the host. The new virus particle is made in the form of one long protein strand. The strand is clipped, using chemical enzyme scissors called *HIV protease*, into several small functional pieces. These pieces are formed into a new finished viral particle. (The drug class known as *protease inhibitors* works here to inhibit HIV protease.) Once the new virus particle is finished, it fuses with the infected cell's membrane and then buds off in search of another CD4+ T-cell to infect (Fig. 21-4).

Effects of HIV infection are related to the new genetic instructions that now direct CD4+ T-cells to change their role in immune system defenses. The new role is to be an "HIV factory." The immune system is made weaker by removing some CD4+ T-cells from circulation, and the most important cell in the immune system becomes an HIV factory. Up to 10 billion virus particles are made daily. In early HIV infection, the immune system can still attack and destroy most of the newly created virus particles. With time, however, the number of HIV particles overwhelms the immune system. Gradually, CD4+ T-cell counts fall, viral numbers (*viral load*) rise, and without treatment, the patient eventually dies of opportunistic infections or cancer.

Everyone who has AIDS has HIV infection; however, not everyone who has HIV infection has AIDS. The distinction rests with the number of CD4+ T-cells the patient has and whether any opportunistic infections have occurred. A healthy adult usually has at least 800 to 1000 of these cells per cubic millimeter (mm³) of blood. The number of CD4+ T-cells is reduced in the person with HIV disease.

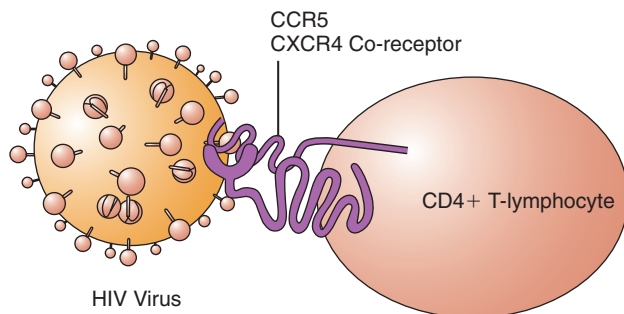


FIG. 21-3 The successful interaction of the HIV "docking" proteins with the CD4+ T-lymphocyte receptors.

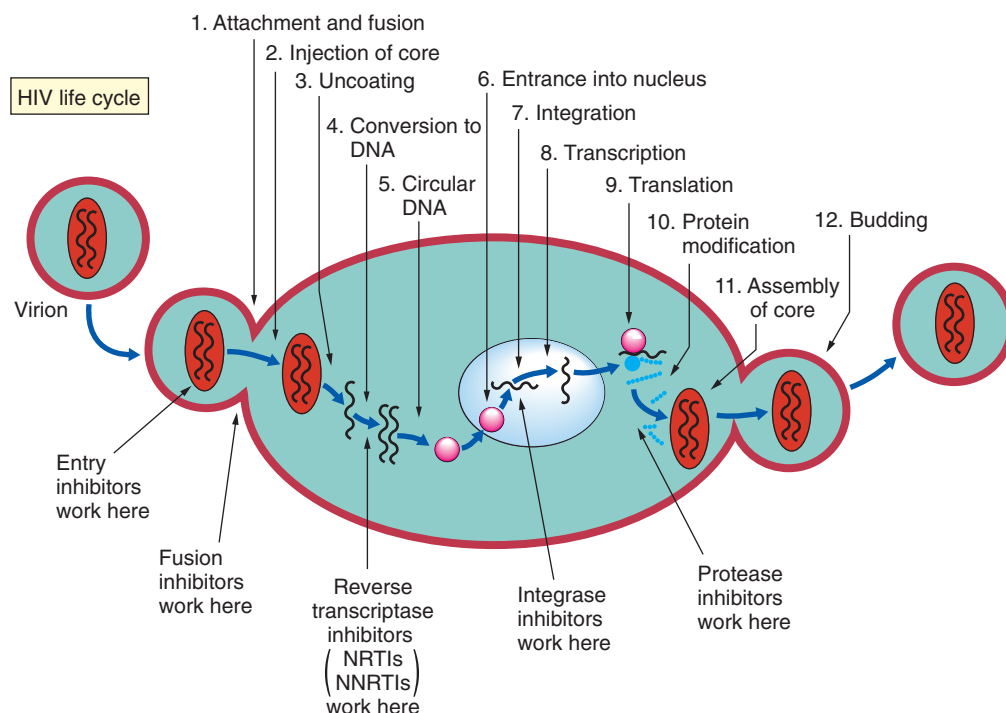


FIG. 21-4 The life cycle of the HIV and sites of action for anti-HIV therapy.

About 50% to 90% of people who are first infected with HIV develop an acute infection within 4 weeks. Manifestations of this acute HIV infection can be fever, night sweats, chills, headache, and muscle aches. All of these problems can be caused by exposure to almost any virus (e.g., influenza)—not just to HIV. Many people with this acute HIV infection also have a rash and a sore throat, which is often confused with mononucleosis and viral meningitis. With time, these symptoms cease and the person feels well again. Actually, a “war is going on” in the body between HIV and the immune system.

As time passes, with more CD4+ T-cells infected and taken out of service, this cell count drops to below normal levels and those that remain may not function normally. Poor CD4+ T-cell function as a result of HIV infection leads to these immune system abnormalities:

- Lymphocytopenia (decreased numbers of lymphocytes)
- Increased production of incomplete and nonfunctional antibodies
- Abnormally functioning macrophages

As the CD4+ T-cell level drops, the patient is at risk for bacterial, fungal, and viral infections, as well as opportunistic cancers. **Opportunistic infections** are those caused by organisms that are present as part of the body’s normal environment and are kept in check by normal immune function. They occur because of the profound immunosuppression in the person with AIDS. These infections may result from a newly acquired infection or reactivation of an old infection.

A diagnosis of AIDS requires that the person be HIV positive and have either a CD4+ T-cell count of less than 200 cells/mm³ or an opportunistic infection. Once AIDS is diagnosed, even if the patient’s cell count goes higher than 200 cells/mm³ or the infection is successfully treated, the AIDS diagnosis remains and the patient never reverts to being just HIV positive.

HIV Classification. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), in a 1993 definition, classified HIV infection by correlating clinical conditions with three ranges of CD4+ T-cell counts. This classification was replaced in 2008 by defining four stages of the disease. In this new definition, laboratory confirmation of HIV infection (by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay [ELISA] and Western blot analysis) plus CD4+ T-lymphocyte count or percentage and the presence or absence of the 26 AIDS-defining conditions (Table 21-1) determine the classification (CDC, 2008). *The person with HIV infection can transmit the virus to others at all stages of disease, but the recently infected person with a high viral load and those at end stage without drug therapy can be particularly infectious.*

- **Stage 1 CDC Case Definition** describes any patient with confirmed HIV infection and a CD4+ T-cell count of greater than 500 cells/mm³ or a CD4+ T-cell percentage of 29% or greater. A person at this stage has no AIDS-defining illnesses.
- **Stage 2 CDC Case Definition** describes any patient with a confirmed HIV infection and a CD4+ T-cell count between 200 and 499 cells/mm³ or a CD4+ T-cell percentage between 14% and 28%. A person at this stage has no AIDS-defining illnesses.
- **Stage 3 CDC Case Definition** describes any patient with a confirmed HIV infection and a CD4+ T-cell count of less than 200 cells/mm³ or a CD4+ T-cell percentage of less than 14%. A person who has higher CD4+ T-cell

counts or percentages but who also has a documented AIDS-defining illness meets the requirements of Stage 3 CDC Case Definition.

- **Stage 4 CDC Case Definition** is used to describe any patient with a confirmed HIV infection, but no information regarding CD4+ T-cell counts, CD4+ T-cell percentages, and AIDS-defining illnesses is available.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

About 1% of people with HIV infection are **long-term nonprogressors (LTNPs)**, sometimes called “elite controllers.” These people have been infected with HIV (as measured by ELISA) for at least 10 years and have remained asymptomatic, with CD4+ T-cell counts within the normal range and a viral load that is either undetectable or very low.

A genetic difference for this population is that their *CCR5/CXCR4* co-receptors on the CD4+ T-cells are abnormal and nonfunctional. Most LTNPs have mutations in both pairs of the co-receptors’ gene alleles. The mutation creates a defective receptor called *delta32*. This defective receptor does not bind to the HIV docking proteins. Cells with this defective receptor successfully resist the entrance of HIV. People who have only one mutated co-receptor gene allele have fewer normal co-receptors. Although these people can be infected with HIV, disease progression is slow compared with that in people who have normal co-receptor gene alleles.

TABLE 21-1 CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION CLASSIFICATION OF AIDS-DEFINING CONDITIONS IN ADULTS

- Candidiasis of bronchi, trachea, or lungs
- Candidiasis of esophagus
- Cervical cancer, invasive
- Coccidioidomycosis, disseminated or extrapulmonary
- Cryptococcosis, extrapulmonary
- Cryptosporidiosis, chronic intestinal (>1 month’s duration)
- Cytomegalovirus disease (other than liver, spleen, or nodes)
- Cytomegalovirus retinitis (with loss of vision)
- Encephalopathy, HIV related
- Herpes simplex: chronic ulcers (>1 month’s duration) or bronchitis, pneumonitis, or esophagitis
- Histoplasmosis, disseminated or extrapulmonary
- Isosporiasis, chronic intestinal (>1 month’s duration)
- Kaposi sarcoma
- Lymphoid interstitial pneumonia or pulmonary lymphoid hyperplasia complex
- Lymphoma, Burkitt (or equivalent term)
- Lymphoma, immunoblastic (or equivalent term)
- Lymphoma, primary, of brain
- *Mycobacterium avium* complex or *Mycobacterium kansasii*, disseminated or extrapulmonary
- *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* of any site, pulmonary, disseminated, or extrapulmonary
- *Mycobacterium*, other species or unidentified species, disseminated or extrapulmonary
- *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia
- Pneumonia, recurrent (two instances within 12 months)
- Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
- *Salmonella* septicemia, recurrent
- Toxoplasmosis of brain
- Wasting syndrome attributed to HIV

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2008). Recommendations and reports: Appendix A—AIDS-defining conditions. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 57(RR-10), 9.

HIV Progression. The time from the beginning of HIV infection to development of AIDS ranges from months to years. The range depends on how HIV was acquired, personal factors, and interventions. For people who have been transfused with HIV-contaminated blood, for example, AIDS often develops quickly. For those who become HIV positive as a result of a single sexual encounter, the period is much longer before progression to AIDS. Other personal factors that may influence progression to AIDS include frequency of re-exposure to HIV, presence of other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), nutritional status, and stress.

Incidence/Prevalence

Since the beginning of the epidemic in the United States, more than 1.2 million cases of HIV/AIDS have been diagnosed, and more than 617,025 people have died of AIDS. Currently, more than 600,000 people in the United States are living with HIV/AIDS (CDC, 2011). This number is less than the total number of people in the United States estimated to be infected with HIV (1.1 million to 1.8 million). Worldwide, about 40 to 60 million people are currently infected with HIV, at least 30 million deaths from AIDS have occurred, and 33 million people are living with AIDS (WHO, 2010).

AIDS hits hardest among people between 21 and 44 years of age. The loss of productivity and wage-earning power among this group devastates the patient and strains the insurance and health care industry.

Most AIDS cases in North America occur among men who have had sex with other men (MSM) (53%) or individuals of either gender who have used injection drugs (16%) (CDC, 2011). *The changing demographics of the infection indicate that the perception that HIV/AIDS is only a problem for homosexual white men is false* (Kirtan, 2011).

CULTURAL AWARENESS

Most new HIV infections reported in the United States occur in racial and ethnic minority groups, particularly among Blacks/African Americans and Hispanics (CDC, 2011) (Fig. 21-5). These two groups show an increasing trend in HIV infection compared with a leveling off among white people. Factors that may increase the incidence of HIV infection and progression to AIDS among minority groups include:

- Fear of or lack of faith in the U.S. health care system
- Poverty and limited access to high-cost drugs
- Homophobia leading to increased bisexual activity among men of color
- Health beliefs about HIV treatment

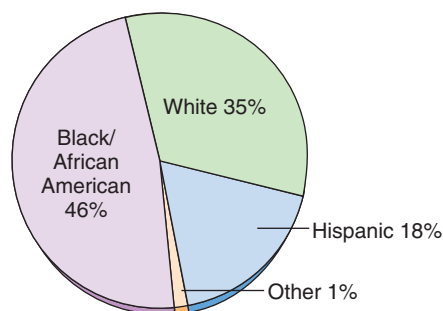


FIG. 21-5 Estimates of annual new HIV infections in the United States by ethnicity and race.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Infection with HIV can occur at any age. Assess the older patient for risk behaviors, including a sexual and drug use history (Tangredi et al., 2008). Age-related decline in immune function increases the likelihood that the older adult will develop the infection after an HIV exposure. In the older woman, thinning of vaginal tissue as a result of decreased estrogen may increase susceptibility to all sexually transmitted diseases, including HIV infection. Cognitive deficits appear to occur earlier in the older adult with HIV (Vance, 2010).

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Women are the fastest growing group with HIV infection and AIDS. In North America, about 16% of people with HIV infection are women. Twenty-five percent of newly diagnosed cases are women. In less affluent countries, 50% of cases occur in women (WHO, 2010). Risk factors are sexual exposure (75%) and injection drug use (25%). Strategies specifically targeted to reducing sexual exposures of HIV to women may help prevent an increase in HIV infection in that group. Women with HIV infection have a poorer outcome with shorter mean survival time than that of men. This outcome may be the result of late diagnosis and social or economic factors that reduce access to medical care.

Gynecologic problems, especially persistent or recurrent vaginal candidiasis, may be the first signs of HIV infection in women. Other common problems include genital herpes, pelvic inflammatory disease, other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), and cervical dysplasia or cancer.

Most women with HIV are of childbearing age. The effect of HIV on pregnancy outcomes includes higher incidence of premature delivery, low-birth-weight infants, and transmission of the disease to the infant. Appropriate antiretroviral drug therapy during pregnancy reduces the risk for transmitting the infection to the infant. (See the discussion on p. 363 in the Perinatal Transmission section.)

AIDS is a disease with a high mortality rate. The fatality rate is at least 60% for adults and, to date, there is no cure (WHO, 2010). Thus a major focus for health care in North America and worldwide is prevention of HIV infection. For those infected with HIV, drug therapy slows disease progression and, to be effective, it must be taken as prescribed for the rest of the patient's life.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

HIV has been found in most body fluids of infected patients, including blood, semen, vaginal secretions, breast milk, amniotic fluid, urine, feces, saliva, tears, cerebrospinal fluid, lymph nodes, cervical cells, corneal tissue, and brain tissue. The fluids with the highest concentrations of HIV are the semen and the blood. It is also present in vaginal fluids and breast milk. Thus HIV is transmitted most often in these three ways:

- Sexual: genital, anal, or oral sexual contact with exposure of mucous membranes to infected semen or vaginal secretions
- Parenteral: sharing of needles or equipment contaminated with infected blood or receiving contaminated blood products
- Perinatal: from the placenta, from contact with maternal blood and body fluids during birth, or from breast milk from an infected mother to child

Teach everyone about the transmission routes and ways to reduce their exposure (discussed next). Also stress that HIV is not transmitted by casual contact in the home, school, or

workplace. Sharing household utensils, towels and linens, and toilet facilities does not transmit HIV. In addition, HIV is not spread by mosquitoes or other insects.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach all people, regardless of age, gender, ethnicity, or sexual orientation, that they are susceptible to HIV infection.

Sexual Transmission

The CDC describes the ABC safer sex methods as **A**, abstinence; **B**, be faithful; and **C**, condoms (CDC, 2009b). *Abstinence and mutually monogamous sex with a noninfected partner are the only absolutely safe methods of preventing HIV infection from sexual contact.* Many forms of sexual expression can spread HIV infection if one partner is infected. *The risk for becoming infected from a partner who is HIV positive is always present*, although some sexual practices are more risky than others. The virus concentrates most heavily in blood and seminal fluid, although it is also present in vaginal secretions. Thus risk differs by gender, sexual act, and the viral load of the infected partner.

Gender affects HIV transmission. HIV is most easily transmitted when infected body fluids come into contact with mucous membranes or nonintact skin. The vagina has much more mucous membrane than does the penis. Thus HIV, like all other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), is more easily transmitted from infected male to uninfected female than vice versa. Teach women the importance of always either using a vaginal or dental dam or female condom, or having their male partners use a condom.

Sexual acts or practices that permit infected seminal fluid to come into contact with mucous membranes or nonintact skin are the most risky for sexual transmission of HIV. The practice with the highest risk is anal intercourse. In anal intercourse, the risk increases when the penis and seminal fluid of an infected person come into contact with the mucous membranes of the uninfected partner's rectum. *Anal intercourse in which the semen depositor (inserting or active partner) is infected is a very risky sexual practice regardless of whether the semen receiver (receiving partner) is male or female.* Anal intercourse not only allows seminal fluid to make contact with the mucous membranes of the rectum but also tears the mucous membranes, making infection more likely. Teach patients who engage in anal intercourse that the safer sex practice is for the semen depositor to wear a condom during this act.

Viral load, or the amount of virus present in blood and other body fluids, affects transmission. The higher the blood level of HIV (viremia), the greater the risk for sexual and perinatal transmission. Current highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) has caused the viral load of some infected patients to drop below detectable levels. *Although there is less virus in seminal or vaginal fluids of people receiving HAART, the risk for transmission still exists* (Kirtan, 2011).

Safer sex practices are those that reduce the risk for nonintact skin or mucous membranes coming in contact with infected body fluids and blood. Teach everyone the importance of consistently using these safer sex practices:

- A latex or polyurethane condom for genital and anal intercourse (Chart 21-1)

CHART 21-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Condom Use to Prevent Sexually Transmitted Diseases

- Use latex or polyurethane condoms rather than natural membrane condoms.
- Store condoms in a cool, dry place.
- Do not use condoms that were in damaged packages or those that show signs of age, such as those that are brittle, sticky, or discolored.
- Handle condoms carefully to avoid puncturing them.
- Put a condom on before making any genital contact.
- Hold the tip of the condom and unroll it onto the erect penis, making sure that no air is trapped in the tip. Leave space at the tip to collect semen.
- Use adequate lubrication. Use water-based lubricants only. Petroleum or oil-based lubricants such as petroleum jelly, cooking oil, shortening, and lotions can damage the condom.
- Replace a broken condom immediately. If ejaculation occurs after the condom breaks, there may be some protection in the immediate use of a spermicide.
- After ejaculation, the condom must remain on until the penis is withdrawn. While the penis is still erect, hold the condom against the base of the penis while withdrawing.
- Never reuse condoms.

From Centers for Disease Control. (1988). Condoms for prevention of sexually transmitted diseases. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 37(9), 133-137.

- A condom or latex barrier (dental dam) over the genitals or anus during oral-genital or oral-anal sexual contact
- Latex gloves for finger or hand contact with the vagina or rectum

A promising area of research for prevention of sexual transmission is the use of vaginal gels that contain an antiretroviral agent (tenofovir or raltegravir). Early results indicate that if the gel is used before and after intercourse, new infections among women can be reduced by as much as 50% (Abdool Karim et al., 2010).

For those who believe they have been exposed to HIV as a result of sexual relations or other types of nonoccupational exposure, the CDC has guidelines for postexposure prophylaxis. The length and type of prophylaxis therapy depend on the nature of the exposure (Chart 21-2).

Parenteral Transmission

Preventive practices to reduce transmission among injection drug users (IDUs) include the use of proper cleaning of “works” (needles, syringes, other drug paraphernalia). Instruct IDUs to clean a used needle and syringe by first filling and flushing them with clear water. Next, the syringe should be filled with ordinary household bleach. The bleach-filled syringe should be shaken for 30 to 60 seconds. Advise IDUs to carry a small container with this solution whenever sharing needles. Some communities have a needle exchange program in which needles and syringes are used only once and are then exchanged for clean ones.

The risk for AIDS transmission through blood and blood products has been reduced to a national average of 0.02%. Several measures are used to protect the nation's blood supply.

CHART 21-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Nonoccupational Postexposure Prophylaxis (nPEP) to HIV

Recommendations for nPEP with a *substantial risk* for HIV exposure is a 28-day course of the preferred regimen of HAART*†

NNRTI-based Efavirenz plus either lamivudine or emtricitabine plus either zidovudine or tenofovir

or

PI-based Lopinavir/ritonavir plus either lamivudine or emtricitabine plus zidovudine

A substantial risk is exposure of any of these:

- Vagina
- Rectum
- Eye
- Mouth
- Other intact mucous membrane
- Nonintact skin or mucous membrane

With:

- Blood
- Semen
- Vaginal secretions
- Rectal secretions
- Breast milk
- Any body fluid visibly contaminated with blood

When:

- The source person is known to be HIV-infected

Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2005). Antiretroviral postexposure prophylaxis after sexual, injection-drug use, or other nonoccupational exposure to HIV in the United States. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 54(RR-2), 1-27.

HAART, Highly active antiretroviral therapy; NNRTI, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor; PI, protease inhibitor.

*Either when a substantial risk has occurred and more than 72 hours has passed since the exposure or when the exposure is considered to be a negligible risk, nPEP is not recommended.

†When a substantial risk has occurred and less than 72 hours has passed since the exposure but the HIV-infection status of the source person is not known, nPEP is determined on a case-by-case basis.

All donated blood in North America is screened for the HIV antibody, and blood that is positive for HIV antibodies is discarded. Because of the time lag in antibody production (seroconversion) after exposure to HIV, infected blood can test negative for HIV antibodies. False-negative and false-positive results also can occur for other reasons. Inform patients that there is a small but real possibility of HIV transmission through blood and blood products. As a result, methods for reducing transfusion-related infections have included less reliance on standard transfusion therapy through more stringent criteria for transfusion, the use of growth factors to promote more rapid blood production in the patient, and an increase in autologous transfusion in which the patient donates his or her own blood to be transfused back at a later time.

Perinatal Transmission

The risk for perinatal transmission to infants in pregnant patients with HIV infection is about 25% in woman who are not using drug therapy for the disease compared with about 8% for women who are using drug therapy for HIV. Therefore encourage HIV-positive women who are pregnant to

continue the therapy or, if they are not on antiviral therapy, to start the therapy as soon as possible.

HIV transmission can occur across the placenta during pregnancy, with infant exposure to blood and vaginal secretions during birth, or with exposure after birth through breast milk. Inform women of childbearing age with HIV infection about the risks for perinatal transmission. Consult a maternal-child textbook for more information about reducing perinatal transmission of HIV.

Transmission and Health Care Workers

Needle stick or “sharps” injuries are the main means of occupation-related HIV infection for health care workers. In addition, health care workers can be infected through exposure of nonintact skin and mucous membranes to blood and body fluids. Because of the time lag between the time of infection with HIV and the production of serum antibodies (seroconversion), infected people can test negative for HIV and still transmit the virus. *The best prevention for health care providers is the consistent use of Standard Precautions for all patients as recommended by the CDC and required by The Joint Commission (TJC) (see Chapter 25).* Chart 21-3 lists the recommended actions for prevention of HIV infection after a needle stick or other occupational exposure (postexposure prophylaxis [PEP]). When the source patient is known to be HIV negative, PEP is not recommended.

The public may be concerned about HIV transmission by health care workers. Health care workers should wear gloves when in contact with patients' mucous membranes or non-intact skin. Infected workers with weeping dermatitis or open lesions should not perform direct care. The CDC guidelines for preventing HIV transmission by health care workers during exposure-prone invasive procedures are listed in Chart 21-4. These include any procedure in which there is a risk for broken skin injury to the health care worker and the worker's blood is likely to make contact with the patient's body cavity, subcutaneous tissues, or mucous membranes. The purpose of these guidelines is to reduce the risk for HIV transmission to patients.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration; Safety

You have just changed jobs and are working in the day-surgery and procedure center of a large hospital. You recognize from your former place of employment one of the gastroenterologists as a patient who is under treatment for HIV disease. He is performing short procedures, including endoscopy and colonoscopy.

1. Should you approach this surgeon with the knowledge you have about his HIV status? Why or why not?
2. Does performing endoscopies or colonoscopies represent an HIV transmission risk from this surgeon to his patients? Explain your choice.
3. What are your responsibilities in this situation?

Testing

Testing for HIV antibodies or other features of the virus is complex, requiring interpretation, counseling, and confidentiality. Testing plays a role in prevention because tests are a way of diagnosing HIV infection before immune changes or symptoms develop. A primary health care focus for testing is to teach those who test positive to modify their behaviors to

CHART 21-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Postexposure Prophylaxis (PEP) for Occupational HIV Exposure*

BASIC PEP†	EXPANDED PEP‡
Small volume (few drops) exposure to mucous membranes or nonintact skin - Source patient is HIV positive, asymptomatic with known low viral load - Source patient is HIV positive, symptomatic or AIDS with high viral load	Large volume (major splash) exposure to mucous membranes or nonintact skin Source patient is HIV positive, symptomatic or AIDS with high viral load
Large volume (major splash) exposure to mucous membranes or nonintact skin - Source patient is HIV positive, asymptomatic with known low viral load - Optional when source patient is unknown or known with HIV risk factors	Less severe percutaneous injury (solid needle or superficial injury) Source patient is HIV positive, symptomatic or AIDS with high viral load
Less severe percutaneous injury (solid needle or superficial injury) - Source patient is HIV positive, asymptomatic with known low viral load - Optional when source patient is unknown or known with HIV risk factors	More severe percutaneous injury (large-bore hollow needle, deep punctures, visible blood on the device, needle was in the patient's artery or vein) - Source patient is HIV positive, asymptomatic with known low viral load - Source patient is HIV positive, symptomatic or AIDS with high viral load

Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2005). Updated Public Health Service guidelines for the management of health-care worker exposure to HIV and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 54(RR-9), 1-22.

*When PEP therapy is instituted, the recommended course is 28 days.

†Basic PEP = Two drugs: (zidovudine plus lamivudine or emtricitabine); or (stavudine plus lamivudine or emtricitabine); or (tenofovir plus lamivudine or emtricitabine).

‡Expanded PEP = Three or more drugs: (zidovudine plus lamivudine or emtricitabine plus lopinavir/ritonavir); or (stavudine plus lamivudine or emtricitabine plus lopinavir/ritonavir); or (tenofovir plus lamivudine or emtricitabine plus lopinavir/ritonavir).

prevent transmission to others. *Therefore all sexually active people should know their HIV status.* Chart 21-5 lists additional conditions for which HIV antibody testing is advised.

Pretest and post-test counseling must be performed by personnel trained in HIV issues. These counselors may be nurses, physicians, social workers, health educators, or even lay educators who have specialized training. Counseling helps the patient make an informed decision about testing and provides an opportunity to teach risk-reduction behaviors. Post-test counseling is needed to interpret the results, discuss risk reduction, and provide psychological support and health promotion information for the patient with a positive test result. People who test positive should also be counseled on how to inform sexual partners and those with whom they have shared needles. Testing methods, their accuracy, and indications are presented on pp. 368-369 in the Laboratory Assessment section.

CHART 21-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Recommendations for Preventing HIV Transmission by Health Care Workers

- Workers should adhere to Standard Precautions.
- Workers with exudative lesions or weeping dermatitis should not perform direct patient care or handle patient care equipment and devices used in invasive procedures.
- Workers must follow guidelines for disinfection and sterilization of reusable equipment used in invasive procedures.
- Workers infected with HIV are not restricted from practice of non-exposure-prone procedures, as long as they comply with Standard Precautions and sterilization and disinfection recommendations.
- Workers should identify exposure-prone procedures by institutions where they are performed.
- Workers who perform exposure-prone procedures should know their HIV antibody status.
- Workers who are infected with HIV should seek advice from an expert review panel before performing exposure-prone procedures to determine under what circumstances they may continue to practice these procedures. These circumstances would include notification of prospective patients of HIV positivity.

Modified from Centers for Disease Control. (1991). Recommendations for preventing transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus to patients during exposure-prone invasive procedures. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 40(RR-8), 1-9.

CHART 21-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

CDC Recommendations for HIV Testing

- You should be tested for HIV if you fall within one or more of these groups:
- People with sexually transmitted disease
 - Injection drug users
 - People who consider themselves at risk
 - Women of childbearing age with identifiable risks, including:
 - Used injection drugs
 - Engaged in prostitution
 - Had sexual partners who were infected or at risk
 - Had contact with men from countries with high HIV prevalence
 - People who received a transfusion between 1978 and 1985
 - People planning to get married
 - People undergoing medical evaluation or treatment for manifestations that may be HIV related
 - People admitted to hospitals
 - People in correctional institutions such as jails and prisons
 - Prostitutes and their customers

Modified from Centers for Disease Control. (1987). Public Health Service guidelines for counseling and antibody testing to prevent HIV infection and AIDS. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 36(31), 509-515. CDC, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The person who has HIV disease is monitored on a regular basis for changes in immune function or health status that indicate disease progression and warrant prophylaxis or intervention. The frequency of monitoring and reassessment varies from every 2 to 6 months based on disease progression

and responses to treatment. This comprehensive and continuing assessment of the patient with HIV infection is crucial, because he or she may have problems related to disease in many organ systems. Assess subtle changes so that infections and other problems can be found early and treated.

History

Ask specifically about age, gender, occupation, and where the person lives. Thoroughly assess the current illness, including its nature, when it started, the severity of symptoms, associated problems, and any interventions to date. Ask the patient about when the HIV infection was diagnosed and what clinical symptoms led to that diagnosis. Ask him or her to give a chronologic history of infections and clinical problems since the diagnosis. Assess the patient's health history, including whether he or she received a blood transfusion between 1978 and 1985 in the United States (before routine blood testing for HIV contamination). Blood testing for HIV contamination is not consistently performed in all parts of the world and is a source of infection for immigrants. Ask the immigrant patient about his or her history of transfusion therapy before coming to the United States.

Ask the patient about sexual practices, sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), and any major infectious diseases, including tuberculosis and hepatitis. If the patient has hemophilia, ask about treatment with clotting factors. Determine whether the patient has engaged in past or present injection drug use, including needle exposure and needle sharing. Assess the patient's level of knowledge regarding the diagnosis, symptom management, diagnostic tests, treatments, community resources, and modes of HIV transmission. Also assess his or her understanding and use of safer sex practices. If knowledge deficits are found, provide the appropriate patient teaching.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

HIV disease and AIDS are a progression continuum. The patient with HIV disease may either have few manifestations and problems or may have problems that are acute rather than chronically present. As the disease progresses, however, more health problems of long duration and greater severity occur. He or she may not realize that the disease is progressing. Assess for manifestations that cluster as symptoms of disease progression and may indicate that the treatment regimen needs to be modified (Chart 21-6).

Opportunistic Infections. The patient with HIV/AIDS often develops pathogenic infections and opportunistic infections. *Pathogenic infections* are caused by virulent organisms and occur even among people whose immune systems are functioning normally. *Opportunistic infections* are those caused by organisms that are present as part of the body's normal environment and are kept in check by normal immune function. Only when immune function is depressed are such organisms capable of causing infection.

Opportunistic infections occur because of the profound immunosuppression of the person with HIV infection. They may result from primary infection or reactivation of a latent infection. Opportunistic infections account for many of the clinical symptoms observed in HIV infection and can be protozoan, fungal, bacterial, or viral. More than one infection may be present at the same time. The presence of opportunistic infections may represent disease progression or a

CHART 21-6 KEY FEATURES

AIDS

Immunologic Manifestations

- Low white blood cell counts:
 - CD4+/CD8+ ratio <2
 - CD4+ count <200/mm³
- Hypergammaglobulinemia
- Opportunistic infections
- Lymphadenopathy
- Fatigue

Integumentary Manifestations

- Dry skin
- Poor wound healing
- Skin lesions
- Night sweats

Respiratory Manifestations

- Cough
- Shortness of breath

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Diarrhea
- Weight loss
- Nausea and vomiting

Central Nervous System Manifestations

- Confusion
- Dementia
- Headache
- Fever
- Visual changes
- Memory loss
- Personality changes
- Pain
- Seizures

Opportunistic Infections

- Protozoal infections
 - *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia
 - Toxoplasmosis
 - Cryptosporidiosis
 - Isosporiasis
 - Microsporidiosis
 - Strongyloidiasis
 - Giardiasis
- Fungal infections
 - Candidiasis
 - Cryptococcosis
 - Histoplasmosis
 - Coccidioidomycosis
- Bacterial infections
 - *Mycobacterium avium* complex infection
 - Tuberculosis
 - Nocardiosis
- Viral infections
 - Cytomegalovirus infection
 - Herpes simplex virus infection
 - Varicella-zoster virus infection

Malignancies

- Kaposi's sarcoma
- Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Invasive cervical carcinoma

temporary further reduction of immune status. *In either case, these infections can result in death if appropriate treatment is not started quickly.* Priority nursing actions when caring for a patient who is HIV positive are continually assessing for the presence of an opportunistic infection and monitoring the patient's response to therapy. Document all assessment findings in the patient's medical record, and report to the health care provider those manifestations that may indicate an infection.

Opportunistic infections do not pose a threat to the immunocompetent health care worker caring for a patient with HIV infection or AIDS. When the patient with HIV infection or AIDS has a pathogenic infection, however, health care personnel must use precautions appropriate to the specific disease to prevent disease spread. For example, when the person with HIV/AIDS also has tuberculosis at a transmissible stage, Airborne Precautions are needed in addition to Standard Precautions. See Chapter 25 for a more complete discussion on Transmission-Based Precautions for specific infectious diseases.

Protozoal infections are common among patients with AIDS. *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia (PCP) (at one time thought to be the protozoa *Pneumocystis carinii*) is the most common opportunistic infection in persons infected with HIV. This organism is considered a protozoa by some scientists and a fungus by others. Assess for dyspnea on exertion, tachypnea, a persistent dry cough, and fever (usually low-grade and persistent). The patient with PCP may report fatigue and weight loss. Listen to breath sounds for crackles that may be present on lung auscultation.

Toxoplasmosis encephalitis, caused by *Toxoplasma gondii*, is acquired through contact with contaminated cat feces or by ingesting infected, undercooked meat. Assess the patient for subtle changes in mental status, neurologic deficits, headaches, and fever. Other symptoms to assess include difficulties with speech, gait, and vision; seizures; lethargy; and confusion. Perform a comprehensive baseline mental status examination and monitor the patient to detect subtle changes.

Cryptosporidiosis is an intestinal infection caused by *Cryptosporidium* organisms. In AIDS, this illness ranges from a mild diarrhea to a severe wasting with electrolyte imbalance. Diarrhea may result in fluid loss of up to 15 to 20 L/day. Ask the patient about the presence of diarrhea and whether he or she has had an unplanned weight loss of 5 pounds or more.

Fungal infections occur by overgrowth of normal body flora. *Candida albicans* is part of the natural flora of the intestinal tract. In the person with AIDS, candidiasis (overgrowth of the *Candida* fungus) occurs because the weakened immune system can no longer control fungal growth. *Candida* stomatitis or esophagitis is a frequent finding in AIDS. Patients may report food tasting "funny," mouth pain, difficulty in swallowing, and retrosternal pain (pain behind the sternum). On examination of the mouth and the back of the throat, you may see cottage cheese–like, yellowish white plaques and inflammation (Fig. 21-6). Esophagitis is diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy and culture. Women with HIV disease or AIDS may have persistent vaginal candidiasis with severe pruritus (itching), perineal irritation, and a thick, white vaginal discharge.

Cryptococcosis is a debilitating meningitis and is sometimes a widely spread infection in AIDS. It is caused by *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Ask about fever, headache, blurred vision, nausea and vomiting, nuchal rigidity (stiff neck), mild

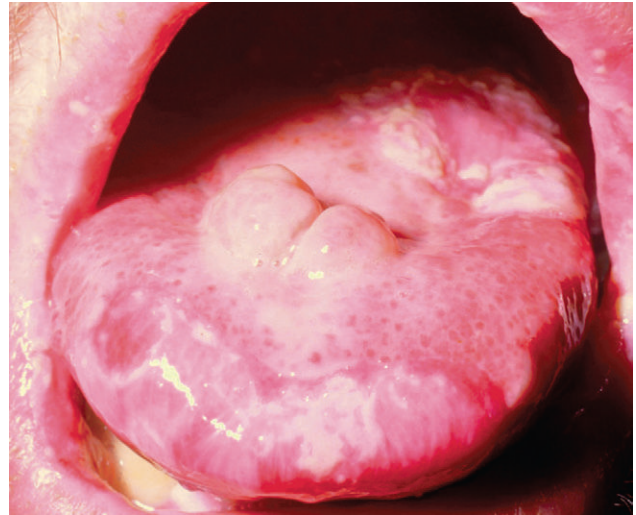


FIG. 21-6 Oral candidiasis (thrush).

confusion, and other mental status changes. Some patients have seizures and other focal neurologic problems, or they may have mild symptoms of malaise and fever with or without headaches.

Histoplasmosis, caused by *Histoplasma capsulatum*, begins as a respiratory infection and progresses to widespread infection in the person with AIDS. Assess whether dyspnea, fever, cough, and weight loss are present. Check for enlargement of lymph nodes, the spleen, or the liver.

Bacterial infections are acquired from other people or sources and as overgrowth of skin flora. *Mycobacterium avium* complex (MAC) is the most common bacterial infection associated with AIDS. This problem is caused by *M. intracellulare* or *M. avium*, which infects the respiratory or GI tract. MAC is a systemic infection. Positive cultures may be obtained from lymph nodes, bone marrow, and blood. Assess for fever, debility, weight loss, malaise, and sometimes swollen lymph glands or organ disease.

Tuberculosis (TB), caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, occurs in 2% to 10% of persons with AIDS (CDC, 2009a). More than 50% of all patients with AIDS and TB have extrapulmonary disease sites, including the central nervous system, bones, liver, spleen, skin, and intestinal tract. Ask about the presence of cough, dyspnea, chest pain, fever, chills, night sweats, weight loss, and anorexia. Symptoms of extrapulmonary infection vary with the site. *The person with TB and a CD4+ T-cell count below 200/mm³ may not have a positive TB skin test (purified protein derivative [PPD]) because of an inability to mount an immune response to the antigen, a condition known as anergy.* Blood analysis by an interferon release gamma assay (IRGA) using the commercial test QuantiFERON-TB Gold (QFT-G) is the most sensitive and rapid test for the presence of *M. tuberculosis* (Diel et al.,

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Until parameters other than a skin test come back negative for TB in a patient with AIDS who also has TB symptoms, maintain Airborne Precautions along with Standard Precautions.

2009). Results are ready in 24 hours. Although this test is not recommended for mass or public health screening, it is very useful in the acute care setting to determine whether a symptomatic patient actually has TB. Other diagnostic tests include a chest x-ray, acid-fast sputum smear, and sputum culture.

The tuberculosis bacillus is spread by airborne routes. When particles from the patient's respiratory tract are aerosolized, anyone near him or her is at risk for inhaling the particles and the bacillus. Therefore the nurse or respiratory therapist who gives cough-inducing aerosol treatments, such as pentamidine isethionate, to patients with AIDS should be screened with a PPD skin test every 6 months to determine whether he or she has been infected with TB.

Pneumonia from bacterial infections recurs often among patients with AIDS. In the current CDC classification system for AIDS, two or more episodes of any type of bacterial pneumonia in a 12-month period are an AIDS case definition. Assess for chest pain, productive cough, fever, and dyspnea.

Viral infection from a virus other than HIV is common among people with HIV disease that has progressed to AIDS. Cytomegalovirus (CMV) can infect many sites in persons with AIDS, including the eye (CMV retinitis), respiratory and GI tracts, and the central nervous system. CMV infection can also cause many nonspecific problems such as fever, malaise, weight loss, fatigue, and swollen lymph nodes. CMV retinitis impairs vision, ranging from slight impairment to total blindness. CMV can also cause diarrhea, abdominal bloating and discomfort, and weight loss. Ask the patient whether he or she has any of these manifestations. In addition, CMV can cause encephalitis, pneumonitis, adrenalitis, hepatitis, and disseminated infection.

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) infections in people with HIV disease or AIDS occur in the perirectal, oral, and genital areas. The manifestations are more widespread and of longer duration among patients with HIV/AIDS than among those who are immunocompetent. Numbness or tingling at the site of infection occurs up to 24 hours before blisters form. Lesions are painful, with chronic open areas after blisters rupture. Assess for fever, pain, bleeding, and lymph node enlargement in the affected area. Other manifestations include headache, myalgia, and malaise.

Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) infection (*shingles*) is not a new infection for people with AIDS. This virus, present in the nerve ganglia of many people, causes chickenpox. When people who have had chickenpox previously are immunocompromised, VZV leaves the nerve ganglia and enters body fluids and other tissue areas, causing shingles. Ask whether the patient has pain and burning along sensory nerve tracts (see [Chapter 43](#) for the dermatomes of sensory nerve locations). Examine the skin for fluid-filled blisters with or without crusts. Other problems include headache and low-grade fever.

Malignancies. The weakened immune response increases the risk for some cancers. These include Kaposi's sarcoma, lymphomas, invasive cervical cancer, lung cancer, GI cancers, and anal cancer (Kirton, 2011).

Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) is the most common AIDS-related malignancy, occurring in 1% to 21% of patients with AIDS. The risk for KS appears to be related to co-infection with human herpes virus-8.

KS develops as small, purplish brown, raised lesions that are usually not painful or itchy. The lesions can occur



FIG. 21-7 Kaposi's sarcoma lesions.

anywhere on the body ([Fig. 21-7](#)). Most patients with KS have skin or mucous membrane lesions. In some patients, lesions develop in the lymph nodes, mouth and throat, intestinal tract, or lungs. KS is diagnosed by biopsy and histologic examination of the lesion. Assess KS lesions for number, size, location, and whether they are intact, and monitor their progression.

Malignant lymphomas occurring with AIDS are Hodgkin's lymphoma, non-Hodgkin's B-cell lymphomas, such as Burkitt's lymphoma, immunoblastic lymphoma, and primary brain lymphoma. Manifestations include swollen lymph nodes, weight loss, fever, and night sweats.

Endocrine Complications. Patients with HIV disease may have disease-related endocrine problems, such as gonadal dysfunction, body shape changes, adrenal insufficiency, diabetes mellitus, and elevated triglycerides and cholesterol ([Table 21-2](#)).

Many HIV-positive men have low testosterone levels, and HIV-positive women often have irregular menstrual cycles. With this gonadal dysfunction comes a decrease in body muscle mass for both genders, with a decrease in weight, and a change in libido, accompanied by a decrease in energy and an increase in fatigue.

Body shape changes from fat redistribution or lipodystrophy are common in patients receiving antiretroviral therapies, especially protease inhibitors and nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors. Manifestations include "buffalo humps" or cervical (neck) fat development and large abdominal fat accumulations. Other body areas, such as the face, arms, and legs, have a wasted appearance and show prominent vein patterns from loss of subcutaneous fat.

Adrenal dysfunction can result from the glands being infected by opportunistic infections (cytomegalovirus, *M. avium*, or *M. tuberculosis*), resulting in adrenal insufficiency. This problem manifests as fatigue, weight loss, nausea, vomiting, low blood pressure, and electrolyte disturbances and can be life threatening.

Patients taking protease inhibitors have a higher-than-expected incidence of type 1 diabetes and hyperlipidemia. These problems are seen even among patients who have no other risks for these problems or the associated heart disease.

Other Clinical Manifestations. All body systems are affected to some degree in AIDS.

TABLE 21-2 ENDOCRINE COMPLICATIONS OF HIV INFECTION OR TREATMENT

ENDOCRINE GLAND	PROBLEMS/DYSFUNCTION
Gonads	Decreased testosterone
	Reduced libido
	Increased fatigue
	Reduced fertility
	Decreased muscle mass
	Weight loss
	Decreased estrogen
	Reduced libido
	Premature menopause
	Decreased muscle mass
Adrenal cortex	Increased cortisol
	Fat redistribution
	Decreased muscle mass
	Decreased cortisol
	Adrenal insufficiency
	Hypoglycemia
	Hyperkalemia
	Hypotension
	Fatigue
	Weight loss
Pancreas	Reduced exocrine function
	Fatty food intolerance
	Cholelithiasis
	Pancreatitis
	Reduced endocrine function
	Diabetes mellitus
	Hyperlipidemia

AIDS dementia complex (ADC), also called *HIV-associated dementia complex*, refers to the manifestations of central nervous system involvement. ADC occurs in about 70% of people with AIDS. It is a result of infection of cells within the central nervous system by HIV. ADC causes cognitive, motor, and behavioral impairments. Manifestations range from barely noticeable to severe dementia. (See [Chapter 44](#) for more discussion on dementia.)

Some neurologic problems may be a result of HIV infection or drug side effects, including peripheral neuropathies and myopathies. Assess for symptoms of peripheral neuropathies, which include paresthesias and burning sensations, reduced sensory perception, pain, and gait changes. Myopathies are accompanied by leg weakness, ataxia, and muscle pain.

AIDS wasting syndrome is not due to any single factor. It may be a result of altered metabolism from cancer or infection. Diarrhea, malabsorption, anorexia, and oral and esophageal lesions can all contribute to persistent and sometimes extreme weight loss, and the patient may appear quite emaciated.

Skin changes include dry, itchy, irritated skin and many types of rashes. Folliculitis, eczema, or psoriasis may occur. Ask the patient about skin sensation changes, and examine any rash or irritation. When the platelet count is low, petechiae or bleeding gums may be present.

Psychosocial Assessment

Psychosocial data collection for a patient with AIDS is very important. Ask about the patient's social support system, including family, significant others, and friends. To protect confidentiality, learn who in this support system is aware of

the diagnosis so that it is not inadvertently mentioned. Some patients, because of fear of discrimination, are quite selective about whom they tell. Health care professionals must respect the patient's choices as much as possible without compromising care. Offer resources to help with disclosure to sexual partners or significant others.

The patient may be closest to a lover or a friend who is not legally recognized as next of kin. Obtain the name and telephone number of that person, and learn whether a health care proxy or durable power-of-attorney document has been signed.

Ask about the patient's ADLs, as well as any changes that may have occurred since the diagnosis. Also assess his or her employment status and occupation, immigration status, social activities and hobbies, living arrangements, and financial resources, including health insurance. Also ask whether he or she uses drugs, including tobacco, alcohol, supplements, opioids, benzodiazepines, cocaine, or crystal methamphetamine.

To plan care and monitor changes, assess the patient's anxiety level, mood, cognitive ability, and level of energy. Ask about any experiences with discrimination and how they were handled. After assessing the patient's level of self-esteem and changes in body image, work with him or her to identify strengths and coping strategies. Gather information about any suicidal ideation, depression, or other psychological problems. Also ask about the use of support groups or other community resources.

The patient with HIV infection has less energy as the disease progresses. Many factors contribute to this energy loss, and many cannot be treated. Pace interviews, assessments, and intervention activities to match his or her energy level. When the patient is greatly fatigued, postpone or eliminate nonurgent tests or care activities.

Laboratory Assessment

Lymphocyte Counts. Lymphocyte counts are performed as part of a complete blood count (CBC) with differential (see [Chapter 19](#)). The normal white blood cell (WBC) count is between 5000 and 10,000 cells/mm³, with a differential of about 30% to 40% lymphocytes (an absolute number of 1500 to 4500). Patients with AIDS are often leukopenic, with a WBC count of less than 3500 cells/mm³, and lymphopenic (<1500 lymphocytes/mm³).

CD4+ T-cell and CD8+ T-cell counts and percentages are an important part of an immune profile. People with HIV disease usually have a lower-than-normal number of CD4+ T-cells. Some patients with AIDS have fewer than 100 cells/mm³ (normal: 500 to 1500 cells/mm³), whereas the number of CD8+ T-cells remains normal. The normal ratio of CD4+ to CD8+ T-cells is 2:1. In HIV disease and AIDS, because of the low number of CD4+ T-cells, this ratio is low. Low CD4+ T-cell counts and a low ratio are associated with increased manifestations of disease.

Antibody Tests. Antibody tests are used to measure the patient's response to the virus (the antigen) rather than to measure parts of the virus. When the body is infected with HIV, the normal response is to make an antibody to the infecting agent. This antibody is usually made 3 weeks to 3 months after the infection first occurs, although in some people, antibodies are not made until 36 months after initial infection.

Thus antibody tests for HIV antibody can be measured by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and Western blot analysis. False-negative results (incorrectly indicating the absence of HIV infection) have been reported early in the infection, in people with cancer, and in people receiving long-term immunosuppressive therapy.

ELISA is an inexpensive and accurate test. The patient's serum is mixed with HIV grown in culture. If the patient has antibodies to HIV, they bind to the HIV antigens and can be detected (a positive test). However, this test can be negative even when the person has HIV infection if the test is performed before antibodies are made in sufficient amounts. The time between when a person is first infected with the virus and when viral replication is occurring but the immune system has not yet started making antibodies is called the "window period." *This means that if the patient has an episode of unprotected sex with an HIV-positive person one night and comes in for testing a week later, the ELISA will be negative even though the patient may have active HIV. Thus testing during the window does not provide useful information.*

False-positive test results (incorrectly indicating HIV infection) occur in about 0.1% (1 of 1000) of those tested with ELISA. False-positive results sometimes occur in pregnant women and women who have had children, injection drug users, people who have had malaria, patients with lymphomas, and other conditions. Therefore anyone who has a positive ELISA needs to have additional testing to confirm or rule out infection.

Western blot is used to confirm the diagnosis when the results of an ELISA are positive. This test is more sophisticated and expensive than the ELISA. The Western blot detects serum antibodies to four specific major HIV antigens. A positive Western blot result is based on the presence of antibodies to at least two of the major HIV antigens.

The result is considered inconclusive if two of the major antibodies are not detected but other antibodies to HIV are. The person should then be retested. *If a person has a positive test result for HIV antibodies, it does not mean that he or she has AIDS—only that he or she has been infected with the virus.*

Both the ELISA and Western blot are blood-based tests. This requires special equipment and trained personnel to test for HIV infection. Some HIV testing is simpler, using techniques that are not blood-based so that testing can be done anywhere, even at home. One test involves oral testing for HIV antibody. This test uses a device that is placed against the gum and cheek for 2 minutes. Fluid (not saliva) is drawn into an absorbable pad, which, in an HIV-positive person, contains HIV-specific antibodies. The pad is placed in a solution; a positive result shows a change similar to a positive result in a urine pregnancy test. Total testing time is about 20 minutes. This test has the same accuracy as blood testing and can provide results quickly. If results are positive for HIV, a blood test is needed to confirm the result.

Home test kits require that a drop of blood be placed on a test card with a special code number. The card is mailed to a laboratory where the blood is tested for HIV antibodies. A special telephone number is called and the code entered. Test results are then given.

Viral Load Testing. **Viral load testing** (also called *viral burden testing*) measures the presence of HIV viral genetic material (RNA) or other viral proteins in the patient's blood rather than the body's response to the virus. These tests are

quantitative and indicate the level of viral burden or viral load. Such tests are useful in monitoring disease progression and treatment effectiveness.

Quantitative RNA assays are used for quantitative viral load testing. These assays include the reverse transcriptase–polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), the branched DNA (bDNA) method, and the nucleic acid sequence-based assay (NASBA). All three assays use gene amplification to determine the amount of HIV RNA present in a patient's serum, and all have a specificity of 100%. Even if only a few infected cells are present in a serum sample, tiny amounts of the HIV RNA are amplified by these methods to allow detection and diagnosis of people who have no indication of infection. These tests are used to monitor therapy effectiveness and as indicators of the need to change drug regimens.

Other Laboratory Assessment. Other laboratory tests monitor the overall health of the patient and detect or diagnose any infections or other problems related to HIV disease. These tests include blood chemistries, a CBC with differential and platelets, toxoplasmosis antibody titer, liver function tests, a serologic test for syphilis (STS), and antigens to hepatitis A, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C. Tests to further evaluate the immune profile of a patient may include bone marrow aspiration with biopsy and cultures. In addition, other tests may be performed to monitor toxicities related to antiretroviral drug therapy.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The HIV genotype test is used to determine whether any mutations exist in the strain of HIV that has infected the patient. This test is useful before starting antiretroviral therapy to learn whether the patient is infected with a resistant strain of HIV. If so, the test will help the clinician choose which antiretroviral drugs are likely to be effective against viral replication and to which drugs the virus is resistant. It is also useful in patients who are started on antiretroviral therapy and demonstrate an initial success, but then develop rapid disease progression.

The HLA *B5701* allele test is a genetic test to determine how a person will respond to a drug. For example, about 3% to 8% of patients who take abacavir (Ziagen) have a hypersensitivity reaction to it that ranges from mild fever, rash, nausea, and vomiting to fatal anaphylaxis. The *B5701* allele is a genetic variation that is strongly associated with abacavir hypersensitivity, although it does not predict how severe a hypersensitivity reaction will be. Abacavir should not be used without first testing for *B5701*, and if positive, abacavir is never used either as an individual drug or in combined drug preparations.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Other diagnostic tests are performed on the basis of the patient's manifestations. Such tests may include testing stool for ova and parasites; biopsies of the skin, lymph nodes, lungs, liver, GI tract, or brain; a chest x-ray; gallium scans;



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which finding in the client with HIV disease who is receiving antiretroviral therapy indicates to the nurse that the treatment is effective?

- A. CD4+ cells 700/mm³
- B. CD4+ cells 200/mm³
- C. CD8+ cells 700/mm³
- D. CD8+ cells 200/mm³

bronchoscopy, endoscopy, or colonoscopy; liver and spleen scans; computed tomography (CT) scans; pulmonary function tests; and arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with AIDS are:

1. Potential for infection related to immune deficiency
2. Inadequate oxygenation related to anemia, respiratory infection (*P. jiroveci* pneumonia [PCP], cytomegalovirus [CMV] pneumonitis), pulmonary Kaposi's sarcoma (KS), or anemia
3. Pain related to neuropathy, myelopathy, cancer, or infection
4. Inadequate nutrition related to high metabolic need, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, difficulty chewing or swallowing, or anorexia
5. Diarrhea related to infection, food intolerance, or drugs
6. Reduced skin integrity related to KS, infection, altered nutritional state, incontinence, immobility, hyperthermia, or cancer
7. Confusion related to AIDS dementia complex (ADC), central nervous system infection, or cancer
8. Reduced self-esteem related to changes in body image, role, or independence
9. Potential loss of social contact related to stigma, virus transmissibility, infection control practices, or fear

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Preventing Infection

The patient with AIDS is susceptible to opportunistic infections and other infections because of immune deficiency secondary to HIV infection. The initial focus of management is maintaining and supporting the patient's immune function by controlling the HIV infection with antiretroviral therapy. When the patient's immune function declines, management includes both prophylaxis and active treatment of opportunistic infections. Some of these therapies are described under the collaborative care of other priority patient problems.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to remain free of opportunistic diseases and other infections. Indicators include the following:

- Absence of chills, fever, or temperature instability
- Absence of purulent drainage or sputum
- Absence of diarrhea
- Absence of chest x-ray infiltration
- Maintenance of white blood cell (WBC) count within the patient's normal range

Interventions. The person who has HIV infection and is immunocompromised is at greater risk for any type of infection. Teach him or her to avoid exposure to infection (Chart 21-7). Chart 21-8 outlines best practices for prevention of infection in a hospitalized immunosuppressed patient. Some strategies are investigational, including drug therapy and immune function enhancement.

Drug Therapy. Some drugs have demonstrated antiretroviral effects; however, *it is important to remember that antiretroviral therapy only inhibits viral replication and does not kill the virus.* Treatment with only one antiretroviral agent, known as *monotherapy*, promotes drug resistance and does not improve the duration or quality of life for the patient with HIV/AIDS. Instead, multiple drugs are used together in

CHART 21-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Infection

During the times when your white blood cell counts are low:

- Avoid crowds and other large gatherings of people who might be ill.
- Do not share personal toilet articles, such as toothbrushes, toothpaste, washcloths, or deodorant sticks, with others.
- If possible, bathe daily, using an antimicrobial soap. If total bathing is not possible, wash the armpits, groin, genitals, and anal area twice a day with an antimicrobial soap.
- Clean your toothbrush at least weekly by either running it through the dishwasher or rinsing it in liquid laundry bleach (and then rinsing out the bleach with hot running water).
- Wash your hands thoroughly with an antimicrobial soap before you eat or drink, after touching a pet, after shaking hands with anyone, as soon as you come home from any outing, and after using the toilet.
- Avoid eating salads; raw fruit and vegetables; undercooked meat, fish, and eggs; and pepper and paprika.
- Wash dishes between use with hot, sudsy water, or use a dishwasher.
- Do not drink water, milk, juice, or other cold liquids that have been standing for longer than an hour.
- Do not reuse cups and glasses without washing.
- Do not change pet litter boxes. If unavoidable, use gloves and wash hands immediately.
- Avoid turtles and reptiles as pets.
- Do not feed pets raw or undercooked meat.
- Take your temperature at least once a day and whenever you do not feel well.
- Report any of the following signs or symptoms of infection to your physician immediately:
 - Temperature greater than 100° F (38° C)
 - Persistent cough (with or without sputum)
 - Pus or foul-smelling drainage from any open skin area or normal body opening
 - Presence of a boil or abscess
 - Urine that is cloudy or foul smelling or that causes burning on urination
- Take all prescribed drugs.
- Do not dig in the garden or work with houseplants.
- Wear a condom (if you are a man) when having sex. If you are a woman having sex with a male partner, ensure that he wears a condom.
- Avoid travel to areas of the world with poor sanitation or less-than-adequate health care facilities.

regimens popularly called “cocktails.” These regimens consist of combinations of different types of antiretroviral agents. This approach is termed *highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)* and is showing good results as measured by reduced viral load and improved CD4+ T-cell counts.

An important issue with HAART is the development of drug-resistant mutations in the HIV organism. When resistance develops, viral replication is no longer suppressed by the drugs. Testing is now possible to determine whether a strain of HIV has developed resistance to specific drugs (see the Genetic/Genomic Considerations box on p. 369). Several factors contribute to the development of drug resistance to HAART, with the most important being missed doses of drugs. When doses are missed, the blood drug concentrations become lower than what are needed for inhibition of viral replication

CHART 21-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Hospitalized Immunosuppressed Patient

- Place the patient in a private room whenever possible.
- Use good handwashing technique or use alcohol-based hand rubs before touching the patient or any of his or her belongings.
- Ensure that the patient's room and bathroom are cleaned at least once each day.
- Do not use supplies from common areas for neutropenic patients. For example, keep a dedicated box of disposable gloves in his or her room and do not share this box with any other patient. Provide single-use food products, individually wrapped gauze, and other individually wrapped items.
- Limit the number of health care personnel entering the patient's room.
- Monitor vital signs, including temperature, every 4 hours.
- Inspect the patient's mouth at least every 8 hours.
- Inspect the patient's skin and mucous membranes (especially the anal area) for the presence of fissures and abscesses at least every 8 hours.
- Inspect open areas, such as IV sites, every 4 hours for manifestations of infection.
- Change gauze-containing wound dressings daily.
- Obtain specimens of all suspicious areas for culture (as specified by the agency), and promptly notify the physician.
- Assist the patient in performing coughing and deep-breathing exercises.
- Encourage activity at a level appropriate for the patient's current health status.
- Keep frequently used equipment in the room for use with this patient only (e.g., blood pressure cuff, stethoscope, thermometer).
- Limit visitors to healthy adults.
- Use strict aseptic technique for all invasive procedures.
- Avoid the use of indwelling urinary catheters.
- Keep fresh flowers and potted plants out of the patient's room.
- Teach the patient to eat a low-bacteria diet (e.g., avoiding raw fruits and vegetables; undercooked meat, eggs, and fish; pepper and paprika as seasonings sprinkled on food right before eating).

(often called the *inhibitory concentration*). When this concentration is too low, the organism can replicate and produce new organisms that are resistant to the drugs being used.

An important understanding about HIV resistance to one or more drugs is that once a patient has HIV organisms with resistant mutations, the organisms with the mutations are stored in the body indefinitely. The resistant organisms are most likely in the lymph nodes and spleen, a process known as *archiving*. The drug or drugs to which the virus is resistant are no longer used for that patient. Even years later, if the drug to which the HIV demonstrated resistance is tried again, the viruses with the resistant mutation come out of archival storage to defeat the drug.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Ensure that HAART drugs are not missed, delayed, or administered in lower-than-prescribed doses in the inpatient setting. Teach patients the importance of taking their drugs exactly as prescribed to maintain the effectiveness of HAART drugs. Even a few missed doses per month can promote drug resistance.

The main actions of each drug category are explained below. Representative drugs in each category are presented in [Chart 21-9](#). Drawbacks to HIV/AIDS drug therapy include the expense of the drugs, side effects, food and timing requirements, and the number of daily drugs. The daily regimen is lifelong and burdensome.

Nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs) are drugs that have a similar structure to the four nucleoside bases of DNA (adenine, guanine, cytosine, and thymidine), making them “counterfeit” bases. HIV must turn its viral RNA into a double-stranded DNA copy using the enzyme *reverse transcriptase*. This class of drugs “fools” reverse transcriptase into using these counterfeit bases so that poor viral DNA is formed and is not inserted into the host cell's DNA. As a result, viral DNA synthesis and replication are suppressed. This class of anti-HIV agents includes zidovudine (Retrovir), didanosine (ddI, Videx), lamivudine (Epivir, 3TC), stavudine (d4T, Zerit), tenofovir (Viread), emtricitabine (Emtriva), and abacavir (Ziagen).

Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) are HIV-specific drugs that work by inhibiting reverse transcriptase. These drugs suppress viral replication but do not kill the virus. These drugs include nevirapine (Viramune), delavirdine (Rescriptor), efavirenz (Sustiva), and etravirine (Intelence). Common problems with this class of drugs include many interactions with other drugs and hypersensitivity reactions.

Protease inhibitors (PIs) are HIV-specific drugs that block the HIV protease enzyme, preventing viral replication and release of viral particles. The HIV initially produces all of its proteins, including the ones needed to move viral particles out of a cell, in one long strand. For the proteins to be active, this large protein must be broken down into separate smaller proteins by HIV protease, which acts like chemical scissors. If this enzyme is inhibited, viral proteins are not functional and viral particles cannot leave the cell to infect other cells. The protease inhibitor drugs, when taken into an HIV-infected cell, make the protease enzyme work on the drug rather than on the initial large protein. Thus active proteins are not produced, and the viral particles cannot leave the cell to infect other cells. Drugs include ritonavir (Norvir), indinavir (Crixivan), saquinavir (Invirase), nelfinavir (Viracept), lopinavir/ritonavir (Kaletra), atazanavir/ritonavir (Reyataz), fosamprenavir (Lexiva), and darunavir/ritonavir (Prezista), and tipranavir (Aptivus). (Placing low doses of ritonavir in combination with other PIs boosts the levels of other PIs, resulting in more effective drug responses at lower drug dosages, fewer side effects, and improved patient adherence.)

Fusion inhibitors work by blocking the fusion of HIV with a host cell by blocking the ability of gp41 to fuse with the host cell's CD4 receptor. Without fusion, infection of new cells does not occur. The current drug in this category is enfuvirtide (Fuzeon), which is administered as a subcutaneous injection.

Entry inhibitors are a relatively new type of anti-HIV drug. The current drug in this category is maraviroc (Selzentry). This drug works to prevent infection by blocking the CCR5 receptor on CD4+ T-cells. Remember, in order for HIV to enter the cell, the virus' gp120 must bind to the CD4 receptor and its gp41 must bind to the CCR5 receptor or to the CXCR4 receptor (see [Fig. 21-3](#)). Viral binding to both receptors is

CHART 21-9 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

HIV Infection

DRUG/ USUAL DOSE (FOR ADULTS WEIGHING >60 kg)	PHYSIOLOGIC PURPOSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALE
Nucleoside Analog Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitors (NRTIs)			
Abacavir (Ziagen) 300 mg two times daily or 600 mg once daily	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV	Ensure HLA B5701 allele testing is performed and results are known before the drug is first administered. Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food.	People who have a specific variation of this gene allele have a high risk for hypersensitivity reactions to this drug. Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen.
Tenofovir (Viread) 300 mg once daily	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Check serum phosphate.	Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen.
Emtricitabine (Emtriva) 200 mg once daily Very similar in structure and function to lamivudine	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV Has activity against hepatitis B, useful in Hep B and HIV co-infection	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Check kidney function tests and GFR and report abnormal findings.	Hypophosphatemia is a common side effect of this drug. Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. Drug dose needs to be adjusted (lower) when kidney function is reduced.
Lamivudine (Epivir) 150 mg twice daily or 300 mg once daily Very similar in structure and function to emtricitabine	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV Has activity against hepatitis B, useful in Hep B and HIV co-infection	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Check kidney function tests and GFR and report abnormal findings.	Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. Drug dose needs to be adjusted (lower) when kidney function is reduced.
Stavudine (Zerit) 40 mg twice daily	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Monitor for abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting. Monitor for numbness and tingling in toes/feet. Monitor for body shape changes.	Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. Pancreatitis is a common side effect of this drug. Peripheral neuropathy is a common side effect of this drug. Lipodystrophy is a common side effect of this drug.
Didanosine (Videx EC) 400 mg once daily 250 mg once daily if used with tenofovir	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV	Instruct patients to take this drug 30 min before meals or 2 hours after meals. Monitor for abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting. Monitor for numbness and tingling in toes/feet. Monitor for body shape changes.	Gastric acid destroys the drug's activity.
Zidovudine (Retrovir) 300 mg twice daily	Generates bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks for HIV	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Monitor CBC and check for headache, fatigue, muscle aches.	Pancreatitis is a common side effect of this drug. Peripheral neuropathy is a common side effect of this drug. Lipodystrophy is a common side effect of this drug. Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. Marrow suppression is a common side effect of this drug and increases the risk for infection.
Non-Nucleoside Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor (NNRTI) Class			
Efavirenz (Sustiva) 600 mg once daily	Inhibits reverse transcriptase	Check all co-administered drugs. Monitor for headache, nightmares, vertigo. Assess for rash, fever. Check liver function tests. Determine whether female patients are pregnant. Instruct patients to take the drug on an empty stomach, at bedtime.	This drug interacts with many other drugs, increasing the risk for serious drug side effects. These side effects are common but often resolve within 2 weeks. The drug can cause allergic reactions. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. The drug is pregnancy category D and can induce birth defects. Food increases absorption/side effects, CNS effects less pronounced if sleeping.

Nevirapine (Viramune) 200 mg once daily for 2 weeks, then twice daily	Inhibits reverse transcriptase	Check all co-administered drugs. Assess for rash, fever. Check liver function tests. Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food.	This drug interacts with many other drugs, increasing the risk for serious drug side effects. The drug can cause allergic reactions. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen.
Protease Inhibitor (PI) Class Atazanavir (Reyataz) 300 mg once daily; if the patient has been on a HAART regimen, ritonavir 100 mg daily is needed to maximize the drug's effect. 400 mg of atazanavir may be prescribed once daily if the patient has not previously been taking a HAART regimen	Inhibits HIV protease	Check liver function tests. Check blood glucose. Instruct patients to take this drug with food. Monitor ECG. Assess for body shape changes.	The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in bilirubin. This drug can cause hyperglycemia. Food increases absorption of the drug. The drug can prolong PR interval. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Darunavir (Prezista) 600 mg twice daily if the patient has been on a HAART regimen, ritonavir 100 mg daily is needed to maximize the drug's effect. 800 mg of darunavir once daily is prescribed along with 100 mg of ritonavir once daily if the patient has not previously been taking a HAART regimen	Inhibits HIV protease	Check liver function tests. Check for skin rash. Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, headache. Assess for body shape changes.	The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. Skin rash is a common side effect of this drug and can be severe. These manifestations are common side effects of darunavir. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Fosamprenavir (Lexiva) 700 mg twice daily if the patient has been on a HAART regimen, ritonavir 100 mg daily is needed to maximize the drug's effect. 1400 mg twice daily if the patient has not previously been taking a HAART regimen	Inhibits HIV protease	Check liver function tests. Assess for body shape changes.	The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Indinavir (Crixivan) 800 mg every 8 hours or 800 mg twice daily along with 100 mg of ritonavir twice daily	Inhibits HIV protease	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Assess for body shape changes. Monitor for back pain, dysuria, hematuria. Check liver function tests. Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food. Check for nausea, vomiting, diarrhea. Check liver function tests. Check lipids. Assess for body shape changes. Instruct the patient to take this drug with food. Check for diarrhea. Check liver function tests. Check blood glucose. Assess for body shape changes.	Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug. Kidney stones are common. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in bilirubin. Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen. These manifestations are common side effects of lopinavir. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases and bilirubin. Elevated triglycerides common. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug. Food increases tolerability and absorption. Diarrhea is a common side effect of this drug. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. This drug can elevate blood glucose levels. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Lopinavir/ritonavir (Kaletra) 200 mg/50 mg coformulated tablets 2 tablets twice daily	Inhibits HIV protease		
Nelfinavir (Viracept) 1250 mg twice daily or 750 mg three times daily	Inhibits HIV protease		

Continued

CHART 21-9 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

HIV Infection—cont'd

DRUG/ USUAL DOSE (FOR ADULTS WEIGHING >60 kg)	PHYSIOLOGIC PURPOSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALE
Saquinavir (Invirase) 1000 mg twice daily This drug requires co-administration with 100 mg of zidovudine to maximize drug effectiveness	Inhibits HIV protease	Instruct the patient to take this drug with food. Check for nausea, vomiting, diarrhea. Check liver function tests. Check lipids, glucose. Assess for body shape changes.	Food increases tolerability and absorption. Common side effects. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases. Elevated cholesterol, glucose. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Tipranavir (Aptivus) 500 mg twice daily This drug requires co-administration with 100 mg of zidovudine to maximize drug effectiveness	Inhibits HIV protease	Instruct patients to take this drug with food. Check liver function tests. Check for skin rashes. Check lipids, glucose. Assess for body shape changes.	Food increases tolerability and drug absorption. The drug is liver toxic and can cause elevations in transaminases and other liver enzymes. Skin rash is a common side effect of this drug and can be severe. The drug can elevate cholesterol levels and glucose levels. Fat redistribution is a common side effect of this drug.
Integrase Inhibitors			
Raltegravir (Isentress) 400 mg twice daily	Inhibits HIV integrase	Instruct the patient that this drug may be taken with or without food.	Fewer dietary restrictions increase adherence to drug regimen.
Fusion Inhibitors			
Enfuvirtide (Fuzeon) 90 mg subcutaneously twice daily	Prevents cellular fusion between HIV and T-cell	Reconstitute with sterile water only, may be stored after reconstitution in refrigerator if used within 24 hours. Monitor skin for erythema, nodules at injection site.	Drug is less effective if not mixed and stored according to manufacturer's directions. Local injection reactions are common.
Entry Inhibitor/CCR5 Antagonist			
Maraviroc (Selzentry) 150 mg twice daily	Blocks CCR5 co-receptor	Monitor for cough, dizziness, rash, fever.	Common side effects.
Combination Products (Co-formulation of drugs decreases pill burden and increases drug adherence)			
Combivir (lamivudine 150 mg + zidovudine 300 mg) One tablet twice daily	Combination of two different NRTIs that generate bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks	Follow the same nursing interventions as for each drug alone.	Combination drugs have the same side effects as each drug individually.
Trizivir (lamivudine 150 mg + zidovudine 300 mg + abacavir 300 mg) One tablet once daily	Combination of three different NRTIs that generate bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks	Follow the same nursing interventions as for each drug alone.	Combination drugs have the same side effects as each drug individually.
Epzicom (lamivudine 300 mg + abacavir 600 mg) One tablet once daily	Combination of two different NRTIs that generate bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks	Follow the same nursing interventions as for each drug alone.	Combination drugs have the same side effects as each drug individually.
Truvada (emtricitabine 200 mg + tenofovir 300 mg) One tablet once daily	Combination of two different NRTIs that generate bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks	Follow the same nursing interventions as for each drug alone.	Combination drugs have the same side effects as each drug individually.
Atripla (emtricitabine 200 mg + tenofovir 300 mg + efavirenz 600 mg) One tablet once daily	Combination of two different NRTIs that generate bad nucleoside/nucleotide building blocks	Follow the same nursing interventions as for each drug alone.	Combination drugs have the same side effects as each drug individually.

CBC, Complete blood count; CNS, central nervous system; ECG, electrocardiogram; GFR, glomerular filtration rate.

needed to enter the cell. So, this class of drug prevents cellular infection with HIV. Because the drug specifically blocks only the *CCR5* receptor, testing with the *CCR5* Trofile Test is needed before drug therapy to determine whether a patient's viruses have this receptor. If it is not present and the virus uses the *CXCR4* receptor instead, the drug is ineffective at preventing HIV entry.

Integrase inhibitors are the newest type of anti-HIV drug. The major drug in this category is raltegravir (Isentress). It works to prevent infection by inhibiting the HIV enzyme—*integrase*, which the virus brought with it to insert the viral DNA into the host cell's human DNA. Without this action, viral proteins are not made and viral replication is inhibited.

As indicated in Chart 21-9, many HIV drugs are formulated as combination tablets and capsules, often having two or three HIV-active drugs in a single preparation. This practice reduces the number of individual drugs a patient must take daily, increases drug adherence, and helps ensure the patient is receiving the proper drug at the correct dosage.

Immune Enhancement. Research is being conducted to evaluate treatments that may enhance or replenish the immune system of patients with AIDS. Some of these methods include stem cell transplantation, lymphocyte transfusion, and infusions of lymphokines (particularly interleukin-2) and other biological response modifiers (especially white blood cell colony-stimulating factors and red blood cell growth factors).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Metabolic differences associated with aging reduce drug deactivation and slow drug elimination in older adults. Retention of active drug can lead to a more rapid buildup to toxic levels and increase the likelihood of adverse effects of HAART drugs. Thus many older adults require dosage adjustments to reduce the risk for serious side effects. Complications of HAART among older adults include heart disease, kidney disease, liver disease, and other comorbidities that often require additional types of drug therapy (Vance, 2010).

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Complementary therapies are often used by people with HIV/AIDS. Such therapies include vitamins, shark cartilage, and botanical products available at health food stores. The usefulness of these products has yet to be established through well-controlled clinical trials. In addition, some botanicals alter the effects of prescription drugs. Ask the patient which botanicals he or she is using, and check with the pharmacist to determine known drug interactions with HAART.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The client who is prescribed highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) is flying to a wedding and will be gone 1 day. He asks if he can skip his drugs that day so that he doesn't have to show them all at the airport. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Yes, just 1 day off your drugs will not make any difference."
- "Yes, as long as you avoid direct contact with anyone who is ill."
- "No, even 1 day off the drugs can help the virus become drug resistant."
- "No, even 1 day off the drugs increases the chances that you can spread the disease."

Enhancing Oxygenation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to maintain adequate oxygenation and perfusion and to have minimal dyspnea. Indicators include:

- Rate and depth of respiration within the normal range
- Pulse oximetry within the normal range
- Absence of cyanosis or pallor and abnormal breath sounds

Interventions. The nurse or respiratory therapist uses drug therapy, respiratory support and maintenance, comfort, and rest.

Drug therapy is a mainstay for gas exchange problems resulting from infection. Appropriate drug therapy is started after an infectious or other cause for respiratory difficulty is identified. A common respiratory infection among people with HIV disease or AIDS is *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia (PCP) (formerly known as *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia). The treatment of choice for PCP is trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (Apo-Sulfatrim, Bactrim, Cotrim, Septra). Many patients with AIDS have adverse reactions to this drug, including nausea, vomiting, hyponatremia, rashes, fever, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, and hepatitis.

Pentamidine isethionate (Pentacarinat, Pentam), usually given IV or IM, is also used to treat PCP. Aerosolized pentamidine isethionate is used as prophylaxis for patients with CD4+ T-cell counts below 200, as well as for those who have already had PCP.

Other drug therapies include bronchodilators to improve airflow, as well as dapsone (Avlosulfon) and atovaquone (Mepron), which can be used as therapy for existing PCP or as prophylaxis. For moderate to severe PCP, steroids may be used to reduce the inflammation.

Respiratory support and maintenance are important to maintain respiratory function and avoid complications. Assess the respiratory rate, rhythm, and depth, breath sounds, and vital signs and monitor for cyanosis at least every 8 hours. Apply oxygen and humidify the room as prescribed. Also monitor mechanical ventilation, perform suctioning and chest physical therapy as needed, and evaluate blood gas results.

Comfort can help improve gas exchange. Assess the patient's comfort. The patient with difficulty breathing may be more comfortable with the head of the bed elevated. Pace activities to reduce shortness of breath and fatigue. Provide psychological support during periods of breathing difficulty.

Rest and activity changes are needed when gas exchange is impaired. Most patients with HIV/AIDS have fatigue, especially when respiratory problems also are present. Certain treatments worsen fatigue. Consult with the patient to pace activities to conserve energy. Guide the patient in active and

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which activity is most appropriate for the nurse to eliminate or modify to prevent excessive fatigue in the client with reduced oxygenation as a result of respiratory infections and AIDS?

- Mouth care
- Meal times
- Complete bath
- Dressing changes

passive range-of-motion (ROM) exercises. Schedule non-time-critical activities, such as bathing, so that he or she is not fatigued at mealtime.

Managing Pain

The patient with severe HIV disease or AIDS often has pain from many causes. Pain can result from enlarged organs stretching the viscera or compressing nerves. Tumor invasion of bone and other tissues can cause pain, as can nerve compression from swollen lymph nodes. Many patients with AIDS have peripheral neuropathy-induced pain from the disease or drug therapies. Many have generalized joint and muscle pain.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to achieve an acceptable level of comfort and pain reduction. Indicators include:

- Reporting that pain is controlled to a level that is acceptable to him or her
- Absence of indicators of acute pain (increased heart rate and blood pressure)
- Absence of facial grimacing, teeth clenching
- Willingness to move and participate in self-care

Interventions. Drug therapy and other approaches are used together to manage pain in the patient with HIV/AIDS, depending on the cause of the pain.

Comfort measures include the use of pressure-relieving mattress pads, warm baths or other forms of hydrotherapy, massage, and applying heat or cold to painful areas to help reduce pain levels, with or without drug therapy. Take care when moving or assisting the patient. Use lift sheets to avoid pulling or grasping the patient with joint pain. The patient may be thin and have poor circulation, contributing to pain and discomfort. Help him or her change positions often.

Drug therapy with different classes of drugs is used to manage pain from different causes. For arthralgia and myalgia, NSAIDs may reduce inflammation and increase comfort without inducing drowsiness. The controlled substance pregabalin (Lyrica) may provide some relief from muscle and joint pain. The neuropathic pain of peripheral neuropathy may respond best to tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline (Elavil) or to anticonvulsant drugs such as gabapentin (Neurontin), phenytoin (Dilantin), or carbamazepine (Tegretol), although these drugs often interact with antiretroviral drugs. Drugs for neuropathic pain may take from several days to weeks before a full effect is seen. During this time, opioids may be needed to control pain.

When opioids are used, assess the patient for pain intensity and quality. Mild to moderate pain is treated with weaker opioids such as oxycodone or codeine. More intense pain is treated with stronger opioids such as morphine, hydromorphone (Dilaudid), or fentanyl transdermal (Duragesic). Combinations of weak and strong opioids along with non-opioid drugs may be used to provide the best sustained pain relief and allow the patient to participate in activities to the extent that he or she wishes.

Complementary and alternative therapies are used by many patients with pain from HIV/AIDS. These include guided imagery, distraction, progressive relaxation, body-talk, and biofeedback to help control pain. Such therapies can be used with more traditional and pharmacologic measures to improve comfort.

Enhancing Nutrition

Many patients with AIDS have difficulty maintaining their weight and nutritional status. This problem may be caused by fatigue, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, difficult or painful swallowing, diarrhea, intestinal malabsorption, or wasting syndrome.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to maintain optimal weight through adequate nutrition and hydration. Indicators include:

- Selecting foods high in calories and protein
- Maintaining current weight or gaining weight
- Drinking at least 2 to 3 L of fluids per day
- Maintaining blood levels of ferritin, albumin, prealbumin, and hemoglobin within normal ranges

Interventions. Because there are many factors for poor nutrition in AIDS, diagnostic procedures are needed to determine the cause. Once the cause is determined, appropriate therapy is initiated. For example, in the patient who has candidal esophagitis, nutrition is affected because of swallowing difficulties.

Drug therapy can include ketoconazole (Nizoral) or fluconazole (Diflucan) orally, or IV amphotericin B (Fungizone). Administer the drug as prescribed, and monitor for side effects such as nausea and vomiting, which also affect nutrition. Provide mouth care and ice chips, and keep unpleasant odors out of the patient's environment. Antiemetics are used as needed.

Nutrition therapy includes monitoring weight, intake and output, and calorie count. Assess food preferences and any dietary cultural or religious practices. Teach the patient about a high-calorie, high-protein, nutritionally sound diet. Encourage him or her to avoid dietary fat, because fat intolerance often occurs as a result of the disease and as a side effect of some antiretroviral medications. Collaborate with the registered dietitian to provide an appropriate diet, including small, frequent meals (better tolerated than large meals). Supplemental vitamins and fluids are indicated in some cases. For the patient who cannot achieve adequate nutrition through food, tube feedings or total parenteral nutrition may be needed.

Mouth care performed frequently can improve appetite. When this nursing action is delegated to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), instruct them to offer the patient rinses of sodium bicarbonate with sterile water or normal saline every 2 hours or several times a day. Explain to UAP why the patient should use a soft toothbrush and the need to drink plenty of fluids. For oral pain, general analgesics or oral anesthetic gels and solutions may be needed.

Complementary and alternative therapies to promote healing of mouth sores can help improve nutritional intake. Some patients have found relief from oral thrush with the use of lemon juice and lemongrass infusions. This practice is more common in less affluent countries where antifungal drugs may not be available or the cost is prohibitive (Wright et al., 2009).

Minimizing Diarrhea

Patients with AIDS often suffer from diarrhea. Sometimes an infectious cause (e.g., *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium* or amoeba) can be determined and treated, or the cause is determined but no effective therapy is available. Many patients are lactose intolerant, and HIV disease worsens the condition. Diarrhea may occur as a side effect of therapy with protease inhibitors.

In some cases, patients with AIDS have diarrhea and no cause can be identified.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to have decreased diarrhea; to maintain fluid, electrolyte, and nutritional status; and to reduce incontinence. Indicators include:

- Has a stool amount that is appropriate for the diet
- Expels stools that are formed and soft
- Recognizes urge to defecate
- Maintains control of stool passage

Interventions. For most patients with AIDS and diarrhea, symptom management is all that is available. Antidiarrheals, such as diphenoxylate hydrochloride (Diarsed , Lomotil) or loperamide (Imodium), given on a regular schedule, provide some relief. Consult with the dietitian and offer dietary counseling about appropriate foods. Recommended dietary changes include less roughage; less fatty, spicy, and sweet food; and no alcohol or caffeine. Some patients obtain relief when they eliminate dairy products from the diet or eat smaller amounts of food more often and drink plenty of fluids, especially between meals.

Assess the perineal skin of the patient with diarrhea every 8 to 12 hours for a change in skin integrity. Provide him or her with a bedside commode or a bedpan if needed. Some patients cannot reach the bathroom in time because of immobility or anal sphincter weakness and others because of the urgency to defecate. Teach UAP performing this care to provide the patient with privacy, support, and understanding. Explain the need to keep the patient's perineal area clean and dry. Instruct UAP to report any skin changes in the perineal area, including persistent redness, rashes, blisters, or open areas. Collaborate with a wound care specialist for more interventions to manage anal excoriation and discomfort.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which snack choice does the nurse recommend to the client with AIDS to help improve nutritional status?

- A. An ice cream sandwich
- B. Two soft-cooked eggs
- C. A wand of cotton candy
- D. A serving of French fried potatoes

Restoring Skin Integrity

The most common skin lesion in AIDS is Kaposi's sarcoma (KS). Lesions may be localized or widespread. Large lesions can cause pain and restrict movement. They can impede circulation, causing open, weeping, painful lesions. Another cause of impaired skin integrity is infection with herpes simplex virus (HSV) or varicella zoster virus (VZV) (shingles).

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to have healing of any existing lesions and avoid increased skin breakdown or secondary infection. Indicators include:

- Absence of new lesions or open skin areas
- Existing lesions become smaller in diameter
- Absence of pus, induration, or redness in, from, or around skin lesions

Interventions. Often, KS responds well to effective antiretroviral drug therapy. With time and HAART, many lesions disappear and do not reappear as long as the patient remains on HAART. For lesions that do not respond to HAART, KS

can be treated with local radiation, intralesional or systemic chemotherapy, cryotherapy, or topical retinoids. Systemic therapy is used in patients with rapidly progressive disease or with major involvement of the intestinal tract, lungs, or other organs. Therapies include chemotherapy (single agent or combination), interferon-alpha, and interferon-alpha plus zidovudine.

Treatment of painful KS lesions includes analgesics and comfort measures. Keep open, weeping KS lesions clean and dressed to reduce the risk for secondary infection. Many patients with skin KS are concerned about their appearance and the risk for being identified as HIV positive. Makeup (if lesions are not open), long-sleeved shirts, and hats may help maintain a normal appearance.

For the patient with an HSV abscess, provide good skin care directly or delegate this care to UAP. Stress the importance of keeping the area clean and dry. Teach UAP to clean abscesses at least once per shift with normal saline and allow them to air-dry. This infection is painful and requires analgesics, assistance with position, and other comfort measures. Modified Burow's solution (Domeboro) soaks promote healing for some patients. HSV infection is treated with acyclovir (Zovirax) or valacyclovir (Valtrex).

Minimizing Confusion

Neurologic changes with disturbed thought processes are major areas of concern for patients with HIV infection or AIDS. These changes may be due to psychological stressors accompanying the disease or to organic disorders caused by opportunistic infections, cancer, or HIV encephalitis.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to show improved mental status. Indicators include that the patient demonstrates these behaviors:

- Identifies self and significant others
- Identifies correct month and year
- Recalls immediate, recent, and remote information accurately

Interventions. Patients with AIDS suffer from enormous loss and psychological stress, which complicates the assessment of any changes in behavior or affect. Assess baseline neurologic and mental status by using neurologic assessment tools (see Chapter 43) to compare any changes. Evaluate the patient for subtle changes in memory, ability to concentrate, affect, and behavior. It is important to determine whether the cause of the neurologic changes is treatable.

Reorient the confused patient to person, time, and place as needed. Coordinate with all members of the health care team to ensure that reorientation methods are performed by everyone who interacts with the patient. Remind the patient of your identity and explain what is to be done at any given time. Give simple directions; use short, uncomplicated sentences; explain activities in simple language; and involve him or her in planning the daily schedule. Ask relatives or significant others to bring in familiar items from home. Arrange all items in the patient's environment in the same location as at home. Using calendars, clocks, and radios and putting the bed close to a window also may help keep the patient oriented.

Drug therapy is used for different conditions that can alter thought processes in the person with AIDS. Psychotropic drugs are used to treat ongoing behavioral problems or emotional disorders. Antidepressants and anxiolytics may be prescribed.

Safety measures are crucial to the well-being of the neurologically impaired patient with AIDS. He or she may not be aware of activities or surroundings and may need help with bathing, dressing, eating, ambulating, and other ADLs. Make the environment, whether a hospital room or long-term care facility, safe and comfortable.

Some patients with AIDS have seizures. Institute seizure precautions, including keeping siderails in the up position and having oxygen and suctioning equipment available. Anticonvulsants may be added to the drug therapy.

Assess the patient with neurologic manifestations for increased intracranial pressure (ICP). If not recognized and managed early, ICP can lead to permanent brain damage and death. Increased ICP in patients with HIV disease is most commonly managed with corticosteroids.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Document and report immediately any changes in level of consciousness (one of the earliest signs of increased ICP), vital signs, pupil size or reactivity, or limb strength to the physician for appropriate intervention.

Support the family and friends of the patient who has neurologic impairment. There is great trauma in seeing a loved one unable to care for himself or herself or showing childlike behavior. Answer questions honestly and sensitively. Teach UAP, the family, and significant others how to reorient the patient. Encourage them to continue to provide the patient with news of family happenings or current events. Coordinate with the social worker to identify community resources for the patient and family.

Supporting Self-Esteem

The patient with AIDS may have changes in self-esteem and self-concept. Contributing to this are dramatic changes in appearance that alter the person's body image. Many patients also have abrupt, significant changes in their relationships with others and in day-to-day activities, including a job or other productive activities. All changes can disrupt the self-concept.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to identify his or her positive aspects and accept himself or herself. Indicators include that he or she often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Maintains eye contact
- Accepts compliments from others
- Expresses feelings of self-worth

Interventions. Provide a climate of acceptance for patients with AIDS by promoting a trusting relationship. Help them express feelings and identify positive aspects of themselves. Allow for privacy, but do not avoid or isolate the patient. Encourage self-care, independence, control, and decision making by helping him or her set short-term, attainable goals and offering praise when goals are achieved.

Guided imagery is a form of complementary therapy used by many patients to increase their sense of control and enhance self-esteem. Imagery can focus on helping them cope with distressing side effects or painful procedures. Other uses include picturing battle scenes in which the virus is killed by immune system cells.

Maintaining Social Contact

Many patients with AIDS face discrimination, rejection, and isolation. Friends or health care workers sometimes avoid or refuse to have anything to do with them. Misunderstanding and fear lead to inappropriate isolation of the patient with AIDS.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to identify behaviors that cause social isolation and demonstrate behaviors that reduce social isolation. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Interacts with close friends and family members
- Cooperates with others
- Uses assertive behaviors as appropriate

Interventions. Interventions for social isolation focus on promoting interactions and on education to reduce fear of AIDS transmission.

Promote patient interaction first by establishing a therapeutic nurse-patient relationship, and do not isolate the patient. Spend time with him or her, even when not performing a procedure or assessment, just to be present. Model this behavior for UAP, and encourage them to spend extra time with the patient. Show understanding and concern while helping the patient find ways to reduce feelings of rejection and isolation. Reduce barriers to social contact. Assess his or her social support resources. Teach family and significant others about HIV transmission and the use of Standard Precautions to reduce anxiety and increase contact with the patient (see [Chapter 25](#)).

Encourage the patient to state feelings about self, coping skills, and a sense of control over the situation. Help him or her identify support systems, including those already in place and those that need to be arranged.

Teaching about HIV transmission is the most important aspect for prevention of HIV. All people, regardless of age, gender, ethnicity, or sexual orientation, are susceptible to HIV infection. HIV infection is preventable because of the mode of viral transmission and the fragile nature of the virus. (See discussion on pp. 361-364 in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section.)

Community-Based Care

HIV infection is now considered a manageable chronic disease (Kirton, 2011). The usual course of illness is one of intermittent acute infections and periods of relative wellness over months or years. This period is often followed by chronic, progressive debilitation. Because of the cyclic nature of HIV disease and AIDS, the patient often spends long periods at home between hospital admissions or clinic visits. In some instances, especially as the illness becomes more severe, he or she may need referral to a long-term care facility, home care agency, or hospice. In collaboration with the social worker, dietitian, and other available resources, work with patients to plan what will be needed and how they will manage at home with self-care and ADLs.

Home Care Management

Before the patient is discharged to home, assess his or her status and ability to perform self-care activities. Some patients do not need home care but do need to maintain a link with primary care providers. Home care can range from help with ADLs for those with weakness, debility, or limited function

CHART 21-10 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Person with AIDS

Assess cardiovascular and respiratory status:

- Vital signs
- Presence of acute chest pain or dyspnea
- Presence of cough
- Presence of fever
- Activity tolerance

Assess nutritional status:

- Food intake
- Weight loss or gain
- General condition of skin
- Financial resources

Assess neurologic status:

- Cognitive changes
- Motor changes
- Sensory disturbances

Assess gastrointestinal status:

- Mouth and oropharynx
- Presence of dysphagia
- Presence of abdominal pain
- Presence of nausea, vomiting, diarrhea

Assess psychological status:

- Presence of anxiety
- Presence of depression

Assess activity and rest:

- Activities of daily living (ADLs)
- Mobility and ambulation
- Fatigue
- Sleep pattern
- Presence of pain

Assess home environment:

- Safety hazards
- Structural barriers affecting functional ability

Assess patient's and caregiver's adherence and understanding of illness and treatment, including:

- Manifestations to report to nurse
- Medication schedule and side or toxic effects

Assess patient's and caregiver's coping skills.

to around-the-clock nursing care, drugs, and nutritional support for severely or terminally ill patients. Assess available resources, including family members and significant others willing and able to be caregivers. Help the family make arrangements for outside caregivers or respite care, if needed. Patients may need referrals or help in planning housing, finances, insurance, legal services, funeral arrangements, and spiritual counseling. Coordinate with the case manager to ensure these issues are addressed.

Home care aides may be involved in daily or weekly care of the patient with AIDS in the home. Usually a home care nurse makes an initial visit for assessment purposes, and care is followed up by home care aides. If the patient becomes more debilitated, a nurse re-assesses his or her status. [Chart 21-10](#) lists focused assessment areas for the patient with AIDS at home.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teaching the patient, family, and friends is a high priority when preparing for discharge. Instruct about modes of transmission and preventive behaviors (e.g., guidelines for safer sex; not sharing toothbrushes, razors, and other potentially blood-contaminated articles). Caregivers also need instruction about best practices for infection control precautions to

CHART 21-11 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Infection Control for Home Care of the Person with AIDS**Direct Care**

- Follow Standard Precautions and good handwashing techniques.
- Do not share razors or toothbrushes.

Housekeeping

- Wipe up feces, vomitus, sputum, urine, or blood or other body fluids and the area with soap and water. Dispose of solid wastes and solutions used for cleaning by flushing them down the toilet. Disinfect the area by wiping with a 1:10 solution of household bleach (1 part bleach to 10 parts water). Wear gloves during cleaning.
- Soak rags, mops, and sponges used for cleaning in a 1:10 bleach solution for 5 minutes to disinfect them.
- Wash dishes and eating utensils in hot water and dishwashing soap or detergent.
- Clean bathroom surfaces with regular household cleaners, and then disinfect them with a 1:10 solution of household bleach.

Laundry

- Rinse clothes, towels, and bedclothes if they become soiled with feces, vomitus, sputum, urine, or blood. Then dispose of the soiled water by flushing it down the toilet. Launder these clothes with hot water and detergent with 1 cup of bleach added per load of laundry.
- Keep soiled clothes in a plastic bag.

Waste Disposal

- Dispose of needles and other "sharps" in a labeled puncture-proof container such as a coffee can with a lid, using Standard Precautions, to avoid needle stick injuries. Decontaminate full containers by adding a 1:10 bleach solution. Then seal the container with tape and place it in a paper bag. Dispose of the container in the regular trash.
- Remove solid waste from contaminated trash (e.g., paper towels or tissues, dressings, disposable incontinence pads, disposable gloves); then flush the solid waste down the toilet. Place the contaminated trash items in tied plastic bags, and dispose of them in the regular trash.

prevent transmission while caring for the patient in the home ([Chart 21-11](#)), nursing techniques to use in the home, and coping or support strategies.

Teach the patient, family, and friends how to protect the patient from infection, how to identify the presence of infections, and what to do if these appear. Teach about the use of self-care strategies, such as good hygiene, balanced rest and exercise, skin care, mouth care, and safe administration and potential side effects of all prescribed drugs. During diet teaching, stress good nutrition; the need to avoid raw or rare fish, fowl, or meat; thorough washing of fruits and vegetables; and proper food refrigeration.

Teach the patient to avoid large crowds, especially in enclosed areas, not to travel to countries with poor sanitation, and to avoid cleaning pet litter boxes. [Chart 21-7](#) lists more strategies to teach the patient and family how to avoid infections.

Psychosocial Preparation

Patients with AIDS often fear social stigma and rejection. Be aware that this fear is realistic, and help identify ways to avoid

problems, as well as identify coping strategies for difficult situations. Support family members and friends in efforts to help the patient and provide protection from discrimination.

Encourage patients to continue as many usual activities as possible. Except when too ill or too weak, they can continue to work and participate in most social activities. Support them in their selection of friends and relatives with whom to discuss the diagnosis. Stress that sexual partners and care providers should be informed; beyond that, it is up to the patient. Some patients have severe depression or anxiety about the future. Almost all feel the burden of having a fatal disease widely considered unacceptable and feel compelled to maintain some secrecy about the illness. Referrals to community resources, mental health/behavioral health professionals, and support groups can help the patient verbalize fears and frustrations and cope with the illness.

Health Care Resources

In many cities, community groups exist to assist people with AIDS. Often composed of volunteers, they offer excellent services to the community. The types and number of services vary by agency and city, but many include HIV testing and counseling, clinic services, buddy systems, support groups, respite care, education and outreach, referral services, and even housing. Patients may also need referrals to other local resources, such as home care agencies, companies that provide home IV therapy, community mental health/behavioral health agencies, Meals on Wheels, transportation services, and others. In addition, educational materials and support groups are available through Internet access.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is a 62-year-old man with AIDS who is about to be discharged after having had PCP for the past 2 weeks. He works as a bank officer. His social and recreational activities include playing cards with friends every weekend, tutoring grade school students in math, reading to older adult shut-ins, and serving meals at a soup kitchen. His place of employment has offered to let him work part-time to keep him from becoming too fatigued. Although he is glad about this, he tells you that his greatest joy is helping others. With tears in his eyes he says he will miss participating in his usual activities but knows that it is best to keep other people safe.

1. Is his concern for others realistic? Why or why not?
2. Explain which activities may pose a health risk for others, and explain how this risk could be reduced by modification.
3. Which activities pose a health risk to him?
4. Explain what modifications could be made to reduce such risks.
5. What specifically can you do to support him at this time?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

The overall outcomes for care of patients with AIDS are to maintain the highest possible level of function for as long as possible, reduce infections, and maintain quality of life and dignity during the course of progressive illness. Evaluate the care of the patient with AIDS on the basis of the identified priority problems. Expected outcomes include that he or she should:

- Adhere to the prescribed drug therapy regimen more than 95% of the time
- Practice safer sex techniques all of the time

- Remain free from opportunistic infections
- Have adequate respiratory function
- Achieve an acceptable level of physical comfort
- Attain adequate weight and nutritional and fluid status
- Maintain skin integrity
- Remain oriented
- Maintain self-esteem
- Maintain a support system and involvement with others

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

THERAPY-INDUCED IMMUNE DEFICIENCIES

Some acquired secondary immune deficiencies may be related to other conditions that cause the loss of immunoglobulins or destruction of lymphocytes. The most common cause of secondary immune deficiency is the use of drugs and other treatment modalities for various diseases. Sometimes immunosuppression is a desired effect, as in organ transplantation or for the treatment of autoimmune disorders. Often immunosuppression is an undesirable, complicating side effect of therapy that is used for another intent, such as cancer chemotherapy, and may even require changing the therapeutic regimen. Various therapies cause different types and degrees of immunosuppression. The challenge is to have maximum therapeutic effect without leaving the patient overly immunosuppressed and susceptible to serious complications.

Drug-Induced Immune Deficiencies

Several drug classes have major immunosuppressive effects. Some induce general immunosuppression; others are more specific and target one part of the immune system more than another.

Cytotoxic drugs are mostly those used in the treatment of cancer and autoimmune disorders. Most of these drugs interfere with all rapidly dividing cells. White blood cells (WBCs), including neutrophils, lymphocytes, and phagocytes, which are responsible for providing protection against infection, rapidly divide and are susceptible to this type of destruction. The result is a decrease in the number of these important cells, especially the neutrophils, greatly increasing the patient's risk for infection. Cytotoxic drugs interfere with the ability of lymphocytes to produce and release products such as lymphokines and antibodies, causing general immunosuppression. Most cytotoxic drugs are used for cancer and autoimmune disorders.

Corticosteroids are hormones used to treat many autoimmune diseases, neoplasms, and endocrine disorders. Corticosteroids have both anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive effects. They inhibit inflammation by stabilizing blood vessel membranes and decreasing permeability, blocking the movement of neutrophils and monocytes. These drugs disrupt the synthesis of arachidonic acid, the main precursor for a variety of inflammatory chemicals.

Corticosteroids keep T-cells in the bone marrow, reducing the number of circulating T-cells and resulting in lymphopenia and suppressed cell-mediated immunity. They also interfere with immunoglobulin G (IgG) production and reduce antibody-antigen binding. These drugs have many effects that

alter disease activity, as well as numerous side effects, including:

- Central nervous system changes, such as euphoria, insomnia, or psychosis
- Cardiovascular changes, such as edema and hypertension
- GI effects, such as gastric irritation, ulcers, and increased appetite (with weight gain)
- Other changes (e.g., hyperglycemia, muscle weakness, delayed wound healing, bone density loss, body fat redistribution)

Cyclosporine (Sandimmune, Neoral) is a specific immunosuppressant that selectively suppresses the helper/inducer T-cells by blocking their growth and development. Cyclosporine is used to prevent organ transplant rejection and graft-versus-host disease. This drug is occasionally used for disorders such as uveitis, rheumatoid arthritis, and other autoimmune disorders.

Disease-modifying immunosuppressive drugs represent a large group of newer biological response modifier agents that specifically slow the damage caused by a variety of autoimmune diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis and psoriasis. Examples include alefacept (Amevive), etanercept (Enbrel), infliximab (Remicade), and many others. Regardless of their specific action in reducing cell damage, they always decrease the general immune responses to some degree and increase the risk for infection, both newly acquired infections and dormant pre-existing infections. The health problems for which these drugs are most commonly prescribed are rheumatoid arthritis and psoriasis. Specific disease-modifying drugs are discussed in the chapters presenting the health problems for which they are prescribed.

Radiation-Induced Immune Deficiencies

Although chemotherapy is more immunosuppressive than radiotherapy, radiation also is toxic to dividing and resting cells. Lymphocytes and neutrophils are most sensitive to radiation. Some radiation exposures can induce profound lymphopenia and neutropenia, causing general immunosuppression. Whether immune deficiency occurs after radiation therapy depends on the location and dose of radiation. Exposure to the ilium and femur in adults can cause generalized immunosuppression because these bone areas are the primary blood cell-producing sites.

Management of the patient with treatment-induced immune deficiency aims to improve immune function and protect him or her from infection. The most severe immunosuppression occurs while he or she is receiving the immunosuppressive drugs or during radiation treatment. The severity and duration of the immunosuppression are related to the dosage of specific drugs. Although this impairment is usually temporary, with good recovery of immune and inflammatory responses within weeks or months of therapy completion, the potential for severe infections makes this problem a major treatment concern. Common infections occurring during this period include those of fungal origin, especially yeast, residual viral breakthrough, and a variety of bacteria.

Coordinate with patients and other health care professionals to provide safe care to those at risk for infection. [Chart 21-8](#) lists specific nursing actions to prevent infection among patients with drug-induced or any type of immunosuppression. Good handwashing by all health care personnel before

contact with the patient is essential for infection prevention. Health care professionals must use aseptic technique with any invasive procedure as required by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs).

In some instances, drug-induced immunosuppression can be reduced or avoided by giving hematopoietic growth factors to stimulate bone marrow production of immune system cells. Although not appropriate for all types of disorders, this treatment can reduce the patient's risk for infection during drug therapy. Growth factors are expensive, however, and the cost may not be covered by insurance. See [Chapters 24 and 42](#) for further discussion about this treatment.

Many patients remain at home during periods of immunosuppression. Teach the patient and family best practices to reduce the patient's risk for infection (see [Chart 21-7](#)).

For patients receiving long-term therapy with immunosuppressive drugs, drug dosages are altered according to their responses. The lowest dose that achieves the desired effect is given.

CONGENITAL (PRIMARY) IMMUNE DEFICIENCIES

Congenital, or primary, immune deficiencies are disorders in which the person is born with a defect in the development or function of one or more immune components. As a result, the immune response does not adequately protect him or her from infection, cancer, or other disease. Most congenital immune deficiencies are rare.

Some congenital immune deficiencies are inherited as an X-linked trait (e.g., Bruton's agammaglobulinemia or Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome), and some are recessive (e.g., ataxia-telangiectasia). For many congenital immune deficiencies, however, the genetic defect and inheritance pattern have not been clearly identified.

Congenital immune deficiencies are classified according to the type of immune function that is impaired: antibody mediated, cell mediated, or combined. Because cell-mediated and combined immune deficiencies are so severe that the affected person usually does not survive childhood, only antibody-mediated problems (seen in adults) are discussed in this chapter.

SELECTIVE IMMUNOGLOBULIN A DEFICIENCY

Selective immunoglobulin A (IgA) deficiency is the most common congenital immune deficiency seen in adults, occurring in 1 per 600 to 800 people (McCance et al., 2010). The patient may be asymptomatic or have chronic recurrent upper respiratory tract infections, skin infections, urinary tract infections, vaginal infections, and diarrhea. Selective IgA deficiency does not reduce life span. Because IgA is the major antibody in secretions, bacterial infections are seen mostly in the respiratory, GI, and urogenital tracts. Some patients with IgA deficiency also have malabsorption syndrome.

Treatment for IgA deficiency is limited to vigorous treatment of infections. Unlike other immunoglobulin deficiencies, IgA deficiency is not managed with exogenous immunoglobulin for two reasons. First, exogenous immunoglobulin contains very little IgA and would not help boost

IgA levels. Second, because patients with IgA deficiency make normal amounts of all other antibodies, they are at high risk for severe allergic reactions to exogenous immunoglobulin. If malabsorption syndrome occurs with IgA deficiency, the patient needs nutritional supplements (e.g., partial or total enteral or parenteral nutrition).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Never administer intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) to a patient who has selective immunoglobulin A deficiency.

BRUTON'S AGAMMAGLOBULINEMIA

A classic congenital antibody-mediated immune deficiency is Bruton's disease or Bruton's agammaglobulinemia. Boys born with this disease usually start to have problems at about 6 months of age, after maternal antibodies, transferred through the placenta, have been lost. The first manifestations are recurrent otitis, sinusitis, pneumonia, furunculosis, meningitis, and septicemia with organisms such as *Pneumococcus*, *Streptococcus*, and *Haemophilus*. Laboratory assessment shows an absence of circulating immunoglobulin (antibodies).

Except for patients with poliomyelitis, chronic echovirus infection, or a lymphoreticular cancer, the prognosis for

Bruton's disease is good if antibody replacement is started early. Immune serum globulin is regularly given to these patients, usually about 100 to 400 mg/kg IV every 3 to 4 weeks (Scherf & White-Reid, 2008). The dosage and schedule are individualized. Antibiotics are used for specific infections. Long-term prophylactic antibiotic therapy may also be used. Often, severe sinus and pulmonary problems later develop in some patients.

COMMON VARIABLE IMMUNE DEFICIENCY

The patient with common variable immune deficiency, or hypogammaglobulinemia, has recurrent bacterial infections similar to those seen with Bruton's disease. The patient has low levels of circulating antibodies (immunoglobulins) of all classes.

Hypogammaglobulinemia differs from Bruton's disease in that it usually first appears later (in adolescence or young adulthood), it occurs almost equally in men and women, and the infections are less severe. Common problems include giardiasis (intestinal infection with *Giardia lamblia*), pneumonia, sinusitis, gastric cancer, bronchiectasis, and gallstones.

Treatment is similar to that for Bruton's disease. Regular infusions of immune serum globulin and regular or intermittent use of antibiotics protect the affected person against infection.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use Standard Precautions for all patients regardless of age, gender, race or ethnicity, sexual orientation, education level, and profession.
- Ask patients about advance directives, and document the status.
- Use good handwashing techniques before providing any care to a patient who is immune deficient.
- Ensure the confidentiality of the patient's HIV status.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients at high risk for infection because of work environment or leisure activities.
- Urge all patients who are HIV positive to use condoms and other precautions during sexual intimacy even if the partner is also HIV positive.
- Teach patients with protein-calorie malnutrition what foods to include in the diet.
- Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Treat all patients, regardless of diagnosis, with dignity.
- Do not assume that any visitor or family member knows the patient's diagnosis.

- Pace your interview to match the learning needs and energy level of each patient.
- Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings about a change in health status or the diagnosis of an "incurable" disease.
- Refer patients newly diagnosed with HIV infection to local resources and support groups.
- Urge all patients who are HIV positive to inform their sexual partners of their HIV status.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.
- Allow patients who have a change in physical appearance to mourn this change.

Physiological Integrity

- Urge patients to adhere to their antiviral drug regimen.
- Pace nonurgent health care activities to reduce the risk for fatigue among patients with AIDS.
- Teach patients the expected side effects and possible adverse reactions to prescribed drugs.
- Assess the immune-deficient patient every shift for manifestations of infection. Document the assessment findings, and report any manifestation of infection immediately to the health care provider.
- Assess the skin integrity of the perianal region of a patient with AIDS-related diarrhea after every bowel movement.

Care of Patients with Immune Function Excess: Hypersensitivity (Allergy) and Autoimmunity

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Allergy

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Crackles

Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Wheezes

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Verify that known hypersensitivities of each patient are documented in the medical record and communicated to all members of the health care team.
2. Coordinate with other members of the health care team to ensure a safe environment for the patient with a latex allergy.
3. Implement measures to prevent anaphylaxis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Encourage all patients with a severe allergy or history of anaphylaxis to wear a medical alert bracelet or other identification.

5. Teach patients with allergies how to avoid known allergens and, if needed, how to self-inject epinephrine.

Physiological Integrity

6. Describe allergy testing techniques.
7. Compare the characteristics and manifestations of type I, type II, type III, type IV, and type V hypersensitivity reactions.
8. Prioritize care for the patient experiencing anaphylaxis.
9. Explain the rationale for types of drug therapy for autoimmune disorders.
10. Identify the manifestations of hypersensitivity reactions.
11. Prioritize care for the patient experiencing anaphylaxis.

Most of the time, the inflammatory and immune responses are helpful for *protection* against infection and cancer development. However, when inflammation or immune responses are prolonged or excessive or occur at an inappropriate time, normal tissues are damaged. These responses are “overreactions” to invaders and foreign antigens and are known as *hypersensitivity* or *allergic responses*. When these responses fail to recognize and protect self cells, normal body tissues are attacked and harmed. This type of reaction is known as an *autoimmune response*. Hypersensitivity and autoimmune responses can severely damage cells, tissues, and organs (Abbas et al., 2010).

HYPERSENSITIVITIES/ALLERGIES

Hypersensitivity or **allergy** is an increased or excessive response to the presence of an **antigen** (foreign protein or allergen) to which the patient usually has been previously exposed. These responses cause problems that range from uncomfortable (e.g., itchy, watery eyes or sneezing) to life threatening (e.g., allergic asthma, anaphylaxis, bronchoconstriction, or circulatory collapse). The terms *hypersensitivity* and *allergy* are used interchangeably. Hypersensitivity reactions are classified into five basic types, determined by differences in timing, pathophysiology, and clinical manifestations

TABLE 22-1 MECHANISMS AND EXAMPLES OF TYPES OF HYPERSENSITIVITIES

MECHANISM	CLINICAL EXAMPLES
Type I: Immediate Reaction of IgE antibody on mast cells with antigen, which results in release of mediators, especially histamine	Hay fever Allergic asthma Anaphylaxis
Type II: Cytotoxic Reaction of IgG with host cell membrane or antigen adsorbed by host cell membrane	Autoimmune hemolytic anemia Goodpasture's syndrome Myasthenia gravis
Type III: Immune Complex-Mediated Formation of immune complex of antigen and antibody, which deposits in walls of blood vessels and results in complement release and inflammation	Serum sickness Vasculitis Systemic lupus erythematosus Rheumatoid arthritis
Type IV: Delayed Reaction of sensitized T-cells with antigen and release of lymphokines, which activates macrophages and induces inflammation	Poison ivy Graft rejection Positive TB skin tests Sarcoidosis
Type V: Stimulated Reaction of autoantibodies with normal cell-surface receptors, which stimulates a continual overreaction of the target cell	Graves' disease B-cell gammopathies

IgE, Immunoglobulin E; IgG, immunoglobulin G; TB, tuberculosis.

(Table 22-1). Each type may occur alone or along with one or more other types (McCance et al., 2010).

TYPE I: RAPID HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS

Type I, or rapid, hypersensitivity, also called *atopic allergy*, is the most common type of hypersensitivity. This type results from the increased production of the immunoglobulin E (IgE) antibody class. Acute inflammation occurs when IgE responds to an antigen, such as pollen, and causes the release of histamine and other vasoactive amines from basophils, eosinophils, and mast cells. Examples of type I reactions include anaphylaxis and allergic asthma (discussed in Chapter 32); atopic allergies such as hay fever and allergic rhinitis; and allergies to specific allergens such as latex, bee venom, peanuts, iodine, shellfish, drugs, and thousands of other environmental antigens. Allergens can be contacted in these ways:

- Inhaled (plant pollens, fungal spores, animal dander, house dust, grass, ragweed)
- Ingested (foods, food additives, drugs)
- Injected (bee venom, drugs, biologic substances such as contrast dyes)
- Contacted (latex, pollens, foods, environmental proteins)

Some reactions occur just in the areas exposed to the antigen, such as the mucous membranes of the nose and eyes, causing

symptoms of rhinorrhea, sneezing, and itchy, red, watery eyes. Other reactions may involve all blood vessels and bronchiolar smooth muscle causing widespread blood vessel dilation, decreased cardiac output, and bronchoconstriction. This condition is known as **anaphylaxis**. When symptoms of anaphylaxis occur in a patient who has not been previously exposed to the allergen, the condition is known as an **anaphylactoid** reaction (Watson, 2010).

ALLERGIC RHINITIS

Pathophysiology

Allergic rhinitis, also called *hay fever*, is triggered by reactions to airborne allergens, especially plant pollens, molds, dust, animal dander, wool, food, and air pollutants. Some acute episodes are “seasonal,” tending to recur at the same time each year. They often coincide with the timing of large environmental exposure and last only a few weeks. Chronic rhinitis, or perennial rhinitis, tends to occur intermittently (with no predictable seasonal pattern) or continuously when a person is exposed to certain allergens. In “nonallergic rhinitis,” the same manifestations are present although no allergic cause is identified and the immune system does not appear to be involved.

On first exposure to an **allergen** (an antigen that provokes allergic sensitization), the person responds by making antigen-specific IgE. This antigen-specific IgE binds to the surface of basophils and mast cells (see Fig. 19-9 on p. 311 in Chapter 19). These cells have many granules containing vasoactive amines (including histamine) that are released when stimulated. Once the antigen-specific IgE is formed, the person is sensitized to that allergen.

In a type I allergic reaction, the already sensitized person is re-exposed to the provoking allergen. The resulting response has a primary phase and a secondary phase. In the primary phase, the allergen binds to two adjacent IgE molecules on the surface of a basophil or mast cell, which breaks or distorts the cell membrane. These changes cause the cell membrane to open and release the vasoactive amines within the granules into the tissue fluids (Fig. 22-1).

The most common vasoactive amine is *histamine*, a short-acting biochemical. Histamine causes capillary leak, nasal and conjunctival mucus secretion, and itching (pruritus), often occurring with erythema (redness). These symptoms last for about 10 minutes after histamine is first released. When the allergen is continuously present, mast cells continuously release histamine and other proteins, prolonging the response.

The secondary phase results from the release of other proteins. These other proteins draw more white blood cells to the area and stimulate a more general inflammatory reaction through actions of leukotriene and prostaglandins (other mediators of inflammation; see Chapter 19). This reaction occurs in addition to the allergic reaction stimulated in the primary phase. The resulting inflammation increases the clinical manifestations and is probably responsible for continuing the response.

The tendency to produce IgE in response to antigen exposure is based on genetic inheritance, but no single gene has been found to be responsible. Although allergic tendencies are inherited, specific allergies are *not* inherited (Nussbaum et al., 2007). For example, a mother who has

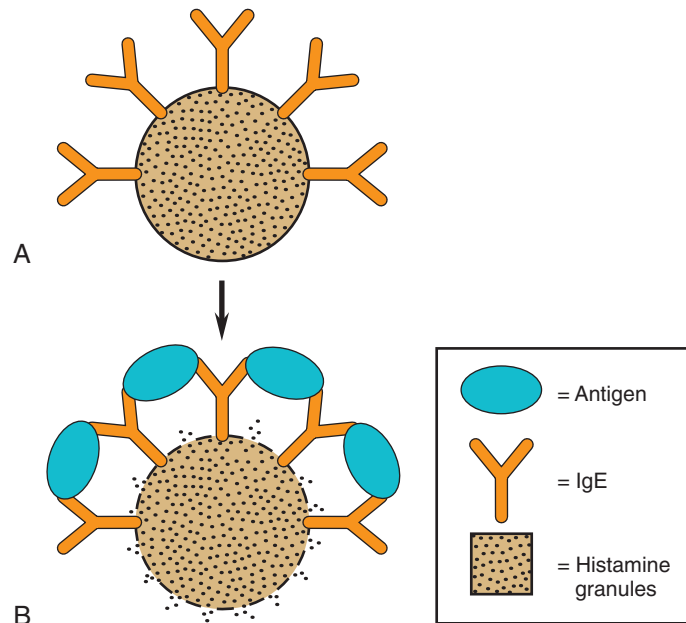


FIG. 22-1 Degranulation and histamine release. **A**, Mast cell with IgE. **B**, Mast cell degranulation and histamine release when allergen binds to IgE.

an allergy to penicillin but not to peanuts may have a child with an allergy to peanuts but not to penicillin. About 50% of patients with allergic rhinitis have one parent with type I allergies. Atopic allergies, including allergic rhinitis, affect about 10% of the population in North America (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

An accurate and detailed history helps identify possible allergic rhinitis. Ask the patient to describe the onset and duration of problems in relation to possible allergen exposure. Ask about work, school, and home environments and about possible exposures through hobbies, leisure time, or sports activities. Because a tendency toward type I allergic responses can be inherited, ask about the presence of allergies among close relatives.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with allergic rhinitis usually has **rhinorrhea** (a “runny” nose), a “stuffy” nose, and itchy, watery eyes. He or she may breathe through the mouth, and the voice has a nasal sound. Drainage from the nose is usually clear or white. The nasal mucosa appears swollen and pink. The patient may have a headache or feel pressure over the frontal and maxillary sinuses. Placing a penlight directly on the skin over the sinuses and observing for a glow (*transillumination*) usually shows reduced glow when rhinitis is present. If nasal secretions drip posteriorly, he or she may have a dry, scratchy throat and pharyngitis. The patient often feels as though he or she has a cold that has lasted longer than a week. Fever is rare unless an infection occurs with the rhinitis.

Laboratory Assessment

A complete blood count (CBC) and differential indicate the presence of an allergic response by an increase in eosinophils. A patient with severe seasonal allergic rhinitis may have an eosinophil count as high as 12% (normal being 1% to 2%). Some patients have an increased total white blood cell (WBC) count, but the percentage of neutrophils remains normal (55% to 70%). If an acute infection occurs with allergic rhinitis, both the total WBC count and the number of neutrophils increase.

Other laboratory tests that indicate the presence of an allergic reaction include serum immunoglobulin E (IgE) levels and the radioallergosorbent test (RAST). A normal level of IgE for adults is about 39 IU/mL (or <100 IU/mL). This level can increase greatly with allergies. The usual IgE test does not indicate the specific allergen—only the tendency to have allergic responses. The radioimmunosorbent test (RIST) shows the blood level of IgE directed against a specific antigen and thus can determine specific allergies. The expense of this study limits its use in allergy testing.

Allergy Testing

Skin testing can show which specific allergens are the cause of most type I reactions. Skin testing can be performed as scratch testing and intradermal testing. Patch testing is often reserved for contact dermatitis and other manifestations of type IV hypersensitivities.

A scratch or prick test can show an *immediate* hypersensitivity reaction to an allergen. Scratch tests are used in routine allergy testing to determine the cause of allergic rhinitis, asthma, urticaria (hives), or any other type I reactions. Allergens introduced through a scratch or prick cause a localized reaction (wheal) when the test result is positive. Results are usually determined after 15 to 20 minutes.

Patient Preparation. For best results, systemic glucocorticoids and antihistamines are discontinued for up to 4 weeks

before the test to avoid suppressing an allergic response during the test. Nasal sprays to reduce mucous membrane swelling are permitted, except for sprays that contain an antihistamine. Some allergists recommend that aspirin and other NSAIDs also be withheld before allergy testing.

Procedure. The best site for scratch testing is the inside of the forearm or on the back. Other sites are used if a rash or skin problem is present on the arms or back. Gently clean the skin with soap and water, and remove surface oils with alcohol.

Small drops of sera containing different known allergens are placed on the skin. The skin is scratched or pricked through the drop with a bifurcated skin testing needle. Control drops are also applied to determine how a person reacts to substances that do not normally stimulate a reaction (negative control) and to substances that normally should stimulate a reaction (positive control). Normal saline drops are negative controls, and histamine drops are positive controls. The allergen-tested areas are examined for the presence and size of positive reactions. These areas are then compared with the control areas. Areas showing erythema and wheal formation are considered positive for that antigen. Degree of sensitivity is estimated by the size of the response.

Serious reactions in response to scratch testing are rare. Ensure that emergency equipment, including manual resuscitation bag, oxygen, suction equipment, IV infusion set, and drugs for anaphylaxis (epinephrine and diphenhydramine), is available during a scratch test.

Follow-up Care. After testing is completed, wash the solution from the skin. Topical steroids and oral antihistamines may be given to reduce itching and increase patient comfort. If an antihistamine that causes sedation is given, another person must drive the patient home.

Repeat open application testing (ROAT) is a form of self-administered patch testing that can help determine which hygiene or beauty products are responsible for a person's contact dermatitis (Gelpi & Jacob, 2008). (Hygiene, laundry, and beauty products are the most frequent causes of contact dermatitis.) Often, just one application of a suspected allergen does not produce a positive result. With ROAT, the person showers and then draws a 3-cm circle on the inner aspect of the upper arm. The person then selects one product as a suspected allergen and applies it to the circled area. The product is applied to the area twice daily for 7 days. The patient is instructed to protect the area from sunlight and to check it daily for a reaction. A positive reaction may include the presence of increased redness, small bumps, water blisters, or skin scaling. Once a product is identified as an allergen, the patient avoids using it.

Intradermal testing is reserved for substances that are strongly suspected of causing allergy but did not test positive with scratch testing. Intradermal testing increases the risk for an adverse reaction, including anaphylaxis, but it is usually a safe procedure. Ensure that emergency equipment is in the room with the patient. Small amounts of testing sera (0.1 mL) are injected intradermally on the patient's upper arm and the area is observed for erythema and wheal formation. The degree of allergy is estimated by the size of the response. Patient preparation and follow-up care are the same as for scratch testing.

Oral food challenges are used for patients who have allergic rhinitis when the allergen is eaten and does not come into

direct contact with the nasal mucosa. This type of testing is used to identify specific allergens if skin testing is not conclusive and if keeping a food diary has failed to determine the offending food items. The test requires the patient to eliminate suspected foods for 7 to 14 days before testing. After this time, the patient is directed to eat specific suspected food for at least 1 day and to monitor for manifestations of allergy. When many food allergies are present, the patient may have to eat only one food type per day of testing. *Oral food challenges are not performed with foods that are known to cause anaphylactic reactions in the patient.*



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client's complete blood count (CBC) with differential has the following values. Which value indicates to the nurse that the client is having some type of allergic reaction?

- A. Total white blood cell (WBC) count 100%
- B. Eosinophils 11%
- C. Lymphocytes 38%
- D. Neutrophils 66%

INTERVENTIONS

Common interventions for allergy management include avoidance therapy, drug therapy, complementary and alternative therapies, and desensitization therapy. Many patients use a combination of these types of therapy for management of allergic rhinitis and other manifestations of type I allergy.

Avoidance Therapy

Avoidance therapy can be successful when specific allergens have been identified. Urge the patient to avoid direct or close contact with these agents. Some allergens, such as certain foods or drugs, may be easy to avoid. Other substances, such as pollen, mold, or dust mites, may require environmental changes.

Teach patients that many airborne allergens can be reduced by air-conditioning and air-cleaning units. In addition, removing cloth drapes, upholstered furniture, and carpeting reduces airborne allergens. Covering mattresses and pillows with plastic or an ultrafine mesh cover also reduces exposure to dust mites and mold, as does laundering bed linens weekly in hot water and detergent.

Pet-induced allergies pose special challenges. Sometimes simple interventions, such as keeping pets out of the bedroom and thorough cleaning of the room to remove animal hair and dander, may reduce symptoms. Frequent bathing of the pet or keeping the pet outdoors can decrease allergen exposure. Depending on the severity of the allergy and how well other methods provide relief, pets with fur, feathers, or dander may need to be removed from the household.

Drug Therapy

Drug therapy for symptom relief may be tried when avoidance therapy is impractical. It can be effective in reducing the allergic response and making the patient more comfortable. Drug therapy involves the use of steroidal and nonsteroidal agents (to reduce inflammation), vasoconstrictors, antihistamines, mast cell stabilizers, and drugs that inhibit the release or action of leukotrienes. Some drugs reduce the response, and other drugs prevent the response.

Decongestants are available as systemic oral drugs or nasal sprays. These drugs do not clear the allergen or prevent the release of mediators such as histamine. They have actions similar to adrenergic drugs and work by causing vasoconstriction in the inflamed tissue, thereby reducing the edema. Decongestants often contain ephedrine, phenylephrine, or pseudoephedrine. Secretions are reduced when vasoconstricting drugs are combined with an anticholinergic drug, such as scopolamine or atropine. Many combination decongestants are available by prescription and as over-the-counter cold and allergy drugs. Side effects include dry mouth, increased blood pressure, and sleep difficulties.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Because effects are systemic, teach patients with high blood pressure, glaucoma, or urinary retention to consult with a health care professional before taking any decongestant.

Antihistamines block histamine from binding to the receptor. This action prevents vasodilation and capillary leak. Many antihistamines also decrease secretions. Some antihistamines, such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl 🍁) and chlorpheniramine (Allergy, Aller-Chlor, Chlor-Trimeton), often induce sedation. Newer antihistamines, such as desloratadine (Clarinet), cetirizine (Zyrtec), and fexofenadine (Allegra), are less sedating. Not every patient responds to each drug in the same way.

Corticosteroids decrease inflammatory and immune responses in many ways, one of which is by preventing the synthesis of mediators. Corticosteroid nasal sprays can prevent the symptoms of rhinitis. Systemic corticosteroids can produce severe side effects. These drugs are avoided for rhinitis and are used only on a short-term basis for other problems associated with type I reactions.

Mast cell stabilizing drugs include nasal sprays, such as cromolyn sodium (Nasal crom), that prevent mast cell membranes from opening when an allergen binds to IgE. Thus these drugs prevent the symptoms of allergic rhinitis but are not useful during an acute episode.

Leukotriene modifiers may be used to treat allergic rhinitis. Zileuton (Zyflo) prevents leukotriene synthesis. (See [Chapter 19](#) for a discussion of the role of leukotriene in inflammatory and allergic responses.) Zafirlukast (Accolate) blocks the leukotriene receptor. Both are oral agents and work best in the prevention of allergic rhinitis.

Complementary and Alternative Therapy

Complementary and alternative therapies have helped some patients with rhinitis obtain relief, especially through the use of aromatherapy. Possible mechanisms of action include competition and desensitization. Some patients with pollen allergies report decreased problems after eating unprocessed honey.

Desensitization Therapy

Desensitization therapy, commonly called “allergy shots,” may be needed when allergens are identified and cannot be avoided easily. It involves subcutaneous injections of small amounts of the allergen. After the allergen has been identified, a very dilute injection solution (1:100,000 or 1:1,000,000)

of the allergen is compounded. A 0.05-mL dose of this solution is injected subcutaneously. Usually an increasing dose is given weekly (or more often) until the patient is receiving a 0.5-mL dose. The patient is then started on the lowest dose of the next higher concentration of allergen solution. The process is repeated with increasing concentrations of allergen solutions until the patient is receiving the maximum dose of the greatest concentration (usually 1:100), depending on his or her response. Injections are usually given at weekly intervals during the first year, every other week for the second year, and then every 3 to 4 weeks for the third year. The recommended course of treatment is about 5 years.

Desensitization appears to reduce allergic responses by competition. In theory, the very small amounts of allergen first injected are too low to bind to the IgE already present but are enough to induce immunoglobulin G (IgG) production against that allergen. Because IgG is not associated with either mast cells or basal cells, allergens that bind to IgG do not trigger allergic responses. IgG removes the allergen from the body by precipitation (see [Chapter 19](#)). By gradually increasing the allergen injection, large amounts of IgG are produced against the allergen. When the patient is then exposed to the allergen in the environment, the IgG binds to it and clears it from the body before IgE can bind to it and trigger an allergic reaction. Because so much more IgG can be produced compared with IgE, IgG is successful in the competition to bind the allergen.

ANAPHYLAXIS

Pathophysiology

Anaphylaxis, the most dramatic and life-threatening example of a type I hypersensitivity reaction, occurs rapidly and systemically. It affects many organs within seconds to minutes after allergen exposure. Anaphylaxis is not common, although the incidence appears to be rising along with the general increase in the incidence of allergic reactions. The episodes can vary in severity, and *it can be fatal*. *The major factor in fatal outcomes for anaphylaxis is a delay in the administration of epinephrine* (Walker et al., 2010; [Watson, 2010](#); [White, 2010](#)). Many substances can trigger anaphylaxis in a susceptible person ([Table 22-2](#)). Drugs and dyes are more common causes of anaphylaxis in acute care settings; food and insect stings/bites are more common causes of anaphylaxis in community settings.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Anaphylaxis has a rapid onset and a potentially fatal outcome (even with appropriate medical intervention); thus prevention is critical. *Teach the patient with a history of allergic reactions to avoid allergens whenever possible, to wear a medical alert bracelet, and to alert health care personnel about specific allergies*. Some patients must carry an emergency anaphylaxis kit (e.g., a kit with injectable epinephrine, sometimes called a “bee sting kit”) or an epinephrine injector, such as the EpiPen or Twinject automatic injector. The EpiPen device is a spring-loaded injector that delivers 0.3 mg of epinephrine per 2-mL dose ([Fig. 22-2](#)). Teach patients who have been prescribed the device how to care for and use it ([Chart 22-1](#)).

The medical records of patients with a history of anaphylaxis should prominently display the list of specific allergens. Ask the patient about drug allergies before giving any drug or

TABLE 22-2 COMMON AGENTS THAT CAUSE ANAPHYLAXIS**Drugs/Foreign Proteins**

Antibiotics (penicillin, cephalosporins, tetracycline, sulfonamides (especially Bactrim and Septra), streptomycin, vancomycin, chloramphenicol, amphotericin B, others)
 Adrenocorticotrophic hormone, insulin, vasopressin, protamine*
 Allergen extracts, muscle relaxants, hydrocortisone, vaccines, local anesthetics (lidocaine, procaine)*
 Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors
 Angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs)
 Chemotherapy agents (antineoplastic drugs)
 Monoclonal antibodies
 Whole blood, cryoprecipitate, immune serum globulin*
 Radiocontrast media*
 Opiates

FOODS

Peanuts
 Shellfish
 Eggs
 Legumes, nuts
 Grains
 Berries
 Preservatives
 Bananas

OTHER AGENTS

Pollens
 Molds
 Latex
 Other

Insects/Animals

Hymenoptera: bees, wasps, hornets
 Fire ants
 Snake venom

*Anaphylaxis caused by these substances is probably a result of direct mast cell degranulation rather than an IgE-mediated hypersensitivity event.

**FIG. 22-2** EpiPen and EpiPen Jr. self-injectors for epinephrine.

therapeutic agent. If he or she has a known allergy, be sure to document this response in the medical record and communicate the allergy to other members of the health care team. Skin tests should be performed before giving any substance that has a high incidence of causing anaphylactic reactions, such as iodine-containing dyes. Be aware of common cross-reacting agents. For example, a patient who is allergic to penicillin is also likely to react to cephalosporins because both have a similar chemical structure. People who have an allergy to bananas, avocados, and some nuts are more likely to have a latex allergy, although this is not universal.

**CULTURAL AWARENESS**

The types of substances that are common causes of severe allergic and anaphylactic reactions vary geographically. For example, peanut allergies are common in North America. However, in China, where peanuts are a common food, it is not a common allergen. Peanut preparation is more likely to be by boiling or frying in China, which may have an impact on its ability to produce an allergic response. In Israel, the most common food allergen is sesame (White, 2010).

CHART 22-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT**Care and Use of Automatic Epinephrine Injectors**

- Practice assembly of injection device with a non-drug-containing training device provided through the injection device manufacturer.
- Keep the device with you at all times.
- When needed, inject the drug into the top of your thigh, slightly to the outside, holding the device so that the needle enters straight down.
- You can inject the drug right through your pants; just avoid seams and pockets where the fabric is thicker.
- Use the device when *any* symptom of anaphylaxis is present and call 911. It is better to use the drug when it is not needed than to not use it when it is needed!!!
- Whenever you need to use the device, get to the nearest hospital for monitoring for at least the next 4 to 6 hours.
- Have at least two drug-filled devices on hand in case more than one dose is needed.
- Protect the device from light and keep at room temperature.
- Store the device in the case provided by the manufacturer (when at home, store in the refrigerator).
- Keep safety cap in place until you are ready to use the device.
- Check the device for:
 - Expiration date—if the date is close to expiring or has expired, obtain a replacement device*
 - Drug clarity—if the drug is discolored, obtain a replacement device
 - Security of cap—if the cap is loose or comes off accidentally, obtain a replacement device

*Some manufacturers have an automatic notification service to let you know your device is about to expire.

Take precautionary measures if an agent must be used despite a history of allergic reactions. Start an IV solution, and place intubation equipment and a tracheostomy set at the bedside. The patient is often premedicated with diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl) or a corticosteroid. The allergy-causing substance is given first intradermally, then subcutaneously, and then intramuscularly in increasing doses at 20- to 30-minute intervals so the initial dose by the next route does not exceed the final dose by the previous route.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Problems with anaphylaxis management include that it is rare and initial symptoms may be subtle, such as sudden severe abdominal cramping and diarrhea. A set of three criteria, listed in Chart 22-2, for diagnosis of anaphylaxis was developed and accepted in 2006 by an international symposium (Sampson et al., 2006). A patient is considered to have anaphylaxis whenever any *one* of these three criteria is met.

A patient having an anaphylactic reaction first has feelings of uneasiness, apprehension, weakness, and impending doom. Often the patient is anxious and frightened. These feelings are followed, often quickly, by generalized itching and urticaria (hives). Erythema and sometimes **angioedema** (diffuse swelling) of the eyes, lips, or tongue occur next

CHART 22-2 KEY FEATURES

Anaphylaxis**Clinical Criteria 1**

Onset within minutes to hours of skin or mucous membrane problems involving swollen lips, tongue, soft palate, uvula; widespread hives; pruritus; or flushing along with any *one* of these new onset symptoms:

- Respiratory distress or ineffectiveness:
 - Dyspnea
 - Bronchospasms
 - Wheezes
 - Stridor
 - Hypoxia
 - Cyanosis
 - Peak expiratory rate flow lower than the patient's usual
- Hypotension or any indication of reduced perfusion resulting in organ dysfunction:
 - Loss of consciousness
 - Incontinence
 - Hypotonia
 - Absent deep tendon reflexes

Clinical Criteria 2

Onset within minutes to hours of *two* or more of these symptoms after a patient has been exposed to a potential allergen:

- Skin or mucous membrane problems involving swollen lips, tongue, soft palate, uvula; widespread hives; pruritus; or flushing
- Respiratory distress or ineffectiveness as evidenced by any dyspnea, bronchospasms, wheezes, stridor, hypoxia, cyanosis, or peak expiratory rate flow lower than the patient's usual
- Hypotension or any indication of reduced perfusion resulting in organ dysfunction, such as loss of consciousness, incontinence, hypotonia, or absent deep tendon reflexes
- Persistent GI problems such as nausea or vomiting, cramping, abdominal pain

Clinical Criteria 3

Onset within minutes to hours of hypotension with systolic blood pressure lower than 90 mm Hg or 30% lower than the patient's baseline systolic pressure.

Modified from Sampson, H., Muñoz-Furlong, A., Campbell, R., Adkinson, N.F., Jr., Bock, S.A., Branum, A., et al. (2006). Second symposium on the definition and management of anaphylaxis: Summary report—Second National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease/Food Allergy and Anaphylaxis Network symposium. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, 117(2), 391-397.

(Fig. 22-3). Intensely itchy skin wheals or hives may appear and sometimes merge to form large, red blotches.

Histamine and other biochemicals cause bronchoconstriction, mucosal edema, and excess mucus production. Respiratory symptoms include congestion, rhinorrhea, dyspnea, and increasing respiratory distress with audible wheezing.

On auscultation, crackles, wheezing, and reduced breath sounds are heard. Patients may have laryngeal edema as a “lump in the throat,” hoarseness, and stridor (a crowing sound). Distress increases as the tongue and larynx swell and more mucus is produced. Stridor and anxiety increase as the airway begins to close. Increasing bronchoconstriction can lead to reduced chest excursion and impaired air movement. Respiratory failure may follow from laryngeal edema, suffocation, or lower airway constriction causing hypoxemia (poor blood oxygenation).

The patient is usually hypotensive and has a rapid, weak, irregular pulse. These findings are caused by vasodilation and extensive capillary leak. He or she is faint and diaphoretic with increasing anxiety and confusion.



FIG. 22-3 Angioedema of the face, lips, and mouth.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

If you suspect a patient is having an anaphylactic reaction, immediately call the Rapid Response Team, because most anaphylactic deaths are related to treatment delay. If the patient is not treated immediately, he or she may lose consciousness. Dysrhythmias, shock, and cardiopulmonary arrest may occur within minutes as intravascular volume is lost and the heart becomes hypoxic.

INTERVENTIONS

Emergency interventions are listed in Chart 22-3. Assess respiratory function first. Emergency respiratory management is critical during an anaphylactic reaction, because the severity of the reaction increases with time. Not only can the upper airway be affected, but also bronchoconstriction of the lower airways can quickly impair airflow and lead to hypoxic arrest. Immediately establish or stabilize the airway. If an IV drug is suspected to be causing the anaphylaxis, stop the drug immediately but do not remove the venous access because restarting an IV may be very difficult if the patient experiences a rapid decline in blood pressure. Instead, change the IV tubing and hang normal saline. More emergency interventions for patients with anaphylaxis are listed in Chart 22-3.

The patient with anaphylaxis is usually anxious or frightened and often expresses a sense of impending doom. Stay with the patient and reassure him or her that the appropriate interventions are being instituted.

Epinephrine (1:1000) 0.3 to 0.5 mL is the first-line drug for anaphylaxis. It is given IM or IV when symptoms of anaphylaxis appear (see Chart 22-3). This drug constricts blood vessels, improves cardiac contraction, and dilates the bronchioles. The same dose may be repeated every 5 minutes if needed. Other drugs used to treat anaphylaxis are listed in Chart 22-4.

CHART 22-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Anaphylaxis

- Immediately assess the respiratory status, airway, and oxygen saturation of patients who show any symptom of an allergic reaction.
- Call the Rapid Response Team.
- Ensure that intubation and tracheotomy equipment is ready.
- Apply oxygen using a high-flow, non-rebreather mask at 90% to 100%.
- Immediately discontinue the IV drug of a patient having an anaphylactic reaction to that drug. **Do not** discontinue the IV, but change the IV tubing and hang normal saline.
- If the patient does not have an IV, start one immediately and run normal saline.
- Be prepared to administer epinephrine IV or IM.
 - Epinephrine 1:1000 concentration, 0.3 to 0.5 mL IV push
 - Repeat as needed every 5 minutes until the patient responds
- Keep the head of the bed elevated about 10 degrees if hypotension is present; if blood pressure is normal, elevate the head of the bed to 45 degrees or higher to improve ventilation.
- Raise the feet and legs.
- Stay with the patient.
- Reassure the patient that the appropriate interventions are being instituted.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Administer epinephrine as quickly as possible. Most deaths from anaphylaxis are related to delay in epinephrine administration.

Antihistamines such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl, Allerdryl ) 25 to 100 mg are second-line drugs and usually are given IV or IM for angioedema and urticaria. If needed, an endotracheal tube may be inserted or an emergency tracheostomy may be performed.

If the patient can breathe independently, give oxygen to reduce hypoxemia. Start oxygen therapy via a high-flow non-rebreather facemask at 90% to 100% before arterial blood gas results are obtained. Monitor pulse oximetry to determine oxygenation adequacy, with the goal of maintaining oxygen saturation greater than 90%. Arterial blood gases may be ordered to determine therapy effectiveness. Use suction to remove excess mucus and other secretions, if indicated. Continually assess the patient's respiratory rate and depth. Assess breath sounds continually for bronchospasm, wheezing, crackles, and stridor. Elevate the bed to 45 degrees unless severe hypotension is also present.

For bronchospasms, the patient may be given an inhaled beta-adrenergic agonist such as metaproterenol (Alupent) or albuterol (Proventil) via high-flow nebulizer every 2 to 4 hours. Corticosteroids are added to emergency interventions;

CHART 22-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Anaphylaxis

DRUG	MECHANISM	SIDE EFFECTS
Sympathomimetics (First-Line Drugs)		
Epinephrine (Adrenalin)	Rapidly stimulates alpha- and beta-adrenergic receptors of autonomic nervous system (alpha: vasoconstriction; beta: bronchodilation).	Pallor, tachycardia and palpitations, nervousness, muscle twitching, sweating, anxiety, insomnia, hypertension, headache, hyperglycemia.
Isoproterenol (Isuprel)	Stimulates beta-adrenergic receptors, relaxing bronchial smooth muscles and dilating vessels.	Same as for epinephrine.
Ephedrine sulfate (Vatrolol)	Similar to isoproterenol, but with longer duration of action.	Same as for epinephrine.
Antihistamines (Second-Line Drugs)		
Diphenhydramine HCl (Allerdryl 🇨🇦, Benadryl)	Competes with histamine for H ₁ receptors on effector cells, thus blocking effects of histamine on bronchioles, gastrointestinal tract, and blood vessels.	Drowsiness, confusion, insomnia, headache, vertigo, photosensitivity, diplopia, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth.
Corticosteroids (Second-Line Drugs)		
Hydrocortisone sodium succinate (Solu-Cortef) (IV/IM)	Anti-inflammatory; inhibits mast cell degranulation.	Fluid and sodium retention, hypertension, cushingoid state, gastric distress, adrenal suppression, psychosis, osteoporosis, susceptibility to infection.
Dexamethasone (Decadron) (IV/IM)		
Methylprednisolone sodium succinate (Solu-Medrol) (IV/IM)		
Prednisone (orally)		
Vasopressors (Support Drugs)		
Norepinephrine (Levophed)	Raises blood pressure and cardiac output in severely decompensated states.	Headache, tachycardia, fibrillation, decreased urine output, hypertension, metabolic acidosis.
Dopamine (Intropin)	Raises blood pressure and cardiac output in severely decompensated states.	Dysrhythmias, tachycardia, hypertension, dyspnea, nausea and vomiting, azotemia, headache.

pulmonary arterial and capillary wedge pressure monitoring are performed. Observe the patient for fluid overload from the rapid drug and IV fluid infusions, and report changes to the health care provider immediately. The patient is discharged from the hospital when respiratory and cardiovascular systems have returned to baseline.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Quality Improvement; Patient-Centered Care

You are the nurse manager on a subacute/rehabilitation unit at a large metropolitan hospital. You overhear the nursing assistant tell the LPN assigned to a 68-year-old patient who had a knee replacement 8 days ago that the patient has a swollen mouth this morning and had difficulty swallowing his toast. You check his chart and discover that he has a documented severe allergy to penicillin only and has not been prescribed that drug before or after surgery. A quick look at his chart indicates he is taking lisinopril (Zestril) and warfarin (Coumadin) daily and is taking hydrocodone (Vicodin) PRN for pain. When you enter his room, you see that his lips and tongue are very swollen and he is drooling. His face and chest are flushed, and he tells you that he feels “itchy all over.”

1. Which manifestations are symptoms of an allergic reaction?
2. Which vital signs are most important for you to assess immediately? Provide a rationale for your answer.
3. Should you notify the patient's surgeon, his internist, or the Rapid Response Team about this change in his condition? Provide a rationale for your answer.
4. What may have precipitated this event and what, if any, steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier?
5. Are there any additional resources that could improve the nursing response to this situation? Explain your response.

LATEX ALLERGY

Latex allergy is a type I hypersensitivity reaction in which the specific allergen is a protein found in processed natural latex rubber products. When the allergen enters the body through inhalation or direct contact with blood vessels (e.g., as might occur during surgery), interaction with IgE occurs, leading to a type I reaction. For some people, latex allergen contact is limited to the skin or mucous membranes, causing contact dermatitis, a type IV delayed hypersensitivity reaction (see p. 392). Others may have a “mixed” allergic response to latex, with symptoms of both type I and type IV hypersensitivities. Others may have only one or the other type of reaction.

The incidence of latex hypersensitivity in the general population is increasing. People at greatest risk are those with a high exposure to natural latex products, such as patients with spina bifida, people who routinely use latex condoms, and health care workers who use latex gloves. The incidence of latex allergy among health care workers is falling, largely as a response to reduced use of latex products and subsequent exposure in the workplace.

Ask all patients about their use of and known reactions to natural latex products. Document all food allergies because some have cross-reactivity for latex allergy. In addition, consider your own exposure and risk for reactions to natural latex products.

Avoiding products that contain natural latex proteins can prevent reactions and initial sensitivity. More products, such as surgical gloves, tubing, and vial closures, are now being made from synthetic substances that do not contain latex

proteins. One such product is the glove ElastyLite. Interventions for the patient who has a type I or a type IV reaction to latex are the same as for reactions caused by other allergens.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Use only latex-free products in the care of a patient with a known latex allergy.

TYPE II: CYTOTOXIC REACTIONS

In a type II (cytotoxic) reaction, the body makes special autoantibodies directed against self cells that have some form of foreign protein attached to them. The autoantibody binds to the self cell and forms an immune complex (see Fig. 19-10 on p. 311 in Chapter 19). The self cell is then destroyed along with the attached protein by phagocytosis or lysis (see Chapter 19). Clinical examples of type II reactions include immune hemolytic anemias, immune thrombocytopenic purpura, hemolytic transfusion reactions (when a patient receives the wrong blood type during a transfusion), Goodpasture's syndrome, and drug-induced hemolytic anemia.

Treatment of type II cytotoxic reactions begins with discontinuing the offending drug or blood product. Plasmapheresis (filtration of the plasma to remove specific substances) to remove autoantibodies may be beneficial. Otherwise, treatment is symptomatic. Complications such as hemolytic crisis and kidney failure can be life threatening.

TYPE III: IMMUNE COMPLEX REACTIONS

In a type III reaction, excess antigens cause immune complexes to form in the blood (Fig. 22-4). These circulating complexes usually lodge in small blood vessel walls. Common sites include the kidneys, skin, joints, and other small blood

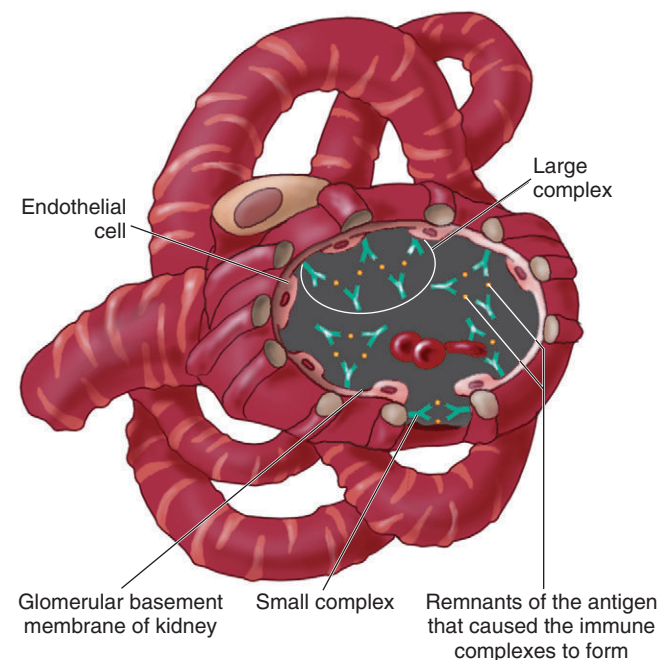


FIG. 22-4 An immune complex in a type III hypersensitivity reaction.

vessels. The deposited complexes trigger inflammation, and tissue or vessel damage results.

Many immune complex disorders (mostly connective tissue disorders) are caused by type III reactions. For example, the manifestations of rheumatoid arthritis are caused by immune complexes that lodge in joint spaces followed by destruction of tissue and, later, scarring and fibrous changes. Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) has immune complexes lodged in the vessels (vasculitis), the glomeruli (glomerulonephritis), the joints (arthralgia, arthritis), and other organs and tissues. (See [Chapter 20](#) for a discussion of SLE.)

Serum sickness is a group of symptoms that occurs after receiving serum or certain drugs. It is caused by a collection of immune complexes deposited in blood vessel walls of the skin, joints, and kidneys. The most common causes of serum sickness today are penicillin, other antibiotics, and some animal serum-based drugs. Serum sickness is less common now that vaccines are made with human proteins. Agents known to cause serum sickness include antilymphocyte globulin and antithymocyte globulin, used to treat organ transplant rejection.

The patient with serum sickness has fever, arthralgia (achy joints), rash, lymphadenopathy (enlarged lymph nodes), malaise, and possibly polyarthritis and nephritis about 7 to 12 days after receiving the causative agent. Teach him or her about the possibility of serum sickness and what symptoms to look for whenever you give a foreign serum. Also keep emergency equipment and drugs close at hand in case he or she has an anaphylactic reaction.

Serum sickness is usually self-limiting, and symptoms subside after several days. Treatment is usually symptomatic; antihistamines are given for itching and aspirin for arthralgias. Prednisone is given if symptoms are severe.

TYPE IV: DELAYED HYPERSENSITIVITY REACTIONS

In a type IV reaction, the reactive cell is the T-lymphocyte (T-cell). Antibodies and complement are not involved. Sensitized T-cells (from a previous exposure) respond to an antigen by releasing chemical mediators and triggering macrophages to destroy the antigen. Unlike a type I reaction, which occurs immediately, a type IV response typically occurs hours to days after exposure. A type IV reaction consists of a local collection of lymphocytes and macrophages, causing edema, induration, ischemia, and tissue damage at the site.

An example of a small type IV reaction is a positive purified protein derivative (PPD) test for tuberculosis. In a patient previously exposed to tuberculosis, an intradermal injection of this agent causes sensitized T-cells to clump at the injection site, release lymphokines, and activate macrophages. Induration and erythema at the site of the injection appear after about 24 to 72 hours.

Other examples of type IV reactions include contact dermatitis, poison ivy skin rashes, local response to insect stings, tissue transplant rejections, and sarcoidosis.

Patch testing for this type of hypersensitivity involves applying test chemicals that contain the allergen(s) to which the patient has been exposed. The patches remain in place for 48 hours. After removal, the skin areas in contact with the chemical are examined closely for the presence of localized

redness, swelling, and blisters. If a reaction occurs, the patient is given a list of items containing that chemical to be avoided.

Removal of the offending antigen is the major focus of management. The reaction is self-limiting in 5 to 7 days, and the patient is treated symptomatically. Monitor the reaction site and sites distal to the reaction for circulation adequacy. Diphenhydramine (Benadryl) is of minimal benefit for type IV reactions because histamine is not the main mediator. In addition, IgE does not cause this type of reaction and desensitization does not reduce the response. Corticosteroids can reduce the discomfort and help resolve the reaction more quickly.

TYPE V: STIMULATORY REACTIONS

A type V reaction involves excessive stimulation of a normal cell surface receptor by an autoantibody, resulting in a continuous “turned-on” state for the cell. An example of this type of reaction is Graves’ disease, a form of hyperthyroidism. In Graves’ disease, an autoantibody binds to the thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) receptor sites on the thyroid gland. This binding continually stimulates thyroid cells to produce thyroid hormones, causing the patient to have severe hyperthyroidism (see [Chapter 66](#)). The manifestations occur even though the thyroid gland itself is completely normal. In a sense, the tissue responding to the autoantibody is “out of control” from the body’s normal feedback system of checks and balances.

For type V reactions involving only one organ, the management focuses on removing enough of the responding (stimulated) tissue to return the function to normal. With Graves’ disease, thyroid tissue is either surgically removed or destroyed with radiation. For type V reactions in which antibody stimulation is more widespread, treatment focuses on reducing the production of autoantibodies through immunosuppression.

AUTOIMMUNITY

Autoimmunity is a process whereby a person develops an inappropriate immune response. In this response, antibodies or lymphocytes are directed against healthy normal cells and tissues. (Antibodies directed against self tissues or cells are known as [autoantibodies](#).) For unknown reasons, the immune system fails to recognize certain body cells or tissues as self and thus triggers immune reactions. The responses, both antibody- and cell-mediated, are similar to normal immune responses against invading organisms, but these reactions are now directed against normal body cells ([Rosen & Casciola-Rosen, 2009](#)). Causes of loss of recognition of self cells are not known but have been associated with viral infection, cancer, and some hematologic disorders.

Examples of diseases that have an autoimmune cause include systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), polyarteritis nodosa, scleroderma, rheumatoid arthritis, autoimmune hemolytic anemia, rheumatic fever, and Hashimoto’s thyroiditis ([Table 22-3](#)). Other diseases, such as type 1 diabetes mellitus, may have multiple causes, one of which is autoimmune.

Management of autoimmunities depends on the organ or organs affected. *There is no cure.* Anti-inflammatory drugs

TABLE 22-3 KNOWN OR PROBABLE AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS

DISORDER	AUTOANTIGEN
Systemic Or Non-Organ Specific	
Systemic lupus erythematosus	DNA, DNA proteins
Rheumatoid arthritis	IgG, possibly cartilage
Progressive systemic sclerosis	DNA proteins
Mixed connective tissue disorder	DNA proteins
Scleroderma	Endothelial cells; epithelial cells
Organ Specific	
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia	Erythrocytes
Autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura	Platelets
Crohn's disease	Crypt epithelial cells
Diabetes mellitus, type I	Islet cells, insulin, insulin receptor
Dermatomyositis	Unknown
Glomerulonephritis	Glomerular basement membranes
Goodpasture's syndrome	Glomerular basement membranes, pulmonary basement membranes
Graves' disease	Thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor
Hashimoto's thyroiditis	Thyroid cell surface
Idiopathic Addison's disease	Adrenal cell
Myasthenia gravis	Acetylcholine receptor, acetylcholine
Pernicious anemia	Intrinsic factor, parietal cell, B ₁₂ complexes
Psoriasis	Stratum corneum
Reiter's syndrome	Possibly collagen, conjunctival cells
Sjögren's syndrome	Salivary gland cells, vaginal mucous cells, lacrimal gland cells
Uveitis	Uveal tract cells (eye)
Vasculitis	Unknown, possibly collagen or endothelial cells

IgG, Immunoglobulin G.

and immunosuppressive drugs are commonly used along with symptomatic treatment.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Virtually all autoimmune disorders, especially rheumatic disorders, occur much more commonly among women than men (McCance et al., 2010). The risk for autoimmune disease among women compared with men ranges from 5:1 to 20:1. The frequency of autoimmune disorders in women varies by ethnicity.

SJÖGREN'S SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Sjögren's syndrome (SS) is a group of problems that often appear with other autoimmune disorders. Problems include dry eyes (sicca syndrome), dry mucous membranes of the nose and mouth (xerostomia), and vaginal dryness. These

problems are caused by autoimmune destruction of the lacrimal, salivary, and vaginal mucus-producing glands (Kruszka & O'Brian, 2009). Often, the patient with SS also has rheumatoid arthritis or fibromyalgia.

Most patients with SS are women 35 to 45 years old. SS occurs more frequently among patients with certain tissue types, specifically HLA-DRW52, HLA-DR3, and HLA-B8. Although an exact triggering agent has not been identified, viral infection is strongly suspected. The three viruses thought to be triggers for the autoimmune changes leading to SS are the human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1), human T-cell lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1), and Epstein-Barr virus (EBV).

Insufficient tears cause inflammation and ulceration of the cornea. Insufficient saliva decreases digestion of carbohydrates, promotes tooth decay, and increases the incidence of oral and nasal infections. Vaginal dryness increases the incidence of infection and may cause pain during sexual intercourse.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient with Sjögren's syndrome (SS) usually has blurred vision, burning and itching of the eyes, and thick mattering in the conjunctiva. Difficulty swallowing food is common, and he or she often has changes in taste sensation. Ask about nosebleeds (epistaxis) and frequent upper respiratory infections.

Physical examination reveals enlarged lymph nodes. If rheumatoid arthritis (RA) accompanies SS, the patient has swollen, painful joints and limited joint mobility (see Chapter 20 for a complete discussion of RA). Laboratory assessment may show increased presence of general antinuclear antibodies, anti-SS-A or anti-SS-B antibodies, and elevated levels of IgM rheumatoid factor.

There is no cure for SS. The intensity and the progression of the disorder can be slowed by suppressing immune and inflammatory responses. Drugs used to modulate the immune system in patients with SS include low-dose chemotherapy with methotrexate (Rheumatrex) or cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan). Both drugs have serious long-term side effects, especially on liver and bone marrow function. Other immunosuppressive drugs used to manage SS are corticosteroids, cyclosporine (Gengraf, Neoral, Sandimmune), and hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil). A monoclonal antibody being investigated for benefit to patients with severe inflammatory manifestations of SS is rituximab (Rituxan) (Kruszka & O'Brian, 2009).

A variety of artificial tears and artificial saliva can help reduce the dry eye and dry mouth symptoms. Teach patients to use humidifiers in the home to increase environmental moisture. Use of water-soluble vaginal lubricants and moisturizers can increase patient comfort and reduce the incidence of vaginitis. Some patients relieve dry mouth with systemic pilocarpine (Salagen). This drug mimics parasympathetic nervous system effects, causing increased salivation. A drug that helps the patient increase tear production is cyclosporine (Restasis) eyedrops.

Another intervention for dry eyes is to block the tear outflow channel (nasal punctum). The punctum can be blocked temporarily with small plugs or can be closed

surgically. Either method allows the tears produced to remain in contact with the eye longer.

GOODPASTURE'S SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Goodpasture's syndrome is an autoimmune disorder in which autoantibodies are made against the glomerular basement membrane and neutrophils. The two organs with the most damage are the lungs and the kidneys. A person with the disorder may have lung and/or kidney problems. Lung damage is manifested as pulmonary hemorrhage. Kidney damage manifests as glomerulonephritis that may rapidly progress to complete kidney failure (see [Chapters 70 and 71](#)). Unlike other autoimmune disorders, Goodpasture's syndrome usually occurs in adolescent males or young men (McCance et al., 2010). The exact cause or triggering agent is unknown.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Goodpasture's syndrome usually is not diagnosed until serious lung or kidney problems are present. Manifestations include shortness of breath, hemoptysis (bloody sputum), decreased urine output, weight gain, generalized nondependent edema, hypertension, and tachycardia. Chest x-rays show areas of consolidation. The most common cause of death is uremia as a result of kidney failure.

Spontaneous resolution of Goodpasture's syndrome has occurred but is rare. Interventions focus on reducing the immune-mediated damage and performing some type of kidney supportive or replacement therapy.

Drug therapy is the mainstay of treatment for Goodpasture's syndrome. High-dose corticosteroids are most often

used. Other drug therapy to suppress the autoimmune response is the same as that for Sjögren's syndrome (SS).

Additional therapy to reduce immune responses involves plasmapheresis (filtration of the plasma to remove some proteins) to remove the autoantibodies. If the lungs and kidneys do not have permanent damage, patients undergoing plasmapheresis have shown clinical improvement. Some patients using plasmapheresis need infusions of intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) to maintain antibody protection against infection.

Depending on the level of kidney function remaining, the patient may need ongoing dialysis. Therapy usually begins with hemodialysis. For long-term therapy, peritoneal dialysis or hemodialysis may be used depending on the patient's health status, ability to self-manage the infusion and drainage systems, and lifestyle (see [Chapter 71](#)).

Kidney transplantation is an option for some patients with Goodpasture's syndrome. After transplantation, kidney function is normal. In rare instances, patients have been disease-free after transplantation. In others, the kidney problems are improved but the lung destruction continues. Some of the drugs used to prevent kidney rejection also suppress the autoimmune response.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client receiving long-term immunosuppressive therapy for an autoimmune disease?

- A. Avoid crowds and people who are ill.
- B. Call your health care provider at the first sign of an infection.
- C. Assess your response to this medication at least once per month.
- D. Be sure to tell your dentist you are taking this therapy before having any dental work.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing an excess protective response in the form of a severe allergic reaction?

- Possible skin rash, blisters, wheals, especially on the skin at the IV site
- Swelling of the face, lips, tongue (angioedema)
- Difficulty breathing, hoarseness, stridor, wheezing
- Cyanosis
- Increasing anxiety

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate protection as a result of loss of skin integrity?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs, especially respiratory rate and depth and blood pressure
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry

- Checking the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing for the use of accessory muscles
- Assessing for the presence of thick or excessive secretions
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway

Respond by:

- Removing or discontinuing the offending agent
- Ensuring a patent airway
- Notifying Rapid Response Team
- Applying oxygen, and assessing the patient's responses to this intervention
- Maintaining IV access, changing IV tubing, hanging normal saline
- Keeping the patient's head elevated between 10 and 45 degrees

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Preparing to administer IV diphenhydramine and epinephrine
- Staying with the patient

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of drug therapy and oxygen therapy effectiveness (adequate tissue perfusion and oxygenation [see Chapter 29]).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Ensure that only latex-free products are used for a patient who has a known latex allergy.
- Verify that all allergies are documented in a prominent place in the patient's medical record.
- Keep emergency equipment and drugs (epinephrine, Benadryl, cortisol) in or near the room of a patient with known severe allergies or a history of anaphylaxis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Urge all patients with severe allergies or those who have a history of anaphylaxis to wear a medical alert bracelet.
- Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of allergic reactions and when to seek medical advice.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Stay with the patient in anaphylaxis.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests related to hypersensitivities.

- Reassure patients who are in anaphylaxis that the appropriate interventions are being instituted.

Physiological Integrity

- Immediately assess the respiratory status and airway of patients who show any symptom of an allergic reaction.
- Immediately discontinue the IV drug of a patient having an anaphylactic reaction to that drug. Do not discontinue the IV, but change the IV tubing and hang normal saline.
- Hold the dose of any prescribed drug when a patient develops angioedema.
- Give oxygen to any patient in anaphylaxis.
- Teach the patient who has a known drug allergy about which other drugs are likely to stimulate the same reactions.
- Teach the patient who carries an automatic epinephrine injector how to care for, assemble, and use the device. Obtain a return demonstration.

CHAPTER

23

Cancer Development

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Metastatic Spread of Breast Cancer

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Help people identify behaviors that reduce the risk for cancer development and cancer death.
2. Teach the recommended screening practices and schedules for specific cancer types.

Physiological Integrity

3. Explain why causes of specific cancers can be hard to establish.
4. Use knowledge of basic biology to understand how normal cells can become malignant.
5. Distinguish the features of normal cells from those of benign tumors and cancer cells.

6. Discuss the roles of oncogenes and suppressor genes in cancer development.
7. Compare the cancer development processes of initiation and promotion.
8. Interpret cancer grading, ploidy, and staging reports.
9. Explain how cancer metastasis occurs and the common sites of distant metastasis.
10. Discuss the role of immunity in protection against cancer.
11. Assess the individual patient's need for genetic testing for cancer predisposition based on family history.

Most common types of altered cell growth, such as moles or skin tags, are **benign** (harmless) and do not require intervention. **Malignant cell growth**, or cancer, however, is serious and, without intervention, leads to death. Cancer is a common health problem in the United States and Canada. Nearly 1.5 million people are newly diagnosed with cancer each year (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2011; Canadian Cancer Society, 2010). Some types of cancer can be prevented; others have better cure rates if diagnosed early. As a nurse, you can have a vital impact in educating the public about cancer prevention and early detection methods.

Although cancer is common today, it is not a new disorder. Some types of cancer are more common today, especially among more affluent societies, than in centuries past. Two reasons for this increase are the longer life expectancy of people in more affluent countries and increased exposure to substances that cause cancer.

Cancer will occur in about 1 of every 3 people currently living in North America (ACS, 2011; Canadian Cancer

Society, 2010), although cancer risk differs for each person. More than 10 million Americans with a history of cancer are alive today, nearly 5 million of whom are considered cured (ACS, 2011).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Growth of cells and tissues is expected during infancy and childhood, and many human body cells continue to “grow” by **mitosis** (cell division) long after maturation is complete. Such cells are located in tissues in which constant damage or wear is likely and continued cell growth is needed to replace dead tissues. Cells of the skin, hair, mucous membranes, bone marrow, and linings of organs such as the lungs, stomach, intestines, bladder, and uterus, among others have the ability to divide throughout a person's life span. The growth of these cells is well controlled, ensuring that only the right number of cells is always present in any tissue or organ.

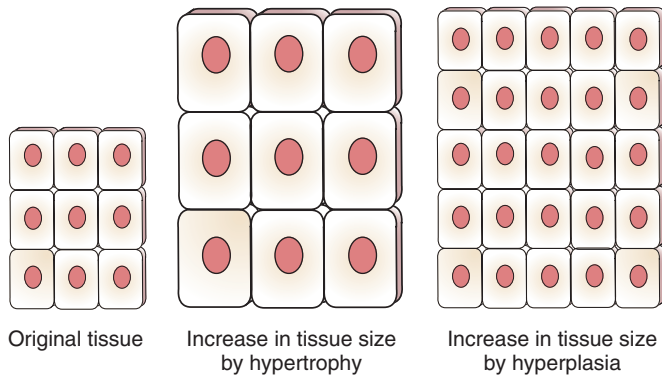


FIG. 23-1 Tissue growth by hypertrophy and hyperplasia.

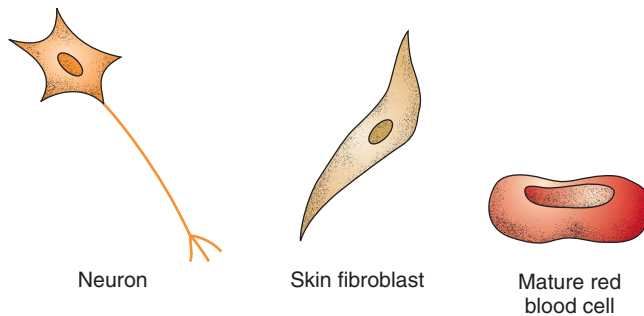


FIG. 23-2 Distinctive morphology of some normal cells.

Some tissues and organs stop growing by cell division after development is complete. For example, heart muscle cells no longer divide after fetal life; the number of heart muscle cells is fixed at birth. The size of the heart increases as the person grows because each cell gets larger, but the number of heart muscle cells does not increase. Growth that causes tissue to increase in size by enlarging each cell is **hypertrophy**. Growth that causes tissue to increase in size by increasing the number of cells is **hyperplasia** (Fig. 23-1).

Any new or continued cell growth not needed for normal development or replacement of dead and damaged tissues is called **neoplasia**. This cell growth is always abnormal even if it causes no harm. Whether the new cells are benign or cancerous, neoplastic cells develop from normal cells (*parent cells*). Thus cancer cells were once normal cells but changed to no longer look, grow, or function normally. The strict processes controlling normal growth and function have been lost. To understand how cancer cells grow, it is helpful to first understand the regulation and function of normal cells.

Biology of Normal Cells

Many different normal cells work together to make the whole person function at an optimal level. For optimal function, each cell must perform in a predictable manner.

Specific morphology is the feature in which each normal cell type has a distinct and recognizable appearance, size, and shape, as shown in Fig. 23-2.

A *small nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio* means that the nucleus of a normal cell does not take up much space inside the cell. As shown in Fig. 23-2, the size of the normal cell nucleus is small compared with the size of the rest of the cell, including the cytoplasm.

Differentiated function means that every normal cell has at least one special function it performs to contribute to

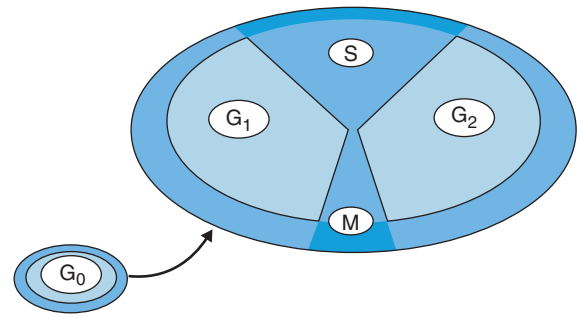


FIG. 23-3 The cell cycle.

whole-body function. For example, skin cells make keratin, liver cells make bile, cardiac muscle cells contract, nerve cells conduct impulses, and red blood cells make hemoglobin.

Tight adherence occurs because normal cells make proteins that protrude from the membranes, allowing cells to bind closely and tightly together. One such protein is fibronectin, which keeps most normal tissues bound tightly to each other. Exceptions are blood cells. Red blood cells and white blood cells produce no fibronectin and do not usually adhere together.

Nonmigratory means that normal cells do not wander throughout the body (except for blood cells). This occurs in normal cells because they are tightly bound together, which prevents cell wandering from one tissue into the next.

Orderly and well-regulated growth is a very important feature of normal cells. They divide (undergo mitosis) for only two reasons: (1) to develop normal tissue or (2) to replace lost or damaged normal tissue. Even when they are capable of mitosis, normal cells divide only when body conditions, including the need for more cells, adequate space, and sufficient nutrients and other resources, are just right. Cell division (**mitosis**), occurring in a well-recognized pattern, is described by the cell cycle. Fig. 23-3 shows the phases of the cell cycle. The amount of time needed for one cell to divide completely into two cells is the **generation time**. For normal cells, the generation time varies by tissue and organ type.

Living cells not actively reproducing are in a reproductive resting state termed G_0 . During the G_0 period, cells actively carry out their functions but do not divide. Normal cells spend most of their lives in the G_0 state rather than in a reproductive state.

Mitosis makes one cell divide into two cells. These two new cells are identical to each other and to the cell that began mitosis. The steps of entering and completing the cell cycle are tightly controlled. Much of this control is regulated by proteins produced by “suppressor genes.”

Whether a cell enters and completes the cell cycle to form two new cells depends on the presence and absence of specific proteins. Proteins that promote cells to enter and complete cell division are produced by oncogenes and are known as *cyclins*. When cyclins are activated, they allow a cell to leave G_0 and enter the cycle. These activated cyclins then drive the cell to progress through the different phases of the cell cycle and divide. Proteins produced by suppressor genes regulate the amount of cyclins present and ensure that cell division occurs only when it is needed. Thus normal cell division is a balance between the proteins that promote cell division (cyclins) and the proteins that limit cell division (suppressor gene products).

Fig. 23-4 shows the activities of the phases of the cell cycle (described below):

- **G₁.** In this phase, the cell is getting ready for division by taking on extra nutrients, making more energy, and growing extra membrane. The amount of cytoplasm also increases.
- **S.** Because making one cell into two cells requires twice as much of everything, including DNA, the cell must double its DNA content through DNA synthesis. This process occurs in S phase.
- **G₂.** In this phase, the cell makes important proteins that will be used in actual cell division and in normal physiologic function after cell division is complete.
- **M.** The single cell splits apart into two cells (actual mitosis) during M phase.

Contact inhibition is the stopping of further rounds of cell division when the dividing cell is completely surrounded and touched (contacted) by other cells. Of the normal cells that

can divide, each cell divides only when some of its surface is not in direct contact with another cell. Once a normal cell is in direct contact on all surface areas with other cells, it no longer undergoes mitosis. Thus normal cell division is contact inhibited.

Apoptosis is programmed cell death. Not only do normal cells have to divide only when needed and perform their specific differentiated functions, some cells also have to die at the appropriate time to ensure optimum body function. Thus normal cells have a finite life span. With each round of cell division, the telomeric DNA at the ends of the cell’s chromosomes shortens (see Chapter 6). When this DNA is gone, the cell responds to signals for apoptosis. The purpose of apoptosis is to ensure that each organ has an adequate number of cells at their functional peak.

Normal chromosomes (euploidy) is a feature of most normal human cells. These cells have 23 pairs of chromosomes, the correct number for human beings.

Biology of Abnormal Cells

Body cells are exposed to a variety of conditions that can alter how the cells grow or function. When either cell growth or cell function is changed, the cells are considered abnormal. Table 23-1 compares features of normal, benign tumor, and cancer (malignant) cells.

Features of Benign Tumor Cells

Benign tumor cells are normal cells growing in the wrong place or at the wrong time. Examples include moles, uterine fibroid tumors, skin tags, endometriosis, and nasal polyps. Benign tumor cells have these characteristics:

- *Specific morphology* occurs with benign tumors. They look like the tissues they come from, retaining the specific morphology of parent cells.
- A *small nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio* is a feature of benign tumors just like completely normal cells.
- *Specific differentiated functions* continue to be performed by benign tumors. For example, in endometriosis, a type of benign tumor, the normal lining of the uterus (endometrium) grows in an abnormal place (e.g., on an ovary, on the peritoneum, or in the chest cavity). This displaced endometrium acts just like normal endometrium by changing each month under the influence of estrogen. When the hormone level drops and the normal endometrium sheds from the uterus, the displaced endometrium, wherever it is, also sheds.

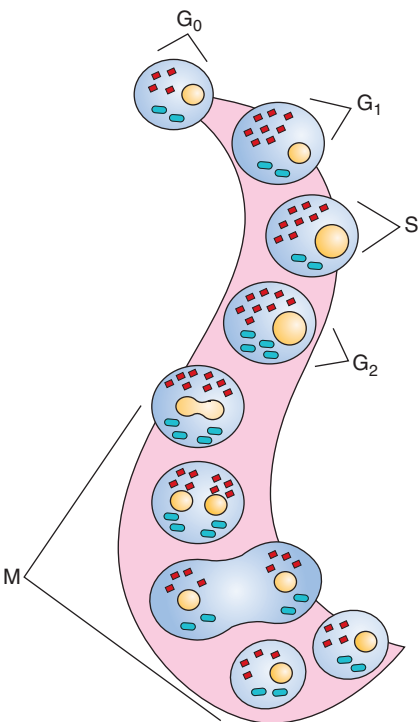


FIG. 23-4 Cellular events during mitotic cell division.

TABLE 23-1 CHARACTERISTICS OF NORMAL AND ABNORMAL CELLS			
CHARACTERISTIC	NORMAL CELL	BENIGN TUMOR CELL	MALIGNANT CELL
Cell division	None or slow	Continuous or inappropriate	Rapid or continuous
Appearance	Specific morphologic features	Specific morphologic features	Anaplastic
Nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio	Small	Small	Large
Differentiated functions	Many	Many	Some or none
Adherence	Tight	Tight	Loose
Migratory	No	No	Yes
Growth	Well regulated	Expansion	Invasion
Chromosomes	Diploid (euploid)	Diploid (euploid)	Aneuploid*
Mitotic index	Low	Low	High*

*Depends on the degree of malignant transformation.

- *Tight adherence* of benign tumor cells to each other occurs because they continue to make fibronectin. In addition, many benign tissues are “encapsulated,” or surrounded with fibrous connective tissue, helping to hold the benign tissue together.
- *No migration* or wandering of benign tissues occurs because they remain tightly bound and do not invade other body tissues.
- *Orderly growth* with normal growth patterns occurs in benign tumor cells even though their growth is not needed. Growth may continue beyond an appropriate time or occur in the wrong place, but the rate of growth is normal. The benign tumor grows by hyperplastic expansion. *It does not invade.*
- *Normal chromosomes* are usually found in benign tumor cells, although there are exceptions. Most of these cells have 23 pairs of chromosomes, the correct number for humans.

Features of Cancer Cells

Cancer (**malignant**) cells are abnormal, serve no useful function, and are harmful to normal body tissues. Cancers commonly have these features:

- *Anaplasia* is the cancer cells’ loss of the specific appearance of their parent cells. As a cancer cell becomes more malignant, it becomes smaller and rounded. This appearance change can make diagnosis of cancer type difficult, because many different types of cancer cells look alike.
- *A large nuclear-cytoplasmic ratio* occurs in cancer cells with the cancer cell nucleus being larger than that of a normal cell and the cancer cell being small. The nucleus occupies much of the space within the cancer cell, creating a large nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio.
- *Specific functions are lost* partially or completely in cancer cells. *Cancer cells serve no useful purpose.*
- *Loose adherence* is typical for cancer cells because they do not make fibronectin. As a result, cancer cells easily break off from the main tumor.
- *Migration* occurs because cancer cells do not bind tightly together and have many enzymes on their cell surfaces. These features allow the cells to slip through blood vessel walls and between tissues, spreading from the main tumor site to many other body sites. This ability to spread (**metastasize**) is unique to cancer cells and a major cause of death. Cancer cells expand by mitosis and invade other tissues, both close by and more remote from the original tumor. Invasion and persistent growth make untreated cancer deadly.
- *Contact inhibition does not occur* in cancer cells, even when all sides of these cells are in continuous contact with the surfaces of other cells. This persistence of cell division makes the disease difficult to control.
- *Rapid or continuous cell division* occurs in many types of cancer cells because they re-enter the cell cycle for mitosis almost continuously. In addition, some cancer cells have a short generation time (2 to 4 hours), but most cancer cells have a generation time similar to that of the parent cells. These cells also do not respond to signals for apoptosis. Most cancer cells have a lot of the enzyme *telomerase*, which maintains telomeric DNA. As a result, cancer cells do not respond to

apoptotic signals and have an unlimited life span (are “immortal”).

- *Abnormal chromosomes* (**aneuploidy**) are common in cancer cells as they become more malignant. Chromosomes are lost, gained, or broken; thus cancer cells can have more than 23 pairs or fewer than 23 pairs. Cancer cells also may have broken and rearranged chromosomes.

CANCER DEVELOPMENT

Carcinogenesis/Oncogenesis

Carcinogenesis and **oncogenesis** are other names for cancer development. Table 23-2 lists key concepts about cancer development. The process of changing a normal cell into a cancer cell is called **malignant transformation**, occurring through the steps of initiation, promotion, progression, and metastasis.

Initiation is the first step in carcinogenesis. Normal cells can become cancer cells if their genes promoting cell division, **oncogenes**, are turned on excessively (overexpressed). Initiation is a change in gene expression caused by anything that can penetrate a cell, get into the nucleus, and damage the DNA. Such changes can activate oncogenes that should have only limited expression and can damage suppressor genes, which normally limit oncogene activity. Thus initiation leads to excessive cell division through DNA damage that results in either loss of suppressor gene function or enhancement of oncogene function.

Initiation is an irreversible event that can lead to cancer development. After initiation, a cell can become a cancer cell if the cellular changes that occurred during initiation continue and cell division is not impaired. A cancer cell is not a health threat unless it can divide. If it cannot divide, it cannot form a tumor. *If growth conditions are right, however, widespread metastatic disease can develop from just one cancer cell.*

Substances that change the activity of a cell’s genes so that the cell becomes a cancer cell are **carcinogens**. Carcinogens

TABLE 23-2 KEY CONCEPTS RELATED TO CANCER DEVELOPMENT

- Neoplastic cells originate from normal body cells.
- Transformation of a normal cell into a cancer cell involves mutation of the genes (DNA) of the normal cell.
- Oncogenes that are overexpressed can cause a cell to develop into a tumor.
- Only one cell has to undergo malignant transformation for cancer to begin.
- Benign tumors grow by expansion, whereas malignant tumors grow by invasion.
- Most tumors arise from cells that are capable of cell division.
- A key feature of cancer cells is the loss of apoptosis. These cells have an “infinite” life span.
- Primary prevention of cancer involves avoiding exposure to known causes of cancer.
- Secondary prevention of cancer involves screening for early detection.
- Tobacco use is a causative or permissive factor in 30% of all cancers.
- Tumors that metastasize from the primary site into another organ are still designated as tumors of the originating tissue.

may be chemicals, physical agents, or viruses. There are more than 50 substances known to cause cancer and about another two hundred that are suspected to be carcinogens. The National Toxicology Program's website lists these substances (<http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/>; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2011). Chapters presenting the care of patients with specific cancers discuss specific carcinogens (when known) within the Etiology sections.

Promotion is the enhancement of growth of an initiated cell. **Promoters** are substances that promote or enhance growth of the initiated cancer cell. Once a normal cell has been initiated by a carcinogen and is a cancer cell, it can become a tumor if its growth is enhanced. Many normal hormones and body proteins, like insulin and estrogen, can act as promoters and make altered cells divide more frequently. The time between a cell's initiation and the development of an overt tumor is called the **latency period**, which can range from months to years. Exposure to promoters can shorten the latency period.

Progression is the continued change of a cancer, making it more malignant over time. Many processes within the tumor must take place for progression to occur. After cancer cells have grown to the point that a detectable tumor is formed (a 1-cm tumor has at least 1 billion cells in it), other events must occur for this tumor to become a health problem. First, the tumor must develop its own blood supply. In the early stages, the tumor receives nutrition only by diffusion. After the tumor reaches 1 cm, however, diffusion is not efficient. The tumor then makes substances that trigger nearby capillaries to grow new branches into the tumor, ensuring the tumor's continued nourishment and growth.

As tumor cells continue to divide, some of the new cells change features from the original, initiated cancer cell and

form groups that differ from the original cancer cell. Some of the differences provide these cell groups with advantages (*selection advantages*) that allow them to live and divide no matter how the conditions around them change. These tumor changes may allow it to become more malignant. Over time, the tumor cells have fewer and fewer normal cell features.

The original tumor is called the **primary tumor**. It is usually identified by the tissue from which it arose (*parent tissue*), such as in breast cancer or lung cancer. When primary tumors are located in vital organs, such as the brain or lungs, they can grow excessively and either lethally damage the vital organ or interfere with that organ's ability to perform its vital function. At other times, the primary tumor is located in soft tissue that can expand without damage as the tumor grows. One such site is the breast. The breast is not a vital organ, and even if it had a large tumor in it, the primary tumor alone would not cause the patient's death. When the tumor spreads from the original site into vital areas, life functions can be disrupted and death may follow.

Metastasis occurs when cancer cells move from the primary location by breaking off from the original group and establishing remote colonies. These additional tumors are called **metastatic** or **secondary tumors**. *Even though the tumor is now in another organ, it is still a cancer from the original altered tissue. For example, when breast cancer spreads to the lung and the bone, it is still breast cancer in the lung and bone—not lung cancer and not bone cancer.* Metastasis occurs through many steps, as shown in Fig. 23-5.

Tumors first extend into surrounding tissues. The cancer cells secrete enzymes that open up areas of surrounding tissue. Pressure, created as the tumor increases in size, forces tumor cells to invade new territory.

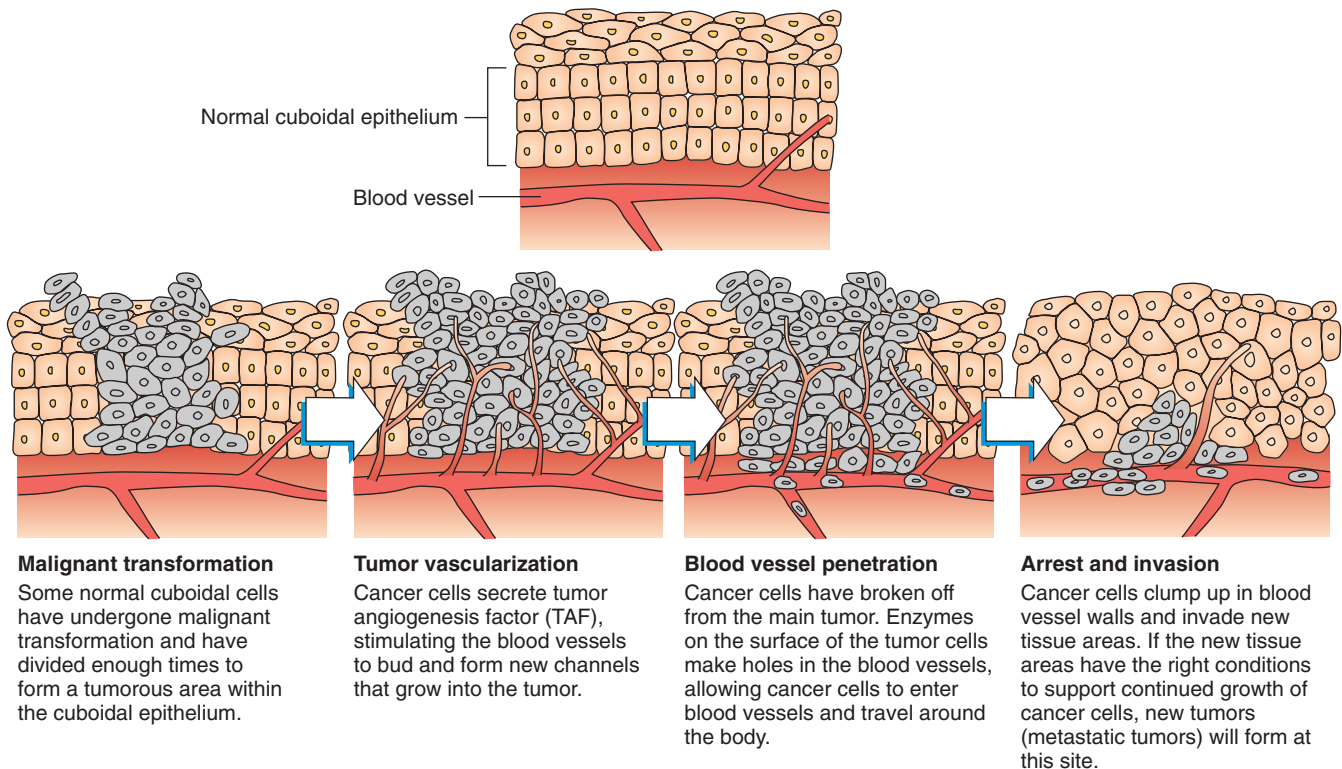


FIG. 23-5 The steps of metastasis.

Spread to distant organs and tissues requires cancer cells to penetrate blood vessels. **Bloodborne metastasis** (tumor cell release into the blood) is the most common cause of cancer spread. Enzymes secreted by tumor cells also make large pores in the patient's blood vessels, allowing tumor cells to enter the blood and circulate throughout the body. Because tumor cells are loosely held together, clumps of cells break off of the primary tumor into blood vessels for transport.

Tumor cells circulate through the blood and enter tissues at remote sites. Clumps of cancer cells can become trapped in capillaries. These clumps damage the capillary wall and allow cancer cells to leave the capillary and enter the surrounding tissue.

When conditions in the remote site can support tumor cell growth, the cells stop circulating (arrest) and invade the surrounding tissues, creating secondary tumors. Table 23-3 lists the common sites of metastasis for specific tumor types.

Another way cancers metastasize is by *lymphatic spread*. Lymphatic spread is related to the number, structure, and location of lymph nodes and vessels. Primary sites that are rich in lymphatics have more early metastatic spread than areas with few lymphatics.

Cancer Classification

Cancers are classified by the type of tissue from which they arise (e.g., glandular, connective) (McCance et al., 2010). Terms that describe cancer by tissue origin are listed in Table 23-4. Other ways to classify cancer include biologic behavior, anatomic site, and degree of differentiation.

About 100 different types of cancer arise from various tissues or organs. Fig. 23-6 compares cancer distribution by

site and gender. Cancers are divided into two major categories: solid and hematologic.

Solid tumors develop from specific tissues (e.g., breast cancer and lung cancer). Hematologic cancers arise from blood cell-forming tissues (e.g., leukemias and lymphomas).

Cancer Grading, Ploidy, and Staging

Systems of grading and staging have been developed to help standardize cancer diagnosis, prognosis, and treatment.

Grading of a tumor classifies cellular aspects of the cancer.

TABLE 23-3 COMMON SITES OF METASTASIS FOR DIFFERENT CANCER TYPES

Breast Cancer	Prostate Cancer
Bone*	Bone (especially spine and legs)*
Lung*	Pelvic nodes
Liver	
Brain	
Lung Cancer	Melanoma
Brain*	GI tract
Bone	Lymph nodes
Liver	Lung
Lymph nodes	Brain
Pancreas	
Colorectal Cancer	Primary Brain Cancer
Liver*	Central nervous system
Lymph nodes	
Adjacent structures	

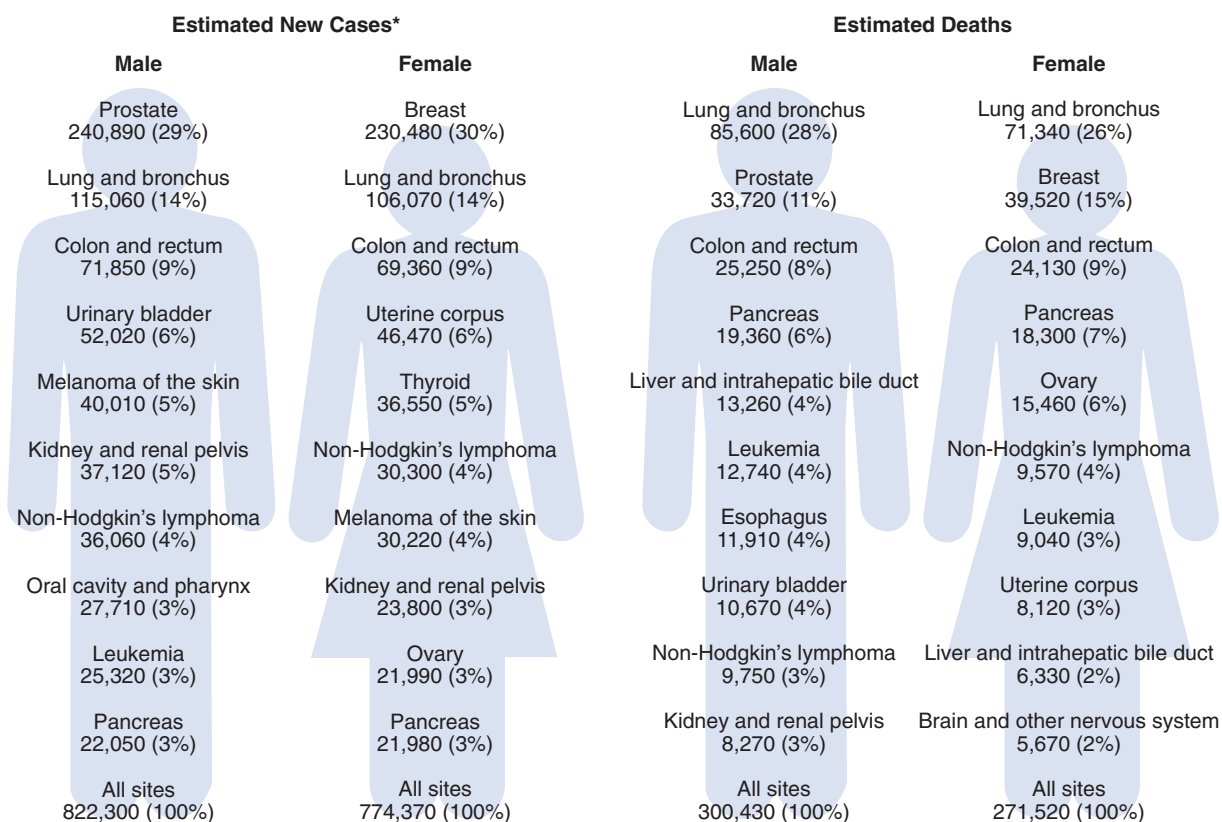
*Most common site of metastasis for the specific malignant neoplasm.

TABLE 23-4 CLASSIFICATION OF TUMORS BY TISSUE OF ORIGIN

PREFIX	TISSUE OF ORIGIN	BENIGN TUMOR	MALIGNANT TUMOR*
Adeno	Epithelial glands	Adenoma	Adenocarcinoma
Chondro	Cartilage	Chondroma	Chondrosarcoma
Fibro	Fibrous connective	Fibroma	Fibrosarcoma
Glio	Glial cells (brain)	Glioma	Glioblastoma
Hemangio	Blood vessel	Hemangioma	Hemangiosarcoma
Hepato	Liver	Hepatoma	Hepatocarcinoma Hepatoblastoma
Leiomyo	Smooth muscle	Leiomyoma	Leiomyosarcoma
Lipo	Fat/adipose	Lipoma	Liposarcoma
Lympho	Lymphoid tissues		Malignant lymphomas Hodgkin's lymphoma Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma Burkitt's lymphoma Cutaneous T-cell
Melano	Pigment-producing skin		Melanoma
Meningioma	Meninges	Meningioma	Malignant meningioma Meningioblastoma
Neuro	Nerve tissue	Neuroma Neurofibroma	Neurosarcoma Neuroblastoma
Osteo	Bone	Osteoma	Osteosarcoma
Renal	Kidney		Renal cell carcinoma
Rhabdo	Skeletal muscle	Rhabdomyoma	Rhabdomyosarcoma
Squamous	Epithelial layer of skin, mucous membranes, and organ linings	Papilloma	Squamous cell carcinoma of skin, bladder, lungs, cervix

*Carcinomas are tumors of glandular tissue; sarcomas are tumors of connective tissue; blastomas are tumors of less differentiated, embryonal tissues.

Leading Sites of New Cancer Cases and Deaths – 2011 Estimates*



*Excludes basal and squamous cell skin cancers and in situ carcinoma except urinary bladder.

Note: Percentages may not total 100% due to rounding.

FIG. 23-6 Cancer incidence and death by site and gender.

Ploidy classifies tumor chromosomes as normal or abnormal. **Staging** classifies clinical aspects of the cancer.

Grading is needed because some cancer cells are “more malignant” than others, varying in their aggressiveness and sensitivity to treatment. Some cancer cells barely resemble the tissue from which they arose, are aggressive, and spread rapidly. These cells are a “high-grade” cancer. On the basis of cell appearance and activity, grading compares the cancer cell with the normal parent tissue from which it arose. It is a means of evaluating the patient with cancer for prognosis and appropriate therapy. Grading also allows health care professionals to evaluate the results of management and compare local, regional, national, and international statistics.

Different clinical groups have established different grading systems for different types of cancer cells, but overall, they resemble the standard system listed in Table 23-5. This system rates cancer cells with the lowest rating given to those cells that closely resemble normal cells and the highest rating given to cancer cells that barely resemble normal cells. Grading systems for different cancers are presented in the clinical chapters in which care is discussed.

Ploidy is the description of cancer cells by chromosome number and appearance. Normal human cells have 46 chromosomes (23 pairs), the normal diploid number (**euploidy**). When malignant transformation occurs, changes in the genes and chromosomes also occur. Some cancer cells gain or lose whole chromosomes and may have structural abnormalities

TABLE 23-5 GRADING OF MALIGNANT TUMORS

GRADE	CELLULAR CHARACTERISTICS
G _x	Grade cannot be determined.
G ₁	Tumor cells are well differentiated and closely resemble the normal cells from which they arose. This grade is considered a low grade of malignant change. These tumors are malignant but are relatively slow growing.
G ₂	Tumor cells are moderately differentiated; they still retain some of the characteristics of normal cells but also have more malignant characteristics than do G ₁ tumor cells.
G ₃	Tumor cells are poorly differentiated, but the tissue of origin can usually be established. The cells have few normal cell characteristics.
G ₄	Tumor cells are poorly differentiated and retain no normal cell characteristics. Determination of the tissue of origin is difficult and perhaps impossible.

of the remaining chromosomes, a condition called **aneuploidy**. The degree of aneuploidy usually increases with the degree of malignancy. Some specific chromosome changes are associated with specific cancers, and their presence is used for diagnosis and prognosis. One example is the

TABLE 23-6 STAGING OF CANCER—TNM CLASSIFICATION

Primary Tumor (T)	
T _x	Primary tumor cannot be assessed
T ₀	No evidence of primary tumor
T _{is}	Carcinoma in situ
T ₁ , T ₂ , T ₃ , T ₄	Increasing size and/or local extent of the primary tumor
Regional Lymph Nodes (N)	
N _x	Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
N ₀	No regional lymph node metastasis
N ₁ , N ₂ , N ₃	Increasing involvement of regional lymph nodes
Distant Metastasis (M)	
M _x	Presence of distant metastasis cannot be assessed
M ₀	No distant metastasis
M ₁	Distant metastasis

“Philadelphia” chromosome abnormality often present in chronic myelogenous leukemia cells (see [Chapter 42](#)).

Staging determines the exact location of the cancer and its degree of metastasis at diagnosis. Staging is important because, for most cancers, the smaller the cancer is at diagnosis and the less it has spread, the greater the chances are that treatment will result in a cure. Cancer stage also influences selection of therapy. Staging is done by clinical staging, surgical staging, and pathologic staging. *Clinical staging* assesses the patient’s clinical manifestations and evaluates clinical signs for tumor size and possible spread. *Surgical staging* assesses the tumor size, number, sites, and spread by inspection at surgery. *Pathologic staging* is the most definitive type, determining the tumor size, number, sites, and spread by pathologic examination of tissues obtained at surgery.

The American Joint Committee on Cancer developed the **tumor, node, metastasis (TNM)** system to describe the general anatomic extent of cancers. The stages guide treatment and are useful for prognosis and comparison of treatment results. The TNM staging systems have specific prognostic value for each solid tumor type. [Table 23-6](#) shows a basic TNM staging system. TNM staging is not useful for leukemia or lymphomas. Staging for these cancers is discussed in [Chapter 42](#). Additional specific staging systems include Dukes’ staging of colon and rectal cancer and Clark’s levels method of staging skin cancer.

Tumor growth is assessed in terms of **doubling time** (the amount of time it takes for a tumor to double in size) and **mitotic index** (the percentage of actively dividing cells within a tumor). The smallest detectable tumor is about 1 cm in diameter and contains 1 billion cells. To reach this size, it must undergo at least 30 doublings. A tumor with a mitotic index of less than 10% is a slow-growing tumor; a tumor with an index of 85% is fast growing. Tumors have a wide range of growth rates. Fast-growing tumors, such as lymphomas, may double in 4 weeks; an adenocarcinoma of the lung may double in 20 to 40 weeks.

Cancer Etiology and Genetic Risk

Carcinogenesis takes years and depends on several tumor and patient factors. Three interacting factors influence cancer development: exposure to carcinogens, genetic

predisposition, and immune function. These factors account for variation in cancer development from one person to another, even when each person is exposed to the same hazards.

Oncogene activation is the main mechanism of carcinogenesis regardless of the specific cause. These oncogenes are turned on (expressed) under controlled conditions when cells need to divide for normal growth and replacement of dead or damaged tissues. At other times, they are turned off, controlled, or suppressed by products of “suppressor genes.”

When a normal cell is exposed to any carcinogen (initiator), the normal cell’s DNA can be damaged or mutated. The mutations often damage suppressor genes, preventing them from producing proteins that control the expression of oncogenes. As a result, the oncogenes are overexpressed and can cause the cells to change from normal cells to cancer cells. When oncogenes are overexpressed in a cell, excessive amounts of cyclins are produced and upset the balance between cell growth enhancement and cell growth limitation. The effect of these excessive cyclins is greater than the effect of the suppressor gene products, thus allowing uncontrolled cell division.

About 70 different oncogenes have been identified. *These oncogenes are not abnormal genes but are part of every cell’s normal makeup.* Oncogenes become a problem only if they are overexpressed as a result of exposure to carcinogenic agents or events. Both external and personal factors can activate oncogenes.

External Factors Causing Cancer

External factors, including environmental exposure, are responsible for about 80% of cancer in North America ([ACS, 2010](#)). Environmental carcinogens are chemical, physical, or viral agents that cause cancer ([USDHHS, 2010](#)).

Chemical carcinogenesis can occur from exposures to many known chemicals, drugs, and other products used in everyday life. Hundreds more are suspected of being carcinogenic.

Chemicals vary in how carcinogenic they are. For example tobacco and alcohol appear to be only mildly carcinogenic. For these substances, chronic, long-term exposure to large amounts is required before a cancer develops. However, these two substances can act as co-carcinogens, meaning that when they are taken together, they enhance each other’s carcinogenic activity.

Not all cells are susceptible to chemical carcinogenesis to the same degree. Normal cells that have the ability to divide are at greater risk for cancer development than are normal cells that are not capable of cell division. For example, cancers commonly arise in bone marrow, skin, lining of the GI tract, ductal cells of the breast, and lining of the lungs. All of these cells normally undergo cell division. Cancers of nerve tissue, cardiac muscle, and skeletal muscle are rare. These cells do not normally undergo cell division.

About 30% of cancers diagnosed in North America are related to tobacco use ([ACS, 2011](#); [ACS, 2010](#); [Canadian Cancer Society, 2010](#)). Tobacco is the single most important source of preventable carcinogenesis. It contains many different carcinogens and co-carcinogens. Long-term tobacco use first initiates and then promotes cancer. The risk for cancer development from tobacco use depends on a person’s immune function, genetic susceptibility, amount of tobacco exposure, type of tobacco exposure, and tobacco tar content.

TABLE 23-7 CANCER TYPES ASSOCIATED WITH TOBACCO USE

• Lung	• Pancreatic	• Liver
• Oral cavity	• Cervical	• Stomach
• Pharyngeal	• Kidney	• Myeloid leukemia
• Laryngeal	• Bladder	
• Esophagus		

Data from American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. Report No. 00-300M–No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.

Tissues with the greatest risk for tobacco-induced cancer are those that have direct contact with tobacco or tobacco smoke. Cigarette smoking and tobacco use also promote the development of other cancers. Table 23-7 lists the specific cancers that appear to be associated with tobacco use.

Physical carcinogenesis from physical agents or events causes cancer by the same mechanism as for chemical carcinogens (i.e., DNA damage). Two physical agents that are known to cause cancer are radiation and chronic irritation.

Even small doses of radiation affect cells to some degree. Some effects are temporary and can be repaired. Other effects cannot be repaired and either may be lethal to the damaged cell or induce cancer in the damaged cell. The two types of radiation that cause cancer are ionizing and ultraviolet (UV). Some ionizing radiation is found naturally in such elements as radon, uranium, and radium. Most rocks and soil contain various amounts of uranium and radium. Other sources of ionizing radiation include x-rays for diagnosis and treatment of disease, as well as cosmic radiation. UV radiation is a type of solar radiation, coming from the sun. Other sources of UV radiation include tanning beds and germicidal lights. UV rays do not penetrate deeply, and the most common cancer type caused by UV exposure is skin cancer.

Both ionizing and UV radiation mutate genes. Radiation exposure induces cancers more often among cells that can divide but can cause cancer among non-dividing cells as well.

Chronic irritation and tissue trauma are suspected to cause cancer. The incidence of skin cancer is higher in the scars of people with burn scars or other types of severe skin injury. Chronically irritated tissues undergo frequent cell division and thus are at an increased risk for DNA mutation.

Viral carcinogenesis occurs when viruses infect body cells and break the DNA strands. Viruses then insert their own genetic material into the human DNA. Breaking the DNA, along with viral gene insertion, mutates the normal cell's DNA and can either activate an oncogene or damage suppressor genes. Viruses that cause cancer are **oncoviruses**. Table 23-8 lists cancers of known viral origin.

Dietary factors related to cancer development are poorly understood although dietary practices are suspected to alter cancer risk. Because dietary factors are rarely independent of other possible carcinogenic agents, evidence of dietary contributions to cancer development is clouded. Suspected dietary factors include low fiber intake, high intake of red meat, and high animal fat intake. Preservatives, contaminants, preparation methods, and additives (dyes, flavorings, sweeteners) may have cancer-promoting effects. Chart 23-1 lists foods that have carcinogenic potential and those that are thought to be protective against cancer development.

TABLE 23-8 CANCERS ASSOCIATED WITH A KNOWN VIRAL ORIGIN

VIRUS	MALIGNANCIES
Epstein-Barr virus	Burkitt's lymphoma, B-cell lymphoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma
Hepatitis B virus	Primary liver carcinoma
Hepatitis C virus	Primary liver carcinoma, possibly B-cell lymphomas
Human papilloma virus	Cervical carcinoma, vulvar carcinoma, and other anogenital carcinomas
Human lymphotropic virus type I	Adult T-cell leukemia
Human lymphotropic virus type II	Hairy cell leukemia

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Toxicology Program. (2011). *Report on carcinogens* (12th ed.). Retrieved July 2011 from <http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/roc12>.

CHART 23-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT**Dietary Habits to Reduce Cancer Risk**

- Avoid excessive intake of animal fat.
- Avoid nitrites (prepared lunch meats, sausage, bacon).
- Minimize your intake of red meat.
- Keep your alcohol consumption to no more than one or two drinks per day.
- Eat more bran.
- Eat more cruciferous vegetables, such as broccoli, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, and cabbage.
- Eat foods high in vitamin A (e.g., apricots, carrots, leafy green and yellow vegetables) and vitamin C (e.g., fresh fruits and vegetables, especially citrus fruits).

Personal Factors and Cancer Development

Personal factors, including immune function, age, and genetic risk, also affect whether a person is likely to develop cancer.

Immune function protects the body from foreign invaders and non-self cells (see Chapter 19). Non-self cells include cells that are no longer normal, such as cancer cells. The part of the immune system that protects against cancer is cell-mediated immunity. Natural killer (NK) and helper T-cells provide immune surveillance.

The role of the immune system in protecting against cancer is supported by an increased cancer incidence in immunosuppressed people. Adults older than 60 years have immune systems that function at less-than-optimal levels, and therefore this group has a higher incidence of cancer compared with that of the general population. Organ transplant recipients taking immunosuppressive drugs to prevent organ rejection also have a higher incidence of cancer. In patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), cancer incidence may be as high as 70%.

Advancing age is the single most important risk factor for cancer (ACS, 2011). As a person ages, immune protection decreases and external exposures to carcinogens accumulate. Manifestations of cancer in older patients may be overlooked as changes of normal aging. Teach older adults to be aware of and report symptoms such as the seven warning signs of

TABLE 23-9 THE SEVEN WARNING SIGNS OF CANCER

C	C hanges in bowel or bladder habits
A	A sore that does not heal
U	U nusual bleeding or discharge
T	T hickening or lump in the breast or elsewhere
I	I ndigestion or difficulty swallowing
O	O bvious change in a wart or mole
N	N agging cough or hoarseness

cancer (Table 23-9) to health care providers. Health care providers should investigate all manifestations suggestive of disease. Cancer assessment considerations for the older adult are listed in Chart 23-2.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Genetic risk for cancer occurs in a small percent of the population; however, people who have a genetic predisposition are at very high risk for cancer development (Crockett-Maillet, 2010). As previously discussed, suppressor gene damage and oncogene overexpression are risk factors related to carcinogenesis. Mutations in suppressor genes or oncogenes can be inherited when they first occur in germ-line cells (sperm and ova) and are then passed on to one's children, in whom all cells contain the inherited mutations. In some people, the sequence of a suppressor gene has been mutated, which reduces or halts its function and allows oncogene overexpression. In other people, the suppressor genes are normal and the oncogene is mutated and does not respond to suppressor gene signals. With either condition, the risk for cancer development increases among people who inherit these mutations.

These mutations or variations in gene sequence may be small single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) or may be large areas of mutations. Both types of gene problems can be inherited or can occur as a result of exposure to carcinogens. Patterns of genetic risk for cancer have also been identified, including:

- Inherited predisposition for specific cancers
- Inherited conditions associated with cancer
- Familial clustering
- Chromosomal aberrations

Table 23-10 lists conditions associated with an increased genetic risk for cancer development.

Genetic testing for cancer predisposition is available to confirm or rule out a person's genetic risk for a few specific cancers. These tests are performed on blood and are expensive, and the cost often is not covered by insurance. Genetic testing should not be performed unless a family history clearly indicates the possibility of increased genetic risk and the patient wants to have the test results. *These tests do not diagnose the presence of cancer; they only provide risk information.*

A variety of issues and potential problems exist with genetic testing for cancer risk. Correct interpretation of the results is critical. Ideally, a genetic counselor is involved in giving the patient information before, as well as after, testing is performed. *When a patient tests positive for a cancer-causing gene mutation, his or her risk for cancer development is greatly increased; however, the cancer still may never develop.*

Other issues regarding genetic testing include who will have access to the information and whether to share the test

CHART 23-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Cancer Assessment

CANCER TYPE	ASSESSMENT CONSIDERATION
Colorectal cancer	Ask the patient whether bowel habits have changed over the past year (e.g., in consistency, frequency, color). Is there any obvious blood in the stool? Test at least one stool specimen for occult blood during the patient's hospitalization. Encourage the patient to have a baseline colonoscopy. Encourage the patient to reduce dietary intake of animal fats, red meat, and smoked meats. Encourage the patient to increase dietary intake of bran, vegetables, and fruit.
Bladder cancer	Ask the patient about the presence of: Pain on urination Blood in the urine Cloudy urine Increased frequency or urgency
Prostate cancer	Ask the patient about: Hesitancy Change in the size of the urine stream Pain in the back or legs History of urinary tract infections
Skin cancer	Examine skin areas for moles or warts. Ask the patient about changes in moles (e.g., color, edges, sensation).
Leukemia	Observe the skin for color, petechiae, or ecchymosis. Ask the patient about: Fatigue Bruising Bleeding tendency History of infections and illnesses Night sweats Unexplained fevers
Lung cancer	Observe the skin and mucous membranes for color. How many words can the patient say between breaths? Ask the patient about: Cough Hoarseness Smoking history Exposure to inhalation irritants Shortness of breath Activity tolerance Frothy or bloody sputum Pain in the arms or chest Difficulty swallowing

results with family members. Many patients fear that if they test positive for a cancer-causing gene, they may face discrimination for insurance coverage or in the workplace. Genetic testing has implications for the entire family, not just the patient being tested. For more information on genetic testing, see Chapter 6.

When risks for cancer development are assessed, however, ethnicity and genetic predisposition cannot be considered alone. Behavior and socioeconomic factors must also be assessed. The American Cancer Society (2009, 2011) reports

TABLE 23-10 CONDITIONS ASSOCIATED WITH A GENETIC PREDISPOSITION FOR CANCER

CONDITION	SPECIFIC CANCER TYPE
Inherited cancers*	Breast cancer Prostate cancer Ovarian cancer
Familial clustering	Breast cancer Melanoma
Bloom syndrome	Leukemia
Familial polyposis	Colorectal cancer
Chromosomal aberrations	
Down syndrome (47 chromosomes)	Leukemia
Klinefelter syndrome (47,XXY)	Breast cancer
Turner's syndrome (45,XO)	Leukemia Gonadal carcinoma Meningioma Colorectal cancer

*Not all breast, prostate, or ovarian cancers are inherited.

TABLE 23-11 RACIAL DIFFERENCES IN CANCER DEVELOPMENT

White Common Cancer Types 1. Lung 2. Breast 3. Colorectal 4. Prostate	Asian American Common Cancer Types 1. Breast 2. Colorectal 3. Prostate 4. Lung 5. Stomach
African American Common Cancer Types 1. Lung 2. Prostate 3. Breast 4. Colorectal 5. Uterine	Hispanic American Common Cancer Types 1. Prostate 2. Breast 3. Colorectal 4. Lung

Data from American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

The incidence of cancer varies among races. [American Cancer Society \(ACS\) data \(2009\)](#) show that African Americans have a higher incidence of cancer than white people do and the death rate is higher for African Americans. Since 1960, the overall incidence among African Americans has increased 27%, whereas for white people it has increased 12%. Cancer sites and cancer-related mortality vary along racial lines as well. One explanation for this difference is that more African Americans have less access to health care. Thus they are more often diagnosed with later-stage cancer that is more difficult to cure or control. However, this disparity in health care access does not explain all differences.

Table 23-11 shows common cancers among white, African American, Asian, and Hispanic populations. Understanding these variations can help in planning prevention and early detection strategies that are ethnically specific.

that cancer incidence and survival are often related to socioeconomic factors. These factors include the availability of health care services or the belief that seeking early health care has a positive effect on the outcome of cancer diagnosis.

CANCER PREVENTION

Cancer prevention activities can focus on primary prevention or secondary prevention. **Primary prevention** is the use of strategies to prevent the actual occurrence of cancer. This method of cancer prevention is most effective when there is a known cause for a cancer type. **Secondary prevention** is the use of screening strategies to detect cancer early, at a time when cure or control is more likely.

Primary Prevention

Avoidance of known or potential carcinogens is an effective primary prevention strategy. This method is effective when a cause of cancer is known and avoidance is easily accomplished. For example, teach people to use skin protection during sun exposure to avoid skin cancer. Much lung cancer can be avoided by not using tobacco and by eliminating environmental asbestos exposure. Teach everyone about the dangers of cigarette smoking and other forms of tobacco use. Provide information on smoking cessation strategies and support systems. Teach people who are exposed to asbestos (or any other carcinogen) in the workplace to use personal protective equipment that reduces direct contact with this substance. As more cancer causes are identified, avoidance may become even more effective.

Modifying associated factors appears to have a positive influence in reducing cancer risk. Absolute causes are not known for many cancers, but some conditions appear to increase risk. Examples are the increased incidence of cancer among people who consume alcohol; the association of a diet high in fat and low in fiber with colon cancer, breast cancer, and ovarian cancer; and a greater incidence of cervical cancer among women who have multiple sexual partners ([Wells, 2008](#)). Modifying behavior to reduce the associated factor may decrease the risk for cancer development. Therefore teach all people to limit their intake of alcohol to no more than one ounce per day and to include more fruits, vegetables, and whole grains in their diets. Instruct women about the importance of limiting the number of sexual partners and to use safer sex practices to avoid exposure to viruses that can increase the risk for cervical cancer.

Removal of “at risk” tissues reduces cancer risk for a person who has a known high risk for developing a specific type of cancer. Examples include removing moles to prevent conversion to skin cancer, removing colon polyps to prevent colon cancer, and removing breasts to prevent breast cancer. Not all “at risk” tissues can be removed (e.g., those that are part of essential organs).

Chemoprevention is a newer form of potential cancer prevention. This strategy uses drugs, chemicals, natural nutrients, or other substances to disrupt one or more steps important to cancer development. These agents may be able to reverse existing gene damage or halt the progression of the transformation process. Currently, hundreds of agents are under investigation for chemoprevention. At this time, only a few agents have been found effective and are commonly prescribed. These include the use of aspirin and celecoxib (Celebrex) to reduce the risk for colon cancer, the use of vitamin D and tamoxifen to reduce the risk for breast cancer, and the use of lycopene to reduce the risk for prostate cancer ([ACS, 2010](#)).

An emerging issue in this area is that studies of chemoprevention performed using animal models do not always correlate to a reduction of carcinogenesis in humans. In addition,

there is person-to-person variability in human response to chemoprevention. It is likely that individual genetic factors influence the effectiveness of any agent in the prevention of carcinogenesis.

The goal of chemopreventive strategies is prevention of cancer development. Target populations for whom chemoprevention might be effective include:

- Healthy people with no known specific cancer risk
- People at greater-than-normal risk because of increased environmental exposure or decreased immune function
- People with precancerous lesions
- People with a history of cancer

Vaccination is a new method of primary cancer prevention. Although vaccines against colon cancer and others are being explored, currently the only vaccine approved for cancer prevention is Gardasil. This vaccine prevents infection from several forms of the human papilloma virus (HPV). As more viruses are identified as being cancer causing, it is hoped that vaccines will be developed to prevent those viral infections.

Secondary Prevention

Regular screening for cancer does not reduce cancer incidence but can greatly reduce some types of cancer deaths. Teach all adults the benefits of participating in specific routine screening techniques annually as part of health maintenance. General screening recommendations are listed in chapters discussing cancers by organ system. The age and type of participation in specific screening tests are different for people who have an identified increased risk for a specific cancer type. Examples of recommended screenings include (ACS, 2009, 2011):

- Yearly mammography for women older than 40 years
- Yearly clinical breast examination for women older than 40 years
- Colonoscopy at age 50 years and then every 10 years
- Yearly fecal occult blood for adults of all ages
- Yearly prostate-specific antigen (PSA) test and digital rectal examination (DRE) for men older than 50 years

Because cancer development clearly involves gene changes (either inherited gene mutations or acquired gene damage), researchers have suggested that altering damaged genes could prevent cancer development. Currently, people can be screened for some gene mutations that increase the risk for cancer. A few examples of these known gene mutations include the *BRCA1* gene, which increases the risk for both breast and ovarian cancer; the *BRCA2* gene, which increases the risk for breast cancer; and the *APC*, *MLH1*, and *MSH2* genes, which increase the risk for colon cancer.

When taking a patient history and the person appears to have a strong family history of either breast cancer or colon cancer, create a three-generation pedigree to more fully explore the possibility of genetic risk. If a pattern of risk emerges, inform the person about the possible benefits of genetic screening and advise him or her to talk with a genetics professional for more information. Screening can help a person at increased genetic risk for cancer to alter lifestyle factors, participate in early detection methods, or even have at-risk tissue removed. Genetic screening has some personal risks as well as potential benefits (see Chapter 6). Although it is not yet possible to “fix” or remove an abnormal gene in humans, gene therapy in the future is not out of the realm of possibility.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients to use sunscreen and to wear protective clothing during sun exposure.
- Encourage patients to participate in the recommended cancer-screening activities for their age-group and cancer risk category.
- Inform all patients who smoke that smoking increases the risk for development of many cancer types.
- Assist anyone interested in smoking cessation to find an appropriate smoking cessation program.
- Assess the patient’s knowledge about causes of cancer and his or her screening/prevention practices.
- Assist patients who fear a cancer diagnosis to understand that finding cancer at an early stage increases the chances for cure.
- Ask all patients about their exposures to environmental agents that are known or suspected to increase the risk for cancer.
- Obtain a detailed family history (at least three generations) and use this information to create a pedigree to assess the patient’s risk for familial or inherited cancer.

- Teach anyone, especially older adults, the “seven warning signs of cancer” (see Table 23-9).

Physiological Integrity

- Cancer cells originate from normal body cells.
- Transformation of a normal cell into a cancer cell involves mutation of the genes (DNA) of the normal cell.
- Oncogenes that are overexpressed can cause a cell to develop into a tumor.
- Only one cell has to undergo malignant transformation for cancer to begin.
- Benign tumors grow by expansion, whereas malignant tumors grow by invasion.
- Most tumors arise from cells that are capable of cell division.
- A key feature of cancer cells is the loss of apoptosis. These cells have an “infinite” life span.
- Primary prevention of cancer involves avoiding exposure to known causes of cancer.
- Secondary prevention of cancer involves screening for early detection.
- Tobacco use is a causative factor in 30% of all cancers.
- Tumors that metastasize from the primary site into another organ are still designated as tumors of the originating tissue.

CHAPTER

24

Care of Patients with Cancer

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Modify the environment to protect patients who have neutropenia or thrombocytopenia.
2. Use personal protective equipment (PPE) when administering IV and oral chemotherapy and when handling excreta of a patient within 48 hours of receiving chemotherapy.
3. Coordinate with the health care team to adjust the environment for protection of the patient having photodynamic therapy.
4. Maintain radiation precautions when caring for a patient receiving radiation therapy using implanted sources.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach patients and family members how to avoid injury and infection when blood counts are low.
6. Teach patients and family members skin protection measures for radiation therapy and photodynamic therapy.
7. Teach patients and family members the proper scheduling of antiemetic therapy to ensure prevention or relief of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during therapeutic procedures.

9. Encourage patients and family members to express their concerns about the diagnosis of cancer, its prognosis, and its treatment.
10. Assess the patient's and family's use of coping strategies related to cancer, cancer treatment, possible role changes, and possible outcomes of the disease and its treatment.
11. Teach patients strategies to improve body image changes occurring with cancer treatment.

Physiological Integrity

12. Interpret laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the presence of cancer treatment side effects and oncologic emergencies.
13. Prioritize nursing interventions for the patient with neutropenia or thrombocytopenia.
14. Prioritize nursing care for the patient receiving radiation therapy.
15. Explain the rationale for hormonal manipulation therapy.
16. Discuss the uses of biological response modifiers and growth factors as supportive therapy in the treatment of cancer.
17. Explain the basis and effects of targeted therapy for cancer.
18. Identify patients at risk for oncologic emergencies.
19. Teach patients and families the manifestations of oncologic emergencies and when to notify the health care provider.

TABLE 24-1 TEXT LOCATION OF SPECIFIC CANCER CONTENT

CANCER TYPE	CHAPTER	PAGES
Bladder (urothelial)	69	1512-1515
Brain	47	1031-1036
Breast	73	1591-1608
Cervical	74	1624-1626
Colorectal	59	1245-1254
Esophageal	57	1211-1217
Head and Neck	31	590-600
Leukemia	42	880-889
Lung	32	632-640
Lymphoma	42	892-894
Ovarian	74	1626-1627
Prostate	75	1637-1642
Renal cell carcinoma	70	1532-1533
Skin	27	502-505
Stomach (gastric)	58	1234-1238

Cancer is a common problem in North America and other affluent societies. Most people fear cancer and consider a cancer diagnosis to involve suffering and death. In affluent countries, more than 50% of people diagnosed with cancer are cured and thousands of others live 5 years or longer (American Cancer Society, 2011; Canadian Cancer Society, 2010). *Regardless of treatment type, cancer always affects a person's physical and psychological functioning.*

Providing care to patients and families experiencing cancer is complex and challenging. This chapter describes the general interventions for cancer and the problems associated with cancer treatment. For specific treatment regimens and patient problems that occur with specific cancer types, consult the chapters in which the cancer is described. Table 24-1 lists common cancer types and the specific locations within this text where the interventions are presented.

GENERAL DISEASE-RELATED CONSEQUENCES OF CANCER

Cancer can develop in any organ or tissue and destroys normal tissue, which decreases function of that tissue or organ. Even when cancers occur in nonvital tissues or organs, they can cause death by **metastasizing** (spreading) into vital organs and disrupting critical physiologic processes (see Chapter 23). Cancers that are left untreated often cause:

- Reduced immunity and blood-producing functions
- Altered GI structure and function
- Motor and sensory deficits
- Decreased respiratory function

These impairments cause great physical and emotional distress. Without intervention, cancer invasion of normal tissues leads to death.

REDUCED IMMUNITY AND BLOOD-PRODUCING FUNCTIONS

Impaired immune and blood-producing functions occur most often in patients with leukemia and lymphoma but

also can occur with any cancer that invades the bone marrow. Tumor cells enter the bone marrow and reduce the production of healthy white blood cells (WBCs), which are needed for normal immune function. Thus patients who have cancer, especially leukemia, are at an increased risk for infection.

When cancer invades the bone marrow, it also causes anemia by decreasing the number of red blood cells (RBCs) and causes thrombocytopenia by decreasing the number of platelets (Fitch et al., 2009). These changes may be caused by the cancer itself or by cancer treatment, especially chemotherapy. The patient feels weak and fatigued and is at risk for bleeding.

ALTERED GI STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

Cancer can alter GI function and impair nutrition. Abdominal tumors may obstruct or compress structures anywhere in the GI tract, reducing the ability to absorb nutrients and eliminate wastes. Tumors often also increase metabolic rate and increase the need for nutrients at a time when the patient has less energy for meal preparation or eating.

Tumors that invade the liver profoundly damage this organ, which has many important metabolic functions. Cancer-related reduced liver function leads to malnutrition and death.

Many patients with cancer have anorexia that often interferes with their ability to meet energy needs. **Cachexia** (extreme body wasting and malnutrition) develops from an imbalance between food intake and energy use (increased catabolism). This problem may occur even when nutritional intake appears adequate (Granda-Cameron et al., 2010). Changes in taste can result from the cancer or the treatment and reduce appetite.

Nutritional support for the patient with cancer, especially one undergoing cancer therapy, is complex. A diet high in protein and carbohydrates is often prescribed to help him or her maintain weight and to provide the nutrients needed for energy and cellular repair. Patients and families often believe cancer can be cured more easily if weight is gained or maintained. Currently no one nutritional plan meets the needs of all patients with cancer.

MOTOR AND SENSORY DEFICITS

Motor and sensory deficits occur when cancers invade bone or the brain or compress nerves. In patients with bone metastasis, the primary cancer started in another organ (e.g., lung, prostate, breast). The bone sites most often affected are the vertebrae, ribs, pelvis, humerus, scapula, sternum, skull, and clavicle. Bone metastasis causes pain, fractures, spinal cord compression, and hypercalcemia, each of which reduces mobility.

Patients may have sensory changes if the spinal cord is damaged or if nerves are compressed. Sensory, motor, and cognitive functions are impaired when cancer spreads to the brain. Any tumor, benign or malignant, growing in the brain can destroy healthy brain tissue and cause death.

The patient with cancer may also have pain, especially chronic pain. Pain does not always accompany cancer, but it can be a major problem for those with terminal cancer. Chapter 5 provides an in-depth discussion of the causes and management of cancer pain. The Concept Map on p. 42 presents nursing care issues related to chronic cancer pain.

REDUCED OXYGENATION

Cancer can disrupt oxygenation in several ways and often results in death. For example, tumors in the airways cause airway obstruction. If lung tissue is involved, lung capacity is decreased. Tumors can also press on blood and lymph vessels in the chest, blocking blood flow through the chest and lungs, which results in pulmonary edema and dyspnea. Tumors can thicken the alveolar membrane and damage pulmonary blood vessels, reducing gas exchange. With any lung tumor (primary or metastatic), patients have hypoxia and poor tissue oxygenation.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client diagnosed with widespread lung cancer asks the nurse why he must be careful to avoid crowds and people who are ill. What is the nurse's best response?

- "With lung cancer, you are more likely to develop pneumonia and could pass this on to other people who are already ill."
- "When lung cancer is in the bones, it becomes a bone marrow malignancy, which stops producing immune system cells."
- "The large amount of mucus produced by the cancer cells is a good breeding ground for bacteria and other microorganisms."
- "When lung cancer is in the bones, it can prevent production of immune system cells, making you less resistant to infection."

CANCER MANAGEMENT

The purpose of cancer management is to prolong survival time or improve quality of life. Without cancer therapy, most patients with cancer would die within months of diagnosis. Cancer therapy includes surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, hormonal manipulation, photodynamic therapy, immunotherapy, and targeted therapy. These therapies may be used separately or in combination to kill cancer cells. The types of therapy used depend on the specific type of cancer, whether the cancer has spread, and the health of the patient. Treatment regimens (*protocols*) have been established for most types of cancer. These regimens are based on experiments with cancer cells and animals and on experience with other patients with cancer.

SURGERY

Overview

Surgery for cancer involves the removal of diseased tissue. If cancer is confined to the removed tissue, surgery alone can result in a "cure" for that cancer. Although many cancers have spread too far at the time of diagnosis for surgery alone to result in a cure, it is often a useful part of diagnosis, treatment, follow-up, and rehabilitation.

Cancer surgery may be used for prophylaxis, diagnosis, cure, control, palliation, assessing therapy effectiveness, and reconstruction. **Prophylactic surgery** removes "at-risk" tissue to prevent cancer development. It is performed when a patient has either an existing premalignant condition or a family history that strongly predisposes the person to development of a specific cancer. For example, removing a benign polyp from the colon before it can develop into colon cancer is a prophylactic action. **Diagnostic surgery** (biopsy) is the removal of all or part of a suspected lesion for examination and testing. It provides proof of the presence of cancer.

Curative surgery removes all cancer tissue. Surgery alone can result in a cure rate of 27% to 30% when all visible and microscopic tumor is removed or destroyed. **Cancer control**, or **cytoreductive surgery**, removes part of but not the entire tumor. It is also known as "debulking" surgery and alone cannot result in a cure. It decreases the number of cancer cells and increases the chances that other therapies can be successful. **Palliative surgery** focuses on improving the quality of life during the survival time, not on cure. Examples include removal of tumor tissue that is causing pain, obstruction, or difficulty swallowing. The specific procedure used depends on the patient's specific problem. **Second-look surgery** is a "redagnosis" after treatment. The purpose is to assess the disease status in patients who have been treated and have no symptoms of remaining tumor. The results of this surgery are used to determine whether a specific therapy should be continued or discontinued. This type of surgery is most commonly used with ovarian cancer. **Reconstructive** or **rehabilitative surgery** increases function, enhances appearance, or both. Examples include breast reconstruction after mastectomy, replacement of the esophagus, bowel reconstruction, revision of scars, and placement of penile implants.

Side Effects of Surgical Therapy

Unlike surgery performed for many other reasons, cancer surgery often involves the loss of a specific body part or its function. Sometimes whole organs are removed, such as the kidney, lung, breast, testes, leg, or tongue. *Any organ loss reduces function.* The amount of function lost and how much the loss affects patients depend on the location and extent of the surgery. Some cancer surgery results in major scarring or disfigurement. Patients are anxious about the chances of surviving the cancer and also may be grieving about a change in appearance or lifestyle.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The physical care needs of the patient having surgery for cancer are similar to those related to surgery for other reasons (see **Chapters 16, 17, and 18**). For cancer surgery, two additional priority care needs are psychosocial support and assisting the patient to achieve or maintain maximum function.

Often cancer surgery occurs within days of the diagnosis, before the patient and family have time to adjust. Assess the patient's and family's ability to cope with the uncertainty of cancer and its treatment and with the changes in body image and role. For example, surgery involving the genitals, urinary tract, colon, and rectum may permanently damage these organs, resulting in changes in the patient's means of sexual expression or control of elimination. Procedures to create a urinary or fecal diversion may damage nerves, causing erectile dysfunction in men and painful intercourse in women. Removal of a lung reduces the patient's respiratory capacity and forever limits his or her ability to engage in physical activities.

Coordinate with the health care team to support the patient. Encourage the patient and family to express their concerns. Help the patient accept changes in appearance or function by encouraging him or her to look at the surgical site, touch it, and participate in dressing changes. Provide information about support groups such as those sponsored by the American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org) or Canadian Cancer

Society (www.cancer.ca). Some cancer organizations have support groups for patients and separate support groups for patients' spouses and children. Discuss having a person who has coped with the same issues come for a visit. Such visits can be valuable in showing the patient that many aspects of life can be the same after cancer treatment. If the patient is open to this type of support, arrange for a visit. For patients who have persistent sadness or depression as a result of appearance changes from cancer surgery, a referral to a mental health counselor and drug therapy may be needed (Weaver, 2009).

Reduced function may be an outcome for some types of cancer surgery. For example, a modified radical mastectomy for breast cancer can lead to muscle weakness and reduced arm function on the surgical side. Performing specific exercises after surgery can reduce functional loss. These exercises can be painful, and the patient needs encouragement to perform them. Teach the patient about the importance of performing and increasing the intensity of the exercises to regain as much function as possible and prevent complications. Coordinate with the physical therapist, occupational therapist, and family members to plan strategies individualized to each patient to regain or maintain optimal function.

RADIATION THERAPY

Overview

The purpose of radiation therapy for cancer is to destroy cancer cells and have minimal damaging effects on the surrounding normal cells. The effects of radiation are seen only in the tissues in the path of the radiation beam; thus this type of therapy is a *local* treatment. For example, radiation to the chest for breast cancer or lung cancer causes skin changes and hair loss only on the area of the chest actually being irradiated. The person does *not* lose his or her scalp hair. Some effects are apparent within days or weeks, whereas other effects on deeper tissues may not be apparent for months to years after radiation therapy is completed.

Most radiation therapy for cancer is ionizing radiation. When cells are exposed to it, particles within the cell's nucleus are rearranged, resulting in a tremendous release of intracellular energy. Ionizing radiation is given off by many elements, including radium, and radioactive isotopes of specific elements. For example, a radioactive isotope of cobalt is used in radiation therapy for cancer.

As a radioactive element breaks down (decays), radiation energy is released as high energy particles (alpha particles and beta particles) and high energy photons (gamma rays). **X-rays**

are radiation that is generated by machine. X-ray photons and gamma ray photons are identical in their effects on cells.

Cells damaged by radiation either die outright or become unable to divide. Radiation damage can occur anytime a cell is exposed to radiation, not just when it is actively dividing. However, the damage is greater to dividing cells than to non-dividing cells when exposed to radiation.

Three different types of energy, or rays, are produced by radioactive elements: gamma rays, alpha particles, and beta particles. These energies vary in their ability to penetrate tissues and damage cells (Fig. 24-1). *Gamma rays* are used most commonly for radiation therapy because of their ability to deeply penetrate tissues (Camporeale, 2008). *Beta particles* are weaker and must be placed within or very close to the cancer cells for cancer therapy (see discussion of brachytherapy on pp. 412-413). *Alpha particles* are not used as cancer therapy.

The amount of radiation delivered to a tissue is called the **exposure**; the amount of radiation absorbed by the tissue is called the **radiation dose**. The dose is always less than the exposure because some energy is lost as scatter on the way to the tissue. The three factors determining the absorbed dose are the intensity of exposure, the duration of exposure, and the closeness of the radiation source to the cells (Camporeale, 2008).

The intensity of the radiation decreases with the distance from the radiation source (Fig. 24-2). This factor is known as the *inverse square law*. For example, the radiation dose received at a distance of 2 meters from the radiation source is only one fourth of the dose received at a distance of 1 meter from the radiation source; the dose of radiation received at 3 meters is only one ninth of the dose received at 1 meter.

If the dose of radiation is high enough, all cells are killed immediately. This does not happen with cancer radiation therapy because cells within a tumor absorb the radiation dose slightly differently. Therefore their overall response to the radiation is slightly different. A few cells die immediately, and more die within the next 24 hours as they attempt to divide. Some cells become sterile as a result of this single treatment. Still other cells repair the radiation-induced damage and recover.

Radiation therapy usually is given as a series of divided doses because of the varying responses of all cancer cells within a given tumor. Most often, small doses of radiation are given on a daily basis for a set time period to allow greater destruction of cancer cells while reducing the damage to normal tissues. Absorbed radiation doses are described in units called **gray** (gy). (The older term for radiation dose was

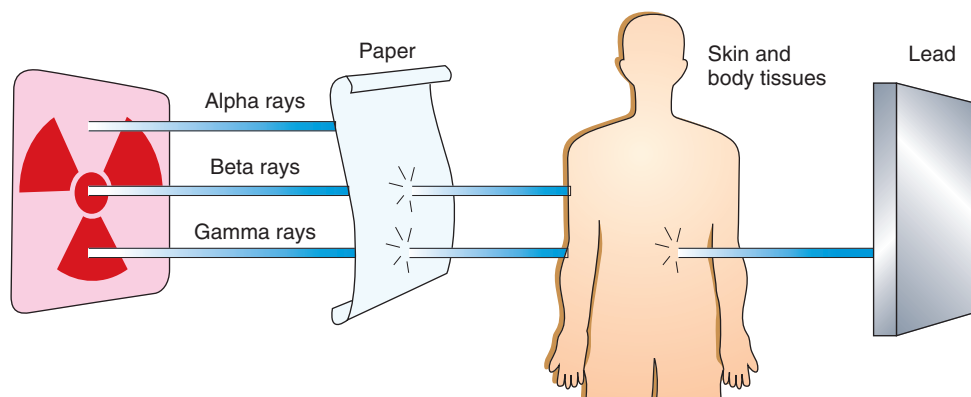


FIG. 24-1 Penetrating capacity of different types of radiation.

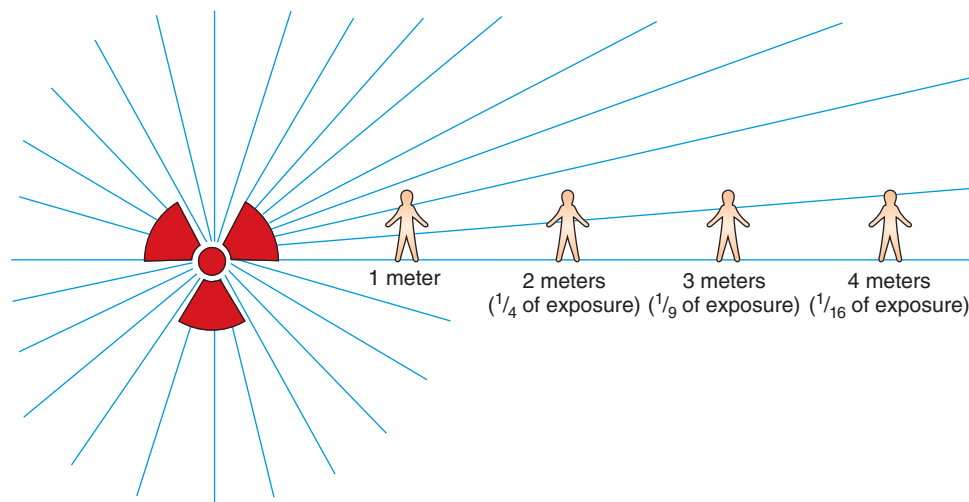


FIG. 24-2 The inverse square law of radiation exposure.

rad for radiation absorbed dose. One gy is the same as 100 rad.) One gy is equal to one joule of energy absorbed by one kg of a material. The total dose of radiation used depends on tumor size and location and on the radiation sensitivity of the tumor and nearby tissues. Some normal tissues are more sensitive than others to radiation. For example, breast tissue tolerates much higher doses of radiation than the liver does. A total dose of 50 to 60 gy might be prescribed for a breast cancer. However, only 12 gy might be prescribed for a liver tumor, because a higher dose would destroy healthy liver cells as well as the tumor.

Radiation Delivery Methods and Devices

Radiation delivery types for cancer therapy are teletherapy and brachytherapy. The type used depends on the patient's general health and on the shape, size, and location of the tumor to be irradiated. The ideal radiation dose is one that can kill the cancer cells with an acceptable level of damage to normal tissues (damage to normal tissues cannot be avoided).

Teletherapy is radiation delivered from a source outside of the patient. Because the source is external, the patient is not radioactive and is not hazardous to others.

One newer method of teletherapy is intensity modulated radiation therapy (IMRT). This type of radiation breaks up the single beam into thousands of smaller beams that allow better focus on the tumor.

Another newer method of teletherapy is stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT). This method uses three-dimensional tumor imaging to identify the exact tumor location, which allows more precise delivery of higher radiation doses and spares more of the surrounding tissue. Usually, the total dosage is delivered in one to five separate treatment sessions. Currently, this approach is most commonly used for small, localized lung cancers (Smink & Schneider, 2008).

Regardless of the teletherapy delivery method, the exact location of the tumor is determined for therapy accuracy. Once the pattern of radiation delivery is determined, the patient must always be in exactly the same position for all treatments (Camporeale, 2008). Ensure that the patient can get into and maintain this position. Position-fixing devices and markings, either on the patient's body or on the devices, ensure the proper position each day of treatment. The

markings may be small permanent "tattoos," ink outlines on the skin, or a marked covering laid over the skin during positioning. Position-fixing devices include customized external vacuum-type body molds, foam-based body molds, and fiberglass splints (Smink & Schneider, 2008).

Brachytherapy means "short" or "close" therapy. The radiation source comes into direct, continuous contact with the tumor tissues for a specific time period. This method provides a high dose of radiation in tumor tissues and a very limited dose in surrounding normal tissues.

Brachytherapy uses radioactive isotopes either in solid form or within body fluids. Isotopes can be delivered to the tumor tissues in several ways. *With all types of brachytherapy, the radiation source is within the patient. Therefore the patient emits radiation for a period of time and is a hazard to others* (Waring & Gosselin, 2010). When the isotopes used are unsealed and suspended in a fluid, they are given by the oral or IV routes or instilled within body cavities. An example of brachytherapy with soluble isotopes is the ingestion or injection of the radionuclide iodine-131 (^{131}I) (an iodine base with a half-life of 8.05 days) to treat some thyroid cancers. The iodine concentrates in the thyroid gland and destroys the thyroid cancer cells. *When the isotopes are unsealed, they enter body fluids and eventually are eliminated in waste products, which are radioactive and should not be directly touched by other people. After the isotope is completely eliminated from the body, neither the patient nor the body wastes are radioactive.*

Solid or sealed radiation sources are implanted within or near the tumor. These sources can be temporary or permanent. Most implants emit continuous, low-energy radiation to tumor tissues. Some devices (e.g., seeds or needles) can be placed into the tissues and stay in place by themselves. Some devices are so small and the half-life of the isotope so short that the device is permanently left in place (most often for prostate cancer) and, over time, completely loses its radioactivity. Other devices are removed and reused in other patients. Some sources must be held in place during therapy using special applicators. *While the solid implants are in place, the patient emits radiation but excreta are not radioactive and do not pose a hazard to anyone.*

Traditional implants deliver "low-dose rates" (LDRs) of radiation continuously and patients are hospitalized for

CHART 24-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Care of the Patient with Sealed Implants of Radioactive Sources**

- Assign the patient to a private room with a private bath.
- Place a “Caution: Radioactive Material” sign on the door of the patient’s room.
- If portable lead shields are used, place them between the patient and the door.
- Keep the door to the patient’s room closed as much as possible.
- Wear a dosimeter film badge at all times while caring for patients with radioactive implants. The badge offers no protection but measures a person’s exposure to radiation. Each person caring for the patient should have a separate dosimeter to calculate his or her specific radiation exposure.
- Wear a lead apron while providing care. Always keep the front of the apron facing the source of radiation (do not turn your back toward the patient).
- Pregnant nurses should not care for these patients; do not allow pregnant women or children younger than 16 years to visit.
- Limit each visitor to one-half hour per day. Be sure visitors stay at least 6 feet from the source.
- Never touch the radioactive source with bare hands. In the rare instance that it is dislodged, use a long-handled forceps to retrieve it. Deposit the radioactive source in the lead container kept in the patient’s room.
- Save all dressings and bed linens in the patient’s room until after the radioactive source is removed. After the source is removed, dispose of dressings and linens in the usual manner. Other equipment can be removed from the room at any time without special precautions and does not pose a hazard to other people.

several days. “High-dose rate” (HDR) implant radiation is another delivery type. The patient comes into the radiation therapy department several times a week, and a stronger radiation implant is placed for only an hour or so each time. The patient goes home between treatments and is radioactive only when the implant is in place (Waring & Gosselin, 2010). [Chart 24-1](#) lists the best practices for care of the patient with sealed implant radiation sources and for the safety of the personnel providing the care.

Side Effects of Radiation Therapy

The immediate and long-term side effects of all types of radiation are limited to the tissues exposed to the radiation. Therefore the side effects vary according to the site (Ruppert, 2011). Skin changes and hair loss are local but are often permanent depending on the total absorbed dose.

Altered taste sensations and fatigue are two common systemic side effects noted by patients receiving teletherapy, regardless of the radiation site. Taste changes are thought to be caused by metabolites released from dead and dying cells. Many patients develop an aversion to the taste of red meats. Fatigue may be related to the increased energy demands needed to repair damaged cells. Regardless of the cause, radiation-induced fatigue can be debilitating and may last for months (Kuchinski et al., 2009).

Radiation damage to normal tissues during cancer therapy can start inflammatory responses that lead to tissue fibrosis and scarring. These effects may appear years after radiation treatment. For example, women who receive HDR therapy for uterine cancer may develop radiation-induced changes in

CHART 24-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT**Skin Protection During Radiation Therapy**

- Wash the irradiated area gently each day with either water or a mild soap and water as prescribed by your radiologist.
- Use your hand rather than a washcloth to be gentler.
- Rinse soap thoroughly from your skin.
- If ink or dye markings are present to identify exactly where the beam of radiation is to be focused, take care not to remove them.
- Dry the irradiated area with patting motions rather than rubbing motions; use a clean, soft towel or cloth.
- Use only powders, ointments, lotions, or creams on your skin at the radiation site that are prescribed by the radiation oncology department.
- Wear soft clothing over the skin at the radiation site.
- Avoid wearing belts, buckles, straps, or any type of clothing that binds or rubs the skin at the radiation site.
- Avoid exposure of the irradiated area to the sun.
 - Protect this area by wearing clothing over it.
 - Try to go outdoors in the early morning or evening to avoid the more intense sun rays.
 - When outdoors, stay under awnings, umbrellas, and other forms of shade during the times when the sun’s rays are most intense (10 AM to 7 PM).
- Avoid heat exposure.

the colon (which also was irradiated) years later, resulting in constipation and obstruction.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Most patients are anxious about radiation and look to the nurse to explain the purpose and side effects of radiation therapy. Accurate, objective information about radiation therapy helps patients cope with the treatment and continue to participate in normal activities.

Skin in the path of radiation becomes very dry and may break down. Teaching patients about skin care needs during radiation therapy is a priority nursing intervention. [Chart 24-2](#) lists skin care and other precautions needed with external radiation therapy. Instruct the patient to not remove any temporary ink markings when cleaning the skin until the entire course of radiation therapy is completed. At one time, patients were told to avoid using lotions or other skin care products within 4 hours of the radiation therapy; however, this practice is not evidence-based and is now controversial (Bieck, Phillips, & Steele-Moses, 2010). Teach patients to follow the radiation-oncology department’s policy regarding the use and timing of skin care products. Use of skin care products designed to manage or protect the skin from radiation damage does reduce the degree of skin problems that develop during a full course of radiation therapy (Gosselin et al., 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 414).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Skin in the radiation path is more sensitive to sunburn and damage. Advise against direct skin exposure to the sun during treatment and for at least 1 year after completing radiation therapy.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Do Skin Care Products Reduce Radiation Skin Effects?

Gosselin, T., Schneider, S., Plambeck, M., & Rowe, K. (2010). A prospective randomized, placebo-controlled skin care study in women diagnosed with breast cancer undergoing radiation therapy. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(5), 619-626.

Breast cancer is a common cancer among women and is often treated with external beam radiation. The radiation therapy, administered daily for 6 to 7 weeks, can cause skin reactions. At times, patients are told not to use skin care products in the area of irradiation during the treatment period. This study sought to (1) identify the incidence of radiation-induced skin reactions among women undergoing external beam radiation therapy for breast cancer; and (2) compare the effectiveness of three skin care products versus placebo in reducing radiation-induced skin reactions.

A convenience sample of 208 adult women undergoing teletherapy for breast cancer were recruited into the study. Each subject was randomly assigned to one of four groups and asked to use a skin care product on the irradiated area twice daily throughout the radiation therapy period (placebo, product 1, product 2, product 3). The groups and the researchers were blinded to which products were assigned to which groups. The women kept a home journal to describe the skin site and the features of the assigned skin care product. Skin condition was assessed weekly using the Radiation Therapy Oncology Group (RTOG) acute radiation morbidity scoring criteria. Although this tool has no published validity and reliability, it has been used for 25 years as a standard of practice in radiation oncology. The inter-rater reliability for this tool among data collectors in this study was 0.96.

Of the 208 subjects completing the study, 95% experienced a skin reaction, usually by the 4th week of treatment. Although subjects using all skin care products had a slightly reduced skin reaction compared with those in the placebo-control group, the difference did not reach statistical significance.

Level of Evidence: 2

The study method was prospective, randomized, double-blind, and placebo-controlled. The large number of subjects, the random assignment, and double-blinding of the groups added strength to the study, as did objective skin-scoring using an established tool. The statistical evaluation methods were appropriate for the design, and power was adequate.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The study is important for many reasons. First, it established the incidence of radiation skin reactions for a large group of subjects all receiving radiation to the same tissue area, at the same dosage levels, for the same time period. The study also demonstrated that weekly skin assessment by radiation oncology nurses is a feasible and desirable care intervention. Second, it established that the physical benefits of three different skin care products often prescribed for use during radiation therapy were not statistically significant and had minimal clinical benefit. In fact, the product the women rated as most satisfactory (for ease of use and lifestyle fit) was the product with the poorest performance in protection against radiation skin reactions. Nurses in radiation oncology departments are often the professionals who are asked how to manage the associated skin problems. Some of the recommended products are available by prescription only and have significant cost. Thus nurses can inform patients that use of any skin care product does not prevent radiation skin reactions and that no product is superior to another. Therefore patients should decide what product to use based on ease of use, availability, and cost.

The study defined important areas for future nursing research. Issues include which patient characteristics increase the risk for radiation skin reactions, what are the reliability and validity of the RTOG acute radiation morbidity scoring criteria tool, and did weekly skin assessments by radiation oncology nurses identify problems earlier or increase patient satisfaction with therapy.

The normal tissues most sensitive to external radiation are bone marrow cells, skin, mucous membranes, hair follicles, and germ cells (ova and sperm). When possible, these tissues are shielded from radiation during therapy. At times, they are in the radiation path and cannot be protected from exposure. Some changes caused by radiation are permanent. The long-term problems vary with the location and dose of radiation received. For example, radiation to the throat and upper chest can cause difficulty in swallowing. Combined with taste alteration, this problem can lead to reduced nutrition. A registered dietitian is part of the radiation oncology team (Gosselin et al., 2008). Head and neck radiation may damage the salivary glands and cause dry mouth (**xerostomia**), which increases the patient's lifelong risk for tooth decay. Bone exposed to radiation therapy is less dense and breaks more easily. Teach about the symptoms that might be expected from the location and dose of radiation (see [Table 24-1](#) for the location of this information for different cancer types).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Health Promotion and Maintenance**

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client receiving radiation therapy for head and neck cancer?

- A. Avoid eating red meat during treatment.
- B. Pace your leisure activities to prevent fatigue.
- C. See your dentist twice yearly for the rest of your life.
- D. Avoid using headphones or headsets until your hair grows back.

CHEMOTHERAPY**Overview**

Chemotherapy, the treatment of cancer with chemical agents, is used to cure and to increase survival time. It has some selectivity for killing cancer cells over normal cells. This killing effect on cancer cells is related to the ability of chemotherapy to damage DNA and interfere with cell division. Tumors with rapid growth are most sensitive to chemotherapy.

As described in [Chapter 23](#), cancer cells can separate from the original tumor, spread to new areas, and establish new cancers at distant sites (**metastasis**). Patients with metastatic cancer will die unless treatment eliminates the metastatic cancer cells along with the original cancer cells. Chemotherapy is useful in treating cancer because its effects are systemic, providing the opportunity to kill metastatic cancer cells that may have escaped local treatment. Chemotherapy used along with surgery or radiation is termed **adjuvant** therapy.

Drugs used for chemotherapy usually are given systemically and exert their cell-damaging (**cytotoxic**) effects against healthy cells as well as cancer cells. The normal cells most affected by chemotherapy are those that divide rapidly, including skin, hair, intestinal tissues, spermatocytes, and blood-forming cells. These drugs are classified by the specific types of action they exert in the cancer cell. [Table 24-2](#) lists categories, drugs, and their potential to induce nausea and vomiting (emetogenic) or to damage surrounding tissue.

Chemotherapy Drug Categories

Alkylating agents cross-link DNA, making the two DNA strands bind tightly together. This tight binding prevents proper DNA and ribonucleic acid (RNA) synthesis, which inhibit cell division.

TABLE 24-2 CATEGORIES OF CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC DRUGS

DRUG	EMETOGENIC POTENTIAL	TISSUE DAMAGE POTENTIAL
Antimetabolites		
Azacitidine (Vidaza)	High	Irritant
Capecitabine (Xeloda)	Low	N/A (oral drug)
Cladribine (Leustatin)	Moderate	Bruising
Clofarabine (Clofar)	Low—Moderate	Irritant
Cytarabine (Cytosar, ara-C)	Moderate	Irritant
Decitabine (Dacogen)	Moderate	Irritant
Floxuridine (FUDR)	High	Bruising
5-Fluorouracil (Adrucil, Efudex, Fluoroplex)	Moderate	Irritant
Fludarabine (Fludara, FLAMP)	Low	Bruising
Gemcitabine (Gemzar)	Moderate	Bruising
6-Mercaptopurine (Purinethol)	Low	N/A (oral drug)
Methotrexate (MTX, Mexate)	Low—Moderate	Bruising
Nelarabine (Arranon)	Moderate	Irritant
Pemetrexed (Alimta)	Moderate—High	Bruising
Pentostatin (Nipent)	Low—Moderate	Irritant
6-Thioguanine (Tabloid)	Moderate—High	N/A (oral drug)
Antitumor Antibiotics		
Bleomycin (Blenoxane)	Moderate	Irritant
Dactinomycin (Cosmegen)	High	Vesicant
Daunorubicin (Cerubidine, Daunomycin)	High	Vesicant
Doxorubicin (Adriamycin, Rubex)	High	Vesicant
Doxorubicin liposomal (Doxil)	High	Vesicant
Epirubicin (Ellence)	High	Vesicant
Idarubicin (Idamycin)	Moderate—High	Vesicant
Mitomycin C (Mutamycin)	Moderate	Vesicant
Mitoxantrone (Novantrone)	Low	Irritant
Valrubicin (Valstar)	N/A	N/A (intravesicular drug)
Antimitotics		
Cabazitaxel (Jevtana)	Moderate	Irritant
Docetaxel (Taxotere)	Moderate	Bruising
Etoposide (VP-16, VePesid)	Low	Irritant
Eribulin mesylate (Halaven)	Low—Moderate	Irritant
Paclitaxel (Taxol)	Moderate	Irritant & potential vesicant
Teniposide (Vumon)	Moderate	Vesicant
Vinblastine (Velban, Velbe, Velsar)	Low—Moderate	Vesicant
Vincristine (Oncovin)	Low	Vesicant
Vinorelbine (Navelbine)	Moderate	Vesicant
Alkylating Agents		
Altretamine (Hexalen)	Moderate	N/A (oral drug)
Bendamustine (Treanda)	Moderate	Vesicant
Busulfan (Busulfex)	High	Bruising
Carboplatin (Paraplatin)	High	Irritant
Carmustine (BiCNU; Gliadel)	High	Irritant
Chlorambucil (Leukeran)	High	N/A (oral drug)
Cisplatin (Platinol)	High	Irritant
Cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan, Procytox)	High	Bruising
Dacarbazine (DTIC)	Moderate—High	Irritant
Estramustine (Emcyt, Estracyte)	Moderate	Vesicant
Ifosfamide (Ifex)	High	Bruising
Lomustine (CCNU, CeeNU)	High	N/A (oral drug)
Mechlorethamine (Mustargen)	High	Vesicant

Continued

TABLE 24-2 CATEGORIES OF CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC DRUGS—cont'd

DRUG	EMETOGENIC POTENTIAL	TISSUE DAMAGE POTENTIAL
Melphalan (Alkeran) (available in oral or IV form)	High	Vesicant (IV drug)
Oxaliplatin (Eloxatin)	Moderate—High	Vesicant
Streptozocin (Zanosar)	High	Bruising
Temozolomide (Temodar)	Moderate—High	N/A (oral drug)
Thiotepa (Thioplex)	Low	Bruising
Topoisomerase Inhibitors		
Irinotecan (Camptosar)	Moderate	Irritant
Topotecan (Hycamtin)	Moderate	Irritant
Miscellaneous Agents		
Arsenic trioxide (Trisenox)	Moderate	Not known
Asparaginase (Elspar)	Low	Vesicant
Hydroxyurea (Droxia, Hydrea)	Low	N/A (oral drug)
Ixabepilone (Ixempra)	Low—Moderate	Irritant
Pegaspargase (Oncaspar)	Low	Bruising
Procarbazine (Matulane, Natulan 🍁)	High	N/A (oral drug)
Vorinostat (Zolinza)	Moderate	N/A (oral drug)

Data from www.fda.gov/cder/index.html; and www.mdconsult.com/php/82925233-2/homepage.

Antimetabolites are similar to normal metabolites needed for vital cell processes. Most cell reactions require metabolites in order to begin or continue the reaction. Antimetabolites closely resemble normal metabolites and are “counterfeit” metabolites that fool cancer cells into using the antimetabolites in cellular reactions. Because antimetabolites cannot function as proper metabolites, their presence impairs cell division.

Antimitotic agents interfere with the formation and actions of microtubules so cells cannot complete mitosis during cell division. As a result, the cancer cell either does not divide at all or divides only once, resulting in two daughter cells that cannot continue to divide.

Antitumor antibiotics damage the cell’s DNA and interrupt DNA or RNA synthesis. Exactly how the interruptions occur varies with each agent.

Topoisomerase inhibitors disrupt an enzyme (topoisomerase) needed for DNA synthesis and cell division. The enzyme nicks and straightens the DNA helix, allowing the DNA to be copied, and then reattaches the DNA together. Topoisomerase inhibitors prevent proper DNA maintenance, causing DNA breakage and cell death.

Miscellaneous chemotherapy drugs are those with mechanisms of action that are either unknown or do not fit those of other drug categories.

Combination Chemotherapy

Successful cancer chemotherapy involves giving more than one specific anticancer drug in a timed manner. This technique is called *combination chemotherapy*. Using more than one drug is more effective in killing cancer cells than using only a single drug. However, the side effects and damage caused to normal tissues also increase with combination chemotherapy.

The selection of drugs is based on known tumor sensitivity to the drugs and the degree of side effects expected. For example, most chemotherapy drugs suppress bone marrow activity and immune function to some degree, but some

agents cause more bone marrow suppression than others. There is also variation in the timing of drug-induced suppression and neutropenia.

The time when bone marrow activity and white blood cell counts are at their lowest levels after chemotherapy is the **nadir**. It occurs at different times for different drugs. To reduce immunosuppression, combination chemotherapy avoids using drugs with nadirs that occur at or near the same time.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

A newer approach to chemotherapy selection is checking the patient’s genetic profile to determine the likelihood of experiencing dangerous side effects. This process, known as *pharmacogenomics*, allows a more individualized approach to chemotherapy selection and side effect management. In addition, checking the genetic profile of the tumor can determine its sensitivity to various chemotherapy and targeted therapy agents. This increasingly common practice individualizes cancer therapy and improves therapy outcomes (Huang & Ratain, 2009).

Treatment Issues

Dosages for most chemotherapy drugs are calculated according to the type of cancer and the patient’s size. Usually, calculations are based on milligrams per square meter of total body surface area (TBSA), which considers both the patient’s height and weight.

Chemotherapy drugs are given on a regular basis and are timed to maximize cancer cell kill and minimize damage to normal cells. The schedule may vary somewhat to accommodate a patient’s response to therapy, but chemotherapy is usually scheduled every 3 to 4 weeks for a specified number of times (on average, 4 to 12 times). Newer protocols of giving higher doses of chemotherapy more often, called **dose-dense chemotherapy**, are often used for aggressive cancer treatment, especially for breast cancer. This dose-dense chemotherapy also results in more intense side effects than traditional dosing schedules.

Most chemotherapy drugs are given IV, although other routes may be used. For specific cancer types, the chemotherapy may be infused or instilled into a body cavity. The *intrathecal* route delivers drugs into the spinal canal, and the *intraventricular* route delivers drugs directly into the ventricles of the brain. *Intraperitoneal* instillations place the drugs within the abdominal cavity, most often for ovarian cancer (Karius, 2010). Drugs for bladder cancer can be instilled directly into the bladder (*intravesicular* route). For a few cancer types, *intra-arterial* infusions may be used to deliver a higher dose locally. This technique is not common and is used mostly for bone cancers and, on a limited basis, for head and neck cancer. The techniques and care needs for different routes are described with the specific cancer type most commonly associated with the specific administration route.

The IV route is the most preferred route for chemotherapy. The standard of care designated by the Oncology Nursing Society (ONS) and supported by the American Society of Clinical Oncologists (ASCO) for safe administration of IV chemotherapy is that administration of these drugs requires special education (Polovich et al., 2009). *Special education for competency does not mean that only an advanced practice nurse can perform this function; however, it does mean that the person should be a registered nurse who has completed an approved chemotherapy course. Responsibility for monitoring the patient during chemotherapy administration, however, rests with all nurses providing patient care.*

A serious complication of IV infusion is **extravasation**, which occurs when drug leaks into the surrounding tissues (also called *infiltration*). When the drugs given are **vesicants** (chemicals that damage tissue on direct contact), the results of extravasation can include pain, infection, and tissue loss (Fig. 24-3). Surgical intervention is sometimes needed for severe tissue damage. See Table 24-2 for a listing of known vesicant and irritant chemotherapy drugs.



FIG. 24-3 Appearance of tissue damage and loss after chemotherapy extravasation.

The most important nursing intervention for extravasation is prevention. Small extravasations resolve without extensive treatment if less than 0.5 mL of the drug has leaked into the tissues. If a larger amount has leaked, extensive tissue damage occurs and surgery may be needed. *Close monitoring of the access site is critical during chemotherapy administration to prevent leakage of larger volumes.* Management depends on the specific drug. With some drugs, cold compresses to the area are prescribed; for other agents, warm compresses are used. Antidotes or chemoprotective agents may be injected into the site of extravasation (Hadaway, 2009). Coordinate with the oncologist and pharmacist to determine the specific antidote needed for the extravasated drug. Chart 24-3 outlines documentation of an extravasation event.

Most chemotherapy drugs, even oral drugs, are absorbed through the skin and mucous membranes. As a result, the health care workers who prepare or give these drugs (especially nurses and pharmacists) are at risk for absorbing them. Even at low doses, long-term exposure to chemotherapy drugs can affect health. Anyone preparing, giving, or disposing of chemotherapy drugs or handling excreta from patients within 48 hours of receiving IV chemotherapy must use extreme caution and wear personal protective equipment.

CHART 24-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Documentation of Extravasation

- Document the date and time when extravasation was suspected or identified.
- Document the date and time when the infusion was started.
- Record the time when the infusion was stopped.
- Document the exact contents of the infusion fluid and the volume of fluid infused.
- Document the estimated amount of fluid extravasated.
- Diagram the exact insertion site, and indicate whether this is a venous access device, an implanted port, or a tunneled catheter.
- Document the method of administration (pump, controller, etc.; rate of infusion).
- Document the needle type and size.
- Indicate on the diagram the location and number of venipuncture attempts.
- Record the time between the extravasation and the last documented full blood return.
- Identify all agents administered in the previous 24 hours through this site (list agent administered, dosage and volume, and order of administration).
- Take and record the patient's vital signs.
- Ask and record the patient's subjective sensations and symptoms.
- Record all observations of the site, including size, color, and texture.
- Take a photograph of the site.
- Document the administration of neutralizing or antidote agents.
- Document the application of compresses and their temperature.
- Document other nursing interventions.
- Record the patient's responses to nursing interventions.
- Document the prescribing physician notification (including the time).
- Document the written and oral instructions given to the patient about follow-up care.
- Document any consultation request.
- Sign the documentation.

Data modified from Polovich, M., Whitford, J., & Olsen, M. (Eds.). (2009). *Chemotherapy and biotherapy guidelines and recommendations for practice* (3rd ed.). Pittsburgh: ONS Publishing.

(PPE). Such equipment includes eye protection, masks, double gloves or “chemo” gloves, and gown. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) and the Oncology Nursing Society (ONS) have established these practice guidelines and protective standards (Polovich et al., 2009).

About two dozen anticancer drugs are available currently as oral agents (Table 24-3). This number is expected to double within the next 10 years. Only a few are actually oral formulations of classic chemotherapy agents; more are classified as specific types of targeted therapy agents (Moody & Jackowski, 2010). Oral drugs are more convenient for the patient, and they can be taken at home. However, there are many problems with oral anticancer drugs. One of the biggest problems is the perception by patients and non-oncology nurses that these drugs are less toxic than those given intravenously (Simchowicz et al., 2010; Simmons, 2010), which is **not** true. *Oral anticancer drugs are just as toxic to the person taking the drug and the person handling the drug as are standard chemotherapy drugs.* Also, because the responsibility for administration of these drugs often shifts from

the oncology clinic to the home or to non-oncology acute care settings, issues of protection, correct administration, adherence, and recognition and management of side effects are major concerns. Patients require much education and support to self-manage this therapy. Not all patients are willing or able to accept the responsibility of self-management, and this must be considered during patient selection for oral chemotherapy.

Because these oral agents can be absorbed through skin and mucous membranes and exert toxic effects, the professional who handles and administers them needs to use PPE in the same way as during IV chemotherapy administration. This becomes a more critical issue when non-oncology nurses are administering the drugs. The ONS practice guidelines stress nurse education for competence to administer these drugs. All nurses administering these drugs must know the indications for drug use, dosage ranges, side effects and adverse effects, schedules, and specific precautions. In addition, these oral agents must not be crushed, split, broken, or chewed. These drugs are biohazardous and must be discarded in accordance with agency policy.

TABLE 24-3 CURRENT ORAL CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC DRUGS

AGENT	DRUG CATEGORY	CANCER TYPE	AGENT	DRUG CATEGORY	CANCER TYPE
Altretamine (Hexalen)	Alkylating agent	Ovarian cancer	Lenalidomide (Revlimid)	Angiogenesis inhibitor	Multiple myeloma; Myelodysplastic syndrome
Capecitabine (Xeloda)	Antimetabolite	Breast cancer Colorectal cancer	Lomustine (CCNU, CeeNU)	Alkylating agent	Hodgkin's lymphoma Malignant glioma
Chlorambucil (Leukeran)	Alkylating agent	Chronic lymphocytic leukemia; Hodgkin's lymphoma Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Melphalan (Alkeran)	Alkylating agent	Multiple myeloma Ovarian cancer
Dasatinib (Sprycel)	Tyrosine kinase inhibitor	Chronic myelogenous leukemia; acute myelogenous leukemia that is Philadelphia chromosome positive	Mercaptopurine (Purinethol)	Antimetabolite	Acute lymphocytic leukemia
Erlotinib (Tarceva)	Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor	Non-small cell lung cancer Pancreatic cancer	Nilotinib (Tasigna)	Tyrosine kinase inhibitor	Chronic myelogenous leukemia that is Philadelphia chromosome positive
Everolimus (Afinitor)	Angiogenesis inhibitor	Advanced renal cell carcinoma	Pazopanib (Votrient)	Multikinase inhibitor	Advanced renal cell carcinoma
Gefitinib (Iressa)	Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor	Non-small cell lung cancer	Procarbazine (Matulane, Natulan )	Miscellaneous agent	Hodgkin's lymphoma
Hydroxyurea (Droxia, Hydrea)	Miscellaneous agent	Chronic myelogenous leukemia Head and neck cancer Melanoma Ovarian cancer Sickle cell disease	Sorafenib (Nexavar)	Multikinase inhibitor	Advanced renal cell carcinoma; hepatocellular carcinoma
Imatinib (Gleevec)	Tyrosine kinase inhibitor	Chronic myelogenous leukemia that is Philadelphia chromosome positive Gastrointestinal stromal tumors Myelodysplastic syndrome	Sunitinib (Sutent)	Multikinase inhibitor	Advanced renal cell carcinoma; gastrointestinal stromal tumor
Lapatinib (Tykerb)	Tyrosine kinase inhibitor	Breast cancer	Temozolomide (Temodar)	Alkylating agent	Brain tumors (primary)
			Thioguanine (Tabloid)	Antimetabolite	Acute myelogenous leukemia
			Topotecan (Hycamtin)	Topoisomerase inhibitor	Small cell lung cancer
			Vorinostat (Zolinza)	Histone inhibitor	Cutaneous T-cell lymphoma

Adherence to defined oral chemotherapy schedules and dosages is more of a problem than with IV administration. Studies have shown that even highly motivated patients with cancer consider that skipping doses or reducing doses of oral drugs has only a minor impact (Moore, 2010; Simchowitz et al., 2010; Winkeljohn, 2010). Disrupting the schedule or reducing dosages has a negative impact on therapy outcomes and leads to drug resistance among cancer cells, disease progression, and reduced survival.

Side Effects of Chemotherapy

Temporary and permanent physical damage can occur to normal tissues from oral or IV chemotherapy because it is systemic and exerts its effects on all cells. Known problems include hemorrhagic cystitis, cardiac muscle damage, and loss of bone density. For some cancer drugs, agents that protect specific healthy cells (cytoprotectants) are administered ahead of or with chemotherapy drugs to decrease the impact of chemotherapy on normal tissues. These protective agents have little effect on cancer cells but do protect some normal tissues.

Serious short-term side effects occur with aggressive chemotherapy. The side effects on the hematopoietic (blood-producing) system can be life threatening and are the most common reason for changing the dosage or schedule. The suppressive effects on the blood-forming cells of bone marrow cause **anemia** (decreased numbers of red blood cells and hemoglobin), **neutropenia** (decreased numbers of white blood cells leading to immunosuppression), and **thrombocytopenia** (decreased numbers of platelets). Common distressing side effects include nausea and vomiting, **alopecia** (hair loss), **mucositis** (open sores on mucous membranes), many skin changes, anxiety, sleep disturbance, altered bowel elimination, and changes in cognitive function. These side effects are referred to as *cancer therapy symptom distress*.

Drug therapy often is used to reduce symptom distress for some of these side effects. For other problems, such as alopecia, the side effect cannot be prevented but the patient can be helped to reduce his or her distress from its presence. General nonpharmacologic nursing interventions for many types of symptom distress include distraction, massage, guided imagery, reiki, aromatherapy, and other forms of complementary therapy.

Psychosocial issues can occur during chemotherapy administration. For many chemotherapy regimens, drugs are given over a period ranging from 2 hours to as long as 8 hours. During this time, the patient is confined to a treatment area and is constantly reminded of his or her disease and treatment, which is unpleasant. Distraction methods such as virtual reality, guided imagery, reading, watching television, and talking with visitors may help reduce the sense of unpleasantness.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The priority care issues during chemotherapy are protecting the patient from the life-threatening side effects and managing the distressing symptoms that occur with therapy. For some patients, the symptoms are so unpleasant that they stop treatment.

Bone Marrow Suppression

In addition to killing cancer cells, chemotherapy also destroys circulating blood cells and reduces replacement of these cells by suppressing bone marrow function, also known as *myelosuppression*. The numbers of all circulating leukocytes, erythrocytes, and platelets are decreased. Reduced leukocyte numbers, especially reduced neutrophils (**neutropenia**), greatly increase the risk for infection. Decreased erythrocytes and platelets cause hypoxia, fatigue, and an increased tendency to bleed.

Infection risk results from neutropenia, placing the patient at extreme risk for sepsis. *This critical problem is the major dose-limiting side effect of cancer chemotherapy and can lead to death during treatment* (O'Leary, 2010). Most chemotherapy drugs cause myelosuppression to some degree and decrease the patient's protective responses to organism invasion. The severity of the risk is related to drug dosage. Impairment is temporary, and protection recovers within weeks after therapy completion. However, the seriousness of potential infectious complications makes this problem a major treatment concern. The most common infections are fungal, bacterial, and some residual viral breakthrough. *Most infections during neutropenia result from overgrowth of the patient's own normal flora.*

Infection risk can be managed with the use of biological response modifiers (BRMs) and growth factors to stimulate bone marrow production of immune system cells. Although not appropriate for all types of cancer, this supportive treatment can reduce the risk for infection during chemotherapy (O'Leary, 2010; Quirion, 2009). This treatment is discussed in the Immunotherapy section on p. 427. Actual infections are treated with anti-infective drugs, such as antibiotic, anti-fungal, and antiviral drugs. Just like for any other infection, anti-infective therapy is specific for the organism(s) causing the infection.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults are at even greater risk for chemotherapy-induced neutropenia because of age-related changes in bone marrow function. Using growth factors, such as filgrastim (Neupogen) and pegfilgrastim (Neulasta), before neutropenia occurs rather than later can reduce the severity of neutropenia and the risk for infectious complications (Flores & Ershler, 2010).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority nursing interventions for the patient with neutropenia are protecting him or her from infection within the health care system and teaching the patient and family how to reduce infection in the home. Total patient assessment, including skin and mucous membrane inspection, lung sounds, mouth assessment, and close inspection of venous access device insertion sites, should be performed every 8 hours by a registered nurse for hospitalized patients.

Explain to the patient the importance of reporting any change in skin and mucous membranes or other health status. Instruct him or her to report any pimple, sore, rash, or open skin area. Also teach him or her to report a cough, burning on urination, pain around the venous access site, or new drainage from any body area. Good handwashing before

contact with the patient is essential infection prevention. Use aseptic technique with any invasive procedure. **Chart 24-4** lists the best practices to prevent infection in patients with neutropenia.

When delegating any nursing care activity to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) with supervision, teach them the importance of protecting the neutropenic patient from infection. Stress the ways that cross-contamination can occur and how to avoid this source of infection. Also ensure that UAP understand that even when the neutropenic patient is very tired and does not feel well, certain aspects of personal hygiene cannot be deferred. *Teach the importance of mouth care and washing of the axillary and perianal regions at least every 12 hours.*

Monitoring for manifestations of infection is critical for the hospitalized patient with neutropenia. The reduced numbers of neutrophils and other WBCs can limit the presence of common infection manifestations. Often the patient with neutropenia does not develop a high fever or have purulent drainage even when a severe infection is present. Hospital units specializing in care of neutropenic patients often have standard protocols that nurses initiate as soon as infection is suspected, *before a physician examines the patient*, because treatment delay can result in sepsis and death. These

CHART 24-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with Myelosuppression and Neutropenia

- Place the patient in a private room whenever possible.
- Use good handwashing technique or use alcohol-based hand rubs before touching the patient or any of the patient's belongings.
- Ensure that the patient's room and bathroom are cleaned at least once each day.
- Do not use supplies from common areas for patients with myelosuppression and neutropenia. For example, keep a dedicated box of disposable gloves in his or her room and do not share this box with any other patient. Provide single-use food products, individually wrapped gauze, and other individually wrapped items.
- Limit the number of health care personnel entering the patient's room.
- Monitor vital signs every 4 hours, including temperature.
- Inspect the patient's mouth at least every 8 hours.
- Inspect the patient's skin and mucous membranes (especially the anal area) for the presence of fissures and abscesses at least every 8 hours.
- Inspect open areas, such as IV sites, every 4 hours for manifestations of infection.
- Change wound dressings daily.
- Obtain specimens of all suspicious areas for culture (as specified by the agency), and promptly notify the physician.
- Assist the patient in coughing and deep-breathing exercises.
- Encourage activity at a level appropriate for the patient's current health status.
- Change IV tubing daily, or according to unit protocol.
- Keep frequently used equipment in the room for use with this patient only (e.g., blood pressure cuff, stethoscope, thermometer).
- Limit visitors to healthy adults.
- Use strict aseptic technique for all invasive procedures.
- Monitor the white blood cell count, especially the absolute neutrophil count (ANC), daily.
- Avoid the use of indwelling urinary catheters.
- Keep fresh flowers and potted plants out of the patient's room.
- Teach the patient to avoid eating raw fruits and vegetables; undercooked meat, eggs, and fish; pepper; and paprika.

protocols specify what types of cultures to obtain (e.g., blood, urine, sputum, central line, wound), what diagnostic tests to obtain (e.g., chest x-ray), and what antibiotics to start immediately.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Consider any temperature elevation in a patient with neutropenia a sign of infection. Report it to the health care provider immediately, and implement standard infection protocols.

Many patients remain at home during periods of neutropenia and are at continuing risk for infection. The focus remains on keeping the patient's own normal flora under control and preventing transmission of organisms from other people to him or her. *At no time is the patient an infection hazard to other people; however, other people can be an infection hazard to the patient.* Teach patients and families actions to reduce the risk for infection (**Chart 24-5**).

CHART 24-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Infection

During the times your white blood cell counts are low:

- Avoid crowds and other large gatherings of people who might be ill.
- Do not share personal toilet articles, such as toothbrushes, toothpaste, washcloths, or deodorant sticks, with others.
- If possible, bathe daily, using an antimicrobial soap. If total bathing is not possible, wash the armpits, groin, genitals, and anal area twice a day with an antimicrobial soap.
- Clean your toothbrush at least weekly by either running it through the dishwasher or rinsing it in liquid laundry bleach (and then rinsing the bleach out with hot running water).
- Wash your hands thoroughly with an antimicrobial soap before you eat and drink, after touching a pet, after shaking hands with anyone, as soon as you come home from any outing, and after using the toilet.
- Avoid eating salads; raw fruits and vegetables; undercooked meat, fish, and eggs; and pepper and paprika.
- Wash dishes between use with hot, sudsy water, or use a dishwasher.
- Do not drink water, milk, juice, or other cold liquids that have been standing at room temperature for longer than an hour.
- Do not reuse cups and glasses without washing.
- Do not change pet litter boxes.
- Take your temperature at least once a day and whenever you do not feel well.
- Report any of these signs or symptoms of infection to your physician immediately:
 - Temperature greater than 100° F.
 - Persistent cough (with or without sputum)
 - Pus or foul-smelling drainage from any open skin area or normal body opening
 - Presence of a boil or abscess
 - Urine that is cloudy or foul smelling or that causes burning on urination
- Take all prescribed drugs.
- Wear clean disposable gloves underneath gardening gloves when working in the garden or with houseplants.
- Wear a condom (if you are a man) when having sex. If you are a woman having sex with a male partner, ensure that he wears a condom.

Anemia and thrombocytopenia also result from the bone marrow suppression caused by some chemotherapy drugs. Anemia causes patients to feel fatigued, and some tissues are hypoxic. Thrombocytopenia increases the risk for excessive bleeding. When the platelet count is less than 50,000/mm³, small trauma can lead to prolonged bleeding. With a count lower than 20,000 platelets/mm³, spontaneous and uncontrollable bleeding may occur. Both anemia and thrombocytopenia may require transfusion therapy (Miller, 2010).

The use of growth factors to stimulate marrow production of red blood cells and platelets is common. Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) such as darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp) and epoetin alfa (Epogen and Procrit) can prevent or improve anemia associated with chemotherapy and can reduce the need for transfusion therapy. These drugs increase the production of many blood cell types, not just erythrocytes, increasing the patient's risk for hypertension, blood clots, strokes, and heart attacks, especially among older adults (Miller, 2010). Also, certain types of cancer cells grow faster in the presence of these ESAs, such as head and neck cancer cells, leukemias, and some lymphomas. Dosing is based on individual patient hemoglobin levels to ensure that just enough red blood cells are produced to avoid the need for transfusion but not to bring hemoglobin or hematocrit levels up to normal.

Growth factor therapy for thrombocytopenia is the use of oprelvekin (Neumega). This modified version of interleukin-11 (IL-11) increases the production of platelets. The drug causes fluid retention and increases the risk for heart failure and pulmonary edema. Other side effects include conjunctival bleeding, hypotension, and tachycardia. Teach patients to weigh themselves daily and keep a record. Remind them to immediately report sudden weight gain or dyspnea to the health care provider.

The priority for nursing care for the patient with thrombocytopenia is to provide a safe hospital environment. Chart 24-6 lists the best practices for bleeding precautions during hospitalization. Teach UAP the importance of using bleeding precautions and the need to report any evidence of bleeding immediately.

Teach patients with thrombocytopenia and their families to avoid injury and excessive bleeding when discharge occurs before the platelet count has returned to normal. Chart 24-7 reviews precautions to teach patients to prevent bleeding and what to do if bleeding occurs.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client receiving high-dose chemotherapy who has bone marrow suppression has been receiving daily injections of epoetin alfa (Procrit). Which assessment finding indicates to the nurse that today's dose should be held and the health care provider notified?

- Hematocrit of 28%
- Total white blood cell count of 6200 cells/mm³
- Blood pressure change from 130/90 mm Hg to 148/98 mm Hg
- Temperature change from 99° F (37.2° C) to 100° F (37.8° C)

Chemotherapy-Induced Nausea and Vomiting

Chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting (CINV) arises from a variety of GI and neural mechanisms. Most chemotherapy drugs are **emetogenic** (vomiting inducing) to some degree, depending on the dose. Most drugs induce nausea

and vomiting when the drug is given and for 1 to 2 days afterward. Some drugs, such as cisplatin (Platinol), induce delayed nausea and vomiting that can continue as long as 5 to 7 days after receiving it. Patients who have CINV during one round of chemotherapy may begin to have the same symptoms before the next round as a result of sheer anticipation. Once considered the single most distressing side effect of chemotherapy, CINV often can be well controlled with appropriate antiemetic therapy.

Drug Therapy. Many antiemetics are available to relieve nausea and vomiting. These drugs vary in the side effects they produce and how well they control CINV. One or more antiemetics are usually given before, during, and after chemotherapy. Drugs commonly used short-term to control CINV are listed in Chart 24-8. *Patient response to antiemetic therapy is variable, and the drug combinations are individualized for best effect.*

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not confuse the antiemetic drug Anzemet (dolasetron) with the diabetes drug Avandamet (a combination of metformin and rosiglitazone). The drugs have similar sounding names but totally different actions.

Regardless of which drug or drugs are being used to prevent or reduce CINV, they are most effective when used aggressively and on a scheduled basis (Hawkins & Grunberg,

CHART 24-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Injury for the Patient with Thrombocytopenia

- Handle the patient gently.
- Use and teach UAP to use a lift sheet when moving and positioning the patient in bed.
- Avoid IM injections and venipunctures.
- When injections or venipunctures are necessary, use the smallest-gauge needle for the task.
- Apply firm pressure to the needle stick site for 10 minutes or until the site no longer oozes blood.
- Apply ice to areas of trauma.
- Test all urine and stool for the presence of occult blood.
- Observe IV sites every 4 hours for bleeding.
- Instruct patients to notify nursing personnel immediately if any trauma occurs and if bleeding or bruising is noticed.
- Avoid trauma to rectal tissues:
 - Do not administer enemas.
 - If suppositories are prescribed, lubricate liberally and administer with caution.
- Measure the patient's abdominal girth daily.
- Instruct the patient and UAP to use an electric shaver rather than a razor.
- When providing mouth care or supervising others in providing mouth care:
 - Use a soft-bristled toothbrush or tooth sponges.
 - Do not use water pressure gum cleaners.
 - Make certain that dentures fit and do not rub.
- Instruct the patient not to blow the nose or insert objects into the nose.
- Instruct UAP and the patient that the patient should wear shoes with firm soles whenever ambulating.
- Keep pathways and walkways clear and uncluttered.

CHART 24-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing Injury or Bleeding

During the time your platelet count is low:

- Use an electric shaver.
- Use a soft-bristled toothbrush.
- Do not have dental work performed without consulting your cancer health care provider.
- Do not take aspirin or any aspirin-containing products. Read the label to be sure that the product does not contain aspirin or salicylates.
- Do not participate in contact sports or any activity likely to result in your being bumped, scratched, or scraped.
- If you are bumped, apply ice to the site for at least 1 hour.
- Avoid hard foods that would scrape the inside of your mouth.
- Eat warm, cool, or cold foods to avoid burning your mouth.
- Check your skin and mouth daily for bruises, swelling, or areas with small reddish purple marks that may indicate bleeding.
- Notify your cancer health care provider if you:
 - Are injured and persistent bleeding results
 - Have excessive menstrual bleeding
 - See blood in your urine or bowel movement
- Avoid anal intercourse.
- Take a stool softener to prevent straining during a bowel movement.
- Do not use enemas or rectal suppositories.
- Avoid bending over at the waist.
- Do not wear clothing or shoes that are tight or that rub.
- Avoid blowing your nose or placing objects in your nose. If you must blow your nose, do so gently without blocking either nasal passage.
- Avoid playing musical instruments that raise the pressure inside your head, such as brass wind instruments and woodwinds or reed instruments.

2009). Drug therapy for CINV works best when given before the nausea and vomiting are out of control. *Thus the nursing priority is to coordinate with the patient and health care provider to ensure adequate control of CINV. Ensure that antiemetics are given before chemotherapy.* When patients are receiving dose-dense chemotherapy, the intensity of CINV also increases and greater antiemetic therapy is needed. Teach patients to continue the prescribed therapy, even when CINV appears controlled. *When the patient stops taking the drug(s), teach him or her to start retaking the drug at the first sign of nausea to prevent it from becoming uncontrollable.*

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older patients may receive lower doses of chemotherapy because it was thought that they would not be able to tolerate the side effects of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting (CINV). Studies have shown that older patients do not have greater CINV than younger patients, and their chemotherapy regimens should not be altered on this basis alone. However, the older adult can become dehydrated more quickly if CINV is not controlled. Teach older adults to be proactive with taking their prescribed antiemetics and to contact their health care provider if the CINV either does not resolve within 12 hours or becomes worse (Cope & Reb, 2006).

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Complementary and alternative therapies may assist the patient with

CINV to achieve comfort through nonpharmacologic means along with antiemetics. Music, progressive muscle relaxation, guided imagery, acupressure, distraction, or drinking Concord grape juice before meals may help reduce or relieve nausea and vomiting. Assess patients for vomiting, dehydration, and electrolyte imbalances.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which action is most important for the nurse to implement to prevent nausea and vomiting in a client who is prescribed to receive the first round of IV chemotherapy?

- Keep the client NPO during the time chemotherapy is infusing.
- Administer antiemetic drugs before administering chemotherapy.
- Ensure that the chemotherapy is infused over a 4- to 6-hour period.
- Assess the client for manifestations of dehydration hourly during the infusion period.

Mucositis

Mucositis (sores in mucous membranes) often develops in the entire GI tract, especially in the mouth (**stomatitis**). Normally, the lining of the GI tract undergoes rapid cell division and quickly replaces cells. Chemotherapy kills mucous membrane cells more rapidly than they are replaced, resulting in sores. Mouth sores are painful and interfere with eating and general quality of life. **Chart 24-9** lists the patient education for self-management of mucositis.

Frequent mouth assessment and oral hygiene are key in managing stomatitis and mucositis. Stress the importance of good and frequent oral hygiene, including teeth cleaning and mouth rinsing. Because most patients with mucositis also have myelosuppression (bone marrow suppression) and are at risk for bleeding, they must take care to avoid traumatizing the oral mucosa. Instruct them to use a soft-bristled toothbrush or disposable mouth sponges. New recommendations include gentle flossing once daily (Harris et al., 2008). Encourage them to rinse the mouth with plain water or saline every hour while awake. Teach them to avoid mouthwashes that contain alcohol or other drying agents that may further irritate the mucosa.

Oral hygiene equipment must be kept clean. Remind patients not to share toothbrushes. Toothbrushes can be cleaned weekly by using a home dishwasher or by rinsing them with a concentrated solution of liquid bleach or hydrogen peroxide and then rinsing with hot water.

Many compounds are available for pain relief from stomatitis or mucositis as “swish and spit” mixtures that contain a local anesthetic combined with anti-inflammatory agents. Remind the patient that these mixtures are not to be swallowed.

Alopecia

Alopecia, hair loss, may occur as whole-body hair loss or may be as mild as only a thinning of the scalp hair. Reassure patients that hair loss is temporary. Hair regrowth usually begins about 1 month after completion of chemotherapy; however, the new hair may differ from the original hair in color, texture, and thickness. No known treatment prevents alopecia. *The priority nursing interventions for the patient with alopecia are to teach the patient to prevent injury to the scalp and to assist him or her in coping with this body image change.*

CHART 24-8 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Antiemetic Drugs for Chemotherapy-Induced Nausea and Vomiting

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PHYSIOLOGIC PURPOSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALE
Serotonin Antagonists			
Ondansetron (Zofran) 8 mg IV or orally every 8 hr	Prevent CINV by blocking the 5-HT3 receptors in the brain (chemotrigger zone) and in the intestines. This action prevents serotonin from binding to the receptors and activating the nausea and vomiting centers.	Teach patient to change positions slowly to avoid falls.	These drugs may induce bradycardia, hypotension, and vertigo.
Granisetron (Kytril) 1 mg IV or orally every 12 hr		Assess the patient for headache.	Headache is a common side effect of drugs from this class.
Granisetron transdermal (Sancuso) 1 patch per day starting 24 to 48 hrs before chemotherapy administration and continuing for up to 7 days after chemotherapy administration			
Dolasetron (Anzemet) 100 mg IV or orally 30 minutes before chemotherapy administration			
Palonosetron (Aloxi) 0.25 mg IV as a single dose 30 minutes before chemotherapy administration			
Neurokinin Receptor Antagonists			
Aprepitant (Emend)	Reduce CINV by blocking the substance P neurokinin receptor. When used together with a serotonin antagonist and a corticosteroid, both acute and delayed nausea and vomiting are controlled.	Teach patients who are also taking warfarin (Coumadin) to have their INRs checked before and after the 3 days of this therapy.	This drug interferes with the effectiveness of warfarin.
3-day oral regimen:			
Day 1, 125 mg 1 hour before chemotherapy administration			
Days 2 and 3, 80 mg in the morning (no chemotherapy these days)		Teach women who are using oral contraceptives to use an additional form of birth control while on this drug.	The drug reduces the effectiveness of oral contraceptives, increasing the risk for an unplanned pregnancy.
Corticosteroids			
Dexamethasone (Decadron) 5-10 mg IV or orally daily	Reduce CINV by decreasing swelling in the brain's chemotrigger zone.	Teach patients to reduce salt intake to about 4 g daily.	Drug causes fluid retention and hypertension.
Prokinetic Agents			
Metoclopramide (Reglan) 20-40 mg IM or IV twice or three times daily	Reduce CINV by blocking dopamine receptors in the brain's chemotrigger zone.	Teach the patient to avoid driving or operating heavy machinery.	Increased drowsiness is common.
Benzodiazepines			
Lorazepam (Ativan) 1-3 mg orally or IV twice or three times daily	Reduce CINV by enhancing cholinergic effects and by decreasing the person's awareness.	Teach the patient and family that the patient should avoid driving, operating heavy machinery, making legal decisions, and going up and down staircases unassisted.	The drug induces amnesia and profound drowsiness.

CINV, Chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting; INR, international normalized ratio.

One practice that patients have used to preserve hair is the application of an ice cap during and for a few hours after chemotherapy administration. This practice limits exposure of the hair follicles to chemotherapy, and less hair loss results. However, this practice also may allow circulating cancer cells to escape exposure to chemotherapy, increasing the risk for cancer recurrence. Thus this practice is not recommended by professional oncology organizations.

The hairless scalp is at risk for injury. Teach the patient to avoid direct sunlight on the scalp by wearing a hat or other head covering. Sunscreen use is essential to prevent sunburn even with minimal sun exposure (many chemotherapy drugs increase sun sensitivity), regardless of skin darkness. This skin can be damaged by helmets, headphones, headsets, and other items that rub the head. Teach the patient to wear some head covering underneath these items. Head coverings also are

needed during cold weather to reduce body heat loss and prevent hypothermia.

Assist patients in selecting a type of head covering that suits their income and lifestyle. Having very short hair or a shaved head now is common and socially acceptable for men, and many men choose not to wear a wig during chemotherapy. Cutting the hair very short before chemotherapy begins allows a better wig fit.

Suggest that patients purchase a wig before therapy begins and have their hairdresser shape the wig to mimic their usual hairstyle so there is less change in appearance. High-quality wigs are expensive but can look very much like the patient's own hair. Many local units of the American Cancer Society offer the loan of wigs that other patients have used and then donated to be lent to others with cancer. Patients also can disguise hair loss with caps, scarves, and turbans. Patients in

CHART 24-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Mouth Care for Patients with Mucositis

- Examine your mouth (including the roof, under the tongue, and between the teeth and cheek) every 4 hours for fissures, blisters, sores, or drainage.
- If sores or drainage is present, see your health care provider to have these areas cultured.
- Brush the teeth and tongue with a soft-bristled brush or sponges every 8 hours and before meals.
- Rinse the mouth with a solution of one-half peroxide and one-half normal saline every 12 hours.
- Avoid the use of mouthwashes that contain alcohol or glycerin.
- Rinse your mouth four times daily with a bland rinse.
- Drink 2 or more liters of water per day if another health problem does not require limiting fluid intake.
- Take antimicrobial drugs as prescribed.
- Use topical analgesic drugs as prescribed or as needed.
- “Swish and spit” room-temperature tap water or normal saline as needed.
- Apply a water-based moisturizer to your lips after each episode of mouth care and as needed.
- Use prescribed “artificial saliva” or mouth moisturizers as needed.
- Avoid using tobacco or drinking alcoholic beverages.
- Avoid spicy, salty, acidic, dry, rough, or hard food.
- Cool liquids to prevent burns or irritation.
- If you wear dentures, use them only during meals. When not in place, soak dentures in an antimicrobial solution. Rinse thoroughly before placing them in your mouth.

control of their appearance may improve their quality of life during cancer therapy (Borsellino & Young, 2011).

Changes in Cognitive Function

Some patients receiving chemotherapy have reported changes in cognitive function, most commonly reduced ability to concentrate, memory loss, and difficulty learning new information during treatment and for months to years after treatment (Evens & Eschiti, 2009). Although most types of chemotherapy drugs do not cross the blood-brain barrier and were thought not to affect any part of brain function, the drugs can induce inflammation and general biochemical changes that could reduce cognitive function, at least temporarily.

This problem, termed “chemo brain,” is reported most often in women undergoing chemotherapy for breast cancer, although it is not limited either to women or to breast cancer treatment. The fact that it is reported more in this population reflects the issues that breast cancer is very common, it is often treated with high-dose chemotherapy, and most patients with breast cancer survive a long time after therapy.

Comparisons of brain structure and cognitive function before, during, and after high-dose chemotherapy show some anatomic changes in brain white matter and gray matter. These changes are not usually present at 3 years after completion of therapy. It is not known why all patients receiving high-dose chemotherapy do not develop the problem; however, genetic differences in cytokine release and disruption of the blood-brain barrier may be partly responsible (Evens & Eschiti, 2009; Myers et al., 2008). Not only is the exact cause of this side effect unclear, so are the personal risk factors.

The priority for nursing care is to support the patient who reports this side effect. Listen to the patient’s concerns, and tell

him or her that other patients have also reported such problems. Providing absolute reassurance is difficult because only a few studies using appropriate research methods have examined this issue; however, early results indicate that recovery is likely with time. A common sense approach includes that patients should be warned against participating in other behaviors that could alter cognitive functioning, such as excessive alcohol intake, recreational drug use, and activities that increase the risk for head injury.

Chemotherapy-Induced Peripheral Neuropathy

Chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy (CIPN) is the loss of sensory or motor function of peripheral nerves associated with exposure to certain anticancer drugs (Donovan, 2009; Tofthagen, 2010). Although most commonly seen in patients with long-term diabetes, patients undergoing chemotherapy with nerve-damaging drugs (especially the antimitotics and platinum-based drugs) often have rapid onset of severe CIPN (Visovsky et al., 2008). The degree of CIPN is related to the dosage of the nerve-damaging drugs; higher doses lead to greater neuropathy. The results of CIPN on function are widespread, with the most common problems including loss of sensation in the hands and feet, orthostatic hypotension, erectile dysfunction, neuropathic pain, loss of taste discrimination, and severe constipation (Visovsky et al., 2008). CIPN is a long-term consequence and may be permanent in some people. No known interventions prevent CIPN.

The priority for nursing care of patients experiencing CIPN is teaching them to prevent injury. Loss of sensation increases the patient’s risk for injury because he or she may not be aware of excessive heat, cold, or pressure. The risk for injury to the feet is very high. Falls are more likely because the patient cannot feel changes in terrain and because of orthostatic hypotension. **Chart 24-10** lists teaching priorities for the patient with CIPN.

Some issues, such as erectile dysfunction, may be helped with devices or drug therapy (see **Chapter 75** for options for erectile dysfunction). Other issues are not correctable and often affect many aspects of quality of life. The loss of sensation in the hands may make some activities that require very fine motor skills impossible. For other activities, such as piano-playing, the person may have to watch his or her hands to know just where the keys are and may not be able to control how hard a key is struck. Assess the patient’s ability to cope with these changes. Coordinate with an occupational therapist to help the patient adjust for sensory deficits in performing activities.

HORMONAL MANIPULATION

Overview

Hormones are naturally occurring chemicals secreted by endocrine (ductless) glands and picked up by capillaries. Once in the bloodstream, hormones circulate to all body areas but exert their effects only on their specific target tissues. Some hormones make hormone-sensitive tumors grow more rapidly. Thus decreasing the amount of these hormones to hormone-sensitive tumors can slow the cancer growth rate.

Hormonal manipulation can help control some types of cancer for many years but does not cure the disease. If a tumor depends on hormone A for growth and a large quantity of hormone B (similar to A) is given to the patient,

CHART 24-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Chemotherapy-Induced Peripheral Neuropathy

- Protect feet and other body areas where sensation is reduced (e.g., do not walk around in bare feet or stocking feet; always wear shoes with a protective sole).
- Be sure shoes are long enough and wide enough to prevent creating sores or blisters.
- Buy shoes in the afternoon or evening to accommodate any size change needed for foot swelling.
- Provide a long break-in period for new shoes; do not wear new shoes for longer than 2 hours at a time.
- Avoid pointed-toe shoes and shoes with heels higher than 2 inches.
- Inspect your feet daily (with a mirror) for open areas or redness.
- Avoid extremes of temperature; wear warm clothing in the winter, especially over hands, feet, and ears.
- Test water temperature with a thermometer when washing dishes or bathing. Use warm water rather than hot water (less than 105° F).
- Use potholders when cooking.
- Use gloves when washing dishes or gardening.
- Do not eat foods that are “steaming hot”; allow them to cool before placing them in your mouth.
- Eat foods that are high in fiber (e.g., fruit, whole grain cereals, vegetables).
- Drink two to three liters of fluid (nonalcoholic) daily unless your health care provider has told you to restrict fluid intake.
- Get up from a lying or sitting position slowly. If you feel dizzy, sit back down until the dizziness fades before standing; then stand in place for a few seconds before walking or using the stairs.
- Look at your feet and the floor or ground where you are walking to assess how the ground, floor, or step changes to prevent tripping or falling.
- Avoid using area rugs, especially those that slide easily.
- Use handrails when going up or down steps.

hormone B will interfere with the tumor’s uptake of hormone A or will limit the amount produced. As a result, tumor growth is slowed and survival time increases. Table 24-4 lists drugs used in hormonal manipulation for cancer therapy.

Some drugs are hormone antagonists that compete with natural hormones at the receptors. When hormone antagonists are given, they bind to the specific hormone receptor on or in the tumor cell and prevent the needed hormone from binding to the receptor. If a tumor needs a certain hormone to grow and the hormone can enter or activate the cell only through a receptor, hormone antagonists can slow tumor growth.

The hormone inhibitors are another class of drugs used for hormonal therapy. These drugs inhibit the production of specific hormones in the normal hormone-producing organs. For example, the aromatase inhibitor anastrozole (Arimidex) prevents the production of estrogen in the adrenal gland and reduces the blood level of estrogen, which results in slower growth of some breast cancers.

Side Effects of Hormonal Manipulation

Androgens and the antiestrogen receptor drugs cause masculinizing effects in women. Chest and facial hair may develop, menstrual periods stop, and breast tissue shrinks. Patients may have some fluid retention. For men and women receiving androgens, acne may develop, hypercalcemia is common, and liver dysfunction may occur with prolonged therapy. Women

TABLE 24-4 COMMON AGENTS USED FOR HORMONAL MANIPULATION OF CANCER

TYPE OF AGENT	EXAMPLE
Hormone Agonists	
Androgen	Fluoxymesterone (Halotestin) Testolactone (Teslac)
Estrogen	Chlorotrianisene (Tace) Conjugated equine estrogen (Premarin) Diethylstilbestrol (DES, Stilphostrol) Ethinyl estradiol (Estinyl)
Progestin	Medroxyprogesterone (Amen, Provera) Megestrol (Megace)
Luteinizing hormone–releasing hormone (LHRH)	Leuprolide (Eligard, Lupron, Viadur) Goserelin (Zoladex)
Hormone Antagonists	
Antiandrogens	Bicalutamide (Casodex) Flutamide (Eulexin)
Antiestrogens	Fulvestrant (Faslodex) Tamoxifen (Nolvadex) Toremifene (Fareston)
Hormone Inhibitors	
	Aminoglutethimide (Cytadren, Elipten) Anastrozole (Arimidex) Exemestane (Aromasin) Letrozole (Femara)

receiving estrogens or progestins have irregular menses, fluid retention, and breast tenderness. All patients who take estrogen or progestins are at increased risk for venous thromboembolism.

Feminine manifestations appear in men who take estrogens, progestins, or antiandrogen receptor drugs. Facial hair thins or disappears, facial skin is smoother, body fat is redistributed, and **gynecomastia** (breast development in men) can occur. Bone loss is common, which increases the risk for osteoporosis and pathologic bone fractures (Abarado & Mahon, 2010). Testicular and penile atrophy also occurs to some degree. Although sexual function may continue, achieving and maintaining an erection are difficult. Teach patients and families about expected side effects. Encourage them to express their feelings about body changes. Refer them for counseling, if needed.

PHOTODYNAMIC THERAPY

Overview

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) is the selective destruction of cancer cells through a chemical reaction triggered by types of laser light. It can be used to destroy some cancers, reduce the size of tumors and then allow more complete tumor removal by surgery, and shrink tumors in airways or the esophagus to relieve obstruction. PDT for cancer therapy is used most often for non-melanoma skin cancers, ocular tumors, GI tumors, and lung cancers located in the airways.

An agent that sensitizes cells to light is injected IV along with a dye. These agents enter all cells but leave normal cells more rapidly than cancer cells. Usually, within 48 to 72 hours,

most of the drug has collected in high concentrations in cancer cells. At this time, a laser light is focused on the tumor. The light activates a chemical reaction within those cells retaining the sensitizing drug that induces irreversible cell damage. Some cells die and slough immediately; others continue to slough for several days. Some lesions require only one exposure to the laser, and others must be re-exposed several days after the first treatment.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The priorities for nursing care of the patient receiving PDT are teaching the patient and family to prevent complications and coordinating changes in the care environment for protection of the patient (Collins & Garner, 2007). The patient has general sensitivity to light for up to 12 weeks after the photosensitizing drug is injected. The most intense period of light sensitivity is the 48 hours after injection and before the laser treatment. During this time, the patient is at high risk for sunburn and eye pain or damage.

Teaching must begin before the patient comes for the injection. Specific instructions are listed in Chart 24-11. Instruct the patient to bring clothing, hat, and eye protection to wear on the way home from the injection. Clothing should include gloves, shirts or blouses with long sleeves and high collars, long pants, and socks, to prevent burns from exposure to direct or indirect sunlight (including light through windows) and other intense light sources. Stress that the skin and eyes will remain sensitive for 30 to 90 days, even among people with very dark skin. Thus the patient will need to use protective measures and be homebound for 1 to 3 months.

When the patient returns for the laser light therapy, the process may occur on an outpatient basis, or for airway lesions, the patient may require several days as an inpatient in an intensive care unit. The nurse coordinates with all other members of the health care team in ensuring that the environment is safe for the patient. Lighting of all types is kept to a minimum. Even the use of a penlight or the sensor on a pulse oximeter can lead to burns for the patient who has been injected with a photosensitizer. Turn down the light intensity of the readouts on electronic monitoring equipment to as low as possible and ensure that it is not facing the patient. When the patient is transported, reducing hallway lighting and avoiding windows are essential. An especially important member of the team to consult is the pharmacist. Any drug the patient is prescribed must be considered for its photosensitizing properties. For example, certain antibiotics (tetracycline and erythromycin) increase photosensitivity as do many antihypertensive drugs. When these drugs are taken by the patient receiving PDT, the intensity of the photosensitivity is increased and the patient's risk for harm also is increased.

IMMUNOTHERAPY: BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE MODIFIERS

Overview

Biological response modifiers (BRMs) modify the patient's biologic responses to tumor cells. The BRMs used as cancer therapy are cytokines, which are small protein hormones made by white blood cells.

CHART 24-11 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Photodynamic Therapy

Before Photosensitization

- Bring protective clothing (e.g., shirts with long sleeves and high collars, long pants or skirt, gloves, socks, wide-brimmed hat) and UV-protective sunglasses with you when you come to be injected with the photosensitizing agent.
- If possible, have someone else drive you home so that you can place a sheet or light blanket over yourself.
- Plan to avoid leaving your home during daylight hours for anywhere from 1 to 3 months.
- Cover all windows with light-blocking shades or heavy drapes/curtains.
- Replace high-wattage light bulbs with lower-wattage ones, and use as few as possible.

After Photosensitization

- Remember that the photosensitizing effects last from 1 to 3 months.
- Continue to wear all protective clothing, avoid sunlight in any form, and avoid high-wattage indoor lights.
- Drink plenty of water to prevent becoming dehydrated.
- Do not take any newly prescribed or over-the-counter drugs without contacting the physician who performed the photodynamic therapy. Some drugs make the light sensitivity even worse; others interact with the photosensitizing drug.
- When you do start to re-expose yourself to sunlight and other bright lights, do so slowly. Start out exposing only about 1 inch of your skin to sunlight at a time.
 - Start out with only 10 minutes, and increase the time only by about 5 minutes each day.
- Remember that sunscreen will not prevent severe sunburn during this time.
- If you experience pain or blistering, notify the photodynamic therapy health care team.
- Continue to wear dark glasses, even indoors, until you no longer have eye pain when in a normally lighted environment.
- When you no longer are photosensitive, see an ophthalmologist to check whether your retina has any damage.

UV, Ultraviolet.

Some cytokines enhance immune function, which plays an important role in cancer prevention (see [Chapters 19 and 23](#)). Cytokines and other BRMs work by stimulating the immune system to recognize cancer cells and take actions to eliminate or destroy them. Some BRMs stimulate faster recovery of bone marrow function after treatment-induced suppression.

BRMs as Cancer Therapy

Two common types of BRMs used as cancer therapy are the interleukins and interferons. Some agents can stimulate specific immune system cells to attack and destroy cancer cells; other agents block cancer cell access to an essential function or nutrient.

Interleukins (ILs) are a group of 37 known substances the body makes to help regulate inflammation and immune protection. Some are now synthesized as drugs. ILs help different immune system cells recognize and destroy abnormal body cells. In particular, IL-1, IL-2, and IL-6 appear to “charge up” the immune system and enhance attacks on cancer cells by macrophages, natural killer (NK) cells, and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes.

TABLE 24-5 COMMON BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE MODIFIERS USED AS SUPPORTIVE CANCER THERAPY

AGENT	CELL TYPE AFFECTED	INDICATIONS
Sargramostim (Leukine, Prokine)	All granulocytes Neutrophils Eosinophils Monocytes Macrophages	Chemotherapy-induced leukopenia
Filgrastim (Neupogen) Pegfilgrastim (Neulasta)	Neutrophils	Chemotherapy-induced neutropenia
Epoetin alfa (Epogen, Procrit) Darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp)	Erythrocytes	Chemotherapy-induced anemia Chemotherapy-induced fatigue Anemia induced by renal failure
Oprelvekin (Neumega)	Platelets	Chemotherapy-induced thrombocytopenia
Sipuleucel-T (Provenge) (product is a vaccine)	T-cells; antigen-processing cells (macrophages)	Hormone-refractory prostate cancer

Interferons (INFs) are cell-produced proteins that have been effective to some degree in the treatment of melanoma, hairy cell leukemia, renal cell carcinoma, ovarian cancer, and cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. They assist in cancer therapy by:

- Slowing tumor cell division
- Stimulating the growth and activation of NK cells
- Inducing cancer cells to resume a more normal appearance and function
- Inhibiting the expression of oncogenes

One drug classified as a BRM that has a different action is thalidomide (Thalomid), which reduces the level of tumor angiogenesis factor (TAF). TAF is needed to maintain blood supply to the tumor. When TAF is reduced, the tumor is poorly nourished and cancer cells die. This drug is approved for treatment of multiple myeloma.

BRMs as Supportive Therapy

BRMs used for supportive therapy during cancer treatment are the colony-stimulating factors or “growth factors” (Table 24-5). These factors induce more rapid recovery of the bone marrow after suppression by chemotherapy. This effect has two benefits. First, when bone marrow suppression is shortened or less severe, patients are less at risk for life-threatening infections, anemia, and bleeding. Second, because the growth factors allow more rapid bone marrow recovery, patients can receive their chemotherapy on time and may even be able to tolerate higher doses, improving the curative outcome of chemotherapy.

Side Effects of Biological Response Modifier Therapy

Patients receiving interleukins have generalized and often severe inflammatory reactions. Fluid shifts and capillary leak are widespread with edema forming in most tissues. Tissue

swelling affects the function of all organs and can be life threatening. Patients receiving high-dose BRM therapy should receive care in an intensive care or monitoring unit. These effects occur during the period of acute drug infusion and resolve after therapy completion.

Many BRMs and growth factors induce symptoms of mild inflammation during and immediately after receiving the drug, including fever, chills, rigors, and flu-like general malaise. Problems are worse when higher doses are given, but they seem to become less severe over time. Fever is treated with acetaminophen. Patients with severe rigors are managed with meperidine (Demerol).

Interferon therapy causes peripheral neuropathy similar to that found in patients who have long-standing diabetes mellitus. Some of the problems resulting from the neuropathy include decreased sensory perception, visual disturbances, decreased hearing, unsteady balance and gait, and orthostatic hypotension. It is not known whether the neuropathy is temporary or permanent. (See the [Chemotherapy-Induced Peripheral Neuropathy](#) section on p. 424.)

Skin dryness, itching, and peeling occur with many types of BRM therapy. The skin problems are more severe with higher doses and when more than one type of BRM is used at the same time. Reactions are temporary but cause much discomfort and distress. Advise patients to apply moisturizers (unscented) to the skin and to use mild soap to clean the skin. Involved areas should be protected from the sun with clothing or the use of sunscreen agents. Teach patients to avoid swimming and to not use topical steroid creams on affected areas.

TARGETED THERAPY

Overview

As discussed in Chapter 23, normal cells have tightly controlled regulation over when and to what extent a cell divides; cancer cells have escaped this tight control. External events can indicate to a cell that cell division is needed. However, these external events must be communicated to the cell's nucleus to activate the genes that promote cell division (oncogenes) and turn off the genes that normally suppress cell division (suppressor genes). The key to communicating the need for cell division is the presence and activation of signal transduction pathways. Fig. 24-4 shows a segment of a cell with one signal transduction pathway. When this pathway is activated at the cell surface by binding growth factors to their receptors, having certain drugs interact with the cell's plasma membrane, binding of certain adhesion proteins, changing movement of calcium and sodium across the membrane, or other cell-to-cell interactions, the first result is an increase in the cell's production of a family of enzymes known as *tyrosine kinases* (TKs). With increased TKs present, the pro-cell division signal activates many substances, known as *transcription factors*, within the pathway. When the pro-cell division transcription factors reach the cell's nucleus, oncogenes are activated, suppressor genes are inactivated, and a variety of proteins are produced to make cell division occur.

When cell division is not needed, external signals, such as growth factor inhibitors and the surrounding of a cell plasma membrane with other cells, send signals that inhibit activation of TKs and the signal transduction pathway. As a result,

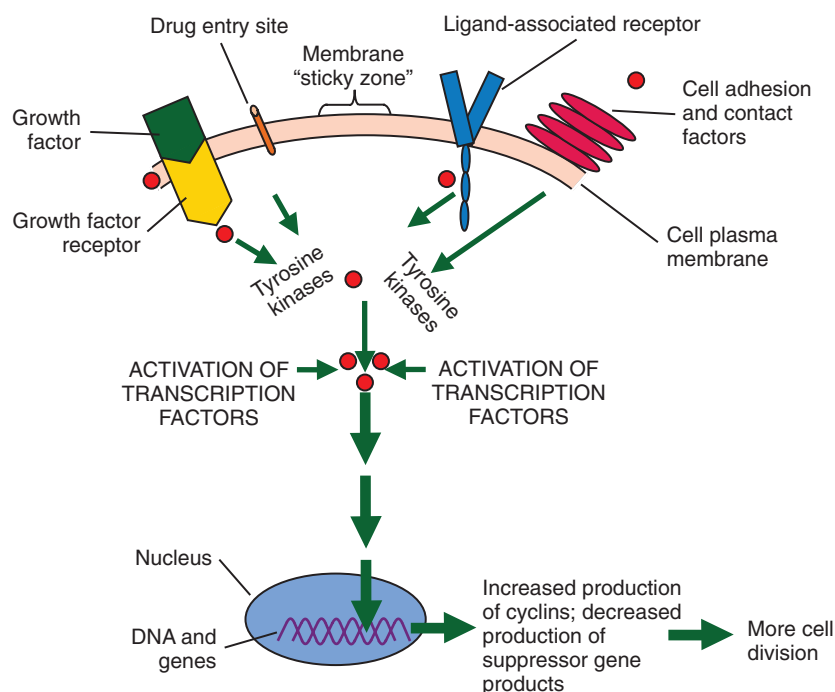


FIG. 24-4 Pro-cell division signal transduction pathway.

few transcriptions are produced, suppressor genes are expressed, and oncogenes are suppressed. The proteins needed for cell division are not produced, and cell division does not occur.

Overall, cancer cells have more active signal transduction pathways and transcription factors that ultimately lead to excessive division of the cancer cells. Targeted therapies take advantage of differences in one or more parts of the signal transduction pathway to block it. Often these parts are overexpressed in cancer cells. Agents used as targeted therapies can disrupt the pathway and slow or stop cell division. They may work by blocking a growth factor receptor, by preventing the activation of tyrosine kinases, by limiting the production of transcription factors, and by other mechanisms that are not yet fully understood. Regardless of how a targeted therapy works, it will work only with those cancer cells that have the actual target. The result is that the signal for turning on cell division genes (oncogenes) does not get through to the cell's nucleus (Fig. 24-5) (Byar & Workman, 2012).

Drugs for targeted therapy have been approved as treatment for certain cancers. These drugs are classified based on the main mechanism of action, and some have more than one action (Table 24-6). *It is important to remember that these drugs will not work unless the cancer cell overexpresses the actual target substance. Thus not all patients with the same cancer type would benefit from the use of targeted therapy.* Each person's cancer cells are evaluated to determine whether the cells have enough of a target to be affected by targeted therapy.

Tyrosine Kinase Inhibitors

Drugs with the main action of inhibiting activation of tyrosine kinases are **tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs)**. There are many different TKs. Some are unique to the cell type; others may be present only in cancer cells that express a specific gene

mutation. As a result, the different TKI drugs are effective in disrupting the growth of some cancer cell types and not others. An example of a TKI is imatinib mesylate (Gleevec). This drug binds to the energy site of one specific tyrosine kinase and prevents its activation. The drug is most useful in cancers that overexpress the *ABL1* oncogene, such as Philadelphia chromosome–positive chronic myeloid leukemia and metastatic gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs).

Side effects common to most TKIs include fluid retention, electrolyte imbalances, and bone marrow suppression. This suppression can be severe enough to cause neutropenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia. The problems associated with bone marrow suppression are increased when the patient also receives traditional chemotherapy with drugs that suppress bone marrow.

Epidermal Growth Factor/Receptor Inhibitors

The epidermal growth factor/receptor inhibitors (EGFRIs) block epidermal growth factor from binding to its cell surface receptor. As shown in Fig. 24-5, when this receptor is blocked, it cannot activate tyrosine kinase. As a result, the signal transduction pathway for promotion of cell division is inhibited.

An example of an EGFR drug is trastuzumab (Herceptin), which binds the excessive amounts of a certain type of EGFR produced by some breast cancer, ovarian, and colon cancer cells in response to the activation of the *HER2/neu* gene. Binding this receptor prevents cancer cell division and increases the sensitivity to chemotherapy and immune system actions.

The most common side effects of EGFRIs include a variety of skin reactions. These may be as mild as a rash or result in excessive skin peeling and fissures. Trastuzumab has been available longer than the other EGFRIs and has been found to have adverse effects on the heart (Frankel, 2010). It is not known if the cardiac effects also are common to other EGFRIs.

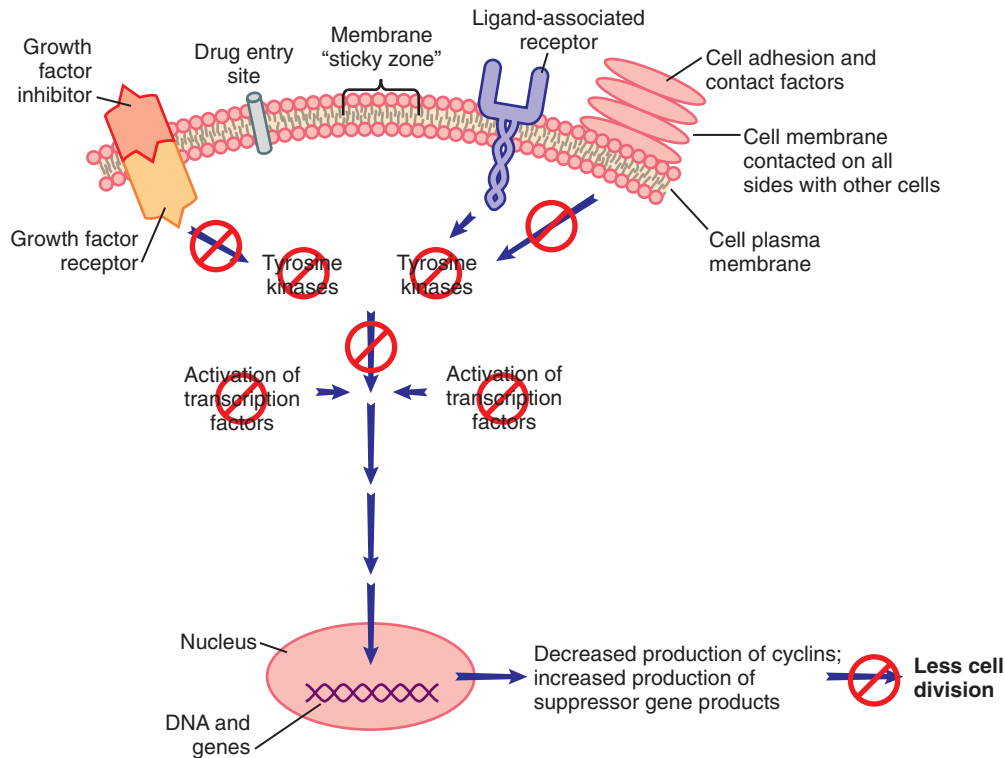


FIG. 24-5 Sites of action for targeted therapies that inhibit a signal transduction pathway and greatly reduce cell division.

TABLE 24-6 EXAMPLES OF TARGETED THERAPY AGENTS

CLASSIFICATION	AGENT
Tyrosine kinase inhibitors	Dasatinib (Sprycel) Imatinib mesylate (Gleevec) Lapatinib (Tykerb) Nilotinib (Tasigna)
Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors (EGFRIs)	Cetuximab (Erbix) Erlotinib (Tarceva) Gefitinib (Iressa) Panitumumab (Vectibix) Trastuzumab (Herceptin)
Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor inhibitors (VEGFRIs)	Bevacizumab (Avastin)
Multikinase inhibitors	Sorafenib (Nexavar) Sunitinib (Sutent) Pazopanib (Votrient)
Proteasome inhibitors	Bortezomib (Velcade)
Angiogenesis inhibitors	Everolimus (Afinitor) Lenalidomide (Revlimid) Temsolimus (Torisel)
Monoclonal antibodies	Alemtuzumab (Campath) Ibritumomab tiuxetin (Zevalin) Rituximab (Rituxan) ¹³¹ I tositumomab (Bexxar)

Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor/Receptor Inhibitors

The currently approved drug in the vascular endothelial growth factor/receptor inhibitor class is bevacizumab (Avastin). It binds to vascular endothelial growth factor

(VEGF) and prevents the binding of VEGF with its receptors on the surfaces of endothelial cells present in blood vessels. This inhibits formation of new blood vessels with a tumor. As a result, tumor cells are poorly nourished and metastasis is inhibited. This drug is used with standard chemotherapy for many cancers that overexpress the receptor.

The most common side effects are hypertension and impaired wound healing. In addition, bone marrow suppression with neutropenia and thrombocytopenia also occur, especially when the drug is used in combination with chemotherapy drugs that cause bone marrow suppression.

Multikinase Inhibitors

The multikinase inhibitors (MKIs) are drugs that inhibit the activity of specific kinases in cancer cells and in tumor blood vessels. An example of an MKI is sunitinib (Sutent). These drugs are most effective in preventing the activation of tyrosine kinases that have a specific gene mutation found most often in some renal cell carcinomas, GI stromal tumors, and pancreatic, colon, and non-small cell lung cancer cells.

A common side effect of this class of drugs is hypertension. Others include nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, constipation, mucositis, and mild neutropenia and thrombocytopenia.

Proteasome Inhibitors

Proteasome inhibitors work by preventing the formation of a large complex of proteins (a proteasome) in cells. The proteasome helps regulate the expression of genes that promote cell division and prevent cell death. With only limited amounts of proteasome present, the cell is less likely to divide and more likely to respond to signals for cell death. An example of a proteasome inhibitor is bortezomib (Velcade). Proteasomes

are present in normal and cancer cells, but cancer cells are much more sensitive to the effects of proteasome inhibition than are normal cells.

The most common side effects of bortezomib are nausea, vomiting, anorexia, abdominal pain, bowel changes, and decreased taste sensation. Peripheral neuropathy is also common. Other side effects include headache, rash, pruritus, back and bone pain, and muscle aches.

Angiogenesis Inhibitors

Angiogenesis inhibitors target a specific protein kinase known as the *mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)*. An example of an angiogenesis inhibitor is temsirolimus (Torisel). When the drug binds to an intracellular protein, a protein-drug complex forms that inhibits the activity of mTOR. When mTOR is inhibited, the concentrations of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) are greatly reduced and many pro-cell division signal transduction pathways are disrupted. This drug is especially useful in suppressing the growth of renal cell carcinomas.

Hypersensitivity reactions to these drugs are common and so is hyperglycemia. Bone marrow suppression is moderate to severe with anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia. Other general side effects include headache, nausea and vomiting, back pain, muscle and joint pain, mucositis, diarrhea, and skin problems.

Monoclonal Antibodies

Monoclonal antibodies bind to their target antigens, which are often specific cell surface membrane proteins. Binding prevents the protein from performing its functions. Some cancer cells express cell membrane surface proteins that are unique to cancer cells and have a role in cancer cell division. So, by binding these proteins, monoclonal antibodies prevent cell division. Some monoclonal antibodies actually make tumor cells more sensitive to chemotherapy and increase the effectiveness of immune system attacks on the cancer cells. The most well known monoclonal antibody in use as a targeted therapy is rituximab (Rituxan). It binds to the protein CD20, which is often overexpressed on the surface of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma cell membranes. This protein activates an early step of the cell cycle division process. Binding CD20 with rituximab prevents it from stimulating cell division in the non-Hodgkin's lymphoma cells.

Allergic reactions are an issue in patients receiving monoclonal antibodies. Most of these antibodies were developed in mice and express some mouse proteins. Now many of these antibodies have been "humanized," reducing the risk for allergic reactions.

The monoclonal antibodies to EGFR bind to those specific receptors when the receptors are on normal tissue. Thus side effects occur in those tissues that normally express EGFR, such as the skin, mucous membranes, and lining of the GI tract (Eaby, 2008).

ONCOLOGIC EMERGENCIES

Cancer is a chronic disease. However, a number of complications from the cancer and its treatment can occur. Early diagnosis and immediate intervention of these emergency conditions are essential to avoid life-threatening situations. The role of the nurse is to implement interventions to

prevent and detect these complications early for immediate treatment.

SEPSIS AND DISSEMINATED INTRAVASCULAR COAGULATION

Pathophysiology

Sepsis, or *septicemia*, is a condition in which organisms enter the bloodstream (bloodstream infection [BSI]) and can result in septic shock, a life-threatening condition. Patients with cancer are at risk for infection and sepsis because their white blood cell counts are often low and immune function is impaired. Chapter 39 describes the pathophysiology of sepsis and septic shock.

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is a problem with the blood-clotting process. DIC is triggered by many severe illnesses, including cancer. In patients with cancer, DIC often is caused by gram-negative sepsis, by the release of thrombin or thromboplastin (clotting factors) from cancer cells, or by blood transfusions.

Extensive, abnormal clotting occurs throughout the small blood vessels of patients with DIC. This widespread clotting uses up the existing clotting factors and platelets. This process is followed by extensive bleeding. Bleeding from many sites is the most common problem and ranges from minimal to fatal hemorrhage. Clots block blood vessels and decrease blood flow to major body organs and result in pain, stroke-like manifestations, dyspnea, tachycardia, reduced kidney function, and bowel necrosis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

DIC is a life-threatening problem and has a high mortality rate even when proper therapies are instituted. *Thus the best management of sepsis and DIC is prevention. Identify patients at greatest risk for sepsis and DIC. Practice strict adherence to aseptic technique during invasive procedures and during contact with nonintact skin and mucous membranes. Teach patients and families the early manifestations of infection and when to seek assistance.*

When sepsis is present and DIC is likely, management focuses on reducing the infection and halting the DIC process. IV antibiotic therapy is initiated. During the early phase of DIC, anticoagulants (especially heparin) are given to limit clotting and prevent the rapid consumption of circulating clotting factors. Clotting factors are given when DIC has progressed and hemorrhage is the primary problem. See Chapter 39 for a more detailed discussion of the management of DIC.

SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE

Pathophysiology

In healthy people, antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is secreted by the posterior pituitary gland only when more fluid (water) is needed in the body, such as when plasma volume is decreased. Certain conditions induce ADH secretion when not needed by the body.

Cancer is a common cause of the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), especially small cell lung

cancer, but SIADH may occur with other cancers, especially when tumors are present in the brain. Some tumors make and secrete ADH, whereas others stimulate the brain to secrete ADH. Drugs often used in patients with cancer also can cause SIADH (e.g., morphine sulfate, cyclophosphamide).

In SIADH, water is reabsorbed to excess by the kidney and put into systemic circulation. The retained water dilutes blood serum sodium levels. Mild manifestations include weakness, muscle cramps, loss of appetite, and fatigue. Serum sodium levels range from 115 to 120 mEq/L or lower (normal range is 135 to 145 mEq/L). With greater fluid retention, weight gain, nervous system changes, personality changes, confusion, and extreme muscle weakness occur. As the sodium level drops toward 110 mEq/L, seizures, coma, and death may follow depending on how rapidly the sodium value is lowered.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

SIADH is managed by treating the condition and the cause. Nursing priorities focus on patient safety, restoring normal fluid balance, and providing supportive care. Management includes fluid restriction, increased sodium intake, and drug therapy. One drug, demeclocycline (Declomycin), works in opposition to ADH. Immediate cancer therapy with radiation or chemotherapy can cause enough tumor regression that ADH production returns to normal.

Patient safety includes preventing fluid overload from becoming worse, leading to pulmonary edema and heart failure. The older adult and those with coexisting cardiac problems, kidney problems, lung problems, or liver problems are at greater risk for complications.

Monitor for increasing fluid overload (bounding pulse, increasing neck vein distention, presence of crackles in lungs, increasing peripheral edema, reduced urine output) at least every 2 hours. *Pulmonary edema can occur very quickly and can lead to death.* Notify the health care provider of any change that indicates the fluid overload from SIADH either is not responding to therapy or is becoming worse. See [Chapter 65](#) for a detailed discussion of SIADH management.

SPINAL CORD COMPRESSION

Pathophysiology

Spinal cord compression (SCC) and damage occur either when a tumor directly enters the spinal cord or when the vertebrae collapse from tumor degradation of the bone. Tumors may begin in the spinal cord but more often spread from the lung, prostate, breast, and colon. SCC may cause back pain before nerve deficits occur. Neurologic problems are specific to the level of spinal compression and can lead to paralysis, which is usually permanent.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Early recognition and treatment of spinal cord compression are key to a positive outcome. Assess for neurologic changes, including back pain, muscle weakness or a sensation of heaviness in the arms or legs, numbness or tingling in the hands

or feet, inability to distinguish hot and cold, and an unsteady gait. Depending on how low the compression occurs, constipation, incontinence, and difficulty starting or stopping urination also may be present. Consider the possibility of SCC with new onset of any of these problems. Teach patients and families the manifestations of early SCC, and instruct them to seek help as soon as problems occur.

Treatment is often palliative with high-dose corticosteroids given first to reduce swelling around the spinal cord and relieve symptoms. High-dose radiation may be used to reduce the size of the tumor in the area and relieve compression. Surgery may be performed to remove the tumor and rearrange the bony tissue so less pressure is placed on the spinal cord. External back or neck braces may be used to reduce the weight borne by the spinal column and to reduce pressure on the spinal cord or spinal nerves.

HYPERCALCEMIA

Pathophysiology

Hypercalcemia (increased serum calcium level) occurs most often in patients with bone metastasis. Cancer in bone causes release of calcium into the bloodstream. Some cancers, especially in the lung, head and neck, kidney, or lymph nodes, secrete parathyroid hormone, causing bone to release calcium. Decreased mobility and dehydration worsen hypercalcemia.

Early manifestations include fatigue, loss of appetite, nausea, vomiting, constipation, and increased urine output. More serious problems include severe muscle weakness, loss of deep tendon reflexes, paralytic ileus, dehydration, and electrocardiographic (ECG) changes. Symptom severity depends on how high the calcium level is and how quickly it rose (see [Chapter 13](#)).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Cancer-induced hypercalcemia develops slowly for many patients, which allows the body time to adapt to this electrolyte change. As a result, symptoms of hypercalcemia may not be evident until the serum calcium level is greatly elevated.

Oral hydration may be enough to reduce calcium levels and relieve symptoms. Normal saline is used when parenteral hydration is needed. Many drugs, such as oral glucocorticoids, calcitonin, diphosphonate, gallium nitrate, and mithramycin, lower serum calcium, but only temporarily. When cancer-induced hypercalcemia is life threatening or occurs with kidney disease, dialysis can temporarily reduce serum calcium levels.

SUPERIOR VENA CAVA SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Superior vena cava (SVC) syndrome occurs when the SVC is compressed or obstructed by tumor growth or by clots in the vessel ([Fig. 24-6](#)). SVC compression is painful and life threatening and occurs most often in patients with lymphomas, lung cancer, and breast cancer.

The manifestations result from the blockage of venous return from the head, neck, and upper trunk. Early manifestations occur when the patient arises after a night's sleep and

include edema of the face, especially around the eyes, and tightness of the shirt or blouse collar. As the compression worsens, the patient develops engorged blood vessels and erythema of the upper body (Fig. 24-7), edema in the arms and hands, dyspnea, and epistaxis. Late manifestations include hemorrhage, cyanosis, mental status changes, decreased cardiac output, and hypotension. Death results if compression is not relieved.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

SVC syndrome is a late-stage manifestation; the tumor is usually widespread. High-dose radiation therapy to the upper chest area may be used to provide temporary relief. Surgery is rarely performed for this condition. A metal stent can be placed in the vena cava in an interventional radiation

department to relieve swelling. Follow-up angioplasty can keep this stent open for a longer period.

TUMOR LYSIS SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

In tumor lysis syndrome (TLS), large numbers of tumor cells are destroyed rapidly. Their intracellular contents, including potassium and purines (DNA components), are released into the bloodstream faster than the body can eliminate them (Fig. 24-8) (King, 2008; McGraw, 2008). Unlike other oncologic emergencies, TLS is a positive sign that cancer treatment is effective.

Severe or untreated TLS can cause tissue damage and death. Serum potassium levels can increase to the point of hyperkalemia, causing cardiac dysfunction (see Chapter 13). The large amounts of purines form uric acid, causing hyperuricemia. These uric acid crystals precipitate in the kidney,

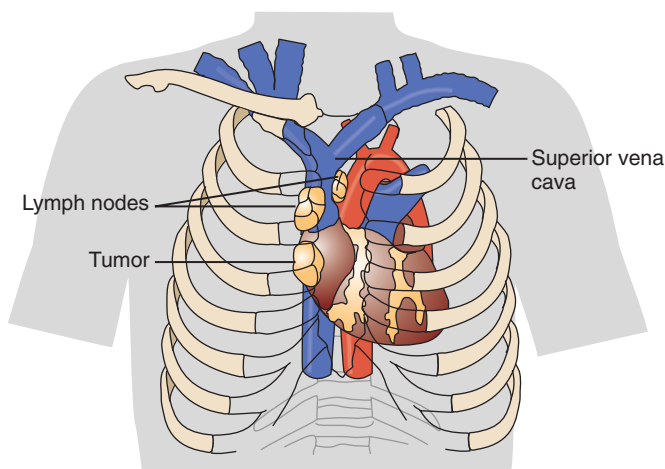


FIG. 24-6 Compression of the superior vena cava by lymph nodes and tumors in superior vena cava syndrome.



FIG. 24-7 Appearance of the face, neck, upper arms, and chest in a patient with superior vena cava syndrome.

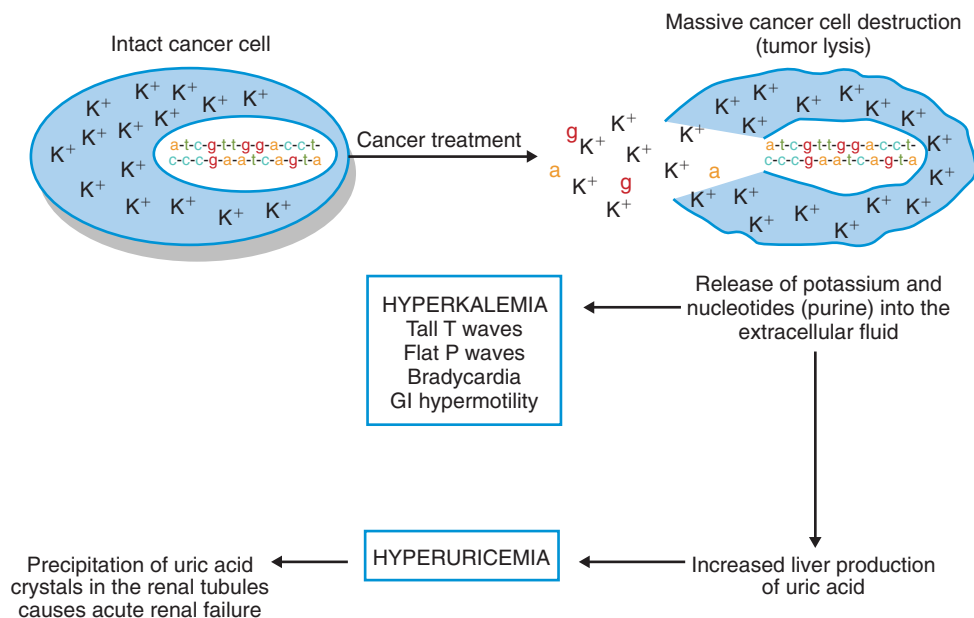


FIG. 24-8 Pathology of tumor lysis syndrome.

blocking kidney tubules and leading to acute kidney injury (AKI).

TLS is usually seen in patients receiving radiation or chemotherapy for cancers that are very sensitive to these therapies, including leukemia, lymphoma, small cell lung cancer, and multiple myeloma.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Hydration prevents and manages TLS. Hydration dilutes the serum potassium level and increases the kidney filtration and flow rates. These actions prevent the precipitation of uric acid crystals, increase the excretion of potassium, and flush any kidney precipitate.

With tumors known to be very sensitive to cancer therapy, instruct patients to drink at least 3000 mL (5000 mL is more desirable) of fluid the day before, the day of, and for 3 days after treatment. Some fluids should be alkaline (sodium bicarbonate) to help prevent uric acid precipitation. Stress the importance of keeping fluid intake consistent throughout the 24-hour day, and help patients draw up a schedule of fluid intake.

Because some patients have nausea and vomiting after cancer therapy and may not feel like drinking fluids, stress the importance of following the antiemetic regimen. Instruct patients to contact the cancer clinic immediately if nausea

prevents adequate fluid intake so parenteral fluids can be started.

Management becomes more aggressive for patients who become hyperkalemic or hyperuricemic. In addition to fluids, diuretics (especially osmotic types) are given to increase urine flow through the kidney. These agents are used cautiously to avoid dehydration. Drugs that promote purine excretion, such as allopurinol (Aloprim, Zyloprim), rasburicase (Elitek), or febuxostat (Uloric), are given. To reduce serum potassium levels for mild to moderate hyperkalemia, sodium polystyrene sulfonate can be given orally or as a retention enema. For more severe hyperkalemia, IV infusions containing glucose and insulin may be given. Patients who have severe hyperkalemia and hyperuricemia may need dialysis.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client being treated for advanced breast cancer with chemotherapy reports that she must be allergic to one of her drugs because her entire face is swollen. What assessment does the nurse perform?

- A. Asks whether the client has other known allergies
- B. Checks the capillary refill on fingernails bilaterally
- C. Examines the client's neck and chest for edema and engorged veins
- D. Compares blood pressure measured in the right arm with that in the left arm

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use aseptic technique during care for open skin areas or any invasive procedure.
- Perform good handwashing before providing any care to patients with neutropenia.
- Use bleeding precautions for any patient with thrombocytopenia (see [Chart 24-6](#)).
- Position shields properly when patients in inpatient settings are receiving brachytherapy.
- Use appropriate personal protection equipment (gowns, gloves, masks, eye protection) when mixing or administering IV or oral chemotherapeutic drugs and when handling the excreta of a patient receiving chemotherapy.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients receiving radiation therapy how to care for the skin in the radiation path (see [Chart 24-2](#)).
- Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.
- Teach patients at risk for bleeding the precautions to avoid injury (see [Chart 24-7](#)).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express concerns regarding the diagnosis of cancer or the treatment regimen.
- Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings about changes in appearance resulting from cancer therapy.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Encourage patients to use strategies to improve their appearance when alopecia occurs.
- Refer patients and family members to local cancer resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the venous access device at least every 30 to 60 minutes during chemotherapy administration.
- Assess the patient receiving chemotherapy for infection at least every 8 hours.
- Inspect the oral mucosa of patients with neutropenia at least every 8 hours.
- Report any temperature over 100° F (37.8° C) in a patient with neutropenia.
- Instruct the patient and family in the manifestations of complications and when to seek assistance.

CHAPTER

25

Care of Patients with Infection

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) hand hygiene recommendations for health care workers.
2. Describe infection control methods, such as hand hygiene and Transmission-Based Precautions.
3. Apply current principles of infection prevention and control.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Specify health teaching for patients, families, and staff about infection control measures.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Plan ways to help patients cope with Transmission-Based Precautions.

Physiological Integrity

6. Identify patients most at risk for infection, including older adults.
7. Provide information to patient and family about drug therapy for infections.
8. Identify common clinical manifestations of infectious diseases.
9. Interpret laboratory test findings related to infections and infectious diseases.
10. Evaluate nursing interventions for management of the patient with an infection.
11. Explain why multidrug-resistant organisms are increasing.
12. Identify common emerging diseases and their basic clinical management.

The human body has many *protective* systems that promote homeostasis. Physiologic mechanisms are the structural and functional defenses that protect people from stressors such as infection. When these mechanisms fail to work properly or are overcome with microbes, infection can result.

Infections and infectious diseases have been the major cause of millions of deaths worldwide for centuries. Today, threats of bioterrorism have been added to the concerns about multidrug-resistant and emerging infections. Global travel and migration have increased exposure to a wider variety of infectious agents than in the past. For example, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), monkeypox, and Avian influenza (“bird flu”) have appeared for the first time in the United States during the past decade. However, humans have not gotten any of these diseases yet.

Advancing technology and invasive procedures also introduce microorganisms into the body, often resulting in infection, even though in other environments these microorganisms are harmless. This chapter provides an overview of infection and general principles for prevention and management. Specific infections and their management are described elsewhere in this text.

OVERVIEW OF THE INFECTIOUS PROCESS

A **pathogen** is any microorganism (also called an *agent*) capable of producing disease. Infections can be **communicable** (transmitted from person to person [e.g., influenza]) or not communicable (e.g., peritonitis). Microorganisms with differing levels of **pathogenicity** (ability to cause disease)

surround everyone. **Virulence** is a term for pathogenicity. However, virulence is related more to the frequency with which a pathogen causes disease (degree of communicability) and its ability to invade and damage a host. It can also indicate the severity of the disease.

Many microorganisms live in or on the human host without causing disease. Some microbes are beneficial. Each body location harbors its own characteristic bacteria, or **normal flora**. Normal flora often functions to compete with and prevent infection from unfamiliar agents attempting to invade a body site. In some instances, microorganisms that are often pathogenic may be present in the tissues of the host and yet not cause symptomatic disease because of normal flora; this process is called **colonization**.

In the United States, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) collects information about the occurrence and nature of infections and infectious diseases. It then recommends guidelines to health care agencies for infection control and prevention. Certain diseases, such as tuberculosis, must be reported to health departments and the CDC. The infection control practitioner (ICP) for each health care agency is responsible for tracking infections (**surveillance**) and ensuring compliance with federal and local requirements.

Transmission of Infectious Agents

Transmission of infection in health care requires three factors:

- Reservoir (or source) of infectious agents
- Susceptible host with a portal of entry
- Mode of transmission

Reservoirs (sources of infectious agents) are numerous. Animate reservoirs include people, animals, and insects. Inanimate reservoirs include soil, water, other environmental sources, and medical equipment (e.g., IV solutions, urine collection devices). The host's body can be a reservoir; pathogens colonize skin and body substances (e.g., feces, sputum, saliva, wound drainage). A person with an active infection or an asymptomatic **carrier** (one who harbors an infectious agent without active disease) is a reservoir. Examples of *community* reservoirs include sewage, stagnant or contaminated water, and improperly handled foods.

Bacteria like *Neisseria meningitidis* can exist in the respiratory tract while causing no illness. If the bacteria invade the bloodstream or cerebrospinal fluid, they become extremely pathogenic. Another example is *Enterococcus*, which lives as normal flora in the GI system, where it is nonpathogenic and assists in the digestive process. If it enters the bloodstream, *Enterococcus* can cause disease.

Continued multiplication of a pathogen is sometimes accompanied by toxin production. **Toxins** are protein molecules released by bacteria to affect host cells at a distant site. **Exotoxins** are produced and released by certain bacteria into the surrounding environment. Botulism, tetanus, diphtheria, and *Escherichia coli* 0157:H7–related systemic diseases are attributed to exotoxins. **Endotoxins** are produced in the cell walls of certain bacteria and released only with cell lysis. For example, typhoid and meningococcal diseases are caused by endotoxins.

Host factors influence the development of infection (Table 25-1). Host defenses provide the body with an efficient system for *protection* against pathogens. Breakdown of these defense mechanisms may increase the **susceptibility** (risk) of the host for infection.

TABLE 25-1 HOST FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE THE DEVELOPMENT OF INFECTION

HOST FACTOR	INCREASED RISK FOR INFECTION
Natural immunity	Congenital or acquired immune deficiencies
Normal flora	Alteration of normal flora by antibiotic therapy
Age	Infants and older adults
Hormonal factors	Diabetes mellitus, corticosteroid therapy, and adrenal insufficiency
Phagocytosis	Defective phagocytic function, circulatory disturbances, and neutropenia
Skin/mucous membranes/normal excretory secretions	Break in skin or mucous membrane integrity; interference with flow of urine, tears, or saliva; interference with cough reflex or ciliary action; changes in gastric secretions
Nutrition	Malnutrition or dehydration
Environmental factors	Tobacco and alcohol consumption and inhalation of toxic chemicals
Medical interventions	Invasive therapy, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and steroid therapy; surgery

The patient's *immune status* plays a large role in determining risk for infection. Congenital abnormalities, as well as acquired health problems (e.g., renal failure, steroid dependence, cancer, acquired immune deficiency syndrome [AIDS]), can result in numerous immunologic deficiencies. Depression of the immune system may make the host more susceptible to infection or cripple the ability to combat organisms that have gained entry.

Immunity is resistance to infection; it is usually associated with the presence of antibodies or cells that act on specific microorganisms. **Passive immunity** is of short duration (days or months) and either natural by transplacental transfer from the mother or artificial by injection of antibodies (e.g., immunoglobulin). **Active immunity** lasts for years and is natural by infection or artificial by stimulation of the body's immune defenses (e.g., vaccination). Chapter 19 discusses the immune system and immunity in detail.

Environmental factors can also influence patients' immune status and thus their susceptibility to or ability to fight infection. Examples include alcohol consumption, nicotine use, inhalation of bone marrow–suppressing toxic chemicals, and certain vitamin deficiencies. Malnutrition, especially protein-calorie malnutrition, places patients at increased risk for infection. Diseases such as diabetes mellitus also predispose a patient to infection. *Older adults have decreased immune systems, as well as other physiologic changes that make them very susceptible to infection* (Chart 25-1).

Medical and surgical interventions may impair normal immune response. Steroid therapy, chemotherapy, and anti-rejection drugs increase the risk for infection. Medical devices (e.g., intravascular or urinary catheters, endotracheal tubes, synthetic implants) may also interfere with normal host defense mechanisms. Surgery, trauma, radiation therapy, and burns result in nonintact skin. *The body's skin is one of the best barriers or defenses against infection*. When this barrier is broken, infection often results.

Microorganisms may enter the body in a variety of ways, including the respiratory tract, GI tract, genitourinary tract, skin and mucous membranes, and bloodstream.

CHART 25-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Factors That May Increase Risk for Infection in the Older Patient

FACTOR	AGING-ASSOCIATED CHANGES OR CONDITIONS
• Immune system	• Decreased antibody production, lymphocytes, and fever response
• Integumentary system	• Thinning skin, decreased subcutaneous tissue, decreased vascularity, slower wound healing
• Respiratory system	• Decreased cough and gag reflexes
• Gastrointestinal system	• Decreased gastric acid and intestinal motility
• Chronic illness	• Diabetes mellitus, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, neurologic impairments
• Functional/cognitive impairments	• Immobility, incontinence, dementia
• Invasive devices	• Urinary catheters, feeding tubes, IV devices, tracheostomy tubes
• Institutionalization	• Increased person-to-person contact and transmission

Pathogens may enter the body through the *respiratory tract*. Microbes in droplets are sprayed into the air when people with infected oral or nasal tissues talk, cough, or sneeze. A susceptible host then inhales droplets, and pathogens localize in the lungs or are distributed via the lymphatic system or bloodstream to other areas of the body. Microorganisms that enter the body by the respiratory tract and produce distant infection include influenza virus, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

Other pathogens enter the body through the GI tract. Some stay there and produce disease (e.g., *Shigella* causing self-limited disease). Others invade the GI tract to produce local and distant infection (e.g., *Salmonella enteritidis*). Some produce limited GI symptoms, causing systemic infection (e.g., *Salmonella typhi*) or profound involvement of other organs (e.g., hepatitis A virus). Millions of foodborne illness cases occur each year in the United States. This type of illness results in many hospitalizations and deaths.

Microorganisms also enter through the genitourinary tract. *Urinary tract infection (UTI)* is one of the most common *health care–associated infections (HAIs)*. More than half of patients in adult intensive care units (ICUs) have urinary catheters in place. Indwelling urinary catheters are a primary cause of UTIs. *The use of invasive catheters has decreased in long-term care settings because older adults are very susceptible to infections.*

Although intact skin is the best barrier to prevent most infections, some pathogens such as *Treponema pallidum* can enter the body through intact skin or mucous membranes. Most enter through breaks in these normally effective surface barriers. Sometimes a medical procedure creates a break in cutaneous or mucocutaneous barriers, as in catheter-acquired *bacteremia* (bacteria in the bloodstream) and surgical-site infections (SSIs). *Fragile skin of older patients*

and of those receiving prolonged steroid therapy increases infection risk.

Microorganisms can gain direct access to the *bloodstream*, especially when invasive devices or tubes are used. The incidence of bloodstream infections (BSIs) continues to increase in hospitals throughout the United States. Central venous catheters (CVCs) are a primary cause of these infections (see [Chapter 15](#) for more discussion of CVC-related BSIs). In the community setting, biting insects can inject organisms into the bloodstream, causing infection (e.g., Lyme disease, West Nile viral encephalitis).

For infection to be *transmitted* from an infected source to a susceptible host, a transport mechanism is required. Microorganisms are transmitted by several routes:

- Contact transmission (indirect and direct)
- Droplet transmission
- Airborne transmission

Contact transmission is the usual mode of transmission of most infections. Many infections are spread by direct or indirect contact. With *direct contact*, the source and host have physical contact. Microorganisms are transferred directly from skin to skin or from mucous membrane to mucous membrane. Often called *person-to-person transmission*, direct contact is best illustrated by the spread of the “common cold.”

Indirect contact transmission involves the transfer of microorganisms from a source to a host by passive transfer from a contaminated object. Contaminated articles or hands may be sources of infection. For example, patient-care devices like glucometers and electronic thermometers may transmit pathogens if they are contaminated with blood or body fluids. Uniforms, laboratory coats, and isolation gowns used as part of personal protective equipment may be contaminated as well.

Indirect transmission may involve contact with infected secretions or *droplets*. Droplets are produced when a person talks or sneezes; the droplets travel short distances. Susceptible hosts may acquire infection by contact with droplets deposited on the nasal, oral, or conjunctival membranes. Therefore the CDC recommends that staff stay at least 3 feet (1 m) away from a patient with droplet infection (Siegel et al., 2007). An example of droplet-spread infection is influenza. Unlike airborne droplet nuclei, discussed later, droplets do not stay suspended in the air.

Airborne transmission occurs when small airborne particles containing pathogens leave the infected source and enter a susceptible host. These pathogens can be suspended in the air for a prolonged time. The particles carrying pathogens are usually contained in droplet nuclei or dust; they are usually propelled from the respiratory tract by coughing or sneezing. A susceptible person then inhales the particles directly into the respiratory tract. For example, tuberculosis is spread via airborne transmission.

Preventing the spread of microbes that are transmitted by the airborne route requires the use of special air handling and ventilation systems in an airborne infection isolation room (AIIR). *M. tuberculosis* and the varicella-zoster virus (chickenpox) are examples of airborne agents that require one of these systems. In addition to the AIIR, respiratory protection using certified N95 or higher level respirator masks is recommended for health care personnel entering the patient’s room (Siegel et al., 2007). The N95 rating means that at least 95% of the inhaled air is filtered.

Other sources of infectious agents include the environment, such as contaminated food, water, or vectors. Vectors are insects that carry pathogens between two or more hosts, such as the deer tick that causes Lyme disease.

The *portal of exit* completes the chain of infection. Exit of the microbe from the host often occurs through the portal of entry. An organism, such as *M. tuberculosis*, enters the respiratory tract and then exits the same tract as the infected host coughs. Some organisms can exit from the infected host by several routes. For example, varicella-zoster virus can spread through direct contact with infective fluid in vesicles and by airborne transmission.

Physiologic Defenses for Infection

Strong and intact host defenses can prevent microbes from entering the body or can destroy a pathogen that has entered. Impaired host defenses may be unable to defend against microbial invasion, allowing entry of organisms that can destroy cells and cause infection. Common defense mechanisms include:

- Body tissues
- Phagocytosis
- Inflammation
- Immune systems

Intact skin forms the first and most important physical barrier to the entry of microorganisms. In addition to providing a mechanical barrier, the skin's slightly acidic pH (resulting from breakdown of lipids into fatty acids), together with normal skin flora, creates an unfriendly environment for many bacteria.

Mucous membranes' mucociliary action provides some mechanical protection against pathogenic invasion. More important, however, mucous membranes are bathed in secretions that inactivate many microorganisms. **Lysozymes**, which dissolve the cell walls of some bacteria, are present in large quantities in many body secretions, particularly in tears and nasal mucus.

Other body systems provide natural barriers to infection. For instance, the healthy respiratory tract clears about 90% of all inhaled material by upper airway filtration, humidification, mucociliary transport, and coughing. Peristaltic action mechanically empties the GI tract of pathogenic organisms. Stomach acid, intestinal secretions, pancreatic enzymes, and bile, together with the competition from normal bowel flora, provide an environment that protects the GI tract from invasion by harmful organisms. In the genitourinary tract, the flushing action of urine eliminates pathogenic organisms. The low pH of urine also maintains a sterile environment, although some microorganisms, such as *E. coli*, thrive in an acid medium.

Phagocytosis occurs when a foreign substance evades the first-line mechanical barriers and enters the body. Various leukocyte types function differently in the immune reaction, but neutrophils bear primary responsibility for phagocytosis. This process of engulfing, ingesting, killing, and disposing of an invading organism is an essential mechanism in host defense. Phagocytic dysfunction dramatically increases a patient's risk for infection.

Inflammation is another important nonspecific defense mechanism for preventing the spread of infection. It occurs when tissue becomes damaged. Damaged cells release enzymes, and polymorphonuclear (PMN) leukocytes

(neutrophils) are attracted to the infected site from the bloodstream. One important substance, histamine, increases the permeability of the capillaries in inflamed tissues, thus allowing fluid, proteins, and white blood cells to enter an inflamed area. Other enzymes activate fibrinogen, which causes leaked fluid to clot and prevents its flow away from the damaged site into unaffected tissue, essentially "walling off" the inflamed tissue. The process of phagocytosis disposes of the invading microorganism and often dead tissue. If inflammation is caused by infection, the end products of inflammation form pus, which is then absorbed or exits the body through a break in the skin. Chapter 19 discusses the process of inflammation in more detail.

Specific defense responses to specific microorganisms are provided by the antibody- and cell-mediated immune systems. The **antibody-mediated immune system** produces antibodies directed against certain pathogens. These antibodies inactivate or destroy invading microorganisms as well as protect against future infection from that microorganism. Resistance to other microorganisms is mediated by the action of specifically sensitized T-lymphocytes and is called **cell-mediated immunity**. The components of the immune system work both independently and together to protect against infection. Chapter 19 describes the function of the immune system in detail.

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

Infection Control in Inpatient Health Care Agencies

Infections occur most often in high-risk patients, such as older adults and those who have inadequate immune systems (immunocompromised). Implement interventions to prevent infection and detect signs and symptoms as early as possible. Chart 25-2 summarizes nursing interventions for infection prevention and control.

Infection acquired in the inpatient health care setting (not present or incubating at admission) is termed a **health care-associated infection (HAI)**. When occurring in a hospital setting, they are sometimes referred to as *hospital-acquired infections*, but the former term is more accurate. HAIs can be **endogenous** (from a patient's flora) or **exogenous** (from

CHART 25-2 BEST PRACTICES FOR PATIENT SAFETY AND QUALITY CARE

The Patient at Risk for Infection

- Assess patients for risk for infections.
- Monitor for signs and symptoms of infection.
- Monitor laboratory tests results, such as cultures and white blood cell (WBC) count and differential.
- Screen all visitors for infections or infectious disease.
- Inspect skin and mucous membranes for redness, heat, pain, swelling, and drainage.
- Promote sufficient nutritional intake, especially protein for healing.
- Encourage fluid intake to treat fever.
- Teach the patient and family the signs and symptoms of infections and when to report them to the health care provider.
- Teach the patient and family how to avoid infections in health care agencies and the community.

outside the patient, often from the hands of health care workers, tubes, or implants). Therefore use of the less popular term *nosocomial infection* does not imply that an infection was caused by health care (or poor health care delivery) but only that it occurred while receiving health care. HAIs, including surgical-site infections (SSIs), occur in 1 in 20 inpatients yearly, causing increased health care costs and many deaths (see discussion of SSIs in [Chapter 18](#)). These infections tend to occur most often because health care workers do not follow basic infection control principles, especially aseptic technique and injection practices (Siegel et al., 2007).

Infection control within a health care facility is designed to reduce the risk for HAIs and thus reduce morbidity and mortality, as recommended in The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs). This expected outcome is consistent with the desire for health care facilities to create a *culture of safety* within their environments (see [Chapter 1](#)). Infection control and prevention is a collaborative effort and includes:

- Facility- and department-specific infection control policies and procedures
- Surveillance and analysis
- Patient and staff education
- Community and interdisciplinary collaboration
- Product evaluation with an emphasis on quality and cost savings
- Bioengineering for designing health care facilities that help control the spread of infections

The infection control program of a hospital is usually coordinated and implemented by a health care professional certified in infection control (CIC) who has clinical and administrative experience. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends one person with CIC credentials for every 100 occupied acute care beds. Long-term care facilities may not have a practitioner who is dedicated to infection control. However, every facility must designate a health care professional to be responsible for coordinating and implementing an infection prevention and control program.

Long-term care facilities are unique in that they have a large group of older adults who are together in one setting for weeks to years. Nursing homes, in particular, are required to provide a homelike environment in which residents can move and interact freely. Therefore infection control in these settings can be challenging. As a result, many infectious outbreaks have occurred, such as pneumonia, *Clostridium difficile*, and multidrug-resistant organisms (discussed in the Multidrug-Resistant Organism Infections and Colonizations section on pp. 440-443).

Infection Control in Community-Based Settings

Ambulatory and home health care are the fastest growing segments of the health care system. Infection remains the most common cause of death for dialysis patients. Data on infections in other ambulatory settings are lacking because the CDC has only recently recommended surveillance systems and prevention guidelines. Little information is available about acquired infections in home health settings because data are not systematically collected, surveillance programs are not established, and best practices for infection prevention and control do not exist.

CHART 25-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Hand Hygiene

- When hands are visibly soiled or contaminated with proteinaceous material or are visibly soiled with blood or other body fluids, wash hands with soap and water.
- If hands are not visibly soiled, use an alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR) for decontaminating hands or wash hands with soap and water.
- Use either ABHR or wash with soap and water (decontaminate hands) before having direct contact with patients.
- Decontaminate hands before donning sterile gloves to perform a procedure, such as inserting an invasive device (e.g., indwelling urinary catheter).
- Decontaminate hands after contact with a patient's intact skin (e.g., taking a pulse) or with body fluids or excretions/secretions.
- Decontaminate hands after removing gloves.
- Decontaminate hands after contact with inanimate objects (including medical equipment) in the immediate vicinity of the patient.

Methods of Infection Control

All health care workers who come in contact with patients or care areas are involved in some aspect of the infection control program of the agency. According to the CDC, infections can be prevented or controlled in at least five major ways:

- Hand hygiene
- Personal protective equipment (PPE) (also called *barriers*)
- Adequate staffing
- Disinfection/sterilization
- Patient placement and transport

Health care workers' hands are the primary way in which infection is transmitted from patient to patient or staff to patient.

Hand hygiene refers to both handwashing and alcohol-based hand rubs (ABHRs) ("hand sanitizers"). There is a lack of rigorous evidence linking which specific hand hygiene recommendations best prevent health care-associated infections (HAIs) (Backman et al., 2008).

In 2002, the CDC released a document entitled "CDC Hand Hygiene Recommendations." These recommendations are summarized in [Chart 25-3](#). *Handwashing is still an important part of hand hygiene, but it is recognized that in some health care settings, sinks may not be readily available.* Despite years of education, health care workers often find it difficult to leave the patient care setting to wash their hands and do not perform hand hygiene on a consistent basis.

Effective **handwashing** includes wetting, soaping, lathering, applying friction under running water for at least 15 seconds, rinsing, and adequate drying. *Friction is essential to remove skin oils and to disperse transient bacteria and soil from hand surfaces.* Performing adequate handwashing takes time that health care workers (HCWs) may not feel they have. Handwashing can also cause dry skin, and therefore hand moisturizers are essential to maintain good hand health and hygiene.

Alcohol-based hand rubs (ABHRs) allow care providers to spend less time seeking out sinks and more time delivering care. However, these hand rubs have their limitations.

The CDC recommends using antiseptic solutions such as chlorhexidine, povidone-iodine, or parachlorometaxylenol (PCMX) for handwashing in caring for patients who are at



FIG. 25-1 A, Nurse in personal protective equipment (PPE) caring for a patient in a private room. B, N95 respirator mask.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If your hands are visibly dirty or soiled or feel sticky or if you have just toileted, *wash your hands instead of using ABHRs*. Keep in mind that ABHRs are also ineffective against spore-forming organisms such as *Clostridium difficile*, a common cause of health care–associated diarrhea, especially in older adults. Do not use an ABHR before inserting eye drops, ointments, or contact lenses because alcohol can irritate the patient’s eyes, causing burning and redness. The Joint Commission’s National Patient Safety Goals require that health care agencies monitor handwashing practices and the use of ABHRs to make sure that HCWs are performing hand hygiene on a regular basis.

high risk for infection (e.g., those who are immunocompromised). The use of these solutions is also recommended after caring for patients who are infected with multidrug-resistant or other virulent organisms.

The CDC guidelines (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2002) also address the issue of artificial fingernails, which have been linked to a number of outbreaks due to poor fingernail health and hygiene. *The guidelines recommend that artificial fingernails and extenders not be worn while caring for patients at high risk for infections, such as those in ICUs or operating suites. Most health care agencies have banned artificial nails for all health care workers providing direct patient care and require that natural nails be short and without nail polish.*

Personal protective equipment (PPE) refers to the use of gloves, isolation gowns, face protection (masks, goggles, face shields), and respirators with N95 or higher filtration (Fig. 25-1).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Remember that gloves are an essential part of infection control and should always be worn as part of Standard Precautions. Either handwashing or use of alcohol-based hand rubs should be done before donning and after removing gloves. The combination of hand hygiene and wearing gloves is the most effective strategy for preventing infection transmission!

Most health care settings in the United States and Canada have switched from latex to non-latex gloves. The U.S. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) issued a public warning about potential allergic reactions to those exposed to latex in gloves and other medical products. Reactions include rashes, nasal or eye symptoms, asthma, and (rarely) shock. People with **latex allergy** usually have an allergy to foods such as bananas, kiwis, and avocados. Health care workers (HCWs) have not been as strict with wearing gloves as they should because of poor fit or skin dryness, irritation, and dermatitis. One possible solution to dry skin is the use of aloe vera–coated gloves or moisturizers such as Eucerin or AmLactin products.

Adequate staffing of nurses is an essential method for preventing infection (Stone et al., 2008). In addition to a ratio of one infection control practitioner (ICP) to 100 occupied acute care beds, nurse staffing is critical. The CDC recommends that two methods to ensure adequate infection control (IC) be implemented (Siegel et al., 2007). First, an *infection control nurse liaison* should be designated on every unit of an inpatient facility. This nurse is responsible for implementing new IC policies, increasing staff IC compliance through education, and collaborating with the facility’s ICP to monitor for infections. Second, bedside nurse staffing should consist of full-time nurses assigned regularly to the unit rather than float, pool, or agency nurses. Studies have found that infection rates increase when float, pool, or agency nurses are substituted for full-time, regular staff (Siegel et al., 2007).

Sterilization and disinfection have helped invasive procedures become much more common and safe. **Sterilization** means destroying all living organisms and bacterial spores. All items that invade human tissue where bacteria are not commonly found should be sterilized. **Disinfection** does not kill spores and only ensures a reduction in the level of disease-causing organisms. High-level disinfection is adequate when an item is going inside the body where the patient has resident bacteria or normal flora (e.g., GI and respiratory tracts). As with sterilization, no high-level disinfection can occur without first cleaning the item. This can be especially difficult with items that have narrow lumens in which organic debris can become trapped and is not easily visible. For example,

endoscopes have been especially challenging to clean and have been linked to a number of infectious outbreaks.

Patient placement has been used as a way to reduce the spread of infection. Some studies have suggested that private patient rooms help decrease infections. However, the CDC has not mandated that all patients, even those with infections, have a private room. *The CDC does recommend that private rooms always be used for patients on Airborne Precautions and those in a protective environment (PE).* A PE is architecturally designed and structured to prevent infection from occurring in patients who are at extremely high risk, such as those having stem cell therapy. The CDC also prefers private rooms for patients who are on Contact and Droplet Precautions (Siegel et al., 2007). Many hospitals are increasing their number of private rooms, and some are becoming totally private-room facilities. Large health care systems often have biomedical engineers to assist in designing the best environment to reduce the spread of infection, including ventilation systems and physical layout.

Cohorting is another method of patient placement. **Cohorting** is the practice of grouping patients who are colonized or infected with the same pathogen. This method has been used the most with patients who have an outbreak of a multidrug-resistant organism like methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). It is particularly effective in long-term care settings.

Infection control principles for *patient transport* include limiting movement to other areas of the facility, using appropriate barriers like covering infected wounds, and notifying other departments or agencies who are receiving the patient about the necessary precautions (Siegel et al., 2007). Complete and accurate hand-off communication between agencies is also very important to prevent the spread of infection, according to The Joint Commission's NPSGs.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which statement by the nursing assistant indicates a need for further teaching by the nurse regarding infection control?

- A. "I will wash my hands after direct client care."
- B. "I will wear gloves when emptying the Foley bag."
- C. "I don't need to wash my hands if I wear gloves."
- D. "I will use a hand sanitizer when I can't wash my hands."

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION TRANSMISSION-BASED GUIDELINES

The 2007 guidelines from the CDC focus on transmission mechanisms and the precautions needed to prevent the spread of infection. Included in these guidelines are Standard Precautions and Transmission-Based Precautions, including Airborne, Droplet, and Contact Precautions (Tables 25-2 and 25-3).

Standard Precautions

Standard Precautions reflect that all body excretions, secretions, and moist membranes and tissues, excluding perspiration, are potentially infectious. The protective measures from the previous Universal Precautions and Body Substance Isolation were combined to better protect health care workers.

In 2007, the CDC added two new requirements to these precautions, both of which protect patients (Siegel et al., 2007).

Respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette (RH/CE) is now required because of the widespread SARS outbreaks in 2003. This requirement is directed at patients and visitors with signs of respiratory illness, such as sinus or chest congestion, cough, or rhinorrhea ("runny nose"). The elements for RH/CE include:

- Patient, staff, and visitor education
- Posted signs
- Hand hygiene
- Covering the nose and mouth with a tissue and prompt tissue disposal or using surgical masks (or sneezing/coughing into a shirt sleeve rather than the hand)
- Separation from the person with respiratory infection by more than 3 feet (1 m)

The other requirement is *safe injection practices*. These include using a sterile, single-use disposable needle and syringe for each injection and preventing contamination of injection equipment and medication (Siegel et al., 2007).

Transmission-Based Precautions

Transmission-Based Precautions may also be referred to as *Isolation Precautions*. But, the word *isolation* implies that the patient is physically separated from everyone, which is not always the case.

Airborne Precautions are used for patients known or suspected to have infections transmitted by the airborne transmission route. These infections are caused by organisms that can be suspended in air for prolonged periods. Negative airflow rooms are required to prevent airborne spread of microbes. Enclosed booths with high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration or ultraviolet light may be used for sputum induction procedures. Tuberculosis, measles (rubeola), and chickenpox (varicella) are examples of airborne diseases.

Droplet Precautions are used for patients known or suspected to have infections transmitted by the droplet transmission route. Such infections are caused by organisms in droplets that may travel 3 feet but are not suspended for long periods. Examples of infectious conditions requiring Droplet Precautions include influenza, mumps, pertussis, and meningitis caused by either *N. meningitidis* or *Haemophilus influenzae* type B.

Contact Precautions are used for patients known or suspected to have infections transmitted by direct contact or contact with items in the environment. Patients with significant multidrug-resistant organism (MDRO) infection or colonization, such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) or vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE), are placed on Contact Precautions. Other infections requiring Contact Precautions include pediculosis (lice), scabies, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), and *C. difficile*.

MULTIDRUG-RESISTANT ORGANISM INFECTIONS AND COLONIZATIONS

Antibiotics have been available for many years. Unfortunately, these drugs were commonly prescribed for conditions that did not need them or were given at higher doses and for longer periods of time than were necessary. As a result, a

TABLE 25-2 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR APPLICATION OF STANDARD PRECAUTIONS FOR THE CARE OF ALL PATIENTS IN ALL HEALTH CARE SETTINGS

COMPONENT	RECOMMENDATIONS	COMPONENT	RECOMMENDATIONS
Hand hygiene	After touching blood, body fluids, secretions, excretions, contaminated items; immediately after removing gloves; between patient contacts	Needles and other sharps	Do not recap, bend, break, or hand-manipulate used needles; if recapping is required, use a one-handed scoop technique only; use safety features when available; place used sharps in puncture-resistant container
Personal protective equipment (PPE)		Patient resuscitation	Use mouthpiece, resuscitation bag, other ventilation devices to prevent contact with mouth and oral secretions
Gloves	For touching blood, body fluids, secretions, excretions, contaminated items; for touching mucous membranes and nonintact skin	Patient placement	Prioritize for single-patient room if patient is at increased risk for transmission, is likely to contaminate the environment, does not maintain appropriate hygiene, or is at increased risk for acquiring infection or developing adverse outcome following infection
Gown	During procedures and patient-care activities when contact of clothing/exposed skin with blood/body fluids, secretions, and excretions is anticipated	Respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette (source containment of infectious respiratory secretions in symptomatic patients, beginning at initial point of encounter [e.g., triage and reception areas in emergency departments and physician offices])	Instruct symptomatic persons to cover mouth/nose when sneezing/coughing; use tissues and dispose in no-touch receptacle; observe hand hygiene after soiling of hands with respiratory secretions; wear surgical mask if tolerated or maintain spatial separation, >3 feet if possible
Mask, eye protection (goggles), face shield*	During procedures and patient-care activities likely to generate splashes or sprays of blood, body fluids, secretions, especially suctioning, endotracheal intubation		
Soiled patient-care equipment	Handle in a manner that prevents transfer of microorganisms to others and to the environment; wear gloves if visibly contaminated; perform hand hygiene		
Environmental control	Develop procedures for routine care, cleaning, and disinfection of environmental surfaces, especially frequently touched surfaces in patient-care areas		
Textiles and laundry	Handle in a manner that prevents transfer of microorganisms to others and to the environment		

*During aerosol-generating procedures on patients with suspected or proven infections transmitted by respiratory aerosols (e.g., SARS), wear a fit-tested N95 or higher respirator in addition to gloves, gown, and face/eye protection.
SARS, Severe acute respiratory syndrome.

number of microorganisms have become resistant to certain antibiotics; that is, drugs that were once useful no longer control these infectious agents (multidrug-resistant organisms [MDROs]). For this reason, a culture of safety related to infection control has been mandated by the CDC, the Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI), and The Joint Commission: Standard Precautions must be strictly followed today in all health care settings to prevent more of these difficult and deadly infections.

One of the newest discoveries to explain the increase in health care–acquired infections (HCAIs), especially the rise in drug-resistant infections, is the formation of biofilms. A **biofilm**, also called *glycocalyx*, is a complex group of microorganisms that functions within a “slimy” gel coating on medical devices such as urinary catheters, orthopedic implants, and enteral feeding tubes; on parts of the body like the teeth (plaque) and tonsils; and in chronic wounds. These reservoirs become sources of infection for which antibiotics and disinfection are not effective. Antibiotic therapy may increase the growth of microbes within biofilms (Childs, 2008).

Biofilms are extremely difficult to treat, and mechanical disruption strategies are the mainstay of management and research (Ramage et al., 2010). Many studies have been and continue to be conducted on biofilms that cause the most common HCAIs, such as catheter-associated urinary tract

infections (CAUTIs) and wound infections. Many specific biofilms have been identified, and methods to remove or disrupt them are being researched.

Patients with *indwelling urinary catheters* are at high risk for pyelonephritis and septicemia. Current evidence shows that urease-producing bacteria, especially *Proteus mirabilis*, cause crystalline biofilms that create a crust that can block the catheter (Stickler & Feneley, 2010). The use of antimicrobial catheters, either silver-alloy or antimicrobial-coated, is recommended for short-term urinary catheter use (less than 3 weeks) to decrease encrustation (Parker et al., 2009). Little evidence is available to demonstrate methods to reduce CAUTIs in long-term indwelling catheters except for frequent catheter changes. In postoperative patients, Palese et al. (2010) found that the regular use of ultrasound bladder scanners reduces urinary tract infections by preventing the inappropriate use of urinary catheters. Nurses can use this information to provide the most current assessment interventions for reducing CAUTIs.

Traditional débridement alone is not successful to prevent or manage *chronic wound* infections, often caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. A systematic review by Lo et al. (2008) found that silver-releasing dressings were very effective. Biofilms can be disrupted by using dry gauze to mechanically disrupt them after débridement (Hurlow & Bowler, 2009). Antibacterial enzymes may also be used.

TABLE 25-3 TRANSMISSION-BASED INFECTION CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

PRECAUTIONS (IN ADDITION TO STANDARD PRECAUTIONS)	EXAMPLES OF DISEASES IN CATEGORY
Airborne Precautions 1. Private room required with monitored negative airflow (with appropriate number of air exchanges and air discharge to outside or through HEPA filter); keep door(s) closed 2. Special respiratory protection: - N95* respirator for known or suspected TB - Susceptible persons not to enter room of patient with known or suspected measles or varicella unless immune caregivers are not available - Susceptible persons who must enter room must wear N95 HEPA filter 3. Transport: patient to leave room only for essential clinical reasons, wearing surgical mask	Diseases that are known or suspected to be transmitted by air: - Measles (rubeola) <i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>, including multidrug-resistant TB (MDRTB) - Varicella (chickenpox)†; disseminated zoster (shingles)†
Droplet Precautions 1. Private room preferred: if not available, may cohort with patient with same active infection with same microorganisms if no other infection present; maintain distance of at least 3 feet from other patients if private room not available 2. Mask: required when working within 3 feet of patient 3. Transport: as above	Diseases that are known or suspected to be transmitted by droplets: - Diphtheria (pharyngeal) - Streptococcal pharyngitis - Pneumonia - Influenza - Rubella - Invasive disease (meningitis, pneumonia, sepsis) caused by <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type B or <i>Neisseria meningitidis</i> - Mumps - Pertussis
Contact Precautions 1. Private room preferred: if not available, may cohort with patient with same active infection with same microorganisms if no other infection present 2. Wear gloves when entering room 3. Wash hands with antimicrobial soap before leaving patient's room 4. Wear gown to prevent contact with patient or contaminated items or if patient has uncontrolled body fluids; remove gown before leaving room 5. Transport: patient to leave room only for essential clinical reasons; during transport, use needed precautions to prevent disease transmission 6. Dedicated equipment for this patient only (or disinfect after use before taking from room)	Diseases that are known or suspected to be transmitted by direct contact: <i>Clostridium difficile</i> - Colonization or infection caused by multidrug-resistant organisms (e.g., MRSA, VRE) - Pediculosis - Respiratory syncytial virus - Scabies - Viral hemorrhagic infections (e.g., Ebola)

HEPA, High-efficiency particulate air; MRSA, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; TB, tuberculosis; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*.

*Before use: training and fit testing required for personnel.

†Add Contact Precautions for draining lesions.

Methicillin-Resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)

Staphylococcus aureus (*S. aureus*) is a common bacterium found on the skin and perineum and in the nose of many people. It is usually not infectious when in these areas because the number of bacteria is controlled by good hygiene measures. However, when skin or mucous membranes are not intact, minor infections, like boils or conjunctivitis, may occur. If the organism enters into deep wounds, surgical incisions, the lungs, or bloodstream, more serious infections occur that require strong antibiotics like methicillin.

Within the past 40 years, more and more *S. aureus* infections have not responded to methicillin or other penicillin-based drug. Known as MRSA, these infections are one of the fastest growing and most common in health care today. In its *5 Million Lives Campaign*, the IHI included reducing MRSA infections as one of its six new goals (see Chapter 1). The CDC estimates that 130,000 cases occur in hospitals each year, which lead to over 5,500 deaths. This type of infection is called *health care-associated MRSA*, or HA-MRSA. Patients who have HA-MRSA have increased hospital stays at a very high cost. To add to this problem, about 25% of patients may

be colonized with the organism, sometimes referred to as a “super bug.” Health care staff members may also colonize.

MRSA is spread by direct contact and invades hospitalized patients through indwelling urinary catheters, vascular access devices, and endotracheal tubes. It is susceptible to only a few antibiotics, such as vancomycin (Lyphocin, Vancocin) and linezolid (Zyvox). Patients who develop HA-MRSA pneumonia, abscesses, or bacteremia (bloodstream infection [BSI]) can quickly progress to sepsis and death.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Patients most at risk for HA-MRSA are older adults and those who are immunosuppressed, have a long history of antibiotic therapy, or have invasive tubes or lines. ICU patients are especially at risk. Assess your patients for risk, and look for possible manifestations. Those who are colonized are not symptomatic.

Although controversial, some health care facilities have a MRSA-surveillance program in which each patient's nose is swabbed and cultured for MRSA. Staff may also be cultured.

All patients with HA-MRSA infection or colonization should be placed on Contact Precautions.

Community-associated MRSA, or CA-MRSA, causes infections in healthy, nonhospitalized people, especially those living in college housing and prisons. It is easily transmitted among family members and can cause serious skin and soft-tissue infections, including abscesses, boils, and blisters. The best way to decrease the incidence of this growing problem is health teaching, including:

- Performing frequent hand hygiene, including using hand sanitizers
- Avoiding close contact with people who have infectious wounds
- Avoiding large crowds
- Avoiding contaminated surfaces
- Using good overall hygiene

Minocycline (Minocin, Apo-Minocycline 🍁) and doxycycline (Doryx, Apo-Doxy 🍁) are usually effective in treating CA-MRSA.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client is admitted with a catheter-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) infection. Which personal protective equipment is appropriate when providing client care? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Mask
- B. Gloves
- C. Shoe covers
- D. Goggles
- E. Gown

Vancomycin-Resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE)

Enterococci are bacteria that live in the intestinal tract and are important for digestion. When they move to another area of the body, such as during surgery, they can cause an infection, usually treatable with vancomycin. However, in recent years, over a fourth of these infections have been resistant to the drug and VRE results. Risk factors for this infection include prolonged hospital stays, severe illness, abdominal surgery, enteral nutrition, and immunosuppression. Patients with VRE infections are placed on Contact Precautions.

Unfortunately, VRE can live on almost any surface for days or weeks and still be able to cause an infection. Contamination of toilet seats, door handles, and other objects is very likely for a lengthy period.

Other Multidrug-Resistant Organisms

Although MRSA and VRE have been publicized and extensively studied, a number of other MDROs are emerging. Examples include multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, pneumonia, and gonorrhea, all of which are discussed elsewhere in this text. Two other infections, vancomycin-intermediate *S. aureus* (VISA) and vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA), have recently appeared. VISA and VRSA share some of the same characteristics, including prior MRSA infection, prior and prolonged vancomycin therapy, and renal disease needing dialysis. Several drugs have been effective for these two infections, such as linezolid (Zyvox) and quinupristin-dalfopristin (Synercid).

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE TO SOURCES OF INFECTION

The **Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)** is a federal agency that protects workers from injury or illness at their place of employment. Unlike the voluntary guidelines developed by the CDC, OSHA regulations are law. Employers can be fined or disciplined for noncompliance with OSHA regulations. The regulation for prevention of exposure to bloodborne pathogens, such as hepatitis B and hepatitis C or the human immune deficiency virus (HIV), is one example of an OSHA regulation.

Reduction of skin and soft tissue injuries (e.g., needle sticks) is essential to reduce bloodborne pathogen transmission to health care personnel. *OSHA mandates that sharp objects (“sharps”) and needles be handled with care.* Many contaminated sharp-object exposures involve nurses. Needleless devices have helped decrease these exposures, especially when caring for patients receiving infusion therapy (see Chapter 15).

Other infection control concerns that nurses and other HCWs have are the possibilities of pandemic influenza, plague, or biologic agent exposure. A large outbreak of one of the MDROs is also worrisome, especially if no drug is sensitive enough for successful management. Nurses fear that they will accidentally bring the infectious agent to their homes and families.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To help prevent the transmission of an MDRO, wear scrubs and change clothes before leaving work. Keep work clothes separate from personal clothes. Take a shower when you get home, if possible, to rid your body of any unwanted pathogens. Be careful not to contaminate equipment that is commonly used, such as your stethoscope or scissors.

PROBLEMS FROM INADEQUATE ANTIMICROBIAL THERAPY

Inadequate antimicrobial therapy may range from an incorrect choice of drug to poor patient adherence. Some infections relapse in a subtle fashion. Drug regimen **noncompliance** (deliberate failure to take the drug) or **nonadherence** (accidental failure to take the drug) prevents contact of harmful microorganisms with sufficient concentrations of the drug and contributes to resistant-organism development.

Some diseases such as tuberculosis (TB) have legal sanctions that require that a patient complete treatment. Patients who are at risk for noncompliance or nonadherence with an anti-TB drug regimen may be placed on *directly observed therapy (DOT)*. This means that a health care worker must observe and validate patient compliance with the drug regimen. DOT has been very effective at reducing the spread of multidrug-resistant TB.

Serious complications of infection may also result from incomplete or inadequate antibiotic therapy. Local infections that could be cured without complications, such as cellulitis and pneumonia, may progress to abscess formation if appropriate drug therapy is not continued. Although drug therapy

does not always prevent abscess, early therapy may prevent or limit the size of an abscess.

In addition to abscess formation, inadequate therapy may not prevent systemic spread. If the infection is not resolved or if it is treated with drugs that are ineffective for the offending microorganism, the pathogen may enter the bloodstream (septicemia or bloodstream infection [BSI]). Inadequately treated local infections may also lead to BSI with leukocytosis (increased white blood cell count). In severe or advanced cases, leukopenia (decreased white blood cell count) and life-threatening disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) may occur. After pathogens invade the bloodstream, no site is protected from invasion.

BSI may progress to **septic shock**, more accurately called *sepsis-induced distributive shock*. In septic shock, insufficient cardiac output is compounded by hypovolemia. Inadequate blood supply to vital organs leads to hypoxia (lack of oxygen) and organ failure. [Chapter 39](#) describes this type of shock and its management in detail.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

The patient's age, history of tobacco or alcohol use, current illness or disease (e.g., diabetes), past and current drug use (e.g., steroids), and poor nutritional status may place him or her at increased risk for infection. Ask the patient about previous vaccinations or immunizations, including the dates of administration.

Determine whether the patient has been exposed to infectious agents. A history of recent exposure to someone with similar clinical symptoms or to contaminated food or water, as well as the time of exposure, assists in identifying a possible source of infection. This information helps determine the incubation period for the disease and thus provides a clue to its cause.

Contact with animals, including pets, may increase exposure to infection. Question the patient about recent animal contact at home or work or in leisure activities (e.g., hiking). Insect bites should be documented.

Obtain a travel history. Travel to areas both within and outside the patient's home country may expose a susceptible person to infectious organisms not encountered in the local community.

A thorough sexual history may reveal behavior associated with an increased risk for sexually transmitted diseases. Obtain a history of IV drug use and a transfusion history to assess the patient's risk for hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and HIV infections.

Identifying the type and location of symptoms may point to affected organ systems. The onset order of symptoms gives clues to the specific problem. Gathering a history of past infection or colonization with multidrug-resistant organisms will help determine which precautions are needed.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Disorders caused by pathogens vary depending on the infection cause and site. Common clinical manifestations are associated with specific sites of infection. Carefully inspect the

skin for symptoms of *local* infection at any site (*pain, swelling, heat, redness, pus*). Wounds can easily become infected because the integrity of the skin is broken.

Fever (generally a temperature above 101° F [38.3° C]), chills, and malaise are primary indicators of a systemic infection. Fever may accompany other noninfectious disorders, and infection can be present without fever. The older adult, whose normal temperature may be 1° to 2° lower than the normal temperature in younger adults, may have a fever at 99° F (37.2° C). In most patients with an infection, fever (**hyperthermia**) is a normal immune response that can help destroy the pathogen. Assess the patient for these signs and symptoms, and carefully ask about their history and pattern.

Lymphadenopathy (enlarged lymph nodes), pharyngitis, and GI disturbance (usually diarrhea or vomiting) are often associated with infection. To detect enlargement, palpate the cervical, axillary, and other lymph nodes; examine the throat for redness. Ask about changes in stool and if the patient has had any nausea or vomiting.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with an infectious disease often has psychosocial concerns. Delay in diagnosis because of the need to await clinical test results produces anxiety. Assess the patient's and family's level of understanding about various diagnostic procedures and the time required to obtain test results. Plan education on infection risk reduction at a time when they are ready to learn.

Feelings of malaise and fatigue often accompany infection. Assess the patient's current level of activity and the impact of these symptoms on family, occupational, and recreational activities.

The potential spread of infection to others is an additional stress associated with the diagnosis of infection. The patient may curtail family and social interactions for fear of spreading the illness. Determine the patient's and family's understanding of the infection, the mode of transmission, and mechanisms that may limit or prevent transmission. Special precautions, although sometimes necessary for preventing transmission of the organism, can be emotionally difficult for the patient and family.

A number of transmissible infectious diseases, especially those identified with social stigmas (e.g., IV drug abuse), are associated with labeling. The patient may feel socially isolated or have guilt related to behavior that increased the risk for infection. Observe carefully for the patient's reaction to labels and how these feelings further affect socialization.

Laboratory Assessment

The definitive diagnosis of an infectious disease requires identification of a microorganism in the tissues of an infected patient. Direct examination of blood, body fluids, and tissues under a microscope may not yield a definitive identification. However, laboratory assessment usually provides helpful information about organisms, such as shape, motility, and reaction to staining agents. Even when direct microscopy does not provide a conclusive specific diagnosis, often enough information is obtained for starting appropriate antimicrobial therapy.

*The best procedure for identifying a microorganism is **culture**, or isolation of the pathogen by cultivation in tissue cultures or artificial media. Specimens for culture can be*

obtained from almost any body fluid or tissue. The health care provider usually decides when and where the specimen for culture is taken.

Proper collection and handling of specimens for culture, using Standard Precautions, are essential for obtaining accurate results. Specimens collected must be appropriate for the suspected infection. Be sure that the specimen is of adequate quantity and is freshly obtained and placed in a sterile container to preserve the specimen and microorganism. Label the specimen properly, including the date and time it was collected. Follow your agency's policy if you have any questions about how to perform a culture.

After isolation of a microorganism in culture, antibiotic **sensitivity** testing is performed to determine the effects of various drugs on that particular microorganism. An agent that is killed by acceptable levels of an antibiotic, for example, is considered sensitive to that drug. An organism that is not killed by tolerable levels of an antibiotic is considered resistant to that drug. Preliminary results are usually available in 24 to 48 hours, but the final results generally take 72 hours. *Antibiotic therapy should not begin until after the culture specimen is obtained.*

Newer rapid cultures or assays are beginning to be used in ambulatory care settings to provide quicker assessments of infections. The most popular is the rapid antigen detection test for group A streptococci to rule out “strep throat” in patients who present with pharyngitis (sore, inflamed throat). Other examples of newer tests are those for tuberculosis (TB) and influenza (“flu”), discussed in [Chapter 33](#).

A *white blood cell (WBC) count with differential* is often done for the patient with a suspected infection. Five types of leukocytes (white blood cells) are measured as part of the results:

- Neutrophils
- Lymphocytes
- Monocytes
- Eosinophils
- Basophils

In most active infections, especially those caused by bacteria, the total leukocyte count is elevated. Various infections are characterized by changes in the percentages of the different types of leukocytes. The differential count usually shows an increased number of immature neutrophils, or a **shift to the left** (“left shift”). A few infectious diseases, however, such as malaria and infectious mononucleosis, are associated with neutropenia (decreased neutrophils). See [Chapter 19](#) for further discussion.

The *erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)* measures the rate at which red blood cells fall through plasma. This rate is most significantly affected by an increased number of acute-phase reactants, which occurs with inflammation. Thus an elevated ESR (>20 mm/hr) indicates inflammation or infection somewhere in the body. Chronic infection, especially osteomyelitis, and chronic abscesses are commonly associated with an elevated ESR. The ESR is chronically elevated with inflammatory arthritis and other connective tissue diseases as well (see [Chapter 20](#)). The effectiveness of therapy is often determined by a decrease in this value.

Serologic testing is performed to identify pathogens by detecting antibodies to the organism. The antibody titer tends to *increase* during the acute phase of infectious diseases such as hepatitis B. The titer *decreases* as the patient improves.

Many agencies are using DNA microassay analysis for testing genetic differences among bacteria. This test helps detect antimicrobial genes in nearly all bacteria.

Imaging Assessment

X-ray films may be obtained to determine activity or destruction by an infectious microorganism. Radiologic studies (e.g., chest films, sinus films, joint films, GI studies) are available for diagnosis of infection in a specific body site.

More sophisticated techniques for infection diagnosis include computed tomography (CT) scans and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Tomography is helpful in assessing for abscesses. CT scans help identify suspected osteomyelitis and fluid collections that point to possible infection. MRI scans provide a cross-sectional assessment for infection.

Another diagnostic tool for the evaluation of a patient with an infectious disease is ultrasonography. This noninvasive procedure is particularly helpful in detecting infection involving the heart valves.

Scanning techniques using radioactive substances such as gallium can determine the presence of inflammation. Inflammatory tissue is identified by its increased uptake of the injected radioactive material.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with an infection or infectious disease are:

1. Fever related to the immune response triggered by pathogenic invasion
2. Risk for feelings of isolation related to Transmission-Based Precautions

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Fever

Planning: Expected Outcomes. Patients with an infection or infectious disease are expected to have a body temperature within normal limits as a result of effective collaborative management.

Interventions. The primary concern is to provide measures to eliminate the underlying cause of fever (also known as *hyperthermia*) and to destroy the causative microorganism. In collaboration with the health care team, nurses use a variety of methods to manage fever.

Drug therapy plays a major role in patient-centered collaborative care of patients with infection. Antimicrobials, also called *anti-infective agents*, are the cornerstone of drug therapy. Antipyretics are used to decrease patient discomfort and reduce fever.

Antibiotics, antiviral agents, and antifungals are common types of *antimicrobials* that are given for infection, depending on its type. Effective antibiotics are available to treat nearly all bacterial infections, but misuse of antibiotics has contributed to the development of multidrug-resistant organisms (MDROs) discussed earlier in this chapter. A few effective antifungal agents have been developed, but these drugs generally cause more toxicity than antibacterial agents. Effective agents are available for the treatment of influenza type A virus infection and HIV, but some viruses, such as HIV, mutate rapidly. These agents have a limited duration of effectiveness.

Effective antimicrobial therapy requires delivery of an appropriate drug, sufficient dosage, proper administration route, and sufficient therapy duration. These four requirements ensure delivery of a concentration of drug sufficient to inhibit or kill infecting microorganisms. Health care providers collaborate on selecting drugs and dosing. Antimicrobials act on susceptible pathogens by:

- Inhibiting cell wall synthesis (e.g., penicillins and cephalosporins)
- Injuring the cytoplasmic membrane (e.g., antifungal agents)
- Inhibiting biosynthesis, or reproduction (e.g., erythromycin, tetracycline, and gentamicin)
- Inhibiting nucleic acid synthesis (e.g., actinomycin)

Teach the drug's actions, side effects, and toxic effects to patients and their families. Observe and report side effects and adverse events. These reactions vary according to the specific classification of the drug. Most antibiotics can cause nausea, vomiting, and rashes. Stress the importance of completing the entire course of drug therapy, even if symptoms have improved or disappeared.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Before administering an antimicrobial agent, check to see that the patient is not allergic to it (Table 25-4). Be sure to take an accurate allergy history before drug therapy begins to prevent possible life-threatening reactions, such as anaphylaxis!

Antipyretic drugs, such as acetaminophen (Tylenol, Ace-Tabs ,) are often given to reduce fever. Because these drugs mask fever, monitoring the course of the disease may be difficult. Therefore, unless the patient is very uncomfortable or if fever presents a significant risk (e.g., in the patient with heart failure, febrile seizures, or head injury), antipyretics are not always prescribed.

Teach patients that they may have waves of sweating after each dose. Sweating may be accompanied by a fall in blood pressure followed by return of fever. These unpleasant side effects of antipyretic therapy can often be alleviated by increasing fluid intake and by regular scheduling of drug administration.

TABLE 25-4 POSSIBLE ALLERGIC REACTIONS TO ANTIBIOTIC THERAPY

- Nausea and/or vomiting
- Flushing
- Wheezing
- Sneezing
- Pruritus
- Urticaria
- Rashes
- Maculopapular to exfoliative dermatitis
- Vascular eruptions
- Erythema multiforme (Stevens-Johnson syndrome)
- Angioneurotic edema
- Serum sickness (headache, fever, chills, hives, malaise, conjunctivitis)
- Anaphylaxis (laryngeal edema, bronchospasm, hypotension, vascular collapse, cardiac arrest)
- Death

Other interventions to reduce fever may include external cooling and fluid administration. Perform a thorough assessment before and after interventions are implemented.

External cooling by hypothermia blankets or ice bags or packs can be effective mechanisms for reducing a high fever. Alternative cooling methods may be used. Sponging the patient's body with tepid water or applying cool compresses to the skin and pulse points to reduce body temperature is sometimes helpful. *Teach unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to observe for and report shivering during any form of external cooling. Shivering may indicate that the patient is being cooled too quickly.*

The use of fans is discouraged because they can disperse airborne- or droplet-transmitted pathogens. Fans can also disturb air balance in negative pressure rooms, making them positive pressure rooms and allowing possible transmission of the agent to those outside the room.

In patients with fever, fluid volume loss is increased from rapid evaporation of body fluids and increased perspiration. As body temperature increases, fluid volume loss increases.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If fluid volume loss increases, patients may be at risk for *dehydration and require additional fluids either orally or IV. Monitor carefully for signs of dehydration, such as increased thirst, decreased skin turgor, dry mucous membranes, and acute confusion, especially in older adults. Increase oral fluid intake and provide IV fluids as prescribed. Chapter 13 discusses interventions for dehydration in detail.*

Responding to Feelings of Isolation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with an infection or infectious disease who is placed on Transmission-Based Precautions is expected to cope with feelings of isolation and interact with others.

Interventions. Education is the major intervention for meeting this outcome. Teach the patient and family about the mode of transmission of infection and mechanisms that prevent spread to others. Assess coping mechanisms that the patient has used in the past. If he or she is in the hospital, collaborate with the certified hospital chaplain or social worker to help alleviate the patient's stress, anxiety, or depression.

As part of the health care team, ensure that the patient and family understand the disease process and its cause. If necessary, ensure that the patient and family can state specific ways in which precautions will be used in the home after discharge from the hospital.

Because the patient requiring precautions may feel secluded, encourage staff and family members to maintain contact with the patient. Remind them that the pathogen, not the patient, requires special precautions. Encourage family members and friends to visit and to use appropriate infection control measures. Communication by telephone or e-mail is often effective for continuing contact with loved ones. Television, Internet, and iPods or other MP3 players help bring the outside world into the life of the patient confined to the room.

In the long-term care setting, an outbreak of respiratory or GI infection usually requires limiting visitors, activities, and admissions to the facility. Nurses working in these

settings need to be familiar with federal and state regulations regarding managing infections.

Community-Based Care

Patients with infections may be cared for in the home, hospital, nursing home, or ambulatory care setting, depending on the type and severity of the infection. Infections among older adults in nursing homes are common. Residents often have meals together in a communal dining room and participate in group activities. Confused residents may not wash their hands or may enter other resident rooms. Immunizing them against respiratory infections is highly recommended because these illnesses can cause severe complications or death in older adults.

Home Care Management

The patient with an infectious disease such as osteomyelitis who is discharged from the hospital to home may require continued, long-term antibiotic therapy. Emphasize the importance of a clean home environment, especially for the patient who continues to be immunocompromised or who is uniquely susceptible to **superinfection** (i.e., reinfection or a second infection of the same kind) to reduce the chance of infection. Drugs often need to be refrigerated. Ensure that the patient has access to proper storage facilities, and teach him or her to check for signs of improper storage, such as discoloration of the drug.

Ask about the availability of handwashing facilities in the home, and check that supplies and instructions are provided as needed. Most people do not know how to wash hands correctly. Demonstrate the procedure with the patient and family, and request a repeat demonstration.

Teaching for Self-Management

Explaining the disease and making certain that the patient understands what is causing the illness are the primary purposes of health teaching. Discuss whether the pathogen causing the infection can be spread to others and the modes of transmission.

If the patient has an infectious disease that is potentially transmissible, teach the patient, family, and other home caregivers about precautions. Explain whether any special household cleaning is necessary and, if so, what those special steps include. If syringes with needles are used to administer drug therapy, explain how to dispose safely and legally of needles in the community. Clothing soiled with blood or other body fluids can be washed with bleach or disinfectant (e.g., Lysol). Recommended cleaning measures should be based on actual available equipment and facilities.

For the patient who is discharged to the home setting to complete a course of antimicrobial therapy, the importance of adherence to the planned drug regimen needs to be stressed. Explain the importance of both the timing of doses and the completion of the planned number of days of therapy. The patient (and family as appropriate) should also be taught how the agents need to be taken (e.g., before meals, with meals, without other agents) and the possible side effects. Side effects include those that are expected (e.g., gastric distress after oral administration of erythromycin), as well as more severe adverse reactions (e.g., rash, fever, other systemic signs and symptoms). Teach the patient about allergic manifestations and the need to notify a health care provider if an

adverse reaction occurs (see [Table 25-4](#)). Also discuss what to do if a drug dose is missed (e.g., doubling the dosage, waiting until the next dose time).

In the past, many patients with severe infection were hospitalized for several weeks or longer to receive IV antimicrobial therapy. Since managed care began, many patients have been discharged with an infusion device to continue drug therapy at home or in other inpatient facilities. The patient, family member, or home care nurse administers the drugs. [Chapter 15](#) describes infusion therapy.

The patient is often anxious and fearful that the infection will be transmitted to family members or friends. Teaching the patient and the family ways of preventing the spread of disease allays these fears. Pay careful attention to the patient's and family's concerns. Making concrete suggestions (e.g., "Your wife can wear gloves when changing your dressing") to address specific concerns may reduce these fears.

The patient with an infectious disease associated with lifestyle behaviors, such as sexual activity or IV drug abuse, may have guilt related to the disease. Encourage discussion of feelings associated with the illness, and assist in locating support systems that may help alleviate these feelings, such as clergy or other spiritual or cultural leaders.

Health Care Resources

In unusual instances, a patient who has been hospitalized for an infectious disease may not be able to return to the home setting immediately. In such cases, temporary placement in a skilled nursing facility (SNF) may be needed. Document care requirements, patient history of infection or colonization with multidrug-resistant organisms, medication schedules, and personal needs and preferences on transfer forms. Hand-off communication between the two facilities is required to facilitate a smooth transition from the hospital to the intermediate care setting, according to The Joint Commission's NPSGs.

Home care services are often used to teach appropriate administration of drug therapy in the patient's home. Health teaching and wound care may also be needed. These services have proved efficient, effective, psychologically supportive, and less expensive than hospitalization or SNFs.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluating the care of the patient with an infection or infectious disease on the basis of the identified priority problems is important. The expected outcomes include that the patient:



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice; Quality Improvement; Informatics

The patient care coordinator of your medical unit reports a 50% increase in MRSA infections over the past 3 months. The hospital quality improvement department is seeking assistance from the unit staff to decrease this infection rate by identifying possible causes and strategies for implementation.

1. Using the PICOT format in [Chapter 7](#), develop a clinical question to address the problem.
2. How will your unit QI team begin to answer the clinical question?
3. What data sources might you use?
4. What will you do with the retrieved data?
5. How will you present your findings?

TABLE 25-5 EXAMPLES OF BIOTERRORISM AGENTS AND GENERAL CLINICAL MANAGEMENT PER THE CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION

PATHOGEN OR AGENT AND DISEASE INFORMATION

Anthrax (*Bacillus anthracis*)

Cutaneous: 1-7 days after contact, exposed skin itching, progressing to papular and vesicular lesions, eschar, edema, ulceration, and sloughing. If untreated, may spread to lymph nodes and bloodstream. Fatality 5%-20%.

Inhalation: 48 hr after organism or spore inhalation, flu-like illness with possible brief improvement. 2-4 days from initial symptoms, abrupt onset of severe cardiopulmonary illness (dyspnea, tachycardia, fever, diaphoresis, thoracic edema, shock, and respiratory failure). If antibiotics delayed until onset of cardiopulmonary symptoms, mortality high. May be confused with common upper respiratory infection (URI).

Other forms: Gastrointestinal (GI), meningial, and sepsis.

Botulism (*Clostridium botulinum* and Neurotoxin)

Toxin ingestion results in dysphasia, dry mouth, drooping eyelids, and blurred or double vision. Vomiting and constipation or diarrhea may be present initially, extending to symmetric flaccid paralysis in an alert person. Acute bilateral cranial nerve impairment and descending weakness or paralysis follow.

Neurologic symptoms after 12-36 hr for foodborne botulism and in 24-72 hr after aerosol exposure. Case fatality up to 10%. Recovery may take months.

Plague (*Yersinia pestis*)

Lymphatic infection: 2-8 days after bites from fleas of an infected rodent (rarely after infected tissue or body fluid contact), onset of fever and chills, painful lymphadenopathy (or bubo—usually inguinal, axillary, or cervical lymph nodes), headache, GI symptoms, and rapidly progressive weakness. 50%-60% fatality if untreated.

Pneumonic: 1-3 days after aerosolized organism inhalation, fever and chills, productive cough, hemoptysis, rapidly progressive weakness, GI symptoms, and bronchopneumonia. Survival unlikely if not treated within 18 hr of symptom onset.

Other forms: Sepsis with coagulopathy, rarely meningitis.

Smallpox (*Variola Virus*) (*Variola Major* and *Minor*)

10-17 days after droplet or airborne virus inhalation or contact with bleeding lesions, onset of severe myalgias, headache, and high fever. 2-3 days later, a papular rash appears on face and spreads to extremities (and palms and soles). The rash quickly (simultaneously) becomes vesicular, then painful and pustular (contrasted to varicella rash that crops and concentrates more on trunk with various stages of macules to vesicles seen at one time). Patients are infectious at onset of rash until scabs separate (3 wk). Historically, variola major kills 20%.

May be confused with varicella.

Other Key Points

Assessment: Include account of symptoms, patient's incident (what, where, when, how, others exposed or ill, and officials aware).

Treatment: Antibiotic-resistance possible. Vaccine and postexposure prophylaxis are subject to change. If any of the above diseases are suspected, consult infection control practitioner for coordination with community health officials and CDC about current recommendations and specimen collection. *If bioterrorism suspected*, Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) will coordinate evidence collection and delivery.

Multiple exposures planning: Emergency and critical care managers must address availability and acquisition of stocks of medications, vaccines, equipment (e.g., ventilators), and communications with officials, as well as public information needs.

CLINICAL MANAGEMENT

For cutaneous and inhaled anthrax: No person-to-person spread. Contact Precautions are not needed unless patient presents directly from exposure.

Standard Precautions for:

Prescribed wound cleansing and management of lesions

Ventilator support for respiratory failure

Postmortem care

Standard Precautions: decontamination of patient is not required. No person-to-person spread.

Consider outbreak with suspicion of a single case. Consult with Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and health departments.

Advise careful cleanup and disposal of suspected contaminated food source *after* consultation with health department about any needed laboratory sampling.

Interdisciplinary planning for nutrition and rehabilitation support during lengthy neuromuscular and respiratory recovery.

Droplet Precautions: required for pneumonic plague (until 72 hr of antibiotic therapy).

Contact Precautions until decontamination is complete:

For any suspected gross contamination. See documentation information listed under Anthrax—above.

For prescribed management of bubo(s) if incised to drain.

Community and other environmental modifications:

Apply insecticide to infested environment and pets (to kill fleas).

Reduce food and water supply for rodents.

Avoid sick or dead animals.

Standard, Contact, and Airborne Precautions for patients with vesicular rash pending diagnosis. Same for varicella and variola.

Also, avoid contact with organism while handling contaminated clothes and bedding. Wear protective attire (gloves, gown, and N95 respirator).

One case is a public health emergency—highly communicable.

Consult CDC and health departments at earliest suspicion.

Vaccine does not give reliable lifelong immunity. Previously vaccinated persons are considered susceptible. *Following exposure:* Initiate Airborne Precautions, and observe for unprotected contacts (from days 10-17). Vaccinate within 2-3 days of exposure.

- Has body temperature and other vital signs within baseline
- Adheres to drug therapy regimen
- Copes with feelings of social isolation
- Interacts with others as appropriate

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

CRITICAL ISSUES: BIOTERRORISM AND EMERGING INFECTIONS

Current concerns related to infection and infection control are the risk for bioterrorism (Table 25-5), emerging infectious diseases, and multidrug-resistant organisms (MDROs), already discussed. As for any pathogen, strict infection control measures can prevent transmission of these microbes to you and your patients. Some of the most serious infections are briefly described here. Table 25-6 lists more emerging infections that may present as problems in the United States.

Preparation for and education about *bioterrorism* have been major focuses of the U.S. government since September 11, 2001. In some cases, vaccines are no longer given for biologic agents like smallpox. Many people in the United States have never been vaccinated, and those who had vaccinations many years ago are not guaranteed to have lifelong immunity. Anthrax, usually seen in animals, may be spread to the skin or inhaled. These infections have a high fatality rate in humans. Plague, once seen centuries ago, is one of the biggest threats because the survival rate is low. Vaccines are being researched and stockpiled by the U.S. government for some of the common biologic agents.

Pandemic infections, such as influenza, are another threat to the population. As recently as the early 1900s, the “Spanish flu” killed millions of people throughout the world. Health care workers are encouraged to have yearly influenza vaccines to prevent common strains of the virus. The federal government and health care agencies around the United States include the risk for pandemic disease in their disaster planning (see Chapter 12).

Contaminated food is another source of infection. The incidence of foodborne infections has risen in the United

States as contaminated fresh spinach, ground beef, and other foods were found to contain *E. coli* 0157:H7. Many illnesses and thousands of recent deaths in the United States have been caused by this infection. Safer food preparation practices and increased monitoring by federal agencies have resulted from demand for public safety. More information on foodborne illnesses can be found in Chapter 60.

Another pathogen, *Clostridium difficile* (*C. difficile*), is associated with antibiotic therapy use. An uncommon but virulent strain of this organism has appeared recently in the United States and Canada. *C. difficile* is spread by indirect contact with inanimate objects like medical equipment and commodes, and its toxins cause colon dysfunction and cell death from sepsis. *C. difficile*-associated disease (CDAD) is confirmed by stool culture. Patients who have three or more liquid stools per day for two or more days are suspected of having CDAD. *Older adults are the most at risk for this infection.* Metronidazole (Flagyl) and vancomycin are the drugs of choice.

TABLE 25-6 EXAMPLES OF EMERGING INFECTIOUS DISEASES IN THE UNITED STATES

Recently Emerging Diseases

- H1N1 influenza
- Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)
- West Nile virus
- Avian influenza
- Hemorrhagic fevers (e.g., Ebola, Marburg)
- Monkeypox
- Bovine spongiform encephalopathy
- Chagas disease
- Vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA)
- Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA)
- *Clostridium difficile* (new strain)

Older Rapidly Growing Diseases

- Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
- Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE)
- Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis
- *Clostridium difficile*

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has inadequate protection as a result of infection or infectious disease?

- Flushing and sweating
- Localized skin inflammation (redness, warmth, swelling, pain)
- Open wound (draining or non-draining)
- Report of diarrhea or vomiting
- Report of sore throat
- Fatigue
- Rash
- Acute confusion (in older adults)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with inadequate protection as a result of infection or infectious disease?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Vital signs
- Skin and/or wound assessment
- Lymph palpation
- Throat inspection

Respond:

- Manage fever if present.
- Take culture of drainage and send to laboratory for analysis.
- Monitor laboratory findings, including complete blood count (CBC) with white blood cell (WBC) differential.
- Place on appropriate Transmission-Based Precautions.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Teach patients and families about Transmission-Based Precautions and hand hygiene.
- Administer antimicrobial therapy as prescribed.
- Collaborate with the facility's infection control practitioner.
- Teach patients and families about the need to adhere to the drug therapy regimen.
- Follow CDC guidelines and The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs).

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient's response to drug therapy.

- Monitor the patient's vital signs for return to baseline.
- Evaluate the patient's and family's knowledge of infection, Transmission-Based Precautions, and drug therapy.
- Monitor the staff's compliance with hand hygiene and personal protective equipment (PPE).
- Evaluate the patient's and family's coping ability.
- Think about what else you might do to make the patient more comfortable.
- Decide whether you need to provide alternative or additional interventions or health teaching.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Handwashing and alcohol-based hand rubs are two methods of hand hygiene (see [Chart 25-3](#)).
- The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends a ban on artificial fingernails for health care professionals when they are caring for patients at high risk for infection.
- Infections can be prevented or controlled through hand hygiene, disinfection/sterilization, personal protective equipment (PPE), patient placement, and adequate staffing; proper hand hygiene and gloves are the most important interventions because health care workers' hands are the primary way in which disease is transmitted from patient to patient.
- Standard Precautions are used with all patients in health care settings, assuming that all body excretions and secretions are potentially infectious (see [Table 25-2](#)).
- Airborne Precautions are used for patients who have infections transmitted through the air, such as tuberculosis.
- Droplet Precautions are used for patients who have infections transmitted by droplets, such as influenza and certain types of meningitis.
- Contact Precautions are used for patients who have infections transmitted by direct contact or contact with items in the patient's environment.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Health teaching about clinical manifestations of infection and drug therapy is important for the patient with an infection being managed at home; some patients may need health care nursing services for IV antimicrobial therapy.
- Teach patients about antimicrobial therapy and protective measures to prevent infection transmission.
- Teach patients how to avoid community-acquired MRSA by performing frequent hand hygiene and by avoiding

crowds and direct contact with others who have infections.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Patients who have Transmission-Based Precautions may feel isolated, anxious, or depressed; they may feel neglected and dissatisfied with their care. Help patients cope with these feelings through verbalization and collaboration with the health care team.

Physiological Integrity

- Examples of multidrug-resistant organisms (MDROs) include methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE).
- A **biofilm**, also called *glycocalyx*, is a complex group of microorganisms that function within a "slimy" gel coating on medical devices, such as urinary catheters, orthopedic implants, and enteral feeding tubes; on parts of the body like the teeth (plaque) and tonsils; and in chronic wounds. Biofilms are difficult to treat, and research is examining methods to manage them to better treat.
- If infections are not treated or are inadequately treated, systemic sepsis (septicemia), septic shock, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) may result.
- A culture is the most definitive way to confirm and identify microorganisms; sensitivity testing determines which antibiotics will destroy the identified microbes.
- The differential count usually shows a shift to the left (increased number of immature neutrophils) during active infections.
- Antimicrobials and antipyretics are the most common types of drugs used when infection is accompanied by fever.
- Antipyretics are used only when the fever presents a significant risk or the patient is very uncomfortable, because antipyretics may mask the disease.
- Critical issues for the next decade include bioterrorism, emerging infectious diseases, and multidrug-resistant organisms (MDROs).



CHAPTER

26

Assessment of the Skin, Hair, and Nails*Janice Cuzzell and M. Linda Workman*<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES**Safe and Effective Care Environment**

1. Use knowledge of integumentary changes associated with aging to protect older adult patients from skin injury.
2. Modify techniques to assess skin changes in patients with darker skin.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Teach all people how to protect the skin from sun exposure.
4. Teach all people to use the ABCDE method of checking lesions for manifestations of melanoma.
5. Perform health history and risk assessment for skin, hair, and nail problems.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests and procedures to assess skin function and skin disease.

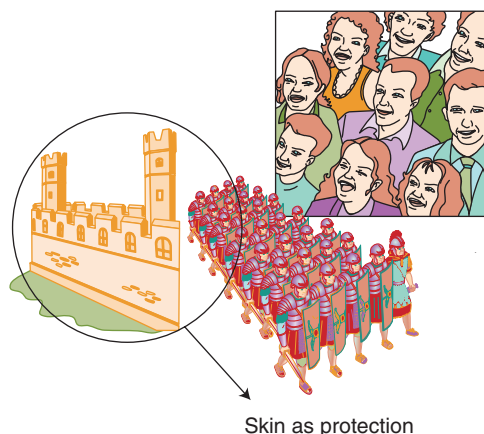
7. Reassure patients who have skin changes that are variations of normal.

Physiological Integrity

8. Compare the structures and function of the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous tissue.
9. Use proper terminology to communicate skin assessment findings.
10. Distinguish between normal variations and abnormal skin manifestations with regard to skin color, texture, warmth, and moisture.
11. Use the ABCDE method of assessing skin lesions for cancer.

The integumentary system includes the skin, hair, and nails. The skin plays a major role in the *concept of body protection*. As shown in Fig. 26-1, the skin protects against foreign invasion by providing a first line of defense (the moat), a second line of defense (the castle wall), and even a third line of defense (the knights and soldiers). The normal flora on the surfaces of skin and mucous membranes repels some of the more harmful microorganisms. Intact skin has barrier functions, alarm functions, and even combat functions. Specialized cells called *Langerhans' cells*, present in the skin, engulf foreign substances (antigens) that invade the body when the skin is injured. These cells then alert the immune system to the presence of the invader.

The skin is the largest organ of the body and plays a major role in homeostasis. When intact, it helps regulate body temperature and maintains fluid and electrolyte balance. Changes in the skin can communicate information about a person's health and well-being (Anderson et al., 2007).



Skin as protection

FIG. 26-1 Role of the skin in the concept of body protection.

Emotional stress, systemic disease, and skin injury or disease can alter the function, appearance, and texture of the skin. Therefore examine the skin for important clues about the patient's health.

The sensory function of the skin allows the use of touch as a therapeutic intervention to provide comfort, relieve pain, and communicate caring. Because the skin has many sensory receptors, the patient can report subjective skin sensations that might indicate specific health problems.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Structure of the Skin

As shown in Fig. 26-2, the skin has three layers: subcutaneous tissue (fat), dermis, and epidermis. Each layer has unique properties that contribute to the skin's ability to maintain its complex functions.

Subcutaneous fat (adipose tissue [fat]) is the innermost layer of the skin, lying over muscle and bone. Fat cells serve as an energy reserve in the event extra calories are needed to power the body. These cells also act as heat insulators for the body. They absorb shock and protect against injury by padding internal structures. Fat distribution varies with body area, age, and gender. Many blood vessels go through the fatty layer and extend into the dermal layer, forming capillary networks that supply nutrients and remove wastes.

The *dermis (corium)* is the layer above the fat layer. It is composed of connective tissue that contains no cells. The dermis is composed of collagen and elastic fibers that are interwoven to give the skin both flexibility and strength.

Collagen, the main component of dermal tissue, is a protein formed by dermal cells called *fibroblasts*. Collagen production increases in areas of tissue injury and helps form scar tissue. Fibroblasts also produce **ground substance**, a protein lubricant that surrounds the dermal cells and fibers and contributes to the skin's normal suppleness and turgor.

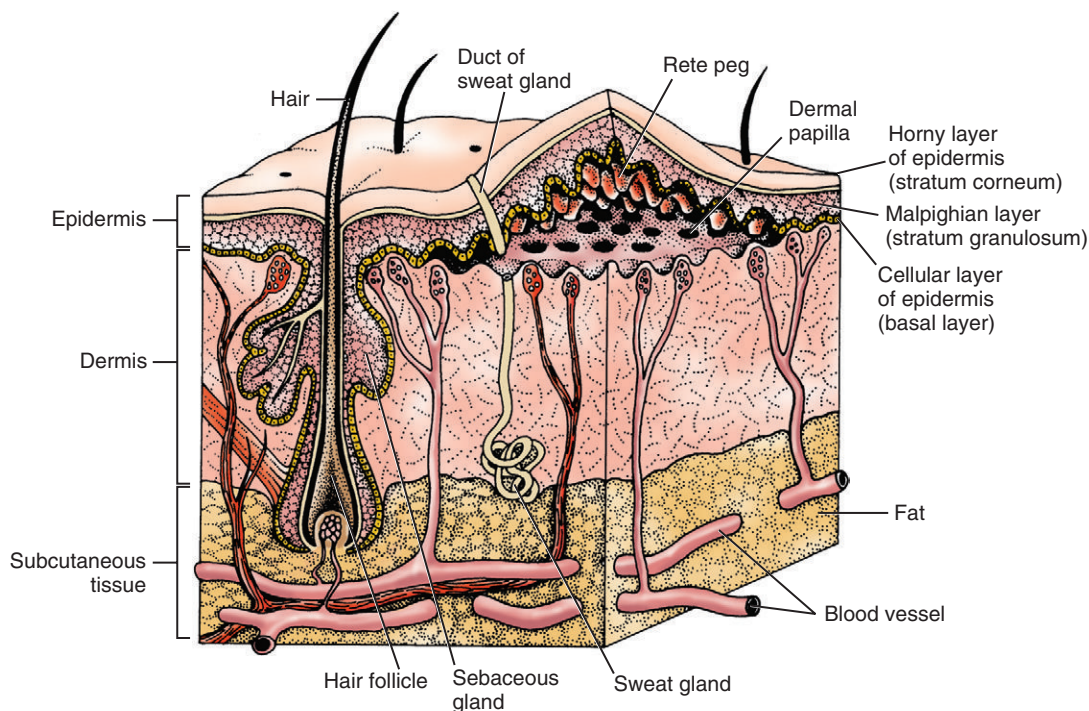


FIG. 26-2 Anatomy of the skin.

The elasticity of the skin depends on both the amount and quality of the elastic fibers, which are scattered among the collagen fibers. The major component of the elastic fiber is **elastin**.

The dermis has capillaries and lymph vessels for the exchange of oxygen and heat. The dermis is also rich in sensory nerves that transmit the sensations of touch, pressure, temperature, pain, and itch.

The **epidermis** is the outermost skin layer. It is anchored to the dermis by finger-like projections of dermal tissue (**dermal papillae**). The fingers of epidermal tissue that project into the dermis are called **rete pegs**. The epidermis is less than 1 mm thick, but it is the protective barrier between the body and the environment.

The epidermis does not have its own blood supply and receives its nutrients by diffusion from the blood vessels in the dermal layer through the basement membrane. Attached to the basement membrane are the **keratinocytes**, the actual skin cells. The keratinocytes capable of cell division are the basal cells, which are located closest to the basement membrane and continuously divide to form new cells. Older keratinocytes are pushed upward and flattened to form the stratified layers of the epithelium (**malpighian layers**). When these cells reach the outermost skin layer, the **stratum corneum** (horny layer), they are no longer living cells and are shed from the skin. **Keratin**, the protein produced by keratinocytes, makes the horny layer waterproof. A keratinocyte takes about 28 to 45 days to move from the basement membrane to the skin surface.

Vitamin D is activated in the epidermis by ultraviolet (UV) light, such as sunlight. It is then distributed by the blood to the intestinal tract, where it promotes uptake of dietary calcium.

Melanocytes are pigment-producing cells found at the basement membrane. These cells give color to the skin and account for the ethnic differences in skin tone. Darker skin tones are not caused by increased numbers of melanocytes; rather, the size of the pigment granules (**melanin**) contained in each cell determines the color. The purpose of melanin is to protect the skin from damage by UV light. For this reason, people with dark skin are less likely to develop sunburn than lighter-skinned people with the same sun exposure. Freckles, birthmarks, and age spots are caused by patches of melanin within the skin. UV light stimulates the production of melanin, which protects against the harmful effects of sun exposure. Melanin production increases in areas that have endocrine changes or inflammation.

Structure of the Skin Appendages

Hair, a thick protective pelt worn by most mammals, is mainly a cosmetic feature for modern humans. Hair growth varies with race, gender, age, and genetic predisposition. Individual hairs can differ in both structure and rate of growth, depending on body location.

Hair follicles are located in the dermal layer of the skin but are actually extensions of the epidermal layer (see Fig. 26-2). Within each hair follicle, a round column of keratin forms the hair shaft. Hair keratin is tougher than skin keratin. Hair color is genetically determined by a person's rate of melanin production.

Hair growth occurs in cycles, with a growth phase followed by a resting phase. Stressors can alter the growth cycle and result in temporary hair loss. Permanent baldness, such as male pattern baldness, is inherited and is seldom influenced by personal or environmental factors.

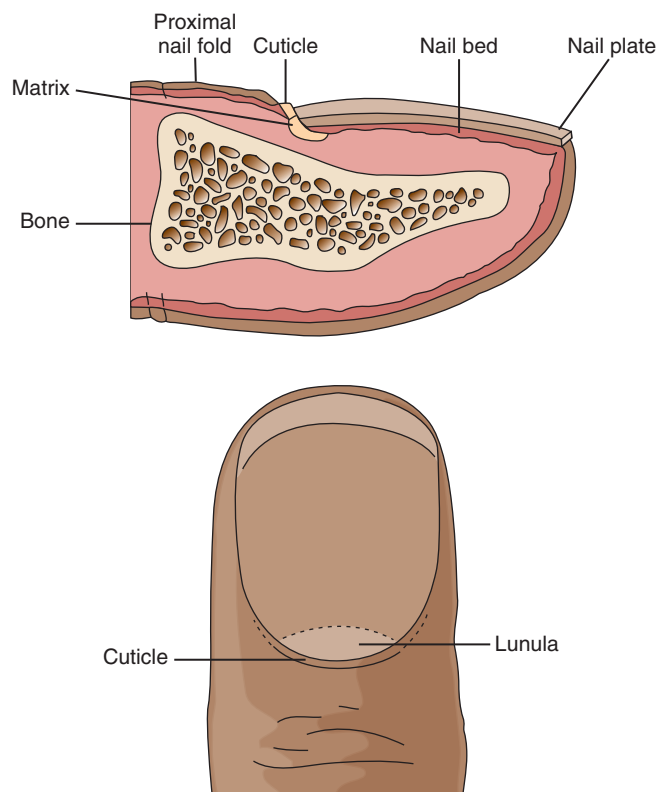


FIG. 26-3 Anatomy of the nail.

Nails on fingers and toes have cosmetic value and are useful for grasping and scraping. Like hair follicles, the nails are extensions of the keratin-producing epidermal layers of the skin.

The white, crescent-shaped portion of the nail at the lower end of the nail plate is called the **lunula** and is the location of the nail matrix, where nail keratin is formed and nail growth begins (Fig. 26-3). Nail growth is a continuous but slow process. Fingernail replacement requires 3 to 4 months. Toenail replacement may take up to 12 months.

The **cuticle**, a layer of keratin at the nail fold, attaches the nail plate to the soft tissue of the nail fold. The nail body is translucent, and the pinkish hue reflects a rich blood supply beneath the nail surface. Nail growth and appearance are often altered during systemic disease or serious illness.

Sebaceous glands are distributed over the entire skin surface except for the palms of the hands and soles of the feet. Most of these glands are connected directly to the hair follicles (Fig. 26-4). The sebaceous glands of the eyelids, nipple areolae, and genitalia are freestanding.

Sebaceous glands produce **sebum**, a mildly bacteriostatic, fat-containing substance. Sebum lubricates the skin and reduces water loss from the skin surface.

Sweat glands of the skin are of two types: eccrine and apocrine. Eccrine sweat glands arise from the epithelial cells. They are found over the entire skin surface and are not associated with the hair follicle. The odorless, colorless, isotonic secretions of these glands are important in the regulation of body temperature. Stimulation of sweat from these glands and the resultant water evaporation can cause the body to lose as much as 10 to 12 L of fluid in a single day.

Apocrine sweat glands are in direct contact with the hair follicle. They are found mostly in the axillae, nipple areolae,

periumbilicus, and perineal body areas. The interaction of skin bacteria with the secretions of the apocrine glands causes the distinctive body odor.

Functions of the Skin

The skin is a complex organ responsible for the regulation of many body functions throughout the life span (Table 26-1) (McCance et al., 2010). In addition to the skin's protective and regulatory functions, its location on the outside of the body makes it an important way to communicate a patient's state of health and body image.

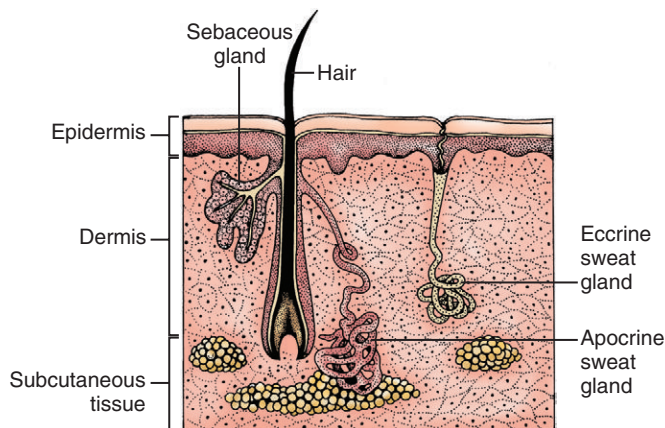


FIG. 26-4 Anatomy of the hair follicle and sebaceous and sweat glands.

Skin Changes Associated with Aging

The process of aging begins at birth. As changes in physiology progress with aging, the skin also undergoes age-related changes in both structure and function (Chart 26-1). Figs. 26-5 through 26-12 show some common age-related skin changes (Bianchi & Cameron, 2009).

Individual differences exist in how quickly and to what degree the skin ages (Helfrich et al., 2008). Although genetic background, hormonal changes, and systemic disease may change the appearance of the skin over time, chronic sun exposure is the single most important factor leading to degeneration of the skin components.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The client reports that a previously sensitive area of skin no longer responds to temperature changes or painful stimuli. This finding indicates a functional abnormality for which skin layer?

- A. Stratum corneum
- B. Adipose layer
- C. Epidermis
- D. Dermis

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Before examining the skin, take an accurate history from the patient so that actual and potential skin problems can be readily identified. Important data to collect include

TABLE 26-1 FUNCTIONS OF THE SKIN

EPIDERMIS	DERMIS	SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE
Protection Keratin provides protection from injury by corrosive materials Inhibits proliferation of microorganisms because of dry external surface Mechanical strength through intercellular bonds	Provides fibroblasts for wound healing Provides mechanical strength Collagen fibers Elastic fibers Ground substance Sensory nerve endings signal skin injury and inflammation	Mechanical shock absorber Energy reserve Insulation
Homeostasis (Water Balance) Low permeability to water and electrolytes prevents systemic dehydration and electrolyte loss	Lymphatic and vascular tissues respond to inflammation, injury, and infection	No real function in water balance
Temperature Regulation Eccrine sweat glands allow dissipation of heat through evaporation of sweat secreted onto the skin surface	Cutaneous vasculature, through dilation or constriction, promotes or inhibits heat conduction from the skin surface	Fat cells act as insulators and assist in retention of body heat
Sensory Organ Transmits a variety of sensations through the neuroreceptor system	Encloses an extensive network of nerve endings for relaying sensations to the brain	Contains large pressure receptors
Vitamin Synthesis 7-Dehydrocholesterol is present in large concentrations in malpighian cells, allowing photoconversion to active vitamin D	No function	No function
Psychosocial Body image alterations occur with many epidermal diseases, such as generalized psoriasis	Body image alterations occur with many dermal diseases, such as scleroderma	Body image alterations may result from increases, decreases, and redistribution of body fat stores

CHART 26-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Integumentary System Related to Aging

PHYSICAL CHANGES	CLINICAL FINDINGS	NURSING ACTIONS
Epidermis		
Decreased thickness in epidermal layer	Increased skin transparency and fragility	Handle patients carefully to minimize friction and shear to the skin. Assess for excessive dryness or moisture. Avoid taping the skin.
Decreased epidermal mitotic activity	Delayed wound healing	Protect open areas; use moisture-retentive dressings to promote wound healing.
Decreased epidermal mitotic homeostasis	Skin hyperplasia, such as hyperkeratoses and skin cancers (especially in sun-exposed areas)	Assess non-sun-exposed areas to determine baseline skin features. Assess exposed skin areas for sun-induced changes.
Increased epidermal permeability	Increased susceptibility to irritant reactions	Teach patients how to avoid exposure to skin irritants.
Decreased number of Langerhans' cells	Decreased cutaneous inflammatory response	Do not rely on redness and swelling to indicate skin damage.
Decreased number of active melanocytes	Increased sensitivity to sun exposure	Teach patients to wear hats and protective clothing. Teach patients to avoid sun exposure from 10 AM to 4 PM and to use sunscreen when outside.
Hyperplasia of melanocytes at the dermal-epidermal junction (especially in sun-exposed areas)	Mottled hyperpigmentation and hypopigmentation (e.g., liver spots, age spots)	Teach patients to keep track of such spots, but help them to differentiate these "normal" spots from those that need evaluation for malignancy.
Decreased vitamin D production	Increased susceptibility to osteomalacia	Urge patients to take a multiple vitamin or a calcium supplement that contains vitamin D.
Flattening of the dermal-epidermal junction	Increased susceptibility to shearing forces, with resultant blisters, purpura, skin tears, and pressure-related skin problems	Avoid pulling or dragging patients. Assist patients confined to bed or chairs to change positions at least every 2 hours. Avoid or use care when removing adhesive wound dressings.
Dermis		
Decreased dermal blood flow	Increased susceptibility to dry skin (xerosis)	Teach patients to apply moisturizers when the skin is still moist and to avoid agents that promote skin dryness.
Decreased vasomotor responsiveness	Increased thermoregulatory alterations (predisposition to heat stroke and hypothermia)	Teach patients to dress for the environmental temperatures and not to rely on skin sensations to tell them they are too hot or too cold.
Decreased dermal thickness	Paper-thin, transparent skin with an increased susceptibility to trauma	Handle patients gently, and avoid the use of tape or tight dressings. Use lift sheets when positioning patients.
Degeneration of elastic fibers	Decreased tone and elasticity (wrinkles)	Use the forehead or chest to test skin turgor.
Benign proliferation of capillaries	Cherry hemangiomas	Teach patients that these are benign.
Reduced number and function of nerve endings	Alterations in sensory perception	Instruct patients to use bath thermometer and to lower the water heater temperature to prevent scalds.
Subcutaneous Layer		
Thinning of subcutaneous fat layer	Increased susceptibility to hypothermia Decreased resistance to mechanical injury (especially pressure necrosis)	Teach patients to dress warmly in cold weather and to wear hats and gloves when outdoors. Assist patients confined to bed or chairs to change positions at least every 2 hours.
Hair		
Decreased number of hair follicles and rate of growth	Increased hair thinning	Suggest wearing hats in cold weather to prevent body heat loss and when in the sun to prevent burning the scalp.
Decreased number of active melanocytes in follicle	Gradual loss of hair color (graying)	Although associated with aging, inform patients that hair color loss can occur at any age.
Nails		
Decreased rate of growth	Increased susceptibility to fungal infections	Inspect the nails (including toenails) of all older adults. Instruct patients to wear socks and to keep the feet clean, warm, and dry.

Continued

CHART 26-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Integumentary System Related to Aging—cont'd

PHYSICAL CHANGES	CLINICAL FINDINGS	NURSING ACTIONS
Decreased blood flow beneath the nail bed	Longitudinal nail ridges	Use the oral mucosa to assess for cyanosis.
Thickening of the nail	Toenails (especially) thicken and may overhang the toes	Use fingernails to assess capillary refill. Cut toenails straight across rather than on a curve. Do not use nail appearance alone to determine the presence of a fungal infection. Assess skin in contact with the nail to determine whether the thick nail is irritating it.
Glands		
Decreased sebum production despite sebaceous gland hyperplasia	Increased size of pores (especially on nose); large comedones in malar region	Teach patients not to squeeze the pores or comedones to prevent traumatizing the skin.
Decreased eccrine and apocrine gland activity	Increased susceptibility to dry skin	Urge patients to avoid deodorant soaps and to use soaps with a high fat content. Teach patients to apply moisturizers immediately after bathing when skin is moist.
	Decreased perspiration, leading to decreased cooling effect	Do not use sweat production as an indicator of hyperthermia.

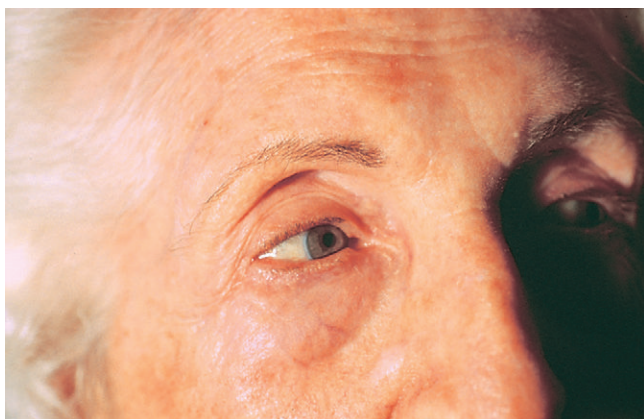


FIG. 26-5 Eyelid eversion, deepening of the eye orbit, and “bags” under the eye.



FIG. 26-7 Paper-thin, transparent skin with actinic lentigo (liver spots).

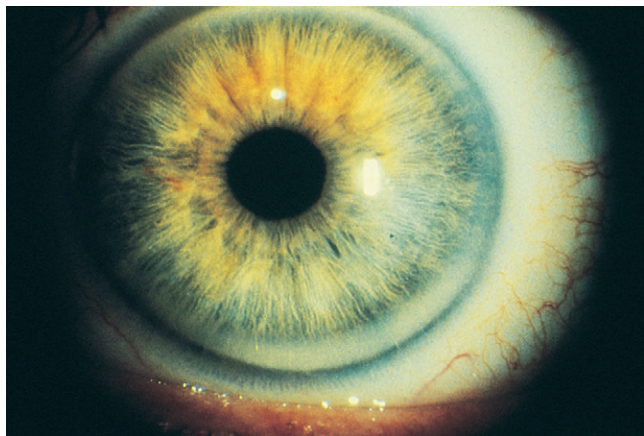


FIG. 26-6 Arcus senilis of the iris.



FIG. 26-8 Wrinkles.



FIG. 26-9 Graying and thinning of the hair.



FIG. 26-12 Nail changes: longitudinal ridges and thickening.



FIG. 26-10 Xerosis (dry skin).



FIG. 26-11 Senile (cherry) angiomas.

demographic and socioeconomic information. [Chart 26-2](#) highlights specific questions to ask during a skin assessment.

Demographic data include age, race, occupation, and hobbies or recreational activities. This information can help identify causative or aggravating factors for skin problems. Age is important because many changes in the skin, hair, and nails are normal manifestations of the aging process.

Race and nationality can also be important. Some variations in the appearance of skin are normal among patients of

specific races and ethnicities but are abnormal for those of other races or ethnicities.

Information about occupation and hobbies can provide clues to chronic skin exposure to chemicals, irritants, abrasive substances, and other environmental factors that can contribute to skin problems. Also, frequent or recent travel to tropical climates may be associated with the development of skin infections or infestations.

Socioeconomic status data can help identify environmental factors that might contribute to skin disease. Recent travel may be a source of skin infections or unusual lesions.

If the patient is well tanned, ask about the amount of time spent in the sun and tanning salons and whether he or she has any skin problems from sun exposure. Use this time to teach the patient about the harmful aspects of sun exposure and how to reduce sun exposure.

Skin problems related to poor hygiene are common. Ask about living conditions, bathing practices, and the availability of running water. Teach people that keeping the skin and hair clean by bathing and shampooing regularly helps maintain the skin's health.

Information about drug use is important to obtain because prescribed drugs, over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, herbal preparations or remedies, and tobacco use can cause allergies or skin reactions or affect skin function. Ask the patient about any recent use of prescription drugs, OTC drugs (e.g., laxatives, antacids, cold remedies), and herbal preparations or remedies. Determine when each drug was started, the dose and frequency of the drug, and the time the last dose was taken. Ask the patient whether skin changes began after starting a new drug. A drug history also helps identify skin changes that result from the treatment of other health problems, such as the changes that occur with long-term steroid or anticoagulant therapy.

Allergies can develop to environmental substances and often have skin manifestations. These allergies may be well documented or have a new onset. Ask about the use of any new personal care product (e.g., shaving products, perfumes, soap, shampoo, lotion, makeup, hair gel, toothpaste), laundry detergents and softeners, and home cleaning products. Determine whether the patient wears gloves to avoid direct contact with cleaning solutions. New clothing may contain chemicals that come into contact with and irritate the skin.

CHART 26-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Obtaining an Accurate Nursing History of the Patient with a Skin Problem

Medical-Surgical History

- Does the patient have any current or previous medical problems?
- Has the patient undergone any recent or previous surgical procedures?

Family History

- Is there any family tendency toward chronic skin problems?
- Do any members of the immediate family have recent skin problems?

Medication History

- Is the patient allergic to any systemic or topical drug? If so, have the patient describe the reaction.
- What prescription drugs has the patient taken recently? When was the drug started? What is the dose or frequency of administration? When was the last dose taken?
- What over-the-counter drugs has the patient taken recently? When was the drug started? What is the dose or frequency of administration? When was the last dose taken?

Social History

- What is the patient's occupation?
- What recreational activities does the patient enjoy?
- Has the patient traveled recently?
- What is the patient's nutritional status?
- Does the patient use tobacco or recreational drugs, or drink alcohol?

Current Health Problem

- When did the patient first notice the skin problem?
- Where on the body did the problem begin?
- Has the problem gotten better or worse?
- Has a similar skin condition ever occurred before? If so, have the patient describe the typical course and how it was treated.
- Is the problem associated with any of the following: itching, burning, stinging, numbness, pain, fever, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, sore throat, cold, stiff neck, new foods, new soaps or cosmetics, new clothing or bed linens, or stressful situations?
- Does anything seem to make the problem worse (e.g., sun exposure, drugs, heat or cold, menses)?
- Does anything seem to make the problem better?

Documenting the body location(s) of the skin problem can help determine its cause.

Nutrition Status

Document the patient's weight, height, body build and fat distribution, and food preferences. Poor nutrition, especially protein deficiencies, vitamin deficiencies, and obesity, can increase the patient's risk for skin lesions and delay wound healing. Fat-free diets and chronic alcoholism can lead to vitamin deficiencies and related skin changes. Some skin diseases, such as chronic urticaria and acne, may be worsened by certain foods or food additives.

Hydration influences overall skin health, and the skin reflects hydration status. Reduced fluid intake can lead to dry skin. Skin manifestations of severe fluid losses are seen as loose skin that tents when pinched together. Fluid overload with edema can stretch the skin, masking wrinkles and

allowing the formation of skin "pits" when pressure is applied to it.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Many skin problems (e.g., psoriasis, skin cancer, keloid formation, eczema) have a familial predisposition or can be inherited (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Explore any family tendency of chronic skin problems. Ask about immediate family members' current health status to identify a disease that could be transferred among family members (e.g., ringworm, scabies).

Current Health Problems

Chart 26-2 lists the best practices for obtaining a history from a patient with a skin problem. Begin by gathering information about skin changes and current skin care practices.

If a skin problem is identified, obtain more information about the specific problem, such as:

- When did the patient first notice the rash or skin change?
- Where on the body did the rash begin?
- Has the problem improved or become worse?

If a similar problem has occurred before, ask the patient to describe the course of the skin lesion and how it was treated. Try to link the problem with specific symptoms, such as itching, burning, numbness, pain, fever, sore throat, stiff neck, or nausea and vomiting. Ask him or her to identify anything that seems to make the problem better or worse.

Skin Assessment

Inspection

Skin changes may be related to specific skin diseases and may also reflect a systemic disorder. By using skin assessment skills, you are in a unique position to identify clues about a patient's overall state of health.

A thorough assessment of the skin is best performed with the patient partially or completely undressed. (Always provide privacy to maintain the patient's dignity.) Incorporate skin examination for actual or potential problems into the routine part of daily care while bathing him or her or assisting with hygiene.

Inspect the patient's skin surfaces in a well-lighted room; natural or bright fluorescent lighting enhances the visibility of subtle skin changes. Although no special equipment is needed, use a penlight to closely inspect lesions and to illuminate the mouth.

Assess each skin surface systematically, including the scalp, hair, nails, and mucous membranes. Give particular attention to the skinfold areas. The moist, warm environment of skinfolds can harbor organisms, such as yeast or bacteria. Observe and document these features:

- Obvious changes in color and vascularity
- Presence or absence of moisture
- Edema
- Skin lesions
- Skin integrity

Check the cleanliness of the various body areas to determine whether the patient's self-care activities need to be evaluated.

Skin color is affected by a number of factors, including blood flow, oxygenation, body temperature, and pigment

TABLE 26-2 COMMON ALTERATIONS IN SKIN COLOR

ALTERATION	UNDERLYING CAUSE	LOCATION	SIGNIFICANCE
White (pallor)	Decreased hemoglobin level Decreased blood flow to the skin (vasoconstriction)	Conjunctivae	Anemia
		Mucous membranes	Shock or blood loss
		Nail beds	Chronic vascular compromise
		Palms and soles	Sudden emotional upset
Yellow-orange	Genetically determined defect of the melanocyte (decreased pigmentation) Acquired patchy loss of pigmentation	Lips	Edema
		Generalized	Albinism
		Localized	Vitiligo, tinea versicolor
		Generalized	Increased hemolysis of red blood cells
Yellow-orange	Increased total serum bilirubin level (jaundice)	Mucous membranes	Liver disorders
		Sclera	
		Perioral	Increased ingestion of carotene-containing foods (carrots)
		Palms and soles	Pregnancy
Yellow-orange	Increased serum carotene level (carotenemia)	Ears and nose	Thyroid deficiency
		Absent in sclera and mucous membranes	Diabetes
		Generalized	Chronic kidney disease (uremia)
		Absent in sclera and mucous membranes	
Red (erythema)	Increased blood flow to the skin (vasodilation)	Generalized	Generalized inflammation (e.g., erythroderma)
		Localized (to area of involvement)	Localized inflammation (e.g., sunburn, cellulitis, trauma, rashes)
		Face, cheeks, nose, upper chest	Fever, increased alcohol intake
		Area of exposure	Exposure to cold
Blue	Increase in deoxygenated blood (cyanosis)	Nail beds	Cardiopulmonary disease
		Mucous membranes	Methemoglobinemia
		Generalized	
		Generalized	
Blue	Bleeding from vessels into tissue: Petechiae (1-3 mm) Ecchymosis (>3 mm)	Localized	Thrombocytopenia
		Localized	Increased blood vessel fragility
		Generalized	Polycythemia vera
		Distal extremities, nose	Inadequate tissue perfusion
Reddish blue	Increased overall amount of hemoglobin Decreased peripheral circulation	Generalized	Chronic inflammation
		Distal extremities, nose	Exposure to sunlight
		Localized (to area of involvement)	Addison's disease
		Pressure points, areolae, palmar creases, and genitalia	
Brown	Increased melanin production	Face, areolae, vulva, linea nigra	Pregnancy; oral contraceptives (melasma)
		Localized	Nonpathogenic
		Generalized	Possible neurofibromatosis
		Distal lower extremities	Chronic venous stasis
Brown	Café au lait spots (tan-brown patches) <6 spots >6 spots Melanin and hemosiderin deposits (bronze or grayish tan color)	Exposed areas or generalized	Hemochromatosis

production. The wide variation in natural skin tones may require different techniques for patients who have darker skin. (See [Cultural Awareness](#), p. 465, for suggestions for assessing patients with darker skin.)

Describe changes in skin color by their appearance ([Table 26-2](#)). Document changes in color, and describe whether the changes are general or confined to one body region. Color changes can be seen most easily in the areas of least pigmentation, such as the oral mucosa, sclera, nail beds, and palms and soles. Inspect these areas to help confirm more subtle color changes of general body areas.

Lesions in skin disease are clinically described in terms of primary and secondary lesions ([Fig. 26-13](#)). **Primary lesions** are an initial reaction to a problem that alters one of the structural components of the skin. **Secondary lesions** are changes in the appearance of the primary lesion. These changes occur with progression of an underlying disease or in response to a topical or systemic therapeutic intervention. For example, acute dermatitis often occurs as primary

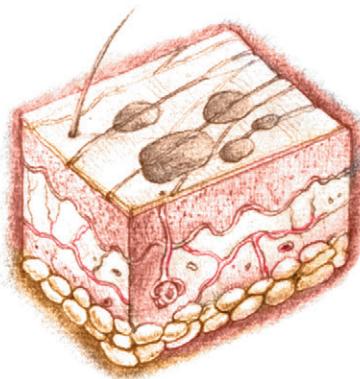
vesicles with associated **pruritus** (itching). Secondary lesions in the form of crusts occur as the patient scratches, the vesicles are opened, and the exudate dries. With chronic dermatitis, the skin often becomes **lichenified** (thickened) because of the patient's continual rubbing of the area to relieve itching.

Describe lesions by color, size, location, and shape. Note whether they occur as isolated changes or are grouped and form a distinct pattern. [Table 26-3](#) defines terms used to describe lesions.

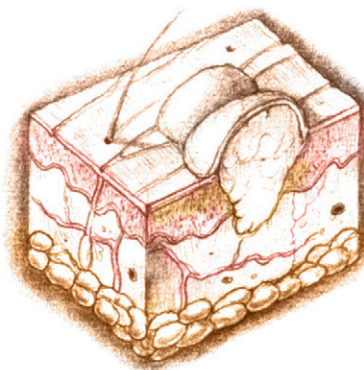
Assess each lesion for the following ABCDE features that are associated with skin cancer (The [Skin Cancer Foundation](#), 2010; McEnroe-Petite, 2011):

- **A**symmetry of shape
- **B**order irregularity
- **C**olor variation within one lesion
- **D**iameter greater than 6 mm
- **E**volving or changing in any feature (shape, size, color, elevation, itching, bleeding, or crusting)

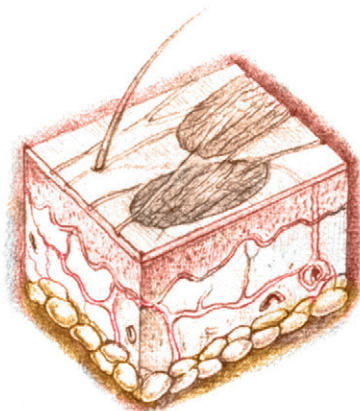
PRIMARY LESIONS



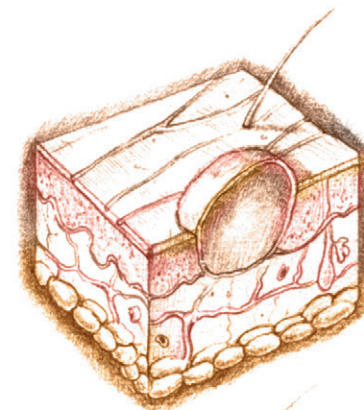
Macules (such as freckles, flat moles, or rubella) are flat lesions of less than 1 cm in diameter. Their color is different from that of the surrounding skin—most often white, red, or brown.



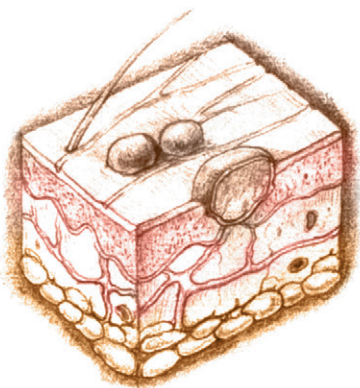
Nodules (such as lipomas) are elevated, marble-like lesions more than 1 cm wide and deep.



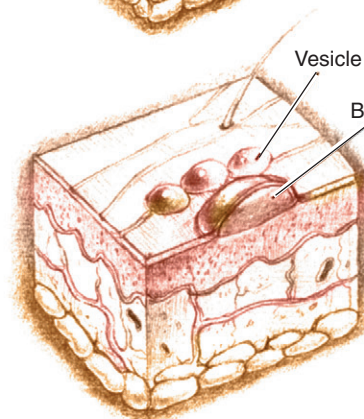
Patches (such as vitiligo or café au lait spots) are macules that are larger than 1 cm in diameter. They may or may not have some surface changes—either slight scale or fine wrinkles.



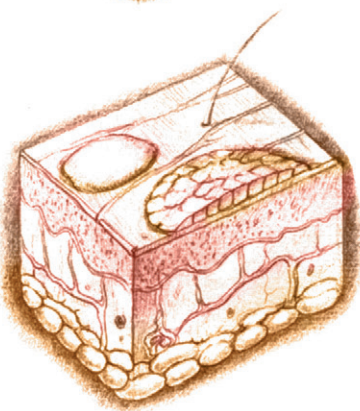
Cysts (such as sebaceous cysts) are nodules filled with either liquid or semisolid material that can be expressed.



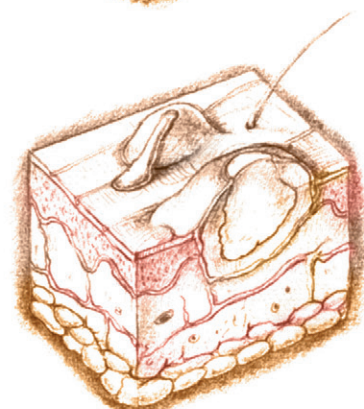
Papules (such as warts or elevated moles) are small, firm, elevated lesions less than 1 cm in diameter.



Vesicles (such as in acute dermatitis) and **bullae** (such as second-degree burns) are blisters filled with clear fluid. Vesicles are less than 1 cm in diameter, and bullae are more than 1 cm in diameter.

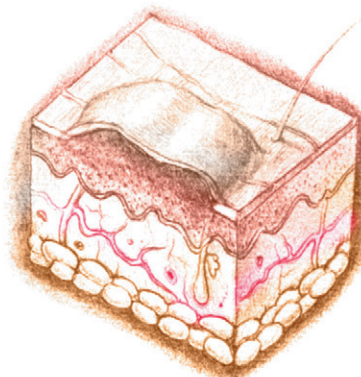


Plaques (such as in psoriasis or seborrheic keratosis) are elevated, plateau-like patches more than 1 cm in diameter that do not extend into the lower skin layers.

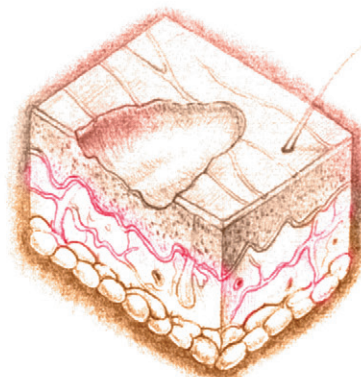


Pustules (such as in acne and acute impetigo) are vesicles filled with cloudy or purulent fluid.

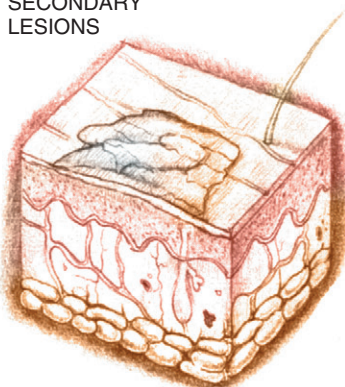
FIG. 26-13 Classification of skin lesions.

PRIMARY
LESIONS—cont'd

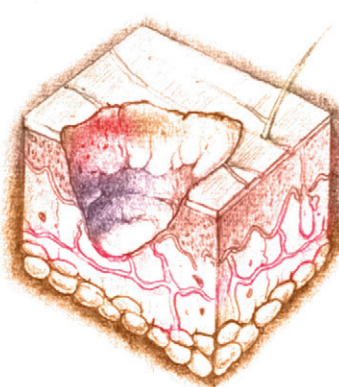
Wheals (such as *urticaria* and *insect bites*) are elevated, irregularly shaped, transient areas of dermal edema.



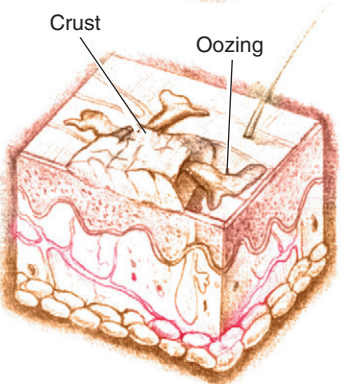
Erosions (such as in *varicella*) are wider than fissures but involve only the epidermis. They are often associated with vesicles, bullae, or pustules.

SECONDARY
LESIONS

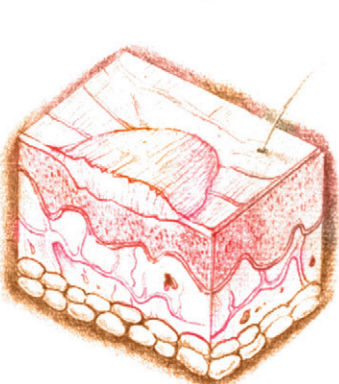
Scales (such as in *exfoliative dermatitis* and *psoriasis*) are visibly thickened stratum corneum. They appear dry and are usually whitish. They are seen most often with papules and plaques.



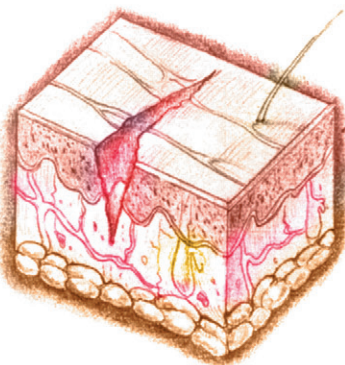
Ulcers (such as *stage 3 pressure sores*) are deep erosions that extend beneath the epidermis and involve the dermis and sometimes the subcutaneous fat.



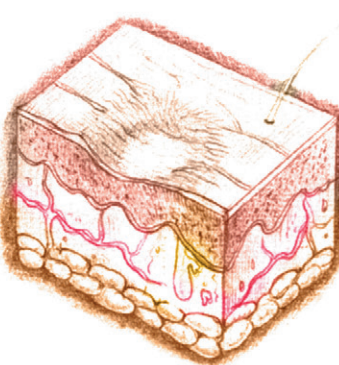
Crusts and oozing (such as in *eczema* and *late-stage impetigo*) are composed of dried serum or pus on the surface of the skin, beneath which liquid debris may accumulate. Crusts frequently result from broken vesicles, bullae, or pustules.



Lichenifications (such as in *chronic dermatitis*) are palpably thickened areas of epidermis with accentuated skin markings. They are caused by chronic rubbing and scratching.



Fissures (such as in *athlete's foot*) are linear cracks in the epidermis, which often extend into the dermis.



Atrophy (such as *striae* [stretch marks] and *aged skin*) is characterized by thinning of the skin surface with loss of skin markings. The skin is translucent and paper-like. Atrophy involving the dermal layer results in skin depression.

FIG. 26-13, cont'd Classification of skin lesions.

TABLE 26-3 TERMS COMMONLY USED TO DESCRIBE SKIN LESION CONFIGURATIONS

annular	Ringlike with raised borders around flat, clear centers of normal skin
circinate	Circular
circumscribed	Well-defined with sharp borders
clustered	Several lesions grouped together
coalesced	Lesions that merge with one another and appear confluent
diffuse	Widespread, involving most of the body with intervening areas of normal skin; generalized
linear	Occurring in a straight line
serpiginous	With wavy borders, resembling a snake
universal	All areas of the body involved, with no areas of normal-appearing skin

A patient who has a lesion with one or more of the ABCDE features should be evaluated by a dermatologist or surgeon. Teach patients these signs, and encourage them to perform total skin self-examination (TSSE) on a monthly basis (American Cancer Society, 2011).

In describing the location of lesions, determine whether they are generalized or localized. If the lesions are localized, identify the specific body areas involved. This information is important because some diseases have a specific pattern of skin lesions. Involvement of only the sun-exposed areas of the body is important information when considering possible causes. Rashes limited to the skinfold areas (e.g., on the axillae, beneath the breasts, in the groin) may reflect problems related to friction, heat, and excessive moisture.

Edema causes the skin to appear shiny, **taut** (tightly stretched), and paler than uninvolved skin. During skin inspection, document the location, distribution, and color of areas of edema.

Skin elasticity is also affected by edema. Using moderate pressure, place the tip of the index finger against edematous tissue to determine the degree of indentation, or pitting (see Chapter 13).

Moisture content is assessed by noting the thickness and consistency of secretions. Normally, increased moisture in the form of sweat occurs with increased activity or elevated environmental temperatures. Dampness of skinfold areas occurs as a result of decreased air circulation where the skin surfaces touch. Excess moisture can cause skin breakdown in bedridden and debilitated patients.

Overly dry skin can be caused by factors such as a dry environment, poor skin lubrication, inadequate fluid intake, and the normal processes of aging. Dry skin usually has scaling of the outer surface. Dry skin may be especially marked in areas of limited circulation, such as the feet and lower legs. It is a problem for most adults during the winter months when the air contains less moisture, living in geographic areas with little humidity, and in the hospital environment where humidity is often low.

Vascular changes or markings are classified as normal or abnormal, depending on the cause. Normal vascular markings include birthmarks, cherry angiomas (see Fig. 26-11), spider angiomas, and venous stars. Bleeding into the tissue is abnormal and results in **purpuric lesions** (bleeding under the skin that may progress from red to purple to brownish yellow), petechiae, and ecchymosis.



FIG. 26-14 Petechiae.

Petechiae are small, reddish purple lesions (<0.5 mm in diameter) that do not fade or blanch when pressure is applied (Fig. 26-14). They often indicate increased capillary fragility. Petechiae of the lower extremities often occur with stasis dermatitis, a condition usually seen in patients who have chronic venous insufficiency.

Ecchymoses (bruises) are larger areas of hemorrhage that range in size from several millimeters to many centimeters. In older adults, bruising is common after minor trauma to the skin, especially on sun-exposed areas of the body. Certain drugs (e.g., aspirin, warfarin, corticosteroids) and low platelet counts lead to easy or excessive bruising. Anticoagulants and decreased numbers of platelets disrupt clotting action, resulting in ecchymosis.

Integrity of the skin is assessed by first examining areas with actual breaks or open areas. For example, skin tears are a common finding in older people as a result of a flattening of the dermal-epidermal junction with aging (LeBlanc & Christensen, 2011). The thin, fragile skin is easily damaged by friction or shearing forces, especially if bruising is already present. Look for skin tears in these areas:

- Where constricting clothing rubs against the skin
- On the upper extremities, where the skin is grasped when assisting a patient to ambulate or change position
- Where adhesive tapes or dressings have been applied and removed

Check for the presence of multiple abrasions or early pressure-related skin changes. These findings may indicate previously unrecognized problems in mobility or sensory perception.

Describe breaks in skin integrity by their location, size, color, and distribution, as well as by the presence of drainage or any signs of infection. The evaluation of partial-thickness and full-thickness wounds, including objective criteria that describe progress toward healing, is discussed in Chapter 27.

Cleanliness of the skin is evaluated to gain information about self-care needs. Inspect the hair, nails, and skin closely for excessive soiling and offensive odor. Depending on a patient's degree of self-care deficit, hard-to-reach areas (e.g., perirectal and inguinal skinfolds, axillae, feet) may be less clean than other skin surface areas. Skin can be clean but

stained as a result of exposure to chemicals during work or leisure activities.

Patients who have cognitive problems may not pay attention to hygiene measures. Assess the cognition of any patient whose hygiene of the skin, hair, or nails appears inadequate.

Tattoos and piercings can cause or mask skin problems and should be carefully examined. Bruises and rashes can occur in tattooed areas but may be difficult to see. Examine newly pierced areas for signs of inflammation or infection. Scars may be present in old tattoos or pierced areas and should be documented. Closely examine any areas where tattoos have been removed. Skin cancer is more likely to occur in these areas.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

During skin inspection the nurse observes three lesions on the client's right knee. The lesions are round, have a raised border, and are grouped in a "smiley face" pattern. Which descriptors does the nurse use to document these observations?

- A. Annular, circinate, clustered
- B. Linear, confluent, vesicular
- C. Circumscribed, universal, pustular
- D. Serpiginous, coalesced, wheal-like

Palpation

Skin inspection alone can be misleading, especially in areas of color changes, tattoos, and piercings. Use palpation to gather additional information about skin lesions, moisture, temperature, texture, and turgor (Table 26-4). Wash hands thoroughly before and after palpating a patient's skin. Use gloves to examine nonintact skin, and use Standard Precautions when skin areas are draining.

Palpation confirms the size of the lesions and determines whether they are flat or slightly raised. The consistency of larger lesions can vary from soft and pliable to firm and solid. Subtle changes, such as the difference between a fine **macular** (flat) rash and a **papular** (raised) rash, may best be determined by palpating with your eyes closed. Ask the patient whether he or she has pain or tenderness during palpation of the skin.

In areas of excess dryness, rub your finger against the skin surface to determine the degree of flaking or scaling. Both generalized and localized changes in skin temperature can be detected by placing the back of a hand on the skin surface. Before assessing for changes in skin temperature, make certain to have warm hands. Cold hands interfere with accurate assessment and are uncomfortable for the patient.

Palpate skin surfaces to assess texture, which differs according to body region and exposure to environmental irritants. For example, areas of long-term sun exposure have a rougher texture than that of protected skin surfaces. The patient whose occupation requires repeated exposure to harsh soaps or chemicals may show skin changes related to this exposure. Increased skin thickness from scarring, lichenification, or edema usually decreases elasticity.

Turgor indicates the amount of skin elasticity. Skin turgor can be altered by a number of factors, including water content and aging. Gently pinch the patient's skin between your thumb and forefinger, and then release. If skin turgor is normal, the skin immediately returns to its original state

when released. Poor skin turgor is evidenced by "tenting" of the skin, with a gradual return to the original state (see Chapter 13). Normal loss of elasticity with aging makes the assessment of skin turgor difficult in an older patient.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To avoid mistaking dehydration for dry skin in an older adult, always assess skin turgor on the forehead or chest, and also assess for other indicators of dehydration.

Hair Assessment

During the skin assessment, inspect and palpate the hair for general appearance, cleanliness, distribution, quantity, and quality. Hair is normally found in an even distribution over most of the body surfaces, with the hair on the scalp, in the pubic region, and in the axillary folds thicker and coarser than hair on the trunk, arms, and legs. Although color and growth patterns vary, sudden or marked changes in hair characteristics may reflect an underlying disease process. As with skin changes, check any abnormal findings by obtaining a detailed history of the circumstances surrounding any change.

How well the hair is groomed, including the cleanliness of areas of thicker hair growth, can confirm information already gathered about a patient's social history and health care needs. If the patient has intense itching or scratches continually, examine the scalp and pubis for lice and **nits** (lice eggs). Inspect the scalp for scaling, redness, open areas, crusting, and tenderness.

Dandruff, a collection of patchy or diffuse white or gray scales on the surface of the scalp, is common. The flaking that occurs with dandruff causes many people to mistakenly think the scalp is too dry; however, it is a problem of excessive oil production. Dandruff is mainly a cosmetic problem, but a very oily scalp can induce inflammatory changes with redness and itching. Severe inflammatory dandruff can extend to the eyebrows and the skin of the face and neck. *If severe dandruff is not treated, hair loss can occur.* Teach the patient that dandruff is not caused by dryness and should be treated to prevent hair loss.

Although gradual hair loss occurs with aging, sudden asymmetric or patchy hair loss at any age is of concern. Assess the scalp for distribution and thickness of the hair, and document variations. Body hair loss, especially on the feet or lower legs, may occur as a result of circulatory problems and decreased blood flow to the area.

Hirsutism is excessive growth of body hair or hair growth in abnormal body areas. Increased hair growth across the face and chest in women is a sign of hirsutism. It may occur on the face of a woman as part of aging, is one manifestation of hormonal imbalance, and can also occur as a side effect of drug therapy. If hirsutism is present, look for changes in fat distribution and capillary fragility, which can occur in Cushing's disease, and for clitoral enlargement and deepening of the voice, which may indicate ovarian dysfunction.

Nail Assessment

Dystrophic (abnormal-appearing) nails may occur with a serious systemic illness or local skin disease involving the epidermal keratinocytes. Assess the fingernails and toenails for color, shape, thickness, texture, and the presence of lesions.

TABLE 26-4 COMMON CLINICAL FINDINGS IN SKIN PALPATION

CLINICAL FINDINGS	CAUSE	LOCATION	EXAMPLES OF PREDISPOSING CONDITIONS
Edema			
Localized	Inflammatory response	Area of injury or involvement	Trauma
Dependent or pitting	Fluid and electrolyte imbalance Venous and cardiac insufficiency	Ambulatory: dorsum of foot and medial ankle Bedridden: buttocks, sacrum, and lower back	Congestive heart failure Kidney disease Liver cirrhosis Venous thrombosis or stasis
Nonpitting	Endocrine imbalance	Generalized, but more easily seen over the tibia	Hypothyroidism (myxedema)
Moisture			
Increased	Autonomic nervous system stimulation	Face, axillae, skinfolds, palms, and soles	Fever, anxiety, activity Hyperthyroidism
Decreased	Dehydration Endocrine imbalance	Buccal mucous membranes with progressive involvement of other skin surfaces	Fluid loss Postmenopausal status Hypothyroidism Normal aging
Temperature			
Increased	Increased blood flow to the skin	Generalized Localized	Fever, hypermetabolic states Neurotrauma Inflammation
Decreased	Decreased blood flow to the skin	Generalized Localized	Impending shock, sepsis, anxiety Hypothyroidism Interference with vascular flow
Turgor			
Decreased	Decreased elasticity of the dermis (tenting when pinched)	Abdomen, forehead, or radial aspect of the wrist	Severe dehydration Sudden, severe weight loss Normal aging
Texture			
Roughness or thickness	Irritation, friction Sun damage Excessive collagen production	Pressure points (e.g., soles, palms, elbows) Localized areas of pruritus Areas of sun exposure Localized or generalized	Calluses Chronic eczema Atopic skin diseases Normal aging Scleroderma Scars and keloids
Softness or smoothness	Endocrine disturbances	Generalized	Hyperthyroidism

Many variations in color, texture, and grooming of the nails are influenced by factors unrelated to disease, such as occupation. When assessing the older adult, observe for minor variations associated with the aging process (see Fig. 26-12), such as a gradual thickening of the nail plate, the presence of longitudinal ridges, or a yellowish gray discoloration.

Color of the nail plate depends on nail thickness and transparency, amount of red blood cells, arterial blood flow, and pigment deposits (Table 26-5). Fig. 26-15 shows normal variations in nail color. Changes in color can be caused by chemical damage that occurs with some occupations and with the long-term use of nail polish. Regardless of skin color, the healthy nail blanches (lightens) with pressure.

During examination, the patient's fingers and toes should be free of any surface pressure that interferes with local blood flow or alters the appearance of the digits. To differentiate between color changes from the underlying vascular supply and those resulting from pigment deposition, blanch the nail bed to see whether the color changes with pressure. Do this by gently squeezing the end of the finger or toe, exerting

downward pressure on the nail bed, and then releasing the pressure. Color caused by vascular alterations changes as pressure is applied and returns to the original state when pressure is released. Color caused by pigment deposition remains unchanged.

Nail shape changes may be related to systemic disease. For example, fingernail clubbing occurs with impaired gas exchange. (See Fig. 32-12 in Chapter 32.)

Assess nail shape by examining the curve of the nail plate and surrounding soft tissue from all angles. Palpate the fingertips to define areas of sponginess, tenderness, or edema. Table 26-6 describes common variations in nail shape.

Thickness of the nail plate can vary with age, trauma, chronic dermatologic disease, or decreased arterial blood flow. In older patients, look for a "heaped-up" appearance of the toenails, which may occur with fungal infection (*onychomycosis*).

Consistency of the nail is described as hard, soft, or brittle. Nail plates may become hard, with increased thickening. A warm-water soak or lubrication with petroleum jelly is required to soften the nail plates before they can be trimmed.



FIG. 26-15 A, Diffuse nail pigmentation. B, Linear nail pigmentation.

Soft nail plates, which are thin and bend easily with pressure, are associated with malnutrition, chronic arthritis, myxedema, and peripheral neuritis.

Brittle nails can split, as in the patient with onychomycosis or advanced psoriasis of the fingers or toes. Splitting of the nail plate is also caused by repeated exposure to water and detergents, which damage the plate over time.

Lesions can occur around, on, within, or under the nail. Separation of the nail plate from the nail bed (*onycholysis*) creates an air pocket beneath the nail plate. The pocket first appears as a grayish white opacity. The color may change as dirt and keratin collect in the pocket, and the area begins to have a bad odor. This problem is common with fungal infections and after trauma. Separation of the nail plate may also occur with psoriasis or with prolonged chemical contact.

Inspect the soft-tissue folds around the nail plate for redness, heat, swelling, and tenderness. **Acute paronychia** (inflammation of the skin around the nail) often occurs with a torn cuticle or an ingrown toenail. If it occurs in an immunosuppressed patient, a staphylococcal infection is probable.

Chronic paronychia is more common and is an inflammation that persists for months. People at risk for chronic paronychia are men and women with frequent exposure to water, such as homemakers, bartenders, laundry workers, and nurses.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Pallor, erythema, cyanosis, and other color changes reflective of the physical state are less visible in patients with naturally dark skin tones. Although physiologic processes are the same for both light-skinned and dark-skinned patients, the amount of skin pigmentation greatly alters how the skin appears in response to physiologic alterations. Consequently, assessment skills to detect the more subtle color changes are needed. Become familiar with the normal appearance of a dark-skinned patient's mucous membranes, nail beds, and skin tone so that variations from baseline can be identified. [Chart 26-3](#) lists specific assessment techniques for skin manifestations of health problems in people with dark skin (Gaskin, 1986).

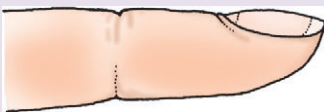
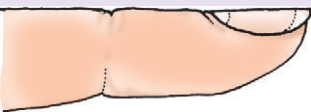
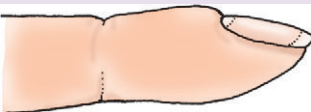
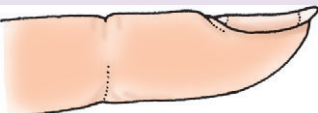
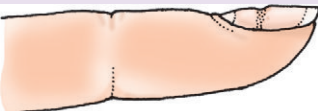
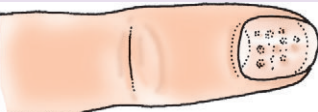
Skin Assessment Techniques for Patients with Darker Skin

Pallor can be detected in people with dark skin by first inspecting the mucous membranes for an ash-gray color. If the lips and the nail beds are not heavily pigmented, they

TABLE 26-5 COMMON ALTERATIONS IN NAIL COLOR

ALTERATION	CLINICAL FINDINGS	SIGNIFICANCE
White	Horizontal white banding or areas of opacity Generalized pallor of nail beds	Chronic liver or kidney disease (hypoalbuminemia) Shock Anemia Early arteriosclerotic changes (toenails) Myocardial infarction
Yellow-brown	Diffuse yellow to brown discoloration Vertical brown banding extending from the proximal nail fold distally	Jaundice Peripheral lymphedema Bacterial or fungal infections of the nail Psoriasis Diabetes Cardiac failure Staining from tobacco, nail polish, or dyes Long-term tetracycline therapy Normal aging (yellow-gray color) Normal finding in dark-skinned patients Nevus or melanoma of nail matrix in light-skinned patients
Red	Thin, dark red vertical lines 1-3 mm long (splinter hemorrhages) Red discoloration of the lunula Dark red nail beds	Bacterial endocarditis Trichinosis Trauma to the nail bed Normal finding in some patients Cardiac insufficiency Polycythemia vera
Blue	Diffuse blue discoloration that blanches with pressure	Respiratory failure Methemoglobinuria Venous stasis disease (toenails)

TABLE 26-6 COMMON VARIATIONS IN NAIL SHAPE

NAIL SHAPE	CLINICAL FINDINGS		SIGNIFICANCE
Normal	Angle of 160 degrees between the nail plate and the proximal nail fold Nail surface slightly convex Nail base firm when palpated		Normal finding
Clubbing			
Early clubbing	Straightening of angle between the nail plate and the proximal nail fold to 180 degrees Nail base spongy when palpated		Hypoxia Lung cancer
Late clubbing	Angle between the nail plate and the proximal nail fold exceeds 180 degrees Nail base visibly edematous and spongy when palpated Enlargement of the soft tissue of the fingertips gives a "drumstick" appearance when viewed from above		Prolonged hypoxia Emphysema Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease Advanced lung cancer Cystic fibrosis Chronic heart disease
Spoon nails (koilonychia)			
Early koilonychia	Flattening of the nail plate with an increased smoothness of the nail surface		Iron deficiency (with or without anemia) Poorly controlled diabetes >15 yr in duration Local injury
Late koilonychia	Concave curvature of the nail plate		Psoriasis Chemical irritants Developmental abnormality
Beau's grooves	1-mm wide horizontal depressions in the nail plates caused by growth arrest (involves all nails)		Acute, severe illness Prolonged febrile state Isolated periods of severe malnutrition
Pitting	Small, multiple pits in the nail plate May be associated with plate thickening and onycholysis Most often involves the fingernails (several or all)		Psoriasis Alopecia areata

appear paler than normal for that patient. Use good lighting to assess for the absence of the underlying red tones that normally give heavily pigmented skin a healthy glow. With generalized decreased blood flow to the skin, brown skin appears yellow-brown and very dark brown skin is ash gray.

Cyanosis can be present when gas exchange is impaired. Examine the lips, tongue, nail beds, conjunctivae, and palms and soles for subtle color changes. In a patient with cyanosis, the lips and tongue are gray and the palms, soles, conjunctivae, and nail beds have a bluish tinge. To support these findings, assess for other indicators of hypoxia, including tachycardia, hypotension, changes in respiratory rate, decreased breath sounds, and changes in cognition.

Inflammation in dark-skinned patients appears as excessive warmth and changes in skin consistency or texture. Use the back of your hand to palpate areas of suspected inflammation for the increased warmth that occurs when blood flow to the skin increases. With the fingertips, palpate for hardened areas deep in the tissue, which may give the skin a "woody" feeling. Inflamed skin is tender and edematous. If edema is extensive, the skin is taut and shiny.

Skin areas where inflammation has recently resolved appear darker than the normal skin tone. This change is due

to stimulation of the melanocytes during the inflammatory process and to the increased pigment production that continues after inflammation subsides. More extensive injury to the skin with destruction of melanocytes (e.g., deep ulcer, full-thickness burn) may heal with color changes that are lighter than the normal skin tone. Unlike acute changes, chronic inflammatory changes are not tender. If scar tissue is present, the skin may feel less supple, especially over the joints. If chronic inflammatory changes are suspected, ask the patient about a history of skin problems in that area of the body.

Jaundice in a patient with dark skin is best assessed by inspecting the oral mucosa, especially the hard palate, for yellow discoloration. Inspection of the conjunctivae and adjacent sclera may be misleading because normal deposits of fat produce a yellowish hue that is visible in contrast to the dark skin around the eyes. Examine the sclera closest to the cornea for a more accurate determination of jaundice. The palms and soles of dark-skinned patients may appear yellow if they are calloused; a callus should not be mistaken for jaundice.

Skin bleeding with purpuric lesions may not be visible in areas of deep pigmentation. Areas of ecchymoses appear

CHART 26-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing Changes in Dark Skin

Cyanosis

- Examine lips and tongue for gray color.
- Examine nail beds, palms, and soles for blue tinge.
- Examine conjunctiva for pallor.

Inflammation

- Compare affected area with nonaffected area for increased warmth.
- Examine the skin of the affected area to determine whether it is shiny or taut or pits with pressure.
- Compare the skin color of affected area with the same area on the opposite side of the body.
- Palpate the affected area and compare it with unaffected area to determine whether texture is different (affected area may feel hard or “woody”).

Jaundice

- Check for yellow tinge to oral mucous membranes, especially the hard palate.
- Examine the sclera nearest to the iris rather than the corners of the eye.

Bleeding

- Compare the affected area with the same area on the unaffected body side for swelling or skin darkening.
- If the patient has thrombocytopenia, petechiae may be present on the oral mucosa or conjunctiva.

darker than normal skin; they may be tender and easily palpable, depending on whether hematoma is present. In most cases, the patient relates a history of trauma to the area that confirms the assessment. Petechiae are rarely visible in dark skin and may be seen only in the oral mucosa and conjunctiva.

Psychosocial Assessment

Skin changes, especially when the face, hair, and hands are involved, often affect a person's body image. Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings about a change in body image or appearance. Assess his or her body language for clues indicating a disturbance in self-concept. For example, the avoidance of eye contact or the use of garments to cover the affected areas communicates concern about physical appearance. Patients with chronic skin diseases often relate a history of social isolation related to a fear of rejection by others or a belief that the skin problem is contagious.

Skin changes linked to poor hygiene are common in uneducated patients, among homeless people, and among those who have reduced cognitive functioning or mental illness. Assess the patient's overall appearance for excessive soiling, matted hair, body odor, or other self-care deficits. Confirm unsanitary living conditions by obtaining a social history. Patients may relate similar skin problems among family members, friends, and sexual contacts.

If skin problems related to poor hygiene are identified in older patients, also evaluate any physical limitations that might contribute to poor health maintenance. For example, visual or mobility problems can make it difficult for them to see or reach skin surfaces to clean them.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

The patient is a 43-year-old Middle-Eastern woman who is being seen because of a rough, raised area on the skin of her forehead. The area is a darker brown than her skin and has an irregular shape. She tells you this has been on her face for about 18 months and she wants it removed. In addition, you observe a very dark, 2 by 4 centimeter, slightly raised, irregularly shaped lesion near her upper lip to the right of her nose. When you look at it more closely, you can see that one edge of it spreads as a flat color change into the surrounding skin. When you ask her how long this area has been present, she tells you that she was born with this beauty mark and it is not what she wants evaluated or removed.

1. Does the forehead lesion have any concerning features? If so, which ones?
2. Does the lip lesion have any concerning features? If so, which ones?
3. What other assessment data regarding either lesion should you obtain?
4. Because the patient has dismissed issues about the lip lesion, should you pursue further evaluation of it? Provide a rationale for your response.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

When a fungal, bacterial, or viral pathogen is suspected as the cause of certain skin changes, confirmation by microscopic examination is necessary. *Always wear gloves (use Standard Precautions) when examining skin that is not intact.*

Cultures for fungal infection are obtained when superficial fungal infections are suspected. Using a tongue blade, gently scrape scales from skin lesions into a clean container and send it to the laboratory. Collect fingernail clippings and hair in a similar manner. Waiting for culture results can delay treatment of a superficial fungal infection. For this reason, the specimen is also treated with a potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparation and examined microscopically. Fungal infections show branched hyphae when viewed under a microscope after treatment with KOH. A positive KOH test often eliminates the need for a culture.

For deeper fungal infections, a piece of tissue is obtained for culture. The physician obtains the specimen by punch biopsy (see p. 468 in the *Skin Biopsy* section). When a specimen is needed for cell analysis and special fungal stains, either two specimens are obtained or one specimen is divided before being sent to the laboratory.

Cultures for bacterial infection are obtained from intact primary lesions (bullae, vesicles, or pustules), if possible. Express material from the lesion, collect it with a cotton-tipped applicator, and place the material in a bacterial culture medium specified by the laboratory. For intact lesions, **unroofing** (lifting or puncturing of the outer surface) may be needed using a sterile small-gauge needle before the material can be easily expressed. If crusts are present, remove the crusts with normal saline and swab the underlying exudate.

A biopsy of deep bacterial infections may be required to obtain a specimen for culture. If bacterial cellulitis is suspected, the physician or advanced practice nurse can inject nonbacteriostatic saline deep into the tissue and then aspirate it back; the aspirant is sent for culture.

Cultures for viral infection are indicated if a herpes virus infection is suspected. A cotton-tipped applicator is used to

obtain vesicle fluid from intact lesions. Unlike bacterial and fungal specimens, which can remain at room temperature until being transported to the laboratory, viral culture tubes are placed on ice immediately after specimens are obtained and are transported to the laboratory as soon as possible.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Other tests for diagnosis of skin problems include biopsy, special noninvasive examination techniques, and skin testing for allergy (discussed in Chapter 22).

Skin Biopsy. A small piece of skin tissue may be obtained for diagnosis or to assess the effectiveness of an intervention. Check with the physician to determine the number, location, and type of skin biopsies to be performed. Depending on the size, depth, and location of the skin changes, the physician may perform a punch biopsy, shave biopsy, or scalpel excision (excisional biopsy).

Punch biopsy is the most common technique. A small circular cutting instrument, or “punch,” ranging in diameter from 2 to 6 mm, is used. After the site is injected with a local anesthetic, a small plug of tissue is cut and removed. The site may be closed with one or two sutures if it is on the face or leg. Some physicians allow the biopsy site to heal without suturing.

Shave biopsies remove only the portion of the skin elevated above the surrounding tissue when injected with a local anesthetic. A scalpel or razor blade is moved parallel to the skin surface to remove the tissue specimen. Shave biopsies are usually indicated for superficial or raised lesions. Suturing is not needed.

Excisional biopsy is rarely used for skin problems. When needed, larger or deeper specimens are obtained by excision with a scalpel. Deep incisions are made and then sutured after the specimen is removed. Unlike punch and shave biopsies, excisional biopsies involve more discomfort for the patient while the site is healing.

Patient Preparation. Explain to the patient what to expect. Emphasize that a biopsy is a minor procedure with few, if any, complications. If a punch or shave biopsy is planned, reassure him or her that scarring is minimal because of the small size of the tissue removed. If an excisional biopsy is planned, tell the patient that a scar similar to that of a healed surgical incision will result.

Procedure. Establish a sterile field, and assemble all needed supplies and instruments. Local anesthesia is provided by local infiltration using a small-gauge (25-gauge) needle to reduce discomfort during injection. Although preparation of the biopsy site differs according to the physician’s preference, the skin is simply wiped with alcohol in most cases.

The most uncomfortable time for the patient is during the injection of a local anesthetic agent, which produces a burning

or stinging sensation. Reassure him or her that the discomfort will subside as the anesthetic takes effect. Talking the patient through the procedure with a quiet voice, in combination with a gentle touch, may have a calming effect.

After removal, tissue specimens for pathologic study are placed in 10% formalin for fixation. Specimens for culture are placed in sterile saline solution. Bleeding of the biopsy site may be controlled by applying localized pressure or a topical hemostatic agent. If topical treatment does not stop the bleeding, suturing may be used.

Follow-up Care. After bleeding is under control and any sutures have been placed, the site is covered with an adhesive bandage or a dry gauze dressing. Instruct the patient to keep the dressing dry and in place for at least 8 hours. Teach him or her to clean the site daily after the dressing is removed. Tap water or saline can be used to remove any dried blood or crusts. An antibiotic ointment may be prescribed to reduce the risk for infection. The biopsy site may be left open unless a covering is preferred for cosmetic reasons or because the site is an area often soiled. Instruct the patient to report any redness or excessive drainage. Sutures are usually removed 7 to 10 days after biopsy.

Wood’s Light Examination. A handheld, long-wavelength ultraviolet (black) light or Wood’s light is sometimes used during physical examination. Exposure of some skin infections with this light produces a specific color, such as blue-green or red, that can be used to identify the infection. Hypopigmented skin is more prominent when it is viewed under black light, which makes evaluation of pigment changes in light-skinned patients easier. This examination is always carried out in a darkened room and does not cause discomfort.

Diascopy. Diascopy is a painless technique that eliminates erythema caused by increased blood flow to the skin, thereby easing the inspection of skin lesions. A glass slide or lens is pressed down over the area to be examined, blanching the skin and revealing the shape of the lesions.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which technique for obtaining a specimen for bacterial culture is most correct for the nurse to use with a client who has crusted skin lesions on the upper back?

- A. Remove several crusts, and swab the underlying exudate.
- B. Dampen the culture swab with sterile water, and then roll the swab over the central crusts.
- C. Apply a gauze bandage to the area, remove it after 1 hour, and send the entire gauze to the laboratory.
- D. Clean the area with an antibacterial solution, remove a crust from the center of the cluster of lesions, and send it to the laboratory.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to notice in a patient with adequate body protection related to skin function?

Vital signs

- Body temperature within normal range

Physical assessment

- Skin intact (no rashes, abnormal lesions, open areas, or drainage)
- Skin color normal (no cyanosis, pallor, jaundice, inflammation, or areas of uneven pigmentation)

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Skin texture and turgor normal (no edema, tenting, flaking, scaling, excessive oiliness, or excessive thickening)
- Oral mucous membranes moist and pink
- Nail beds pink with good capillary refill
- Fingertips and nails normal-shaped (no clubbing, nail splitting, nail separation, or increased nail thickness)
- Body hair distributed evenly over the body, no patchy areas of hair loss
- Scalp free from dandruff, no itching

Psychological assessment

- Patient's eye contact good
- No unusual "hiding" of body areas normally visible in public
- Skin, hair, and nails clean and free of odor

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assist all patients with limited mobility to change positions at least every 2 hours.
- Wash your hands before and after touching any skin lesions.
- Use Standard Precautions when providing care to a patient who has areas of nonintact skin or skin with an abnormal appearance.
- Use lift sheets when moving patients with fragile skin.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all patients to reduce sun exposure and exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light.
- Teach patients to examine all skin areas on a monthly basis for new lesions and changes to existing lesions.
- Encourage all patients to bathe, shampoo the hair, and keep fingernails clean and trimmed.

- Teach all patients the ABCDE method of evaluating a lesion for melanoma.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express concerns about a change in body image that results from changes in the skin, hair, or nails.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Check the cognitive function of any patient whose hygiene of the skin, hair, and nails appears inadequate.

Physiological Integrity

- Document any known specific allergies that have skin manifestations.
- Keep patients' skinfold areas clean and dry.
- Position patients who are confined to bed in a way that promotes air circulation to skinfold areas.
- Ask any patient who has started taking a newly prescribed or over-the-counter drug whether he or she has noticed any skin changes that occurred since starting the drug.

CHAPTER

27

Care of Patients with Skin Problems

Janice Cuzzell and M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Pressure Ulcer
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Use principles of infection control to prevent transmission when caring for a patient with a skin infection.
2. Supervise skin care delegated to licensed practical nurses/licensed vocational nurses (LPNs/LVNs) or unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP).
3. Teach the patient with mobility problems and his or her caregivers how to reduce and relieve skin pressure in the home environment.
4. Ensure that the skin of incontinent patients is kept clean and dry.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Use appropriate risk assessment tools to perform a focused skin assessment and re-assessment to determine risk for pressure ulcer development and adequacy of the skin's protective functions.
6. Teach all people how to perform thorough skin self-examination (TSSE) to monitor for skin cancer.
7. Teach all people ways to reduce risk for skin cancer.
8. Instruct the patient with a skin infection and his or her caregivers how to avoid spreading the infection.
9. Assess the ability of the patient with a skin problem to see and reach the affected area and care for the problem.

Psychosocial Integrity

10. Assess the patient's and family's feelings about a chronic skin condition or visible scar.
11. Support the patient and family in coping with changes in skin integrity and in body image.
12. Encourage the patient with a visible wound or other skin problem to participate in the care of the wound.

Physiological Integrity

13. Compare wound healing by first, second, and third intention.
14. Evaluate wounds for size, depth, presence of infection, and indications of healing.
15. Differentiate the manifestations for these pressure ulcer categories: stage 1 through stage 4, unstageable ulcers, and suspected deep tissue injury.
16. Coordinate with the health care team to plan an individualized strategy for pressure ulcer prevention for a specific patient at increased risk.
17. Identify the key features of psoriasis.
18. Coordinate nursing interventions for care of the patient with psoriasis in the community.
19. Identify key features of melanoma and other skin cancers.

As discussed in Chapter 26, the skin plays an important role in *protection*. Like the wall surrounding a castle, it provides a strong barrier, in this case to invasion by harmful microorganisms.

Skin problems are common, especially among older adults. Changes in structural integrity reduce the skin's protective function to some degree, and the cause of the problem is often difficult to determine. In addition to its primary functions, the skin also reflects underlying medical conditions. Thus problems may truly arise in the skin, or they may be a symptom of a systemic disease or injury.

Drugs and other interventions for any health problem can trigger a skin response or reaction. Skin problems can interfere with the medical or surgical treatment of other conditions. Age-related changes and problems caused by immobility, chronic disease, debility, and change in immune function increase the older patient's risk for skin damage.

MINOR SKIN IRRITATIONS

DRYNESS

Pathophysiology

Dry skin (**xerosis**) is a common problem, especially in older patients. It is seen as a fine flaking of the stratum corneum (outermost skin layer). The problem is usually worse on the lower legs where blood flow is poorer. Generalized pruritus (itching) often occurs with dry skin. In patients with chronic skin conditions, unrelieved itching causes the patient to scratch and rub the skin in an attempt to relieve the intense itching. These actions may result in secondary skin lesions, excoriations, **lichenification** (thickening), and infection.

Xerosis is worse in areas with dry climates and higher altitudes, such as in the southwestern part of the United States. Central heating and air-conditioning reduce the humidity in the air and increase skin dryness. Wind, cold, and sunlight also worsen the problem. Frequent bathing with harsh soap and hot water further dries the skin, especially if moisturizers are not applied immediately after bathing when skin is damp.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Nursing interventions focus on teaching the patient and family how to maintain healthy skin, rehydrate the outer skin layers, and relieve itching. Chart 27-1 lists practical ways to avoid overdrying the skin. Remind the patient that bathing with moisturizing soaps, oils, and lotions may reduce dryness. Some soaps and body washes, especially those described as "antimicrobial" and those with perfumes and other scents, may make dry skin worse. Limiting the use of soap to soiled or skinfold areas can also reduce dryness. A 20-minute soak in a warm bath, followed by application of an emollient cream or lotion, will help rehydrate the skin and reduce itching. If the patient cannot take a tub bath, teach him or her to wrap the trunk and extremities in warm, moist towels covered by plastic sheeting or a clean garbage bag for 15 to 20 minutes before applying moisturizers. Skin creams or lotions are more effective when applied to slightly damp skin within 2 to 3 minutes after bathing.

CHART 27-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Dry Skin

- Use a room humidifier during the winter months or whenever the furnace is in use.
- Take a complete bath or shower only every other day (wash face, axillae, perineum, and any soiled areas with soap daily).
- Use tepid water.
- Use a superfatted, nonalkaline soap instead of deodorant soap.
- Rinse the soap thoroughly from your skin.
- If you like bath oil, add the oil to the water at the end of the bath.
- Take care to avoid falls; oil makes the tub slippery.
- Pat rather than rub skin surfaces dry.
- Avoid clothing that continuously rubs the skin, such as tight belts, nylon stockings, or pantyhose.
- Maintain a daily fluid intake of 3000 mL unless contraindicated for another medical condition.
- Do not apply rubbing alcohol, astringents, or other drying agents to the skin.
- Avoid caffeine and alcohol ingestion.

Inform patients that, contrary to popular belief, the cream or lotion is *not* what makes the skin soft and supple. Water is the agent that softens the outer skin layers. Lubricating creams and lotions seal in the moisture provided by water, promoting suppleness and preventing flaking. Some skin lotions are **hydrophilic** (water seeking) and actually draw moisture from the skin, making the dryness worse if they are not applied directly to damp skin.

PRURITUS

Pathophysiology

Pruritus (itching) is a distressing symptom that may or may not occur with skin disease. It is caused by stimulation of itch-specific nerve fibers at the dermal-epidermal junction. Physical or chemical agents either act directly on these nerve fibers or activate chemical mediators, such as histamine, which then act on the itch receptors.

Itching is a subjective symptom similar to pain. Thus the sensation varies among patients in location and severity. Regardless of the underlying cause, patients usually report that itching is worse at night when there are fewer distractions. Other conditions that make itching worse include poor skin hydration, increased skin temperature, perspiration, and emotional stress.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The priority nursing interventions focus on increasing patient comfort and preventing skin injury. Patients usually try to relieve itching by scratching or rubbing the skin, a response that further stimulates the itch receptors and causes a pattern referred to as the "**itch-scratch-itch**" cycle. When itching occurs as a symptom of skin lesions, relief can usually be obtained by treatment of the underlying skin disorder with topical or systemic drugs. Systemic diseases, such as liver and venous disorders, can also cause itching without skin lesions. Liver disease often increases the buildup of bilirubin in the

skin, which stimulates itch receptors. Pruritus can also be associated with too little or too much blood flow to an area (especially the feet and legs).

Plan care to promote comfort and prevent disruption of skin integrity that can result from vigorous scratching. Because dry skin worsens itching, emphasize proper bathing and skin moisturizing techniques (see [Chart 27-1](#)). Encourage patients to keep the fingernails trimmed short, with rough edges filed to reduce skin damage from scratching and to prevent secondary infection. Tell patients that wearing mittens or splints at night can help prevent inadvertent scratching during sleep. If the patient cannot perform self-care, teach the family (for home care) and unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to trim the patient's fingernails and apply mittens or gloves. As always, be sure to stress the importance of not breaking the skin or digging into nail corners when trimming the nails of patients with diabetes.

A cool sleeping environment along with comfort measures such as a cool shower and application of moisturizers may help promote sleep. Additional measures such as using sleep-promoting herbal teas or sedating antihistamines at bedtime (when the side effect of drowsiness is welcome) may provide an uninterrupted night's sleep. Therapeutic baths with colloidal oatmeal preparations or tar extracts may also provide temporary relief.

If antihistamines are prescribed, closely monitor the patient's response to therapy so that the dosage can be adjusted as needed. The anti-inflammatory properties of topical steroid preparations and other topical agents are increased if the drug is applied to slightly damp skin.

Using topical drugs under an occlusive dressing increases the dose of anti-inflammatory being delivered. Avoid occluding treated areas unless specifically ordered by the health care provider.

SUNBURN

Sunburn is a first-degree or superficial burn and a very common skin injury. Excessive exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light injures the dermis, stimulating an inflammatory response that dilates the capillaries, leading to redness, tenderness, edema, and occasional blister formation. When large areas of the body are sunburned, systemic inflammatory symptoms, such as headache, nausea, and fever, may be produced.

Erythema (redness) and pain begin within a few hours after sunburn has occurred and increase in intensity for 1 to 2 days before subsiding. Management is directed toward promoting comfort and includes cool baths and soothing lotions, such as bland lubricants or refrigerated moisturizing lotions. Antibiotic ointments are used only if blistering of the skin causes infection. If pain is severe, topical corticosteroids and NSAIDs may reduce the inflammation temporarily.

URTICARIA

Urticaria (hives) is white or red edematous papules or plaques of various sizes. This problem is usually caused by exposure to allergens (different triggers for different people), which releases histamine in the dermal tissue. Blood vessel dilation and leakage of plasma proteins lead to formation of lesions or wheals. The exact cause is rarely identified although drugs, foods, infections, autoimmune diseases, cancer, and physical stimuli often trigger urticaria.

Management focuses on removal of the triggering substance and relief of symptoms. Because the skin reaction is caused by histamine release, antihistamines such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl) are helpful. Teach the patient to avoid overexertion, alcohol consumption, and warm environments (e.g., warm or hot showers), which contribute to blood vessel dilation and make the symptoms worse. In addition, alcohol may increase any sedating effect of antihistamines, increasing the risk for falls and other accidents.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A female business professional has extremely dry skin on her legs. In addition to using lotions after bathing, she asks the nurse about other measures to help reduce the dryness. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. "Wear long-legged pajamas to sleep in rather than nightgowns."
- B. "Avoid wearing pantyhose or nylon stockings for more than 2 hours at a time."
- C. "Leave the fat-containing soap on your skin when bathing rather than rinsing it off."
- D. "Bathe in water that is as warm as you can stand to stimulate the release of body oils from your sebaceous glands."

TRAUMA

Pathophysiology

Skin trauma can vary from an aseptic surgical incision to a grossly infected, draining pressure ulcer with deep tissue destruction. Injury to the skin starts a series of actions to repair the skin and re-establish this protective barrier.

Phases of Wound Healing

Wound healing occurs in three phases: the inflammatory (lag) phase, the proliferative (connective tissue repair) phase, and the maturation (remodeling) phase. [Table 27-1](#) lists the key events of normal wound healing. The length of each phase depends on the type of injury, the patient's overall health status, and whether the wound is healing by first, second, or third intention ([Fig. 27-1](#)).

A wound without tissue loss, such as a clean laceration or a surgical incision, can be closed with sutures or staples. The wound edges are brought together with the skin layers lined up in correct anatomic position (**approximated**) and held in place until healing is complete. This type of wound heals by **first intention** because closing the wound eliminates dead space, thereby shortening the three phases of tissue repair. Inflammation resolves quickly, and connective tissue repair is minimal, resulting in less remodeling and a thin scar.

Deeper tissue injuries or wounds with tissue loss, such as a chronic pressure ulcer or venous stasis ulcer, result in a cavity-like defect that requires gradual filling in of the dead space with connective tissue. This healing occurs by **second intention** and prolongs the repair process.

Wounds at high risk for infection, such as surgical incisions that enter a nonsterile body cavity or traumatic wounds that occur under unclean conditions, may be intentionally left open for several days. After **debris** (dead cells and tissues) and exudate have been removed (**debrided**) and inflammation has subsided, the wound is closed by first intention. This type of healing involves delayed primary closure (**third intention**) and results in a scar similar to that found in wounds

TABLE 27-1 NORMAL WOUND HEALING

Inflammatory Phase

- Begins at the time of injury or cell death and lasts 3 to 5 days.
- Immediate responses are vasoconstriction and clot formation.
- After 10 minutes, vasodilation with increased capillary permeability and leakage of plasma (and plasma proteins) into the surrounding tissue.
- Migration of white blood cells (especially macrophages) into the wound.
- Clinical manifestations of local edema, pain, erythema, and warmth.

Proliferative Phase

- Begins about the fourth day after injury and lasts 2 to 4 weeks.
- Fibrin strands form a scaffold or framework.
- Mitotic fibroblast cells migrate into the wound, attach to the framework, divide, and stimulate the secretion of collagen.
- Collagen, together with ground substance, builds tough and inflexible scar tissue.
- Capillaries in areas surrounding the wound form “buds” that grow into new blood vessels.
- Capillary buds and collagen deposits form the “granulation” tissue in the wound, and the wound contracts.
- Epithelial cells grow over the granulation tissue bed.

Maturation Phase

- Begins as early as 3 weeks after injury and may continue for a year.
- Collagen is reorganized to provide greater tensile strength.
- Scar tissue gradually becomes thinner and paler in color.
- The mature scar is firm and inelastic when palpated.

that heal by first intention. Healing can be impaired by many factors (Table 27-2).

Mechanisms of Wound Healing

When injury occurs, the body restores skin integrity through three processes: re-epithelialization, granulation, and wound contraction. The depth of injury and extent of tissue loss determine how and to what degree each of these processes contributes to wound healing.

Partial-Thickness Wounds. Partial-thickness wounds are more superficial, involving damage to the epidermis and upper layers of the dermis. These wounds heal by **re-epithelialization**, the production of new skin cells by undamaged epidermal cells in the basal layer of the dermis, which also lines the hair follicles and sweat glands (Fig. 27-2). Skin injury is followed immediately by local inflammation. The inflammatory response causes the formation of a fibrin clot and the release of growth factors that stimulate epidermal cell division (mitosis). New skin cells move into open spaces on the wound surface, where the fibrin clot acts as a frame or scaffold to guide cell movement. Regrowth across the open area (**resurfacing**) is only one cell layer thick at first. As healing continues, the cell layer thickens and stratifies (forms layers) to resemble normal skin. A healed wound re-establishes the protective barrier properties of the skin with keratin production.

In a healthy patient, healing of a partial-thickness wound by re-epithelialization takes about 5 to 7 days. This process occurs more rapidly in tissue that is hydrated, oxygenated, and has few microorganisms present.

Full-Thickness Wounds. In deep partial-thickness wounds and full-thickness wounds, damage extends into the

lower layers of the dermis and underlying subcutaneous tissue. As a result, most of the epithelial cells at the base of the wound have been destroyed. Thus re-epithelialization is not the major healing process for this type of wound. Removal of the damaged tissue results in a defect that must be filled with scar tissue (**granulation**) for healing to occur. During the proliferative phase of healing, new blood vessels form at the base of the wound and fibroblastic cells begin moving into the wound space. Fibroblasts deposit new collagen to replace the damaged tissue.

Some of these fibroblasts act like smooth muscle cells and begin to pull the wound edges inward along the path of least resistance (**contraction**) (see Fig. 27-1). This causes the wound to decrease in size at a uniform rate of about 0.6 to 0.75 mm/day. Complete closure of a wound by contraction depends on the mobility of the surrounding skin as tension is applied to it. If tension in the surrounding skin exceeds the counterforce of wound contraction, healing will be delayed until undamaged epidermal cells at the wound edges can bridge the defect. Unlike re-epithelialization in partial-thickness wounds, which results in the return of a near-normal epithelial barrier, the bridging of epithelial cells across a large area of granulation tissue results in an unstable barrier. A venous leg ulcer is one example of a skin defect that heals poorly by contraction. Re-epithelialization of these chronic wounds often results in a thin epidermal barrier that is easily re-injured.

Re-epithelialization, granulation, and contraction do not continue indefinitely. Natural healing processes can slow down and even stop in the presence of infection, unrelieved pressure, or mechanical obstacles. For example, dead tissue not only supports the overgrowth of organisms but also obstructs collagen deposition and wound contraction. Therefore thorough wound débridement is necessary for healing to occur. In the case of chronic wounds, healing may cease spontaneously and without an obvious cause. In addition, infection in chronic wounds may not show the expected manifestations. Often the only manifestation is an increase in wound size or failure of the wound to decrease in size (Broderick, 2009).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

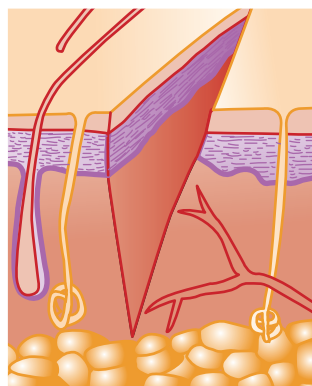
As skin ages, the process of wound healing becomes less efficient. Both re-epithelialization and wound contraction slow, and replacement of connective tissue is reduced. Thus the strength of a healed wound in an older adult is reduced and the area is at greater risk for re-injury. When aging skin is further hindered from healing by inadequate nutrition, incontinence, or immobility, any wound in an older adult has a high risk for becoming a chronic wound. Although prevention strategies provide the best outcome, aggressive treatment of any degree of loss of skin integrity, no matter how small, should be started as soon as it is discovered in an older adult (Bianchi & Cameron, 2008; Touhy & Jett, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

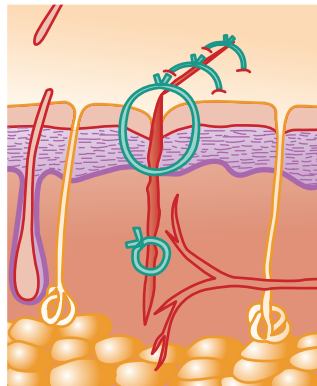
Management of skin trauma varies with the depth and type of injury. The collaborative management for any type of skin trauma focuses on enhancing wound healing, preventing infection, and restoring function to the area. Effective management of pressure ulcers or of burns includes interventions that support a healing environment (see Chapter 28).

The process of wound healing

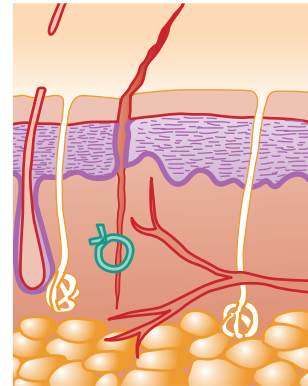
► Healing by first intention



Clean incision



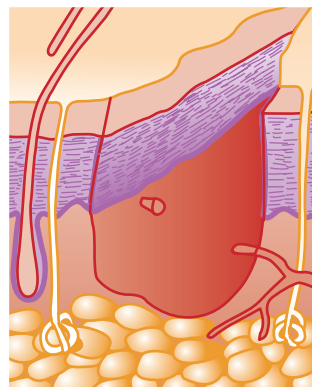
Early suture



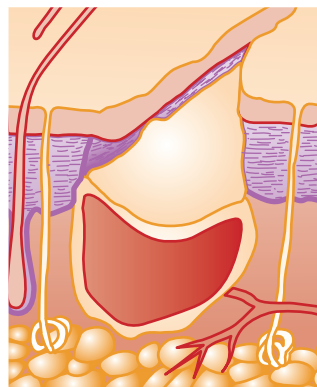
"Hairline" scar

An aseptically made wound with minimal tissue destruction and minimal tissue reaction begins to heal as the edges are approximated by close sutures or staples. No open areas or dead spaces are left to serve as potential sites of infection.

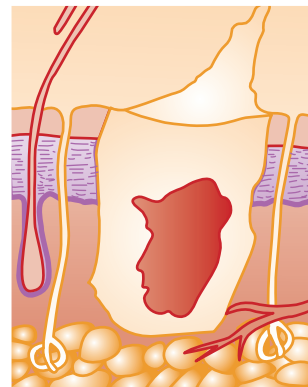
► Healing by second intention (granulation) and contraction



Gaping, irregular wound



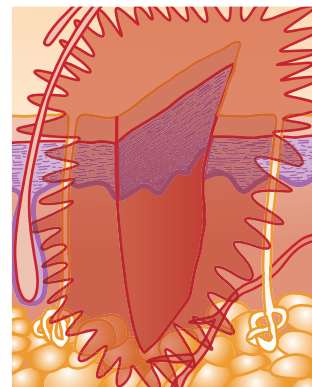
Granulation and contraction



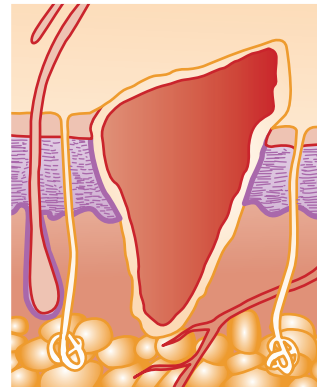
Growth of epithelium over scar

An infected or chronic wound or one with tissue damage so extensive that the edges cannot be smoothly approximated is usually left open and allowed to heal from the inside out. The nurse periodically cleans and assesses the wound for healthy tissue production. Scar tissue is extensive, and healing is prolonged.

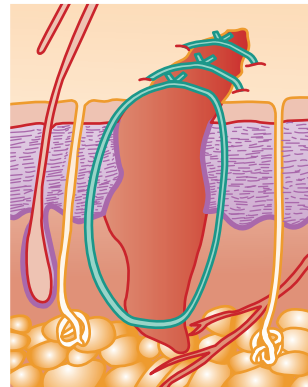
► Healing by third intention (delayed closure)



Infected wound



Granulation



Closure with wide scar

A potentially infected surgical wound may be left open for several days. If no clinical signs of infection occur, the wound is then closed surgically.

FIG. 27-1 The process of wound healing.

PRESSURE ULCERS

Pathophysiology

A **pressure ulcer** is tissue damage caused when the skin and underlying soft tissue are compressed between a bony

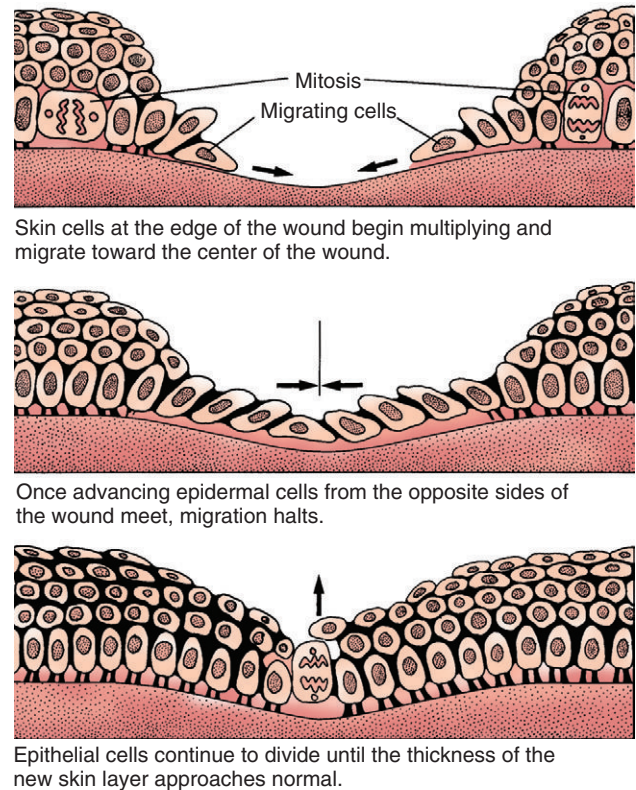
prominence and an external surface for an extended period. Although they commonly occur over the sacrum, hips, and ankles, *pressure ulcers can occur on any body surface*. For example, nasal cannula tubing that is too tight can cause pressure ulcers behind the ears or in the nares.

TABLE 27-2 CAUSES OF IMPAIRED WOUND HEALING

CAUSE	MECHANISM
Altered Inflammatory Response	
Local	
Arteriosclerosis	Reduced local tissue circulation, resulting in ischemia, impaired leukocytic response to wounding, and increased probability of wound infection
Diabetes	
Vasculitis	
Thrombosis	
Venous insufficiency	
Lymphedema	
Pharmacologic vasoconstriction	
Irradiated tissue	
Crush injuries	
Primary closure under tension	
Systemic	
Leukemia	Systemic inhibition of leukocytic response, resulting in impaired host resistance to infection
Prolonged administration of high-dose anti-inflammatory drugs:	
• Corticosteroids	
• Aspirin	
Impaired Cellular Proliferation	
Local	
Wound infection	Prolonged inflammatory response, which can result in low tissue oxygen tension and further tissue destruction
Foreign body	
Necrotic tissue	
Repeated injury or irritation	
Movement of wound (e.g., across a joint)	
Wound desiccation or maceration	
Systemic	
Aging	Impaired cellular proliferation and collagen synthesis
Chronic stress	
Nutritional deficiencies:	Decreased wound contraction
• Calories	
• Protein	
• Vitamins	
• Minerals	
• Water	
Impaired oxygenation:	
• Pulmonary insufficiency	
• Heart failure	
• Hypovolemia	
Cirrhosis	
Uremia	
Prolonged hypothermia	
Coagulation disorders	
Cytotoxic drugs	

Tissue compression from pressure restricts blood flow to the skin, resulting in reduced tissue perfusion and oxygenation and, eventually, leading to cell death. Ulcers occur most often in people with limited mobility because they cannot change their position to relieve pressure. Sensory impairment is also a contributing factor. Patients who cannot feel or communicate the pain that occurs with unrelieved pressure are more likely to develop pressure ulcers. Once formed, these chronic wounds are slow to heal, resulting in increased morbidity and health care costs. Complications associated with chronic pressure ulcers include sepsis, kidney failure, infectious arthritis, and osteomyelitis.

Other factors increase the risk for pressure ulcer formation. Friction and shear are mechanical forces that impair skin integrity and set the stage for skin breakdown. Excessive

**FIG. 27-2** Re-epithelialization.

skin moisture, such as urinary or fecal incontinence, increases the risk for skin damage when external mechanical forces are applied. Nutritional status is also an important concern. Protein malnutrition not only makes normal tissue more prone to breakdown but also delays healing (Slachta, 2008).

Mechanical Forces

Pressure occurs as a result of gravity. Dependent tissues in contact with a fixed surface experience varying degrees of pressure. Pressure is determined by the amount of weight exerted at the point of contact, the distribution of weight at the point of contact, and the density of the contacting surface. Excessive or prolonged pressure can compress blood vessels at the point of contact, such as over bony prominences. Unrelieved pressure leads to ischemia, inflammation, and tissue necrosis. Pressure occurs when the patient is positioned on a hard surface that does not diffuse his or her weight or when he or she remains in the same position too long.

Friction occurs when surfaces rub the skin and irritate or directly pull off epithelial tissue. Such forces are generated when the patient is dragged or pulled across bed linen.

Shear or shearing forces are generated when the skin itself is stationary and the tissues below the skin (e.g., fat, muscle) shift or move (Fig. 27-3). The movement of the deeper tissue layers reduces the blood supply to the skin, leading to skin hypoxia, anoxia, ischemia, inflammation, and necrosis.

Gravity plays a role in the development of shearing forces. A shear injury usually occurs when a patient is in bed in a semi-sitting position and gradually slides downward. Often the skin over the sacrum does not slide down at the same pace as the deeper tissues; thus the skin is mechanically “sheared,” causing blood vessels to stretch and break. Shearing leads to

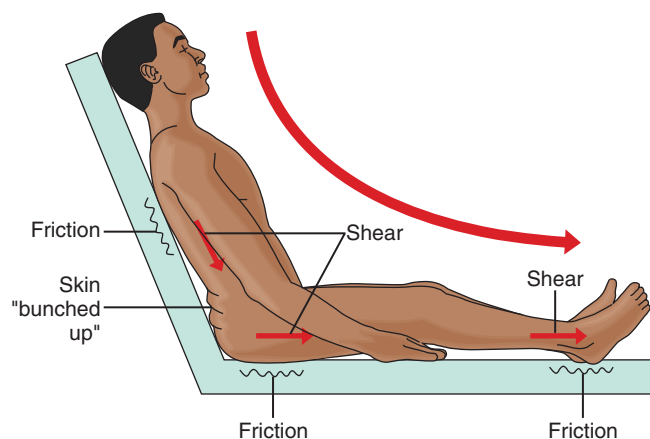


FIG. 27-3 Shearing forces pulling skin layers away from deeper tissue. The skin is “bunched up” against the back of the mattress while the rest of the bone and muscle in the area presses downward on the lower part of the mattress. Blood vessels become kinked, obstructing circulation and leading to tissue death.

soft-tissue ischemia and deep tissue injury, even though no external break in skin integrity is observed.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults are at particular risk for skin tears and pressure ulcers because of the presence of age-related skin changes. Progressive flattening of cells at the dermal-epidermal junction predisposes older people to skin tears from mechanical shearing forces, such as the removal of tape and friction from tightly applied restraints. In addition, skin moisture and irritation from incontinence combined with friction over bony prominences can lead to partial-thickness skin destruction and pressure ulcer formation. Patients with cognitive impairments may not readily report discomfort from inadequate pressure relief. **If pressure is unrelieved, tissue destruction progresses to full-thickness injury.**

Incidence/Prevalence

Pressure ulcer development is a problem found among patients in the acute care setting, long-term care facility, and home care setting. Although patient care has improved in many ways and new products are available for prevention and treatment, 3% to 14% of hospitalized patients still experience pressure ulcer formation (Dunleavy, 2008).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Pressure ulcers can be prevented if the risk is recognized and intervention begins early (Chart 27-2) (Ackerman, 2011). Key health care team members for pressure ulcer prevention and management are the certified wound care specialist and the dietitian.

A pressure ulcer prevention program consists of two steps: (1) early identification of high-risk patients, and (2) implementation of aggressive intervention for prevention with the use of pressure-relief or pressure-reduction devices. Pressure mapping is a method for identifying specific anatomic areas at risk for breakdown and planning interventions for patients who are bedridden or wheelchair bound. The process of pressure mapping involves the use of a computerized tool that measures pressure distribution for

CHART 27-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing Pressure Ulcers

Positioning

- Pad contact surfaces with foam, silicon gel, air pads, or other pressure-relieving pads.
- Do not keep the head of the bed elevated above 30 degrees to prevent shearing.
- Use a lift sheet to move a patient in the bed. Avoid dragging or sliding him or her.
- When positioning a patient on his or her side, do not position directly on the trochanter.
- Reposition an immobile patient at least every 2 hours while in bed and at least every 1 hour while sitting in a chair.
- Do not place a rubber ring or donut under the patient's sacral area.
- When moving an immobile patient from a bed to another surface, use a designated slide board well lubricated with talc or use a mechanical lift.
- Place pillows or foam wedges between two bony surfaces.
- Keep the patient's skin directly off plastic surfaces.
- Keep the patient's heels off the bed surface using bed pillow under ankles.

Nutrition

- Ensure a fluid intake between 2000 and 3000 mL/day.
- Help the patient maintain an adequate intake of protein and calories.

Skin Care

- Perform a daily inspection of the patient's entire skin.
- Document and report any manifestations of skin infection.
- Use moisturizers daily on dry skin, and apply when skin is damp.
- Keep moisture from prolonged contact with skin:
 - Dry areas where two skin surfaces touch, such as the axillae and under the breasts.
 - Place absorbent pads under areas where perspiration collects.
 - Use moisture barriers on skin areas where wound drainage or incontinence occurs.
- **Do not massage bony prominences.**
- Humidify the room.

Skin Cleaning

- Clean the skin as soon as possible after soiling occurs and at routine intervals.
- Use a mild, heavily fatted soap or gentle commercial cleanser for incontinence.
- Use tepid rather than hot water.
- In the perineal area, use a disposable cleaning cloth that contains a skin barrier agent.
- While cleaning, use the minimum scrubbing force necessary to remove soil.
- Gently pat rather than rub the skin dry.
- Do not use powders or talcs directly on the perineum.
- After cleansing, apply a commercial skin barrier to those areas in frequent contact with urine or feces.

a person sitting in a chair or lying on a mattress (Hanson et al., 2007). The map is displayed as colored areas on the computer screen based on temperature differences. Shades of red indicate areas of greater heat production and are associated with increased pressure loads. Shades of blue indicate cooler areas under lower pressure. When used in combination with more traditional risk assessment tools, pressure mapping appears to help identify problem areas before visual changes occur and allows for more targeted prevention strategies.

Effective risk identification and prevention measures include education of the patient and the caregiver. Documentation of risk assessment, implementation of prevention measures, and education of all people involved in the care of the patient at risk for pressure ulcer formation are key to the plan's success (Dunleavy, 2008). Periodic re-assessment of risk and continuing evaluation are critical, especially when the patient's condition changes.

Identification of High-Risk Patients

As suggested by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), all patients admitted to a health care facility or home care agency should be assessed for pressure ulcer risk. The use of a risk assessment tool increases the chances of identifying those patients at greater risk for skin breakdown. The Braden Scale (Fig. 27-4) is the most commonly used skin risk assessment tool. This validated tool helps the nurse assess and document the various risk categories for pressure ulcer formation including mental status, activity and mobility, nutritional status, and incontinence.

Mental status changes and decreased sensory perception determine whether the patient is a partner in the prevention of pressure ulcers. When the patient understands that turning and shifting of weight prevent tissue damage, the risk for pressure ulcers decreases. Stroke, head injury, organic brain disease, Alzheimer's disease, or other problems with cognition increase the risk for pressure ulcer formation.

Independent mobility is a direct factor in the risk for pressure ulcer formation. Patients who have unimpaired mobility and can respond to pain are at low risk for pressure ulcer formation. *Regardless of age, any patient who requires assistance with turning and positioning or who is unable to verbalize discomfort is at higher risk for pressure ulcer formation.* Anyone who is confined to bed or a chair also is at higher risk than a patient who requires assistance only with ambulation.

Nutritional status is a critical risk factor for pressure ulcer development and for successful healing (Slachta, 2008). Intact skin and wound healing depend on a positive nitrogen balance and adequate serum protein levels. The patient in negative nitrogen balance not only heals more slowly but also is at greater risk for accelerated tissue destruction. Draining wounds contribute to protein loss and require more aggressive intervention.

Nutritional status assessment includes laboratory studies; evaluation of weight and recent weight change; ability of the patient to consume an adequate diet; and the need for vitamin, mineral, or protein supplementation. Serum albumin and prealbumin levels are often used to monitor nutritional status. Prealbumin is a more sensitive marker because it has a shorter half-life. *Nutrition is considered inadequate when the serum albumin level is less than 3.5 g/dL, the prealbumin level is less than 19.5 mg/dL, or the lymphocyte count is less than 1800/mm³.* However, serum protein levels are affected by a number of other factors including level of hydration, metabolic stress, and infection. Therefore laboratory values are valuable only when supported by additional assessment information. Other indicators of inadequate nutrition include poor daily intake of food and fluids with a weight loss greater than 5% change in 30 days or greater than 10% change in 180 days (Dorner et al., 2009).

A positive nitrogen balance requires an intake of 30 to 35 calories per kilogram of body weight daily with a protein

intake of 1.25 to 1.5 g/kg/day. Up to 2 g/kg/day of protein may be needed when nutritional deficits are severe or protein loss is ongoing. Vitamin and mineral supplementations are based on the patient's nutritional status.

Incontinence results in prolonged contact of the skin with such substances as urea, bacteria, yeast, and enzymes carried in urine and feces. These substances are irritants that destroy the integrity of the skin's barrier, predisposing that patient to skin breakdown. Excessive moisture macerates intact skin, further increasing the risk for breakdown. Daily inspection of the skin for any areas of redness, maceration, or skin breakdown is a major part of pressure ulcer prevention. Maintenance of clean, dry, intact skin also assists in the prevention process. The skin should be washed with a pH-balanced soap to maintain the normal acid level. Creams or lotions are used to lubricate and moisturize the skin. Barrier ointments protect intact skin from urine and feces when incontinence is present. Absorbent pads or garments must be changed immediately with each incontinence episode to avoid prolonged skin contact with urine or feces.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach all nursing care personnel and family members not to massage reddened areas directly because this action can damage capillary beds and increase tissue necrosis.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The newly admitted client has all of the following laboratory test values. Which value suggests to the nurse that the client may be at an increased risk for pressure ulcer formation?

- A. International normalized ratio (INR) of 1.5
- B. White blood cell (WBC) count of 5200/mm³
- C. Serum sodium concentration of 134 mEq/L
- D. Serum prealbumin concentration of 15.2 mg/dL

Pressure-Relieving and Pressure-Reducing Techniques

The cornerstone in the prevention (and treatment) of pressure ulcers is adequate pressure relief. A factor in pressure relief is the **capillary closing pressure**, which is the amount of pressure needed to occlude skin capillary blood flow, in the area at risk. The normal capillary closing pressure ranges from 12 to 32 mm Hg. An effective pressure-relieving device is one that keeps tissue pressure *below* the capillary closing pressure to ensure adequate tissue perfusion and oxygenation. *Most devices have a standardized guaranteed pressure-relief reading; however, these readings do not ensure that capillary blood flow for any given patient is adequate. Observe skin color, integrity, and temperature directly to determine capillary flow adequacy.*

Devices are classified according to whether they relieve pressure or merely reduce pressure. In addition, devices are further classified as dynamic or static. Dynamic systems alternate inflation and deflation of the device through the use of electricity. Static devices made of gel, water, foam, or air are in a constant state of inflation that distributes the patient pressure load over a larger area and reduces the pressure experienced by any particular area.

Patient's name	Evaluator's name		Date of assessment
Sensory perception Ability to respond meaningfully to pressure-related discomfort	1. Completely limited Unresponsive to painful stimuli (does not moan, flinch, or grasp) because of diminished level of consciousness or sedation OR limited ability to feel pain over most of body surface	2. Very limited Responds only to painful stimuli; cannot communicate discomfort except by moaning or restlessness OR has a sensory impairment that limits the ability to feel pain or discomfort over half of the body	3. Slightly limited Responds to verbal commands but cannot always communicate discomfort or need to be turned OR has some sensory impairment that limits ability to feel pain or discomfort in one or two extremities 4. No impairment Responds to verbal commands; has no sensory deficit that would limit ability to feel or voice pain or discomfort
Moisture Degree to which skin is exposed to moisture	1. Constantly moist Skin is kept moist almost constantly by perspiration, urine; dampness is detected every time the client is moved or turned	2. Very Moist Skin is often but not always moist; linen must be changed at least once a shift	3. Occasionally moist Skin is occasionally moist, requiring an extra linen change approximately once a day 4. Rarely moist Skin is usually dry; linen requires changing only at routine intervals
Activity Degree of physical activity	1. Bedfast Confined to bed	2. Chairfast Ability to walk severely limited or nonexistent; cannot bear own weight and must be assisted into chair or wheelchair	3. Walks occasionally Walks occasionally during the day but for very short distances, with or without assistance; spends the majority of each shift in bed or chair 4. Walks frequently Walks outside the room at least twice a day and inside the room at least once every 2 hours during waking hours
Mobility Ability to change or control body position	1. Completely immobile Does not make even slight changes in body or extremity position without assistance	2. Very limited Makes occasional slight changes in body or extremity position but unable to make frequent or significant changes independently	3. Slightly limited Makes frequent though slight changes in body or extremity position independently 4. No limitations Makes major and frequent changes in position without assistance
Nutrition Usual food intake pattern	1. Very poor Never eats a complete meal; rarely eats more than a third of any food offered; eats two servings or less of protein (meat or dairy products) per day; takes fluids poorly; does not take a liquid dietary supplement OR is NPO or maintained on clear liquids or IV for more than 5 days	2. Probably inadequate Rarely eats a complete meal and generally eats only about half of any food offered; protein intake includes only three servings of meat or dairy products per day; occasionally will take a dietary supplement OR receives less than optimal amount of liquid diet or tube feeding	3. Adequate Eats over half of most meals; eats a total of four servings of protein (meat, dairy products) each day; occasionally will refuse a meal, but will usually take a supplement if offered OR is receiving tube feeding or total parenteral nutrition, which probably meets most nutritional needs 4. Excellent Eats most of every meal; never refuses a meal; usually eats a total of four or more servings of meat and dairy products; occasionally eats between meals; does not require supplementation
Friction and shear	1. Problem Requires moderate to maximum assistance in moving; complete lifting without sliding against sheets is impossible; frequently slides down in bed or chair, requiring frequent repositioning with maximum assistance; spasticity, contractures, or agitation leads to almost constant friction	2. Potential problem Moves feebly or requires minimum assistance during a move; skin probably slides to some extent against sheets, chair, restraints, or other devices; maintains relatively good position in chair or bed most of the time but occasionally slides down	3. No apparent problem Moves in bed and in chair independently and has sufficient muscle strength to lift up completely during move; maintains good position in bed or chair at all times
Scoring system: 15-16 = mild risk, 12-14 = moderate risk, <11 = severe risk			Total score

FIG. 27-4 The Braden Scale for predicting pressure ulcer risk. IV, Intravenous; NPO, nothing by mouth.

Pressure-relief/pressure-reduction products come in many forms, such as specialty beds, mattress replacements, overlays, and assistive devices. Choosing the correct product is important in the success of the prevention plan. Re-evaluate the selected product in use daily for effectiveness in reducing pressure, providing comfort, and eliminating “bottoming out.” Bottoming out occurs when the selected product is not providing adequate pressure relief and the patient’s bony prominences sink into the mattress or cushion.

Pressure-relief devices consistently reduce skin pressure below capillary closing pressure. These devices are recommended for patients who need:

- Prevention of skin breakdown because they cannot turn (e.g., immobility, loss of sensation)
- Prevention of extension of skin breakdown that has already occurred
- Promotion of healing for breakdown present on several turning surfaces

Pressure-reduction devices lower pressure below that of a standard hospital mattress or chair surface but do not reduce pressure consistently below the capillary closing pressure. These devices are effective for preventing pressure ulcers only when used together with a turning schedule and other skin care measures.

Frequent repositioning of bedbound patients, as described in [Chart 27-2](#), is critical in reducing pressure over bony prominences. A good plan for positioning is the 30-degree rule. This plan ensures that the patient is positioned and propped so that whatever part of the body is elevated is tilted back at least a 30-degree angle to the mattress rather than resting directly on a dependent bony prominence. This rule applies to side-lying as well as head-of-bed elevation positions. The patient who requires greater head elevation because of respiratory difficulties should be tilted forward more than 30 degrees with pillows behind the back to keep pressure off of the sacral/coccyx area. Often positioning is delegated to UAP. Teach UAP the importance of proper positioning, and demonstrate how to perform it. Also teach family members to use these techniques in the home.

The patient at risk for pressure ulcers in bed is also at risk while sitting. Carefully assess for proper wheelchair or regular chair cushioning. Collaborate with physical therapists and rehabilitation specialists for selection of these products. High-risk patients who are chair bound should also be periodically assisted to a standing position to promote tissue perfusion and prevent breakdown over the sacral area.

Even with an appropriate mattress or cushion, the patient needs to change or be helped to change positions periodically. Many facilities require turning and positioning every 2 hours. *However, pressure can occur in less time, and the actual turning or repositioning schedule for each patient must be individualized.* When this action is delegated to UAP, teach them the importance of maintaining a repositioning schedule.

Use pillows and other positioning or padding devices to keep heels pressure-free at all times for high-risk patients. Assess heel positioning every 4 hours to ensure that pressure is not redistributed to another high-risk area, such as the ankles or sides of the feet. Check heels even more frequently when devices that hide the feet (e.g., boots, heel protectors) are used, especially if the patient has a peripheral vascular problem. In addition to the heels, check knees and elbows at

regular intervals, especially when the patient is in a side-lying position.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When taking a history from the patient with a pressure ulcer, identify the cause of skin loss, as well as factors that may impair healing. Ask about the specific circumstances of the skin loss. Often patients with chronic pressure ulcerations have a history of delayed healing or recurrence of the ulcer after healing has occurred. Because pressure-related skin loss is common among severely debilitated patients, determine whether a patient has any of these contributing factors:

- Prolonged bedrest
- Immobility
- Incontinence
- Diabetes mellitus
- Inadequate nutrition or hydration
- Altered mental status (decreased sensory perception, cognitive problems)
- Peripheral vascular disease

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Inspect the entire body, including the back of the head, for areas of skin injury or pressure. Give special attention to bony prominences (e.g., the heels, sacrum, elbows, knees, trochanters, posterior and anterior iliac spines) and areas that are vulnerable to excessive moisture. In addition, assess the patient’s general appearance for issues related to skin health, such as body weight and the proportion of weight to height. Obese patients, as well as thin patients, are at increased risk for malnutrition and pressure ulcer formation. Check overall cleanliness of the skin, hair, and nails. Determine whether any loss of mobility or range of joint motion has occurred. *This assessment should not be delegated to UAP.*

Wound Assessment

The appearance of pressure ulcers changes with the depth of the injury. [Chart 27-3](#) lists the features of the six categories or stages of pressure ulceration, and [Fig. 27-5](#) shows examples.

Assess wounds for location, size, color, extent of tissue involvement, cell types in the wound base and margins, exudate, condition of surrounding tissue, and presence of foreign bodies. Document this initial assessment to serve as a starting point for determining the intervention plan and its effectiveness. How often a wound is assessed is determined by the written policies and procedures at the facility or agency. Weekly documented assessment is the standard in many long-term care facilities; however, daily assessment is needed when the patient is in an acute care setting. *Also assess the wound at each dressing change, comparing the existing wound features with those documented previously to determine the current state of healing or deterioration.*

For intact areas that are red (in lighter-skinned patients), press firmly with fingers at the center of the area and assess whether the area **blanches** (lightens) with pressure. An area that blanches with pressure and then returns to normal when

CHART 27-3 KEY FEATURES

Pressure Ulcers**Suspected Deep Tissue Injury**

- The intact skin area appears purple or maroon.
- Blood-filled blisters may be present.
- Before the above-listed changes appeared, the tissue in this area may first have been painful.
- Other changes that may have preceded the discoloration include that the area may have felt more firm, boggy, mushy, warmer, or cooler than the surrounding tissue.

Stage 1

- Skin is intact.
- Area, usually over a bony prominence, is red and does not blanch with external pressure.
- For patients with darker skin that does not blanch:
 - Observable pressure-related alteration of intact skin; changes are compared with an adjacent or opposite area and include one or more of these:
 - Skin color (darker or lighted than the comparison area)
 - Skin temperature (warmth or coolness)
 - Tissue consistency (firm or boggy)
 - Sensation (pain, itching)
- The ulcer appears as a defined area of persistent redness in lightly pigmented skin, whereas in darker skin tones, the ulcer may appear with persistent red, blue, or purple hues.

Stage 2

- Skin is not intact.
- There is partial-thickness skin loss of the epidermis or dermis.
- Ulcer is superficial and may be characterized as an abrasion, a blister (open or fluid-filled), or a shallow crater.
- Bruising is *not* present.

Stage 3

- Skin loss is full thickness.
- Subcutaneous tissues may be damaged or necrotic.
- Damage extends down to but not through the underlying fascia; bone, tendon, and muscle are *not* exposed.
- The depth can vary with anatomic location; areas of thin skin (e.g., the bridge of the nose) may show only a shallow crater, whereas thicker tissue areas with larger amounts of subcutaneous fat may show a deep, crater-like appearance.
- Undermining and tunneling may or may not be present.

Stage 4

- Skin loss is full thickness with exposed or palpable muscle, tendon, or bone.
- Often includes undermining and tunneling.
- Sinus tracts may develop.
- Slough and eschar are often present on at least part of the wound.

Unstageable

- Skin loss is full thickness, and the base is completely covered with slough or eschar, obscuring the true depth of the wound.

Data from National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (NPUAP). (2010, January). Updated staging system. Retrieved October 2010, from www.npuap.org.

pressure is removed indicates color changes related to blood vessel dilation rather than tissue damage or inflammation. When blanching does not occur with pressure, the redness is more likely to be a manifestation of skin injury. Document whether the reddened area blanches with pressure.

Record the location and size of the wound first. Wounds are sized by length, width, and depth using millimeters or centimeters. In standardizing wound size for documentation and communication purposes, assess the wound as a clock

face with the 12 o'clock position in the direction of the patient's head and the 6 o'clock position in the direction of the patient's feet. Always measure the length from the 12 o'clock position to the 6 o'clock position and the width between the 9 o'clock position and the 3 o'clock position. Measure depth as the distance from the deepest portion of the wound base to the skin level. Use disposable paper tape measures to obtain the length and width of a wound. Touch the bottom of the wound with a cotton-tipped applicator or swab and mark the place on the swab that is level with the skin surface to obtain wound depth. Then measure the area of the swab between the tip and the mark. When all caregivers use this format, measurement is accurate and wound progress can be determined (Hanson et al., 2007).

Inspect the wound margins for **cellulitis** (inflammation of the skin cells) extending beyond the area of injury. Progressive tissue destruction, seen as an increase in the size or depth of the ulcer and increased wound drainage, usually indicates impairment in the patient's ability to resist infection if proper measures have been taken to relieve pressure.

Inspect the wound for the presence or absence of necrotic tissue. Because of the depth of tissue destruction, a full-thickness pressure ulcer is often covered by a layer of black, gray, or brown nonviable, denatured collagen called wound **eschar**.

In the early stages of wound healing, the eschar is dry, leathery, and firmly attached to the wound surface. As the inflammatory phase of wound healing begins and removal of wound debris progresses, the eschar starts to lift and separate from the tissue beneath. This nonliving eschar is a good breeding ground for bacteria normally found on the skin surface, as well as those introduced by incontinence or other means. As bacteria increase, they release enzymes that soften necrotic tissue. This tissue becomes softer and more yellow. In the presence of bacterial colonization, wound exudate increases substantially; the color and odor of wound exudate indicate the major organism present. The features of wound exudate are listed in [Table 27-3](#).

Beneath the separating dead tissue, granulation tissue appears. Early granulation is pale pink, progressing to a beefy red color as it grows and fills the wound. Palpate the wound to determine the texture of the granulations. Healthy granulation tissue is moist and has a slightly spongy texture. Wounds with poor local arterial blood supply or that have stopped healing appear dry with granulation tissue that is hard (fibrotic) when palpated. Venous obstruction causes an excessively moist ulcer surface with a deep reddish purple color (reflective of the deoxygenated blood beneath the ulcer surface).

Pressure ulcers may involve more extensive tissue destruction than is first seen on inspection. Separation of the skin layers at the wound margins from the underlying granulation tissue is known as **undermining**. Inspect undermined areas for gradual filling with healthy granulations and for wound-healing progress. Palpate the bony prominences for deep hardening of the surrounding soft tissue, which often occurs with deep tissue ischemia.

After ischemia has occurred, continued pressure over the area increases tissue destruction from the deep tissue layers toward the surface, resulting in the formation of tunnels. This "hidden" wound may first have a small opening in the skin with purulent drainage. If such an opening is observed, use a

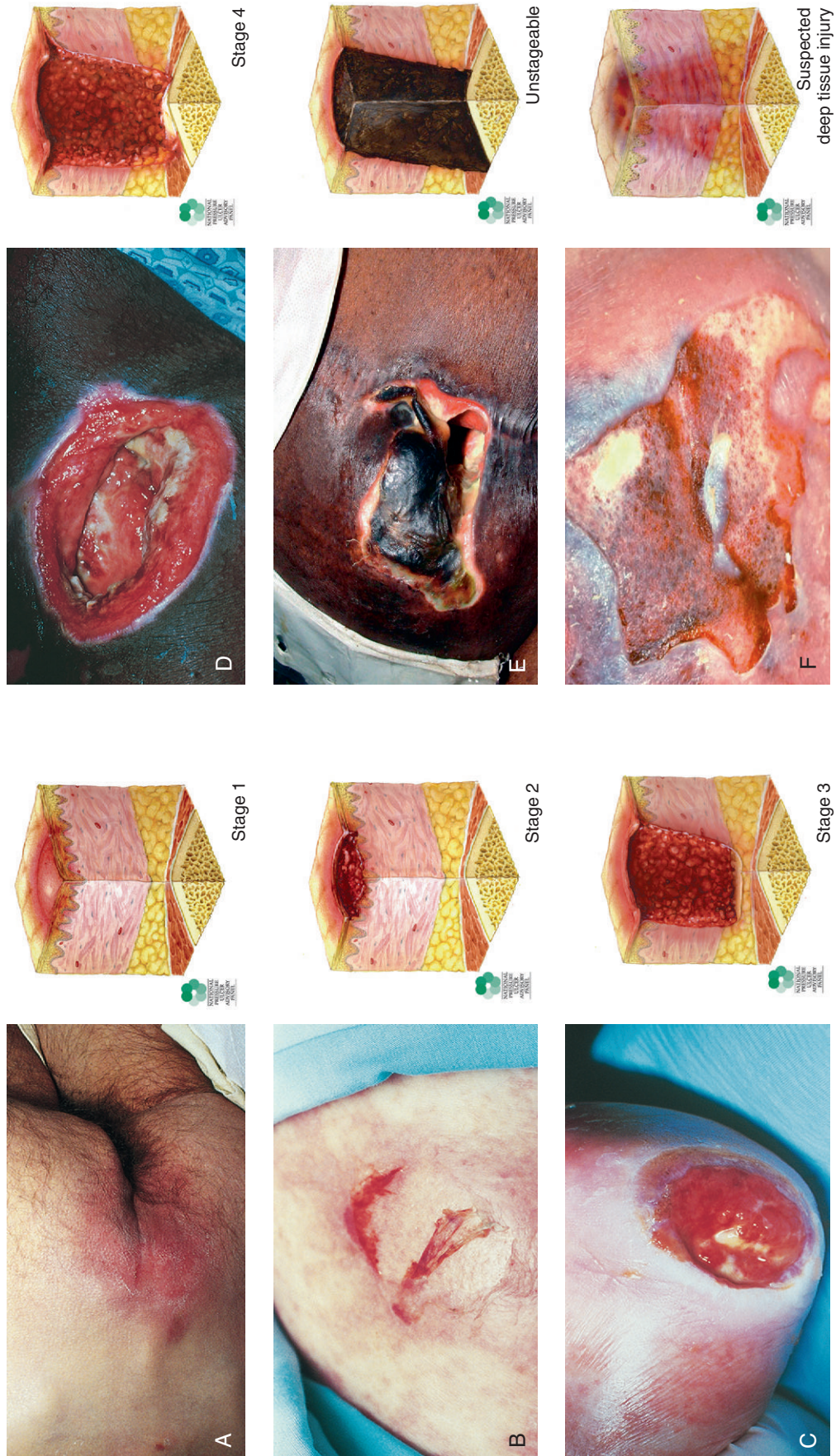


FIG. 27-5 Various stages of pressure ulcers. **A**, Stage 1 pressure ulcer. **B**, Stage 2 pressure ulcer. **C**, Stage 3 pressure ulcer. **D**, Stage 4 pressure ulcer. **E**, Unstageable ulcer. **F**, Suspected deep tissue injury.

cotton-tipped applicator to probe gently for a much larger tunnel or pocket of necrotic tissue beneath the opening. Additional tunnels may also occur along the main wound. Check all wounds for tunneling and, if present, document the location and length of each tunnel.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with pressure ulcers may have an altered body image. Ineffective coping patterns emerge as the patient and family strive to adhere to changes in lifestyle that are needed for healing. In addition, chronic ulcers are often painful and costly to treat.

Assess the patient's and family's knowledge of the treatment goals at each stage of the healing process, as well as adherence to the prescribed treatment regimen. Also assess the patient's skills in cleaning the wound and applying a dressing. Poor adherence to pressure ulcer care procedures may reflect an inability to accept the diagnosis or to cope with the pain, cost, or potential scarring associated with prolonged healing. Depending on the patient's activity level and the location of the ulcer, assistance of a family member or home care nurse may be needed to provide initial care of the pressure ulcer at home.

Explore with the patient specific changes in ADLs that are needed to relieve pressure and promote healing. Promote increased activity whenever possible to enhance circulation to the affected tissue. Leg position changes may be needed for chronic leg ulcers, depending on whether or not peripheral vascular problems contribute to their formation. For patients who have arterial insufficiency, having the legs and feet in a dependent position works with gravity to help ensure adequate blood flow to the lower legs. When arterial blood flow is adequate but venous return is impaired, elevation of the legs may be needed for healing. When the patient is bedridden, frequent repositioning to relieve pressure (every 2 hours in bed, every 1 hour in a chair) can be labor intensive. In the home, repositioning, incontinence management, and dressing changes are often needed around the clock, disrupting family routines and contributing to stress.

Laboratory Assessment

A wound that is exposed is always *contaminated* but is not always *infected*. *Contamination* is the presence of organisms without any manifestation of infection. The normal immune defenses of the body keep the number of bacteria to a minimum and prevent infection. *Wound infection* is contamination with pathogenic organisms to the degree that growth and spread cannot be controlled by the body's immune defenses. Wounds that are red and indurated with moderate to heavy exudate and an odor should be cultured to identify the causative organism and determine sensitivity to antibiotics. *The presence of purulent exudate alone does not indicate a local or systemic infection because pus formation occurs when necrotic tissue liquefies and separates.*

If wounds are extensive, if the patient is severely immunocompromised, or if local blood supply to the wound is impaired, bacterial growth may exceed the body's ability to defend against invasion into deeper tissue layers. The result is deep wound infection and eventually bacteremia and sepsis (systemic infection).

Swab cultures are helpful only in identifying the types of bacteria present on the ulcer surface and may be misleading when trying to identify or quantify bacteria in deeper tissues. Wound biopsies allow the numbers of bacteria to be analyzed, but these tests are time consuming, costly, and unavailable in many laboratories. Therefore clinical indicators of infection (cellulitis, progressive increase in ulcer size or depth, changes in the quantity and quality of exudate) and systemic signs of bacteremia (e.g., fever, elevated white blood cell [WBC] count) are used to diagnose an infection.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Additional laboratory studies are performed on the basis of the suspected cause of the wound. For pressure ulcers to show progress toward healing, the factors contributing to delayed healing must be diagnosed and treated. For example, noninvasive and invasive arterial blood flow studies are indicated if arterial occlusion is suspected in delayed healing of a pressure ulcer on the heel or ankle. Blood tests to establish specific nutritional deficiencies (e.g., prealbumin, albumin, total protein) are helpful in treating the debilitated, malnourished patient with a pressure ulcer.

TABLE 27-3 TYPES OF WOUND EXUDATE

CHARACTERISTICS	SIGNIFICANCE
Serosanguineous Exudate	
Blood-tinged amber fluid consisting of serum and red blood cells	Normal for first 48 hr after injury Sudden increase in amount precedes wound dehiscence in wounds closed by first intention
Purulent Exudate	
Creamy yellow pus	Colonization with <i>Staphylococcus</i>
Greenish blue pus causing staining of dressings and accompanied by a "fruity" odor	Colonization with <i>Pseudomonas</i>
Beige pus with a "fishy" odor	Colonization with <i>Proteus</i>
Brownish pus with a "fecal" odor	Colonization with aerobic coliform and <i>Bacteroides</i> (usually occurs after intestinal surgery)



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

The patient is a 77-year-old man who has had chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) for 20 years. He lives with his divorced daughter and three grandchildren. During the day he is alone while the daughter and grandchildren are at work and school. He is being admitted for exacerbation of the COPD. He continues to smoke two packs of cigarettes daily and uses oxygen by nasal cannula whenever he is not smoking. He weighs 220 lbs and is 5 feet 6 inches tall.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for pressure ulcer development? Explain how the identified factors increase his risk.
2. What additional assessment data should you obtain?
3. Given his diagnosis, in what position do you expect to place him? Does this position increase or decrease his risk for pressure ulcer formation? If so, where is/are the ulcer(s) likely to develop?
4. At 220 pounds, is he likely to have adequate nutrition? Why or why not?

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for patients with pressure ulcers are:

1. Open wounds related to vascular insufficiency and trauma
2. Potential for infection and wound deterioration related to insufficient wound management

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The Concept Map on p. 484 addresses care issues related to patients who have or are at risk for pressure ulcers.

Managing Wounds

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a pressure ulcer is expected to demonstrate progress to complete wound healing and not develop new pressure ulcers. Indicators include:

- Presence of granulation, re-epithelialization, and scar tissue formation
- Decreased wound size
- Absence of new pressure ulcers

Interventions. Wound care techniques for pressure ulcers vary according to each patient's needs and the health care provider's preferences. Surgery with aggressive removal of necrotic tissue may be indicated for some patients, whereas a nonsurgical approach to ulcer débridement is preferred for an older patient who has adequate defenses but is too ill or debilitated for surgery.

Nonsurgical Management. General interventions for pressure ulcer care are listed in [Chart 27-4](#). Nonsurgical intervention of pressure ulcers is often left to the discretion of the nurse, who coordinates with the health care provider and

certified wound care specialist (if available) to select a method of wound dressing on the basis of the identified goal of wound management. Many agencies have guidelines or protocols for wound dressings based, for example, on wound size and depth and presence of drainage.

Dressings. A properly designed dressing can speed healing by removing unwanted debris from the ulcer surface, protecting exposed healthy tissues, and creating a barrier between the body and the environment until the ulcer is closed. *For a patient with a draining, necrotic ulcer, the dressing must also remove excessive exudate and loose debris without damaging epithelial cells or newly formed granulation tissue. If necrosis is extensive and the eschar is thick, dead tissue must be surgically or chemically removed before further débridement with dressings can be effective.* Depending on the dressing material used, dressings help remove debris either through **mechanical débridement** (mechanical entrapment and detachment of dead tissue), **topical chemical débridement** (enzyme preparations applied topically to loosen necrotic tissue), or by **natural chemical débridement** (creating an environment that promotes self-digestion of dead tissues by naturally-occurring bacterial enzymes [*autolysis*]) ([Table 27-4](#)).

After all the dead tissue has been removed, protection of any exposed tendons, bone, and newly formed collagen is critical to pressure ulcer care. The ideal environment for healing is a clean, *slightly* moist ulcer surface with minimal bacterial colonization. Heavy moisture from an excessively draining ulcer or a dressing that is too wet interferes with healing by promoting the growth of organisms and causing maceration (mushiness) of healthy tissue. Likewise, if a clean ulcer surface is exposed to air or if highly absorbent dressing materials are used for prolonged periods, the drying effect can dehydrate surface cells, form scabs, and convert the wound to a deeper injury.

Assess the ulcer for necrotic tissue and the quantity of exudate. Coordinate with a wound care specialist to select a dressing material with properties that promote an optimal environment for healing. For example, a material that does not stick to the wound surface and does not remove fragile epithelial cells when it is changed is the dressing of choice for protecting new tissue. Depending on the amount of drainage, select either a hydrophobic or a hydrophilic material:

- A **hydrophobic** (nonabsorbent, waterproof) material is useful when the wound is relatively free of drainage and

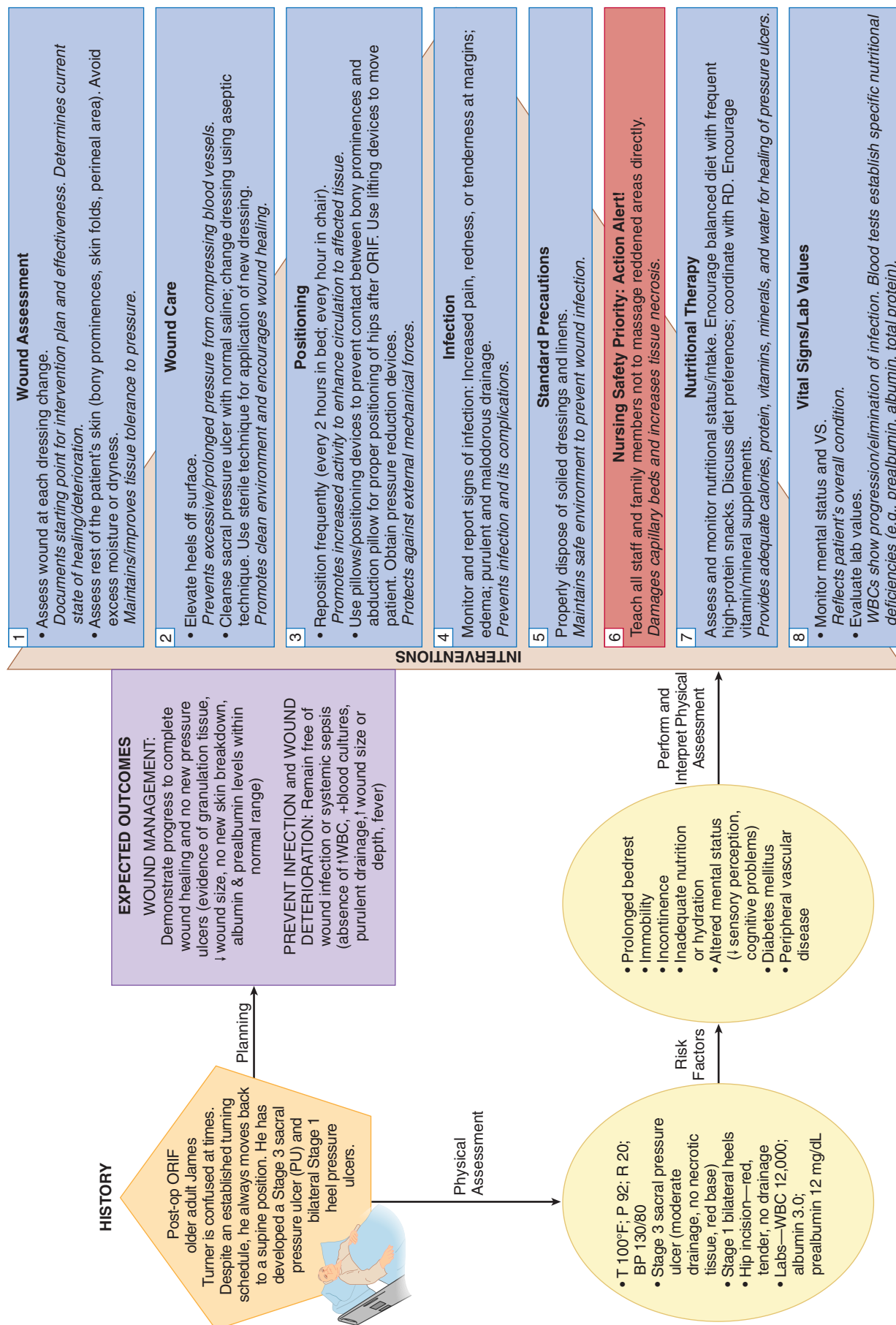
CHART 27-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Wound Management of Pressure Ulcers**

- If ulcer is covered, remove old dressings/coverings daily (unless the dressing type is to remain in place until it loosens naturally).
- Measure wound size at greatest length and width using a disposable paper tape measure or, for asymmetric ulcers, by tracing the wound onto a piece of plastic film or sheeting (plastic template) at least daily.
- Compare all subsequent measurements against the initial measurement.
- Assess the ulcer for presence of necrotic tissue and amount of exudates.
- Assess and document the condition of the skin surrounding the pressure ulcer in terms of color, temperature, texture, moisture, and appearance.
- Remove or trim loose bits of tissue (may be done by a certified wound care specialist, physical therapist, advanced practice nurse, or other as specified by the agency and the state's nurse practice act).
- Cleanse the ulcer with saline or a prescribed solution (after diluting it as per manufacturer's directions or prescriber's instructions).
- Rinse and dry the ulcer surface.
- In collaboration with the certified wound care specialist, select and apply the dressing materials most appropriate for the volume of wound drainage.
- If possible, avoid positioning the patient on the pressure ulcer.
- Re-position at least every 1 to 2 hours to prevent ulcer extension or generation of additional pressure ulcers.
- Use prescribed pressure-relieving and pressure-reducing devices and techniques as described in [Chart 27-2](#).

TABLE 27-4 COMMON DRESSING TECHNIQUES FOR WOUND DÉBRIDEMENT

TECHNIQUE	MECHANISM OF ACTION
Wet-to-damp saline-moistened gauze	As with the wet-to-dry technique, necrotic debris is mechanically removed but with less trauma to healing tissue.
Continuous wet gauze	The wound surface is continually bathed with a wetting agent of choice, promoting dilution of viscous exudate and softening of dry eschar.
Topical enzyme preparations	Proteolytic action on thick, adherent eschar causes breakdown of denatured protein and more rapid separation of necrotic tissue.
Moisture-retentive dressing	Spontaneous separation of necrotic tissue is promoted by autolysis.

Concept Map: Pressure Ulcer



the purpose is to protect the ulcer from external contamination.

- A **hydrophilic** (absorbent) material draws excessive drainage away from the ulcer surface, preventing maceration.

A variety of synthetic materials with different absorbent properties are available (Table 27-5). Unlike cotton gauze dressings, these may be left intact for extended periods. Biologic and synthetic skin substitutes are available that can also prevent tissue dehydration and promote healing (see Chapter 28). However, the use of these products for chronic wounds is often cost prohibitive.

The frequency of dressing changes depends on the amount of necrotic material or exudate. Dry gauze dressings are changed when “strike through” occurs or when the outer layer of the dressing first becomes saturated with exudate. Gauze dressings used for débridement, such as those placed on a wound wet, allowed to become damp, and then removed, are changed often enough to take off any loose debris or exudate, usually every 4 to 6 hours.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Change synthetic dressings when exudate causes the adhesive seal to break and leakage to occur.

Before reapplying any dressing, gently clean the ulcer surface with saline or a nontoxic wound cleanser as prescribed. If an antibacterial cleanser is prescribed, dilute the agent to reduce tissue toxicity and then rinse and dry the surface thoroughly before applying the dressing.

Physical Therapy. The use of daily whirlpool treatments along with dressing changes for débridement can help remove dead tissue. The ulcerated area is immersed in or saturated with warm tap water that contains an antibacterial cleansing agent. Continuous agitation of the water loosens the debris and washes away exudate and particles. During treatment, the ulcer surface is cleansed with a gauze pad. After treatment, the therapist or wound specialist often uses instruments to trim away any obvious bits of dead tissue that are still loosely attached to the ulcer surface.

Drug Therapy. Clean, healthy granulation tissue has a blood supply and is capable of providing white blood cells and antibodies to the ulcer surface to combat infection. If extensive necrosis is present or if local tissue defenses are impaired, topical antibacterial agents are often needed to control bacterial growth. (Chapter 28 details the advantages and uses of topical antimicrobial agents.) In the absence of infection, antibiotics are avoided because of the danger of the development of resistant strains of bacteria.

Nutrition Therapy. Successful healing of pressure ulcers depends on adequate nutritional stores of calories, protein, vitamins, minerals, and water. Nutritional deficiencies are common among older adults and chronically ill patients. These deficiencies increase the risk for skin breakdown and delayed healing of wounds that are already present. Severe protein deficiency inhibits all stages of the healing process and impairs host defenses against bacterial invasion.

Coordinate with the dietitian to encourage the patient to eat a well-balanced diet, emphasizing protein, vegetables, fruit, whole grain breads and cereals, and vitamins. Fats are needed in the diet also to ensure formation of cell

membranes. (See Chapter 63 for a complete discussion of nursing actions to ensure adequate nutrition.) If the patient cannot eat sufficient amounts of food, other types of feedings may be needed to increase protein and caloric intake (see Chapter 63). Vitamin and mineral supplements are also indicated.

New Technologies. For chronic ulcers that remain open for months, new technologies have had some success. These include electrical stimulation, vacuum-assisted wound closure, hyperbaric oxygen therapy, topical growth factors, and skin substitutes.

Electrical stimulation is the application of a low-voltage current to a wound area to increase blood vessel growth and promote granulation. This treatment is usually performed by a certified wound care specialist. A single electrode can be applied directly to a wound through a sterile dressing, or multiple electrodes can be applied around a wound. The voltage is delivered in “pulses” that may cause the patient to feel a “tingling” sensation. Usually electrical stimulation is performed for 1 hour a day, five to seven days a week. This form of treatment is not used with patients who have a pacemaker or who have a wound over the heart.

Vacuum-assisted wound closure (VAC), also known as *negative pressure wound therapy (NPWT)*, has been used successfully to reduce or even close chronic ulcers by removing fluids or infectious materials from the wound and enhancing the formation of granulation tissue. This technique requires that a suction tube be covered by a special sponge and sealed in place. Per manufacturer’s instructions, the foam dressing is changed every 48 to 72 hours and not less than three times weekly. During that time, continuous low-level negative pressure is applied through the suction tube. Duration of the treatment is determined by the wound’s response. It should not be used in areas where skin cancer is located. Failure of VAC therapy is often due to the inability to maintain an adequate and consistent dressing seal (Rock, 2011).

Bleeding complications from this procedure have resulted in a closer look at its effectiveness and dangers (Wallis, 2010). Newer devices often use continuous pressure and higher pressures. Current evidence does not support greater effectiveness in closing chronic wounds than more traditional methods. Serious bleeding and even deaths have occurred with VAC, and now these devices received a preliminary warning from the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to exclude high-risk patients from its use. Any patient who is receiving this therapy must be monitored at least every 2 hours for manifestations of bleeding at or near the wound site while the device is in use.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Do not use a continuous vacuum-assisted closure device with any patient who is on anticoagulant therapy; has some degree of reduced tissue health near the wound (e.g., with radiation therapy or poor nutrition); or has any exposed blood vessels, nerves, or organs in the wound area.

Hyperbaric oxygen (HBO) therapy is the administration of oxygen under high pressure, raising the tissue oxygen concentration. This type of therapy is costly and usually reserved for life- or limb-threatening wounds such as burns, necrotizing soft-tissue infections, brown recluse spider bites,

TABLE 27-5 COMMONLY USED DRESSING MATERIALS

	ALGINATE	BIOLOGIC DRESSING	COTTON GAUZE DRESSING	FOAM	HYDROCOLLOIDAL	HYDROGEL DRESSING	ADHESIVE TRANSPARENT FILM*
Indications	Hemostasis Débridement Absorption Protection	Débridement after eschar removal Protection Test before skin grafts (pigskin and cadaver skin) Burns Dormant, nonhealing wounds that do not respond to other topical therapies	Continuous Dry Absorption Protection (nonadherent contact layer) Continuous Wet Delivery of topical agent Débridement (autolysis) Protection Wet to Damp Atraumatic mechanical débridement	Insulation Débridement Absorption Protection	Débridement Absorption Protection	Débridement Absorption Protection	Débridement† Protection (partial-thickness lesions) Secondary (cover) dressing
Advantages	Highly absorbent Biodegradable Easy application Nonadhesive Can be used as packing for deep wounds Can be used for infected wounds	Most “natural” wound covering Reduces pain Conforms to uneven wound surfaces Acts as a catalyst for healing Alternative to autograft	Readily available Good mechanical débridement <i>if used properly</i> Effective delivery of topical agents	Absorbent Insulates wound Easy application Nonadhesive (most products) Conforms to uneven wound surfaces	Absorbent Excludes bacteria Waterproof Reduces pain Easy application Easy to store Painless removal	Absorbent Nonadhesive Reduces pain Conducive to use with topical agents Conforms to uneven wound surfaces Amorphous form can be used as a filler Easy to store	Wound visualization Good adhesion Waterproof Reduces pain Cost-effective Easy to store
Disadvantages	Requires secondary dressing to secure Can cause desiccation of tissue if drainage is minimal Foul odor and gelling may be confused with infection	Requires secondary dressing to secure Very expensive Skin substitutes require skill to apply	Delayed healing if used improperly Pain on removal Requires frequent dressing changes	Poor barrier function Requires secondary dressing to secure	Nontransparent Softening and loss of shape with pressure, heat, and friction Odor with dressing removal Expensive Requires use of “fillers” for deep, draining lesions	Poor barrier function Only partial wound visualization Requires secondary dressing to secure Can promote growth of <i>Pseudomonas</i> and other microorganisms	Difficult to apply properly Nonabsorbent Adhesive to normal and healing tissue Limited to superficial lesions
Dressing changes	When dressing is saturated (every 3-5 days) or more frequently	Topical growth factors: daily Skin substitutes: varies (similar to grafts)	Necrotic base: every 4-6 hr Clean base: every 12-24 hr	When dressing is saturated or more frequently	Necrotic base: every 24 hr Clean base: on leakage of exudates	Necrotic base: every 6-8 hr Clean base: every 24 hr	Necrotic base: every 24 hr Clean base: on leakage of exudates

*Also available in nonadhesive forms.

†Use with caution in patients with leukopenia or vascular disease.

osteomyelitis, and diabetic ulcers. The patient is enclosed in a large chamber and exposed to 100% oxygen at pressures greater than normal atmospheric (sea level) pressure. Systemic oxygen enhances the ability of white blood cells to kill bacteria and reduce swelling. Treatment usually lasts from 60 to 90 minutes. Smaller topical oxygen delivery devices are also available. These devices are applied directly over an open wound to promote local tissue oxygenation (Thackman et al., 2008).

Topical growth factors are biologically active substances that stimulate cell movement and growth. These factors are deficient in chronic wounds, and topical application is currently being studied as a way to stimulate wound healing. For example, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) stimulates the movement of fibroblasts into the wound space. Use of this and other growth factors has been found to be more successful in clean, surgically débrided chronic wounds (Woo et al., 2007).

Skin substitutes are engineered products that aid in the temporary or permanent closure of different types of wounds. These products vary widely in design and application and are used mainly for surgically débrided wounds, such as a full-thickness pressure ulcer before reconstruction with skin grafts or muscle flaps (van der Veen et al., 2010).

Surgical Management. Surgical management of a pressure ulcer includes removal of necrotic tissue and skin grafting or use of muscle flaps to close wounds that cannot heal by re-epithelialization and contraction. Not all wounds are candidates for grafting. Those with poor blood flow are unlikely to have successful graft take and heal.

Preoperative Care. Before surgery, care is focused on preparing the ulcer to accept a skin graft or muscle flap. Monitor potential donor sites, taking care to maintain the integrity of the donor skin and to avoid minor injuries that may result in infection and graft loss.

Operative Procedure. The operative procedures used for surgical management of pressure ulcers include débridement and grafting. One or both of these procedures may be done.

Surgical débridement is the removal of thick, adherent wound crust (eschar) using a scalpel or scissors. It may be performed to hasten the removal of the dead tissue, a potential source of infection. *The longer open wounds exist, the greater the risk for sepsis or prolonged hospitalization.* Depending on the size and depth of the ulcer and the projected blood loss, débridement can be performed at the bedside or in the treatment room by a wound care specialist or advanced practice nurse. When the wound is large or has a risk for excessive bleeding, débridement is performed in an operating room. In any case, the patient should receive sedation or a local anesthetic before the procedure. Although necrotic tissue does not have sensation, the healthy tissue at the point of attachment may have sensation.

Grafting is used for wound closure when full-thickness ulcers cannot close and when natural healing would result in loss of joint function, an unacceptable cosmetic appearance, or a high potential for wound recurrence. Successful skin grafting requires a clean and granulating or freshly excised ulcer bed. Partial-thickness (split-thickness) or full-thickness strips of skin are removed from the donor area, transferred to the ulcer, and sutured or stapled in place. Full-thickness free grafts and myocutaneous flaps are used to cover deep,

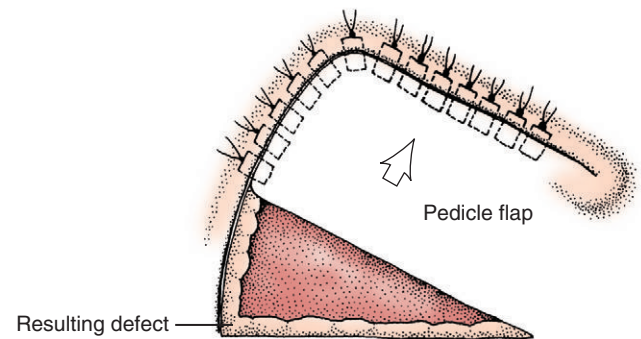


FIG. 27-6 A full-thickness pedicle flap of skin is separated and rotated to cover the wound. Blood vessels are left intact. The resultant defect is either primarily closed or covered with skin grafts. The flap is held in place with staples or sutures.

massive ulcers or ulcers in which vital structures, such as bone or tendon, are exposed.

Unlike free grafts, a pedicle flap is a full-thickness flap of skin that is raised and rotated to cover the defect, with one edge of the flap still attached to the site of origin to provide a blood supply (Fig. 27-6). Because all skin layers are removed, full-thickness donor sites are closed surgically or covered with additional split-thickness skin grafts. Partial-thickness donor sites heal spontaneously if infection is avoided.

When extensive surgical débridement has been performed on a large wound that does not have an adequate blood supply for grafting, other closure methods may be needed. If there is sufficient healthy skin around the débrided wound, the edges may be pulled together and surgically closed. Otherwise, the wound is managed with dressings until it closes by contraction and scar formation.

Postoperative Care. After surgery, graft sites are immobilized with bulky cotton pressure dressings for 3 to 5 days to allow vascularization, or “take,” of the newly grafted skin. Do not disturb the dressing, and encourage elevation and complete rest of the grafted area to allow blood vessels to connect the graft with the wound bed. Any activity that might cause movement of the dressing against the body and separation of the graft from the wound is prohibited.

After dressings are removed, monitor the graft for indications of failure to vascularize, nonadherence to the wound, or graft necrosis. If a pedicle flap has been used to cover the wound, inspect the edges of the flap at least every 4 hours for changes in color. *A pale flap with delayed capillary filling when blanched may have inadequate arterial perfusion.* A dusky color or sharp line of color change suggests inadequate venous or lymphatic drainage. Other techniques to monitor trends of blood flow in the graft, depending on the graft's location, include pulse oximetry, Doppler ultrasonography, and transcutaneous oxygen determination.

Nursing care of partial-thickness donor sites aims to protect the area from injury and infection until re-epithelialization can occur and to promote comfort. A pressure dressing is usually placed over the donor area to promote hemostasis. After 24 to 48 hours, this outer dressing is removed, revealing a single wound contact layer of fine-mesh gauze or synthetic mesh material.

Today most donor sites are dressed with moisture-retentive dressings, such as synthetic transparent films. However, if the

donor site is treated with dry exposure, promote air circulation to the wound by positioning the patient to avoid pressure on the site and using an overbed cradle to tent the sheets. After the dressing has dried and formed a “scab,” keep the wound dry and undisturbed until healing is evident (at 10 to 14 days). As the donor site heals, the gauze and dried blood lift away from the new epithelium beneath. Trimming the separating gauze close to the skin surface reduces the chance of the patient catching the loose end of the dressing on an object and removing the still-adherent gauze before healing is complete.

The donor sites initially may be more painful than graft sites. Administer analgesics as prescribed, and provide other comfort measures as needed. Reposition the patient during the immediate period after surgery to promote comfort only if movement of the graft site can be avoided. Offer or delegate the intervention of back rubs to help relieve muscle spasms that occur with reduced mobility. Pay attention to relieving pressure over unaffected bony prominences that may lead to additional ulcers.

Graft and donor sites on posterior body surfaces present a particular problem. For the graft or flap to become fully vascularized or for the donor sites to dry, the patient must be immobilized in a side-lying or prone position for 7 to 10 days.

An alternative to this positioning is the use of special low-pressure or air-fluidized beds, such as the Clinitron bed, KinAir bed, or FluidAir bed, which not only reduce ischemia of the graft or flap while the patient is supine but also help prevent breakdown of intact skin. A major limitation to the use of these beds is cost, which is usually outweighed by the potential for decreased morbidity and length of hospital or long-term care stay.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which intervention does the nurse use to promote “take” of a graft placed on the client’s right heel?

- A. Elevate the client’s right foot by placing pillows under the leg from the knee to the ankles.
- B. Position the client on the abdomen with the right foot hyperextended for at least 4 hours daily.
- C. Ensure that the grafted area is pressed tightly to the bed to promote adherence to the wound bed.
- D. Assess the circulation distal to the graft every hour and compare the findings with those from the left foot.

Preventing Infection and Wound Deterioration

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a pressure ulcer is expected to remain free of wound infection or systemic sepsis. Indicators include that the patient will have mild or no:

- White blood cell elevation
- Positive blood culture
- Purulent drainage
- Increase in wound size or depth
- Fever

Interventions. Priority nursing interventions focus on preventing wound infections and identifying wound infections early to prevent complications.

Monitoring the ulcer’s appearance using objective criteria allows evaluation of the response to treatment and early

recognition of infection. If an ulcer shows no progress toward healing within 7 to 10 days or worsens, the treatment plan should be re-evaluated. [Chart 27-5](#) outlines objectives of monitoring wounds with and without tissue loss. Patients who are at highest risk for infection are those who are older, have white blood cell (WBC) disorders, are receiving steroid therapy, or have wounds with a compromised blood supply.

Preventing infection and its complications starts with monitoring the ulcer’s progress. Routinely check for manifestations of wound infection: increased pain, tenderness, and redness at the wound margins; edema; and purulent and malodorous drainage. Report these signs to the health care provider:

- Sudden deterioration of the ulcer as evidenced by an increase in the size or depth of the lesion
- Changes in the color or texture of the granulation tissue
- Changes in the quantity, color, or odor of exudate

These changes may occur with or without clinical signs of bacteremia, such as fever, an elevated WBC count, and positive blood cultures. Use the previously described interventions to prevent the formation of new pressure ulcers and to prevent early-stage ulcers from progressing to deeper wounds (see [Chart 27-2](#)).

Maintaining a safe environment can help prevent wound infection. Because of the variety of organisms in the hospital environment, keeping an ulcer totally free of bacteria is impossible. Optimal ulcer management is based on maintaining acceptably low levels of organisms through meticulous wound care and reducing contamination with pathogenic organisms that could lead to sepsis and possible death, especially in older adults. *Teach all personnel to use Standard Precautions and to properly dispose of soiled dressings and linens.*

Community-Based Care

Patients with pressure ulcers may be in acute care, subacute care, long-term care, or home care settings. If pressure ulcer therapy requires hospitalization, most patients with pressure ulcers are discharged before complete wound closure is achieved. Discharge may be to the home setting or to a long-term care facility, depending on the degree of debilitation and other patient factors.

Home Care Management

Care of the ulcer in the patient’s home is similar to care in the hospital. Most dressing supplies and pressure-relief devices can be easily obtained at the local pharmacy or medical supply store. If débridement of the ulcer is still needed, a handheld shower device or forceful irrigation of the wound with a 35-mL syringe and 19-gauge angiocatheter can be substituted for whirlpool therapy.

Many patients cannot change their own dressings because of distress over an altered body image or the pain of dressing removal. Others depend on family members or support personnel because of limited physical mobility or inability to reach the wound.

For some patients, drastic changes in daily activities are needed to promote healing. Patients with pressure ulcers on the legs may need frequent rest periods with leg elevation to avoid or reduce edema. Immobile patients with pressure ulcers require around-the-clock repositioning as

CHART 27-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Monitoring the Wound

VARIABLE	FREQUENCY OF ASSESSMENT	RATIONALE
Wounds Without Tissue Loss		
Examples Surgical incisions and clean lacerations closed primarily by sutures or staples		
Observations (using first postoperative dressing change as baseline)		
Check for the presence or absence of increased:	At least every 24 hr until sutures or staples are removed	To detect cellulitis (bacterial infections)*
Localized tenderness		
Swelling of the incision line		
Erythema of the incision line >1 cm on each side of wound		
Localized heat		
Check for the presence or absence of:	At least every 24 hr until sutures or staples are removed	To detect abscess formation related to presence of foreign body (suture material) or deeper wound infection*
Purulent drainage from any portion of the incision site		
Localized fluctuance (from fluid accumulation) and tenderness beneath a portion of the wound when palpated		
Check for the presence or absence of approximation (sealing) of wound edges with or without serosanguineous drainage	At least every 24 hr until sutures or staples are removed	To detect potential for wound dehiscence
Wounds with Tissue Loss		
Examples Partial- or full-thickness skin loss caused by pressure necrosis, vascular disease, trauma, etc., and allowed to heal by secondary intention		
Observations		
Wound Size		
Measure wound size at greatest length and width using a disposable paper tape measure or, for asymmetric ulcers, by tracing the wound onto a piece of plastic film or sheeting (plastic template)	At least every week, usually every 48-72 hr	To detect increase in wound size and depth secondary to infectious process
Compare all subsequent measurements against the initial measurement		
Ulcer Base		
Check for the presence or absence of:	At least every 24 hr	To detect the need for débridement or the response to treatment (necrotic tissue) and to detect local wound infection (frequent dressing changes and foul odor)
Necrotic tissue (loose or adherent)		
Foul odor from wound when dressing is changed		
Note the frequency of dressing changes or dressing reinforcements owing to drainage		
Wound Margins		
Check for the presence or absence of:	At least every 24 hr or at each dressing change	To detect wound infection*
Erythema and swelling extending outward >1 cm from wound margins		
Increased tenderness at wound margins		
Systemic Response		
Check for the presence or absence of elevated body temperature or WBCs or positive blood culture	Check temperature daily; if elevated, check WBCs and blood culture	To detect bacteremia

WBCs, White blood cells.

*The wounds of patients who are severely immunosuppressed or those wounds with compromised blood supply may not exhibit a typical inflammatory response to local wound infection.

often as every 2 to 4 hours to prevent further breakdown, which takes its toll on family members or other caregivers. Explain the rationale for activity changes to the patient and family, and explore alternative ways of coping with these changes.

Some patients may need to continue the use of special beds or mattress overlays at home. Although these items can be expensive, their use at home can keep the patient out of other, more-costly health care settings. Coordinate with the case manager to work with the insurance company in providing these important aids for quality patient care.

Teaching for Self-Management

Before the patient is discharged, the patient or caregiver who will be performing the wound care should demonstrate facility in removing the dressing, cleaning the wound, and applying the dressing. When choosing a dressing to be used at home, consider the patient's or caregiver's ability to apply the dressing properly. If the patient's finances are limited, also address the cost of the dressing material. Some dressings may be easier to apply and less expensive than other materials. At times, the more expensive dressing materials that require less frequent changing may be preferred. Explain the

manifestations of wound infection, and remind the patient and family to report their presence to the health care provider or wound care clinic.

Encourage the patient to eat a balanced diet with frequent high-protein snacks. Discuss diet preferences with the patient, and coordinate with the dietitian in suggesting foods that promote wound healing. Vitamin and mineral supplements may be prescribed to prevent or treat dietary deficiencies.

If the patient is incontinent, emphasize the need to keep the skin clean and dry. If bowel and bladder training are not possible, discuss the use of absorbent underpads, briefs, and topical moisture barrier creams and ointments as a method to reduce skin exposure to urine and feces.

Health Care Resources

A home care nurse may be needed for a few visits to follow wound progress after the patient is discharged. As indicated by The Joint Commission's NPSGs, the hospital nurse provides details of ulcer size and appearance and any special wound care needs in a hand-off report to the nurse in the home, who can then accurately judge changes in ulcer appearance. **Chart 27-6** is a guideline for a focused assessment of the patient with pressure ulcers.

To reduce waste and to help decrease the overall cost of treatment, emphasize proper use of dressing materials. Clean tap water and nonsterile supplies are acceptable for treatment of chronic wounds in the home and are less costly than sterile products. Nonsterile dressing materials can often be purchased in bulk from a local medical supply store at reduced cost. Stress the importance of properly cleaning reused items and of handwashing before touching any supplies.

The patient with activity restrictions may need daily assistance from a home care aide. Collaborate with a physical therapist or occupational therapist to help the patient and family continue rehabilitation efforts in the home.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

The patient described on p. 482 has developed a stage 2 pressure ulcer on his coccyx and has been discharged to home. His daughter is concerned about caring for this wound and wonders if he should stay at the hospital until the wound has completely healed.

1. What will you tell the daughter about extending the hospital stay?
2. How will you address the daughter's concerns about caring for the wound?
3. What adjustments at home may be needed to help this wound heal?
4. What resources can you suggest?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with a pressure ulcer on the basis of the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Experience progress toward wound closure healing by secondary intention as evidenced by granulation, epithelialization, and reduction or resolution of wound size
- Re-establish skin integrity and restore skin barrier function
- Remain infection free

CHART 27-6 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient at Risk for Pressure Ulcers

Assess cardiovascular status:

- Presence or absence of peripheral edema
- Hand-vein filling in the dependent position
- Neck-vein filling in the recumbent and sitting positions
- Weight gain or loss

Assess cognition and mental status:

- Level of consciousness
- Orientation to time, place, and person
- Can the patient accurately read a seven-word sentence containing no words more than three syllables?

Assess condition of skin:

- Assess general skin cleanliness
- Observe all skin areas, paying particular attention to bony prominences and those areas in greatest contact with the bed and other firm surfaces
- Measure and record any areas of redness or loss of integrity
- If possible, photograph areas of concern
- Note the presence or absence of skin tenting over the sternum or the forehead
- Note the moistness of skin and mucous membranes
- If wounds are present, remove dressings (noting condition of dressings), cleanse the wound, and compare with previous notations of wound condition:

Presence, amount, and nature of exudate

Use a disposable paper tape measure to measure wound diameter and depth

Amount (%) and type of necrotic tissue

Presence of granulation/epithelium

Presence or absence of cellulitis

Presence or absence of odor

Take the patient's temperature.

Assess the patient's understanding of illness and compliance with treatment:

- Manifestations to report to health care provider
- Drug therapy plan (correct timing and dose)
- Ambulation or positioning schedule
- Dressing changes/skin care
- Nutrition modifications (24-hour diet recall)

Assess the patient's nutritional status:

- Change in muscle mass
- Lackluster nails, sparse hair
- Recent weight loss of more than 10% of usual weight
- Impaired oral intake
- Difficulty swallowing
- Generalized edema

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

COMMON INFECTIONS

Pathophysiology

Skin infections can be bacterial, viral, or fungal. **Chart 27-7** lists key features and common locations of each type.

Bacterial Infections

Bacterial skin lesions usually start at the hair follicle, where bacteria easily collect and grow in the warm, moist environment. **Folliculitis** is a superficial infection involving only the upper portion of the follicle and is usually caused by *Staphylococcus*. The rash is raised and red and usually shows small pustules. **Furuncles** (boils) are also caused by *Staphylococcus*,

CHART 27-7 KEY FEATURES

Common Skin Infections

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS	DISTRIBUTION
Bacterial Infections Folliculitis Isolated erythematous pustules occur singly or in groups; hairs grow from centers of many of the lesions. Occasional papules are present. There is little or no associated discomfort. There is no residual scarring.	Areas of hair-bearing skin, especially buttocks, thighs, beard area, and scalp
Furuncle Small, tender, erythematous nodules become pus filled and more tender over time. Lesions may be single or multiple and also recurrent. Regional lymphadenopathy is sometimes present; fever is rare. Occasional scarring results.	Areas of hair-bearing skin, especially buttocks, thighs, abdomen, posterior neck regions, and axillae
Cellulitis Localized area of inflammation may enlarge rapidly if not treated. Redness, warmth, edema, tenderness, and pain are present. On rare occasions, blisters are present. Cellulitis is often accompanied by lymphadenopathy and fever.	Lower legs, areas of persistent lymphedema, and areas of skin trauma (e.g., leg ulcer, puncture wound)
Viral Infections Herpes Simplex Grouped vesicles are present on an erythematous base. Vesicles evolve to pustules, which rupture, weep, and crust. Older lesions may appear as punched-out, shallow erosions with well-defined borders. Lesions are associated with itching, stinging, or pain. Secondary bacterial infection with necrosis is possible in immunocompromised patients.	Type 1 classically on the face and type 2 on the genitalia, but either may develop in any area where inoculation has occurred; recurrent infections occur repeatedly in the same skin area
Herpes Zoster (Varicella Zoster) Lesions are similar in appearance to herpes simplex and also progress with weeping and crusting. Grouped lesions present unilaterally along a segment of skin following the pathway of a spinal or cranial nerve (dermatomal distribution). Eruption is preceded by deep pain and itching. Postherpetic neuralgia is common in older adults. Secondary infection with necrosis is possible in immunocompromised patients.	Anterior or posterior trunk following involved dermatome; face, sometimes involving trigeminal nerve and eye
Fungal Infections Dermatophytosis Annular or serpiginous patches are present with elevated borders, scaling, and central clearing. Itching is common. Lesions may be single or multiple.	Anywhere on the body
Candidiasis Erythematous macular eruption occurs with isolated pustules or papules at the border (satellite lesions). Candidiasis is associated with burning and itching. Oral lesions (thrush) appear as creamy white plaques on an inflamed mucous membrane. Cracks or fissures at the corners of the mouth may be present.	Skinfold areas: perineal and perianal region, axillae, beneath breasts, and between the fingers; under wet or occlusive dressings Lesions possibly present on the oral or vaginal mucous membranes

but the infection is much deeper in the follicle (Fig. 27-7). This larger, sore-looking, raised bump may or may not have a pustular “head” at its point. **Cellulitis** is a generalized infection with either *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus* and involves the deeper connective tissue.

Minor skin trauma usually occurs before the appearance of folliculitis and furuncles and may or may not contribute to the development of cellulitis. Patients may spread the infection to other parts of their bodies by scratching or rubbing the skin with fingernails that have organisms under them. Furuncles are more likely to occur in areas of heat and moisture, such as in the hair-bearing skinfold areas. Cellulitis can occur as a result of secondary bacterial infection of an open wound, or it may be unrelated to skin trauma.

An increasingly common skin problem is infection with methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) (Leung-Chen, 2008). This infection can range from mild folliculitis to extensive furuncles. It is easily spread to other body areas and to other people by direct contact with infected skin and by contact with articles of clothing, bed linens, athletic equipment, towels, and other objects used by a person with MRSA. The infection does not respond to cleansing with antibacterial soaps or most types of topical and many oral antibiotic therapies (Mendyk, 2008). If MRSA infects a wound or gains access into the blood, deep wound infection, sepsis, organ damage, and death can occur (Holcomb, 2008). The incidence of the problem is highest among adults living in communal environments, such as dormitories or prisons, and



FIG. 27-7 A furuncle.

among patients in hospitals or other health care residential settings. (See Chapter 25 for more detailed MRSA discussion.)

Viral Infections

Herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection is the most common viral infection of adult skin. HSV infections are of two types. Type 1 (HSV-1) infections cause the classic recurring cold sore. The severity of the disease increases with age and is worse when the patient is immunosuppressed. Genital herpes, caused by type 2 infection (HSV-2), is also recurrent (see Chapter 76).

After the first infection, the virus remains in the body in a dormant state in the nerve ganglia and the patient has no symptoms. Reactivation stimulates the virus to travel the pathway of sensory nerves to the skin, where lesions reappear. In healthy people, recurrence of HSV infection is triggered by physical or psychological stressors, such as dry lips, sunburn, trauma, fever, menses, and fatigue. The virus can also be spread by direct contact between an actively infected person and a susceptible host. *Autoinoculation*, or transfer of either viral type from one part of the body to another, is also possible.

The time span between episodes and the severity of each attack vary. Outbreaks of oral herpes simplex usually last 3 to 10 days. The patient sheds virus and is contagious for the first 3 to 5 days. The patient may have tingling or burning of the lip before any lesion is evident.

The most common clinical picture of HSV-1 infection is isolated or grouped vesicles on a red base. The infection can occur anywhere on the skin and may be spread by respiratory droplets or by direct contact with an active lesion or virus-containing fluid (e.g., saliva). The lesions are painful and unsightly.

Herpetic whitlow is a form of herpes simplex infection occurring on the fingertips of medical personnel who have come in contact with viral secretions. This form of herpes can easily be spread to patients. Immunosuppressed patients are at increased risk for severe and persistent eruptions that can lead to life-threatening complications.

Herpes zoster (shingles), also known as varicella zoster, is caused by reactivation of the dormant varicella-zoster virus (VZV) in patients who have previously had chickenpox. The dormant virus resides in the dorsal root ganglia of the sensory



FIG. 27-8 Herpes zoster (shingles).

nerves. The lesions of herpes zoster infections are similar to those of herpes simplex, but they have a different distribution pattern (Fig. 27-8). Multiple lesions occur in a segmental distribution on the skin area innervated by the infected nerve. Herpes zoster eruptions usually occur after several days of discomfort, which may vary from minor irritation and itching to severe, deep pain. The eruption usually lasts several weeks. **Postherpetic neuralgia**, severe pain persisting after the lesions have resolved, is a common complication in older patients. Early diagnosis of herpes zoster and prompt treatment with anti-viral drugs help decrease the duration and severity of postherpetic neuralgia.

Herpes zoster is a disease of immunosuppression, occurring most often and with greater severity in older people or in anyone who is immunosuppressed for any reason. The disorder can be accompanied by fever and malaise, often progressing to visceral involvement. *It is contagious to people who have not previously had chickenpox and have not been vaccinated against the disease.* Contagion is most likely when the lesions are present as fluid-filled blisters. Keeping patients with these lesions separated from other patients in the environment until the lesions have crusted reduces the risk for transmitting the virus to others. Complications include full-thickness skin necrosis, Bell's palsy, or eye infection, and scarring if the virus is introduced into the eye.

The vaccine *Zostavax* is available to prevent VZV reactivation and shingles. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends the vaccine for anyone older than 60 years who has a healthy immune system. In 2011 the FDA approved this drug for use starting at age 50 years (FDA, 2011). This one-time subcutaneous injection is reported to reduce the incidence of shingles by as much as 64% (Wielowski, 2009). Cost remains a factor in widespread adoption (about \$100 per dose), and few insurance carriers currently include this coverage.

Fungal Infections

Dermatophyte infections, especially superficial infections, can differ in lesion appearance, body location, and species of the infecting organism. The term *tinea* is used to

describe dermatophytoses; this term is then followed by the location description. For example *tinea pedis* involves the foot (athlete's foot), *tinea manus* involves the hands, *tinea cruris* involves the groin (jock itch), *tinea capitis* involves the head, and *tinea corporis* involves the rest of the body (ringworm).

Depending on the species, dermatophytes live mainly in the soil, on animals, and on humans. Superficial infection can start only if conditions are right for inoculation and maintenance of the organism in the outer layers of the skin.

Dermatophyte infections occur when the infecting organism comes in contact with impaired skin in a susceptible host. Most infections are spread by direct contact with infected humans or animals. Certain types of infections, such as *tinea capitis* and *tinea corporis*, can be transmitted by means of inanimate objects. For example, *tinea capitis* can be spread by sharing contaminated combs, brushes, hats, pillowcases, and similar objects with people who have poor personal hygiene.

Candida albicans, also known as *yeast infection*, is another common superficial fungal infection of skin and mucous membranes. The organism is present almost everywhere and easily grows in a warm, moist environment. Risk factors for this infection include immunosuppression, long-term antibiotic therapy, diabetes mellitus, and obesity. The incidence is higher in hot, humid climates.

Infected skin has a moist, red, irritated appearance and usually causes itching and burning. Common areas for infection include the perineum, vagina, axillae, under the breasts, and in the mouth (where it is known as *thrush*).

Prevention is aimed at keeping skinfold areas clean and dry. Turning patients and positioning to enhance airflow also aid in prevention. When the infection is present, meticulous cleanliness and the use of topical antifungal agents are needed. Inspect skinfold areas as part of the daily skin assessment on any patient with mobility problems. Teach UAP how to position patients for best exposure of infection-prone areas to the air. Stress the importance of changing bed linens and patient gowns whenever they are damp. Report the presence of infection manifestations to the health care provider.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Prevention of skin infections, especially bacterial and fungal infections, involves avoiding the offending organism and practicing good personal hygiene to remove the organism before infection can occur. *Handwashing and not sharing personal items with others are the best ways to avoid contact with some of the most easily transmitted organisms, including MRSA.* Chart 27-8 highlights strategies to teach patients and family members to prevent spread of the infection to other body areas and to other people (Mendyk, 2008).

For older adults who have had chickenpox and are, therefore, at risk for shingles (herpes zoster), a new vaccine has been approved, Zostavax. Its use is recommended for any adult older than 50 years who does not currently have shingles (FDA, 2011). It is given as a one-time subcutaneous injection. The drug should not be given as an IM or IV injection and should not be given to anyone who is immunosuppressed. The most common side effect is an injection site reaction of erythema, pain, tenderness, swelling, warmth, or pruritus.

CHART 27-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing the Spread of MRSA

- Avoid close contact with others, including participation in contact sports, until the infection has cleared.
- Take all prescribed antibiotics exactly as prescribed for the entire time prescribed.
- Keep the infected skin area covered with clean, dry bandages.
- Change the bandage whenever drainage seeps through it.
- Place soiled bandages in a plastic bag, and seal it closed before placing it in the regular trash.
- Wash your hands with soap and warm water before and after touching the infected area or handling the bandages.
- Shower (rather than bathe) daily, using an antibacterial soap.
- Wash all uninfected skin areas before washing the infected area, or use a fresh washcloth to wash the uninfected areas.
- Use each washcloth only once before laundering, and avoid using bath sponges or puffs.
- Sleep in a separate bed from others until the infection is cleared.
- Avoid sitting on or using upholstered furniture.
- Do not share clothing, washcloths, towels, athletic equipment, shavers or razors, or any other personal items.
- Clean surfaces that may have come into contact with your infected skin, drainage, or used bandages (e.g., bathroom counters, shower/bath stalls, toilet seats) with household disinfectant or bleach water mixed daily (1 tablespoon of liquid bleach to 1 quart of water).
- Wash all soiled clothing and linens with hot water and laundry detergent. Dry clothing either in a hot dryer or outside on a clothesline in the sun.
- Urge family members and close friends to shower daily with an antibacterial soap.
- If another person assists you in changing the bandages, make certain he or she uses disposable gloves, pulls them off inside out when finished, places them with the soiled bandages in a sealed bag, and washes his or her hands thoroughly.

MRSA, Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

To differentiate among the possible causes of the lesions, concentrate on risk factors for each type of infection. If the location and appearance of lesions suggest a bacterial infection, explore any recent history of skin trauma as well as past or current staphylococcal or streptococcal infections. Determine living conditions, home sanitation, personal hygiene habits, and leisure or sport activities. Ask whether fever and malaise are also present.

Lesions appearing on the lips, in the mouth, or in the genital region are more likely to be a possible viral infection. Ask about:

- A history of similar lesions in the same location
- Presence of burning, tingling, or pain
- Recent stress factors that preceded the outbreak
- Recent contact with an infected person

Information that the same type of lesions has occurred before is important in helping differentiate viral from bacterial lesions. If herpes zoster is suspected, ask whether the patient has had chickenpox in the past and about a history of

shingles. Also determine whether the patient has received the shingles prevention vaccination *Zostavax*.

The type of information you should ask a patient with probable dermatophyte infection depends on the location of the lesions. If tinea corporis or tinea capitis is present, assess the social and environmental factors that may have contributed to infection, such as direct contact with an infected person, poor personal hygiene practices, or frequent contact with animals. If tinea cruris and tinea pedis are suspected, ask about the type and frequency of athletic activities.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Because most skin infections are contagious, take precautions to prevent the spread of infection when performing a physical assessment. Chart 27-7 lists the manifestations of common skin infections.

Laboratory Assessment

When pustules are present in bacterial infections, the infecting organism is confirmed by swab culture of the purulent material. Blood cultures may be helpful, especially if the patient also has a fever and malaise.

Viral infections are confirmed by *Tzanck smear* and viral culture. Tzanck smear is a cytologic examination in which cells from the base of a lesion are examined under a microscope. The presence of multinucleated giant cells confirms a viral infection, although the exact virus is not identified.

For suspected fungal infections, scales from the lesions are scraped, prepared with potassium hydroxide (KOH), and examined under a microscope. The presence of fungal hyphae confirms the diagnosis. In addition to a KOH test, a fungal culture may be needed. Occasionally a skin biopsy is performed to obtain organisms for identification.

INTERVENTIONS

Most skin infections heal well with nonsurgical management. Surgery may be required when an infectious agent is present in deep tissue layers. *Priority nursing interventions focus on patient and family education to prevent infection spread to other body areas or to other people (see Chart 27-8).* Meticulous skin care is needed for prevention of infection spread. In some instances, drug therapy is needed.

Skin care with proper cleansing is the most effective intervention. Teach patients with bacterial infections to bathe daily with an antibacterial soap. Instruct them to not squeeze any pustules or crusts but to remove them gently so that topical drugs can be more easily absorbed. Teach the patient to apply warm compresses twice a day to furuncles or areas of cellulitis to increase comfort.

Applying astringent compresses, such as Burow's solution, to viral lesions for 20 minutes three times a day promotes crust formation and healing. Compresses also relieve the irritation and pain associated with herpetic infection. Teach the patient to avoid constricting garments that rub lesions and increase irritation.

Most superficial skin infections resolve more quickly if the involved skin is allowed to dry between treatments. Excessive moisture, especially if occluded by dressings, clothing, or bedding, promotes growth of organisms. If the patient is bedridden, position him or her for optimal air circulation to the area and avoid occlusive dressings or garments.

Transmission-Based Precautions may be needed to reduce the spread of organisms to other people. For most superficial bacterial infections, proper handwashing prevents cross-contamination. However, when hospitalized patients are colonized with *Staphylococcus* that is resistant to antibiotic therapy, strict adherence to isolation procedures is necessary.

Of the dermatophyte infections, tinea capitis, tinea corporis, and tinea pedis are most easily transmitted to others. Teach patients to avoid sharing personal items, such as hairbrushes, articles of clothing, or footwear. Repeated infections transmitted by dogs or cats may mean that patients have to get rid of a family pet to control infections.

Drug therapy for superficial infections involves topical agents. Mild bacterial infections of the skin usually resolve with topical antibacterial treatment. Patients with extensive infections, especially if fever or lymphadenopathy is present, require systemic antibiotic therapy. The most common systemic drugs used for bacterial skin infections are penicillins and cephalosporins. For those who are allergic to drugs from these classes, tetracyclines, macrolides, or aminoglycoside antibiotics may be used. For patients infected with MRSA or other drug-resistant organisms, drug therapy may involve IV vancomycin or oral linezolid or clindamycin. Nursing implications related to therapy with these drugs are presented in Chart 27-9.

Acyclovir (Zovirax), valacyclovir (Valtrex), or famciclovir (Famvir) is used for the treatment of viral infections. Topical treatment decreases the numbers of active viruses on the skin surface and reduces pain in herpetic infections and localized lesions in immunocompromised patients. Topical treatment is of little benefit in recurrent infection. IV administration is limited to severe primary infections and immunosuppressed patients with symptoms of systemic infection.

Topical antifungal agents are used for patients with dermatophyte and yeast infections. An imidazole cream is applied to the infected skin at least twice a day until the lesions have cleared. To prevent recurrence, therapy is usually continued for 1 to 2 weeks after clearing. In some instances, antifungal powders may also help suppress fungal growth. For widespread or resistant fungal infections, systemic antifungal agents, such as ketoconazole (Nizoral), are given.

CUTANEOUS ANTHRAX

Cutaneous anthrax is an infection caused by the spores of the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis*. In the United States, the most common risk factor is contact with an infected animal. Those most at risk for cutaneous anthrax include farm workers, veterinarians, and tannery and wool workers. This organism has now become a tool for terrorism.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Consider the possibility of bioterrorism whenever lesions consistent with cutaneous anthrax appear in patients who do not have a history of exposure to infected animals.

The infection can be confined to the skin, or it may be systemic. At first a raised vesicle appears on an exposed body area such as the head or arms (Fig. 27-9). The lesion may itch

CHART 27-9 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Methicillin-Resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA)

DRUG AND DOSAGE	NURSING IMPLICATIONS	RATIONALE
Vancomycin (Lyphocin, Vancocin) 500 mg IV every 6 hr	Ensure that IV access is patent. Administer drug over at least 60 min and never as a bolus or by IV push. Observe patient for widespread flushing. Check IV site at least every 2 hr for a change in blood return, redness or pain, or the feeling of hard or "cordlike" veins above the site. Ask the patient about any diarrhea or presence of watery stools.	If extravasated, drug is highly tissue damaging. When given more rapidly, drug causes hypotension, dysrhythmias, and histamine release. Drug triggers a histamine release causing "red man syndrome." Drug is irritating to veins and can trigger thrombophlebitis.
Clindamycin (Cleocin) 150-300 mg orally every 6 hr or 300-600 mg IM or IV 2-4 times daily	When given IV, administer slowly (over 30-60 min). Check liver function tests. Ask the patient about any diarrhea or presence of watery stools	Rapid administration can induce shock and cardiac arrest. Drug can induce liver damage. Drug changes the intestinal flora and can lead to pseudomembranous colitis.
Linezolid (Zyvox) 400-600 mg orally or IV every 8-12 hr	Take blood pressure at least every 4 hr, especially for anyone who has hypertension. Check IV site at least every 2 hr for a change in blood return, redness or pain, or the feeling of hard or "cordlike" veins above the site. Ask the patient about any diarrhea or presence of watery stools. Observe for increased bruising or oozing of blood from gums or at injection sites.	Drug constricts blood vessels and may trigger hypertensive crisis. Drug is irritating to veins and can trigger thrombophlebitis. Drug changes the intestinal flora and can lead to pseudomembranous colitis. Drug reduces platelet and red blood cell numbers, increasing the risk for bleeding.

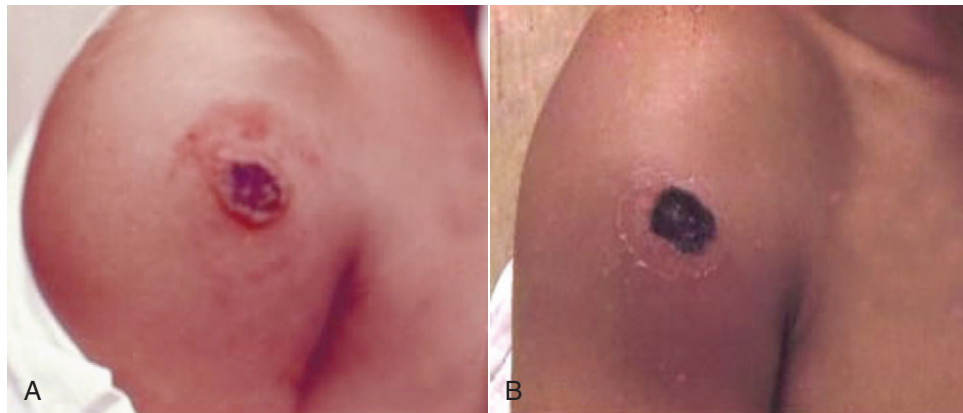


FIG. 27-9 Cutaneous anthrax. Note ulcer with vesicular ring, induration, and erythema (A). As eschar forms, induration lessens, surrounding desquamation occurs, but erythema persists (B).

and often resembles an insect bite. Within a few days, the center of the vesicle becomes hemorrhagic and sinks inward. An area of necrosis and ulceration begins. Usually this process is painless. The tissue around the wound swells and can become quite edematous. With necrosis, an eschar forms (see Fig. 27-9). The two features that distinguish anthrax lesions from insect bites or other skin lesions are that it is painless and that eschar forms regardless of treatment. Patients may have only one lesion, or there may be multiple lesions, usually in the same body area.

Some patients develop glandular symptoms with cutaneous anthrax. The entire area becomes edematous and tender. Fever and chills may be present, as may enlarged lymph nodes.

Diagnosis is made based on the appearance of the lesions, a culture that is positive for the organism, or the presence of anthrax antibodies in the patient's blood. Cultures are most easily obtained in the vesicle stage. Once the eschar is formed, a biopsy may be needed for culture. Blood cultures should be obtained from patients who have a fever.

Oral antibiotics for 60 days are indicated for patients who have no edema or systemic symptoms and whose lesions are not located on the head or neck. The antibiotics of choice are ciprofloxacin (Cipro) or doxycycline (Doryx, Vibramycin). For patients who have a fever, have lesions on the head or neck, are pregnant, or have extensive edema, antibiotics are given IV and then followed by an oral course of 60 days.

PARASITIC DISORDERS

Parasitic skin disorders occur most often in patients with poor hygiene and substandard living conditions or in those who are homeless. Any patient who shows obvious signs of a self-care deficit should be examined for these contagious parasitic infections.

PEDICULOSIS

Pathophysiology

Pediculosis is an infestation by human lice: *pediculosis capitis* (head lice), *pediculosis corporis* (body lice), and *pediculosis pubis* (pubic, or crab, lice). Human lice are oval and 2 to 4 mm long. The female louse lays hundreds of eggs, called *nits*, which are deposited at the hair shaft base in hair-bearing areas.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The most common symptom of pediculosis is itching (**pruritus**). Excoriation from scratching may or may not be present. In addition to causing discomfort, these parasites can also be carriers of disease (e.g., typhus, recurrent fever).

Pediculosis capitis occurs more commonly in women than in men, especially on the sides and back of the scalp. Itching, the result of biting of the scalp by the parasites, is intense. It is most commonly transmitted by children and pets. A secondary infection may also be present from scratching.

Because the louse is difficult to see, examine the scalp for visible white flecks attached to the hair shaft near the scalp—the nits of the female louse. Matting and crusting of the scalp and a foul odor indicate a probable secondary infection.

Pediculosis corporis is caused by lice that live and lay eggs in the seams of clothing. The parasites also cause itching. The only visible sign of infestation may be excoriations on the trunk, abdomen, or extremities (Rushing, 2008).

Pediculosis pubis causes intense itching of the vulvar or perirectal region. Pubic lice, which are more compact and crablike in appearance than body lice, can be contracted from infested bed linens or during sexual intercourse with an infected person. Although these lice are usually found in the genital region, they can also infest the axillae, the eyelashes, and the chest.

The treatment of pediculosis is chemical killing of the parasites with topical sprays, creams, shampoos, such as permethrin (Elimite), lindane (Bio-Well, Kwell, Kwellada), or topical malathion (Ovide, Prioderm). Oral agents may also be used, such as ivermectin (Stromectol). In the case of pediculosis capitis, areas where the patient's head has rested (e.g., on pillows or chair backs) are also treated. Clothing and bed linens should be washed in hot water with detergent or dry-cleaned. The use of a fine-toothed comb helps remove nits from an infested scalp but alone does not cure the infection. In all cases of louse infestation, social contacts are treated when possible.

SCABIES

Scabies is a contagious skin disease caused by mite infestations. Scabies infections are transmitted by close and prolonged contact with an infested companion or infested



FIG. 27-10 Scabies. Note the lines indicating burrowing of the organism under the skin.

bedding. Infestation is common among patients with poor hygiene or crowded living conditions. The scabies mite is carried by pets and is found among schoolchildren, homeless people, and institutionalized older patients.

Scabies is manifested by curved or linear ridges in the skin (Fig. 27-10). The itching is more intense than with pediculosis, and patients often report that the itching becomes unbearable at night.

The visible white skin ridges are formed by burrowing of the mite into the outer skin layers. Closely examine the skin between the fingers and on the palms and inner aspects of the wrists, where these ridges are most common. A hypersensitivity reaction to the mite results in excoriated erythematous papules, pustules, and crusted lesions on the elbows, nipples, lower abdomen, buttocks, and thighs and in the axillary folds. Male patients can also have excoriated papules on the penis.

Infestation is confirmed by taking a scraping of a lesion and examining it under the microscope for mites and eggs. Close contacts also should be examined for possible infestation.

Treatment involves the use of scabicides, such as permethrin (Acticin), lindane (Kwell, Kildane, Scabene, Thionex), malathion (Ovide), or benzyl benzoate (Ascabiol) (Munn, 2008; Snow, 2007). Laundering clothes and personal items with hot water and detergent is sufficient to eliminate the mites.

BEDBUGS

A common emerging parasite is the bedbug, *Cimex lectularius*. Infestations are becoming increasingly common as a result of travel and resistance to pesticides (Sutton & Thomas, 2008; Willson, 2011). This pest does not live on humans; however, it feeds on human blood for its survival. Although bedbugs do not carry disease, the bite usually causes an itchy discomfort, and when a person is bitten extensively, anemia may result (Pritchard & Hwang, 2009). The most common

mode of infestation is carrying the “hitch-hiking” bug home from an infested environment such as a hotel room. This problem is not related to socioeconomic level or to a lack of cleanliness.

One myth is that the insect is so small that it cannot be seen by the human eye. The adult bedbug is the approximate size, shape, and color of an apple seed. After feeding, it may double in size and have a red or black color. The insect bites a human host, usually at night, injects saliva that contains an anticoagulant, and then sucks blood for 3 to 10 minutes. The bite area resembles a mosquito or flea bite with a raised bite mark surrounded by a wheal. The degree of itching and redness is related to how allergic the person is to the insect's saliva. There is no particular body area more susceptible to bites; however, one insect can bite multiple times, resulting in clusters of bite marks.

Management of the patient with bedbug bites is symptomatic for discomfort from itching, usually with topical antihistamines. When the discomfort is more widespread, systemic antihistamines may be used. For patients with severe allergic reactions, more extensive anti-inflammatory therapy with corticosteroids may be needed. When scratching has resulted in infection, topical antibiotic therapy may be needed. Because humans do not harbor the insect, the usual topical insecticides are not needed.

Bedbugs can live almost anywhere, hiding in cracks and crevices after feeding. They can live and lay their eggs in soft upholstery or in wooden crevices. Unlike many other parasites, after feeding they leave the host. A common telltale feature is the presence of blood spots on bed linen or clothing from feeding. Often, the bugs themselves can be found hiding under the welting around the mattress.

Eradicating the infestation and preventing re-infestations require considerable effort and can be frustrating. Profoundly infested upholstered furniture may need to be removed. New furniture and bedding should not be placed in the home until the infestation is eradicated or these items will just become new homes for bedbugs. Heat can kill the insects and their eggs. Washable clothing and linens can be cleaned by laundering them in hot water and drying them with the dryer set on high for at least 5 minutes. Items that cannot be washed in water can be bagged in dark plastic and left in hot sunshine for hours to raise the temperature high enough (above 98° F) to kill the insect. Steam cleaning of carpets and drapes can eliminate the insects hiding in these areas. However, the home environment itself usually needs the extensive eradication efforts of a licensed professional pest control company with experience in the management of bedbugs.

COMMON INFLAMMATIONS

Pathophysiology

The inflammatory skin conditions have many nonspecific manifestations, including severe itching, lesions with indistinct borders, and different distribution patterns. The cause of the eruption may or may not be identifiable. Inflammatory rashes can evolve from acute to chronic conditions.

Most inflammatory rashes are related to allergic immune responses. The responses may be triggered by external skin exposure to allergens or by exposure of the internal environment to allergens and irritants. The result is tissue destruction or skin changes induced by antibodies or cellular mediators

of the immune system. (A more detailed description of these immune mechanisms is presented in [Chapter 19](#).)

The specific cause of inflammatory rashes is not always known. When this is the case, the catch-all diagnosis of *non-specific eczematous dermatitis*, or *eczema*, is often used.

Contact dermatitis is an acute or chronic rash caused either by direct contact with an irritant substance, resulting in toxic injury to the skin, or by contact with an allergen, resulting in a cell-mediated immune reaction.

Atopic dermatitis is a chronic rash that occurs with respiratory allergies and atopic skin disease. The mechanism is unknown, but atopic dermatitis is made worse by factors that include dry or irritated skin, food allergies, chemicals, or stress. (Atopic reactions are described in [Chapter 22](#).)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Because all the inflammatory skin eruptions appear similar, data collected from the patient are needed to identify the cause. Inflammatory skin problems differ from eczematous dermatitis in the chronicity of the disease, the distribution of lesions, and associated symptoms. [Chart 27-10](#) lists the manifestations of many types of inflammatory skin conditions. Diagnosis is based on patient history and clinical data.

If the cause of the rash is identified, avoidance therapy is used to reverse the reaction and clear the rash. For example, if a new soap for handwashing causes contact dermatitis of the hands, teach patients to avoid that irritating substance. Even when the cause is unclear, certain irritants may cause the rash to worsen and increase discomfort. Additional interventions promote comfort through suppression of the inflammatory response.

Steroid therapy with topical, intralesional, or systemic steroids is prescribed to suppress inflammation. The vehicle used to deliver a topical steroid depends on the body area involved. Because a side effect of oral corticosteroids (e.g., prednisone) is adrenal suppression, patients receiving long-term therapy must taper their drug dosages rather than stop them abruptly.

Remember that corticosteroids never cure the inflammation. During active disease, these drugs reduce manifestations and relieve associated discomfort. Moisten dressings with warm tap water and place over topical steroids for short periods to increase absorption. Avoid applying topical steroids under occlusive dressings unless specifically prescribed by the health care provider.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Caution patients not to apply topical corticosteroids to potentially infected skin lesions anywhere on the body, but especially on the face. These agents suppress the local immune response and can worsen the infection. The skin on the face is thinner and absorbs topical steroids more quickly, making the patient more vulnerable to steroid side effects.

Avoid applying oil-based ointments and pastes to the sweaty skinfold areas because maceration and blocking of pores may result in folliculitis. Water-soluble creams are the better drug formulations for these areas. Lotions and gels prevent matting of the hair and are more appropriate for

CHART 27-10 KEY FEATURES

Common Inflammatory Skin Conditions**CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS****Nonspecific Eczematous Dermatitis**

Evolution of lesions from vesicles to weeping papules and plaques.
Lichenification occurs in chronic disease.
Oozing, crusting, fissuring, excoriation, or scaling may be present.
Itching is common.

Contact Dermatitis

Localized eczematous eruption with well-defined, geometric margins that are consistent with contact by an irritant or allergen.
Usually seen in the acute form, but may become chronic if exposure is repeated.
Allergy to plants (e.g., poison ivy or oak) classically occurs as linear streaks of vesicles or papules.

Atopic Dermatitis

Hallmark in adults is lichenification with scaling and excoriation.
Extremely itchy.
Face involvement is seen as dry skin with mild to moderate erythema, perioral pallor, and skinfolds beneath the eyes (Dennie-Morgan lines).
Associated with linear markings on the palms.

Drug Eruption

Bright red erythematous macules and papules are found. Skin blisters in extreme cases.
Lesions tend to be confluent in large areas.
Moderately itchy.
Fever is rare.
Dehydration and hypothermia can occur with extensive involvement.
Condition clears only after offending drug has been discontinued.

DISTRIBUTION

Anywhere on the body; localized eczema commonly involves the hands or feet.

Cosmetic/perfume allergy: head and neck.
Hair product allergy: scalp.
Shoe/rubber allergy: dorsum of feet.
Nickel allergy: earlobes.
Mouthwash/toothpaste allergy: perioral region.
Airborne contact allergy (e.g., paint, ragweed): generalized.

Face, neck, upper chest, and antecubital and popliteal fossae.

Generalized.
Involvement begins on trunk, proceeds distally (legs are the last to be involved).

hairy areas, such as the scalp. Stiff ointments or pastes, such as thick zinc oxide pastes, are applied to localized areas because they cling to the skin where applied and resist spreading to uninvolved skin.

Antihistamines provide some relief of itching but may not keep the patient totally symptom free. The sedative effects of antihistamines are often better tolerated if the patient takes most of the daily dose near bedtime. Teach patients to avoid driving or operating heavy machinery if these drugs are taken during the day.

Comfort measures such as cool, moist compresses and lukewarm baths with bath additives have a soothing effect, decrease inflammation, and help débride crusts and scales. Colloidal oatmeal preparations, tar extracts, cornstarch, or oils are often added to baths to relieve itching.

PSORIASIS**Pathophysiology**

Psoriasis is a lifelong disorder that has exacerbations and remissions. Even though psoriasis cannot be cured, patients can usually achieve control of symptoms with proper treatment.

Psoriasis is a scaling disorder with underlying dermal inflammation. The problem is an abnormality in the growth of epidermal cells in the outer skin layers. Normally, cells at the basement membrane of the epidermis take about 28 days to reach the outermost layer where they are shed. In a person with psoriasis, the rate of cell division is speeded up so that cells are shed every 4 to 5 days.

Psoriasis appears to be an autoimmune reaction resulting from overstimulation of the immune system. Langerhans' cells in the skin respond to antigens, leading to T-lymphocyte activation. These cells target the keratinocytes, causing increased cell division and plaque formation.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

A strong genetic predisposition has been recognized in at least 30% of cases, and several genes appear to be involved in expression of the disease. It is likely that the disorder is multifactorial, in that a genetic predisposition exists but environmental factors influence disease occurrence, disease severity, and response to different treatments. Always ask about a family history when assessing the patient with psoriasis.

For many people with psoriasis, there is no family history of the disease. Many environmental factors lead to outbreaks and influence the severity of clinical symptoms, but these vary from person to person. Triggering factors may be local or systemic. A psoriatic lesion may appear after skin trauma (Koebner's phenomenon, in which a previously injured area is more susceptible to development of cancer or chronic skin problems) such as surgery, sunburn, or excoriation.

Patients with psoriasis often improve in warmer climates where there is more exposure to sunlight. Systemic factors that can aggravate the disease include infections (severe streptococcal throat infection, *Candida* infection, upper respiratory tract infection), hormonal changes (during puberty and menopause), stress, drugs (lithium, beta-blocking agents, indomethacin, antimalarials), obesity, and the presence of other diseases (Christopher & Meires, 2008).

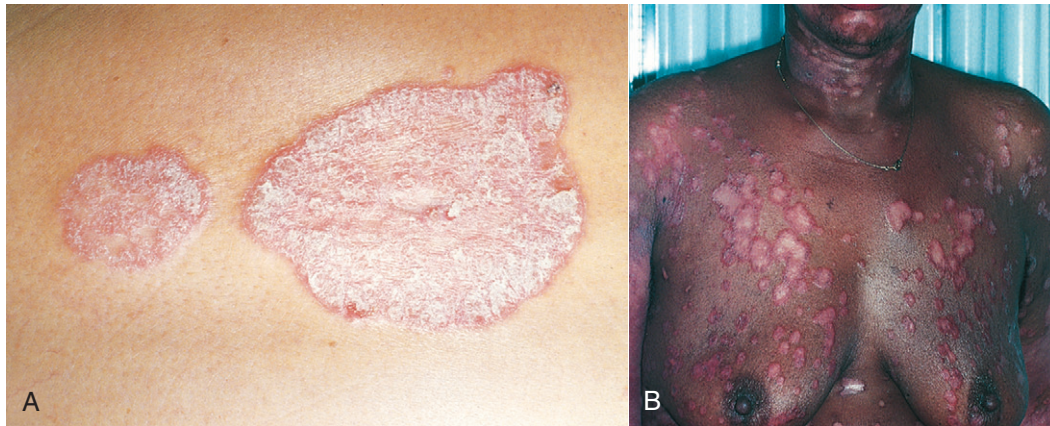


FIG. 27-11 **A**, Psoriasis vulgaris in a white patient. **B**, Psoriasis vulgaris in a patient with dark skin.

Some patients with psoriasis also develop a debilitating arthritis. Psoriatic arthritis may be mild or can lead to severe joint changes similar to those seen in rheumatoid arthritis. The association of arthritis with psoriasis strongly suggests that psoriasis is really a systemic connective tissue disorder rather than a simple skin disease. See [Chapter 20](#) for more discussion of connective tissue disorders and arthritis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

In addition to collecting routine epidemiologic data, ask the patient about any family history of psoriasis, including the age at onset, a description of the disease progression, and the pattern of recurrences. Ask the patient to describe the current flare-up of psoriasis, including whether the onset was gradual or sudden, where the lesions first appeared, whether there have been any changes in severity over time, and whether fever and itching are present. Explore possible precipitating factors, including recent skin trauma, upper respiratory tract infection, recent surgeries, menopause status, past and current use of drugs, and recent stress. Ask about previous interventions and the effectiveness of each in reducing symptoms.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The appearance of psoriasis and its course vary among patients. Typically during flare-ups of the disease, lesions thicken and extend to involve new areas of the body. As psoriasis responds to treatment, lesions become thinner with less scaling.

Psoriasis vulgaris is the most common type of psoriasis, with thick, reddened papules or plaques covered by silvery white scales ([Fig. 27-11](#)). Borders between the lesions and normal skin are sharply defined. Patches are less red and moister in skinfold areas because of sweat-induced maceration. Lesions are usually present in the same areas on both sides of the body (bilateral distribution). The more common sites are the scalp, elbows, trunk, knees, sacrum, and outside surfaces of the limbs. The facial skin is rarely affected. The

patient may have only a few isolated lesions, or the entire skin surface may be affected.

Exfoliative psoriasis (erythrodermic psoriasis) is an explosively eruptive and inflammatory form of the disease with generalized erythema and scaling. It does not form obvious lesions. Examine for signs of dehydration and hypothermia or hyperthermia related to this severe inflammatory reaction. The increased blood vessel dilation and blood flow to the skin can reduce fluid volume through evaporative water loss from the skin surface.

Palmoplantar pustulosis (PPP) is a form of psoriasis that causes pustules on the palms of the hands and soles of the feet. PPP has multiple pustules scattered on the fleshy surfaces of the hands and feet among reddened hyperkeratotic plaques. Pustules turn brown, peel, and eventually crust over. The course of the disease is usually cyclic, with new outbreaks of pustules occurring after older lesions have resolved. PPP is difficult to treat and is associated with social and physical disabilities that negatively impact quality of life ([Frankel & Goldenburg, 2010](#)).

INTERVENTIONS

The different approaches to therapy are based on the extent of disease, the patient's distress, the physician's preference, and the response of the psoriasis to treatment. Patients must understand that no cure for psoriasis exists yet. Therapy is aimed at reducing cell proliferation and inflammation. *Priority nursing strategies include teaching the patient about the disease and its treatment and providing emotional support for the changes in body image often experienced with psoriasis.*

Topical Therapy

The topical agents used to treat psoriasis are topical steroids, topical tar and anthralin preparations, and ultraviolet (UV) light.

Corticosteroids have anti-inflammatory actions. When applied to psoriatic lesions, corticosteroids suppress cell division. The effectiveness of a topical steroid depends on its potency and ability to be absorbed into the skin. The more potent agents are used to treat patients with psoriasis.

Teach patients to enhance the skin penetration of these drugs by applying the steroid directly to the skin and, when possible, to use warm, moist dressings and an occlusive outer

wrap of plastic (film, gloves, booties, or similar garments) if specifically prescribed.

Tar preparations applied to the skin suppress cell division and reduce inflammation. These drugs are available as solutions, ointments, lotions, gels, and shampoos. The use of coal tar ointments is usually limited to inpatient care and specialized outpatient treatment clinics because these ointments are messy, cause staining, and have an unpleasant odor.

Topical therapy with anthralin (Anthraforte , Dritho-creme, Lasan), a hydrocarbon similar in action to tar, also relieves chronic psoriasis. These drugs can be used alone or in combination with coal tar baths and UV light.

Teach the patient to apply the high-potency anthralin, suspended in a stiff paste, to each lesion for short periods (not exceeding 2 hours). The drug is a strong irritant and can cause chemical burns. Remind the patient to check for local tissue reaction and to take care to prevent this drug from coming into contact with uninvolved skin.

Other topical therapies can be effective for many patients with mild to moderate psoriasis. These drugs include calcipotriene (Dovonex), a synthetic form of vitamin D that regulates skin cell division, and tazarotene (Tazorac). Tazorac is **teratogenic** (can cause birth defects) even when used topically. Teach women of childbearing age using this drug to adhere to strict contraception measures.

Ultraviolet Light Therapy

Ultraviolet (UV) radiation is a physical agent commonly used as a topical treatment in many skin conditions, including psoriasis. Ultraviolet B (UVB) light, which produces more energy, is responsible for the obvious biologic effects of the sun, such as burning. Ultraviolet A (UVA) light emits a lower level of energy, requiring longer exposure time before cellular destruction occurs. Although the sun is an inexpensive source of UV radiation, better availability and intensity control occur with the use of artificial light sources. These sources include lamps or cabinets containing UV tubes. *The use of commercial tanning beds is not recommended for the patient with psoriasis.*

Ultraviolet therapy is limited by the potency and distance of the source from the skin, as well as the exposure time. Potency and distance remain constant, and the time of exposure is gradually increased to achieve a mild suntan effect without burning or tenderness. The patient's skin type, ranging from fair to darkly pigmented, affects his or her risk for burning and determines the exposure times. Because of the extremely high intensity of most artificial UVB light sources, treatments are measured in seconds of exposure; patients must wear eye protection during treatment.

Teach patients to inspect the skin carefully each day for signs of overexposure. If patients have tenderness on palpation and have clinical signs of severe erythema or blister formation, notify the health care provider before therapy is resumed.

Psoralen and UVA (PUVA) treatments involve the ingestion of a photosensitizing agent (psoralen) 2 hours before exposure to UVA light. Because UVA light produces less energy than UVB light, the onset of erythema and skin darkening may be delayed as long as 96 hours after exposure. Treatments are limited to two or three times a week and are not given on consecutive days. Exposure is gradually increased until tanning occurs. As with UVB exposure, dosages are

adjusted according to the erythema reaction of normal skin as well as the response of psoriatic lesions.

Teach the patient to check for redness with edema and tenderness. If these symptoms are present, treatment must be interrupted until they subside. Because of the strong photosensitizing properties of psoralen, patients must wear dark glasses during treatment and for the remainder of the day. Long-term side effects of both UVB and PUVA therapies include premature aging of the skin, actinic keratosis, and an increased risk for skin cancer.

Systemic Therapy

A better understanding of the role of the immune system in the cause of psoriasis has led to biologic therapies to manage moderate to severe plaque disease. Biologic agents alter the immune response, thus preventing overstimulation of keratinocytes. Although precautions vary with the specific mechanism of action, these drugs induce immunosuppression and patients are at an increased risk for serious infection.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Instruct patients to discontinue the biologic agent and notify the health care provider immediately if manifestations of infection occur.

Biologics approved by the FDA for the treatment of moderate to severe plaque psoriasis include adalimumab (Humira), alefacept (Amevive), etanercept (Enbrel), infliximab (Remicade), and ustekinumab (Stelara). None of these drugs should be used by patients who are pregnant or breast-feeding ([Chart 27-11](#)).

Teach the patient or caregiver to administer injectable drugs. Demonstrate the proper techniques for drawing up the drug aseptically, selecting an appropriate site, and performing the actual injection. Have the patient or caregiver perform a return demonstration. Reinforce correct techniques, and help the patient or caregiver practice until he or she is proficient at the skill. Infliximab is indicated for severe, disabling psoriasis and is administered by IV infusion, usually in an outpatient infusion center or physician's office where the patient can be closely monitored during the infusion.

Other systemic treatment for the patient whose disease is resistant to topical therapy includes a cytotoxic agent, such as low-dose methotrexate (Folex, Mexate). Because of the liver-damaging side effects of methotrexate, liver studies are recommended before therapy is started and at least yearly thereafter. Small doses are usually effective in clearing the lesions. This treatment is avoided for patients who have liver damage, bone marrow suppression, or impaired kidney function. In addition, this drug is also teratogenic and should not be used during pregnancy or breast-feeding.

Additional systemic drugs that induce immunosuppression may be used when lesions do not respond to other therapies. Such agents include cyclosporine (Sandimmune) and azathioprine (Imuran). The many health risks associated with these therapies must be considered along with the potential benefits.

Emotional Support

Often patients' self-esteem suffers not only because of the presence of skin lesions but also because of the

CHART 27-11 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Plaque Psoriasis

AGENT	ROUTE	DOSE	FREQUENCY
adalimumab (Humira)	Subcutaneous	Loading dose: 80 mg Maintenance dose: 40 mg	Loading dose followed by maintenance dose every other week starting 1 week after the loading dose.
alefacept (Amevive)	Intramuscular	15 mg	Once a week for 12 weeks followed by a 12-week drug-free interval. Cycle may be repeated based on response.
etanercept (Enbrel)	Subcutaneous	50 mg	Twice weekly for 3 months followed by once-a-week injections.
infliximab (Remicade)	Intravenous	5 mg/kg	Infusions at 0, 2, and 6 weeks, then every 8 weeks.
ustekinumab (Stelara)	Subcutaneous	90 mg	Initial dose 90 mg; second dose 4 weeks later Maintenance injections of 90 mg subcutaneously every 12 weeks starting at week 16 after initial dose.

unpleasantness of some of the treatments. Tar not only looks dirty but also has a very unpleasant odor. Bed linens and pajamas become stained, further discouraging social interaction.

Encourage the patient and family members to express their feelings about having an incurable skin problem that can alter appearance. Urge patients to contact other people with the disorder. Group discussions with family members or significant others can increase the socialization process.

The use of touch takes on an added significance for patients with psoriasis. For example, shake the patient's hand during an introduction or place a hand on the patient's shoulder when explaining a procedure. *Do not wear gloves during these social interactions. Touch, more than any other gesture, communicates acceptance of the person and the skin problem.*

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client prescribed adalimumab (Humira)?

- A. Drinking a full glass of water when taking each drug dose
- B. Reducing the drug dosage when psoriasis symptoms decrease
- C. Reporting symptoms of infection to the prescriber immediately
- D. Avoiding sunlight and tanning beds for the duration of drug therapy

BENIGN TUMORS**Cysts**

Cysts are firm, flesh-colored nodules that contain liquid or semisolid material. Unlike cancerous growths, which are hard and firmly attached to underlying structures, a cyst moves and indents on palpation. Often there is a central pore through which the material can be expressed if the lesion is squeezed.

The most common cyst is an epidermal inclusion cyst. These growths are often asymptomatic and can be located anywhere, but they occur most often on the head and trunk. The most common cyst on the scalp is the sebaceous (pilar) cyst.

If the patient wants to have a cyst removed for any reason, surgical excision with primary closure is performed with a local anesthetic agent. The surgeon removes the entire cyst wall during excision to prevent recurrence.



FIG. 27-12 Seborrheic keratosis.

A **pilonidal cyst** is a lesion of the sacral area that often has a sinus track extending into deeper tissue structures. As this cyst fills or becomes infected, it can become tender. An incision and drainage can be performed, but the cyst is likely to refill. The cure for this cyst is surgical removal, and the area heals by second intention, which may take 4 to 8 weeks.

Seborrheic Keratoses

Seborrheic keratoses are a common problem of older people. These benign epidermal neoplasms are gradually acquired after middle age and are often mistaken for actinic keratoses or pigmented skin cancers. They may occur anywhere but are more commonly found on the face, neck, upper trunk, and arms.

On inspection, seborrheic keratoses appear as multiple “pasted-on” papules or plaques ranging in color from flesh tones to brown or black (Fig. 27-12). The surface of the lesion has a rough, greasy, wartlike texture on palpation.

Seborrheic keratoses are removed only for cosmetic reasons or if a lesion becomes irritated from friction. Cryosurgery or curettage is performed.

Keloids

A keloid is overgrowth of a scar with an excessive accumulation of collagen and ground substance. Keloids are more common in darker-skinned people and often arise at sites of surgical incisions, burns, and ear piercing (Fig. 27-13).

On physical examination, a keloid is an elevated, protruding lesion that extends beyond the edges of the original injury. These lesions can be cosmetically disfiguring. Treatment is

TABLE 27-6 COMMON SKIN CANCERS

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS	DISTRIBUTION	COURSE
Actinic Keratosis (Premalignant) Small (1-10 mm) macule or papule with dry, rough, adherent yellow or brown scale Base may be erythematous Associated with yellow, wrinkled, weather-beaten skin Thick, indurated keratoses more likely to be malignant	Cheeks, temples, forehead, ears, neck, backs of hands, and forearms	May disappear spontaneously or reappear after treatment. Slow progression to squamous cell carcinoma is possible.
Squamous Cell Carcinoma Firm, nodular lesion topped with a crust or with a central area of ulceration Indurated margins Fixation to underlying tissue with deep invasion	Sun-exposed areas, especially head, neck, and lower lip Sites of chronic irritation or injury (e.g., scars, irradiated skin, burns, leg ulcers)	Rapid invasion with metastasis via the lymphatics occurs in 10% of cases. Larger tumors are more prone to metastasis.
Basal Cell Carcinoma Pearly papule with a central crater and rolled, waxy borders Telangiectasias and pigment flecks visible on close inspection	Sun-exposed areas, especially head, neck, and central portion of face	Metastasis is rare. May cause local tissue destruction. 50% recurrence rate related to inadequate treatment.
Melanoma Irregularly shaped, pigmented papule or plaque Variegated colors, with red, white, and blue tones	Can occur anywhere on the body, especially where nevi (moles) or birthmarks are evident Commonly found on upper back and lower legs Soles of feet and palms in dark-skinned people	Horizontal growth phase followed by vertical growth phase. Rapid invasion and metastasis with high morbidity and mortality.



FIG. 27-13 A keloid.

difficult and not always successful. Small lesions may be controlled with intralesional steroid injections. Because surgical excision alone can result in an even larger scar, surgery is usually combined with another form of therapy, such as intralesional steroid injections or low-dose radiotherapy. Pressure dressings or elastic garments worn over the skin for 1 year after excision or steroid injection may also help keep the lesion flat.

Nevi

A **nevus**, or mole, is a benign growth of the pigment-forming cells. These lesions are classified according to their location within the layers of the skin.

Normal nevi have regular, well-defined borders and are uniform in color, ranging from light colors to dark brown. The lesion's surface may be rough or smooth. Because about 50% of malignant melanomas arise from moles, nevi with irregular or spreading borders and those with multiple colors should be considered highly suspicious. Other abnormal findings include sudden changes in the size of the lesion and reports of itching or bleeding.

Unsightly nevi or those subject to repeated irritation or trauma can be removed. Biopsy of any suspicious lesions is performed to rule out malignancy.

SKIN CANCER

Pathophysiology

Overexposure to sunlight is the major cause of skin cancer, although other factors are associated. Because sun damage is an age-related skin finding, screening for suspicious lesions is an important part of physical assessment of the older adult. The most common skin cancers are actinic or solar keratosis, squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, and melanoma. Table 27-6 describes common skin cancers.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Actinic keratoses are premalignant lesions of the cells of the epidermis. These lesions are common in people with chronically sun-damaged skin. Progression to squamous cell carcinoma may occur if lesions are untreated.

Squamous cell carcinomas are cancers of the epidermis. They can invade locally and are potentially metastatic. Lesions on the ear, lip, and external genitalia are more likely to invade and spread than those found elsewhere on the body.



FIG. 27-14 Squamous cell carcinoma.



FIG. 27-15 Basal cell carcinoma.

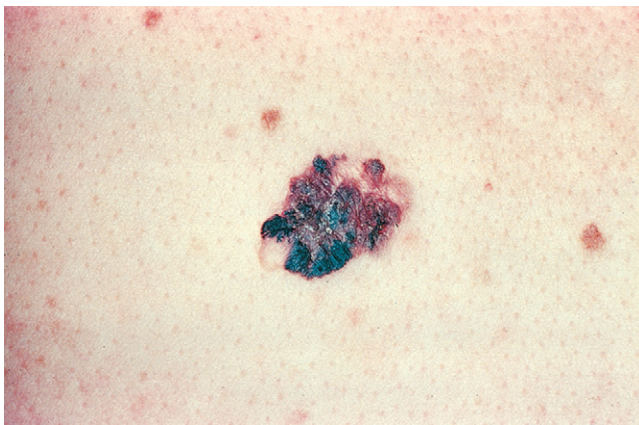


FIG. 27-16 Melanoma.

(Fig. 27-14). Chronic skin damage from repeated injury or irritation also predisposes to this malignancy.

Basal cell carcinomas arise from the basal cell layer of the epidermis (Fig. 27-15). Early malignant lesions often go unnoticed, and although metastasis is rare, underlying tissue destruction can progress to include vital structures. Genetic predisposition and chronic irritation are risk factors; however, UV exposure is the most common cause.

Melanomas are pigmented cancers arising in the melanin-producing epidermal cells (Fig. 27-16). Risk factors include genetic predisposition, excessive exposure to UV light, and the presence of one or more precursor lesions that resemble

CHART 27-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Skin Cancer

- Avoid sun exposure between 11 AM and 3 PM.
- Use sunscreens with the appropriate skin protection factor for your skin type.
- Wear a hat, opaque clothing, and sunglasses when you are out in the sun.
- Keep a “body map” of your skin spots, scars, and lesions to detect when changes have occurred.
- Examine your body monthly for possibly cancerous or precancerous lesions.
- Seek medical advice if you note any of these:
 - A change in the color of a lesion, especially if it darkens or shows evidence of spreading
 - A change in the size of a lesion, especially rapid growth
 - A change in the shape of a lesion, such as a sharp border becoming irregular or a flat lesion becoming raised
 - Redness or swelling of the skin around a lesion
 - A change in sensation, especially itching or increased tenderness of a lesion
 - A change in the character of a lesion, such as oozing, crusting, bleeding, or scaling

unusual moles. *This skin cancer is highly metastatic, and a person's survival depends on early diagnosis and treatment.*

Lighter skin and less pigmentation are genetically inherited traits. Also, a genetic mutation that is inherited in an autosomal-dominant pattern has been found for some cases of familial melanoma. The mutation occurs in a suppressor gene resulting in loss of control of cell growth. Two such mutated genes are *CDKN2A*, *CDK4*, and *BRAF*.

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of skin cancer is highest among light-skinned races and people older than 60 years (American Cancer Society, 2011). The incidence is higher among those who work outdoors, live at higher altitudes or lower latitudes, or spend significant amount of time sunbathing. Occupational exposure to arsenic or other chemical carcinogens also increases risk. The incidence of melanoma has increased during the past 30 years, accounting for 2% of all cancers and 1% of all cancer deaths (American Cancer Society, 2011).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The single most effective prevention strategy for skin cancer is avoiding or reducing skin exposure to sunlight. However, even when people understand the cause of skin cancer and the seriousness of the disease, preventive behaviors are not always practiced. Common prevention practices include avoiding direct sunlight, using sunscreen, and wearing protective clothing (including hats) whenever a person is in the sun to prevent severe sunburn. *Teach all people to avoid tanning beds and salons.* Chart 27-12 lists methods of prevention to reduce the risk for skin cancer (McEnroe-Petitte, 2011).

Secondary prevention, early detection, is critical to survival with melanoma. Teach all people to be aware of their skin markings. Keeping a total body spot and lesion map can provide baseline information about suspicious lesions and help identify changes in a lesion or lesions earlier. Once a

map is made, the person should systematically inspect his or her body monthly for new lesions and for changes in any existing lesions by performing *thorough skin self-examination (TSSE)*. Often a partner is needed to help evaluate skin spots or lesions on the back. Some people find taking pictures of their skin on a regular basis makes identifying changes easier. Teach everyone to evaluate all skin lesions using the ABCDE guide for melanoma (see [Chapter 26](#)) and to consult his or her health care provider to examine any lesion having unusual characteristics. When lesions, such as moles, are present, they should be monitored yearly by a dermatologist or other health care professional.

Monthly TSSE is critically important for patients who have already had a melanoma lesion. A major positive influence for TSSE practice is working with a partner in this examination.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

In addition to age and race, ask the patient about any family history of skin cancer and any past surgery for removal of skin growths. Recent changes in the size, color, or sensation of any mole, birthmark, wart, or scar are also significant. Ask about which geographic regions he or she has lived in and where he or she currently resides. Obtain information about occupational and recreational activities in relation to sun exposure, as well as any occupational history of exposure to chemical carcinogens (e.g., arsenic, coal tar, pitch, radioactive waste, radium). Ask whether any skin lesions are repeatedly irritated by the rubbing of clothing.

Skin that has been injured previously is at greater risk for cancer development, an effect known as *Koebner's phenomenon*. Ask the patient if he or she has ever experienced a severe skin injury that resulted in a scar. Examine all scarred skin areas for the presence of potentially cancerous lesions.

Skin cancers vary in their appearance and distribution. Although most skin cancers appear in sun-exposed areas of the body, inspect the entire skin surface. Systematically examine the skin for any unusual lesions, particularly moles, warts, birthmarks, and scars. Also examine hair-bearing areas of the body, such as the scalp and genitalia. Palpate lesions to determine surface texture. Document the location, size, color, and surface features of all lesions and any subjective reports of tenderness or itching. Use the ABCDE method of evaluating all lesions for possible melanoma (see [Chapter 26](#)).

[Table 27-6](#) lists facts about common skin cancers. Punch, shave, or excisional biopsy of suspicious lesions is necessary to determine whether a skin lesion is benign or malignant.

INTERVENTIONS

Surgical and nonsurgical interventions are combined for the effective management of skin cancer. Treatment is determined by the size and severity of the malignancy, the location of the lesion, and the age and general health of the patient.

Surgical Management

Surgical intervention is the most common means of managing any type of skin cancer. It can range from local removal

of small lesions, with minimal discomfort and positive cosmetic results, to massive excision of large areas of the skin and underlying tissue for treatment of melanoma.

Cryosurgery involves the local application of liquid nitrogen (-200°C) to isolated lesions, causing cell death and tissue destruction. Local anesthesia is seldom needed because most patients have only minor discomfort during the procedure. Prepare patients for swelling and increased tenderness of the treated area when the skin thaws. Tissue freezing is followed in 1 to 2 days by hemorrhagic blister formation. Instruct patients to clean the sites with hydrogen peroxide to prevent infection. A topical antibiotic may also be prescribed.

Curettage and electrodesiccation may be used for small lesions that are not melanoma. This method can destroy the cancerous cells while minimizing damage to the surrounding uninvolved tissue. After a local anesthetic is given, the surgeon uses a dermal curette to scrape away the cancerous tissue. After curettage is complete, the surgeon places an electric probe on the wound and remnants of the tumor are destroyed by thermal energy.

Wounds created by this treatment heal by second intention, and scarring is usually minimal. Instruct patients in caring for the wound, including cleaning the wound, using prescribed antibacterial drugs, and applying dressings.

Excision is used for biopsy of small lesions. When the diagnosis is melanoma, a sentinel node may be biopsied to determine whether tumor spread has started. If the size and location of the lesion permit, surgical excision with primary closure is the preferred method. If the tumor has already been removed several times or if radiation therapy has damaged the surrounding skin, healing by second intention is indicated. This procedure allows the wound to be monitored for cancer recurrence. Skin grafts and flaps are used to repair large defects if tissue destruction is deep.

Mohs' surgery, a specialized form of excision, is used to treat basal and squamous cell carcinomas. The cancerous tissue is sectioned horizontally in layers, and each layer is examined histologically to determine the presence of residual tumor cells. Although the procedure is long and tedious, cure rates are high and there is less removal of healthy tissue compared with other surgical methods.

Wide excision for deeper melanoma or other skin cancers that are large or invasive often involves removing full-thickness skin in the area of the lesion. Depending on tumor depth, subcutaneous tissues and lymph nodes may also be removed. If the remaining skin is easily moved without creating extensive tension, the wound may be just sutured closed. If the remaining skin is tight or the wound is large, skin grafts may be needed to close the surgical wound (see earlier discussion on pp. 487-488).

Nonsurgical Management

Drug therapy may involve topical or systemic chemotherapy, biotherapy, or targeted therapy. Topical chemotherapy with 5-fluorouracil cream is used for treatment of multiple actinic keratoses or for widespread superficial basal cell carcinoma that would require several surgical procedures to eradicate. Therapy is continued for several weeks, and the treated areas become increasingly tender and inflamed as the lesions crust, ooze, and erode. Prepare the patient for an unsightly appearance during therapy, and reassure him or her that the cosmetic result will be positive.

After treatment is discontinued, cool compresses and topical corticosteroid preparations help decrease inflammation and promote comfort.

Systemic chemotherapeutic agents are used in the treatment of skin cancer except when the prognosis is poor, as in advanced melanoma.

Biotherapy with interferon is now an accepted treatment after surgery for melanomas that are at stage III or higher. The patient is first started on high-dose (20,000,000 units/m²) IV interferon infusions daily for 5 days per week for 4 weeks after the surgical wound is well healed. Maintenance doses of 10,000,000 units/m² are continued three times per week for 1 year. The maintenance doses are given subcutaneously, and the patient must learn to self-inject the drug.

Agents that target lymphocyte control of tumor cell growth may be used for treatment of metastatic melanoma. The approved drug ipilimumab (Yervoy) and the experimental drug tremelimumab target the *CTLA4* (cytotoxic T-lymphocyte–associated antigen 4) receptor and block it, resulting in greater activity of the lymphocyte. This allows the lymphocyte to attack melanoma cells. Because the receptor is present on certain lymphocytes, the side effects of these drugs include significant inflammation in many tissues (Rubin, 2009; Aschenbrenner, 2011).

Radiation therapy for skin cancer is limited to older patients with large, deeply invasive basal cell tumors and to those who are poor risks for surgery. Melanoma is resistant to radiation therapy; however, radiation therapy may be helpful for patients with metastatic disease when used in combination with systemic corticosteroids.

PLASTIC OR RECONSTRUCTIVE SURGERY

Pathophysiology

The two main types of plastic surgery are aesthetic and reconstructive. **Aesthetic plastic surgery** is cosmetic, with the aim of altering a person's physical appearance. This intervention is sought by those who are unsatisfied with their body image. These procedures are considered elective surgery and are not covered by insurance. They can be very expensive and are most often performed among more affluent people. **Reconstructive plastic surgery** is the correction or improvement of functional defects that have occurred as a result of congenital problems (e.g., cleft lip, syndactyly [webbed fingers or toes]) or trauma and scarring (e.g., skin and joint contractures from burn wounds) or from other types of therapy (e.g., mastectomy for breast cancer therapy). These interventions are sought by patients who cannot perform ADLs as a result of an anatomic problem; the cost is often covered by insurance.

In the United States, the decision to undergo plastic surgery is often a response to social and cultural norms about beauty. Patients become self-conscious about scars, facial lesions, disproportionate anatomic features, or, especially, changes in physical features associated with aging. Loss of skin elasticity and changes in fatty tissue distribution are progressive and especially noticeable around the eyes, near the cheeks, and on the neck. Fine facial wrinkles around the eyes and mouth are one of the first signs of aging. These changes are followed by gradual stretching and downward displacement of the soft tissue of the lower two thirds of the face. Similar changes are seen as skin wrinkling and looseness

on the arms, chest, abdomen, buttocks, and thighs. These changes are also seen after dramatic weight loss. Skin lesions associated with chronic sun exposure also may trouble the aging patient.

Other people may want to change a physical detail associated with specific cultural identity. For example, people have changed eyelid shape, nose size and shape, and lip shape to conform to a more “Caucasian” appearance. Still other people have undergone surgery to increase their sense of belonging to a specific ethnic group. For example, African-American women may have aesthetic surgery to increase the size of their buttocks to conform to cultural norms about beauty and sexuality in the African-American community.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When taking a history from a patient who elects to have plastic surgery, use a nonjudgmental approach and be careful not to assume the reason for surgery on the basis of physical appearance. Often what might appear to be unsightly to you is of little concern to the patient, who wishes to change something else. Observe for any nonverbal communication that might establish the emotional state of the person or reveal feelings of embarrassment or guilt. Encourage the patient to describe the problem, including why it is bothersome and what he or she expects as a result of the change. Ask about his or her health history and recent medical problems, including obesity and trauma, to predict the amount of surgery needed to correct the defect and potential complications.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient seeking plastic surgery may have changes in appearance ranging from minor to significant deformity. Depending on the location of the problem, the patient may need to undress before the examination. Ensure privacy because the patient may be embarrassed by the problem.

Begin the physical assessment by closely examining the area of involvement to determine the extent of the deformity or problem. Have the patient assume different normal sitting and standing postures to provide better visibility of nonfacial defects. Document asymmetry of anatomic features, wrinkling or skin redundancy, scars or disfiguring skin marks, and obvious skin lesions.

Psychosocial Assessment

Regardless of whether a person is having reconstructive surgery or cosmetic surgery, body image and sense of self are always involved. These feelings often evoke emotional responses in the person, including shame, anger, resentment, and desperation. A person seeking reconstruction may have felt “different” from other people his or her entire life. A person seeking cosmetic surgery may face ridicule from family or friends about his or her perceived vanity. Use a sensitive, nonjudgmental approach when interacting with the person having or considering plastic surgery. It is important to recognize your own feelings regarding these procedures and to avoid being directive or expressing your own opinions.

Often a patient who asks the nurse “Do you think I need this surgery?” is not comfortable with his or her decision.

Assess the patient for his or her sense of self and self-worth. Note whether he or she makes eye contact with you during the interview. Does the patient make any self-deprecating remarks or use the terms *ugly*, *stupid*, or *not sexy* when referring to himself or herself? If such remarks are made, ask him or her to clarify what is meant. Report concerns to the surgeon.

Address the patient’s expectations of plastic surgery. Often people who seek plastic surgery have unrealistic expectations or are uncertain about what they actually want. For example, the patient with minor deformities who is seeking perfection is sure to be disappointed. The patient who wants an operation mainly to please the spouse or partner is also a poor candidate. His or her psychological outlook before surgery should be positive if results are to be therapeutic.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

Many techniques to improve skin and general appearance without surgery are available. Some are more invasive than others and have a higher risk for complications. Superficial techniques for skin enhancement include chemical peels, laser resurfacing, and dermabrasion to remove or reduce small scars, fine lines, and other irregular skin surfaces. Dermal filling involves injecting substances to change the contour of a feature or an area. Generally, these fillers replace the collagen lost from the skin through aging. Common fillers include collagen, hyaluronic acids, acrylic hydrogels, and purified human connective tissue (Czerkasij, 2010). Injection with nerve paralyzing agents (e.g., Botulinum Toxin Type A) can improve appearance temporarily by relaxing muscles beneath the skin surface, which smoothes out some wrinkles and grooves.

Surgical Management

Patients considering cosmetic surgery or reconstructive surgery should “shop” for a reputable surgeon who is certified through the American Board of Plastic Surgery. Not all physicians who are “board certified” are actually certified in this specialty. The patient should meet with the physician who will actually perform the surgery and request referrals to previous patients who have already undergone a similar surgery. It is also a good idea for the patient to contact the state medical board to determine whether the surgeon has had complaints lodged against him or her.

Depending on the planned intervention, surgery is performed either in the outpatient setting with the patient under local anesthesia or in the hospital. Most patients scheduled for plastic surgery have had consultations with their surgeon to discuss the planned intervention, possible complications, and postoperative expectations. The types and complications of common cosmetic procedures are listed in Table 27-7.

Many plastic surgeons use digital imaging both as a visual aid when discussing patients’ problems and as a means of documenting before and after surgical intervention. The patient can be shown how the surgery is likely to alter his or her appearance. Pictures taken of patients are confidential. Showing patients pictures of other patients is done only after proper consent is obtained.

Preoperative Care. The most important nursing action before surgery is teaching the patient what to do before and after surgery to prevent complications and increase the chances for a good outcome. All plastic surgery has a risk for complications and failure. When changing the skin and subcutaneous tissue, the skin is loosened from its connections. This causes bleeding, inflammation, and the potential for failure of the tissues to reattach properly. Teach the patient actions to reduce the risk for bleeding and failure of tissue reattachment. These include not smoking or using nicotine in any form because it causes blood vessel constriction and reduces blood flow to the area, delaying attachment and healing. Because of the large amount of blood loss associated with skin (particularly facial) surgery, teach the patient to avoid aspirin and other NSAIDs for several weeks before and after the procedure. Remind patients that bruising and swelling can be extensive and that one or more drains in the surgical area may be used to reduce these problems. Hypertension can change blood flow to the skin of the head and neck. Teach the patient with hypertension the importance of maintaining good blood pressure control by adhering to his or her prescribed therapy.

For any plastic surgery, it is important to prevent excessive swelling or skin movement in the operative area. Remind the patient that certain positions and activities may need to be limited after surgery. Stress the importance of following the surgeon’s instructions in order to have the best outcome.

Immediate preoperative care is focused on collection of any routine laboratory test data required before general anesthesia and preparation of the operative site. In most cases, the procedure for shaving and washing the skin is dictated by the surgeon’s preference.

Patients undergoing facial surgery, specifically **rhytidectomy** (facelift), are often asked to wash their hair several times with antibacterial soap to decrease bacterial flora near the incision site. Instruct patients to remove any makeup and to avoid using face creams before surgery. If a **rhinoplasty** (reconstruction of the nose) is scheduled, explain the need for nasal packing and review mouth-breathing techniques.

Operative Procedures. Reconstructive procedures vary depending on the location, purpose, and extent of reconstruction. Ironically, in performing plastic surgery, the surgeon must make a wound to correct existing skin deformities.

Postoperative Care. General care after surgery focuses on monitoring for typical postoperative complications (see Chapter 18). Pressure dressings may be applied at the time of surgery and left in place for several days to control hemorrhage and edema formation. Check dressings and any nasal packing for bright red bleeding, and monitor changes in vital signs and level of consciousness indicating active hemorrhage.

Repeated swallowing followed by belching after rhinoplasty is a sign of postnasal bleeding and needs to be reported immediately to the surgeon. The patient who has had breast surgery may have drains in place after surgery. Monitor the amount and color of drainage.

Place the patient who has had any facial reconstruction in a semi-Fowler’s position to reduce edema and promote comfort. Use lightweight cold compresses to reduce swelling. Check drains to ensure they are unobstructed. Assess for swelling and bruising every 2 hours. Document assessment

TABLE 27-7 COMMON PLASTIC SURGERY PROCEDURES

DESCRIPTION	INDICATIONS	COMPLICATIONS
Blepharoplasty Excision of bulging fat and redundant skin of the periorbital area with primary closure	Bags under the eyes	Hematoma Ectropion Corneal injury Visual loss (rare) Wound infection (rare)
Breast Augmentation (Augmentation Mammoplasty) Insertion of synthetic breast-shaped implants through a skin incision	Inadequate breast volume or contour	Hematoma or hemorrhage Wound infection (with gram-positive organisms) Phlebitis
Breast Reduction (Reduction Mammoplasty) Excision of excessive breast tissue and skin with primary closure	Hypertrophy of breast tissue caused by elevated hormone levels, endocrine abnormalities, or obesity Weight of large breasts can contribute to back pain	Hematoma or hemorrhage Nipple, areola, and skin flap necrosis Wound infection Fat necrosis Wound dehiscence
Dermabrasion Abrasive removal of the facial epidermis and portion of the dermis followed by healing by second intention	Moderate to severe acne scar Deep wrinkling Multiple actinic keratoses Hyperpigmentation (postinflammatory or after the use of estrogens)	Hypertrophic scarring Altered skin pigmentation Acne flare Wound infection (rare)
Rhinoplasty Removal of excessive cartilage and tissue from the nose with correction of septal defects if indicated	Disproportionate anatomy Post-traumatic nasal deformity Difficulty breathing through the nose	Hematoma or hemorrhage Ecchymosis and edema (temporary) Wound infection (with gram-positive organisms) Septal perforation Minor skin irritation
Rhytidectomy (Facelift) Removal of excess skin and tissue from the face at the level of the hairline followed by primary closure	Excessive wrinkling or sagging of facial skin	Hematoma or hemorrhage Facial nerve damage (temporary or permanent) Wound infection Ecchymosis and edema (temporary) Skin necrosis Hair loss
Liposuction (Suction Lipectomy) Removal of subcutaneous fat from localized areas of accumulation such as the hips, abdomen, neck, and arms	Disproportionate distribution of adipose tissue	Hematoma Severe pain Infection Emboli Sagging of skin (if skin is not elastic enough to contract after fat removal)

findings. Remind patients not to increase pressure in the head and neck region, by:

- Staying in an upright position
- Avoiding facial movement such as chewing, talking, smiling
- Avoiding bending over, blowing the nose, sneezing with the mouth closed
- Not bearing down to have a bowel movement

Support garments are used after breast augmentation surgery to reduce edema and tension on the suture line from the weight of the breast tissue. With abdominal reduction surgery, teach the patient to keep the hips flexed to reduce tension on the suture line and to promote tissue attachment.

Monitor for wound infection and progress toward healing. Of particular concern are any areas of skin necrosis or eschar

formation near the operative site—a complication from excessive tension on the suture line as a result of edema and blood vessel obstruction. [Chart 27-5](#) lists wound monitoring criteria.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

In which position does the nurse place the client immediately after a rhytidectomy to promote venous return and prevent swelling?

- Fowler's
- Lithotomy
- Lateral Sims'
- Trendelenburg

Regardless of the planned procedure, inform the patient to expect edema and discoloration of the operative site. Swelling and bruising alter the facial features and may not resolve for several weeks after surgery. Remind the patient that the true results of surgery will not be visible until healing is complete—usually 6 months to a year or longer after surgery. During this healing time, the patient may become discouraged. Refer him or her to a support group for encouragement (e.g., Cosmetic Surgery and Body Transformation Support Site [www.cosmeticsupport.com]).

OTHER SKIN DISORDERS

Acne

Acne is a red, pustular eruption that affects the sebaceous glands of the skin. It is a common condition that, despite popular belief, is not confined to adolescents. Lesions result from increased sebum production, which is stimulated by androgenic hormones and obstruction of the sebaceous canal outlet. Debris collection promotes bacterial growth and rupture of the gland into the surrounding dermis with inflammation.

Acne is a progressive disorder that manifests as several types of skin lesions, including noninflammatory **comedones** (blackheads and whiteheads), inflammatory papules, pustules, and cysts. These lesions are usually present only on the face and upper trunk.

Control of acne is possible, with spontaneous remission occurring over time. However, severe eruptions or chronic inflammation can lead to extensive scarring.

For patients with superficial lesions, topical agents (retinoic acid, benzoyl peroxide, antibiotic solutions) are used. Systemic antibiotics are indicated for those with cystic inflammatory disease. Patients with severe acne may have improvement after receiving isotretinoin (Accutane, Accutane Roche ♣). Side effects include elevated liver function test results; dry, chapped skin; and depression in some patients. The most important concern, however, is the **teratogenic** (inducement of birth defects) effect of this drug or any systemic retinoic acid. A pregnancy test is required before therapy, and strict birth control measures must be used during therapy.

Lichen Planus

Lichen planus is a common skin disorder of purple, flat-topped papules that itch. Although viral infections and emotional stress may be possible causes, the actual etiology of lichen planus is not known. The course of the disease can be chronic, or it can resolve spontaneously.

Lesions of lichen planus usually occur over the wrists and the inner surfaces of the forearms, but they may be present also on the lower legs, genitalia, and other body areas. Oral lesions may occur alone or with other skin changes. Unlike the skin lesions, oral lesions have a white, lacelike appearance. These lesions usually occur on the oral mucosa and are often confused with thrush.

Treatment is determined by the symptoms. Topical steroids help reduce inflammation, and antihistamines help relieve itching. Systemic steroids may be prescribed when lesions are widespread, but long-term use is avoided because of the side effects.

Pemphigus Vulgaris

Pemphigus vulgaris is a rare, chronic, blistering disease with high morbidity and mortality. It is caused by an autoimmune disorder that occurs most often during middle and old age.

The acute lesions occur on normal-appearing skin or mucous membrane surfaces as fragile, flaccid bullae (large blisters). Breaking the bullae leaves partial-thickness wounds that bleed, weep, and eventually form crusts.

Lesions can occur anywhere. The initial lesions usually occur on the oral mucosa, and later lesions form on the trunk. Spread of the disease is seen with the appearance of new lesions on the face and in skinfold areas while older lesions are in the process of healing. Oral lesions are common and can make chewing and swallowing difficult.

Management of pemphigus vulgaris is aimed at suppressing the immune response that causes the blister formation. Systemic steroids and cytotoxic agents are used to bring about remission. Topical antibiotic creams or ointments are used to reduce bacterial infection of the unhealed lesions.

Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis

Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN) is a rare acute drug reaction of the skin resulting in diffuse erythema and large blister formation. Mucous membranes are often involved, and systemic toxicity is evident. The most common causative drugs are chemotherapy agents, sulfonamides, pyrazolones, barbiturates, and antibiotics. Removal of the drug is usually followed by gradual healing in 2 to 3 weeks, with widespread peeling of the epidermis.

This problem can occur at any age and as a result of almost any drug therapy. However, older patients with cancer who are receiving chemotherapy, some targeted therapies, and immunotherapy appear to be at greatest risk (Smith, 2007). Other precipitating factors include bone marrow transplantation and neutropenia-induced infections.

The drug thought to be causing a toxic reaction is discontinued, and therapy is aimed at systemic support and prevention of secondary infection. Patients with TEN are often admitted to burn units, where fluid and electrolyte balance, caloric intake, and hypothermia can be closely monitored. Topical antibacterial agents are used to suppress bacterial growth until healing occurs. Systemic steroids are avoided because of the increased risk for infection.

Stevens-Johnson Syndrome

Stevens-Johnson syndrome is often a drug-induced immunologic skin reaction similar to toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN). The disorder may be mild with only local skin involvement, or it may be severe and systemic. The skin lesions are widely distributed (including oral and respiratory mucous membranes) and varied in appearance (Fig. 27-17). The patient has a mix of vesicles, erosions, and crusts. With severe involvement, the patient may have respiratory problems, excessive fluid loss, acute kidney injury, and blindness.

Removal of the offending drug is critical. Mild forms of the disorder are usually self-limiting in 10 to 14 days unless the episode was triggered by a bacterial infection. Then, antibiotics are needed (Holcomb, 2007). Severe manifestations require high doses of steroids to suppress the immune and inflammatory reactions. Supportive care may include fluid replacement, mechanical ventilation, and even renal replacement therapy.



FIG. 27-17 Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

Leprosy

Leprosy (Hansen's disease) is a chronic, contagious, systemic mycobacterial infection of the peripheral nervous system with skin involvement. Although uncommon in the United States, the disease remains a problem in many parts of the world. Most cases in the United States are reported in Florida, Louisiana, Texas, New York, California, and Hawaii. The exact mechanism of infection remains unknown. Studies suggest transmission via the airborne route, by insects, or through direct contact with skin lesions. The clinical course of the disease is either progressive or self-limiting, depending on the immune status of the host.

Manifestations of leprosy, including skin changes, are directly related to how resistant the patient is to the mycobacteria:

- Localized (high-immunity) leprosy—one or two isolated, red, anesthetic, hairless plaques that are sometimes scaly
- Generalized (low-immunity) leprosy—widespread, faintly red macules, papules, nodules, and plaques
- Varying degrees of reduced skin sensation of the lesions are caused by peripheral nerve damage

Treatment is available on an outpatient basis to control bacterial growth and reduce physical deformities. The most common treatment is a 6- to 12-month course of multiple drug therapy with dapsone (DDS; Avlosulfon), rifampin (Rifadin, Rimactane), clofazimine (Lamprene), ofloxacin (Floxin), and minocycline (Dynacin, Minocin) ([World Health Organization, 2010](#)). Other agents that also show some effectiveness include levofloxacin (Levaquin), sparfloxacin (Zagam), and clarithromycin (Biaxin).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate protection as a result of loss of skin integrity?

- Open skin areas
- Possible presence of drainage
- Sensation changes in or around the area (patient reports pain, itching, or tightness)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate protection as a result of loss of skin integrity?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Assessing the wound for pain, size, depth, drainage, and presence of infection
- Assessing the skin immediately surrounding the wound for redness and swelling
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry in the affected extremity (if the open area is on an extremity)
- Assessing the patient for risk factors for wound development (pressure, shear, immobility, reduced cognition, poor nutrition, advanced age, incontinence)

- Assessing the rest of the patient's skin (especially over bony prominences, between skinfolds, in the perineal area)

Respond by:

- Documenting wound features
- Cleansing the wound (obtaining cultures, if within agency policy)
- Dressing the wound if drainage is present
- Planning a turning or repositioning schedule
- Teaching UAP or family how to relieve/reduce pressure
- Collaborating with the certified wound care specialist

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of restored skin integrity (see [Chapter 26](#)).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assist all patients with limited mobility to change positions at least every 2 hours while awake.
- Evaluate the pressure ulcer risk for all patients on admission and regularly thereafter.
- Be proactive in the use of pressure-relieving devices for any patient who is identified to be at risk for pressure ulcer formation (i.e., requires prolonged bedrest, is an older adult, has some degree of immobility, is incontinent, has some degree of malnutrition, is dehydrated, has decreased sensory perception, or has an altered mental state).
- Wash your hands before and after touching any skin lesions.
- Use Standard Precautions when providing care to a patient who has any areas of nonintact skin.
- Use a lift sheet or mechanical lift to move immobilized older patients rather than pulling or dragging them across bed linens.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all patients to reduce sun exposure and exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light.
- Teach patients how to examine all skin areas on a monthly basis for new lesions and changes to existing lesions. They should keep a record or “body map” of skin lesions.
- Teach patients who have skin scarring from a previous skin injury to examine this area at least monthly for changes related to cancer development or chronic skin conditions.
- Urge all patients to bathe, shampoo the hair, and keep fingernails clean and trimmed on a regular basis.
- Teach all patients the ABCDE method of evaluating a lesion for melanoma.

- Keep the skin of patients who are incontinent clean and dry.
- Ensure that women in their childbearing years who are receiving teratogenic drug therapy for a skin problem understand the effects of this therapy and adhere to strict contraception measures during treatment.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express feelings about a change in body image as a result of changes in the skin, hair, or nails.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Touch the patient who has skin problems to show acceptance.
- Ask the patient who plans to have plastic surgery what he or she expects as a result of the surgery.

Physiological Integrity

- Keep skinfold areas on patients clean and dry.
- Ask any patient who has started taking a newly prescribed drug if he or she has noticed whether any skin changes have occurred since starting the drug.
- Avoid rubbing any area of the skin that has been subjected to pressure.
- Encourage patients with itching to avoid scratching the skin.
- Teach patients to avoid using over-the-counter cortisone preparations on skin lesions until the cause has been identified.
- Teach patients who have a skin infection how to avoid spreading the infection to other parts of their own bodies and to other people.
- Evaluate any open skin area on a patient daily for size, depth, exudate, presence of infection, and indicators of healing.

Care of Patients with Burns

Tammy Coffee



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Crackles
Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Wheezes

Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Apply the principles of asepsis to protect burn patients with open wounds.
2. Manage the patient's environment to prevent infection from auto-contamination and cross-contamination in patients with burn injuries.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Teach everyone fire prevention strategies.
4. Instruct everyone on the correct use and placement of smoke detectors and carbon monoxide detectors.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Support the patient and family in coping with permanent changes in appearance and function.
6. Encourage the burn patient with wounds and scars to participate in self-care.
7. Assess the patient's and family's use of coping strategies related to burn injury, treatment, possible role changes, and possible outcomes.
8. Allow patients who have lost family members, homes, or jobs time to grieve for these losses.

Physiological Integrity

9. Identify burn patients at risk for inhalation injury.
10. Compare the manifestations of superficial, partial-thickness, and full-thickness burn injuries.

11. Explain the expected manifestations of neural and hormonal compensation during the resuscitation phase of burn injury.
12. Prioritize nursing care for the patient during the resuscitation phase of burn injury.
13. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the effectiveness of fluid resuscitation during the resuscitation phase of burn injury.
14. Prioritize nursing care for the patient during the acute phase of burn injury.
15. Coordinate with the registered dietitian to meet the nutritional needs for the patient during the acute phase of burn injury.
16. Evaluate the patient's wound healing during the acute phase of burn injury.
17. Compare pain management strategies for patients in the resuscitation and acute phases of burn injury.
18. Describe the characteristics of infected burn wounds.
19. Use appropriate positioning and range-of-motion interventions for prevention of mobility problems in the patient with burns.
20. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the rehabilitation phase of burn injury.

Patients who have burn injuries develop many physiologic, metabolic, and psychological changes. Burn injuries can range from a “sunburn” to major injuries involving all layers of the skin. When the skin is injured, inflammation and fluid loss change the function of most body systems. The burn patient needs comprehensive care for weeks to months to survive the injury, reduce complications, and return to his or her best functional status. A multidisciplinary team of health care providers is needed for best care and patient outcomes. Nurses coordinate the activities of the many professionals involved in providing the best care to burn patients.

INTRODUCTION TO THE BURN PROBLEM

Pathophysiology of Burn Injury

The tissue destruction caused by a burn injury leads to many local and systemic problems. Such problems include fluid and protein losses, sepsis, and changes in metabolic, endocrine, respiratory, cardiac, hematologic, and immune functioning. The extent of local and systemic problems is related to age, general health, extent of injury, depth of injury, and the specific body area injured. Even after healing, the burn injury may cause late complications such as contracture formation and scarring. Therefore the prevention of infection and closure of the burn wound are vitally important. A lack of or delay in wound healing is a key factor for all systemic problems and a major cause of disability and death among patients who are burned.

Skin Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

Anatomic Changes. The skin is the largest organ of the body (see Chapter 26). Each of its two major layers, the epidermis and the dermis, has several sublayers. The epidermis, the outer layer of skin, is a layer of stratified epithelial cells about 0.15 mm thick (somewhat thinner in older adults). This layer can grow back after a burn injury because the epidermal cells surrounding sweat and oil glands and hair follicles extend into dermal tissue and regrow to heal partial-thickness wounds. Together, the sweat and oil glands and the hair follicles are the *dermal appendages*. The depth of the dermal appendages varies in different body areas. The sweat and oil glands in the palm of the hand and the sole of the foot, for example, extend deep into the dermis. This allows for healing of deep burns in these areas. The epidermis has no blood vessels. Nutrients to this layer diffuse from the second layer of skin, the dermis.

The dermis is thicker than the epidermis and is made up of collagen, fibrous connective tissue, and elastic fibers. Within the dermis are the blood vessels, sensory nerves, hair follicles, lymph vessels, sebaceous glands, and sweat glands.

When burn injury occurs, skin can regrow as long as parts of the dermis are present. When the entire layer of dermis is burned, all epithelial cells and dermal appendages are destroyed and the skin can no longer restore itself. The subcutaneous tissue lies below the dermis and varies in thickness. The basement membrane, a thin, noncellular protein surface, separates the dermis from the subcutaneous tissue layer. With deep burns, the subcutaneous tissues may be damaged, leaving bones, tendons, and muscles exposed.

Functional Changes. The skin has many functions (see Table 26-1 in Chapter 26). It is a protective barrier against

injury and microbial invasion. Burns break this barrier, greatly increasing the risk for infection.

The skin also helps maintain the delicate fluid and electrolyte balance essential for life. After a burn injury, massive fluid loss occurs through evaporation. Evaporation through burn-injured skin occurs four times as rapidly as through intact skin. The rate of evaporation is in proportion to the total body surface area (TBSA) burned and the depth of injury.

The skin is an excretory organ through sweating. Full-thickness burns destroy the sweat glands, reducing excretory ability.

The sensations of pain, pressure, temperature, and touch are triggered on the skin in normal daily activities, which allows a person to react to changes in the environment. *All burn injuries are painful.* With partial-thickness burns, nerve endings are exposed, increasing sensitivity and pain. With full-thickness burns, nerve endings are completely destroyed. At first these wounds may not transmit sensation except at wound edges when a sharp stimulus is applied. Despite this destruction, patients often have dull or pressure-type of pain in these areas.

Skin exposed to sunlight activates vitamin D. Partial-thickness burns reduce the activation of vitamin D, and this function is lost completely in full-thickness burns.

The internal body temperature remains within a narrow range (about 84.2° to 109.4° F [29° to 43° C]) compared with the wide temperature changes in the external environment. Several processes normally adjust changes in external temperature to maintain the narrow normal range of internal body temperature. Circulating blood both provides and dissipates heat efficiently. When heat is applied to the skin, the temperature of the layer under the dermis rises rapidly. As soon as the heat source is removed, compensatory processes quickly return the area to a normal temperature. If the heat source is not removed or if it is applied at a rate that exceeds the skin's capacity to dissipate it, cells are destroyed.

The skin can tolerate temperatures up to 104° F (40° C) without injury. At temperatures of 158° F (70° C) and above, cell destruction is so rapid that even brief exposure damages the skin and tissue below the skin. Fig. 28-1 shows the relationship between temperature and exposure time for burn injury.

Physical identity is partly determined by the skin's cosmetic quality, which contributes to each person's unique appearance. A patient who sustains a major burn is likely to develop a reduced self-image and other psychosocial problems as a result of a change in appearance.

Depth of Burn Injury. The severity of a burn is determined by how much of the body surface area is involved and the depth of the burn. The degree of tissue damage is related to the agent causing the burn and to the temperature of the heat source, as well as to how long the skin is exposed to it.

Differences in skin thickness in various parts of the body also affect burn depth. In areas where the skin is thin (e.g., eyelids, ears, nose, genitalia, tops of the hands and feet, fingers, and toes), a short exposure to high temperatures causes a deep burn injury. The skin is thinner in older adults (Touhy & Jett, 2010), which increases their risk for greater burn severity, even at lower temperatures of shorter duration.

Burn wounds are classified as superficial-thickness wounds, partial-thickness wounds, full-thickness wounds,

TABLE 28-1 CLASSIFICATION OF BURN DEPTH

CHARACTERISTIC	SUPERFICIAL	SUPERFICIAL PARTIAL-THICKNESS	DEEP PARTIAL- THICKNESS	FULL-THICKNESS	DEEP FULL- THICKNESS
Color	Pink to red	Pink to red	Red to white	Black, brown, yellow, white, red	Black
Edema	Mild	Mild to moderate	Moderate	Severe	Absent
Pain	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes and no	Absent
Blisters	No	Yes	Rare	No	No
Eschar	No	No	Yes, soft and dry	Yes, hard and inelastic	Yes, hard and inelastic
Healing time	3-6 days	About 2 wk	2-6 wk	Weeks to months	Weeks to months
Grafts required	No	No	Can be used if healing is prolonged	Yes	Yes
Example	Sunburn, flash burns	Scalds, flames, brief contact with hot objects	Scalds; flames; prolonged contact with hot objects, tar, grease, chemicals	Scalds; flames; prolonged contact with hot objects, tar, grease, chemicals, electricity	Flames, electricity, grease, tar, chemicals

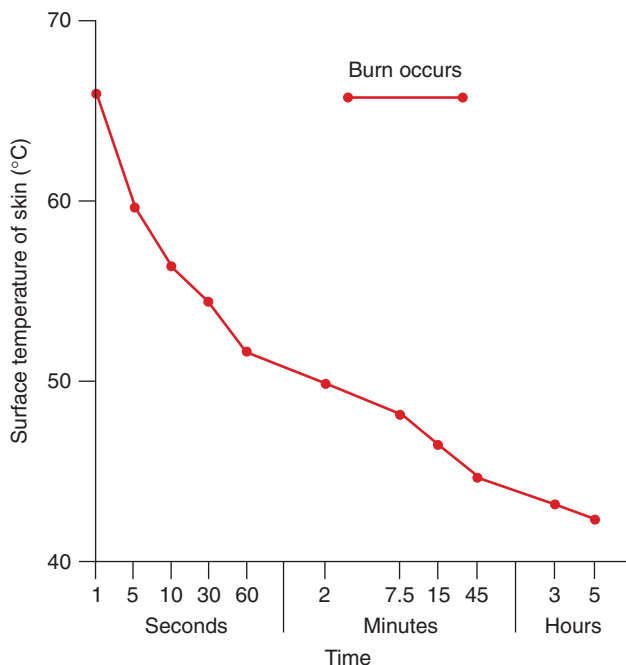


FIG. 28-1 Relationship between intensity of heat and duration of exposure. Exposure for prolonged periods causes burns, even with milder temperatures. At more extreme temperatures, tissue damage results after only seconds.

and deep full-thickness wounds. The partial-thickness wounds are further divided into superficial and deep subgroups (McCance et al, 2010). Table 28-1 lists the clinical differences of these burns.

The American Burn Association (ABA) describes burns as minor, moderate, or major depending on the depth, extent, and location of injury (Table 28-2). Fig. 28-2 shows the tissue layers involved with different depths of injury.

Superficial-Thickness Wounds. Of all burn types, superficial-thickness wounds have the least damage because the epidermis is the only part of the skin that is injured. The epithelial cells and basement membrane, needed for total regrowth, remain present.

TABLE 28-2 CLASSIFICATION OF BURN INJURY AND BURN CENTER REFERRAL CRITERIA

CHARACTERISTICS	COMMENTS
Minor Burns Deep partial-thickness burns less than 15% TBSA Full-thickness burns less than 2% TBSA No burns of eyes, ears, face, hands, feet, or perineum No electrical burns No inhalation injury No complicated additional injury Patient is younger than 60 years and has no chronic cardiac, pulmonary, or endocrine disorder	Patients in this category should receive emergency care at the scene and be taken to a hospital emergency department. A special expertise hospital or designated burn center is usually not necessary.
Moderate Burns Deep partial-thickness burns 15%-25% TBSA Full-thickness burns 2%-10% TBSA No burns of eyes, ears, face, hands, feet, or perineum No electrical burns No inhalation injury No complicated additional injury Patient is younger than 60 years and has no chronic cardiac, pulmonary, or endocrine disorder	Patients in this category should receive emergency care at the scene and be transferred either to a special expertise hospital or to a designated burn center.
Major Burns Partial-thickness burns greater than 25% TBSA Full-thickness burns greater than 10% Any burn involving the eyes, ears, face, hands, feet, perineum Electrical injury Inhalation injury Patient is older than 60 years Burn complicated with other injuries (e.g., fractures) Patient has cardiac, pulmonary, or other chronic metabolic disorders	Patients who meet <i>any one</i> of the criteria for a major burn should receive emergency care at the nearest emergency department and then be transferred to a designated burn center as soon as possible.

TBSA, Total body surface area.

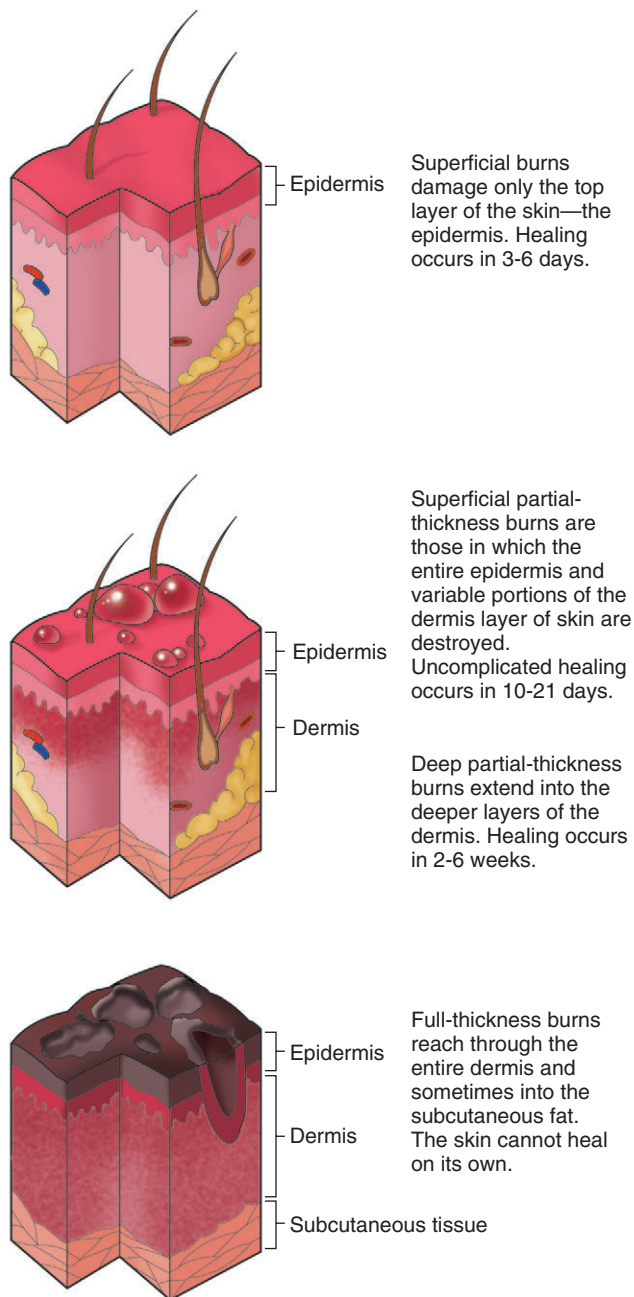


FIG. 28-2 The tissues involved in burns of various depths.

Superficial-thickness wounds are caused by prolonged exposure to low-intensity heat (e.g., sunburn) or short (flash) exposure to high-intensity heat. Redness with mild edema, pain, and increased sensitivity to heat occurs as a result. **Desquamation** (peeling of dead skin) occurs for 2 to 3 days after the burn. The area heals rapidly in 3 to 6 days without a scar or other complication.

Partial-Thickness Wounds. A partial-thickness wound involves the entire epidermis and varying depths of the dermis. Depending on the amount of dermal tissue damaged, partial-thickness wounds are further subdivided into superficial partial-thickness and deep partial-thickness injuries.

Superficial partial-thickness wounds are caused by injury to the upper third of the dermis, leaving a good blood supply. These wounds are red and moist and **blanch** (lighten) when pressure is applied (Fig. 28-3). The small vessels bringing blood to this area are injured, resulting in the leakage of large amounts of plasma, which in turn lifts off the heat-destroyed epidermis, causing blister formation. The blisters continue to increase in size after the burn as cell and protein breakdown occur. Small blisters are often left intact if they are not located over a joint. Large blisters usually are opened and debrided to promote healing.

Superficial partial-thickness wounds increase pain sensation. Nerve endings are exposed, and any stimulation (touch or temperature change) causes intense pain. With standard care, these burns heal in 10 to 21 days with no scar but some minor pigment changes may occur.

Deep partial-thickness wounds extend deeper into the skin dermis, and fewer healthy cells remain. Blisters usually do not form because the dead tissue layer is thick, sticks to the underlying dermis, and does not readily lift off the surface. The wound surface is red and dry with white areas in deeper parts (dry because fewer blood vessels are patent). When pressure is applied to the burn, it blanches slowly or not at all (Fig. 28-4). Edema is moderate, and pain is less than with superficial burns because more of the nerve endings have been destroyed.

Blood flow to these areas is reduced by blood vessel constriction. Progression to deeper injury can occur from hypoxia and ischemia. Adequate hydration, nutrients, and oxygen are needed for regrowth of skin cells and prevention of conversion to deeper burns. These wounds can convert to full-thickness wounds when tissue damage increases with infection, hypoxia, or ischemia. Deep partial-thickness

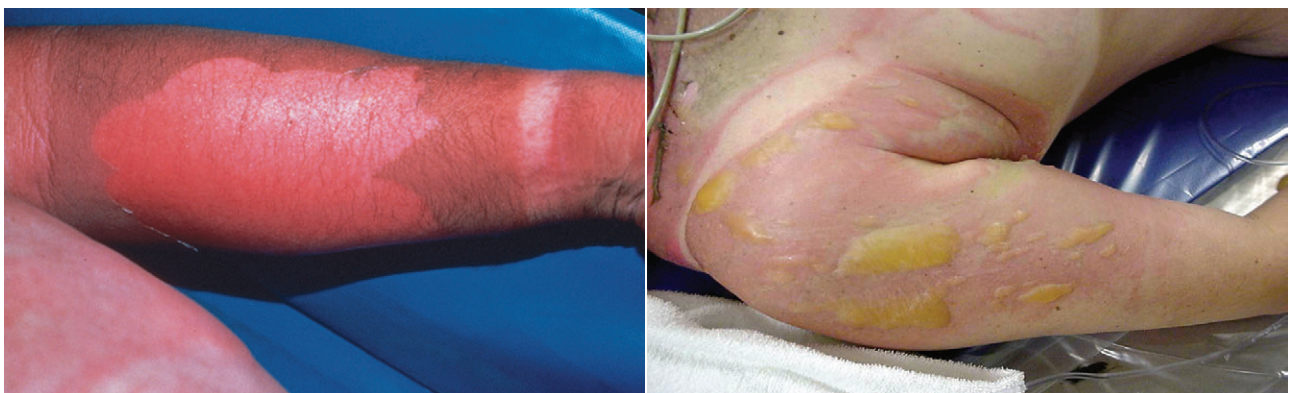


FIG. 28-3 The typical appearance of a superficial partial-thickness burn injury.

wounds generally heal in 3 to 6 weeks, but scar formation results. Surgical intervention with skin grafting can reduce healing time.

Full-Thickness Wounds. A full-thickness wound occurs with destruction of the entire epidermis and dermis, leaving no skin cells to repopulate (Fig. 28-5). This wound does not regrow, and areas not closed by wound contraction (see Chapter 27) require grafting.

The full-thickness burn has a hard, dry, leathery *eschar* that forms from coagulated particles of destroyed dermis. *The eschar is dead tissue; it must slough off or be removed from the wound before healing can occur.* These thick particles often stick to the lower tissue layer by collagen fibers, which make eschar removal difficult. Edema is severe under the eschar in a full-thickness wound. When the injury is **circumferential** (completely surrounds an extremity or the chest), blood flow and chest movement for breathing may be reduced by tight eschar. **Escharotomies** (incisions through the eschar) or **fasciotomies** (incisions through eschar and fascia) may be needed to relieve pressure and allow normal blood flow and breathing (see p. 527 of the Surgical Management discussion in the Preventing Hypovolemic Shock and Inadequate Oxygenation section).

A full-thickness burn wound may be waxy white, deep red, yellow, brown, or black. Thrombosed vessels may be visible beneath the surface of the burn. These dermal blood vessels

are heat coagulated, causing the burned tissue to be **avascular** (without a blood supply). Sensation is reduced or absent in these areas because of nerve ending destruction. Healing time depends on establishing a good blood supply in the injured areas. This process can range from weeks to months.

Deep Full-Thickness Wounds. Deep full-thickness wounds extend beyond the skin into underlying fascia and tissues. These deep injuries damage muscle, bone, and tendons and leave them exposed. These burns occur with flame, electrical, or chemical injuries. The wound is blackened and depressed, and sensation is completely absent (Fig. 28-6). All full-thickness burns need early excision and grafting. Grafting decreases pain and length of stay and hastens recovery. Amputation may be needed when an extremity is involved.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse assesses the wound of a client burned as a result of stepping into a bathtub filled with very hot water. Which assessment finding of the burned areas on the tops of both feet does the nurse use as a basis to document a probable full-thickness injury?

- A. Most of the wounded area is red.
- B. The client reports that the area hurts when touched.
- C. The area does not blanch when firm pressure is applied.
- D. Thrombosed blood vessels are visible beneath the skin surface.



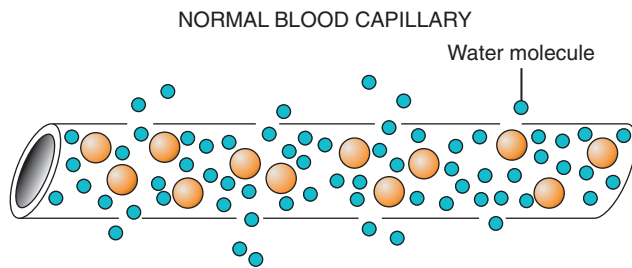
FIG. 28-4 The typical appearance of a deep partial-thickness burn injury.



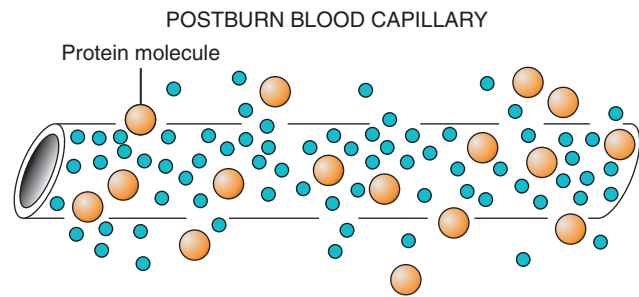
FIG. 28-5 The typical appearance of a full-thickness burn injury.



FIG. 28-6 The typical appearance of a deep full-thickness burn injury.



Water is the smallest molecule that can pass through the capillary pores.



Permeability is drastically increased, which allows large molecules such as proteins to pass through the capillary pores easily.

FIG. 28-7 The capillary response to burn injury (early phase). This response is also known as *capillary leak syndrome*.

Vascular Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

Circulatory disruption occurs at the burn site immediately after injury. Blood vessels to the burned skin are occluded, and blood flow is reduced or stopped. Damaged macrophages within the tissues release chemicals that at first cause blood vessel constriction. Blood vessel thrombosis may occur, causing necrosis, which can lead to deeper injuries in these areas.

Fluid shift occurs after initial vasoconstriction as a result of blood vessels near the burn dilating and leaking fluid into the interstitial space (Fig. 28-7). This fluid shift, also known as *third spacing* or *capillary leak syndrome*, is a continuous leak of plasma from the vascular space into the interstitial space. The loss of plasma fluids and proteins decreases blood volume and blood pressure. Leakage of fluid and electrolytes from the vascular space continues, causing extensive edema, even in areas that were not burned. Fluid shift, with excessive weight gain, occurs in the first 12 hours after the burn and can continue for 24 to 36 hours.

The amount of fluid shifted depends on the extent and severity of injury. Capillary leak occurs in both burned and unburned areas when tissue damage is extensive (i.e., more than 20% to 30% total body surface area [TBSA]). Edema develops as plasma and electrolytes escape into the interstitial space. The proteins now in the interstitial space increase the movement of fluids out from the vascular space.

Profound imbalances of fluid, electrolytes, and acid-base occur as a result of the fluid shift and cell damage. These imbalances often include hypovolemia, metabolic acidosis, **hyperkalemia** (high blood potassium level), and **hyponatremia** (low blood sodium level). Hyperkalemia occurs as a result of direct cell injury that releases large amounts of cellular potassium. Sodium is retained by the body as a result of the endocrine response to stress. Aldosterone secretion increases, leading to increased sodium reabsorption by the kidney. This sodium, however, quickly passes into the interstitial spaces of the burned area with the fluid shift. Thus, despite the increased amount of sodium in the body, most of the sodium is trapped in the interstitial space and a sodium deficit occurs in the blood. **Hemoconcentration** (elevated blood osmolarity, hematocrit, and hemoglobin) develops from vascular dehydration. This problem increases blood viscosity, reducing flow through small vessels and increasing tissue hypoxia.

Fluid remobilization starts at about 24 hours after injury, when the capillary leak stops. The diuretic stage begins at

about 48 to 72 hours after the burn injury as capillary membrane integrity returns and edema fluid shifts from the interstitial spaces into the intravascular space. Blood volume increases, leading to increased kidney blood flow and diuresis unless kidney damage has occurred. Body weight returns to normal over the next few days as edema subsides.

During this phase, hyponatremia develops because of increased kidney sodium excretion and the loss of sodium from wounds. **Hypokalemia** (low blood potassium level) results from potassium moving back into the cells and also being excreted in urine. Anemia often develops as a result of hemodilution, but it is generally not severe enough to require blood transfusions. Transfusions are needed if the patient's hematocrit is less than 20% to 25% and the patient has manifestations of hypoxia. Transfusions are given only when absolutely necessary. Protein continues to be lost from the wounds. Metabolic acidosis is possible because of the loss of bicarbonate in the urine and the increased fat metabolism that occurs because of decreased carbohydrate intake.

Cardiac Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

Heart rate increases and cardiac output decreases because of the initial fluid shifts and hypovolemia that occur after a burn injury. Cardiac output may remain low until 18 to 36 hours after the burn injury. Cardiac output increases with fluid resuscitation and reaches normal levels before plasma volume is restored completely. Proper fluid resuscitation and support with oxygen prevent further complications.

Pulmonary Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

Direct injury to the lung from contact with flames rarely occurs. Rather, respiratory problems are caused by superheated air, steam, toxic fumes, or smoke. *Such problems are a major cause of death in patients with burns and are most likely to occur when the burn takes place indoors.* Respiratory failure with burn injuries can result from airway edema during fluid resuscitation, pulmonary capillary leak, chest burns that restrict chest movement, and carbon monoxide poisoning.

Respiratory damage from an inhalation injury can occur in the upper and major airways and the lung tissue (Cancio et al., 2007). The upper airway is affected when inhaled smoke or irritants cause edema and obstruct the trachea. Irritants coming in contact with the upper airway often cause a reflex closure of the vocal cords. This protective reflex reduces the entry of smoke and toxic gases into the lungs. Heat can reach the upper airway, causing an inflammatory

response that leads to edema of the mouth and throat with the potential of airway obstruction.

The chemicals and toxic gases that are produced during combustion cause more airway injury than does the heat. The ciliated membranes lining the trachea normally trap bacteria and foreign materials. Smoke and combustion products slow this activity, which allows foreign particles to enter the bronchi. The lining of the trachea and bronchi may slough 48 to 72 hours after injury, enter the airway, narrow the tracheal lumen, and obstruct the lower airways.

Lung tissue injuries result from toxic irritant damage to the alveoli and capillaries. Leaking capillaries cause alveolar edema. This edema can occur immediately or as late as 1 week after the injury. The fluid that diffuses into the lung tissue spaces contains proteins that form fibrinous membranes and lead to respiratory distress. Progressive pulmonary failure develops, leading to acute pulmonary insufficiency and infection.

Gastrointestinal Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

The fluid shifts and decreased cardiac output that occur after injury divert blood flow to the brain, heart, and liver. As a result, the GI tract has decreased blood flow. Gastric mucosal integrity and motility are impaired. The sympathetic nervous system stress response increases secretion of epinephrine and norepinephrine, which inhibit GI motility and further reduce blood flow to the area. Peristalsis decreases, and a paralytic ileus may develop. Secretions and gases collect in the intestines and stomach, causing abdominal distention.

Curling's ulcer (acute gastroduodenal ulcer that occurs with the stress of severe injury) may develop within 24 hours after a severe burn injury because of reduced GI blood flow and mucosal damage (McCance et al., 2010). The mucus lining the stomach normally is a barrier to the hydrogen ions secreted into the stomach contents. With decreased gastric mucus production, this barrier is disrupted and hydrogen ion production is increased and ulcers may develop as a result. However, this complication is now less common because of the use of H₂ histamine blockers, proton pump inhibitors, drugs that protect GI tissues, and early enteral feeding.

Metabolic Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

A serious burn injury greatly increases metabolism by increasing secretion of catecholamines, antidiuretic hormone, aldosterone, and cortisol. With this hypermetabolism, the patient's oxygen use and calorie needs are high.

The catecholamines activate the stress response. The increased production (and loss) of heat breaks down protein and fat (a process called **catabolism**), rapidly uses glucose and calories, and increases urine nitrogen loss. The heat and water lost from the burn also increase metabolic and catabolic rates, which increase calorie needs. Depending on the extent of injury, the patient's calorie needs double or triple normal energy needs. These increased rates peak 4 to 12 days after the burn and can remain elevated for months until all wounds are closed.

The hypermetabolic condition also increases core body temperature. The patient loses heat through the burned areas because the barrier is lost. Core body temperature increases as a response to the adjustment in temperature regulation by the hypothalamus. A central body temperature control change occurs to adapt to the hypermetabolic state, resulting

in the development of a low-grade fever. This change is a "resetting" of the body's normal temperature-control system to a higher baseline body temperature.

Immunologic Changes Resulting from Burn Injury

Burn injury disrupts or destroys the protective barrier of the skin, increasing the risk for infection. The injury activates the inflammatory response and often suppresses all types of immune functions. Topical and systemic antibiotics, general anesthesia, blood transfusion, and the stress of surgery further reduce immune function.

Compensatory Responses to Burn Injury

Any tissue injury is a stressor and can disrupt homeostasis. Two compensatory (adaptive) responses have immediate benefit: the inflammatory response and the sympathetic nervous system stress response. Together these responses cause changes that result in many of the manifestations seen in the first 2 to 3 days after a burn injury.

Inflammatory compensation can be helpful by triggering healing in the injured tissues. It also is responsible for some of the serious problems that occur with the fluid shift. Inflammatory compensation causes blood vessels to leak fluid into the interstitial space and white blood cells to release chemicals that trigger local tissue reactions. These responses cause the massive fluid shift, edema, and hypovolemia that are seen in the *resuscitation phase* (first 24 to 48 hours) after a burn injury. The extent of the inflammatory response depends on the burn severity. [Chapter 19](#) explains the inflammatory responses in detail.

Inflammatory compensation is immediately helpful to the body when injury occurs. These actions are intended to function on a local and short-term basis. When these actions are widespread or persistent, they can cause severe tissue damage.

Sympathetic nervous system compensation is the stress response that occurs when any physical or psychological stressors are present. Changes caused by sympathetic compensation are most evident in the cardiovascular, respiratory, and GI systems. [Fig. 28-8](#) shows the results of sympathetic nervous system stimulation.

Etiology of Burn Injury

Burn injuries are caused by dry heat (flame), moist heat (scald), contact with hot surfaces, chemicals, electricity, and ionizing radiation. The cause of the injury affects both the prognosis and the treatment.

Dry heat injuries are caused by open flame. The most common flame injuries occur in house fires and explosions. Ignited clothing from an open flame accounts for most of the injuries. Explosions usually result in flash burns because they produce a brief exposure to very high temperatures.

Moist heat (scald) injuries are caused by contact with hot liquids or steam. Scald injuries are more common among older adults than among younger adults. Hot liquid spills usually burn the upper, front areas of the body. Immersion scald injuries usually involve the lower body.

Contact burns occur when hot metal, tar, or grease contacts the skin, often leading to a full-thickness injury. Hot metal injuries occur when a body part contacts a hot surface, such as a space heater or iron. They also can occur in industrial settings from molten metals. Tar and asphalt temperatures usually are greater than 400° F, and deep injuries occur within

seconds when the skin is immersed in or splashed with them. Hot grease injuries from cooking are usually deep because of the high temperature of the grease.

Chemical burns occur as a result of accidents in homes or industry. They can also be the result of a deliberate assault. Injury occurs when chemicals directly contact the skin and epithelial tissues or are ingested. The severity of the injury depends on the duration of contact, the concentration of the chemical, the amount of tissue exposed, and the action of the chemical.

Alkalis found in oven cleaners, fertilizers, drain cleaners, and heavy industrial cleaners damage the tissues by causing the skin and its proteins to liquefy. This allows for deeper spread of the chemical and more severe burns. Acids found in bathroom cleaners, rust removers, chemicals for swimming pools, and industrial drain cleaners damage tissue by coagulating cells and skin proteins, which can limit the depth of tissue damage. Organic compounds are found in chemical disinfectants and gasoline and cause damage because they are fat soluble and are easily absorbed through the skin. Once absorbed, they have toxic effects on the kidneys and liver.

Electrical injuries are burns occurring when an electrical current enters the body (Fig. 28-9). These injuries have been called the “grand masquerader” of burns because the surface injuries may look small but the associated internal injuries can be huge. Tissue injury from electrical trauma results from electrical energy being converted to heat energy. The extent

of injury depends on the type of current, the pathway of flow, the local tissue resistance, and the duration of contact. The skin is the most resistant organ; the greatest resistance is in the epidermis of the skin. At high voltages, the difference in tissue resistance is not important. Although various underlying tissues have different resistance to current flow, once skin resistance is overcome, the body acts as a conductor and current flows throughout the involved body part. Bone has a very high resistance because of its density. Current will flow along the surface of the bone, and the heat generated damages the attached muscle. As a result, deep muscle injury may be present even when superficial muscles appear normal or uninjured.

The longer the electricity is in contact with the body, the greater the damage. The duration of contact is increased by tetanic contractions of the strong flexor muscles in the forearm, which can prevent the person from releasing the electrical source.

It is difficult to know the exact path a current takes in the body. The course of flow is defined by the locations of the “contact sites,” which are the entrance and exit wounds (Fig. 28-10). At first, the wounds may not be obvious. The path of the injury may involve many internal organs between the two contact sites.

Burn injuries from electricity can occur in one of three ways: *thermal burns*, *flash burns*, or *true electrical injury*. Thermal burns occur when clothes ignite from heat or flames

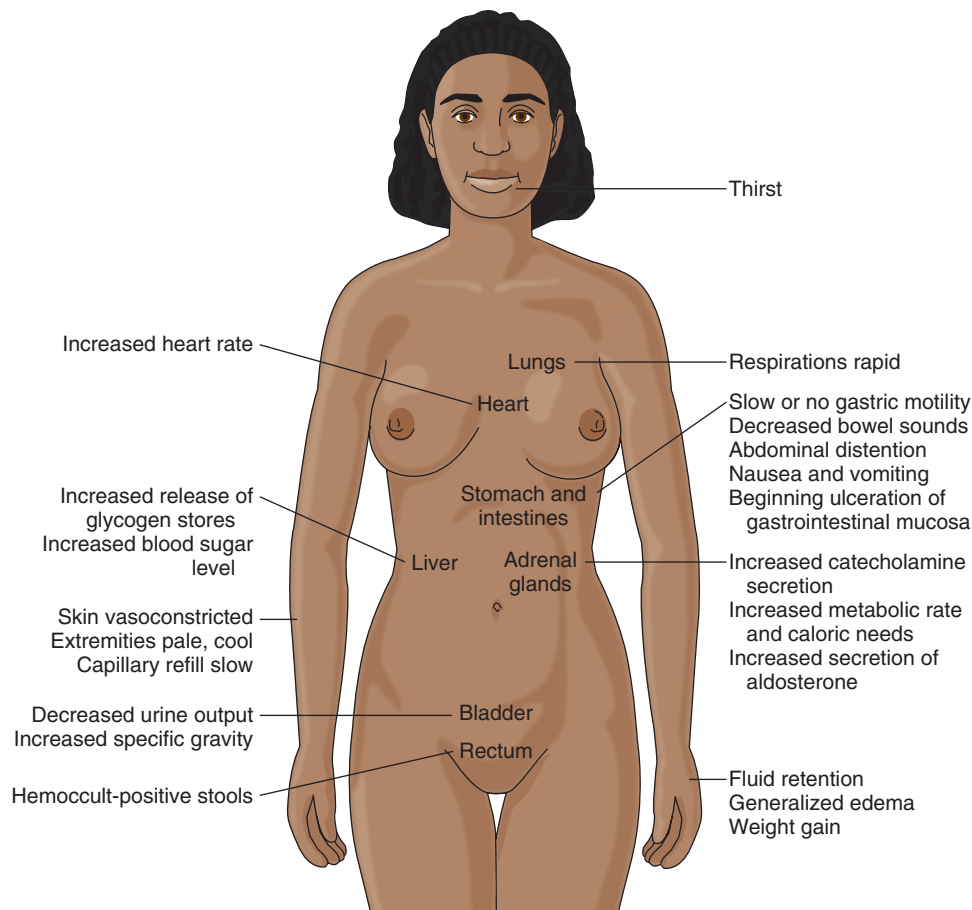


FIG. 28-8 The physiologic actions of the sympathetic nervous system compensatory responses to burn injury (early phase).

produced by electrical sparks. External burn injuries can occur when the electrical current jumps, or “arcs,” between two body surfaces. These injuries usually are severe and deep. True electrical injury occurs when direct contact is made with an electrical source. Internal damage results, and the injuries can be devastating. Damage starts on the inside and goes out; deep-tissue destruction may not be apparent immediately after injury. Organs in the path of the current may become ischemic and necrotic.

Radiation injuries occur when people are exposed to large doses of radioactive material. The most common type of tissue injury from radiation exposure occurs with therapeutic

radiation. This injury is usually minor and rarely causes extensive skin damage.

Radiation exposure is more serious in industrial settings where radioactive energy is produced or radioactive isotopes are used. Injury severity depends on the type of radiation, distance from the source, duration of exposure, absorbed dose, and depth of penetration into the body. Chapter 24 discusses potential tissue damage from alpha, beta, and gamma radiation.

Incidence/Prevalence of Burn Injury

Fires and burns are the fifth most common cause of unintentional injury deaths in the United States and the third leading cause of fatal home injuries (American Burn Association, 2010). Although the number of fatalities and injuries caused by residential fires has declined gradually over the past several decades, many residential fire-related deaths remain preventable and continue to pose a significant public health problem.

An estimated 4000 fire and burn deaths occur each year from all sources of burn injury (American Burn Association, 2010). Most deaths occur at the scene of the incident or during transport.

The number of deaths from burn injuries decreases with appropriate intervention. Factors that increase the risk for death include age older than 60 years, a burn greater than 40% TBSA, and the presence of an inhalation injury. When a patient has all three of these factors, the risk for death is very high. Better outcomes from burn injuries occur because of vigorous fluid resuscitation, early burn wound excision, improved critical care monitoring, early enteral nutrition, antibiotics, and the use of specialized burn centers.

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

Minor burns are common, and prevention involves planning and awareness. Teach all people to assess how hot the water is before bathing, showering, or immersing a body part in it. Hot water tanks should be set below 140° F. Reinforce the use of potholders when taking food from conventional or microwave ovens. Stress the importance of never adding a flammable substance (e.g., gasoline, kerosene, alcohol, lighter fluid, charcoal starter) to an open flame. Suggest the use of sunscreen agents and protective clothing to avoid sunburn.

House fires also are common and lead to severe burns and death. Teach people to reduce the risk for house fires by never smoking in bed, avoiding smoking when drinking alcohol or

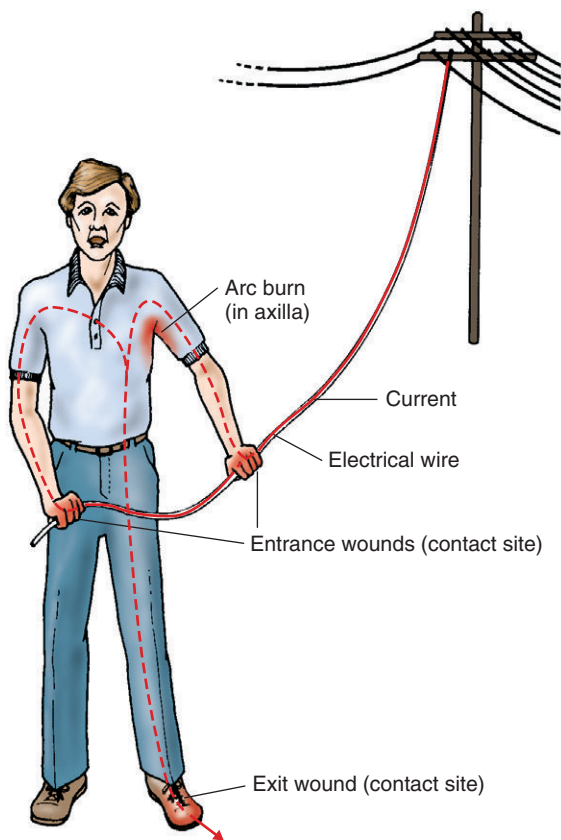


FIG. 28-9 The mechanism of electrical injury: currents passing through the body follow the path of least resistance to the ground.

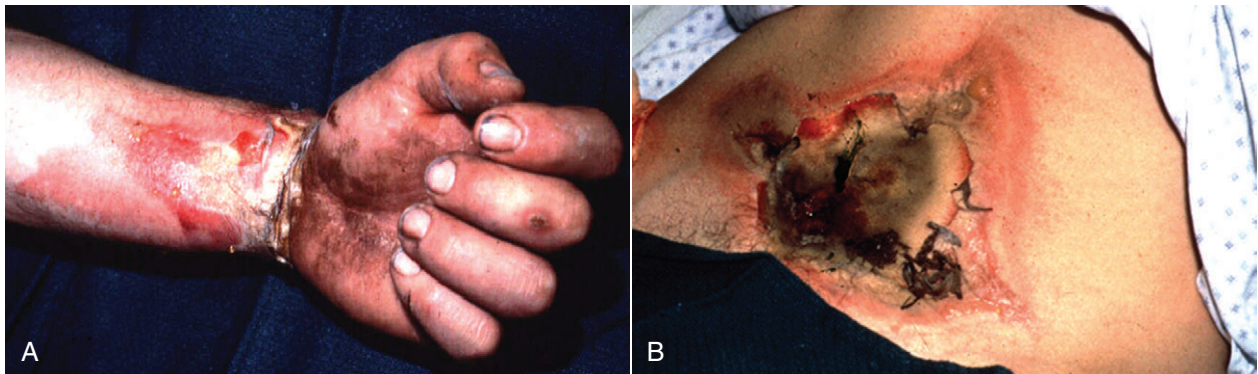


FIG. 28-10 Electrical contact sites. **A**, Possible entrance site. **B**, Possible exit site.

taking drugs that induce sleep, and keeping matches and lighters out of the reach of children or anyone who is cognitively impaired. If space heaters must be used, stress the importance of keeping clothing, bedding, and other flammable objects away from them. Remind people to keep the screens and doors closed on the fronts of fireplaces and to have chimneys swept each year to prevent creosote buildup. Also remind patients using home oxygen not to smoke or have open flames in a room where oxygen is in use (Edelman et al., 2008).

Leaving a burning building is critical to prevent injury or death. Teach all people to use home smoke detectors and carbon monoxide detectors and to ensure that the detectors are in good working order. The number of detectors needed depends on the size of the home. Recommendations are that each bedroom has a separate smoke detector, there should be at least one detector in the hallway of each story, and at least one detector is needed for the kitchen, each stairwell, and each home entrance. Teach everyone to develop a planned escape route with alternatives for when a main route is blocked by fire. Reinforce that no one should ever re-enter a burning building to retrieve belongings.

RESUSCITATION PHASE OF BURN INJURY

Overview

Events within the first hour after injury can make the difference between life and death for the patient with a burn injury. Immediate care focuses on maintaining an open airway, ensuring adequate breathing and circulation, limiting the extent of injury, and maintaining the function of vital organs. [Chart 28-1](#) outlines the emergency management of a burn injury.

The **resuscitation phase** is the first phase of a burn injury. It begins at the onset of injury and continues for about 24 to 48 hours. During this phase, the injury is evaluated and the immediate problems of fluid loss, edema, and reduced blood flow are assessed. The priorities for management during this period are to (1) secure the airway, (2) support circulation by fluid replacement, (3) keep the patient comfortable with analgesics, (4) prevent infection through careful wound care, (5) maintain body temperature, and (6) provide emotional support.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Knowledge of circumstances surrounding the burn injury is valuable in the management of a burn victim. If possible, obtain information directly from the patient. If this is not possible, ask family members or witnesses to the event. Ask about the circumstances of the injury, the time and place of injury, and the source and cause of injury. Ask detailed questions about how the burn occurred and the events occurring from the time of injury until help arrived. Also obtain demographic data, health history (including pre-existing illness), drug use, any additional injuries, and pain information (Brown-Guttovz, 2011).

CHART 28-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Management of Burns

General Management for All Types of Burns

- Assess for airway patency.
- Administer oxygen as needed.
- Cover the patient with a blanket.
- Keep the patient on NPO status.
- Elevate the extremities if no fractures are obvious.
- Obtain vital signs.
- Initiate an IV line, and begin fluid replacement.
- Administer tetanus toxoid for prophylaxis.
- Perform a head-to-toe assessment.

Specific Management

Flame Burns

- Smother the flames.
- Remove smoldering clothing and all metal objects.

Chemical Burns

- If dry chemicals are present on skin or clothing, DO NOT WET THEM.
- Brush off any dry chemicals present on the skin or clothing.
- Remove the patient's clothing.
- Ascertain the type of chemical causing the burn.
- Do not attempt to neutralize the chemical unless it has been positively identified and the appropriate neutralizing agent is available.

Electrical Burns

- At the scene, separate the patient from the electrical current.
- Smother any flames that are present.
- Initiate cardiopulmonary resuscitation.
- Obtain an electrocardiogram (ECG).

Radiation Burns

- Remove the patient from the radiation source.
- If the patient has been exposed to radiation from an unsealed source, remove his or her clothing (using tongs or lead protective gloves).
- If the patient has radioactive particles on the skin, send him or her to the nearest designated radiation decontamination center.
- Help the patient bathe or shower.

Demographic data include age, weight, and height. The rate of serious complications and death from burn injuries is increased among adults older than 50 years. [Chart 28-2](#) lists the age-related differences in older adults' responses to a burn injury. The patient's preburn weight is used to calculate fluid rates, energy requirements, and drug doses. This weight is the *dry weight*, because it represents the patient's weight before edema begins to form. Calculations based on a weight obtained after fluid replacement is started are not accurate because of water-induced weight gain. Height is important in determining total body surface area (TBSA), which is used to calculate nutritional needs.

A health history, including any pre-existing illnesses, must be known for appropriate treatment. Obtain specific information about the patient's history of cardiac or kidney problems, chronic alcoholism, substance abuse, and diabetes mellitus; any of these problems influence fluid resuscitation. The physiologic stress of a burn can make a mild disease process develop more symptoms or worsen an active process. Obtain a drug history that includes allergies, current drugs,

CHART 28-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Age-Related Changes Increasing Complications from Burn Injury

AGE-RELATED CHANGES	COMPLICATIONS AND NURSING CONSIDERATIONS
Thinner skin, sensory impairment, decreased mobility	Sensory impairment and decreased mobility increase the risk for burn injury. Thinner skin increases the depth of injury even when the exposure to the cause of injury is of shorter duration.
Slower healing time	Longer time with open areas results in a greater risk for infection and metabolic derangements.
More likely to have cardiac impairments	Limits the aggressiveness of fluid resuscitation. Increases the risk for shock and acute kidney injury (AKI).
Reduced inflammatory and immune responses	Increases the risk for infection and sepsis. Patient may not have a fever when infection is present.
Reduced thoracic and pulmonary compliance	Increased risk for atelectasis, hypoxia, and other pulmonary complications.
More likely to have pre-existing medical conditions such as diabetes mellitus, kidney impairment, or pulmonary impairment	Any of these disorders compromise vital organ function and can interfere with fluid resuscitation efforts or other treatments.

and immunization status from the patient or family. Determine the dose and time the last drug was taken. Ask whether the patient smokes or drinks alcohol daily; these factors influence treatment and responses.

Other injuries may occur at the time of the burn. The most common causes of additional injuries are falls and motor vehicle crashes. Such injuries increase the risk for complications or death. Determine whether additional injuries such as fractures, chest injuries, and abdominal trauma are causing pain or discomfort.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Physical assessment findings in the resuscitation phase differ greatly from findings later in the course of the injury. Use a systematic approach to ensure that no problem is missed. Assessment of the respiratory system is most critical to prevent life-threatening complications.

Respiratory Assessment. Patients with major burn injuries and those with inhalation injury are at risk for respiratory problems. Respiratory manifestations common with a burn injury are listed in Table 28-3. *Thus continuous airway assessment is a nursing priority* (Brown-Guttovz, 2011).

Direct Airway Injury. The degree of inhalation damage depends on the fire source, temperature, environment, and types of toxic gases generated. Ask about the source of the fire, duration of exposure, and whether the fire was in an enclosed space. Inspect the mouth, nose, and pharynx. Burns

TABLE 28-3 FACTORS DETERMINING INHALATION INJURY OR AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

- Patients who were injured in a closed space
- Patients with extensive burns or with burns of the face
- Intra-oral charcoal, especially on teeth and gums
- Patients who were unconscious at the time of injury
- Patients with singed scalp hair, nasal hairs, eyelids, or eyelashes
- Patients who are coughing up carbonaceous sputum
- Changes in voice such as hoarseness or brassy cough
- Use of accessory muscles or stridor
- Poor oxygenation or ventilation
- Edema, erythema, and ulceration of airway mucosa
- Wheezing, bronchospasm



of the lips, face, ears, neck, eyelids, eyebrows, and eyelashes are strong indicators that an inhalation injury may be present. Burns inside the mouth and singed nasal hairs also indicate possible inhalation injury. Black particles of carbon in the nose, mouth, and sputum and edema of the nasal septum indicate smoke inhalation, as does a “smoky” smell to the patient’s breath.

A change in respiratory pattern may indicate a pulmonary injury. The patient may:

- Become progressively hoarse
- Develop a brassy cough
- Drool or have difficulty swallowing
- Produce sounds on exhalation that include audible wheezes, crowing, and stridor

Any of these changes may mean the patient is about to lose his or her airway.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For a burn patient in the resuscitation phase who is hoarse, has a brassy cough, drools or has difficulty swallowing, or produces an audible breath sound on exhalation, immediately apply oxygen and notify the Rapid Response Team.

Upper airway edema and inhalation injury are most common in the trachea and mainstem bronchi. Auscultation of these areas may reveal wheezes, which indicate partial obstruction. *Patients with severe inhalation injuries may have such rapid obstruction that, within a short time, they cannot force air through the narrowed airways. As a result, the wheezing sounds disappear. This finding indicates impending airway obstruction and demands immediate intubation.* Many patients are intubated when an inhalation injury is suspected rather than waiting until obstruction makes endotracheal or nasotracheal intubation difficult or impossible.

TABLE 28-4 PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS OF CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

CARBON MONOXIDE LEVEL	PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS
1%-10% (normal)	Increased threshold to visual stimuli Increased blood flow to vital organs
11%-20% (mild poisoning)	Headache Decreased cerebral function Decreased visual acuity Slight breathlessness
21%-40% (moderate poisoning)	Headache Tinnitus Nausea Drowsiness Vertigo Altered mental state Confusion Stupor Irritability Decreased blood pressure, increased and irregular heart rate Depressed ST segment on ECG and dysrhythmias Pale to reddish purple skin
41%-60% (severe poisoning)	Coma Convulsions Cardiopulmonary instability
61%-80% (fatal poisoning)	Death

ECG, Electrocardiogram.

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning. Carbon monoxide (CO) is one of the leading causes of death from a fire. It is a colorless, odorless, tasteless gas released in the process of combustion. Inhalation injury is a risk for carbon monoxide poisoning.

CO is rapidly transported across the lung membrane and binds tightly to hemoglobin in place of oxygen to form carboxyhemoglobin (CoHb). CO also causes the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve to shift to the left, which impairs oxygen unloading at the tissue level. This shift results in reduced oxygen delivery because 98% of the oxygen supplied to the tissues comes bound to hemoglobin. Even though the oxygen-carrying capacity of the hemoglobin is reduced, the blood gas value of partial pressure of arterial oxygen (Pao₂) is normal (Laing, 2010). The vasodilating action of carbon monoxide causes the “cherry red” color (or at least the absence of cyanosis) in these patients. Manifestations vary with the concentration of CoHb. Table 28-4 lists the effects of carbon monoxide poisoning.

Thermal (Heat) Injury. Except for steam inhalation, aspiration of scalding liquid, or explosion of flammable gases under pressure, thermal burns to the respiratory tract are usually limited to the upper airway above the glottis (nasopharynx, oropharynx, and larynx). *Heat damage of the pharynx is often severe enough to produce edema and upper airway obstruction, especially epiglottitis. The problem can occur any time during resuscitation. In the unresuscitated patient, supraglottic edema may be delayed because of the dehydration that occurs with hypovolemia. During fluid resuscitation, however, the tissues rehydrate and then swell. When it is known that the upper airways were exposed to heat, intubation may be performed as an early intervention before obstruction occurs.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When intubation has not been performed in a patient whose upper airways were exposed to heat or toxic gases, continually assess the upper airway for recognition of edema and obstruction.

Inhaled steam can injure the lower respiratory tract because water holds heat and the airways down to the major bronchioles can be damaged. Ulcerations, redness, and edema of the mouth and epiglottis are the first manifestations, with rapid swelling leading to upper airway obstruction. Stridor, hoarseness, and shortness of breath result.

Smoke Poisoning. Smoke poisoning, or chemical injury from the inhalation of combustion by-products, is a common type of inhalation injury. Toxic by-products, especially cyanide, are produced when plastics or home furnishings are burned. Cyanide binds to cell energy-making components, thereby inhibiting cell metabolism and cell function.

Pulmonary Fluid Overload. Pulmonary edema can occur even when the lung tissues have not been damaged directly. Other damaged tissues release such large amounts of histamine and other inflammatory mediators causing capillary leak that even lung capillaries leak fluid into the pulmonary tissue spaces.

Circulatory overload from fluid resuscitation may cause left-sided congestive heart failure. This problem creates high pressure within pulmonary blood vessels that pushes fluid into the lung tissue spaces. Excess lung tissue fluid makes gas exchange difficult. *The patient is short of breath and has dyspnea in the supine position. Crackles are heard on auscultation.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When symptoms of pulmonary edema are present, elevate the head of the bed to at least 45 degrees, apply humidified oxygen, and notify the burn team or the Rapid Response Team.

External Factors. Patients with burn injuries also may have breathing problems from external factors. The most common external factor affecting breathing is tight eschar from deep circumferential chest burns. The eschar either restricts chest movement or compresses structures in the neck and throat so that airflow is impaired. Inspect the patient's chest hourly for ease of respiration, amount of chest movement, rate of breathing, and effort. If the patient is being mechanically ventilated, increased airway pressures may indicate the need for escharotomies. Use continuous pulse oximetry to assess breathing effectiveness in maintaining blood oxygen levels.

Cardiovascular Assessment. Changes in the cardiovascular system begin immediately after the burn injury and include shock. *Hypovolemia shock is a common cause of death in the resuscitation phase in patients with serious injuries. See Chapter 39 for discussion of shock.*

At first, cardiac manifestations are from hypovolemia and decreased cardiac output. Monitor the degree of edema, and assess cardiac status by measuring central and peripheral pulses, blood pressure, capillary refill, and pulse oximetry. Noninvasive blood pressure readings are inaccurate in patients with large burns involving the upper extremities, and invasive

blood pressure monitoring may be needed. At first, the patient has tachycardia, decreased blood pressure, and decreased peripheral pulses. Peripheral capillary refill is slow or absent as tissue blood flow decreases. With fluid resuscitation, peripheral edema increases, as does the patient's body weight.

Electrocardiographic (ECG) changes can indicate damage to the heart as a result of electrical burn injuries or stress that induces a myocardial infarction. Obtain baseline ECG tracings at the time of admission, and continue the ECG monitoring throughout the resuscitation phase. Compare current ECG tracings with the initial tracings to assess whether the patient is experiencing new-onset conduction abnormalities from the burn injury or the fluid resuscitation.

Kidney/Urinary Assessment. Changes in kidney function with burn injury are related to decreased blood flow and to cellular debris. During the fluid shift, blood flow to the kidney may not be adequate for glomerular filtration. As a result, urine output is greatly decreased compared with IV fluid intake. The urine is very concentrated and has a high specific gravity.

Other substances may be present in the blood that flows through the kidney. Destroyed red blood cells release hemoglobin and potassium. When muscle damage occurs from a major burn or electrical injury, a large oxygen-carrying protein called *myoglobin* is released from damaged muscle and circulates to the kidney. Most damaged cells release proteins that form uric acid. All of these large molecules in the blood may precipitate in the kidney tubular system. A “sludge” then forms that blocks kidney blood and urine flow and may cause kidney failure.

Assess kidney function by accurately measuring urine output hourly and comparing this value with fluid intake. Urine output is decreased during the first 24 hours of the resuscitation phase. Fluid resuscitation is provided at the rate needed to maintain urine output at 30 to 50 mL or 0.5 mL/kg/hr. Assess response to fluid resuscitation by measuring urine specific gravity, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), serum creatinine, and serum sodium levels in addition to hourly urine output. Examine the urine for color, odor, and the presence of particles or foam.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which assessment does the nurse perform first on the client just admitted after an electrical injury with contact sites on the left hand and left foot?

- A. Core body temperature
- B. Electrocardiography
- C. Depth of burn injury
- D. Urine output

Skin Assessment. Assess the skin to determine the size and depth of burn injury. The size of the injury is first estimated in comparison with the *total body surface area (TBSA)*. For example, a burn that involves 40% of the TBSA is a 40% burn. The size of the injury is important not only for diagnosis and prognosis but also for calculating drug doses, fluid replacement volumes, and caloric needs.

Inspect the skin to identify injured areas and changes in color and appearance. Except with electrical burns, this initial size assessment usually can be made accurately with specific assessment tools and charts.

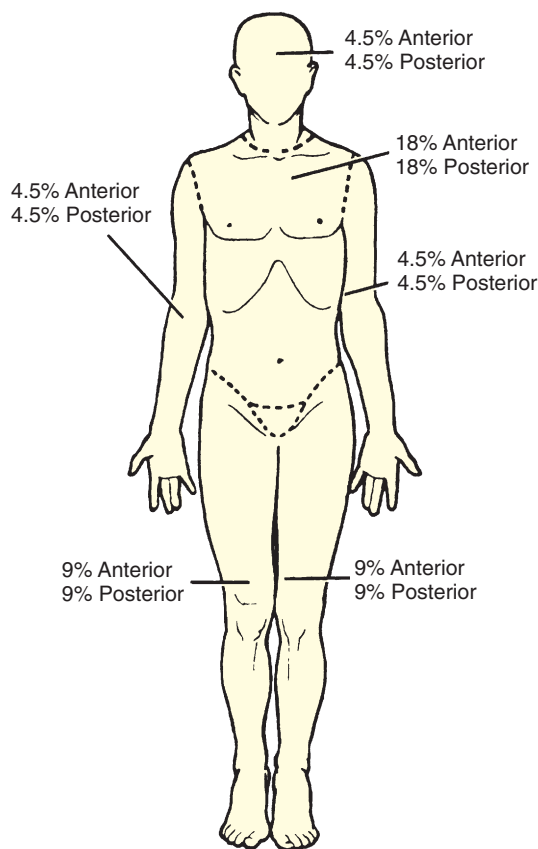


FIG. 28-11 The rule of nines for estimating burn percentage.

The most rapid method for calculating the size of a burn injury in adult patients whose weights are in normal proportion to their heights is the *rule of nines* (Fig. 28-11). With this method, the body is divided into areas that are multiples of 9%. Although useful at the site of injury and in emergency departments, overestimation of the TBSA involved can easily occur. More complex evaluations using other methods are made in the burn unit.

Because specific treatments are related to the depth of the burn injury, initial assessment of the skin includes estimations of burn depth. Criteria for depth of injury are based on appearance and associated characteristics (see [Depth of Burn Injury](#) section, pp. 512-515).

Bedside evaluation of burn depth is only an estimate. Other methods, such as thermography, the use of vital dyes, indocyanine green (ICG) video angiography, and laser

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The client who tripped while carrying an open kettle of hot water received scald burns to the entire chest, the entire anterior section of the right arm, the right half of the abdomen, and the anterior portion of the right leg from the groin to the knee. At what percentage of total body surface area does the nurse calculate the injury using the rule of nines?

- A. 22% to 23%
- B. 30% to 31%
- C. 39% to 40%
- D. 48% to 49%

Doppler imaging (LDI) more precisely measure the amount of tissue perfusion of the injured tissue. ICG and LDI are the most accurate of the three methods. Laser Doppler imaging is used more frequently because it is relatively accurate, less invasive, and faster than the other methods.

Gastrointestinal Assessment. Although the GI tract usually is not directly injured (except with chemical ingestion), changes in function occur in all burn patients. The decreased blood flow and sympathetic stimulation reduce GI motility and promote development of a paralytic ileus. Auscultate the abdomen to assess bowel sounds. Bowel sounds are commonly reduced or absent in a patient with severe burns. Other manifestations indicating paralytic ileus include nausea, vomiting, and abdominal distention. Patients with burns of 25% TBSA or who are intubated generally require a nasogastric (NG) tube inserted to prevent aspiration and remove gastric secretions. Assess the tube for placement and patency after insertion. Because of the potential for ulcer formation in the GI tract, examine each stool and vomitus for gross blood or other material that indicates partially digested blood (“coffee ground”—appearing crumbs). Test for the presence of occult blood on any vomit or stool.

Laboratory Assessment

Changes in laboratory test values are found in different phases of postburn recovery and reflect tissue damage or compensatory responses. However, other changes in specific laboratory findings may suggest complications.

During the resuscitation phase and before the start of fluid resuscitation, blood analysis reflects the fluid shift and direct tissue damage. Baseline laboratory test values and early postburn expected changes are listed in [Chart 28-3](#).

Changes in the total white blood cell (WBC) count and differential reflect immune function and inflammatory responses to the burn injury. The burn patient’s total WBC count, especially the neutrophil percentage, first rises and then drops rapidly, with a “left shift” (see [Chapter 19](#)) as the immune system becomes unable to sustain its defenses. If sepsis occurs, the total WBC count may be as low as 2000 cells/mm³.

Other laboratory tests that provide useful information about the burn patient’s status include urine electrolyte assays, urine cultures, liver enzyme studies, and clotting studies. Drug and alcohol screens are obtained if drug or alcohol intoxication is suspected.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

For African-American patients, a sickle cell preparation is performed if sickle status is unknown. The trauma of a burn injury can trigger a sickle cell crisis in patients who have the disease and in those who carry the trait.

Imaging Assessment

Standard x-rays and scans do not provide direct assessment data about the burn wound. These assessments are not performed unless other trauma is suspected.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Specific diagnostic studies are performed when deep organ trauma is suspected. Such studies include IV renograms, computed tomography (CT), ultrasonography, bronchoscopy, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). When burn injuries involve the eye, an ophthalmic evaluation detects

CHART 28-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Burn Assessment During the Resuscitation Phase

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Serum Studies		
Hemoglobin	12-16 g/dL (women) 14-18 g/dL (men)	Elevated as a result of fluid volume loss
Hematocrit	37%-47% (women) 42%-52% (men)	Elevated as a result of fluid volume loss
Urea nitrogen	10-20 mg/dL	Elevated as a result of fluid volume loss
Glucose	70-105 mg/dL	Elevated as a result of the stress response and altered uptake across injured tissues
Electrolytes		
Sodium	136-145 mEq/L (mmol/L)	Decreased; sodium is trapped in edema fluid and lost through plasma leakage
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L (mmol/L)	Elevated as a result of disruption of the sodium-potassium pump, tissue destruction, and red blood cell hemolysis
Chloride	98-106 mEq/L (mmol/L)	Elevated as a result of fluid volume loss and reabsorption of chloride in urine
Arterial Blood Gas Studies		
PaO ₂	80-100 mm Hg	Slightly decreased
PaCO ₂	35-45 mm Hg	Slightly increased from respiratory injury
pH	7.35-7.45	Low as a result of metabolic acidosis
Carboxyhemoglobin	0%-10%	Elevated as a result of inhalation of smoke and carbon monoxide
Other		
Total protein	6.4-8.3 g/dL	Low; protein exudate is lost through the wound
Albumin	3.5-5.0 g/dL	Low; protein is lost through the wound and through vascular membranes because of increased permeability

corneal damage (see Chapters 48 and 49 for specific eye and vision evaluation procedures).

ANALYSIS

A burned patient has dramatic changes not only in the directly damaged tissues but also in many other body systems.

The priority problems for the patient with burn injuries in the resuscitation phase who have sustained a burn injury greater than 25% of the TBSA are:

1. Potential for inadequate oxygenation related to upper airway edema, pulmonary edema, airway obstruction, or pneumonia
2. Hypovolemic shock related to increase in capillary permeability, active fluid volume loss, electrolyte imbalance, and inadequate fluid resuscitation
3. Potential for organ ischemia (brain, heart, kidney, gastrointestinal) related to hypovolemia and hypotension
4. Acute and Chronic Pain related to tissue injury, damaged or exposed nerve endings, débridement, dressing changes, invasive procedures, and donor sites
5. Potential for acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) related to inhalation injury

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Supporting Oxygenation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With proper intervention, the patient is expected to maintain a patent airway and have adequate oxygenation. Indicators include that the patient should have either normal or nearly normal oxygen saturation, P_{aO_2} , P_{aCO_2} , and arterial pH.

Interventions. Nursing and medical interventions are used to support normal pulmonary function and prevent pulmonary problems such as pulmonary edema, which can result from lung injury or from fluid overload and heart failure. (Even young, healthy people can develop fluid overload and heart failure.) Specific plans for pulmonary management depend on the cause of the breathing problem and the status of the respiratory tract. *Thus a priority nursing intervention is monitoring the patient's respiratory status.*

Nonsurgical Management. Interventions include airway maintenance, promotion of ventilation, monitoring gas exchange, oxygen therapy, drug therapy, positioning, and deep breathing.

Airway maintenance begins at the burn scene in an unconscious patient and may involve only a chin-lift or a head-tilt maneuver. *Remember that upper airway edema becomes pronounced 8 to 12 hours after the beginning of fluid resuscitation. These patients often require nasal or oral intubation if crowing, stridor, or dyspnea is present.*

A bronchoscopy is performed to examine the vocal cords and airways of patients at risk for obstruction. Patients with severe smoke inhalation or poisoning may require a bronchoscopy on admission and routinely thereafter for examination of the respiratory tract, deep suctioning of the lungs, and removal of sloughing necrotic tissue. Assess the endotracheal tube hourly to ensure patency and location in intubated patients.

Other causes of airway obstruction are excessive secretions and sloughed tissue from damaged lungs. Suction as indicated based on clinical assessment. Vigorous endotracheal or

nasotracheal tube suctioning is performed after chest physiotherapy and aerosol treatments. Patients report that deep endotracheal suctioning is extremely painful. Therefore suctioning the endotracheal tube often requires increased analgesia or sedation.

Promoting ventilation includes ensuring that skeletal muscle movement of the chest is adequate for ventilation. Chest movement can be restricted by eschar and by tight dressings that cover the neck, chest, and abdomen. Observe the patient for ease of respiratory movements, and loosen tight dressings as needed to assist with ventilation.

Monitor for gas exchange by using laboratory tests (e.g., arterial blood gas, carboxyhemoglobin levels) and by assessing for cyanosis, disorientation, and increased pulse rate. Other data to monitor in critically ill patients include chest x-ray findings, pulmonary artery catheter pressures, and central venous pressure measurement.

Cyanide poisoning may occur in patients burned in house fires. An elevated plasma lactate level is one indicator of cyanide toxicity in patients who do not have severe burns.

Oxygen therapy by giving humidified oxygen by facemask, cannula, or hood is used to manage any breathing impairment in the burn patient. Arterial oxygenation less than 60 mm Hg is an indication for intubation and mechanical ventilation. Keep emergency airway equipment at or near the patient's bedside. This equipment includes oxygen, masks, cannulas, manual resuscitation bags, laryngoscope, endotracheal tubes, and equipment for tracheostomy. Chapter 34 addresses specific nursing actions for patients during mechanical ventilation.

Drug therapy with antibiotics is used when pneumonia or other pulmonary infections impair breathing. Drug selection is based on known culture and sensitivity reports or on the specific organisms common to that burn unit.

Patients with pulmonary edema and any degree of heart failure may receive digoxin or other agents to improve left ventricular function and prevent or treat pulmonary edema. Diuretics, a mainstay of therapy for pulmonary edema from other causes, may or may not be used in the resuscitation phase, depending on the patient's blood volume and kidney function.

When a patient's activity during mechanical ventilation severely compromises respiratory mechanics, it may be necessary to use a paralytic drug, such as atracurium (Tracrium) or vecuronium (Norcuron). Paralytic drugs remove all breathing control from the patient, making mechanical ventilation easier. *These drugs do not prevent the patient from seeing and hearing or from experiencing fear, pain, and loss of control. Any patient receiving neuromuscular blockade drugs must also receive drugs for sedation, analgesia, and antianxiety unless clinically contraindicated.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Ensure that all alarms are operative on ventilators, and check patients who are receiving neuromuscular blockade frequently, because they cannot call for help if they become extubated accidentally.

Positioning and deep breathing can improve breathing and oxygenation. Turn the patient frequently, and assist him or her out of bed to a chair as much as possible. Teach the

patient to use coughing and deep-breathing exercises. Urge him or her to use incentive spirometry hourly while awake. Chest physiotherapy may be helpful to mobilize lung secretions.

Surgical Management. A tracheotomy may be needed when long-term intubation is expected. This procedure increases the risk for infection in burn patients even more than in nonburned patients. Emergency tracheotomies are performed when an airway becomes occluded and oral or nasal intubation cannot be achieved.

Other surgical procedures for improving the burn patient's oxygenation include inserting chest tubes and performing an escharotomy. Chest tubes are used to re-expand the lung when a pneumothorax or hemothorax has occurred (see Chapter 34). Tight eschar on the neck, chest, or abdomen can restrict respiratory movement. Escharotomies (described on p. 527) can relieve this restriction and permit greater respiratory movement.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client with burns to the head, neck, and upper body from a house fire starts drooling uncontrollably about 8 hours after the injury. What is the nurse's best first action?

- A. Ensure that the client remains NPO.
- B. Notify the Rapid Response Team.
- C. Slow the IV infusion rate.
- D. Raise the head of the bed.

Preventing Hypovolemic Shock and Inadequate Oxygenation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With appropriate intervention, the patient is expected to have blood pressure and tissue oxygenation restored to normal. Indicators include these vital signs and assessment parameters:

- Blood pressure at or near the patient's normal range
- Palpable peripheral pulses (or heard with Doppler) in all extremities
- Oxygen saturation, partial pressure of arterial oxygen (P_{aO_2}), partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (P_{aCO_2}), and arterial pH at or near the normal ranges

Interventions. Interventions are aimed at increasing blood fluid volume, supporting compensatory mechanisms, and preventing complications. Nonsurgical management is often sufficient for achieving these aims. Surgical management is required most often for full-thickness burns.

Nonsurgical Management. Fluid volume and tissue blood flow are restored through IV fluid therapy and drug therapy. Priority nursing interventions are carrying out fluid resuscitation and monitoring for indications of effectiveness or complications.

Rapid infusion of IV fluids, known as *fluid resuscitation*, is needed to maintain sufficient blood volume for normal cardiac output, mean arterial pressure, and tissue oxygenation. Chart 28-4 lists best practices for fluid resuscitation. Many formulas for calculating fluid requirements exist. Table 28-5 lists those commonly used for the therapy of adult patients. Although the types and amounts of electrolytes, crystalloids, and colloids vary, the purpose of any formula is to prevent shock by maintaining circulating blood fluid volume. The optimal formula and infusion schedules remain controversial.

CHART 28-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Fluid Resuscitation of the Burn Patient

- Initiate and maintain at least one large-bore IV in an area of intact skin (if possible).
- Coordinate with physicians to determine the appropriate fluid type and total volume to be infused during the first 24 hours postburn.
- Administer one half of the total 24-hour prescribed volume within the first 8 hours postburn and the remaining volume over the next 16 hours.
- Assess IV access site, infusion rate, and infused volume at least hourly.
- Monitor these vital signs at least hourly:
 - Blood pressure
 - Pulse rate
 - Respiratory rate
 - Breath sounds
 - Voice quality (if not intubated)
 - Oxygen saturation
 - End-tidal carbon dioxide levels
- Assess urine output at least hourly:
 - Volume
 - Specific gravity
 - Color
 - Character
 - Presence of protein
- Assess for fluid overload:
 - Formation of dependent edema
 - Engorged neck veins
 - Rapid, thready pulse
 - Presence of lung crackles or wheezes on auscultation
- Measure additional body fluid output hourly

TABLE 28-5 COMPOSITION OF COMMON BURN FLUID RESUSCITATION FORMULAS

FORMULA	SOLUTION AND AMOUNT FOR THE FIRST 24 HOURS
Parkland (Baxter)	Crystalloid only (lactated Ringer's) 4 mL/kg/% TBSA burn
Modified Parkland	Crystalloid only (lactated Ringer's) 4 mL/kg/% TBSA burn + 15 mL/m ² of TBSA
Modified Brooke	Protenate or 5% albumin in 0.9% saline Lactated Ringer's without dextrose 0.5 mL to 1.5 mL/kg/% TBSA burn

TBSA, Total body surface area.

Resuscitation for a severe burn requires large fluid loads in a short time to maintain blood flow to vital organs. All common formulas recommend that half of the calculated fluid volume for 24 hours be given in the first 8 hours after injury. The other half is given over the next 16 hours for a total of 24 hours. Fluid boluses are avoided because they increase capillary pressure and worsen edema. In the second 24-hour period after a burn injury, the volume and content of the IV fluids are based on the patient's specific fluid and electrolyte imbalances and his or her response to treatment. This resuscitation involves hourly infusion volumes that are greatly in excess of the 125 mL to 150 mL per hour common infusion rates (Pham et al., 2008).

Fluid replacement formulas are calculated from the time of injury and not from the time of arrival at the hospital. For example, if a burn injury occurred at 8 AM but the patient was

not admitted to the hospital until 10 AM, the first 8-hour period would be completed at 4 PM, or 8 hours after the injury. Thus if resuscitation was delayed by 2 hours until admission to the hospital, calculated fluids would need to be given over the next 6-hour period rather than an 8-hour period. Burn resuscitation formulas are guides. The patient's response to therapy determines exact fluid requirements.

The management of extensive burns requires a large-bore central venous catheter so that massive fluid loads can be given. Peripheral lines are less useful because they become dislodged or fluid flow is cut off when massive peripheral edema compresses the IV catheter and the vein.

Monitoring patient responses is important to determine the adequacy of resuscitation for hydration and blood perfusion of the brain, heart, and kidneys. Urine output is the most common and most sensitive noninvasive assessment parameter for cardiac output and tissue perfusion. *Regardless of the total amount of fluid calculated as needed to meet the fluid requirements of the patient, the amount of fluid given depends on how much IV fluid per hour is needed to maintain the hourly urine output at 0.5 mL/kg (about 30 mL/hr).* Adjustment of the IV fluid rate on the basis of urine output plus serum electrolyte values is known as the **titration** of fluid. In burns larger than 35% TBSA, the use of urine output and vital signs to guide resuscitation may not be adequate. Invasive monitoring of cardiac and pulmonary function is needed to ensure optimal fluid resuscitation.

Burn patients can develop severe hypovolemic shock and need invasive cardiac monitoring. Vital parameters such as central venous pressure, pulmonary artery pressures, and cardiac output are obtained on an hourly to continuous basis.

Monitor the ECG activity of patients who have sustained large burns. Nonburn-related dysrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation, are often present in older patients. Compare current ECG findings with those obtained on admission.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client with 45% burns has a hematocrit of 52% 10 hours after the burn injury and 6 hours after fluid resuscitation was started. What is the nurse's best action?

- Assess the client's blood pressure and urine output.
- Notify the physician or the Rapid Response Team.
- Document the report as the only action.
- Increase the IV infusion rate.

Drug therapy for shock prevention in burn patients is different from that for the heart failure patient. A common mistake in treatment is giving diuretics to increase urine output rather than changing the amount and rate of fluid infused. *Diuretics do not increase cardiac output; they actually decrease circulating volume and cardiac output by pulling fluid from the circulating blood volume to enhance diuresis.* This effect reduces blood flow to other vital organs (especially the heart, lungs, and brain) and greatly increases the risk for severe hypovolemic shock. Therefore diuretics are not generally used to improve urine output for burn patients. An exception is the patient with a burn injury caused by electrical energy. In electrical burns, muscle and deep-tissue damage release large protein molecules (myoglobin), which precipitate in and obstruct the renal tubules. Although the diuretic **mannitol** (Osmitol) is often used in this situation, it should

always be given after adequate urine output has been established.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

In older patients, especially those with cardiac disease, a complicating factor in fluid resuscitation may be heart failure or myocardial infarction. Drugs that increase cardiac output (e.g., dopamine [Intropin]) or that strengthen the force of myocardial contraction (e.g., digoxin [Lanoxin]) may be used along with fluid therapy.

Surgical Management. The surgical procedure for the treatment of inadequate tissue perfusion is **escharotomy**. An incision through the burn eschar relieves pressure caused by the constricting force of fluid buildup under circumferential burns on the extremity or chest and improves circulation. If the pressure is not relieved, arterial compression can occur with a loss of blood flow to the extremity leading to ischemia and possible necrosis. Incisions are made along the length of the extremity and extend into the subcutaneous tissue (Figs. 28-6 and 28-12). This procedure relieves the tourniquet effect of the eschar. If tissue pressure remains elevated after escharotomy, a **fasciotomy** (a deeper incision extending through the fascia) may be needed.

Escharotomies are often performed in a treatment room. No anesthesia is needed for escharotomy because nerve endings have been destroyed by the burn injury, but sedation and analgesia are given to reduce anxiety. Assure the patient that he or she will be made as comfortable as possible during the procedure. Remove the dressings, and thoroughly cleanse the areas to be incised. After the procedure, apply topical antimicrobial drugs and dressings to the area. Carefully monitor escharotomy sites for bleeding. Fasciotomies should be performed in an operating room with the patient under general anesthesia.

Managing Pain

The pain with burn injuries is both chronic and acute. Many factors contribute to burn pain and may be altered to reduce pain perception. Pain from the actual injury is worse when painful procedures are performed. Many nursing procedures needed by burn patients increase pain. Accurate assessment of the patient's pain before and during procedures is an essential part of pain management.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The pain level of a patient with a burn injury is expected to be alleviated or reduced. Indicators include that the patient should rarely demonstrate these behaviors:

- Reporting pain
- Moaning and crying
- Making facial expressions of pain
- Losing his or her appetite

Interventions. Pain management is tailored to the patient's tolerance for pain, coping mechanisms, and physical status. *The priority nursing actions include continually assessing the patient's pain level, using appropriate pain-reducing strategies, and preventing complications.*

Nonsurgical Management. Interventions for the patient having pain include drug therapy, complementary therapy measures, and environmental manipulation.

Drug therapy usually requires opioid analgesics (e.g., morphine sulfate, hydromorphone [Dilaudid], fentanyl) and non-opioid analgesics. Although these drugs may provide

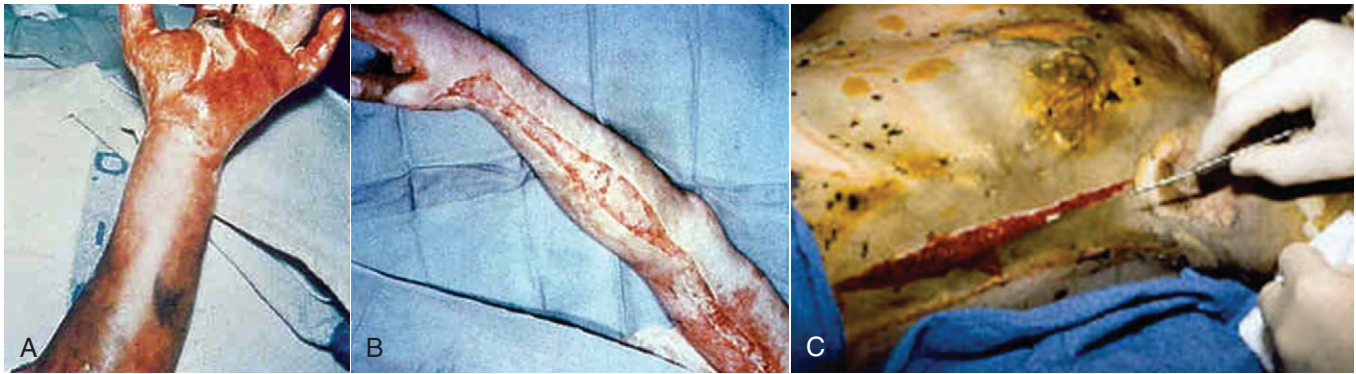


FIG. 28-12 Escharotomy to release circumferential burn eschar and improve circulation to a distal extremity. **A**, Tight circumferential eschar restricting swelling as edema forms in the tissue beneath the eschar. Edema compresses blood vessels, which inhibits blood flow to the distal extremity. **B**, An escharotomy incision allows outward swelling of edematous tissues. The restricted blood flow to the distal extremity is relieved. **C**, An anterior axillary incision is made bilaterally to relieve respiratory distress.

adequate pain relief when no procedures are being performed, they rarely offer more than moderate relief during painful procedures. In addition, they depress respiratory function and reduce intestinal motility. Thus nonpharmacologic interventions also are needed for the burn patient.

During the resuscitation postburn phase, the IV route is used for giving opioid drugs because of problems with absorption from the muscle and stomach. When these agents are given IM or subcutaneously, they remain in the tissue spaces and do not relieve pain. In addition, when edema is present, all the doses are rapidly absorbed at once when the fluid shift is resolving. This delayed but rapid absorption can result in lethal blood levels of analgesics.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Opioid drugs for pain are given only by the intravenous route during the resuscitation phase.

Anesthetic agents, such as ketamine (Ketalar), pentobarbital sodium (Nembutal, Novopentobarb), and nitrous oxide, also reduce pain. Use strict protocols when giving these agents to prevent serious complications.

Complementary and alternative therapy measures include relaxation techniques, meditative breathing, guided imagery, music therapy, massage, and healing or therapeutic touch. Hypnosis and autohypnosis can be used by alert, cooperative patients under the direction of trained therapists. Therapeutic touch, acupuncture, and acupressure are used to a limited extent for burn patients; the results are variable. Active music interventions for distraction have been useful in reducing patients' perceptions of pain and anxiety (Tan et al., 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 529). Additional nontraditional and complementary therapy types of pain intervention are detailed in [Chapter 2](#).

Environmental changes, such as providing a quiet environment, using nonpainful tactile stimulation, and increasing the patient's control, can increase comfort. Sleep deprivation

increases patients' discomfort. Increasing sleep or rest time in a quiet environment helps reduce the adverse effects of sleep deprivation, replenishes body hormone stores, helps prevent critical care unit psychosis, and restores the diurnal effects of endorphins. Coordinate with the health care team to ensure that procedures are performed during the patient's waking hours.

Tactile stimulation can reduce pain. Help the patient change positions every 2 hours to reduce pressure on any specific area, improve circulation to painful areas, and ease pain. Massage nonburn areas to reduce pain transmission and stimulate endorphin release. Apply heat and maintain warm room temperatures to prevent shivering.

To reduce anxiety and increase feelings of confidence and independence, encourage the patient to participate in pain control measures. For example, make a contract with him or her that specifies how long a painful procedure will last. This helps patients deal with the pain for that particular period. Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) also reduces pain. Important issues and techniques for the best use of PCA include giving an initial bolus of 5 to 10 mg of morphine (or equivalent drug), increasing the PCA dose as needed to achieve pain relief, and planning for a change in dosing regimens at night (e.g., giving a bolus dose at bedtime). See [Chapter 5](#) for a detailed discussion of combination drug therapy for pain management.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A burned client newly arrived from an accident scene is prescribed 4 mg of morphine sulfate intravenously. What is the most important reason the nurse administers the analgesic to this client by the intravenous (IV) route?

- The drug will be effective more quickly than if given IM or subcutaneously.
- It is less likely to interfere with the client's breathing and oxygenation.
- The danger of an overdose during fluid remobilization is reduced.
- The client has delayed gastric emptying.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Music Hath Charms ...

Tan, X., Yowler, C., Super, D., & Fratiannie, R. (2010). The efficacy of music therapy protocols for decreasing pain, anxiety, and muscle tension levels during burn dressing changes: A prospective randomized crossover trial. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 31(4), 590-597.

Burn pain is intensified during manipulation of the burn wound during dressing changes. Although drug therapy with opioids and other pharmacologic agents is used during these acutely painful procedures, it provides only moderate relief. Many narrative and case studies have indicated that music therapy coupled with drug therapy improves pain management during débridement and dressing changes; however, these studies often did not include control groups, objective measures, or random assignment.

The purpose of the current study was to determine the effectiveness of music therapy interventions in reducing patients' pain, anxiety, and muscle tension levels during burn dressing changes. Twenty-nine burn patients were recruited into the study and served as their own controls using a randomly assigned crossover design. On one day, they participated in a music therapy intervention before, during, and after dressing changes. On another day, the patients did not participate in an active music therapy intervention. Half of the subjects received the intervention on the first observation day and no intervention on the second observation day. The other half received no intervention the first observation day and received the music intervention on the second observation day. Data were collected for pain, anxiety, and muscle tension at seven points for each patient at each of the two observation periods. The interactions were videotaped. Patients self-rated pain and anxiety. Muscle tension was objectively rated by three research nurses independently viewing the videos and using the Muscle Tension Inventory Scale. The inter-rater reliability for these nurses using this scale was measured at >0.6, an excellent category of agreement.

No significant differences in pain, anxiety, and muscle tension were found between the two treatment days before the dressing changes. All patients reported reduced pain and anxiety on the days with the music intervention during and after dressing changes (pain and anxiety reduction reached statistical significance). Similarly, muscle tension was reduced significantly during and after dressing changes on the music intervention days compared with non-intervention days.

Level of Evidence: 2

This study was well designed with random assignment to crossover timing of the intervention. The addition of an objective measurement of muscle tension added strength to the design. An interim analysis was performed early in the study to establish adequacy of sample size (29 subjects provided power at 80% and the chance of a type I error at .05).

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Several differences in this study enhanced its outcome and credibility compared with previous reports of music therapy effectiveness. One of the most important aspects of this music intervention is that it was an active process, not just the addition of music played passively during the dressing changes. The active process consisted of having patients work with a music therapist in selecting the music type, having "live" music, and having patients sing along or "fill-in" song gaps. Thus the distraction effect away from painful stimuli was high.

A major implication of these results is to test alternate methods of active distraction to supplement or complement drug therapy for pain and anxiety reduction during acutely painful but necessary procedures. Not all patients are equally likely to respond to a music intervention; however, applying this research method to test other active distraction interventions can lead to an increase in the available options.

Surgical Management. Early surgical excision of the burn wound is used in many burn centers (see the [Surgical Excision](#) section on p. 533). Early excision under anesthesia reduces the pain from daily débridement at the bedside or during hydrotherapy.

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Patient-Centered Care; Safety**

The patient is a 60-year-old, 148-lb (70-kg) woman admitted directly to the burn center after sustaining an injury from a house fire. She fell asleep while smoking in bed, and the blankets ignited. At the scene, she was given oxygen with a 100% non-rebreather mask. Emergency medical services (EMS) reports from the scene that she is confused and irritable, her blood pressure is decreased, and her heart rate is irregular. She has partial-thickness burns on her entire face and neck. She also has circumferential full-thickness burns to her anterior and posterior chest, abdomen, bilateral upper extremities, and hands. The roughly estimated TBSA burn is 54%. On admission, she is disoriented and has stridor and shortness of breath. Further assessment reveals singed scalp hair, eyebrows, and nasal hairs. A 20-gauge IV line is present in the right antecubital space.

1. Is this patient at risk for an inhalation injury? Support your response.
2. Do you need to perform further assessment of the airway? If yes, what would you expect to find on your assessment that would indicate airway obstruction or inhalation injury?
3. Once the patient has an adequate airway and level of consciousness, what intervention should be implemented next?
4. How would you determine the amount of fluid required for this patient using the rule of nines and the Parkland formula?
5. What parameters would indicate to you that the patient is being adequately resuscitated?

Preventing Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome

Planning: Expected Outcome. The patient with a burn injury is expected to:

- Not experience acute respiratory distress
- Have arterial blood gases (ABGs) within normal limits
- Maintain normal lung compliance.

Interventions. Patients who develop acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) from burn injuries require thorough assessments and interventions. Interventions focus on increasing lung compliance and improving Pao₂ (partial pressure of arterial oxygen) levels. The priority nursing care actions are coordinating respiratory therapy strategies and monitoring the patient's response to these interventions.

In collaboration with the physician and respiratory therapist, give positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) to augment the decreased lung volume by providing a continuous positive pressure in the airways and alveoli. This procedure enhances the diffusion of oxygen across the alveolar-capillary membrane. PEEP can be combined with intermittent mandatory volume (IMV) to enhance its effectiveness.

Assess and document the patient's response so that needed ventilator changes can be made. *Document and immediately report any signs of respiratory distress or change in respiratory patterns to the burn team and the respiratory therapist.* Monitor pulse oximetry and ABG levels to assess changes in respiratory status.

Neuromuscular blocking drugs (atracurium) can be used in patients receiving mechanical ventilation to reduce oxygen consumption (see the discussion of specific nursing care in the [Supporting Oxygenation](#) section, pp. 525-526).



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient who sustained a 58% TBSA burn injury described on p. 529 is started on fluid resuscitation using the Parkland formula as a guide. She has a Foley catheter in place and now has wine-colored urine. At this time, you are no longer able to palpate her radial pulses. The patient was intubated on arrival to the hospital. Six hours into her resuscitation she has a decrease in her oxygenation saturation and the peak airway pressure alarm on the ventilator keeps sounding.

1. What is the cause of the discolored urine, and what interventions may be prescribed?
2. What are the potential causes for oxygen desaturation and for elevation of peak airway pressures? What is your next intervention?
3. What are the potential causes for a decrease in radial pulses?
4. The patient requires escharotomies to both her extremities and trunk. What steps would you take to prepare the patient for this procedure? What postprocedure care would you perform?

ACUTE PHASE OF BURN INJURY

Overview

The acute phase of burn injury begins about 36 to 48 hours after injury and lasts until wound closure is complete. During this phase, a multidisciplinary approach to care is needed. The nurse coordinates care that is directed toward continued assessment and maintenance of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems, as well as toward GI and nutritional status, burn wound care, pain control, and psychosocial interventions.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Cardiopulmonary Assessment. In the acute phase of burn injury, the priority nursing interventions are to assess the cardiovascular and respiratory systems to maintain these systems and to identify or prevent complications. At this time, the patient may develop pneumonia that can result in respiratory failure requiring mechanical ventilation. Although cardiovascular problems related to the fluid shift should be resolved, the patient is at risk for infection and sepsis, which affect cardiovascular function. The interventions used in the resuscitation phase also may be needed for these new problems.

Neuroendocrine Assessment. The increased metabolic demands placed on the body after a severe burn injury can severely deplete nutritional stores. Weigh the patient daily without dressings or splints, and compare it with his or her preburn weight. A 2% loss of body weight indicates a mild deficit. A 10% or more weight loss is important and requires the evaluation and modification of calorie intake. For very accurate calorie requirements, indirect calorimetry may be used. This method determines kilocalories of energy expenditure by measuring oxygen consumption (VO_2) and carbon dioxide production (VCO_2). Measurements are taken while the patient is at rest—usually at least 30 minutes after the most recent dressing changes or other stressful procedures.

TABLE 28-6 LOCAL AND SYSTEMIC SIGNS OF INFECTION

Local Signs

- Conversion of a partial-thickness injury to a full-thickness injury
- Ulceration of healthy skin at the burn site
- Erythematous, nodular lesions in uninvolved skin and vesicular lesions in healed skin
- Edema of healthy skin surrounding the burn wound
- Excessive burn wound drainage
- Pale, boggy, dry, or crusted granulation tissue
- Sloughing of grafts
- Wound breakdown after closure
- Odor

Systemic Signs

- Altered level of consciousness
- Changes in vital signs (tachycardia, tachypnea, temperature instability, hypotension)
- Increased fluid requirements for maintenance of a normal urine output
- Hemodynamic instability
- Oliguria
- GI dysfunction (diarrhea, vomiting, abdominal distention, paralytic ileus)
- Hyperglycemia
- Thrombocytopenia
- Change in total white blood cell count (above normal or below normal)
- Metabolic acidosis
- Hypoxemia

Indirect calorimetry often is performed shortly after admission to a burn center and at least once each week until the wounds are closed.

Immune Assessment. The patient with a burn injury is at risk for infection because of open wounds and reduced immune function. *Burn wound sepsis is a serious complication of burn injury, and infection is the leading cause of death during the acute phase of recovery.* Continually assess the patient for signs of local and systemic infections (Table 28-6), including changes in wound appearance, changes in neurologic and GI function, and subtle changes in vital signs. Monitor for manifestations of gram-positive, gram-negative, and fungal infections (Table 28-7). Enforce meticulous handwashing by all health care personnel.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Use aseptic technique in caring for wounds and during invasive monitoring to prevent infections.

Musculoskeletal Assessment. Patients with a burn injury are at risk for musculoskeletal problems as a result of other injuries, immobility, healing processes, and treatment. The musculoskeletal status is first evaluated on admission to the hospital or burn center and throughout the acute phase of injury. Assess active and passive range of motion for all joints, including the neck. Give special attention to joints within the burn area. Ranges and limitations are documented for future reference.

TABLE 28-7 SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS OF SEPSIS CAUSED BY DIFFERENT ORGANISMS

SIGN/ SYMPTOM	GRAM- POSITIVE	GRAM- NEGATIVE	FUNGAL
Onset	Insidious, 2-6 days	Rapid, 12-36 hr	Delayed
Cognition	Severe disorientation and lethargy	Mild disorientation	Mild disorientation
Ileus	Severe	Severe	Mild
Diarrhea	Rare	Severe	Occasional
Temperature	Fever	Hypothermia	Fever
Hypotension	Late	Early	Late
White blood cell count	Neutrophilia	Neutropenia	Neutrophilia
Platelets	Normal	Low	Low

ANALYSIS

During the acute phase of the burn injury, the patient has resolution of some earlier problems, may have initial problems that extend into the acute phase, and may develop new problems. Priority problems for patients with burn injuries greater than 25% TBSA in the acute phase of recovery are:

1. Wound care management related to burn injury, skin grafting procedures, and immobilization
2. Potential for infection related to open burn wounds, the presence of multiple invasive catheters, reduced immune function, and malnutrition
3. Excessive weight loss related to increased metabolic rate, reduced calorie intake, and increased urinary nitrogen losses
4. Reduced mobility related to open burn wounds, pain, and scars and contractures
5. Reduced self-image related to trauma, changes in physical appearance and lifestyle, and alterations in sensory and motor function

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Wound Care

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With appropriate intervention, the patient with a burn injury is expected to have no wound extension and have wounds healed. Indicators include that the patient:

- Has presence of granulation, re-epithelialization, and scar tissue formation
- Has decreased wound size
- Has no new wounds

Interventions. Interventions focus on preserving the integrity of nonburned skin, enhancing wound healing of burned skin, and preventing complications.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical burn wound management involves removing exudates and necrotic tissue, cleaning the area, stimulating granulation and revascularization, and applying dressings. Restoring skin, whether by natural healing or grafting, starts with the removal of eschar and other cellular debris from the burn wound. This removal is called **débridement**. Nonsurgical treatment allows debris removal through mechanical and enzymatic actions that

separate eschar over time. The purpose is to have the wound prepare itself for grafting and wound closure by a natural process. *Priority nursing interventions include assessing the wound, providing wound care, and preventing infection and other complications.*

Mechanical Débridement. Burn wounds are débrided and cleaned one or two times each day during **hydrotherapy** (the application of water for treatment). Nurses, unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), and physical therapists perform hydrotherapy daily to débride and examine the wounds. Hydrotherapy is most often performed by showering the patient on a specially designed shower table, or washing only small areas of the wound at the bedside. Showering enhances wound inspection and allows water temperature to be kept constant. Immersion of the patient in a tub or whirlpool is not often performed for hydrotherapy because it increases the risk for infection by auto-contamination and cross-contamination.

Nurses and skilled technicians use forceps and scissors to remove loose, nonviable tissue during hydrotherapy. At most burn units, small blisters are left intact because they are a protective barrier that promotes wound healing. Larger blisters are opened. Washcloths or gauze sponges are used to débride soft, “cheesy” eschar. During hydrotherapy, wash burn areas thoroughly and gently with mild soap or detergent and water. Then rinse these areas with room-temperature water.

Enzymatic Débridement. Enzymatic débridement can occur naturally by autolysis or artificially by the application of exogenous agents. **Autolysis** is the disintegration of tissue by the action of the patient’s own cellular enzymes. This process is seldom used in North America for larger burns because it is slow and results in a prolonged hospital stay, increasing the risk for infection.

Topical enzyme agents, such as collagenase (Santyl), are used for rapid wound débridement. When these agents are applied directly to the burn wound in a once-a-day dressing change, the enzymes digest collagen in necrotic tissues. They require a moist environment within a specific pH range to be active. Polysporin powder is often used with this topical agent to prevent infection.

Dressing the Burn Wound. After burn wounds are cleaned and débrided, topical antibiotics are reapplied to prevent infection (see pp. 533-534 in the **Minimizing Infection** section). Some type of dressing is then applied to the burn wound. Burn dressings include standard wound dressings, biologic dressings, synthetic dressings, and artificial skin.

Standard Wound Dressings. Standard wound dressings are multiple layers of gauze applied over the topical agents on the burn wound. The number of gauze layers depends on:

- Depth of the injury
- Amount of drainage expected
- Area injured
- Patient’s mobility
- Frequency of dressing changes

The gauze layers are held in place with roller-type gauze bandages applied in a distal to proximal direction or with circular net fabrics. Cover gauze dressings on the patient’s extremities with elastic wraps, especially if the patient is ambulatory. Dressings are generally changed and reapplied every 8 to 24 hours after thoroughly cleaning the areas.

Biologic Dressings. Biologic dressings are often used for temporary wound coverage and closure. These dressings are

skin or membranes obtained from human tissue donors (homograft or allograft) or animals (heterograft or xenograft). When applied over open wounds, a biologic dressing rapidly adheres and promotes healing or prepares the wound for permanent skin graft coverage.

Biologic materials are used in healing partial-thickness and granulating full-thickness wounds that are clean and free of eschar. Table 28-8 lists the advantages and disadvantages of biologic dressings. The type of biologic dressing selected depends on the type of wound to be covered and the availability of the material.

Homografts, also called *allografts*, are human skin obtained from a cadaver and provided through a skin bank. They are fresh or frozen; frozen skin is thawed in a warm bath of sterile normal saline before application. Disadvantages to the use of homografts are the high costs (\$750 to \$1500 per square foot) and the risk for transmitting a blood-borne infection.

Heterografts, also called *xenografts*, are skin obtained from another species. Pigskin is the most common heterograft and is compatible with human skin. Pigskin is assessed daily for adherence and need for replacement.

Amniotic membrane is another form of biologic dressing used on burn wounds. Its large size, low cost, and availability have helped with its success. In full-thickness injuries, the amniotic membrane adheres to the wound. With partial-thickness areas, the amniotic membrane is effective as a dressing until epithelial cell regrowth occurs. The membrane requires frequent changes because it does not develop a blood supply and it disintegrates in about 48 hours.

Cultured skin can be grown from a small specimen of epidermal cells from an unburned area of the patient's body. The cells are grown in a laboratory to produce cell sheets that can be grafted on the patient to generate a permanent skin surface. The length of time for culturing and growing the skin

is prolonged, and the cell sheets are fragile. Take care when applying these sheets to ensure adherence and prevent sloughing. This process is very costly.

Artificial skin is an alternative approach to closure of the burn wound. This substance has two layers, a Silastic epidermis and a porous dermis made from beef collagen and shark cartilage. After the artificial skin is applied to a clean, excised wound surface, fibroblasts move into the collagen portion and create a structure similar to normal dermis. The artificial dermis slowly dissolves and is replaced with blood vessels and connective tissue (*neodermis*). The neodermis supports a standard autograft placed over it when the Silastic layer is removed.

Biosynthetic Wound Dressings. Biosynthetic wound dressings are a combination of biosynthetic and synthetic materials. Biobrane is commonly used and effective in the treatment of clean superficial partial-thickness burns such as scalds, as a covering for meshed autografts, and as a donor site dressing. It is made up of a nylon fabric that is partially embedded into a silicone film. Collagen is incorporated into both the silicone and the nylon components. The nylon fabric comes into contact with the wound surface and adheres to it until epithelialization has occurred. The porous silicone film allows exudates to pass through.

Synthetic Dressings. Synthetic dressings are made of solid silicone and plastic membranes (e.g., polyvinyl chloride and polyurethane). They are applied directly to the surface of a clean or surgically prepared wound and remain in place until they fall off or are removed. Many of these dressings are transparent or translucent, and the wound can be inspected without removing the dressing. Pain is reduced at the site because these agents also prevent contact of the wound's nerve endings with air. These dressings also are used to cover donor sites where skin was obtained for autografting.

Transparent film is the dressing commonly used for the care of donor site wounds. This dressing type promotes faster healing with low infection rates, minimal pain, and reduced cost.

TABLE 28-8 BIOLOGIC DRESSINGS

Uses

- Débridement of untidy wounds after separation of eschar
- Promotion of re-epithelialization of deep partial-thickness wounds
- Temporary coverage after excision of the burn wound
- Protection of granulation tissue between autografts
- Test graft before autografting

Advantages

- Early adherence to the wound
- Reduction of evaporative heat loss
- Reduction of evaporate water loss
- Prevention of dehydration of granulation tissue
- Reduction of exudate protein losses
- Reduction of pain
- Assistance in wound débridement
- Enhancement of healing with partial-thickness injuries
- Protection of exposed neovascular tissue
- Inhibition of bacterial proliferation

Disadvantages

- Early lysis resulting in bacterial proliferation
- Expensive
- Rejection responses
- Not readily available
- Storage (some may require refrigeration or freezing)
- Possible transmission of diseases, such as hepatitis

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The burn client asks the nurse not to remove the loosened bits of skin and tissue during the dressing change, saying "The more skin you take off, the longer it will take me to heal." What is the nurse's best response?

- "Do you want some pain medication before I begin?"
- "The only things I am removing are blocks of bacteria growth, not skin."
- "Don't worry, I have worked the burn unit for years and know what I am doing."
- "This tissue is no longer living and as long as it is present, real healing cannot start."

Surgical Management. Surgical management of burn wounds involves excision and wound covering. Surgical excision is performed early in the postburn period. Grafting may be performed throughout the acute phase as burn wounds are made ready and donor sites are available. Early grafting reduces the time patients are at risk for infection and sepsis. Wound covering by autografting involves taking healthy skin from an area of the patient's intact skin and transplanting it to an excised burn wound.

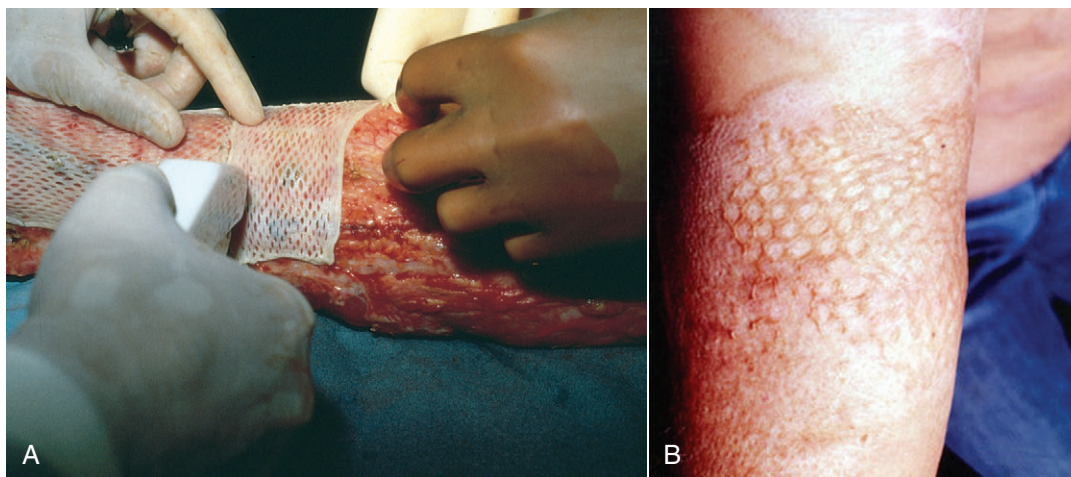


FIG. 28-13 The typical appearance of meshed autografts. **A**, Appearance of meshed autograft at application. **B**, Appearance of meshed autograft after healing.

Surgical Excision. Surgical excision is the most common treatment for full-thickness and deep partial-thickness wounds. The patient is taken to the operating room within the first 5 days after injury and again as needed until all wounds are closed permanently.

The burn wound is excised by either a tangential or a fascial excision technique. In the *tangential technique*, the surgeon removes very thin layers of the necrotic burn surface until bleeding tissue is encountered. Bleeding indicates that a bed of healthy dermis or subcutaneous fat has been reached.

In the *fascial technique*, the surgeon cuts away the burn wound to the level of superficial fascia. Fascial excision usually is performed only for very deep and extensive burns. Blood loss is minimal, and grafting is usually successful.

Wound Covering. Permanent skin coverage for large full-thickness injuries occurs by applying an autograft. Skin for an autograft is taken from the patient's body. The surgeon removes a piece of skin from a remote unburned area of the body and transplants it to cover the burn wound. Skin grafts are generally of split thickness (0.015 inch), and a partial-thickness injury is formed at the site of surgical removal (the donor site). Grafts are placed either on a clean granulated bed or over an area from which dead tissue has just been removed.

The available donor sites for larger burns are small. Patients with larger burns may have only 5% to 20% of the skin surface available to use for covering the 80% to 95% burned area. Coverage is accomplished by:

- Repeated removal of skin from the same donor site, with time allowed between harvests for healing
- Meshing the split-thickness skin grafts (Fig. 28-13) to allow a small graft to cover a larger area. Healing time is slower for a meshed graft because the skin must fill in open meshed areas (interstices), as well as attach to the granulation bed

Minimizing Infection

Burn wound infection occurs through **auto-contamination**, in which the patient's own normal flora overgrows and invades other body areas, especially the GI tract; and **cross-contamination**, in which organisms from other people or environments are transferred to the patient.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to remain free from infection by cross-contamination and not develop sepsis. Indicators include that the patient will exhibit only mild or none of these manifestations:

- Foul-smelling discharge
- Fever
- Blood culture colonization
- Wound site colonization
- White blood cell count elevation

Interventions. Interventions focus on preventing infection and removing infected tissue.

Nonsurgical Management. Priority nursing interventions include using principles of asepsis to prevent infection transmission, providing a safe environment, and monitoring for early detection of infection. Drug therapy, isolation therapy, and environmental management are strategies for preventing and managing infection.

Drug Therapy for Infection Prevention. Burn wound conditions promote the growth of *Clostridium tetani*, and all burn patients are at risk for this dangerous infection. Tetanus toxoid, 0.5 mL given IM, enhances immunity to *C. tetani*. This agent is routinely given when the patient is admitted to the hospital. Administration of tetanus immune globulin (human) (Hyper-Tet) is recommended when the patient's history of tetanus immunization is not known.

The use of topical antimicrobial drugs is an important intervention for infection prevention in burn wounds. The expected outcome of this therapy is to reduce bacterial growth in the wound and prevent sepsis.

Topical antibiotics are applied by either the *open* or the *closed* technique. With the open technique, use either aseptic or clean methods to apply the agent directly to the burn wound without further dressing the wound. Clean the wound every 8 to 24 hours, and apply fresh antimicrobial agents each time. With the more common closed technique, dress the burn wound after applying the topical agents.

Two of the more commonly used agents are silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene, Flamazine) and mafenide acetate (Sulfamylon). Topical antimicrobial drugs are not applied to freshly grafted areas because they may inhibit cell growth. Chart 28-5 lists the features of many topical antimicrobial agents.

CHART 28-5 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Burns

AGENT	DESCRIPTION	ACTION	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES	INTERVENTIONS
Silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene, Thermazene)	Nontoxic salt of silver sulfadiazine in water-based cream	Binds to bacterial cell membranes and interferes with DNA synthesis	Does not cause hypochloremia, hyponatremia, electrolyte imbalance, or kidney disease Painless Wide-spectrum antimicrobial action against gram-positive and gram-negative organisms Long shelf life Delays eschar separation to a lesser degree than do many other topical drugs	Absorbed into eschar less than other drugs May cause rash, pruritus, burning, and leukopenia Not consistently effective for burns covering 60% of the body Not effective against <i>Pseudomonas</i>	Watch for signs of infection, such as souppiness of wound area. Watch for allergic reaction causing a drop in white blood cell count. Do not use if reaction to sulfonamide has occurred. Use on deep partial-thickness or full-thickness wounds.
Collagenase (Santyl) with Polysporin powder	Topical enzymatic debridging agent with 250 collagenase units/g of white petroleum	Digests collagen in necrotic tissue	Painless Daily dressing changes Side effects are rare Quick débridement action Easy to apply Not harmful to healthy tissue Specific only to nonviable tissue	Expensive	Apply once a day. Use on deep partial-thickness wound with eschar. Monitor wounds for infection. May be used with barrier dressing such as Xeroform.
Mafenide acetate (Sulfamylon)	Soft, white, non-staining, water-based cream Available in solution	Bacteriostatic action against many gram-positive and gram-negative organisms	Effective against <i>Pseudomonas</i> Long shelf life Excellent for treating electrical burns Penetrates thick eschar May use as a solution to wet down grafts or wounds	May lead to infection May cause metabolic acidosis, hyperpnea, and rash When applied, may cause pain that lasts 30-40 minutes	Premedicate for pain before application. Monitor blood gas and serum electrolyte levels. Monitor for infection.
Nitrofurazone (Furacin)	Cream, solution, or water-soluble ointment, or foam	Wide-spectrum anti-bacterial	Effective against <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> and some antibiotic-resistant organisms Causes neither pain nor maceration	May cause contact dermatitis (rare) Messy to apply in cream form May cause renal problems if used in extensive burns	Observe carefully for signs of allergic reaction and evidence of superinfection.
Gentamicin sulfate (Garamycin, Gentamar)	Available as a cream or solution for topical use	Antibiotic action against organisms resistant to other drugs	Effective against <i>Pseudomonas</i> Does not cause pain	May have ototoxic (ear) and nephrotoxic (kidney) effects May result in resistance by certain organisms	Use with caution in patients with decreased kidney function. Monitor serum and urine creatinine clearance before and during treatment.
Polymyxin B-bacitracin (AK-Poly-Bac, Polysporin)	Topical cream	Wide-spectrum antimicrobial	Painless Effective against many gram-positive and gram-negative organisms Can be used on face Can be placed on healed grafts to lubricate	May cause urticaria, burning, and inflammation Does not penetrate eschar	Apply every 2-8 hr to keep areas moist.

Acticoat	Two layers on a silver-coated, high-density, polyethylene mesh, enclosing a single layer of an apertured non-woven fabric of rayon and polyester	Releases antimicrobial silver ions when moistened with sterile water	Effective against a wide range of gram-negative and gram-positive bacteria Decrease in pain due to decrease in number of dressing changes required Effective against some strains of yeast and fungi May be left in place up to 3 days	Needs to be wet down with sterile water Expensive May cause elevated serum silver levels, elevated liver function tests, and transient gray facial discoloration	Do not use with oil-based products or other topical antimicrobials. Contraindicated in patients with known hypersensitivity to any of the components of the product. May dry out and adhere to the wound surface; soak off to remove.
PolyMem	Hydrophilic pink polyurethane foam sheet bonded to a semipermeable polyurethane film; foam contains a non-ionic surfactant that is activated by moisture	Contains a mild, nontoxic, non-ionic, tissue-friendly cleansing agent that is activated by moisture, drainage, and/or exudate and is gradually released into the wound bed Reduces interfacial tension between healthy tissue and debris, loosens eschar and necrotic tissue, and supports autolytic débridement	May be left on for 7 days Provides liquid barrier and allows for gas exchange Provides wound comfort Cost-effective due to using less materials and number of dressings required	Expensive Contains no antimicrobial properties	Change earlier than 7 days if exudate is visible through outer dressing. Watch for signs of infection. Use on partial-thickness wounds. Must be covered with secondary dressing. May be used on donor sites.
Aquacel Ag	Made from sodium carboxymethylcellulose containing 1.2% ionic silver	Releases ionic silver in a controlled manner as wound exudate is absorbed into the dressing Supports wound healing by providing a moist wound healing environment Dressing absorbs and interacts with wound exudate to form a soft, hydrophilic, gas-permeable gel that traps bacteria and conforms to the contours of the wound while providing a micro-environment	Antimicrobial effect against wide range of organisms including MRSA, VRE May be left on up to 14 days Decreased pain due to decrease in number of dressing changes	Expensive May interfere with movement when used over joints	Use on partial-thickness wounds. Must be covered with secondary dressing. Do not use for patients who are sensitive or have allergic reaction to dressing or its components. Moisten with sterile water or saline to ease removal. Do not use with oil-based products.
Mepilex Ag	Antimicrobial soft silicone foam	Absorbs exudates and maintains moist environment Begins inactivating wound pathogens within 30 minutes of application to wound	Effective sustained release of silver up to 7 days Broad antimicrobial protection including MRSA Decreased pain due to decrease in number of dressings Easy removal from wound	Expensive	Do not use on patients with known hypersensitivity to silver. Do not use together with oxidizing agents such as hydrogen peroxide. May be used in partial- and full-thickness burns. Must apply secondary dressing. May be used with skin grafts and donor sites.

MRSA, Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*; VRE, vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*.

Drug Therapy for Treatment of Infection. Systemic antibiotics are used when burn patients have symptoms of an actual infection, including septicemia. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are given until the results of blood cultures and sensitivity status are available. At that time, antibiotics that are effective against the specific organism(s) causing the infection are used. Because of increased metabolism, burn patients may require a higher dose of these drugs to maintain effective blood levels. For some antimicrobials, serial peak and trough blood levels are monitored to determine the efficacy of treatment and evaluate potential ear and kidney toxicity.

Providing a Safe Environment. Providing a safe environment can include isolation therapy. More commonly, it involves coordinating all members of the health care team in the use of asepsis and monitoring for early recognition of actual infection.

Isolation therapy is used in some burn centers with the belief that it reduces cross-contamination, although this practice is controversial. Some burn centers practice no isolation, whereas others use near-total sterile conditions. All isolation methods use proper and consistent handwashing as the most effective technique for preventing infection transmission.

Use of asepsis requires all health care personnel to wear gloves during all contact with open wounds. The use of sterile versus clean gloves for routine wound care varies by agency and is a matter of debate. Regardless of sterility, change gloves when handling wounds on different areas of the body and between handling old and new dressings.

The equipment on burn units is not shared among patients. Disposable items (e.g., pillows, syringes, dishes) are used as much as possible. Assign any equipment used in daily routine care (e.g., thermometers, blood pressure cuffs, stethoscopes) to each patient for the duration of his or her stay. Daily cleaning of the equipment and general housekeeping are essential for infection control. All single-item unit equipment must be cleaned after use on one patient and before use on another. Because *Pseudomonas* has been found in plants, the presence of plants and flowers is prohibited. Some burn units do not permit patients to eat raw foods (e.g., salads, fruit, pepper) to reduce exposure to organisms. Rugs and upholstered articles are difficult to clean and may harbor organisms; their use is also restricted.

Visitors are restricted when the patient is immunosuppressed. Ill people, small children, and other patients should not come into direct contact with the burn patient. Some burn units recommend that all visitors wear protective clothing (gowns, gloves, masks, and shoe and hair covers) in the burn patient's room, but no data support the effectiveness of this approach.

Early detection involves careful monitoring of the burn wounds at each dressing change. Examine the wounds for these signs of infection:

- Pervasive odor
- Color changes—focal, dark red, brown discoloration in the eschar
- Change in texture
- Purulent drainage
- Exudate
- Sloughing grafts
- Redness at the wound edges extending to nonburned skin

Laboratory cultures and biopsies are recommended. Quantitative biopsies of the eschar and granulation tissue are

performed routinely and as needed to monitor the growth of organisms. These tests are the gold standard for wound monitoring.

Surgical Management. Infected burn wounds with colony counts of or approaching 10^5 colonies per gram of tissue may be life threatening, even with antibiotic therapy. Surgical excision of the burn wound may be necessary to control these infections.

Minimizing Weight Loss

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to maintain adequate nutrient intake for meeting the body's calorie needs. Indicators include that the patient should have mild or no deviations from the normal ranges for:

- Weight/height ratio
- Food intake
- Hematocrit and hemoglobin
- Serum albumin
- Blood glucose

Interventions. Interventions include calculating the patient's calorie needs and providing an adequate daily source of calories and nutrients that the patient can ingest and metabolize. Coordinate with a registered dietitian to meet the expected outcomes regarding the patient's nutritional status. Therapy begins with calculating the patient's current daily calorie needs. Several formulas and charts are used for this calculation. Nutritional requirements for a patient with a large burn area can exceed 5000 kcal/day (Prelack et al., 2007). In addition to a high-calorie intake, the burn patient requires a diet high in protein for wound healing. Work with the dietitian and the patient to plan additions to standard nutritional patterns.

Oral diet therapy may be delayed for several days after the injury until the GI tract is motile. Nasoduodenal tube feedings are often started soon after admission. Beginning enteral feedings early helps decrease weight loss, gut atrophy, bacterial translocation, and sepsis. These feedings often are started within 4 hours of beginning fluid resuscitation. This type of supplement prevents nutritional deficits in severely burned patients.

Encourage patients who can eat solid foods to ingest as many calories as possible. Consider the patient's preferences with diet planning and food selection. Encourage patients to request food whenever they feel they can eat, not just according to the hospital's standard meal schedule. Offer frequent high-calorie, high-protein supplemental feedings. Keep an accurate calorie count for foods and beverages that are actually ingested by the patient.

Patients who cannot swallow but who have adequate gastric motility may meet calorie and nutrition needs through enteral tube feedings (see [Chapter 63](#)). Parenteral nutrition may be given IV when the GI tract is not functional or when the patient's nutritional needs cannot be met by oral and enteral feeding. This method is used as a last resort because it is invasive and can lead to infectious and metabolic complications.

Maintaining Mobility

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a burn injury is expected to maintain or regain an optimal ability to move purposefully. Indicators include that the patient should have minimal limitations in these actions:

- Muscle movement
- Joint movement

CHART 28-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Positioning to Prevent Contractures

Affected Body Part	Position of Function	Intervention
Head and neck	Hyperextension	No pillow. Place a towel roll under the patient's neck or shoulder. Neck splint.
Posterior neck	Flexion	Have patient turn the head from side to side.
Upper chest and chest	Shoulder retraction	Place patient in supine position. Place a folded towel under the spine, between the scapulae.
Lateral trunk	Flexion to uninvolved side	Place patient supine with arm on the affected side up over the head.
Anterior shoulder	Abduction and external rotation	Maintain the upper arm at 90 degrees of abduction from the lateral aspect of the trunk.
Posterior shoulder	Slight flexion and interior rotation	Keep the arm slightly behind the midline.
Axilla	Abduction with 10- to 15-degree forward flexion and external rotation	Support the abducted arm with suspension from IV pole or bedside table. Axilla splint.
Elbow	Extension and supination	Keep the joint in the extended position.
Wrist	30 to 45 degrees of extension	Use a splint.
Fingers		
MP joints	70 to 90 degrees of flexion	Use a splint.
PIP and DIP joints	Extension	Use a splint.
Ankle	90 degrees of dorsiflexion	Use a padded footboard or splint with heels free of pressure.
Legs	15 to 20 degrees of abduction	Place small pillow between legs.
Hip	Extension and neutral rotation	Place patient supine with lower extremity extended. Use trochanter roll. Use foam wedge along lateral aspect of thigh.

DIP, Distal interphalangeal; MP, metatarsophalangeal; PIP, proximal interphalangeal.

- Walking
- Body positioning performance

Interventions. Interventions focus on maintaining the patient's preburn range of joint motion and preventing contracture formation.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management includes the nursing interventions of positioning, range-of-motion exercises, ambulation, and pressure dressings.

Positioning is critical for patients with burn injuries because the position of comfort for the patient is often one of joint flexion, which leads to contracture development. Maintain the patient in a neutral body position with minimal flexion. Best practices for preventing contractures are listed in [Chart 28-6](#). Splints and other devices may help the patient maintain good positioning. These devices usually are used on the hands, elbows, knees, neck, and axillae.

Range-of-motion exercises are performed actively at least three times a day. If the patient cannot move a joint actively, perform passive range-of-motion exercises. Give burned hands special attention. Urge the patient to perform active range-of-motion exercises for the hand, thumb, and fingers every hour while he or she is awake.

Ambulation is started as soon as possible after the fluid shifts have resolved. Patients with attached equipment (IV catheters, nasogastric tubes, ECG leads, extensive dressings) can ambulate with preparation and assistance. This activity is performed two or three times a day and progresses in length each time. Ambulation inhibits bone density loss, strengthens muscles, stimulates immune function, promotes ventilation, and prevents many complications.

Pressure dressings are applied after grafts heal to help prevent contractures and tight hypertrophic scars, which can

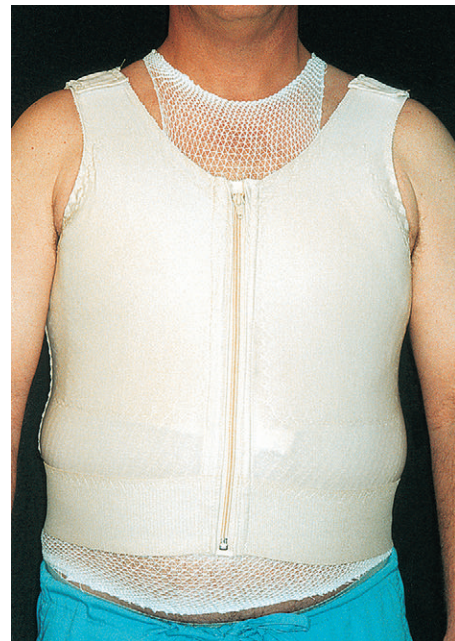


FIG. 28-14 A patient wearing a compression garment over dressings.

inhibit mobility. These dressings also inhibit venous stasis and edema in areas with decreased lymph flow. Pressure dressings may be elastic wraps or specially designed, custom-fitted, elasticized clothing that provides continuous pressure. [Fig. 28-14](#) shows such a garment. For best effectiveness, pressure garments must be worn at least 23 hours a day, every day, until

the scar tissue is mature (12 to 24 months). These garments can be uncomfortable with itchiness and increased warmth. Reinforce to the patient and family that wearing pressure garments is beneficial in saving mobility and reducing scarring.

Surgical Management. Surgical management restores mobility rather than prevents immobility. Surgical release of contractures is commonly performed in the neck, axilla, elbow flexion areas, and hand. Specific surgical procedures vary for each patient.

Nursing responsibilities include interventions to prevent contractures from re-forming, as well as the care of new grafts and suture lines. Constantly reinforce the need for the patient to adhere to exercise and splinting regimens to prevent the recurrence of joint immobility.

Supporting a Positive Self-Image

Planning: Expected Outcomes. After intervention, the patient with a burn injury is expected to have a positive perception of his or her own appearance, body functions, and self-worth. Indicators include that the patient should consistently demonstrate these behaviors:

- Willingness to touch the affected body part
- Adjustment to changes in body function
- Willingness to use strategies to enhance appearance and function
- Successful progression through the grieving process
- Use of support systems

Interventions. Nonsurgical and surgical interventions can assist patients who have body image and self-image problems as a result of burn injury.

Nonsurgical Management. Understanding the stages of grief is helpful for the patient, family, and health care professionals. Assess which stage of grief the patient is currently experiencing, and help interpret his or her behaviors. The patient often is unaware of or is confused by his or her feelings. Reassure the patient that feelings of grief, loss, anxiety, anger, fear, and guilt are normal. The patient may be grieving the loss of body parts, appearance, role identity, and social identity. Coordinate with other health care team members (e.g., psychologist, psychiatrist, social worker, clergy or religious leader) in addressing these problems.

Accept the physical and psychological features of the patient. Present patients and families with realistic expected outcomes for the patient's functional capacity and physical appearance. Provide information sessions and counseling for the family to identify patterns of support. Facilitate the patient's use of these systems and the development of new support systems. Make referrals to support groups. To identify the effectiveness of such assistance and possible gaps in support, evaluate support resources throughout the course of recovery.

Engaging in decision making and independent activities fosters feelings of self-worth, which are closely linked to self-image. Plan and encourage the patient's active participation in self-care activities. Assist family members to understand that it is more beneficial for the patient to perform these activities than to have them performed by someone else. Urge families to include the patient in family decision making to the same degree that he or she participated in this process before the injury.

Surgical Management. Reconstructive and cosmetic surgery can be performed many years after the burn injury.

Restoring function and improving appearance through surgical techniques often increase the patient's feelings of self-worth and promote a positive self-image. Many patients have unrealistic expectations of reconstructive surgery and envision an appearance identical or equal in quality to the preburn state. Teach the patient and family about expected cosmetic outcomes.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

A 60-year-old who sustained a 58% TBSA flame burn had topical silver sulfadiazine (Silvadene) applied to her wounds. On the fifth postburn day, she becomes febrile and has an elevated WBC count with a left shift. When you change her dressing, you notice malodor coming from her wound.

1. What is the likely cause of the fever and leukocytosis?
2. What other assessment data would indicate sepsis?
3. What interventions are taken by the health care team to prevent wound infection and sepsis in the burn patient?

REHABILITATIVE PHASE OF BURN INJURY

Overview

Although rehabilitation efforts are started at the time of admission, the technical rehabilitative phase begins with wound closure and ends when the patient returns to his or her highest level of functioning. The emphasis is on the psychosocial adjustment of the patient, the prevention of scars and contractures, and the resumption of preburn activity, including resuming work, family, and social roles. This phase may take years or even last a lifetime as patients adjust to permanent limitations.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Although attention is placed first on the physical interventions for the burn injury, psychological care is equally important. Provide psychosocial support to the patient and family throughout hospitalization but more extensively in the rehabilitative phase.

Information from the patient and family aids in the assessment and diagnosis of psychological problems and allows treatment to be instituted. Explore the patient's feelings about the burn injury. It is extremely difficult for patients to concentrate on the many tasks before them when obstacles such as guilt and grief are in the forefront.

Ask the patient or family member whether there is a history of psychological problems. To assist with a future plan of care, assess and document the type of coping mechanisms the patient has used successfully during times of stress. Also assess the patient's family unit and the family members' history of interaction. Identify cultural and ethnic factors, and consider these when planning psychosocial interventions.

Throughout the hospitalization, the patient progresses through a variety of stages and exhibits many feelings, including denial, regression, and anger. Accurately assess the patient's feelings during each stage so appropriate plans of care can be developed and carried out.

TABLE 28-9 NEEDS TO ADDRESS BEFORE DISCHARGE OF THE PATIENT WITH BURNS

• Early patient assessment • Financial assessment • Evaluation of family resources • Weekly discharge planning meeting • Psychological referral • Patient and family teaching (home care) • Designation of principal learners (specific family members or significant others who will help with care) • Development of teaching plan • Training for wound care	• Rehabilitation referral • Home assessment (on-site visit) • Medical equipment • Public health nursing referral • Evaluation of community resources • Visit to referral agency • Re-entry programs for school or work environment • Long-term care placement • Environmental interventions • Auditory testing • Speech therapy • Prosthetic rehabilitation
--	--

Community-Based Care

Discharge planning for the patient with a burn injury begins at admission to the hospital or burn center. The multidisciplinary team meets regularly to plan for discharge. In helping the patient reach mutually established discharge outcomes, the team evaluates the progress of each discipline. Table 28-9 lists common discharge needs of the patient with burns.

Psychosocial Preparation

During the recovery period and for some time after discharge from the hospital, patients with severe burn injuries are likely to have psychological problems that require intervention. Such problems include post-traumatic stress disorder, sexual dysfunction, and severe depression. Assistance is coordinated with the patient, family, and health care team. Psychosocial assistance is best provided by a professional counselor with experience in helping burn patients.

One specific area to address with the patient is the reaction of others to the sight of healing wounds and disfiguring scars. Patients with facial burns are especially subjected to stares and other reactions from the public. Visits from friends and short public appearances before discharge may help the patient begin adjusting to this problem. Community reintegration programs can assist the psychosocial and physical recovery of the patient with serious burns.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

Which statement made by the client who experienced burns to the head and neck indicates positive adjustment to the injury?

- "I am planning on cutting the grass in the mornings when the sun isn't as strong."
- "I am working with my family so they can do all of the chores I used to do."
- "I hope the home care nurse can change my dressings so that I do not have to look at my wounds."
- "My wife and I have decided to go to movies instead of baseball games so that people can't see me."

Home Care Management

The patient with severe burns is discharged from the acute care setting when serious complications are resolved and

minimal wound areas remain open. During the first weeks at home, the patient usually needs at least daily wound care, physical therapy, nutritional support, symptom management, and drug therapy.

Although the patient usually views going home in a positive light, the problems of physical care and the psychological stresses from changes in appearance, role, function, and lifestyle may overwhelm the patient and family. Successful discharge depends on extensive planning and preparation of the patient, family, and home environment through education and the involvement of appropriate support agencies and services.

Preparation for discharge includes assessment of the family and home care situation from physical and social perspectives. Consider the needs of the patient when evaluating the home for cleanliness; access to bathing facilities, electricity, and running water; stairways; number of occupants; temperature control; and safety. If the burn injuries occurred in a house fire, a new residence may need to be established.

Teaching for Self-Management

Education about burn care and living with the consequences of burn injuries begins when the patient is admitted to the hospital or burn center. A weekly plan for patient education is outlined; a positive outcome is progression toward independence for the patient and family. Critical for this outcome is teaching patients and family members to perform such care tasks as dressing changes. Allow patients and family members to first observe dressing changes, then to assist in performing the changes, and finally to change the dressings independently under your supervision.

Before discharge, all people who will be involved in the patient's home care participate in discharge planning and teaching sessions. In addition to details about dressing changes, explain:

- Signs and symptoms of infection
- Drug regimens
- Proper use of prosthetic and positioning devices
- Correct application and care of pressure garments
- Comfort measures to reduce pruritus
- Dates for follow-up appointments

Health Care Resources

The health care team evaluates the family in terms of capacity and willingness to assist in providing care to the patient after discharge. A visiting nurse or case manager referral can assist the family with care problems arising at home. In addition, the visiting nurse can help the family determine what special equipment, supplies, or services will be needed. The frequency of home visits depends on the patient's condition and the ability of family members to function as care providers. *It is imperative that the visiting nurse have extensive experience in providing burn care.* The home care nurse may need a brief visit to the patient while in the hospital and may need to observe burn wound care.

The home care of a patient after a serious burn often involves daily physical therapy and rehabilitation sessions at special centers. Address and resolve transportation problems before the patient is discharged. In some instances, the burn center has arrangements for transportation. Some community volunteer agencies provide transportation by private car.

When rehabilitation is prolonged, the patient may be discharged to a rehabilitation facility. Consult with the rehabilitation team, and provide copies of the care and teaching plans used with the patient.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

A 60-year-old patient who sustained a flame injury and smoke inhalation injury has had several surgical procedures for skin grafting. She also had a tracheostomy and amputation of her fingers of her right hand (she is right-hand dominant). She has been in the Burn Center for 2 months and is now in her third week on a rehabilitation floor. Although she has survived and her family is very grateful, you notice the patient does not participate in her therapy and has a loss of appetite. She sits in the chair most of the day staring out the window. Your assessment reveals that she is depressed.

1. Are these symptoms the patient is experiencing part of the complex systemic response to burn injuries? If so, is this expected at this time? Why or why not?
2. What resources or referrals would be most appropriate for this patient at this time?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with a burn injury on the basis of the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient should:

- Maintain adequate oxygenation and circulation to all vital organs
- Maintain a patent airway
- Have cardiac output restored to normal
- Have pain alleviated or reduced
- Experience no further loss of skin integrity
- Have wounds healed without complications
- Remain free from infection by cross-contamination
- Not experience sepsis
- Maintain an adequate nutrient intake for meeting the body's calorie needs
- Regain and maintain an optimal ability to move purposefully
- Have a positive perception of his or her own appearance and body functions

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use strict aseptic technique when caring for patients who have open burn wounds.
- Check ventilator alarm settings hourly for patients who are receiving paralytic drugs during mechanical ventilation.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all people to have and maintain home smoke and carbon monoxide detectors.
- Warn patients who smoke about not smoking in bed and not smoking when taking any substance that induces sedation (drugs or alcohol).
- Instruct patients who have reduced sensation in hands or feet to use a bath thermometer to check water temperature before bathing.
- Teach patients to avoid exposing burned skin to the sun or to temperature extremes.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow patients time to grieve over a change in body image.
- Reassure patients that pain will be managed effectively.
- Explain all procedures to the patient.

- Give analgesics, sedatives, and antianxiety drugs to patients receiving paralytic drugs during mechanical ventilation.
- Encourage the patient to actively participate in pain control measures.
- Encourage the patient to look at and touch burned areas.

Physiological Integrity

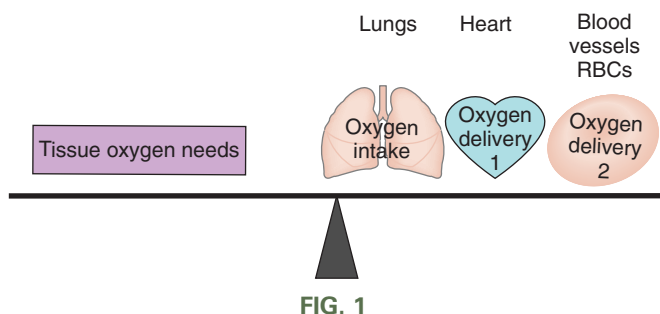
- Assess the burn patient's airway and adequacy of breathing before assessing any other body system.
- Keep an endotracheal kit or tracheostomy kit at the bedside of any patient with facial burns, burns inside the mouth, singed nasal hairs, or a "smoky" smell to the breath.
- Notify the Rapid Response Team immediately if the patient with an inhalation injury becomes more breathless or audible wheezes disappear.
- Give half of the fluid volume calculated for the first 24 hours after burn injury in the first 8 hours postburn.
- Give prescribed opioid analgesics by the IV route during the resuscitation phase of burn recovery.
- Position patients to prevent contractures and promote joint function.
- Assist patients to ambulate several times each day as soon as the fluid shifts have resolved.
- Encourage patients to use the prescribed splints and pressure garments to prevent joint immobility.

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

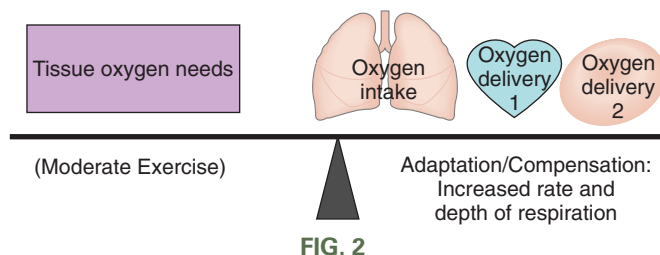
Oxygenation and Tissue Perfusion

All cells and tissues need oxygen to live and function. Some cells, such as brain cells and heart muscle cells, are very dependent on oxygen. Without oxygen, brain cells stop functioning and die in about 5 to 10 minutes. Other cells, such as skin cells, can live and function for many hours with low oxygen levels or even without oxygen. Skeletal muscle cells can survive for hours with low levels of oxygen but cannot function for very long without it.

The source of the oxygen for all body cells is the air we breathe into our lungs. Delivery of oxygen to the cells and tissues requires the pumping mechanism of the heart and the oxygen-carrying mechanism of the hemoglobin in red blood cells. In health, the need of body tissues for oxygen is balanced by the body's oxygen intake and delivery systems (Fig. 1).



When oxygen needs increase, such as during mild to moderate exercise, oxygen intake through the respiratory system increases to compensate (or adjust) and keep oxygen delivery to the tissues in balance with their oxygen need (Fig. 2).



When oxygen need increases as a result of heavy exercise or an illness in which metabolism is increased (and the person has a fever), all oxygen intake and delivery systems must adjust by increasing their activity to match the increased oxygen need. When this compensation is perfect, the increased rate and depth of respiration, along with the increased heart rate and blood pressure, keep oxygen intake and delivery in balance with oxygen need (Fig. 3).

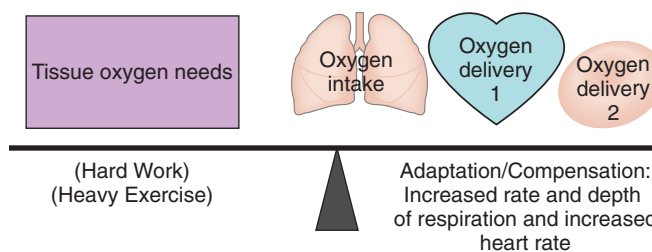
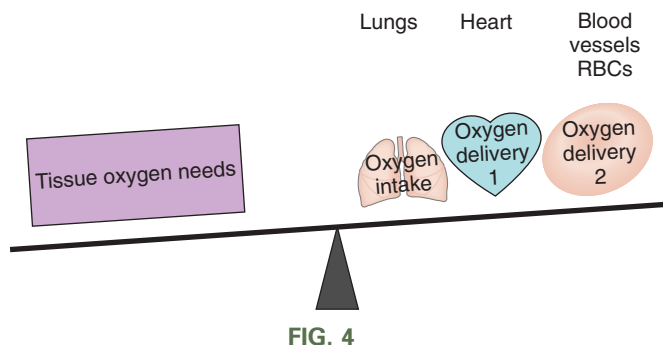
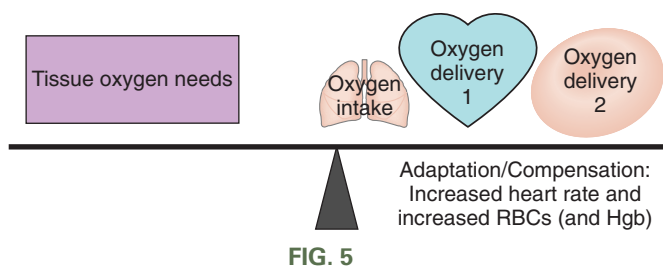


FIG. 3

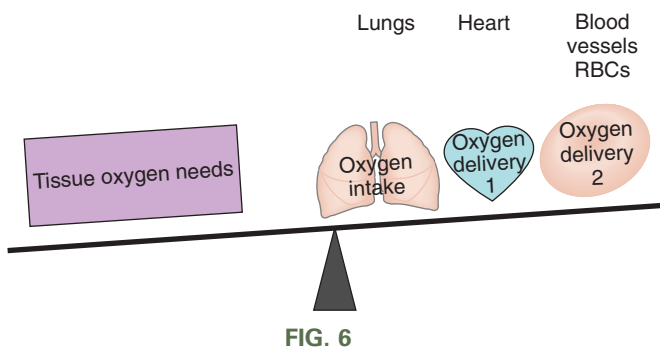
Some health problems reduce the body's ability to compensate when oxygen need is greater than basic (basal) levels. For example, in a person who has asthma, the lungs may be able to take in enough oxygen to meet basic oxygen needs but cannot adjust or compensate when a greater oxygen intake is needed, such as during mild to moderate exercise (Fig. 4).



In this situation, the heart needs to compensate *more* to increase delivery of the set amount of oxygen taken in (Fig. 5).

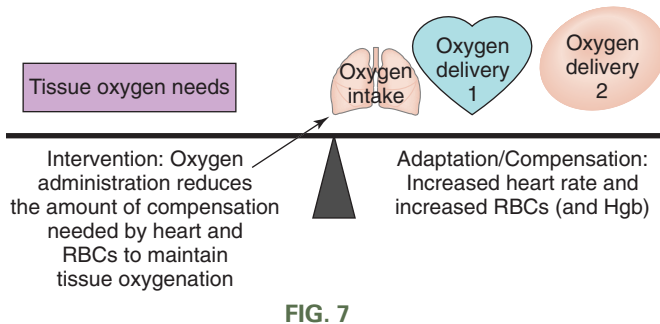


In another situation, when the person has a cardiac problem and the heart rate alone cannot increase oxygen delivery during mild to moderate exercise (Fig. 6), his or her respiratory rate would have to increase more than usual to keep oxygen delivery in balance with oxygen need.



What happens when any part of the oxygen intake or delivery systems has a problem that interferes with ensuring that the cells have enough oxygen? Consider a person with pneumonia who has great difficulty with oxygen intake to the point that the body's basic oxygen need is not met. Even though the oxygen need is at a basic level, the need is unbalanced compared with oxygen intake and delivery. The person's compensation mechanisms are working (respiratory rate is increased, heart rate is increased) but are not completely effective. How could balance be restored? Interventions are needed to support the body's compensation efforts to restore balance.

The best way is to eliminate the pneumonia, which could take days even with proper drug therapy. Other ways involve (1) reducing oxygen need to the lowest possible level by having the patient rest and (2) improving oxygen intake by increasing the percentage of oxygen in the air that he or she breathes (oxygen therapy) (Fig. 7).





CHAPTER

29

Assessment of the Respiratory System

Harry C. Rees

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Patterns of Respiration
 Animation: Percussion Tones Throughout the Chest
 Animation: Pulmonary Circulation
 Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges
 Audio Clip: Bronchial Breath Sounds
 Audio Clip: Bronchovesicular Breath Sounds
 Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Crackles
 Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Wheezes
 Audio Clip: Pleural Friction Rub

Audio Clip: Vesicular Breath Sounds
 Audio Glossary
 Concept Map Creator
 Key Points
 Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
 Video Clip: Diaphragmatic Excursion
 Video Clip: Inspection of the Nose
 Video Clip: Percussion: Anterior Thorax
 Video Clip: Respiratory Excursion
 Video Clip: Tactile Fremitus

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Health Promotion and Maintenance

1. Encourage all people to use masks and adequate ventilation when engaging in activities that expose them to inhalation irritants and toxins.

Psychosocial Integrity

2. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests and procedures to assess respiratory function and respiratory disease.

Physiological Integrity

3. Assess the patient's endurance in performing ADLs.
4. Use concepts of anatomy and appropriate psychomotor skills to apply respiratory assessment techniques correctly.

5. Perform a clinical respiratory assessment, including health history, genetic risk, physical assessment, and psychosocial assessment.
6. Distinguish between normal and abnormal (adventitious) breath sounds.
7. Explain the respiratory changes associated with aging.
8. Calculate the pack-year smoking history for the patient who smokes or who has ever smoked cigarettes.
9. Interpret arterial blood gas values to assess the patient's respiratory status.
10. Explain nursing care needs for the patient after bronchoscopy or open lung biopsy.

All cells need oxygen (O_2) to live and perform their specific jobs. Oxygen intake depends on the respiratory system (Fig. 29-1). The respiratory system is important for *oxygenation and tissue perfusion* because the source of the oxygen for all body cells is the air we breathe. This system includes the upper airways, lungs, lower airways, and alveolar air sacs. Air with oxygen enters the nose and mouth and moves through the airways or respiratory tubes (trachea, bronchi, bronchioles) and into the air sacs (alveoli) of the lungs. Once in the air sacs, the oxygen from the air moves into the blood so that it can be carried to all tissues and organs. Carbon dioxide (CO_2), the waste gas created in the tissues, moves from the

blood into the lungs so it can be exhaled. All systems depend on adequate oxygen intake for tissue perfusion with oxygen. Any respiratory problem affects total body health and well-being.

Lung and breathing problems are common and are the fifth leading cause of death in North America (McCance et al., 2010). Some respiratory problems are chronic, and the patient has physical and lifestyle limitations. Many acute health problems, medical therapies, and surgeries adversely affect respiratory function temporarily or permanently.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

The purposes of breathing are (1) to provide *oxygen for tissue perfusion* so that cells have enough oxygen to metabolize and generate energy and (2) to remove carbon dioxide, the waste product of metabolism. The respiratory system also influences acid-base balance, speech, sense of smell, fluid balance, and temperature control. The lungs are also an excretory organ because they can also break down some toxins and eliminate them from the body during exhalation.

Upper Respiratory Tract

The upper airways consist of the nose, the sinuses, the pharynx, and the larynx (Fig. 29-2).

Nose and Sinuses

The nose is the organ of smell, with receptors from cranial nerve I (*olfactory*) located in the upper areas. This organ is rigid and contains two passages separated by the septum. The upper nose is composed of bone; the lower two thirds is composed of cartilage, allowing some movement. The septum

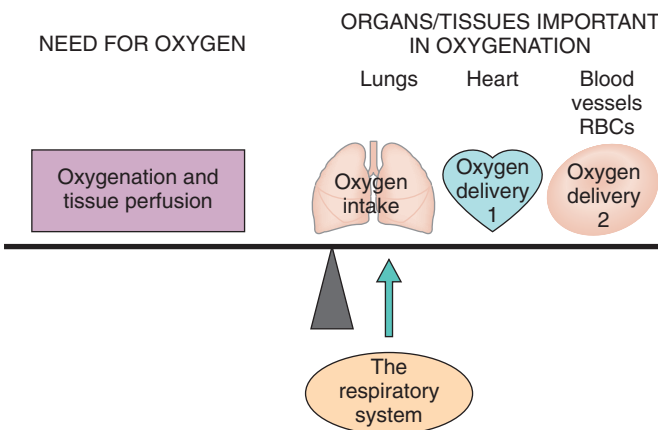


FIG. 29-1 Role of the respiratory system in oxygenation and tissue perfusion. RBCs, Red blood cells.

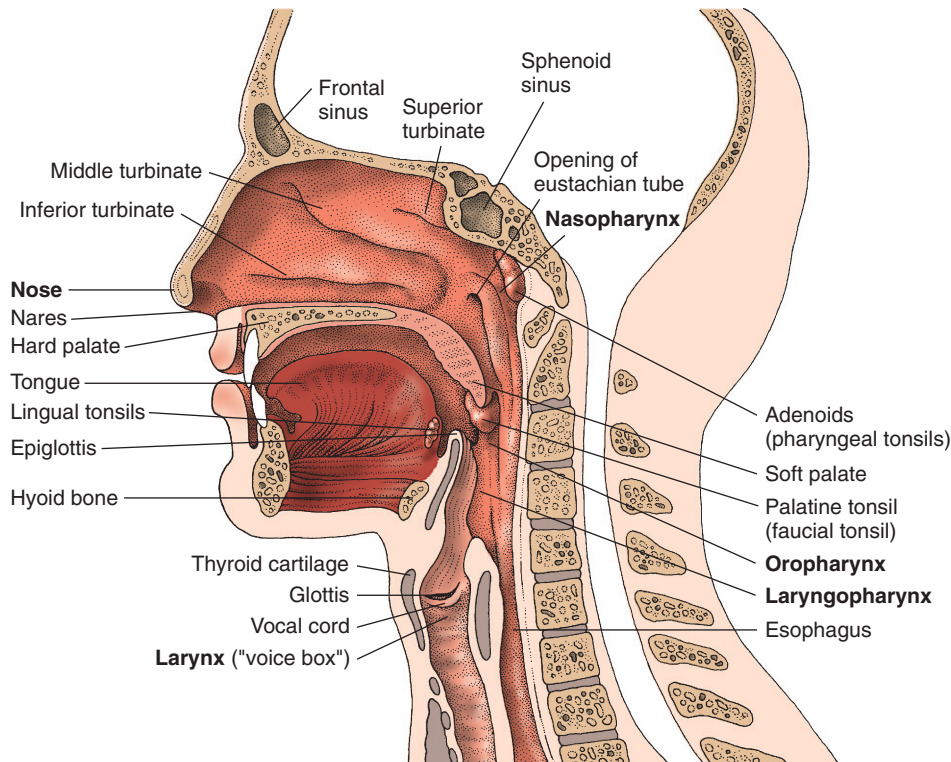


FIG. 29-2 Structures of the upper respiratory tract.

and interior walls of the nasal cavity are lined with mucous membranes that have a rich blood supply. The **anterior nares** (external openings into the nasal cavities) are lined with skin and hair, which help keep particles or organisms from entering the lungs. The posterior nares are openings from the nasal cavity into the throat.

The **turbinates** are three bones that protrude into the nasal cavities from the internal portion of the nose (see Fig. 29-2). Turbinates increase the total surface area for filtering, heating, and humidifying inspired air before it passes into the nasopharynx. Inspired air entering the nose is first filtered in the nares. Particles not filtered out in the nares are trapped in the mucous layer. These particles are moved by **cilia** (hair-like projections) to the throat, where they are either swallowed or expectorated. Inspired air is humidified by the mucous membrane and is warmed by heat from the vascular network.

The **paranasal sinuses** are air-filled cavities within the bones that surround the nasal passages (Fig. 29-3). Lined with ciliated membrane, the purposes of the sinuses are to provide resonance during speech and to decrease the weight of the skull.

Pharynx

The pharynx, or throat, is a passageway for both the respiratory and digestive tracts. It is located behind the oral and nasal cavities. The throat is divided into the nasopharynx, the oropharynx, and the laryngopharynx (see Fig. 29-2).

The nasopharynx is located behind the nose, above the soft palate. It contains the adenoids and the opening of the eustachian tube. The **eustachian tubes** connect the nasopharynx with the middle ears and open during swallowing to equalize pressure within the middle ear.

The oropharynx is located behind the mouth, below the nasopharynx. It extends from the soft palate to the base of the tongue and is used for breathing and swallowing. The **palatine tonsils**, which are part of the immune system, are located on the side borders of the oropharynx. They guard the body against invading organisms.

The **laryngopharynx** is the area located behind the larynx, extending from the base of the tongue to the esophagus. It is

the critical dividing point where foods and fluids are separated from air. At this point, the passageway divides into the larynx and the esophagus.

Larynx

The **larynx** is the “voice box” and is located above the trachea, just below the throat at the base of the tongue. It is controlled by the recurrent laryngeal nerves. The larynx is composed of several cartilages (Fig. 29-4). The **thyroid cartilage** is the largest and is commonly called the “Adam’s apple.” The **cricoid cartilage**, which contains the vocal cords, lies below the thyroid cartilage. The **cricothyroid membrane** is located below the level of the vocal cords and joins the thyroid and cricoid cartilages. This site is used in an emergency for access to the lower airways. In this procedure, called a **cricothyroidotomy**, an opening is made between the thyroid and cricoid cartilage and results in a tracheostomy. The two **arytenoid cartilages** work with the thyroid cartilage in vocal cord movement.

Inside the larynx are two pairs of vocal cords: the false vocal cords and the true vocal cords. The **glottis** is the opening between the true vocal cords (Fig. 29-5). The **epiglottis** is a leaf-shaped, elastic structure that is attached along one edge to the top of the larynx. Its hingelike action prevents food from entering the trachea (aspiration) by closing over the glottis during swallowing. The epiglottis opens during breathing and coughing.

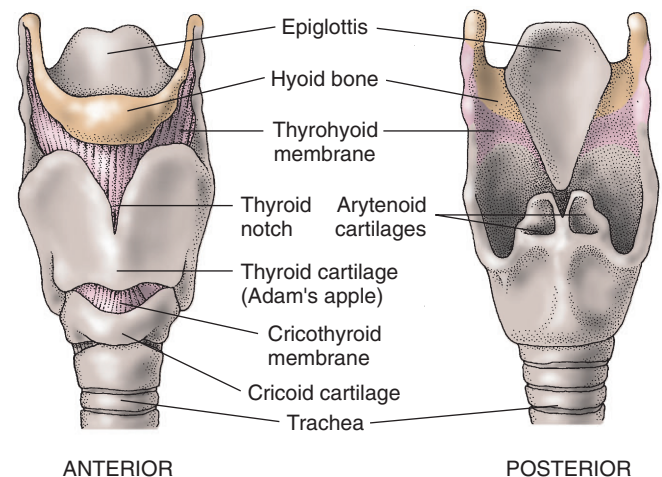


FIG. 29-4 Structures of the larynx.

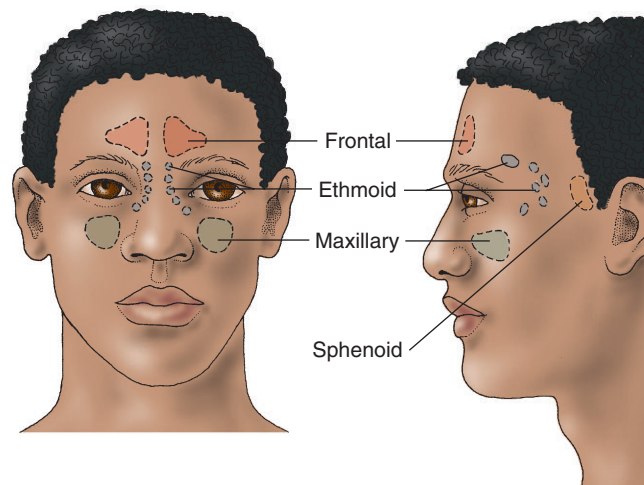


FIG. 29-3 The paranasal sinuses.

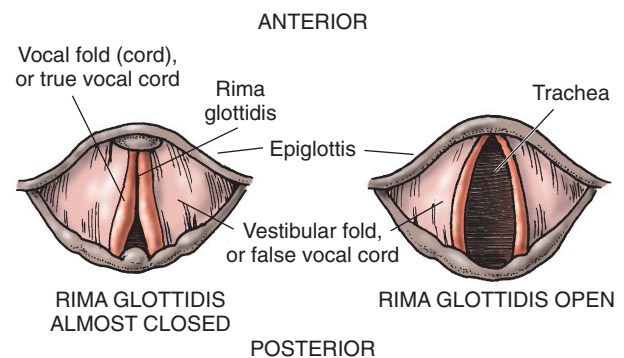


FIG. 29-5 Detail of the glottis (two vocal folds and the intervening space, the rima glottidis).

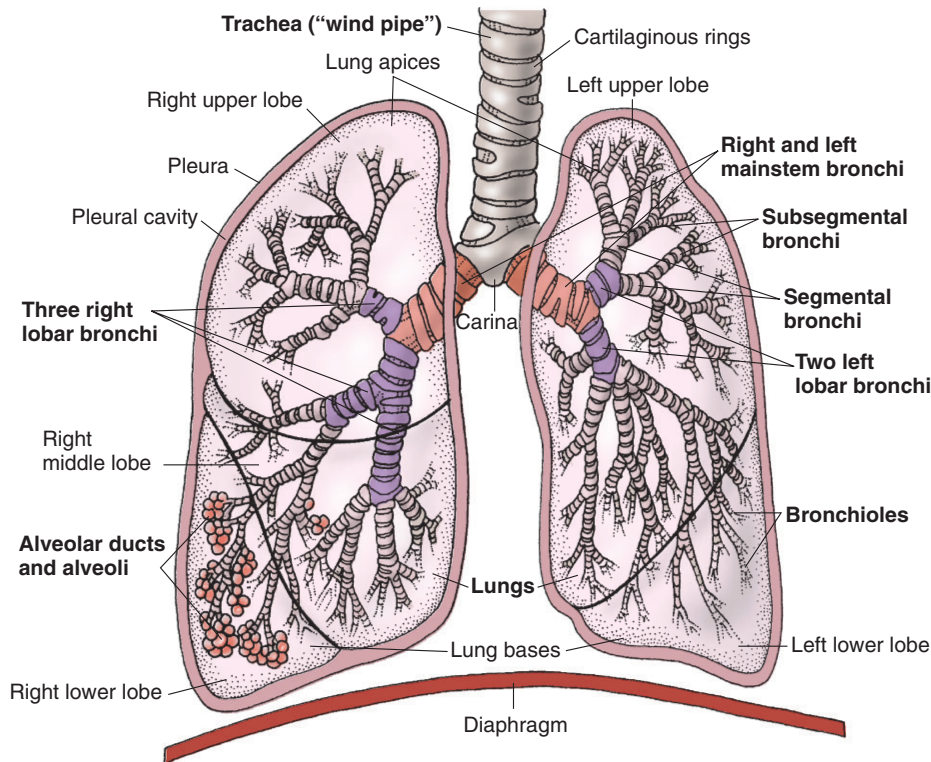


FIG. 29-6 Structures of the lower respiratory tract.

Lower Respiratory Tract

Airways

The lower airways are the trachea; two mainstem bronchi; lobar, segmental, and subsegmental bronchi; bronchioles; alveolar ducts; and alveoli (Fig. 29-6). The lower respiratory tract (*tracheobronchial tree*) is an inverted treelike structure consisting of muscle, cartilage, and elastic tissues. This system of branching tubes, which decrease in size from the trachea to the respiratory bronchioles, allows gases to move to and from the lungs. Gas exchange takes place in the lung tissue between the alveoli and the lung capillaries, not in the airways.

The *trachea* (windpipe) is located in front of the esophagus. It begins at the lower edge of the cricoid cartilage of the larynx and extends to the level of the fourth or fifth thoracic vertebra. The trachea branches into the right and left mainstem bronchi at a junction called the **carina**. The trachea contains 6 to 10 C-shaped rings of cartilage. The open portion of the C is the back portion of the trachea and contains smooth muscle that is shared with the esophagus.

The *mainstem bronchi*, or primary bronchi, begin at the carina. The bronchus is similar in structure to the trachea. The right bronchus is slightly wider, shorter, and more vertical than the left bronchus. Because of these differences, the right bronchus can be accidentally intubated when an endotracheal tube is passed. Also, when a foreign object is aspirated from the throat, it usually enters the right bronchus.

The mainstem bronchi branch into the secondary (lobar) bronchi that enter each of the five lobes of the two lungs. Each lobar bronchus branches into progressively smaller divisions. The cartilage of these lobar bronchi is ring-shaped and resists

collapse. The bronchi are lined with a ciliated, mucus-secreting membrane. The cilia move mucus up and away from the lower airway to the trachea, where the mucus is either spit out or swallowed.

The *bronchioles* branch from the secondary bronchi and divide into smaller and smaller tubes, which are the terminal and respiratory bronchioles (Fig. 29-7). These tubes have a small diameter, have no cartilage, and depend entirely on the elastic recoil of the lung to remain open.

Alveolar ducts with alveoli attached branch from the respiratory bronchioles and resemble a bunch of grapes. Alveolar sacs arise from these ducts. The alveolar sacs contain groups of alveoli, which are the basic units of gas exchange (see Fig. 29-7). A pair of healthy adult lungs has about 290 million alveoli, which are surrounded by lung capillaries. These numerous small alveoli share common walls, making a large surface area for gas exchange. In a healthy adult, this surface area is about the size of a tennis court. **Acinus** is a term for the structural unit consisting of a respiratory bronchiole, an alveolar duct, and an alveolar sac.

The alveolar walls have cells called *type II pneumocytes* that secrete **surfactant**, a fatty protein that reduces surface tension in the alveoli. Without surfactant, **atelectasis** (alveolar collapse) occurs. In atelectasis, gas exchange is reduced because alveolar surface area is reduced.

Lungs

The lungs are elastic, cone-shaped organs located in the pleural cavity in the chest. The apex (top) of each lung extends above the clavicle; the base (bottom) of each lung lies just above the diaphragm. The lungs are composed of millions of

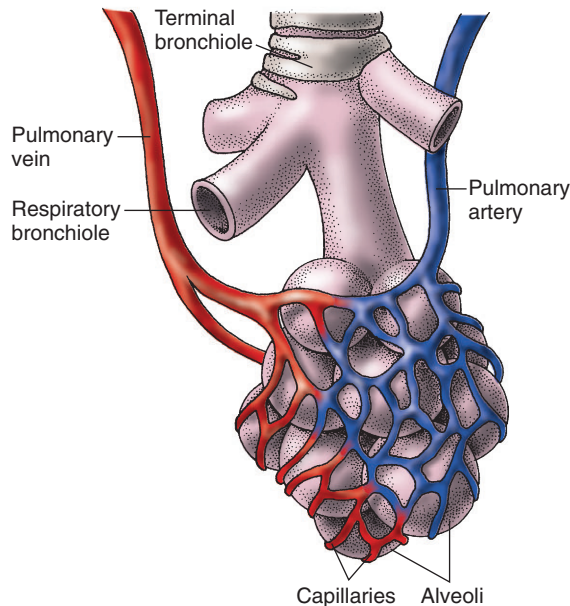


FIG. 29-7 The terminal bronchioles and the acinus.

alveoli and their related ducts, bronchioles, and bronchi. The right lung, which is larger than the left, is divided into three lobes: upper, middle, and lower. The left lung, which is narrower and smaller than the right lung, is divided into only two lobes. About 60% to 65% of lung function occurs in the right lung. Any problem with the right lung interferes with *oxygenation* to a greater degree than a problem in the left lung.

The **pleura** is a continuous smooth membrane composed of two surfaces that totally enclose the lungs. The parietal pleura lines the inside of the chest cavity and the upper surface of the diaphragm. The visceral pleura covers the lung surfaces. These two surfaces are lubricated by a thin fluid produced by the cells lining the pleura. This fluid allows the surfaces to glide across each other smoothly and painlessly during breathing.

Blood flow in the lungs occurs through two separate systems: bronchial and pulmonary. The bronchial system carries the blood needed to meet the metabolic demands of the lungs. The bronchial arteries, which branch from the thoracic aorta, are part of the systemic circulation and do not participate in gas exchange.

The pulmonary circulation is a highly vascular capillary network. Oxygen-poor blood travels from the right ventricle of the heart into the pulmonary artery, which eventually branches into arterioles that form capillary networks. These capillaries are meshed around and through the alveoli—the site of gas exchange (see Fig. 29-7). Freshly oxygenated blood travels from the capillaries to the pulmonary veins and then to the left atrium. From the left atrium, oxygenated blood flows into the left ventricle, where it is pumped throughout the systemic circulation.

Accessory Muscles of Respiration

Breathing occurs through changes in the size of and pressure within the chest cavity. Contraction and relaxation of specific chest muscles (and the diaphragm) cause changes in the size and pressure of the chest cavity. Accessory muscles that help in this process include the scalene muscles, which lift the first two ribs; the sternocleidomastoid muscles, which raise the

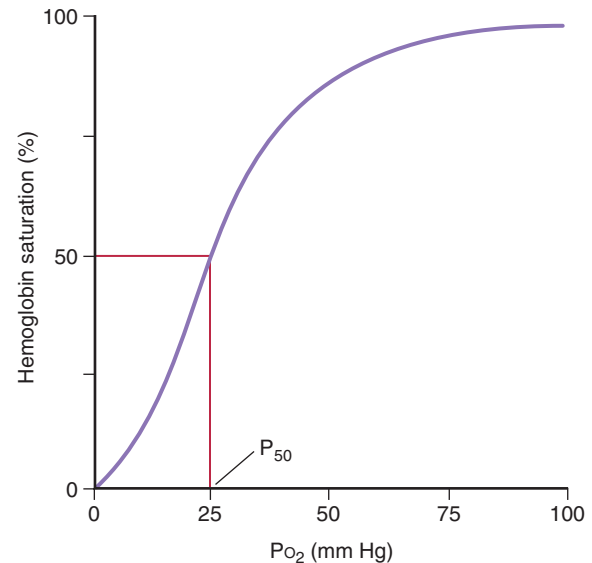


FIG. 29-8 The oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve. P_{50} , the partial pressure of O_2 at which hemoglobin is 50% saturated; PO_2 , oxygen partial pressure.

sternum; and the trapezius and pectoralis muscles, which fix the shoulders. At times, various back and abdominal muscles are used when the work of breathing is increased.

Oxygen Delivery and the Oxygen-Hemoglobin Dissociation Curve

Oxygen delivery to the tissues requires the binding of oxygen to hemoglobin in red blood cells. Each molecule of hemoglobin can bind four oxygen molecules, which fills or *saturates* all of its binding sites. In the healthy person, each red blood cell normally has hundreds of thousands of hemoglobin molecules. When blood passes through the lung alveoli, where oxygen concentration is the greatest, oxygen diffuses from the alveoli into red blood cells and binds to all those hemoglobin molecules. This oxygen-rich blood then goes to the left side of the heart and is pumped out into systemic circulation. In tissues away from the source of oxygen, hemoglobin unloads (**dissociates**) the oxygen molecules and delivers them to the tissues. Fig. 29-8 shows the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve.

Tissue oxygen delivery through dissociation or unloading from hemoglobin is based on tissues' need for oxygen. The curve in Fig. 29-8 shows that the rate of this unloading changes depending on how much oxygen is already in the tissues. When blood perfuses tissues in which the oxygen levels are high, as indicated in the upper right-hand corner of the figure, hemoglobin binds oxygen very tightly and little oxygen is unloaded or dissociated from the hemoglobin into the tissues. This prevents oxygen delivery from being wasted by unloading it where it is not needed. When blood perfuses tissues in which oxygen levels are very low, as indicated in the lower left-hand corner of Fig. 29-8, hemoglobin binds oxygen less tightly and will rapidly and easily unload its remaining oxygen to provide these tissues with needed oxygen. So, how rapidly and easily hemoglobin dissociates oxygen to the tissues changes depending on oxygen need. The S-shaped

curve indicates that it is harder for oxygen to dissociate from hemoglobin in tissues that are well-oxygenated and much easier in tissues that are “starving” for oxygen.

The curve in Fig. 29-8 indicates that, on average, 50% of hemoglobin molecules have completely dissociated their oxygen molecules when blood perfuses tissues that have an oxygen tension (concentration) of 26 mm Hg. This is considered a “normal” point at which 50% of hemoglobin molecules are no longer saturated with oxygen.

When the need for oxygen is greater in tissues, this curve shifts to the *right*, which means the hemoglobin will dissociate oxygen faster even when the tissue oxygen tension levels are greater than 26 mm Hg. Conditions that shift the curve to the right are those that result from higher tissue metabolism (increased tissue temperature, increased tissue carbon dioxide concentration, increased tissue concentration of glucose breakdown products, and decreased tissue pH [acidosis]). This means it is easier for hemoglobin to unload oxygen to these tissues because they need it to support the higher metabolism. This is actually a tissue protective mechanism that increases oxygen delivery to the tissues that need it most.

On the other hand, when tissues have less need of oxygen because they are metabolizing more slowly than usual, the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve shifts to the *left*, which means that the hemoglobin dissociates less easily. The tissue oxygen tension level has to be *lower* for hemoglobin to unload oxygen. Tissue conditions that cause a shift to the left include decreased tissue temperatures, decreased carbon dioxide levels, decreased amounts of glucose breakdown products, and a higher tissue pH (alkalosis). This also is a tissue protective mechanism to prevent wasting oxygen delivery to tissues that are not using the oxygen they already have.

One clinical example of how these actions are helpful is one in which a person is having a myocardial infarction (heart attack). Blood flow to the area is reduced and the heart muscle is metabolizing under hypoxic conditions, which create more carbon dioxide in the tissue and acidosis. As a result, the hemoglobin that does reach this hypoxic tissue unloads more oxygen at a faster rate to prevent ischemia and cardiac muscle cell death. What if this person believes he or she is having indigestion, which can have similar symptoms of chest discomfort, and tries to correct the problem by taking in large amounts of bicarbonate-based antacids? This ingestion increases the pH in the blood and all tissues, shifting the oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve to the left. As a result, the hypoxic cardiac muscle cells receive even less oxygen and more of them die.

Respiratory Changes Associated With Aging

The respiratory changes that occur with aging are described in Chart 29-1. Many additional respiratory changes in older patients result from heredity and a lifetime of exposure to environmental pollutants (e.g., cigarette smoke, bacteria, industrial fumes and irritants).

Respiratory disease is a major cause of illness and chronic disability in older patients. Although respiratory function normally declines with age, there is usually no problem keeping pace with the demands of ordinary activity. The sedentary older adult, however, often feels breathless during exercise (Touhy & Jett, 2010).

It is difficult to determine which respiratory changes in older adults are related to normal aging and which changes are caused by respiratory disease or exposure to pollutants.

Age-related changes in the muscles and the cardiac and vascular system also may cause abnormal breathing, even if the lungs are normal.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

How does atelectasis reduce gas exchange?

- A. Airway obstruction
- B. Reduced alveolar surface area
- C. Failure of pulmonary circulation to fully perfuse lung tissue
- D. Increased bronchial secretions filling the alveoli with fluid rather than with air

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Obtaining accurate information from the patient is important for identifying the type and severity of breathing problems. Chart 29-2 lists questions to ask patients (based on Gordon's Functional Health Patterns) to assess the impact of pulmonary function.

Age, gender, and race can affect the physical and diagnostic findings related to breathing. Many of the diagnostic studies for respiratory disorders (e.g., pulmonary function tests) use these data for determining predicted normal values.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Women, especially smokers, have greater bronchial responsiveness (i.e., bronchial hyperreactivity) and larger airways than men. This factor increases the risk for a more rapid decline in lung function as a woman ages, especially in women who were or are smokers.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Compared with whites, black people and others with dark skin usually show a lower oxygen saturation (3% to 5% lower) as measured by pulse oximetry; this results from deeper coloration of the nail bed and does not reflect true oxygen status.

Explore the home, community, and workplace for environmental factors that could cause or worsen lung disease. Occupational lung diseases include pneumoconiosis, which results from the inhalation of dust (e.g., coal dust, stone dust, silicone dust); toxic lung injury; and hypersensitivity disease (e.g., hypersensitivity to latex). Work history includes the exact dates of employment and a brief job description. Exposure to industrial dusts of any type or to the chemicals found in smoke and fumes may cause breathing disorders. Bakers, coal miners, stone masons, cotton handlers, woodworkers, welders, potters, plastic and rubber manufacturers, printers, asbestos workers, farm workers, and steel foundry workers are at risk for breathing problems. Use this opportunity to teach patients about the use of masks and adequate ventilation to protect the respiratory system from inhalation irritants.

Ask about home conditions, such as the type of heat used (e.g., gas heater, wood-burning stove, fireplace, kerosene heater). Determine exposure to irritants (e.g., fumes, chemicals, animals, birds, air pollutants). Ask about hobbies such as painting, working with ceramics, building model airplanes, refinishing furniture, or woodworking, which may expose the patient to harmful chemicals. Teach patients to wear masks

CHART 29-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Respiratory System Related to Aging

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Alveoli Alveolar surface area decreases. Diffusion capacity decreases. Elastic recoil decreases. Bronchioles and alveolar ducts dilate. Ability to cough decreases. Airways close early.	Encourage vigorous pulmonary hygiene (i.e., encourage patient to turn, cough, and deep breathe), and to use incentive spirometry, especially if he or she is confined to bed or has had surgery. Encourage upright position.	Potential for mechanical or infectious respiratory complications is increased in these situations. The upright position minimizes ventilation-perfusion mismatching.
Lungs Residual volume increases. Vital capacity decreases. Efficiency of oxygen and carbon dioxide exchange decreases. Elasticity decreases.	Include inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation in lung assessments. Help patient actively maintain health and fitness. Assess patient's respirations for abnormal breathing patterns. Encourage frequent oral hygiene.	Inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation are needed to detect normal age-related changes. Health and fitness help keep losses in respiratory functioning to a minimum. Periodic breathing patterns (e.g., Cheyne-Stokes) can occur. Oral hygiene aids in the removal of secretions.
Pharynx and Larynx Muscles atrophy. Vocal cords become slack. Laryngeal muscles lose elasticity, and airways lose cartilage.	Have face-to-face conversations with patient when possible.	Patient's voice may be soft and difficult to understand.
Pulmonary Vasculature Vascular resistance to blood flow through pulmonary vascular system increases. Pulmonary capillary blood volume decreases. Risk for hypoxia increases.	Assess patient's level of consciousness and cognition.	Patient can become confused during acute respiratory conditions.
Exercise Tolerance Body's response to hypoxia and hypercarbia decreases.	Assess for subtle manifestations of hypoxia.	Early assessment helps prevent complications.
Muscle Strength Respiratory muscle strength, especially the diaphragm and the intercostals, decreases.	Encourage pulmonary hygiene, and help patient actively maintain health and fitness.	Regular pulmonary hygiene and overall fitness help maintain maximal functioning of the respiratory system and prevent illness.
Susceptibility to Infection Effectiveness of the cilia decreases. Immunoglobulin A decreases. Alveolar macrophages are altered.	Encourage pulmonary hygiene, and help patient actively maintain health and fitness.	Regular pulmonary hygiene and overall fitness help maintain maximal functioning of the respiratory system and prevent illness.
Chest Wall Anteroposterior diameter increases. Thorax becomes shorter. Progressive kyphoscoliosis occurs. Chest wall compliance (elasticity) decreases. Mobility may decrease. Osteoporosis is possible.	Discuss the normal changes of aging. Discuss the need for increased rest periods during exercise. Encourage adequate calcium intake (especially during a woman's premenopause phase).	Patients may be anxious because they must work harder to breathe. Older patients have less tolerance for exercise. Calcium intake helps prevent osteoporosis by building bone in younger patients.

during these exposures and to ensure the area is well ventilated.

Ask patients about their respiratory history (Table 29-1), including smoking history, drug use, travel, and area of residence.

Smoking history includes the use of cigarettes, cigars, pipe tobacco, and marijuana and other controlled substances. Ask whether any of these substances are used now or in the past. Assess whether the patient has passive exposure to smoke in

the home or workplace. If the patient smokes, ask for how long, how many packs a day, and whether he or she has quit smoking (and how long ago). Document the smoking history in **pack-years** (number of packs smoked per day multiplied by number of years the patient has smoked).

Smoking induces changes in the airways that lead to some airway obstruction. As a result, smokers have a more rapid age-related decline in pulmonary function than do nonsmokers. The pulmonary function of patients who have quit

CHART 29-2 RESPIRATORY ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Health Perception—Health Management Pattern

- How has your general health been?
- Have you had any colds this past year?
- Have you missed work or school because of respiratory illness this past year?
- Do you use cigarettes? For how many years? How many packs per day?

Activity-Exercise Pattern

- Do you feel you have sufficient energy to perform tasks or routines that are required of you?
- Do you feel you have sufficient energy to do what you would like to do?
- Do you exercise? How often? For how long each time? What type(s) of exercise do you perform?
- What activities do you perform in your spare time?
- What is your ability to perform these tasks?

Feeding _____	Grooming _____
Bathing _____	General mobility _____
Toileting _____	Cooking _____
Bed mobility _____	Home maintenance _____
Dressing _____	Shopping _____

Functional Levels Code

Level 0: Full self-care

Level I: Requires use of equipment or device

Level II: Requires assistance or supervision of another person

Level III: Requires assistance or supervision of another person and the use of equipment or devices

Level IV: Is dependent and does not participate

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

TABLE 29-1 IMPORTANT ASPECTS TO ASSESS IN A RESPIRATORY SYSTEM HISTORY

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Smoking history • Childhood illnesses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Asthma • Pneumonia • Communicable diseases • Hay fever • Allergies • Eczema • Frequent colds • Croup • Cystic fibrosis • Adult illnesses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pneumonia • Sinusitis • Tuberculosis • HIV and AIDS • Lung disease such as emphysema and sarcoidosis • Diabetes • Hypertension • Heart disease | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Influenza, pneumococcal (Pneumovax) and BCG vaccinations • Surgeries of the upper or lower respiratory system • Injuries to the upper or lower respiratory system • Hospitalizations • Date of last chest x-ray, pulmonary function test, tuberculin test, or other diagnostic tests and results • Recent weight loss • Night sweats • Sleep disturbances • Lung disease and condition of family members • Geographic areas of recent travel • Occupation and leisure activities |
|--|--|

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; BCG, bacille Calmette-Guérin; HIV, human immune deficiency virus.

smoking for 2 or more years appears to decline less rapidly than in those who continue to smoke.

Drug use, both prescribed drugs and illicit drugs, can affect lung function. Some drugs affect the lungs when taken systemically. Ask about drugs taken for breathing problems and

about drugs taken for other conditions. For example, a cough can be a side effect of some antihypertensive drugs (angiotensin-converting enzyme [ACE] inhibitors). Determine which over-the-counter drugs (e.g., cough syrups, antihistamines, decongestants, inhalants, nasal sprays) the patient is using. Also assess the use of complementary and alternative therapies. Ask about past drug use and the reason it was discontinued. For example, the patient may have used many bronchodilator inhalers but may prefer one particular drug for relieving breathlessness. Some drugs for other conditions can cause permanent changes in lung function. For example, patients may have pulmonary fibrosis if they received bleomycin (Blenoxane) as chemotherapy for cancer or amiodarone (Cordarone) for cardiac problems (Roberts, 2010). Illicit drugs, such as marijuana or cocaine, are often inhaled and can affect lung function.

Allergies to substances such as foods, dust, molds, pollen, bee stings, trees, grass, animal dander and saliva, or drugs can affect breathing. Ask the patient to describe specific allergic responses. For example, does he or she wheeze, have trouble breathing, cough, sneeze, or have rhinitis after exposure to the allergen? Has he or she ever been treated for an allergic response? If the patient has received treatment for allergies, ask about what caused the need for treatment, the type of treatment, and the response to treatment.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Document any known allergies and the specific type of allergic response in a prominent place in the patient's medical record.

Travel and geographic area of residence may be relevant for possible exposure to certain diseases. For example, *histoplasmosis*, a fungal disease caused by inhalation of contaminated dust, is found in the central part of the United States and Canada. *Coccidioidomycosis*, another fungal disease, is found mostly in the western and southwestern parts of the United States, in Mexico, and in portions of Central America, as is *Hantavirus*.

Nutrition Status

Assess the patient's diet history and nutrition status to determine allergic reactions to certain foods or preservatives. Manifestations range from rhinitis, chest tightness, weakness, **dyspnea** (shortness of breath), urticaria, and severe wheezing to loss of consciousness. Ask about usual food intake and whether any breathing problems occur with eating.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Obtain a family history to assess for respiratory disorders that have a genetic component, such as cystic fibrosis, some lung cancers, and emphysema (Workman & Winkelman, 2008). Patients with asthma often have a family history of allergy. Ask about a history of infectious disease, such as tuberculosis, because family members may have similar environmental or occupational exposures.

Current Health Problems

Whether the breathing problem is acute or chronic, the current health problem usually includes cough, sputum production, chest pain, and shortness of breath at rest or on exertion. Explore the present illness in chronologic order.

Ask specifically about the onset of the problem, how long it lasts, the location of the problem, how often it occurs, whether the problem has become worse over time, what symptoms occur with it, which actions or interventions provide relief and which ones make it worse, and what treatments have been used.

Cough is a sign of lung disease. Ask the patient how long the cough has been present and whether it occurs at a specific time of day (e.g., on awakening in the morning) or in relation to any physical activity. Ask whether the cough produces sputum or is dry, tickling, or hacking.

Sputum production is an important symptom associated with coughing. Check the duration, color, consistency, odor, and amount of sputum. Sputum may be clear, white, tan, gray, or, if infection is present, yellow or green.

Describe the consistency of sputum as thin, thick, watery, or frothy. Smokers with chronic bronchitis have mucoid sputum. Excessive pink, frothy sputum is common with pulmonary edema. Bacterial pneumonia often produces rust-colored sputum, and foul-smelling sputum often occurs with a lung abscess. **Hemoptysis** (blood in the sputum) is most often seen in patients with chronic bronchitis or lung cancer. Patients with tuberculosis, pulmonary infarction, bronchial adenoma, or lung abscess may have grossly bloody sputum.

Ask the patient to quantify sputum by describing its volume in terms such as teaspoon, tablespoon, and cups or fractions of cups. Normally, the bronchial tree can produce up to 3 ounces (90 mL) of sputum per day.

Chest pain can occur with other health problems as well as with lung problems. A detailed description of chest pain helps distinguish whether it is caused by pleural, musculoskeletal, cardiac, or GI problems. Ask the patient whether the pain is continuous or made worse by coughing, deep breathing, or swallowing. Cardiac pain is usually intense and “crushing.” It may also radiate to the arm, shoulder, or neck. Pulmonary pain varies depending on the cause. Pain that feels like something is “rubbing” inside is more common with pulmonary pain. The pain may appear only on deep inhalation or be present at the end of inhalation and the end of exhalation. Pulmonary pain is not made worse by touching or pressing over the area.

Dyspnea (difficulty in breathing or breathlessness) is a subjective perception and varies among patients. A patient’s feeling of dyspnea may not be consistent with the severity of the problem. Determine the type of onset (slow or abrupt); the duration (number of hours, time of day); relieving factors (position changes, drug use, activity cessation); and whether wheezing, crackles, or stridor occurs with the breathlessness.

Try to quantify dyspnea by asking whether this symptom interferes with ADLs and, if so, how severely. For example, is the patient breathless while dressing, showering, shaving, or eating? Does dyspnea occur after walking one block or climbing one flight of stairs? **Table 29-2** classifies dyspnea with changes in ADL performance.

Ask about **paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND)**, which is intermittent dyspnea during sleep, and about **orthopnea**, which is a shortness of breath that occurs when lying down but is relieved by sitting up. These two conditions often occur with chronic lung disease and left-sided heart failure. In PND, the patient has a sudden onset of breathing difficulty that is severe enough to awaken him or her.

TABLE 29-2 CORRELATION OF DYSPNEA CLASSIFICATION WITH PERFORMANCE OF ADLS

CLASSIFICATION	ADLS KEY
Class I: No significant restrictions in normal activity. Employable. Dyspnea occurs only on more-than-normal or strenuous exertion.	4: No breathlessness, normal.
Class II: Independent in essential ADLs but restricted in some other activities. Dyspneic on climbing stairs or on walking on an incline but not on level walking. Employable only for sedentary job or under special circumstances.	3: Satisfactory, mild breathlessness. Complete performance is possible without pause or assistance but not entirely normal.
Class III: Dyspnea commonly occurs during usual activities, such as showering or dressing, but the patient can manage without assistance from others. Not dyspneic at rest; can walk for more than a city block at own pace but cannot keep up with others of own age. May stop to catch breath partway up a flight of stairs. Is probably not employable in any occupation.	2: Fair, moderate breathlessness. Must stop during activity. Complete performance is possible without assistance, but performance may be too debilitating or time consuming.
Class IV: Dyspnea produces dependence on help in some essential ADLs such as dressing and bathing. Not usually dyspneic at rest. Dyspneic on minimal exertion; must pause on climbing one flight, walking more than 100 yards, or dressing. Often restricted to home if lives alone. Has minimal or no activities outside of home.	1: Poor, marked breathlessness. Incomplete performance; assistance is necessary.
Class V: Entirely restricted to home and often limited to bed or chair. Dyspneic at rest. Dependent on help for most needs.	0: Performance not indicated or recommended; too difficult.

ADLs, Activities of daily living.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The 60-year-old client’s smoking history includes smoking 2 packs of cigarettes per day since the age of 15 until the age of 40, and then smoking 3 packs per day to the present. How does the nurse document this smoking history?

- A. 45 pack-years
- B. 80 pack-years
- C. 90 pack-years
- D. 110 pack-years

Physical Assessment

Assessment of the Nose and Sinuses

Inspect the patient’s external nose for deformities or tumors, and inspect the nares for symmetry of size and shape. To observe the interior nose, ask the patient to tilt the head back for a penlight examination. Use a nasal speculum and nasopharyngeal mirror for a more thorough inspection of the nasal cavity.

Inspect for color, swelling, drainage, and bleeding. The mucous membrane of the nose normally appears redder than the oral mucosa, but it is pale, engorged, and bluish gray in patients with allergic rhinitis. Check the nasal septum for

bleeding, perforation, or deviation. Septal deviation is common and appears as an S shape, tilting toward one side or the other. A perforated septum is present if the light shines through the perforation into the opposite side; this condition is often found in cocaine users. Nasal polyps, a common cause of obstruction, are pale, shiny, gelatinous lumps or “bags” attached to the turbinates. Block one naris at a time to check whether air moves through the unblocked side easily.

Assessment of the Pharynx, Trachea, and Larynx

Assessment of the pharynx begins with inspection of the mouth. To examine the posterior pharynx, use a tongue depressor to press down one side of the tongue at a time (to avoid stimulating the gag reflex). As the patient says “ah,” observe the rise and fall of the soft palate and uvula and inspect for color and symmetry, drainage, edema or ulceration, and enlarged or inflamed tonsils.

Inspect the neck for symmetry, alignment, masses, swelling, bruises, and the use of accessory neck muscles in breathing. Palpate lymph nodes for size, shape, mobility, consistency, and tenderness. Tender nodes that are movable suggest inflammation. Malignant nodes are often hard and do not move with palpation.

Gently palpate the trachea for position, mobility, tenderness, and masses. The trachea should be in the midline. Many lung disorders cause the trachea to deviate from the midline. Tension pneumothorax, large pleural effusion, mediastinal mass, and neck tumors push the trachea *away* from the affected area. Pneumonectomy, fibrosis, and atelectasis pull it *toward* the affected area. Decreased tracheal mobility may occur with cancer or fibrosis of the mediastinum.

The larynx is usually examined by a specialist with a laryngoscope. An abnormal voice, especially hoarseness, may be heard when there are problems of the larynx.

Assessment of the Lungs and Thorax

Inspection. Inspect the front and back of the thorax with the patient sitting up. Normal landmarks of the chest front (anterior) and back (posterior) are shown in Fig. 29-9. The patient should be undressed to the waist and draped for privacy and warmth. Observe the chest, and compare one side with the other. Work from the top (apex) and move downward toward the base, going from side to side, while inspecting for discoloration, scars, lesions, masses, and spinal curvatures. Assessing from side to side allows you to compare the assessment findings for each lung at the same level.

Observe the rate, rhythm, and depth of inspirations as well as the symmetry of chest movement. Impaired movement or unequal expansion may indicate disease. Observe the type of breathing (e.g., pursed-lip or diaphragmatic breathing) and the use of accessory muscles.

Examine the shape of the patient’s chest, and compare the anteroposterior (AP or front-to-back) diameter with the lateral (side-to-side) diameter. This ratio normally is about 1:1.5 depending on body build. The ratio increases to 1:1 in patients with emphysema, which results in the typical barrel-chest appearance.

Normally the ribs slope downward. Patients with air trapping in the lungs caused by emphysema have ribs that are more horizontal. Observe or palpate the distance between the ribs (*intercostal space*). This distance is usually one fingerbreadth (2 centimeters). The distance increases in disorders that cause air trapping, such as emphysema. Observe for retraction of muscle between the ribs and at the sternal notch. Retractions are areas that get sucked inward when the patient inhales. This does not occur during normal respiratory effort. Retractions may occur when the patient is working hard to inhale around an obstruction.

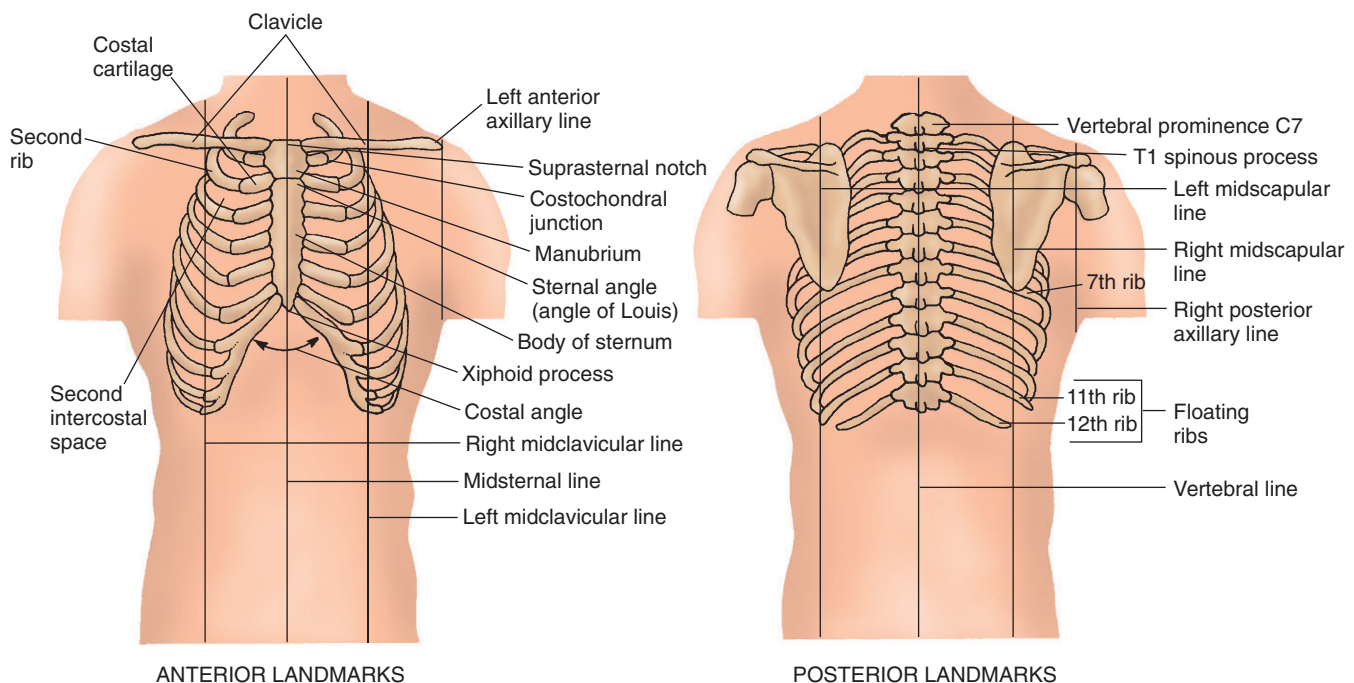


FIG. 29-9 Anterior and posterior chest landmarks.

Palpation. Palpate the chest after inspection to assess respiratory movement symmetry and observable abnormalities. Palpation also can help identify areas of tenderness and check vocal or tactile **fremitus** (vibration).

Assess chest expansion by placing your thumbs on the patient's spine at the level of the ninth ribs and extending the fingers sideways around the rib cage. As the patient inhales, both sides of the chest should move upward and outward together in one symmetric movement and move your thumbs apart. On exhalation, the thumbs should come back together as they return to the midline. Use this technique on the anterior chest for patients who cannot sit up or change positions. Decreased movement on one side (unequal expansion) may be a result of pain, trauma, or air in the pleural cavity. Respiratory lag or slowed movement on one side occurs with a pulmonary mass, pleural fibrosis, atelectasis, pneumonia, or a lung abscess.

Palpate any abnormalities found on inspection (e.g., masses, lesions, bruises, swelling). Also palpate for tenderness, particularly if the patient has reported pain. **Crepitus** (air trapped in and under the skin, also known as *subcutaneous emphysema*) is felt as a crackling sensation beneath the fingertips. Document this finding when it occurs around a wound site or a tracheostomy site or if a pneumothorax is suspected.

Tactile (vocal) fremitus is a vibration of the chest wall produced when the patient speaks. This vibration can be felt on the chest wall. Fremitus is decreased if the transmission of sound waves from the larynx to the chest wall is slowed. This problem can occur when the pleural space is filled with air (pneumothorax) or fluid (**pleural effusion**) or when the bronchus is obstructed. Fremitus is increased with pneumonia and abscesses because they increase the density of the thorax and enhance transmission of the vibrations.

Percussion. Use percussion to assess for pulmonary resonance, the boundaries of organs, and diaphragmatic excursion. Percussion involves tapping the chest wall, which sets the underlying tissues into motion and produces audible sounds (Fig. 29-10).

Percussion produces five different notes (Table 29-3). These sounds help determine the density of the underlying structures (i.e., whether the lung tissue contains air or fluid or is solid).

Auscultation. Auscultation includes listening with a stethoscope for normal breath sounds, adventitious sounds,

and voice sounds. This technique provides information about the flow of air through the tracheobronchial tree and helps identify fluid, mucus, or obstruction in the respiratory system (Bradley, 2007).

Begin auscultation with the patient sitting in an upright position. With the stethoscope pressed firmly against the chest wall (clothing can distort or muffle sounds), instruct the patient to breathe slowly and deeply through an open mouth. (Breathing through the nose sets up turbulent sounds that are transmitted to the lungs.) Use a systematic approach, beginning at the lung apices and moving from side to side down through the intercostal spaces to the lung bases (Fig. 29-11). This side-to-side method allows you to compare one lung with the other at the same level. Avoid listening over bony structures. Listen to a full respiratory cycle, noting the quality and intensity of the breath sounds.

Normal breath sounds are produced as air vibrates while moving through the passages from the larynx to the alveoli. Breath sounds are identified by their location, intensity, pitch, and duration within the respiratory cycle (e.g., early or late inspiration and expiration). Normal breath sounds are known as “bronchial” or “tubular” (harsh hollow sounds heard over the trachea and mainstem bronchi), “bronchovesicular” (heard over the branching bronchi), and “vesicular” (soft

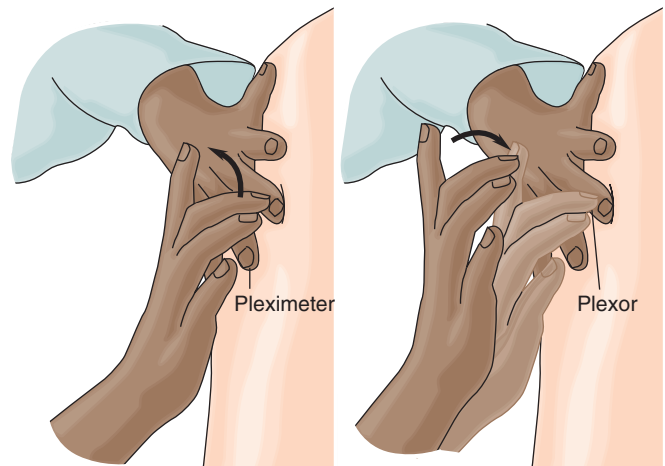


FIG. 29-10 Percussion technique.

TABLE 29-3 CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF THE FIVE PERCUSSION NOTES

NOTE	PITCH	INTENSITY	QUALITY	DURATION	FINDINGS
Resonance	Low	Moderate to loud	Hollow	Long	Resonance is characteristic of normal lung tissue.
Hyperresonance	Higher than resonance	Very loud	Booming	Longer than resonance	Hyperresonance indicates the presence of trapped air, so it is commonly heard over an emphysematous or asthmatic lung and occasionally over a pneumothorax.
Flatness	High	Soft	Extreme dullness	Short	An example location is the sternum. Flatness percussed over the lung fields may indicate a massive pleural effusion.
Dullness	Medium	Medium	Thudlike	Medium	An example location is over the liver and the kidneys. Dullness can be percussed over an atelectatic lung or a consolidated lung.
Tympany	High	Loud	Musical, drumlike	Short	Examples are the cheek filled with air and the abdomen distended with air. Over the lung, a tympanic note usually indicates a large pneumothorax.

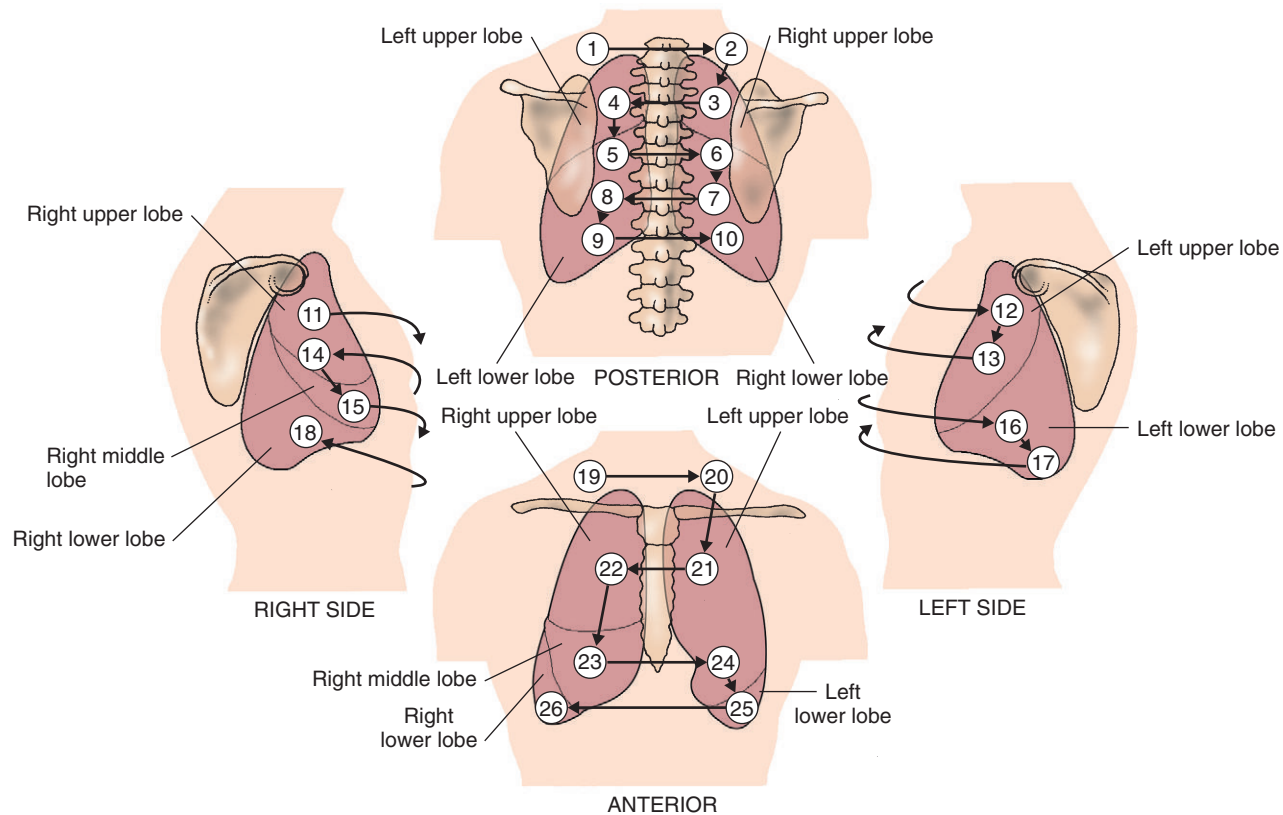
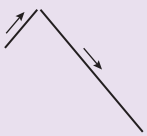
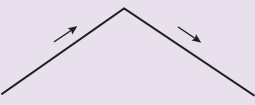


FIG. 29-11 Sequence for percussion and auscultation.

TABLE 29-4 CHARACTERISTICS OF NORMAL BREATH SOUNDS					
	PITCH	AMPLITUDE	DURATION	QUALITY	NORMAL LOCATION
Bronchial (tubular, tracheal) 	High	Loud	Inspiration < expiration	Harsh, hollow, tubular, blowing	Trachea and larynx
Bronchovesicular 	Moderate	Moderate	Inspiration = expiration	Mixed	Over major bronchi where fewer alveoli are located; posterior, between scapulae (especially on right); anterior, around upper sternum in first and second intercostal spaces
Vesicular 	Low	Soft	Inspiration > expiration	Rustling, like the sound of the wind in the trees	Over peripheral lung fields where air flows through smaller bronchioles and alveoli

From Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.

rustling sound heard in the periphery over small bronchioles) (Table 29-4). Describe these sounds as *normal*, *increased*, *diminished*, or *absent*.

When bronchial breath sounds are heard at the lung edges, they are abnormal. This increased sound occurs when the bronchial sounds are transmitted to an area of increased density, such as in patients with atelectasis, tumor, or pneumonia. When heard in an abnormal location, bronchovesicular breath sounds may indicate normal aging or an abnormality such as pulmonary consolidation and chronic airway disease.

Adventitious sounds are additional breath sounds superimposed on normal sounds, and they indicate pathologic changes in the lung. Table 29-5 describes adventitious sounds: crackle, wheeze, rhonchus, and pleural friction rub. Adventitious sounds vary in pitch, intensity, duration, and the phase of the respiratory cycle in which they occur. Document exactly what you hear on auscultation.

Voice sounds (vocal resonance) through the normally air-filled lung produce a muffled, unclear sound because sound vibrations travel poorly through air. These sounds become louder and more distinct when the sound travels through a

solid tissue or liquid. The presence of pneumonia, atelectasis, pleural effusion, tumor, or abscess causes increased vocal resonance.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

In performing a chest assessment, the nurse observes or determines all of the following findings on a 70-year-old client. Which finding indicates to the nurse that the client may have an increased residual lung volume?

- A. Exhalation is twice as long as inhalation.
- B. Breath sounds are absent at the lung edges.
- C. The intercostal spaces measure 4 centimeters.
- D. Vibrations can be felt on the chest wall when the client speaks.

Other Indicators of Respiratory Adequacy

Assess other indicators of respiratory adequacy, because gas exchange affects all body systems. Some indicators (e.g., cyanosis) indicate immediate oxygenation problems. Other changes (e.g., clubbing, weight loss) reflect long-term oxygenation problems.

Skin and mucous membrane changes, such as pallor or cyanosis, may indicate *inadequate oxygenation*. Assess the nail beds and the mucous membranes of the oral cavity. Examine the fingers for clubbing (see Fig. 32-12), which indicates long-term hypoxia.

General appearance includes muscle development and general body build. Long-term respiratory problems lead to weight loss and a loss of general muscle mass (McCance et

al., 2010). Arms and legs may appear thin or poorly muscled. Neck and chest muscles may be hypertrophied, especially in the patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

Endurance decreases whenever breathing is inadequate for gas exchange (McCance et al., 2010). Observe how easily the patient moves and whether he or she is short of breath while resting or becomes short of breath when walking 10 to 20 steps. As the patient speaks, note how often he or she pauses for breath between words.

Psychosocial Assessment

Breathing difficulty from any cause often induces anxiety. The patient may be anxious because of reduced oxygen to the brain or because the sensation of not getting enough air is a frightening experience. The thought of having a serious respiratory problem, such as lung cancer, can also induce anxiety. Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings and fears about manifestations and their possible meaning.

Assess those aspects of the patient's lifestyle that either can affect respiratory function or are affected by it. Some respiratory problems may become worse with stress. Ask about current life stresses and usual coping mechanisms.

Chronic respiratory disease may cause changes in family roles or relationships, social isolation, financial problems, and unemployment or disability. Discuss coping mechanisms to assess the patient's reaction to these stressors and identify strengths. For example, the patient may react to stress with dependence on family members, withdrawal, or failure to adhere to interventions. Assist the patient in determining

TABLE 29-5 CHARACTERISTIC FEATURES OF ADVENTITIOUS BREATH SOUNDS

ADVENTITIOUS SOUND	OCCURRENCE IN THE RESPIRATORY CYCLE	CHARACTER	ASSOCIATION
Discontinuous			
Fine crackles	Either early or late inspiration	Popping, discontinuous sounds caused by air moving into previously deflated airways; sounds like hair being rolled between fingers near the ear “Velcro” sounds late in inspiration usually associated with restrictive disorders	Asbestosis
Fine rales			Atelectasis
High-pitched rales			Interstitial fibrosis Bronchitis Pneumonia Chronic pulmonary diseases
Coarse crackles	More common on expiration but may be present early in inspiration	Lower-pitched, coarse, discontinuous rattling sounds caused by fluid or secretions in large airways; likely to change with coughing or suctioning	Bronchitis
Low-pitched crackles			Pneumonia Tumors Pulmonary edema
Continuous			
Wheeze	Audible during either inspiration, expiration, or both	Squeaky, musical, continuous sounds associated with air rushing through narrowed airways; may be heard without a stethoscope Arise from the small airways Usually do not clear with coughing	Inflammation Bronchospasm Edema Secretions Pulmonary vessel engorgement (as in cardiac “asthma”)
Rhonchus (rhonchi)	Audible during both inspiration and expiration but commonly more prominent on expiration	Lower-pitched, coarse, continuous snoring sounds Arise from the large airways	Thick, tenacious secretions Sputum production Obstruction by foreign body Tumors
Pleural Friction Rub	Heard during both inspiration and expiration, generally at the end of inspiration and the beginning of expiration	Loud, rough, grating, scratching sounds caused by the inflamed surfaces of the pleura rubbing together; often associated with pain on deep inspirations Heard in lateral lung fields	Pleurisy Tuberculosis Pulmonary infarction Pneumonia Lung cancer

available support systems to help cope with changes resulting from breathing problems.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 74-year-old woman who is 5 days postoperative from a right total hip arthroplasty. Her past medical history includes an 80-pack-year smoking history, COPD, and atrial fibrillation. She reports that she is short of breath. Your physical examination reveals diminished breath sounds and dullness on percussion over her right lower lobe. Her oxygen saturation (SpO_2) is 87% on 2 liters of oxygen per nasal cannula.

1. What are some possible new-onset health problems associated with these findings?
2. Who should you contact and why?
3. What age-related changes are important to consider?
4. What additional referrals might be appropriate for this patient?

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

Several laboratory tests (Chart 29-3) are useful in assessing respiratory problems. A red blood cell (RBC) count provides data about the transport of oxygen. Hemoglobin, found in RBCs, transports oxygen to the tissues. A deficiency of hemoglobin could cause hypoxemia.

Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis assesses *oxygenation* (partial pressure of arterial oxygen [PaO_2]), *alveolar ventilation* (partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [PaCO_2]), and *acid-base balance*. Blood gas studies provide information for monitoring treatment results, adjusting oxygen therapy, and evaluating the patient's responses (Pruitt, 2010). See Chapter 14 for more details on blood gas analysis.

Sputum specimens can help identify organisms or abnormal cells, such as in cancer or an allergy. Sputum culture and sensitivity analyses identify bacterial infection and determine which specific antibiotics will be most effective. Sputum cytologic examination can identify cancer cells. Noncancerous conditions, such as allergy or autoimmunity, may also be identified by cytologic testing. Eosinophils and Curschmann's spirals (a mucus form) are often found by cytologic study in patients with allergic asthma.

Imaging Assessment

Chest x-rays with digital images are used for patients with pulmonary problems to evaluate the status of the chest and to provide a baseline for comparison with future changes. Standard chest x-rays are performed from **posteroanterior** (PA; back to front) and left lateral (LL) positions.

Chest x-rays are used to assess pathologic changes in the lung, such as with pneumonia, atelectasis, pneumothorax, and tumor. The x-rays also can detect pleural fluid and the position and placement of an endotracheal tube or other invasive catheters. A computer enhances the image to give the greatest amount of detail. The image can be adjusted to emphasize a specific area. These images have limitations, however, and may appear normal, even when severe chronic bronchitis, asthma, or emphysema is present.

Sinus and facial x-rays are used to assess fluid levels in the sinus cavities to assist in the diagnosis of acute or chronic sinusitis.

Computed tomography (CT) is useful when an x-ray reveals a suspicious lesion or when a clot is suspected, because pulmonary soft tissue densities, tumors, and blood clots can be seen. Chest CT is usually performed with consecutive 5- to 10-mm cross-sectional views of the entire chest. Then, using higher resolution, 1-mm scans are taken of suspicious areas. Chest CTs, especially "spiral CT" scans, in which the patient table moves continuously as images are acquired, can now identify pulmonary embolisms.

Usually CT scans require a contrast agent injected IV. The contrast enhances the visibility of structures such as tumors, blood vessels, and chambers of the heart. These scans assist in making a diagnosis. Your role in this diagnostic test is to provide information to the patient and to determine whether the patient has any sensitivity to the contrast material. Ask the patient whether he or she has a known allergy to iodine or shellfish.

Other Noninvasive Diagnostic Assessment

Pulse Oximetry. Pulse oximetry identifies hemoglobin saturation. Usually hemoglobin is almost 100% saturated with oxygen. The pulse oximeter uses a wave of infrared light and a sensor placed on the patient's finger, toe, nose, earlobe, or forehead (Fig. 29-12). Ideal normal pulse oximetry values are 95% to 100%. Normal values are a little lower in older patients and in patients with dark skin. To avoid confusion with the PaO_2 values from arterial blood gases, pulse oximetry readings are recorded as the SpO_2 (peripheral arterial oxygen saturation) or Sao_2 .

Pulse oximetry can detect desaturation before manifestations (e.g., dusky skin, pale mucosa, pale or blue nail beds) occur (DeMeulenaere, 2007). Causes for false low readings include patient movement, hypothermia, decreased peripheral blood flow, ambient light (sunlight, infrared lamps), decreased hemoglobin, edema, and fingernail polish. When patients have any degree of impaired peripheral blood flow, the most accurate place to test oxygen saturation is on the forehead ("Monitoring Your," 2008; Valdez-Lowe et al., 2009). Covering the sensor with a fingertip cut from a glove or changing its position may help accuracy if too much ambient light is present.

Results lower than 91% (and certainly below 86%) are an emergency and require immediate assessment and treatment. When the SpO_2 is below 85%, body tissues have a difficult time becoming oxygenated. An SpO_2 below 70% is usually life threatening, but in some cases, values below 80% may be life threatening. Pulse oximetry is less accurate at lower values (DeMeulenaere, 2007).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client's oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry on the finger is 84%. What is the nurse's best first action?

- A. Recheck the value on the forehead.
- B. Assess the client's cognitive function.
- C. Notify the Rapid Response Team immediately.
- D. Apply supplemental oxygen by mask or nasal cannula.

Capnometry and Capnography. Capnometry and capnography are methods that measure the amount of carbon dioxide present in exhaled air, which is an indirect

CHART 29-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Respiratory Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Blood Studies		
Complete Blood Count		
Red blood cells	Females: 4.2-5.4 million/mm ³ Males: 4.7-6.1 million/mm ³	<i>Elevated levels</i> (polycythemia) may be due to the excessive production of erythropoietin, which occurs in response to a hypoxic stimulus, as in COPD, and from living at a high altitude. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible anemia, hemorrhage, or hemolysis.
Hemoglobin, total	Females: 12-16 g/dL, or 7.4-9.9 mmol/L Males: 14-18 g/dL, or 8.7-11.2 mmol/L	Same as for red blood cells.
Hematocrit	Females: 37%-47%, or 0.37-0.47 SI units Males: 42%-52%, or 0.42-0.52 SI units	Same as for red blood cells.
White blood cell count (leukocyte count, WBC count)	Total: 5,000-10,000/mm ³	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible acute infections or inflammations, pneumonia, meningitis, tonsillitis, or emphysema. <i>Decreased levels</i> may indicate an overwhelming infection, an autoimmune disorder, or immunosuppressant therapy.
Differential White Blood Cell (Leukocyte) Count		
Neutrophils	2500-8000/mm ³ , or 55%-70% of total	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible acute bacterial infection (pneumonia), COPD, or inflammatory conditions (smoking). <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible viral disease (influenza).
Eosinophils	50-500/mm ³ , or 1%-4% of total	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible COPD, asthma, or allergies. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate pyogenic infections.
Basophils	25-100/mm ³ , or 0.5%-1% of total	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible inflammation; seen in chronic sinusitis, hypersensitivity reactions. <i>Decreased levels</i> may be seen in an acute infection.
Lymphocytes	1000-4000/mm ³ , or 20%-40% of total	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible viral infection, pertussis, and infectious mononucleosis. <i>Decreased levels</i> may be seen during corticosteroid therapy.
Monocytes	100-700/mm ³ , or 2%-8% of total	<i>Elevations</i> : see Lymphocytes; also may indicate active tuberculosis. <i>Decreased levels</i> : see Lymphocytes.
Arterial Blood Gases		
PaO ₂	80-100 mm Hg Older adults: values may be lower	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible excessive oxygen administration. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible COPD, asthma, chronic bronchitis, cancer of the bronchi and lungs, cystic fibrosis, respiratory distress syndrome, anemias, atelectasis, or any other cause of hypoxia.
Paco ₂	35-45 mm Hg	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible COPD, asthma, pneumonia, anesthesia effects, or use of opioids (respiratory acidosis). <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate hyperventilation/respiratory alkalosis.
pH	Up to 60 yr: 7.35-7.45 60-90 yr: 7.31-7.42 >90 yr: 7.26-7.43	<i>Elevations</i> indicate metabolic or respiratory alkalosis. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate metabolic or respiratory acidosis.
HCO ₃ ⁻	21-28 mEq/L	<i>Elevations</i> indicate possible respiratory acidosis as compensation for a primary metabolic alkalosis. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible respiratory alkalosis as compensation for a primary metabolic acidosis.
SpO ₂	95%-100% Older adults: values may be slightly lower	<i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible impaired ability of hemoglobin to release oxygen to tissues.

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; HCO₃⁻, bicarbonate ion; Paco₂, partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; PaO₂, partial pressure of arterial oxygen; SpO₂, peripheral oxygen saturation.

measurement of arterial carbon dioxide levels. These noninvasive tests measure end-tidal carbon dioxide levels (ETCO₂) in both intubated patients and those breathing spontaneously. With capnometry, the exhaled air sample is tested with a sensor that changes the CO₂ level into a color or number for analysis. With capnography, the CO₂ level is graphed as a specific waveform along with a number. These methods provide information about CO₂ production, pulmonary perfusion, alveolar ventilation, respiratory patterns, ventilator effectiveness, and possible rebreathing of exhaled air.

The normal pressure of end-tidal carbon dioxide (PETCO₂) ranges between 20 and 40 mm Hg, just slightly lower than the normal range of arterial PCO₂. Changes in PETCO₂ reflect changes in breathing effectiveness and may occur before hypoxia can be detected using pulse oximetry. Thus the use of both pulse oximetry and PETCO₂ for critically ill patients and those with respiratory problems can provide information to direct early intervention.

Factors or conditions that increase PETCO₂ above normal levels are those that reflect *inadequate oxygenation*, such as

TABLE 29-6 CHARACTERISTICS AND PURPOSES OF PULMONARY FUNCTION TESTS

TEST	PURPOSE
<i>FVC (forced vital capacity)</i> records the maximum amount of air that can be exhaled as quickly as possible after maximum inspiration.	<i>FVC</i> gives an indication of respiratory muscle strength and ventilatory reserve. <i>FVC</i> is often reduced in obstructive disease (because of air trapping) and in restrictive disease.
<i>FEV₁ (forced expiratory volume in 1 sec)</i> records the maximum amount of air that can be exhaled in the first second of expiration.	<i>FEV₁</i> is effort dependent and declines normally with age. It is reduced in certain obstructive and restrictive disorders.
<i>FEV₁/FVC</i> is the ratio of expiratory volume in 1 sec to <i>FVC</i> .	This ratio provides a much more sensitive indication of obstruction to airflow. This ratio is the hallmark of obstructive pulmonary disease. It is normal or increased in restrictive disease.
<i>FEF_{25%-75%}</i> records the forced expiratory flow over the 25%-75% volume (middle half) of the <i>FVC</i> .	This measure provides a more sensitive index of obstruction in the smaller airways.
<i>FRC (functional residual capacity)</i> is the amount of air remaining in the lungs after normal expiration. <i>FRC</i> test requires use of the helium dilution, nitrogen washout, or body plethysmography technique.	Increased <i>FRC</i> indicates hyperinflation or air trapping, which may result from obstructive pulmonary disease. <i>FRC</i> is normal or decreased in restrictive pulmonary diseases.
<i>TLC (total lung capacity)</i> is the amount of air in the lungs at the end of maximum inhalation.	Increased <i>TLC</i> indicates air trapping associated with obstructive pulmonary disease. Decreased <i>TLC</i> indicates restrictive disease.
<i>RV (residual volume)</i> is the amount of air remaining in the lungs at the end of a full, forced exhalation.	<i>RV</i> is increased in obstructive pulmonary disease such as emphysema.
<i>DLCO (diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide)</i> reflects the surface area of the alveolocapillary membrane. The patient inhales a small amount of CO, holds for 10 sec, and then exhales. The amount inhaled is compared with the amount exhaled.	<i>DLCO</i> is reduced whenever the alveolocapillary membrane is diminished, such as occurs in emphysema, pulmonary hypertension, and pulmonary fibrosis. It is increased with exercise and in conditions such as polycythemia and congestive heart disease.



FIG. 29-12 A typical pulse oximeter.

fever, hypoventilation, partial airway obstruction, and rebreathing exhaled air. Factors or conditions that decrease PETCO_2 below normal levels are those that reflect poor ventilation, such as hypothermia, poor cardiac output, hypotension, hypovolemia, pulmonary embolism, apnea, total airway obstruction, and tracheal extubation.

Pulmonary Function Tests. Pulmonary function tests (PFTs) evaluate lung function and breathing problems. These tests include lung volumes and capacities, flow rates, diffusion capacity, gas exchange, airway resistance, and distribution of ventilation (Booker, 2009). The results are interpreted by comparing the patient's data with expected findings for age, gender, race, height, weight, and smoking status.

The PFTs are useful in screening patients for lung disease even before the onset of manifestations. Serial testing (repeated tests over time) provides objective data that may be used as a guide to treatment (e.g., changes in lung function

can support a decision to continue, change, or discontinue a specific therapy). PFTs done before surgery may identify the patient at risk for lung complications after surgery. One of the most common reasons for performing such tests is to determine the cause of dyspnea. When performed while the patient exercises, PFTs help determine whether dyspnea is caused by lung or cardiac dysfunction or by muscle weakness. These tests also help determine the effect of occupation or disability on lung function.

Patient Preparation. Explain the purpose of the tests for planning care. Advise the patient not to smoke for 6 to 8 hours before testing. According to institutional policy and procedure, bronchodilator drugs may be withheld for 4 to 6 hours before the test. The patient with breathing problems often fears further breathlessness and is anxious before these “breathing” tests. Help reduce anxiety by describing what will happen during and after the testing.

Procedure. PFTs can be performed at the bedside or in the respiratory laboratory by a respiratory therapist or respiratory technician. The patient is asked to breathe through the mouth only. A nose clip may be used to prevent air from escaping. The patient performs different breathing maneuvers while measurements are obtained. Table 29-6 describes the most commonly used PFTs and their purpose.

Follow-up Care. Because many breathing maneuvers are performed during PFTs, observe the patient for increased dyspnea or bronchospasm after these studies. Document any drugs given during testing.

Exercise Testing. Exercise increases metabolism and increases gas transport because energy is used. Exercise testing assesses the patient's ability to work and perform ADLs, differentiates reasons for exercise limitation, evaluates disease influence on exercise capacity, and determines whether supplemental oxygen is needed during exercise. These tests are performed on a treadmill or bicycle or by a self-paced 12-minute walking test. The normal patient's exercise is limited by circulatory factors, whereas the pulmonary patient

is limited by breathing capacity, gas exchange compromise, or both. Explain exercise testing, and assure the patient that he or she will be closely monitored by trained professionals throughout the test.

Skin Tests. Skin tests are used with other diagnostic data to identify various infectious diseases (e.g., tuberculosis), viral diseases (e.g., mononucleosis, mumps), and fungal diseases (e.g., coccidioidomycosis, histoplasmosis). Allergies and the status of the immune system also can be checked through skin testing. Exposure to the allergen or organism used in testing produces a specific reaction (delayed hypersensitivity reaction) of the patient's immune system. (See [Chapters 19 and 22](#) for further discussion of these tests.)

Other Invasive Diagnostic Assessment

Endoscopic Examinations. Endoscopic studies to assess breathing problems include bronchoscopy, laryngoscopy, and mediastinoscopy. With *laryngoscopy*, a tube for visualization is inserted into the larynx to assess the function of the vocal cords, remove foreign bodies caught in the larynx, or obtain tissue samples for biopsy or culture. A *mediastinoscopy* is the insertion of a flexible tube through the chest wall just above the sternum into the area of the upper chest between the lungs. This procedure is performed in the operating room (OR) with the patient under general anesthesia to examine local structures for the presence of tumors and to obtain tissue samples for biopsy or culture. Most complications are related to the anesthetic agents and bleeding. The most common procedure is the bronchoscopy, described next.

A **bronchoscopy** is the insertion of a tube in the airways, usually as far as the secondary bronchi, for the purpose of viewing airway structures and obtaining tissue samples for biopsy or culture. It is used to diagnose and manage pulmonary diseases. Flexible bronchoscopy can be performed in the intensive care unit (ICU) with low-dose sedation. Rigid bronchoscopy usually requires general anesthesia and the use of the OR. A flexible bronchoscopy can be used to evaluate the airway, assist with placing or changing an endotracheal tube, collecting specimens, and diagnosing infections. Bronchoscopy is often used for lung cancer staging and removal of secretions that are not cleared with normal suctioning procedures. Stents can be placed during bronchoscopy procedures to open up strictures in the trachea and bronchus.

Patient Preparation. Explain the procedure to the patient, and verify that consent for the procedure was obtained. Expected outcomes, risks, and benefits of the procedure must be discussed with the patient or the legal guardian. Document patient allergies. Laboratory tests that may be required include a complete blood count (CBC), platelet count, prothrombin time, electrolytes, and chest x-ray. The patient should be NPO for 4 to 8 hours before the procedure to reduce the risk for aspiration. Premedication with one of the benzodiazepines may be used to provide both sedation and amnesia. Opioids may also be used.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Verify the patient's identity with two types of identifiers (name, birth date, medical record number, or social security number) before a bronchoscopy. Ask the patient to tell you his or her name.

Benzocaine spray as a topical anesthetic to numb the oropharynx is used cautiously, if at all. This agent may induce a condition called **methemoglobinemia**, which is the conversion of normal hemoglobin to methemoglobin ("Benzocaine Spray," 2009). Methemoglobin is an altered iron state that does not carry oxygen, resulting in tissue hypoxia. Other topical anesthetic sprays, such as lidocaine, appear less likely to induce this problem.

The normal blood level of methemoglobin is less than 1%. When this level increases, tissue oxygenation is reduced. Cyanosis occurs with methemoglobin levels between 10% and 20%. Anxiety, tachycardia, and lethargy develop at levels between 20% and 50%. Death can occur when levels reach 50% to 70%. Methemoglobinemia should be suspected if a patient becomes cyanotic after receiving a topical anesthetic, if he or she does not respond to supplemental oxygen, and if blood is a characteristic chocolate-brown in color ([Wesley, 2006](#)). It can be reversed with oxygen and IV injection of 1% methylene blue (1 to 2 mg/kg).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Notify the Rapid Response Team if the patient has any symptoms of methemoglobinemia (cyanosis unresponsive to oxygen therapy, chocolate-brown-colored blood) after the use of benzocaine topical anesthetic.

Procedure. The procedure can be done in a bronchoscopy suite or at the bedside, especially in an ICU. The bronchoscope is inserted either through the naris or the oropharynx. Maintain IV access, and continuously monitor the patient's pulse, blood pressure, respiratory rate, and oxygen saturation. Apply supplemental oxygen.

Follow-up Care. Monitor the patient until the effects of the sedation have resolved and a gag reflex has returned. Continue to monitor the patient's vital signs, including oxygen saturation, and assess breath sounds every 15 minutes for the first 2 hours. Also assess for potential complications. These may include bleeding, infection, or hypoxemia (possibly related to a pneumothorax or methemoglobinemia).

Thoracentesis. **Thoracentesis** is the aspiration of pleural fluid or air from the pleural space. It can be used for diagnosis or treatment. Microscopic examination of the pleural fluid helps in making a diagnosis. Pleural fluid may be drained to relieve blood vessel or lung compression and the respiratory distress caused by cancer, empyema, pleurisy, or tuberculosis. Drugs can also be instilled into the pleural space during thoracentesis.

Patient Preparation. Patient preparation is essential before thoracentesis to ensure cooperation during the procedure and to prevent complications. Tell the patient to expect a stinging sensation from the local anesthetic agent and a feeling of pressure when the needle is pushed through the tissues of the posterior chest. Stress the importance of not moving during the procedure (avoiding coughing, deep breathing, or sudden movement) to avoid puncture of the pleura or lung.

[Fig. 29-13](#) shows the best position for thoracentesis. This position widens the spaces between the ribs and permits easy access to the pleural fluid. Properly position and physically support the patient during the procedure. Use pillows to make the patient comfortable and to provide physical



FIG. 29-13 Position for thoracentesis.

support. When the sitting position is used for the procedure, stand in front of the patient to prevent the table from moving and the patient from falling.

Before the procedure, ask the patient about any allergy to local anesthetic agents. Verify that the patient has signed an informed consent. The entire chest or back is exposed, and the aspiration site is clipped if necessary. The actual site depends on the volume and location of the effusion (determined by x-rays, sonography, and percussion).

Procedure. Thoracentesis is often performed at the bedside by a nurse practitioner or a physician, although computed tomography or ultrasound may be used to guide it. The person performing the procedure and any assistants wear goggles and masks to prevent accidental eye or oral splash exposure to the pleural fluid. After the skin is cleansed with an antiseptic agent, a local anesthetic is injected into the selected site. Keep the patient informed of the procedure while observing for shock, pain, nausea, pallor, diaphoresis, cyanosis, tachypnea, and dyspnea.

The short 18- to 25-gauge thoracentesis needle (with an attached syringe) is advanced into the pleural space. Gentle suction is applied as the fluid in the pleural space is slowly aspirated. A vacuum collection bottle is sometimes needed to remove larger volumes of fluid. To prevent re-expansion pulmonary edema, usually no more than 1000 mL of fluid is removed at one time. If a pleural biopsy is to be performed, a second, larger needle with a cutting edge and collection chamber is used. After the needle is withdrawn, pressure is applied to the puncture site and a small sterile dressing is applied. In some cases, pigtail drain catheters may be left in place to a waterseal, rather than doing a thoracentesis aspiration on a recurring basis.

Follow-up Care. After thoracentesis, a chest x-ray is performed to rule out possible pneumothorax and **mediastinal shift** (shift of central thoracic structures toward one side). Monitor vital signs, and auscultate breath sounds for absent or reduced sounds on the affected side. Check the puncture site and dressing for leakage or bleeding. Also assess for complications, such as reaccumulation of fluid in the pleural space, subcutaneous emphysema, infection, and tension pneumothorax. Urge the patient to breathe deeply to promote expansion of the lung. Document the procedure, including the patient's response; the volume and character of the fluid removed; any specimens sent to the laboratory; the location

of the puncture site; and respiratory assessment findings before, during, and after the procedure (Rushing, 2006).

Teach the patient about the manifestations of a **pneumo-thorax** (partial or complete collapse of the lung), which can occur within the first 24 hours after a thoracentesis. Manifestations include:

- Pain on the affected side that is worse at the end of inhalation and the end of exhalation
- Rapid heart rate
- Rapid, shallow respirations
- A feeling of air hunger
- Prominence of the affected side that does not move in and out with respiratory effort
- Trachea slanted more to the unaffected side instead of being in the center of the neck
- New onset of “nagging” cough
- Cyanosis

Instruct the patient to come to the emergency department immediately if these manifestations occur.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The client, in a panicky voice, tells the nurse during a thoracentesis that he feels as if he is being pushed off the table. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. Stop the procedure to administer an anxiety-reducing drug.
- B. Remind the client not to talk or breathe during the procedure.
- C. Reassure the client this is a normal sensation as the needle is inserted into the chest cavity.
- D. Relay this information to the health care provider performing the procedure so that the needle can be repositioned.

Lung Biopsy. A lung biopsy is performed to obtain tissue for histologic analysis, culture, or cytologic examination. The tissue samples are used to make a definite diagnosis of cancer, infection, inflammation, or lung disease. There are several types of lung biopsies. The site and extent of the lesion determine which one is used. Transbronchial biopsy (TBB) and transbronchial needle aspiration (TBNA) are performed during bronchoscopy. Transthoracic needle aspiration is performed through the skin (percutaneous) for areas that cannot be reached by bronchoscopy. An open lung biopsy is performed in the operating room.

Patient Preparation. The patient may worry about the outcome of the biopsy and may associate the term *biopsy* with *cancer*. Explain what to expect before and after the procedure, and explore the patient's feelings. An analgesic or sedative may be prescribed before the procedure. Inform the patient undergoing percutaneous biopsy that discomfort is reduced with a local anesthetic agent but that pressure may be felt during needle insertion and tissue aspiration. Open lung biopsy is performed in the operating room with the patient under general anesthesia, and the usual preparations before surgery apply (see Chapter 16).

Procedure. Percutaneous lung biopsy is usually performed in the radiology department after an informed consent has been obtained. Fluoroscopy or CT is often used to visualize the area undergoing biopsy and to guide the procedure. The patient is usually placed in the lying position depending on the location of the lesion. The skin is cleansed with an antiseptic agent, and a local anesthetic is given. Under sterile conditions, a spinal-type 18- to 22-gauge needle is

inserted through the skin into the desired area (e.g., tissue, nodule, lymph node) and tissue needed for microscopic examination is obtained. Apply a dressing after the procedure. A CT or chest x-ray must follow the biopsy to confirm there is no pneumothorax.

An open lung biopsy is performed in the operating room. The patient undergoes a thoracotomy in which lung tissue is exposed. At least two tissue specimens are taken (usually from an upper lobe and a lower lobe site). A chest tube is placed to remove air and fluid so the lung can re-inflate, and then the chest is closed.

Follow-up Care. Monitor the patient's vital signs and breath sounds at least every 4 hours for 24 hours, and assess for signs of respiratory distress (e.g., dyspnea, pallor, diaphoresis, tachypnea). Pneumothorax is a serious complication of needle biopsy and open lung biopsy. Report reduced or absent breath sounds immediately. Monitor for hemoptysis (which may be scant and transient) or, in rare cases, for frank bleeding from vascular or lung trauma.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration; Quality Improvement

Your patient is a 63-year-old man admitted with pancreatitis and a left lower leg infection. A central venous catheter (CVC) was just placed in the right subclavian vein for fluid administration, prolonged antibiotic use, and possible parenteral nutrition. You are called to the patient's room by his wife, who has noticed her husband has become progressively short of breath. He tells you, "I can't breathe." He is tachypneic and tachycardic.

1. What problems could have caused this change in breathing status? Explain your response.
2. Is this an emergency situation? Why or why not?
3. What should you do first and why?
4. What additional diagnostic assessment tests do you anticipate and why?
5. What should your ongoing management include?
6. How could this problem have been prevented or discovered earlier?

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to NOTICE in a patient with adequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion related to respiratory function?

Vital signs

- Respiratory rate and heart rate within normal range
- Oxygen saturation of 95% or higher

Physical assessment

- Able to speak a sentence of 12 words without stopping for breath
- Able to walk and talk without stopping for breath
- Skin color normal (no cyanosis, pallor, or jaundice)
- Oral mucous membrane and nail beds pink with rapid capillary refill
- Fingertips and nails normal-shaped, no clubbing
- Anterior to posterior diameter of chest about two-thirds smaller than lateral diameter
- Space between each rib no larger than the breadth of the patient's finger

- Usually breathes in through the nose and out through the mouth or nose
- Breathing quiet
- Air movement heard (with a stethoscope) in all lobes of both lungs
- Sputum production minimal, clear or white
- Muscle development even with no muscle loss on arms and legs
- Weight proportionate to height; does not appear underweight

Psychological assessment

- Oriented and not confused
- Energy level good, can engage in desired work, recreational, and personal activities

Laboratory assessment

- Red blood cell, hemoglobin, hematocrit, and white blood cell levels within normal limits for age and gender

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all people to use masks and adequate ventilation when exposed to inhalation irritants.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the degree to which breathing problems interfere with the patient's ability to perform ADLs.
- Document any known specific allergies that have respiratory manifestations.
- Ask the patient about recent travel.
- Assess the airway and breathing effectiveness for any patient who has shortness of breath or any change in mental status.
- Assess the patient's respiratory status every 15 minutes for at least the first 2 hours after undergoing an endoscopic test for respiratory disorders.

CHAPTER

30

Care of Patients Requiring Oxygen Therapy or Tracheostomy

Harry C. Rees



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Pulse Oximeter

Animation: Suctioning

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Act as a patient advocate for patients receiving oxygen or who have tracheostomies.
2. Protect from injury the patient receiving oxygen or who has a tracheostomy.
3. Use medical asepsis when providing tracheostomy care.
4. Verify safe use of appropriate oxygen delivery systems and tracheostomy equipment.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach the patient requiring oxygen therapy to not smoke when using oxygen.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Support the patient and family in coping with changes in breathing status and the need for a tracheostomy.
7. Develop and evaluate an appropriate nonverbal form of communication for a patient with a tracheostomy.

Physiological Integrity

8. Perform a focused respiratory assessment and re-assessment to determine adequacy of oxygenation and tissue perfusion.
9. Administer oxygen therapy by nasal cannula, mask, endotracheal tube, or tracheal tube, and evaluate the patient's response.
10. Apply knowledge of anatomy to prevent aspiration in a patient with a tracheal tube.
11. Teach the patient and family about home management of oxygen therapy or tracheostomy.
12. Assess for complications of oxygen therapy for those patients whose respiratory efforts are controlled by the hypoxic drive.
13. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the presence of hypoxemia or hypercarbia.

Oxygen is essential for the life and function of all cells and tissues. Three systems—the respiratory system, the cardiovascular system, and the hematologic system—work together to ensure sufficient tissue perfusion with oxygen for cell survival and proper function (see Fig. 29-1). *Oxygenation and tissue perfusion* needs can be inadequate as a result of many problems with the lungs. When a respiratory problem interferes

with adequate oxygenation, both the cardiac system and the hematologic system adjust (compensate) and work harder to restore balance and maintain oxygenation and tissue perfusion (Fig. 30-1). Oxygen therapy and the use of a tracheostomy are interventions that can help improve *oxygenation and tissue perfusion* and, at the same time, reduce the burden on the cardiovascular and hematologic systems.

OXYGEN THERAPY

Overview

Oxygen (O_2) is a gas used as a drug for relief of **hypoxemia** (low levels of oxygen in the blood) and **hypoxia** (decreased tissue oxygenation). The oxygen content of atmospheric air is about 21%. Oxygen therapy is prescribed when the oxygen needs of the patient cannot be met by atmospheric or “room air” alone. It is used for both acute and chronic breathing problems that cause decreased blood and tissue oxygen levels as indicated by decreased partial pressure of arterial oxygen (Pao_2) levels or by decreased arterial oxygen saturation (Sao_2). Non-respiratory conditions, such as heart failure, sepsis, fever, some poisons, and decreased hemoglobin levels or poor hemoglobin quality, can affect oxygenation. These conditions increase oxygen demand, decrease oxygen-carrying capability of the blood, or decrease cardiac output. Their presence is an indication for oxygen therapy.

The purpose of oxygen therapy is to use the lowest *fraction of inspired oxygen* (Fio_2) to have an acceptable blood oxygen level without causing harmful side effects. *Although oxygen improves the Pao_2 level, it does not cure the problem or stop the disease process.* Most patients with some degree of hypoxia require an oxygen flow of 2 to 4 L/min via nasal cannula or up to 40% via Venturi mask. A patient who is hypoxemic and has chronic **hypercarbia** (increased partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [$Paco_2$] levels) needs lower levels of oxygen delivery, usually 1 to 2 L/min via nasal cannula, to prevent decreased respiratory effort. (A low Pao_2 level is this patient’s primary drive for breathing.)

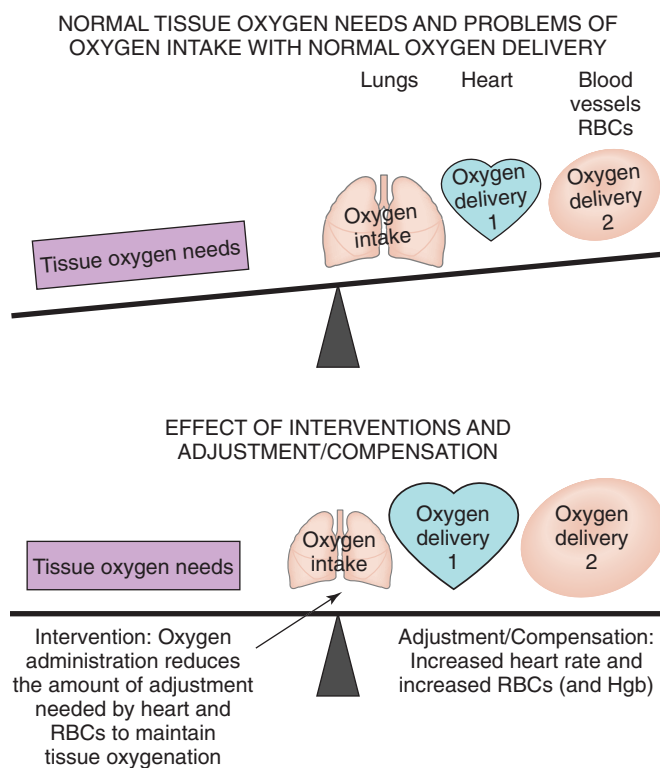


FIG. 30-1 Restoration of adequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion by oxygen delivery adjustments and oxygen therapy when respiratory problems interfere with meeting tissue oxygen needs. *Hgb*, Hemoglobin, *RBCs*, red blood cells.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis is the best measure for determining the need for oxygen therapy and for evaluating its effects. Oxygen need can also be determined by noninvasive monitoring, such as pulse oximetry.

INTERVENTIONS

Before starting oxygen therapy and while caring for a patient receiving oxygen therapy, you must be knowledgeable about oxygen hazards and complications. Know the rationale and the expected outcome related to oxygen therapy for each patient receiving oxygen. **Chart 30-1** lists best practices for patients using oxygen therapy.

Hazards and Complications of Oxygen Therapy

Combustion. Oxygen itself does not burn, but it supports and enhances combustion. Therefore a fire burns better in the presence of oxygen. For example, when the oxygen content of the air around a lighted cigarette is nearly 50%, the entire cigarette flames up and can catch items nearby on fire (Edelman et al., 2008). Open fires, even small ones like candles or cigarettes, should not be in the same room during oxygen therapy. Take special precautions during oxygen delivery, including posting a sign on the door of the patient’s room. Smoking is prohibited in the patient’s room, including at home, when oxygen is in use.

CHART 30-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Oxygen Therapy

- Check the physician’s prescription with the type of delivery system and liter flow or percentage of oxygen actually in use.
- Obtain a prescription for humidification if oxygen is being delivered at 4 L/min or more.
- Be sure the oxygen and humidification equipment are functioning properly.
- Check the skin around the patient’s ears, back of the neck, and face every 4 to 8 hours for pressure points and signs of irritation.
- Ensure that mouth care is provided every 8 hours and as needed; assess nasal and oral mucous membranes for cracks or other signs of dryness.
- Pad the elastic band and change its position frequently to prevent skin breakdown.
- Pad tubing in areas that put pressure on the skin.
- Cleanse the cannula or mask by rinsing with clear, warm water every 4 to 8 hours or as needed.
- Cleanse skin under the tubing, straps, and mask every 4 to 8 hours or as needed.
- Lubricate the patient’s nostrils, face, and lips with nonpetroleum cream to relieve the drying effects of oxygen.
- Position the tubing so it does not pull on the patient’s face, nose, or artificial airway.
- Ensure that there is no smoking and that no candles or matches are lit in the immediate area.
- Assess and document the patient’s response to oxygen therapy.
- Ensure that the patient has an adequate oxygen source during any periods of transport.
- Provide the patient with ongoing teaching and reassurance to enhance his or her adherence with oxygen therapy.

All electrical equipment must be grounded to prevent fires from electrical arcing sparks. Grounded plugs may have three prongs or only two prongs with one prong being wider than the other. Grounded outlets in the hospital setting usually have a green or red dot on the plate. Frayed cords must be repaired because they can cause a spark that can ignite a flame. Flammable solutions (containing high concentrations of alcohol or oil) are not used in rooms in which oxygen is in use. (This does not include alcohol-based hand rubs.)

Oxygen-Induced Hypoventilation. Assess for oxygen-induced hypoventilation in the patient whose main respiratory drive is hypoxia (*hypoxic drive*), such as in the patient with chronic lung disease who also has carbon dioxide retention (**hypercarbia**). The arterial carbon dioxide (Paco_2) level for these patients gradually rises over time. The central chemoreceptors in the brain (medulla) are normally sensitive to increased Paco_2 levels. When these receptors are active, they stimulate breathing and increase respiratory rate. When the Paco_2 increases gradually to above 60 to 65 mm Hg, this normal mechanism to trigger breathing no longer functions. The central chemoreceptors lose sensitivity to increased levels of Paco_2 and do not respond by increasing the rate and depth of respiration. This loss of sensitivity to high levels of Paco_2 is called **CO_2 narcosis**. For these patients, the stimulus to breathe is a *decreased arterial oxygen level*. The low oxygen levels are sensed by peripheral chemoreceptors in the carotid sinus areas and aortic arch. When arterial oxygen (Pao_2) levels drop (hypoxemia), these receptors signal the brain to increase the respiratory rate and depth; this is known as the *hypoxic drive* to breathe.

The hypoxic drive occurs only in the presence of severely elevated Paco_2 levels that have occurred slowly, over years (i.e., in the patient who has hypoxemia and hypercarbia). When the patient with low Pao_2 levels and high Paco_2 levels receives oxygen therapy, the Pao_2 level increases, removing the trigger for breathing, and the patient has respiratory depression. (The patient being ventilated mechanically is not at risk for this complication.)

Oxygen therapy is prescribed at the lowest liter flow (e.g., 1, 2, or 3 L/min) needed to manage hypoxemia. A system that delivers more precise oxygen levels (e.g., a Venturi mask) is preferred. However, a patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease may not tolerate a facemask.

Closely monitor the respiratory rate and depth while the patient is receiving oxygen. Monitoring is especially important when it is the first time he or she receives oxygen or when the Paco_2 levels are not known. Manifestations of hypoventilation are seen during the first 30 minutes of oxygen therapy. The patient's color improves (from ashen or gray to pink) because of an increase in the Pao_2 level before the apnea or respiratory arrest occurs from slower and shallow respirations. Therefore carefully monitor the level of consciousness, respiratory pattern and rate, and pulse oximetry for those at risk for oxygen-induced hypoventilation, apnea, and respiratory arrest. *Although oxygen-induced hypoventilation is a serious concern, untreated or inadequately treated hypoxemia is a greater threat to life.*

Oxygen Toxicity. Oxygen toxicity is related to the concentration of oxygen delivered, duration of oxygen therapy, and degree of lung disease present. In general, an oxygen level greater than 50% given continuously for more than 24 to 48 hours may damage the lungs.

The causes and manifestations of lung injury from oxygen toxicity are the same as those for acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) (see [Chapter 34](#)). Initial symptoms include dyspnea, nonproductive cough, chest pain beneath the sternum, and GI upset. As exposure to high levels of oxygen continues, the symptoms become more severe with decreased vital capacity, decreased compliance, crackles, and hypoxemia. Prolonged exposure to high oxygen levels damages lung tissues. Atelectasis, pulmonary edema, hemorrhage, and hyaline membrane formation result. Surviving this critical condition depends on correcting the underlying disease process and decreasing the oxygen amount delivered.

The toxic effects of oxygen are difficult to treat, making prevention a priority. The lowest level of oxygen needed to maintain oxygenation and prevent oxygen toxicity is prescribed. Closely monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs) during oxygen therapy, and notify the health care provider of Pao_2 levels greater than 90 mm Hg. Also monitor the prescribed oxygen level and length of therapy to identify patients at higher risk. High oxygen levels are avoided unless absolutely necessary. The use of continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) with an oxygen mask, bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP), or positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) on the mechanical ventilator (see [Chapter 34](#)) may reduce the amount of oxygen needed. As soon as the patient's condition allows, the prescribed amount of oxygen is decreased.

Absorption Atelectasis. Nitrogen in the air helps maintain patent airways and alveoli. Making up 79% of room air, nitrogen prevents alveolar collapse because it does not cross the alveolar-capillary membranes and remains in the airways and alveoli. When high oxygen levels are delivered, nitrogen is diluted, oxygen diffuses from the alveoli into the circulation, and the alveoli collapse. Collapsed alveoli cause atelectasis (called *absorption atelectasis*), which is detected by auscultation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Monitor the patient receiving high levels of oxygen closely for indications of absorption atelectasis (new onset of crackles and decreased breath sounds) every 1 to 2 hours when oxygen therapy is started and as often as needed thereafter.

Drying of the Mucous Membranes. When the prescribed oxygen flow rate is higher than 4 L/min, humidify the delivery system ([Fig. 30-2](#)). Ensure that oxygen bubbles through the water in the humidifier.

Oxygen can also be humidified via a large-volume jet nebulizer in mist form (aerosol). A heated nebulizer raises the humidity even more and is used for oxygen delivery through an artificial airway. Usually the upper airway passages warm the air during breathing, but these passages are bypassed with an artificial airway, such as an endotracheal tube.

For the patient to receive properly humidified oxygen, the humidifier or nebulizer must have a sufficient amount of sterile water and the flow rate must be adequate. Condensation often forms in the tubing. Remove this condensation as it collects by disconnecting the tubing and emptying the water. Minimize the time the tubing is disconnected because the patient does not receive oxygen during this period. Some humidifiers and nebulizers have a water trap that hangs from

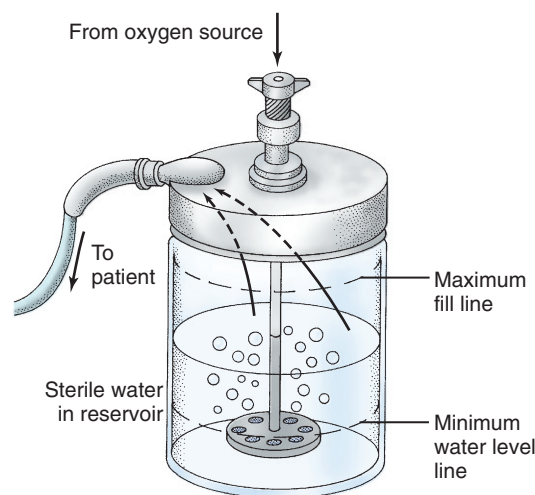


FIG. 30-2 A bubble humidifier bottle used with oxygen therapy.

the tubing so that the condensation can be drained without disconnecting. Check the water level and change the humidifier as needed.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To prevent bacterial contamination of the oxygen delivery system, never drain the fluid from the water trap back into the humidifier or nebulizer.

Infection. The humidifier or nebulizer may be a source of bacteria, especially if it is heated. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is often the organism involved. Oxygen delivery equipment such as cannulas and masks can also harbor organisms. Change equipment as per policy or protocol, which ranges from every 24 hours for humidification systems to every 7 days or whenever necessary for cannulas and masks.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Why can oxygen therapy cause hypoventilation in clients who have hypercarbia?

- A. Low arterial oxygen levels are the neurologic trigger for these clients to breathe.
- B. Excessive carbon dioxide levels reduce the ability of hemoglobin molecules to carry oxygen.
- C. High concentrations of oxygen cause sedation, which reduces the strength of respiratory muscle contractions.
- D. Unlike people who do not have hypercarbia, these clients are no longer sensitive to changing levels of arterial oxygen.

Oxygen Delivery Systems

Oxygen can be delivered by many systems. Regardless of the type of delivery system used, it is important to understand its indications, advantages, and disadvantages. Use the equipment properly, and ensure appropriate equipment

maintenance. Consult a respiratory therapist whenever there is a question or concern about an oxygen delivery system.

The type of delivery system used depends on:

- Oxygen concentration required by the patient
- Oxygen concentration achieved by a delivery system
- Importance of accuracy and control of the oxygen concentration
- Patient comfort
- Expense to the patient
- Importance of humidity
- Patient mobility

Oxygen delivery systems are classified by the rate of oxygen delivery. There are two systems: low-flow systems and high-flow systems. Low-flow systems do not provide enough flow of oxygen to meet the total oxygen need and air volume of the patient. So, part of the tidal volume is supplied by breathing room air. The total level of oxygen inspired depends on the respiratory rate and tidal volume. High-flow systems have a flow rate that meets the entire oxygen need and tidal volume regardless of the patient's breathing pattern. High-flow systems are used for critically ill patients and when delivery of precise levels of oxygen is needed.

If the patient needs a mask but is able to eat, request a prescription for a nasal cannula to be used at mealtimes only. Reapply the mask after the meal is completed. To increase mobility, up to 50 feet of connecting tubing can be used with connecting pieces.

Low-Flow Oxygen Delivery Systems. Low-flow delivery systems include the nasal cannula, simple facemask, partial rebreather mask, and non-rebreather mask (Table 30-1). These systems are inexpensive, easy to use, and fairly comfortable. A disadvantage is that the actual amount of oxygen delivered varies and depends on the patient's breathing pattern. The oxygen is diluted with room air (21% oxygen), which lowers the amount of oxygen actually inspired.

Nasal Cannula. The nasal cannula, or nasal prongs (Fig. 30-3), is used at flow rates of 1 to 6 L/min. Oxygen concentrations of 24% (at 1 L/min) to 44% (at 6 L/min) can be achieved. Flow rates greater than 6 L/min do not increase oxygenation because the **anatomic dead space** (places where air flows but the structures are too thick for gas exchange) is full. In addition, high flow rates increase mucosal irritation.

The nasal cannula is often used for chronic lung disease and for any patient needing long-term oxygen therapy. The patient who retains carbon dioxide is rarely prescribed to receive oxygen at a rate higher than 2 to 3 L/min because of the risk for losing the drive to breathe, thereby increasing the risk for apnea or respiratory arrest. Place the nasal prongs in the nostrils, with the openings facing the patient, following the natural anatomic curve of the nares.

Facemasks. Facemasks for oxygen delivery can deliver a wide range of oxygen flow rates and concentrations.

Simple facemasks are used to deliver oxygen concentrations of 40% to 60% for short-term oxygen therapy or in an emergency (Fig. 30-4). A minimum flow rate of 5 L/min is needed to prevent the rebreathing of exhaled air. Ensure the mask fits well to maintain inspired oxygen levels. Care for the skin under the mask and strap to prevent skin breakdown.

Partial rebreather masks provide oxygen concentrations of 60% to 75% with flow rates of 6 to 11 L/min. It is a mask with a reservoir bag but no flaps (Fig. 30-5). With each breath, the patient rebreathes one third of the exhaled tidal volume,

TABLE 30-1 COMPARISON OF LOW-FLOW OXYGEN DELIVERY SYSTEMS

FiO ₂ DELIVERED	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Nasal Cannula 24%-40% FiO ₂ at 1-6 L/min ≈24% at 1 L/min ≈28% at 2 L/min ≈32% at 3 L/min ≈36% at 4 L/min ≈40% at 5 L/min ≈44% at 6 L/min	Ensure that prongs are in the nares properly. Apply water-soluble jelly to nares PRN. Assess the patency of the nostrils. Assess the patient for changes in respiratory rate and depth.	A poorly fitting nasal cannula leads to hypoxemia and skin breakdown. This substance prevents mucosal irritation related to the drying effect of oxygen; promotes comfort. Congestion or a deviated septum prevents effective delivery of oxygen through the nares. The respiratory pattern affects the amount of oxygen delivered. A different delivery system may be needed.
Simple Facemask 40%-60% FiO ₂ at 5-8 L/min; flow rate must be set at least at 5 L/min to flush mask of carbon dioxide ≈40% at 5 L/min ≈45%-50% at 6 L/min ≈55%-60% at 8 L/min	Be sure mask fits securely over nose and mouth. Assess skin and provide skin care to the area covered by the mask. Monitor the patient closely for risk for aspiration. Provide emotional support to the patient who feels claustrophobic. Suggest to the health care provider to switch the patient from a mask to the nasal cannula during eating.	A poorly fitting mask reduces the FiO ₂ delivered. Pressure and moisture under the mask may cause skin breakdown. The mask limits the patient's ability to clear the mouth, especially if vomiting occurs. Emotional support decreases anxiety, which contributes to a claustrophobic feeling. Use of the cannula prevents hypoxemia during eating.
Partial Rebreather Mask 60%-75% at 6-11 L/min, a liter flow rate high enough to maintain reservoir bag two-thirds full during inspiration and expiration	Make sure that the reservoir does not twist or kink, which results in a deflated bag. Adjust the flow rate to keep the reservoir bag inflated.	Deflation results in decreased oxygen delivered and rebreathing of exhaled air. The flow rate is adjusted to meet the pattern of the patient.
Non-Rebreather Mask 80%-95% FiO ₂ at a liter flow high enough to maintain reservoir bag two-thirds full	Interventions as for partial rebreather mask; this patient requires close monitoring. Make sure that valves and rubber flaps are patent, functional, and not stuck. Remove mucus or saliva. Closely assess the patient on increased FiO ₂ via non-rebreather mask. Intubation is the only way to provide more precise FiO ₂ .	Rationales as for partial rebreather mask. Monitoring ensures proper functioning and prevents harm. Valves should open during expiration and close during inhalation to prevent dramatic decrease in FiO ₂ . Suffocation can occur if the reservoir bag kinks or if the oxygen source disconnects. The patient may require intubation.

FiO₂, Fraction of inspired oxygen.

which is high in oxygen and provides a higher fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO₂). Be sure that the bag remains slightly inflated at the end of inspiration; otherwise, the desired amount of oxygen is not delivered. If needed, call the respiratory therapist for assistance.

Non-rebreather masks provide the highest oxygen level of the low-flow systems and can deliver an FiO₂ greater than 90%, depending on the patient's breathing pattern. This mask is often used with patients whose respiratory status is unstable and who may require intubation.

The non-rebreather mask has a one-way valve between the mask and the reservoir and two flaps over the exhalation ports (Fig. 30-6). The valve allows the patient to draw all needed oxygen from the reservoir bag, and the flaps prevent room air from entering through the exhalation ports (room air would dilute the oxygen concentration). During exhalation, air leaves through these exhalation ports while the one-way valve prevents exhaled air from re-entering the

reservoir bag. Some models include only one flap on the mask, or one of the exhalation flaps may be removed for safety purposes. The flow rate is kept high (10 to 15 L/min) to keep the bag inflated during inhalation. Assess for this safety feature at least hourly.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Ensure that the valve and flaps on a non-rebreather mask are intact and functional during each breath. If the oxygen source should fail or be depleted when both flaps are in place, the patient would not be able to inhale room air.

High-Flow Oxygen Delivery Systems. High-flow systems (Table 30-2) include the Venturi mask, aerosol mask, face tent, tracheostomy collar, and T-piece. These devices deliver an accurate oxygen level when properly fitted. A high-flow



FIG. 30-3 A nasal cannula (prongs).

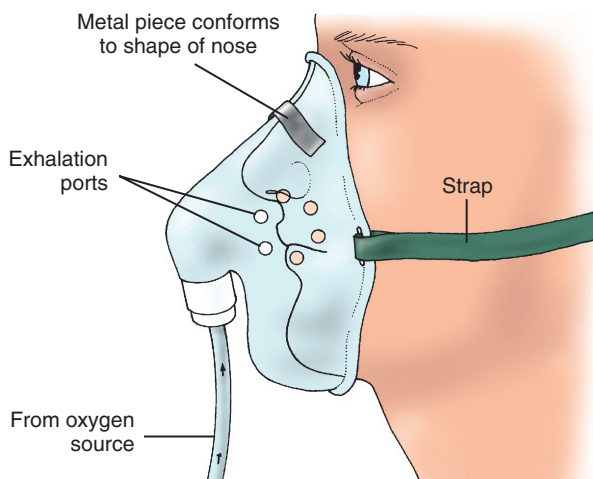


FIG. 30-4 A simple facemask used to deliver oxygen.

system delivers oxygen concentrations from 24% to 100% at 8 to 15 L/min.

Venturi masks (commonly called *Venti masks*) deliver the most accurate oxygen concentration without intubation. It works by pulling in a proportional amount of room air for each liter flow of oxygen. An adaptor is located between the bottom of the mask and the oxygen source (Fig. 30-7). Adaptors with holes of different sizes allow specific amounts of air to mix with the oxygen. More precise delivery of oxygen results. Each adaptor uses a different flow rate. For example, to deliver 24% of oxygen, the flow rate must be 4 L/min. Another type of Venturi mask has one adaptor with a dial that is used to select the amount of oxygen desired. Humidification is not needed with the Venturi mask. This system is best for the patient with chronic lung disease because it delivers a more precise oxygen concentration.

Other high-flow systems include the face tent, aerosol mask, tracheostomy collar, and T-piece. They are often used to provide high humidity with oxygen delivery. A dial on the humidity source regulates the delivered oxygen level. A face tent fits over the chin, with the top extending halfway across the face. The oxygen level delivered varies, but the face tent,

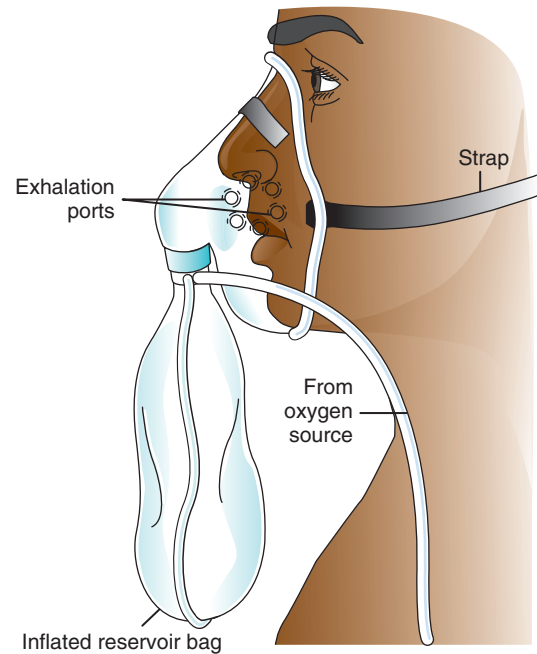


FIG. 30-5 A partial rebreather mask.

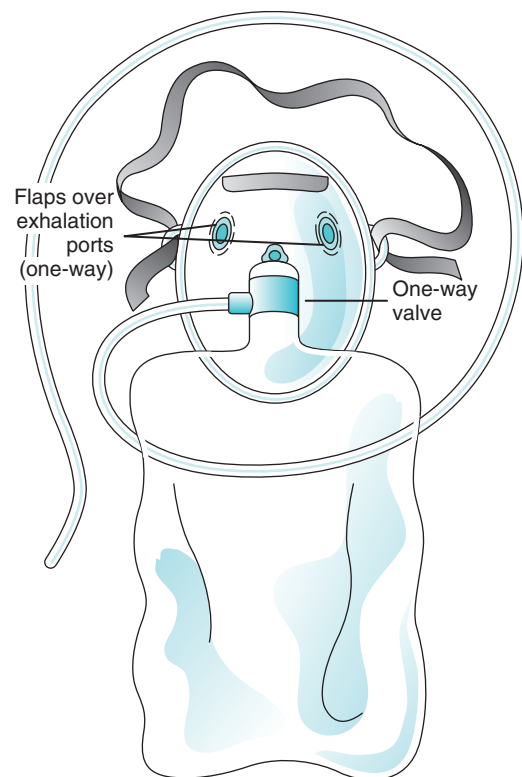


FIG. 30-6 A non-rebreather mask.

instead of a tight-fitting mask, is useful for facial trauma or burns. An aerosol mask is used when high humidity is needed after extubation or upper airway surgery or for thick secretions. The tracheostomy collar is used to deliver high humidity and the desired oxygen to the patient with a tracheostomy. A special adaptor, called the *T-piece*, is used to deliver any desired FiO_2 to the patient with a tracheostomy, laryngectomy,

TABLE 30-2 COMPARISON OF HIGH-FLOW OXYGEN DELIVERY SYSTEMS

FiO ₂ DELIVERED	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Venturi Mask (Venti Mask) 24%-50% FiO ₂ with flow rates as recommended by the manufacturer, usually 4-10 L/min; provides high humidity	Perform constant surveillance to ensure an accurate flow rate for the specific FiO ₂ . Keep the orifice for the Venturi adaptor open and uncovered. Provide a mask that fits snugly and tubing that is free of kinks. Assess the patient for dry mucous membranes. Change to a nasal cannula during mealtime.	An accurate flow rate ensures FiO ₂ delivery. If the Venturi orifice is covered, the adaptor does not function and oxygen delivery varies. FiO ₂ is altered if kinking occurs or if the mask fits poorly. Comfort measures may be indicated. Oxygen is a drug that needs to be given continuously.
Aerosol Mask, Face Tent, Tracheostomy Collar 24%-100% FiO ₂ with flow rates of at least 10 L/min; provides high humidity	Assess that aerosol mist escapes from the vents of the delivery system during inspiration and expiration. Empty condensation from the tubing. Change the aerosol water container as needed.	Humidification should be delivered to the patient. Emptying prevents the patient from being lavaged with water, promotes an adequate flow rate, and ensures a continued prescribed FiO ₂ . Adequate humidification is ensured only when there is sufficient water in the canister.
T-Piece 24%-100% FiO ₂ with flow rates of at least 10 L/min; provides high humidity	Empty condensation from the tubing. Keep the exhalation port open and uncovered. Position the T-piece so that it does not pull on the tracheostomy or endotracheal tube. Make sure the humidifier creates enough mist. A mist should be seen during inspiration and expiration.	Condensation interferes with flow rate delivery of FiO ₂ and may drain into the tracheostomy if not emptied. If the port is occluded, the patient can suffocate. The weight of the T-piece pulls on the tracheostomy and causes pain or erosion of skin at the insertion site. An adequate flow rate is needed to meet the inspiration effort of the patient. If not, the patient will be "air-hungry."

FiO₂, Fraction of inspired oxygen.

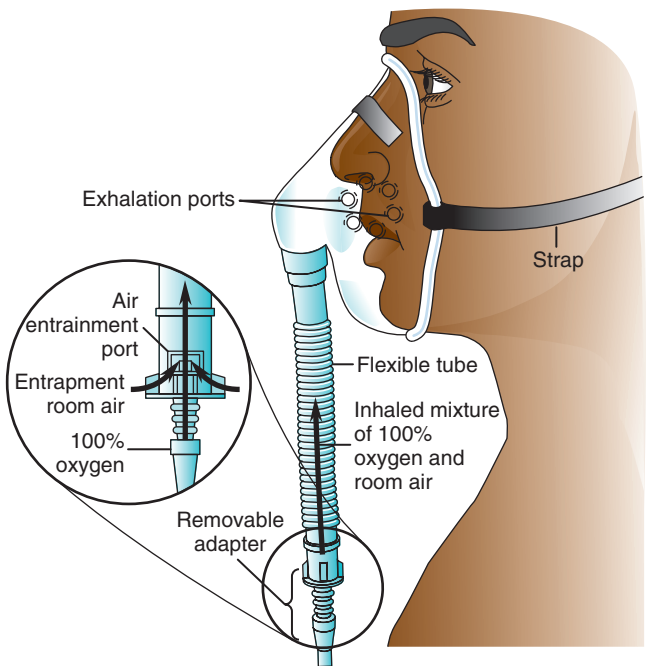


FIG. 30-7 A Venturi mask for precise oxygen delivery.

or endotracheal tube (Fig. 30-8). Adjust the flow rate so that the aerosol appears on the exhalation side of the T-piece.

Noninvasive Positive-Pressure Ventilation. Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NPPV) is a technique using positive pressure to keep alveoli open and improve gas

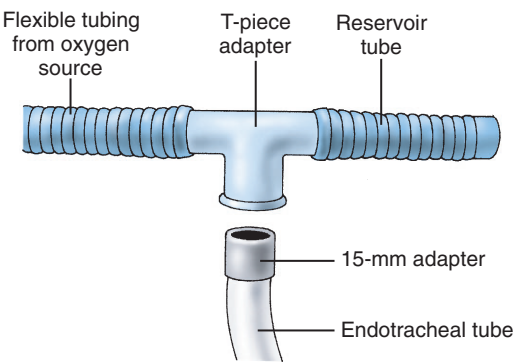


FIG. 30-8 A T-piece apparatus for attachment to an endotracheal or tracheostomy tube.

exchange without the need for airway intubation. NPPV is now being used to manage dyspnea, hypercarbia and acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), cardiogenic pulmonary edema, and acute asthma attacks. Although NPPV prevents the complications associated with intubation, including ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP), some risks and complications are associated with this type of therapy. Masks must fit tightly in order to form a proper seal. This can lead to skin breakdown over the bridge of the nose or other areas of the face. Leaks can cause uncomfortable pressure around the eyes, and gastric insufflation can lead to vomiting and the potential for aspiration. Thus NPPV should be used only on patients with an intact mental status and the ability to protect



FIG. 30-9 Nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP).

their airway, although a nasogastric (NG) tube may still be required for safety.

NPPV can deliver oxygen or may use just room air. A nasal mask, nasal pillows, or full-face mask delivery system allows mechanical delivery. The three most common modes of delivery for NPPV are (1) CPAP, which delivers a set positive airway pressure throughout each cycle of inhalation and exhalation; (2) volume-limited or flow-limited, which delivers a set tidal volume with the patient's inspiratory effort; and (3) pressure-limited, which includes pressure support, pressure control, and bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP), which cycles different pressures at inspiration and at expiration.

For BiPAP, a cycling machine delivers a set inspiratory positive airway pressure each time the patient begins to inspire. As he or she begins to exhale, the machine delivers a lower set end-expiratory pressure. Together, these two pressures improve tidal volume, can reduce respiratory rate, and may relieve dyspnea.

For CPAP, the effect is to open collapsed alveoli. Patients who may benefit from this form of oxygen or air delivery include those with atelectasis after surgery or cardiac-induced pulmonary edema or those with COPD. It is not beneficial for patients with respiratory failure following extubation. NPPV is also being used in palliative care for alleviating dyspnea, including for those patients with "do-not-intubate" orders. However, this practice is controversial. The Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM) recommends that goals of therapy and expected outcomes be discussed with the patient and family before initiating therapy.

NPPV is also used for sleep apnea. The effect of this use is to hold open the upper airways (Fig. 30-9). Patients using CPAP or BiPAP at home to manage sleep apnea often bring their home equipment to the hospital. They are familiar with their own machines and feel more comfortable using their own masks. The reasons for using NPPV at home still exist when the patient enters the hospital, and depending on their

diagnosis, there may be a greater need for them to continue NPPV while hospitalized.

The number of patients using NPPV therapy is increasing, and these patients are frequently cared for outside of the ICU setting. Nurses caring for the patient with NPPV must be knowledgeable about the equipment, the technique, and the potential complications. Adequate respiratory therapy support also is needed to safely manage a patient receiving NPPV.

Transtracheal Oxygen Therapy. Transtracheal oxygen (TTO) is a long-term method of delivering oxygen directly into the lungs. A small, flexible catheter is passed into the trachea through a small incision with the patient under local anesthesia. TTO avoids the irritation that nasal prongs cause. Patients also report it to be more cosmetically acceptable. A TTO team provides patient education, including the purpose of TTO and care of the catheter. TTO flow rates are prescribed for rest and for activity. A flow rate also is prescribed for the nasal cannula, which is used when the TTO catheter is being cleaned. Most patients using this delivery method have a 55% reduction in required oxygen flow at rest and a 30% decrease with activity.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

Your patient is a 44-year-old woman with stage IV ovarian cancer. The surgical and oncology teams have confirmed that there are no curative surgical or medical treatment options available to her. She and her family have decided to institute a do-not-resuscitate (DNR) comfort care (DNR-CC) order. Later that evening she becomes increasingly short of breath. The patient does not wish for her morphine infusion to be increased at this point. The physician offers the family a trial of noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation (NPPV). Your colleagues are concerned this is a violation of the patient's and family's wishes.

1. Is this a violation of the DNR-CC order?
2. Explain why the use of NPPV may be acceptable in this situation.
3. What discussions should be held with the family and patient, if possible, before starting NPPV?

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

The patient must be stable before home oxygen is considered. For Medicare to cover the cost of home oxygen therapy, the patient must have severe hypoxemia defined as a partial pressure of arterial oxygen (P_{aO_2}) level of less than 55 mm Hg or an arterial oxygen saturation (SpO_2) of less than 88% on room air and at rest. The criteria vary when hypoxemia is caused by cardiac rather than pulmonary problems or when oxygen is needed only at night or with exercise.

After the need for home oxygen therapy is verified, begin a teaching plan about oxygen therapy. Work with the discharge planner to help the patient select a durable medical equipment (DME) company to deliver oxygen equipment and select a community health nursing agency for follow-up care in the home. The patient is re-evaluated for the need for oxygen therapy on a periodic basis.

While providing discharge planning and teaching, be sensitive to the patient's emotional adjustment to oxygen therapy. Encourage the patient to share feelings and concerns. He or she may be concerned about social acceptance. Help him or



FIG. 30-10 Small E size oxygen tank (cylinder) for portability.

her realize that adherence to oxygen therapy is important for being able to participate in ADLs and other events that bring enjoyment.

Home Care Preparation

The nurse or respiratory therapist teaches the patient about the equipment needed for home oxygen therapy, including the oxygen source, delivery devices, humidity sources, and safety aspects of using and maintaining the equipment.

Home oxygen therapy is provided in one of three ways: compressed gas in a tank or a cylinder, liquid oxygen in a reservoir, or an oxygen concentrator. Compressed gas in an oxygen tank (green) is the most often used oxygen source. An oxygen tank is economical, and pure oxygen can be delivered at a wide range of flow rates. The large H cylinder may be used as a stationary source, and the small E tank is available for transporting the patient (Fig. 30-10). Teach the patient and family to check the gauge daily to assess the amount of oxygen left in the tank. As a safety precaution, the tanks must always be in a stand or rack. A tank that is accidentally knocked over could suddenly decompress and move around in an uncontrolled manner. Smaller (and lighter) D and C cylinders are available for the patient to carry.

Liquid oxygen for home use is oxygen gas that has been liquefied. A concentrated amount of oxygen is available in a lightweight and easy-to-carry container similar to a Thermos bottle (Fig. 30-11). The patient can fill the portable tank from the large stationary liquid vessel. This type of oxygen lasts longer than gaseous oxygen in a conventional tank of the same size; however, it is expensive and the oxygen evaporates if it is not used continuously.

The **oxygen concentrator** or oxygen extractor is a machine that removes nitrogen, water vapor, and hydrocarbons from room air. Oxygen is concentrated from room air to more than 90%. The concentrator, although noisy and large, is the least expensive system and does not need to be filled. It is often used in the home as a stationary system. A smaller version of



FIG. 30-11 Portable liquid oxygen.

the machine that can plug into DC electrical outlets can be rented for use during car or boat trips. Liquid oxygen and E tanks are used when the patient leaves home for short trips.

With the use of these home oxygen systems, an oxygen-conserving reservoir-type nasal cannula can be used to reduce oxygen flow needs by about 50%. A reservoir for storage of exhaled oxygen is attached to the tubing. The stored oxygen is then delivered back to the patient on the next inhalation.

Regardless of the type of oxygen delivery system used, review safety issues with the patient and all family members.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Stress to the patient the importance of not smoking when he or she is using oxygen. Teach the patient and all family members that smoking materials, candles, gas burners, and fireplaces (and other open flames) are not to be used in the same room that oxygen is being used.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which action is most important for the nurse to teach the family of a client who is receiving oxygen therapy at home by continuous nasal cannula?

- A. Providing mouth care every 8 hours
- B. Lubricating the lips with water-soluble jelly
- C. Draining the condensation in the tubing every 2 hours
- D. Changing the position of the elastic band every 4 hours

TRACHEOSTOMY

Overview

Tracheotomy is the surgical incision into the trachea to create an airway. **Tracheostomy** is the (tracheal) stoma, or opening, that results from the tracheotomy. A tracheotomy can be an emergency procedure or a scheduled surgery. Tracheostomies can be temporary or permanent. Some indications for tracheostomy include acute airway obstruction, the need for airway protection, laryngeal trauma, and airway involvement during head or neck surgery.

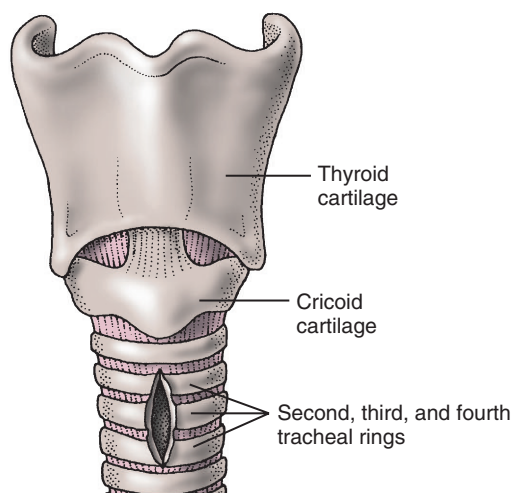


FIG. 30-12 A vertical tracheal incision for a tracheostomy.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for patients requiring tracheostomy include:

1. Reduced oxygenation related to weak chest muscles, obstruction, or other physical problems
2. Inadequate communication related to tracheostomy or intubation
3. Inadequate nutrition related to presence of endotracheal tube
4. Potential for infection related to invasive procedures
5. Damaged oral mucosa related to mechanical factors (endotracheal tube)

INTERVENTIONS

Preoperative Care

The care for the patient having a tracheostomy is similar to that for a laryngectomy (see [Chapter 31](#)). Focus on his or her knowledge deficits through teaching, and discuss tracheostomy care, communication, and speech.

Operative Procedures

Initially, the neck is extended and an endotracheal (ET) tube is placed by the anesthesia provider to maintain the airway. An incision is then made through the anterior skin of the neck, exposing the tracheal rings and moving other tissues out of the surgical path. A second incision is made through the tracheal rings to enter the trachea ([Fig. 30-12](#)). The types of incisions and specific techniques vary, depending on the surgeon's preference and the reason for the surgery.

After the trachea is entered, the ET tube is removed while the tracheostomy tube is inserted. The tracheostomy tube is secured in place with sutures and tracheostomy ties or Velcro tube holders. A chest x-ray determines proper placement of the tube. If intubation is not possible, a tracheotomy can be done with the patient awake under local anesthesia.

Postoperative Care

Immediately after surgery, focus care on ensuring a patent airway. Confirm the presence of bilateral breath sounds. Perform a respiratory assessment at least every 2 hours. Assess the patient for complications from the procedure.

Complications

Major complications can arise after surgery. [Table 30-3](#) lists manifestations, management, and prevention of other serious complications of tracheostomy.

Tube obstruction can occur as a result of secretions or by cuff displacement. Indicators of obstruction include difficulty breathing; noisy respirations; difficulty inserting a suction catheter; thick, dry secretions; and unexplained peak pressures (if a mechanical ventilator is in use). Assess the patient at least hourly for tube patency. Prevent obstruction by helping the patient cough and deep breathe, providing inner cannula care, humidifying the oxygen source, and suctioning. If tube obstruction occurs as a result of cuff prolapse over the end of the tracheostomy tube, the physician or advanced practice nurse repositions or replaces the tube.

Tube dislodgement and accidental decannulation can occur when the tube system is not secure. This problem can be prevented by securing the tube in place. This action reduces movement and traction on the tube from oxygen or ventilator tubing or accidental pulling by the patient. *Tube dislodgment in the first 72 hours after surgery is an emergency because the tracheostomy tract has not matured and replacement is difficult. The tube may end up in the subcutaneous tissue instead of in the trachea.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the tube is dislodged on an immature tracheostomy, ventilate the patient using a manual resuscitation bag and facemask while another nurse calls the Rapid Response Team.

For safety, ensure that a tracheostomy tube of the same type (including an obturator) and size (or one size smaller) is at the bedside at all times, along with a tracheostomy insertion tray. If decannulation occurs after 72 hours, extend the patient's neck and open the tissues of the stoma with a curved Kelly clamp to secure the airway. With the obturator inserted into the tracheostomy tube, quickly and gently replace the tube and remove the obturator. Check for airflow through the tube and for bilateral breath sounds. If you cannot secure the airway, notify a more experienced nurse, respiratory therapist, or physician for assistance. Ventilate with a bag-valve mask. If the patient is in distress, call the Rapid Response Team for help.

Pneumothorax (air in the chest cavity) can develop during the tracheotomy procedure if the chest cavity is entered. When pneumothorax occurs during tracheotomy, it usually does so at the apex of the lung. Chest x-rays after placement are used to assess for pneumothorax.

Subcutaneous emphysema occurs when there is an opening or tear in the trachea and air escapes into fresh tissue planes of the neck. Air can also progress throughout the chest and other tissues into the face. Inspect and palpate for air under the skin around the new tracheostomy.

TABLE 30-3 COMPLICATIONS OF TRACHEOSTOMY

COMPLICATIONS AND DESCRIPTION	MANIFESTATIONS	MANAGEMENT	PREVENTION
Tracheomalacia: constant pressure exerted by the cuff causes tracheal dilation and erosion of cartilage.	An increased amount of air is required in the cuff to maintain the seal. A larger tracheostomy tube is required to prevent an air leak at the stoma. Food particles are seen in tracheal secretions. The patient does not receive the set tidal volume on the ventilator.	No special management is needed unless bleeding occurs.	Use an uncuffed tube as soon as possible. Monitor cuff pressure and air volumes closely, and detect changes.
Tracheal stenosis: narrowed tracheal lumen is due to scar formation from irritation of tracheal mucosa by the cuff.	Stenosis is usually seen after the cuff is deflated or the tracheostomy tube is removed. The patient has increased coughing, inability to expectorate secretions, or difficulty in breathing or talking.	Tracheal dilation or surgical intervention is used.	Prevent pulling of and traction on the tracheostomy tube. Properly secure the tube in the midline position. Maintain proper cuff pressure. Minimize oronasal intubation time.
Tracheoesophageal fistula (TEF): excessive cuff pressure causes erosion of the posterior wall of the trachea. A hole is created between the trachea and the anterior esophagus. The patient at highest risk also has a nasogastric tube present.	Similar to tracheomalacia: Food particles are seen in tracheal secretions. Increased air in cuff is needed to achieve a seal. The patient has increased coughing and choking while eating. The patient does not receive the set tidal volume on the ventilator.	Manually administer oxygen by mask to prevent hypoxemia. Use a small, soft feeding tube instead of a nasogastric tube for tube feedings. A gastrostomy or jejunostomy may be performed by the physician. Monitor the patient with a nasogastric tube closely; assess for TEF and aspiration.	Maintain cuff pressure. Monitor the amount of air needed for inflation, and detect changes. Progress to a deflated cuff or cuffless tube as soon as possible.
Trachea–innominate artery fistula: a malpositioned tube causes its distal tip to push against the lateral wall of the tracheostomy. Continued pressure causes necrosis and erosion of the innominate artery. This is a medical emergency.	The tracheostomy tube pulsates in synchrony with the heartbeat. There is heavy bleeding from the stoma. This is a life-threatening complication.	Remove the tracheostomy tube immediately. Apply direct pressure to the innominate artery at the stoma site. Prepare the patient for immediate repair surgery.	Correct the tube size, length, and midline position. Prevent pulling or tugging on the tracheostomy tube. Immediately notify the physician of the pulsating tube.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the skin around a new tracheostomy is puffy and you can feel a crackling sensation when pressing on the skin, notify the physician immediately.

Bleeding in small amounts from the tracheostomy incision can be expected for the first few days, but constant oozing is abnormal. Wrap gauze around the tube and pack gauze gently into the wound to apply pressure to the bleeding sites.

Infection can occur at any time. In the hospital, use sterile technique to prevent infection during suctioning and tracheostomy care. Assess the stoma site at least once per shift for purulent drainage, redness, pain, or swelling. Tracheostomy dressings may be used to keep the stoma clean and dry. These dressings resemble a 4 × 4 gauze pad with an area removed to fit around the tube. If tracheostomy dressings are not available, fold standard sterile 4 × 4s to fit around the tube. *Do not cut the dressing because small bits of gauze could then be aspirated through the tube.* Change these dressings often because moist dressings provide a medium

for bacterial growth. Careful wound care prevents most local infections.

Tracheostomy Tubes

Many types of tracheostomy tubes are available (Fig. 30-13). The one chosen depends on the specific needs of the patient. Tracheostomy tubes are available in many sizes and are made of plastic or metal. The tubes may be reusable; however, most tubes in use today are disposable. A tracheostomy tube may or may not have a cuff. It also may have an inner cannula. For patients receiving mechanical ventilation, a cuffed tube is used in acute care settings. A noncuffed tube is used when mechanical ventilation is not required.

For tubes with a reusable inner cannula, inspect, suction, and clean the inner cannula. During the first 24 hours after surgery, perform cannula care as often as needed, perhaps every 30 to 60 minutes. Thereafter, care is determined by the patient's needs and agency policy. In planning for self-care, teach him or her to remove the inner cannula and check for cleanliness. Also instruct him or her about suctioning and tracheostomy cleaning.

Because breathing and swallowing move the tube, a cuffed tube does not protect against aspiration. Having a cuffed tube

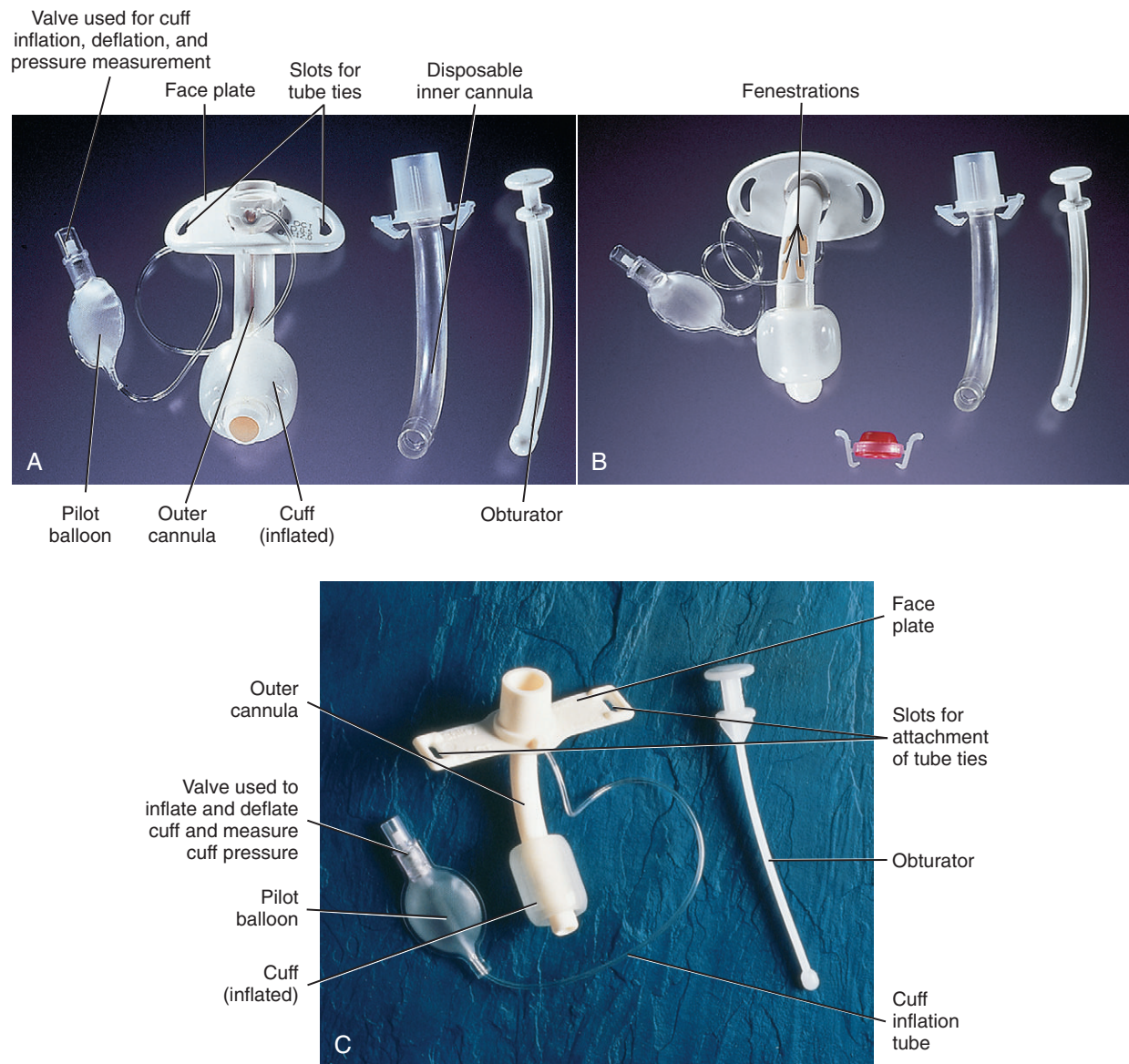


FIG. 30-13 Tracheostomy tubes. **A**, Dual-lumen cuffed tracheostomy tube with disposable inner cannula. **B**, Dual-lumen cuffed fenestrated tracheostomy tube. **C**, Single-lumen cannula cuffed tracheostomy tube.

inflated may give a false sense of security that aspiration cannot occur during feeding or mouth care. In addition, the pilot balloon does not reflect whether the correct amount of air is present in the cuff.

A fenestrated tube can function in many different ways. When the inner cannula is in place, the fenestration is covered over (closed) and this tube works like a double-lumen tube. With the inner cannula removed and the plug or red stopper locked in place, air can pass through the fenestration, around the tube, and up through the natural airway. The patient can then cough and speak. If the patient has trouble with any of these actions, he or she should be evaluated for proper tube placement, patency, size, and fenestration. *Do not cap the tube until the problem is identified and corrected.*

A fenestrated tube may or may not have a cuff. With a cuff, some air flows through the natural airway when the patient is not being mechanically ventilated.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Always deflate the cuff before capping the tube with the decannulation cap; otherwise, the patient has no airway.

Patients with metal tracheostomy tubes scheduled for magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) need to change to a plastic tube. Metal tubes could be dislodged or heat up with exposure to the magnetic field during the scan.

Care Issues for the Patient with a Tracheostomy

Preventing Tissue Damage

Tissue damage can occur at the point where the inflated cuff presses against the tracheal mucosa. Mucosal ischemia occurs when the pressure exerted by the cuff on the mucosa exceeds



FIG. 30-14 An aneroid pressure manometer for cuff inflation and measuring cuff pressures.

the capillary perfusion pressure. To reduce the risk for tracheal damage, keep the cuff pressure between 14 and 20 mm Hg or 20 and 30 cm H₂O (ideally, 25 cm H₂O or less) (Sole, et al., 2011).

Most cuffs are designed to use a high volume of air while keeping low pressure on the tracheal mucosa. Inflate the cuff to form a seal between the trachea and the cuff while creating the least amount of pressure. If the cuff cannot be inflated to seal well enough, a larger-diameter tube may be needed. A pressure cuff inflator can be used to inflate the cuff to a specified pressure or to check the cuff pressure (Fig. 30-14).

Check the cuff pressure at least once during each shift, especially with the minimal leak technique, and keep the pressure at 14 to 20 mm Hg or 20 to 30 cm H₂O. In rare situations, the cuff pressure is increased to maintain ventilator volumes when peak pressures are greater than 50 mm Hg (65 cm H₂O) and positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is greater than 10 mm Hg (14 cm H₂O). High PEEP values can deflate the cuff over time, and more air may need to be added to maintain a proper seal. Manufacturers have guidelines for the specific volumes for each cuff size. Most cuffs are adequately inflated with less than 10 mL of air.

Although a high cuff pressure alone causes tracheal damage, other factors may make the damage worse. The patient who is malnourished, dehydrated, hypoxic, older, or receiving corticosteroids has poor tissue healing and is at risk for greater tissue damage. Tube friction and movement are common events that damage the mucosa and lead to tracheal stenosis. Reduce local airway damage by maintaining proper

cuff pressures, stabilizing the tube, suctioning only when needed, and preventing and treating malnutrition, dehydration, and hypoxia.

Ensuring Air Warming and Humidification

The tracheostomy tube bypasses the nose and mouth, which normally humidify, warm, and filter the air before it reaches the lower respiratory tract. If humidification and warming are not adequate, tracheal damage can occur. Thick, dried secretions can occlude the airways.

To prevent these complications, humidify the air as prescribed. On an ongoing basis, assess for a fine mist emerging from the tracheostomy collar or T-piece during inspiration and expiration. To increase the amount of humidity delivered, a warming device can be attached to the water source with a temperature probe placed in the tubing circuit. Monitor the circuit temperature hourly by feeling the tubing and by checking the probe. Ensure adequate hydration, which also helps liquefy secretions. Increasing the flow rate at the flowmeter also increases the amount of delivered humidity.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Keep the temperature of the air entering a tracheostomy between 98.6° and 100.4° F (37° and 38° C), and never exceed 104° F (40° C).

Suctioning

Suctioning maintains a patent airway and promotes gas exchange by removing secretions when the patient cannot cough adequately. Chart 30-2 lists best practices for suctioning. Assess the patient's need for suctioning. Suctioning is

CHART 30-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Suctioning the Artificial Airway

1. Assess the need for suctioning (routine unnecessary suctioning causes mucosal damage, bleeding, and bronchospasm).
2. Wash hands. Don protective eyewear. Maintain Standard Precautions.
3. Explain to the patient that sensations such as shortness of breath and coughing are to be expected but that any discomfort will be very brief.
4. Check the suction source. Occlude the suction source, and adjust the pressure dial to between 80 and 120 mm Hg to prevent hypoxemia and trauma to the mucosa.
5. Set up a sterile field.
6. Preoxygenate the patient with 100% oxygen for 30 seconds to 3 minutes (at least three hyperinflations) to prevent hypoxemia. Keep hyperinflations synchronized with inhalation.
7. Quickly insert the suction catheter until resistance is met. *Do not apply suction during insertion.*
8. Withdraw the catheter 0.4 to 0.8 inch (1 to 2 cm), and begin to apply suction. Use intermittent suction and a twirling motion of the catheter during withdrawal. *Never suction longer than 10 to 15 seconds.*
9. Hyperoxygenate for 1 to 5 minutes or until the patient's baseline heart rate and oxygen saturation are within normal limits.
10. Repeat as needed for up to three total suction passes.
11. Suction mouth as needed, and provide mouth care.
12. Wash hands.
13. Describe secretions, and document patient's responses.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which technique or action does the nurse use to prevent tracheal stenosis in a client after a tracheotomy has been performed?

- A. Assessing breath sounds bilaterally every 2 hours
- B. Securing the tracheostomy tube in a midline position
- C. Holding the tube continually when changing the tracheostomy ties
- D. Suctioning the tracheostomy tube with as small a catheter as possible

needed when secretions are audible or noisy, when crackles or wheezes are heard on auscultation, or when restlessness, increased pulse or respiratory rates, or mucus in the artificial airway is present. Other indications include patient requests for suctioning or an increase in the peak airway pressure on the ventilator.

Suctioning is often performed through an artificial airway but the nose or mouth also can be used. Suctioning of both routes is routine for the patient with retained secretions.

Suctioning through the nose has similar complications as suctioning through an artificial airway and can be painful. Slow, careful placement of the catheter following the nasopharyngeal anatomy makes the procedure less traumatic. Placing a nasopharyngeal airway and suctioning through it can prevent trauma to the nasal mucosa. Advance the catheter through the nasopharynx and into the laryngopharynx while the patient receives oxygen by mask or nasal cannula. Once the catheter enters the larynx, the patient may cough. On inhalation, insert the catheter through the vocal cords and into the trachea. Occasionally, the catheter can be disconnected from suction and attached to an oxygen source, with the patient receiving oxygen via the catheter.

Suctioning can cause hypoxia, tissue (mucosal) trauma, infection, vagal stimulation, bronchospasm, and cardiac dysrhythmias.

Hypoxia can be caused by these factors in the patient with a tracheostomy:

- Ineffective oxygenation before, during, and after suctioning
- Use of a catheter that is too large for the artificial airway
- Prolonged suctioning time
- Excessive suction pressure
- Too frequent suctioning

Prevent hypoxia by hyperoxygenating the patient with 100% oxygen with a manual resuscitation bag attached to an oxygen source. If the patient can take deep breaths, instruct him or her to do so three or four times with the existing oxygen delivery system before suctioning. If possible, monitor the heart rate or use a pulse oximeter while suctioning to assess tolerance of the procedure. Assess for hypoxia (e.g., increased heart rate and blood pressure, oxygen desaturation, cyanosis, restlessness, anxiety, dysrhythmias). Oxygen saturation below 90% by pulse oximetry indicates hypoxemia. If hypoxia occurs, stop the suctioning procedure. Using the 100% oxygen delivery system, reoxygenate the patient until baseline parameters return.

Use a catheter of the correct size to reduce the risk for hypoxia. The size should not exceed half of the size of the tracheal lumen. In adults, the standard catheter size is 12 Fr or 14 Fr. Correct catheter size allows efficient removal of secretions without causing hypoxemia.

Tissue trauma can result from frequent suctioning, prolonged suctioning time, excessive suction pressure, and non-rotation of the catheter. Prevent trauma to this fragile mucosa by suctioning only when needed. Lubricate the catheter with sterile water or saline before insertion. *Apply suction only during the withdrawal of the catheter.* Use a twirling motion during withdrawal to prevent grabbing of the mucosa.

Apply suction intermittently for only 10 to 15 seconds. Estimate this time frame by holding your own breath and counting to 10 or 15 during suctioning. After 15 seconds, end the suctioning procedure. Most patients cannot tolerate more

than 15 seconds of suctioning. Prolonged suctioning can cause alveolar collapse (*suction atelectasis*).

Infection is possible because each catheter pass introduces bacteria into the trachea. In the hospital, use sterile technique for suctioning and for all suctioning equipment, including suction catheters, gloves, and saline or water. Suction the mouth *after* suctioning the artificial airway. *Never use oral suction equipment for suctioning an artificial airway, because this can introduce oral bacteria into the lungs.* Use clean technique with home suctioning procedures because the number of virulent organisms in the home environment is lower than in the hospital.

Vagal stimulation and bronchospasm are possible during suctioning. Vagal stimulation results in severe bradycardia, hypotension, heart block, ventricular tachycardia, asystole, or other dysrhythmias. *If vagal stimulation occurs, stop suctioning immediately and oxygenate the patient manually with 100% oxygen.* Bronchospasm sometimes occurs when the catheter passes into the airway. The patient may need a bronchodilator to relieve bronchospasm and respiratory distress. In addition, hypoxia caused by suctioning can stimulate a variety of cardiac dysrhythmias. If the patient has cardiac monitoring in place, check the monitor during suctioning.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which action does the nurse take to prevent hypoxia in a client during nasotracheal suctioning?

- A. Measuring pulse oximetry throughout the procedure
- B. Inserting the suction catheter through the vocal cords only when the client exhales
- C. Administering 100% oxygen by manual resuscitation bag before initiating suctioning
- D. Removing the suction tube from the nasopharynx as soon as the client begins to cough

Providing Tracheostomy Care

Tracheostomy care keeps the tube free of secretions, maintains a patent airway, and provides wound care. This procedure is performed whether or not the patient can clear secretions. Perform tracheostomy care according to agency policy, usually every shift and as needed. [Chart 30-3](#) outlines best practices for tracheostomy care.

Before proceeding with tracheostomy care, assess the patient as described in [Chart 30-4](#). The need for suctioning and tracheostomy care is determined by the amount and consistency of secretions, the specific pulmonary disease, the ability of the patient to cough and deep breathe, the need for mechanical ventilation, and wound care. Using a penlight, inspect the inner lumen of a single-lumen tube to assess for secretions.

Secure tracheostomy tubes in place using either twill tape ties or Velcro tracheostomy tube holders. Both devices require



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Prevent accidental decannulation during tracheostomy care by keeping the old ties or holder on the tube while applying new ties or holder or by keeping a hand on the tube until it is securely stable. (This may require the assistance of another person.)

CHART 30-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Tracheostomy Care

1. Assemble the necessary equipment.
2. Wash hands. Maintain Standard Precautions.
3. Suction the tracheostomy tube if necessary.
4. Remove old dressings and excess secretions.
5. Set up a sterile field.
6. Remove and clean the inner cannula. Use half-strength hydrogen peroxide to clean the cannula and sterile saline to rinse it. If the inner cannula is disposable, remove the cannula and replace it with a new one.
7. Clean the stoma site and then the tracheostomy plate with half-strength hydrogen peroxide followed by sterile saline. Ensure that none of the solutions enters the tracheostomy.
8. Change tracheostomy ties if they are soiled. Secure new ties in place before removing soiled ones to prevent accidental decannulation. If a knot is needed, tie a square knot that is visible on the side of the neck. One or two fingers should be able to be placed between the tie tape and the neck.
9. Wash hands.
10. Document the type and amount of secretions and the general condition of the stoma and surrounding skin. Document the patient's response to the procedure and any teaching or learning that occurred.



FIG. 30-15 Placement of tracheostomy gauze dressing and Velcro tracheostomy tube holder.

coughing, which in turn may cause decannulation. Keeping the tube secure while changing the ties or holder to prevent accidental decannulation is critical. Include the patient in tracheostomy care as a step toward self-management. **Fig. 30-15** shows correct placement of a tracheostomy dressing.

CHART 30-4 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient with a Tracheostomy

- Note the quality, pattern, and rate of breathing:
 - Within patient's baseline?
 - Tachypnea can indicate hypoxia.
 - Dyspnea can indicate secretions in the airway.
- Assess for any cyanosis, especially around the lips, which could indicate hypoxia.
- Check the patient's pulse oximetry reading.
- If oxygen is prescribed, is the patient receiving the correct amount, with the correct equipment and humidification?
- Assess the tracheostomy site:
 - Note the color, consistency, and amount of secretions in the tube or externally.
 - If the tracheostomy is sutured in place, is there any redness, swelling, or drainage from suture sites?
 - If the tracheostomy is secured with ties, what is the condition of the ties? Are they moist with secretions or perspiration? Are the secretions dried on the ties? Is the tie secure?
 - Assess the condition of the skin around the tracheostomy and neck. Be sure to check underneath the neck for secretions that may have drained to the back. Check for any skin breakdown related to pressure from the ties or related to excess secretions.
 - Assess behind the faceplate for the size of the space between the outer cannula and the patient's tissue. Are any secretions collected in this area?
- If the tube is cuffed, check cuff pressure.
- Auscultate the lungs.
- Are a second (emergency) tracheostomy tube and obturator available?

changing when soiled or at least once a day to keep them clean, to prevent infection, and to assess for skin irritation under the ties. A properly secured tie or holder allows space for only one or two fingers to be placed between the tie or holder and the neck. Tube movement causes irritation and

Providing Bronchial and Oral Hygiene

Bronchial hygiene promotes a patent airway and prevents infection. Turn and reposition the patient every 1 to 2 hours, support out-of-bed activities, and encourage ambulation. These actions promote lung expansion and gas exchange and help remove secretions. Coughing and deep breathing, combined with the chest percussion, vibration, and postural drainage, promote pulmonary hygiene (see **Chapter 32**).

Oral hygiene is important to keep the airway patent, to prevent bacterial overgrowth and dental caries, and to promote comfort. Maintain Standard Precautions during the procedure. Avoid using glycerin swabs or mouthwash that contains alcohol to clean the mouth because these products dry the mouth, change its pH, and promote bacterial growth. Instead, use a sponge tooth cleaner or soft-bristled toothbrush moistened in water for mouth care. Hydrogen peroxide solutions can help remove crusted matter but may break down healing tissue. Use these agents only with a physician's prescription. Help the patient rinse his or her mouth with normal saline every 4 hours while awake or as often as he or she desires.

Examine the mouth for open areas or dental problems. Ulcers, bacterial or fungal (*Candida*) growth, and other infections are treated medically. Apply lip balm or water-soluble jelly to prevent cracked lips and promote patient comfort. Mouth care helps promote oral health, comfort, and aesthetic appearance. Offering an opportunity for the patient or family member to perform mouth care allows participation in care and increases self-esteem.

Oral secretions can move down the trachea and collect above the inflated cuff of the endotracheal tube. When the cuff is deflated, the secretions can move into the lungs. The Hi-Lo Evac endotracheal tube has an additional lumen open to the area above the cuff and can help prevent aspiration of oral secretions. The extra lumen allows suctioning of the airway above the cuff before deflating, thus preventing movement of oral secretions deeper into the airway.

CHART 30-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing Aspiration During Swallowing

- Avoid serving meals when the patient is fatigued.
- Provide smaller and more frequent meals.
- Provide adequate time; do not “hurry” the patient.
- Provide close supervision if the patient is self-feeding.
- Keep emergency suctioning equipment close at hand and turned on.
- Avoid water and other “thin” liquids.
- Thicken all liquids, including water.
- Avoid foods that generate thin liquids during the chewing process, such as fruit.
- Position the patient in the most upright position possible.
- When possible, completely (or at least partially) deflate the tube cuff during meals.
- Suction after initial cuff deflation to clear the airway and allow maximum comfort during the meal.
- Feed each bite or encourage the patient to take each bite slowly.
- Encourage the patient to “dry swallow” after each bite to clear residue from the throat.
- Avoid consecutive swallows of liquids.
- Provide controlled small volumes of liquids, using a spoon.
- Encourage the patient to “tuck” his or her chin down and move the forehead forward while swallowing.
- Allow the patient to indicate when he or she is ready for the next bite.
- If the patient coughs, stop the feeding until he or she indicates that the airway has been cleared.
- Continuously monitor tolerance to oral food intake by assessing respiratory rate, ease, pulse oximetry, and heart rate.

Ensuring Nutrition

Swallowing can be a major problem for the patient with a tracheostomy tube in place. In a normal swallow, the larynx lifts and moves forward to protect itself from the passing stream of food and saliva. Laryngeal lift also opens the upper esophageal sphincter. The tracheostomy tube sometimes tethers the larynx in place, making it unable to move effectively. The result is difficulty in swallowing. Also, when the tracheostomy tube cuff is inflated, it can balloon backwards and interfere with the passage of food through the esophagus. The wall between the back of the trachea and the front of the esophagus is very thin, allowing this pushing problem.

Instruct the patient to keep the head of the bed elevated for at least 30 minutes after eating. [Chart 30-5](#) outlines best practices to prevent aspiration during swallowing.

Maintaining Communication

The patient can speak when there is a cuffless tube, when a fenestrated tracheostomy tube is in place, and when the fenestrated tube is capped or covered. Until natural speech is feasible, teach him or her and the family about other communication means. A writing tablet, Magic Slate, communication board with pictures and letters, communication “flash cards” on a ring, hand signals, or a computer, as well as a call light within reach, are used to promote communication and decrease frustration from not being able to speak or be understood. Phrase questions for “yes” or “no” answers to help the patient respond easily. Move the patient closer to the nurses’ station, and mark the central call light system to indicate that he or she cannot speak.

The inability to talk is a major stressor for the patient. Helping communication is an important nursing function and is required by The Joint Commission’s National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs). When the patient can tolerate cuff deflation, he or she places a finger over the tracheostomy tube on exhalation. This forces air up through the larynx, vocal cords, and mouth and allows speech. During the process of decannulation, when the fenestrated tube is “capped,” the patient has the benefit of speech without the need to cover the tube.

A device to facilitate speech for the patient with a tracheostomy is a special one-way valve that fits over the tube and replaces the need for finger occlusion. The valve allows him or her to breathe in through the tracheostomy tube. On exhalation, the valve closes so that air is forced through the vocal cords, allowing speech. For this valve to assist in speech, the patient must not be connected to a ventilator, must have the cuff deflated, and must be able to breathe around the tube. Some valves have an extra port for supplemental oxygen without impairing the ability to speak.

Supporting Psychosocial Needs and Self-Image

Addressing psychological concerns is an important aspect of nursing care of patients recovering from a tracheostomy. While providing physical care, keep in mind the emotional impact of an artificial airway. Acknowledge the patient’s frustration with communication, and allow time for communication. When speaking to him or her, use a normal tone of voice. The tracheostomy tube does not alter hearing or comprehension.

The patient may have a change in self-image because of deformity, the presence of a stoma or artificial airway, speech changes, a change in the method of eating, or difficulty with speech. Help the patient set realistic goals, starting with involvement in self-care.

Work with the family to ease the patient into a more normal social environment. Provide encouragement and positive reinforcement while demonstrating acceptance and caring behaviors. Assess the family for the need for counseling.

After surgery, the patient may feel shy and socially isolated. He or she can wear loose-fitting shirts, decorative collars, or scarves to cover the tracheostomy tube.

Weaning

Weaning the patient from a tracheostomy tube entails a gradual decrease in the tube size and ultimate removal of the tube. Carefully monitor this process, especially after each change. The physician or respiratory advanced practice nurse performs the steps in the process.

First, the cuff is deflated as soon as the patient can manage secretions and does not need mechanical ventilation. This change allows him or her to breathe through the tube and through the upper airway. Next, the tube is changed to an uncuffed tube. If this is tolerated, the size of the tube is gradually decreased. When a small fenestrated tube is placed (No. 4 or 6, depending on the size of the airway), the tube is capped so that all air passes through the upper airway and the fenestra, with none passing through the tube. Assess the patient to ensure adequate airflow around the tube when it is capped. The tube may be removed after he or she tolerates more than 24 hours of capping. Place a dry dressing over the stoma (which gradually heals on its own).

Another device used for the transition from tracheostomy to natural breathing is a *tracheostomy button*. The button maintains stoma patency and assists spontaneous breathing. The Kistner tracheostomy tube and Olympic tracheostomy button are examples of this type of device. To function, the button must fit properly. A disadvantage is the possibility of decannulation—the tube can dislodge from the trachea but remain in the neck tissues.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Patient-Centered Care

Your patient is a 66-year-old man with end-stage COPD. He was unable to be successfully extubated after several attempts and subsequently required a tracheostomy. He was weaned from the ventilator 7 days ago and transferred from the ICU to your floor yesterday. A fenestrated tracheostomy was placed by the surgical team before transfer. He has been successfully capped intermittently so that he can communicate with his family. Shortly after trach care is performed and his trach is capped by another member of the health care team, the patient's wife calls for help, stating that her husband is unable to breathe.

1. What is your first action?
2. What are some possible causes for the patient's inability to breathe? Explain how these causes affect breathing.
3. What else could you do to troubleshoot this problem?
4. What follow-up should occur?

Community-Based Care

By the time of discharge from the hospital, the patient should be able to provide self-care, which may include tracheostomy care, nutritional care, suctioning, and communication. Although education begins before surgery, most self-care is taught in the hospital. Teach the patient and family how to care for the tracheostomy tube. Review airway care, including cleaning and signs of infection. Teach clean suction technique, and review the plan of care.

Instruct the patient to use a shower shield over the tracheostomy tube when bathing to prevent water from entering the airway. Teach him or her to cover the airway loosely with a small cotton cloth to protect it during the day. Covering the permanent opening filters the air entering the stoma, keeps humidity in the airway, and enhances appearance. Attractive coverings are available as cotton scarves, decorative collars, crocheted bibs, and jewelry. Using colored seam binding for tracheostomy ties after the stoma has matured may enhance overall body image. Shirt or dress color can be matched or coordinated with seam bindings.

Teach the patient to increase humidity in the home. If it is prescribed, instruct him or her to instill normal saline into the artificial airway 10 to 15 times a day. Tell him or her to continue using the method of communication that began in the hospital and to wear a medical alert bracelet that identifies the inability to speak.

The health care team assesses specific discharge needs and makes referrals to home care agencies and durable medical equipment companies (for suction equipment and tracheostomy supplies). Follow-up visits occur early after discharge, but the home care nurse also is an important resource for the patient and family. This nurse initiates and coordinates the services of dietitians, nurses, speech pathologists, and social workers, as prescribed, and informs the patient and family of community resources that can offer support and friendship.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Self-managing tracheostomy care and oxygen therapy can be difficult for the older patient who has vision problems or difficulty with upper arm movement. Teach him or her to use magnifying lenses or glasses to ensure the proper setting on the oxygen gauge. Assess his or her ability to reach and manipulate the tracheostomy. If possible, work with a family member who can provide assistance during tracheostomy care.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of respiratory problems?

- Respirations rapid and shallow
- Respirations noisy
- Cannot speak more than 4 or 5 words without pausing for breath
- Change in cognition, acute confusion
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Skin cyanosis or pallor (in lighter-skinned patients)
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (in patients of any skin color)
- Tachycardia
- Patient appears to strain to catch breath
- Fatigue

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of a respiratory problem?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Checking the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings
- Checking most recent laboratory values for hematocrit, hemoglobin, and ABG levels
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing for the use of accessory muscles
- Assessing for the presence of thick or excessive secretions
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway

Respond by:

- Applying oxygen and assessing the patient's responses to this intervention
- Keeping the patient's head elevated to about 30 degrees
- Suctioning (oral, pharyngeal, endotracheal, tracheostomy), if needed

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Notifying the physician or Rapid Response Team
- Prioritizing and pacing activities to prevent fatigue

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe the patient for evidence of restored oxygenation (see [Chapter 29](#)).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use sterile technique when performing endotracheal or tracheal suctioning.
- Inspect the oral mucous membranes each shift for anyone who has an endotracheal tube.
- Keep a tracheostomy tube (and obturator) and tracheostomy insertion tray at the bedside for the first 72 hours after a tracheostomy has been performed.
- Never use oral suctioning equipment to suction an artificial airway.
- Use aspiration precautions for any patient with an altered level of consciousness or who has an endotracheal tube (see [Chart 30-5](#)).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Monitor the rate and depth of respiration at least every hour for any patient with hypercarbia and CO₂ narcosis who is receiving oxygen by mask or nasal cannula.
- Teach the patient and family how to perform tracheostomy care (see [Chart 30-3](#)).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Provide opportunity for the patient and family to express concerns about a change in breathing status or the possibility of intubation and mechanical ventilation.

- Teach family members ways to communicate with a patient who is intubated or being mechanically ventilated.
- Reassure patients who are intubated that the loss of speech is temporary.
- Encourage patients with permanent tracheostomies to become involved in self-care.

Physiological Integrity

- Apply oxygen to anyone who is hypoxemic.
- Ensure that oxygen therapy delivered to the patient is humidified appropriately.
- Monitor arterial blood gases (ABGs) and oxygen saturation of all patients receiving oxygen therapy.
- Assess the skin under the mask and under the plastic tubing every shift for patients receiving oxygen by mask.
- Assess the skin of the nares and under the elastic band every shift for patients receiving oxygen by nasal cannula.
- Observe any patient receiving oxygen at greater than a 50% concentration for early symptoms of oxygen toxicity (i.e., dyspnea, nonproductive cough, chest pain, GI upset).
- Use a manual resuscitation bag to ventilate the patient if the tracheostomy tube has dislodged or become decannulated.
- Assess the new tracheostomy stoma site at least once per shift for purulent drainage, redness, pain, and swelling as indicators of infection.
- Keep the tracheal cuff pressure between 14 and 20 mm Hg to prevent tissue injury.

CHAPTER

31

Care of Patients with Noninfectious Upper Respiratory Problems

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Anatomic Location of Sinuses
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Clip: Stridor

Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Supervise care delegated to licensed practical nurses/ licensed vocational nurses (LPNs/LVNs) or nursing assistants to patients who have risk factors for airway obstruction.
2. Act as a patient advocate for patients receiving oxygen or who have tracheostomies.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Assess the patient for risk factors for head and neck cancer.
4. Teach people how to avoid common risk factors for head and neck cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Support the patient and family in coping with changes in breathing status and the need for a laryngectomy.
6. Use an appropriate nonverbal form of communication for a patient with a laryngectomy.

Physiological Integrity

7. Perform a focused upper respiratory assessment and re-assessment to determine adequacy of oxygenation and tissue perfusion.

8. Prioritize nursing care needs of a patient after a nasoseptoplasty.
9. Recognize manifestations and care needs of a patient with an anterior nosebleed and of a patient with a posterior nosebleed.
10. Prioritize nursing care needs of a patient with facial trauma.
11. Describe the pathophysiology and the potential complications of sleep apnea.
12. Apply knowledge of anatomy to prevent aspiration in a patient with a tracheostomy.
13. Explain the techniques for wound care and laryngectomy care.
14. Use correct technique to suction via a tracheostomy or laryngectomy tube.
15. Teach the patient and family about home management of a laryngectomy stoma or tracheostomy.

The nose, sinuses, oropharynx, larynx, and trachea are the upper airway structures. They are important for *oxygenation* and *tissue perfusion* by providing the entrance site for air. Problems of the upper airways, especially the larynx and trachea, can interfere with oxygen delivery. The upper airway structures may have specific health problems

and also may be affected by other common acute and chronic disorders. Patients with upper respiratory problems are found in the community and many health care settings. *The major nursing priority with disorders of the upper respiratory tract is to promote oxygenation by ensuring a patent airway.*

DISORDERS OF THE NOSE AND SINUSES

FRACTURE OF THE NOSE

Pathophysiology

Nasal fractures often result from injuries received during falls, sports activities, car crashes, or physical assaults. If the bone or cartilage is not displaced, serious complications usually do not result from the fracture and treatment may not be needed. Displacement of either the bone or cartilage, however, can cause airway obstruction or cosmetic deformity and is a potential source of infection.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Document any nasal problem, including deviation, malaligned nasal bridge, a change in nasal breathing, crackling of the skin (*crepitus*) on palpation, bruising, and pain. Blood or clear fluid (cerebrospinal fluid [CSF]) rarely drains from one or both nares as a result of a simple nasal fracture and, if present, indicates a more serious injury (e.g., skull fracture). CSF can be differentiated from normal nasal secretions because CSF contains glucose that will test positive with a dipstick. When CSF dries on a piece of filter paper, a yellow “halo” appears as a ring at the dried edge of the fluid. X-rays are not always useful in the diagnosis of simple nasal fractures.

INTERVENTIONS

The health care provider performs a simple **closed reduction** (manipulation of the bones by palpation to position them in proper alignment) of the nasal fracture using local or general anesthesia within the first 24 hours after injury. After 24 hours, the fracture is more difficult to reduce because of edema and scar formation. Then reduction may be delayed for several days until edema is gone. Simple closed fractures may not need surgical intervention. Management focuses on pain relief and cold compresses to decrease swelling.

Rhinoplasty

Reduction and surgery may be needed for severe fractures or for those that do not heal properly. **Rhinoplasty** is a surgical reconstruction of the nose. It can be performed to repair a fractured nose and also is a common plastic surgery procedure to change the shape of the nose. The patient returns from surgery with packing in both nostrils; this packing prevents bleeding and provides support for the reconstructed nose. The gauze packing is treated with an antibiotic to reduce the risk for infection. A “moustache” dressing (or drip pad), often a folded 2 × 2 gauze pad, is usually placed under the nose (Fig. 31-1). A splint or cast may cover the nose for better alignment and protection. The nurse or patient changes the drip pad as necessary.

After surgery, observe for edema and bleeding. Check vital signs every 4 hours until the patient is discharged. The patient with uncomplicated rhinoplasty is discharged the day of surgery. Instruct him or her and the family about the routine care described below.

Instruct the patient to stay in a semi-Fowler’s position and to move slowly. Teach him or her to rest and use cool



FIG. 31-1 Immediate postoperative appearance of a patient who has undergone rhinoplasty. Note the splint and gauze drip pad (moustache dressing).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assessing how often the patient swallows after nasal surgery is a priority because repeated swallowing may indicate posterior nasal bleeding. Use a penlight to examine the throat for bleeding, and notify the surgeon if bleeding is present.

compresses on the nose, eyes, and face to help reduce swelling and bruising. If a general anesthetic was used, the patient may eat soft foods once he or she is alert and the gag reflex has returned. Urge the patient to drink at least 2500 mL/day.

To prevent bleeding, teach the patient to limit Valsalva maneuvers (e.g., forceful coughing or straining during a bowel movement), not to sniff upward or blow the nose, and not to sneeze with the mouth closed for the first few days after the packing is removed. Laxatives or stool softeners may be prescribed to ease bowel movement. Instruct the patient to avoid aspirin and other NSAIDs to prevent bleeding. Antibiotics may be prescribed to prevent infection. Recommend the use of a humidifier to prevent drying of the mucosa. Explain that edema and bruising last for weeks and that the final surgical result will be evident in 6 to 12 months.

Nasoseptoplasty

Nasoseptoplasty, or **submucous resection (SMR)**, may be needed to straighten a deviated septum when chronic symptoms (e.g., “stuffy” nose, snoring, sinusitis) or discomfort occurs. Most adults have a slight nasal septum deviation with no symptoms. Major deviations, however, may obstruct the nasal passages or interfere with airflow and sinus drainage. The deviated section of the cartilage and bone is removed as an ambulatory surgical procedure. The amount resected depends on the deformity. Newer surgical procedures for a severely deviated septum include actual removal of part of the septal cartilage. The cartilage is then straightened separate from the body (extracorporeal) and then replaced into the nose along with sutures and struts for maintaining shape and position (Jang & Kwon, 2010). Nursing care is similar to that for a rhinoplasty.

EPISTAXIS

Pathophysiology

Epistaxis (nosebleed) is a common problem because of the many capillaries within the nose. Nosebleeds occur as a result of trauma, hypertension, blood dyscrasia (e.g., leukemia), inflammation, tumor, decreased humidity, nose blowing, nose picking, chronic cocaine use, and procedures such as nasogastric suctioning. Men usually are affected more often than women. Older adults tend to bleed most often from the posterior portion of the nose.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient often reports that the bleeding started after sneezing or blowing the nose. Document the amount and color of the blood, and take the vital signs. Ask the patient about the number, duration, and causes of previous bleeding episodes. Record this information in the patient's medical record.

Chart 31-1 lists the best practices for emergency care of the patient with a nosebleed. An additional intervention for

CHART 31-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of a Patient with an Anterior Nosebleed

- Maintain Standard Precautions or Body Substance Precautions.
- Position the patient upright and leaning forward to prevent blood from entering the stomach and possible aspiration.
- Reassure the patient and attempt to keep him or her quiet to reduce anxiety and blood pressure.
- Apply direct lateral pressure to the nose for 10 minutes, and apply ice or cool compresses to the nose and face if possible.
- If nasal packing is necessary, loosely pack both nares with gauze or nasal tampons.
- To prevent rebleeding from dislodging clots, instruct the patient to not blow the nose for 24 hours after the bleeding stops.
- Seek medical assistance if these measures are ineffective or if the bleeding occurs frequently.

use at home or in the emergency department is a special nasal plug that contains an agent to promote blood clotting (sold by HemCon). The plug expands on contact with blood and compresses mucosal blood vessels. This device can be removed in an hour.

Medical attention is needed if the nosebleed does not respond to these interventions. In such cases, the affected capillaries may be cauterized with silver nitrate or electrocautery and the nose packed. Anterior packing controls bleeding from the anterior nasal cavity.

Posterior nasal bleeding is an emergency because it cannot be easily reached and the patient may lose a lot of blood quickly. Posterior packing, epistaxis catheters (nasal pressure tubes), or a gel tampon are used to stop bleeding that originates in the posterior nasal region. With packing, the health care provider positions a large gauze pack in the posterior nasal cavity above the throat, threads the attached string through the nose, and tapes it to the patient's cheek to prevent pack movement. Epistaxis catheters look like very short (about 6 inches) urinary catheters (Fig. 31-2, A). These tubes have an exterior balloon along the tube length in addition to an anchoring balloon on the end. The tubes are inserted into both nares. The anchoring balloon is inflated first to keep the tubes in place. Then the pressure balloons are inflated carefully for both tubes at the same time to compress bleeding vessels (Fig. 31-2, B). Placement of posterior packing or pressure tubes is uncomfortable, and the airway may be obstructed if the pack slips. Most patients who have posterior nasal bleeding are hospitalized (Rushing, 2009).

Observe the patient for respiratory distress and for tolerance of the packing or tubes. Humidity, oxygen, bedrest, and antibiotics may be prescribed. Opioid drugs may be prescribed for pain. Assess patients receiving opioids at least hourly for gag and cough reflexes. Oral care and hydration are important because of mouth breathing. Use pulse oximetry to monitor for hypoxemia. The tubes or packing is usually removed after 1 to 3 days.

After the tubes or packing is removed, teach the patient and family the following interventions to use at home for comfort and safety. Petroleum jelly can be applied to the nares for lubrication and comfort. Nasal saline sprays and humidification add moisture and prevent rebleeding. Instruct the

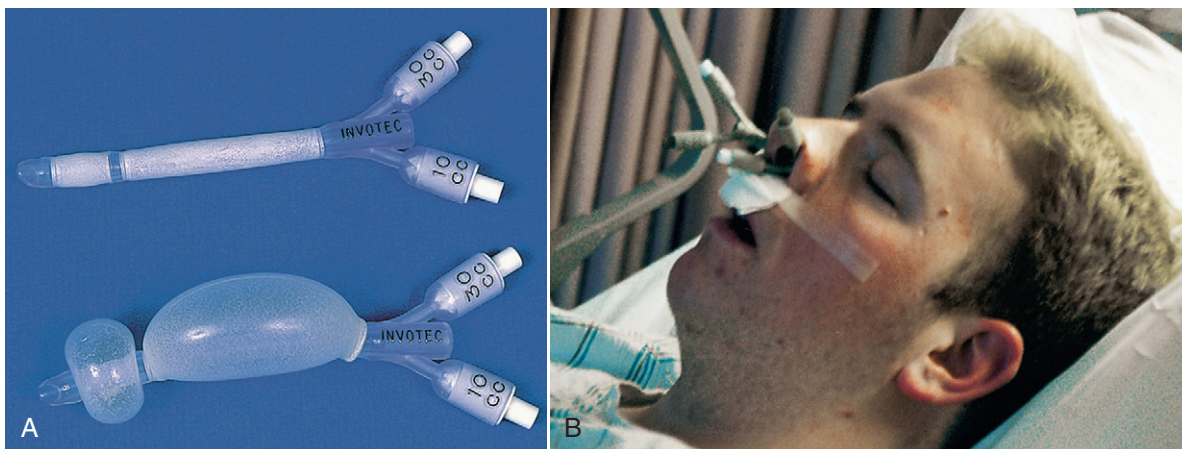


FIG. 31-2 A, The Ultra-Stat epistaxis catheter. B, Patient with epistaxis catheters in place to control a posterior nasal bleed.

patient to avoid vigorous nose blowing, the use of aspirin or other NSAIDs, and strenuous activities such as heavy lifting for at least 1 month (Rushing, 2009).

NASAL POLYPS

Nasal polyps are benign, grapelike clusters of mucous membrane and connective tissue. They often occur bilaterally and are caused by irritation to the nasal mucosa or sinuses, allergies, or infection (chronic sinusitis). Large polyps may obstruct the airway. Manifestations include obstructed nasal breathing, increased nasal discharge, and a change in voice quality.

Benign nasal polyps are managed with nasally inhaled steroids followed by surgical removal (**polypectomy**), with standard or laser surgery, performed under local or general anesthesia. Observe the patient for bleeding after surgery. The nostrils are usually packed with gauze for 24 hours after surgery. Polyps often recur after treatment.

CANCER OF THE NOSE AND SINUSES

Tumors of the nasal cavities and sinuses are rare and may be either benign or malignant. Malignant tumors can occur at all ages, but the peak incidence is 40 to 45 years of age in men and 60 to 65 years of age in women. Asian Americans have a higher incidence of nasopharyngeal cancer. This type of cancer is more common among people with chronic exposure to wood dusts, dusts from textiles, leather dusts, flour, nickel and chromium dust, mustard gas, and radium. Cigarette smoking along with these exposures increases the risk (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2011).

The onset of sinus cancer is slow, and manifestations resemble sinusitis. Thus the patient may have advanced disease at diagnosis. Manifestations of nasal or sinus cancer include persistent nasal obstruction, drainage, bloody discharge, and pain that persists after treatment of sinusitis. Lymph node enlargement often occurs on the side with tumor mass. Tumor location is identified with x-ray, computed tomography (CT), or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). A biopsy is performed to confirm the diagnosis.

Surgical removal of all or part of the tumor is the main treatment for nasopharyngeal cancers. It is usually combined with radiation therapy, especially intensity modulated radiation therapy (IMRT). This type of radiation breaks up the single beam into thousands of smaller beams that allow better focus on the tumor (see Chapter 24). The specific surgery depends on tumor size, location, and degree of invasion. Problems after surgery include a change in body image or speech and altered nutrition. These problems are most common when the maxilla and floor of the nose are involved in the surgery. Patients often also have changes in taste and smell.

Provide general postoperative care (see Chapter 18), including maintaining a patent airway, monitoring for hemorrhage, providing wound care, assessing nutritional status, and performing tracheostomy care (if needed). (See Chapter 30 for tracheostomy care.) Perform careful mouth and sinus cavity care with saline irrigations using an electronic irrigation system (e.g., Waterpik, Sonicare) or a syringe. Assess the patient for pain and infection. Good nutrition is essential after surgery to promote healing. Collaborate with the

dietitian to help the patient make food selections that promote healing.

Chemotherapy may be used in conjunction with surgery and radiation for some tumors. The most commonly used agents for cancer of the nose and sinuses include carboplatin, cisplatin, 5-fluorouracil, docetaxel, and paclitaxel, although other drugs may be used depending on the features of the tumor. Chapter 24 discusses care of the patient undergoing chemotherapy.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client who works in a furniture factory reports that he is worried about his health because two co-workers have been diagnosed with sinus cancer in the past year. Which suggestion does the nurse make to reduce this client's risk for sinus cancer?

- A. Avoid the use of over-the-counter nasal sprays.
- B. Wear a fine particulate mask when working with wood.
- C. Spend as much time as possible outdoors, away from cities.
- D. Wear gloves when working with paint thinners and liquid glue.

FACIAL TRAUMA

Pathophysiology

Facial trauma is described by the specific bones (e.g., mandibular, maxillary, orbital, nasal fractures) and the side of the face involved. Mandibular (lower jaw) fractures can occur at any point on the jaw and are common facial fractures. *Le Fort I* is a nasoethmoid complex fracture. *Le Fort II* is a maxillary and nasoethmoid complex fracture. *Le Fort III* combines I and II plus an orbital-zygoma fracture, called “craniofacial disjunction” because the midface has no connection to the skull. The rich facial blood supply allows extensive bleeding and bruising.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The priority action to take for a patient with facial trauma is *airway assessment*. Manifestations of airway obstruction include stridor, shortness of breath, dyspnea, anxiety, restlessness, hypoxia, **hypercarbia** (elevated blood levels of carbon dioxide), decreased oxygen saturation, cyanosis, and loss of consciousness. After establishing the airway, assess the site of trauma for bleeding and possible fractures. Check for soft-tissue edema, facial asymmetry, pain, or leakage of spinal fluid through the ears or nose, indicating a temporal bone or basilar skull fracture. Assess vision and eye movement because orbital and maxillary fractures can entrap the eye. Check behind the ears (mastoid area) for extensive bruising, known as the “battle sign.” Because facial trauma can occur with spinal trauma and skull fractures, cranial computed tomography, facial series, and cervical spine x-rays are obtained.

INTERVENTIONS

The priority action is to establish and maintain a patent airway. Anticipate the need for emergency intubation, **tracheotomy** (surgical incision into the trachea to create an airway), or **cricothyroidotomy** (creation of a temporary airway by

making a small opening in the throat between the thyroid cartilage and the cricoid cartilage). Upon patient arrival, care focuses on establishing an airway, controlling hemorrhage, and assessing for the extent of injury. If shock is present, fluid resuscitation and identification of bleeding sites are started immediately.

Time is critical in stabilizing the patient who has head and neck trauma. Early response and treatment by special services (e.g., trauma team, maxillofacial surgeon, general surgeon, otolaryngologist, plastic surgeon, dentist) optimize the patient's recovery.

Stabilizing the fractured segment of a jaw fracture allows the teeth to heal in proper alignment. This process involves **fixed occlusion** (wiring the jaws together in the mouth closed position). The patient remains in fixed occlusion for 6 to 10 weeks. Antibiotic therapy may be prescribed because of oral wound contamination. Treatment delay, tooth infection, or poor oral care may cause mandibular bone infection, which may require surgical **débridement** (removal of dead tissue), IV antibiotic therapy, and a longer period with the jaws in a fixed position.

More extensive jaw fractures may require open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) procedures. Compression plates and reconstruction plates with screws may be applied. Plates may be made of stainless steel, titanium, or Vitallium. If the mandibular fracture is repaired with titanium plates, teach the patient about oral care, soft-diet restrictions, and follow-up care with a dentist. These plates are permanent and do not interfere with MRI studies.

Facial fractures may be repaired with microplating surgical systems that involve bone substitutes (e.g., BoneSource). These shaping plates hold the bone fragments in place until new bone growth occurs. Bone cells grow into the bone substitute and re-matrix into a stable bone support. The plates may remain in place permanently or may be removed after healing.

Fixation methods may use resorbable devices (plates and screws) to hold tissues in place. These devices are made from a plastic-like material that retains its integrity for about 8 weeks and then slowly biodegrades. Resorbable devices are not used when the area has previously been irradiated or for patients who smoke or who have drug or alcohol dependence, uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, immunosuppression, or impaired cardiac function, all of which impair healing.

Inner maxillary fixation (IMF) is another method of securing a mandibular fracture. The bones are realigned and then wired in place with the bite closed. Nondisplaced aligned fractures can be repaired in a clinic or office using local dental anesthesia. General anesthesia is used to repair displaced or complex fractures or fractures that occur with other facial bone fractures.

After surgery, teach the patient about oral care with an irrigating device, such as a Waterpik or Sonicare. If the patient has inner maxillary fixation, teach self-management with wires in place, including a dental liquid diet. If the patient vomits, watch for aspiration because of the patient's inability to open the jaws to allow ejection of the emesis. Teach him or her how to cut the wires if emesis occurs. *Instruct the patient to keep wire cutters with him or her at all times in case this emergency arises.* If the wires are cut, instruct him or her to return to the surgeon for rewiring as soon as possible to reinstitute fixation.

Nutrition is important and difficult for a patient with fractures because of oral fixation, pain, and surgery. Collaborate with the dietitian for patient teaching and support.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which nursing action has the highest priority when caring for a client with facial trauma?

- A. Managing pain
- B. Providing nutrition
- C. Assessing self-image
- D. Maintaining a patent airway

OBSTRUCTIVE SLEEP APNEA

Pathophysiology

Sleep apnea is a breathing disruption during sleep that lasts at least 10 seconds and occurs a minimum of 5 times in an hour. Although sleep apnea can have a neurologic origin, the most common form occurs as a result of upper airway obstruction by the soft palate or tongue. Factors that contribute to sleep apnea include obesity, a large uvula, a short neck, smoking, enlarged tonsils or adenoids, and oropharyngeal edema (Berry, 2008). Men are affected more often than women, and the risk increases with age (Townsend-Roccichelli et al., 2010).

During sleep, the muscles relax and the tongue and neck structures are displaced. As a result, the upper airway is obstructed but chest movement is unimpaired. The apnea increases blood carbon dioxide levels and decreases the pH. These blood gas changes stimulate neural centers. The sleeper awakens after 10 seconds or longer of apnea and corrects the obstruction, and respiration resumes. After he or she goes back to sleep, the cycle begins again, sometimes as often as every 5 minutes (Berry, 2008).

This cyclic pattern of disrupted sleep prevents the deep sleep needed for best rest. Thus the person may have excessive daytime sleepiness, an inability to concentrate, and irritability.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Patients are often unaware that they have sleep apnea. The disorder should be suspected for any person who has persistent daytime sleepiness or reports "waking up tired," particularly if he or she also snores heavily. Other manifestations include irritability and personality changes. Sleep apnea may be verified by family members who observe the problem when the person sleeps on his or her back. A complete health assessment should be performed when excessive daytime sleepiness is a problem.

The most accurate test for sleep apnea is polysomnography (PSG) performed during an overnight sleep study. The patient is directly observed while wearing a variety of monitoring equipment, including an electroencephalograph (EEG), an electrocardiograph (ECG), a pulse oximeter, and an electromyograph (EMG). This test determines the depth

of sleep, type of sleep, respiratory effort, oxygen saturation, and muscle movement.

INTERVENTIONS

A change in sleeping position or weight loss may reduce or correct mild sleep apnea. Position-fixing devices may prevent subluxation of the tongue and neck structures and reduce obstruction. Severe sleep apnea requires nonsurgical or surgical methods to prevent obstruction.

A common method to prevent airway collapse is the use of noninvasive, positive-pressure ventilation (NPPV) to hold open the upper airways. A nasal mask or full-face mask delivery system allows mechanical delivery of either bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP), autotitrating positive airway pressure (APAP), or nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP). With BiPAP, a machine delivers a set inspiratory positive airway pressure at the beginning of each breath. As the patient begins to exhale, the machine delivers a lower end expiratory pressure. These two pressures hold open the upper airways. With APAP, the machine adjusts continuously, resetting the pressure throughout the breathing cycle to meet the patient's needs. Nasal CPAP delivers a set positive airway pressure continuously during each cycle of inhalation and exhalation. For any positive-pressure ventilation through a facemask during sleep, a small electric compressor is required. Proper fit of the mask over the nose and mouth or just over the nose is key to successful treatment (see Fig. 30-9 in Chapter 30). Although noisy, these methods are accepted by most patients after an adjustment period.

One drug has been approved to help manage the daytime sleepiness associated with sleep apnea. Modafinil (Attenace, Provigil) is helpful for patients who have *narcolepsy* (uncontrolled daytime sleep) from sleep apnea by promoting daytime wakefulness. This action does *not* treat the cause of sleep apnea.

Surgical intervention may involve a simple adenoidectomy, uvulectomy, or remodeling of the entire posterior oropharynx (uvulopalatopharyngoplasty [UPP]). Both conventional and laser surgeries are used for this purpose (Robinson et al., 2009). A tracheostomy may be needed for very severe sleep apnea that is not relieved by more moderate interventions.

DISORDERS OF THE LARYNX

VOCAL CORD PARALYSIS

Vocal fold (cord) paralysis may result from injury, trauma, or diseases that affect the larynx, laryngeal nerves, or vagus nerve. Prolonged intubation with an endotracheal (ET) tube may cause temporary or permanent paralysis. Paralysis may occur in patients with neurologic disorders. Damage to the vagus nerve (by chest injury), brain, or brainstem may lead to nerve dysfunction. The laryngeal nerves may be damaged from trauma or disorders that involve the chest, esophagus, or thyroid. Paralysis of both vocal cords may result from direct injury, stroke involving the brainstem, or total thyroidectomy.

Vocal fold paralysis may affect both cords or only one. When only one vocal cord is involved (most common), the airway remains patent but the voice is affected.

Manifestations of open bilateral vocal cord paralysis include hoarseness; a breathy, weak voice; and aspiration of food. *Bilateral closed vocal cord paralysis causes airway obstruction and is an emergency if the symptoms are severe and the patient cannot compensate. Stridor is the major manifestation.*

Securing an airway is the main intervention. Place the patient in a high-Fowler's position to aid in breathing and proper alignment of airway structures. Assess for airway obstruction.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Immediately notify the Rapid Response Team if dyspnea with stridor occurs. Emergency endotracheal intubation or tracheostomy may be needed.

Various surgical procedures can improve the voice. One simple procedure for open vocal cord paresis involves injecting polytetrafluoroethylene (Teflon) into the affected cord so it enlarges toward the unaffected cord. This technique improves closure during speaking and eating.

The patient with open cord paralysis is at risk for aspiration because the airway is open during swallowing. Teach him or her to hold the breath during swallowing to allow the larynx to rise, close, and push food back into the esophagus. Teach the patient to tuck the chin down and tilt the forehead forward during swallowing. Indications of aspiration include immediate coughing on swallowing of liquids or solids, a “wet”-sounding voice, and “tearing up” or watery eyes on swallowing. Chest x-rays are used to diagnose aspiration pneumonia.

VOCAL CORD NODULES AND POLYPS

Nodules are enlarged, fibrous tissues caused by infectious processes or overuse of the voice. They often occur where the vocal cords touch during speech. People most affected are those who often speak loudly, such as teachers, coaches, sports fans, and singers.

Polyps are edematous masses that occur most often in smokers and people with allergies. Vocal cysts also may occur. Nodules and polyps are painless. The main manifestation is painless hoarseness because of the loss of coordinated vocal cord closure (Fig. 31-3).

Management of cord nodules or polyps focuses on patient education. Instruct the patient about smoking cessation and the importance of voice rest. Treatment includes not speaking, especially not whispering, and avoiding heavy lifting. Stool softeners are used to avoid bearing down during elimination, which closes the glottis. Humidifying the air soothes the cords and prevents overdrying. Speech and language therapy is used to help the patient learn to reduce speech intensity and may make surgery unnecessary.

If hoarseness is not relieved by voice rest or speech and language therapy, the surgeon may remove the nodules or polyps using laryngoscopy. Laser and surgical resection are used to remove the membrane of the affected cord. If both cords are involved, one cord is usually allowed to heal before the other cord is resected. Before these ambulatory surgical procedures, teach the patient about the care techniques needed for after surgery.

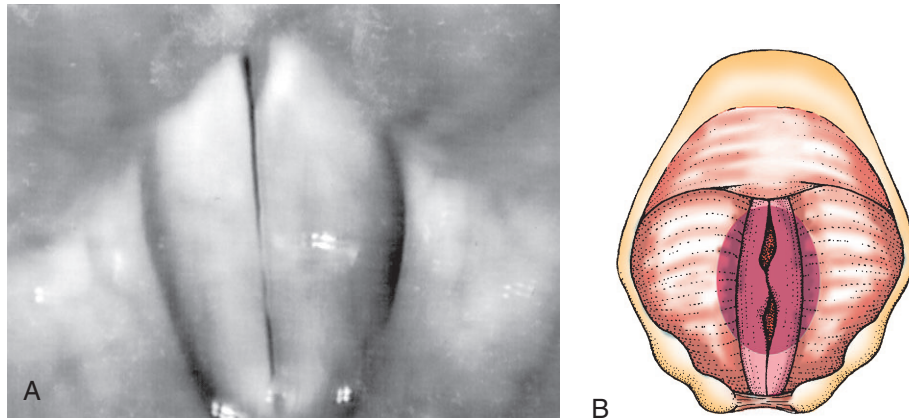


FIG. 31-3 **A**, Close-up view of normal vocal cords in phonation. **B**, Vocal cord nodules and polyps prevent approximation of the vocal cords. Hoarseness results.

After surgery, the patient must maintain complete voice rest for about 14 days to promote healing. [Chart 31-2](#) lists methods for nonverbal communication. Teach about alternative methods of communication such as a slate, picture board, pen and paper, alphabet board, or programmable speech-generating device ([Rodriguez & Rowe, 2010](#)). Place a sign on the patient's door, over the bed, and on the intercom system to help implement voice rest.

LARYNGEAL TRAUMA

Laryngeal trauma occurs with a crushing or direct blow injury, fracture, or injury induced by prolonged endotracheal intubation. Manifestations include difficulty breathing (**dyspnea**), inability to produce sound (**aphonia**), hoarseness, and **subcutaneous emphysema** (air present in the subcutaneous tissue). Bleeding from the airway (**hemoptysis**) may occur, depending on the location of the trauma. The health care provider performs a direct visual examination of the larynx by laryngoscopy or fiberoptic laryngoscopy to determine the extent of the injury.

Management of patients with laryngeal injuries consists of assessing the airway and monitoring vital signs (including respiratory status and pulse oximetry) every 15 to 30 minutes. *Maintaining a patent airway is a priority.* Apply oxygen and humidification as prescribed to maintain adequate oxygen saturation. Manifestations of respiratory difficulty include tachypnea, nasal flaring, anxiety, sternal retraction, shortness of breath, restlessness, decreased oxygen saturation, decreased level of consciousness, and stridor.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient has respiratory difficulty, stay with him or her and instruct other trauma team members or the Rapid Response Team to prepare for an emergency intubation or tracheotomy.

Surgical intervention is needed for lacerations of the mucous membranes, cartilage exposure, and cord paralysis. Laryngeal repair is performed as soon as possible to prevent laryngeal stenosis and to cover any exposed cartilage. An artificial airway may be needed.

OTHER UPPER AIRWAY DISORDERS

UPPER AIRWAY OBSTRUCTION

Pathophysiology

Upper airway obstruction is a life-threatening emergency in which airflow is interrupted through the nose, mouth, pharynx, or larynx. Early recognition is essential to prevent complications, including respiratory arrest. Causes of upper airway obstruction include:

- Tongue edema (surgery, trauma, angioedema as an allergic response to a drug)
- Tongue occlusion (e.g., loss of gag reflex, loss of muscle tone, unconsciousness, coma)
- Laryngeal edema
- Peritonsillar and pharyngeal abscess
- Head and neck cancer
- Thick secretions
- Stroke and cerebral edema
- Smoke inhalation edema
- Facial, tracheal, or laryngeal trauma
- Foreign-body aspiration
- Burns of the head or neck area
- Anaphylaxis

One preventable cause of airway obstruction leading to asphyxiation is inspissated oral and nasopharyngeal secretions ([Prahlow et al., 2009](#)). In this condition, poor oral hygiene leads to thickening and hardening of secretions that can completely block the airway and lead to death. Proper assessment and nursing care can eliminate this cause of airway obstruction. Patients at highest risk are nursing home residents who have an altered mental status and level of consciousness, are dehydrated, are unable to communicate, are unable to cough effectively, or have any other risk factors for aspiration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess the oral care needs of the patient with risk factors for inspissated secretions daily. Ensure that whoever provides oral care understands the importance and the correct techniques for preventing secretion buildup and airway obstruction.

CHART 31-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Communicating with a Patient Who Is Unable to Speak

- Assess the patient's reading skills and cognition.
- Determine in what language (languages) the patient is most fluent.
- Collaborate with a speech and language pathologist.
- If the patient requires vision-enhancing devices or hearing-enhancing devices, be sure these are available and in use.
- Provide the patient with a variety of techniques to practice before verbal skills are lost to determine with which one(s) the patient feels most comfortable. These may include:
 - Alphabet board
 - Picture board
 - Paper and pencil
 - Magic Slate
 - Hand signals/gestures
 - Computer with e-triloquist program
 - Programmable speech-generating devices (text-to-speech communication aid)
- Reinforce to the patient the technique for esophageal speech presented by the speech and language pathologist, and provide the time for practice.
- Use a normal tone of voice to talk with the patient (unless hearing is a pre-existing problem, a change in the ability to speak does not interfere with the patient's ability to hear).
- Ensure that the call-light board at the nurses' station indicates a non-speaking patient.
- Teach the patient to make noise to indicate immediate attention is needed at the bedside when he or she signals by call light. Such noises can include tapping the siderail with a spoon, making clicking noises with the tongue, using a bell, or working a noisemaker. Be sure that whatever method is selected is listed on the call-light board.
- When face-to-face with the patient:
 - Phrase questions in a "yes" or "no" format.
 - Watch the patient's face for indications of understanding or the lack of it.
 - Listen attentively to any sound the patient makes.
- If writing is selected as the method to communicate, assess whether the patient is right-handed or left-handed and ensure appropriate writing materials are within reach. Use the other arm for IV placement.
- Ensure the preferred method of communication is documented in the patient record and is communicated to all care providers.
- Encourage the family to work with the patient in the use of the selected method.
- Provide praise and encouragement.
- Do not avoid talking with the patient.
- Allow the patient to set the pace for communication.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Airway obstruction is frightening, and prompt care is essential to prevent a partial obstruction from progressing to a complete obstruction. Partial obstruction produces subtle or general manifestations such as diaphoresis, tachycardia, and elevated blood pressure. Persistent or unexplained symptoms must be evaluated even though the symptoms are vague. Diagnostic procedures include chest or neck x-rays, laryngoscopic examination, and computed tomography.

Observe for hypoxia and hypercarbia, restlessness, increasing anxiety, sternal retractions, a "seesawing" chest,

abdominal movements, or a feeling of impending doom related to actual air hunger. Use pulse oximetry for ongoing monitoring of oxygen saturation. Continually assess for stridor, cyanosis, and changes in level of consciousness.

INTERVENTIONS

Assess for the cause of the obstruction. When the obstruction is due to the tongue falling back or excessive secretions, slightly extend the patient's head and neck and insert a nasal or an oral airway. Suction to remove obstructing secretions. If the obstruction is caused by a foreign body, perform abdominal thrusts (Fig. 31-4).

Upper airway obstruction may require emergency procedures such as cricothyroidotomy, endotracheal intubation, or tracheotomy. Direct laryngoscopy may be performed before or with these procedures to determine the cause of obstruction or to remove foreign bodies.

Cricothyroidotomy is an emergency procedure often performed outside the hospital by emergency medical personnel. A **cricothyroidotomy** is a stab wound at the cricothyroid membrane between the thyroid cartilage and the cricoid cartilage (see Fig. 29-4). Any hollow tube—but preferably a tracheostomy tube—can be placed through the opening to hold this airway open until a tracheotomy can be performed. This procedure is used when it is the *only* way to secure an airway. Another emergency procedure to bypass an obstruction is the insertion of a 14-gauge needle directly into the cricoid space to allow air flow into and out of the lungs.

Endotracheal intubation is performed by inserting a tube into the trachea via the nose (**nasotracheal**) or mouth (**orotracheal**) by a physician, anesthesia provider, or other specially trained personnel.

Tracheotomy is a surgical procedure and takes about 5 to 10 minutes to perform. It is best performed in the operating room (OR) with the patient under local or general anesthesia but can be performed at the bedside. Local anesthesia is used if there is concern that the airway will be lost during the induction of anesthesia. A tracheotomy is reserved for the patient who cannot be easily intubated with an endotracheal tube. An emergency tracheotomy can establish an airway in less than 2 minutes. See Chapter 30 for a discussion of care of the patient with a tracheotomy.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Quality Improvement; Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 42-year-old woman with a traumatic brain injury from a car crash who has been at a skilled nursing/rehabilitation center for 3 weeks. During that time, she has been unresponsive. Her family reports that the patient has very bad breath and seems to have food in her mouth (she is fed by gastrostomy tube). When you assess the patient's mouth, you find that she has many layers of thickened material on all aspects of her palate, teeth, and tongue. When you check with the nursing assistant who is assigned to her, the nursing assistant admits that she and other assistants have not been performing oral care for this patient, stating "Her mouth is so gross I would rather change her soiled diapers than brush her teeth."

1. What should you do first?
2. What should you say to the nursing assistants?
3. What potential problems could occur related to this situation?
4. What steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier?



With the conscious victim standing or sitting, place your fist between the victim's lower rib cage and navel. Wrap the palm of your hand around your fist. A quick inward, upward thrust expels the air remaining in the victim's lungs, and with it the foreign body. If the first thrust is unsuccessful, repeat several thrusts in rapid succession until the foreign body is expelled or until the victim loses consciousness.



With the unconscious victim lying supine, straddle the victim's thighs. Place one hand on top of the other as shown, with the heel of the bottom hand just above the victim's navel. Quickly thrust inward and upward, toward the victim's head.

FIG. 31-4 The abdominal thrust maneuver (formerly known as the *Heimlich maneuver*) for relief of upper airway obstruction caused by a foreign body.

Patients receiving mechanical ventilation for upper airway obstruction or respiratory failure may require a tracheostomy after 7 or more days of continuous intubation. In such cases, a tracheotomy is performed to prevent laryngeal injury by the endotracheal tube.

NECK TRAUMA

Neck injuries may be caused by a knife, gunshot, or traumatic accident. The patient with neck trauma may have more than one injury, including cardiovascular, respiratory, intestinal, and neurologic damage. The final outcome of this type of injury depends on initial assessment and care. Consult a critical care textbook and see [Chapter 47](#) for more detailed information.

The priority nursing care for a patient with neck trauma is assessing for and maintaining a patent airway. After airway patency is ensured, assess for bleeding or impending shock.

Perform a neurologic assessment for mental status, sensory level, and motor function. Injury to the carotid artery may result in death, stroke, or paralysis from disruption of blood flow to the brain (see [Chapter 43](#)). A carotid angiogram may be needed to rule out vascular injuries.

Esophagus injury may occur with neck trauma. Assess for chest pain and tenderness, oral bleeding, and **crepitus** (crackling sounds when palpating the skin). A barium or meglumine diatrizoate (Gastrografin) swallow may be needed to rule out an esophageal perforation injury.

Cervical spine injuries often occur at the same time as a neck injury (see [Chapter 45](#)). Obstruction can occur as a

result of the initial injury or from swelling after surgery to repair the injury ([Tocco, 2008](#)). Health care personnel must take great care not to make these injuries worse by causing neck movement while establishing the airway using the jaw-thrust maneuver. Prepare to assist in emergency intubation, cricothyrotomy, or tracheotomy to establish a patent airway. Interventions for patients in shock are detailed in [Chapter 39](#).

HEAD AND NECK CANCER

Pathophysiology

Head and neck cancer can disrupt breathing, eating, facial appearance, self-image, speech, and communication. This form of cancer can be devastating, even when treated successfully. The care needs for patients with these problems are complex, requiring a coordinated and comprehensive team approach. The patient can receive appropriate care only after the location and size of the tumor are accurately identified.

Head and neck cancers are usually squamous cell carcinomas and are slow growing. They are curable when treated early. The prognosis for those who have more advanced disease at diagnosis depends on the extent and location of the tumor. Untreated cancer of the head and neck is a fatal disease within 2 years of diagnosis ([ACS, 2011](#)).

The cancer begins when the mucosa is chronically irritated and becomes tougher and thicker (*squamous metaplasia*), often with a keratin layer (*keratosis*). At the same time, genes controlling cell growth are damaged, allowing excessive growth of these abnormal cells, which eventually

become malignant. These lesions may then be seen as white, patchy lesions (**leukoplakia**) or red, velvety patches (**erythroplakia**).

Head and neck cancer first spreads (**metastasizes**) into nearby structures, such as lymph nodes, muscle, and bone. Later spread is systemic to distant sites, usually to the lungs or liver.

The cancer type and stage are determined by cellular analysis. Earlier stage cancers are described as *carcinoma in situ* and *well differentiated*. Without treatment, cancers progress to be *moderately differentiated* and, finally, *poorly differentiated*. Most head and neck cancers arise from mucous membrane and skin, but they also can start from salivary glands, the thyroid, or other structures. Treatment is based on tumor cell type and degree of spread at diagnosis.

Etiology

The two most important risk factors for head and neck cancer are tobacco and alcohol use, especially in combination. Other risk factors include voice abuse, chronic laryngitis, exposure to chemicals, dusts, and poor oral hygiene. Other possible risk factors are long-term or severe gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) and infection with the human papilloma virus (Calloway, 2011).

Incidence/Prevalence

The frequency of head and neck carcinoma is increasing in North America. About 53,810 new cases of oral, pharyngeal, and laryngeal cancers are diagnosed each year and account for more than 13,000 deaths per year (ACS, 2011; Canadian Cancer Society, 2010). They affect men more often than women and are most common in people older than 60 years.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

The patient may have difficulty speaking because of hoarseness, shortness of breath, tumor bulk, and pain. Be sensitive to these difficulties during the interview, and pace the interview to avoid tiring the patient.

Ask about tobacco and alcohol use, history of acute or chronic laryngitis or pharyngitis, oral sores, and lumps in the neck. Calculate the patient's pack-years of smoking history (see Chapter 29). Ask about alcohol intake (how many drinks per day and for how many years). Showing concern and using a "matter-of-fact" approach during the interview may help make the patient more comfortable with these questions. Also ask about exposure to pollutants.

Assess problems related to risk factors. For example, nutrition may be poor because of alcohol intake and impaired liver function. Assess dietary habits and any weight loss. Ask about any chronic lung disease, which may have an impact on the patient's breathing pattern.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Table 31-1 lists the warning signs of head and neck cancer. With laryngeal cancer, painless hoarseness may occur because of tumor size and an inability for the vocal cords

TABLE 31-1 WARNING SIGNS OF HEAD AND NECK CANCER

- Pain
- Lump in the mouth, throat, or neck
- Difficulty swallowing
- Color changes in the mouth or tongue to red, white, gray, dark brown, or black
- Oral lesion or sore that does not heal in 2 weeks
- Persistent or unexplained oral bleeding
- Numbness of the mouth, lips, or face
- Change in the fit of dentures
- Burning sensation when drinking citrus juices or hot liquids
- Persistent, unilateral ear pain
- Hoarseness or change in voice quality
- Persistent or recurrent sore throat
- Shortness of breath
- Anorexia and weight loss

to come together for normal speech (**phonation**). Vocal cord lesions are the earliest form of laryngeal cancer. Any person who has a history of hoarseness, mouth sores, or a lump in the neck for 3 to 4 weeks should be evaluated for laryngeal cancer.

Inspection and palpation of the head and neck are important parts of the physical examination. An advanced practice nurse or physician may perform a laryngeal examination using a laryngeal mirror or fiberoptic laryngoscope. Lesions may be seen on inspection. The neck is palpated to assess for enlarged lymph nodes.

Psychosocial Assessment

Often the patient with head and neck cancer has a long-standing history of cigarette or alcohol use or both. Assess the adequacy of support systems and coping mechanisms. Document social and family support because the patient often needs extensive assistance at home after treatment. Collaborate with a social worker as needed. Assess the level of education or literacy of the patient and family to plan teaching before and after surgery.

Document any family history of cancer, as well as the patient's age, gender, occupation, and ability to perform ADLs. Ask the patient whether his or her occupation requires continual oral communication. Job retraining may be needed if treatment affects speech.

Laboratory Assessment

Diagnostic tests include a complete blood cell count, bleeding times, urinalysis, and blood chemistries. The patient with chronic alcoholism may have low protein and albumin levels from poor nutrition. Liver and kidney function tests are performed to rule out cancer spread and to evaluate the patient's ability to metabolize drugs and chemotherapy agents.

Imaging Assessment

Many types of imaging studies, including x-rays of the skull, sinuses, neck, and chest, are useful in diagnosing cancer spread, other tumors, and the extent of tumor invasion. Computed tomography (CT), with or without contrast media, helps evaluate the tumor's exact location. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can help differentiate normal from diseased tissue.

The brain, bone, and liver are evaluated with nuclear imaging, bone scans, single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) scans, and positron emission tomography (PET) scans. These tests help locate additional tumor sites.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Other helpful tests include direct and indirect laryngoscopy, tumor mapping, and biopsy. *Panendoscopy* (laryngoscopy, nasopharyngoscopy, esophagoscopy, and bronchoscopy) is performed with general anesthesia to define the extent of the tumor. Tumor-mapping biopsies are performed to identify tumor location. Biopsy tissues taken at the time of the panendoscopy confirm the diagnosis and determine the tumor type, cell features, and location. Tumor staging by the TNM (tumor, nodes, metastasis) method (see Chapter 23) is also performed.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for the patient with head and neck cancer are:

1. Potential for respiratory obstruction
2. Risk for Aspiration related to edema, anatomic changes, or altered protective reflexes
3. Anxiety related to threat of death, change in role status, or change in economic status
4. Reduced self-concept related to tumor and treatment modalities

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Preventing Respiratory Obstruction

Without treatment, head and neck cancers grow to the point of airway obstruction. In addition, airway obstruction can occur as a complication of treatment modalities.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with head and neck cancer is expected to attain and maintain adequate tissue oxygenation. Indicators include:

- Arterial blood gas values within the normal range
- Rate and depth of respiration within the normal range
- Pulse oximetry within the normal range

Interventions. The focus of treatment is to remove or eradicate the cancer while preserving as much normal function as possible. The physician presents the available treatment options. Surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, or biotherapy may be used alone or in combination. In planning treatment options, the patient's physical condition, nutritional status, and age; the effects of the tumor on body function; and the patient's personal choice are all considered. Treatment for laryngeal cancer may range from radiation therapy (for a small specific area or tumor) to total laryngopharyngectomy with bilateral neck dissections followed by radiation therapy. The specific treatment depends on the extent and location of the lesion. Voice-conservation procedures are used only if they do not risk incomplete removal of the tumor. Nursing care focuses on the patient's total needs, including preoperative preparation, competent in-hospital care, discharge planning and teaching, and extensive outpatient rehabilitation.

Nonsurgical Management. Monitor the respiratory system by assessing respiratory rate, breath sounds, pulse oximetry, arterial blood gas values, and the results of pulmonary function tests. Airway obstruction can occur from tumor growth, edema, or both. Teach the patient to use the

Fowler's and semi-Fowler's positions for best air exchange. Sitting upright in a reclining chair may promote more comfortable breathing. Chapters 5 and 9 provide additional information on palliation and pain control for patients who elect not to have therapy and for those whose therapy has not been effective.

Radiation therapy for treatment of small cancers in specific locations has a cure rate of at least 80%. Standard therapy uses 5000 to 7500 rad (radiation absorbed dose), usually over 6 weeks and in daily or twice-daily doses. Radiation may be used alone or in combination with surgery and chemotherapy (see Chapter 24). Because radiation therapy slows tissue healing, it might not be performed before surgery. Most patients have hoarseness, dysphagia, skin problems, and dry mouth for a few weeks after radiation therapy.

Hoarseness may become worse during therapy. Reassure the patient that voice improves within 4 to 6 weeks after completion of radiation therapy. Urge the patient to use voice rest and alternative means of communication until the effects of radiation therapy have passed.

Most patients have a sore throat and difficulty swallowing during radiation therapy to the neck. Gargling with saline or sucking ice may decrease discomfort. Mouthwashes and throat sprays containing a local anesthetic agent such as lidocaine or diphenhydramine can provide temporary relief. Analgesic drugs may be prescribed.

The skin at the site of irradiation becomes red and tender and may peel during therapy. Instruct the patient to avoid exposing this area to sun, heat, cold, and abrasive treatments such as shaving. Teach the patient to wear protective clothing made of soft cotton and to wash this area gently with a mild soap, such as Dove. At one time, patients were told to avoid using lotions or other skin care products within 4 hours of the radiation therapy; however, this practice is not evidence-based and is now controversial (Bieck, Phillips, & Steele-Moses, 2010). Teach patients to follow the radiation-oncology department's policy regarding the use and timing of skin care products.

If the salivary glands are in the irradiation path, the mouth becomes dry (**xerostomia**). This side effect is long-term and may be permanent. Some of the problems from reduced saliva include increased risk for dental caries, increased risk for oral infections, halitosis (bad breath), and taste changes. Fluoride gel trays and nightly fluoride treatments can reduce the incidence of tooth deterioration. The trays can be worn during radiation therapy to prevent radiation scatter from the beam deflecting off existing metal inside the mouth (Lambert et al., 2010). Although there is no cure for xerostomia, interventions can help reduce the discomfort. Heavy fluid intake, particularly water, and humidification can help ease the discomfort. Some patients benefit from the use of artificial saliva, such as Salivart; moisturizing sprays or gels, such as Mouth Kote; or saliva stimulants, such as Salagen and cevimeline (cholinergic drugs).

Chemotherapy can be used alone or in addition to surgery or radiation for head and neck cancer. Often, chemotherapy and radiation therapy, *chemoradiation*, are used at the same time. Although the exact drugs used may vary, depending on cell origin, most chemotherapy regimens for head and neck cancers include cisplatin (National Comprehensive Cancer Network, 2010). The oral cavity effects of radiation are intensified with concurrent chemotherapy. These can be

uncomfortable, and patients often request breaks in the treatment regimen. However, these breaks in treatment do affect the outcome of treatment and should be avoided (a process called *NO STOPS*). Intense patient education before treatment and support during treatment can improve patient adherence to the treatment plan (Lambertz et al., 2010). Chapter 24 discusses the general care needs of patients receiving chemotherapy.

Biotherapy in the form of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) blockers may be effective for patients whose cancers overexpress the receptor. Currently, the drug approved for this purpose is cetuximab (Erbix). Although it is a targeted therapy, this drug blocks EGFRs in normal tissues as well as those in the tumor. As a result, severe skin reactions are common.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client with leukoplakia just above the glottis has just received the results of a biopsy and is confirmed to have squamous cell carcinoma in situ. She begins to cry and says that she would not be able to stand a surgery that would take away her ability to speak. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Your loss of speech would only be temporary until you learned to use esophageal speech."
- "Cancers at this stage are usually treated with chemotherapy alone, which does not permanently affect your ability to speak."
- "Cancers at this stage are usually treated with radiation therapy, which does not permanently affect your ability to speak."
- "A speech and language pathologist will work with you to select the method of communication that fits your lifestyle best."

Surgical Management. Tumor size and location (TNM classification) determines the type of surgery needed for the specific head and neck cancer. Very small, early-stage tumors may be removed by laser therapy or photodynamic therapy; however, few head and neck tumors are found at this stage and most require extensive traditional surgery. Reconstruction is also determined by the tumor size and amount of tissue to be resected and reconstructed. Surgical procedures for head and neck cancers include laryngectomy (total and partial), tracheostomy, and oropharyngeal cancer resections. The major types of surgery for laryngeal cancer include cord stripping, removal of a vocal cord (**cordectomy**), partial laryngectomy, and total laryngectomy. If cancer is in the lymph nodes in the neck or if the tumor has a high rate of nodal spread, the surgeon performs a nodal neck dissection along with removal of the primary tumor ("radical neck"). A pathologist evaluates the resected lymph nodes for possible tumor invasion.

Preoperative Care. Teach the patient and family about the tumor. The surgeon explains the surgical procedure and obtains informed consent. Discuss and interpret the implications of such consent with the patient and family.

Explain about self-management of the airway, suctioning, pain control methods, the critical care environment (including ventilators and critical care routines), nutritional support, feeding tubes, and plans for discharge. The patient will need to learn new methods of speech. Help him or her prepare for this change before surgery and to practice the use of the selected form of communication (see Chart 31-2 and earlier discussion under **Vocal Cord Nodules and Polyps**, pp.

585-586). Determine the communication method most preferred by the patient.

A team approach for planning care and rehabilitation is critical for the best outcome. The team includes nurses, physicians, speech and language pathologists, social workers, dietitians, respiratory therapists, and occupational and physical therapists. These professionals help evaluate and prepare the patient who has head and neck cancer. Chapter 16 describes general preoperative assessment and education.

Operative Procedures. Table 31-2 lists specific information about the various surgical procedures for laryngeal cancer. Hemilaryngectomy (vertical or horizontal) and supraglottic laryngectomy are types of partial voice-conservation laryngectomies.

To protect the airway, a tracheostomy is needed. With a partial laryngectomy, the tracheostomy is usually temporary. With a total laryngectomy, the upper airway is separated from the throat and esophagus, and the trachea is brought out through the skin in the neck and sutured in place, creating a stoma. This airway opening (a laryngectomy stoma) is permanent.

Neck dissection includes the removal of lymph nodes, the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the jugular vein, the 11th cranial nerve, and surrounding soft tissue. Because the 11th cranial nerve (spinal accessory nerve) is cut during this procedure, shoulder drop occurs after surgery. Physical therapy can help the patient ease the shoulder drop by using other muscle groups.

Postoperative Care. Head and neck surgery often lasts 8 hours or longer. Usually the patient spends the immediate

TABLE 31-2 SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR LARYNGEAL CANCER AND THEIR EFFECT ON VOICE QUALITY

PROCEDURE	DESCRIPTION	RESULTING VOICE QUALITY
Laser surgery	Tumor reduced or destroyed by laser beam through laryngoscope	Normal/hoarse
Transoral cordectomy	Tumor (early lesion) resected through laryngoscope	Normal/hoarse (high cure rate)
Laryngofissure	No cord removed (early lesion)	Normal (high cure rate)
Supraglottic partial laryngectomy	Hyoid bone, false cords, and epiglottis removed Neck dissection on affected side performed if nodes involved	Normal/hoarse
Hemilaryngectomy or vertical laryngectomy	One true cord, one false cord, and one half of thyroid cartilage removed	Hoarse
Total laryngectomy	Entire larynx, hyoid bone, strap muscles, one or two tracheal rings removed Nodal neck dissection if nodes involved	No natural voice

period after surgery in the surgical intensive care unit. Monitor airway patency, vital signs, hemodynamic status, and comfort level. Monitor for hemorrhage and other general complications of anesthesia and surgery (see [Chapter 18](#)). Take vital signs hourly for the first 24 hours and then every 2 hours or according to agency policy until the patient is stable. After the patient is transferred from the critical care unit, monitor vital signs every 4 hours or according to agency policy.

Complications after surgery include airway obstruction, hemorrhage, wound breakdown, and tumor recurrence. *The first priorities after head and neck surgery are airway maintenance and ventilation.* Other priorities are wound, flap, and reconstructive tissue care; pain management; nutrition; and psychological adjustment, including speech and language therapy.

Airway Maintenance and Ventilation. Immediately after surgery, the patient may need ventilatory assistance. Most patients wean easily from the ventilator after this type of surgery because the thoracic and abdominal cavities are not entered. During weaning, the patient usually uses a tracheostomy collar (over the artificial airway or open stoma) with oxygen and humidity to help move mucus secretions. Secretions may remain blood-tinged for 1 to 2 days. Use Standard Precautions, and report any increase in bleeding to the surgeon. Humidity helps remove crusts and prevents obstruction of the tube with secretions. Some surgeons prescribe instillations of 5 to 10 mL of sterile saline or sodium bicarbonate into the airway every 2 hours; however, this practice is controversial and not evidence-based.

A laryngectomy tube is used for patients who have undergone a *total laryngectomy* and need an appliance to prevent scar tissue shrinkage of the skin-tracheal border. This tube is similar to a tracheostomy tube but is shorter and wider with a larger lumen ([Fig. 31-5](#)). Laryngectomy tube care is similar to tracheostomy tube care (see [Chapter 30](#)) except that the patient can change the laryngectomy tube daily or as needed. A laryngectomy button is similar to a laryngectomy tube but

is softer, has a single lumen, and is very short. A button is comfortable for the patient, is easily removed for cleaning, and is available in various sizes and lengths for a custom fit. As described earlier, provide alternative communication techniques because the patient cannot speak.

Coughing, deep breathing, and saline instillation (when this intervention is prescribed) are usually effective in clearing secretions. Instruct the patient how to cough and deep breathe to clear secretions.

Oral secretions can be suctioned by the alert patient using a Yankauer or tonsillar suction or a soft red latex catheter. Teach the patient to suction *away* from the side of the surgery to prevent wound opening. Using a table mirror helps the patient see the area more clearly. Provide a clean environment for the catheter.

Stoma care after a total laryngectomy is a combination of wound care and airway care. Inspect the stoma with a flashlight. Clean the suture line with sterile saline (or whatever solution has been prescribed) to prevent secretions from forming crusts and obstructing the airway. Perform suture line care every 1 to 2 hours during the first few days after surgery and then every 4 hours thereafter. The mucosa of the stoma and trachea should be bright and shiny and without crusts, similar to the appearance of the oral mucosa.

Wound, Flap, and Reconstructive Tissue Care. Tissue “flaps” may be used to close the wound and improve appearance. Flaps are skin, subcutaneous tissue, and sometimes muscle, taken from other body areas that may be used for reconstruction after head and neck resection. After neck dissection, the surgeon places a split-thickness skin graft (STSG) over the exposed carotid artery before covering it with skin flaps or reconstructive flaps.

The first 24 hours after surgery are critical. Evaluate all grafts and flaps hourly for the first 72 hours. Monitor capillary refill, color, drainage, and Doppler activity of the major feeding vessel. Report changes to the surgeon immediately because surgical intervention may be needed. Position the patient so that the side of the head and neck with the flaps is not dependent.

Hemorrhage. Hemorrhage is a possible complication after any surgery, but it is uncommon with laryngectomy. The surgeon often places a closed surgical drain in the neck area to collect blood and drainage for about 72 hours after surgery. The drain also helps maintain the position of the reconstructed skin flaps. Any drain obstruction or equipment malfunction may cause a buildup of blood or serum under the flaps. This buildup can impair blood flow to and from the flaps, resulting in flap failure and tissue loss. A sudden stoppage of drainage may indicate a clot obstructing the drain. Monitor drainage, and record its amount and character. Check the patency and functioning of the drainage system. Report any drain malfunction or change in flap appearance to the surgeon. Depending on the surgeon’s preference and the agency’s policy, you may need to empty the drainage container or “milk” the drain.

Wound Breakdown. Wound breakdown is a common complication caused by poor nutrition, a long smoking history, alcohol use, wound contamination, and previous radiation therapy. Manage wound breakdown with packing and local care as prescribed to keep the wound clean and to stimulate the growth of healthy granulation tissue. Wounds may be extensive, and the carotid artery may be exposed. Split-thickness skin grafts often are placed over the carotid artery



FIG. 31-5 A laryngectomy tube. Note that the outer cannula is shorter and has a wider diameter than that of a tracheostomy tube.

for protection in the event of wound dehiscence. As the wound heals, granulation tissue covers the artery and prevents rupture. If granulation is slow and the carotid artery is at risk, another surgical flap may be made to cover the artery and close the wound.

When the carotid artery ruptures, large amounts of bright red blood spurt quickly. It is also possible for the carotid artery to have a small leak, with continuous oozing of bright red blood. Usually, a small leak leads to a complete rupture within a short time.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If a carotid artery leak is suspected, call the Rapid Response Team and do not touch the area because additional pressure could cause an immediate rupture. If the carotid artery ruptures because of drying or infection, immediately place constant pressure over the site and secure the airway. Maintain direct manual, continuous pressure on the carotid artery, and immediately transport the patient to the operating room for carotid resection. Do not leave the patient. Carotid artery rupture has a high risk for stroke and death.

Pain Management. Pain is caused by the surgical cutting or manipulation of tissue and by nerve compression. Pain should be controlled, and the patient should still be able to participate in his or her care. Morphine (Statex ) often is given IV by a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pump for the first 1 to 2 days after surgery. As the patient progresses, liquid opioid analgesics can be given by feeding tube. Oral drugs for pain and discomfort are started only after the patient can tolerate oral intake. After discharge, the patient still requires pain management, especially if he or she is receiving radiation therapy. An adjunct to the pain regimen may be liquid NSAIDs. These drugs provide excellent pain relief and can be used along with opioid analgesics. Amitriptyline (Elavil) or other tricyclic antidepressants may also be used for the lancinating pain of nerve-root involvement.

Nutrition. Many patients with head and neck cancer have some degree of malnutrition before cancer treatment begins. All patients are at risk for malnutrition during treatment for head and neck cancer (Lambertz et al., 2010). A nasogastric, gastrostomy, or jejunostomy tube is placed during surgery for nutritional support while the head and neck heal. Initially, the patient receives IV fluids or parenteral nutrition until the intestinal tract has recovered from the effects of anesthesia. After that, nutrients can be given via the feeding tube. The nutritional support team or dietitian assesses the patient before surgery and is available for consultation after surgery. A common nutrition plan is to provide 35 to 40 kcal/kg of body weight daily. Replacement of protein and water loss is calculated carefully.

The feeding tube usually remains in place for 7 to 10 days after surgery. Before removing the tube, assess the patient's ability to swallow if nutrition is to be given by mouth. Aspiration *cannot* occur after a total laryngectomy because the airway and esophagus have been completely separated. Reassure the patient that aspiration will not occur, and stay with him or her during the first few swallowing attempts. Swallowing may be uncomfortable at first, and analgesics may be needed.

Speech and Language Rehabilitation. The patient's voice quality and speech are altered after surgery. Although this

problem has enormous effects on the patient's ability to maintain social interactions, continue employment, and maintain a desired quality of life, it is often poorly addressed while he or she is hospitalized. Working with him or her and the family toward developing an acceptable communication method during the inpatient period is essential for a satisfactory outcome (Happ, et al., 2011).

Together with the speech and language pathologist (SLP), discuss the principles of speech therapy with the patient and family early in the course of the treatment plan (see [Chart 31-2](#)). Voice and speech differences depend on the type of surgical resection (see [Table 31-2](#)). Speech production varies with patient practice, amount of tissue removed, and radiation effects, but the speech can be very understandable.

The speech rehabilitation plan for patients who have a total laryngectomy at first consists of writing, using a picture board, or using a computer. The patient then uses an artificial larynx and, ideally, eventually learns esophageal speech. For success, the patient needs encouragement and support from the SLP, hospital team, and family while relearning to speak. This process can be time consuming and requires concentration each time the patient speaks. Having a [laryngectomee](#) (a person who has had a laryngectomy) from one of the local self-help organizations visit the patient and family is often beneficial. The International Association of Laryngectomees is very supportive, as is the American Cancer Society (ACS) Visitor Program.

Common means of speech communication after laryngectomy include esophageal speech, the use of mechanical devices, and the use of a tracheoesophageal puncture (TEP).

Esophageal speech is attempted by most patients who have a total laryngectomy. Sound can be produced this way by “burping” the air swallowed or injected into the esophageal pharynx and shaping the words in the mouth. The voice produced is a monotone; it cannot be raised or lowered and carries no pitch. In the English language, the vocal cords are required for 15 consonants; the remaining 10 consonants can be formed by shaping the mouth. If patients do not have adequate hearing, esophageal speech will be difficult because they need to use their mouth to shape the words as they hear them. Hearing-impaired patients may need hearing aids.

Some patients have intestinal bloating from swallowing air for esophageal speech. Antacids may help reduce bloating sensations. Esophageal speech also helps strengthen the respiratory and abdominal muscles, which aids in clearing secretions and in breathing.

Mechanical devices, called *electrolarynges*, may be used by the patient who cannot attain esophageal speech. Most are battery-powered devices placed against the side of the neck or cheek ([Fig. 31-6](#)). The air inside the mouth and throat is vibrated, and the patient moves his or her lips and tongue as usual. Another external device (Cooper-Rand), also battery powered, consists of a plastic tube that is placed in the patient's mouth and vibrates during speech. The quality of speech generated with these devices is robot-like and does not sound natural.

Tracheoesophageal puncture (TEP) (formerly called a *tracheoesophageal fistula*) may be used if esophageal speech is ineffective and if the patient meets strict criteria. A small surgical puncture is created between the trachea and the esophagus using a special catheter. The puncture can be created either at the time of the laryngectomy or later. After the puncture heals, a silicone prosthesis (e.g., the Blom-Singer

prosthesis or the Panje Voice Button) is inserted in place of the catheter (Fig. 31-7). The patient covers the stoma and the opening of the prosthesis with a finger or opens and closes the opening with a special valve to divert air from the lungs, through the trachea, into the esophagus, and out of the mouth. Lip and tongue movement, not the prosthesis itself, produces speech.

Surgical Procedures for Other Head and Neck Cancers. The major types of surgeries for other head and neck cancers are called *composite resections*. These resections are a combination of surgical procedures, including partial or total glossectomies, partial mandibulectomies, and, if needed, nodal neck dissections. Tracheostomy may be planned to provide an adequate airway. (See Chapter 56 for more information about oral cancer.)

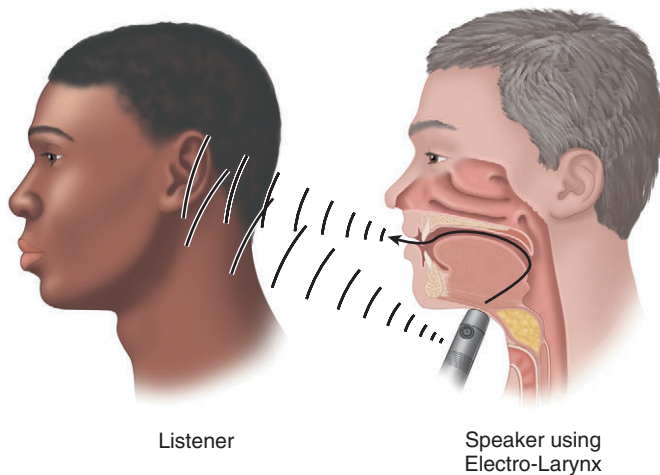


FIG. 31-6 An Electro-Larynx to generate speech after a laryngectomy.

Tracheostomy. A **tracheostomy** is a surgical incision into the trachea for the purpose of establishing an airway (tracheostomy). It can be performed as an emergency procedure or as a scheduled surgical procedure. A tracheostomy can be temporary or permanent. Chapter 30 discusses the nursing care of a patient with a tracheostomy.

Preventing Aspiration

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with head and neck cancer is expected to not aspirate food, gastric contents, or oral secretions into the lungs. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Positions self upright for eating or drinking
- Selects foods according to swallowing ability
- Chooses liquids and foods of proper consistency

Interventions. The surgical changes in the upper respiratory tract and altered swallowing mechanisms increase the patient's risk for aspiration. Aspiration can result in pneumonia, weight loss, and prolonged hospitalization. Chart 31-3 lists actions for aspiration prevention.

The presence of a nasogastric (NG) feeding tube may further increase the potential for aspiration because it keeps the lower esophageal sphincter partially open. The one exception is the patient who has undergone a total laryngectomy. In these cases, the airway is separated from the esophagus, making aspiration impossible; such a patient is *not* at risk.

A dynamic swallow study, such as a barium swallow under fluoroscopy, evaluates a patient's ability to protect the airway from aspiration and helps determine the appropriate method of swallow rehabilitation. In many cases, enteral feedings are used either because of the patient's inability to swallow or because of continued aspiration risk.

When an NG tube is in place, help prevent aspiration with the use of routine reflux precautions, including elevating the head of the bed and strictly adhering to tube feeding

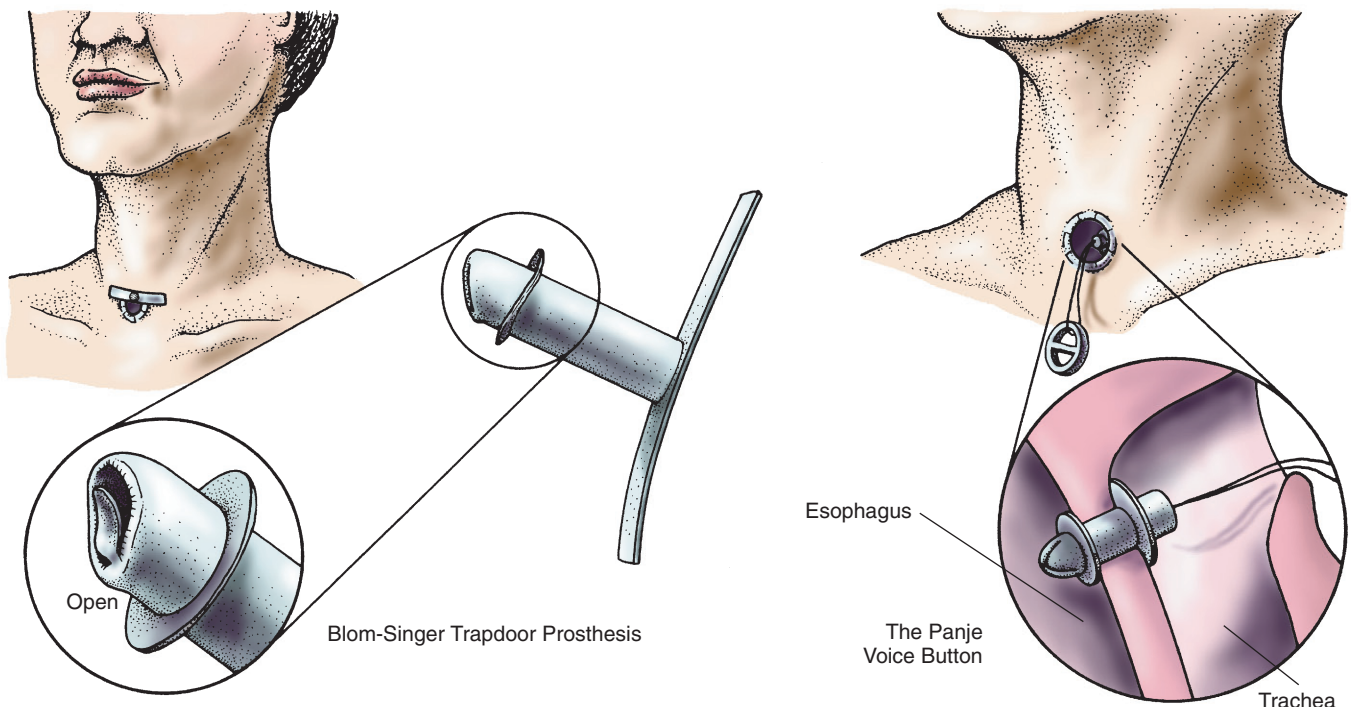


FIG. 31-7 Examples of tracheoesophageal prostheses.

regimens (especially no bolus feedings at night). Check residual volume before each bolus feeding (or every 4 to 6 hours with continuous feeding), and evaluate the patient's tolerance of the tube feeding. If the residual volume is high (above 100 mL for bolus feeding or 2 hour's worth of continuous tube feeding, or as otherwise prescribed by the physician), withhold the feeding and notify the physician. Check the pH of pulmonary secretions. Because residual volume cannot be checked with narrow feeding tubes, use other techniques to assess tube placement. (See [Chapter 63](#) for interventions related to NG tubes and tube feedings.)

Swallowing can be a major problem for the patient who has a tracheostomy tube. Swallowing can be normal if the cranial nerves and anatomic structures are intact. In a normal swallow, the larynx rises and moves forward to protect itself from the passing stream of food and saliva. Laryngeal rising also helps open the upper esophageal sphincter. The tracheostomy tube sometimes fixes the larynx in place, resulting in difficulty swallowing.

An inflated tracheostomy tube cuff can balloon backward into the esophagus and interfere with the passage of food. The wall between the posterior trachea and the esophagus is very thin, which allows this pushing action. The patient who is cognitively intact may adapt to eating normal food when the tracheostomy tube is small and the cuff is not inflated.

The patient who has had a partial vertical or supraglottic laryngectomy *must* be observed for aspiration. It is critical to teach the patient to use alternate methods of swallowing without aspirating. The "supraglottic" method of swallowing is especially effective after a partial laryngectomy or base-of-tongue resection ([Chart 31-4](#)). To reinforce teaching and learning, place a chart in the patient's room detailing the

steps. A dynamic swallow study is performed to guide rehabilitation for swallowing and to evaluate the patient's ability to protect the airway.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The spouse of a client who has had a partial vertical laryngectomy is working with the client to use the supraglottic method of swallowing. Which direction given by the spouse to the client indicates to the nurse that more instruction is needed?

- A. Sit up as straight as you can when eating.
- B. Clear your throat before taking a bite of food.
- C. Only take just a teaspoonful of food at one time.
- D. Swallow once, then take a breath, and swallow again.

Minimizing Anxiety

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with head and neck cancer is expected to have decreased anxiety. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates:

- Verbalization of reduced anxiety
- Absence of distress, irritability, and facial tension
- Effective use of coping strategies

Interventions. Conferences with the physician, clinical nurse specialist, dietitian, speech and language pathologist, physical therapist, psychologist, social worker, and general nursing staff may be beneficial. Explore the reason for anxiety (e.g., fear of the unknown, lack of teaching, fear of pain, fear of airway compromise, fear of hospitalization, loss of control). The patient and family often benefit from further information. Before the patient is scheduled for surgery (and while still at home), home care nurses or community-sponsored programs, such as the ACS, may be able to decrease fears about the disease process and surgical interventions.

Give prescribed antianxiety drugs, such as diazepam (Valium, Meval ) , with caution because of the possibility of respiratory depression and because some of these drugs are eliminated slowly. Shorter-duration drugs, such as lorazepam (Ativan), may have fewer respiratory side effects. The location of the tumor and the presence of any other lung disease may

CHART 31-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Aspiration During Swallowing

- Avoid serving meals when the patient is fatigued.
- Provide smaller and more frequent meals.
- Provide adequate time; do not "hurry" the patient.
- Provide close supervision if the patient is self-feeding.
- Keep emergency suctioning equipment close at hand.
- Avoid water and other "thin" liquids.
- Thicken liquids.
- Avoid foods that generate thin liquids during the chewing process, such as fruit.
- Position the patient in the most upright position possible.
- When possible, completely (or at least partially) deflate the tube cuff during meals.
- Suction after initial cuff deflation to clear the airway and allow maximum comfort during the meal.
- Feed each bite or encourage the patient to take each bite slowly.
- Encourage the patient to "dry swallow" after each bite to clear residue from the throat.
- Avoid consecutive swallows by cup or straw.
- Provide controlled small volumes of liquids, using a spoon.
- Encourage the patient to "tuck" his or her chin down and move the forehead forward while swallowing.
- Allow the patient to indicate when he or she is ready for the next bite.
- If the patient coughs, stop the feeding until the patient indicates the airway has been cleared.
- Continuously monitor tolerance to oral food intake by assessing respiratory rate, ease, pulse oximetry, and heart rate.

CHART 31-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

The Supraglottic Method of Swallowing

1. Place yourself in an upright, preferably out-of-bed, position.
2. Clear your throat.
3. Take a deep breath.
4. Place $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 teaspoon of food into your mouth.
5. Hold your breath, or "bear down" (Valsalva maneuver).
6. Swallow twice.
7. Release your breath, and clear your throat.
8. Swallow twice again.
9. Breathe normally.

This method exaggerates the normal protective mechanisms of cessation of respiration during the swallow. The double swallow attempts to clear food that may be pooling in the pharynx, vallecula, and piriform sinuses. This method is used only after a dynamic radiographic swallow study has demonstrated that it is appropriate and safe for the patient.

cause some degree of airway obstruction. For anxiety in these patients, the physician prescribes drug therapy judiciously and may choose lorazepam (Ativan, Novo-Lorazem ) rather than a sedating agent.

Supporting Self-Concept

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with head and neck cancer is expected to accept body image changes. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates:

- Willingness to touch and care for the affected body part
- Willingness to use strategies to enhance appearance
- Interaction with visitors, staff, and family members

Interventions. The patient with head and neck cancer usually has a change in self-concept and image resulting from functional and psychological issues (Noonan & Hegarty, 2010). Common functional issues include the presence of a stoma or artificial airway, speech changes, and a change in the method of eating. Psychological issues often include guilt, regret, and worry about the future. He or she may not be able to speak at all or may have permanent hoarseness or speech deficits. Help him or her set realistic goals, starting with involvement in self-care. Teach the patient alternative communication methods so he or she can functionally communicate in the hospital and after discharge.

Teach the family to ease the patient into a normal social environment. Use positive reinforcement and encouragement while demonstrating acceptance and caring behaviors. The family also may benefit from counseling sessions while the patient is still in the hospital.

After surgery, the patient may feel socially isolated because of the change in voice and facial appearance. Loose-fitting, high-collar shirts or sweaters, scarves, and jewelry can be worn to cover the laryngectomy stoma, tracheostomy tube, and other changes related to surgery. Cosmetics may aid in covering disfigurement. Most surgeons try to place the incisions in the natural skinfold lines if doing so does not pose a risk for cancer recurrence.

Community-Based Care

If no complications occur, the patient is usually discharged home or to an extended care facility within 2 weeks. At the time of discharge, he or she or a family member should be able to perform tracheostomy or stoma care and participate in nutrition, wound care, and communication methods.

The patient and family may feel more secure about discharge if they receive a referral to support groups or a community health agency familiar with the care of patients recovering from head and neck cancer. The nurse coordinates the efforts of the health care team in assessing the specific discharge needs and making the appropriate referrals to home care agencies. Professionals such as dietitians, nurses, physical therapists, speech and language pathologists, and social workers may be needed. Coordinate the scheduling for chemotherapy or radiation therapy with the patient and family.

Home Care Management

Extensive home care preparation is needed after a laryngectomy for cancer. The convalescent period is long, and airway management is complicated. The patient or family must be able to take an active role in care.

General cleanliness of the home is assessed by the home care nurse or case manager. For the patient with severe

CHART 31-5 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

Patients After Laryngectomy

- Assess respiratory status:
 - Observe rate and depth of respiration.
 - Auscultate lungs.
 - Check patency of airway.
 - Examine the tracheostomy drainage for amount, color, and character.
 - Examine nail beds and mucous membranes for evidence of cyanosis.
 - Obtain a pulse oximetry reading.
- Assess condition of wound:
 - Remove dressings (noting condition of dressings).
 - Cleanse the wound.
 - Compare with previous notations of wound condition:
 - Presence, amount, and nature of exudate
 - Presence/absence of cellulitis
 - Presence/absence of odor
- Assess patient's psychosocial status:
 - Ask the patient about passing the time, visitors, and trips outside the house.
 - Observe whether the patient communicates responses directly or whether a family member speaks for the patient.
 - Observe patient and family member interactions.
 - Determine what method of communication the patient has selected, and observe the patient's skill with it.
 - Observe whether the patient is wearing pajamas or is dressed in street clothes.
- Take the patient's temperature at each home care visit.
- Assess the patient's understanding of illness and adherence to treatment:
 - Manifestations to report to the health care provider
 - Medication plan (correct timing and dose)
 - Ambulation or positioning schedule
 - Dressing changes/skin care
 - Diet modifications (24-hour diet recall)
 - Skill in tracheostomy or dressing care
- Assess patient's nutritional status:
 - Change in muscle mass
 - Lackluster nails/sparse hair
 - Recent weight loss greater than 10% of usual weight
 - Impaired oral intake
 - Difficulty swallowing
 - Generalized edema

respiratory problems, home changes to allow for one-floor living may be needed. Increased humidity is needed. A humidifier add-on to a forced-air furnace can be obtained, or a room humidifier or vaporizer may be used. Be sure to stress that meticulous cleaning of these items is needed to prevent spread of mold or other sources of infection.

A home care nurse often is involved with care after discharge and is an important resource for the patient and family. This nurse assesses the patient and home situation for problems in self-care, complications, adjustment, and adherence to the medical regimen. [Chart 31-5](#) lists assessment areas for the patient in the home after a laryngectomy. This nurse reinforces health care teaching, self-care teaching, and smoking-cessation regimens.

Teaching for Self-Management

Education begins before surgery, and most self-care is taught in the hospital. Teach the patient and family how to care for the stoma or tracheostomy or laryngectomy tube, depending on the type of surgery performed. Review incision and airway care, including cleaning and inspecting for signs of infection.

CHART 31-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Home Laryngectomy Care

- Avoid swimming, and use care when showering or shaving.
- Lean slightly forward and cover the stoma when coughing or sneezing.
- Wear a stoma guard or loose clothing to cover the stoma.
- Clean the stoma with mild soap and water. Lubricate the stoma with a non-oil-based ointment as needed.
- Increase humidity by using saline in the stoma as instructed, a bedside humidifier, pans of water, and houseplants.
- Obtain and wear a MedicAlert bracelet and emergency care card for life-threatening situations.

Chart 31-6 lists self-care actions for the patient after laryngeal cancer surgery. Many of these actions also apply to any surgery for head and neck cancer.

Stoma care teaching is focused on protection. Instruct the patient to use a shower shield over the tube or stoma when bathing to prevent water from entering the airway. Teach men who use electric shavers to cover the stoma while shaving to keep hair from falling into it. Suggest that the patient wear a protective cover or stoma guard to protect the stoma during the day. For those with permanent stomas after laryngectomy or for those with permanent tracheostomies, covering the opening has a double benefit: (1) filtering the air entering the stoma while keeping humidity in the airway, and (2) enhancing aesthetic appearance. Attractive coverings are available in the form of cotton scarves, crocheted collars, and jewelry.

Instruct the patient how to increase humidity in the home. If prescribed, teach the patient to instill normal saline into the artificial airway 10 to 15 times a day. Stress the importance of keeping well hydrated to prevent secretions from thickening.

Communication involves having the patient continue the selected method of alternative communication that began in the hospital. Instruct him or her to wear a medical alert (MedicAlert) bracelet and carry a special identification card (Fig. 31-8). For patients with a laryngectomy, this card is available from the local chapters of the International Association of Laryngectomees. The card instructs the reader about providing an emergency airway or resuscitating someone who has a stoma.

Smoking cessation is a difficult but important issue after head and neck cancer surgery. Stress that smoking cessation can reduce the risk for developing other cancers and can increase the rate of healing from surgery.

Smoking cessation is not easy, and most patients need continuing support to sustain this action (Duffy et al., 2010). One study found that patients who perceived that quitting smoking is difficult were more likely to enroll in and complete a smoking-cessation program (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 598). Chemical and psychological assistance are available for smoking cessation. See Chapter 38 for a detailed discussion of smoking-cessation methods.

Psychosocial Preparation

The many changes resulting from a laryngectomy influence physical, social, and emotional functioning. Patients may perceive changes in their quality of life. Begin preparing the

TOTAL NECK BREATHER
 (Front of Card)

EMERGENCY!


I am a Total Neck Breather
(Laryngectomy—No Vocal Cords)

I breathe **ONLY** through an opening in my neck, **NOT** through my nose or mouth.

If I have stopped breathing:

1. Expose my entire neck.
2. Give me **mouth to neck breathing only**.
3. Keep my head straight—chin up.
4. Keep neck opening clear with clean **CLOTH** (not tissue).
5. Use oxygen supply to neck opening. **ONLY**, when I start to breathe again.

**BE PROMPT—SECONDS COUNT
I NEED AIR NOW!**

(Back of All Cards)

Medical Problems

☐ Epilepsy ☐ Glaucoma

☐ Diabetes ☐ Peptic Ulcer

Other: _____

Medicines Taken Regularly

☐ Anticoagulants ☐ Cortisone or ACTH

☐ Heart Drugs (Name and Dose): _____

Other: _____

Dangerous Allergies

☐ Drugs (Name): _____

☐ Penicillin

Other: _____

Other Information

☐ Hard of Hearing

☐ Speaks No English (Other): _____

☐ Wearing Contact Lenses

Other: _____

NAME: _____

ADDRESS: _____

PLEASE NOTIFY:

NAME: _____

PHONE: _____

ADDRESS: _____

CITY: _____

OR

NAME: _____

PHONE: _____

ADDRESS: _____

INTERNATIONAL ASSOCIATION
OF LARYNGECTOMIES

FIG. 31-8 Emergency wallet card for identification of laryngectomy.

patient and family by scheduling a visit from a person who has adjusted to these changes.

The patient who is discharged to home with a permanent stoma, tracheostomy tube, nasogastric (NG) tube, and wounds has an altered body image. Stress the importance of returning to as normal a lifestyle as possible. Most patients can resume many of their usual activities within 4 to 6 weeks after surgery. A longer time is needed after a combination of radiation therapy and surgery and for those patients who also have other chronic diseases such as diabetes mellitus, heart failure, or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The patient may be frustrated at times while trying to adjust to changes in appearance, smell, taste, and communication.

The patient with a total laryngectomy cannot produce sounds during laughing and crying. Mucus secretions may appear unexpectedly when these emotions arise or when coughing or sneezing occurs. The mucus can be embarrassing, and the patient needs to be prepared to cover the stoma with a handkerchief or gauze. The patient who has undergone composite resections has difficulty with speech and swallowing. He or she may need to deal with tracheostomy and feeding tubes in public places.

Health Care Resources

Inform the patient and family of community organizations (e.g., ACS) and local laryngectomy clubs, which can offer support, information, and friendships. When the patient has problems paying for health care services, equipment, and prescriptions, a visiting nurse agency may be helpful in locating available resources.

In many areas, the local unit of the ACS or Canadian Cancer Society can help provide dressing materials and nutritional supplements to patients in need. These organizations

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Excessive Confidence May Be a Detriment

Duffy, S.A., Scheumann, A.L., Fowler, K.E., Darling-Fisher, C., & Terrell, J.E. (2010). Perceived difficulty quitting predicts enrollment in a smoking-cessation program for patients with head and neck cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(3), 349-356.

Cigarette smoking is a major risk factor for the initial development of head and neck cancers and in their recurrence. It also delays healing after surgery for these cancers, and the associated respiratory and cardiac problems reduce the quality of life in those patients who continue to smoke. Therefore smoking cessation in patients with head and neck cancer is strongly encouraged; however, smoking cessation in these patients after diagnosis is less than 50%.

The purpose of this study was to examine factors that predicted participation in a smoking-cessation program. The study was a substudy of a larger randomized trial involving patients with head and neck cancer to determine whether depressive symptoms, perception of smoking-cessation difficulty, or level of alcohol consumption influenced participation in a smoking-cessation intervention.

Data regarding depressive symptoms, perception of smoking-cessation difficulty, and level of alcohol consumption were collected for all 286 study-eligible patients. The instruments used to assess these factors were well established with good internal consistency and appropriate levels of reliability. Of the eligible patients, only 136 (48%) agreed to participate in the smoking-cessation intervention. Analysis of the data between the two groups indicated that the strongest predictor ($p < 0.05$) for participation in a smoking-cessation intervention was the perception on the part of the patient that quitting smoking was difficult to accomplish and that help was needed for success. Overall, eligible patients who chose to not participate in a smoking-cessation intervention held the belief that smoking cessation was less difficult. In addition, more of the patients who chose to not participate had scores that indicated a problem with excessive alcohol consumption, although this factor did not reach statistical significance.

Level of Evidence: 4.

The study used a nonexperimental descriptive approach, which was appropriate for the purpose of the study. The large number of participants and the fact that data were collected as part of a multi-center randomized clinical trial increase the generalizability of the findings.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research.

The results of this study regarding the issue of perceived less difficulty or high confidence in one's ability to quit smoking conflict with some previous studies and are congruent with others. Older studies found a positive correlation between high confidence in not smoking and the ability to quit. Other studies had different outcomes and, along with the current investigators, suggest high confidence of smokers in not smoking could interfere with obtaining assistance or support for smoking cessation. The current investigators also concluded that increased alcohol consumption promoted smoking behaviors and reduced resolve.

Patients diagnosed with head and neck cancer often are both cigarette smokers and consumers of alcohol. Although all of these patients are encouraged to stop smoking, the initial approach and type of program needed may vary depending on the patient's perception of smoking-cessation difficulty. Those who perceive that smoking cessation is difficult may be more ready to join a smoking-cessation program and more amenable to working with the strategies proposed. The question of why a person has this perception rather than one of high confidence remains. It is possible that those who believe that they could easily quit smoking may have never tried to do so or believe that requiring assistance is "weak." Such individuals may need a completely different approach. Nurses may be able to identify how difficult a patient perceives smoking cessation to be by asking these questions:

- Have you ever tried to quit smoking?
- How many times?
- What were the results?
- What method did you use (did you have assistance or support)?

may also provide transportation to and from follow-up visits or radiation therapy.

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Teamwork and Collaboration**

A patient who had a hemilaryngectomy for laryngeal cancer comes back to the clinic 3 weeks after discharge. He says things are going well at home and that he is glad to be alive. You notice a strong odor of cigarette smoke coming off his clothes. When you ask him how the smoking-cessation program is going, he looks away from you and says "fine."

1. Should you press this question further? Why or why not?
2. Why is smoking cessation an important action for this patient?
3. What other health care professional or resource could be consulted for this issue?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with head and neck cancer based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Maintains a patent airway
- Performs self-care of the artificial airway and wound
- Performs ADLs independently or with minimal assistance
- Attains or maintains adequate nutrition
- Does not aspirate gastric contents or food
- Engages in desired social interactions

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for priority patient problems in the [Planning and Implementation](#) section (see earlier).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of upper airway problems?

- Voice changes (nasal quality if the problem is above the palate, "breathy" or "whispery" if the problem is in the larynx or trachea)
- Snoring or mouth breathing

- Change in cognition or level of consciousness or acute confusion
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Skin cyanosis or pallor (lighter-skinned patients)
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (patients of any skin color)
- Tachycardia and dysrhythmia

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of a respiratory problem?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Assessing for the presence of thick or excessive secretions
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway
- Assessing nasal drainage and sputum for color and blood
- Checking most recent laboratory values for white blood cell and ABG levels
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing hydration status

Respond by:

- Suctioning (oral, pharyngeal, endotracheal, tracheostomy), if needed
- Applying oxygen, and assessing the patient's responses to this intervention
- Keeping the patient's head elevated to about 30 degrees
- Notifying physician or Rapid Response Team
- Ensuring venous access

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of restored oxygenation (see [Chapter 29](#)).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use sterile technique when performing endotracheal or tracheal suctioning.
- Use Standard Precautions when caring for a patient with epistaxis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage people who smoke to quit smoking or using tobacco in any way.
- Encourage people who use alcohol to reduce their intake of alcoholic beverages.
- Use aspiration precautions for any patient with an altered level of consciousness or who has an endotracheal tube (see [Chart 31-3](#)).
- Teach the patient and family how to perform tracheostomy care (see [Chart 30-3](#) in [Chapter 30](#)).
- Teach patients who have had radiation therapy to the oral cavity to have dental examinations at least every 6 months.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient and family members the opportunity to express fear or anxiety regarding a cancer diagnosis or a change in breathing status.
- Teach family members ways to communicate with a patient who cannot speak after surgery for head and neck cancer.

- Encourage patients with permanent tracheostomies or laryngectomies to become involved in self-care and to look at the wound and touch the affected area.
- Allow the patient and family to grieve the loss of function and change in body image.
- Allow time to communicate with the patient who has voice loss.
- Refer patients and families to the ACS or the Canadian Cancer Society after surgery for head and neck cancer.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the airway patency of any patient who experiences facial or nasal trauma.
- Notify the Rapid Response Team when a patient experiences a posterior nasal bleed.
- Check the airway and packing at least every hour for a patient who has posterior nasal packing placed after nasal surgery or posterior epistaxis.
- Instruct patients who have had mandibular immobilization or fixation after a mandibular fracture to keep wire cutters with them at all times.
- Apply oxygen to any patient who develops stridor.
- Use a manual resuscitation bag to ventilate the patient if the tracheostomy tube has dislodged or been decannulated.
- Assess the new tracheostomy stoma site at least once per shift for purulent drainage, redness, pain, and swelling, as indicators of infection.
- Keep the tracheal cuff pressure between 14 and 20 mm Hg to prevent tissue injury.

CHAPTER

32

Care of Patients with Noninfectious Lower Respiratory Problems

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Asthma

Answer Key for Decision-Making Challenges and NCLEX Examination Challenges

Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Wheezes

Audio Clip: Pleural Friction Rub

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Respiratory Acidosis (COPD-Related)

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Ensure safe oxygen delivery.
2. Ensure the proper oxygen flow rate for patients with hypercarbia.
3. Use appropriate infection control methods to protect the patient with cystic fibrosis from respiratory infections.
4. Ensure appropriate functioning of the chest tube drainage system after a thoracotomy.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Use assessment information to identify people at increased genetic risk for a respiratory disease.
6. Encourage everyone to not smoke or to quit smoking.
7. Encourage all people who are exposed to inhalation irritants in the workplace or at home to use appropriate protection.
8. Teach patients with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) how to use a peak flowmeter.
9. Teach patients using any type of inhaler for drug delivery the correct way to use these devices.
10. Teach patients who are using controller (preventive) drug therapy for asthma the importance of taking the prescribed drugs daily, even when asthma symptoms are not present.

11. Teach patients with asthma to have their reliever (rescue) inhalers with them at all times.

Psychosocial Integrity

12. Encourage the patient and family to express feelings and concerns about a change in breathing status.
13. Teach the patient with activity limitations from respiratory problems how to modify techniques and conserve energy to perform ADLs and desired activities independently.

Physiological Integrity

14. Compare the pathophysiology and clinical manifestations of asthma, bronchitis, and emphysema.
15. Identify risk factors for COPD and lung cancer.
16. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the effectiveness of therapy for impaired oxygenation in a patient with breathing problems.
17. Interpret peak expiratory flow (PEF) readings for the need for intervention.
18. Coordinate care for the patient immediately following lung volume reduction surgery.
19. Compare the side effects of radiation treatment for lung cancer with those of chemotherapy for lung cancer.
20. Coordinate nursing interventions for the patient with chest tubes.

CHART 32-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Chronic Respiratory Disorder

- Provide rest periods between such activities as bathing, meals, and ambulation.
- Place the patient in an upright position for meals to prevent aspiration.
- Encourage nutritional fluid intake after the meal to promote increased calorie intake.
- Schedule drugs around routine activities to increase adherence to drug therapy.
- Arrange chairs in strategic locations to allow the patient with dyspnea to stop and rest while walking.
- Urge the patient to notify the health care provider promptly for any manifestation of infection.
- Encourage the patient to receive the pneumococcal vaccine and to have an annual influenza vaccination.

Direct gas exchange occurs in the alveoli and the smallest airways. Any problem of these tissues reduces gas exchange and interferes with oxygenation. Many lower airway problems are chronic and progressive, requiring changes in a person's lifestyle. The older patient with a lower airway problem may need special help before the disorder becomes severe because of age-related changes in breathing effectiveness. [Chart 32-1](#) lists nursing issues for the older patient with a respiratory problem.

CHRONIC AIRFLOW LIMITATION

Chronic airflow limitation (CAL) is a group of chronic lung diseases that includes asthma, chronic bronchitis, and pulmonary emphysema. Emphysema and chronic bronchitis, termed **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)**, are characterized by bronchospasm and dyspnea ([Fig. 32-1](#)). The tissue damage is not reversible and increases in severity over time, eventually leading to respiratory failure. Asthma, unlike COPD, is a chronic disease with intermittent *reversible* airflow obstruction and wheezing.

More than 40 million Americans suffer from some form of CAL, and 1 million people between the ages of 40 and 65 years have moderate to severe disability from CAL ([Centers for Disease Control and Prevention \[CDC\], 2010](#)). Although some of the problems are not reversible, good management strategies can help maintain adequate *oxygenation* and improve overall health.

ASTHMA

Pathophysiology

Asthma is usually a chronic condition in which reversible airflow obstruction in the airways occurs intermittently (see [Fig. 32-1](#)). Airway obstruction can occur in two ways: (1) inflammation and (2) airway hyperresponsiveness that leads to bronchoconstriction. Inflammation obstructs the **lumen** (i.e., the inside) of airways ([Fig. 32-2](#)). Airway hyperresponsiveness and constriction of bronchial smooth muscle cause a narrowing of the airway from the outside. Airway inflammation can trigger bronchiolar hyperresponsiveness, and many people with asthma have both problems at the same time. Severe airway obstruction can be fatal. More than

3400 deaths from acute asthma occur in the United States each year ([CDC, 2010](#)).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Asthma is classified into different types based on how the attacks are triggered; however, the effect on oxygenation is similar for all types of asthma. Inflammation of the mucous membranes lining the airways is a key event in triggering an asthma attack. Inflammation occurs in response to the presence of specific allergens; general irritants such as cold air, dry air, or fine airborne particles; microorganisms; and aspirin and other NSAIDs. Hyperresponsiveness can occur with exercise, with an upper respiratory illness, and for unknown reasons.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Results of genome-wide association studies (GWAS) indicate more than 50 gene variations are associated with asthma from inflammation or hyperresponsive airways, although asthma is a multifactorial disorder with both genetic and environmental input required for expression ([Kumar et al., 2010](#); [Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man \[OMIM\], 2010](#); [Weiss et al., 2009](#)). Some of these variations have greater influence than others, especially within certain racial or ethnic groups. In addition, genetic variation in the gene that controls the synthesis and activity of beta-adrenergic receptors has an impact on drug therapy for asthma. Patients who have a mutation in this gene do not respond as expected to short-acting or long-acting beta agonists and need to have an altered therapy plan. Teaching these patients about why their drug therapies are different from standard recommendations is a nursing responsibility that can assist with therapy adherence.

When asthma is well controlled, the airway changes are temporary and reversible. With poor control, chronic inflammation can lead to damage and hyperplasia of the bronchial epithelial cells and of the bronchial smooth muscle ([Global Initiative for Asthma \[GINA\], 2010](#)). When asthma attacks are frequent, even exposure to low levels of the triggering agent or event may stimulate an attack.

Inflammation triggers asthma for some people when allergens bind to specific antibody molecules (especially immunoglobulin E [IgE]). These molecules are attached to tissue cells called *mast cells* and white blood cells (WBCs) called *basophils*. These cells are filled with granules containing chemical mediators that can start local inflammatory responses (see [Chapters 19 and 22](#)). Some mediators, such as histamine, start an immediate inflammatory response, which can be blocked by drugs like diphenhydramine (Benadryl). Others, such as leukotriene and eotaxin, are slower and cause later, prolonged inflammatory responses, which can be blocked by drugs like montelukast (Singulair), zafirlukast (Accolate), and zileuton (Zyflo). Mediators also attract more WBCs (eosinophils, macrophages, basophils) to the area, which then release even more inflammation-inducing mediators. Inflammation of airway mucous membranes causes blood vessel dilation and capillary leak, leading to tissue swelling with increased secretions and mucus production ([McCance et al., 2010](#)). Inflammation can also occur through general irritation rather than allergic responses.

Bronchospasm is a narrowing of the bronchial tubes through constriction of the smooth muscle around and within the bronchial walls. It can occur as a result of hyperresponsive airways when small amounts of pollutants or respiratory viruses stimulate nerve fibers, causing

In **asthma**, the airways overreact to common stimuli with bronchospasm, edematous swelling of the mucous membranes, and copious production of thick, tenacious mucus by abundant hypertrophied mucous glands. Airway obstruction is usually intermittent.

Centriacinar or centrilobular emphysema affects the respiratory bronchioles most severely. It is usually more severe in the upper lung.

In **chronic bronchitis**, infection or bronchial irritants cause increased secretions, edema, bronchospasm, and impaired mucociliary clearance. Inflammation of the bronchial walls causes them to thicken. This thickening, together with excessive mucus, blocks the airways and hinders gas exchange.

In **emphysema**, lung proteases collapse the walls of bronchioles and alveolar air sacs. As these walls collapse, the bronchioles and alveoli transform from a number of small elastic structures with great air-exchanging surface area into fewer, larger, inelastic structures with little surface area. Air is trapped in these distal structures, especially during forced expiration such as coughing, and the lungs hyperinflate. The trapped air stagnates and can no longer supply needed oxygen to the nearby capillaries.

Panacinar or panlobular emphysema affects the entire acinar unit. It is usually more severe in the lower lung.

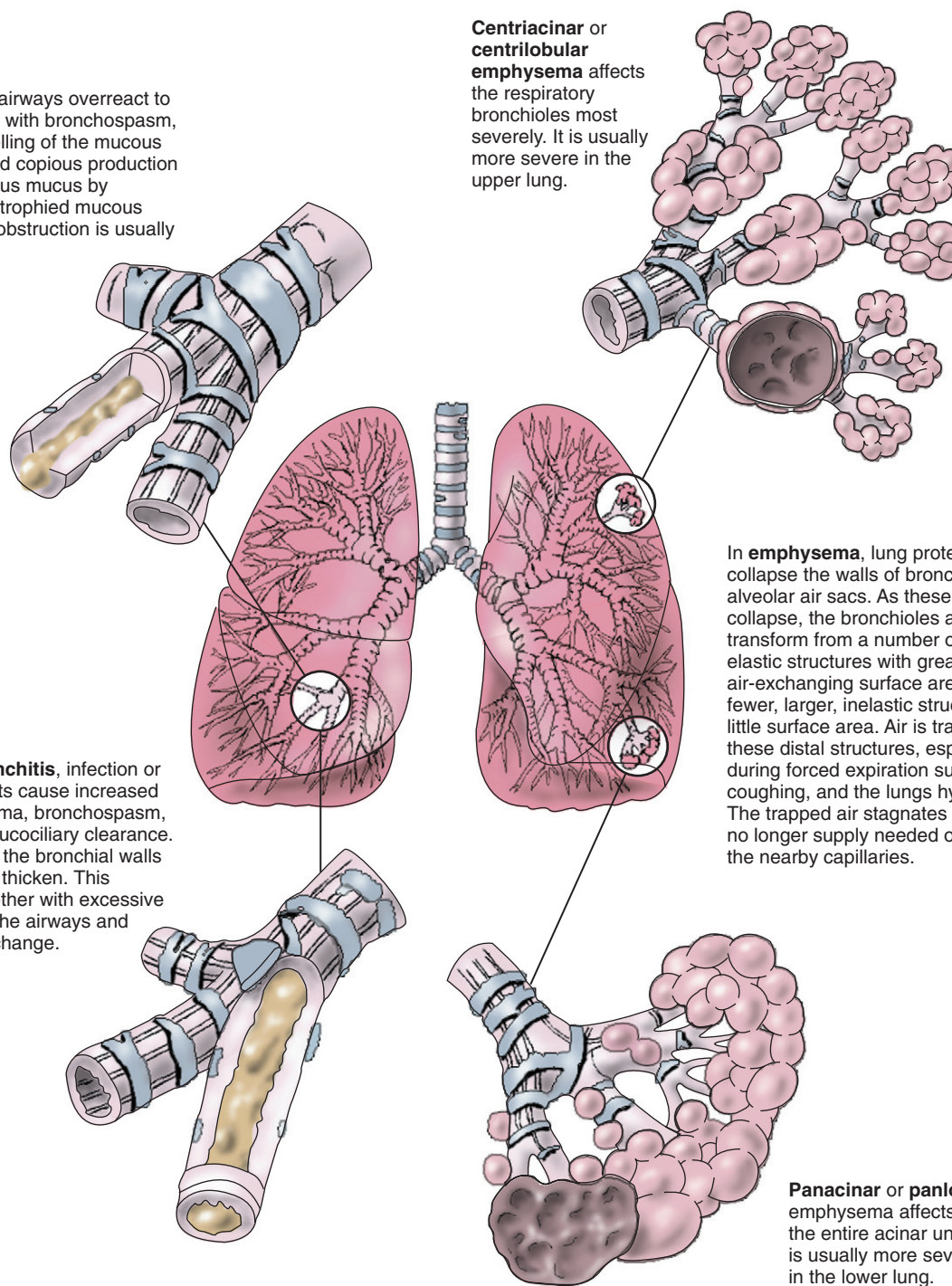


FIG. 32-1 The pathophysiology of chronic airflow limitation (CAL).

constriction of bronchial smooth muscle. If an inflammatory response is stimulated at the same time, the mediators released during inflammation also trigger constriction. Severe bronchospasm alone, especially in smaller bronchioles, can profoundly limit airflow to the alveoli.

Aspirin and other NSAIDs can trigger asthma in some people, although this response is not a true allergy. It results

from increased production of leukotriene when aspirin or NSAIDs suppress other inflammatory pathways.

Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is now thought to be a major trigger for asthma in some people, especially in those who have more asthma manifestations at night (GINA, 2010). It does not cause the airway hyperresponsiveness, but the highly acidic stomach contents appear to

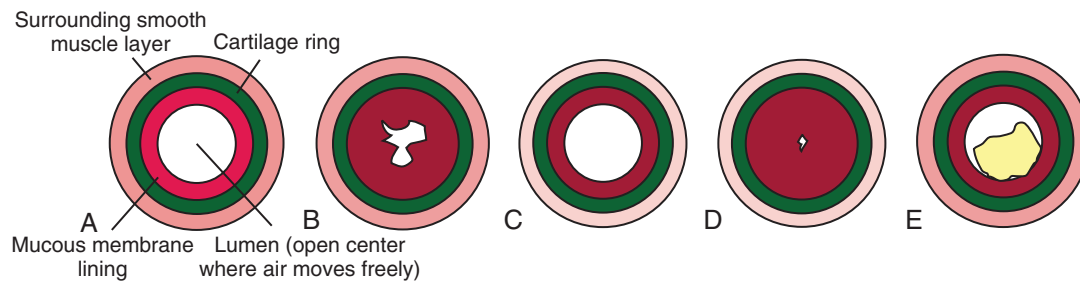


FIG. 32-2 Causes of narrowed airways. **A**, Cross section of a small airway showing the tissue layers. **B**, Mucosal swelling. **C**, Constriction of smooth muscle. **D**, Mucosal swelling and constriction of smooth muscle. **E**, Mucus plug.

CHART 32-2 KEY FEATURES

Levels of Asthma Control

CHARACTERISTIC	CONTROLLED (ALL OF THESE CHARACTERISTICS MUST BE PRESENT)	PARTLY CONTROLLED (THE PRESENCE OF ANY ONE OF THESE CHARACTERISTICS IS CONSIDERED PARTLY CONTROLLED)	UNCONTROLLED (THE PRESENCE OF THREE OR MORE CHARACTERISTICS FROM THE PARTLY CONTROLLED LIST IS CONSIDERED UNCONTROLLED ASTHMA)
Daytime symptoms	Symptoms or episodes occur not more than twice per week	Symptoms or episodes occur more than twice per week	
Activity limitations	None	Any	
Nighttime awakening with symptoms	None	Any	
Need for relief treatment	Relief inhaler not used more than twice per week	Relief inhaler used more than twice per week	
PEF or FEV ₁	Normal	Less than 80% of predicted for age, size, and gender or less than 80% of established personal best	
Treatment action	Find and maintain lowest step level that controls symptoms	Increase step until symptoms are controlled on a regular basis, then reduce step to the lowest step level that consistently controls symptoms	Increase step (step up) until control is reached and maintained

PEF, Peak expiratory flow; FEV₁, forced expiratory volume in the first second.

make the hyperresponsiveness worse when these materials enter the airway.

Incidence/Prevalence

Asthma can occur at any age. About half of adults with asthma also had the disease in childhood. Asthma affects nearly 19 million adults in the United States and Canada (CDC, 2010). It is more common in urban settings than in rural settings.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Asthma occurs as a new disorder in about 3% of people older than 55 years. Another 3% of people older than 60 years have asthma as a continuing chronic disorder (CDC, 2010). Lung and airway changes as a part of aging make any breathing problem more serious in the older adult. One problem related to aging is a decrease in the sensitivity of beta-adrenergic receptors. When stimulated, these receptors relax smooth muscle and cause bronchodilation. As these receptors become less sensitive, they no longer respond as quickly or as strongly to agonists (epinephrine, dopamine) and beta-adrenergic drugs, which are often used as reliever (rescue) therapy during an acute asthma attack. Thus teaching older patients how to avoid asthma attacks and to correctly use controller (preventive) drug therapy is a nursing priority.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Asthma is classified on the basis of how well controlled the manifestations are, as well as on the patient's response to asthma drugs. These classes are the basis for current asthma therapy (Charts 32-2 and 32-3).

History

The patient with asthma usually has a pattern of intermittent episodes of **dyspnea** (shortness of breath), chest tightness, coughing, wheezing, and increased mucus production. Ask whether the manifestations occur continuously, seasonally, in association with specific activities or exposures, or more frequently at night. Some patients have these manifestations for 4 to 8 weeks after a chest cold or other upper respiratory tract infection. The patient with atopic (allergic) asthma often has other allergic problems such as rhinitis, skin rash, or pruritus. Ask whether any family members have asthma or respiratory problems. Ask about current or previous smoking habits. If the patient smokes, use this opportunity to teach him or her about smoking cessation (Chart 32-4). Wheezing in non-smokers is an important symptom in the diagnosis of asthma.

CHART 32-3 KEY FEATURES

The Step System for Medication Use in Asthma Control

STEP 1	STEP 2	STEP 3	STEP 4	STEP 5
As-needed rapid-acting beta ₂ -agonist (relief inhaler)	As-needed rapid-acting beta ₂ -agonist (relief inhaler)	As-needed rapid-acting beta ₂ -agonist (relief inhaler)	As-needed rapid-acting beta ₂ -agonist (relief inhaler)	As-needed rapid-acting beta ₂ -agonist (relief inhaler)
No daily drugs needed	In addition, daily treatment involves the use of <i>one</i> of these two options:	In addition, daily treatment involves the use of <i>one</i> of these four options:	In addition, daily treatment involves the use of the Step Three option that provided the best degree of control and was well tolerated along with one or more of these two options:	In addition, daily treatment involves the use of the Step Four option(s) that provided the best degree of control and was well tolerated along with either of these two options:
	Low-dose ICS*	Low-dose ICS <i>and</i> long acting beta ₂ -agonist	Medium-dose or high-dose ICS <i>and</i> long acting beta ₂ -agonist	Oral glucocorticosteroid
	Leukotriene modifier†	Medium-dose or high-dose ICS	Leukotriene modifier and sustained-release theophylline	Anti-IgE‡ treatment
		Low-dose ICS and leukotriene modifier		
		Low-dose ICS and sustained released theophylline		

Data compiled from Global Initiative for Asthma (GINA). (2010). Global strategy for asthma management and prevention. Retrieved June 2011 from <http://www.ginasthma.org/Guidelines/guidelines-resources.html>.

*ICS = Inhaled corticosteroid.

†Leukotriene modifier = Leukotriene receptor antagonist or leukotriene synthesis inhibitor.

‡IgE = Immunoglobulin E.

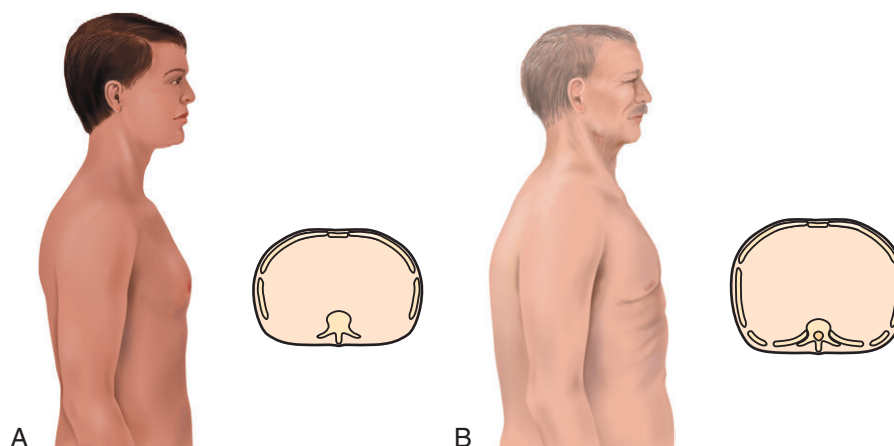


FIG. 32-3 **A**, Normal adult. The thorax has an oval shape with an anteroposterior-to-transverse diameter of 1 : 1.5 or 5 : 7. **B**, Barrel chest. Note equal anteroposterior-to-transverse diameter and that ribs are horizontal instead of the normal downward slope. This is associated with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and severe asthma as a result of hyperinflation of the lungs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with mild to moderate asthma may have no manifestations between asthma attacks. During an acute episode, the most common manifestations are an audible wheeze and increased respiratory rate. At first, the wheeze is louder on exhalation. When inflammation occurs with asthma, coughing may increase.

The patient may use accessory muscles to help breathe during an attack. Observe for muscle retraction at the sternum and the suprasternal notch and between the ribs. The patient with long-standing, severe asthma may have a “barrel chest,” caused by air trapping (Fig. 32-3). The anteroposterior (AP) diameter (diameter between the front and the back of the

chest) increases with air trapping, giving the chest a rounded rather than an oval shape. The normal chest is about 1.5 times as wide as it is thick. In the patient with severe, chronic asthma, the AP diameter may equal or exceed the lateral diameter. Compare the AP diameter of the chest with the lateral diameter. Chronic air trapping also flattens the diaphragm and increases the space between the ribs.

Along with an audible wheeze, the breathing cycle is longer with prolonged exhalation and requires more effort. The patient may be unable to speak more than a few words between breaths. Hypoxia occurs with severe attacks. Pulse oximetry shows **hypoxemia** (poor blood oxygen levels). Examine the oral mucosa and nail beds for cyanosis. Other

CHART 32-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Smoking Cessation

- Make a list of the reasons you want to stop smoking (e.g., your health and the health of those around you, saving money, social reasons).
- Set a date to stop smoking, and keep it. Decide whether you are going to begin to cut down on the amount you smoke or are going to stop “cold turkey.” Whatever way you decide to do it, keep this important date!
- Ask for help from those around you. Find someone who wants to quit smoking and “buddy up” for support. Look for assistance in your community, such as formal smoking-cessation programs, counselors, and certified acupuncture specialists or hypnotists.
- Consult your health care provider about nicotine replacement therapy (e.g., patch, gum) or other pharmacologic therapy to assist in smoking cessation.
- Remove ashtrays and lighters from your view.
- Talk to yourself! Remind yourself of all the reasons you want to quit.
- Think of a way to reward yourself with the money you save from not smoking for a year.
- Avoid places that might tempt you to smoke. If you are used to having a cigarette after meals, get up from the table as soon as you are finished eating. Think of new things to do at times when you used to smoke (e.g., taking a walk, exercising, calling a friend).
- Find activities that keep your hands busy: needlework, painting, gardening, even holding a pencil.
- Take five deep breaths of clean, fresh air through your nose and out your mouth if you feel the urge to smoke.
- Keep plenty of healthy, low-calorie snacks, such as fruit and vegetables, on hand to nibble on. Try sugarless gum or mints as a substitute for tobacco.
- Drink at least eight glasses of water each day.
- Begin an exercise program with the approval of your health care provider. Be aware of the positive, healthy changes in your body since you stopped smoking.
- List the many reasons why you are glad that you quit. Keep the list handy as a reminder of the positive things you are doing for yourself.
- If you have a cigarette, think about what the conditions were that caused you to light it. Try and think of a strategy to avoid that (or those) conditions.
- Don’t beat yourself up for backsliding; just face the next day as a new day.
- Think of each day without tobacco as a major accomplishment. It is!!

indicators of hypoxemia include changes in the level of cognition or consciousness and tachycardia.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests can help determine the type of asthma and the degree of breathing impairment. Arterial blood gas (ABG) levels show how well the patient is obtaining oxygen (see [Chapter 14](#) for discussion of ABGs). The arterial oxygen level (P_{aO_2}) may decrease during an asthma attack. Early in the attack, the arterial carbon dioxide level (P_{aCO_2}) may be decreased as the patient increases respiratory effort. Later in an asthma episode, P_{aCO_2} rises, indicating carbon dioxide retention. Allergic asthma often occurs with an elevated serum eosinophil count and immunoglobulin E levels. The sputum may contain eosinophils and mucus plugs with shed epithelial cells (Curschmann’s spirals).

Pulmonary Function Tests

The most accurate tests for asthma are the pulmonary function tests (PFTs) measured using spirometry. Baseline PFTs are obtained for all patients diagnosed with asthma. The most important PFTs for a patient with asthma are:

- **Forced vital capacity (FVC)** (volume of air exhaled from full inhalation to full exhalation)
- **Forced expiratory volume in the first second (FEV_1)** (volume of air blown out as hard and fast as possible during the first second of the most forceful exhalation after the greatest full inhalation)
- **Peak expiratory flow (PEF)** (fastest airflow rate reached at any time during exhalation)

A decrease in either the FEV_1 or the PEF of 15% to 20% below the expected value for age, gender, and size is common for the patient with asthma. An increase of 12% in these values after treatment with bronchodilators is diagnostic for asthma. Airway responsiveness is tested by measuring the PEF and FEV_1 before and after the patient inhales the drug *methacholine*, which induces bronchospasm in susceptible people.

INTERVENTIONS

The purposes of asthma therapy are to control and prevent episodes, improve airflow, and relieve symptoms. Adult asthma is best managed when the patient is an active partner in the management plan. Priority nursing actions focus on patient education about proper implementation of a personal asthma action plan, which includes drug therapy and lifestyle management strategies to assist the patient in understanding his or her disease and its treatment ([GINA, 2010](#)).

Teaching for Self-Management

Asthma often has intermittent overt symptoms. With guided self-care, patients can co-manage this disease, increasing symptom-free periods and decreasing the number and severity of attacks ([Ellis, 2008](#); [Pruitt, 2011](#)). Good management decreases the number of hospital admissions and increases participation in patient-chosen work and leisure activities. Self-care requires extensive education for the patient to be able to self-assess respiratory status, self-treat (including adjusting the frequency and dosage of prescribed drugs), and know when to consult the health care provider.

Ideally, a personal asthma action plan is developed by the health care provider and the patient. This plan is tailored to meet the patient’s personal triggers, asthma manifestation pattern, and drug responses. This plan includes the prescribed daily controller drug(s) schedule and prescribed reliever drug directions, patient-specific daily asthma control assessment questions, directions for adjusting the daily controller drug schedule, when to contact the health care provider (in addition to regularly scheduled visits), and what emergency actions to take when asthma manifestations are not responding to controller and reliever drugs.

Teach the patient to assess symptom severity at least twice daily with a peak flowmeter ([Fig. 32-4](#)) and to adjust drugs according to his or her personal asthma action plan to manage inflammation and bronchospasms to prevent or relieve symptoms. [Chart 32-5](#) describes the correct method to use the meter. Teach the patient to first establish a baseline or “personal best” peak expiratory flow (PEF) by measuring his or her PEF twice daily for 2 to 3 weeks when asthma is well controlled and recording the results. This way, the patient will



FIG. 32-4 A typical peak flowmeter. This model will show faster exhalation rates in green, reduced exhalation rates in yellow, and seriously reduced exhalation rates in red.

CHART 32-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Using a Peak Flowmeter

- Set the peak flowmeter at zero.
- Use a standing position, without leaning or supporting yourself on anything, if possible.
- Take as deep a breath as you can.
- Place the mouthpiece of the meter in your mouth, taking care to wrap your lips tightly around it.
- Blow your breath out through the mouthpiece as hard and as fast as you are able. (If you cough, sneeze, or have any type of interruption while you exhale, reset the meter and perform the test again.)
- Reset and perform the test two additional times.
- Use the highest reading of the three to determine your current peak flow rate.
- Keep a record or graph of your peak flow rates and examine these for trends.

know when his or her peak flow is reduced to the point that more drugs are needed or that emergency assistance is needed. When the patient has established a “personal best,” all other readings are compared with this value in terms of percent of personal best. Some meters are color-coded to help the patient interpret the results. Green zone readings are at least 80% or above the “personal best.” This is the ideal range for asthma control and indicates that no increases in drug therapy are needed. Yellow is a range between 50% and 80% of personal best. When a patient has a reading in this range, he or she needs to use the prescribed “reliever drug” (formerly called a rescue drug). Within a few minutes after using the reliever drug, another PEF reading should be made to determine whether the reliever drug is working. *Frequent readings in the yellow zone or increasing use of reliever drugs is a warning that indicates the need to reassess the asthma plan for a temporary or permanent change in controller (preventive) drugs.* Red is a range below 50% of the patient’s personal best and indicates serious respiratory obstruction.

CHART 32-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Asthma Management

- Avoid potential environmental asthma triggers, such as smoke, fireplaces, dust, mold, and weather changes (especially warm to cold or sudden barometric changes).
- Avoid medications that are triggers for your asthma (e.g., aspirin, NSAIDs, beta blockers).
- Avoid food that has been prepared with monosodium glutamate (MSG) or metabisulfite.
- If you experience symptoms of exercise-induced asthma, use your bronchodilator inhaler 30 minutes before exercise to prevent or reduce bronchospasm.
- Be sure you know the proper technique and correct sequence when you use metered dose inhalers.
- Get adequate rest and sleep.
- Reduce stress and anxiety; learn relaxation techniques; adopt coping mechanisms that have worked for you in the past.
- Wash all bedding with hot water to destroy dust mites.
- Monitor your peak expiratory flow rates with a flowmeter at least twice daily.
- Seek immediate emergency care if you experience any of these:
 - Gray or blue fingertips or lips
 - Difficulty breathing, walking, or talking
 - Retractions of the neck, chest, or ribs
 - Nasal flaring
 - Failure of drugs to control worsening symptoms
 - Peak expiratory rate flow declining steadily after treatment, or a flow rate 50% below your usual flow rate

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient that if a red zone reading occurs when using the peak flowmeter, to immediately use the reliever drugs and seek emergency help.

Teach the patient to keep a symptom and intervention diary to learn specific triggers of asthma symptoms, early cues for impending attacks, and personal response to drugs. Stress the importance of proper use of his or her personal asthma action plan for any severity of asthma (Corbridge & Corbridge, 2010). Chart 32-6 lists areas to emphasize when teaching the patient with asthma.

Drug Therapy

Pharmacologic management of adult patients with asthma is based on the step category for severity and treatment (see Charts 32-2 and 32-3) (GINA, 2010). **Control therapy drugs** (formerly called preventive drugs) are drugs used to reduce airway responsiveness to prevent asthma attacks from occurring. *They are used every day, regardless of symptoms.* **Reliever drugs** are those used to actually stop an attack once it has started. Some patients may need drug therapy only during an asthma episode. For others, daily drugs are needed to keep asthma episodic rather than a more frequent problem. This therapy involves the use of bronchodilators and various drug types to reduce inflammation. Some drugs reduce the asthma response, and other drugs actually prevent the response. Combination drugs are two agents from different classes combined together for better response. Chart 32-7 lists the most common preferred drugs in each class for control

CHART 32-7 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Asthma Prevention and Treatment

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALE
Bronchodilators			
Short-Acting Beta₂ Agonist (SABA)			
Albuterol (Proventil, Ventolin) 1-2 inhalations every 4-6 hr (90 mcg/inhaled dose)	Causes bronchodilation by relaxing bronchiolar smooth muscle through binding to and activating pulmonary beta ₂ receptors. Primary use is a fast-acting reliever (rescue) drug to be used either during an asthma attack or just before engaging in activity that usually triggers an attack.	Teach patient to carry with him or her at all times. Teach patient to monitor heart rate. When taking this drug with other inhaled drugs, teach patient to use this drug at least 5 minutes before the other inhaled drugs. Teach patient the correct technique for using the MDI or DPI, and obtain a return demonstration.	The drug can stop or reduce life-threatening bronchoconstriction, which can occur anytime. Excessive use causes systemic symptoms, especially tachycardia. The bronchodilation effect of the drug allows better penetration of the other inhaled drugs. Correct technique is essential to getting the drug to the site of action. Poor technique allows the drug to escape through the nose and mouth.
Long-Acting Beta₂ Agonist (LABA)			
Salmeterol (Serevent) 2 inhalations every 12 hr (25 mcg/inhalation with MDI) (50 mcg/inhalation with DPI)	Causes bronchodilation by relaxing bronchiolar smooth muscle through binding to and activating pulmonary beta ₂ receptors. Onset of action is slow with a long duration. Primary use is prevention of an asthma attack.	Teach patient to shake inhaler (MDI) well before using. Teach patient to not use this drug with the onset of asthma symptoms or worsening of wheezing. Teach patient the correct technique for using the MDI or DPI, and obtain a return demonstration.	Drug separates easily. Drug has slow onset of action and does not relieve or reverse symptoms. Correct technique is essential to getting the drug to the site of action. Poor technique allows the drug to escape through the nose and mouth.
Cholinergic Antagonist			
Ipratropium (Atrovent), 2-4 inhalations 4-6 times daily (18 mcg/inhalation)	Causes bronchodilation by inhibiting the parasympathetic nervous system, allowing the sympathetic system to dominate, releasing norepinephrine that activates beta ₂ receptors. Purpose is to both relieve and prevent asthma. Drug does not work as well as SABAs but can be used in place of SABAs by patients who cannot tolerate side effects of beta ₂ agonists.	If patient is to use this as a reliever drug, teach him or her to carry it at all times. Teach patient to shake MDI well before using. Teach patient to drink at least 4 L of fluid daily unless another health problem requires fluid restriction. Teach patient to observe for and report blurred vision, eye pain, headache, nausea, palpitations, tremors, inability to sleep. Teach patient the correct technique for using the MDI or DPI, and obtain a return demonstration.	The drug can stop or reduce life-threatening bronchoconstriction, which can occur anytime. Drug separates easily. Drug causes mouth dryness. These are systemic symptoms of overdose and require intervention. Correct technique is essential to getting the drug to the site of action. Poor technique allows the drug to escape through the nose and mouth.
Anti-Inflammatories			
All of these drugs help improve bronchiolar airflow by decreasing the inflammatory response of the mucous membranes in the airways. <i>They do not cause bronchodilation.</i>			

Continued

CHART 32-7 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Asthma Prevention and Treatment—cont'd

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALE
Corticosteroids			
Fluticasone (Flovent) 50 mcg by MDI twice daily; 100-250 mcg by DPI daily	Disrupts all known production pathways of inflammatory mediators. The main purpose is to prevent an asthma attack caused by inflammation or allergies (controller drug).	Teach patient to use the drug daily, even when no symptoms are present. Teach patient to perform good mouth care and to check the mouth daily for lesions or drainage. Teach patient to not use this drug with the onset of asthma symptoms or worsening of wheezing. Teach patient the correct technique for using the MDI or DPI, and obtain a return demonstration.	Maximum effectiveness requires continued use for 48-72 hr and depends on regular use. Drug reduces local immunity and increases the risk for local infections, especially <i>Candida albicans</i> (yeast). Drug has slow onset of action and does not relieve or reverse symptoms. Correct technique is essential to getting the drug to the site of action. Poor technique allows the drug to escape through the nose and mouth. Knowing the side effects to expect reduces anxiety.
Prednisone (Deltasone, Predone) 1-40 mg orally daily	Not recommended unless asthma symptoms cannot be controlled with any other therapy.	Teach patient about the numerous expected side effects (GI ulceration, fat redistribution, weight gain, hyperglycemia). Teach patient to avoid anyone who has an upper respiratory infection. Teach patient to avoid activities that lead to injury. Teach patient to take drug with food. Teach patient not to suddenly stop taking the drug for any reason. If patient cannot take the oral drug because of vomiting, he or she should receive the drug parenterally.	Drug reduces all protective inflammatory responses, increasing the risk for infection. Blood vessels become more fragile, leading to bruising and petechiae. The drug increases the risk for GI ulceration; food helps reduce the risk. The drug suppresses adrenal production of corticosteroids, which are essential for life.
Cromone			
Nedocromil (Tilade) 4 mg by MDI every 6 hr	Stabilizes the membranes of mast cells and prevents the release of inflammatory mediators. Purpose is to prevent asthma attack triggered by inflammation or allergens.	Teach patient to use the drug daily, even when no symptoms are present. Teach patient to not use this drug with the onset of asthma symptoms or worsening of wheezing. Teach patient the correct technique for using the MDI, and obtain a return demonstration.	Drug has slow onset of action for asthma prevention and is most effective when taken consistently. Drug does not relieve or reverse symptoms. Correct technique is essential to getting the drug to the site of action. Poor technique allows the drug to escape through the nose and mouth.
Leukotriene Modifier			
Montelukast (Singulair) 10 mg orally daily	Blocks the leukotriene receptor, preventing the inflammatory mediator from stimulating inflammation. Purpose is to prevent asthma attack triggered by inflammation or allergens.	Teach patient to use the drug daily, even when no symptoms are present. Teach patient not to decrease the dose of or stop taking any other asthma drugs unless otherwise instructed by the health care professional.	Drug has slow onset of action for asthma prevention and is most effective when taken consistently. This drug is for long-term asthma control and does not replace other drugs, especially corticosteroids and reliever (rescue) drugs.

From National Institutes of Health. (2007). *Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma*. Expert panel report 3. Bethesda, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
DPI, Dry powder inhaler; MDI, metered dose inhaler.

(prevention) and relief (rescue) therapy of asthma. The actions, interventions, and rationales for most drugs within a single class are similar although drug dosages may differ. Be sure to consult a pharmacology text or drug handbook for more information on a specific drug.

Bronchodilators. Bronchodilators increase bronchiolar smooth muscle relaxation. They have no effect on inflammatory processes. Thus when a patient with asthma has airflow obstruction by both bronchospasm and inflammation, at least two types of drug therapy are needed. Some bronchodilators work by stimulating the beta₂-adrenergic receptors on bronchial smooth muscle in much the same way that the sympathetic nervous system transmitters *epinephrine* and *norepinephrine* do; others work by blocking the parasympathetic nervous system. Bronchodilators include beta₂ agonists and cholinergic antagonists.

Beta₂ agonists bind to the beta₂-adrenergic receptors and cause an increase in the intracellular level of a substance called *cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)*. This substance sets pathways into motion that trigger smooth muscle relaxation.

Short-acting beta₂ agonists (SABAs) provide rapid but short-term relief. These inhaled drugs are most useful when an attack begins (as relief) or as premedication when the patient is about to begin an activity that is likely to induce an attack (GINA, 2010). Such agents include albuterol (Proventil, Ventolin), bitolterol (Tornalate), levalbuterol (Xopenex), pirbuterol (Maxair), and terbutaline (Brethaire). When inhaled from either a metered dose inhaler (MDI) or a dry powder inhaler (DPI), the drug is delivered directly to the site of action and systemic effects are minimal (unless the agent is overused). Teach the patient the correct technique for using an inhaled drug to achieve the greatest benefit. Chart 32-8 describes the proper way to use an MDI. Fig. 32-5 shows a patient using a “spacer” with an MDI. Spacer use increases

the amount of drug delivered to the lungs. Chart 32-9 describes the proper care and use of a DPI. Fig. 32-6 shows a patient using a DPI.

Dry powder inhalers indicate the amount of remaining drug; however, aerosol inhalers (MDIs) do not. Demonstrate how to check approximate aerosol inhaler drug levels by placing the inhaler in water (Fig. 32-7). Full inhalers sink to the bottom. An empty inhaler floats on its side. *This technique is controversial because it is only a general approximation.* The more recommended technique is for the patient to count the number of doses as they are used; however, many patients have difficulty keeping the dose count accurate.

Long-acting beta₂ agonists (LABAs) are also delivered by inhaler directly to the site of action—the bronchioles. Proper

CHART 32-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

How to Use an Inhaler Correctly*

With a Spacer (Preferred Technique)

1. Before each use, remove the caps from the inhaler and the spacer.
2. Insert the mouthpiece of the inhaler into the non-mouthpiece end of the spacer.
3. Shake the whole unit vigorously three or four times.
4. Place the mouthpiece into your mouth, over your tongue, and seal your lips tightly around it.
5. Press down firmly on the canister of the inhaler to release one dose of medication into the spacer.
6. Breathe in slowly and deeply. If the spacer makes a whistling sound, you are breathing in too rapidly.
7. Remove the mouthpiece from your mouth, and, keeping your lips closed, hold your breath for at least 10 seconds and then breathe out slowly.
8. Wait at least 1 minute between puffs.
9. Replace the caps on the inhaler and the spacer.
10. At least once a day, clean the plastic case and cap of the inhaler by thoroughly rinsing in warm, running tap water; at least once a week, clean the spacer in the same manner.

Without a Spacer (Primary Method)

1. Before each use, remove the cap and shake the inhaler according to the instructions in the package insert.
2. Tilt your head back slightly, and breathe out fully.
3. Open your mouth, and place the mouthpiece 1 to 2 inches away.
4. As you begin to breathe in deeply through your mouth, press down firmly on the canister of the inhaler to release one dose of medication.
5. Continue to breathe in slowly and deeply (usually over 3-5 sec).
6. Hold your breath for at least 10 seconds to allow the medication to reach deep into the lungs, and then breathe out slowly.
7. Wait at least 1 minute between puffs.
8. Replace the cap on the inhaler.
9. At least once a day, remove the canister and clean the plastic case and cap of the inhaler by thoroughly rinsing in warm, running tap water.

Without a Spacer (Alternative Method)

1. Follow steps 1 and 2 of the primary method for using an inhaler without a spacer.
2. Place the mouthpiece into your mouth, over your tongue, and seal your lips tightly around it.
3. Follow steps 4 to 9 of the primary method for using an inhaler without a spacer.

*Avoid spraying in the direction of the eyes.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient with asthma to always carry the relief drug inhaler with him or her and to ensure that enough drug remains in the inhaler to provide a quick dose when needed.



FIG. 32-5 Patient using an aerosol inhaler with a spacer.

CHART 32-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

How to Use a Dry Powder Inhaler (DPI)

For Inhalers Requiring Loading

- First load the drug by:
 - Turning the device to the next dose of drug, or
 - Inserting the capsule into the device, or
 - Inserting the disk or compartment into the device

After Loading the Drug and for Inhalers That Do Not Require Drug Loading

- Read your doctor's instructions for how fast you should breathe for your particular inhaler.
- Place your lips over the mouthpiece, and breathe in forcefully (there is no propellant in the inhaler; only your breath pulls the drug in).
- Remove the inhaler from your mouth as soon as you have breathed in.
- *Never exhale (breathe out) into your inhaler.* Your breath will moisten the powder, causing it to clump and not be delivered accurately.
- *Never wash or place the inhaler in water.*
- *Never shake your inhaler.*
- Keep your inhaler in a dry place at room temperature.
- If the inhaler is preloaded, discard the inhaler after it is empty.
- Because the drug is a dry powder and there is no propellant, you may not feel, smell, or taste it as you inhale.



FIG. 32-6 Patient using a dry powder inhaler (DPI).

use of the long-acting agonists can decrease the need to use reliever (rescue) drugs as often. Unlike short-acting agonists, long-acting drugs need time to build up an effect but the effects are longer lasting. *Thus these drugs are useful in preventing an asthma attack but have no value during an acute attack. Therefore teach patients not to use LABAs alone to relieve (rescue) them during an attack or when wheezing is getting worse but, instead, to use a SABA. Relying on LABAs during an attack can lead to worsening of symptoms and death (Aschenbrenner, 2010).* Examples of LABAs include formoterol (Foradil) and salmeterol (Serevent). *These drugs are never prescribed as the **only** drug therapy for asthma. Teach the patient to use these control drugs daily as prescribed, even when no symptoms are present.*

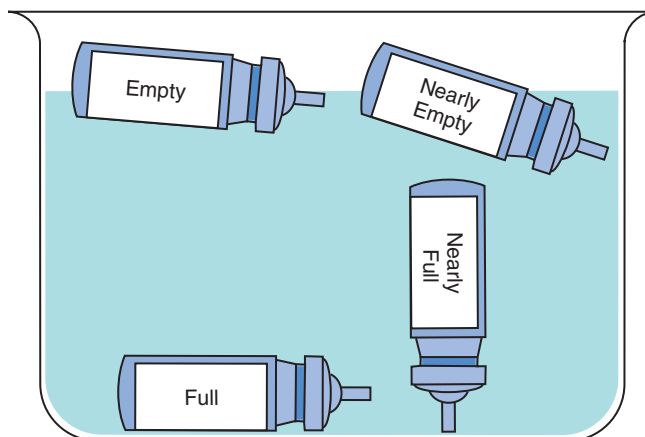


FIG. 32-7 Checking the approximate drug level in an aerosol inhaler by placing it in water.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client reaches for the salmeterol (Serevent) inhaler with the onset of an asthma attack. What is the nurse's best action?

- Instruct the client to use the albuterol (Proventil) inhaler instead.
- Assist the client to use oxygen for three breaths between the two puffs of the inhaled drug.
- Instruct the client to attach the spacer to the inhaler before using it and inhale as rapidly as possible.
- Remind the client to take a deep breath, hold it for 15 seconds, and then exhale before using the inhaler.

*Cholinergic antagonists, also called **anticholinergic drugs**, are similar to atropine and block the parasympathetic nervous system. This blockade allows the sympathetic nervous system to dominate, resulting in increased bronchodilation and decreased pulmonary secretions. The most common drug in this class is ipratropium (Atrovent), which is used as an inhalant. Most cholinergic antagonists are short acting and must be used several times a day, although long-acting agents such as tiotropium (Spiriva) are available for use once a day. These drugs are not as effective as beta₂ agonists and are recommended as first-line asthma control therapy only for those patients who cannot tolerate the side effects of beta₂ agonists.*

Xanthines, such as theophylline and aminophylline, are used only when other types of management are ineffective. These drugs are given systemically, and the dosage that is effective is close to the dosage that produces many dangerous side effects. Blood levels must be monitored closely to ensure the drug level is within the therapeutic range.

Anti-Inflammatory Agents. Anti-inflammatory agents decrease the inflammatory responses in the airways. Those given systemically have more side effects. Others are used as inhalants and have fewer systemic side effects.

Corticosteroids decrease inflammatory and immune responses in many ways, including by preventing the synthesis of mediators. Inhaled corticosteroids (ICSs) can be helpful in controlling (preventing) the manifestations of asthma. Newer high-potency steroid inhalers, such as fluticasone (Flovent), budesonide (Pulmicort), and mometasone (Asmanex), may be used once per day for maintenance. Systemic corticosteroids, because of severe side effects, are

avoided for mild to moderate intermittent asthma and are used on a short-term basis for moderate asthma. For some patients with severe asthma, daily oral corticosteroids may be needed. *Both inhaled corticosteroids and those taken orally are control drugs (preventive). They are not effective in reversing symptoms during an asthma attack and should not be used as reliever (rescue) drugs. Teach patients the difference between ICSs and relief drug inhalers. Control drugs must be used on a scheduled basis, even when asthma symptoms are not present.*

Cromones, both those that are inhaled and those that are taken orally, are useful as *preventive* asthma therapy when taken on a scheduled basis. These agents have different mechanisms of action to reduce airway inflammation. Nedocromil (Tilade) inhibits the release of inflammatory mediators from respiratory cells and WBCs. Mast cell stabilizers, such as cromolyn sodium (Intal), prevent mast cell membranes from opening when an allergen binds to IgE. Thus these drugs help prevent atopic asthma attacks but are not useful during an acute episode. *The inhaled cromones are not effective in reversing symptoms during an asthma attack and should not be used as reliever (rescue) drugs.*

Leukotriene modifiers are oral drugs that work in several ways to prevent an asthma episode when taken on a scheduled basis. Montelukast (Singulair) and zafirlukast (Accolate) block the leukotriene receptor. Zileuton (Zyflo) prevents leukotriene synthesis. *These drugs do not reverse symptoms during an asthma attack and should not be used as reliever (rescue) drugs.*

Anti-IgE agents are monoclonal antibodies directed against part of the immunoglobulin E (IgE) structure. When these agents bind to IgE molecules that have allergens attached to them, the complex cannot bind to mast cells and basophils. This action prevents the IgE-allergen complex from triggering the release of mediators from mast cells and basophils. Thus these drugs help *prevent* atopic asthma attacks but are not useful during an acute episode. Omalizumab (Xolair) is currently the only drug in this class and is used only for people with asthma who have high blood levels of IgE. It is injected subcutaneously every 2 to 3 weeks.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

There is a high risk for anaphylaxis from omalizumab. Administer it only in a setting capable of managing this type of reaction.

Exercise/Activity

Regular exercise is a recommended part of asthma therapy (Holcomb, 2008). Aerobic exercise assists in maintaining cardiac health, enhancing skeletal muscle strength, and promoting ventilation and perfusion. Teach patients with asthma to examine the conditions that trigger an attack and adjust the exercise routine as needed. Some may need to premedicate with inhaled SABAs before beginning activity. For others, adjusting the environment may be needed (e.g., changing from outdoor ice-skating in cold, dry air to indoor ice-skating).

Oxygen Therapy

Supplemental oxygen is often used during an acute asthma attack. Oxygen is delivered by mask, nasal cannula, or endotracheal tube. High flow rates or concentrations may be needed when bronchospasms are severe and limit flow of

oxygen through the bronchiole tubes. Heliox, a mixture of helium and oxygen (often 50% helium and 50% oxygen), can help improve oxygen delivery to the alveoli. This gas mixture is lower in density than oxygen alone or room air and flows even when airway resistance is high.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Ensure that no open flames (e.g., cigarette smoking, fireplaces, burning candles) or other combustion hazards are in rooms where oxygen is in use.

Status Asthmaticus

Status asthmaticus is a severe, life-threatening acute episode of airway obstruction that intensifies once it begins and often does not respond to usual therapy. The patient arrives in the emergency department with extremely labored breathing and wheezing. Use of accessory muscles for breathing and distention of neck veins are observed. *If the condition is not reversed, the patient may develop pneumothorax and cardiac or respiratory arrest.* IV fluids, potent systemic bronchodilators, steroids (to decrease inflammation), epinephrine, and oxygen are administered immediately to reverse the acute condition. Prepare for emergency intubation. Sudden absence of wheezing may indicate complete airway obstruction and require a tracheotomy. When breathing improves and wheezing decreases, management is similar to that for any patient with asthma.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

The patient is a 22-year-old college student who has had asthma since childhood. She is being managed with fluticasone (Flovent) 50 mcg/puff, 2 puffs twice daily; salmeterol (Serevent) 1 puff twice daily; albuterol (Ventolin) 1-2 puffs every 4-6 hours as needed for wheezing. She reports that she is using the fluticasone and salmeterol as prescribed but needs to use the albuterol about every 2 hours. She also tells you that she is having difficulty sleeping and feels "like my heart is skipping some beats." Her vital signs are BP, 136/88; P, 96 and irregular; R, 30, with slight wheezing on exhalation. Her oxygen saturation is 92%, and you notice that she has a slight tremor in both hands.

1. What additional physical manifestations should you assess?
2. What questions should you ask?
3. Should you administer oxygen? Why or why not?
4. At what "step" is her current asthma management?
5. What information indicates this step is effective or ineffective?

CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases (COPD) include emphysema and chronic bronchitis. Although these are separate disorders with different pathologic processes, many patients with emphysema also have chronic bronchitis at the same time (Fig. 32-8).

Emphysema

The two major changes that occur with emphysema are loss of lung elasticity and hyperinflation of the lung (see Fig. 32-1). These changes result in dyspnea and the need for an increased respiratory rate.

In the healthy lung, protein degrading enzymes called *proteases* are present to destroy and eliminate particulates and organisms inhaled during breathing. If these proteases are present in higher-than-normal levels, they damage the alveoli and the small airways by breaking down elastin. High protease levels cause the alveolar sacs to lose their elasticity and the small airways to collapse or narrow. Some alveoli are destroyed, and others become large and flabby, with decreased area for effective gas exchange.

An increased amount of air is trapped in the lungs. Causes of air trapping are loss of elastic recoil in the alveolar walls, overstretching and enlargement of the alveoli into air-filled spaces called *bullae*, and collapse of small airways (bronchioles). These changes greatly increase the work of breathing. The hyperinflated lung flattens the diaphragm (Fig. 32-9), weakening the effect of this muscle. As a result, the patient with emphysema needs to use additional muscles (accessory muscles) in the neck, chest wall, and abdomen to inhale and exhale. This increased effort increases the need for oxygen, making the patient work harder and have an “air hunger”

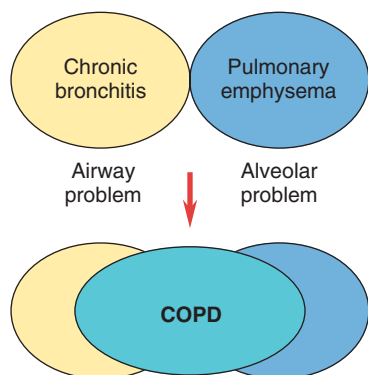
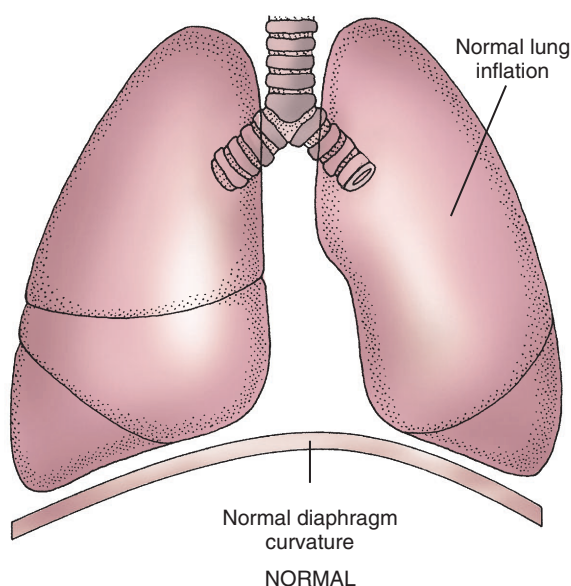


FIG. 32-8 The interaction of chronic bronchitis and emphysema in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).



sensation. Often, inhalation starts before exhalation is completed, resulting in an uncoordinated pattern of breathing.

Oxygenation is affected by the increased work of breathing and the loss of alveolar tissue. Although some alveoli enlarge, the curves of alveolar walls decrease and less surface area is available for gas exchange. Often the patient adjusts by increasing the respiratory rate, so arterial blood gas (ABG) values may not show gas exchange problems until the patient has advanced disease. Then carbon dioxide is produced faster than it can be eliminated, resulting in carbon dioxide retention and chronic respiratory acidosis (see Chapter 14). The patient with late-stage emphysema also has a low arterial oxygen (P_{aO_2}) level, because it is difficult for oxygen to move from diseased alveoli into the blood.

Emphysema is classified as *panlobular*, *centrilobular*, or *paraseptal* depending on the pattern of destruction and dilation of the gas-exchanging units (acini) (see Fig. 32-1). Each type can occur alone or in combination in the same lung. Most are associated with smoking or chronic exposure to other inhalation irritants.

Chronic Bronchitis

Bronchitis is an inflammation of the bronchi and bronchioles caused by exposure to irritants, especially cigarette smoke. The irritant triggers inflammation, vasodilation, mucosal edema, congestion, and bronchospasm. Bronchitis affects only the airways, not the alveoli.

Chronic inflammation increases the number and size of mucous glands, which produce large amounts of thick mucus. The bronchial walls thicken and impair airflow. This thickening, along with excessive mucus, blocks some of the smaller airways and narrows larger ones. Smaller airways are involved first. In addition, the increased mucus provides a breeding ground for microorganisms and leads to chronic low-grade infection.

Chronic bronchitis hinders airflow and gas exchange because of mucus plugs and infection narrowing the airways.

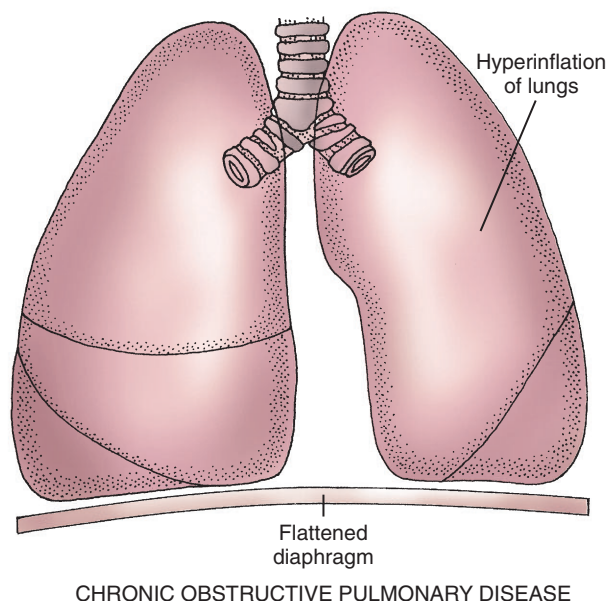


FIG. 32-9 Diaphragm shape and lung inflation in the normal patient and in the patient with chronic airflow limitation (CAL), especially chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

As a result, the Pao_2 decreases (hypoxemia) and the arterial blood carbon dioxide ($Paco_2$) level increases (respiratory acidosis).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Cigarette smoking is the greatest risk factor for COPD. The patient with an 8-pack-year history usually has obstructive lung changes but no manifestations of disease. The patient with a 20-pack-year history or longer often has early-stage COPD with changes in pulmonary function tests (PFTs).

The harmful effects of tobacco occur because inhaled smoke triggers the release of excessive amounts of the proteases from cells in the lungs. These enzymes break down elastin, the major component of alveoli. By impairing the action of cilia, smoking also inhibits the cilia from clearing the bronchi of mucus, cellular debris, and fluid.

In addition to the increased risk for COPD from active smoking, passive smoking (or secondhand smoke), as well as smoke that clings to hair and clothing (sometimes called “thirdhand” smoke), contributes to upper and lower respiratory problems. The risk is greater when exposure occurs in small, confined spaces.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

The prevalence of smoking remains higher among African Americans, blue-collar workers, and less educated people than in the overall population of the United States. Smoking prevalence is highest among Northern Plains American Indians and Alaskan Natives. Development of culturally appropriate smoking-cessation programs as well as research examining barriers to cessation in these populations may help reduce this disparity.

Alpha₁-antitrypsin deficiency is a less common but important risk factor for COPD. A special enzyme, alpha₁-antitrypsin (AAT), is normally present in the lungs. One purpose of AAT is to regulate the proteases that are present to break down inhaled pollutants and organisms. AAT, a protease inhibitor, prevents the proteases from working on lung structures.

The production of normal amounts of AAT depends on the inheritance of a pair of normal gene alleles for this protein. The AAT gene is recessive. Thus if one of the pair of alleles is faulty and the other allele is normal, the person makes enough AAT to prevent COPD unless there is significant exposure to cigarette smoke and other precipitating factors. This person, however, is a carrier for AAT deficiency. If both alleles are faulty, COPD develops at a fairly young age even when the person is not exposed to cigarette smoke or other irritants.

About 100,000 Americans have severe AAT deficiency, and many more have mild to moderate deficiencies (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Although an AAT deficiency also can cause problems in the skin and liver, lung diseases are more common.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The gene for AAT has many known mutations, some of which increase the risk for emphysema. Variation of mutations (polymorphisms) results in different levels of AAT deficiency. This variation is one reason why the disease is more severe for some people than for others. The most serious mutation for an increased risk for emphysema is the Z mutation, although others also increase the risk but to a lesser degree. Table 32-1 shows the most common AAT mutations increasing the risk for emphysema.

TABLE 32-1 CHARACTERISTICS ASSOCIATED WITH THE MOST COMMON ALPHA₁-ANTITRYPSIN GENE MUTATIONS

MUTATION GENOTYPE	LEVEL OF SERUM ALPHA ₁ -ANTITRYPSIN (% OF NORMAL)	DISEASE SEVERITY
M/S	80%	No detectable disease
S/S	50%-60%	Minimal to no disease expression
M/Z	50%-55%	Minimal to no disease expression
S/Z	30%-35%	Pulmonary disease, early age
Z/Z	10%-15%	Severe COPD, extra-pulmonary involvement

From Workman, M.L., & Winkelman, C. (2008). Genetic influences in common respiratory disorders. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 20(2), 171-189. COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

Incidence/Prevalence

The prevalence of chronic bronchitis and emphysema in the United States has been estimated at about 13.5 million (for chronic bronchitis) and 2 million (for emphysema). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is the fourth leading cause of morbidity and mortality in the United States ([Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease \[GOLD\]](#), 2009).

Complications

COPD affects *oxygenation* of all tissues. Complications can result in tissue anoxia and death. Major problems occur, such as hypoxemia, acidosis, respiratory infection, cardiac failure, and dysrhythmias.

Hypoxemia and acidosis occur because the patient with COPD has reduced gas exchange, leading to decreased oxygenation and increased carbon dioxide levels. These problems reduce cellular function.

Respiratory infection risk increases because of the increased mucus and poor oxygenation. Bacterial infections with *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Moraxella catarrhalis* are common. Acute lung infections make COPD manifestations worse by increasing inflammation and mucus production and inducing more bronchospasm. Airflow becomes even more limited, the work of breathing increases, and dyspnea results.

Cardiac failure, especially **cor pulmonale** (right-sided heart failure caused by pulmonary disease), occurs with bronchitis or emphysema. Air trapping, airway collapse, and stiff alveolar walls increase the lung tissue pressure, making blood flow through lung vessels more difficult. The increased pressure creates a heavy workload on the right side of the heart, which pumps blood into the lungs. As the disease progresses, the amount of oxygen in the blood decreases, causing major blood vessels in the lung to constrict. To pump blood through these narrowed vessels, the right side of the heart generates high pressures. In response to this heavy workload, the right chambers of the heart enlarge and thicken, causing right-sided heart failure with backup of blood into the general venous system. [Chart 32-10](#) lists key features of cor pulmonale.

CHART 32-10 KEY FEATURES

Cor Pulmonale

- Hypoxia and hypoxemia
- Increasing dyspnea
- Fatigue
- Enlarged and tender liver
- Warm, cyanotic hands and feet, with bounding pulses
- Cyanotic lips
- Distended neck veins
- Right ventricular enlargement (hypertrophy)
- Visible pulsations below the sternum
- GI disturbances, such as nausea or anorexia
- Dependent edema
- Metabolic and respiratory acidosis
- Pulmonary hypertension

Cardiac dysrhythmias are common in patients with COPD. They result from hypoxemia (from decreased oxygen to the heart muscle), other cardiac disease, drug effects, or acidosis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The incidence and severity of COPD would be greatly reduced by smoking cessation. COPD is rare among people who have never smoked cigarettes. Disease progression can be slowed by smoking cessation. Urge all people who smoke to quit smoking. [Chart 32-4](#) provides tips to teach people about smoking cessation.

Other measures to reduce the incidence of COPD are to avoid inhalation irritants in all environments. Teaching all people to use masks when working in areas with high levels of particulate matter can reduce individual exposure. Proper venting of workplaces and recreation areas that have airborne or particulate matter also reduces exposure.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The Concept Map on p. 615 addresses assessment and nursing care issues related to COPD.

ASSESSMENT**History**

Ask about risk factors such as age, gender, occupational history, and ethnic-cultural background. COPD is seen more often in older men. Some types of emphysema occur in families, especially those with α_1 -antitrypsin (AAT) deficiency.

Obtain a thorough smoking history, because tobacco use is a major risk factor. Ask about the length of time the patient has smoked and the number of packs smoked daily. Use these data to determine the pack-year smoking history.

Ask the patient to describe his or her breathing problems. Assess whether the patient has any difficulty breathing while talking. Can he or she speak in complete sentences, or is it necessary to take a breath between every one or two words? Ask about the presence, duration, or worsening of wheezing, coughing, and shortness of breath. Determine what activities trigger these problems. Assess the patient's cough, and ask whether sputum is clear or colored and how much is produced each day. Ask about the time of day when sputum production is greatest. Smokers often have a productive



FIG. 32-10 Orthopnea positions that patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) often assume to ease the work of breathing.

cough when they get up in the morning; nonsmokers generally do not. Ask whether sputum production has increased or changed during the past year.

Check the relationship between activity tolerance and dyspnea by asking the patient to compare the activity level and shortness of breath now with those of a month ago and a year ago. Ask about any difficulty with eating and sleeping. Many patients sleep in a semi-sitting position because breathlessness is worse when lying down (**orthopnea**). Ask about usual daily activities and any difficulty with sleeping, bathing, dressing, or sexual activity. Document this initial assessment to personalize the intervention plan.

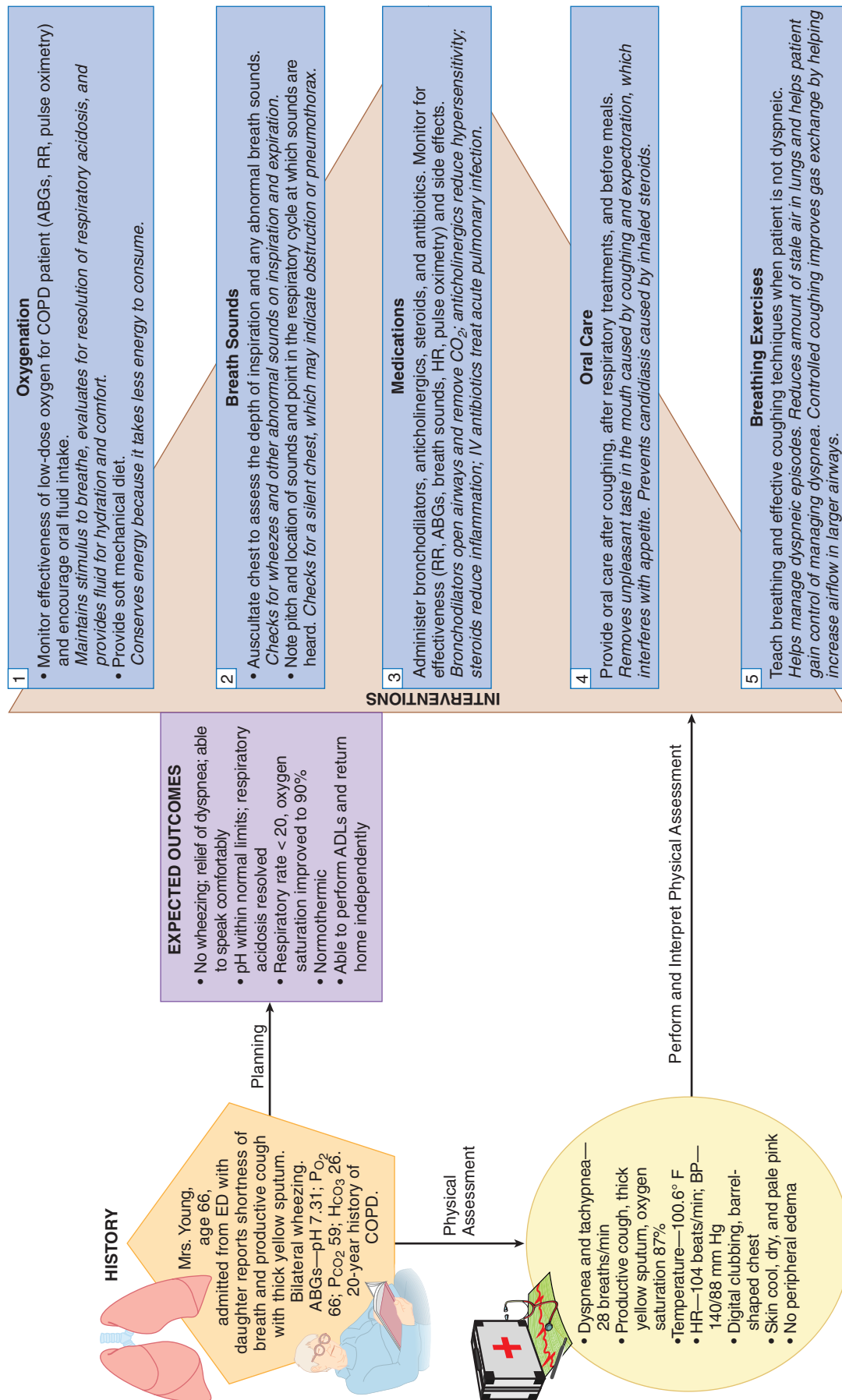
Weigh the patient, and compare this weight with previous weights. Unplanned weight loss is likely when COPD severity increases, because the work of breathing increases metabolic needs. Dyspnea and mucus production often result in poor food intake and inadequate nutrition. Ask the patient to recall a typical day's meals and fluid intake. When heart failure is present with COPD, general edema with weight gain may occur.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

General appearance can provide clues about the patient's respiratory status and energy level. Observe weight in proportion to height, posture, mobility, muscle mass, and overall hygiene. The patient with increasingly severe COPD is thin, with loss of muscle mass in the extremities, although the neck muscles may be enlarged. He or she tends to be slow moving and slightly stooped. Usually the person sits with a forward-bending posture, sometimes with the arms held forward, a position known as the *orthopneic* or *tripod position* ([Fig. 32-10](#)). When dyspnea becomes severe, activity intolerance may be so great that bathing and general grooming are neglected.

Respiratory changes occur as a result of obstruction, changes in chest size, and fatigue. Inspect the chest to assess the breathing rate and pattern. The patient with respiratory

Concept Map: Respiratory Acidosis (COPD-Related)



muscle fatigue breathes with rapid, shallow respirations, and may have an abnormal breathing pattern in which the abdominal wall is sucked in during inspiration, or may use accessory muscles in the abdomen or neck. The respiratory rate could be as high as 40 to 50 breaths/min. The breathing patterns often seen with respiratory muscle fatigue use abdominal muscles and the intercostal muscles more than the diaphragm. Respiratory movement is jerky and appears uncoordinated.

Check the patient's chest for abnormal retractions and for asymmetric chest expansion. The patient with emphysema has limited diaphragmatic movement (excursion) because the diaphragm is flattened and below its usual resting state. Chest vibration (fremitus) is often decreased and the chest sounds hyperresonant on percussion because of trapped air.

Auscultate the chest to assess the depth of inspiration and any abnormal breath sounds. Wheezes and other abnormal sounds occur with emphysema and chronic bronchitis, often on inspiration and expiration, although crackles are usually not present. Reduced breath sounds are common, especially with emphysema. Note the pitch and location of the sound and the point in the respiratory cycle at which the sound is heard. A silent chest may indicate serious airflow obstruction or pneumothorax.

Assess the degree of dyspnea using an assessment tool called a *Visual Analog Dyspnea Scale (VADS)*. The VADS is a straight line with verbal anchors at the beginning and end of a 100-mm line. Ask the patient to place a mark on the line to indicate his or her perceived breathing difficulty (Fig. 32-11). Document the response, and use this scale to assess dyspnea, determine the therapy effectiveness, and pace the patient's activities.

Examine the patient's chest for the presence of a "barrel chest" (see Fig. 32-3). With a barrel chest, the ratio between the anteroposterior (AP) diameter of the chest and its lateral diameter is 2:2 rather than the normal ratio of 1:1.5. This shape change results from lung overinflation and diaphragm flattening.

The patient with chronic bronchitis often has a cyanotic, or blue-tinged, dusky appearance and has excessive sputum production. Assess for cyanosis, delayed capillary refill, and finger clubbing (Fig. 32-12), which indicate chronically decreased arterial oxygen levels.

Cardiac changes occur as a result of the anatomic changes associated with COPD. Assess the patient's heart rate and rhythm. Check for swelling of the feet and ankles (dependent edema) or other manifestations of right-sided heart failure. Examine nail beds and oral mucous membranes.

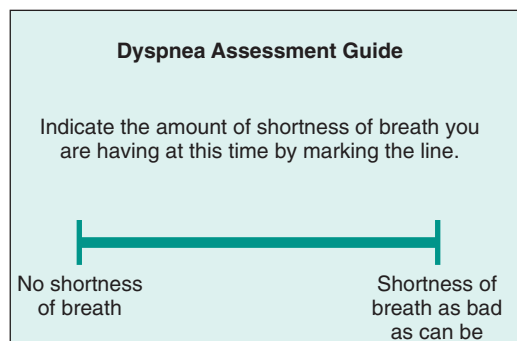


FIG. 32-11 A visual analog scale to assess dyspnea.

The patient with later-stage emphysema may have pallor or frank cyanosis.

Psychosocial Assessment

COPD affects all aspects of a person's life. Socialization may be reduced when friends and family avoid the patient with COPD because of annoying coughs, excessive sputum, or dyspnea. The patient may be isolated because dyspnea causes fatigue or because of embarrassment from coughing and excessive sputum production.

Ask the patient about interests and hobbies to assess whether socialization has decreased or whether hobbies cause exposure to irritants. Ask about home conditions for exposure to smoke or crowded living conditions that promote transmission of respiratory infections.

Economic status may be affected by the disease through changes in income and health insurance coverage. Severe COPD may require role changes that have a negative impact on self-image. Drugs, especially the metered dose inhalers (MDIs) and dry powder inhalers (DPI), are expensive, and many patients with limited incomes may use them only during exacerbations and not as prescribed on a scheduled basis.

Anxiety and fear related to dyspnea and feelings of breathlessness may reduce the patient's ability to participate in a full life. Work, family, social, and sexual roles can be affected. Encourage the patient and family to express their feelings about the limitations on lifestyle and disease progression. Assess their awareness and use of support groups and services.

Laboratory Assessment

Arterial blood gas (ABG) values identify abnormal oxygenation, ventilation, and acid-base status. Compare serial or repeated ABG values to assess changes in the patient's respiratory status. Once baseline ABG values are obtained, pulse oximetry can gauge the response to treatment. As COPD worsens, the amount of oxygen in the blood decreases (**hypoxemia**) and the amount of carbon dioxide in the blood increases (**hypercarbia**). Chronic respiratory acidosis (increased arterial carbon dioxide [PaCO_2]) then results; metabolic alkalosis (increased arterial bicarbonate) occurs as compensation by kidney retention of bicarbonate. This change is seen on ABGs as an elevation of HCO_3^- , although

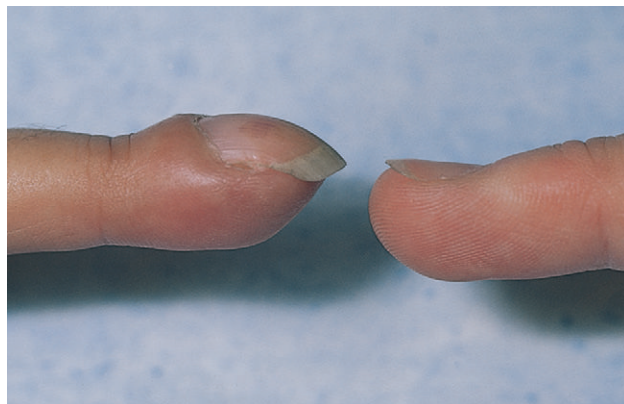


FIG. 32-12 Late digital clubbing (on left) compared with a normal digit (on right).

pH remains lower than normal. Not all patients with COPD are carbon dioxide retainers, even when hypoxemia is present. Carbon dioxide diffuses more easily across lung membranes than does oxygen. Hypercapnia is a problem in advanced emphysema (because the alveoli are affected) rather than in bronchitis (wherein the airways are affected). For more detailed information about acidosis, see [Chapter 14](#).

Sputum samples are obtained for culture from hospitalized patients with an acute respiratory infection. The infection is treated on the basis of manifestations and the common bacterial organisms. A WBC count helps confirm the presence of infection.

Other blood tests include hemoglobin and hematocrit to determine *polycythemia* (a compensatory increase in red blood cells [RBCs] in the chronically hypoxic patient). Serum electrolyte levels are examined because acidosis can change electrolyte values. Low phosphate, potassium, calcium, and magnesium levels reduce muscle strength. In patients with a family history of COPD, serum AAT levels may be drawn.

Imaging Assessment

Chest x-rays are used to rule out other lung diseases and to check the progress of patients with respiratory infections or chronic disease. With advanced emphysema, chest x-rays show hyperinflation and a flattened diaphragm.

Other Diagnostic Assessments

COPD is classified from mild to severe on the basis of manifestations and pulmonary function test (PFT) changes ([Table 32-2](#); see also [Table 29-6](#) in [Chapter 29](#)). Airflow

rates and lung volume measurements help distinguish airway disease (obstructive disease) from interstitial lung disease (restrictive diseases). PFTs determine lung volumes, flow volume curves, and diffusion capacity. Each test is performed before and after the patient inhales a bronchodilator agent. The person being tested for COPD usually has some manifestations and may be anxious about the potential diagnosis. Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings about testing and the potential impact of the results. Explain the preparations for the procedures (if any), whether pain or discomfort will be involved, and any needed follow-up care.

The lung volumes measured for COPD are vital capacity (VC), residual volume (RV), and total lung capacity (TLC) (see [Table 29-6](#) in [Chapter 29](#)). RV is most profoundly affected, although all volumes and capacities change to some degree in COPD. The RV increase reflects the trapped, stale air remaining in the lungs.

Flow volume curves measure the patient's ability to move air into and out from the lungs. The rate of airflow out of the lungs during a rapid, forceful, and complete exhalation from TLC to RV (forced expiratory volume [FEV]) indirectly measures the flow resistance of the lung. A diagnosis of COPD is based mostly on the FEV₁ (the FEV in the first second of exhalation). FEV₁ can also be expressed as a percentage of the forced vital capacity (FVC). As the disease progresses, the ratio of FEV₁ to FVC becomes smaller ([Smith & Tasota, 2011](#)).

The diffusion test measures how well a test gas (carbon monoxide) diffuses across the alveolar-capillary membrane and combines with the hemoglobin of red blood cells. In emphysema, alveolar wall destruction decreases the large surface area for diffusion of gas into the blood, leading to a decreased diffusion capacity. In bronchitis, even though lung volumes are increased, the diffusion capacity is usually normal.

The patient with COPD has decreased oxygen saturation, often much lower than 90%. Changes in pulse oximetry results below the patient's usual saturation require medical attention.

Peak expiratory flowmeters are used to monitor the effectiveness of the prescribed drugs to relieve obstruction. Peak flow rates increase as obstruction resolves. Teach the patient to self-monitor the peak expiratory flow rates at home and adjust drugs as needed.

TABLE 32-2 CLASSIFICATION OF COPD SEVERITY

STAGE	MANIFESTATIONS	PULMONARY FUNCTION TEST RESULTS
0 (At risk)	±Chronic cough ±Chronic sputum production +Exposure to environmental risk factors	Normal
I (Mild)	+Chronic cough ±Sputum production	FEV ₁ /FVC <70% FEV ₁ <80% of predicted
II (Moderate)	±Dyspnea ±Chronic cough ±Sputum production	FEV ₁ /FVC <70% FEV ₁ <80% but at least <50% of predicted
III (Severe)	+Dyspnea +Chronic cough +Sputum production	FEV ₁ /FVC <70% FEV ₁ <50% but at least <30% of predicted
IV (Very severe)	++Dyspnea ++Chronic cough ++Sputum production	FEV ₁ /FVC <70% FEV ₁ <30% of predicted OR FEV ₁ <50% of predicted with respiratory failure

Data from Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). (2009). *Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease*. Medical Communications Resources, Inc. FEV₁, Volume of air blown out as hard and fast as possible during the first second of the most forceful exhalation after the greatest full inhalation; FVC, functional vital capacity.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client with severe dyspnea has all of the following ABG results. Which one does the nurse report immediately to the health care provider?

- A. pH = 7.18
- B. HCO₃⁻ = 31 mEq/L
- C. PaCO₂ = 68 mm Hg
- D. PaO₂ = 68 mm Hg

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) are:

1. Hypoxemia with hypercapnia related to alveolar-capillary membrane changes, reduced airway size, ventilatory muscle fatigue, excessive mucus production,

airway obstruction, diaphragm flattening, fatigue, and decreased energy

2. Weight loss related to dyspnea, excessive secretions, anorexia, and fatigue
3. Anxiety related to dyspnea, a change in health status, and situational crisis
4. Activity Intolerance related to fatigue, dyspnea, and an imbalance between oxygen supply and demand
5. Potential for pneumonia or other respiratory infections



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 55-year-old man who has moderate to severe COPD and is being seen for a regularly scheduled checkup in the clinic. He tells you that he has had to give up a few more of his favorite activities and then tells you that life “isn’t fair.” When you ask him about this, he tells you that he did smoke cigarettes for about 10 years during his 20s but quit when his first child was born. He then explains that his mother, a nonsmoker, died at age 62 of COPD but his father, who smoked his entire life, has only mild COPD at age 80. The patient goes on to say that his younger brother, also a smoker, is 58 and does not have COPD but that his identical twin brother, who never smoked, does have the disease. When you ask whether anyone else on either side of his family has or had COPD, he indicates that the following people had been diagnosed with COPD:

- Mother’s younger brother (older brother and younger sister not affected)
 - Mother’s father
 - Mother’s mother’s brother
 - Father’s two sisters, but none of their children
1. Draw this patient’s family pedigree based on the information you have already received.
 2. What, if any, pattern of inheritance can be identified from the pedigree?
 3. What additional information regarding the possibility of genetic risk should you ask this patient?
 4. Could genetic counseling be helpful to this patient? If so, what genetics professional should be consulted and why?

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Improving Oxygenation and Reducing Carbon Dioxide Retention

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with COPD is expected to attain and maintain gas exchange at a level within his or her usual baseline values. Indicators include that the patient:

- Maintains SpO_2 of at least 88%
- Is not cyanotic
- Maintains cognitive orientation
- Coughs and clears secretions effectively
- Maintains a respiratory rate and rhythm appropriate to his or her activity level

Interventions. Most patients with COPD use nonsurgical management to improve or maintain gas exchange. Surgical management requires that the patient meet strict criteria.

Nonsurgical Management. The mainstays of nursing management for patients with COPD include airway maintenance, monitoring, breathing techniques, positioning, effective coughing, oxygen therapy, exercise conditioning, suctioning, hydration, and use of a vibratory positive-pressure device. Nursing priorities are teaching the patient how to be a partner in COPD management by participating

in therapies to improve ventilation and by adhering to prescribed drug therapy.

Before any intervention, assess the patient to determine the breathing pattern, especially the rate, rhythm, depth, and use of accessory muscles. The patient with COPD relies more on accessory muscles than on the diaphragm for breathing. These muscles, however, are less efficient than the diaphragm, and the work of breathing increases. Determine whether any factors are contributing to the increased work of breathing, such as respiratory infection. *Airway maintenance is the most important focus of interventions to improve gas exchange.* Keep the patient’s head, neck, and chest in alignment.

Monitoring. Monitoring for changes in respiratory status is key to providing prompt interventions to reduce complications. Assess the hospitalized patient with COPD at least every 2 hours, even when the purpose of hospitalization is not COPD management. Provide the prescribed oxygen, assess the patient’s response to therapy, and prevent complications.

If the patient’s condition worsens despite treatment, more aggressive therapy is needed. Intubation and mechanical ventilation may be needed for patients in respiratory failure, including those who are unable to sustain spontaneous breathing patterns.

Breathing Techniques. Diaphragmatic or abdominal and pursed-lip breathing may be helpful for managing dyspneic episodes. Teach the patient to use these techniques, shown in [Chart 32-11](#), during all activities. The amount of stale air in the lungs is reduced, and he or she gains confidence and control in managing dyspnea (Thomas, 2009). Teach these techniques when the patient is free of dyspnea.

In diaphragmatic breathing, the patient consciously increases movement of the diaphragm. Lying on the back allows the abdomen to relax. Breathing through pursed lips uses the mild resistance of partially closed lips to prolong exhalation and to increase airway pressure. This technique delays airway compression and reduces air trapping. Pursed-lip breathing can be used during diaphragmatic or abdominal breathing.

Positioning. Placing the patient in an upright position with the head of the bed elevated can help alleviate dyspnea by increasing chest expansion, relaxing the chest muscles, and placing the diaphragm in the proper position to contract. This position also conserves energy by supporting the patient’s arms and upper body. Assist the patient who can tolerate sitting in a chair out of bed for 1-hour periods two to three times a day. This position helps move secretions and keeps the diaphragm in a better position for ventilation.

Effective Coughing. Coughing effectively can improve gas exchange by helping increase airflow in the larger airways. The patient with COPD often has difficulty with removal of secretions, which results in compromised breathing and poor oxygenation. Excessive mucus also increases the risk for respiratory infections.

Controlled coughing at specific times of the day is helpful in removing excessive mucus. Teach the patient to cough on arising in the morning to eliminate mucus that collected during the night. Coughing to clear mucus before mealtimes may make meals more pleasant. Coughing before bedtime may ensure clear lungs for a less interrupted night’s sleep.

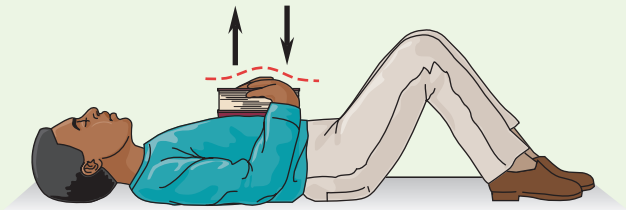
To cough effectively, teach the patient to sit in a chair or on the side of a bed with feet placed firmly on the floor. Instruct him or her to turn the shoulders inward and to bend

CHART 32-11 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Breathing Exercises

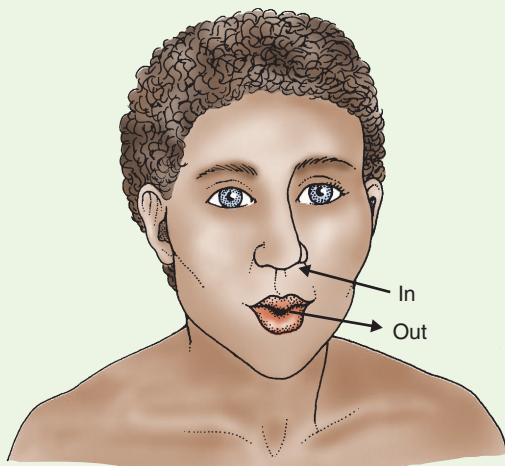
Diaphragmatic or Abdominal Breathing

- If you can do so comfortably, lie on your back with your knees bent. If you cannot lie comfortably, perform this exercise while sitting in a chair.
- Place your hands or a book on your abdomen to create resistance.
- Begin breathing from your abdomen while keeping your chest still. You can tell if you are breathing correctly if your hands or the book rises and falls accordingly.



Pursed-Lip Breathing

- Close your mouth, and breathe in through your nose.
- Purse your lips as you would to whistle. Breathe out slowly through your mouth, without puffing your cheeks. Spend at least twice the amount of time it took you to breathe in.
- Use your abdominal muscles to squeeze out every bit of air you can.
- Remember to use pursed-lip breathing during any physical activity. Always inhale before beginning the activity and exhale while performing the activity. Never hold your breath.



the head slightly downward, hugging a pillow against the stomach. The patient then takes a few breaths, attempting to exhale more fully. After the third to fifth breath (in through the nose, out through pursed lips), instruct him or her to take a deeper breath and bend forward slowly while coughing two or three times (“mini” coughs) from the same breath. Observe the color, consistency, odor, and amount of secretions. On return to a sitting position, the patient takes a comfortably deep breath. The entire coughing procedure is repeated at least twice.

Oxygen Therapy. Oxygen is prescribed for relief of *hypoxemia* (decreased blood oxygen levels) and *hypoxia* (decreased

tissue oxygenation). The need for oxygen therapy and its effectiveness can be determined by arterial blood gas (ABG) values and oxygen saturation by pulse oxymetry. The patient with COPD may need an oxygen flow of 2 to 4 L/min via nasal cannula or up to 40% via Venturi mask. Ensure that there are no open flames or other combustion hazards in rooms in which oxygen is in use. More information on oxygen therapy is found in [Chapter 30](#).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The patient who is hypoxemic and also has chronic hypercarbia requires lower levels of oxygen delivery, usually 1 to 3 L/min via nasal cannula. A low arterial oxygen level is this patient's primary drive for breathing. If a higher rate is needed to maintain oxygen saturation at the prescribed level, check the patient at least every 30 minutes for a decreased respiratory rate. If the rate drops below 10 breaths per minute in a patient with COPD, attempt to arouse him or her. If he or she does not arouse easily, reduce the oxygen flow and re-assess. If the respiratory rate does not increase or if the SpO₂ drops, call the Rapid Response Team.

Drug Therapy. Drugs used to manage COPD are the same drugs as for asthma and include beta-adrenergic agents, cholinergic antagonists, xanthines, corticosteroids, and cromones (see [Chart 32-7](#)). The focus is on long-term control therapy with longer-acting drugs, such as arformoterol (Brovana) and tiotropium (Spiriva). The patient with COPD is more likely to be taking systemic agents (in addition to inhaled drugs) than is the patient with asthma. An additional drug class for COPD is the mucolytics, which thin the thick secretions, making them easier to cough up and expel. Nebulizer treatments with normal saline or with a mucolytic agent such as acetylcysteine (Mucosil, Mucomyst ) or dornase alfa (Pulmozyme) and normal saline help thin secretions. Guaifenesin (Organidin, Naldecon Senior EX) is a systemic mucolytic that is taken orally. A combination of guaifenesin and dextromethorphan (Mucinex DM) also raises the cough threshold.

Stepped therapy, which adds drugs as COPD progresses, is recommended for patients with chronic bronchitis or emphysema, although the patient's response to drug therapy is the best indicator of when drugs or their dosages need changing. A desired outcome is that the patient is more aware of the disease and participates in management strategies. Teach patients and family members the correct techniques for using inhalers and to care for them properly.

Exercise Conditioning. Exercise for conditioning and pulmonary rehabilitation can improve function and endurance in patients with COPD. Patients often respond to the dyspnea of COPD by limiting their activity, even basic ADLs. Over time, the muscles used in breathing weaken and are less efficient in the use of oxygen. The result is increased dyspnea with lower activity levels.

Pulmonary rehabilitation involves education and exercise training to prevent general and pulmonary muscle deconditioning. Each patient's exercise program is personalized to reflect his or her current limitations and planned outcomes. The simplest plan involves having the patient walk (indoors or outdoors) daily at a self-paced rate until symptoms limit further walking, followed by a rest period, and then

continue walking until 20 minutes of actual walking has been accomplished. As the time during rest periods decreases, the patient can add 5 more minutes of walking time. The benefits of this type of exercise have been shown even for people with severe COPD (GOLD, 2009). Teach patients whose symptoms are severe to modify the exercise by using a walker with wheels or, if needed, to use oxygen therapy during the exercise period. Remind patients that improvement is more likely if exercise is performed at least 2 or 3 times weekly. Formal pulmonary rehabilitation programs can be beneficial even for patients who are severely impaired.

Additional exercise techniques to retrain ventilatory muscles include isocapnic hyperventilation and resistive breathing. Isocapnic hyperventilation, in which the patient hyperventilates into a machine that controls the levels of oxygen and carbon dioxide, increases endurance. In resistive breathing, the patient breathes against a set resistance. Resistive breathing increases ventilatory muscle strength and endurance.

Suctioning. Perform suctioning only when needed—not on a routine schedule. For the patient with a weak cough, weak pulmonary muscles, and inability to expectorate effectively, the nurse or respiratory therapist performs nasotracheal suctioning. Assess the patient for dyspnea, tachycardia, and dysrhythmias during the procedure. Assess for improved breath sounds after suctioning. Suctioning is discussed in detail in Chapter 30.

Hydration. Maintaining hydration may thin the thick, tenacious (sticky) secretions, making them easier to remove by coughing. Unless hydration needs to be avoided for other health problems, teach the patient with COPD to drink at least 2 to 3 L/day. Humidifiers may be useful for those living in a dry climate or those who use dry heat during the winter. Instruct the patient to clean the humidifier daily to prevent the growth of mold spores.

Positive Expiratory Pressure Device. The use of a vibratory positive expiratory pressure device can help assist patients to remove airway secretions. The device is a small, handheld plastic pipe with a short, fat stem and a perforated lid over the bowl (Fig. 32-13). A free-moving steel ball is inside the bowl. The patient inhales deeply and then exhales through the device, causing the ball to move and set up vibrations that are transmitted to the patient's chest and airways. The vibrations loosen secretions and allow them to be coughed out more easily.



FIG. 32-13 The FLUTTER® flutter valve mucus clearance device, a type of vibratory positive-pressure device.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which assessment finding indicates to the nurse that the client with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) needs to be suctioned?

- A. Documentation indicates the client was last suctioned 12 hours ago.
- B. The client is unable to speak more than six words without clearing the throat.
- C. Although the client is coughing, breath sounds indicate continued presence of secretions in the airways.
- D. The oxygen saturation, as measured by pulse oximetry, decreases while the client performs controlled coughing.

Surgical Management. Lung transplantation and lung reduction surgery can improve gas exchange in the patient with COPD. Transplantation is a relatively rare procedure because of cost and the scarce availability of donor lungs. For these reasons, the few transplants performed for COPD are usually single lung (GOLD, 2009). The more common surgical procedure for patients with emphysema is lung reduction surgery.

The purpose of lung reduction surgery is to improve gas exchange through removal of hyperinflated lung tissue. These areas of the lungs are filled with stagnant air that is not renewed with some atmospheric air (containing oxygen) during each respiratory cycle. Instead, this stagnant air continues to receive carbon dioxide until the level of carbon dioxide in the hyperinflated alveolus is the same as that in the capillary and no gas exchange occurs. After successful lung reduction, most patients have increased forced expiratory volume and decreased total lung capacity and residual volume. Activity tolerance increases, and oxygen therapy may no longer be needed.

Preoperative Care. Patients who are selected for this procedure have end-stage emphysema, minimal chronic bronchitis, and stable cardiac function. They also must be ambulatory; not ventilator dependent; free of pulmonary fibrosis, asthma, or cancer; and not have smoked for at least 6 months. Pulmonary rehabilitation is completed before surgery to the stage that the patient is able to walk, without stopping, for 30 minutes at 1 mile/hr and maintain a 90% or better oxygen saturation level.

In addition to standard preoperative testing, the patient having lung reduction surgery has tests to determine the location of greatest lung hyperinflation and poorest lung blood flow. These tests include pulmonary plethysmography, gas dilution, and perfusion scans.

Operative Procedures. Usually, lung reduction is performed on both lungs either by median sternotomy or, more frequently now, by the minimally invasive surgical technique of video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) (Shah & D'Amico, 2009). Each lung is deflated separately and examined for color and texture differences. Normal lung tissue darkens to purple or gray when deflated and becomes more dense or rubbery in texture. Hyperinflated areas do not deflate and remain pink with a spongy texture. The surgeon removes as much of this tissue as possible, sealing off and reinforcing the remaining normal lung tissue.

Postoperative Care. After lung reduction surgery, the patient needs close monitoring for continuing respiratory problems as well as for usual postoperative complications. In

addition to the usual care required after thoracotomy (see Surgical Management [Lung Cancer], pp. 634-638), bronchodilator and mucolytic therapies are maintained. Pulmonary hygiene includes incentive spirometry 10 times per hour while awake, chest physiotherapy starting on the first day after surgery, and hourly pulmonary assessment.

Pain is usually managed by epidural delivery of opioids during the early period after surgery. This type of analgesic delivery reduces pain, limits sedation and cognitive dysfunction, and allows the patient to more fully participate in pulmonary hygiene measures.

Preventing Weight Loss

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with COPD is expected to achieve and maintain a body weight within 10% of ideal. Indicators include that the patient:

- Maintains an appropriate weight/height ratio
- Maintains serum albumin or prealbumin within the normal range

Interventions. The patient with COPD often has food intolerance, nausea, *early satiety* (feeling too “full” to eat), loss of appetite, and meal-related dyspnea. The increased work of breathing raises calorie and protein needs, which can lead to protein-calorie malnutrition. Malnourished patients lose muscle mass and strength, lung elasticity, and alveolar-capillary surface area, all of which reduce effective breathing.

Identify patients at risk for or who have this complication and request that a registered dietitian perform a nutritional assessment. Monitor weight and other indicators of nutrition, such as skin condition and serum prealbumin levels.

Dyspnea management is needed because shortness of breath interferes with eating. Dyspnea during mealtimes can be reduced by resting before meals. Teach the patient to plan the biggest meal of the day for the time when he or she is most hungry and well rested. Four to six small meals a day may be preferred to three larger ones. Remind patients to use pursed-lip and abdominal breathing and to use the prescribed bronchodilator 30 minutes before meals to reduce bronchospasm.

Food selection can help prevent weight loss and improve appetite. Abdominal bloating and a feeling of fullness often prevent the patient from eating a complete meal. Collaborate with the dietitian to teach about foods that are easy to chew and not gas-forming (Bauldoff, 2009). Advise the patient to avoid dry foods that stimulate coughing and caffeine-containing drinks that increase urine output and may lead to dehydration.

Urge the patient to eat high-calorie, high-protein foods. Dietary supplements, such as Pulmocare, provide nutrition with reduced carbon dioxide production. If early satiety is a problem, advise him or her to avoid drinking fluids before and during the meal.

Minimizing Anxiety

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with COPD is expected to have decreased anxiety. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Identifies factors that contribute to anxiety
- Identifies activities to decrease anxiety
- States anxiety is reduced or absent

Interventions. Patients with COPD often have increased anxiety during acute dyspneic episodes, especially if they feel as though they are choking on excessive secretions. Also, anxiety has been shown to cause dyspnea.

Help the patient understand that anxiety can increase dyspnea, and have a plan for dealing with anxiety. Together with the patient, develop a written plan that states exactly what he or she should do if symptoms flare. Having a plan provides confidence and control in knowing what to do, which often helps reduce anxiety. Stress the use of pursed-lip and diaphragmatic breathing techniques during periods of anxiety or panic.

Family, friends, and support groups can be helpful. Recommend professional counseling, if needed, as a positive suggestion. Stress that talking with a counselor can help identify techniques to maintain control over the dyspnea and feelings of panic.

Explore other approaches to help the patient control dyspneic episodes and panic attacks, such as progressive relaxation, hypnosis therapy, and biofeedback. At times, anti-anxiety drug therapy may be needed for severe anxiety.

Improving Activity Tolerance

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with COPD is expected to increase activity to a level acceptable to him or her. Indicators include that the patient:

- Maintains his or her baseline Sao_2 with activity
- Performs ADLs with no or minimal assistance
- Performs selected activities with minimal dyspnea or tachycardia
- Participates in family, work, or social activities as desired

Interventions. The patient with COPD often has chronic fatigue. While in the acute phases of the illness, he or she may need extensive help with the ADLs of eating, bathing, and grooming. As the acute problem resolves, encourage the patient to pace activities and provide as much self-care as possible. Teach him or her to not rush through morning activities, because rushing increases dyspnea, fatigue, and hypoxemia. As activity gradually increases, assess the patient's response by noting skin color changes, pulse rate and regularity, blood pressure, oxygen saturation, and work of breathing. Suggest the use of supplemental oxygen during periods of high energy use, such as bathing or walking.

Energy conservation is the planning and pacing of activities for maximum tolerance and minimum discomfort. Once the forced expiratory volume that can be exhaled in the first 1 second of exhalation (FEV_1) falls below 50% predicted, the patient's ability to perform ADLs is limited. Ask the patient to describe a typical daily schedule. Each activity is divided into its smaller parts to determine whether that task can be performed in a different way or at a different time of the day. Assist him or her to plan and pace daily activities. Rest periods are paced between activities. Help the patient develop a personal chart outlining the day's activities and planned rest periods.

Encourage the patient to avoid working with the arms raised. Activities involving the arms decrease exercise tolerance because the accessory muscles of ventilation are then used to stabilize the arms and shoulders. Many activities involving the arms can be done sitting at a table leaning on the elbows. Teach the patient to adjust work heights to reduce

back strain and fatigue. Remind him or her to keep arm motions smooth and flowing to prevent jerky motions that waste energy. Work with the occupational therapist to teach the patient and family about the use of adaptive tools for housework, such as long-handled dustpans, sponges, and dusters, to reduce bending and reaching.

Suggest how the patient can organize work spaces so that items used most often are within easy reach. Measures such as dividing laundry or groceries into small parcels that can be handled easily, using disposable plates to save washing time, and letting dishes dry in the rack also conserve energy. Talking requires energy and use of the lungs; therefore teach the patient to not talk when engaged in other activities that require energy, such as walking. In addition, teach him or her to avoid breath-holding while performing any activity.

Preventing Respiratory Infection

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with COPD is expected to remain free from serious respiratory infection. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Reports clinical manifestations of respiratory infection
- Describes respiratory infection-monitoring procedures
- Uses prevention activities such as pneumonia and influenza vaccination and crowd avoidance
- Seeks medical assistance when manifestations of respiratory infection first appear

Interventions. Pneumonia is one of the most common complications of COPD. Patients who have excessive secretions or who have artificial airways are at increased risk for respiratory tract infections. The risk is greatly increased for older adults. Teach patients to avoid large crowds, and stress the importance of receiving a pneumonia vaccination and a yearly influenza vaccine.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

Most patients with COPD are managed in the ambulatory care setting and cared for at home. When pneumonia or a severe exacerbation of the disease develops, the patient usually returns home after hospitalization. For those with advanced disease, however, 24-hour care may be needed for ADLs and for monitoring for acute episodes or illness progression. Patients may not be able to enjoy work or leisure activities because of severe dyspnea and fatigue. If home care is not possible, placement in a long-term care setting may be needed.

Patients with hypoxemia may use oxygen at home. It may be needed only during periods of exercise or sleep if hypoxemia occurs only during these times. Continuous, long-term oxygen therapy can reverse tissue hypoxia and decrease pulmonary vascular resistance. It can also improve cognitive ability and well-being. For more information on home oxygen therapy, see [Chapter 30](#).

Many patients can benefit from a structured pulmonary rehabilitation program. The overall focus of these collaborative programs is to increase a person's ability to live with COPD. The patient with COPD is referred to a pulmonary rehabilitation program before illness becomes severe.

Collaborate with the case manager to obtain the equipment needed for care at home. Patient needs may include oxygen therapy, a hospital-type bed, a nebulizer, a tub transfer bench, and visits from a home care nurse to continue moni-

toring the health status, review the drug regimen, and evaluate home care needs.

The patient with COPD faces a lifelong disease with remissions and exacerbations. Explain to the patient and family that he or she may have periods of anxiety, depression, and ineffective coping. The person who was a smoker may also have self-directed anger.

Financial concerns often increase anxiety. The disease may worsen to the point that the patient cannot work. Disability benefits through Social Security or private disability insurance plans can help ease the financial burden. Medicare or other health insurers may assist with payment for home oxygen therapy and nebulizer treatments. Coordinate with the social worker or case manager to help the patient make the needed arrangements.

Teaching for Self-Management

Patients with COPD need to know as much about the disease as possible so that they can better manage it and themselves. Patients and families should be able to discuss drug therapy, manifestations of infection, avoidance of respiratory irritants, the nutrition therapy regimen, and activity progression. Instruct them to identify and avoid stressors that can worsen the disease.

Teach the patient techniques of pursed-lip breathing, diaphragmatic breathing, positioning, relaxation therapy, energy conservation, and coughing and deep breathing. With shortened lengths of hospital stays, teaching about all of the needed topics during a single hospitalization may not be realistic. Coordinate teaching with the home care or clinic staff.

Health Care Resources

Provide appropriate referrals as needed. Home care visits may be warranted, particularly if the patient must use home oxygen therapy for the first time. [Chart 32-12](#) lists assessment areas for the patient with COPD at home. Referral to assistance programs, such as Meals on Wheels, can be helpful. Provide a list of support groups, as well as Better Breather clubs sponsored by the American Lung Association. If the patient wants to quit smoking, make the appropriate referrals.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client with moderate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is preparing to go home and has thrown away the information regarding smoking cessation. He states, "Why should I quit now after I have already caused this disease." What is the nurse's best response?

- "You are not responsible for this disease. It is a matter of a gene-environment interaction."
- "Choosing to quit smoking can slow the progression of COPD and make you feel better about yourself."
- "Blaming yourself is counterproductive and is likely to make your anxiety and depressive symptoms worse."
- "You shouldn't be so negative. After all, COPD is manageable, not like lung cancer."

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with COPD based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes of care are that the patient should:

CHART 32-12 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease**Assess Respiratory Status and Adequacy of Ventilation**

- Measure rate, depth, and rhythm of respirations.
- Examine mucous membranes and nail beds for evidence of hypoxia.
- Determine use of accessory muscles.
- Examine chest and abdomen for paradoxical breathing.
- Count number of words patient can speak between breaths.
- Determine need and use of supplemental oxygen. (How many liters per minute is the patient using?)
- Determine level of consciousness and presence/absence of confusion.
- Auscultate lungs for abnormal breath sounds.
- Measure oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry.
- Determine sputum production, color, and amount.
- Ask about activity level.
- Observe general hygiene.
- Measure body temperature.

Assess Cardiac Status

- Measure rate, quality, and rhythm of pulse.
- Check dependent areas for edema.
- Check neck veins for distention with the patient in a sitting position.
- Measure capillary refill.

Assess Nutritional Status

- Weight maintenance, loss, or gain
- Food and fluid intake
- Use of nutritional supplements
- General condition of the skin
- Assess patient's and caregiver's adherence and understanding of illness and treatment, including:
 - Correct use of supplemental oxygen
 - Correct use of inhalers
 - Drug schedule and side effects
 - Manifestations to report to the health care provider indicating the need for acute care
 - Increasing severity of resting dyspnea
 - Increasing severity of usual symptoms
 - Development of new symptoms associated with poor oxygenation
 - Respiratory infection
 - Failure to obtain the usual degree of relief with prescribed therapies
 - Unusual change in condition
 - Use of pursed-lip and diaphragmatic breathing techniques
 - Scheduling of rest periods and priority activities
 - Participation in rehabilitation activities

- Attain and maintain gas exchange at a level within his or her chronic baseline values
- Achieve an effective breathing pattern that decreases the work of breathing
- Maintain a patent airway
- Achieve and maintain a body weight within 10% of his or her ideal weight
- Have decreased anxiety
- Increase activity to a level acceptable to him or her
- Avoid serious respiratory infections

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the **Planning and Implementation** section (see earlier).

CYSTIC FIBROSIS**Pathophysiology**

Cystic fibrosis (CF) is a genetic disease that affects many organs and lethally impairs pulmonary function. Although this disorder is present from birth and usually is first seen in early childhood, almost half of all people with cystic fibrosis in the United States are adults (*Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, 2009*). Some adults are not diagnosed with CF until they have a child who is first diagnosed with the disease (*Lomas & Fowler, 2010*).

The underlying problem of CF is blocked chloride transport in the cell membranes (McCance et al., 2010). The error in chloride transport causes the formation of mucus that has little water content and is thick. The thick, sticky mucus causes problems in the lungs, pancreas, liver, salivary glands, and testes. The mucus plugs up the airways in the lungs and the glandular tissues in the nonpulmonary organs, causing atrophy and organ dysfunction. Nonpulmonary problems include pancreatic insufficiency with malnutrition and intestinal obstruction, poor growth, male sterility, and cirrhosis of the liver. These primary problems cause many additional health problems in young adulthood, especially osteoporosis and diabetes mellitus (*Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, 2009*). Respiratory failure is the main cause of death.

The pulmonary problems of CF result from the constant presence of thick, sticky mucus and are the most serious complications of the disease. The mucus narrows airways, reducing airflow and interfering with *oxygenation*. The constant presence of mucus results in chronic respiratory tract infections, chronic bronchitis, and chronic dilation of the bronchioles (bronchiectasis). Lung abscesses are common. Over time, the bronchioles distend and have increased numbers (hyperplasia) of mucus-producing cells and increased mucus-producing cell size (hypertrophy). Complications include pneumothorax, arterial erosion and hemorrhage, and respiratory failure.

CF is most common among white people, and about 4% are carriers. It is rare among African Americans and Asians. Males and females are affected equally.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

CF is an autosomal recessive disorder in which both gene alleles must be mutated for the disease to be expressed. The CF gene is located on chromosome 7 and produces a protein that controls chloride movement across cell membranes (Nussbaum et al., 2007). The severity of CF varies greatly; however, life expectancy is always considerably reduced, with an average of 32 years. People with one mutated allele are carriers and have few or no symptoms of CF but can pass the abnormal allele on to their children. More than 1700 different mutations have been identified (*OMIM, 2010*). The inheritance of different mutations is responsible for variation in disease severity.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Usually, cystic fibrosis (CF) is diagnosed in childhood. The major diagnostic test is sweat chloride analysis. Additional genetic testing can be performed to determine which specific

mutation a person may have. This distinction can be important because different mutations result in different degrees of disease severity. The defect in chloride movement prevents absorption of sodium chloride in the sweat glands; thus more chloride than normal is present in the sweat. The sweat chloride test is positive for CF when the chloride level in the sweat ranges between 60 and 200 mEq/L (mmol/L), compared with the normal value of 5 to 35 mEq/L.

Nonpulmonary manifestations include abdominal distention, gastroesophageal reflux, rectal prolapse, foul-smelling stools, and **steatorrhea** (excessive fat in stools). The patient is often malnourished and has many vitamin deficiencies, especially of the fat-soluble vitamins (e.g., vitamins A, D, E, K). As pancreatic function decreases, diabetes mellitus develops with loss of insulin production. In addition, the adult with CF is usually smaller and thinner than average.

Pulmonary manifestations caused by CF are progressive. Respiratory infections are frequent or chronic with exacerbations. Patients usually have chest congestion, limited exercise tolerance, cough, sputum production, use of accessory muscles, and decreased pulmonary function (especially forced vital capacity [FVC] and forced expiratory volume in the first second of exhalation [FEV₁]). Chest x-rays show persistent infiltrate and an increased anteroposterior (AP) diameter.

During an acute exacerbation or when the disease progresses to end stage, the patient has increased chest congestion, reduced activity tolerance, increased crackles, increased cough, increased sputum production (often with hemoptysis), and severe dyspnea. Fatigue increases in proportion with the dyspnea. Arterial blood gas (ABG) studies show acidosis with greatly reduced partial pressure of arterial oxygen (Pao₂), increased partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (Paco₂), increased bicarbonate levels, and low pH.

When infection is present, the patient has fever, an elevated white blood cell count, and decreased oxygen saturation. Other manifestations of infection include tachypnea, tachycardia, intercostal retractions, weight loss, and increased fatigue.

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with CF needs daily therapy to slow disease progress and enhance gas exchange. There is no cure for CF.

Nonsurgical Management

The management of the patient with CF is complex and lifelong. Nutritional management focuses on weight maintenance, vitamin supplementation, diabetes management, and pancreatic enzyme replacement. Pulmonary management is focused on preventive maintenance and management of pulmonary exacerbation. Priority nursing interventions focus on teaching about drug therapy, infection prevention, pulmonary hygiene, nutrition, and vitamin supplementation.

Preventive/maintenance therapy involves the use of positive expiratory pressure, active cycle breathing technique, and an individualized regular exercise program. Unlike for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, a regimen of daily chest physiotherapy with postural drainage has proven benefit for the patient with CF. As shown in [Fig. 32-14](#), this therapy combines chest percussion, chest vibration, and dependent drainage positions to loosen secretions and promote their drainage. Pulmonary function tests (PFTs), especially FEV₁, are

monitored regularly. Maintenance drugs include bronchodilators, anti-inflammatory agents, mucolytics, and antibiotics.

Exacerbation therapy is needed when the patient with CF has a change in manifestations from baseline. Such changes include increased chest congestion, decreased activity tolerance, increased or new-onset crackles, and at least a 10% decrease in FEV₁. Other manifestations occurring with exacerbation include increased sputum production with bloody or purulent sputum, increased frequency and duration of coughing, decreased appetite, weight loss, fatigue, decreased Sao₂, and ventilatory muscle retractions. Often infection is present, and the patient also has fever, increased lung infiltrate on chest x-ray, and an elevated white blood cell count.

Every attempt is made to avoid having the patient with CF mechanically ventilated. Treatment focuses on airway clearance, increased oxygenation, and antibiotic therapy. Supplemental oxygen is prescribed on the basis of Sao₂ levels. Heliox delivery of 50% oxygen and 50% helium may improve gas exchange and oxygen saturation. The respiratory therapist initiates airway clearance techniques (ACTs) four times a day. Bronchodilator and mucolytic therapies are intensified (higher doses given more frequently than for maintenance). Steroidal agents are started or increased.

Depending on the severity of the exacerbation, a 10- to 14-day course of oral antibiotics may be prescribed. If the exacerbation is more severe, aerosolized tobramycin may be prescribed. If oral/inhaled antibiotics are not effective or if the exacerbation is very severe, IV antibiotics are used, usually an aminoglycoside (such as tobramycin and colistin) or meropenem (Merrem).

A serious bacterial infection for patients with CF is *Burkholderia cepacia*. The organism lives in the respiratory tracts of patients with CF and becomes resistant to antibiotic therapy relatively quickly. It is spread by casual contact from one CF patient to another. For this reason, the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation bans infected patients from participating in any foundation-sponsored events. It is also possible for *B. cepacia* to be transmitted to a CF patient during clinic and hospital visits; thus special infection control measures that limit close contact between people with CF are needed. These measures include separating CF patients on hospital units and seeing them in the clinic on different days. Strict CF Foundation-approved procedures are used when cleaning clinic rooms, pulmonary function laboratories, and respiratory therapy equipment to reduce the risk for contamination. Drug therapy for this infection usually includes co-trimoxazole (a combination of trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole [Bactrim, Septra]) along with the usual drugs used for exacerbation therapy (Avgeri et al., 2008).

Teach patients about protecting themselves by avoiding direct contact of bodily fluids such as saliva and sputum. Teach them to not routinely shake hands or kiss people in social settings. Handwashing is critical because the organism also can be acquired indirectly from contaminated surfaces, such as sinks and tissues.

As specialized treatment for CF improves and life span increases, other problems may occur. Patients may have bronchiole bleeding from lung arteries. Interventional radiology may be needed to embolize the bleeding arterial branches. Patients with CF may undergo this procedure repeatedly to control hemoptysis. See [Chapter 38](#) for information on interventional radiology vascular procedures.

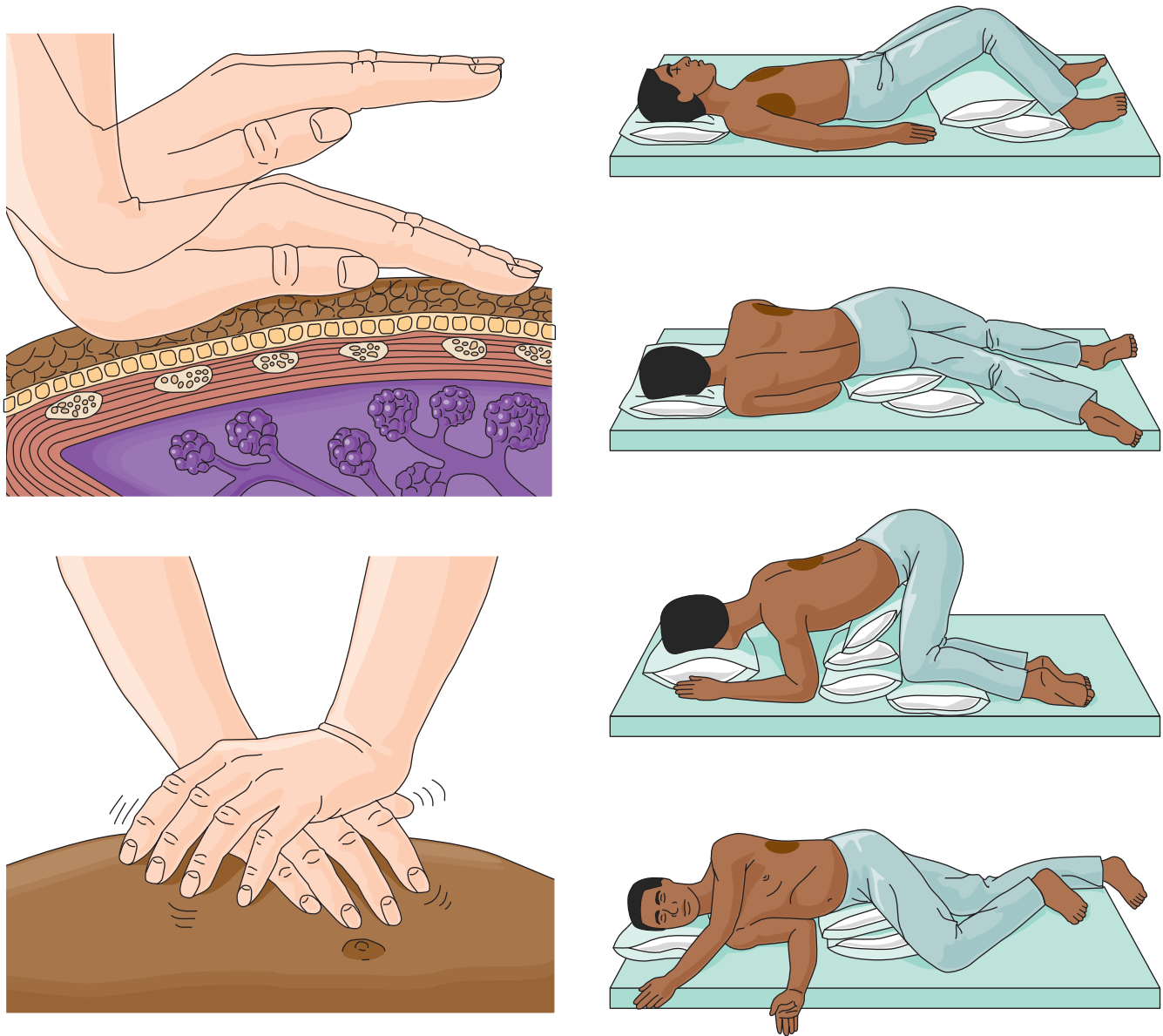


FIG. 32-14 Chest physiotherapy (chest PT) and postural drainage. *Left*, Percussion and vibration techniques. One or two hands are used with vibration, which is performed when the patient exhales or coughs. *Right*, Positions for postural drainage of respiratory secretions.

Other problems that occur in patients with CF over time include severe gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), osteoporosis, and sensorineural hearing loss. GERD appears related to increased pulmonary pressures needed for ventilation (Newton, 2009). Hearing loss appears related to antibiotic use (Cheng et al., 2009). Osteoporosis development with bone density loss may be related to multiple factors, including drug therapy with corticosteroids and the smaller stature of patients who have more severe disease. Regardless of the cause, it increases the patient's risk for bone fractures.

Surgical Management

The surgical management of the patient with CF involves lung and/or pancreatic transplantation. The patient has reduced manifestations but is at continuing risk for lethal pulmonary infections, especially with anti-rejection drug

therapy. Transplantation may extend life for some years, depending on other factors, although life span is not increased to the level expected in the general population. A major problem is a relatively high rate of transplant rejection, possibly caused by poor intestinal absorption of anti-rejection drugs (Song et al., 2008).

Fewer lung transplants are performed compared with transplantation of other solid organs. The problem is related to the scarcity of available lungs. In addition, many of the people who could benefit from lung transplantation have serious problems in other organs that make extended surgical procedures dangerous.

Lung transplant procedures include two lobes or a single lung transplantation, as well as double-lung transplantation. The type of procedure is determined by the patient's age and overall condition, the cause of the lung problem, and the life

expectancy after transplantation. Usually, the patient with CF has a bilateral lobe transplant from either a cadaver donor or living-related donor.

Preoperative Care. Many factors are considered before lung transplantation surgery. Recipient and donor criteria vary from one program to another, but some criteria are universal.

Recipient criteria for the person who will receive the transplant include that the recipient must have severe, irreversible lung damage. It is important, however, that the patient be well enough to survive the surgery. Usually only those younger than 55 years receive transplants, although transplantation is considered on an individual basis. Exclusion criteria are:

- Severe psychiatric disorders or self-destructive tendency
- Proven history of noncompliance or poor compliance with medical regimens
- Current cancer or cancer within the past 5 years
- Systemic infection
- Irreversible heart, kidney, or liver damage/disease
- Presence of any problem that would be made worse by immunosuppression

Donor criteria, regardless of whether the lung tissue is obtained from a cadaver or from a living-related donor, include:

- Infection free
- Cancer free
- Healthy lung tissue
- Close tissue match with the recipient
- Same blood type as the recipient

When the donor is living-related, additional criteria are:

- Age is younger than 55 years.
- Donor has normal cardiac function.
- Pulmonary function is expected to remain adequate after tissue removal.
- The donor has had no previous chest surgery.
- Donor is psychologically stable.
- Donor has not been coerced into this situation.

The two nursing priorities before surgery are teaching the patient the expected regimen of pulmonary hygiene to be used in the period immediately after surgery and assisting the patient in a pulmonary muscle strengthening/conditioning regimen.

Operative Procedures. The patient may or may not need to be placed on cardiopulmonary bypass, depending on the exact procedure. Those having single-lung or lobe transplantation usually do not need bypass; those having double-lung transplantation usually do.

The most common incision used for lung transplantation is a transverse thoracotomy (“clamshell”). The diseased lung or lungs are removed. The new lobes, lung, or lungs are placed in the chest cavity with proper connections made to the trachea, mainstem bronchus, or secondary bronchus and blood vessels. Usually, lung transplantation surgery is completed within 4 to 6 hours.

Postoperative Care. The patient is intubated for at least 48 hours. In addition, chest tubes and arterial lines are in place. Much of the care needed is the same as that for any thoracic surgery.

Major problem areas after lung transplantation are bleeding, infection, and transplant rejection. Bleeding is most common in patients who had cardiopulmonary bypass with anticoagulation. Usually the patient remains in the ICU for several days after transplantation.

Anti-rejection drug regimens must be started immediately after surgery, which increases the risk for infection. The drugs used for long-term rejection suppression after organ transplantation are combinations of very specific immunosuppressants (cyclosporine [Sandimmune]), less specific immunosuppressants (azathioprine [Imuran] or mycophenolate mofetil [CellCept]), and one of the corticosteroids, such as prednisone (Apo-Prednisone ☛, Deltasone ☛) or prednisolone (Delta-Cortef). Corticosteroids are avoided in the first 10 to 14 days after surgery because of their negative impact on the healing process. (See Chapter 19 for details about anti-rejection therapy.)

PULMONARY ARTERIAL HYPERTENSION

Pathophysiology

General pulmonary hypertension can occur as a complication of other lung disorders. Primary pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) (also known as idiopathic pulmonary hypertension) occurs in the absence of other lung disorders, and its cause is unknown although exposure to some drugs increases the risk. This disorder is rare and occurs mostly in women between the ages of 20 and 40 years (McCance et al., 2010; Widlitz et al., 2007).

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

About 50% of patients with pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) have a genetic mutation in the *BMPR2* gene, which codes for a growth factor receptor (Weber et al., 2011). Excessive activation of this receptor allows increased growth of arterial smooth muscle in the lungs, making these arteries thicker. Many more people have mutations in this gene than have PAH. It is thought that these mutations increase the susceptibility to PAH when other, often unknown, environmental factors also are present. Often PAH is not diagnosed until late in the disease process when the lungs and heart have already been significantly damaged. Teach people, especially women, who have a first-degree relative (parent or sibling) with PAH to have regular health checks and to consult a health care provider whenever pulmonary problems are present.

The pathologic problem in PAH is blood vessel constriction with increasing vascular resistance in the lung. Pulmonary blood pressure rises and blood flow decreases, leading to poor perfusion and hypoxemia. Eventually, the right side of the heart fails (cor pulmonale) from the continuous workload of pumping against the high pulmonary pressures. Without treatment, death usually occurs within 2 years after diagnosis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The most common early manifestations are dyspnea and fatigue in an otherwise healthy adult. Some patients also have angina-like chest pain. Table 32-3 lists the classification of PAH.

Diagnosis is made from the results of right-sided heart catheterization showing elevated pulmonary pressures. Other test results suggesting pulmonary hypertension include abnormal ventilation-perfusion scans, pulmonary function tests (PFTs) showing reduced functional pulmonary volumes with reduced diffusion capacity, and computed tomography (CT).

TABLE 32-3 SEVERITY CLASSIFICATION FOR PRIMARY PULMONARY ARTERIAL HYPERTENSION

CLASS	MANIFESTATIONS
I	Pulmonary hypertension diagnosed by pulmonary function tests and right-sided cardiac catheterization No limitation of physical activity Moderate physical activity does not induce dyspnea, fatigue, chest pain, or light-headedness
II	No manifestations at rest Mild to moderate physical activity induces dyspnea, fatigue, chest pain, or light-headedness
III	No or slight manifestations at rest Mild (less than ordinary) activity induces dyspnea, fatigue, chest pain, or light-headedness
IV	Dyspnea and fatigue present at rest Unable to carry out any level of physical activity without manifestations Manifestations of right-sided heart failure apparent (dependent edema, engorged neck veins, enlarged liver)

Data from Donahue, D. (2010). Managing pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Nursing* 2010, 40(1), 52-54.

INTERVENTIONS

Drug therapy can reduce pulmonary pressures and slow the development of cor pulmonale by dilating pulmonary vessels and preventing clot formation. Warfarin (Coumadin) therapy is taken daily to achieve an international normalized ratio (INR) of 1.5 to 2.0. Calcium channel blockers, such as nifedipine (Procardia) and diltiazem (Cardizem), have been used to dilate blood vessels. Endothelin-receptor antagonists, such as bosentan (Tracleer), induce blood vessel relaxation and decrease pulmonary arterial pressure. These agents, however, cause general vessel dilation and some degree of hypotension. Natural and synthetic prostacyclin agents provide the best specific dilation of pulmonary blood vessels. Continuous infusion of epoprostenol (Flolan) or treprostinil (Remodulin) through a small IV pump reduces pulmonary pressures and increases lung blood flow. Treprostinil also can be delivered by continuous subcutaneous infusion. These continuous infusions of prostacyclin drugs can be performed by the patient at home and in other settings. Some patients are able to continue working while undergoing this therapy. Another prostacyclin drug, iloprost (Ilomedin, Ventavis), can be delivered by inhalation. A drug given along with prostacyclins is sildenafil (Revatio, Viagra) administered orally or IV (Vacca, 2009).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

A critical nursing priority for a patient undergoing therapy with IV prostacyclin agents is that, although it is very effective, deaths have been reported if the drug delivery is interrupted even for a matter of minutes. Teach the patient to always have backup drug cassettes and battery packs. If these are not available or if the line is disrupted, the patient should go to the emergency department immediately.

Another critical nursing priority is working with the patient receiving IV prostacyclin therapy to prevent sepsis. The continuous central line IV setup provides an access for organisms to directly enter the bloodstream. Teach the patient to

use strict aseptic technique in all aspects of manipulating the drug delivery system. Also teach him or her to notify the pulmonologist at the first sign of any respiratory or systemic infection.

When the heart has undergone some hypertrophy and cardiac output has fallen, the patient may be started on a regimen of digoxin (Lanoxin) and diuretics. Oxygen therapy is used when dyspnea is continuous or uncomfortable. These therapies do not cure the disorder; they just improve function and reduce symptoms.

Surgical management of primary pulmonary hypertension involves single-lung or whole-lung transplantation. When cor pulmonale also is present, the patient may need a combined heart-lung transplantation (Vacca, 2009). It is not known whether the process of pulmonary vasoconstriction can begin again in the transplanted lungs or if the transplant is a “cure.”

INTERSTITIAL PULMONARY DISEASES

The category of interstitial pulmonary diseases contains a variety of lung disorders, also called *fibrotic lung diseases*, that have some features in common. All affect the alveoli, blood vessels, and surrounding support tissue of the lungs rather than the airways. Thus these disorders are **restrictive** (preventing good expansion and recoil of the gas exchange unit) rather than obstructive. With restrictive disease, the lung tissues thicken, causing reduced gas exchange and “stiff” lungs that do not expand well (Pruitt, 2008). Unlike obstructive problems, air trapping does not occur and the patient does not develop a “barrel chest.” Often the onset of these disorders is slow and dyspnea is the most common manifestation.

SARCOIDOSIS

Pathophysiology

Sarcoidosis is a granulomatous disorder of unknown cause that can affect any organ, but the lung is involved most often. It develops over time with growths called **granulomas** forming in the lungs. Granulomas contain lymphocytes, macrophages, epithelioid cells, and giant cells.

Pulmonary sarcoidosis involves autoimmune responses in which the normally protective T-lymphocytes increase and cause damaging actions in lung tissue. Alveolar cells are the targets of the damaging actions. No single cause for T-lymphocyte activation has been identified, although infection and genetic predisposition may play a role (LaRue, 2009). Alveolar inflammation (**alveolitis**) occurs from the presence of immune cells in the alveoli. Chronic inflammation causes **fibrosis** (scar tissue formation in the lungs). The fibrosis reduces **lung compliance** (elasticity) and the ability to exchange gases. **Cor pulmonale** (right-sided cardiac failure) is often present, because the heart can no longer pump effectively against the stiff, fibrotic lung.

The disease affects young adults. Manifestations include enlarged lymph nodes in the hilar area of the lungs, lung infiltrate on chest x-ray, skin lesions, and eye lesions. The first indication of disease may be an abnormal chest x-ray in an otherwise healthy patient. The most common symptoms include cough, dyspnea, hemoptysis, and chest discomfort. In many patients, the illness resolves permanently. Others

may have progressive pulmonary fibrosis and severe systemic disease.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Sarcoidosis is suspected in the patient who has a cough, dyspnea, and abnormal chest x-ray but is otherwise asymptomatic. Other conditions to rule out before diagnosing sarcoidosis are lung infections and cancer. Bronchoscopy with biopsy may be used in the diagnosis of this disorder (see Chapter 29).

Sarcoidosis is staged on the basis of x-ray findings. Higher stages have greater damage and widespread disease. Pulmonary function studies often show a restrictive pattern of decreased lung volumes and impaired diffusing capacity. Irreversible lung changes occur in 10% to 15% of patients. Patients who have severe restrictive disease may develop secondary pulmonary hypertension.

The focus of therapy is to lessen symptoms and prevent fibrosis. Management varies. If the patient is asymptomatic and has normal pulmonary function, no treatment is given. Decreased total lung capacity (TLC), diffusing capacity, or forced vital capacity (FVC); involvement of other organs; and hypercalcemia are indicators for treatment.

Corticosteroids are the main type of therapy. Dosages vary from 40 to 60 mg daily with tapering doses over 6 to 8 weeks, to a maintenance dose of 10 to 15 mg daily for 6 months. Further therapy may continue over 12 months. Drugs under study for management of this disease include thalidomide (Thalomid) and infliximab (Remicade) (LaRue, 2009). Follow-up and monitoring include assessment of symptom severity, pulmonary function studies, chest x-rays, a complete blood count, serum creatinine, serum calcium, and urinalysis. Teach the patient about side effects of steroid therapy and other aspects of physical care as indicated.

IDIOPATHIC PULMONARY FIBROSIS

Pathophysiology

Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis is a common restrictive lung disease. The typical patient is an older adult with a history of cigarette smoking or chronic exposure to inhalation irritants such as metal particles, dust, organic chemicals, wood fires, or exposure to the drug *amiodarone* (Cordarone) (Roberts, 2010). Unlike sarcoidosis, pulmonary fibrosis is highly lethal. Most patients have progressive disease with few remission periods. Even with proper treatment, patients usually survive less than 5 years after diagnosis.

Pulmonary fibrosis is an example of excessive wound healing. Once lung injury occurs, an inflammatory process begins tissue repair. The inflammation continues beyond normal healing time, causing fibrosis and scarring. These changes thicken alveolar tissues, making gas exchange difficult.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The onset of disease is slow, with early symptoms of mild dyspnea on exertion. Pulmonary function tests show decreased FVC. As the fibrosis progresses, the patient becomes

more dyspneic and hypoxemia becomes severe. Eventually, he or she needs high levels of oxygen and often is still hypoxic. Respirations are rapid and shallow.

The goal of therapy is to slow the fibrotic process and manage dyspnea. Corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants are the mainstays of therapy. Immunosuppressant drugs include cytotoxic drugs such as cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan, Neosar, Procytox), azathioprine (Imuran), chlorambucil (Leukeran), or methotrexate (Folex). These drugs have many side effects, including immunosuppression, nausea, and lung and liver damage, and have shown limited benefit. New studies using the combination therapy of corticosteroids, azathioprine, interferon gamma 1b, and *N*-acetylcysteine show promise of slowing disease progression. Starting drug therapy early is critical, even though not all patients respond to therapy. Even among those who have a response to therapy, the disease eventually continues to progress and leads to death by respiratory failure.

Lung transplantation is a curative therapy; however, the selection criteria, cost, and availability of organs make this option unlikely for most patients.

The patient and family need support and help with community resources after diagnosis. Nursing care focuses on assisting the patient and family in understanding the disease process and maintaining hope for control of the fibrosis. It is important to prevent respiratory infections. Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of infection, and encourage them to avoid respiratory irritants, crowds, and other people with known infections.

Home oxygen is needed by the time the patient becomes symptomatic because significant fibrosis has already occurred. Teach him or her about oxygen use as a continuous therapy. Fatigue is a major problem. Teach the patient and family about energy conservation measures (see discussion of activity tolerance on pp. 621-622 in the *Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease* section). Activity limitations and rest help reduce the work of breathing and oxygen consumption.

Support the patient's need to be as independent as possible, and encourage him or her to pace activities and accept assistance as needed. The disease is costly because the patient is often unable to work and may need home care.

In the later stages of the disease, the focus is to reduce the sensation of dyspnea. This is often accomplished with the use of oral, parenteral, or nebulized morphine. Provide information about hospice, which supports and coordinates resources to meet the needs of the patient and family when the prognosis for survival is less than 6 months.

OCCUPATIONAL PULMONARY DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Exposure to occupational or environmental fumes, dust, vapors, gases, bacterial or fungal antigens, and allergens can result in a variety of respiratory disorders. Depending on the degree, frequency, and intensity of exposure and on the specific disease, patients may have acute reversible effects or chronic lung disease. All occupational pulmonary diseases are made worse by cigarette smoking; thus smoking-cessation efforts are very important.

Many occupational diseases have an onset of symptoms long after the initial exposure to the offending agent. The patient's personal history can provide clues about the

CHART 32-13 KEY FEATURES

Common Occupational Pulmonary Diseases

DISEASE AND CATEGORY	CAUSES AND MANIFESTATIONS
Occupational Asthmas	
Latency (allergic) asthma	Airway narrowing related only to workplace exposures Atopic allergic response to industrial irritants Develops after a period of exposure (from several weeks to several years) Characterized by airflow limitation Usually resolves when exposure ceases Obstructive disease
Irritant-induced asthma	Manifestations appear only in the workplace First onset usually occurs within 24 hours of exposure Common irritants are chlorine, ammonia, and phosgene Characterized by sloughing of epithelium, thickening of the basement membranes, and mucosal inflammation Early manifestations include cough, wheeze, and dyspnea High exposures can lead to pulmonary edema, ARDS, and death Most tissue changes are permanent Obstructive and restrictive disease
Pneumoconiosis	
Silicosis	Chronic fibrosis from long-term inhalation of silica dust Found among people working in mines, stone quarries, and foundries. Also found in people working in these industries: glass making, pottery, sandblasting, tile and brick making, soap and polishes, and manufacture of filters Characterized by nodule formation between alveoli leading to fibrosis Manifestations include dyspnea on exertion, fatigue, weight loss, reduced lung volume, and upper lobe fibrosis Restrictive disease
Coal Miner's Disease (Black Lung Disease)	Massive deposits of coal dust in the lungs leading to diffuse fibrosis Develops earlier among miners who smoke Early manifestations are similar to bronchitis Emphysema is a late development Restrictive disease
Diffuse Interstitial Fibrosis	
Asbestosis	Occurs among people who work in asbestos mines, building construction/remodeling, and shipyards Characterized by diffuse pleural thickening and diaphragmatic calcification Restrictive disease
Talcosis	Occurs among people who work in industries that manufacture paint, ceramics, roofing materials, cosmetics, and rubber goods Restrictive disease
Berylliosis	Occurs among people who work in industries in which metal is heated (steel mills, welding) or metal is machined, creating dust Has a genetic component for increased susceptibility to disease after beryllium exposure Restrictive disease
Extrinsic Allergic Alveolitis	
"Farmer's Lung"	Hypersensitivity pneumonitis as an immunologic response to inhaling dust or chemical that contains bacterial or fungal antigens
"Bird Fancier's Lung"	
"Machine Operator's Lung"	Characterized by formation of granulomas with central necrosis in the alveoli and surrounding blood vessels Restrictive disease

ARDS, Acute respiratory distress syndrome.

presence and cause of occupational pulmonary diseases. Common occupational pulmonary diseases include occupational asthma, pneumoconiosis, diffuse interstitial fibrosis, and extrinsic allergic alveolitis. [Chart 32-13](#) lists the key features of these disorders.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Consider an occupational cause for patients with new-onset asthma or dyspnea. Ask about occupational exposure and onset of symptoms because there may or may not be a latency

period between exposure and onset of symptoms. Determine whether the symptoms are acute or chronic. Ask about the use of inhalation protection and about cigarette smoking.

Prevention is important to avoiding disability from occupation-related disease. Teach about the importance of using special respirators and ensuring adequate ventilation when working in potentially harmful environments.

The patient with occupational asthma with a latency period should be removed from the site of exposure, transferred to a job without exposure, and treated with asthma drugs. Nursing care is similar to the care for asthma not caused by the workplace environment. Refer the patient to a

social worker, who provides information regarding compensation and pensions.

Nursing interventions for patients with occupational lung restrictive disease are the same as for those with emphysema. Hypoxemic patients require supplemental oxygen. In addition, respiratory therapies to promote sputum clearance are essential.

BRONCHIOLITIS OBLITERANS ORGANIZING PNEUMONIA

Pathophysiology

Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia (BOOP) is an inflammatory process that allows connective tissue plugs to form in the lower airways and the tissue between the alveoli. The luminal inflammation triggers white blood cell clumping with fibroblast (connective cell) growth that occludes and eventually obliterates these airways and leads to restricted lung volume with decreased vital capacity. Fibrosis is not part of the pathology of BOOP. It is not a true pneumonia, but the manifestations resemble respiratory infection.

The cause of BOOP has not been established although many personal and environmental conditions are associated with it. Suggested triggers include infectious organisms, drugs (chemotherapy agents, certain antibiotics [sulfa-based drugs, cephalosporins, amphotericin B], antiseizure drugs, cocaine, and amiodarone), or the presence of another connective tissue disorder, such as rheumatoid arthritis or systemic lupus erythematosus. It is also associated with chest radiation therapy for cancers in the breast or lung.

BOOP is most common in people between 30 and 60 years and affects both genders. It is not associated with cigarette smoking, and is more common among patients who have received solid organ transplants. Depending on how fast the problem progresses and the degree to which it interferes with gas exchange, BOOP can lead to death.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

An event or condition triggers excessive inflammation in the lumens of lower airways, causing dyspnea, fever, mild cough, flu-like symptoms, and crackles on auscultation. In some patients, the problem resolves spontaneously. In others, the problem can rapidly progress and be fatal within 3 days of the appearance of manifestations. Usually, manifestations are present for weeks or months and do not improve with standard antibiotic therapy.

Diagnosis of BOOP is difficult because manifestations are similar to many other respiratory problems. Chest x-rays do not differentiate BOOP from any other respiratory problem. Computed tomography (CT) scans can show widespread changes in pulmonary tissue that only suggest BOOP, not confirm it. Biopsy with histologic findings is needed to confirm a BOOP diagnosis.

The most effective treatment for BOOP is corticosteroid therapy. A short course of the drug for acute disease can reduce manifestations, and the patient may never have a relapse. For those patients with more severe disease and those with any type of additional health problem, a year of corticosteroid therapy may be needed. In this population, BOOP

is more of a chronic disease with some degree of permanent restrictive disease. Exacerbations can occur.

LUNG CANCER

Pathophysiology

Lung cancer is a leading cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide. In the United States, more deaths from lung cancer occur each year than from prostate cancer, breast cancer, and colon cancer combined. The American Cancer Society estimates that more than 186,000 new cases of lung cancer are diagnosed each year and that more than 165,000 deaths occur each year from it ([American Cancer Society, 2011](#)). The overall 5-year survival for all patients with lung cancer is only 14%. This poor long-term survival is because most lung cancers are diagnosed at a late stage, when metastasis is present. Only 15% of patients have small tumors and localized disease at the time of diagnosis ([American Cancer Society, 2011](#)).

Despite many advances in cancer treatment, the overall prognosis for lung cancer remains poor unless the tumor can be removed completely by surgery. Treatment of lung cancer is often aimed toward relieving symptoms ([palliation](#)) rather than cure because of metastasis.

Most primary lung cancers arise from the bronchial epithelium. These cancers are collectively called *bronchogenic carcinomas*. Lung cancers can be classified according to their histologic cell type as small cell lung cancer (SCLC), epidermoid (squamous cell) cancer, adenocarcinoma, and large cell cancer. The last three types are now referred to as *non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC)* because of their similar responses to treatment ([Walker, 2008](#)). [Chapter 23](#) discusses the general mechanisms and processes of cancer development.

Metastasis (spread) of lung cancer occurs by direct extension, through the blood, and by invading lymph glands and vessels. Tumors in the bronchial tubes can grow and obstruct the bronchus partially or completely. Tumors in other areas of lung tissue can grow so large that they can compress and obstruct the airway. Compression of the alveoli, nerves, blood vessels, and lymph vessels can occur and also interfere with *oxygenation*. The patterns of metastasis depend on the type of tumor cell and the location of the tumor. Lung lymph nodes, distant lymph nodes, and other tissues including bone, liver, brain, and adrenal glands can be invaded.

Additional manifestations, known as *paraneoplastic syndromes*, complicate certain lung cancers. The paraneoplastic syndromes are caused by hormones secreted by tumor cells ([McClelland, 2010](#)). Paraneoplastic syndrome commonly occurs with SCLC. [Table 32-4](#) lists the endocrine paraneoplastic syndromes that may occur, most commonly with SCLC.

Staging of lung cancer is performed to assess the size and extent of the disease. These factors are related to survival. Lung cancer staging is based on the TNM system (T, primary tumor; N, regional lymph nodes; M, distant metastasis). See [Table 23-6](#) in [Chapter 23](#) for a cancer staging system. Higher numbers represent later stages and less chance for cure or long-term survival.

Incidence/Prevalence

Lung cancers occur as a result of repeated exposure to inhaled substances that cause chronic tissue irritation or inflammation. Cigarette smoking is the major risk factor and is responsible for 85% of all lung cancer deaths ([American](#)

TABLE 32-4 ENDOCRINE PARANEOPLASTIC SYNDROMES ASSOCIATED WITH LUNG CANCER

ECTOPIC HORMONE	MANIFESTATION
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)	Cushing's syndrome
Antidiuretic hormone	Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) Weight gain General edema Dilution of serum electrolytes
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Gynecomastia
Parathyroid hormone	Hypercalcemia
Ectopic insulin	Hypoglycemia

Cancer Society, 2011). The risk for lung cancer is directly related to the total exposure to cigarette smoke as determined by the number of years of smoking and number of packs of cigarettes smoked per day (pack-years). Pipe and cigar smoking also increase risk. The incidence of lung cancer decreases when smoking stops, although it remains higher than among people who have never smoked.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Nonsmokers exposed to “passive,” or “secondhand,” smoke also have a greater risk for lung cancer than do nonsmokers who are minimally exposed to cigarette smoke. Passive smoke has many of the carcinogens found in inhaled, or “mainstream,” tobacco smoke.

Other lung cancer risk factors include chronic exposure to asbestos, beryllium, chromium, coal distillates, cobalt, iron oxide, mustard gas, petroleum distillates, radiation, tar, nickel, and uranium. Air pollution with benzopyrenes and hydrocarbons also increases the risk for lung cancer.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Lung cancer development varies among people with similar smoking histories, suggesting that genetic factors can influence susceptibility. Differences in a gene product that activates carcinogens (a cancer susceptibility gene) and another gene product that clears carcinogens from the body (a cancer resistance gene) are associated with differences in personal susceptibility to lung cancer. More recent evidence supports the possibility that differences in a gene that regulates cell division, the *Tp53* gene, may be the most important genetic susceptibility link for lung cancer development. Mutations in the alleles of this gene are known to increase the susceptibility to a wide variety of cancers both with and without exposure to environmental risks, including lung cancer development among smokers and nonsmokers.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Primary prevention for lung cancer is directed at reducing tobacco smoking. Educational strategies start in childhood to discourage children from beginning to smoke. Nurses are actively involved in encouraging nonsmokers to not begin to smoke, in promoting smoking-cessation programs, and in establishing a smoke-free environment. Encourage nonsmokers to avoid passive, or secondhand, smoke by avoiding environmental exposure.

Teach workers in industrial settings about safety precautions, such as wearing specialized masks and protective

TABLE 32-5 WARNING SIGNALS ASSOCIATED WITH LUNG CANCER

- Hoarseness
- Change in respiratory pattern
- Persistent cough or change in cough
- Blood-streaked sputum
- Rust-colored or purulent sputum
- Frank hemoptysis
- Chest pain or chest tightness
- Shoulder, arm, or chest wall pain
- Recurring episodes of pleural effusion, pneumonia, or bronchitis
- Dyspnea
- Fever associated with one or two other signs
- Wheezing
- Weight loss
- Clubbing of the fingers

clothing, to reduce exposure. Encourage people who are at high risk for lung cancer to have frequent health examinations. Urge patients being treated for lung cancer to quit smoking. The actual diagnosis of the disease and its treatment time represent “teachable moments.”

Secondary prevention by early detection has not been considered feasible in the past with earlier detection not making a difference in long-term survival rates. New data from recent studies indicate that screening people at risk for lung cancer using annual CT scans can detect cancers at stage I, when cure is probable and long-term survival (longer than 5 years) is very likely.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask the patient about risk factors, including smoking, hazards in the workplace, and warning signals (Table 32-5). Have the patient describe how many packs of cigarettes per day he or she has smoked and for how many years to determine the pack-year smoking history.

Ask about the presence of lung cancer manifestations, such as hoarseness, cough, sputum production, hemoptysis, shortness of breath, or change in endurance. Assessing for and documenting these manifestations provide information about the extent of nursing care and teaching the patient needs now and can be used later to determine therapy effectiveness. Many manifestations are common and may have been present for years. Ask the patient to describe any recent changes in symptoms or if position affects symptoms.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The client is a 62-year-old man who has smoked one pack of cigarettes per day from the time he was 13 years old until he was 19 and then smoked two packs of cigarettes per day from age 19 to the present. How should the nurse calculate this client's pack-year smoking history?

- 62 pack-years
- 55 pack-years
- 92 pack-years
- 99 pack-years

Assess for chest pain or discomfort, which can occur at any stage of tumor development. Chest pain may be localized or on just one side and can range from mild to severe. Ask about any sensation of fullness, tightness, or pressure in the chest, which may suggest obstruction. A piercing chest pain or pleuritic pain may occur on inspiration. Pain radiating to the arm results from tumor invasion of nerve plexuses in advanced disease.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations—Pulmonary

Manifestations of lung cancer are often nonspecific and appear late in the disease process. Specific manifestations depend on the type and location of the tumor. Chills, fever, and cough may be related to pneumonitis or bronchitis that occurs with obstruction. Assess sputum quantity and quality. Blood-tinged sputum may occur with bleeding from a tumor. Hemoptysis is a later finding in the course of the disease. If infection or necrosis is present, sputum may be purulent and copious.

Breathing may be labored or painful. Obstructive breathing may occur as prolonged exhalation alternating with periods of shallow breathing. Rapid, shallow breathing occurs with pleuritic chest pain and an elevated diaphragm. Inspiratory efforts are reduced in advanced disease. Look for and document abnormal retractions, the use of accessory muscles, flared nares, stridor, and asymmetric diaphragmatic movement on inspiration. Dyspnea and wheezing may be present with airway obstruction. Ask about the level of dyspnea at rest, with activity, and in the supine position (orthopnea). Determine how much the dyspnea interferes with his or her participation in ADLs, work, recreational activities, and family responsibilities. Ask the patient to compare his or her participation in activities during the past week with that of a month ago and a year ago.

Areas of tenderness or masses may be felt when palpating the chest wall. Increased vibrations felt on the chest wall (**fremitus**) indicate areas of the lung where air spaces are replaced with tumor or fluid. Fremitus is decreased or absent when the bronchus is obstructed. The trachea may be displaced from midline if a mass is present in the area.

Lung areas with masses sound dull or flat rather than hollow or resonant on chest percussion. Breath sounds may change with the presence of a tumor. Wheezes indicate partial obstruction of airflow in passages narrowed by tumors. Decreased or absent breath sounds indicate complete obstruction of an airway by a tumor or fluid. Increased loudness or sound intensity of the voice while listening to breath sounds indicates increased density of lung tissue from tumor compression. A pleural friction rub may be heard when inflammation also is present.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations—Nonpulmonary

Many other systems can be affected by lung cancer and have changes at the time of diagnosis. Heart sounds may be muffled by a tumor or fluid around the heart (*cardiac tamponade*). Dysrhythmias may occur as a result of hypoxemia or direct pressure of the tumor on the heart. Cyanosis of the lips and fingertips or clubbing of the fingers may be present (see Fig. 32-12).

Bones lose density with tumor invasion and break easily. The patient may have bone pain or pathologic fractures.

Handle the patient carefully. Thin bones can fracture with little pressure and without trauma. Even heavy coughing can break a rib.

Late manifestations of lung cancer usually include fatigue, weight loss, anorexia, dysphagia, and nausea and vomiting. *Superior vena cava syndrome may result from tumor pressure in or around the vena cava. This syndrome is an emergency (see Chapter 24) and requires immediate medical attention.* The patient may have confusion or personality changes from brain metastasis. Bowel and bladder tone or function may be affected by tumor spread to the spine and spinal cord.

Psychosocial Assessment

The poor prognosis for lung cancer has made it a much-feared disease. Dyspnea and pain add to the patient's fear and anxiety. The patient with a history of cigarette smoking may feel guilt and shame. Convey acceptance, and interact with the patient in a nonjudgmental way. Encourage the patient and family to express their feelings about the possible diagnosis of lung cancer.

Few patients with stage III or higher lung cancer are cured or live longer than 5 years after diagnosis. Many are given limited treatment for symptom relief. Fear of pain and death is common.

Diagnostic Assessment

The diagnosis of lung cancer is made by examination of cancer cells. Cytologic testing of early-morning sputum specimens may identify tumor cells; however, cancer cells may not be present in the sputum. When pleural effusion is present, fluid is obtained by thoracentesis for cytology.

Most commonly, lung lesions are first identified on chest x-rays. Computed tomography (CT) examinations are then used to identify the lesions more clearly.

Fiberoptic bronchoscopy provides direct visibility of the tracheobronchial tree. Specimens and bronchial brushings can be obtained with this technique, especially when lesions are located within or close to an airway. Needle biopsy during bronchoscopy may be used to obtain cancer cells.

A thoracoscopy may be performed through a video-assisted thoracoscope entering the chest cavity via small



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 47-year-old woman who was treated for breast cancer 7 years ago with combination chemotherapy and chest irradiation. Her chest MRI shows a lesion that was thought to be metastatic breast cancer. However, a biopsy reveals stage I lung cancer. She smoked as much as two packs per day in college but has not smoked since age 25. She is distraught, saying she would much rather have breast cancer because there are more treatment options for breast cancer and all people with lung cancer die of the disease. She does not want her husband or children to know the lung cancer diagnosis. Then she asks whether her breast cancer could have caused her lung cancer.

1. Is her new cancer diagnosis related to her previous cancer diagnosis?
2. What should you tell her about her previous smoking history?
3. How should you immediately respond to her distress?
4. What should you tell her about stage I lung cancer?
5. Should you respect her wishes about not revealing a lung cancer diagnosis to her family? Why or why not?

incisions through the chest wall. This procedure allows direct viewing of the lung tissue. To identify metastasis in mediastinal lymph nodes, a mediastinoscopy may be performed through a small chest incision.

Other diagnostic studies may be needed to determine how widely the cancer has spread. Such tests include needle biopsy of lymph nodes, direct surgical biopsy, and thoracentesis with pleural biopsy. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and radio-nuclide scans of the liver, spleen, brain, and bone help determine the location of metastatic tumors. Pulmonary function tests (PFTs) and arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis help determine the overall respiratory status. Positron emission tomography (PET) scanning is becoming the most thorough way to locate metastases. Together, these tests help determine the extent of the cancer and the best methods to treat it.

INTERVENTIONS FOR CURE

Interventions for the patient with lung cancer can have the purposes of curing the disease, increasing survival time, and enhancing quality of life through palliation. Both nonsurgical and surgical interventions are used to achieve these purposes. Some patients with lung cancer may undergo interventions for all three purposes at different stages in the disease process. Currently, cures are most likely for patients who undergo treatment for stage I or II disease. Cure is rare for patients who undergo treatment for stage III or IV disease, although survival time is increasing (Walker, 2008).

Nonsurgical Management

Chemotherapy is often the treatment of choice for lung cancers, especially small cell lung cancer (SCLC). It may be used alone or as adjuvant therapy in combination with surgery for non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC). The exact combination of drugs used depends on the response of the tumor and the overall health of the patient; however, most include platinum-based agents.

Side effects that occur with chemotherapy for lung cancer include chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting (CINV), **alopecia** (hair loss), open sores on mucous membranes (**mucositis**), immunosuppression with neutropenia, anemia, **thrombocytopenia** (decreased numbers of platelets), and peripheral neuropathy. Some of these side effects are presented briefly below. Consult [Chapter 24](#) for a thorough discussion of the nursing care needs for patients who have these side effects.

Reassure patients that hair loss is temporary. Hair regrowth begins about 1 month after chemotherapy is completed. Hair loss can be disguised by the use of wigs, scarves, and caps.

The chemotherapy agents used for lung cancer treatment are **emetogenic** (inducing nausea and vomiting). Many effective antiemetic drugs are available. Usually one or more antiemetics are given before and after chemotherapy. Drugs used to control chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting are listed in [Chart 24-8](#) in [Chapter 24](#).

Frequent mouth assessment and oral hygiene are key in managing mucositis. Stress the importance of good, frequent oral hygiene, including tooth cleaning and mouth rinsing. Teach patients to use a soft-bristled toothbrush or disposable mouth sponges and to avoid using dental floss and water-pressure gum cleaners.

Immunosuppression, which greatly increases the risk for infection, is the major dose-limiting side effect of

chemotherapy for lung cancer. Immunosuppression can be managed by the use of growth factors to stimulate bone marrow production of immune system cells. Teach the patient and family about precautions to take to reduce the patient's chances of developing an infection (see [Chart 24-5](#) in [Chapter 24](#)). (See [Chapter 24](#) for more information about chemotherapy and associated nursing care.)

Targeted therapy is now becoming more common in the treatment of later-stage lung cancer. As discussed in [Chapter 24](#), these agents take advantage of one or more differences in cancer cell growth or metabolism that is either not present or only slightly present in normal cells. These differences are a result of specific gene expression in cancer cells. Agents used as targeted therapies often are antibodies that work to disrupt cancer cell division in one of several ways. Some of these drugs “target” and block growth factor receptors, especially the epithelial growth factor receptors (EGFRs) or the vascular endothelial growth factor receptors (VEGFRs). When a lung cancer cell's growth depends on having the growth factors bind to their specific receptors, blocking the receptors at least slows the cancer cell's growth. Two oral agents most often used for targeted therapy of certain types of non-small cell lung cancer are erlotinib (Tarceva) and gefitinib (Iressa). Neither drug is used alone as therapy for lung cancer.

Radiation therapy can be an effective treatment for locally advanced lung cancers confined to the chest. Best results are seen when radiation is used in addition to surgery or chemotherapy. Radiation may be performed before surgery to shrink the tumor and make resection easier.

Usually radiation therapy for lung cancer is performed daily for a 5- to 6-week period. Only the areas thought to have cancer are positioned in the radiation path. The immediate side effects of this treatment are skin irritation and peeling, fatigue, nausea, and taste changes. Some patients have esophagitis during therapy, making adequate nutrition more difficult. Teach patients to eat foods that are soft, bland, and high in calories. Consult with a dietitian to provide a list of foods that are easier to swallow and nutritious. Suggest that the patient drink liquid nutrition supplements, such as Ensure or Boost, between meals to maintain weight and energy levels.

Skin care in the radiation-treated area can be difficult. If the area has been marked with a dye to outline the areas for radiation, instruct the patient to not wash off the markings. The use of ink or dye markings is rare, with most cancer centers using small permanent tattoos to mark the area. Because skin in the radiation path is more sensitive to sun damage, advise patients to avoid direct skin exposure to the sun during treatment and for at least 1 year after radiation is completed. See [Chapter 24](#) for other nursing care issues associated with radiation therapy.

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) may be used to remove small bronchial tumors when they are accessible by bronchoscopy. This therapy is now used for cure of select lung cancers. The patient is first injected with an agent that sensitizes cells to light. This drug enters all cells but leaves normal cells more rapidly than cancer cells. Usually, within 48 to 72 hours, most of the drug has collected in high concentrations in cancer cells. At this time, the patient goes to the operating room where, under anesthesia and intubation, a laser light is focused on the tumor. The light activates a chemical reaction within those cells retaining the sensitizing drug that induces

irreversible cell damage. Some cells die and slough immediately; others continue to slough for several days.

The photosensitizing drug has many effects that require special patient teaching and care both before and after the laser treatment (Collins & Garner, 2007). Chapter 24 describes these issues in detail. In addition to these general care issues, when PDT is used in the airways, the patient usually requires a stay in the ICU for airway management. The sloughing tissue can block the airway as can airway edema from the inflammatory response of the tissues. In addition, the patient is at risk for bronchial hemorrhage, fistula formation, and hemoptysis. A complicating factor in caring for patients who have undergone bronchial PDT is that they are now super-sensitive to light and will remain so for 30 to 90 days. Thus special precautions are needed along with environmental manipulation to keep patients safe during their hospital stay and during the next 3 months (see Chapter 24 for a more complete discussion of photodynamic therapy).

Surgical Management

Surgery is the main treatment for stage I and stage II NSCLC. Total removal of a non-small cell primary lung cancer is undertaken in hope of achieving a cure. If complete resection is not possible, the surgeon removes the bulk of the tumor. The specific surgery depends on the stage of the cancer and the patient's overall health and functional status. Lung cancer surgery may involve removal of the tumor only, removal of a lung segment, removal of a lobe (**lobectomy**), or removal of the entire lung (**pneumectomy**). These procedures can be performed by open thoracotomy or by thoracoscopy with minimally invasive surgery in select patients.

Preoperative Care. The goals of care before surgery are to relieve anxiety and promote the patient's participation (see Chapter 16 for routine preoperative care). Encourage the patient to express fears and concerns, reinforce the surgeon's explanation of the surgical procedure, and provide education related to what is expected after surgery. Teach about the probable location of the surgical incision or thoracoscopy openings, shoulder exercises, and the chest tube and drainage system (except after pneumectomy).

Operative Procedures. Three types of incisions can be made depending on the location of the cancer: posterolateral, anterolateral, and median sternotomy (Fig. 32-15). The incisions are large and are held open with retractors during surgery, contributing to pain after surgery.

A segmental resection is a lung resection that includes the bronchus, pulmonary artery and vein, and tissue of the involved lung segment or segments of a lobe. A **wedge resection** is removal of the peripheral portion of small, localized areas of disease. A **lobectomy** is the removal of an entire lung lobe. A **pneumectomy** is the removal of an entire lung with severing of the bronchus.

Removal of a lobe or entire lung can be accomplished through video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS) for select patients. The procedure involves making three small incisions in the chest for placement of the instruments. These same openings are used later for placement of drains and chest tubes. The lung section, lobe, or lung is isolated from its airway, which is surgically closed. The lobe or the lung is closed off from the rest of the lung using a double-stapling technique. The tissue is encapsulated in an impermeable bag to prevent leakage of tumor tissue and possible seeding of the

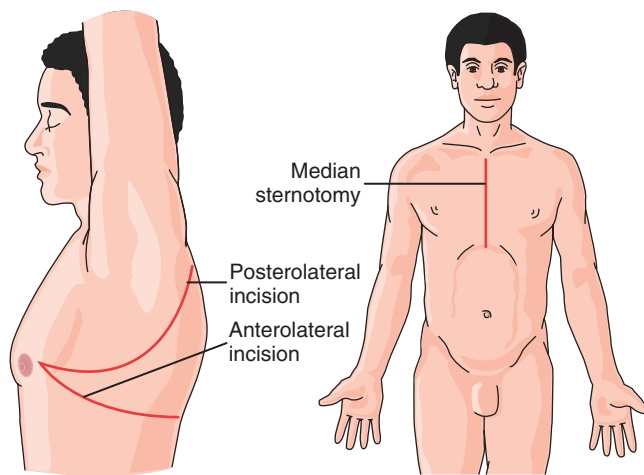


FIG. 32-15 Common incision locations for partial or total pneumectomy.

cancer and is then removed whole through one of the small incisions.

Postoperative Care. Care after surgery for patients who have undergone thoracotomy (except for pneumectomy) requires closed-chest drainage to drain air and blood that accumulate in the pleural space. A **chest tube**, a drain placed in the pleural space to restore intrapleural pressure, allows re-expansion of the lung (Fig. 32-16). The chest tube also prevents air and fluid from returning to the chest. The drainage system consists of one or more chest tubes or drains, a collection container placed below the chest level, and a water seal to keep air from entering the chest. The drainage system may be a stationary, disposable, self-contained system (Fig. 32-17) or a smaller, portable, disposable, self-contained system that requires no connection to a vacuum source (Fig. 32-18). The nursing care priorities for the patient with a chest tube are to ensure the integrity of the system, promote comfort, ensure chest tube patency, and prevent complications.

Chest Tube Placement and Care. The tip of the tube used to drain air is placed near the front lung apex (see Fig. 32-16). The tube that drains liquid is placed on the side near the base of the lung. After lung surgery, two tubes, anterior and posterior, are used. The puncture wounds are covered with airtight dressings.

The chest tube is connected to about 6 feet of tubing that leads to a collection device placed several feet below the chest. The tubing allows the patient to turn and move without pulling on the chest tube. Keeping the collection device below the chest allows gravity to drain the pleural space. When two chest tubes are inserted, they are joined by a Y-connector near the patient's body; the 6 feet of tubing is attached to the Y-connector.

Stationary chest tube drainage systems usually use a water seal mechanism that acts as a one-way valve to prevent air or liquid from moving back into the chest cavity. The Pleur-evac system is a common device using a one-piece disposable plastic unit with three chambers. The three chambers are connected to one another. The tube(s) from the patient is(are) connected to the first chamber in the series of three. This chamber is the drainage collection container. The second

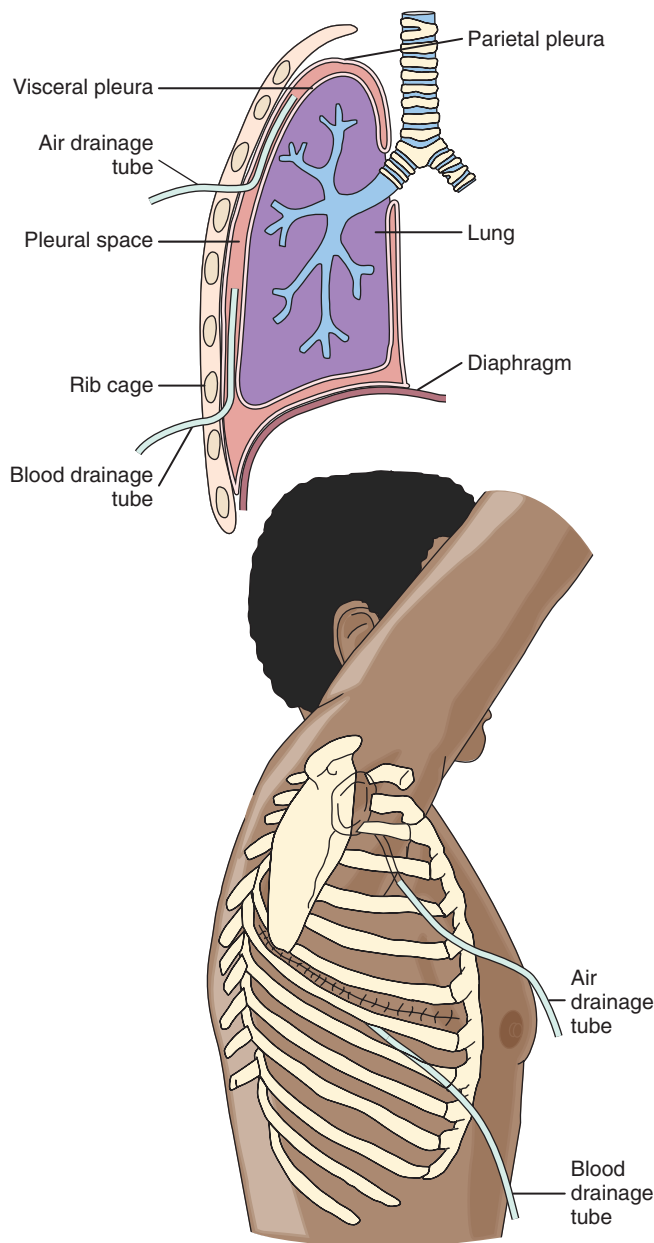


FIG. 32-16 Chest tube placement.

chamber in the series is the water seal to prevent air from moving back up the tubing system and into the chest. The third chamber, when suction is applied, is the suction regulator.

In setting up the system, chamber one (nearest to the patient) does not at first have fluid in it. The tubing from the patient penetrates shallowly into this chamber, as does the tube connecting chamber one with chamber two.

Chamber one collects the fluid draining from the patient. This fluid is measured hourly during the first 24 hours. *The fluid in chamber one must never fill to the point that it comes into direct contact with either the tube draining from the patient or the tube connecting this chamber to chamber two. If the tubing from the patient enters the fluid, drainage stops and can lead to a tension pneumothorax.*

Chamber two is the water seal that prevents air from re-entering the patient's pleural space. As the trapped air

leaves the pleural space, it will pass through chamber one (drainage collection chamber) before entering chamber two (the water seal chamber), which should always contain at least 2 cm of water to prevent air from returning to the patient. As trapped air from the patient's pleural space passes through the water seal, which serves as a one-way valve, the water will bubble. Once all the air has been evacuated from the pleural space, bubbling of the water seal stops.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For a water seal chest tube drainage system, 2 cm of water is the minimum needed in the water seal to prevent air from flowing backward into the patient. Check the water level every shift and add sterile water to this chamber to the level marked on the indicator (specified by the manufacturer of the drainage system) (Durai et al., 2010).

The bubbling of the water in the water seal chamber indicates air drainage from the patient. Bubbling is usually seen when intrathoracic pressure is greater than atmospheric pressure, such as when the patient exhales, coughs, or sneezes. When the air in the pleural space has been removed, bubbling stops. A blocked or kinked chest tube also can cause bubbling to stop. Excessive bubbling in the water seal chamber (chamber two) may indicate an air leak. The water in the narrow column of the water seal chamber normally rises 2 to 4 inches during inhalation and falls during exhalation, a process called *tidaling*. An absence of fluctuation may mean that the lung has fully re-expanded or can mean that there is an obstruction in the chest tube (Bauman & Handley, 2011).

Chamber three is the suction control of the system. There are different types of suction, most commonly wet or dry. With wet suction, the fluid level in chamber three is prescribed by the health care provider (usually -20 cm water). The chamber is connected to wall suction, which is turned up until there is gentle bubbling in the chamber. With dry suction, the health care provider prescribes the suction level to be dialed in on the device. When connected to wall suction, the regulator is set to the amount indicated by the device's manufacturer. For either type of suction, the amount of suction in the system is determined not by the wall suction unit but by the chest tube drainage device.

Chart 32-14 summarizes best safety practices when caring for a patient with a water seal chest tube drainage system. Check hourly to ensure the sterility and patency of any chest drainage system. Tape tubing junctions to prevent accidental disconnections, and keep an occlusive dressing at the chest tube insertion site. Keep sterile gauze at the bedside to cover the insertion site immediately if the chest tube becomes dislodged. Also keep padded clamps at the bedside for use if the drainage system is interrupted. Position the drainage tubing to prevent kinks and large loops of tubing, which can block drainage and prevent lung re-expansion.

Manipulation of the chest tube should be kept to a minimum. Do not vigorously "strip" the chest tube because this can create up to -400 cm of water negative pressure and damage lung tissue. If any tube manipulation is needed, gentle hand-over-hand "milking" of the tube, with stopping between each hand hold, is used to move blood clots and prevent obstruction (Halm, 2007). Follow physician prescriptions, as well as agency policies and guidelines on this action.

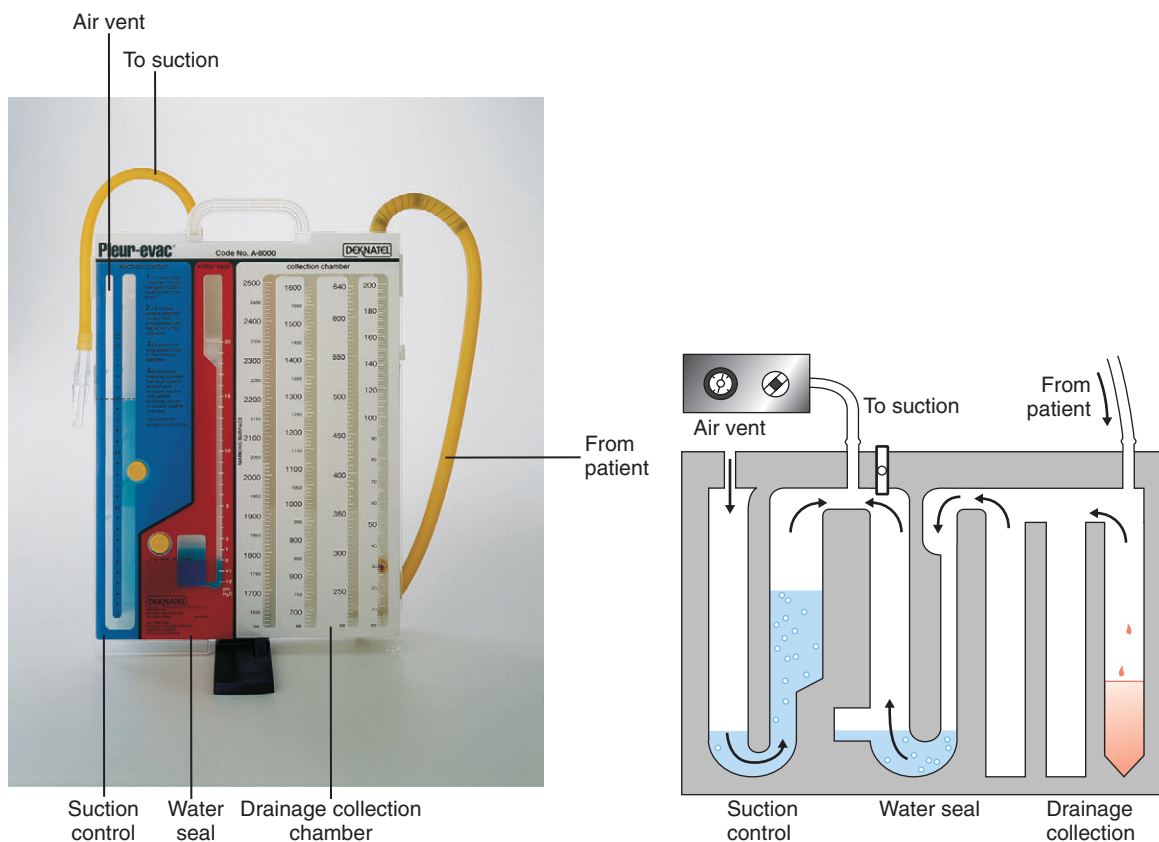


FIG. 32-17 Left, The Pleur-evac drainage system, a commercial three-chamber chest drainage device. Right, Schematic of the drainage device.



FIG. 32-18 A portable chest drainage system.

Assess the respiratory status and document the amount and type of drainage hourly. Usually the drainage in chamber one is not emptied unless the container is so full that the fluid is in danger of coming into contact with the chest drainage tube. The self-contained systems have calibrations on the collection chamber. Record the amount of hourly drainage. Notify the physician of drainage if more than 100 mL/hr occurs. After the first 24 hours, assess drainage at least every 8 hours.

Check the water seal chamber for unexpected bubbling created by an air leak in the system. Bubbling is normal during forceful expiration or coughing because air in the chest is being expelled. Continuous bubbling indicates an air leak that must be identified. Notify the physician if bubbling occurs continuously in the water seal chamber. On the physician's prescription, gently apply a padded clamp briefly on the drainage tubing close to the occlusive dressing. If the bubbling stops, the air leak may be at the chest tube insertion site or within the chest, requiring physician intervention. Air bubbling that does not cease when a padded clamp is applied indicates that the air leak is between the clamp and the drainage system. Release the clamp as soon as this assessment is made.

Mobile or portable chest tube drainage systems are “dry” chest drainage systems that do not use water to form a seal to prevent air from re-entering the patient’s lung through the chest tube. Instead, these lightweight devices use a dynamic control “flutter” valve that prevents backflow of air. The flutter valve is a soft rubber tube surrounded by a harder

CHART 32-14 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Management of Chest Tube Drainage Systems

Patient

- Ensure that the dressing on the chest around the tube is tight and intact. Depending on agency policy and the surgeon's preference, reinforce or change loose dressings.
- Assess for difficulty breathing.
- Assess breathing effectiveness by pulse oximetry.
- Listen to breath sounds for each lung.
- Check alignment of trachea.
- Check tube insertion site for condition of the skin. Palpate area for puffiness or crackling that may indicate subcutaneous emphysema.
- Observe site for signs of infection (redness, purulent drainage) or excessive bleeding.
- Check to see if tube "eyelets" are visible.
- Assess for pain and its location and intensity, and administer drugs for pain as prescribed.
- Assist patient to deep breathe, cough, perform maximal sustained inhalations, and use incentive spirometry.
- Reposition the patient who reports a "burning" pain in the chest.

Drainage System

- Do not "strip" the chest tube.
- Keep drainage system lower than the level of the patient's chest.
- Keep the chest tube as straight as possible, avoiding kinks and dependent loops.
- Ensure the chest tube is securely taped to the connector and that the connector is taped to the tubing going into the collection chamber.
- Assess bubbling in the water seal chamber; should be gentle bubbling on patient's exhalation, forceful cough, position changes.
- Assess for "tidaling."
- Check water level in the water seal chamber, and keep at the level recommended by the manufacturer.
- Check water level in suction control chamber, and keep at the level prescribed by the surgeon (unless dry suction system is used).
- Clamp the chest tube only for brief periods to change the drainage system or when checking for air leaks.
- Check and document amount, color, and characteristics of fluid in the collection chamber, as often as needed according to the patient's condition and agency policy.
- Empty collection chamber or change the system before the drainage makes contact with the bottom of the tube.
- When sample of drainage is needed for culture or other laboratory test, obtain it from the chest tube; after cleansing chest tube, use a 20-gauge (or smaller) needle and draw up specimen into a syringe.

Immediately Notify Physician or Rapid Response Team for:

- Tracheal deviation
- Sudden onset or increased intensity of dyspnea
- Oxygen saturation less than 90%
- Drainage greater than 70 mL/hr
- Visible eyelets on chest tube
- Chest tube falls out of the patient's chest (first, cover the area with dry, sterile gauze)
- Chest tube disconnects from the drainage system (first, put end of tube in a container of sterile water and keep below the level of the patient's chest)
- Drainage in tube stops (in the first 24 hours)

plastic tube. When the patient exhales, air is forced from the chest cavity into the chest tube, under pressure. This pressure forces the soft flutter valve open and air moves into the harder surrounding tube shell (which has a vent for air). When the patient inhales, creating negative pressure in the chest tube, the soft sides of the flutter valve collapse on themselves (like the sides of a deflated balloon when a person sucks on the mouthpiece instead of blowing into the mouthpiece), closing the one-way valve. Portable units allow the patient to ambulate more freely and go home with chest tubes still in place.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client is 1 day postoperative after an open thoracotomy and has two chest tubes in place on the right side. The nurse notes that the client's trachea is pointing toward the left upper chest. What is the nurse's best first action?

- Immediately notify either the Rapid Response Team or the thoracic surgical resident.
- Check the suction setting for chamber three and compare it with the prescribed setting.
- Assess the client's oxygen saturation, and attempt to reposition the trachea within the midline.
- No action is needed because the trachea is deviated toward the unaffected side rather than the affected side.

Pain Management. Most patients have intense pain after an open thoracotomy for at least the first 24 hours. It is considerably less for the patient after lung cancer surgery using minimally invasive techniques. However, pain control is needed in either case for patient comfort and to assist him or her to participate in techniques to reduce the risk for postoperative complications (see [Chapter 18](#)). Administer the prescribed drugs for pain, and assess the patient's responses to them. Teach patients using patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) devices to self-administer the drug before pain intensity becomes too severe. Monitor vital signs before and after giving opioid analgesics, especially for the patient who is not being mechanically ventilated. Plan care activities around the timing of analgesia to reduce the stimulation of additional pain.

Respiratory Management. Immediately after surgery the patient is mechanically ventilated. See [Chapter 34](#) for nursing care of the patient receiving mechanical ventilation.

Once the patient is breathing on his or her own, the priorities are to maintain a patent airway, ensure adequate ventilation, and prevent complications. Assess the patient at least every 2 hours for adequacy of ventilation and gas exchange. Check the alignment of the trachea. Assess oxygen saturation and the rate and depth of respiration. Listen to breath sounds in all lobes on the nonoperative side, particularly noting the presence of crackles. Assess the oral mucous membranes for cyanosis and the nail beds for rate of capillary refill. Perform oral suctioning as necessary.

Usually the patient receives oxygen by mask or nasal cannula for the first 2 days after surgery. Warm and humidify the oxygen. Assist the patient to a semi-Fowler's position or up in a chair as soon as possible. Encourage him or her to use the incentive spirometer every hour while awake. If coughing is permitted, help him or her cough by splinting any incision and ensuring that the chest tube does not pull

with movement. Ensuring that pain is handled properly increases the patient's ability to cough and deep breathe effectively.

Pneumonectomy Care. After pneumonectomy, the pleural cavity on the affected side is an empty space. The surgeon sometimes inserts a clamped chest tube for only a day because serous fluid may then accumulate in the empty space and create adhesions, which reduce mediastinal shift toward the affected side. Closed-chest drainage is not usually used.

Complications of a pneumonectomy include empyema (purulent material in the pleural space) and development of a bronchopleural fistula (an abnormal duct that develops between the bronchial tree and the pleura). Positioning of the patient after pneumonectomy varies according to surgeon preference and the patient's comfort. Some surgeons want the patient placed on the nonoperative side immediately after a pneumonectomy to reduce stress on the bronchial stump incision. Others prefer to place the patient on the operative side to allow fluids to fill in the space formerly taken up by the lungs.

INTERVENTIONS FOR PALLIATION

Oxygen therapy is prescribed when the patient is hypoxemic. Even if the hypoxemia is not severe, humidified oxygen may be prescribed to relieve dyspnea and anxiety. (See [Chapter 30](#) for issues related to home oxygen therapy.)

Drug therapy with bronchodilators and corticosteroids is prescribed for the patient with bronchospasm to decrease bronchospasm, inflammation, and edema. Mucolytics may be of use to ease removal of thick mucus and sputum. Bacterial infections are treated with antibiotic therapy.

Radiation therapy can help relieve hemoptysis, obstruction of the bronchi and great veins (superior vena cava syndrome), **dysphagia** (difficulty swallowing) from esophageal compression, and pain resulting from bone metastasis. Usually radiation for palliation uses higher doses for shorter periods. Skin care issues and fatigue are the same as those occurring with radiation therapy for cure.

Thoracentesis is performed when pleural effusion is a problem for the patient with lung cancer. The excess fluid

increases dyspnea, discomfort, and the risk for infection. The goal of treatment is to remove pleural fluid and prevent its formation. **Thoracentesis** is fluid removal by suction after the placement of a large needle or catheter into the intrapleural space. Fluid removal temporarily relieves hypoxia; however, the fluid can rapidly re-form in the pleural space. When fluid development is continuous and uncomfortable, a continuously draining catheter may be placed into the intrapleural space to collect the fluid.

Dyspnea management is needed because the patient with lung cancer tires easily and is often most comfortable resting in a semi-Fowler's position. Dyspnea is reduced with oxygen, use of a morphine drip, and positioning for comfort. The severely dyspneic patient may be most comfortable sitting in a lounge chair or reclining chair.

Pain management may be needed for chest pain and pain radiating to the arm. With bone metastasis, the patient may also have bone pain. Perform a complete pain assessment with attention to onset, intensity, quality, duration, and the patient's description of the pain. The purpose of therapy is to help the patient to be as pain-free and as comfortable as possible.

Pharmacologic management with opioid drugs as oral, parenteral, or transdermal preparations is needed. Nonpharmacologic measures, such as positioning, hot or cold compresses, distractions, and guided imagery, may also be helpful. Prescribed analgesics are most effective when given around the clock. Additional PRN analgesics are used for breakthrough pain. Ongoing assessment and evaluation of pain control effectiveness are primary nursing responsibilities.

Hospice care can be beneficial for the patient in the terminal phase of lung cancer. Hospice programs provide support to the terminally ill patient and the family by meeting physical and psychosocial needs, adjusting the palliative care regimen as needed, making home visits, and providing volunteers for errands and respite care. (See [Chapter 9](#) for a more complete discussion of end-of-life issues.) The American Cancer Society may provide assistance through support groups for patients and families or through the use of equipment, such as a hospital bed or bedside commode.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of chronic obstructive respiratory problems?

- Respirations rapid and shallow
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Skin cyanosis or pallor (in lighter-skinned patients)
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (in patients of any skin color)
- Tachycardia
- Patient appears to work hard to inhale and exhale
- Patient is restless or anxious
- Patient's general appearance is thin compared with height
- Muscles of the neck appear thick
- Arm and leg muscles appear thin

- Fingers are clubbed
- Chest is barrel-shaped (has a round rather than an oval shape with the front to back depth increased)
- Ribs are spaced more than a fingerbreadth apart

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of an acute critical respiratory problem?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Checking the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing for the presence and characteristics of sputum production
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway

Interpret laboratory values, including:

- Elevated red blood cell count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin
- Elevated white blood cell count
- Arterial blood gas values: pH lower than 7.35, HCO_3^- greater than 24 mEq/L, PaCO_2 greater than 45 mm Hg; PaO_2 lower than 80 mm Hg

Respond by:

- Assisting the patient to an upright position, with arms resting on a table or armrests
- Performing or assisting the patient to perform chest physiotherapy/pulmonary hygiene

- Ensuring that oxygen delivery is kept low enough to maintain respirations of no fewer than 16 breaths per minute
- Prioritizing and pacing activities to prevent fatigue
- Administering prescribed inhaled drugs
- Administering respiratory therapy treatments or collaborating with the respiratory therapist to administer these treatments
- Re-assessing respiratory status after respiratory therapy treatment
- Ensuring a fluid intake of at least 3 liters per day

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved oxygenation (see [Chapter 29](#)).
- Think about what may have made the patient's dyspnea worse and what steps could be taken to prevent a similar episode.
- Think about what patient teaching focus could help reduce the intensity of dyspnea in the future.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Avoid high liter flow rates of oxygen for patients with COPD.
- Ensure there are no open flames or combustion hazards in rooms where oxygen is in use.
- Protect the patient with cystic fibrosis from hospital-acquired pulmonary infections.
- Ensure proper function of chest tube drainage equipment.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients who come into contact with inhalation irritants in their workplaces or leisure-time activities to use a mask to avoid respiratory contact with these substances.
- Teach anyone who smokes that smoking increases the risk for development of many pulmonary problems.
- Encourage all patients older than 50 years and anyone with a respiratory problem to receive a yearly influenza vaccination.
- Teach all patients who smoke the warning signs of lung cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the degree to which breathing problems interfere with the patient's ability to perform ADLs, work, and leisure-time activities.

- Encourage the patient and family to express their feelings regarding the diagnosis of cancer or the treatment regimen.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.
- Help patients use strategies to improve their appearance when alopecia occurs.
- Refer patients and family members to local cancer resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

- Monitor the rate and depth of respiration at least every hour for any patient with hypercarbia and CO_2 narcosis who is receiving oxygen by mask or nasal cannula.
- Assess the airway and breathing effectiveness for any patient who experiences shortness of breath or any change in mental status.
- Apply oxygen to anyone who is hypoxemic.
- Ensure that oxygen therapy delivered to the patient is humidified.
- Monitor arterial blood gases and oxygen saturation of all patients receiving oxygen therapy.
- Teach patients receiving radiation therapy how to care for the skin in the radiation path (see [Chart 24-2](#) in [Chapter 24](#)).

CHAPTER

33

Care of Patients with Infectious Respiratory Problems

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Tuberculosis

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenge and Decision-Making Challenge Questions

Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Crackles

Audio Clip: High- and Low-Pitched Wheezes

Audio Clip: Stridor

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Community-Acquired (CA) Bacterial Pneumonia

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the pathophysiology of communicable respiratory diseases and the airborne and droplet modes of organism transmission.
2. Apply principles of infection control (e.g., hand hygiene, Isolation Precautions, Airborne Precautions) when providing care to patients with respiratory infections.
3. Use the “ventilator bundle” interventions to prevent ventilator-associated pneumonia.
4. Educate the patient and family about infection control practices for care of a patient who has tuberculosis and lives at home.
5. Prepare to participate in disease-containment activities in the event of an outbreak of pandemic influenza.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

6. Identify adults at highest risk for contracting influenza, pneumonia, tuberculosis, and other respiratory infections.
7. Provide information to everyone about immunization against influenza and pneumonia.
8. Teach everyone the use of specific infection control techniques, especially hand hygiene and Centers for

Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) cough/sneeze etiquette, to avoid acquiring and spreading respiratory infections.

Psychosocial Integrity

9. Adjust teaching activities to avoid contributing to patient fatigue.

Physiological Integrity

10. Perform focused respiratory assessment and re-assessment.
11. Recognize manifestations of infectious respiratory diseases.
12. Compare the manifestations of pneumonia in the younger adult with those exhibited by the older adult with pneumonia.
13. Provide information to the patient and family about side effects of anti-tuberculosis (TB) therapy and when to notify the health care provider.
14. Administer oxygen therapy to the patient with hypoxemia, and evaluate the response.
15. Assess the TB test results for a person with normal immune function and a person with compromised immune function.

DISORDERS OF THE NOSE AND SINUSES

RHINITIS

Pathophysiology

Rhinitis, an inflammation of the nasal mucosa, is a common problem of the nose and often also involves the sinuses. It can be caused by infection (viral or bacterial) or contact with allergens. Often an allergic rhinitis will make the mucous membranes more susceptible to invasion, and then infection accompanies the allergy. Regardless of the cause, rhinitis is uncomfortable.

Allergic rhinitis, often called *hay fever* or *allergies*, is triggered by hypersensitivity reactions to airborne allergens, especially plant pollens or molds. Some episodes are “seasonal” because they recur at the same time each year and last a few weeks. *Perennial rhinitis* occurs either intermittently with no seasonal pattern or continuously whenever the person is exposed to an offending allergen such as dust, animal dander, wool, or foods (e.g., seafood). Rhinitis also occurs as a “rebound” nasal congestion from overuse of nose drops or sprays (*rhinitis medicamentosa*) and chronic nasal inhalation of cocaine.

Acute viral rhinitis (**coryza**, or the common cold) is caused by any of over 200 viruses. It spreads from person to person by droplets from sneezing or coughing and by direct contact. Colds are most contagious in the first 2 to 3 days after symptoms appear. Colds are self-limiting unless a bacterial infection occurs at the same time. Complications occur most often in immunosuppressed people and older adults, especially if they live or work in crowded conditions or in group settings.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

In both acute and chronic allergic rhinitis, the presence of the allergen causes a release of histamine and other mediators from white blood cells (WBCs) in the nasal mucosa. These mediators bind to blood vessel receptors, causing local blood vessel dilation and capillary leak, leading to local edema and swelling. Manifestations include headache, nasal irritation, sneezing, nasal congestion, rhinorrhea (watery drainage from the nose), and itchy, watery eyes.

Viral or bacterial invasion of the nasal passages causes the same local tissue responses as allergic rhinitis. Often the patient also has systemic manifestations, including a sore, dry throat and a low-grade fever.

Management of the patient with any type of rhinitis focuses on symptom relief and patient education. Teach him or her about correct use of the drug therapy prescribed.

Drug therapy, including antihistamines and decongestants, is prescribed but must be used with caution in the older adult because of side effects such as vertigo, hypertension, and urinary retention. *Antihistamines*, *leukotriene inhibitors*, and *mast cell stabilizers* block the chemicals released by WBCs from binding to receptors in nasal tissues or reduce the amount of mediator present, preventing local edema and itching. *Decongestants* constrict blood vessels and decrease edema. *Antipyretics* are given if fever is present. *Antibiotics* are prescribed only when a bacterial infection

accompanies rhinitis. Rhinitis caused by overuse of nose drops or sprays is treated by discontinuing the drug. Steroid nasal sprays may be used to decrease the rebound nasal congestion during the first week after discontinuing the drug (Regan, 2009).

Complementary and alternative therapies may be used to decrease the severity of acute viral rhinitis for some people early in the course of the problem. Common agents used for this purpose are echinacea, large doses of vitamin C, and zinc preparations such as COLD-EEZE or Zicam. These products may help increase nonspecific immune function.

Supportive therapy can increase the patient's comfort and help prevent spread of the infection. Instruct the patient about the importance of rest (8 to 10 hours a day) and fluid intake of at least 2000 mL/day unless other health problems require fluid restriction. Humidifying the air helps relieve congestion. Humidity can be increased with a room humidifier or by breathing steamy air in the bathroom after running hot shower water.

Teach patients to reduce the risk for spreading colds by thoroughly washing hands, especially after nose blowing, sneezing, coughing, rubbing the eyes, or touching the face. Other precautions include staying home from work, school, or places where people gather; covering the mouth and nose with a tissue when sneezing or coughing; disposing properly of used tissues immediately; and avoiding close contact with other people (e.g., kissing, hugging, handshaking). Stress the need to avoid close contact with people who are more susceptible to infection, such as older adults, infants, and anyone who has a chronic respiratory problem. An uncomplicated cold typically subsides within 7 to 10 days.

SINUSITIS

Pathophysiology

Sinusitis is an inflammation of the mucous membranes of one or more of the sinuses. Swelling can obstruct the flow of secretions from the sinuses, which may then become infected. The disorder often follows rhinitis. Other conditions leading to sinusitis include deviated nasal septum, nasal polyps or tumors, inhaled air pollutants or cocaine, facial trauma, nasal intubation, dental infection, or decreased immune function.

The most common organisms causing sinus infection are *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Diplococcus*, and *Bacteroides*. Sinusitis most often develops in the maxillary and frontal sinuses. Complications include cellulitis, abscess, and meningitis.

Diagnosis is made on the basis of the patient's history and manifestations. *Transillumination* (reflection of light through tissues) of the affected sinus is decreased. This can be assessed by having the patient place a lighted penlight tip into the mouth and closing the lips around it in a darkened room. Non-swollen sinuses reflect light through the skin as seen as a red glow on the cheek between the eye and the lip. Sinuses that are swollen or filled with secretions have a reduced or absent glow. Other tests for sinusitis include sinus x-rays, endoscopic examination, and computed tomography (CT). Bacterial sinusitis is usually indicated by

purulent drainage from one or both nares and lack of response to decongestant therapy.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assess for manifestations of sinusitis, including nasal swelling and congestion, headache, facial pressure, and pain (usually worse when the head is tilted forward or is in a dependent position). Other manifestations include tenderness to touch over the involved area, low-grade fever, cough, and purulent or bloody nasal drainage.

Nonsurgical Management

Treatment includes the use of broad-spectrum antibiotics (e.g., amoxicillin [Amoxil]), analgesics for pain and fever (e.g., acetaminophen [Tylenol, Abenol, Atasol, Panadol]), decongestants (e.g., phenylephrine [Neo-Synephrine]), steam humidification, hot and wet packs over the sinus area, and nasal saline irrigations. Teach the patient to increase fluid intake unless another medical problem requires fluid restriction. If this treatment plan is not successful, he or she may need to be evaluated with sinus x-rays and CT scans. Surgical intervention may be needed if nonsurgical management fails to provide relief.

Surgical Management

A common procedure used for sinusitis that does not respond to drug therapy is functional endoscopic sinus surgery (FESS). Small endoscopes (sinoscopes) are used to first visualize the area. Instruments attached to the sinoscopes are used to open the nasal ostium and remove infected mucosa or improve the pathway for nasal drainage. A balloon catheter may also be used during FESS to change the shape of the nasal ostium to relieve obstruction and promote drainage (Regan, 2009). The procedures take only minutes, although mucosal healing may take from 4 to 6 weeks. Pain, swelling, and bleeding are much less than for more traditional sinus surgery procedures. Instruct the patient to use saline nasal sprays frequently (every 2 to 4 hours) to prevent mucosal crusting and promote healing. After more traditional nasal surgery or endoscopic surgery, the patient may have difficulty eating for a few days because of pain and swelling. Chart 33-1 describes the best practices for care after these surgeries.

DISORDERS OF THE ORAL PHARYNX AND TONSILS

PHARYNGITIS

Pathophysiology

Pharyngitis, or “sore throat,” is a common inflammation of the pharyngeal mucous membranes that often occurs with rhinitis and sinusitis. It accounts for 1.2% of all office visits each year in the United States (Schappert & Reche-steiner, 2008).

Acute pharyngitis can be caused by bacteria, viruses, other organisms, trauma, dehydration, irritants, and tobacco or alcohol use. A common bacterium causing pharyngitis is group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus*, but most adult cases are caused by a virus (Hoyle, 2009).

CHART 33-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Postoperative Care for Patients with Sinus Surgery

- Place the patient in the semi-Fowler's position to promote drainage and prevent swelling.
- Perform *gentle* oral hygiene to promote healing and prevent injury to the surgical incision.
- Teach the patient to use ice compresses as prescribed for 24 hours.
- If a “mustache” dressing under the nose is present, teach the patient how to change it and assess the amount of drainage.
- Teach the patient to eat soft foods and increase fluid intake.
- Recommend that the patient sleep in a reclining chair or with pillows to keep his or her head at about a 20-degree angle.
- Recommend the use of a room humidifier at night.
- Teach the patient to limit the Valsalva maneuver (no coughing, blowing the nose, or straining at stool) for at least 2 weeks to prevent bleeding and tissue damage.
- Teach the patient to take his or her temperature twice daily during the first week after surgery and to report an elevation to 100° F or higher to the surgeon.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient with pharyngitis has throat soreness and dryness, throat pain, pain on swallowing (*odynophagia*), difficulty swallowing, and fever. Viral and bacterial pharyngitis are often difficult to distinguish on physical assessment. When inspecting a throat infected with either virus or bacteria, mild to severe redness may be seen with or without enlarged tonsils and with or without exudate. Ask about nasal discharge, which varies from thin and watery to thick and purulent. Enlargement of neck lymph nodes occurs with both viral and bacterial pharyngitis.

Bacterial infections are often associated with enlarged red tonsils, exudate, purulent nasal discharge, and local lymph node enlargement. Chart 33-2 compares the manifestations of viral and bacterial pharyngitis. Viral pharyngitis is contagious for 2 to 3 days. Symptoms usually subside within 3 to 10 days after onset, and the disease is usually self-limiting.

Bacterial pharyngitis caused by group A streptococcal infection can lead to serious complications (Table 33-1), including acute glomerulonephritis and rheumatic fever carditis. Acute glomerulonephritis may occur 7 to 10 days after the acute infection, and rheumatic fever may develop 3 to 5 weeks after the acute infection.

Many types of rapid antigen tests (RATs) and screens for group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal antigen are available. These tests vary in specificity and sensitivity and cost about the same as a culture and sensitivity, but the results are available in less than 15 minutes. Two common tests are the Gen-Probe and the Optical Immunoassay (OIA).

In some cases, throat cultures can be important in distinguishing viral from a group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection; however, the results are not entirely accurate. False-negative cultures can occur, and 24 to 48 hours are required for results.

CHART 33-2 KEY FEATURES

Acute Viral and Bacterial Pharyngitis

FEATURE	VIRAL PHARYNGITIS	BACTERIAL PHARYNGITIS
Temperature	Low-grade or no fever	High temperature (>101° F [38.3° C], and usually 102°–104° F [38.9°–40° C])*
Ear manifestations	Retracted or dull tympanic membrane	Retracted or dull tympanic membrane
Throat manifestations	Scant or no tonsillar exudate Slight erythema of pharynx and tonsils	Severe hyperemia of pharyngeal mucosa, tonsils, and uvula Erythema of tonsils with yellow exudates
Neck manifestations	Possible lymphadenopathy	Anterior cervical lymphadenopathy and tenderness
Skin manifestations	No rash	Possible scarlatiniform rash Possible petechiae on chest or abdomen or both
Dysphagia, odynophagia	Present	Present
Other symptoms	No cough Rhinitis Mild hoarseness Headache	No cough Voice characterized by pain on voicing and slurred speech Headache Arthralgia Myalgia
Laboratory data	Complete blood count usually normal White blood cell count usually ≤10,000/mm ³ Negative throat culture results	Complete blood count abnormal White blood cell count usually >12,000/mm ³ * Throat culture results positive for beta-hemolytic <i>Streptococcus</i>
Onset	Gradual	Abrupt

*May not be present in adults older than 65 years.

TABLE 33-1 COMPLICATIONS OF GROUP A STREPTOCOCCAL INFECTION

- Rheumatic fever
- Acute glomerulonephritis
- Peritonsillar abscess
- Retropharyngeal abscess
- Otitis media
- Sinusitis
- Mastoiditis
- Bronchitis
- Pneumonia
- Scarlet fever

With either RAT or culture methods, it is essential to obtain throat specimens properly for an accurate test result. The organisms are not uniformly distributed throughout the throat and can be missed during swabbing. To obtain a specimen, rub a sterile cotton swab from a throat culture kit first over the right tonsillar area, moving across the right arch, the uvula, and then across the left arch to the left tonsillar area (Rushing, 2007). Remove the swab without touching the patient's teeth, tongue, or gums. Place the swab back into the tube, cap it, and then crush the glass ampule

in the culture tube. Send it to the laboratory as quickly as possible.

A complete blood count (CBC) is performed when the patient's condition is severe or does not improve. Patients who need a CBC are those who have high fevers, lethargy, or manifestations of complications.

Ask about the patient's recent contacts (within the past 10 days) with people who have been ill. Specifically ask whether he or she has been ill with symptoms of a cold or upper respiratory tract infection recently. Document any history of streptococcal infections, rheumatic fever, valvular heart disease, or penicillin allergy. Because diphtheria (*Corynebacterium diphtheriae*) can cause pharyngitis, ask about and document whether the patient has had a diphtheria immunization.

INTERVENTIONS

Most sore throats in adults are viral, do not require antibiotic therapy, and respond to supportive interventions. Teach the patient to rest, increase fluid intake, humidify the air, and use analgesics for pain. Gargling several times each day with warm saline and using throat lozenges can increase comfort.

Management of bacterial pharyngitis involves antibiotics and the same supportive care as with viral pharyngitis. For streptococcal infection, an oral penicillin or cephalosporin is prescribed. Drugs from the macrolide class (e.g., azithromycin or erythromycin) are used if the patient is allergic to penicillin.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients with any bacterial infection the importance of completing the entire antibiotic prescription, even when manifestations improve or subside. This action helps eradicate the organism and prevents development of resistant bacterial strains.

The patient should be re-evaluated if there is no improvement in 3 days or if manifestations are still present after completion of the antibiotic course. Persistent bacterial pharyngitis may occur with immunosuppression. Any patient whose bacterial pharyngitis does not improve with antibiotics should consider human immune deficiency virus (HIV) testing.

A rare complication of pharyngitis in adults is infection of the epiglottis and supraglottic structures (**epiglottitis**). The epiglottis is a flaplike structure that closes over the trachea during swallowing to prevent aspiration. An inflamed epiglottis can swell and obstruct the airway, causing an emergency that inhibits oxygenation and tissue perfusion.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If a patient with pharyngitis develops stridor or other indications of airway obstruction, notify the Rapid Response Team. Teach patients at home to call 911 or go to the nearest emergency department if difficulty breathing, stridor, or drooling occurs.

Teach the patient how to take his or her temperature accurately every morning and evening until the infection resolves. He or she is not contagious after 24 hours of effective

antibiotic therapy. Family members or close contacts who also have a sore throat should be evaluated.

TONSILLITIS

Pathophysiology

Tonsillitis is an inflammation and infection of the tonsils and lymphatic tissues located on each side of the throat. The tonsils are lymphatic tissue shaped like a small almond. They are covered by mucous membranes and have small valleys (*crypts*) across their surface. Tonsils filter organisms and protect the respiratory tract from infection (McCance et al., 2010).

Tonsillitis is a contagious airborne infection. Acute or chronic tonsillitis can occur in any age-group, but it is less common in adults. The disease usually lasts 7 to 10 days and often is caused by bacteria, most commonly *Streptococcus*. Other bacterial causes include *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Pneumococcus*. Viruses also cause tonsillitis. Chronic tonsillitis may result from an unresolved acute infection or recurrent infections.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Chart 33-3 lists the manifestations of acute tonsillitis. Diagnostic tests often used to rule out other causes of the sore throat and fever include a rapid antigen test (RAT), CBC, throat culture and sensitivity (C&S) studies, and Monospot test. If respiratory symptoms are present, chest x-rays may be needed. The WBC count usually is elevated in bacterial infections and normal in viral infections.

Antibiotics (usually penicillin or azithromycin) are prescribed for 7 to 10 days. Nursing priorities include teaching the patient about supportive care and stressing the importance of completing antibiotic therapy. Teach him or her to rest, increase fluid intake, humidify the air, use analgesics for pain, gargle several times each day with warm saline, and use throat lozenges.

Surgical intervention for tonsillitis may be needed for recurrent acute infections (especially group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infections), chronic infections that do not respond to antibiotics, a peritonsillar abscess, and enlarged

tonsils or adenoids that obstruct the airway. It is usually performed after the patient has recovered from an acute tonsillitis and no infection is present (except with an acute peritonsillar abscess). The procedure may involve complete tonsil removal (for chronic infection) or a partial tonsil removal for obstruction without infection. A variety of techniques are used to remove tonsils from adults; however, the dissection and snare technique is still the most common. The adenoids may be removed at the same time. When the patient is an adult, a tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy (T&A) is usually performed with him or her under general anesthesia. After surgery, nursing interventions focus on assessing for airway clearance, providing pain relief, and monitoring for excessive bleeding.

PERITONSILLAR ABSCESS

Peritonsillar abscess (PTA) is a complication of acute tonsillitis. The infection spreads from the tonsil to the surrounding tissue, which forms an abscess. The most common cause of PTA is group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus*.

Manifestations include pus behind the tonsil causing one-sided swelling with deviation of the uvula toward the unaffected side. The patient may drool, have severe throat pain radiating to the ear, have a voice change, and have difficulty swallowing. He or she may also have a tonic contraction of the muscles of chewing (*trismus*) and have difficulty breathing. Bad breath is present, and lymph nodes on the affected side are swollen. An intraoral or transcutaneous ultrasound may be used for diagnosis (Hoyle, 2009).

Outpatient management with antibiotic therapy and percutaneous needle aspiration of the abscess is usually needed. Acute care management may include IV opioid analgesics for severe pain and IV steroids to reduce the swelling. The patient usually improves in 36 hours. *Stress the importance of completing the antibiotic regimen and of coming to the emergency department quickly if symptoms of obstruction appear (drooling and stridor).* Teach him or her about comfort measures (e.g., warm saline gargles or irrigations, an ice collar, analgesics). Hospitalization is required when the airway is in jeopardy or when the infection does not respond to antibiotic therapy. Incision and drainage of the abscess and additional antibiotic therapy may be needed. A tonsillectomy may be performed to prevent recurrence.

CHART 33-3 KEY FEATURES

Acute Tonsillitis

- Sudden onset of a mild to severe sore throat
- Fever
- Muscle aches
- Chills
- Dysphagia, odynophagia (painful swallowing of food)
- Pain in the ears
- Headache
- Anorexia
- Malaise
- “Hot potato” voice (thickened voice of poor quality)
- Tonsils visually swollen and red with pus
- Tonsils may be covered with a white or yellow exudate
- Purulent drainage may be expressed by pressing a tonsil
- Uvula visually edematous or inflamed
- Cervical lymph nodes usually tender and enlarged

DISORDERS OF THE LARYNX AND LUNGS

LARYNGITIS

Laryngitis is an inflammation of the mucous membranes lining the larynx and may or may not include edema of the vocal cords. It can occur as a single problem or occur with upper respiratory infections. Laryngitis also can be a manifestation of other problems, such as throat or lung cancer. Common causes include exposure to irritating inhalants (e.g., chemical fumes, tobacco, alcohol, smoke), voice overuse, inhalation of fumes (e.g., glue, paint thinner, butane), or intubation. Recurrent laryngitis may be caused by gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD).

Assess the patient for hoarseness, dry cough, and difficulty swallowing. Complete but temporary voice loss (*aphonia*) also may occur. A laryngeal mirror is used by a physician or

advanced practice nurse to inspect the larynx and identify inflammation, polyps, edema, or tumor. If suspicious lesions are present, an x-ray, computed tomography, or fiberoptic laryngoscopic examination may be needed. Patients who may have a disorder other than acute laryngitis are referred to an ear, nose, and throat (ENT) specialist (otolaryngologist).

Nursing management focuses on symptom relief and prevention. Treatment consists of voice rest, steam inhalations, increased fluid intake, and throat lozenges. Antibiotic therapy and bronchodilators are prescribed when sinusitis, bronchitis, or other bacterial infection is also present. Teach the patient and family about relief measures, infection prevention, and avoidance of alcohol, tobacco, and pollutants, which can irritate the larynx.

Teach about preventive strategies such as reducing tobacco and alcohol use. Emphasize the need to avoid activities that place an added strain on the larynx, such as singing, cheering, public speaking, heavy lifting, and whispering. Speech-language therapy is used when vocal cord injury occurs with laryngitis. Further evaluation is needed for recurrent bouts of laryngitis.

SEASONAL INFLUENZA

Pathophysiology

Seasonal influenza, or “flu,” is a highly contagious acute viral respiratory infection that can occur in adults of all ages. Epidemics are common and lead to complications of pneumonia or death, especially in older adults or debilitated or immunocompromised patients. Between 5% and 20% of the U.S. population develop influenza each year, and more than 36,000 deaths per year are caused by it (Kapustin, 2008). Hospitalization may be required. Influenza may be caused by one of several virus families, referred to as A, B, and C.

The patient with influenza often has a severe headache, muscle aches, fever, chills, fatigue, and weakness. Adults are contagious from 24 hours before symptoms occur and up to 5 days after they begin. Patients who are immunosuppressed may be contagious for several weeks. Sore throat, cough, and watery nasal discharge generally follow the initial symptoms for a week or longer. Most patients feel fatigued for 1 to 2 weeks after the acute episode has resolved.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Vaccinations for the prevention of influenza are widely available. The vaccine is changed every year on the basis of which specific viral strains are most likely to pose a problem during the influenza season (i.e., late fall and winter). Usually, the vaccines contain three antigens for the three expected viral strains (trivalent influenza vaccine [TIV]). Influenza vaccinations can be taken as an IM injection (Fluviron, Fluzone) or as a live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) by intranasal spray (FluMist). An **attenuated virus** is a live virus that has been altered to reduce its ability to cause an infection. The intranasal vaccine is live, and some people develop influenza symptoms after its use. It is recommended only for healthy people up to 49 years of age. People recommended to be vaccinated yearly include those older than 50 years, people with chronic illness or immune compromise, those living in institutions, people living with or caring for adults with health problems that put them at risk for severe complications of influenza, and health care personnel providing direct care to

patients (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2010c).

Teach the patient who is sick to reduce the risk for spreading the flu by thoroughly washing hands, especially after nose blowing, sneezing, coughing, rubbing the eyes, or touching the face. Other precautions include staying home from work, school, or places where people gather; covering the mouth and nose with a tissue when sneezing or coughing; disposing properly of used tissues immediately; and avoiding close contact with other people (e.g., kissing, hugging, handshaking). Although handwashing is a good method to prevent transmitting the virus in droplets from sneezing or coughing, many people cannot wash their hands as soon as they have coughed or sneezed. The technique recommended by the CDC for controlling flu spread is to sneeze or cough into the upper sleeve rather than into the hand (CDC, 2010a). (Respiratory droplets on the hands can contaminate surfaces and be transmitted to other people.)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Viral infections do not respond to traditional antibiotic therapy. Antiviral agents may be effective for prevention and treatment of some types of influenza. Amantadine (Symmetrel) and rimantadine (Flumadine) have been effective in the prevention and treatment of influenza A, although strains of resistant organisms are increasing. Ribavirin (Virazole) has been used for severe influenza B. Two drugs that may shorten the duration of influenza A and influenza B are zanamivir (Relenza), which is used as an oral inhalant, and oseltamivir (Tamiflu), which is an oral tablet. These drugs prevent viral spread in the respiratory tract by inhibiting a viral enzyme (neuraminidase) that allows the virus to penetrate respiratory cells. To be effective, they must be taken within 24 to 48 hours after the onset of manifestations.

Advise the patient to stay in bed for several days and increase fluid intake unless another problem requires fluid restriction. Saline gargles may ease sore throat pain. Antihistamines may reduce the rhinorrhea. Other supportive measures are the same as those for acute rhinitis.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The 75-year-old client tells the nurse he is not planning to receive a “flu shot” this year because he had one just a year ago. What is the nurse’s best response?

- “Because you are older and your immune system is more fragile, you should have one this year too as a booster.”
- “The virus causing influenza often changes each year and a new influenza vaccination is needed every flu season.”
- “The ‘flu shot’ you had last year should still protect you for seasonal influenza, but you still need a vaccination for H1N1.”
- “The fact that you have been vaccinated by injection just last year makes you a candidate to use the nasal vaccination this year.”

PANDEMIC INFLUENZA

Pathophysiology

Many viral infections among animals and birds are not usually transmitted to humans. A few notable exceptions have occurred when these animal and bird viruses mutated and

became highly infectious to humans. These infections are termed **pandemic** because they have the potential to spread globally. Such pandemics include the 1918 “Spanish” influenza that resulted in at least 40 million deaths worldwide and perhaps as many as 100 million deaths. This virus, the H1N1 strain, also known as “swine flu,” mutated and became highly infectious to humans. Most recently, the 2009 H1N1 influenza A resulted in a pandemic infection that spread to 215 countries. In the United States, the number of people infected with this virus during the pandemic is estimated at 61 million, resulting in more than 12,000 deaths (CDC, 2010b). A vaccine was developed in 2009 as a single antigen (monovalent) and was administered separately from the seasonal influenza vaccine. For the 2010–2011 influenza season, the trivalent seasonal vaccine contained the H1N1 antigen.

A new avian virus is the H5N1 strain, known as “avian influenza” or “bird flu,” that has infected millions of birds, especially in Asia, and now has started to spread by human-to-human contact. World health officials are concerned that this strain could become a pandemic because humans have essentially no naturally occurring immunity to this virus. Thus the infection could lead to a worldwide pandemic with very high mortality rates.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The prevention of a worldwide influenza pandemic of any virus is the responsibility of everyone. Health officials have been monitoring the situation with human outbreaks and with testing of both wild and domestic bird species throughout the world. Vaccines currently are available for both H1N1 and H5N1; however, the H5N1 vaccine is stockpiled and not part of general influenza vaccination. The recommended early approach to disease prevention with H5N1 is early recognition of new cases and the implementation of community and personal quarantine and social-distancing behaviors to reduce exposure to the virus.

Plans for prevention and containment in North America have been developed with the cooperation of most levels of government. When a cluster of cases is discovered in an area, the stockpiled vaccine is to be made available for immunizations. Because vaccination with this vaccine is a two-step process with the first IM injection followed 28 days later by a second IM injection, additional prevention measures are needed.

The antiviral drugs *oseltamivir* (Tamiflu) and *zanamivir* (Relenza) should be widely distributed. These drugs are not likely to prevent the disease but may reduce the severity of the infection and reduce the mortality rate. The infected patients should be cared for in strict isolation. All nonessential public activities in the area should be stopped. These include public gatherings of any type, attendance at schools, religious services, shopping, and many types of employment. People should stay home and use their emergency preparedness supplies (food, water, and drugs) they have stockpiled for at least 2 weeks (see Chapter 12). Travel to and from the affected area should be stopped.

Urge all people to pay attention to public health announcements and early warning systems for disease outbreaks. Teach them the importance of starting prevention behaviors immediately upon notification of an outbreak. Teach all people to have a minimum of a 2-week supply of all their prescribed drugs and at least a 2-week supply of nonperishable food and

water for each member of the household. They should also have a battery-powered radio (and batteries) to keep informed of updates in an active prevention situation. See Chapter 12 for more information on items to have ready in the home for disaster preparedness. *An influenza pandemic is a disaster, and containing it requires the cooperation of all people.*

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Care of the patient with avian influenza focuses on supporting the patient and preventing spread of the disease. Both are equally important. The initial manifestations of avian influenza are similar to other respiratory infections—cough, fever, and sore throat. These progress rapidly to shortness of breath and pneumonia. In addition, diarrhea, vomiting, abdominal pain, and bleeding from the nose and gums occur. *Ask any patient with these symptoms if he or she has recently (within the past 10 days) traveled to areas of the world affected by H5N1. If such travel has occurred, coordinate with the health care team to place the patient in an airborne isolation room with negative air pressure. These precautions remain until the diagnosis of H5N1 is ruled out or the threat of contagion is over.* Diagnosis is made based on clinical manifestations and positive testing. The most rapid test currently approved for testing of H5N1 is the AVantage A/H5N1 Flu Test. It can detect a specific protein (NS1), which indicates the presence of H5N1, from nasal or throat swabs in less than 40 minutes.

When providing care to the patient with avian influenza, personal protective equipment is essential. Coordinate the protection activity by ensuring that anyone entering the patient’s room for any reason wears a fit-tested respirator or a standard surgical mask (“Lessons Learned,” 2010). Use other Airborne Precautions and Contact Precautions as described in Chapter 25. Teach others to self-monitor for disease symptoms, especially of respiratory infection, for at least a week after the last contact with the patient. Use the antiviral drug *oseltamivir* (Tamiflu) or *zanamivir* (Relenza) within 48 hours of contact with the infected patient. All health care personnel working with patients suspected of having avian influenza are recommended to receive the vaccine in the recommended two-step process.

No effective treatment for this infection currently exists. Antibiotics and antiviral drugs cannot kill the virus or prevent its replication. Interventions are supportive to allow the patient’s own immune system to fight the infection. Oxygen is given when hypoxia or breathlessness is present. Respiratory treatments to dilate the bronchioles and move respiratory secretions are used. If hypoxemia is not improved with oxygen therapy, intubation and mechanical ventilation may be needed. Antibiotics are used to treat a bacterial pneumonia that may occur with H5N1.

In addition to the need for respiratory support, the patient with H5N1 may have severe diarrhea and need fluid therapy. The Transmission Precautions may prevent the use of a scale to determine fluid needs by weight changes. Monitor the patient’s hydration status, and carefully measure intake and output. The type of fluid therapy varies with the patient’s cardiovascular status and the osmolality of the blood. The two most important areas to monitor during rehydration are pulse rate and quality and urine output.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

For what reason is pandemic influenza a bigger health threat than seasonal influenza?

- A. No vaccines are available for immunization to prevent pandemic influenza.
- B. Unlike seasonal influenza, pandemic influenza does not respond to antibiotics.
- C. Seasonal influenza viruses are killed by exposure to heat, and pandemic viruses are not.
- D. Pandemic influenzas began from animal viruses, and humans have no natural immunity to them.

PNEUMONIA

Pathophysiology

Pneumonia is an excess of fluid in the lungs resulting from an inflammatory process. The inflammation is triggered by many infectious organisms and by inhalation of irritating agents. Infectious pneumonias are categorized as community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) or health care–associated pneumonia (known as *HAP* or *HAI*), depending on where the patient was exposed to the infectious agent (Dobbins & Howard, 2011). HAPs are more likely to be resistant to some antibiotics than are CAPs.

The inflammation occurs in the interstitial spaces, the alveoli, and often the bronchioles. The process begins when organisms penetrate the airway mucosa and multiply in the alveoli. White blood cells (WBCs) migrate to the area of infection, causing local capillary leak, edema, and exudate. These fluids collect in and around the alveoli, and the alveolar walls thicken. Both events seriously reduce gas exchange and lead to hypoxemia, interfering with oxygenation and possibly leading to death. Red blood cells (RBCs) and fibrin also move into the alveoli. The capillary leak spreads the infection to other areas of the lung. If the organisms move into the bloodstream, sepsis results; if the infection extends into the pleural cavity, *empyema* (a collection of pus in the pleural cavity) results.

The fibrin and edema of inflammation stiffen the lung, reducing compliance and decreasing the vital capacity. Alveolar collapse (atelectasis) further reduces the ability of the lung to oxygenate the blood moving through it. As a result, arterial oxygen levels fall, causing hypoxemia.

Pneumonia may occur as lobar pneumonia with **consolidation** (solidification, lack of air spaces) in a segment or an entire lobe of the lung or as bronchopneumonia with diffusely scattered patches around the bronchi. The extent of lung involvement after the organism invades depends on the host defenses. Bacteria multiply quickly in a person whose immune system is compromised. Tissue necrosis results when an abscess forms and perforates the bronchial wall.

Etiology

Pneumonia develops when the immune system cannot combat the virulence of the invading organisms. Organisms from the environment, invasive devices, equipment and supplies, staff, or other people can invade the body. Risk factors are listed in [Table 33-2](#). Pneumonia can be caused by bacteria, viruses, mycoplasmas, fungi, rickettsiae, protozoa, and helminths (worms). Noninfectious causes of pneumonia include

TABLE 33-2 RISK FACTORS FOR PNEUMONIA

Community-Acquired Pneumonia

- Is an older adult
- Has never received the pneumococcal vaccination or received it more than 6 years ago
- Did not receive the influenza vaccine in the previous year
- Has a chronic health problem or other coexisting condition
- Has recently been exposed to respiratory viral or influenza infections
- Uses tobacco or alcohol or is exposed to high amounts of secondhand smoke

Health Care–Acquired Pneumonia

- Is an older adult
- Has a chronic lung disease
- Has presence of gram-negative colonization of the mouth, throat, and stomach
- Has an altered level of consciousness
- Has had a recent aspiration event
- Has presence of endotracheal, tracheostomy, or nasogastric tube
- Has poor nutritional status
- Has immunocompromised status (from disease or drug therapy)
- Uses drugs that increase gastric pH (histamine [H₂] blockers, antacids) or alkaline tube feedings
- Is currently receiving mechanical ventilation (ventilator-associated pneumonia [VAP])

inhalation of toxic gases, chemical fumes, and smoke and aspiration of water, food, fluid, and vomitus.

Incidence/Prevalence

In the United States, 2 to 5 million cases of pneumonia occur each year and it is the seventh leading cause of death ([Schappert et al., 2008](#)). The incidence is higher among older adults, nursing home residents, hospitalized patients, and those being mechanically ventilated. CAP is more common than HAP and occurs in late fall and winter as a complication of influenza. HAP is commonly acquired as a result of transmission during a hospital stay. A specific type of HAP is ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP). HAP has a 20% to 50% mortality rate; the highest incidence is in those patients infected with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Acinetobacter*, *Klebsiella*, other “high-risk” organisms, or secondary bacteremia.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Antigens from 23 different types of pneumonia organisms are included in the pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPV23). *Patient education is important in the prevention of pneumonia* ([Chart 33-4](#)). *Especially encourage people older than 65 years and those with a chronic health problem to receive the PPV23*. This vaccine is usually given once; however, some experts believe that older adults and those with chronic health problems could benefit from a second vaccination if more than 5 years have passed since the first vaccination ([American Lung Association \[ALA\], 2010a](#)). Because pneumonia often follows influenza, especially among older adults, urge all people to receive the seasonal influenza vaccination yearly ([Schweon, 2010](#)).

Other prevention techniques include strict handwashing to avoid the spread of organisms and avoiding large gatherings of people during cold and flu season. Teach the patient who has a cold or the flu to see his or her health care provider

CHART 33-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing Pneumonia

- Know whether you are at risk for pneumonia (older than 65 years, have a chronic health problem [especially a respiratory problem], or have limited mobility and are confined to a bed or chair during your waking hours).
- Have the annual influenza vaccine after discussing appropriate timing of the vaccination with your primary health care provider.
- Discuss the pneumococcal vaccine with your primary health care provider, and have the vaccination as recommended.
- Avoid crowded public areas during flu and holiday seasons.
- If you have a mobility problem, cough, turn, move about as much as possible, and perform deep-breathing exercises.
- If you are using respiration equipment at home, clean the equipment as you have been taught.
- Avoid indoor pollutants, such as dust, secondhand (passive) smoke, and aerosols.
- If you do not smoke, do not start.
- If you smoke, seek professional help on how to stop (or at least decrease) your habit.
- Be sure to get enough rest and sleep on a daily basis.
- Eat a healthy, balanced diet.
- Drink at least 3 liters of nonalcoholic fluids each day (unless fluid restrictions are needed because of another health problem).

if fever lasts more than 24 hours, if the problem lasts longer than 1 week, or if symptoms worsen.

Hospital respiratory therapy equipment must be well maintained and decontaminated or changed as recommended. Use sterile water rather than tap water in GI tubes, and institute Aspiration Precautions as indicated (see [Chapter 31](#)).

VAP is on the rise, especially among patients with endotracheal tubes in place for mechanical ventilation (American Association of Critical-Care Nurses [AACN], 2008; Luttenberger, 2010). Although just having the tube providing a direct connection between the environment and the patient's lower respiratory passageways increases the risk for VAP, the risk can be reduced with conscientious assessment and meticulous nursing care ([Garcia et al., 2009](#)). Three care actions, known as a “ventilator bundle,” have been shown to reduce the incidence of VAP—hand hygiene, oral care, and head-of-bed elevation. Oral care is critical in reducing the risk because many common organisms causing VAP are translocated from the patient's mouth into the respiratory tract. A variety of commercial products are available as oral care kits and suction kits specifically designed for patients who have an endotracheal tube. In addition, some types of endotracheal tubes have a separate lumen to allow for continuous suction of

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess the oral cavity every 6 hours for patients who are mechanically ventilated and have an endotracheal tube. After assessment, suction the oral cavity, and clean the tissues and gums using agents that reduce organisms and provide moisture every 6 hours. Place the ventilated patient on his or her side during oral care to help reduce the risk for aspiration. If teeth are present, brush them every 12 hours ([Garcia et al., 2009](#)).

CHART 33-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia (VAP)

- If possible, perform oral care with a disinfecting oral rinse right *before* the intubation.
- Do not wear hand jewelry, especially rings, when providing care to ventilator patients.
- Wash hands before and after contact with the patient.
- Provide complete oral care at least every 12 hours.
- Remove subglottic secretions frequently (at least every 2 hours) or continuously (when the endotracheal tube has a separate lumen that opens directly above the tube cuff).
- Keep the head of the bed elevated to at least 30 degrees unless another health problem is a contraindication for this position.
- Verify that an initial x-ray has been obtained to confirm the placement of any nasogastric tube before instilling drugs, fluids, or feedings into the tube.
- Avoid turning the patient or placing him or her in the supine position (even briefly) within an hour after a bolus tube feeding.
- Work with the patient and health care team to assist in the weaning process as soon as possible (see [Chapter 34](#)).

Information from Tolentino-DelosReyes, A., Ruppert, S., & Shiao, P. (2007). Evidence-based practice: Use of the ventilator bundle to prevent ventilator-associated pneumonia. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(1), 20-27.

subglottic secretions to prevent their aspiration. However, the key to successful prevention of VAP remains nursing vigilance in assessment and oral care ([Ames, 2011](#)). [Chart 33-5](#) lists best practices for preventing VAP.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The Concept Map on p. 649 addresses assessment and nursing care issues related to patients who have pneumonia. The manifestations of pneumonia differ in older patients compared with younger patients.

ASSESSMENT

History

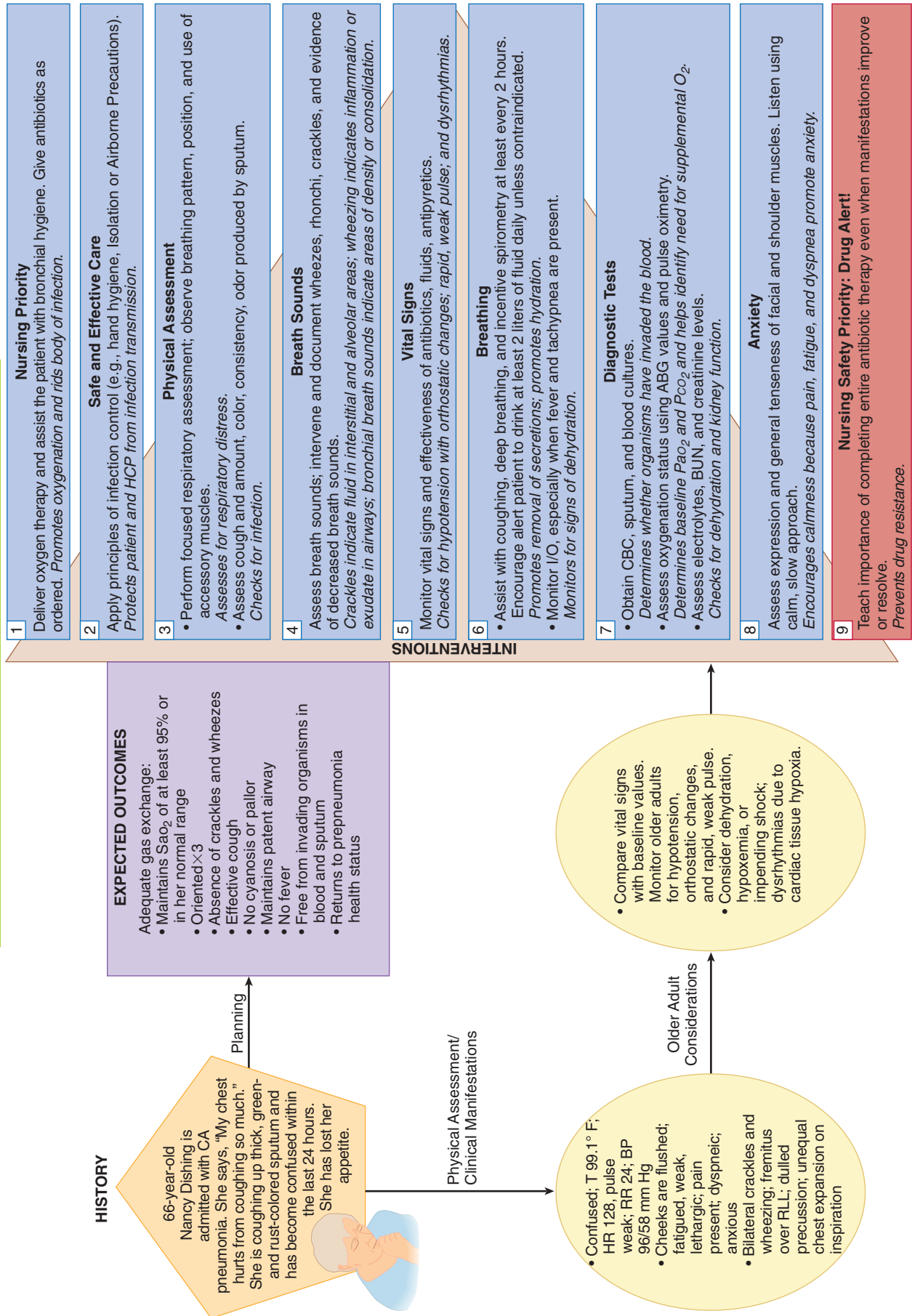
Assess for the risk factors for infection (see [Table 33-2](#)). Obtain the information from a family member if the patient is confused or too dyspneic. Document age; living, work, or school environment; diet, exercise, and sleep routines; swallowing problems; presence of a nasogastrintestinal tube; tobacco and alcohol use; past and current use of “street” drugs; and history of drug addiction and injection drug use. Ask about past respiratory illnesses and whether the patient has been exposed to influenza or pneumonia or has had a recent viral infection. Ask about recent skin rashes, insect bites, and exposure to animals.

If the patient has chronic respiratory problems, ask whether respiratory equipment is used in the home. Assess whether the patient's home cleaning level is adequate to prevent infection. Ask when he or she received the last influenza or pneumococcal vaccine.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Observe the general appearance. Many patients with pneumonia have flushed cheeks, bright eyes, and an anxious expression. The patient may have chest or pleuritic pain or

Concept Map: Community-Acquired (CA) Bacterial Pneumonia



discomfort, myalgia, headache, chills, fever, cough, tachycardia, dyspnea, tachypnea, hemoptysis, and sputum production. Severe chest muscle weakness also may be present from sustained coughing.

Observe the patient's breathing pattern, position, and use of accessory muscles. The hypoxic patient may be uncomfortable in a lying position and will sit upright, balancing with the hands. Assess the cough and the amount, color, consistency, and odor of sputum produced.

Crackles are heard with auscultation when fluid is in interstitial and alveolar areas. Wheezing may be heard if inflammation or exudate is in the airways. Bronchial breath sounds are heard over areas of density or consolidation. Fremitus is increased over areas of pneumonia, and percussion is dulled. Chest expansion may be diminished or unequal on inspiration.

In evaluating vital signs, compare the results with baseline values. The patient with pneumonia is likely to be hypotensive with orthostatic changes as a result of vasodilation and dehydration, especially the older adult. A rapid, weak pulse may indicate hypoxemia, dehydration, or impending shock. Dysrhythmias may be present as a result of cardiac tissue hypoxia. Common pneumonia manifestations and their causes are listed in Table 33-3.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The older adult with pneumonia has weakness, fatigue, lethargy, confusion, and poor appetite. Fever and cough may be absent, but hypoxemia is often present. The most common manifestation of pneumonia in the older adult patient is acute confusion from hypoxia. The WBC count may not be elevated until the infection is severe. Waiting to treat the disease until more typical manifestations appear greatly increases the risk for sepsis and death (Touhy & Jett, 2010).

TABLE 33-3 PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF COMMON CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS OF PNEUMONIA

CLINICAL MANIFESTATION	PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Increased respiratory rate/dyspnea	Stimulation of chemoreceptors Increased work of breathing as a result of decreased lung compliance Stimulation of J receptors Anxiety Pain
Hypoxemia	Alveolar consolidation Pulmonary capillary shunting
Cough	Fluid accumulation in the receptors of the trachea, bronchi, and bronchioles
Purulent, blood-tinged, or rust-colored sputum	A result of the inflammatory process in which fluid from the pulmonary capillaries and red blood cells move into the alveoli
Fever	Phagocytes release pyrogens that cause the hypothalamus to increase body temperature
Pleuritic chest discomfort	Inflammation of the parietal pleura causes pain on inspiration

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with pneumonia often has pain, fatigue, and dyspnea, all of which promote anxiety. Assess anxiety by looking at his or her facial expression and general tenseness of facial and shoulder muscles. Listen to him or her carefully, and use a calm, slow approach. Because of airway obstruction and muscle fatigue, the patient with dyspnea speaks in broken sentences. Keep the interview short if severe dyspnea or breathing discomfort is present.

Laboratory Assessment

Sputum is obtained and examined by Gram stain, culture, and sensitivity testing; however, the responsible organism often is not identified. A sputum sample is easily obtained from the patient who can cough into a specimen container. Extremely ill patients may need suctioning to obtain a sputum specimen. In these situations, a specimen is obtained by sputum trap (Fig. 33-1) during suctioning. A CBC is obtained to assess an elevated WBC count, which is a common finding except in older adults. Blood cultures may be performed to determine whether the organism has invaded the blood.

In severely ill patients, arterial blood gases (ABGs) may be performed to determine baseline arterial oxygen and carbon dioxide levels and help identify a need for supplemental oxygen. Serum electrolyte, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), and creatinine levels also are assessed. A high BUN level may occur as a result of dehydration. Hypernatremia (high blood sodium levels) occurs with dehydration as a result of fever and decreased fluid intake.

Imaging Assessment

Chest x-ray continues to be the most common diagnostic test for pneumonia but may not show changes until 2 or more days after manifestations are present. It usually appears on chest x-ray as an area of increased density. It may involve a lung segment, a lobe, one lung, or both lungs. *In the older adult, the chest x-ray is essential for early diagnosis because pneumonia symptoms are often vague* (Fowler, 2008; Touhy & Jett, 2010).

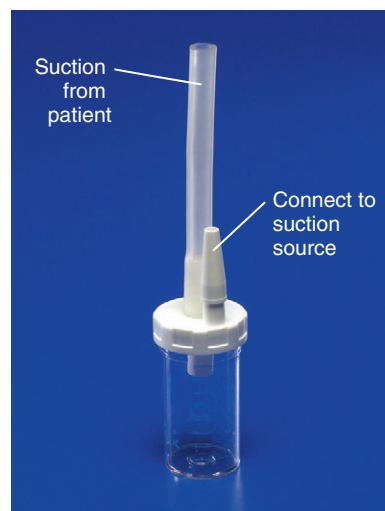


FIG. 33-1 A Luken's tube for collection of sterile sputum/mucus specimens.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Pulse oximetry is used to assess for hypoxemia. Invasive tests such as transtracheal aspiration, bronchoscopy, or direct needle aspiration of the lung may be needed. Thoracentesis is most often used in patients who have an accompanying pleural effusion.

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for the patient with pneumonia are:

1. Hypoxemia related to decreased diffusion at the alveolar-capillary membrane
2. Potential for airway obstruction related to excessive tracheobronchial secretions, fatigue, chest discomfort, muscle weakness
3. Potential for sepsis related to the presence of microorganisms in a very vascular area

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Hypoxemia

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with pneumonia is expected to have adequate oxygenation. Indicators of adequate oxygenation are:

- Maintenance of Sao_2 of at least 95% or in the patient's normal range
- Absence of cyanosis
- Maintenance of cognitive orientation

Interventions. Interventions to improve oxygenation are similar to those for the patient with chronic airflow limitation (CAL) (see Chapter 32). Nursing priorities include delivery of oxygen therapy and assisting the patient with bronchial hygiene.

Oxygen therapy is usually delivered by nasal cannula or mask unless the hypoxemia does not improve with these devices. The patient who is confused may not tolerate a face-mask. Check the skin under the device and under the elastic band, especially around the ears, for areas of redness or skin breakdown. Actions for oxygen therapy are listed in Chart 30-1 in Chapter 30.

Incentive spirometry is a type of bronchial hygiene used in pneumonia. The objective is to improve inspiratory muscle action and to prevent or reverse atelectasis (alveolar collapse). Instruct the patient to exhale fully, then place the mouthpiece in his or her mouth, and then take a long, slow, deep breath for 3 to 5 seconds. Evaluate technique, and record the volume of air inspired. Teach the patient to perform 5 to 10 breaths per session every hour while awake.

Preventing Airway Obstruction

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with pneumonia is expected to maintain a patent airway. Indicators are:

- Effective cough
- Absence of pallor or cyanosis
- Absence of crackles and wheezes on auscultation
- Pulse oximetry at or above 95%

Interventions. Interventions to avoid airway obstruction in pneumonia are similar to those for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or asthma. Because of fatigue, muscle weakness, chest discomfort, and excessive secretions, the patient often has difficulty clearing secretions. Help him or her cough and deep breathe at least every 2 hours. The alert patient may use an incentive spirometer to facilitate deep breathing and stimulate coughing. Encourage the alert

patient to drink at least 2 liters of fluid daily to prevent dehydration unless another health problem requires fluid restriction. Adequate hydration may help thin secretions and make them easier to remove. Monitor intake and output, oral mucous membranes, and skin turgor to assess for and ensure adequate hydration, especially when fever and tachypnea are present.

Bronchodilators, especially beta₂ agonists (see Chart 32-7 in Chapter 32), are prescribed when bronchospasm is present. They are initially given by nebulizer and then by metered-dose inhaler. Inhaled or IV steroids are used with acute pneumonia when airway swelling is present.

Preventing Sepsis

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with pneumonia is expected to be free of the invading organism and to return to a pre-pneumonia health status. Indicators are:

- Absence of fever
- Absence of pathogens in blood and sputum cultures
- WBC count and differential within normal limits

Interventions. The key to effective treatment of pneumonia is eradication of the organism causing the infection. When sepsis accompanies pneumonia, the risk for death is high (Todd, 2010). Anti-infectives are given for all types of pneumonias except those caused by viruses. Which anti-infective therapy is prescribed is based on how the pneumonia was acquired (i.e., CAP or HAP). The exact drug or drugs and their routes of delivery are determined by the severity of the infection, the organism suspected or identified, and whether the patient has other conditions or factors that increase the risk for complications. Drug therapy choices must reflect the degree of drug resistance in the specific geographic area and in that hospital setting.

If IV drugs are used, the patient may be able to be switched to oral therapy in 2 or 3 days, depending on the response (e.g., stable clinical condition, afebrile). The course of anti-infective therapy varies with the drug used and the organism(s) involved. Usually anti-infectives are used for 5 to 7 days for a



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is an 80-year-old female nursing home resident who had a stroke 6 months ago. She has been cognitively intact and has left-sided weakness and difficulty swallowing. Several days ago, she was found choking while eating her lunch. Other long-term health problems include diabetes and hypertension. Today, the nursing assistant reported that the patient did not recognize her this morning and had a temperature of 97.2° F. The gerontologic nurse practitioner who examined the patient diagnosed her with pneumonia in the right middle and lower lobes.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for pneumonia?
2. Her record shows that she received the pneumonia vaccination 8 years ago and the seasonal influenza vaccination on admission to the facility. Explain the possibilities for why these immunizations were not effective in preventing the current pneumonia.
3. The nurse practitioner prescribed ceftriaxone (Rocephin) 2 g IV piggyback stat, then 1 g every 12 hours; oxygen at 6 L by nasal cannula; vital signs hourly; and incentive spirometry every 2 hours. Which intervention should be performed first? Provide a rationale for your choice.
4. What could have precipitated this problem and what steps could be taken to prevent it from happening again?

patient with uncomplicated CAP and up to 21 days for an immunocompromised patient or one with HAP.

Drug resistance is becoming increasingly common, especially for infections with *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. This problem is known as *drug-resistant Streptococcus pneumoniae*, or *DRSP*. DRSP is most common among people older than 65 years and among those who became infected as a result of exposure to young children from a day-care environment.

For pneumonia resulting from aspiration of food or stomach contents, interventions focus on preventing lung damage and treating the infection. Aspiration of acidic stomach contents can cause widespread inflammation, leading to acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and permanent lung damage (Eisenstadt, 2010). In these conditions, steroids and NSAIDs are used with antibiotics to reduce the inflammatory response.

Community-Based Care

The patient needs to continue the anti-infective drugs as prescribed. An important nursing role is to reinforce, clarify, and provide information to the patient and family as indicated.

Home Care Management

No special changes are needed in the home. If the home has a second story, the patient may prefer to stay on one floor for a few weeks, because stair climbing increases fatigue and dyspnea. Toileting needs may be met by using a bedside commode if a bathroom is not located on the level the patient is using. Home care needs depend on the patient's level of fatigue, dyspnea, and family and social support.

The long recovery phase, especially in the older adult, can be frustrating. Fatigue, weakness, and a residual cough can last for weeks. Some patients fear they will never return to a "normal" level of functioning. Prepare them for the disease course, and offer reassurance that complete recovery will occur. After discharge, a home nursing assessment may be helpful (Chart 33-6).

Teaching for Self-Management

Review all drugs with the patient and family, and emphasize completing anti-infective therapy. Teach the patient to notify the health care provider if chills, fever, persistent cough, dyspnea, wheezing, hemoptysis, increased sputum production, chest discomfort, or increasing fatigue recurs or if

symptoms fail to resolve. Instruct him or her to get plenty of rest and increase activity gradually.

An important aspect of education for the patient and family is the avoidance of upper respiratory tract infections and viruses. Teach him or her to avoid crowds (especially in the fall and winter when viruses are prevalent), people who have a cold or flu, and exposure to irritants such as smoke. Stress the importance of following his or her health care provider's recommendations for vaccination against influenza and pneumonia. A balanced diet and adequate fluid intake are essential.

Health Care Resources

Inform patients who smoke that smoking is a risk factor for pneumonia. Provide them with information on local smoking-cessation classes. The health care provider may prescribe nicotine patches. Urge patients to enroll in a smoking-cessation program for increased support. Provide information booklets on pneumonia, and urge the patient who has not already been vaccinated against influenza or pneumonia to take this preventive measure after the pneumonia has resolved.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Warn the patient using nicotine patches or supplements of the danger of myocardial infarction if smoking is continued while using other forms of nicotine.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with pneumonia based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that he or she:

- Attains or maintains adequate gas exchange
- Maintains patent airways
- Is free of the invading organism
- Returns to his or her pre-pneumonia health status

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Evidence-Based Practice

The home care patient recovering from pneumococcal pneumonia asks the visiting nurse about whether he should receive the pneumonia vaccination. His daughter speaks up and says, "No, Dad. You are now immune to pneumonia because you actually had the disease."

1. Is the daughter correct in her statement? Why or why not?
2. If the patient is recommended to receive the pneumonia vaccine, when should this occur? Provide a rationale for your choice.

CHART 33-6 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient Recovering from Pneumonia

Ask whether the patient has had any of these:

- New-onset confusion
- Chills
- Fever
- Persistent cough
- Dyspnea
- Wheezing
- Hemoptysis
- Increased sputum production
- Chest discomfort
- Increasing fatigue
- Any other symptoms that have failed to resolve

Assess the patient for:

- Fever
- Diaphoresis
- Cyanosis, especially around the mouth or conjunctiva
- Dyspnea, tachypnea, or tachycardia
- Adventitious or abnormal breath sounds
- Weakness

SEVERE ACUTE RESPIRATORY SYNDROME (SARS)

Pathophysiology

Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) is a newer respiratory infection first identified in China early in November 2002. The cause of SARS is a new virus from a family of virus types known as *coronaviruses*. These viruses have ribonucleic

acid (RNA) as their genetic material and have many projections that look like a halo or “corona.” This family of viruses causes many forms of the common cold. The new virus, known as *SARS Co-V*, is a mutated form of the coronavirus and is more virulent than other coronaviruses. It infects cells of the respiratory tract, triggering inflammatory responses, and stays in the respiratory passageways rather than spreading into the blood.

The virus is easily spread by airborne droplets from infected people through sneezing, coughing, and talking. People at greatest risk for SARS are those in close direct contact with an infected person. The portals of entry are the mucous membranes of the eyes, nose, and mouth.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The manifestations of SARS are the same as those of any respiratory infection. Usually, the patient has a fever higher than 100.4° F (38.0° C), a headache, and general body aches. Mild cold symptoms of a runny nose, sore throat, and watery eyes may also be present. Within 2 to 7 days, the patient develops a dry cough and has difficulty breathing. Hypoxia, with cyanosis, low oxygen saturation, and a feeling of breathlessness, indicates more severe illness. Chest x-rays show a pattern similar to pneumonia. Diagnosis is made by the manifestations and the use of a rapid SARS test that detects SARS-CoV RNA in the blood within 2 days after symptoms begin.

INTERVENTIONS

No known effective treatment for this infection exists at this time. Standard antibiotic agents and antiviral drugs cannot kill the virus or prevent its replication. Interventions are supportive to allow the patient’s own immune system to fight the infection. Oxygen is given when hypoxia or breathlessness is present. Therapies to dilate the bronchioles and move respiratory secretions are used. If oxygenation is not improved with oxygen therapy alone, intubation and mechanical ventilation may be needed. Antibiotics are used for bacterial pneumonia that may occur with SARS.

Prevention of Infection Spread

Isolating the person with SARS and adhering to strict Transmission Precautions are effective in containing the infection and preventing an epidemic. These techniques, promoted by the World Health Organization, were successful in preventing

a SARS pandemic in 2002. No additional cases of SARS have been reported since 2004.

A major nursing responsibility is the prevention of infection spread. Use strict airborne isolation techniques. Handwashing is a key prevention intervention. Use Airborne Precautions and Contact Precautions with patients who are suspected to have SARS. Use gowns and eye protection when coming into direct contact with the patient. When the patient is out of the isolation environment, he or she must wear a mask. If for some reason he or she cannot wear a mask, all other people in the environment should wear a mask.

PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS

Pathophysiology

Tuberculosis (TB) is a highly communicable disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. It is the most common bacterial infection worldwide (World Health Organization [WHO], 2010). The organism is transmitted via **aerosolization** (i.e., an airborne route) (Fig. 33-2). When a person with active TB coughs, laughs, sneezes, whistles, or sings, droplets become airborne and may be inhaled by others. Far more people are infected with the bacillus than actually develop active TB (Knechel, 2009).

The bacillus multiplies freely when it reaches a susceptible site (bronchi or alveoli). An exudative response occurs, causing pneumonitis. With the development of acquired immunity, further growth of bacilli is controlled in most initial lesions. These lesions usually resolve and leave little or no residual bacilli. Only a small percentage of people initially infected with the bacillus ever develop active TB.

Cell-mediated immunity develops 2 to 10 weeks after infection and is manifested by a positive reaction to a tuberculin test. The primary infection may be so small that it does not appear on a chest x-ray. The process of infection occurs in this order:

1. The granulomatous inflammation created by the tubercle bacillus in the lung becomes surrounded by collagen, fibroblasts, and lymphocytes.
2. **Caseation necrosis**, which is necrotic tissue being turned into a granular mass, occurs in the center of the lesion. If this area shows on x-ray, it is called **Ghon’s tubercle**, or the primary lesion.

Areas of caseation then undergo resorption, degeneration, and fibrosis. These necrotic areas may calcify (**calcification**) or liquefy (**liquefaction**). If liquefaction occurs, the liquid material then empties into a bronchus and the evacuated area becomes a cavity (**cavitation**). Bacilli continue to grow in the necrotic cavity wall and spread via lymph channels into new areas of the lung.

A lesion also may progress by direct extension if bacilli multiply rapidly during inflammation. The lesions may extend through the pleura, resulting in pleural or pericardial effusion. **Miliary** or **hematogenous TB** is the spread of TB throughout the body when a large number of organisms enter the blood. Many tiny nodules scattered throughout the lung are seen on chest x-ray. The brain, liver, kidney, or bone marrow can become infected as a result of this spread.

Initial infection is seen more often in the middle or lower lobes of the lung. The local lymph nodes are infected and enlarged. An asymptomatic period usually follows the

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When performing procedures for patients with SARS that normally induce coughing or promote aerosolization of particles (e.g., suctioning, using a positive-pressure facemask, obtaining a sputum culture, or giving aerosolized treatments), protect yourself and other health care workers. Wear a disposable particulate mask respirator (e.g., N95, N99, or N100) and protective eyewear during such procedures. Keep the door to the patient’s room closed. Avoid touching your face with contaminated gloves. Wash your hands after you remove the gown, gloves, eyewear, and face shield and whenever you leave the patient’s room. Wear gloves when disinfecting contaminated surfaces or equipment.

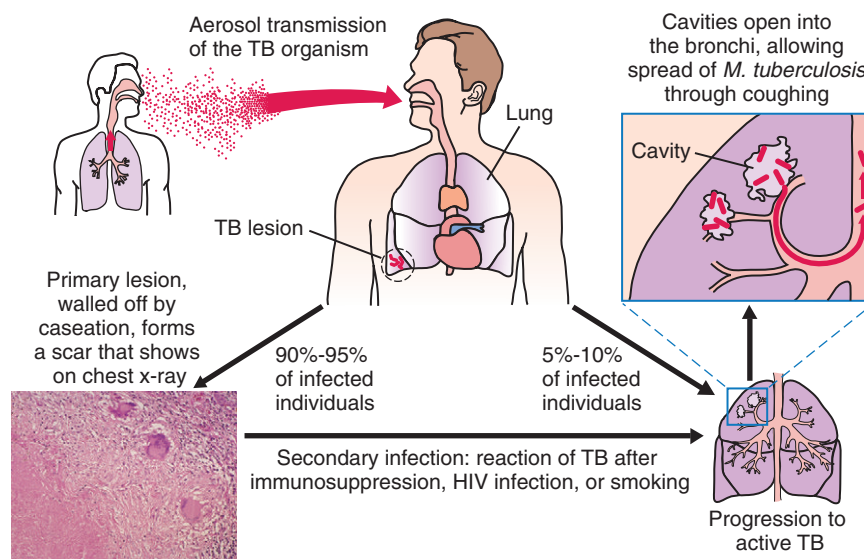


FIG. 33-2 Primary TB infection with progression to secondary infection and active disease. *HIV*, Human immune deficiency virus; *M. tuberculosis*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; TB, tuberculosis.

primary infection and can last for years or decades before clinical symptoms develop. *An infected person is not infectious to others until manifestations of disease occur.*

Secondary TB is a reactivation of the disease in a previously infected person. It is more likely when defenses are lowered, such as with older adults and people with HIV disease. The upper lobes are the most common site of reactivation and are referred to as *Simon's foci*.

Etiology

M. tuberculosis is a nonmoving, slow-growing, acid-fast rod transmitted via the airborne route. People who are usually infected are those having repeated close contact with an infectious person who has not yet been diagnosed with TB. The risk for transmission is reduced after the infectious person has received proper drug therapy for 2 to 3 weeks, clinical improvement occurs, and acid-fast bacilli (AFB) in the sputum are reduced.

Incidence/Prevalence

Worldwide, 5.8 million people are diagnosed annually and an additional 8 million people are estimated to have undiagnosed disease (WHO, 2010). The incidence of TB has been steadily decreasing in the United States, although increases in incidence are seen in many other countries (ALA, 2010b). In the United States, the people who are at greatest risk for development of TB are:

- Those in constant, frequent contact with an untreated person
- Those who have decreased immune function or HIV
- People who live in crowded areas such as long-term care facilities, prisons, and mental health facilities
- Older homeless people
- Abusers of injection drugs or alcohol
- Lower socioeconomic groups
- Foreign immigrants (especially from Mexico, the Philippines, and Vietnam)

The incidence of TB among recent immigrants is nearly 10 times that of native-born Americans (ALA, 2010b).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Early detection of TB depends on subjective findings rather than on observable symptoms. TB has a slow onset, and patients are not aware of symptoms until the disease is advanced. *TB should be considered for any patient with a persistent cough or other symptoms compatible with TB, such as weight loss, anorexia, night sweats, hemoptysis, shortness of breath, fever, or chills.*

History

Assess the patient's past exposure to TB. Ask about his or her country of origin and travel to foreign countries where incidence of TB is high. It is important to ask about the results of any previous tests for TB. Also ask whether the patient has had bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG) vaccine. The BCG vaccine contains attenuated tubercle bacilli and is used in many countries to produce increased resistance to TB. *Anyone who has received BCG vaccine within the previous 10 years will have a positive skin test that can complicate interpretation.* Usually the size of the skin response decreases each year after BCG vaccination. These patients should be evaluated for TB with a chest x-ray or the QuantiFERON-TB Gold test.

The effectiveness of BCG vaccine in preventing TB is controversial, and it is not used widely for this purpose in the United States or Canada.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with TB has progressive fatigue, lethargy, nausea, anorexia, weight loss, irregular menses, and a low-grade fever. Manifestations may have been present for weeks or

months. Night sweats may occur with the fever. The patient has a cough and mucopurulent sputum, which may be streaked with blood. Chest tightness and a dull, aching chest pain occur with the cough. Ask about, assess for, and document the presence of any of these manifestations to help with diagnosis, to establish a baseline, and to plan nursing interventions.

Physical examination of the chest does not provide conclusive evidence of TB. Dullness with percussion may be heard over the involved lung fields, as may bronchial breath sounds, crackles, and increased transmission of spoken or whispered sounds. Partial obstruction of a bronchus from endobronchial disease or compression by lymph nodes may produce localized wheezing.

Diagnostic Assessment

A new rapid test for tuberculosis has been developed and approved by the [World Health Organization \(2010\)](#). This test is the fully automated nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) for tuberculosis. Results are available in less than 2 hours. Widespread use of this test is endorsed and should soon replace other diagnostic methods. Currently, diagnosis of TB is suggested by the manifestations and a positive smear for acid-fast bacillus. Sputum is obtained, smeared on a slide, and stained with a red dye. After the slide has dried, it is treated with an acid alcohol to remove the stain. TB does not de-stain with this procedure and remains red. *The acid-fast bacillus test is not specific for TB (other organisms are also acid-fast), but it is used as a quick method to determine whether TB precautions should be started until more definitive testing can be completed with either the purified protein derivative two-step procedure or the QuantiFERON-TB Gold.*

Blood analysis by an enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay using the QuantiFERON-TB Gold (QFT-G) is a relatively rapid test for the presence of *M. tuberculosis*. Results are ready in 24 hours and are most useful in the acute care setting to determine whether a symptomatic patient has TB.

Sputum culture confirms the diagnosis. Enhanced TB cultures and automated mycobacterial cultures require 1 to 4 weeks to determine a positive or negative result. After drugs are started, sputum samples are obtained again to determine therapy effectiveness. Cultures are usually negative after 3 months of treatment.

The tuberculin test (Mantoux test) is the most commonly used reliable test of TB infection. A small amount (0.1 mL) of purified protein derivative (PPD) is placed intradermally in the forearm. An area of induration (localized swelling with hardness of soft tissue), not just redness, measuring 10 mm or greater in diameter 48 to 72 hours after injection indicates exposure to and possible infection with TB (Fig. 33-3). If possible, the site is re-evaluated after 72 hours because the incidence of false-negative readings is greater at 48 hours. *A positive reaction does not mean that active disease is present but indicates exposure to TB or the presence of inactive (dormant) disease.* A reaction of 5 mm or greater is considered positive in people with HIV infection. *A reduced skin reaction or a negative skin test does not rule out TB disease or infection of the very old or anyone who is severely immunocompromised.* Failure to have a skin response because of reduced immune function when infection is present is called **anergy**.

Yearly screening is needed for anyone who comes into contact with people infected with TB. Screening is very

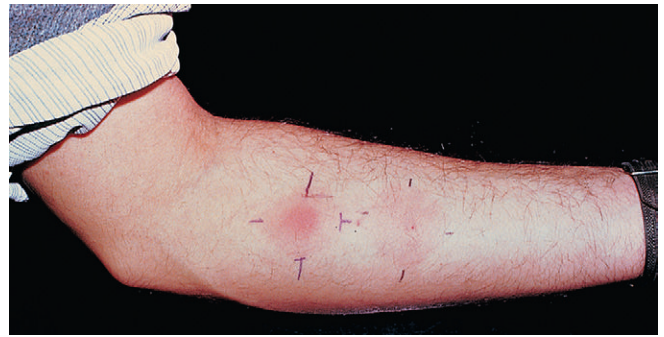


FIG. 33-3 Positive tuberculin skin test with induration.

important for foreign-born people and migrant workers. Participation in screening programs is enhanced when programs are delivered in a culturally sensitive and nonthreatening manner. Urge anyone who is considered high risk to have an annual TB screening test.

Once a person's skin test is positive for TB, a chest x-ray is used to detect active TB or old, healed lesions. Caseation and inflammation may be seen on the x-ray if the disease is active. Instruct anyone who has manifestations of TB to seek medical attention. The chest x-rays of HIV-infected patients may be normal or may show infiltrates in any lung zone and lymph node enlargement.

INTERVENTIONS

Combination drug therapy is the most effective method of treating TB and preventing transmission. Active TB is treated with a combination of drugs to which the organism is sensitive. Therapy continues until the disease is under control. The use of multiple-drug regimens destroys organisms as quickly as possible and reduces the emergence of drug-resistant organisms (Gribble & Williams, 2010). First-line therapy uses isoniazid (INH) and rifampin throughout the therapy; pyrazinamide is added for the first 2 months (Chart 33-7). This protocol shortens the therapy from 6 to 12 months to 6 months. Ethambutol is the recommended fourth drug in first-line therapy. These drugs are now available in two or three drug combinations. Variations of the first-line drugs along with other drug types are used when the patient does not tolerate the standard first-line therapy. Nursing interventions focus on patient teaching for drug therapy adherence and infection control.

Strict adherence to the prescribed drug regimen is crucial for suppressing the disease. Thus your major role is teaching the patient about drug therapy and stressing the importance of taking each drug regularly, exactly as prescribed, for as long as it is prescribed. Provide accurate information in multiple formats, such as pamphlets, videos, and drug-schedule worksheets. An anxious patient may not absorb information well. You may need to repeat the information and obtain the help

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The first-line drugs used as therapy for tuberculosis all can damage the liver. Warn the patient to not drink any alcoholic beverages for the entire duration of TB therapy. (Duration of therapy is usually 6 months but can be as long as 2 years for MDR TB.)

CHART 33-7 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

First-Line Treatment for Tuberculosis

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Isoniazid (INH) 200-300 mg orally daily or 600-900 mg orally twice each week	Kills actively growing mycobacteria outside the cell and inhibits the growth of dormant bacteria inside macrophages and caseating granulomas.	Teach the patient to take the drug on an empty stomach (1 hour before or 2 hours after meals) and to avoid antacids. Teach the patient to take a daily multiple vitamin that contains the B-complex vitamins while on this drug. Remind the patient to avoid drinking alcoholic beverages while on this drug. Teach the patient to report darkening of the urine, a yellow appearance to the skin or whites of the eyes, and an increased tendency to bruise or bleed.	Food and antacids slow or prevent absorption of the drug from the GI tract. Drug can deplete the body of this vitamin. The drug can cause liver damage. This effect is potentiated by alcohol. These manifestations may indicate liver toxicity or failure.
Rifampin (RIF) 500-600 mg orally daily or twice each week	Kills slower-growing organisms, even those that reside in macrophages and caseating granulomas.	Teach the patient to expect the drug to stain the skin and urine and expect all other secretions to have a reddish orange tinge; also, soft contact lenses will become permanently stained. Teach women using oral contraceptives to use an additional method of contraception while taking this drug and for 1 month after stopping the drug. Remind the patient to avoid drinking alcoholic beverages while on this drug. Teach the patient to report darkening of the urine, a yellow appearance to the skin or whites of the eyes, and an increased tendency to bruise or bleed. Ask the patient about all other drugs in use.	This is an expected and harmless side effect of the drug and will clear some time after the patient stops taking the drug. This drug reduces the effectiveness of oral contraceptives, increasing the risk for an unplanned pregnancy. The drug can cause liver damage. This effect is potentiated by alcohol. These manifestations may indicate liver toxicity or failure.
Pyrazinamide (PZA) 1000-2000 mg orally daily or 3000-6000 mg orally twice each week	Is not inactivated by the acidic environment of macrophages and can effectively kill organisms residing within them.	Ask whether the patient has ever had gout. Teach the patient to drink at least 8 ounces of water when taking this tablet and to increase fluid intake. Teach the patient to wear protective clothing, a hat, and sunscreen when going outdoors in the sunlight. Remind the patient to avoid drinking alcoholic beverages while on this drug. Teach the patient to report darkening of the urine, a yellow appearance to the skin or whites of the eyes, and an increased tendency to bruise or bleed.	This drug interacts with many drugs. This drug increases uric acid formation and will make gout worse. More fluids help prevent uric acid from precipitating and causing gout or kidney problems. The drug causes photosensitivity and greatly increases the risk for sunburn. The drug can cause liver damage. This effect is potentiated by alcohol. These manifestations may indicate liver toxicity or failure.
Ethambutol (EMB) 750-1500 mg orally daily or 2500-5000 mg orally twice each week	Inhibits bacterial RNA synthesis, thus suppressing bacterial growth. It is slow-acting and is bacteriostatic rather than bactericidal. Thus it must be used in combination with other anti-TB drugs.	Remind the patient to avoid drinking alcoholic beverages while on this drug. Teach the patient to report any changes in vision, such as reduced color vision, blurred vision, or reduced visual fields, immediately to his or her health care provider. Ask whether the patient has ever had gout. Teach the patient to drink at least 8 ounces of water when taking this tablet and to increase fluid intake.	The drug induces severe nausea and vomiting when alcohol is ingested. The drug can cause optic neuritis, especially at high doses, and can lead to blindness. When the problem is discovered early, the eye problems are usually reversed when the drug is stopped. This drug increases uric acid formation and will make gout worse. More fluids help prevent uric acid from precipitating and causing gout or kidney problems.

of family members. To determine whether the patient understands how to take the drugs, ask him or her to describe the treatment regimen, side effects, and when to call the health care agency and physician.

The TB drugs may cause the patient to have nausea. Teach him or her to prevent nausea by taking the daily dose at bedtime. Antiemetics may also prevent this problem. Instruct him or her to eat a well-balanced diet that includes foods that are rich in iron, protein, and vitamins C and B. Collaborate with the dietitian for specialized needs.

The patient with TB has reduced physical stamina and also has concerns about the disease prognosis. Offer a positive outlook for the patient who adheres to the drug regimen. Tell him or her that fatigue will diminish as the treatment progresses. *With current resistant strains of TB, however, emphasize that not taking the drugs as prescribed could lead to an infection that is drug resistant.*

Multidrug-resistant TB (MDR TB) strains are emerging as are strains that are considered extensively drug-resistant (XDR TB), especially among patients who have HIV disease (Ferguson & Rhoads, 2009; Trossman, 2008). MDR TB is an infection that resists INH and rifampin. XDR TB is resistant not only to the first-line anti-tuberculosis drugs but also to the second-line antibiotics, including the fluoroquinolones and at least one of the aminoglycosides. Drug therapy for MDR TB and XDR TB is more limited than standard first-line therapy and requires higher doses for longer periods.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Warn patients with extensively drug-resistant TB that absolute adherence to therapy is critical for survival and cure of the disease.

An area to stress when teaching the patient and family with either MDR TB or XDR TB is that the patient is not resistant to the drugs—the organism is. So, a person who acquires the infection and develops TB from a person who is infected with a resistant strain of bacillus will also have drug-resistant disease (Nelson, 2010). Thus teaching infection control strategies is a priority and should be constantly reinforced.

Other care issues for the patient with TB include teaching about infection prevention and what to expect about disease monitoring and participating in activities. TB is often treated outside the acute care setting, with the patient convalescing in the home setting. Airborne Precautions are not necessary in this setting because family members have already been exposed; however, all members of the household need to undergo TB testing. Teach the patient to cover the mouth and nose with a tissue when coughing or sneezing, to place used tissues in plastic bags, and to wear a mask when in contact with crowds until the drugs suppress infection.

Tell the patient that sputum specimens are needed usually every 2 to 4 weeks once drug therapy is initiated. When the results of three consecutive sputum cultures are negative, the patient is no longer infectious and may return to former employment. Remind him or her to avoid exposure to any inhalation irritants because these can cause further lung damage.

The hospitalized patient with active TB is placed on Airborne Precautions (see Chapter 25) in a well-ventilated room that has at least six exchanges of fresh air per minute. All



FIG. 33-4 A high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) respirator used in the care of patients with active or “rule-out” tuberculosis.

health care workers must wear an N95 or high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) respirator when caring for the patient (Fig. 33-4). When hand and clothing contamination is a risk, use Standard Precautions with appropriate contact protection (i.e., gowns and gloves). Perform handwashing before and after patient care. Precautions are discontinued when the patient is no longer infectious.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client with active tuberculosis who has been taking isoniazid (INH, Nydrazid) and rifampin (RIF, Rifadin) reports having urine that is an orange color. What is the nurse's best action?

- A. Obtain a specimen for culture and test the urine for occult blood.
- B. Reassure the client that this is a normal drug side effect.
- C. Hold the dose and contact the health care provider.
- D. Document the report as the only action.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

Most patients with TB are managed outside the hospital; however, patients may be diagnosed with TB while in the hospital for another problem. Discharge may be delayed if the living situation is high risk or if nonadherence is likely. Collaborate with the case manager or social service worker in the hospital or the community health nursing agency to ensure that the patient is discharged to the appropriate environment with continued supervision.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient to follow the drug regimen exactly as prescribed and always to have a supply on hand. Teach about side effects and ways of reducing them to ensure adherence. Remind him or her that the disease is usually no longer contagious after drugs have been taken for 2 to 3 consecutive weeks and clinical improvement is seen; however, *he or she must continue with the prescribed drugs for 6 months or longer*

as prescribed. **Directly observed therapy (DOT)**, in which a health care professional watches the patient swallow the drugs, may be indicated in some situations. This practice leads to more treatment successes, fewer relapses, and less drug resistance. A variation of this practice, DOTS (directly observed therapy–short course), is attributed to having saved many lives worldwide (The War on Tuberculosis, 2010; WHO, 2010).

The patient who has weight loss and severe lethargy should gradually resume usual activities as these problems decrease during treatment. Proper nutrition is needed to prevent infection recurrence.

To help with concerns about the contagious aspect of the infection, provide the patient with information about TB. A key to preventing transmission is identifying those in close contact with the infected person so that they can be tested and treated if needed. Identified contacts are assessed with a TB test and possibly a chest x-ray to determine infection status. Multidrug therapy may be indicated as a preventive strategy for heavily exposed individuals or for those who have other health problems that reduce the immune response.

Health Care Resources

Teach the patient to receive follow-up care by a health care provider for at least 1 year during active treatment. The American Lung Association (ALA) can provide free information to the patient about the disease and its treatment. In addition, Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) and other health care resources for patients with alcoholism are available if needed. Assist the patient who uses illicit drugs to locate a drug treatment program. Urge smokers to quit, and assist them in finding an appropriate smoking-cessation program.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is a 48-year-old man who is being released from prison after 15 years of incarceration. On his final physical, he is found to be 20 pounds underweight for his height and has a productive cough. He smokes three packs of cigarettes daily and is exposed to a great deal of secondhand smoke in the prison environment. On release, he is going to live with his 70-year-old aunt. A tuberculin skin test injected 3 days ago shows an 8-mm area of induration around the injection site. His records indicate that his last skin test, performed 18 months ago, did not result in any reaction.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for TB?
2. Does the PPD response indicate a negative test, old TB, or currently active TB?
3. What other tests should be performed with this patient?
4. Should he still be released to live with his aunt? Why or why not?
5. If he does have active TB, would directly observed therapy be appropriate for this patient? Why or why not?
6. If he does have active TB, what are the teaching priorities for this patient and his aunt?

LUNG ABSCESS

Pathophysiology

A lung abscess is a localized area of destruction caused by liquefaction necrosis, which is usually related to pyogenic bacteria. Patients with an abscess often have a history of pneumonia, aspiration of stomach contents, or obstruction

as a result of a tumor or foreign body. Other causes of aspiration leading to lung abscesses include any condition that alters the ability to swallow, such as alcoholic blackouts, seizure disorders, neurologic deficits, and swallowing disorders. Bronchial obstruction may cause a necrotizing process in the lung that eventually becomes an abscess.

Multiple abscesses and cavities form in patients with tuberculosis (TB) or fungal infections of the lung. Immunosuppressed patients, such as those receiving cancer chemotherapy or those with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), are at high risk for fungal infections.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Ask the patient about any recent history of influenza, pneumonia, febrile illness, cough, and foul-smelling sputum production. Ask about the sputum color and odor and about any **pleuritic chest pain** (a stabbing pain upon taking a deep breath). Often the patient is febrile, pale, fatigued, and cachectic. Auscultation may reveal decreased breath sounds and dullness on percussion in the involved area. Bronchial breath sounds and crackles may be heard over the site of the lesion. A chest x-ray and sputum samples are needed for diagnosis.

Problems and interventions for the patient with pneumonia also apply to the patient with a lung abscess. Management involves antibiotics and drainage of the abscess. Provide frequent mouth care and observe for oral overgrowth of *Candida albicans*, especially in older adults.

INHALATION ANTHRAX

Pathophysiology

Inhalation anthrax (respiratory anthrax) is a bacterial infection caused by the gram-positive organism *Bacillus anthracis*, which lives as a spore in contaminated soil. Infection with this organism occurs through the skin, the intestinal tract, or the lungs. *Inhalation anthrax is a rare natural occurrence in the United States and is nearly 100% fatal without treatment. It is not spread by person-to-person contact.*



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because inhalation anthrax is so rare, any occurrence is considered an intentional act of bioterrorism. Report the presence of manifestations consistent with inhalation anthrax to hospital authorities immediately.

This organism first forms a **spore**, an encapsulated organism that is inactive. When many spores are inhaled into the deep parts of the lungs, macrophages engulf them. Once inside the macrophage, the organism leaves its capsule and replicates. The active bacteria produce several toxins that are released into the infected tissues and the blood. These toxins make the infection worse by creating massive edema in infected tissues, suppressing neutrophil action, causing hemorrhage, and destroying lung cells and WBCs. The infected macrophages carry the organisms to the lymph nodes. From these nodes, the organisms can enter the blood and spread rapidly, causing sepsis and meningitis.

CHART 33-8 KEY FEATURES

Inhalation Anthrax**Prodromal Stage (early)**

- Fever
- Fatigue
- Mild chest pain
- Dry cough
- No manifestations of upper respiratory infection
- Mediastinal “widening” on chest x-ray

Fulminant Stage (late)

- Sudden onset of breathlessness
- Dyspnea
- Diaphoresis
- Stridor on inhalation and exhalation
- Hypoxia
- High fever
- Mediastinitis
- Pleural effusion
- Hypotension
- Septic shock

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Inhalation anthrax is a two-stage illness—prodromal and fulminant. Manifestations may not begin until as long as 8 weeks after exposure to the organism (Chart 33-8).

The prodromal stage is early and difficult to distinguish from influenza or pneumonia. Manifestations include fever, fatigue, mild chest pain, and a dry, harsh cough. A special feature of inhalation anthrax is that it is not accompanied by upper respiratory manifestations of sore throat or rhinitis. Usually the patient starts to feel better and symptoms improve in 2 to 4 days.

Although diagnosis is difficult at this stage, if the patient begins appropriate antibiotic therapy, the likelihood of survival is high. Diagnostic tests may show a slightly elevated WBC count with increasing numbers of band neutrophils. Other indicators that may be detectable at this time are positive Gram stain of the serum and a mediastinal “widening” on chest x-ray as the local lymph nodes greatly enlarge. After several days, blood cultures may be positive for the organism and the genetic material of the bacteria may be detected through the amplification process of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Positive results for these more definitive diagnostic tests may not be evident, however, until the disease has progressed to the fulminant stage.

The fulminant stage begins after the patient feels a little better. Usually there is a sudden onset of breathlessness. This sensation rapidly progresses to severe respiratory distress, dyspnea, diaphoresis, stridor, and cyanosis. The patient has a high fever. Mediastinitis and pleural effusions develop. As the disease spreads through the blood, causing septic shock and meningitis, death often occurs within 24 to 36 hours even if antibiotics are started in this stage.

The naturally occurring organism has a cell wall and is sensitive to many antibiotics, including the penicillins and the cephalosporins, which work specifically against bacteria that have a cell wall; however, organisms grown for bioterrorism may have been altered to be resistant to these antibiotics. Therefore the antibiotics used for suspected or diagnosed inhalation anthrax include combination therapy with ciprofloxacin, doxycycline, and amoxicillin (Chart 33-9). The same drugs are used individually in oral form for prophylaxis when people have been exposed to inhalation anthrax but have not developed symptoms.

CHART 33-9 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Prophylaxis and Treatment of Inhalation Anthrax**PROPHYLAXIS**

Ciprofloxacin (Cipro)
500 mg orally twice daily

Or

Doxycycline (Vibramycin)
100 mg orally twice daily

Or (if organism is proven susceptible to penicillin)

Amoxicillin (Amoxil, Trimox) 500 mg orally every 8 hr

Prophylaxis must continue for 60 days (or longer if exposure was heavy).

TREATMENT

Ciprofloxacin (Cipro IV) 400 mg IV every 12 hr

Or

Doxycycline (Doxy 100) 100 mg IV every 12 hr

Plus one or two of the following secondary agents (parenteral form; dosage based on patient's weight and age):

Rifampin (RIF)
Clindamycin (Cleocin)
Vancomycin (Vancocin, Vancoled)

Treatment with IV drugs continues for at least 7 days. When the response is good and the patient improves, IV drugs are changed to oral agents and are continued for at least 60 days.

Teach patients with any type of lower respiratory infection to be especially vigilant for changes after they think they are getting well. They need to seek medical attention immediately upon having a setback that starts with breathlessness.

PULMONARY EMPYEMA**Pathophysiology**

Pulmonary empyema is a collection of pus in the pleural space. The most common cause of empyema is pulmonary infection, lung abscess, or infected pleural effusion. Pneumonia or lung abscess can spread across the pleura. Lymph node obstruction can cause a **retrograde** (backward) flood of infected lymph into the pleural space. A liver abscess or abdominal abscess can spread through the lymphatic system into the lungs. Chest surgery or trauma can introduce bacteria directly into the pleural space, leading to empyema. Blood from trauma may collect in the pleural space, promoting infection.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Important history findings include recent febrile illness (including pneumonia), chest pain, dyspnea, cough, and trauma. Observe and document the character of the sputum. Chest wall motion may be reduced on physical examination. If a pleural effusion is present, fremitus may be decreased or absent on palpation, percussion may sound flat, and breath sounds are decreased on auscultation. With compression of lung tissue near the effusion, abnormal breath sounds include bronchial breath sounds, egophony, and whispered pectoriloquy.

Ask about fever, chills, night sweats, and weight loss. The patient may be hypotensive because of a mediastinal deviation placing pressure on the heart. Palpate the point of maximal impulse (PMI) because it may be displaced.

A chest x-ray or CT scan is obtained, and a sample of the pleural fluid is obtained via thoracentesis for diagnosis. Empyema fluid is thick, opaque, exudative, and foul smelling. The pleural fluid is analyzed for color, RBC count, WBC count, glucose and protein levels, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), and pH. Gram stains, acid-fast stains, and cytology studies are also performed. A protein level higher than 3 g/dL indicates an exudative process.

Therapy involves emptying the empyema cavity, re-expanding the lung, and controlling the infection. Intrapleural fibrinolytic therapy may be needed if adhesions have

developed, especially if they inhibit drainage (Dobbin, 2009). Appropriate antibiotics are prescribed. Closed-chest drainage is used to promote lung expansion. The health care provider places one or more chest tubes in the lower parts of the empyema sac. The tube is removed when the lung is fully expanded and the infection is under control. Open thoracotomy and removal of a portion of the pleura may be needed for thick pus or excessive pleural thickening. Nursing interventions are similar to those for patients with a pleural effusion, pneumothorax, or infection. Chapters 32 and 34 discuss these interventions in more detail.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of a respiratory infection?

- Respirations rapid and shallow
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Skin cyanosis or pallor (in lighter-skinned patients)
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (in patients of any skin color)
- Tachycardia
- Patient appears to work hard to inhale and exhale
- Patient is restless, anxious, or confused

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of a respiratory infection?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Checking the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing for the presence and characteristic of sputum production
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway

Interpret laboratory values:

- Elevated white blood cell count
- Arterial blood gas values: pH lower than 7.35, HCO_3^- at or below 24 mEq/L, Paco_2 at or below 45 mm Hg; Pao_2 below 90 mm Hg

Respond by:

- Administering oxygen
- Assisting the patient to an upright position, with arms resting on a table or armrests
- Prioritizing and pacing activities to prevent fatigue
- Administering prescribed IV, oral, or inhaled drugs
- Ensuring respiratory therapy treatments are administered
- Re-assessing respiratory status after respiratory therapy treatment
- Ensuring a fluid intake of at least 3 liters per day

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved oxygenation (see Chapter 29).
- Think about what patient teaching focus could help reduce the occurrence of a respiratory infection in the future.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Teach patients with respiratory infections to limit infection spread by washing hands after blowing the nose or using a tissue.
- Remind patients that colds are most easily spread to others during the first 2 to 3 days after symptoms begin.
- Ask any patient with a respiratory infection if he or she is from a foreign country or has recently visited a foreign country.

- Ask patients from other countries whether they have had BCG as a vaccination against TB. For patients who have had BCG, the PPD skin test is a less reliable indicator of TB.
- Use Airborne Precautions for any patient who has TB or SARS manifestations until proven otherwise.
- If possible, place the patient with a respiratory infection in a private room.
- Keep the door to the room of any patient with a respiratory infection closed until the cause of the infection is identified.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

- Teach everyone the “etiquette” of sneezing or coughing into the upper sleeve rather than the hand when a tissue is not available.
- Receive a yearly influenza vaccination because you are more likely to care for infected people and because you could spread influenza to people who are immunocompromised.
- Urge all adults older than 50 years, anyone who has a chronic respiratory problem, anyone who is immunocompromised, and anyone who lives with a person who is older, immunocompromised, or has a chronic respiratory disease to receive the pneumonia vaccine and yearly influenza vaccinations.
- Urge patients to complete the anti-infective drug therapy course for any respiratory infection.
- Urge all people to quit smoking or using tobacco in any form.
- Teach people living with patients who have TB to ensure good ventilation of the home with open windows whenever possible.
- Teach all people to be prepared for an emergency or disaster by having sufficient food, water, and prescribed drugs for at least 2 weeks (see [Chapter 12](#)).
- Teach all people to follow community infection containment procedures if there is a possible outbreak of any pandemic influenza virus.
- Inform patients who have a positive TB test that far more people are infected with the bacillus than have active TB disease.
- Assess the likelihood of adherence to the drug regimen for patients with TB.
- Identify patients who may require a directly observed therapy (DOT) program in which they must be directly observed by a health care professional while swallowing the drug.

Physiological Integrity**Psychosocial Integrity**

- Administer humidified oxygen therapy to patients with hypoxemia.
- Assess the skin under and around a facemask or nasal cannula for evidence of skin breakdown at least every 8 hours.
- Teach all patients with a respiratory infection of bacterial origin to complete all anti-infective therapy as prescribed.
- Teach patients with allergic rhinitis to avoid contact with the offending allergen(s).
- Caution older adults using antihistamines that these drugs may make hypertension worse.
- Treat epiglottitis in an adult as an emergency because it can lead to complete respiratory obstruction.
- Assess the patient receiving first-line drug therapy for TB for any manifestation of liver impairment (dark urine, clay-colored stools, anorexia, jaundiced sclera or hard palate).
- Teach women taking rifampin or rifapentine as drug therapy for TB that these drugs reduce the effectiveness of oral contraceptives and that an additional form of birth control should be used while on this therapy.
- Assess older patients with acute confusion for pneumonia (cough and fever may not be present).
- Assure the family of an older adult patient with pneumonia who is confused that the new-onset confusion is temporary.
- Teach people who may be afraid of contracting inhalational anthrax that this disease is not transmitted by person-to-person contact.

CHAPTER

34

Care of Critically Ill Patients with Respiratory Problems

Ronald L. Hickman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Endotracheal Intubation

Animation: Pulmonary Embolism

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Clip: Stridor

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Protect the patient receiving mechanical ventilation.
2. Ensure safe management of endotracheal tubes, tracheostomy tubes, and mechanical ventilators.
3. Modify the environment to protect patients receiving anticoagulating therapy (which includes anticoagulation, fibrinolytic, and antiplatelet therapies).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Identify hospitalized patients at risk for a pulmonary embolism.
5. Teach people at risk for pulmonary embolism techniques to reduce the risk.
6. Teach patients and family members how to avoid injury during anticoagulating therapy.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Support the patient and family in coping with changes in breathing status and the need for mechanical ventilation.

8. Use an appropriate nonverbal form of communication for a patient who is intubated.
9. Provide emotional support to patients experiencing acute respiratory difficulties.

Physiological Integrity

10. Assess the respiratory status of any patient who develops sudden-onset respiratory difficulty or acute confusion.
11. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to evaluate the adequacy of oxygenation and ventilatory interventions.
12. Coordinate nursing care for the patient being mechanically ventilated.
13. Maintain a patent airway on anyone who has experienced chest trauma.
14. Schedule essential patient care and diagnostic activities to promote rest and sleep.

Respiratory problems can progress to an emergency and death, even with prompt treatment. These problems interfere with *oxygenation and tissue perfusion* and may overwhelm the adaptive responses of the cardiac and blood oxygen delivery systems (Fig. 34-1). Thus *prompt recognition and interventions are needed to prevent serious complications and death*.

An acute injury or problem that results in severe respiratory impairment can occur at any age. Older adults, however, are more at risk for developing critical respiratory problems. The patient who is short of breath is also anxious and fearful. Be prepared to manage both the physical and emotional needs of the patient during any respiratory emergency.

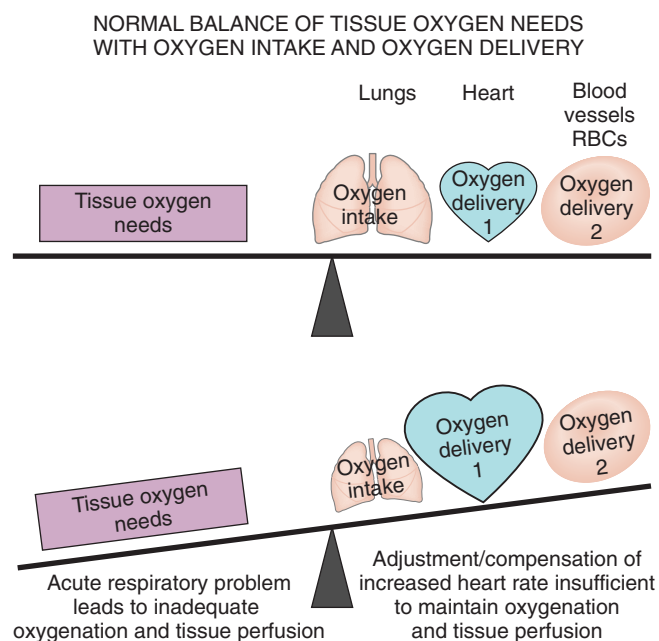


FIG. 34-1 Rapid-onset acute respiratory problems overwhelm the ability of the cardiac oxygen delivery system to adapt and restore balance. The red blood cell (RBC) oxygen delivery system cannot begin to adapt to the acute respiratory problem.

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Pathophysiology

A **pulmonary embolism (PE)** is a collection of particulate matter (solids, liquids, or air) that enters venous circulation and lodges in the pulmonary vessels. Large emboli obstruct pulmonary blood flow, leading to reduced oxygenation, pulmonary tissue hypoxia, and potential death. Any substance can cause an embolism, but a blood clot is the most common (McCance et al., 2010). PE is common, especially among hospitalized patients, and many die within 1 hour of the onset of symptoms or before the diagnosis has even been suspected (Farley et al., 2009).

Most often, a PE occurs when a blood clot from a venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially a deep vein thrombosis (DVT) in a vein in the legs or the pelvis, breaks off and travels through the vena cava into the right side of the heart. The clot then lodges in the pulmonary artery or within one or more of its branches. Platelets collect on the embolus, triggering the release of substances that cause blood vessel constriction. Widespread pulmonary vessel constriction and pulmonary hypertension impair gas exchange. Deoxygenated blood is moved into the arterial circulation, causing **hypoxemia** (low arterial blood oxygen level), although some patients with PE do *not* have hypoxemia.

Major risk factors for VTE leading to PE are:

- Prolonged immobility
- Central venous catheters
- Surgery
- Obesity
- Advancing age
- Conditions that increase blood clotting
- History of thromboembolism

CHART 34-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Pulmonary Embolism

- Start passive and active range-of-motion exercises for the extremities of immobilized and postoperative patients.
- Ambulate patients soon after surgery.
- Use antiembolism and pneumatic compression stockings and devices after surgery.
- Avoid the use of tight garters, girdles, and constricting clothing.
- Prevent pressure under the popliteal space (e.g., do not place a pillow under the knee).
- Perform a comprehensive assessment of peripheral circulation.
- Elevate the affected limb 20 degrees or more above the level of the heart to improve venous return, as appropriate.
- Change patient position every 2 hours, or ambulate as tolerated.
- Prevent injury to the vessel lumen by preventing local pressure, trauma, infection, or sepsis.
- Refrain from massaging leg muscles.
- Instruct patient not to cross legs.
- Administer prescribed prophylactic low-dose anticoagulant and antiplatelet drugs.
- Teach the patient to avoid activities that result in the Valsalva maneuver (e.g., breath-holding, bearing down for bowel movements, coughing).
- Administer prescribed drugs, such as stool softeners, that will prevent episodes of the Valsalva maneuver.
- Teach the patient and family about precautions.
- Encourage smoking cessation.

In addition, smoking, pregnancy, estrogen therapy, heart failure, stroke, cancer (particularly lung or prostate), Trousseau's syndrome, and trauma increase the risk for VTE and PE (Gay, 2010).

Fat, oil, air, tumor cells, amniotic fluid, foreign objects (e.g., broken IV catheters), injected particles, and infected clots or pus can enter a vein and cause PE. Fat emboli from fracture of a long bone and oil emboli from diagnostic procedures do not impede blood flow in the lungs; instead, they cause blood vessel injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) (Powers & Talbot, 2011). Amniotic fluid embolus occurs in women as a rare complication of childbirth, abortion, or amniocentesis. Septic clots often arise from a pelvic abscess, an infected IV catheter, and injections of illegal drugs. The effects of sepsis are more serious than the venous blockage.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Although pulmonary embolism (PE) can occur in healthy people and may give no warning, it occurs more often in some situations. Thus prevention of conditions that lead to PE is a major nursing concern. Preventive actions for PE are those that also prevent venous stasis and VTE. Best nursing practices for PE prevention are outlined in **Chart 34-1**. Also see **Chapter 16** for more information about core measures for VTE prevention.

Lifestyle changes can help reduce the risk for PE. Urge patients to stop smoking cigarettes, especially women who take oral contraceptives. Reducing weight and becoming more physically active, such as walking one or more miles each day, can reduce risk for PE. Teach patients who are traveling for long periods to drink plenty of water, change positions often, avoid crossing the legs, and get up from the sitting position at least 5 minutes out of every hour.

For patients known to be at risk for PE, small doses of heparin, low molecular weight heparin, or a similar drug may be prescribed every 8 to 12 hours. Heparin prevents excessive clotting in patients after trauma or surgery or when restricted to bedrest. Occasionally, an antiplatelet drug such as clopidogrel (Plavix) is used in place of heparin.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Assess any patient with sudden onset of breathing difficulty for the risk factors of PE, such as previous VTE, recent surgery, or immobility (Farley et al., 2009; Winkelman, 2009).

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Respiratory manifestations are outlined in Chart 34-2. Assess the patient for difficulty breathing (dyspnea) occurring with a rapid heart rate and pleuritic chest pain (sharp, stabbing-type pain on inspiration). Other symptoms vary depending on the size and the type of embolism. Breath sounds may be normal, but crackles usually occur. Often a dry cough is present. **Hemoptysis** (bloody sputum) may result from pulmonary infarction.

Cardiac manifestations include tachycardiac, distended neck veins, **syncope** (fainting or loss of consciousness), cyanosis, and hypotension. Systemic hypotension results from acute pulmonary hypertension and reduced forward blood flow. Abnormal heart sounds, such as an S₃ or S₄, may occur. Electrocardiogram (ECG) findings are abnormal, nonspecific, and transient. T-wave and ST-segment changes occur in many patients; left-axis or right-axis deviations are also common.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Assess patients at risk for PE for the symptom cluster of distended neck veins, syncope, cyanosis, and hypotension. If this cluster is present, notify the Rapid Response Team.

Miscellaneous manifestations include a low-grade fever and petechiae on the skin over the chest and in the axillae. *It is important to remember that many patients with PE do not have the “classic” manifestations but instead have vague symptoms resembling the flu, such as nausea, vomiting, and general malaise (Bahloul et al., 2010).*

CHART 34-2 KEY FEATURES

Pulmonary Embolism

Classic Symptoms

- Dyspnea, sudden onset
- Sharp, stabbing chest pain
- Apprehension, restlessness
- Feeling of impending doom
- Cough
- Hemoptysis

Signs

- Tachypnea
- Crackles
- Pleural friction rub
- Tachycardia
- S₃ or S₄ heart sound
- Diaphoresis
- Fever, low-grade
- Petechiae over chest and axillae
- Decreased arterial oxygen saturation (SaO₂)

Psychosocial Assessment

Symptom onset of PE often is abrupt, and the patient is anxious. Hypoxemia may stimulate a sense of impending doom and cause increased restlessness. The life-threatening nature of PE and admission to an intensive care unit increase the patient's anxiety and fear.

Laboratory Assessment

The hyperventilation triggered by hypoxia and pain first leads to respiratory alkalosis, indicated by low partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (Paco₂) values on arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis. The Pao₂-Fio₂ (fraction of inspired oxygen) ratio falls as a result of “shunting” of blood from the right side of the heart to the left without picking up oxygen from the lungs. Shunting causes the Paco₂ level to rise, resulting in respiratory acidosis (McCance et al., 2010). Later, metabolic acidosis results from buildup of lactic acid due to tissue hypoxia. (See Chapter 14 for a discussion.)

Even if ABG studies and pulse oximetry show hypoxemia, these results alone are not sufficient for the diagnosis of PE (Bahloul et al., 2010; McCance et al., 2010). A patient with a small embolus may not be hypoxemic, and PE is not the only cause of hypoxemia.

Imaging Assessment

A chest x-ray may show a PE if it is large. Some lung infiltration may be present around the embolism site. However, the chest x-ray may not show any acute changes. Computed tomography (CT) scans are most often used to diagnose PE. A newer diagnostic method is high-resolution multidetector computer tomographic angiography (MDCTA), which is very specific but is not available at all acute care settings.

The physician may perform a transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) (see Chapter 35) to help detect PE. Doppler ultrasound studies or impedance plethysmography (IPG) may be used to document the presence of VTE and to support a diagnosis of PE.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with PE are:

1. Hypoxemia related to mismatch of lung perfusion and alveolar oxygenation
2. Hypotension related to inadequate circulation to the left ventricle
3. Potential for bleeding related to anticoagulation or fibrinolytic therapy
4. Anxiety related to hypoxemia and fear of death

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Hypoxemia

When a patient has a sudden onset of dyspnea and chest pain, immediately notify the Rapid Response Team. Reassure the patient, and elevate the head of the bed. Prepare for oxygen therapy and blood gas analysis while continuing to monitor and assess for other changes.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PE is expected to have adequate tissue perfusion in all major organs. Indicators of adequate perfusion are:

- ABGs within normal limits
- Pulse oximetry above 95% or the patient's baseline
- Cognitive status unimpaired compared with baseline
- Absence of pallor and cyanosis

Interventions. Nonsurgical management of PE is most common. In some cases, surgery also may be needed. Best nursing care practices for the patient with PE are listed in Chart 34-3.

Nonsurgical Management. Management activities for PE focus on increasing gas exchange, improving lung perfusion, reducing risk for further clot formation, and preventing complications. Priority nursing interventions include implementing oxygen therapy, administering anticoagulation or fibrinolytic therapy, monitoring the patient's responses to the interventions, and providing psychosocial support.

Oxygen therapy is critical for the patient with PE. The severely hypoxemic patient may need mechanical ventilation and close monitoring with ABG studies. In less severe cases, oxygen may be applied by nasal cannula or mask. Use pulse oximetry to monitor oxygen saturation and hypoxemia.

Monitor the patient continually for any changes in status. Check vital signs, lung sounds, and cardiac and respiratory status at least every 1 to 2 hours. Document increasing dyspnea, dysrhythmias, distended neck veins, and pedal or sacral edema. Assess for crackles and other abnormal lung sounds along with cyanosis of the lips, conjunctiva, oral mucosa, and nail beds.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is a 66-year-old truck driver who had a prostatectomy yesterday for prostate cancer. He had urinary dribbling for months and was not able to participate in his usual jogging program. He stopped smoking a year ago and uses nicotine gum daily to inhibit his ongoing urge to smoke. He drinks a can of beer per day but, overall, has reduced his fluid intake to prevent dribbling or incontinence. When you assess him this morning, he reports nausea and some chest pain.

1. What should be your first action?
2. What risk factors does he have for a pulmonary embolism?
3. For what other manifestations should you assess?
4. Is oxygen by mask or nasal cannula appropriate for this patient? Why or why not?
5. What other actions should you take?

Drug therapy with anticoagulants may be prescribed to prevent embolus enlargement and to prevent new clots from forming. Active bleeding, stroke, and recent trauma are reasons to avoid this therapy. Each patient is evaluated to determine the risk versus the benefit of anticoagulant therapy.

Heparin is usually used unless the PE is massive or occurs with hemodynamic instability. A fibrinolytic drug may then be used to break up the existing clot. Review the patient's partial thromboplastin time (PTT)—also called *activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT)*—before therapy is started, every 4 hours when therapy begins, and daily thereafter. Therapeutic PTT values usually range between 1.5 and 2.5 times the control value for this health problem.

Fibrinolytic drugs, such as alteplase (Activase, tPA), are used for PE when specific criteria are met. These include massive PE (obstructing blood flow to a lobe or more than one segment) and hemodynamic instability in which blood pressure cannot be maintained without supportive measures.

Both heparin and fibrinolytic drugs are *high alert drugs*. These drugs have a high risk to cause harm if given at too high a dose, too low a dose, or to the wrong patient.

CHART 34-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with a Pulmonary Embolism

- Reassure patient that the correct measures are being taken.
- Apply oxygen by nasal cannula or mask.
- Place patient in high-Fowler's position.
- Apply telemetry monitoring equipment.
- Obtain an adequate venous access.
- Assess oxygenation continuously with pulse oximetry.
- Assess respiratory status at least every 30 minutes by:
 - Listening with a stethoscope for presence or absence of breath sounds, crackles, or rales.
 - Measuring the rate, rhythm, and ease of respirations.
 - Checking skin color and capillary refill.
 - Checking position of trachea.
- Assess cardiac status by:
 - Comparing blood pressures in right and left arms.
 - Checking pulse for quality.
 - Checking cardiac monitor for dysrhythmias.
 - Checking for distention of neck veins.
- Ensure prescribed chest imaging and laboratory tests are obtained immediately (may include complete blood count with differential, platelet count, prothrombin time, partial thromboplastin time, D-dimer level, arterial blood gases).
- Examine the thorax for presence of petechiae.
- Administer prescribed anticoagulants.
- Assess for bleeding.
- Handle patient gently.
- Institute Bleeding Precautions.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Heparin comes in a variety of concentrations. Check the prescribed dose carefully and ensure the correct concentration is being used to prevent overdosing or underdosing. Enoxaparin (Lovenox) can be given only subcutaneously or intravenously, NOT intramuscularly.

Heparin therapy usually continues for 5 to 10 days. Most patients are started on an oral anticoagulant, such as warfarin (Coumadin, Jantoven, Warfilone ) , on the third day of heparin use. Therapy with both heparin and warfarin continues until the international normalized ratio (INR) reaches 2.0 to 3.0. A low-molecular-weight heparin (e.g., dalteparin or enoxaparin) is often used with the warfarin. Monitor the INR daily. Warfarin use continues for 3 to 6 weeks, but some patients may take warfarin indefinitely. **Charts 34-4 and 34-5** list common drugs used and the laboratory tests to monitor.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Many agencies are performing genetic tests before starting warfarin therapy. These tests check for variation in two specific genes. One gene, *VKORC1*, produces an enzyme that alters vitamin K so that it can help activate the vitamin K-dependent clotting factors. Warfarin interferes with the activity of this enzyme. Patients who have a variation in the enzyme are resistant to the effects of warfarin, and much higher doses are needed to achieve coagulation. On the other hand, the gene *CYP2C19* produces an enzyme that metabolizes warfarin and prepares it for elimination. Patients who have a variation in this gene do not metabolize warfarin well, so that higher blood levels remain and more severe side effects are possible. The dosage of warfarin needs to be much lower in patients with this gene variation.

CHART 34-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Pulmonary Embolism

DRUG AND USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Heparin sodium (Hepalean ) 5000-10,000 units as a bolus by IV push initially; then dose adjustment is based on PTT, 1300 units/hr on continuous infusion or, less preferably, intermittent infusion	To begin anticoagulation to minimize growth of existing clots and to prevent the development of additional clots	Monitor PTT and know expected therapeutic PTT range for each patient. Report PTT results. Monitor patient for bleeding or bruising. Re-bolus every time infusion is increased. Do not use with salicylates. Monitor platelets daily for thrombocytopenia. Have the antidote <i>protamine sulfate</i> available. Avoid puncturing the skin, and apply pressure to venipuncture and IM injection sites. Avoid use of firm toothbrushes, razors, and rectal manipulation. Monitor antifactor Xa.	Ongoing assessment helps detect side effects and prevent complications. Reporting and monitoring enable early management of a prolonged PTT and excessive bleeding. To maintain anticoagulation within consistent therapeutic levels. An increased anticoagulation effect can occur with salicylates. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT), a type of adverse reaction, can occur. Being prepared for an emergency helps prevent further complications. Pressure at puncture sites helps promote clotting. Safety measures help prevent bleeding.
Enoxaparin (Lovenox) usually 1 mg/kg subcutaneously every 12 hr	To allow for hospital discharge before complete switch to oral anticoagulants	Have the antidote <i>protamine sulfate</i> available. Safety precautions are the same as for heparin.	This test is used to determine therapy effectiveness. This drug is the only antidote for enoxaparin. Safety precautions are the same as for heparin.
Warfarin sodium (Coumadin, Jantoven, Warfilone sodium ) 10-15 mg orally once daily for 3 days initially; then dose adjustment is based on INR, usually 5-10 mg orally daily Now available as a parenteral drug for use in hospitalized patients. Dosage is the same as with the oral form of the drug.	To allow for long-term anticoagulation in at-risk patients to prevent the development of future clots	Monitor INR, and know expected therapeutic INR range for each patient. Report INR results. Monitor the patient for bleeding or bruising. Monitor for fever and skin rash. Consult the pharmacist about potential drug interactions. Have the antidote <i>vitamin K (phytonadione)</i> available. Avoid puncturing the skin, and apply pressure to venipuncture and IM injection sites. Apply pressure to venipuncture and IM injection sites. Avoid use of firm toothbrushes, razors, and rectal manipulation. Teach the patient which foods are high in vitamin K. Assess for internal and external bleeding. Reconstitute with sterile water without preservative immediately before use. Administer with caution to patients who have been receiving aspirin, dipyridamole, heparin, or other anticoagulants.	Ongoing assessment helps detect side effects and prevent complications. Reporting enables early management of a prolonged INR. Adverse drug reaction can occur. There are many drug interactions with warfarin. Being prepared for an emergency helps prevent further complications. Pressure at puncture sites helps promote clotting. Pressure at puncture sites helps promote clotting. Safety measures help prevent bleeding. Food sources of vitamin K will alter INR. Bleeding is the most common adverse effect. Recommended preparation ensures drug stability. Other drugs with anticoagulation effects increase the risk for bleeding.
Alteplase (tissue plasminogen activator, recombinant; tPA; Activase) 100 mg IV infusion over 2 hr	To promote lysis of large pulmonary emboli in those patients who are hemodynamically unstable		

INR, International normalized ratio; PTT, partial thromboplastin time.

CHART 34-5 LABORATORY PROFILE

Blood Tests Used to Monitor Anticoagulation Therapy

TEST	NORMAL RANGE	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT, aPTT [APTT])	Normal values for each local laboratory may vary. When activator reagents are used by the laboratory, the normal clotting time is shortened. Common normal ranges are 20-30 sec in some laboratories and 30-40 sec in others. Therapeutic range for PE is 1.5-2.5 times the normal value (e.g., if normal is 20-30 sec, then therapeutic range is 40-75 sec).	<i>Subtherapeutic times</i> may signify that the patient is not receiving enough heparin to prevent extension of the blood clot. An increase in the dosage or rate of infusion is usually indicated. <i>Therapeutic times</i> mean that the clotting time is increased from normal but this increase is indicated in the case of PE. <i>Prolonged times</i> in patients with PE (i.e., >75 sec) indicate that the patient is at risk for serious spontaneous bleeding. Heparin is usually held or decreased until the PTT drops back into the therapeutic range.
Prothrombin time (pro time, PT)	Common normal range is 11-12.5 sec. Therapeutic range for anticoagulant therapy in PE is 1.5-2 times the normal or control value in seconds. Control values can vary day to day because reagents used may vary. If INR values are reported with the PT, therapeutic range for PE is 2.5-3.0, or 3.0-4.5 for recurrent PE.	<i>Subtherapeutic values</i> may signify that the patient is not receiving enough warfarin. An increase in the dosage is usually indicated. <i>Therapeutic values</i> mean that the pro time is increased from normal but this increase is indicated in the case of PE. <i>Prolonged values</i> in the treatment of PE indicate that the patient is at risk for bleeding. The warfarin dose is usually decreased or held, the patient is instructed to eat foods high in vitamin K, or an injection of vitamin K may be given.

aPTT or APTT, Activated partial thromboplastin time; INR, international normalized ratio; PE, pulmonary embolism.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

A client who has been receiving heparin subcutaneously for 10 days has all of the following laboratory blood test values. Which value does the nurse report immediately to the prescriber?

- A. Activated partial thromboplastin time 1.5
- B. International normalized ratio 1.7
- C. Red blood cells 4.2 million/mm³
- D. Platelets 20,000/mm³

These drugs and the associated nursing care are discussed in Chapters 38, 40, and 41.

Anticoagulation and fibrinolytic therapy can lead to excessive bleeding. Also, even when clotting times are in the target ranges, other problems may develop that require invasive therapy and a return to normal coagulation responses. *The antidote for heparin is protamine sulfate; the antidote for warfarin is injectable phytonadione, vitamin K₁ (AquaMEPHYTON, Mephyton). Antidotes for fibrinolytic therapy include clotting factors, fresh frozen plasma, and aminocaproic acid (Amicar).*

**NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY****Drug Alert**

Keep antidotes to anticoagulant drugs and fibrinolytic drugs on the unit for patients undergoing these therapies.

Surgical Management. Two surgical procedures for the management of PE are embolectomy and inferior vena cava filtration.

Embolectomy is the surgical removal of the embolus from pulmonary blood vessels. It may be performed when fibrinolytic therapy cannot be used for a patient who has massive or multiple large pulmonary emboli with shock. Special thrombectomy catheters that mechanically break up clots, such as

the AngioJet, allow effective reduction of clots with or without the use of thrombolytic drugs. Earlier use of embolectomy for PE is being evaluated (Le & Dewan, 2009).

Inferior vena cava filtration with placement of a vena cava filter is a lifesaving measure by preventing further embolus formation for some patients. Some filters are removable, allowing filter placement before symptoms develop in patients who are at high risk for clots. These filters can be removed when the risk for clot formation decreases, or they can be left in place permanently. Patients for whom filter placement is considered less risky than drug therapy include those with recurrent or major bleeding while receiving anticoagulants, those with septic PE, and those undergoing pulmonary embolectomy. Placement of a vena cava filter is detailed in Chapter 38.

Managing Hypotension

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PE is expected to have adequate circulation. Indicators of adequate circulation are:

- Maintenance of pulse rate and blood pressure within the normal ranges
- Maintenance of a urine output of at least 30 mL/hr
- Absence of cyanosis

Interventions. In addition to the interventions used for hypoxemia, IV fluid therapy and drug therapy are used to increase cardiac output and maintain blood pressure.

IV fluid therapy involves giving crystalloid solutions to restore plasma volume and prevent shock (see Chapter 39). Continuously monitor the ECG and pulmonary artery and central venous/right atrial pressures of the patient receiving IV fluids because increased fluids can worsen pulmonary hypertension and lead to right-sided heart failure. Also monitor indicators of fluid adequacy, including urine output, skin turgor, and moisture of mucous membranes.

Drug therapy with agents that increase myocardial contractility (**positive inotropic agents**) may be prescribed when

IV therapy alone does not improve cardiac output. Common drugs include milrinone (Primacor) and dobutamine (Dobutrex). Assess the patient's cardiac status hourly during therapy with inotropic drugs. Vasodilators, such as nitroprusside (Nipride, Nitropress), may be used to decrease pulmonary artery pressure if it is impeding cardiac contractility.

Minimizing Bleeding

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PE is expected to remain free from bleeding. Indicators are:

- Absence of bruising or petechiae
- Maintenance of hematocrit and hemoglobin within the normal range

Interventions. As a result of drug therapy that disrupts clots or prevents their formation, the patient's ability to start and continue the blood-clotting cascade when injured is impaired, increasing the risk for bleeding. Priority nursing actions are ensuring that appropriate antidotes are present on the nursing unit, protecting the patient from situations that could lead to bleeding, and monitoring closely the amount of bleeding that is occurring.

Assess at least every 2 hours for evidence of bleeding (e.g., oozing, bruises that cluster, petechiae, or purpura). Examine all stools, urine, drainage, and vomitus for gross blood, and test for occult blood. Measure any blood loss as accurately as possible. Measure the patient's abdominal girth every 8 hours (increasing girth can indicate internal bleeding). Best practices to prevent bleeding are listed in [Chart 34-6](#).

Monitor laboratory values daily. Review the complete blood count (CBC) results to determine the risk for bleeding and whether actual blood loss has occurred. If the patient has severe blood loss, packed red blood cells may be prescribed (see Transfusion Therapy in [Chapter 42](#)). Monitor the platelet count. A decreasing count may indicate ongoing clotting or heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) caused by the formation of anti-heparin antibodies.

Minimizing Anxiety

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PE is expected to have anxiety reduced to an acceptable level. Indicators include that he or she consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- States that anxiety is reduced
- Has no distress, irritability, or facial tension
- Uses coping strategies effectively

Interventions. The patient with PE is anxious and fearful for many reasons, including the presence of pain. Interventions for reducing anxiety in those with PE include oxygen therapy (see Interventions discussion on pp. 664-667 in the [Managing Hypoxemia](#) section), communication, and drug therapy.

Communication is critical in allaying anxiety. Acknowledge the anxiety and the patient's perception of a life-threatening situation. Stay with him or her, and speak calmly and clearly, providing assurance that appropriate measures are being taken. When giving drugs, changing position, taking vital signs, or assessing the patient, explain the rationale and share information.

Drug therapy with an antianxiety drug may be prescribed if the patient's anxiety increases or prevents adequate rest. Unless he or she is mechanically ventilated, sedating agents are avoided to reduce the risk for hypoventilation. When pain is present, pharmacologic therapy is used for pain

CHART 34-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Injury for the Patient Receiving Anticoagulant, Fibrinolytic, or Antiplatelet Therapy

- Handle the patient gently.
- Use and teach UAP to use a lift sheet when moving and positioning the patient in bed.
- Avoid IM injections and venipunctures.
- When injections or venipunctures are necessary, use the smallest-gauge needle for the task.
- Apply firm pressure to the needle stick site for 10 minutes or until the site no longer oozes blood.
- Apply ice to areas of trauma.
- Test all urine, vomitus, and stool for occult blood.
- Observe IV sites every 4 hours for bleeding.
- Instruct alert patients to notify nursing personnel immediately if any trauma occurs and if bleeding or bruising is noticed.
- Avoid trauma to rectal tissues:
 - Do not administer enemas.
 - If suppositories are prescribed, lubricate liberally and administer with caution.
- Instruct the patient and UAP to use an electric shaver rather than a razor.
- When providing mouth care or supervising others in providing mouth care:
 - Use a soft-bristled toothbrush or tooth sponges
 - Do not use floss
 - Check to make certain that dentures fit and do not rub
- Instruct the patient not to blow the nose forcefully or insert objects into the nose.
- Ensure the patient wears shoes with firm soles whenever he or she is ambulating.
- Ensure that antidotes to anticoagulation therapy are on the unit.

UAP, Unlicensed assistive personnel.

management. Care is taken to avoid suppressing the respiratory response.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client who has a pulmonary embolism and a venous thromboembolism is to be started on oral warfarin (Coumadin) while still receiving intravenous heparin. What is the nurse's best action?

- Administer the medications as prescribed.
- Remind the prescriber that two anticoagulants should not be administered concurrently.
- Hold the dose of warfarin until the client's partial thromboplastin time is the same as the control value.
- Monitor the client for clinical manifestations of internal or external bleeding at least every 2 hours.

Community-Based Care

The patient with a PE is discharged when hypoxemia and hemodynamic instability are resolved and adequate anticoagulation has been achieved. Anticoagulation therapy usually continues after discharge.

Home Care Management

Some patients are discharged to home with minimal risk for recurrence and no permanent physiologic changes. Others have heart or lung damage that requires home and lifestyle modification.

CHART 34-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing Injury and Bleeding

During the time you are taking anticoagulants:

- Use an electric shaver.
- Use a soft-bristled toothbrush, and do not floss.
- Do not have dental work performed without consulting your health care provider.
- Do not take aspirin or any aspirin-containing products. Read the label to be sure that the product does not contain aspirin or salicylates.
- Do not participate in contact sports or any activity likely to result in your being bumped, scratched, or scraped.
- If you are bumped, apply ice to the site for at least 1 hour.
- Avoid hard foods that would scrape the inside of your mouth.
- Eat warm, cool, or cold foods to avoid burning your mouth.
- Check your skin and mouth daily for bruises, swelling, or areas with small, reddish purple marks that may indicate bleeding.
- Notify your health care provider if you:
 - Are injured and persistent bleeding results
 - Have excessive menstrual bleeding
 - See blood in your urine or bowel movement
- Avoid anal intercourse.
- Take a stool softener to prevent straining during a bowel movement.
- Do not use enemas or rectal suppositories.
- Do not wear clothing or shoes that are tight or that rub.
- Avoid blowing your nose forcefully or placing objects in your nose. If you must blow your nose, do so gently without blocking either nasal passage.
- Avoid playing musical instruments that raise the pressure inside your head, such as brass wind instruments and woodwinds or reed instruments.
- Keep all appointments for laboratory tests.

Patients with extensive lung damage may have activity intolerance and become fatigued easily. The living arrangements may need to be modified so that patients can spend all or most of the time on one floor and avoid climbing stairs. Depending on the degree of impairment, patients may require some or much assistance with ADLs.

Teaching for Self-Management

The patient with a PE may continue anticoagulation therapy for weeks, months, or years after discharge, depending on the risks for PE. Teach him or her and the family about Bleeding Precautions, activities to reduce the risk for venous thromboembolism (VTE) and recurrence of PE, complications, and the need for follow-up care (Chart 34-7).

Health Care Resources

Patients using anticoagulation therapy are usually seen in a clinic or health care provider's office weekly for blood drawing and assessment. Those who are homebound may have a home care nurse perform these actions (see Chart 34-8 for a focused assessment guide). Patients with severe dyspnea may need home oxygen therapy. Respiratory therapy treatments can be performed in the home. The nurse or case manager coordinates arrangements for oxygen and other respiratory therapy equipment to be available if needed at home.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with PE on the basis of the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that he or she:

CHART 34-8 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient After Pulmonary Embolism

Assess respiratory status:

- Observe rate and depth of ventilation.
- Auscultate lungs.
- Examine nail beds and mucous membranes for evidence of cyanosis.
- Take a pulse oximetry reading.
- Ask the patient if chest pain or shortness of breath is experienced in any position.
- Ask the patient about the presence of sputum and its color and character.

Assess cardiovascular status:

- Take vital signs, including apical pulse, pulse pressure; assess for presence or absence of orthostatic hypotension and quality and rhythm of peripheral pulses.
- Note presence or absence of peripheral edema.
- Examine hand vein filling in the dependent position.
- Examine neck vein filling in the recumbent and sitting positions.

Assess lower extremities for deep vein thrombosis:

- Examine lower legs and compare with each other for:
 - General edema
 - Calf swelling
 - Surface temperature
 - Presence of red streaks or cordlike, palpable structure

Measure calf circumference:

- Ask the patient to dorsiflex and plantarflex each foot. Note the ease with which the patient can do this, and ask whether pain is experienced in either position.
- Gently squeeze the calf of each leg laterally and from front to back. Ask the patient whether pain or tenderness is experienced with either maneuver.

Assess for evidence of bleeding:

- Examine the mouth and gums for oozing or frank bleeding.
- Examine all skin areas, especially old puncture sites and wounds, for bleeding, bruising, or petechiae.
- If the patient voids during the visit, test the urine for occult blood.

Assess cognition and mental status:

- Level of consciousness
- Orientation to time, place, and person
- Can the patient accurately read a seven-word sentence containing no words with more than three syllables?

Assess the patient's understanding of illness and adherence to treatment:

- Manifestations to report to health care provider
- Drug therapy plan (correct timing and dose)
- Bleeding Precautions
- Prevention of venous thromboembolism

- Attains and maintains adequate gas exchange and oxygenation
- Does not experience hypovolemia and shock
- Remains free from bleeding episodes
- States the level of anxiety is reduced
- Uses effective coping strategies

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

ACUTE RESPIRATORY FAILURE

Pathophysiology

Acute respiratory failure is classified by blood gas abnormalities. The critical values are partial pressure of arterial oxygen (P_{aO_2}) less than 60 mm Hg, arterial oxygen saturation (S_{aO_2})

TABLE 34-1 COMMON CAUSES OF VENTILATORY FAILURE

Extrapulmonary Causes

- Neuromuscular disorders:
 - Myasthenia gravis
 - Guillain-Barré syndrome
 - Poliomyelitis
- Spinal cord injuries affecting nerves to intercostal muscles
- Central nervous system dysfunction:
 - Stroke
 - Increased intracranial pressure
 - Meningitis
- Chemical depression:
 - Opioid analgesics, sedatives, anesthetics
- Kyphoscoliosis
- Massive obesity
- Sleep apnea
- External obstruction/constriction

Intrapulmonary Causes

- Airway disease:
 - Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), asthma
- Ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) mismatch:
 - Pulmonary embolism
 - Pneumothorax
 - Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
 - Amyloidosis
 - Pulmonary edema
 - Interstitial fibrosis

TABLE 34-2 COMMON CAUSES OF OXYGENATION FAILURE

- Low atmospheric oxygen concentration:
 - High altitudes, closed spaces, smoke inhalation, carbon monoxide poisoning
- Pneumonia
- Congestive heart failure with pulmonary edema
- Pulmonary embolism (PE)
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
- Interstitial pneumonitis-fibrosis
- Abnormal hemoglobin
- Hypovolemic shock
- Hypoventilation
- Complications of nitroprusside therapy:
 - Thiocyanate toxicity, methemoglobinemia

less than 90%, or partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (P_{aCO_2}) more than 50 mm Hg occurring with acidemia (pH <7.30). Respiratory failure is further defined as *ventilatory failure*, *oxygenation failure*, or a *combination of both ventilatory and oxygenation failure*. Whatever the underlying problem, the patient in acute respiratory failure is always **hypoxemic** (has low arterial blood oxygen levels).

Ventilatory Failure

Ventilatory failure is a problem in oxygen intake (ventilation) and blood delivery (perfusion) that causes a ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) mismatch in which perfusion is normal but ventilation is inadequate. It occurs when the chest pressure does not change enough to permit air movement into and out of the lungs. As a result, too little oxygen reaches the alveoli and carbon dioxide is retained. Either inadequate oxygen intake or carbon dioxide retention leads to hypoxemia.

Ventilatory failure usually results from any of these problems: a physical problem of the lungs or chest wall; a defect in the respiratory control center in the brain; or poor function of the respiratory muscles, especially the diaphragm. The problem is defined by a P_{aCO_2} level above 45 mm Hg in patients who have otherwise healthy lungs.

Causes of ventilatory failure are either **extrapulmonary** (involving nonpulmonary tissues but affecting respiratory function) or **intrapulmonary** (disorders of the respiratory tract). Table 34-1 lists causes of ventilatory failure.

Oxygenation Failure

In oxygenation failure, chest pressure changes are normal and air moves in and out without difficulty but does not oxygenate the blood sufficiently. It occurs in the type of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch in which air movement and oxygen intake (ventilation) are normal but lung blood flow (perfusion) is decreased.

Many lung disorders can cause oxygenation failure. Problems include impaired diffusion of oxygen at the alveolar level, right-to-left shunting of blood in the pulmonary vessels, $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, breathing air with a low oxygen level, and

abnormal hemoglobin that fails to bind oxygen. In one type of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch, areas of the lungs are still being perfused but gas exchange does not occur, which leads to hypoxemia. An extreme example of $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch is when systemic venous blood (oxygen-poor) passes through the lungs without being oxygenated and is shunted to the left side of the heart and into the systemic circulation. Normally, less than 5% of cardiac output contains venous blood that has bypassed oxygenation. With poor oxygenation in the lungs or a shunt that allows venous blood to bypass the lungs, even more arterial blood is not oxygenated, and applying 100% oxygen does not correct the problem. A classic cause of this $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch is acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). Table 34-2 lists specific causes of oxygenation failure.

Combined Ventilatory and Oxygenation Failure

Combined ventilatory and oxygenation failure involves **hypoventilation** (poor respiratory movements). Impaired gas exchange at the alveolar-capillary membrane results in poor diffusion of oxygen into arterial blood and carbon dioxide retention. The condition may or may not include poor lung perfusion. When lung perfusion is not adequate, $\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ mismatch occurs and both ventilation and perfusion are inadequate. This type of respiratory failure leads to a more profound hypoxemia than either ventilatory failure or oxygenation failure alone.

A combination of ventilatory failure and oxygenation failure occurs in patients who have abnormal lungs, such as those who have any form of chronic bronchitis, have emphysema, or are having an asthma attack. The bronchioles and alveoli are diseased (causing oxygenation failure), and the work of breathing increases until the respiratory muscles cannot function effectively (causing ventilatory failure). Acute respiratory failure results. This process can also occur in patients who have cardiac failure along with respiratory failure. This problem is serious because the cardiac system cannot adapt to the hypoxia by increasing the cardiac output.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Assess for **dyspnea** (perceived difficulty breathing), the hallmark of respiratory failure. Evaluate dyspnea with a dyspnea assessment guide (Fig. 34-2). Depending on the underlying

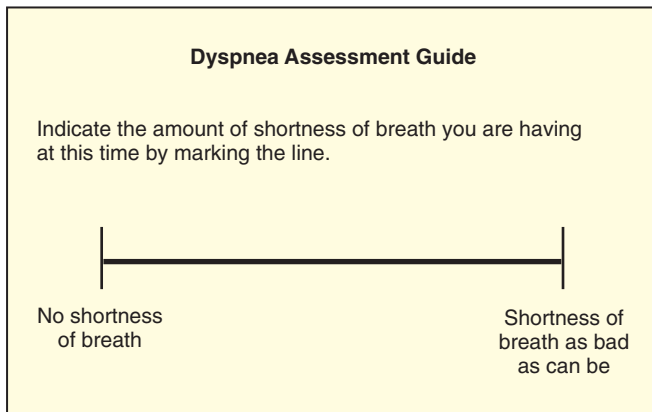


FIG. 34-2 A dyspnea assessment tool.

problem, the patient might not be aware of changes in the work of breathing. In addition, he or she needs to be alert to perceive the sensation of breathlessness.

Dyspnea is more intense when it develops rapidly. Slowly progressive respiratory failure may first be noticed as dyspnea on exertion (DOE) or when lying down. The patient may have **orthopnea**, finding it is easier to breathe in an upright position. With chronic respiratory problems, a minor increase in dyspnea may represent severe gas exchange problems.

Assess for a change in the patient's respiratory rate or pattern, a change in lung sounds, and manifestations of hypoxemia (pallor, cyanosis, increased heart rate, restlessness, confusion) and **hypercarbia** (high arterial blood levels of carbon dioxide). Pulse oximetry may show decreased oxygen saturation, but an arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis is needed for the most accurate assessment of oxygenation. The health care provider reviews the ABG studies to identify the degree of hypercarbia and hypoxemia.

INTERVENTIONS

Oxygen therapy is appropriate for any patient with acute hypoxemia. It is used in acute respiratory failure to keep the arterial oxygen (PaO_2) level above 60 mm Hg while treating the cause of the respiratory failure. Oxygen therapy is discussed in Chapter 30. If oxygen therapy does not maintain acceptable PaO_2 levels, mechanical ventilation may be used.

Help the patient find a position of comfort that allows easier breathing—usually a more upright position. To decrease the anxiety occurring with dyspnea, assist him or her to use relaxation, diversion, and guided imagery. Start energy-conserving measures, such as minimal self-care and no unnecessary procedures. Drugs given systemically or by metered dose inhaler (MDI) may be prescribed to widen the bronchioles and decrease inflammation to promote gas exchange. Teach the patient how to use the inhaler (see Chart 32-8 in Chapter 32) and about the drugs. Encourage deep breathing and other breathing exercises.

ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is acute respiratory failure with these features:

- Hypoxemia that persists even with 100% oxygen
- Decreased pulmonary compliance

- Dyspnea
- Noncardiac-associated bilateral pulmonary edema
- Dense pulmonary infiltrates on x-ray (ground-glass appearance)

Often ARDS occurs after an *acute lung injury* (ALI) as a traumatic event in people who have no pulmonary disease. The mortality rate is high even when intensive interventions are used. Other terms for ARDS include *adult respiratory distress syndrome* and *shock lung*.

Despite different causes of ALI in ARDS, the trigger is a systemic inflammatory response (Winkelman, 2008). As a result, ARDS manifestations are similar regardless of the cause. The main site of injury in the lung is the alveolar-capillary membrane, which normally is permeable only to small molecules. It can be injured during sepsis, pulmonary embolism, shock, aspiration, or inhalation injury. When injured, this membrane becomes more permeable to large molecules, which allows debris, proteins, and fluid into the alveoli. Lung tissue normally remains relatively dry, but in patients with ARDS, lung fluid increases and contains more proteins (McCance et al., 2010).

Other changes occur in the alveoli and respiratory bronchioles. The type II pneumocytes produce surfactant, a substance that increases lung **compliance** (elasticity) and prevents alveolar collapse. Surfactant activity is reduced in ARDS because type II pneumocytes are damaged and because the surfactant is diluted by excess lung fluids. As a result, the alveoli become unstable and tend to collapse unless they are filled with fluid. These fluid-filled or collapsed alveoli cannot exchange gases. As a result, edema forms around terminal airways, which are compressed and closed and can be destroyed. Lung volume and compliance are further reduced. As fluid continues to leak in more lung areas, fluid, protein, and blood cells collect in the alveoli and in the spaces between the alveoli. Lymph channels are compressed, and more fluid collects. Poorly inflated alveoli receive blood but cannot oxygenate it, increasing the shunt. Hypoxemia and ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$) mismatch result.

Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI) is a non-cardiogenic pulmonary edema associated with the activation of the inflammatory response due to a recent transfusion of plasma-containing products (McAdams-Jones, 2009). These products include whole blood, packed red blood cells (PRBCs), platelets, and fresh frozen plasma, all of which are associated with TRALI in critically ill adults (Kleinman et al., 2007).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Acute lung injury (ALI) leading to ARDS has many causes (Table 34-3). Some causes result in direct injury to lung tissue; other causes do not directly involve the lungs. Nervous system injury, such as head or spinal trauma, strokes, tumors, and sudden increases in intracranial pressure, may cause massive sympathetic discharge. Systemic blood vessel constriction results and moves large volumes of blood into lung circulation. Lung pressure increases and injures the lung. Any problems that cause cerebral hypoxia can lead to ALI (McCance et al., 2010).

TRALI is mediated by inflammation. During transfusion, patients are exposed to plasma that contains foreign proteins and antibodies. This exposure activates white blood cells (WBCs) and causes them to clump with these proteins, which

TABLE 34-3 COMMON CAUSES OF ACUTE LUNG INJURY

- Shock
- Trauma
- Serious nervous system injury
- Pancreatitis
- Fat and amniotic fluid emboli
- Pulmonary infections
- Sepsis
- Inhalation of toxic gases (smoke, oxygen)
- Pulmonary aspiration (especially of stomach contents)
- Drug ingestion (e.g., heroin, opioids, aspirin)
- Hemolytic disorders
- Multiple blood transfusions
- Cardiopulmonary bypass
- Submersion in water with water aspiration (especially in fresh water)

then go to the lungs. The clumped material injures lung capillaries, causing capillary leak and inflammation.

Other factors produce ARDS by direct injury to the lung. For example, aspiration of acidic gastric contents may obstruct or burn the airway. This type of direct injury destroys type I pneumocytes. Injured capillaries allow protein and cells to escape from the blood vessels into lung tissues. Lung radiation, submersion in water with aspiration, and inhalation of toxic gases all injure the alveolar and capillary tissue layers. Trauma, sepsis, drowning, and burns also cause the release of proteins (thromboplastins) that form fibrin clots in the blood. These clots, together with platelets and leukocytes, are filtered out in the lung. In many cases of ARDS, especially after trauma, clot production is increased and **fibrinolysis** (clot breakdown) is reduced. As a result, small emboli remain in the lung. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) plays a role in some patients.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

An increased genetic risk is suspected in the development and progression of ARDS. The inflammatory response clearly allows progression of an acute lung injury (ALI) to ARDS; however, not all patients with ALI progress to ARDS. It appears that patients who have hyperinflammatory responses to injury are more likely to develop ARDS (Workman & Winkelman, 2008) and their inflammatory response is genetically mediated. Ask about the patient's previous responses to infection or injury. If the patient has consistently had greater-than-expected inflammatory responses, he or she may be at increased risk for ARDS after ALI and should be closely monitored for manifestations of the disorder.

Incidence/Prevalence

The actual incidence of ARDS is unknown because it is part of other health problems and is not systematically reported as a separate disorder. A 2010 estimate suggested that 150,000 to 200,000 cases of ARDS occur yearly in North America (ARDS Foundation, 2010) although many health care professionals believe this estimate to be low.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The nursing priority in the prevention of ARDS is early recognition of patients at high risk for the syndrome. Because patients who aspirate gastric contents are at great risk, closely assess

and monitor those receiving tube feeding and those with problems that impair swallowing and gag reflexes. Follow meticulous infection control guidelines, including hand-washing, invasive catheter and wound care, and Contact Precautions. Teach unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) the importance of always adhering to infection control guidelines. Carefully observe patients who are being treated for any health problem associated with ARDS.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess the breathing of any patient at increased risk for ARDS. Determine whether increased work of breathing is present, as indicated by hyperpnea, noisy respiration, cyanosis, pallor, and retraction **intercostally** (between the ribs) or **substernally** (below the ribs). Document sweating, respiratory effort, and any change in mental status. *Abnormal lung sounds are not heard on auscultation because the edema occurs first in the interstitial spaces and not in the airways.* Assess vital signs at least hourly for hypotension, tachycardia, and dysrhythmias.

Diagnostic Assessment

The diagnosis of ARDS is established by a lowered partial pressure of arterial oxygen (Pao₂) value, determined by arterial blood gas (ABG) measurements. Because a widening alveolar oxygen gradient (increased fraction of inspired oxygen [Fio₂] does not lead to increased Pao₂ levels) develops with increased shunting of blood, the patient has a progressive need for higher levels of oxygen. He or she does not respond to high concentrations of oxygen (*refractory hypoxemia*) and often needs intubation and mechanical ventilation. A large difference between the predicted and actual alveolar oxygen tension indicates shunting. Sputum cultures obtained by bronchoscopy and by transtracheal aspiration are used to determine if a lung infection also is present.

The chest x-ray may show diffuse haziness or a “whited-out” (ground-glass) appearance of the lung. An ECG rules out cardiac problems and usually shows no specific changes. Hemodynamic monitoring with a pulmonary artery catheter helps diagnose ARDS. In ARDS, the pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) is low to normal, whereas in cardiac-induced pulmonary edema the PCWP is above 18 mm Hg. **Chapter 40** explains hemodynamic monitoring in detail.

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with ARDS often needs intubation and conventional mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) or continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP). Airway pressure-release ventilation (APRV) and high-frequency oscillatory ventilation are alternative modes of mechanical ventilation that improve oxygenation and ventilation in patients with moderate to severe ARDS (Rose, 2008). Sedation and paralysis may be needed for adequate ventilation and to reduce tissue oxygen needs. Because one of the side effects of PEEP is tension pneumothorax, assess lung sounds hourly and suction as often as needed to maintain a patent airway. Positioning may be important in promoting gas exchange, but the exact position is controversial. Some patients do better in the prone position, especially if it is started early

in the disease course. Prone positioning may be achieved using a mechanical turning device, although the turning equipment is awkward and care in the prone position is more difficult. Manually turning the patient every 2 hours had been shown to improve perfusion; however, this intervention often is not performed as frequently as needed (Winkelman & Chiang, 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box at right).

Drug and Fluid Therapy

Corticosteroids are used to manage ARDS because they decrease white blood cell movement, reduce inflammation, and stabilize capillary membranes. Their effectiveness, however, has not been determined. It is thought that they help reduce the fibrosis that occurs in late ARDS. Antibiotics are used to treat infections when organisms are identified.

Many interventions are under investigation, but none has been effective in improving survival. Such interventions include agents that modify the inflammatory responses and reduce oxidative stress (vitamins C and E, *N*-acetylcysteine), nitric oxide, and surfactant replacement.

Research shows that patients with ARDS who receive conservative fluid therapy have better lung function and a shorter duration of mechanical ventilation and ICU length of stay compared with those who receive more liberal fluid therapy. Conservative fluid therapy uses smaller amounts of IV fluid along with diuretics to maintain fluid balance, whereas liberal fluid therapy often results in greater positive fluid balance and more systemic edema.

Nutrition Therapy

The patient with ARDS is at risk for malnutrition, which further reduces respiratory muscle function and the immune response. Consultation with a dietitian is needed, and enteral nutrition (tube feeding) or parenteral nutrition is started as soon as possible.

Case Management

Case management of the patient with ARDS focuses on the phases of ARDS rather than on day-to-day care. The course of ARDS and its management are divided into four phases:

- **Phase 1.** This phase includes early changes of dyspnea and tachypnea. Early interventions focus on supporting the patient and providing oxygen.
- **Phase 2.** Patchy infiltrates form from increasing pulmonary edema. Interventions include mechanical ventilation and prevention of complications.
- **Phase 3.** This phase occurs over days 2 through 10, and the patient has increasing hypoxemia that responds poorly to high levels of oxygen. Interventions focus on delivering adequate oxygen, preventing complications, and supporting the lungs.
- **Phase 4.** Pulmonary fibrosis with progression occurs after 10 days. This phase is irreversible and is often called “late” or “chronic” ARDS. Patients who develop this stage and survive it will have some permanent lung damage. Interventions focus on preventing sepsis, pneumonia, and multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), as well as weaning the patient from the ventilator. The patient in this phase may be ventilator dependent for weeks to months. Care may occur in specialized units or facilities that focus on rehabilitation and long-term weaning. Some patients

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

To Turn or Not to Turn

Winkelman, C., & Chiang, L. (2010). Manual turns in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(4), 36-43.

Turning bedfast patients in any setting every 2 hours has been shown to reduce skin problems and other complications and is recommended as a best practice. However, in acute care settings, especially among patients being mechanically ventilated, performance of this practice is not consistent. Concern also has been raised about possible patient harm as a result of manual or automated turn/tilt practices in mechanically ventilated patients.

The authors reviewed the evidence and performed a meta-analysis related to frequency of turning (manual and automated) and turning positions in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. After a thorough search of electronic databases, reports from four clinical trials (including one with a quasi-experimental design), two additional systematic reviews, and two older meta-analyses were analyzed. Common outcome measures included presence of fever, length of stay, and occurrence of pressure ulcers.

Although some results indicated that incidence of pneumonia (as evidenced by the presence of fever) and lengths of stay were lower among patients who were turned, the data regarding decreased pressure ulcer formation and other complications were inconclusive. In addition, issues regarding the patient environment, including bedding surfaces, were not factored into determining best turning schedules or turning techniques. The majority of studies in this analysis were completed more than 20 years ago, had small sample sizes, and were not experimental in design. Evaluation methods varied by study and issues related to other common complications of prolonged bedrest during mechanical ventilation, such as urinary tract infections and adverse effects on hemodynamic stability.

Level of Evidence: 1

The results are based on a systematic review and meta-analysis of previous studies related to the outcomes among patients receiving mechanical ventilation who were turned compared with those who were not turned or who were turned less frequently. Results of this analysis do not demonstrate clear positive outcomes or harmful outcomes from turning bedfast patients receiving mechanical ventilation in intensive care settings every 2 hours.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

This article typifies the problem of generalizing known positive practices to all situations. Rather than relying on the “turn-every-2-hours regimens” that have demonstrated benefits for bedfast patients in the general population, the best turning schedules and techniques among bedfast patients being mechanically ventilated have yet to be determined. More frequent or less frequent turning may be needed. Manually turning patients who cannot help themselves is time-consuming and has resulted in staff injury. Automated turning devices are costly and not available in all settings.

At the present time, no evidence supports any specific schedule or position for turning bedfast patients requiring mechanical ventilation. One randomized controlled clinical trial is comparing the outcomes of 2-hour and 4-hour turning schedules. Another is comparing outcomes of manual turning versus automated turning. It is hoped that the results of these studies can clearly indicate which turning practices are best for populations of bedfast patients receiving mechanical ventilation. Until this evidence is known, the use of pressure-reducing/relieving devices, along with meticulous and continuous nursing assessment of individual patient responses to bedrest and turning/tilting, may be the safest practices.

may not be “weanable” and may go home or to a long-term care facility dependent on mechanical ventilation.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 21-year-old college student who went swimming in his apartment complex swimming pool after drinking 10 cans of beer. He hit his head on the side of the pool and was under water for about 2 minutes before his friends pulled him out. During CPR, he vomited a large amount before the emergency squad came to the scene. In the emergency department, he is unconscious and breathing on his own. Oral, nasal, and tracheal suctioning have produced stomach contents and fluid that smells strongly of chlorine. On auscultation, wheezes and mild crackles are present. The chest x-ray is normal, and these are the ABG values: pH = 7.28; PaO_2 = 88 mm Hg; Paco_2 = 58 mm Hg.

1. What factors could contribute to an acute lung injury in this patient?
2. Is this patient at risk for TRALI? Why or why not?
3. What is your interpretation of the ABG results?
4. Why does the current chest x-ray show no abnormalities?
5. Should this patient be intubated and mechanically ventilated at this time? Why or why not?
6. What are your care priorities for this patient at this time?

THE PATIENT REQUIRING INTUBATION AND VENTILATION

Pathophysiology

With mechanical ventilation, the patient who has severe problems of gas exchange may be supported until the underlying problem improves or resolves. Usually mechanical ventilation is a temporary life-support technique. The need for this support may be lifelong for those with severe restrictive lung disease or chronic progressive neuromuscular disease that reduces ventilation.

Mechanical ventilation is most often used for patients with hypoxemia and progressive alveolar hypoventilation with respiratory acidosis. The hypoxemia is usually due to pulmonary shunting of blood when other methods of oxygen delivery do not provide a sufficiently high fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2). Mechanical ventilation may be used for patients who need ventilatory support after surgery, those

who expend too much energy with breathing and barely maintain adequate gas exchange, or those who have general anesthesia or heavy sedation.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assess the patient to be intubated in the same way as for other breathing problems. Once mechanical ventilation has been started, assess the respiratory system on an ongoing basis. Monitor and assess for problems related to the artificial airway or ventilator.

Endotracheal Intubation

The patient who needs mechanical ventilation must have an artificial airway. The most common type of airway for a short-term basis is the endotracheal (ET) tube. A tracheostomy is considered if an artificial airway is needed for longer than 10 to 14 days (see Chapter 30) to reduce tracheal and vocal cord damage. The purposes of intubation are to maintain a patent airway, provide a means to remove secretions, and provide ventilation and oxygen.

Endotracheal Tube. An ET tube is a long polyvinyl chloride tube that is passed through the mouth or nose and into the trachea (Fig. 34-3). When properly positioned, the tip of the ET tube rests about 2 cm above the **carina** (the point at which the trachea divides into the right and left bronchi). Oral intubation is a fast and easy way to establish an airway and is often performed as an emergency procedure. The nasal route is used for facial or oral traumas/surgeries and when oral intubation is not possible. This route is not used if the patient has a blood clotting problem. An anesthesiologist, nurse anesthetist, or pulmonologist usually performs the intubation.

The shaft of the ET tube has a radiopaque line running the length of the tube. This line shows on x-ray and is used to determine correct tube placement. Short horizontal lines (depth markings) are used to place the tube correctly at the naris or mouth (at the incisor tooth) and to identify how far the tube has been inserted.

The cuff at the distal end of the tube is inflated after placement and can create a seal between the trachea and the cuff. The seal ensures delivery of a set tidal volume when mechanical ventilation is used. When the cuff is inflated to an adequate sealing volume, a minimal amount of air can pass around the cuff to the vocal cords, nose, or mouth. The

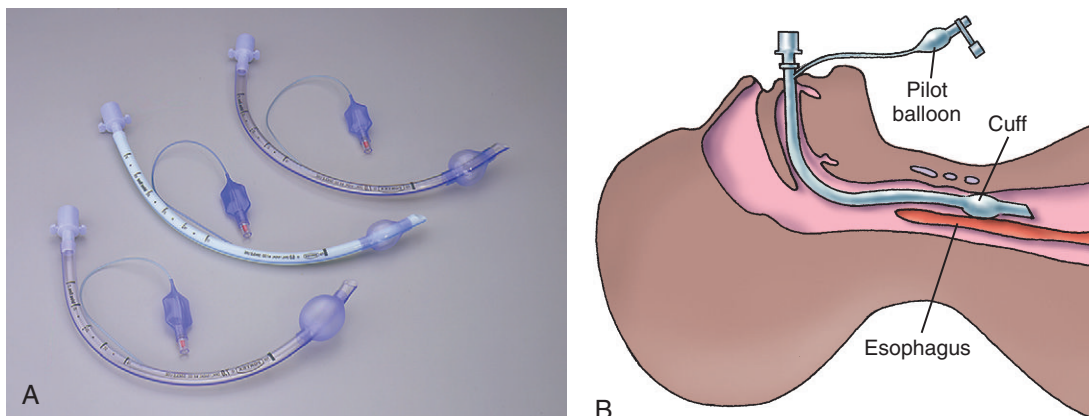


FIG. 34-3 A, Endotracheal tubes. B, Correct placement of an oral endotracheal tube.

patient cannot talk when the cuff is inflated. The cuff should be inflated using a minimal-leak technique.

The pilot balloon with a one-way valve permits air to be inserted into the cuff and prevents air from escaping. This balloon is a guide for determining when air is present in the cuff but not how much or how little air is present.

The adaptor connects the ET tube to ventilator tubing or to an oxygen delivery system. The ET tube size is listed on the shaft of the tube. Adult tube sizes range from 7 to 9 mm. Tube size selected is based on the size of the patient.

Preparing for Intubation. Know the proper procedure for summoning intubation personnel in the facility to the bedside in an emergency situation. Explain the procedure to the patient as clearly as possible. *Basic life support measures, such as obtaining a patent airway and delivering 100% oxygen by a manual resuscitation bag with a facemask, are crucial to survival until help arrives.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient requiring emergency intubation and ventilation, bring the code (or “crash”) cart, airway equipment box, and suction equipment (often already on the code cart) to the bedside. Maintain a patent airway through positioning and the insertion of an oral or nasopharyngeal airway until the patient is intubated.

During intubation, the nurse coordinates the response and continuously monitors for changes in vital signs, signs of hypoxia or hypoxemia, dysrhythmias, and aspiration. Ensure that each intubation attempt lasts no longer than 30 seconds, preferably less than 15 seconds. After 30 seconds, provide oxygen by means of a mask and manual resuscitation bag to prevent hypoxia and cardiac arrest. Suction as necessary.

Verifying Tube Placement. Immediately after an ET tube is inserted, placement should be verified. The most accurate ways to verify placement are by checking end-tidal carbon dioxide levels and by chest x-ray. Assess for breath sounds bilaterally, symmetric chest movement, and air emerging from the ET tube. If breath sounds and chest wall movement are absent on the left side, the tube may be in the right main-stem bronchus. The person intubating the patient should be able to reposition the tube without repeating the entire intubation procedure.

If the tube is in the stomach, the abdomen may be distended and must be decompressed with the insertion of a nasogastric (NG) tube. Monitor chest wall movement and breath sounds until tube placement is verified by x-ray.

Stabilizing the Tube. The nurse, respiratory therapist, or anesthesia provider stabilizes the ET tube at the mouth or nose. The tube is marked at the level where it touches the incisor tooth or naris. Two people working together use a head halter technique to secure the tube. [Chart 34-9](#) outlines best practices for securing an oral or nasal ET tube.

An oral airway also may be inserted or a commercial bite block placed to keep the patient from biting an oral endotracheal tube. One person stabilizes the tube at the correct position and prevents head movement while a second person applies the tape. After the procedure is completed, verify and document the presence of bilateral and equal breath sounds and the level of the tube.

Nursing Care. Assess tube placement, cuff leak, breath sounds, and chest wall movement regularly. Prevent pulling or tugging on the tube by the patient to prevent dislodgment or “slipping” of the tube, and check the pilot balloon to ensure that the cuff is inflated. Suctioning, coughing, and speaking can cause dislodgment. Neck flexion moves the tube away from the carina; neck extension moves the tube closer to the carina. Rotation of the head also causes the tube to move. Mouth secretions and tongue movement can loosen the tape and change the tube’s position. When other measures fail, obtain a prescription for soft wrist restraints and apply these for the patient who is pulling on the tube. *Restraints are used as a last resort to prevent accidental extubation.* Adequate sedation (chemical restraint) may be needed to decrease agitation or prevent extubation. Obtain permission for restraints from the patient or family. More information on airway management is found in [Chapter 30](#).

Complications of an ET or nasotracheal tube can occur during placement, while in place, during extubation, or after extubation (either early or late). Trauma and other problems can occur to the face; eye; nasal and paranasal areas; oral, pharyngeal, bronchial, tracheal, and pulmonary areas; esophageal and gastric areas; and cardiovascular, musculoskeletal, and neurologic systems.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which assessment finding in a client with an endotracheal tube most strongly indicates to the nurse that the tube remains correctly in the trachea and is not in the esophagus?

- A. Stomach contents cannot be aspirated.
- B. Oxygen saturation is greater than 50%.
- C. End-tidal carbon dioxide level is 38 mm Hg.
- D. No air is heard in the stomach when auscultated with a stethoscope.

Mechanical Ventilation

Mechanical ventilation to support and maintain gas exchange is widely used in many settings, not just in critical care units. The nurse plays a pivotal role in the coordination of care and the prevention of problems. [Chart 34-10](#) lists best practices for patient care during mechanical ventilation.

The purposes of mechanical ventilation are to improve gas exchange and to decrease the work needed for effective breathing. It is used to support the patient until lung function is adequate or until the acute episode has passed. *A ventilator does not cure diseased lungs; it provides ventilation until the patient can resume the process of breathing.* Remember *why* the patient is using the ventilator so that management efforts also focus on correcting the causes of the respiratory failure. If normal oxygenation, ventilation, and respiratory muscle strength are achieved, mechanical ventilation can be discontinued.

Types of Ventilators. Many types of ventilators are available. The ventilator selected depends on the severity of the breathing problem and the length of time ventilator support is needed. Most ventilators are positive-pressure ventilators. During inspiration, pressure is generated that pushes air into the lungs and expands the chest. Usually, an endotracheal (ET) tube or tracheostomy is needed. Positive-pressure ventilators are classified by the mechanism that ends inspiration

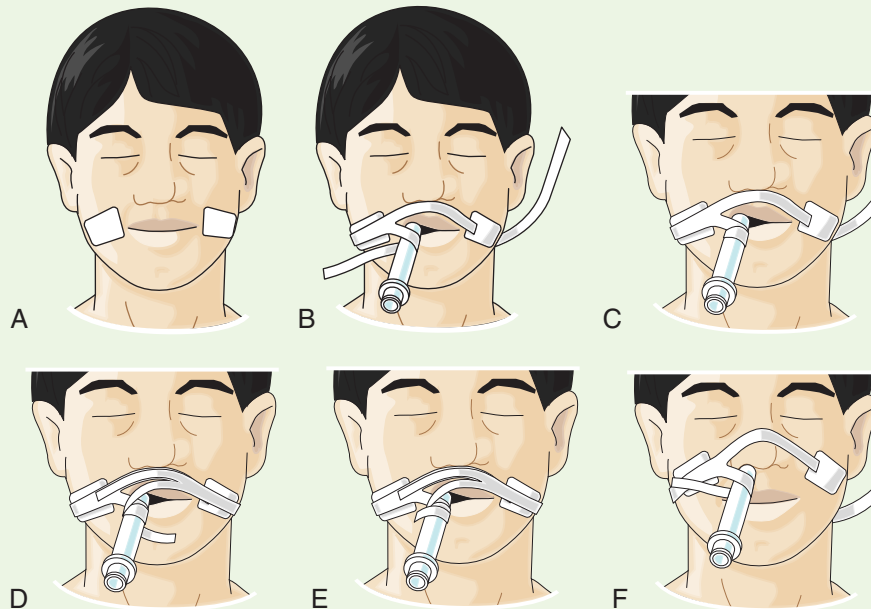
CHART 34-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Securing an Oral and Nasal Endotracheal Tube

Adhesive tape is the easiest, least expensive, and most commonly used method to secure endotracheal (ET) and nasotracheal tubes.

However, adhesive tape may be irritating to the skin, and frequent tape changes may tear the skin. Another reported complication is a fungal infection occurring around the surgical tape securing the ET tube.

Protecting the skin, especially on the face, is a high priority for patients and nurses. This must be balanced against making sure the ET tube is not dislodged. A simple yet effective method of securing oral and nasotracheal tubes is demonstrated here:



1. Prepare the skin by shaving the cheeks and upper lip, if possible.
2. Protect the skin by applying tincture of benzoin to the skin and to the exposed part of the ET tube and allow to dry (Mastisol may also be used, but Detachol must be used before removing the tape); then apply a 1 × 3-inch piece of thin DuoDerm or other protective or hydrocolloid membrane to the skin on the cheeks (A).
3. Lay a 30-inch (about 2½-foot) piece of adhesive tape on a flat surface, sticky side up. Cover the middle portion of the tape with another piece of tape (about 10 inches long) (sticky side to sticky side) to protect the back of the patient's neck. A tongue blade on each end folded over can keep it from getting tangled or sticking prematurely.
4. Place the tape behind the patient's neck. Remove the tongue blades, and place the tape on the protective membrane up to the end of the mouth on each side. Trim the tape as needed, and split each end of the tape. On the ends of the tape that will be wrapped around the tube, fold the tape so that the sticky sides meet to form a small tab that will make tape removal easier.
5. Place the upper part of one end of the tape on the upper lip. Wrap the lower part of the tape securely around the tube (B, C). Place the upper part of the other end of the tape on the upper lip, and wrap the lower part securely around the tube (D, E). Do not have the tube too far to either side of the mouth, or it can cause skin breakdown in the corner of the mouth or lips.
6. The same method can be used for nasal tubes, but do not tape the tube too tightly to the nose or skin breakdown will occur on the naris (F).

7. *Always tape the tube to the upper lip; never the lower.* The lower jaw moves too much, which moves the tube and causes irritation and discomfort for the patient. Inspect the tape at least every shift for signs of loosening or skin irritation or breakdown, especially with increased oral secretions. Check tightness of the tape each shift if swelling in the face and neck occurs or if there is an increase in fluid retention (as in anasarca, sepsis, or ARDS).

An additional technique for securing tubing that can decrease ET tube movement and provide a fulcrum for pulling on ventilator tubing is to attach a 6-inch (50-mL) piece of flexible ventilator tubing between the ET tube adaptor and the Y-connector of the ventilator tubing. The procedure for this technique is:

1. Shave the chest or clean with alcohol a portion of the chest at right angles to the angle of Louis. Apply tincture of benzoin, and allow to dry.
2. Prepare Montgomery straps by taking two 6-inch pieces of 2-inch-wide adhesive tape. Double-back one end of each piece of tape, and cut a small hole in the ends that are doubled over.
3. Apply the tape to the prepared chest with the ends with the hole over each other. Thread a 12-inch piece of twill (trach) tape through both holes. Position the tubing with the Y-connector over the holes, and tie into place. This procedure allows all pulling on the tubing to place strain on the tape (straps) and not on the face or the tube.

and starts expiration. Inspiration is cycled in three major ways: pressure-cycled, time-cycled, or volume-cycled.

Pressure-cycled ventilators push air into the lungs until a preset airway pressure is reached. Tidal volumes and inspiratory time vary. These ventilators are used for short periods, such as just after surgery and for respiratory therapy. Bi-level positive airway pressure (Bi-PAP) ventilators are a modern form of pressure-cycled ventilator in which the ventilator provides a preset inspiratory pressure and an expiratory pressure similar to positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP).

Time-cycled ventilators push air into the lungs until a preset time has elapsed. Tidal volume and pressure vary, depending on the needs of the patient and the type of ventilator.

Volume-cycled ventilators push air into the lungs until a preset volume is delivered. A constant tidal volume is delivered regardless of the pressure needed to deliver the tidal volume. A set pressure limit, however, prevents excessive pressure from being exerted on the lungs. The advantage of this type of ventilator is that a constant tidal volume is delivered regardless of changes in lung or chest wall compliance or in airway resistance.

Microprocessor ventilators are computer-managed positive-pressure ventilators. A computer is built into the ventilator to allow ongoing monitoring of ventilatory functions, alarms, and patient conditions. It often has components of volume-, time-, and pressure-cycled ventilators. These ventilators are more responsive to patients who have severe lung disease and

those who need prolonged weaning trials. Examples are the Draeger Evita XL (Fig. 34-4) and Puritan-Bennett 840.

Modes of Ventilation. The mode of ventilation is the way in which the patient receives breaths from the ventilator.

Assist-control (AC) ventilation is used often as a resting mode. The ventilator takes over the work of breathing for the patient. The tidal volume and ventilatory rate are



FIG. 34-4 Display signals, alarms, and control panel of a typical volume-cycled ventilator.

CHART 34-10 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient Receiving Mechanical Ventilation

- Assess the patient's respiratory status at least every 4 hours for the first 24 hours and then as needed:
 - Take vital signs at least every 4 hours.
 - Assess the patient's color (especially lips and nail beds).
 - Observe the patient's chest for bilateral expansion.
 - Assess the placement of the nasotracheal or endotracheal tube.
 - Obtain pulse oximetry reading.
 - Evaluate ABGs as available.
 - Maintain head of the bed more than 30 degrees when patient is supine to prevent aspiration and ventilator-associated pneumonia.
- Document pertinent observations in the patient's medical record.
- Check at least every 8 hours to be sure the ventilator setting is as prescribed.
- Check to be sure alarms are set (especially low-pressure and low-exhaled volume).
- If the patient is on PEEP, observe the peak airway pressure dial to determine the proper level of PEEP.
- Check the exhaled volume digital display to be sure the patient is receiving the prescribed tidal volume.
- Empty ventilator tubings when moisture collects. *Never empty fluid in the tubing back into the cascade.*
- Ensure humidity by keeping delivered air temperature maintained at body temperature.
- Be sure the tracheostomy cuff (or endotracheal cuff) is adequately inflated to ensure tidal volume.
- Auscultate the lungs for crackles, wheezes, equal breath sounds, and decreased or absent breath sounds.
- Check the patient's need for tracheal, oral, or nasal suctioning every 2 hours, and suction as needed.
- Assess the patient's mouth around the ET tube for pressure ulcers.
- Perform mouth care every 2 hours.
- Change tracheostomy tape or endotracheal tube tape as needed:
 - Carefully move the oral endotracheal tube to the opposite side of the mouth once daily to prevent ulcers.
 - Provide tracheostomy care every 8 hours.
- Assess ventilated patients for GI distress (diarrhea, constipation, tarry stools).
- Maintain accurate intake and output records to monitor fluid balance.
- Turn the patient at least every 2 hours, and get the patient out of bed as prescribed to promote pulmonary hygiene and prevent complications of immobility.
- Schedule treatments and nursing care at intervals for rest.
- Monitor the patient's progress on current ventilator settings, and make appropriate changes, as indicated.
- Monitor the patient for the effectiveness of mechanical ventilation in terms of his or her physiologic and psychological status.
- Monitor for adverse effects of mechanical ventilation: infection, barotrauma, reduced cardiac output.
- Position the patient to facilitate ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}/\dot{Q}$ matching ("good lung down")), as appropriate.
- Monitor the effects of ventilator changes on oxygenation and the patient's subjective response.
- Monitor readiness to wean.
- Explain all procedures and treatments; provide access to a call light; visit the patient frequently.
- Provide a method of communication. Request consultation with a speech-language pathologist for assistance, if necessary.
- Initiate relaxation techniques, as appropriate.
- Administer muscle-paralyzing agents, sedatives, and narcotic analgesics, as prescribed.
- Include the patient and family whenever possible (especially during suctioning and tracheostomy care).

preset. If the patient does not have spontaneous breaths, a ventilatory pattern is established by the ventilator. It is programmed to respond to the patient's inspiratory effort if he or she begins a breath. In this case, the ventilator delivers the preset tidal volume while allowing the patient to control the breathing rate.

A disadvantage of the AC mode is that the ventilator continues to deliver a preset tidal volume even when the patient's spontaneous breathing rate increases. This can cause hyperventilation and respiratory alkalosis. Investigate and correct causes of hyperventilation, such as pain, anxiety, or acid-base imbalances.

Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV) is similar to AC ventilation in that tidal volume and ventilatory rate are preset. If the patient does not breathe, a ventilatory pattern is established by the ventilator. Unlike the AC mode, SIMV allows spontaneous breathing at the patient's own rate and tidal volume between the ventilator breaths. It can be used as a main ventilatory mode or as a weaning mode. When used for weaning, the number of mechanical breaths (SIMV breaths) is gradually decreased (e.g., from 12 to 2) and the patient gradually resumes spontaneous breathing. The mandatory ventilator breaths are delivered when the patient is ready to inspire. This action coordinates breathing between the ventilator and the patient.

Bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP) provides noninvasive pressure support ventilation by nasal mask or face-mask. It is most often used for patients with sleep apnea but also may be used for patients with respiratory muscle fatigue to avoid more invasive ventilation methods.

Other modes of ventilation, such as pressure support and continuous flow (flow-by), are part of most microprocessor ventilators. Both types decrease the work of breathing and are used for weaning patients from mechanical ventilation. Other modes are maximum mandatory ventilation (MMV), inverse inspiration-expiration (I/E) ratio, permissive hypercarbia, airway pressure-release ventilation (APRV), proportional assist ventilation, and high-frequency oscillation. Most modes use special ventilators, tubing, or airways.

Ventilator Controls and Settings. The volume-cycled ventilator is the most widely used type in the acute care setting. Regardless of the type of volume-cycled ventilator used, the controls and types of settings are universal (see Fig. 34-4). The physician prescribes the ventilator settings, and usually the ventilator is readied or set up by the respiratory department. The nurse assists in connecting the patient to the ventilator and monitors the ventilator settings.

Tidal volume (V_T) is the volume of air the patient receives with each breath, as measured on either inspiration or expiration. The average prescribed V_T ranges between 7 and 10 mL/kg of body weight. Adding a zero to a patient's weight in kilograms gives an estimate of tidal volume.

Rate, or breaths/min, is the number of ventilator breaths delivered per minute. The rate is usually set between 10 and 14 breaths/min.

Fraction of inspired oxygen (F_{IO_2}) is the oxygen level delivered to the patient. The prescribed F_{IO_2} is based on the ABG values and the patient's condition. The range is 21% to 100% oxygen.

The oxygen delivered to the patient is warmed to body temperature (98.6° F [37° C]) and humidified to 100%. This is needed because upper air passages of the respiratory tree,

which normally warm and humidify air, are bypassed. Humidifying and warming prevent mucosal damage.

Peak airway (inspiratory) pressure (PIP) is the pressure used by the ventilator to deliver a set tidal volume at a given lung compliance. The PIP value appears on the display of the ventilator. It is the highest pressure reached during inspiration. Monitoring trends in PIP reflect changes in resistance of the lungs and resistance in the ventilator. An increased PIP reading means increased airway resistance in the patient or in the ventilator tubing (bronchospasm or pinched tubing), increased secretions, pulmonary edema, or decreased pulmonary compliance (the lungs or chest wall is "stiffer" or harder to inflate). An upper pressure limit is set to prevent barotrauma. When the limit is reached, the high-pressure alarm sounds and the remaining volume is not given.

Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) applies positive airway pressure throughout the entire respiratory cycle for spontaneously breathing patients. Sedating drugs are given lightly if at all when the patient is receiving CPAP so that respiratory effort is not suppressed. CPAP keeps the alveoli open during inspiration and prevents alveolar collapse during expiration. This process increases functional residual capacity (FRC) and improves oxygenation.

CPAP is commonly used to help in the weaning process. During CPAP, no ventilator breaths are delivered. The ventilator just delivers oxygen and provides monitoring and an alarm system. The respiratory pattern is determined by the patient's efforts. Normal levels of CPAP are 5 to 15 cm H₂O to promote adequate oxygenation. If no pressure is set, the patient receives no positive pressure. Thus the patient is then using the ventilator as a T-piece with alarms. Modifications of CPAP include nasal CPAP and BiPAP, which are used on a very temporary basis for select problems.

Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) is positive pressure exerted during expiration. PEEP improves oxygenation by enhancing gas exchange and preventing atelectasis. It is used to treat persistent hypoxemia that does not improve with an acceptable oxygen delivery level. It may be added when the arterial oxygen pressure (P_{aO_2}) remains low with an F_{IO_2} of 50% to 70% or greater.

The need for PEEP indicates a severe gas-exchange problem. *It is important to lower the F_{IO_2} delivered whenever possible because prolonged use of a high F_{IO_2} can damage lungs from the toxic effects of oxygen.* PEEP prevents alveoli from collapsing because the lungs are kept partially inflated so that alveolar-capillary gas exchange is promoted throughout the ventilatory cycle. The effect should be an increase in arterial blood oxygenation so that the F_{IO_2} can be decreased.

PEEP is "dialed in" on the control panel. The amount of PEEP is usually 5 to 15 cm H₂O and is monitored on the peak airway pressure dial, the same dial used to read the PIP. When PEEP is added, the dial does not return to zero at the end of exhalation; rather, it returns to a baseline that is increased from zero by the amount of PEEP applied.

Flow rate is how fast each breath is delivered and is usually set at 40 L/min. *If a patient is agitated or restless, has a widely fluctuating inspiratory pressure reading, or has other signs of air hunger, the flow may be set too low. Increasing the flow should be tried before using chemical restraints.*

Other settings may be used, depending on the type of ventilator and mode of ventilation. Examples include inspiratory

and expiratory cycle, waveform, expiratory resistance, and plateau.

Nursing Management. The use of mechanical ventilation involves a collaborative and complex decision-making process for the patient and family and the health care team. Address the physical and psychological concerns of the patient and family because the mechanical ventilator often causes them anxiety. Explain the purpose of the ventilator, and acknowledge that the patient might feel some different sensations. Encourage the patient and family to express their concerns. Act as the coach to help and support them through this experience. Patients undergoing mechanical ventilation in ICUs often experience delirium, or “ICU psychosis.” These patients need frequent, repeated explanations and reassurance.

When caring for a ventilated patient, be concerned with the patient first and the ventilator second. It is vital to understand why mechanical ventilation is needed. Causes such as excessive amounts of secretions, sepsis, and trauma require different interventions for ventilator independence. In addition, understand the patient’s chronic health problems, especially chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), left-sided heart failure, anemia, and malnutrition. These problems may slow weaning from mechanical ventilation and require close monitoring and intervention.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The nursing priorities in caring for the patient during mechanical ventilation are monitoring and evaluating patient responses, managing the ventilator system safely, and preventing complications.

Monitoring the Patient’s Response. Monitor, evaluate, and document the patient’s response to the ventilator. Assess vital signs and listen to breath sounds every 30 to 60 minutes at first. Monitor respiratory parameters (e.g., capnography, pulse oximetry), and check ABG values.

Assess the breathing pattern in relation to the ventilatory cycle to determine whether the patient is tolerating or fighting the ventilator. Assess and record breath sounds, including bilateral equal breath sounds to ensure proper endotracheal (ET) tube placement. Determine the need for suctioning by observing secretions for type, color, and amount.

Assess the area around the ET tube or tracheostomy site at least every 4 hours for color, tenderness, skin irritation, and drainage, and document the findings. Monitoring provides information to guide the patient’s activities, such as weaning, physical or occupational therapy, and self-care. Pace activities to ensure adequate oxygenation and effective ventilation. Interpret ABG values to evaluate ventilation, and suggest ventilator settings that help the patient.

The nurse spends the most time with the patient and is often the first person to recognize changes in vital signs or

ABG values, fatigue, or distress. Promptly coordinate with the physician and implement the appropriate interventions.

Serve as a resource for the psychological needs of the patient and family. Anxiety can reduce tolerance for mechanical ventilation. Skilled and sensitive nursing care promotes emotional well-being and synchrony with the ventilator. The patient cannot speak, and communication can be frustrating and anxiety producing. The patient may panic for fear that the voice has been lost. Reassure them that the ET tube prevents speech only temporarily.

Plan methods of communication to meet the patient’s needs, such as a slate, picture board, pen and paper, alphabet board, or programmable speech-generating device (Rodriguez & Rowe, 2010). Finding a successful means for communication is important because the patient often feels isolated as a result of the inability to speak. (See Chart 31-2 in Chapter 31.) Try to anticipate his or her needs and provide easy access to frequently used belongings. Visits from family, friends, and pets and keeping a call light within reach are some ways of giving patients a sense of control over the environment. Urge them to participate in self-care.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A 6-foot, 6-inch tall 38-year-old man is being mechanically ventilated at a tidal volume of 500 mL and a respiratory rate of 16 breaths per minute. His most recent arterial blood gas (ABG) results are: pH = 7.33; PaO₂ = 85 mm Hg; PaCO₂ = 55 mm Hg. What is the nurse’s interpretation of these results?

- A. Ventilation is adequate to maintain oxygenation.
- B. Ventilation is excessive; respiratory alkalosis is present.
- C. Ventilation is inadequate; respiratory acidosis is present.
- D. Ventilation status cannot be determined from the information presented.

Managing the Ventilator System. Ventilator settings are prescribed by the physician in conjunction with the respiratory therapist. Settings include tidal volume, respiratory rate, fraction of inspired oxygen (Fio₂), and mode of ventilation (assist-control [AC] ventilation, synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation [SIMV], and adjunctive modes, such as positive end-expiratory pressure [PEEP], pressure support, or continuous flow).

Perform and document ventilator checks according to the standards of the unit or facility. Respond promptly to alarms. During a ventilator check, compare the prescribed ventilator settings with the actual settings. Check the level of water in the humidifier and the temperature of the humidifying system to ensure that they are not too high. Temperature extremes damage the airway mucosa. Remove any condensation in the ventilator tubing by draining water into drainage collection receptacles, and empty them every shift.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient develops respiratory distress during mechanical ventilation, immediately remove the ventilator and provide ventilation with a bag-valve mask device. This action allows quick determination of whether the problem is with the ventilator or with the patient.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Action Alert

To prevent bacterial contamination, do not allow moisture and water in the ventilator tubing to enter the humidifier.

Mechanical ventilators have alarm systems that warn of a problem with either the patient or the ventilator. *Alarm systems must be activated and functional at all times. If the cause*

of the alarm cannot be determined, ventilate the patient manually with a resuscitation bag until the problem is corrected by another health care professional. The major alarms on a ventilator indicate either a high pressure or a low exhaled volume. Table 34-4 lists interventions for causes of ventilator alarms.

Assess and care for the ET or tracheostomy tube. Maintain a patent airway by suctioning when these are present:

- Secretions
- Increased peak airway (inspiratory) pressure (PIP)
- Rhonchi (wheezes)
- Decreased breath sounds

Proper care of the ET or tracheostomy tube also ensures a patent airway. Assess tube position at least every 2 hours, especially when the airway is attached to heavy ventilator tubing that may pull on the tube. Position the ventilator tubing in such a way that the patient can move without pulling on the ET or tracheostomy tube. If the ET moves, it could slip into the right mainstem bronchus. To detect changes in tube position, mark it where the tube touches the patient's teeth or nose. Give mouth care at least every 8 hours for hygiene and to prevent loosening of the tape that holds the tube.

Special attention is needed for the patient being transported while receiving mechanical ventilation. Monitor Spo₂

during transport to assess ET tube placement and adequacy of ventilation.

Preventing Complications. Most problems are caused by the positive pressure from the ventilator. Nearly every body system is affected.

Cardiac problems from mechanical ventilation include hypotension and fluid retention. Hypotension is caused by positive pressure that increases chest pressure and inhibits blood return to the heart. The decreased blood return reduces cardiac output, causing hypotension. Hypotension is most often seen in patients who are dehydrated or need high PIP for ventilation. Teach the patient to avoid a **Valsalva maneuver** (bearing down while holding the breath).

Fluid is retained because of decreased cardiac output. The kidneys receive less blood flow, which stimulates the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system to retain fluid. Humidified air in the ventilator system contributes to fluid retention. Monitor the patient's fluid intake and output, weight, hydration, and signs of hypovolemia.

Lung problems from mechanical ventilation include **barotrauma** (damage to the lungs by positive pressure), **volutrauma** (damage to the lung by excess volume delivered to one lung over the other), and acid-base imbalance.

TABLE 34-4 NURSING INTERVENTIONS FOR VARIOUS CAUSES OF VENTILATOR ALARMS

CAUSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS
High-Pressure Alarm (sounds when peak inspiratory pressure reaches the set alarm limit [usually set 10-20 mm Hg above the patient's baseline PIP])	
An increased amount of secretions or a mucus plug is in the airways.	Suction as needed.
The patient coughs, gags, or bites on the oral ET tube.	Insert oral airway to prevent biting on the ET tube.
The patient is anxious or fights the ventilator.	Provide emotional support to decrease anxiety. Increase the flow rate. Explain all procedures to the patient. Provide sedation or paralyzing agent per the physician's prescription.
Airway size decreases related to wheezing or bronchospasm.	Auscultate breath sounds.
Pneumothorax occurs.	Alert the physician or Rapid Response Team for management of bronchospasm. Auscultate breath sounds. Alert the physician or Rapid Response Team about a new onset of decreased breath sounds or unequal chest excursion, which may be due to pneumothorax.
The artificial airway is displaced; the ET tube may have slipped into the right mainstem bronchus.	Assess the chest for unequal breath sounds and chest excursion. Obtain a chest x-ray as ordered to evaluate the position of the ET tube. After the proper position is verified, tape the tube securely in place.
Obstruction in tubing occurs because the patient is lying on the tubing or there is water or a kink in the tubing.	Assess the system, moving from the artificial airway toward the ventilator.
There is increased PIP associated with deliverance of a sigh.	Empty water from the ventilator tubing, and remove any kinks. Coordinate with respiratory therapist or physician to adjust the pressure alarm.
Decreased compliance of the lung is noted; a trend of gradually increasing PIP is noted over several hours or a day.	Evaluate the reasons for the decreased compliance of the lungs. Increased PIP occurs in ARDS, pneumonia, or any worsening of pulmonary disease.
Low Exhaled Volume (or Low-Pressure) Alarm (sounds when there is a disconnection or leak in the ventilator circuit or a leak in the patient's artificial airway cuff)	
A leak in the ventilator circuit prevents breath from being delivered.	Assess all connections and all ventilator tubings for disconnection.
The patient stops spontaneous breathing in the SIMV or CPAP mode or on pressure support ventilation.	Evaluate the patient's tolerance of the mode.
A cuff leak occurs in the ET or tracheostomy tube.	Evaluate the patient for a cuff leak. A cuff leak is suspected when the patient can talk (air escapes from the mouth) or when the pilot balloon on the artificial airway is flat (see Tracheostomy Tubes section in Chapter 30).

ARDS, Acute respiratory distress syndrome; CPAP, continuous positive airway pressure; ET, endotracheal; PIP, peak inspiratory pressure; SIMV, synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation.

Barotrauma includes pneumothorax, subcutaneous emphysema, and pneumomediastinum. Patients at highest risk for barotrauma have chronic airflow limitation (CAL), have blebs or bullae, are on PEEP, have dynamic hyperinflation, or require high pressures to ventilate the lungs (because of “stiff” lungs, as seen in acute respiratory distress syndrome [ARDS]). Blood gas problems can be corrected by ventilator changes and adjustment of fluid and electrolyte imbalances.

GI and nutritional problems result from the stress of mechanical ventilation. Stress ulcers occur in many patients receiving mechanical ventilation. These ulcers complicate the nutritional status and, because the mucosa is not intact, increase the risk for systemic infection. Antacids, sucralfate (Carafate, Sulcrate ) , and histamine blockers such as ranitidine (Zantac) or proton-pump inhibitors such as esomeprazole (Nexium) may be prescribed as soon as the patient is intubated. Changes in chest and abdominal cavity pressure can lead to a paralytic ileus. This problem reduces nutrient absorption through the GI system, requiring short-term parenteral nutritional support.

Because many other acute or life-threatening events occur at the same time, nutrition is often neglected. Malnutrition is an extreme problem for these patients and is a main reason for failure to wean from the ventilator. In malnutrition, the respiratory muscles lose mass and strength. The diaphragm, the major muscle of inspiration, is affected early. When it and other respiratory muscles are weak, ineffective breathing results, fatigue occurs, and the patient cannot be weaned.

Balanced nutrition, whether by diet, enteral feedings, or parenteral feeding, is essential during ventilation (Racco, 2009). Also, nutrition for the patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) requires a reduction in the percentage of carbohydrates in the diet. During metabolism, carbohydrates are broken down to glucose, which then produces energy, carbon dioxide, and water. Excessive carbohydrate loads increase carbon dioxide production, which the patient with COPD may be unable to exhale. Hypercarbic respiratory failure results. Nutritional formulas with a higher fat content (e.g., Pulmocare, Nutri-Vent, intralipids) are calorie sources to combat this problem.

Electrolyte replacement is also important because electrolytes influence muscle function. Monitor potassium, calcium, magnesium, and phosphate levels, and replace them as prescribed.

Infections are a threat for the patient using a ventilator, especially ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP). The ET or tracheostomy tube bypasses the body’s filtering process and provides a direct access for bacteria to enter the lower respiratory system. The artificial airway is colonized with bacteria within 48 hours, which promotes pneumonia development and increases morbidity. Aspiration of colonized fluid from the mouth or the stomach can be a source of infection. *Infection prevention through strict adherence to infection control, especially handwashing during suctioning and care of the tracheostomy or ET tube, is essential.* To prevent pneumonia, perform oral care every 2 hours and implement pulmonary hygiene, including chest physiotherapy, postural drainage, and turning and positioning (Halm & Armola, 2009). Information on VAP can be found in [Chapter 33](#).

Muscle deconditioning and weakness can occur because of immobility. Getting the patient out of bed and having him or

her ambulate with help and perform exercises not only improve muscle strength but also boost morale, enhance gas exchange, and promote oxygen delivery to all muscles (Winkelman, 2009).

Ventilator dependence is the inability to wean off the ventilator. This problem usually has a physiologic basis but can be psychological. The longer a patient uses a ventilator, the more difficult is the weaning process because the respiratory muscles fatigue and cannot assume breathing. The health care team uses every method of weaning before a patient is declared “unweanable.”

Collaborate with the physician, social worker or psychologist, and a member of the clergy to discuss with the patient and family the patient’s quality of life, goals, and values. As a result of this discussion, arrange for home ventilation, nursing home placement, or withdrawal of life support (in terminal cases). Special units and facilities can maximize the rehabilitation and weaning of ventilator-dependent patients.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

At the hourly assessment of an intubated client after positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) has been discontinued, the nurse notes all of the following changes. For which one does the nurse notify the physician?

- A. The client is now talking around the endotracheal tube.
- B. Breath sounds are reduced over the left lung compared with the right.
- C. Oxygen saturation has increased from 90% to 95% at an FiO_2 of 40%.
- D. The PIP dial now drops to zero at the end of exhalation instead of to only 10 cm H_2O .

Weaning. Weaning is the process of going from ventilatory dependence to spontaneous breathing. The process is prolonged by complications. Many problems can be reduced with good nursing care. For example, turning and positioning the patient not only promote comfort and prevent skin breakdown but also improve gas exchange and prevent pneumonia and atelectasis. [Table 34-5](#) lists various weaning techniques.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The older patient, especially one who has smoked or who has a chronic lung problem such as COPD, is at risk for ventilator dependence and failure to wean. Age-related changes, such as increased chest wall stiffness, reduced ventilatory muscle strength, and decreased lung elasticity, reduce the likelihood of weaning. The usual manifestations of ventilatory failure—hypoxemia and hypercarbia—may be less obvious in the older adult, and other clinical measures of oxygenation, such as a change in mental status, should be used to determine breathing effectiveness.

Extubation. Extubation is the removal of the endotracheal (ET) tube. The tube is removed when the need for intubation has been resolved. Before removal, explain the procedure. Set up the prescribed oxygen delivery system at the bedside, and bring in the equipment for emergency reintubation. Hyperoxygenate the patient, and thoroughly suction both the ET tube and the oral cavity. Then rapidly deflate the cuff of the ET tube and remove the tube at peak inspiration. Immediately instruct the patient to cough. It is normal for

TABLE 34-5 WEANING METHODS

Synchronous Intermittent Mandatory Ventilation

- The patient breathes between the machine's preset breaths/min rate.
- The machine is initially set on an SIMV rate of 12, meaning the patient receives a minimum of 12 breaths/min by the ventilator.
- The patient's respiratory rate will be a combination of ventilator breaths and spontaneous breaths.
- As the weaning process ensues, the physician prescribes gradual decreases in the SIMV rate, usually at a decrease of 1 to 2 breaths/min.

T-Piece Technique

- The patient is taken off the ventilator for short periods (initially 5 to 10 minutes) and allowed to breathe spontaneously.
- The ventilator is replaced with a T-piece (see Chapter 30) or CPAP, which delivers humidified oxygen.
- The prescribed FiO_2 may be higher for the patient on the T-piece than on the ventilator.
- Weaning progresses as the patient can tolerate progressively longer periods off the ventilator.
- Nighttime weaning is not usually attempted until the patient can maintain spontaneous respirations most of the day.

Pressure Support Ventilation

- PSV allows the patient's respiratory effort to be augmented by a predetermined pressure assist from the ventilator.
- As the weaning process ensues, the amount of pressure applied to inspiration is gradually decreased.
- Another method of weaning with PSV is to maintain the pressure but gradually decrease the ventilator's preset breaths/min rate.

CPAP, Continuous positive airway pressure; FiO_2 , fraction of inspired oxygen; PSV, pressure support ventilation; SIMV, synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation.

large amounts of oral secretions to collect. Give oxygen by facemask or nasal cannula. The fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) is usually prescribed at 10% higher than the level used while the ET tube was in place.

Monitor vital signs after extubation every 5 minutes at first, and assess the ventilatory pattern for manifestations of respiratory distress. It is common for patients to be hoarse and have a sore throat for a few days after extubation. Teach the patient to sit in a semi-Fowler's position, take deep breaths every half-hour, use an incentive spirometer every 2 hours, and limit speaking. These measures help gas exchange, decrease laryngeal edema, and reduce vocal cord irritation. Observe closely for respiratory fatigue and airway obstruction.

Early manifestations of obstruction are mild dyspnea, coughing, and the inability to clear secretions. **Stridor** is a high-pitched, crowing noise during inspiration caused by laryngospasm or edema above or below the glottis. This sound is a late manifestation of a narrowed airway and requires prompt attention. Racemic epinephrine, a topical aerosol vasoconstrictor, is given, and reintubation may be needed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

When stridor or other manifestations of obstruction occur after extubation, immediately call the Rapid Response Team before the airway becomes completely obstructed.

CHEST TRAUMA

Chest injuries are responsible for about 25% of traumatic deaths in the United States each year. Many of the injured die before arriving at the hospital. A few types of chest injury require thoracotomy. Most can be treated with basic resuscitation, intubation, or chest tube placement. *The first emergency approach to all chest injuries is ABC (airway, breathing, circulation) followed by rapid assessment and treatment of life-threatening conditions.*

Pulmonary Contusion

Pulmonary contusion, a potentially lethal injury, is a common chest injury and occurs most often with injuries caused by rapid deceleration during car crashes. After a contusion, respiratory failure develops over time rather than immediately. Hemorrhage and edema occur in and between the alveoli, reducing both lung movement and the area available for gas exchange. The patient becomes hypoxemic and dyspneic. The bronchial mucosa is irritated, and secretions increase.

Patients may be asymptomatic at first and can later develop respiratory failure. These patients often have bloody sputum, decreased breath sounds, crackles, and wheezes. At first, the chest x-ray may show no abnormalities. A hazy opacity in the lobes or parenchyma may develop over several days. If there is no disruption of the parenchyma, bruise resorption often occurs without treatment.

Management includes maintenance of ventilation and oxygenation. Monitor central venous pressure (CVP) closely, and restrict fluid intake as needed. The patient in obvious respiratory distress may need mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) to inflate the lungs.

A vicious cycle occurs in which more muscle effort is needed for ventilating a lung with a contusion and the patient becomes progressively hypoxemic. This situation causes him or her to tire easily, have reduced gas exchange, and become more fatigued and hypoxemic. Flail chest may also occur when pulmonary contusion occurs with parenchymal damage. This condition often leads to acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

Rib Fracture

Rib fractures are a common injury to the chest wall, often resulting from direct blunt trauma to the chest. The force applied to the ribs fractures them and drives the bone ends into the chest. Thus there is a risk for deep chest injury, such as pulmonary contusion, pneumothorax, and hemothorax.

The patient has pain on movement and splints the chest defensively. Splinting reduces breathing depth and clearance of secretions. If the patient has pre-existing lung disease, the risk for atelectasis and pneumonia increases. Those with injuries to the first or second ribs, flail chest, seven or more fractured ribs, or expired volumes of less than 15 mL/kg often have a deep chest injury and a poor prognosis.

Management of uncomplicated rib fractures is simple because the fractured ribs reunite spontaneously. The chest is usually not splinted by tape or other materials. The main focus is to decrease pain so that adequate ventilation is maintained. An intercostal nerve block may be used if pain is severe. Analgesics that cause respiratory depression are avoided.

Flail Chest

Flail chest is the inward movement of the thorax during inspiration, with outward movement during expiration. It often involves one side of the chest and results from multiple rib fractures caused by blunt chest trauma leaving a segment of the chest wall loose, often as a result of high-speed car crashes. It is more common in older patients and has a high mortality rate (Qasim & Gwinnutt, 2009).

The movement of this loose segment becomes opposite of the expansion and contraction movement of the rest of the chest wall. Flail chest can also occur from bilateral separations of the ribs from their cartilage connections to each other anteriorly, without an actual rib fracture. This condition can occur during cardiopulmonary resuscitation on an older adult. Other injuries to the lung tissue under the flail segment may be present. Gas exchange, coughing, and clearance of secretions are impaired. Splinting further reduces the patient's ability to exert the extra effort to breathe and may contribute later to failure to wean.

Assess the patient with a flail chest for paradoxical chest movement, dyspnea, cyanosis, tachycardia, and hypotension. **Paradoxical chest movement** is the “sucking inward” of the loose chest area during inspiration and a “puffing out” of the same area during expiration (Fig. 34-5). The patient is often anxious, short of breath, and in pain (McCance et al., 2010).

Interventions include humidified oxygen, pain management, promotion of lung expansion through deep breathing and positioning, and secretion clearance by coughing and tracheal aspiration.

The patient with a flail chest may be managed with vigilant respiratory care. Mechanical ventilation is needed if respiratory failure or shock occurs. Monitor ABG values and vital capacity closely. With severe hypoxemia and hypercarbia, the patient is intubated and mechanically ventilated with PEEP. With lung contusion or an underlying pulmonary disease, the

risk for respiratory failure increases. Usually, flail chest is stabilized by positive-pressure ventilation. Surgical stabilization is used only in extreme cases of flail chest.

Monitor the patient's vital signs and fluid and electrolyte balance closely so that hypovolemia or shock can be managed immediately. If he or she has a lung contusion, monitor central venous pressure (CVP) and give IV fluids as prescribed. Assess for and relieve pain with prescribed analgesic drugs by IV, epidural, or nerve block route. Give psychosocial support to the anxious patient by explaining all procedures, talking slowly, and allowing time for expression of feelings and concerns.

Pneumothorax

Any chest injury that allows air to enter the pleural space results in a rise in chest pressure and a reduction in vital capacity. Severity depends on the amount of lung collapse produced. Pneumothorax is often caused by blunt chest trauma and may occur with some degree of hemothorax. It can also occur as a complication of medical procedures (Day, 2011; Ruiz, 2011). The pneumothorax can be open (pleural cavity is exposed to outside air, as through an open wound in the chest wall) or closed (such as when a patient with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease [COPD] has a spontaneous pneumothorax). Assessment findings commonly include:

- Reduced breath sounds on auscultation
- Hyperresonance on percussion
- Prominence of the involved side of the chest, which moves poorly with respirations
- Deviation of the trachea away from (closed) or toward (open) the affected side

In addition, the patient may have pleuritic pain, tachypnea, and **subcutaneous emphysema** (air under the skin in the subcutaneous tissues) (Roman, 2010).

An ultrasound examination or a chest x-ray is used for diagnosis. Chest tubes may be needed to allow the air to escape and the lung to re-inflate.

Tension Pneumothorax

Tension pneumothorax, a rapidly developing and life-threatening complication of blunt chest trauma, results from an air leak in the lung or chest wall. Air forced into the chest cavity causes complete collapse of the affected lung. Air that enters the pleural space during inspiration does not exit during expiration. As a result, air collects under pressure, compressing blood vessels and limiting blood return. This process leads to decreased filling of the heart and reduced cardiac output. *If not promptly detected and treated, tension pneumothorax is quickly fatal.* Causes include blunt chest trauma, mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), closed-chest drainage (chest tubes), and insertion of central venous access catheters.

Assessment findings with tension pneumothorax include:

- Asymmetry of the thorax
- Tracheal movement *away* from midline toward the *unaffected* side
- Respiratory distress
- Absence of breath sounds on one side
- Distended neck veins
- Cyanosis
- Hypertympanic sound on percussion over the affected side

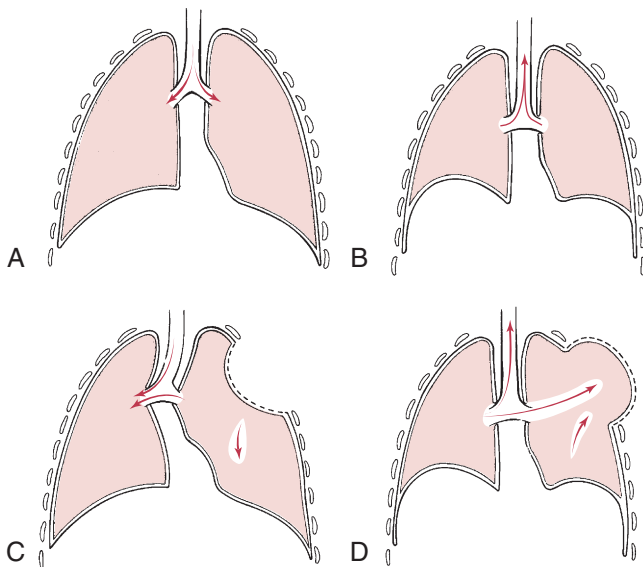


FIG. 34-5 Flail chest. Normal respiration: **A**, Inspiration; **B**, Expiration. Paradoxical motion: **C**, Inspiration—area of the lung underlying unstable chest wall sucks in on inspiration; **D**, Expiration—unstable area balloons out. Note movement of mediastinum toward opposite lung during inspiration.

Pneumothorax is detectable on a chest x-ray. ABG assays show hypoxia and respiratory alkalosis.

A large-bore needle is inserted by the health care provider into the second intercostal space in the midclavicular line of the affected side as initial treatment for tension pneumothorax. Then, a chest tube is placed into the fourth intercostal space and the other end is attached to a water seal drainage system until the lung re-inflates. Chest tubes are discussed in detail in [Chapter 32](#).

Hemothorax

Hemothorax is a common problem occurring after blunt chest trauma or penetrating injuries. A *simple* hemothorax is a blood loss of less than 1500 mL into the chest cavity; a *massive* hemothorax is a blood loss of more than 1500 mL.

Bleeding is caused by injury to the lung tissue, such as lung contusions or lacerations, that can occur with rib and sternal fractures. Massive internal bleeding in blunt chest trauma may stem from the heart, great vessels, or the intercostal arteries.

Assessment findings vary with the size of the hemothorax. If it is small, the patient may not have symptoms. With a large hemothorax, the patient may have respiratory distress. In addition, breath sounds are reduced on auscultation. Percussion on the involved side produces a dull sound. Blood in the pleural space is visible on a chest x-ray and confirmed by thoracentesis.

Interventions focus on removing the blood in the pleural space to normalize breathing and to prevent infection. Anterior and posterior chest tubes are inserted to empty the pleural space. Closely monitor the chest tube drainage. Serial chest x-rays are used to determine treatment effectiveness.

An open thoracotomy is needed when there is initial blood loss of 1500 to 2000 mL from the chest or persistent bleeding at the rate of 200 mL/hr over 3 hours. Monitor the vital signs, blood loss, and intake and output. Assess the patient's response to the chest tubes, and infuse IV fluids and blood as prescribed. The blood lost through chest drainage can be infused back into the patient if needed.

Tracheobronchial Trauma

Most tears of the tracheobronchial tree result from severe blunt trauma or rapid deceleration and often involve the mainstem bronchi. Injuries to the trachea usually occur at the junction of the trachea and cricoid cartilage, often by striking the neck against the dashboard or steering wheel during a car crash. Patients with tracheal lacerations develop massive air leaks, which cause air to enter the mediastinum and leads to extensive subcutaneous emphysema. Upper airway obstruction may occur, causing severe respiratory distress and stridor. Large tracheal tears require cricothyroidotomy or tracheotomy below the level of injury. A patient with a torn mainstem bronchus may develop a tension pneumothorax rapidly when intubated and ventilated with positive pressure.

Assess for hypoxemia by ABG assays. Apply oxygen as needed. Depending on the degree of injury, the patient may need mechanical ventilation or surgical repair. Assess vital signs every 15 minutes because hypotension and shock are likely. Assess for subcutaneous emphysema and listen to the lungs every 1 to 2 hours. Decreased breath sounds or wheezing may indicate further obstruction, atelectasis, or pneumothorax. Care of the patient with a tracheostomy is discussed in [Chapter 30](#).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of an acute critical respiratory problem?

- Respirations rapid and shallow
- Change in cognition, acute confusion (especially in older adults)
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes
- Tachycardia
- Patient appears to strain to catch breath
- Patient is restless or anxious

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of an acute critical respiratory problem?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Checking the accuracy of pulse oximetry readings
- Checking most recent laboratory values for ABG levels

- Assessing chest symmetry
- Assessing for accessory muscle use
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Assessing for the presence of hemoptysis
- Assessing the patient's ability to cough and clear the airway
- Asking the patient if he or she has chest pain
- Checking for petechiae, especially over the chest

Respond by:

- Applying oxygen with a non-rebreather mask, and assessing the patient's responses
- Keeping the patient's head elevated to about 30 degrees
- Suctioning (oral, pharyngeal, endotracheal, tracheostomy), if needed
- Notifying the physician or Rapid Response Team
- Staying with the patient
- Calling for the emergency cart to be brought to the patient's bedside
- Reassuring the patient that appropriate interventions are being instituted
- Preparing for intubation

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Using a manual resuscitation bag if the patient's Sao_2 falls below 60% while receiving oxygen by mask
- Starting an IV

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of restored oxygenation (see Chapter 29).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use aseptic technique when caring for a patient requiring pulmonary suctioning.
- Identify patients in your setting who are at risk for developing a pulmonary embolism.
- Use Bleeding Precautions for patients receiving anticoagulating therapy (see Chart 34-6).
- Keep antidotes available when patients are receiving heparin (antidote is protamine) or warfarin (antidote is phytonadione).
- Inspect the mouth and perform oral care every 2 hours for anyone who has an endotracheal tube or is being mechanically ventilated.
- Check and document ventilator settings hourly.
- Ensure that alarm systems on mechanical ventilators are activated and functional at all times.
- Ensure that bag-valve mask device and suction equipment are at the bedside at all times.
- Evaluate the need for chemical restraint or soft wrist restraints.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients ways to promote venous return and avoid venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially when traveling long distances (see Chart 34-1).
- Use Aspiration Precautions for any patient with an altered level of consciousness, poor gag reflex, or neurologic impairment or who has an endotracheal tube.
- Check the patient with ARDS hourly for oxygen saturation, vital sign changes, or indications of increased work of breathing such as cyanosis, pallor, and retractions.
- Assess all patients with blunt chest trauma for tracheal position and bilateral breath sounds.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient and family members the opportunity to express feelings and concerns about a change in breathing status or the possibility of intubation and mechanical ventilation.
- Teach family members ways to communicate with a patient who is intubated or being mechanically ventilated.
- Reassure intubated patients that speech loss is temporary.
- Remember that patients who are receiving mechanical ventilation and are being chemically paralyzed usually can hear and can feel pain.
- Provide appropriate pain management.

Physiological Integrity

- Notify the physician immediately for any patient who develops sudden-onset respiratory difficulty.
- Check oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry for any patient who has trouble breathing or who develops acute confusion.
- Evaluate ABG values to assess the severity of hypoxia and the patient's response to therapy.
- Apply oxygen to anyone who is hypoxemic.
- Ensure that oxygen therapy delivered to the patient is humidified.
- Assess lung sounds bilaterally each hour for patients who are receiving PEEP.
- Check all ventilator settings against the prescription at least once per shift.
- Administer drugs for pain to patients who have rib fractures, and encourage deep breaths.
- Evaluate nutritional status and collaborate with the dietitian to meet the patient's nutritional needs.
- If a patient experiences respiratory distress during mechanical ventilation, remove him or her from the ventilator and provide ventilation by bag-valve mask device.



UNIT VIII

Problems of Cardiac Output and Tissue Perfusion

Management of Patients with Problems of the Cardiovascular System

CHAPTER

35

Assessment of the Cardiovascular System

Tami Kathleen Little

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Auscultation of Heart Valves
Animation: Blood Flow: Circulatory System
Animation: Cardiac Cycle During Systole and Diastole
Animation: Heart Valves and Sounds
Animation: Pulse Variations
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Clip: Single S₁
Audio Clip: S₁ at Various Locations
Audio Clip: Single S₂
Audio Clip: S₂ at Various Locations
Audio Clip: S₄
Audio Clip: S₃
Audio Clip: Murmurs: High, Medium, and Low

Audio Clip: Murmurs: Blowing, Harsh or Rough, and Rumble
Audio Clip: Systolic Murmur
Audio Clip: Diastolic Murmur
Audio Clip: Pericardial Friction Rub
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
Video Clip: Anterior Chest
Video Clip: Auscultation with Diaphragm and Bell
Video Clip: Auscultatory Landmarks
Video Clip: Carotid Artery
Video Clip: Pulses, Lower Extremities

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Prioritize care for patients having invasive cardiac diagnostic tests.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify patients at risk for cardiovascular (CV) problems.
3. Differentiate modifiable and nonmodifiable risk factors for CV disease.
4. Teach patients about ways to decrease their risk for CV health problems.

5. Explain nursing implications related to CV changes associated with aging.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Explain psychological responses to CV disease.

Physiological Integrity

7. Review the anatomy and physiology of the CV system.
8. Describe the unique characteristics of heart disease in women.

LEARNING OUTCOMES—cont'd

9. Perform focused physical assessment for patients with CV problems.
10. Interpret laboratory test findings for patients with suspected or actual CV disease.
11. Differentiate invasive hemodynamic pressures and their significance.

As the name implies, the cardiovascular (CV) system is made up of the heart and blood vessels (both arteries and veins). It is responsible for supplying oxygen to body organs and other tissues (*perfusion*). The heart muscle, called the **myocardium**, must receive sufficient oxygen to pump blood to other parts of the body. The arteries must be patent so that the pumped blood can reach the rest of the body. *Oxygen in the blood* is needed for cells to live and function properly. When diseases or other problems of the CV systems occur, *oxygenation and perfusion* decrease, often resulting in life-threatening events or a risk for these events.

The CV system works with the respiratory and hematologic systems to meet the human need for oxygenation and tissue perfusion (see Fig. 1 of the Concept Overview). Any problem in these systems requires the CV system to work harder to meet oxygenation and tissue perfusion needs.

In almost every year since 1900, cardiovascular disease (CVD) has been the number-one cause of death in the United States. Nearly 2300 Americans die of CVD each day, an average of one death every 38 seconds (**American Heart Association [AHA], 2010b**). The disease kills more people than the next four causes of death combined, including cancer, chronic lower respiratory diseases, accidents, and diabetes. *Of particular concern is that CVD is the leading cause of death for*

women. In addition, the American Heart Association (AHA) estimates that more than one in three adults is living with some form of the disease. About 20% of people who experience a myocardial infarction will die within 1 year from the initial cardiac event (**AHA, 2010b**).

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW**Heart****Structure**

The human heart is a fist-sized, muscular organ located in the mediastinum between the lungs (**Fig. 35-1**). Each beat of the heart pumps about 60 mL of blood, or 5 L/min. During strenuous physical activity, it can double the amount of blood pumped to meet the body's increased oxygenation needs. The heart is protected by a covering called the *pericardium*. A muscular wall (septum) separates the heart into two halves: right and left. Each half has an atrium and a ventricle (**Fig. 35-2**).

The *right atrium (RA)* receives *deoxygenated* venous blood, which is returned from the body through the superior and inferior venae cavae. It also receives blood from the heart muscle through the coronary sinus. Most of this venous

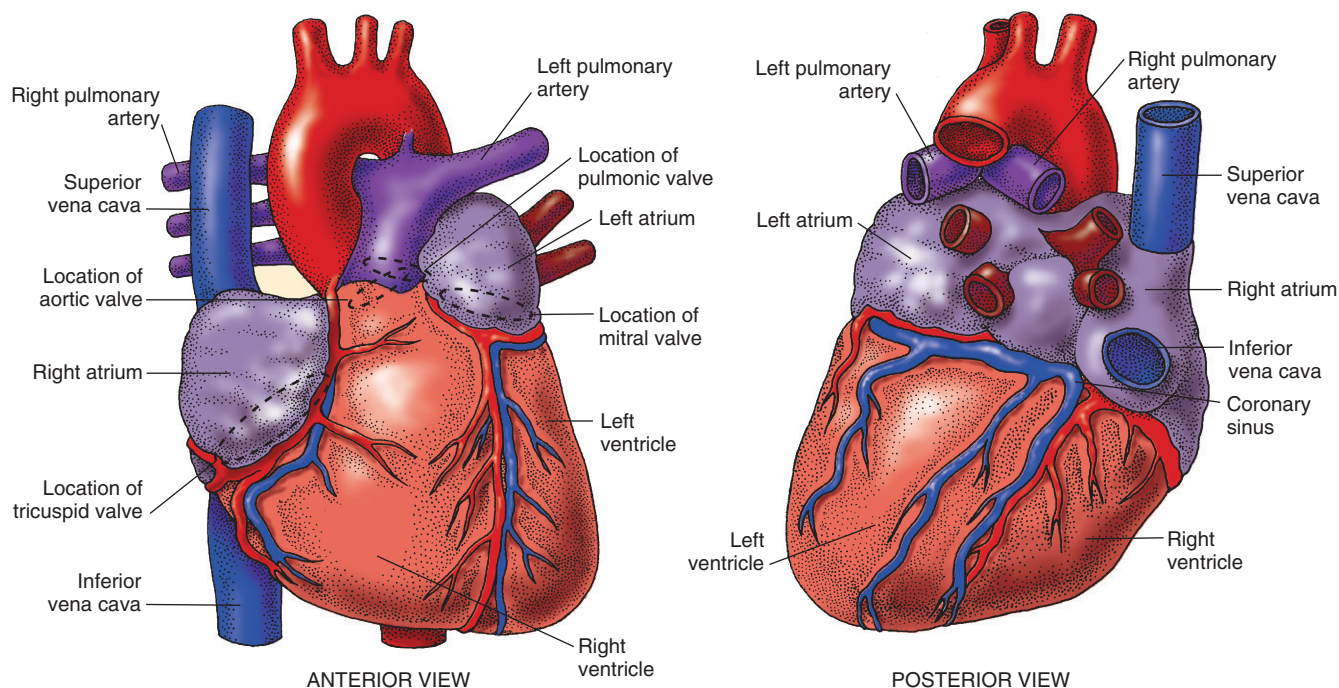


FIG. 35-1 Surface anatomy of the heart.

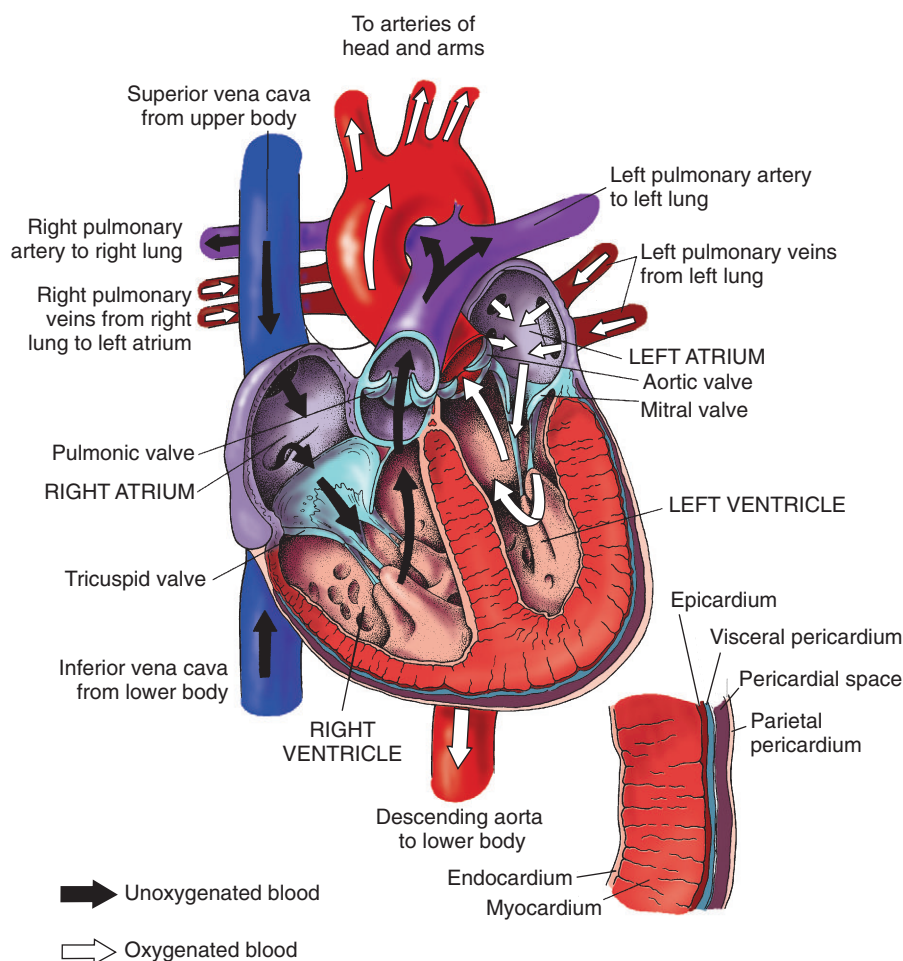


FIG. 35-2 Blood flow through the heart.

return flows passively from the RA, through the opened tricuspid valve, and to the right ventricle during ventricular diastole, or filling. The remaining venous return is actively propelled by the RA into the right ventricle during atrial systole, or contraction.

The *right ventricle (RV)* is a muscular pump located behind the sternum. It generates enough pressure to close the tricuspid valve, open the pulmonic valve, and propel blood into the pulmonary artery and the lungs.

After blood is *reoxygenated* in the lungs, it flows freely from the four pulmonary veins into the left atrium. Blood then flows through an opened mitral valve into the left ventricle during ventricular diastole. When the left ventricle is almost full, the *left atrium (LA)* contracts, pumping the remaining blood volume into the left ventricle. With systolic contraction, the *left ventricle (LV)* generates enough pressure to close the mitral valve and open the aortic valve. Blood is propelled into the aorta and into the systemic arterial circulation. Blood flow through the heart is shown in Fig. 35-2.

Blood moves from the aorta throughout the systemic circulation to the various tissues of the body. The pressure of blood in the aorta of a young adult averages about 100 to 120 mm Hg, whereas the pressure of blood in the RA averages about 0 to 5 mm Hg. These differences in pressure produce a pressure gradient, with blood flowing from an area of higher pressure to an area of lower pressure. The heart and

vascular structures are responsible for maintaining these pressures.

The four *cardiac valves* are responsible for maintaining the forward flow of blood through the chambers of the heart (see Fig. 35-2). These valves open and close when pressure and volume change within the heart's chambers. The cardiac valves are classified into two types: atrioventricular (AV) valves and semilunar valves.

The *AV valves* separate the atria from the ventricles. The **tricuspid valve** separates the RA from the RV. The **mitral (bicuspid) valve** separates the LA from the LV. During ventricular diastole, these valves act as funnels and help move the flow of blood from the atria to the ventricles. During systole, the valves close to prevent the backflow (**regurgitation**) of blood into the atria.

The *semilunar valves* are the pulmonic valve and the aortic valve that prevent blood from flowing back into the ventricles during diastole. The **pulmonic valve** separates the right ventricle from the pulmonary artery. The **aortic valve** separates the left ventricle from the aorta.

The heart muscle receives blood to meet its metabolic needs through the coronary arterial system (Fig. 35-3). The coronary arteries originate from an area on the aorta just beyond the aortic valve. All of the coronary arteries feeding the left heart originate from the left main coronary artery (LMCA). The right coronary artery (RCA) branches from the

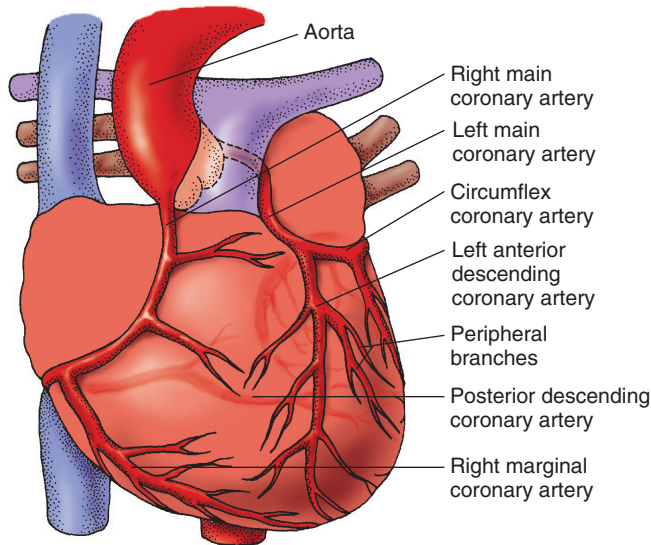


FIG. 35-3 Coronary arterial system.

aorta to perfuse the right heart and inferior wall of the left heart.

Coronary artery blood flow to the myocardium occurs primarily during diastole, when coronary vascular resistance is minimized. *To maintain adequate blood flow through the coronary arteries, mean arterial pressure (MAP) must be at least 60 mm Hg. A MAP of between 60 and 70 mm Hg is necessary to maintain perfusion of major body organs, such as the kidneys and brain.*

The *left main artery* divides into two branches: the left anterior descending (LAD) branch and the left circumflex (LCX) branch. The LAD branch descends toward the anterior wall and the apex of the left ventricle. It supplies blood to portions of the left ventricle, ventricular septum, chordae tendineae, papillary muscle, and, to a lesser extent, the right ventricle.

The LCX branch descends toward the lateral wall of the left ventricle and apex. It supplies blood to the left atrium, the lateral and posterior surfaces of the left ventricle, and sometimes portions of the interventricular septum. In about half of people, the LCX branch supplies the sinoatrial (SA) node. In a very small number of people, it supplies the AV node. Peripheral branches arise from the LAD and LCX branches and form an abundant network of vessels throughout the entire myocardium.

The *right coronary artery (RCA)* originates from the right sinus of Valsalva, encircles the heart, and descends toward the apex of the right ventricle. The RCA supplies the RA, RV, and inferior portion of the LV. In about half of people, the RCA supplies the SA node, and in almost everyone, it supplies the AV node.

Function

The *electrophysiologic properties* of heart muscle are responsible for regulating heart rate (HR) and rhythm. Cardiac muscle cells possess the characteristics of automaticity, excitability, conductivity, contractility, and refractoriness. [Chapter 36](#) describes these properties and cardiac conduction in detail.

Sequence of Events During the Cardiac Cycle. The phases of the cardiac cycle are generally described in relation to changes in pressure and volume in the left ventricle during filling (diastole) and ventricular contraction (systole) ([Fig. 35-4](#)). **Diastole**, normally about two thirds of the cardiac cycle, consists of relaxation and filling of the atria and ventricles. **Systole** consists of the contraction and emptying of the atria and ventricles.

Myocardial contraction results from the release of large numbers of calcium ions from the sarcoplasmic reticulum and from the blood. These ions diffuse into the **myofibril sarcomere** (the basic contractile unit of the myocardial cell). Calcium ions promote the interaction of actin and myosin protein filaments, causing these filaments to link and overlap. Cross-bridges, or linkages, are formed as the protein filaments slide over or overlap each other. These cross-bridges act as force-generating sites. The sliding of these protein filaments shortens the sarcomeres, producing myocardial contraction.

Cardiac muscle relaxes when calcium ions are pumped back into the sarcoplasmic reticulum, causing a decrease in the number of calcium ions around the myofibrils. This reduced number of ions causes the protein filaments to disengage, the sarcomere to lengthen, and the muscle to relax.

Mechanical Properties of the Heart. The electrical and mechanical properties of cardiac muscle determine the function of the cardiovascular system. The healthy heart can adapt to various pathophysiologic conditions (e.g., stress, infections, hemorrhage) to maintain adequate blood flow to the various body tissues. Blood flow from the heart into the systemic arterial circulation is measured clinically as **cardiac output (CO)**, the amount of blood pumped from the left ventricle each minute. *CO depends on the relationship between heart rate (HR) and stroke volume (SV); it is the product of these two variables:*

$$\text{Cardiac output} = \text{Heart rate} \times \text{Stroke volume}$$

In adults, the CO ranges from 4 to 7 L/min. Because CO requirements vary according to body size, the cardiac index is calculated to adjust for differences in body size. The **cardiac index** can be determined by dividing the CO by the body surface area. The normal range is 2.7 to 3.2 L/min/m² of body surface area.

Heart rate (HR) refers to the number of times the ventricles contract each minute. The normal resting HR for an adult is between 60 and 100 beats/min. Increases in rate increase myocardial oxygen demand. The HR is extrinsically controlled by the autonomic nervous system (ANS), which adjusts rapidly when necessary to regulate cardiac output. *The parasympathetic (vagus nerve) system slows the HR, whereas sympathetic stimulation increases the heart rate.* An increase in circulating catecholamines (e.g., epinephrine and norepinephrine) usually causes an increase in HR and contractility. Many cardiovascular drugs, particularly beta blockers, block this sympathetic (fight or flight) pattern by decreasing the HR.

Stroke volume (SV) is the amount of blood ejected by the left ventricle during each contraction. Several variables influence SV and, ultimately, CO. These variables include HR, preload, afterload, and contractility.

Preload refers to the degree of myocardial fiber stretch at the end of diastole and just before contraction. The stretch

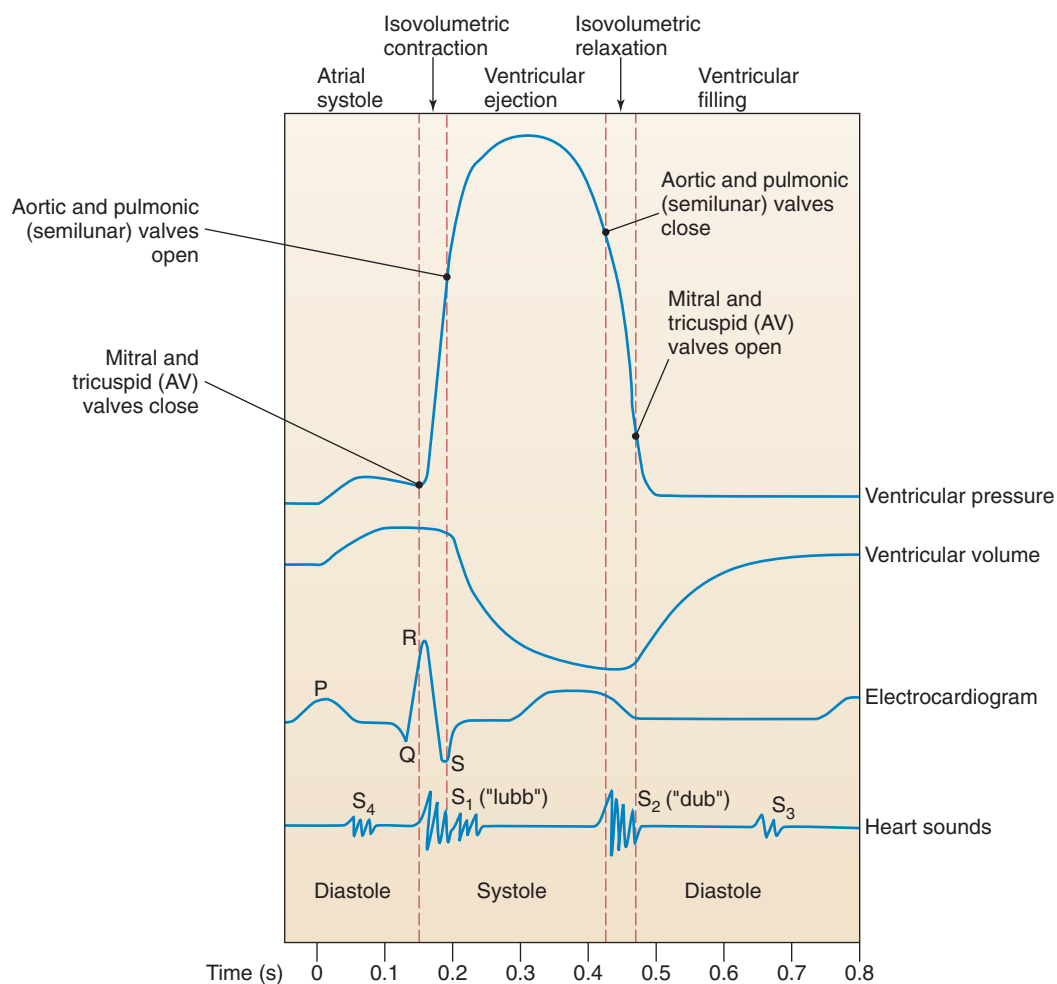


FIG. 35-4 Events of the cardiac cycle.

imposed on the muscle fibers results from the volume contained within the ventricle at the end of diastole. *Preload is determined by the amount of blood returning to the heart from both the venous system (right heart) and the pulmonary system (left heart) (left ventricular end-diastolic [LVED] volume).*

An increase in ventricular volume increases muscle-fiber length and tension, thereby enhancing contraction and improving stroke volume. This statement is derived from Starling's law of the heart: The more the heart is filled during diastole (within limits), the more forcefully it contracts. Excessive filling of the ventricles results in excessive LVED volume and pressure, however, and may result in decreased cardiac output.

Another factor affecting stroke volume, **afterload**, is the pressure or resistance that the ventricles must overcome to eject blood through the semilunar valves and into the peripheral blood vessels. The amount of resistance is directly related to arterial blood pressure and the diameter of the blood vessels.

Impedance, the peripheral component of afterload, is the pressure that the heart must overcome to open the aortic valve. The amount of impedance depends on aortic compliance and total **systemic vascular resistance**, a combination of blood viscosity (thickness) and arteriolar constriction. A

decrease in stroke volume can result from an increase in afterload without the benefit of compensatory mechanisms, thus leading to a decrease in cardiac output.

Myocardial contractility affects stroke volume and CO and is the force of cardiac contraction independent of preload. Contractility is increased by factors such as sympathetic stimulation, calcium release, and positive inotropic drugs. It is decreased by factors such as hypoxia and acidemia.

Vascular System

The vascular system serves several purposes:

- Provides a route for blood to travel from the heart to nourish the various tissues of the body
- Carries cellular wastes to the excretory organs
- Allows lymphatic flow to drain tissue fluid back into the circulation
- Returns blood to the heart for recirculation

The vascular system is divided into the arterial system and the venous system. In the arterial system, blood moves from the larger arteries to a network of smaller blood vessels, called *arterioles*, which meet the capillary bed. In the venous system, blood travels from the capillaries to the venules and to the larger system of veins, eventually returning in the vena cava to the heart for recirculation.

Arterial System

The primary function of the arterial system is to deliver oxygen and nutrients to various tissues in the body. Nutrients are carried through arteries to arterioles, then branch into smaller terminal arterioles and finally join with capillaries and venules to form a capillary network. Within this network, nutrients are exchanged across capillary membranes by three primary processes: osmosis, filtration, and diffusion. (See Chapter 13 for detailed discussions of these processes.)

The arterial system delivers blood to various tissues for oxygen and nourishment. At the tissue level, nutrients, chemicals, and body defense substances are distributed and exchanged for cellular waste products, depending on the needs of the particular tissue. The arteries transport the cellular wastes to the excretory organs (e.g., kidneys and lungs) to be reprocessed or removed. These vessels also contribute to temperature regulation in the tissues. Blood can be either directed toward the skin to promote heat loss or diverted away from the skin to conserve heat.

Blood pressure (BP) is the force of blood exerted against the vessel walls. Pressure in the larger arterial blood vessels is greater (about 80 to 100 mm Hg) and decreases as blood flow reaches the capillaries (about 25 mm Hg). By the time blood enters the right atrium, the BP is about 0 to 5 mm Hg. Volume, ventricular contraction, and vascular tone are necessary to maintain blood pressure.

BP is determined primarily by the quantity of blood flow or cardiac output (CO), as well as by the resistance in the arterioles:

$$\text{Blood pressure} = \text{Cardiac output} \times \text{Peripheral vascular resistance}$$

Any factor that increases CO or total peripheral vascular resistance increases the BP. In general, BP is maintained at a relatively constant level. Therefore an increase or decrease in total peripheral vascular resistance is associated with a decrease or an increase in CO, respectively. Three mechanisms mediate and regulate BP:

- The autonomic nervous system (ANS), which excites or inhibits sympathetic nervous system activity in response to impulses from chemoreceptors and baroreceptors
- The kidneys, which sense a change in blood flow and activate the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism
- The endocrine system, which releases various hormones (e.g., catecholamine, kinins, serotonin, histamine) to stimulate the sympathetic nervous system at the tissue level

Systolic BP is the amount of pressure/force generated by the left ventricle to distribute blood into the aorta with each contraction of the heart. It is a measure of how effectively the heart pumps and is an indicator of vascular tone. **Diastolic BP** is the amount of pressure/force against the arterial walls during the relaxation phase of the heart.

BP is regulated by balancing the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems of the autonomic nervous system. Changes in autonomic activity are responses to messages sent by the sensory receptors in the various tissues of the body. These receptors, including the baroreceptors, chemoreceptors, and stretch receptors, respond differently to the biochemical and physiologic changes of the body.

Baroreceptors in the arch of the aorta and at the origin of the internal carotid arteries are stimulated when the arterial walls are stretched by an increased BP. Impulses from these baroreceptors inhibit the vasomotor center, which is located in the pons and the medulla. Inhibition of this center results in a drop in BP.

Several 1- to 2-mm collections of tissue have been identified in the carotid arteries and along the aortic arch known as **peripheral chemoreceptors**. These receptors are sensitive primarily to hypoxemia (a decrease in the partial pressure of arterial oxygen [PaO_2]). When stimulated, these chemoreceptors send impulses along the vagus nerves to activate a vasoconstrictor response and raise BP.

The central chemoreceptors in the respiratory center of the brain are also stimulated by **hypercapnia** (an increase in partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [PaCO_2]) and acidosis. The direct effect of carbon dioxide on the central nervous system (CNS), however, is 10 times stronger than the effect of hypoxia on the peripheral chemoreceptors.

Stretch receptors in the vena cava and the right atrium are sensitive to pressure or volume changes. When a patient is hypovolemic, stretch receptors in the blood vessels sense a reduced volume or pressure and send fewer impulses to the CNS. This reaction stimulates the sympathetic nervous system to increase the heart rate (HR) and constrict the peripheral blood vessels.

The *kidneys* also help regulate cardiovascular activity. When renal blood flow or pressure decreases, the kidneys retain sodium and water. BP tends to rise because of fluid retention and activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone mechanism (see Fig. 13-6 in Chapter 13). This mechanism results in vasoconstriction and sodium retention (and thus fluid retention). Vascular volume is also regulated by the release of antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin) from the posterior pituitary gland (see Chapter 13).

Other factors can also influence the activity of the cardiovascular system. Emotional behaviors (e.g., excitement, pain, anger) stimulate the sympathetic nervous system to increase blood pressure (BP) and heart rate (HR). Increased physical activity such as exercise also increases BP and HR during the activity. Body temperature can affect the metabolic needs of the tissues, thereby influencing the delivery of blood. In hypothermia, tissues require fewer nutrients and blood pressure falls. In hyperthermia, the metabolic requirement of the tissues is greater and BP and pulse rate rise.

Venous System

The primary function of the venous system is to complete the circulation of blood by returning blood from the capillaries to the right side of the heart. It is composed of a series of veins that are located next to the arterial system. A second superficial venous circulation runs parallel to the subcutaneous tissue of the extremity. These two venous systems are connected by communicating veins that provide a means for blood to travel from the superficial veins to the deep veins. Blood flow is directed toward the deep venous circulation.

Veins have the ability to accommodate large shifts in volume with minimal changes in venous pressure. This flexibility allows the venous system to accommodate the administration of IV fluids and blood transfusions, as well as to

CHART 35-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Cardiovascular System Related to Aging

CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Cardiac Valves Calcification and mucoid degeneration occur, especially in mitral and aortic valves.	Assess heart rate and rhythm and heart sounds for murmurs. Question patients about dyspnea.	Murmurs may be detected before other symptoms. Valvular abnormalities may result in rhythm changes.
Conduction System Pacemaker cells decrease in number. Fibrous tissue and fat in the sinoatrial node increase. Few muscle fibers remain in the atrial myocardium and bundle of His. Conduction time increases.	Assess the electrocardiogram (ECG) and heart rhythm for dysrhythmias or a heart rate less than 60 beats/min.	The sinoatrial (SA) node may lose its inherent rhythm. Atrial dysrhythmias occur in many older adults; 80% of older adults experience premature ventricular contractions (PVCs).
Left Ventricle The size of the left ventricle increases. The left ventricle becomes stiff and less distensible. Fibrotic changes in the left ventricle decrease the speed of early diastolic filling by about 50%.	Assess the ECG for a widening QRS complex and a longer QT interval. Assess the heart rate at rest and with activity. Assess for activity intolerance.	Ventricular changes result in decreased stroke volume, ejection fraction, and cardiac output during exercise; the heart is less able to meet increased oxygen demands. Maximum heart rate with exercise is decreased. The heart is less able to meet increased oxygen demands.
Aorta and Other Large Arteries The aorta and other large arteries thicken and become stiffer and less distensible. Systolic blood pressure increases to compensate for the stiff arteries. Systemic vascular resistance increases as a result of less distensible arteries; therefore the left ventricle pumps against greater resistance, contributing to left ventricular hypertrophy.	Assess blood pressure. Note increases in systolic, diastolic, and pulse pressures. Assess for activity intolerance and shortness of breath. Assess the peripheral pulses.	Hypertension may occur and must be treated to avoid target organ damage.
Baroreceptors Baroreceptors become less sensitive.	Assess the patient's blood pressure with the patient lying and then sitting or standing. Assess for dizziness when the patient changes from a lying to a sitting or standing position. Teach the patient to change positions slowly.	Orthostatic (postural) and postprandial changes occur because of ineffective baroreceptors. Changes may include blood pressure decreases of 10 mm Hg or more, dizziness, and fainting.

maintain pressure during blood loss and dehydration. Veins in the superficial and deep venous systems (except the smallest and the largest veins) have valves that direct blood flow back to the heart and prevent backflow. Skeletal muscles in the extremities provide a force that helps push the venous blood forward. The superior vena cava and inferior vena cava are valveless and large enough to allow blood flow to return easily to the heart.

Gravity exerts an increase in **hydrostatic pressure** in the capillaries when the patient is in an upright position, delaying venous return. Hydrostatic pressure is decreased in dependent areas such as the legs when the patient is lying down, and thus there is less hindrance of venous return to the heart.

Cardiovascular Changes Associated with Aging

A number of physiologic changes in the cardiovascular system occur with advancing age (Chart 35-1). Many of these changes result in a loss of cardiac reserve. Thus these changes are usually not evident when the older adult is resting. They

become apparent only when the person is physically or emotionally stressed and the heart cannot meet the increased metabolic demands of the body.

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

The focus of the patient history is on obtaining information about risk factors and symptoms of cardiovascular disease (Chart 35-2). Assess *nonmodifiable* (uncontrollable) risk factors including the patient's age, gender, ethnic origin, and family history of cardiovascular disease. Ask about any chronic disease or illness that the patient may have. The incidence of conditions such as coronary artery disease (CAD) and valvular disease increases with age. The incidence of CAD also varies with the patient's gender. Men have a higher risk for CAD than women of all ages except in the oldest age-group of 80 years and older (AHA, 2010b).

Heart disease is the leading cause of diabetes-related death for both men and women. Adults with diabetes have heart

CHART 35-2 CARDIOVASCULAR ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Health Perception–Health Management Pattern

- What advice has your health care provider offered you about exercise, diet, or smoking?
- Can you follow that advice?
- What medications (both over-the-counter and prescription) are you supposed to be taking?
- Are you taking them as suggested or prescribed?
- What problems have you had with the medications?

Nutrition–Metabolic Pattern

- What is your usual daily diet? (Analyze the diet for saturated fat, cholesterol, total calorie, and sodium content.)
- How much fluid do you drink daily? Are you thirsty?
- What do you weigh? When did you last weigh yourself?
- How often do you weigh yourself?
- What is your height?
- Do you know your cholesterol level? What is it?
- How often do you feel nauseated or not interested in eating?
- Do your feet/ankles swell during the day? At night, too?

Elimination Pattern

- How often do you urinate in the daytime?
- How often do you wake up at night to urinate?

Activity/Exercise Pattern

- What is the most strenuous exercise you did last week?
- How active are you compared with 6 months ago? 1 year ago?
- How often do you feel fatigued or tired?
- Can you climb a flight of stairs and walk a block without feeling short of breath or experiencing chest pain?
- Do you experience leg cramps when you walk or climb stairs?

Sleep/Rest Pattern

- Where do you sleep? (In bed? In a lounge chair?)
- How many pillows do you sleep on?

- Do you ever wake up at night short of breath?
- What happens when you wake up short of breath?
- Do you ever wake up at night with pain or cramps in your legs? How do you relieve that sensation?

Cognitive/Perceptual Pattern

- How is your memory? What does your family say about your memory?
- How often do you feel dizzy, disoriented, or faint?
- Do you ever have chest discomfort? How often? What precipitates it? What is it like? How do you relieve it? What is its level on a scale of 0 to 10?
- Do you ever have leg or buttock pain? What are its characteristics?
- How do you learn best?

Role/Relationship Pattern

- What is your job?
- What does a day's work entail?
- What are your family responsibilities?
- With whom do you live?
- Who is available to help you?

Sexuality/Reproductive Pattern

- Has your ability to engage in sexual activity changed in the past year? If so, how?
- Do you take any medications that affect your sexual response? If so, what?

Coping/Stress Tolerance Pattern

- What do you think has been happening to you?
- How do you respond to being caught in a traffic jam or meeting a deadline?
- What do you do to relax?
- What do you do when you feel stressed?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Postmenopausal women are two to three times more likely than premenopausal women to have CAD. The incidence for the disease in women is about 10 years later than in men and 20 years later for myocardial infarction (MI) and death to occur. After an acute MI, women tend to have a higher mortality rate and suffer more complications when compared with men (AHA, 2010b).

Women with waist and abdominal obesity (greater waist-hip ratio) are more likely to experience cardiovascular disease (CVD) than are women with excess fat in their buttocks, hips, and thighs.

disease death rates 2 to 4 times higher than those without diabetes. The risk for stroke is also 2 to 4 times higher among people with diabetes. The number of premature deaths (younger than 65 years) from heart disease is greatest among American Indians and Alaska Natives and lowest among Asians (AHA, 2010b).

Modifiable (controllable) risk factors should also be assessed. *Modifiable* risk factors are personal lifestyle habits, including cigarette use, physical inactivity, obesity, and psychological variables. Ask the patient about each of these common risk factors.

Cigarette smoking is a major risk factor for CVD, specifically coronary artery disease (CAD) and peripheral vascular disease (PVD). Three compounds in cigarette smoke have

been implicated in the development of CAD: tar, nicotine, and carbon monoxide. The smoking history should include the number of cigarettes smoked daily, the duration of the smoking habit, and the age of the patient when smoking started. Record the smoking history in **pack-years**, which is the number of packs per day multiplied by the number of years the patient has smoked.

Ask about the patient's desire to quit, past attempts to quit, and the methods used. Determine nicotine dependence by asking questions such as:

- How soon after you wake up in the morning do you smoke?
- Do you wake up in the middle of your sleep time to smoke?
- Do you find it difficult not to smoke in places where smoking is prohibited?
- Do you smoke when you are ill?

Three to four years after a patient has stopped smoking, his or her CVD risk appears to be similar to that of a person who has never smoked. Be sure to ask those who do not currently smoke whether they have ever smoked and when they quit. Passive smoke significantly reduces blood flow in healthy young adults' coronary arteries, and the risk for dying increases among those who are exposed to secondhand smoke (AHA, 2010a).

A *sedentary lifestyle* is also a major risk factor for heart disease. Regular physical activity promotes cardiovascular fitness and produces beneficial changes in blood pressure and levels of blood lipids and clotting factors. Unfortunately, few people in the United States follow the recommended exercise guidelines: 30 minutes daily of light to moderate exercise, which is equivalent to a 30-minute brisk walk. According to the [American Heart Association \(AHA\) \(2010a\)](#), fewer than two thirds of people in the United States engage in this much exercise five times a week and fewer engage in more vigorous physical activity to promote cardiopulmonary fitness. Encourage increased physical exercise as part of a lifestyle change to reduce the risk for CAD. Ask patients about the type of exercise they perform, how long a period they have participated in the exercise, and the frequency and intensity of the exercise.

About two thirds of American adults are **overweight** when defined as a body mass index (BMI) of 25 to 30. **Obesity**, defined as a BMI greater than 30, is particularly a problem for African-American women, Mexican Americans, and native Hawaiians, but the exact cause of this cultural difference is unknown ([AHA, 2010a](#)). Obesity is also associated with hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and diabetes; all are known contributors to CVD.

The American Heart Association provides guidelines to combat obesity and improve cardiac health, including ingesting more nutrient-rich foods that have vitamins, minerals, fiber, and other nutrients but are low in calories. To get the necessary nutrients, teach patients to choose foods like vegetables, fruits, whole-grain products, and fat-free dairy products most often. Also teach patients to not eat more calories than they can burn every day ([AHA, 2010a](#)).

A variety of *psychological factors* make people more vulnerable to the development of heart disease. Those who are highly competitive, overly concerned about meeting deadlines, and often hostile or angry are at higher risk for heart disease. Psychological stress, anger, depression, and hostility are all closely associated with risk for developing heart disease.

You might ask the patient, “How do you respond when you have to wait for an appointment?” Chronic anger and hostility appear to be closely associated with CVD. The constant arousal of the sympathetic nervous system as a result of anger may influence blood pressure, serum fatty acids and lipids, and clotting mechanisms. Observe the patient, and assess his or her response to stressful situations.

Review the patient’s medical history, noting any major illnesses such as diabetes mellitus, renal disease, anemia, high BP, stroke, bleeding disorders, connective tissue diseases, chronic pulmonary diseases, heart disease, and thrombophlebitis. These conditions can influence the patient’s cardiovascular status.

Ask about previous treatment for CVD, identify previous diagnostic procedures (e.g., electrocardiography [ECG], cardiac catheterization), and request information about any medical or invasive treatment of CVD. Ask specifically about recurrent tonsillitis, streptococcal infections, and rheumatic fever because these conditions may lead to valvular abnormalities of the heart. In addition, inquire about any known congenital heart defects. Many patients with congenital heart problems live into adulthood because of improved treatment and surgeries.

Ask patients about their drug history, beginning with any current or recent use of prescription or over-the-counter (OTC) medications or herbal/natural products. Inquire about known sensitivities to any drug and the nature of the reaction (e.g., nausea, rash). Patients should be asked whether they have recently used cocaine or any IV “street” drugs, because these substances are often associated with heart disease.

Ask women whether they are taking oral contraceptives or an estrogen replacement. The incidence of myocardial infarction (MI) and stroke in women older than 35 years who take oral contraceptives is increased if they smoke, have diabetes, or have hypertension.

The *social history* includes information about the patient’s living situation, including having a domestic partner, other household members, environment, and occupation. Identification of support systems is especially important in exploring the possibility that the patient might have difficulty paying for medications or treatment. People who report an annual household income less than \$30,000 have a greater risk for CVD than people who have an income over \$50,000 (Metcalf et al., 2008; Wright et al., 2009).

Ask about occupation, including the type of work performed and the requirements of the specific job. For instance, does the job involve physical exertion such as lifting heavy objects? Is the job emotionally stressful? What does a day’s work entail? Does the patient’s job require him or her to be outside in extreme weather conditions?

Nutrition History

A nutrition history includes the patient’s recall of food and fluid intake during a 24-hour period, self-imposed or medically prescribed dietary restrictions or supplementations, and the amount and type of alcohol consumption. If needed, the dietitian reviews the type of foods selected by the patient for the amount of sodium, sugar, cholesterol, fiber, and fat. Cultural beliefs and economic status can influence the choice of food items and therefore are seriously considered. Family members or significant others who are responsible for shopping and cooking should be included in this screening.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The nurse is providing education to help reduce cardiovascular risks for adults at a community health fair. Which statement made by a participant indicates understanding of the health education?

- A. “I can’t do anything about my disease risk because it is in my genes.”
- B. “I will take my blood pressure medication only when I have symptoms.”
- C. “I will start walking on the treadmill each day when I watch my favorite TV show.”
- D. “I don’t need to stop smoking because damage to my blood vessels is irreversible.”

Family History and Genetic Risk

Review the family history, and obtain information about the age, health status, and cause of death of immediate family members. A positive family history for CAD in a first-degree relative (parent, sibling, or child) is a major risk factor. It is *more* important than other factors such as hypertension, obesity, diabetes, or sudden cardiac death ([AHA, 2010b](#)).

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Cardiovascular disease has many contributory factors, including a genetic tendency. A significant association between familial cardiac history and cardiovascular disease is consistently demonstrated in the evidence of multiple large-scale prospective epidemiology studies (Lloyd-Jones et al., 2009). Although several genes have been reported to be associated with heart disease, stroke, and hypertension, the impact of each individual gene is not fully understood. Numerous genetic association studies are underway to determine more specific genetic variants that may underlie the family history (Lloyd-Jones et al., 2009). Additional discussions about genetic factors related to specific CV diseases are found in other chapters in this unit.

Current Health Problems

Ask the patient to describe his or her health concerns. Expand on the description of these concerns by obtaining information about their onset, duration, sequence, frequency, location, quality, intensity, associated symptoms, and precipitating, aggravating, and relieving factors. Major symptoms usually identified by patients with CVD include chest pain or discomfort, dyspnea, fatigue, palpitations, weight gain, syncope, and extremity pain.

Pain or discomfort, considered a traditional symptom of heart disease, can result from ischemic heart disease, pericarditis, and aortic dissection. Chest pain can also be due to noncardiac conditions such as pleurisy, pulmonary embolus, hiatal hernia, gastroesophageal reflux disease, neuromuscular abnormalities, and anxiety.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Thoroughly evaluate the nature and characteristics of the chest pain. Because pain resulting from myocardial ischemia is life threatening and can lead to serious complications, its cause should be considered ischemic (reduced or obstructed blood flow to the myocardium) until proven otherwise. When assessing for symptoms, ask the patient if he or she has “discomfort,” “heaviness,” “pressure,” and “indigestion.”

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Some patients, especially women, do not experience pain in the chest but instead feel discomfort or indigestion. Women often present with a “triad” of symptoms. In addition to indigestion or feeling of abdominal fullness, chronic fatigue despite adequate rest and feelings of an “inability to catch my breath” are also common in heart disease. The patient may also describe the sensation as aching, choking, strangling, tingling, squeezing, constricting, or viselike. Others with severe neuropathy may experience few or no traditional symptoms except shortness of breath, despite major ischemia.

Ask the patient to identify when the symptoms were first noticed (onset):

- Did the symptoms begin suddenly or develop gradually (manner of onset)?
- How long did the symptoms last (duration)?

If he or she has repeated painful episodes, assess how often the symptoms occur (frequency). If pain is present, ask whether it is different from any other episodes of pain. Ask the patient to describe what activities he or she was doing when it first occurred, such as sleeping, arguing, or running

(precipitating factors). If possible, the patient should point to the area where the chest pain occurred (location) and describe if and how the pain radiated (spread).

In addition, ask how the pain feels and whether it is sharp, dull, or crushing (quality of pain). To understand the severity of the pain, ask the patient to grade it from 1 to 10, with 10 indicating severe pain (intensity). He or she may also report other signs and symptoms that occur at the same time (associated symptoms), such as dyspnea, diaphoresis (excessive sweating), nausea, and vomiting. Other factors that need to be addressed are those that may have made the chest pain worse (aggravating factors) or less intense (relieving factors). Chest pain can arise from a variety of sources (Table 35-1). By obtaining the appropriate information, you can help identify the source of the chest discomfort.

Dyspnea (difficult or labored breathing) can occur as a result of both cardiac and pulmonary disease. It is experienced by the patient as uncomfortable breathing or shortness of breath. When obtaining the history, ask what factors precipitate and relieve dyspnea, what level of activity produces dyspnea, and what the patient's body position was when dyspnea occurred.

*Dyspnea that is associated with activity, such as climbing stairs, is referred to as **dyspnea on exertion (DOE)**. This is usually an early symptom of heart failure and may be the only symptom experienced by women.*

The patient with advanced heart disease may experience **orthopnea** (dyspnea that appears when he or she lies flat). Several pillows may be needed to elevate the head and chest, or a recliner to prevent breathlessness may be used. *The severity of orthopnea is measured by the number of pillows or the amount of head elevation needed to provide restful sleep.* This symptom is usually relieved within a matter of minutes by sitting up or standing.

Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND) develops after the patient has been lying down for several hours. In this position, blood from the lower extremities is redistributed to the venous system, which increases venous return to the heart. A diseased heart cannot compensate for the increased volume and is ineffective in pumping the additional fluid into the circulatory system. Pulmonary congestion results. The patient awakens abruptly, often with a feeling of suffocation and panic. He or she sits upright and dangles the legs over the side of the bed to relieve the dyspnea. This sensation may last for 20 minutes.

Fatigue may be described as a feeling of tiredness or weariness resulting from activity. The patient may report that an activity takes longer to complete or that he or she tires easily after activity. Although fatigue in itself is not diagnostic of heart disease, many people with heart failure are limited by leg fatigue during exercise. Fatigue that occurs after mild activity and exertion usually indicates inadequate cardiac output (due to low stroke volume) and anaerobic metabolism in skeletal muscle. *It can also accompany other symptoms or may be an early indication of heart disease in women.*

Ask about the time of day the patient experiences fatigue and the activities that he or she can perform. Fatigue resulting from decreased cardiac output is often worse in the evening. Ask whether the patient can perform the same activities as he or she could perform a year ago or the same activities as others of the same age. Often he or she limits activities in response to fatigue and, unless questioned, is unaware how much less active he or she has become.

TABLE 35-1 ASSESSMENT OF CHEST DISCOMFORT: HOW VARIOUS TYPES OF CHEST PAIN DIFFER

ONSET	QUALITY AND SEVERITY	LOCATION AND RADIATION	DURATION AND RELIEVING FACTORS
Angina			
Sudden, usually in response to exertion, emotion, or extremes in temperature	Squeezing, viselike pain	Substernal; may spread across the chest and the back and/or down the arms	Usually the left side of chest without radiation Usually lasts less than 15 min; relieved with rest, nitrate administration, or oxygen therapy
Myocardial Infarction			
Sudden, without precipitating factors, often in early morning	Intense stabbing, viselike pain or pressure, severe	Substernal; may spread throughout the anterior chest and to the arms, jaw, back, or neck	Continuous or no chest discomfort; relieved with morphine, cardiac drugs, and oxygen therapy
Pericarditis			
Sudden	Sharp, stabbing, moderate to severe	Substernal; usually spreads to the left side or the back	Intermittent; relieved with sitting upright, analgesia, or administration of anti-inflammatory agents
Pleuropulmonary			
Variable	Moderate ache, worse on inspiration	Lung fields	Continuous until the underlying condition is treated or the patient has rested
Esophageal-Gastric			
Variable	Squeezing, heartburn, variable severity	Substernal; may spread to the shoulders or the abdomen	Variable; may be relieved with antacid administration, food intake, or taking a sitting position
Anxiety			
Variable, may be in response to stress or fatigue	Dull ache to sharp stabbing; may be associated with numbness in fingers	Not well located and usually does not radiate to other parts of the body as pain	Usually lasts a few minutes

A feeling of fluttering or unpleasant feeling in the chest caused by an irregular heartbeat is referred to as **palpitations**. They may result from a change in heart rate or rhythm or from an increase in the force of heart contractions. Rhythm disturbances that may cause palpitations include paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, premature contractions, and sinus tachycardia. Those that occur during or after strenuous physical activity, such as running and swimming, may indicate overexertion or possibly heart disease. Noncardiac factors that may precipitate palpitations include anxiety, stress, fatigue, insomnia, hyperthyroidism, and the ingestion of caffeine, nicotine, or alcohol. Ask the patient about specific factors that cause his or her palpitations.

A sudden weight increase of 2.2 pounds (1 kg) can result from excess fluid (1 L) in the interstitial spaces. The best indicator of fluid balance is weight. Excess fluid accumulation is commonly known as **edema**. It is possible for weight gains of up to 10 to 15 pounds (4.5 to 6.8 kg, or 4 to 7 L of fluid) to occur before edema is apparent. Ask whether the patient has noticed a tightness of shoes, indentations from socks, or tightness of rings.

Syncope refers to a brief loss of consciousness. The most common cause is decreased perfusion to the brain. Any condition that suddenly reduces cardiac output, resulting in decreased cerebral blood flow, can lead to a syncopal episode. Conditions such as cardiac rhythm disturbances, especially ventricular dysrhythmias, and valvular disorders, such as aortic stenosis, may trigger this symptom. **Near-syncope** refers to dizziness with an inability to remain in an upright position. Explore the circumstances that lead to dizziness or syncope.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Syncope in the aging person may result from hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus bodies in the carotid arteries. Pressure applied to these arteries while turning the head, shrugging the shoulders, or performing a Valsalva maneuver (bearing down during defecation) may stimulate a vagal response. A decrease in blood pressure and heart rate can result, which can produce syncope. This type of syncopal episode may also result from postural (orthostatic) or postprandial (after eating) hypotension.

Extremity pain may be caused by two conditions: ischemia from atherosclerosis and venous insufficiency of the peripheral blood vessels. Patients who report a moderate to severe cramping sensation in their legs or buttocks associated with an activity such as walking have **intermittent claudication** related to decreased arterial tissue perfusion. *Claudication pain is usually relieved by resting or lowering the affected extremity to decrease tissue demands or to enhance arterial blood flow.* Leg pain that results from prolonged standing or sitting is related to venous insufficiency from either incompetent valves or venous obstruction. This pain may be relieved by elevating the extremity.

Functional History

After the history of the patient's cardiovascular status is obtained, he or she may be classified according to the New York Heart Association Functional Classification (Table 35-2) or other system. The four classifications (I, II, III, and IV) depend on the degree to which ordinary physical activities (routine ADLs) are affected by heart disease. The Killip Classification provides a more objective description of the hemodynamics of heart failure and is described in Chapter 40.

TABLE 35-2 NEW YORK HEART ASSOCIATION FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF CARDIOVASCULAR DISABILITY

Class I

- Patients with cardiac disease but without resulting limitations of physical activity
- Ordinary physical activity does not cause undue fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea, or anginal pain

Class II

- Patients with cardiac disease resulting in slight limitation of physical activity
- They are comfortable at rest
- Ordinary physical activity results in fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea, or anginal pain

Class III

- Patients with cardiac disease resulting in marked limitation of physical activity
- They are comfortable at rest
- Less than ordinary physical activity causes fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea, or anginal pain

Class IV

- Patients with cardiac disease resulting in inability to carry on any physical activity without discomfort
- Symptoms of cardiac insufficiency or of the anginal syndrome may be present, even at rest
- If any physical activity is undertaken, discomfort is increased

Excerpted from *The New York Heart Association. (1964). Diseases of the heart and blood vessels: Nomenclature and criteria for diagnosis* (6th ed.). Boston: Little, Brown.

Physical Assessment

A thorough physical assessment is the foundation for the nursing database and the patient's priority problems. Any changes noted during the course of illness can be compared with this initial database. Evaluate the patient's vital signs on admission to the hospital or during the initial visit to the clinic or health care provider's office.

General Appearance

Physical assessment begins with the patient's general appearance. Assess general build and appearance, skin color, distress level, level of consciousness, shortness of breath, position, and verbal responses.

Patients can have left- or right-sided heart failure, or both. They can also be diagnosed with systolic and/or diastolic heart failure. *As a result, poor cardiac output and decreased cerebral perfusion may cause confusion, memory loss, and slowed verbal responses, especially in older adults.* Patients with chronic heart failure may also appear malnourished, thin, and cachectic. Late signs of severe right-sided heart failure are ascites, jaundice, and **anasarca** (generalized edema) as a result of prolonged congestion of the liver. Heart failure may also cause fluid retention and may be manifested by obvious generalized dependent edema. **Chapter 37** differentiates right and left failure and systolic from diastolic heart failure in detail.

Skin

Skin assessment includes color and temperature. The best areas in which to assess circulation include the nail beds, mucous membranes, and conjunctival mucosa, because small

blood vessels are located near the surface of the skin in those areas.

If there is normal blood flow or adequate perfusion to a given area in *light-colored skin*, it appears pink, perhaps rosy, and is warm. *Decreased perfusion is manifested as cool, pale, and moist skin. Pallor is characteristic of anemia and can be seen in areas such as the nail beds, palms, and conjunctival mucous membranes in any patient.*

A bluish or darkened discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes in *light-skinned* people is referred to as **cyanosis**. This condition results from an increased amount of deoxygenated hemoglobin. It is not an early sign of decreased perfusion but occurs later with other symptoms. *Dark-skinned patients may experience cyanosis as a graying of the same tissues.*

Central cyanosis involves decreased oxygenation of the arterial blood in the lungs and appears as a bluish tinge of the conjunctivae and the mucous membranes of the mouth and tongue. Central cyanosis may indicate impaired lung function or a right-to-left shunt found in congenital heart conditions. Because of impaired circulation, there is marked desaturation of hemoglobin in the peripheral tissues, which produces a bluish or darkened discoloration of the nail beds, earlobes, lips, and toes.

Peripheral cyanosis occurs when blood flow to the peripheral vessels is decreased by peripheral vasoconstriction. Constriction results from a low cardiac output or an increased extraction of oxygen from the peripheral tissues. Peripheral cyanosis localized in an extremity is usually a result of arterial or venous insufficiency. **Rubor** (dusky redness) that replaces pallor in a dependent foot suggests arterial insufficiency.

Skin temperature can be assessed for symmetry by touching different areas of the body with the dorsal (back) surface of the hand or fingers. Decreased blood flow results in decreased skin temperature. It is lowered in several clinical conditions, including heart failure, peripheral vascular disease, and shock.

Extremities

Assess the patient's hands, arms, feet, and legs for skin changes, vascular changes, clubbing, and edema. Skin mobility and turgor are affected by fluid status. Dehydration and aging reduce skin turgor, and edema decreases skin elasticity. Vascular changes in an affected extremity may include paresthesia, muscle fatigue and discomfort, numbness, pain, coolness, and loss of hair distribution from a reduced blood supply.

Clubbing of the fingers and toes is caused by *chronic* oxygen deprivation in body tissues. It is common in patients with advanced chronic pulmonary disease, congenital heart defects, and cor pulmonale (right-sided heart failure). The angle of the normal nail bed is 160 degrees. With **clubbing**, the nail straightens out to an angle of 180 degrees and the base of the nail becomes spongy. **Fig. 35-5** describes assessment of clubbing. **Fig. 32-12** in **Chapter 32** shows late clubbing.

Peripheral edema is a common finding in patients with cardiovascular problems. The location of edema helps determine its potential cause. Bilateral edema of the legs may be seen in those with heart failure or chronic venous insufficiency. Abdominal and leg edema can be seen in patients with heart disease and cirrhosis of the liver. Localized edema in one extremity may be the result of venous obstruction

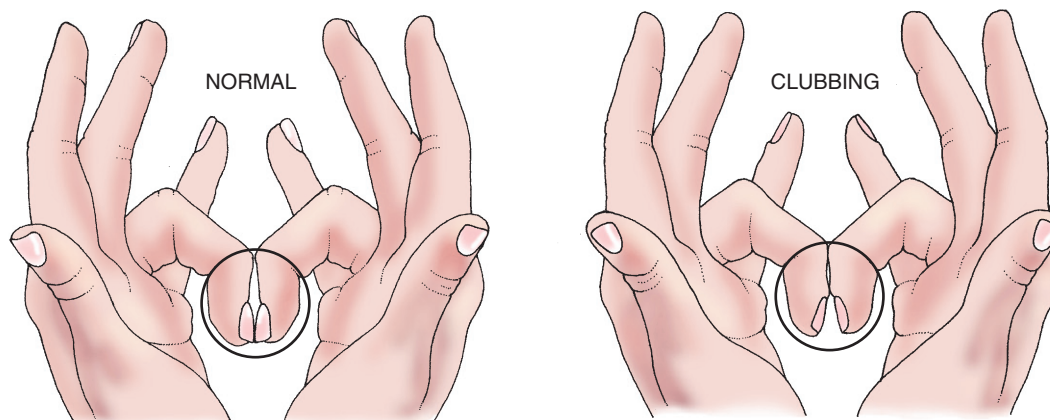


FIG. 35-5 Assessment of clubbing. The patient places the fingernails of the ring fingers together and holds them up to a light. If the examiner can see a diamond shape between the nails, there is no clubbing. Clubbing is identified by the absence of the diamond shape.

(thrombosis) or lymphatic blockage of the extremity (lymphedema). Edema may also be noted in dependent areas, such as the sacrum, when a patient is confined to bed. In other patients, edema results from third spacing when plasma proteins decrease. Dependent foot and ankle edema is also a common side effect of certain antihypertensive drugs, such as amlodipine (Norvasc).

Document the location of edema as precisely as possible (e.g., midtibial or sacral) and the number of centimeters from an anatomic landmark. The extent of edema can be assessed as mild, moderate, or severe (or 1+, 2+, 3+, or 4+). However, these values are not precise and are very unreliable. Determine whether the edema is **pitting** (the skin can be indented) or nonpitting.

Blood Pressure

Arterial blood pressure is measured *indirectly* by sphygmomanometry. This technique of measurement is described in detail in nursing skills textbooks.

The **National High Blood Pressure Education Program Joint National Committee (JNC) on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (2003)** defines **hypertension** as a systolic pressure of 140 mm Hg or higher or a diastolic pressure of 90 mm Hg or higher, or taking drugs to control blood pressure. A blood pressure that exceeds 135/85 mm Hg increases the workload of the left ventricle and oxygen consumption of the myocardium. About one of every five Americans has hypertension (**AHA, 2010b**). **Chapter 38** describes hypertension in detail.

A BP less than 90/60 mm Hg (hypotension) may not be adequate for providing enough oxygen and sufficient nutrition to body cells. In certain circumstances, such as shock, the Korotkoff sounds are less audible or are absent. In these cases, palpate the BP, use an ultrasonic device (Doppler device), or obtain a direct measurement by arterial catheter in the critical care setting. When BP is palpated, only the systolic pressure can be determined. More information on *direct* measurement of arterial pressure is available in the Hemodynamic Monitoring section on p. 708.

Patients may report dizziness or light-headedness when they move from a flat, supine position to a sitting or a standing position at the edge of the bed. Normally these symptoms

are transient and pass quickly; pronounced symptoms may be due to postural hypotension. **Postural (orthostatic) hypotension** occurs when the BP is not adequately maintained while moving from a lying to a sitting or standing position. It is defined as a decrease of more than 20 mm Hg of the systolic pressure or more than 10 mm Hg of the diastolic pressure, as well as a 10% to 20% increase in heart rate. The causes of postural hypotension include cardiovascular drugs, blood volume decrease, prolonged bedrest, age-related changes, or disorders of the ANS.

To detect orthostatic changes in BP, first measure the BP when the patient is supine. After remaining supine for at least 3 minutes, the patient changes position to sitting or standing. Normally systolic pressure drops slightly or remains unchanged as the patient rises, whereas diastolic pressure rises slightly. After the position change, wait for at least 1 minute before auscultating BP and counting the radial pulse. The cuff should remain in the proper position on the patient's arm. Observe and record any signs or symptoms of dizziness. If the patient cannot tolerate the position change, return him or her to the previous position of comfort.

Paradoxical blood pressure is an exaggerated decrease in systolic pressure by more than 10 mm Hg during the inspiratory phase of the respiratory cycle (normal is 3 to 10 mm Hg). Certain clinical conditions that potentially alter the filling pressures in the right and left ventricles may produce a paradoxical BP. Such conditions include pericardial tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, and pulmonary hypertension. During inspiration, the filling pressures normally decrease slightly. However, decreased fluid volume in the ventricles resulting from these pathologic conditions produces a marked reduction in cardiac output. The procedure for assessing a paradoxical BP is found in **Chart 37-9** in **Chapter 37**.

The difference between the systolic and diastolic values is referred to as **pulse pressure**. This value can be used as an indirect measure of cardiac output. Narrowed pulse pressure is rarely normal and results from increased peripheral vascular resistance or decreased stroke volume in patients with heart failure, hypovolemia, or shock. It can also be seen in those with mitral stenosis or regurgitation. An increased pulse pressure may occur in patients with slow heart rates, aortic regurgitation, atherosclerosis, hypertension, and aging.

The **ankle-brachial index (ABI)** can be used to assess the vascular status of the lower extremities. A BP cuff is applied to the lower extremity just above the malleolus. The systolic pressure is measured by Doppler ultrasound at both the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses. The higher of these two pressures is then divided by the higher of the two brachial pulses to obtain the ABI.

Normal values for the ABI are 1.00 or higher because BP in the legs is usually higher than BP in the arms. ABI values less than 0.80 usually indicate moderate vascular disease, whereas values less than 0.50 indicate severe vascular compromise. Although used primarily to help identify peripheral vascular disease, the ABI may be effective as a risk factor in predicting other CV disease in women, especially coronary artery disease (Pearson, 2010).

A **toe brachial pressure index (TBPI)** may be performed instead of or in addition to the ABI to determine arterial perfusion in the feet and toes. TBPI is the toe systolic pressure divided by the brachial (arm) systolic pressure.

Venous and Arterial Pulses

Observe the *venous pulsations* in the neck to assess the adequacy of blood volume and central venous pressure (CVP). Specially educated or critical care nurses can assess jugular venous pressure (JVP) to estimate the filling volume and pressure on the right side of the heart. An increase in JVP causes **jugular venous distention (JVD)**.

Normally the JVP is 3 to 10 cm H₂O. Increases are usually caused by right ventricular failure. Other causes include tricuspid regurgitation or stenosis, pulmonary hypertension, cardiac tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, hypervolemia, and superior vena cava obstruction.

Assessment of *arterial pulses* provides information about vascular integrity and circulation. For patients with suspected or actual vascular disease, all major peripheral pulses should be assessed for presence or absence, amplitude, contour, rhythm, rate, and equality. Palpate the peripheral arteries in a head-to-toe approach with a side-to-side comparison (Fig. 35-6).

A **hypokinetic** pulse is a weak pulse indicative of a narrow pulse pressure. It is seen in patients with hypovolemia, aortic stenosis, and decreased cardiac output. A **hyperkinetic** pulse is a large, “bounding” pulse caused by an increased ejection of blood. It occurs in patients with a high cardiac output (with exercise, sepsis, or thyrotoxicosis) and in those with increased sympathetic system activity (with pain, fever, or anxiety).

Auscultation of the major arteries (e.g., carotid and aorta) is necessary to assess for bruits. **Bruits** are swishing sounds that may occur from turbulent blood flow in narrowed or atherosclerotic arteries. Assess for the absence or presence of bruits by placing the bell of the stethoscope on the neck over the carotid artery while the patient holds his or her breath. Normally there are no sounds if the artery has uninterrupted blood flow. A bruit may develop when the internal diameter of the vessel is narrowed by 50% or more, but this does not indicate the severity of disease in the arteries. Once the vessel is blocked 90% or greater, the bruit often cannot be heard.

Precordium

Assessment of the precordium (the area over the heart) involves inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation. In most settings, the medical-surgical nurse seldom performs

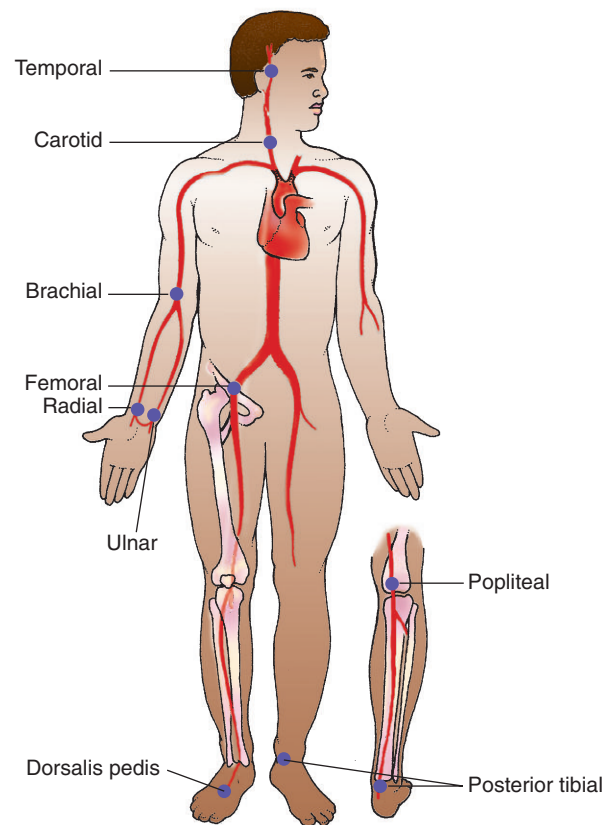


FIG. 35-6 Pulse points for assessment of arterial pulses.

precordial palpation and percussion. Critical care nurses and advanced practice nurses are qualified to perform the complete assessment. Therefore only inspection and auscultation are described here. Begin by placing the patient in a supine position, with the head of the bed slightly elevated for comfort. Some patients may require elevation of the head of the bed to 45 degrees for ease and comfort in breathing.

Inspection. A cardiac examination is usually performed in a systematic order, beginning with inspection. Inspect the chest from the side, at a right angle, and downward over areas of the precordium where vibrations are visible. Cardiac motion is of low amplitude, and sometimes the inward movements are more easily detected by the naked eye.

Examine the entire precordium (Fig. 35-7), and note any prominent pulses. Movement over the aortic, pulmonic, and tricuspid areas is abnormal. Pulses in the mitral area (the apex of the heart) are considered normal and are referred to as the **apical impulse**, or the **point of maximal impulse (PMI)**. The PMI should be located at the left fifth intercostal space (ICS) in the midclavicular line. If it appears in more than one ICS and has shifted lateral to the midclavicular line, the patient may have left ventricular hypertrophy.

Auscultation. Auscultation evaluates heart rate and rhythm, cardiac cycle (systole and diastole), and valvular function. The technique of auscultation requires a good-quality stethoscope and extensive clinical practice. Identifying specific abnormal heart sounds is most important in critical care beds and telemetry. Some hospitals are equipped with monitored beds in every unit, but telemetry is used only when needed.

Listen to heart sounds in a systematic order. Examination usually begins at the aortic area and progresses slowly to the

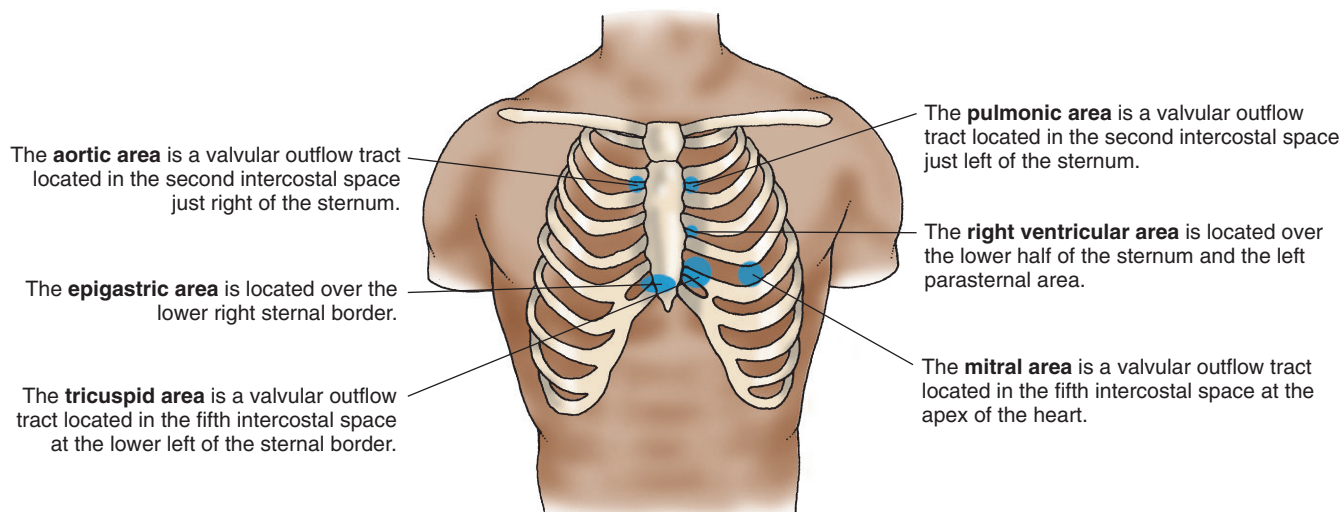


FIG. 35-7 Areas for myocardial inspection and auscultation.

apex of the heart. The diaphragm of the stethoscope is pressed tightly against the chest to listen for high-frequency sounds and is useful in listening to the first and second heart sounds and high-frequency murmurs. Repeat the progression from the base to the apex of the heart using the bell of the stethoscope, which is held lightly against the chest. The bell can screen out high-frequency sounds and is useful in listening for low-frequency gallops (diastolic filling sounds) and murmurs.

Normal Heart Sounds. The **first heart sound (S_1)** is created by the closure of the mitral and tricuspid valves (atrioventricular valves) (see Fig. 35-4). When auscultated, S_1 is softer and longer; it is of a low pitch and is best heard at the lower left sternal border or the apex of the heart. It may be identified by palpating the carotid pulse while listening. S_1 marks the beginning of ventricular systole and occurs right after the QRS complex on the ECG.

S_1 can be accentuated or intensified in conditions such as exercise, hyperthyroidism, and mitral stenosis. A decrease in sound intensity occurs in patients with mitral regurgitation and heart failure. If you have difficulty hearing heart sounds, have the patient lean forward or roll to his or her left side.

The **second heart sound (S_2)** is caused mainly by the closing of the aortic and pulmonic valves (semilunar valves) (see Fig. 35-4). S_2 is characteristically shorter. It is higher pitched and is heard best at the base of the heart at the end of ventricular systole.

The splitting of heart sounds is often difficult to differentiate from diastolic filling sounds (gallops). A splitting of S_1 (closure of the mitral valve followed by closure of the tricuspid valve) occurs physiologically because left ventricular contraction occurs slightly before right ventricular contraction. Closure of the mitral valve is louder than closure of the tricuspid valve, however, so splitting is often not heard. Normal splitting of S_2 occurs because of the longer systolic phase of the right ventricle. Splitting of S_1 and S_2 can be accentuated by inspiration (increased venous return), and it narrows during expiration.

Abnormal Heart Sounds. Abnormal splitting of S_2 is referred to as **paradoxical splitting** and has a wider split heard on expiration. Paradoxical splitting of S_2 is heard in

patients with severe myocardial depression that causes early closure of the pulmonic valve or a delay in aortic valve closure. Such conditions include myocardial infarction (MI), left bundle-branch block, aortic stenosis, aortic regurgitation, and right ventricular pacing.

Gallops and murmurs are common abnormal heart sounds that may occur with heart disease, but they can occur in some healthy people. Diastolic filling sounds (S_3 and S_4) are produced when blood enters a noncompliant chamber during rapid ventricular filling. The third heart sound (S_3) is produced during the rapid passive filling phase of ventricular diastole when blood flows from the atrium to a noncompliant ventricle. The sound arises from vibrations of the valves and supporting structures. The fourth heart sound (S_4) occurs as blood enters the ventricles during the active filling phase at the end of ventricular diastole.

S_3 is called a **ventricular gallop**, and S_4 is referred to as **atrial gallop**. These sounds can be caused by decreased compliance of either or both ventricles. Left ventricular diastolic filling sounds are best heard with the patient on his or her left side. The bell of the stethoscope is placed at the apex and at the left lower sternal border during expiration.

An S_3 heart sound is most likely to be a normal finding in those younger than 30 years. An S_3 gallop in patients older than 35 years is considered abnormal and represents a decrease in left ventricular compliance. It can be detected as an early sign of heart failure or as a ventricular septal defect.

An atrial gallop (S_4) may be heard in patients with hypertension, anemia, ventricular hypertrophy, MI, aortic or pulmonic stenosis, and pulmonary emboli. *It may be heard also with advancing age because of a stiffened ventricle.*

The presence of both S_3 and S_4 , called a **summation** or a **quadruple gallop**, is an indication of severe heart failure. If the quadruple rhythm is present and the patient has tachycardia, the two sounds may fuse to produce a rhythm that sounds like a horse galloping.

Murmurs reflect turbulent blood flow through normal or abnormal valves. They are classified according to their timing in the cardiac cycle: **systolic** murmurs (e.g., aortic stenosis and mitral regurgitation) occur between S_1 and S_2 , whereas **diastolic** murmurs (e.g., mitral stenosis and aortic regurgitation)

TABLE 35-3 GRADING OF HEART MURMURS

Grade I	Very faint
Grade II	Faint but recognizable
Grade III	Loud but moderate in intensity
Grade IV	Loud and accompanied by a palpable thrill
Grade V	Very loud, accompanied by a palpable thrill, and audible with the stethoscope partially off the patient's chest
Grade VI	Extremely loud, may be heard with the stethoscope slightly above the patient's chest, accompanied by a palpable thrill

occur between S_2 and S_1 . Murmurs can occur during presystole, midsystole, or late systole or diastole or can last throughout both phases of the cardiac cycle. They are also graded according to their intensity, depending on their level of loudness (Table 35-3).

Although you are not expected to grade murmurs as a medical-surgical nurse, describe their location based on where they are best heard. Some murmurs transmit or radiate from their loudest point to other areas, including the neck, the back, and the axilla. The configuration is described as *crescendo* (increases in intensity) or *decrescendo* (decreases in intensity). The quality of murmurs can be further characterized as harsh, blowing, whistling, rumbling, or squeaking. They are also described by pitch—usually *high* or *low*.

A **pericardial friction rub** originates from the pericardial sac and occurs with the movements of the heart during the cardiac cycle. Rubs are usually transient and are a sign of inflammation, infection, or infiltration. They may be heard in patients with pericarditis resulting from MI, cardiac tamponade, or post-thoracotomy.

Psychosocial Assessment

To most people, the heart is a symbol of their ability to exist, survive, and love. A patient with a heart-related illness, whether acute or chronic, usually perceives it as a major life crisis. The patient and family confront not only the possibility of death but also fears about pain, disability, lack of self-esteem, physical dependence, and changes in family dynamics. Assess the meaning of the illness to the patient and family by asking “What do you understand about what happened to you (or the patient)?” and “What does that mean to you?” When they perceive the stressor as overwhelming, formerly adequate support systems may no longer be effective. In these circumstances, the patient and family members attempt to cope to regain a sense or feeling of control.

Coping behaviors vary among patients and their families. Those who feel helpless to meet the demands of the situation may exhibit behaviors such as disorganization, fear, and anxiety. Ask them, “Have you ever encountered such a situation before?” “How did you manage that situation?” and “To whom can you turn for help?” The answers to these questions often reassure the patient and family that they have encountered difficult situations in the past and have the ability and resources to cope with them.

A common and normal response is denial, which is a defense mechanism that enables the patient to cope with threatening circumstances. He or she may deny the current cardiovascular

condition, may state that it was present but is now absent, or may be excessively cheerful. Denial becomes maladaptive when the patient is noncompliant or does not adhere to the interdisciplinary plan of care.

Family members and significant others may be more anxious than the patient. Often they recall all events of the illness, are unprotected by denial, and are afraid of recurrence. Disagreements may occur between the patient and family members over adherence to appropriate follow-up care.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration

An older adult patient is admitted to the telemetry unit after falling at home. She states she fell after getting up from her recliner in the late afternoon. The patient is alert and oriented; BP = 96/55 and HR = 88. You are the RN assigned to her care. There is an unlicensed nursing technician working with you.

1. What assessment data will you perform upon her arrival to the unit? Why?
2. What could be the cause of this patient's fall? Think of all the possibilities.
3. The internist orders IV fluids, orthostatic pressure checks, and oxygen at 2 liters per nasal cannula. What part of the patient's care will you delegate to the unlicensed nursing technician? What information will you communicate upon delegation?
4. What interventions will you implement to ensure this patient's safety?
5. The patient's daughter is at the bedside and expresses concerns about her mother's safety upon discharge. What education will you provide the patient and her daughter at this time? With what health care team members will you collaborate to ensure positive patient outcomes?

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

Assessment of the patient with cardiovascular dysfunction includes examination of the blood for abnormalities. The examination is performed to help establish a diagnosis, detect concurrent disease, assess risk factors, and monitor response to treatment. Normal values for serum cardiac enzymes and serum lipids are listed in Chart 35-3.

Serum Markers of Myocardial Damage. Events leading to cellular injury cause a release of enzymes from intracellular storage, and circulating levels of these enzymes are dramatically elevated. Acute myocardial infarction (MI), also known as **acute coronary syndrome**, can be confirmed by abnormally high levels of certain proteins or isoenzymes. These serum studies are commonly referred to as **cardiac markers** and include troponin, creatine kinase-MB, and myoglobin.

Troponin is a myocardial muscle protein released into the bloodstream with injury to myocardial muscle. Troponins T and I are not found in healthy patients, so any rise in values indicates cardiac necrosis or acute MI. Specific markers of myocardial injury, troponins T and I, have a wide diagnostic time frame, making them useful for patients who present several hours after the onset of chest pain. Even low levels of troponin T are treated aggressively because of increased risk for death from cardiovascular disease (CVD). Obtaining cardiac markers at the bedside in the emergency department can be done as “point of care” (POC) testing for patients

CHART 35-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Cardiovascular Assessment

NORMAL RANGE	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Serum Cardiac Enzymes	
Creatine kinase (CK) Females: 30-135 units/L Males: 55-170 units/L Values higher after exercise	Elevations indicate possible brain, myocardial, and skeletal muscle necrosis or injury.
CK-MB (CK ₂) 0% of total CK	Elevations occur with myocardial injury or after percutaneous transluminal angioplasty and intracoronary streptokinase infusion.
Serum Lipids	
Total lipids 400-1000 mg/dL	Elevation indicates increased risk for coronary artery disease (CAD).
Cholesterol 122-200 mg/dL, or 3.16-6.5 mmol/L Older adult (>70 yr): 144-280 mg/dL	Elevation indicates increased risk for CAD.
Triglycerides Females: 35-135 mg/dL Males: 40-160 mg/dL Older adult (>65 yr): 55-260 mg/dL	Elevation indicates increased risk for CAD.
Plasma high-density lipoproteins (HDLs) Females: >55 mg/dL Males: >45 mg/dL Older adult: range increases with age	Elevations protect against CAD.
Plasma low-density lipoproteins (LDLs) 60-180 mg/dL Older adult (>65 yr): 92-221 mg/dL	Elevation indicates increased risk for CAD.
HDL:LDL ratio 3:1	Elevated ratios may protect against CAD.
VLDL 25%-50%	Elevated level indicates risk for CAD.
C-reactive protein (CRP) <1.0 mg/dL	Elevation may indicate tissue infarction or damage.
Serum Markers	
Troponins Cardiac troponin T <0.20 ng/mL Cardiac troponin I <0.03 ng/mL	Elevations indicate myocardial injury or infarction.
Myoglobin <90 mcg/L	Elevation indicates myocardial infarction.

VLDL, Very-low-density lipoproteins.

experiencing or at risk for acute MI, with results available within 15 to 20 minutes. These markers are evaluated in addition to clinical signs and symptoms and ECG changes when identifying at-risk patients.

Creatine kinase (CK) is an enzyme specific to cells of the brain, myocardium, and skeletal muscle. The appearance of CK in the blood indicates tissue necrosis or injury, with levels following a predictable rise and fall during a specified period. Cardiac specificity must be determined by measuring

isoenzyme activity. There are three isoenzymes of CK: CK-MM is the predominant isoenzyme of skeletal muscle; CK-MB is found in myocardial muscle; and CK-BB occurs in the brain. CK-MB activity is most specific for MI and shows a predictable rise and fall during 3 days; a peak level occurs about 24 hours after the onset of chest pain.

Treatment modalities for early intervention after acute MI and acute ischemia require more rapid diagnosis of MI. An assay using monoclonal anti-CK-MB antibodies (stat CK) can detect myocardial necrosis accurately 3 hours after emergency department admission when examined with an ECG. Two subforms of CK-MB (CK-MB₁ and CK-MB₂) have also been identified. Abnormal elevations of these CK subforms may occur as early as 2 hours after MI. They remain elevated for up to 12 hours after MI and appear to be very sensitive and specific early diagnostic markers of MI.

Another early marker of an MI is myoglobin. **Myoglobin**, a low-molecular-weight heme protein found in cardiac and skeletal muscle, is the earliest marker detected—as early as 2 hours after an MI with rapid decline after 7 hours. Because myoglobin is not cardiac specific and is found in skeletal and cardiac muscle, its clinical usefulness is more limited than troponin.

Serum Lipids. Elevated lipid levels are considered a risk factor for coronary artery disease (CAD). **Cholesterol**, **triglycerides**, and the protein components of **high-density lipoproteins (HDLs)** and **low-density lipoproteins (LDLs)** are evaluated to assess the risk for CAD. The desired ranges for lipids are (Pagana & Pagana, 2010):

- Total cholesterol less than 200 mg/dL
- Triglyceride less than 150 mg/dL
- HDL more than 40 mg/dL (“good” cholesterol)
- LDL less than 70 mg/dL in high-risk cardiovascular patients, less than 100 mg/dL in patients with moderate risk factors

Each of the lipoproteins contains varying proportions of cholesterol, triglyceride, protein, and phospholipid. HDL contains mainly protein and 20% cholesterol, whereas LDL is mainly cholesterol. Elevated LDL levels are positively correlated with CAD, whereas elevated HDL levels are negatively correlated and appear to be protective for heart disease. LDL pattern size is of significant importance in determining risk for CVD. LDL pattern A is associated with non-insulin resistance; normal glucose, insulin, and HDL levels; and a normal blood pressure. LDL pattern B is associated with insulin resistance; increased glucose, insulin, and triglyceride levels; and hypertension.

A fasting blood sample for the measurement of serum cholesterol levels is preferable to a nonfasting sample. If triglycerides are to be evaluated with cholesterol, the health care provider requests the specimen after a 12-hour fast

Lipoprotein-a, or Lp(a), is a modified form of LDL, the most common familial lipoprotein disorder in patients with premature coronary artery disease. Lp(a) is atherogenic (increases atherosclerotic plaques) and prothrombotic (increases clots). Therefore the desired outcome is a value less than 30 mg/dL. The patient should be fasting and avoid smoking before the test (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Other Serum Tests. **Homocysteine** is an amino acid that is produced when proteins break down. A certain amount of homocysteine is present in the blood, but elevated values may be an independent risk factor for the development of CVD.

Although the relationship between homocysteine and CVD remains controversial, elevated levels of homocysteine may increase the risk for disease as much as smoking and hyperlipemia, especially in women. High-risk patients who have a personal or family history of premature heart disease should be screened. A level less than 14 mmol/dL is considered optimal (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Inflammation is a common and critical component to the development of atherothrombosis. **Highly sensitive C-reactive protein (hsCRP)** has been the most studied marker of inflammation. Any inflammatory process can produce CRP in the blood. Elevations are seen also with hypertension, infection, and smoking. A level less than 1 mg/dL is considered low risk; a level over 3 mg/dL places the patient at high risk for heart disease. Recent guidelines suggest that the CRP is very helpful in determining treatment outcomes in patients at risk for coronary disease and in managing statin therapy after an acute myocardial infarction. (Howie-Esquivel & White, 2008). The most useful time to measure CRP appears to be for risk assessment in middle-aged or older persons.

Microalbuminuria, or small amounts of protein in the urine, has been shown to be a clear marker of widespread endothelial dysfunction in cardiovascular disease (along with elevated CRP). It should be screened annually in all patients with hypertension, metabolic syndrome, or diabetes mellitus. Microalbuminuria has also been used as a marker for renal disease, particularly in patients with hypertension and diabetes.

Blood coagulation studies evaluate the ability of the blood to clot. They are important in patients with a greater tendency to form thrombi (e.g., those with atrial fibrillation, prosthetic valves, or infective endocarditis). These tests are also essential for monitoring patients receiving anticoagulant therapy (e.g., during cardiac surgery, during treatment of an established thrombus).

Prothrombin time (PT) and **international normalized ratio (INR)** are used when initiating and maintaining therapy with oral anticoagulants, such as sodium warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ☛). They measure the activity of prothrombin, fibrinogen, and factors V, VII, and X. INR is the most reliable way to monitor anticoagulant status in warfarin therapy. The therapeutic ranges vary significantly based on the reason for the anticoagulation and the patient's history. The normal INR is 1.

Partial thromboplastin time (PTT) is assessed in patients who are receiving heparin (Hepalean ☛). It measures deficiencies in all coagulation factors except VII and XIII.

Arterial blood gas (ABG) determinations are often obtained in patients with CVD. Determination of tissue oxygenation, carbon dioxide removal, and acid-base status is essential to appropriate treatment. (See Chapter 14 for a complete discussion of ABGs.)

Fluid and electrolyte balance are essential for normal cardiovascular performance. Cardiac manifestations often occur when there is an imbalance in either fluids or *electrolytes* in the body. For example, the cardiac effects of hypokalemia (low serum potassium level) include increased electrical instability, ventricular dysrhythmias, and an increased risk for digitalis toxicity. The effects of hyperkalemia on the myocardium include slowed ventricular conduction, peaked T waves on the ECG, and contraction followed by asystole (cardiac standstill).

Cardiac manifestations of hypocalcemia are ventricular dysrhythmias, a prolonged QT interval, and cardiac arrest. Hypercalcemia shortens the QT interval and causes AV block, digitalis hypersensitivity, and cardiac arrest. Serum sodium values reflect fluid balance and may be decreased, indicating a fluid excess in patients with heart failure (dilutional hyponatremia).

Because magnesium regulates some aspects of myocardial electrical activity, hypomagnesemia has been implicated in some forms of ventricular dysrhythmias known as *torsades de pointes*. Hypomagnesemia prolongs the QT interval, causing this specific type of ventricular tachycardia. Chapter 13 describes these electrolytes in more detail.

The *erythrocyte (red blood cell [RBC]) count* is usually decreased in rheumatic fever and infective endocarditis. It is increased in heart diseases as needed to compensate for decreased available oxygen.

Decreased *hematocrit and hemoglobin* levels (e.g., caused by hemorrhage or hemolysis from prosthetic valves) indicate anemia and can lead to angina or aggravate heart failure. Vascular volume depletion with hemoconcentration (e.g., hypovolemic shock and excessive diuresis) results in an elevated hematocrit.

The *leukocyte (white blood cell [WBC]) count* is typically elevated after an MI and in various infectious and inflammatory diseases of the heart (e.g., infective endocarditis and pericarditis). An increased WBC has been implicated as a strong independent risk factor for stroke and heart disease, particularly in postmenopausal women (AHA, 2010b).

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Posteroanterior (PA) and left lateral *x-ray* views of the chest are routinely obtained to determine the size, silhouette, and position of the heart. In acutely ill patients, a simple anteroposterior (AP) view may be obtained at the bedside. Cardiac enlargement, pulmonary congestion, cardiac calcifications, and placement of central venous catheters, endotracheal tubes, and hemodynamic monitoring devices are assessed by x-ray.

Angiography of the arterial vessels, or **arteriography**, is an invasive diagnostic procedure that involves fluoroscopy and the use of contrast media. This procedure is performed when an arterial obstruction, narrowing, or aneurysm is suspected. The interventional radiologist performs selective arteriography to evaluate specific areas of the arterial system. For example, a coronary arteriography, which is performed during left-sided cardiac catheterization, assesses arterial circulation within the heart. It can also be performed on arteries in the extremities, mesentery, and cerebrum. Angiography is discussed under the appropriate associated diseases elsewhere in this text.

Cardiac Catheterization. The most definitive but most invasive test in the diagnosis of heart disease is cardiac catheterization. **Cardiac catheterization** may include studies of the right or left side of the heart and the coronary arteries. Some of the most common indications for cardiac catheterization are listed in Table 35-4.

Patient Preparation. Assess the patient's physical and psychosocial readiness and knowledge level about the procedure because many patients have anxiety and fear about cardiac catheterization. Review the purpose of the procedure, inform the patient about the length of the procedure, state

TABLE 35-4 INDICATIONS FOR CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION

- To confirm suspected heart disorders, including congenital abnormalities, coronary artery disease, myocardial disease, valvular disease, and valvular dysfunction
- To determine the location and extent of the disease process
- To assess:
 - Stable, severe angina unresponsive to medical management
 - Unstable angina pectoris
 - Uncontrolled heart failure, ventricular dysrhythmias, or cardiogenic shock associated with acute myocardial infarction, papillary muscle dysfunction, ventricular aneurysm, or septal perforation
- To determine best therapeutic option (percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, stents, coronary artery bypass graft, valvulotomy versus valve replacement)
- To evaluate effects of medical or invasive treatment on cardiovascular function, percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, or coronary artery bypass graft patency

TABLE 35-5 COMPLICATIONS OF CARDIAC CATHETERIZATION**Right-Sided Heart Catheterization**

- Thrombophlebitis
- Pulmonary embolism
- Vagal response

Left-Sided Heart Catheterization and Coronary Arteriography

- Myocardial infarction
- Stroke
- Arterial bleeding or thromboembolism
- Dysrhythmias

Right-Sided or Left-Sided Heart Catheterization*

- Cardiac tamponade
- Hypovolemia
- Pulmonary edema
- Hematoma or blood loss at insertion site
- Reaction to contrast medium

*In addition to those cited for each procedure.

who will be present, and describe the appearance of the catheterization laboratory. Tell the patient about the sensations he or she may experience during the procedure, such as palpitations (as the catheter is passed up to the left ventricle), a feeling of heat or a hot flash (as the medium is injected into either side of the heart), and a desire to cough (as the medium is injected into the right side of the heart). Written, electronic, or illustrated materials or DVDs may be used to assist in understanding.

The risks of cardiac catheterization are usually explained by the cardiologist. The risks vary with the procedures to be performed and the patient's physical status (Table 35-5). Although not common, several serious complications may follow coronary arteriography, such as:

- Myocardial infarction (MI)
- Stroke
- Arterial bleeding
- Thromboembolism
- Lethal dysrhythmias
- Arterial dissection
- Death

The cardiologist or interventional radiologist obtains a written informed consent from the patient or responsible party before the procedure.

The patient is admitted to the hospital on the day of the catheterization procedure. He or she may be admitted earlier if there is renal dysfunction. Fluids and acetylcysteine (Mucosyst) may be given 12 to 24 hours before the procedure for renal protection. Contrast-induced renal dysfunction can result from vasoconstriction and the direct toxic effect of the contrast agent on the renal tubules. Hydration and the administration of acetylcysteine pre- and post-study help eliminate or minimize contrast-induced renal toxicity.

Standard preoperative tests are performed, which usually include a chest x-ray, complete blood count, coagulation studies, and 12-lead ECG. The patient receives nothing by mouth after midnight or has only a liquid breakfast if the catheterization is scheduled for the afternoon. The catheterization site is antiseptically prepared with hairs clipped according to agency policy.

Before the procedure, take the patient's vital signs, auscultate the heart and the lungs, and assess the peripheral pulses. Question him or her about any history of allergy to iodine-based contrast agents. An antihistamine or steroid may be given to a patient with a positive history or to prevent a reaction. Be sure that the signed informed consent is completed, as required by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs). A mild sedative is usually administered before the procedure. If the patient normally takes a digitalis preparation or diuretic, it is usually withheld before the catheterization. Analysis of electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, coagulation profile, and complete blood count (CBC) is essential before and after the procedure, and abnormalities are discussed with the health care provider.

Procedure. The patient is taken to the cardiac catheterization laboratory (sometimes referred to as the "cath lab"), placed in the supine position on the x-ray table, and securely strapped to the table. Inform him or her that this precaution is necessary because the table turns like a cradle during the procedure. The physician injects a local anesthetic at the insertion site. During the procedure, the patient is instructed to report any chest pain, pressure, or other symptoms to the staff.

The *right side of the heart* is catheterized first and may be the only side examined. The cardiologist inserts a catheter through the femoral vein to the inferior vena cava or through the basilic vein to the superior vena cava. The catheter is advanced through either the inferior or the superior vena cava and, guided by fluoroscopy, is advanced through the right atrium, through the right ventricle, and, at times, into the pulmonary artery. Intracardiac pressures (right atrial, right ventricular, pulmonary artery, and pulmonary artery wedge pressures) and blood samples are obtained. A contrast medium is usually injected to detect any cardiac shunts or regurgitation from the pulmonic or tricuspid valves.

In a *left-sided heart catheterization*, the cardiologist advances the catheter against the blood flow from the femoral or brachial artery up the aorta, across the aortic valve, and into the left ventricle (Fig. 35-8). Alternatively, the catheter may be passed from the right side of the heart through the atrial septum, using a special needle to puncture the septum. Intracardiac pressures and blood samples are obtained. The pressures of the left atrium, left ventricle, and aorta, as well as mitral and aortic valve status, are evaluated. The cardiologist injects contrast dye into the ventricle; cineangiograms (rapidly changing films) evaluate left ventricular motion.

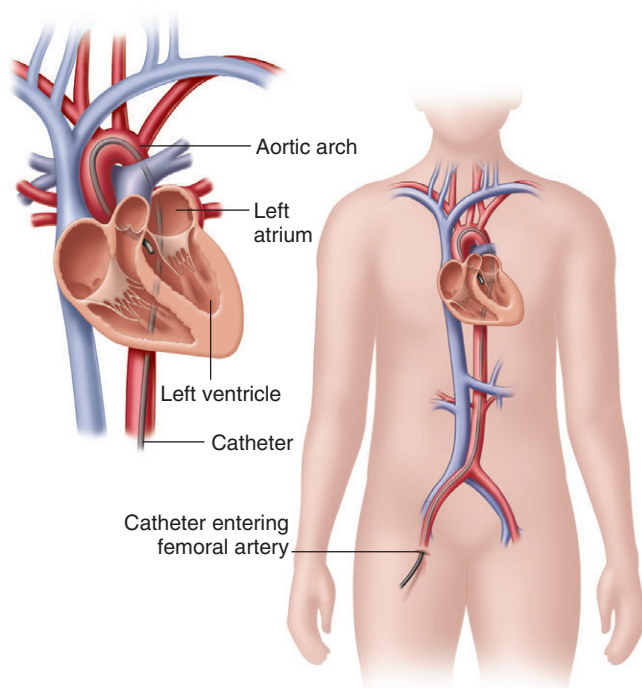


FIG. 35-8 Left-sided cardiac catheterization.

Calculations are made regarding end-systolic volume, end-diastolic volume, stroke volume, and ejection fraction.

The technique for *coronary arteriography* is the same as for left-sided heart catheterization. The catheter is advanced into the aortic arch and positioned selectively in the right or left coronary artery. Injection of a contrast medium permits viewing the coronary arteries. By assessing the flow of the medium through the coronary arteries, information about the site and severity of coronary lesions is obtained.

An alternative to injecting a medium into the coronary arteries is **intravascular ultrasonography (IVUS)**, which introduces a flexible catheter with a miniature transducer at the distal tip to view the coronary arteries. The transducer emits sound waves, which reflect off the plaque and the arterial wall to create an image of the blood vessel. IVUS is more reliable than angiography in indicating plaque distribution and composition, arterial dissection, and degree of stenosis of the occluded artery.

Follow-up Care. The patient recovers in a specialty area equipped with monitored beds. After cardiac catheterization, restrict the patient to bedrest and keep the insertion site extremity straight. A soft knee brace can be applied to prevent bending of the affected extremity. *Some cardiologists allow the head of the bed to be elevated up to 30 degrees during the period of bedrest, whereas other cardiologists prefer that the patient remain supine. Current practice is for patients to remain in bed for 2 to 6 hours depending on the type of vascular closure device used.* Various types of vascular closure devices are used to eliminate the need for manual compression after the catheterization. Examples include arteriotomy sutures and collagen plugs to seal the insertion site.

Monitor the patient's vital signs every 15 minutes for 1 hour, then every 30 minutes for 2 hours or until vital signs are stable, and then every 4 hours or according to hospital policy. Assess the insertion site for bloody drainage or

hematoma formation. Complications with vascular closure devices are not common but can be very serious. Assess peripheral pulses in the affected extremity, as well as skin temperature and color, with every vital sign check. Observe for complications of cardiac catheterization (see Table 35-5).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient experiences symptoms of cardiac ischemia such as chest pain, dysrhythmias, bleeding, hematoma formation, or a dramatic change in peripheral pulses in the affected extremity, contact the Rapid Response Team or physician immediately to provide prompt intervention! Neurologic changes indicating a possible stroke, such as visual disturbances, slurred speech, swallowing difficulties, and extremity weakness, should also be reported immediately.

Because the contrast medium acts as an osmotic diuretic, monitor urine output and ensure that the patient receives sufficient oral and IV fluids for adequate excretion of the medium. Pain medication for insertion site or back discomfort may be given as prescribed.

Review home instructions and risk factor modification with the patient before discharge. Remind the patient to:

- Limit activity for several days, including avoiding lifting and exercise.
- Leave the dressing in place for at least the first day at home.
- Observe the insertion site over the next few weeks for increased swelling, redness, warmth, and pain. Bruising or a small hematoma is expected.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety; Informatics

A middle-aged, obese male is admitted to the telemetry unit with acute chest pain. His wife tells you that he is a CEO of a small business that has been struggling financially due to the recent recession. The patient smokes 2 packs of cigarettes and drinks 2 or 3 cocktails every day.

1. What contributing factors may have caused this patient's acute chest pain? Think of all the possibilities.
2. What assessment data will you gather and document on the EMR? Why?
3. The cardiologist scheduled the patient for a coronary arteriography this afternoon. What do you need to do before the angiogram to ensure his safety?
4. What education will you provide the patient and his family before the angiogram?
5. You transfer the patient to the cath lab for his angiogram. What information will you communicate to the cath lab RN upon transfer of care? Use the SBAR technique to help organize this information.

Electrocardiography

The electrocardiogram (ECG) is a routine part of every cardiovascular evaluation and is one of the most valuable diagnostic tests. Various forms are available: resting ECG, continuous ambulatory ECG (Holter monitoring), exercise ECG (stress test), signal-averaged ECG, and 30-day event monitoring. The resting ECG provides information about cardiac dysrhythmias, myocardial ischemia, the site and extent of MI, cardiac hypertrophy, electrolyte imbalances,

and the effectiveness of cardiac drugs. The normal ECG pattern and a detailed discussion of the interpretation of abnormal patterns are discussed in [Chapter 36](#).

Electrophysiologic Studies

An [electrophysiologic study \(EPS\)](#) is an invasive procedure during which programmed electrical stimulation of the heart is used to cause and evaluate lethal dysrhythmias and conduction abnormalities. Patients who have survived cardiac arrest, have recurrent tachydysrhythmias, or experience unexplained syncopal episodes may be referred for EPS. Induction of the dysrhythmia during EPS helps find an accurate diagnosis and aids in effective treatment. These procedures have risks similar to those for cardiac catheterization and are performed in a special catheterization laboratory, where conditions are strictly controlled and immediate treatment is available for any adverse effects. [Chapter 36](#) describes this diagnostic study in detail.

Exercise Electrocardiography (Stress Test)

The [exercise electrocardiography](#) test (also known as [exercise tolerance](#), or [stress test](#)) assesses cardiovascular response to an increased workload. The stress test helps determine the functional capacity of the heart and screens for asymptomatic coronary artery disease. Dysrhythmias that develop during exercise may be identified, and the effectiveness of antidysrhythmic drugs can be evaluated.

Patient Preparation. Because risks are associated with exercising, the patient must be adequately informed about the purpose of the test, the procedure, and the risks involved. Written consent must be obtained. Anxiety and fear are common before stress testing. Therefore assure the patient that the procedure is performed in a controlled environment in which prompt nursing and medical attention are available.

Instruct the patient to get plenty of rest the night before the procedure. He or she may have a light meal 2 hours before the test but should avoid smoking or drinking alcohol or caffeine-containing beverages on the day of the test. The cardiologist decides whether the patient should stop taking any cardiac medications. Usually, cardiovascular drugs such as beta blockers or calcium channel blockers are withheld on the day of the test to allow the heart rate to increase during the stress portion of the test. Patients are advised to wear comfortable, loose clothing and rubber-soled, supportive shoes. Remind them to tell the physician if symptoms such as chest pain, dizziness, shortness of breath, and an irregular heart-beat are experienced during the test.

Before the stress test, a resting 12-lead ECG, cardiovascular history, and physical examination are performed to check for any ECG abnormalities or medical factors that might interfere with the test. Check to see that all emergency supplies such as cardiac drugs, a defibrillator, and other necessary resuscitation equipment are available in the room in which the stress test is performed. It is important to be proficient in the use of resuscitation equipment when assisting the physician because chest pain, dysrhythmias, and other ECG changes may occur.

Procedure. The technician places electrodes on the patient's chest and attaches them to a multilead monitoring system. Note baseline blood pressure (BP), heart rate (HR), and respiratory rate. The two major modes of exercise available for stress testing are pedaling a bicycle ergometer and

walking on a treadmill. A bicycle ergometer has a wheel operated by pedals that can be adjusted to increase the resistance to pedaling. The treadmill is a motorized device with an adjustable conveyor belt. It can reach speeds of 1 to 10 miles/hr and can also be adjusted from a flat position to a 22-degree incline.

After the patient is shown how to use the bicycle or to walk on the treadmill, he or she begins to exercise. During the test, the BP and ECG are closely monitored as the resistance to cycling or the speed and incline of the treadmill are increased. The patient exercises until one of these findings occurs:

- A predetermined HR is reached and maintained.
- Signs and symptoms such as chest pain, fatigue, extreme dyspnea, vertigo, hypotension, and ventricular dysrhythmias appear.
- Significant ST segment depression or T wave inversion occurs.
- The 20-minute protocol is completed.

Follow-up Care. After the test, the nurse or other qualified health care team member monitors the ECG and BP until the patient has completely recovered. After recovery, he or she can return home if the test was performed on an ambulatory basis. Advise him or her to avoid a hot shower for 1 to 2 hours after the test because this may cause hypotension. If he or she does not recover but continues to have pain or ventricular dysrhythmias or appears medically unstable, admission to a telemetry unit for observation is needed.

For patients who cannot exercise because of conditions such as peripheral vascular disease or arthritis, pharmacologic stress testing with agents such as dobutamine (Dobutrex) may be indicated. The nursing considerations are similar to those for the patient who has undergone an exercise ECG.

Echocardiography

As a noninvasive, risk-free test, echocardiography is easily performed at the bedside or on an ambulatory care basis. [Echocardiography](#) uses ultrasound waves to assess cardiac structure and mobility, particularly of the valves. It helps assess and diagnose cardiomyopathy, valvular disorders, pericardial effusion, left ventricular function, ventricular aneurysms, and cardiac tumors.

There is no special *preparation* for echocardiography. Inform the patient that the test is painless and takes 30 to 60 minutes to complete. The patient is instructed to lie quietly during the test and on his or her left side with the head elevated 15 to 20 degrees.

During an echocardiogram, a small transducer lubricated with gel to facilitate movement and conduction is placed on the patient's chest at the level of the third or fourth intercostal space near the left sternal border. The transducer transmits high-frequency sound waves and receives them as they are reflected from different structures. These echoes are usually videotaped simultaneously with the echocardiogram and can be recorded on graph paper for a permanent record.

After the images are taped, cardiac measurements that require several images can be obtained. Routine measurements include chamber size, ejection fraction, and flow gradient across the valves. There is no specific *follow-up care* for a patient who has undergone an echocardiogram.

A slightly more aggressive form of echocardiogram is a **pharmacologic stress echocardiogram** using either dobutamine or dipyridamole. This test is usually used when patients cannot tolerate exercise. Dobutamine (Dobutrex) increases the heart's contractility; dipyridamole (Persantine, Apo-Dipyridamole) is a coronary artery dilator. Patients are required to be NPO status for 3 to 6 hours before the test except for sips of water with medications. The technician ensures that IV access is present before the procedure and monitors BP and pulse continuously throughout the procedure. After the procedure, vital signs are monitored until BP returns to baseline and the pulse rate slows to less than 100 beats/min.

Transesophageal Echocardiography

Echocardiograms may also be performed transesophageally (through the esophagus). **Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE)** examines cardiac structure and function with an ultrasound transducer placed immediately behind the heart in the esophagus or stomach. The transducer provides especially detailed views of posterior cardiac structures such as the left atrium, mitral valve, and aortic arch. Preparation and follow-up are similar to that for an upper GI endoscopic examination (see Chapter 55).

Myocardial Nuclear Perfusion Imaging

The use of radionuclide techniques in cardiovascular assessment is called **myocardial nuclear perfusion imaging (MNPI)**. Cardiovascular abnormalities can be viewed, recorded, and evaluated using radioactive tracer substances. These studies are useful for detecting myocardial infarction (MI) and decreased myocardial blood flow and for evaluating left ventricular ejection. Conducting myocardial nuclear imaging tests, in conjunction with exercise or the administration of vasodilating agents, allows clearer identification of how the heart responds to stress.

Inform the patient that these tests are noninvasive. Because the amount of radioisotope is small, radiation exposure risks are minimal. If a dilating agent is to be used, advise the patient to avoid cigarettes and caffeinated food or drinks for 4 hours before administration of the vasodilator.

Common tests in nuclear cardiology include technetium (^{99m}Tc) pyrophosphate scanning, thallium imaging, and multigated cardiac blood pool imaging. Each test requires the injection of different types of radioactive isotopes into the antecubital vein. After the cells and tissues have time to take up the radioactive substances, usually 10 minutes to 2 hours, nuclear imaging can detect the difference between healthy and unhealthy tissue.

During the *technetium scan*, radioisotopes (^{99m}Tc pyrophosphate) accumulate in damaged myocardial tissue, which appears as a “hot spot” during the scan. This test helps detect the location and size of acute myocardial infarctions.

Alternatively, during the *thallium imaging scan*, necrotic or ischemic tissue does not absorb the radioisotope (thallium-201) and appears as “cold spots” on the scan. Thallium imaging is used to assess myocardial scarring and perfusion, to detect the location and extent of an acute or chronic myocardial infarction, to evaluate graft patency after coronary bypass surgery, and to evaluate antianginal therapy, thrombolytic therapy, or balloon angioplasty.

Thallium imaging may be performed during an exercise test or with the patient at rest. Thallium imaging performed during an exercise test may demonstrate perfusion deficits

not apparent at rest. First, the stress test procedure is performed. After the patient reaches maximum activity level, a small dose of thallium-201 is injected IV. The patient continues to exercise for about 1 to 2 minutes, after which the scanning is performed. Nuclear cardiologists often compare the resting and stress images to differentiate between fixed and reversible defects in the myocardium.

If a patient cannot exercise on a bike or treadmill, Dipyridamole (Persantine, Apo-Dipyridamole) or dobutamine hydrochloride (Dobutrex) is administered to simulate the effects of exercise. Tell the patient that these vasodilators may cause flushing, headache, dyspnea, and chest tightness for a few moments after injection.

Cardiac blood pool imaging is a noninvasive test for evaluating cardiac motion and calculating ejection fraction. It uses a computer to synchronize the patient's ECG with pictures taken by a special camera. The technician attaches the patient to an ECG and injects a small amount of ^{99m}Tc IV. The radioisotope is not taken up by tissue but remains “tagged” to red blood cells in the circulation. The camera may take pictures of the radioactive material as it makes its first pass through the heart.

During **multigated blood pool scanning**, the computer breaks the time between R waves on the ECG into fractions of a second, called “gates.” The camera records blood flow through the heart during each of these gates. By analyzing the information from multiple gates, the computer can evaluate the ventricular wall motion and calculate ejection fraction (percentage of the left ventricular volume that is ejected with each contraction) and ejection velocity. Areas of decreased, absent, or paradoxical movement of the left ventricle may also be identified.

Positron emission tomography (PET) scans are used to compare cardiac perfusion and metabolic function and differentiate normal from diseased myocardium. The technician administers the first radioisotope (nitrogen-13-ammonia) and then begins a 20-minute scan to detect myocardial perfusion. Next, the technician administers a second radioisotope (fluoro-18-deoxyglucose). After a pause, a second scan is performed to detect the metabolically active myocardium, which is using glucose.

The two scans are compared. In a normal heart, performance and metabolic function will match. In an ischemic heart, there will be a mismatch—a reduction in perfusion and increased glucose uptake by the ischemic myocardium. The scanning procedure takes 2 to 3 hours, and the patient may be asked to use a treadmill or exercise bicycle in conjunction with the scan.

Depending on which test is performed, the patient may report fatigue or discomfort at the antecubital injection site. If a stress test was paired with the study, he or she will need follow-up care for the stress test.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is a noninvasive diagnostic option. An image of the heart or great vessels is produced through the interaction of magnetic fields, radio waves, and atomic nuclei showing hydrogen density. Simply put, the radio waves “bounce off” the body tissue being examined. Because each tissue has its own density, the computer image clearly differentiates between various types of tissues. MRI permits determination of cardiac wall thickness, chamber dilation, valve and ventricular function, and blood movement

in the great vessels. Improved MRI techniques allow coronary artery blood flow to be mapped with nearly the accuracy of a cardiac catheterization.

Before an MRI, ensure that the patient has removed all metallic objects, including watches, jewelry, clothing with metal fasteners, and hair clips. Patients with pacemakers or implanted defibrillators may not be able to have an MRI because the magnetic fields can deactivate them. However, some newer MRI machines have eliminated this complication. A few patients experience claustrophobia during the 15 to 60 minutes required to complete the scan.

Electronic-Beam Computed Tomography Scan

Electronic-beam computed tomography (EBCT) is a valuable tool in cardiovascular diagnostics. This test helps determine whether calcifications are present in the arteries; calcifications are a common component of arterial plaque. The 64-slice CT is used to determine the **coronary artery calcium (CAC) score**, which is a measure of the amount of coronary artery calcification. The test cannot predict the site of future events or determine the severity of the risk. According to the American Heart Association (AHA) clinical expert consensus document on calcium scoring, a CAC score of greater than 400 requires intensive preventive therapies (Greenland et al., 2007).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is caring for a client with coronary artery disease who has just undergone a coronary angiogram. What is the priority intervention when caring for this client immediately postprocedure?

- A. Place the client in high Fowler's to prevent aspiration.
- B. Educate the client on anticoagulant medications.
- C. Assess for bleeding at the insertion site.
- D. Monitor for elevated cardiac enzymes.

Hemodynamic Monitoring

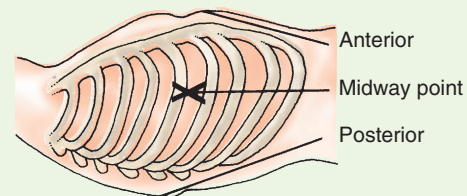
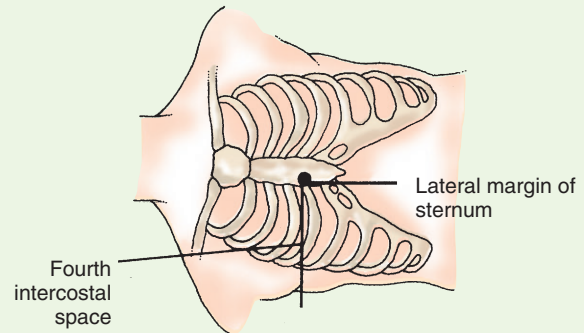
Hemodynamic monitoring is an invasive system used in critical care areas to provide quantitative information about vascular capacity, blood volume, pump effectiveness, and tissue perfusion. It directly measures pressures in the heart and great vessels. These procedures are usually performed for more seriously ill patients and can provide more accurate measurements of blood pressure, heart function, and volume status. Although medical-surgical nurses do not manage these systems on general hospital units, they should be familiar with the interpretation of some of the major hemodynamic pressures as they relate to patient assessment.

Hemodynamic monitoring does involve significant risks, although complications are uncommon. Therefore informed consent is required. After obtaining consent, the nurse prepares a pressure-monitoring system. The components of this system are a catheter with an infusion system, a transducer, and a monitor. The catheter receives the pressure waves (mechanical energy) from the heart or the great vessels. The transducer converts the mechanical energy into electrical energy, which is displayed as waveforms or numbers on the monitor. Patency of the catheter is maintained with a slow continuous flush of normal saline, usually infused at 3 to 4 mL/hr under pressure to prevent the backup of blood and occlusion of the catheter.

CHART 35-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Identification of the Phlebostatic Axis

1. Position the patient supine.
2. Palpate the fourth intercostal space at the sternum.



3. Follow the fourth intercostal space to the side of the patient's chest.
4. Determine the midway point between anterior and posterior.
5. Find the intersection between the midway point and the line from the fourth intercostal space, and mark it with an X in indelible ink. This is the phlebostatic axis.

To prepare the transducer, balance and calibrate it according to hospital policy and the manufacturer's specifications. Finally, identify the phlebostatic axis (Chart 35-4) and level the transducer to it. The physician inserts a balloon-tipped catheter percutaneously through a large vein, usually the internal jugular or subclavian, and directs it to the right atrium (RA). When the catheter tip reaches the RA, the physician inflates the balloon. The catheter advances with the flow of blood through the tricuspid valve, into the right ventricle, past the pulmonic valve, and into a branch of the pulmonary artery. The balloon is deflated after the catheter tip reaches the pulmonary artery. Waveforms are viewed on the monitor as the pulmonary artery catheter is advanced (Fig. 35-9). A chest x-ray is used to check the location of the catheter.

A pulmonary artery catheter is a multi-lumen catheter with the capacity to measure right atrial and indirect left atrial pressures or pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP), also known as the **pulmonary artery occlusive pressure (PAOP)**. A cardiac output measurement may also be obtained, as well as cardiac index and systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance.

Right atrial pressure is measured by a pressure sensor on the catheter inside the RA. Normal RA pressure ranges from 1 to 8 mm Hg. *Increased RA pressures may occur with right*

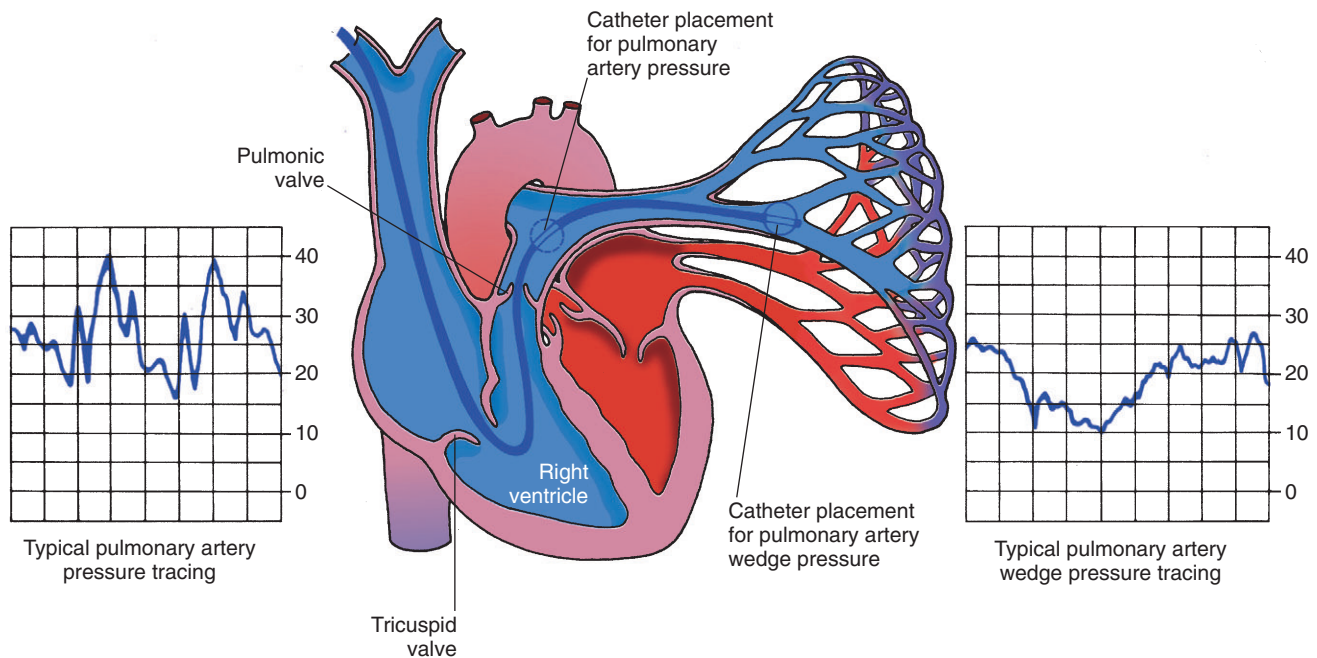


FIG. 35-9 Cardiac pressure waveforms can be seen on the monitor.

ventricular failure, whereas low RA pressures usually indicate hypovolemia.

Normal pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) ranges from 15 to 26 mm Hg systolic/5 to 15 mm Hg diastolic (mean, 15) and is constantly visible on the monitor. When the balloon at the catheter tip is inflated, the catheter advances and wedges in a branch of the pulmonary artery. The tip of the catheter can sense pressures transmitted from the left atrium, which reflect left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP). The pressure measured during balloon inflation is called the **pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP)**. PAWP closely reflects left atrial pressure and LVEDP in patients with normal left ventricular function, normal heart rates, and no mitral valve disease. The PAWP is a mean pressure and normally ranges between 4 and 12 mm Hg.

Elevated PAWP measurements may indicate left ventricular failure, hypervolemia, mitral regurgitation, or intracardiac shunt. A decreased PAWP is seen with hypovolemia or after-load reduction. Individual values may be less important than the trend in values.

The critical care nurse obtains and records RA pressure, PAP, and PAWP at appropriate intervals (usually every 1 to 4 hours). The trend of these pressures helps guide medical therapy. During pressure recording, it is important that the transducer be at the level of the phlebostatic axis. The patient is usually supine with the head elevated up to 45 degrees during hemodynamic readings, although the position may not affect results (Giuliano et al., 2003). If the balloon remains in the wedge position after PAWP measurement, try to change the catheter's position by asking the patient to cough or by changing his or her position. *If these methods are not successful, notify the physician immediately.*

Change the occlusive sterile dressing over the catheter according to hospital policy. Inspect the insertion site for redness, induration, swelling, drainage, and intactness of the sutures. Detailed discussion of the management and care of

patients with pulmonary artery catheters can be found in textbooks on critical care nursing.

Be sure to assess for a number of complications associated with pulmonary artery catheters. For example, pulmonary infarction or pulmonary rupture may occur if the catheter remains in the wedge position. Air embolism is possible if the balloon has ruptured and repeated attempts are made to inflate it. Ventricular dysrhythmias may occur during insertion or if the catheter tip slips back into the right ventricle and irritates the myocardium. Thrombus and embolus formation may occur at the catheter site. Infection may result, and bleeding may be pronounced if the infusion system becomes disconnected.

Direct measurement of *arterial BP* is done by invasive arterial catheter in critically ill patients. The physician or specially trained health care professional inserts an intra-arterial catheter into the radial or femoral artery. After the catheter is inserted, it is attached to pressure tubing. A normal saline flush solution is infused constantly under pressure to maintain the integrity of the system. A transducer attached to the tubing allows continuous direct monitoring of the arterial BP. Direct measurements of BP are usually 10 to 15 mm Hg greater than indirect (cuff) measurements. The arterial catheter may also be used to obtain blood samples for arterial blood gas values and other blood tests.

Because the arterial vasculature is a high-pressure system, frequent assessment of the arterial site and infusion system is essential. *Note any bleeding around the intra-arterial catheter or any loose connections, and correct the situation immediately.* Collateral circulation must be assessed by Doppler before and while the arterial catheter is in place. Carefully monitor color, pulse, and temperature distal to the insertion site for any early signs of circulatory compromise. Complications of systemic intra-arterial monitoring include pain, infection, arteriospasm, or obstruction at the site with the potential for distal infarction, air embolism, and hemorrhage.

Unlike conventional hemodynamic monitoring, **impedance cardiography (ICG)** is a flexible and fast-acting noninvasive monitoring system that consists of four ICG electrodes, four electrocardiogram (ECG) electrodes, and a portable ICG monitor. Simply stated, it measures the total impedance (resistance) to the flow of electricity in the heart. ICG can be used in any setting including the intensive care unit (ICU),

the emergency department (ED), and the home. It is used to assess, plan, and individualize the treatment plan for patients with heart failure, severe trauma, or fluid management. The system provides measures of thoracic fluid, left ventricular function (cardiac output and cardiac index), preload, afterload, and contractility of the heart.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you NOTICE in a patient with adequate oxygenation and perfusion related to the cardiovascular system?

Physical Assessment

- Vital signs within normal limits or baseline
- No abnormal heart sounds
- Strong and equal peripheral pulses
- Even and unlabored respirations
- Regular heartbeat
- No pallor, cyanosis, or clubbing

- No syncope, fatigue, or chest pain
- No edema
- Can perform ADLs without dyspnea

Diagnostic Assessment

- No serum markers of myocardial damage
- Serum lipids within normal ranges
- Normal C-reactive protein and homocysteine
- Normal electrocardiogram (ECG)

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Assess the older adult for cardiovascular changes associated with aging as described in [Chart 35-1](#).
- Assess patients for allergy to iodine-based contrast media before having diagnostic tests requiring a contrast agent.
- After invasive cardiovascular diagnostic testing, such as angiography and cardiac catheterization, monitor the insertion site for bleeding and hematoma formation.
- Assess vital signs carefully in patients having invasive cardiovascular testing; report new dysrhythmias after testing.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients at risk for cardiovascular disease, especially those with hyperlipidemia, hypertension, excess weight, physical inactivity, smoking, psychological stress, a positive family history, and diabetes.
- Teach patients how to reduce the risk for heart disease through exercise, diet modification, smoking cessation, and medications, as needed.
- Inform patients that genetics and other nonmodifiable risk factors, such as family history and gender, contribute to the development of CAD.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Discuss with the patient any feelings or concerns he or she might have about the stress of cardiac illness, diagnostic testing, or other issues, and use therapeutic measures to decrease anxiety.

- Recognize that denial is a common and normal response to help patients cope with threatening circumstances.
- Be aware that coping behaviors of those who have cardiovascular problems vary from patient to patient.
- Allow the patient to express feelings about an actual or perceived loss of health or social status related to cardiovascular disease.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the patient's report of pain to differentiate the pain of angina and myocardial infarction (MI) from other non-cardiac causes; *discomfort*, *indigestion*, *squeezing*, *heaviness*, and *viselike* are common terms used to describe chest pain of cardiac origin.
- Recall that syncope is a transient loss of consciousness and is common in older adults.
- Use jugular venous pressure to assess the filling volume and pressure on the right side of the heart.
- Assess for bruits, which are swishing sounds that develop in narrowed arteries.
- Auscultate the heart for normal first and second sounds, as well as for abnormalities such as an S₃, S₄, murmur, or gallop.
- Monitor serum markers of myocardial damage and other cardiac-related laboratory tests as listed in [Chart 35-3](#).
- Prepare patients having a cardiac catheterization for expectations of the procedure and postprocedure care.
- Assess patients having cardiac catheterizations for potential complications as listed in [Table 35-5](#).
- Hemodynamic monitoring is an invasive method for directly assessing cardiac and arterial pressures.

Care of Patients with Dysrhythmias

Pamela C. Zickafoose

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Conduction of Heart Impulses

Animation: Events Represented by the ECG

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Provide a safe environment for patients and staff when using a cardiac defibrillator.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Teach patients and their families about drug therapy used for common dysrhythmias.
3. Educate patients and families about procedures and other interventions for common dysrhythmias.

Physiological Integrity

4. Identify typical physical assessment findings associated with common dysrhythmias.
5. Explain how to perform an electrocardiogram (ECG) test.

6. Analyze an ECG rhythm strip to identify normal sinus rhythm and common or life-threatening dysrhythmias.
7. Plan collaborative care for patients experiencing common dysrhythmias.
8. Explain the purpose and types of pacing used as interventions for patients with dysrhythmias.
9. Connect and maintain pacing devices.
10. Explain how to perform emergency care procedures, such as cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and automated external defibrillation.
11. Plan community-based care for a patient after pacemaker or implantable cardioverter/defibrillator insertion.

Cardiac dysrhythmias are abnormal rhythms of the heart's electrical system that can affect its ability to effectively pump *oxygenated* blood throughout the body. Some dysrhythmias are life threatening, and others are not. They are the result of disturbances of cardiac electrical impulse formation, conduction, or both. When the heart does not work effectively as a pump, *perfusion and oxygenation* to vital organs and peripheral tissues can be impaired, resulting in organ dysfunction or failure.

Many health problems, especially coronary artery disease (CAD), electrolyte imbalances, changes in oxygenation, and drug toxicity, can cause abnormal heart rhythms. Dysrhythmias can occur in people of any age but occur most often in older adults. To provide collaborative patient-centered care

using best practices, a *basic* understanding of cardiac electrophysiology, the conduction system of the heart, and the principles of electrocardiography is needed as a medical-surgical nurse. Specialty nurses and advanced practice nurses have a more in-depth knowledge as they manage patients with these cardiac problems in critical care areas.

REVIEW OF CARDIAC CONDUCTION SYSTEM

The cardiac conduction system consists of specialized myocardial cells (*Fig. 36-1*). The electrophysiologic properties of those cells regulate heart rate and rhythm and possess unique properties: automaticity, excitability, conductivity, and contractility.

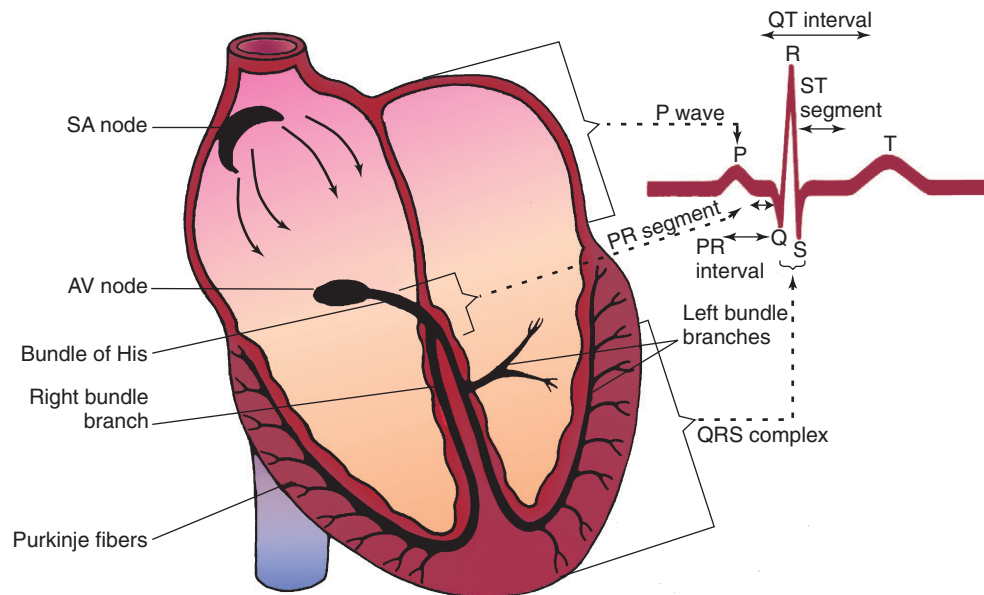


FIG. 36-1 The cardiac conduction system.

Automaticity (pacing function) is the ability of cardiac cells to generate an electrical impulse spontaneously and repetitively. Normally, only primary pacemaker cells (sinoatrial [SA] node) can generate an electrical impulse. Under certain conditions, such as myocardial ischemia (decreased blood flow), electrolyte imbalance, hypoxia, drug toxicity, and infarction (cell death), any cardiac cell may produce electrical impulses independently and create dysrhythmias. Disturbances in automaticity may involve either an increase or a decrease in pacing function.

Excitability is the ability of non-pacemaker heart cells to respond to an electrical impulse that begins in pacemaker cells and to depolarize. **Depolarization** occurs when the normally negatively charged cells within the heart muscle develop a positive charge.

Conductivity is the ability to send an electrical stimulus from cell membrane to cell membrane. As a result, excitable cells depolarize in rapid succession from cell to cell until all cells have depolarized. *The wave of depolarization causes the deflections of the electrocardiogram (ECG) waveforms that are recognized as the P wave and the QRS complex.* Disturbances in conduction result when conduction is too rapid or too slow, when the pathway is totally blocked, or when the electrical impulse travels an abnormal pathway.

Contractility is the ability of atrial and ventricular muscle cells to shorten their fiber length in response to electrical stimulation, causing sufficient pressure to push blood forward through the heart. In other words, *contractility is the mechanical activity of the heart.*

Specialized cells of the myocardium are responsible for cardiac conduction. They consist of the sinoatrial node, atrioventricular junctional area, and bundle branch system.

Conduction begins with the **sinoatrial (SA) node** (also called the *sinus node*), located close to the surface of the right atrium near its junction with the superior vena cava. *The SA node is the heart's primary pacemaker.* It can spontaneously and rhythmically generate electrical impulses at a rate of 60

to 100 beats per minute and therefore has the greatest degree of automaticity.

The SA node is richly supplied by the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems, which increase and decrease the rate of discharge of the sinus node, respectively. This process results in changes in the heart rate.

Impulses from the sinus node move directly through atrial muscle and lead to atrial depolarization, which is *reflected in a P wave on the ECG.* Atrial muscle contraction should follow. Within the atrial muscle are slow and fast conduction pathways leading to the atrioventricular (AV) node.

The **atrioventricular (AV) junctional** area consists of a transitional cell zone, the AV node itself, and the bundle of His. The AV node lies just beneath the right atrial endocardium, between the tricuspid valve and the ostium of the coronary sinus. Here T-cells (transitional cells) cause impulses to slow down or to be delayed in the AV node before proceeding to the ventricles. This delay is *reflected in the PR segment on the ECG.* This slow conduction provides a short delay, allowing the atria to contract and the ventricles to fill. The contraction is known as "atrial kick" and contributes additional blood volume for a greater cardiac output. The AV node is also controlled by both the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems. The bundle of His connects with the distal portion of the AV node and continues through the interventricular septum.

The *bundle of His* extends as a right bundle branch down the right side of the interventricular septum to the apex of the right ventricle. On the left side, it extends as a left bundle branch, which further divides.

At the ends of both the right and the left bundle branch systems are the Purkinje fibers. These fibers are an interweaving network located on the endocardial surface of both ventricles, from apex to base. The fibers then partially penetrate into the myocardium. **Purkinje cells** make up the bundle of His, bundle branches, and terminal Purkinje fibers. These cells are responsible for the rapid conduction of electrical

impulses throughout the ventricles, leading to ventricular depolarization and the subsequent ventricular muscle contraction. A few nodal cells in the ventricles also occasionally demonstrate automaticity, giving rise to ventricular beats or rhythms.

ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHY

The **electrocardiogram (ECG)** provides a graphic representation, or picture, of cardiac electrical activity. The cardiac electrical currents are transmitted to the body surface. Electrodes, consisting of a conductive gel on an adhesive pad, are placed on specific sites on the body and attached to cables connected to an ECG machine or to a monitor. The cardiac electrical current is transmitted via the electrodes and through the lead wires to the machine or monitor, which displays the cardiac electrical activity.

A **lead** provides one view of the heart's electrical activity. Multiple leads, or views, can be obtained. Electrode placement is the same for male and female patients.

Lead systems are made up of a positive pole and a negative pole. An imaginary line joining these two poles is called the **lead axis**. The direction of electrical current flow in the heart is the **cardiac axis**. The relationship between the cardiac axis and the lead axis is responsible for the deflections seen on the ECG pattern:

- The baseline is the **isoelectric** line. It occurs when there is no current flow in the heart after complete depolarization and also after complete repolarization. Positive deflections occur above this line, and negative deflections occur below it. Deflections represent depolarization and repolarization of cells.
- If the direction of electrical current flow in the heart (cardiac axis) is toward the positive pole, a **positive deflection** (above the baseline) is viewed (Fig. 36-2, A).

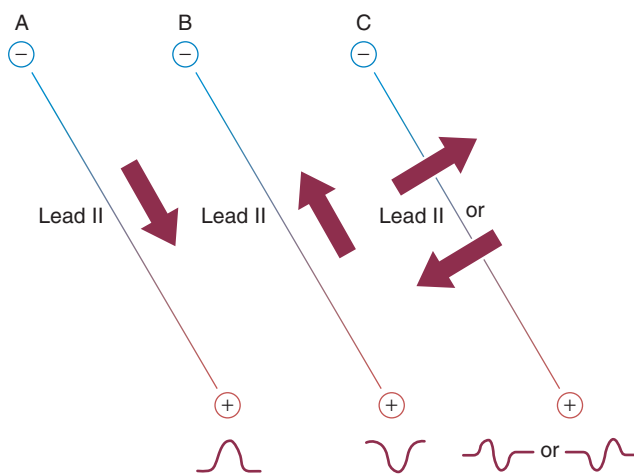


FIG. 36-2 A, The cardiac axis (*bold arrow*) is parallel to the lead axis (*the line between the negative and the positive electrodes*), going toward the positive electrode; a positive deflection is inscribed. **B,** The cardiac axis is parallel to the lead axis, going toward the negative electrode; a negative deflection is inscribed. **C,** The cardiac axis is perpendicular to the lead axis, going neither toward the positive electrode nor toward the negative electrode; a biphasic deflection is inscribed.

- If the direction of electrical current flow in the heart (cardiac axis) is moving away from the positive pole toward the negative pole, a **negative deflection** (below the baseline) is viewed (Fig. 36-2, B).
- If the cardiac axis is moving neither toward nor away from the positive pole, a biphasic complex (both above and below baseline) will result (Fig. 36-2, C).

Lead Systems

The standard 12-lead ECG consists of 12 leads (or views) of the heart's electrical activity. Six of the leads are called **limb leads** because the electrodes are placed on the four extremities in the frontal plane. The remaining six leads are called **chest (precordial) leads** because the electrodes are placed on the chest in the horizontal plane.

Standard bipolar **limb leads** consist of three leads (I, II, and III) that each measures the electrical activity between two points and a fourth lead (right leg) that acts as a ground electrode. Of the three measuring leads, the right arm is always negative, the left leg is always positive, and the left arm can be either positive or negative.

Other lead systems include the 18-lead ECG, which adds six leads placed on the horizontal plane on the right side of the chest to view the right side of the heart. This is sometimes referred to as a "right-sided ECG." The extra leads are sometimes placed on the back. The latest evidence indicates an 80-lead ECG, which looks at the heart from 80 views instead of only 12 and gives a 360-degree view of the heart. Evaluation of this 80-lead ECG revealed a 15% increase in diagnosing myocardial infarctions (MIs), particularly in the posterior wall, which was missed in the 12-lead ECG (*New 80-lead ECG is easy to interpret, 2008*).

Unipolar limb leads consist of a positive electrode only. The unipolar limb leads are aVR, aVL, and aVF, with *a* meaning augmented. *V* is a designation for a unipolar lead. The third letter denotes the positive electrode placement: *R* for right arm, *L* for left arm, and *F* for foot (left leg). The positive electrode is at one end of the lead axis. The other end is the center of the electrical field, at about the center of the heart (Table 36-1).

There are six unipolar (or *V*) **chest leads**, determined by the placement of the chest electrode. The four limb electrodes are placed on the extremities, as designated on each electrode (right arm, left arm, right leg, and left leg). The fifth (chest) electrode on a monitor system is the positive, or exploring, electrode and is placed in one of six designated positions to obtain the desired chest lead. With a 12-lead ECG, four leads are placed on the limbs and six are placed on the chest, eliminating the need to move any electrodes about the chest.

Positioning of the electrodes is crucial in obtaining an accurate ECG. Comparisons of ECGs taken at different times will be valid only when electrode placement is accurate and identical at each test. Positioning is particularly important when working with patients with chest deformities or large breasts. Patients may be asked to move the breasts to ensure proper electrode placement.

While obtaining a 12-lead ECG, remind the patient to be as still as possible in a semi-reclined position, breathing normally. Any repetitive movement will cause artifact and could lead to inaccurate interpretation of the ECG.

Nurses are sometimes responsible for obtaining 12-lead ECGs, but more commonly, technicians are trained to

TABLE 36-1 ELECTRODE PLACEMENT FOR 12 LEADS

LEAD	NEGATIVE ELECTRODE	POSITIVE ELECTRODE	GROUND ELECTRODE
I	Right arm or under the right clavicle	Left arm or under the left clavicle	Right leg or lowest rib, left midclavicular line
II	Right arm or under the right clavicle	Left leg or lowest rib, left midclavicular line	Right leg or under the left clavicle
III	Left arm or under the left clavicle	Left leg or lowest rib, left midclavicular line	Right leg or under the right clavicle
aVR	Average potential of left arm (or under the left clavicle) and left leg (or lowest rib, left midclavicular line)	Right arm or under the right clavicle	Right leg or lowest rib, right midclavicular line
aVL	Average potential of right arm (or under the right clavicle) and left leg (or lowest rib, left midclavicular line)	Left arm or under the left clavicle	Same as for aVR
aVF	Average potential of right arm (or under the right clavicle) and left arm (or under the left clavicle)	Left leg or lowest rib, left midclavicular line	Same as for aVR
V ₁	Average potential of right arm, left arm, and left leg	Fourth intercostal space (ICS), right sternal border	Same as for aVR
V ₂	Same as for V ₁	Fourth ICS, left sternal border	Same as for aVR
V ₃	Same as for V ₁	Midway between V ₂ and V ₄	Same as for aVR
V ₄	Same as for V ₁	Fifth ICS, left midclavicular line	Same as for aVR
V ₅	Same as for V ₁	Horizontal to V ₄ , left anterior axillary line	Same as for aVR
V ₆	Same as for V ₁	Horizontal to V ₄ , left midaxillary line	Same as for aVR

perform this skill. Remind the technician to notify the nurse or physician of any suspected abnormality. A nurse may direct a technician to take a 12-lead ECG on a patient experiencing chest pain to observe for diagnostic changes, but it is ultimately the physician's responsibility to interpret the ECG.

Continuous Electrocardiographic Monitoring

For continuous ECG monitoring, the electrodes are not placed on the limbs because movement of the extremities causes "noise," or motion artifact, on the ECG signal. Place the electrodes on the trunk, a more stable area, to minimize such artifacts and to obtain a clearer signal. If the monitoring system provides five electrode cables, place the electrodes as follows:

- Right arm electrode just below the right clavicle
- Left arm electrode just below the left clavicle
- Right leg electrode on the lowest palpable rib, on the right midclavicular line
- Left leg electrode on the lowest palpable rib, on the left midclavicular line
- Fifth electrode placed to obtain one of the six chest leads

With this placement, the monitor lead select control may be changed to provide lead I, II, III, aVR, aVL, or aVF or one chest lead. The monitor automatically alters the polarity of the electrodes to provide the lead selected.

The clarity of continuous ECG monitor recordings is affected by skin preparation and electrode quality. To ensure the best signal transmission and to decrease skin impedance, clean the skin and clip hairs or shave the area if needed. Make sure the area for electrode placement is dry. The gel on each electrode must be moist and fresh. Attach the electrode to the lead cable and then to the contact site. The contact site should be free of any lotion, tincture, or other substance that increases skin impedance. Electrodes cannot be placed on irritated skin or over scar tissue. The application of electrodes may be done by unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), but the nurse must

determine which lead to select and check for correct electrode placement. Assess the quality of the ECG rhythm transmission to the monitoring system.

The ECG cables can be attached directly to a wall-mounted monitor (a hard-wired system) if the patient's activity is restricted to bedrest and sitting in a chair, as in a critical care unit. For an ambulatory patient, the ECG cable is attached to a battery-operated transmitter (a **telemetry** system) held in a pouch. The ECG is transmitted to a remote monitor via antennae located in strategic places, usually in the ceiling. Telemetry allows freedom of movement within a certain area without losing transmission of the ECG.

Most acute care facilities have monitor technicians (monitor "techs") who are educated in ECG rhythm interpretation and are responsible for:

- Watching a bank of monitors on a unit
- Printing ECG rhythm strips routinely and as needed
- Interpreting rhythms
- Reporting the patient's rhythm and significant changes to the nurse

The technical support is particularly helpful on a telemetry unit that does not have monitors at the bedside. The nurse remains ultimately responsible for accurate ECG rhythm interpretation, as well as for patient assessment and management.

Some units have full-disclosure monitors, which continuously store ECG rhythms in memory up to a certain amount of time, allowing nurses and health care providers to access and print them for more thorough patient assessment and management. Routine strips, as well as any changes in rhythm, are printed and documented in the patient's record.

The health care provider is responsible for determining when monitoring can be suspended, such as during showering. He or she also determines whether monitoring is needed during off-unit testing procedures and for transportation to other facilities.

Prehospital personnel, such as paramedics and emergency medical technicians (EMTs) with advanced training,

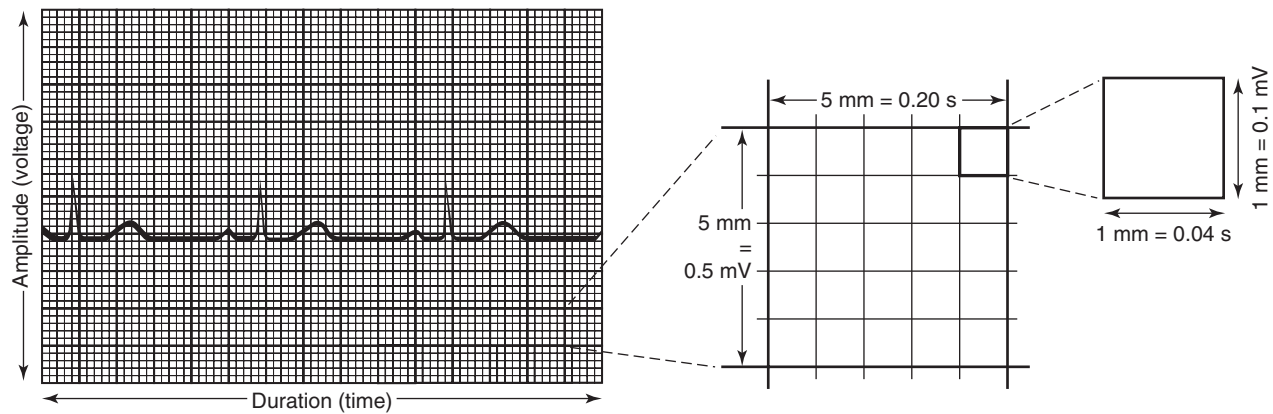


FIG. 36-3 Electrocardiographic waveforms are measured in amplitude (voltage) and duration (time).



FIG. 36-4 Each segment between the dark lines (*above the monitor strip*) represents 3 seconds when the monitor is set at a speed of 25 mm/sec. To estimate the ventricular rate, count the QRS complexes in a 6-second strip and then multiply that number by 10 to estimate the rate for 1 minute. In this example, there are 9 QRS complexes in 6 seconds. Therefore the heart rate can be estimated to be 90 beats/min.

frequently monitor ECG rhythms at the scene and on the way to a health care facility. They function under medical direction and protocols but may also be communicating with a nurse in the emergency department.

The ECG strip is printed on graph paper (Fig. 36-3), with each small block measuring 1 mm in height and width. ECG recorders and monitors are standardized at a speed of 25 mm/sec. Time is measured on the horizontal axis. At this speed, each small block represents 0.04 second. Five small blocks make up one large block, defined by darker bold lines and representing 0.20 second. Five large blocks represent 1 second, and 30 large blocks represent 6 seconds. Vertical lines in the top margin of the graph paper are usually 15 large blocks apart, representing 3-second segments (Fig. 36-4).

Electrocardiographic Complexes, Segments, and Intervals

Complexes that make up a normal ECG consist of a P wave, a QRS complex, a T wave, and possibly a U wave. Segments include the PR segment, the ST segment, and the TP segment. Intervals include the PR interval, the QRS duration, and the QT interval (Fig. 36-5).

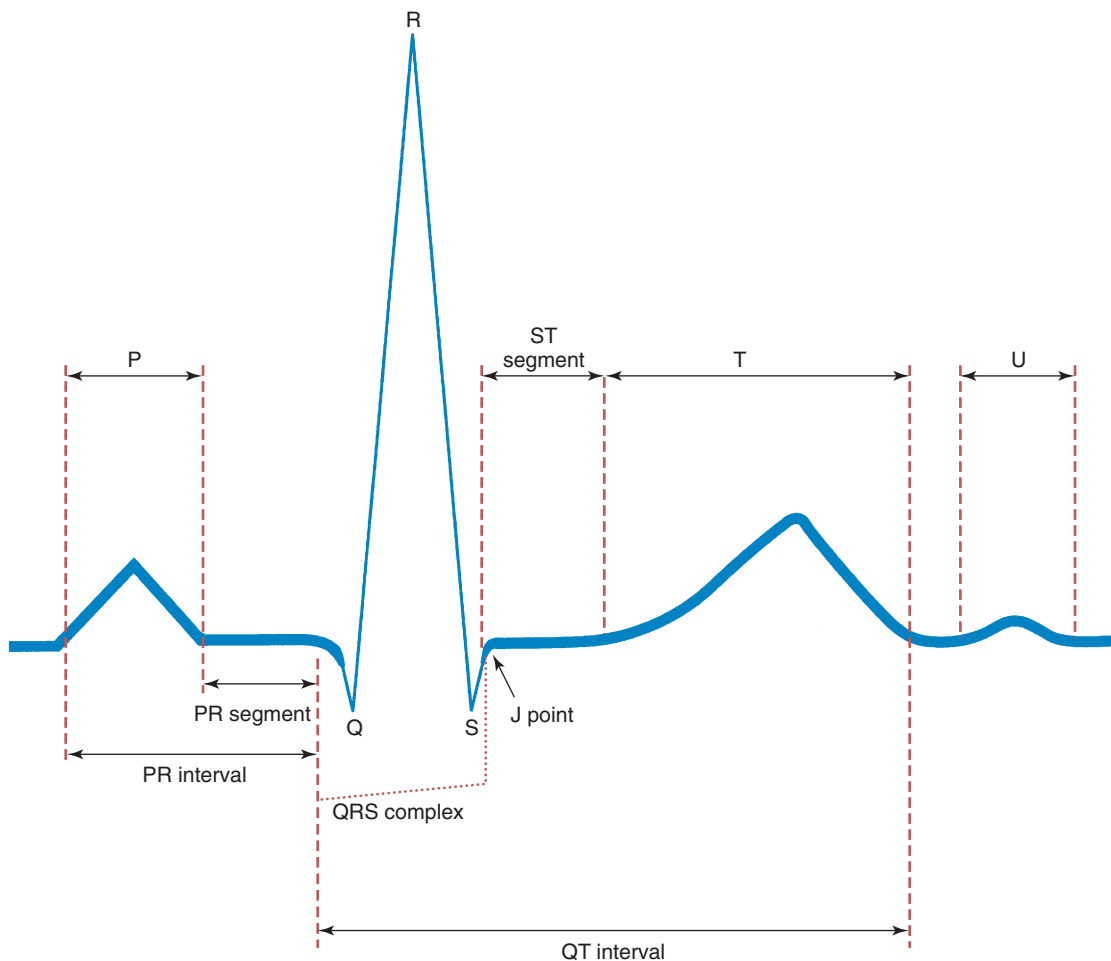
The **P wave** is a deflection representing atrial depolarization. The shape of the P wave may be a positive, negative, or

biphasic (both positive and negative) deflection, depending on the lead selected. When the electrical impulse is consistently generated from the sinoatrial (SA) node, the P waves have a consistent shape in a given lead. If an impulse is then generated from a different (ectopic) focus, such as atrial tissue, the shape of the P wave changes in that lead, indicating that an ectopic focus has fired.

The **PR segment** is the isoelectric line from the end of the P wave to the beginning of the QRS complex, when the electrical impulse is traveling through the atrioventricular (AV) node, where it is delayed. It then travels through the ventricular conduction system to the Purkinje fibers.

The **PR interval** is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the end of the PR segment. It represents the time required for atrial depolarization as well as the impulse delay in the AV node and the travel time to the Purkinje fibers. It normally measures from 0.12 to 0.20 second (five small blocks).

The **QRS complex** represents ventricular depolarization. The shape of the QRS complex depends on the lead selected. The Q wave is the first negative deflection and is not present in all leads. When present, it is small and represents initial ventricular septal depolarization. When the Q wave is abnormally present in a lead, it represents myocardial necrosis (cell



- P wave:** Represents atrial depolarization.
- PR segment:** Represents the time required for the impulse to travel through the AV node, where it is delayed, and through the bundle of His, bundle branches, and Purkinje fiber network, just before ventricular depolarization.
- PR interval:** Represents the time required for atrial depolarization as well as impulse travel through the conduction system and Purkinje fiber network, inclusive of the P wave and PR segment. It is measured from the beginning of the P wave to the end of the PR segment.
- QRS complex:** Represents ventricular depolarization and is measured from the beginning of the Q (or R) wave to the end of the S wave.
- J point:** Represents the junction where the QRS complex ends and the ST segment begins.
- ST segment:** Represents early ventricular repolarization.
- T wave:** Represents ventricular repolarization.
- U wave:** Represents late ventricular repolarization.
- QT interval:** Represents the total time required for ventricular depolarization and repolarization and is measured from the beginning of the QRS complex to the end of the T wave.

FIG. 36-5 The components of a normal electrocardiogram.

death). The R wave is the first positive deflection. It may be small, large, or absent, depending on the lead. The S wave is a negative deflection following the R wave and is not present in all leads.

The **QRS duration** represents the time required for depolarization of both ventricles. It is measured from the beginning of the QRS complex to the J point (the junction where the QRS complex ends and the ST segment begins). It

normally measures from 0.04 to 0.10 second (up to three small blocks).

The **ST segment** is normally an isoelectric line and represents early ventricular repolarization. It occurs from the J point to the beginning of the T wave. Its length varies with changes in the heart rate, the administration of medications, and electrolyte disturbances. It is normally not elevated more than 1 mm or depressed more than 0.5 mm from the

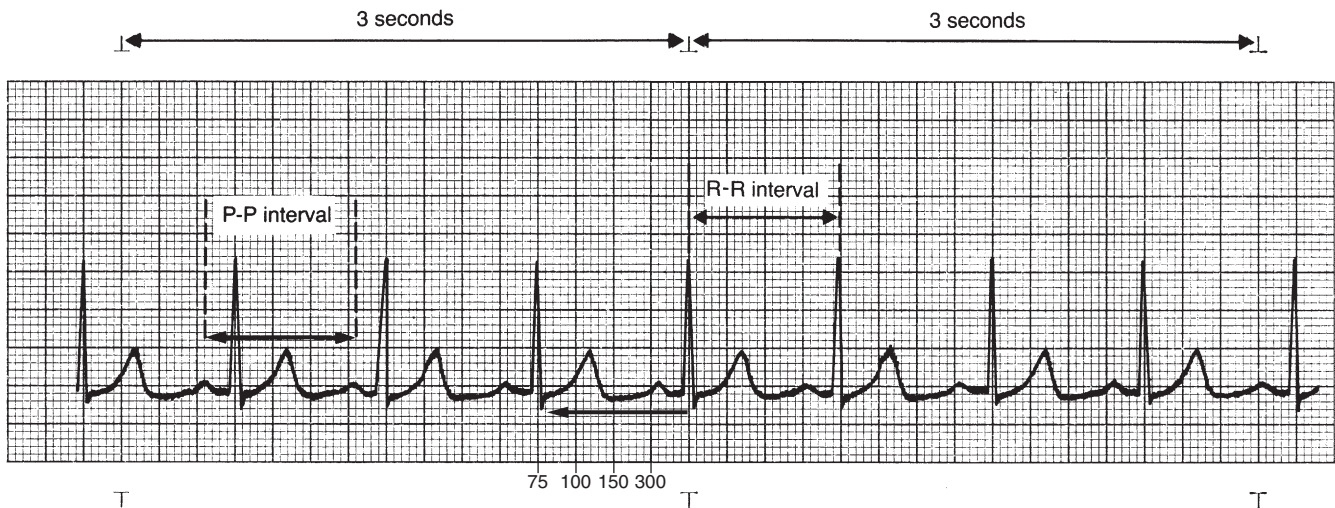


FIG. 36-6 In this example, the heart rate using the big block method is $300 \div 4$ big blocks (between QRS complexes), or 75 beats/min. The memory method is also demonstrated with a heart rate of 75 beats/min.

isoelectric line. Its amplitude is measured at a point 1.5 to 2 mm after the J point. ST elevation or depression can be caused by myocardial injury, ischemia or infarction, conduction abnormalities, or the administration of medications.

The **T wave** follows the ST segment and represents ventricular repolarization. It is usually positive, rounded, and slightly asymmetric. If an ectopic stimulus excites the ventricles during this time, it may cause ventricular irritability, lethal dysrhythmias, and possible cardiac arrest in the vulnerable heart. This is known as the *R-on-T phenomenon*. T waves may become tall and peaked, inverted (negative), or flat as a result of myocardial ischemia, potassium or calcium imbalances, medications, or autonomic nervous system effects.

The **U wave**, when present, follows the T wave and may result from slow repolarization of ventricular Purkinje fibers. It is of the same polarity as the T wave, although generally it is smaller. It is not normally seen in all leads and is more common in lead V₃. An abnormal U wave may suggest an electrolyte abnormality (particularly hypokalemia) or other disturbance. Correct identification is important so that it is not mistaken for a P wave. If in doubt, notify the health care provider and request that a potassium level be obtained.

The **QT interval** represents the total time required for ventricular depolarization and repolarization. The QT interval is measured from the beginning of the QRS complex to the end of the T wave. This interval varies with the patient's age and gender and changes with the heart rate, lengthening with slower heart rates and shortening with faster rates. It may be prolonged by certain medications, electrolyte disturbances, Prinzmetal's angina, or subarachnoid hemorrhage. A prolonged QT interval may lead to a unique type of ventricular tachycardia called *torsades de pointes*.

Artifact is interference seen on the monitor or rhythm strip, which may look like a wandering or fuzzy baseline. It can be caused by patient movement, loose or defective electrodes, improper grounding, or faulty ECG equipment, such as broken wires or cables. Some artifact can mimic lethal

dysrhythmias like ventricular tachycardia (with tooth brushing) or ventricular fibrillation (with tapping on the electrode). *Assess the patient to differentiate artifact from actual lethal rhythms! Do not rely only on the ECG monitor.*

Determination of Heart Rate

The heart rate can be estimated by counting the number of QRS complexes in 6 seconds and multiplying that number by 10 to calculate the rate for a full minute. This is called the *6-second strip method* and is a quick method to determine the mean or average heart rate. This method is the least accurate; however, it is the method of choice for irregular rhythms.

For accuracy, the *big block method* is used if the QRS complexes are regular or evenly spaced. Count the number of big blocks between the same point in any two successive QRS complexes (usually R wave to R wave) and divide into 300. There are 300 big blocks in 1 minute. It is easiest to use a QRS that falls on a dark line. If little blocks are left over when counting big blocks, count each little block as 0.2, add this to the number of big blocks, and then divide that total into 300 (Fig. 36-6).

Count the number of large blocks in an interval and divide into 300 (the number of large blocks in 1 minute). For example, three large blocks equals a heart rate of 100 beats per minute ($300 \div 3 = 100$).

Another method (called the *memory method*) relies on memorizing this sequence: 300, 150, 100, 75, 60, 50, 43, 37, 33, 30. This is the big block method with the math already done. Find a QRS complex that falls on the dark line representing 0.2 second or a big block, and count backwards to the next QRS complex. Each dark line is a memorized number. This is the method most widely used in hospitals for calculating heart rates for regular rhythms.

Commercially prepared ECG rate rulers are based on these calculations and may be used for regular rhythms. Current monitoring systems will display a continuous heart rate and print the heart rate on the ECG strip. *Use caution and confirm that the rate is correct by assessing the patient's heart rate*

directly. Many factors can incorrectly alter the rate displayed by the monitor.

Electrocardiographic Rhythm Analysis

Analysis of an ECG rhythm strip requires a systematic approach using a six-step method facilitated by use of a measurement tool called an **ECG caliper**:

1. **Determine the heart rate.** If the atrial and ventricular rhythms are regular, use any of the methods previously described to calculate the heart rate. If the rhythms are irregular, use the 6-second strip method for accuracy. Normal heart rates fall between 60 and 100 beats/min. A rate less than 60 beats/min is called **bradycardia**. A rate greater than 100 beats/min is called **tachycardia**.
2. **Determine the heart rhythm.** Heart rhythms can be either regular or irregular. Irregular rhythms can be regularly irregular, occasionally irregular, or irregularly irregular. Check the regularity of the atrial rhythm by assessing the PP intervals, placing one caliper point on a P wave and placing the other point on the precise spot on the next P wave. Then move the caliper from P wave to P wave along the entire strip ("walking out" the P waves) to determine the regularity of the rhythm. P waves of a different shape (ectopic waves), if present, create an irregularity and do not walk out with the other P waves. A slight irregularity in the PP intervals, varying no more than three small blocks, is considered essentially regular if the P waves are all of the same shape. This alteration is caused by changes in intrathoracic pressure during the respiratory cycle.
Check the regularity of the ventricular rhythm by assessing the RR intervals, placing one caliper point on a portion of the QRS complex (usually the most prominent portion of the deflection) and the other point on the precise spot of the next QRS complex. Move the caliper from QRS complex to QRS complex along the entire strip (walking out the QRS complexes) to determine the regularity of the rhythm. QRS complexes of a different shape (ectopic QRS complexes), if present, create an irregularity and do not walk out with the other QRS complexes. A slight irregularity of no more than three small blocks between intervals is considered essentially regular if the QRS complexes are all of the same shape.
3. **Analyze the P waves.** Check that the P wave shape is consistent throughout the strip, indicating that atrial depolarization is occurring from impulses originating from one focus, normally the SA node. Determine whether there is one P wave occurring before each QRS complex, establishing that a relationship exists between the P wave and the QRS complex. This relationship indicates that an impulse from one focus is responsible for both atrial and ventricular depolarization. The nurse may observe more than one P wave shape, more P waves than QRS complexes, absent P waves, or P waves coming after the QRS, each indicating that a dysrhythmia exists. Ask these five questions when analyzing P waves:
 - Are P waves present?
 - Are the P waves occurring regularly?
 - Is there one P wave for each QRS complex?

- Are the P waves smooth, rounded, and upright in appearance, or are they inverted?
 - Do all the P waves look similar?
4. **Measure the PR interval.** Place one caliper point at the beginning of the P wave and the other point at the end of the PR segment. The PR interval normally measures between 0.12 and 0.20 second. The measurement should be constant throughout the strip. The PR interval cannot be determined if there are no P waves or if P waves occur after the QRS complex. Ask these three questions about the PR interval:
 - Are PR intervals greater than 0.20 second?
 - Are PR intervals less than 0.12 second?
 - Are PR intervals constant across the ECG strip?
 5. **Measure the QRS duration.** Place one caliper point at the beginning of the QRS complex and the other at the J point, where the QRS complex ends and the ST segment begins. The QRS duration normally measures between 0.04 and 0.10 second. The measurement should be constant throughout the entire strip. Check that the QRS complexes are consistent throughout the strip. When the QRS is narrow (0.10 second or less), this indicates that the impulse was not formed in the ventricles and is referred to as *supraventricular* or *above the ventricles*. When the QRS complex is wide (greater than 0.10 second), this indicates that the impulse is either of ventricular origin or of supraventricular origin with aberrant conduction, meaning deviating from the normal course or pattern. More than one QRS complex pattern or occasionally missing QRS complexes may be observed, indicating a dysrhythmia.
Ask these questions to evaluate QRS intervals:
 - Are QRS intervals less than or greater than 0.12 second?
 - Are the QRS complexes similar in appearance across the ECG paper?
 6. **Interpret the rhythm.** Using steps 1 to 5, you can interpret the cardiac rhythm and differentiate normal and abnormal cardiac rhythms.

NORMAL RHYTHMS

Normal sinus rhythm (NSR) is the rhythm originating from the sinoatrial (SA) node (dominant pacemaker) that meets these ECG criteria (Fig. 36-7):

- **Rate:** Atrial and ventricular rates of 60 to 100 beats/min
- **Rhythm:** Atrial and ventricular rhythms regular
- **P waves:** Present, consistent configuration, one P wave before each QRS complex
- **PR interval:** 0.12 to 0.20 second and constant
- **QRS duration:** 0.04 to 0.10 second and constant

Sinus arrhythmia is a variant of NSR. It results from changes in intrathoracic pressure during breathing. In this context, the term *arrhythmia* does not mean an absence of rhythm, as the term suggests. Instead, the heart rate increases slightly during inspiration and decreases slightly during exhalation. This irregular rhythm is frequently observed in healthy children as well as adults.

Sinus arrhythmia has all the characteristics of NSR except for its irregularity. The PP and RR intervals vary, with the difference between the shortest and the longest intervals being greater than 0.12 second (three small blocks):



FIG. 36-7 Normal sinus rhythm. Both atrial and ventricular rhythms are essentially regular (a slight variation in rhythm is normal). Atrial and ventricular rates are both 87 beats/min. There is one P wave before each QRS complex, and all the P waves are of a consistent morphology, or shape. The PR interval measures 0.18 second and is constant; the QRS complex measures 0.06 second and is constant.

- **Rate:** Atrial and ventricular rates between 60 and 100 beats/min
- **Rhythm:** Atrial and ventricular rhythms irregular, with the shortest PP or RR interval varying at least 0.12 second from the longest PP or RR interval
- **P waves:** One P wave before each QRS complex; consistent configuration
- **PR interval:** Normal, constant
- **QRS duration:** Normal, constant

Sinus arrhythmias occasionally are due to nonrespiratory causes, such as digitalis or morphine. These drugs enhance vagal tone and cause decreased heart rate and irregularity unrelated to the respiratory cycle.

DYSRHYTHMIAS

Overview

Any disorder of the heartbeat is called a **dysrhythmia**. Historically, the term *arrhythmia* has been used in the literature. Although the terms are often used interchangeably, *dysrhythmia* is more accurate. Dysrhythmias result from:

- A disturbance in the relationship between electrical conductivity and the mechanical response of the myocardium
- A disturbance in impulse formation (either from an abnormal rate or from an ectopic focus)
- A disturbance in impulse conduction (delays and blocks)
- The combination of several mechanisms

Although many dysrhythmias have no clinical manifestations, many others have serious consequences if not treated. A summary of key features is found in [Chart 36-1](#).

Dysrhythmia Terminology

Tachydysrhythmias are heart rates greater than 100 beats per minute. They are a major concern in the adult patient with coronary artery disease (CAD). Coronary artery blood flow occurs mostly during diastole when the aortic valve is closed and is determined by diastolic time and blood pressure in the root of the aorta. Tachydysrhythmias are serious because they:

CHART 36-1 KEY FEATURES

Sustained Tachydysrhythmias and Bradydysrhythmias

- | | |
|---|---|
| • Chest discomfort, pressure, or pain, which may radiate to the jaw, the back, or the arm | • Tachypnea |
| • Restlessness, anxiety, nervousness, confusion | • Pulmonary crackles |
| • Dizziness, syncope | • Orthopnea |
| • Palpitations (in tachydysrhythmias) | • S ₃ or S ₄ heart sounds |
| • Change in pulse strength, rate, and rhythm | • Jugular venous distention |
| • Pulse deficit | • Weakness, fatigue |
| • Shortness of breath, dyspnea | • Pale, cool, skin; diaphoresis |
| | • Nausea, vomiting |
| | • Decreased urine output |
| | • Delayed capillary refill |
| | • Hypotension |

- Shorten the diastolic time and therefore the coronary perfusion time (the amount of time available for blood to flow through the coronary arteries to the myocardium).
- Initially increase cardiac output and blood pressure. However, a continued rise in heart rate decreases the ventricular filling time because of a shortened diastole, decreasing the stroke volume. Consequently, cardiac output and blood pressure will begin to decrease, reducing aortic pressure and therefore coronary perfusion pressure.
- Increase the work of the heart, increasing myocardial oxygen demand.

The patient with a tachydysrhythmia may have:

- Palpitations
- Chest discomfort (pressure or pain from myocardial ischemia or infarction)
- Restlessness and anxiety
- Pale, cool skin
- Syncope (“blackout”) from hypotension

Tachydysrhythmias may also lead to heart failure. Presenting symptoms of heart failure may include dyspnea, lung

crackles, distended neck veins, fatigue, and weakness (see Chapter 37).

Bradydysrhythmias occur when the heart rate is less than 60 beats per minute. These rhythms can also be significant because:

- Myocardial oxygen demand is reduced from the slow heart rate, which can be beneficial.
- Coronary perfusion time may be adequate because of a prolonged diastole, which is desirable.
- Coronary perfusion pressure may decrease if the heart rate is too slow to provide adequate cardiac output and blood pressure; this is a serious consequence.

Therefore the patient may tolerate the bradydysrhythmia well if the blood pressure is adequate. If the blood pressure is not adequate, symptomatic bradydysrhythmias may lead to myocardial ischemia or infarction, dysrhythmias, hypotension, and heart failure.

Premature complexes are early rhythm complexes. They occur when a cardiac cell or cell group, other than the sinoatrial (SA) node, becomes irritable and fires an impulse before the next sinus impulse is produced. The abnormal focus is called an *ectopic focus* and may be generated by atrial, junctional, or ventricular tissue. After the premature complex, there is a pause before the next normal complex, creating an irregularity in the rhythm. The patient with premature complexes may be unaware of them or may feel **palpitations** or a “skipping” of the heartbeat. If premature complexes, especially those that are ventricular, become more frequent, the patient may experience symptoms of decreased cardiac output.

Premature complexes may occur *repetitively in a rhythmic fashion*:

- **Bigeminy** exists when normal complexes and premature complexes occur alternately in a repetitive two-beat pattern, with a pause occurring after each premature complex so that complexes occur in pairs.
- **Trigeminy** is a repeated three-beat pattern, usually occurring as two sequential normal complexes followed by a premature complex and a pause, with the same pattern repeating itself in triplets.
- **Quadrigeminy** is a repeated four-beat pattern, usually occurring as three sequential normal complexes followed by a premature complex and a pause, with the same pattern repeating itself in a four-beat pattern.

Such patterns may occur with atrial, junctional, or ventricular premature complexes. Patients may be unaware of the premature beats, or they may feel palpitations.

Classification of Dysrhythmias

Dysrhythmias are classified according to their site of origin. The sites include the SA node, atrial tissue, AV node, junctional tissue, and ventricular tissue. Dysrhythmias may be caused by a disturbance in impulse formation or by conduction delays or blocks. The incidence and the prevalence of dysrhythmias are not known because they usually result from an underlying condition, such as heart disease. This chapter is limited to the most common dysrhythmias and those that are potentially life threatening.

Sinus Dysrhythmias. The sinus node is the **pacemaker** in all sinus dysrhythmias. Innervation from sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves is normally in balance to ensure a normal sinus rhythm (NSR). An imbalance increases or

decreases the rate of SA node discharge either as a normal response to activity or physiologic changes or as a pathologic response to disease.

Sinus Tachycardia. Sympathetic nervous system stimulation or vagal (parasympathetic) inhibition results in an increased rate of SA node discharge, which increases the heart rate. When the rate of SA node discharge is more than 100 beats per minute, the rhythm is called **sinus tachycardia** (Fig. 36-8, A). Sinus tachycardia, with temporary heart rates of 200 to 220 beats per minute, may be normal in infants and children. The rate gradually decreases until age 10 years. From age 10 years to adulthood, the heart rate normally does not exceed 100 beats per minute except in response to activity, and then usually does not exceed 160 beats per minute. Rarely does the heart rate reach 180 beats per minute.

Sinus tachycardia initially increases cardiac output and blood pressure. However, continued increases in heart rate decrease coronary perfusion time, diastolic filling time, and coronary perfusion pressure while increasing myocardial oxygen demand.

Increased sympathetic stimulation is a normal response to physical activity but may also be caused by anxiety, pain, stress, fear, fever, anemia, hypoxemia, hyperthyroidism, and pulmonary embolism. Drugs such as epinephrine, atropine, caffeine, alcohol, nicotine, aminophylline, and thyroid medications may also increase the heart rate. In some cases, sinus tachycardia is a compensatory response to decreased cardiac output or blood pressure, as occurs in hypovolemic shock, myocardial infarction (MI), infection, and heart failure.

The patient may be asymptomatic except for an increased pulse rate. However, if the rhythm is not well tolerated, he or she may have symptoms.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients with sinus tachycardia, assess for fatigue, weakness, shortness of breath, orthopnea, decreased oxygen saturation, and decreased blood pressure. Also assess for restlessness and anxiety from decreased cerebral perfusion and for decreased urine output from impaired renal perfusion. The patient may also have anginal pain and palpitations. The ECG pattern may show T-wave inversion or ST-segment elevation or depression in response to myocardial ischemia.

The desired outcome is to decrease the heart rate to normal levels by treating the underlying cause. Teach the patient to remain on bedrest if the tachycardia is causing hypotension or weakness.

Sinus Bradycardia. Excessive vagal (parasympathetic) stimulation to the heart causes a decreased rate of sinus node discharge. It may result from carotid sinus massage, vomiting, suctioning, **Valsalva maneuvers** (e.g., bearing down for a bowel movement or gagging), ocular pressure, or pain. Increased parasympathetic stimuli may also result from hypoxia, inferior wall MI, and the administration of drugs such as beta-adrenergic blocking agents, calcium channel blockers, and digitalis.

The stimuli slow the heart rate and decrease the speed of conduction through the heart. When the sinus node discharge rate is less than 60 beats/min, the rhythm is called **sinus bradycardia** (Fig. 36-8, B). Sinus bradycardia increases

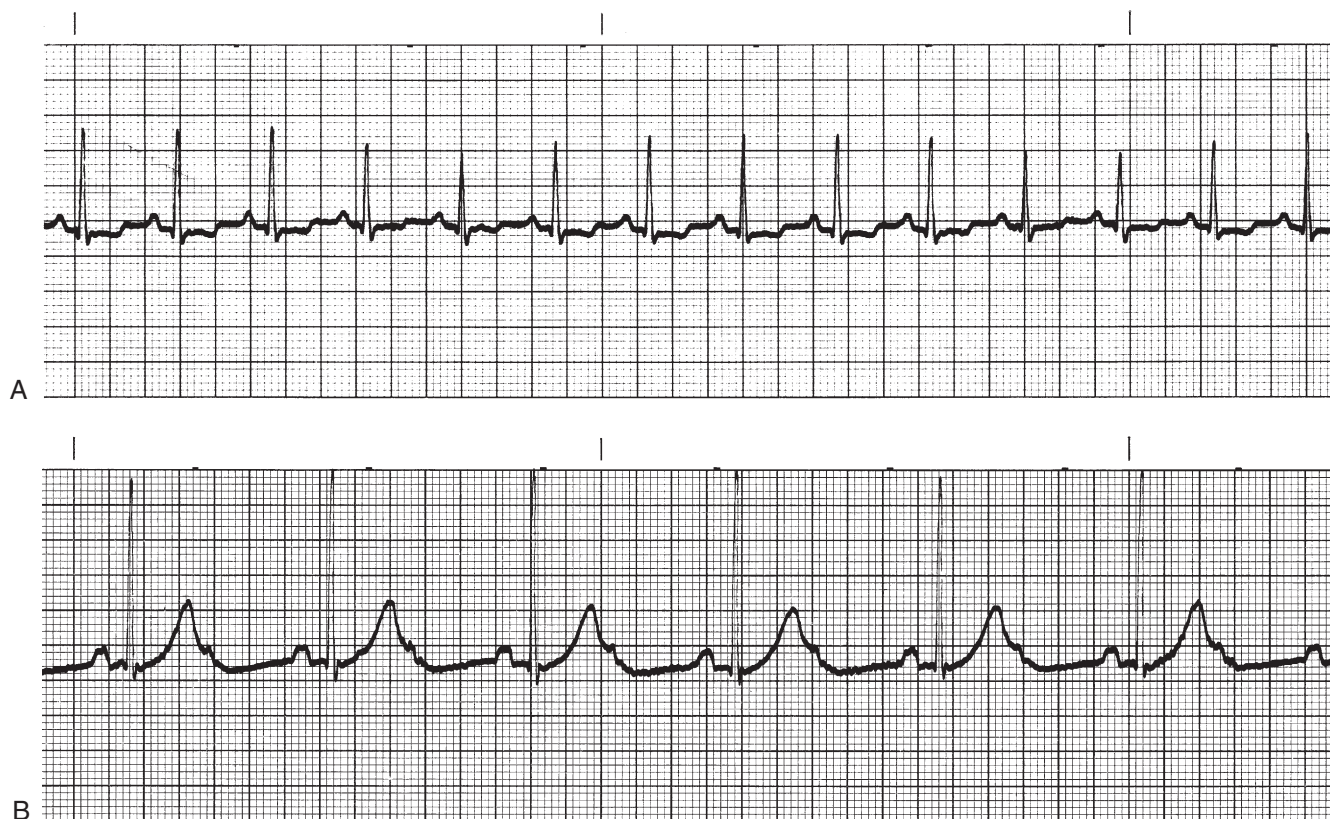


FIG. 36-8 Sinus rhythms. **A**, Sinus tachycardia (heart rate, 115 beats/min; PR interval, 0.12 second; QRS complex, 0.08 second). **B**, Sinus bradycardia (heart rate, 52 beats/min; PR interval, 0.18 second; QRS complex, 0.08 second).

coronary perfusion time, but it may decrease coronary perfusion pressure. However, myocardial oxygen demand is *decreased*. Well-conditioned athletes who are bradycardic have a hypereffective heart, in which the strong heart muscle provides an adequate stroke volume and a low heart rate to achieve a normal cardiac output.

The patient with sinus bradycardia may be asymptomatic except for the decreased pulse rate. At times, however, the rhythm may not be well tolerated. Assess the patient for:

- Syncope (“blackouts” or fainting)
- Dizziness and weakness
- Confusion
- Hypotension
- Diaphoresis (excessive sweating)
- Shortness of breath
- Chest pain

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older client has been taking metoprolol (Toprol) for hypertension for the past 3 days. Her daughter states that she has become confused, dizzy, and weak since starting the drug. How will the telephone triage nurse respond to the daughter’s concerns?

- A. “She’s getting older, so confusion is common from aging.”
- B. “Did your mother pass out at any time in the past few days?”
- C. “Tell your mother to stop taking the metoprolol for a week.”
- D. “Tell your mother to only take half of the drug today.”

If the patient has any of these symptoms and the underlying cause cannot be determined, the treatment is to administer drug therapy, increase intravascular volume via IV fluids, and apply oxygen. If the heart rate does not increase sufficiently, pacing may be needed to increase the heart rate.

Atrial Dysrhythmias. With atrial dysrhythmias, the focus of impulse generation shifts away from the sinus node to the atrial tissues. The shift changes the axis (direction) of atrial depolarization, resulting in a P-wave shape that differs from normal P waves. The most common atrial dysrhythmias are:

- Premature atrial complexes
- Supraventricular tachycardia
- Atrial fibrillation

Premature Atrial Complexes. A **premature atrial complex (PAC)** occurs when atrial tissue becomes irritable. This ectopic focus fires an impulse before the next sinus impulse is due. The premature P wave may not always be clearly visible because it can be hidden in the preceding T wave. Examine the T wave closely for any change in shape, and compare with other T waves. A PAC is usually followed by a pause.

The causes of atrial irritability include:

- Stress
- Fatigue
- Anxiety
- Inflammation
- Infection
- Caffeine, nicotine, or alcohol

- Drugs such as epinephrine, sympathomimetics, amphetamines, digitalis, or anesthetic agents

PACs may also result from myocardial ischemia, hypermetabolic states, electrolyte imbalance, or atrial stretch. Atrial stretch can result from congestive heart failure, valvular disease, and pulmonary hypertension with cor pulmonale.

The patient usually has no symptoms except for possible heart palpitations. No intervention is needed except to treat causes such as heart failure. If PACs occur frequently, they may lead to more serious atrial tachydysrhythmias and therefore may need treatment. Administration of prescribed antidysrhythmic drugs may be necessary. Teach the patient measures to manage stress and substances to avoid, such as caffeine and alcohol, that are known to increase atrial irritability.

Supraventricular Tachycardia. **Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)** involves the rapid stimulation of atrial tissue at a rate of 100 to 280 beats/min in adults. During SVT, P waves may not be visible, especially if there is a 1:1 conduction with rapid rates, because the P waves are embedded in the preceding T wave. *SVT may occur in healthy young people, especially women.*

SVT is usually due to a re-entry mechanism in which one impulse circulates repeatedly throughout the atrial pathway, re-stimulating the atrial tissue at a rapid rate. The term **paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT)** is used when the rhythm is intermittent. It is initiated suddenly by a premature complex such as a PAC and terminated suddenly with or without intervention.

The clinical manifestations depend on the duration of the SVT and the rate of the ventricular response. In patients with a *sustained* rapid ventricular response, assess for palpitations, chest pain, weakness, fatigue, shortness of breath, nervousness, anxiety, hypotension, and syncope. Cardiovascular deterioration may occur if the rate does not sustain adequate blood pressure. In that case, SVT can result in angina, heart failure, and cardiogenic shock. With a *nonsustained* or slower ventricular response, the patient may be asymptomatic except for occasional palpitations.

If SVT occurs in a healthy person and stops on its own, no intervention may be needed other than eliminating identified causes. If it continues, the patient should be studied in the electrophysiology study (EPS) laboratory. The preferred treatment for recurrent SVT is radiofrequency catheter ablation, described later in this chapter. In sustained SVT with a rapid ventricular response, the desired outcomes of treatment

are to decrease the ventricular response, convert the dysrhythmia to a sinus rhythm, and treat the cause. **Chart 36-2** lists drugs that may be used for SVT.

Atrial Fibrillation

Pathophysiology. **Atrial fibrillation (AF)** is the most common dysrhythmia seen in clinical practice. It impairs quality of life, causes considerable morbidity and mortality, and imposes a large economic burden on health care systems (Dagres & Anastasiou-Nana, 2010).

AF is associated with atrial fibrosis and loss of muscle mass. A mutation in the *lamin AC* (LMAC) gene has been linked to atrial fibrosis and dilation (Hardin & Steele, 2008). These structural changes are common in heart diseases such as hypertension, heart failure, and coronary artery disease. As AF progresses, cardiac output decreases by as much as 20 to 30 percent.

Currently, approximately 2.3 million people in the United States are diagnosed with AF; it is estimated that more than 12 million people will have AF by the year 2050 (Tedrow et al., 2010). The incidence of AF increases with age; AF causes serious problems in older people, leading to stroke and/or heart failure. Risk factors include hypertension (HTN), previous ischemic stroke, transient ischemic attack (TIA) or other thromboembolic event, coronary heart disease, diabetes mellitus, heart failure, and mitral valve disease (Holding et al., 2009).

In addition to advanced age, obesity, Caucasian race, and excessive alcohol have been identified as risk factors for AF (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 727). About half of obese adults may develop AF (Chilukuri et al., 2010). Caucasians are more at risk for AF than African Americans and other ethnic groups, perhaps because of the larger left atrial diameter in Caucasians (Marcus et al., 2010). AF that is temporary and reversible is associated with excessive alcohol consumption (sometimes called *holiday heart syndrome*) (McDonough, 2009).

In patients with AF, multiple rapid impulses from many atrial foci depolarize the atria in a totally disorganized manner at a rate of 350 to 600 times per minute; ventricular response is usually 120 to 200 beats per minute. The result is a chaotic rhythm with no clear P waves, no atrial contractions, loss of atrial kick, and an irregular ventricular response (Fig. 36-9). The atria merely quiver in fibrillation (commonly called “A fib”). Often the ventricles beat with a rapid rate in response to the numerous atrial impulses. Heart dilation and blood pooling in the atria can lead to thrombus formation, and this increases the risk for stroke or other embolic events. The rapid and irregular ventricular rate decreases ventricular filling and reduces cardiac output, further impairing the heart’s perfusion ability.

Patient-Centered Collaborative Care. AF may be intermittent or chronic. Symptoms depend on the ventricular rate. If the ventricular rate is rapid, the presenting symptoms may be similar to those described earlier for supraventricular tachycardia. Because of loss of atrial kick, however, the patient in uncontrolled AF is at greater risk for an inadequate cardiac output. Assess the patient for fatigue, weakness, shortness of breath, dizziness, anxiety, syncope, palpitations, chest discomfort or pain, and hypotension. Some patients may be asymptomatic.

The loss of coordinated atrial contractions in AF can lead to stagnation of blood resulting in thrombus formation. The



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

A 40-year-old female patient is admitted to the telemetry unit where you work reporting palpitations. About an hour after admission, she becomes short of breath and diaphoretic. Her vital signs are as follows: pulse 166, respirations 32, oxygen saturation 98%, BP 120/80, and pain 6 on a scale of 0-10. The ECG waveform shows paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT).

1. What other questions would you ask this patient for assessment?
2. What could be the underlying causes of the patient’s tachycardia?
3. Does this dysrhythmia need treatment? Why or why not? What intervention would you implement first? What is the source of evidence that supports your answer?
4. What drug therapy is indicated? What nonpharmacologic interventions could you try?

Common Dysrhythmias

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Class I Drugs			
Type IA			
Disopyramide phosphate (Norpace) Used for AF, WPW, PSVT, PVCs, VT	100-200 mg orally every 6 hr	Monitor BP. Watch for shortness of breath and weight gain. Monitor for widening QRS complex, prolonged QT or PR interval, or heart block.	Hypotension is a common side effect. Disopyramide can cause heart failure in a patient with CAD. Toxic side effects necessitate stopping disopyramide administration.
Type IB			
Lidocaine (Xylocaine) Used for PVCs, VT, VF	1-1.5 mg/kg IV bolus, then 0.5-0.75 mg/kg IV boluses every 5-10 min to a loading dose of 3 mg/kg, followed by 2-4 mg/min infusion For VF or pulseless VT: 1-1.5 mg/kg IV bolus every 3-5 min to a loading dose of 3 mg/kg, followed by 2-4 mg/min infusion	Watch for confusion, paresthesias, slurring of speech, drowsiness, or seizure activity.	CNS adverse effects predominate; they may require a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the infusion.
Mexiletine hydrochloride (Mexitil) Used for PVCs, VT, VF	200-300 mg orally every 8 hr with food 125-250 mg IV bolus for 5-10 min 0.5-1.5 mg/min infusion	Monitor BP and heart rate. Assess for tremors, blurred vision, dizziness, ataxia, or confusion.	Hypotension and bradycardia may occur. CNS adverse reactions predominate.
Tocainide hydrochloride (Tonocard) Used for PVCs, VT, VF	400 mg orally every 8 hr initially 400-800 mg orally every 8 hr Maximum of 2.4 g daily Take with food	Watch for tremors. Monitor heart rate and BP. Teach patient to report shortness of breath, wheezing, chest pain, or cough, as well as dyspnea and distended neck veins or swelling of the extremities.	Tremors indicate that the maximum dose is being approached. Bradycardia and hypotension may occur. Pulmonary fibrosis is a serious side effect, which necessitates discontinuation of the drug; the drug may also cause CHF.
Type IC			
Flecainide acetate (Tambocor) Used for AF, PSVT, life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias	100 mg orally twice daily Maximum dose of 400 mg	Monitor for an increase in frequency and severity of dysrhythmias. Monitor heart rate and BP. Monitor for CHF, dizziness, visual disturbances, paresthesias, and tremors.	Flecainide can induce dysrhythmias. Bradycardia and hypotension may occur. Side effects may require a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.
Propafenone hydrochloride (Rythmol) Used for PAF, WPW, life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias	150-300 mg orally every 8 hr	Monitor for an increase in dysrhythmias. Monitor heart rate and BP. Monitor for CNS effects, dizziness, anxiety, ataxia, insomnia, confusion, and seizures, as well as CHF and GI distress.	Propafenone can induce dysrhythmias. Bradycardia and hypotension may occur. Side effects may require a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.
Class II Drugs			
Propranolol hydrochloride (Inderal, Apo-Propranolol)  Used for AF, atrial flutter, PSVT, PVCs	10-80 mg orally four times daily before meals 0.1 mg/kg slow IV bolus divided into 3 equal doses given at intervals of 2-3 min at rate of 1 mg/min	Monitor heart rate and BP. Assess for shortness of breath or wheezing. Assess for insomnia, fatigue, and dizziness.	Bradycardia and decreased BP are expected effects. Beta ₂ -blocking effects on the lungs can cause bronchospasm. Side effects may require decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.
Acebutolol hydrochloride (Sectral) Used for AF, atrial flutter, PSVT, PVCs	600-1200 mg orally daily	Monitor heart rate and BP. Assess for shortness of breath or wheezing. Assess for insomnia, fatigue, and dizziness.	Bradycardia and decreased BP are expected effects. Beta ₂ -blocking effects on the lungs can cause bronchospasm. Side effects may require a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.

CHART 36-2 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Common Dysrhythmias—cont'd

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Esmolol hydrochloride (Brevibloc) Used for AF, atrial flutter, PSVT, PVCs	Initially, 500 mcg/kg/min for 1 min, then 50 mcg/kg/min for 4 min IV Titrate up if necessary	Monitor heart rate and BP. Assess for shortness of breath or wheezing. Assess for insomnia, fatigue, and seizures.	Bradycardia and decreased BP are expected effects. Beta ₂ -blocking effects on the lungs can cause bronchospasm. Side effects may require a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.
Sotalol hydrochloride (Betapace) Used for AF, PAF, PSVT, life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias	Initial dose of 80 mg orally twice daily Dosage may be increased every 2-3 days, if necessary, to 240-320 mg daily in 2-3 divided doses	Assess ECG rhythm for torsades de pointes and other serious new ventricular dysrhythmias. Assess for fatigue, bradycardia, dyspnea, CHF, chest pain, hypotension, dizziness, hypoglycemia, nausea, and vomiting. Sotalol should not be administered to patients with hypokalemia or hypomagnesemia before correction of these imbalances. Sotalol is contraindicated in patients with bronchial asthma, sinus bradycardia, or second- and third-degree AV block (unless a functioning pacemaker is present), prolonged QT syndrome, cardiogenic shock, or CHF.	Sotalol may have proarrhythmic effects. Adverse reactions may warrant drug discontinuation. Hypokalemia or hypomagnesemia may prolong the QT interval and cause torsades de pointes. Sotalol has beta-blocking (class II) effects and class III effects.
Class III Drugs Amiodarone hydrochloride (Cordarone) Used for AF, PAF, PSVT, life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias	800-1600 mg orally daily in divided doses for 1-3 wk, then 600-800 mg daily for 1 mo, then 200-600 mg daily (average of 400 mg daily) Rapid loading dose: 150 mg IV over first 10 min (15 mg/min); slow loading dose: 360 mg IV over next 6 hr (1 mg/min); maintenance infusion: 540 mg IV over next 18 hr (0.5 mg/min), then 720 mg/24 hr (0.5 mg/min)	Use volumetric infusion pump and polyvinyl chloride tubing with in-line filter, and infuse via central line. Rapid-loading IV dose must not be administered faster than 10 min. Must stay with patient and monitor heart rate and BP. Continually monitor ECG rhythm during IV infusion; measure QT and QTc. Assess the patient's knowledge of the treatment regimen and side effects. Monitor heart rate, BP, and cardiac rhythm when initiating therapy. Teach patients to report any muscle weakness, tremors, or difficulty with ambulation. Teach patients to report shortness of breath, cough, pleuritic pain, or fever. Teach patients to report any visual disturbances and to wear sunglasses outdoors in the daytime if they have photophobia. Teach patients to use barrier sunscreens. Teach patients to report any signs of thyroid problems or hepatotoxicity.	Drug is irritating to peripheral vasculature; drug is more stable in glass bottle. Hypotension may occur. It should be treated by slowing the infusion and other standard therapy. Cordarone should not be discontinued unless necessary. Bradycardia and AV block may occur and are treated by slowing the infusion rate and providing pacemaker therapy, if necessary. May cause a worsening of ventricular dysrhythmias. Drug has major side effects, which make noncompliance a problem; patients may take the drug for 1½-3 mo before full clinical effects are apparent. Bradycardia, hypotension, and worsening dysrhythmia can occur. Muscle-related side effects usually develop during the first week of treatment. Pulmonary side effects may indicate drug-induced pulmonary toxicity. Corneal pigmentation occurs in most patients but generally does not interfere with vision; if it does, the dosage is decreased. Photosensitivity reactions may occur. Thyroid problems or hepatotoxicity may occur, necessitating a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.

Dronedarone (Multaq) Used for AF, atrial flutter	400 mg twice daily with meals	Monitor heart rate, BP, and cardiac rhythm when initiating therapy. Monitor BUN, creatinine, and liver function panel. Teach patients to take with a meal. Do not take with grapefruit juice. Teach patient to notify the doctor if signs of worsening heart failure such as weight gain, dependent edema, or increasing shortness of breath. Teach patient if a dose is missed, take at next regularly scheduled dose. Do not double dose. Advise patient to report all medications to doctor (prescription, OTC, and herbal products, especially St. John's wort).	Bradycardia and worsening dysrhythmia can occur. May cause worsening renal function. Drug is contraindicated for patients with severe hepatic impairment. Better absorbed with food. Grapefruit juice alters drug effectiveness. Drug is contraindicated for patients with heart failure.
Ibutilide fumarate (Corvert) Used for AF, atrial flutter	1 mg IV over 10 min for patients >60 kg; 0.01 mg/kg over 10 min for patients <60 kg May repeat dose 10 min after completion of first infusion if necessary	Stop infusion as soon as dysrhythmia is terminated, or in event of sustained or nonsustained VT, or marked prolongation of QT or QTc. Observe patients with continuous ECG monitoring and measure QT or QTc for at least 4 hr after infusion or until QTc has returned to baseline. Patients with atrial fibrillation of >2-3 days' duration must be adequately anticoagulated for at least 2 wk. Hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia must be corrected before Corvert infusion. Teach patients to change positions slowly. Inform patients that dosages will be adjusted, depending on their creatinine clearance level. Monitor patients on telemetry for several days; observe for and report bradycardia and hypotension.	May have serious drug interaction and cause potentially fatal dysrhythmias. Drug may cause potentially fatal dysrhythmias.
Dofetilide (Tikosyn) Used for AF, atrial flutter	125-500 mcg orally twice daily	Observe patients with atrial fibrillation of >2-3 days' duration must be adequately anticoagulated for at least 2 wk. Hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia must be corrected before Corvert infusion. Teach patients to change positions slowly. Inform patients that dosages will be adjusted, depending on their creatinine clearance level. Monitor patients on telemetry for several days; observe for and report bradycardia and hypotension.	Acute ventricular dysrhythmias must be promptly identified and treated. Patient may develop heart blocks. Atrial fibrillation is associated with formation of thrombi in atrial chambers. This is important to reduce potential for proarrhythmic effects. Orthostatic hypotension is a common side effect of the drug. The patient must have adequate creatinine clearance to prevent drug toxicity. Bradycardia and hypotension are common side effects.
Class IV Drugs			
Verapamil hydrochloride (Calan, Isoptin ) Used for AF, atrial flutter, PSVT	2.5-5 mg IV for 1-2 min for narrow-complex SVT or PSVT; after 15-30 min may give 5-10 mg IV for 1-2 min, if necessary, and repeat to a maximum of 20 mg 80-120 mg orally every 6-8 hr	Monitor heart rate and BP. Teach patients to remain recumbent for at least 1 hr after IV administration. Teach patients to change positions slowly when receiving oral therapy. Teach patients to report dyspnea, orthopnea, distended neck veins, or swelling of the extremities.	Bradycardia and hypotension are common side effects. Hypotension may occur; may be reversed with calcium chloride (CaCl₂), 0.5-1 g slow IV. Dizziness and orthostatic hypotension often occur until tolerance develops. Heart failure may occur, necessitating a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.

Continued

CHART 36-2 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Common Dysrhythmias—cont'd

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Diltiazem hydrochloride (Cardizem) Used for AF, atrial flutter, PSVT	0.25 mg/kg IV for 2 min After 15 min, give 0.35 mg/kg IV for 2 min 5-15 mg/hr IV infusion	Monitor heart rate and BP. Teach patients to remain recumbent for at least 1 hr after IV administration. Teach patients to report dyspnea, orthopnea, distended neck veins, or swelling of the extremities.	Bradycardia and hypotension are common side effects. Hypotension may occur. Heart failure may occur, necessitating a decrease in dosage or discontinuation of the drug.
Other Drugs			
Digoxin (Lanoxin, Novodigoxin) ✱ Used for CHF, AF, atrial flutter, PSVT	Rapid digitalization: 0.5-1 mg orally or IV initially; 0.125-0.5 mg orally every 6 hr or IV until a total of 1-1.5 mg is reached Maintenance: 0.125-0.25 mg orally or IV daily or every other day (may be less for older adults)	Assess apical heart rate for 1 min before each dose. Assess for sudden increase in heart rate and change of rhythm from regular to irregular, or irregular to regular. Teach patients to report anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, paresthesias, confusion, or visual disturbances. Monitor serum potassium levels.	Decreased heart rate is an expected response, but bradycardia may indicate toxicity. Changes in heart rate or rhythm may indicate toxicity. Side effect can indicate toxicity.
Atropine sulfate Used for bradycardia	0.5-1 mg IV bolus may be repeated every 3-5 min, if necessary, to a maximum of 0.04 mg/kg	Monitor serum creatinine levels. Monitor heart rate and rhythm after administration. Assess for chest pain after administration. Assess for urinary retention and dry mouth after administration. Avoid using in patients with acute angle-closure glaucoma.	Hypokalemia increases the risk for toxicity and ventricular dysrhythmias. Impaired renal function can cause toxicity; the dosage is altered if this occurs. Increased heart rate is expected. Increased heart rate may cause ischemia in patients with CAD. Atropine is an anticholinergic agent. Atropine increases intraocular pressure.
Adenosine (Adenocard) Used for PSVT, WPW	6 mg IV for 1-3 sec followed by 20-mL saline flush; repeat in 1-2 min at 12 mg IV for 1-3 sec with 20-mL flush	Monitor heart rate and rhythm after administration.	A short period of asystole is common after administration; bradycardia and hypotension may occur. These side effects commonly occur.
Magnesium sulfate Used for torsades de pointes	1-2 g diluted in 100 mL of D ₅ W administered IV for 1-2 min for VF or VT 1-2 g in 50-100 mL of D ₅ W for 5-60 min for loading dose; 0.5-1 g/hr for 24 hr for supplementation	Assess patients for facial flushing, shortness of breath, dyspnea, and chest pain. Assess patients for recurrence of PSVT or ventricular ectopy. Assess ECG rhythm for conversion to sinus rhythm. Assess patients for facial flushing, hypotension, and respiratory and CNS depression.	Recurrence of PSVT is common; PVCs may occur. Hypomagnesemia may precipitate refractory VF. Magnesium sulfate causes vasodilation and respiratory and CNS depression.

AF, Atrial fibrillation; AV, atrioventricular; BP, blood pressure; CAD, coronary artery disease; CHF, congestive heart failure; CNS, central nervous system; D₅W, 5% dextrose in water; ECG, electrocardiogram; EMD, electromechanical dissociation; OTC, over-the-counter; PAF, paroxysmal atrial fibrillation/flutter; PEA, pulseless electrical activity; PSVT, paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia; PVC, premature ventricular complex; SVT, supraventricular tachycardia; VF, ventricular fibrillation; VT, ventricular tachycardia; W/PW, Wolff-Parkinson-White.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Is There a Relationship Between Obesity and Atrial Fibrillation?

Tedrow, U.B., Conen, D., Ridker, P.M., Cook, N.R., Koplan, B.A., Manson, J.E., et al. (2010). The long- and short-term impact of elevated body mass index on the risk of new atrial fibrillation: The WHS (Women's Health Study). *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(21), 2319-2327.

There has been an increase in atrial fibrillation (AF) in recent years that is not explained by aging alone. Modifiable risk factors must be identified. Recent evidence estimates that 32.2% of adults are obese (body mass index [BMI] >30) and 6.9% of women are extremely obese (BMI >40). This study used data from the WHS and included 34,309 women who were followed for approximately 12.9 years. Participants reported their weight on questionnaires at 24-, 36-, 60-, 72-, and 108-month intervals. During this time, 834 AF events were confirmed. BMI was linearly associated with AF risk, and being overweight and/or obese was associated with short-term increases in AF risk. Participants who became obese had a 41% risk for developing AF. Study limitations include the heterogeneous population with self-reported height/weight, and lack of electrocardiograph (ECG) screening. The researchers concluded that weight-control strategies may reduce AF incidence.

Level of Evidence: 1

The evidence was obtained from a randomized trial of a very large longitudinal national study using multiple methods of data collection.

Commentary: Implications for Nursing Practice and Research

Obesity is a major health concern in the United States. Cases of AF are increasing. Both affect the economy of health care because of complications and hospital admissions. Nurses need to recognize AF risk factors and provide proactive education to patients at risk for obesity, cardiovascular disease, and atrial fibrillation. Further research is needed to replicate the study on different populations, to determine the economic impact on health care, and to determine if weight loss reduces the incidence of AF.

patient is at risk for pulmonary embolism. Thrombi may form within the right atrium and then move through the right ventricle to the lungs. In addition, the patient is at risk for systemic emboli, particularly an embolic stroke, which may cause severe neurologic impairment or death. Patients with

AF who have valvular disease are particularly at risk for venous thromboembolism (VTE). Monitor patients carefully for these complications (see Chapter 38).

Traditional interventions for AF include antidysrhythmic drugs to slow the ventricular conduction or to convert the AF to normal sinus rhythm (NSR). Examples of these drugs are calcium channel blockers like diltiazem (Cardizem) or, for more difficult-to-control AF, amiodarone (Cordarone). Dronedarone (Multaq) is a new drug similar to amiodarone, yet better tolerated by patients, for maintenance of sinus rhythm after cardioversion (Cheng, 2010). However, dronedarone should not be used in patients with a history or current congestive heart failure because it can cause an exacerbation of cardiac symptoms.

Beta blockers, such as metoprolol (Toprol, Dutoprol) and esmolol (Brevibloc), may also be used to slow ventricular response. Digoxin (Lanoxin, Novo-Digoxin) is given for patients with heart failure and AF.

Anticoagulants, such as heparin, enoxaparin (Lovenox), and warfarin (Coumadin), may also be given for patients at high risk for emboli. Because of the unpredictable drug response, laboratory monitoring (e.g., international normalized ratio [INR]), and many food/drug interactions with warfarin, clinical trials are ongoing for newer, more effective medications (Garlitski & Estes, 2010). When taking warfarin, teach patients the importance of avoiding high vitamin K foods and avoiding herbs, such as ginger, ginseng, goldenseal, *Ginkgo biloba*, and St. John's wort, which could interfere with the drug's action. Chapter 38 describes anticoagulant therapy in detail on p. 800.

Because of the problems associated with warfarin, alternative anticoagulant agents may be given on a long-term basis to prevent strokes associated with AF. Examples include antiplatelet drugs, such as aspirin and clopidogrel (Plavix), or one

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Teach patients taking any type of anticoagulant drug to report bruising, bleeding nose or gums, and other signs of bleeding to their health care provider immediately. Also remind them to take aspirin with food to prevent GI distress.

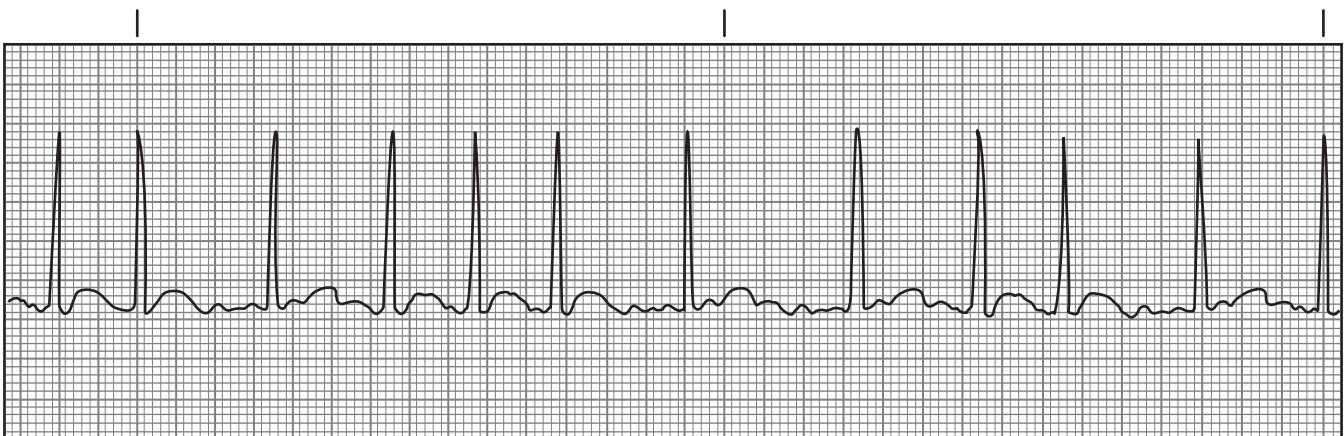


FIG. 36-9 Atrial fibrillation. Note wavy baseline with atrial electrical activity and irregular ventricular rhythm.

of the newer direct thrombin inhibitors, such as dabigatran (Pradaxa). These drugs should be used cautiously in patients over 75 years of age due to their risk of falls (Sellers & Newby, 2011).

Cardioversion is the electrical treatment of choice when drugs are not effective. Before elective cardioversion, the health care provider prescribes anticoagulation therapy for about 6 weeks to prevent a thromboembolic event if the rhythm is successfully converted. To assess for the presence of atrial clots, a contraindication for cardioversion, the physician may order a transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) before attempting emergency cardioversion (see Chapter 35). When AF has persisted more than 12 months, it is not likely to convert to a sinus rhythm by drug therapies and may fail to respond to electrical cardioversion, which is discussed on p. 737.

AF resistant to medical therapies may be treated with *percutaneous radiofrequency catheter ablation*. Pulmonary vein ablation creates scar tissue that blocks impulses and disconnects the pathway of the abnormal rhythm. The evidence indicates an increase in the number and complexity of catheter ablation procedures for AF. Data from 85 international centers indicated an 80% success rate defined as freedom from AF with or without drugs, and a complication rate of 4.5%. The United States is establishing the *Safety of AF Ablation Registry Initiative* to collect data that should be a valuable source of statistics on the safety and efficacy of AF ablation procedures (Garlitski & Estes, 2010). Patients with AF with a rapid ventricular rate not responsive to drug therapy may have AV nodal ablation performed to totally disconnect the conduction from the atria to the ventricles. However, this treatment requires implantation of a permanent ventricular pacemaker.

Bi-ventricular pacing may be another alternative for patients with heart failure and conduction disorders. Bi-atrial pacing, anti-tachycardia pacing, and implantable atrial defibrillators are other methods used to suppress or resolve AF. All of these methods are discussed on p. 733.

Patients in AF with heart failure (discussed in Chapter 37) may benefit from the *surgical maze procedure*, an open-chest surgical technique often performed with coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG). Before this procedure, electrophysiologic mapping studies are done to confirm the diagnosis of AF. The surgeon places a maze of sutures in strategic places in the atrial myocardium, pulmonary artery, and possibly the superior vena cava to prevent electrical circuits from developing and continuing AF. Sinus impulses can then depolarize the atria before reaching the AV node and preserve the atrial kick. Postoperative care is similar to that after other open-heart surgical procedures (see Chapter 40).

The *catheter maze procedure* is done by inserting a catheter through a leg vein into the atria and dragging a heated ablating catheter along the atria to create lines (scars) of conduction block. Patients having this minimally invasive form of the procedure have fewer complications, less pain, and a quicker recovery than those with the open, surgical maze procedure.

Ventricular Dysrhythmias. Ventricular dysrhythmias are potentially more life threatening than atrial dysrhythmias because the left ventricle pumps oxygenated blood throughout the body to perfuse vital organs and other tissues. The most common or life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias include:

- Premature ventricular complexes
- Ventricular tachycardia
- Ventricular fibrillation
- Ventricular asystole

Premature Ventricular Complexes. **Premature ventricular complexes (PVCs)**, also called premature ventricular contractions, result from increased irritability of ventricular cells and are seen as early ventricular complexes followed by a pause. When multiple PVCs are present, the QRS complexes may be unifocal or uniform, meaning that they are of the same shape (Fig. 36-10, A), or multifocal or multiform, meaning that they are of different shapes (Fig. 36-10, B). PVCs frequently occur in repetitive rhythms, such as bigeminy (two), trigeminy (three), and quadrigeminy (four). Two sequential PVCs are a pair, or couplet. Three or more successive PVCs are usually called **nonsustained ventricular tachycardia (NSVT)**.

Premature ventricular contractions are common, and their frequency increases with age. They may be insignificant or may occur with problems such as myocardial infarction, chronic heart failure, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and anemia. PVCs may also be present in patients with hypokalemia or hypomagnesemia. Sympathomimetic agents, anesthesia drugs, stress, nicotine, caffeine, alcohol, infection, or surgery can also cause PVCs, especially in older adults. Postmenopausal women often find that caffeine causes palpitations and PVCs.

The patient may be asymptomatic or experience palpitations or chest discomfort caused by increased stroke volume of the normal beat after the pause. Peripheral pulses may be diminished or absent with the PVCs themselves because the decreased stroke volume of the premature beats may decrease peripheral perfusion.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because other dysrhythmias can cause widened QRS complexes, assess whether the premature complexes perfuse to the extremities. Palpate the carotid, brachial, or femoral arteries while observing the monitor for widened complexes or auscultating apical heart sounds. With acute MI, PVCs may be considered as a warning, possibly triggering life-threatening ventricular tachycardia (VT) or ventricular fibrillation (VF).

If there is no underlying heart disease, PVCs are not usually treated other than by eliminating any contributing cause (e.g., caffeine, stress). With acute myocardial ischemia or MI, PVCs are managed by administering oxygen and amiodarone (Cordarone) as prescribed. Potassium is given for replacement therapy if hypokalemia is the cause. People with more than 5000 PVCs in a 24-hour period are usually placed on beta blockers.

Ventricular Tachycardia. **Ventricular tachycardia (VT)**, sometimes referred to as “V tach,” occurs with repetitive firing of an irritable ventricular ectopic focus, usually at a rate of 140 to 180 beats/min or more (Fig. 36-11). VT may result from increased automaticity or a re-entry mechanism. It may be intermittent (nonsustained VT) or sustained, lasting longer than 15 to 30 seconds. The sinus node may continue to discharge independently, depolarizing the atria but not the ventricles, although P waves are seldom seen in sustained VT.

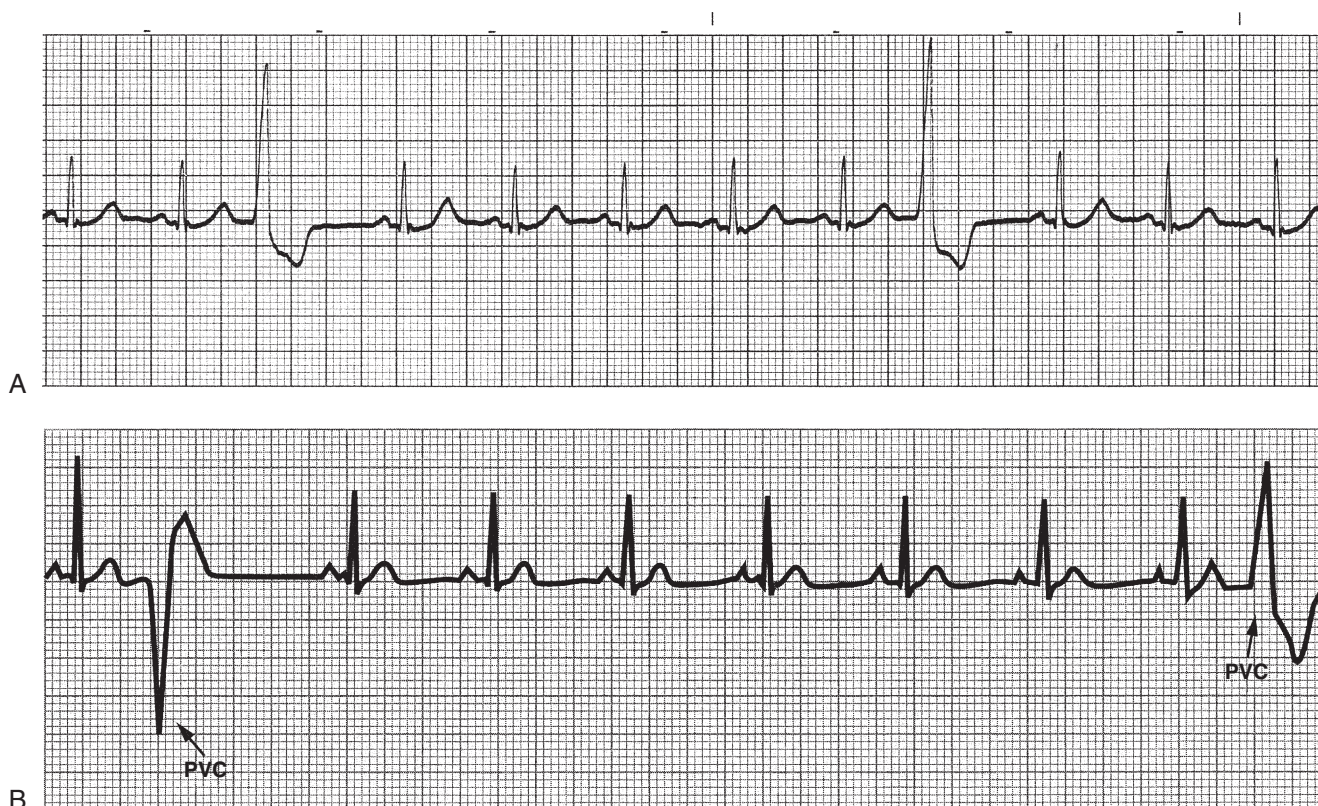


FIG. 36-10 Ventricular dysrhythmias. **A**, Normal sinus rhythm with unifocal premature ventricular complexes (PVCs). **B**, Normal sinus rhythm with multifocal PVCs (one negative and the other positive).

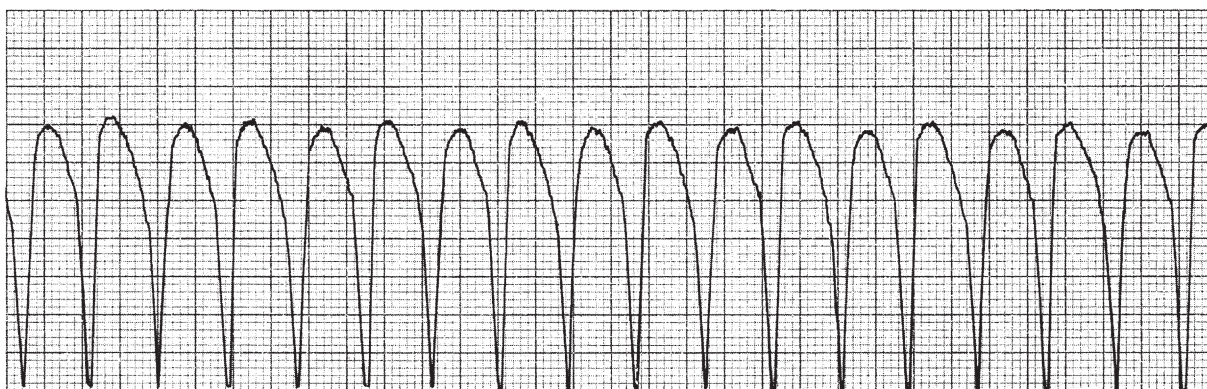


FIG. 36-11 Sustained ventricular tachycardia at a rate of 166 beats/min.

Ventricular tachycardia may occur in patients with ischemic heart disease, MI, cardiomyopathy, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, valvular heart disease, heart failure, drug toxicity, hypotension, or ventricular aneurysm. *In patients who go into cardiac arrest, VT is commonly the initial rhythm before deterioration into ventricular fibrillation (VF) as the terminal rhythm!*

Clinical manifestations of sustained VT partially depend on the ventricular rate. Slower rates are better tolerated.

Current Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) guidelines state that elective cardioversion is highly recommended for stable VT. The physician may prescribe an oral antidysrhythmic agent, such as mexiletine (Mexitil) or sotalol (Beta-pace, Sotacor ) to prevent further occurrences. *Unstable* VT

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

In some patients, VT causes cardiac arrest. Assess the patient's airway, breathing, circulation, level of consciousness, and oxygenation level. For the *stable* patient with sustained VT, administer oxygen and confirm the rhythm via a 12-lead ECG. Amiodarone, lidocaine, or magnesium sulfate may be given.

without a pulse is treated the same way as ventricular fibrillation, described next.

Ventricular Fibrillation

Pathophysiology. **Ventricular fibrillation (VF)**, sometimes called "V fib," is the result of electrical chaos in the



FIG. 36-12 Ventricular dysrhythmias. **A**, Coarse ventricular fibrillation. **B**, Ventricular asystole with one idioventricular complex.

ventricles and is *life threatening*! Impulses from many irritable foci fire in a totally disorganized manner so that ventricular contraction cannot occur. There are no recognizable ECG deflections (Fig. 36-12, A). The ventricles merely quiver, consuming a tremendous amount of oxygen. *There is no cardiac output or pulse and therefore no cerebral, myocardial, or systemic perfusion. This rhythm is rapidly fatal if not successfully ended within 3 to 5 minutes.*

VF may be the first manifestation of coronary artery disease (CAD). Patients with myocardial infarction (MI) are at great risk for VF. It may also occur in those with hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, hemorrhage, antidysrhythmic therapy, rapid supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), or shock. Surgery or trauma may also cause VF.

Emergency Care: Ventricular Fibrillation. When VF begins, the patient becomes faint, immediately loses consciousness, and becomes pulseless and apneic (no breathing). There is no blood pressure, and heart sounds are absent. Respiratory and metabolic acidosis develop. Seizures may occur. Within minutes, the pupils become fixed and dilated and the skin becomes cold and mottled. *Death results without prompt intervention.*

The desired outcomes of collaborative care are to resolve VF promptly and convert it to an organized rhythm. *Therefore the priority is to defibrillate the patient immediately according to ACLS protocol.* If a defibrillator is not readily available, CPR must be continued until the defibrillator arrives. An automatic external defibrillator (AED) is frequently used because it is simple for both medical and lay personnel. Defibrillation is discussed on p. 737.

If the VF does not end after one defibrillator shock, the nurse and resuscitation team resume high-quality CPR and provide airway management. The team also gives oxygen and drug therapy, which could include vasopressin, epinephrine, amiodarone, lidocaine, and magnesium sulfate, alternating with defibrillation. If VF is successfully converted to an organized rhythm, supportive therapy is continued.

Ventricular Asystole

Pathophysiology. **Ventricular asystole**, sometimes called *ventricular standstill*, is the complete absence of any ventricular rhythm (Fig. 36-12, B). There are no electrical impulses in the ventricles and therefore *no* ventricular depolarization, no QRS complex, no contraction, no cardiac output, and no pulse, respirations, or blood pressure. *The patient is in full cardiac arrest.* The sinoatrial (SA) node, in some cases, may continue to fire and depolarize the atria, with only P waves seen on the ECG. The sinus impulses, however, do not conduct to the ventricles, and QRS complexes remain absent. In most cases, the entire conduction system is electrically silent, with no P waves seen on the ECG.

Ventricular asystole usually results from myocardial hypoxia, which may be a consequence of advanced heart failure. It may also be caused by severe hyperkalemia and acidosis. If P waves are seen, asystole is likely because of severe ventricular conduction blocks.

Emergency Care: Ventricular Asystole. The expected outcome of treatment is to restore cardiac electrical activity.

Collaborate with the resuscitation team to manage the airway and administer oxygen, epinephrine, and atropine. *The prognosis for patients with asystole is poor. Health care*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

If asystole occurs, call for assistance and begin high-quality CPR immediately (unless there is a do-not-resuscitate [DNR] order). *Check another ECG lead to ensure the rhythm is asystole and not fine VF, which requires immediate defibrillation. Do NOT shock asystole!*

providers should consider ending resuscitation efforts if there is no response after standard interventions have been implemented and when cessation is approved by an authorized physician.

An emerging clinical practice is allowing or encouraging family presence at resuscitation attempts. This can be a positive experience for family members and significant others because it promotes closure after the death of a loved one. Although there may be staff resistance and some limits to family presence, overall it is a beneficial practice that should be considered in all resuscitation attempts.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Safe and Effective Care Environment**

A client is on a cardiac monitor. The nurse suddenly notices there are no ECG complexes and the alarm sounds. What is the priority action of the nurse?

- A. Begin chest compressions and ventilations.
- B. Assess the client and check lead placement.
- C. Call a code blue and shout for help.
- D. Press the record button to get an ECG strip.

Atrioventricular Blocks. Several types of heart blocks, such as AV blocks, often require immediate intervention, depending on the type and severity. **Atrioventricular (AV) blocks** exist when supraventricular impulses are excessively delayed or totally blocked in the AV node or ventricular conduction system. Conduction may be temporarily or permanently abnormal for a number of reasons. The SA node continues to function normally, and atrial depolarizations and P waves occur regularly. Because of the conduction dysfunction, ventricular depolarizations and QRS complexes are either delayed or blocked.

The degrees of heart blocks include:

- In *first-degree* AV block, all sinus impulses eventually reach the ventricles.
- In *second-degree* heart block, some sinus impulses reach the ventricles but others do not because they are blocked.
- In *third-degree* heart block (complete heart block), none of the sinus impulses reach the ventricles. The ventricles are therefore depolarized by a second, independent pacemaker.

AV blocks are differentiated by their PR intervals. Interventions depend on the severity of the block. Oxygen, drug therapy, pacing, and/or permanent pacemakers may be used, depending on the degree of the AV block.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Patients may or may not realize they have a dysrhythmia, and some patients who have a dysrhythmia may be asymptomatic. Therefore assessment of the patient's past and current history

CHART 36-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Care of the Patient with Dysrhythmias**

- Assess vital signs at least every 4 hours and as needed.
- Monitor patient for cardiac dysrhythmias.
- Evaluate and document the patient's response to dysrhythmias.
- Encourage the patient to notify the nurse when chest pain occurs.
- Assess chest pain (e.g., location, intensity, duration, radiation, and precipitating and alleviating factors).
- Assess peripheral circulation (e.g., palpate for presence of peripheral pulses, edema, capillary refill, color, and temperature of extremity).
- Provide antidysrhythmic therapy according to unit policy (e.g., antidysrhythmic medication, cardioversion, or defibrillation), as appropriate.
- Monitor and document patient's response to antidysrhythmic medications or interventions.
- Monitor appropriate laboratory values (e.g., cardiac enzymes, electrolyte levels).
- Monitor the patient's activity tolerance and schedule exercise/rest periods to avoid fatigue.
- Observe for respiratory difficulty (e.g., shortness of breath, rapid breathing, labored respirations).
- Promote stress reduction.
- Offer spiritual support to the patient and/or family (e.g., contact clergy), as appropriate.

is essential because dysrhythmias are associated with acute and chronic health problems and medical/surgical therapies. Assessment also includes taking vital signs and placing the patient on an ECG monitor. Continuous monitoring of the patient's ECG rhythm is needed to assess for manifestations associated with dysrhythmias, such as abnormal pulse rate and rhythm, palpitations, chest pain, syncope, decreased blood pressure, and dyspnea. When these manifestations are present, the patient is "symptomatic." Assessment findings were discussed earlier in this chapter for each specific type of dysrhythmia.

It is also important to assess the psychosocial impact of dysrhythmias on patients and families and the effectiveness of their coping skills. Patients with any type of dysrhythmia are often very anxious and fearful that their heart will stop functioning.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION**Planning: Expected Outcomes**

The patient with dysrhythmias is expected to have adequate blood flow ejected (pumped) from the left ventricle to provide oxygenation and perfusion to vital organs and the periphery.

Interventions

The nurse's major priority for care is to assess for complications and monitor the patient for response to treatment (Chart 36-3). Interventions are specific to the type of dysrhythmia, the cause, the effect it has on cardiac output, and the risk it presents to the patient.

Assess the patient's apical and radial pulses for a full minute for any irregularity, which may occur with problems such as premature beats, atrial fibrillation (AF), and second-degree heart blocks. If the apical pulse rate differs from the radial pulse rate, a pulse deficit exists and suggests that the

heart is not pumping adequately to perfuse the body. Clinical manifestations of sustained tachydysrhythmias and bradydysrhythmias are summarized in [Chart 36-1](#). Review the interpretation of the patient's 12-lead ECG and other diagnostic assessment.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

What is the most appropriate assessment for the nurse to evaluate whether a client has adequate cardiac output and tissue perfusion?

- A. Assess for cyanosis of the hands and feet.
- B. Assess for pulmonary edema.
- C. Monitor respiratory status for shortness of breath.
- D. Monitor blood pressure and urine output.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management of dysrhythmias includes oxygen therapy, drug therapy, temporary pacing, cardioversion, CPR, defibrillation, and catheter ablation. The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs) include standardizing and limiting the number of drug concentrations used by organizations, identifying and listing look-alike/sound-alike medications to prevent errors, and labeling all medications and medication containers. Many types of drugs are given to manage dysrhythmias (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on at right).

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy for dysrhythmias often includes those from one or more classes of antidysrhythmic agents (see [Chart 36-2](#)). The **Vaughn-Williams classification** is commonly used to categorize drugs according to their effects on the action potential of cardiac cells (classes I through IV). Other drugs also have antidysrhythmic effects but do not fit the Vaughn-Williams classification.

Class I antidysrhythmics are membrane-stabilizing agents used to decrease automaticity. The three subclassifications in this group include type IA drugs, which moderately slow conduction and prolong repolarization, prolonging the QT interval. These drugs are used to treat or to prevent supraventricular and ventricular premature beats and tachydysrhythmias, but they are not as commonly used as other drugs. An example is procainamide hydrochloride (Pronestyl). Type IB drugs shorten repolarization. These drugs are used to treat or prevent ventricular premature beats, ventricular tachycardia (VT), and ventricular fibrillation (VF). Examples include lidocaine and mexiletine hydrochloride (Mexitil). Type IC drugs markedly slow conduction and widen the QRS complex. These agents are used primarily to treat or to prevent recurrent, life-threatening ventricular premature beats, VT, and VF. Examples include flecainide acetate (Tambocor) and propafenone hydrochloride (Rythmol).

Class II antidysrhythmics control dysrhythmias associated with excessive beta-adrenergic stimulation by competing for receptor sites and thereby decreasing heart rate and conduction velocity. Beta-adrenergic blocking agents, such as propranolol (Inderal) and esmolol hydrochloride (Brevibloc), are class II drugs. They are used to treat or to prevent supraventricular and ventricular premature beats and tachydysrhythmias. Sotalol hydrochloride (Betapace, Sotacor ) is an antidysrhythmic agent with both non-cardioselective beta-adrenergic blocking effects (class II) and action potential duration prolongation properties (class III). It is an oral agent

EVIDENCE BASED PRACTICE

What are the Latest Recommendations for Preventing Medication Errors?

Michaels, A.D., Spinler, S.A., Leeper, B., Ohman, E.M., Alexander, K.P., Newby, L.K., et al. (2010). Medication errors in acute cardiovascular and stroke patients: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121, 1664-1682.

Medical errors are the eighth leading cause of death in the United States, and medication errors are the most common type of medical error. Cardiovascular medications prescribed to inpatients account for a large number of these errors. Although public safety has become a predominant focus of health care, the impact of medication errors on patient safety remains a significant issue. A current assessment of the evidence was performed, and recommendations were supported by the evidence. Medication errors included improper dosing or timing, delivery of an incorrect or unnecessary medication, administration to the wrong patient, and failure to prescribe appropriate medication therapy or needed monitoring of medication therapy.

Level of Evidence: 2

The evidence was obtained from clinical trials or registries.

Commentary: Implications for Nursing Practice and Research

The following are recommendations for medication safety in acute cardiovascular care:

1. An accurate weight should be obtained on admission.
2. Estimated creatinine clearance should be calculated on admission and as changes in serum creatinine occur.
3. Because of age-related changes in pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and renal function, medication dosage adjustments and heightened surveillance for adverse medication events are recommended.
4. Order forms and protocols for anticoagulation should be standardized.
5. Pharmacists and nurses should be integrated within the cardiovascular care teams in the ED, ICU, and inpatient wards to enhance communication and medication safety.
6. Computerized provider order entry, medication bar-coding technology, and smart infusion pumps should be implemented throughout all inpatient wards, including the ED.
7. Staff should be educated on high-alert medications (especially anticoagulants), safe medication administration techniques, medication reconciliation procedures, look-alike/sound-alike medications, and automated dispensing device technologies.
8. An organizational culture of safety that promotes no-fault internal and external medication error reporting and interdisciplinary quality improvement review processes to reduce the frequency and impact of medication errors is recommended.

Many organizations have already begun implementing these recommendations to improve patient medication safety.

that may be used for the treatment of documented ventricular dysrhythmias, such as VT, that are life threatening.

Class III antidysrhythmics lengthen the absolute refractory period and prolong repolarization and the action potential duration of ischemic cells. Class III drugs include amiodarone (Cordarone) and ibutilide (Corvert) and are used to treat or prevent ventricular premature beats, VT, and VF.

Class IV antidysrhythmics slow the flow of calcium into the cell during depolarization, thereby depressing the automaticity of the sinoatrial (SA) and atrioventricular (AV) nodes, decreasing the heart rate, and prolonging the AV nodal refractory period and conduction. Calcium channel blockers,

such as verapamil hydrochloride (Calan, Isoptin ) and diltiazem hydrochloride (Cardizem), are class IV drugs. They are used to treat supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), atrial flutter, and atrial fibrillation (AF) to slow the ventricular response.

Other drugs, such as digoxin, atropine, adenosine, and magnesium sulfate, may be used to treat dysrhythmias. Digoxin (Lanoxin, Novodigoxin ) increases vagal tone, slowing AV nodal conduction. It is useful in treating chronic AF by controlling the rate of ventricular response. However, digoxin does not convert AF to sinus rhythm. Atropine is a parasympatholytic or vagolytic agent used to treat vagally-induced symptomatic bradycardias. Adenosine is an endogenous nucleoside that slows AV nodal conduction to interrupt re-entry pathways. Magnesium sulfate is an electrolyte administered to treat refractory VT or VF because these patients may be hypomagnesemic, with increased ventricular irritability. The drug is also used for a life-threatening VT called **torsades de pointes** that can result from certain anti-dysrhythmics, such as amiodarone.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client reports “not feeling well for the past week” after taking digoxin (Lanoxin), which was prescribed a month ago. Which statement by the client indicates possible digoxin toxicity?

- A. “I am short of breath and my hands are swollen.”
- B. “I have chest pain and tingling in my fingers.”
- C. “I have double vision and feel sick to my stomach.”
- D. “I am constipated and have trouble sleeping.”

In addition to antidysrhythmics, several other *drugs are used during cardiac arrest* (Chart 36-4). *Epinephrine* (Adrenalin) is usually a first-line agent in all cardiac arrests. It is given mainly for its alpha-adrenergic effects to increase vasomotor tone for myocardial and cerebral perfusion. Its beta-adrenergic effects may stimulate the heart and increase myocardial contractility to improve cardiac output. Recent evidence suggests that epinephrine may be problematic during cardiopulmonary resuscitation because the alpha-adrenergic actions caused an increase in cerebral ischemia (Ristagno et al., 2009). Another study by Grigoriyan et al. (2009) found poorer survival rates for patients who received vasopressors before cardiac arrest. Vasopressin has potent vasoconstricting effects and is equivalent to epinephrine in VF and pulseless VT. It has a long half-life and is given one time as an IV bolus of 40 units. Dopamine hydrochloride (Intropin) is generally used for its beta-adrenergic effects after cardiac arrest but may be used for its alpha-adrenergic effects during resuscitation. Dobutamine hydrochloride (Dobutrex) is a beta-adrenergic agent used to improve myocardial contractility and increase cardiac output.

Norepinephrine (Levophed) or phenylephrine hydrochloride (Neo-Synephrine) may be used for its alpha-adrenergic effects to increase vasomotor tone and increase perfusion pressure. Sodium bicarbonate, along with regular insulin and calcium chloride, may be administered during cardiac arrest for patients who are hyperkalemic. It may also be used, if necessary, to treat a documented base deficit metabolic acidosis, as occurs in diabetic ketoacidosis or tricyclic antidepressant overdose. In addition to hyperkalemia, calcium

chloride is given for hypocalcemia or calcium channel blocker toxicity because the conditions may cause cell damage and cerebrovascular vasospasm. Isoproterenol (Isuprel) is indicated to increase the heart rate in heart transplant patients, but pacing is preferred.

Vagal Maneuvers. Vagal maneuvers induce vagal stimulation of the cardiac conduction system, specifically the SA and AV nodes. Although not as common today, vagal maneuvers may be attempted to treat supraventricular tachycardias and include carotid sinus massage and Valsalva maneuvers. The results of these interventions, however, are often temporary and may cause “rebound” tachycardia or severe bradycardia. Further therapy must be initiated.

In **carotid sinus massage**, the physician massages over one carotid artery for a few seconds, observing for a change in cardiac rhythm. This intervention causes vagal stimulation, slowing SA and AV nodal conduction. Prepare the patient for the procedure, instruct him or her to turn the head slightly away from the side to be massaged, and observe the cardiac monitor for a change in rhythm. An ECG rhythm strip is recorded before, during, and after the procedure. After the procedure, assess vital signs and the level of consciousness. *Complications include bradycardias, asystole, VF, and cerebral damage. Because of these risks, carotid massage is not commonly performed. A defibrillator and resuscitative equipment must be immediately available during the procedure.*

To stimulate a *vagal reflex*, the health care provider instructs the patient to bear down as if straining to have a bowel movement. Assess the patient’s heart rate, heart rhythm, and blood pressure; observe the cardiac monitor; and record an ECG rhythm strip before, during, and after the procedure to determine the effect of therapy.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Unintended vagal stimulation can occur. Therefore be very cautious when performing procedures that may accidentally cause it. To prevent vagal stimulation or bradycardia, avoid:

- Tracheal suctioning
- Enema administration
- Rectal temperature
- Straining during bowel movements
- Vomiting or gagging during oral hygiene
- Tight collars and neckties
- Raising arms above the head

Temporary Pacing. Temporary pacing is a nonsurgical intervention that provides a timed electrical stimulus to the heart when either the impulse initiation or the conduction system of the heart is defective. The electrical stimulus then spreads throughout the heart to depolarize the cells, which should be followed by contraction and cardiac output. Electrical stimuli may be delivered to the right atrium or right ventricle (single-chamber pacemakers) or to both (dual-chamber pacemakers).

When a pacing stimulus is delivered to the heart, a spike (or pacemaker artifact) is seen on the monitor or ECG strip. The spike should be followed by evidence of depolarization (i.e., a P wave, indicating atrial depolarization, or a QRS complex, indicating ventricular depolarization). This pattern is referred to as *capture*, indicating that the pacemaker has successfully depolarized, or captured, the chamber.

CHART 36-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Cardiac Arrest

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Epinephrine (Adrenalin) Used for asystole, VF, VT, PEA, hypotension, anaphylaxis	1-mg IV bolus followed by 20-mL saline flush every 3-5 min	Monitor for return of rhythm and pulse when used for asystole or VF. Assess for tachycardia, dysrhythmias, or hypertension. Assess for the development of coarse VF when given during the VF.	Return of rhythm and pulse is the expected response. Adverse reactions can occur with a dramatic response. This may improve the response to defibrillation.
Amiodarone hydrochloride (Cordarone) Used for AF, PAF, PSVT, life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias	300 mg IV push for cardiac arrest in VF/pulseless VT 150 mg IVP over 10 min (15 mg/min), followed by 360 mg IV over next 6 hr (1 mg/min), followed by 540 mg IV over next 18 hr (0.5 mg/min) After first 24 hr, continue maintenance infusion of 720 mg/24 hr (0.5 mg/min)	Monitor for return of rhythm and pulse when used for recurrent unstable VT or VF. Use with extreme caution in patients receiving other antiarrhythmics. Use caution in patients with pulmonary, hepatic, or thyroid disease. Perform continuous cardiac monitoring while the patient is receiving the loading dose.	Return of rhythm and pulse is the expected response. Amiodarone reduces the hepatic and renal clearance of certain antiarrhythmics, specifically procainamide, quinidine, and flecainide. Amiodarone can cause fatal toxicity, especially in patients receiving more than 600 mg daily. There is a slow onset of antiarrhythmic effect and a high risk for life-threatening dysrhythmias.
Dopamine hydrochloride (Intropin) Used for hypotension, shock, CHF, renal failure	2.5 mcg/kg/min IV infusion; titrate to desired clinical response 1-2 mcg/kg/min for renal and mesenteric vasodilation 2-10 mcg/kg/min for beta-adrenergic effects 10-20 mcg/kg/min for alpha-adrenergic effects	Assess patients for increased BP. Monitor for tachycardia, dysrhythmias, or hypertension. Monitor IV site for infiltration. Assess for urine output <30 mL/hr, pallor, cyanosis, pain, or numbness in the extremities.	Increased BP is the expected response. Adverse reactions may occur. Extravasation of drug can occur, causing necrosis. Dosages >10 mcg/kg/min cause vasoconstriction of renal and peripheral blood vessels; dosages of 2-5 mcg/kg/min may improve urine output by causing renal vasodilation and improving renal blood flow.
Dobutamine hydrochloride (Dobutrex) Used for short-term management of cardiac decompensation	2-20 mcg/kg/min IV infusion	Assess for increased BP. Assess for hypertension and dysrhythmias.	Increased BP is the expected response. Adverse reactions may occur.
Norepinephrine (Levophed) Used for cardiogenic shock, hypotension	0.5-1 mcg/min IV infusion, titrate to desired effect, up to 8-30 mcg/min	Assess for increased BP. Monitor for bradycardia. Monitor for hypertension and dysrhythmias. Administer drug through central IV line. Assess for urine output <30 mL/hr, pallor, cyanosis, pain, or numbness in the extremities. Assess for chest pain after resuscitation.	Increased BP is the expected response. Reflex bradycardia may occur with a rise in BP. Adverse reactions may occur with a dramatic response. Extravasation can occur. Norepinephrine is a powerful vasoconstrictor.
Sodium bicarbonate Used for acid-base imbalance, metabolic acidosis	1 mEq/kg IV bolus given after the first 10 min of cardiac arrest if necessary 0.5 mEq/kg IV bolus every 10 min thereafter if necessary	Assess arterial blood gas values for metabolic acidosis.	Norepinephrine increases myocardial oxygen demand. Administration without evidence of metabolic acidosis can result in alkalosis, which can hinder resuscitation efforts.
Isoproterenol (Isuprel) Used for bradycardia, torsades de pointes, beta blocker OD	2-10 mcg/min IV infusion; titrate to desired clinical response	Assess for increased heart rate. Assess for tachycardia, hypotension, or hypertension. Assess for chest pain after resuscitation. Monitor for ventricular dysrhythmias.	Increased heart rate is the expected response. Adverse reactions may occur with a dramatic response. Isoproterenol increases myocardial oxygen demand. Isoproterenol increases ventricular irritability, especially in patients who are hypokalemic or who are receiving digitalis.
Calcium chloride (CaCl ₂) Used for hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, calcium channel or beta blocker OD	2-4 mg/kg IV slowly; may repeat every 10 min if necessary	Calcium chloride is indicated only for cardiac arrest associated with hyperkalemia, hypocalcemia, or calcium channel blocker toxicity.	Calcium chloride may cause cellular damage and cerebrovascular spasm.
Vasopressin Used for VF, asystole, PEA, shock	40 units IV bolus, one time	Monitor for return of rhythm and pulse when used for VF or pulseless VT.	Return of rhythm and pulse is the expected response.

AF, Atrial fibrillation; BP, blood pressure; CHF, congestive heart failure; IVP, IV push; OD, overdose; PAF, paroxysmal AF; PEA, pulseless electrical activity; PSVT, paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia; VF, ventricular fibrillation; VT, ventricular tachycardia.

Temporary pacing is used for patients with symptomatic, atropine-refractory bradydysrhythmias (particularly second-degree heart block type II and third-degree heart block) or for patients with asystole. Temporary pacing may also be initiated prophylactically in stable patients with left bundle branch block in certain situations, such as insertion of a pulmonary artery catheter. *Have emergency equipment available in case the patient becomes more unstable or goes into cardiac arrest during this procedure.*

The two major modes of pacing are synchronous (demand) pacing and asynchronous (fixed-rate) pacing. Temporary pacing is *usually* done in the synchronous (demand) pacing mode. The pacemaker's sensitivity is set to sense the patient's own beats. When the patient's heart rate is above the rate set on the pulse generator, the pacemaker does not fire. When the patient's heart rate is less than the generator setting, the pacemaker provides electrical impulses.

The two basic types of *temporary* pacing are noninvasive (external) temporary pacing and invasive temporary pacing. **Noninvasive temporary pacing (NTP)** is accomplished through the application of two large external electrodes. The electrodes are attached to an external pulse generator. The generator emits electrical pulses, which are transmitted through the electrodes and then transcutaneously to stimulate ventricular depolarization when the patient's heart rate is slower than the rate set on the pacemaker.

Noninvasive temporary pacing is used as an emergency measure to provide demand ventricular pacing in a profoundly bradycardic or asystolic patient until invasive pacing can be used or the patient's heart rate returns to normal. It may be used prophylactically when performing procedures or transporting patients at risk for bradydysrhythmias. However, it is used only as a temporary measure to maintain heart rate and perfusion until a more permanent method of pacing is used.

Depending on the facility, nurses on telemetry units may perform noninvasive temporary pacing. In a nonemergent situation, explain NTP to the patient and family and prepare the equipment. Wash the skin gently with soap and water. Apply the electrodes on the chest according to package instructions, with one placed on the upper chest to the right of the sternum and one placed over the heart apex. Displace the female breast tissue to position the electrode underneath the breast.

Turn the pacer on, set the pacing rate as ordered, and establish the stimulation threshold (the lowest current that achieves capture with each pacing spike followed by a QRS complex). Set the current milliamperes (mA) output 2 mA above the dose at which consistent capture is observed. The rate should be adjusted according to patient response. The QRS complex is wide because one ventricle depolarizes first, followed by the other.

Palpate the right radial or carotid pulse, and assess the blood pressure using the patient's right arm, ensuring that each paced beat is perfused. Vital signs are not taken on the left side of the body because they may not be accurate, particularly if a high milliamperage is used.

Observe for discomfort from muscle stimulation, skin irritation, and diaphoresis (excessive sweating) from the patch electrodes. Be sure that the electrodes are in good contact with the skin and in the best location to achieve the lowest threshold. Give analgesics or sedatives as prescribed to provide comfort.

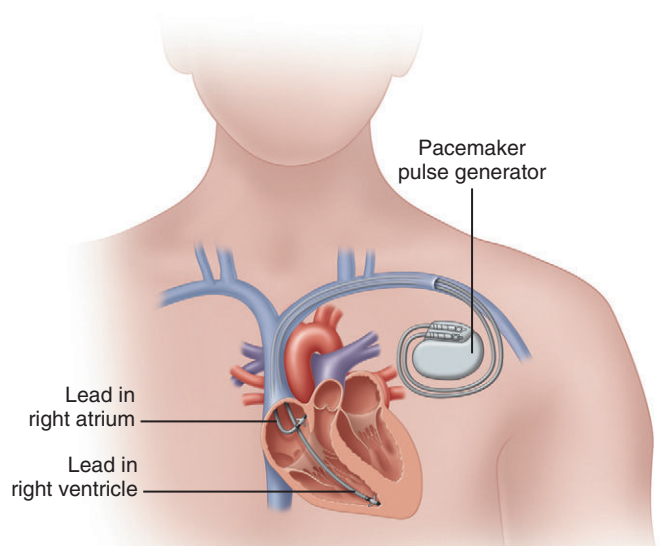


FIG. 36-13 Placement of pacemaker in chest and heart leads.

An **invasive temporary pacemaker** system consists of an external battery-operated pulse generator and pacing electrodes, or lead wires. These wires attach to the generator on one end and are in contact with the heart on the other end (Fig. 36-13). Electrical pulses, or stimuli, are emitted from the negative terminal of the generator, flow through a lead wire, and stimulate the cardiac cells to depolarize. The current seeks ground by returning through the other lead wire to the positive terminal of the generator, thus completing a circuit. The intensity of electrical current is set by selecting the appropriate current output, measured in milliamperes.

Patients do not usually feel invasive pacemaker stimuli. However, they occasionally feel an uncomfortable sensation from the stimuli if strong electrical currents (high milliamperage) are delivered by the pacemaker. The discomfort may be alleviated by decreasing the generator current if possible (Fig. 36-14).

Monitor for these complications of invasive temporary pacing, which may be serious and include:

- Infection or hematoma at the pacemaker wire insertion site
- Ectopic complexes (usually premature ventricular complexes [PVCs]) caused by irritability from the pacing wire in the ventricle, use of high current, or undersensing with pacemaker competition
- Loss of capture, noted by the presence of a pacing stimulus or spike but no QRS complex
- Undersensing or pacemaker competition, noted when pacing stimuli occur at a fixed rate in the presence of an adequate intrinsic rhythm
- Oversensing, noted when the pacemaker fails to fire in the presence of an inadequate intrinsic rhythm
- Electromagnetic interference, noted by altered generator variables
- Stimulation of the chest wall or diaphragm, noted by rhythmic contraction of the chest wall muscles or hiccups with the use of high current or from lead wire perforation, which could cause cardiac tamponade

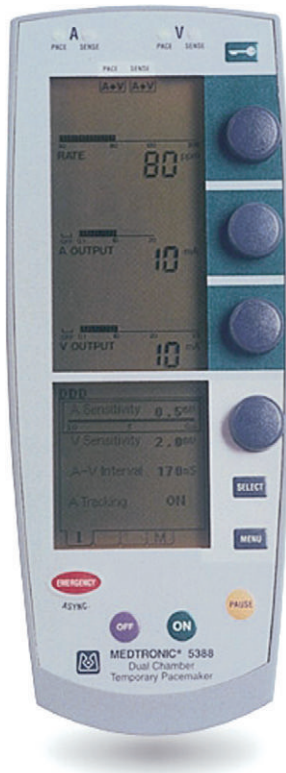


FIG. 36-14 Temporary pacemaker generator.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patient safety, when the metal external ends of lead wires are not attached to a pulse generator, insulate the wire ends to prevent microshock. The fingertips of rubber gloves work well for this purpose, and the wire ends may then be looped and covered with nonconductive tape. All electrical equipment in the room must be properly grounded using a three-pronged plug. Report faulty electrical equipment, such as frayed or broken electrical wire, to the biomedical engineering department. Neither the patient nor the bed should be in contact with such equipment. The risk is that ungrounded electrical current may conduct through the lead wire, stimulate the heart, and cause ventricular fibrillation (VF). Remember to wear rubber gloves when touching any of the wires. Static electricity may be conducted from your hands to the patient, causing dysrhythmias if gloves are not worn.

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation. When cardiac arrest occurs, cardiac output stops. The underlying rhythm is usually ventricular tachycardia (VT), ventricular fibrillation (VF), or asystole. Without cardiac output, the patient is pulseless and becomes unconscious because of inadequate cerebral perfusion and oxygenation. Shortly after cardiac arrest, respiratory arrest occurs.

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), also known as *Basic Cardiac Life Support (BCLS)*, must be initiated immediately to help prevent brain damage and death. When finding an unresponsive patient, confirm unresponsiveness and call 911 or the emergency response team *before initiating CPR*. Guidelines for CPR recently changed from an ABC approach to the initial priorities of CAB (AHA, 2010).

- Start chest compressions, at least 100 compressions per minute and with a compression depth of at least 2 inches.
- Maintain a patent airway.

- Ventilate (breathing) with a mouth-to-mask device. Give rescue breaths at a rate of 10 to 12 breaths/min. If an advanced airway is in place, one ventilation should, if possible, be given every 6 to 8 seconds (8 to 10 breaths/min).

As soon as help arrives, a board is placed under the patient who is not on a firm surface. To make room for the resuscitation team and the crash cart, ask that the area be cleared of movable items and unnecessary personnel.

In 2000, the American Heart Association developed the National Registry of Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (NRCPR) as an evidence-based performance improvement program to support patient safety, medical emergency team response, effective resuscitation, and post-emergency care. This tool also assists hospitals to meet The Joint Commission standards for evidence-based practice and monitoring of in-hospital arrests.

The NRCPR established “Gold Standards” for resuscitation efforts. Data from the NRCPR are used to make CPR process improvements in individual facilities. Scientists analyze and use the data to translate the resuscitation science into practice based on the evidence. The evidence also supports the need to add two new links to the chain of survival for in-hospital resuscitation—an early intervention and response link at the beginning and an early stabilization and intervention link at the end. Examples of the links in practice are Rapid Response Teams or medical emergency teams to support early intervention and response and the use of a hypothermia protocol post-resuscitation for early stabilization and intervention (Hunt et al., 2009).

Another area of research is the support of hands-only CPR, especially when the cardiac arrest occurs outside the hospital setting. Evidence suggests that chest compressions by themselves may be as effective as compressions *with* ventilation. Current American Heart Association recommendations include:

- Bystanders (laypeople) not trained in CPR should use only hands-only CPR.
- Bystanders trained in CPR who are confident in their ability to provide rescue breathing should use either the standard CPR procedure OR the hands-only technique.
- Bystanders trained in CPR who are *not* confident in their ability to provide rescue breathing should use only the hands-only technique.

Complications of CPR include:

- Rib fractures
- Fracture of the sternum
- Costochondral separation
- Lacerations of the liver and spleen
- Pneumothorax
- Hemothorax
- Cardiac tamponade
- Lung contusions
- Fat emboli

The desired outcome of resuscitation is the rapid return of a pulse, blood pressure, and consciousness. This is rarely achieved by CPR and basic measures alone. More definitive therapy must be initiated as soon as possible with Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) measures, including defibrillation, if needed.

Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS). Whereas all nurses and other health care personnel should learn basic CPR, special training is required to perform ACLS. When the AED

or crash cart arrives, apply ECG electrodes to the patient's chest and turn on the monitor. Direct the team to continue CPR, and continue to coordinate the personnel who respond to the emergency. Keep interruptions to CPR to a minimum.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient is in VF or pulseless VT, the immediate priority is to defibrillate! After defibrillation, CPR is resumed. CPR must continue at all times except during defibrillation. The term "push hard and push fast" is used to improve circulation during resuscitation.

An oropharyngeal airway is inserted to facilitate proper ventilation. A manual resuscitation bag (MRB) with mask is attached to an oxygen flowmeter set at 10 to 15 L/min. Direct the person managing the airway to ventilate the lungs with the MRB, maintaining the proper head-tilt or chin-lift position of the patient. Start two large-bore IV lines if the patient does not have any infusing normal saline. These lines provide access for emergency drug administration. Suction equipment is also set up, with a tonsillar suction tube for suctioning vomitus and a suction catheter for endotracheal suctioning. Check carotid or femoral pulses with or without chest compressions, blood pressure, and pupils every few minutes. Document all assessments and findings, therapeutic measures, and the patient's responses throughout the resuscitation.

Additional measures include endotracheal intubation with ventilation and oxygenation, IV administration of emergency cardiac drugs, and occasionally external pacing. Chest compressions are continued as long as the patient remains pulseless or until a physician decides to terminate resuscitation attempts.

If ACLS is successful and the patient has a return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC), clinical evidence indicates that *therapeutic hypothermia* helps protect the nervous system, especially the brain. This therapy is indicated for patients who had VF, VT pulseless activity, or asystole and should be started as soon as possible after ROSC. The patient is cooled quickly with a cooling blanket, hypothermia pads, or other method to reach the target of 89.6° to 93.2° F (32° to 34° C). Maintain this temperature for 24 hours before slowly rewarming the patient at a rate of 0.5° to 1° C per hour. Cardiovascular support with drug therapy and other treatments are used as needed during this process. Recent evidence suggests that percutaneous coronary intervention combined with mild therapeutic hypothermia is not associated with increased cardiac or neurologic risk (Batista et al., 2010).

Cardioversion. **Cardioversion** is a *synchronized* countershock that may be performed in emergencies for unstable ventricular or supraventricular tachydysrhythmias or electively for stable tachydysrhythmias that are resistant to medical therapies. If the patient has been taking digoxin, the drug is withheld for up to 48 hours before an elective cardioversion. Digoxin increases ventricular irritability and puts the patient at risk for VF after the countershock. For elective cardioversion for atrial flutter or fibrillation, the patient must take anticoagulants for 4 to 6 weeks before the procedure to prevent clots from moving from the heart to the brain or lungs.

The shock depolarizes a large amount of myocardium during the cardiac depolarization. It is intended to stop the re-entry circuit and allow the sinus node to regain control of the heart. Emergency equipment must be available during the

procedure. The physician, advanced practice nurse, or other qualified nurse explains the procedure to the patient and family. Assist the patient in signing a consent form unless the procedure is an emergency for a life-threatening dysrhythmia. Because he or she is usually conscious, a short-acting anesthetic agent should be administered for sedation.

One electrode is placed to the left of the precordium, and the other is placed on the right next to the sternum and below the clavicle. The defibrillator should be set in the synchronized mode. This avoids discharging the shock during the T wave, which may increase ventricular irritability, causing ventricular fibrillation (VF). Charge the defibrillator to the energy level requested, usually starting at a low rate.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For safety before cardioversion, turn oxygen off and away from patient; fire could result. Shout "CLEAR" before shock delivery for electrical safety!

After cardioversion, assess the patient's response and heart rhythm. Therapy is repeated, if necessary, until the desired result is obtained or alternative therapies are considered. If the patient's condition deteriorates into VF after cardioversion, check to see that the synchronizer is turned off so that immediate defibrillation can be administered.

Nursing care after cardioversion includes:

- Maintaining a patent airway
- Administering oxygen
- Assessing vital signs and the level of consciousness
- Administering antidysrhythmic drug therapy, as prescribed
- Monitoring for dysrhythmias
- Assessing for chest burns from electrodes
- Providing emotional support
- Documenting the results of cardioversion

Defibrillation. **Defibrillation**, an *asynchronous* countershock, depolarizes a critical mass of myocardium simultaneously to stop the re-entry circuit, allowing the sinus node to regain control of the heart.

Continue effective CPR until a defibrillator is available. The defibrillator is charged to 120 to 200 joules (biphasic) or 360 joules (monophasic) for one countershock from the defibrillator. Before defibrillation, loudly and clearly command all personnel to clear contact with the patient and the bed and check to see they are clear before the shock is delivered. Resume CPR immediately after the shock, and continue CPR for 5 cycles or about 2 minutes. Then reassess the rhythm, and if VF or pulseless VT continues, charge the defibrillator to give a second shock at the same energy level previously used. Resume CPR after the shock, and continue with the ACLS protocol. Nursing care for defibrillation is the same as for cardioversion.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Early defibrillation is critical in resolving pulseless ventricular tachycardia (VT) or ventricular fibrillation (VF). It must not be delayed for any reason after the equipment and skilled personnel are present. The earlier defibrillation is performed, the greater the chance of survival!



DECISION MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration; Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

A 58-year-old male patient is being transported to the ICU from the ED with a diagnosis of chest pain to rule out myocardial infarction (MI). As the patient is transferred from the stretcher to the bed, the nurse notes the cardiac rhythm changes from normal sinus rhythm (NSR) to ventricular tachycardia (VT) with a pulse. His vital signs are the following: blood pressure 70/30 mm Hg, pulse 166/min, and respirations 26/min.

1. What is the initial treatment for this patient at this time?
2. What medications should you anticipate administering to this patient? Why are they indicated?
3. What evidence-based precautions must be taken to promote electrical safety for both the patient and the ACLS team?
4. If this rhythm deteriorates to ventricular fibrillation or VT without a pulse, what steps should you take to operate the defibrillator?

Automatic External Defibrillation. The American Heart Association promotes the use of automatic external defibrillators (AEDs) for use by laypersons and health care professionals responding to cardiac arrest emergencies (Fig. 36-15). These devices are found in many public places such as malls and commercial jets. The patient in cardiac arrest must be on a firm, dry surface. The rescuer places two large adhesive-patch electrodes on the patient's chest in the same positions as for defibrillator electrodes. The rescuer stops CPR and commands anyone present to move away, ensuring that no one is touching the patient. This measure eliminates motion artifact when the machine analyzes the rhythm. The rescuer presses the "analyze" button on the machine. After rhythm analysis, which may take up to 30 seconds, the machine either advises that a shock is necessary or advises that a shock is not indicated. *Shocks are recommended for VF or pulseless VT only.*

If a shock is indicated, issue a command to clear all contact with the patient and press the charge button. Once the AED is charged, press the shock button and the shock will be delivered according to ACLS protocol. The shock is delivered through the patches, so it is hands-off defibrillation, which is safer for the rescuer. The rescuer then resumes CPR until the AED instructs to "stop CPR" to analyze the rhythm. If the rhythm is VF or VT and another shock is indicated, the AED will instruct the rescuer to charge and deliver another shock. Newer AEDs perform rhythm analysis and defibrillation without the need for a rescuer to press a button to analyze or to shock the victim. It is essential that ACLS be provided as

soon as possible. Use of AEDs allows for earlier defibrillation. Therefore there is a greater chance of successful rhythm conversion and patient survival.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

While shopping at the local mall, a bystander witnesses a shopper grab his chest and fall to the floor. The bystander opens the victim's airway and begins CPR. The security guard arrives with the AED. What is the correct sequence of steps for using the AED? (Select in priority order.)

- A. Place AED pads on victim's chest.
- B. Press the button to analyze the rhythm.
- C. Turn on the AED.
- D. Connect pads to the AED.
- E. Press the button to shock if indicated.

Radiofrequency Catheter Ablation. Radiofrequency catheter ablation is an invasive procedure that may be used to destroy an irritable focus causing a supraventricular or ventricular tachydysrhythmia. The patient must first undergo electrophysiologic studies and mapping procedures to locate the focus. Then radiofrequency waves are delivered to abolish the irritable focus. When ablation is performed in the AV nodal or His bundle area, damage may also occur to the normal conduction system, causing heart blocks and requiring implantation of a permanent pacemaker.

Surgical Management. Patients who have life-threatening dysrhythmias may require surgical treatment for long-term management. The type of treatment depends on the nature of the dysrhythmia. Procedures include:

- Permanent pacing
- Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)
- Aneurysmectomy
- Implantable cardioverter/defibrillator
- Open-chest cardiac massage.

Permanent pacemaker insertion is performed to treat conduction disorders that are not temporary, including complete heart block. These pacemakers are usually powered by a lithium battery and have an average life span of 10 years. After the battery power is depleted, the generator must be replaced by a procedure done with the patient under local anesthesia. Some pacemakers are nuclear-powered and have a life span of 20 years or longer. Other pacemakers can be recharged externally. Combination pacemaker/defibrillator devices are also available.

A newer type of pacemaker may be utilized to coordinate contractions between the right and left ventricles. In addition to pacing used in the right side of the heart, an additional lead is placed in the left lateral wall of the left ventricle through the coronary sinus. This procedure allows synchronized depolarization of the ventricles and is used in patients with moderate to severe heart failure to improve functional ability.

The surgeon usually implants the pulse generator in a surgically made subcutaneous pocket at the shoulder in the right or left subclavicular area, which creates a visible bulge. The leads are introduced transvenously via the cephalic or the subclavian vein to the endocardium on the right side of the heart. After the procedure, monitor the ECG rhythm to check that the pacemaker is working correctly. Assess the implantation site for bleeding, swelling, redness, tenderness, and infection. The dressing over the site should remain clean and dry.



FIG. 36-15 Automated external defibrillator with electrodes.

The patient should be afebrile and have stable vital signs. The physician prescribes initial activity restrictions, which are then gradually changed. Complications of permanent pacemakers are similar to those of temporary invasive pacing.

Pacemaker checks are done on an ambulatory care basis at regular intervals. Reprogramming may be needed if pacemaker problems develop. The pulse generator is interrogated using an electronic device to determine the pacemaker settings and battery life (Fig. 36-16).

For patients who live far from the pacemaker clinic or physician's office, pacemaker information can be sent by telephone. The patient attaches ECG electrodes to the wrists or chest and places the telephone receiver in a transmitting unit. The sound signals are relayed via telephone lines to the clinic or office, where they are converted and recorded as the ECG rhythm strip and information about the pacemaker variables. Stress the need to keep clinic appointments for more detailed pacemaker checks and reprogramming, if necessary, as well as for assessment.

Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) is performed if the cause of the dysrhythmia is coronary artery insufficiency that is unresponsive to medical therapy. This procedure is described in [Chapter 40](#).

Ventricular aneurysms are a complication of myocardial infarction (MI) and may be the source of intractable ventricular tachydysrhythmias. The surgeon *resects the aneurysm*, a ballooning portion of the ventricular wall. Resection of the area eliminates the dangerous irritable focus and thus the cause of the dysrhythmias. Care of the patient is similar to that for CABG, described in [Chapter 40](#).

The *implantable cardioverter/defibrillator (ICD)* is indicated for patients who have experienced one or more episodes of spontaneous sustained ventricular tachycardia (VT) or ventricular fibrillation (VF) not caused by an MI. Collaborate with the physician and the electrophysiology nurse to prepare the patient for this procedure. A psychological profile is done to determine whether the patient can cope with the discomfort and fear associated with internal defibrillation from the ICD. Many patients report anxiety, depression, and decreased quality of life, which dissipates for the majority of patients after 12 months (Hallas et al., 2010).

The leads of the device are introduced through the skin, and the generator is implanted in the left pectoral area, similar to a permanent pacemaker insertion procedure. This procedure is performed in the electrophysiology laboratory. If ICD therapies are not successful and the patient remains in VF or pulseless VT, the qualified nurse or health care provider must promptly externally defibrillate.

The generator may be activated or deactivated by the physician placing a magnet over the implantation site for a few moments. The patient requires close monitoring in the postoperative period for dysrhythmias and complications such as bleeding and cardiac tamponade. The nurse must know whether the ICD is activated or deactivated. Care of the patient is similar to that after implantation of a permanent pacemaker.

Some patients use a lightweight, automatic wearable cardioverter/defibrillator (WCD), approved since 2002. This external vest-like device is worn 24 hours a day except when the patient showers or bathes. One popular brand is the Zoll Lifecor LifeVest, which is programmed to monitor ventricular tachycardia (VT) and ventricular fibrillation (VF). If the patient is conscious while experiencing VT, he or she can press a button to prevent a shock. This precaution is an advantage over implantable devices because ICDs are programmed to always deliver a shock when VT or VF occurs (Morrison & Smith, 2009).

When external chest compressions and ACLS measures are unsuccessful in resuscitating the patient in cardiac arrest, the physician may perform *open-chest cardiac massage* using a thoracotomy or sternotomy approach in post-cardiac surgery patients. Internal defibrillation may also be performed. This procedure is a drastic measure that frequently results in devastating consequences for the patient *and is therefore used as a last resort*.

Community-Based Care

For many patients, dysrhythmias are a disorder resulting from chronic cardiac and pulmonary diseases. Patients may be cared for in a variety of settings, including the acute care hospital, subacute unit, traditional nursing home, or their own home. They are admitted to the hospital when they experience life-threatening or potentially life-threatening dysrhythmias, often associated with an acute disorder. Others can be managed with office or clinic visits or in other settings.

Holding et al. (2009) described the impact of a nurse-led atrial fibrillation (AF) clinic in England. During the first 15 months of operation, the clinic had 314 referrals. Of these, 43% were found to be at high risk for stroke as a result of AF, 32% were at moderate risk, and 88% were referred for anticoagulation therapy. For patients who were asymptomatic, over 50% were at high risk for stroke. Early access, diagnosis, and treatment from this community clinic improved patient outcomes, reduced the number of hospitalizations, and led to prevention of strokes in clinic patients.

Home Care Management

Patients discharged from the hospital may have considerable needs, often more related to their underlying chronic diseases than to their dysrhythmias. A case manager or care coordinator can assess the need for health care resources and coordinate access to services.



FIG. 36-16 Permanent pacemaker, programmer, and rhythm strip.

The focus of the home care nurse's interventions is assessment and health teaching. Patients and families often fear recurrence of a life-threatening dysrhythmia. Patients with an ICD may dread or fear the activation of the device. The community-based nurse provides the patient and family members with an opportunity to verbalize their concerns and fears. Provide emotional support as well as information about support groups and referrals in the community. Assess the patient for possible side effects of antidysrhythmic agents or complications from a pacemaker or ICD.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient who has had a dysrhythmia caused by an acute problem, such as electrolyte imbalance or MI, about prevention, early recognition, and management of that disorder. Instruct the patient and family about lifestyle modifications designed to prevent, decrease, or control the occurrence of dysrhythmias, as outlined in [Chart 36-5](#). This teaching may be provided in the acute care setting, physician's office, health care clinic, or home setting.

Patients and their families must have a thorough understanding of the prescribed *drug therapy*, including antidysrhythmic agents. Pharmacies provide written instructions with filled prescriptions. Teach patients and families the generic and trade names of their drugs, as well as the drugs'

CHART 36-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

How to Prevent or Decrease Dysrhythmias

For Patients at Risk for Vasovagal Attacks Causing Bradydysrhythmias

- Avoid doing things that stimulate the vagus nerve, such as raising your arms above your head, applying pressure over your carotid artery, applying pressure on your eyes, bearing down or straining during a bowel movement, and stimulating a gag reflex when brushing your teeth or putting objects in your mouth.

For Patients with Premature Beats and Ectopic Rhythms

- Take the medications that have been prescribed for you, and report any adverse effects to your physician.
- Stop smoking, avoid caffeinated beverages as much as possible, and drink alcohol only in moderation.
- Learn ways to manage stress and avoid getting too tired.

For Patients with Ischemic Heart Disease

- If you have an angina attack, treat it promptly with rest and nitroglycerin administration as prescribed by your physician. This decreases your chances of experiencing a dysrhythmia.
- If chest pain is not relieved after taking the amount of nitroglycerin that has been prescribed for you, seek medical attention promptly. Also, seek prompt medical attention if the pain becomes more severe or you experience other symptoms, such as sweating, nausea, weakness, and palpitations.

For Patients at Risk for Potassium Imbalance

- Know the symptoms of decreased potassium levels, such as muscle weakness and cardiac irregularity.
- Eat foods high in potassium, such as tomatoes, beans, prunes, avocados, bananas, strawberries, and lettuce.
- Take the potassium supplements that have been prescribed for you.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults are at increased risk for dysrhythmias because of changes in their cardiac conduction system. The sinoatrial node has fewer pacemaker cells. There is a loss of fibers in the bundle branch system. Therefore older adults are at risk for sinus node dysfunction and may require pacemaker therapy. The most common dysrhythmias are premature atrial contractions, premature ventricular contractions, and atrial fibrillation. Dysrhythmias tend to be more serious in older patients because of underlying heart disease, causing cardiac decompensation. Consequently, blood flow to organs, which may already be decreased because of the aging process, is further compromised, leading to multisystem organ dysfunction. [Chart 36-6](#) highlights special considerations for older adults receiving antidysrhythmic therapy.

purposes, using basic terms that are easily understood. Clear instructions regarding dosage schedules and common side effects are important (see [Chart 36-2](#)). Emphasize the importance of reporting these side effects and any dizziness, nausea, vomiting, chest discomfort, or shortness of breath to the health care provider.

Teach all patients and their family members how to take a pulse and blood pressure. Remind them to report any signs

CHART 36-6 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Dysrhythmias

Special nursing considerations for the older patient with dysrhythmias are:

- Evaluate the patient with dysrhythmias immediately for the presence of a life-threatening dysrhythmia or hemodynamic deterioration.
- Assess the patient with a dysrhythmia for angina, hypotension, heart failure, and decreased cerebral and renal perfusion.
- Consider these causes of dysrhythmias when taking the patient's history: hypoxia, drug toxicity, electrolyte imbalances, heart failure, and myocardial ischemia or infarction.
- Assess the patient's level of education, hearing, learning style, and ability to understand and recall instructions to determine the best approaches for teaching.
- Assess the patient's ability to read written instructions.
- Teach the patient the generic and trade names of prescribed antidysrhythmic drugs, as well as their purposes, dosage, side effects, and special instructions for their use.
- Provide clear written instructions in basic language and easy-to-read print.
- Provide a written drug dosage schedule for the patient, considering all the drugs the patient is taking and possible drug interactions.
- Assess the patient for possible side effects or adverse reactions to drugs considering age and health status.
- Teach the patient to take his or her pulse and to report significant changes in heart rate or rhythm to the health care provider.
- Inform the patient of available resources for blood pressure and pulse checks, such as blood pressure clinics, home health agencies, and cardiac rehabilitation programs.
- Instruct the patient on the importance of keeping follow-up appointments with the health care provider and reporting symptoms promptly.
- Include the patient's family members or significant other in all teaching whenever possible.
- Teach the patient to avoid drinking caffeinated beverages, to stop smoking, to drink alcohol only in moderation, and to follow his or her prescribed diet.

of a change in heart rhythm, such as a significant decrease in pulse rate, a rate more than 100 beats/min, or increased rhythm irregularity.

Give written and verbal information to patients who have a *permanent pacemaker* about the type and settings of their pacemaker. Teach the patient to report any pulse rate lower than that set on the pacemaker. Review the proper care of the pacemaker insertion site and the importance of reporting any fever or any redness, swelling, or drainage at the pacemaker insertion site. If the surgical incision is near either shoulder, teach and demonstrate range-of-motion exercises to perform to prevent shoulder stiffness.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

- Keep handheld cellular phones at least 6 inches away from the generator, with the handset on the ear opposite the side of the generator.
- Avoid sources of strong electromagnetic fields, such as magnets and telecommunications transmitters. These may cause interference and could change the pacemaker settings, causing a malfunction. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is usually contraindicated, depending on the machine's technology.
- Remind patients to carry a pacemaker identification card and to wear a medical alert bracelet.

Chart 36-7 outlines the major points for patient and family teaching after the insertion of a permanent pacemaker.

Patients with an *implantable cardioverter/defibrillator* (ICD) usually continue to receive antidysrhythmic drugs after discharge from the hospital. Provide clear instructions about the purposes of drug therapy, dosage schedules, special instructions, and side effects that need to be reported. If patients experience an internal defibrillator shock, remind them to sit or lie down immediately and notify the physician. Some patients describe the experience of a shock as a quick thud or kick in the chest, whereas others relate severe discomfort similar to that of external defibrillation. Usually the shock is not as severe because the heart is sandwiched by the defibrillation pads, thus requiring less electrical current to convert the dysrhythmia. Inform family members that they may feel an electrical shock if they are touching the patient during delivery of the shock but that it is not harmful. Provide information about how to access the emergency medical services (EMS) system in the community. Recommend resources for the family to learn how to perform CPR.

Remind patients with an ICD to avoid sources of strong electromagnetic fields, such as large electrical generators and radio or television transmitters. Tell the patient that these items may inhibit tachydysrhythmia detection and therapy or may cause pacing or shocks. MRI should not be used for patients with ICDs. Handheld cellular phones must be at least 6 inches away from the generator, with the handset held to the ear opposite the side of the ICD. If the pulse generator emits a beeping sound or provides some other indicator, the patient must move away from the area as quickly as possible to prevent deactivation of the device. Teach the patient with an ICD to carry an ICD identification card and wear a medical alert bracelet. Chart 36-8 highlights the important points for teaching patients and family members and significant others.

Health Care Resources

The cardiac rehabilitation nurse typically provides written and oral information about dysrhythmias, antidysrhythmic drugs, pacemakers, and ICDs, as well as information about cardiac exercise programs, educational programs, and support groups. The office or ambulatory care nurse may also provide information about resources. Teach the patient how to contact the local chapter of the American Heart Association

CHART 36-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Permanent Pacemakers

- Follow the instructions for pacemaker site skin care that have been specifically prepared for you. Report any fever or redness, swelling, or drainage from the incision site to your physician.
- Keep your pacemaker identification card in your wallet, and wear a medical alert bracelet.
- Take your pulse for 1 full minute at the same time each day, and record the rate in your pacemaker diary. Take your pulse any time you feel symptoms of a possible pacemaker failure, and report your heart rate and symptoms to your physician.
- Know the rate at which your pacemaker is set and the basic functioning of your pacemaker. Know what rate changes to report to your physician.
- Do not apply pressure over your generator. Avoid tight clothing or belts.
- You may take baths or showers without concern for your pacemaker.
- Inform other physicians and dentists that you have a pacemaker. Certain tests they may wish to perform (e.g., magnetic resonance imaging) could affect or damage your pacemaker.
- Know the indications of battery failure for your pacemaker as you were instructed, and report these findings to your physician if they occur.
- Do not operate electrical appliances directly over your pacemaker site because this may cause your pacemaker to malfunction.
- Do not lean over electrical or gasoline engines or motors. Be sure that electrical appliances or motors are properly grounded.
- Avoid all transmitter towers for radio, television, and radar. Radio, television, other home appliances, and antennas do not pose a hazard.
- Be aware that antitheft devices in stores may cause temporary pacemaker malfunction. If symptoms develop, move away from the device.
- Inform airport personnel of your pacemaker before passing through a metal detector, and show them your pacemaker identification card. The metal in your pacemaker will trigger the alarm in the metal detector device.
- Stay away from any arc welding equipment.
- Be aware that it is safe to operate a microwave oven unless it does not have proper shielding (old microwave ovens) or is defective.
- Report any of these symptoms to your physician if you experience them: difficulty breathing, dizziness, fainting, chest pain, weight gain, and prolonged hiccups. If you have any of these symptoms, check your pulse rate and call your physician.
- If you feel symptoms when near any device, move 5 to 10 feet away from it and then check your pulse. Your pulse rate should return to normal.
- Keep all of your physician and pacemaker clinic appointments.
- Take all medications prescribed for you as instructed.
- Follow your prescribed diet.
- Follow instructions on restrictions on physical activity, such as no sudden, jerky movement for 8 weeks to allow the pacemaker to settle in place.

CHART 36-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Implantable Cardioverter/Defibrillator

- Follow the instructions for implantable cardioverter/defibrillator (ICD) site skin care that have been specifically prepared for you.
- Report to your physician any fever or redness, swelling, soreness, or drainage from your incision site.
- Do not wear tight clothing or belts that could cause irritation over the ICD generator.
- Avoid activities that involve rough contact with the ICD implantation site.
- Keep your ICD identification card in your wallet, and consider wearing a medical alert bracelet.
- Know the basic functioning of your ICD device and its rate cutoff, as well as the number of consecutive shocks it can deliver.
- Avoid magnets directly over your ICD because they can inactivate the device. If beeping tones are coming from the ICD, move away from the electromagnetic field immediately (within 30 seconds) before the inactivation sequence is completed, and notify your physician.
- Inform all physicians and dentists caring for you that you have an ICD implanted, because certain diagnostic tests and procedures must be avoided to prevent ICD malfunction. These include diathermy, electrocautery, and nuclear magnetic resonance tests.
- Avoid other sources of electromagnetic interference, such as devices emitting microwaves (not microwave ovens); transformers; radio, television, and radar transmitters; large electrical generators; metal detectors, including handheld security devices at airports; antitheft devices; arc welding equipment; and sources of 60-cycle (Hz) interference. Also avoid leaning directly over the alternator of a running motor of a car or boat.
- Report to your physician symptoms such as fainting, nausea, weakness, blackout, and rapid pulse rates.
- Take all medications prescribed for you as instructed.
- Follow instructions on restrictions on physical activity, such as not swimming, driving motor vehicles, or operating dangerous equipment.
- Follow your prescribed diet.
- Keep all physician and ICD clinic appointments.
- Sit or lie down immediately if you feel dizzy or faint to avoid falling if the ICD discharges.
- Post emergency telephone numbers.
- Know how to contact the local emergency medical services (EMS) systems in your community. Inform them in advance that you have an ICD so that they can be prepared if they need to respond to an emergency call for you.
- Know how to perform cough cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) as instructed.
- Encourage family members to learn how to perform CPR. Family members should know that if they are touching you when the device discharges, they may feel a slight shock but that this is not harmful to them.
- Follow instructions on what to do if the ICD successfully discharges, after which you feel well. This may include maintaining a diary of the date, the time, activity preceding the shock, symptoms, the number of shocks delivered, and how you feel after the shock. The physician may wish to be notified each time the device discharges.
- Avoid strenuous activities that may cause your heart rate to meet or exceed the rate cutoff of your ICD because this causes the device to discharge inappropriately.
- Notify your physician for information regarding access to health care if you are leaving town or are relocating.

(www.americanheart.org) or the provincial chapter of the Heart and Stroke Foundation in Canada (www.heartandstroke.ca) for information about dysrhythmias, pacemakers, and CPR training.

Manufacturers of pacemakers and ICDs provide helpful booklets and videotapes to give patients and their families a better understanding of these therapies. Teach patients how to use telephonic systems for transmission of their rhythms to the ambulatory care setting or health care provider's office. Stress the importance of keeping scheduled appointments for visits with the cardiologist and pacemaker or ICD clinic.

Instruct patients to contact the local ambulance or paramedic services and emergency facilities to let them know that they have these devices implanted. Encourage the patient and family to attend pacemaker or ICD support groups.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with dysrhythmias on the basis of the identified priority patient problems. The primary expected outcome is that the patient will have adequate blood flow from the left ventricle to support systemic blood pressure and promote tissue perfusion.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of dysrhythmias?

- Report of chest discomfort or pain
- Report of dizziness or syncope
- Shortness of breath
- Weakness and fatigue
- Decreased urine output
- Pale, cool skin
- Diaphoresis
- Anxiety or restlessness

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and perfusion as a result of dysrhythmias?

Perform and Interpret Physical Assessment, Including:

- Taking vital signs (may have hypotension and weak pulse)
- Checking for pulse deficit
- Asking if patient has palpitations
- Checking capillary refill (decreased)
- Listening to lung and heart sounds
- Assessing cognition
- Taking an ECG
- Checking oxygen saturation

Respond By:

- Applying oxygen
- Keeping the head of the bed elevated unless patient is very hypotensive

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Maintaining or starting an IV line
- Notifying the health care provider or Rapid Response Team
- Giving drug therapy as prescribed
- Assisting with other procedures as needed, for example, defibrillation

On what should you REFLECT?

- Evaluate patient's response to drug therapy.
- Observe for evidence of increased oxygenation and perfusion.
- Think about what else you could have done to assist the patient with this problem.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Be very careful to protect patients and staff to prevent electrical injury when assisting with invasive pacemakers, cardioversion, and defibrillation.
- Use infection control precautions during resuscitation efforts for a patient with a dysrhythmia.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients with dysrhythmias the correct drug, dose, route, time, and side effects of prescribed medications, and teach them to notify their physicians if adverse effects occur (see [Chart 36-2](#)).
- Teach family members where to learn cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) to decrease their anxiety while living with a patient with dysrhythmias.
- Teach patients the importance of adhering to their prescribed cardiac regimen, such as checking their pulse to ascertain pacemaker function.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess patients with dysrhythmias for a decrease in cardiac output resulting in inadequate oxygenation and perfusion to vital organs (see [Chart 36-1](#)).

- Monitor patients with dysrhythmias, including conducting a physical assessment and health history, as well as interpreting ECG rhythm strips. Report significant changes to the health care provider.
- Interpret common dysrhythmias, especially bradycardia, tachycardia, atrial fibrillation and ventricular fibrillation (VF), premature ventricular contractions (PVCs), and asystole, using ECG analysis (see [Figs. 36-8 through 36-12](#)).
- Use the special considerations when caring for older adults with dysrhythmias, as described in [Chart 36-6](#).
- Noninvasive pacing is an emergency measure to provide demand ventricular pacing in patients with profound bradycardia or asystole. Teach patients to expect possible discomfort.
- Identify and intervene in life-threatening situations by providing cardiopulmonary resuscitation, electrical therapy, or drug administration.
- Automated external defibrillators are used by medical and lay personnel as an essential intervention for VF.
- Do not perform CPR while the patient is being defibrillated.
- Use [Charts 36-7 and 36-8](#) to educate patients with permanent pacemakers or ICDs.

CHAPTER

37

Care of Patients with Cardiac Problems

Laura M. Dechant



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Congestive Heart Failure

Animation: Pericardial Tamponade

Answers to NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Evaluate the status of patients with end-stage heart disease regarding advance directives.
2. Provide the patient with heart failure (HF) and the family information on discharge to home, hospice, or other community-based setting.
3. Collaborate with the interdisciplinary team when providing care to patients with cardiac problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Identify community resources for patients with cardiac problems and their families.
5. Provide special care needs of older adults with heart failure.
6. Teach patients about actions to maintain health and prevent worsening HF.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Assess the patient and family response to living with chronic HF and possible transplantation.

Physiological Integrity

8. Explain the pathophysiology of HF.
9. Compare and contrast left-sided and right-sided HF.
10. Identify priority problems for patients with HF.
11. Perform a comprehensive assessment of patients experiencing cardiac problems.

12. Explain how common drug therapies improve cardiac output and prevent worsening of HF.
13. Assess patients for adverse effects of drug therapy for cardiac problems.
14. Monitor the laboratory values for patients with cardiac problems.
15. Plan nursing interventions to improve the patient's cardiovascular status when needed.
16. Provide emergency care for patients experiencing life-threatening complications, such as cardiac tamponade and pulmonary edema.
17. Identify the four Heart Failure Core Measures required by The Joint Commission.
18. Describe essential focused assessments used by the home care nurse for patients with heart failure.
19. Compare and contrast common valvular disorders.
20. Describe surgical management for patients with valvular disease.
21. Develop a teaching/learning plan for patients with valvular disease.
22. Differentiate between common cardiac inflammations and infections—endocarditis, pericarditis, and rheumatic carditis.
23. Provide postoperative care for patients having a heart transplant.
24. Identify clinical assessment findings for patients with cardiomyopathy.

This chapter focuses on heart failure and its common causes in the adult population; coronary artery disease is discussed in [Chapter 40](#). Heart failure is the most common reason for hospital stays in patients older than 65 years in the United States. When the heart is diseased, it cannot effectively pump an adequate amount of arterial blood to the rest of the body. Arterial blood carries *oxygen* and nutrients to vital organs, such as the kidneys and brain, and peripheral tissues. When these organs and other body tissues are not adequately *perfused*, they may not function properly.

HEART FAILURE

Heart failure, sometimes referred to as **pump failure**, is a general term for the inability of the heart to work effectively as a pump. It results from a number of acute and chronic cardiovascular problems that are discussed later in this chapter and elsewhere in the cardiovascular unit.

Pathophysiology

Heart failure (HF) is a common *chronic* health problem, with acute episodes often causing hospitalization. Acute coronary disease and other structural or functional problems of the heart can lead to *acute* heart failure. Both acute and chronic HF can be life threatening if they are not adequately treated or if the patient does not respond to treatment.

Types of Heart Failure

The major types of heart failure are:

- Left-sided heart failure
- Right-sided heart failure
- High-output failure

Because the two ventricles of the heart represent two separate pumping systems, it is possible for one to fail by itself for a short period. *Most heart failure begins with failure of the left ventricle and progresses to failure of both ventricles.* Typical causes of **left-sided heart (ventricular) failure** include hypertension, coronary artery disease, and valvular disease involving the mitral or aortic valve. Decreased tissue perfusion from poor cardiac output and pulmonary congestion from increased pressure in the pulmonary vessels indicate left ventricular failure (LVF).

Left-sided heart failure was formerly referred to as **congestive heart failure (CHF)**; however, not all cases of LVF involve fluid accumulation. In the clinical setting, though, the term *CHF* is still commonly used. Left-sided failure may be acute or chronic and mild to severe. It can be further divided into two subtypes: systolic heart failure and diastolic heart failure.

Systolic heart failure (systolic ventricular dysfunction) results when the heart cannot contract forcefully enough during systole to eject adequate amounts of blood into the circulation. Preload increases with decreased contractility, and afterload increases as a result of increased peripheral resistance (e.g., hypertension) (McCance et al., 2010). The **ejection fraction** (the percentage of blood ejected from the heart during systole) drops from a normal of 50% to 70% to below 40% with ventricular dilation. As it decreases, tissue perfusion diminishes and blood accumulates in the pulmonary vessels. Manifestations of systolic dysfunction may include symptoms of inadequate tissue perfusion or pulmonary and systemic congestion. Systolic heart failure is often called “forward failure” because cardiac output is decreased

and fluid backs up into the pulmonary system. Because these patients are at high risk for sudden cardiac death, patients with an ejection fraction of less than 30% are considered candidates for an implantable cardioverter/defibrillator (ICD; also known as an *internal cardioverter/defibrillator*) (see [Chapter 36](#)).

In contrast, **diastolic heart failure** (heart failure with preserved left ventricular function) occurs when the left ventricle cannot relax adequately during diastole. Inadequate relaxation or “stiffening” prevents the ventricle from filling with sufficient blood to ensure an adequate cardiac output. Although ejection fraction is more than 40%, the ventricle becomes less compliant over time because more pressure is needed to move the same amount of volume as compared with a healthy heart. Diastolic failure represents about 20% to 40% of all heart failure, primarily in older adults and in women who have chronic hypertension and undetected coronary artery disease. Clinical manifestations and management of diastolic failure are similar to those of systolic dysfunction (McCance et al., 2010).

Right-sided heart (ventricular) failure may be caused by left ventricular failure, right ventricular myocardial infarction (MI), or pulmonary hypertension. In this type of heart failure (HF), the right ventricle cannot empty completely. Increased volume and pressure develop in the venous system, and peripheral edema results.

High-output heart failure can occur when cardiac output remains normal or above normal, unlike left- and right-sided heart failure, which are typically low-output states. High-output failure is caused by increased metabolic needs or hyperkinetic conditions, such as septicemia, high fever, anemia, and hyperthyroidism. This type of heart failure is not as common as other types.

Classification and Staging of Heart Failure

The American College of Cardiology (ACC) and American Heart Association (AHA) have developed evidence-based guidelines for staging and managing heart failure as a chronic, progressive disease. These guidelines do not replace the New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional classification system, which is used to describe symptoms a patient may exhibit (see [Table 35-2](#) in [Chapter 35](#)).

The ACC/AHA staging system when compared with the NYHA system categorizes patients as:

- A. Patients at high risk for developing heart failure (class I NYHA)
- B. Patients with cardiac structural abnormalities or remodeling who have not developed HF symptoms (class I NYHA)
- C. Patients with current or prior symptoms of heart failure (class II or III NYHA)
- D. Patients with refractory end-stage heart failure (class IV NYHA)

Another method for staging HF is the Killip classification system, which is based on the heart’s hemodynamic ability. [Table 40-3](#) in [Chapter 40](#) outlines this system.

Compensatory Mechanisms

When cardiac output is insufficient to meet the demands of the body, compensatory mechanisms work to improve cardiac output ([Fig. 37-1](#)). Although these mechanisms may initially increase cardiac output, they eventually have a damaging

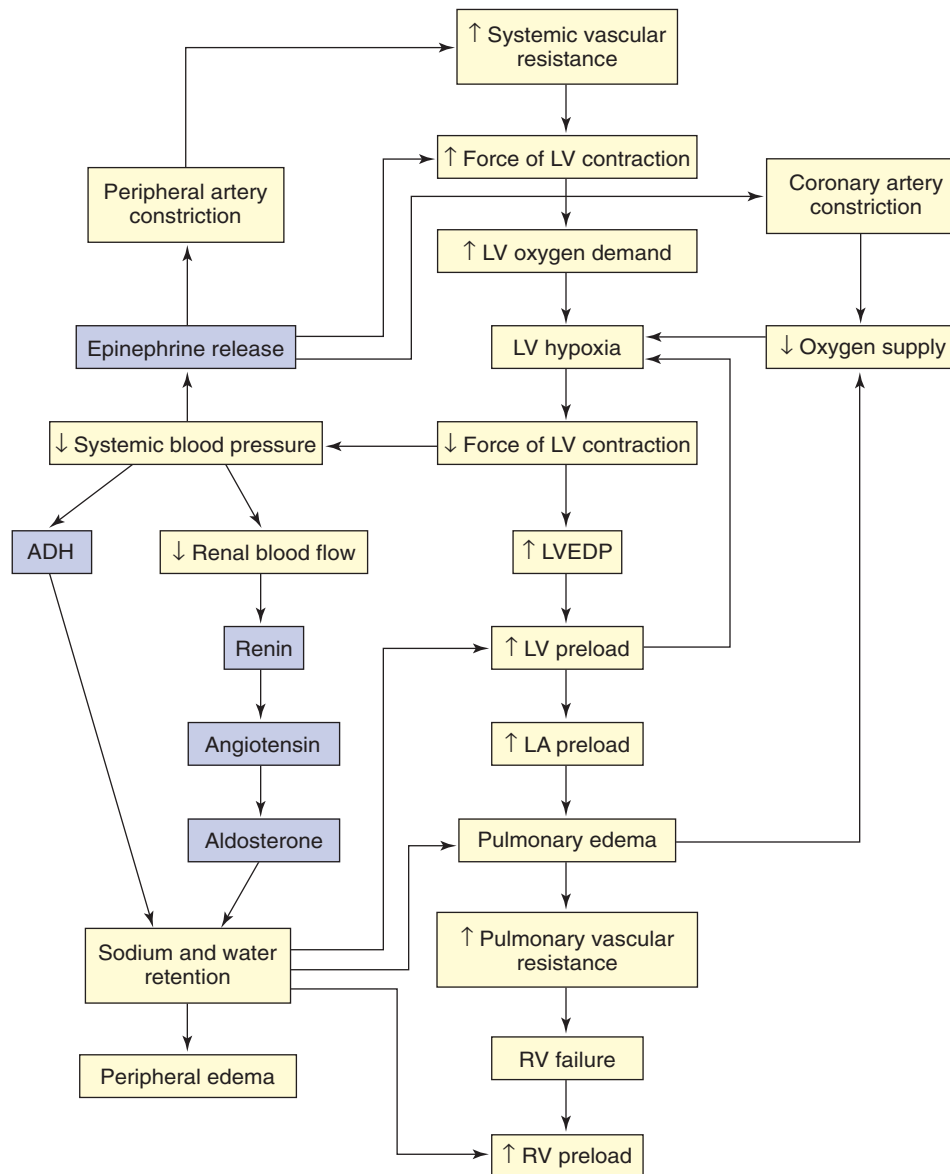


FIG. 37-1 Left-sided heart failure from elevated systemic vascular resistance. Left heart failure leads to right heart failure. Systemic vascular resistance and preload are exacerbated by renal and adrenal mechanisms. *ADH*, Antidiuretic hormone; *LA*, left atrial; *LV*, left ventricular; *LVEDP*, left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; *RV*, right ventricular.

effect on pump function. Major compensatory mechanisms include:

- Sympathetic nervous system stimulation
- Renin-angiotensin system (RAS) activation
- Other chemical responses
- Myocardial hypertrophy

Stimulation of the Sympathetic Nervous System. In heart failure (HF), **stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system** (i.e., increasing catecholamines) as a result of tissue hypoxia represents the most immediate compensatory mechanism. Stimulation of the adrenergic receptors causes an increase in heart rate (beta adrenergic) and blood pressure from vasoconstriction (alpha adrenergic).

Because cardiac output (CO) is the product of heart rate (HR) and stroke volume (SV), an increase in HR results in

an immediate *increase in cardiac output*. The HR is limited, though, in its ability to compensate for decreased CO. If it becomes too rapid, diastolic filling time is limited and CO may start to decline. An increase in HR also significantly increases oxygen demand by the myocardium. If the heart is poorly perfused because of arteriosclerosis, HF may worsen.

Stroke volume (SV) is also *improved* by sympathetic stimulation. Sympathetic stimulation increases venous return to the heart, which further stretches the myocardial fibers causing dilation. According to Starling's law, increased myocardial stretch results in more forceful contraction. More forceful contractions increase SV and CO. After a critical point is reached within the cardiac muscle, further volume and stretch reduce the force of contraction and cardiac output.

Sympathetic stimulation also results in *arterial vasoconstriction*. Vasoconstriction has the benefit of maintaining blood pressure and improving tissue perfusion in low-output states. However, constriction of the arteries increases **afterload**, the resistance against which the heart must pump. Afterload is the major determinant of myocardial oxygen requirements. As it increases, the left ventricle requires more energy to eject its contents and SV may decline.

Renin-Angiotensin System Activation. Reduced blood flow to the kidneys, a common occurrence in low-output states, results in activation of the renin-angiotensin system (RAS). Vasoconstriction becomes more pronounced in response to angiotensin II, and aldosterone secretion causes sodium and water retention. Preload and afterload increase. Angiotensin II contributes to **ventricular remodeling** resulting in progressive myocyte (myocardial cell) contractile dysfunction over time (McCance et al., 2010).

Other Chemical Responses. In addition to the sympathetic nervous system and RAS responses, other mechanisms are activated when a patient experiences heart failure (HF). Most of these actions contribute to worsening of the condition.

For example, in those who have had an MI, heart muscle cell injury causes an *immune response*. Pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and interleukins (IL-1 and IL-6), are released, especially with left-sided HF. These substances contribute to ventricular remodeling.

Natriuretic peptides are neurohormones that work to promote vasodilation and diuresis through sodium loss in the renal tubules. The **B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP)** is produced and released by the ventricles when the patient has fluid overload as a result of HF. It increases with age and has a greater concentration in women (Jessup et al., 2009). People who are obese have lower BNP levels compared with those who are not (Noveanu et al., 2009).

Low cardiac output (CO) causes decreased cerebral perfusion. As a result, the posterior pituitary gland secretes *vasopressin* (antidiuretic hormone [ADH]). The hormone causes vasoconstriction and fluid retention, which worsen HF.

Endothelin is secreted by endothelial cells when they are stretched. As the myocardial fibers are stretched in patients with HF, this potent vasoconstrictor is released, which increases peripheral resistance and hypertension. HF worsens as a result of these actions.

Myocardial Hypertrophy. **Myocardial hypertrophy** (enlargement of the myocardium), with or without chamber dilation, is another compensatory mechanism. The walls of the heart thicken to provide more muscle mass, which results in more forceful contractions, further increasing cardiac output. Cardiac muscle, however, may hypertrophy more rapidly than collateral circulation can provide adequate blood supply to the muscle. Often a hypertrophied heart is slightly oxygen deprived.

All the compensatory mechanisms contribute to an increase in the consumption of myocardial oxygen. When the demand for oxygen increases and the myocardial reserve has been exhausted, clinical manifestations of HF develop.

Etiology

Heart failure (HF) is caused by systemic hypertension in most cases. About a third of patients experiencing myocardial infarction (MI, “heart attack”) also develop HF. The next

TABLE 37-1 COMMON CAUSES AND RISK FACTORS FOR HEART FAILURE

• Hypertension • Coronary artery disease • Cardiomyopathy • Substance abuse (alcohol and illicit/prescribed drugs) • Valvular disease • Congenital defects • Cardiac infections and inflammations • Dysrhythmias	• Diabetes mellitus • Smoking/tobacco use • Family history • Obesity • Severe lung disease • Sleep apnea • Hyperkinetic conditions (e.g., hyperthyroidism)
---	--

most common cause is structural heart changes, such as valvular dysfunction, particularly pulmonic or aortic stenosis, which leads to pressure or volume overload on the heart. Common direct causes and risk factors for HF are listed in Table 37-1.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Heart failure is a common problem among older adults. The use of certain drugs can contribute to the development or exacerbation of the problem in this population. For example, long-term use of NSAIDs for arthritis and other chronic pain can cause fluid and sodium retention. NSAIDs may also cause peripheral vasoconstriction and increase the toxicity of diuretics and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors (ACEIs). Thiazolidinediones (TZDs) (e.g., pioglitazone [Actos]) used for diabetics also cause fluid and sodium retention. Rosiglitazone (Avandia), another TZD drug, has recently been found to cause acute myocardial infarction (AMI) in patients with type 2 diabetes. These drugs should be used with caution and restrictions in the older adult population.

Right-sided HF in the absence of left-sided HF is usually the result of pulmonary problems such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or pulmonary hypertension. Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) may also cause right-sided HF. These problems are discussed elsewhere in the cardiac unit.

Incidence/Prevalence

Over five million people in the United States have HF, causing about 875,000 hospitalizations each year. HF is the most common reason for hospital admission for people over 65 years of age. African Americans are affected more often than Euro-Americans, probably because they have more risk factors that can lead to HF. The disease is a major cause of disability and death after MI, often due to nonadherence to the treatment plan and recommended lifestyle changes.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Heart failure has been referred to as a U.S. epidemic, although it is a major problem worldwide (Joseph et al., 2009). One of the proposed U.S. *Healthy People 2020* objectives is to reduce the number of hospitalizations of older adults with HF as the principal diagnosis. Patient and family education can help meet this objective (Table 37-2). As the “baby boomer” population reaches 65 years of age, the numbers of hospital stays and deaths from HF are likely to increase dramatically.

TABLE 37-2 MEETING PROPOSED HEALTHY PEOPLE 2020 OBJECTIVES

Cardiac Disease

To reduce hospitalizations of older adults with heart failure as the principal diagnosis.

- For patients hospitalized for heart failure, collaborate with the case manager for discharge planning, including adequate support in the community.
- Provide a continuing plan of care for patients and their families or other caregivers when the patient is discharged from the hospital.
- If the patient is discharged to home, call to check that he or she has no impending signs and symptoms of heart failure (the case manager may make calls).
- Teach the patient and family or other caregiver about when to call the health care provider for health changes so the patient can be treated at home.
- Ensure that the interdisciplinary team provides the patient with follow-up care in the home or nursing home.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When obtaining a history, keep in mind the many conditions that can lead to HF. Carefully question the patient about his or her medical history, including hypertension, angina (cardiac pain), MI, rheumatic heart disease, valvular disorders, endocarditis, and pericarditis. Ask about the patient's perception of his or her activity tolerance, breathing pattern, sleeping pattern, urinary pattern, and fluid volume status, as well as his or her knowledge about HF.

Left-Sided Heart Failure. With left ventricular systolic dysfunction, cardiac output (CO) is diminished, leading to impaired tissue perfusion, anaerobic metabolism, and unusual fatigue. Assess activity tolerance by asking whether the patient can perform normal ADLs or climb flights of stairs without *fatigue* or dyspnea. Many patients with heart failure (HF) experience weakness or fatigue with activity or have a feeling of heaviness in their arms or legs. Ask about their ability to perform simultaneous arm and leg work (e.g., walking while carrying a bag of groceries). Such activity may place an unacceptable demand on the failing heart. Ask the patient to identify his or her most strenuous activity in the past week. Many people unconsciously limit their activities in response to fatigue or dyspnea and may not realize how limited they have become.

Perfusion to the myocardium is often impaired as a result of left ventricular failure, especially with cardiac hypertrophy. The patient may report *chest discomfort* or may describe palpitations, skipped beats, or a fast heartbeat.

As the amount of blood ejected from the left ventricle diminishes, hydrostatic pressure builds in the pulmonary venous system and results in fluid-filled alveoli and pulmonary congestion, which results in a *cough*. The patient in early HF describes the cough as irritating, nocturnal (at night), and usually nonproductive. As HF becomes very severe, he or she may begin expectorating frothy, pink-tinged sputum—a sign of life-threatening pulmonary edema.

Dyspnea also results from increasing pulmonary venous pressure and pulmonary congestion. Carefully question about the presence of dyspnea and when and how it developed. The patient may refer to dyspnea as “trouble in catching my breath,” “breathlessness,” or “difficulty in breathing.”

As **exertional dyspnea** develops (also called *dyspnea upon or on exertion [DUE/DOE]*), the patient often stops previously tolerated levels of activity because of shortness of breath. Dyspnea at rest in the recumbent (lying flat) position is known as **orthopnea**. Ask how many pillows are used to sleep or whether the patient sleeps in an upright position in a bed, recliner, or other type of chair.

Patients who describe sudden awakening with a feeling of breathlessness 2 to 5 hours after falling asleep have **paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND)**. Sitting upright, dangling the feet, or walking usually relieves this condition.

Right-Sided Heart Failure. Signs of systemic congestion occur as the right ventricle fails, fluid is retained, and pressure builds in the venous system. Edema develops in the lower legs and may progress to the thighs and abdominal wall. Patients may notice that their shoes fit more tightly, or their shoes or socks may leave indentations on their swollen feet. They may have removed their rings because of swelling in their fingers and hands. Ask about weight gain. An adult may retain 4 to 7 liters of fluid (10 to 15 lb [4.5 to 6.8 kg]) before pitting edema occurs.

Reports of *nausea and anorexia* may be a direct consequence of liver engorgement (congestion) resulting from fluid retention. In *advanced* heart failure (HF), *ascites* and an increased abdominal girth may develop from severe liver congestion. Another common finding related to fluid retention is *diuresis at rest*. At rest, fluid in the peripheral tissue is mobilized and excreted and the patient describes frequent awakening at night to urinate.

Obtain a careful nutritional history, questioning about the use of salt and the types of food consumed. Ask about daily fluid intake. Patients with HF may experience increased thirst and drink excessive fluid (4000 to 5000 mL/day) because of sodium retention.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Manifestations of HF depend on the type of failure, the ventricle involved, and the underlying cause. Impaired tissue perfusion, pulmonary congestion, and edema are associated with *left* ventricular failure (**Chart 37-1**). Conversely, systemic venous congestion and peripheral edema are associated with *right* ventricular failure (**Chart 37-2**).

Left-Sided Heart Failure. Left ventricular failure is associated with decreased cardiac output and elevated pulmonary venous pressure. It may appear clinically as:

- Weakness
- Fatigue
- Dizziness
- Acute confusion
- Pulmonary congestion
- Breathlessness
- Oliguria (scant urine output)

Decreased blood flow to the major body organs can cause dysfunction, especially renal failure. Nocturia may occur when the patient is at rest.

The pulse may be tachycardic, or it may alternate in strength (**pulsus alternans**). Take the apical pulse for a full

CHART 37-1 KEY FEATURES

Left-Sided Heart Failure**DECREASED CARDIAC OUTPUT**

- Fatigue
- Weakness
- Oliguria during the day (nocturia at night)
- Angina
- Confusion, restlessness
- Dizziness
- Tachycardia, palpitations
- Pallor
- Weak peripheral pulses
- Cool extremities

PULMONARY CONGESTION

- Hacking cough, worse at night
- Dyspnea/shortness of breath
- Crackles or wheezes in lungs
- Frothy, pink-tinged sputum
- Tachypnea
- S₃/S₄ summation gallop

CHART 37-2 KEY FEATURES

Right-Sided Heart Failure**Systemic Congestion**

- Jugular (neck vein) distention
- Enlarged liver and spleen
- Anorexia and nausea
- Dependent edema (legs and sacrum)
- Distended abdomen
- Swollen hands and fingers
- Polyuria at night
- Weight gain
- Increased blood pressure (from excess volume) or decreased blood pressure (from failure)

minute, noting any irregularity in heart rhythm. *An irregular heart rhythm resulting from premature atrial contractions (PACs), premature ventricular contractions (PVCs), or atrial fibrillation (AF) is common in HF (see Chapter 36).* The sudden development of an irregular rhythm may further compromise CO. Carefully monitor the patient's respiratory rate, rhythm, and character, as well as oxygen saturation. The respiratory rate typically exceeds 20 breaths/min.

Assess whether the patient is oriented to person, place, and time. A short mental status examination may be used if there are concerns about orientation. Objective data are important because in daily conversation many people are skillful at covering up memory losses. Older adults are frequently disoriented or confused when the heart fails due to brain hypoxia (decreased oxygen).

Increased heart size is common with a displacement of the apical impulse to the left. A third heart sound, **S₃ gallop**, is an early diastolic filling sound indicating an increase in left ventricular pressure. This sound is often the first sign of HF. A fourth heart sound (S₄) also can occur; it is not a sign of failure but is a reflection of decreased ventricular compliance.

Auscultate for crackles and wheezes of the lungs. Late inspiratory crackles and fine profuse crackles that repeat themselves from breath to breath and do not diminish with coughing indicate HF. *Crackles are produced by intra-alveolar fluid and are often noted first in the bases of the lungs and spread upward as the condition worsens.* Wheezes indicate a narrowing of the bronchial lumen caused by engorged pulmonary vessels. Identify the precise location of crackles and wheezes and whether the wheezes are heard on inspiration, expiration, or both.

Right-Sided Heart Failure. Right ventricular failure is associated with increased systemic venous pressures and congestion. On inspection, assess the neck veins for distention and measure abdominal girth. Hepatomegaly (liver engorgement), hepatjugular reflux, and ascites may also be assessed. Abdominal fluid can reach volumes of more than 10 liters.

Assess for dependent edema. In ambulatory patients, edema commonly presents in the ankles and legs. When patients are restricted to bedrest, the sacrum is dependent and fluid accumulates there.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Edema is an extremely unreliable sign of HF. Be sure that accurate daily weights are taken every morning to document fluid retention. *Weight is the most reliable indicator of fluid gain and loss!*

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Physiological Integrity**

A client is diagnosed with right-sided heart failure. Which assessment findings will the nurse expect the client to have? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Peripheral edema
- B. Crackles in both lungs
- C. Breathlessness
- D. Ascites
- E. Lung congestion

Psychosocial Assessment

Chronic heart failure (HF) is typically a slow, debilitating disease. Anxiety and frustration are common. Symptoms such as dyspnea increase the patient's anxiety level.

Patients with HF, especially those with advanced disease, are at high risk for depression. It is not certain whether the functional impairments contribute to the depression or depression affects functional ability. Older hospitalized patients may be depressed, particularly those who have been readmitted for an acute episode of HF. Lifestyle changes and quality-of-life issues can also cause depression many months after the initial diagnosis of HF (Thomas et al., 2008).

Assess patients and their families for anxiety and depression. Ask them about their usual methods of coping, as well as any history of depression. If anxiety or depression is present, notify the health care provider for further assessment. Social workers, certified clinical chaplains, or psychologists may administer specific assessment tools to determine the extent of the problem. Some patients need drug therapy and nonpharmacologic modalities, such as cognitive behavior therapy, biofeedback, or relaxation training.

Hope is a major indicator of well-being for patients with HF. Those who are hopeful tend to feel better and are more socially involved. Ask patients about their daily activities and how often they interact with the significant people in their life to help determine patient and family coping strategies.

Laboratory Assessment

Electrolyte imbalance may occur from complications of HF or as side effects of drug therapy, especially diuretic therapy. Regular evaluations of a patient's *serum electrolytes*, including

sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium, and chloride, are essential. Any impairment of renal function resulting from inadequate perfusion causes elevated blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine and decreased creatinine clearance levels. *Hemoglobin* and *hematocrit* tests should be performed to identify HF resulting from anemia. If the patient has fluid volume excess, the hematocrit levels may be low as a result of hemodilution.

B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) is used for diagnosing HF (in particular, diastolic HF) in patients with acute dyspnea. As discussed earlier, it is part of the body's response to decreased cardiac output from either left or right ventricular dysfunction. An increase in BNP, in conjunction with history and physical, best differentiates between the dyspnea of HF and that associated with lung dysfunction (Wexler et al., 2009). However, patients with renal disease may also have elevated BNP levels (Chen et al., 2010).

Urinalysis may reveal proteinuria and high specific gravity. *Microalbuminuria* is an early indicator of decreased compliance of the heart and occurs before the BNP rises. It serves as an "early warning detector" that lets the health care provider know that the heart is experiencing early signs of decreased compliance, long before symptoms occur.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Thyroxine (T_4) and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels should be assessed in patients who are older than 65 years, have atrial fibrillation, or have evidence of thyroid disease. Heart failure (HF) may be caused or aggravated by hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism.

Arterial blood gas (ABG) values often reveal hypoxemia (low blood oxygen level) because oxygen does not diffuse easily through fluid-filled alveoli. Respiratory alkalosis may occur because of hyperventilation; respiratory acidosis may occur because of carbon dioxide retention. Metabolic acidosis may indicate an accumulation of lactic acid.

Imaging Assessment

Chest x-rays can be helpful in diagnosing left ventricular failure. Typically the heart is enlarged (cardiomegaly), representing hypertrophy or dilation. Pleural effusions develop less often and generally reflect biventricular failure. *Echocardiography is considered the best tool in diagnosing heart failure.* Cardiac valvular changes, pericardial effusion, chamber enlargement, and ventricular hypertrophy can be diagnosed using this noninvasive technique. The test can also be used to determine ejection fraction.

Radionuclide studies (thallium imaging or technetium pyrophosphate scanning) can also indicate the presence and cause of HF. Multigated angiographic (MUGA) scans provide information about left ventricular ejection fraction and velocity, which are typically low in patients with HF. These tests are discussed in [Chapter 35](#).

Other Diagnostic Assessment

An *electrocardiogram (ECG)* is also performed. It may show ventricular hypertrophy, dysrhythmias, and any degree of myocardial ischemia, injury, or infarction. It is *not* helpful in determining the presence or extent of HF.

Invasive hemodynamic monitoring allows the direct assessment of cardiac function and volume status in acutely ill

patients. These measurements can confirm the diagnosis and guide the management of HF. Right atrial pressure may be normal or elevated in left ventricular failure and is elevated in right ventricular failure. Pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) and pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP) are elevated in left-sided HF because volumes and pressures are increased in the left ventricle. (See [Chapter 35](#) for a more detailed description of hemodynamic monitoring.)

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with heart failure (HF) include:

1. Impaired Gas Exchange related to ventilation/perfusion imbalance
2. Decreased Cardiac Output related to altered contractility, preload, and afterload
3. Fatigue and weakness related to hypoxemia
4. Potential for pulmonary edema related to left-sided HF

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The patient-centered collaborative care that patients with HF need depends on their disease stage and severity of signs and symptoms.

Improving Gas Exchange

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The expected outcome is that the patient will have an optimal spontaneous breathing pattern that increases oxygenation and maintains a serum carbon dioxide level that is within normal limits.

Interventions. The purpose of collaborative care is to help promote oxygenation and gas exchange. *Ventilation assistance* may be needed because the oxygen content of the blood is often decreased in patients who have pulmonary congestion. Monitor or have assistive personnel monitor the patient's respiratory rate, rhythm, and quality every 1 to 4 hours. Auscultate breath sounds every 4 to 8 hours.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Provide the necessary amount of supplemental oxygen within a range prescribed by the health care provider *to maintain oxygen saturation at 90% or greater.* If the patient has dyspnea, place him or her in a high Fowler's position with pillows under each arm to maximize chest expansion and improve oxygenation. Repositioning and performing coughing and deep-breathing exercises every 2 hours help improve oxygenation and prevent atelectasis. Collaborate with the respiratory therapist, if available, to plan the most effective methods for assisting with ventilation.

Improving Cardiac Output

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The expected outcome is that the patient will have increased cardiac output by improving stroke volume (SV) (determined by preload, afterload, and contractility) and heart rate (HR).

Interventions. Collaborative care begins with nonsurgical interventions, but the patient may need surgery if these are not successful in meeting optimal outcomes.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management relies primarily on a variety of drugs ([Table 37-3](#)). If drug therapy is ineffective, other nonsurgical options are available.

TABLE 37-3 COMMONLY USED DRUG CLASSIFICATIONS FOR PATIENTS WITH SYSTOLIC HEART FAILURE

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors or angiotensin-receptor blockers (ARBs)

Diuretics:

- High-ceiling
- Potassium-sparing

Human B-type natriuretic peptides

Nitrates

Inotropics:

- Beta-adrenergic agonists
- Phosphodiesterase inhibitors
- Calcium sensitizers
- Digoxin (Lanoxin)

Beta-adrenergic blockers

Drugs to improve stroke volume include those that reduce afterload, reduce preload, and improve cardiac muscle contractility. A major role of the nurse is to give medications as prescribed, monitor for their therapeutic and adverse effects, and teach the patient and family about drug therapy. A variety of classes of drugs that reduce afterload and preload are used to manage heart failure (see Table 37-3).

Drugs That Reduce Afterload. By relaxing the arterioles, arterial vasodilators can reduce the resistance to left ventricular ejection (afterload) and improve CO. These drugs do not cause excessive vasodilation but reverse some of the inappropriate or excessive vasoconstriction common in HF.

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors (ACEIs) and Angiotensin-Receptor Blockers (ARBs). Patients with even mild heart failure (HF) resulting from left ventricular dysfunction are given a trial of ACE inhibitors or ARBs. Both ACE inhibitors (e.g., enalapril [Vasotec] and fosinopril [Monopril]) and ARBs (e.g., valsartan [Diovan], irbesartan [Avapro], and losartan [Cozaar]) improve function and quality of life for patients with HF. ACE inhibitors are the first-line drug of choice, but some health care providers prefer to start the patient on an ARB because ACE inhibitors can cause a nagging, dry cough. For patients with *acute* HF, the health care provider may prescribe an IV-push ACE inhibitor such as Vasotec IV.

The ACE inhibitors and ARBs suppress the renin-angiotensin system (RAS), which is activated in response to decreased renal blood flow. ACE inhibitors prevent conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II, resulting in arterial dilation and increased stroke volume. ARBs block the effect

of angiotensin II receptors and thus decrease arterial resistance and arterial dilation. In addition, these drugs block aldosterone, which prevents sodium and water retention, thus decreasing fluid overload. *Both ACEIs and ARBs work more effectively for Euro-Americans than for African-American populations.* Volume-depleted patients should receive a low starting dose, or the fluid volume should be restored before beginning the prescribed drug. Monitor for hyperkalemia, a potential adverse drug effect in patients who have renal dysfunction.

Assess for orthostatic hypotension, acute confusion, poor peripheral perfusion, and reduced urine output in patients with low systolic blood pressure. Monitor serum potassium and creatinine levels to determine renal dysfunction. Additional nursing implications for selected ACE inhibitor/ARB drugs are described in Chapter 38 on p. 783 in the Drug Therapy section.

Human B-type Natriuretic Peptides. Human B-type natriuretic peptides (hBNPs) such as nesiritide (Natrecor) are often used to treat *acute* HF. Endogenous BNP is released in response to decreased CO and causes *natriuresis*, or loss of sodium in the renal tubules, as well as vasodilation. Natrecor lowers pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) and improves renal glomerular filtration. It is given as an IV bolus over 60 seconds followed with a continuous infusion for up to 48 hours.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When giving Natrecor, monitor BP and pulse carefully because significant decreases in BP may occur. Although the patient's systolic BP may be between 90 and 100 mm Hg, he or she is usually asymptomatic. *Give Natrecor through a separate infusion line because it is incompatible with heparin and most other parenteral medications.* Expect an increase in the serum BNP after drug administration.

Interventions That Reduce Preload. Ventricular fibers contract less forcefully when they are overstretched, such as in a failing heart. Interventions aimed at reducing preload attempt to decrease volume and pressure in the left ventricle, increasing ventricular muscle stretch and contraction. Preload reduction is appropriate for HF accompanied by congestion with total body sodium and water overload.

Nutrition Therapy. In HF, nutrition therapy is aimed at reducing sodium and water retention to decrease the workload of the heart. The health care provider may restrict sodium intake in an attempt to decrease fluid retention. Many patients need to omit table salt (no added salt) from their diet, thus reducing sodium intake to about 3 g daily.

If salt intake must be reduced further, the patient may need to eliminate all salt in cooking and high-sodium foods (e.g., ham, bacon, pickles), thus reducing sodium intake to 2 g daily. If needed, collaborate with the dietitian to help the patient select foods that meet such a restricted therapeutic diet.

Few patients are placed on severe fluid restrictions. However, patients with excessive aldosterone secretion may experience thirst and drink 3 to 5 liters of fluid each day. As a result, their fluid intake may be limited to a more normal 2 liters daily. *Supervise unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to ensure that they limit the prescribed intake and accurately record intake and output.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

ACEIs and ARBs are started slowly and cautiously. The first dose may be associated with a rapid drop in blood pressure (BP). Patients at risk for hypotension usually have an initial systolic BP less than 100 mm Hg, are older than 75 years, have a serum sodium level less than 135 mEq/L, or are volume depleted. Monitor BP every hour for several hours after the initial dose and each time the dose is increased. Immediately report to the health care provider and document a systolic blood pressure of less than 90 mm Hg (or designated protocol level). If this problem occurs, place the patient flat to increase cerebral perfusion.

Weigh the patient daily, or delegate this activity to UAP and supervise that it is done. Keep in mind that *1 kg of weight gain or loss equals 1 liter of retained or lost fluid*. The same scale should be used every morning before breakfast for the most accurate assessment of weight. Monitor for an expected decrease in weight because excess fluid is excreted from the body.

Drug Therapy. Common drugs prescribed to reduce preload are diuretics and venous vasodilators. *Morphine sulfate* is also given for patients in *acute* heart failure (HF) to reduce anxiety, decrease preload and afterload, slow respirations, and reduce the pain associated with a myocardial infarction (MI).

The health care provider adds *diuretics* to the regimen when diet and fluid restrictions have not been effective in managing the symptoms of HF. Diuretics are the first-line drug of choice in older adults with HF and fluid overload (Joseph et al., 2009). These drugs enhance the renal excretion of sodium and water by reducing circulating blood volume, decreasing preload, and reducing systemic and pulmonary congestion.

The type and dosage of diuretic prescribed depend on the severity of HF and renal function. High-ceiling (loop) diuretics, such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside ♣, Novosemide ♣), torsemide (Demadex), and bumetanide (Bumex), are most effective for treating fluid volume overload.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Loop diuretics continue to work even after excess fluid is removed. As a result, some patients, especially older adults, can become dehydrated. Observe for manifestations of dehydration in the older adult, especially acute confusion, decreased urinary output, and dizziness. Provide evidence-based interventions to reduce the risk of falls, as discussed in Chapter 3.

For those patients with *acute* HF, Lasix or Bumex can be administered by IV push (IVP). Lasix can be given in doses of 20 to 40 mg IV and increased by 20 mg every 2 hours until the desired diuresis is obtained. The usual IV initial dose for Bumex is 1 to 2 mg once or twice daily, but it is more often given in a continuous infusion of 10 mg over 24 hours.

The practitioner may initially use a thiazide diuretic, such as hydrochlorothiazide (HCTZ) (HydroDIURIL, Urozide ♣) and metolazone (Zaroxolyn), for *older adults* with *mild* volume overload. Zaroxolyn is a long-acting agent and is therefore often given every second, third, or fourth day, depending on patient need and tolerance.

Unlike loop diuretics, the action of thiazides is self-limiting (i.e., diuresis decreases after edema fluid is lost). Therefore the dehydration that may occur with loop diuretics is not common with these drugs. Patients also prefer thiazides because of the gradual onset of diuresis.

As HF progresses, many patients develop diuretic resistance with refractory edema. The health care provider may choose to manage this problem by prescribing both types of diuretics.

Monitor for and prevent potassium deficiency (hypokalemia) from diuretic therapy. The primary signs of hypokalemia are nonspecific neurologic and muscular symptoms, such as generalized weakness, depressed reflexes, and irregular heart rate. A potassium supplement may be prescribed for some patients. Other practitioners prescribe a

potassium-sparing diuretic, such as spironolactone (Aldactone), for patients at risk for dysrhythmias from hypokalemia. Although not as effective as other diuretics, Aldactone helps retain potassium and thus decrease the risk of ventricular dysrhythmias.

Patients being managed with ACE inhibitors or ARBs and diuretics at the same time may not experience hypokalemia. However, if their kidneys are not functioning well, they may develop hyperkalemia (elevated serum potassium level). Review the patient's serum creatinine level. *If the creatinine is greater than 1.8 mg/dL, notify the health care provider before administering supplemental potassium.*

The health care provider may prescribe *venous vasodilators* (e.g., nitrates) for the patient with HF who has persistent dyspnea. Significant constriction of venous and arterial blood vessels occurs to compensate for reduced CO. Constriction reduces the volume of fluid that the vascular bed can hold and increases preload. Venous vasodilators may benefit by:

- Returning venous vasculature to a more normal capacity
- Decreasing the volume of blood returning to the heart
- Improving left ventricular function

Nitrates may be administered IV, orally, or topically. IV nitrates are used most often for *acute* HF. These drugs cause primarily venous vasodilation but also a significant amount of arteriolar vasodilation. Monitor the patient's blood pressure when starting nitrate therapy or increasing the dosage. Patients may initially report headache, but assure them that they will develop a tolerance to this effect and that the headache will cease or diminish. Acetaminophen (Tylenol, Exdol ♣) can be given to help relieve discomfort.

Unfortunately, tolerance to the vasodilating effects develops when nitrates are given around-the-clock. To prevent this tolerance, the health care provider may prescribe at least one 12-hour nitrate-free period out of every 24 hours (usually overnight). Nitrates such as isosorbide (Imdur, ISMO) are prescribed to provide nitrate-free periods and reduce the problem of tolerance. Chapter 40 discusses nitrates in more detail.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client has been taking furosemide (Lasix) for the past 3 years. The hospital laboratory notifies the nurse that the client's serum potassium level is 2.9 mEq/L. What is the nurse's best action at this time?

- Notify the health care provider.
- Ask the lab to retest the potassium level.
- Give potassium as an IV infusion.
- Withhold this morning's Lasix dose.

Drugs That Enhance Contractility. Contractility of the heart can also be enhanced with drug therapy. Positive inotropic drugs are most commonly used, but vasodilators and beta-adrenergic blockers may also be administered. For *chronic* HF, low-dose beta blockers are most commonly used. Digoxin (Lanoxin) may be prescribed to improve symptoms, thereby decreasing dyspnea and improving functional activity. This older and long-used drug is not expensive. In some settings, nesiritide (Natrecor) may be administered for end-stage HF, although this drug is very expensive (see discussion of Natrecor for acute HF on p. 751).

Digoxin. Although not as commonly used today, digoxin (Lanoxin, Novodigoxin ) a cardiac glycoside, has been demonstrated to provide symptomatic benefits for patients in *chronic* heart failure (HF) with sinus rhythm and atrial fibrillation. Digoxin (sometimes called “dig”) therapy reduces exacerbations of HF and hospitalizations when added to a regimen of ACE inhibitors or ARBs, beta blockers, and diuretics. However, it may increase mortality due to drug toxicity, especially in older adults.

The potential benefits of digoxin include:

- Increased contractility
- Reduced heart rate (HR)
- Slowing of conduction through the atrioventricular node
- Inhibition of sympathetic activity while enhancing parasympathetic activity

Digoxin is erratically absorbed from the GI tract. Many drugs, especially antacids, interfere with its absorption. It is eliminated primarily by renal excretion. Older patients should be maintained on lower doses of the drug than younger patients.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Increased cardiac automaticity occurs with toxic digoxin levels or in the presence of hypokalemia, resulting in ectopic beats (e.g., premature ventricular contractions [PVCs]). Changes in potassium level, especially a decrease, causes patients to be more sensitive to the drug and cause toxicity.

The clinical manifestations of **digoxin toxicity** are often vague and nonspecific and include anorexia, fatigue, blurred vision, and changes in mental status, especially in older adults. Toxicity may cause nearly any dysrhythmia, but PVCs are most commonly noted. Assess for early signs of toxicity such as bradycardia and loss of the P wave on the ECG. Carefully monitor the apical pulse rate and heart rhythm of patients receiving digoxin.

The health care provider determines the desirable heart rate (HR) to achieve. Some health care providers prefer a rate less than 60 beats per minute. Report the development of either an irregular rhythm in a patient with a previously regular rhythm or a regular rhythm in a patient with a previously irregular one. Monitor serum digoxin and potassium levels (hypokalemia potentiates digoxin toxicity) to identify toxicity. Older adults are more likely than other patients to become toxic because of decreased renal excretion.

Any drug that increases the workload of the failing heart also increases its oxygen requirement. Be alert for the possibility that the patient may experience angina (chest pain) in response to digoxin.

Other Inotropic Drugs. Patients experiencing *acute* heart failure (HF) are candidates for IV drugs that increase contractility. For example, *beta-adrenergic agonists*, such as dobutamine (Dobutrex), are used for short-term treatment of *acute* episodes of HF. Dobutamine improves cardiac contractility and thus cardiac output and myocardial-systemic perfusion.

A more potent drug used for *acute* HF, milrinone (Primacor), functions as a vasodilator/inotropic medication with phosphodiesterase activity. Also known as a *phosphodiesterase inhibitor*, this drug increases cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), which enhances the entry of calcium into myocardial cells to increase contractile function. Like the beta-adrenergic agonists, Primacor is given IV.

Levosimendan (Simdax) is a calcium-sensitizing medication and a positive inotropic drug. It appears to bind to

troponin C in the heart muscle and therefore increases the contraction of the heart. Simdax is used most often in patients who have had or are at high risk for myocardial infarction.

Chapter 40 discusses inotropic drugs in more detail.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

An older adult taking digoxin and furosemide (Lasix) for chronic heart failure is admitted to the emergency department (ED) with an apical pulse of 52. A family member states that the client has fallen four times this week. What is the nurse's first action?

- Call the ED physician immediately.
- Draw a serum digoxin level.
- Assess for signs of hypokalemia.
- Establish the client's airway.

Beta-Adrenergic Blockers. Beta-adrenergic blockers (commonly referred to as “beta blockers”) improve the condition of some patients in HF. Prolonged exposure to increased levels of sympathetic stimulation and catecholamines worsens cardiac function. Beta-adrenergic blockade reverses this effect, improving morbidity, mortality, and quality of life for patients in HF.

Beta blockers must be started slowly for HF. *Patients in acute HF should not be started on these drugs.* Carvedilol (Coreg), metoprolol (Lopressor, Betaloc ) and bisoprolol (Zebeta) are approved for treatment of *chronic* HF. The first dose is extremely low. Monitor the patient either in the hospital or in the health care provider's office to assess for bradycardia or hypotension after the first dose is given.

Instruct the patient to weigh daily and to report any signs of worsening HF immediately. The health care provider gradually increases the drug dose if HF worsens. The patient is evaluated at least weekly for changes in BP, pulse, activity tolerance, and orthopnea. A modest drop in BP is acceptable if he or she remains asymptomatic and can stand without experiencing dizziness or a further drop in BP. The resting heart rate (HR) should remain between 55 and 60 and increase slightly with exercise. Activity tolerance improves, and less orthopnea is experienced. Most patients with mild and moderate HF demonstrate improved ejection fraction, decreased hospital admissions, and improvement in symptoms when beta blockers are added to their treatment regimens. The benefits of this therapy are seen over a long period rather than immediately.

For patients with *diastolic* HF, drug therapy has not been as effective. Calcium channel blockers, ACE inhibitors, and beta blockers have been used with various degrees of success.

Other Nonsurgical Options. In addition to drug therapy, other nonsurgical options, both noninvasive and invasive, may be used and include:

- Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)
- Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT)
- Investigative gene therapy

Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) is a respiratory treatment that improves obstructive sleep apnea in patients with HF. It also improves cardiac output (CO) and ejection fraction (EF) by decreasing afterload and preload, blood pressure (BP), and dysrhythmias. Sleep apnea is directly correlated with coronary artery disease as a result of diminished

oxygen supply to the heart during apneic episodes. This respiratory problem is discussed in detail in [Chapter 31](#).

Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT), also called *biventricular pacing*, uses a permanent pacemaker alone or is combined with an implantable cardioverter/defibrillator. Electrical stimulation causes more synchronous ventricular contractions to improve EF, CO, and mean arterial pressure. This modality is indicated for patients with class III or IV HF and an EF of less than 35%. CRT improves the patient's ability to perform ADLs. [Chapter 36](#) discusses pacing in more detail.

Gene therapy may be indicated for patients in end-stage HF who are not candidates for heart transplantation. This therapy replaces damaged genes with normal or modified genes by a series of injections of growth factor into the left ventricle. Although still investigative, this therapy may result in improved exercise tolerance and regrowth of cardiac cells.

Surgical Management. Heart transplantation is still the ultimate choice for end-stage HF (see discussion on p. 768). Several surgical procedures are available to improve CO in patients who are *not* candidates for a transplant or are awaiting transplant.

Ventricular Assist Devices. Patients with debilitating end-stage heart failure are often sent home on drug therapy and referred to hospice. However, ventricular assist devices (VADs) can dramatically improve the lives of many patients (Osaki et al., 2008). In this procedure, a mechanical pump is implanted to work with the patient's own heart ([Fig. 37-2](#)). Both left and right VADs are available, depending on the type of heart failure the patient has. Those with end-stage kidney disease, severe chronic lung disease, clotting disorders, and infections that do not respond to antibiotics are not candidates for this surgery. Postoperative complications include bleeding, infective endocarditis, ventricular dysrhythmias, and stroke. Nursing care is similar to that described for cardiac surgery in [Chapter 40](#).

Ventricular assist devices can be used short-term while awaiting heart transplantation (a "bridge-to-transplant" procedure) or long-term (destination therapy). Most patients survive with a VAD until a transplant is available. The evidence shows that patients who have long-term devices live

longer and have an improved quality of life (Rogers et al., 2010).

Other Surgical Therapies. Heart failure causes ventricular remodeling, or dilation, which worsens as the disease progresses. Several new therapies are used to reshape the left ventricle in patients with HF. Perioperative care is similar to that for the patient having a coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) (see [Chapter 40](#)). The most common ventricular reconstructive procedures include:

- Partial left ventriculectomy (PLV)
- Endoventricular circular patch cardioplasty
- Acorn cardiac support device
- Myosplint

Also known as **heart reduction surgery**, PLV (sometimes referred to as the *Batista procedure*) involves removing a triangle-shaped section of the weakened heart in the left lateral ventricle to reduce the ventricle's diameter and decrease wall tension. In **endoventricular circular patch cardioplasty**, the surgeon removes portions of the cardiac septum and left ventricular wall and grafts a circular patch (synthetic or autologous) into the opening. This procedure provides a more normal shape to the left ventricle to improve the heart's ejection fraction (EF) and cardiac output (CO).

The **Acorn cardiac support device** is a polyester mesh jacket that is placed over the ventricles to provide support and to avoid overstretching the myocardial muscle. The material for the jacket has been used for other procedures, such as vascular grafts. The jacket appears to reduce hypertrophy of the heart muscle and assists with improvement of the EF.

The **myosplint** has recently been approved for use in the United States. Electrical stimulation of several tension pads (splints) on the outside of the ventricle changes it to a more normal shape to improve function.

Decreasing Fatigue and Weakness

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The expected outcome is that the patient will have decreased fatigue and weakness and will gain energy as heart failure improves.

Interventions. The patient in severe heart failure (HF) initially requires physical and emotional rest for *energy management*. On the first day of hospitalization, he or she may sit up in a chair for meals and perform basic leg exercises while out of bed. Organize nursing care to allow periods of rest. Collaborate with the interdisciplinary team to observe and document the patient's physiologic response to activity.

As the patient's condition improves, the physical therapist (PT) starts ambulation, usually on hospital day 2. The PT or nurse checks the BP, pulse, and oxygen saturation before and after the activity. A BP change of more than 20 mm Hg or a pulse increase of more than 20 beats per minute may indicate that the activity is too stressful. Other indications of activity intolerance include dyspnea, fatigue, and chest pain. Ask a patient having any of these symptoms to rate how hard he or she has been working on a scale of 1 to 20, with 20 being the maximum perceived exertion. If the patient rates the exertion more than 12, remind him or her to slow down. If activity is tolerated, the PT steadily increases the activity level until the patient is ambulating 200 to 400 feet several times per day.

If the patient is able, the PT (or assistive nursing or PT personnel) might time him or her for 6 minutes while walking at a comfortable pace. The distance the patient can walk can

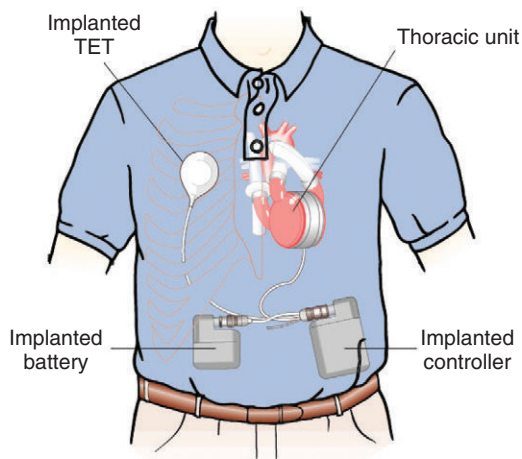


FIG. 37-2 The AbioCor Implantable Replacement Heart has four main parts that are placed inside the body. TET, Trans-telephonic electrocardiographic transmission device.

be used to determine his or her functional level and activity plan.

Preventing or Managing Pulmonary Edema

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The most desirable outcome is that the patient will not develop pulmonary edema as a result of heart failure (HF). However, if the patient progresses to pulmonary edema, the expected outcome is that he or she will recover from this complication without other complications.

Interventions. Monitor for manifestations of acute pulmonary edema, a life-threatening event that can result from severe HF (with fluid overload), acute myocardial infarction (MI), mitral valve disease, and possibly dysrhythmias. In pulmonary edema, the left ventricle fails to eject sufficient blood and pressure increases in the lungs as a result. The increased pressure causes fluid to leak across the pulmonary capillaries and into the lung airways and tissues.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Assess for and report early manifestations, such as crackles in the lung bases, dyspnea at rest, disorientation, and confusion, especially in older patients. Document the precise location of the crackles because the level of the fluid progresses from the bases to higher levels in the lungs when the condition worsens. The patient in acute pulmonary edema is also typically extremely anxious, tachycardic, and struggling for air. As pulmonary edema becomes more severe, he or she may have a moist cough productive of frothy, blood-tinged sputum and his or her skin may be cold, clammy, or cyanotic. *Chart 37-3* lists the major clinical manifestations of this complication.

The patient diagnosed with pulmonary edema is admitted to the acute care hospital, often in a critical care unit. Reassure the patient and family that his or her distress will decrease with proper management.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient is not hypotensive, place him or her in a sitting (high Fowler's) position with his or her legs down to decrease venous return to the heart. The *priority nursing action* is to administer high-flow oxygen therapy at 5 to 6 L/min by facemask or at 10 to 15 L/min by non-rebreather mask with reservoir. Apply a pulse oximeter and titrate the oxygen flow to keep the patient's oxygen saturation above 90%. If supplemental oxygen does not resolve the patient's respiratory distress, collaborate with the respiratory therapist, if available, for more aggressive therapy, such as continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) or bi-level positive airway pressure (BIPAP) ventilation. Intubation and mechanical ventilation may be needed for some patients.

If the patient's systolic blood pressure is above 100, give sublingual nitroglycerin (NTG) to decrease afterload and preload every 5 minutes for three doses while establishing IV access for additional drug therapy (Donlan et al., 2009). The health care provider prescribes rapid-acting diuretics, such as Lasix or Bumex. Give Lasix IV push (IVP) over 1 to 2 minutes, usually at a starting dose of 20 to 40 mg for diuretic-naïve patients, and another 40 mg if needed in 30 minutes. Patients already on oral diuretic therapy should be given an amount

CHART 37-3 KEY FEATURES

Pulmonary Edema

- Crackles
- Dyspnea at rest
- Disorientation or acute confusion (especially in older adults as early symptom)
- Tachycardia
- Hypertension or hypotension
- Reduced urinary output
- Cough with frothy, pink-tinged sputum
- Premature ventricular contractions and other dysrhythmias
- Anxiety
- Restlessness
- Lethargy

that is the same or doubled in milligrams as initial IV diuretic therapy. Administer each increment of 40 mg of Lasix over 1 to 2 minutes to avoid ototoxicity. Bumex may be administered 1 to 2 mg IVP or as a continuous infusion to provide consistent fluid removal over 24 hours. Monitor vital signs frequently, at least every 30 to 60 minutes.

If the patient's blood pressure is adequate, IV morphine sulfate may be prescribed, 1 to 2 mg at a time, to reduce venous return (preload), decrease anxiety, and reduce the work of breathing. Monitor respiratory rate and BP closely. Other drugs, such as IV NTG and drugs to treat HF, may be administered. Monitor the patient's vital signs closely (especially BP) while these drugs are being given.

In severe cases of fluid overload and renal dysfunction or diuretic resistance, ultrafiltration may be used. The benefits of ultrafiltration include:

- Decrease in filling pressures
- Decrease in pulmonary arterial pressure
- Increase in cardiac index
- Reduction in norepinephrine, rennin, and aldosterone

Ultrafiltration can remove up to 500 mL/hr and uses a blood flow rate of 10 to 40 mL/hr. Peripheral lines are used for IV access. See *Chapter 71* for discussion of this procedure and nursing implications.

? DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Informatics

A 64-year-old man is admitted to the telemetry unit with left-sided heart failure, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and hypertension. He is married with two grown children who live out of state. During your evening assessment, you observe that his color is slightly pale and he is having problems breathing. Upon further assessment, you note that he seems a little confused and is oriented only to person.

1. What evidence-based actions will you plan to implement at this time based on your observations? What is the source of the evidence?
2. The patient's physician prescribes an initial dose of furosemide (Lasix) 40 mg IVP. What assessments will you perform to determine if the drug was effective?
3. What will you tell the patient's wife about his condition at this time? Should the patient's wife be present during his emergency treatment? Why or why not?
4. After two doses of Lasix, the patient's condition improves. What data will you document in the electronic medical record (EMR)?

Community-Based Care

Patients who are not adequately prepared for discharge or do not have adequate community support and follow-up for self-management are at high risk for repeated hospital admissions for heart failure (HF). Collaborate with the case manager or care coordinator to assess the patient's needs for health care resources.

The Heart Failure Core Measure Set must be determined for hospitals accredited by The Joint Commission. These measures include that the patient with heart failure have:

- Discharge instructions
- Evaluation of left ventricular systolic function
- An ACEI or ARB for left ventricular systolic dysfunction
- Adult smoking cessation advice/counseling (if appropriate)

An inability to obtain help in activities such as food shopping and obtaining medications is a major contributor to hospital readmission. If home support is available, the patient may be discharged home in the care of a family member or other caregiver. Home care nurses may direct the care and assess for adherence to the discharge plan; home health aides may provide assistance with ADLs for a short time. If the patient has multiple health problems or has been severely compromised by heart disease, he or she may require admission to a skilled unit for either transitional or long-term care.

Home Care Management

The focus of the home care nurse's interventions is assessment and health teaching, which are reimbursable by Medicare and other third-party payers. [Chart 37-4](#) lists the major areas of home health assessment.

Patients with chronic HF need to make many adjustments in their lifestyles. They must adhere to the collaborative plan of care that includes dietary restrictions, activity prescriptions, and drug therapy. They need careful, concise explanations of the self-management plan. The community-based nurse in any setting encourages the patient to verbalize fears and concerns about his or her illness and assists in exploring coping skills. Patient participation in self-management can help alleviate and control symptoms.

Teaching for Self-Management

Health teaching is essential for promoting self-management (also called *self-care*). Many patients are readmitted to hospitals because they do not maintain their prescribed treatment plan, including lifestyle changes. Because of the need for extensive discharge instructions, most hospitals are using teaching packets with videos, CDs, and easy-to-read information about the importance of adhering to specific self-management strategies at home. One standardized and commonly used self-management plan called MAWDS is outlined in [Table 37-4](#). Medication reconciliation is also important to be sure that similar drugs are not being prescribed and that patients meet the Core Measure requirements for HF.

Ambulatory care clinics for heart failure patients are also becoming increasingly common. Their purpose is to offer assessments, drug therapy, and health teaching. Some nurses specialize in caring for patients with health failure.

Activity Schedule. Encourage patients with heart failure (HF) to stay as active as possible and to develop a regular

exercise regimen (e.g., home walking program). However, teach the patient not to overdo it. Medicare and third-party payers typically do not reimburse for cardiac rehabilitation for HF. Paying for a cardiac rehabilitation program out of pocket is expensive.

CHART 37-4 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Heart Failure

Assess for signs of heart failure, including:

- Changes in vital signs (heart rate >100 beats/min at rest, new atrial fibrillation, blood pressure <90 or >150 systolic)
- Indications of poor tissue perfusion:
 - Fatigue
 - Angina
 - Activity intolerance
 - Changes in mental status
 - Pallor or cyanosis
 - Cool extremities
- Indications of congestion:
 - Presence of cough or dyspnea
 - Weight gain
 - Jugular venous distention and peripheral edema

Assess functional ability, including:

- Performance of ADLs
- Mobility and ambulation (review frequency and duration of walking, development of symptoms, and pulse rate)
- Cognitive ability

Assess nutritional status, including:

- Food and fluid intake
- Intake of sodium-rich foods
- Alcohol consumption
- Skin turgor

Assess home environment, including:

- Safety hazards, especially related to oxygen therapy
- Structural barriers affecting functional ability
- Social support (family, home health services)

Assess the patient's adherence and understanding of illness and its treatment, including:

- Signs and symptoms to report to health care provider
- Dosages, effects, and side or toxic effects of medications
- When to report for laboratory and health care provider visits
- Ability to accurately weigh self on scale
- Presence of advance directive
- Use of home oxygen, if appropriate

Assess patient and caregiver coping skills

TABLE 37-4 HEART FAILURE SELF-MANAGEMENT HEALTH TEACHING (MAWDS)

Medications:

- Take medications as prescribed, and do not run out.
- Know the purpose and side effects of each drug.
- Avoid NSAIDs to prevent sodium and fluid retention.

Activity:

- Stay as active as possible, but don't overdo it.
- Know your limits.
- Be able to carry on a conversation while exercising.

Weight:

- Weigh each day at the same time on the same scale to monitor for fluid retention.

Diet:

- Limit daily sodium intake to 2 to 3 grams as prescribed.
- Limit daily fluid intake to 2 liters.

Symptoms:

- Note any new or worsening symptoms, and notify the health care provider immediately.

Remind patients with persistent crackles and uncontrolled edema to begin exercise after their condition stabilizes. When exercise is indicated, teach the patient to begin walking 200 to 400 feet per day. At home the patient should try to walk at least three times a week and should slowly increase the amount of time walked over several months. If chest pain or severe dyspnea occurs while exercising or the patient has fatigue the next day, he or she is probably advancing the activity too quickly and should slow down. Encourage him or her to keep a diary that documents the time and duration of each exercise session, as well as HR and any symptoms that occur with exercise.

Indications of Worsening or Recurrent Heart Failure.

Many patients who are readmitted to hospitals for treatment of HF fail to seek medical attention promptly when symptoms recur.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Per the HF Core Measure for discharge instructions, teach the patient and caregiver to immediately report to the health care provider the occurrence of *any* of these symptoms, which could indicate worsening or recurrent heart failure:

- Rapid weight gain (3 lb in a week or 1 to 2 lb overnight)
- Decrease in exercise tolerance lasting 2 to 3 days
- Cold symptoms (cough) lasting more than 3 to 5 days
- Excessive awakening at night to urinate
- Development of dyspnea or angina at rest or worsening angina
- Increased swelling in the feet, ankles, or hands

Drug Therapy. Provide oral, written, and video instructions about the drug regimen. Teach the caregiver and patient how to count a pulse rate, especially if the patient is on digoxin or beta blockers. [Chart 37-5](#) lists instructions for the patient taking either of these drugs at home.

Advise the patient taking diuretics to take them in the morning to avoid waking during the night for voiding. After determining whether he or she has a weight scale and can use it, emphasize the importance of weighing each morning at

the same time. Daily weights indicate whether the patient is losing or retaining fluid. Some patients are taught to use a sliding scale to adjust their daily diuretic dose depending on their daily weight, similar to the way a diabetic patient adjusts an insulin dose based on the capillary glucose level.

Teach patients taking ACEIs or ARBs to move slowly when changing positions, especially from a lying to a sitting position. Remind them to report dizziness, light-headedness, and cough to the health care provider.

Serum potassium level and renal function are monitored at least every few months for patients taking diuretics and ACE inhibitors or ARBs. Diuretics, especially loop diuretics such as Lasix and Bumex, deplete potassium and often cause hypokalemia. Conversely, ACE inhibitors, ARBs, or potassium-sparing diuretics may result in potassium retention. If serum potassium levels drop below 4.0 mEq/L, the health care provider may prescribe potassium supplements or add a potassium-sparing diuretic such as spironolactone (Aldactone). Provide information about potassium-rich foods to include in the diet for patients at risk for hypokalemia (see [Chapter 13](#)).

Nutrition Therapy. Remind patients with chronic HF to restrict their dietary sodium. In collaboration with the home care nurse or dietitian, provide written instructions on low- or restricted-sodium diets. A 3-g sodium diet is recommended for *mild to moderate* disease. Remind the patient to avoid salty foods and table salt. Patients usually find this diet acceptable and fairly easy to follow.

A 2-g sodium diet may be needed for patients with *severe* HF. They should not add salt during or after meal preparation, avoid milk and milk products, use few canned or prepared foods, and read food labels to determine sodium content. This diet is not easily tolerated for many patients, and the cost of low-sodium foods can be a financial burden.

Commercial salt substitutes typically contain potassium. Teach patients that their renal status and serum potassium level must be evaluated using these products. Suggest that patients try lemon, spices, and herbs to enhance the flavor of low-salt foods.

Advance Directives. About 50% of deaths from HF are sudden—many without any warning or worsening of symptoms. Assess whether the patient has written advance directives. If not, provide information about them during his or her hospital stay. Because most of these deaths occur at home, it is important for the health care provider or home care nurse to discuss advance directives with the patient and family. The family should be prepared to act in agreement with the patient's wishes in the event of cardiac arrest. If resuscitation is desired, be sure that the family knows how to activate the emergency medical system (EMS) and how to provide cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) until an ambulance arrives. If CPR is not desired, the patient, family, and nurse plan how the family will respond. For some patients with end-stage disease, hospice care is an option. [Chapter 9](#) discusses hospice and end-of-life care in detail.

Health Care Resources

A home care nurse, ambulatory care clinic, or nurse-led follow-up program may be needed to assess the patient's adherence to drug and nutrition therapy and to monitor for worsening or recurrent HF. Many large hospitals use follow-up telephone calls or teleconferencing/videoconferencing devices

CHART 37-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Beta Blocker/Digoxin Therapy

- Establish same time of day to take this medication every day.
- Continue taking this medication unless your health care provider tells you to stop.
- Do not take digoxin at the same time as antacids or cathartics (laxatives).
- Take your pulse rate before taking each dose of digoxin. Notify your health care provider of a change in pulse rate (60 to 100 beats/min is normal) or rhythm, as well as increasing fatigue, muscle weakness, confusion, or loss of appetite (signs of digoxin toxicity).
- If you forget to take a dose, it may be delayed a few hours. However, if you do not remember it until the next day, you should take only your usual daily dose.
- Report for scheduled laboratory tests (e.g., potassium and digoxin levels).
- If potassium supplements are prescribed, continue the dose until told to stop by your health care provider.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Does Utilizing Telephone Visits in Addition to Home Health Care Visits Improve the Quality of Life in Stage III/IV Heart Failure Patients?

Duffy, J., Hoskins, L., & Dudley-Brown, S. (2009). Improving outcomes for older adults with heart failure: A randomized trial using a theory-guided nursing intervention. *Journal of Nursing Care Quality*, 25(1), 56-64.

The purposes of this randomized-controlled research to study the effectiveness of follow-up phone visits for patients with heart failure were to:

1. Determine the patient population.
2. Assess the study methods.
3. Evaluate the results of the intervention on intended patient outcomes.
4. Examine the resources required to implement the intervention.
5. Identify unanticipated problems or operational difficulties.

The sample consisted of 32 patients with stage III/IV heart failure: 15 enrolled in the intervention group and 17 in the control. Patients in the intervention group were assigned to one of seven intervention nurses. The intervention nurse followed the same patient throughout the study to monitor symptoms and provide education and emotional support via telephone. In addition, the intervention group received standard home health visits. The control group was assigned to a home health nurse and received standard care. Every patient completed the *Living with Heart Failure* questionnaire and *Home Care Client Satisfaction Instrument-Revised* on enrollment and at day 60.

The results showed that two patients from the control group were readmitted and one was transferred to a skilled nursing facility as compared with the intervention group, in which one patient was readmitted. The quality-of-life scores at 60 days revealed the control group at 48 (SD = 30.8) and the intervention group at 44.3 (SD = 26.8). Although this was an improvement of 8.6%, it did not have statistical significance. The intervention group reported greater satisfaction with care (M = 55.27, SD = 5.55) at 60 days as compared with the control (M = 51.44, SD = 6.63).

Level of Evidence: 1

Although the sample size was small, the study was a randomized-controlled study from which conclusions about practice can be drawn.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

One limitation to this study is that only patients who were eligible for home care services were included in the study. There is a large population of stage III/IV heart failure patients discharged from hospitals who may benefit from services but do not have a high quality of life. This study begins to look at different models of posthospital care of the heart failure patient. As this population expands, the desired outcomes for care continue to be prevention of readmission and increased quality of care at home. Nurses are in a prime position to research the best way to provide this care. Additional studies in this area are needed.

to monitor patients at home. Teleconferencing can also assess the patient's heart and lung sounds. These follow-up processes have been very successful in decreasing repeated hospital stays for chronic HF patients (see the Evidence-Based box above).

In addition to home care support, other resources are available for patient education and family support. The American Heart Association is an excellent community resource for print and electronic pamphlets, books, newsletters, and videotapes or DVDs related to HF and heart disease. The organization also provides referrals to various local support groups for patients and their caregivers.

For equipment needs (e.g., home oxygen therapy, hospital bed), medical supply companies provide setup and maintenance services. [Chapter 30](#) provides a detailed description of home oxygen therapy.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Quality Improvement; Informatics

At a recent staff meeting, the telemetry nurse manager reports that the rate of repeated hospitalizations for patients with chronic heart failure has increased 75% in the past 6 months. As a staff nurse, you agree to be part of the unit care improvement (CI) team to examine the cause(s) of the increase and make evidence-based recommendations for improving the outcomes for this patient population. Specific patient data and summaries are available for the CI team to review as needed.

1. Where will your team begin with this process during the first meeting of the team?
2. Formulate a PICOT clinical question using the format described in [Chapter 7](#).
3. What Internet sites will your team use to determine best practices for decreasing repeated hospital stays and why?
4. How will your team interpret and use the evidence that you obtain? (See [Chapter 7](#) for help.)
5. After your team assembles and analyzes the evidence to determine best practices, what will be done with the information?
6. How will you know if the plan of action to improve care was effective?

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with HF on the basis of the identified patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Have adequate pulmonary tissue perfusion
- Have increased cardiac pump effectiveness
- Take actions to manage energy
- Be free of pulmonary edema

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Acquired valvular dysfunctions include mitral stenosis, mitral regurgitation, mitral valve prolapse, aortic stenosis, and aortic regurgitation ([Chart 37-6](#)). The tricuspid valve is not affected often and may occur following endocarditis in IV drug abusers.

Mitral Stenosis

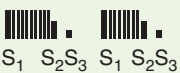
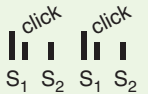
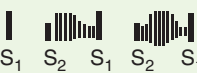
Mitral stenosis usually results from rheumatic carditis, which can cause valve thickening by fibrosis and calcification. Rheumatic fever is the most common cause of the problem. In industrialized nations, congenital anomalies affect the majority of patients with mitral stenosis ([Ray, 2010](#)).

In mitral stenosis, the valve leaflets fuse and become stiff and the chordae tendineae contract and shorten. The valve opening narrows, preventing normal blood flow from the left atrium to the left ventricle. As a result of these changes, left atrial pressure rises, the left atrium dilates, pulmonary artery pressures increase, and the right ventricle hypertrophies.

Pulmonary congestion and right-sided heart failure (HF) occur first. Later, when the left ventricle receives insufficient blood volume, preload is decreased and cardiac output (CO) falls.

CHART 37-6 KEY FEATURES

Valvular Heart Disease

MITRAL STENOSIS	MITRAL REGURGITATION	MITRAL VALVE PROLAPSE	AORTIC STENOSIS	AORTIC REGURGITATION
Fatigue Dyspnea on exertion Orthopnea Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea Hemoptysis Hepatomegaly Neck vein distention Pitting edema Atrial fibrillation Rumbling, apical diastolic murmur	Fatigue Dyspnea on exertion Orthopnea Palpitations Atrial fibrillation Neck vein distention Pitting edema High-pitched holosystolic murmur	Atypical chest pain Dizziness, syncope Palpitations Atrial tachycardia Ventricular tachycardia Systolic click	Dyspnea on exertion Angina Syncope on exertion Fatigue Orthopnea Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea Harsh, systolic crescendo-decrescendo murmur	Palpitations Dyspnea Orthopnea Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea Fatigue Angina Sinus tachycardia Blowing, decrescendo diastolic murmur
 S ₁ S ₂ S ₁ S ₂ S ₁	 S ₁ S ₂ S ₃ S ₁ S ₂ S ₃	 S ₁ S ₂ S ₁ S ₂	 S ₁ S ₂ S ₁ S ₂	 S ₁ S ₂ S ₁ S ₂ S ₁

People with mild mitral stenosis are usually asymptomatic. As the valvular orifice narrows and pressure in the lungs increases, the patient experiences dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (sudden dyspnea at night), palpitations, and dry cough. Hemoptysis (coughing up blood) and pulmonary edema occur as pulmonary hypertension and congestion progress. Right-sided HF can cause hepatomegaly (enlarged liver), neck vein distention, and pitting dependent edema late in the disorder.

On palpation, the pulse may be normal, rapid, or irregularly irregular (as in atrial fibrillation). Because the development of atrial fibrillation indicates that the patient may decompensate, the physician should be notified immediately of the development of an irregularly irregular rhythm. A rumbling, apical diastolic murmur is noted on auscultation.

Mitral Regurgitation (Insufficiency)

The fibrotic and calcific changes occurring in **mitral regurgitation** (insufficiency) prevent the mitral valve from closing completely during *systole*. Incomplete closure of the valve allows the backflow of blood into the left atrium when the left ventricle contracts (Ray, 2010). During *diastole*, regurgitant output again flows from the left atrium to the left ventricle along with the normal blood flow. The increased volume must be ejected during the next systole. To compensate for the increased volume and pressure, the left atrium and ventricle dilate and hypertrophy.

The primary causes of mitral regurgitation are “degenerative” due to aging and infective endocarditis (Ray, 2010). Other causes include papillary muscle dysfunction or rupture resulting from ischemic heart disease or congenital anomalies. Rheumatic heart disease is the number-one cause in developing nations. When it results from rheumatic heart disease, it usually coexists with some degree of mitral stenosis; it affects women more often than men.

Mitral regurgitation usually progresses slowly; patients may remain symptom-free for decades. Symptoms begin to occur when the left ventricle fails in response to chronic blood volume overload. They include fatigue and chronic weakness as a result of reduced cardiac output (CO). Dyspnea on exertion and orthopnea develop later. A significant number

of patients report anxiety, atypical chest pains, and palpitations. Assessment may reveal normal BP, atrial fibrillation, or changes in respirations characteristic of left ventricular failure.

When right-sided HF develops, the neck veins become distended, the liver enlarges (hepatomegaly), and pitting edema develops. A high-pitched systolic murmur at the apex, with radiation to the left axilla, is heard on auscultation. Severe regurgitation often exhibits a third heart sound (S₃).

Mitral Valve Prolapse

Mitral valve prolapse (MVP) occurs because the valvular leaflets enlarge and prolapse into the left atrium during systole. This abnormality is usually benign but may progress to pronounced mitral regurgitation.

The etiology of MVP is variable and has been associated with conditions such as Marfan syndrome and other congenital cardiac defects (see Chapter 20 for a brief discussion of Marfan syndrome). MVP also has a familial tendency. Usually, however, no other cardiac abnormality is found.

Most patients with MVP are asymptomatic. However, some may report chest pain, palpitations, or exercise intolerance. Chest pain is usually atypical with patients describing a sharp pain localized to the left side of the chest. Dizziness, **syncope** (“blackouts”), and palpitations may be associated with atrial or ventricular dysrhythmias.

A normal heart rate and BP are usually found on physical examination. A midsystolic click and a late systolic murmur may be heard at the apex of the heart. The intensity of the murmur is not related to the severity of the prolapse.

Aortic Stenosis

Aortic stenosis is the most common cardiac valve dysfunction in the United States and is often considered a disease of “wear and tear.” In **aortic stenosis**, the aortic valve orifice narrows and obstructs left ventricular outflow during systole. This increased resistance to ejection or afterload results in ventricular hypertrophy. As stenosis worsens, cardiac output becomes fixed and cannot increase to meet the demands of the body during exertion. Symptoms then develop. Eventually the left ventricle fails, blood backs up in the left atrium, and

the pulmonary system becomes congested. Right-sided HF can occur late in the disease. *When the surface area of the valve becomes 1 cm or less, surgery is indicated on an urgent basis!*

Congenital bicuspid or unicuspid aortic valves are the primary causes for aortic stenosis in many patients. Rheumatic aortic stenosis occurs with rheumatic disease of the mitral valve and develops in young and middle-aged adults. Atherosclerosis and degenerative calcification of the aortic valve are the major causative factors in older adults. *Aortic stenosis has become the most common valvular disorder in all countries with aging populations.*

The classic symptoms of aortic stenosis result from fixed cardiac output: dyspnea, angina, and syncope occurring on exertion. When cardiac output falls in the late stages of the disease, the patient experiences marked fatigue, debilitation, and peripheral cyanosis. A narrow pulse pressure is noted when the BP is measured. A diamond-shaped, systolic crescendo-decrescendo murmur is usually noted on auscultation.

Aortic Regurgitation (Insufficiency)

In patients with **aortic regurgitation**, the aortic valve leaflets do not close properly during diastole and the *annulus* (the valve ring that attaches to the leaflets) may be dilated, loose, or deformed. This allows flow of blood from the aorta back into the left ventricle during diastole. The left ventricle, in compensation, dilates to accommodate the greater blood volume and eventually hypertrophies.

Aortic insufficiency usually results from nonrheumatic conditions such as infective endocarditis, congenital anatomic aortic valvular abnormalities, hypertension, and Marfan syndrome (a rare, generalized, systemic disease of connective tissue).

Patients with aortic regurgitation remain asymptomatic for many years because of the compensatory mechanisms of the left ventricle. As the disease progresses and left ventricular failure occurs, the major symptoms are exertional dyspnea, orthopnea, and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea. Palpitations may be noted with severe disease, especially when the patient lies on the left side. Nocturnal angina with diaphoresis often occurs.

On palpation, the nurse notes a “bounding” arterial pulse. The pulse pressure is usually widened, with an elevated systolic pressure and diminished diastolic pressure. The classic auscultatory finding is a high-pitched, blowing, decrescendo diastolic murmur.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

A patient with valvular disease may suddenly become ill or slowly develop symptoms over many years. Collect information about the patient’s family health history, including valvular or other forms of heart disease to which he or she may be genetically predisposed. Question about attacks of rheumatic fever and infective endocarditis, the specific dates when these occurred, and the use of antibiotics to prevent recurrence of these diseases. Also question the patient about a history of IV drug abuse, a common cause of infective endocarditis. Discuss the patient’s fatigue level and tolerated

activity level, the presence of angina or dyspnea, and the occurrence of palpitations, if present.

As part of the physical assessment, obtain vital signs, inspect for signs of edema, palpate and auscultate the heart and lungs, and palpate the peripheral pulses. Assessment findings are summarized in [Chart 37-6](#).

Echocardiography is the noninvasive diagnostic procedure of choice to visualize the structure and movement of the heart. The more invasive transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) or transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) is also performed to assess most valve problems. Exercise tolerance testing (ETT) and stress echocardiography are sometimes done to evaluate symptomatic response and assess functional capacity. With either mitral or aortic stenosis, cardiac catheterization may be indicated to assess the severity of the stenosis and its other effects on the heart.

In patients with mitral stenosis, the chest x-ray shows left atrial enlargement, prominent pulmonary arteries, and an enlarged right ventricle. In those with mitral regurgitation (insufficiency), the chest x-ray reveals an increased cardiac shadow, indicating left ventricular and left atrial enlargement.

In the later stages of aortic stenosis, the chest x-ray may show left ventricular enlargement and pulmonary congestion. Left atrial and left ventricular dilation appear on the chest x-ray of patients with aortic regurgitation (insufficiency). If HF is present, pulmonary venous congestion is also evident.

The health care provider also requests an ECG to assess abnormalities such as left ventricular hypertrophy, as seen with mitral regurgitation and aortic regurgitation, or right ventricular hypertrophy, as seen in severe mitral stenosis. Atrial fibrillation is a common finding in both mitral stenosis and mitral regurgitation and may develop in aortic stenosis because of left atrial dilation.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of valvular heart disease depends on which valve is affected and the degree of valve impairment. Some patients can be managed with yearly monitoring and drug therapy, whereas others require invasive procedures or heart surgery.

Nonsurgical Management

Nonsurgical management focuses on drug therapy and rest. During the course of valvular disease, left ventricular failure with pulmonary or systemic congestion may develop.

Drug Therapy. Diuretics, beta blockers, digoxin, and oxygen are often administered to improve the symptoms of heart failure (HF). Nitrates are administered cautiously to patients with aortic stenosis because of the potential for syncope associated with a reduction in left ventricular volume (preload). Vasodilators such as calcium channel blockers may

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients with valve disease the importance of prophylactic antibiotic therapy before any invasive procedure. Examples of these procedures include bronchoscopy, upper GI endoscopy, colonoscopy, genitourinary instrumentation, surgery, and dental procedures of any type.

be used to reduce the regurgitant flow for patients with aortic or mitral stenosis.

A major concern in valvular heart disease is maintaining cardiac output if atrial fibrillation develops. With mitral valvular disease, left ventricular filling is especially dependent on atrial contraction. When atrial fibrillation develops, there is no longer a single coordinated atrial contraction. Cardiac output can decrease, and HF may occur. Ineffective atrial contraction may also lead to the stasis of blood and thrombi in the left atrium. Monitor the patient for the development of an irregular rhythm, and notify the primary care provider if it develops. (See Chapter 36 for a detailed explanation of atrial fibrillation.)

The primary care provider usually starts drug therapy first to control the heart rate and maintain cardiac output (<100 is considered a controlled ventricular response). After those outcomes are met, drugs are used in an attempt to restore normal sinus rhythm (NSR). In some cases, the provider elects to convert a patient from atrial fibrillation to sinus rhythm using IV diltiazem (Cardizem, Apo-Diltiaz ) or amiodarone (Cordarone, Pacerone). Monitor the patient on a unit where both cardiac rhythm and BP can be closely watched. Synchronized countershock (cardioversion) may be attempted if atrial fibrillation is rapid, the patient's condition worsens, and the rhythm is unresponsive to medical treatment (see Chapter 36).

If the patient remains in atrial fibrillation, low-dose amiodarone (Cordarone) is often prescribed to slow ventricular rate. Procainamide hydrochloride (Pronestyl hydrochloride, Procanbid) may be added to the regimen. A beta-blocking agent (e.g., metoprolol) may also be considered to slow the ventricular response.

For valvular heart disease and chronic atrial fibrillation, anticoagulation with sodium warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ) is usually a part of the plan of care to prevent thrombus formation. Thrombi may form in the atria or on defective valve segments, resulting in systemic emboli. If a portion breaks off and travels to the brain, one or more strokes may occur. Assess the patient's baseline neurologic status, and monitor for changes. A transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is often done before synchronized cardioversion to ensure that thrombi are not present that could embolize when this therapy is administered.

Rest is often an important part of treatment. Activity may be limited because cardiac output (CO) cannot meet increased metabolic demands and angina or HF can result. A balance of rest and exercise is needed to prevent skeletal muscle atrophy and fatigue.

Noninvasive Heart Valve Reparative Procedures. Reparative procedures are becoming more popular because of continuing problems with thrombi, endocarditis, and left ventricular dysfunction after valve replacement. Reparative procedures do not result in a normal valve, but they usually “turn back the clock,” resulting in a more functional valve and an improvement in cardiac output. Turbulent blood flow through the valve may persist, and degeneration of the repaired valve is possible.

Balloon valvuloplasty, an invasive nonsurgical procedure, is possible for stenotic mitral and aortic valves; however, careful selection of patients is needed. It may be the initial treatment of choice for people with noncalcified, mobile mitral valves. Patients selected for *aortic* valvuloplasty are

usually older and are at high risk for surgical complications or have refused operative treatment. The benefits of this procedure for aortic stenosis tend to be short lived, rarely lasting longer than 6 months.

When performing *mitral* valvuloplasty, the physician passes a balloon catheter from the femoral vein, through the atrial septum, and to the mitral valve. The balloon is inflated to enlarge the mitral orifice. For *aortic* valvuloplasty, the physician inserts the catheter through the femoral artery and advances it to the aortic valve, where it is inflated to enlarge the orifice. The procedure usually offers immediate relief of symptoms because the balloon has dilated the orifice and improved leaflet mobility. The results are comparable with those of surgical commissurotomy for appropriately selected patients.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After valvuloplasty, observe the patient closely for bleeding from the catheter insertion site and institute post-angiogram precautions. Bleeding is likely because of the large size of the catheter. Assess for signs of a regurgitant valve by closely monitoring heart sounds, CO, and heart rhythm. Because vegetations (thrombi) may have been dislodged from the valve, observe for any indication of systemic emboli (see the *Infective Endocarditis* section, p. 763).

Surgical Management

Surgeries for patients with valvular heart disease include invasive reparative procedures and replacement. These procedures are performed after symptoms of left ventricular failure have developed but before irreversible dysfunction occurs. Surgical therapy is the *only* definitive treatment of *aortic stenosis* and is recommended when angina, syncope, or dyspnea on exertion develops.

Invasive Heart Valve Reparative Procedures. *Direct (open) commissurotomy* is accomplished with cardiopulmonary bypass during open heart surgery. The surgeon visualizes the valve, removes thrombi from the atria, incises the fused commissures (leaflets), and débrides calcium from the leaflets, widening the orifice.

Mitral valve annuloplasty (reconstruction) is the reparative procedure of choice for most patients with acquired mitral insufficiency. To make the annulus (the valve ring that attaches to and supports the leaflets) smaller, the surgeon may suture the leaflets to an annuloplasty ring or take tucks in the patient's annulus. Leaflet repair is often performed at the same time. Elongated leaflets may be shortened, and shortened leaflets may be repaired by lengthening the chordae that bind them in place. Perforated leaflets may be patched with synthetic grafts.

Annuloplasty and leaflet repair result in an annulus of the appropriate size and in leaflets that can close completely. Thus regurgitation is eliminated or markedly reduced.

Heart Valve Replacement Procedures. The development of a wide variety of *prosthetic* (synthetic) and *biologic* (tissue) valves has improved the surgical therapy and prognosis of valvular heart disease. Each type has advantages and disadvantages. An aortic valve can be replaced only with a prosthetic valve for symptomatic adults with aortic stenosis and aortic insufficiency. A biologic valve cannot be used because of the high pressure within the aorta.

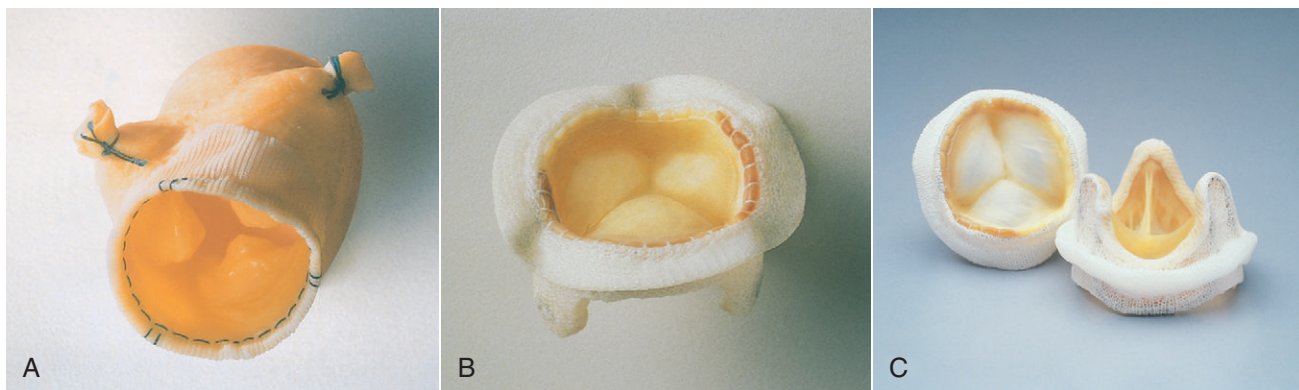


FIG. 37-3 Examples of biologic (tissue) heart valves. **A**, Freestyle, a stentless pig valve with no frame. **B**, Hancock II, a stented pig valve. **C**, Carpentier-Edwards pericardial bioprosthesis.

Biologic valve replacements may be **xenograft** (from other species), such as a porcine valve (from a pig) (Fig. 37-3) or a bovine valve (from a cow). Because tissue valves are associated with little risk for clot formation, long-term anticoagulation is *not* indicated. Xenografts are not as durable as prosthetic valves and usually must be replaced every 7 to 10 years. The durability of the graft is related to the age of the recipient. Calcium in the blood, which is present in larger quantities in younger patients, breaks down the valves. The older the patient, the longer the xenograft will last. Valves donated from human cadavers and **pulmonary autografts** (relocation of the patient's own pulmonary valve to the aortic position [Ross procedure]) are also being used for valve replacement.

Patients having a valve replacement have open heart surgery similar to the procedure for a coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) (see Chapter 40). Ideally, surgery is an elective and planned procedure. Inform the patient and family about the management of postoperative pain, incision care, and strategies to prevent respiratory complications (see Chapters 16 and 18). Teach patients receiving oral anticoagulants to stop taking them before surgery, usually at least 72 hours before the procedure. Patients also need to have a preoperative dental examination. If dental caries or periodontal disease is present, these problems must be resolved before valve replacement.

Postoperative nursing interventions for patients with valve replacement are similar to those for a CABG (see Chapter 40).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Patients with mitral stenosis often have pulmonary hypertension and stiff lungs. Therefore monitor respiratory status closely during weaning from the ventilator. Be especially alert for bleeding in those with aortic valve replacements because of a higher risk for postoperative hemorrhage. If heart rate or blood pressure decreases, call the Rapid Response Team or other health care provider immediately!

Patients with valve replacements are also more likely to have significant reductions in cardiac output (CO) after surgery, especially those with aortic stenosis or left ventricular failure from mitral valve disease. Carefully monitor cardiac output (CO) and assess for indications of heart failure (HF). Report any manifestations of HF to the surgeon immediately

and prepare for collaborative management (see earlier discussion on **heart failure** in this chapter).

Community-Based Care

The patient with valvular heart disease may be discharged home on medical therapy or postoperatively after valve repair or replacement. Because fatigue is a common problem, ensure that the home environment can provide rest while moving the patient toward increased activity levels. Some older adults with aortic stenosis live in long-term care settings.

Home Care Management

A home care nurse may be needed to help the patient adhere to drug therapy and activity schedules and to detect any problems, particularly with anticoagulant therapy. Patients who have undergone surgery may require a nurse for assistance with incision care. A home care aide may assist with ADLs if the patient lives alone or is older.

Teaching for Self-Management

The teaching plan for the patient with valvular heart disease includes:

- The disease process and the possibility of heart failure
- Drug therapy, including diuretics, vasodilators, beta blockers, calcium channel blockers, antibiotics, and anticoagulants
- The prophylactic use of antibiotics
- A plan of activity and rest to conserve energy

Because patients with defective or repaired valves are at risk for infective endocarditis, teach them to adhere to the precautions described for endocarditis. *Remind them to inform all health care providers of the valvular heart disease history. Tell providers that they require antibiotic administration before all invasive procedures and tests.* Health teaching for the patient is summarized in Chart 37-7.

Patients who have had valve replacements with prosthetic valves require lifetime prophylactic anticoagulation therapy to prevent thrombus formation. Teach patients taking anticoagulants how to manage their drug therapy successfully, including nutritional considerations (if taking warfarin) and the prevention of bleeding. For example, the patient should be taught to avoid foods high in vitamin K, especially dark green leafy vegetables, and to use an electric razor to avoid skin cuts. In addition, teach him or her to report any bleeding or excessive bruising to the health care provider. Patients who

CHART 37-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Valvular Heart Disease

- Notify all your health care providers that you have a defective heart valve.
- Remind the health care provider of your valvular problem when you have any dental work (cleaning, filling, extraction), any examination by instrument (cystoscopy, endoscopy, sigmoidoscopy), or any other invasive procedure (arteriogram, surgery).
- Request antibiotic prophylaxis before and after these procedures if the health care provider does not offer it.
- Clean all wounds and apply antibiotic ointment to prevent infection.
- Notify your health care provider immediately if you experience fever, petechiae (pinpoint red dots on your skin), or shortness of breath.

have had prosthetic valve replacement need to take anticoagulants for the rest of their lives.

For patients who have surgery, reinforce how to care for the sternal incision and instruct them to watch for and report any fever, drainage, or redness at the site. Most patients can usually return to normal activity after 6 weeks but should avoid heavy physical activity involving their upper extremities for 3 to 6 months to allow the incision to heal. Those who have had valvular surgery should also avoid invasive dental procedures for 6 months because of the potential for endocarditis. Those with prosthetic valves need to avoid any procedure using magnetic resonance unless the newest technology is available. Remind patients to obtain a medical alert bracelet, card, or necklace to indicate they have a valve replacement and are taking anticoagulants.

Patients with valvular heart disease may have complicated medication schedules that can potentially lead to inadequate self-management. Provide clear, concise instructions about drug therapy, and discuss the risks associated with nonadherence. Patients with a failed valve or those who do not follow the treatment plan are at high risk for heart failure. Teach them to report any changes in cardiovascular status, such as dyspnea, syncope, dizziness, edema, and palpitations.

The psychological response to valve surgery is similar to that after coronary artery bypass surgery. Patients may experience an altered self-image as a result of the required lifestyle changes or the visible medial sternotomy incision. In addition, those with prosthetic valves may need to adjust to a soft but audible clicking sound of the prosthetic valve. Encourage patients to verbalize their feelings about the prosthetic heart valve. Patients may display a variety of emotions postoperatively, especially after hospital discharge.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client who recently had a heart valve replacement is taking warfarin (Coumadin) as prescribed. What health teaching will the nurse include before the client is discharged?

- “Take your pulse every day, and call your doctor if it is below 60.”
- “Weigh yourself every day in the morning using the same scale.”
- “Purchase a home kit to monitor your blood pressure every day.”
- “Avoid foods that are high in vitamin K, such as kale and spinach.”

Health Care Resources

The American Heart Association's Mended Hearts, Inc. (www.mendedhearts.org) is a community resource that provides information about valvular heart disease. A wallet-sized card can be obtained to identify the patient as needing prophylactic antibiotics. An identification bracelet or necklace that states the name of the drugs the patient is taking should also be worn.

INFLAMMATIONS AND INFECTIONS

INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS

Pathophysiology

Infective endocarditis (previously called *bacterial endocarditis*) is a microbial infection (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi) of the endocardium. The most common infective organism is *Streptococcus viridans* or *Staphylococcus aureus*.

Infective endocarditis occurs primarily in patients who abuse IV drugs, have had valve replacements, have experienced systemic infection, or have structural cardiac defects. With a cardiac defect, blood may flow rapidly from a high-pressure area to a low-pressure zone, eroding a section of endocardium. Platelets and fibrin adhere to the denuded endocardium, forming a vegetative lesion. During bacteremia, bacteria become trapped in the low-pressure “sinkhole” and are deposited in the vegetation. Additional platelets and fibrin are deposited, which causes the vegetative lesion to grow. The endocardium and valve are destroyed. Valvular insufficiency may result when the lesion interferes with normal alignment of the valve. If vegetations become so large that blood flow through the valve is obstructed, the valve appears stenotic and then is very likely to *embolize* (i.e., cause emboli to be released into the systemic circulation) (McCance et al., 2010).

Possible ports of entry for infecting organisms include:

- The oral cavity (especially if dental procedures have been performed)
- Skin rashes, lesions, or abscesses
- Infections (cutaneous, genitourinary, GI, systemic)
- Surgery or invasive procedures, including IV line placement

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Because the mortality rate remains high, early detection of infective endocarditis is essential. Unfortunately, many patients (especially older adults) are misdiagnosed. Clinical manifestations typically occur within 2 weeks of a bacteremia (Chart 37-8).

Most patients have recurrent fevers from 99° to 103° F (37.2° to 39.4° C). As a result of physiologic changes associated with aging, however, older adults may be afebrile. The severity of symptoms may depend on the virulence of the infecting organism.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess the patient's *cardiovascular status*. Almost all patients with infective endocarditis develop murmurs. Carefully auscultate the precordium, noting and documenting any new

CHART 37-8 KEY FEATURES

Infective Endocarditis

- Fever associated with chills, night sweats, malaise, and fatigue
- Anorexia and weight loss
- Cardiac murmur (newly developed or change in existing)
- Development of heart failure
- Evidence of systemic embolization
- Petechiae
- Splinter hemorrhages
- Osler's nodes (on palms of hands and soles of feet)
- Janeway's lesions (flat, reddened maculae on hands and feet)
- Positive blood cultures

murmurs (usually regurgitant in nature) or any changes in the intensity or quality of an old murmur. An S_3 or S_4 heart sound also may be heard.

Heart failure (HF) is the most common complication of infective endocarditis. Assess for right-sided HF (as evidenced by peripheral edema, weight gain, and anorexia) and left-sided HF (as evidenced by fatigue, shortness of breath, and crackles on auscultation of breath sounds). See discussion of HF earlier in this chapter.

Arterial embolization is a major complication in up to half of patients with infective endocarditis. Fragments of vegetation break loose and travel randomly through the circulation. When the left side of the heart is involved, vegetation fragments are carried to the spleen, kidneys, GI tract, brain, and extremities. When the right side of the heart is involved, emboli enter the pulmonary circulation.

Splenic infarction with sudden abdominal pain and radiation to the left shoulder can also occur. When performing an *abdominal assessment*, note rebound tenderness on palpation. The classic pain described with renal infarction is flank pain that radiates to the groin and is accompanied by hematuria (red blood cells in the urine) or pyuria (white blood cells in the urine). Mesenteric emboli cause diffuse abdominal pain, often after eating, and abdominal distention.

About a third of patients have *neurologic changes*, others have signs and symptoms of pulmonary problems. Emboli to the central nervous system cause either transient ischemic attacks (TIAs) or a stroke. Confusion, reduced concentration, and aphasia or dysphagia may occur. Pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea, and cough are symptoms of pulmonary infarction related to embolization.

Petechiae (pinpoint red spots) occur in many patients with endocarditis. Examine the mucous membranes, the palate, the conjunctivae, and the skin above the clavicles for small, red, flat lesions. Assess the distal third of the nail bed for **splinter hemorrhages**, which appear as black longitudinal lines or small red streaks.

Diagnostic Assessment

The most reliable criteria for diagnosing endocarditis include positive blood cultures, a new regurgitant murmur, and evidence of endocardial involvement by echocardiography.

A positive *blood culture* is a prime diagnostic test. Both aerobic and anaerobic specimens are obtained for culture. Some slow-growing organisms may take 3 weeks and require a specialized medium to isolate. Low hemoglobin and hematocrit levels may also be present.

Echocardiography has improved the ability to diagnose infective endocarditis accurately. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) allows visualization of cardiac structures that are difficult to see with transthoracic echocardiography (TTE; see Chapter 35).

INTERVENTIONS

Care of the patient with endocarditis usually includes antimicrobials, rest balanced with activity, and supportive therapy for HF. If these interventions are successful, surgery is usually not required.

Nonsurgical Management

The major component of treatment for endocarditis is drug therapy. Other interventions help prevent the life-threatening complications of the disease.

Antimicrobials are the main treatment, with the choice of drug depending on the specific organism involved. Because vegetations surround and protect the offending microorganism, an appropriate drug must be given in a sufficiently high dose to ensure its destruction. Antimicrobials are usually given IV, with the course of treatment lasting 4 to 6 weeks. For most bacterial cases, the ideal antibiotic is one of the penicillins or cephalosporins.

Patients may be hospitalized for several days to institute IV therapy and then are discharged for continued IV therapy at home. After hospitalization, most patients who respond to therapy may continue it at home when they become afebrile, have negative blood cultures, and have no signs of HF or embolization.

Anticoagulants do not prevent embolization from vegetations. Because they may result in bleeding, these drugs are avoided unless they are required to prevent thrombus formation on a prosthetic valve.

The patient's activities are balanced with *adequate rest*. Consistently use appropriate aseptic technique to protect the patient from contact with potentially infective organisms. Continue to assess for signs of HF (e.g., rapid pulse, fatigue, cough, dyspnea) throughout the antimicrobial regimen and report significant changes.

Surgical Management

The cardiac surgeon may be consulted if antibiotic therapy is ineffective in sterilizing a valve, if refractory HF develops secondary to a defective valve, if large valvular vegetations are present, or if multiple embolic events occur. Current surgical interventions for infective endocarditis include:

- Removing the infected valve (either biologic or prosthetic)
- Repairing or removing congenital shunts
- Repairing injured valves and chordae tendineae
- Draining abscesses in the heart

Preoperative and postoperative care of patients having surgery involving the valves is similar to that described earlier for valve replacement (pp. 761-762).

Community-Based Care

Community-based care for patients with infective endocarditis is essential to resolve the problem, prevent relapse, and avoid complications. Patients and families need to be willing and have the knowledge, physical ability, and resources to administer IV antibiotics at home. Collaborate with the

home care nurse to complete health teaching started in the hospital and to monitor patient adherence and health status as directed by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals.

In collaboration with the case manager, the home care nurse and pharmacist arrange for appropriate supplies to be available to the patient at home. Supplies include the prepared antibiotic, IV pump with tubing, alcohol wipes, IV access device, normal saline solution, and a saline flush solution drawn up in syringes. A saline lock, peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) line, or central catheter is positioned at a venous site that is easily accessible to the patient or a family member.

Teach the patient and family how to administer the antibiotic and care for the infusion site while maintaining aseptic technique. The patient or family member should demonstrate this technique before the patient is discharged from the hospital. Emphasize the importance of maintaining a blood level of the antibiotic by administering the antibiotics as scheduled. After stabilization at home, the case manager or other nurse contacts the patient every week to determine whether he or she is adhering to the antibiotic therapy and whether any problems have been encountered.

Encourage proper oral hygiene. Advise patients to use a soft toothbrush, to brush their teeth at least twice per day, and to rinse the mouth with water after brushing. They should not use irrigation devices or floss the teeth because bacteremia may result. Teach them to clean any open skin areas well and apply an antibiotic ointment.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Patients must remind health care providers (including their dentists) of their endocarditis. Teach patients to request prophylactic antibiotics for every invasive procedure, especially dental care.

Instruct patients to note any indications of recurring endocarditis such as fever. Remind them to monitor and record their temperature daily for up to 6 weeks. Teach them to report fever, chills, malaise, weight loss, increased fatigue, sudden weight gain, or dyspnea to their primary care provider.

PERICARDITIS

Pathophysiology

Acute pericarditis is an inflammation or alteration of the pericardium (the membranous sac that encloses the heart). The problem may be fibrous, serous, hemorrhagic, purulent, or neoplastic. Acute pericarditis is most commonly associated with:

- Infective organisms (bacteria, viruses, or fungi) (usually respiratory)
- Post–myocardial infarction (MI) syndrome (Dressler's syndrome)
- Post-pericardiotomy syndrome
- Acute exacerbations of systemic connective tissue disease

Chronic constrictive pericarditis occurs when chronic pericardial inflammation causes a fibrous thickening of the pericardium. It is caused by tuberculosis, radiation therapy, trauma, renal failure, or metastatic cancer. In chronic constrictive pericarditis, the pericardium becomes rigid,

preventing adequate filling of the ventricles and eventually resulting in cardiac failure.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Assessment findings for patients with *acute pericarditis* include substernal precordial pain that radiates to the left side of the neck, the shoulder, or the back. Pain is classically grating and oppressive and is aggravated by breathing (mainly on inspiration), coughing, and swallowing. The pain is worse when the patient is in the supine position and may be relieved by sitting up and leaning forward. Ask specific questions to evaluate chest discomfort to differentiate it from the pain associated with an acute MI (see [Chapter 40](#)).

A pericardial friction rub may be heard with the diaphragm of the stethoscope positioned at the left lower sternal border. This scratchy, high-pitched sound is produced when the inflamed, roughened pericardial layers create friction as their surfaces rub together.

Patients with acute pericarditis may have an elevated white blood cell count and usually have a fever. Therefore blood culture and sensitivity may be analyzed in the laboratory. The ECG usually shows ST-T spiking with the onset of inflammation, which returns to baseline with treatment. Atrial fibrillation is also common. Echocardiograms may be used to determine a pericardial effusion.

Patients with *chronic constrictive pericarditis* have signs of right-sided HF, elevated systemic venous pressure with jugular distention, hepatic engorgement, and dependent edema. Exertional fatigue and dyspnea are common complications. Thickening of the pericardium is seen on echocardiography or a computed tomography (CT) scan.

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of collaborative management is to relieve pain and treat the cause of pericarditis before severe complications occur.

Pain Management

The health care provider usually prescribes NSAIDs for pain associated with pericarditis. Patients who do not obtain pain relief and who do not have bacterial pericarditis may receive corticosteroid therapy. Assist the patient to assume positions of comfort—usually sitting upright and leaning slightly forward. If the pain is not relieved within 24 to 48 hours, notify the primary care provider.

The various causes of pericarditis require specific therapies. For example, bacterial pericarditis (acute) usually requires antibiotics and pericardial drainage. The usual clinical course of acute pericarditis is short term (2 to 6 weeks), but episodes may recur. Chronic pericarditis caused by malignant disease may be treated with radiation or chemotherapy, whereas uremic pericarditis is treated by hemodialysis. The definitive treatment for chronic constrictive pericarditis is surgical excision of the pericardium (**pericardiectomy**).

- Monitor all patients for **pericardial effusion**, which occurs when the space between the parietal and visceral layers of the pericardium fills with fluid. This

complication puts the patient at risk for **cardiac tamponade**, or excessive fluid within the pericardial cavity.

Emergency Care: Acute Cardiac Tamponade

Acute cardiac tamponade may occur when small volumes (20 to 50 mL) of fluid accumulate rapidly in the pericardium and cause a sudden decrease in cardiac output (CO). If the fluid accumulates slowly, the pericardium may stretch to accommodate several hundred milliliters of fluid. Report any suspicion of this complication to the physician immediately. Findings of cardiac tamponade include:

- Jugular venous distention
- **Paradoxical pulse**, also known as *pulsus paradoxus* (systolic blood pressure 10 mm Hg or more higher on expiration than on inspiration) (Chart 37-9)
- Decreased heart rate, dyspnea, and fatigue
- Muffled heart sounds
- Hypotension

Cardiac tamponade is an emergency! The physician may initially manage the decreased cardiac output (CO) with increased fluid volume administration while awaiting an echocardiogram or x-ray to confirm the diagnosis. Unfortunately, these tests are not always helpful because the fluid volume around the heart may be too small to visualize. Hemodynamic monitoring in a specialized critical care unit usually demonstrates compression of the heart, with all pressures (right atrial, pulmonary artery, and wedge) being similar and elevated (plateau pressures).

The physician may elect to perform a **pericardiocentesis** to remove fluid and relieve the pressure on the heart. Under echocardiographic or fluoroscopic and hemodynamic monitoring, the cardiologist inserts an 8-inch (20.3-cm), 16- or 18-gauge pericardial needle into the pericardial space. When the needle is properly positioned, a catheter is inserted and

all available pericardial fluid is withdrawn. A pericardial drain may be temporarily placed. Monitor the pulmonary artery, wedge, and right atrial pressures during the procedure. The pressures should return to normal as the fluid compressing the heart is removed, and the clinical manifestations of tamponade should resolve. In situations in which the cause of the tamponade is unknown, pericardial fluid specimens may be sent to the laboratory for culture and sensitivity tests, and cytology.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After the pericardiocentesis, closely monitor the patient for the recurrence of tamponade. Pericardiocentesis alone often does not resolve acute tamponade. Be prepared to provide adequate fluid volumes to increase CO and to prepare the patient for emergency sternotomy if tamponade recurs.

If the patient has a recurrence of tamponade or recurrent effusions or adhesions from chronic pericarditis, a portion or all of the pericardium may need to be removed to allow adequate ventricular filling and contraction. The surgeon may create a pericardial window, which involves removing a portion of the pericardium to permit excessive pericardial fluid to drain into the pleural space. In more severe cases, removal of the toughened encasing pericardium (pericardiectomy) may be necessary.

RHEUMATIC CARDITIS

Pathophysiology

Rheumatic carditis, also called *rheumatic endocarditis*, is a sensitivity response that develops after an upper respiratory tract infection with group A beta-hemolytic streptococci. It occurs in almost half of patients with rheumatic fever. The precise mechanism by which the infection causes inflammatory lesions in the heart is not established; however, inflammation is evident in all layers of the heart. The inflammation results in impaired contractile function of the myocardium, thickening of the pericardium, and valvular damage.

Rheumatic carditis is characterized by the formation of Aschoff bodies (small nodules in the myocardium that are replaced by scar tissue). A diffuse cellular infiltrate also develops and may be responsible for the resulting heart failure (HF). The pericardium becomes thickened and covered with exudate, and a serosanguineous pleural effusion may develop. The most serious damage occurs to the endocardium, with inflammation of the valve leaflets developing. Hemorrhagic and fibrous lesions form along the inflamed surfaces of the valves, resulting in stenosis or regurgitation of the mitral and aortic valves (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Rheumatic carditis is one of the major indicators of rheumatic fever. The common manifestations are:

- Tachycardia
- **Cardiomegaly** (enlarged heart)
- Development of a new murmur or a change in an existing murmur

CHART 37-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with Pericarditis

- Assess the nature of the patient's chest discomfort. (Pericardial pain is typically substernal. It is worse on inspiration and decreases when the patient leans forward.)
- Auscultate for a pericardial friction rub.
- Assist the patient to a position of comfort.
- Provide anti-inflammatory agents as prescribed.
- Explain that anti-inflammatory agents usually decrease the pain within 48 hours.
- Avoid the administration of aspirin and anticoagulants because these may increase the possibility of tamponade.
- Auscultate the blood pressure carefully to detect paradoxical blood pressure (*pulsus paradoxus*), a sign of tamponade:
 - Palpate the blood pressure, and inflate the cuff above the systolic pressure.
 - Deflate the cuff gradually, and note when sounds are first audible on expiration.
 - Identify when sounds are also audible on inspiration.
 - Subtract the inspiratory pressure from the expiratory pressure to determine the amount of *pulsus paradoxus* (>10 mm Hg is an indication of tamponade).
- Inspect for other indications of tamponade, including jugular venous distention with clear lungs, muffled heart sounds, and decreased cardiac output.
- Notify the physician if tamponade is suspected.

- Pericardial friction rub
- Precordial pain
- Electrocardiogram (ECG) changes (prolonged PR interval)
- Indications of heart failure (HF)
- Evidence of an existing streptococcal infection

Primary prevention is extremely important. Teach all patients to remind their health care providers to provide appropriate antibiotic therapy if they develop the indications of streptococcal pharyngitis:

- Moderate to high fever
- Abrupt onset of a sore throat
- Reddened throat with exudate
- Enlarged and tender lymph nodes

Penicillin is the antibiotic of choice for treatment. Erythromycin (Eryc, Erythromid 🍀) is the alternative for penicillin-sensitive patients.

Once a diagnosis of rheumatic fever is made, antibiotic therapy is started immediately. Teach the patient to continue the antibiotic administration for the full 10 days to prevent

reinfection. Suggest ways to manage fever, such as maintaining hydration and taking antipyretics. Encourage the patient to get adequate rest.

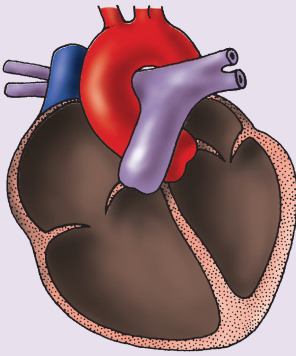
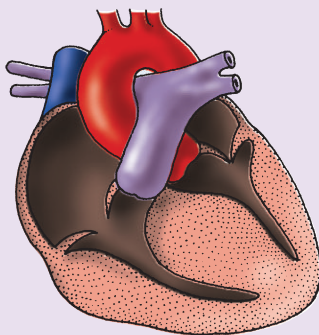
Explain to the patient and family that a recurrence of rheumatic carditis is most likely the result of reinfection by *Streptococcus*. Antibiotic prophylaxis is necessary for the rest of the patient's life to prevent infective endocarditis (see [Infective Endocarditis](#), p. 763).

CARDIOMYOPATHY

Pathophysiology

Cardiomyopathy is a subacute or chronic disease of cardiac muscle, and the cause may be unknown. Cardiomyopathies are classified into four categories on the basis of abnormalities in structure and function: dilated cardiomyopathy, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, restrictive cardiomyopathy, and arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy ([Table 37-5](#)). Mortality at 1 year is 20% and 70% to 80% at year 8 for patients who develop heart failure (Wexler et al., 2009).

TABLE 37-5 PATHOPHYSIOLOGY, SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS, AND TREATMENT OF COMMON CARDIOMYOPATHIES

DILATED CARDIOMYOPATHY	HYPERTROPHIC CARDIOMYOPATHY	
	NONOBSTRUCTED	OBSTRUCTED
Pathophysiology Fibrosis of myocardium and endocardium Dilated chambers Mural wall thrombi prevalent	Hypertrophy of all walls Hypertrophied septum Relatively small chamber size	Same as for nonobstructed except for obstruction of left ventricular outflow tract associated with the hypertrophied septum and mitral valve incompetence
		
Signs and Symptoms Fatigue and weakness Heart failure (left side) Dysrhythmias or heart block Systemic or pulmonary emboli S ₃ and S ₄ gallops Moderate to severe cardiomegaly	Dyspnea Angina Fatigue, syncope, palpitations Mild cardiomegaly S ₄ gallop Ventricular dysrhythmias Sudden death common Heart failure	Same as for nonobstructed except with mitral regurgitation murmur Atrial fibrillation
Treatment Symptomatic treatment of heart failure Vasodilators Control of dysrhythmias Surgery: heart transplant	For both: Symptomatic treatment Beta blockers Conversion of atrial fibrillation Surgery: ventriculomyotomy or muscle resection with mitral valve replacement Nitrates and other vasodilators <i>contraindicated</i> with the obstructed form	

Dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) is the structural abnormality most commonly seen. DCM involves extensive damage to the myofibrils and interference with myocardial metabolism. Ventricular wall thickness is normal, but both ventricles are dilated (left ventricle is usually worse) and systolic function is impaired. Causes may include alcohol abuse, chemotherapy, infection, inflammation, and poor nutrition. Decreased CO from inadequate pumping of the heart causes the patient to experience dyspnea on exertion (DOE), decreased exercise capacity, fatigue, and palpitations.

The cardinal features of **hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM)** are asymmetric ventricular hypertrophy and disarray of the myocardial fibers. Left ventricular hypertrophy leads to a stiff left ventricle, which results in diastolic filling abnormalities. Obstruction in the left ventricular outflow tract is seen in most patients with HCM. In about half of patients, HCM is transmitted as a single-gene autosomal dominant trait (McCance et al., 2010). Some patients die without any symptoms, whereas others have dyspnea on exertion (DOE), syncope, dizziness, and palpitations. Many athletes who die suddenly probably had hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (Wexler et al., 2009).

Restrictive cardiomyopathy, the rarest of the cardiomyopathies, is characterized by stiff ventricles that restrict filling during diastole. Symptoms are similar to left or right heart failure (HF) or both. The disease can be primary or caused by endocardial or myocardial disease such as sarcoidosis or amyloidosis. The prognosis for this type of cardiomyopathy is poor.

Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy (dysplasia) results from replacement of myocardial tissue with fibrous and fatty tissue. Although the name implies right ventricle disease, about a third of patients also have left ventricle (LV) involvement. This disease has a familial association and most often affects young adults. Some patients have symptoms, and others do not.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Findings in cardiomyopathy depend on the structural and functional abnormalities. For example, left ventricular or biventricular failure is characteristic of *dilated* cardiomyopathy (DCM). Some patients with DCM are asymptomatic for months to years and have left and/or right ventricular dilation confirmed on x-ray examination or echocardiography. Others experience sudden, pronounced symptoms of left ventricular failure, such as progressive dyspnea on exertion, orthopnea, palpitations, and activity intolerance. Right-sided HF develops late in the disease and is associated with a poor prognosis. Atrial fibrillation occurs in some patients and is associated with embolism.

The clinical picture of *hypertrophic* cardiomyopathy (HCM) results from the hypertrophied septum causing a reduced stroke volume (SV) and cardiac output (CO). Most patients are asymptomatic until late adolescence or early adulthood. The primary symptoms of HCM are exertional dyspnea, angina, and syncope. The chest pain is atypical in that it usually occurs at rest, is prolonged, has no relation to exertion, and is not relieved by the administration of nitrates.

A high incidence of ventricular dysrhythmias is associated with HCM. Sudden death occurs and may be the first manifestation of the disease.

Echocardiography, radionuclide imaging, and angiography during cardiac catheterization are performed to diagnose and differentiate cardiomyopathies.

INTERVENTIONS

The treatment of choice for the patient with cardiomyopathy varies with the type of cardiomyopathy and may include both medical and surgical interventions.

Nonsurgical Management

The care of patients with dilated or restrictive cardiomyopathy is initially the same as for HF. Drug therapy includes the use of diuretics, vasodilating agents, and cardiac glycosides to increase cardiac output (CO). Because patients are at risk for sudden death, teach them to report any palpitations, dizziness, or fainting, which might indicate a dysrhythmia. Anti-dysrhythmic drugs or implantable cardiac defibrillators may be used to control life-threatening dysrhythmias. To block inappropriate sympathetic stimulation and tachycardia, beta blockers (e.g., metoprolol) are used. If cardiomyopathy has developed in response to a toxin (such as alcohol), further exposure to that toxin must be avoided.

Management of obstructive HCM includes administering negative inotropic agents such as beta-adrenergic blocking agents (carvedilol) and calcium antagonists (diltiazem). These drugs decrease the outflow obstruction that accompanies exercise. They also decrease heart rate (HR), resulting in less angina, dyspnea, and syncope. Vasodilators, diuretics, nitrates, and cardiac glycosides are contraindicated in patients with obstructive HCM because vasodilating and positive inotropic effects may worsen the obstruction (Wexler et al., 2009). Strenuous exercise is also prohibited because it can increase the risk for sudden death.

Surgical Management

The type of surgery performed depends on the type of cardiomyopathy. The most commonly used surgical treatment for obstructive HCM involves excising a portion of the hypertrophied ventricular septum to create a wider outflow tract (**ventriculomyectomy**; also called *ventricular septal myectomy*). This procedure results in long-term improvement in activity tolerance for most patients.

Percutaneous alcohol septal ablation is another option for patients with HCM. Absolute alcohol is injected into a target septal branch of the left anterior descending coronary artery to produce a small septal infarction.

The patient with arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy who does not respond to drug therapy may have a radiofrequency catheter ablation or placement of an implantable defibrillator (see Chapter 36 for discussion of these procedures).

Heart transplantation (surgical replacement with a donor heart) is the treatment of choice for patients with severe DCM and may be considered for patients with restrictive cardiomyopathy. The procedure may be done also for end-stage heart disease due to coronary artery disease, valvular disease, or congenital heart disease.

Preoperative Care. Criteria for candidate selection for heart transplantation include:

- Life expectancy less than 1 year
- Age generally less than 65 years
- New York Heart Association (NYHA) class III or IV
- Normal or only slightly increased pulmonary vascular resistance
- Absence of active infection
- Stable psychosocial status
- No evidence of current drug or alcohol abuse

Once the candidate is eligible and a heart is available, provide preoperative care as described in [Chapter 16](#).

Operative Procedures. The surgeon transplants a heart from a donor with a comparable body weight and ABO compatibility into a recipient less than 6 hours after procurement. In the most common procedure (**bicaval technique**), the intact right atrium of the donor heart is preserved by anastomoses at the patient's (recipient's) superior and inferior vena cavae. In the more traditional **orthotopic** technique, cuffs of the patient's right and left atria are attached to the donor's atria. Anastomoses are made between the recipient and donor atria, aorta, and pulmonary arteries ([Fig. 37-4](#)). Because the remaining remnant of the recipient's atria contains the sinoatrial (SA) node, two unrelated P waves are visible on the ECG.

Postoperative Care. The postoperative care of the heart transplant recipient is similar to that for conventional cardiac surgery (see [Chapter 40](#)). However, the nurse must be especially observant to identify occult bleeding into the pericardial sac with the potential for tamponade (see earlier discussion of this complication on p. 766). The patient's pericardium has usually stretched considerably to accommodate the diseased, hypertrophied heart, predisposing him or her to have concealed postoperative bleeding.

The transplanted heart is denervated (disconnected from the body's autonomic nervous system) and is unresponsive to vagal stimulation. In the early postoperative phase, isoproterenol (Isuprel) may be titrated to support the HR and maintain cardiac output. Atropine, digoxin, and carotid sinus pressure are not used because they do not have their usual effects on the new heart. Denervation of the heart may cause pronounced orthostatic hypotension in the immediate postoperative phase. Caution the patient to change position slowly to help prevent this complication. Some patients also require a permanent pacemaker that is rate responsive to his or her activity level. The purpose is to increase CO and improve activity tolerance.

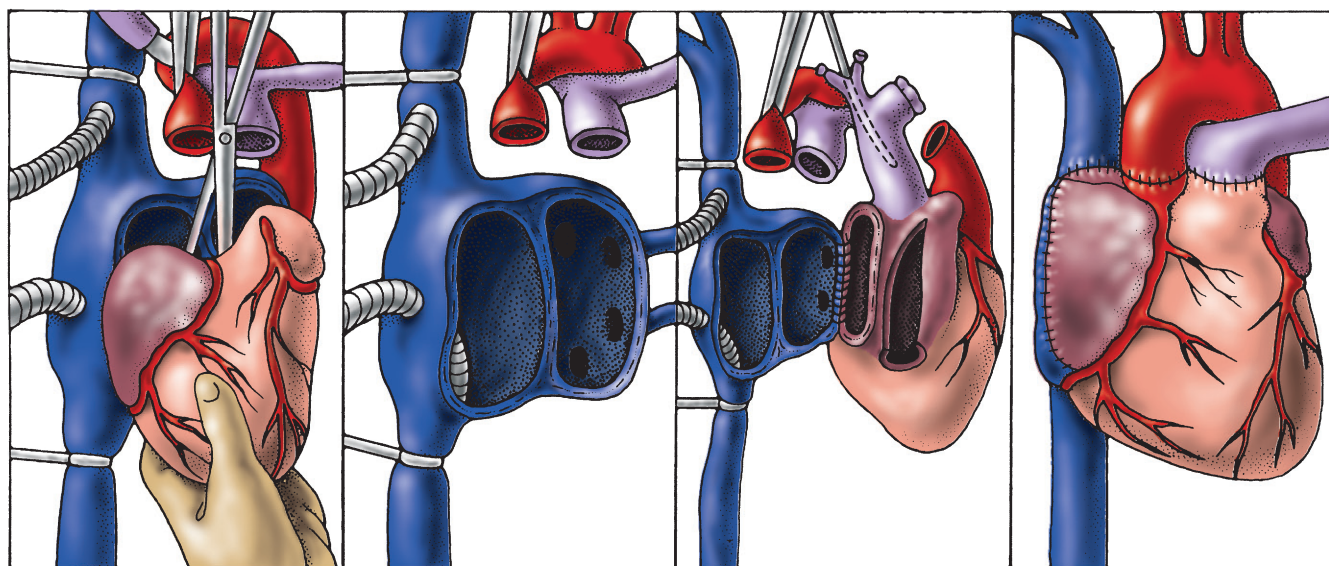
To suppress natural defense mechanisms (especially T- and B-cell function) and prevent transplant rejection, patients require a combination of immunosuppressants for the rest of their lives. [Chapter 19](#) describes transplant rejection and prevention in detail.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After surgery, perform comprehensive cardiovascular and respiratory assessments frequently according to agency or heart transplant surgical protocol. [Chart 37-10](#) lists the signs and symptoms of rejection that are specific to heart transplant. Report any of these manifestations to the surgeon immediately! To detect rejection, the surgeon performs right endomyocardial biopsies at regularly scheduled intervals and whenever symptoms occur.

Be very careful about handwashing and aseptic technique because patients are immunosuppressed from drug therapy.



1. After the recipient is placed on cardiopulmonary bypass, the heart is removed.

2. The posterior walls of the recipient's left and right atria are left intact.

3. The left atrium of the donor heart is anastomosed to the recipient's residual posterior atrial walls, and the other atrial walls, the atrial septum, and the great vessels are joined.

POSTOPERATIVE RESULT

FIG. 37-4 One technique for heart transplantation.

CHART 37-10 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing for Clinical Manifestations of Heart Transplant Rejection

- Shortness of breath
- Fatigue
- Fluid gain (edema, increased weight)
- Abdominal bloating
- New bradycardia
- Hypotension
- Atrial fibrillation or flutter
- Decreased activity tolerance
- Decreased ejection fraction (late sign)

Infection is the major cause of death and usually develops in the immediate post-transplant period or during treatment for acute rejection.

About 50% of patients survive 10 years after transplantation (Eisen & Ross, 2010). Many of the surviving patients have a form of coronary artery disease (CAD) called **coronary artery vasculopathy (CAV)**, which presents as diffuse plaque in the arteries of the donor heart. The cause is thought to involve a combination of immunologic and non-immunologic processes that result in vascular endothelial injury and an inflammatory response (Eisen & Ross, 2010).

Because the heart is denervated, patients do not usually experience angina. Regularly scheduled exercise tolerance tests and angiography are required to identify CAV. Only a small percentage of patients with CAV benefit from revascularization procedures like balloon angioplasty or coronary artery bypass surgery. Stents are beginning to show some promise in managing these patients. Retransplantation may be done in select patients.

To delay the development of CAV, encourage patients to follow lifestyle changes similar to those with primary CAD (see Chapter 40). The physician may prescribe a calcium channel blocker such as diltiazem (Cardizem) to prevent coronary spasm and closure. Stress the importance of strict adherence to nutritional modifications and drug regimens. Teach the patient the importance of participating in a regular exercise program. Collaborate with the physical therapist to plan the most appropriate exercise plan for the patient.

Discharge planning involves a collaborative, interdisciplinary approach. Patients require extensive health teaching for self-management and community resources for support. Counseling and support groups can help patients cope with their fear of organ rejection. Drug therapy adherence is crucial to prevent this problem. Continuing community-based care for patients with a heart transplant is similar to that for heart failure as discussed on p. 756.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if a patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of heart failure?

- Report of shortness of breath, especially on exertion
- Report of dizziness
- Report of weight gain within days
- Syncope
- Dyspnea on exertion
- Report of palpitations
- Report of fatigue and weakness
- Disorientation or acute confusion (especially in older adults)
- Peripheral or abdominal ascites

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of heart failure?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Performing a complete cardiovascular assessment
- Performing a complete respiratory assessment (listen for crackles or wheezes)
- Weighing patient

- Assessing cognition
- Assessing for pain or other symptoms

Respond by:

- Seeing health care provider immediately or calling 911 if patient is not in hospital setting ... OR
- Notifying physician or Rapid Response Team in hospital setting
- Raising the head of the bed to a sitting position
- Giving oxygen
- Maintaining or starting IV line
- Administering furosemide IV push (IVP) as prescribed
- Monitoring intake and output
- Giving ACE inhibitors or ARBs as prescribed IV or orally

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for increased urinary output.
- Monitor for decreased respiratory distress.
- Continue to monitor for improvement.
- Think about the possible cause(s) of the patient's heart failure.
- Think about your response to the patient.
- Develop a teaching plan for the patient to help prevent worsening or recurrent acute episodes of heart failure.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Provide information about continuing care for patients with heart failure (HF) after discharge to the community.
- Assess whether patients with end-stage HF have advance directives. If not, provide information about them.
- Collaborate with members of the health care team when developing and implementing a plan of care for patients with heart failure.
- Teach patients about community support groups and resources such as the American Heart Association.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Provide teaching about self-management at home for patients with HF (see [Table 37-4](#)).
- Monitor older adults who are taking digoxin for manifestations of toxicity. Monitor potassium levels to check for hypokalemia (see [Chart 37-5](#)).
- Teach patients taking ACE inhibitors or ARBs to change positions slowly to avoid orthostatic hypotension, especially older adults.
- Teach the patient with valvular dysfunction, cardiac infection, or cardiomyopathy the necessity of taking preventive antibiotic therapy before any invasive procedure.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the patient for depression resulting from altered self-concept and anxiety.
- Assess the patient's coping skills.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the patient for manifestations of right- and left-sided HF (see [Charts 37-1 and 37-2](#)).

- Weigh daily and record intake and output of patients with HF.
- Assess for early signs and symptoms of pulmonary edema (e.g., crackles in the lung bases, dyspnea at rest, disorientation, confusion), especially in older adults.
- Assess for symptoms of worsening HF: rapid weight gain (3 lb in a week), a decrease in exercise tolerance lasting 2 to 3 days, cold symptoms (cough) lasting more than 3 to 5 days, nocturia, development of dyspnea or angina at rest, or unstable angina.
- Monitor the HF patient on beta blockers carefully for hypotension and bradycardia.
- Monitor the pulse of patients taking digoxin before administration, and report to the health care provider a pulse that is not within the desired parameters.
- Monitor for manifestations of pulmonary edema as listed in [Chart 37-3](#).
- Place the patient in a sitting position and provide oxygen therapy at a high flow rate (unless otherwise contraindicated) if pulmonary edema is suspected.
- Recognize that home care nurses perform focused physical assessments for cardiac patients as delineated in [Chart 37-4](#).
- Monitor the patient with valvular dysfunction for atrial fibrillation, which may lead to hemostasis and mural thrombi. Monitor for an irregularly irregular cardiac rhythm, and administer warfarin as indicated.
- Assess neurovascular status frequently because emboli from valvular disease may cause strokes.
- Differentiate major types of cardiomyopathy as described in [Table 37-5](#).
- Observe for symptoms of heart transplant rejection as listed in [Chart 37-10](#).
- Provide care for patients with pericarditis as outlined in [Chart 37-9](#).

CHAPTER

38

Care of Patients with Vascular Problems

Tami Kathleen Little

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm

Animation: Physiology of Blood Pressure

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Hypertension

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with interdisciplinary health care team members when providing care for patients with vascular problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify risk factors for vascular problems.
3. Teach patients about lifestyle modifications to prevent vascular problems.

Physiological Integrity

4. Explain the pathophysiology of arteriosclerosis and atherosclerosis.
5. Interpret essential laboratory data related to risk for atherosclerosis.
6. Discuss the role of nutrition therapy in the management of patients with arteriosclerosis.
7. Describe the differences between essential and secondary hypertension.

8. Develop a collaborative plan of care for a patient with essential hypertension.
9. Develop a teaching plan for patients on adverse effects of drugs for hypertension and when to notify the health care provider.
10. Compare common assessment findings present in patients with peripheral arterial and peripheral venous disease.
11. Identify when venous thromboembolism (VTE) and complications of VTE occur.
12. Plan nursing interventions to help prevent VTE.
13. Describe the nurse's role in monitoring patients who are receiving anticoagulants.
14. Monitor for complications of vascular surgery.
15. Perform a focused vascular assessment.
16. Compare assessment findings associated with Raynaud's phenomenon and Buerger's disease.

The *peripheral* vascular system is essential for transporting blood to and from distal tissues in the extremities. When peripheral blood vessels are diseased or damaged, especially in the legs, arterial blood flow is impaired, preventing distal areas like the feet from being adequately *perfused* and *oxygenated*. The result can be ischemia and necrosis (cell death). Venous disease causes blood to back up into the distal areas and can lead to edema and thromboses (clots) that can become emboli, a life-threatening complication.

ARTERIOSCLEROSIS AND ATHEROSCLEROSIS

Pathophysiology

Arteriosclerosis is a thickening, or hardening, of the arterial wall that is often associated with aging. **Atherosclerosis**, a type of arteriosclerosis, involves the formation of plaque within the arterial wall and is the leading risk factor for cardiovascular disease. Usually the disease affects the larger arteries, such as coronary artery beds; aorta; carotid and

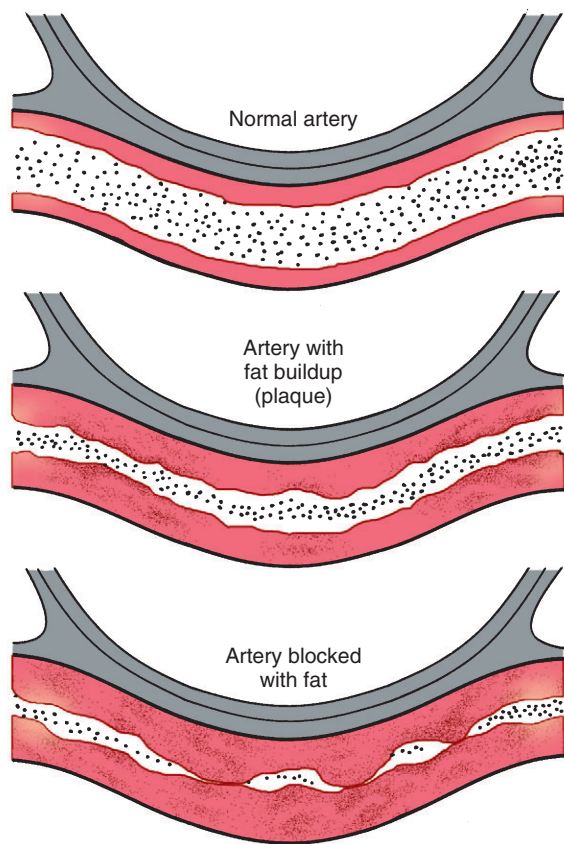


FIG. 38-1 Pathophysiology of atherosclerosis.

vertebral arteries; renal, iliac, and femoral arteries; or any combination of these.

The exact pathophysiology of atherosclerosis is not known, but the condition is thought to occur from blood vessel damage that causes an inflammatory response (see the discussion of inflammation in Chapter 19) (Fig. 38-1). After the vessel becomes inflamed, a fatty streak appears on the intimal surface (inner lining) of the artery. Through the process of cellular proliferation, collagen migrates over the fatty streak, forming a fibrous plaque. The fibrous plaque is often elevated and protrudes into the vessel lumen, partially or completely obstructing blood flow through the artery. Plaques are either stable or unstable. Unstable plaques are prone to rupture and are often clinically silent until they rupture (McCance et al., 2010).

In the final stage, the fibrous plaques become calcified, hemorrhagic, ulcerated, or thrombosed and affect all layers of the vessel. The rate of progression of the process may be influenced by genetic factors; certain chronic diseases (e.g., diabetes mellitus); and lifestyle habits, including smoking, eating habits, and level of exercise.

When *stable* plaque ruptures, thrombosis (blood clot) and constriction obstruct the vessel lumen, causing inadequate perfusion and oxygenation to distal tissues. *Unstable* plaque rupture causes more severe damage. After the rupture occurs, the exposed underlying tissue causes platelet adhesion and rapid thrombus formation. The thrombus may suddenly block a blood vessel, resulting in ischemia and infarction (e.g., myocardial infarction) (McCance et al., 2010).

TABLE 38-1 RISK FACTORS FOR ATHEROSCLEROSIS

• Low HDL-C	• Sedentary lifestyle
• High LDL-C	• Smoking
• Increased triglycerides	• Stress
• Genetic predisposition	• African-American or Hispanic ethnicity
• Diabetes mellitus	• Older adult
• Obesity	

HDL-C, High-density lipoprotein cholesterol; LDL-C, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol.

Endothelial (intimal) injury of the major arteries of the body can be caused by many factors. Elevated levels of **lipids** (fats) like low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) and decreased levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) can cause chemical injuries to the vessel wall. (Chapter 35 discusses lipids in detail.) Chemical injury can also be caused by elevated levels of toxins in the bloodstream, which may occur with renal failure or by carbon monoxide circulating in the bloodstream from cigarette smoking. The vessel wall can be weakened by the natural process of aging or by diseases such as hypertension.

Genetic predisposition and diabetes have a major effect on the development of atherosclerosis. Some patients have familial **hyperlipidemia**, an elevation of serum lipid levels. In these people, the liver makes excessive cholesterol and other fats. However, some people with hereditary atherosclerosis have a normal blood cholesterol level. The reason for the development and progression of plaque in these patients is not understood (McCance et al., 2010).

Adult patients with severe diabetes mellitus of any age frequently have premature and severe atherosclerosis from microvascular damage. The premature atherosclerosis occurs because diabetes promotes an increase in LDL-C and triglycerides (lipids) in plasma. In addition, arterial damage may result from the effect of hyperglycemia.

Other factors are indirectly related to atherosclerosis development. A list of risk factors is found in Table 38-1.

It is not known exactly how many people have atherosclerosis, but small plaques are almost always present in the arteries of young adults. The incidence can be better quantified by assessing the number of cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) that result from atherosclerosis. An estimated 81 million U.S. adults have one or more types of CVD. Coronary artery disease affects 16 million people, and stroke affects another 6 million. About half of those with CVD are older than 60 years, and many more are middle-aged (American Heart Association [AHA], 2010). The number of people affected by atherosclerosis is likely to increase as the population ages, especially as many of the 79 million “baby boomers” turn 60.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The assessment of a patient with atherosclerosis includes a complete cardiovascular assessment because associated heart disease is often present. Because of the high incidence of

hypertension in patients with atherosclerosis, assess the blood pressure in both arms.

Palpate pulses at all of the major sites on the body, and note any differences. *Palpate each carotid artery separately to prevent blocking blood flow to the brain!* Also feel for temperature differences in the lower extremities, and check capillary filling. Prolonged capillary filling (>3 seconds in young to middle-aged adults; >5 seconds in older adults) generally indicates poor circulation, *although this indicator is not the most reliable indicator of perfusion.* An extremity in a person with severe atherosclerotic disease may be cool or cold with a diminished or absent pulse.

Many patients with vascular disease have a bruit in the larger arteries, which can be heard with a stethoscope or Doppler probe. A **bruit** is a turbulent, swishing sound, which can be soft or loud in pitch. It is heard as a result of blood trying to pass through a narrowed artery. A bruit is considered abnormal, but it does not indicate the severity of disease. Bruits often occur in the carotid, aortic, femoral, and popliteal arteries.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert!

A decrease in intensity or a complete loss of a pulse in a patient with atherosclerosis may indicate an arterial occlusion (blockage). Immediately report pulselessness to the health care provider and document for emergency management (described later in this chapter under Acute Arterial Occlusion).

Laboratory Assessment

Patients with atherosclerosis often have elevated lipids, including cholesterol and triglycerides. Total serum *cholesterol* levels should be below 200 mg/dL. Elevated cholesterol levels are confirmed by HDL and LDL measurements. Increased low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) (“bad” cholesterol) levels indicate that a person is at an increased risk for atherosclerosis. Low high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (“good” cholesterol) (HDL-C) levels also indicate an increased risk. A desirable LDL-C level is one below 100 mg/dL for healthy people and below 70 mg/dL for those diagnosed with CVD or who are diabetic. A desirable HDL-C level is 40 mg/dL or above (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Triglyceride level may also be elevated with atherosclerosis and is an emerging lipid risk factor by the classic Adult Treatment Panel Report No. 3 (ATP III) released by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (National Cholesterol Education Program, 2002). A level of 150 mg/dL or above indicates **hypertriglyceridemia**. Women should have a level below 135 mg/dL (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Elevated triglycerides are considered a marker for other lipoproteins. They also suggest **metabolic syndrome**, which increases the risk for coronary heart disease (see Table 40-1 and discussion in Chapter 40).

INTERVENTIONS

Atherosclerosis progresses for years before clinical manifestations occur. Adults who are at risk for the disease can often be identified through cholesterol screening and history. Because of the high incidence in the United States, low-risk people 20 years of age and older are advised to have their total serum cholesterol level evaluated at least once every 5 years.

More frequent measurements are suggested for people with multiple risk factors and those older than 40 years.

People with multiple risk factors are grouped into high-risk patient categories termed “coronary heart disease equivalents.” These groups include:

- Patients with diabetes but without signs of vascular disease
- Patients with a Framingham Heart Study 10-year absolute risk score of over 20% for coronary heart disease events
- Patients identified with multiple metabolic risk factors

People within these groups are at the same risk level as those who already have vascular disease. Testing and management recommendations from the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) and ATP guidelines have a major preventive focus for people with multiple risk factors.

Interventions for patients with atherosclerosis or those at high risk for the disease focus on lifestyle changes. Teach patients about the need to make daily changes by avoiding or minimizing modifiable risk factors. *Modifiable risk factors* are those that can be changed or controlled by the patient, such as smoking, weight management, and exercise. Nutrition is one of the most important parts of the risk-reduction plan. Chapter 40 describes how to manage modifiable risk factors in detail in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section, p. 831. If lipoprotein levels do not improve after lifestyle changes, the health care provider may prescribe drug therapy to lower cholesterol and/or triglycerides.

Nutrition Therapy

The Nutrition Committee of the American Heart Association (AHA) established dietary guidelines to promote healthy dietary habits as a strategy to reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease. The guidelines, revised in 2006, focus on the need to achieve and maintain a healthy weight and make appropriate food choices. Although most research focuses on individual nutrients or foods, the AHA guidelines aim to improve overall diet to ensure nutrient adequacy and energy balance (Lichtenstein et al., 2006). The AHA recommends that people consume a variety of nutritious foods including fruits, vegetables, whole grains, fat-free and low-fat dairy products, and lean meats. Specific AHA guidelines to decrease the risk for cardiovascular disease include minimizing fat and cholesterol intake. Chapter 63 describes the most recent U.S. government dietary guidelines, which include increasing daily vegetables and decreasing dairy food fats.

To decrease serum cholesterol level, a total fat intake of less than 30% of total calories should be consumed. Less than 10% of total caloric intake should be from saturated fat, up to 10% of total calories should be from polyunsaturated fat, and 10% to 15% should come from monounsaturated fat. Cholesterol intake should also be less than 300 mg daily.

In collaboration with the dietitian as needed, teach the patient about the types of fat content in food. Meats and eggs contain mostly saturated fats and are high in cholesterol. Recommend canola (rapeseed) oil (rich in monounsaturated fat) and safflower and sunflower oil (rich in polyunsaturated oils) over highly saturated oils such as palm or coconut oil.

The focus of cholesterol management is an aggressive approach to lowering LDL-C values and raising HDL-C levels. Having an LDL-C value of less than 100 mg/dL is optimal; values of 100 to 129 mg/dL are near or less than

optimal. Patients with LDL-C values of 130 to 159 mg/dL (borderline high) are advised to follow a fat-modified diet and regular exercise regimen and increase omega-3 fatty acids in their diet or as a supplement. Increased fiber of 25 to 35 g in the daily diet is also recommended. In collaboration with the dietitian, teach patients with LDL-C values of 160 mg/dL or greater (high or very high) to follow a more structured nutritional plan aimed at decreasing saturated fat and cholesterol and, if appropriate, promoting weight loss.

For high-risk people, such as those with high cholesterol, diabetes, or CVD, the AHA recommends the NCEP Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes (TLC) diet, which outlines appropriate medical nutrition therapy. Recommendations include obtaining a patient's baseline serum cholesterol level and then retesting 6 and 12 weeks after the initial nutritional intervention. If the cholesterol level has not significantly decreased, the patient may be referred to a dietitian for instruction on the NCEP-TLC diet, which limits saturated fat to less than 7% of total calories and cholesterol to less than 200 mg/day.

Drug Therapy

For patients with elevated total and LDL-C levels that do not respond adequately to dietary intervention, the health care provider prescribes one or more lipid-lowering agents (Table 38-2). Drug choice depends on the serum lipid levels. Because most of these drugs can produce major side effects, they are generally given only when nonpharmacologic management has been unsuccessful.

A class of drugs known as *3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase inhibitors (statins)* successfully reduces total cholesterol in most patients when used for an extended period. These drugs are also referred to as *antihyperlipoproteinemics*. Examples include lovastatin (Mevacor), simvastatin (Zocor), and atorvastatin (Lipitor), which lower both LDL-C and triglyceride levels.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Statins reduce cholesterol synthesis in the liver and increase clearance of LDL-C from the blood. Therefore they are contraindicated in patients with active liver disease or during pregnancy because they can cause muscle myopathies and marked decreases in liver function. Statin drugs are discontinued if the patient has muscle cramping or elevated liver enzyme levels. Some patients also report abdominal bloating, flatulence, diarrhea, and/or constipation as side effect of these drugs.

TABLE 38-2 COMMONLY USED DRUGS FOR ATHEROSCLEROSIS

HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors (Statins)	Other Drugs
• Lovastatin (Mevacor) • Atorvastatin (Lipitor) • Simvastatin (Zocor) • Fluvastatin (Lescol) • Rosuvastatin (Crestor) • Pravastatin (Pravachol)	• Gemfibrozil (Lopid) • Fenofibrate (Tricor) • Ezetimibe (Zetia) • Omega-3 ethyl esters (Lovaza)
Combination Drugs	
• Ezetimibe and simvastatin (Vytorin) • Amlodipine and atorvastatin (Caduet) • Niacin and lovastatin (Advicor)	

HMG-CoA, 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A.

A different type of lipid-lowering agent, ezetimibe (Zetia), may be used in place of or in combination with statin-type drugs. This drug inhibits the absorption of cholesterol through the small intestine. Vytorin is a combination drug containing ezetimibe and simvastatin. This drug works two ways—by reducing the absorption of cholesterol and by decreasing the amount of cholesterol synthesis in the liver. Other statin combinations have been developed to improve lipid levels, such as Advicor, a combination of niacin and lovastatin. Aspirin and pravastatin are combined as Pravigard. Amlodipine (Norvasc) and atorvastatin are combined as Caduet to decrease blood pressure while decreasing triglycerides (TGs), increasing HDL, and lowering LDL. Combining drugs may improve adherence for the patient who is often taking multiple drugs.

Complementary and Alternative Therapy

Nicotinic acid or niacin (Niaspan), a B vitamin, may lower LDL-C and very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL) cholesterol levels and increase HDL-C levels in some patients. It is used as a single agent or in combination with an acid-binding resin drug or a statin. Low doses are recommended because many patients experience flushing and a very warm feeling all over. Higher doses can result in an elevation of hepatic enzymes.

Lovaza (omega-3 ethyl esters) is approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as an adjunct to diet to reduce TGs that are greater than 500 mg/dL. This drug also decreases plaque growth and inflammation and reduces clot formation (Harris et al., 2008).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client diagnosed with atherosclerosis has been prescribed simvastatin (Zocor). Which statement by the client indicates a need for further teaching?

- "I have to eat more fruits and vegetables in my diet."
- "I'll follow up with my nurse practitioner to check my lipid levels."
- "I only smoke a half-pack of cigarettes a day so I won't need to quit."
- "I'll report any leg cramps to my nurse practitioner immediately."

HYPERTENSION

Pathophysiology

According to the Seventh Joint National Committee (JNC) on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure, **hypertension** is a systolic blood pressure at or above 140 mm Hg and/or a diastolic blood pressure at or above 90 mm Hg in people who do not have diabetes mellitus. Patients with diabetes and heart disease should have a blood pressure below 130/90 (Joint National Committee, 2003). The Eighth JNC report, due to be released by the U.S. National Institutes of Health in Spring 2012, may likely recommend different values and classifications of patients who are hypertensive.

Mechanisms That Influence Blood Pressure

The systemic arterial pressure is a product of cardiac output (CO) and total peripheral vascular resistance (PVR). Cardiac output is determined by the stroke volume (SV) multiplied by heart rate (HR) ($CO = SV \times HR$). Control of peripheral

vascular resistance (i.e., vessel constriction or dilation) is maintained by the autonomic nervous system and circulating hormones, such as norepinephrine and epinephrine. Consequently, any factor that increases peripheral vascular resistance, heart rate, or stroke volume increases the systemic arterial pressure. Conversely, any factor that decreases peripheral vascular resistance, heart rate, or stroke volume decreases the systemic arterial pressure.

Stabilizing mechanisms exist in the body to exert an overall regulation of systemic arterial pressure and to prevent circulatory collapse. Four control systems play a major role in maintaining blood pressure:

- The arterial baroreceptor system
- Regulation of body fluid volume
- The renin-angiotensin/aldosterone system
- Vascular autoregulation.

Arterial baroreceptors are found primarily in the carotid sinus, aorta, and wall of the left ventricle. They monitor the level of arterial pressure and counteract a rise in arterial pressure through vagally mediated cardiac slowing and vasodilation with decreased sympathetic tone. Therefore reflex control of circulation elevates the systemic arterial pressure when it falls and lowers it when it rises. Why baroreceptor control fails in hypertension is not clear (McCance et al., 2010).

Changes in *fluid volume* also affect the systemic arterial pressure. For example, if there is an excess of sodium and/or water in a person's body, the blood pressure rises through complex physiologic mechanisms that change the venous return to the heart, producing a rise in cardiac output. If the kidneys are functioning adequately, a rise in systemic arterial pressure produces diuresis (excessive voiding) and a fall in pressure. Pathologic conditions change the pressure threshold at which the kidneys excrete sodium and water, thereby altering the systemic arterial pressure.

The *renin-angiotensin-aldosterone* system also regulates blood pressure (see discussion in [Chapter 13](#)). The kidney produces renin, an enzyme that acts on angiotensinogen (a plasma protein substrate) to split off angiotensin I, which is converted by an enzyme in the lung to form angiotensin II. Angiotensin II has strong vasoconstrictor action on blood vessels and is the controlling mechanism for aldosterone release. Aldosterone then works on the collecting tubules in the kidneys to reabsorb sodium. Sodium retention inhibits fluid loss, thus increasing blood volume and subsequent blood pressure.

Inappropriate secretion of renin may cause increased peripheral vascular resistance in patients with hypertension. When the blood pressure is high, renin levels should decrease because the increased renal arteriolar pressure usually inhibits renin secretion. However, for most people with essential hypertension, renin levels remain normal.

The process of *vascular autoregulation*, which keeps perfusion of tissues in the body relatively constant, appears to be important in causing hypertension. However, the exact mechanism of how this system works is poorly understood.

Classifications of Hypertension

In 2003 the JNC made significant changes in classifying blood pressure in adults. The classification for “**normal**” **adult blood pressure** is less than 120 mm Hg systolic *and* less than 80 mm Hg diastolic. Adults with a blood pressure (BP) of 120 to 139 mm Hg systolic *or* 80 to 89 mm Hg diastolic,

TABLE 38-3 BLOOD PRESSURE CLASSIFICATION

CLASSIFICATION	BLOOD PRESSURE MEASUREMENT	BLOOD PRESSURE READINGS
Normal	Systolic <i>and</i> diastolic	<120 mm Hg <80 mm Hg
Prehypertension	Systolic <i>or</i> diastolic	120-139 mm Hg 80-89 mm Hg
Stage 1: Hypertension	Systolic <i>or</i> diastolic	140-159 mm Hg 90-99 mm Hg
Stage 2: Hypertension	Systolic <i>or</i> diastolic	≥160 mm Hg ≥100 mm Hg

From Joint National Committee. (2003). The Seventh Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure. NIH Publication No. 03-5233. Bethesda, MD: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.

TABLE 38-4 MEETING HEALTHY PEOPLE 2020 OBJECTIVES

Heart Disease and Stroke

Selected objectives retained from *Healthy People 2010*:

- Increase the proportion of adults with high blood pressure who are taking action to help control their blood pressure.
- Increase the proportion of adults who have had their blood pressure measured within the preceding 2 years and can state whether their blood pressure was normal or high.

Selected objectives retained but modified from *Healthy People 2010*:

- Reduce the proportion of persons in the population with hypertension.
- Increase the proportion of adults with prehypertension who meet the recommended guidelines for:
 - a. Body mass index (BMI)
 - b. Saturated fat consumption
 - c. Sodium intake
 - d. Physical activity
 - e. Moderate alcohol consumption
- Increase the proportion of adults with hypertension who meet the [above] recommended guidelines.

New objectives for Healthy People 2020:

- Increase the proportion of adults with hypertension who are taking the recommended medications to decrease their blood pressure.

Data from www.healthypeople.gov/2020.

considered “normal” under previous guidelines, are classified as *prehypertensive*. These patients need lifestyle changes to prevent cardiovascular complications ([Table 38-3](#)). The relationship between hypertension and cardiovascular events is direct and independent of other risk factors. The higher the patient's blood pressure is, the greater the chance for coronary, cerebral, renal, and peripheral vascular disease.

Control of hypertension has resulted in major decreases in cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. The *Healthy People 2020* campaign includes a number of objectives related to hypertension to decrease cardiovascular mortality ([Table 38-4](#)).

Hypertension can be essential (primary) or secondary ([Table 38-5](#)). Essential hypertension is the most common classification. Sustained BP elevation in patients with essential hypertension results in damage to vital organs by causing

TABLE 38-5 ETIOLOGY OF HYPERTENSION

Essential (Primary)	Secondary
- Family history of hypertension - African-American ethnicity - Hyperlipidemia - Smoking - Older than 60 years or postmenopausal - Excessive sodium and caffeine intake - Overweight/obesity - Physical inactivity - Excessive alcohol intake - Low potassium, calcium, or magnesium intake - Excessive and continuous stress	- Kidney disease - Primary aldosteronism - Pheochromocytoma - Cushing's disease - Coarctation of the aorta - Brain tumors - Encephalitis - Pregnancy - Drugs: - Estrogen (e.g., oral contraceptives) - Glucocorticoids - Mineralocorticoids - Sympathomimetics

medial hyperplasia (thickening) of the arterioles. As the blood vessels thicken and perfusion decreases, body organs are damaged. These changes can result in myocardial infarctions, strokes, peripheral vascular disease (PVD), or renal failure.

Specific disease states and drugs can increase a person's susceptibility to hypertension. A person with this type of elevation in blood pressure has **secondary hypertension**.

Isolated systolic hypertension (ISH) is a major health threat, especially for older adults. It is defined as a systolic BP (SBP) reading at or above 140 with a diastolic BP (DBP) below 90. For years, emphasis was placed on the diastolic BP (DBP) reading and attempts were made to lower this number to under 80. However, as people age, the systolic BP (SBP) becomes more significant because it is a better indicator than DBP of risk for heart disease and stroke. Research has shown that DBP rises until age 55 years and then declines, whereas SBP continues to rise. New research demonstrates a significant association between isolated systolic hypertension and peripheral vascular disease (Safar et al., 2009). In older adults, isolated systolic hypertension is the most common form of hypertension.

Malignant hypertension is a severe type of elevated blood pressure that rapidly progresses. A person with this health problem usually has symptoms such as morning headaches, blurred vision, and dyspnea and/or symptoms of uremia (accumulation in the blood of substances ordinarily eliminated in the urine). Patients are often in their 30s, 40s, or 50s with their systolic blood pressure greater than 200 mm Hg. The diastolic blood pressure is greater than 150 mm Hg or greater than 130 mm Hg when there are pre-existing complications. Unless intervention occurs promptly, a patient with malignant hypertension may experience renal failure, left ventricular failure, or stroke.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Essential hypertension can develop when a patient has any one or more of the risk factors listed in Table 38-5.

Renal disease is one of the most common causes of *secondary* hypertension. Hypertension can develop when there is any sudden damage to the kidneys. Renovascular hypertension is associated with narrowing of one or more of the main arteries carrying blood directly to the kidneys, known as *renal artery stenosis* (RAS). Many patients have been able to reduce

the use of their antihypertensive drugs when the narrowed arteries are dilated through angioplasty with stent placement. All patients requiring three or four categories of antihypertensive drugs at high doses should be screened for RAS.

Dysfunction of the adrenal medulla or the adrenal cortex can also cause secondary hypertension. *Adrenal-mediated hypertension* is due to primary excesses of aldosterone, cortisol, and catecholamines. In *primary aldosteronism*, excessive aldosterone causes hypertension and hypokalemia (low potassium levels). It usually arises from benign adenomas of the adrenal cortex. *Pheochromocytomas* originate most commonly in the adrenal medulla and result in excessive secretion of catecholamines, resulting in life-threatening high blood pressure. In *Cushing's syndrome*, excessive glucocorticoids are excreted from the adrenal cortex. The most common cause of Cushing's syndrome is either adrenocortical hyperplasia or adrenocortical adenoma.

Drugs that can cause secondary hypertension include estrogen, glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, sympathomimetics, cyclosporine, and erythropoietin. The use of estrogen-containing oral contraceptives is likely the most common cause of secondary hypertension in women. Drugs that cause hypertension are discontinued to reverse this problem.

Incidence/Prevalence

One in every three American adults has high blood pressure or is being treated for hypertension (AHA, 2010). The disease shortens life expectancy. A higher percentage of men than women have hypertension until age 45 years. From 45 to 54 years, women have a slightly higher percentage of hypertension than men. After age 54 years, women have a much higher percentage of the disease (AHA, 2010). The causes for these differences are not known.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

The prevalence of hypertension in African Americans in the United States is among the highest in the world and is constantly increasing. When compared with Euro-Americans, they develop high BP earlier in life, making them much more likely to die from strokes, heart disease, and kidney disease (AHA, 2010). The exact reasons for these differences is not known, but genetics and environmental factors may play a role. Efforts to raise awareness of hypertension within African-American communities, including the importance of receiving treatment and controlling blood pressure, have been somewhat successful. Geographic differences still exist (Lloyd-Jones et al., 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Teach patients ways to decrease risk factors for hypertension, which are the same as those for coronary artery disease (CAD). Risk factor prevention and lifestyle changes are discussed in Chapter 40.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

During history taking, review the patient's risk factors for hypertension. Collect data on the patient's age; ethnic origin or race; family history of hypertension; average dietary intake



FIG. 38-2 Blood pressure screening during history and physical examination.

of calories, sodium- and potassium-containing foods, and alcohol; and exercise habits. Also assess any past or present history of kidney or cardiovascular disease and current use of drug therapy or illicit drugs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

When a diagnosis of hypertension is made, most people have no symptoms. However, patients may experience headaches, facial flushing (redness), dizziness, or fainting as a result of the elevated blood pressure. Obtain blood pressure readings in both arms. Two or more readings may be taken at each visit (Fig. 38-2). Some patients have high blood pressure due to anxiety associated with visiting a health care provider. Be sure to take an accurate blood pressure by using an appropriate-size cuff. Anderson et al. (2010) found that forearm blood pressure measurements are as accurate as upper arm blood pressures, especially in patients who are obese. In ambulatory care settings, such as clinics and office practices, wrist blood pressure measurements can be used.

To detect postural (orthostatic) changes, take readings with the patient in the supine (lying) or sitting position and at least 2 minutes later when standing. **Orthostatic hypotension** is a decrease in blood pressure (20 mm Hg systolic and/or 10 mm Hg diastolic) when the patient changes position from lying to sitting.

Funduscopic examination of the eyes to observe vascular changes in the retina is done by a skilled practitioner. The appearance of the retina can be a reliable index of the severity and prognosis of hypertension.

Physical assessment is helpful in diagnosing several conditions that produce secondary hypertension. The presence of abdominal bruits is typical of patients with renal vascular disease. Tachycardia, sweating, and pallor may suggest a pheochromocytoma (adrenal medulla tumor). Coarctation of the aorta is evidenced by elevation of blood pressure in the arms, with normal or low blood pressure in the lower extremities. Femoral pulses are also delayed or absent.

Psychosocial Assessment

Assess for psychosocial stressors that can worsen hypertension and affect the patient's ability to adhere to treatment. Evaluate job-related, economic, and other life stressors, as well as the patient's response to these stressors. Some patients may have difficulty coping with the lifestyle changes needed to control hypertension. Be sure to assess past coping strategies.

Diagnostic Assessment

Although no laboratory tests are diagnostic of essential hypertension, several laboratory tests can assess possible causes of secondary hypertension. Kidney disease can be diagnosed by the presence of protein, red blood cells, pus cells, and casts in the urine; elevated levels of blood urea nitrogen (BUN); and elevated serum creatinine levels. The creatinine clearance test directly indicates the glomerular filtration ability of the kidneys. The normal value is 107 to 139 mL/min for men and 87 to 107 mL/min for women (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Decreased levels indicate kidney disease.

Urinary test results are positive for the presence of catecholamines in patients with a pheochromocytoma (tumor of the adrenal medulla). An elevation in levels of serum corticoids and 17-ketosteroids in the urine is diagnostic of Cushing's disease.

No specific x-ray studies can diagnose hypertension. Routine chest radiography may help recognize cardiomegaly (heart enlargement).

An electrocardiogram (ECG) determines the degree of cardiac involvement. Left atrial and ventricular hypertrophy is the first ECG sign of heart disease resulting from hypertension. Left ventricular remodeling can be detected on the 12-lead ECG (see Chapter 40 for discussion of remodeling).

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with hypertension are:

1. Need for health teaching related to the plan of care for hypertension management
2. Risk for nonadherence related to side effects of drug therapy and necessary changes in lifestyle

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Health Teaching

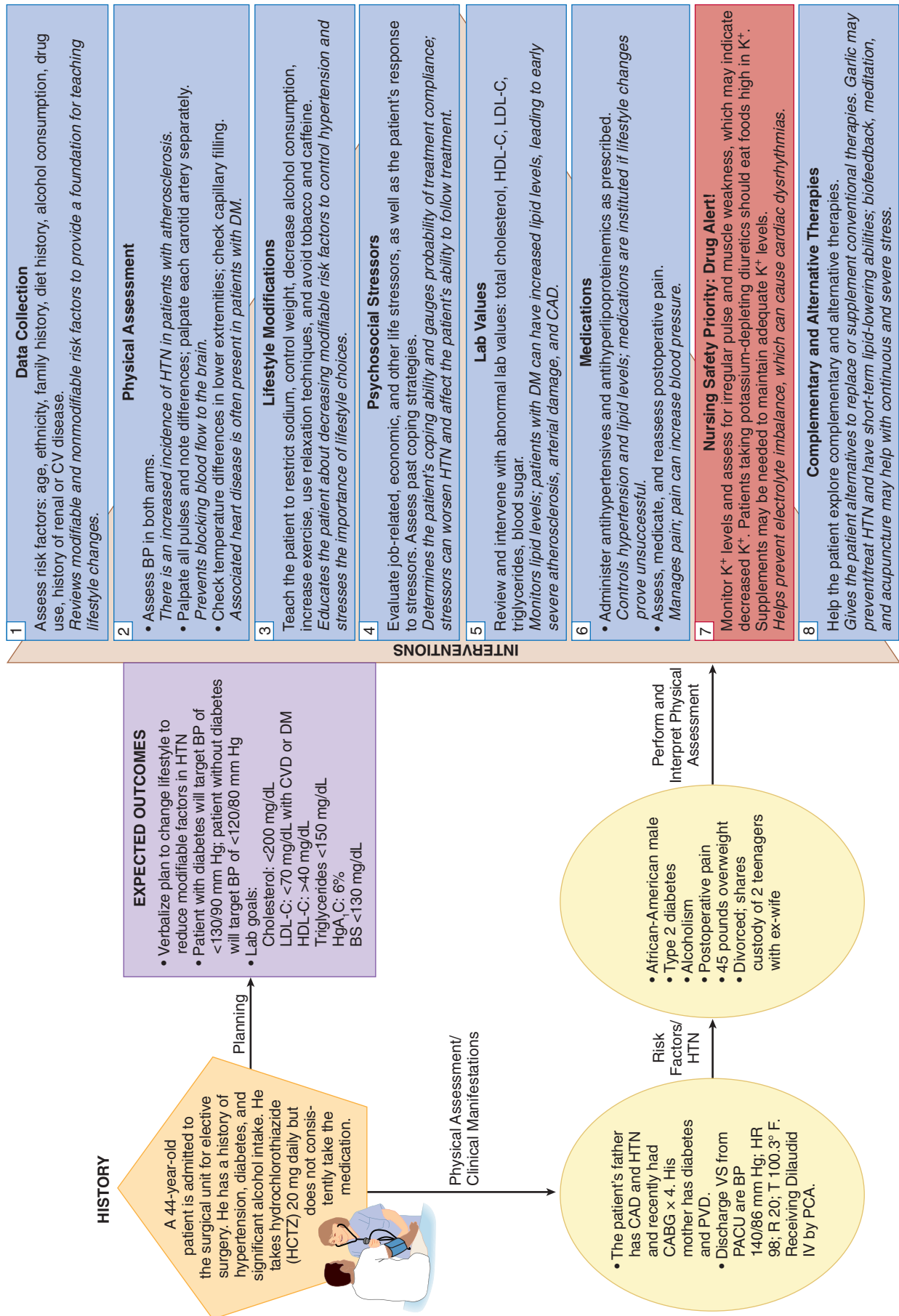
Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypertension is expected to verbalize his or her individualized plan of care for hypertension (see the Concept Map on Hypertension on p. 779).

Interventions. Lifestyle changes are considered the foundation of hypertension control. If these changes are unsuccessful, the health care provider considers the use of antihypertensive drugs. There is no surgical treatment for essential hypertension. However, surgery may be indicated for certain causes of secondary hypertension, such as renal vascular disease, coarctation of the aorta, and pheochromocytoma.

Lifestyle Changes. In collaboration with the health care team, teach the patient to:

- Restrict sodium intake in the diet
- Reduce weight, if overweight or obese
- Use alcohol sparingly

Concept Map: Hypertension



- Exercise 5 days a week
- Use relaxation techniques to decrease stress
- Avoid tobacco and caffeine

Strategies to help patients make these changes are discussed in [Chapter 40](#).

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Garlic has been used for centuries for a number of health problems, but evidence to support its use to prevent hypertension is controversial. Evidence by consensus and case reports does support garlic's cholesterol-lowering ability and its ability to decrease blood pressure in patients with hypertension ([National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2010](#)). Teach patients to check with their health care provider before starting garlic or any herbal therapy because of possible side effects and interactions with other herbs, foods, or drugs. Garlic can affect the liver and cause bleeding in some patients, especially if they have invasive procedures such as surgery.

Some patients have also had success with biofeedback, meditation, and acupuncture as part of their overall management plan. These methods may be most useful as adjuncts for patients who experience continuous and severe stress.

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy is individualized for each patient, with consideration given to culture, age, other existing illness, severity of blood pressure elevation, and cost of drugs and follow-up. Once-a-day drug therapy is best, especially for the older adult, because the more doses required each day, the higher the risk that a patient will not follow the treatment regimen. However, many patients with hypertension need two or more drugs to adequately control blood pressure.

In the largest hypertensive trial done to date, Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT), the use of diuretics has been practically unmatched in preventing the cardiovascular complications of hypertension. Calcium channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, angiotensin II receptor antagonists, and aldosterone receptor antagonists may also be given. Examples of commonly used drug classes for hypertension are listed in [Chart 38-1](#).

Diuretics. Diuretics are the first type of drugs for managing hypertension ([Cranwell-Bruce, 2008](#)). Three basic types of diuretics are used to decrease blood volume and lower blood pressure in order of how commonly they are prescribed:

- Thiazide (low-ceiling) diuretics, such as hydrochlorothiazide (HydroDIURIL, Microzide, Oretic, Urozide ☼), inhibit sodium, chloride, and water reabsorption in the distal tubules while promoting potassium, bicarbonate, and magnesium excretion. However, they decrease calcium excretion, which helps

prevent kidney stones and bone loss ([Cranwell-Bruce, 2008](#)). Because of the low cost and high effectiveness of thiazide-type diuretics, they are usually the drugs of choice for patients with uncomplicated hypertension. These drugs can be prescribed as a single agent or in combination with other classes of drugs.

- Loop (high-ceiling) diuretics, such as furosemide (Lasix, Furoside ☼) and torsemide (Demadex), inhibit sodium, chloride, and water reabsorption in the ascending loop of Henle and promote potassium excretion.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Use loop diuretics with caution in older adults because they can cause dehydration and orthostatic hypotension. These complications increase the patient's risk for falls. Teach families to monitor for and report patient dizziness, falls, or confusion to the health care provider as soon as possible and discontinue the medication.

- Potassium-sparing diuretics, such as spironolactone (Aldactone, Novospiron ☼), triamterene (Dyrenium), and amiloride (Midamor), act on the distal renal tubule to inhibit reabsorption of sodium ions in exchange for potassium, thereby *retaining* potassium in the body. When used, they are typically in combination with another diuretic or antihypertensive drug to *conserve* potassium.

Frequent voiding caused by any type of diuretic may interfere with daily activities. Teach patients to take their diuretic in the morning rather than at night to prevent nocturia.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The most frequent side effect associated with *thiazide and loop diuretics* is **hypokalemia** (low potassium level). Monitor serum potassium levels, and assess for irregular pulse and muscle weakness, which may indicate hypokalemia. Teach patients taking potassium-depleting diuretics to eat foods high in potassium, such as bananas and orange juice. Many people also need a potassium supplement to maintain adequate serum potassium levels.

Assess for **hyperkalemia** (high potassium level) for patients taking potassium-sparing diuretics, such as spironolactone. Like hypokalemia, an increased potassium level can also cause weakness and irregular pulse. These electrolyte imbalances are described in detail in [Chapter 13](#).

Other Antihypertensive Drugs. Calcium channel blockers such as verapamil hydrochloride (Calan, Nu-Verap ☼) and amlodipine (Norvasc) lower blood pressure by interfering with the transmembrane flux of calcium ions. This results in vasodilation, which *decreases* blood pressure. These drugs also block SA and AV node conduction, resulting in a decreased heart rate. Calcium channel blockers are most effective in older adults and African Americans ([Cranwell-Bruce, 2008](#)).

A newer calcium channel blocker, clevidipine butyrate (Cleviprex), is available only in IV form and must be administered using an infusion pump. This drug is indicated when oral therapy is not possible and is most often used for hypertensive urgency or severe hypertension. The most common side effects are headache and nausea. Monitor the patient's blood pressure frequently to check for hypotension. A dosage

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach men that they may experience decreased libido (desire for sex) and decreased sexual performance when taking thiazides. Thiazides should be used with caution in patients with diabetes mellitus because they can interfere with serum glucose levels. Caution is also indicated for patients with gout or a history of significant hyponatremia (decreased serum sodium level) because these problems can worsen when thiazides are taken.

CHART 38-1 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Hypertension Management

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Diuretics			
Hydrochlorothiazide (HCTZ) (Microzide, Oretic, Urozide) 25-100 mg orally daily	Low-ceiling diuretic that inhibits Na ⁺ , Cl ⁻ , and water reabsorption in the distal tubules of the kidney.	Teach patient to eat foods high in K ⁺ and have follow-up lab tests to monitor electrolyte levels. Teach older adults to rise slowly from chair or bed. Use with caution for patients with diabetes. Use with caution for patients with gout. Report weakness or dizziness or new-onset confusion to the health care provider. Same as for HCTZ, except safer to give to patients with diabetes and gout.	Drug causes K ⁺ and Mg ²⁺ excretion. Drug causes diuresis, which can cause orthostatic hypotension. Drug can affect glucose control. Drug can cause uric acid retention. Drug can cause hypovolemia, dehydration, and hypokalemia. Same as for HCTZ.
Furosemide (Lasix, Furoside) 40-600 mg orally daily	High-ceiling diuretic that inhibits Na ⁺ , Cl ⁻ , and water reabsorption in the kidney's loop of Henle.		
Spironolactone (Aldactone, Novo-Spiron) 50-400 mg orally daily	Acts on distal tubules of kidneys to inhibit reabsorption of Na ⁺ in exchange for K ⁺ .	Teach patients to decrease intake of foods high in potassium and have follow-up lab tests for electrolyte levels. Teach patients to report weakness and irregular pulse to health care provider.	Drug causes K ⁺ retention in the body. These symptoms may indicate hyperkalemia.
Calcium Channel Blockers			
Verapamil (Calan, Nu-Verap) Up to 480 mg orally in 3 divided doses; Extended-release form (ER) also available as 240-480 mg orally daily	Interferes with flux of calcium ions to cause vasodilation, which lowers blood pressure.	Monitor pulse and blood pressure before taking each day; do not take if pulse is less than 60 or systolic BP is below 100 mm Hg without contacting health care provider. Teach patients and their families that patients should avoid grapefruit juice when taking calcium channel blockers. *Same as above for verapamil, but safe to drink grapefruit juice.	Drug slows SA and AV conduction in the heart, thus decreases heart rate; vasodilation causes decreased blood pressure. Grapefruit juice can enhance the action of the drug. *Same as above for verapamil, but safe to drink grapefruit juice.
Amlodipine (Norvasc) 5-10 mg orally daily	Same as above for verapamil.		
Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors			
Lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril) 10-80 mg orally daily	Blocks action of ACE in converting angiotensin I to angiotensin II (vasoconstrictor).	Report nagging cough to health care provider. Monitor blood pressure carefully, especially orthostatic checks; remind patients to move slowly from sitting to standing to prevent dizziness and possible falls. Do not give drug if systolic blood pressure is below 100 without checking with health care provider. Monitor blood pressure as described above for lisinopril.	Cough is a common and annoying side effect, and drug should be discontinued if it occurs. Drug prevents vasoconstriction by angiotensin II resulting in vasodilation and decreased blood pressure.
Enalapril (Vasotec) 10-40 mg orally daily or in divided doses; also available in IV form	Same as above for lisinopril.		Same as above for lisinopril.

Continued

CHART 38-1 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Hypertension Management—cont'd

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Angiotensin II Receptor Blockers (ARBs)			
Valsartan (Diovan) 80-320 mg orally daily	Blocks binding of angiotensin II to receptor sites in vascular smooth muscle and adrenal glands.	Teach patients to avoid foods high in potassium. Monitor blood pressures to ensure that hypotension does not occur. Do not take drug if systolic BP is below 100 without checking with a health care provider. Same as above for valsartan.	ARBs can cause hyperkalemia, especially when combined with other antihypertensive drugs. Vasodilation causes decreased blood pressure. Same as above for valsartan.
Losartan (Cozaar) 25-100 mg orally daily or in divided doses twice a day	Same as above for valsartan.		
Aldosterone Receptor Antagonists			
Eplerenone (Inspra) 25-50 mg orally daily	Blocks aldosterone binding at receptor sites in kidney, heart, blood vessels, and brain to inhibit sodium reabsorption by the kidneys.	Teach patients to follow up with lab tests as scheduled; decrease food intake of high potassium foods. Avoid taking the drug with grapefruit juice and St. John's wort. Avoid taking the drug with itraconazole (Sporanox) and ketoconazole (Nizoral). Check with the pharmacist about interactions with other drugs or herbs that the patient is taking.	Drug can cause increases in K ⁺ and triglycerides and a decreased Na ⁺ . Grapefruit juice and St. John's wort increase the risk for adverse drug events when taking eplerenone. These drugs interact with eplerenone. Drug interacts with many other drugs and herbs and is either not prescribed or drug dosage is adjusted.
Beta-Adrenergic Blockers			
Metoprolol (Toprol, Toprol XL, Lopressor, Betaloc  100-400 mg orally daily or in divided doses (one dose daily for XL form)	Cardioselective drugs block beta ₁ receptors in the heart and peripheral blood vessels.	Monitor carefully for orthostatic hypotension; teach patients to rise slowly from the sitting position to prevent dizziness; do not take drug if systolic BP is below 100 without contacting the health care provider. Monitor pulse rate every day; do not take drug if pulse is below 60 without contacting the health care provider. Teach the patient that the drug can cause fatigue, depression, and sexual dysfunction; report any of these problems to the health care provider. Use the drug with caution in patients who are diabetic.	Orthostatic hypotension is a common adverse effect of the drug and can contribute to falls and confusion, especially in older adults. The beta ₁ -blocking action of the drug decreases the rate, contractility, and output of the heart. The drug has many side and adverse effects because of its potent action. Because of the sympathetic blocking action of the drug, glucose production may be affected. Same as above for metoprolol.
Atenolol (Tenormin, Apo-Atenol  50-100 mg orally daily	Same as above for metoprolol.	Same as above for metoprolol.	Same as above for metoprolol.
Renin Inhibitors			
Aliskiren (Tekturna) 150-300 mg orally daily	Inhibits renin production, which prevents conversion of angiotensinogen to angiotensin I; decreased vasoconstriction, peripheral resistance, and cardiac output result.	Teach patients that side effects (cough and diarrhea) are not common; in a few cases, respiratory distress has occurred.	Drug is relatively safe with few side effects.

increase of 1 to 2 mg/hr generally produces an additional 2- to 4-mm Hg decrease in systolic blood pressure.

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, also known as the “*pril*” drugs, are also used as single or combination agents in the treatment of hypertension. These drugs block the action of the angiotensin-converting enzyme as it attempts to convert angiotensin I to angiotensin II, one of the most powerful vasoconstrictors in the body. This action also decreases sodium and water retention and lowers peripheral vascular resistance, both of which lower blood pressure. ACE inhibitors include captopril (Capoten), lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril), and enalapril (Vasotec). The most common side effect of this group of drugs is a nagging, dry cough. Teach patients to report this problem to their health care provider as soon as possible. If a cough develops, the drug is discontinued.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Instruct the patient receiving an ACE inhibitor for the first time to get out of bed slowly to avoid the severe hypotensive effect that can occur with initial use. Orthostatic hypotension may occur with subsequent doses, but it is less severe. If dizziness continues or there is a significant decrease in the systolic blood pressure (more than a change of 20 mm Hg), notify the health care provider or teach the patient to notify his or her provider. *The older patient is at the greatest risk for postural hypotension because of the cardiovascular changes associated with aging.*

Angiotensin II receptor antagonists, also called *angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs)* or the *-sartan drugs*, make up a group of drugs that selectively block the binding of angiotensin II to receptor sites in the vascular smooth muscle and adrenal tissues by competing directly with angiotensin II but not inhibiting ACE (Cranwell-Bruce, 2008). Examples of drugs in this group are candesartan (Atacand), valsartan (Diovan), and losartan (Cozaar). ARBs can be used alone or in combination with other antihypertensive drugs. These drugs are excellent options for patients who report a nagging cough associated with ACE inhibitors. In addition, these drugs do not require initial adjustment of the dose for older adults or for any patient with renal impairment. Like the ACEs, the ARBs are not as effective in African Americans unless these drugs are taken with diuretics or another category such as a beta blocker or calcium channel blocker (AHA, 2010).

Aldosterone receptor antagonists block the hypertensive effect of the mineralocorticoid hormone *aldosterone*. Aldosterone increases sodium reabsorption by the kidney and is a significant contributor to hypertension, cardiac and vascular remodeling, and heart failure. Eplerenone (Inspra) lowers blood pressure by blocking aldosterone binding at the mineralocorticoid receptor sites in the kidney, heart, blood vessels, and brain. Generally well tolerated, eplerenone has dose-related adverse effects of hypertriglyceridemia, hyponatremia, and hyperkalemia. Using ACE inhibitors or ARBs at the same time increases the risk for hyperkalemia. Therefore monitor potassium levels carefully, initially every 2 weeks for the first few months and then monthly thereafter.

Beta-adrenergic blockers, identified by the ending *-olol*, are categorized as cardioselective (working only on the cardiovascular system) and non-cardioselective. Cardioselective beta blockers, affecting only beta-1 receptors, may be prescribed to lower blood pressure by blocking beta receptors in

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When taking eplerenone, itraconazole (Sporanox) and ketoconazole (Nizoral) should not be taken. Drug interactions are common. Patients taking erythromycin, fluconazole (Diflucan), saquinavir (Fortovase), and verapamil (Calan) can take eplerenone but with a reduction in dosage by half to 25 mg daily. Teach patients that grapefruit juice and the popular herb *St. John's wort* can also increase the chance of adverse effects. Similar to all antihypertensives, remind patients not to get up quickly, drive, or climb stairs until they adjust to the effects of the drug.

the heart and peripheral vessels. By blocking these receptors, the drugs decrease heart rate and myocardial contractility. Teach patients about common side effects of beta blockers, including fatigue, weakness, depression, and sexual dysfunction. The potential for side effects depends on the “selective” blocking effects of the drug. Atenolol (Tenormin, Apo-Atenol), bisoprolol (Zebeta), and metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol, Toprol-XL, Betaloc) are commonly used cardioselective beta blockers for hypertension.

Patients with diabetes who take beta blockers may not have the usual manifestations of hypoglycemia because the sympathetic nervous system is blocked. The body's responses to hypoglycemia such as gluconeogenesis may also be inhibited by certain beta blockers.

Beta blockers are the drug of choice for hypertensive patients with ischemic heart disease (IHD) because the heart is the most common target of end-organ damage with hypertension. If this drug is not tolerated, a long-acting calcium channel blocker can be used. In patients with unstable angina or myocardial infarction (MI), beta blockers or calcium channel blockers should be used initially in combination with ACE inhibitors or ARBs, with addition of other drugs if needed to control the blood pressure. Best practice for controlling hypertension in post-myocardial infarction (MI) patients includes a combination therapy of beta blockers, ACE inhibitors or ARBs (not as common), and aldosterone antagonists plus intense management of lipids and the use of aspirin. Low-dose aspirin should be considered only once the blood pressure is controlled because of the increased risk for hemorrhagic stroke in patients with uncontrolled hypertension. Patients who are prehypertensive may also benefit from low-dose daily aspirin (Hermida et al., 2009).

Renin inhibitors are effective for mild to moderate hypertension. Aliskiren (Tekturna) is an example and can be used alone or with a thiazide diuretic. Renin is an enzyme produced in the kidneys that causes vasoconstriction, increases peripheral resistance, and increases cardiac output. The result is an increase in blood pressure. Renin inhibitors prevent renin from producing this action. Side effects are minimal and not common, although respiratory distress may occur.

Central alpha agonists act on the central nervous system, preventing reuptake of norepinephrine and resulting in lower peripheral vascular resistance and blood pressure. Clonidine (Catapres) is most commonly used in this drug classification and is usually given as a transdermal patch, providing control of blood pressure for as long as 7 days. Side effects include sedation, postural hypotension, and impotence. This group of drugs is not indicated for first-line management of hypertension but may be added for selected patients.

Alpha-adrenergic antagonists, such as prazosin (Mini-press), doxazosin (Cardura), and terazosin (Hytrin), dilate the arterioles and veins. These drugs can lower blood pressure quickly, but their use is limited because of frequent and both-ersome side effects.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is prescribed hydrochlorothiazide (Microzide) for control of hypertension. What health teaching will the nurse provide before the client begins therapy?

- A. "You may develop a slower pulse rate."
- B. "You may notice some swelling in your feet."
- C. "You may develop a nagging cough."
- D. "Your diet should include foods high in potassium."

Promoting Adherence to the Plan of Care

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypertension is expected to adhere to the plan of care, including making necessary lifestyle changes.

Interventions. Patients who require medications to control essential hypertension usually need to take them for the rest of their lives. Some patients stop taking them because they have no symptoms and have troublesome side effects.

In the hospital setting, collaborate with the pharmacist, as needed, to discuss the outcomes of therapy with the patient, including potential side effects. Assist the patient in tailoring the therapeutic regimen to his or her lifestyle and daily schedule.

Patients who do not adhere to antihypertensive treatment are at a high risk for target organ damage and *hypertensive urgency or crisis* (causes organ damage, such as kidney or heart [target organs]) (Chart 38-2). Patients in hypertensive crisis are admitted to critical care units, where they receive IV antihypertensive therapy such as nitroprusside (Nipride), nicardipine (Cardene IV), fenoldopam (Corlopam), or labetalol (Normodyne). These drugs act quickly as vasodilators to decrease blood pressure (BP). When the patient's blood pressure stabilizes, oral antihypertensive drugs are given (Horne & Gordon, 2009).

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

Hypertension is a chronic illness. Allow patients to verbalize feelings about the disease and its treatment. Emphasize that their involvement in the collaborative plan of care can lead to control of the disease and can prevent complications.

Some patients do not adhere to their drug therapy regimen at home because they have no symptoms or they simply forget to take their drugs. Others may think they are not sick enough to need medication. Some patients may assume that once their blood pressure returns to normal levels, they no longer need treatment. They may also stop taking their drugs because of side effects or cost. Develop a plan with the patient, and identify ways to encourage adherence to the plan of care.

Teaching for Self-Management

Schmid et al. (2009) found that patient education is essential to help patients become successful in managing their blood pressure (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 785).

CHART 38-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of Patients with Hypertensive Urgency or Crisis

Assess

- Severe headache
- Extremely high blood pressure (BP)
- Dizziness
- Blurred vision
- Shortness of breath
- Epistaxis (nosebleed)
- Severe anxiety

Intervene

- Place patient in a semi-Fowler's position.
- Administer oxygen.
- Start IV of 0.9% normal saline (NS) solution slowly to prevent fluid overload (which would increase blood pressure).
- Administer IV nitroprusside (Nitropress), nicardipine (Cardene IV), or other infusion drug as prescribed (for nitroprusside, cover infusion bag to prevent drug breakdown by light); when stable, switch to oral antihypertensive drug.
- Monitor BP every 5 to 15 minutes until the diastolic pressure is below 90 and not less than 75; then monitor BP every 30 minutes to ensure that BP is not lowered too quickly.
- Observe for neurologic or cardiovascular complications, such as seizures; numbness, weakness, or tingling of extremities; dysrhythmias; or chest pain (possible indicators of target organ damage).

Provide oral and written information about the indications, dosage, times for administration, side effects, and drug interactions for antihypertensives. Stress that medication must be taken as prescribed; when all of it has been consumed, the prescription must be renewed on a continual basis. Suddenly stopping drugs such as beta blockers can result in angina (chest pain), myocardial infarction (MI), or rebound hypertension. Urge patients to report unpleasant side effects such as excessive fatigue, cough, or sexual dysfunction. In many instances, an alternative drug can be prescribed to minimize certain side effects.

Teach the patient to obtain an ambulatory blood pressure monitoring (ABPM) device for use at home so that the pressure can be checked. Evaluate the patient's and family's ability to use this device. If weight reduction is a desired outcome, suggest having a scale in the home for weight monitoring. For patients who do not want to self-monitor, are not able to self-monitor, or have "white-coat" syndrome when they go to their health care provider (causing elevated BP), continuous ABPM may be used. The monitor is worn for 24 hours or longer while patients perform their normal daily activities. Blood pressure is automatically taken every 15 to 30 minutes and recorded for review later. The advantage of this technique is that the health care provider can view the changes in BP readings throughout the 24-hour period to get a picture of a true BP value. Current evidence strongly supports 24-hour ambulatory blood pressure monitoring as a first-line procedure to determine the need for antihypertensive therapy (Verdecchia et al., 2009).

Instruct the patient about sodium restriction, weight maintenance or reduction, alcohol restriction, stress management, and exercise. If necessary, also explain about the need to stop using tobacco, especially smoking.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Do Patients Need to Be Successful Self-Managers of Blood Pressure?

Schmid, A. Damush, T., Plue, L., Submanian, U., Bakas, T., & Williams, L. (2009). Current blood pressure self-management: A qualitative study. *Rehabilitation Nursing, 34*(6), 223-229.

Blood pressure self-management is well supported as a useful tool for the management of hypertension and the reduction of complications, including strokes. To assist patients to be successful self-managers, this study explored current strategies and needs for blood pressure self-management. The mixed-methods study collected data through a short questionnaire and six focused groups incorporating 16 stroke and 12 transient ischemic attack survivors. Data were analyzed to describe cohort characteristics, and comparisons were made using t-tests and chi-square test, as appropriate. Four primary blood pressure self-management themes were revealed. Participants indicated that external support from health care providers and informal caregivers helped facilitate blood pressure self-management. Health care provider support focused on enhanced patient education and communication.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although this was a small qualitative study, the researchers used several methods for data collection to answer the study question.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Nurses and other practitioners should inform patients of their actual blood pressure values during hospitalization or clinic visits, encourage patients to record their blood pressure values, and educate patients about self-management strategies. Nurses can enhance blood pressure self-management by ensuring that patients know about their target blood pressure, how to use their equipment, how and when to record their blood pressure, and what action to take based on the blood pressure results.

Health Care Resources

A home care nurse may be needed for follow-up to monitor the blood pressure. Evaluate the patient's or family's ability to obtain accurate BP measurements, and assess adherence with treatment. The American Heart Association (www.aha.org), the Red Cross, or a local pharmacy may be used for free blood

pressure checks if patients cannot buy equipment to monitor their blood pressure. Health fairs are also available in most locations.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with hypertension on the basis of the identified patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient will:

- Verbalize understanding of the plan of care, including drug therapy and any necessary lifestyle changes
- Report adverse drug effects, such as coughing, weakness, or dizziness, to the health care provider immediately
- Consistently adhere to the plan of care, including regular follow-up health care provider visits

PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL DISEASE

Peripheral vascular disease (PVD) includes disorders that change the natural flow of blood through the arteries and veins of the peripheral circulation. It affects the legs much more frequently than the arms. Generally, a diagnosis of PVD implies arterial disease (peripheral arterial disease [PAD]) rather than venous involvement. Some patients have both arterial and venous disease. The cost of the disease is very high and is expected to increase as baby boomers age and obesity in the United States continues to be a major health problem.

Pathophysiology

PAD is a result of systemic atherosclerosis. It is a chronic condition in which partial or total arterial occlusion (blockage) deprives the lower extremities of *oxygen* and nutrients. PAD in the legs is sometimes referred to as *lower extremity arterial disease (LEAD)*. Atherosclerosis leads to blockage of the arteries that supply the lower legs and feet. The tissues below the blockage (obstruction) cannot live without an adequate *oxygen* and nutrient supply.

Obstructions are classified as inflow or outflow, according to the arteries involved and their relationship to the inguinal ligament (Fig. 38-3). *Inflow* obstructions involve the distal end of the aorta and the common, internal, and external iliac arteries. They are located above the inguinal ligament. *Outflow* obstructions involve the femoral, popliteal, and tibial arteries and are below the superficial femoral artery (SFA). Gradual inflow occlusions may not cause significant tissue damage. Gradual outflow occlusions typically do.

Atherosclerosis is the most common cause of chronic arterial obstruction; therefore the risk factors for atherosclerosis apply to PAD as well. Common risk factors include hypertension, hyperlipidemia, diabetes mellitus, cigarette smoking, obesity, and familial predisposition. Advancing age also increases the risk for disease related to atherosclerosis. Patients with PAD have an increased risk for developing chronic angina, MI, or stroke and are much more likely to die within 10 years compared with those who do not have the disease.

About 10 to 12 million people in the United States have PAD, most of them older than 65 years (AHA, 2010). African Americans are affected more often than any other group, most likely because they have many risk factors such as diabetes and hypertension (AHA, 2010).

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE**Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration; Evidence-Based Practice**

A middle-aged tax attorney with a history of hypertension and smoking has an acute onset of nausea and headache. He seeks assistance from his primary care provider, who admits him immediately to the hospital. At the clinic, his heart rate is 88 beats/min, blood pressure is 220/110, and respiratory rate is 28 breaths/min.

1. Why do you think this patient was admitted on an urgent basis to the hospital?
2. What members of the health care team will be involved in this patient's care?
3. What health history and physical assessment data will you collect as the acute care nurse?
4. What type of drug therapy may be prescribed for this patient? What are your nursing responsibilities when giving these drugs?
5. What health teaching will you provide once the patient is stable? What evidence do you have to support your answer?
6. What community resources are available to assist this patient to self-manage his hypertension?

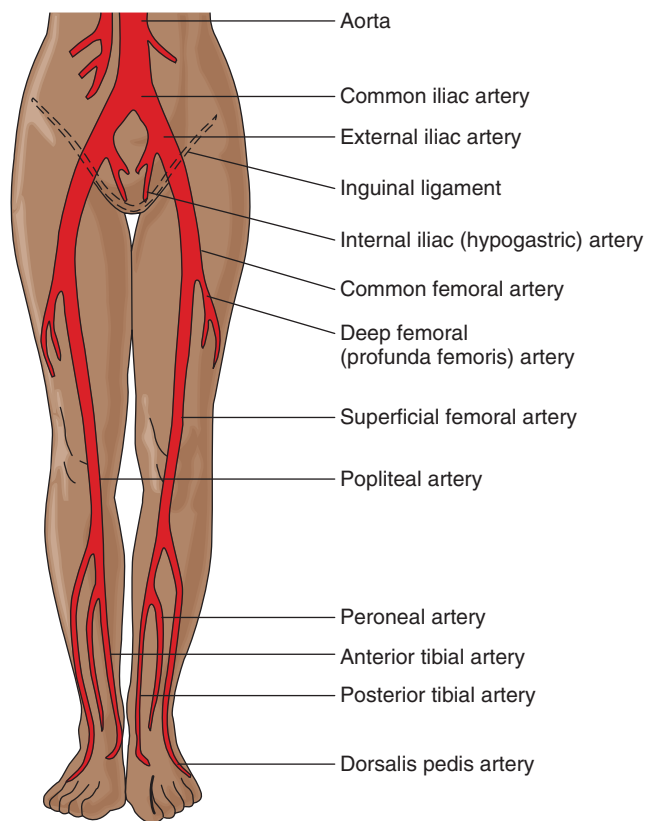


FIG. 38-3 Common locations of inflow and outflow lesions.

CHART 38-3 KEY FEATURES

Chronic Peripheral Arterial Disease

Stage I: Asymptomatic

- No claudication is present.
- Bruit or aneurysm may be present.
- Pedal pulses are decreased or absent.

Stage II: Claudication

- Muscle pain, cramping, or burning occurs with exercise and is relieved with rest.
- Symptoms are reproducible with exercise.

Stage III: Rest Pain

- Pain while resting commonly awakens the patient at night.
- Pain is described as numbness, burning, toothache-type pain.
- Pain usually occurs in the distal portion of the extremity (toes, arch, forefoot, or heel), rarely in the calf or the ankle.
- Pain is relieved by placing the extremity in a dependent position.

Stage IV: Necrosis/Gangrene

- Ulcers and blackened tissue occur on the toes, the forefoot, and the heel.
- Distinctive gangrenous odor is present.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The clinical course of chronic PAD can be divided into four stages (Chart 38-3). Patients do not experience symptoms in the early stages of disease. Most patients are not diagnosed until they develop leg pain.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Most patients initially seek medical attention for a classic leg pain known as **intermittent claudication** (a term derived from a word meaning “to limp”). Usually they can walk only a certain distance before a cramping, burning muscle discomfort or pain forces them to stop. The pain stops after rest. When patients resume walking, they can walk the same distance before the pain returns. Thus the pain is considered reproducible. As the disease progresses, they can walk only shorter and shorter distances before pain recurs. Ultimately, pain may occur even while at rest.

Rest pain, which may begin while the disease is still in the stage of intermittent claudication, is a numbness or burning sensation, often described as feeling like a toothache that is severe enough to awaken patients at night. It is usually located in the toes, the foot arches, the forefeet, the heels, and, rarely, in the calves or ankles. Patients can sometimes get pain relief by keeping the limb in a dependent position (below the heart). Those with rest pain often have advanced disease that may result in limb loss.

Patients with **inflow disease** have discomfort in the lower back, buttocks, or thighs. Patients with **mild** inflow disease have discomfort after walking about two blocks. This discomfort is not severe but causes them to stop walking. It is relieved with rest. Patients with **moderate** inflow disease experience pain in these areas after walking about one or two blocks. The discomfort is described as being more like pain, but it eases with rest most of the time. **Severe** inflow disease causes severe pain after walking less than one block. These patients usually have rest pain.

Patients with **outflow disease** describe burning or cramping in the calves, ankles, feet, and toes. Instep or foot discomfort indicates an obstruction below the popliteal artery. Those with **mild** outflow disease experience discomfort after walking about five blocks. This discomfort is relieved by rest. Patients with **moderate** outflow disease have pain after walking about two blocks. Intermittent rest pain may be present. Those with **severe** outflow disease usually cannot walk more than one-half block and usually experience rest pain. They may hang their feet off the bed at night for comfort and report more frequent rest pain than do those with inflow disease.

Specific findings for PAD depend on the severity of the disease. Observe for loss of hair on the lower calf, ankle, and foot; dry, scaly, dusky, pale, or mottled skin; and thickened toenails. With severe arterial disease, the extremity is cold and gray-blue (cyanotic) or darkened. Pallor may occur when the extremity is elevated. Dependent **rubor** (redness) may occur when the extremity is lowered (Fig. 38-4). Muscle atrophy can result from prolonged chronic arterial disease.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Only severe cyanosis is evident in the skin of dark-skinned patients. To detect cyanosis, assess the skin and nail beds for a dull, lifeless color. The soles of the feet and the toenails are less pigmented and allow detection of cyanosis or duskiness in the lower extremities.

Palpate all pulses in both legs. The most sensitive and specific indicator of arterial function is the quality of the posterior tibial pulse, because the pedal pulse is not palpable in a small percentage of people. The strength of each pulse should be compared bilaterally.



FIG. 38-4 Dependent rubor in the left leg of a patient with peripheral arterial disease.

Note early signs of ulcer formation or complete ulcer formation, a complication of PAD. Arterial and venous stasis ulcers differ from diabetic ulcers ([Chart 38-4](#)). Initially, **arterial ulcers** are painful and develop on the toes (often the great toe), between the toes, or on the upper aspect of the foot. With prolonged occlusion, the toes can become gangrenous. Typically, the ulcer is small and round with a “punched out” appearance and well-defined borders. Skin lesions are discussed in further detail in [Chapter 27](#).

Imaging Assessment

Arteriography of the lower extremities may be done if stenting of the narrowed vessel is planned or to determine the exact amount of narrowing or occlusion before peripheral bypass surgery. This procedure involves injecting contrast medium into the arterial system and has serious risks including hemorrhage, thrombosis, embolus, and death. The procedure for this test is described in [Chapter 35](#).

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Noninvasive testing for arterial disease has become a more common method of diagnosis. It provides information about the arterial system with minimal risk.

Using a Doppler probe, *segmental systolic blood pressure measurements* of the lower extremities at the thigh, calf, and ankle are an inexpensive, noninvasive method of assessing PAD. Normally, blood pressure readings in the thigh and calf are higher than those in the upper extremities. With the presence of arterial disease, these pressures are lower than the brachial pressure.

With *inflow* disease, pressures taken at the thigh level indicate the severity of disease. Mild inflow disease may cause a difference of only 10 to 30 mm Hg in pressure on the affected side compared with the brachial pressure. Severe inflow disease can cause a pressure difference of more than 40 to 50 mm Hg. The ankle pressure is normally equal to or more than the brachial pressure.

To evaluate *outflow* disease, compare ankle pressure with the brachial pressure, which provides a ratio known as the **ankle-brachial index (ABI)**. The value can be derived by dividing the ankle blood pressure by the brachial blood pressure. *An ABI of less than 0.9 in either leg is diagnostic of PAD. Patients with diabetes are known to have a falsely elevated ABI.*

Doppler-derived maximal systolic acceleration is a newer technique that has demonstrated successful evaluations of peripheral arterial disease in patients with diabetes (Van Tongeren et al., 2010). *Magnetic resonance imaging* may also be used to assess blood flow in the peripheral arteries.

Exercise tolerance testing (by chemical stress test or treadmill) may give valuable information about claudication (muscle pain) without rest pain. The technician obtains resting pulse volume recordings and asks the patient to walk on a treadmill until the symptoms are reproduced. At the time of symptom onset or after about 5 minutes, the technician obtains another pulse volume recording. Normally, there may be an increased waveform with minimal, if any, drop in the ankle pressure. In patients with arterial disease, the waveforms are decreased (dampened) and there is a decrease in the ankle pressure of 40 to 60 mm Hg for 20 to 30 seconds in the affected limb. If the return to normal pressure is delayed (longer than 10 minutes), the results suggest abnormal arterial flow in the affected limb.

Plethysmography can also be performed to evaluate arterial flow in the lower extremities. The measurement provides graphs or tracings of arterial flow in the limb. If an occlusion is present, the waveforms are decreased to flattened, depending on the degree of occlusion.

INTERVENTIONS

Collaborative management of PAD may include nonsurgical interventions and/or surgery. The patient must first be assessed to determine if the altered tissue perfusion is due to arterial disease, venous disease, or both.

Nonsurgical Management

Exercise, positioning, promoting vasodilation, drug therapy, and invasive nonsurgical procedures are used to increase *arterial* flow to the affected leg(s).

Using Exercise and Positioning. *Exercise* may improve arterial blood flow to the affected leg through buildup of the collateral circulation. **Collateral circulation** provides blood to the affected area through smaller vessels that develop and compensate for the occluded vessels. Exercise is individualized for each patient, but people with severe rest pain, venous ulcers, or gangrene should not participate. Others with PAD can benefit from exercise that is started gradually and slowly increased. Instruct the patient to walk until the point of claudication, stop and rest, and then walk a little farther. Eventually, he or she can walk longer distances as collateral circulation develops. Collaborate with the health care provider and physical therapist in determining an appropriate exercise program. Exercise rehabilitation has been used to relieve symptoms but

CHART 38-4 KEY FEATURES

Lower Extremity Ulcers

FEATURE	ARTERIAL ULCERS	VENOUS ULCERS	DIABETIC ULCERS
History	Patient reports claudication after walking about 1-2 blocks Rest pain usually present Pain at ulcer site Two or three risk factors present	Chronic nonhealing ulcer No claudication or rest pain Moderate ulcer discomfort Patient reports of ankle or leg swelling	Diabetes Peripheral neuropathy No reports of claudication
Ulcer location and appearance	End of the toes Between the toes Deep Ulcer bed pale, with even edges Little granulation tissue 	Ankle area Brown pigmentation Ulcer bed pink Usually superficial, with uneven edges Granulation tissue present 	Plantar area of foot Metatarsal heads Pressure points on feet Deep Pale, with even edges Little granulation tissue 
Other assessment findings	Cool or cold foot Decreased or absent pulses Atrophy of skin Hair loss Pallor with elevation Dependent rubor Possible gangrene When acute, neurologic deficits noted	Ankle discoloration and edema Full veins when leg slightly dependent No neurologic deficit Pulses present May have scarring from previous ulcers	Pulses usually present Cool or warm foot Painless
Treatment	Treat underlying cause (surgical, revascularization) Prevent trauma and infection Patient education, stressing foot care	Long-term wound care (Unna boot, damp-to-dry dressings) Elevate extremity Patient education Prevent infection	Rule out major arterial disease Control diabetes Patient education regarding foot care Prevent infection

Photographs of venous ulcer and diabetic ulcer from Bryant, R., & Nix, D. (2007). *Acute and chronic wounds: Current management concepts* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
 Photograph of arterial ulcer from Bonow, R.O., Mann, D.L., Zipes, D.P., & Libby, P. (2011). *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

requires a motivated patient. Supervised sessions are generally not reimbursed by health care insurance.

Positioning to promote circulation has been somewhat controversial. Some patients have swelling in their extremities. Because swelling prevents arterial flow, feet should be elevated. Teach them to avoid raising their legs above the heart level because extreme elevation slows arterial blood flow to the feet.

In severe cases, patients with PAD and swelling may sleep with the affected leg hanging from the bed or sit upright in a chair for comfort.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Instruct all patients with the disease to avoid crossing their legs and avoid wearing restrictive clothing (e.g., garters to hold up nylon stockings, particularly common among older women), which interfere with blood flow. Teach them the importance of inspecting their feet daily for color or other changes.

Promoting Vasodilation. Vasodilation can be achieved by providing warmth to the affected extremity and preventing long periods of exposure to cold. Encourage the patient to maintain a warm environment at home and to wear socks or insulated shoes at all times. *Caution him or her to never apply direct heat to the limb such as with the use of heating pads or extremely hot water. Sensitivity is decreased in the affected limb. Burns may result.*

Encourage patients to prevent exposure of the affected limb to the cold because cold temperatures cause vasoconstriction (decreasing of the diameter of the blood vessels) and therefore decrease arterial blood flow. They should also drink adequate fluids to prevent increased blood viscosity.

Emotional stress, caffeine, and nicotine also can cause vasoconstriction. *Emphasize that complete abstinence from smoking or chewing tobacco is the most effective method of preventing vasoconstriction.* The vasoconstrictive effects of each cigarette may last up to 1 hour after the cigarette is smoked.

 NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Physiological Integrity**

The nurse is caring for a client with peripheral arterial disease. Which statement made by the client concerning positioning of edematous lower extremities requires further health teaching?

- A. "I can sleep with my affected leg hanging from the bed."
- B. "I will elevate my legs above the level of my heart."
- C. "I can sit upright in a chair for comfort."
- D. "I will avoid crossing my legs at all times."

Drug Therapy. For patients with chronic PAD, prescribed drugs include hemorheologic and antiplatelet agents. Pentoxifylline (Trental) is a hemorheologic agent that increases the flexibility of red blood cells. It decreases blood viscosity by inhibiting platelet aggregation and decreasing fibrinogen and thus increases blood flow in the extremities. Many patients report limited improvement in their daily lives after taking pentoxifylline. However, those with extremely limited endurance for walking have reported improvement to the point that they can perform some activities (e.g., walk to the mailbox or dining room) that were previously impossible.

Antiplatelet agents, such as aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid, Ancasal ) and clopidogrel (Plavix), are commonly used. Aspirin 325 or 81 mg daily may be recommended for patients with chronic PAD. However, clopidogrel is better than aspirin for reducing the risk for myocardial infarction (MI), ischemic stroke, and vascular death. Patients with PAD and no contraindications to platelet therapy should receive either aspirin or clopidogrel.

Controlling hypertension can improve tissue perfusion by maintaining pressures that are adequate to perfuse the periphery but not constrict the vessels. Teach about the effect of blood pressure on the circulation, and instruct in methods of control. For example, patients taking beta blockers may have drug-related claudication or a worsening of symptoms. The health care provider closely monitors those who are receiving beta blockers.

Invasive Nonsurgical Procedures. A nonsurgical but invasive method of improving arterial flow is **percutaneous transluminal angioplasty (PTA)**. This procedure requires an arterial puncture in the patient's groin. One or more arteries are dilated with a balloon catheter advanced through a cannula, which is inserted into or above an occluded or stenosed artery. When the procedure is successful, it opens the vessel and improves arterial blood flow. Patients who are candidates for PTA must have occlusions or stenoses that are accessible to the catheter. The physician often uses this procedure for those who are poor surgical candidates, who cannot tolerate general anesthesia, or who need an amputation. Reocclusion may occur after PTA, and the procedure may be repeated. Some patients are occlusion-free for up to 3 to 5 years, whereas others may experience reocclusion within a year.

During PTA, intravascular stents (wire meshlike devices) may be inserted to ensure adequate blood flow in a stenosed vessel. Candidates for stents are patients with stenosis of the common or external iliac arteries. New stent designs are also available to effectively treat superficial femoral artery disease. These devices are cost-effective and result in shorter hospital stays and earlier recoveries.

Another arterial technique to improve blood flow to ischemic legs in people with PAD is mechanical rotational abrasive **atherectomy**. The rotator device is designed to scrape plaque from inside the artery while minimizing damage to the vessel surface.

 NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

The priority for nursing care following a PTA or atherectomy is to observe for bleeding at the arterial puncture site, which is usually sealed with special collagen plugs. Monitor for manifestations of impending hypovolemic shock, including a decrease in blood pressure, increased pulse rate, and decreased urinary output. Perform frequent checks of the distal pulses in both legs to ensure adequate perfusion and oxygenation.

Most patients receive anticoagulant or antiplatelet therapy, such as heparin or clopidogrel (Plavix), before and/or during the procedure. An antiplatelet drug may also be prescribed for 1 to 3 months or longer after the procedure to prevent arterial clotting.

Surgical Management

Patients with severe rest pain or claudication that interferes with the ability to work or threatens loss of a limb become surgical candidates. **Arterial revascularization** is the surgical procedure most commonly used to increase arterial blood flow in an affected limb.

Surgical procedures are classified as *inflow* or *outflow*. Inflow procedures involve bypassing arterial occlusions above the superficial femoral arteries (SFAs). Outflow procedures involve surgical bypassing of arterial occlusions at or below the SFAs. For those who have both inflow and outflow problems, the inflow procedure (for larger arteries) is done before the outflow repair.

Inflow procedures include aortoiliac, aortofemoral, and axillofemoral bypasses. Outflow procedures include femoropopliteal and femorotibial bypasses. Inflow procedures are more successful, with less chance of reocclusion or postoperative ischemia. Outflow procedures are less successful in relieving ischemic pain and are associated with a higher incidence of reocclusion.

Graft materials for bypasses are selected on an individual basis. For outflow procedures, the preferred graft material is the patient's own (**autogenous**) saphenous vein. However, some patients experience coronary artery disease and may need this vein for coronary artery bypass. When the saphenous vein is not usable, the cephalic or basilic arm veins may be used.

Grafts made of synthetic materials have also been used when autogenous veins were not available. Although synthetic grafts have achieved adequate patency in arteries above the knee, they have failed to achieve satisfactory results in infrapopliteal outflow vessels. In addition, autogenous veins are often not long enough for use in these vessels. Composite grafts constructed from multiple vein segments offer even better patency to arteries below the knee.

Preoperative Care. Preparing the patient for surgery is similar to procedures described for general or epidural anesthesia (see Chapter 16). Documentation of vital signs and peripheral pulses provides a baseline of information for

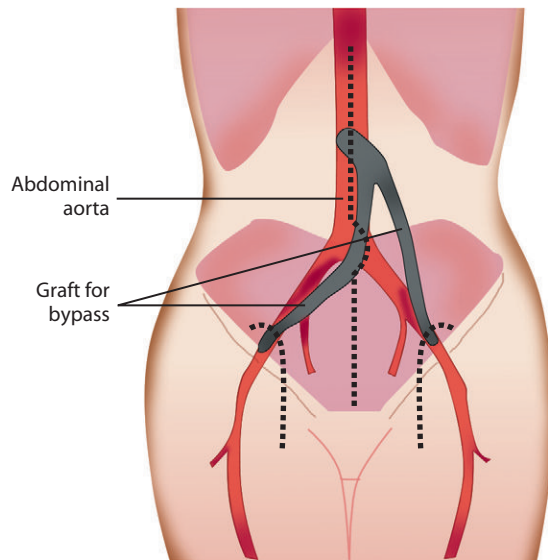


FIG. 38-5 In aortoiliac and aortofemoral bypass surgery, a midline incision into the abdominal cavity is required, with an additional incision in each groin.

comparison during the postoperative phase. Depending on the surgical procedure, the patient may have an IV line, urinary catheter, central venous catheter, and/or arterial line. To prevent postoperative infection, antibiotic therapy is typically given before the procedure.

Operative Procedures. The anesthesia provider places the patient under general, epidural, or spinal anesthesia. Epidural or spinal induction is preferred for older adults to decrease the risk for cardiopulmonary complications in this age-group. If arterial bypass is to be accomplished by autogenous grafts, the surgeon removes the veins through an incision. The blocked artery is then exposed through an incision, and the replacement vein or synthetic graft material is sutured above and below the occlusion to increase blood flow around the occlusion.

For *aortoiliac* and *aortofemoral* bypass surgery, the surgeon makes a midline incision into the abdominal cavity to expose the abdominal aorta, with additional incisions in each groin (Fig. 38-5). Graft material is tunneled from the aorta to the groin incisions, where it is sutured in place.

In an *axillofemoral* bypass (Fig. 38-6), the surgeon makes an incision beneath the clavicle and tunnels graft material subcutaneously with a catheter from the chest to the iliac crest, into a groin incision, where it is sutured in place. Neither the thoracic nor the abdominal cavity is entered. For that reason, the axillofemoral bypass is used for high-risk patients who cannot tolerate a procedure requiring abdominal surgery.

Postoperative Care. Thorough and ongoing nursing assessment for postoperative arterial revascularization patients is crucial to detect complications. Deep breathing every 1 to 2 hours and using an incentive spirometer are essential to prevent respiratory complications.

Patients who have undergone aortoiliac or aortofemoral bypass are NPO status for at least 1 day after surgery to prevent nausea and vomiting, which could increase intra-abdominal pressure. Those who have undergone bypass surgery of the lower extremities not involving the aorta or abdominal wall (femoropopliteal or femorotibial bypass)

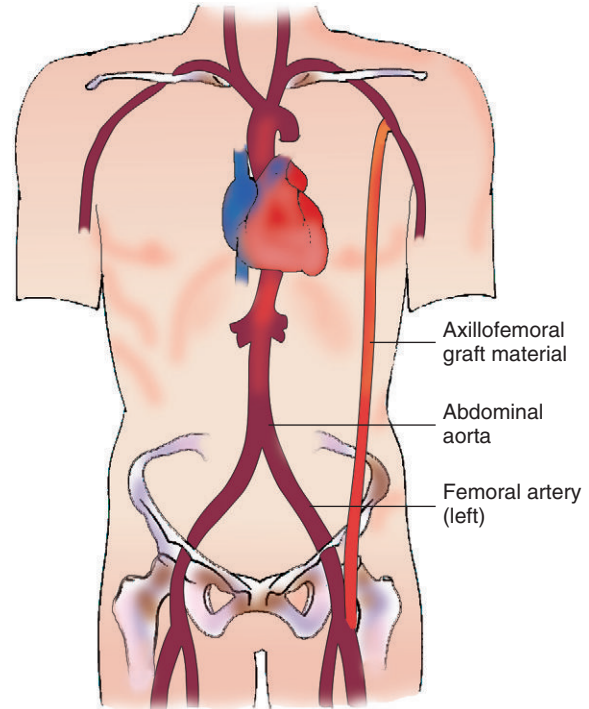


FIG. 38-6 An axillofemoral bypass graft.

may remain NPO until the first postoperative day, when they are allowed clear liquids.

Warmth, redness, and edema of the affected extremity are often expected outcomes of surgery as a result of increased blood flow. Immediately postoperatively, the operating suite or postanesthesia care unit (PACU) nurse marks the site where the distal (dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial) pulse is best palpated or heard by Doppler ultrasonography. This information is communicated to the nursing staff on the critical care unit where the patient will be sent. “Hand-off” reporting is essential to promote safety and quality care (as required by The Joint Commission’s National Patient Safety Goals).

To promote graft patency, monitor the patient’s blood pressure and notify the surgeon if the pressure increases or decreases beyond the patient’s baseline. Hypotension may indicate hypovolemia, which can increase the risk for clotting. Range of motion of the operative leg is usually limited, with no bending of the hip and knee. Consult with the surgeon on a case-by-case basis regarding limitations of movement, including turning. Patients are usually restricted to bedrest for at least 18 to 24 hours after surgery.

Emergency **thrombectomy** (removal of the clot), which the surgeon may perform at the bedside, is the most common treatment for acute graft occlusion. Thrombectomy is associated with excellent results in prosthetic grafts. Results of thrombectomy in autogenous vein grafts are not as successful and often necessitate graft revision and even replacement.

Local intra-arterial thrombolytic (clot-dissolving) therapy with an agent such as tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA) or an infusion of a platelet inhibitor such as abciximab (ReoPro) may be used for acute graft occlusions. This therapy is provided in select settings in which health care providers are experts in its use. Other antiplatelet drugs such as the glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors *tirofiban* (Aggrastat) and

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Graft occlusion (blockage) is a postoperative emergency that can occur within the first 24 hours after arterial revascularization. Monitor the patient for and report severe continuous and aching pain, which may be the first indicator of postoperative graft occlusion and ischemia. Many people experience a throbbing pain caused by the increased blood flow to the extremity. Because this sensation is different from ischemic pain, be sure to assess the type of pain that is experienced. Pain from occlusion may be masked by patient-controlled analgesia (PCA). Some patients have ischemic pain that is not relieved by PCA.

Monitor the patency of the graft by checking the extremity every 15 minutes for the first hour and then hourly for changes in color, temperature, and pulse intensity. Compare the operative leg with the unaffected one. If the operative leg feels cold; becomes pale, ashen, or cyanotic; or has a decreased or absent pulse, contact the surgeon immediately!

epitfibatide (*Integrilin*) may be used as alternatives. The physician considers these therapies when the surgical alternative (e.g., thrombectomy with or without graft revision or replacement) carries high morbidity or mortality rates or when surgery for this type of occlusion has traditionally yielded poor results. Closely assess the patient for manifestations of bleeding if thrombolytics are used.

Graft or wound infections can be life threatening. Use sterile technique when providing incisional care, and observe for symptoms of infection. Assess the area for induration, erythema, tenderness, warmth, edema, or drainage. Also monitor for fever and leukocytosis (increased serum white blood cell count). Notify the surgeon promptly if any of these symptoms occur.

Community-Based Care

Peripheral arterial disease (PAD) is a chronic, long-term problem with frequent complications. Patients may benefit from a case manager who can follow them across the continuum of care. The desired outcome is that the patient can be maintained in the home.

Management at home often requires an interdisciplinary team approach, including several home care visits. [Chart 38-5](#) outlines the assessment highlights for home care patients with peripheral vascular disease (PVD).

Instruct patients on methods to promote vasodilation. Teach them to avoid raising their legs above the level of the heart unless venous stasis is also present. Provide written and oral instructions on foot care and methods to prevent injury and ulcer development ([Chart 38-6](#)).

Patients who have had surgery require additional instruction on incision care (see [Chapter 18](#)). Encourage all patients to avoid smoking and to limit dietary fat intake to less than 30% of the total daily calories. Remind them to drink adequate fluids to prevent dehydration.

Patients with chronic arterial obstruction may fear recurrent occlusion or further narrowing of the artery. They often fear that they might lose a limb or become debilitated in other ways. Indeed, chronic PAD may worsen, especially in those with diabetes mellitus. Reassure them that participation in prescribed exercise, nutrition therapy, and drug therapy, along with cessation of smoking, can limit further formation of atherosclerotic plaques.

CHART 38-5 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT**The Patient with Peripheral Vascular Disease**

Assess tissue perfusion to affected extremity(ies), including:

- Distal circulation, sensation, and motion
- Presence of pain, pallor, paresthesias, pulselessness, paralysis, poikilothermy (coolness)
- Ankle-brachial index

Assess adherence to therapeutic regimen, including:

- Following foot care instructions
- Quitting smoking
- Maintaining dietary restrictions
- Participating in exercise regimen
- Avoiding exposure to cold and constrictive clothing

Assess ability to manage wound care and prevent further injury, including:

- Use of compression stockings or compression pumps as directed
- Use of various dressing materials
- Signs and symptoms to report to nurse

Assess coping ability of patient and family members.

Assess home environment, including:

- Safety hazards, especially related to falls

CHART 38-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT**Foot Care for the Patient with Peripheral Vascular Disease**

- Keep your feet clean by washing them with a mild soap in room-temperature water.
- Keep your feet dry, especially the ankles and between the toes.
- Avoid injury to your feet and ankles. Wear comfortable, well-fitting shoes. Never go without shoes.
- Keep your toenails clean and filed. Have someone cut them if you cannot see them clearly. Cut your toenails straight across.
- To prevent dry, cracked skin, apply a lubricating lotion to your feet.
- Prevent exposure to extreme heat or cold. Never use a heating pad on your feet.
- Avoid constricting garments.
- If a problem develops, see a podiatrist or physician.
- Avoid extended pressure on your feet or ankles, such as occurs when you lean against something.

Patients with arterial compromise may need assistance with ADLs if activity is limited by pain. They may need to limit or avoid stair climbing, depending on the severity of disease. Patients who have undergone surgery or need to limit activity usually need temporary help with daily activities by the family or other caregiver.

Patients who must limit activity because of PAD may benefit from the assistance of a home care aide. Those who have undergone surgery may require a home care nurse to assist with incision care. In collaboration with the case manager, arrange for home care resources before discharge.

ACUTE PERIPHERAL ARTERIAL OCCLUSION**Pathophysiology**

Although chronic peripheral arterial disease (PAD) progresses slowly, the onset of **acute arterial occlusions** may be sudden and dramatic. An **embolus** (piece of clot that travels

and lodges in a new area) is the most common cause of peripheral occlusions, although a local thrombus may be the cause. Occlusion may affect the upper extremities, but it is more common in the lower extremities. Emboli originating from the heart are the most common cause of acute arterial occlusions. Most patients with an embolic occlusion have had an acute myocardial infarction (MI) and/or atrial fibrillation within the previous weeks.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Patients with an acute arterial occlusion describe severe pain below the level of the occlusion that occurs even at rest. The affected extremity is cool or cold, pulseless, and mottled. Small areas on the toes may be blackened or gangrenous. *Those with acute arterial insufficiency often present with the “six P’s” of ischemia:*

- Pain
- Pallor
- Pulselessness
- Paresthesia
- Paralysis
- Poikilothermy (coolness)

The health care provider must initiate treatment promptly to avoid permanent damage or loss of an extremity. Anticoagulant therapy with unfractionated heparin (UFH, Hepalean ) is usually the first intervention to prevent further clot formation. A bolus of up to 10,000 units may be prescribed. The patient may undergo angiography.

A surgical *thrombectomy* or *embolectomy* with local anesthesia may be performed to remove the occlusion. The physician makes a small incision, which is followed by an **arteriotomy** (a surgical opening into an artery). A catheter is inserted into the artery to retrieve the embolus. It may be necessary to close the artery with a synthetic or autologous (patient’s own blood vessel) patch graft.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After an arterial thrombectomy, observe the affected extremity for improvement in color, temperature, and pulse every hour for the first 24 hours or according to the postoperative surgical protocol. Monitor patients for manifestations of new thrombi or emboli, especially pulmonary emboli (PE). Chest pain, dyspnea, and acute confusion (older adults) typically occur in patients with PE. Notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team immediately if these symptoms occur.

Pain should significantly diminish after the surgical procedure, although mild incisional pain remains. Watch closely for complications caused by reperfusion of the artery after thrombectomy or embolectomy, which include spasms and swelling of the skeletal muscles. Swelling of the skeletal muscles can result in compartment syndrome.

Compartment syndrome occurs when tissue pressure within a confined body space becomes elevated and restricts blood flow. The resulting ischemia can lead to tissue damage and eventually tissue death. Assess the motor and sensory function of the affected extremity. Monitor for increasing

pain, swelling, and tenseness. Report any of these symptoms to the health care provider immediately. **Fasciotomy** (surgical opening into the tissues) may be necessary to prevent further injury and save the limb.

The use of *systemic thrombolytic therapy* for acute arterial occlusions has been disappointing because bleeding complications often outweigh the benefits obtained. Local intra-arterial thrombolytic therapy with alteplase (Activase) or t-PA and the use of platelet inhibitors, such as abciximab (ReoPro), have emerged as alternatives to surgical treatment in selected settings.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

When *thrombolytics* are given, assess for signs of bleeding, bruising, or hematoma. For patients receiving any *platelet inhibitor*, monitor platelet counts for the first 3, 6, and 12 hours after the start of the infusion. If the platelet count decreases to below 100,000/mm³, the abciximab infusion needs to be readjusted or discontinued. If any of these complications occur, notify the physician or Rapid Response Team immediately.

ANEURYSMS OF CENTRAL ARTERIES

Pathophysiology

An **aneurysm** is a permanent localized dilation of an artery, which enlarges the artery to at least two times its normal diameter. It may be described as *fusiform* (a diffuse dilation affecting the entire circumference of the artery) or *saccular* (an outpouching affecting only a distinct portion of the artery). Aneurysms may also be described as *true* or *false*. In true aneurysms, the arterial wall is weakened by congenital or acquired problems. False aneurysms occur as a result of vessel injury or trauma to all three layers of the arterial wall. *Dissecting aneurysms*, such as *aortic dissections* (see the later discussion on p. 796) differ from aneurysms in that they are formed when blood accumulates in the wall of an artery.

Aneurysms tend to occur at specific anatomic sites (Fig. 38-7), most commonly in the abdominal aorta. They often occur at a point where the artery is not supported by skeletal muscles or on the lines of curves or flexion in the arterial tree.

An aneurysm forms when the middle layer (media) of the artery is weakened, producing a stretching effect in the inner layer (intima) and outer layers of the artery. As the artery widens, tension in the wall increases and further widening occurs, thus enlarging the aneurysm and increasing the risk for arterial rupture. Elevated blood pressure can also increase the rate of aneurysmal enlargement and risk for early rupture. When *dissecting aneurysms* occur, the aneurysm enlarges, blood is lost, and blood flow to organs is diminished.

Abdominal aortic aneurysms (AAAs) account for most aneurysms, are commonly asymptomatic, and frequently rupture. Most of these are located between the renal arteries and the aortic bifurcation (dividing area).

Thoracic aortic aneurysms (TAAs) are not quite as common and are frequently misdiagnosed. They are typically discovered when advanced imaging is used to assess other conditions. TAAs commonly develop between the origin of the left

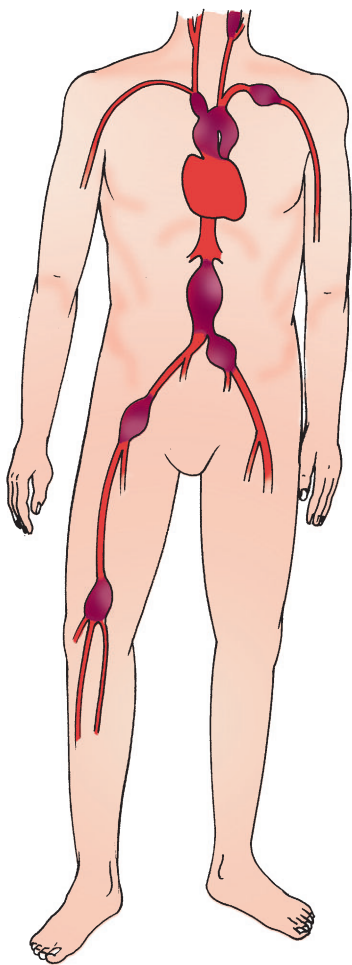


FIG. 38-7 Common anatomic sites of arterial aneurysms.

subclavian artery and the diaphragm. They are located in the descending, ascending, and transverse sections of the aorta. They can also occur in the aortic arch and are very difficult to manage surgically.

Aneurysms can cause symptoms by exerting pressure on surrounding structures or by rupturing. *Rupture is the most frequent complication and is life threatening because abrupt and massive hemorrhagic shock results.* Thrombi within the wall of an aneurysm can also be the source of emboli in distal arteries below the aneurysm.

Atherosclerosis is the most common cause of aneurysms, with hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and cigarette smoking being contributing factors. Age, gender, and family history also play a role (Forsdahl et al., 2009). Syphilis (a sexually transmitted disease), Marfan syndrome (a connective tissue disease), and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (a rare genetic disorder) are other causes of AAAs. Chronic inflammation (aortitis) and blunt trauma, usually from motor vehicle crashes, can cause aneurysms in the descending thoracic aorta (Hiratzka et al., 2010).

Abdominal aortic aneurysm rupture remains a significant cause of death in the United States. Death occurs more often in male patients and those older than 65 years (Forsdahl et al., 2009). Thoracic aortic aneurysms also occur most often in

older adults and have a high mortality rate even with surgical intervention.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Most patients with abdominal or thoracic aneurysms are asymptomatic when their aneurysms are first discovered by routine examination or during an imaging study performed for another reason. However, a few patients do have symptoms that bring them to their health care provider or the emergency department.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess patients with a known or suspected *abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA)* for abdominal, flank, or back pain. Pain is usually described as steady with a gnawing quality, unaffected by movement, and lasting for hours or days.

A pulsation in the upper abdomen slightly to the left of the midline between the xiphoid process and the umbilicus may be present. A detectable aneurysm is at least 5 cm in diameter. *Auscultate for a bruit over the mass, but avoid palpating the mass because it may be tender and there is risk for rupture!* If expansion and impending rupture of an AAA are suspected, assess for severe pain of sudden onset in the back or lower abdomen, which may radiate to the groin, buttocks, or legs.

Patients with a rupturing AAA are critically ill and in hemorrhagic (hypovolemic) shock. Signs include hypotension, diaphoresis, decreased level of consciousness, oliguria (scant urine output), loss of pulses distal to the rupture, and dysrhythmias. Retroperitoneal hemorrhage is manifested by hematomas in the flanks (lower back). Rupture into the abdominal cavity causes abdominal distention.

When a *thoracic aortic aneurysm* is suspected, assess for back pain and manifestations of compression of the aneurysm on adjacent structures. Signs include shortness of breath, hoarseness, and difficulty swallowing. TAAs are not often detected by physical assessment, but occasionally a mass may be visible above the suprasternal notch. Assess the patient with suspected rupture of a thoracic aneurysm for sudden and excruciating back or chest pain. Hypovolemic shock also occurs with TAA.

Imaging Assessment

Computed tomography (CT) scanning is the standard tool for assessing the size and location of an abdominal or thoracic aneurysm. An abdominal x-ray or a lateral x-ray of the spine often shows an AAA. The “eggshell” appearance of the aneurysm supports the diagnosis. *Ultrasonography* is a noninvasive technique that provides an accurate diagnosis, as well as information about the size and location of an AAA. A thoracic aneurysm can be diagnosed by chest x-ray. *Aortic arteriography* is usually performed for patients who are to undergo surgical repair of a thoracic aneurysm.

INTERVENTIONS

The size of the aneurysm and the presence of symptoms determine patient management. The nurse’s role is to perform frequent patient assessments, including blood pressure, pulse, and peripheral circulation checks.

Nonsurgical Management

The desired outcome of nonsurgical management is to monitor the growth of the aneurysm and maintain the blood pressure at a normal level to decrease the risk for rupture. Patients with hypertension are treated with antihypertensive drugs to decrease the rate of enlargement and the risk for early rupture.

For those with small or asymptomatic aneurysms, frequent ultrasound or CT scans are necessary to monitor the growth of the aneurysm. Emphasize the importance of following through with scheduled tests to monitor the growth. Also explain the clinical manifestations of aneurysms that need to be promptly reported.

Surgical Management

Surgical management of an aneurysm may be an elective or an emergency procedure. *For patients with a rupturing abdominal aortic or a thoracic aneurysm, emergency surgery is performed.* Patients with TAAs measuring 2.8 inches (7 cm) or more in diameter and those with smaller aneurysms that are producing symptoms are advised to have elective surgery. Those with smaller aneurysms that are not causing symptoms are treated nonsurgically until symptoms occur or the aneurysm enlarges.

The most common surgical procedure for AAA has traditionally been a resection or repair (**aneurysmectomy**). However, the mortality rate for elective resection is high and markedly increases for emergency surgery.

Endovascular stent grafts have improved mortality rates and shortened the hospital stay for select patients who need AAA repair. Stents (wirelike devices) are inserted percutaneously (through the skin), avoiding abdominal incisions and therefore decreasing the risk for a prolonged postoperative recovery. Postoperative care is similar to care required after an arteriogram (angiogram).

Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm Resection. In an AAA resection, the physician excises (cuts out) the aneurysm from the abdominal aorta to prevent or repair the rupture. The desired outcome is to secure stable aortic integrity and tissue perfusion throughout the body.

Preoperative Care. Preoperative care is similar to that for patients undergoing any surgery with general anesthesia (see Chapter 16). A bowel preparation and emphasis on coughing and deep breathing are very important. Because significant blood loss may occur during AAA resection, patients planning elective surgery may be advised to bank their blood for autologous (using patient's own blood) transfusions during and after surgery.

Assess all peripheral pulses to serve as a baseline for comparison postoperatively. Use a marker to note where the pulse is palpated or heard by Doppler ultrasonography to facilitate locating the pulse postoperatively.

Patients with ruptured aneurysms are brought to the operating suite directly from the emergency department. Preoperative care of patients with ruptured aneurysms involves administration of large volumes of IV fluids to maintain organ tissue perfusion.

Operative Procedures. The surgeon makes a midline abdominal incision from the xyphoid process to the symphysis pubis or a wide transverse incision from flank to flank to expose the aneurysm. Clamps are applied just above and just

below the aneurysm, the aneurysm is excised, and a synthetic graft is sutured in an end-to-end fashion.

Postoperative Care. Immediately after surgery, the patient is typically admitted to a critical care unit for 24 hours, depending on his or her age and condition. Limit elevation of the head of the bed to 45 degrees or less to avoid flexion of the graft. In addition to providing the usual care discussed in Chapter 18, assess for and assist in prevention of the postoperative complications that can occur after an AAA repair. Complications include:

- Myocardial infarction
- Graft occlusion or rupture causing hemorrhage
- Hypovolemia and/or renal failure
- Respiratory distress
- Paralytic ileus

During the immediate postoperative period, the patient's blood pressure is monitored with an arterial catheter. Continuous cardiac monitoring is used to detect any dysrhythmias. Hemodynamic monitoring is used to detect low cardiac output and other findings consistent with an acute *myocardial infarction*. Other signs of myocardial infarction include chest pain, shortness of breath, diaphoresis (excessive sweating), anxiety, and restlessness.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

A major priority for nursing care after an AAA surgical repair is to assess for signs of graft occlusion or rupture. Assess vital signs and circulation every 15 minutes for the first hour and then hourly, with assessment of pulses distal to the graft site (including the posterior tibial and dorsalis pedis pulses). Report signs of *graft occlusion or rupture*, including:

- Changes in pulses
- Cool to cold extremities below the graft
- White or blue extremities or flanks
- Severe pain
- Abdominal distention
- Decreased urine output

Hypovolemia and acute renal failure may occur because of blood loss during surgery or before if rupture occurred. Assess urine output hourly. If urine output is less than 50 mL/hr, notify the surgeon immediately. Although advances in surgical technique have decreased the risk for renal failure after clamping during surgery, renal failure may occur. Renal failure caused by acute tubular necrosis (ATN) is more common after emergency surgery. In addition to monitoring urine output, in collaboration with the physician, monitor serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels daily.

Assess respiratory rate and depth every hour and auscultate breath sounds every 4 hours to monitor for *respiratory complications*. The patient may be mechanically ventilated and should be extubated as soon as he or she is stable. While the patient is intubated, turn and suction him or her as needed. Administer opioids for pain as prescribed. After extubation, assist the patient to a bedside chair within 24 hours. Early mobility decreases the risk for atelectasis and deep vein thrombosis. Teach him or her to use firm abdominal support of the incision with a pillow or bath blanket during coughing exercises.

Paralytic ileus after AAA repair is expected for 2 to 3 days. Patients usually have a nasogastric tube set to low suction until they begin to pass flatus. Listen for bowel sounds and assess for flatus every 8 hours. Report when bowel sounds return and any flatus to the physician. Some surgeons begin to introduce fluids or soft food to stimulate peristalsis. Prolonged absence of flatus and presence of abdominal distention may indicate a paralytic ileus or a bowel infarction.

NLCEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client who had an abdominal aneurysm repair yesterday has a urinary output of 25 mL/hr and a blood urea nitrogen (BUN) of 68 mg/dL. What action should the nurse take first?

- A. Call the surgeon immediately.
- B. Assess the client's vital signs.
- C. Increase the intravenous fluid rate.
- D. Continue to monitor the client.

Thoracic Aortic Aneurysm Repair. Repair of thoracic aneurysms is tailored to each patient. The procedure depends on the type and location of the aneurysm. Total cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) is necessary for excision of aneurysms in the ascending aorta, and partial bypass is often used during excision of aneurysms in the descending aorta.

The care of the patient undergoing thoracic aneurysm resection is similar to that for the patient having thoracic surgery. [Chapter 34](#) describes thoracic surgery in detail.

The surgeon uses either a thoracotomy or a median sternotomy approach to enter the thoracic cavity. A synthetic graft or prosthesis is sewn onto the aorta in place of the excised TAA. Saccular aneurysms, which have an outpouching from a distinct portion of the arterial wall, can sometimes be removed without aortic resection. Newer procedures do not remove the aneurysm. Instead, the surgeon cuts into the aneurysm and inserts a graft. The walls of the aneurysm are wrapped around the graft for stability.

Assess for and help prevent postoperative complications that can occur after a thoracic aneurysm repair. Complications include:

- Hemorrhage
- Ischemic colitis
- Cerebral and spinal cord ischemia (causing paraplegia)
- Respiratory distress
- Infection
- Cardiac dysrhythmias

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After TAA repair, assess vital signs at least hourly, reporting any signs of hemorrhage (e.g., a decrease in blood pressure, an increase in pulse rate, rapid respirations, diaphoresis) to the surgeon or Rapid Response Team immediately. Assess for bleeding or separation at the graft site by noting significant increases in drainage from the chest tubes.

Accidental interruption of the blood supply to the spinal cord during thoracic aneurysm repair can result in paraplegia. Assess the patient hourly for sensation and motion in all extremities, and report changes immediately!

After TAA repair, patients are especially likely to develop *respiratory distress* from atelectasis or pneumonia. This problem occurs as a result of both CPB and incisional discomfort. Both atelectasis and pneumonia may cause shallow breathing and poor cough effort. These patients are often mechanically ventilated at least overnight after surgery.

Health care–acquired infection is a major concern for any vascular surgery. Be sure to wash your hands and use strict sterile technique for incisional care. The patient usually receives IV antibiotics within an hour before surgery. The Joint Commission (TJC) and other groups have placed a major emphasis on preventing infection while patients are in the hospital (National Patient Safety Goals).

Assess all patients recovering from TAA repair for cardiac *dysrhythmias*. The stress of the thoracic surgery, added to the increased incidence of arteriosclerosis in this group, may predispose patients to a myocardial infarction, cardiac dysrhythmias, or heart failure.

Endovascular Repair of Abdominal Aortic Aneurysms.

The repair of AAAs with **endovascular stent grafts** is an alternative for some patients. Those selected for endovascular repair of AAAs are generally at high risk for major abdominal surgery. Some patients may be referred for endovascular repair before the aneurysm reaches the recommended diameter for elective surgery.

Different designs of endovascular stent grafts are used, depending on the anatomic involvement of the aneurysm. The stent graft is flexible with either Dacron or polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) material. It is inserted through a skin incision into the femoral artery by way of a catheter-based system. The catheter is advanced to a level above the aneurysm away from the renal arteries. The graft is released from the catheter, and the stent graft is placed with a series of hooks. This procedure is done in collaboration with the vascular surgeon, interventional radiologist, operating suite team, and, at some centers, vascular medicine physician.

Complications for stent repair include:

- Conversion to open surgical repair
- Bleeding
- Aneurysm rupture
- Peripheral embolization
- Misplacement of the stent graft

The endovascular repair of AAAs has decreased the length of hospital stay for patients requiring repair of abdominal aneurysms. However, the patient needs to be closely monitored, in the hospital and at home, for the development of complications after the procedure. Expert nursing care is required to allow for early identification of problems, and complications require timely surgical intervention. In addition, coordination and collaboration with the health care team are required for discharge planning and follow-up care for patients at home.

Community-Based Care

Most patients are discharged to home after aneurysm repair. However, in the absence of family or other support systems, the postoperative patient may be discharged to a transitional care or long-term care facility for rehabilitation.

If discharged to home, the patient must follow instructions regarding activity level and incisional care. Because stair climbing may be restricted initially, he or she may

need a bedside commode if the bathroom is inaccessible. Teach the patient who has undergone surgical repair about activity restrictions, wound care, and pain management. Patients may not perform activities that involve lifting heavy objects (usually more than 15 to 20 pounds [6.8 to 9.1 kg]) for 6 to 12 weeks postoperatively. Advise them to use caution for activities that involve pulling, pushing, or straining. Those who usually engage in vigorous activities should discuss them with their health care provider. Most patients are restricted from driving a car for several weeks after discharge.

For patients who have not undergone surgical aneurysm repair, the teaching plan emphasizes the importance of compliance with the schedule of frequent CT scanning to monitor the size of the aneurysm.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients receiving treatment for hypertension about the importance of continuing to take prescribed drugs. Instruct them about the signs and symptoms that must promptly be reported to the health care provider, which include:

- Abdominal fullness or pain or back pain
- Chest or back pain
- Shortness of breath
- Difficulty swallowing or hoarseness

In collaboration with the case manager or social worker, assess the availability of transportation to and from appointments for patients needing CT monitoring. Those who have undergone surgery may require the services of a home care nurse for initial assistance with dressing changes. A home care aide may be needed to assist with ADLs, depending on the patient's support system.

ANEURYSMS OF THE PERIPHERAL ARTERIES

Although femoral and popliteal aneurysms are not common, they are often associated with an aneurysm in another location of the arterial tree (see Fig. 38-7). To detect a popliteal aneurysm, assess for a pulsating mass in the popliteal space. To detect a femoral aneurysm, observe a pulsatile mass over the femoral artery. Evaluate both extremities because more than one femoral or popliteal aneurysm may be present.

The patient may have symptoms of limb ischemia (decreased blood flow), including diminished or absent pulses, cool to cold skin, and pain. Pain also may be present if an adjacent nerve is compressed. The recommended treatment for either type of aneurysm, regardless of the size, is surgery because of the risk for thromboembolic complications.

To treat a femoral aneurysm, the surgeon removes the aneurysm and restores circulation using a synthetic graft or an autogenous saphenous vein graft. Most surgeons prefer to bypass rather than resect a popliteal aneurysm.

After surgery, monitor for lower limb ischemia. Palpate pulses below the graft to assess graft patency. Often, Doppler ultrasonography is necessary to assess blood flow when pulses are not palpable. *Report sudden development of pain or discoloration of the extremity immediately to the physician because it may indicate graft occlusion.*

AORTIC DISSECTION

Pathophysiology

Aortic dissection has traditionally been referred to as a *dissecting aneurysm*. However, because this condition is more accurately described as a *dissecting hematoma*, the term *aortic dissection* is more commonly used. Aortic dissection is not common but is a life-threatening problem.

Aortic dissection is thought to be caused by a sudden tear in the aortic intima, opening the way for blood to enter the aortic wall. Degeneration of the aortic media may be the primary cause for this condition, with hypertension being an important contributing factor. It is often associated with connective tissue disorders such as Marfan syndrome. It occurs also in middle-aged and older people, peaking in adults in their 50s and 60s. Men are more commonly affected than women (Hiratzka et al., 2010).

The circulation of any major artery arising from the aorta can be impaired in patients with aortic dissection; therefore this condition is highly lethal and represents an emergency situation. Although the ascending aorta and descending thoracic aorta are the most common sites, dissections can also occur in the abdominal aorta and other arteries.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The most common symptom is pain. It is described as “tearing,” “ripping,” and “stabbing” and tends to move from its point of origin. Depending on the site of dissection, the patient may feel pain in the anterior chest, back, neck, throat, jaw, or teeth.

Diaphoresis (excessive sweating), nausea, vomiting, faintness, and apprehension are also common. Blood pressure is usually elevated unless complications such as cardiac tamponade or rupture have occurred. In these cases, the patient becomes rapidly hypotensive. A decrease or absence of peripheral pulses is common, as is aortic regurgitation, which is characterized by a musical murmur best heard along the right sternal border. Neurologic deficits such as an altered level of consciousness, paraparesis, and strokes also can occur.

Chest x-ray, computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and aortic angiography may be used to confirm the diagnosis. However, MRI scanning is very time-consuming and may not be the test of choice. Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) or transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) may be performed at the bedside for patients who cannot be moved (Braverman, 2010).

INTERVENTIONS

The expected outcomes for emergency care for a patient with an aortic dissection are:

- Elimination of pain
- Reduction of systolic blood pressure to 100 to 120 mm Hg
- Decrease in the velocity of left ventricular ejection

The physician prescribes IV sodium nitroprusside (Nitropress, Nipride) or fenoldopam (Corlopam) by continuous drip initially to lower the blood pressure. If this regimen is

not effective, nicardipine hydrochloride (Cardene) may be used.

Subsequent treatment depends on the location of the dissection. Patients receive continued medical treatment for uncomplicated distal dissections and surgical treatment for proximal dissections. For those receiving long-term medical treatment, the systolic blood pressure must be maintained at or below 130 to 140 mm Hg. Beta blockers (e.g., propranolol) and calcium channel antagonists (amlodipine) are prescribed to assist with blood pressure maintenance.

Patients having surgical intervention for a proximal dissection always require cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) (see Chapter 40). The surgeon removes the intimal tear and sutures edges of the dissected aorta. Usually, a synthetic graft is used.

BUERGER'S DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Buerger's disease (thromboangiitis obliterans) is an uncommon occlusive disease of the arteries and veins in the distal portion of the upper and lower extremities. The disease often extends into the tissues around the vessels, resulting in fibrosis and scarring that bind the artery, vein, and nerve firmly together. Larger arteries such as the femoral and brachial become involved in the late stages of the disease. The veins are less commonly involved.

The cause of Buerger's disease is unknown although there is a strong association with tobacco smoking and is typically identified in young adult men who smoke. Cessation of cigarette smoking usually arrests the disease process. Continued smoking causes occlusion in the more proximal vessels. A familial or genetic predisposition and autoimmune etiologic factors are also possible.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The first clinical manifestation of Buerger's disease is usually **claudication** (muscle pain caused by an inadequate blood supply) of the arch of the foot. Intermittent claudication may occur in the lower extremities. The pain may be ischemic, occurring in the digits while the patient is at rest. Often there is an aching pain that is more severe at night. Intermittent shocklike pain can be the result of ischemic neuropathy. Patients often have increased sensitivity to cold and report coldness and numbness. On physical examination, pulses are often diminished in the distal extremities and the extremities are cool and red or cyanotic in the dependent position.

A diagnosis of Buerger's disease is based on a physical finding of peripheral ischemia. Ulcerations and gangrene may be seen in the digits. The ulcerations are usually sharply demarcated. The gangrenous lesion can be small or can affect the entire digit.

Arteriograms can be useful in delineating the degree of disease in the arteries. Commonly, arteriography reveals multiple segmental occlusions in the smaller arteries of the forearm, hand, leg, and foot. Plethysmographic studies of the fingers or toes may be diagnostic of the disease in the early

stages. These studies can also be useful in following the progression of the disease in more proximal arteries (see Chapter 35 for discussion of these tests).

INTERVENTIONS

Nursing interventions are directed toward:

- Preventing the progression of the disease
- Avoiding vasoconstriction
- Promoting vasodilation
- Relieving pain
- Managing ulceration and gangrene

To prevent the progression of Buerger's disease, complete abstinence from tobacco in all forms is essential. Teach the patient to avoid extreme cold or prolonged exposure to cold to prevent vasoconstriction. Instruct him or her about drugs that may be used for vasodilation (e.g., nifedipine [Procardia]). The collaborative care for Buerger's disease is similar to that for peripheral arterial disease (PAD) (see the discussion of Interventions on p. 787 in the Peripheral Arterial Disease section).

SUBCLAVIAN STEAL

Subclavian steal occurs in the upper extremities as a result of a subclavian artery occlusion or stenosis. The result is altered blood flow and ischemia in the arm. Subclavian steal can occur in people at any age but is more common in those with risk factors for atherosclerosis. Symptoms include tiredness in the arm with exertion, paresthesias, dizziness, and exercise-induced pain in the forearms when the arms are elevated.

Physical assessment usually reveals a significant difference in the blood pressures between the arms. A difference greater than 20 mm Hg is considered significant. Another important finding is a subclavian bruit, which can occur on the affected side. The subclavian pulse may be decreased on the occluded side compared with the opposite side. In severe cases, the affected arm may also be discolored or cyanotic.

Surgery is the recommended intervention for cyanosis or pain. One of three procedures may be used: endarterectomy of the subclavian artery, carotid-subclavian bypass, or dilation of the subclavian artery with placement of a vascular stent.

Postoperative nursing care of the patient includes monitoring of the arterial flow in the affected arm. Check brachial and radial pulses frequently, and observe for ischemic changes. Observe the arm for edema, redness, or any other signs.

THORACIC OUTLET SYNDROME

Thoracic outlet syndrome is a compression of the subclavian artery at the thoracic outlet by anatomic structures such as a rib or muscle. The arterial wall may be damaged, producing thrombosis or embolization to distal arteries of the arms. The three common sites of compression in the thoracic outlet are:

- The costoclavicular space (most common)
- The interscalene triangle
- Between the coracoid process of the scapula and the pectoralis minor tendon

Thoracic outlet syndrome is more common in women and in those whose occupations require holding their arms up or leaning over, such as baseball players, golfers, and swimmers. It is also seen in people who have had trauma (e.g., whiplash)

or clavicular fracture. Patients generally report neck, shoulder, and arm pain that may be intermittent. They may also have numbness and moderate edema of the extremity. The pain and numbness are worse when the arm is placed in certain positions such as over the head or out to the side. Some patients may have overdeveloped neck and shoulder muscles, and the affected arm may appear cyanotic.

Collaborative care includes physical therapy, exercises, and avoiding aggravating positions such as elevating the arms. Surgical management involves resection of the anatomic structure that is compressing the artery. Surgery is performed only if a patient has severe pain, has lost hand function, or is responding poorly to conservative treatment.

RAYNAUD'S PHENOMENON/DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Raynaud's phenomenon is caused by vasospasm of the arterioles and arteries of the upper and lower extremities, usually unilaterally. *Raynaud's disease* occurs bilaterally. The two terms are sometimes used interchangeably. Although they are related, there are some differences. Raynaud's phenomenon usually occurs in people older than 30 years. Raynaud's disease can occur between the ages of 17 and 50 years. Raynaud's phenomenon can occur in either gender, Raynaud's disease is more common in women.

The pathophysiology is the same for both entities. The etiology is unknown. Patients often have an associated systemic connective tissue disease such as systemic lupus erythematosus or progressive systemic sclerosis (see [Chapter 20](#)).

As a result of vasospasm, the superficial skin vessels are constricted and blanching of the extremity occurs, followed by cyanosis. When the vasospasm is relieved, the tissue becomes reddened or hyperemic ([Fig. 38-8](#)). The patient's extremities are numb and cold, and he or she may report pain and swelling. Ulcers may also be present. These attacks are intermittent and can be aggravated by cold or stress. In severe cases, the attack lasts longer and gangrene of the digits can occur.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Management involves relieving or preventing the vasoconstriction by drug therapy. Commonly prescribed drugs are nifedipine (Procardia), cycloandelate (Cyclospasmol), and phenoxybenzamine (Dibenzylamine). These vasodilating agents may help relieve the symptoms, but they can cause uncomfortable side effects such as facial flushing, headaches, hypotension, and dizziness.

For severe symptoms that are not reduced by drugs, a lumbar sympathectomy may be performed. The surgeon cuts the sympathetic nerve fibers that cause vasoconstriction of blood vessels in the legs. This method is effective for foot symptoms. For the upper extremities, a similar procedure—sympathetic ganglionectomy—may provide symptom relief. The long-term effectiveness of these treatments is questionable.

Patient education is important in prevention of complications. Explain methods to prevent vasoconstriction, such as minimizing exposure to cold, reducing caffeine intake,



FIG. 38-8 Color changes of Raynaud's phenomenon.

smoking cessation (if the patient smokes), and decreasing stress. *Teach the patient to wear warm clothes, socks, and gloves when exposed to cool or cold temperatures. He or she should keep the home at a comfortably warm temperature and wear gloves to the grocery store.* Help the patient identify stressors, and provide suggestions for reducing them. (See [Chapter 20](#) for further discussion of Raynaud's phenomenon as it relates to connective tissue disease.)

PERIPHERAL VENOUS DISEASE

To function properly, veins must be patent (open) with competent valves. Vein function also requires the assistance of the surrounding muscle beds to help pump blood toward the heart. If one or more veins are not operating properly, they become distended and clinical manifestations occur.

Three health problems alter the blood flow in veins:

- Thrombus formation (*venous thrombosis*) can lead to pulmonary embolism (PE), a life-threatening complication. **Venous thromboembolism (VTE)** is the current term that includes both deep vein thrombosis and PE.
- Defective valves lead to *venous insufficiency* and *varicose veins*, which are not life threatening but are problematic.
- Skeletal muscles do not contract to help pump blood in the veins. This problem can occur when weight-bearing is limited or muscle tone decreases.

VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM

Pathophysiology

Venous thromboembolism (VTE) is one of health care's greatest challenges and includes both thrombus and embolus complications. A **thrombus** (also called a *thrombosis*) is a blood clot believed to result from an endothelial injury, venous stasis, or hypercoagulability. The thrombosis may be specifically attributable to one element, or it may involve all three elements. It is often associated with an inflammatory process. When a thrombus develops, inflammation occurs around the clot, thickening the vein wall and consequently possibly leading to embolization (the formation of an **embolus**). Pulmonary embolism (PE) is the most common type of embolization and is discussed in detail in [Chapter 34](#).

Thrombophlebitis refers to a thrombus that is associated with inflammation. **Phlebothrombosis** is a thrombus without inflammation. Thrombophlebitis can occur in superficial veins. However, it most frequently occurs in the deep veins of the lower extremities.

Deep vein thrombophlebitis, commonly referred to as **deep vein thrombosis (DVT)**, is the most common type of thrombophlebitis. Deep vein thrombophlebitis (thrombosis) is more serious than superficial thrombophlebitis because it presents a greater risk for PE. In PE, a dislodged blood clot travels to the pulmonary artery. DVT develops most often in the legs but can occur also in the upper arms as a result of increased use of central venous devices.

Thrombus formation has been associated with stasis of blood flow, endothelial injury, and/or hypercoagulability, known as **Virchow's triad**. The precise cause of these events remains unknown; however, a few predisposing factors have been identified.

The highest incidence of clot formation occurs in patients who have undergone hip surgery, total knee replacement, or open prostate surgery. Other conditions that seem to promote thrombus formation are ulcerative colitis, heart failure, cancer, oral contraceptives, and immobility. Complications of immobility occur during prolonged bedrest such as when a patient is confined to bed for an extensive illness. People who sit for long periods (e.g., on an airplane) are also at risk. **Phlebitis** (vein inflammation) associated with invasive procedures such as IV therapy can predispose patients to thrombosis.

Millions of people in the United States are affected by deep vein thrombosis each year, and many die from pulmonary embolism. The largest number of deaths occurs in older adults. African Americans have a higher rate of death resulting from PE because of predisposing risk factors and coexisting diseases, such as cancer, chronic kidney disease, and cardiac failure.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

In the *community*, if a person has a history of any type of VTE, these precautions should be taken:

- Avoid oral contraceptives.
- Drink adequate fluids to avoid dehydration.
- Exercise legs during long periods of bedrest or sitting.

In the *inpatient setting*, interventions to prevent any type of VTE include:

- Patient education
- Leg exercises

- Early ambulation
- Adequate hydration
- Graduated compression stockings
- Intermittent pneumatic compression, such as sequential compression devices (SCDs)
- Venous plexus foot pump

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

People with DVT may have symptoms or may be asymptomatic. *The classic signs and symptoms of DVT are calf or groin tenderness and pain and sudden onset of unilateral swelling of the leg.* Pain in the calf on dorsiflexion of the foot (positive Homans' sign) appears in only a small percentage of patients with DVT, and false-positive findings are common. *Therefore checking a Homans' sign is not advised!* Examine the area described as painful, comparing this site with the other limb. Gently palpate the site, observing for **induration** (hardening) along the blood vessel and for warmth and edema. Redness may also be present ([Fig. 38-9](#)).

Localized edema in one extremity may suggest DVT. Some experts suggest to measure and compare right and left calf and thigh circumferences for changes over time as an indicator of DVT or venous insufficiency. However, serial leg measurements are not the most reliable indicator.

Although diagnostic tests are available, physical examination findings are often adequate for diagnosis. If a definitive diagnosis is lacking from physical assessment findings alone, diagnostic tests may be performed.

The preferred diagnostic test for DVT is *venous duplex ultrasonography*, a noninvasive ultrasound that assesses the flow of blood through the veins of the arms and legs. *Doppler flow studies* may also be useful in the diagnosis, but they are more sensitive in detecting proximal rather than distal DVT. Normal venous circulation creates audible signals, whereas thrombosed veins produce little or no sound. The accuracy of the scanning depends on the technical skill of the health care professional performing the test. If the test is negative



FIG. 38-9 Deep vein thrombosis (DVT) of lower left leg.

but a DVT is still suspected, a venogram may be needed to make an accurate diagnosis.

Impedance plethysmography assesses venous outflow and can detect most DVTs that are located above the popliteal vein. It is not helpful in locating clots in the calf and is less sensitive than Doppler studies.

Magnetic resonance direct thrombus imaging (MRI), another noninvasive test, is useful in finding a DVT in the proximal deep veins and is better than traditional venography in finding DVT in the inferior vena cava or pelvic veins.

A D-dimer test is a global marker of coagulation activation and measures fibrin degradation products produced from fibrinolysis (clot breakdown). The test is used for the diagnosis of DVT when the patient has few clinical signs and stratifies patients into a high-risk category for reoccurrence. Useful as an adjunct to noninvasive testing, a negative D-dimer test can exclude a DVT without an ultrasound.

Physical and diagnostic assessment of patients with pulmonary embolism is described in [Chapter 34](#).

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of managing thrombophlebitis is to prevent complications such as pulmonary emboli, prevent further thrombus formation, and prevent an increase in size of the thrombus. Patients with deep vein thrombosis (DVT) may be hospitalized for treatment, although this practice is changing as a result of the use of newer drugs.

Nonsurgical Management

DVT is usually treated medically using a combination of rest, drug therapy, and preventive measures. Prevention of DVT and other types of venous thromboembolism (VTE) is crucial for patients at risk. Preventive measures are listed on p. 799 in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section.

Rest. Supportive therapy for DVT has typically included bedrest and elevation of the extremity. However, a recent review and synthesis of the literature showed that outcomes are not different if the patient is allowed to ambulate (Gay et al., 2009). Ambulation did not cause pulmonary embolus; the DVT did not worsen any more with ambulation than bedrest. Allowing patients to ambulate may decrease their fear and anxiety about dislodging the clot and life-threatening complications.

Teach the patient to elevate his or her legs when in bed and chair. To help prevent chronic venous insufficiency, instruct patients with active and resolving DVT to wear knee- or thigh-high sequential or graduated compression stockings for an extended period. Be sure to select the correct stocking size for the patient according to the sizing chart provided.

Some health care providers prescribe intermittent or continuous warm, moist soaks to the affected area. *Do not massage the affected extremity to prevent the thrombus from dislodging and becoming an embolus.* Monitor all patients for signs and symptoms of pulmonary embolism (PE), which include shortness of breath, chest pain, and acute confusion (in older adults). Emboli may also travel to the brain or heart, but these complications are not as common as PE. [Chapter 34](#) describes PE manifestations in detail.

Drug Therapy. Anticoagulants are the drugs of choice for actual DVT and for patients at risk for DVT. The conventional treatment has been IV unfractionated heparin followed by oral anticoagulation with warfarin (Coumadin). However,

unfractionated heparin can be problematic because each patient's response to the drug is unpredictable and hospital admission is usually required for laboratory monitoring and dose adjustments. The use of low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH) is changing the management of both DVT and PE.

Unfractionated Heparin Therapy. Many patients with a confirmed diagnosis of an existing blood clot are started on a regimen of IV unfractionated heparin (UFH, Hepalean ) therapy. UFH is an anticoagulant agent that at low doses interacts with antithrombin III to produce selective inhibition of clotting factors IIa (thrombin) and Xa. At higher doses, it inhibits practically all clotting factors. The ultimate result is inhibition of fibrin formation. The physician prescribes UFH to prevent the formation of further clots, which often develop in the presence of an existing clot, and to prevent enlargement of the existing clot. Over a long period, the existing clot is slowly absorbed by the body.

Before UFH administration, a baseline prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT or aPTT), international normalized ratio (INR), complete blood count (CBC) with platelet count, urinalysis, stool for occult blood, and creatinine level are required. Notify the physician if the platelet count is below 120,000/mm³.

UFH is initially given in a bolus IV dose of about 80 to 100 units/kg of body weight or 5000 units followed by continuous infusion. The infusion is regulated by a reliable electronic pump that protects against accidental free flow of solution. The physician or clinical pharmacist prescribes concentrations of UFH (in 5% dextrose in water) and the number of units or milliliters per hour needed to maintain a therapeutic aPTT (usually 18–20 units/kg/hr or at least 30,000 units over 24 hours). aPTT is measured at least daily, and results are reported to the health care provider as soon as results are available to allow adjustment of heparin dosage. Therapeutic levels of aPTTs are usually 1½ to 2 times normal control levels.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Notify the physician if the aPTT value is greater than 70 seconds, or follow hospital protocol for reporting critical laboratory values. Assess patients for signs and symptoms of bleeding, which include hematuria, frank or occult blood in the stool, ecchymosis (bruising), petechiae, an altered level of consciousness, or pain. If bleeding occurs, stop the anticoagulant immediately and call the health care provider or Rapid Response Team!

UFH can also decrease platelet counts. Mild reductions are common and are resolved with continued heparin therapy. Severe platelet reductions, although rare, result from the development of antiplatelet bodies within 6 to 14 days after the beginning of treatment. Platelets aggregate into “white clots” that can cause thrombosis, usually in the form of an acute arterial occlusion. The provider discontinues heparin administration if severe **heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT)** (platelet count <150,000), or “white clot syndrome,” occurs. Low-molecular weight heparin is used more commonly today because of the complications involved with unfractionated heparin.

Bivalirudin (Angiomax), lepirudin (Refludan), and argatroban (Arganova) are *highly selective direct thrombin*

CHART 38-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient Receiving Anticoagulant Therapy

- Carefully check the dosage of anticoagulant to be administered, even if the pharmacy prepared the drug.
- Monitor the patient for signs and symptoms of bleeding, including hematuria, frank or occult blood in the stool, ecchymosis, petechiae, altered mental status (indicating possible cranial bleeding), or pain (especially abdominal pain, which could indicate abdominal bleeding).
- Monitor vital signs frequently for decreased blood pressure and increased pulse (indicating possible internal bleeding).
- Have antidotes available as needed (e.g., protamine sulfate for heparin; vitamin K for warfarin [Coumadin, Warfilone]).
- Monitor activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) for patients receiving unfractionated heparin. Monitor prothrombin time (PT) or international normalized ratio (INR) for patients receiving warfarin or low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH).
- Apply prolonged pressure over venipuncture sites and injection sites.
- When administering *subcutaneous* heparin, apply pressure over the site and do not massage.
- Teach the patient going home while taking an anticoagulant to:
 - Use only an electric razor
 - Take precautions to avoid injury; for example, do not use tools such as hammers or saws, where accidents commonly occur
 - Report signs and symptoms of bleeding, such as blood in the urine or stool, nosebleeds, ecchymosis, or altered mental status
 - Take the prescribed dosage of drug at the precise time that it was prescribed to be given
 - Not stop taking the drug abruptly; the physician usually tapers the anticoagulant gradually

inhibitors that may be used as alternatives to heparin or for patients who have had HIT. Like heparin, these drugs increase the risk for bleeding. Monitor hemoglobin, hematocrit, aPTT, platelet count, urinalysis, fecal occult blood test, and blood pressure for indications of this complication. An oral anticoagulant like warfarin (Coumadin) may also be substituted for heparin if necessary.

Ensure that protamine sulfate, the antidote for heparin, is available if needed for excessive bleeding. [Chart 38-7](#) highlights information important to nursing care and patient education associated with anticoagulant therapy.

To *prevent* DVT, unfractionated heparin may be given in low doses subcutaneously for high-risk patients, especially after orthopedic surgery. Commonly used alternatives to unfractionated heparin include:

- Low-molecular weight heparin (e.g., enoxaparin [Lovenox]) (drug class of choice after orthopedic surgery)
- Selective factor Xa inhibitors (e.g., fondaparinux [Arixtra])
- Warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone 🍀)

Low-Molecular Weight Heparin. Subcutaneous low-molecular weight heparins (LMWHs) such as enoxaparin (Lovenox), dalteparin (Fragmin), and ardeparin (Normiflo) have a consistent action and are preferred for prevention and treatment of DVT. Danaparoid (Orgaran) is also classified as an LMWH but is actually a heparinoid. LMWHs bind less to plasma proteins, blood cells, and vessel walls, resulting in a longer half-life and more predictable response. These drugs inhibit thrombin formation because of reduced factor IIa

activity and enhanced inhibition of factor Xa and thrombin.

Some patients taking LMWH may be safely managed at home with daily visits from a home care nurse. Candidates for home therapy must have stable DVT or PE, low risk for bleeding, adequate renal function, and normal vital signs. They must be willing to learn self-injection or have a family member, friend, or home care nurse administer the subcutaneous injections.

Some health care providers place the patient on a regimen of IV unfractionated heparin (UFH) for several days and then follow up with an LMWH. In this case, the UFH is discontinued at least 30 minutes before the first LMWH injection. The usual dose of enoxaparin is 1 mg/kg of body weight, not to exceed 90 mg, and is repeated every 12 hours. If the patient's creatinine level is greater than 2 mg/dL (indicating renal insufficiency), the health care provider lowers the dose. Dalteparin can be given once daily at 200 units/kg of body weight and does not require dose adjustment for renal insufficiency. The usual dose of ardeparin is 50 units/kg of body weight and is given every 12 hours.

Monitor the INR daily. Assess all stools for occult blood. The aPTTs are not checked on an ongoing basis because the doses of LMWH are not adjusted.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is providing care to a client at high risk for deep vein thrombosis. What health teaching will the nurse provide to the client related to home management of low-molecular weight heparin?

- "You must have your partial thromboplastin time checked every 2 weeks."
- "Massage the injection site after the heparin is injected."
- "Notify your health care provider if your stools appear tarry."
- "You will have an IV catheter placed for intermittent injection of the heparin."

Warfarin Therapy. If the patient is receiving continuous UFH, warfarin (Coumadin), an oral anticoagulant, may be added at least 5 days later. Patients receiving LMWH are placed on the oral drug after the first dose. Warfarin works in the liver to inhibit synthesis of the four vitamin K-dependent clotting factors and takes 3 to 4 days before it can exert therapeutic anticoagulation. The heparin continues to provide therapeutic anticoagulation until this effect is achieved. IV heparin is then discontinued.

Therapeutic levels of warfarin are monitored by measuring PT and/or the INR. Because PTs are often inconsistent and misleading, the INR was developed. Most laboratories report both results. Most patients receiving warfarin should have an INR between 1.5 and 2.0 to prevent future DVT and to minimize the risk for stroke or hemorrhage. For patients with additional cardiovascular problems, the desired INR



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

For patients taking warfarin, assess for any bleeding, such as hematuria or blood in the stool. *Ensure that vitamin K, the antidote for warfarin, is available in case of excessive bleeding (see Chart 38-7).* Report any bleeding to the physician and document in the patient's health record.

may be higher. Warfarin therapy should be started with low doses, at least 5 mg, and gradually titrated up according to the INR. Patients usually receive this drug for 3 to 6 months or longer after an episode of DVT if no precipitating factors were discovered, with recurrence, or if there are continuing risk factors.

Thrombolytic Therapy. The use of systemic thrombolytic therapy for DVT is effective in dissolving thrombi quickly and completely. The greatest advantage is the prevention of valvular damage and venous insufficiency, or “post-phlebitis syndrome.” Thrombolytic therapy is contraindicated after surgery, trauma, strokes, or spinal injuries because of increased bleeding risks. To be most effective, thrombolytic therapy must be started within 5 days after the onset of symptoms.

Thrombolytic drugs such as recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA) and platelet inhibitors such as abciximab (ReoPro), tirofiban (Aggrastat), and eptifibatide (Integrilin) may be effective in dissolving a clot or preventing new clots during the first 24 hours. Infusion given via a catheter can be injected directly into the thrombus. Compared with giving systemic thrombolytic dosing, this approach decreases the concentration needed and reduces the chance of bleeding. Thrombolytic drugs, such as alteplase and reteplase, are used to treat peripheral vascular occlusion.

Reteplase is a plasminogen activator that penetrates the clot and causes lysis. *It is not compatible with heparin and should not be given in the same IV line.* Reteplase has been used successfully in treating coronary thrombosis. Use in peripheral vascular occlusion is experimental.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The most serious complication from thrombolytic therapy is intracerebral bleeding. Closely monitor patients for signs and symptoms of increasing intracranial pressure. A decreased level of consciousness (LOC) is the earliest indicator of this complication. Assess for other neurologic changes and report them immediately to the physician. Be sure to document the assessment findings in the patient's health record.

Surgical Management

A deep vein thrombus is rarely removed surgically unless there is a massive occlusion that does not respond to medical treatment and the thrombus is of recent (1 to 2 days) onset. **Thrombectomy** is the most common surgical procedure for removing the clot. Preoperative and postoperative care of patients undergoing thrombectomy is similar to the care for those undergoing arterial surgery (see pp. 789-790 in the **Peripheral Arterial Disease** section).

For patients with recurrent deep vein thrombosis (DVT) or pulmonary emboli that do not respond to medical treatment and for patients who cannot tolerate anticoagulation, **inferior vena cava filtration** may be indicated. The surgeon usually inserts a filter device, or “umbrella,” into the femoral vein. The device is meant to trap emboli in the inferior vena cava before they progress to the lungs. Holes in the device allow blood to pass through, thus not significantly interfering with the return of blood to the heart. There are several new filter brands available and designed to allow for removal if and when DVT risks diminish.

Preoperative care is similar to that provided for patients receiving local anesthesia (see **Chapter 16**). If they have recently been taking anticoagulants, collaborate with the physician about interrupting this therapy in the preoperative period to avoid hemorrhage.

Postoperatively, inspect the groin insertion site for bleeding and signs or symptoms of infection. Other postoperative nursing care is similar to that for any patient undergoing local anesthesia (see **Chapter 18**).

Community-Based Care

Patients recovering from thrombophlebitis or DVT are usually ambulatory when they are discharged from the hospital. The primary focus of planning for discharge is to educate the patient and family about the hazards of anticoagulation therapy.

Teach patients recovering from DVT to stop smoking and avoid the use of oral contraceptives to decrease the risk for recurrence. Alternative forms of birth control may be used. Most patients are discharged on a regimen of warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ) or low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH). Instruct patients and their families to avoid potentially traumatic situations, such as participation in contact sports. Provide written and oral information about the signs and symptoms of bleeding (see **Chart 38-7**). Reinforce the need to report any of these manifestations to the health care provider immediately.

The anticoagulant effect of warfarin may be reversed by omitting one or two doses of the drug or by the administration of vitamin K. In case of injury, teach patients to apply pressure to bleeding wounds and to seek medical assistance immediately. Encourage them to carry an identification card or wear a medical alert bracelet that states that they are taking warfarin or any other anticoagulant.

Instruct patients to tell their dentist and other health care providers that they are taking warfarin before receiving treatment or prescriptions. Prothrombin times are affected by many prescription and over-the-counter drugs such as NSAIDs. Teach patients to avoid high-fat and vitamin K-rich foods, such as cabbage, cauliflower, broccoli, asparagus, turnips, spinach, kale, fish, and liver (**Chart 38-8**). Remind them to drink adequate fluids to stay well hydrated, avoid alcohol (which can cause dehydration), and avoid sitting for prolonged periods.

In collaboration with the case manager (CM) or other discharge planner, arrange for patients to obtain a device to self-monitor INR at home. Clinical studies show that self-monitoring of the INR and self-adjusting of anticoagulation therapy result in better anticoagulation control, improve patient satisfaction, and increase quality of life (Levi, 2008). The device used to self-monitor is similar to a glucometer for glucose testing and requires a fingerstick blood sample applied to a test strip or plastic cuvette, which is then inserted into the machine. Self-monitoring can be used either for the testing alone or for self-management, in which the patient uses the test results to adjust drug dosages based on a dosing protocol (Levi, 2008). If the patient cannot use a monitoring device, teach a family member or other caregiver how to perform the procedure. If the patient lives alone, collaborate with the CM to arrange for follow-up laboratory appointments to have blood drawn at frequent intervals—usually every week until the patient's values are stabilized.

CHART 38-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Food and Drugs That Interfere with Warfarin (Coumadin)

Eat small amounts of foods rich in vitamin K each day, including any of these:	If possible, avoid:
• Broccoli • Cauliflower • Spinach • Kale • Green leafy vegetables • Brussels sprouts • Cabbage • Liver	• Allopurinol • NSAIDs • Acetaminophen • Vitamin E • Histamine blockers • Cholesterol-reducing drugs • Antibiotics • Oral contraceptives • Antidepressants • Thyroid drugs • Antifungal agents • Other anticoagulants • Corticosteroids • Herbs, such as St. John's wort, garlic, ginseng, <i>Ginkgo biloba</i>

Patients receiving subcutaneous LMWH injections at home need instruction on self-injection. Teach the appropriate caregiver and family members or friends, if necessary, to administer the injections.

Patients who have experienced DVT may fear recurrence of a thrombus. They may also be concerned about treatment with warfarin and the risk for bleeding. Assure them that the prescribed treatment will help resolve this problem and that ongoing assessment of prothrombin times and INR values decreases the risks for bleeding.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client is being discharged home on warfarin (Coumadin) after being treated for deep vein thrombosis. What priority instruction will the nurse include in the client's discharge teaching?

- "Take one extra Coumadin the day before a blood test."
- "Eat a diet high in protein and green leafy vegetables."
- "Use a soft-bristled toothbrush to prevent bleeding of the gums."
- "Weigh yourself daily at the same time to monitor fluid balance."

VENOUS INSUFFICIENCY

Pathophysiology

Venous insufficiency occurs as a result of prolonged venous hypertension that stretches the veins and damages the valves. Valvular damage can lead to a backup of blood and further venous hypertension, resulting in edema and decreased tissue perfusion. With time, this stasis (stoppage) results in venous stasis ulcers, swelling, and cellulitis.

The veins cannot function properly when thrombosis occurs or when valves are not working correctly. Venous hypertension can occur in people who stand or sit in one position for long periods (e.g., teachers, office personnel). Obesity can also cause chronically distended veins, which lead to damaged valves. Thrombus formation can contribute to valve destruction. Chronic venous insufficiency also often

occurs in patients who have had thrombophlebitis. In severe cases, venous ulcers develop.

Venous leg ulcers are a major cause of death, pain, and health care costs. Most venous ulcer care is delivered in the community setting by home care nurses or through self-management.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Venous insufficiency may result in edema of both legs. There may be **stasis dermatitis** or reddish brown discoloration along the ankles, extending up to the calf. In people with long-term venous insufficiency, **stasis ulcers** often form. They can result from the edema or from minor injury to the limb. Ulcers typically occur over the malleolus, more often medially (inner ankle) than laterally (outer ankle). The ulcer usually has irregular borders. In general, these ulcers are chronic and difficult to heal (see [Chart 38-4](#)). Many people live with ulcers for years, and recurrence is common. Some may lose one or both legs if ulcers are not controlled.

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of treating venous insufficiency is to decrease edema and promote venous return from the affected leg. Patients are not usually hospitalized for venous insufficiency alone unless it is complicated by an ulcer or another disorder is occurring at the same time.

Nonsurgical Management

Treatment of chronic venous insufficiency is nonsurgical unless it is complicated by a venous stasis ulcer that requires surgical débridement. The desired outcomes of managing venous stasis ulcers are to heal the ulcer, prevent infection, and prevent stasis with recurrence of ulcer formation. Collaborate with the wound care nurse or wound, ostomy, and continence nurse to make recommendations for ulcer care. A dietitian can suggest dietary supplements, such as zinc and vitamins A and C, as well as high-protein foods, to promote wound healing.

Patients with chronic venous insufficiency wear graduated compression stockings, which fit from the middle of the foot to just below the knee or to the thigh. Stockings should be worn during the day and evening. Explain the purpose and importance of wearing the compression stockings. Winslow and Brosz (2008) found that a number of hospitalized patients do not use these stockings correctly and that over a quarter of patients had the wrong size. Be sure to use the sizing chart that comes with the stockings to select the best fit. Teach patients to not roll them down and to report if they become too tight or uncomfortable.

Teach the patient to elevate his or her legs for at least 20 minutes four or five times per day. When the patient is in bed, remind him or her to elevate the legs above the level of the heart ([Chart 38-9](#)).

Coordinate with the physician about the use of intermittent sequential pneumatic compression or foot plexus pumps for patients with past or present venous stasis ulcers. If an open venous ulcer is present, the device may be applied over a dressing such as an Unna boot. Instruct the patient to apply

CHART 38-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Venous Insufficiency

Graduated Compression Stockings

- Wear stockings as prescribed, usually during the day and evening.
- Put the stockings on upon awakening and before getting out of bed.
- When applying the stockings, do not “bunch up” and apply like socks. Instead, place your hand inside the stocking and pull out the heel. Then place the foot of the stocking over your foot and slide the rest of the stocking up. Be sure that rough seams on the stocking are on the outside, not next to your skin.
- Do not push stockings down for comfort, because they may function like a tourniquet and further impair venous return.
- Put on a clean pair of stockings each day. Wash them by hand (not in a washing machine) in a gentle detergent and warm water.
- If the stockings seem to be “stretched out,” replace them with a new pair.

Dos and Don'ts

- Elevate your legs for at least 20 minutes four or five times a day. When in bed, elevate your legs above the level of your heart.
- Avoid prolonged sitting or standing.
- Do not cross your legs. Crossing at the ankles is acceptable for short periods.
- Do not wear tight, restrictive pants. Avoid girdles and garters.

the pump as directed during the period of healing. Because of the high incidence of venous ulcer recurrence, encourage patients with chronic venous insufficiency whose ulcers have healed to continue compression therapy for life.

Venous stasis ulcers are slightly more manageable than ulcers resulting from arterial disease. They are chronic in nature, with some patients having the same ulcer for years. Ulcers often heal, only to recur in the same area several years later.

Two types of occlusive dressings are used for venous stasis ulcers: oxygen-permeable dressings and oxygen-impermeable dressings. Because the role of atmospheric oxygen in wound healing is controversial, opinions vary with regard to which type of dressing is preferred. An oxygen-permeable polyethylene film and an oxygen-impermeable hydrocolloid dressing (e.g., DuoDERM) are common. Hydrocolloid dressings are left in place for a minimum of 3 to 5 days for best effect. Use medical aseptic technique when changing dressings. If the wound is infected, use Contact Precautions in addition to Standard Precautions.

Artificial skin products can be used for difficult-to-heal venous leg ulcers. These first-generation products are very expensive but are laying the foundation in the field, with costs anticipated to come down in the future. Except for cultured epithelial autografts, artificial skins are only temporary. Artificial skin serves as a biologic cover to secrete growth factors to promote more growth factor secretion from the patient's own skin to speed the wound healing process.

If the patient is ambulatory, an **Unna boot** may be used. An Unna boot dressing is constructed of gauze that has been moistened with zinc oxide. Apply the boot to the affected limb, from the toes to the knee, after the ulcer has been cleaned with normal saline solution. It is then covered with

an elastic wrap and hardens like a cast. This promotes venous return and prevents stasis. The Unna boot also forms a sterile environment for the ulcer. The physician or advanced practice nurse changes the boot about once a week. Instruct the patient to report increased pain, which indicates that the boot may be too tight.

The health care provider may prescribe topical agents, such as Accuzyme, to chemically debride the ulcer, eliminating necrotic tissue and promoting healing. Remind patients that they may temporarily feel a burning sensation when the agent is applied. If an infection or cellulitis develops, systemic antibiotics are necessary.

Surgical Management

Surgery for chronic venous insufficiency is not usually performed because it is not successful. Attempts at transplanting vein valves have had limited success. Surgical débridement of venous ulcers is similar to that performed for arterial ulcers.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The nurse is caring for a client with chronic venous stasis ulcers. Which priority health teaching will the nurse include in this client's continuing plan of care?

- “Wear compression stockings every day.”
- “Do not elevate the affected leg above your heart.”
- “Take one low-dose aspirin daily to prevent inflammation.”
- “Clean the ulcers with Betadine to prevent infection.”

Community-Based Care

The desired outcome for the patient with chronic venous insufficiency is to be managed in the home. For patients with frequent acute complications and repeated hospital admissions, case management can help meet appropriate clinical and cost outcomes.

Help patients plan for opportunities and facilities that allow for elevation of the lower extremities in and outside the home. In addition, collaborate with the wound specialist to plan care of the ulcers at home.

If the physician prescribes graduated compression stockings, teach patients to apply these stockings before they get out of bed in the morning and to remove them just before going to bed at night (see [Chart 38-9](#)). Also advise them that they will probably need to wear these stockings for the rest of their lives.

To improve circulation and aid in weight reduction, collaborate with the physical therapist to prescribe an exercise program on an individual basis. Encourage all patients to maintain an optimal weight and consult with the dietitian to plan a weight-reduction diet.

Patients with venous stasis disease, especially those with venous stasis ulcers, may require long-term emotional support to assist them in meeting long-term needs. They may also need assistance in coping with necessary lifestyle adjustments, such as possible changes in occupation.

Patients with venous stasis ulcers may need the assistance of a home care nurse to perform dressing changes. Those with Unna boots need weekly transportation to their health care provider for dressing changes. Collaborate with the case

manager to arrange for a sequential compression device in the home if the health care provider prescribes one.

VARICOSE VEINS

Pathophysiology

Varicose veins are distended, protruding veins that appear darkened and tortuous. They can occur in anyone, but they are common in adults older than 30 years whose occupations require prolonged standing. Varicose veins are frequently seen also in patients with systemic problems (e.g., heart disease), obesity, and a family history of varicose veins.

As the vein wall weakens and dilates, venous pressure increases and the valves become incompetent (defective). The incompetent valves enhance the vessel dilation, and the veins become tortuous and distended. The patient may report pain, especially after standing, and may experience a feeling of fullness in the legs. Nursing assessment reveals distended, protruding veins.

The Trendelenburg test assists with the diagnosis for patients who are not of advanced age. Place the patient in a supine position with elevated legs. As he or she sits up, the veins would normally fill from the distal end. However, if there are varicosities, the veins fill from the proximal end.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Conservative measures are the treatment of choice, including graduated compression stockings and elevating the extremities as much as possible. Patients who continue to have pain or unsightly veins, despite this treatment, may opt for either sclerotherapy or surgical removal of the vein.

Sclerotherapy is performed on small or a limited number of varicosities. The physician injects a sclerosing solution directly into the vein. A pressure dressing may be applied over the sclerosed vein to keep vessels free of blood for 24 to 72 hours. The surgeon performs an incision and drainage of trapped blood in the sclerosed vein 14 to 21 days after injection, followed by application of a second pressure dressing for 12 to 18 hours.

Varicose veins are surgically removed when they are larger than 4 mm in diameter or are in clusters. The stab avulsion technique may be used if the saphenous veins are competent. The surgeon exposes varices through 2- to 3-mm stab incisions, grasping the veins with hooks and dividing and removing each vein.

The surgeon may need to strip (remove) affected veins if the saphenous vein is affected. The surgeon threads a long wire through an incision above an affected vein, pulling it down through the vein and out through an incision below the vein. After this procedure, the legs are bandaged with firm elastic bandages.

After surgery, assess the groin and entire leg for bleeding through the elastic bandage. Instruct the patient to keep the legs elevated and to perform range-of-motion exercises of the legs at least hourly. Patients are ambulatory and are often discharged from the hospital by the first postoperative day. At this time, instruct them to continue to wear elastic stockings,

walk, limit sitting, avoid standing in one place, and elevate their legs when sitting.

Application of radiofrequency (RF) energy is a new technique done as an alternative to surgery. The vein is heated from the inside by the RF energy and shrinks. Collateral veins nearby take over.

Laser treatment is another alternative to surgery. Performed by interventional radiologists, the endovenous laser treatment uses a laser fiber to heat and close the main vessel that is contributing to the varicosity.

PHLEBITIS

Phlebitis is an inflammation of the superficial veins caused by an irritant such as peripheral IV therapy (see [Chapter 15](#)). The patient has a reddened, warm area radiating up the arm. Pain, soreness, and swelling may also occur.

Management involves application of warm, moist soaks, which dilate the vein and promote circulation. Sometimes a heating unit is used to keep the soaks warm. Apply the soaks, making sure that the temperature is not hot enough to burn the patient, and assess for complications, such as tissue necrosis, infection, or pulmonary embolus. After a few days of conservative therapy, the inflammation usually subsides. Graduated compression stockings may be prescribed if the phlebitis occurs in a leg.

VASCULAR TRAUMA

Many types of trauma can result in vascular injury. Vascular injuries include punctures, lacerations, and transections. Acute blunt or penetrating trauma may result in a false aneurysm or hematoma. Arteriovenous fistulas may be seen after penetrating injuries. The more common causes of penetrating injuries to the blood vessels are gunshot and knife wounds.

Blunt trauma can result from high-speed automobile crashes as a result of the shearing force of rapid deceleration. Vascular trauma can also occur during arterial puncture for arteriographic or hemodynamic studies in which a dissection, hematoma, or occlusive lesion occurs.

The history and physical examination aid in establishing the diagnosis of vascular injury. Ask the patient or family about the mechanism of injury, the site of injury, the amount of blood loss, and symptoms present after the injury. Assess for circulatory, sensory, and motor impairment. Be aware that, despite significant trauma, impairment may not be apparent, especially if deep vessels have been injured. Arteriography can provide essential information about the vascular injury.

Management of vascular injuries is often initiated in a hospital emergency department. Careful patient triage is crucial. The most important principles in the management of vascular trauma are establishing a patent airway, controlling bleeding, and restoring blood flow. Emergency or urgent surgical intervention is needed for ischemia to maximize successful revascularization.

The method of repair varies with the type of vascular injury. Techniques include vein bypass grafting, lateral suture repair, thrombectomy (excision of blood clot), resection with end-to-end anastomosis, and vein patch grafting.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of vascular problems?

- Redness and swelling in lower leg (venous)
- Pallor, cyanosis (darkened), mottling, or rubor in lower leg (arterial)
- Report of pain/cramping in lower legs or hands (at rest or during activity)
- Ulcers on ankles, feet, or digits
- Pulsating mass in abdomen (abdominal aortic aneurysm)
- Decreased level of consciousness (LOC), diaphoresis, decreased urine output (rupturing aortic aneurysm)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of peripheral vascular disease?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs

- Assessing peripheral pulses
- Assessing capillary refill
- Checking for sensation and temperature
- Completing a pain assessment
- Assessing ulcer

Respond by:

- Notifying physician immediately or calling Rapid Response Team if aortic rupture suspected
- Monitoring vital signs
- Giving oxygen if aneurysm rupture suspected
- Starting an IV line if aneurysm rupture suspected
- Documenting abnormal peripheral vascular assessment findings
- Elevating legs if swollen unless arterial blood flow is poor

On what should you REFLECT?

- Think about how you responded.
- Continue to monitor patient for changes in peripheral blood flow, including pulse assessments.
- Observe patient for decreased report of pain.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Plan care for the patient with atherosclerosis and hypertension, in collaboration with the health care team, including the dietitian and pharmacist as needed.
- To reduce the risk for injury, caution patients about orthostatic hypotension when taking antihypertensive drugs.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- In collaboration with the dietitian, assist the patient to incorporate healthy eating behaviors to lower cholesterol and saturated fats and increase fresh fruits, vegetables, and fiber in the diet. For overweight patients, assist in a weight-reduction plan.
- Teach patients ways to prevent deep vein thrombosis and subsequent embolism. In the hospital setting, provide measures, such as wearing graduated compression stockings, to prevent or manage DVT.
- Assess the patient for modifiable and nonmodifiable risk factors for vascular disease, and teach health promotion behaviors to the patient and family. Pay particular attention to the patient with a family history of cardiovascular disease (see [Table 38-1](#)).

Physiological Integrity

- Remember that risk factors such as smoking increase the pathophysiologic process of atherosclerosis.

- Recall the classifications for hypertension to identify patients who are prehypertensive and those who need referral to a health care provider (see [Table 38-3](#)).
- Hypertension is categorized as either essential or secondary; the risk factors and causes for each type are described in [Table 38-5](#).
- Closely observe the patient receiving anticoagulants or thrombolytics for signs of bleeding, and monitor appropriate laboratory values for desired outcome values (see [Chart 38-7](#)).
- Monitor for decreased serum potassium levels when patients are taking thiazide or loop diuretics (see [Chart 38-1](#)).
- Teach patients to move slowly when changing position if taking any of the antihypertensive drugs listed in [Chart 38-1](#).
- Teach patients taking any of the statins in [Table 38-2](#) to report any adverse effects including muscle cramping to their health care provider. Monitor the patient's liver enzymes carefully.
- Provide emergency care for the patient having a hypertensive crisis as described in [Chart 38-2](#).
- Recognize that clinical manifestations of peripheral vascular disease (PVD) depend on whether it affects the arteries or veins. In addition to pallor, rubor, or cyanosis, key features of chronic peripheral arterial disease are listed in [Chart 38-3](#).
- Vasodilating drugs or surgery is used for arterial vascular diseases.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Deep vein thrombosis is the most common type of peripheral vascular problem. When symptoms are present, they include swelling, redness, localized pain, and warmth.
- Teach patients about self-care when they have venous insufficiency.
- Assess for venous and arterial ulcers as described in [Chart 38-4](#).
- Teach foot care for patients with PVD as outlined in [Chart 38-6](#).
- Teach patients about precautions for anticoagulant therapy as described in [Chart 38-7](#). Teach about food and drugs that interfere with warfarin (Coumadin) as listed in [Chart 38-8](#).
- Monitor for indications of aneurysm rupture: diaphoresis, nausea, vomiting, pallor, hypotension, tachycardia, severe pain, and decreased level of consciousness.
- Essential hypertension is called *primary hypertension* and is not caused by another health problem or drug. *Secondary hypertension* is caused by other health problems or drug therapy (see [Table 38-5](#)).

CHAPTER

39

Care of Patients with Shock

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Hypovolemic Shock
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Evaluate patient risk for hypovolemic shock or sepsis and septic shock.
2. Ensure vital sign measurements are accurate, and monitor them for changes indicating the presence of shock.
3. Apply principles of infection control to prevent infection and sepsis in susceptible patients, especially older adults.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach all people to avoid dehydration.
5. Teach all people to use safety devices to avoid trauma.
6. Instruct all patients going home after surgery or invasive procedures to seek immediate attention for persistent manifestations of early shock.
7. Teach all patients who have a local infection to seek medical attention when manifestations of systemic infection appear.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Assess the vital signs, especially pulse and oxygen saturation, for any patient who has a sudden change in

mental status, including increased anxiety, apprehension, or agitation.

9. Reassure the patient in shock that the appropriate interventions are being implemented.

Physiological Integrity

10. Compare the risk factors, causes, and manifestations of different types of shock.
11. Identify the manifestations associated with shock progression.
12. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the effectiveness of therapy for shock.
13. Describe the actions, side effects, and nursing implications of drug therapy for shock.
14. Coordinate the nursing care for the patient experiencing any stage of hypovolemic shock.
15. Explain the role of the systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) in the manifestations and progression of sepsis and septic shock.
16. Prioritize the nursing care for the patient with sepsis or septic shock.

OVERVIEW

A continuous supply of oxygen is needed by all organs, tissues, and cells to function properly. The lungs first bring oxygen into the body, and the cardiovascular system (heart, blood, and blood vessels) delivers oxygen to all tissues and removes cellular wastes (Fig. 39-1). **Shock** is widespread abnormal cellular metabolism that occurs when *oxygenation and tissue perfusion* needs are not met to the level necessary to maintain cell function (McCance et al., 2010). It is a condition rather than a disease and represents the “whole-body” response that occurs when too little oxygen is delivered to the tissues. All body organs are affected by shock and either work harder to adapt and compensate for reduced oxygenation (see Fig. 39-1) or fail to function because of hypoxia. Shock is a “syndrome” because the cellular, tissue, and organ events occur in a predictable sequence.

Any problem that impairs oxygen delivery to tissues and organs can start the syndrome of shock and lead to a life-threatening emergency. Most often, shock is a result of cardiovascular problems and changes. Patients in acute care settings are at higher risk, but shock can occur in any setting. For example, older patients in long-term care settings are at risk for sepsis and shock related to urinary tract infections. When the body’s adaptive adjustments (compensation) or health care interventions are not effective and shock progresses, severe hypoxia can lead to cell loss, multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), and death.

Shock is classified by the functional impairment it causes into the categories of hypovolemic shock, cardiogenic shock,

distributive shock (which includes septic shock, neurogenic shock, and anaphylactic shock), and obstructive shock. Table 39-1 describes the functional impairment classification and common causes of shock.

Most manifestations of shock are similar regardless of what starts the process or which tissues are affected first. These common manifestations result from physiologic adjustments (*compensatory mechanisms*) in the attempt to ensure continued oxygenation of vital organs. These adjustment actions are performed by the sympathetic nervous system, triggering the stress response and activating the endocrine and cardiovascular systems. Manifestations unique to any one type of shock result from specific tissue dysfunction. The common features of shock are listed in Chart 39-1.

Review of Oxygenation and Tissue Perfusion

Oxygenation and perfusion depend on how much oxygen from arterial blood perfuses the tissue. Tissue and organ perfusion is related to mean arterial pressure (MAP). Because the cardiovascular system is a closed but continuous circuit, the factors that influence MAP include:

- Total blood volume
- Cardiac output
- Size of the vascular bed

Total blood volume and cardiac output are directly related to MAP, so increases in either total blood volume or cardiac output *raise* MAP. Decreases in either total blood volume or cardiac output *lower* MAP.

The size of the vascular bed is inversely (negatively) related to MAP. This means that increases in the size of the vascular

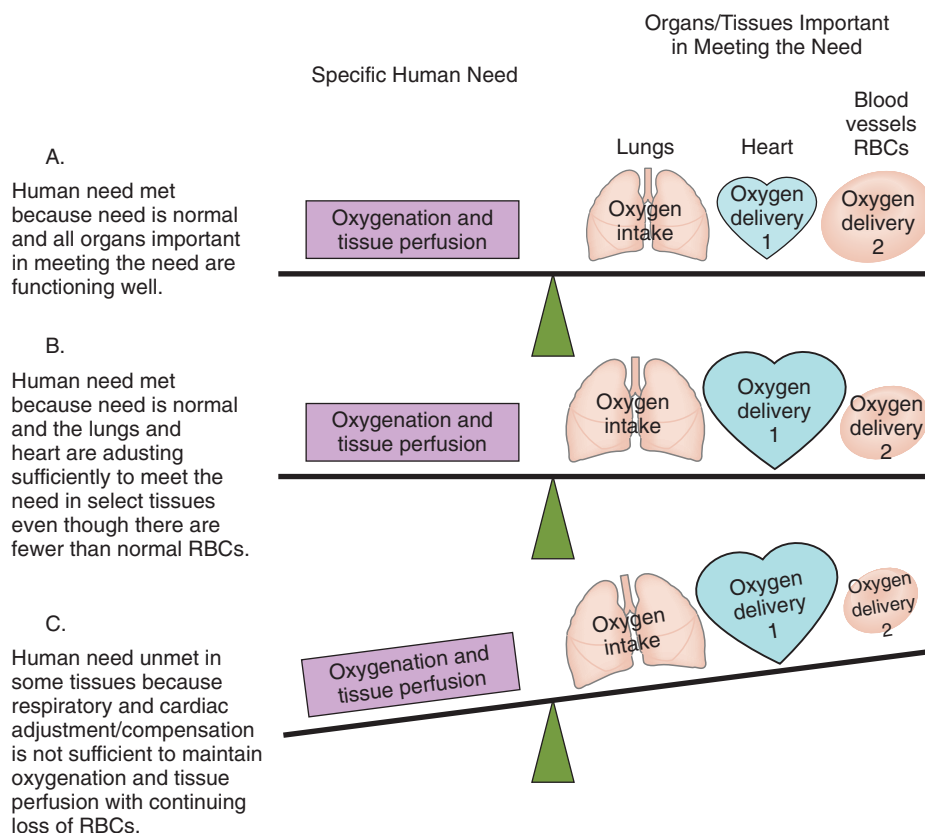


FIG. 39-1 Oxygenation and tissue perfusion affected by hypovolemic shock and adjustment/compensation. RBCs, Red blood cells.

TABLE 39-1 CAUSES AND TYPES OF SHOCK BY FUNCTIONAL IMPAIRMENT

Hypovolemic Shock**Overall Cause**

Total body fluid decreased (in all fluid compartments).

Specific Cause or Risk Factors

Hemorrhage

- Trauma
- GI ulcer
- Surgery
- Inadequate clotting
 - Hemophilia
 - Liver disease
- Malnutrition
- Bone marrow suppression
- Cancer
- Anticoagulation therapy

Dehydration

- Vomiting
- Diarrhea
- Heavy diaphoresis
- Diuretic therapy
- Nasogastric suction
- Diabetes insipidus
- Hyperglycemia

Cardiogenic Shock**Overall Cause**

Direct pump failure (fluid volume not affected).

Specific Cause or Risk Factors

Myocardial infarction

Cardiac arrest

Ventricular dysrhythmias

- Fibrillation
- Tachycardia

Cardiac amyloidosis

Cardiomyopathies

- Viral
- Toxic

Myocardial degeneration

Distributive Shock**Overall Cause**

Fluid shifted from central vascular space (total body fluid volume normal or increased).

Specific Cause or Risk Factors

Neural-induced

- Pain
- Anesthesia
- Stress
- Spinal cord injury
- Head trauma

Chemical-induced

- Anaphylaxis
- Sepsis
- Capillary leak
 - Burns
 - Extensive trauma
 - Liver impairment
- Hypoproteinemia

Obstructive Shock**Overall Cause**

Cardiac function decreased by noncardiac factor (indirect pump failure).
Total body fluid is not affected although central volume is decreased.

Specific Cause or Risk Factors

Cardiac tamponade

Arterial stenosis

Pulmonary embolus

Pulmonary hypertension

Constrictive pericarditis

Thoracic tumors

Tension pneumothorax

CHART 39-1 KEY FEATURES

Shock**Cardiovascular Manifestations**

- Decreased cardiac output
- Increased pulse rate
- Thready pulse
- Decreased blood pressure
- Narrowed pulse pressure
- Postural hypotension
- Low central venous pressure
- Flat neck and hand veins in dependent positions
- Slow capillary refill in nail beds
- Diminished peripheral pulses

Respiratory Manifestations

- Increased respiratory rate
- Shallow depth of respirations
- Increased P_{aCO_2}
- Decreased P_{aO_2}
- Cyanosis, especially around lips and nail beds

Neuromuscular Manifestations**Early**

- Anxiety
- Restlessness
- Increased thirst

Late

- Decreased central nervous system activity (lethargy to coma)
- Generalized muscle weakness
- Diminished or absent deep tendon reflexes
- Sluggish pupillary response to light

Kidney Manifestations

- Decreased urine output
- Increased specific gravity
- Sugar and acetone present in urine

Integumentary Manifestations

- Cool to cold
- Pale to mottled to cyanotic
- Moist, clammy
- Mouth dry; pastelike coating present

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Decreased motility
- Diminished or absent bowel sounds
- Nausea and vomiting
- Constipation

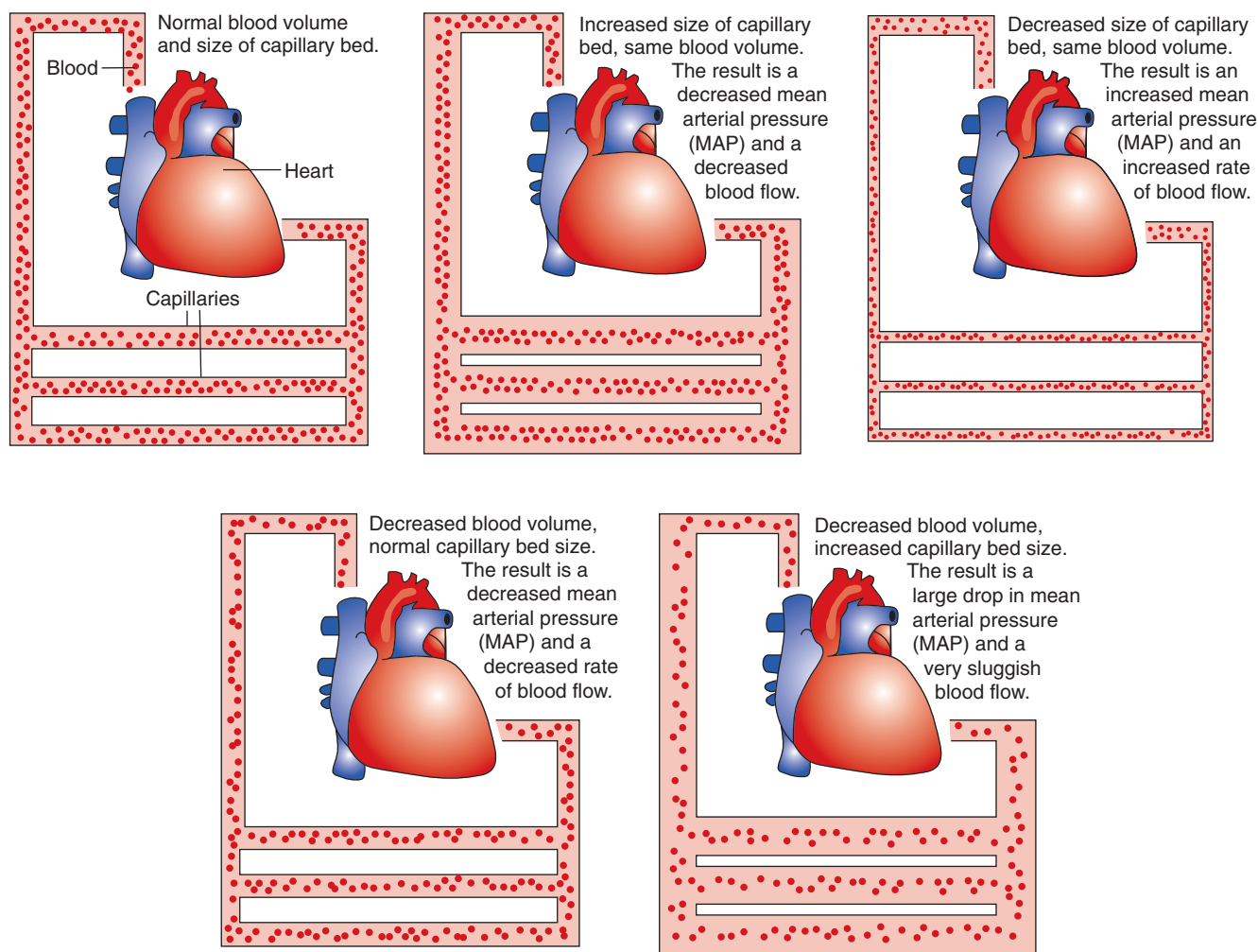


FIG. 39-2 Interaction of blood volume and the size of the capillary bed affecting mean arterial pressure (MAP).

bed *lower* MAP and decreases *raise* MAP (Fig. 39-2). The small arteries and veins connected to capillaries can increase in diameter by relaxing the smooth muscle in vessel walls (**dilation**) or decrease in diameter by contracting the muscle (**vasoconstriction**). When blood vessels dilate and total blood volume remains the same, blood pressure decreases and blood flow is slower. When blood vessels constrict and total blood volume remains the same, blood pressure increases and blood flow is faster.

Blood vessels are innervated by the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system. Some nerves continuously stimulate vascular smooth muscle so that the blood vessels are normally partially constricted, a condition called **sympathetic tone**. Increases in sympathetic stimulation constrict smooth muscle even more, raising MAP. Decreases in sympathetic tone relax smooth muscle, dilating blood vessels and lowering MAP.

Blood flow to organs varies and adjusts to changes in tissue oxygen needs. The body can selectively increase blood flow to some areas while reducing blood flow to others. The skin and skeletal muscles can tolerate low levels of oxygen for hours without dying or being damaged. Other organs (e.g., heart, brain, liver, pancreas) do not tolerate **hypoxic** (low levels of

tissue oxygenation), and only a few minutes without oxygen results in serious damage and cell death.

Types of Shock

Types of shock and their causes vary because shock is a manifestation of a pathologic condition rather than a disease state (see Table 39-1). *More than one type of shock can be present at the same time.* For example, trauma caused by a car crash may trigger hemorrhage (leading to hypovolemic shock) and a myocardial infarction (leading to cardiogenic shock).

Hypovolemic shock occurs when too little circulating blood volume causes a MAP decrease, resulting in inadequate total body oxygenation. Common problems leading to hypovolemic shock are hemorrhage and dehydration. A complete discussion of the pathophysiology and management of hypovolemic shock begins on p. 812.

Cardiogenic shock occurs when the actual heart muscle is unhealthy and pumping is directly impaired. Myocardial infarction is the most common cause of direct pump failure (Held & Sturtz, 2009). Other causes are listed in Table 39-1. Any type of pump failure decreases cardiac output and MAP. Chapter 40 discusses the pathophysiology and care

for the person with cardiogenic shock from myocardial infarction.

Distributive shock occurs when blood volume is not lost from the body but is distributed to the interstitial tissues where it cannot circulate and deliver oxygen. It can be caused by a loss of sympathetic tone, blood vessel dilation, pooling of blood in venous and capillary beds, and increased capillary leak. All these factors can decrease mean arterial pressure (MAP) and may be started by nerve changes (*neural-induced*) or the presence of some chemicals (*chemical-induced*).

Neural-induced distributive shock is a loss of MAP that occurs when sympathetic nerve impulses controlling blood vessel smooth muscle are decreased and the smooth muscles relax, causing vasodilation. This blood vessel dilation can be a normal local response to injury, but shock results when vasodilation is widespread (King & Olson, 2007). Problems leading to loss of sympathetic tone are listed in Table 39-1.

Chemical-induced distributive shock has three common origins: anaphylaxis, sepsis, and capillary leak syndrome. It occurs when certain body chemicals or foreign substances in the blood and vessels start widespread changes in blood vessel walls. The chemicals are usually **exogenous** (originate outside the body), but this type of shock also can be induced by substances normally found in the body (**endogenous**), such as excessive amounts of the mediator *histamine*.

Anaphylaxis is one result of type I allergic reactions. It begins within seconds to minutes after exposure to a specific allergen in a susceptible person. The result is widespread loss of blood vessel tone and decreased cardiac output. Table 22-2 (in Chapter 22) lists common allergens that can cause anaphylaxis. Chapter 22 describes the pathophysiology, prevention, and care of the patient with anaphylactic shock.

Sepsis is a widespread infection that triggers a whole-body inflammatory response. It leads to distributive shock when infectious microorganisms are present in the blood. This form of shock is most commonly called **septic shock**. A complete discussion of the pathophysiology, prevention, and collaborative care for the patient with sepsis and septic shock begins on p. 819.

Capillary leak syndrome is the response of capillaries to the presence of biologic mediators that change blood vessel integrity and allow fluid to shift from the blood vessels into the interstitial tissues. Once in the interstitial tissue, these fluids are stagnant and cannot deliver oxygen or remove tissue waste products. Fluid shifts result from increased size of capillary pores, loss of plasma osmolarity, and increased hydrostatic pressure in the blood. Problems causing fluid shifts include severe burns, liver disorders, ascites, peritonitis, paralytic ileus, severe malnutrition, large wounds, hyperglycemia, kidney disease, hypoproteinemia, and trauma.

Obstructive shock is caused by problems that impair the ability of the normal heart muscle to pump effectively. The heart itself remains normal, but conditions outside the heart prevent either adequate filling of the heart or adequate contraction of the healthy heart muscle. The most common causes of obstructive shock are pericarditis and cardiac tamponade (see Table 39-1). Care of the person with cardiac tamponade is presented in detail in Chapter 37 (pericarditis) and Chapter 40 (as a complication after cardiac bypass graft surgery).

*Although the causes and initial manifestations associated with the different types of shock vary, eventually the effects of hypotension and **anaerobic cellular metabolism** (metabolism without oxygen) result in the common key features of shock listed in Chart 39-1. The origin of these features is explained below in the discussion of Pathophysiology in the Hypovolemic Shock section.*



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Why are the manifestations of most types of shock the same regardless of what specific events or condition caused the shock to occur?

- A. The blood, blood vessels, and heart are directly connected to each other so that when one is affected, all three are affected.
- B. Because blood loss occurs with all types of shock, the most common first manifestation is hypotension.
- C. Every type of shock interferes with oxygenation and metabolism of all cells in the same sequence.
- D. The sympathetic nervous system is triggered by any type of shock and initiates the stress response.

HYPOVOLEMIC SHOCK

Pathophysiology

The basic problem of hypovolemic shock is a loss of blood volume from the vascular space, resulting in a decreased mean arterial pressure (MAP) (see Fig. 39-2) and a loss of oxygen-carrying capacity from the loss of circulating red blood cells (RBCs). The reduced MAP slows blood flow, resulting in decreased tissue perfusion. The loss of RBCs decreases the ability of the blood to oxygenate the tissue it does reach. These oxygenation and perfusion problems lead to cellular *anaerobic* (without oxygen) conditions and abnormal cellular metabolism.

The main trigger leading to hypovolemic shock is a sustained decrease in MAP that results from decreased circulating blood volume. A decrease in MAP of 5 to 10 mm Hg below the patient's normal baseline value is detected by pressure-sensitive nerve receptors (*baroreceptors*) in the aortic arch and carotid sinus. This information is transmitted to brain centers, which stimulate adjustments (*compensatory mechanisms*) that help ensure continued blood flow and oxygen delivery to vital organs while limiting blood flow to less vital areas. The movement of oxygenated blood into selected areas while bypassing others ("shunting") results in some shock manifestations.

If the events that caused the initial decrease in MAP are halted now, compensatory mechanisms provide adequate oxygenation and perfusion without outside intervention. If the initiating events continue and MAP decreases further, some tissues function under anaerobic conditions. This condition increases lactic acid levels and other harmful metabolites (e.g., protein-destroying enzymes, oxygen free radicals). These substances cause electrolyte and acid-base imbalances with tissue-damaging effects and depressed heart muscle activity. These effects are temporary and reversible if the cause of shock is corrected within 1 to 2 hours after onset. When shock conditions continue for longer periods without help, the resulting acid-base imbalance, electrolyte

TABLE 39-2 ADAPTIVE RESPONSES AND EVENTS DURING HYPOVOLEMIC SHOCK**Initial Stage**

- Decrease in baseline mean arterial pressure (MAP) of 5-10 mm Hg
- Increased sympathetic stimulation
 - Mild vasoconstriction
 - Increased heart rate

Nonprogressive Stage

- Decrease in MAP of 10-15 mm Hg from the patient's baseline value
- Continued sympathetic stimulation
 - Moderate vasoconstriction
 - Increased heart rate
 - Decreased pulse pressure
- Chemical compensation
 - Renin, aldosterone, and antidiuretic hormone secretion
 - Increased vasoconstriction
 - Decreased urine output
 - Stimulation of the thirst reflex
- Some anaerobic metabolism in nonvital organs
 - Mild acidosis
 - Mild hyperkalemia

Progressive Stage

- Decrease in MAP of >20 mm Hg from the patient's baseline value
- Anoxia of nonvital organs
- Hypoxia of vital organs
- Overall metabolism is anaerobic
 - Moderate acidosis
 - Moderate hyperkalemia
 - Tissue ischemia

Refractory Stage

- Severe tissue hypoxia with ischemia and necrosis
- Release of myocardial depressant factor from the pancreas
- Buildup of toxic metabolites
- Multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS)
- Death

imbalances, and increased metabolites cause so much cell damage in vital organs that multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS) occurs and recovery from shock is no longer possible. Table 39-2 summarizes the responses during the progression of shock.

Stages of Shock

The syndrome of shock progresses in four stages when the conditions that cause shock remain uncorrected and poor cellular oxygenation continues. These stages are:

1. Initial stage
2. Nonprogressive stage
3. Progressive stage
4. Refractory stage

The stages are defined on the basis of how well compensatory mechanisms are working, the severity of the clinical manifestations, and whether tissue damage is reversible.

Initial Stage of Shock (Early Stage). The initial (early) stage of shock is present when the patient's baseline MAP is decreased by less than 10 mm Hg. During this stage, compensatory mechanisms are so effective at returning systolic pressure to normal that oxygenated blood flow to vital organs is maintained. The cellular change in this stage is increased anaerobic metabolism with production of lactic acid,

although overall metabolism is still aerobic. The compensation responses of vascular constriction and increased heart rate are effective, and both cardiac output and MAP are maintained within the normal range. Because vital organ function is not disrupted, the manifestations of shock are difficult to detect. *A heart and respiratory rate increased from the patient's baseline level or a slight increase in diastolic blood pressure may be the only objective manifestation of this early stage of shock.*

Nonprogressive Stage of Shock (Compensatory Stage).

The nonprogressive (compensatory) stage of shock occurs when MAP decreases by 10 to 15 mm Hg from baseline. Kidney and hormonal compensatory mechanisms are activated because cardiovascular responses alone are not enough to maintain MAP and supply oxygen to vital organs.

The kidneys and baroreceptors sense an ongoing decrease in MAP and trigger the release of renin, antidiuretic hormone (ADH), aldosterone, epinephrine, and norepinephrine to start kidney compensation. Renin, secreted by the kidney, causes decreased urine output, increased sodium reabsorption, and widespread blood vessel constriction (see Fig. 13-6 in Chapter 13). ADH increases water reabsorption in the kidney, further reducing urine output, and also causes blood vessel constriction in the skin and other less vital tissue areas. Together these actions compensate for shock by maintaining the fluid volume within the central blood vessels.

Tissue hypoxia occurs in nonvital organs (e.g., skin, GI tract) and in the kidney, but it is not great enough to cause permanent damage. Because some metabolism is anaerobic, acid-base and electrolyte changes occur in response to the buildup of metabolites. Changes include **acidosis** (low blood pH) and **hyperkalemia** (increased blood potassium level).

Manifestations of the nonprogressive stage of shock include both subjective and objective changes resulting from decreased tissue perfusion. Subjective changes include thirst and anxiety. Objective changes include restlessness, tachycardia, increased respiratory rate, decreased urine output, falling systolic blood pressure, rising diastolic blood pressure, narrowing pulse pressure, cool extremities, and a 2% to 5% decrease in oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry. *Comparing these changes with the values and manifestations obtained earlier is critical to identifying this stage of shock.*

If the patient is stable and compensatory mechanisms are supported by medical and nursing interventions, he or she can remain in this stage for hours without having permanent damage. *Stopping the conditions that started the shock at this stage and providing supportive interventions can prevent the shock from progressing.* The cellular effects of this stage are reversible when nurses recognize the problem and coordinate with the health care team to start appropriate interventions (Mattiace, 2008; Stricker, 2010).

Progressive Stage of Shock (Intermediate Stage). The progressive stage of shock occurs when there is a sustained decrease in MAP of more than 20 mm Hg from baseline. In this stage, compensatory mechanisms are functioning but can no longer deliver sufficient oxygen, even to vital organs. Vital organs develop hypoxia, and less vital organs become **anoxic** (no oxygen) and **ischemic** (cell dysfunction or death from lack of oxygen). As a result of poor oxygenation and a buildup of toxic metabolites, some tissues have severe cell damage and die.

Manifestations of the progressive stage of shock include a *worsening* of subjective and objective changes resulting from decreased tissue perfusion. *Continuous monitoring and comparison with earlier findings are critical to assess therapy effectiveness.* Subjective changes include severe thirst sensation and deeper anxiety. The patient may express a sense of “something bad” (impending doom) about to happen. He or she may seem confused. Objective changes are a rapid, weak pulse; low blood pressure; pallor to cyanosis of oral mucosa and nail beds; cool and moist skin; anuria; and a 5% to 20% decrease in oxygen saturation. Laboratory data at this stage may show a low blood pH, along with rising lactic acid and potassium levels.

The progressive stage of shock is a life-threatening emergency. Vital organs can tolerate this situation for only a short time before being damaged permanently. Immediate interventions are needed to reverse the effects of this stage of shock. Tolerance varies from person to person and depends on age and health. The patient's life usually can be saved if the conditions causing shock are corrected within 1 hour or less of the onset of the progressive stage.

Refractory Stage of Shock (Irreversible Stage). The refractory stage or irreversible stage of shock occurs when too much cell death and tissue damage result from too little oxygen reaching the tissues. Vital organs have overwhelming damage. The body can no longer respond effectively to interventions, and shock continues. *Therapy is not effective in saving the patient's life, even if the cause of shock is corrected and MAP temporarily returns to normal.* So much tissue damage has occurred with widespread release of toxic metabolites and enzymes that cell damage in vital organs continues despite aggressive interventions. Manifestations are a rapid loss of consciousness; nonpalpable pulse; cold, dusky extremities; slow, shallow respirations; and unmeasurable oxygen saturation.

Multiple Organ Dysfunction Syndrome. The sequence of cell damage caused by the massive release of toxic metabolites and enzymes is termed **multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS)**. Once the damage has started, the sequence becomes a vicious cycle as more dead cells break open and release harmful metabolites. These trigger small clots (*microthrombi*) to form, which block tissue oxygenation and damage more cells, thus continuing the devastating cycle. Liver, heart, brain, and kidney functions are lost first. The most profound change is damage to the heart muscle. One cause of this damage is the release of myocardial depressant factor (MDF) from the ischemic pancreas.

Etiology

Hypovolemic shock occurs when too little circulating blood volume causes a MAP decrease that prevents total body oxygenation. Common problems leading to hypovolemic shock are hemorrhage (external or internal) and dehydration.

Hypovolemic shock from external hemorrhage is common after trauma and surgery. Hypovolemic shock from internal hemorrhage occurs with blunt trauma, GI ulcers, and poor control of surgical bleeding. Hemorrhage also can be caused by any problem that reduces the levels of clotting factors (see Table 39-1). Hypovolemia as a result of dehydration can be caused by any problem that decreases fluid intake or increases fluid loss (see Table 39-1).

Incidence/Prevalence

The exact incidence of hypovolemic shock is not known because it is a response rather than a disease. It is a common complication among hospitalized patients in emergency departments and after surgery or invasive procedures.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Hypovolemic shock from most causes can be prevented. Teach all people to prevent dehydration by having an adequate fluid intake during exercise and when in hot, dry environments. Urge people to prevent trauma and hemorrhage by using proper safety equipment and seat belts and being aware of hazards in the home or workplace.

Secondary prevention of hypovolemic shock is a major nursing responsibility. Keep in mind that just being a patient in the acute care setting is a risk factor. Identify patients at risk for dehydration, and assess for early manifestations. This is especially important for those who have reduced cognition or reduced mobility or who are on NPO status.

Assess all patients who have invasive procedures or trauma for obvious or occult bleeding. Compare pulse quality and rate with baseline. Compare urine output with fluid intake. Check vital signs for patients who have persistent thirst. Assess for shock in any patient who develops a change in mental status, an increase in pain, or an increase in anxiety.

When patients have invasive procedures or ambulatory surgery and then go home, teach them and their families the manifestations of shock. Stress the importance of seeking immediate help for obvious heavy bleeding, persistent thirst, decreased urine output, light-headedness, or a sense of impending doom (a feeling that something bad is happening or going to happen).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The Concept Map on p. 815 addresses assessment and nursing care issues related to hypovolemic shock.

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask about risk factors related to hypovolemic shock. If the patient is alert and stable, question him or her directly. If the patient is not alert or is not stable, collect information from family members. Age is important because hypovolemic shock from trauma is more common in young adults and other types of shock are more common in older adults. Ask patients about recent illness, trauma, procedures, or chronic health problems that may lead to shock. These problems include GI ulcers, general surgery, hemophilia, liver disorders, and prolonged vomiting and diarrhea. Ask about the use of drugs such as aspirin, other NSAIDs, and diuretics that may cause changes leading to hypovolemic shock.

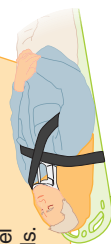
Ask about fluid intake and output during the previous 24 hours. *Information about urine output is especially important because urine output is reduced during the first stages of shock, even when fluid intake is normal.*

Assess the patient for obvious signs or factors that can lead to shock. Areas to examine for signs of hemorrhage include the gums, wounds, and sites of dressings, drains, and vascular

Concept Map: Hypovolemic Shock

HISTORY

A 59-year-old involved in a motor vehicle crash comes to the ED confused and restless. Vitals are HR 120 (weak and thready), RR 24, BP 108/86 mm Hg. There are no open wounds, the abdomen is distended, and there are hypoactive bowel sounds.



Planning

EXPECTED OUTCOMES

- Clear thought processes
- MAP <10 mm Hg from baseline
- BP, HR, RR, ABGs, O₂ sat return to baseline
- U/O significantly >30 mL/hr
- No development of complications

Physical Assessment/
Clinical Manifestations
of Shock

Subjective signs:

Thirst, anxiety

Objective signs:

Restlessness; rapid, weak pulse; ↑ RR;
↓ U/O; ↓ systolic, ↑ diastolic BP (narrowing pulse pressure); cool extremities; ↓ O₂ sat; pallor, cyanosis; ↓ pH, ↑ lactic acid, ↑ K⁺

Causes

- Hemorrhage after blunt trauma
- Hemorrhage that reduces levels of clotting factors

Assess parameters at least every 15 minutes until shock is controlled and patient's condition improves

INTERVENTIONS

1	Patent Airway Administer O ₂ ; monitor and respond to ↑ RR, shallow depth; ↓ PaO ₂ ; cyanosis, especially around lips and nail beds. <i>Monitors for progression of shock.</i>
2	Nursing Safety Priority: Critical Rescue! Do not leave the patient. RN rather than LPN or UAP should assess vital signs. <i>An unstable patient requires the assessment skills of an RN.</i>
3	Physical Assessment Ensure vital sign readings are accurate; monitor for trends. Validate electronic readings with manual readings. <i>Ensures accuracy of measurement and assesses effectiveness of treatment.</i>
4	Nursing Safety Priority: Critical Rescue! Assess pulse rate and quality. Use changes in pulse as main indicators of shock. ↑ HR is earliest manifestation of shock. Peripheral pulses may be absent with progression. <i>Changes in systolic BP are not always present in the initial stage of shock.</i>
5	Bleeding Examine the patient for overt bleeding; apply direct pressure. Check under the patient for blood. Observe for swelling or skin discoloration. <i>Saves the patient's life if conditions are corrected within 1 hour of onset. Swelling or discoloration may indicate internal hemorrhage.</i>
6	Blood Pressure Monitor BP closely; elevate the patient's feet, keeping the head flat or elevated to a 30-degree angle. <i>Increases perfusion to the brain.</i>
7	Psychosocial Factors Reassure the patient in shock that the appropriate interventions are being implemented. <i>Calms the patient.</i>
8	Fluid Resuscitation Start an IV catheter or maintain an established catheter; ↑ the rate of IV fluid delivery. Prepare to give blood replacement therapy for hemorrhage using NS to prep an IV line. <i>Provides fluids, RBCs, clotting factors, and platelets to maintain perfusion to vital organs.</i>
9	Nursing Safety Priority: Drug Alert! Monitor the patient closely when giving drugs. ↑ CO and restore volume. <i>Monitors for systemic vasodilation and ↑ shock caused by drugs if patient is volume depleted.</i>
10	Surgery Preparation Prepare the patient for surgery. <i>Corrects internal bleeding for the patient's survival.</i>
11	Health Promotion & Safety Encourage proper use of safety equipment and seat belts, as well as awareness of hazards in the home or workplace. <i>Prevents trauma and hemorrhage, which is essential in health promotion teaching.</i>

Concept Map by Deanne A. Blach, MSN, RN

accesses. Also check *under* the patient for blood. Observe for any swelling or skin discoloration that may indicate an internal hemorrhage.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Most manifestations of hypovolemic shock are caused by the changes resulting from compensatory efforts. **Compensatory mechanisms** are physiologic responses that try to keep an adequate blood flow to vital organs. Signs of shock are first evident as changes in cardiovascular function. As shock progresses, changes in the renal, respiratory, integumentary, musculoskeletal, and central nervous systems become evident. Ensure that vital sign measurements are accurate, and monitor them for trends indicating shock.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assign a registered nurse rather than a licensed practical nurse/ licensed vocational nurse (LPN/LVN) or unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to assess the vital signs of a patient who is at risk for or suspected of having hypovolemic shock.

Cardiovascular changes that occur with hypovolemic shock start with decreased mean arterial pressure (MAP) leading to compensatory responses. Thus the earliest clinical signs of hypovolemic shock are cardiovascular.

Assess the central and peripheral pulses for rate and quality. In the initial stage of hypovolemic shock, the pulse rate increases to keep cardiac output and MAP at normal levels, even though the actual **stroke volume** (amount of blood pumped out from the heart) per beat is decreased. *Increased heart rate is the earliest manifestation of shock.* Because stroke volume is decreased, the peripheral pulses are difficult to palpate and are blocked with light pressure. As shock progresses, peripheral pulses may be absent.

When assessing the blood pressure of a patient at risk for shock, consider his or her normal baseline blood pressure. Although a blood pressure of 90/50 mm Hg may indicate severe shock in one person, it may be the normal blood pressure for another healthy adult.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because changes in systolic blood pressure are not always present in the initial stage of shock, use changes in pulse rate and quality as the main indicators of shock presence or progression.

With vasoconstriction, diastolic pressure increases but systolic pressure remains the same. As a result, the **pulse pressure**, which is the difference between the systolic and diastolic pressures, is smaller (also called “narrower”). Monitor blood pressure for changes from baseline levels and for changes from the previous measurement. For accuracy, use the same equipment on the same extremity. Validate an electronic reading with a manual reading.

Systolic pressure decreases as shock progresses and cardiac output decreases. A reduced systolic pressure narrows the pulse pressure even further. When shock continues and

interventions are not adequate, compensation fails and both systolic and diastolic pressures decrease. At this stage, blood pressure is difficult to hear. Palpation or a Doppler device may be needed to detect the systolic blood pressure.

Oxygen saturation is assessed through pulse oximetry. Pulse oximetry values between 90% and 95% occur with the nonprogressive stage of shock, and values between 75% and 80% occur with the progressive stage of shock. *Any value below 70% is considered a life-threatening emergency and may signal the refractory stage of shock.*

Respiratory changes with shock are an adaptive or compensatory response to help maintain oxygenation when tissue perfusion is decreased. Assess the rate, depth, and ease of respiration. Respiratory rate increases during hypovolemic shock to ensure that oxygen intake is increased so that it can be delivered to critical tissues. When shock progresses to the stage at which lactic acidosis is present, the respiratory depth also increases.

Kidney and urinary changes occur with shock to compensate for decreased MAP by saving body water through decreased filtration and increased water reabsorption. Assess urine for volume, color, specific gravity, and the presence of blood or protein. *Decreased urine output is a sensitive indicator of early shock. Measure urine output at least every hour. In severe shock, urine output may be absent.* Of the four vital organs (heart, brain, liver, and kidney), only the kidney can tolerate hypoxia and anoxia for up to 1 hour without permanent damage. When hypoxia or anoxia persists beyond this time, patients are at risk for acute kidney injury (AKI) and kidney failure.

Skin changes occur because of reduced blood flow in the skin. An early compensatory mechanism is skin blood vessel constriction, which reduces skin perfusion. This allows more blood to circulate to the vital organs, which cannot tolerate low oxygen levels.

Assess the skin for temperature, color, and moisture. With shock, it feels cool or cold to the touch and is moist. Color changes appear first in oral mucous membranes and in the skin around the mouth. Pallor or cyanosis is best assessed in the oral mucous membranes in dark-skinned patients. Other color changes are noted first in the skin of the extremities and then in the central trunk area. The skin feels clammy or moist to the touch, not because sweating increases but because the normal fluid lost through the skin does not evaporate well on cold skin. As shock progresses, skin becomes mottled. Lighter-skinned patients have an overall grayish blue color and darker-skinned patients appear darker, without an underlying reddish glow.

Evaluate capillary refill time by pressing on the patient's fingernail until it blanches and then observing how fast the nail bed resumes color when pressure is released. Normally these capillaries resume color as soon as pressure is released. With shock, capillary refill is slow or is sometimes absent. Capillary refill may not be a reliable indicator for peripheral blood flow in older patients or those with anemia, diabetes, or peripheral vascular disease.

Central nervous system changes with shock first manifest as thirst. Thirst is caused by stimulation of the thirst centers in the brain in response to decreased blood volume.

Assess the patient's level of consciousness (LOC) and orientation. Central nervous system changes of hypovolemic shock are caused by cerebral hypoxia. In the initial and

nonprogressive stages, patients may be restless or agitated and may be anxious or have a feeling of impending doom that has no obvious cause. As hypoxia progresses, confusion and lethargy occur. Lethargy progresses to somnolence and loss of consciousness as cerebral hypoxia worsens with shock progression.

Skeletal muscle changes during shock are muscle weakness and pain in response to tissue hypoxia and anaerobic metabolism, which are later manifestations. Weakness is generalized and has no specific pattern. The electrolyte changes of shock worsen muscle weakness by decreasing action potentials. Then deep tendon reflexes are decreased or absent.

Assess muscle strength by having the patient squeeze your hand and by trying to keep his or her arms flexed while you attempt to straighten them. Assess deep tendon reflexes by lightly tapping the patellar tendons and Achilles tendons with a reflex hammer and observing the degree of reflexive movement.

Psychosocial Assessment

Changes in mental status and behavior may be early signs of shock. Observe the patient closely, and document behavior. Assess mental status by evaluating LOC and noting whether the patient is asleep or awake. If the patient is asleep, attempt to awaken him or her and document how easily he or she is aroused. If the patient is awake, determine whether he or she is oriented to person, place, and time. Avoid asking questions that can be answered with a “yes” or a “no” response. Consider these points during assessment:

- Is it necessary to repeat questions to obtain a response?
- Does the response answer the question asked?
- Does the patient have difficulty making word choices?
- Is the patient irritated or upset by the questions?
- Can the patient concentrate on a question long enough to answer appropriately, or is the attention span limited?

If possible, talk with family members to determine whether the patient’s behavior and mental status are typical or represent a change.

Laboratory Assessment

Although no single laboratory finding confirms or rules out shock, changes in laboratory data may support the diagnosis. (Chart 39-2 lists laboratory changes occurring with hypovolemic shock.) As shock progresses, arterial blood gas values become abnormal. The pH decreases, the partial pressure of arterial oxygen (PaO_2) decreases, and the partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (PaCO_2) increases. Changes in other laboratory values may occur with specific causes of hypovolemic shock.

Hematocrit and hemoglobin levels decrease if shock is caused by hemorrhage. When shock is caused by dehydration or a fluid shift, hematocrit and hemoglobin levels are elevated.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with hypovolemic shock are:

1. Hypoxia related to hypovolemia
2. Hypoperfusion related to active fluid volume loss and hypotension

CHART 39-2 LABORATORY PROFILE

Hypovolemic Shock

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
pH (arterial)	7.35-7.45	Decreased: insufficient tissue oxygenation causing anaerobic metabolism and acidosis
PaO_2	80-100 mm Hg	Decreased: anaerobic metabolism
PaCO_2	35-45 mm Hg	Increased: anaerobic metabolism
Lactic acid (arterial)	3-7 mg/dL 0.3-0.8 mmol/L	Increased: anaerobic metabolism with buildup of metabolites
Hematocrit	Females: 37%-47% Males: 42%-52%	Increased: fluid shift, dehydration Decreased: hemorrhage
Hemoglobin	Females: 12-16 g/dL Males: 14-18 g/dL	Increased: fluid shift, dehydration Decreased: hemorrhage
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L or mmol/L	Increased: dehydration, acidosis

Data from Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

PaCO_2 , Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide; PaO_2 , partial pressure of arterial oxygen.

3. Anxiety related to potential for death and decreased cerebral perfusion
4. Confusion related to decreased cerebral perfusion

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Safety

A 30-year-old man comes to the emergency department because of increasing pain in the left upper abdominal quadrant. Several hours ago, he was hit hard in that area during a tackle by the head of a football player who was wearing a helmet. He has no other health problems, and the only drug he takes on a regular basis is 325 mg of aspirin daily. These are his vital signs: pulse, 102; respirations, 22; blood pressure, 110/86; oxygen saturation, 96%. He has not eaten since he was hit but did drink a bottle of water on the way to the hospital because he was thirsty. When you examine his abdomen, bruising is present in the left upper quadrant and extends down his left side.

1. Where else should you look for evidence of bleeding?
2. What manifestations of shock are present?
3. How would you classify this stage of shock? Provide a rationale for your evaluation.
4. What additional information should you obtain?
5. What vital sign(s) should you monitor most closely?

INTERVENTIONS

Medical and nursing interventions for patients in hypovolemic shock focus on reversing the shock, restoring fluid volume to the normal range, and preventing complications through supportive and drug therapies. Monitoring is critical to determine whether the patient is responding to therapy or whether shock is progressing and a change in intervention is

CHART 39-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient in Hypovolemic Shock

- Ensure a patent airway.
- Start an IV catheter, or maintain an established catheter.
- Administer oxygen.
- Elevate the patient's feet, keeping his or her head flat or elevated to no more than a 30-degree angle.
- Examine the patient for overt bleeding.
- If overt bleeding is present, apply direct pressure to the site.
- Administer drugs as prescribed.
- Increase the rate of IV fluid delivery.
- Do not leave the patient.

needed. Surgery may be needed to correct the cause of shock. [Chart 39-3](#) lists best practices for patients in hypovolemic shock.

Nonsurgical Management

The purposes of shock management are to maintain tissue oxygenation, increase vascular volume to normal range, and support compensatory mechanisms. Oxygen therapy, fluid replacement therapy, and drug therapy are useful for this problem.

Oxygen therapy is for any stage of shock and is delivered by mask, hood, nasal cannula, nasopharyngeal tube, endotracheal tube, or tracheostomy tube. It is given in liters per minute (L/min) (when using a cannula) or concentration by percentage (when using a mask).

IV therapy for fluid resuscitation is a primary intervention for hypovolemic shock. Crystalloids and colloids are the fluid types used for volume replacement. Crystalloid solutions contain nonprotein substances (e.g., minerals, salts, sugars). Colloid solutions contain large molecules (usually proteins or starches) (see [Chapter 13](#)).

Crystalloid fluids are given to help maintain an adequate fluid and electrolyte balance. Two common solutions are normal saline and Ringer's lactate. Normal saline (0.9% sodium chloride in water) is the fluid replacement solution of choice used to increase plasma volume and can be infused with any blood product. Ringer's lactate contains sodium, chloride, calcium, potassium, and lactate dissolved in water. This isotonic solution expands volume, and the lactate buffers acidosis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Use only normal saline for infusion with blood or blood products because the calcium in Ringer's lactate induces clotting of the infusing blood.

Protein-containing colloid fluids help restore osmotic pressure and fluid volume. Blood and blood products are often used for this purpose when shock is caused by blood loss. These fluids include whole blood, packed red blood cells, plasma, and synthetic plasma expanders.

Whole blood and packed red blood cells increase hematocrit and hemoglobin levels along with fluid volume. Whole

blood is used to replace large blood losses because it increases volume and improves the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood. Packed red cells are given for moderate blood loss because they restore the red blood cell deficit and improve oxygen-carrying capacity without adding excessive fluid volume. [Chapter 42](#) discusses nursing care issues when giving blood or blood products.

Plasma, an acellular blood product containing clotting factors, is given to restore osmotic pressure when hematocrit and hemoglobin levels are within normal ranges. Plasma protein fractions (e.g., Plasmanate) and synthetic plasma expanders (e.g., hetastarch [hydroxyethyl starch, Hespan]) increase volume and are used for hypovolemic shock before a cause is identified.

Drug therapy is used when the volume lost is severe and the patient does not respond sufficiently to fluid replacement and blood products. The actions of drugs for shock increase venous return, improve cardiac contractility, or improve cardiac perfusion by dilating the coronary vessels ([Cooper, 2008](#)). [Chart 39-4](#) lists the drugs used to treat hypovolemic shock.

Vasoconstricting drugs stimulate venous return by constricting blood vessels and decreasing venous pooling. These actions increase cardiac output and mean arterial pressure (MAP), which help improve perfusion and oxygenation. Such agents include dopamine (Intropin, Revimine ) and norepinephrine (Levophed). These drugs can produce serious side effects, and their dosages must be carefully calculated on the basis of the patient's size and response to treatment ([Cooper, 2008](#)) (see [Chart 39-4](#)).

Inotropic drugs stimulate adrenergic receptors in the heart (beta₁ receptors) and improve heart muscle cell contraction. Thus greater recoil occurs and more blood leaves the left ventricle during contraction. These drugs include dobutamine (Dobutrex) and milrinone (Primacor).

Drugs enhancing myocardial perfusion help ensure that the heart is well perfused, especially when giving drugs to improve cardiac contraction, so that aerobic metabolism is maintained in the heart cells and maximum contractility can occur. Drugs that dilate coronary blood vessels while minimally dilating systemic vessels are used for this purpose. A common drug with this action is sodium nitroprusside (Nitropress, Nipride .

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Monitor the patient closely because drugs that dilate coronary blood vessels, such as nitroprusside, can cause systemic vasodilation and increase shock if the patient is volume depleted.

Monitoring vital signs and level of consciousness is a major nursing action to determine the patient's condition and the effectiveness of therapy. Monitor these vital signs:

- Pulse
- Blood pressure
- Pulse pressure
- Central venous pressure (CVP)
- Respiratory rate
- Skin and mucosal color

CHART 39-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Hypovolemic Shock

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Vasoconstrictors			
Dopamine (Intropin, Revimine 🍁) 5-20 mcg/kg/min IV	Improve blood flow by increasing peripheral resistance, increasing venous return to the heart, and improving myocardial contractility.	Assess the patient for chest pain.	Drug increases myocardial oxygen consumption.
Norepinephrine (Levophed), initial dose 0.5-1 mcg/min IV, to maintain systolic BP between 90 and 100 mm Hg		Monitor urine output hourly.	Higher doses decrease renal perfusion and urine output.
Phenylephrine HCl 0.1-0.5 mg IV every 15 min		Assess blood pressure every 15 min.	Hypertension is a sign of overdose.
		Assess the patient for headache.	Headache is an early symptom of drug excess.
		Assess every 30 min for extravasation, and check extremities for color and perfusion.	If the drug gets into the tissues, it can cause severe vasoconstriction, tissue ischemia, and tissue necrosis.
		Assess for chest pain.	Drug can cause rapid onset of vasoconstriction in the myocardium and impair cardiac oxygenation.
Inotropic Agents			
Dobutamine (Dobutrex) 1.0-20 mcg/kg/min IV as a continuous infusion	Directly stimulate adrenergic receptor sites on the heart muscle (beta ₁ receptors) and improve heart muscle cell contraction.	Assess for chest pain.	Drug increases myocardial oxygen consumption and can cause angina or infarction.
Milrinone (Primacor) 50 mcg/kg bolus over 10 min; 0.3-0.75 mcg/kg/min continuous IV infusion		Assess blood pressure every 15 min.	Hypertension is a sign of overdose.
Agents Enhancing Myocardial Perfusion			
Sodium nitroprusside (Nitropress, Nipride 🍁) 0.25-10 mcg/kg/min IV	Improves blood flow to the myocardium by dilating the coronary arteries. This effect is primary and rapid but short.	Protect drug container from light. Assess blood pressure at least every 15 min.	Light degrades drug quickly. The vasodilating effect can cause systemic vasodilation and hypotension, especially in older adults.

- Oxygen saturation
- Mental status
- Urine output

Assess these parameters at least every 15 minutes until the shock is controlled and the patient's condition improves. Hemodynamic monitoring in critical care settings includes intra-arterial monitoring, mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO₂), pulmonary artery monitoring, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressures.

Insertion of a CVP catheter allows pressure to be monitored in the patient's right atrium or superior vena cava while providing venous access. A decrease of CVP from baseline levels reflects hypovolemic shock with reduced venous return to the right atrium.

Intra-arterial catheters allow continuous blood pressure monitoring and are an access for arterial blood sampling. They are inserted into an artery (radial, brachial, femoral, or dorsalis pedis). The catheter is attached to pressure tubing and a transducer, which converts arterial pressure into an electrical signal seen as a waveform on an oscilloscope and as a digital numeric value.

Surgical Management

The nonsurgical interventions described on pp. 818 and 819 are used to stabilize the patient's hemodynamic status. Surgical intervention may be needed to correct the cause of shock. Such procedures include vascular repair, surgical hemostasis of major wounds, closure of bleeding ulcers, and chemical scarring (chemosclerosis) of varicosities.

Community-Based Care

Hypovolemic shock is a complication of another condition and is resolved before patients are discharged from the acute care setting. Because more patients are having surgery and other invasive procedures on an outpatient basis, more patients at home are at increased risk for hypovolemic shock. Teach patients and family members the early manifestations of shock (increased thirst, decreased urine output, lightheadedness, sense of apprehension) and to seek immediate medical attention if they appear.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Safe and Effective Care Environment**

Which vital sign change in a client with hypovolemic shock indicates to the nurse that the therapy is effective?

- Urine output increase from 5 mL/hr to 25 mL/hr
- Pulse pressure decrease from 35 mm Hg to 28 mm Hg
- Respiratory rate increase from 22 breaths/min to 26 breaths/min
- Core body temperature increase from 98.2° F (36.8° C) to 98.8° F (37.1° C)

SEPSIS AND SEPTIC SHOCK**Pathophysiology**

Sepsis and septic shock is a complex type of distributive shock that usually begins as a bacterial or fungal infection and progresses to a dangerous condition over a period of days. The

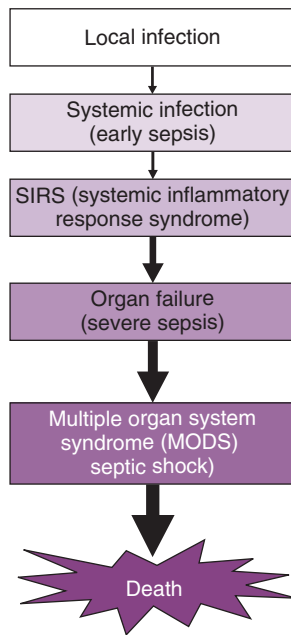


FIG. 39-3 Common progression of events leading to septic shock.

progression of septic shock is outlined in Fig. 39-3. As progression occurs, the pathologic problems occur faster and to a greater degree. Thus control of sepsis and prevention of severe sepsis and septic shock through appropriate intervention are easier to achieve early in the course of the problem. Failure to recognize and intervene in early sepsis is the major contributing factor for progression to septic shock and death (Dodge, 2010; Nelson et al., 2009).

Infection

When infection is confined to a local area, it should not lead to sepsis and shock. In the person whose immune system and inflammatory responses are effective, the presence of organism invasion first starts a helpful, nonspecific series of local responses to confine and eliminate the organism and to prevent the infection from becoming worse or widespread.

The white blood cells (WBCs) in the area of invasion secrete cytokines to trigger a local inflammatory response and bring more WBCs to fight and kill the invading organisms. The results of this local response constrict the small veins and dilate the arterioles in the area. These blood vessel changes increase blood flow to locally infected tissues and deliver more nutrients.

Capillary leak also occurs, allowing blood plasma to leak into the tissues. This response causes swelling and dilutes any microorganisms and their toxins that have entered the area. The duration of these responses depends on the size and severity of the infection, but usually they subside within a few days, when the infection has been managed by these responses. A benefit of these responses is that they are limited only to the area of infection and stop as soon as they are no longer needed. The patient does not have fever, tachycardia, decreased oxygen saturation, or reduced urine output.

Sepsis and Systemic Inflammatory Response Syndrome

Sepsis is a condition in which infectious microorganisms have entered the bloodstream. As the numbers of organisms increase, an inflammatory response, known as *systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)*, is triggered as a result of infection escaping local control. With the organisms and their toxins in the bloodstream at this point and entering other body areas, the inflammatory responses become an enemy, leading to extensive hormonal, tissue, and vascular changes and oxidative stress that further impair oxygenation and tissue perfusion (Landis, 2009). The WBCs are producing many pro-inflammatory cytokines, especially interleukin-1 (IL-1), interleukin-6 (IL-6), and tumor necrosis factor—alpha (TNF-A or TNF- α) (Abbas et al., 2010). (See Chapter 19 for a discussion of cytokines.) As a result, there is widespread vasodilation and blood pooling. The patient has mild hypotension, a low urine output, and an increased respiratory rate. These responses result in a hypodynamic state with decreased cardiac output. Body temperature varies depending on the duration of the sepsis and on WBC function. Some patients have a low-grade fever and others have a high fever. Still others may have a below-normal body temperature. Fever and hypotension result directly from SIRS. The reduced urine output and increased respiratory rate are the compensatory responses to impaired oxygenation and tissue perfusion. Usually in this stage, the patient has the elevated WBC count expected with a systemic infection.

Microthrombi begin to form in some organ capillaries, causing hypoxia and reducing organ function. This problem is hard to detect, but if sepsis is stopped at this point, the organ damage is completely reversible. The microthrombi increase hypoxic conditions, which then generate more toxic metabolites. These damage more cells and increase the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, leading to an amplification of SIRS and a vicious repeating cycle of poor oxygenation and tissue perfusion (Fig. 39-4). Although these manifestations are subtle, they indicate sepsis and SIRS and will progress unless intervention begins now.

Unfortunately, this early hypodynamic state has a relatively short duration and manifestations are so subtle that the condition is often missed or misdiagnosed. When early sepsis and SIRS are identified and treated aggressively at this stage, the cycle of progression is stopped and the outcome is good. When sepsis and SIRS are not identified and treated at this stage, it almost always progresses to severe sepsis, which is much harder to control. Nurses, as well as all other health care professionals, have a responsibility to identify cues that indicate sepsis before it becomes severe. Identifying criteria have been established (Table 39-3) and must be used to ensure interventions are instituted at this stage (Giuliano, Lecardo, & Staul, 2011).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Notify the health care provider or the Rapid Response Team for any patient who has vital signs or other conditions that meet the sepsis with SIRS criteria.

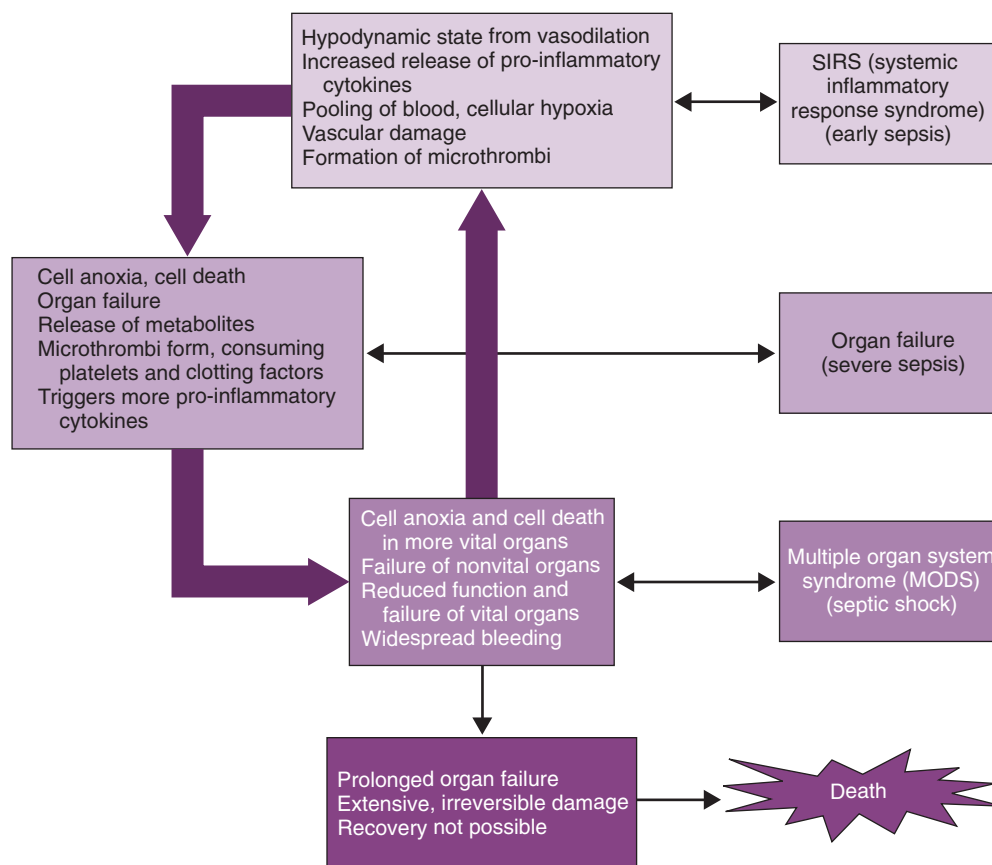


FIG. 39-4 Vicious cycle of systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) and multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS) in septic shock.

TABLE 39-3 SEPSIS WITH SYSTEMIC INFLAMMATORY RESPONSE SYNDROME (SIRS) CRITERIA

- Temperature of more than 100.4° F (38° C) or less than 96.8° F (36° C)
- Heart rate of more than 90 beats per minute
- Respiratory rate of more than 20 breaths per minute or a PaCO₂ level of less than 32 mm Hg
- Abnormal white blood cell count (>12,000/mm³ or <4000/mm³ or >10% segs or >10% bands)
- Sepsis is considered to be present if two or more SIRS criteria are present along with any known infection and one or more of these clinical manifestations:
 - Hypotension
 - Urine output less than expected for fluid intake
 - Positive fluid balance
 - Decreased capillary refill
 - Hyperglycemia (>120 mg/dL in the absence of known diabetes)
 - Unexplained change in mental status
 - Rising serum creatinine level in a person with no known history of kidney problems (>2.0 mg/dL [men], >1.4 mg/dL [women])

Modified from American College of Chest Physicians (ACCP) and the Society of Critical Care Medicine (SCCM).

PaCO₂, Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide.

Severe Sepsis

Severe sepsis is the progression of sepsis with an amplified inflammatory response (see Fig. 39-4). All tissues are involved and are hypoxic to some degree. Some organs are experiencing cell death and dysfunction at this time. Microthrombi formation is widespread, using much of the available platelets and clotting factors, a condition known as *disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)*. The amplified SIRS and cytokine release increase capillary leakiness, injure cells, and increase cell metabolism. Damage to endothelial cells reduces anticoagulating actions and triggers the formation of even more small clots. Anaerobic metabolism continues, and cell uptake of oxygen is poor. The continued stress response triggers the continued release of glucose from the liver and causes hyperglycemia. The more severe the response, the higher the blood glucose level.

Despite the severity of this stage and the fact that it may be present for 24 hours or more, it is often missed. One of the reasons it may be missed is that the cardiac function is hyperdynamic in this phase. The pooling of blood and the widespread capillary leak stimulate the heart, and cardiac output is *increased* with a more rapid heart rate and an elevated systolic blood pressure. In addition, the patient's extremities may feel warm and there is little or no cyanosis. Even though the patient may "look" better, the pathologic changes occurring at the tissue level are serious and have caused significant damage. The WBC count at this time may no longer be elevated. The reason for this is that a prolonged

TABLE 39-4 CONDITIONS PREDISPOSING TO SEPSIS AND SEPTIC SHOCK

- Malnutrition
- Immunosuppression
- Large, open wounds
- Mucous membrane fissures in prolonged contact with bloody or drainage-soaked packing
- GI ischemia
- Exposure to invasive procedures
- Malignancy
- Older than 80 years
- Infection with resistant microorganisms
- Receiving cancer chemotherapy
- Alcoholism
- Diabetes mellitus
- Chronic kidney disease
- Transplantation recipient
- Hepatitis
- HIV/AIDS

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; HIV, human immune deficiency virus.

sepsis stage may have worn out the bone marrow's ability to keep producing and releasing new mature neutrophils and other WBCs. The WBC count may be extremely low, especially the segmented neutrophils (segs).

Clinical manifestations of this stage include a lower oxygen saturation, rapid respiratory rate, decreased to absent urine output, and a change in the patient's cognition and affect. Appropriate and aggressive interventions at this stage can still prevent septic shock, although mortality after a patient reaches this stage is much higher than for sepsis and SIRS. *At this point, the downhill course leading to septic shock is extremely rapid.*

Septic Shock

Septic shock is the stage of sepsis and SIRS when multiple organ failure is evident and uncontrolled bleeding occurs (see Fig. 39-4). *Even with appropriate intervention, the death rate among patients in this stage of sepsis exceeds 50% (Toussaint & Gerlach, 2009).* Severe hypovolemic shock and hypodynamic cardiac function are present as a result of an inability of the blood to clot because the platelets and clotting factors were consumed earlier. Capillary leak continues and cardiac contractility is poor from cellular ischemia. The clinical manifestations resemble the late stage of hypovolemic shock.

Etiology

The major cause of sepsis is a bacterial infection that escapes local control, although in immunocompromised patients, fungal infections also cause sepsis. Common organisms causing sepsis include gram-negative bacteria (*Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Escherichia coli*, and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*) and gram-positive bacteria (*Staphylococcus* and *Streptococcus*). Table 39-4 lists some of the health problems that increase the risk for sepsis and septic shock.

Incidence/Prevalence

Sepsis and septic shock are common events in the United States. More than 750,000 cases occur annually and result in over 200,000 deaths. Although sepsis management has improved, the incidence is increasing as a result of more

drug-resistant organisms and the fact that patients are discharged from the hospital "quicker and sicker." Sepsis takes time to develop, and the patient may be discharged before manifestations are obvious.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Prevention is the best management strategy for sepsis and septic shock. Evaluate all patients for their risk for sepsis, especially older adults, because the death rate from sepsis in people older than 65 years is nearly twice that of younger adults (El Solh et al., 2008). Table 39-4 lists some of the health problems that increase the risk for septic shock. Use aseptic technique during invasive procedures and when working with nonintact skin and mucous membranes in immunocompromised patients. Remove indwelling urinary catheters and IV access lines as soon as they are no longer needed.

Early detection of sepsis before progression to septic shock is a major nursing responsibility. Because sepsis can be a complication of many conditions found in acute care settings, always consider its possibility. Assess vital signs often (at least twice per shift) for changes from baseline levels. Review laboratory data for changes in serum lactate levels, in total white blood cell (WBC) count, and in the differential. The hallmark of sepsis is an increasing serum lactate level, a normal or low total WBC count, and a decreasing segmented neutrophil level with a rising band neutrophil level. This change is called a **left shift** (see Chapter 19).

Early detection can be made by patients and families, as well as health care personnel. This is especially important for patients discharged to home after invasive procedures or surgery. Teach patients the manifestations of local infection (local redness, pain, swelling, purulent drainage, loss of function) and of early sepsis (fever, urine output less than intake, light-headedness). Teach them how to use a thermometer and to take the temperature twice a day and whenever they are not feeling well. Urge those with symptoms of early sepsis to immediately contact their health care provider. Teach them that if antibiotics are prescribed, to take these drugs as prescribed and to complete the entire course.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which newly admitted client does the nurse consider to be at highest risk for development of sepsis?

- A. 75-year-old man with hypertension and early Alzheimer's disease
- B. 68-year-old woman 2 days postoperative from bowel surgery
- C. 80-year-old community-dwelling man with no other health problems undergoing cataract surgery
- D. 54-year-old woman with moderate asthma and severe degenerative joint disease of the right knee

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Sepsis and septic shock differ from other types of shock in many ways. The entire syndrome may occur over many hours to days, and the manifestations are less obvious. The chance for recovery is good when the patient is recognized as having

TABLE 39-5 CHANGES IN SELECTED PARAMETERS DURING SEPSIS AND SEPTIC SHOCK

PARAMETER	NORMAL	EARLY SEPSIS	LATE SEPSIS	SEPTIC SHOCK
Cardiac output	Normal 3-5 L/min	Decreased	Increased	Greatly decreased
Stroke volume	Normal 60-80 mL	Decreased	Increased	Greatly decreased
Serum lactate (arterial)	<2 mmol/L	Normal to slightly increased	2-4 mmol/L	>4 mmol/L
Blood glucose	<110 mg/dL	110-120 mg/dL	120-150 mg/dL	>150 mg/dL
Oxygen saturation	95%-100%	<95%	<85%	<80%
Serum creatinine	0.6-1.2 mg/dL (men) 0.5-1.1 mg/dL (women)	Normal to slightly increased	>2.0 mg/dL (men) >1.4 mg/dL (women)	>3.0 mg/dL (either gender)
Segmented neutrophils	55%-70% of white blood cell count	Increased	Decreased	<10%
Band neutrophils	2%-5% of total white blood cell count	Normal to slightly increased	>10%	>20%

CHART 39-5 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Risk Factors for Shock

Hypovolemic Shock

- Diuretic therapy
- Diminished thirst reflex
- Immobility
- Use of aspirin-containing products
- Use of complimentary therapies such as *Ginkgo biloba*
- Anticoagulant therapy

Cardiogenic Shock

- Diabetes mellitus
- Presence of cardiomyopathies

Distributive Shock

- Diminished immune response
- Reduced skin integrity
- Presence of cancer
- Peripheral neuropathy
- Strokes
- Institutionalization (hospital or extended-care facility)
- Malnutrition
- Anemia

Obstructive Shock

- Pulmonary hypertension
- Presence of cancer

sepsis with SIRS and appropriate interventions are started. Septic shock, on the other hand, has a rapid downhill course, and chances for recovery are relatively poor. Identifying patients in the earlier stages of sepsis can make the greatest difference in survival. Second, the cause of sepsis is often less obvious than for other types of shock.

History

Age is important because sepsis develops more easily among older, debilitated patients who are immunosuppressed (El Solh et al., 2008). [Chart 39-5](#) lists factors that increase the older adult's risk for shock. Ask about the patient's medical history, including recent illness, trauma, invasive procedures, or chronic conditions that may lead to sepsis. Check which drugs the patient has used in the past week. Some drugs may directly cause changes leading to shock. Also, a drug regimen may indicate a disease or problem that can contribute to sepsis. These drugs include aspirin and aspirin-containing drugs, antibiotics, and cancer therapy drugs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Manifestations of sepsis and septic shock occur over many hours, and some change during the progression. [Table 39-5](#) summarizes specific manifestations and laboratory changes from normal during the different stages of sepsis and septic shock.

Cardiovascular changes differ in the different stages of sepsis and septic shock. Cardiac output and blood pressure are lower (hypodynamic) in early sepsis and in septic shock. In severe sepsis, cardiac output is higher as are heart rate and blood pressure (hyperdynamic), although this is an indication of a worsening condition rather than an improvement. Increased cardiac output is reflected by tachycardia, increased stroke volume, a normal systolic blood pressure, and a normal central venous pressure (CVP). Increased cardiac output and vasodilation make the skin color appear normal with pink mucous membranes, and the skin is warm to the touch. This situation is temporary, and eventually the cardiac output is greatly reduced.

With progression, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) occurs with formation of thousands of small clots in the tiny capillaries of the liver, kidney, brain, spleen, and heart. DIC reduces oxygenation and decreases oxygen saturation, causing hypoxia and ischemia.

The huge number of small clots uses clotting factors and fibrinogen faster than they can be produced. This problem increases the risk for hemorrhage, which occurs in the septic shock stage. Coupled with the continued capillary leak, the bleeding causes hypovolemia and a dramatic decrease in cardiac output, blood pressure, and pulse pressure. The manifestations of this phase are the same as those of the later stages of hypovolemic shock.

Respiratory changes are first caused by compensatory mechanisms that try to maintain oxygenation with a rate increase. As tissue hypoxia becomes more profound and metabolic acidosis is present, the depth of respiration also increases. The lungs are susceptible to damage, and the complication of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) may occur in septic shock. ARDS in septic shock is caused by the continued systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS) increasing the formation of oxygen free radicals, which damage lung cells. *ARDS in a patient with septic shock has a high mortality rate.*

Skin changes differ at different stages of sepsis. In the hypodynamic stages, blood is shunted away from the skin, and pallor, cyanosis, or mottling may be present. In the hyperdynamic stage, the skin is warm and no cyanosis is evident. With

progression to septic shock and compromised circulation, the skin is cool and clammy with pallor, mottling, or cyanosis. In patients with DIC, petechiae and ecchymoses can occur anywhere. Blood may ooze from the gums, other mucous membranes, and venipuncture sites, as well as around IV catheters.

A *kidney/urinary change* of low urine output compared with fluid intake indicates shock. When a patient who has no known kidney or bladder problem suddenly starts having a low urine output, be suspicious of severe sepsis or septic shock. Reduced output is caused by capillary leak, low circulating volume, and hormonal changes. Kidney function decreases, and serum creatinine levels increase.

Psychosocial Assessment

The indicator that patients may be in the beginning of severe sepsis is often a change in affect or behavior. Compare the patient's current behavior, verbal responses, and general affect with those assessed earlier in the day or the day before. They may seem just slightly different in their reactions to greetings, comments, or jokes. They may be less patient than usual or act restless or fidgety. Patients may make statements such as, "I feel as if something is wrong, but I don't know what." If behavior is changed from prior assessments, consider the possibility of severe sepsis and shock.

Laboratory Assessment

No single laboratory test confirms the presence of sepsis and septic shock. The presence of bacteria in the blood supports the diagnosis of sepsis although this finding may not be present. Obtain specimens of urine, blood, sputum, and any drainage for culture to identify the causative organisms. Other abnormal laboratory findings that occur with septic shock include changes in the white blood cell (WBC) count; the differential leukocyte count may show a left shift. Hematocrit and hemoglobin levels usually do not change until late in septic shock. At that point, the hematocrit and hemoglobin levels, fibrinogen levels, and platelet count are low from disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). The serum lactate level is above normal, and the serum bicarbonate levels are lower than normal. Unfortunately, these parameters may take time to change and cannot be relied on as sensitive indicators of the patient's worsening condition.

Another indicator of sepsis and septic shock is a low blood level of activated protein C. Protein C is an enzyme that prevents inappropriate clot formation. It is activated when it binds to healthy vascular endothelial cells. In severe sepsis, the injured endothelial cells cannot activate protein C and thousands of small clots form in the capillaries of vascular organs. Decreasing levels of activated protein C indicate the beginning of severe sepsis even before other manifestations are evident.

Other biologic indicators of severe sepsis and septic shock are changes in plasma D-dimer levels and specific cytokine (interleukin-6 [IL-6] and interleukin-10 [IL-10]) levels. Plasma D-dimer levels rise during sepsis as the fibrin in clots is broken down. IL-6 is a pro-inflammatory cytokine, and IL-10 is an anti-inflammatory cytokine. In sepsis, IL-6 levels rise and IL-10 levels either remain normal or decrease. These indicators have a lag time, and changes may not be present soon enough to identify sepsis with SIRS before severe sepsis or septic shock develops.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Watch the Procalcitonin Levels

Schuetz, P., Christ-Crain, M., & Müller, B. (2008). Procalcitonin and other biomarkers for the assessment of disease severity and guidance of treatment in bacterial infections. *Advances in Sepsis*, 6(3), 82-89.

Septic shock is a result of infection progression. The outcomes of severe sepsis and septic shock are poor, with a high rate of mortality. Ideally, sepsis should be managed in the early stages (systemic inflammatory response syndrome [SIRS]) before overwhelming bacterial toxin levels lead to multiple organ dysfunction syndrome. However, manifestations of sepsis with SIRS are often missed, leading to severe sepsis and rapid progression to septic shock, which may occur before the results of blood cultures (considered the "gold standard" for a sepsis diagnosis) are available. This study, through a systematic integrative review, examined the published evidence for 30 years regarding the use of surrogate biomarkers to identify the presence of sepsis and SIRS.

Although the levels of various cytokines and clotting degradation products change over the course of sepsis progression, these changes lag and are not sufficiently sensitive for rapid identification of increasing sepsis. In a variety of clinical and laboratory studies, procalcitonin (PCT) showed clear and consistent changes that correlated well with the level of blood contamination with microorganisms (a prerequisite for sepsis and sepsis progression) during a health problem with ambiguous presentation. PCT shows a rapid elevation at early stages of bloodstream infection and decreases nearly as rapidly as bloodstream infections clear, either as a result of immune function or as a result of antibiotic therapy. Changes in PCT levels are very sensitive in determining when to start antibiotic therapy, when to change or increase antibiotic therapy, and when antibiotic therapy can be safely discontinued.

Level of Evidence: 1

The clinical evidence presented was determined as a result of a systematic integrative review of the utility of biomarkers during the progression of infection, sepsis, systemic inflammatory response syndrome, severe sepsis, and septic shock. It also included results from large, well-controlled animal studies.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

This study is critically important to providing an objective and sensitive measure of sepsis that can be used by all health care professionals to identify sepsis with SIRS at an earlier stage when recovery is more likely with appropriate intervention. Bedside nurses, who have the longest interactions with patients, are often the first to consider the possibility of sepsis from subtle changes in the patient's condition and demeanor. Having an objective test that supports assessment data can lead to better outcomes of sepsis management.

Because the results of blood cultures may not be available until the patient's condition has progressed to severe sepsis or septic shock, other biomarkers for sepsis and SIRS are needed to help identify the condition when it can be managed and cured. Many cytokine blood levels have been considered for this "surrogate" marker of sepsis; however, tests have not been sensitive enough to rely on these levels for diagnosis. Another promising biomarker is the blood procalcitonin (PCT) levels (Schuetz et al., 2008). Levels of this prohormone, which also is a mediator of responses to infection, increase whenever bacteria enter the bloodstream, and the level continues to rise as the blood bacterial concentration increases. The PCT levels drop as the bacterial levels decrease, making it an indicator of therapy effectiveness (see the Evidence-Based Practice box above).

The actual diagnosis of sepsis is difficult to make, yet the best outcome depends on an early diagnosis and the implementation of appropriate aggressive interventions. In general, sepsis is considered to exist when an infection is present along with any two of the established SIRS criteria, with any one of the additional clinical manifestations (see [Table 39-3](#)).

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is an 82-year-old woman who has been a resident in an extended-care facility for the past year because of poor mobility and self-care problems. Today she is brought to the emergency department because she does not recognize her son and does not know where she is. She completed drug therapy for a urinary tract infection 1 week ago. Her skin is thin, and she has many bruises. In addition, she has a healing wound on her left shin, which her son tells you occurred 3 days ago when she scraped the area trying to get out of bed alone. The skin immediately surrounding the wound appears normal; however, about 3 inches to the right of the wound the skin is red, firm, and warm to the touch. These are her vital signs: T, 100.8° F (38.2° C); P, 112 beats/min; R, 24 breaths/min; BP, 118/80; SpO₂, 92%. Oxygen at 3 L/min is applied until the neurologist can evaluate her, and an IV with normal saline is started at 100 mL/hr. Her son is concerned because she was given her oral antidiabetic drug this morning (5 hours ago) but has not eaten breakfast or lunch. When you check her blood glucose level, it is 131 mg/dL. When you assess her 15 minutes later, her oxygen saturation is 90%.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for sepsis?
2. What manifestations does she have that are consistent with sepsis and systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)?
3. What assessment should you perform immediately?
4. What would be the most likely source of infection?
5. Should you express concern about the possibility of sepsis and SIRS to the emergency department intensivist? Why or why not?

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The priority problem for patients with septic shock is potential for multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS).

Planning: Expected Outcomes

The patient with sepsis or septic shock is expected to have normal aerobic cellular metabolism. Indicators include:

- Arterial blood gases (pH, PaO₂, and PaCO₂) within the normal range
- Maintenance of a urine output of at least 20 mL/hr
- Maintenance of mean arterial blood pressure within 10 mm Hg of baseline
- Absence of multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS)
- States measures to reduce the risk for sepsis

Interventions

Interventions for sepsis and septic shock focus on identifying the problem as early as possible, correcting the conditions causing it, and preventing complications. The use of a sepsis resuscitation bundle for treatment of sepsis is the standard of practice. A *bundle* is a group of two or more specific interventions that have been shown to be effective when applied together or in sequence. The sepsis resuscitation and management bundles are presented in [Table 39-6](#).

TABLE 39-6 BUNDLES FOR RESUSCITATION AND MANAGEMENT OF SEVERE SEPSIS

Sepsis Resuscitation Bundle

1. Measure serum lactate levels.
2. Obtain blood cultures *before* administering antibiotics.
3. Administer broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy within 1 hour of establishing diagnosis.
4. If either hypotension or a serum lactate level greater than 4 mmol/L (36 mg/dL) is present, institute:
 - a. IV infusion of 1000 mL of crystalloids or 300 to 500 mL of colloids over 30 minutes
 - b. If hypotension does not respond to initial fluid resuscitation by increasing the mean arterial pressure (MAP) to at least 65 mm Hg, start IV vasopressor therapy
5. If hypotension persists despite fluid resuscitation and vasopressor therapy and either septic shock is present or the serum lactate level remains greater than 4 mmol/L (36 mg/dL), use these parameters to monitor therapy effectiveness:
 - a. Central venous pressure (CVP) of at least 8 mm Hg
 - b. Central venous oxygen saturation (ScvO₂) of at least 70% or a mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO₂) of at least 65%

Sepsis Management Bundle

1. When septic shock is present, administer low-dose steroids (200 to 300 mg hydrocortisone IV daily in divided doses) in accordance with intensive care unit (ICU) protocol.
2. Administer drotrecogin alfa (activated) for patients meeting ICU and drotrecogin criteria.
3. Administer insulin to maintain blood glucose levels at least lower than 150 mg/dL.
4. Use mechanical ventilation to maintain inspiratory plateau pressures less than 30 cm H₂O.

Adapted from Institute for Healthcare Improvement and Surviving Sepsis Campaign, 2005.

Oxygen therapy is useful whenever poor tissue perfusion and poor oxygenation are present. Oxygen is delivered in the same ways as for hypovolemic shock. However, the patient with septic shock is more likely to be mechanically ventilated. Care of the patient being mechanically ventilated is discussed in detail in [Chapter 34](#).

Drug therapy to enhance cardiac output and restore vascular volume is essentially the same as that used in hypovolemic shock (see [Chart 39-4](#)). In addition, drug therapy is needed to combat sepsis, adrenal insufficiency, hyperglycemia, and clotting problems.

Although septic shock can be caused by any organism, the most common agents are gram-negative bacteria. IV antibiotics with known activity against gram-negative bacteria are given before organisms are identified, preferably within 1 hour of a sepsis diagnosis. Multiple drugs with wide activity are prescribed, based on the site of infection and the most common geographic infections, until the actual causative organism is known. Drugs and drug categories commonly used for septic shock include vancomycin, aminoglycosides, systemic penicillin or cephalosporins, macrolides, and quinolones.

The stress of severe sepsis can cause adrenal insufficiency. Adrenal support involves providing the patient with low-dose corticosteroids during the treatment period for at least 7 days. Drugs used for this purpose are IV hydrocortisone and oral fludrocortisone (Florinef).

Patients with sepsis or septic shock usually have elevated blood glucose levels (>150 mg/dL), which is associated with a poor outcome. Insulin therapy is used to maintain blood glucose levels as close to normal as possible (80 to 110 mg/dL) or at least lower than 150 mg/dL.

During severe sepsis, patients have microvascular abnormalities and form many small clots. Heparin therapy has been used to limit clotting and to prevent the consumption of clotting factors. Additional therapy involves the use of activated protein C to manage microvascular abnormalities and prevent bleeding.

Synthetic activated protein C has been shown to stop the inflammatory responses during sepsis, preventing small clot formation and halting the progression of the disorder before septic shock occurs. Drotrecogin alfa (Xigris) is given as a continuous infusion over 4 days in patients who are considered at high risk for death. *The drug has many serious complications and, because it disrupts clotting activity, is not given to patients with other bleeding problems.* In addition, the drug is very expensive, with a single dose costing over \$7000.

Blood replacement therapy is used when hemorrhage occurs and may include clotting factors, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), whole blood, or packed red blood cells. Chapter 42 discusses in detail the care of the patient during blood replacement.

Community-Based Care

Identified sepsis should be resolved before patients are discharged from the acute care setting. Because more patients are receiving treatment on an outpatient basis and are being discharged earlier from acute care settings, more patients at home are at increased risk for sepsis.

Home Care Management

Evaluate the home environment for safety regarding infection hazards. Note the general cleanliness, especially in the kitchen and bathrooms. Chart 39-6 lists focused patient and environmental assessment data to obtain during a home visit.

CHART 39-6 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient at Risk for Sepsis

- Assess the patient for any clinical manifestations of infection, including:
 - Temperature, pulse, respiration, and blood pressure
 - Color of skin and mucous membranes
 - The mouth and perianal area for fissures or lesions
 - Any nonintact skin area for the presence of exudates, redness, increased warmth, swelling
 - Any pain, tenderness, or other discomfort anywhere
 - Cough or any other symptoms of a cold or the flu
 - Urine; or ask patient whether urine is dark or cloudy, has an odor, or causes pain or burning during urination
- Assess patient's and caregiver's adherence to and understanding of infection prevention techniques.
- Assess home environment, including:
 - General cleanliness
 - Kitchen and bathroom facilities, including refrigeration
 - Availability and type of soap for handwashing
 - Presence of pets, especially cats, rodents, or reptiles

Teaching for Self-Management

Protecting frail patients from infection and sepsis at home is an important nursing function. Teach about the importance of self-care strategies, such as good hygiene, handwashing, balanced diet, rest and exercise, skin care, and mouth care. If patients or family members do not know how to take a temperature or read a thermometer, teach them and obtain a return demonstration. Teach patients and families to notify the health care provider immediately if fever or other signs of infection appear. General recommendations for Infection Precautions for patients at risk for sepsis are listed in Chart 39-7.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with sepsis or septic shock. The expected outcome is that the patient will maintain normal aerobic cellular metabolism. Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for the priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

CHART 39-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Infection Precautions

- Avoid crowds and other large gatherings of people, who might be ill.
- Do not share eating utensils or personal toilet articles (e.g., toothbrushes, toothpaste, washcloths, deodorant sticks) with others.
- If possible, bathe daily.
- Wash the armpits, groin, genitals, and rectal area at least twice a day with an antimicrobial soap.
- Clean your toothbrush twice weekly by either running it through the dishwasher or rinsing it in liquid laundry bleach and then rinsing out the bleach with running water.
- Wash your hands thoroughly with an antimicrobial soap before you eat or drink, after touching a pet, after shaking hands with anyone, as soon as you come home from any outing, and after using the toilet.
- Wash dishes between use with hot, sudsy water, or use a dishwasher.
- Do not drink water that has been standing for longer than 15 minutes.
- Do not reuse cups and glasses without washing them.
- Do not change pet litter boxes.
- Take your temperature at least once a day.
- Refrigerate and prepare food appropriately. Do not eat raw or undercooked meat, fish, poultry, or eggs.
- Report any of the following signs or symptoms of infection to your physician immediately:
 - Temperature greater than 100° F (38° C)
 - Persistent cough (with or without sputum)
 - Pus or foul-smelling drainage from any open skin area or normal body opening
 - Presence of a boil or abscess
 - Urine that is cloudy or foul-smelling or causes burning on urination
- Do not dig in the garden or work with houseplants.
- Use antibacterial cleansers to clean kitchen and bathroom surfaces at least twice each week. If you clean these areas yourself, wear rubber or vinyl work gloves while cleaning.
- Use a condom when having sex.
- Take all drugs as prescribed.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of hypovolemic shock?

- Pulse rapid and thready
- Pulse pressure narrowed
- Respirations rapid and shallow
- Oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry decreased
- Skin cyanosis or pallor (in lighter-skinned patients)
- Skin cool and clammy
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (in patients of any skin color)
- Patient is restless or anxious
- Patient has a urine output that is less than expected compared with fluid intake
- Patient states he or she is thirsty

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of hypovolemic shock?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Auscultating all lung fields
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])
- Checking incisions, body orifices, and under the patient for signs of active bleeding
- Assessing the skin for bruises and petechiae

- Examining all body areas for swelling or discoloration that could indicate internal bleeding

Interpret laboratory values:

- Arterial blood gas values: pH lower than 7.35
- Elevated serum lactate levels
- Hemorrhage
 - Decreased hematocrit and hemoglobin
 - Decreased total red blood cells and platelets
- Dehydration
 - Elevated red blood cell count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin
 - Elevated white blood cell count

Respond by:

- Applying oxygen
- Assisting the patient to shock position (head and chest flat or elevated to no more than 30 degrees; legs elevated)
- Notifying the Rapid Response Team
- Ensuring placement of venous access
- Increasing IV fluid infusion rate

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved circulation and oxygenation (see [Chapter 35](#)).
- Think about what may have caused the hypovolemia.
- Think about how the nurse may have identified the problem sooner.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use strict aseptic techniques when performing invasive procedures, changing dressings, and handling nonintact skin.
- Use good handwashing techniques before providing any care to a patient who is either immunocompromised or immune deficient.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients at high risk for infection due to age, disease, or the environment.
- Teach the patient and family about the clinical manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess all patients at risk for shock for a change in affect, reduced cognition, altered level of consciousness, and increased anxiety.

- Stay with the patient in shock.
- Reassure patients who are in shock that the appropriate interventions are being instituted.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the immunocompromised patient every shift for infection.
- Assess the skin integrity of the patient with reduced immune function at least every shift.
- Immediately assess vital signs of patients who have a change in level of consciousness, increased thirst, or anxiety.
- Assess for changes in pulse rate and quality rather than blood pressure as an indicator of shock.
- Give oxygen to any patient in shock.
- Assess hourly urine output to evaluate the adequacy of treatment for hypovolemic shock.

CHAPTER

40

Care of Patients with Acute Coronary Syndromes

Laura M. Dechant



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Acute Coronary Syndrome

Animation: Coronary Artery Bypass Graft

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Plan continuity of care between health care agencies or hospital and home when discharging patients who have had cardiac interventions or surgeries.
2. Explain the role of the interdisciplinary team in cardiac rehabilitation.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Differentiate between modifiable and nonmodifiable risk factors for coronary artery disease (CAD).
4. Develop a teaching plan for patients at risk for CAD regarding cardiovascular risk modification programs and lifestyle changes.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Assess patient and family responses to acute coronary events, especially myocardial infarction (MI).

Physiological Integrity

6. Compare and contrast the clinical manifestations of stable angina, unstable angina, and MI.

7. Interpret physical and diagnostic assessment findings in patients who have CAD.
8. Prioritize nursing care for patients who have chest pain.
9. Teach patients and families about drug therapy for CAD.
10. Explain the nursing care for patients who have thrombolysis for an MI.
11. Develop a plan of care for the patient who has a percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty.
12. Delineate postoperative care for the patient who has coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery, including monitoring for complications.
13. Identify the special needs of older adults having coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery.
14. Differentiate care for patients having traditional CABG surgery, minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass, off-pump CABG, and transmyocardial laser revascularization.

Coronary artery disease (CAD), also called *coronary heart disease (CHD)* or simply *heart disease*, is the single largest killer of American men and women in all ethnic groups. When the arteries that supply the **myocardium** (heart muscle) are diseased, the heart cannot pump blood effectively to adequately perfuse vital organs and peripheral tissues. The organs and tissues need oxygen in arterial blood for survival.

When *oxygenation* and *perfusion* are impaired, the patient can have life-threatening clinical manifestations and possibly death.

The incidence of CAD has declined over the past decade. This decline is due to many factors, including increasingly effective treatment and an increased awareness and emphasis on reducing major cardiovascular risk factors (e.g.,

hypertension, smoking, high cholesterol). Some coronary events occur in patients without traditional risk factors.

Pathophysiology

Coronary artery disease (CAD) is a broad term that includes chronic stable angina and acute coronary syndromes. It affects the arteries that provide blood, oxygen, and nutrients to the myocardium. When blood flow through the coronary arteries is partially or completely blocked, ischemia and infarction of the myocardium may result. Ischemia occurs when *insufficient oxygen* is supplied to meet the requirements of the myocardium. **Infarction** (necrosis, or cell death) occurs when severe ischemia is prolonged and *decreased perfusion* causes irreversible damage to tissue.

Chronic Stable Angina Pectoris

Angina pectoris is chest pain caused by a temporary imbalance between the coronary arteries' ability to supply oxygen and the cardiac muscle's demand for *oxygen*. **Ischemia** (lack of oxygen) that occurs with angina is limited in duration and does not cause permanent damage of myocardial tissue.

Angina may be of two main types: stable angina and unstable angina. **Chronic stable angina (CSA)** is chest discomfort that occurs with moderate to prolonged exertion in a pattern that is familiar to the patient. The frequency, duration, and intensity of symptoms remain the same over several months. CSA results in only slight limitation of activity and is usually associated with a *fixed* atherosclerotic plaque. It is usually relieved by nitroglycerin or rest and often is managed with drug therapy. Rarely does CSA require aggressive treatment. Unstable angina is discussed in the following Acute Coronary Syndromes section.

Acute Coronary Syndromes

The term **acute coronary syndrome (ACS)** is used to describe patients who have either *unstable angina* or an acute myocardial infarction. In ACS, it is believed that the atherosclerotic plaque in the coronary artery *ruptures*, resulting in platelet aggregation ("clumping"), thrombus (clot) formation, and vasoconstriction (Fig. 40-1). The amount of disruption of the atherosclerotic plaque determines the degree of coronary artery obstruction (blockage) and the specific disease process. The artery has to have at least 40% plaque accumulation before it starts to block blood flow.

Historically, an acute myocardial infarction (MI) was diagnosed by the presence of ST-segment elevation on the 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG) (see discussion of the normal ECG in Chapter 36). However, all patients do not present with this finding. Instead, they are classified into one of three categories according to the presence or absence of ST-segment elevation on the ECG and positive troponin markers (see Chapter 35 for discussion of troponins):

- ST-elevation MI (STEMI) (traditional manifestation)
- Non-ST-elevation MI (NSTEMI) (common in women)
- Unstable angina

Unstable Angina Pectoris. *Unstable angina* (the most commonly used term) is chest pain or discomfort that occurs at rest or with exertion and causes severe activity limitation. An increase in the number of attacks and in the intensity of the pressure indicates unstable angina. The pressure may last longer than 15 minutes or may be poorly relieved by rest or nitroglycerin. Unstable angina describes a variety of

disorders, including *new-onset angina*, *variant (Prinzmetal's) angina*, and *pre-infarction angina*. Patients with *unstable angina* will present with ST changes on a 12-lead ECG but will not have changes in troponin or creatine kinase (CK) levels.

New-onset angina describes the patient who has his or her first angina symptoms, usually after exertion or other increased demands on the heart. **Variant (Prinzmetal's) angina** is chest pain or discomfort resulting from coronary artery spasm and typically occurs after rest. **Pre-infarction angina** refers to chest pain that occurs in the days or weeks before an MI.

Myocardial Infarction. The most serious acute coronary syndrome is myocardial infarction (MI), often referred to as *acute MI* or *AMI*. Undiagnosed or untreated angina can lead to this very serious health problem. AMI is further divided by the American College of Cardiology (ACC)/AHA into non-ST-elevation MI (NSTEMI) and ST-elevation MI (STEMI) (Anderson, 2007). Patients presenting with NSTEMI typically have ST and T-wave changes on 12-lead ECG. This indicates myocardial ischemia. Cardiac enzymes may be initially normal but elevate over the next 6 to 12 hours. Patients presenting with STEMI typically have ST elevation in two contiguous leads on a 12-lead ECG. This indicates myocardial infarction/necrosis and requires immediate treatment.

Myocardial infarction (MI) occurs when myocardial tissue is abruptly and severely deprived of oxygen. When blood flow is quickly reduced by 80% to 90%, ischemia develops. Ischemia can lead to injury and necrosis of myocardial tissue if blood flow is not restored. Most MIs are the result of atherosclerosis of a coronary artery, rupture of the plaque, subsequent thrombosis, and **occlusion** (blockage) of blood flow. Other factors may be involved, however, such as coronary artery spasm, platelet aggregation, and emboli from mural thrombi (thrombi lining the walls of the cardiac chambers).

Often MIs begin with infarction of the subendocardial layer of cardiac muscle. This layer has the longest myofibrils in the heart, the greatest oxygen *demand*, and the poorest oxygen *supply*. Around the initial area of infarction (zone of necrosis) in the subendocardium are two other zones: (1) the zone of injury—tissue that is injured but not necrotic; and (2) the zone of ischemia—tissue that is oxygen deprived. This pattern is illustrated in Fig. 40-2.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Many women with symptomatic ischemic heart disease or abnormal stress testing do not have normal coronary angiography (Shaw et al., 2009). Studies implicate microvascular disease or endothelial dysfunction or both as the causes for risk for CAD in women. Endothelial dysfunction is defined as the "inability of the arteries and arterioles to dilate due to inability of the endothelium to produce nitric oxide, a relaxant of vascular smooth muscle" (Bellasi et al., 2007).

Women typically have smaller coronary arteries and frequently have plaque that breaks off and travels into the small vessels to form an embolus (clot). "Positive remodeling" or outward remodeling (lesions that protrude outward) is more common in women (Bellasi et al., 2007). This outpouching may be missed on coronary angiography.

Infarction is a dynamic process that does not occur instantly. Rather, it evolves over a period of several hours. **Hypoxia** (decreased oxygen) from ischemia may lead to local vasodilation of blood vessels and acidosis. Potassium, calcium, and

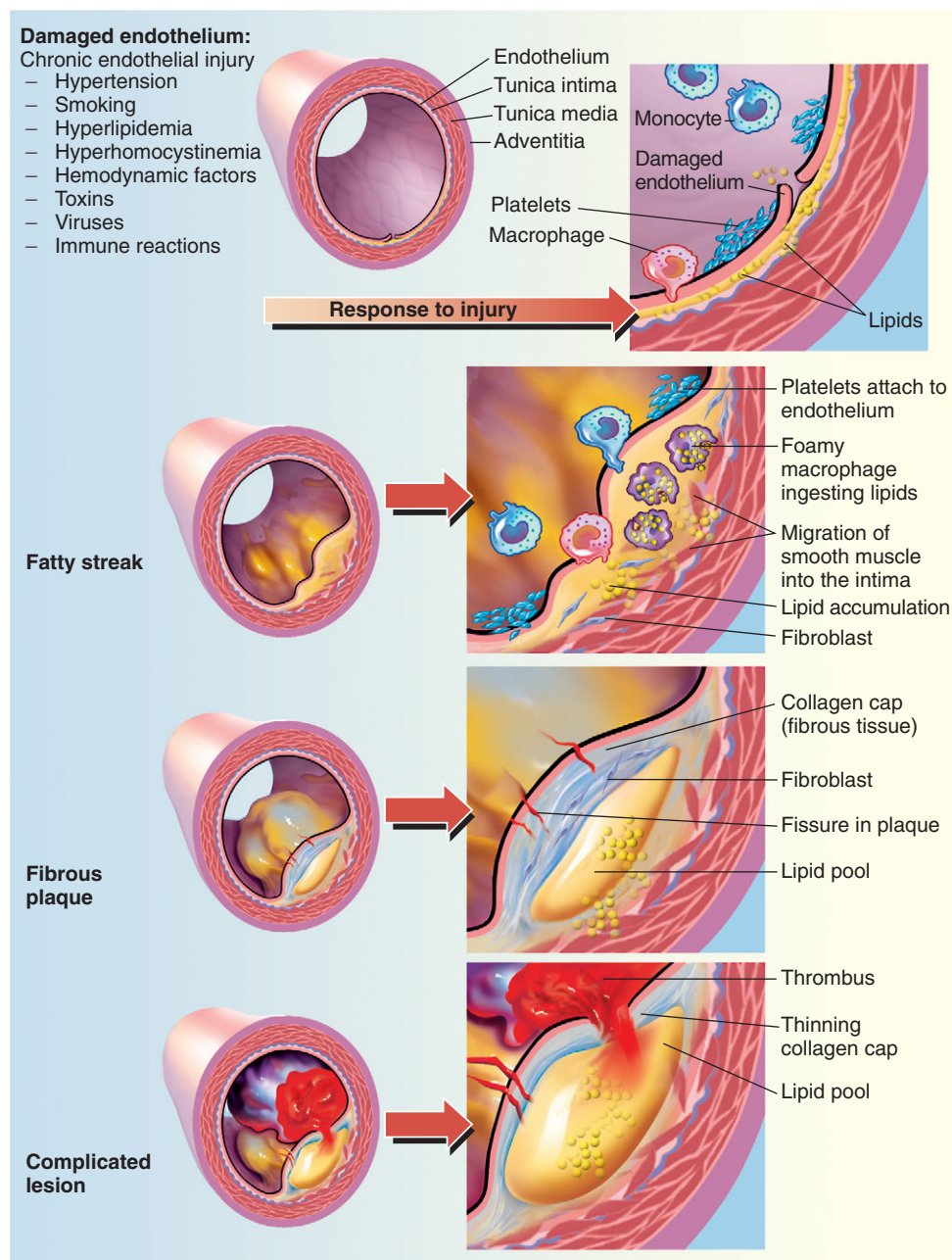


FIG. 40-1 A cross section of an atherosclerotic coronary artery.

magnesium imbalances, as well as acidosis at the cellular level, may lead to changes in normal conduction and contractile functions. Catecholamines (epinephrine and norepinephrine) released in response to hypoxia and pain may increase the heart's rate, contractility, and afterload. These factors increase *oxygen* requirements in tissue that is already oxygen deprived. This may lead to life-threatening ventricular dysrhythmias. The area of infarction may extend into the zones of injury and ischemia. The actual extent of the zone of infarction depends on three factors: collateral circulation, anaerobic metabolism, and workload demands on the myocardium.

The infarction may involve only the subendocardium (called a **subendocardial MI**) or may spread to the epicardium or to all three layers of cardiac muscle. When all three

layers are involved, the MI is termed **transmural**. Subendocardial MIs have less effect on wall motion and cardiac output than do transmural infarctions. When fewer grams of myocardium are affected, the characteristic "Q" wave on the ECG, which may also indicate an old infarction, may not appear.

Obvious physical changes do not occur in the heart until 6 hours after the infarction, when the infarcted region appears blue and swollen. *These changes explain the need for intervention within the first 4 to 6 hours of symptom onset!* After 48 hours, the infarcted area turns gray with yellow streaks as neutrophils invade the tissue and begin to remove the necrotic cells. By 8 to 10 days after infarction, granulation tissue forms at the edges of the necrotic tissue. Over a 2- to 3-month period, the necrotic area eventually develops into a shrunk, thin, firm scar. Scar tissue permanently changes the size and

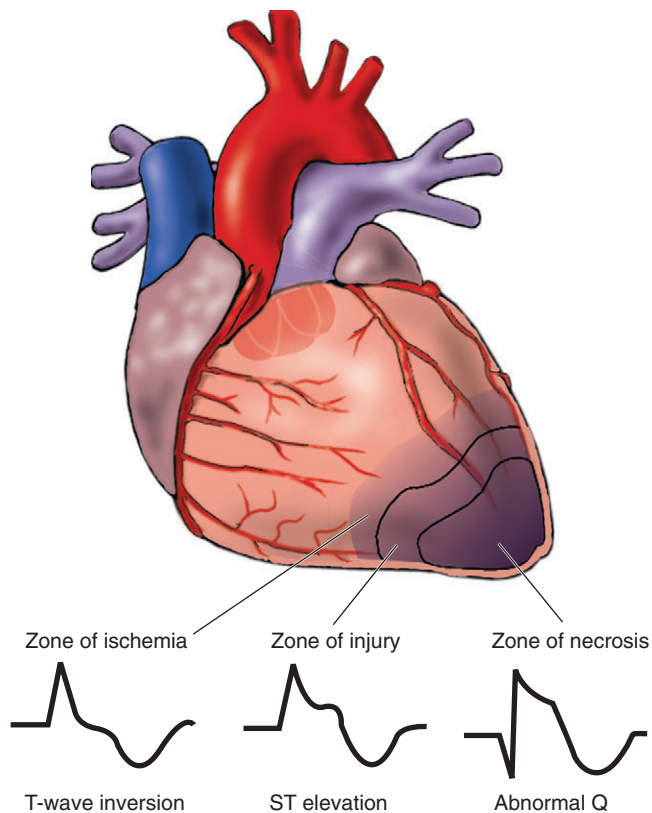


FIG. 40-2 Electrocardiographic changes and patterns associated with myocardial infarction.

shape of the entire left ventricle, called **ventricular remodeling**. Remodeling may decrease left ventricular function, cause heart failure, and increase morbidity and mortality. The scarred tissue does not contract nor does it conduct electrically. Thus this area is often the cause of chronic ventricular dysrhythmias surrounding the infarcted zone.

The patient's response to an MI also depends on which coronary artery or arteries were obstructed and which part of the left ventricle wall was damaged: anterior, septal, lateral, inferior, or posterior. Fig. 35-3 in Chapter 35 shows the location of the major coronary arteries.

Obstruction of the left anterior descending (LAD) artery causes *anterior* or *septal* MIs because it perfuses the anterior wall and most of the septum of the left ventricle. Patients with anterior wall MIs (AWMIs) have the highest mortality rate because they are most likely to have left ventricular failure and dysrhythmias from damage to the left ventricle.

The circumflex artery supplies the lateral wall of the left ventricle and possibly portions of the posterior wall or the sinoatrial (SA) and atrioventricular (AV) nodes. Patients with obstruction of the circumflex artery may experience a *posterior* wall MI (PWMI) or a *lateral* wall MI (LWMI) and sinus dysrhythmias.

In most people, the right coronary artery (RCA) supplies most of the SA and AV nodes, as well as the right ventricle and inferior or diaphragmatic portion of the left ventricle. Patients with obstruction of the RCA often have **inferior wall MIs**. About half of all inferior wall MIs are associated with an occlusion of the RCA causing significant damage to the right ventricle. *Thus it is important to obtain a "right-sided" ECG to assess for right ventricular involvement.*

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Atherosclerosis is the primary factor in the development of CAD. Numerous risk factors contribute to atherosclerosis and subsequently to CAD (also see Chapter 38).

Nonmodifiable risk factors are personal characteristics that cannot be altered or controlled. These risk factors, which interact with each other, include age, gender, family history, and ethnic background. People with a family history of CAD are at high risk for developing the disease. These factors are discussed in more detail in Chapter 35.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Age is the most important risk factor for developing CAD in women. The older a woman is, the more likely she will have the disease. When compared with men, women are usually 10 years older when they have CAD. In addition, women who have MIs have a greater risk for dying during hospitalization. When they are older than 40 years, women are more likely than men to die within 1 year after their MI (AHA, 2010).

Modifiable risk factors are lifestyle choices that can be controlled by the patient, such as smoking and obesity. These factors are described later in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section of this chapter.

Incidence/Prevalence

According to the American Heart Association (AHA) (2010), 64% of women and 50% of men who had a myocardial infarction (MI) ("heart attack") were not aware that they had CAD. The average age of a person having a first MI is 64.5 years for men and 70.3 years for women (AHA, 2010). Almost 30% of patients who have an MI die within 5 years after the event (AHA, 2010).

Every 25 seconds, a person in the United States has a major coronary event and 452,000 people die each year from an MI. Many people die from coronary heart disease without being hospitalized. Most of these are sudden deaths caused by cardiac arrest (AHA, 2010).

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Premenopausal women have a lower incidence of MI than men. However, for postmenopausal women in their 70s or older, the incidence of MI equals that of men. Family history is also a risk factor for women; those whose parents had CAD are more susceptible to the disease. Women with abdominal obesity (android shape) and metabolic syndrome (described on p. 834) are also at increased risk for CAD (Bellasi et al., 2007).

Many patients who survive MIs are not able to return to work. CAD is the leading cause of premature, permanent disability in the United States, accounting for about 20% of disability allowances by the Social Security Administration.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Ninety-five percent of sudden cardiac arrest victims die before reaching the hospital, largely because of ventricular fibrillation ("v fib"). To help combat this problem, automatic external defibrillators (AEDs) are found in many public places, such as in shopping centers and on airplanes. Employees are taught how to use these devices if a sudden cardiac

arrest occurs. Some patients with diagnosed CAD have AEDs in their homes or at work. How to use this device is described on p. 738 in Chapter 36.

Health promotion efforts are directed toward controlling or altering modifiable risk factors for CAD. Some of these factors have a genetic basis, which is described elsewhere in this text. Common risk factors include:

- Elevated serum lipid levels
- Tobacco use
- Limited physical activity
- Hypertension
- Diabetes mellitus
- Obesity
- Excessive alcohol
- Stress

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients at risk for coronary artery disease (CAD), especially MI, assess specific risk factors and implement an individualized health teaching plan. Teach people who have one or more of these risk factors the importance of modifying or eliminating them to decrease their chances of CAD (Chart 40-1).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Several groups have a higher genetic risk for CAD than others. African-American and Hispanic women have higher CAD risk factors than white women of the same socioeconomic status. Of American Indians and Alaskan Natives 18 years of age and older, about 64% of men and 81% of women have one or more CAD risk factors (hypertension [HTN], smoking, high cholesterol, excess weight, or diabetes mellitus). The leading cause of death for both men and women in the Euro-American population is cardiac disease, even though they may not have genetic predispositions to developing cardiovascular risk factors (AHA, 2010).

Reducing Elevated Serum Lipid Levels

The risk for CAD rises as serum cholesterol and triglyceride levels increase. In addition to measuring the total serum cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein (LDL), high-density lipoprotein (HDL), and triglyceride (TG) levels are important in assessing risk for CAD. LDL cholesterol is the “bad” type, and HDL cholesterol is referred to as “good” because it has protective properties. *Elevated levels of LDL combined with low levels of HDL increase the risk for MI.* Total serum cholesterol levels also put the patient at a higher risk for developing an MI. According to the AHA (2010), a 10% reduction in serum cholesterol may result in a 30% reduction in the incidence of CAD and MI. The *fasting* total cholesterol should be below 130 mg/dL. The AHA (2010) defines levels of fasting total cholesterol as:

- 130-159 mg/dL—borderline high
- 160-189 mg/dL—high
- ≥190 mg/dL—very high

The desired LDL level in patients who are at high risk or have existing CAD is less than 70 mg/dL. For patients at low or moderate risk, LDL should also be substantially less than 100 mg/dL (AHA, 2010). HDL cholesterol levels should be above 40 mg/dL, although this recommendation may soon be changed to a higher level. The recommended triglyceride level is less than 135 mg/dL in women and 150 mg/dL in men (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Approaches to decrease lipids are focused on diet, exercise, and drug therapy that lowers cholesterol and triglyceride levels. Teach patients with elevated lipid levels to:

- Reduce intake of saturated fats to less than 7% of total calories
- Avoid *trans* fatty acids
- Consume less than 200 mg per day of cholesterol
- Participate in daily physical activity
- Manage weight

CHART 40-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Coronary Artery Disease

Smoking

- If you smoke, quit.
- If you don't smoke, don't start.

Diet

- Consume sufficient calories for your body to include:
 - Less than 7% from saturated fats
 - Avoiding *trans* fatty acids
- Limit your cholesterol intake to less than 200 mg/day.
- Limit your sodium intake as specified by your health care provider.

Cholesterol

- Have your lipid levels checked regularly.
- If your cholesterol and LDL levels are elevated, follow your health care provider's advice.

Physical Activity

- If you are middle-aged or older or have a history of medical problems, check with your health care provider before starting an exercise program.
- Appropriate exercise should be enjoyable, burn 400 calories per session, and sustain a heart rate of 120 to 150 beats/min, depending on your age.

- Exercise periods should be at least 20 to 30 minutes long with 10-minute warm-up and 5-minute cool-down periods.
- If you cannot exercise moderately three to five times each week, walk daily for 30 minutes at a comfortable pace.
- If you cannot walk 30 minutes daily, walk any distance you can (e.g., park farther away from a site than necessary; use the stairs, not the elevator, to go one floor up or two floors down).

Diabetes

- Manage your diabetes with your health care provider.

Blood Pressure

- Have your blood pressure checked regularly.
- If your blood pressure is elevated, follow your health care provider's advice.
- Continue to monitor your blood pressure at regular intervals.

Obesity

- Avoid severely restrictive or fad diets.
- Restrict intake of saturated fats, simple sugars, and cholesterol-rich foods.
- Increase your physical activity.

Using Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Teach patients that adding omega-3 fatty acids from fish and plant sources has been effective for some patients in reducing lipid levels, stabilizing atherosclerotic plaques, and reducing sudden death from an MI. The preferred source of omega-3 acids is from fish three times a week or a daily fish oil nutritional supplement (1-2 g/day) containing eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) (AHA, 2010). Plant sources (flaxseed, flaxseed oil, walnuts, and canola oil) contain α -linolenic acid, and the conversion of α -linolenic acid to EPA and DHA is not as efficient in patients who consume a typical Western diet (Surette, 2008). Lovaza (omega-3 fatty acids) is a new medication approved by the Federal Drug Administration (FDA) and is used to reduce very high triglycerides (>500 mg/dL) levels. Lovaza has not been proven to prevent heart attacks or stroke.

Garlic supplements may also have a small effect on reducing lipid levels, but they have not been shown to prevent MI. Patients often take a number of other supplements, such as vitamin E, coenzyme Q10, Pantestin, and vitamin B complex to decrease the risk for heart disease. None of these substances has been found to be helpful in reducing coronary artery disease.

Eliminating Tobacco Use

In the United States, an estimated 23% of men and 18% of women smoke cigarettes, putting them at increased risk for MI (AHA, 2010). About five million U.S. men and women chew tobacco, with the highest rates in the South and rural areas. Tobacco use and **passive smoking** from “second-hand smoke” (also called *environmental smoke*) substantially reduce blood flow in the coronary arteries.

Tobacco use, especially cigarette smoking, accounts for over one third of deaths from CAD. It enhances the process of atherosclerosis through mechanisms that are still poorly understood. Nicotine begins the release of catecholamines, resulting in an increased heart rate and peripheral vasoconstriction. This action causes increases in blood pressure (BP), cardiac afterload, and oxygen consumption. Cigarette smoking has also been found to cause endothelial dysfunction and increased vessel wall thickness. This process increases the risk for clot formation and vessel occlusion. The resulting hypertension may exacerbate the atherosclerotic process by increasing vessel wall permeability. Another problem with cigarette smoking is the production of carbon monoxide, which has been found to decrease the oxygen content in arterial blood. The good news is that when cigarette smoking is stopped, the risk for CAD decreases. A person who stops smoking may decrease the risk for CAD by as much as 80% in 1 year. Reducing the tar and nicotine content of the cigarettes smoked does not reduce the risk for CAD (AHA, 2010).

Ask about tobacco use, and advise the tobacco user and family members who smoke to quit using this harmful substance. Teach all patients to avoid environmental tobacco smoke at work and at home if at all possible. Additional information about tobacco use and smoking cessation is found in [Chapters 32 and 35](#).

Increasing Physical Activity

Physical inactivity may be the most important risk factor for the general population. Less-active, less-fit people have a 30% to 50% greater risk for developing high blood pressure (BP), which predisposes to CAD. Physical inactivity is more

common among women than men, among African Americans and Hispanics than Euro-Americans, among older adults than younger adults, and among the less affluent than the more affluent (AHA, 2010). The causes for these differences are not known. Teach patients that regular physical activity helps maintain body weight and muscle mass while improving BP and lipid values.

Moderate-intensity activities like walking are associated with a major reduction in CAD risk. However, intense exercising may contribute to plaque rupture and increase the number of cardiac episodes. Teach people that participating in exercise for 30 minutes a day can reduce hypertension and increase secretions of endorphins. It also leads to decreased smoking and eating, improved metabolism, and a stronger feeling of well-being. Other benefits include decreased blood clotting and higher plasma HDL levels, increased heart volume, increased cardiac capillary blood flow, and decreased heart rate. Physical activity does not increase collateral circulation or reduce the size of existing plaques.

Managing Other Factors

One in three Americans has *hypertension* (HTN). This disease increases the workload of the heart, which increases the risk for MI. The cause of primary HTN is not known. However, it is easily detected and usually controllable. About half of patients having a first MI have a BP greater than 160/95 mm Hg. Ways to manage hypertension and therefore reduce the risk for CAD are described in [Chapter 38](#).

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a major risk factor for heart disease. A woman with diabetes mellitus is twice as likely to develop CAD than a woman without DM. Heart disease is the leading cause of diabetic-related death in both men and women. Most adults with diabetes also have hypertension. [Chapter 67](#) discusses vascular complications of diabetes in detail.

Obesity is strongly associated with the development of hypertension, diabetes, and increased serum lipid levels. Women with fat deposited around their waists are at the highest risk for CAD. Teach the importance of weight management to help prevent these chronic and potentially life-threatening diseases.

Alcohol may help prevent or contribute to the development of CAD, depending on the amount consumed. Excessive consumption, described as having more than 3 ounces (90 mL) per day, can lead to increased heart disease, hypertension, and metabolic syndrome, described in the next section. A lower amount may help prevent CAD (Suzuki et al., 2009).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Modifiable risk factors vary for people of different racial and ethnic backgrounds. Some of the differences may be explained by lack of access to health care for some groups or by genetic factors. American Indians, for example, have the highest percentage of smokers among women and men. However, many of these people have poor access to care or have language barriers in a predominantly English-speaking, Euro-American health care system. Nutritional preferences may also explain some of the differences. For instance, according to the AHA (2010), high cholesterol is more common in African-American and Hispanic populations. Diets higher in fat and cholesterol are often less expensive and may be a factor in explaining differences, and obesity is more common in these groups. Genetic factors may also contribute to the differences among ethnic groups.

TABLE 40-1 INDICATORS OF RISK FACTORS FOR METABOLIC SYNDROME

RISK FACTOR	INDICATOR
Hypertension	Either blood pressure of 130/85 mm Hg or higher or taking antihypertensive drug(s)
Decreased HDL-C (usually with high LDL-C) level	Either HDL-C <40 mg/dL for men or <50 mg/dL for women or taking an anticholesterol drug
Increased level of triglycerides	Either 150 mg/dL or higher or taking an anticholesterol drug
Increased fasting blood glucose (due to diabetes, glucose intolerance, or insulin resistance)	Either 100 mg/dL or higher or taking antidiabetic drug(s)
Large waist size (excessive abdominal fat causing central obesity)	40 inches (102 cm) or greater for men or 35 inches (89 cm) or greater for women

HDL-C, High-density lipoprotein-cholesterol; LDL-C, low-density lipoprotein-cholesterol.

A person's response to *emotional stress* may also be associated with heart disease. Work stress, in particular, may be associated with left ventricular hypertrophy. During times of stress, increased heart rate increases the work of the heart, thus causing changes in the left ventricle.

Metabolic syndrome, also called *syndrome X*, has been recognized as a risk factor for cardiovascular (CV) disease and is being aggressively researched. Patients who have three of the factors in Table 40-1 are diagnosed with **metabolic syndrome**. This health problem increases the risk for developing diabetes and CAD. About 47 million people in the United States have metabolic syndrome (AHA, 2010). This increase is likely due to physical inactivity and the current obesity epidemic. Management is aimed at reducing risks, managing hypertension, and preventing complications.

Elevated levels of serum *homocysteine*, an amino acid, have been associated with an increased incidence of CAD. However, research findings are not consistent regarding its risk. Vitamin B supplements have been thought to decrease homocysteine. Recent studies suggest that vitamin B is not effective as secondary prevention, but few studies have been conducted on vitamin B as a primary preventive measure (Ebbing et al., 2008).

Patients with multiple modifiable risk factors have several times the risk for CAD as those without these characteristics. Although many factors place a person at risk for heart disease, there are well-documented, effective ways of promoting cardiovascular health. *The most important interdisciplinary intervention is health teaching.*



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older client has a history of stable angina. Which modifiable risk factors will the nurse assess to guide the client's teaching plan?

Select all that apply.

- A. Older age
- B. Tobacco use
- C. Activity level
- D. Serum lipid levels
- E. Family history
- F. Weight

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

If symptoms of CAD are present at the time of the interview, delay collecting data until interventions for symptom relief, vital sign instability, and dysrhythmias are started and discomfort resolves. If the patient had pain, ask about how he or she has managed the discomfort and other symptoms and which drugs he or she may be taking. When the patient is pain-free, obtain information about family history and modifiable risk factors, including eating habits, lifestyle, and physical activity levels. Ask about a history of smoking and how much alcohol is consumed each day. Collaborate with the dietitian to assess current body mass index (BMI) and weight.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Rapid assessment of the patient with chest pain or other presenting symptoms is crucial. It is important to differentiate among the types of chest pain and to identify the source. Question the patient to determine the characteristics of the discomfort. Patients may deny pain, however, and report that they feel "pressure." Appropriate questions to ask concerning the discomfort include onset, location, radiation, intensity, duration, and precipitating and relieving factors.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

African Americans and women tend to delay seeking treatment for MI and therefore have higher mortality rates than Euro-Americans. One contributing factor to this delay is a greater incidence of dyspnea as an acute symptom among these groups rather than the classic pain more typical of other groups (AHA, 2010).

If pain is present, ask the patient if the pain is in the chest, epigastric area, jaw, back, shoulder, or arm. Ask him or her to rate the pain on a scale of 0 to 10, with 10 being the highest level of discomfort. Some patients describe the discomfort as tightness, a burning sensation, pressure, or indigestion.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Many women of any age experience atypical angina. **Atypical angina** manifests as indigestion, pain between the shoulders, an aching jaw, or a choking sensation that occurs with exertion. These symptoms typically manifest during stressful circumstances or during activities of daily living. Women may curtail activity as a result of angina, and health care providers need to ask about changes in routine. Symptoms in women typically include fatigue, sleep disturbance, and dyspnea.

Chart 40-2 compares and contrasts angina and infarction pain. Because angina pain is ischemic pain, it usually improves when the imbalance between oxygen supply and demand is resolved. For example, rest reduces tissue demands and nitroglycerin improves oxygen supply. Discomfort from a myocardial infarction (MI) does not usually resolve with these measures. *Also ask about any associated symptoms, including*

CHART 40-2 KEY FEATURES

Angina and Myocardial Infarction

ANGINA	MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION
- Substernal chest discomfort: - Radiating to the left arm - Precipitated by exertion or stress (or rest in variant angina) - Relieved by nitroglycerin or rest - Lasting less than 15 min - Few, if any, associated symptoms	- Pain or discomfort: - Substernal chest pain/pressure radiating to the left arm - Pain or discomfort in jaw, back, shoulder, or abdomen - Occurring without cause, usually in the morning - Relieved only by opioids - Lasting 30 min or more - Frequent associated symptoms: - Nausea/vomiting - Diaphoresis - Dyspnea - Feelings of fear and anxiety - Dysrhythmias - Fatigue - Palpitations - Epigastric distress - Anxiety - Dizziness - Disorientation/acute confusion - Feeling “short of breath”

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The presence of associated symptoms without chest discomfort is significant. In up to 40% of all patients with MI, primarily older women and patients with diabetes, chest pain or discomfort may be mild or absent. Instead, they have associated symptoms. *Some older patients may think they are having indigestion and therefore not recognize that they are having an MI. Others report shortness of breath as the only symptom.* The major manifestation of MI in people older than 80 years may be disorientation or acute confusion because of poor cardiac output.

In some older adults with MI, absence of chest pain may be due to cognitive impairment or inability to verbalize pain sensation. However, in most cases it is probably the result of increased collateral circulation. Silent myocardial ischemia increases the incidence of new coronary events and should be treated aggressively.

nausea, vomiting, diaphoresis, dizziness, weakness, palpitations, and shortness of breath.

Assess **blood pressure** and **heart rate**. Interpret the patient's cardiac rhythm and presence of **dysrhythmias**. Sinus tachycardia with premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) frequently occurs in the first few hours after an MI.

Next assess **distal peripheral pulses** and **skin temperature**. The skin should be warm with all pulses palpable. In the patient with unstable angina or MI, poor cardiac output may be manifested by cool, diaphoretic (“sweaty”) skin and diminished or absent pulses. *Auscultate for an S₃ gallop, which often indicates heart failure—a serious and common complication of MI.* Assess the **respiratory rate** and breath sounds for signs of heart failure. An increased respiratory rate is common because of anxiety and pain, but *crackles or wheezes* may indicate **left-sided heart failure**. An S₄ heart sound is a common finding in the patient who has had a previous MI or hypertension. Assess for the presence of **jugular venous distention** and **peripheral edema**.

The patient with MI may experience a *temperature elevation* for several days after infarction. Temperatures as high as 102° F (38.9° C) may occur in response to myocardial necrosis, indicating the inflammatory response.

Psychosocial Assessment

Denial is a common early reaction to chest discomfort associated with angina or MI. On average, the patient with an acute MI waits more than 2 hours before seeking medical attention. Often he or she rationalizes that symptoms are due to indigestion or overexertion. In some situations, denial is a normal part of adapting to a stressful event. However, denial that interferes with identifying a symptom such as chest discomfort can be harmful. Explain the importance of reporting any discomfort to the health care provider.

Fear, depression, anxiety, and anger are other common reactions of many patients and their families. Assist in identifying these feelings. Encourage them to explain their understanding of the event, and clarify any misconceptions.

Laboratory Assessment

Although there is no single ideal test to diagnose MI, the most common laboratory tests include troponins T and I, creatine kinase-MB (CK-MB), and myoglobin. These cardiac markers are specific for MI and cardiac necrosis. Troponins T and I and myoglobin rise quickly. CK-MB is the most specific marker for MI but does not peak until about 24 hours after the onset of pain. These tests are described in more detail in [Chapter 35](#).

Imaging Assessment

Unless there is associated cardiac dysfunction (e.g., valve disease) or heart failure, a chest x-ray is not diagnostic for angina or MI.

Thallium scans use radioisotope imaging to assess for ischemia or necrotic muscle tissue related to angina or myocardial infarction (MI). Areas of decreased or absent perfusion, referred to as *cold spots*, identify ischemia or infarction. Thallium may be used with the exercise tolerance test. Dipyrindamole (Persantine) thallium scanning (DTS) may also be used.

Contrast-enhanced cardiovascular magnetic resonance (CMR) may also be done as a noninvasive approach to detect MI. **Echocardiography** may be used to visualize the structures of the heart.

Use of the 64-slice **computed tomography coronary angiography (CTCA)** has been found to be helpful in diagnosing coronary artery disease in symptomatic patients identified as having a “low- or intermediate-pretest probability” risk for CAD. This new generation of high-speed computed tomography (CT) scanners is becoming a highly reliable, noninvasive way to evaluate CAD (Weustink et al., 2010).

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Twelve-lead electrocardiograms (ECGs) allow the health care provider to examine the heart from varying perspectives. By identifying the lead(s) in which ECG changes are occurring, the health care provider can identify both the occurrence and the location of ischemia (angina) or necrosis (infarction). In addition to the traditional 12-lead ECG, the health care provider may request a “right-sided” or 18-lead ECG to determine whether ischemia or infarction has occurred in the right ventricle.

An ischemic myocardium does not repolarize normally. Thus 12-lead ECGs obtained during an angina episode reveal ST depression, T-wave inversion, or both. **Variant angina**, caused by coronary vasospasm (vessel spasm), usually causes elevation of the ST segment during angina attacks. These ST and T-wave changes usually subside when the ischemia is resolved and pain is relieved. However, the T wave may remain flat or inverted for a period of time. If the patient is not experiencing angina at the moment of the test, the ECG is usually normal unless he or she has evidence of an old MI.

When infarction occurs, one of three ECG changes is usually observed: ST-elevation MI (STEMI), T-wave inversion, or non-ST-elevation MI (NSTEMI). An abnormal Q wave (wider than 0.04 seconds or more than one-third the height of the QRS complex) may develop, depending on the amount of myocardium that has necrosed. Women having an MI often present with an NSTEMI or T-wave inversion.

The Q wave may develop because necrotic cells do not conduct electrical stimuli. Hours to days after the MI, the ST-segment and T-wave changes return to normal. However, when the Q wave exists, it may become permanent. The Q waves may disappear after a number of years, but their absence does not necessarily mean that the patient has not had an MI.

After the acute stages of an angina episode or MI, the health care provider often requests an *exercise tolerance test* (stress test) on a treadmill to assess for ECG changes consistent with ischemia, evaluate medical therapy, and identify those who might benefit from invasive therapy. Pharmacologic stress-testing agents such as dobutamine (Dobutrex) may be used instead of the treadmill. Treadmill exercise testing is only moderately accurate for women when compared with men (Bellasi et al., 2007). In women with suspected CAD, stress echocardiography or single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) should be performed.

Cardiac catheterization may be performed to determine the extent and exact location of coronary artery obstructions. It allows the cardiologist and cardiac surgeon to identify patients who might benefit from percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) and stent placement or from coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG). Each of the diagnostic tests in this section is described in detail in [Chapter 35](#).

ANALYSIS

The patient with coronary artery disease (CAD) may have either angina or MI. If MI is suspected or cannot be completely ruled out, the patient is admitted to a telemetry unit for continuous monitoring or to a critical care unit if hemodynamically unstable.

The priority problems for most patients with CAD are:

1. Acute Pain related to imbalance between myocardial oxygen supply and demand
2. Inadequate tissue perfusion (cardiopulmonary) related to interruption of arterial blood flow
3. Activity Intolerance related to fatigue caused by imbalance between oxygen supply and demand
4. Ineffective Coping related to effects of acute illness and major changes in lifestyle

For the patient experiencing an MI, additional problems include:

1. Potential for dysrhythmias
2. Potential for heart failure

3. Potential for recurrent symptoms and extension of injury

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Astute assessment skills, timely analysis of troponin, and analysis of the 12-lead ECG (or 18-lead ECG for a suspected right ventricular infarction) are essential to ensure appropriate patient care management. This is particularly important since the average time a patient waits before seeking treatment is 2 hours and 20 minutes. This delay lessens the 4- to 6-hour window of opportunity for the most advantageous treatment with percutaneous intervention.

Managing Acute Pain

Patients with *diabetes mellitus* and coronary artery disease (CAD) may not experience chest pain or pressure because of diabetic neuropathy. In this patient population, the onset of acute myocardial infarction (AMI) may be signaled by new onset of atrial fibrillation. With new-onset atrial fibrillation, a cardiac workup should be done to rule out myocardial infarction.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The expected outcome is that the patient will verbalize a report of decreased pain and discomfort as a result of prompt collaborative interventions.

Interventions. The purpose of patient-centered collaborative care is to eliminate discomfort by providing pain relief measures, decreasing myocardial oxygen demand, and increasing myocardial oxygen supply.

Emergency Care. Evaluate any report of pain, obtain vital signs, ensure an IV access, and notify the health care provider of the patient's condition. [Chart 40-3](#) summarizes the emergency interventions for the patient with symptoms of CAD.

Pain relief helps increase the oxygen supply and decrease myocardial oxygen demand. The American Heart Association (AHA) recommends several pain management strategies, including morphine sulfate and oxygen. *Give morphine as the priority in managing pain in patients having an MI!*

Drug Therapy. At home or in the hospital, the patient may take nitroglycerin to relieve episodic anginal pain.

CHART 40-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Chest Discomfort

- Assess airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs). Defibrillate as needed.
- **Provide continuous ECG monitoring.**
- Obtain the patient's description of pain or discomfort.
- Obtain the patient's vital signs (blood pressure, pulse, respiration).
- Assess/provide vascular access.
- Consult chest pain protocol or notify the physician or Rapid Response Team for specific intervention.
- Obtain a 12-lead ECG within 10 minutes of reports of chest pain.
- Provide pain relief medication and aspirin as prescribed.
- Administer oxygen therapy to maintain oxygen saturation $\geq 95\%$.
- Remain calm. Stay with the patient if possible.
- Assess the patient's vital signs and intensity of pain 5 minutes after administration of medication.
- Remedicate with prescribed drugs (if vital signs remain stable), and check the patient every 5 minutes.
- Notify the physician if vital signs deteriorate.

Aspirin 325 mg, an antiplatelet drug, may also be taken daily to prevent clots that further block coronary arteries.

Nitroglycerin (NTG), a nitrate often referred to as “nitro,” increases collateral blood flow, redistributes blood flow toward the subendocardium, and dilates the coronary arteries. In addition, it decreases myocardial oxygen demand by peripheral vasodilation, which decreases both preload and afterload. Teach the patient to hold the tablet under the tongue and drink 5 mL of water, if necessary, to allow the tablet to dissolve. NTG spray is also available and is more quickly absorbed. Pain relief should begin within 1 to 2 minutes and should be clearly evident in 3 to 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, recheck the patient’s pain intensity and vital signs. If the BP is less than 100 mm Hg systolic or 25 mm Hg lower than the previous reading, lower the head of the bed and notify the health care provider. If the patient is experiencing some but not complete relief and vital signs remain stable, another NTG tablet or spray may be used. In 5-minute increments, a total of three doses may be administered in an attempt to relieve angina pain. If the patient uses NTG spray instead of the tablet, teach him or her to sit upright and spray the dose under the tongue. NTG topical patches should be placed below the nipple line to decrease discomfort.

Angina usually responds to NTG. The patient typically states that the pain is relieved or markedly diminished. When simple measures, such as taking three sublingual nitroglycerin tablets one after the other, do not relieve chest discomfort, the patient may be experiencing an MI.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the patient is experiencing an MI, prepare the patient for transfer to a specialized unit where close monitoring and appropriate management can be provided. If the patient is at home or in the community, call 911 for transfer to the closest emergency department.

In a specialized unit, the health care provider may prescribe IV NTG for management of the chest pain. Begin the drug infusion slowly, checking the BP and pain level every 3 to 5 minutes. The nitroglycerin dose is increased until the pain is relieved, the BP falls excessively, or the maximum prescribed dose is reached (**Chart 40-4**).

When pain or other symptoms have subsided and the patient is stabilized, the health care provider may change the drug to an oral or topical nitrate. During administration of long-term oral and topical nitrates, an 8- to 12-hour nitrate-free period should be maintained to prevent tolerance. The patient may initially report a headache. Give acetaminophen (Tylenol, Exdol ) before the nitrate to ease some of this discomfort.

The health care provider usually prescribes *morphine sulfate (MS)* to relieve discomfort that is unresponsive to nitroglycerin. Morphine relieves MI pain, decreases myocardial oxygen demand, relaxes smooth muscle, and reduces circulating catecholamines. It is usually administered in 2- to 10-mg doses IV every 5 to 15 minutes until the maximum prescribed dose is reached or the patient experiences relief or signs of toxicity. Monitor for adverse effects of morphine, which include respiratory depression, hypotension, bradycardia, and severe vomiting. Treatment for morphine toxicity is

naloxone (Narcan) 0.2 to 0.8 mg IV, vasopressor drugs, IV fluids, and oxygen therapy. Monitor the patient’s vital signs and cardiac rhythm every few minutes.

These strategies are often enough to relieve the pain. If they are not adequate, additional interventions identified in the Improving Cardiopulmonary Tissue Perfusion section below may be attempted.

Other Interventions. Several other interventions may be used with drug therapy to relieve chest pain. Supplemental oxygen increases the amount of oxygen available to myocardial tissue. Therefore oxygen is often prescribed and administered at a flow of 2 to 4 L/min by nasal cannula titrated to maintain an arterial oxygen saturation (SaO_2) of 95% or higher. If the BP is stable, assist the patient in assuming any position of comfort. Placing the patient in semi-Fowler’s position often enhances comfort and tissue oxygenation. A quiet, calm environment and explanations of interventions often reduce anxiety and help relieve chest pain. If needed, remind the patient to take several deep breaths to increase oxygenation.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Informatics

A 77-year-old man living at home had chest pain after awakening from a nap. He called his only daughter, who was not home; he then called 911 and was taken to the emergency department (ED).

1. As his ED nurse, what is your first action in response to his report of chest pain? What evidence supports this decision?
2. The physician prescribes IV morphine for pain. For what adverse effects will you monitor during and after morphine administration?
3. What other drugs might the physician prescribe at this time and why?
4. What will you tell his daughter about his condition?
5. What will you document about this patient’s care?

Improving Cardiopulmonary Tissue Perfusion

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The primary outcome is that the patient will have increased myocardial perfusion as evidenced by an adequate cardiac output, normal sinus rhythm, and vital signs within normal limits.

Interventions. Because myocardial infarction (MI) is a dynamic process, restoring perfusion to the injured area (usually within 4 to 6 hours) often limits the amount of extension and improves left ventricular function. Complete, sustained reperfusion of coronary arteries in the first few hours after an MI has decreased mortality rates.

Drug Therapy. *Aspirin (ASA)* therapy is recommended by the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association (AHA). It inhibits both platelet aggregation and vasoconstriction, thereby decreasing the likelihood of thrombosis. *If the patient has new-onset angina at home, teach him or her to chew aspirin 325 mg (4 “baby aspirins” that are 81 mg each) immediately and call 911!* The antiplatelet effect of ASA begins within 1 hour of use and continues for several days. Administer 162 to 325 mg non-enteric-coated aspirin every day to all patients with suspected CAD unless absolutely contraindicated. Instruct the patient to chew and swallow the drug and continue taking the drug unless adverse effects occur.

CHART 40-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Coronary Artery Disease (Nitrates, Beta Blockers, and Antiplatelet Agents)

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Nitrates			
Nitroglycerin (Nitrostat, NitroQuick)	0.3-0.4 mg sublingually every 5 min; up to 3 tablets over 15 min	Instruct patients to lie down with the head of the bed at a level of comfort when taking the sublingual form.	Hypotension can be dramatic, immediate, and intensified by the upright position.
Nitrolingual translingual spray	0.4 mg/metered spray	Monitor BP. Pay attention to orthostatic changes. Instruct patients to allow the sublingual tablet to dissolve and to avoid swallowing the tablet. Check the expiration date on sublingual tablets and sprays. Tablets should be replaced every 3-5 mo. Determine whether pain is relieved. Monitor for headache. Do not administer to patients taking drugs used to treat sexual dysfunction (e.g., sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil).	A decrease in BP occurs with vasodilation. The sublingual dose is absorbed through the sublingual mucous membranes. The efficacy of the tablets decreases with time. Additional medication may be required to relieve pain. Vasodilation is generalized. Very serious (possibly fatal) interactions may occur.
Isosorbide dinitrate (Isordil, Iso-Bid)	2.5 mg sublingually every 4-6 hr; 5-40 mg orally four times daily 40-80 mg sustained-release tablet every 8-12 hr	Instruct patients taking sublingual forms to lie down before administration. Monitor BP, and assess for dizziness.	The hypotensive effect can be dramatic and immediate with sublingual administration. A decrease in BP occurs with vasodilation.
Isosorbide mononitrate (Imdur)	60-mg extended-release tablet daily	Schedule sustained-release form with an 8- to 12-hr dose-free interval.	Tolerance may develop.
Nitroglycerin patch (Minitran, Nitro-Dur, Nitrek)	Transdermally started at 5 mg/24 hr (10-cm ² system)	Remove the patch from the patient before defibrillation. Rotate application sites. Apply the patch to a clean, dry, hairless area. Remove patch after 12-14 hr each day.	The patient may develop a burn. Rotation prevents skin irritation. The drug is better absorbed when the skin is clean, dry, and hairless. Removal prevents drug tolerance.
Beta Blockers			
Carvedilol (Coreg, Corg CR)	12.5-25 mg orally twice daily for Corg; 40-80 mg orally once daily for Corg CR	Assess heart rate before administration. Monitor BP. Observe for signs of heart failure. Assess for shortness of breath and wheezing.	Beta-blocking effects cause a decrease in heart rate. The hypotensive effect is due to a decrease in cardiac output, suppressed renin activity, and beta-blocking effects. Heart failure may occur as a result of a decrease in cardiac output. Beta ₂ -blocking effects in the lungs can cause bronchoconstriction.
Metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol XL, Betaloc  , a cardioselective beta-adrenergic blocker)	<i>Angina:</i> 25-100 mg orally daily <i>MI:</i> 100 mg orally twice daily; 5 mg IV over 2 min may be repeated twice for a total of 15 mg	Assess heart rate before administration; do not administer if heart rate <50-60 beats/min. Monitor BP, and hold for systolic <90-100 mm Hg. Assess patients for cough, shortness of breath, edema, and weight gain.	Beta blockers may cause further decreases in heart rate. Decreased BP pressure is an anticipated effect. These are indications of heart failure.
Antiplatelet Agents			
Aspirin (Empirin, Apo-ASA  , Ecotrin)	81-325 mg orally daily	Suggest that patients take the daily dose with food. Question patients about ringing in the ears. Emphasize to patients that aspirin is an important cardiac medication and should be continued unless they are told to stop.	Gastric irritation may occur. Tinnitus may occur with aspirin toxicity. Studies document significantly better survival rates for patients with coronary artery disease receiving aspirin.
Thienopyridines			
Clopidogrel (Plavix) Do not confuse Plavix with Paxil	<i>Recent MI:</i> 75 mg orally daily <i>Acute coronary syndrome:</i> 300-600 mg orally, then 75-150 mg daily	Teach patients to take drug with food. Inform patients to report any usual bleeding or bruising.	Drug can cause diarrhea and other GI disturbances. Drug prevents platelet aggregation, thus slowing down clot formation.
Prasugrel (Effient)	<i>Acute coronary syndrome:</i> 60 orally mg, then 10 mg daily	Inform patients to report any usual bleeding or bruising.	Contraindicated in patients with history of prior stroke or >75 yrs of age, due to increased risk for bleeding. If patient <60 kg, consider lowering dose to 5 mg daily.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

For patients taking aspirin every day, observe for bleeding tendencies, such as nosebleeds or blood in the stool. Aspirin should be discontinued if bleeding occurs.

Glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa inhibitors target the platelet component of the thrombus. Abciximab (ReoPro), eptifibatide (Integrilin), or tirofiban (Aggrastat) is administered IV to prevent fibrinogen from attaching to activated platelets at the site of a thrombus. These medications are used in acute coronary syndromes (especially unstable angina, NSTEMI, and non-Q-wave MI). They are also given before and during percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) to maintain patency of an artery with a large clot and are given with fibrinolytic agents after MI. If the GP IIb/IIIa inhibitors are used with a fibrinolytic agent, the dose of the thrombolytic is reduced by 25% to 50% to decrease the risk for bleeding.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

When giving GP IIb/IIIa inhibitors, assess the patient closely for bleeding or hypersensitivity reactions. If either occurs, notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team immediately.

Once-a-day *beta-adrenergic blocking agents* (e.g., metoprolol XL [Toprol XL], carvedilol CR [Coreg CR]), sometimes just called *beta blockers* (BBs), decrease the size of the infarct, the occurrence of ventricular dysrhythmias, and mortality rates in patients with MI. The physician usually prescribes a cardioselective beta-blocking agent within the first 1 to 2 hours after an MI if the patient is hemodynamically stable. Beta blockers slow the heart rate and decrease the force of cardiac contraction (see [Chart 40-4](#)). Thus these agents prolong the period of diastole and increase myocardial perfusion while reducing the force of myocardial contraction. With beta blockade, the heart can perform more work without ischemia. During beta-blocking therapy, monitor for:

- Bradycardia
- Hypotension
- Decreased level of consciousness (LOC)
- Chest discomfort

Assess the lungs for crackles (indicative of heart failure) and wheezes (indicative of bronchospasm). Hypoglycemia, depression, nightmares, and forgetfulness are also problems with beta blockade, especially in older patients. Many of these side effects decrease with time.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Do not give beta blockers if the pulse is below 60 or the systolic BP is below 100 without first checking with the health care provider.

Health care providers frequently prescribe *angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors* or *angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs)* within 48 hours of an MI to prevent

ventricular remodeling and the development of heart failure. Both ACE inhibitors and ARBs increase survival after an MI. Monitor the patient for decreased urine output, hypotension, and cough. Check for changes in serum potassium, creatinine, and blood urea nitrogen. ([Chapter 38](#) provides a more detailed discussion of ACE inhibitors and ARBs.)

For patients with angina, the health care provider may prescribe calcium channel blockers to promote vasodilation and myocardial perfusion. These drugs are indicated for patients with variant angina or for those who are hypertensive and continue to have angina despite therapy with beta blockers (unstable angina). They are *not* indicated after an MI. Monitor the patient for hypotension and peripheral edema, and review the frequency of angina episodes.

Calcium channel blockers are also used for chronic stable angina (CSA). When they are not successful in managing CSA, *ranolazine (Ranexa)* may be added to the drug regimen. This drug has anti-angina and anti-ischemic properties and is often effective in relieving the pain associated with CSA.

Reperfusion Therapy. As time passes, myocardial tissue can become increasingly ischemic and necrotic. Therefore, based on the location and skill set of the health care institution, one of two reperfusion strategies should be employed to open a blocked artery in a patient experiencing AMI.

Thrombolytic therapy using **fibrinolytics** dissolves thrombi in the coronary arteries and restores myocardial blood flow. Examples of these agents, which target the fibrin component of the coronary thrombosis, include:

- Tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA, alteplase [Activase]) (IV or intracoronary)
- Reteplase (Retavase) (IV or intracoronary)
- Tenecteplase (TNK) (IV push [IVP])

Intracoronary fibrinolytics may be delivered during cardiac catheterization. Thrombolytic agents are most effective when administered within the first 6 hours of a coronary event. They are used in men and women, young and old.

Thrombolytic therapy is given in a unit where the patient can be continuously monitored. It is indicated for chest pain of longer than 30 minutes' duration that is unrelieved by nitroglycerin, with indications of transmural ischemia and injury as shown by the ECG. Contraindications include recent abdominal surgery or stroke, because bleeding may occur when fresh clots are lysed (broken down or dissolved). [Table 40-2](#) lists the current contraindications to thrombolytic therapy.

Patients who weigh less than 143 pounds (65 kg) may need to have their dose of thrombolytic adjusted to lessen the likelihood of bleeding.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

During and after thrombolytic administration, immediately report any indications of bleeding to the health care provider or Rapid Response Team. Observe for signs of bleeding by:

- Documenting the patient's neurologic status (in case of intracranial bleeding)
- Observing all IV sites for bleeding and patency
- Monitoring clotting studies
- Observing for signs of internal bleeding (Monitor hemoglobin, hematocrit, and blood pressure.)
- Testing stools, urine, and emesis for occult blood

TABLE 40-2 CONTRAINDICATIONS TO THROMBOLYTIC THERAPY**Absolute**

- Any prior intracranial hemorrhage
- Known structural cerebral vascular lesion (e.g., arteriovenous malformations)
- Known malignant intracranial neoplasm (primary or metastatic)
- Ischemic stroke within 3 months EXCEPT acute ischemic stroke within 3 hours
- Suspected aortic dissection
- Active bleeding or bleeding diathesis (excluding menses)
- Significant closed-head or facial trauma within 3 months

Relative

- History of chronic, severe, poorly controlled hypertension
- Severe uncontrolled hypertension on presentation (SBP >180 mm Hg or DBP >110 mm Hg)*
- History of prior ischemic stroke within 3 months, dementia, or known intracranial pathology not covered in contraindications
- Traumatic or prolonged (≥10 minutes) CPR or major surgery (within 3 weeks)
- Recent (within 2-4 weeks) internal bleeding
- Noncompressible vascular punctures
- For streptokinase/anistreplase: prior exposure (>5 days ago) or prior allergic reaction to these agents
- Pregnancy
- Active peptic ulcer
- Current use of anticoagulants; the higher the INR, the higher risk for bleeding

CPR, Cardiopulmonary resuscitation; DBP, diastolic blood pressure; INR, international normalized ratio; MI, myocardial infarction; SBP, systolic blood pressure.

*Could be an absolute contraindication in low-risk patients with MI.

For some patients having an MI, primary **percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA)** with stent (metallic mesh) placement may be used to reopen the clotted coronary artery. Percutaneous intervention has been associated with excellent return of blood flow through the coronary artery when it can be performed by an interventional cardiologist within 2 to 3 hours of the onset of symptoms. Many community hospitals can now perform emergent PTCA. When primary PTCA is not available, patients should receive immediate thrombolytic agents if they are appropriate candidates and then be transferred to a facility that can perform PTCA. This procedure is described in detail on p. 844 of this chapter.

Patients who receive fibrinolytics require PTCA for more definitive treatment such as stent placement. Therefore, if criteria for PTCA are met, it is more advantageous to go directly to the catheterization laboratory where definitive treatment, not just clot resolution, can be performed.

Monitor the patient for indications that the clot has been lysed (dissolved) and the artery reperfused. These indications include:

- Abrupt cessation of pain or discomfort
- Sudden onset of ventricular dysrhythmias
- Resolution of ST-segment depression/elevation or T-wave inversion
- A peak at 12 hours of markers of myocardial damage

After clot lysis with thrombolytics, large amounts of thrombin are released into the system, increasing the risk for vessel reocclusion. To maintain the patency of the coronary artery after thrombolytic therapy, the health care provider usually prescribes aspirin and IV heparin. Maintain the heparin

infusion for 3 to 5 days as prescribed, and monitor the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT). The target aPTT range is usually $1\frac{1}{2}$ to $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the control sample. The heparin antifactor Xa assay (heparin assay) test may be used instead of the aPTT in some clinical facilities. Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) (enoxaparin [Lovenox]) may be substituted for IV heparin. Therapeutic dosing of LMWH in this patient population should be based on weight (1 mg/kg).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

A client who had thrombolytic therapy is receiving a continuous infusion of sodium heparin. In the past hour, the client's blood pressure changed from 122/74 to 98/46 mm Hg. His pulse is rapid and weak. What is the nurse's first action at this time?

- A. Assess for signs of bleeding.
- B. Slow the heparin infusion rate.
- C. Document the blood pressure change.
- D. Stop the heparin infusion immediately.

Increasing Activity Tolerance

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to increase activity without chest pain and the need for supplemental oxygen as a result of a collaborative cardiac rehabilitation program.

Interventions. Activity intolerance is reduced by a planned program of cardiac rehabilitation implemented primarily by the nurse and physical therapist and continued after discharge.

Cardiac rehabilitation is the process of actively assisting the patient with cardiac disease in achieving and maintaining a vital and productive life while remaining within the limits of the heart's ability to respond to increases in activity and stress. It can be divided into three phases. *Phase 1* begins with the acute illness and ends with discharge from the hospital. *Phase 2* begins after discharge and continues through convalescence at home. *Phase 3* refers to long-term conditioning.

In the acute phase (phase 1), promote rest and ensure limited mobility. Assistance may be needed for some ADLs, such as ambulation to the bathroom. Patients progress at their own rate to increasing levels of activity depending on their clinical status, age, and physical capabilities.

The next step in phase 1 is independent ambulation of the patient in the room and to the bathroom. Encourage progressive ambulation in the hallway, usually 50, 100, and then 200 feet three times a day. In addition, the patient may begin showering for 5 or 10 minutes with warm water. A chair should be available to facilitate rest and maintain balance.

**NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY****Action Alert**

During cardiac rehabilitation, assess the patient's heart rate, blood pressure (BP), respiratory rate, and level of fatigue with each higher level of activity. Decreases greater than 20 mm Hg in the systolic BP, changes of 20 beats per minute in the pulse rate, and reports of dyspnea or chest pain indicate intolerance of activity. If these manifestations develop, notify the health care provider and do not advance the patient to the next level. Older adults with CAD often have needs and concerns different from those of younger adults, as described in Chart 40-5.

CHART 40-5 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Coronary Artery Disease

- Recognize that chest pain may not be evident in the older patient. Examples of associated symptoms are unexplained dyspnea, confusion, or GI symptoms.
- Although older adults have a greater reduction in mortality rate from myocardial infarction (MI) with the use of thrombolytics, they also have the most severe side effects. Monitor older patients receiving thrombolytics extremely carefully.
- Dysrhythmia may be a normal age-related change rather than a complication of MI. Determine whether the dysrhythmia is causing significant symptoms. Then notify the physician.
- If beta blockers are used, assess the patient carefully for the development of side effects. Exacerbation of the depression some older adults have is a significant problem with beta blockade.
- Plan slow, steady increases in activity. Older adults with minimal previous exercise show particular benefit from a gradual increase in activity.
- Older adults should plan longer warm-up and cool-down periods when participating in an exercise program. Their pulse rates may not return to baseline until 30 minutes or longer after exercise.

All patients with AMI should be referred to a phase 2 cardiac rehabilitation program upon discharge from the hospital. Collaborate with the case manager to plan for the patient's continuing care.

Promoting Effective Coping

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to learn to cope with the cardiac event and identify effective coping strategies with the help of support systems.

Interventions. Assess the patient's level of anxiety while allowing expressions of any apprehension, and attempt to define its origin. Simple, repeated explanations of therapies, expectations, and surroundings, as well as patient progress, may help relieve anxiety.

Identify the patient's current *coping* mechanisms. The most common are denial, anger, and depression. Denial allows the patient to decrease a threat and use problem-focused coping mechanisms. The patient may avoid discussing what has happened and yet comply with treatment regimens. This type of denial decreases anxiety and should not be discouraged. *However, denial that results in a patient who refuses to follow treatment regimens can be harmful.* Because this behavior is usually due to extreme anxiety or fear, threats only worsen the behavior. Remain calm, and avoid confronting the patient. Clearly indicate when a behavior is not acceptable and is potentially harmful as a result of noncompliance.

Anger may represent an attempt to regain control of life. Encourage the patient to verbalize the source of frustration, and provide opportunities for decision making and control. Collaborate with the certified spiritual chaplain in the hospital to help the patient cope with the situation. Help the patient identify support systems, such as family, friends, church, or social group.

Depression may be a response to grief and loss of function. Listen as the patient verbalizes feelings of loss, being careful not to offer false or general reassurances. Acknowledge depression, but encourage the patient to perform ADLs and other activities within restrictions.

Identifying and Managing Dysrhythmias

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The most desired outcome for the patient is that he or she will be free of dysrhythmias. If they occur, they will be identified and managed early to prevent complications or death.

Interventions. *Dysrhythmias are the leading cause of pre-hospital death in most patients with myocardial infarction (MI).* Even in the early period of hospitalization, most patients with MI experience some abnormal cardiac rhythm. When a dysrhythmia develops:

- Identify the dysrhythmia.
- Assess hemodynamic status.
- Evaluate for discomfort.

Dysrhythmias are treated when they cause hemodynamic compromise, increase myocardial oxygen requirements, or predispose the patient to lethal ventricular dysrhythmias.

Typical dysrhythmias for the patient with an *inferior* MI are bradycardias and second-degree AV blocks resulting from ischemia of the AV node. These rhythms tend to be intermittent. Monitor the cardiac rhythm and rate and the hemodynamic status. If the patient becomes hemodynamically unstable, a temporary pacemaker may be necessary.

The patient with an *anterior* MI is likely to exhibit premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) caused by ventricular irritability. Third-degree or bundle branch block is a serious complication in this patient because it indicates that a large portion of the left ventricle is involved. The health care provider may insert a pacemaker. Observe the patient closely to detect the development of heart failure. Appropriate interventions for dysrhythmias are described in [Chapter 36](#).

Monitoring for and Managing Heart Failure

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The most desired outcome for the patient is that he or she will be free of heart failure. However, if it occurs, the outcome is that the heart failure will be identified and treated early to prevent further complications.

Interventions. Decreased cardiac output related to heart failure is a relatively common complication after an MI resulting from left ventricular dysfunction, rupture of the intraventricular septum, papillary muscle rupture with valvular dysfunction, or right ventricular infarction. The most severe form of heart failure, *cardiogenic shock*, discussed later in this chapter, accounts for most in-hospital deaths after an MI. The type of management used to increase cardiac output depends on the location of the MI and the type of heart failure that resulted from the infarction.

Managing Left Ventricular Failure. When a patient with MI experiences damage to the left ventricle, rupture of the intraventricular septum, or tear of a papillary muscle, the amount of blood that the heart can eject is reduced. When volume and pressure are markedly increased in the pulmonary vasculature, pulmonary complications develop.

Nursing Assessment and Monitoring. Assess for manifestations of left ventricular failure and pulmonary edema by listening for crackles and identifying their location in the lung fields. Wheezing, tachypnea, and frothy sputum may also occur with pulmonary edema. Auscultate the heart, paying particular attention to the presence of an S₃ heart sound.

Monitor for these signs of inadequate organ *perfusion* that may result from decreased cardiac output:

- A change in orientation or mental status
- Urine output less than 30 mL/hr
- Cool, clammy extremities with decreased or absent pulses
- Unusual fatigue
- Recurrent chest pain

In specialized units, hemodynamic monitoring requiring the insertion of a pulmonary artery catheter may be started to assess the patient's preload, afterload, and cardiac output. Obtain and record hemodynamic measurements, which include:

- Right atrial pressure
- Pulmonary artery systolic and diastolic pressures
- Pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP) (a measure of preload)
- Pulmonary vascular resistance
- Systemic vascular resistance (a measure of afterload)
- Cardiac output
- Central venous pressure (CVP)
- Cardiac index

Single values of these measurements are less significant than the trend of values combined with the patient's clinical manifestations. They help health care providers identify heart failure and guide the administration of fluids and vasoactive drugs. Chapter 35 describes hemodynamic monitoring in more detail.

Classification of Post-Myocardial Infarction Heart Failure.

Several classification systems may be used to categorize heart failure after an MI. For example, the Killip system identifies four classes based on prognosis (Table 40-3) (Siniorakis, et al., 2000). This system complements the ACC/AHA heart failure classification of function assessment discussed in Chapter 37.

Patients with *class I* heart failure often respond well to reduction in preload with IV nitrates and diuretics. Monitor the urine output hourly, check vital signs hourly, continue to assess for signs of heart failure, and review the serum potassium level.

Patients with *class II* and *class III* heart failure may require diuresis and more aggressive medical intervention, such as afterload reduction and/or enhancement of contractility. IV nitroprusside or nitroglycerin may be used to decrease both preload and afterload. These drugs are given as continuous infusions in specialized units where the PAWP and BP can be closely monitored. The BP can drop in response to excessive vasodilation.

Patients in *classes II* and *III* are usually started on once-a-day beta blockers (usually Toprol XR or Coreg CR). Dosing is titrated depending on goal achievement and drug tolerance. Other drugs, including ACE inhibitors and ARBs, are

commonly prescribed to promote ventricular remodeling. These drugs are described in Chart 40-4 and in Chapters 37 and 38.

Positive inotropes, such as dobutamine (Dobutrex) and milrinone (Primacor), increase the force of cardiac contraction. They are administered by continuous IV infusion. The effects of these drugs on the blood vessels and heart rate vary and may be dose dependent. The infusions are titrated to promote cardiac output.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Use caution when giving positive inotropes because of the potential risk for increasing myocardial oxygen consumption and further decreasing cardiac output. Monitor the patient frequently, paying particular attention to the development of chest pain.

Class IV heart failure is cardiogenic shock. In **cardiogenic shock**, necrosis of more than 40% of the left ventricle occurs. Most patients have a stuttering pattern of chest pain, resulting in piecemeal extension of the MI.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Monitor for, report, and document manifestations of cardiogenic shock immediately. These signs and symptoms include:

- Tachycardia
- Hypotension
- BP less than 90 mm Hg or 30 mm Hg less than the patient's baseline
- Urine output less than 30 mL/hr
- Cold, clammy skin with poor peripheral pulses
- Agitation, restlessness, or confusion
- Pulmonary congestion
- Tachypnea
- Continuing chest discomfort

Early detection is essential because diagnosed cardiogenic shock has a high mortality rate!

Drug Therapy. Medical interventions aim to relieve pain and decrease myocardial oxygen requirements through preload and afterload reduction (see Chart 40-4 and Chart 40-6). The health care provider prescribes IV morphine, which is used to decrease pulmonary congestion and relieve pain. Oxygen is administered. Intubation and mechanical ventilation may be necessary.

Use the information gained from hemodynamic monitoring to titrate drug therapy. Preload reduction may be cautiously attempted with diuretics or nitroglycerin, as described for patients with Killip class III heart failure. (See Chapter 35 for a complete discussion of preload and afterload.) Monitor systolic pressure continuously because vasodilation may result in a further decline in BP. Vasopressors and positive inotropes may be used to maintain organ perfusion, but these drugs increase myocardial oxygen consumption and can worsen ischemia. Use extreme caution in giving drug therapy.

Intra-Aortic Balloon Pump. When patients do not respond to drug therapy with improved tissue perfusion, decreased workload of the heart, and increased cardiac contractility,

TABLE 40-3 KILLIP CLASSIFICATION OF HEART FAILURE

CLASS	DESCRIPTION
I	Absent crackles and S ₃
II	Crackles in the lower half of the lung fields and possible S ₃
III	Crackles more than halfway up the lung fields and frequent pulmonary edema
IV	Cardiogenic shock

CHART 40-6 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Commonly Used Intravenous Vasodilators and Inotropes

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Nitrates			
Nitroprusside sodium (Nipride, Nitropress)	IV only by infusion device Begin with 0.4-0.5 mcg/kg/min May increase gradually to 10 mcg/kg/min	Monitor BP every 2-5 min when initiating therapy. If BP drops excessively, elevate the legs, decrease the dose, and increase fluids per unit policy. Monitor PAWP, SVR, BP, heart rate, urine output frequently. Titrate medication to obtain the desired effect. Protect from light. Maintain dose at less than 3 mcg/kg/min if possible. In patients requiring doses higher than 3 mcg/kg/min for longer than 24-36 hr, monitor for metabolic acidosis, confusion, or hyperreflexia. Examine blood thiocyanate level.	This agent is a potent, rapidly reversible vasodilator acting on both peripheral venous and arterial musculature. BP may drop in 2 min. This agent is light sensitive. Doses higher than 3 mcg/kg/min are associated with thiocyanate or cyanide toxicity. These are indications of the toxic effects of cyanide.
Nitroglycerin (Tridil)	IV only by infusion device Begin with 5 mcg/kg/min and gradually increase in increments of 5 every 3-5 min If no response after 20 mcg/kg/min, increase by 10-20 mcg until desired response	Monitor BP every 1-3 min when initiating therapy. If BP drops excessively, elevate the legs and decrease the dose according to unit policies. Monitor RAP, PAWP, SVR, BP, heart rate, and urine output frequently. Titrate medication to obtain the desired effect. Intermittent administration of IV nitroglycerin should be considered. Monitor patients for headache.	This agent dilates coronary arteries. It is a more potent systemic vasodilator than an arterial vasodilator. BP may drop in 1 min. Tolerance may develop rapidly to nitroglycerin administered by continuous IV. Headache is a frequent side effect of initial nitroglycerin therapy.
Milrinone (Primacor)	IV bolus 50 mcg/kg given over 10 min; start infusion of 0.375-0.75 mcg/kg/min; reduce dose in renal impairment	Assess BP and pulse every 5 min. If BP drops 30 mm Hg, stop infusion and call health care provider. Monitor I&O and weight.	Hypotension is a common adverse effect. The drug causes diuresis.
Fenoldopam (Corlopam)	0.01-1.6 mcg/kg/min IV	Assess BP and pulse every 5 min, then every 1 hr x 2, then every 4 hr, or according to agency policy. Monitor I&O, and assess for signs of dehydration. Observe IV site for extravasation.	Same as for milrinone.
Sympathomimetics			
Dopamine (Intropin)	IV only by infusion device Starting dose 2-5 mcg/kg/min Titrate up to 50 mcg/kg/min	Determine the reason for use and the expected result. Observe the patient's heart rate, ECG, BP, PAWP, SVR, cardiac output, and urine output every 5 min to every 1 hr. Titrate the dose carefully to maintain the dose range and obtain the desired effect. Infuse through a central catheter.	This agent is a dose-dependent activator of alpha, beta, and dopaminergic receptors. 2-5 mcg/kg/min stimulates dopaminergic receptors, which promotes renal and mesenteric blood flow. 5 mcg/kg/min stimulates beta receptors. This increases heart rate and contractility more than 10-15 mcg/kg/min; alpha effects predominate. This causes peripheral constriction. Extravasation can cause tissue necrosis and sloughing. These are adverse effects.
Dobutamine (Dobutrex)	IV only by infusion device, 2-10 mcg/kg/min. May increase to 40 mcg/kg/min.	Monitor patients for ectopy and angina. Observe patients continuously during administration. Titrate the drug on the basis of adequate tissue perfusion: mentation, skin temperature, peripheral pulses, PAWP, cardiac output, SVR, and urine output. Monitor for atrial and ventricular ectopy.	This agent is a very strong beta ₁ -receptor activator and a moderately strong beta ₂ -activator. Dysrhythmias are an adverse effect.

BP, Blood pressure; ECG, electrocardiogram; I&O, input and output; PAWP, pulmonary artery wedge pressure; RAP, right atrial pressure; SVR, systemic vascular resistance.

an **intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP)** may be inserted. The IABP is an invasive intervention that is used to improve myocardial perfusion during an acute MI, reduce preload and afterload, and facilitate left ventricular ejection.

The health care provider can insert the device percutaneously or through a surgical cutdown. Inflation of the IABP during diastole augments the diastolic pressure and improves coronary perfusion by increasing blood flow to the arteries. Deflation of the balloon just before systole reduces afterload at the time of systolic contraction. This action facilitates emptying of the left ventricle and improves cardiac output. The balloon catheter is attached to a pump console, which is triggered by an ECG tracing and arterial waveform.

Percutaneous Ventricular Assist Device. In patients undergoing high-risk percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) or those at risk for cardiogenic shock, a percutaneous ventricular assist device may be used. These devices are temporary to decrease the myocardial workload and oxygen consumption of the heart and increase cardiac output and peripheral perfusion.

Immediate Reperfusion. Immediate reperfusion is an invasive intervention that shows some promise for managing cardiogenic shock. The patient is taken to the cardiac catheterization laboratory, and an emergency left-sided heart catheterization is performed. If he or she has a treatable occlusion or occlusions, the surgeon performs a percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (with stent placement) in the catheterization laboratory or the patient is transferred to the operating suite for a coronary artery bypass graft (CABG).

Managing Right Ventricular Failure. Conditions other than left ventricular failure may result in decreased cardiac output after an MI. In about a third of patients with inferior MIs, right ventricular infarction and failure develop. In this instance, the right ventricle fails independently of the left. Decreased cardiac output with a paradoxical pulse, clear lungs, and jugular venous distention occurs when the patient is in semi-Fowler's position.

A right ventricular MI may be documented by echocardiography and by an ECG using right-sided precordial leads. The desired outcome of management is to improve right ventricular stroke volume by increasing right ventricular fiber stretch or preload. To enhance right ventricular preload, give sufficient fluids (as much as 200 mL/hr) to increase right atrial pressure to 20 mm Hg. *Monitor the pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP)—attempting to maintain it below 15 to 20 mm Hg—and auscultate the lungs to assess for left-sided heart failure. If symptoms of this complication occur, notify the health care provider immediately.*

Monitoring for and Managing Recurrent Symptoms and Extension of Injury

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The most desired outcome is that the patient will not have recurrent symptoms or an extension of myocardial injury. If these problems occur, they will be identified and treated early to prevent further complications or death.

Interventions. *Recurrent discomfort despite medical therapy is one of the major indications for surgical management of CAD.* Patients who continue to have chest discomfort despite medical therapy or who have ischemia during a stress test may require invasive correction by PTCA or CABG to resolve

angina or prevent MI. Before invasive treatment, a left-sided cardiac catheterization with coronary angiogram is performed to document that the lesions are correctable and that left ventricular pump function is adequate.

Percutaneous Transluminal Coronary Angioplasty. **Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA)**, most commonly done before stent placement, is an invasive but nonsurgical technique. It is performed to reduce the frequency and severity of discomfort for patients with angina and to bridge patients to coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery. Because of the artery's normal elasticity and "memory" to retain its original shape, the artery often re-occludes if a stent is not used as part of the procedure.

Patients who are most likely to benefit from PTCA have single- or double-vessel disease with discrete, proximal, non-calcified lesions (clots). This procedure often does not work for complex clots. When identifying which lesions are treatable with PTCA, the cardiologist considers the clot's complexity and location, as well as the amount of myocardium at risk. Although treating lesions located in the left main artery places a large amount of myocardial tissue at risk if the vessel closes quickly, these lesions are now being treated more with PTCA and stent placement. In the past, coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) was the intervention used for these patients. PTCA may also be used for the patient with an evolving acute MI, either alone or with thrombolytic therapy or glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa inhibitor, to reperfuse the damaged myocardium.

Before the procedure, the patient receives an initial dose of a thienopyridine (clopidogrel [Plavix]) or prasugrel [Effient]), antiplatelet drugs. If there are any concerns that the patient may require CABG, the thienopyridine is held until postprocedure. The inhibition of the platelets is permanent and increases the risk for postoperative bleeding. Patients should wait 5 (clopidogrel) to 7 (prasugrel) days after dosing with a thienopyridine before undergoing CABG. If the patient has received thrombolytic therapy, clopidogrel (Plavix) is the preferred thienopyridine. The physician performs the angioplasty under fluoroscopic guidance in the cardiac catheterization laboratory. A balloon-tipped catheter is introduced through a guidewire to the coronary artery occlusion. The physician activates a compressor that inflates the balloon to force the plaque against the vessel wall, thus dilating the wall, and reduces or eliminates the occluding clot. Balloon inflation may be repeated until angiography indicates a decrease in the stenosis (narrowing) to less than 50% of the vessel's diameter (Fig. 40-3).

During the procedure, the patient may receive boluses of IV heparin or a continuous infusion of bivalirudin (Angiomax). Heparin is used to maintain an elevated activated clotting time and prevent clotting on wires and catheters during the procedure. Heparin is discontinued before removal of the catheters. Bivalirudin (Angiomax) is a directed thrombin inhibitor and is frequently used as an alternative to IIb/IIIa inhibitors and heparin. Bivalirudin has a short half-life (25 minutes) and is less dependent on renal function. IV or intra-coronary nitroglycerin or diltiazem (Cardizem) is given to prevent coronary vasospasm. PTCA initially reopens the vessel in most appropriately selected patients. Within the first 24 hours, however, a small percentage of patients have re-stenosis. At 6 months, a larger number have one or more blockages.

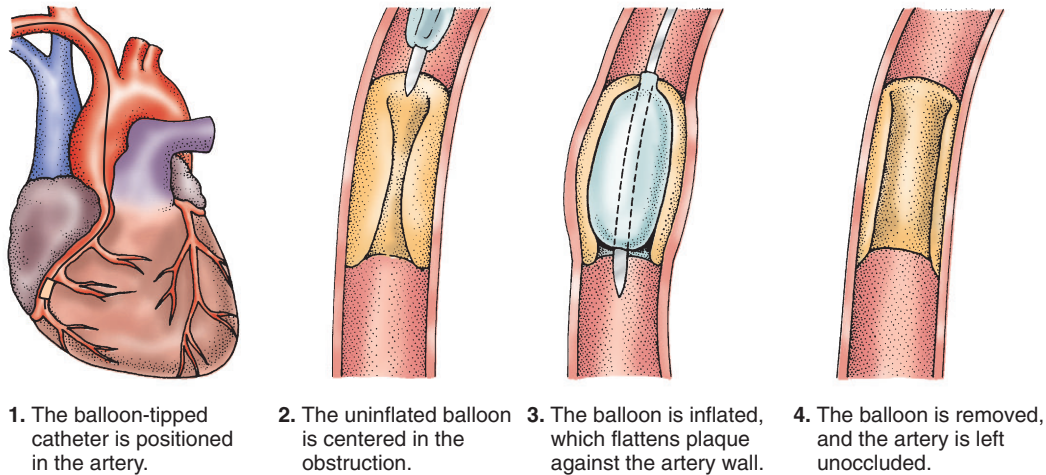


FIG. 40-3 Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After the PTCA, monitor for potential problems including acute closure of the vessel (causes chest pain), bleeding from the insertion site, and reaction to the contrast medium used in angiography. Also monitor for and document hypotension, hypokalemia, and dysrhythmias. Report any of these findings to the physician or Rapid Response Team immediately!

The health care provider usually prescribes a long-term nitrate and dual antiplatelet therapy with aspirin and a thienopyridine for patients after PTCA. A beta blocker and an ACE inhibitor or ARB are added for patients who have had primary angioplasty after an MI. Patients who do not receive a thienopyridine continue to have infusions of GP IIb/IIIa inhibitors during the initial hours after PTCA. Some may experience hypokalemia after the procedure and require careful monitoring and potassium supplements. The nursing interventions for patients receiving these drugs are described in [Chart 40-4](#). Provide careful explanations of drug therapy and any recommended lifestyle changes.

Other Procedures. Other techniques being used to ensure continued patency of the vessel are laser angioplasty (the laser breaks up the clot), atherectomy, and stents. **Atherectomy** devices can either excise and retrieve plaque or emulsify it. One of the advantages of this procedure is that it creates a less bulky vessel with better elastic recoil. **Stents** are expandable metal mesh devices that are used to maintain the patent lumen created by angioplasty or atherectomy. Bare metal or drug-eluting stents (DES) (drug-coated) may be used. By providing a supportive scaffold, these devices prevent closure of the vessel from arterial dissection or vasospasm. A thienopyridine and aspirin (antiplatelet agents) are prescribed for 12 months after a stent has been placed ([Moser & Riegel, 2008](#)). [Fig. 40-4](#) shows a stent positioned in a coronary artery.

Another procedure that may be performed is rheolytic thrombectomy (e.g., [AngioJet®](#), [Vortex®](#)), which uses low-pressure, high-speed saline jets to break up the clot. The [EndiCOR X-SIZER®](#) lances and aspirates a clot simultaneously.

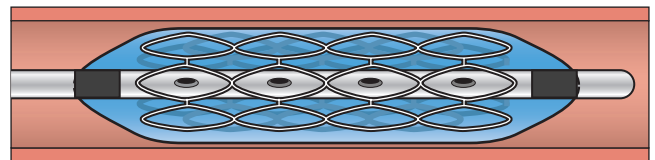


FIG. 40-4 A coronary stent open after balloon inflation.

Injecting vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) during angioplasty has increased perfusion to the wall of the heart. Also, VEGF helps initiate new blood vessel growth and development, which results in increased blood supply to cardiac muscle.

Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery. Over 500,000 **coronary artery bypass graft (CABG)** surgeries are performed in the United States each year. It is the most common type of cardiac surgery and the most common procedure for older adults. Almost half of all CABGs are done for patients older than 65 years ([AHA, 2010](#)). The occluded coronary arteries are bypassed with the patient's own venous or arterial blood vessels or synthetic grafts. *The internal mammary artery (IMA) is the current graft of choice because it has a 90% patency rate at 12 years after the procedure.*

CABG is indicated when patients do not respond to medical management of CAD or when disease progression is evident. Because of the development of drug-eluting stents (DESs), patients who previously had no option other than CABG have been able to have their vessels revascularized without surgery. The decision for surgery is based on the patient's symptoms and the results of cardiac catheterization. Candidates for surgery are patients who have:

- Angina with greater than 50% occlusion of the left main coronary artery that cannot be stented
- Unstable angina with severe two-vessel disease, moderate three-vessel disease, or small-vessel disease in which stents could not be introduced
- Ischemia with heart failure
- Acute MI with cardiogenic shock
- Signs of ischemia or impending MI after angiography or PTCA
- Valvular disease
- Coronary vessels unsuitable for PTCA

The vessels to be bypassed should have proximal clots blocking more than 70% of the vessel's diameter but with good distal runoff. Bypass of less occluded vessels may result in poor perfusion through the graft and early obstruction. CABG is most effective when adequate ventricular function remains and the ejection fraction is close to or greater than 50%. Patients with lower ejection fractions are subject to develop more complications.

For most patients, the risk is low and the benefits of bypass surgery are clear. Surgical treatment of CAD does not appear to affect the life span. Left ventricular function is the most important long-term indicator of survival. CABG improves the quality of life for most patients. Most are pain-free at 1 year after surgery and remain so at 5 years after the procedure. The percentage of patients experiencing some pain increases sharply after 5 years.

Preoperative Care. CABG surgery may be planned as an elective procedure or performed as an emergency. It may be done as a *traditional* operative technique or performed as a *minimally invasive surgical (MIS)* technique. Patients undergoing elective surgery are admitted on the morning of surgery. Preoperative preparations and teaching are completed during prehospitalization interviews. Teach patients that their drugs will be changed after surgery. Ensure that the necessary drugs have been administered before surgery.

Familiarize the patient and family with the cardiac surgical–critical care unit (sometimes referred to as the “open heart” unit), and prepare them for postoperative care. If the procedure is elective, demonstrate and have the patient return a demonstration of how to splint the chest incision, cough, deep breathe, and perform arm and leg exercises. Stress that:

- The patient should report any pain to the nursing staff.
- Most of the pain will be in the site where the vessel was harvested. (With the use of endovascular vessel harvesting [EVH] and one or two small incisions, the pain and edema are less than for previously performed procedures.)
- Analgesics will be given for pain.
- Coughing and deep breathing are essential to prevent pulmonary complications.

- Early ambulation is important to decrease the risk for venous thrombosis and possible embolism.

For the *traditional surgical procedure*, explain that the patient will have a sternal incision; possibly a large leg incision; one, two or three chest tubes; an indwelling urinary catheter; pace-maker wires; and hemodynamic monitoring. An endotracheal tube will be connected to a ventilator for several hours postoperatively. Tell the patient and family that the patient will not be able to talk while the endotracheal tube is in place. When describing the postoperative course, emphasize that close monitoring and the use of sophisticated equipment are standard treatment.

Preoperative anxiety is common. An appropriate nursing assessment should identify the level of anxiety and the coping methods patients have used successfully in the past. Some patients may find it helpful to define their fears. Common sources of fear include fear of the unknown, fear of bodily harm, and fear of death.

In elective procedures, patients may benefit from detailed information about the surgery. Others may feel overwhelmed by so much material. Some patients need to discuss their feelings in detail or describe the experiences of people they know who have undergone CABG. Assess patients' anxiety level and help them cope.

Operative Procedures. Coronary artery bypass surgery is performed with the patient under general anesthesia for both cardiopulmonary bypass and off-pump surgery. For the *traditional operative procedure*, the cardiac surgical team begins the procedure with a median sternotomy incision and visualization of the heart and great vessels. Another surgical team may begin harvesting the vein if it is to be used for the graft. Synthetic grafts may be used instead.

Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) is used to provide oxygenation, circulation, and hypothermia during induced cardiac arrest. Blood is diverted from the heart to the bypass machine, where it is heparinized, oxygenated, and returned to the circulation through a cannula placed in the ascending aortic arch or femoral artery (Fig. 40-5). During bypass, the patient's core temperature remains between 95° F (35° C) (cold cardioplegia) and normal temperature (warm

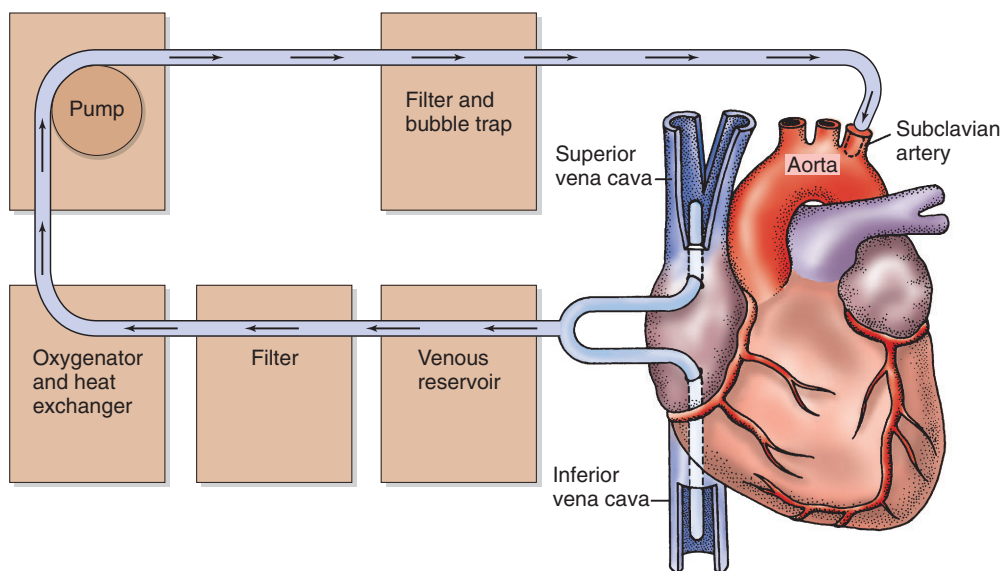


FIG. 40-5 Heart-lung bypass circuitry used during cardiopulmonary bypass.

cardioplegia). Although cooling decreases the rate of metabolism and demand for oxygen, keeping the heart “warm” decreases postoperative complications that were more common when cold cardioplegia was used. The heart is perfused with a potassium solution, which decreases myocardial oxygen consumption and causes the heart to stop during diastole. This process ensures a motionless operative field and prevents myocardial ischemia.

Once the heart is arrested, the grafting procedure can begin. The surgeon uses the internal mammary artery (IMA), a saphenous vein, and/or a radial artery to bypass blockages in the coronary arteries (Fig. 40-6). The distal end of the vessel graft is dissected and attached below the clot in the coronary artery. If the surgeon uses a venous graft or the radial artery, it is anastomosed (sutured) proximally to the aorta and distally to the coronary artery just beyond the occlusion, thus improving myocardial perfusion. After flow rates through the grafts are measured, the heart is rewarmed slowly. The cardioplegic solution is flushed from the heart. The heart regains its rate and rhythm, or it may be defibrillated to return it to a normal rhythm. When the procedure is completed, the patient may be rewarmed (if cold cardioplegia was used) and weaned from the bypass machine while the grafts are observed for patency and leakage. The surgeon may place atrial and ventricular pacemaker wires and mediastinal and pleural chest tubes. Finally, the surgeon closes the sternum with wire sutures.

Postoperative Care. After traditional surgery, the patient is transported to a post-open heart surgery unit and undergoes mechanical ventilation for 3 to 6 hours. He or she requires highly skilled nursing care from a nurse qualified to provide post-cardiac surgery care, including routine postoperative care described in Chapter 18. *Be sure to use sterile technique when changing sternal or donor-site dressings.*

Connect the mediastinal tubes to water seal drainage systems, and ground the epicardial pacer wires by connecting

them to the pacemaker generator. Monitor pulmonary artery and arterial pressures, as well as the heart rate and rhythm, which are displayed on a monitor.

Closely assess the patient for dysrhythmias, such as bradydysrhythmias, atrial fibrillation, or heart block. Manage symptomatic dysrhythmias according to unit protocol or the health care provider’s prescription. Hypoxemia and hypokalemia are frequent causes of ventricular dysrhythmias. If the patient has symptomatic bradydysrhythmias or heart block, turn on the pacemaker and adjust the pacemaker settings as prescribed. Monitor for, report, and document other complications of CABG, including:

- Fluid and electrolyte imbalance
- Hypotension
- Hypothermia
- Hypertension
- Bleeding
- Cardiac tamponade
- Decreased level of consciousness
- Anginal pain

Managing Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalance. *Assessing fluid and electrolyte balance is a high priority in the early postoperative period.* Edema is common. However, decisions concerning fluid administration are made on the basis of BP, pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP), right atrial pressure, cardiac output, cardiac index, systemic vascular resistance, blood loss, and urine output. An experienced specialized nurse interprets the assessment findings and adjusts fluid administration on the basis of standing unit policies or specific prescription from the physician.

Serum electrolytes (especially calcium, magnesium, and potassium) may be decreased postoperatively and are monitored carefully. Because the serum potassium level can fluctuate dramatically, electrolyte levels are checked frequently, since imbalances can cause dysrhythmias. Potassium and magnesium depletions are common and may result from

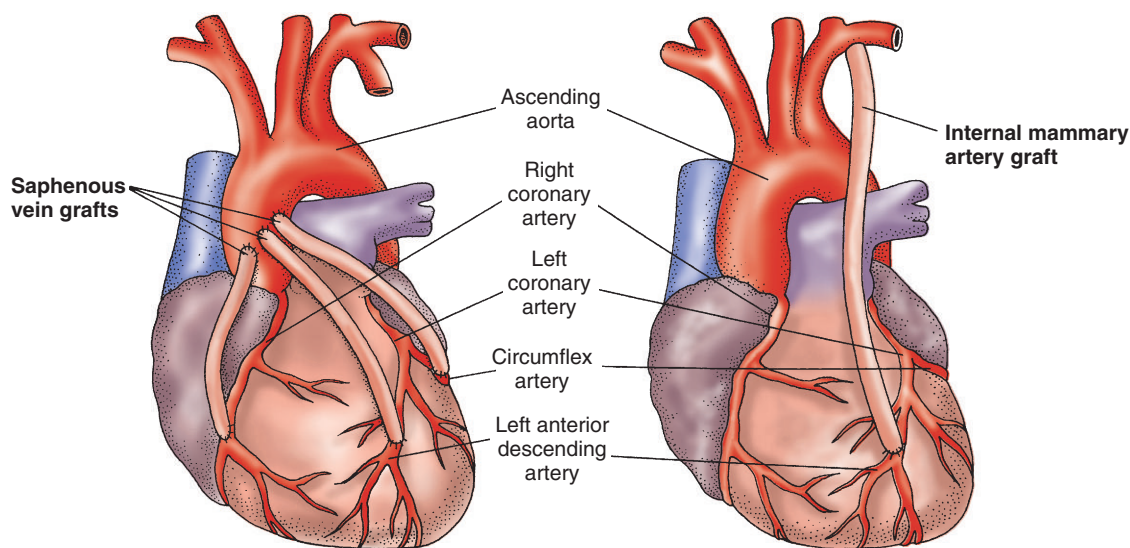


FIG. 40-6 Two methods of coronary artery bypass grafting. The procedure used depends on the nature of the coronary artery disease, the condition of the vessels available for grafting, and the patient’s health status.

hemodilution or diuretic therapy. Calcium replacement is based on the *ionized* serum calcium. The desired potassium level is 4.0 mEq/L, and the magnesium level should be 2.2 mEq/L.

If the serum potassium level is decreased, the health care provider may prescribe IV potassium replacement. The dose of potassium given exceeds the usual recommended level of no more than 20 mEq of potassium per hour. For potassium replacement, as much as 40 to 80 mEq may be mixed in 100 mL of IV solution and given at a rate up to 40 mEq per hour. The drug must be given through a central catheter and controlled by an infusion pump. The patient is placed on a cardiac monitor for intense, focused nursing observation.

Managing Other Complications. *Hypotension* (systolic BP <90 mm Hg) is a major problem because it may result in the collapse of the coronary graft. Decreased preload (decreased PAWP) can result from hypovolemia or vasodilation. If the patient is hypovolemic, it might be appropriate to increase fluid administration or administer blood. The health care provider may manage the patient with volume replacement followed by vasopressor therapy to increase the BP. However, if hypotension is the result of left ventricular failure (increased PAWP), IV inotropes might be needed.

Hypothermia is a common problem after surgery. Although warm cardioplegia is now the usual operative procedure used, it is not uncommon for the body temperature to drift downward after the patient leaves the surgical suite. Monitor the body temperature, and institute rewarming procedures if the temperature drops below 96.8° F (36° C). Rewarming may be accomplished with warm blankets, lights, or thermal blankets. The danger of rewarming patients too quickly is that they may begin shivering, resulting in metabolic acidosis, increased myocardial oxygen consumption, and hypoxia. *To prevent shivering, rewarming should proceed at a rate no faster than 1.8° F (1° C) per hour. Discontinue the procedure when the body temperature approaches 98.6° F (37° C) and the patient's extremities feel warm.*

Hypothermia is a significant risk for the patient after CABG surgery because it promotes vasoconstriction and *hypertension*. Other factors contributing to hypertension in the CABG patient include CPB, drug therapy, and increased sympathetic nervous system activity.

After surgery, many patients experience hypertension (if hypertension is defined as a systolic BP >140 to 150 mm Hg). Hypertension is dangerous because increased pressure promotes leakage from suture lines and may cause bleeding. Afterload reducers such as nitroprusside (Nipride) or fenoldopam (Corlopam) may be given to decrease afterload, ease the workload of the heart, and prevent heart failure.

To access the IMA, the pleural space has to be entered and requires a pleural chest tube with the mediastinal tubes, making pulmonary assessment crucial. An autotransfusion of chest drainage to assist with volume management when 500 mL has accumulated or 4 hours has elapsed may be done, depending on the clinical pathway or the health care provider's protocol. Maintain the patency of the mediastinal and pleural chest tubes. One effective way of promoting chest tube drainage is to prevent a dependent loop from forming in the tubing.

If the patient is bleeding and the mediastinal tubes are not kept patent, fluid (blood) may accumulate around the heart. The myocardium is then compressed, and **cardiac tamponade** results. The fluid compresses the atria and ventricles, preventing them from filling adequately and thus reducing cardiac output.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Assess for, document, and report manifestations of cardiac tamponade immediately, including:

- Sudden cessation of previously heavy mediastinal drainage
- Jugular venous distention but clear lung sounds
- Pulsus paradoxus (BP more than 10 mm Hg higher on expiration than on inspiration)
- An equalizing of PAWP and right atrial pressure
- Cardiovascular collapse

Prepare the patient for echocardiogram or chest x-ray to confirm the diagnosis. Pericardiocentesis (withdrawal of fluid from the pericardium via a large needle) may not be appropriate for tamponade after coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) because the blood in the pericardium may have clotted. Volume expansion and emergency sternotomy with drainage are the treatments of choice.

The patient may also demonstrate *changes in level of consciousness*, which may be permanent or transient (short-term). Transient changes related to anesthesia, cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), air emboli, or hypothermia occur in many patients. Assess for neurologic deficits, which may include slowness to arouse, memory loss, and new-onset confusion.

Patients with transient (temporary) neurologic deficits usually return to baseline neurologic status within 4 to 8 hours. *Permanent* deficits associated with an intraoperative stroke may be manifested by:

- Abnormal pupillary response
- Failure to awaken from anesthesia
- Seizures
- Absence of sensory or motor function

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Bleeding after CABG surgery occurs to a limited extent in all patients. Measure mediastinal and pleural chest tube drainage at least hourly. Report drainage amounts over 150 mL per hour to the surgeon. Patients with internal mammary artery (IMA) grafts may have more chest drainage than those with saphenous vein grafts (from the leg).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After a CABG, check the patient's neurologic status every 30 to 60 minutes until he or she has awakened from anesthesia. Then check every 2 to 4 hours or per agency policy.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client had a coronary artery bypass graft 2 days ago and has a new onset of atrial fibrillation. What diagnostic test will the nurse check that could explain this dysrhythmia?

- A. Arterial oxygen level
- B. Serum potassium
- C. Serum sodium
- D. Blood urea nitrogen

Managing Pain. Differentiate between *sternotomy pain*, which is expected after CABG, and *anginal pain*, which might indicate graft failure. Typical sternotomy pain is localized, does not radiate, and often becomes worse when the patient coughs or breathes deeply. He or she may describe the pain as sharp, aching, or burning. Pain may stimulate the sympathetic nervous system, which increases the heart rate and vascular resistance while decreasing cardiac output. Administer enough of the prescribed analgesic in adequate doses to control pain. During the process of weaning the patient from mechanical ventilation, however, it may be necessary to use short-acting analgesics and to limit pain medication because of the respiratory depressant effects of analgesia.

Transfer from the Special Care Unit. Mechanical ventilation is usually provided for 3 to 6 hours after surgery until the patient is breathing adequately and is hemodynamically stable. During the first day, the patient usually has pacemaker wires, hemodynamic monitoring lines, and mediastinal tubes removed. He or she is then transferred to an intermediate care unit. *All CABG patients, especially those with IMA grafts, are at high risk for atelectasis, the number-one complication. Encourage them to splint, cough, turn, and deep breathe to expectorate secretions. Early ambulation after surgery is essential.* Two hours after extubation (removal of the endotracheal tube), patients should be dangled as tolerated and turned side to side. Within 4 to 8 hours after extubation, help patients out of bed into a chair. By the first day after surgery, they should be out of bed in a chair and ambulating 25 to 100 feet three times a day as tolerated. Continue to monitor for decreased cardiac output, pain, dysrhythmias, decreased oxygen saturation, and infection during these activities.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Monitor the neurovascular status of the donor arm of patients whose radial artery was used as a graft in CABG. Assess the hand color, temperature, pulse (both ulnar and radial), and capillary refill every hour initially. In addition, check the fingertips, hand, and arm for sensation and mobility at least every 4 hours. IV nitroglycerin is often given for the first 24 hours postoperatively to promote vasodilation in the donor arm and therefore maintain circulation.

Many patients have supraventricular dysrhythmias (especially atrial fibrillation) during the postoperative period, usually on the second or third postoperative day. Examine the monitor pattern for atrial fibrillation. When auscultating the heart, listen for an irregular rhythm.

Sternal wound infections develop between 5 days and several weeks after surgery in a small number of patients and are responsible for increased costs and longer hospital stays. Be alert for **mediastinitis** (infection of the mediastinum) by observing for:

- Fever continuing beyond the first 4 days after CABG
- Instability (bogginess) of the sternum
- Redness, induration, swelling, or drainage from suture sites
- An increased white blood cell count

The health care provider may perform a needle biopsy to confirm a sternal infection. Surgical débridement, antibiotic wound irrigation, and IV antibiotics are usually indicated. If sternal osteomyelitis has developed, 4 to 6 weeks of IV antibiotics are required. Prophylactic use of mupirocin (Bactroban) intranasally may be prescribed to decrease the incidence of sternal wound infection.

Postpericardiotomy syndrome is a source of chest discomfort for some post-cardiac surgery patients. The syndrome is characterized by pericardial and pleural pain, pericarditis, a friction rub, an elevated temperature and white blood cell count, and dysrhythmias. Postpericardiotomy syndrome may occur days to weeks after surgery and seems to be associated with blood remaining in the pericardial sac. Observe for the development of pericardial or pleural pain. For most patients, the syndrome is mild and self-limiting. However, they may require treatment similar to that for pericarditis. Be prepared to detect acute cardiac (pericardial) tamponade (see Chapter 37).

Minimally Invasive Direct Coronary Artery Bypass. The **minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass (MIDCAB)** (also known as “keyhole” surgery) may be indicated for patients with a lesion of the left anterior descending (LAD) artery. In one of the most common MIDCAB procedures, a 2-inch left thoracotomy incision is made and the fourth rib is removed. Then, the left internal mammary artery (IMA) is dissected and attached to the still-beating heart below the level of the lesion. Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) is not required.

After surgery, assess for chest pain and ECG changes (Q waves and ST-segment and T-wave changes in leads V₂ to V₆) because occlusion of the IMA graft occurs acutely in about 10% of patients. *If there is any question of acute graft closure, immediately notify the health care provider.* Patients tend to have more incisional pain after MIDCAB than after traditional CABG surgery, but the pain can usually be managed with oxycodone or codeine. *Because they have a thoracotomy incision and a chest tube or smaller-lumen vacuum chest device, patients are encouraged to cough, deep breathe, and use an incentive spirometer for a week postoperatively.* Most patients spend less than 6 hours in a critical care unit and are discharged in 2 or 3 days.

Endovascular (Endoscopic) Vessel Harvesting (EVH). Regardless of whether the traditional CABG or the MIDCAB is performed, the donor vessel may be obtained using an endoscope rather than a large surgical incision. The radial artery or a vein in the leg may be taken using this method. Instead of a large, painful incision, the patient has one or two very small incisions in the leg or arm. This procedure has decreased hospital length of stay, postoperative complications, and pain.

Transmyocardial Laser Revascularization. **Transmyocardial laser revascularization** is a procedure for patients with unstable angina and inoperable CAD with areas of reversible myocardial ischemia. After a single-lung intubation, a left anterior thoracotomy is performed and the heart is visualized. A laser is used to create 20 to 24 long, narrow channels through the left ventricular muscle to the left ventricle. These channels will eventually allow oxygenated blood to flow during diastole from the left ventricle to nourish the muscle. After surgery, the patient is transported to a critical care unit, where hemodynamic monitoring is used to assess for anginal episodes and bleeding disturbances.

Off-Pump Coronary Artery Bypass. Off-pump coronary artery bypass (OPCAB) is a procedure in which open heart surgery is performed without the use of a heart-lung bypass machine. Advantages include shorter hospital stays and decreased mortality rate, risk for infection, and cost. The disadvantage of OPCAB is that it requires cardiac surgeons to have increased skill to master the technique.

Robotic Heart Surgery. Robotic heart surgery is a new step toward less invasive open heart surgery. Surgeons operate endoscopically through very small incisions in the chest wall. Use of robotics provides surgeons with capabilities that simplify the surgical process, eliminates tremors that can exist with human hands, increases the ability to reach otherwise inaccessible sites, and improves depth perception and visual acuity.

Other advantages of robotic procedures include shorter hospital stays (average stay is 2 to 3 days), less pain because of smaller incisions, no need for heart-lung bypass machine, less anxiety for the patient, and greater patient acceptance. The use of robotics also allows surgeons to perform telesurgery, performing heart procedures over long distances.

Disadvantages include computer failure, limited numbers of surgeons skilled in these techniques, and the length of surgery time (the time is about 50 minutes longer than the conventional surgery).

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

Case management is most appropriate for patients who meet high-cost, high-volume, and high-risk criteria. Patients with coronary artery disease (CAD) clearly meet all these criteria. Clinical pathways and case management programs for those with CAD are used in most U.S. hospitals. By focusing on cardiovascular risk reduction and improving the continuity of care, health care professionals have reduced the length and cost of hospital stays. Posthospital case management should reduce hospital readmission rates and improve patient health.

Patients who have experienced a myocardial infarction (MI), angina, or coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery are usually discharged to home or to a transitional care setting with drug therapy and specific activity prescriptions. Depending on the procedure, hospital stays may be 3 to 5 days for patients with MI or those undergoing CABG and only 1 to 3 days for those undergoing percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA) or newer surgeries. Therefore patients are still recovering when they are discharged from the hospital and need continuing care.

Patients should not be discharged to home alone. Assess whether the patient has family or friends to provide

assistance. In some cases, a home care nurse may be needed (Chart 40-7). Older adults are often living alone when coronary events occur and may have a greater need for home assistance after CABG surgery (Chart 40-8). A patient who was a resident in a long-term care facility may be returned there after hospitalization for unstable angina, MI, or CABG surgery.

CHART 40-7 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient Who Has Had a Myocardial Infarction

Assess cardiovascular function, including:

- Current vital signs (compare with previous to identify changes)
- Recurrence of discomfort (characteristics, frequency, onset)
- Indications of heart failure (weight gain, crackles, cough, dyspnea)
- Adequacy of tissue perfusion (mentation, skin temperature, peripheral pulses, urine output)
- Indications of serious dysrhythmia (very irregular pulse, palpitations with fainting or near fainting)

Assess coping skills, including:

- Is patient displaying denial, anger, or fear?
- Is the caregiver providing adequate support?
- Are the patient and caregiver disagreeing about treatment?

Assess functional ability, including:

- Activity tolerance (examine the patient's activity diary: review distance, duration, frequency, and symptoms occurring during exercise)
- Activities of daily living (is any assistance needed?)
- Household chores (who performs them?)
- Does patient plan to return to work? When?

Assess nutritional status, including:

- Food intake (review patient's intake of fats and cholesterol)

Assess patient's understanding of illness and treatment, including:

- How to treat chest discomfort
- Signs and symptoms to report to health care provider
- Dosage, effects, and side effects of medications
- How to advance and when to limit activity
- Modification of risk factors for coronary artery disease

CHART 40-8 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery

- Be aware that perioperative mortality rates are higher for the older patient than for the patient younger than 60 years.
- Monitor neurologic and mental status carefully because older adults are more likely to have transient neurologic deficits after coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery than younger adults are.
- Observe for side effects of cardiac drugs because older patients are more likely to develop toxic effects from positive inotropes (dobutamine) and potent antihypertensives (nitroglycerin or nitroprusside).
- Monitor the patient closely for dysrhythmias because older adults are more likely to have dysrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation or supraventricular tachycardia, after CABG surgery.
- Be aware that recuperation after CABG surgery is slower for older patients and that their average hospital stay is longer.
- Teach the patient and family that during the first 2 to 5 weeks after discharge, fatigue, chest discomfort, and lack of appetite may be particularly bothersome for older adults.
- Teach patient to let someone know where he or she is walking outside.

Cardiac rehabilitation is available in most communities for patients after an MI or CABG surgery, but only a small percentage participate in structured rehabilitation programs. Dolansky et al. (2010) found that although post-acute care (PAC) is available for older adults, only 50% of patients who had a myocardial infarction (MI) received PAC. Only 44% of patients who had cardiac surgery participated in post-acute care (see the Evidence-Based Practice box below).

The most frequently cited reasons for nonparticipation are lack of insurance coverage, a physician's decision that it is unnecessary, and the patient's decision that it is not necessary. Those who participate in these programs report greater improvement in exercise tolerance and improved ability to control stress. However, no difference in their return to work has been seen (AHA, 2010).

Teaching for Self-Management

The need for health teaching depends in part on the treatment plan or type of procedure that the patient received. Because hospital stays are short and patients are quite ill during hospitalization, most in-hospital education programs concentrate on the skills essential for self-care after discharge.

As part of home visits or a cardiac rehabilitation program, identify the additional educational needs of the patient and

family and their readiness to learn. Develop a teaching plan, which usually includes education about the normal anatomy and physiology of the heart, the pathophysiology of angina and MI, risk factor modification, activity and exercise protocols, cardiac drugs, and when to seek medical assistance. Teach patients that myocardial healing after an MI begins early and is usually complete in 6 to 8 weeks. Remind those who have undergone traditional CABG that the sternotomy should heal in about 6 to 8 weeks but upper body exercise needs to be limited for several months.

Patients who have undergone CABG require instruction on incision care for the sternum and the graft site. Teach them to inspect the incisions daily for any redness, swelling, or drainage. The leg of a saphenous vein donor site is often edematous. Instruct patients to avoid crossing legs, to wear elastic stockings until the edema subsides, and to elevate the surgical limb when sitting in a chair. Teach patients who have had a radial artery graft to open and close the hand vigorously 10 times every 2 hours.

Risk Factor Modification. Modification of risk factors is a necessary part of a patient's management and involves changing his or her health maintenance patterns. Such modifications may include tobacco cessation, altered nutritional habits, regular exercise, BP control, and blood glucose control. Each of these factors has been discussed earlier in this chapter in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section.

For patients who use tobacco, explain its negative effects, especially cigarette smoking. Many patients choose to quit smoking soon after an MI. Chapter 38 also provides information on this lifestyle change.

The mainstays of cholesterol control are nutritional therapy and anti-hyperlipidemic agents, as described in Chapter 38. Teach patients to avoid adding salt when beginning a meal. A reduction of 80 mg/day of sodium can reduce the systolic blood pressure (SBP) by 5 mm Hg and 3 mm Hg for the diastolic blood pressure (DBP). Maintain adequate dietary potassium, calcium, and magnesium intake. Increasing potassium may reduce the SBP by 8 mm Hg. Booklets and cookbooks that can assist the patient in learning to cook with reduced fats, oils, and salt are available from the American Heart Association (AHA).

Collaborate with the physical therapist to establish an activity and exercise schedule as part of rehabilitation, depending on the cardiac procedure that was performed. Instruct the patient to remain near home during the first week after discharge and to continue a walking program. Patients may engage in light housework or any activity done while sitting and that does not precipitate angina. During the second week, they are encouraged to increase social activities and possibly to return to work part-time. By the third week, they may begin to lift objects as heavy as 15 pounds (e.g., 2 gallons of milk) but should avoid lifting or pulling heavier objects for the first 6 to 8 weeks. Chart 40-9 lists suggested instructions for activity level.

Patients may begin a simple walking program by walking 400 feet twice a day at the rate of 1 mile/hr the first week after discharge and increasing the distance and rate as tolerated, usually weekly, until they can walk 2 miles at 3 to 4 miles/hr. Teach them to take their pulse reading before, halfway through, and after exercise. Teach the patient to stop exercising if the target pulse rate is exceeded or if dyspnea or angina develops.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

How Many Older Adults Who Had a Cardiac Event Participate in Post-Acute Care Programs?

Dolansky, M.A., Xu, F., Zullio, M., Shishehbor, B., Moore, S.M., & Rimm, A.A. (2010). Post-acute care services received by older adults following a cardiac event: A population-based analysis. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(4), 342-349.

Post-acute care (cardiac rehabilitation) is widely available in a number of settings, including home care, nursing homes, and transitional care units. A cross-section research design was used to review the 2003 Medicare database of all older adults who had cardiac events, such as valve surgery, myocardial infarction (MI), coronary artery bypass graft (CABG), and percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), to determine what percentage of patients in each category received post-acute care (PAC). Medical patients used more skilled nursing home care, and surgical patients participated more in home care. Only 65% who had valve surgery, 50% who had an MI, 44% who had a CABG, and 5% who had PTCA participated in cardiac rehabilitation programs after hospitalization. Asians, Hispanics, and Native Americans were less likely to use these programs. The cause is not known.

Level of Evidence: 1

This study was an analysis of a large population sample (over 1 million Medicare patients in the database) so that conclusions could be drawn for generalization.

Commentary: Implications for Nursing Research and Practice

In view of the low percentages of older adults who received post-acute care (PAC) after a cardiac event, nurses need to encourage all patients to participate in cardiac rehabilitation. Collaborate with the case manager or discharge planner to ensure a smooth transition and appropriate placement. Further studies need to be conducted to explain why the identified minority groups use PAC less often than their Euro-American counterparts.

CHART 40-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Activity for the Patient with Coronary Artery Disease

- Begin by walking the same distance at home as in the hospital (usually 400 feet) three times each day.
- Carry nitroglycerin with you.
- Check your pulse before, during, and after the exercise.
- Stop the activity for a pulse increase of more than 20 beats/min, shortness of breath, angina, or dizziness.
- Exercise outdoors when the weather is good.
- Gradually increase the walking until the distance is $\frac{1}{4}$ mile twice daily (usually the end of the second week).
- After an exercise tolerance test and with your physician's approval, walk at least three times each week, increasing the distance by $\frac{1}{2}$ mile every other week, until the total distance is 2 miles.
- Avoid straining (lifting, push-ups, pull-ups, and straining at bowel movements).

After a limited exercise tolerance test, the physical therapist or nurse encourages the patient to join a formal exercise program, ideally one that assists him or her in monitoring cardiovascular progress. The program should include 5- to 7-minute warm-up and cool-down periods, as well as 30 minutes of aerobic exercise. The patient should engage in aerobic exercise a minimum of three (and preferably five) times a week.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Additional therapies can aid in reducing the patient's anxiety about progressive activity both in the immediate postoperative period and during the rehabilitation phase. Many patients who have had cardiac surgery or other invasive procedures use complementary and alternative therapies. However, they often do not share with their health care providers that they use these therapies. Techniques such as progressive muscle relaxation, guided imagery, music therapy, pet therapy, and therapeutic touch may decrease anxiety, reduce depression, and increase compliance with activity and exercise regimens after heart surgery.

Sexual Activity. Sexual activity is often a subject of great concern to patients and their partners. Inform the patient and his or her partner that engaging in their usual sexual activity is unlikely to damage the heart. Patients can resume sexual intercourse on the advice of the health care provider, usually after an exercise tolerance assessment. In general, those who can walk one block or climb two flights of stairs without symptoms can usually safely resume sexual activity.

Suggest that initially these patients have intercourse after a period of rest. They might try having intercourse in the morning when they are well rested or wait $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours after exercise or a heavy meal. The position selected should be comfortable for both the patient and his or her partner so that no undue stress is placed on the heart or suture line.

Drug Therapy. Assess patients with diabetes mellitus for their ability to control hyperglycemia. Review the prescribed dosage of insulin or oral antidiabetic drugs with the patient and family. The patient and/or family should demonstrate accurate testing of blood for glucose levels and the technique for insulin administration, if used.

CHART 40-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Management of Chest Pain at Home

- Keep fresh nitroglycerin available for immediate use.
- At the first indication of chest discomfort, cease activity and sit or lie down.
- Place one nitroglycerin tablet or spray under your tongue, allowing the tablet to dissolve.
- Wait 5 minutes for relief.
- If no relief results, call 911 for transportation to a health care facility.
- While waiting for emergency medical services (EMS), repeat the nitroglycerin and wait 5 more minutes.
- If there is no relief, repeat and wait 5 more minutes.
- Carry a medical identification card or wear a bracelet or necklace that identifies a history of heart problems.

Teach the patient about the type of prescribed cardiac drugs, the benefit of each drug, potential side effects, and the correct dosage and time of day to take each drug. Drug regimens vary considerably. However, many patients with angina are discharged while taking aspirin, a beta blocker, a calcium channel blocker, an anti-hyperlipidemic agent, and a nitrate. Those who have experienced an MI may require aspirin, a beta blocker, an anti-hyperlipidemic agent, and an ACE inhibitor and/or an ARB. The regimen can be complex. Determine whether the patient can comply with the instructions.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Use of sublingual or spray nitroglycerin (NTG) deserves special attention. *Teach the patient to carry NTG at all times.* Keep the tablets in a glass, light-resistant container. The drug should be replaced every 3 to 5 months before it loses its potency or stops producing a tingling sensation when placed under the tongue. [Chart 40-10](#) gives instructions for management of chest discomfort at home.

Seeking Medical Assistance. Teach patients to notify their health care provider if they have:

- Heart rate remaining less than 50 after arising
- Wheezing or difficulty breathing
- Weight gain of 3 pounds in 1 week or 1 to 2 pounds overnight
- Persistent increase in NTG use
- Dizziness, faintness, or shortness of breath with activity

Remind them to always call 911 for transportation to the hospital if they have:

- Chest discomfort that does not improve after 5 minutes or 1 sublingual NTG tablet or spray
- Extremely severe chest or epigastric discomfort with weakness, nausea, or fainting
- Other associated symptoms that are particular to them, such as fatigue and nausea

Health Care Resources

The American Heart Association (AHA) is an excellent source for booklets, films, CDs, DVDs, cookbooks, and professional service referrals for the patient with coronary artery disease (CAD). Many local chapters have their own cardiac rehabilitation programs.

Within the community, cardiac rehabilitation programs may be affiliated with local hospitals, community centers, or other facilities, such as clinics. Many shopping malls open before shopping hours to allow a measured walking program indoors. This opportunity is particularly popular with older patients because it provides a good support group and allows for an appropriate place to exercise in inclement weather.

Mended Hearts is a nationwide program with local chapters that provides education and support to coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) patients and their families. Smoking-cessation programs and clinics and weight-reduction programs are located within the community. Many hospitals also sponsor health fairs, BP screening, and risk factor modification programs.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with CAD based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient will:

- State that discomfort or other symptoms are alleviated
- Have adequate blood flow through the coronary vasculature to ensure heart function

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of coronary artery disease?

- Report of pain (chest, shoulder, arm, jaw, back, or abdomen)
- Report of persistent indigestion
- Dyspnea
- Diaphoresis
- Report of nausea
- Vomiting
- Anxious behavior
- Report of palpitations
- Report of fatigue
- Disorientation or acute confusion (especially in older adults)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion as a result of coronary artery disease?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Taking 12-lead ECG
- Assessing level of consciousness and cognition
- Conducting complete pain assessment



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration; Safety

A 69-year-old woman had two myocardial infarctions within the same month. She had a percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty and three stents placed and is now pain-free. The patient is admitted to the transitional care unit (TCU) for cardiac rehabilitation for 20 days. Her daughter works as a clerk in a retail store and is unable to care for her mother after the patient leaves the TCU. There are no other family members who could care for her. The patient lives alone on her monthly Social Security check and has no other source of income or financial assets.

1. What are the expected outcomes for this patient as a result of cardiac rehabilitation?
2. What is the role of the physical therapist in cardiac rehabilitation?
3. What other members of the health care team will the nurse collaborate with to ensure the patient's continuity of care?
4. Because there are no family members to care for this patient after discharge, what options does she have?

- Walk 200 feet four times a day without discomfort, shortness of breath, or other symptoms of CAD
- Identify support systems and other sources to assist in effective coping with the cardiac event
- Be free of complications, such as dysrhythmias and heart failure

- Drawing blood for laboratory assessment (e.g., troponins)
- Auscultating breath sounds for crackles or wheezes (left-sided heart failure)
- Auscultating heart for abnormal heart sounds
- Assessing for peripheral edema (right-sided heart failure)

Respond by:

- Calling 911 if patient is not in hospital setting OR notifying physician or Rapid Response Team in hospital setting
- Ensuring that patient rests
- Giving oxygen
- Giving nitroglycerin tablet
- Maintaining or starting IV line
- Administering morphine sulfate if MI suspected or diagnosed

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for decreased report of pain and associated symptoms.
- Continue to monitor oxygen.
- Continue to monitor for dysrhythmias and vital signs.
- Think about what could have precipitated this coronary event.
- Think about how you responded.
- Develop teaching plan for the patient to help prevent further episodes.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Collaborate with members of the interdisciplinary health care team members (e.g., physical therapist, case manager, home care providers) when caring for the cardiac patient.
- Ensure effective communication among all health care providers, especially when transferring the patient from the hospital to community-based settings.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Assist patients in securing personal medical identification alert devices that provide information regarding their heart conditions.
- In collaboration with the interdisciplinary health care team, assess the patient for activity tolerance and help design an appropriate exercise regimen.
- Teach the patient about the signs and symptoms of cardiovascular disease and when to seek medical assistance.
- Assess the patient for risk factors for coronary artery disease (CAD), such as obesity, smoking, positive family history, cholesterol management, and the diagnosis and treatment of hypertension.
- Teach patients about the importance of decreasing their risk for CAD.
- Be sure that older adults have adequate support at home after discharge from the hospital. Refer patients and families to appropriate community programs and support groups.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow patients to verbalize and express feelings of fear, anxiety, anger, denial, and grief regarding their CAD.

- Address the needs of the family and significant others, and provide teaching and information regarding the disease process. Clarify any misconceptions.

Physiological Integrity

- Explain to patients the need to make lifestyle changes for modifiable risk factors. Nonmodifiable risk factors like age and family history cannot be changed (see [Chart 40-1](#)).
- Teach patients that angina is the pain associated with decreased blood flow to the heart muscle. An MI indicates necrosis of heart muscle tissue (see [Chart 40-2](#)).
- Identify and interpret diagnostic values for cardiac markers, such as troponins and myoglobin, and other indicators of CAD.
- Monitor patients receiving thrombolytics and anticoagulants, such as heparin, for bleeding.
- For patients undergoing invasive cardiac procedures, assess for signs and symptoms of active bleeding.
- Interpret and assess the patient with CAD for dysrhythmias.
- Evaluate the patient for pain characteristics (e.g., type, location, duration, cause, intensity, and measures taken to relieve symptoms).
- Teach patients and their families about drug therapy, including how to use nitroglycerin if they have chest or other cardiac-related pain (see [Chart 40-4](#)).
- Identify and assess for complications for post-cardiac surgery patients, especially fluid and electrolyte imbalance, bleeding, hypothermia, hypertension, and angina pain.
- Provide emergency care for the patient with chest pain as described in [Chart 40-3](#).



Problems of Tissue Perfusion

Management of Patients with Problems of the Hematologic System

CHAPTER 41

Assessment of the Hematologic System

M. Linda Workman

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key to NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Verify that the patient has given informed consent for a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Assess the patient's endurance in performing ADLs.
3. Perform a clinical health history and risk assessment for hematologic function.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during procedures to assess hematologic function.

Physiological Integrity

5. Explain the relationship between hematologic problems and the need for oxygen.
6. Describe the hematologic changes associated with aging.
7. Describe the role of platelets in hemostasis.
8. Interpret blood cell counts and clotting tests to assess hematologic status.
9. Explain the effects of anticoagulants, fibrinolytics, and inhibitors of platelet activity on hematologic function.
10. Prioritize nursing care for the patient after bone marrow aspiration.

The blood, blood cells, lymph, and organs involved with blood formation or blood storage together compose the hematologic system. This system is important for *oxygenation* and tissue perfusion because the blood itself is one of the oxygen delivery systems (Fig. 41-1). All systems depend on

the blood for oxygen perfusion. Thus any problem of the hematologic system affects total body health and well-being. This chapter, together with Chapter 19, reviews the normal physiology of the hematologic system and assessment of hematologic status.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Bone Marrow

Bone marrow is the tissue responsible for blood formation. It produces red blood cells (RBCs, erythrocytes), white blood cells (WBCs, leukocytes), and platelets. Bone marrow also is involved in the immune responses (see Chapter 19).

Each day the bone marrow normally releases about 2.5 billion RBCs, 2.5 billion platelets, and 1 billion WBCs per kilogram of body weight. In adults, cell-producing marrow is present only in flat bones (sternum, skull, pelvic and shoulder girdles) and the ends of long bones. With aging, fatty tissue slowly replaces active bone marrow and only a small portion of the remaining marrow continues to produce blood in older adults (Touhy & Jett, 2010).

The bone marrow first produces **blood stem cells**, which are immature, unspecialized (undifferentiated) cells. These

are capable of becoming any one of several types of blood cells: RBCs, WBCs, or platelets, depending on the body's needs (Fig. 41-2) (McCance et al., 2010).

The next stage in blood cell production is the *committed stem cell* (also called the *precursor cell*). A committed stem cell enters one growth pathway and can at that point specialize (differentiate) into only one cell type. Committed stem cells actively divide but require the presence of a specific growth factor for specialization. For example, erythropoietin is a growth factor made in the kidneys that is specific for the RBC. Other growth factors influence WBC and platelet growth (see Chapters 19, 24, and 42 for discussion of growth factors and cytokines).

Blood Components

Blood is composed of plasma and cells. Plasma is part of the body's extracellular fluid. It is similar to the interstitial fluid found between tissue cells, but plasma contains much more protein. The three major types of plasma proteins are albumin, globulins, and fibrinogen.

Albumin maintains the osmotic pressure of the blood, preventing the plasma from leaking into the tissues (see Chapter 13). *Globulins* have many functions, such as transporting other substances and, as antibodies, protecting the body against infection. *Fibrinogen* is an inactive protein that is activated to form fibrin. Fibrin molecules assemble together to form structures important in the blood clotting process.

The blood cells include RBCs, WBCs, and platelets. These cells differ in structure, site of maturation, and function.

Red blood cells (erythrocytes) are the largest proportion of blood cells. Mature RBCs have no nucleus and have a biconcave disk shape. Together with a flexible membrane, this feature allows RBCs to change their shape without breaking as they pass through narrow, winding capillaries. The number of RBCs a person has varies with gender, age, and

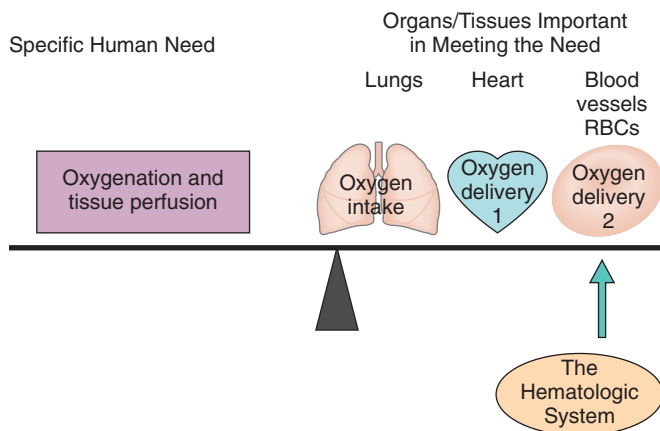


FIG. 41-1 Role of the hematologic system in oxygenation and tissue perfusion. RBCs, Red blood cells.

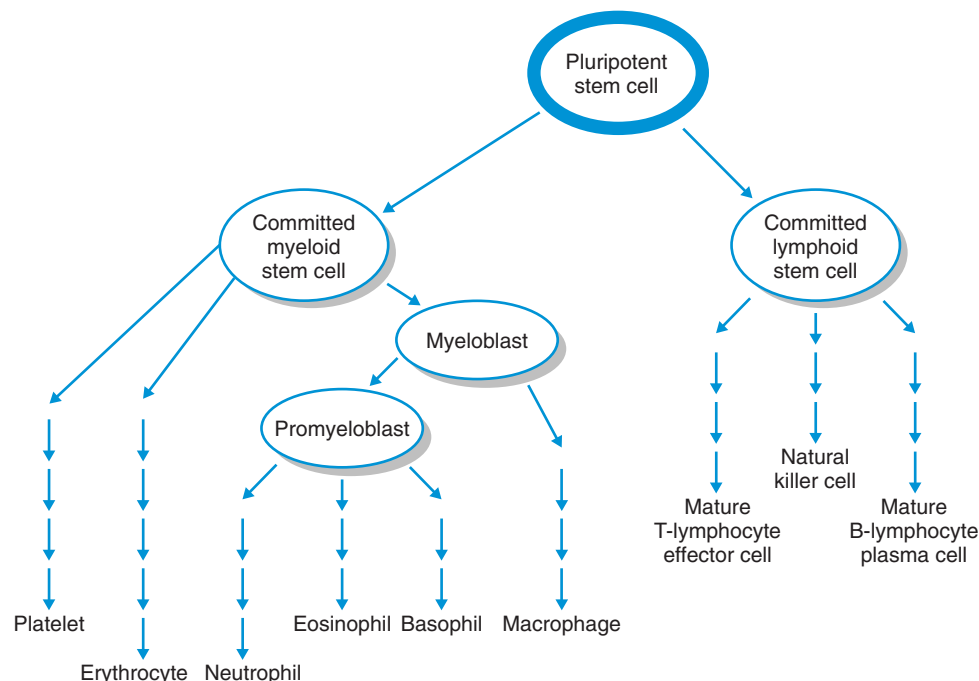


FIG. 41-2 Bone marrow cell growth and blood cell differentiation pathways.

general health, but the normal range is from 4,200,000 to 6,100,000/mm³.

As shown in Figs. 41-2 and 41-3, RBCs start out as stem cells, enter the myeloid pathway, and progress in stages to mature RBCs (erythrocytes). Healthy, mature RBCs have a life span of about 120 days after being released into the blood. As RBCs age, their membranes become more fragile. These old cells are trapped and destroyed in the tissues, spleen, and liver. Some parts of destroyed RBCs (e.g., iron, hemoglobin) are recycled and used to make new RBCs.

The RBCs produce hemoglobin (Hgb). Each normal mature RBC contains hundreds of thousands of hemoglobin molecules. The heme part of each hemoglobin molecule needs a molecule of iron to be able to transport up to four molecules of oxygen. *Therefore iron is an essential part of hemoglobin.* The globin portion of hemoglobin carries carbon dioxide. RBCs also are buffers and help maintain acid-base balance.

The most important feature of hemoglobin is its ability to combine loosely with oxygen. With only a small drop in tissue oxygen levels, an increase in the transfer of oxygen from hemoglobin to tissues occurs, known as **oxygen dissociation**. See Chapter 29 for a complete discussion of the physiological concept of oxygen dissociation.

The total number of RBCs a person has is carefully controlled to ensure that enough are present for good oxygenation without having too many cells that could “thicken” the blood and slow its flow. Thus RBC production or **erythropoiesis** (selective growth of stem cells into mature erythrocytes) must be properly balanced with RBC destruction or loss. When balanced, this process helps tissue perfusion by

ensuring adequate delivery of oxygen. The trigger for RBC production is an increase in the need for tissue oxygenation. The kidney produces the RBC growth factor *erythropoietin* at the same rate as RBC destruction or loss occurs to maintain a constant normal level of circulating RBCs. When tissue oxygenation is less than normal (**hypoxia**), the kidney releases more erythropoietin. This growth factor then stimulates increased RBC production in the bone marrow. When tissue oxygenation is normal or high, the kidney reduces erythropoietin levels, slowing the production of RBCs. Synthetic erythropoietin (Procrit, Epogen, EPO) has the same effect on bone marrow as the naturally occurring erythropoietin.

Many substances are needed to form hemoglobin and RBCs, including iron, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, copper, pyridoxine, cobalt, and nickel. A lack of any of these substances can lead to anemia. Anemia is the result of any problem that reduces the function or the number of RBCs to the point that tissue oxygen needs are not completely met.

White blood cells (WBCs, leukocytes) perform actions important for protection through inflammation and immunity (Table 41-1). The many types of WBCs all have specialized functions. Many WBCs are formed in the bone marrow and are part of the hematologic system. WBC function is presented in Chapter 19.

Platelets are the third type of blood cells. They are the smallest of the blood cells, formed as fragments of a giant

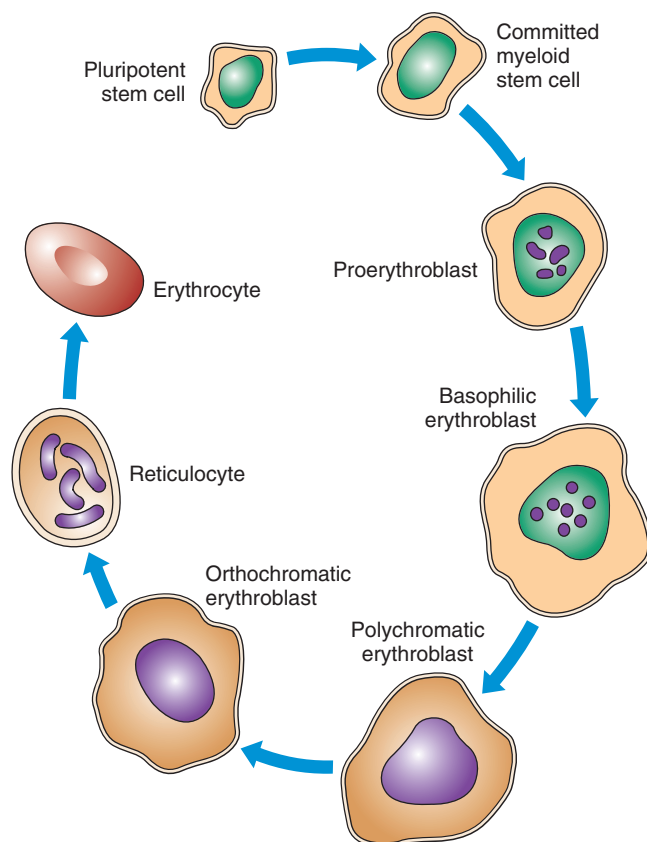


FIG. 41-3 Erythrocyte (red blood cell) growth pathway.

TABLE 41-1 FUNCTIONS OF SPECIFIC LEUKOCYTES

LEUKOCYTE	FUNCTION
Inflammation	
Neutrophil	Nonspecific ingestion and phagocytosis of microorganisms and foreign protein
Macrophage	Nonspecific recognition of foreign proteins and microorganisms; ingestion and phagocytosis
Monocyte	Destruction of bacteria and cellular debris; matures into macrophage
Eosinophil	Weak phagocytic action; releases vasoactive amines during allergic reactions
Basophil	Releases histamine and heparin in areas of tissue damage
Antibody-Mediated Immunity	
B-lymphocyte	Becomes sensitized to foreign cells and proteins
Plasma cell	Secretes immunoglobulins in response to the presence of a specific antigen
Memory cell	Remains sensitized to a specific antigen and can secrete increased amounts of immunoglobulins specific to the antigen
Cell-Mediated Immunity	
T-lymphocyte helper/inducer T-cell	Enhances immune activity through the secretion of various factors, cytokines, and lymphokines
Cytotoxic-cytolytic T-cell	Selectively attacks and destroys non-self cells, including virally infected cells, grafts, and transplanted organs
Natural killer cell	Nonselectively attacks non-self cells, especially body cells that have undergone mutation and become malignant; also attacks grafts and transplanted organs

precursor cell in the bone marrow, the megakaryocyte. Platelets stick to injured blood vessel walls and form platelet plugs that can stop the flow of blood from the injured site. They also produce substances important to blood clotting (*coagulation*), and perform most of their functions by *aggregation* (clumping together). Platelets help keep blood vessels intact by initiating repair after damage to small blood vessels.

Bone marrow production of platelets also is precisely controlled by the growth factor *thrombopoietin*. After platelets leave the bone marrow, they are stored in the spleen and then released slowly to meet the body's needs. Normally, 80% of platelets circulate and 20% are stored in the spleen. Each platelet has a life span of 1 to 2 weeks.

Accessory Organs of Blood Formation

The spleen and liver are important accessory organs for blood production. They help regulate the growth of blood cells and form factors that ensure proper blood clotting.

The spleen is located under the diaphragm to the left of the stomach. It contains three types of tissue: white pulp, red pulp, and marginal pulp. These tissues all help balance blood cell production with blood cell destruction and assist with immunity. White pulp is filled with white blood cells (WBCs), especially lymphocytes and macrophages. It is a major site of antibody production. As whole blood filters through the white pulp, bacteria and old RBCs are removed. Red pulp contains enlarged blood vessels (sinuses) that store RBCs and platelets. Marginal pulp contains the ends of many arteries and other blood vessels.

The spleen destroys old or imperfect RBCs, breaks down the hemoglobin released from these destroyed cells, stores platelets, and filters antigens. Anyone who has had a splenectomy has reduced immune functions and is less able to remove disease-causing organisms, increasing the risk for infection and sepsis.

The liver produces prothrombin and most of the blood clotting factors. In addition, proper liver function and bile production are important in forming vitamin K in the intestinal tract. (Vitamin K is needed to produce blood clotting factors VII, IX, and X and prothrombin.) Large quantities of whole blood and blood cells can be stored in the liver. The liver also stores extra iron within the protein *ferritin*.

Hemostasis/Blood Clotting

Hemostasis is the multi-step process of controlled blood clotting. With proper hemostasis, localized blood clotting occurs in damaged blood vessels to prevent excessive blood loss while blood continues to circulate to all other areas. This important function is a complex process that balances blood clotting actions with anti-clotting actions. When injury occurs, hemostasis begins with the formation of a platelet plug and continues with a series of events that eventually cause the formation of a fibrin clot. Three sequential processes result in blood clotting: platelet aggregation with formation of a platelet plug, the blood clotting cascade, and the formation of a complete fibrin clot.

Platelet aggregation begins forming a platelet plug by having platelets clump together, a process essential for blood clotting. Platelets normally circulate as individual cell-like structures. They are not attracted to each other and do not clump together until activated. Activation causes platelet membranes to become sticky, allowing them to clump together. When platelets clump, they form large, semisolid

plugs in blood vessel lumens and walls, disrupting local blood flow. *These platelet plugs are not clots and last only a few hours. Thus they cannot provide complete hemostasis.*

Substances that cause platelets to clump include adenosine diphosphate (ADP), calcium, thromboxane A₂, and collagen. Platelets themselves secrete some of these substances, and other activating substances are external to the platelet. Platelet plugs start the cascade reaction that ends with local blood clotting and also are important at most steps within the cascade. When too few platelets are present, blood clotting is impaired, increasing the person's risk for bleeding and hemorrhage.

Blood clotting is a cascade triggered by the formation of a platelet plug. The beginning of the blood clotting cascade is then rapidly amplified. The final result is much larger than the triggering event. In this sense, the cascade works like a landslide. A few small pebbles rolling down a steep hillside can dislodge large rocks and pieces of soil, causing a final enormous movement of earth. Just like landslides, cascade reactions are hard to stop once set into motion.

Intrinsic factors are conditions directly in the blood itself that first activate platelets and then trigger the blood clotting cascade (Fig. 41-4). These conditions include circulating debris and prolonged venous stasis. Continuing the cascade to the point of blood clotting requires having sufficient amounts of all the different clotting factors and cofactors (Table 41-2).

Extrinsic factors are outside of the blood that can also activate platelets. The most common extrinsic event is trauma that damages blood vessels and exposes the platelets to collagen. Collagen then activates platelets to form a platelet plug within seconds of the trauma. The blood clotting cascade is started sooner by the extrinsic pathway because some of the steps of the intrinsic pathway are bypassed. Other blood vessel changes that can activate platelets include inflammation, bacterial toxins, or foreign proteins.

Whether the platelet plugs are formed because of abnormal blood (intrinsic factors) or by exposure to inflamed or damaged blood vessels (extrinsic factors), the end result of the cascade is the same: *formation of a fibrin clot and local blood coagulation.*

The steps of the cascade between the formation of a platelet plug and the formation of a fibrin clot depend on the presence of specific clotting factors. In addition, calcium and more platelets are needed at every step.

Clotting factors (see Table 41-2) are inactive enzymes that become activated in a sequence. The last part of the sequence is the activation of fibrinogen into fibrin. At each step, the activated enzyme from the previous step activates the next enzyme. The last two steps in the cascade are the activation of thrombin from prothrombin and the conversion (by thrombin) of fibrinogen into fibrin. Only fibrin molecules can begin the formation of a true clot.

Fibrin clot formation is the last phase of blood clotting. Fibrinogen is an inactive protein made in the liver. The enzyme *thrombin* removes the end portions of fibrinogen, converting it to active fibrin. Active fibrin molecules then link together to form fibrin threads. Fibrin threads make a netlike base to form a blood clot.

After the fibrin mesh is formed, clotting factor XIII tightens up the mesh, making it more dense and stable. More platelets stick to the threads of the mesh and attract other blood cells and proteins to form an actual blood clot. As this

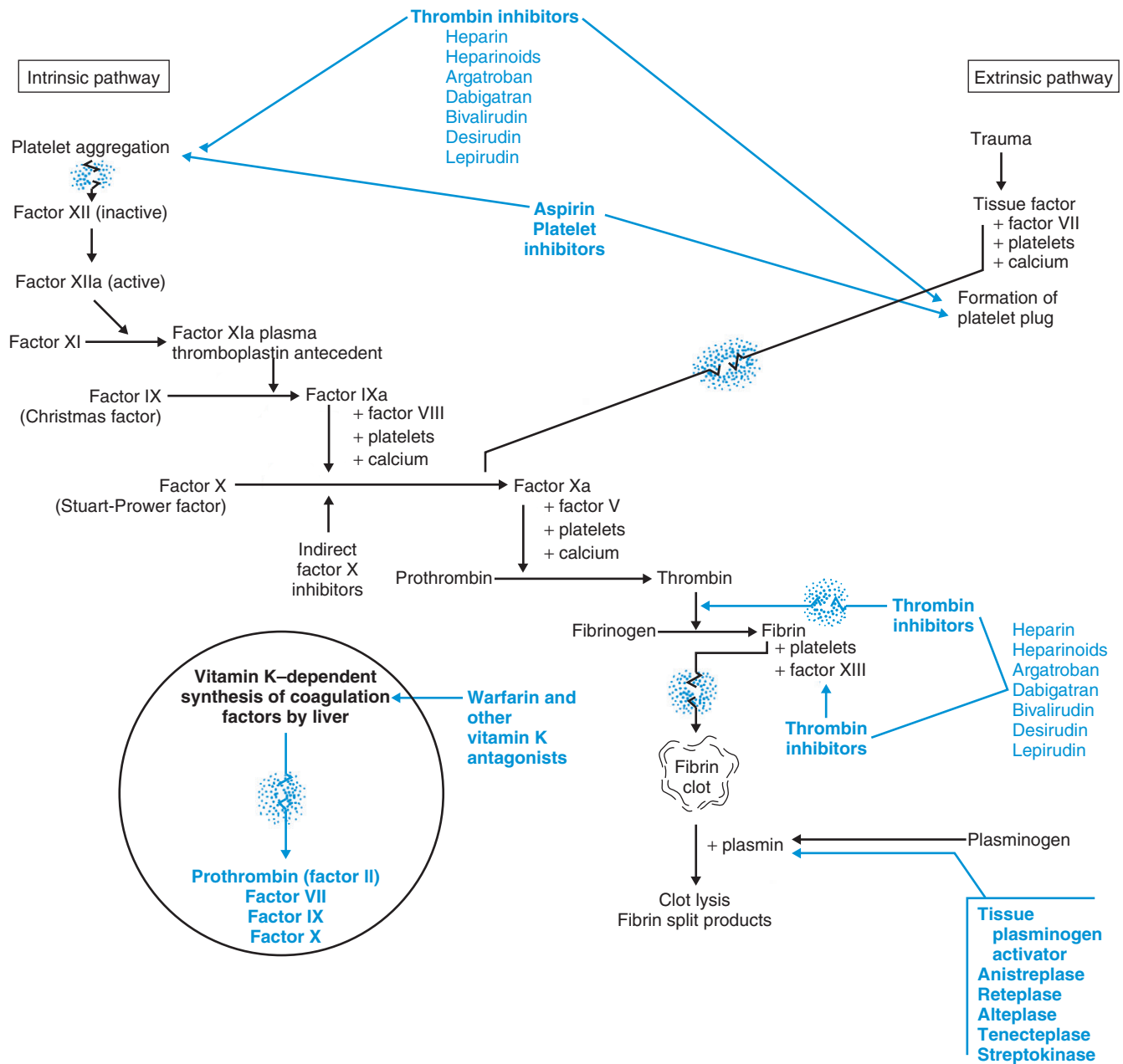


FIG. 41-4 Summary of the blood clotting cascade.

clot tightens (retracts), the serum is squeezed out and clot formation is complete.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

How does aspirin interfere with blood clotting?

- A. Prevents vitamin K synthesis
- B. Inhibits the activation of platelets
- C. Increases the rate of platelet destruction
- D. Prevents fibrin molecules from assembling into long strands

Anti-Clotting Forces

Because blood clotting occurs through a rapid cascade process, in theory it keeps forming fibrin clots whenever the cascade is set into motion until all blood throughout the entire body has coagulated. Such widespread clotting would

lead to death. Therefore, whenever the blood clotting cascade is started, anti-clotting forces are also started to limit clot formation only to damaged areas so that normal blood flow is maintained everywhere else. When blood clotting and anti-clotting actions are normal and balanced, clotting occurs only where it is needed and normal blood flow elsewhere is maintained. The anti-clotting forces involve two types of actions. One action ensures that activated clotting factors are present only in limited amounts. The other action, **fibrinolysis**, prevents over-enlargement of the fibrin clot.

When the blood clotting cascade is activated, certain anti-clotting substances are also activated. Known anti-clotting proteins include protein C, protein S, and antithrombin III. Protein C and protein S increase the breakdown of clotting factors V and VIII. Antithrombin III inactivates thrombin and clotting factors IX and X. These actions prevent clots from becoming too large or forming in an area where clotting

TABLE 41-2 THE CLOTTING FACTORS

FACTOR	ACTION	FACTOR	ACTION
I: Fibrinogen	Factor I is converted to fibrin by the enzyme <i>thrombin</i> . Individual fibrin molecules form fibrin threads, which are the scaffold for clot formation and wound healing.	VIII: Antihemophilic factor	Factor VIII together with activated factor IX enzymatically activates factor X. In addition, factor VIII combines with another protein (von Willebrand's factor) to help platelets adhere to capillary walls in areas of tissue injury. A lack of factor VIII is the basis for classic hemophilia (hemophilia A).
II: Prothrombin	Factor II is the inactive precursor of thrombin. Prothrombin is activated to thrombin by coagulation factor X (Stuart-Prower factor). After it is activated, thrombin converts fibrinogen (coagulation factor I) into fibrin and activates factors V and VIII. Synthesis is vitamin K-dependent.	IX: Plasma thromboplastin component (Christmas factor)	Factor IX, when activated, activates factor X to convert prothrombin to thrombin. This factor is essential in the common pathway between the intrinsic and extrinsic clotting cascades. A lack of factor IX causes hemophilia B. Synthesis is vitamin K-dependent.
III: Tissue thromboplastin	Factor III interacts with factor VII to initiate the extrinsic clotting cascade.	X: Stuart-Prower factor	Factor X, when activated, converts prothrombin into thrombin. Synthesis is vitamin K-dependent.
IV: Calcium	Calcium (Ca^{2+}), a divalent cation, is a cofactor for most of the enzyme-activated processes required in blood coagulation. Calcium also enhances platelet aggregation and makes red blood cells clump together.	XI: Plasma thromboplastin antecedent	Factor XI, when activated, assists in the activation of factor IX. However, a similar factor must exist in tissues. People who are deficient in factor XI have mild bleeding problems after surgery but do not bleed excessively as a result of trauma.
V: Proaccelerin	Factor V is a cofactor for activated factor X, which is essential for converting prothrombin to thrombin.	XII: Hageman factor	Factor XII is critically important in the intrinsic pathway for the activation of factor XI.
VI: Discovered to be an artifact	No factor VI is involved in blood coagulation.	XIII: Fibrin-stabilizing factor	Factor XIII assists in forming cross-links among the fibrin threads to form a strong fibrin clot.
VII: Proconvertin	Factor VII activates factors IX and X, which are essential in converting prothrombin to thrombin. Synthesis is vitamin K-dependent.		

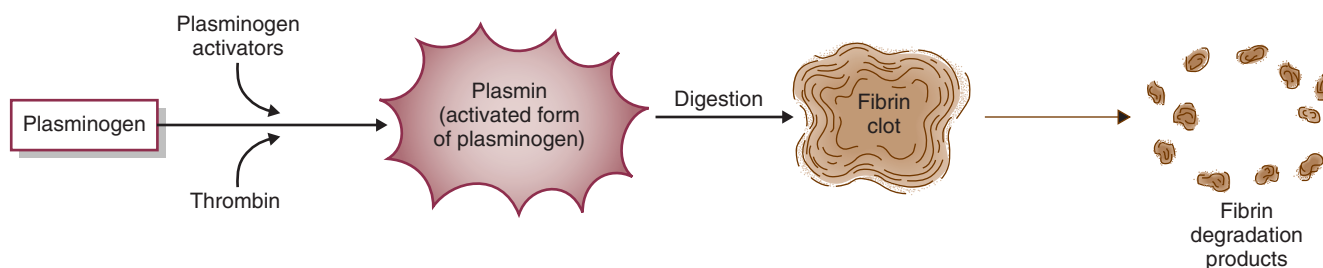


FIG. 41-5 The process of fibrinolysis.

is not needed. Deficiency of any of these anti-clotting factors increases the risk for pulmonary embolism, myocardial infarction, and strokes.

Fibrinolysis limits the size of blood clots by dissolving fibrin clot edges with special enzymes (Fig. 41-5). The process starts by activating plasminogen to plasmin. Plasmin, an enzyme, then digests fibrin, fibrinogen, and prothrombin, controlling the size of the fibrin clot.

Hematologic Changes Associated with Aging

Aging changes the cellular and plasma components of blood (Touhy & Jett, 2010). Chart 41-1 lists assessment tips for older adults. The older adult has a decreased blood volume with lower levels of plasma proteins. The lower plasma

protein level may be related to a low dietary intake of proteins, as well as to reduced protein production by the older liver.

As bone marrow ages, it produces fewer blood cells. Total red blood cell (RBC) and white blood cell (WBC) counts (especially lymphocyte counts) are lower among older adults. Platelet counts do not change with age. Lymphocytes become less reactive to antigens and lose immune function. Antibody levels and responses are lower and slower in older adults. The WBC count does not rise as high in response to infection in older people as it does in younger people.

Hemoglobin levels also change with age. Hemoglobin levels in men and women fall after middle age. Iron-deficient diets may play a role in this reduction.

CHART 41-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Hematologic Assessment

FINDINGS IN HEMATOLOGIC DISORDERS	NORMAL CHANGES IN THE OLDER ADULT	SIGNIFICANCE/ALTERNATIVES
Nail Beds (for Capillary Refill) Pallor or cyanosis may indicate a hematologic disorder.	Thickened or discolored nails make viewing skin color beneath the nails impossible.	Use another body area, such as the lip, to assess central capillary refill.
Hair Distribution Thin or absent hair on the trunk or extremities may indicate poor circulation to a particular area.	Progressive loss of body hair is a normal facet of aging.	A relatively even pattern of hair loss that has occurred over an extended period is not significant.
Skin Moisture Skin dryness may indicate any of a number of hematologic disorders.	Skin dryness is a normal result of aging.	Skin moisture is not usually a reliable indicator of an underlying pathologic condition in the older adult.
Skin Color Skin color changes, especially pallor and jaundice, are associated with some hematologic disorders.	Pigment loss and skin yellowing are common changes associated with aging.	Pallor in an older adult may not be a reliable indicator of anemia. Laboratory testing is required. Yellow-tinged skin in an older adult may not be a reliable indicator of increased serum bilirubin levels. Laboratory testing is required.

CHART 41-2 HEMATOLOGIC ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns**Activity-Exercise Pattern**

- How does your energy level seem to you compared with last year at this time?
- Do you feel rested after a typical night's sleep?
- Have you experienced any dizziness or light-headedness?
- Does your heart ever seem to pound?
- How much exercise do you get? How often? What type?
- Do you feel you have enough energy to do what you want or need to do?

Nutrition-Metabolic Pattern

- Have you noticed any change in your skin lately?
- How easily do you bruise?
- Do your gums ever bleed? Under what conditions?
- How much meat do you eat in a week?
- How often do you eat salads or other green leafy vegetables?
- Are you taking any vitamin or mineral supplements?
- Do your feet and hands usually feel warm or cold?
- Has your weight changed by 5 pounds or more this year?
- How often do you take aspirin or any other NSAID?
- What drugs do you take daily?

Modified from Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

ASSESSMENT METHODS**Patient History**

Chart 41-2 lists questions based on Gordon's Functional Health Patterns to ask during assessment of hematologic function. Age and gender are important to consider when assessing the patient's hematologic status. Bone marrow function and immune activity decrease with age.

Liver function, the presence of known immunologic or hematologic disorders, current drug use, dietary patterns,

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

At all ages, women have lower blood cell counts than do men. This difference is greater during menstrual years because blood loss from menstruation may occur slightly faster than blood cell production. This gender difference also may be related to a blood dilution caused by fluid retention from female hormones.

and socioeconomic status are important to hematologic assessment. Because the liver makes clotting factors, ask about manifestations that may indicate liver problems, such as jaundice, anemia, and gallstones. Previous radiation therapy for cancer may impair hematologic function if marrow-forming bones were in the radiation path.

Ask about the patient's occupation, hobbies, and the location of housing. This information may identify exposure to agents that affect bone marrow and hematologic function.

Check all drugs the patient has used in the past 3 weeks, especially antibiotics, because these drugs can lead to clotting problems or bone marrow depression. Table 41-3 lists drugs known to change hematologic function.

Ask the patient about use of blood "thinners" and NSAIDs, which change blood clotting activity. Such drugs include anti-coagulants, fibrinolytics, and platelet inhibitors. These drugs are referred to as "blood thinners" although they do not change blood thickness or viscosity. Fig. 41-4 shows where in the blood clotting cascade these agents work.

Anticoagulant drugs work by interfering with one or more steps involved in the blood clotting cascade. Thus these agents prevent new clots from forming and limit or prevent extension of formed clots. *Anticoagulants do not break down existing clots.* These drugs are classified as thrombin inhibitors, vitamin K antagonists, and indirect factor X inhibitors.

Fibrinolytic drugs (also known as *thrombolytic drugs* or "clot busters") selectively break down fibrin threads present in formed blood clots. The mechanism to start fibrin

TABLE 41-3 DRUGS IMPAIRING THE HEMATOLOGIC SYSTEM

Drugs Causing Bone Marrow Suppression

- Altretamine
- Amphotericin B
- Azathioprine
- Chemotherapeutic agents
- Chloramphenicol
- Chronic phosphate
- Colchicine
- Didanosine
- Eflornithine
- Foscarnet sodium
- Ganciclovir
- Interferon alfa
- Pentamidine
- Sodium iodide
- Zalcitabine
- Zidovudine

Drugs Causing Hemolysis

- Acetohydroxamic acid
- Amoxicillin
- Chlorpropamide
- Doxapram
- Glyburide
- Mefenamic acid
- Menadiol diphosphate
- Methyl dopa
- Nitrofurantoin
- Penicillin G benzathine
- Penicillin V
- Primaquine
- Procainamide hydrochloride
- Quinidine polygalacturonate
- Quinine
- Sulfonamides
- Tolbutamide
- Vitamin K

Drugs Disrupting Platelet Action

- Aspirin
- Carbenicillin
- Carindacillin
- Dipyridamole
- Ibuprofen
- Moxalactam
- Naproxen
- Oxaprozin
- Pentoxifylline
- Sulfipyrazone
- Ticarcillin
- Ticlopidine
- Valproic acid

degradation is activation of the inactive tissue protein *plasminogen* to its active form, *plasmin*. Plasmin directly attacks and degrades the fibrin molecule.

The use of fibrinolytic drugs results in the best clot breakdown with less disruption of blood clotting. These drugs are the first-line therapy for problems caused by small, localized formed clots such as myocardial infarction (MI), limited arterial thrombosis, and thrombotic strokes. For some problems, such as MI, these drugs are usually given only within the first 6 hours after the onset of symptoms. This time limitation is not related to drug activity because fibrinolytic agents can break down clots older than 6 hours. Rather, the tissue that has been anoxic for more than 6 hours as a result of an acute event is not likely to benefit from this therapy, making the risks to the patient greater than the advantages.

Platelet inhibitors, or anti-platelet drugs, prevent either platelet activation or aggregation (clumping). The most widely used drug for this effect is aspirin, which inhibits the production of substances that activate platelets, such as thromboxane. Other drugs change the platelet membrane, reducing its “stickiness,” or prevent activators from binding to platelet receptors. In addition, many complementary therapy agents, such as St. John’s wort, inhibit platelet activity.

Nutrition Status

Diet can alter cell quality and affect blood clotting. Ask patients to record everything eaten during the previous week. Use this information to determine the causes of anemias and of protein, mineral, or vitamin deficiencies. Diets high in fat and carbohydrates and low in protein, iron, and vitamins can

cause many types of anemia and decrease the functions of all blood cells.

Ask about alcohol consumption because chronic alcoholism causes nutritional deficiencies and impairs the liver, both of which reduce blood clotting.

Certain dietary habits can enhance blood clotting. Diets high in vitamin K, found in leafy green vegetables, may increase the rate of blood clotting. Assess the amount of salads and other raw vegetables that the patient eats and whether supplemental vitamins and calcium are used. Assess the patient’s ability to understand and follow instructions related to procedures and tests, and prescribed drugs or diets. Ask about personal resources, such as finances and social support. A person with a poor income may have a diet low in iron and protein because food sources of these substances are often more expensive.

Family History and Genetic Risk

An accurate family history is important because many disorders affecting blood and blood clotting are inherited (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Ask whether anyone in the family has had hemophilia, frequent nosebleeds, postpartum hemorrhages, excessive bleeding after tooth extractions, or heavy bruising after relatively mild trauma. Ask whether any family member has sickle cell disease or sickle cell trait. Although sickle cell disease is seen most often among African Americans, anyone can have the trait.

Current Health Problems

Ask about lymph nodes swelling, excessive bruising or bleeding, and whether the bleeding was spontaneous or induced by trauma. Ask about the amount and duration of bleeding after routine dental work. Determine whether a woman has *menorrhagia* (excessive menstrual flow). Ask her to estimate the number of pads or tampons used during the most recent menstrual cycle and whether this amount represents a change from her usual pattern of flow. Ask whether clots are present in menstrual blood. If menstrual clots occur, ask her to estimate clot size using coins or fruit for comparison (“clots are dime-size” or “clots are the size of lemons”).

Assess and record whether the patient has shortness of breath on exertion, palpitations, frequent infections, fevers, recent weight loss, headaches, or paresthesias. Any or all of these symptoms may occur with hematologic disease.

The single most common symptom of anemia is fatigue. This problem occurs because oxygen delivery to cells is less than oxygen needs. Cells use oxygen to produce the high-energy chemical *adenosine triphosphate* (ATP) needed to perform most cellular work. When oxygen delivery to cells is reduced, cellular work decreases and fatigue increases. Ask patients about feeling tired, needing more rest, or losing endurance during normal activities. Ask them to compare their activities during the past month with those of the same month a year ago. Determine whether other symptoms of anemia, such as vertigo, tinnitus, and a sore tongue, are present.

Physical Assessment

Assess the whole body because blood problems may reduce oxygen delivery and tissue perfusion to all systems. Some assessment findings associated with hematologic problems are less reliable when seen in the older adult (see [Chart 41-1](#)). Equipment needed for assessment of hematologic function

includes gloves, a stethoscope, a blood pressure cuff, a tongue depressor, and a penlight.

Skin Assessment

Inspect the skin and mucous membranes for pallor or jaundice. Assess nail beds for pallor or cyanosis. Pallor of the gums, conjunctivae, and palmar creases (when the palm is stretched) indicates decreased hemoglobin levels and poor tissue oxygenation. Assess the gums for active bleeding in response to light pressure or brushing the teeth with a soft-bristled brush, and assess any lesions or draining areas. Inspect for petechiae and large bruises (*ecchymoses*). **Petechiae** are pinpoint hemorrhagic lesions in the skin. Bruises may cluster together. For hospitalized patients, determine whether there is bleeding from sites such as around nasogastric tubes, endotracheal tubes, central lines, peripheral IV sites, or Foley catheters. Check the skin turgor, and ask about itching because dry skin or itching can indicate hematologic disease. Assess body hair distribution patterns. Areas with poor circulation, especially the lower legs and toes, may have sparse or absent hair, although this may be a normal finding in an older adult.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Pallor and cyanosis are more easily detected in people with darker skin by examining the oral mucous membranes and the conjunctiva of the eye. Jaundice can be seen more easily on the roof of the mouth. Petechiae may be visible only on the palms of the hands or the soles of the feet. Bruises can be seen as darker areas of skin and palpated as slight swellings or irregular skin surfaces. Ask the patient about pain when skin surfaces are touched lightly or palpated. (Chapter 26 provides tips for assessing darker skin.)

Head and Neck Assessment

Check for pallor or ulceration of the mouth mucosa. The tongue may be completely smooth in pernicious anemia and iron deficiency anemia or smooth and beefy red in nutritional deficiencies. These manifestations may occur with fissures at the corners of the mouth. Assess for jaundice of the sclera.

Inspect and palpate all lymph node areas. Document any lymph node enlargement, including whether palpation of the enlarged node causes pain and whether the enlarged node moves or remains fixed with palpation.

Respiratory Assessment

When blood problems reduce oxygen delivery, the lungs work harder to make adjustments that can maintain tissue perfusion. Assess the rate and depth of respiration while the patient is at rest, as well as during and after mild physical activity (e.g., walking 20 steps in 10 seconds). Note whether the patient can complete a 10-word sentence without stopping for a breath. Assess whether the patient is fatigued easily, has shortness of breath at rest or on exertion, or needs extra pillows to breathe well at night. Anemia can cause these symptoms as a result of respiratory changes made as adjustments to reduced tissue oxygen levels.

Cardiovascular Assessment

When blood problems reduce oxygen delivery, the heart works harder to make adjustments to maintain tissue perfusion. Pulses may become weak and thready. Observe for

distended neck veins, edema, or signs of phlebitis. Use a stethoscope to listen for murmurs, gallops, irregular rhythms, and abnormal blood pressure (BP). Systolic BP tends to be lower than normal in patients with anemia and higher than normal when the patient has excessive red blood cells. Severe anemia can cause heart enlargement and heart disease as the heart tries to compensate for reduced oxygen delivery.

Kidney and Urinary Assessment

The kidneys have many blood vessels, and bleeding problems may cause gross or occult *hematuria* (blood in the urine). Inspect urine for color. Hematuria may appear as grossly bloody red or dark brownish gold urine. Test the urine for proteins with a urine test dipstick because blood contains protein, and blood in the urine increases its protein content.

Musculoskeletal Assessment

Rib or sternal tenderness may occur with leukemia (cancer of the blood) when the bone marrow greatly overproduces cells, increasing the pressure in the bones. Examine the skin over superficial bones, including the ribs and sternum, by applying firm pressure with the fingertips. Assess the range of joint motion, and document any swelling or joint pain.

Abdominal Assessment

The normal adult spleen is usually *not* palpable. An enlarged spleen, however, occurs with many hematologic problems. An enlarged spleen may be detected by palpation. The spleen lies just beneath the abdominal wall, under the ribs on the left side. When it is enlarged, the spleen can be identified by its movement during respiration. Have the patient lie in a relaxed, supine position while you stand on the patient's right and palpate the left upper quadrant. *Palpate gently and cautiously because an enlarged spleen may be tender and easily ruptured.*

Palpating the edge of the liver in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen can detect hepatic enlargement, which often occurs with hematologic problems. The normal liver may be palpable as much as 4 to 5 cm below the right costal margin but is usually not palpable in the epigastrium.

A common cause of anemia among older adults is a chronically bleeding GI ulcer or polyp. If the ulcer is located in the stomach or the small intestine, obvious blood may not be visible in the stool or such a small amount is passed each day that the patient is not aware of it. Obtain a stool specimen for occult blood testing.

Central Nervous System Assessment

Examination of cranial nerves and testing neurologic function are important in hematologic assessment because some problems cause specific changes. Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency impairs cerebral, olfactory, spinal cord, and peripheral nerve



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which clinical manifestation reported by a client suggests to the nurse that anemia is a possibility?

- A. Difficulty sleeping
- B. Cold hands and feet
- C. Chronic headaches
- D. Shortness of breath

function, and severe chronic deficiency may cause permanent neurologic degeneration. Many neurologic problems can develop in patients who have leukemia, because leukemia can cause bleeding, infection, or tumor spread within the brain. When the patient with a suspected bleeding disorder has any head trauma, expand the assessment to include frequent neurologic checks and mental status examinations (see Chapter 43).

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with hematologic problems may have a chronic illness (e.g., hemophilia or cancer) or an acute episode of a chronic disease (e.g., pernicious anemia). In either case, each person brings his or her own coping style to the illness. Develop a rapport with the patient and learn what coping mechanisms he or she has used successfully in the past.

Ask the patient and family members about social support networks and financial resources. A problem in these areas can interfere with the patient's adherence to therapy.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

In hematologic disease, the most definitive signs are often the laboratory test results. Chart 41-3 lists laboratory data used to assess hematologic function.

Tests of Cell Number and Function. A *peripheral blood smear* is made by taking a drop of blood and spreading it over a slide. It can be read by an automated calculator or by a technologist with a microscope. This rapid test can provide important information on the sizes, shapes, and approximate proportions of different blood cell types within the peripheral blood.

A *complete blood count (CBC)* includes a number of studies: red blood cell (RBC) count, white blood cell (WBC) count, hematocrit, and hemoglobin level. The RBC count measures circulating RBCs in 1 mm^3 of blood. The WBC count measures all leukocytes present in 1 mm^3 of blood. To determine the percentages of different types of leukocytes circulating in the blood, a WBC count with differential leukocyte count is performed (see Chapter 19). The hematocrit (Hct) is calculated as the percentage of red blood cells in the total blood volume. The hemoglobin level is the total amount of hemoglobin in blood.

The CBC can measure other features of the RBCs, including mean corpuscular volume (MCV), mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC). MCV measures the average volume or size of a single RBC and is useful for classifying anemias. When the MCV is elevated, the cell is larger than normal (*macrocytic*), as seen in megaloblastic anemias. When the MCV is decreased, the cell is smaller than normal (*microcytic*), as seen in iron deficiency anemia. The MCH is the average amount of hemoglobin by weight in a single RBC. The MCHC measures the average amount of hemoglobin by percentage in a single RBC. When the MCHC is decreased, the cell has a hemoglobin deficiency and is *hypochromic* (a lighter color), as in iron deficiency anemia (Miller & Starks, 2010).

Reticulocyte count is another hematologic test helpful in determining bone marrow function. A reticulocyte is an immature RBC that still has its nucleus. An elevated reticulocyte count indicates that RBCs are being produced and

released by the bone marrow before they mature. Normally only about 2% of circulating RBCs are reticulocytes. An elevated reticulocyte count is desirable in an anemic patient or after hemorrhage because this indicates that the bone marrow is responding appropriately to a decrease in the total RBC level. An elevated reticulocyte count without a precipitating cause usually indicates health problems, such as polycythemia vera (a malignant condition in which the bone marrow overproduces RBCs).

A *platelet count*, also known as a thrombocyte count, is performed on venous blood that is placed in the same type of lavender-top tube used for a complete blood count. The normal range is 150,000 to 400,000/ mm^3 and reflects the number of platelets in circulation. When this value is low (thrombocytopenia), the person is at a greater risk for bleeding because platelets are critical for blood clotting. Patients who have values between 40,000/ mm^3 and 80,000/ mm^3 may have prolonged bleeding from trauma, dental work, and surgery. Patients who have platelet values below 20,000/ mm^3 may have spontaneous bleeding that is very difficult to stop.

Hemoglobin electrophoresis detects abnormal forms of hemoglobin, such as hemoglobin S in sickle cell disease. Hemoglobin A is the major type of hemoglobin in an adult. Decreased hemoglobin A levels with increasing levels of other types of hemoglobin indicate some hematologic problems, such as sickle cell disease.

Leukocyte alkaline phosphatase (LAP) is an enzyme produced by normal mature neutrophils. Elevated LAP levels occur during episodes of infection or stress. An elevated neutrophil count without an elevation in LAP level occurs with some types of leukemia.

Coombs' tests, both direct and indirect, are used for blood typing. The direct test detects antibodies against RBCs that may be attached to a person's RBCs. Although healthy people can make these antibodies, in certain diseases (e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus, mononucleosis) these antibodies are directed against the patient's own RBCs. The presence of these antibodies can cause hemolytic anemia (Matthews & Newton, 2010).

The indirect Coombs' test detects the presence of circulating antiglobulins. The test is used to determine whether the patient has serum antibodies to the type of RBCs that he or she is about to receive by blood transfusion (Matthews & Newton, 2010).

Serum ferritin, transferrin, and the total iron-binding capacity (TIBC) tests measure iron levels. Abnormal levels of iron and TIBC occur with problems such as iron deficiency anemia.

The serum ferritin test measures the amount of free iron present in the plasma. The amount of serum ferritin is related to the amount of intracellular iron and represents 1% of the total body iron stores. Therefore the serum ferritin level provides a means to assess total iron stores. People with serum ferritin levels within 10 g of the normal range for their gender have adequate iron stores; people with levels 10 g or more lower than the normal range have inadequate iron stores and have difficulty recovering from any blood loss.

Transferrin is a protein that transports dietary iron from the intestines to cell storage sites. Transferrin is not easily measured, but measuring the amount of iron that can be bound to serum transferrin indirectly determines whether an

CHART 41-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Hematologic Assessment

TEST	REFERENCE RANGE	INTERNATIONAL REFERENCE UNITS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Red blood cell (RBC) count	<i>Females:</i> 4.2-5.4 million/ μ L <i>Males:</i> 4.7-6.1 million/ μ L	$4.2-5.4 \times 10^{12}$ cells/L $4.7-6.1 \times 10^{12}$ cells/L	<i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible anemia or hemorrhage. <i>Increased levels</i> indicate possible chronic hypoxia or polycythemia vera.
Hemoglobin (Hgb)	<i>Females:</i> 12-16 g/dL <i>Males:</i> 14-18 g/dL	7.4-9.9 mmol/L 8.7-11.2 mmol/L	Same as for RBC.
Hematocrit (Hct)	<i>Females:</i> 37%-47% <i>Males:</i> 42%-52%	0.37-0.47 fraction 0.42-0.52 fraction	Same as for RBC.
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV)	80-95 fL	Same as reference range	<i>Increased levels</i> indicate macrocytic cells, possible anemia. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate microcytic cells, possible iron deficiency anemia.
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH)	27-31 pg	Same as reference range	Same as for MCV.
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC)	32-36 g/dL	320-370 g/L	<i>Increased levels</i> may indicate spherocytosis or anemia. <i>Decreased levels</i> may indicate iron deficiency anemia or a hemoglobinopathy.
White blood cell (WBC) count	5000-10,000/mm ³	$5.0-10.0 \times 10^9$ cells/L	<i>Increased levels</i> are associated with infection, inflammation, autoimmune disorders, and leukemia. <i>Decreased levels</i> may indicate prolonged infection or bone marrow suppression.
Reticulocyte count	0.5%-2.0% of RBCs	0.005-0.20 fraction	<i>Increased levels</i> may indicate chronic blood loss. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible inadequate RBC production.
Total iron-binding capacity (TIBC)	250-460 mcg/dL	45-82 μ mol/L	<i>Increased levels</i> indicate iron deficiency. <i>Decreased levels</i> may indicate anemia, hemorrhage, hemolysis.
Iron (Fe)	<i>Females:</i> 60-160 mcg/dL <i>Males:</i> 80-180 mcg/dL	11-29 μ mol/L 14-32 μ mol/L	<i>Increased levels</i> indicate iron excess, liver disorders, hemochromocytosis, megaloblastic anemia. <i>Decreased levels</i> indicate possible iron deficiency anemia, hemorrhage.
Serum ferritin	<i>Females:</i> 10-150 ng/mL <i>Males:</i> 12-300 ng/mL	10-150 mcg/L 12-300 mcg/L	Same as for iron.
Platelet count	150,000-400,000/mm ³	$150-400 \times 10^9$ /L	<i>Increased levels</i> may indicate polycythemia vera or malignancy. <i>Decreased levels</i> may indicate bone marrow suppression, autoimmune disease, hypersplenism.
Hemoglobin electrophoresis	Hgb A ₁ : 95%-98% Hgb A ₂ : 2%-3% Hgb F: 0.8%-2% Hgb S: 0% Hgb C: 0%	Same as reference range	<i>Variations</i> indicate hemoglobinopathies.
Direct Coombs' and indirect Coombs' test	Negative	Negative	<i>Positive findings</i> indicate antibodies to RBCs.
Prothrombin time (PT)	11-12.5 sec	Patient PT/normal PT INR 0.8-1.1	<i>Increased time</i> indicates possible deficiency of clotting factors V and VII. <i>Decreased time</i> may indicate vitamin K excess.

fL, femtoliter; INR, international normalized ratio; pg, picograms.

adequate amount of transferrin is present. This test is the total iron-binding capacity (TIBC) test. In healthy people, only about 30% of the transferrin is bound to iron in the blood. TIBC is measured by taking a sample of blood and adding measured amounts of iron to it. TIBC is calculated when the blood no longer binds the iron but allows it to precipitate. TIBC increases when a person is deficient in serum iron and stored iron levels. Such a value indicates that

an adequate amount of transferrin is present but less than 30% of it is bound to serum iron.

Tests Measuring Bleeding and Coagulation. Tests that measure bleeding and coagulation provide information that reflects the effectiveness of different aspects of the blood clotting. These tests are used for diagnosis of specific hematologic health problems, determination of drug therapy effectiveness, and identification of risk for excessive bleeding or clotting.

Prothrombin time (PT) measures how long blood takes to clot. This test reflects the level of clotting factors II, V, VII, and X and how well they are functioning. When enough of these clotting factors are present and functioning, the PT shows blood clotting between 11 and 12.5 seconds or within 85% to 100% of the time needed for a control sample of blood to clot. PT is prolonged when one or more of these clotting factors are deficient. Warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ☛) therapy is also monitored using PT levels. Usually warfarin therapy is considered appropriate when the PT is prolonged by 1.5 to 2 times the patient's normal PT value, depending on the specific reason for the warfarin therapy.

The PT test is now used less often to assess how fast blood clots, because control blood is taken from different people and may not be the same even in one laboratory from one day to the next. To reduce PT errors from control blood variation or in some of the chemicals used in the test, the international normalized ratio is used to assess clotting time.

International normalized ratio (INR) measures the same process as the PT by establishing a normal mean or standard for PT. The INR is calculated by dividing the patient's PT by the established standard PT. A normal INR ranges between 0.7 and 1.8. When using the INR to monitor warfarin therapy, the desired outcome is usually to maintain the patient's INR between 2.0 and 3.0 regardless of the actual PT in seconds. The desired INR range for any patient, however, is individualized for specific patient factors and medical conditions (Weyland, 2009).

The partial thromboplastin time (PTT) assesses the intrinsic clotting cascade and the action of factors II, V, VIII, IX, XI, and XII. PTT is prolonged whenever any of these factors is deficient, such as in hemophilia or disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). Because factors II, IX, and X are vitamin K-dependent and are produced in the liver, liver disease can prolong the PTT. Unfractionated heparin (Calci-parin, Hepalean ☛) therapy is often monitored by PTT or the anti-factor Xa test. Desired therapeutic ranges for anticoagulation are usually between 1.5 and 2.0 times normal values but can be greater depending on the reason the person is receiving anticoagulation therapy.

The anti-factor Xa test measures the amount of anti-activated factor X (anti-Xa) in blood, which is affected by heparin. It is used mainly to monitor heparin levels in patients treated with either unfractionated heparin or low molecular weight heparin. For people not receiving heparin in any form, the reference range is less than 0.1 IU/mL. The usual therapeutic range for patients receiving standard heparin is 0.5 to 1.0 IU/mL, and the usual therapeutic range for patients receiving low molecular weight heparin is 0.3 to 0.7 IU/mL. Test results are affected by age, gender, health history, and the specific laboratory technique used for the test.

Platelet aggregation, or the ability to clump, is tested by mixing the patient's plasma with an agonist substance that should cause clumping. Agonists used include collagen, epinephrine, adenosine diphosphate, and ristocetin. The degree of clumping is noted. Aggregation can be impaired in von Willebrand's disease and by drugs such as aspirin, anti-inflammatory agents, psychotropics, and platelet inhibitors.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which laboratory blood test result for a client undergoing hematologic assessment does the nurse report immediately to the prescriber?

- A. Red blood cell count 1.2 million/mm³
- B. Platelets 185,000/mm³
- C. Hematocrit 36%
- D. INR 1.2

Imaging Assessment

Assessment of the patient with a suspected hematologic problem can include radioisotopic imaging. Isotopes are used to evaluate the bone marrow for sites of active blood cell formation and sites of iron storage. Radioactive colloids are used to determine organ size and liver and spleen function.

The patient is given a radioactive isotope by IV about 3 hours before the procedure. Once in the nuclear medicine department, he or she must lie still for about an hour during the scan. No special patient preparation or follow-up care is needed for these tests.

Standard x-rays may be used to diagnose some hematologic problems. For example, multiple myeloma causes classic bone destruction, with a "Swiss cheese" appearance on x-ray.

Bone Marrow Aspiration and Biopsy

Bone marrow aspiration or biopsy, which are similar invasive procedures, are performed to evaluate the patient's hematologic status when other tests show persistent abnormal findings that indicate a possible problem in blood cell production or maturation. Results provide information about bone marrow function, including the production of all blood cells and platelets. In a bone marrow aspiration, cells and fluids are suctioned from the bone marrow. In a bone marrow biopsy, solid tissue and cells are obtained by coring out an area of bone marrow with a large-bore needle.

A health care provider's order and a signed informed consent are obtained before either procedure is performed. Bone marrow aspiration may be performed by a physician, an advanced practice nurse, or a physician assistant, depending on the agency's policy and regional law. The procedure may be performed at the patient's bedside, in an examination room, or in a laboratory.

After learning what specific tests will be performed on the marrow, check the facility's procedure manual and the hematology laboratory to determine how to handle the specimen. Some tests require that heparin or other solutions be added to the specimen.

Patient Preparation. Most patients are anxious before a bone marrow aspiration, even those who have had one in the past. You can help reduce anxiety and allay fears by providing accurate information and emotional support (Beattie, 2007). Some patients like to have their hand held during the procedure.

Explain the procedure, and reassure the patient that you will stay during the entire procedure. Occasionally a friend or family member is permitted to be present to hold the patient's hand and provide emotional support. Tell the patient that the local anesthetic injection will feel like a stinging or burning sensation. Tell him or her to expect a heavy sensation of pressure and pushing while the needle is being inserted.

Sometimes a crunching sound can be heard or scraping sensation felt as the needle punctures the bone. Explain that a brief sensation of painful pulling will be experienced as the marrow is being aspirated by mild suction in the syringe. If a biopsy is performed, the patient may feel more pressure and discomfort as the needle is rotated into the bone.

Assist the patient onto an examining table, and expose the site (usually the iliac crest). If this site is not available or if more marrow is needed, the sternum can be used. If the iliac crest is the site, place the patient in the prone or side-lying position. Depending on the tests to be performed on the specimen, a laboratory technician may also be present to ensure proper handling of the specimen.

Procedure. The procedure usually lasts from 5 to 15 minutes. The type and the amount of anesthesia or sedation depend on the physician's preference, the patient's preference and previous experience with bone marrow aspiration and biopsy, and the setting.

A local anesthetic agent is injected into the skin around the site. The discomfort of the local anesthetic is reduced when buffered anesthetic agents, such as lidocaine, are used (Ruegg et al., 2009). The patient may also receive a mild tranquilizer or a rapid-acting sedative, such as midazolam (Versed), lorazepam (Ativan, Apo-Lorazepam 🍁, Novo-Lorazem 🍁), or etomidate (Amidate). Some patients do well with guided imagery or autohypnosis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Aspiration or biopsy procedures are invasive, and sterile precautions are observed.

The skin over the site is cleaned with a disinfectant. For an aspiration, the needle is inserted with a twisting motion and the marrow is aspirated by pulling back on the plunger of the syringe. When sufficient marrow has been aspirated to ensure accurate analysis, the needle is rapidly withdrawn while the tissues are supported at the site. For a biopsy, a small skin incision is made and the biopsy needle is inserted through the skin opening. Pressure and several twisting

motions are needed to ensure coring and loosening of an adequate amount of marrow tissue. Apply external pressure to the site until hemostasis is ensured. A pressure dressing or sandbags may be applied to reduce bleeding at the site.

Follow-Up Care. The nursing priority after a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy is prevention of excessive bleeding. Cover the site with a dressing after bleeding is controlled, and closely observe it for 24 hours for signs of bleeding and infection. A mild analgesic (aspirin-free) may be given for discomfort, and ice packs can be placed over the site to limit bruising. Instruct the patient to inspect the site every 2 hours for the first 24 hours and to note the presence of active bleeding or bruising. Advise him or her to avoid contact sports or any activity that might result in trauma to the site for 48 hours.

Information obtained from bone marrow aspiration or biopsy reflects the degree and quality of bone marrow activity present. The counts made on a marrow specimen can indicate whether different cell types are present in the expected quantities and proportions. In addition, bone marrow aspiration or biopsy can confirm the spread of cancer cells from other tumor sites.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Patient-Centered Care

The patient is a 28-year-old intensive care nurse who is scheduled to have a bone marrow biopsy tomorrow because of persistently low red blood cell and platelet counts and a persistently higher-than-normal white blood cell count. While making the arrangements today, she tells you that she is planning on having the biopsy on her lunch break tomorrow and going back to work afterward to complete the last 6 hours of her 12-hour shift. She says that she is beginning a 10-day work stretch and cannot afford to take time off. If it isn't possible for her to have the biopsy done during lunch tomorrow, she will have to put it off for about 2 weeks. Her usual medications include two 325-mg aspirins daily for general aches and pain and her oral contraceptive.

1. What should you tell her about having a bone marrow biopsy on her lunch break?
2. Is delaying the biopsy for 2 weeks a wise decision? Explain why or why not.
3. What will you tell her about continuing her normal medications?

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to NOTICE in a patient with adequate oxygenation and tissue perfusion related to hematologic function?

Vital signs

- Heart rate and respiratory rate within normal range
- Blood pressure within normal range

Physical assessment

- Able to speak a sentence of 12 words without stopping for breath
- Able to walk and talk without stopping for breath
- Skin color normal (no cyanosis, pallor, or jaundice)

- Oral mucous membrane and nail beds pink with rapid capillary refill
- Gums pink, no petechiae or bleeding
- Appropriate distribution of body hair, especially on legs and feet
- Warm hands and feet, no dependent edema
- Creases on palms of the hand (when stretched) red (or brown in people with dark skin)
- Skin clear with no large bruises or petechiae
- Lower eyelid conjunctive red
- Urine output just about equal to fluid intake
- Urine clear and yellow

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd*Psychological assessment*

- Oriented and not confused
- Energy level good; able to engage in desired work and recreational and personal activities

Laboratory assessment

- Red blood cell, hemoglobin, hematocrit, white blood cell, and platelet levels within normal limits for age and gender
- Reticulocyte count less than 2%

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Verify that a patient having a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy has signed an informed consent statement.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach people to avoid unnecessary contact with environmental chemicals or toxins. If contact cannot be avoided, teach people to use safety precautions.
- Instruct patients about the importance of eating a diet with adequate amounts of foods that are good sources of iron, folic acid, and vitamin B₁₂.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Ask patients about their activity level and whether they are satisfied with the energy they have for activities.

- Support the patient during a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy.

Physiological Integrity

- Tissue oxygenation and perfusion rely on normal hematologic function for oxygen delivery.
- The most common manifestation of a hematologic problem is fatigue.
- Remember that a platelet plug and a fibrin clot are not the same.
- Understand the effects of age and gender on red blood cell, hematocrit, and hemoglobin levels.
- Apply an ice pack to the needle site after a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy.
- Check the needle site at least every 2 hours after a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy. If the patient is going home, teach the patient and family how to assess the site for bleeding and when to seek help.
- Instruct patients to avoid activities that may traumatize the site after a bone marrow aspiration or biopsy.

Care of Patients with Hematologic Problems

Katherine I. Byar



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Examine individual patient factors for threats to safety, especially among older adults.
2. Apply the principles of asepsis to protect immunocompromised patients.
3. Modify the environment to protect patients who have thrombocytopenia.
4. Identify appropriate community resources for the patient with a serious hematologic problem or recovering from a stem cell transplant.
5. Plan continuity of care between the hospital and community-based agencies for the patient having a stem cell transplant.
6. Verify patient identification before any form of transfusion therapy.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

7. Teach patients ways to prevent leukemia or lymphoma by avoiding known environmental causative agents.
8. Identify patients at increased risk for infection and hemorrhage.
9. Assess the patient's endurance in performing ADLs.
10. Coordinate with a dietitian to teach patients with dietary deficiency-related anemia about the appropriate food sources for anemia prevention.
11. Teach patients and family members how to avoid injury and infection when blood counts are low.

Psychosocial Integrity

12. Encourage the patients and family members to express their feelings about the diagnosis of a serious hematologic problem, its prognosis, and treatment.
13. Use effective communication when teaching patients and family members about what to expect during tests and therapeutic procedures.
14. Use complementary and alternative therapies along with drug therapy to improve patient comfort.

Physiological Integrity

15. Identify three clinical manifestations common to patients who have any type of anemia.
16. Identify people at increased genetic risk for a hematologic disorder.
17. Prioritize nursing care for the patient who has sickle cell disease.
18. Identify the risk factors for the development of leukemia, lymphoma, and myelodysplastic syndromes.
19. Interpret laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the presence of infection in a patient who has neutropenia.
20. Prioritize nursing interventions for the patient with neutropenia.
21. Prioritize nursing interventions for the patient with thrombocytopenia.
22. Prioritize nursing responsibilities during transfusion therapy.
23. Identify patients at risk for complications of transfusion therapy.

Hematologic problems result from the impaired production, the impaired function, or the abnormal destruction of any type of blood cell. Problems of the hematologic system can affect many tissues and organs by interfering with *oxygenation and tissue perfusion*. The type and severity of the disorder determine the impact it has on the health of patients. This chapter discusses mild hematologic disorders and those that are potentially life threatening, such as sickle cell disease and leukemia.

RED BLOOD CELL DISORDERS

Red blood cells (RBCs), also known as **erythrocytes**, are the major cell in the blood. *Tissue oxygenation* depends on keeping the circulating number of RBCs within the normal range for the person's age and gender. It also depends on the ability of RBCs to perform their normal functions. RBC disorders include problems in production, function, and destruction. Problems may result in poor function of RBCs, decreased numbers of RBCs (**anemia**), or an excess of RBCs (**polycythemia**).

ANEMIA

Anemia is a reduction in either the number of RBCs, the amount of hemoglobin, or the **hematocrit** (percentage of packed RBCs per deciliter of blood). It is a clinical sign, not a specific disease, because it occurs with many health problems. Anemia can result from dietary problems, genetic disorders, bone marrow disease, or excessive bleeding. GI bleeding is the most common reason for anemia in adults.

There are many types and causes of anemia. Some are caused by a deficiency in one or more of the components needed to make fully functional RBCs. Such anemias can be caused by deficiencies of iron, vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, or intrinsic factor. Other causes include a decreased rate of RBC production and increased RBC destruction. Table 42-1 lists common causes of many anemias. Despite the many causes of anemia, the effects of anemia on the patient (Chart 42-1) and the nursing care needed are similar for all types of anemia (Coyer & Lash, 2008).

ANEMIAS RESULTING FROM INCREASED DESTRUCTION OF RED BLOOD CELLS

SICKLE CELL DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Sickle cell disease (SCD), which used to be called *sickle cell anemia*, is a genetic disorder that results in chronic anemia, pain, disability, organ damage, increased risk for infection, and early death. There is a difference between sickle cell disease state and sickle cell trait. In addition, there is great variation among patients in how severe the disease is and when complications start.

The main problem in this disorder is the formation of abnormal hemoglobin chains. In healthy adults, the normal hemoglobin molecule has two alpha chains and two beta chains of amino acids. Normal adult hemoglobin is called **hemoglobin A (HbA)**. Normal adult red blood cells usually contain 98% to 99% HbA, with a small percentage of a fetal form of hemoglobin (HbF).

TABLE 42-1 COMMON CAUSES OF ANEMIA

TYPE OF ANEMIA	COMMON CAUSES
Sickle cell disease	Autosomal recessive inheritance of two defective gene alleles for hemoglobin synthesis
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency anemia	X-linked recessive deficiency of the enzyme <i>G6PD</i>
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia	Abnormal immune function in which a person's immune reactive cells fail to recognize his or her own red blood cells as self cells
Iron deficiency anemia	Inadequate iron intake caused by: • Iron-deficient diet • Chronic alcoholism • Malabsorption syndromes • Partial gastrectomy Rapid metabolic (anabolic) activity caused by: • Pregnancy • Adolescence • Infection
Vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency anemia	Dietary deficiency Failure to absorb vitamin B ₁₂ from intestinal tract as a result of: • Partial gastrectomy • Pernicious anemia • Malabsorption syndromes
Folic acid deficiency anemia	Dietary deficiency Malabsorption syndromes Drugs: • Oral contraceptives • Anticonvulsants • Methotrexate
Aplastic anemia	Exposure to myelotoxic agents: • Radiation • Benzene • Chloramphenicol • Alkylating agents • Antimetabolites • Sulfonamides • Insecticides Viral infection (unproven): • Epstein-Barr virus • Hepatitis B • Cytomegalovirus

In SCD, at least 40% (and often much more) of the total hemoglobin is composed of an abnormality of the beta chains, known as *hemoglobin S (HbS)*. HbS is sensitive to changes in the oxygen content of the RBC. When RBCs having large amounts of HbS are exposed to decreased oxygen conditions, the abnormal beta chains contract and pile together within the cell, distorting the shape of the RBC. These cells assume a sickle shape, become rigid, and clump together, causing the RBCs to become "sticky" and fragile. These clumps form masses of sickled RBCs that block blood flow (Fig. 42-1). This blood vessel obstruction, known as a *vaso-occlusive event (VOE)*, leads to further tissue **hypoxia** (reduced oxygen supply) and more sickle-shaped cells, which then leads to more blood vessel obstruction and ischemia. Repeated episodes of ischemia lead to progressive organ

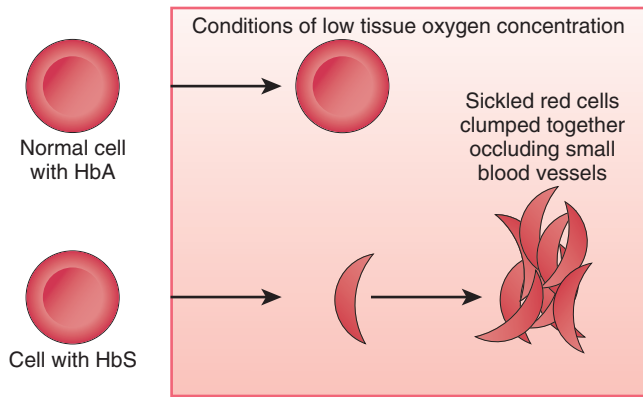


FIG. 42-1 Red blood cell actions under conditions of low tissue oxygenation. (HbA, Hemoglobin A; HbS, hemoglobin S.)

CHART 42-1 KEY FEATURES

Anemia

Integumentary Manifestations

- Pallor, especially of the ears, the nail beds, the palmar creases, the conjunctivae, and around the mouth
- Cool to the touch
- Intolerance of cold temperatures
- Nails become brittle and may lose the normal convex shape; over time, nails become concave and fingers assume clublike appearance

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Tachycardia at basal activity levels, increasing with activity and during and immediately after meals
- Murmurs and gallops heard on auscultation when anemia is severe
- Orthostatic hypotension

Respiratory Manifestations

- Dyspnea on exertion
- Decreased oxygen saturation levels

Neurologic Manifestations

- Increased somnolence and fatigue
- Headache

damage from anoxia and infarction. Conditions that cause sickling include hypoxia, dehydration, infections, venous stasis, pregnancy, alcohol consumption, high altitudes, low or high environmental or body temperatures, acidosis, strenuous exercise, emotional stress, and anesthesia.

Usually, sickled cells go back to normal shape when the precipitating condition is removed, the blood oxygen level is normalized, and proper *tissue perfusion* resumes. Although the cells then appear normal, at least some of the hemoglobin remains twisted, decreasing cell flexibility. The cell membranes become damaged over time, and cells are permanently sickled. The membranes of cells with HbS are more fragile and more easily broken. The average life span of an RBC containing 40% or more of HbS is about 12 to 15 days, much less than the 120-day life span of normal RBCs. This reduced RBC life span causes **hemolytic** (blood cell–destroying) anemia in patients with sickle cell disease.

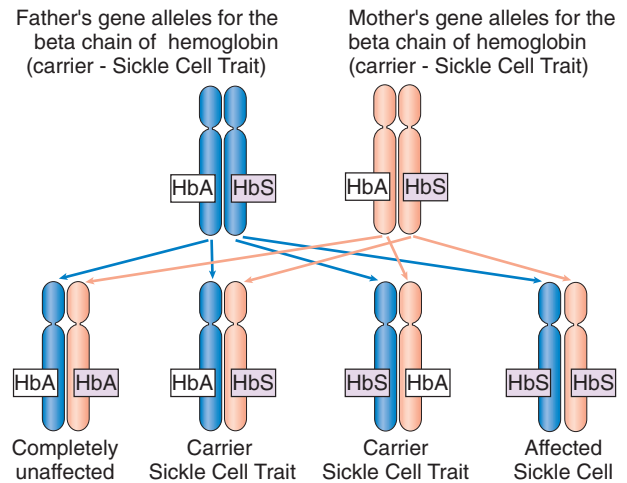


FIG. 42-2 Possible transmission of sickle cell disease and sickle cell trait when both parents are carriers.

The patient with SCD has periodic episodes of extensive cellular sickling, called **crises**. The crises have a sudden onset and can occur as often as weekly or as seldom as once a year. Many patients are in good health much of the time, with crises occurring only in response to conditions that cause local or systemic **hypoxemia** (deficient oxygen in the blood).

Repeated VOEs of larger blood vessels have long-term damaging effects on tissues and organs. Most effects occur as a result of tissue hypoxia, anoxia, ischemia, and cell death. Tissues and organs begin to have small infarcted areas and scar tissue formation. Eventually, so many healthy cells are destroyed that organ failure results. Tissues most often affected in this way are the spleen, liver, heart, kidney, brain, joints, bones, and retina.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Sickle cell disease (SCD) is a genetic disorder with an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance (see [Chapter 6](#)). The formation of the beta chains of hemoglobin depends on a pair of gene alleles (alternate forms of a gene). A mutation in these alleles leads to the formation of HbS instead of HbA. In sickle cell disease, the patient has two HbS gene alleles, one inherited from each parent, usually resulting in 80% to 100% of the total hemoglobin being HbS. Because both hemoglobin alleles are S, sickle cell disease is sometimes also abbreviated “SS.” Patients with SCD have severe manifestations of the disease even when triggering conditions are mild. If a patient with SCD has children, each child will inherit one of the two abnormal gene alleles and at least have sickle cell trait.

In **sickle cell trait**, one normal gene allele and one abnormal gene allele for hemoglobin are inherited, so that only half of the hemoglobin chains produced are abnormal. Because people with this problem have one hemoglobin A allele and one hemoglobin S allele, sickle cell trait is abbreviated “AS.” The patient is a carrier of the HbS gene allele ([Fig. 42-2](#)) and can pass the trait on to his or her children. However, the patient has only mild manifestations of the disease when precipitating conditions are present because less than 40% of the hemoglobin is abnormal.

Incidence/Prevalence

Sickle cell trait and different forms of SCD occur in people of all races and ethnicities but less often among white people. In the United States, about 70,000 people have SCD, most commonly in African Americans (U.S. National Library of Medicine [USNLM], 2011). SCD occurs in 1 in 500 African Americans, and 1 in 12 to 1 in 15 (8%) African Americans are carriers of one sickle cell gene allele and have AS (USNLM, 2011).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

An adult with sickle cell disease (SCD) usually has a long-standing diagnosis of the disorder. An adult with sickle cell trait usually has no hematologic manifestations or abnormal laboratory findings other than the presence of hemoglobin S. This person may be unaware that he or she has a hematologic problem until an acute illness is present or when anesthesia is administered.

Ask the patient about previous crises, what led to the crises, severity, and usual treatments. Explore recent contact with ill people and activities to determine what caused the current crisis. Ask him or her about symptoms of infection as the cause of a crisis, such as sore throat, cough, GI changes, or pain and burning upon urination.

Review all activities and events during the past 24 hours, including food and fluid intake, exposure to temperature extremes, drugs taken, exercise, trauma, stress, recent airplane travel, and ingestion of alcohol or other recreational drugs. Ask about changes in sleep and rest patterns, ability to climb stairs, and any activity that induces shortness of breath. Determine his or her perceived energy level using a scale ranging from 0 to 10 (0 = not tired with plenty of energy; 10 = total exhaustion) to assess the degree of fatigue. This activity review provides important information about fatigue, activity tolerance, and participation in ADLs. It may also help patients determine what specific types of activities or environmental changes trigger their crises.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Pain is the most common symptom of SCD crisis. Other manifestations vary with the site of tissue damage.

Cardiovascular changes, including the risk for high-output heart failure, occur because of the anemia. Assess the patient for shortness of breath and general fatigue or weakness. Other problems may include murmurs, the presence of an S₃ heart sound, and increased jugular-venous pulsation or distention. Assess his or her cardiac and vascular status by comparing peripheral pulses, temperature, and capillary refill in all extremities. Extremities distal to blood vessel occlusion are cool to the touch with slow capillary refill and may have reduced or absent pulses. Heart rate may be rapid and blood pressure low to average, with a decreased pulse pressure, because breakage of RBCs leads to anemia. Anemia results in a less viscous (thinner) blood that moves more rapidly through the heart and blood vessels under lower pressures than does blood with normal viscosity.

Priapism is a prolonged penile erection that can occur in men who have SCD. The cause is excessive vascular engorgement in erectile tissue. The condition is very painful and can last for hours. During the priapism episode, the patient usually cannot urinate.

Skin changes include pallor or cyanosis because of *poor oxygenation* from *decreased perfusion* and anemia. Examine the lips, tongue, nail beds, conjunctivae, palms, and soles of the feet at least every 8 hours for subtle color changes. With cyanosis, the lips and tongue are gray and the palms, soles, conjunctivae, and nail beds have a bluish tinge.

Another skin manifestation of SCD is jaundice. Jaundice results from RBC destruction and release of bilirubin. Bilirubin is present inside RBCs and released when fragile cells are damaged, leading to jaundice. To assess for jaundice in patients with darker skin, inspect the roof of the mouth for a yellow appearance. Yellow-tinged sclera may be misleading because of normal deposits of fat that appears yellowish in contrast to the dark skin around the eye. Examine the sclera closest to the cornea to assess jaundice more accurately. The palms and soles of dark-skinned patients may appear yellow if calloused and could be mistaken for jaundice. Jaundice often causes intense itching.

Despite the anemia, patients with SCD usually are not iron deficient. With increased RBC production and destruction, iron released from the cells increases the pigmentation of the skin.

As many as 75% of adults with SCD have open sores or ulcers on the lower legs that are caused by *poor tissue perfusion*. The outer sides and inner aspect of the ankle or the shin are common ulcer sites. Inspect the legs and feet for open lesions or darkened areas that may indicate necrotic tissue. These lesions often become necrotic or infected, requiring débridement and antibiotic therapy. Skin grafting may be needed when ulcers fail to heal.

Abdominal changes include major organ damage to the spleen and liver. These organs are usually the first to be damaged from many episodes of hypoxia and ischemia. In crisis, abdominal pain is diffuse and steady, involving the back and legs (Sickle Cell Information Center, 2010). Bowel sounds should be present with normal activity. Palpate the liver and spleen for enlargement. The liver or spleen may feel firm and enlarged with a nodular or “lumpy” texture in later stages of the disease. Check for guarding or rebound tenderness to palpation. A rapidly enlarging liver or spleen with increasing jaundice may indicate blood trapping in those organs.

Kidney and urinary changes are common as a result of *poor perfusion*. Chronic kidney disease occurs as a result of anoxic damage to the kidney nephrons. With early damage, the kidneys are less effective at filtration and reabsorption. The urine contains protein, and the patient may not concentrate urine. Eventually, the kidneys fail, resulting in little or no urine output. The buildup of waste products in the blood leads to death.

Musculoskeletal changes occur because arms and legs are common sites of blood vessel occlusion in SCD. Joints also may be damaged from hypoxic episodes and have necrotic degeneration. Inspect the arms and legs for symmetry, and record any areas of swelling, temperature, or color difference. Ask patients to move all joints. Record the range of motion and any pain with movement.

Central nervous system (CNS) changes may occur in SCD. During crises, patients may have a low-grade fever. If the CNS has infarcts or repeated episodes of hypoxia, patients may have seizures or manifestations of a stroke, including pronator drift and a weakened hand grasp. Assess for the presence of “pronator drift” by having the patient extend both arms in front in a palms up (supination) position. Pronator drift occurs when the patient cannot maintain one or both hands in the supine position and the hand drifts into a prone or palm-down position. Assess hand grasps on both sides. Also assess the patient’s gait and coordination.

Psychosocial Assessment

Psychosocial assessment is important because behavioral changes are early manifestations of cerebral hypoxia from *poor tissue perfusion*. Observe the patient, and document behavior. Ask family members whether the current behavior and mental status are usual for the patient.

SCD is a painful, life-limiting disorder that can be passed on to one’s children. Assess the patient’s psychosocial needs in terms of new factors, established support systems, use of coping patterns, and disease progression. Ask the patient about how he or she views the disease and what changes in lifestyle have been made as limitations increased.

Laboratory Assessment

The diagnosis of SCD is based on the percentage of hemoglobin S (HbS) on electrophoresis. A person who has AS usually has less than 40% HbS, and the patient with SCD may have 80% to 100% HbS. This percentage does not change during crises. Another indicator of SCD is the number of RBCs with permanent sickling. This value is less than 1% among people with no hemoglobin disease, is 5% to 50% among people with AS, and may be 90% among patients with SCD.

Other laboratory tests can indicate complications of the disease, especially during crises. The hematocrit of patients with SCD is low (between 20% and 30%) because the life span of the RBC is so much shorter than normal and because many cells are destroyed. This value decreases even more during crises or when the bone marrow fails to produce cells during stress (aplastic crisis). The reticulocyte count is high, indicating anemia of long duration. It is high because the bone marrow is releasing immature red blood cells (reticulocytes) to make up for the low hematocrit and resulting tissue hypoxia. Often the total bilirubin levels are high in patients with SCD because the hemoglobin released from damaged and dead red blood cells is broken down into iron and heme molecules. The heme molecules then are metabolized into free bilirubin.

The total white blood cell (WBC) count is usually high in patients with SCD. This elevation is related to chronic inflammation caused by tissue hypoxia and ischemia.

Imaging Assessment

Bone changes occur as a result of chronically stimulated marrow and low bone oxygen levels. The skull may show changes on x-ray as a result of bone surface cell destruction and new growth, giving the skull a “crew cut” appearance on x-ray. X-rays of joints may show necrosis and destruction. Ultrasonography, computed tomography (CT), positron

emission tomography (PET), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may show soft-tissue and organ changes from poor oxygenation and chronic inflammation.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Electrocardiographic (ECG) changes document cardiac infarcts and tissue damage. Specific ECG changes are related to the area of the heart that has been damaged. Echocardiograms may show cardiomyopathy and decreased cardiac output (low ejection fraction).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which laboratory value in a client with sickle cell disease does the nurse report immediately to the health care provider?

- A. Hematocrit 24%
- B. Hemoglobin S (HbS) 78%
- C. Platelet count 260,000/mm³
- D. White blood cell (WBC) count 20,000/mm³

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for the patient with sickle cell disease are:

1. Acute Pain related to poor tissue oxygenation
2. Chronic Pain related to joint destruction
3. Potential for sepsis
4. Potential for multiple organ dysfunction and death

INTERVENTIONS

Managing Pain

The most common problem of SCD is pain (Granados & Jacob, 2009). The pain with sickle cell crisis is the result of tissue injury caused by poor oxygenation from obstructed blood flow. At times, patients have mild pain episodes that can be managed at home. However, pain is often severe enough to require hospitalization and large doses of opioid analgesics. Acute pain episodes have a sudden onset, usually involving the chest, back, abdomen, and extremities. Complications of SCD, such as bone necrosis, can cause severe, chronic pain, requiring large doses of opioid analgesics.

Ask the patient whether the pain is typical of past pain episodes. If not, other pain causes or disease complications must be explored. Use of a pain rating scale can help proper pain management. Ask the patient to rate pain on a scale ranging from 0 to 10, and evaluate the effectiveness of interventions based on the ratings.

Concerns about substance abuse can lead to inadequate pain treatment in these patients. Opioid addiction is rare, occurring in only 2% to 5% of patients with SCD. Pain management is based on past pain history, previous drug use, disease complications, and current pain assessment. Health care providers need to be aware of their own attitudes when caring for this population. If substance abuse is suspected, management of addiction is incorporated into the patient’s overall treatment plan. Management of substance abuse and SCD poses many challenges, because the patient usually cannot be expected to be totally opioid-free. Addicted patients with acute pain crisis may need opioids for short periods.

CHART 42-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient in Sick Cell Crisis

- Administer oxygen.
- Administer prescribed pain medication.
- Hydrate the patient with normal saline IV and with beverages of choice (without caffeine) orally.
- Remove any constrictive clothing.
- Encourage the patient to keep extremities extended to promote venous return.
- Do not raise the knee position of the bed.
- Elevate the head of the bed no more than 30 degrees.
- Keep room temperature at or above 72° F (22.2° C).
- Avoid taking blood pressure with external cuff.
- Check circulation in extremities every hour:
 - Pulse oximetry of fingers and toes
 - Capillary refill
 - Peripheral pulses
 - Toe temperature

Drug therapy for patients in acute sickle cell crisis often starts with at least 48 hours of IV analgesics. (Chart 42-2 lists best practices for nursing care of the patient in sickle cell crisis.) Morphine and hydromorphone (Dilaudid) are given IV on a routine schedule or by infusion pump using patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) (see Chapter 5). Once relief is obtained, the IV dose can be tapered and the drug given orally. Avoid “as needed” (PRN) schedules because they do not provide adequate relief. Avoid IM injections because absorption is impaired by poor perfusion and sclerosed skin. Moderate pain may be treated with oral opioids or NSAIDs. (See Chapter 5 for more information on pain management.)

Hydroxyurea (Droxia) has been successfully used to reduce the number of sickling and pain episodes (Pack-Mabien & Haynes, 2009). Hydroxyurea works by stimulating fetal hemoglobin (HbF) production. HbF is present during fetal development, but its production is turned off before birth. Increasing the level of HbF reduces sickling of red blood cells in patients with sickle cell disease. However, this drug is associated with an increased incidence of leukemia. Long-term complications should be discussed with the patient before this therapy is started. Hydroxyurea also suppresses bone marrow function, and regular follow-up to monitor complete blood counts (CBCs) for drug toxicity is important. *Hydroxyurea also causes birth defects and should not be taken by anyone who is pregnant or likely to become pregnant.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach sexually active women of childbearing age to use at least two methods of birth control while taking hydroxyurea and for 1 month after the drug is discontinued because this drug can cause severe birth defects.

Hydration by the oral or IV route helps reduce the duration of pain episodes. Urge the patient to drink water or juices. Hypotonic fluids, such as dextrose 5% in water (D₅W) or dextrose 5% in 0.45% sodium chloride, are usually infused at 250 mL/hr for 4 hours. Hypotonic fluids are used because

the patient's blood volume is usually hypertonic as a result of dehydration. Using hypotonic fluids can help bring the patient's blood osmolarity back down to the normal range of 270 to 300 mOsm. The IV rate is then reduced to 125 mL/hr if more hydration is needed.

Complementary therapies and other measures, such as keeping the room warm, using distraction and relaxation techniques, positioning with support for painful areas, aroma therapy, therapeutic touch, and warm soaks or compresses, all help reduce pain perception.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Do not assume that complementary therapies alone will provide adequate pain relief. Analgesics are needed to manage sickle cell pain.

Preventing Sepsis

The patient with SCD is at greater risk for bacterial infection because of decreased spleen function resulting from anoxic damage to the spleen. Over time, the spleen may become completely nonfunctional. Expected outcomes of interventions include preventing infection, controlling infection, and starting treatment early for specific infections. The patient who develops a fever should have diagnostic testing for sepsis including CBC with differential, blood cultures, reticulocyte count, urine culture, and a chest x-ray. Usually these patients are started on prophylactic antibiotics.

Prevention and early detection strategies are used to protect the patient in sickle cell crisis from infection. Frequent, thorough handwashing is of the utmost importance. Any person with an upper respiratory tract infection who must enter the patient's room wears a mask. Use strict aseptic technique for all invasive procedures. Coordinate with all members of the health care team to ensure adherence to these strategies.

Continually assess the patient for infection, and monitor the daily CBC with differential WBC count. Inspect the mouth every 8 hours for lesions indicating fungal or viral infection. Listen to the lungs every 8 hours for crackles, wheezes, or reduced breath sounds. Each time the patient voids, inspect the urine for odor and cloudiness, and ask about urgency, burning, or pain during urination. Take vital signs at least every 4 hours to assess for fever, or supervise this action when performed by others.

Drug therapy is a major defense against the infections that develop in the patient with SCD. Prophylactic therapy with twice-daily oral penicillin reduces the number of pneumonia and other streptococcal infections. Urge the patient to receive yearly influenza vaccinations and to receive the pneumonia vaccine. Drug therapy for an actual infection can control infection and prevent sepsis. Drugs used depend on the sensitivity of the specific organism causing the infection, as well as on the extent of the infection.

Preventing Multiple Organ Dysfunction

Continued blood vessel occlusion by clumping of sickled cells increases the risk for multiple organ dysfunctions. Acute chest syndrome, in which a vaso-occlusive episode (VOE) causes infiltration and damage to the pulmonary system, is a major cause of death in adults with SCD (Hernandez &

Patterson, 2009). Preventing dysfunction of any organ is important in SCD management; however, preventing heart and lung damage is a priority. Management of SCD focuses on prevention of VOs and *promotion of oxygenation*.

The patient in sickle cell crisis is admitted to the acute care hospital. Assess for *adequate perfusion* to all body areas. Remove restrictive clothing, and instruct the patient to avoid flexing the knees and hips.

Hydration is needed because dehydration increases cell sickling and must be avoided. Assist him or her in maintaining adequate hydration. The patient in acute crisis needs an oral or IV fluid intake of at least 200 mL/hr.

Oxygen is given during crises because lack of oxygen is the main cause of sickling. Ensure that oxygen therapy is nebulized to prevent dehydration. Monitor oxygen saturation using pulse oximetry. Patients with low oxygen saturation should have an arterial blood gas (ABG) drawn and a chest x-ray.

Transfusion with RBCs can be helpful to increase HbA levels and dilute HbS levels. During transfusion, monitor the patient for complications of the procedure (discussed on pp. 900-901 in the [Transfusion Reactions](#) section).

Transfusions are prescribed cautiously to prevent iron overload from repeated transfusions. Iron overload damages the heart, liver, and endocrine organs. Monitor the patient's serum ferritin, serum iron (Fe), and total iron-binding capacity (TIBC). Deferoxamine mesylate (Desferal, Desferrioxamine) or deferasirox (Exjade) may be prescribed to manage transfusion-induced iron overload.

In some treatment centers, hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) is performed to correct abnormal hemoglobin permanently. Because HSCT is expensive and may result in life-threatening complications, its risks and benefits need to be considered for each patient.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Patient-Centered Care

A 23-year-old African-American woman who has a history of sickle cell disease is brought to the emergency department. She reports joint and back pain that is becoming worse rapidly. She rates her pain as a 9 on a 0-to-10 scale. She is pale, and her vital signs are normal except for a temperature of 101.5° F (38.6° C). She tells you that she had sexual intercourse for the first time 2 days ago. She also says that she now has pain just above the pubic bone during and after urination and that the urine burns.

1. What questions related to pain would you ask this patient?
2. What drug or drugs for pain would you expect this patient to receive and by which route?
3. What diagnostic tests would you expect to be requested for this patient?
4. What nursing assessments would be most important for you to make at this time?
5. What factor or factors could have triggered this crisis episode?

Community-Based Care

Sickle cell disease (SCD) becomes worse over time. Rarely is there a true remission, although the number of crisis episodes may be reduced. Care focuses on teaching the patient and family how to prevent crises and complications ([Chart 42-3](#)). The patient with SCD may receive care in acute care, subacute care, extended or assistive care, and home care settings.

CHART 42-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Sickle Cell Crisis

- Drink at least 3 to 4 liters of liquids every day.
- Avoid alcoholic beverages.
- Avoid smoking cigarettes or using tobacco in any form.
- Contact your health care provider at the first sign of illness or infection.
- Be sure to get a "flu shot" every year.
- Ask your health care provider about taking the pneumonia vaccine.
- Avoid temperature extremes of hot or cold.
- Be sure to wear socks and gloves when going outside on cold days.
- Avoid planes with unpressurized passenger cabins.
- Avoid travel to high altitudes (e.g., cities like Denver and Santa Fe).
- Ensure that any health care professional who takes care of you knows you have sickle cell disease, especially the anesthesia provider and radiologist.
- Consider genetic counseling.
- Avoid strenuous physical activities.
- Engage in mild, low-impact exercise at least three times a week when you are not in crisis.

Teach the patient to avoid specific activities that lead to hypoxia and hypoxemia. Stress the recognition of the early symptoms of crisis so that interventions can be started early to prevent pain, complications, and permanent tissue damage. He or she is often given opioid analgesics for self-management of sickle cell crises at home. Teach the patient and family about the correct use of these drugs. In addition, counsel patients about the hereditary aspects of SCD and provide information about prenatal diagnosis, birth control methods, and pregnancy options.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Pregnancy in women with SCD may be life threatening. Patients who have damage to vital organs are advised against becoming pregnant. Usually, barrier methods of contraception (cervical cap, diaphragm, or condoms with or without spermicides) are recommended for women with SCD. The use of oral contraceptives (OCs) is controversial, because OCs may increase clot formation, especially among smokers, predisposing them to crises. The risks versus benefits of OCs must be evaluated for each patient.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A woman whose hemoglobin S levels are less than 1% has a brother with sickle cell disease (SCD) and both parents have been diagnosed as carriers for the disorder. She asks what her risks are of having a child with sickle cell disease. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. "Because you do not have the trait, you cannot have a child with SCD regardless of your partner's sickle cell status."
- B. "Because both your parents have the trait, it is possible for you to have a child with SCD if your partner actually has the disease."
- C. "Because your brother actually has SCD, the risk for your children having SCD is 50% with each pregnancy."
- D. "Because you are a woman, your daughters will each have a 50% risk for having the disease, and all of your sons will be carriers of the trait."

GLUCOSE-6-PHOSPHATE DEHYDROGENASE DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

Pathophysiology

Many forms of **hemolytic** (blood cell–destroying) anemia are present from birth as a result of defects or deficiencies of one or more enzymes in red blood cells (RBCs). More than 200 such disorders are known. Most of these enzymes are needed to complete some critical step in RBC energy production. The most common type of inherited hemolytic anemia is the deficiency of the enzyme *glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase* (G6PD). This disease is inherited as an X-linked recessive disorder, most fully expressed in homozygous males, although partial expression (carrier state) is possible in heterozygous females. This type of anemia affects about 10% of all African Americans and also may occur in Sephardic Jews, Greeks, Iranians, Chinese, Filipinos, and Indonesians, with a frequency ranging from 5% to 40% (McCance et al., 2010).

G6PD stimulates reactions in glucose metabolism. Because RBCs contain no **mitochondria** (sites of production of adenosine triphosphate [ATP]), metabolism of glucose is required to generate energy in these cells. Newly produced RBCs from patients with G6PD deficiency have sufficient levels of G6PD. Cells with reduced amounts of G6PD break more easily during exposure to some drugs (e.g., sulfonamides, aspirin, quinine derivatives, rasburicase, chloramphenicol, dapsone, high doses of vitamin C, and thiazide diuretics) and exposure to benzene and other toxins.

The patient usually does not have symptoms until exposed to these agents or until a severe infection develops. After exposure to any of these agents, patients have acute breakage of RBCs lasting from 7 to 12 days. During this acute phase, anemia and jaundice develop. The hemolytic reaction is limited because only older RBCs, containing less G6PD, are destroyed.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Prevention is the most important therapeutic measure. Men who belong to the high-risk groups should be tested for this problem before being given drugs that can cause the hemolytic reaction. Screening test results are based on discoloration of methylene blue and reduction of methemoglobin. Donated blood is screened for this deficiency before transfusion because cells deficient in G6PD can be hazardous for the recipient.

Hydration is important during an episode of hemolysis to prevent debris and hemoglobin from collecting in the kidney tubules, which can lead to acute kidney failure. Osmotic diuretics, such as mannitol (Osmitol), may help prevent this complication. Transfusions are needed when anemia is present and kidney function is normal (see **Transfusion Therapy** section on pp. 897-901).

IMMUNOHEMOLYTIC ANEMIA

The most common types of hemolytic anemias in North America are the immunohemolytic anemias, also referred to as *autoimmune hemolytic anemias* (McCance et al., 2010). The pathophysiology of hemolytic anemias involves the excessive destruction of red blood cells followed by acceleration of erythropoiesis. Acquired hemolytic syndromes result

from increased RBC destruction occurring in response to trauma, viral infection, malarial infection, exposure to certain chemicals or drugs, and autoimmune reactions. All increase the rate of RBC destruction by causing membrane **lysis** (breakage).

In immunohemolytic anemia, immune system products (e.g., antibodies) attack a person's own RBCs for unknown reasons. Some hemolytic anemias occur with other autoimmune disorders (e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus) or other conditions such as lymphoma, leukemia, and other neoplastic disorders (Coyer & Lash, 2008). Regardless of the cause, RBCs are viewed as non-self by the immune system and then are attacked and destroyed.

The two types of immunohemolytic anemia are warm antibody anemia and cold antibody anemia. **Warm antibody anemia** occurs with immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibody excess. These antibodies are most active at 98.6° F (37° C) and may be triggered by drugs, chemicals, or other autoimmune problems. **Cold antibody anemia** has complement protein fixation on immunoglobulin M (IgM) and occurs most at 86° F (30° C). This problem often occurs with a Raynaud's-like response in which the arteries in the hands and feet constrict profoundly in response to cold temperatures or stress.

Management depends on symptom severity. Steroid therapy to suppress immune function is the first line of treatment and is temporarily effective in most patients. Splenectomy and more intense immunosuppressive therapy with cancer chemotherapy drugs may be used if steroid therapy fails. Plasma exchange therapy to remove attacking antibodies is effective for patients who do not respond to immunosuppressive therapy.

ANEMIAS RESULTING FROM DECREASED PRODUCTION OF RED BLOOD CELLS

Anemias caused by decreased RBC production occur in response to many problems. Some are caused by failure of the bone marrow to produce healthy RBCs. Anemias also are caused by failure of the body to make or absorb a substance needed for RBC production.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older patients often have restricted diets and may be unable to eat meat because of tooth loss or economic reasons and thus are at risk for iron deficiency anemia. Ask about a family history of anemia. B₁₂ deficiency anemia often occurs in patients 50 to 80 years of age and may result from an inherited genetic mutation.

IRON DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

Adults usually have between 2 and 6 g of iron, depending on the size of the person and the amount of hemoglobin in the cells. About two thirds of this iron is contained in hemoglobin. The other one third is stored in the bone marrow, spleen, liver, and muscle. With iron deficiency, the iron stores are depleted first, followed by the hemoglobin stores. As a result, RBCs are small (**microcytic**) and the patient has mild symptoms of anemia, including weakness and pallor. Other clinical manifestations include fatigue, reduced exercise tolerance, and fissures at the corners of the mouth. Nails become brittle, thin, coarsely ridged, or spoon-shaped and concave (Coyer &

Lash, 2008). In iron deficiency anemia, serum ferritin values are less than 10 ng/mL (normal range is 12 to 300 ng/mL).

Iron deficiency anemia is the most common anemia worldwide, especially among women, older adults, and people with poor diets. It can result from blood loss, poor GI absorption of iron, and an inadequate diet (Simmons, 2010). The problem is a decreased iron supply for the developing RBC.

Any adult with iron deficiency should be evaluated for abnormal bleeding, especially from the GI tract. Management of iron deficiency anemia involves increasing the oral intake of iron from food sources (e.g., red meat, organ meat, egg yolks, kidney beans, leafy green vegetables, and raisins). An adequate diet supplies about 10 to 15 mg of iron per day. However, only 5% to 10% of dietary iron is absorbed. This amount is enough to meet the needs of men and of women after childbearing age but is not sufficient to supply the greater needs of menstruating women. If iron losses are mild, oral iron supplements, such as ferrous sulfate, are started. This treatment should cause the hemoglobin level to rise about 2 g/dL in 4 weeks. Treatment continues until the hemoglobin level returns to normal. Instruct patients to take the iron supplement between meals for better absorption and to reduce GI distress. When iron deficiency anemia is severe, iron solutions can be given IV or IM. When given IM, these solutions must be given using the Z-track best practice method outlined in Chart 42-4. There is controversy as to whether the dorsal gluteal site or the ventrogluteal site should be used for iron dextran (Dexferrum) therapy. Although the ventrogluteal site is recommended as best practice for most IM injections, including those administered by Z-track (Zimmermann, 2010), the drug manufacturer continues to recommend the dorsal gluteal site (MD Consult, 2010). A

CHART 42-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Administering Iron Dextran by the Z-Track Method

- Draw the drug up into the syringe using aseptic technique.
- Add 0.25 mL of air to the syringe.
- Discard the needle used to draw up the drug.
- Place a new needle (22-gauge, 2 to 3 inches long) on the syringe.
- Make certain that the injection site is in bright light.
- Select the dorsal gluteal site (drug manufacturer's recommendation).
- Identify appropriate landmarks for administration into the upper, outer quadrant.
- Once the site is selected, pull the skin and subcutaneous tissues sideways away from the muscle.
- Clean the site while holding the skin and subcutaneous tissues off to the side.
- Insert the needle deeply into the muscle tissue.
- Aspirate to determine needle placement.
- Iron dextran is black; look very closely to determine whether blood is being aspirated into the syringe.
- If blood is aspirated, withdraw the needle and begin the procedure again from the first step.
- If no blood is aspirated, inject the drug slowly, followed by injection of the air bubble.
- Quickly withdraw the needle.
- Release the skin and subcutaneous tissue.
- Do not massage the injection site.

new IV drug for iron deficiency anemia associated with chronic kidney disease is ferumoxytol (Feraheme). It has the advantage of being administered at higher dosages over a shorter period of time compared with other IV iron preparations (Belavic, 2010).

VITAMIN B₁₂ DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

Production of RBCs depends on adequate DNA synthesis in the precursor cells so that cell division and growth into functional RBCs can occur. All cell division requires adequate amounts of folic acid to make DNA. One function of vitamin B₁₂ is to activate the enzymes that move folic acid into the cell where DNA synthesis occurs. Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency causes anemia by inhibiting folic acid transport and reducing DNA synthesis in precursor cells. These precursor cells then undergo improper DNA synthesis and increase in size. Only a few are released from the bone marrow. This type of anemia is called *megaloblastic* or **macrocytic anemia** because of the large size of these abnormal cells.

Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency results from poor intake of foods containing vitamin B₁₂. This more often occurs with vegetarian diets or diets lacking dairy products. Problems such as small bowel resection, chronic diarrhea, diverticula, tapeworm, or overgrowth of intestinal bacteria can lead to poor absorption of vitamin B₁₂. Anemia resulting from failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂ (**pernicious anemia**) is caused by a deficiency of **intrinsic factor** (a substance normally secreted by the gastric mucosa), which is needed for intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂.

Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia may be mild or severe, usually develops slowly, and produces few symptoms. Patients usually have pallor and jaundice, as well as **glossitis** (a smooth, beefy-red tongue) (Fig. 42-3), fatigue, and weight loss. Because vitamin B₁₂ is needed for normal nerve function, patients with pernicious anemia may also have **paresthesias** (abnormal sensations) in the feet and hands and poor balance (Nettina, 2009).

When anemia is caused by a dietary deficiency, the focus of management is to increase the intake of foods rich in vitamin B₁₂ (animal proteins, eggs, and dairy products). Vitamin supplements may be prescribed when anemia is severe. Vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid levels are monitored. Patients who may have pernicious anemia are tested using the



FIG. 42-3 Glossitis, a smooth tongue as a result of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia.

Shilling test, which measures the presence of vitamin B₁₂ in the urine after the patient is given an oral dose of radioactive vitamin B₁₂. If the patient does not absorb the radioactive vitamin B₁₂ because of pernicious anemia, it cannot get into the urine. Patients who have pernicious anemia are given vitamin B₁₂ injections weekly at first, then monthly for the rest of their lives. A new formulation of the drug *cyanocobalamin* (CaloMist) that delivers vitamin B₁₂ by nasal spray also is available to maintain vitamin levels after the patient's deficiency has first been corrected by the traditional injection method.

FOLIC ACID DEFICIENCY ANEMIA

Folic acid deficiency can also cause anemia. Manifestations are similar to those of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, but nervous system functions remain normal because folic acid deficiency does not affect nerve function. The absence of neurologic problems helps distinguish folic acid deficiency from vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. The disease develops slowly, and symptoms may be attributed to other problems or diseases.

Three causes of folic acid deficiency are poor nutrition, malabsorption, and drugs. Poor nutrition, especially a diet lacking green leafy vegetables, liver, yeast, dried beans, and nuts, is the most common cause. Malabsorption syndromes, such as Crohn's disease, are the second most common cause. Chronic alcohol abuse with malnutrition is another cause. Anticonvulsants and oral contraceptives can slow or prevent the absorption and conversion of folic acid to its active form, leading to folic acid deficiency and anemia.

Prevention begins by identifying high-risk patients, such as older, debilitated patients with alcoholism; patients at risk for malnutrition; and those with increased folic acid requirements. A diet rich in foods containing folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ prevents a deficiency. By assessing dietary habits for all patients, you can determine which patients are at risk for diet-induced anemias. This type of anemia is managed with scheduled folic acid replacement therapy.

APLASTIC ANEMIA

Pathophysiology

Aplastic anemia is a deficiency of circulating red blood cells (RBCs) because of failure of the bone marrow to produce these cells. It is caused by an injury to the immature precursor cell for red blood cells, known as the **pluripotent stem cell**. Although aplastic anemia sometimes occurs alone, it usually occurs with **leukopenia** (a reduction in white blood cells [WBCs]) and **thrombocytopenia** (a reduction in platelets). These three problems occur together because the damaged bone marrow loses the ability to produce any of these cells. **Pancytopenia** (a deficiency of all three cell types) is common in aplastic anemia. Disease onset may be slow or rapid.

The most common type of the disease is acquired aplastic anemia. It can be caused by long-term exposure to toxic agents, drugs (see Table 41-3 in Chapter 41), ionizing radiation, or infection. In about 50% of cases, the cause of aplastic anemia is unknown. The disease may follow viral infection, but it is not known exactly how the bone marrow is damaged. The most common hereditary form of the disease is Fanconi's anemia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assess for symptoms of bone marrow failure and *poor oxygenation* such as weakness, pallor, and petechiae or ecchymosis. A complete blood count (CBC) shows severe macrocytic anemia, leukopenia and thrombocytopenia. A bone marrow biopsy may show replacement of cell-forming marrow with fat. Infection is common with leukopenia, especially neutropenia.

Blood transfusions are used only when the anemia causes disability or when bleeding is life threatening because of low platelet counts. Unnecessary transfusion increases the chances for developing immune reactions to platelets and shortens the life span of the transfused cell. This therapy is discontinued as soon as the bone marrow begins to produce RBCs.

Allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (transplantation of bone marrow or stem cells from a sibling or matched unrelated donor) remains the preferred and most successful method of treatment for aplastic anemia that does not respond to other therapies. Cost, availability, and complications limit this treatment in aplastic anemia. For those patients who are unable to undergo such treatment or lack a suitable donor, immunosuppressive therapy remains the treatment of choice (Afable & Lyon, 2008).

Immunosuppressive therapy helps patients who have the types of aplastic anemia with a disease course similar to that of autoimmune problems. Drugs such as prednisone, antithymocyte globulin (ATG), and cyclosporine A (Sandimmune) have resulted in partial or complete remissions. The combination of ATG and cyclosporine A has been found to improve results (Afable & Lyon, 2008). Another immunosuppressant agent that has been found to improve both blood counts and transfusion requirements in patients with moderate aplastic anemia is daclizumab (Zenapax). *Splenectomy* (removal of the spleen) may be needed for patients with an enlarged spleen that is either destroying normal RBCs or suppressing their development.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement made by a client with folic acid deficiency anemia indicates to the nurse a correct understanding of self-management for this health problem?

- A. "If my fingers and toes become numb, I will notify my health care provider immediately."
- B. "I will stop playing contact sports or any activity that increases my risk for injury."
- C. "My diet now includes more carrots, cauliflower, and apples."
- D. "I have stopped drinking alcohol completely."

POLYCYTHEMIA

In polycythemia, the number of red blood cells (RBCs) in the blood is *greater* than normal. The blood of a patient with polycythemia is **hyperviscous** (thicker than normal blood). The problem may be temporary (occurring as a result of other conditions) or chronic. One type of polycythemia, polycythemia vera (PV), is fatal if left untreated.

POLYCYTHEMIA VERA

Pathophysiology

Polycythemia vera (PV) is a disease with a sustained increase in blood hemoglobin levels to 18 g/dL, an RBC count of 6 million/mm³, or a hematocrit of 55% or greater. PV is a cancer of the RBCs with three major hallmarks: massive production of RBCs, excessive leukocyte production, and excessive production of platelets. Extreme **hypercellularity** (cell excess) of the peripheral blood occurs in people with PV.

The patient's facial skin and mucous membranes have a dark, flushed (**plethoric**) appearance. These areas appear purplish or cyanotic because the blood in these tissues is poorly oxygenated. Most patients have intense itching caused by dilated blood vessels and *poor tissue oxygenation*. Blood viscosity is increased, resulting in hypertension. Superficial veins are visibly distended. The thick blood moves more slowly through all tissues and places increased demands on the heart, resulting in hypertension. In some highly vascular areas, blood flow may become so slow that stasis occurs. Vascular stasis causes **thrombosis** (clot formation) within the smaller vessels, occluding blood vessels. The blood vessel occlusion leads to tissue hypoxia, anoxia and, later, to infarction and necrosis. Tissues most at risk for this problem are the heart, spleen, and kidneys, although infarction and damage can occur in any organ or tissue.

Because the actual number of cells in the blood is greatly increased and the cells are not completely normal, cell life spans are shorter. The shorter life spans and increased cell production cause a rapid turnover of circulating blood cells. This rapid turnover increases the amount of cell debris (released when cells die) in the blood, adding to the general "sludging" of the blood. This debris includes uric acid and potassium, which cause the symptoms of gout and **hyperkalemia** (elevated serum potassium level).

Other manifestations of PV are related to abnormal RBCs. Even though the number of RBCs is greatly increased, their oxygen-carrying capacity is impaired, and patients have *poor oxygenation* with severe hypoxia. Patients with PV also have bleeding problems because of platelet impairment.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Polycythemia vera is a malignant disease that progresses in severity over time. If left untreated, few people with PV live longer than 2 years after diagnosis. With management by repeated pheresis (two to five times per week), the patient may live 10 to 15 years or longer. (**Pheresis** is the withdrawal of whole blood and removal of the patient's RBCs to decrease the number of RBCs and reduce blood viscosity. The remaining plasma is then re-infused back into the patient.) Increasing hydration and promoting venous return help prevent clot formation. The purpose of therapy is to prevent clot formation and includes the use of anticoagulants. **Chart 42-5** lists health tips for patients with PV.

As the disease progresses, drug therapy is used to control it, although aggressive IV chemotherapy is no longer recommended because of its increased risk for inducing

CHART 42-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Polycythemia Vera

- Drink at least 3 liters of liquids each day.
- Avoid tight or constrictive clothing, especially garters and girdles.
- Wear gloves when outdoors in temperatures lower than 50° F (10° C).
- Keep all health care–related appointments.
- Contact your physician at the first sign of infection.
- Take anticoagulants as prescribed.
- Wear support hose or stockings while you are awake and up.
- Elevate your feet whenever you are seated.
- Exercise slowly and only on the advice of your physician.
- Stop activity at the first sign of chest pain.
- Use an electric shaver.
- Use a soft-bristled toothbrush to brush your teeth.
- Do not floss between your teeth.

leukemia. Aspirin therapy may be used to decrease clot formation. However, the benefits must be weighed against the increased risk for GI bleeding associated with this therapy. Hydroxyurea, an oral chemotherapy drug, may be prescribed for severe manifestations of the disease.

MYELOYDYSPLASTIC SYNDROMES

Pathophysiology

Myelodysplastic syndromes (MDSs) are a group of disorders caused by the formation of abnormal bone marrow cells. These abnormal cells are usually destroyed shortly after they are released into the blood. As a result, patients with MDS have a decrease in all blood cell types. Anemia is a common problem, occurring in 90% of patients with MDS, although **neutropenia** (low white blood cell [WBC]) count and **thrombocytopenia** (low platelets) are also often present.

Although MDS can occur at any age, it is most common in people age 60 years or older. MDS is not officially a type of cancer but does have cancer-like features and is considered to be a *precancerous* state. Like cancer, MDS arises from a single population of abnormal cells. About 30% of all patients with MDS do eventually develop acute leukemia (Kumar, Abbas, Fausto, & Aster, 2010). A number of subtypes of MDS have different prognoses and responses to therapy. Patients are categorized into risk groups (i.e., low, intermediate [1 and 2], high) based on the severity of **pancytopenia** (low counts of all blood cell types), cytogenetic abnormalities, and numbers of blast cells (immature WBC cells) found in the bone marrow (Kurtin & Demakos, 2010).

The exact cause of MDS is not clear. Risk factors include normal physiologic changes associated with aging, chemical exposures (pesticides, benzene), tobacco smoke, and exposure to radiation or chemotherapy drugs. Diagnosis is made by examination of the chromosomes and the genes within the chromosomes (*cytogenetic testing*) of the bone marrow cells. Peripheral blood smears are used to assess the level of cell maturation and the proportion of abnormal cells.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The only curative treatment for MDS is an allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, which is often not an option because of the advanced age of the patient (Kurtin & Demakos, 2010). For low-risk and intermediate-1-risk MDS, the antitumor immunomodulatory agent *lenalidomide* (Revlimid) is approved for patients whose dysplastic cells have the chromosome abnormality of a deleted 5q. Two other agents that are approved for intermediate-2-risk and high-risk MDS are hypomethylating agents *azacitidine* (Vidaza) and *decitabine* (Dacogen). The results of clinical trials have increased the understanding of these treatments alone or in combination with other therapies. Effective management often requires at least 3 to 6 months to achieve a clinical response; therefore supportive care is necessary.

Supportive care includes blood transfusions for anemia and platelet transfusions when platelet levels are very low. Erythropoietin stimulating proteins, such as epoetin alfa (Epogen, Procrit) or darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp) may be given in addition to transfusions. Frequent transfusions can lead to iron overload and organ damage.

Chelating therapy may be needed to reduce the iron overload before damage to the liver and heart occurs. **Chelating** is the chemical binding of iron and its removal from the body. It is indicated for patients who receive more than 20 units of red blood cell transfusions or for those whose serum ferritin levels are greater than 2500 mcg/L. Chelating drugs include deferasirox (Exjade) and deferoxamine mesylate (Desferal, Desferrioxamine).

WHITE BLOOD CELL DISORDERS

As discussed in Chapter 19, white blood cells (WBCs), or **leukocytes**, provide protection from infection and cancer development. This protection depends on maintaining normal numbers and ratios of the different mature, circulating WBCs. When any one type of WBC is present in either abnormally high or abnormally low amounts, immune function is altered to some degree, as are oxygen transport and blood clotting, placing patients at risk for many complications. This section covers the changes and nursing care for patients with disorders involving overgrowth of specific types of WBCs. (See Chapter 21 for the problems and care needs for patients with immune deficiency.)

LEUKEMIA

Pathophysiology

Leukemia is a type of cancer with uncontrolled production of immature WBCs (usually “blast” cells) in the bone marrow. As a result, the bone marrow becomes overcrowded with immature, nonfunctional cells and production of normal blood cells is greatly decreased. Leukemia may be **acute**, with a sudden onset and short duration, or **chronic**, with a slow onset and symptoms that persist for years.

Leukemias are classified by cell type. Leukemic cells coming from the lymphoid pathways (see Fig. 19-3 in Chapter 19) are typed as **lymphocytic** or **lymphoblastic**. Leukemias in which the abnormal cells come from the myeloid pathways

are typed as **myelocytic** or **myelogenous**. Several subtypes exist for each of these diseases, which are classified according to the degree of maturity of the abnormal cell and the specific cell type involved. *Biphenotypic leukemia* is acute leukemia that shows both lymphocytic and myelocytic features.

With leukemia, cancer most often occurs in the stem cells or early precursor leukocyte cells, causing excessive growth of a specific type of immature leukocyte. In some chronic leukemias, the cancerous cells may be more mature. These cells are abnormal, and their excessive production in the bone marrow stops normal bone marrow production of RBCs, platelets, and mature leukocytes. Anemia, thrombocytopenia, and leukopenia result. Often the number of immature, abnormal WBCs (called “blasts”) in the blood is greatly elevated, and these cells cannot provide infection protection. Leukemic cells can also be found in the spleen, liver, lymph nodes, and central nervous system. Without treatment, the patient will die of infection or hemorrhage. For patients with acute leukemia, these changes occur rapidly and, without intervention, progress to death. Chronic leukemia may be present for years before changes appear.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The exact cause of leukemia is unknown, although many genetic and environmental factors are involved in its development. The basic problem involves damage to genes controlling cell growth. This damage then changes cells from a normal to a **malignant** (cancer) state. Analysis of the bone marrow of a patient with acute leukemia shows abnormal chromosomes about 50% of the time (McCance et al., 2010). Possible risk factors for the development of leukemia include ionizing radiation, viral infection, exposure to chemicals and drugs, bone marrow **hypoplasia** (reduced production of blood cells), genetic factors, immunologic factors, environmental factors, and the interaction of these factors.

Ionizing radiation exposures such as radiation therapy for cancer treatment or heavy radiation exposure (e.g., the atomic bomb at Hiroshima or the nuclear accident at Chernobyl) increase the risk for leukemia development, particularly acute myelogenous leukemia (AML).

Chemicals and drugs have been linked to leukemia development because of their ability to damage DNA. Previous treatment for cancer with chemotherapy (e.g., melphalan, doxorubicin, etoposide, and cyclophosphamide) poses risks for leukemia development about 5 to 8 years after treatment. Table 41-3 in Chapter 41 lists chemicals and drugs that damage the hematologic system.

Bone marrow hypoplasia can increase leukemia risk by reducing or changing the rate of bone marrow cell production. Disorders that have marrow hypoplasia and may lead to leukemia development include Fanconi’s anemia and myelodysplastic syndromes.

Genetic factors influence leukemia development. There is an increased incidence of the disease among patients with hereditary conditions such as Down syndrome, Bloom syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome, and Fanconi’s anemia. Identical siblings of patients with leukemia have a higher incidence of leukemia than do the general population.

Immunologic factors, especially immune deficiencies, may promote the development of leukemia. Leukemia related to immune deficiency may be a result of loss of immune

protection, or the same mechanisms that cause the immune deficiency may also trigger cancer in the WBCs.

Interaction of many host and environmental factors may result in leukemia. Because each person tolerates the interaction of these factors differently, it is difficult to determine the origin of any specific leukemia.

Incidence/Prevalence

Leukemia accounts for 2% of all new cases of cancer and 4% of all deaths from cancer (American Cancer Society, 2011). The incidence depends on many factors, including the type of WBC affected, age, gender, race, and geographic locale.

In the United States, about 44,000 new cases of leukemia occur each year (American Cancer Society, 2011). Leukemia is classified into any one of four types based on the cell type affected and how fast the disease progresses:

- *Acute myelogenous leukemia (AML)* is the most common form of adult-onset acute leukemia. There are eight subtypes of AML, which are diagnosed and classified on the basis of the number of healthy blood cells, the number of leukemic cells, and the specific chromosomal abnormalities identified in the leukemic cells. Disease prognosis varies by subtype and chromosomal abnormality. *Acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL)* is a common subtype of adult-onset AML that is now the most curable of the adult AMLs (Walker & Held-Warmkessel, 2010).
- *Acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL)* makes up about 10% of adult-onset leukemias and is most common in children. In adults with ALL, the Philadelphia chromosome, usually the hallmark of chronic myelogenous leukemia, may be present.
- *Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML)* makes up about 20% of adult-onset leukemias, occurring more often in people older than 50 years. A major feature of CML is the presence of the Philadelphia chromosome abnormality in the leukemic cells. CML has three phases:
 - The *chronic phase* is often a slowly progressing (indolent) course during which the patient may have mild symptoms and respond to standard treatments. The bone marrow has less than 10% blast cells at this time.
 - The *accelerated phase* features spleen enlargement and progressive manifestation, such as intermittent fevers, night sweats, and unexplained weight loss. The patient usually does not respond to standard treatment and the bone marrow may contain 10% to 30% blast cells and promyelocytes. This phase typically lasts 6 to 12 months.
 - The *blast phase* indicates transformation to a very aggressive acute leukemia. The bone marrow contains more than 30% blast cells. The promyelocytes and blast cells spread to other tissues and organs.
- *Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL)* is the most common type of chronic leukemia and occurs most often in people older than 50 years (Elphee, 2008). Average survival time ranges from less than 19 months for patients diagnosed with advanced disease to more than 10 years for patients diagnosed with early-stage disease.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client newly diagnosed with acute leukemia asks why he is at such extreme risk for infection when his white blood cell count is so high. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Even though you have many white blood cells, they are too immature to fight infection."
- "For now, your risk is low; however, when the chemotherapy begins, your risk for infection will be high."
- "These white blood cells are cancerous and live longer than normal white blood cells, so they are too old to fight infection."
- "It is not the white blood cells that provide protection; it is the red blood cells, which are very low in your blood right now."

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask the patient about exposure to risk factors and related genetic factors. Age is important because the risk for adult-onset leukemia increases with age. Occupation and hobbies may reveal exposure to agents that increase the risk for leukemia. Previous illnesses and the medical history may reveal exposure to ionizing radiation or drugs that increase risk.

Changes in immune function increase the risk for infection in the patient with leukemia. Even when his or her blood may show a normal level of WBCs or even a high level, these cells are immature and cannot protect the patient from infection. Ask about the frequency and severity of infections, such as colds, influenza, pneumonia, bronchitis, or unexplained fevers, during the past 6 months.

Platelet function is reduced with leukemia. Ask about any excessive bleeding episodes, such as:

- A tendency to bruise easily
- Nosebleeds
- Increased menstrual flow
- Bleeding from the gums
- Rectal bleeding
- Hematuria (blood in the urine)
- Prolonged bleeding after minor abrasions or cuts

If the patient has experienced such an episode, ask whether this type and extent of bleeding is his or her usual response to injury or represents a change.

The patient with leukemia often has weakness and fatigue from anemia and from the increased metabolism of the leukemic cells. Ask whether any of these have occurred:

- Headaches
- Behavior changes
- Increased somnolence
- Decreased alertness
- Decreased attention span
- Lethargy, muscle weakness
- Loss of appetite
- Weight loss
- Increased fatigue

Listing activities in the previous 24 hours may reveal information about activity intolerance, changes in behavior, and

CHART 42-6 KEY FEATURES

Acute Leukemia**Integumentary Manifestations**

- Ecchymoses
- Petechiae
- Open infected lesions
- Pallor of the conjunctivae, nail beds, palmar creases, and around the mouth

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Bleeding gums
- Anorexia
- Weight loss
- Enlarged liver and spleen

Renal Manifestations

- Hematuria

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Tachycardia at basal activity levels
- Orthostatic hypotension
- Palpitations

Respiratory Manifestations

- Dyspnea on exertion

Neurologic Manifestations

- Fatigue
- Headache
- Fever

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Bone pain
- Joint swelling and pain

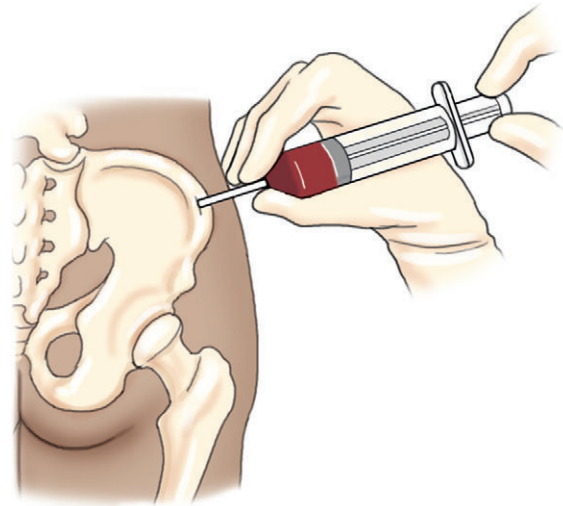


FIG. 42-4 Bone marrow aspiration from the posterior iliac crest.

unexplained fatigue. Determine how long the patient has had any of these debilitating symptoms.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Leukemia affects all blood cells and the health and function of all organs and systems. Thus many body areas and systems may be affected (Chart 42-6). The following manifestations occur with acute leukemia. Some may occur in the patient with chronic leukemia in the blast phase.

Cardiovascular changes are related to the adjustments the heart needs to make when oxygenation is reduced because of anemia. The heart rate is increased, and blood pressure is decreased. **Murmurs** (abnormal blood flow sounds through the heart) and **bruits** (abnormal blood flow sounds heard over arteries) may be heard. Capillary refill is slow. When the blood is highly viscous from a greatly elevated WBC count, blood pressure is elevated and the pulse is bounding.

Respiratory changes are related to reduced tissue oxygenation from anemia and to infection. Respiratory rate increases as anemia becomes more severe. If respiratory infections are present, the patient may have coughing and shortness of breath. Abnormal breath sounds are heard on auscultation.

Skin changes include pallor and coolness to the touch as a result of *reduced tissue perfusion* related to anemia. Pallor is most evident on the face, around the mouth, and in the nail beds. The conjunctiva of the eye also is pale, as are the creases on the palm of the hand (most evident when the skin over the palm of the hand is stretched). **Petechiae** (raised red spots) may be present on any area of skin surface, especially the legs and feet. The petechiae may be unrelated to any obvious trauma. Inspect for skin infections or injured areas that have failed to heal. Inspect the mouth for gum bleeding and any sore or lesion that may indicate infection.

Intestinal changes may be related to an increased bleeding tendency and to fatigue. Weight loss, nausea, and anorexia are common. Examine the rectal area for fissures, and test stool for occult blood. Many patients with leukemia have reduced

bowel sounds and are constipated because reduced blood flow to intestinal tissue leads to decreased peristalsis. Enlargement of the liver and spleen and abdominal tenderness also may be present from leukemic cells trapped in these organs.

Central nervous system (CNS) changes include cranial nerve problems, headache, and papilledema from leukemic invasion of the CNS. Seizures and coma also may occur.

Miscellaneous changes can include bone and joint tenderness as the marrow is damaged and the bone reabsorbs. Leukemic cells invade lymph nodes, causing enlargement.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with newly diagnosed leukemia is very anxious and fearful of the disease outcome. Current therapies have greatly improved the prognoses of leukemia. Spend time with the patient and family to assess what the diagnosis means to them and what they expect in the future. Without knowing the patient's expectations and feelings, you cannot teach him or her and provide individualized support.

A diagnosis of leukemia has serious consequences for a person's lifestyle. Hospitalization for initial treatment often lasts many weeks and may result in boredom, loneliness, isolation, and financial stress. Assess coping patterns, including activities that the patient finds enjoyable and methods that help the patient relax. After initial therapy, he or she may be able to resume work, depending on the occupation. Often the patient must make adjustments for changes in functional status. He or she is hospitalized repeatedly for complications.

Laboratory Assessment

The patient with acute leukemia usually has decreased hemoglobin and hematocrit levels, a low platelet count, and an abnormal white blood cell (WBC) count. The WBC count may be low, normal, or elevated. The patient with a high WBC count consisting mostly of blast cells at diagnosis has a poorer prognosis.

The definitive test for leukemia is an examination of cells obtained from bone marrow aspiration and biopsy

(Fig. 42-4). The bone marrow is full of leukemic **blast phase cells** (immature cells that are dividing). The proteins (**antigens**) on the surfaces of the leukemic cells help diagnose the type of leukemia. These proteins are “markers” that identify certain types of leukemia or may indicate prognosis. Such markers include the T11 protein, terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TDT), the common acute lymphoblastic leukemia antigen (CALLA), and the CD33 antigen.

Blood clotting times and factors are usually abnormal with acute leukemia. Reduced levels of fibrinogen and other clotting factors are common. Clotting time is prolonged, as is the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT).

Chromosome analysis (cytogenetic studies) of the leukemic cells may identify marker chromosomes to help diagnose the type of leukemia, predict the prognosis, and determine therapy effectiveness. An example is the *Philadelphia chromosome*, which is important in the diagnosis and treatment of chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML).

Imaging Assessment

Specific manifestations determine the need for specific tests. For example, in a patient with dyspnea, a chest x-ray is needed to determine whether leukemic infiltrates are present in the lung. Skeletal x-rays may help determine whether bone **resorption** (loss of bone minerals and density) is present.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), the most common type of adult leukemia, are:

1. Potential for infection related to decreased immune response and chemotherapy
2. Potential for injury related to thrombocytopenia and chemotherapy
3. Fatigue related to decreased tissue oxygenation and increased energy demands

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Preventing Infection

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with leukemia is expected to remain free from infection. Indicators include the following:

- Absence of fever and foul-smelling or purulent drainage
- Absence of cough, chest pain, and dyspnea
- Absence of urinary frequency, urgency, or pain and burning
- Intact skin and mucous membranes

Interventions. Infection is a major cause of death in the patient with leukemia because the white blood cells are immature and cannot function or the cells are depleted from chemotherapy, and sepsis is a common complication. Infection occurs through both **autocontamination** (normal flora overgrows and penetrates the internal environment) and **cross-contamination** (organisms from another person or the environment are transmitted to the patient). The three most common sources of infection are the skin, respiratory tract, and intestinal tract.

Gram-negative bacteria are the most common cause of infection, although other infections do occur. Interventions

CHART 42-7 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

Patients at Risk for Infection

General Condition

- Age
- History of allergies
- History of chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or other immunosuppressive therapies, such as steroid use
- Chronic diseases
- History of febrile neutropenia and associated symptoms
- Nutritional status
- Functional status—problems with immobility
- Tobacco use—cigarettes, pipe, cigars, oral
- Recreational drug use
- Alcohol use
- Prescribed and over-the-counter drug use
- Baseline and ongoing vital signs—blood pressure, heart rate, respiratory rate, and temperature

Skin and Mucous Membranes

- Thorough inspection of all skin surfaces with attention to axilla, anorectal area, and under breasts; inspection of skin for color, vascularity, bleeding, lesions, edema, moist areas, excoriation, irritation, erythema; general condition of hair and nails, pressure areas, swelling, pain, tenderness, biopsy or surgical sites, wounds, enlarged lymph nodes, catheters, or other devices
- Inspection of oral cavity, including lips, tongue, mucous membranes, gingiva, teeth, and throat—color, moisture, bleeding, ulcerations, lesions, exudate, mucositis, stomatitis, plaque, swelling, pain, tenderness, taste changes, amount and character of saliva, ability to swallow, changes in voice, dental caries, patient's oral hygiene routine
- History of current skin or mucous membrane problems

Head, Eyes, Ears, Nose

- Pain, tenderness, exudate, crusting, enlarged lymph nodes

Cardiopulmonary

- Respiratory rate and pattern, breath sounds (presence/absence, adventitious sounds), quantity and characteristics of sputum, shortness of breath, use of accessory muscles, dysphagia, diminished gag reflex, tachycardia, blood pressure

Gastrointestinal

- Pain, diarrhea, bowel sounds, character and frequency of bowel movements, constipation, rectal bleeding, hemorrhoids, change in bowel habits, sexual practices, erythema, ulceration

Genitourinary

- Dysuria, frequency, urgency, hematuria, pruritus, pain, vaginal or penile discharge, vaginal bleeding, burning, lesions, ulcerations, characteristics of urine

Central Nervous System

- Cognition, level of consciousness, personality, behavior

Musculoskeletal

- Tenderness, pain, loss of function

Modified from Dean, G.E., Haeuber, D., & Rivera, L.M. (1996). Infection. In Grant, M., Frank-Stromborg, S.B., Baird, R., McCorkle, et al. (Eds.), *Cancer nursing: A comprehensive textbook* (2nd ed., p. 975). Philadelphia: Saunders.

aim to halt infection and control infections early. **Chart 42-7** lists areas to assess for the patient at risk for infection.

Drug Therapy for Acute Leukemia. Drug therapy for patients with AML is divided into three distinctive phases: induction, consolidation, and maintenance.

Induction therapy is intense and consists of combination chemotherapy started at the time of diagnosis. The purpose of this therapy is to achieve a rapid, complete remission of all manifestations of disease. Combination of chemotherapeutic agents such as an anthracycline (idarubicin or daunorubicin) or anthracenedione (mitoxantrone) and cytosine arabinoside (cytarabine) are usually prescribed although agencies and physicians differ in drugs used and the treatment schedule. One example prescribed course of aggressive chemotherapy is continuous IV cytosine arabinoside for 7 days together with a brief infusion of daunorubicin for the first 3 days, sometimes referred to as a “7 plus 3” regimen. A side effect of this therapy is severe bone marrow suppression with neutropenia, making the patient even more at risk for infection.

Prolonged hospitalizations are common while the patient is neutropenic. Recovery of bone marrow function requires at least 2 to 3 weeks, during which time the patient must be protected from life-threatening infections. Other side effects of drugs used for induction therapy include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, alopecia (hair loss), stomatitis (mouth sores), kidney toxicity, liver toxicity, and cardiac toxicity. (See Chapter 24 for information on effects of anticancer agents.) Older patients have a greater infection-related death rate during this phase than do younger patients.

Consolidation therapy often consists of another course of either the same drugs used for induction at a different dosage or a different combination of chemotherapy drugs. This treatment occurs early in remission, and its intent is to cure. Consolidation therapy may be either a single course of chemotherapy or repeated courses. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation also may be considered, depending on the disease subtype and the patient's response to induction therapy.

Maintenance therapy may be prescribed for months to years after successful induction and consolidation therapies. It is used for patients with acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL) and acute promyelocytic leukemia (APL). The purpose is to maintain the remission achieved through induction and consolidation. Maintenance drugs for ALL are milder and are often given orally for 2 to 5 years. Not all types of leukemia respond to maintenance therapy.

Drug Therapy for Chronic Leukemia. Imatinib mesylate (Gleevec) is a common first-line drug therapy for CML that is Philadelphia chromosome positive. It is targeted therapy that prevents the activation of an enzyme (tyrosine kinase) needed for growth of CML cells. This oral drug is well tolerated and has been effective at inducing remission for early stages of CML. Other drugs used to treat CML include interferon alpha, which reduces the growth of leukemic cells, but its use is limited because of side effects, such as flu-like symptoms and fevers. For patients whose leukemia is resistant to imatinib, second-line therapy with dasatinib (Sprycel) or nilotinib (Tasigna) may be prescribed (Bauer & Romvari, 2009; Byar & Workman, 2012).

Treatment of chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) with standard chemotherapy can cause remissions but does not cure the disease. The decision to initiate therapy is based on disease stage, symptoms, and disease activity. Available options include treatment with an alkylating agent such as chlorambucil with or without prednisone; fludarabine; and

combined chemotherapy such as CVP (cyclophosphamide, vincristine, prednisone). Rituximab (Rituxan) is often combined with these treatments or used as a single agent. A new targeted agent, ofatumumab (Arzerra), has recently been approved for use in CLL that does not respond to fludarabine and alemtuzumab (Smart, 2010). Another drug under investigation for management of CLL that has relapsed or does not respond to other treatment is lenalidomide (Revlimid) (Miller et al., 2010).

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in patients with CLL is an option that offers curative potential or prolonged disease-free survival. However, it comes with considerable risk for mortality and is not an appropriate alternative for all patients.

New drugs, such as bendamustine (Treanda), an alkylating agent with antimetabolite properties, may be used alone or along with rituximab (Rituxan) for CLL. In addition to rituximab, other monoclonal antibodies are approved for CLL, such as ofatumumab (Arzerra) and alemtuzumab (Campath). In addition, a number of emerging therapies are under investigation for the treatment of CLL, such as oblimersen (Genasense) and flavopiridol.

Drug Therapy for Infection. Drug therapy is the main defense against infections that develop in patients undergoing therapy for AML. Drugs used depend on the sensitivity of the organism causing the infection, as well as infection severity. Drugs for infection are classified as antibacterial, antiviral, or antifungal.

Antibiotic and antibacterial drugs used for prevention or treatment of infection in patients with AML usually include an aminoglycoside antibiotic (amikacin, gentamicin, and tobramycin) and a penicillin, or a third-generation cephalosporin (ceftazidime). Additional powerful antibiotics used may include vancomycin in cases of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) or if indwelling venous catheter infection is suspected.

Systemic antifungal drugs are used when a fungal infection has been diagnosed or is strongly suggested or when a neutropenic patient remains febrile 4 to 7 days after starting antibiotic therapy. Common antifungal drugs include amphotericin B, ketoconazole (Nizoral), voriconazole (Vfend), fluconazole (Diflucan), and nystatin (Mycostatin, Nadostine ♣, Nilstat).

Antiviral drugs are used in patients with leukemia to prevent and treat viral infections. Acyclovir is given at the start of chemotherapy, especially for patients who are cytomegalovirus (CMV) positive. If a viral infection is suspected or diagnosed, drug therapy may include ganciclovir, foscarnet, or steroids. The antivirals, although helpful in combating severe infections, have serious adverse effects, especially **ototoxicity** (impaired hearing and/or balance) and **nephrotoxicity** (impaired kidney function). Carefully monitor the patient treated with such drugs for signs of hearing impairment and kidney problems.

Infection Protection. A major focus in caring for the patient with leukemia is protection from infection. All personnel must use extreme care during all nursing procedures. Frequent, thorough handwashing is of the utmost importance. Anyone with an upper respiratory tract infection who must enter the patient's room must wear a mask. Observe strict asepsis when changing dressings or accessing a central

venous catheter. Maintain strict aseptic technique in the care of these catheters at all times.

If possible, ensure that the patient is in a private room to reduce cross-contamination. Other precautions are used, such as not allowing standing water in vases, denture cups, or humidifiers in the patient's room, because they are breeding grounds for organisms.

Some facilities prescribe a "minimal bacteria diet" during the neutropenic period. Any uncooked foods, such as raw fruits and vegetables, are removed from the diet because they contain large numbers of organisms. There is no clear benefit to patients with this diet.

Some facilities place the immunosuppressed patient in a room with a high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration or laminar airflow system. These systems decrease the number of airborne pathogens. It is not known whether these systems benefit patients.

Continually assess the patient for infection. This task is difficult because manifestations may not be obvious in the patient with leukopenia. The development of fever and the formation of pus (both indicators of infection) depend on the presence of WBCs. The patient with leukopenia may have a severe infection without pus and with only a low-grade fever.

Monitor the patient's daily CBC with differential WBC count and absolute neutrophil count (ANC). Inspect the mouth during every shift for lesions and mucosa breakdown. Assess the lungs every 8 hours for crackles, wheezes, and reduced breath sounds. Assess urine for odor and cloudiness. Ask about any urgency, burning, or pain on urination. Take vital signs at least every 4 hours to assess for fever.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

A temperature elevation of even 1° F (or 0.5° C) above baseline is significant for a patient with leukopenia and indicates infection until it has been proven otherwise. Report this finding to the health care provider at once.

Many hospital units that specialize in the care of patients with neutropenia have specific protocols for antibiotic therapy if infection is suspected. Usually, the health care provider is notified immediately and specific specimens are obtained for culture. Obtain blood for bacterial and fungal cultures from peripheral sites and from the central venous catheter (Myers & Reyes, 2011). Obtain urine specimens, sputum specimens, and specimens from open lesions for culture. Chest x-rays are taken. After the specimens are obtained, the patient begins IV antibiotics.

Skin care is important for preventing infection in the patient with leukemia because the skin may be the only intact defense. Teach him or her about hygiene, and urge daily bathing. If the patient is immobile, turn him or her every hour and apply skin lubricants.

Perform pulmonary hygiene every 2 to 4 hours. Listen to the lungs for crackles, wheezes, and reduced breath sounds. Urge the patient to cough and deep breathe or to perform sustained maximal inhalations every hour while awake.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client with leukemia to prevent an infection by autocontamination?

- A. Take antibiotics exactly as prescribed.
- B. Perform mouth care three times daily.
- C. Avoid the use of pepper and raw foods.
- D. Report any burning on urination immediately.

Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT), sometimes called *bone marrow transplantation (BMT)*, is standard treatment for the patient with leukemia who has a closely matched donor and who is in temporary remission after induction therapy. HSCT is used also for lymphoma, multiple myeloma, aplastic anemia, sickle cell disease, and many solid tumors.

The bone marrow is the site of production of leukemic cells. It can be difficult to ensure that all leukemic cells have been eradicated during induction therapy. Therefore before an HSCT, additional chemotherapy with or without total body irradiation is given to purge (condition or clean) the marrow of leukemic cells. *These treatments are lethal to the bone marrow, and without replacement of stem cells by transplantation, the patient would die of infection or hemorrhage.*

After conditioning, new healthy stem cells are given to the patient. The new cells go to the marrow and then begin the process of hematopoiesis, which results in normal, properly functioning cells and, ideally, a permanent cure.

Transplant units are present in many hospitals. With long-term survival increasing after transplantation, nurses can expect to be caring for these people—if not during the actual transplantation or recovery period, then after the recovery period—in a variety of health care settings.

HSCT started with the use of **allogeneic bone marrow transplantation** (transplantation of bone marrow from a sibling or matched unrelated donor) and has advanced to the use of human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-matched stem cells from the umbilical cords of unrelated donors. Transplants are classified by the source of stem cells. In **autologous transplants**, patients receive their own stem cells (which were collected before high-dose therapy). **Syngeneic transplants** are those with the stem cells taken from the patient's identical sibling. In **allogeneic transplants**, a closely HLA-matched sibling or an unrelated but matched donor provides the stem cells. Stem cells for transplantation may be obtained by bone marrow harvest, peripheral stem cell pheresis, or umbilical cord blood stem cell banking. Table 42-2 lists the types of transplants.

Transplantation has five phases: stem cell obtainment, conditioning regimen, transplantation, engraftment, and post-transplantation recovery.

Obtaining the Stem Cells. Stem cells are taken either from the patient directly (autologous stem cells) or from an HLA-matched person (allogeneic stem cells). For allogeneic transplant, a donor is selected from family members tested for HLA type. The best results occur when the donor is an HLA-identical sibling; however, transplant also can be successful between those with closely matched HLA types. The chance of matching with any given sibling is 25%.

TABLE 42-2 CLASSIFICATION OF TRANSPLANTS

TYPE OF TRANSPLANT	SOURCES OF STEM CELLS
Autologous	
Self-donation	Bone marrow harvest Peripheral stem cell pheresis Umbilical cord blood
Syngeneic	
Patient's HLA identical twin	Bone marrow harvest Peripheral stem cell pheresis
Allogeneic	
HLA-matched relative	Bone marrow harvest
Unrelated HLA-matched donor	Peripheral stem cell pheresis
Mismatched or partially HLA-matched family member or unrelated donor (donor registries)	Umbilical cord blood

HLA, Human leukocyte antigen.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

About 70% of people on the bone marrow donor lists are white. The chance of finding an HLA-matched unrelated donor is estimated at 30% to 40% for white people, but for African Americans the chance is less than 20% because there are fewer African Americans among registered donors. Although blood types are common in all racial groups, tissue types can be very different among racial and ethnic groups. Nationally, efforts are made to publicize the need for donors from all cultural backgrounds. Research in this area has identified several potential barriers to stem cell donation among African Americans. These include fear or not trusting the system, concern about costs to the donor, and concern that the recipient may be a drug abuser or person who would not appreciate the sacrifice of a donation. Targeted education efforts may reduce these barriers.

Donor registries keep records of potential donors who can provide stem cells for patients who do not have a family member HLA match. The chance of matching with an unrelated donor is 1 in 5000.

Bone marrow harvesting occurs after a suitable donor is identified by tissue typing. The procedure occurs in the operating room, where marrow is removed through multiple aspirations from the iliac crests, although this technique is used less often today. About 500 to 1000 mL of marrow is aspirated. This amount is about 5% to 10% of the donor's marrow supply and regrows within a few weeks. The marrow is then filtered and, if autologous, is treated to rid the marrow of any remaining cancer cells. Allogeneic marrow is transfused into the recipient immediately. Autologous marrow is frozen for later use.

Monitor the donor for manifestations of fluid loss, assess for complications of anesthesia, and manage pain. During surgery, donors may lose a large amount of fluid in addition to the volume of marrow taken. Donors are hydrated with saline infusions before and after surgery. Occasionally the donor may need an RBC transfusion. Assess the harvest sites to ensure that the donor is not bleeding excessively.

Marrow donation is usually a same-day surgical procedure. Teach the donor to inspect the harvest sites for bleeding

and to take analgesics for pain. Pain at the harvest sites (hips) is common and is managed with oral non-aspirin-containing analgesics. Some donors may require opioid analgesics for pain control.

Peripheral blood stem cell (PBSC) harvesting requires three phases: mobilization, collection by pheresis, and reinfusion. **PBSCs** are stem cells that have been released from the bone marrow and circulate within the blood. Although there are fewer stem cells in peripheral blood than in bone marrow, their numbers can be artificially increased. During the mobilization phase, chemotherapy or hematopoietic growth factors are given to the patient for an autologous collection, depending on the cancer type, and hematopoietic growth factors alone are given to the donor for an allogeneic collection (Devine et al., 2010). These agents increase the numbers of stem cells and WBCs in the peripheral blood. A new agent approved to mobilize stem cells before harvesting is plerixafor (Mozobil). After mobilization, the stem cells are then collected by **pheresis** (withdrawing whole blood, filtering out the cells, and returning the plasma to the patient). One to five pheresis procedures, each lasting 2 to 4 hours, are needed to obtain enough stem cells for transplantation. The cells are frozen and stored for reinfusion after the patient's conditioning regimen is completed.

Monitor the patient or donor closely during pheresis. Complications include catheter clotting and hypocalcemia (caused by anticoagulants). Low calcium levels may cause numbness or tingling in the fingers and toes, abdominal or muscle cramping, or chest pain. Oral calcium supplements may be used to manage these symptoms. Monitor vital signs at least every hour during pheresis. The patient may become hypotensive from fluid loss during the procedure.

Cord blood harvesting involves obtaining stem cells from umbilical cord blood of newborns. This blood has a high concentration of stem cells. Umbilical stem cells are obtained through a simple blood draw from the placenta. After birth, before the placenta detaches, a syringe is used to withdraw 40 to 150 mL of blood from the umbilical vein of the placenta. The syringes are placed in a kit and returned to the Cord Blood Registry for processing and storage. The stem cells may be used later for an unrelated recipient or stored in case the infant develops a serious illness later in life and needs them. The cost of banking and processing umbilical cord stem cells is about \$1500, with an additional charge of \$200 per year for storage. Umbilical stem cells can last for years when stored properly in liquid nitrogen.

Conditioning Regimen. Fig. 42-5 outlines the timing and steps involved in transplantation. The day the patient receives the stem cells is day T=0. Before transplantation, the conditioning days are counted in reverse order from T=0, just like a rocket countdown. After transplantation, days are counted in order from the day of transplantation.

The patient first undergoes a conditioning regimen, which varies with the diagnosis and type of transplant to be received. The conditioning regimen serves two purposes: (1) to "wipe out" the patient's own bone marrow (**myeloablation**), thus preparing him or her for optimal graft take; and (2) to give higher-than-normal doses of chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy to rid the person of cancer cells. Usually a period of 5 to 10 days is required. The regimen usually includes high-dose chemotherapy and sometimes includes total-body irradiation (TBI). Each conditioning regimen is individually

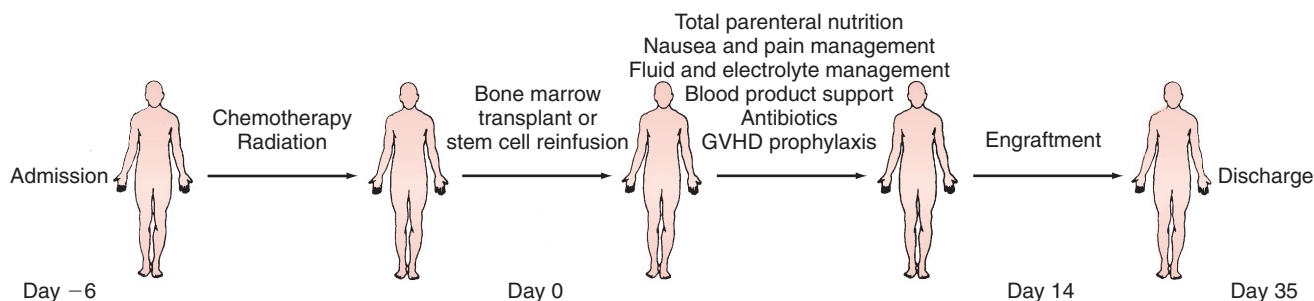


FIG. 42-5 Timing and steps of allogeneic bone marrow transplantation.

tailored, with the patient's specific disease, overall health, and previous treatment considered. A typical conditioning regimen for an adult with acute myelogenous leukemia (AML) receiving an allogeneic HSCT for treatment is:

- *Days T-5 through T-4:* High-dose chemotherapy to obliterate the patient's own bone marrow cells and to kill off any remaining leukemic cells. Specific agents include thiotepe, busulfan, carmustine, cyclophosphamide, cytosine arabinoside, etoposide, and melphalan. The dosages are much higher than those used for normal chemotherapy.
- *Days T-3 through T-1:* Delivery of TBI. The total radiation dose for TBI is 1200 rads given as 200 rads twice daily over 3 days. (TBI is not used in all facilities for all patients.)

Because of the problems and risk for death associated with this conditioning regimen, a non-myeloablative approach may be used instead. Non-myeloablative regimens use lower doses of chemotherapy and/or lower dose of TBI that allow for recovery of a recipient's own immune system. The use of non-myeloablative conditioning regimens decreases the chemotherapy side effects but relies on the development of graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) for the control of the cancer. In contrast, myeloablative conditioning regimens use high doses of chemotherapy with or without radiation therapy to completely destroy a recipient's bone marrow, allowing for replacement by a new immune system. There are many variations in non-myeloablative conditioning regimens.

During conditioning, bone marrow and normal tissues respond immediately to the chemotherapy and radiation. The patient has all of the expected side effects associated with both therapies. When chemotherapy is given in high doses, these side effects are more intense than those seen with standard doses. Side effects include nausea and vomiting, mucositis, capillary leak syndrome, diarrhea, and bone marrow suppression.

Late effects from the conditioning regimen are also common, occurring as late as 3 to 10 years after transplantation. These problems include veno-occlusive disease (VOD), skin toxicities, cataracts, lung fibrosis, second cancers, cardiomyopathy, endocrine complications, and neurologic complications.

Transplantation. Day T-0 is the day of transplantation. The transplantation itself is very simple. Frozen marrow, PBSCs, or umbilical cord blood cells are thawed and then infused through the patient's central catheter like an ordinary blood transfusion.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Do not use blood administration tubing to infuse stem cells because the cells could get caught in the filter, resulting in the patient receiving fewer stem cells.

Side effects of all types of stem cell transfusions are similar. The patient may have fever and hypertension as a reaction to the preservative used in stem cell storage. To prevent these reactions, acetaminophen (Tylenol), hydrocortisone, and diphenhydramine (Benadryl) are given before the infusion. Antihypertensives or diuretics may be needed to treat fluid volume changes. The patient may have red urine for a short time as a result of red blood cell breakage in the infused stem cells.

Engraftment. The transfused PBSCs and marrow cells circulate briefly in the peripheral blood. The stem cells find their way to the marrow-forming sites of the patient's bones and establish residency there. How the donated stem cells "home in" on the bone marrow sites is not yet understood.

Engraftment, the successful "take" of the transplanted cells in the patient's bone marrow, is key to the whole transplantation process. For the donated marrow or stem cells to "rescue" the patient after large doses of chemotherapy or radiotherapy have wiped out his or her own bone marrow, the transfused stem cells must survive and grow in the patient's bone marrow sites. Engraftment takes 8 to 12 days for peripheral blood stem cell transplantation and 12 to 28 days for bone marrow stem cell transplantation. To aid engraftment, growth factors, such as granulocyte colony-stimulating factor or granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, may be given. When engraftment occurs, the patient's WBC, RBC, and platelet counts begin to rise.

Monitoring of engraftment involves checking the patient's blood for "chimerism," which is the presence of blood cells that show a genetic profile or other marker that is different from those of the patient. Early mixed chimerism is the presence of both the patient's cells and those of the donor. Progressive chimerism with increasing percentages of donor cells indicates engraftment. Regressive chimerism with increasing percentages of the patient's cells indicates graft failure. When engraftment is completely successful, only the donor's cells are present.

Prevention of Complications. The period after transplantation is difficult. Infection and bleeding are severe problems because the patient remains without any natural immunity

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Why Don't They Use the Evidence?

Bevans, M., Tierney, D.K., Bruch, C., Burgunder, M., Castro, K., Ford, R., et al. (2009). Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation nursing: A practice variation study. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(6), E317-E325.

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) is a life-saving procedure for some malignancies that has been performed successfully for four decades. The procedure itself is dangerous, and many patients die either during the transplant period or within the first few months after the procedure. The most common cause of HSCT death is infection. Thus prevention of infection in this population is a critical practice focus for all members of the health care team. Guidelines for effective infection control measures for this population were developed based on evidence, published in 2000, and set as a standard for practice among HSCT centers in the United States. The purpose of the current study was to identify what variations from the standard of practice for infection control in the HSCT population exist.

Using a convenience sample, the study surveyed 205 HSCT nurses who were members of the Bone and Marrow Stem Cell Transplant Special Interest Group of the Oncology Nursing Society for compliance with the recommended infection control guidelines. Survey results indicated that during the hospitalization period, minimal variation in actual practice from the recommendations occurred. The areas of practice in which there was identified variation were those related to dietary restrictions, personal hygiene (patients), and social interaction. In the posthospitalization phase, greater variation from practice standards were reported, although the areas of specific practice variation remained the same as in the hospitalization phase. The researchers postulated that a possible contributor to practice variation in the posthospitalization phase was the lack of detail in the recommended practices with regard to the length of time the practices should remain in effect.

Level of Evidence: 4

The study method was descriptive, using a researcher-developed questionnaire. The number of subjects was large and representative of nurses specializing in care of patients undergoing HSCT.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Although this study was not experimental in design, its importance to evidence-based practice in nursing should not be underestimated. The specialty of HSCT nursing is relatively new, and the patients are at high risk for life-threatening infection for weeks to months. Evidence-based practice standards have been established but are not consistently followed, particularly in the home environment. Part of the identified gap in practice was related to the length of time post-hospitalization that the recommended practices should be used. This time is beyond the acute neutropenic period, but patients are still at risk for infection because full recovery of immune function takes many months. Although HSCT nurses were aware of the recommendations and indicated consistent belief in the need for continuing implementation, the importance of the practices appears to be not sufficiently communicated to patients and families.

until the transfused stem cells grow and engraft. The nursing care for this patient is the same as for the patient during induction therapy for AML. Helping the patient maintain hope through this long recovery period is difficult. Complications are often severe and life threatening. Standards of practice for prevention of infection after HSCT have been established based on evidence. However, there is considerable variation in implementation of these recommendations (Bevans et al., 2009). Inconsistencies in practices may interfere with positive patient outcomes of HSCT (see the Evidence-Based Practice box above). Help the patient have a positive attitude and be involved in his or her own recovery.

In addition to the problems related to the period of **pancytopenia** (too few circulating blood cells), other complications of HSCT include failure to engraft, development of graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), and veno-occlusive disease (VOD).

Failure to engraft occurs when the donated stem cells fail to grow in the bone marrow and function properly. This issue is discussed in advance with the patient and the donor. Failure to engraft occurs more often with transplants using allogeneic stem cells than with those using autologous stem cells. The causes include too few living cells transplanted, attack or rejection of donor cells by the remaining immune system cells of the recipient, infection of transplanted cells, and unknown biologic factors. *If the transplanted cells fail to engraft, the patient will die unless another transplant with stem cells is successful.*

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration**

The patient is a 32-year-old woman with acute lymphocytic leukemia. After successful induction therapy, she received a bone marrow transplant with cells donated by her only sibling, a 27-year-old sister. The first transplant failed to engraft. The patient was transplanted a second time with cells donated by the same sister. It is now 5 weeks after the second transplant and there are no indications of engraftment. A third transplant is planned but the sister is reluctant to donate again because she is worried that bone marrow donation may decrease her chances of ever becoming pregnant. The parents of the two sisters are astounded that the younger daughter appears willing to let her sister die rather than go through another bone marrow harvesting procedure.

1. How should the patient, parents, and donating sister be approached and by whom?
2. Legally, should this sister be asked to donate again?
3. In what way does bone marrow harvesting affect fertility?

Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD) occurs mostly in allogeneic transplants but also can occur in autologous transplants (Baker, 2010). The immunocompetent cells of the donated marrow recognize the patient's cells, tissues, and organs as foreign and start an immunologic attack against them. The graft is actually attacking the host tissues and cells.

Although all host tissues can be attacked and harmed, the tissues usually damaged are the skin, intestinal tract, and liver. Fig. 42-6 shows the typical skin appearance of GVHD. About 25% to 50% of all allogeneic HSCT recipients have some degree of GVHD, and more than 15% of the patients who develop GVHD die of its complications. The presence of some GVHD indicates successful engraftment.

Management of GVHD involves limiting the activity of donor T-cells by using drugs to suppress immune function such as cyclosporine, tacrolimus, methotrexate, corticosteroids, mycophenolate mofetil (Cellcept, MMF), and antithymocyte globulin (ATG). Care is taken to avoid suppressing the new immune system to the extent that either infection risk increases or the new cells stop engrafting.

Veno-occlusive disease (VOD) is the blockage of liver blood vessels by clotting and inflammation (phlebitis). This problem occurs in up to 20% of patients who undergo HSCT and is the most serious. Problems usually begin within the first 30 days after transplantation. Patients who received high-dose



FIG. 42-6 Typical skin manifestations of graft-versus-host disease (GVHD).

chemotherapy, especially alkylating agents, are at risk for life-threatening liver complications. Manifestations include jaundice, pain in the right upper quadrant, ascites, weight gain, and liver enlargement.

Because there is no known way of opening the liver vessels, treatment is supportive. Early detection improves the chance for survival. Fluid management is also crucial. Assess the patient daily for weight gain, fluid retention, increases in abdominal girth, and hepatomegaly.

Minimizing Injury

Normal bone marrow production of platelets is severely limited with acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), leading to thrombocytopenia. The patient is at great risk for excessive bleeding in response to minimal trauma. Thrombocytopenia can also be caused by induction therapy for AML or high-dose chemotherapy for transplantation.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with leukemia is expected to remain free from bleeding. Indicators include:

- Maintenance of hematocrit and hemoglobin within normal ranges
- Absence of visible bleeding, petechiae, or ecchymosis
- Absence of evidence of occult bleeding (e.g., abdominal swelling, tarry stools)

Interventions. The patient's platelet count is decreased as a side effect of chemotherapy. During the period of greatest bone marrow suppression (the **nadir**), the platelet count may be very low (less than 10,000/mm³). He or she is at extreme risk for bleeding once the platelet count falls below 50,000/mm³, and spontaneous bleeding often occurs when the platelet count is lower than 20,000/mm³.

Bleeding Precautions are used to protect the patient at increased risk for injury from bleeding ([Chart 42-8](#)). Assess

CHART 42-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient with Thrombocytopenia

- Handle the patient gently.
- Use a lift sheet when moving and positioning in bed.
- Avoid IM injections and venipunctures.
- When injections or venipunctures are necessary, use the smallest-gauge needle for the task.
- Apply firm pressure to the needle stick site for 10 minutes or until the site no longer oozes blood.
- Apply ice to areas of trauma.
- Test all urine and stool for the presence of occult blood.
- Observe IV sites every 2 hours for bleeding.
- Avoid trauma to rectal tissues:
 - Do not give enemas.
 - Administer well-lubricated suppositories with caution.
 - Advise patient not to have anal intercourse.
- Measure abdominal girth daily.
- Advise the patient to use an electric shaver.
- Teach the patient to avoid mouth trauma:
 - Use soft-bristled toothbrush or tooth sponges.
 - Do not floss between teeth.
 - Avoid dental work, especially extractions.
 - Avoid hard foods.
 - Make sure that dentures fit and do not rub.
- Encourage the patient not to blow the nose or insert objects into the nose.
- Advise the patient to avoid contact sports.
- Teach the patient to wear shoes with firm soles when ambulating.

him or her at least every 4 hours for evidence of bleeding: oozing, enlarging bruises, petechiae, or purpura. Inspect all stools, urine, drainage, and vomit for blood, and test for occult blood. Measure any blood loss as accurately as possible, and measure the abdominal girth daily. Increases in abdominal girth can indicate internal hemorrhage. Institute the Bleeding Precautions listed in [Chart 42-8](#). Platelet levels return to normal more slowly than do either WBCs or RBCs, and the patient remains at risk for bleeding for weeks after discharge from the transplant unit.

Monitor laboratory values daily. Review CBC results daily to determine the risk for bleeding, as well as actual blood loss. The patient with a platelet count below 10,000/mm³ may need a platelet transfusion. For the patient with severe blood loss, packed RBCs may be prescribed (see discussion on pp. 899-900 in the [Red Blood Cell Transfusions](#) section).

Conserving Energy

Normal production of red blood cells is limited in leukemia, causing anemia, which results in fatigue. Also, leukemic cells have high rates of metabolism, increasing fatigue in the anemic patient with leukemia. Anemia may also occur as a side effect of chemotherapy.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with leukemia is expected to have no increase in fatigue. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Participates in self-care
- Recognizes symptoms of fatigue
- Changes activity level to match energy level

Interventions. Interventions to reduce fatigue include those that conserve energy and improve RBC counts.

Nutrition therapy is needed to assist the patient to eat enough calories to meet at least basal energy requirements. However, increasing food intake can be difficult when he or she is fatigued. Collaborate with a dietitian to provide small, frequent meals high in protein and carbohydrates. Food items that are liquid or semisolid require less effort to eat.

Blood transfusions are sometimes indicated for the patient with fatigue. Transfusions increase the blood's oxygen-carrying capacity and replace missing RBCs. For the patient with fatigue related to anemia, packed RBCs are the blood component choice. (See [Chart 42-13](#) on p. 898 for nursing care during transfusions.)

Drug therapy with colony-stimulating growth factors may be used to reduce the severity and duration of anemia and neutropenia after intensive chemotherapy for lymphoid malignancies. For anemia, erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs) that boost production of RBCs may be used. These agents now carry a warning that they may cause hypertension and increase the risk for myocardial infarction. ESAs must be given with care and should be avoided in patients with myeloid malignancies. They are not used unless the hemoglobin level is lower than 10 mg/dL. When indicated, subcutaneous injections of epoetin alfa (Epogen or Procrit) are given weekly or every 2 weeks or darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp) is given subcutaneously weekly to every 3 weeks until hemoglobin levels reach 10 mg/dL. The agents cause a stinging sensation when injected. Assess for side effects such as hypertension, headaches, fever, [myalgia](#) (muscle aches), and rashes. (See [Chapter 24](#) for information on hematopoietic growth factors.)

Activity management is needed to help conserve the patient's energy ([Chart 42-9](#)). Examine the patient's schedule of prescribed and routine activities. Assess those activities that do not have a direct positive effect on the patient's condition in terms of their usefulness. If the benefit of an activity is less than its worsening of fatigue, coordinate with other members of the health care team about eliminating or postponing it. Activities that may be postponed include physical therapy and invasive diagnostic tests not needed for assessment or treatment of current problems.

Community-Based Care

The patient with leukemia is discharged after induction chemotherapy and recovery of blood cell production. Follow-up care continues on an outpatient basis. Although many transplant centers discharge patients after engraftment, some centers give high-dose chemotherapy and stem cell infusion on an outpatient basis. This plan involves daily clinic visits and frequent follow-up by nurses in the home care setting.

Home Care Management

Planning for home care for the patient with leukemia begins as soon as remission is achieved. Assess the available support mechanisms. Many patients need a visiting nurse to assist with dressing changes for central venous catheters, nutritional infusions, and platelet infusions and to answer questions. Home transfusion therapy for blood components may be needed.

Coordination of the home care team is critical for the patient receiving stem cell transplantation in the home setting. Potential candidates are evaluated in advance. Criteria include a knowledgeable caregiver, a clean home

CHART 42-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Conserving Energy

- Reassure the patient that fatigue is temporary and energy levels will improve over a period of weeks to months. Stress that a return to previous energy levels may take as long as a year.
- Teach the patient that shortness of breath and palpitations are symptoms of over-activity.
- Instruct the patient to stop activity when shortness of breath or palpitations are present.
- Space care activities at least an hour apart, and avoid the time right before or right after meals.
- Schedule care activities at times when the patient has more energy (e.g., immediately after naps).
- Perform complete bed bath only every other day. In between complete baths, ensure cleansing of face, hands, axillae, and perineum.
- In collaboration with other members of the health care team, cancel or reschedule non-essential tests and activities.
- Provide four to six small, easy-to-eat meals instead of three larger ones.
- Urge the patient to drink small amounts of protein shakes or other nutritional supplements.
- During periods of extreme fatigue, encourage the patient to allow others to perform personal care.
- Help the patient identify one or two lead visitors (those designated as able to visit at any time and who do not disturb the patient).
- Selectively limit non-lead visitors when the patient is resting or sleeping.
- Remind families that, although independence is important, independence in ADLs during extreme fatigue can be detrimental to the patient's health.
- Monitor oxygen saturation and respiratory rate during any activity to determine patient responses and activity tolerance.

environment, location near the hospital, telephone access, and emotional stability of the patient and caregiver.

Home care nurses give chemotherapy and monitor the patient for complications. Nurses visit the patient once or twice per day and spend between 4 and 8 hours per day in the home. The patient receives the stem cell transplant infusion in the outpatient clinic. Nursing care is similar to that provided in the hospital. If complications such as sepsis or veno-occlusive disease (VOD) occur, the patient is admitted to the inpatient facility.

Teaching for Self-Management

Instruct the patient and family about the importance of continuing therapy and medical follow-up. Many patients go home with a central venous catheter in place and need instructions about its care. [Chart 42-10](#) lists guidelines for central venous catheter care at home. These guidelines may be altered depending on the home setting, assistance available, and agency policy.

Protecting the patient from infection at home is just as important as it was during hospitalization. (See [Chart 42-7](#) for focused assessment for the patient at risk for infection.) Urge the patient to use proper hygiene and to avoid crowds or others with infections. Neither the patient nor any household member should receive live virus immunization (poliomyelitis, measles, or rubella) for 2 years after transplantation or while taking immunosuppressive drugs. Instruct the patient to continue mouth care regimens at home. Stress to the

CHART 42-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Home Care of the Central Venous Catheter

- To maintain patency, flush the catheter briskly with saline once a day and after completing infusions.
- Change the Luer-Lok cap on each catheter lumen weekly.
- Change the dressing as often as prescribed:
 - Use clean technique with thorough handwashing.
 - Clean the exit site with alcohol and povidone-iodine (Betadine) or with chlorhexidine.
 - Apply antibacterial ointment to the site, if prescribed.
 - Cover the site with dry sterile gauze dressing, taped securely, or with transparent adherent dressing.
- To prevent tension, always tape the catheter to yourself.
- Look for and report any signs of infection (redness, swelling, or drainage at the exit site).
- In case of a break or puncture in the catheter lumen, immediately clamp the catheter between yourself and the opening. *Notify your physician immediately.*

patient that he or she should immediately notify the physician if a fever or any other sign of infection develops. [Chart 42-11](#) lists guidelines for patients for infection prevention.

Many patients return home still at risk for bleeding because platelet recovery is slower than recovery of white blood cells (WBCs). Reinforce safety and bleeding precautions, and emphasize that these precautions must be followed until the platelet count is above 50,000/mm³. Teach the patient and family to assess for petechiae, avoid trauma and sharp objects, apply pressure to wounds for 10 minutes, and report blood in the stool or urine or headache that does not respond to acetaminophen. [Chart 42-12](#) lists guidelines for patients at risk for bleeding.

Psychosocial Preparation

A diagnosis of leukemia threatens self-esteem and the family role. The patient faces the possibility of death, and treatment causes major changes in self-image. Changes occur in his or her body image, level of independence, and lifestyle. Some feel threatened by the environment, seeing everything as potentially infectious. Patients who are cared for in protective isolation may feel lonely and isolated. Help the patient and family define priorities, understand the illness and its treatment, and find hope. Make referrals to support groups sponsored by organizations such as the American Cancer Society (“I Can Cope” and “Make Today Count”) or the Leukemia and Lymphoma Society of America.

Health Care Resources

The patient with limited social support may need help at home until strength and energy return. A home care aide may suffice for some patients, whereas for others a visiting nurse may be needed to reinforce teaching. The patient may also need equipment for ADLs and ambulation. Assess financial resources. Cancer treatment is expensive, and you will need to coordinate with the social services department to ensure that insurance is adequate. If the patient is uninsured, explore other sources, such as drug company-sponsored

CHART 42-11 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Infection

- Avoid crowds and other gatherings of people who might be ill.
- Do not share personal toilet articles, such as toothbrushes, toothpaste, washcloths, or deodorant sticks, with others.
- If possible, bathe daily.
- Wash the armpits, groin, genitals, and anal area at least twice a day with an antimicrobial soap.
- Clean your toothbrush daily by either running it through the dishwasher or rinsing it in liquid laundry bleach and then rinsing it with running water.
- Wash your hands thoroughly with an antimicrobial soap before you eat or drink, after touching a pet, after shaking hands with anyone, as soon as you come home from any outing, and after using the toilet.
- Eat a low-bacteria diet, and avoid salads, raw fruits and vegetables, and undercooked meat.
- Wash dishes between uses with hot, sudsy water, or use a dishwasher.
- Do not drink water that has been standing for longer than 15 minutes.
- Do not reuse cups and glasses without washing.
- Avoid changing pet litter boxes. If unavoidable, use gloves or wash hands immediately.
- Avoid keeping turtles and reptiles as pets.
- Do not feed pets raw or undercooked meat.
- Take your temperature at least twice a day.
- Report any of these manifestations of infection to your physician immediately:
 - Temperature greater than 100° F (38° C)
 - Persistent cough (with or without sputum)
 - Pus or foul-smelling drainage from any open skin area or normal body opening
 - Presence of a boil or abscess
 - Urine that is cloudy or foul smelling, or burning on urination
- Take all drugs as prescribed.
- Do not dig in the garden or work with houseplants.
- Avoid travel to areas of the world with poor sanitation or inadequate health care facilities.

compassionate aid programs. The Leukemia and Lymphoma Society of America offers limited financial help, sponsors support groups, and provides information for patients and families.

Prolonged outpatient contact and follow-up are necessary, and patients need transportation to the outpatient facility. Many local units of the American Cancer Society offer free transportation to patients with cancer, including leukemia.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Six weeks after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for leukemia, the client's white blood cell (WBC) count is 8200/mm³. What is the nurse's best action in view of this laboratory result?

- Notify the health care provider immediately.
- Assess the client for other symptoms of infection.
- Document the laboratory report as the only action.
- Remind the client to avoid crowds and people who are ill.

CHART 42-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

The Patient at Risk for Bleeding

- Use an electric shaver
- Use a soft-bristled toothbrush, and do not floss.
- Do not have dental work done without consulting your doctor.
- Do not take aspirin or any aspirin-containing products. Read the label to be sure the products do not contain aspirin or salicylates.
- Wear shoes or slippers with a sole to avoid foot injury.
- Do not participate in contact sports or any activity likely to result in your being bumped, scratched, or scraped.
- If you are bumped, apply ice to the site for at least 1 hour.
- Notify your physician if you:
 - Experience an injury and persistent bleeding results
 - Have excessive menstrual bleeding
 - See blood in your urine or bowel movement
 - Have a headache that does not respond to acetaminophen
- Avoid anal intercourse.
- Take a stool softener to prevent straining during a bowel movement.
- Do not use enemas or rectal suppositories.
- Avoid bending over at the waist.
- Do not wear clothing or shoes that are tight or that rub.
- Avoid blowing your nose or placing objects in your nose. If you must blow your nose, do so gently without blocking either nasal passage.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with leukemia based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Remain free of infection and sepsis
- Not experience episodes of bleeding
- Be able to balance activity and rest
- Use energy conservation techniques
- Adapt lifestyle to energy level

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

MALIGNANT LYMPHOMAS

Lymphomas are cancers of the lymphoid tissues. They are the abnormal overgrowth of one type of leukocyte, the lymphocyte. They differ from leukemia in the degree of maturation of the affected cells and the location of cancer cell production. Lymphomas are cancers of committed lymphocytes rather than stem cell precursors (as in leukemia). This growth occurs in lymphoid tissues scattered throughout the body, especially the lymph nodes and spleen, rather than in the bone marrow. Lymphomas are solid tumors rather than cellular suspensions within the blood and bone marrow. There are two major categories of lymphoma among adults: Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL).

HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMA

Pathophysiology

Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) is a cancer that can affect any age-group. However, it appears to peak in two different age

groups: (1) in teens and young adults, and (2) in adults in their 50s and 60s (McCance et al., 2010). HL affects younger men and women equally, but the disease is more prevalent in men in the older group.

The exact cause of HL is uncertain. Possible causes of HL include viral infections (i.e., Epstein-Barr virus [EBV], human T-cell leukemia/lymphoma virus [HTLV], and human immune deficiency virus [HIV]) and exposure to chemical agents. Most cases of the disease, however, occur in people without identifiable risk factors, and most people with presumptive risk factors do not get the disease.

This cancer usually starts in a single lymph node or a single chain of nodes. The tissue in the node becomes cancerous. These nodes contain a specific cancer cell type, the **Reed-Sternberg cell**, a marker for HL. HL generally spreads from one group of lymph nodes to the next in an orderly fashion, unlike non-Hodgkin's lymphoma.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The most common assessment finding is a large but painless lymph node or nodes. A distinctive rare finding in HL is pain in the lymph nodes that is brought on or made worse with ingestion of alcohol. The patient may also have constitutional symptoms, called "B symptoms," that may include fevers ($>101.5^{\circ}\text{F}$ [$>38.6^{\circ}\text{C}$]); drenching night sweats; and unexplained weight loss ($>10\%$ of normal body weight). These symptoms often mean a poorer prognosis. Many patients have no symptoms at time of diagnosis, and specific manifestations often depend on the site and extent of disease.

Diagnosis and subtype are established when biopsy of a node or mass reveals Reed-Sternberg cells (McCance et al., 2010). HL is then classified into one of several different subtypes on the basis of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification system.

After diagnosis, the next evaluation of the patient with HL is staging to determine the extent of disease. This process is detailed and must be accurate because the treatment regimen is determined by the extent of disease. Staging usually includes a history and physical examination, CBC, electrolyte panel, kidney and liver function tests, erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), and a bone marrow aspiration and biopsy. Computed tomography (CT) of the neck, chest, abdomen, and pelvis is performed as part of the staging process. Positron emission tomography (PET) may be included to assess for areas of disease not detected by CT. PET scans are helpful after treatment to assess disease response to therapy. After staging procedures are complete, the stage of the disease is determined by the Ann Arbor Staging Criteria (Table 42-3).

INTERVENTIONS

Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) is one of the most treatable types of cancer. Generally, for stage I and stage II disease, the treatment is external radiation of involved lymph node regions. With more extensive disease, radiation and combination chemotherapy are used to achieve remission. (See Chapter 24 on general care of patients receiving radiation and chemotherapy.)

TABLE 42-3 ANN ARBOR STAGING CRITERIA FOR HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMA

STAGE	MANIFESTATION CRITERIA
Ia	Disease is present only in a single lymph node region or in only one non-lymph node site.
Ib	Disease location is the same as Ia. In addition, the patient has some or all of these manifestations: persistent fever, night sweats, weight loss of more than 10% of normal body weight.
IIa	Disease is present in two or more separate lymph node regions on the same side of the diaphragm or two in two non-lymph node sites on the same side of the diaphragm.
IIb	Disease location is the same as IIa. In addition, the patient has some or all of these manifestations: persistent fever, night sweats, weight loss of more than 10% of normal body weight.
IIIa	Disease extends to lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm.
IIIb	Disease location is the same as IIIa. In addition, the patient has some or all of these manifestations: persistent fever, night sweats, weight loss of more than 10% of normal body weight.
IIIC	Same as IIIb along with disease present in the spleen.
IV	Disease is present in many body areas, including in one or more non-nodal tissues and organs.

Source: Carbone, P.P., Kaplan, H.S., Musshoff, K., Smithers, D.W., & Tubiana, M. (1971). Report of the committee on Hodgkin's disease staging classification. *Cancer Research* 31: 1860-1861.

Nursing management of the patient undergoing treatment for HL focuses on the acute side effects of therapy, especially:

- Drug-induced pancytopenia, which increases the risk for infection, anemia, and bleeding
- Severe nausea and vomiting, which impairs nutrition
- Skin problems at the site of radiation
- Constipation or diarrhea
- Impaired liver function either by metastasis to the liver or by chemotherapy drugs
- Permanent sterility for male patients receiving radiation to the abdominopelvic region in the pattern of an inverted Y in combination with specific chemotherapy drugs (The patient is informed of this side effect and given the option to store sperm in a sperm bank before treatment.)
- Secondary cancer development as a result of HL treatment (Long-term follow-up includes screening for recurrence, as well as the possible development of a secondary cancer.)

NON-HODGKIN'S LYMPHOMA

Pathophysiology

Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) includes all lymphoid cancers that do not have the Reed-Sternberg cell. There are over 60 subtypes of NHL divided into either indolent or aggressive lymphomas. NHL generally spreads through the lymphatic system in a less orderly fashion than HL. It represents 4% of all cancer-related deaths in the United States, and about 63,000 new cases are diagnosed each year (*American Cancer Society, 2011*). The disease is more common in men and older adults.

The exact cause of NHL is unknown although both autoimmune disease and immunosuppressive disorders appear to be associated with an increased risk (e.g., solid organ transplantation, immunosuppressive drug therapy, infection with HIV). Chronic infection from *Helicobacter pylori* is associated with a type of lymphoma called *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma*, and Epstein-Barr viral infection has been associated with Burkitt's lymphoma. NHL may be related to inherited gene damage. Gene damage may result in loss of suppressor gene function, allowing cancer development to occur. There is an increased incidence of NHL among people exposed to pesticides, insecticides, and dust.

Patients usually have swollen lymph nodes (lymphadenopathy) or tumor spread to other organs at the time of diagnosis. The most common extranodal sites are the GI tract, skin, bone marrow, sinuses, thyroid, or central nervous system (CNS). Enlarged lymph nodes may be the only symptom of lymphoma because these nodes can arise from lymphoid cells in any tissue and can spread to any organ. Painless swelling of the cervical, axillary, inguinal, and femoral nodes is most often seen. The diagnosis of NHL can be made only after the biopsy of an involved lymph node is reviewed by a hematopathologist.

Lymphoma is not a single disease but, rather, a group of diseases. The specific subtype of lymphoma must be classified because treatment decision varies depending on the subtype. Lymphomas are classified using the World Health Organization (WHO) classification system. The classification system is based on cytology, immunophenotyping by flow cytometry, and genetic (chromosomal translocations and molecular rearrangements) and clinical features. NHLs are broadly classified as B-cell or T-cell lymphomas, depending on the lymphocyte type that gave rise to the cancer. B-cell lymphomas are most common (about 90% of NHLs) (McNally, 2011).

Staging is more complicated than for Hodgkin's lymphoma and is based on the Revised European-American Lymphoma (REAL) classification system. In addition, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) levels and beta-2 microglobulin levels are also evaluated to measure tumor growth rates and calculate prognosis. (High LDH levels and high beta-2 microglobulin levels are associated with a poorer prognosis.) Cerebrospinal fluid is evaluated when lymphoma is present in the CNS, around the spinal column, brain, or testes, and when HIV-related lymphoma is diagnosed.

Patients with **indolent** (slow-growing) lymphomas usually have painless lymph node swelling at diagnosis. Those with more aggressive B-cell lymphomas may have large abdominal or mediastinal masses at diagnosis that become symptomatic soon after they develop. Constitutional symptoms, also known as "B symptoms," such as fevers greater than 101.5° F (>38.6° C), drenching night sweats, and unintentional weight loss greater than 10% of body weight in the past 6 months, occur in about one third of patients with aggressive lymphomas and rarely in indolent lymphomas. Bone marrow involvement in indolent lymphomas is common.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Treatment options for patients with NHL vary based on several factors. These include the subtype of the tumor, international prognostic index (IPI) score, stage of the disease,

performance status, and overall tumor burden. Special consideration for patients with additional health problems is important, especially among older adult patients. Many new therapies have evolved over the past decade for various subtypes of NHL. These therapies include combinations of chemotherapy drugs alone or in combination with monoclonal antibodies (e.g., rituximab and alemtuzumab), localized radiation therapy, radiolabeled antibodies (^{131}I tositumomab and ^{90}Y ibritumomab tiuxetan), hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, and investigational agents, such as vaccine therapy or proteasome inhibitors (e.g., bortezomib) (Byar & Workman, 2012).

Nursing care needs are similar to those for patients with HL, with additional organ-specific problems if the disease is widespread. With the use of biotherapy for NHL, close monitoring for infusion-related reactions is needed during and after the delivery of monoclonal antibodies (see Chapter 24 for general care of patients undergoing treatment with biotherapy). Patient and family education are important in the management and prevention of complications.

MULTIPLE MYELOMA

Pathophysiology

Multiple myeloma is a white blood cell (WBC) cancer that involves a more mature lymphocyte called a *plasma cell*, which secretes antibodies. There is overgrowth of B-lymphocyte plasma cells in the bone marrow. When these cells become cancerous, they overproduce antibodies (gamma globulins). Thus the disorder is called a “gammopathy.” When the myeloma cells are overproduced, fewer functional red blood cells (RBCs), WBCs, and platelets are produced, leading to anemia and increased risk for infection and bleeding.

In addition to the excess antibodies, multiple myeloma cells also produce excess cytokines (see Chapter 19) that increase the cancer cell growth rates and destroy bone. The excess antibodies are released into the blood, increasing the serum protein levels and clogging blood vessels in the kidney and other organs. Without treatment, the disease causes progressive bone destruction, bleeding problems, kidney failure, immunosuppression, and death.

Multiple myeloma accounts for about 12,000 deaths per year in the United States (American Cancer Society, 2011). The disease is rare in people younger than 40 years, and most cases are diagnosed in people older than 65 years. The incidence is higher in American blacks than in whites, with a much higher incidence in men.

The cause of multiple myeloma is unknown. Possible risk factors include radiation exposure, chemical exposure, and infection with human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8). This cancer can be distinguished by changes in immunoglobulin structure that begin within a single clone of cells even before transformation to cancer occurs. When the specifically altered immunoglobulin is present in a high enough quantity, the type can be seen and recognized as a unique “spike” pattern on a serum electrophoresis test of plasma proteins. Because one clone of cells develops into cancer cells, the abnormal immunoglobulin produced by these cells is a *monoclonal* immunoglobulin. Most monoclonal immunoglobulins in myeloma are the immunoglobulin G (IgG) type of paraprotein (60%) or the immunoglobulin A (IgA) type of paraprotein (20%).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

About 20% of patients have no symptoms at time of the diagnosis. An elevation of serum total protein or a detection of a monoclonal protein (also known as *paraprotein*) in the blood or urine may be the only finding. Other possible manifestations include fatigue, anemia, bone pain, pathologic fractures, recurrent bacterial infections, and kidney dysfunction. Rare additional problems include hypercalcemia and hyperviscosity syndrome.

A positive finding of a serum monoclonal protein is not sufficient to make a diagnosis of multiple myeloma. About 1% of the population produce a monoclonal protein in the blood but do not have multiple myeloma. This condition is labeled *monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance* or *MGUS*, which is a premalignant condition. Patients with MGUS usually have a monoclonal protein concentration below 3 g/dL, less than 5% plasma cells in the bone marrow, absent or only a small amount monoclonal protein in the urine, and no bone lytic lesions, anemia, hypercalcemia, or kidney insufficiency. Follow-up of patients with MGUS is important because a small percentage eventually will develop multiple myeloma.

Multiple myeloma is distinguished from MGUS by having more than 10% of the bone marrow infiltrated with plasma cells, the presence of a monoclonal protein in the serum or urine, and the presence of osteolytic bone lesions.

The staging system for multiple myeloma divides patients into stages and prognostic groups on the basis of the serum beta-2 microglobulin and albumin levels. Other factors that help determine prognosis include age, performance status, serum creatinine, lactate dehydrogenase level (LDH), C-reactive protein, hemoglobin level, platelet count, and cytogenetic abnormalities found in the bone marrow biopsy.

The patient usually first notices fatigue, easy bruising, and bone pain. Symptoms, such as bone fractures, hypertension, infection, hypercalcemia, and fluid imbalance, may occur as the disease progresses. Diagnosis is made by x-ray findings of bone thinning with areas of bone loss that resemble Swiss cheese, high immunoglobulin and plasma protein levels, and the presence of Bence-Jones protein (protein composed of incomplete antibodies) in the urine. A bone marrow biopsy is performed to evaluate and diagnose the disease and also to determine chromosome abnormalities. An abnormality of chromosome 11 predicts a longer survival, and absence of chromosome 13 is a poor prognostic factor.

INTERVENTIONS

Treatment options vary. For minimal disease, watchful waiting may be an option instead of chemotherapy. Standard treatment for multiple myeloma is the use of novel agents such as bortezomib (Velcade), which is a proteasome inhibitor, and immunomodulating drugs such as thalidomide (Thalomid) and lenalidomide (Revlimid). These agents, which are types of targeted cancer therapy (see Chapter 24), may be used alone or in combination with steroids, such as dexamethasone (Decadron). Agents are selected based on whether the patient is eligible for an autologous stem cell transplant. If he or she is eligible, drug therapy is used to

reduce tumor burden before transplantation. For patients who are not eligible for an autologous stem cell transplantation because of age or other health problems, standard chemotherapy drugs such as melphalan, prednisone, vincristine, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and carmustine are usually effective in controlling but not curing the disease.

Side effects and severe toxicities can occur with these newer agents (Bertolotti et al., 2008). Myelosuppression is an expected side effect of many myeloma therapies. A nursing priority is to teach the patient about the manifestations. The risk for thromboembolic events is increased with the use of thalidomide and lenalidomide. Peripheral neuropathy can be challenging, causing pain and poor quality of life. Gastrointestinal side effects, such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and constipation, are severe and can be life threatening if not managed properly (Smith et al., 2008).

Despite therapy, multiple myeloma remains incurable. Most patients have local or generalized bone pain. Analgesics and alternative approaches for pain management, such as relaxation techniques, aromatherapy, or hypnosis, are used for pain relief. The bone disease of multiple myeloma is treated with bisphosphonates (pamidronate, zoledronic acid, ibandronate), which inhibit bone resorption and reduce skeletal complications (Miceli et al., 2011).

COAGULATION DISORDERS

Coagulation disorders are bleeding disorders with increased bleeding resulting from defects in one or more components regulating the blood clotting system. Bleeding disorders may be spontaneous or traumatic, localized or generalized, life-long or acquired. They can arise from a defect in the clotting processes at the vascular, platelet, or clotting factor level.

PLATELET DISORDERS

Platelets have a vital role in blood clotting. Blood clotting always starts with platelets sticking together (aggregation) and forming a platelet plug. Any condition that either reduces the number of platelets or interferes with their ability to adhere (stick to one another, blood vessel walls, collagen, or fibrin threads) can result in increased bleeding. Platelet disorders are inherited, acquired, or temporarily induced by drugs that limit platelet production or inhibit aggregation.

Platelet numbers below that needed for blood clotting is called **thrombocytopenia**. It may occur as a result of other conditions or treatments that suppress general bone marrow activity. The problem also can occur from limited platelet formation or an increased rate of platelet destruction in the spleen. The two thrombocytopenic conditions affecting adults are *autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura* and *thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura*.

AUTOIMMUNE THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

Pathophysiology

Autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura is also called *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura* (ITP). The total number of circulating platelets is greatly reduced in ITP, even though platelet production in the bone marrow is normal.

Patients with this disorder make an antibody against the surface of their own platelets (an antiplatelet antibody). This

antibody coats the surface of the platelets, making them more likely to be destroyed by macrophages (Hunt, 2010) (see Chapter 19). The spleen has many macrophages, and the blood vessels of the spleen are long and twisted. Both of these conditions cause destruction of antibody-coated platelets in the spleen. When platelet destruction exceeds platelet production, the number of circulating platelets decreases and blood clotting slows.

Although the cause of this disorder is autoimmune, the trigger for the production of autoantibodies is unknown but viral infection is suspected. ITP is most common among women between the ages of 20 and 40 years and among people who have other autoimmune disorders.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Manifestations of ITP are at first seen in the skin and mucous membranes: large **ecchymoses** (bruises) or a petechial rash on the arms, legs, upper chest, and neck. Mucosal bleeding occurs easily. If the patient has had significant blood loss, anemia may also be present.

A rare complication is intracranial bleeding-induced stroke. Assess for neurologic function and mental status (see Chapter 43). Ask family members whether the patient's behavior and responses are typical or represent a change.

ITP is diagnosed by a low platelet count and large numbers of megakaryocytes in the bone marrow. Antiplatelet antibodies may be detected in the blood, although this is not a specific test. If the patient has any episodes of bleeding, hematocrit and hemoglobin levels may be low.

INTERVENTIONS

As a result of the decreased platelet count, the patient is at great risk for bleeding. Interventions include therapy for the underlying condition and protection from trauma-induced bleeding episodes. Treatment is often limited to those patients with platelet counts lower than $50,000/\text{mm}^3$, those who are bleeding, and those who are at high risk for bleeding.

Drug therapy to control ITP includes drugs that suppress immune function to some degree. Drugs such as corticosteroids, azathioprine (Imuran), eltrombopag, rituximab (Rituxan), and romiplostim are used to inhibit immune system production of antiplatelet autoantibodies (Winkeljohn, 2010). IV immunoglobulin and IV anti-Rho can help prevent the destruction of antibody-coated platelets, although anti-Rho carries a Black Box Warning for increased risk for intravascular hemolysis and death. More aggressive therapy involves low doses of chemotherapy drugs.

Platelet transfusions are used when platelet counts are less than $20,000/\text{mm}^3$ and the patient has an acute life-threatening bleeding episode. Transfusions are not performed routinely because the donated platelets are just as rapidly destroyed by the spleen as the patient's own platelets. (See discussion on p. 900 in the **Platelet Transfusions** section.)

Maintaining a safe environment helps protect the patient from conditions that can lead to bleeding. Closely monitor the amount of bleeding that is occurring. (For nursing care actions, see the discussion of Minimizing Injury on p. 889 in the **Leukemia** section.)

Surgical management with a splenectomy may be needed for the patient who does not respond to drug therapy. (The spleen is the site of excessive platelet destruction.) After splenectomy, the patient is at increased risk for infection because the spleen performs many protective immune functions.

THROMBOTIC THROMBOCYTOPENIC PURPURA

Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP) is a rare disorder in which platelets clump together abnormally in the capillaries and too few platelets remain in circulation. The patient has inappropriate clotting, yet the blood fails to clot properly when trauma occurs. The cause of TTP appears to be an autoimmune reaction in blood vessel cells (endothelial cells) that makes platelets clump together in very small blood vessels. Tissues become ischemic, leading to kidney failure, myocardial infarction, and stroke. Untreated, this disorder is often fatal within 3 months.

Management of the patient with TTP focuses on preventing platelet clumping and stopping the underlying autoimmune process. Treatment consists of plasma pheresis and the infusion of fresh frozen plasma to provide platelet aggregation inhibitors. Drugs that inhibit platelet clumping, such as aspirin, alprostadil (Prostin), and plicamycin, also may be helpful. Immunosuppressive therapy reduces the intensity of this disorder.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client with autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura who is receiving corticosteroid therapy to control the disease?

- A. "Avoid contact sports and any activity that could cause injury."
- B. "Report any rash to your health care provider immediately."
- C. "Be sure to drink at least 3 liters of water daily."
- D. "Take a low-dose aspirin daily with food."

CLOTTING FACTOR DISORDERS

Coagulation or bleeding disorders can result from a clotting factor defect. Defects include the inability to produce a specific clotting factor, production of low quantities of a clotting factor, or production of a less active form of a clotting factor.

Most clotting factor disorders are genetic problems of one clotting factor. Acquired clotting factor disorders usually are related to a damaged liver that cannot produce proper amounts of clotting factors. Common disorders that result from defects at the clotting factor level include hemophilias A and B and von Willebrand's disease. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) often occurs with septic shock (see Chapter 39).

HEMOPHILIA

Pathophysiology and Genetics of the Disorder

Hemophilia is actually two different hereditary bleeding disorders resulting from clotting factor deficiencies. Hemophilia A (classic hemophilia) is a deficiency of factor VIII and accounts for 80% of cases of hemophilia. Hemophilia B (Christmas disease) is a deficiency of factor IX and accounts for 20% of cases. The incidence of both disorders is 1 in 10,000 (McCance et al., 2010).

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Hemophilia is an X-linked recessive trait. Women who are **carriers** (can pass on the gene without actually having the disorder) have a 50% chance of passing the hemophilia gene to their daughters (who then are carriers) and to their sons (who then have hemophilia). Hemophilia A affects mostly males, none of whose sons will have the gene for hemophilia and all of whose daughters will be carriers. About 30% of patients with hemophilia have no family history. It is thought that their disease is the result of a new gene mutation.

The clinical pictures of hemophilias A and B are identical. The patient has abnormal bleeding in response to any trauma because of a deficiency of the specific clotting factor. Patients with hemophilia do not bleed more often or even more rapidly than those without the disease, but they do bleed for a longer period. Hemophiliacs form platelet plugs at the bleeding site, but the clotting factor deficiency impairs the formation of stable fibrin clots. This allows excessive bleeding, which may be mild, moderate, or severe, depending on the degree of factor deficiency.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assessment of the patient with hemophilia shows:

- Excessive bleeding from minor cuts, bruises, or abrasions (from abnormal platelet function)
- Joint and muscle hemorrhages that lead to disabling long-term problems and may require joint replacement
- A tendency to bruise easily
- Prolonged and potentially fatal hemorrhage after surgery

The laboratory test results for a patient with hemophilia show a prolonged partial thromboplastin time (PTT), a normal bleeding time, and a normal prothrombin time (PT). The most common problem that occurs with hemophilia is degenerating joint function as a result of chronic bleeding into the joints, especially the hip and knee.

The bleeding problems of hemophilia A are managed by either regularly scheduled infusions of synthetic factor VIII or factor VIII cryoprecipitate or intermittent infusions as needed (see [Cryoprecipitate Transfusions](#) section, p. 900). The cost of factor VIII replacement is prohibitive for many people with hemophilia. The source of factor VIII varies ([Table 42-4](#)). New sources include recombinant DNA technology produced synthetic drug. Traditional sources are derived from pooled human serum that is purified to varying degrees and some animal sources. Those precipitated clotting factors derived from pooled human serum do have some risk for viral contamination, even with the use of many techniques to purify the drug ([National Hemophilia Foundation, 2010](#)). Infectious complications of hemophilia therapy include hepatitis B, hepatitis C, cytomegalovirus, and HIV.

HEPARIN-INDUCED THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) is a serious immune-mediated clotting disorder that features an unexplained drop in platelet count after heparin treatment with or without thrombotic complications. The occurrence is increasing because of the increased use of heparin. Unlike

other clotting disorders, HIT is an immune-mediated drug reaction that is caused by heparin-dependent platelet-activating immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies in which heparin binds with platelet factor 4 (PF4). This drug binding leads to the development of a highly reactive immune complex that activates the platelets. Once activated, platelets release procoagulants and PF4, which neutralizes heparin and increases thrombin generation from prothrombin.

HIT can occur in patients receiving any type of heparin, including unfractionated heparin and low-molecular-weight heparin, although it is more common after exposure to unfractionated heparin (Glass & Spitrey, 2009). The incidence is higher among patients with risk factors that include (1) duration of heparin use longer than 1 week, (2) exposure to unfractionated heparin, (3) postsurgical thromboprophylaxis, and (4) being female.

Manifestations of HIT include venous thrombotic complications such as deep vein thrombosis (50%) and pulmonary embolism (25%). The diagnosis is based on the patient's exposure to heparin, which can be up to 100 days before the event. Thrombocytopenia after heparin exposure is the hallmark sign of HIT. Clinical, as well as laboratory, findings need to be interpreted to properly diagnose this disorder.

Once HIT is diagnosed, anticoagulation therapy is started. Drugs approved for HIT management are argatroban (Argatroban), lepirudin (Refludan), and bivalirudin (Angiomax) (Sparks, 2009).

TRANSFUSION THERAPY

Any blood component may be removed from a donor and transfused to a recipient (Leighton, 2008). More than 98% of the blood supply in the United States comes from volunteer donors. Blood components may be transfused individually or collectively, with varying degrees of benefit to the recipient. Table 42-5 lists indications for transfusion therapy.

PRETRANSFUSION RESPONSIBILITIES

Nursing actions during transfusions aim at prevention or early recognition of adverse transfusion reactions. Preparation of the patient for transfusion therapy is critical, and institutional blood product administration procedures must be carefully followed. Before administering any blood product, review the agency's policies and procedures. Chart 42-13 lists best practices for transfusion therapy.

A prescription from the health care provider is required to administer blood or its components. The prescription specifies the type of component, the volume, and any special conditions the physician judges to be important. Verify the prescription for accuracy and completeness. In many hospitals, a separate consent form must be obtained before a transfusion is performed.

A blood specimen is obtained for crossmatching (testing of the donor's blood and the recipient's blood for compatibility). The procedure and responsibility for obtaining this specimen are specified by hospital policy. The laboratory requires at least 45 minutes to complete the crossmatch testing. Usually, a new crossmatching specimen is required at least every 72 hours.

TABLE 42-4 ANTIHEMOPHILIC DRUGS

DRUG TYPES	SOURCES
High purity antihemophilic factor - Alphanate - Humate-P - Koate-DIV	Pooled human serum
Monoclonal antibody purified antihemophilic factor - Hemofil-M - Monarc-M - Monoclata-P	Pooled human serum
Recombinant antihemophilic factor - Helixate FS - Kogenate FS - Recombinate	Recombinant DNA technology
B-domain deleted (BDD) recombinant antihemophilic factor ReFacto	Recombinant DNA technology
Recombinant antihemophilic factor plasma/albumin-free method (rAHF-PFM) Advate	Recombinant DNA technology
Recombinant antihemophilic factor plasma/albumin-free method Xyntha	Recombinant DNA technology
Porcine factor VIII Hyate: C	Animal serum

TABLE 42-5 INDICATIONS FOR TREATMENT WITH BLOOD COMPONENTS

COMPONENT	VOLUME	INFUSION TIME	INDICATIONS
Packed red blood cells (PRBCs)	200-250 mL	2-4 hr	Anemia; hemoglobin <6 g/dL, 6-10 g/dL, depending on symptoms
Washed red blood cells (WBC-poor PRBCs)	200 mL	2-4 hr	History of allergic transfusion reactions Hematopoietic stem cell transplant patients
Platelets			
Pooled	About 300 mL	15-30 min	Thrombocytopenia, platelet count <20,000 Patients who are actively bleeding with a platelet count <50,000
Single donor	200 mL	30 min	History of febrile or allergic reactions
Fresh frozen plasma	200 mL	15-30 min	Deficiency in plasma coagulation factors Prothrombin or partial thromboplastin time 1.5 times normal
Cryoprecipitate	10-20 mL/ unit	15-30 min	Hemophilia VIII or von Willebrand's disease Fibrinogen levels <100 mg/dL
White blood cells (WBCs)	400 mL	1 hr	Sepsis, neutropenic infection not responding to antibiotic therapy

CHART 42-13 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Transfusion Therapy

NURSING ACTIONS	RATIONALES
Before Infusion 1. Assess laboratory values. 2. Verify the medical prescription. 3. Assess the patient's vital signs, urine output, skin color, and history of transfusion reactions. 4. Obtain venous access. Use a central catheter or at least a 20-gauge needle if possible. 5. Obtain blood products from a blood bank. Transfuse as soon as possible after first performing all the required safety checks. 6. With another registered nurse, verify the patient by name and number, check blood compatibility, and note expiration time.	Many institutions have specific guidelines for blood product transfusions (e.g., platelet count <20,000 or hemoglobin <6 g/dL). Legally, a physician's prescription is required for transfusions. The prescription should state the type of product, dose, and transfusion time. Determine whether the patient can tolerate infusion. Baseline information may be needed to help identify transfusion reactions. The larger-bore needle allows cells to flow more easily without occluding the lumen of the catheter. Once a blood product has been released from the blood bank, the product should be transfused as soon as possible (e.g., red blood cell transfusions should be completed within 4 hours of removal from refrigeration). Human error is the most common cause of ABO incompatibility reactions.
During Infusion 7. Administer the blood product using the appropriate filtered tubing. 8. Dilute blood products with only normal saline solution. 9. Remain with the patient during the first 15 to 30 minutes of the infusion. 10. Infuse the blood product at the prescribed rate. 11. Monitor vital signs.	Filters are needed to remove aggregates and possible contaminants. Hemolysis occurs if any other IV solution is used. Hemolytic reactions occur most often within the first 50 mL of the infusion. Fluid overload is a potential complication of rapid infusion. Vital sign changes often indicate transfusion reactions.
After Infusion 12. When the transfusion is completed, discontinue infusion and dispose of the bag and tubing properly. 13. Document.	Bloodborne pathogens may be spread inadvertently through improper disposal. The patient record should indicate the type of product infused, product number, volume infused, time of infusion, and any adverse reactions.

Blood components are viscous (thick), requiring that a larger needle (at least 20-gauge) be used, whenever possible, for venous access. Both Y tubing and straight tubing sets are used for blood component infusion (Fig. 42-7). A blood filter (about 170 μm) to remove sediment from the stored blood products is included with blood administration sets and must be used to transfuse most blood products. In massive transfusion, a microaggregate filter (20 to 42 μm) may be used.

Use normal saline as the solution to administer with blood products (Bielefeldt & DeWitt, 2009). Ringer's lactate and dextrose in water are not used for infusion with blood products because they cause clotting or hemolysis of blood cells.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Never add to or infuse other drugs with blood products because they may clot the blood during transfusion.

Before the transfusion, and in compliance with recommendations by The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSG), the priority action is to determine that the blood component delivered is correct and that identification of the patient is correct (The Joint Commission [TJC], 2010). Check

the physician's prescription together with another registered nurse to determine the patient's identity and whether the hospital identification band name and number are identical to those on the blood component tag. According to The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals, *the patient's room number is not an acceptable form of identification*. Some facilities use a bar code–point of care (BC-POC) system to improve patient safety and reduce identification errors (Dohnalek, 2007).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

The nurse who will be actually administering the blood products must be one of the two professionals comparing the patient's identification with the information on the blood component bag.

Examine the blood bag label, the attached tag, and the requisition slip to ensure that the ABO and Rh types are compatible. Check the expiration date, because infusing older blood increases the risk for transfusion complications (Collins, 2011). Inspect the product for discoloration, gas bubbles, or cloudiness, all of which are indicators of bacterial growth or hemolysis.

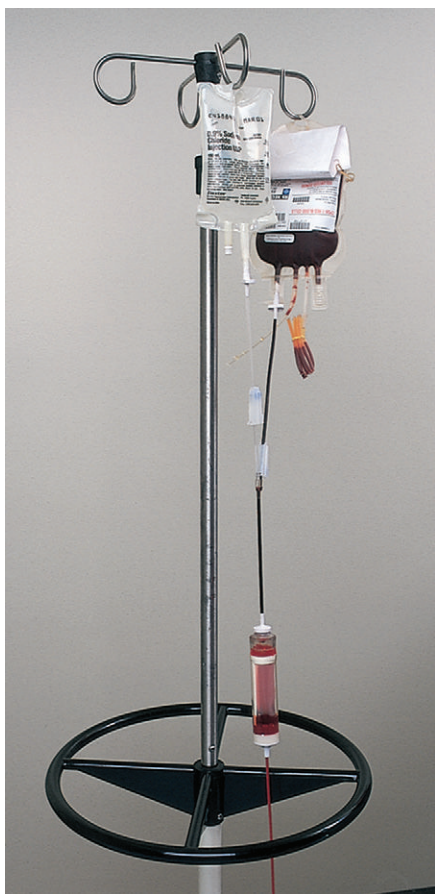


FIG. 42-7 Blood administration setup.

TRANSFUSION RESPONSIBILITIES

Before starting the transfusion, explain the procedure to the patient. Assess vital signs, including temperature, immediately before starting the transfusion. Begin the infusion slowly. *Remain with the patient for the first 15 to 30 minutes.* Any severe reaction usually occurs with infusion of the first 50 mL of blood. Ask the patient to report unusual sensations such as chills, shortness of breath, hives, or itching. Assess vital signs 15 minutes after starting the transfusion to detect signs of a reaction. If there are none, the infusion rate can be increased to transfuse 1 unit in about 2 hours (depending on the patient's cardiac status and the facility's policy for rate of administration). Take vital signs at least every hour throughout the transfusion or as specified by agency policy.

Blood components without large amounts of RBCs can be infused more quickly. The identification checks are the same as for RBC transfusions. It may be necessary to infuse blood products at a slower rate for older patients. Best practices related to the nursing care needs of older patients during transfusion therapy are listed in [Chart 42-14](#).

Electrolyte imbalances are possible as a result of transfusions, especially with packed red blood cells or with whole blood. Potassium is the main electrolyte inside cells. During transfusions, some cells are damaged, releasing potassium and raising the patient's serum potassium level above normal ([hyperkalemia](#)). This problem is more likely when the blood being transfused has been frozen or is several weeks old.

CHART 42-14 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Older Adult Receiving a Transfusion

- Assess the patient's circulatory, kidney, and fluid status before initiating the transfusion.
- Use no larger than a 19-gauge needle.
- Try to use blood that is less than 1 week old. (Older blood cell membranes are more fragile, break easily, and release potassium into the circulation.)
- Take vital signs (especially pulse, blood pressure, and respiratory rate) every 15 minutes throughout the transfusion. Changes in these parameters can indicate fluid overload and may also be the only indicators of adverse transfusion reactions.
 - Overload
 - Rapid bounding pulse
 - Hypertension
 - Swollen superficial veins
 - Transfusion Reaction
 - Rapid thready pulse
 - Hypotension
 - Increased pallor, cyanosis
- Administer blood slowly, taking 2 to 4 hours for each unit of whole blood, packed red blood cells, or plasma.
- Avoid concurrent fluid administration into any other IV site.
- If possible, allow 2 full hours after the administration of 1 unit of blood before administering the next unit.

TABLE 42-6 COMPATIBILITY CHART FOR RED BLOOD CELL TRANSFUSIONS

DONOR	RECIPIENT			
	A	B	AB	O
A	X		X	
B		X	X	
AB			X	
O	X	X	X	X

TYPES OF TRANSFUSIONS

Red Blood Cell Transfusions

RBCs are given to replace cells lost as a result of trauma or surgery. Patients with problems that destroy RBCs or impair RBC maturation also may benefit from RBC transfusions. Packed RBCs, supplied in 250-mL bags, are a concentrated source of RBCs and are the most common component given to RBC-deficient patients. This type of blood product is used for patients who have a hemoglobin level less than 8 g/dL or who are hypoxemic or otherwise symptomatic.

Blood transfusions are actually transplantations of tissue from one person to another. The donor and recipient blood must thus be carefully checked for compatibility to prevent lethal reactions ([Table 42-6](#)). Compatibility is determined by two different antigen systems (cell surface proteins): the ABO system antigens and the Rh antigen, present on the membranes of RBCs.

RBC antigens are inherited. For the ABO system, a person inherits one of these:

- A antigen (type A blood)
- B antigen (type B blood)
- Both A and B antigens (type AB blood)
- Neither A nor B antigens (type O blood)

Within the first few years of life, circulating antibodies develop against the blood type antigens that person did not inherit. For example, a person with type A blood forms antibodies against type B blood. A person with type O blood has not inherited either A or B antigens and will form antibodies against RBCs with either A or B antigens. If RBCs that have an antigen are infused into a recipient who does not share that antigen, the infused blood is recognized by the recipient's antibodies as non-self and the recipient then has a reaction to the transfused products.

The Rh antigen system is slightly different. An Rh-negative person is born without the Rh-antigen on his or her RBCs and does not form antibodies unless he or she is specifically sensitized to it. Sensitization can occur with RBC transfusions from an Rh-positive person or from exposure during pregnancy and birth. Once an Rh-negative person has been sensitized and antibody development has occurred, any exposure to Rh-positive blood can cause a transfusion reaction. Antibody development can be prevented by giving anti-Rh-immunoglobulin as soon as exposure to the Rh antigen is suspected. *People who have Rh-positive blood can receive an RBC transfusion from an Rh-negative donor, but Rh-negative people should not receive Rh-positive blood.*

Platelet Transfusions

Platelets are given to patients with platelet counts below 10,000/mm³ and to patients with thrombocytopenia who are actively bleeding or are scheduled for an invasive procedure. Platelet transfusions are usually pooled from as many as 10 donors and do not have to be of the same blood type as the patient has. For patients who are going to receive a hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) or who need multiple platelet transfusions, single-donor platelets may be prescribed. Single-donor platelets are taken from just one donor and decrease the amount of antigen exposure to the recipient, helping prevent the formation of platelet antibodies. The chances of allergic reactions to future platelet transfusions are thus reduced.

Platelet infusion bags usually contain 300 mL for pooled platelets and 200 mL for single-donor platelets. Platelets are fragile and must be infused immediately after being brought to the patient's room, usually over a 15- to 30-minute period. A special transfusion set with a smaller filter and shorter tubing is used. Additional platelet filters help remove white blood cells (WBCs) from the platelet concentrate. These filters are connected directly to the platelet transfusion set and are used for patients who have a history of febrile reactions or who need multiple platelet transfusions.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When infusing platelets, do not use the standard blood administration set because the filter traps the platelets and the longer tubing increases platelet adherence to the lumen.

Take the vital signs before the infusion, 15 minutes after the infusion starts, and at its completion. A patient who has had a transfusion reaction in the past may be given diphenhydramine (Benadryl) and acetaminophen (Tylenol) before the transfusion to reduce the chances of a reaction. He or she

can become febrile and have **rigors** (severe chills) during transfusion, but these symptoms are not a true transfusion reaction.

Plasma Transfusions

Plasma infusions may be given fresh to replace blood volume. More commonly, plasma is frozen immediately after donation, forming **fresh frozen plasma (FFP)**. Freezing preserves the clotting factors, and the plasma can then be used for patients with clotting disorders. Infuse FFP immediately after thawing while the clotting factors are still active. Patients who are actively bleeding with a prothrombin time (PT) or partial thromboplastin time (PTT) greater than 1.5 times normal are candidates for an FFP infusion.

ABO compatibility is required for transfusion of plasma products. The infusion bag contains about 200 mL. Infuse FFP as rapidly as the patient can tolerate, generally over a 30- to 60-minute period, through a regular Y set or straight filtered tubing.

Cryoprecipitate Transfusions

Cryoprecipitate is a product derived from plasma. Clotting factors VIII and XIII, von Willebrand's factor, and fibrinogen are precipitated from pooled plasma to produce cryoprecipitate (Cook, 2009). Patients with a fibrinogen level of less than 100 mg/dL are candidates for a cryoprecipitate infusion. Give this highly concentrated blood product to patients with clotting factor disorders at a volume of 10 to 15 mL/unit. Although cryoprecipitate can be infused, it is usually given by IV push within 3 minutes. Dosages are individualized, and it is best if the cryoprecipitate is ABO compatible.

Granulocyte (White Blood Cell) Transfusions

Rarely, neutropenic patients with infections receive white blood cell (WBC) replacement transfusions. This practice is less common as a result of the availability of WBC growth factors (Cook, 2009). WBC surfaces have many antigens that can cause severe reactions.

WBCs are suspended in 400 mL of plasma and should be infused slowly, usually over a 45- to 60-minute period depending on the concentration of cells being infused. Agency policies often require stricter monitoring of patients receiving WBCs because reactions are more common. A physician may need to be present in the hospital unit, and vital signs may need to be taken every 15 minutes throughout the transfusion. Amphotericin B infusion and WBC transfusions should be separated by 4 to 6 hours. The reasons for this are (1) the drug can bind to the membranes of the WBCs and destroy them, and (2) the drug induces fevers and chills, which would be difficult to differentiate from a transfusion reaction.

ACUTE TRANSFUSION REACTIONS

Patients can develop any of these transfusion reactions: febrile, hemolytic, allergic, or bacterial reactions; circulatory overload; or transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). To prevent complications, remain alert during transfusions to detect early reactions and initiate appropriate treatment.

Febrile transfusion reactions occur most often in the patient with anti-WBC antibodies, a situation that can develop after

multiple transfusions, WBC transfusions, and platelet transfusions. The recipient develops chills, tachycardia, fever, hypotension, and tachypnea. Giving leukocyte-reduced blood or single-donor HLA-matched platelets reduces the risk for this type of reaction. WBC filters may be used to trap WBCs and prevent their infusion into the patient.

Hemolytic transfusion reactions are caused by blood type or Rh incompatibility. When blood containing antigens different from the patient's own antigens is infused, antigen-antibody complexes are formed in his or her blood. These complexes destroy the transfused cells and start inflammatory responses in the blood vessel walls and organs. The reaction may be mild, with fever and chills, or life threatening, with disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) and circulatory collapse (Katz, 2009). Other manifestations include:

- Apprehension
- Headache
- Chest pain
- Low back pain
- Tachycardia
- Tachypnea
- Hypotension
- Hemoglobinuria
- A sense of impending doom

The onset of a hemolytic reaction may be immediate or may not occur until subsequent units have been transfused.

Allergic transfusion reactions (also known as *anaphylactic transfusion reactions*) are most often seen in patients with a history of allergy. They may have urticaria, itching, bronchospasm, or anaphylaxis (Huntley, 2009). Onset of this type of reaction usually occurs during or up to 24 hours after the transfusion. Patients with a history of allergy can be given leukocyte-reduced or washed RBCs in which the WBCs, plasma, and immunoglobulin A have been removed. This procedure reduces the possibility of an allergic reaction.

Bacterial transfusion reactions occur as a result of infusion of contaminated blood products. Usually a gram-negative organism is the source because these bacteria grow rapidly in blood stored under refrigeration. Symptoms include tachycardia, hypotension, fever, chills, and shock (Katz, 2009). The onset of a bacterial transfusion reaction is rapid. (See Chapter 39 for care of the patient with septic shock.)

Circulatory overload can occur when a blood product is infused too quickly. This complication is most common with whole-blood transfusions or when the patient receives multiple transfusions. Older adults are most at risk for this problem (see Chart 42-14). Symptoms include:

- Hypertension
- Bounding pulse
- Distended jugular veins
- Dyspnea
- Restlessness
- Confusion

You can both manage and prevent this complication by monitoring intake and output, infusing blood products more slowly, and giving diuretics. (See Chapter 13 for management of patients with fluid overload.)

Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease (TA-GVHD) is a rare but life-threatening problem that can occur in both immunosuppressed and immunocompetent patients. Its cause in immunosuppressed patients is similar to that of

GVHD that occurs with allogeneic stem cell transplantation, discussed on pp. 888-889, in which donor T-cell lymphocytes attack host tissues.

Manifestations usually occur within 1 to 2 weeks and include thrombocytopenia, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, chronic hepatitis, weight loss, and recurrent infection.

TA-GVHD has an 80% to 90% mortality rate but can be prevented by using irradiated blood products. Irradiation reduces T-cells and their cytokine products.

AUTOLOGOUS BLOOD TRANSFUSIONS

Autologous blood transfusions involve collection and infusion of the patient's own blood. This type of transfusion eliminates compatibility problems and reduces the risk for transmitting bloodborne diseases. The four types of autologous blood transfusions are preoperative autologous blood donation, acute normovolemic hemodilution, intraoperative autologous transfusion, and postoperative blood salvage.

Autologous blood donation before surgery is a common type of autologous blood transfusion and involves collecting whole blood from the patient, dividing it into components, and storing it for later use after a scheduled surgical procedure. As long as hematocrit and hemoglobin levels are within a safe range, the patient can donate blood on a weekly basis until the prescribed amount of blood is obtained. Fresh packed RBCs may be stored for 40 days. For patients with rare blood types, blood may be frozen for up to 10 years. Autologous blood donation may not be used with some hematologic problems, some cardiac problems, and bacteremia.

Acute normovolemic hemodilution involves withdrawal of a patient's RBCs and volume replacement just before a surgical procedure. The goal is to decrease RBC loss during surgery. The blood is stored at room temperature for up to 6 hours and reinfused after surgery. This type of autologous transfusion is not used with anemic patients or those with poor kidney function.

Intraoperative autologous transfusion and blood salvage after surgery are the recovery and reinfusion of a patient's own blood from an operative field or from a bleeding wound. Special devices collect, filter, and drain the blood into a transfusion bag. This blood is used for trauma or surgical patients with severe blood loss. The salvaged blood must be reinfused within 6 hours.

Transfuse autologous blood products using the guidelines previously described. Although the patient receiving autologous blood is not at risk for most types of transfusion reactions, circulatory overload or bacterial transfusion reactions can still occur.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which assessment is most important for the nurse to perform for the client receiving one unit of packed red blood cells from an autologous donation?

- A. Temperature
- B. Blood pressure
- C. Oxygen saturation
- D. IV site for hives

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate oxygenation as a result of hematologic problems?

- Skin cyanosis or pallor (in lighter-skinned patients)
- Cyanosis or pallor of the lips and oral mucous membranes (in patients of any skin color)
- Tachycardia
- Tachypnea and dyspnea
- Slow capillary refill
- Cool to cold extremities
- Change in cognition, acute confusion
- Decreased oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Decreased urine output
- Presence of bruises or petechiae
- Bleeding of the gums, around IV sites, at sites of venipuncture

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to this patient experiencing inadequate oxygenation as a result of a hematologic problem?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Monitoring oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Checking for blood in stool, urine, emesis
- Checking for bleeding in the mouth, around IV sites, drains, urinary catheters

- Checking most recent laboratory values for hematocrit and hemoglobin levels and platelet and RBC counts
- Assessing cognition (Mini-Mental State Examination [MMSE])

Respond by:

- Applying oxygen
- Keeping the patient's head elevated to about 30 degrees
- Handling the patient gently
- Keeping the patient warm (blankets)
- Applying firm pressure to areas actively bleeding
- Notifying physician or Rapid Response Team
- Instituting Bleeding Precautions
- Maintaining or initiating IV therapy
- Preparing to administer blood or blood products
- Keeping venipunctures to a minimum
- Prioritizing and pacing activities to prevent fatigue

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of restored tissue perfusion (see [Chapter 41](#)).
- Think about what may have precipitated this episode and what steps could be taken to either prevent a similar episode or identify it earlier.
- Think about what additional resources could improve the nursing response to this situation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use aseptic technique during all central line dressing changes or any invasive procedure.
- Use Standard Precautions for all patients.
- Use good handwashing techniques before providing any care to a patient who is either immunocompromised or immune deficient.
- Use Bleeding Precautions for any patient with thrombocytopenia or pancytopenia (see [Chart 42-8](#)).
- Verify with another registered nurse prescriptions for transfusion of blood products.
- Use at least two forms of identification for the patient who is to receive a blood product transfusion (name and identification number).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach people to avoid unnecessary contact with environmental chemicals or toxins. If contact cannot be avoided, teach people to use safety precautions.

- Teach patients with sickle cell disease to avoid known conditions that trigger crises.
- Identify patients at high risk for infection because of disease or therapy.
- Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.
- Instruct patients who have anemia as a result of dietary deficiency which foods are good sources of iron, folic acid, and vitamin B₁₂.
- Teach precautions to take to avoid injury (see [Chart 42-12](#)) to patients at risk for bleeding.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express his or her feelings regarding the diagnosis of leukemia or lymphoma or the treatment regimen.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Offer alternative therapies for relaxation, pain reduction, and distraction, such as massage, music therapy, and guided imagery.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Refer patients and family members to local cancer resources and support groups.
- Reassure patients having pain that using opioid analgesics for needed pain relief is not drug abuse.

Physiological Integrity

- Teach the patient about any drugs to be continued after discharge from the hospital.
- Instruct the patient and family in the manifestations of complications and when to seek assistance.
- Pace nonurgent health care activities to reduce the risk for fatigue among patients with anemia or pancytopenia.
- Assess patients in the induction phase of chemotherapy and those after BMT every 8 hours for manifestations of infection.
- Assess the skin integrity of the perianal region of a patient with leukemia after every bowel movement.
- Administer analgesics on a schedule rather than PRN.
- Use normal saline as the solution infusing with blood products.
- Transfuse blood products more slowly to older patients or those who have a cardiac problem.
- Remain with the patient during the first 15 minutes of infusion of any blood product.
- Do not administer any drugs with infusing blood products.

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

Mobility, Sensation, and Cognition

The term *mobility* means movement. When referring to physical mobility, it means the ability of the body to move. Mobility is needed for ADL performance and many body functions, including digestion, elimination, circulation, and muscle integrity. In some cases, it helps keep a person *safe* by being able to move to prevent injury.

Mobility is accomplished primarily through the integration of the neurologic and musculoskeletal body systems. Adequate energy from food is needed to nourish the cells of these systems to promote proper function and energy.

Sensation refers to receiving sensory input from the cells of the skin (feeling), eyes (seeing), and ears (hearing) and accurately interpreting this input in the neurons of the central nervous system (CNS). Therefore sensation is also needed to keep the body *safe*. For example, if a person cannot feel water temperature, a burn may result. If vision is impaired, a fall may occur.

Cognition refers to mental processes and intellectual function and is controlled by certain neurons in the gray matter of the brain. These cells are very sensitive to serum glucose and oxygen levels. If either of these substances falls below the amounts needed, the cells cannot function properly, resulting in diminished cognitive ability and a decreased level of consciousness.

Appropriate judgment and decision making are needed to keep a person *safe*. These cognitive processes also allow a person to perform day-to-day activities such as knowing when to eat or how to drive a car.

One or all of these three human needs may be unmet as a result of disease, injury, surgery, or drugs. Problems of the neurologic, sensory, and musculoskeletal systems most commonly affect the need for mobility, sensation, and cognition. The interrelationship of these needs can be compared to a computer and its parts.



As seen in Fig. 1, the computer's central processing unit (CPU), or processor, is the brain of the machine (the *cognitive center*). Much like the spinal cord, it works with the motherboard to send and receive messages (input and output). The connected pins and wires function like the spinal nerves. Peripherals such as the mouse and keyboard are similar in function to the peripheral nervous system (PNS) (*sensation*) and musculoskeletal system (*mobility*). When all of these parts are working properly, the computer functions without any problems.

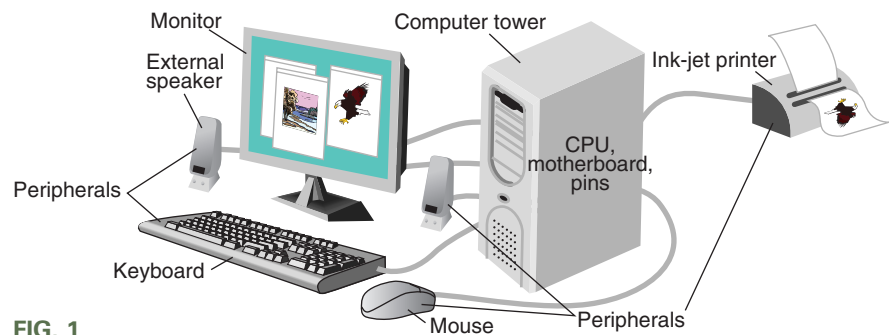


FIG. 1

However, when the CPU (brain) does not work properly (decreased cognition), the motherboard (spinal cord) and/or peripherals (PNS and muscles) may not function as they should (decreased mobility and sensation). If the motherboard (spinal cord) is broken, no information is sent to or from any of the other parts of the computer. In both cases, there is no display on the monitor (Fig. 2).

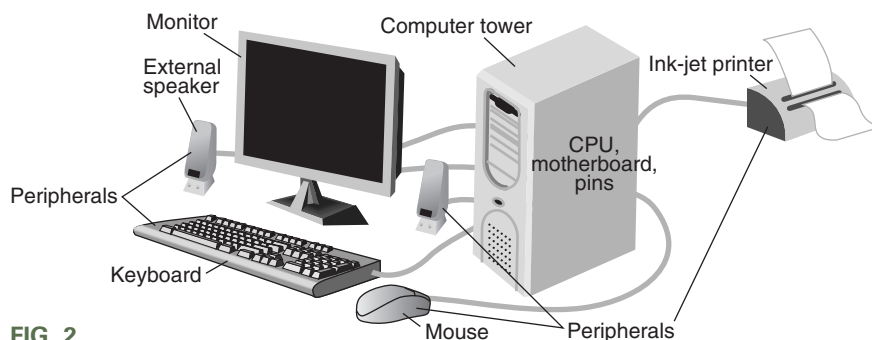


FIG. 2



Problems of Mobility, Sensation, and Cognition

Management of Patients with Problems of the Nervous System

CHAPTER 43

Assessment of the Nervous System

Rachel L. Palmieri

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Cranial Nerves

Animation: Motor Pathways and Clinical Evaluation of the CNS

Animation: Physiology of the Brain

Animation: Reflex Arc

Animation: Sensory Pathways and Clinical Evaluation of the CNS

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

Video Clip: Central Vision

Video Clip: Deep Tendon Reflex

Video Clip: Fine Motor Coordination

Video Clip: Light Touch

Video Clip: Pupil Responses

Video Clip: Sensory Evaluation

Video Clip: Smell

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Determine a patient's allergy to iodine-based contrast media before diagnostic testing.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify factors that place patients at risk for neurologic health problems.
3. Explain pre-test and post-test care associated with neurologic diagnostic testing.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Explain psychological responses to neurologic health problems.

Physiological Integrity

5. Briefly review the anatomy and physiology of the nervous system.
6. Describe common physiologic changes associated with aging that affect the nervous system.
7. Interpret findings from a comprehensive neurologic physical assessment.
8. Identify how to perform a rapid neurologic assessment and interpret findings.
9. Assess patients for complications of neurologic diagnostic tests.

The nervous system controls *mobility, sensation, and cognition*. In addition, through the autonomic nervous system (ANS), it innervates many other body systems to make them function. For example, the sacral spinal nerves (part of the ANS) stimulate the detrusor muscle to contract when the urinary bladder is full.

Health problems involving trauma and diseases of the brain can impair the human needs for mobility, sensation, and/or cognition. When the spine or peripheral nervous system is affected, mobility and/or sensation is often impaired. The primary role of the nurse is to help restore these human needs or to assist the patient to adapt to their deficits.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

The major divisions of the nervous system are the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS). The CNS is composed of the brain and the spinal cord. The brain is contained within the cranium; the brain's role is to direct the regulation and function of the nervous system and other systems of the body. The spinal cord is lodged in the vertebral canal. From the brain, the spinal cord descends down the middle of the back and is surrounded and protected by the bony vertebral column. The spinal cord is surrounded by a clear fluid called *cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)* that protects the delicate nerve tissues against damage from banging against the inside of the vertebrae.

The PNS is composed of 12 pairs of cranial nerves, 31 pairs of spinal nerves, and the autonomic nervous system. The autonomic nervous system is further subdivided into sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers.

The nervous system contains two types of cells: neurons, which transmit or conduct nerve impulses; and neuroglial cells, which have an interdependent role with the neuron.

Nervous System Cells: Structure and Function

Neurons

The basic unit of the nervous system, the neuron, transmits impulses, or “messages.” Some neurons are **motor** (causing movement or mobility), and some are **sensory** (causing sensation). Some process information, and some retain information. When a neuron receives an impulse from another neuron, the effect may be excitation or inhibition. Each neuron has a *cell body*, or *soma*; short, branching processes called *dendrites*; and a single *axon* (Fig. 43-1).

Afferent neurons, also known as *sensory neurons*, are specialized to send impulses toward the CNS, away from the PNS. *Efferent* neurons are motor nerve cells that carry signals

from the CNS to the cells in the PNS. Each dendrite synapses with another cell body, axon, or dendrite and sends impulses along the efferent and afferent neuron pathways.

Many axons are covered by a **myelin sheath**—a white, lipid covering. Myelinated axons appear whitish and therefore are also called **white matter**. Nonmyelinated axons have a grayish cast and are called **gray matter**. Myelinated axons have gaps in the myelin called *nodes of Ranvier*. The nodes of Ranvier play a major role in impulse conduction (see Fig. 43-1). When the myelin is impaired, the impulses cannot travel from the brain to the rest of the body, such as in patients with multiple sclerosis.

The enlarged, distal end of each axon is called the *synaptic* or *terminal knob*. Within the synaptic knobs are the mechanisms for manufacturing, storing, and releasing a transmitter substance. Each neuron produces a specific **neurotransmitter** chemical (e.g., acetylcholine or serotonin) that can either enhance or inhibit the impulse but cannot do both. Other substances, although not specifically identified as neurotransmitters, are considered probable transmitters or neuromodulators.

Impulses are transmitted to their eventual destination through synapses, or spaces between neurons. There are two distinct types of synapses: *neuron to neuron* and *neuron to muscle* (or gland). Between the terminal knob and the next cell is a small space called the *synaptic cleft*. The knob, the cleft, and the portion of the cell to which the impulse is being transmitted make up the **synapse**.

Neuroglial Cells

Neuroglial cells, which vary in size and shape, provide protection, structure, and nutrition for the neurons. They are classified into four types: astroglial cells, ependymal cells, oligodendrocytes, and microglial cells. These cells are also part of the blood-brain barrier and help regulate cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

Central Nervous System: Structure and Function

The central nervous system (CNS) is composed of the *brain*, which directs the regulation and function of the nervous system and all other systems of the body, and the *spinal cord*, which starts reflex activity and transmits impulses to and from the brain.

Brain

The **meninges** form the protective covering of the brain and the spinal cord. The outside layer is the *dura mater*. The **subdural space** is located between the dura mater and the middle layer, the *arachnoid*. The *pia mater* is the most inner layer. Situated between the arachnoid and pia mater is the **subarachnoid space**, where CSF circulates. A potential space, referred to as the *epidural space*, is located between the skull and the outer layer of the dura mater. This area also extends down the spinal cord and is used for the delivery of epidural analgesia and anesthesia.

The dura mater also lies between the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum and is called the *tentorium*. It helps decrease or prevent the transmission of force from one hemisphere to another and protect the lower brainstem when head trauma occurs. Clinical references may be made to a lesion (e.g., a tumor) as being **supratentorial** (above the tentorium) or **infratentorial** (below the tentorium).

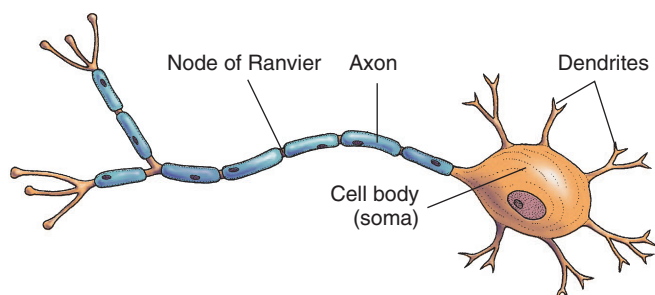


FIG. 43-1 The structure of a typical neuron.

Major Parts of the Brain. The brain consists of three main areas—the brainstem, the cerebellum, and the forebrain. The *brainstem* connects the rest of the brain with the CNS. It is concerned primarily with life support and basic functions such as movement.

The *cerebellum* is concerned with coordination of movement and works together with the brainstem to focus on the functionality of the muscles. This structure is found below the occipital lobe and adjacent to the brainstem.

The *forebrain* lies above the brainstem and cerebellum and is the most advanced in evolution. This area of the brain is further divided into three areas—the diencephalon, the cerebrum, and the cerebral cortex.

The *diencephalon*, which lies below the cerebrum, includes the thalamus, hypothalamus, and epithalamus (Fig. 43-2). The *thalamus* is the major “relay station,” or “central switchboard,” for the CNS. The *hypothalamus* plays a major role in autonomic nervous system control (controlling temperature and other functions) and intellectual function (cognition). The epithalamus contains the roof of the third ventricle and the pineal gland.

The *cerebrum* is the largest part of the brain and controls intelligence, creativity, and memory. The “gray matter” of the cerebrum is the central cortex—the center that receives information from the thalamus and all the lower areas of the brain. The cerebrum consists of two halves, referred to as the *right hemisphere* and the *left hemisphere*, which are joined by the corpus callosum. The *left hemisphere* is the dominant hemisphere in most people (even in many left-handed people). Within the deeper structures of the cerebrum are the right and left lateral ventricles. At the base of the cerebrum near the ventricles is a group of neurons called the *basal ganglia*, which help regulate the need for *mobility*.

The *cerebral cortex* is part of the cerebrum and is involved with almost all of the higher functions of the brain. This part of the brain processes and communicates all information coming from the peripheral nervous system (PNS). It also translates the impulses into understandable feelings and thoughts. The cerebral cortex is so complex that it is further divided into four lobes—the frontal lobe, parietal lobe, temporal lobe, and occipital lobe.

The frontal lobe is found at the front of the head near the temples and forehead. It processes voluntary muscle

movements and higher functioning actions such as thought and speech. It also helps control mood, planning for the future, setting goals, and making judgments. The parietal lobe is found behind the frontal lobe. It processes spatial awareness and receives and processes information about temperature, taste, touch, and movement coming from the rest of the body. Reading and arithmetic are also processed in this lobe. The temporal lobes are located in the area of the brain parallel to the ears. They process hearing, memory, and language functions. The occipital lobe is located in the posterior of the brain and assists in the processing of visual information.

Located in the frontal lobe, the *motor cortex* controls voluntary movement. Corticospinal tracts, also called *pyramidal tracts*, begin in the motor cortex and travel through the brain before crossing in the medulla. This crossing explains how right motor cortex damage affects the movement in the left side of the body and vice versa, such as in many patients who have cerebral strokes. The cerebrum is divided into lobes by sulci (fissures). These lobes work together and are connected by nerve fibers. The name and main function of each lobe is listed in Table 43-1.

Two important speech areas of the cerebrum are Broca’s area and Wernicke’s area. *Broca’s area* (speech area), also located in the frontal lobe, is responsible for the formation of words, or speech. *Wernicke’s area* (language area) is located in the temporal lobe and allows processing of words into coherent thought and understanding of written or spoken words.

TABLE 43-1 CEREBRAL LOBE MAIN FUNCTIONS

Frontal Lobe

- The primary motor area (also known as the *motor “strip”* or *cortex*)
- Broca’s speech center on the dominant side
- Voluntary eye movement
- Access to current sensory data
- Access to past information or experience
- Affective response to a situation
- Regulates behavior based on judgment and foresight
- Judgment
- Ability to develop long-term goals
- Reasoning, concentration, abstraction

Parietal Lobe

- Understand sensation, texture, size, shape, and spatial relationships
- Three-dimensional (spatial) perception
- Important for singing, playing musical instruments, and processing nonverbal visual experiences
- Perception of body parts and body position awareness
- Taste impulses for interpretation

Temporal Lobe

- Auditory center for sound interpretation
- Complicated memory patterns
- Wernicke’s area for speech

Occipital Lobe

- Primary visual center

Limbic Lobe

- Emotional and visceral patterns connected with survival
- Learning and memory

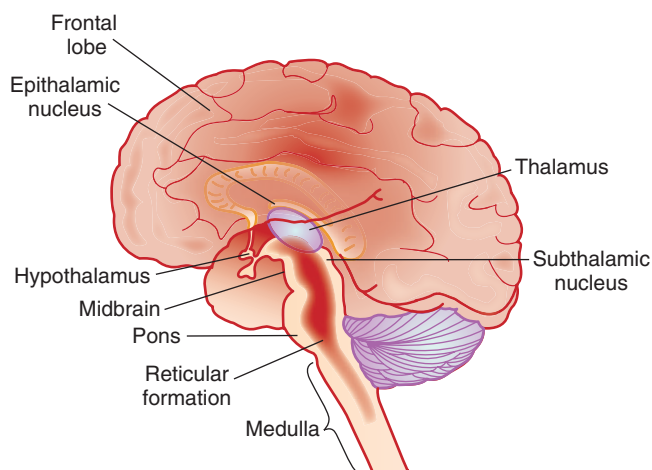


FIG. 43-2 The structures of the brainstem and diencephalon.

The *hypophysis (pituitary gland)* has two lobes, each releasing specific hormones into the circulation under the regulation of the hypothalamus. The pituitary is often referred to as the “master gland” because of its control of numerous hormonal functions. However, the hypothalamus actually controls its functions.

The *cerebellum* receives immediate and continuous information about the condition of the muscles, joints, and tendons. Cerebellar function enables a person to:

- Keep an extremity from overshooting an intended target
- Move from one skilled movement to another in an orderly sequence
- Predict distance or gauge the speed with which one is approaching an object
- Control voluntary movement
- Maintain equilibrium

Unlike the motor cortex, cerebellar control of the body is **ipsilateral** (situated on the same side). The right side of the cerebellum controls the right side of the body, and the left cerebellum controls the left side of the body.

The brainstem includes the midbrain, pons, and medulla. The functions of these structures are presented in Table 43-2. Throughout the brainstem are special cells that constitute the **reticular activating system (RAS)**, which controls awareness and alertness. For example, this tissue awakens a person from sleep when presented with a stimulus such as loud noise or pain or when it is time to awaken. The reticular formation area has many connections with the cerebrum, the rest of the brainstem, and the cerebellum.

Circulation in the Brain. Circulation in the brain originates from the carotid and vertebral arteries (Fig. 43-3). The internal carotid arteries branch into the anterior cerebral

artery (ACA) and middle cerebral arteries (MCA), the largest ones. The two posterior vertebral arteries become the basilar artery, which then divides into two posterior cerebral arteries. The anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries are joined together by small communicating arteries to form a ring at the base of the brain known as the **circle of Willis**.

The *middle* cerebral artery supplies the lateral surface of the cerebrum from about the mid-temporal lobe upward (i.e., the area for hearing and upper body motor and sensory neurons). The *anterior* cerebral artery supplies the midline, or medial, aspect of the same area (i.e., the lower body motor and sensory neurons). The *posterior* cerebral arteries supply the area from the mid-temporal region down and back

TABLE 43-2 BRAINSTEM FUNCTIONS

Medulla

- Cardiac-slowing center
- Respiratory center
- Cranial nerves IX (glossopharyngeal), X (vagus), XI (accessory), and XII (hypoglossal) emerge from the medulla, as do portions of cranial nerves VII (facial) and VIII (acoustic)

Pons

- Cardiac acceleration and vasoconstriction centers
- Pneumotaxic center helps control respiratory pattern and rate
- Four cranial nerves originate from the pons: V (trigeminal), VI (abducens), VII (facial), and VIII (vestibulocochlear)

Midbrain

- Contains the cerebral aqueduct or aqueduct of Sylvius
- Location of periaqueductal gray, which may abolish pain when stimulated
- Cranial nerve nuclei III (oculomotor) and IV (trochlear) located here

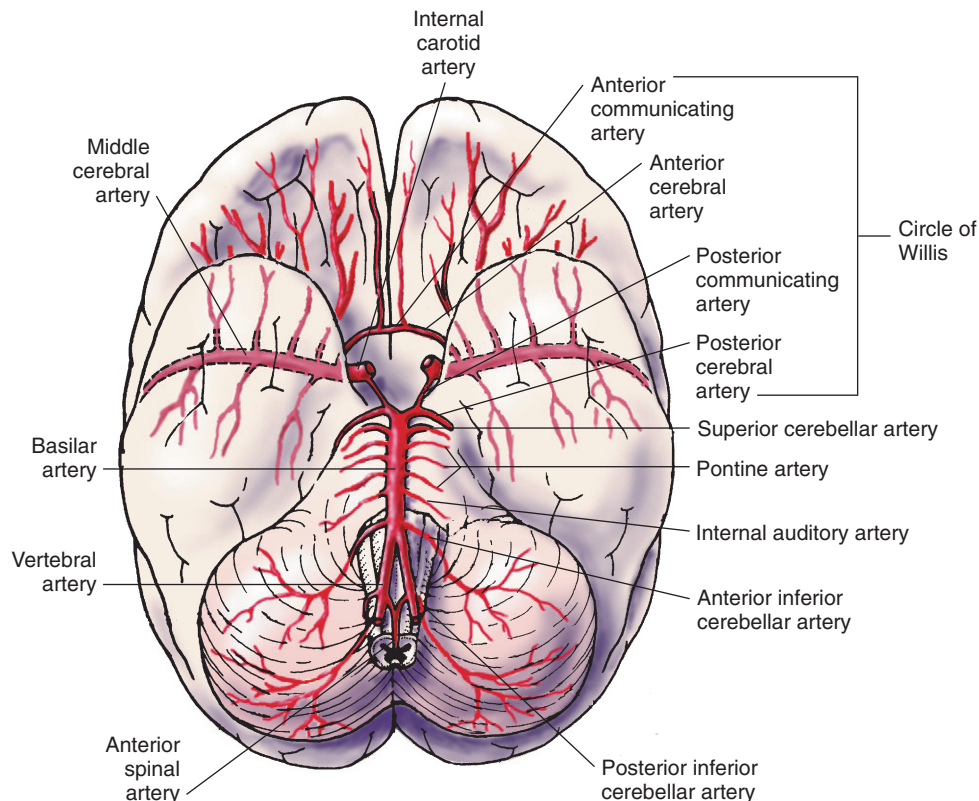


FIG. 43-3 Cerebral circulation and the circle of Willis at the base of the brain.

(occipital lobe), as well as much of the brainstem. When blood flow is interrupted in any of these arteries (e.g., by a clot), the area of the brain being supplied is affected and may not function as it should.

The *blood-brain barrier* (BBB) seems to exist because the endothelial cells of the cerebral capillaries are joined tightly together. This barrier keeps some substances in the bloodstream out of the cerebrospinal circulation and out of brain tissue. Substances that can pass through the BBB include oxygen, glucose, carbon dioxide, alcohol, anesthetics, and water. Large molecules such as albumin, any substance bound to albumin, and many antibiotics are prevented from crossing the barrier.

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) also circulates, surrounds, and cushions the brain and spinal cord. While moving through the subarachnoid space, the fluid is continuously produced by the choroid plexus, reabsorbed by the arachnoid villi, and then channeled into the superior sagittal sinus. Expanded areas of subarachnoid space, where there are large amounts of CSF, are called *cisterns*. The largest one is the lumbar cistern, the site of lumbar puncture, from the level of the second lumbar vertebra to the second sacral vertebra (L2-S2).

Spinal Cord

The spinal cord controls body movement (*mobility*); regulates organ function; processes sensory information from the extremities, trunk, and many internal organs (*sensation*); and transmits information to and from the brain. It contains H-shaped **gray matter** (neuron cell bodies) that is surrounded by **white matter** (myelinated axons). The white matter is divided into posterior, lateral, and anterior columns. Groups of cells in the white matter (ascending and descending tracts) have been fairly well identified (Fig. 43-4).

Ascending Tracts. *Ascending tracts* originate in the spinal cord and end in the brain. Three groups of ascending tracts are important for understanding the patient with neurologic problems: spinothalamic tracts, spinocerebellar tracts, and fasciculi gracilis and cuneatus (posterior white columns).

As the name indicates, *spinothalamic* tracts begin in the spinal cord with most ending in the thalamus. These tracts carry sensations of pain, temperature, light touch, and

pressure. The axon fibers from the cells cross to the opposite side and then continue up to the thalamus. Some branches end in the medulla and pons.

Spinocerebellar tracts begin in the spinal cord and end in the cerebellum. The *posterior* spinocerebellar tract transmits impulses of **proprioception** (awareness of position and movements of body parts) or movement, mostly from the lower extremities. The impulses enter the posterior gray horn and synapse with tract cells in lamina VII. Spinocerebellar axons then form the tract on the *same*, or ipsilateral, side. This tract begins at the second lumbar level and ascends to the medulla and then to the cerebellum.

The *anterior* spinocerebellar tract begins lower in the lumbar spine than does the posterior tract. These fibers cross immediately and ascend as an opposite-side tract, transmitting proprioceptive impulses from the lower extremities. The fibers cross again in the midbrain on their way to the cerebellum. Because these fibers have crossed the midline twice, the sensations end on the side on which they started.

The *posterior white columns* transmit this information to the thalamus:

- The sensation of proprioception from muscles, joints, and tendons
- Vibratory sense
- Light touch from the skin
- Localization

Most of the fibers ascend on the *same* side as their origin to the medulla, where they cross and then synapse in the thalamus, with termination in the parietal lobe. This tract allows a person to feel an exact point of pressure on the skin. Recognition of pressure includes the shape of an object (with eyes closed), movement across the skin (a number being written), and awareness of two points of touch close together (two-point discrimination).

Descending Tracts. *Descending tracts* begin in the brain and end in the spinal cord. The major descending tract of importance for understanding neurologic problems is the lateral *corticospinal*, or *pyramidal*, tract. The corticospinal tract originates in the motor cortex of the frontal lobe and portions of the parietal lobe. The lateral tract fibers cross to the opposite side at the level of the medulla. After crossing, the fibers descend and synapse with interneurons of the gray

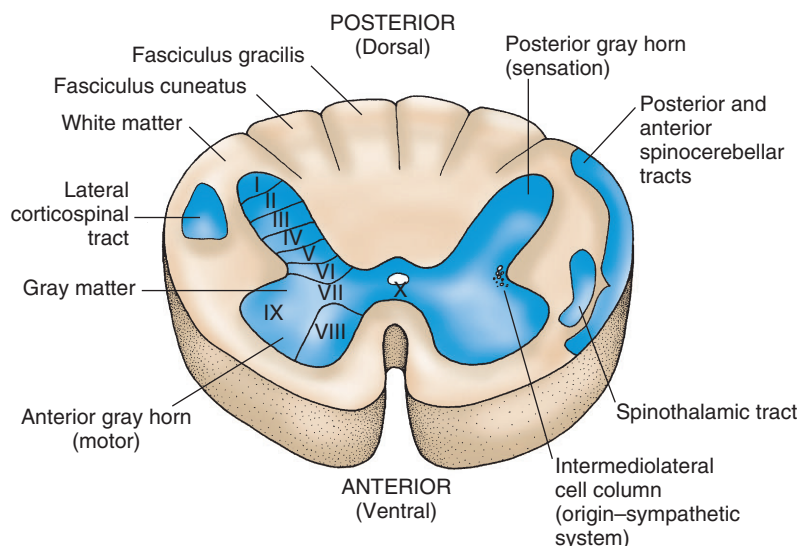


FIG. 43-4 A cross section of the spinal cord showing the common tracts.

matter in the spinal cord. These few fibers connect directly with lower motor neurons (LMNs). The cervical spine has a high concentration of fibers synapsing with interneurons, which possibly reflects the complexity of hand and finger movements.

The motor neurons of the other descending tracts and the basal ganglia used to be referred to as an *extrapyramidal system*. It was thought that pyramidal neurons caused voluntary muscle activity and that extrapyramidal neurons caused automatic or involuntary muscle action. However, all of the descending tracts and the basal ganglia are necessary for *mobility*. The term *extrapyramidal* is still often used clinically, meaning *abnormal spontaneous movement*.

Peripheral Nervous System: Structure and Function

The peripheral nervous system (PNS) is composed of the spinal nerves, cranial nerves, and autonomic nervous system.

There are 31 pairs of spinal nerves (8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 1 coccygeal) exiting from the spinal cord. Each of the nerves has a posterior and an anterior branch. The posterior branch carries sensory information (sensation) to the cord (*afferent pathway*). The anterior branch transmits motor impulses (mobility) to the muscles of the body (*efferent pathway*).

Each spinal nerve is responsible for the muscle innervation and sensory reception of a given area of the body. The cervical and thoracic spinal nerves are relatively close to their areas of responsibility, whereas the lumbar and sacral spinal nerves are some distance from theirs. Because the spinal cord ends between L1 and L2, the axons of the lumbar and sacral cord extend downward before exiting at the appropriate intervertebral foramen. The area controlled by each spinal nerve is roughly reflected in the dermatomes. **Dermatomes** represent sensory input from spinal nerves to specific areas of the skin (Fig. 43-5). For example, the patient with an injury to cervical spinal nerves C6 and C7 has sensory changes in the thumb,

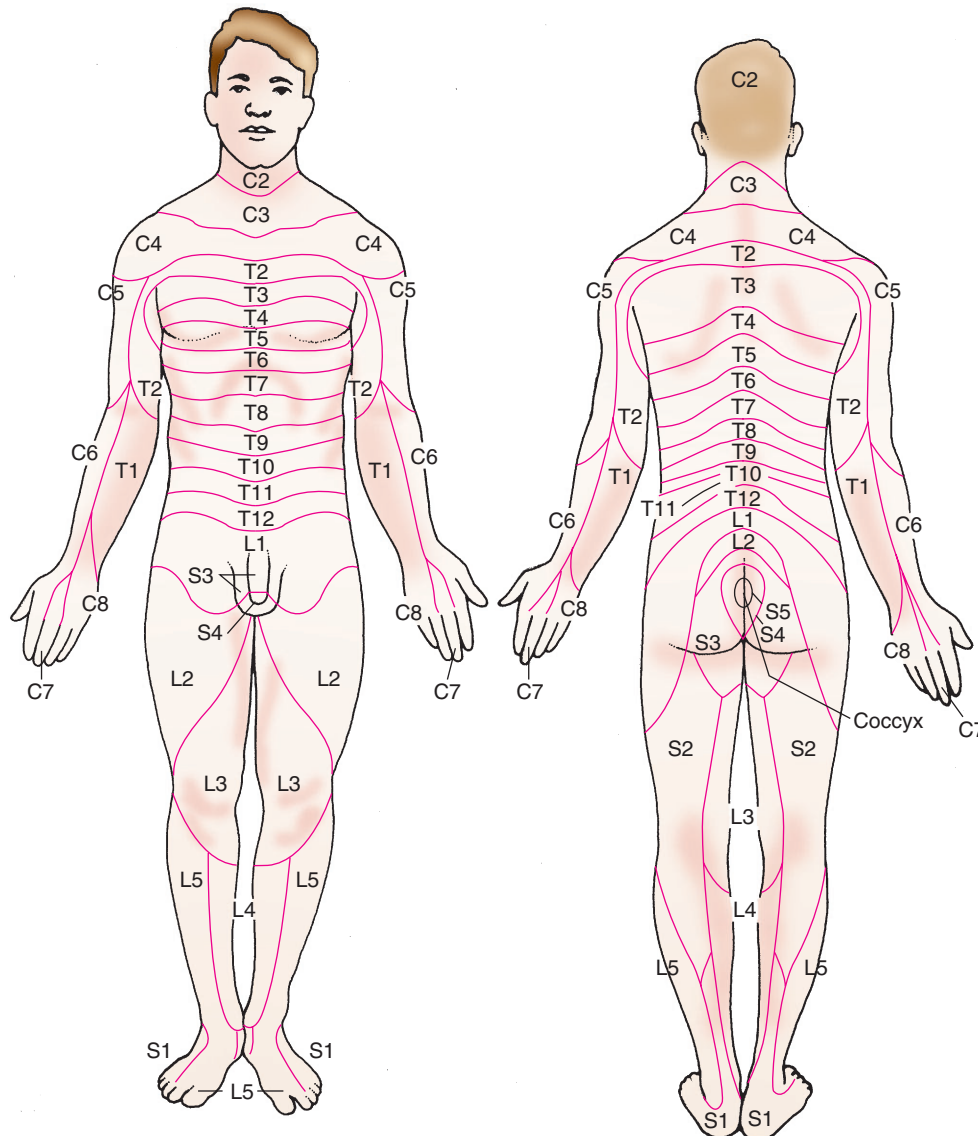


FIG. 43-5 Dermatomes (cutaneous innervation of spinal nerves).

index finger, middle finger, middle of the palm, and back of the hand.

Sensory receptors throughout the body monitor and transmit impulses of pain, temperature, touch, vibration, pressure, visceral sensation, and proprioception. Sensory receptors also monitor and transmit the sensations of the special senses—vision, taste, smell, and hearing.

The cell bodies of the anterior spinal nerves are located in the anterior gray matter (anterior horn) of each level in the spinal cord. The anterior motor neurons are also referred to as *lower motor neurons*. As each nerve axon leaves the spinal cord, it joins other spinal nerves to form **plexuses** (clusters of nerves). Plexuses continue as trunks, divisions, and cords and finally branch into individual peripheral nerves.

The **reflex arc** is a closed circuit of spinal and peripheral nerves and therefore requires no control by the brain (Fig. 43-6).

Reflexes consist of sensory input from:

- Skeletal muscles, tendons, skin, organs, and special senses
- Small cells in the spinal cord lying between the posterior and anterior gray matter (interneurons)
- Anterior motor neurons, along with the muscles they innervate

There are 12 *cranial nerves*. Their name, number, origin, type, and function are summarized in Table 43-3. Cranial nerve function is an important part of the nursing assessment of the patient with a neurologic problem. For example, cranial nerves II, III, IV, and VI are important for assessment of the patient with a stroke.

Autonomic Nervous System: Structure and Function

The **autonomic nervous system (ANS)** is composed of two parts: the sympathetic nervous system (SNS), or the “fight or flight system”; and the parasympathetic nervous system. ANS functions are not usually under conscious control but may be

altered in some people by using biofeedback and other methods.

The SNS cells originate in the gray matter of the spinal cord from T1 through L2 or L3. This part of the ANS is considered *thoracolumbar* because of its anatomic location. The SNS stimulates the functions of the body needed for “fight or flight” (e.g., heart and respiratory rate). It also inhibits those functions not needed in this situation.

The parasympathetic cells originate in the gray matter of the sacral area of the spinal cord (from S2 through S4) plus portions of cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X (*craniosacral*). The parasympathetic nervous system can slow body functions when needed.

Parasympathetic fibers to the organs have some sensory ability in addition to motor function. Sensations of irritation, stretching of an organ, or a decrease in tissue oxygen are transmitted to the thalamus through pathways not yet fully understood. Because pain from internal organs is often felt below the body wall innervated by the spinal nerve, it is presumed that there are connections between the viscera and body structure that relay pain sensations.

Neurologic Changes Associated with Aging

Neurologic changes associated with aging often affect mobility and sensation. *Motor changes* in late adulthood can cause slower movement and response time and decreased sensation (Chart 43-1). Any problems that affect the nerves, bones, muscles, or joints also affect motor and therefore ADL ability.

Sensory changes in older adults can also affect their daily activities. Pupils decrease in size, which restricts the amount of light entering the eye, and adapt more slowly. Older adults need increased lighting to see. Touch sensation decreases, which may lead to falls because the older person may not feel small objects or a step underfoot. Vibration sense may be lost in the ankles and feet. These changes can contribute to falls. (See the discussion on fall prevention in Chapter 3.) Hearing also decreases, especially for high-pitched sounds.

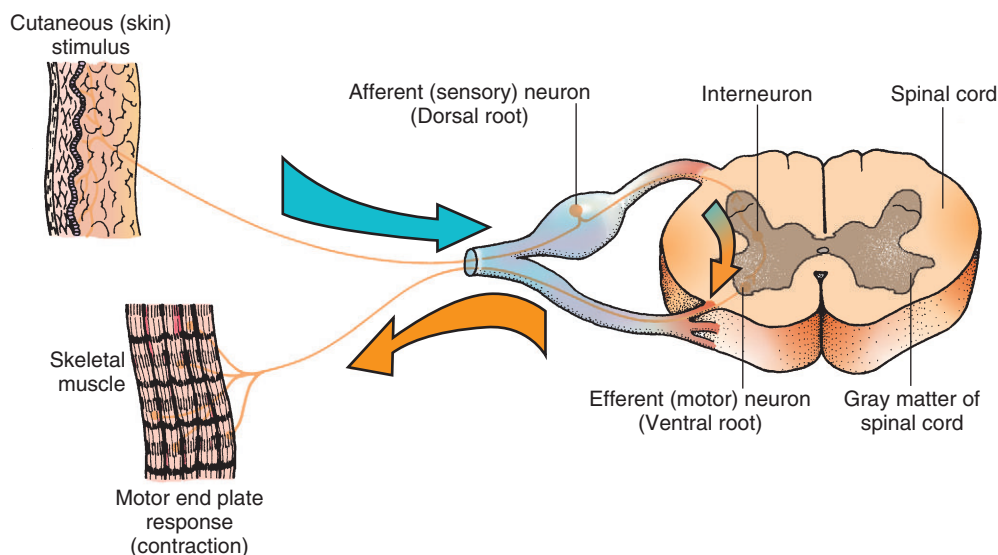


FIG. 43-6 An example of reflex activity. Stimulation of skin results in involuntary muscle contraction (reflex arc).

TABLE 43-3 ORIGINS, TYPES, AND FUNCTIONS OF THE CRANIAL NERVES

CRANIAL NERVE	ORIGIN	TYPE	FUNCTION
I: Olfactory	Olfactory bulb	Sensory	Smell
II: Optic	Midbrain	Sensory	Central and peripheral vision
III: Oculomotor	Midbrain	Motor to eye muscles	Eye movement via medial and lateral rectus and inferior oblique and superior rectus muscles; lid elevation via the levator muscle
		Parasympathetic-motor	Pupil constriction; ciliary muscles
IV: Trochlear	Lower midbrain	Motor	Eye movement via superior oblique muscles
V: Trigeminal	Pons	Sensory	Sensation from skin of face and scalp and mucous membranes of mouth and nose
		Motor	Muscles of mastication (chewing)
VI: Abducens	Inferior pons	Motor	Eye movement via lateral rectus muscles
VII: Facial	Inferior pons	Sensory	Pain and temperature from ear area; deep sensations from the face; taste from anterior two thirds of the tongue
		Motor	Muscles of the face and scalp
		Parasympathetic-motor	Lacrimal, submandibular, and sublingual salivary glands
VIII: Vestibulocochlear	Pons-medulla junction	Sensory	Hearing Equilibrium
IX: Glossopharyngeal	Medulla	Sensory	Pain and temperature from ear; taste and sensations from posterior one third of tongue and pharynx
		Motor	Skeletal muscles of the throat
		Parasympathetic-motor	Parotid glands
X: Vagus	Medulla	Sensory	Pain and temperature from ear; sensations from pharynx, larynx, thoracic and abdominal viscera
		Motor	Muscles of the soft palate, larynx, and pharynx
		Parasympathetic-motor	Thoracic and abdominal viscera; cells of secretory glands; cardiac and smooth muscle innervation to the level of the splenic flexure
XI: Accessory	Medulla (anterior gray horn of the cervical spine)	Motor	Skeletal muscles of the pharynx and larynx and sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles
XII: Hypoglossal	Medulla	Motor	Skeletal muscles of the tongue

CHART 43-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT***Changes in the Nervous System Related to Aging***

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGES	NURSING IMPLICATIONS	RATIONALES
Slower processing time	Provide sufficient time for the affected older adult to respond to questions and/or direction.	Allowing adequate time for processing helps to differentiate normal findings from neurologic deterioration.
Recent memory loss	Reinforce teaching by repetition and written teaching aids.	Greatest loss of brain weight is in the white matter of the frontal lobe. Intellect is not impaired, but the learning process is slowed. Repetition helps the patient learn new information and recall it when needed.
Decreased touch sensation	Remind the patient to look where his or her feet are placed when walking. Instruct the patient to wear shoes that provide good support when walking. If the patient is unable, change his or her position frequently (every hour) while he or she is in bed or the chair.	Decreased sensation may cause the patient to fall.
Change in perception of pain	Ask the patient to describe the nature and specific characteristics of pain. Monitor additional assessment variables to detect possible health problems.	Accurate and complete nursing assessment ensures that the interventions will be appropriate for the older adult (see Chapter 3).
Change in sleep patterns	Ascertain sleep patterns and preferences. Ask if sleep pattern interferes with ADLs. Adjust the patient's daily schedule to his or her sleep pattern and preference as much as possible (e.g., evening versus morning bath).	Most older adults require less sleep than do younger adults. However, frequent rest periods are needed.
Altered balance and/or decreased coordination	Instruct the patient to move slowly when changing positions. If needed, advise the patient to hold on to handrails when ambulating. Assess the need for an ambulatory aid, such as a cane.	The patient may fall if moving too quickly. Assistive and adaptive aids provide support and prevent falls.
Increased risk for infection	Monitor carefully for infection.	Older adults often have structural deterioration of microglia, the cells responsible for cell-mediated immune response in the central nervous system (CNS).

Cognitive functions of perceiving, registering, storing, and using information often change as a normal part of aging. Therefore it is important to differentiate between these expected findings and those of dementia, depression, and delirium (3Ds). Failure to correctly diagnosis pathologic cognitive problems may lead to a poor patient outcome.

Intellect does not decline as a result of aging. However, a person with certain health problems may have a decrease in cognitive level. *Cognitive decline is frequently caused by drug interactions or toxicity or by an inadequate oxygen supply to the brain.* Some older adults may need more time than a younger person to process questions, learn and process new information, solve problems, or complete analogies (Vance, 2009).

Subtle memory changes are typical for many older people. Long-term memory seems better than recall (recent) or immediate (registration) memory. Older adults may need more time to retrieve information. These changes may be partly due to the loss of cerebral neurons, which is associated with the aging process.

Circadian rhythm disorders may lead to wakefulness until later at night, with extended sleeping in the morning (a pattern opposite that of most health care facility routines). Many older adults require less sleep than do their younger counterparts.

Mental status may also decline as a result of infection. *Often this change in mental status is a key early sign of an infectious process in the older patient, especially urinary tract infection.*

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

During your introduction, note the patient's appearance and assess his or her speech, affect, and motor function. If he or she seems to have cognitive deficits or has trouble speaking or hearing, ask a family member or significant other to stay during the interview to help obtain an accurate history. Be sure that glasses, contact lenses, and hearing aids are available if the patient wears any of these aids.

Ask the patient about his or her medical history to determine its association with the current health problem. Inquire about the ability to perform ADLs. Knowing the level of daily activity helps establish a baseline for later comparison as the patient improves or worsens. Ask whether the patient is right-handed or left-handed. This information is important for several reasons:

- The patient may be somewhat stronger on the dominant side, which is expected.
- The effects of cerebral injury or disease are more pronounced if the dominant hemisphere is involved.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Ask about family medical history such as stroke or myocardial infarction (MI) (heart attack). Some diseases occur more often in certain groups of people and may be caused by a genetic influence or other reason. For example, it has been long established that Huntington disease is inherited. A number of other neurologic diseases have a genetic basis, such as neuromuscular disorders, migraine headaches, and epilepsy. These genetic risks are described with specific neurologic diseases found later in this unit.

Current Health Problems

Obtain information from the patient about current health problems as outlined in [Charts 43-2 and 43-3](#).

Physical Assessment

Perform a focused assessment based on the patient's current health problems. Compare each assessment with the patient's baseline, as well as between right and left sides and between upper and lower extremities. Most of the assessment can be performed with the patient sitting or lying down. *Two types of neurologic assessments may be performed—a complete assessment and a “rapid” assessment.* The method chosen depends on the information needed, the time available with the patient, and your clinical skill level. Advanced practice nurses (APNs) and other health care providers usually perform the complete assessment, although parts of it can be done by any nurse. It is important that you understand each component of the assessment and what the results might indicate. The complete assessment is described first.

Assessment of Mental Status

While collecting the history data, make observations about the patient's mental status, speech, and behavior as noted in [Chart 43-4](#). An organized head-to-toe physical assessment begins with the mental status.

CHART 43-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Establishing a Nursing Database: History

Demographic Data

- Age
- Gender

Past Medical History

- Patient's medical history
- Family's medical history
- Previous injuries or congenital problems
- Chronic diseases:
 - Hypertension
 - Diabetes mellitus
 - Lung disease
- Previous neurologic problems:
 - Headaches
 - Seizures
 - Head or spine trauma
 - Eye problems
 - Stroke

Current History

- Current symptoms:
 - Blurred vision
 - Headache
 - Speech or swallowing difficulty
 - Numbness, tingling
 - Weakness, clumsiness
 - Bowel or bladder difficulties
 - Nausea or vomiting
 - Personality changes
 - Seizures
 - Disorientation or other change in mental status

Allergies:

- Food
- Medications
- Environment

Pain tolerance:

- Medications taken for pain
- Behaviors to reduce pain
- Medications:
 - Prescribed
 - Illicit
 - Over-the-counter
- ADLs

Social History

- Usual recreational activities
- Level of physical activity each day
- Hobbies
- Alcohol consumption and use of recreational drugs
- Smoking, use of any tobacco products
- Sleep habits:
 - Changes in pattern, duration, or intensity
- Work history:
 - Exposure to toxic agents
- Ethnic and cultural background
- Handedness (right or left)
- Educational background

Level of Consciousness and Orientation. Determine level of consciousness (LOC) by observing the patient's responsiveness and mental status.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be aware that a change in LOC is the **first** indication that central neurologic function has declined! The patient who is described as **alert** is awake and responsive. A patient may be alert but not oriented to person, place, or time. Patients who are less than alert are labeled **lethargic**, **stuporous**, or **comatose**. A **lethargic** patient is drowsy or sleepy but is easily awakened. One who is arousable only with vigorous or painful stimulation is **stuporous**. The **comatose** patient is unconscious and cannot be aroused.

CHART 43-3 NEUROLOGIC ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Health Perception–Health Management Pattern

- How would you describe your general health?
- Has your health changed significantly over the past few weeks or months?
- Have you had to miss any work because of changes in your health?

Cognitive-Perceptual Pattern

- Have you noticed any changes in your vision? Hearing? Memory?
- Do you feel you are having any difficulty in making decisions? In learning?
- Are you experiencing any discomfort? Pain? Weakness?

Activity-Exercise Pattern

- Do you have enough energy for your activities?
 - What is your perceived ability for (code for level according to key below):
- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Feeding? | Level 0: Full self-care |
| Bathing? | Level I: Requires use of equipment or device |
| Toileting? | |
| Bed mobility? | Level II: Requires assistance or supervision of another person |
| Dressing? | |
| Grooming? | Level III: Requires assistance or supervision of another person |
| General mobility? | |
| Cooking? | and equipment or device |
| Home maintenance? | Level IV: Is dependent and does not participate |
| Shopping? | |

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

CHART 43-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessment of Mental Status

- Are the patient's answers appropriate?
- Are the patient's behavior and facial expression appropriate?
- Is the speech pattern of normal tone, rate, rhythm, and volume?
- Are the answers complete?
- Is the patient's appearance neat or untidy? Appropriate for age and weather conditions?
- Is the patient cooperative, euphoric, hostile, anxious, withdrawn, or guarded?
- Is the patient experiencing hallucinations or delusions?
- Are the patient's posture and hygiene appropriate for the situation?
- Is the patient drowsy?

To best identify the patient's level of cognitive function or state of consciousness, describe behavior as response to stimulation. If alert, ask him or her questions to determine orientation. Varying the sequence of questioning on repeated assessments prevents the patient from memorizing the answers. Responses that indicate orientation include:

- The patient's ability to relate the onset of symptoms
- The name of his or her physician/nurse practitioner/nurse
- The year and month
- His or her address
- The name of the referring physician or health care agency

Advanced age, time of day, drug therapy, and the need for sleep, glucose, or oxygen may affect these responses.

Memory and Attention. Memory is one of the most important parts of the neurologic assessment. If the patient cannot remember, most of the verbal assessment tests are not useful. *Loss of memory, especially recent memory, tends to be an early sign of neurologic problems.* Three types of memory can be tested: long-term (remote) memory, recall (recent) memory, and immediate memory.

Remote, or long-term, **memory** can be tested by asking patients about their birth date, schools attended, the city of birth, or anything from the past that can be verified. Nurses often ask the maiden name of the patient's mother, which is sometimes listed on the admission form and can be checked.

Recall (recent) **memory** can be tested during the history and checked on the medical record:

- The accuracy of the medical history
- Dates of clinic or physician appointments
- The time of admission
- Health care providers seen within the past few days
- Mode of transportation to the hospital or clinic

Immediate (new) **memory** is tested by giving the patient two or three unrelated words, such as "apple," "street," and "chair," and asking him or her to repeat the words to make sure they were heard. After about 5 minutes, while continuing with the examination, ask the patient to repeat the words. An alternative to this method is to give a three-step command and observe whether it is carried out correctly. For example, "Pick up the paper, fold it in half, and draw a square on it."

To assess **attention**, ask the patient to repeat a series of three numbers, such as 4, 7, and 3. The series is increased by one number with each successful repetition until seven or eight digits are achieved. If the patient has difficulty at any level (cannot repeat the series), repeat the numbers. If the patient cannot repeat, stop the procedure. Next, ask the patient to repeat the numbers backward, starting again with three digits and increasing by one each time. Normally, a person should be able to repeat five to eight digits forward and four to six backward. Education, occupation, interest, culture, anxiety, and depression affect mental status, and what is considered "normal" may not be so for a particular patient.

The serial-seven test to determine attention may also be used. The patient is asked to count backward from 100 by 7 (the examiner stops when the patient reaches 65 successfully). Depending on education and other factors, it may be better to ask the person to subtract by three or to add forward by five. Clinical judgment and assessment skills are used when deciding which of these tests to use.

Language and Higher Levels of Cognition. If desired, most *language* and *copying* skills can be assessed during the initial interview. The patient demonstrates understanding by following directions on admission (e.g., getting undressed). If he or she hesitates, indicating word searching, point to objects and ask the patient to name them, such as the door or bed.

The advanced practice nurse (APN) or speech-language pathologist (SLP) tests reading comprehension by writing a simple command and giving it to the patient (e.g., “close your eyes”). Writing can be tested by asking the patient to write a sentence. The clinician must remember that some patients cannot read or write or may speak a language different from that of the clinician. In this case, modify the examination accordingly. Copying ability is usually tested by having the patient copy something that has been drawn, such as a cross, circle, diamond, or square.

Higher intellectual functions are assessed by asking about favorite hobbies, current events, the names of the last few presidents. Abstract reasoning can be evaluated by asking the meaning of proverbs (e.g., “A stitch in time saves nine” or “A rolling stone gathers no moss”). *People from countries other than the United States or young adults may be unfamiliar with some of these abstract statements.* Consult a professional language interpreter to assist with language and speech assessment.

Begin to assess the patient’s judgment during the interview. Did he or she make rational decisions in dealing with his or her symptoms? Ask questions such as “What would you do if stopped for speeding?” and “What would you do if there was a fire in the wastepaper basket?” *Remember that testing of cognition (general knowledge, abstraction, and judgment) is influenced by culture.* For example, in some cultures (e.g., Nigerian, Chinese), men make all decisions or answer these questions for their wives or other female family members.

Assessment of Cranial Nerves

Cranial nerves are typically tested to establish a baseline from which to compare progress or deterioration. However, they are not routinely tested unless the patient has a suspected problem affecting one or more of the cranial nerves (see Table 43-3). The testing of cranial nerve III is usually a part of the rapid neurologic assessment described on p. 917. Adding the specific cranial nerves to be tested on the flow sheet of a patient with a problem affecting the cranial nerves helps ensure continued comparison and assessment.

Assessment of Sensory Function

The assessment of sensory function is done for patients with problems affecting the spinal cord or spinal nerves, such as trauma, intervertebral disk disease, Guillain Barré syndrome (GBS), tumor, infection, stenosis, or transverse myelitis. The sensory assessment includes pain, superficial and deep sensation, light touch, and proprioception. *Pain and light touch are the most commonly assessed.*

The acuity level of the patient determines how often the sensory assessment is done. For example, patients with acute spinal cord trauma or ascending GBS are assessed every hour until stable and then every 4 hours. As the condition improves, sensory assessment may be needed only once each shift. Findings are documented according to agency protocol. A special spinal cord assessment flow sheet may be used to document

sensory and/or motor findings for the patient with a spinal cord injury.

Pain and temperature sensations are transmitted by the same nerve endings. Therefore if one sensation is tested and found to be intact, it can safely be assumed that the other is intact. Testing temperature sensation can usually be accomplished using a cold reflex hammer and the warm touch of the hand for patients with known or suspected spinal problems.

Assess for *pain sensation* with any sharp or dull object, such as a cotton-tipped applicator or paper clip. Demonstrate what will be done while the patient’s eyes are open. Then, ask him or her to keep eyes closed and to indicate whether the touch is sharp or dull. The sharp and dull ends should be changed at random so he or she does not anticipate the next type of sensation. Not all areas need to be tested unless a spinal cord injury has occurred. If testing begins on the hands and feet, there is no need to test the other parts of the extremities because the tracts transmitting pain and temperature sensations are intact. Compare reactions on each side. A sensation reported as dull when the stimulus was actually sharp requires further testing. A patient with sensory loss as a result of diabetes mellitus or peripheral vascular disease may or may not be aware of the loss until tested. Some patients with chronic illness may report that they have had sensory losses for a long time.

Light touch discrimination is likely to be normal if pain and temperature sensations are intact. Touch discrimination and two-point discrimination may be performed as part of a complete neurologic examination by the physician or APN.

For testing **touch discrimination**, the patient closes his or her eyes. The practitioner touches the patient with a finger and asks that he or she point to the area touched. This procedure is repeated on each extremity at random rather than at sequential points. Next, the practitioner touches the patient on each side of the body on corresponding sites at the same time. The patient should be able to point to both sites.

The clinician then touches the patient in two places on the same extremity with two objects, such as cotton-tipped applicators. A person can normally identify two points fairly close together depending on the location of the stimuli. When an area is heavily innervated, the *two-point discrimination will feel closer*.

Abnormal sensory findings may have a peripheral nervous system (PNS) or a central nervous system (CNS) cause. The neuropathies of diabetes, malnutrition, and vascular problems have a PNS cause and generally involve the entire extremity or both extremities. Damage to a specific spinal nerve may not result in significant sensory loss because the spinal nerves overlap. Injury to several nearby spinal nerves is manifested as decreased or absent sensation in the dermatomes of those nerves.

CNS problems can occur within the spinal cord, the brainstem, the cerebellum, and the cerebral cortex. Sensory deficits from spinal cord damage vary with the location of the damage. Involvement of only the posterior column leads to lost **proprioception** (position sense) below the level of the damage on the same side or on both sides (if both the right and left posterior columns are involved). A lesion involving only the right spinothalamic tract results in a loss of pain and temperature sensation below the lesion on the *left* side. Problems in the brainstem, thalamus, and cortex generally result



FIG. 43-7 Testing for strength against resistance.

in loss of sensation on the **contralateral** (opposite) side of the body. Cerebellar lesions affect sensation on the *same* side of the body.

Assessment of Motor Function

Throughout the physical assessment, observe the patient for involuntary tremors or movements. Describe these movements as accurately as possible, such as “pill-rolling with the thumbs and fingers at rest” or “intention tremors of both hands” (tremors that occur when the patient tries to do something). These abnormalities can indicate certain diseases, such as multiple sclerosis, or the effects of selected psychotropic drugs.

Measure the patient’s hand *strength* by asking him or her to grasp and squeeze two fingers of each of your hands. Then compare the grasps for equality of strength. As another means of evaluating strength, try to withdraw the fingers from the patient’s grasp and compare the ease or difficulty. He or she should release the grasps on command—another assessment of consciousness and the ability to follow commands.

To test the patient’s strength against resistance, ask him or her to resist your bending or straightening of the arm, hand, leg, or foot being tested (Fig. 43-7). A five-point rating scale is commonly used (see Chapter 52, Table 52-2). Test results are sometimes recorded as 5/5, 3/5, and so forth, indicating the criteria that were used and the status of the patient at that testing. Always evaluate and compare strength on each side. Later testing results are compared with previous results to indicate any change.

Cerebral motor or *brainstem* integrity may also be assessed. Ask the patient to close his or her eyes and hold the arms perpendicular to the body with the palms up for 15 to 30 seconds. If there is a cerebral or brainstem reason for muscle weakness, the arm on the weak side will start to fall, or “drift,” with the palm pronating (turning inward). This is called a **pronator drift**. The same can be done for the lower extremities, with the patient lying on his or her stomach with the legs bent upward at the knees. However, it is easier for most patients to sit on the side of the bed and extend the legs outward.

Assessment of Cerebellar Function

Most of the assessment of cerebellar function can be performed with the patient sitting on the side of the bed or examining table. Fine *coordination* of muscle activity is tested.

If cerebellar problems are suspected or diagnosed, ask the patient to perform these tasks with his or her eyes closed:

- Run the heel of one foot down the shin of the other leg, and repeat with the other leg (the patient should be able to do this smoothly and keep the heel on the shin).
- Place the hands palm-up and then palm-down on each thigh, repeating as fast as possible (this can normally be done rapidly).
- With arms out at the side, touch the finger to the nose two or three times, with eyes open and then with eyes closed (this can be done with alternating arms or with each arm individually).

For the last part of the cerebellar assessment, the *ambulatory* patient stands for testing of *gait and equilibrium*. Gait and equilibrium are usually tested at the end or beginning of the entire neurologic assessment. Ask the patient to walk across the room, turn, and return. Observe for uneven steps, difficulty walking, and so forth. To evaluate balance, ask him or her to stand on one foot and then on the other. Tiptoe walking and heel-to-toe walking can also demonstrate gait problems. For patients with sciatic nerve involvement, pain may worsen when they walk on their toes or heels.

To test equilibrium, ask the patient to stand with arms at the sides, feet and knees close together, and eyes open. Check for swaying, and then ask him or her to close his or her eyes and maintain position. The examiner should be close enough to prevent falling if the patient cannot stay erect. If he or she sways with the eyes closed but not when the eyes are open (the **Romberg sign**), the problem is probably **proprioceptive** (awareness of body position). If the patient sways with the eyes both open and closed, the neurologic disturbance is probably *cerebellar* in origin.

If the patient cannot perform any of these activities smoothly, the problem is manifested on the same side as the cerebellar lesion. If both lobes of the cerebellum are involved, the incoordination affects both sides of the body (bilateral).

Assessment of Reflex Activity

The health care provider, including the APN, may assess deep tendon reflexes (DTRs) and superficial (cutaneous) reflexes. The **deep tendon reflexes** of the biceps, triceps, brachioradialis, and quadriceps muscles and of the Achilles tendon can be tested as part of the routine neurologic assessment. Striking the tendon with the reflex hammer should cause contraction of the muscle (Fig. 43-8). The appropriate muscle contraction indicates an intact reflex arc. The tendon is tapped quickly but not with too much force. If the patient is tensing the muscle, the reflexes will not respond. Having the patient interlock his or her hands and pull outward will help decrease muscle tensing so the reflex can be tested.

The **cutaneous (superficial) reflexes** usually tested are the plantar reflexes and sometimes the abdominal reflexes. The plantar reflex is tested with a pointed (but not sharp) object, such as the handle end of the reflex hammer or the rounded end of bandage scissors. The normal response is plantar flexion of all toes. Dorsiflexion of the great toe and fanning of the other toes (**Babinski’s sign**) is abnormal in anyone older than 2 years and represents the presence of central nervous system (CNS) disease. The term “positive Babinski’s sign” (abnormal response) and “negative Babinski’s sign” (normal response) are clinically used terms but are not correct. **Babinski’s sign** is a pathologic, or

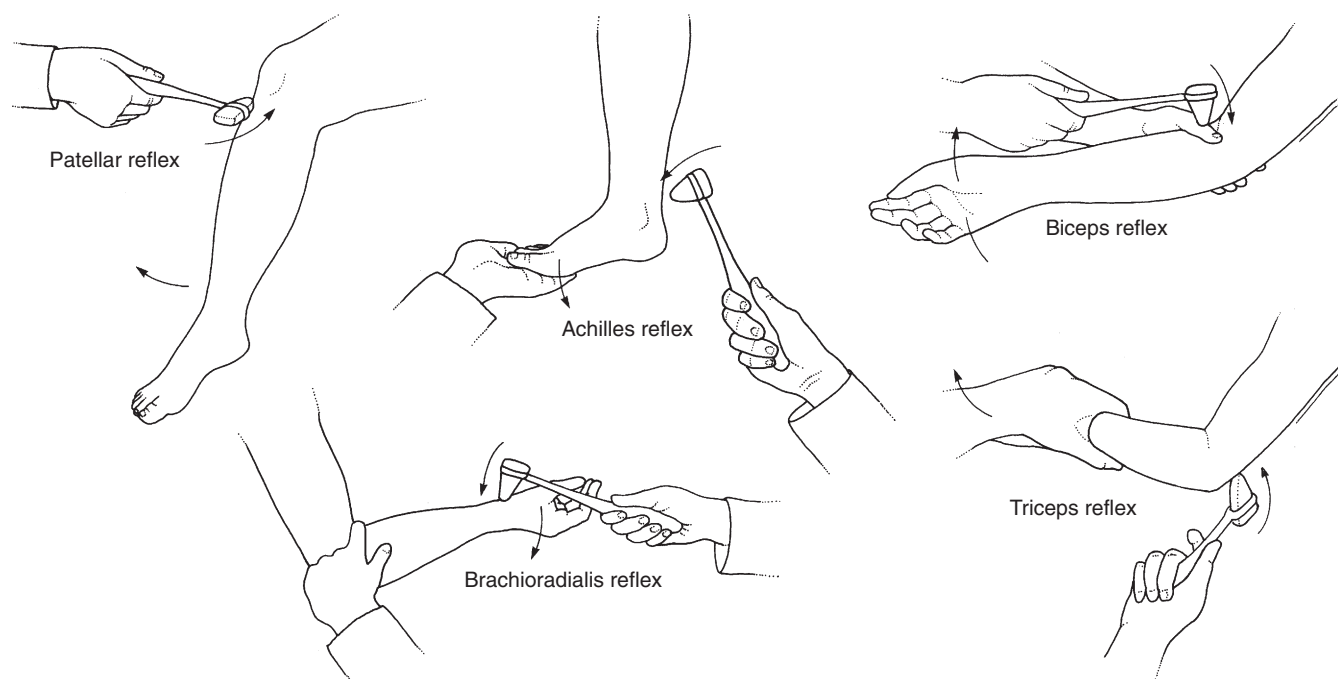


FIG. 43-8 Procedures for testing deep tendon reflexes.

abnormal, reflex. Health care providers may also use the terms “upgoing” or “downgoing” to refer to the toes of the stimulated foot. “Upgoing” toes is an abnormal response that indicates the presence of pathology in the CNS. Babinski’s sign can occur with drug and alcohol intoxication, after a seizure, or in patients with multiple sclerosis or liver disease.

To test the abdominal reflex, stroke the patient’s abdomen in all four quadrants diagonally toward the umbilicus. The umbilicus should deviate toward the stimulus, but obesity may mask the reflex. The abdominal reflex can be absent in both upper and lower motor neuron disease.

Hyperactive reflexes indicate possible upper motor neuron disease, tetanus, or hypocalcemia. *Hypoactive* reflexes may result from lower motor neuron disease (damage to the spinal cord), disease of the neuromuscular junction, muscle disease, or health problems such as diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, or hypokalemia.

Asymmetry of reflexes is an important finding because it probably indicates a disease process. The results of reflex testing are recorded by the use of a stick figure and a scale of 0 to 4 (Fig. 43-9). A score of 2 is considered normal, although scores of 1 (hypoactive) or 3 (stronger than normal) may be normal for a particular patient. **Clonus** (also called *myoclonus*) is the sudden, brief, jerking contraction of a muscle or muscle group often seen in seizures.

Rapid Neurologic Assessment

A rapid neurologic assessment, or “neuro check,” is completed when the patient is admitted to a health care facility on an emergent basis. It is also part of ongoing patient assessment and performed in the event of a sudden change in neurologic status. The typical flow sheet contains data related to level of consciousness, orientation, movement of arms and

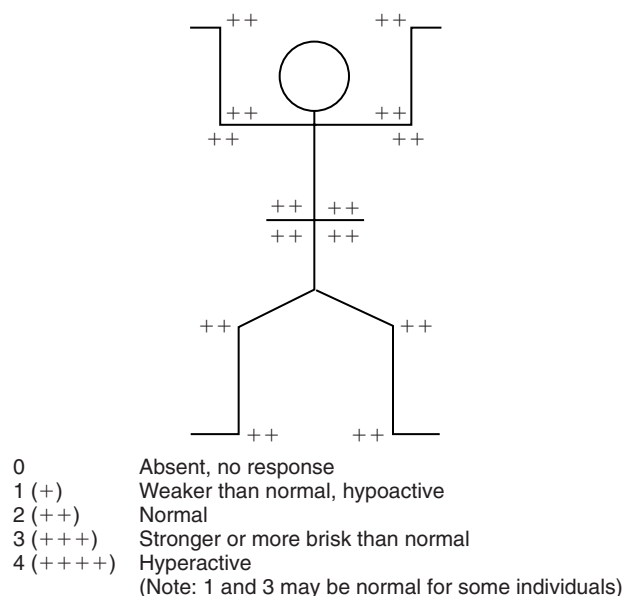


FIG. 43-9 A stick figure and scale for recording reflex activity.

legs, and pupil size and reaction to light. *Be sure to document all aspects of the rapid neurologic assessment.*

As part of the flow sheet or on a separate form, the **Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS)** (Fig. 43-10) is used in most health care agencies to help describe the patient’s level of consciousness (LOC). This tool has been shown to be very reliable for most patients. Some agencies use the GCS along with other assessment findings for a more comprehensive picture of the patient’s condition.

GLASGOW COMA SCALE*	
Eye Opening	
Spontaneous	4
To sound	3
To pain	2
Never	1
Motor Response	
Obeys commands	6
Localizes pain	5
Normal flexion (withdrawal)	4
Abnormal flexion	3
Extension	2
None	1
Verbal Response	
Oriented	5
Confused conversation	4
Inappropriate words	3
Incomprehensible sounds	2
None	1

* The highest possible score is 15

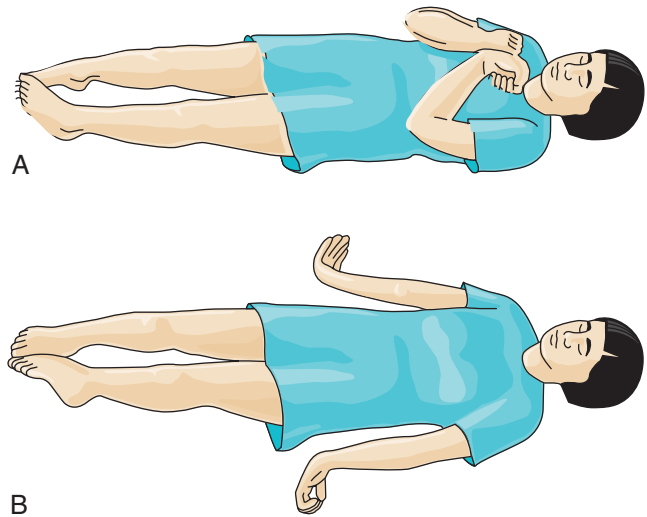
FIG. 43-10 The Glasgow Coma Scale.

The GCS establishes baseline data in each of these areas: eye opening, motor response, and verbal response. The patient is assessed and assigned a numeric score for each of these areas. A score of 15 represents normal neurologic functioning. A score of 7 represents a comatose state. Thus the lower the score, the lower the patient's LOC. For patients who are intubated and cannot talk, record their score with a "t" after the number. The best possible score for this patient would be 11t.

Use the most appropriate stimulus for getting a response. If the patient is not awake and responding to commands, it may be necessary to use painful stimuli to obtain the best response. The patient's response to central pain (brain response) is assessed first. On the basis of this response, peripheral pain may then be assessed. Failure to apply painful stimuli appropriately may lead to an incorrect conclusion about the patient's neurologic status.

To apply vigorous stimuli, start with the least noxious irritation or pressure and proceed to more painful stimulation if the patient does not respond. Begin each phase of the assessment by speaking in a normal voice. If no response is obtained, use a loud voice. If the patient does not respond, gently shake him or her. The shaking should be similar to that used in attempting to wake up a child. If that is unsuccessful, apply painful stimuli using one of these methods:

- Supraorbital (above eyes) pressure
- Trapezius muscle squeeze
- Mandibular (jaw) pressure
- Sternal (breastbone) rub

FIG. 43-11 Posturing. **A**, Decorticate posturing. **B**, Decerebrate posturing.

First, apply supraorbital pressure by placing a thumb under the orbital rim in the middle of the eyebrow and pushing upward. *Do not use this technique if the patient has orbital or facial fractures.*

A second technique to elicit pain is to pinch or squeeze the trapezius muscle located at the angle of the shoulder and neck muscle. If the patient remains unresponsive, apply pressure to the jaw using your index and middle fingers. If the patient does not respond, make a fist and rub the knuckles of your hand against the sternum in a twisting motion. The tissue in this area is tender, and bruising is not unusual. Therefore do not use this technique for older adults or for patients who bruise easily (e.g., those on anticoagulant therapy).

The patient may respond to painful stimuli in several ways. Although the initial response to pain may be abnormal flexion or extension, continued application of pain for no more than 20 to 30 seconds may demonstrate that he or she can localize or withdraw. If the patient does not respond after 20 to 30 seconds, stop applying the painful stimulus.

In addition to using the GCS, observe the patient for other signs of altered mental status. These changes include reports of headache; restlessness, irritability, or being unusually quiet; slurred speech; and a change in the level of orientation.

Decortication is abnormal posturing seen in the patient with lesions that interrupt the corticospinal pathways (Fig. 43-11, A). The patient's arms, wrists, and fingers are flexed with internal rotation and plantar flexion of the legs. **Decerebration** is abnormal posturing and rigidity characterized by extension of the arms and legs, pronation of the arms, plantar flexion, and opisthotonos (body spasm in which body is

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Decerebrate or decorticate posturing, as well as pinpoint or dilated and nonreactive pupils, is a late mental deterioration sign. Notify the health care provider immediately of any change in mental status to possibly prevent further decline!

bowed forward) (Fig. 43-11, *B*). Decerebration is usually associated with dysfunction in the brainstem area.

Assess the patient's pupils as part of ongoing "neuro checks." Pupil constriction is a function of cranial nerve III, the oculomotor nerve. Pupils should be **equal** in size, **round** and **regular** in shape, and react to **light** and **accommodation** (**PERRLA**). Estimate the size of both pupils using a millimeter ruler. Patients who have had eye surgery for cataracts or glaucoma often have irregularly shaped pupils. Those using eyedrops for either cataracts or glaucoma may have unequal pupils if only one eye is being treated, and the pupillary response may be altered.

To test for pupil constriction, ask the patient to close his or her eyes and dim the room lights. Bring a penlight in from the side of the patient's head, and shine the light in the eye being tested as soon as the patient opens his or her eyes. The pupil being tested should constrict (**direct response**). The other pupil should also constrict slightly (**consensual response**). To test accommodation, relight the room and ask the patient to focus on a distant object and then immediately look at an object 4 to 5 inches from the nose. The eyes should converge, and the pupils should constrict.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

During a client's neurologic assessment, the nurse finds that he is arousable only if his trapezius muscle is pinched. How will the nurse document this client's level of consciousness?

- A. "Stuporous"
- B. "Lethargic"
- C. "Comatose"
- D. "Drowsy"

Psychosocial Assessment

Patients vary in their responses to a suspected or actual health problem, often depending on whether it is acute or chronic. Response is also influenced by the *mobility*, *sensory*, and/or *cognitive* impairments that temporarily or permanently result from neurologic disease or injury. For example, patients who have a mild stroke and no lasting neurologic deficits are more likely to be less depressed than patients who cannot walk as a result of spinal cord injury.

Age may also be a factor in how a patient accepts the illness. For instance, a young adult who has a motorcycle accident causing a traumatic brain injury (TBI) may react differently than an older adult who has a spinal injury. In some cases, the patient's emotional responses result from the health problem itself, especially for TBI patients.

Men may feel differently about their illness than women. Male patients who have had strokes are depressed more often than women who have had strokes. Discussions of these response differences can be found in the following chapters on specific neurologic health problems.

Regardless of what the health problem is, do not assume that everyone reacts the same way to their illness or injury. Patients experience the grieving process and may fluctuate between denial, anger, and depression. Encourage patients to express their feelings. Refer them to the appropriate support services if needed. Assess support systems, including family members and friends, if available. Document your assessment and interventions.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

For patients with a neurologic problem resulting from a systemic infection, blood cultures are necessary to identify the pathogen. Although the cause of infection must be determined for any patient, this is especially true for those with existing CNS disease. The blood-brain barrier is often not intact in neurologic disease, and the patient is more likely to get an infection of the nervous system, such as meningitis or encephalitis.

Imaging Assessment

Plain X-Rays. Plain *x-rays* of the skull and spine are used to determine bony fractures, curvatures, bone erosion, bone dislocation, and possible calcification of soft tissue, which can damage the nervous system. Several views are taken—anteroposterior, lateral, oblique, and, when necessary, special views of the facial bones. *In head trauma and multiple injuries, one of the first priorities is to rule out cervical spine fracture.*

Explain that the x-ray procedure for the skull and spine is similar to that for a chest x-ray. The patient must remain still during the procedure. Remind him or her that the exposure to radiation is minimal. If the patient is in traction and a portable x-ray unit is not available, the nurse may need to accompany him or her to assist with positioning. Any patient who cannot walk from a wheelchair to the x-ray table should be transferred to the radiology department on a stretcher. The patient is positioned for each of the desired views and is asked to not move just before each x-ray. Follow-up care is not required.

Cerebral Angiography. **Cerebral angiography (arteriography)** is done to visualize the cerebral circulation to detect blockages in the arteries or veins in the brain, head, or neck. It is not done as often today because of more recent advances in technology. A contrast medium is injected into an artery (usually the femoral) to identify aneurysms, traumatic injuries, strictures/occlusions, tumors, blood vessel displacement from edema, and arteriovenous (AV) malformations. **Chart 43-5** lists the precautions that must be taken for patients having any test using an iodine-based contrast agent. **Table 43-4** describes patient preparation and follow-up nursing care for cerebral angiography and other imaging tests.

The patient is placed on an examining table and made as comfortable as possible. At this time, dentures and hearing aids must be removed. He or she is then connected to cardiac monitoring throughout the procedure. Sedation is usually not used, although the patient may be given medication for relaxation.

The interventional radiologist or other specially trained physician numbs an area at the groin and inserts a catheter into the femoral artery. Under fluoroscopic guidance, the catheter is advanced into a carotid or vertebral artery. Then the physician injects iodinated contrast material into each vessel while recording images from different angles over the head and neck. After all the vessels have been imaged, the radiologist reviews all the images and consults with the referring physician to decide whether the patient could benefit from any therapeutic radiologic procedure to treat the problem. An arterial closure device is typically used to seal the artery and prevent bleeding.

The x-ray images are stored on a computer. With older equipment, a two-dimension or picture of the vessels is

TABLE 43-4 PREPARATION AND FOLLOW-UP FOR SELECTED DIAGNOSTIC PROCEDURES

TEST	PATIENT CARE PREPARATION	PATIENT CARE FOLLOW-UP
Cerebral angiography	Determine whether the patient is allergic to iodinated contrast agents, and follow the guideline in Chart 43-5. Ensure that the patient is NPO 4 to 6 hours before the test. Reinforce these important points: - Your head is immobilized during the procedure. - Do not move during the procedure. - You will feel a warm or hot sensation when the dye is injected—this is normal. - You will be able to talk to the physician—let him or her know if you are in pain or have any concerns. Assess and document neurologic signs, vital signs, and neurovascular checks.	Follow agency policy regarding care of the injection site, which may include: - Check dressing for bleeding and swelling around site. - Apply ice pack to site. - Keep the extremity straight and immobilized. - Maintain pressure dressing for 2 hours. Check the extremity for adequate circulation to include skin color and temperature, pulses distal to the injection site, and capillary refill. If bleeding is present, maintain manual pressure on the site and notify the physician immediately. Assess vital signs and “neuro” signs per orders. Increase oral or IV fluid intake unless contraindicated. Document assessments and interventions. Monitor the patient for a delayed allergic response if contrast medium was used.
Computed tomography (CT) 3-Dimensional CT scan CT angiography Xenon CT Intrathecal contrast-enhanced CT	Follow the guidelines listed in Chart 43-5 if a contrast agent is to be given. Determine whether the patient is claustrophobic and whether a closed CT scan is used. Inform the radiology staff or physician to determine if pre-procedure sedation is necessary. Instruct the patient to remove hairpins, hairpieces, or wigs. Inform the patient that the scanner may make noise or knocking sounds. Reassure the patient that he or she will be able to communicate with the technician throughout the procedure. If contrast is used, the patient may feel a warm or cool sensation after the dye is injected. Occasionally the patient may report a slight metallic taste. A lumbar puncture is performed before an intrathecal contrast-enhanced CT.	The radioisotope is eliminated in the urine; no special precautions required. Encourage the patient to increase fluid intake unless contraindicated.
Positron emission tomography (PET)	Follow preparation as listed for CT. Instruct the patient to withhold caffeine, alcohol, and tobacco for 24 hours before the test. Ensure that the patient has been NPO status for 4 to 12 hours before the procedure (if the patient is diabetic, no insulin is given before the test). Do not give any glucose solutions and any other drugs that alter glucose metabolism. Insert two IV lines.	The patient can return to his or her previous activity level.
Single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)	Patient preparation is similar to that for PET/CT. Determine whether the patient has recently had other nuclear medicine screenings, which may leave traces of the radiopharmaceutical agent. Follow the guidelines listed in Chart 43-5 regarding use of a contrast agent.	No special postprocedure or follow-up care is required.
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) Magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS)	Follow the information for CT scan. No metal objects may enter the MRI room. Ask the patient about any metal implants including any type of pacemaker device, implantable pumps, or stimulating devices. Instruct the patient to remove all metal objects (jewelry, earrings, body piercings, hairpins, watches, rings, pens). Check with the radiologist regarding tattoos. Do not enter the MRI room unless you have checked with the radiology technician and are sure that neither you nor the patient has any metal device. Ensure all equipment and supplies are free of metal.	Obtain vital signs and complete neurologic checks. Follow agency policy regarding bedrest and remaining flat. Encourage the patient to increase fluid intake unless contraindicated. Monitor for complications, especially increased intracranial pressure (severe headache, nausea, vomiting, photophobia, change in level of consciousness). Observe the needle insertion site for leakage. Notify the physician if it occurs. Provide drug for headache. Notify the physician if drug does not relieve pain.
Lumbar puncture	Explain the procedure, noting that some discomfort may be felt when the local anesthetic is injected or that pain may occur in the leg(s) when the spinal needle is inserted. Place the patient in the fetal position, and remind him or her to remain still. If needed, keep the patient from moving.	

CHART 43-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Precautions for the Injection of Iodine-Based Contrast Agent for Diagnostic Testing**

Special precautions are taken for patients who will receive a contrast agent as part of their diagnostic test. These measures include:

- Following agency guidelines regarding informed consent
- Determining whether the patient has any food or fluid restrictions before the test
- Asking the patient about allergies to contrast agents, shellfish, or iodine
- Determining risk factors for contrast-induced nephropathy (renal damage):
 - Pre-existing renal disease
 - Diabetic nephropathy
 - Heart failure
 - Dehydration

Assess for drugs that interfere with renal perfusion, such as metformin. Interventions include:

- Notifying the health care provider if the patient has reported a risk factor
- Checking the patient's creatinine level (Patients with a level greater than 1.5 mg/dL are more at risk for contrast-induced nephropathy.) Notifying the patient's health care provider of results
- Documenting the date, time, and name of the physician or nurse practitioner notified of the potential allergy and what actions he or she prescribed, if any

produced. Most radiographic systems now come with software to create three-dimensional images of the blood vessels in the head and/or neck. These systems can also display a “subtracted image” made from two images—one just before the contrast was injected and one with the contrast in the artery. The risks of the procedure are contrast reaction (including hives and flushing), thrombosis (clotting), and bleeding from the entry site. Patients with known contrast sensitivity are pre-treated with steroids.

Computed Tomography. Computed tomography (CT) scanning is an accurate, quick, easy, noninvasive, painless, and least expensive method of diagnosing neurologic problems (see [Chart 43-5](#) and [Table 43-4](#)). With the aid of a computer, pictures are taken at many horizontal levels, or slices, of the brain or spinal cord. The cross-sectional slices build up three-dimensional pictures of the brain or spinal cord. A contrast medium may be used to enhance the image. CT scans distinguish bone, soft tissue (e.g., the brain, vascular system, and ventricular system), and fluids such as cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) or blood. Tumors, infarctions, hemorrhage, hydrocephalus, and bone malformations can also be identified. A CT scan may be performed after a myelogram. (See [Chapter 52](#) for a brief discussion of this test.)

The patient is placed on a movable table in a head-holding device. He or she must remain completely still during the test, which may be difficult. The table is positioned in the machine—a large, donut-shaped structure. Depending on the scan, the patient may be completely enclosed or in a more open situation. A noncontrast series of pictures are taken first. Then, if needed, the patient is withdrawn from the scanner and given an injection of the iodinated contrast medium. The scan is then repeated. Each set of head scans takes less than 5 minutes in newer scanners. Spinal studies

take about 10 minutes per body section (cervical, thoracic, lumbar) and are less likely to require contrast injection.

Most patients with new neurologic symptoms have both a pre-contrast and post-contrast study of the head. Contrast-enhanced CT is especially useful in locating and identifying tumor types and abscesses. For situations in which bleeding is the only concern (e.g., in trauma patients), contrast scans are not usually required.

After a standard CT scan, imaging software digitally removes images of soft tissue so that only images of bone remain. Through the use of this technology, bone deformities, trauma, and birth defects are more easily identified.

CT angiography involves administering contrast dye IV before the CT scan. It is used to identify blockages or narrowing of blood vessels, aneurysms, and other blood vessel abnormalities.

Xenon computed tomography is performed to evaluate blood flow to brain tissue. The patient breathes xenon, a colorless, odorless gas, while undergoing a standard CT scan.

An intrathecal contrast-enhanced CT scan is performed to diagnose disorders of the spine and spinal nerve roots. A lumbar puncture is performed so that a small amount of spinal fluid can be removed and mixed with contrast dye and injected. The patient is positioned to allow for the contrast medium to move around the spinal cord and nerve roots as needed. The patient may have a headache after the procedure. Follow facility policy regarding patient positioning after the procedure.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) produces images that are better than the CT scan. It does not use ionizing radiation but, instead, relies on magnetic fields. Multiple sets of images are taken that are used to determine normal and abnormal anatomy. Images may be enhanced with the use of gadolinium, a non-iodine-based contrast medium. MRIs of the spine have largely replaced CT scans and myelography for evaluation. Some facilities have a *functional MRI (fMRI)* machine that can assess blood flow to the brain rather than merely show its anatomical structure.

In addition to the traditional MRI, a *magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)*, *magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS)* or *diffusion imaging (DI)* may be requested. MRA is used to evaluate blood flow and blood vessel abnormalities such as an arterial blockage, intracranial aneurysms, and AV malformations. MRS is used to detect abnormalities in the brain's biochemical processes, such as that which occurs in epilepsy, Alzheimer's disease, and brain attack (stroke). DI uses MRI techniques to evaluate ischemia in the brain to determine the location and severity of a stroke.

Newer, open-sided units (“open MRI”) now produce adequate images for those patients who do not want standard MRI scanners. MRI has been contraindicated for patients with cardiac pacemakers, other implanted pumps or devices, and ion-containing metal aneurysm clips. However, extensive trials are testing ways to safely scan some patients with pacemakers. Other implanted devices, such as vascular stents, intravascular catheter (IVC) filters, and metal vascular embolic devices, may be scanned immediately or after a certain period of time, depending on manufacturers' recommendations. MRI may also be contraindicated in patients who are confused or agitated, have unstable vital signs, are on continuous life support, or have older tattoos (which contain

lead). New physiologic monitoring systems made specifically for the scanner allow some patients who are unstable to be scanned. A comprehensive online list of medical devices tested for MRI safety and compatibility can be found at www.mrisafety.com. Medical personnel must remove any medical devices they are carrying or wearing and ensure that only approved devices are allowed in the MRI room (see Table 43-4).

Positron Emission Tomography. Positron emission tomography (PET) is a diagnostic tool that is not available in all medical centers (see Table 43-4). Its benefit over a CT scan or MRI is that it provides information about the *function* of the brain, specifically glucose and oxygen metabolism and cerebral blood flow. Current CT scanners provide information about the *structure* of the central nervous system (CNS). The newest PET machines are combination CT-PET scanners that fuse images together to produce better information about the type and location of brain dysfunction.

The physician or nuclear medicine technologist injects the patient with IV deoxyglucose, which is tagged to an isotope. The isotope emits activity in the form of positrons, which are scanned and converted into a color image by computer. The more active a given part of the brain, the greater the glucose uptake. This test is used to evaluate drug metabolism and detect areas of metabolic alteration that occur in dementia, epilepsy, psychiatric and degenerative disorders, neoplasms, and Alzheimer's disease. The level of radiation is equivalent to that of five or six x-rays but much less than exposure during CT.

Teach the patient that he or she will be NPO the night before morning testing and 4 hours before afternoon testing. Patients with diabetes have their test in the morning before taking their antidiabetic drugs. During this 2- to 3-hour procedure, the patient may be blindfolded and have earplugs inserted for all or part of the test. He or she is asked to perform certain mental functions to activate different areas of the brain. Older adults and patients with mental health/behavioral health problems may be too anxious to have a PET scan.

Single-Photon Emission Computed Tomography. The limitation of PET may be overcome through the use of **single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)**. This test uses a radiopharmaceutical agent that enables radioisotopes to cross the blood-brain barrier. The agent is administered by IV injection. Gamma-emitting radionuclides have longer half-lives, therefore eliminating the need for a cyclotron near the scanner. Although SPECT is less expensive than PET, the resolution of the images is limited. SPECT is particularly useful in studying cerebral blood flow, amnesia, neoplasms, head trauma, persistent vegetative state, or brain death. The test is contraindicated in women who are breastfeeding (see Table 43-4).

The patient is injected with the material about 1 hour before the actual scan by the radiologist, certified nuclear medicine technologist, or specially trained RN. The patient is positioned on an x-ray table in a quiet dark room for the actual scans. Several gamma cameras scan his or her head. When completed, the images are downloaded to a computer.

Magnetoencephalography. **Magnetoencephalography (MEG)** is a noninvasive imaging technique used to measure the magnetic fields produced by electrical activity in the brain

via extremely sensitive devices such as superconducting quantum interference devices (SQUIDS). MEG is somewhat similar to electroencephalography (EEG). The advantage is greater accuracy because of the minimal distortion of the signal. This allows for more usable and reliable localization of brain function. The brain can be observed “in action” rather than just viewing a still MRI image. These machines are not widely available because of their extremely high cost.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client with possible Alzheimer's disease is scheduled to have a positron emission tomography (PET) scan. The daughter asks the nurse how this test is different from a CT scan. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. “The PET scan is a newer test that can see the brain more clearly.”
- B. “The PET scan provides information about brain function rather than structure.”
- C. “The CT scan makes a lot of noise and the PET scan is quieter.”
- D. “The CT scan requires a contrast medium to be injected and the PET scan does not.”

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Electromyography. Electromyography (EMG) is used to identify nerve and muscle disorders as well as spinal cord disease. (See Chapter 46 for a description of patient preparation, procedure, and follow-up care.) Electromyography and electroneurography or nerve conduction velocity studies (NCVs) are usually used together and are referred to as *electromyoneurography*.

Electroencephalography. **Electroencephalography (EEG)** records the electrical activity of the cerebral hemispheres (Chart 43-6). Each graphic recording represents the voltage changes in various areas of the brain (determined by recording the difference between two electrodes). The EEG may be normal even when a pathologic condition is present. Brain electrical activity has certain frequencies (the number

CHART 43-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient Having an Electroencephalogram

- Thoroughly explain the procedure to the patient.
- If the order is for the patient to be “sleep deprived,” remind the patient to wake up about 2 to 3 AM and to stay awake for the rest of the night.
- Instruct the patient to avoid central nervous system depressants or stimulants. Withhold anticonvulsants only if instructed by the physician. Monitor the patient carefully for seizures if medication is withheld.
- Instruct the patient to not drink caffeine-containing fluids, such as coffee or tea, on the day of the test.
- Reassure the patient that the test is not dangerous or uncomfortable.
- Ask the patient to wash his or her hair on the morning of the test. Instruct the patient not to apply sprays or oils after the hair has been washed. The patient should remove all hairpins, ribbons, and other hair accessories.
- Inform the patient that he or she will need to wash the hair after the test to remove the electrode glue.

of waves per second) that are normal for different levels of consciousness. Brain waves are faster when the patient is awake and slower when the patient is asleep. There are normal patterns to the waves, and the neurologist looks for the frequencies and patterns. The test is performed to:

- Determine the general activity of the cerebral hemispheres
- Determine the origin of seizure activity (epilepsy)
- Determine cerebral function in pathologic conditions other than epilepsy, such as tumors, abscesses, cerebrovascular disease, hematomas, injury, metabolic diseases, degenerative brain disease, and drug intoxication
- Differentiate between organic and hysterical or feigned blindness or deafness
- Monitor cerebral activity during surgical anesthesia
- Diagnose sleep disorders (all-night EEG)
- Determine brain death

Abnormal results on an EEG test may be due to:

- An abnormal structure in the brain, such as a brain tumor
- Attention problems
- Tissue death due to a blockage in blood flow (cerebral infarction)
- Drug or alcohol abuse
- Head injury
- Inflammation of the brain (encephalitis)
- Hemorrhage (abnormal bleeding caused by a ruptured vessel)
- Migraine headaches
- Seizure disorder
- Sleep disorder

The patient is placed on a reclining chair or bed. According to an internationally accepted procedure, 16 to 24 electrodes are usually attached to the scalp with a jelly-like substance and connected to the machine. The physician or EEG technician places glue over the electrodes to prevent slippage. The patient must lie still with his or her eyes closed during the initial recording. The rest of the test engages the patient in certain activities: hyperventilation, photic stimulation, and sleep. A portable EEG may be performed at the bedside if necessary, but the preference is for the EEG to be done in a very quiet room.

Hyperventilation produces cerebral vasoconstriction and alkalosis, which increases the likelihood of seizure activity. The patient is asked to breathe deeply 20 to 30 times for 3 minutes. In *photic stimulation*, a strobe light (bright light) is placed in front of the patient. Frequencies of 1 to 20 flashes per second are used with the patient's eyes open and then closed. If the patient's seizures are photosensitive in origin, the EEG will show waves corresponding to each flash of light or waves indicating seizure activity. *Sleep* is either natural or induced by an oral or IV sedative. EEG waves indicative of temporal lobe epilepsy can be demonstrated best during sleep.

Throughout the test, which takes 40 to 60 minutes, the technician watches the patient closely and records any movement. These movements alter the record and must be labeled as artifacts. Examples of artifacts are tongue movement, eye blinking, muscle tenseness, and nervousness.

Evoked Potentials. *Evoked potentials* (also called *evoked response*) measure the electrical signals to the brain generated by hearing, touch, or sight. These tests are used to assess sensory nerve problems and confirm neurologic conditions

including multiple sclerosis, brain tumor, acoustic neuroma (small tumors of the inner ear), and spinal cord injury. Evoked potentials are also used to test sight and hearing (especially in infants and young children), monitor brain activity in coma patients, and confirm brain death.

One set of electrodes is attached to the patient's scalp using conducting paste, and the second set is attached to the part of the body to be tested. A stimulus is applied, and the amount of time it takes for the impulse generated by the stimulus to reach the brain is recorded. Under normal circumstances, the process of signal transmission is instantaneous.

Auditory evoked potentials (also called *brainstem auditory evoked response*) are used to assess high-frequency hearing loss, diagnose any damage to the acoustic nerve and auditory pathways in the brainstem, and detect acoustic neuromas. The patient sits in a soundproof room and wears headphones. Clicking sounds are delivered one at a time to one ear while a masking sound is sent to the other ear.

Visual evoked potentials detect loss of vision from optic nerve damage (in particular, damage caused by multiple sclerosis). The patient sits close to a screen and is asked to focus on the center of a shifting checkerboard pattern. Only one eye is tested at a time. The other eye is either kept closed or covered with a patch.

Somatosensory evoked potentials measure response from stimuli to the peripheral nerves and can detect nerve or spinal cord damage or nerve degeneration from multiple sclerosis and other degenerating diseases. Tiny electrical shocks are delivered by electrode to a nerve in an arm or leg.

Cerebral Blood Flow Evaluation. *Cerebral blood flow (CBF)* can be measured in many areas of the brain with the use of radioactive substances. It is particularly useful in evaluating cerebral vasospasm. Explain the test, and ask the physician if central nervous system (CNS) depressants and stimulants should be withheld for 24 hours before the test.

Because *xenon* readily diffuses into brain tissue, it is the most common choice as an inhaled or injected tracer. The xenon travels through the vessels of the brain, where it is detected by external scintillation counters placed on the skull. Normal CBF is 50 to 55 mm/min/100 g of cerebral tissue. The patient receives various stimuli during the test. Increases in local blood flow can be seen with any neuronal activity, such as reading, hand movement, seizures, and temperature elevation (up to 107.6° F [42° C]). Local blood flow decreases with neurodegenerative disease, comas of metabolic origin, increased intracranial pressure (ICP), or subarachnoid hemorrhage. Follow-up care for this test is not required.

Lumbar Puncture. *Lumbar puncture (spinal tap)* is the insertion of a spinal needle into the subarachnoid space between the third and fourth (sometimes the fourth and fifth) lumbar vertebrae (see Table 43-4).

A lumbar puncture (LP) is used to:

- Obtain cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) pressure readings with a manometer
- Obtain CSF for analysis
- Check for spinal blockage caused by a spinal cord lesion
- Inject contrast medium or air for diagnostic study
- Inject spinal anesthetics
- Inject selected drugs

Because of the danger of sudden release of CSF pressure, a lumbar puncture is not done for patients with symptoms indicating severely increased ICP. The procedure is also not

performed in patients with skin infections at or near the puncture site because of the danger of introducing infective organisms into the CSF.

Before an LP is performed, position the patient in a fetal side-lying position to separate the vertebrae and move the spinal nerve roots away from the area to be accessed. The health care provider then cleans the skin site thoroughly. The injection site is determined, and a local anesthetic is injected. In a few minutes, a spinal needle is inserted between

the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae. Instruct the patient to inform the provider if there is shooting pain or a tingling sensation. After determining proper placement in the subarachnoid space by removing the stylet and seeing CSF, the patient is asked to relax as much as possible so the pressure reading will be accurate. Opening and closing pressure readings are taken and recorded. Three to five test tubes of CSF are usually collected and numbered sequentially. After specimen collection, the needle is withdrawn, slight pressure is

TABLE 43-5 SIGNIFICANCE OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID FINDINGS

FINDINGS	SIGNIFICANCE
Pressure	
More than 20 cm H ₂ O	Indicates increased spinal pressure, most often from bleeding, tumors, or infection within the CNS
Color/Appearance	
Clear, colorless	Normal
Pink-red to orange	Red blood cells present
Yellow	Bilirubin present owing to hemolysis of red blood cells; possible causes include subarachnoid hemorrhage, jaundice, increased cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) protein, hypercarotenemia, or hemoglobinemia
Brown	Methemoglobin present, indicating previous meningeal hemorrhage
Unclear or hazy	Cell count is elevated
Cells	
0-5 small lymphocytes/mm ³	Normal
More than 5 lymphocytes/mm ³	Reaction to infection, tumor, chemical substance, or blood
Proteins	
Total	
15-45 mg/dL (<i>up to 70 mg/dL in older adults</i>)	Normal
45-100 mg/dL	Paraventricular tumor
50-200 mg/dL	Viral infection
More than 500 mg/dL	Bacterial infection, Guillain-Barré syndrome
Less than 15 mg/dL	Meningismus, pseudotumor cerebri, hyperthyroidism, normal finding after lumbar puncture
Immune Gamma Globulin (IgG, the most important protein)	
3%-12% of total protein	Normal
More than 12% of total protein	Multiple sclerosis, neurosyphilis, or viral infection
Albumin/Globulin Ratio	
8:1	Normal
Glucose	
50-75 mg/dL or 60%-70% of blood glucose level	Normal
Less than 50 mg/dL (usually accompanied by the presence of pathologic organisms)	Bacterial, fungal, or viral meningitis; central nervous system (CNS) leukemia; or cancer
Other Characteristics	
Lactic Acid	
10-25 mg/dL	Normal
More than 25 mg/dL	Systemic acidosis or increased CSF glucose metabolism
Glutamine	
6-15 mg/dL	Normal
More than 15 mg/dL	Hepatic coma or cirrhosis of liver
Lactate Dehydrogenase	
10% of serum level or 2.0-7.2 units/mL	Normal
More than 10% of serum level	Bacterial meningitis, inflammatory diseases of CNS

applied, and an adhesive bandage strip is placed over the insertion site.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be sure that the patient does not move during a lumbar puncture. If the patient is restless or cannot cooperate, two people may need to assist instead of one. Consider this possibility before beginning the procedure.

Examination of CSF has been a useful diagnostic tool for some time. Recent technical advances are increasing the number of analyses that can be done on CSF. The normal characteristics of CSF and some of the more common abnormalities are given in Table 43-5. Gram-stain smears can test for particular types of meningitis, such as tubercular meningitis. CSF can be cultured, and sensitivity studies determine the best choice of antibiotic if an infection is diagnosed. A specific test for neurosyphilis is the fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS) test. Cytologic studies of CSF can identify tumor cells.

Complications of lumbar puncture, although not common, include brainstem herniation (discussed in Chapter 47), infection, CSF leakage, and hematoma formation.

Transcranial Doppler Ultrasonography. Intracranial hemodynamics can be evaluated through the use of the transcranial Doppler (TCD). It uses sound waves to measure blood flow through the arteries. The test is particularly valuable in evaluating cerebral vasospasm or narrowing of arteries. TCD is safe, can be used repeatedly for the same patient, and is an inexpensive alternative to angiography.

Muscle and Nerve Biopsies. Muscle or nerve biopsies are used to diagnose neuromuscular disorders. They may also reveal if a person is a carrier of a defective gene that could be passed on to children. Under local anesthesia, an incision is made into the skin or a hollow needle is inserted through the skin to remove a small sample of muscle or nerve. A CT scan or MRI is performed before a *brain biopsy*. This procedure involves injection of a local anesthetic into the scalp, drilling a small hole through the skull, and inserting a hollow needle into the site of the lesion. Muscle, nerve, and brain biopsy samples are analyzed under a microscope to identify abnormalities.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you NOTICE in a patient with adequate mobility, sensation, and cognition?

Physical assessment

- Alert and oriented
- Vital signs within normal limits
- Pupils equal in size, round and regular in shape, and reactive to light and accommodation (PERRLA)
- Moves all four extremities without assistance
- Walks, with or without assistive devices, using normal gait

- No deficits in or unusual sensation
- No loss of memory and attention
- Communicates clearly
- Can perform ADLs independently

Diagnostic assessment

- Normal CSF
- Normal electroencephalogram (EEG)
- Normal CT scan of brain
- Normal MRI scan of spinal cord

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- When caring for older adults, remind them to move slowly and use caution when ambulating. Older adults have an altered balance and decreased coordination (see Chart 43-1).
- For tests that use iodine-based contrast media, use precautions as listed in Chart 43-5.
- Check for bleeding after patients have an angiography. If bleeding is observed, call the radiologist immediately.
- Before MRI, check for devices such as pacemakers, vascular stents, implanted pumps, and aneurysm clips.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Reinforce teaching and use teaching aids for older adults who typically have recent memory loss.
- Explain what patients should expect before diagnostic testing for neurologic structure and function.
- Encourage patients who receive contrast media or isotopes to push fluids to increase elimination of the material.
- Teach patients having an EEG to follow the precautions listed in Chart 43-6.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the mental status of patients as part of the neurologic assessment, including orientation.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Remember that a change in level of consciousness (LOC) is the first indicator of neurologic decline.
- Assess the patient's reaction to the neurologic disease or injury.
- Assess the patient's memory, because loss of memory, especially recent memory, tends to be an early sign of neurologic problems.
- Check pupils for size, shape, and reaction. Pupils should be equal in size, round and regular in shape, and reactive to light and accommodation.
- Be aware that decerebrate or decorticate posturing and pinpoint or dilated nonreactive pupils are late signs of neurologic deterioration.
- Provide pre-test and post-test nursing care for patients having neurologic diagnostic testing, as outlined in [Table 43-4](#).

Physiological Integrity

- Take a patient history, including information listed in [Charts 43-2 and 43-3](#).
- Evaluate the patient's sensory and motor abilities, as well as gait, balance, and coordination.
- Use the Glasgow Coma Scale as one measure of neurologic functioning—the lower the score, the poorer the function. Assess for mental status changes (see [Chart 43-4](#)).
- Follow best practice guidelines in [Chart 43-6](#) when caring for a patient having an EEG.
- Assist with patient positioning during a lumbar puncture (fetal position preferred).
- Recall that normal cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is clear and colorless with few cells.

Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Brain

Rachel L. Palmieri



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Functional Areas of the Brain

Animation: Meningitis

Animation: Parkinson Disease

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Plan health teaching for hospital discharge to home or other setting for patients with chronic problems of the brain.
2. Collaborate with interdisciplinary health care team members when caring for older adults with Parkinson disease (PD) and Alzheimer's disease (AD).
3. Implement interventions to protect patients with AD, PD, and seizures from injury.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach patients with chronic headaches about complementary and alternative therapies.
5. Teach patients in highly populated areas ways to prevent meningitis.
6. Teach patients and their families about credible resources for genetic testing and counseling for types of chronic brain disorders that are known to be hereditary.
7. Identify community resources for patients with PD and AD.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Include the family when culturally appropriate in developing the plan of care for patients with chronic brain disorders.
9. Identify ways to help prevent caregiver stress when caring for patients with AD and other chronic neurodegenerative diseases.
10. Adapt communication techniques for patients with dementia, including validation therapy.

Physiological Integrity

11. Identify triggers for patients with chronic headaches.
12. Compare the assessment findings of migraine, cluster, and tension headaches.
13. Prioritize care for patients with migraine headaches.
14. Differentiate the common types of seizures, including presenting clinical manifestations.
15. Prioritize care for patients experiencing acute seizures and status epilepticus.
16. Describe collaborative care for a patient having a seizure.
17. Implement seizure precautions for patients at risk for acute seizures or status epilepticus.
18. Identify nursing priorities for patients with bacterial meningitis and encephalitis.
19. Describe abnormal neurologic findings in patients with chronic brain problems.
20. Identify the genetic and environmental influences on development of PD, AD, and Huntington disease.
21. Develop a community-based plan of care for a patient with PD and AD.
22. Provide health teaching for patients and family about drug therapy for patients with chronic brain problems.
23. Develop a collaborative plan of care for patients with AD.
24. Prevent or reduce common risk factors that contribute to functional decline and decreased quality of life in older adults with PD and AD.
25. Develop a teaching plan for caregivers of patients with AD.
26. Identify the need for genetic counseling for patients who have Huntington disease.

The brain is part of the central nervous system (CNS) that functions as the body's center for controlling mobility (movement), sensation, and cognition. Health problems involving damage of the brain can be acute or chronic. These problems often affect the patient's level of independence and quality of life. This chapter discusses acute CNS infections and common *chronic* neurodegenerative diseases of the brain that may impair a person's needs for *mobility* and *cognition*. Care of patients with chronic disorders requires coordination by nurses and other members of the interdisciplinary health care team. The patient and family are the center of the collaborative team in making decisions about the plan of care.

HEADACHES

Almost everyone has had a headache at some time in his or her life. Some headaches are related to "colds," allergies, or stress and are temporary. Others can be very serious and potentially life threatening. For example, an abnormal neurologic assessment together with symptoms of a cluster headache may indicate a serious neurologic problem. Patients with these symptoms are referred immediately to their health care provider or the emergency department.

Although there are many types and causes of headaches, the focus of this section is on two common types that cause people to seek medical attention: migraine headaches and cluster headaches. Patients are usually managed in the ambulatory care setting by the primary health care provider. However, it is not unusual for the person in severe pain to seek treatment in the emergency department.

As part of the nursing assessment, ask patients about the pattern of their headaches. For example:

- When do the headaches occur?
- How often?
- How long do they last?
- Do certain foods, alcohol, or other things trigger the headaches?
- Have there been any recent changes in your headaches?
- How do you treat the headaches? Does this treatment work?
- How often and what drug or herbal remedy do you take?

Other questions include:

- Is there a family history of headaches?
- Where do the headaches begin? Do they spread to other areas?
- Do you experience other symptoms with the headaches, such as weakness or changes in speech?
- How does this impact your activities of daily living?

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Encourage patients to keep a headache diary, which may help identify the type of headache they are experiencing. Teach them to notify their health care provider if the quality, intensity, or nature of the headache increases or changes. Encourage them to report whether the headache is associated with unusual visual changes and whether the prescribed drug is no longer effective.

MIGRAINE HEADACHE

Pathophysiology

A **migraine headache** is a chronic, episodic disorder with multiple subtypes. It is characterized by an intense pain in one side of the head (unilateral) worsening with movement and occurs with either photophobia (sensitive to light) or phonophobia (sensitive to noise). Either moderate to severe nausea or vomiting is also present (McCance et al., 2010). A migraine is classified as a *long-duration headache* because it usually lasts 4 to 72 hours.

Migraines tend to be familial, and women are affected more commonly than men. Women with anxiety and depressive personalities are particularly predisposed to migraines and other chronic health problems (Tan et al., 2007). Migraine sufferers are also at risk for stroke and epilepsy (McCance et al., 2010).

The cause of migraine headaches is likely a combination of vascular, genetic, neurologic, hormonal, and environmental factors. It is generally agreed that migraine headaches are mediated via the trigeminal vascular system and its central projections. Blood vessels in the brain overreact to a triggering event, causing spasm in the arteries at the base of the brain. This response is followed by arterial constriction and a decrease in cerebral blood flow. Cerebral hypoxia may occur. Platelets clump together, and serotonin, a vasoconstrictor, is released. Other arteries dilate, which triggers the release of **prostaglandins** (chemicals that cause inflammation and swelling) and other substances that increase sensitivity to pain. Research suggests a role of excessive synaptic glutamate release or decreased removal of glutamate and potassium from the synaptic cleft (Sanchez-del-Rio et al., 2006).

Many patients find that certain factors, or *triggers*, such as caffeine, red wine, stress, and monosodium glutamate (MSG) tend to cause migraine headache attacks. Each patient is different regarding which environmental factors trigger headaches. For some patients, being stressed or a change in weather can lead to an attack.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Migraines fall into three categories: migraines with aura, migraines without aura, and atypical migraines. An **aura** is a sensation such as visual changes that signals the onset of a headache or seizure. In a migraine, the aura occurs immediately before the migraine episode. *Most headaches are migraines without aura.* The key features of migraines are listed in **Chart 44-1**. **Atypical migraines** are less common and include menstrual and cluster migraines. The stages of migraine may include:

- Prodrôme (or prodromal) phase, in which the patient has specific symptoms such as food cravings or mood changes
- Aura phase (if present), which generally involves visual changes, flashing lights, or **diplopia** (double vision)
- Headache phase, which may last a few hours to a few days
- Termination phase, in which the intensity of the headache decreases

CHART 44-1 KEY FEATURES

Migraine Headaches**Phases of Migraine with Aura (Classic Migraine)****First, or Prodrome, Phase**

- Aura develops over a period of several minutes and lasts no longer than 1 hour.
- Well-defined transient focal neurologic dysfunction exists.
- Pain may be preceded by:
 - Visual disturbances
 - Flashing lights
 - Lines or spots
 - Shimmering or zigzag lights
- Pain may be preceded by a variety of neurologic changes, including:
 - Numbness, tingling of the lips or tongue
 - Acute confusional state
 - Aphasia
 - Vertigo
 - Unilateral weakness
 - Drowsiness

Second Phase

- Headache is accompanied by nausea and vomiting.
- Pain usually begins in the temple. It increases in intensity and becomes throbbing within 1 hour.

Third Phase

- Pain changes from throbbing to dull.
- Headache, nausea, and vomiting usually last from 4 to 72 hours. (Older patients may have aura without pain, known as a *visual migraine*.)

Migraine Without Aura (Common Migraine)

- Migraine begins without an aura before the onset of the headache.
- Pain is aggravated by performing routine physical activities.
- Pain is unilateral and pulsating.
- One of these symptoms is present:
 - Nausea and/or vomiting
 - **Photophobia** (light sensitivity)
 - **Phonophobia** (sound sensitivity)
- Headache lasts for 4 to 72 hours.
- Migraine often occurs in the early morning, during periods of stress, or in those with premenstrual tension or fluid retention.

Atypical Migraine

- Status migrainous:
 - Headache lasts longer than 72 hours.
- Migrainous infarction:
 - Neurologic symptoms are not completely reversible within 7 days.
 - Ischemic infarct is noted on neuroimaging.
- Unclassified:
 - Headache does not fulfill all of the criteria to be classified a migraine.

- Postprodrome phase, in which the patient is often fatigued, may be irritable, and has muscle pain

The diagnosis of migraine headache is based on the patient's history and on physical, neurologic, and psychological assessment. The typical migraine is described as a unilateral, fronto-temporal, *throbbing* pain in the head that is often worse behind one eye or ear. It is often accompanied by a sensitive scalp, anorexia, **photophobia** (sensitivity to light), **phonophobia** (sensitivity to noise), and nausea with or without vomiting. The pain and associated symptoms can last

from 4 to 72 hours. Patients tend to have the same clinical manifestations each time they have a migraine headache. Some may have to refrain from regular activities for several days if they cannot control or relieve the pain in its early stage.

Some physicians recommend screening migraine patients with the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory–2 to identify personality traits and possible mental health/behavioral health problems (Tan et al., 2007). Neuroimaging such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be indicated if the patient has other neurologic findings, a history of seizures, findings not consistent with a migraine, or a change in the severity of the symptoms or frequency of the attacks.

Neuroimaging is also recommended in patients older than 50 years with a new onset of headaches, especially women. Women with a history of migraines with visual symptoms may have an increased risk for stroke (McCance et al., 2010). This risk increases if a migraine with visual symptoms occurred in the past year. Teach women older than 50 years who have migraines about the risk factors for cardiovascular disease. Encourage them to notify their health care provider if they experience symptoms such as facial drooping, arm weakness, or difficulties with speech.

INTERVENTIONS

Migraine headaches are often not diagnosed or managed following current best practices. Therefore the National Headache Foundation has recommended the “Three R” approach for patients and health care providers (www.headaches.org):

- **Recognize** migraine symptoms
- **Respond** and see the health care provider
- **Relieve** pain and associated symptoms

The priority for care of the patient having migraines is pain management. This outcome may be achieved by abortive and preventive therapy. Drug therapy, trigger management, and complementary and alternative therapies are the major approaches to care. Provide detailed patient and family education regarding the collaborative plan of care.

Abortive Therapy

Abortive therapy is aimed at alleviating pain during the aura phase (if present) or soon after the headache has started. *Drug therapy* is prescribed to manage migraine headaches. Some of the drugs being used have major side effects, contraindications, and nursing implications. The health care provider must consider any other medical conditions that the patient has when prescribing drug therapy. In general, the patient is started on a low dose that is increased until the desired clinical effect is obtained. Table 44-1 lists commonly used drugs for migraine headaches. Many new drugs are being investigated for this painful and often debilitating health problem.

Mild migraines may be relieved by acetaminophen (APAP) (Tylenol, Abenol ) . NSAIDs such as ibuprofen (Motrin) and naproxen (Naprosyn) may also be prescribed. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved several over-the-counter (OTC) anti-inflammatory drugs for migraines, including Advil Migraine Capsules, Motrin Migraine Pain Caplets, and Excedrin Migraine Tablets or Caplets (contain APAP, aspirin, and caffeine). Caffeine narrows blood vessels by blocking adenosine, which dilates vessels and increases inflammation. Antiemetics may be prescribed to relieve nausea and vomiting. Metoclopramide

TABLE 44-1 COMMONLY USED DRUGS FOR MIGRAINE HEADACHE

Nonspecific Analgesics

- Acetaminophen
- Isometheptene
- Butalbital

Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs)

- Ibuprofen
- Naproxen

Ergotamine Preparations

- Ergotamine with caffeine (oral or suppository) (Cafergot, Migergot)
- Ergotamine sublingual (SL) (Ergomar SL)
- Medihaler ergotamine (oral inhalation aerosol)
- Dihydroergotamine (DHE) nasal spray (Migranal)

Beta Blockers

- Propranolol
- Timolol

Triptan Preparations

- Almotriptan (Axert)
- Eletriptan (Relpax)
- Rizatriptan (Maxalt)
- Zolmitriptan (Zomig)
- Sumatriptan (Imitrex)
- Frovatriptan (Frova)

Isometheptene Combination

- Midrin

Antiepileptic Drugs (AEDs)

- Divalproex (Depakote)
- Topiramate (Topamax)

(Reglan, Clopra) may be administered with NSAIDs to promote gastric emptying and decrease vomiting.

For more severe migraines, drugs such as triptan preparations, ergotamine derivatives, and isometheptene combinations are needed. A potential side effect of these drugs is **rebound headache**, also known as **medication overuse headache**, in which another headache occurs after the drug relieves the initial migraine.

Triptan preparations relieve the headache and associated symptoms by activating the 5-HT (serotonin) receptors on the cranial arteries, the basilar artery, and the blood vessels of the dura mater to produce a vasoconstrictive effect. Examples include zolmitriptan (Zomig) and eletriptan (Relpax). Sumatriptan (Imitrex) is also available in tablets, as an injection, and in a nasal spray. For many patients, these drugs are highly effective for pain, nausea, vomiting, and light and sound sensitivity with few side effects. Most are contraindicated in patients with actual or suspected ischemic heart disease, cerebrovascular ischemia, hypertension, and peripheral vascular disease and in those with Prinzmetal's angina because of the potential for coronary vasospasm. Patients respond differently to drugs, and several types or combinations may be tried before the headache is relieved.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Teach patients taking triptan drugs to take them as soon as migraine symptoms develop. Instruct patients to report chest pain or tightness to their health care providers immediately because they may develop angina. Remind them to use contraception (birth control) while taking the drugs because the drugs may not be safe for women who are pregnant. Teach them to expect common side effects that include flushing, tingling, and a hot sensation. These annoying sensations tend to subside after the patient's body gets used to the drug. Triptan drugs should not be taken with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) antidepressants or St. John's wort, an herb used commonly for depression.

Ergotamine preparations such as Cafergot are taken at the start of the headache. The patient may take up to six tablets in 24 hours or use a rectal suppository. Dihydroergotamine (DHE) may be given IV, IM, or as a nasal spray (Migranal) with an antiemetic if pain control and relief of nausea are not achieved with other drugs. DHE should not be given within 24 hours of a triptan drug.

Midrin is a combination drug containing APAP, isometheptene, and dichloralphenazone. It is the most common *isometheptene combination* given for treating migraines and is an excellent option when ergotamine preparations are not tolerated or do not work.

Other drugs that have been prescribed to relieve migraine pain include opioids and barbiturates. *These drugs should be avoided if at all possible because they are addictive. Some opioids actually cause a migraine.*

Preventive Therapy

Prevention drugs and other strategies are used when a migraine occurs more than twice per week, interferes with ADLs, or is not relieved with acute treatment. Unless otherwise contraindicated, the health care provider may initially prescribe an NSAID, a beta-adrenergic blocker, a calcium channel blocker, or an antiepileptic drug (AED). Propranolol (Inderal, Apo-Propranolol ♣, Novopropanol ♣) and timolol (Blocadren, Apo-Timol ♣) are the only *beta blockers* approved for migraine prevention. Verapamil (Calan, Apo-Verap ♣), a *calcium channel blocking agent*, may also be used for some patients. Both beta-adrenergic blockers and calcium channel blocking drugs can lower blood pressure and decrease pulse rate.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Teach patients who take beta-adrenergic blockers and calcium channel blockers how to take their pulse. Encourage them to report bradycardia or clinical manifestations of heart failure such as fatigue and shortness of breath to their health care provider as soon as possible.

Topiramate (Topamax) is one of the most common *antiepileptic drugs (AEDs)* used for migraines, but it should be used in low doses. Reports of suicides have been associated with this drug when it is used in larger doses, most often with patients who have bipolar disorder.

In addition to drug therapy, *trigger avoidance and management* are important interventions for preventing migraine episodes. For example, some patients find that avoiding tyramine-containing products, such as pickled products, caffeine, beer, wine, preservatives, and artificial sweeteners, reduces their headaches. Others have identified specific factors that trigger an attack for them. Help patients identify triggers that could cause migraine episodes, and teach them to avoid them once identified (Chart 44-2). For example, at the beginning of a migraine attack, the patient may be able to reduce pain by lying down and darkening the room. He or she may want both eyes covered and a cool cloth on the forehead. If the patient falls asleep, he or she should remain undisturbed until awakening.

CHART 44-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Factors That May Trigger a Migraine Attack

- Teach patients to avoid the foods, medications, and other factors that may trigger a migraine attack.
- Food and beverages (tyramine-containing):
 - Alcoholic drinks: beer, wine, and hard liquor
 - Aged cheese
 - Caffeine found in beverages such as coffee, tea, cola
 - Chocolate
 - Foods with yeast such as pastry and fresh breads
 - Monosodium glutamate (MSG)
 - Nitrates (food preservatives), pickled or fermented foods
 - Nuts
 - Artificial sweeteners
 - Smoked fish
- Drugs:
 - Cimetidine (Tagamet)
 - Estrogens
 - Nitroglycerin
 - Nifedipine (Procardia, Nifed )
- Other factors:
 - Anger, conflict
 - Fatigue
 - Hormonal fluctuations, such as menstruation, pregnancy, and menopause
 - Light glare
 - Missed meals
 - Psychological stress
 - Sleep problems
 - Smells, such as tobacco smoke
 - Travel to different altitudes

Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Many patients use complementary and alternative therapies as adjuncts to drug therapy. Yoga, meditation, massage, exercise, and biofeedback are helpful in preventing or treating migraines for some patients.

Acupuncture and acupressure may be effective in relieving pain for some patients. A number of herbs are also used for headaches, both for prevention and pain management. Teach patients that all herbs and nutritional remedies should be approved by their health care provider before use because they could interact with prescribed medication. At this time,



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is preparing a teaching plan for a client with migraine headaches who is receiving propranolol (Inderal) for migraine headaches. What health teaching by the nurse is important for the client?

- “Take this drug only when you have symptoms at the beginning of a migraine headache.”
- “This drug is low dose, so you don’t have to worry about your heart rate or blood pressure.”
- “This drug will relieve the pain during the aura phase soon after a headache has started.”
- “Take this drug as prescribed every day, even when feeling well, to prevent a migraine.”

there is insufficient evidence to support any herb or natural remedy, but some patients have had positive results.

CLUSTER HEADACHE

Pathophysiology

Cluster headaches are manifested by brief (30 minutes to 2 hours), intense unilateral pain that generally occurs in the spring and fall without warning. It is classified as the *most common chronic short-duration headache* with pain lasting less than 4 hours. Also referred to as *trigeminal autonomic cephalalgia*, it is far less common than migraines. Cluster headaches typically develop in men between 20 and 50 years of age. The cause and mechanism of cluster headaches are not known but have been attributed to vasoreactivity and neurogenic inflammation (McCance et al., 2010). Neuroimaging studies suggest that cluster headaches are related to an overactive and enlarged hypothalamus.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Question the patient about prescribed drugs for both the prevention and relief of the headache, as well as OTC drugs and herbs he or she may be taking. Interventions used by the patient may include relaxation techniques, meditation, acupuncture, or massage therapies. Ask the patient to recall a typical week’s activities and any recent changes in lifestyle. Ask him or her to identify bedtimes and waking times to help assess changes in activity or lack of continuity in the sleep-wake cycle.

The pain of these unilateral (one-sided) oculotemporal or oculofrontal headaches is often described as excruciating, boring, and *nonthrobbing*. The intense pain is felt deep in and around the eye. The headaches occur at about the same time of day for about 4 to 12 weeks (hence the term *cluster*), followed by a period of remission for 9 months to a year. This episodic form is the most common, although there is a chronic, intractable form in which there may not be a remission for more than a year.

The pain may radiate to the forehead, temple, or cheek. It may also radiate, but to a lesser extent, to the ear and neck. The temporal artery may be prominent and tender. The patient often paces, walks, or sits and rocks during an attack. A cluster is the only headache type in which this behavior occurs. During periods of remission, alcohol does not cause a headache (as it does during the headache period). The onset of the pain is associated with relaxation, napping, or rapid eye movement (REM) sleep.

The headache usually occurs with:

- **Ipsilateral** (same side) tearing of the eye
- **Rhinorrhea** (“runny nose”) or congestion
- **Ptosis** (drooping eyelid)
- Eyelid edema
- Facial sweating
- **Miosis** (constriction of pupils)

The ptosis may become permanent. Assess for possible bradycardia, flushing or pallor of the face, increased intraocular pressure, and increased skin temperature. Nausea and

vomiting may also occur. The patient may become restless and agitated from the intense pain of the headache.

INTERVENTIONS

The health care provider typically prescribes some of the same types of drugs used for migraines, such as triptans, ergotamine preparations, and antiepileptic drugs (see discussion of drug therapy in the Migraine Headache section). Additional drugs include calcium channel blockers, especially verapamil (Calan), lithium, and corticosteroids. OTC capsaicin, available as a nasal spray (civamide), melatonin, and glucosamine are also used by some patients. Provide health teaching about drug therapy.

During the periods of attack, teach the patient to wear sunglasses and to sit facing away from the window to help decrease exposure to light and glare. If the health care provider prescribes oxygen, 100% oxygen via mask at 7 to 10 L/min is typically administered with the patient in a sitting position. Administer the oxygen for 15 to 30 minutes, and discontinue it when the headache is relieved. Oxygen reduces cerebral blood flow and inhibits activity of the carotid bodies, which are sensitive to oxygen levels in the body. Patients may use oxygen at home. Teach them about the precautions that must be taken when oxygen is used (see Chapter 30).

To prevent future attacks brought on by precipitating factors (bursts of anger, prolonged anticipation, excessive physical activity, and excitement), discuss their relationship to the onset of cluster headaches. Explain the need for and importance of a consistent sleep-wake cycle.

Surgical intervention may be recommended for patients with *chronic* drug-resistant cluster headaches. Invasive ambulatory care procedures, such as *percutaneous stereotactic rhizotomy* (PSR), are performed with varying success rates. Information about this procedure is found in Chapter 46 in the Trigeminal Neuralgia section. Long-term high-frequency electrical stimulation of the posterior hypothalamus, also known as *deep brain stimulation*, may reduce or eliminate pain (see discussion on p. 946 in the Parkinson Disease section). It has not been approved by the FDA but is being investigated. Both of these procedures have major complications that can cause permanent brain or nerve damage. Therefore they are done as a last resort.

SEIZURES AND EPILEPSY

Pathophysiology

A **seizure** is an abnormal, sudden, excessive, uncontrolled electrical discharge of neurons within the brain that may result in a change in level of consciousness (LOC), motor or sensory ability, and/or behavior. A single seizure may occur for no known reason. Some seizures are caused by a pathologic condition of the brain, such as a tumor. In this case, once the underlying problem is treated, the patient is often asymptomatic.

Epilepsy is defined by the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke as two or more seizures experienced by a person. It is a chronic disorder in which repeated unprovoked seizure activity occurs. It may be caused by an abnormality in electrical neuronal activity; an imbalance of neurotransmitters, especially gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA); or a combination of both (McCance et al., 2010).

Types of Seizures

The International Classification of Epileptic Seizures recognizes three broad categories of seizure disorders: generalized seizures, partial seizures, and unclassified seizures.

Six types of **generalized seizures** may occur and involve *both* cerebral hemispheres. The *tonic-clonic seizure* lasting 2 to 5 minutes begins with a **tonic** phase that causes stiffening or rigidity of the muscles, particularly of the arms and legs, and immediate loss of consciousness. **Clonic** or rhythmic jerking of all extremities follows. The patient may bite his or her tongue and may become incontinent of urine or feces. Fatigue, acute confusion, and lethargy may last up to an hour after the seizure.

Occasionally, only tonic or clonic movement may occur. A *tonic seizure* is an abrupt increase in muscle tone, loss of consciousness, and autonomic changes lasting from 30 seconds to several minutes. The *clonic seizure* lasts several minutes and causes muscle contraction and relaxation.

The *absence seizure* is more common in children and tends to run in families. It consists of brief (often just seconds) periods of loss of consciousness and blank staring as though the person is daydreaming. The patient's eyes may flutter, and **automatisms** (involuntary behaviors) such as lip smacking and picking at clothes may also occur. He or she is not aware of these behaviors. The patient returns to baseline immediately after the seizure. Left undiagnosed or untreated, the seizures may occur frequently throughout the day, interfering with school or other daily activity.

The *myoclonic seizure* causes a brief jerking or stiffening of the extremities that may occur singly or in groups. Lasting for just a few seconds, the contractions may be symmetric (both sides) or asymmetric (one side).

In an *atonic (akineti) seizure*, the patient has a sudden loss of muscle tone, lasting for seconds, followed by **postictal** (after the seizure) confusion. In most cases, these seizures cause the patient to fall, which may result in injury. This type of seizure tends to be most resistant to drug therapy.

Partial seizures, also called *focal* or *local* seizures, begin in a part of *one* cerebral hemisphere. They are further subdivided into two main classes: complex partial seizures and simple partial seizures. In addition, some partial seizures can become generalized tonic-clonic, tonic, or clonic seizures. Partial seizures are most often seen in adults and generally are less responsive to medical treatment when compared with other types.

Complex partial seizures may cause loss of consciousness (**syncop**), or "black out," for 1 to 3 minutes. Characteristic automatisms may occur as in absence seizures. The patient is unaware of the environment and may wander at the start of the seizure. In the period after the seizure, he or she may have **amnesia** (loss of memory). Because the area of the brain most often involved in this type of epilepsy is the temporal lobe,

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Complex partial seizures are most common among older adults (Vacca & Olson, 2007). These seizures are difficult to diagnose because symptoms appear similar to dementia, psychosis, or Alzheimer's disease (AD), especially in the **postictal stage** (after the seizure). New-onset seizures in older adults are typically associated with conditions such as hypertension, cardiac disease, diabetes mellitus, stroke, and Alzheimer's disease.

complex partial seizures are often called *psychomotor* seizures or *temporal lobe* seizures.

The patient with a *simple partial seizure* remains conscious throughout the episode. He or she often reports an **aura** (unusual sensation) before the seizure takes place. This may consist of a “*déjà vu*” (already seen) phenomenon, perception of an offensive smell, or sudden onset of pain. During the seizure, the patient may have one-sided movement of an extremity, experience unusual sensations, or have autonomic symptoms. Autonomic changes include a change in heart rate, skin flushing, and epigastric discomfort.

Unclassified, or **idiopathic**, seizures account for about half of all seizure activity. They occur for no known reason and do not fit into the generalized or partial classifications.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Primary or **idiopathic epilepsy** is not associated with any identifiable brain lesion or other specific cause; however, genetic factors most likely play a role in its development. **Secondary seizures** result from an underlying brain lesion, most commonly a tumor or trauma. They may also be caused by:

- Metabolic disorders
- Acute alcohol withdrawal
- Electrolyte disturbances (e.g., hyperkalemia, water intoxication, hypoglycemia)
- High fever
- Stroke
- Head injury
- Substance abuse
- Heart disease

Seizures resulting from these problems are not considered epilepsy. Various risk factors can trigger a seizure, such as increased physical activity, emotional stress, excessive fatigue, alcohol or caffeine consumption, or certain foods or chemicals.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Question the patient or family about how many seizures the patient has had, how long they last, and any pattern of occurrence. Ask the patient or family to describe the seizures that the patient has had. Clinical manifestations vary depending on the type of seizure experienced, as described earlier. Ask about the presence of an aura before seizures begin (**preictal phase**). Question whether the patient is taking any prescribed drugs or herbs or has had head trauma or high fever. Assess any alcohol and/or illicit drug history. Ask about any other medical condition such as a previous stroke or hypertension.

Diagnosis is based on the history and physical examination. A variety of diagnostic tests are performed to rule out other causes of seizure activity and to confirm the diagnosis of epilepsy. Typical diagnostic tests include an electroencephalogram (EEG), computed tomography (CT) scan, MRI, or positron emission tomography (PET) scan. These tests are described in **Chapter 43**. Laboratory studies are performed to identify metabolic or other disorders that may cause or contribute to seizure activity.

INTERVENTIONS

Removing or treating the underlying condition or cause of the seizure manages *secondary* epilepsy and seizures that are not considered epileptic. *In most cases, primary epilepsy is successfully managed through drug therapy.*

Nonsurgical Management

Most seizures can be completely or almost completely controlled through the administration of **antiepileptic drugs (AEDs)**, sometimes referred to as *anticonvulsants*, for specific types of seizures.

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy is the major component of management (**Chart 44-3**). The health care provider introduces one antiepileptic drug (AED) at a time to achieve seizure control. If the chosen drug is not effective, the dosage may be increased or another drug introduced. At times, seizure control is achieved only through a combination of drugs. The dosages are adjusted to achieve therapeutic blood levels without causing major side effects.

Teach patients to take their drugs on time to maintain therapeutic blood levels and maximum effectiveness. Emphasize the importance of taking their antiseizure medications as prescribed. Instruct patients that they can build up sensitivity to the drugs as they age. If sensitivity occurs, tell them they will need to have blood levels of this drug checked frequently to adjust the dose. In some cases, the antiseizure effects of drugs can decline and will lead to an increase in seizures. Because of this potential for “drug decline and sensitivity,” patients need to keep their scheduled laboratory appointments.

Be aware of drug-drug and drug-food interactions. For instance, warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone ) should not be given with phenytoin (Dilantin). Document side and adverse effects of the prescribed drugs, and report to the health care provider. Patients should be taught that some citrus fruits, such as grapefruit juice, can interfere with the metabolism of these drugs. This interference can raise the blood level of the drug and cause the patient to develop drug toxicity.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The health care provider prescribes AEDs for the older adult that (Vacca & Olson, 2007):

- Have minimal possibility of toxicity
- Cause few side effects
- Are available in oral route for dosing
- Are easily metabolized and absorbed
- Have a long half-life with infrequent dosing to prevent missed dose
- Are readily excreted
- Require minimal protein binding, because older adults lose protein and a therapeutic dose may be toxic to them
- Cause minimal to no weight gain to prevent complications that may be associated with heart disease

Teaching for Self-Management. Provide an educational program for the patient and family (**Chart 44-4**). Ask them what they understand about the disorder, and correct any misinformation. As new information is presented, be sure that the patient and family can understand it. Refer patients and families to the Epilepsy Foundation of America (www.epilepsyfoundation.org) for more information and community support groups.

Emphasize that AEDs must not be stopped even if the seizures have stopped. Discontinuing these drugs can lead to the

CHART 44-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Antiepileptic Drugs

DRUG	INDICATION FOR USE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS
Carbamazepine (Tegretol, Tegretol-XR, Carbatrol)	Partial, generalized tonic-clonic seizures	Monitor for headache, dizziness, diplopia or blurred vision, N/V, and leukopenia. Monitor CBC. Do not crush or chew sustained-release capsules.
Clonazepam (Klonopin)	Absence, myoclonic, and akinetic seizures	Monitor results of liver function tests.
Clorazepate dipotassium	Adjunctive management of partial seizures	Give with food. Monitor blood pressure.
Diazepam (Valium, Apo- Diazepam  , lorazepam (Ativan), Diastat (diazepam rectal gel delivery system)	Status epilepticus	Monitor a irway, b reathing, c irculation (ABCs).
Divalproex (Depakote), valproic acid (Depakene)	All types of seizures	Monitor for hair loss, tremor, increased liver enzymes, bruising, and N/V. Monitor CBC, PT, PTT, and AST.
Ethosuximide (Zarontin)	Absence seizures	Watch for N/V, skin rash, lethargy, and anorexia. Monitor CBC and liver function tests. (Drug used infrequently.)
Felbamate (Felbatol)	Adjunctive therapy for intractable complex partial seizures	Note that aplastic anemia and liver failure are major sequelae of treatment. Patient must sign consent for use, acknowledging risk for aplastic anemia and liver failure. Monitor CBC. Monitor liver function tests. Watch for anorexia and weight loss.
Gabapentin (Neurontin)	Partial seizures	Watch for increased appetite and weight gain. Monitor for ataxia, irritability, dizziness, and fatigue.
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	Partial seizures	Watch for diplopia, headaches, dizziness, drowsiness, ataxia, N/V, and life-threatening rash when given with valproic acid.
Levetiracetam (Keppra)	Adjunct management of partial seizures	Monitor renal function carefully. Notify health care provider for gait or coordination problems.
Oxcarbazepine (Trileptal)	Partial seizures	Monitor for hyponatremia.
Phenobarbital (Barbita, Luminal)	Generalized tonic-clonic seizures, partial seizures	Note that this is less desirable than other antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) because of sedation. Be aware that overdose can be fatal. Monitor for drowsiness, sleep disturbances, cognitive impairment, and depression.
Phenytoin (Dilantin), fosphenytoin (Cerebix)	All types, except absence, myoclonic, and atonic seizures; for status epilepticus	Monitor for gastric distress, gingival hyperplasia, anemia, ataxia, and nystagmus. Check CBC and calcium levels; monitor for therapeutic drug levels (10-20 mcg/mL) and toxic levels (>30 mcg/mL). For IV phenytoin, flush catheter with saline before and after administration. For fosphenytoin, use phenytoin equivalent for dosing.
Primidone (Mysoline, Sertan )	Partial seizures, generalized tonic-clonic seizures	Monitor for vertigo and lethargy. Watch for drug interactions with phenobarbital and isoniazid.
Tiagabine (Gabitril)	Partial seizures	Monitor for dizziness, weakness, nervousness, psychomotor slowing, nystagmus, and paresthesias. Administer with food.
Topiramate (Topamax)	Adjunctive therapy for intractable partial seizures	Monitor for ataxia, confusion, dizziness, and fatigue. Be aware of increased risk for renal calculi.
Valproate (Depakote), valproate sodium injection (Depacon)	Simple and complex absence seizures Adjunct therapy for partial complex and generalized tonic-clonic seizures	Monitor for hair loss, tremor, increased liver enzymes, bruising, and N/V. Monitor CBC, PT, PTT, AST.
Zonisamide (Zonegran)	Adjunctive therapy for partial seizures	Monitor CBC, platelets, and renal function. Assess mental status, especially memory.

AST, Aspartate aminotransferase; CBC, complete blood count; N/V, nausea and vomiting; PT, prothrombin time; PTT, partial thromboplastin time.

CHART 44-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Health Teaching for the Patient with Epilepsy

- Drug therapy information:
 - Name, dosage, time of administration
 - Actions to take if side effects occur
 - Importance of taking drug as prescribed and not missing a dose
 - What to do if a dose is missed or cannot be taken
 - Importance of having blood drawn for therapeutic or toxic levels as requested by the health care provider
- **Do not take any medication, including over-the-counter drugs, without asking your health care provider.**
- Wear a medical alert bracelet or necklace, or carry an ID card indicating epilepsy.
- Follow up with your neurologist, physician, or other health care provider as directed.
- Be sure a family member or significant other knows how to help you in the event of a seizure and knows when your health care provider or emergency medical services should be called.
- Investigate and follow state laws concerning driving and operating machinery.
- Avoid alcohol and excessive fatigue.
- Contact the Epilepsy Foundation (www.epilepsyfoundation.org) or other organized epilepsy group for additional information. Epilepsy Canada (www.epilepsy.ca) also provides resources and support.

recurrence of seizures or the life-threatening complication of status epilepticus (discussed below). Some patients may stop therapy because they do not have the money to purchase the drugs. Refer limited-income patients to the social services department for assistance or to a case manager to locate other resources.

A balanced diet, proper rest, and stress-reduction techniques usually minimize the risk for breakthrough seizures. Encourage the patient to keep a seizure diary to determine whether there are factors that tend to be associated with seizure activity. Patients should follow state law concerning allowances for driving a motor vehicle.

All states prohibit discrimination against people who have epilepsy. Patients who work in occupations in which a seizure might cause serious harm to themselves or others (e.g., construction workers, operators of dangerous equipment, pilots) may need other employment. They may need to decrease or modify strenuous or potentially dangerous physical activity to avoid harm, although this varies with each person. Various local, state, and federal agencies can help with finances, living arrangements, and vocational rehabilitation.

Seizure Precautions. Precautions are taken to prevent the patient from injury if a seizure occurs. Specific seizure precautions vary depending on health care agency policy.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Seizure precautions include ensuring that oxygen and suctioning equipment with an airway are readily available. If the patient does not have an IV access, insert a saline lock, especially if he or she is at significant risk for generalized tonic-clonic seizures. The saline lock provides ready access if IV drug therapy must be given to stop the seizure.

CHART 44-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient During a Tonic-Clonic or Complete Partial Seizure

- Protect the patient from injury.
- Do not force anything into the patient's mouth.
- Turn the patient to the side to keep the airway clear.
- Loosen any restrictive clothing the patient is wearing.
- Maintain the patient's airway and suction as needed.
- Do not restrain or try to stop the patient's movement; guide movements if necessary.
- Record the time the seizure began and ended.
- At the completion of the seizure:
 - Take the patient's vital signs.
 - Perform neurologic checks.
 - Keep the patient on his or her side.
 - Allow the patient to rest.
 - Document the seizure (see [Chart 44-6](#)).

Siderails are rarely the source of significant injury, and the effectiveness of the use of padded siderails to maintain safety is debatable. Padded siderails may embarrass the patient and the family. Follow agency policy about the use of siderails because they may be classified as a restraint device. Other methods to protect the patient, such as placing a mattress on the floor, may be used instead of siderails.

Padded tongue blades do not belong at the bedside and should NEVER be inserted into the patient's mouth because the jaw may clench down as soon as the seizure begins! Forcing a tongue blade or airway into the mouth is more likely to chip the teeth and increase the risk for aspirating tooth fragments than prevent the patient from biting the tongue. Furthermore, improper placement of a padded tongue blade can obstruct the airway.

Seizure Management. The actions taken during a seizure should be appropriate for the type of seizure ([Chart 44-5](#)). For example, for a simple partial seizure, observe the patient and document the time that the seizure lasted. Redirect the patient's attention away from an activity that could cause injury. Turn the patient on the side during a generalized tonic-clonic or complex partial seizure because he or she may lose consciousness. If possible, turn the patient's head to the side to prevent aspiration and allow secretions to drain. Remove any objects that might injure the patient.

It is not unusual for the patient to become cyanotic during a generalized tonic-clonic seizure. The cyanosis is generally self-limiting, and no treatment is needed. Some health care providers prefer to give the high-risk patient (e.g., older adult, critically ill, or debilitated patient) oxygen by nasal cannula or facemask during the postictal phase. He or she is not restrained because this may cause injury and may worsen the situation, causing more seizure activity. For any type of seizure, carefully observe the seizure and document assessment findings ([Chart 44-6](#)).

Emergency Care: Acute Seizure and Status Epilepticus Management. Seizures occurring in greater intensity, number, or length than the patient's usual seizures are considered *acute*. They may also appear in clusters that are different from the patient's typical seizure pattern. Treatment with lorazepam (Ativan, Apo-Lorazepam) or diazepam

CHART 44-6 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

Seizures: Nursing Observations and Documentation

- How often the seizures occur:
 - Date, time, and duration of the seizure
- Description of each seizure:
 - Tonic, clonic
 - Staring spells, blinking
 - Automatism
- Whether more than one type of seizure occurs
- Sequence of seizure progression:
 - Where the seizure began
 - Body part first involved
- Observations during the seizure:
 - Changes in pupil size and any eye deviation
 - Level of consciousness
 - Presence of apnea, cyanosis, and salivation
 - Incontinence of bowel or bladder during the seizure
 - Eye fluttering
 - Movement and progression of motor activity
 - Lip smacking or other automatism
 - Tongue or lip biting
- How long the seizures last
- When the last seizure took place
- Whether the seizures are preceded by an aura:
 - Dizziness, numbness, or visual disturbances
 - Gustatory (taste) or auditory disturbances
- What the patient does after the seizure:
 - Feels drowsy or weak
 - May resume normal behavior
 - May be unaware that the seizure took place
- How long it takes for the patient to return to pre-seizure status

(Valium, Meval 🍁, Vivol 🍁, Diastat [rectal diazepam gel]) may be given to stop the clusters to prevent the development of status epilepticus. IV phenytoin (Dilantin) or fosphenytoin (Cerebyx) may be added.

Status epilepticus is a medical emergency and is a prolonged seizure lasting longer than 5 minutes or repeated seizures over the course of 30 minutes. It is a potential complication of all types of seizures. *Seizures lasting longer than 10 minutes can cause death!* Common causes of status epilepticus include:

- Sudden withdrawal from antiepileptic drugs
- Infections
- Acute alcohol or drug withdrawal
- Head trauma
- Cerebral edema
- Metabolic disturbances

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Convulsive status epilepticus must be treated promptly and aggressively! Establish an airway and notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team immediately if this problem occurs! Establishing an airway is the priority for this patient's care. Intubation by an anesthesia provider or respiratory therapist (RT) may be necessary. Administer oxygen as indicated by the patient's condition. If not already in place, establish IV access with a large-bore catheter, and start 0.9% sodium chloride. The patient is usually placed in the intensive care unit for continuous monitoring and management.

Blood is drawn to determine arterial blood gas levels and to identify metabolic, toxic, and other causes of the uncontrolled seizure. Brain damage and death may occur in the patient with tonic-clonic status epilepticus. Left untreated, metabolic changes result, leading to hypoxia, hypotension, hypoglycemia, cardiac dysrhythmias, or lactic (metabolic) acidosis. Further harm to the patient occurs when muscle breaks down and myoglobin accumulates in the kidneys, which can lead to renal failure and electrolyte imbalance. *This is especially likely in the older adult.*

The drugs of choice for treating status epilepticus are IV push lorazepam (Ativan, Apo-Lorazepam 🍁) or diazepam (Valium). Diazepam rectal gel (Diastat) may be used instead. Lorazepam is usually given as 4 mg over a 2-minute period. This procedure may be repeated, if necessary, until a total of 8 mg is reached.

To prevent additional tonic-clonic seizures or cardiac arrest, a loading dose of IV phenytoin (Dilantin) is given and oral doses administered as a follow-up after the emergency is resolved. Initially, give phenytoin at no more than 50 mg/min using an infusion pump. An alternative to phenytoin is fosphenytoin (Cerebyx), a water-soluble phenytoin prodrug. It is compatible with most IV solutions. It also causes fewer cardiovascular complications than phenytoin and can be given in an IV dextrose solution. After administration, fosphenytoin converts to phenytoin in the body. Therefore the FDA requires the dosage to be written as a phenytoin equivalent (PE): 150 mg of fosphenytoin equals 100 mg of phenytoin. Give fosphenytoin at a rate of 100 to 150 mg/min IV piggyback.

Serum drug levels are checked every 6 to 12 hours after the loading dose and then 2 weeks after oral phenytoin has started. Teach the patient about the side and adverse effects of any AED that is prescribed (see Chart 44-3).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Safe and Effective Care Environment**

A client with a history of seizures is placed on seizure precautions. What emergency equipment will the nurse provide at the bedside?

Select all that apply.

- A. Padded tongue blade
- B. Oxygen setup
- C. Nasogastric tube
- D. Suction setup
- E. Artificial oral airway

Surgical Management

Patients who cannot be managed effectively with drug therapy may be candidates for surgery, including vagal nerve stimulation (VNS) and conventional surgical procedures. VNS is a fairly new procedure that has been very successful for many patients with epilepsy.

Vagal Nerve Stimulation. Vagal nerve stimulation (VNS) may be performed for control of continuous simple or complex partial seizures. Patients with generalized seizures are not candidates for surgery because VNS may result in severe neurologic deficits. The stimulating device (much like a cardiac pacemaker) is surgically implanted in the left chest wall. An electrode lead is attached to the left vagus nerve, tunneled under the skin, and connected to a generator. The procedure usually takes 2 hours with the patient under

general anesthesia. The stimulator is activated by the physician either in the operating room or, more commonly, 2 weeks after surgery. Programming is adjusted gradually over a period of time. The pattern of stimulation is individualized to the patient's tolerance. The generator runs continuously, stimulating the vagus nerve according to the programmed schedule.

The patient can activate the VNS with a handheld magnet when experiencing an aura, thus aborting the seizure. Patients experience a change in voice quality, which signifies that the vagus nerve has been stimulated. They usually report a relief in intensity and duration of seizures and an improved quality of life.

Observe for complications after the procedure such as hoarseness (most common), cough, dyspnea, neck pain, or dysphagia (difficulty swallowing). Teach the patient to avoid MRIs, microwaves, shortwave radios, and ultrasound diathermy (a physical therapy heat treatment).

Conventional Surgical Procedures. A small percentage of patients with epilepsy cannot be fully controlled with drug therapy or VNS. When all other options are exhausted, conventional surgery may be needed to improve the patient's quality of life. The largest group of conventional surgical candidates includes those with complex partial seizures in the frontal or temporal lobe.

Before surgery, the patient is admitted to a special inpatient observation unit. While there, he or she has continuous electroencephalogram (EEG) recording, close observation, and in many hospitals, video monitoring at all times except during personal care activities. The patient is taken off all AEDs. After the seizure area is identified, electrodes may be surgically implanted into the brain tissue to identify the extent of the focal area. This step is followed by additional continuous EEG and video monitoring, as well as close observation by the nursing staff. The area is surgically removed if vital areas of brain function will not be affected.

Preoperative care is similar to that described for patients undergoing a craniotomy (see Chapter 47). Preoperative diagnostic tests include MRI and single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)/positron emission tomography (PET) scans as described in Chapter 43. An intracarotid amobarbital test (Wada test) and neuropsychological testing are also done. The Wada test assesses hemispheric lateralization of language and memory after injection of amobarbital, a short-acting anesthetic. This procedure establishes the safety of surgery to preserve language memory. Neuropsychological testing evaluates memory, visuospatial function, language function, and intelligence quotient (IQ) to identify deficiencies in the brain that might correspond to areas believed to be the epileptic region. It is also used to compare preoperative and postoperative cognitive functioning.

Another surgical approach, the *partial corpus callosotomy*, may be used to treat tonic-clonic or atonic seizures in patients who are not candidates for other surgical procedures. The surgeon sections the anterior two thirds of the corpus callosum, preventing neuronal discharges from passing between the two hemispheres of the brain. This surgery usually reduces the number and severity of the seizures, making them more likely to respond to more conventional drug therapy. This procedure is not as commonly done as other surgeries but is very successful for some patients.

INFECTIONS

MENINGITIS

Pathophysiology

Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges that surround the brain and spinal cord. Bacterial and viral organisms are most often responsible for meningitis, although fungal meningitis and protozoal meningitis also occur. *Viral meningitis is usually self-limiting, and the patient has a complete recovery. Bacterial meningitis is potentially life threatening.* Regardless of the causative organism, symptoms are the same, but meningococcal meningitis causes the most severe presentation.

Usually, the patient has a predisposing condition such as otitis media, pneumonia, acute or chronic sinusitis, or sickle cell anemia that increases the likelihood of meningitis. A brain or spinal surgery may also contribute to the development of meningitis. Populations likely to have the disease include patients who are immunosuppressed or have infections elsewhere in the body and older adults, especially those with chronic debilitating diseases. In rare cases, tongue piercing has been associated with infections, including meningitis.

The organisms responsible for meningitis enter the central nervous system (CNS) via the bloodstream at the blood-brain barrier. Direct routes of entry occur as a result of penetrating trauma, surgical procedures, or a ruptured cerebral abscess. **Otorrhea** (ear discharge) or **rhinorrhea** (nasal discharge, or "runny nose"), which may be caused by a basilar skull fracture, may lead to meningitis as a result of the direct communication of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) with the environment. The invading organisms travel throughout the CNS via the subarachnoid space. The organism produces an inflammatory response in the pia mater, the arachnoid, the CSF, and the ventricles. The **exudate** (pus) formed may spread to both cranial and spinal nerves, causing further neurologic deterioration. Increased intracranial pressure (ICP) may occur as a result of blockage of the flow of CSF, change in cerebral blood flow, or thrombus (blood clot) formation.

Viral meningitis, the most common type, is sometimes referred to as *aseptic meningitis*. It often results from a variety of viral illnesses, including measles, mumps, herpes simplex, and herpes zoster. The formation of exudate that is common in bacterial meningitis does not occur, and no organisms are obtained from the CSF. Inflammation occurs over the cerebral cortex, the white matter, and the meninges. The susceptibility of the brain tissue to the virus varies depending on which type of cell is involved. The herpes simplex virus alters cellular metabolism, which quickly results in necrosis of the cells. Other viruses cause an alteration in the production of enzymes or neurotransmitters, which results in cell dysfunction and possible neurologic defects.

Clinical manifestations of viral meningitis include fever, **photophobia** (light sensitivity), upper respiratory infection symptoms, headache, myalgias (muscle aches), nausea, and vomiting. Herpes simplex type 2 may cause genital lesions. A maculopapular rash is seen when the causative organism is an enterovirus. Treatment is symptomatic. If genital lesions are present, acyclovir may be prescribed.

Cryptococcus neoformans meningitis is the most common fungal infection that affects the central nervous system

(CNS) of patients with acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). Fulminant invasive fungal sinusitis is also a recognized cause of fungal meningitis. The clinical manifestations vary because the compromised immune system affects the inflammatory response. For example, some patients have fever and others do not. Almost all of them have headache, nausea, and vomiting and show a decline in mental status. Treatment is symptomatic and includes IV antifungal agents.

Meningococcal meningitis is a medical emergency with a fairly high mortality rate, often within 24 hours. Unlike other types, this disorder affects the meninges, the subarachnoid space, and brain tissue and is highly contagious. It occurs most often in fall and winter when upper respiratory tract infections commonly occur. The most frequently involved organisms responsible for bacterial meningococcal meningitis are *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (pneumococcal disease) and *Neisseria meningitidis*.

Meningococcal meningitis is the only type that occurs in outbreaks. It is most likely to occur in areas of high population density, such as college dormitories, military barracks, and crowded living areas. It also affects people with compromised immune systems and those with spleen damage or who have no spleen (Heavey, 2010).

The number of outbreaks on college campuses has been decreasing over the past few years because many states require students to be vaccinated against meningitis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach people who live in highly populated areas, group settings, or others at risk about the importance of getting several vaccines to prevent certain types of meningitis. In addition to two vaccines already available for meningococcal meningitis (Menactra and Menomune), the FDA-approved Menveo, a new vaccine which is effective for other infectious strains. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends a single dose of either Meactra or Menveo for all children from ages 11 through 18 years and high-risk adults between 19 and 55 years of age. The most common adverse effects of Menveo are pain at the injection site, headache, and malaise (Heavey, 2010).

The number of cases of *Haemophilus influenzae* and pneumococcal meningitis has also decreased. Teach patients who are at risk for influenza (“flu”) and pneumonia to have vaccines as recommended by their health care provider. Encourage all older adults and those of any age with chronic illnesses to have these protective immunizations to prevent meningitis. Teach people to contact the Meningitis Foundation of America (www.meningitisfoundationofamerica.com) for more information.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Perform a complete neurologic and neurovascular assessment to detect clinical manifestations associated with a diagnosis of meningitis or suspected meningitis as outlined in Chart 44-7.

CHART 44-7 KEY FEATURES

Meningitis

- Decreased (or change in) level of consciousness
- Disoriented to person, place, and year
- Pupil reaction and eye movements:
 - Photophobia
 - Nystagmus
 - Abnormal eye movements
- Motor response:
 - Normal early in disease process
 - Hemiparesis, hemiplegia, and decreased muscle tone possible later
 - Cranial nerve dysfunction, especially CN III, IV, VI, VII, VIII
- Memory changes:
 - Attention span (usually short)
 - Personality and behavior changes
 - Bewilderment
- Severe, unrelenting headaches
- Generalized muscle aches and pain
- Nausea and vomiting
- Fever and chills
- Tachycardia
- Red macular rash (meningococcal meningitis)

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Signs and symptoms of meningitis result from meningeal irritation. Assess for fever, headache, and altered mental status. The patient may also report photophobia and have signs of increased intracranial pressure (ICP), such as decreasing level of consciousness. Although the classic **nuchal rigidity** (stiff neck) and positive Kernig’s and Brudzinski’s signs have been traditionally used to diagnose meningitis, these findings occur in only a small percentage of patients with a definitive diagnosis. Seizures may also occur, particularly in bacterial meningitis. Older adults, patients who are immunocompromised, and those who have been inadequately treated with antibiotics may not have fever.

Assess the patient for complications, including increased ICP resulting from the presence of exudate (pus), which can lead to hydrocephalus and cerebral edema. Left untreated, increased ICP can lead to herniation of the brain and death (see Chapter 47).

Seizure activity may be caused by irritation of the cerebral cortex. Because of abnormal stimulation of the hypothalamic area, excessive amounts of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) (vasopressin) are produced. This results in water retention and dilution of serum sodium caused by increased sodium loss by the kidneys. This syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) production may lead to further increases in ICP.

Assess the patient’s vascular status by:

- Observing the color and temperature of the extremities
- Determining the presence of peripheral pulses
- Identifying any indicators of abnormal bleeding

Septic emboli in the blood may block circulation in the small vessels of the hands and feet, leading to gangrene. Excessive fibrinolysis (breakdown of fibrin clots) that occurs in bacteremia and infections from viruses, fungi, or protozoa may lead to disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). Involvement of the cerebral arteries, veins, and venous sinuses may lead to seizures and hemiparesis.

TABLE 44-2 CEREBROSPINAL FLUID FINDINGS IN BACTERIAL AND VIRAL MENINGITIS

FINDING	BACTERIAL MENINGITIS	VIRAL MENINGITIS
Appearance	Cloudy, turbid	Clear
White blood cells	Increased	Increased
Protein	Increased	Slightly increased
Glucose	Decreased	Most often normal, but may be decreased
CSF pressure	Elevated	Varies

Laboratory Assessment

The most significant laboratory test used in the diagnosis of meningitis is the analysis of the *cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)*. Patients older than 60 years, those who are immunocompromised, or those who have signs of increased ICP usually have a CT scan before the lumbar puncture. If there will be a delay in obtaining the CSF, blood is drawn for culture and sensitivity. A broad-spectrum antibiotic should be given before the lumbar puncture. The CSF is analyzed for cell count, differential count, and protein. Glucose concentrations are determined, and culture, sensitivity, and Gram stain studies are performed (Table 44-2).

Counterimmunoelectrophoresis (CIE) may be performed to determine the presence of viruses or protozoa in the CSF. CIE is also indicated if the patient has received antibiotics before the CSF was obtained. To identify a possible bacterial source of infection, specimens for culture are obtained and Gram stains of the urine, throat, and nose are also performed. Table 44-2 compares CSF findings in bacterial meningitis and viral meningitis.

A complete blood count (CBC) is performed. The white blood cell (WBC) count is usually elevated well above the normal value. Serum electrolyte values are also assessed. Dilutional hyponatremia may occur as a result of SIADH, a complication of bacterial meningitis.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

X-rays of the chest, air sinuses, and mastoids are obtained to determine the presence of infection. A CT or MRI scan may be performed to identify increased ICP, the presence of a brain abscess, or developing hydrocephalus.

INTERVENTIONS

The most important nursing interventions for patients with meningitis are accurately monitoring and documenting their neurologic status. Best practices for nursing care are listed in Chart 44-8.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient with meningitis, assess his or her neurologic status and vital signs at least every 4 hours or more often if clinically indicated. *The priority for care is to monitor for early neurologic changes that may indicate increased ICP, such as decreased level of consciousness (LOC).* The patient is also at risk for seizure activity. Care should be provided as discussed in Interventions on p. 933 in the Seizures and Epilepsy section.

CHART 44-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with Meningitis

- Follow ABCs (a_{ir}way, b_{re}athing, c_{irc}ulation).
- Take vital signs and perform neurologic checks every 2 to 4 hours, as required.
- Perform cranial nerve assessment, with particular attention to cranial nerves III, IV, VI, VII, and VIII, and monitor for changes.
- Manage pain with drug and nondrug methods.
- Perform vascular assessment, and monitor for changes.
- Give drugs and IV fluids as prescribed, and document the patient's response.
- Record intake and output carefully to maintain fluid balance and prevent fluid overload.
- Monitor body weight to identify fluid retention early.
- Monitor laboratory values closely; report abnormal findings to the physician or nurse practitioner promptly.
- Position carefully to prevent pressure ulcers.
- Perform range-of-motion exercises every 4 hours as needed.
- Decrease environmental stimuli:
 - Provide a quiet environment.
 - Minimize exposure to bright lights from windows and overhead lights.
 - Maintain bedrest with head of bed elevated 30 degrees.
- Maintain Transmission-Based Precautions per hospital policy (for bacterial meningitis).
- Monitor for and prevent complications:
 - Increased intracranial pressure
 - Vascular dysfunction
 - Fluid and electrolyte imbalance
 - Seizures
 - Shock

Cranial nerve testing is included as part of the routine neurologic assessment because of possible cranial nerve involvement. Particular attention is given to cranial nerves III, IV, VI, VII, and VIII (see Chapter 43). A *sixth cranial nerve defect (inability to move the eyes laterally)* may indicate the development of **hydrocephalus** (excessive accumulation of CSF within the brain's ventricles). Other indicators of hydrocephalus include signs of increased ICP and urinary incontinence. Urinary incontinence results from decreasing LOC.

To avoid life-threatening complications, the health care provider prescribes a broad-spectrum antibiotic until the results of the culture and Gram stain are available. After this information is available, the appropriate anti-infective drug to treat the specific type of meningitis is given. Treatment of bacterial meningitis generally requires a 2-week course of IV antibiotics. Drug therapy should begin within 1 to 2 hours after it is prescribed. Monitor and document the patient's response.

The patient with bacterial meningitis may experience increased ICP, and seizure activity may occur. Drugs used by the physician to treat these complications include hyperosmolar agents and antiepileptic drugs (AEDs). Controversy exists as to whether steroids are helpful in the treatment of all adults with meningitis. They are, however, recommended for patients with *S. pneumoniae* meningitis. People who have been in close contact with a patient with *N. meningitidis* should have prophylaxis (preventive) treatment with rifampin (Rifadin, Rofact ) or ciprofloxacin (Cipro), or ceftriaxone (Rocephin). Preventive treatment with rifampin may be prescribed for those in close contact with a patient with *H. influenzae* meningitis.

Perform a complete vascular assessment every 4 hours or more often, if indicated, to detect early vascular compromise from septic emboli. This severe complication is most often seen in circulation to the hand. Assess the patient's temperature, color, pulses, and capillary refill in the fingernails. If vascular compromise is not noticed and left untreated, gangrene can develop quickly, possibly leading to loss of the involved arm. The health care team monitors the patient for other complications, including septic shock, coagulation disorders, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and septic arthritis. These health problems are discussed elsewhere in this textbook.

Standard Precautions are appropriate for all patients with meningitis unless the patient has a bacterial type that is transmitted by droplets, such as *N. meningitidis* and *H. influenzae*.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Place the patient with bacterial meningitis that is transmitted by droplets on Droplet Precautions *in addition to* Standard Precautions. When possible, place the patient in a private room. Stay at least 3 feet from the patient unless wearing a mask. Patients who are transported outside of the room should wear a mask and follow respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette (see Chapter 25). Teach visitors about the need for these precautions and how to follow them.

ENCEPHALITIS

Pathophysiology

Encephalitis is an inflammation of the brain tissue and often the surrounding meninges. It affects the cerebrum, the brainstem, and the cerebellum. A viral agent most often causes the disease, although bacteria, fungi, or parasites may also be involved (e.g., malaria). The virus travels to the central nervous system (CNS) via the bloodstream, along peripheral or cranial nerves, or in the meninges (e.g., varicella zoster). Therefore viral encephalitis can be life threatening or lead to persistent neurologic problems such as learning disabilities, epilepsy, memory deficits, or fine motor deficits.

After the virus invades the brain tissue, it begins to reproduce, causing an inflammatory response. Unlike in meningitis, this response does not cause exudate (pus) formation. Inflammation extends over the cerebral cortex, the white matter, and the meninges, causing degeneration of the neurons of the cortex. Demyelination of axons occurs in the involved area because the white matter is destroyed. This leads to hemorrhage, edema, necrosis (cell death), and the development of small lacunae (hollow cavities) within the cerebral hemispheres. Widespread edema can cause compression of blood vessels leading to a further increase in intracranial pressure (ICP). Death may occur from herniation and increased ICP.

Arboviruses can be transmitted to humans through the bite of an infected mosquito or tick. The most common types of encephalitis caused by arboviruses are Eastern or Western equine encephalitis, St. Louis encephalitis, California encephalitis, and West Nile virus.

West Nile virus has gained attention in the United States because it has spread rapidly throughout the country and is a potentially serious illness. This infection is typically mild,

and usually the patient is asymptomatic. However, a small percentage of patients develop severe disease. The incubation period is 2 to 15 days after being bitten by an infected mosquito. Other possible sources of transmission include blood products, breast milk, or an organ transplant. Diagnostic tests to determine the presence of West Nile virus include enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and West Nile virus-specific IgM antibody in the blood or CSF.

In mild cases, the patient has no symptoms or has mild flu-like symptoms (e.g., fever, body aches, nausea, vomiting). Some people develop serious symptoms that may include high fever, severe headache, decreased level of consciousness, tremors, vision loss, seizures, and muscle weakness or paralysis. These manifestations may last for several weeks, and neurologic deficits may be permanent. A few patients die from the disease.

Echovirus, coxsackievirus, poliovirus, herpes zoster, and viruses that cause mumps and chickenpox are the common *enteroviruses* associated with encephalitis. *Herpes simplex virus type 1* (HSV1) encephalitis is the most common non-epidemic type of encephalitis in North America. Patients with this disease often have a history of cold sores. The mortality rates for HSV1 encephalitis are very high compared with those for other types of encephalitis.

Amebic meningoencephalitis is caused by the amebae *Naegleria* and *Acanthamoeba*. Both are found in warm freshwater areas and can enter the nasal mucosa of people swimming in ponds or lakes. The *amebae* may also be found in soil and decaying vegetation. Although this infection has not often been seen in the past, the incidence in North America is increasing, perhaps because ponds and lakes are becoming more polluted.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The typical patient with encephalitis has a fever and reports nausea, vomiting, and a stiff neck. Assess for other clinical manifestations, including:

- High fever
- Changes in mental status (e.g., agitation)
- Motor dysfunction (e.g., dysphagia [difficulty swallowing])
- Focal (specific) neurologic deficits
- Photophobia (light sensitivity) and phonophobia (noise sensitivity)
- Fatigue
- Symptoms of increased ICP (e.g., decreased LOC)
- Joint pain
- Headache

Assess LOC using the Glasgow Coma Scale (see Chapter 43) or other agency-approved assessment tool. The patient may be lethargic, stuporous, or comatose. Mental status changes are more extensive in the patient with encephalitis than with meningitis. Changes include acute confusion, irritability, and personality and behavior changes (especially noted in the presence of herpes simplex). Signs of meningeal irritation include the presence of nuchal (neck) rigidity and motor changes that vary from a mild weakness to hemiplegia. The patient may have muscle tremors, spasticity, an ataxic gait

(postencephalitic parkinsonism), myoclonic jerks, and increased deep tendon reflexes. Seizure activity is common. Nausea, vomiting, headache, and vertigo also may occur.

Observe for cranial nerve involvement, such as ocular palsies (paralysis), facial weakness, and nystagmus (involuntary lateral eye movements). The herpes zoster lesion affects cranial and spinal nerve root ganglia, which is clinically manifested by a rash, severe pain, itching, burning, or tingling in the areas innervated by these nerves.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

In severe cases of encephalitis, the patient may have increased ICP resulting from cerebral edema, hemorrhage, and necrosis of brain tissue. Monitor vital signs for indications of a widened pulse pressure, bradycardia, and irregular respirations. The pupils become increasingly dilated and less responsive to light. Left untreated, increased ICP leads to herniation of the brain tissue and possibly death (see Chapter 47).

Lumbar puncture (LP) is done to analyze the CSF for the specific offending organism. A polymerase chain reaction (PCR) test may be used to detect viral DNA or ribonucleic acid (RNA) in the CSF. Specificity and sensitivity in diagnosing encephalitis are excellent, especially with herpes simplex virus (HSV). The test is rapid and noninvasive, replacing the brain biopsy for diagnosis.

An electroencephalogram is done to evaluate brain wave activity to detect seizures. Brain imaging in the form of a CT scan with and without contrast is performed to evaluate elevated intracranial pressure (ICP) or obstructive hydrocephalus.

INTERVENTIONS

Teach people who live in mosquito-infested areas to protect themselves and their families from West Nile virus infections. Chart 44-9 lists measures for preventing this infection. There is no curative treatment for West Nile viral encephalitis.

Acyclovir (Zovirax) is the antiviral drug of choice for the treatment of herpes encephalitis and is associated with a significantly lower mortality rate than vidarabine (Vira-A). Drug therapy is most effective if begun early, before the patient becomes stuporous or comatose. This neurologic decline usually occurs within 4 to 6 days after the initial neurologic symptoms. No specific drug therapy is available for infection by arboviruses or enteroviruses.

CHART 44-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Protecting the Patient and Family from West Nile Virus

- Limit your time outside between dusk and dawn when mosquitoes are out.
- Wear protective clothing, including long sleeves and pants.
- Use an insect repellent containing DEET when outdoors.
- Remove areas of standing water from flower pots, trash cans, and rain gutters.
- Check window and door screens for holes that need repair.
- Keep hot tubs and pools clean and properly chlorinated.

Nursing interventions for encephalitis are similar to those for meningitis with the exception of drug therapy. Supportive nursing care and prompt recognition and treatment of increased ICP are essential components of management. *Maintain a patent airway to prevent the development of atelectasis or pneumonia, which can lead to further brain hypoxia (lack of oxygen).*

Provide supportive nursing care for the patient who is immobile, stuporous, or comatose. Delegate and supervise unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to turn, cough, and deep breathe the patient at least every 2 hours. Perform deep tracheal suctioning even in the presence of increased ICP if respiratory status is compromised. Assess vital signs and neurologic signs every 2 hours or more frequently if clinically indicated. Elevate the head of the bed 30 to 45 degrees unless contraindicated (e.g., after lumbar puncture or in the patient with severe hypotension). Keep the patient's room darkened and quiet to promote comfort and decrease agitation. Remind UAP to provide safety measures such as keeping the bed in the lowest position.

Provide patient and family support. Families need health teaching to understand how to care for their loved ones. They are often fearful that the patient may not return to his or her baseline. Collaborate with a certified chaplain, social worker, or case manager to provide additional emotional support and counseling.

Patients with encephalitis and permanent neurologic deficits are usually discharged to a rehabilitation setting or a long-term care facility. Those with minimal neurologic problems are discharged to the home setting.

PARKINSON DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Parkinson disease (PD), also referred to as *Parkinson's disease* and *paralysis agitans*, is a progressive neurodegenerative disease that is the one of the most common neurologic disorders of older adults. It is a debilitating disease affecting motor ability and is characterized by four cardinal symptoms: tremor, rigidity, **bradykinesia** or **akinesia** (slow movement/no movement), and postural instability. Most people have *primary*, or idiopathic, disease. A few patients have *secondary* parkinsonian symptoms from conditions such as brain tumors and certain anti-psychotic drugs.

Motor activity occurs as a result of integrating the actions of the cerebral cortex, basal ganglia, and cerebellum. The basal ganglia are a group of neurons located deep within the cerebrum at the base of the brain near the lateral ventricles. When the basal ganglia are stimulated, muscle tone in the body is inhibited and voluntary movements are refined. The secretion of two major neurotransmitters accomplishes this process: dopamine and acetylcholine (ACh).

Dopamine is produced in the substantia nigra, as well as in the adrenal glands, and is transmitted to the basal ganglia along a connecting neural pathway for secretion when needed. ACh is produced and secreted by the basal ganglia, as well as in the nerve endings in the periphery of the body. ACh-producing neurons transmit *excitatory* messages throughout the basal ganglia. Dopamine *inhibits* the function of these neurons, allowing control over voluntary movement. This system of checks and balances allows for refined, coordinated movement, such as picking up a pencil and writing.

TABLE 44-3 STAGES OF PARKINSON DISEASE

Stage 1: Initial Stage • Unilateral limb involvement • Minimal weakness • Hand and arm trembling	Stage 3: Moderate Disease • Postural instability • Increased gait disturbances
Stage 2: Mild Stage • Bilateral limb involvement • Masklike facies • Slow, shuffling gait	Stage 4: Severe Disability • Akinesia • Rigidity
	Stage 5: Complete ADL Dependence

Widespread degeneration of the *substantia nigra* then leads to a decrease in the amount of dopamine in the brain. When dopamine levels are decreased, a person loses the ability to refine voluntary movement. The large number of excitatory ACh-secreting neurons remain active, creating an imbalance between excitatory and inhibitory neuronal activity. The resulting excessive excitation of neurons prevents a person from controlling or initiating voluntary movement.

Not only does PD interfere with movement as a result of dopamine loss in the brain, it also reduces the sympathetic nervous system influence on the heart and blood vessels. This loss results in the orthostatic hypotension frequently seen in the patient with PD.

PD is separated into stages according to the symptoms and degree of disability. Stage 1 is mild disease with unilateral limb involvement, whereas the patient with stage 5 disease is completely dependent in all ADLs. Other classifications refer simply to mild, moderate, and severe disease (Table 44-3).

Although the exact cause of PD is not known, it is probably due to environmental and genetic factors. Exposure to pesticides, herbicides, and industrial chemicals and metals and drinking well water, being older than 40 years, and having reduced estrogen levels are known risk factors for the development of PD.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Primary Parkinson disease (PD) often has a familial tendency. The disease is associated with deletion of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA). These deletions cause a loss of neurons that produce dopamine in the substantia nigra (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Specific genetic mutations have been identified in some families with PD. Of the genetic mutations identified, the *parkin 1* gene on chromosome 4 has been the most studied. In the presence of a genetic mutation, alpha-synuclein, a major component of Lewy bodies, is produced and thought to contribute to neuronal death (McCance et al., 2010).

As the population ages, the number of people affected by PD is expected to dramatically increase. Approximately 50% more men than women currently have the disease.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Collect data related to the time and progression of symptoms noticed by the patient or the family. The older adult, who may assume that these behaviors are normal changes associated

CHART 44-10 KEY FEATURES

Parkinson Disease

- Posture:
 - Stooped posture
 - Flexed trunk
 - Fingers abducted and flexed at the metacarpophalangeal joint
 - Wrist slightly dorsiflexed
- Gait:
 - Slow and shuffling
 - Short, hesitant steps
 - Propulsive gait
 - Difficulty stopping quickly
- Motor:
 - **Bradykinesia** (slow movement)
 - Muscular rigidity
 - Akinesia
 - Tremors
 - “Pill-rolling” movement
 - Masklike facies
 - Difficulty chewing and swallowing
 - Uncontrolled drooling, especially at night
 - Fatigue
 - Difficulty getting into and out of bed
 - Reduced arm swinging on one side of the body when walking
 - Micrographia (change in handwriting or handwriting gets smaller)
- Speech:
 - Soft, low-pitched voice
 - **Dysarthria** (slurred speech)
 - **Echolalia** (automatic repetition of what another person says) and repetition of sentences
 - **Hypophonia** (soft voice), change in voice volume or articulation
- Autonomic dysfunction:
 - Orthostatic hypotension
 - Excessive perspiration
 - Oily skin
 - Seborrhea
 - Flushing
 - Changes in skin texture
 - Blepharospasm (eyelid spasm)
- Psychosocial assessment:
 - Emotionally labile
 - Depressed
 - Paranoid
 - Easily upset
 - Rapid mood swings
 - Cognitive impairments (i.e., dementia)
 - Delayed reaction time
 - Sleep disturbances

with aging, may ignore early signs and symptoms such as *resting* tremors, bradykinesia (slowed movement), and problems with muscular rigidity. Tremors are usually noticed in the upper extremities first and may increase with stress. Slow voluntary movements and reduced automatic movements may be manifested by a change in the patient’s handwriting. Some patients report “freezing” because they feel that they are stuck to the floor. Chart 44-10 summarizes the clinical manifestations of Parkinson disease. Assess the patient for **rigidity**, or resistance to passive movement of the extremities, which is classified as:

- *Cogwheel*, manifested by a rhythmic interruption of the muscle movement
- *Plastic*, defined as mildly restrictive movement
- *Lead pipe*, or total resistance to movement



FIG. 44-1 The masklike facial expression typical of patients with Parkinson disease.

Rigidity is present early in the disease process and progresses over time. Observe the patient's ability to relax a muscle or move a selected muscle group.

Changes in facial expression or a **masklike facies** with wide-open, fixed, staring eyes is caused by rigidity of the facial muscles (Fig. 44-1). This rigidity can lead to difficulties in chewing and swallowing, particularly if the pharyngeal muscles are involved. As a result, the patient may have inadequate nutrition. Uncontrolled drooling may occur. Some patients develop dementia later as the disease progresses. In addition to changes in voluntary movement, many patients experience autonomic nervous system symptoms, such as excessive perspiration and orthostatic hypotension. Orthostatic hypotension was originally thought to be a side effect of levodopa therapy. However, it is probably related to loss of sympathetic innervation in the heart and blood vessel response.

Patients can also develop emotional changes such as depression, irritability, pessimism, fear, and insecurity. These symptoms may develop because patients fear that they will not be able to cope with new situations.

Changes in speech pattern are common in PD patients. They may speak very softly, slur or repeat their words, use a monotone voice or a halting speech, hesitate before speaking, or exhibit a rapid speech pattern.

Bowel and bladder problems are commonly seen in PD due to malfunction of the autonomic nervous system, which regulates smooth muscle activity. Patients can exhibit symptoms of either urinary incontinence or difficulty urinating. Constipation can occur due to the slow motility of the GI tract or because of poor dietary habits and poor fluid intake.

The diagnosis of PD is made based on clinical findings after other neurologic diseases are eliminated as possibilities. There are no specific diagnostic tests. Analysis of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) may show a decrease in dopamine levels, although the results of other studies are usually normal. Other diagnostic tests may be done such as an MRI, single-

CHART 44-11 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with Parkinson Disease

- Allow the patient extra time to respond to questions.
- Administer medications promptly on schedule to maintain continuous therapeutic drug levels.
- Provide medication for pain, tingling in limbs, as needed.
- Monitor for side effects of medications, especially orthostatic hypotension, hallucinations, and acute confusional state (delirium).
- Collaborate with physical and occupational therapists to keep the patient as mobile and as independent as possible in ADLs.
- Allow the patient time to perform ADLs and mobility skills.
- Implement interventions to prevent complications of immobility, such as constipation, pressure ulcers, and contractures.
- Schedule appointments and activities late in the morning to prevent rushing the patient, or schedule them at the time of the patient's optimal level of functioning.
- Teach the patient to speak slowly and clearly. Use alternative communication methods, such as a communication board. Refer to speech-language pathologist.
- Monitor the patient's ability to eat and swallow. Monitor actual food and fluid intake. Collaborate with the dietitian.
- Provide high-protein, high-calorie foods or supplements to maintain weight.
- Recognize that Parkinson disease affects the patient's body image. Focus on the patient's strengths.
- Assess for depression and anxiety.
- Assess for insomnia or sleeplessness.

photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), or a positron emission tomography (PET).

INTERVENTIONS

In addition to the health care provider, physical and/or occupational therapist, speech-language pathologist, dietitian, and case manager, collaborate with the patient and family to develop a collaborative plan of care. In some cases, palliative surgery may be performed to assist the patient to remain mobile for as long as possible. Chart 44-11 summarizes best practices for nursing management of the patient with PD.

Nonsurgical Management

Drug therapy is an essential part of management, which decreases signs and symptoms and allows the patient to provide self-care and have a reasonable quality of life. One of the most important desired outcomes is that the patient will improve *mobility (movement)*, a basic human need.

Drug Therapy. Drugs are prescribed to treat the symptoms of PD with the purpose of increasing the patient's functional abilities and quality of life. An equally important desired outcome is to prescribe drugs with minimal long-term side effects. Many questions and controversies remain about which drugs to use, when to start therapy, and how to prevent complications. Drug administration is closely monitored, and the health care provider adjusts the dosage or changes therapy as the patient's condition requires. Teach the patient and family how to monitor for and report adverse effects of drug therapy.

Dopamine agonists mimic dopamine by stimulating dopamine receptors in the brain. They are typically the most effective during the first 3 to 5 years of use. The benefit of these agents is fewer incidents of **dyskinesias** (problems with

movement) and “**wearing off**” **phenomenon** (loss of response to the drug) when compared with other drugs. This problem is characterized by periods of good mobility (“on”) alternating with periods of poor mobility (“off”). Patients report that their most distressing symptom is “off time.”

Examples of dopamine agonists are apomorphine (Apokyn [a morphine derivative]), pramipexole (Mirapex), and ropinirole (Requip). Another drug in this class, rotigotine, is available as a continuous transdermal patch (Neupro) to maintain a consistent level of dopamine.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Dopamine agonists are associated with adverse effects such as orthostatic (postural) hypotension, hallucinations, sleepiness, and drowsiness. Remind patients to avoid operating heavy machinery or driving if they have any of these symptoms. Teach them to change from a lying or sitting position to standing by moving slowly. The health care provider should not prescribe drugs in this class to older adults because of their severe adverse drug effects.

Almost all patients are on Sinemet, a combination *levodopa-carbidopa* drug, at some point in their disease. It may be the initial drug of choice if the patient’s presenting symptoms are severe or interfere with work or school. Both an immediate-release (IR) and controlled-release (CR) form of Sinemet in varying doses are available. The levodopa agents are less expensive than the dopamine agonists and are better at improving motor function. Long-term use leads to dyskinesia (inability to perform voluntary movement). Teach the patient and family to give the drug before meals to increase absorption and transport across the blood-brain barrier.

Catechol O-methyltransferases (COMTs) are enzymes that inactivate dopamine. Therefore COMT *inhibitors* block this activity, thus prolonging the action of levodopa. One example is entacapone (Comtan), which is often used in combination with levodopa. Stalevo is a combination of levodopa, carbidopa, and entacapone. The benefit of these combinations is that the disease is treated in several ways with one drug. However, they are not beneficial for those patients who need more specific dosages of individual drugs.

Monamine oxidase type B (MAO-B) inhibitors (MAOIs) are more popular for use in patients with early or mild symptoms of PD. Entacapone (Comtan) and selegiline (Deprenyl, Eldepryl) are often given with levodopa for early or mild disease. A newer MAOI-B for PD is rasagiline mesylate (Azilect), which can be given as a single drug or with levodopa. This drug has been reported to decrease “freezing” episodes (Cranwell-Bruce, 2010).

The MAOI-B drugs work by slowing the main type (B) of monamine oxidase in the brain, increasing dopamine concentrations and helping reduce the clinical manifestations of

PD. They may also protect neurons in the brain (Cranwell-Bruce, 2010).

When other drugs are no longer effective, bromocriptine mesylate (Parlodel), a *dopamine receptor antagonist*, may be prescribed to promote the release of dopamine. It may be used alone or in combination with carbidopa/levodopa (Sinemet). Some providers may prescribe Parlodel early in the course of treatment. It is especially useful in the patient who has experienced side effects such as dyskinesias or orthostatic hypotension while receiving Sinemet.

Amantadine (Symmetrel) is an *antiviral drug* that has anti-Parkinson benefits. It may be given early in disease to reduce symptoms. It is also prescribed with Sinemet to reduce dyskinesias. Rivastigmine (Exelon) is a *cholinesterase inhibitor* that is used only when patients with PD have dementia. This drug works to improve the transmission of acetylcholine in the brain by delaying its destruction by the enzyme *acetylcholinesterase*.

For severe motor symptoms such as tremors and rigidity, one of the older *anticholinergic* drugs may be prescribed, but they are rarely used as primary drugs of choice for Parkinson disease (PD) (Cranwell-Bruce, 2010). Examples are benztropine (Cogentin), trihexyphenidyl HCl (Artane), and procyclidine (Kemadrin). *These drugs should be avoided in older adults because they can cause acute confusion, urinary retention, constipation, dry mouth, and blurred vision. Newer and safer drugs are now available for this age-group.*

For the patient on any long-term drug therapy regimen, drug tolerance or *drug toxicity* often develops. Drug toxicity may be evidenced by delirium (acute confusion), cognitive impairment, decreased effectiveness of the drug, or hallucinations. Delirium may be difficult to assess in the patient who is already suffering from chronic dementia as a result of PD or another disease. If possible, compare the patient’s current cognitive and behavioral status with his or her baseline before drug therapy began.

When drug tolerance is reached, the drug’s effects do not last as long as previously. The treatment of PD drug toxicity or tolerance includes:

- A reduction in drug dosage
- A change of drug or in the frequency of administration
- A drug holiday (particularly with levodopa therapy)

During a **drug holiday**, which typically lasts up to 10 days, the patient receives no drug therapy for PD. Carefully monitor the patient for symptoms of PD during this time, and document assessment findings.

Many patients are on additional drugs to help relieve symptoms associated with the disease. For example, muscle spasms may be relieved by baclofen (Kemstro), drooling can be minimized by sublingual atropine sulfate (Atropair), and insomnia may require a sleeping aid like zolpidem tartrate (Ambien). If patients also become moderately to severely depressed, an antidepressant such as short-acting venlafaxine (Effexor) may be prescribed. This complicated drug regimen may be confusing to patients. A study by Fincher et al. (2009) demonstrated that telehealth technology was very beneficial in helping to educate patients and maintain drug adherence. Videophone users were more satisfied with the equipment and counseling than telephone sessions (see the **Evidence-Based Practice** box on p. 945).

Other Interventions. A *freezing gait and postural instability* are major problems for patients with PD. Nontraditional

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients taking MAOIs about the need to avoid foods, beverages, and drugs that contain tyramine, including cheese and aged, smoked, or cured foods and sausage. Remind them to also avoid red wine and beer to prevent severe headache and life-threatening hypertension (Lilley et al., 2011). Patients should continue these restrictions for 14 days after the drug is discontinued.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Does Telehealth Technology Improve Learning for Patients with Parkinson's Disease Who are Taking Multiple Medications?

Fincher, L., Ward, C., Dawkins, V., Magee, V., & Willson, P. (2009). Using telehealth to educate Parkinson's disease patients about complicated medication regimens. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(2), 16-24.

Parkinson disease (PD) affects primarily older adults who often have complex drug regimens to manage their symptoms. Patients (veterans) taking three or more medications for PD were randomly assigned to three groups of 25 each to receive nurse-conducted patient education about their drug regimen using one of three modalities: video phone, telephone, or face-to-face. The patients ranged in age from 50 to 84 years, and most were Caucasian men. After the initial educational session using one of the three modalities, patients were followed at 3-month intervals for 6 months using either the telephone or videophone. Patient satisfaction was measured by a 15-item rating scale after the 6 months was completed. Satisfaction was the highest in the group who used the videophone when compared with the telephone users. All of the study participants thought that telehealth modalities are a convenient method for learning or reinforcing knowledge.

Level of Evidence: 3

The researchers used random assignment to compare the effect of multiple modalities for patient education and reinforcement.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Health technology is increasing and assisting in patient education, monitoring, and adherence to the collaborative plan of care. Nurses can be instrumental in starting or conducting telehealth programs, especially for patients with chronic illnesses who are at risk for complications for adverse drug events. More studies are needed to investigate the use of telehealth so that patients can stay at home and reduce repeated admissions to the hospital. These studies should have a larger sample and consist of a more diverse population. Telehealth technology is a major asset to ensure continuity of care.

exercise programs, such as yoga and tai chi, may help elevate mood, as well as improve mobility, in the early stage of the disease. Early in the disease process, collaborate with physical and occupational therapists to plan and implement a program to keep the patient mobile and flexible by incorporating active and passive range-of-motion (ROM) exercises, muscle stretching, and activity. Remind the patient to avoid concentrating on his or her feet when walking to prevent falls.

In collaboration with the rehabilitation team, encourage the patient to participate as much as possible in self-management, including ADLs. The team makes the environment conducive to independence in activity and as stress-free and safe as possible. Occupational and physical therapists provide training in ADLs and the use of adaptive devices, as needed, to facilitate independence. The occupational therapist (OT) evaluates the patient for the need for adaptive devices (e.g., special utensils for eating).

Patients with PD tend to not sleep well at night because of drug therapy and the disease itself. Some patients nap for short periods during the day and may not be aware that they have done so. This sleep misperception may put the patient at risk for injury. For example, he or she may fall asleep while driving an automobile. Therefore teach the patient and family to monitor the patient's sleeping pattern and discuss whether he or she can operate machinery or perform other potentially high-risk tasks safely.

Collaborate with the dietitian, if needed, to evaluate the patient's food intake and ability to eat. The patient's intake of calcium, vitamin K, and other nutrients is evaluated, especially in the patient who is susceptible to falling or has difficulty swallowing. The dietitian considers the patient's bowel habits and adjusts the diet if constipation occurs. If the patient has trouble swallowing, collaborate with the speech-language pathologist (SLP) for an extensive swallowing evaluation. Based on these findings and the patient interview, an individualized nutritional plan is developed. Usually a soft diet or thick, cold fluids, such as milk shakes, are more easily tolerated.

Small, frequent meals or a commercial powder, such as Thick-It, added to liquids may assist the patient who has difficulty swallowing. Elevate the patient's head to allow easier swallowing and prevent aspiration. Remind UAP and teach the family to be careful when serving or feeding the patient. The SLP can be very helpful in recommending specific feeding strategies. Be sure that UAP record food intake daily or as needed. The patient loses weight because of altered food intake and the increased number of calories burned secondary to muscle rigidity. Teach the family to weigh the patient once a week so that adjustments to the diet can be made as indicated. As the disease progresses and swallowing becomes more of a problem, supplemental feedings become the main source of nutrition to maintain weight, with meals and other foods taken as the patient can tolerate.

Collaborate with the SLP if the patient has speech difficulties. Together with the health care team, patient, and family, develop a communication plan. The SLP teaches exercises to strengthen muscles used for breathing, speech, and swallowing. Teach the patient to speak slowly and clearly and to pause and take deep breaths at times during each sentence. Teach the family the importance of avoiding unnecessary environmental noise to increase the listener's ability to hear and understand the patient. Ask the patient to repeat words that the listener does not understand. Have the listener watch the patient's lips and nonverbal expressions for cues as to the meaning of conversation. Remind the patient to organize his or her thoughts before speaking and use facial expression and gestures, if possible, to assist with communication. In addition, he or she should exaggerate words to increase the listener's ability to understand. If the patient cannot communicate verbally, he or she can use alternative methods of communication, such as a communication board, mechanical voice synthesizer, computer, or personal digital assistant (PDA). The SLP assesses the ability to use these devices before a decision is made about which method to use. Some older patients may not want to use electronic methods to communicate.

Psychosocial Support. Although not all patients with PD have dementia, impaired cognitive function and memory deficits are common. Some patients also experience changes in gait and tremors that are uncontrollable. In the late stages of the disease, they cannot move without assistance, have difficulty talking, have minimal facial expression, and may drool. Patients often state that they are embarrassed, and they tend to avoid social events or groups of people. They should not be forced into situations in which they feel ashamed of their appearance. Encourage them to undertake activities that do not require small-muscle dexterity, such as light, modified aerobic exercises.

Collaborate with the social worker or case manager to help the family with financial and health insurance issues, as well as respite care or permanent placement if needed. Refer the patient and family to social and state agencies, as well as support groups as needed (e.g., the National Parkinson Foundation [www.parkinson.org]).

Teach the family to emphasize the patient's abilities or strengths and provide positive reinforcement when he or she meets expected outcomes. The patient, the family or significant other, and the rehabilitation team mutually set realistic expected outcomes that can be achieved.

The long-term management of PD presents a special challenge in the home care setting. A case manager may be required to coordinate interdisciplinary care and provide support for the patient and family. Impaired mobility affects the patient's daily lifestyle, including sexuality. The case manager or home care nurse uses a holistic approach to ensure that psychosocial, as well as physical, needs are addressed.

As the disease progresses and drug effectiveness decreases, refer the family to a palliative care organization or hospice. Referral sources can be obtained from the Center to Advance Palliative Care (www.capc.org), which advocates applying the principles of palliative care to chronic disease. Chapter 9 discusses palliative and hospice care in detail.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Informatics

A 68-year-old man reports shaking of his arms, hands, and head that he cannot control. He has also noticed that he walks more slowly now and thought it was part of the aging process. He is afraid that he won't be able to continue his job as an auto body worker because he says he can't live on his monthly Social Security money. His mother had Parkinson disease for many years and died of complications before she was 70. He decided he should see his family practice physician to discuss the changes he is experiencing. He is accompanied by his wife of 45 years; they have two children who live out of town.

1. As the patient's intake nurse, what questions might you include in his history?
2. What physical assessment will you perform and why?
3. The physician places the patient on Sinemet. You realize that you need to look up information about this drug to provide accurate health teaching. What reliable resources might you use?
4. What health teaching will you need to provide for this patient and his wife regarding his drug and other aspects of his illness?

Surgical Management

Several options are available if surgery for the patient with PD is needed. Surgery is a last resort when drugs are not effective in symptom management. The most common surgeries are stereotactic pallidotomy and thalamotomy, although newer surgical procedures are being tried. Deep brain stimulation may also be done.

Stereotactic Pallidotomy/Thalamotomy. **Stereotactic pallidotomy** (opening into the pallidum within the corpus striatum) can be a very effective treatment for controlling the symptoms associated with PD. First, the target area within the pallidum is identified by a CT or MRI scan. Next, the stereotactic head frame is placed on the patient. IV sedation is given, and a burr hole is made into the cranium. An electrode or cylindric rod is inserted into the target area. The target area

receives a mild electrical stimulation, and the patient's reaction is assessed for reduction of tremor and rigidity. If this result does not occur or if unexpected visual, motor, or sensory symptoms appear, the probe is repositioned. When the probe is in the ideal location, a permanent lesion (scarring) is made to destroy the tissue. The patient is monitored in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) for about 1 hour and is then returned to the inpatient unit for continuing postoperative care.

As an alternative to stereotactic pallidotomy, the surgeon may perform a **thalamotomy** (opening into the thalamus of the brain for the stimulation) for treatment of tremor through thermocoagulation (high-frequency currents to destroy tissue) of brain cells. This procedure is effective for a limited number of patients. Because bilateral procedures have increased surgical complication rates, only unilateral (one-sided) surgery is done to benefit the side of the body that is most affected by the disease.

Deep Brain Stimulation. Deep brain stimulation (DBS) may be used when drug therapy is no longer effective in controlling the patient's symptoms. A thin electrode is implanted in the thalamus or subthalamus and then connected to a "pacemaker" that delivers electrical current to interfere with "tremor" cells. The electrodes are connected to an implantable pulse generator (IPG) that is placed underneath the skin in the patient's chest, similar to a cardiac pacemaker. The patient uses a magnet placed over the IPG to adjust the settings and to check the battery status. He or she continues on drug therapy after the procedure, but a smaller dosage may be needed to control symptoms.

Fetal Tissue Transplantation. Fetal tissue transplantation is an experimental and highly controversial ethical and political treatment. Fetal substantia nigra tissue, either human or pig, is transplanted into the caudate nucleus of the brain. Preliminary reports suggest that patients show clinical improvement in motor symptoms without dyskinesias after receiving the transplanted tissue. Long-term results are yet to be seen or studied.

ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Alzheimer's disease (AD), also known as *dementia*, *Alzheimer type (DAT)*, is a chronic, progressive, degenerative disease that accounts for 60% of the dementias occurring in people older than 65 years. It is less commonly seen in people in their 40s and 50s, which is referred to as *early dementia*, *Alzheimer type*, or *presenile dementia*, *Alzheimer type*. AD is manifested by loss of memory, judgment, and visuospatial perception and by a change in personality. Over time, the patient becomes increasingly cognitively impaired. Severe physical deterioration takes place, and death occurs as a result of complications of immobility.

The brain of the older adult usually weighs less and occupies less space in the cranial vault than does the brain of a younger person. Other changes in the brain that occur with aging include widening of the cerebral sulci, narrowing of the gyri, and enlargement of the ventricles. In the presence of AD, these normal changes are greatly accelerated. Brain weight is reduced further. Marked atrophy of the cerebral cortex and loss of cortical neurons occur. The cerebral sulci and fissures,

as well as the ventricles, are enlarged more than those of persons of the same age without AD. These areas of the brain are particularly affected:

- Precentral gyrus of the frontal lobe
- Superior temporal gyrus
- Hippocampus
- Substantia nigra

Microscopic changes of the brain found in people with AD include neurofibrillary tangles, amyloid-rich senile or neuritic plaques, and granulovascular degeneration. **Neurofibrillary tangles** are a classic finding at autopsy in the brains of patients with AD. They consist of tangled masses of fibrous tissue throughout the neurons. The same tangles and chemical changes are found in people with Down syndrome.

Neuritic plaques are composed of degenerating nerve terminals and are found particularly in the hippocampus, an important part of the limbic system. Deposited within the plaques are increased amounts of an abnormal protein called *beta amyloid*. These peptides have a tendency to accumulate and form the neurotoxic plaques found in the brain (McCance et al., 2010).

Although *vascular degeneration* occurs in the normally aging brain, its presence is significantly increased in patients with AD. Vascular degeneration accounts for at least partial loss of the ability of nerve cells to function properly. Cell deterioration and death may lead to hemorrhage. This pathologic change contributes to the mortality associated with this disorder.

In addition to the structural changes in the brain associated with AD, abnormalities in the neurotransmitters (acetylcholine [ACh], norepinephrine, dopamine, serotonin) may occur. High levels of beta amyloid are associated with reduced ACh by as much as 75%, which leads to a decrease in the amount of acetyltransferase in the hippocampus. This loss is major because the decrease in acetyltransferase interferes with cholinergic innervation to the cerebral cortex. This results in impaired cognition, recent memory, and the ability to acquire new memories. The exact role of reduced neurotransmitters in the development of AD is not well understood.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The exact cause of AD is unknown. It is well established that *age, gender (women more than men), and family history are the most important risk factors* (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Several other theories and risk factors have been studied, including chemical imbalances, environmental agents, immunologic changes, and ethnicity/race. Compared with Euro-Americans, African Americans have a greater risk for

developing the disease and Hispanics tend to develop the disease earlier than other groups. The cause of these differences is not yet known.

Environmental agents, especially certain viruses such as herpes zoster and herpes simplex, and toxic metals such as zinc and copper have also been suggested as causes. Patients who have experienced a head injury or repeated head trauma (e.g., boxers) may be more at risk for AD, and at an earlier age, than others.

Incidence/Prevalence

There is a significant increase in both the incidence and prevalence of AD after 65 years of age, although it may affect anyone older than 40 years. The number of people in the United States with AD is estimated at 4.5 million. By the year 2050, that number is projected to increase to 14 million (Yaari & Correy-Bloom, 2007). AD has a significant impact on health care costs, including direct and indirect medical and social service costs.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

There are no proven ways to prevent AD. Current research activities are focusing on eating a balanced diet, eating dark-colored fruits and vegetables, using soy products, and consuming sufficient amounts of folate and vitamins B₁₂, C, and E. These substances have been reported to decrease the risk for developing AD, but study results are inconclusive and inconsistent. Walking, swimming, and other exercise not only increase tone and muscle strength but also may decrease mental decline in AD, as well as other dementias.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

The patient with Alzheimer's disease (AD) often presents with cognitive impairment, although many other disorders, drugs, and environmental factors can cause changes in cognition as well. A thorough history and physical examination are necessary to differentiate AD from other, possibly reversible causes (Table 44-4). Obtain information from family members or significant others because the patient may be unaware of the problems, denying their existence or covering them up. However, it is interesting to note that family members often do not recognize or may deny early changes in their loved one.

The most important information to be obtained is the onset, duration, progression, and course of the symptoms. Question the patient and the family about changes in memory or increasing forgetfulness and about the ability to perform ADLs. Ask about current employment status, work history, and ability to fulfill household responsibilities, including cleaning, grocery shopping, and preparing meals. Inquire about changes in driving ability, ability to handle routine financial transactions, and language and communication skills. In addition, document any changes in personality and behavior.

There is increasing evidence that an altered sense of smell is associated with the development of AD. Therefore ask about changes in the ability to smell or changes in the sense

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

There is little doubt that many patients with AD had a genetic predisposition to the development of the disease, or familial AD (FAD). Most cases of early onset of AD are associated with genetic mutations.

Early-onset FAD (autosomal dominant AD) seems to be related to a rapid decrease in beta amyloid plaque formation, which is caused by defective genes, such as the beta-amyloid precursor gene (*APP*), the presenilin 1 gene (*PSEN1*), and the presenilin 2 gene (*PSEN2*). Late-stage AD research focuses on the role of apolipoprotein E (*APOE*) on chromosome 19 (Nussbaum et al., 2007; McCance et al., 2010). People with Down syndrome often develop dementia with clinical manifestations of AD. Down syndrome is a congenital condition resulting from abnormalities of chromosome 21.

TABLE 44-4 CAUSES OF COGNITIVE IMPAIRMENT IN THE OLDER ADULT

Neurologic Causes

- Vascular insufficiency
- Infections
- Trauma
- Tumors
- Normal-pressure hydrocephalus

Cardiovascular Causes

- Myocardial infarction
- Dysrhythmias
- Heart failure
- Cardiogenic shock
- Endocarditis

Pulmonary Causes

- Infection
- Pneumonia
- Hypoventilation

Metabolic Causes

- Electrolyte imbalance
- Acidosis/alkalosis
- Hypoglycemia/hyperglycemia
- Acute renal failure and chronic kidney disease
- Fluid volume deficit; urinary tract infections
- Hepatic failure

Drug Intoxication

- Misuse of prescribed medications
- Side effects of medications
- Incorrect use of over-the-counter medications
- Ingestion of heavy metals

Nutritional Deficiencies

- B vitamins
- Vitamin C
- Hypoproteinemia

Environmental Causes

- Hypothermia/hyperthermia
- Unfamiliar environment
- Sensory deprivation/overload

Psychological Causes

- Depression
- Anxiety
- Pain
- Fatigue
- Grief
- Paranoia

CHART 44-12 KEY FEATURES

Alzheimer's Disease**Early (Mild), or Stage I (first symptoms up to 4 years)**

- Independent in ADLs
- No social or employment problems initially
- Denies presence of symptoms
- Forgets names; misplaces household items
- Short-term memory loss; difficulty recalling new information
- Subtle changes in personality and behavior
- Loss of initiative; less engaged in social relationships
- Mild cognitive impairment, problems with judgment
- Decreased performance, especially when stressed
- Unable to travel alone to new destinations
- Decreased sense of smell

Middle (Moderate), or Stage II (2 to 3 years)

- Impairment of all cognitive functions
- Problems with handling or unable to handle money and finances
- Disorientation to time, place, and event
- Possible depression, agitated
- Increasingly dependent in ADLs
- Visuospatial deficits: difficulty driving, gets lost
- Speech and language deficits: less talkative, decrease in use of vocabulary, increasingly non-fluent, and eventually aphasic
- Incontinent
- Wandering; trouble sleeping

Late (Severe), or Stage III

- Completely incapacitated; bedridden
- Totally dependent in ADLs
- Motor and verbal skills lost
- General and focal neurologic deficits
- Agnosia (loss of facial recognition)

of smell. The history taking concludes with a review of the patient's medical history. Of particular importance is a history of head trauma, viral illness, or exposure to metal or toxic waste, as well as any family history of AD or Down syndrome.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Stages of Alzheimer's Disease. The clinical manifestations associated with AD can be grouped into three broad stages based on the progress of the disease (Chart 44-12). The patient does not necessarily progress from one stage to the next in an orderly fashion. A stage may be bypassed, or he or she may exhibit symptoms of one or several stages. Each patient exhibits different disease stages and clinical manifestations. Consequently, most authorities now use broader terms such as *early (mild)*, *middle (moderate)*, and *late (severe)* stages.

The primary focus of the neurologic assessment of patients with AD is to identify abnormalities in cognition, including language, personality, and behavior. Physical manifestations of neurologic impairment (seizures, tremors, or ataxia) tend to occur late in the disease process.

Changes in Cognition. **Cognition** refers to the ability of the brain to process, store, retrieve, and use information. Therefore assess the patient for deficits in these abilities:

- Attention and concentration
- Judgment and perception
- Learning and memory
- Communication and language
- Speed of information processing

One of the first symptoms of AD is short-term memory impairment. New memory and defects in information retrieval

result from dysfunction in the hippocampal, frontal, or parietal region. Alterations in communication abilities, such as **apraxia** (inability to use words or objects correctly), **aphasia** (inability to speak or understand), **anomia** (inability to find words), and **agnosia** (loss of sensory comprehension), are due to dysfunction of the temporal and parietal lobes. Frontal lobe impairment causes problems with judgment, an inability to make decisions, decreased attention span, and a decreased ability to concentrate. As the disease progresses to a later stage, the patient loses all cognitive abilities, is totally unable to communicate, and becomes less aware of the environment.

To assess cognitive status, the nurse or other health care provider can use one of several assessment tools. One of the most popular tools is Folstein's Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), also known as the "mini-mental." The MMSE assesses five major areas—orientation, registration, attention and calculation, recall, and speech-language (including reading). Fig. 44-2 lists examples of the questions asked on this test. The patient performs certain cognitive tasks that are scored and added together for a total score of 0 to 30. The lower the score is, the greater the severity of the dementia. It is not unusual for a patient with advanced AD to score below 5.

Although the MMSE is used frequently, the patient must be able to read. For the patient who cannot read or for a quicker screening test, the set test can be used, which is especially useful for the older adult. The patient is asked to name 10 items in each of four sets or categories: fruits, animals,

Orientation to Time

"What is the date?"

Registration

"Listen carefully, I am going to say three words. You say them back after I stop. Ready? Here they are... HOUSE (pause), CAR (pause), LAKE (pause). Now repeat those words back to me." [Repeat up to 5 times, but score only the first trial.]

Naming

"What is this?" [Point to a pencil or pen.]

Reading

"Please read this and do what it says." [Show examinee the words on the stimulus form.]

CLOSE YOUR EYES

A



FIG. 44-2 A, Examples of questions that are asked on the Mini-Mental State Examination. **B,** Copying is one of the tasks on the MMSE.

colors, and towns (FACT). Other categories can be used, if needed. The patient receives 1 point for each item for a possible maximum score of 40. Patients who score above 25 do not have dementia. Although this assessment is more comprehensive and easy to administer, it should not be used for patients with hearing impairments or speech and language problems.

Changes in Behavior and Personality. One of the most difficult aspects of AD that families, significant others, and health care professionals cope with is the behavioral changes that can occur in advanced disease. Assess the patient for:

- Aggressiveness, especially verbal and physical abusive tendencies
- Rapid mood swings
- Increased confusion at night or when light is not adequate (**sundowning**) or in excessively fatigued patients

The patient may wander and become lost or may go into other rooms to rummage through another's belongings. Hoarding or hiding objects is also common. For example, patients may hoard washcloths in the long-term care setting.

For some patients with dementia, emotional and behavioral problems occur with the primary disease. They may experience paranoia (suspicious behaviors), delusions, hallucinations, and depression. Document these behaviors, and ensure the patient's safety. (Refer to a mental health/behavior

health nursing textbook for a complete discussion of these disorders.)

Although drug therapy is not effective in treating dementia, certain drugs may help control the emotional and psychiatric manifestations (e.g., depression, anxiety, paranoia, aggression) associated with the primary disease.

Changes in Self-Management Skills. Observe for changes in the patient's self-management skills, such as:

- Decreased interest in personal appearance
- Selection of clothing that is inappropriate for the weather or event
- Loss of bowel and bladder control
- Decreased appetite or ability to eat

Over time, the patient becomes less mobile and muscle contractures develop. He or she eventually becomes totally immobile and requires total physical care. The patient is then unable to meet the human needs of mobility and cognition.

Psychosocial Assessment

In people with Alzheimer's disease (AD), the cognitive changes and biochemical and structural dysfunctions affect personality and behavior. In the early stage, patients often recognize that they are experiencing memory or cognitive changes and may attempt to hide the problems. They begin the grieving process because of anticipated loss,

experiencing denial, anger, bargaining, and depression at varying times. Older patients typically think the changes are part of “old age.”

When the patient and family receive the diagnosis, one or more family members may desire genetic testing. Support the patient's/family's decisions regarding testing, and assist them in finding credible resources for testing and professional genetics counseling.

As the disease progresses, patients begin to display major changes in emotional and behavioral affect. Of particular importance is the need for an assessment of the patients' reactions to changes in routine or environment. For example, a hospital admission is very traumatic for most patients with dementia. It is not unusual for them to exhibit a catastrophic response or overreact to any change by becoming excessively aggressive or abusive. This is referred to as *traumatic relocation syndrome*.

As patients become unaware of their behavior, the focus of the psychosocial assessment shifts to the family or significant others. The health care team assesses their ability to cope with the chronicity and progression of the disease and identifies possible support systems.

Laboratory Assessment

No laboratory test can confirm the diagnosis of AD. Definitive diagnosis is made on the basis of brain tissue examination at autopsy, which confirms the presence of neurofibrillary tangles and neuritic plaques.

Genetic testing, specifically for *apolipoprotein E4 (Apo E4)*, may be helpful as an ancillary test (not a predictive test) for the differential diagnosis of AD. *Amyloid beta protein precursor (soluble) (sBPP)* may be measured for patients to diagnose AD and other types of dementia. A decrease in the patient's sBPP in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) supports the diagnosis because the amyloid tends to deposit in the brain and is not circulating in the CSF (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

A variety of other laboratory tests may be performed to rule out other treatable causes of dementia or delirium, including:

- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Serum electrolyte levels, blood urea nitrogen, and glucose
- Vitamin B₁₂ levels
- Folate levels
- Thyroid and liver function tests
- Serologic test for syphilis
- Toxicity screening tests; heavy metal screen
- Alcohol screening tests

Imaging Assessment

A CT, PET, or SPECT scan may be performed to rule out other causes of disease. The CT scan typically shows cerebral atrophy and ventricular enlargement, wide sulci, and shrunken gyri in the later stages of the disease. An MRI scan can also rule out other causes of neurologic disease. The PET and SPECT scans show a significant decrease in metabolic activity in the brains of people with AD.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

The electroencephalogram (EEG) shows slow-wave delta activity seen in the second and third stages of AD. To more clearly identify the nature and extent of the patient's cognitive

impairment, the neurologist or psychologist administers several neuropsychological tests. The tests selected depend on clinician preference and the ability of the patient to participate in testing. All of the tests focus on cognitive ability and may be repeated over time to measure changes.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with Alzheimer's disease (AD) are:

1. Chronic Confusion related to neuronal degeneration in the brain
2. Risk for Injury related to wandering or elder abuse
3. Caregiver Role Strain related to the patient's prolonged progression of disability and the patient's increasing care needs

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The priority for interdisciplinary care is safety! Chronic confusion and physical deficits place the patient with AD at a high risk for injury.

Managing Chronic Confusion

Planning: Expected Outcomes. In the very early stages of the disease, the patient with AD is expected to maintain the ability to perform complex mental processes. As the disease progresses, patients cannot meet this outcome. Instead, the desired outcome is to maintain cognitive function for as long as possible to keep patients safe and increase their quality of life.

Interventions Although drug therapy may be used for patients with AD, nonpharmacologic interventions are the main focus of patient-centered collaborative management. Teach family members and significant others about the importance of being consistent in following the plan of care.

Nonpharmacologic Management. The health care provider should answer the patient's questions truthfully concerning the diagnosis of AD. In this way, the patient can more fully participate in the interdisciplinary plan of care. Interventions are the same whether he or she is cared for at home, in an adult day-care center, in an assisted-living center, in a long-term care facility, or in a hospital admitted with another medical condition. *The patient with memory problems always benefits best from a structured and consistent environment.*

Many factors, including physical illness and environmental factors, can exacerbate (worsen) the clinical manifestations of AD (Table 44-5). The patient with AD frequently has other medical problems such as cardiovascular disease, arthritis, renal insufficiency, and pulmonary disease. Changes in vision and hearing also may be present. Managing these conditions helps the patient's functional abilities.

TABLE 44-5 FACTORS THAT CAN WORSEN ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE

• Stroke	• Impaired renal function
• Subdural hematoma	• Impaired hepatic function
• Space-occupying lesion	• Infection
• Decrease in blood supply to the brain	• Impaired vision and hearing
• Myocardial infarction	• Sudden changes in surroundings
• Dysrhythmias	• Pain and discomfort
• Hypoglycemia	• Drugs
	• Physical or chemical restraint

Approaches to managing the patient who has Alzheimer's disease include:

- Cognitive stimulation and memory training
- Structuring the environment
- Orientation and validation therapy
- Promoting self-management
- Promoting bowel and bladder continence
- Promoting communication

The purpose of *cognitive stimulation and memory training* is to reinforce or promote desirable cognitive function and facilitate memory. An individualized cognitive therapy program may provide some benefit to the patient.

As the disease progresses, the patient may experience **prosopagnosia**, an inability to recognize oneself and other familiar faces. Encourage the family to provide pictures of family members and close friends that are labeled with the person's name on the picture. In addition, advise the family to reminisce with the patient about pleasant experiences from the past. Use *reminiscence therapy* while assisting the patient with ADLs or performing a treatment or assessment. Refer to a personal item in the room to help the patient begin to talk about its meaning in the present and in the past.

It is not unusual for the patient to talk to his or her image in the mirror. This behavior should be allowed as long as it is not harmful. If the patient becomes frightened by the mirror image, remove or cover the mirror. In some long-term care or assisted-living settings, a picture of the patient is placed on the room door to help with facial recognition and to help the patient locate his or her room. This picture also helps the staff locate the patient in case of elopement (running away).

Teach the family to keep environmental distractions and noise to a minimum. The patient's home, hospital room, or nursing home room should not have pictures on the wall or other decorations that could be misinterpreted as people or animals that could harm the patient. An abstract painting or wallpaper might look like a fire or an explosion and scare the patient. The room should have adequate, nonglare lighting and no potentially frightening shadows.

In addition to disturbed sleep, other negative effects of high noise levels include decreased nutritional intake, changes in blood pressure and pulse rates, and feelings of increased stress and anxiety. The patient with AD is especially susceptible to these changes and needs to have as much undisturbed sleep at night as possible. Fatigue increases confusion and behavioral manifestations such as agitation and aggressiveness.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When a patient with Alzheimer's disease is in a new setting or environment, collaborate with the staff and admitting department to select a room that is in the quietest area of the unit and away from obvious exits, if possible. A private room may be needed if the patient has a history of agitation or wandering. The television should remain off unless the patient turns it on or requests that it be turned on.

Objects such as furniture, a hairbrush, and eyeglasses should be kept in the same place. Establish a daily routine, and follow it as much as possible. Arrange for a communication board for scheduled activities and other information to promote orientation such as the day of the week, the month,

and the year. Pictures of people familiar to the patient can also be placed on this board.

Explain changes in routine to the patient before they occur, repeating the explanation immediately before the changes take place. Clocks and single-date calendars also help the patient maintain day-to-day orientation to the environment in the early stages of the disease process. *For the patient with early disease, reality orientation is usually appropriate.* Teach family members and health care staff to frequently reorient the patient to the environment. Remind the patient what day and time it is, where he or she is, and who you are.

For the patient in the later stages of AD, reality orientation does not work and often increases agitation. *The health care team uses validation therapy for the patient with moderate or severe AD. In validation therapy, the staff member recognizes and acknowledges the patient's feelings and concerns.* For example, if the patient is looking for a deceased mother, ask him or her to talk about what Mother looks like and what she might be wearing. This response does not argue with the patient but also does not reinforce the patient's belief that Mother is still living.

As the disease progresses, altered thought processes affect the *ability to perform ADLs*. Encourage the patient to perform as much self-care as possible and to maintain independence in daily living skills as long as possible. For example, in the home setting, complete clothing outfits that can be easily removed and put on (e.g., shirt, slacks, underwear, socks) and placed on a single hanger are preferred for patient selection. When possible, the patient should participate in meal preparation, grocery shopping, and other household routines. Many patients cannot make purposeful movements as the disease progresses.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client with Alzheimer's disease asks the nurse to find her mother, who is deceased. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Your mother died over 20 years ago."
- "I'll find your mother as soon as I finish passing meds."
- "What did your mother look like?"
- "I'll ask your daughter to find your mother."

Collaborate with the occupational and physical therapists to provide a complete evaluation and assistance in helping the patient become more independent. Adaptive devices, such as grab bars in the bathtub or shower area, an elevated commode, and adapted eating utensils, may enable him or her to maintain independence in grooming, toileting, and feeding. The physical therapist prescribes an exercise program to improve physical health and functionality.

The patient may remain continent of bowel and bladder for long periods if taken to the bathroom or given a bedpan or urinal every 2 hours. Toileting may be needed more often during the day and less frequently at night. Unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) or home caregiver encourages the patient to drink adequate fluids to promote optimal voiding. A patient may refuse to drink enough fluids because of a fear of incontinence. Assure the patient that he or she will be toileted on a regular schedule to prevent incontinent episodes.

When patients with AD are in the hospital or other unfamiliar place, they may get out of bed unassisted during the night and fall while trying to locate the bathroom. Do not use siderails unless absolutely necessary. If the patient climbs over the siderail and falls, the injury is likely to be worse than if the bed had been left in the lowest position and the siderails left down (Cotter & Evans, 2008). In both acute and long-term care settings, siderails may be considered a physical restraint and are not used unless they increase patient mobility. Chapter 3 discusses fall prevention in detail.

Maintain a clear path between the bed and bathroom at all times. For patients who are too weak to walk to the bathroom, a bedside commode may be used. Some patients may void in unusual places, such as the sink or a wastebasket. As a reminder of where they should toilet, place a picture of the commode on the bathroom door. Depending on written signs for identification is useless because most patients lose their ability to read as the disease progresses.

Use **redirection** by attracting the patient's attention to promote communication. Keep the environment as free from distractions as possible. Speak directly to the patient in a distinct manner. Sentences should be clear and short. Remind the patient to perform one task at a time, and allow sufficient time for completion. It may be necessary to break each task down into many small steps (Chart 44-13).

As the disease progresses, the patient is unable to perform tasks when asked. Show the patient what needs to be done, or provide cues to remind him or her how to perform the task. When possible, explain and demonstrate the task that the patient is asked to perform.

Patients with AD typically have specific speech and language problems, such as:

- **Aphasia** (difficulty speaking and understanding language)
- **Anomia** (difficulty finding words to name an object)
- **Apraxia** (difficulty recognizing words)

Recognize that emotional and physical behaviors may be a form of communication. Interpret the meaning of these behaviors to address them. For example, restlessness may indicate urinary retention, pain, infection, or hypoxia (lack of oxygen to the brain).

Drug Therapy. **Cholinesterase inhibitors** are drugs approved for treating AD symptoms. They work to improve

cholinergic neurotransmission in the brain by delaying the destruction of acetylcholine (ACh) by the enzyme *acetylcholinesterase*. This action slows the onset of cognitive decline in some patients. None of these drugs alters the course of the disease. Examples include donepezil (Aricept), galantamine (Reminyl), and rivastigmine (Exelon).

Memantine (Namenda) is the first of a new class of drugs that is a low to moderate affinity **N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist**. Overexcitation of NMDA receptors by the neurotransmitter *glutamate* may play a role in AD. This drug therefore blocks excess amounts of glutamate that can damage nerve cells. It is indicated for advanced AD and has been shown to slow the pace of deterioration. Namenda may help maintain patient function for a few months longer. Some patients also have improved memory and thinking skills. This drug can be given with donepezil (Aricept), a cholinesterase inhibitor.

Some patients with AD develop depression and may be treated with **antidepressants**. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), such as paroxetine (Paxil) and sertraline (Zoloft), are usually prescribed. Tricyclic antidepressants, such as amitriptyline (Elavil, Levate ☛), should not be used because of their anticholinergic effect, especially for older adults. Anticholinergic drugs frequently cause serious side effects, including increased confusion, urinary retention, and constipation.

Psychotropic drugs, also called *antipsychotic* or *neuroleptic drugs*, should be reserved for patients with emotional and behavioral health problems that sometimes accompany dementia, such as hallucinations and delusions. In clinical practice, however, these drugs are sometimes incorrectly used for agitation, combativeness, or restlessness. Psychotropic drugs are considered chemical restraints because they decrease mobility and patients' self-management ability. Therefore most geriatricians recommend that these drugs be used as a last resort and with caution in low doses for a specific emotional or behavioral health problem. The specific drug prescribed depends on side effects, the condition of the patient, and expected outcomes. Follow agency policy and The Joint Commission standards concerning the use of chemical restraints (National Patient Safety Goals).

Preventing Injury

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with Alzheimer's disease (AD) is expected to remain free from physical harm and not injure anyone else.

Interventions. Many patients with AD tend to wander and may easily become lost. In later stages of the disease, some patients may become severely agitated and physically or verbally abusive to others. Teach the family the importance of a patient identification badge or bracelet. The badge should include how to contact the primary caregiver. In an inpatient setting, check the patient frequently and place him or her in a room that can be monitored easily. The room should be away from exits and stairs. Some health care agencies place large stop signs or red tape on the floor in front of exits. Others have installed alarm systems to indicate when a patient is opening the door or getting out of a bed or chair.

Teach the family to enroll the patient in the Safe Return Program—a national, government-funded program of the Alzheimer's Association (www.alz.org) that assists in the identification and safe, timely return of people with

CHART 44-13 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Promoting Communication with the Patient with Advanced Alzheimer's Disease

- Ask simple, direct questions that require only a "yes" or "no" answer if the patient can communicate.
- Provide instructions with pictures in a place that the patient will see if he or she can read them.
- Use simple, short sentences and one-step instructions.
- Use gestures to help the patient understand what is being said.
- Validate the patient's feelings.
- Limit choices; too many choices cause frustration and increased confusion.
- Never assume that the patient is totally confused and cannot understand what is being communicated.
- Try to anticipate the patient's needs and interpret nonverbal communication.

dementia. The program includes registration of the patient and a 24-hour hotline to be called to assist in finding a lost patient. If a patient wanders and becomes lost, the family (or health care institution) should immediately notify the police department. An up-to-date picture of the patient makes it easier for local authorities, the public, and neighbors to identify the missing patient. Devices using radio wave beacons and a global positioning system (GPS) have been developed to help families and law enforcement officials find a lost patient more easily. These devices include shoes with a GPS unit implanted, jewelry that is hard to remove, and bracelets. Caution families that these devices are not foolproof. Just like cell phones, there are some areas where the signal from the patient may not be picked up easily if at all.

Restlessness may be decreased if the patient is taken for frequent walks. If the patient begins to wander, redirect him or her. For example, if the patient insists on going shopping for clothes, the patient is redirected to his or her closet to select clothing that will not be recognized as his or her own. This type of activity can be repeated a number of times because the patient has lost short-term memory. Best practices for preventing and managing wandering are listed in [Chart 44-14](#).

In any setting, keep the patient busy with structured activities. In a health care agency, an activity therapist or volunteer may work with patients as a group or individually to determine the type of activity that is appropriate for the stage of the disease. Puzzles, board games, and art activities are often appropriate. Music and art therapy are becoming very popular in acute and long-term care for patients with dementia.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

In inpatient health care agencies, apply physical restraints such as waist belts and geri-chairs with lapboards only as a last resort because they often increase patient restlessness and cause agitation. Federal regulations in long-term care facilities in the United States mandate that all residents have the right to be free of both physical and chemical restraints. In addition, all health care agencies accredited by The Joint Commission are required to use alternatives to restraints before resorting to any physical or chemical restraint.

CHART 44-14 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Approaches to Prevent and Manage Wandering in Hospitalized Patients

- Identify the patients most at risk for wandering through observation and history provided by family.
- Provide appropriate supervision, including frequent checks (especially at shift-change times).
- Place the patient in an area that provides maximum observation, but not in the nurses' station.
- Use family members, friends, volunteers, and sitters as needed to monitor the patient.
- Keep the patient away from stairs or elevators.
- Do not change rooms to prevent increasing confusion.
- Avoid physical or chemical restraints.
- Assess and treat pain.
- Use re-orientation methods and validation therapy, as appropriate.
- Provide frequent toileting and incontinence care as needed.
- If possible, prevent overstimulation, such as excessive noise; use soft music and nonglare lighting if possible.

Patients with AD may be injured because they cannot recognize objects or situations as harmful. Remove or secure all potentially dangerous objects (e.g., knives, drugs, cleaning solutions). Patients are often unaware that their driving ability is impaired and usually want to continue this activity even if their driver's license has been suspended or they are unsafe. Automobile keys must be secured, but the patient should be told why they were taken. (See [Chapter 3](#) for more discussion on older adult driving.)

Late in the disease process, the patient may experience seizure activity. If he or she is cared for at home, teach caregivers what action to take when a seizure occurs. (See discussion of [Interventions](#) on p. 933 in the [Seizures and Epilepsy](#) section.)

Talking calmly and softly and attempting to redirect the patient to a more positive behavior or activity are effective strategies when he or she is agitated. Use calm, positive statements, and reassure the patient that he or she is safe. Statements such as "I'm sorry that you are upset," "I know it's hard," and "I will have someone stay with you until you feel better" may help.

Actions to *avoid* when the patient is agitated include raising the voice, confrontation, arguing, reasoning, taking offense, or explaining. Teach the caregiver to not show alarm or make sudden movements out of the person's view. If the patient remains agitated, ensure his or her safety and leave the room after explaining that you will return later. Frequent visual checks must be done during this time. If the patient is connected to any type of tubing or other device, he or she may try to disconnect it or pull it out. These devices should be used cautiously in the patient with dementia. If IV access, for example, is needed, the catheter or cannula is placed in an area that the patient cannot easily see or it should be covered.

Another way to manage this problem is to provide a diversion. For example, if the patient is doing an activity or holding an item such as a stuffed animal or other special item, he or she might be less likely to pay attention to medical devices. Additional strategies to minimize behavioral problems, especially at home, are listed in [Table 44-6](#).

Drugs may be used only if other modalities fail to control the patient's agitation and the behavior may lead to the patient or other being harmed. For example, risperidone (Risperdal) and lorazepam (Ativan) should be used with caution because of their significant potential side effects (e.g., sedation, increased confusion).

Patients who are cared for at home are at high risk for neglect or abuse. The Joint Commission requires all patients to be assessed for neglect and abuse on admission to a health care facility. Patients with mild AD may not report these concerns for fear of retaliation. Those with severe AD may not have the ability to report the abuse. Asking questions such as "Who cooks for you?" "Do you get help when you need it?" or "Do you wait long for help to the bathroom?" may be less



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which nursing intervention is appropriate when caring for a client with Alzheimer's disease?

- Provide a large clock and calendar.
- Place the client in a geri-chair to prevent wandering.
- Insert a urinary catheter to prevent incontinence.
- Place the client in the nurses' station.

TABLE 44-6 MINIMIZING BEHAVIORAL PROBLEMS FOR PATIENTS WITH ALZHEIMER'S DISEASE AT HOME

Carefully evaluate the patient's environment.

- Ensure environment is safe:
 - Remove throw rugs.
 - Consider replacing tile floors with non-slippery floors.
 - Arrange furniture and room decorations to maximize the patient's safety when walking.
 - Minimize clutter in all rooms in and outside of the house.
 - Install nightlights in patient's room, bathroom, and hallway.
 - Install and maintain smoke alarms, fire alarms, and natural gas detectors.
- Install safety devices for the bathroom.
- Install alarm system or bells on outside doors; place safety locks on doors and gates.
- Ensure that door locks cannot be easily opened by the patient.

Assist the patient to remain oriented as long as possible.

- Place single-date calendars in patient's room and in kitchen.
- Use large-face clocks with a neutral background.

Communicate with the patient based on his or her ability to understand.

- As the disease progresses, use simple language and explain activity before the patient needs to carry it out.
- Break complex tasks down to simple steps.

Encourage the patient to be as independent as possible in ADLs.

- Place complete outfits for the day on hangers; have the patient select one to wear.
- Develop and maintain a predictable routine (e.g., meals, bedtime, morning routine).

When a problem behavior occurs, use distraction to divert patient to another activity.

Minimize excessive stimulation.

- Take the patient on outings when crowds are small.
- If crowds cannot be avoided, minimize the amount of time the patient is present in a crowd. For example, at family gatherings, provide a quiet room for the patient to rest throughout the visit.

Arrange for a day-care program if possible.

Register the patient with the Alzheimer's Association Safe Return Program (www.alz.org).

CHART 44-15 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Reducing Caregiver Stress**

- Maintain realistic expectations for the person with Alzheimer's disease (AD).
- Take each day one at a time.
- Try to find the positive aspects of each incident or situation.
- Use humor with the person who has AD.
- Use the resources of the Alzheimer's Association, including attending local support group meetings.
- Explore alternative care settings early in the disease process for possible use later.
- Establish advance directives with the AD patient early in the disease process.
- Set aside time each day for rest or recreation away from the patient, if possible.
- Seek respite care periodically for longer periods of time.
- Take care of yourself by watching your diet, exercising, and getting plenty of rest.
- Be realistic about what you or they can do, and accept help from family, friends, and community resources.
- Use relaxation techniques.

or her health care provider or should seek one on his or her own. It is not unusual for the caregiver to refuse to accept help from others, even for a few brief hours. Initially, the caregiver may be more comfortable accepting help for just a few minutes a day so he or she could shower, enjoy a cup of tea, or take a brief walk. Some caregivers find that eventually they need to place their loved one into a respite setting or unit so that they can re-energize.

Refer all families to their local chapter of the Alzheimer's Association (www.alz.org) in the United States or to the Alzheimer Society of Canada (www.alzheimer.ca). These organizations provide information and support services to patients and their families, including seminars, audiovisual aids, and publications.

Community-Based Care**Home Care Management**

AD is a chronic, progressive condition that eventually leaves the patient completely disoriented and totally dependent on others for all aspects of care. In the early stages, patients may be cared for at home with little need for outside intervention. Whenever possible, the patient and family should be assigned a case manager who can assess their needs for health care resources and find the best placement throughout the continuum of care.

The patient usually begins to withdraw from friends and social events as memory impairment and personality and behavior changes occur. The family may begin to decrease their own social activities as the demands of the patient's care take more of their time. Emphasize to the family the importance of maintaining their own social contacts and leisure activities. Many family members experience caregiver stress, which affects their physical, mental, and emotional health.

Chart 44-15 lists strategies for reducing caregiver stress. **Chapter 3** discusses caregiver role strain and interventions in more detail.

It is now possible in most areas of the United States and Canada for families to arrange respite care. The patient may

stressful for the patient to answer. **Chapter 3** discusses this problem in detail.

Managing Caregiver Role Strain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The family or other caregivers of the patient with Alzheimer's disease (AD) are expected to plan time to care for themselves to promote a reasonable quality of life and satisfaction.

Interventions. The patient with moderate or severe AD requires continual 24-hour supervision and caregiving. Severe cognitive changes leave the patient unable to manage finances, property, or personal care. The family needs to seek legal counsel regarding the patient's competency and the need to obtain guardianship or a durable medical power of attorney when necessary. Refer the family to the local AD support group for literature and information concerning the disease and related problems.

Family members and other caregivers must be aware of their own health and stress levels. Signs of stress include anger, social withdrawal, anxiety, depression, lack of concentration, sleepiness, irritability, and health problems. When signs of stress occur, the caregiver should be referred to his

be placed in a respite facility or nursing home for the weekend or for several weeks to give the family a rest from the constant care demands. The family may also be able to obtain respite care in the home through a home care agency or assisted-living facility. Remind the family that respite care is for a short period—it is not permanent placement. Some health care agencies have opened adult day-care centers or specialty units for patients with AD. In the day-care center, patients spend all or part of the day at the facility and participate in activities as their condition permits. Although these centers are usually open only on weekdays, this arrangement allows the caregiver to work or participate in other activities. If patients require 24-hour care, they may be placed in a specialty unit of a long-term care or assisted-living facility.

Teach the family how to be prepared in case the patient becomes restless, agitated, abusive, or combative. In addition, the family can learn how to use reality orientation or validation therapy, depending on the stage of the disease.

Teaching for Self-Management

Usually patients with AD are cared for in the home until late in the disease process unless they can afford private-pay care. Because health insurance coverage in the United States and family finances may not be sufficient to cover the services of a private duty nurse or home care aide, family members typically provide the care. The patient plan of care developed by the nurse or case manager, in conjunction with the family, must be reasonable and realistic for the family to implement.

Review how to assist with bathing, dressing, toileting, and other self-management activities. The occupational therapist teaches the family and the patient how to use adaptive equipment, such as a brace, a sling, a cane, or modified eating utensils. The patient may have difficulty chewing, swallowing, or tasting foods and may not be able to eat without assistance.

The family and the dietitian should develop a diet plan to increase the patient's nutritional intake. In the late stage of AD, the patient's intake often decreases and he or she loses weight.

Provide information to the family on what to do in the event of a seizure and how to protect the patient from injury. Instruct them to notify the health care provider if the seizure is prolonged or if the patient's seizure pattern changes.

Review with the family or other caregiver the name, time, and route of administration; the dosage; and the side effects of all drugs. Remind the family to check with the health care provider before using any over-the-counter drugs or herbs because they may interact with prescribed drug therapy.

Emphasis is placed on the need for the patient to have an established exercise program to maintain mobility for as long as possible, as well as to prevent complications of immobility. In collaboration with the family, the physical therapist (PT) develops an individualized exercise program. The PT may continue to work with the patient at home until goals are achieved, depending on the payer source.

Remind the family or other caregiver to take special precautions to maintain the patient safely at home. The environment must be uncluttered, consistent, and structured. All hazardous items (e.g., cooking range and oven, power tools) are removed, secured, or "locked out." All electrical sockets not in use should be covered with safety plugs. Teach families to install handrails and grab bars in the bathroom. Handrails should be along all stairways, and a guardrail should be placed around porches or open stairwells. Because the patient

may have a tendency to wander, especially at night, the family may want to install alarms to all outside doors, the basement, and the patient's bedroom. All outside and basement doors should have deadbolt locks to prevent the patient from going outside unsupervised. Remind the family to adjust the temperature of the water to prevent accidental burns. Nightlights should be used in the patient's bedroom, hallway, and bathroom to prevent fear and to help with orientation.

Health Care Resources

When the patient can no longer be cared for at home, referral to an assisted-living or long-term care facility may be needed. Early in the course of the disease, advise the family that placement might be needed in the late stages of the disease or sooner. This allows the family to begin to search for an appropriate facility before a crisis develops and immediate placement is needed. A number of facilities specialize in the care of patients with AD and other dementias. These units generally have a high staff-to-patient ratio and are architecturally designed to meet the special needs of this type of patient. The national office of the Alzheimer's Association publishes an outline of criteria for a dementia unit. In the advanced stage of the disease, the patient may need referral to hospice services for total care. (See the discussion of end-of-life and hospice care in Chapter 9.)

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with Alzheimer's disease (AD) based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient and/or family will:

- Have the ability to maintain complex mental processes (*early AD*) or maintain current cognitive status
- Remain free from injury and have a safe home environment
- Sleep through the night and be awake at appropriate times
- Meet basic human needs (e.g., nutrition, mobility)

The caregiver will have a positive perception of his or her health status and life circumstances. Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

HUNTINGTON DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Huntington disease (HD), sometimes referred to as *Huntington's disease*, is an hereditary disorder transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait at the time of conception. This movement disorder causes both neurologic and behavioral symptoms that usually begin between the ages of 30 and 50 years and worsen during the next 1 to 2 decades. Patients typically die from pneumonia, heart failure, or other complication of immobility (*Huntington's Disease Society of America [HDSA], 2010*).

It is estimated that 30,000 people in the United States have HD, and another 20,000 to 50,000 are thought to carry the gene (*HDSA, 2010*). Men and women are equally affected at a highly productive time in life. The clinical onset of HD is gradual. The two main symptoms of the disease are progressive mental status changes, leading to dementia, and

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Huntington disease is a single gene disorder caused by a mutation in the HD gene (*IT15*) located on chromosome 4. The mutation is a multiple repeat of the specific base triplet CAG, increasing the length of the gene. An autosomal dominant trait with high penetrance means that a person who inherits just one mutated allele has nearly a 100% chance of developing the disease (McCance et al., 2010). This gene mutation has different expressions, depending on whether it is inherited from the mother or the father. People who inherit the mutation from their father have an earlier onset and a shorter life expectancy than do those who inherit from their mother. In addition, there is some variation in the disease, depending on the size (length) of the mutation. The longer the mutation, the more severe the disease is at an earlier age.

choreiform movements (rapid, jerky movements) in the limbs, trunk, and facial muscles. Dementia is related to the destruction of neurons within the cerebral cortex. It may also be associated with excessive amounts of dopamine found within the cerebral cortex and limbic systems of those affected. Two structures within the basal ganglia are involved in the development of HD: the caudate nucleus and the putamen. Both structures have close connections to the cerebral cortex and are closely associated with neurotransmitters. Neurotransmitters are secreted at the synapse, or junction, of one neuron with another, and it is through their specific excitation or inhibition of neurons that fine, controlled, integrated motor activity occurs.

In HD, there is a decrease in the amount of *gamma-aminobutyric acid* (GABA), an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the basal ganglia. GABA depletion causes increased activity of the thalamus and other parts of the brain. There may also be an increase in *glutamate*, a major excitatory neurotransmitter. The result of these chemical changes in the brain is brisk, jerky, purposeless movements, particularly of the hands, face, tongue, and legs, which the patient cannot stop (McCance et al., 2010).

There are three stages of HD, each lasting roughly 5 years, corresponding to the average 15-year course of the disease. Stage 1 is the onset of neurologic or psychological symptoms. Stage 2 is characterized by an increasing dependence on others for care. Stage 3 results in loss of independent function.

The diagnosis of HD is made on the basis of a family history of the disease and clinical assessment. The triad of dominant inheritance, choreoathetosis (neuromuscular symptoms), and dementia is the hallmark of the disease. The symptoms exhibited by the patient vary in range and severity, age of onset, and rate of progression. Observe for clinical manifestations, which include chorea (jerky movements), poor balance, hesitant or explosive speech, dysphagia (difficulty swallowing), impaired respiration, and bowel and bladder incontinence. Mental status changes include decreased attention span, poor judgment, memory loss, personality

changes, and dementia (later in the disease process). Perform a complete neurologic assessment.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

There is no known cure or treatment for HD. The only way to prevent transmission of the gene is for those affected to avoid having biologic children. Genetic counseling is important for children of patients with the disease. People at risk for the disease can be tested to determine whether the gene mutation is present. Before the testing procedure is undertaken, counseling is necessary to ensure that the patient has voluntarily decided in favor of testing and is not being pressured by family or friends. In addition, counseling helps determine whether the benefits of knowing the results outweigh the risks of a positive result (e.g., depression or suicide).

The first drug to be approved to decrease chorea associated with HD is tetrabenazine (Xenazine). It is given orally and is thought to work by depleting the monoamines (e.g., dopamine, serotonin) from nerve terminals. In some patients, it may increase the risk for suicide ideations and depression. Be sure to teach them and their families to report early signs of depression, including sleeplessness, decreasing appetite, and mood changes.

In other patients, psychotropic agents may be used to manage movement abnormalities that interfere with ADLs or are functionally disabling. They are also used to help control agitation, hallucinations, or psychotic delusions. Drug therapy may be used to treat other symptoms such as depression, anxiety, or obsessive-compulsive behaviors. Many of the drugs used to treat HD may cause side effects that may be difficult to differentiate from signs of HD.

A number of clinical trials are being conducted to find other drugs or supplements that may decrease HD symptoms. Examples include the CoQ10 enzyme, growth factors, glutamate blockers, and antidepressants, such as sertraline (Zoloft).

The care of the patient with HD is managed by the collaborative efforts of the family and health care team and includes:

- Speech-language pathologist (SLP) who helps with communication, swallowing, and drooling
- Dietitian who plans meals based on the SLP's recommendations and the patient's likes and dislikes
- Physical and occupational therapists who determine exercise conditioning and assistive devices
- Nurses or home health care aides who provide supportive care
- Case manager and social worker who coordinate care and help with referrals to community resources (e.g., Huntington Disease Society of America [www.hdsa.org]) and health care agencies for placement as needed

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing impaired mobility and cognition as a result of an acute CNS infection or chronic brain disorder?

- Headache
- Acute or chronic confusion

- Sleepiness or lethargy
- Inability to perform ADLs
- Inability to ambulate or alteration in gait
- Continuing weight loss
- Inability to communicate effectively

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Report of photophobia or phonophobia
- One or more seizures
- Extremity tremors, rigidity, or jerky movements

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing impaired mobility and cognition as a result of an acute CNS infection or chronic brain disorder?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Assessing neurologic status, especially level of consciousness (LOC) and mental status
- Taking vital signs (high fever may indicate infection)
- Performing a comprehensive pain assessment
- Assessing ability to communicate
- Assessing nutritional status

Respond by:

- Notifying health care provider or Rapid Response Team if seizure or sudden change in LOC or mental status

- Ensuring an adequate airway
- Protecting patient from injury
- Managing pain
- Giving oxygen (for status epilepticus)
- Reorienting patient
- Assisting with ADLs if needed
- Collaborating with health care team members (e.g., PT, OT, SLP, dietitian)

On what should you REFLECT?

- Think about how you responded.
- Continue to monitor for improving mental status and changes in LOC.
- Assess triggers or other causes for acute event.
- Develop teaching plan for patient and family for self-management.
- Think about what resources the patient and family may need.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- For a patient having a tonic-clonic or complete partial seizure, protect him or her from injury.
- Implement interventions for seizures as listed in [Chart 44-5](#). Patients with status epilepticus have a life-threatening complication. Lorazepam and diazepam are the major drugs used for this emergency.
- Collaborate with the health care team in discharge planning and health teaching for patients who have chronic neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease.
- Help patients and families identify community resources for chronic brain disorders, including the Alzheimer's Association and the National Parkinson Foundation.
- Observe patients with Alzheimer's disease closely because they tend to wander and make inappropriate decisions. Safety is a priority for these patients.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients with migraine headaches about triggers that could cause an attack, such as caffeine, wine, and pickled products.
- Teach patients with cluster headaches about precipitating factors, such as anger episodes, excitement, and excessive physical activity.
- In addition to prescribed drug therapy, encourage patients with headaches to use complementary and alternative

therapies to help relieve pain, such as ice, darkened room, and relaxation techniques.

- Teach the patient with epilepsy the importance of continuing prescribed antiepileptic drugs (AEDs), even if he or she is seizure-free. Additional instructions for the patient and family are listed in [Chart 44-4](#).
- Encourage people who are in areas of high population density, such as college dormitories and crowded living areas, to become immunized against meningococcal meningitis. Teach older adults and those with chronic illness to have influenza and pneumonia vaccines.
- Teach people who enjoy outdoor activities to avoid areas where mosquitoes and ticks are likely to populate, especially near lakes and wooded areas. If they are in contact with these areas, remind them (especially older adults) to use insect repellent and keep skin exposure at a minimum.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Remind caregivers of patients with chronic neurologic diseases, such as Alzheimer's disease, to find ways to cope with their own stress to remain physically and psychologically healthy, as suggested in [Chart 44-15](#).
- Teach caregivers of patients with dementia to use validation therapy rather than reality orientation. Acknowledge the patient's feelings and concerns.
- Involve patients and families in developing a continuing plan of care to meet expected outcomes and maintain quality of life.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Adapt communication techniques for the patient with dementia as outlined in [Chart 44-13](#).

Physiological Integrity

- Assess for characteristic clinical manifestations in patients with classic migraine headaches as listed in [Chart 44-1](#).
- Recall that the pain of cluster headaches is usually accompanied by ipsilateral (same side) eye tearing, rhinorrhea, congestion, ptosis, facial sweating, eyelid edema, and/or miosis.
- Recognize that generalized seizures, such as the tonic-clonic seizure, involve both cerebral hemispheres. Partial seizures, also called *focal* or *local seizures*, usually involve only one hemisphere.
- During a seizure, document patient's body movements and other assessments as described in [Chart 44-6](#).
- Monitor for side and adverse effects of antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) as listed in [Chart 44-3](#).
- For patients who have had one or more seizures, place on "seizure precautions," which includes having oxygen and suctioning emergency equipment available, starting an IV access, and keeping the siderails up at all times. Indicate the reasons for the siderails to meet The Joint Commission requirements.
- Assess for clinical manifestations of meningitis as listed in [Chart 44-7](#).
- For patients with meningitis, carefully monitor neurologic status, including vital signs and neurovascular checks. Observe for signs and symptoms of increased intracranial pressure (ICP).
- Assess level of consciousness (LOC) as a priority in patients with encephalitis.
- Assess for key features of Parkinson disease as described in [Chart 44-10](#).
- Monitor for drug toxicity when patients are taking medications for Parkinson disease, especially levodopa combinations such as Sinemet. Delirium and decreased drug effectiveness are the most common indicators of toxicity.
- Keep in mind that newer surgical procedures, such as deep brain stimulation, and experimental stem cell therapies are becoming available as options to control symptoms of Parkinson disease.
- Assess cognitive and functional abilities of the patient with Alzheimer's disease, recognizing that it is a progressive dementia with several stages as listed in [Chart 44-12](#).
- Recall that Alzheimer's disease has a genetic predisposition.
- For patients with Alzheimer's disease, recall that the newer drugs seem to improve function and cognition (cholinesterase inhibitors, such as donepezil [Aricept]) or slow the disease process (Memantine) but they do not cure the disease.
- Administer psychotropic drugs to patients with Alzheimer's disease who also have mental/behavioral health problems, such as depression and severe agitation.
- Remember that Huntington disease is a chronic, hereditary illness that is transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait at the time of conception. Refer patients with the disease for genetic counseling.

Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Spinal Cord

Rachel L. Palmieri and Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Spinal Cord Structure
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Concept Map: Multiple Sclerosis
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Develop a teaching plan to educate the patient on ways to prevent back and neck pain, including the need for ergonomics in the workplace.
2. Prioritize the nursing care of the patient with a spinal cord injury (SCI).
3. Explain the importance of collaborating with the health care team when providing care for patients with SCI.
4. Plan how to integrate advance directives in the plan of care for patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis with respect to the patient's wishes.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Identify community resources for patients with spinal cord health problems and their families.
6. In collaboration with the health care team, develop a discharge plan for the patient and family after a lumbar or cervical laminectomy.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Describe the need to counsel patients with SCI and their partners on sexuality issues as needed.
8. Describe the impact of spinal cord health problems on patients and their families.

Physiological Integrity

9. Perform a comprehensive health assessment of the patient with a spinal cord injury.
10. Assess the patient with spinal cord health problems for mobility, gait, strength, and sensation.
11. Plan interventions to prevent complications of immobility when caring for the patient with spinal cord health problems.
12. Identify precautions to prevent injury when moving a patient with a spinal cord problem.
13. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology when caring for a patient having autonomic dysreflexia.
14. Explain the clinical manifestations and management options associated with spinal cord tumors.
15. Explain the pathophysiology of multiple sclerosis (MS) and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS).
16. Explain the role of drug therapy in managing patients with spinal cord problems.
17. Develop a postoperative plan of care for patients having spinal cord surgery, including monitoring for complications.

The spinal cord and its nerves play a major role in maintaining a person's needs for *mobility* and *sensation*. This chapter focuses on back pain, spinal cord injuries and tumors, and diseases that affect the spinal cord, such as multiple sclerosis (MS) and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS). These health

problems share a common characteristic of impaired *mobility* associated with decreased motor function. As a result, the patient's ability to perform ADLs is often affected. *Sensory* function also may be impaired, either temporarily or permanently. The spinal cord itself may be damaged, or the spinal

nerves leading from the cord to the extremities may be affected. In some cases, both the spinal cord and the nerves are involved.

BACK PAIN

Back pain is one of the most common reasons for visiting a health care provider. Disabling low back pain is the single greatest cause of injury in the working population. The lumbosacral (lower back) and cervical (neck) vertebrae are most commonly affected because these are the areas where the vertebral column is the most flexible. *Acute* back pain is usually self-limiting. If the pain continues for 3 months or if repeated episodes of pain occur, the patient has *chronic* back pain.

LUMBOSACRAL BACK PAIN (LOW BACK PAIN)

Pathophysiology

Lumbosacral back pain, referred to as **low back pain (LBP)**, is more common than cervical pain. Acute pain is caused by muscle strain or spasm, ligament sprain, disk (also spelled “disc”) degeneration (osteoarthritis), or herniation of the nucleus pulposus from the center of the disk. Herniated disks occur most often between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae (L4-5) but may occur at other levels. A bulging or **herniated nucleus pulposus (HNP)** in the lumbosacral area can press on the adjacent spinal nerve (usually the sciatic nerve), causing severe burning or stabbing pain down into the leg or foot (Fig. 45-1). The specific area of pain depends on the level of herniation. Painful muscle spasms of the affected leg also may occur.

In addition to pain, numbness and tingling may be felt in the affected leg because spinal nerves have both motor and sensory fibers. The HNP may press on the spinal cord itself, causing leg weakness and bowel and bladder dysfunction. Sacral spinal nerves are part of the reflex system for the bowel and bladder. They also contain parasympathetic nerve fibers, which help control bowel and bladder function.

Back pain may also be caused by **spondylolysis**, a defect in one of the vertebrae usually in the lumbar spine. **Spondylolisthesis** occurs when one vertebra slips forward on the one below it, often as a result of spondylolysis. This problem causes pressure on the nerve roots, leading to pain in the

lower back and into the buttocks. Pain or numbness may also occur in the leg and foot. **Spinal stenosis**, a narrowing of the spinal canal, nerve root canals, or intervertebral foramina is typically seen in people older than 50 years. This narrowing may be caused by infection, trauma, herniated disk, and arthritis and disk degeneration. Most adults older than 50 years have some degree of degenerative disk disease although they may not be symptomatic.

Acute back pain usually results from injury or trauma. The patient typically hyperflexes or twists the back during a vehicular crash, or the injury occurs when the patient lifts a heavy object. Obesity places increased stress on the back muscles and can cause back pain. Smoking has been linked to disk degeneration, possibly caused by constriction of blood vessels that supply the spine. Congenital spinal conditions and scoliosis can also lead to back discomfort. Older adults are at high risk for both acute and chronic LBP. Petite, Euro-American women are at high risk for vertebral compression fractures from osteoporosis, which cause severe pain and decreased mobility. **Chart 45-1** provides a list of specific factors that can cause low back pain in the older adult. Vertebral compression fractures are discussed in detail in **Chapter 54**.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Many of the problems related to acute back pain can be prevented by recognizing the cause of back pain and taking appropriate preventive measures. For example, good posture, proper lifting techniques, and exercise can significantly

CHART 45-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Factors Contributing to Low Back Pain

- Changes in support structures
 - Spinal stenosis
 - Hypertrophy of the intraspinal ligaments
 - Osteoarthritis
 - Osteoporosis
- Changes in vertebral support and malalignment
 - Scoliosis
 - Lordosis
- Vascular changes
 - Diminished blood supply to the spinal cord or cauda equina caused by arteriosclerosis
 - Blood dyscrasias
 - Intervertebral disk degeneration

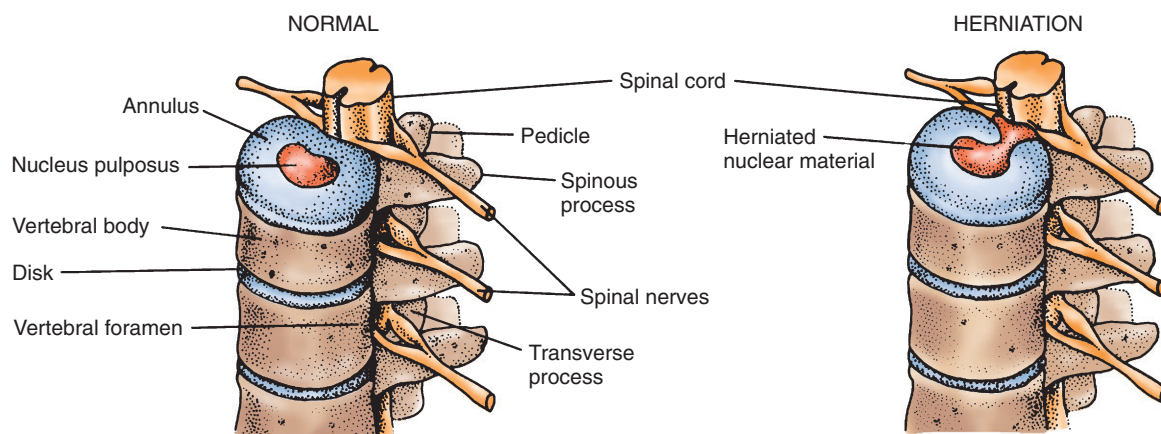


FIG. 45-1 Herniation of the nucleus pulposus.

decrease the incidence of low back pain. Nurses and other direct care staff members who move and lift patients are at a very high risk for LBP.

The U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) mandated that all industries develop and implement a plan to decrease musculoskeletal injuries among their workers. One way to meet this requirement is to develop an ergonomic plan for the workplace. **Ergonomics** is an applied science in which the workplace is designed to increase worker comfort (thus reducing injury) while increasing efficiency and productivity. An example is equipment design for office furniture that can help reduce back injuries. **Chart 45-2** summarizes various ways to help prevent LBP.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient's primary concern is continuous pain. Some patients have so much pain that they walk in a stiff, flexed posture, or they may be unable to bend at all. They may walk with a limp, indicating possible sciatic nerve impairment. Walking on the heels or toes often causes severe pain in the affected leg, the back, or both.

Conduct a complete pain assessment as discussed in **Chapter 5**. Record the patient's current pain score, as well as the worst and best score since the pain began. Ask if pain occurs or gets worse at night or during rest. Determine if a recent injury to the back has occurred. It is not unusual for the patient to say "I just turned around and felt my back go out."

Inspect the patient's back for vertebral alignment and for tenderness and swelling caused by muscle spasm. Painful muscle spasms in the back and affected leg are common because the compressed nerve becomes inflamed and irritates nearby muscle tissue. Patients report stabbing, continuous pain in the muscle closest to the affected disk. They often describe a sharp, burning posterior thigh or calf pain that may radiate to the ankle or toes along the path of one or more spinal nerves. Pain usually does not extend the entire length

of the limb. Patients may also report the same type of pain in the middle of one buttock. The pain is often aggravated by sneezing, coughing, or straining. Driving a vehicle is particularly painful.

Ask whether **paresthesia** (tingling sensation) or numbness is present in the involved leg. Both extremities may be checked for sensation by using a pin or paper clip and a cotton ball for comparison of light and deep touch. The patient may feel sensation in both legs but may experience a stronger sensation on the unaffected side. Those with severe problems may lose both bowel and bladder control from sacral spinal nerve involvement.

If the sciatic nerve is compressed, severe pain occurs when the patient's leg is held straight and lifted upward. Foot, ankle, and leg weakness may accompany lower back pain. To complete the neurologic assessment, evaluate the patient's muscle tone and strength. Muscles in the extremity or lower back can atrophy as a result of severe chronic back pain. The patient has difficulty with movement, and certain movements create more pain than others.

Other information that may indicate more serious neurologic problems includes a history of fever and chills, recurrent skin or urinary tract infections, progressive motor and sensory loss, and difficulty with urination or having a bowel movement (due to involvement of sacral nerves). Patients older than 50 years and those with osteoporosis, immunosuppression, long-term use of steroids, or IV drug abuse require more thorough diagnostic studies.

Diagnostic Assessment

Imaging studies for patients who report mild nonspecific back pain may not be done depending on the nature of the pain. Patients with severe or progressive neurologic deficits or who are thought to have other underlying conditions (e.g., cancer, infection) require complete diagnostic assessment. X-rays of the spine are important to exclude fracture, spondylosis, or neoplasm as the causative agent. Flexion-extension views can be very useful to show instability of the spine. The imaging studies of choice are magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computerized tomography (CT) scanning. The MRI is usually the first test of choice because it is noninvasive. A CT myelogram is done when a better delineation of the bony anatomy and the specific nerve root involvement is needed. For patients having surgery, some physicians request a diskogram of the affected disk, especially when the level of the injury is not certain.

Electro-diagnostic testing, such as electromyography (EMG) and nerve-conduction studies, may help distinguish motor neuron diseases from peripheral neuropathies and **radiculopathies** (spinal nerve root involvement). These tests are especially useful in chronic diseases of the spinal cord or associated nerves. **Chapter 43** describes these tests in more detail.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of patients with back pain varies with the severity and chronicity of the problem. Most patients with acute LBP need only a short-term treatment regimen. The health care provider starts with conservative measures. If these are unsuccessful, surgery may be needed. Some patients have continuous or intermittent chronic pain that must be managed for an extended period, perhaps for their entire lives.

CHART 45-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Low Back Pain and Injury

- Use proper body mechanics, with specific attention to bending, lifting, and sitting.
- Assess the need for assistance with your household chores or other activities.
- Participate in a regular exercise program, especially one that promotes back strengthening, such as swimming and walking.
- Do not wear high-heeled shoes.
- Use good posture when sitting, standing, and walking.
- Avoid prolonged sitting or standing. Use a footstool and ergonomic chairs and tables to lessen back strain. Be sure that equipment in the workplace is ergonomically designed to prevent injury.
- Keep weight within 10% of ideal body weight. Ensure adequate calcium intake.
- Stop smoking. If you are not able to stop, cut down on the number of cigarettes or decrease the use of other forms of tobacco.

Nonsurgical Management

Nonsurgical conservative management of LBP includes positioning, drug therapy, physical therapy, and weight control.

Acute Low Back Pain. The **Williams position** is typically more comfortable and therapeutic for the patient with LBP from a bulging or herniated disk. In this *position*, the patient lies in the semi-Fowler's position with a pillow under the knees to keep them flexed or sits in a recliner chair. This position relaxes the muscles of the lower back and relieves pressure on the spinal nerve root. Most patients also find that they need to change position frequently. Prolonged standing, sitting, or lying down increases back pain. If the patient must stand for a long time for work or other reason, shoe insoles or special floor pads may help decrease pain.

A firm mattress or a backboard placed under a soft mattress may provide back support for some patients. A flat position is sometimes helpful for the patient with a muscle injury. However, a flat position may aggravate the pain caused by disk trauma or disease.

The health care provider prescribes acetaminophen, muscle relaxants, and NSAIDs for acute LBP. Opioid analgesics are no more effective than nonsteroidal analgesics and should be avoided if at all possible. If they must be used, the course of therapy should be short to prevent adverse drug events. Short-term oral steroids in tapering doses may be prescribed for some patients to rapidly reduce inflammation.

Some patients may need an epidural injection for pain relief. A corticosteroid and an anesthetic are injected to reduce inflammation in the affected area. During a facet joint injection, fluoroscopy is used to insert a needle into the epidural space surrounding the facet and a corticosteroid is injected to coat the nerve roots and outside lining of the joints.

Chronic Low Back Pain. Patients having chronic low back pain may require an antiepileptic drug (AED) such as gabapentin (Neurontin) or oxcarbazepine (Trileptal) to treat neuropathic (chronic nerve) pain. The health care provider teaches the patient and/or family to start the patient on a low dose. The dose is gradually titrated until pain relief is achieved, the dose is not greater than the provider recommends, and the patient does not experience side effects. Patients should be monitored very carefully for symptoms of hyponatremia (low serum sodium), including generalized skeletal muscle weakness, headache, dizziness, and diarrhea. For older adults, observe for or teach family members to observe for falls due to dizziness and weakness, especially as the drug is increased.

For some patients, an AED is only partially effective for relieving back pain. The health care provider may add a tricyclic antidepressant, such as amitriptyline (Elavil, Levate 🍀) or desipramine (Norpramin, Pertofrane 🍀), to the drug regimen.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach older adults and their families to monitor for side and adverse effects of tricyclic antidepressants, including urinary retention (which can lead to infection), constipation, dry mouth, drowsiness, and acute confusion. Instruct them to notify their health care provider to report these changes, but do not stop these drugs abruptly.

Some patients with back pain may have temporary relief from *heat or cold* application. Heat increases blood flow to the affected area and promotes the healing of injured nerves.

Moist heat from heat packs or hot towels applied for 20 to 30 minutes at least four times per day is often recommended. Hot showers or baths may also be beneficial, although there is insufficient data to support the use of *superficial* heat/cold applications for low back pain (van Middelkoop et al., 2011).

The physical therapist (PT) may provide *deep* heat therapy, such as ultrasound treatments and diathermy. Some patients may receive **phonophoresis**, which is the application of a topical drug (e.g., lidocaine, hydrocortisone) followed by continuous ultrasound for 10 minutes. **Iontophoresis** is a similar procedure in which a small electrical current and dexamethasone are typically used. Both procedures push the medication into the subcutaneous tissue and provide longer-lasting pain relief.

The *physical therapist* also works with the patient to develop an individualized exercise program. The type of exercises prescribed depends on the location and nature of the injury and the type of pain. The patient does not begin exercises until acute pain is reduced by other means. Several specific exercises for LBP are listed in **Chart 45-3**. A systematic review of 37 studies showed that there is low quality evidence for the effectiveness of exercise for low back pain (van Middelkoop et al., 2011). Water therapy combined with exercise is helpful for some patients with chronic pain. The water also provides muscle resistance during exercise to prevent atrophy.

Weight control may help reduce chronic lower back pain by decreasing the strain on the vertebrae caused by excess weight. If the patient's weight exceeds the ideal by more than 10%, caloric restriction is recommended. Health care providers must be sensitive when reinforcing the need for patients to lose weight to prevent or to lessen chronic back pain. Positive reinforcement and self-esteem building are integral to the nutrition plan.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. The patient may find that nontraditional and complementary therapies provide short-term pain relief. Patients with low back muscle injuries or mild nerve involvement may find relief of pain

CHART 45-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Typical Exercises for Chronic or Postoperative Low Back Pain

Extension Exercises

- **Stomach lying:** Lie face down with a pillow under your chest; lift legs straight up (alternate legs) (may not be tolerated).
- **Upper trunk extension:** Lie face down with your arms at your sides, and lift your head and neck.
- **Prone push-ups:** Lie face down on a mat and, keeping your body stiff, push up to extend your arms.

Flexion Exercises

- **Pelvic tilt:** Lying on your back with your knees bent, tighten your abdominal muscles to push your lower back against the mat.
- **Semi-sit-ups:** Lying on your back with your knees bent, raise your upper body at a 45-degree angle and hold this position for 5 to 10 seconds.
- **Knee to chest:** Lying on your back with your knees bent, tighten your abdominal muscles to push your lower back against the mat. Now bring one or both knees to your chest and hold this position for 5 to 10 seconds.

from chiropractic therapies. The purpose of spinal manipulative therapy (SMT) is to promote alignment and prevent or treat pressure on nerve roots.

Imagery, acupuncture, music therapy, and herbal medicines are examples of other possible pain relief therapies for acute and chronic pain. Rubinstein et al. (2010) conducted a systematic review of research on the effectiveness of complementary and alternative medicine for chronic back pain. They concluded that acupuncture and herbal therapies provide short-term pain relief but spinal manipulation was not as effective. Chapters 2 and 5 describe most of these modalities in detail.

Surgical Management

Surgery is usually performed if conservative measures fail to relieve back pain or if neurologic deficits continue to progress. An orthopedic surgeon and/or neurosurgeon perform these surgeries. Two major types of surgery are used depending on the severity and exact location of pain: minimally invasive surgery (MIS) and conventional open surgical procedures. MIS is not done if the disk is pressing into the spinal cord (central cord involvement).

Preoperative Care. Preoperative care for the patient preparing for lumbar surgery is similar to that for any patient undergoing surgery (see Chapter 16). Teach the patient about postoperative expectations, including:

- Techniques to get into and out of bed
- Turning and moving in bed
- Sensations, such as numbness and tingling, that may occur in the affected leg or in both legs
- Home care activities and restrictions

Many patients are discharged to home within 23 hours or the next day after surgery. Therefore, before surgery, teach family members or other caregiver how to assist the patient and what restrictions the patient must follow at home.

A bone graft is done if the patient has a *spinal fusion*. The surgeon explains from where the bone for grafting will be obtained. The patient's own bone is used whenever possible, but additional bone from a bone bank may be needed. The surgeon provides verbal and written information about the type and the source of bone for surgery. Be sure that the patient signs an informed consent form before surgery. While the bone graft heals, the patient may wear a back orthotic device for 4 to 6 weeks after surgery, but this is not common practice today. Provide information about the importance of wearing the brace as instructed during the healing process, how to take it off and put it on while maintaining spinal alignment, and how to clean it.

Operative Procedures. *Minimally invasive surgeries (MISs)* have the advantage of being associated with less muscle injury, decreased blood loss, and decreased postoperative pain. The primary advantage of these surgical procedures is a shortened hospital stay and the possibility of an ambulatory (same-day) procedure. Spinal cord and nerve complications are also less likely. Several specific procedures are commonly performed.

A local anesthetic is given for the *microscopic (or surgical) endoscopic disectomy (MED)* or *percutaneous endoscopic disectomy (PED)*. The surgeon uses x-ray fluoroscopy to insert an endoscope (arthroscope) next to the affected disk. A special cutting tool or laser probe is threaded through the cannula for removal or destruction of the *disk pieces* that are

compressing the nerve root. A newer procedure combines the PED with *laser thermolysis* to also shrink the herniated disk before removal. Inpatient hospitalization is not necessary for this procedure.

A *microdisectomy* involves microscopic surgery directly through a 1-inch incision. This procedure allows easier identification of anatomic structures, improved precision in removing small fragments, and decreased tissue trauma and pain.

Laser-assisted laparoscopic lumbar disectomy combines a laser with modified standard disk instruments inserted through the laparoscope using an umbilical ("belly button") incision. The procedure may be used to treat herniated disks that are bulging but do not involve the vertebral canal. The primary risks of this surgery are infection and nerve root injury. The patient is typically discharged in 23 hours but may go home sooner.

The most common *conventional open procedures* are disectomy, laminectomy, and spinal fusion. These procedures involve a surgical incision to expose anatomic landmarks for extensive muscle and soft-tissue dissection. Major complications include nerve injuries, **diskitis** (disk inflammation), and dural tears (tears in the dura covering the spinal cord).

As the name implies, a *disectomy* is removal of a herniated disk. A *laminectomy* involves removal of part of the laminae and facet joints to obtain access to the disk space. When repeated laminectomies are performed or the spine is unstable, the surgeon may perform a **spinal fusion (arthrodesis)** to stabilize the affected area. Chips of bone are removed, typically from the iliac crest, or obtained from donor bone and are grafted between the vertebrae for support and to strengthen the back. Metal implants (usually titanium pins, screws, plates, or rods) may be required to ensure the fusion of the spine. Before closing, the surgeon may give an **intrathecal** (spinal) or epidural dose of long-acting morphine (Duramorph) to decrease postoperative pain.

Interbody cage fusion is a newer spinal implant. A cage-like device is implanted into the space where the disk was removed. Bone graft tissue is packed around the device. As with instrumentation and fusion, the bone graft grows into and around the cage and creates a stable spine at that level.

An adjunct for patients for whom fusion may be difficult is the placement of an implantable **direct current stimulation (DCS)** device to promote bone fusion. External bone stimulators may also be effective for healing bone fusions.

Postoperative Care. Postoperative care depends on the type of surgery that was performed. In the postanesthesia care unit (PACU), vital signs and level of consciousness are monitored frequently, the same as for any surgery. Best practices for PACU nursing care are discussed in Chapter 18.

Minimally Invasive Surgery. Patients go home the same day or the day after surgery with a Band-Aid or Steri-Strips over their small incision. Those having a microdisectomy may also have a clear or gauze dressing over the bandage. Most patients notice less pain immediately after surgery, but mild oral analgesics are needed for pain control while nerve tissue heals over the next few weeks. In collaboration with the health care provider and physical therapist, teach the patient to follow the prescribed exercise program, which begins immediately after discharge. Patients should start walking routinely every day. Complications of MIS are rare.

CHART 45-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing and Managing the Patient with Major Complications of Lumbar Spinal Surgery

COMPLICATION	ASSESSMENT/INTERVENTIONS
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leakage	Observe for clear fluid on or around the dressing. If leakage occurs, place patient flat. Report CSF leakage immediately to the surgeon. (The patient is usually kept on flat bedrest for several days while the dural tear heals.)
Fluid volume deficit	Monitor intake and output; monitor drain output, which should not be more than 250 mL in 8 hr during the first 24 hr. Monitor vital signs carefully for hypotension and tachycardia.
Acute urinary retention	Assist the patient to the bathroom or a bedside commode as soon as possible postoperatively. Assist male patients to stand at the bedside as soon as possible postoperatively.
Paralytic ileus	Monitor for flatus or stool. Assess for abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting.
Fat embolism syndrome (FES) (more common in people with spinal fusion)	Observe for and report chest pain, dyspnea, anxiety, and mental status changes (particularly common in older adults). Note petechiae around the neck, upper chest, buccal membrane, and conjunctiva. Monitor arterial blood gas values for decreased PaO ₂ .
Persistent or progressive lumbar radiculopathy (nerve root pain)	Report pain not responsive to opioids. Document the location and nature of pain. Administer analgesics as prescribed.
Infection (e.g., wound, diskitis, hematoma)	Monitor the patient's temperature carefully (a slight elevation is normal). Increased temperature elevation or a spike after the second postoperative day is possibly indicative of infection. Report increased pain or swelling at the wound site or in the legs. Give antibiotics as prescribed if infection is confirmed. Use clean technique for dressing changes.

Conventional Open Surgery. Early postoperative nursing care focuses on preventing and assessing complications that might occur in the first 24 to 48 hours (Chart 45-4). As for any patient undergoing surgery, take vital signs at least every 4 hours during the first 24 hours to assess for fever and for hypotension, which could indicate bleeding or severe pain. Perform a neurologic assessment every 4 hours. Of particular importance are movement, strength, and sensation in the extremities.

Carefully check the patient's ability to void. Pain and a flat position in bed make voiding difficult, especially for men. An inability to void may indicate damage to the sacral spinal nerves, which control the detrusor muscle in the bladder. Opioid analgesics have also been associated with difficulty voiding. The patient with a disectomy or laminectomy

typically gets out of bed with assistance on the evening of surgery, which may help with voiding.

Pain control may be achieved with patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with morphine. The route is changed to oral administration after the patient is able to take fluids or the next morning.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient after back surgery, inspect the surgical dressing for blood or any other type of drainage. Clear drainage may mean cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leakage. The loss of a large amount of fluid may cause the patient to report having a sudden headache. Report signs of any drainage to the surgeon immediately. Bulging at the incision site may be due to a CSF leak or a hematoma, both of which should also be reported to the surgeon.

Empty the surgical drain, usually a Jackson-Pratt or Hemovac, and record the amount of drainage every 8 hours. The surgeon usually removes the drain in 24 to 36 hours.

Correct turning of the patient in bed is especially important. Teach the patient to log roll every 2 hours from side to back and vice versa. In **log rolling**, the patient turns as a unit while his or her back is kept as straight as possible. A turning sheet may be used for obese patients. Either turning method may require additional assistance, depending on how much the patient can assist and on his or her weight. Instruct the patient to keep his or her back straight when getting out of bed. He or she should sit in a straight-back chair with the feet resting comfortably on the floor.

Teach the patient to deep breathe every 2 hours to prevent atelectasis (alveolar collapse) and pneumonia. Until the patient can ambulate independently, he or she wears graduated compression stockings, sequential compression devices (SCDs), or pneumatic compression boots (PCBs) to prevent deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and possible pulmonary emboli. *Older adults are especially likely to develop these complications of immobility.*

When a spinal fusion is performed in addition to a laminectomy, more care is taken with mobility and positioning. The nurse or unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) assist with log rolling the patient every 2 hours. For the conventional fusion, inspect both the iliac and spinal incision dressings for drainage and make sure they are intact. Remind the patient to avoid prolonged sitting or standing.

Community-Based Care

The patient with back pain who does not undergo surgery is typically managed at home. If back surgery is performed, the patient is usually discharged to home with support from family or significant others. For older adults without a community support system, a short-term stay in a nursing home or transitional care unit may be needed. Collaborate with the case manager or discharge planner, patient, and family to determine the most appropriate placement.

Home Care Management

Inform the patient and family members or significant other that the patient should have a firm mattress to provide support for the entire vertebral column. A bed board or large piece of plywood placed under a soft mattress may suffice. After *conventional open back surgery*, the patient may be limited in the number of times he or she is allowed to climb

CHART 45-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Use of Proper Body Positioning to Prevent Back Injury After Surgery

- When lifting an object, keep your back straight and do not bend at the waist; lift with your large thigh muscles.
- Avoid lifting heavy objects, such as furniture.
- Push objects rather than pull them.
- Do not twist your back.
- Avoid prolonged sitting or standing. Use a footstool to lessen back strain.
- Sit in chairs with good support. Sleep on a firm mattress.
- Avoid shoulder stooping; maintain proper posture.
- Do not walk or stand in high-heeled shoes for prolonged periods (for women).

stairs each day. However, daily walking is encouraged. The patient can usually return to work in 4 to 6 weeks, depending on the nature of the job and the extent and type of surgery. Some patients may not return for 3 to 6 months if their jobs are physically strenuous. Weight that may be lifted is initially limited to 5 pounds. The amount is gradually increased as healing occurs. Driving is not permitted for several weeks until the surgeon re-evaluates the patient.

Patients having any of the MIS procedures may resume normal activities within a few days up to 3 weeks after surgery, depending on the specific procedure that was done and the condition of the patient. He or she may take a shower on the third or fourth day after surgery. Teach the patient to remove the outer clear or gauze dressing, if any is in place, but leave the Steri-Strips in place for removal by the surgeon or until they fall off. Instruct the patient to contact the surgeon immediately if clear drainage seeps from the incision. Clear drainage usually indicates a meningeal tear and cerebrospinal fluid is leaking.

Teaching for Self-Management

The patient with an acute episode of back pain typically returns to his or her usual activities but may fear a recurrence. Remind the patient that he or she may never have another episode if caution is used. However, continuous or repeated pain can be frustrating and tiring. Encourage the patient and family members to plan short-term outcomes and take steps toward recovering slowly.

After surgery, in collaboration with the physical therapist, instruct the patient to:

- Continue with a weight-reduction diet, if needed.
- Stop smoking, if applicable.
- Use moist heat as needed.
- Perform strengthening exercises as instructed.

The physical therapist reviews and demonstrates the principles of body mechanics and muscle-strengthening exercises. The patient is then asked to demonstrate these principles (Chart 45-5). Formal physical therapy usually begins about 2 weeks after surgery. Teach the patient the importance of keeping all appointments and following the prescribed exercise plan.

The health care provider may want the patient to continue taking anti-inflammatory drugs and muscle relaxants. Remind the patient and family about the possible side effects of drugs and what to do if they occur.

In a few patients, back surgery is not successful. This situation, referred to as **failed back surgery syndrome (FBSS)**, is a complex combination of organic, psychological, and socioeconomic factors. Repeated surgical procedures often discourage these patients, who must continue pain management after multiple operations. Nerve blocks, implantable neurostimulators, and other chronic pain management modalities may be needed on a long-term basis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For patients who have a neurostimulator implanted in the epidural space, assess neurologic status below the level of insertion frequently. Monitor for early changes in sensation, movement, and muscle strength. Ensure that the patient can void without difficulty. *If any changes occur, document and report them immediately to the surgeon!*

Ziconotide (Prialt) is a drug used for severe chronic back pain and FBSS and is given by intrathecal (spinal) infusion with a surgically implanted pump. It is the first available drug in a new class called *N-type calcium channel blockers (NCCBs)*. NCCBs seem to selectively block calcium channels on those nerves that usually transmit pain signals to the brain. Ziconotide is also used for patients with cancer, acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and unremitting pain from other nervous system disorders.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Ziconotide can be given with opioid analgesics but should *not* be given to patients with severe mental health/behavioral health problems because it can cause psychosis. *If symptoms such as hallucinations and delusions occur, teach patients to stop the drug immediately and notify their health care provider.*

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

When providing discharge teaching to a client after a lumbar laminectomy, the nurse teaches him or her to call the surgeon immediately for which potential complication?

- Discomfort at the incision site
- Decreased appetite in the morning
- Slight redness and itching at the incision site
- Clear drainage from the incision site

Health Care Resources

Assist the patient in identifying support systems (e.g., family, church groups, clubs) after back surgery or FBSS. For example, a spouse may help the patient with exercises or perform the exercises with the patient. Members of a church group may help run errands and do household chores.

The patient with back pain may continue physical therapy on an ambulatory basis after discharge. For unresolved pain, the patient may be referred to pain specialists or clinics, which are usually found in large metropolitan hospitals. A case manager may be assigned to the patient to help with resource management and utilization.

CERVICAL NECK PAIN

Pathophysiology

Cervical neck pain most often results from a bulging or herniation of the nucleus pulposus (HNP) in an intervertebral disk. As seen in Fig. 45-1, the disk tends to herniate laterally where the annulus fibrosus is weakest and the posterior longitudinal ligament is thinned. The result is spinal nerve root compression with resulting motor and sensory manifestations, typically in the neck, upper back (over the shoulder), and down the affected arm. The disk between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae (C5-6) is affected most often.

If the disk does not herniate, nerve compression may be caused by osteophyte (bony spur) formation from osteoarthritis. The osteophyte presses on the intervertebral foramen, which results in a narrowing of the disk and pressure on the nerve root. As with sciatic nerve compression, the patient with cervical nerve compression may have either continuous or intermittent chronic pain. When the disk herniates centrally, pressure on the spinal cord occurs.

Cervical pain—acute or chronic—may also occur from muscle strain, ligament sprain resulting from aging, poor posture, lifting, tumor, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, or infection. The typical history of the patient includes a report of pain when moving the neck, which radiates to the shoulder and down the arm. The pain may interrupt sleep and may be accompanied by a headache or numbness and tingling in the affected arm. To determine the exact cause of the pain, a number of diagnostic tests may be used, including:

- Plain x-rays (show general arthritis changes and bony alignment)
- Computerized tomography (CT) scan (shows spinal bones, nerves, disks, and ligaments)
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) (provides images of the spinal tissue, bones, spinal cord, nerves, ligaments, musculature, and disks)
- Bone scan (shows bone changes by injecting radioactive tracers, which attach to areas of increased bone production or show increased vascularity associated with tumor or infection)
- Myelogram/post-myelogram CT (evaluates nerve root lesions and any other mass lesion or infection that is within or impinging on the thecal sac)
- Electromyography/nerve conduction studies (helps differentiate cervical radiculopathy, ulnar or radial neuropathy, carpal tunnel syndrome, or other peripheral nerve problems)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Conservative treatment for acute neck pain is the same as described for low back pain except the exercises focus on the shoulders and neck. The physical therapist teaches the patient the correct techniques for performing “shoulder shrug,” “shoulder squeeze,” and “seated rowing.” If these treatments do not work, some health care providers prescribe a soft collar to stabilize the neck, especially at night. Using the collar longer than 10 days leads to increased pain and decreased muscle strength and range of motion. For that reason, some health care providers do not recommend collars for cervical disk problems.

CHART 45-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient After an Anterior Cervical Discectomy and Fusion

Postoperative Interventions

- Assess **a**irway, **b**reathing, and **c**irculation (ABCs) (first priority!).
- Check for bleeding and drainage at the incision site.
- Monitor vital signs and neurologic status frequently.
- Check for swallowing ability.
- Monitor intake and output.
- Assess the patient's ability to void (may be a problem secondary to opiates).
- Manage pain adequately.
- Assist the patient with ambulation within a few hours of surgery, if he or she is able.

Discharge Teaching

- Be sure that someone stays with the patient for the first few days after surgery.
- Review drug therapy.
- Teach care of the incision.
- Review activity restrictions:
 - No lifting
 - No driving until physician permission
 - No strenuous activities
- Walk every day.
- Call the surgeon if symptoms of pain, numbness, and tingling worsen or if swallowing becomes difficult.
- Wear brace or collar per surgeon's prescription

If conservative treatment is ineffective, surgery may be required, most often using a *conventional open surgical approach*. A neurosurgeon usually performs this surgery because of the complexity of the nerves and other structures in that area of the spine. Depending on the cause and the location of the herniation, either an anterior or posterior approach is used. An anterior cervical discectomy and fusion (ACDF) is commonly performed. The patient is fitted with a large neck brace before surgery. Routine preoperative and postoperative care is the same as described in [Chapters 16 and 18](#).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The priority for care in the immediate postoperative period after an ACDF is maintaining an airway and ensuring that the patient has no problem with breathing. Swelling from the surgery can narrow the trachea, causing a partial obstruction.

[Chart 45-6](#) summarizes best practices for postoperative care and discharge planning. Complications of ACDF can occur from the brace or the surgery itself. The initial brace is worn for 4 to 6 weeks, depending on the patient. When it is removed, a soft collar is worn for several more weeks, or longer if needed. Potential complications of the anterior surgical approach can be found in [Chart 45-7](#).

Some patients may be candidates for minimally invasive surgery (MIS), such as percutaneous cervical discectomy through an endoscope, with or without laser thermolysis to shrink the herniated portion of the disk. The care for these patients is very similar to that for the patient with low back pain who has MIS (see discussion of surgical management of patients with low back pain on p. 963).

CHART 45-7 KEY FEATURES

Postoperative Complications of Anterior Cervical Discectomy and Fusion

- Hoarseness due to laryngeal injury; may be temporary or permanent
- Temporary dysphagia; may last few days to several months; usually not severe
- Esophageal, tracheal, or vertebral artery injury
- Wound infection
- Injury to the spinal cord or nerve roots
- Dura mater tears with associated cerebrospinal fluid leaks
- Pseudoarthrosis caused by nonunion of fusion
- Graft and screw loosening if a fusion was performed

SPINAL CORD INJURY

Medical-surgical nurses do not usually care for a patient with an *acute* spinal cord injury (SCI). However, a patient may be admitted to a medical-surgical unit for complication of the injury or other medical conditions. Caring for a patient with an SCI requires a patient-centered collaborative approach and involves nearly every health care team member to help meet the patient's expected outcomes.

Despite increased awareness and newer treatments for SCI, the effects of spinal trauma cannot be reversed. However, research continues to find ways to decrease the devastating effects of paralysis. A combination approach of cell transplant, growth of new neurons, drug therapy, and surgery may be the key to restoring some if not all of the patient's lost motor and sensory function.

Pathophysiology

Loss of motor function (*mobility*), *sensation*, reflex activity, and bowel and bladder control often result from an SCI. In addition, the patient may experience significant behavior and emotional problems as a result of changes in body image, role performance, and self-concept.

The SCIs are classified as complete or incomplete. A **complete spinal cord injury** is one in which the spinal cord has been severed or damaged in a way that eliminates all innervation below the level of the injury. Injuries that allow some function or movement below the level of the injury are described as an **incomplete spinal cord injury**. Incomplete injuries are more common than complete SCIs.

Mechanisms of Injury

When enough force is applied to the spinal cord, the resulting damage causes many neurologic deficits. Sources of force include direct injury to the vertebral column (fracture, dislocation, and subluxation [partial dislocation]) or penetrating trauma from violence (gunshot or knife wounds). Although in some cases the cord itself may remain intact, at other times the cord undergoes a destructive process caused by a contusion (bruise), compression, laceration, or transection (severing of the cord, either complete or incomplete) (Nayduch, 2010).

The causes of SCI can be divided into primary and secondary mechanisms of injury. Four *primary* mechanisms may result in an SCI:

- Hyperflexion
- Hyperextension

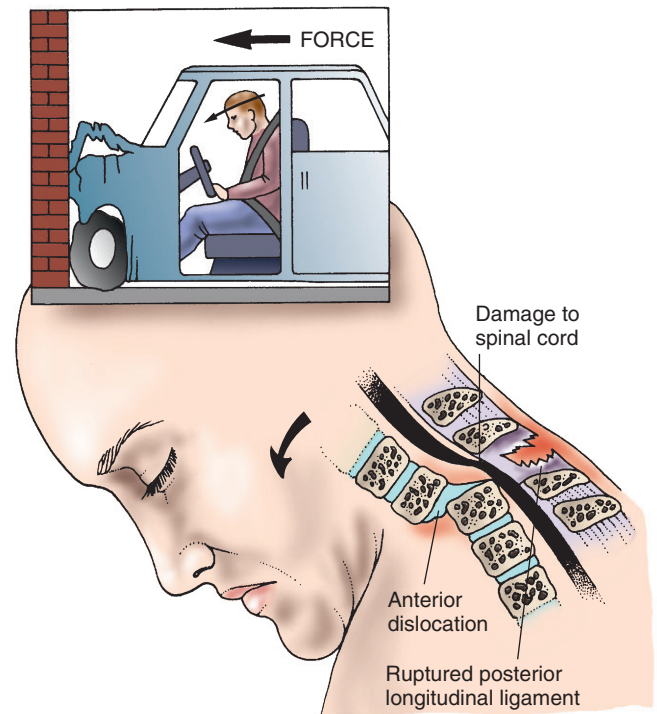


FIG. 45-2 Hyperflexion injury of the cervical spine.

- Axial loading, or vertical compression
- Excessive rotation

Penetrating injuries to the cord may also occur.

A **hyperflexion** injury occurs when the head is suddenly and forcefully accelerated (moved) forward, causing extreme flexion of the neck (Fig. 45-2). This type of injury often occurs in head-on vehicle collisions and diving accidents. Flexion injury to the lower thoracic and lumbar spine may occur when the trunk is suddenly flexed on itself, such as occurs in a fall on the buttocks. The posterior ligaments can be stretched or torn, or the vertebrae may fracture or dislocate. Either process may damage the spinal cord, causing hemorrhage, edema, and necrosis.

Hyperextension injuries occur most often in vehicle collisions in which the vehicle is struck from behind or during falls when the patient's chin is struck (Fig. 45-3). The head is suddenly accelerated and then decelerated. This stretches or tears the anterior longitudinal ligament, fractures or subluxates the vertebrae, and perhaps ruptures an intervertebral disk. As with flexion injuries, the spinal cord may easily be damaged.

Diving accidents, falls on the buttocks, or a jump in which a person lands on the feet can cause many of the injuries attributable to **axial loading** (vertical compression) (Fig. 45-4). A blow to the top of the head can cause the vertebrae to shatter. Pieces of bone enter the spinal canal and damage the cord. **Rotation** injuries are caused by turning the head beyond the normal range.

Penetrating injuries to the spinal cord are classified by the speed of the object (e.g., knife, bullet) causing the injury. Low-speed or low-impact injuries cause damage directly at the site or local damage to the spinal cord or spinal nerves. In contrast, high-speed injuries that occur from gunshot wounds cause both direct and indirect damage.

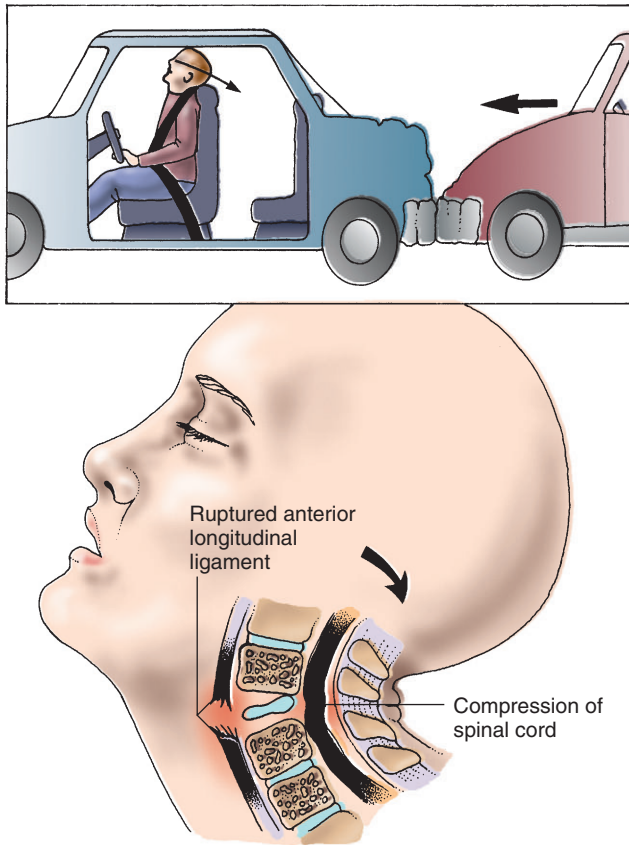


FIG. 45-3 Hyperextension injury of the cervical spine.

Secondary injury worsens the primary injury. Secondary injuries include:

- Hemorrhage
- Ischemia (lack of blood flow)
- Hypovolemia (decreased circulating blood volume)
- Neurogenic shock (a *medical emergency*)

The spinal cord may be contused, lacerated, or compressed by the injury. Petechial hemorrhage into the central gray matter and later into the white matter may result. Edema occurs when the cord is compressed by hemorrhage or bony fragments. Hemorrhage and loss of blood vessel tone (dilation) after *severe* cord injury may result in hypovolemia. In some patients, especially those with cervical spine injury, a type of hypovolemic shock called *neurogenic shock* may occur (McCance et al., 2010).

Etiology

Trauma is the leading cause of spinal cord injuries (SCIs); almost half result from motor vehicle crashes. The second leading cause is falls, followed by acts of violence (usually gunshot wounds [GSWs]) and recreational sports accidents (National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center, 2010). Falls are particularly likely among older adults. Spinal cord damage in adults can also result from diseases such as benign or malignant tumors.

Incidence/Prevalence

According to the National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center (2010), approximately 12,000 new SCIs occur every year in the United States. Almost 81% of all SCIs occur in

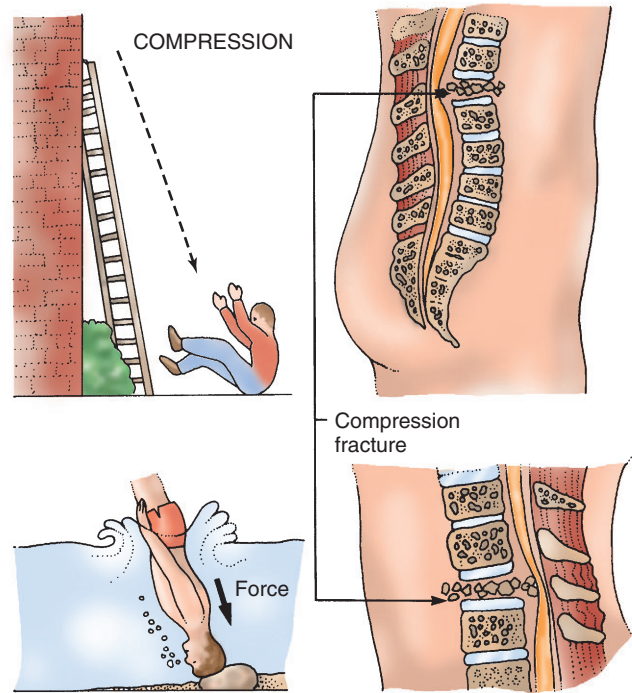


FIG. 45-4 Axial loading (vertical compression) injury of the cervical spine and the lumbar spine.

young males, with the majority being Euro-American. Cervical cord injuries are more common than thoracic or lumbar cord injuries.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When obtaining a history from a patient with an SCI, gather as much data as possible about how the accident occurred and the probable mechanism of injury. Questions include the location and position of the patient immediately after the injury, the symptoms that occurred after the injury, and the changes that have occurred since the initial signs and symptoms. If possible, ask prehospital rescue personnel about the type of immobilization devices used and whether any problems occurred during stabilization and transport to the hospital. Review the patient's medical record regarding the treatment given at the scene of injury or in the emergency department (ED) (e.g., drugs, IV fluids). Communicate with the ED nurse as he or she "hands off" the patient. Use the **s**ituation, **b**ackground, **a**ssessment, **r**ecommendation (SBAR) communication technique to collect valuable information for continuing patient care (per The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals). (See Chapter 1 for how to use SBAR.)

Obtain the patient's medical history, including a history of arthritis of the spine, congenital deformities, osteoporosis or osteomyelitis, cancer, and previous injury or surgery of the neck or back. These health problems may cause or contribute to an SCI. A detailed history of any respiratory problems is

particularly important if the patient has experienced a cervical SCI.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Initial Assessment. Assessing the ABCs (airway, breathing, circulation) is the priority for any trauma patient. *Therefore the first priority for the patient with an SCI is to assess the patient's airway, breathing pattern, and circulation status.* The airway may be compromised because of foreign body obstruction from the tongue or teeth due to facial trauma, injury to the larynx, or mandibular (jaw) fracture. After an airway is established, assess the patient's breathing pattern. The patient with a cervical SCI is at high risk for respiratory compromise because the cervical spinal nerves (C3-5) innervate the phrenic nerve, which controls the diaphragm. A significant head injury, pneumothorax (air in the chest cavity), hemothorax (blood in the chest cavity), and/or fractured ribs may also cause respiratory distress. Injuries to the occiput (back of the head) and C2 are more likely to occur in the older adult who fell from a low height. Endotracheal intubation with mechanical ventilation may be necessary to prevent respiratory arrest.

Assess for indications of intra-abdominal hemorrhage or hemorrhage or bleeding around fracture sites. Indicators of hemorrhage include hypotension and tachycardia with a weak and thready pulse.

Use the Glasgow Coma Scale (see Chapter 43) or other agency-approved assessment tool to assess the patient's level of consciousness (LOC). Cognitive impairment as a result of an associated traumatic brain injury (TBI) or substance abuse is common in patients with traumatic SCIs. Perform a detailed assessment of the patient's motor and sensory status to assist in determining the level of injury and serve as baseline data for future comparison. The level of injury is the lowest neurologic segment with intact or normal motor and sensory function. **Tetraplegia** (also called *quadriplegia*) (paralysis) and **quadripareisis** (weakness) involve all four extremities, as seen with cervical cord and upper thoracic injury. **Paraplegia** (paralysis) and **paraparesis** (weakness) involve only the lower extremities, as seen in lower thoracic and lumbosacral injuries or lesions.

Spinal shock, also called **spinal shock syndrome**, occurs immediately as the cord's response to the injury. The patient has complete but temporary loss of motor, sensory, reflex, and autonomic function that often lasts less than 48 hours but may continue for several weeks (McCance et al., 2010). Muscle spasticity, reflex activity, and bladder function begin in patients with cervical or high thoracic injuries when spinal shock is resolved.

Sensory and Motor Assessment. With a complete SCI, changes below the level of the injury include:

- Absence of tactile sensation
- Flaccid paralysis (inability to move) of all voluntary muscles

Sensation is carried from the peripheral nerves to the spinal cord and up to the cerebral cortex through several specific tracts. Injury to the spinal cord may prevent those impulses from reaching the brain. To test sensory abilities, ask the patient to close his or her eyes. Touch the skin with a clean safety pin or cotton-tipped applicator, and ask whether he or she can feel the pinprick or light touch. Compare bilateral responses. Follow the sensory distribution of the skin

dermatomes (see Fig. 43-5 in Chapter 43), with the examination beginning in the area of reported loss of sensation and ending where sensation becomes normal. For example, sensation of the top of the foot and calf of the leg is spinal skin segment (dermatome) levels L3, L4, and L5. The area at the level of the umbilicus is T10, the clavicle (collarbone) is C3 or C4, and finger sensation is C7 and C8. The patient may report a complete sensory loss, **hypoesthesia** (decreased sensation), or **hyperesthesia** (increased sensation).

In addition to performing a routine motor evaluation of the patient, selected muscles are tested in a more systematic fashion (Chart 45-8). Many scales are available to measure motor function. The American Spinal Injury Association (ASIA) recommends a six-point grading scale, with 0 being no movement and 5 being normal strength against full resistance (see Table 52-2 in Chapter 52). Ask the patient to flex and extend the elbows, elevate both arms off the bed, flex and extend the wrists and fingers, and touch each finger to the thumb. Patients with spinal injuries at the fifth or sixth cervical vertebra often can flex but not extend their arms. Observe the patient's ability to move the lower extremities. Ask him or her to wiggle the toes, flex and extend the feet and knees, and move one or both hips.

The advanced practice nurse or health care provider may also test deep tendon reflexes (DTRs), including the biceps (C5), triceps (C7), patella (L3), and ankle (S1). It is not unusual for these reflexes, as well as all movement or sensation, to be absent immediately after the injury because of spinal shock. After shock has resolved, the reflexes may return if the lesion is incomplete or involves upper motor neurons.

Cardiovascular and Respiratory Assessment. Cardiovascular dysfunction results from disruption of sympathetic fibers of the autonomic nervous system (ANS), especially if the injury is above the sixth thoracic vertebra. Bradycardia, hypotension, and hypothermia occur because of loss of sympathetic input. These changes may lead to cardiac dysrhythmias. *A systolic blood pressure below 90 mm Hg requires treatment because lack of perfusion to the spinal cord could worsen the patient's condition.* In addition, the lack of sympathetic or hypothalamic control causes the patient to lose thermoregulatory functions. As a result, the body tends to assume

CHART 45-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing Motor Function in the Patient with a Spinal Cord Injury

- To assess C4-5, apply downward pressure while the patient shrugs his or her shoulders upward.
- To assess C5-6, apply resistance while the patient pulls up his or her arms.
- To assess C7, apply resistance while the patient straightens his or her flexed arms.
- To assess C8, make sure the patient is able to grasp an object and form a fist.
- To assess L2-4, apply resistance while the patient lifts his or her legs from the bed.
- To assess L5, apply resistance while the patient dorsiflexes his or her feet.
- To assess S1, apply resistance while the patient plantar flexes his or her feet.

the temperature of the environment and attempts to compensate by increasing extracellular fluid.

A patient with a cervical SCI is at risk for *breathing* problems resulting from an interruption of spinal innervation to the respiratory muscles. In collaboration with the respiratory therapist (RT), if available, perform a complete respiratory assessment, including pulse oximetry for arterial oxygen saturation. The RT should also evaluate vital capacity and minute volume as part of the assessment. These tests are repeated as the patient's clinical status requires. Assess for respiratory complications such as atelectasis and pneumonia.

Gastrointestinal and Genitourinary Assessment. Assess the patient's *abdomen* for manifestations of internal bleeding, distention, or paralytic ileus. Hemorrhage may result from the trauma, or it may occur later from a stress ulcer or the administration of steroids. Monitor for abdominal pain and changes in bowel sounds. Paralytic ileus may develop within 72 hours of hospital admission. During the period of spinal shock, peristalsis decreases, leading to a loss of bowel sounds and gastric distention. This lack of or interference with autonomic innervation may lead to a reflex or hypotonic bowel.

Autonomic dysfunction initially causes an areflexic (neurogenic) bladder (no reflex ability for bladder contraction), which later leads to urinary retention. The patient is at risk for urinary tract infection from an indwelling urinary catheter; intermittent catheterizations; or bladder distention, stasis, and/or overflow.

Assessment of Patients for Long-Term Complications. As patients learn to live with their spinal cord injuries, they usually experience many body changes and complications of prolonged immobility. For example, muscle wasting results from long-term flaccid paralysis in patients with **lower motor neuron (LMN)** lesions (usually lower thoracic or lumbosacral injuries). Incomplete lesions or **upper motor neuron (UMN)** lesions (usually cervical and upper thoracic injuries) cause muscle spasticity, which can lead to contractures of the joints.

For any spinal cord-injured patient, observe the condition of the patient's skin, especially over pressure points, at least twice daily. Assess any reddened area carefully, and monitor it daily for change. Turn patients frequently (every 1-2 hours) and use a pressure-reducing mattress or special bed to help prevent skin breakdown.

Another complication of prolonged immobility is **heterotopic ossification** (bony overgrowth, often into muscle). Assess for swelling, redness, warmth, and decreased range of motion (ROM) of the involved extremity. Changes in the bony structure are not visible until several weeks after initial symptoms appear.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with a complete spinal cord injury may be hospitalized for 3 months or longer, including acute care and rehabilitation. Life expectancy has increased, but it is still well below that of people without an SCI. The risk for death is significantly higher during the first year after injury than during subsequent years due to complications of impaired mobility.

If possible, obtain information about the patient's pre-injury psychosocial status and usual methods of coping with illness, difficult situations, and disappointments. Determine the patient's level of independence or dependence and his or her comfort level in discussing feelings and emotions with

family members or close friends. Patients who are emotionally secure and have a positive self-image, supportive family, and financial and job security often adapt best to their injury. Information about the patient's spiritual and religious beliefs or cultural background also assists the nurse in developing the plan of care. The patient with an SCI must cope with changes in body image, self-esteem, independence, role relationships, and sexuality.

In addition, assess family members or significant others to determine how well they are coping with the patient's injury and their role changes. Help prepare the patient and family for a possibility of extensive rehabilitation and changes in lifestyle. Financial constraints and concern about long-term care may cause additional stress.

Laboratory Assessment

The health care provider requests routine laboratory studies for the patient with an SCI to establish baseline data or to prepare for surgery. A urinalysis is used to check for the presence of blood in the urine after trauma. End-tidal carbon dioxide levels or arterial blood gas analysis is done to monitor the respiratory status of a patient at risk for respiratory insufficiency. The findings should be within normal limits unless the patient has a history of heavy smoking, pre-injury pulmonary disease, or respiratory failure. Respiratory failure is indicated by decreased oxygen levels, increased carbon dioxide levels, and respiratory acidosis.

Check laboratory values for a low hemoglobin count, leukocytosis (increased white blood cells [WBCs]), lymphocytopenia (decreased lymphocytes), and thrombocytopenia (decreased platelets), which can occur in patients with cervical spine injuries. These abnormalities may be related to lack of autonomic innervation to the hematopoietic (blood-cell producing) system. Observe patients for clinical signs and symptoms of these changes, such as an increased bleeding tendency.

Imaging Assessment

If available, spiral computed tomography (CT) or multi-slice CT is obtained as soon as possible, especially for the patient who has sustained multiple trauma. Otherwise, CT or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is performed to determine the degree and extent of damage to the spinal cord and to detect the presence of blood and bone within the spinal column. The health care provider requests a complete x-ray series of the spine to identify vertebral fractures, subluxation, or dislocation.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with a spinal cord injury (SCI) are:

1. Difficulty breathing related to upper motor neuron injury
2. Potential for neurogenic shock related to loss or interruption of sympathetic innervation in patients with SCIs above T6
3. Potential for further spinal cord injury related to swelling and/or fractures
4. Impaired Physical Mobility and/or Self-Care Deficit (the level depends on the extent and level of the injury) related to decreased or absent muscle control
5. Spastic or flaccid bladder and bowel related to direct neurologic damage or disruption in nerve impulses

6. Impaired adjustment related to disability requiring need for life change

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The desired outcomes of patient-centered collaborative care are to stabilize the vertebral column as needed, manage damage to the spinal cord, and prevent secondary effects of injury. Many patients with previous spinal cord injuries (SCIs) are admitted to the acute care or long-term care setting for complications of immobility, such as pressure ulcers or septicemia resulting from pressure ulcers and fractures resulting from osteoporosis.

Managing the Airway and Improving Breathing

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with an SCI is expected to have a patent airway and adequate ventilation.

Interventions. *Airway management is the priority for a patient with cervical spinal cord injury!* Patients with injuries at or above T6 are especially at risk for respiratory complications and pulmonary embolus during the first 5 days after injury. These complications are due to impaired functioning of the intercostal muscles and decreased mobility. Depending on the level of injury, intubation or tracheotomy with mechanical ventilation may be needed.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess breath sounds every 2 to 4 hours during the first few days after spinal cord injury, and document and report any adventitious or diminished sounds. Monitor vital signs carefully, and watch for changes in respiratory pattern.

Teach the patient who is tetraplegic to cough by placing his or her hands on either side of the rib cage or upper abdomen below the diaphragm. This technique is sometimes called “assisted coughing,” “quad cough,” or “cough assist.” As the patient exhales, push upward to help expand the lungs and cough.

Encourage the patient to use an incentive spirometer. The nurse and respiratory therapist perform a respiratory assessment at least every 8 hours to determine the effectiveness of these strategies. In some cases it may be necessary to perform oral or nasal suctioning if the patient cannot clear the airway of secretions effectively.

Closely monitor the patient for clinical manifestations of life-threatening respiratory complications, such as pneumonia, pulmonary emboli, and atelectasis. These problems decrease the life expectancy of SCI patients and have replaced renal failure as the leading cause of death.

Monitoring for Neurogenic Shock

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to not develop neurogenic shock. If signs and symptoms of this potentially life-threatening complication occur, the patient is expected to receive prompt intervention.

Interventions. Maintain adequate hydration through IV therapy and oral fluids as appropriate, depending on the patient’s overall condition. Carefully observe for manifestations of **neurogenic shock**, which may occur within 24 hours after injury most commonly in patients with injuries above T6. This potentially life-threatening problem results from

disruption in the communication pathways between upper motor neurons and lower motor neurons.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Monitor the patient with acute spinal cord injury at least hourly for:

- Severe bradycardia
- Warm, dry skin
- Severe hypotension

Notify the physician immediately if these symptoms occur, because this problem is an emergency! Neurogenic shock is treated symptomatically by restoring fluids to the circulating blood volume and providing supportive care to stabilize the patient.

Preventing Further Spinal Cord Injury

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with an acute SCI is expected to demonstrate adequate spinal cord stabilization as evidenced by no further deterioration in neurologic status.

Interventions. If the patient has a fractured vertebra, the primary concern of the health care team is to reduce and immobilize the fracture to prevent further damage to the spinal cord from bone fragments. Nonsurgical techniques include external fixation or orthotic devices, but surgery is usually needed to stabilize the spine and prevent further spinal cord damage.

Assess the patient’s neurologic status, vital signs, pulse oximetry, and pain score at least every 1 to 4 hours depending on the patient’s overall condition. *Document your assessments carefully and in detail, particularly changes in motor or sensory function in the extremities. Failure to do so may prevent other staff members from quickly recognizing deterioration in neurologic status.*

Regardless of the level of SCI, keep the patient in proper body alignment to prevent further cord injury or irritability. Devices such as traction, orthoses, or collars may be used to keep the spine immobilized during healing and rehabilitation.

Spinal Immobilization and Stabilization. The patient may be placed in fixed skeletal traction to realign the vertebrae, facilitate bone healing, and prevent further injury, often after surgical stabilization. The most commonly used device for immobilization of the *cervical spine* is the halo fixation device, which is worn for 8 to 12 weeks. Cervical tongs are used less often today. Either device is inserted by the physician into the outer aspect of the skull. For patients not having surgery, the addition of traction helps reduce the fracture.

The **halo fixator** is a static traction device (Fig. 45-5). Four pins (or screws) are inserted into the skull. The metal halo ring may be attached to a plastic vest or cast when the spine is stable, allowing increased patient mobility.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Never move or turn the patient by holding or pulling on the halo device. Do not adjust the screws holding it in place. Check the patient’s skin frequently to ensure that the jacket is not causing pressure. Pressure is avoided if one finger can be inserted easily between the jacket and the patient’s skin. Monitor the patient’s neurologic status for changes in movement or decreased strength.



FIG. 45-5 Halo fixation device with jacket.

Common complications of the halo device are pin loosening, local infection, and scarring. More serious complications include osteomyelitis (cranial bone infection), subdural abscess, and instability. Hospital policy is followed for pin site care, which may specify the use of solutions such as saline. Vaseline dressings may also be used. *Monitor vital signs for indications of possible infection (e.g., fever, purulent drainage from the pin sites), and report any changes to the physician immediately.*

Nonsurgical treatment of *thoracic and lumbosacral injuries* is often challenging. Most health care providers choose to refer the patient for surgery and then immobilize the spine with lightweight, custom-fit thoracic lumbar sacral orthoses (TLSOs) to prevent prolonged periods of immobility.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client was admitted this morning with an incomplete spinal cord injury and is placed in a halo fixator vest after surgery. Which assessment finding will the nurse report immediately to the health care provider?

- A. Pulse rate of 78 beats/min
- B. Blood pressure of 88/42 mm Hg
- C. Pain level of 4 on a 0-to-10 pain scale
- D. Loosened halo vest

Drug Therapy. *Methylprednisolone (Solu-Medrol)* may be prescribed depending on physician preference and the condition of the patient. This drug decreases inflammation, such as that caused by injury to spinal cord and nerve tissue. Monitor the patient receiving IV methylprednisolone closely for adverse drug events, including infection, elevated serum glucose, and stress ulcers. *Dextran*, a plasma expander, may be used to increase capillary blood flow within the spinal cord and to prevent or treat hypotension. *Atropine sulfate* is used to treat bradycardia if the pulse rate falls below 50 to 60 beats

per minute. Hypotension, if severe, is treated with inotropic and sympathomimetic agents such as dopamine hydrochloride (Intropin) and isoproterenol.

Centrally acting skeletal muscular relaxants, such as tizanidine (Zanaflex, Sirdalud), may help control severe muscle spasticity (usually upper motor neuron [UMN] injuries). However, these drugs cause severe drowsiness and sedation in most patients and may not be effective in reducing spasticity. As an alternative to these drugs, *intrathecal baclofen (Lioresal) (ITB)* therapy may be prescribed. This drug is administered through a programmable, implantable infusion pump and intrathecal catheter directly into the cerebrospinal fluid. The pump is surgically placed in a subcutaneous pouch in the lower abdomen. Monitor for common adverse effects, which include sedation, fatigue, dizziness, and changes in mental status. *Seizures and hallucinations may occur if ITB is suddenly withdrawn.*

Other drugs to prevent or treat complications of immobilization may be needed *later* during the rehabilitative phase. For example, celecoxib (Celebrex) may be prescribed to prevent or treat **heterotopic ossification** (bony overgrowth). Calcium and bisphosphonates may prevent the osteoporosis that results from impaired mobility. Osteoporosis can cause fractures in later years. Early and continued exercise may help decrease the incidence of these complications. **Chapter 8** discusses complications of immobility and drug therapy in more detail.

Surgical Management. Emergency surgery may be indicated if there is evidence of spinal cord compression. The procedure is usually necessary to remove bone fragments, hematomas, or penetrating objects such as a bullet to prevent further spinal cord damage. A **decompressive laminectomy** (removal of one or more laminae) allows for cord expansion from edema if more conventional measures fail to prevent neurologic deterioration.

Additional surgical procedures to stabilize and support the spine may be performed at the discretion of the surgeon, depending on the patient's condition and the extent of the injury. Typical procedures include wiring and spinal fusion for cervical injuries and the insertion of steel or metal rods (e.g., Harrington rods) to stabilize thoracic and lumbar spinal injuries.

During a cervical fusion, the surgeon reduces the fracture by placing the bone ends in proper alignment. Metal wiring is then used to secure bone chips (bone graft) taken from the patient's hip. The patient wears a halo vest to immobilize the spine during the healing process.

For thoracic and lumbar fusions, metal or steel rods (e.g., Harrington rods) are used to keep the bone ends in alignment after fracture reduction. After surgery, the patient usually wears a TLSO to keep the operative area immobilized during recovery.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After surgical spinal fusion, assess the patient's neurologic status and vital signs at least every hour for the first 4 to 6 hours and then, if the patient is stable, every 4 hours. Assess for complications of surgery, such as hematoma and edema. Look for swelling under the skin.

A complete discussion of general postoperative nursing care is found in [Chapter 18](#). Spinal fusions were described earlier in this chapter on p. 964.

Managing Impaired Mobility and Self-Care Deficit

Planning: Expected Outcomes. *The patient with an SCI is expected to be free from complications of immobility and perform ADLs as independently as possible with or without assistive/adaptive devices.*

Interventions. The patient with an SCI is especially at risk for pressure ulcers, contractures, venous thromboembolism (deep vein thrombosis and/or pulmonary embolus), and fractures related to osteoporosis. Patients with high SCIs are also at risk for orthostatic hypotension. Proper positioning not only helps prevent complications but also provides alignment to prevent further spinal cord injury or irritability.

When sitting in a chair, the patient is repositioned or taught to reposition himself or herself more often than every hour. Paraplegic patients usually perform frequent “wheelchair push-ups” to relieve skin pressure. *Special pressure-relief devices such as gel pads or cyclic pressure-relief devices may be used in the wheelchair or the bed, but these tools do not eliminate the need for regular turning or repositioning.* [Chapter 8](#) discusses in detail the prevention of and nursing care for many complications associated with impaired physical mobility.

Patients with cervical cord injuries are especially at high risk for orthostatic (postural) hypotension, but anyone who is immobilized may have this problem. If the patient changes from a lying position to a sitting or standing position too quickly, he or she may experience hypotension, which could result in dizziness and falls. Because of interrupted sympathetic innervation caused by the spinal cord injury, the blood vessels do not constrict quickly enough to push blood up into the brain. This causes dizziness or light-headedness and possible falls with syncope (“blackout”).

The most important part of promoting self-management is setting realistic expected outcomes on the basis of the patient’s potential mobility and functional level. Even patients with a cervical SCI often learn how to perform most ADLs independently in specialized rehabilitation programs. See [Chapter 8](#) for a detailed discussion of interventions to promote mobility and ADLs.

Managing Urinary and Bowel Elimination

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with an SCI is expected to achieve control of elimination of urine and stool without complications, if possible.

Interventions. Patients with SCIs have reflex or neurogenic loss of bowel and bladder control. Many can become continent if they rigorously adhere to an established program. The type of program depends on the usual elimination pattern and whether the injury involved upper motor neurons (UMNs) or lower motor neurons (LMNs). A urologic evaluation may be needed to identify bladder type.

Patients with injuries to the lumbosacral area usually have an LMN (flaccid) bladder and bowel. Patients with **flaccid bladders** may achieve emptying of the bladder by performing a Valsalva maneuver or tightening the abdominal muscles. These techniques are not successful for all LMN injuries. To determine the effectiveness of these maneuvers, use a bedside

bladder ultrasound device to measure bladder residual. This use of this device is discussed in [Chapter 69](#).

Some patients rely solely on intermittent catheterization two or three times daily to empty the bladder. Obese patients and those with very-high-level SCIs may need an indwelling urinary catheter for a period of time. External urinary catheters connected to a leg bag may be used for men.

The patient with *any* SCI is at risk for long-term renal complications, such as hydronephrosis, renal failure, and kidney stones. Urinary tract infections (UTIs) are common because organisms are introduced into the urinary tract by urinary catheters. Patients with an SCI may not be aware of the infection because they cannot feel dysuria, urgency, or back pain. They must rely on other signs and symptoms, such as foul-smelling urine or fever.

Teach the patient that the essential elements of a bowel program include stool softeners, increased fluid intake (unless medically contraindicated), high-fiber diet, and a consistent time for elimination. *Rectal digital stimulation is done only if requested by the health care provider because it could cause a vagal response, manifested by severe bradycardia and syncope.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Observe the patient with an upper SCI (above the level of T6) for signs of autonomic dysreflexia (hyperreflexia). Although it does not occur frequently, **autonomic dysreflexia** is an excessive, uncontrolled sympathetic output. It is characterized by severe hypertension, bradycardia, severe headache, nasal stuffiness, and flushing ([Chart 45-9](#)). The cause of this syndrome is a noxious stimulus—usually a distended bladder or constipation. *This is a neurologic emergency and must be promptly treated to prevent a hypertensive stroke!* [Chart 45-10](#) lists emergency care for autonomic dysreflexia.

Adjusting to Major Life Change

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with an SCI is expected to adapt to a significant life change.

Interventions. Information obtained from the psychosocial assessment is used by the interdisciplinary team to identify strategies to help the patient adjust to the disability. Help the patient set realistic goals and verbalize feelings about the injury and his or her future. Invite the patient to ask questions, and answer them openly and honestly. Questions about prognosis and potential for complete recovery are referred to the health care provider because the timing and extent of recovery are different for each patient.

Collaborate with the case manager or discharge planner for a review of the patient’s insurance and financial status. Many insurance policies do not cover extended rehabilitation

CHART 45-9 KEY FEATURES

Autonomic Dysreflexia

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| • Sudden onset of severe, throbbing headache | • Nasal stuffiness |
| • Severe, rapidly occurring hypertension | • Sweating |
| • Bradycardia | • Nausea |
| • Flushing above level of lesion (face and chest) | • Blurred vision |
| • Pale extremities below level of lesion | • Piloerection |
| | • Feeling of apprehension |

CHART 45-10 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient Experiencing Autonomic Dysreflexia: Immediate Interventions

- Place patient in sitting position (first priority!).
- Page/notify health care provider.
- Loosen tight clothing on the patient.
- Assess for and treat the cause.
- Check the urinary catheter tubing (if present) for kinks or obstruction.
- If a urinary catheter is not present, check for bladder distention and catheterize immediately if indicated.
- Place anesthetic ointment on tip of catheter before insertion.
- Check the patient for fecal impaction; if present, disimpact immediately using anesthetic ointment.
- Check the room temperature to ensure that it is not too cool or drafty.
- Monitor blood pressures every 10 to 15 minutes.
- Give nitrates or hydralazine (Apresoline, Novo-Hylazin ) as prescribed.

services. Therefore other sources, including private foundations and donations, may be needed.

Community-Based Care

Case managers are ideal care coordinators to act as SCI patient advocates. In some settings, case managers begin working with patients in the emergency department to establish a positive image of SCI rehabilitation. Rehabilitation begins in the critical care unit when patients are hemodynamically stable and spinal shock has subsided. They are usually transferred from the acute care setting to a rehabilitation setting, where they learn more about self-care, mobility skills, and bladder and bowel retraining. The length of stay in the rehabilitation hospital or unit is typically 1 to 2 months, depending on the medical complications that may occur, such as infections.

Psychosocial adaptation is one of the critical factors in determining the success of rehabilitation. The case manager or acute care nurse can help the patient prepare for discharge or transfer to a rehabilitation hospital. Assist in verbalizing feelings and fears about body image, self-concept, role performance, self-esteem, and sexuality. The patient should be told about the expected reactions of those outside the security of the hospital environment. Role-playing or anticipating responses to potential problems is helpful. For example, the patient can practice answering questions from children about why he or she is in a wheelchair or cannot move certain parts of the body.

Many patients are concerned about their ability to have sexual intercourse and have children. Most hospitals do not have psychological social workers or counselors to discuss sexuality issues. Rehabilitation programs often include a sexuality/intimacy counselor as part of the interdisciplinary team approach to patient care.

Home Care Management

If the patient is discharged home or returns home for a weekend visit from the rehabilitation setting, the environment must be assessed to ensure that it is free from hazards and can accommodate the patient's special needs (e.g., a wheelchair). The occupational or physical therapist, in

collaboration with rehabilitation and the home care nurse, usually assesses the patient's temporary or permanent home environment. Ease of accessibility is particularly important at the entrance of the home as well as the bathroom, kitchen, and bedroom. The height of the patient's bed may need to be adjusted to allow a smooth transfer into and out of the bed.

All adaptive devices that the patient will use at home should be requested and delivered to the rehabilitation facility. This enables the nurse and other therapists to ensure that the items fit correctly and that the patient and family know how to use them correctly.

Teaching for Self-Management

The teaching plan for the patient with an SCI includes:

- Mobility skills (including skin care)
- ADLs skills
- Bowel and bladder retraining program
- Drug therapy
- Sexuality education

This information should be reinforced with written handouts, CDs, DVDs, or other patient education material that the patient and family members can use after discharge to the home. [Chart 45-11](#) provides information about aging for middle-aged and older adults with a spinal cord injury.

A full-time caregiver or personal assistant is sometimes required if the patient with tetraplegia returns home. The caregiver may be a family member or a nursing assistant employed to help provide care and companionship. A patient who is paraplegic is often able to function without assistance after an appropriate rehabilitation program.

Patients with cervical or high thoracic spinal cord injuries are discharged home or to a rehabilitation setting with a halo vest. A halo vest has a significant physical and psychological impact on patients. Physically, patients find it difficult to perform *mobility skills and ADLs* independently, especially dressing, bathing, and feeding. From a psychological perspective, patients perceive an altered body image. Teach the patient or other caregiver going home or to a rehabilitation setting how to care for and adjust to the halo device ([Chart 45-12](#)).

The ADLs training for the patient with an SCI includes a structured exercise program to promote strength and endurance. The occupational therapist instructs the patient in the correct use of all adaptive equipment. In collaboration with the therapists, instruct family members or the caregiver in transfer skills, feeding, bathing, dressing, positioning, and skin care as discussed briefly in this chapter and in more detail in [Chapter 8](#).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the SCI patient and his or her family or other caregiver about the name, purpose, dosage, timing of administration, and side effects of all *drugs*. Make sure they understand the possible interaction of prescribed drugs with over-the-counter drugs or alcohol and illegal drugs.

Sexual function after spinal cord injury depends on the level and extent of injury. Incomplete lesions allow some control over sensation and motor ability. Complete lesions disconnect the messages from the brain to the rest of the body, and vice versa. However, men with injuries above T6 are often able to have erections by stimulating reflex activity.

CHART 45-11 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

What Patients Need to Know About Aging with Spinal Cord Injury

NURSING INTERVENTION	RATIONALES
Get flu shots annually, tetanus shots every 10 years, and the pneumonia vaccine as required.	Respiratory complications are the most common cause of death after spinal cord injury (SCI).
For women, have Papanicolaou (Pap) smears and mammograms as recommended by the American Cancer Society or your health care provider.	Limitations in movement may make breast self-examination difficult.
Take measures to prevent osteoporosis, such as increasing calcium intake and avoiding caffeine and smoking.	Women older than 50 years often lose bone density, which can result in fractures. Men can also have osteoporotic fractures as a result of immobility.
Practice meticulous skin care, including moisturizing and drinking plenty of water.	As a person ages, skin becomes dry and less elastic, predisposing the patient to pressure ulcers.
Take measures to prevent constipation, such as drinking adequate fluids, eating a high-fiber diet, stool softeners, and establishing a regular time for bowel elimination.	Constipation is a problem for most patients with SCI, and they are more likely to develop the problem later in life.
Modify activities if joint pain occurs; use a powered rather than a manual wheelchair. Ask the health care provider about treatment options.	Arthritis occurs in more than half of people older than 65 years. Patients with SCI are more likely to develop arthritis as a result of added stress on the upper extremities when using a wheelchair.

For example, stroking the penis will cause an erection. Ejaculation is less predictable and may be mixed with urine. However, urine is sterile, so the patient's partner will not get an infection.

Women with an SCI have a different challenge because they have indwelling urinary catheters more commonly than men with an SCI. However, some women do become pregnant and have full-term children. For others, ovulation stops in response to the injury. In this case, alternate methods for pregnancy, such as in vitro fertilization, may be an option. Some women also report vaginal dryness. Recommend a water-soluble lubricant for both partners to promote comfort.

For patients who choose not to have intercourse, intimate pleasure can be achieved in other ways, including kissing, hugging, fondling, masturbation, and oral sex. Variations in positioning may be needed to accommodate weak or paralyzed parts of the body. An understanding partner can help the patient adjust to his or her physical changes.

Health Care Resources

Refer the patient and family to local, state or province, and national organizations for more information and support for patients with SCI. These organizations include the National Spinal Cord Injury Association (www.spinalcord.org). Many excellent consumer-oriented books, journals, and DVDs are

CHART 45-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

*Use of a Halo Device**

- Be aware that the weight of the halo device alters balance. Be careful when leaning forward or backward.
- Wear loose clothing, preferably with hook and loop (Velcro) fasteners or large openings for head and arms.
- Bathe in the bathtub, or take a sponge bath. (Some physicians allow showers.)
- Wash under the lambswool liner of the vest to prevent rashes or sores; use powders or lotions sparingly under the vest.
- Have someone change the liner if it becomes odorous.
- Support the head with a small pillow when sleeping to prevent unnecessary pressure and discomfort.
- Try to resume usual activities to the extent possible; keep as active as possible. (The weight of the device may cause fatigue or weakness.) However, avoid contact sports and swimming.
- Do not drive because vision is impaired with the device.
- Keep straws available for drinking fluids.
- Cut meats and other food into small pieces to facilitate chewing and swallowing.
- Before going outside in cold temperatures, wrap the pins with cloth to prevent the metal from getting cold.
- Have someone clean the pin sites as recommended by physician or hospital protocol.
- Observe the pin sites daily for redness, drainage, or loosening; report changes to the physician.
- Increase fluids and fiber in the diet to prevent constipation.
- Use a position of comfort during sexual activity.

*Home care instructions may vary depending on hospital or physician preference.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety, Evidence-Based Practice, Teamwork and Collaboration

A 36-year-old man who has had an L-3 spinal cord injury for 14 years is admitted for septicemia. He has a large, stage 4 pressure ulcer on his left buttock and an indwelling urinary catheter. The patient has been living alone for the past 3 years since his wife left him. He states he has been in and out of hospitals for a variety of problems and is tired of living. The patient states he works as a car mechanic at his house. He seldom leaves his home and has no significant other in his life at this time. An antidepressant was prescribed for the patient last year, but he does not take it because it makes him tired.

1. What priority problems does this patient have at this time? Which problems need immediate action and why? What other data do you need to help formulate your answer?
2. With what members of the interdisciplinary and nursing team should you collaborate to provide quality care for this patient?
3. What may be causing the patient's septicemia? What are the evidence-based interventions for the care of patients with septicemia? Use a reliable electronic database to help you answer this question.
4. Use the SBAR method to communicate your concerns about this patient to another nurse who will be continuing his care.

also available. Support groups may help the patient and family adjust to a changed lifestyle and provide solutions to commonly encountered problems.

The primary purpose of rehabilitation is to enable patients to function independently in their communities. However, many physical barriers still exist in some communities that prevent the patient in a wheelchair from finding a parking place, using sidewalks, and attending activities or utilizing



FIG. 45-6 Community physical barrier example: The patient cannot use a wheelchair to get onto the sidewalk.

resources (Fig. 45-6). The use of Photovoice (sometimes referred to as *Photo Voice*) projects can be very helpful in making positive changes in the community for people who are disabled.

Photovoice is a combination of photographs, videos, and storytelling that allows disabled people in the community to “voice our individual and collective experiences” in an organized way. This process can allow groups of patients with SCIs to work together to record and discuss their community’s strengths and concerns. The collective desired outcome for Photovoice is to influence policymakers to make changes that remove or change their community’s barriers. [Newman and SCI Photovoice Participants \(2010\)](#) described a Photovoice project to create a database of community environmental barriers and facilitators in a large city in the southeastern United States. Over 500 facilitators and over 500 barriers were identified. The authors produced a YouTube video and concluded that this type of community-based participatory project was extremely valuable to help wheelchair-bound SCI patients.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with an SCI based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Exhibits no deterioration in neurologic status
- Maintains a patent airway, an alveolar exchange to maintain blood gases, and adequate ventilation
- Is free from complications of immobility
- Performs basic ADLs as independently as possible with or without the use of assistive/adaptive devices
- Achieves control of elimination of stool and urine
- Psychologically adapts to a significant life change

SPINAL CORD TUMORS

Pathophysiology

Spinal cord tumors occur most often in the thoracic area, but they can occur in the lumbar and cervical areas. These tumors are classified as either primary or secondary. Signs and

symptoms depend on the location of the tumor and its speed of growth. Tumors that involve the bones of the vertebral column usually occur as a result of metastasis (cancer spread) from other areas of the body.

The pathologic effects of a spinal cord tumor are more often related to compression of the cord than to invasion of the spinal cord itself. As the tumor expands within the vertebral column, it compresses the cord or the spinal nerve roots. Further growth leads to movement of the cord. In addition, a large tumor may affect the blood supply to the cord by compression or obstruct the normal flow of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Venous occlusion by the tumor may lead to spinal cord congestion and infarction (tissue death).

The appearance of neurologic signs and symptoms is related to the rate of tumor growth. The spinal cord can often accommodate a slowly growing lesion. With time, the cord may become significantly misshapen and displaced, but the patient has surprisingly few symptoms. However, a rapidly growing tumor quickly leads to spinal cord compression and edema and the development of neurologic symptoms, such as numbness and paralysis.

Primary spinal cord tumors involve the epidural vessels, spinal meninges, or glial cells of the cord. Their cause is unknown, but they can be cancerous or benign. Anatomically, spinal cord tumors may be extramedullary or intramedullary. **Intramedullary tumors** account for a small number of spinal cord tumors and are usually cancerous. They start within the spinal cord itself, in the central gray matter.

Secondary spinal cord tumors are more common. They develop as a result of a metastasis of a cancer that originated from another part of the body. The metastasis compresses the spinal cord or nerve roots from the outside.

Extramedullary tumors, representing most spinal cord tumors, are found within the spinal dura but outside the cord. They are further defined anatomically as extradural and intradural tumors. *Extradural or epidural* tumors occur between the vertebrae and the spinal dura. They develop in the surrounding bone and cause destruction of the vertebral bodies. *Intradural* tumors are located within the dura and originate from the pia-arachnoid, spinal roots, or ligaments.

Tumors involving the bones of the vertebrae typically develop as a consequence of *metastatic* tumors from the lungs, breasts, prostate, colon, and uterus.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The clinical manifestations of a spinal cord tumor depend on its location ([Chart 45-13](#)) and rate of growth. The most common problem is pain. Pain results from spinal cord compression, infiltration of the spinal tracts, or irritation of the spinal roots. Assess the quality, severity, and intensity of the pain. In addition, ask the patient to describe factors that worsen and relieve the pain. **Radicular** (nerve root) pain is stabbing or dull, with intermittent episodes of sharp, piercing pain. The pain may increase during coughing, straining, or sneezing. Lying flat may increase the pain as a consequence of stretching the involved spinal nerve roots.

Involvement of the corticospinal tract may lead to mobility problems. Assess for weakness, clumsiness, spasticity, and

hyperactive reflexes, and compare responses on both sides of the body. Other presenting signs include ataxia (staggered gait), hypotonia (decreased muscle tone), and a positive Babinski's reflex. Spastic paralysis occurs most often, although a flaccid paralysis may be present in a tumor that affects the spinal roots, an intramedullary tumor in the lumbosacral area, or an extramedullary tumor.

Determine sensory loss on each side of the body, and compare the responses. Early symptoms include a slowly progressive numbness or tingling, pain, and temperature loss. The sensory deficit is further marked by a decreased touch perception, an inability to sense vibration, and a loss of position sense. The patient often reports a tight, bandlike feeling around the trunk.

Loss of bladder control often occurs before a loss of bowel control. Assess for urinary hesitancy, dribbling, incontinence, urgency, or acute retention. Bowel dysfunction is manifested by constipation. Keep in mind that the patient is often embarrassed to admit to bladder or bowel dysfunction.

A lesion in the sacral area may cause a decrease in genital sensation and thus affect the patient's sexual function and enjoyment. Men may be unable to have an erection or to ejaculate.

Radiographic examinations or scans of the spine are obtained to detect a narrowing of the spinal canal, destruction of the vertebrae, or the presence of calcification. A myelogram may be useful when a block is incomplete; it indicates the level, extent, and boundaries of a tumor. This test is being performed less today because of newer imaging techniques.

A biopsy may be done to diagnose the specific type of tumor using a CT/MRI-guided needle. A biopsy is not needed for tumors that result from metastases if cancer has been diagnosed in another site of the body.

An MRI scan with and without contrast medium provides more detail of the pathologic condition of the spinal cord than either a CT scan or myelography. Electromyography (EMG) may help make a differential diagnosis to rule out multiple sclerosis (MS) or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS).

INTERVENTIONS

Nursing care of the patient with a spinal cord tumor focuses on careful monitoring of vital signs and neurologic status at least every 4 hours or more often if clinically indicated.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient with a spinal cord tumor, report any change in motor and sensory status immediately to the physician or Rapid Response Team. Swelling or tumor invasion can damage the spinal nerves that help control the diaphragm, and respiratory failure can result.

The primary management of a spinal cord tumor is *surgery*. The desired outcome of surgical intervention is to remove as much of the tumor as possible. Often, this is not possible and other treatment is needed (e.g., radiation therapy). *Emergency surgery is performed if the patient has a rapid loss of motor and sensory function or a loss of bladder and bowel control. Surgical decompression may be performed to maintain bladder, bowel, or motor function and to preserve quality of life—even with a poor prognosis.*

The neurosurgeon performs a laminectomy and surgical decompression and total or partial resection of the tumor. Depending on the extent of the tumor, a spinal fusion may be necessary. Rarely, a cordotomy or a palliative sectioning of sensory roots is done to control intractable pain.

After surgery, assess the patient's vital signs and neurologic status every 1 to 2 hours until they are stable and then every 4 hours. Help turn the patient as a unit (log roll) and reposition every 2 hours. Inspect the incision site for drainage, especially for cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and signs of infection. Carefully monitor the patient with a cervical cord tumor for respiratory compromise. Postoperative nursing care for a patient undergoing a laminectomy is discussed on p. 964 under Postoperative Care in the Back Pain section of this chapter.

Radiation therapy may be necessary, depending on the tumor type. It is usually used with low-grade malignant tumors that are not completely removed, with metastatic tumors, or with recurrent tumors when there is no other treatment option. The spinal cord cannot tolerate high doses of radiation. Overexposure to radiation may lead to spinal damage, which can develop over 6 to 12 months of therapy. Radiation overdose is manifested by progressive spinal cord degeneration and neurologic deficits. With time, the patient experiences spastic paralysis, loss of sensation, and bowel and bladder dysfunction. Death may occur. Care of the patient undergoing radiation therapy is described in detail in [Chapter 24](#).

The use of chemotherapy in the treatment of spinal cord tumors is very limited. The drugs that are given tend to be alkylating agents, effective for some central nervous system (CNS) tumors because they cross the blood-brain barrier. Some patients may receive carmustine (BCNU) or lomustine (CCNU). In some cases, combination chemotherapy with

CHART 45-13 KEY FEATURES

Spinal Cord Tumors

General Manifestations

- Pain
- Sensory loss or impairment
- Motor loss or impairment
- Sphincter disturbance (bladder before bowel)

Cervical Manifestations

High Cervical

- Respiratory distress
- Diaphragm paralysis
- Occipital headache
- Quadriplegia
- Stiff neck
- Nystagmus
- Cranial nerve dysfunction

Low Cervical

- Pain in the arms and the shoulders
- Weakness
- Paresthesia
- Motor loss
- Horner's syndrome
- Increased reflexes

Thoracic Manifestations

- Sensory loss
- Spastic paralysis
- Positive Babinski's sign
- Bladder and bowel dysfunction
- Pain in the chest and the back
- Muscle atrophy
- Muscle weakness in the legs
- Foot drop

Lumbosacral Manifestations

- Low back pain
- Paresis
- Spastic paralysis
- Sensory loss
- Bladder and bowel dysfunction
- Sexual dysfunction
- Decreased-to-absent ankle and knee reflexes

procarbazine, vincristine, and carmustine is used (PVC therapy). Chemotherapy may also be used as an adjunctive therapy for tumors metastasized to the spinal cord from other primary sites, such as the breast. Meningeal involvement may benefit from intrathecal (spinal) chemotherapy. [Chapter 24](#) describes the general nursing care associated with giving chemotherapy.

Community-Based Care

Collaborate with the patient and his or her family members or significant others to identify and suggest ways to eliminate potential hazards in the home. If needed, make a referral to a home care nurse, social worker, or case manager to assess the need for structural alterations to the home. Alterations may be needed to accommodate ambulatory aids (e.g., a walker) and to help the patient to perform ADLs.

Depending on the prognosis, some patients are discharged from the acute care hospital to a rehabilitation setting, where they can learn to function as independently as possible. [Chapter 8](#) describes rehabilitation in detail.

The teaching plan for the patient with a spinal cord tumor depends on his or her level of dysfunction. With decompression of the tumor, the severity of the patient's symptoms often lessens. Deficits that may remain include mobility and sensory loss. Learning mobility skills can enable the patient to negotiate movement on sidewalks, carpeting, and other flooring surfaces. The patient must also be able to negotiate sidewalk curbs independently. The physical or occupational therapist instructs the patient in the correct use of all adaptive equipment. Review the individualized bowel and bladder program with the patient, family member, or other caregiver. [Chapter 8](#) describes these programs and the rehabilitation process in detail.

The desired outcome of sexuality education in the acute care setting is to answer questions and correct any misinformation. Unless the nurse has had specific training or experience in sexuality counseling of people with spinal cord tumors or injuries, more detailed questions should be directed to a sexuality counselor.

The prognosis for the patient with malignant tumors or metastatic tumors is poor. Determine what the physician and family members have told the patient about diagnosis and prognosis. Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings and fears about prognosis, body image, self-concept, role performance, and self-esteem.

Refer patients and family members to local, state or province, and national organizations for people with spinal cord injuries. These groups often have information and support groups for patients with spinal cord tumors. Refer patients with a malignancy to the American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org). Referral to support groups may also assist families with helping the patient adapt to lifestyle changes. The Canadian Cancer Society (www.cancer.ca) offers similar services.

MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS

Multiple sclerosis (MS) is a chronic autoimmune disease that affects the myelin sheath and conduction pathway of the central nervous system (CNS). It is one of the leading causes of neurologic disability in young adults. This chronic disease is characterized by periods of remission and **exacerbation**

(flare). Patients progress at different rates and over different lengths of time. However, as the severity and duration of the disease progress, the periods of exacerbation become more frequent. Patients with MS have a normal life expectancy as long as the effects of the disease are treated.

A major concern reported by most patients is how long it takes to establish a diagnosis of MS. Many patients go to several health care providers, are given varying diagnoses and treatment, and/or are told that their symptoms are related to stress and anxiety. The patient and family are often relieved to have a definite diagnosis but may express anger and frustration that it took a long time to start appropriate treatment. Therefore establish open and honest communication with the patient and allow him or her to share frustrations, anger, and anxiety.

Pathophysiology

Multiple sclerosis is characterized by an inflammatory response that results in diffuse random or patchy areas of **plaque** in the white matter of the CNS. When this occurs, the myelin sheath is damaged and its thickness is reduced, or **demyelinated**. Myelin is responsible for the electrochemical transmission of impulses between the brain and spinal cord and the rest of the body. Impulses are still transmitted but are not as effective as before. Over time, they may be completely blocked. The white fiber tracts (axons) that connect the neurons in the brain and spinal cord are generally involved in MS. The areas particularly affected include optic nerves, pyramidal tracts, posterior columns, brainstem nuclei, and the ventricular region of the brain. Eventually, with repeated exacerbations of the disease, damage to the axons becomes permanent.

The four major types of MS include (McCance et al., 2010):

- Relapsing-remitting
- Primary progressive
- Secondary progressive
- Progressive-relapsing

The classic picture of the **relapsing-remitting** type of **MS (RRMS)** occurs in most cases of multiple sclerosis. The course of the disease may be mild or moderate, depending on the degree of disability ([Palmieri, 2008](#)). Symptoms develop and resolve in a few weeks to months, and the patient returns to baseline. During the relapsing phase, the patient reports loss of function and the continuing development of new symptoms.

Primary progressive MS (PPMS) involves a steady and gradual neurologic deterioration without remission of symptoms. The patient has progressive disability with no acute attacks. Patients with this type of MS tend to be between 40 and 60 years of age at onset of the disease.

Secondary progressive MS (SPMS) begins with a relapsing-remitting course that later becomes steadily progressive. About half of all people with RRMS developed SPMS within 10 years. The current addition of disease-modifying drugs as part of disease management may decrease the development of SPMS.

Progressive-relapsing MS (PRMS) is characterized by frequent relapses with partial recovery but not a return to baseline. This type of MS is seen in only a small percentage of patients ([Palmieri, 2008](#)). Progressive, cumulative symptoms and deterioration occur over several years.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The exact cause of MS remains unknown and is very complex. Research continues on viral, immunologic, genetic, and environmental etiologic factors. Viruses are well recognized as causes of demyelination and inflammation. Therefore it may be possible that a virus or other infectious agent is the triggering factor in MS. Although a number of viruses have been studied, no single virus has been identified as causing MS in genetically predisposed people. The environment may also contribute to the development of MS. The disease is seen more often in the colder climates of the northeastern, Great Lakes, and Pacific northwestern states, as well as in Canada.

Large genome studies of families have helped identify familial patterns of multiple sclerosis. For example, having a first-degree relative such as a parent or sibling with MS increases a person's risk for developing the disease. Recent research also confirms the association of multiple sclerosis (MS) with the interleukin (IL)-7 and IL-2 receptor genes. Other interleukin genes, B-lymphocytes, and B-cells play a role in more progressive forms of the disease (McCance et al., 2010). These data help guide development of targeted drug therapies that may cure or better manage MS.

Incidence/Prevalence

MS usually occurs in people between the ages of 20 and 40 years, but cases may occur in those younger than 15 years and older than 50 years. About 400,000 people in the United States have MS, and women are affected about twice as often as men. The disease affects 2.5 million people worldwide. Although MS tends to occur more frequently among whites, it affects people of all races (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Multiple sclerosis (MS) often looks like other neurologic diseases, which can make the diagnosis difficult and prolonged. As a result, patients often see many health care providers and undergo a variety of diagnostic tests and treatments. Obtaining a thorough history is essential for accurate diagnosis. Ask about a history of vision, mobility, and sensory changes, all of which are early indicators of MS. Symptoms are often vague and nonspecific in the early stages of the disease and may disappear for months or years before returning. Ask about the progression of symptoms. Pay particular attention to whether the symptoms are intermittent or are becoming progressively worse. Document the date (month and year) when the patient first noticed the clinical manifestations.

Next, ask about factors that aggravate the symptoms, such as fatigue, stress, overexertion, temperature extremes, or a hot shower or bath. Ask the patient and the family about any personality or behavioral changes that have occurred (e.g., euphoria [very elated mood], poor judgment, attention loss). In addition, determine whether there is a family history of MS.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Multiple sclerosis produces a wide variety of manifestations (Chart 45-14). Any myelinated fibers of the brain and spinal cord may be affected. To determine a patient's specific

manifestations, perform a complete neurologic assessment as described in Chapter 43.

First, assess the patient's ability to move. The patient often reports increased fatigue and stiffness of the extremities, particularly the legs. Fatigue is one of the most disabling manifestations, affecting almost all patients with MS. Unlike fatigue in other patients, MS fatigue is associated with continuous sensitivity to temperature.

Flexor spasms at night may awaken the patient from sleep. Further examination reveals increased or hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, positive Babinski's reflex, and absent abdominal reflexes. Gait may be unsteady because of leg weakness and spasticity due to cerebral motor strip damage.

Significant *cerebellar* findings include **intention tremor** (tremor when performing an activity), **dysmetria** (inability to direct or limit movement), and **dysdiadochokinesia** (inability to stop one motor impulse and substitute another). Motor movements are often clumsy. The patient may lose balance easily and may exhibit signs of poor coordination.

During examination of the *cranial nerves* and brainstem function, ask the patient if he or she has or has had episodes of tinnitus (ringing in the ears), vertigo (dizziness), and hearing loss. Assess for facial weakness and dysphagia. Speech problems include dysarthria (slurred speech) and slow, scanning speech.

Typical clinical findings from assessment of the patient's visual acuity, visual fields, and pupils include:

- Blurred vision
- **Diplopia** (double vision)
- Decreased visual acuity
- **Scotomas** (changes in peripheral vision)
- **Nystagmus** (involuntary rapid eye movements)

Sensory findings include hypalgesia (diminished sensitivity to pain), paresthesia, facial pain, and decreased temperature perception. The patient may report numbness, tingling, burning, or crawling sensations.

If demyelination of the *spinal cord* has occurred, the patient may experience bowel and bladder dysfunctions. The patient may have an areflexic bladder or may experience frequency, urgency, or nocturia. Ask the patient if he or she has constipation or incontinence. Inquire about problems with

CHART 45-14 KEY FEATURES

Multiple Sclerosis

- Muscle weakness and spasticity
- Fatigue
- Intention tremors
- Dysmetria (inability to direct or limit movement)
- Numbness or tingling sensations (paresthesia)
- Hypalgesia (decreased sensitivity to pain)
- Ataxia (decreased motor coordination)
- Dysarthria (slurred speech)
- Dysphagia (difficulty swallowing)
- Diplopia (double vision)
- Nystagmus (involuntary eye movements)
- Scotomas (changes in peripheral vision)
- Decreased visual and hearing acuity
- Tinnitus (ringing in the ears), vertigo (dizziness)
- Bowel and bladder dysfunction
- Alterations in sexual function, such as impotence
- Cognitive changes, such as memory loss, impaired judgment, and decreased ability to solve problems or perform calculations

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Effect Does Multiple Sclerosis Have on Sexual Function?

Fraser, C., Mahoney, J., & McGurl, J. (2008). Correlates of sexual dysfunction in men and women with multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 40(5), 312-317.

Sexual dysfunction (SD) is a disability that is often not addressed. The purpose of this study was to investigate the relationship between SD and other symptoms that are experienced by patients with multiple sclerosis (MS). The sample included 32 men and 219 women who volunteered to complete a valid and reliable assessment tool designed to measure neurologic disability. The strongest variable for both men and women that affected SD was fatigue. The results also revealed that the most common problems for women with MS included lack of vaginal lubrication and orgasm.

Level of Evidence: 4

The research design was a descriptive study using volunteer subjects.

Commentary: Implications for Research and Practice

Although the findings of this study cannot be generalized, they validate the concerns of patients with multiple sclerosis regarding SD. Sexual dysfunction affects a person's quality of life. Nurses need to address issues related to SD and, if needed, refer patients or couples for sexual counseling. More research on this topic is needed to help patients with disabilities have an improved quality of life.

sexuality, including impotence, difficulty sustaining an erection, and decreased vaginal secretions.

Psychosocial Assessment

Assess the patient for mental status changes. Cognitive changes are usually seen late in the course of the disease and include decreased short-term memory, concentration, and ability to perform calculations; inattentiveness; and impaired judgment.

After the initial diagnosis of MS, the patient is often anxious. Apathy, emotional lability, and depression are common problems that occur later. The patient may be euphoric or giddy, either as a result of the disease itself or because of the drugs used to treat the disease. Assess the patient's previously used coping and stress management skills in preparing him or her for a chronic, usually debilitating disease. Secondary depression is the most frequent mental health disorder diagnosed in people with MS.

Assess the impact of bowel and bladder problems. Managing fecal incontinence or constipation can be time-consuming and embarrassing. A study by Norton and Chelvanayagam (2010) found that elimination problems affected quality of life as much as mobility difficulties.

Sexual dysfunction (SD) is often not assessed in people with multiple sclerosis. Yet, it has a major impact on quality of life. In a study by Fraser et al. (2008), patients with MS reported that fatigue was the main reason for SD (see the Evidence-Based Practice box above). Assess the patient's fatigue level and pattern. Be sensitive when asking about the patient's sexual practices and orientation.

MS also affects the entire family due to the unpredictability and uncertainty of the course of the disease. Chronic fatigue may also prevent the patient from participating in family and community activities. Assess coping strategies of

family members or other caregivers, and help them identify support systems that can assist them as they live with the patient with MS.

Laboratory Assessment

No single specific procedure is definitively diagnostic for MS. However, the collective results of a variety of tests are usually conclusive. Abnormal cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) findings include an elevated protein level and a slight increase in the white blood cell count. CSF electrophoresis reveals an increase in the myelin basic protein and the presence of increased immunoglobulins, especially IgG. IgG bands are seen in most patients with MS.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

The health care provider usually requests a CT scan, which may show an increased density in white matter and MS plaques. MRI demonstrates the presence of plaques and is considered diagnostic for MS. A complete diagnostic evaluation is necessary to exclude other disease diagnoses.

Results of visual, auditory, and brainstem evoked potential studies are often abnormal. Electromyography (EMG) findings may be grossly abnormal in people with advanced disease.

INTERVENTIONS

The purpose of management is to modify the disease's effects on the immune system, prevent exacerbations, manage symptoms, and improve function. As with other spinal cord diseases, care of the patient with MS requires the collaborative efforts of the interdisciplinary team.

The patient with MS is often weak and easily fatigued. The Concept Map on p. 981 illustrates the priority problems and interventions for the patient with MS. Teach the patient the importance of planning activities and allowing sufficient time to complete activities. For example, the patient should check that all items needed for work are gathered before leaving the house. Items used on a daily basis should be easily accessible.

Drug Therapy

Current therapies are designed to treat the dysfunctional immune system that is associated with multiple sclerosis (MS). A variety of drugs are used to treat and control the disease, decrease specific symptoms, and attempt to slow its progression.

One or more of these drugs is recommended for early and continuous treatment of relapsing types of MS (Duddy et al., 2011; Ryan, 2009):

- Interferon-beta (Avonex, Betaseron, or Rebif)—immunomodulators that *modify* the course of the disease and have antiviral effects
- Glatiramer acetate (Copaxone)—a synthetic protein that is similar to myelin-based protein
- Natalizumab (Tysabri)—the first monoclonal antibody approved for MS that binds to WBCs to prevent further damage to the myelin

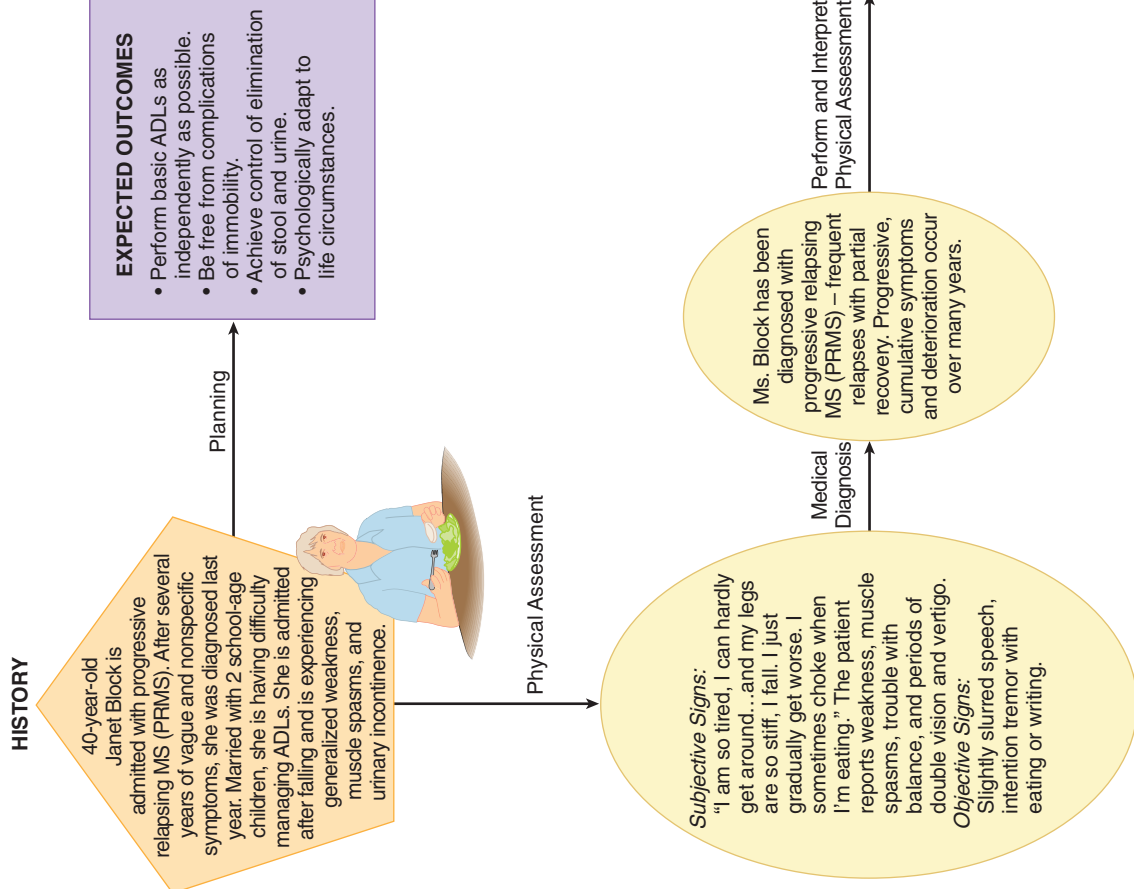
Both interferon-beta and glatiramer acetate are subcutaneous injections that patients can self-administer.

Natalizumab is a controversial drug because it can cause many adverse events. It is given as an IV infusion in a physician's office or clinic under careful supervision. The patient is monitored carefully for allergic or anaphylactic reaction when each dose is given because the drug tends to build up

Concept Map: Multiple Sclerosis

1 History Obtain a thorough history. Helps with accurate diagnosis. Ask the patient about vision, mobility, and sensory changes, which may be early indicators of MS. Symptoms are often vague and nonspecific in the early stages of the disease.	2 Nursing Safety Priority: Action Alert Monitor for fall risk. Assess the patient's ability to move, the presence of spasms, and stiffness of extremities. Assesses unsteadiness of gait due to leg weakness and spasticity. Motor movements are often clumsy. Loss of balance and poor coordination increase the risk for falls.	3 Activities Teach the patient about getting adequate rest, avoiding undue stress, and the importance of social activities. Addresses the anxiety about the length of remission or progression of the disease. Fatigue is the most disabling symptom and can decrease the patient's participation in life events.	4 Vision • Instruct the patient to wear an eye patch, alternating from eye to eye every few hours. Relieves diplopia. • Have the patient see an ophthalmologist. Changes in visual acuity may be aided by corrective lenses.	5 Bladder Care Assist with bladder care: drugs, intermittent self-catheterization, indwelling catheterization, or bladder pacemaker. Prophylactic antibiotics and increased fluids prevent UTIs. Demyelination of nerves affect function and can have a major impact on the patient's quality of life.	6 Psychosocial Assessment Assist the patient in verbalizing concerns about body image, self-concept, role performance, self-esteem, and sexuality. Help her set realistic goals. Establishes open and honest communication by allowing her to share her frustrations, anger, and anxiety.	7 Medications Provide written instructions and review prescribed medications. Reinforces the importance and purpose of drug regimen: Anticholinergics for bladder dysfunction; antispasmodics, antiepileptics, analgesics, NSAIDs, tranquilizers, and/or antidepressants for pain and paresthesia.	8 Dysarthria and Dysphagia Collaborate with a speech-language pathologist for evaluation and treatment of slurred speech and swallowing abilities. Evaluates and treats dysphasia, which often occurs with dysarthria.	9 Support Systems Assist the patient to identify support systems for family members as they live with the patient with MS. Teach family strategies to enable them to cope with these changes. Avoids embarrassment for the patient because personality changes are not unusual.	10 Health Teaching Give the patient a resource person to call from the National MS Society (www.nationalmssociety.org) and other resources, including meal delivery, transportation, and homemaker services. Assists the patient with ADLs.
---	--	--	---	---	--	---	---	--	---

INTERVENTIONS



! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Teach patients how to give and rotate the site of interferon-beta and glatiramer acetate injections because local injection site (skin) reactions are common. The first dose of these drugs is given under medical supervision to monitor for allergic response, including anaphylactic shock. Teach patients receiving these drugs to avoid crowds and people with infections. Remind them to report any sign or symptom associated with infection immediately to their health care provider.

in the body. *Patients receiving this drug are at a high risk for progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML).* This opportunistic viral infection leads to death or severe disability. Monitor for neurologic changes, especially changes in mental state, such as disorientation or acute confusion. PML is confirmed by an MRI and examining the cerebrospinal fluid for the causative pathogen.

Natalizumab also causes damage to hepatic cells. Carefully monitor liver enzymes and teach patients to have frequent laboratory tests to assess for changes.

Mitoxantrone (Novantrone), a chemotherapy drug, has been shown to be effective in reducing neurologic disability. It also decreases the frequency of clinical relapses in patients with secondary progressive, progressive-relapsing, or worsening relapsing-remitting MS.

Fingolimod (Gilenya) is the first oral immunomodulator approved for the management of MS. The capsules may be taken with or without food. Teach patients to monitor their pulse every day because the drug can cause bradycardia, especially within the first 6 hours after taking it (Duddy et al., 2011).

Immunosuppressive therapy with a combination of cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan) and methylprednisolone (Solu-Medrol) may be used for some patients to stabilize the disease process and decrease inflammation. IV adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) may be given instead of methylprednisolone and tapered gradually over 2 to 4 weeks.

Promoting Mobility and Managing Symptoms

For symptom management, the health care provider may prescribe baclofen (Lioresal), diazepam (Valium, Apo-Diazepam ♣), or dantrolene sodium (Dantrium) to lessen muscle spasticity. Dalfampridine (Ampyra), a potassium channel blocker, is a new oral drug that can be prescribed to improve walking ability and speed. Dalfampridine is not given to patients with a history of seizures or renal disease.

Severe muscle spasticity may be treated with intrathecal baclofen (ITB) administered through a surgically implanted pump. Paresthesia may be treated with carbamazepine (Tegretol) or tricyclic antidepressants. Propranolol hydrochloride (Inderal) and clonazepam (Klonopin) have been used to treat cerebellar ataxia. If fatigue cannot be controlled through the use of nonpharmacologic measures, amantadine hydrochloride (Symmetrel) may be prescribed.

Bladder dysfunction (detrusor hyperreflexia) may be treated with anticholinergic agents. Pain and paresthesia are often problems for the MS patient. Antispasmodics, antiepileptic drugs (AEDs), analgesics, NSAIDs, tranquilizers, or antidepressants may be used, depending on the cause of the pain and the patient's response. Teach patients about side and adverse effects for drugs that they may need to help increase their quality of life.

In collaboration with physical and occupational therapists, plan an exercise program that includes range-of-motion (ROM) exercises and stretching and strengthening exercises. Emphasize the importance of avoiding rigorous activities that increase body temperature. Increased body temperature may lead to increased fatigue, diminished motor ability, and decreased visual acuity resulting from changes in the conduction abilities of the injured axons.

Cognitive impairment may occur early in the disease process. Many patients have some degree of neuropsychological dysfunction during the course of their disease. Areas affected include attention, memory, problem solving, auditory reasoning, handling distractions, visual perception, and use of speech.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

For the patient with MS who has cognitive impairment, assist with orientation by placing a single-date calendar in his or her room. Give or encourage the patient to use written lists or recorded messages. To maintain an organized environment, encourage him or her to keep frequently used items in familiar places.

If the patient experiences dysarthria (slurred speech), refer him or her to the speech-language pathologist (SLP) for evaluation and treatment. It is not unusual for the patient with dysarthria also to have dysphagia (difficulty swallowing). The SLP performs a swallowing evaluation, but further diagnostic testing may be indicated.

Women report impaired genital sensation, diminished orgasm, and loss of sexual interest. Men most often report difficulty in achieving and maintaining an erection and delayed ejaculation. If able, answer the patient's questions, or refer the patient to a counselor or urologist with experience in the field of sexuality, intimacy, and disability.

The patient may experience a variety of bladder problems. In addition to drug therapy, other measures include an intermittent self-catheterization program, indwelling urinary catheter, or insertion of a bladder pacemaker. When the patient activates the control on the pacemaker, the bladder is stimulated and voiding is initiated. Patients with MS are at increased risk for urinary tract infections. Prophylactic antibiotics may be prescribed by the health care provider. Remind the patient to drink plenty of fluids unless contraindicated by other medical conditions.

An eye patch that is alternated from eye to eye every few hours usually relieves **diplopia** (double vision). For peripheral visual deficits, teach scanning techniques by having the patient move his or her head from side to side. Changes in visual acuity may be assisted by corrective lenses.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies

Patients with MS have reported a number of complementary and alternative therapies that have been successful in decreasing their symptoms. **Esmonde and Long (2008)** found that the six most used therapies for patients with MS were:

- Reflexology
- Massage
- Yoga
- Relaxation and meditation
- Acupuncture
- Aromatherapy

Chapter 2 in this text describes most of these therapies. Marijuana has been used by some patients to relieve the pain of muscle spasms and is now legal for medical use in several U.S. states. It is also now legal in Canada.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

To help the patient maintain maximum strength, function, and independence, continuity of care through an interdisciplinary team in both the rehabilitation and home setting is necessary. Admission to a rehabilitation center is brief but provides a program to improve functional ability. In collaboration with the case manager and occupational therapist, assess the patient's home before discharge for any hazards. Any items that might interfere with mobility (e.g., scatter rugs) are removed. In addition, care must be taken to prevent injury resulting from vision problems. Teach the patient and family to keep the home environment as structured and as free from clutter as possible. As the disease progresses, the home may need to be adapted for wheelchair accessibility. Any necessary assistive/adaptive device should be readily available before discharge from the hospital.

Teaching for Self-Management

The health care provider explains to the patient and family the development of MS and the factors that may exacerbate the symptoms. Emphasize the importance of avoiding overexertion, stress, extremes of temperatures (fever, hot baths, overheating, and excessive chilling), humidity, and people with infections. Explain all medications to be taken on discharge, including the time and route of administration, dosage, purpose, and side effects. Teach the patient how to differentiate expected side effects from adverse or allergic reactions, and provide the name of a resource person to call if questions or problems occur. Provide written instructions as a resource for the patient and caregivers at home.

The physical therapist develops an exercise program appropriate for the patient's tolerance level at home. The patient is instructed in techniques for self-care, daily living skills, and the use of required adaptive equipment, such as walkers and electric carts. Include information related to bowel and bladder management, skin care, nutrition, and positioning techniques. Chapter 8 describes in detail these aspects of chronic illness and rehabilitation.

Teach patients about the importance of obtaining adequate rest and avoiding undue stress. It is equally important for them to engage in regular social activities. Often patients are anxious and worry about how long the remission will last or when the disease will progress.

Because personality changes are not unusual, teach the family or significant others strategies to enable them to cope with these changes. For example, the family may develop a nonverbal signal to alert the patient to potentially inappropriate behavior. This action avoids embarrassment for the patient.

Health Care Resources

Resources required by the patient depend on the course of the disease and the complications that occur. Patients often are able to live completely independently, but they may need some assistance. In severe disease, placement in an assisted-living or long-term care facility may be the best alternative.

The population of young and middle-aged residents in these settings is increasing as people with chronic, disabling diseases live longer.

Refer the patient and family members or significant others to the local chapter of the National Multiple Sclerosis Society (www.nationalmssociety.org). Other community resources include meal delivery services (e.g., Meals on Wheels), transportation services for the disabled, and homemaker services.

AMYOTROPHIC LATERAL SCLEROSIS

Pathophysiology

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), also known as **Lou Gehrig's disease**, is an adult-onset upper and lower motor neuron disease. It is characterized by progressive weakness, muscle wasting, and spasticity that eventually leads to paralysis. Beginning in one area of the body, motor weakness and deterioration spread until the entire body is involved, including the ability to talk, swallow, and breathe. As a result of loss of lower motor neurons (LMNs) found in the spinal cord and brainstem, the muscles to which they connect weaken, atrophy, and die.

Loss or death of upper neurons (found in the brain) breaks their connections with LMNs, and spasticity occurs in the muscles. Death typically occurs within 3 years of diagnosis due to respiratory failure (Murphy et al., 2007). There is no known cause, no cure, no specific treatment, no standard pattern of progression, and no method of prevention. Unlike with many other neural degenerative diseases, the sensory and autonomic nervous systems are not involved. Cognitive and behavioral dysfunction may occur, although the exact cause and extent of this has not been established.

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis commonly affects people between the ages of 40 and 60 years, but it may also begin in younger and older age-groups. The incidence increases with each decade of life. ALS is more common in men than in women. The cause of the disease is unknown but is likely due to interactions of genetic, viral, and environmental factors.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The clinical manifestations of ALS include fatigue, muscle atrophy, and weakness. Early symptoms are listed in Chart 45-15.

In addition to motor changes, cognitive changes may affect the thinking and planning processes. As the disease progresses, muscle atrophy, particularly of the trapezius and

CHART 45-15 KEY FEATURES

Early Clinical Manifestations of Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

- Tongue atrophy
- Weakness of the hands and arms
- Beginning muscle atrophy of the arms
- **Fasciculations** (twitching) of the face
- Nasal quality of speech
- **Dysarthria** (slurred speech)
- **Dysphagia** (difficulty swallowing)
- Fatigue while talking

sternocleidomastoid muscles, develops. Eventually the respiratory muscles become involved, leading to respiratory compromise, pneumonia, and death.

Diagnosis is based on clinical and diagnostic test findings and by ruling out other causes of the motor changes. There is no specific test to diagnose ALS, but creatine kinase (CK) is increased. The electromyogram (EMG) demonstrates fibrillations and fasciculations of the muscles. A muscle biopsy specimen typically demonstrates small, angulated, atrophic fibers. Other diagnostic studies reveal motor strength deficits in serial muscle testing; abnormal pulmonary function test results, such as a decreased vital capacity (<2 L); and dysphagia (difficulty swallowing).

INTERVENTIONS

There is no known cure for ALS, but an interdisciplinary approach is needed for maintaining optimum functioning and end-of-life care.

Riluzole (Rilutek) is the only drug approved by the Food and Drug Administration for use with ALS patients. It is not a cure, but it does extend survival time. The usual dose is 50 mg twice daily. Teach patients to take the drug without food and when the stomach is empty. Teach the patient how to detect signs and symptoms of liver toxicity, such as vomiting and jaundice, that the drug may cause. Remind them to have frequent liver enzyme tests, such as alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartate aminotransferase (AST), as directed by the health care provider.

The health care provider also prescribes drug therapy for pain, fatigue, spasticity, excessive secretions, sleep disturbances, and other complications as they occur. The interdisciplinary team collaborates with the patient and family to develop an individualized plan of care. The physical therapist and occupational therapist evaluate the patient's home and recommend modifications as the disease progresses. An exercise and mobility program is developed, and special equipment is obtained as needed to help with ADLs and mobility. Other interventions are directed toward preventing complications of immobility and promoting comfort.

The speech-language pathologist (SLP) evaluates the patient for speech and swallowing problems and makes recommendations as needed. The SLP teaches patients various adaptive strategies, such as techniques to help them speak

louder and more clearly. He or she works with the patient and family to develop a communication system to be used when the patient can no longer verbally communicate.

A nutrition consult may be needed to help with planning meals that the patient can swallow. The family is taught how to ensure that the patient obtains sufficient nutrients, fiber, and fluids. When the patient can no longer swallow, a feeding tube may be placed, depending on the patient's decision or advance directives. The dietitian can recommend the appropriate enteral feedings.

For symptomatic treatment of dyspnea and/or intractable pain, opioids alone or in combination with benzodiazepines if anxiety is present may be prescribed. Titrating the dosages against the clinical symptoms is less likely to cause life-threatening respiratory depression. For treating terminal restlessness and confusion because of hypercapnia, neuroleptics may be used (e.g., chlorpromazine [Thorazine, Chlorpromazine] 12.5 mg every 4 to 12 hours orally, IV, or rectally).

At some point, the patient will require respiratory support. Intermittent positive-pressure ventilation (IPPV) or bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP) may be used to aid breathing during sleep or full time. Mechanical ventilation enables the patient to breathe and prolongs survival; it does not alter progression of the disease. For this reason, many patients elect not to be placed on a mechanical ventilator, according to their wishes or advance directives. Teach the patient about the need for advance directives, such as a living will. Chapter 9 discusses end-of-life issues and hospice services in detail.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Refer the patient with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis to a hospice program for palliative care. The hospice team works closely with the family to ensure the patient's comfort and respiratory support. The team collaborates with the health care provider to ensure that the patient has the needed drug therapy and pain control, as well as quality of life for the patient and family.

Other community resources include clinics and other support services run by the ALS Association (www.alsa.org) or the Muscular Dystrophy Association (www.mda.org).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate mobility and sensation as a result of spinal cord health problems?

- Weakness or paralysis of one or more extremities
- Report of decreased sensation in one or more extremities
- Muscle spasticity or flaccidity
- Forward bent position when ambulating
- Limp or altered gait
- Bladder incontinence or retention
- Bowel incontinence or retention
- Report of pain in back and/or in one or more extremities
- Difficulty breathing

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate mobility and sensation as a result of spinal cord health problems?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Assessing airway patency and breathing pattern
- Assessing level of consciousness
- Taking vital signs
- Performing a complete physical assessment
- Performing a complete neurologic assessment
- Assessing level of pain

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

Respond by:

- Establishing an airway as needed
- Stabilizing the spine by positioning until surgery or other treatment is provided
- Preparing for imaging assessment tests
- Providing pain medication as prescribed
- Inserting an indwelling urinary catheter
- Collaborating with the health care team, especially the physical therapist and the occupational therapist, if needed

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient for changes in condition, including deterioration of neurologic status.
- Consider how to best collaborate with the health care team when caring for patients with spinal cord injury or illness.
- Think about family reaction to the injury or illness and what additional resources could have been used or should be used in the future.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- To help prevent back injury, use proper body mechanics as described in [Chart 45-5](#).
- For patients who have back surgery, observe the incision site for bleeding and cerebrospinal fluid leakage (clear fluid).
- Log roll patients having spinal surgery, especially those who have fusions.
- For patients with an SCI, assess airway *first!*
- Observe patients with spinal injuries and diseases for complications of immobility.
- Monitor respiratory status carefully in patients with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Patients experience respiratory failure in terminal stages of the disease. Consider their advance directives to assist in planning care.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients who have had spinal surgery to avoid lifting and driving and to use proper body mechanics.
- Teach overweight and obese patients the importance of losing weight to reduce back pain and strain.
- Refer patients to appropriate resources, such as a sexuality counselor or urologist, for sexual dysfunction resulting from illness or disease. Counsel them as needed about sexuality issues.
- Assess patients with spinal cord injury and disease for the need for adaptive/assistive devices to become independent in ADLs.
- Implement bowel and bladder retraining programs for patients with SCI and spinal diseases.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Recognize that spinal cord injury and progressive neurologic diseases, such as MS, require the patient to adjust to major life changes.

- Determine patient and family coping strategies to help patients adjust to spinal trauma or disease.
- Encourage patients to share their feelings about life-altering SCI or neurodegenerative disease.
- Refer patients with spinal cord cancer to appropriate resources, such as the American Cancer Society and its support groups.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess pain level in patients with back injury, including the nature of the pain and location.
- Provide complete neurologic assessment of patients with spinal cord health problems, including muscle assessment as described in [Chart 45-8](#).
- Implement drug and non-drug interventions for back pain, including analgesics, NSAIDs, and muscle relaxants. Suggest heat as an adjunct to medication.
- Provide postoperative care and discharge teaching for patients having cervical neck surgery as listed in [Chart 45-6](#).
- Implement interventions to prevent complications associated with immobility, including turning, early ambulation or transfers out of bed, and incentive spirometry.
- Monitor patients with cervical spinal injuries for manifestations of autonomic dysreflexia (see [Chart 45-9](#)).
- Provide emergency care for patients who experience autonomic dysreflexia as listed in [Chart 45-10](#).
- Assess patients with multiple sclerosis for clinical manifestations as listed in [Chart 45-14](#). Fatigue is the most common symptom.
- Provide supportive care for the patient with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Refer to hospice in the terminal stage of the disease.

Care of Patients with Problems of the Peripheral Nervous System

Rachel L. Palmieri



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Guillain-Barré Syndrome

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with interdisciplinary health care team members when providing care for patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) and myasthenia gravis (MG).
2. Identify community resources for peripheral nervous system (PNS) disorders for patients and families.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Provide information to patients and families on common side effects and administration of drugs for PNS disorders.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Plan interventions for patients with GBS and MG for promoting communication.

Physiological Integrity

5. Describe how to perform focused neurologic assessments for patients with PNS disorders.

6. Compare and contrast the pathophysiology and etiology of GBS and MG.
7. Prioritize nursing care for the patient with GBS or MG.
8. Differentiate between a myasthenic crisis and a cholinergic crisis.
9. Identify specific nursing actions regarding drug administration for the patient with MG.
10. Assess patients having a thymectomy for postoperative complications.
11. Plan and implement postoperative care for the patient undergoing peripheral nerve repair.
12. Identify risk factors for restless legs syndrome.
13. Compare trigeminal neuralgia and facial paralysis assessment findings.
14. Explain the role of drug therapy in managing the patient with trigeminal neuralgia and facial paralysis.
15. Identify the priority for care for patients with trigeminal neuralgia.

The peripheral nervous system (PNS) is composed of the spinal nerves, cranial nerves, and part of the autonomic nervous system. Its function is to provide communication from the brain and spinal cord to other parts of the body. Neuropathy or peripheral neuropathy (PN) is a global word that refers to any disease, disorder, or damage to the PNS. These health problems may be acute, such as Guillain-Barré syndrome, or chronic, such as diabetic neuropathy. Typical

clinical manifestations of neuropathy include pain, muscle cramps, and muscle weakness.

Acquired neuropathies are grouped into three broad categories: inflammatory, traumatic, or systemic. *Inflammatory* neuropathies such as Guillain-Barré syndrome can affect the entire peripheral nervous system. Trigeminal neuralgia is a type of neuropathy caused by *trauma* or damage to a single nerve—the trigeminal nerve. Examples of *systemic*

neuropathy are diabetic PN and chemotherapy-induced PN. Neuropathies that are part of or caused by systemic diseases or treatments are discussed elsewhere in this text. All of these PNS health problems cause impairments in the human needs of *mobility, sensation, or both*.

GUILLAIN-BARRÉ SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) is an acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (AIDP) that affects the peripheral nervous system, causing motor weakness and sensory abnormalities. It is an uncommon disorder, affecting both genders equally and peaking after age 55 years (Simmons, 2010). Euro-Americans have the disease more often than other racial or ethnic groups.

GBS may be referred to by a variety of other names, such as *acute idiopathic polyneuritis* and *polyradiculoneuropathy*. As a result of **demyelination** (destruction of the myelin sheath) of the peripheral nerves, *progressive motor weakness* and *sensory abnormalities* occur. Symptoms typically begin in the legs and spread to the arms and upper body. This is referred to as an **ascending paralysis**. Paralysis can increase in intensity until the muscles cannot be used at all and the patient is almost totally immobile. As a result, some patients require mechanical ventilation because of weak or paralyzed respiratory muscles. Healing occurs in reverse; the neurons affected last are the first to recover.

GBS is the result of a variety of related immune-mediated pathologic processes. The immune system starts to destroy the myelin sheath that surrounds the axons of the peripheral nerves or attacks the axons themselves. Segmental demyelination (the destruction of myelin between the nodes of Ranvier) is the major pathologic finding in GBS. This destruction affects the transmission of impulses from node to node by slowing it down. Also, the brain receives fewer sensory signals, affecting the patient's ability to feel textures, heat, and pain. On the other hand, the brain may receive altered signals that cause the tingling or "crawling-skin" sensation many patients report.

On microscopic examination, groups of lymphocytes are seen at the points of myelin breakdown, yet the axons usually remain intact. In some instances, secondary damage to the cell body, the neurilemma, or the axon occurs. This can delay recovery or result in permanent neurologic deficits.

Three stages make up the *acute* course of GBS:

- The *acute or initial period* (1 to 4 weeks), which begins with the onset of the first symptoms and ends when no further deterioration occurs
- The *plateau period* (several days to 2 weeks)
- The *recovery phase* (gradually over 4 to 6 months, maybe up to 2 years), which is thought to coincide with remyelination and axonal regeneration (Some patients do not completely recover and have permanent neurologic deficits, referred to as *chronic GBS*.)

The exact cause of GBS remains unclear. The patient often relates a history of acute illness, trauma, surgery, or immunization 1 to 3 weeks before the onset of neurologic manifestations. Other risk factors include an upper respiratory tract infection or GI illness and positive antibodies to cytomegalovirus or Epstein-Barr virus (EBV). It is believed that the

precipitating event or illness causes a limited malfunction of the immune system, which sensitizes the T-cells to the patient's myelin. In response to several antigens, some patients apparently form a demyelinating antibody that has a direct toxic effect on nerves or attracts a cellular immune response. This ultimately destroys the myelin. Other factors associated with the development of GBS are listed in Table 46-1.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Obtain a complete health history. Ask the patient to describe GBS symptoms in chronologic order, if possible. Question about the presence of pain, which is common if the patient has **paresthesias** (unpleasant sensations such as burning, stinging, and prickly feeling).

Manifestations of GBS depend on the degree of weakness and the progression of symptoms. Although features vary, most people report a sudden onset of muscle weakness and pain (Chart 46-1). Typically, the disease does not affect level of consciousness, cerebral function, or pupillary constriction or dilation. The clinical variations of GBS reflect the areas of earliest or most severe involvement (Table 46-2).

With any of the variants, *cranial nerve* involvement most often affects the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII). Assess the

TABLE 46-1 FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH DEVELOPMENT OF GUILLAIN-BARRÉ SYNDROME

• Acute illness • Gastrointestinal illness • <i>Campylobacter jejuni</i> bacteria • Human immune deficiency virus infection • <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> • Surgery • Upper respiratory infection • Virus • Cytomegalovirus • Epstein-Barr virus • Varicella-zoster virus	• Vaccination • Flu • Group A <i>Streptococcus</i> • Rabies • Drugs • Captopril • Danazol • Penicillamine • Systemic lupus erythematosus • Hodgkin's disease
--	---

CHART 46-1 KEY FEATURES

Guillain-Barré Syndrome

Motor Manifestations

- Ascending symmetric muscle weakness → flaccid paralysis without muscle atrophy
- Decreased or absent deep tendon reflexes (DTRs)
- Respiratory compromise (dyspnea, diminished breath sounds, decreased tidal volume and vital capacity) and respiratory failure
- Loss of bowel and bladder control (less common)
- Ataxia

Sensory Manifestations

- Paresthesias
- Pain (cramping)

Cranial Nerve Manifestations

- Facial weakness
- Dysphagia
- Diplopia
- Difficulty speaking

Autonomic Manifestations

- Labile blood pressure
- Cardiac dysrhythmias
- Tachycardia

TABLE 46-2 CLINICAL VARIANTS OF GUILLAIN-BARRÉ SYNDROME

Ascending GBS

- Most common clinical pattern.
- Weakness, paresthesias, and leg pain begin in the lower extremities and progress upward to include the trunk and arms or affect the cranial nerves.
- Symptoms of an ascending flaccidity or weakness that evolves over hours to several days (1 to 10 days).
- Mild paresis to total quadriplegia.
- Some degree of respiratory compromise.
- Deep tendon reflexes are absent in limbs that become paralyzed.

Pure Motor GBS

- Identical to the ascending variant except sensory manifestations are absent and the patient is generally in much less pain.

Descending GBS

- Initially experiences weakness of the face or **bulbar** muscles of the jaw, the sternocleidomastoid muscles (head rotators), and the muscles of the tongue, pharynx, and larynx.
- Weakness progresses downward to involve the limbs.
- May quickly affect the respiratory function:
 - Breathlessness during speech
 - Shallow respirations
 - Dyspnea
 - Decreased tidal volume
- Often includes **ophthalmoplegia** (paralysis or weakness of the eye muscles), causing diplopia.
- If the papillary response to light is affected, functional blindness may result.
- Numbness is more common in the hands than in the feet.
- Deep tendon reflexes are decreased or absent.

Miller Fisher Variant

- A rare polyneuropathy.
- Triad of ophthalmoplegia, areflexia (absence of reflexes), and severe ataxia (defective muscle coordination).
- Motor strength and sensory function are normal.
- Pupillary response to light is occasionally affected by the ophthalmoplegia, which results in functional blindness.

patient's ability to smile, frown, whistle, or drink from a straw. In addition to monitoring the functions of cranial nerve VII, assess the patient for dysphagia (difficulty swallowing). Less frequently affected cranial nerves include the glossopharyngeal (IX), vagus (X), accessory (XI), and hypoglossal (XII) nerves. The patient's inability to cough, gag, or swallow results from the involvement of cranial nerves IX and X. Monitor the patient closely for varying blood pressure (hypertensive and hypotensive episodes or orthostatic hypotension), bradycardia, heart block, and, possibly, asystole. These symptoms are part of *autonomic dysfunction*, which is linked to vagus nerve (X) deficit. Assess cranial nerve XI (accessory) by asking the patient to shrug the shoulders. Hypoglossal nerve (XII) deficit is evidenced by an inability to stick the tongue out straight.

In addition to determining the usual roles and responsibilities, occupation, motivation, and available support systems, assess the patient's ability to cope with this devastating illness and the accompanying fear and anxiety. In general, GBS is self-limiting and the paralysis is temporary. It is not unusual for the patient to have depression throughout the recovery period, however, due to a feeling of powerlessness.

Although no single clinical or laboratory finding confirms the diagnosis of GBS, the health care provider may perform a lumbar puncture (LP) to evaluate *cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)*. An increase in CSF protein level often occurs due to the release of plasma proteins from inflammation, degeneration, and damage to nerve roots. However, high protein levels may not occur until after 1 to 2 weeks of illness, reaching a peak in 4 to 6 weeks. The CSF lymphocyte count is normal.

Peripheral blood tests may show a moderate *leukocytosis* early in the illness. The number of leukocytes rapidly returns to normal if there are no complications or concurrent illness.

Electrophysiologic studies (EPSs) demonstrate demyelinating neuropathy. The degree of abnormality found on testing does not always correlate with clinical severity. Within 3 weeks of symptoms, nerve conduction velocities are depressed. In some cases, denervated potentials (fibrillations) develop later in the illness. Electromyographic (EMG) findings, which reflect peripheral nerve function, are normal early in the illness. Electrophysiologic changes appear only after denervation of muscle has been present for 4 weeks or longer. Nerve conduction velocity (NCV) testing is performed with the EMG. Nerve damage or disease may still exist despite normal NCV results. These tests are described in Chapter 43.

A magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT) scan may be requested to rule out other causes of motor weakness. Respiratory function is often compromised in patients with GBS. Therefore vital capacity may be decreased and arterial blood gas (ABG) values may be abnormal (decreased partial pressure of arterial oxygen [P_{aO_2}], increased partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [P_{aCO_2}], or increased pH).

INTERVENTIONS**Managing Drug Therapy and Plasmapheresis**

The health care provider follows the most recent best practice guidelines from the [American Academy of Neurology \(2011\)](#) for the treatment of GBS. These include:

- Treat with either plasma exchange (PE, also known as *plasmapheresis*) or immunoglobulin. There is no benefit to combine these treatments.
- Implement PE for non-ambulatory adult patients who seek treatment within 4 weeks of the development of symptoms. It is also recommended for ambulatory patients seen within 2 weeks of onset of symptoms.
- Use IV immunoglobulin (IVIG) for ambulatory patients who seek treatment within 2 weeks of onset of symptoms.
- Do not use corticosteroids unless medically necessary to treat other diseases.

Cerebrospinal fluid filtration (CSFF), also called *liquorpheresis*, has been a controversial new treatment option and lacking strong evidence for successfully managing Guillain-Barré syndrome. This procedure involves filtering out immunoglobulins and inflammatory mediators, such as cytokines.

Plasmapheresis removes the circulating antibodies thought to be responsible for the disease. In this procedure, plasma is selectively separated from whole blood. The blood cells are returned to the patient without the plasma. Plasma usually replaces itself, or the patient is transfused with colloid substitute such as albumin. Fresh frozen plasma is

CHART 46-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preventing and Managing Complications of Plasmapheresis

COMPLICATION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS
Trauma or infection at vascular access site	Keep the site clean and dry. Monitor the site for redness, swelling, drainage, or other signs of infection.
Hypovolemia with resultant hypotension, tachycardia, dizziness, and diaphoresis	Monitor fluid and electrolyte status and vital signs. Administer fluids as prescribed. Provide an explanation of side effects, and reassure the patient.
Hypokalemia and hypocalcemia	Monitor fluid and electrolyte balance. Administer replacement electrolytes as prescribed. Observe for cardiac dysrhythmias.
Temporary circumoral and distal extremity paresthesias, muscle twitching, nausea, and vomiting related to administration of citrated plasma	Add calcium gluconate or calcium chloride to exchange fluids as prescribed. Provide explanations, comfort measures, and reassurance.

generally not used because of the associated risk for infection and allergic pulmonary edema. Plasmapheresis should be done within several days after the onset of the illness, although some patients benefit up to 30 days after the onset of symptoms. The patient usually receives three to four treatments, 1 to 2 days apart. Some patients may require a second round of treatment if they deteriorate after the first plasmapheresis.

Nursing interventions for the patient undergoing plasmapheresis include providing information and reassurance, weighing the patient before and after the procedure, and properly caring for the shunt, if used.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If a shunt is used for plasmapheresis, be sure to:

- Check shunt patency
 - Assess for bruits every 2 to 4 hours
 - Keep double bulldog clamps at the bedside
 - Observe the puncture site for bleeding or ecchymosis (bruising)
- Observe for signs of complications throughout the procedure (Chart 46-2).

IVIg has been shown to be as effective as plasmapheresis. It is safer and immediately available. Side effects of immunoglobulin therapy range from minor annoyances (e.g., chills, mild fever, myalgia, headache) to major complications (e.g., anaphylaxis, aseptic meningitis, retinal necrosis, acute renal failure). A serum IgA is drawn before administration of the medication. Infuse IVIg slowly when it is started. Observe for side and adverse effects, and report their occurrence to the health care provider. The rate of administration can be increased based on the patient's tolerance and on agency protocol.

Managing the Airway and Monitoring Respiratory Status

The priority nursing intervention of *airway management* is to promote airway patency and gas exchange. Elevate the head of the bed to at least 45 degrees or higher as determined by the patient's response and level of dyspnea. The need for suctioning the patient is based on assessment data. During suctioning, the patient is at risk for vagal nerve stimulation that could lead to bradycardia and cardiac arrest. Monitor the color, consistency, and amount of secretions obtained. Chest physiotherapy, often performed by the respiratory therapist (RT), and frequent position changes are combined with breathing exercises (coughing and deep breathing) to prevent pneumonia and atelectasis. Encourage the patient to use the incentive spirometer to expand the lungs every few hours. Oxygen may be administered by nasal cannula at a flow rate prescribed by the health care provider.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

In the initial phase of Guillain-Barré syndrome, monitor the patient closely (usually in a critical care unit) for signs of respiratory distress, such as dyspnea, air hunger, adventitious breath sounds, decreased oxygen saturation, and cyanosis. In addition, assess respiratory rate, rhythm, and depth every 1 to 2 hours. In collaboration with the respiratory therapist (RT), check vital capacity every 2 to 4 hours and auscultate the lungs at 4-hour intervals. Monitor the patient's ability to cough and swallow for any change. Assess cognitive status, especially in older adults; a decline often indicates hypoxia.

Monitor ABG values or end-tidal carbon dioxide frequently for acid-base abnormalities; pulse oximetry reveals decreasing oxygen saturation. A decrease in vital capacity to less than 15 to 20 mL/kg (or less than two thirds of the patient's normal) and the inability to clear secretions may be indications for elective intubation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Keep equipment for performing an endotracheal intubation at the bedside of the patient with Guillain-Barré syndrome, and have a mechanical ventilator readily available in case of respiratory emergency.

Managing Cardiac Dysfunction

Both the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems may be affected. Place the patient on a cardiac monitor because of the risk for dysrhythmias. Monitor vital signs closely. Hypertension is treated with a beta blocker or nitroprusside (Nitro-press). Hypotension is treated with IV fluids and placing the patient in a supine position unless he or she is in extreme respiratory distress. Atropine may be prescribed to treat bradycardia.

Improving Mobility and Preventing Complications of Immobility

Collaborate with the patient, family, physical and occupational therapists (PT/OT), speech-language pathologist (SLP), and dietitian to develop interventions that prevent complications of immobility and to address deficits in self-care. Assess the patient's motor (muscle) function every 2 to 4 hours as part

of the neurologic assessment. The interventions prescribed for mobility and self-management and to prevent complications depend on the degree of motor deficit. The PT and OT provide assistive devices and instructions for their use.

To ensure safety, assist the patient with ambulation, transfers from bed to chair, position changes, and maintenance of proper body alignment until he or she is able to perform these activities independently. Encourage maximum independence. Perform active or passive range-of-motion (ROM) exercises every 2 to 4 hours, or delegate this activity to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) with supervision. Teach family members these techniques. (See Chapter 8 for detailed discussion of ways to improve physical mobility and self-care, as well as ways to prevent immobility consequences.) Monitor the patient's responses, including fatigue level. Provide adequate rest periods between activities and therapy sessions.

Decreased gastric motility, dysphagia, and depression can cause malnutrition. Collaborate with the dietitian to develop an individualized plan. The patient may require little assistance with feeding or may be totally dependent. If he or she cannot safely swallow food or liquids, enteral nutrition via feeding tube is prescribed. Weigh the patient three times a week, and monitor serum prealbumin each week.

Malnutrition places patients at risk for pressure ulcers, especially when they are immobile. Therefore pay special attention to skin care, including interventions to prevent skin breakdown. Instruct UAP to turn the patient a minimum of every 2 hours. Assess the skin for any areas of redness that may lead to pressure ulcers. If the bed does not have a pressure-reducing mattress, use a mattress overlay to help prevent skin breakdown. Document changes in the patient's skin condition every 8 to 12 hours while in the acute care setting and at least daily in a transitional care or rehabilitation setting. If an ulcer develops, implement aggressive interventions to manage the wound. Chapters 8 and 27 discuss pressure ulcer care in detail.

Because pulmonary emboli and deep vein thromboses are common complications of immobility, the health care provider may prescribe prophylactic anticoagulant therapy, such as subcutaneous heparin or Lovenox. Antiembolism stockings and sequential compression stockings may be used to promote venous return. Be sure that stockings are removed at least once every 24 hours for 15 to 30 minutes. Other prevention measures are determined by agency policy or health care provider preference. Chapter 8 describes additional interventions to prevent complications of immobility and promote self-care.

Managing Pain

Assess the severity and nature of the patient's pain, which is often worse at night. The patient may have paresthesia or hyperesthesia (extreme sensitivity to touch), deep muscle aches, and muscle stiffness. The typical pain experienced is often not relieved by drugs other than opiates, which can be

administered via a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pump or continuous IV drip. Other drugs that are given include gabapentin (Neurontin) or tricyclic antidepressants.

Other pain control measures include frequent repositioning, massage, ice, heat, relaxation techniques, guided imagery, hypnosis, and distractions (e.g., music, visitors). Chapter 5 discusses these modalities and other pain relief measures in detail.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is admitted to the critical care unit with possible Guillain-Barré syndrome. Which assessment is the most important for this client?

- A. Nutritional status assessment
- B. Nervous system assessment
- C. Mental status assessment
- D. Respiratory system assessment

Promoting Communication

The patient may have difficulty communicating because the muscles required for the production of speech are weak, or he or she may be mechanically ventilated because the respiratory muscles are paralyzed. In either case, collaborate with the speech-language pathologist to develop a communication system. A simple technique involves eye blinking or moving a finger to indicate “yes” and “no.” A communication board or flash cards can be used with the letters of the alphabet or a list of common requests, such as the need to be repositioned or the need for pain medication. Computer or personal digital assistant (PDA) technology may also be used, depending on muscle function. Both the staff and the visitors must know how the patient's communication system operates.

Providing Psychosocial Support

Teach the patient and family about the illness, and explain all diagnostic tests and treatments. Assess the patient and family for verbal and nonverbal behaviors that indicate powerlessness, anxiety, fear, and isolation (Simmons, 2010). Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings about the illness and its effects, if possible, while fostering hope. Assess previous decision-making patterns, roles, and responsibilities. To help identify personal factors that influence coping ability, ask the patient and/or family to describe their usual lifestyles and the situations in which they coped effectively. Sleep disturbances related to pain and altered autonomic function may affect the patient's sleep-wake cycle. Allow for regularly scheduled rest periods (Simmons, 2010).

Refer patients who need further psychosocial support to the social worker, certified hospital chaplain or appropriate spiritual resource, and local support groups. If necessary, obtain a psychological consultation for further evaluation and intervention.

Community-Based Care

The severity and course of Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) are extremely variable, which makes the prognosis difficult to predict. The most likely residual deficits at discharge are related to motor status and mobility, self-management, and possibly sensory alteration and disturbed self-concept. For patients who have total quadriparesis (weakness in all four extremities) or respiratory paralysis, the course of the

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Older adults should not receive tricyclic drugs because they cause serious side effects such as urinary retention and blurred vision. Document the patient's response to pain medication, and notify the health care provider if pain relief is not sufficient.

rehabilitation phase is even more variable and may require weeks to years. The expected outcome of the recovery phase is to move from dependence to independence, if possible.

Planning for discharge begins on admission. The patient may be discharged to home or to a rehabilitation unit. In collaboration with the discharge planner or case manager (CM), the nurse makes appropriate referrals to a rehabilitation setting, home care agency, and/or community agencies for assistance in the home setting after discharge.

Include a family member in the education process throughout the patient's hospitalization and in the discharge process. Provide them with both oral and written instructions to improve mobility, use adaptive-assistive devices, and prevent skin breakdown.

If the patient is discharged to home while still needing assistive devices, the CM in collaboration with the interdisciplinary health care team makes certain that the necessary equipment has been delivered after evaluating the home setting. Home care management for patients with GBS is similar to that for those who have had a stroke or spinal cord injury, depending on the nature of the neurologic deficit.

Self-help and support groups for patients with chronic illness are common. Refer the patient and family to these groups, if indicated. For example, the Guillain-Barré Syndrome Foundation International (www.gbs-cidp.org) provides resources and information for patients and their families. The psychosocial adjustment needed may be minimal or dramatic, depending on the patient's residual deficit, age, gender, usual roles and responsibilities, usual coping strategies, available support systems, and occupation. Help the patient identify other support systems, such as church members, friends, or spiritual resources.

MYASTHENIA GRAVIS

Pathophysiology

Myasthenia gravis (MG) is an acquired autoimmune disease characterized by fatigue and weakness primarily in muscles innervated by the cranial nerves, as well as in skeletal and respiratory muscles. This autoimmune disease of the neuromuscular junction may take many forms—from mild disturbances of the ocular muscles to a rapidly developing, generalized weakness that may lead to death from respiratory failure. It has remissions and exacerbations (worsening or “flare-ups”). Although MG can present at any age, it is less commonly seen in the United States than Guillain-Barré syndrome. The incidence is equal between men and women.

MG is caused by an autoantibody attack on the acetylcholine receptors (AChRs) in the muscle end plate membranes. As a result, nerve impulses are not transmitted to the skeletal muscle at the neuromuscular junction and the muscles cannot contract.

Although the disease is not hereditary, there is a small familial incidence. Evidence also suggests a relationship between MG and hyperplasia (overgrowth) of the thymus gland. The thymus gland is often abnormal. **Thymoma** (encapsulated thymus gland tumor) occurs in a few cases, but most of the remaining cases show hyperplasia of the thymus. There is also a very strong association between MG and hyperthyroidism. D-penicillamine, interferon-alpha, and

bone marrow transplantation have been associated with drug-induced (iatrogenic) autoimmune MG.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Although the onset of MG is usually insidious (slow), some instances of fairly rapid development have been caused by infection, pregnancy, or anesthesia. Ask about any history of these events. A temporary increase in weakness may be noted after vaccination, menstruation, and exposure to extremes in environmental temperature.

In addition to the biographic data and history, ask the patient if he or she noticed the rapid onset of fatigue. Note reports of muscle weakness that increases on exertion or as the day wears on and improves with rest. Ask the patient to describe his or her symptoms, specifically noting the affected muscle groups and any limitation or inability in performing ADLs.

Additional areas of inquiry include any history of **ptosis** (drooping eyelids), **diplopia** (double vision), or **dysphagia** (difficulty chewing or swallowing) and the type of diet best tolerated. Assess the patient about a history of respiratory difficulty, choking, or voice weakness. Other areas of assessment include asking about any difficulty holding up the head, brushing teeth, combing hair, or shaving. Inquiry is made about the presence of paresthesias or aching in weakened muscles. Finally, ask about a history of thymus gland tumor.

The most common symptoms are related to involvement of the levator palpebrae or extraocular muscles (**Chart 46-3**). Assess for ptosis, diplopia, and weak or incomplete eye closure. These symptoms may last only a few days at the onset and then resolve, only to return weeks or months later. Pupillary responses to light and accommodation are usually normal.

For most patients, the muscles of facial expression, chewing, and speech are affected (**bulbar** involvement). Note the patient's smile, which may be transformed into a snarl. The jaw may hang so that the patient must prop it up with the hand. Chewing and swallowing difficulties, choking, and regurgitation of fluids through the nose may lead to considerable weight loss. Ask about the patient's nutritional intake and any recent weight loss. He or she may have more

CHART 46-3 KEY FEATURES

Myasthenia Gravis

Motor Manifestations

- Progressive muscle weakness (proximal) that usually improves with rest
- Poor posture
- Ocular palsies
- Ptosis
- Weak or incomplete eye closure
- Diplopia
- Respiratory compromise

- Loss of bowel and bladder control
- Fatigue

Sensory Manifestations

- Muscle aching
- Paresthesias
- Decreased sense of smell and taste

difficulty eating after talking. After extended conversations, the voice may become weaker or exhibit a nasal twang. In some patients, the tongue has fissures (ulcers).

Less often involved are the muscles of the shoulders, the flexors of the neck, and the hip flexors. Because limb weakness is more often *proximal* (closer to the body), the patient may have difficulty climbing stairs, lifting heavy objects, or raising the arms overhead. Neck weakness may be mild or severe enough to cause difficulty in holding the head erect. Among the trunk muscles, the erector spinae are most commonly affected. This results in difficulty maintaining a sitting or walking posture.

In the most advanced cases of MG, all muscles are weakened, including those associated with respiratory function and the control of bladder and bowel function. In these severe cases, ask about bowel and bladder function. Assess respiratory function frequently.

Muscle atrophy, although rarely severe, occurs in a small percentage of patients with myasthenia gravis (MG). The tendon reflexes should be assessed, but they are not often affected. Assess for pain, although this is seldom a major concern. Some patients report that their weakened muscles ache. If present, paresthesias (painful tingling sensations) affecting the muscles of the face, hands, and thighs are not associated with any loss of sensation. Lost or decreased sensations of smell and taste have been reported. Consciousness is not altered.

In **Eaton-Lambert syndrome**, a form of myasthenia often seen with small cell carcinoma of the lung, the muscles of the trunk and the pelvic and shoulder girdles are most commonly affected. Although weakness increases after exertion, muscle strength may temporarily increase during the first few contractions, followed by rapid decline. Diagnosis is confirmed by electromyography (EMG). Management differs somewhat from that of other types of MG. Treatment includes removing the tumor, managing the cancer, and administering drug therapy to release acetylcholine (ACh). Additional therapies may include plasmapheresis and immunosuppressive therapy (discussed later).

Diagnostic Assessment

Because the incidence of MG is rare, diagnosis may be delayed or missed. An experienced clinician can diagnose the disease from the history and physical examination findings. MG may be immediately confirmed by the patient's response to cholinergic drugs. A standard series of laboratory studies is usually performed for patients with known or suspected MG. **Thyroid function** should be tested because **thyrotoxicosis** (excessive thyroid hormone) is present in a small number of myasthenic patients. *Serum protein electrophoresis* evaluates the patient for immunologic disorders. Immunologic-based diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and polymyositis, are associated with the disease.

Testing for *acetylcholine receptor (AChR) antibodies* has become an important diagnostic criterion, because they are elevated in most patients with MG. A positive antibody test result confirms the diagnosis, but a negative finding does not rule out the disease.

Some patients with MG have a thymoma, and therefore patients are assessed for this condition. The thymus, an H-shaped gland located in the upper mediastinum beneath the sternum, is one organ in which AChR antibodies are

formed. Although a thymoma can often be seen on routine frontal and lateral chest x-rays, a *CT scan* is also done.

Repetitive Nerve Stimulation. The most common electrodiagnostic test performed to detect myasthenia gravis (MG) is repetitive nerve stimulation (RNS) of proximal nerves. Each nerve studied is electrically stimulated six to ten times at 2 or 3 Hertz. The compound muscle action potential (CMAP) is recorded with surface electrodes over muscle. In MG, there is a progressive decline in CMAP amplitude (force, or strength) with the first 4 or 5 stimuli. This test diagnoses most cases of generalized MG but far fewer cases of ocular MG.

Electromyography. An older but relatively common electrodiagnostic test performed by the physician or technician is electromyography (EMG). Although electrical testing of the normal neuromuscular junction produces no change in the amplitude of muscle contraction, the amplitude of the muscle's response diminishes with progressive stimulation. A decrease in amplitude of more than 10% between the first and fifth responses generally indicates the defective neuromuscular transmission characteristic of, but not unique to, MG. Several muscles may be tested to increase the likelihood of detecting an abnormality. Testing may be performed after exercise or exposure of the muscle to curare or to ischemia.

Single-fiber EMG (SFEMG) is a newer and most sensitive form of electromyography in detecting defects of neuromuscular transmission. This test compares the stability of the firing of one muscle fiber with that of another fiber innervated by the same motor neuron. The time interval between the two firings normally shows a minor degree of variability, called *jitter*. Defective transmission increases jitter or actually blocks successive discharges. This test can diagnose almost all cases of generalized and ocular MG.

Tensilon Testing. Pharmacologic tests with the cholinesterase inhibitors *edrophonium chloride* (*Tensilon*) and *neostigmine bromide* (*Prostigmin*) may be performed. This older test is often referred to as a *Tensilon challenge test*. Tensilon is used most often for testing because of its rapid onset and brief duration of action. This drug inhibits the breakdown of ACh at the postsynaptic membrane, which increases the availability of ACh for excitation of postsynaptic receptors. To perform the test, the physician first estimates the strength of cranial muscles. Initially, 2 mg (0.2 mL) is injected IV; if this is tolerated, an additional 8 mg (0.8 mL) is injected after 30 seconds. Within 30 to 60 seconds of the first dose, most myasthenic patients show a marked improvement in muscle tone that lasts 4 to 5 minutes. False-positive test results may be caused by increased muscle effort by the patient. False-negative findings may be seen if the tested muscle is extremely weak or refractory to the drug.

Tensilon testing may be used also to help determine whether increasing weakness in the previously diagnosed myasthenic patient is due to a **cholinergic crisis** (too much cholinesterase inhibitor drugs) or a **myasthenic crisis** (too little cholinesterase inhibitor drugs). In a cholinergic crisis,

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

The Tensilon test can cause ventricular fibrillation and cardiac arrest, but these reactions rarely occur. Be sure that atropine sulfate, the antidote for Tensilon, is available in case these complications occur.

muscle tone does not improve after giving Tensilon. Instead, weakness may actually increase and **fasciculations** (muscle twitching) may be seen around the eyes and face.

INTERVENTIONS

The classic presentation of MG is muscle weakness that increases when the patient is fatigued and limits his or her *mobility* and ability to participate in activities. Management for this disease falls into two categories:

- Treatment that affects the symptoms of MG without influencing the actual course of the disease (anticholinesterases or cholinergic drugs)
- Therapeutic efforts for inducing remission, such as the administration of immunosuppressive drugs or corticosteroids, plasmapheresis, and thymectomy (removal of the thymus gland)

Nonsurgical Management

Although not all patients with MG have respiratory compromise, ongoing assessment and maintenance of respiratory function are nursing care priorities.

Providing Respiratory Support. Both myasthenic crisis and cholinergic crisis increase muscle weakness and the patient's risk for respiratory compromise. The diaphragm and intercostal muscles may be affected, which inhibits the patient's ability to maintain adequate ventilation, breathe deeply, and cough effectively. In addition, dysphagia may result in the aspiration of foods, fluids, or saliva, which worsens the respiratory problems. Because of their respiratory muscle involvement, many of these patients have an increased risk for lung infections.

The patient who cannot cough effectively may require oropharyngeal or nasopharyngeal suctioning. If needed, teach the assisted-cough technique, similar to that used by patients who are quadriplegic. Collaborate with the respiratory therapist (RT) to provide chest physiotherapy consisting of postural drainage, percussion, and vibration to mobilize secretions.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Keep a manual resuscitation (breathing) bag (e.g., Ambu), equipment for oxygen administration, and endotracheal intubation equipment at the bedside of the patient with myasthenia gravis in case of respiratory distress!

Because breathing difficulty or the inability to breathe easily is frightening, be aware of the patient's mental and emotional status during periods of respiratory compromise. Monitor his or her response to drug therapy for muscle weakness. Monitor for pulmonary congestion that can lead to respiratory complications like pneumonia and atelectasis.

As an alternative to mechanical ventilation, bi-level positive airway pressure (BiPAP) should be tried first in patients with acute respiratory failure from MG crisis while awaiting improvement from IV immunoglobulin (IVIG) therapy or plasma exchange. Repeat blood gas measurements and clinical assessment after using the device for a few hours are used to determine its effects.

Promoting Mobility. Assess the patient's muscle strength before and after periods of activity. Provide assistance as

necessary to prevent the patient from becoming fatigued. Schedule him or her for tests, treatments, and other activities early in the day or during the energy peaks after giving the prescribed drugs. Assist the patient in planning the periods of rest necessary for avoiding excess fatigue.

During periods of maximum weakness, provide assistance for ambulation, transfers from bed to chair or toilet/commode, position changes, and maintenance of body alignment. Active or passive ROM exercises are performed every 2 to 4 hours with assistance of the nurse, UAP, or family. Assess bony prominences for skin breakdown at least every 2 hours. Teach family members how to perform this skill. Pressure-reducing devices or mattresses are used to help prevent pressure ulcers. Collaborate with the physical and occupational therapists to develop a program for the patient to assist with mobility, self-care, and energy conservation techniques. **Chapter 8** discusses other interventions for preventing complications of immobility.

Administering Drug Therapy. Two groups of drugs are typically prescribed for the treatment of myasthenia gravis (MG): anticholinesterases and immunosuppressants. Be sure to give these drugs on time to maintain blood levels and thus improve muscle strength. Monitor and document the patient's response to drug therapy. Provide information for the patient and the family about the indications for, effectiveness of, and side effects of the drugs used in the treatment of MG.

Cholinesterase Inhibitor Drugs. Cholinesterase (ChE) inhibitor drugs are the first-line management of MG. These drugs are also referred to as *anticholinesterase drugs* or *anti-myasthenics*. They enhance neuromuscular impulse transmission by preventing the decrease of ACh by the enzyme ChE. This increases the response of the muscles to nerve impulses and improves muscle strength. The ChE inhibitor drug of choice is pyridostigmine (Mestinon, Regonol). Expect day-to-day variations in dosage depending on the patient's changing symptoms.

Administer ChE inhibitors with a small amount of food to help alleviate GI side effects.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Instruct the patient to eat meals 45 minutes to 1 hour after taking ChE inhibitors to avoid aspiration. This is especially important if the patient has bulbar involvement. Drugs containing magnesium, morphine or its derivatives, curare, quinine, quinidine, procainamide, or hypnotics or sedatives should be avoided because they may increase the patient's weakness. Antibiotics such as neomycin and certain tetracyclines impair transmitter release and also increase myasthenic symptoms.

A potential adverse effect of ChE inhibitors is cholinergic crisis. Sudden increases in weakness and the inability to clear secretions, swallow, or breathe adequately indicate that the patient is experiencing crisis. Teach the patient and family to monitor for these two types of crises:

1. Myasthenic crisis—an exacerbation (flare-up or worsening) of the myasthenic symptoms caused by not enough anticholinesterase drugs
2. Cholinergic crisis—an acute exacerbation of muscle weakness caused by too many anticholinesterase drugs

Because myasthenic and cholinergic crises have many common characteristics, the type of crisis the patient is

TABLE 46-3 CHARACTERISTICS OF MYASTHENIC AND CHOLINERGIC CRISES

MYASTHENIC CRISIS	CHOLINERGIC CRISIS	MIXED CRISIS
Increased pulse and respiration	Nausea	Apprehension
Rise in blood pressure	Vomiting	Restlessness
Anoxia	Diarrhea	Dyspnea
Cyanosis	Abdominal cramps	Dysphagia (difficult swallowing)
Bowel and bladder incontinence	Blurred vision	Dysarthria (painful joints)
Decreased urine output	Pallor	Increased lacrimation (tearing)
Absence of cough and swallow reflex	Facial muscle twitching	Increased salivation
	Pupillary miosis	Diaphoresis
	Hypotension	Generalized weakness

experiencing must be identified for effective treatment to be provided (Table 46-3). Monitor carefully for early detection of these emergencies if the patient is in a health care setting.

Emergency Care: Myasthenic Crisis. Myasthenic crisis is often caused by some type of infection. For other patients, increasing muscle weakness leads to an overdose of anticholinesterase drugs. As a result, the patient may experience a *mixed* crisis. The Tensilon test (described on p. 992), although not always conclusive, is an important procedure for differentiation. *Tensilon produces a temporary improvement in myasthenic crisis but worsening or no improvement of symptoms in cholinergic crisis.*

The priority for nursing management of the patient in myasthenic crisis is maintaining adequate respiratory function. The acutely ill patient may need intensive nursing care for monitoring and maintenance of body functions. He or she may require mechanical ventilation. Cholinesterase-inhibiting drugs are withheld because they increase respiratory secretions and are usually ineffective for the first few days after the crisis begins. Drug therapy is restarted gradually and at lower dosages.

Emergency Care: Cholinergic Crisis. In *cholinergic* crisis, do not give anticholinesterase drugs while the patient is maintained with mechanical ventilation. Atropine 1 mg IV may be given and repeated, if necessary. When atropine is prescribed, observe the patient carefully. Secretions can be thickened by the drug, which causes more difficulty with airway clearance and possibly the development of mucous plugs. Unless complications such as pneumonia or aspiration develop, the patient in crisis improves rapidly after the appropriate drugs have been given. Continue to provide assistance as necessary because he or she tires easily after minimal exertion.

Immunosuppression. Immunosuppression may be accomplished with the use of corticosteroids or chemotherapeutic agents. Prednisone is given initially to produce remission and to control and improve symptoms. The drug is tapered over a period of weeks to months. Some patients may need continuous low-dose therapy because of exacerbations of symptoms. For ocular MG, corticosteroid treatment that does not cause significant systemic complications may significantly reduce the prevalence of generalized myasthenia gravis after 2 years on the drug. IV immunoglobulins (IVIGs) may also be used for acute disease management or as a long-term option for disease refractory to other treatment.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client with myasthenia gravis has been prescribed to take pyridostigmine (Mestinon). What health teaching will the nurse include related to this drug? **Select all that apply.**

- A. "Watch for signs and symptoms of myasthenic crisis."
- B. "Take the drug about an hour before eating a meal."
- C. "Take the same dose of medication every day."
- D. "Take the drug with food to prevent nausea."
- E. "Do not take sedatives or sleeping pills while on this drug."

Assisting with Plasmapheresis. **Plasmapheresis** is a method by which antibodies are removed from the plasma to decrease symptoms. This is used as short-term management of an exacerbation. Six exchanges occur over a 2-week period with follow-up exchanges weekly or monthly as needed. This procedure is usually done on an ambulatory care basis. Nursing management of the patient undergoing plasmapheresis is presented in the earlier discussion of Guillain-Barré syndrome, p. 988.

Other Interventions. Generalized weakness and fatigue affect the patient's ability to participate in ADLs. Impaired fine motor control and shoulder weakness, which results in difficulty raising the arms, can compound the problem. Self-care deficits may be complete or partial depending on the severity of the illness, the patient's response to drugs, and his or her ability to tolerate activity without excessive fatigue.

To establish limitations, assess the patient's ability to perform ADLs. Although he or she is encouraged to perform activities as independently as possible, assistance is provided as needed to avoid frustration and fatigue. *For maximizing independence and making attempts at self-management successful, plan activities to follow the administration of medication.* Monitor and document the patient's response to or tolerance of activity, providing alternating periods of activity and rest. *Rest is critical because increased fatigue can precipitate a crisis.* In addition, occupational and physical therapists evaluate him or her for assistive-adaptive devices. In collaboration with the nurse, they teach the patient and family energy conservation techniques and ideas for making work and self-management easier after discharge from the hospital.

Weakness of the speech and facial muscles often results in dysarthric (slurred) and nasal speech. Thus it may be difficult for myasthenic patients to make their speech understood by others.

In collaboration with the speech-language pathologist (SLP), determine the patient's ability to communicate. Instruct the patient to speak slowly while attempting to lip-read. Repeat what the patient says to check that it is correct. Questions that can be answered with "yes" or "no" or by gestures may be used along with other communication systems such as eye blinking, notebook and pencil, computer, PDA, and picture, letter, or word boards.

The patient with myasthenia gravis (MG) may have difficulty maintaining an adequate intake of food and fluid because the muscles needed for chewing and swallowing become weakened and tire easily. In collaboration with the dietitian, occupational therapist, and speech-language pathologist, evaluate the patient's nutritional status and his or her ability to receive adequate oral nutrition. Small,

CHART 46-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Improving Nutrition in Patients with Myasthenia Gravis

- Assess the patient's gag reflex and ability to chew and swallow.
- Provide frequent oral hygiene as needed.
- Collaborate with the dietitian, speech-language pathologist, and occupational therapist to plan and implement meals that the patient can eat and enjoy.
- Offer small, frequent meals.
- Cut food into small bites, and encourage the patient to eat slowly.
- Observe the patient for choking, nasal regurgitation, and aspiration.
- Provide high-calorie snacks or supplements (e.g., puddings).
- Keep the head of the bed elevated during meals and for 30 to 60 minutes after the patient eats.
- Avoid liquids because they can easily cause choking and aspiration; provide a soft diet.
- Monitor food intake carefully.
- Weigh the patient daily.
- Monitor serum prealbumin levels.
- Administer anticholinesterase drugs, as prescribed: 45 to 60 minutes before meals.

frequent meals and high-calorie snacks are often well tolerated. Monitor the effectiveness of the nutrition program by recording the patient's calorie counts, intake and output, serum prealbumin levels, and daily weights (Chart 46-4). If he or she cannot swallow, a feeding tube may be used.

The patient's inability to completely close the eyes may lead to corneal abrasions and further decrease vision and comfort. During the day, apply artificial tears to keep the corneas moist and free from abrasion. A lubricant gel and shield may be applied to the eyes at bedtime to provide more extensive coverage. To help relieve diplopia, cover the eyes with a patch for 2 to 3 hours at a time, one eye at a time. At times, patients tape their eyes shut at night.

Surgical Management

For patients with MG, **thymectomy** (removal of the thymus gland) is usually performed early in the disease. The procedure is not always immediately effective, and it may take several years for remission to occur—if it occurs at all. Those who have surgery within 2 years of the onset of myasthenic symptoms show the most improvement.

Provide routine preoperative care as discussed in Chapter 16. Because there is no way to predict whether remission or improvement will occur, it is important to avoid making promises, but be optimistic. Immediately before surgery, pyridostigmine (Mestinon) may be given with a small amount of water to keep the patient stable during and after surgery. If steroids have been used, they are also given before surgery and are tapered during the postoperative period. Antibiotics are administered immediately before or during the surgery. Plasmapheresis may be used before and after surgery to decrease circulating antibodies more quickly.

One of two surgical approaches may be used: the transcervical incision (minimal access technique) or the sternal split. The *transcervical approach* is becoming more popular because it allows more rapid recovery with less discomfort after surgery, especially if done using the video-assisted thoracoscopic (VATS) technique (Maat, 2008). However, this

procedure is used only for patients who do not have a thymoma. Only a small dressing and an IV line are needed after surgery.

The older *sternal split* procedure is preferred when patients have a thymoma. It allows the surgeon to directly see the mediastinum and areas around the thymus. When thymoma is present, all surrounding involved structures (i.e., the pericardium, the innominate vein, a portion of the superior vena cava, and a portion of the lung) are removed. A single chest tube is placed in the anterior mediastinum. The patient is usually admitted to the critical care unit after surgery. Thymoma should be considered as a potentially malignant tumor requiring prolonged follow-up. The presence of myasthenic weakness can still complicate its management.

Although patients with adequate respiratory function may be extubated immediately after surgery, most require a gradual weaning from the ventilator. Prolonged ventilatory assistance is rare. *After the patient is extubated, pay special attention to pulmonary hygiene.* Suctioning is performed as necessary. Encourage the patient to turn, cough, and breathe deeply and to use incentive spirometry every 2 hours.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

In addition to monitoring respiratory function and providing bronchial hygiene, observe for signs of pneumothorax or hemothorax for the patient having a thymectomy, including:

- Chest pain
- Sudden shortness of breath
- Diminished or delayed chest wall expansion
- Diminished or absent breath sounds
- Restlessness or a change in vital signs (decreasing blood pressure or a weak, rapid pulse)

Provide oxygen to the patient, and raise the head of the bed to at least 45 degrees. Then report any of these signs and symptoms to the surgeon or Rapid Response Team immediately!

For the sternal surgical technique, provide chest tube care (see Chapter 34). Both surgical approaches require sterile technique for wound care. Observe the patient for signs of infection, such as increasing or purulent drainage; redness, warmth, or swelling around the wound; and elevated temperature. Patient and family teaching is needed about follow-up care before discharge from the hospital.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

When caring for a client with myasthenia gravis, which of these nursing activities may be safely delegated to a nursing assistant?

Select all that apply.

- A. Feeding dinner to the client
- B. Teaching the family about drug therapy
- C. Assisting with client communication
- D. Consulting with the physical therapist
- E. Assisting with ambulation
- F. Recording food and fluid intake

Community-Based Care

The patient with myasthenia gravis (MG) may be cared for in a variety of settings, including the home, transitional care, rehabilitation setting, or long-term care facility. The patient

TABLE 46-4 FACTORS PRECIPITATING OR WORSENING MYASTHENIA GRAVIS

- Various drugs, including:
 - Strong cathartics
 - Antidysrhythmics
 - Beta-blocking agents
 - Antibiotics
 - Antirheumatic drugs
 - Antispasmodics
 - Antihistamines
 - Opioids
 - Phenytoin (Dilantin)
 - Antidepressants (tricyclics)
- Rheumatoid arthritis
- Alcohol
- Hormonal changes
- Stress
- Infection
- Seasonal temperature changes
- Heat
- Surgery
- Enemas

discharged from the hospital may be weak and may require the assistance of a family member, home care nurse, physical therapist (PT), occupational therapist (OT), and/or home care aide.

Home Care Management

Patients with MG are often managed at home. They are hospitalized for diagnostic evaluation, myasthenic or cholinergic crisis resulting in respiratory failure, or periods of exacerbation when respiratory function is threatened.

Unless the patient requires assistive devices, little preparation of the home setting is required. In collaboration with physical and occupational therapists, the case manager (CM) and nurse make certain that the necessary equipment has been delivered and properly installed. In addition, they teach the patient and family members how to use the equipment safely. If the patient becomes wheelchair dependent, the discharge planner, CM, or OT checks on any necessary modifications to the home (e.g., the installation of ramps or widening of doorways) that have been completed. The health care team must make sure that all of the patient's continuing care needs can be met wherever he or she is transferred after discharge from the hospital.

Teaching for Self-Management

The more the patient and family know about the disease and the drugs used for treatment, the less likely it is that complications will develop. Encourage the patient and the family to ask questions. Discuss the episodic nature of the disease, including factors that increase the risk for exacerbation, such as infection, stress, surgery, hard physical exercise, sedatives, and enemas or strong cathartics (Table 46-4). Teach the patient the importance of collaborating with the health care team to monitor muscle strength, ability to perform ADLs, and the need to adjust drug therapy.

Stress the importance of lifestyle adaptations such as avoiding heat (e.g., sauna, hot tubs, sunbathing), crowds, overeating, erratic changes in sleep habits, or emotional extremes. Teach the signs of exacerbation, such as increased weakness, increased diplopia, ptosis, and problems with chewing or swallowing. Remind the patient to plan activities to allow for rest periods and to conserve energy.

Provide the drug regimen in a written format that includes the names, purposes, dosages, scheduled dosage times, and side effects of the drugs. Explain that the drugs are normally taken before activities such as eating, participating in sports,

CHART 46-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Helpful Hints for Teaching Patients with Myasthenia Gravis About Drug Therapy

- Keep prescribed drugs and a glass of water at your bedside if you are weak in the morning.
- Wear a watch with an alarm function (or beeper) to remind you to take your drugs.
- Post your drug schedule so others know it.
- Plan strenuous activities, when possible, when the drug peaks.
- Keep an extra supply of drugs in your car or at work. Be sure they are secured.
- Do not take any over-the-counter drugs without checking with your health care provider.

or working. Stress the importance of maintaining therapeutic blood levels by taking the medications on time and as prescribed and not missing or postponing doses (Chart 46-5). In addition, inform the patient of the side effects of anticholinesterase drugs. Advise him or her to avoid drugs such as morphine, curare, quinine, quinidine, procainamide, mycin-type antibiotics, and drugs containing magnesium. In preparing the patient for discharge, explain the signs and symptoms of myasthenic and cholinergic crises and the need to contact the physician or other health care professional whenever either type of crisis is suspected.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because respiratory compromise often occurs in myasthenic patients, encourage family members to learn resuscitation procedures. A manual resuscitation bag, suctioning equipment, and oxygen should be available in the home for patients susceptible to crises. Teach family members in the proper use of equipment.

The episodic nature of MG, the potential or actual loss of independence, and body image changes (e.g., the inability to smile) affect the patient's adjustment. During discharge planning, the CM considers factors such as age, gender, usual roles and responsibilities, available support systems, occupation, and financial status. Because the patient's and family's need for psychosocial adjustment may range from minimal to dramatic, the CM remains sensitive to their needs and provides information and support. Encourage family members or significant others to discuss their feelings with one another.

Health Care Resources

In collaboration with the health care provider, patient, and family, the staff nurse or CM may initiate referrals to home care agencies and to local self-help groups for people who have chronic illnesses and for their families. The Myasthenia Gravis Foundation (www.myasthenia.org) has education and research programs and provides assistance with financial aid and community resources. Support groups are also available. Teach the patient the importance of obtaining and wearing a medical alert (MedicAlert) bracelet or necklace and to carry a medical alert identification card at all times.

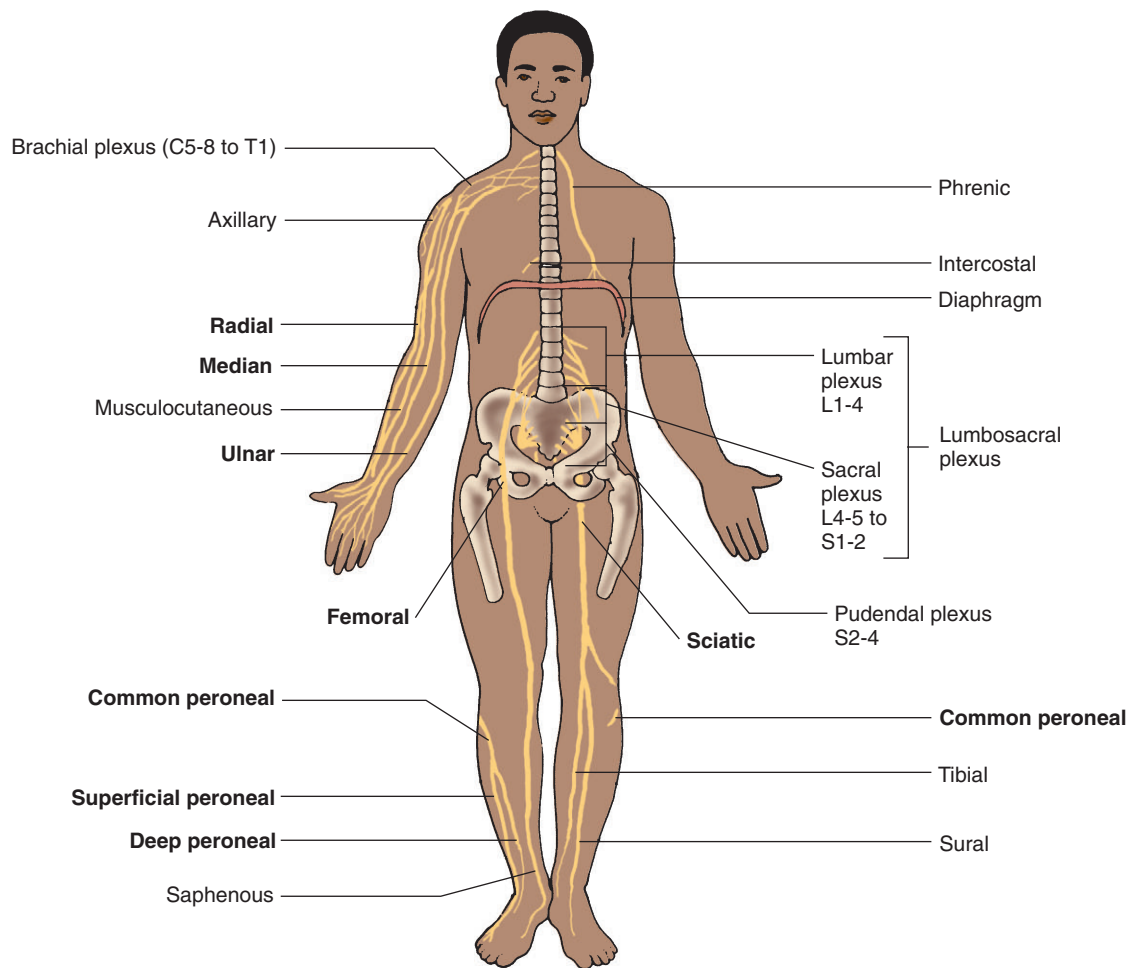


FIG. 46-1 Distribution of selected peripheral nerves in the body. The nerves most commonly affected by trauma are highlighted in bold type.

PERIPHERAL NERVE TRAUMA

Pathophysiology

The peripheral nerves are subject to injuries associated with mechanical or vehicular accidents, sports, the injection of particular drugs, military conflicts or wars, and acts of violence (e.g., knife or gunshot wounds). Specific mechanisms of injury include:

- Partial or complete severance of a nerve or nerves
- Contusion, stretching, constriction, or compression of a nerve or nerves
- Ischemia to nerves
- Electrical, thermal, or radiation injury to one or more nerves

Most commonly affected are the median, ulnar, and radial nerves of the arms and the peroneal, femoral, and sciatic nerves of the legs (Fig. 46-1).

After a nerve is cut or damaged, the nerve distal to the injury degenerates and retracts within 24 hours. Motor and sensory dysfunction below the injury coincide with the loss of electrical excitability as the nerve fibers degenerate. Recovery occurs

as Schwann cells of the neurilemma regenerate from both the proximal and distal stumps. Dividing mitotically, these cells form neurilemmal cords, which act as guidelines for the regenerating axon. Tiny unmyelinated sprouts are generated at the proximal axon and grow 1 to 4 mm each day. Some can cross the transected gap through guidance by the neurilemma to find their way to the distal stump. The better aligned the union, the more normal the functional return (Fig. 46-2). Reinnervation is always a slow process.

Successfully realigned nerves remyelinate, grow to their former size, and eventually have conduction velocities at most of their former capacity. Successful reinnervation is slowed by infection and increasing age. Disorganization of the nerve or mismatched realignments may result in functional weakness, unintentional muscle movements, and poor sensation.

Some sensory function may return before the regeneration process can occur. This is because nerves above the injured neurons are stimulated to produce collateral innervation to the affected areas. These collaterals occur before the axon has regenerated sufficiently.

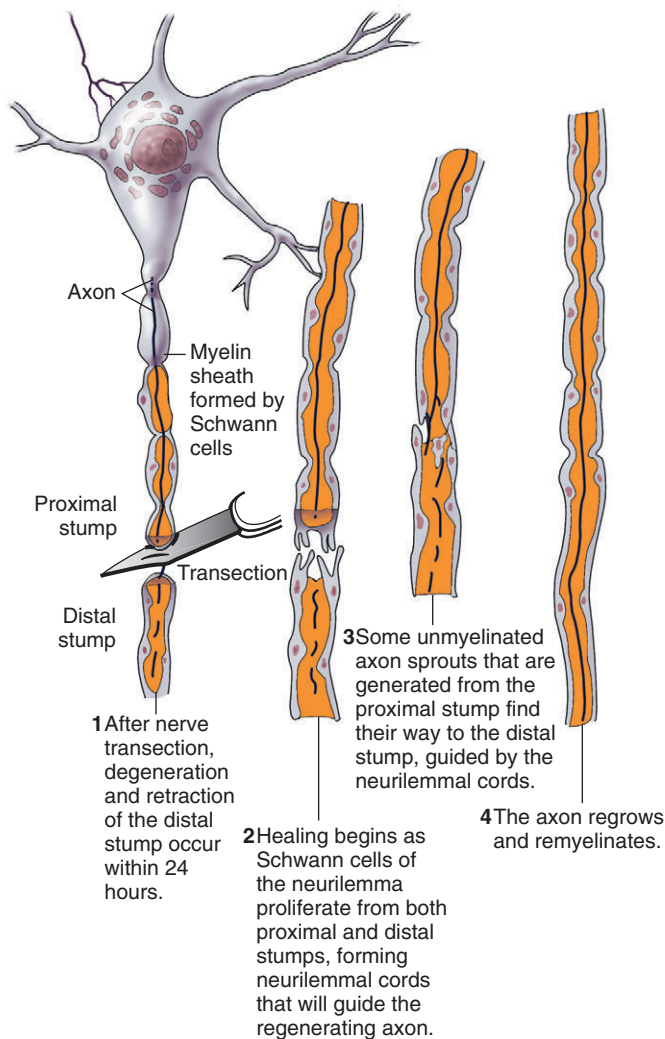


FIG. 46-2 Regeneration of peripheral nerve after injury.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient may relate a history of extremity or pelvic trauma, penetrating injury, recent surgery, or the use of crutches. Peripheral nerve trauma is especially common in wartime combat. In addition to weakness or flaccid *paralysis*, the patient may report *burning sensations* below the trauma or pain that increases with touch or environmental stimulation. Observe for skin and nail changes of the affected extremities.

Perform a physical assessment to determine which neurologic functions are intact. In acute trauma, the injury should first be evaluated by the physician to determine whether movement is contraindicated. If movement is not contraindicated, the patient's motor function is assessed by putting the limb through the normal range of motion. Any abnormal movements, tremor, atrophy, contractions, paresis or paralysis, and weak or absent deep tendon reflexes are documented. Ask the patient about abnormal sensations.

After complete denervation, the extent of vasomotor function is reflected in skin temperature, skin color, and edema. A warm phase and a cold phase have been identified. During the **warm phase**, the extremity is warm and the skin appears flushed or rosy. Over 2 to 3 weeks, this phase is gradually superseded by a **cold phase**, during which the skin appears cyanotic, mottled, or reddish blue and feels cool compared with the unaffected extremity. Use the dorsal surface of your hand to compare skin temperatures because the abundance of temperature receptors in this area provides more accurate assessments. Edema may be noted immediately after injury or later as a result of surgical procedures. Record any evidence of trophic changes (e.g., scaling of skin, brittleness of nails, loss of body hair). This initial assessment serves as the baseline for comparison during subsequent examinations, which are performed every 2 to 4 hours or less frequently as the patient's condition indicates.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for the patient with peripheral nerve trauma depend on the location as well as the type and degree of injury. If the nerve trauma results from a primary lesion, such as a tumor, the underlying problem is addressed first.

The health care provider may prescribe immobilization of the involved area by splint, cast, or traction to provide the rest needed to limit and resolve any inflammation. The purpose of surgical management is to restore the function of the damaged nerve. There are usually no special preoperative interventions for the patient undergoing peripheral nerve repair. Chapter 16 describes the general care of the patient before surgery.

If the nerve is lacerated or transected, surgery may be indicated. Restorative procedures include resecting and suturing to realign the severed nerve ends, nerve grafts, and nerve and tendon transplants.

The timing of procedures to repair nerves has been controversial. In the past, a repair delay of 3 to 8 weeks after injury allowed associated injuries to heal, after which the surgeon could better assess the extent of nerve damage. Although microsurgery and the use of lasers now allow primary nerve repair at the time of injury, the surgeon's judgment in selecting the optimal time and surgical procedure remains crucial.

After an injury, the two severed nerve segments contract and may form scar tissue. Before surgical anastomosis, the surgeon dissects these stumps to remove any damaged nerve tissue. This further decreases the lengths of the ends to be joined. To compensate for this shortening and to avoid excessive tension on the sutured nerve, the involved extremity is positioned in exaggerated flexion. The surgeon aligns the segments under magnification, bringing the nerve fiber ends together, and then sutures the nerve tissue.

After suturing, the extremity is placed in a cast to maintain the flexed position and to avoid tension on the suture line. Ten to 14 days after nerve repair, the entire dressing is removed, the joint flexion is eased, and a new splint may be applied for an additional 2 weeks. At that time, a removable splint may be applied and physical therapy begun. Protection of the nerve sutures is continued for a minimum of 6 weeks.

If a large segment of nerve has been damaged and direct anastomosis would be impossible without stretching the

nerve, the surgeon may insert a *nerve graft*. Motor and sensory axons may regenerate through the graft, joining the nerve segments through the two sites of anastomosis. The results of grafting are not usually as favorable as with direct anastomosis. Immobilization by splints or casts to facilitate healing of the surgical sites is essential.

Splints are usually held in place with elastic wrapping or hook-and-loop (Velcro) closures, which can become too tight if edema develops.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Perform frequent neurovascular assessments after surgical nerve repair, including checking the skin around the splints and casts (hourly, initially) for tightness, warmth, and color. If the patient reports discomfort, tingling, or coolness or if the color is blanched, the cast or splint may be too tight (constricted). Inform the physician immediately about constriction and any indication of drainage under a splint or cast.

Skin care is essential. Atrophy of the epidermis and underlying tissue causes the skin to become more fragile and more susceptible to injury and breakdown. Decreased skin nutrition and vascularity associated with denervation cause delayed healing, which further worsens the problem. Thoroughly examine the skin for evidence of irritation or injury, and assist or instruct the patient to wash and dry the involved areas carefully. If the skin is dry, lanolin or cocoa butter may be used as a lubricant. *Because sensation may be absent or inhibited, teach the patient to protect the involved areas from temperature extremes and other sources of potential trauma.*

Physical or occupational therapy is the major approach for rehabilitation after surgical repair. Reinforce and help the patient perform the exercises learned in these therapy sessions. Because the regeneration of nerves and subsequent return of sensory and motor function may be extremely slow and produce pain, the patient may become discouraged and depressed. If the disability is permanent, he or she needs encouragement and assistance to cope with the changes in body image, self-esteem, and lifestyle.

RESTLESS LEGS SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Restless legs syndrome (RLS) is characterized by leg paresthesias (burning, prickly sensation) associated with an irresistible urge to move. Over 10% of the population in the United States have the problem, and women are affected twice as often as men (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, 2011a). The most common type is associated with peripheral and central nerve damage in the legs and spinal cord. Many of those affected with *primary RLS* have a positive family history, indicating a possible genetic basis. The incidence is higher in patients who have diabetes mellitus type 2 and chronic kidney disease. Other potential risk factors include:

- Polyneuropathies
- Advanced age
- Sleep deprivation

- Drugs such as antinausea drugs, antipsychotic drugs, and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
- Caffeine and alcohol

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient reports intense burning or “crawling-type” sensations in the legs and therefore feels the need to move them repeatedly. These symptoms are worse in the evening and at night and when the patient is still for a period of time. Patients feel they need to move to relieve the symptoms. Many move their legs periodically while sleeping. For that reason, they often refer to themselves as “night walkers.”

INTERVENTIONS

The management of RLS is symptomatic and involves treating the underlying cause or contributing factor, if known. Both nonpharmacologic measures and drug therapy are used. Teach patients to avoid as many risk factors as possible or make lifestyle modifications. Examples are avoiding caffeine and alcohol, quitting smoking, losing weight, and exercising.

Strategies to relieve the symptoms of RLS include walking, stretching, moderate exercise, or a warm bath. Teach the patient ways to decrease insomnia such as limiting caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol and setting a routine bedtime. Strenuous activity should not be done 2 to 3 hours before bedtime. Although few research studies support their use, massage, biofeedback, and acupuncture may be effective. Many patients benefit from support groups. Refer them to The Restless Legs Foundation (www.rls.org) as an excellent resource for information and patient and family support.

Many of the drugs prescribed for RLS are also used for either Parkinson disease (PD) or epilepsy. *Dopamine agonists* such as pramipexole (Mirapex) and ropinirole (Requip) are oral drugs used extensively. Gabapentin enacarbil (Solzira) is an *antiepileptic drug (AED)* that was recently approved by the FDA for RLS. These agents are usually taken at bedtime.

Some patients have had success with *Sinemet*, a combination of levodopa and carbidopa. This drug is often given with other medications to be more effective in reducing the symptoms of the disease. The usual dosage is between 50 and 200 mg at bedtime each day.

Other classes of drugs for managing RLS include *benzodiazepines*, such as *diazepam (Valium)*, and *opioids* as a last resort. Two other AEDs, carbamazepine (Tegretol) and gabapentin (Neurontin), have been particularly effective and are taken in divided doses throughout the day.

For insomnia from RLS, the herbs *melatonin* and *valerian* may be effective for many people, especially older adults (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, 2011a). Teach patients to inform their health care providers when adding these supplements.

DISEASES OF THE CRANIAL NERVES

Patients with cranial nerve disease may be seen in any practice settings. The cranial nerves may be affected in association with other disorders of the nervous system or as a result of

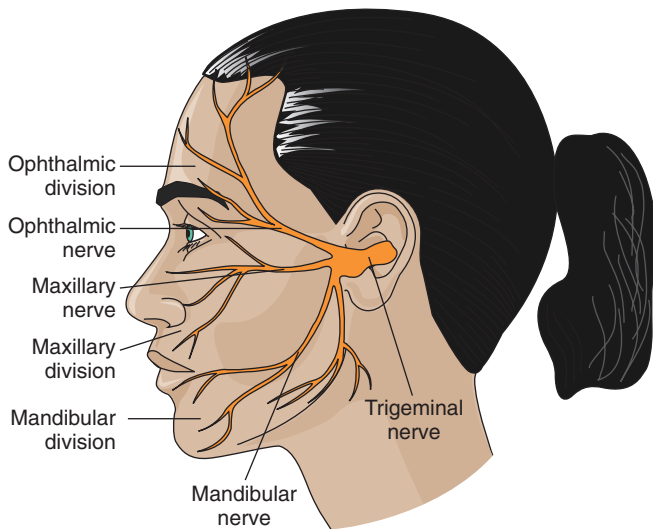


FIG. 46-3 Distribution of the trigeminal nerve and its three divisions: ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular.

trauma. The most common disorders, those affecting cranial nerves V (trigeminal) and VII (facial), are discussed here.

TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA

Pathophysiology

Trigeminal neuralgia (TN) is also known as *tic douloureux*. According to the [National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke \(2011b\)](#), trigeminal neuralgia:

- Is a disease that affects the trigeminal, or fifth cranial, nerve.
- Occurs more often in people older than 50 years and in women more often than men.
- Causes a specific type of facial pain, which occurs in sudden, intense facial spasms.
- Is usually provoked by minimal stimulation of a trigger zone (like dental procedures).
- Is unilateral (one-sided) and confined to the area innervated by the trigeminal nerve, most often the second and third branches ([Fig. 46-3](#)).
- Is familial due to an inherited pattern of blood vessel formation. Patients younger than 30 years with pain in more than one branch of the trigeminal nerve may be further evaluated to rule out the possibility of a tumor or multiple sclerosis.

The cause of trigeminal neuralgia is thought to be related to impaired inhibitory mechanisms in the brainstem caused by excessive firing of irritated fibers in the trigeminal nerve. In addition, trauma and infection of the teeth, jaw, or ear may be contributing factors.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

TN is a chronic pain syndrome. It can be categorized into two types of pain: classic and atypical. When describing classic pain, patients use terms such as “excruciating,” “sharp,”

“shooting,” “piercing,” “burning,” and “jabbing.” Between bursts of pain, which last from seconds to minutes, there is usually no pain. Often no sensory or motor deficits are found on examination, but the condition can be agonizing for the patient. The fear of precipitating attacks often causes patients to avoid talking, smiling, eating, or attending to hygienic needs such as shaving, washing the face, and brushing the teeth. The pain can cause uncontrollable facial twitching.

The course of trigeminal neuralgia (TN) involves bouts of classic pain for several weeks or months followed by spontaneous remissions. The length of these remissions may vary from days to years, but attack-free periods tend to become shorter as the patient grows older. Symptoms rarely disappear permanently.

By contrast, patients describe atypical pain as a continuous burning sensation that involves the entire face. He or she may not have any remission periods. Some patients experience both types of pain ([Alexander, 2007](#)).

The patient suspected of TN usually has a computed tomography (CT) scan and MRI. The diagnosis is made based on patient history and the results of these tests.

INTERVENTIONS

The priority for care of the patient with TN is pain management. Specific interventions are determined by the amount of pain he or she is experiencing. Drug therapy is the first choice, but surgery may be needed for some patients.

Drug Therapy and Radiosurgery

The first choice for drug therapy is carbamazepine (CBZ, Tegretol), an antiepileptic drug (AED), discussed in [Chapter 44](#). Other drugs, such as gabapentin (Neurontin), which is another AED, pregabalin (Lyrica), and muscle relaxants such as baclofen (Lioresal, Kemstro), may be used. Some patients also achieve pain relief with complementary therapies, such as acupuncture ([Lui et al., 2010](#)).

When medical management fails or to supplement medical management, radiosurgery techniques such as a peripheral chemical nerve block with ropivacaine or stereotactic radiation treatments with the Gamma Knife® may be used. These procedures prevent the complications of major surgery, such as a craniotomy, but may need to be repeated for recurrent pain. [Lemos et al. \(2010\)](#) found that patients who had a nerve block with ropivacaine and took carbamazepine had the best pain control when compared with those patients with either treatment alone.

In some cases, a **percutaneous stereotactic rhizotomy (PSR)** is performed as an ambulatory care procedure under general anesthesia. The surgeon passes a hollow needle through the inside of the patient’s cheek into the trigeminal nerve fibers. A heating current (radiofrequency thermocoagulation) goes through the needle to destroy some of the fibers. The entire nerve is not destroyed. The advantages of this procedure include long-term pain relief, tolerance by older adults, absence of facial paralysis, and preservation of the sensation of touch. Puncturing the internal carotid artery is a possible complication. The affected side is permanently insensitive to pain.

After the PSR procedure, apply an ice pack to the PSR operative site on the cheek and jaw for 3 to 4 hours. Perform a focused cranial nerve assessment to assess whether other nerves have been damaged (e.g., facial nerve). Discourage the

patient from chewing on the affected side until paresthesias resolve. A soft diet is usually prescribed.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient who has had percutaneous stereotactic rhizotomy to avoid rubbing the eye on the affected side because the protective mechanism of pain will no longer warn of injury. Instruct him or her to inspect the eye daily for redness or irritation and report to the physician any change or blurred vision. Stress the importance of regular dental examinations because the absence of pain may not warn the patient of potential problems.

As an option to heat, a balloon microcompression may be performed. The balloon compresses the trigeminal nerve root. A glycerol injection may also be used as an option, but it is not done as commonly as thermocoagulation.

Surgical Management

Surgery is performed if the patient cannot tolerate the side effects of drug therapy or if radiosurgical techniques are not feasible. A common surgical procedure is a craniotomy with microvascular decompression (MVD), which must be performed by a neurosurgeon.

In addition to the general preoperative care provided to all patients, the surgeon thoroughly explains the surgical benefits and any expected neurologic deficits. Ensure that the patient understands the procedure to be performed and any risks or complications.

In some patients, a small artery compresses the trigeminal nerve as it enters the pons. Surgical relocation of this artery (**microvascular decompression**) may relieve the pain of TN without compromising facial sensation. This procedure is more invasive, requiring a craniotomy. Though not common, complications include aseptic meningitis, cerebrospinal fluid leak, ataxia, **ipsilateral** (same side) hearing loss, and facial nerve damage. Older adults and patients with other medical problems may not be candidates for this procedure.

In addition to general post-craniotomy care for patients as described in **Chapter 47**, monitor the patient who has microvascular decompression for signs of complications including headache, cranial nerve dysfunction, and bleeding. Assess his or her corneal reflex, extraocular muscles, and facial nerve, and report abnormal findings to the surgeon. Document all changes promptly.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

An older patient visits the medical clinic with reports of shooting, electric-like pain on the right side of her face. She reports that the pain gets worse when she brushes her teeth or washes her face. After a complete neurologic examination, the neurologist diagnoses her as having trigeminal neuralgia. She is placed on carbamazepine (Tegretol).

1. What is the priority for this patient's care?
2. What health teaching will you provide for this patient about her disease?
3. What will you teach her about the medication that has been prescribed?
4. What options for treatment will she have if the drug is not effective in relieving her pain?
5. What other care will you include in your health teaching?

Psychosocial considerations for the patient with trigeminal neuralgia include disappointment with ineffective drug protocols or surgical procedures, as well as the fear that the pain may recur with any activity. The patient may fail to move the face in an attempt to prevent pain. This behavior may be misinterpreted by others as withdrawal or depression. Refer patients and their families to the TNA—Facial Pain Association (www.fpa-support.org) for more information and support. TNA of Canada (www.catna.ca) is the national organization in Canada that advocates and informs patients and their families about trigeminal neuralgia.

FACIAL PARALYSIS

Pathophysiology

Facial paralysis, or **Bell's palsy**, is an acute paralysis of cranial nerve VII but may also affect cranial nerves V (trigeminal) and VIII (vestibulocochlear [auditory]). The condition is also known as *cranial polyneuritis*. Although the incidence may be slightly higher among people with diabetes, Bell's palsy occurs in all ages; however, it is more commonly seen in young adults.

Acute maximum paralysis is attained within 48 hours in about half the patients and within 5 days in almost all of them. Pain behind the ear or on the face may occur before paralysis by a few hours or days. The disorder involves a drawing sensation and paralysis of all facial muscles on the affected side. The patient cannot close his or her eye, wrinkle the forehead, smile, whistle, or grimace. He or she may also lose the ability for the eye to tear or may have excessive tearing. The face appears masklike and sags. Taste is usually impaired to some degree, but this symptom seldom persists beyond the second week of paralysis. Tinnitus (ringing in the ears) may also occur. Most patients go into remission within 3 months.

The cause of Bell's palsy is believed to be the result of an inflammatory process triggered by a formerly dormant herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV-1). Infections or exposure to cold may trigger the HSV-1 to cause symptoms of the disease. Patients are rarely hospitalized, but the nurse may encounter them in community-based settings such as clinics, physicians' offices, or emergency departments.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Medical management usually includes corticosteroids, 30 to 60 mg daily, during the first week after the onset of symptoms. Antiviral drugs such as acyclovir (Zovirax), famciclovir (Famvir), or valacyclovir (Valtrex) may be prescribed for 7 to 10 days after symptoms begin. Mild analgesics may help relieve the pain. Nursing care is directed toward managing the major neurologic deficits and providing psychosocial support. Because the eye does not close, the cornea must be protected from drying and subsequent ulceration or abrasion. Teach the patient to manually close the eyelid at intervals and to instill artificial tears during the day. An ointment to supply moisture can be used at night. The eye may be patched or taped closed at bedtime.

The patient may be unable to chew, sip fluids through a straw, or control drooling on the affected side. Thus mealtime may become a problem. Encourage the patient to eat and

drink using the unaffected side of the mouth. Frequent, small meals may be better tolerated, and patients may require a soft diet. Explain how to use simple techniques of massage; the application of warm, moist heat; and facial exercises. In some cases, physical therapy is prescribed for these treatments. As muscle tone improves, teach the patient to grimace, wrinkle the brow, force the eyes closed, whistle, and blow air out of the cheeks three or four times daily for 5 minutes in front of a mirror.

Nerve blocks or surgery may be performed, but these procedures are not common. Surgery is reserved for patients with complete, severe Bell's palsy to decompress the facial nerve. In some cases, cosmetic surgery is done.

Although most patients recover fully within a few weeks or months, some may experience residual weakness. A few have permanent neurologic deficits. For chronic pain, gabapentin (Neurontin) may be prescribed. These patients require a great deal of support because body image and self-esteem are drastically affected. Provide both information and psychosocial support. Refer patients and their families to the Bell's Palsy Research Foundation for information (www.angelfire/az/BellsPalsy.com). The Bell's Palsy Association in the United Kingdom is also a good source of web-based information (www.bellsalsy.org.uk).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if a patient is experiencing impaired mobility and/or sensation as a result of acute or chronic peripheral nervous system disorders?

- Report of loss of sensation in extremities or face
- Report of muscle weakness
- Inability to ambulate
- Inability to move legs and/or arms
- Difficulty breathing
- Report of burning, tingling sensations in extremities
- Report of pain in extremities or face
- Ptosis

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing impaired mobility and/or sensation as a result of peripheral nervous system disorders?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Performing a complete neurologic assessment
- Assessing a patient's airway and breathing ability (if difficulty breathing is noticed)
- Performing a comprehensive pain assessment

Respond by:

- Notifying health care provider or contacting Rapid Response Team if patient has problems with breathing or experiences a sudden change in neurologic status
- Establishing an airway and promoting ease in breathing (e.g., putting patient in sitting position, providing oxygen)
- Having emergency equipment like ventilator and tracheostomy set available for patient who has respiratory compromise
- Assisting with ambulation and ADLs as needed
- Providing analgesics and other pain relief measures

On what should you REFLECT?

- Continue to observe patient for changes in muscle weakness, paralysis, and respiratory function.
- Monitor patient for decreased report of pain and associated symptoms.
- Think about ways to promote independence in mobility and self-care.
- Think about health care team members with whom you will need to collaborate to improve mobility.
- Develop a teaching plan for the patient and family for continuing care.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Collaborate with members of the interdisciplinary team, including the health care provider, physical and occupational therapists, speech-language pathologist, and dietitian, for care of patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) and myasthenia gravis (MG).
- Refer patients with peripheral nervous system (PNS) disorders to community support groups and health care organizations, such as The Restless Legs Syndrome Foundation and the Myasthenia Gravis Foundation.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients on cholinesterase inhibitor drugs and their families about clinical manifestations of cholinergic and myasthenic crises as listed in Table 46-3.
- Reinforce the need for patients with MG to take their drugs on time.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Provide alternatives to promote communication for patients with GBS and MG, including speaking slowly, lip-reading, and using communication boards or electronic technology.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd**Physiological Integrity**

- Assess for changes in respiratory status and muscle function for patients with GBS and MG.
- Recall that patients with GBS have ascending paralysis, sensory changes, cranial nerve involvement, and autonomic manifestations as a result of demyelination of neurons (see [Chart 46-1](#)).
- Note that patients with MG have an autoimmune disease in which muscle weakness, including ocular symptoms, is the result of attacks on the acetylcholine receptors at neuromuscular junctions (see [Chart 46-3](#)).
- Prevent and manage common complications of plasmapheresis as described in [Chart 46-2](#).
- Teach patients which factors can worsen or exacerbate MG as listed in [Table 46-4](#).
- Remember that the priority for care for patients with GBS and MG is respiratory monitoring and airway management.
- Assess patients with GBS and MG for the risk for complications of immobility, such as pressure ulcers; take measures to prevent these problems.
- For patients having a thymectomy, maintain adequate respiratory function and observe for complications such as pneumothorax or hemothorax (e.g., chest pain, shortness of breath).
- Perform frequent neurovascular assessments for patients having a peripheral nerve repair.
- Teach patients with restless legs syndrome to minimize risk factors for the disorder, including exercising, losing weight, and quitting smoking.
- Recall that trigeminal neuralgia (TN) affects primarily the fifth cranial nerve (although others may be involved). Facial paralysis (Bell's palsy) affects cranial nerve VII.
- The priority for care of the patient with TN is pain management.
- After surgery for TN, perform a focused cranial nerve assessment to determine damage to the nerves, such as CN VII.

CHAPTER

47

Care of Critically Ill Patients with Neurologic Problems

Rachel L. Palmieri and Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the importance of collaborating with health care team members when planning and providing care for critically ill patients with neurologic problems.
2. Prioritize care for patients with a stroke or traumatic brain injury (TBI).
3. Identify community resources for patients with severe neurologic problems and their families.
4. Discuss the importance of maintaining continuous care between the hospital and community-based agencies for patients discharged with a stroke, head injury, or brain tumor.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Develop a teaching plan about risk factors for having a stroke.
6. Describe how to perform a comprehensive neurologic assessment of patients who have a stroke.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Identify the need to assess the family's response to a brain cancer diagnosis and treatment options.
8. Discuss how to support the patient and family coping with life changes that often result from a TBI or stroke.
9. Assess the needs of patients with stroke who have altered sensory perception.

Physiological Integrity

10. Differentiate clinical manifestations and management of patients with a transient ischemic attack (TIA) and stroke.
11. Perform a focused neurologic assessment of patients who are critically ill.
12. Assess the patient on fibrinolytic therapy for potential adverse effects.
13. Develop and evaluate an evidence-based plan of care for the patient with a stroke.
14. Assess patients for adverse responses to TBI, such as increased intracranial pressure (ICP).
15. Develop a plan of care for interventions to prevent increasing ICP.
16. Manage care for the patient experiencing increased ICP.
17. Develop a postoperative plan of care for the patient having a craniotomy.
18. Prevent and monitor for postoperative complications of a craniotomy.
19. Explain the role of chemotherapy, radiation, and surgery in the management of patients with brain tumors.
20. Explain the primary focus for management of patients with a brain abscess.

Some neurologic problems can cause patients to become critically ill or die. Stroke, head injury, brain tumor, and brain abscess are examples that can lead to life-threatening increased intracranial pressure (ICP). Permanent neurologic dysfunction or death may be prevented by early recognition and aggressive management of this complication by the bedside staff nurse. Serious and severe neurologic problems cause varying degrees of impaired *mobility, sensation, and cognition*. These impairments may be temporary or permanent and mild or severe depending on the nature of the health problem.

TRANSIENT ISCHEMIC ATTACK AND REVERSIBLE ISCHEMIC NEUROLOGIC DEFICIT

Ischemic strokes often follow warning signs such as a **transient ischemic attack (TIA)** (also called a *silent stroke*) or a **reversible ischemic neurologic deficit (RIND)** (Chart 47-1). Both warning signs cause temporary neurologic dysfunction resulting from a *brief* interruption in cerebral blood flow, possibly due to cerebral vasospasm or systemic arterial hypertension. The difference between a TIA and a RIND is the length of time the patient is symptomatic. A TIA lasts a few minutes to fewer than 24 hours, whereas RIND symptoms last longer than 24 hours but less than a week. Typically, symptoms of a TIA resolve within 30 to 60 minutes. It is not unusual for symptoms to resolve by the time the patient reaches the emergency department (ED). Both TIAs and RINDs may damage the brain tissue with repeated insults, as seen on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT). Multiple TIAs indicate a high stroke risk.

Upon admission to the ED, the patient is stabilized as necessary. A complete neurologic assessment is performed, and routine laboratory work, electrocardiogram, and CT scan are done. Patients older than 65 years and those with diabetes, symptoms lasting longer than 10 minutes, or motor or speech difficulties often are admitted. At discharge, the patient is usually placed on anticoagulant therapy (e.g., clopidogrel [Plavix]) unless medically contraindicated. As part of the discharge processes, ensure that the patient is aware of bleeding precautions and the actions to take should bleeding occur. Anticoagulant therapy is discussed in detail in [Chapter 38](#) in the Venous Thromboembolism section. Reinforce the need to

follow up with the health care provider and to complete any diagnostic tests requested on an ambulatory care basis.

STROKE (BRAIN ATTACK)

Pathophysiology

A **stroke** is caused by a change in the normal blood supply to the brain. The National Stroke Association uses the term **brain attack** to better describe a stroke. Both terms are used in clinical practice. *Any stroke is a medical emergency that strikes suddenly, and it should be treated immediately to prevent neurologic deficit and permanent disability.*

Stroke is the third leading cause of death in the United States and is considered a major disability worldwide. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, approximately 136,000 Americans die each year from stroke (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2011).

Pathophysiologic Changes in the Brain

The brain cannot store oxygen or glucose and therefore must receive a constant flow of blood to provide these substances for normal function. In addition, blood flow is important for the removal of metabolic waste (e.g., carbon dioxide, lactic acid). If blood supply to any part of the brain is interrupted for more than a few minutes, cerebral tissue dies (**infarction**). The result is varying degrees of disability, depending on the location and amount of brain tissue affected. Brain metabolism and blood flow after a stroke are affected around the infarction as well as in the **contralateral** (opposite side) hemisphere. Effects of a stroke on the contralateral (nonaffected) side may be due to brain swelling and further changes in blood flow throughout the brain. As a result of brain swelling, patients may develop clinical manifestations of increasing intracranial pressure, a potentially life-threatening complication.

Types of Strokes

Strokes are generally classified as ischemic (occlusive) or hemorrhagic ([Fig. 47-1](#)). Acute ischemic strokes are either thrombotic or embolic in origin ([Table 47-1](#)). Most strokes are ischemic.

Ischemic Stroke. An acute **ischemic stroke** (AIS) is caused by the occlusion (blockage) of a cerebral artery by either a thrombus or an embolus. A stroke that is caused by a **thrombus** (clot) is referred to as a **thrombotic stroke**, whereas a stroke caused by an **embolus** (dislodged clot) is referred to as an **embolic stroke**.

Thrombotic Stroke. Thrombotic strokes account for more than half of all strokes and are commonly associated

CHART 47-1 KEY FEATURES

Transient Ischemic Attack

Visual Deficits

- Blurred vision
- Diplopia (double vision)
- Blindness in one eye
- Tunnel vision

Motor Deficits

- Weakness (arm, hand, or leg)
- Gait disturbance (ataxic)

Sensory Deficits

- Numbness (face, arm, or hand)
- Vertigo

Speech Deficits

- Aphasia
- Dysarthria (slurred speech)

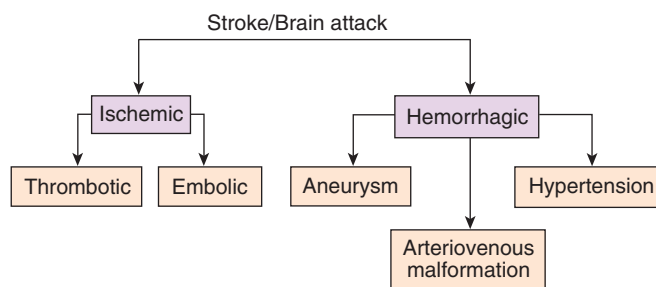


FIG. 47-1 Types of stroke/brain attack.

with the development of atherosclerosis in either intracranial or extracranial arteries (usually the carotid arteries). Atherosclerosis is the process by which fatty plaques develop on the inner wall of the affected arterial vessel. [Chapter 38](#) describes this health problem, including its pathophysiology, in more detail.

Rupture of one or more plaques exposes foam cells to clot-promoting elements in the blood. The end result is clot formation. If the clot is of sufficient size, it may interrupt blood flow to the brain tissue supplied by the vessel, causing an occlusive stroke. This process may occur over many years because collateral circulation to the involved area develops to compensate for the occlusion. The [bifurcation](#) (point of division) of the common carotid artery and the vertebral arteries at their junction with the basilar artery are the most common sites involved. Because of the gradual occlusion (blockage) of the arteries, thrombotic strokes tend to have a *slow* onset, evolving over minutes to hours.

Embolic Stroke. An embolic stroke is caused by a thrombus or a group of thrombi that break off from one area of the body and travel to the cerebral arteries via the carotid artery or vertebrobasilar system. The usual source of emboli is the heart. Emboli can occur in patients with nonvalvular atria fibrillation, ischemic heart disease, rheumatic heart disease, mural thrombi after a myocardial infarction (MI), or insertion of a prosthetic heart valve. Another source of emboli may be plaque that breaks off from the carotid sinus or internal carotid artery. Emboli tend to become lodged in the smaller cerebral blood vessels at their point of bifurcation or where the lumen narrows.

The middle cerebral artery (MCA) is most commonly involved in an embolic stroke. As the emboli occlude the vessel, ischemia develops and the patient experiences the clinical manifestations of the stroke. However, the occlusion may be temporary if the embolus breaks into smaller fragments, enters smaller blood vessels, and is absorbed. For these reasons, embolic strokes are characterized by the *sudden*

development and rapid occurrence of neurologic deficits. The symptoms may resolve over several hours or a few days. Conversion of an occlusive stroke to a hemorrhagic stroke may occur because the arterial vessel wall is also vulnerable to ischemic damage from blood supply interruption. Sudden hemodynamic stress may result in vessel rupture, causing bleeding directly within the brain tissue.

Hemorrhagic Stroke. The second major classification of stroke is hemorrhagic stroke. In this type of stroke, vessel integrity is interrupted and bleeding occurs into the brain tissue or into the space surrounding the brain (usually intracerebral or subarachnoid).

Intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH) describes bleeding into the brain tissue generally resulting from severe hypertension. Elevated blood pressure (BP) leads to changes within the arterial wall that leave it likely to rupture. Damage to the brain occurs from bleeding, causing edema, distortion, and displacement, which are direct irritants to brain tissue. Hemorrhagic strokes occur more often with sudden, dramatic blood pressure elevations, such as those seen with cocaine abuse.

Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) is much more common and results from bleeding into the subarachnoid space, the space between the pia mater and arachnoid layers of the meninges covering the brain. This type of bleeding is usually caused by a ruptured aneurysm or arteriovenous malformation ([Mink & Miller, 2011b](#)).

An [aneurysm](#) is an abnormal ballooning or blister along a normal artery, which usually develops in a weak spot on the artery wall, typically along the posterior circulation such as the basilar artery, vertebral artery, or the superior cerebral artery. Larger aneurysms are more likely to rupture than smaller ones.

Aneurysm rupture causes bleeding into the subarachnoid space, the ventricles, and/or intracerebral tissue. [Vasospasm](#), a sudden and periodic constriction of a cerebral artery, often results from a cerebral hemorrhage due to an aneurysm

TABLE 47-1 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF THE TYPES OF STROKE

FEATURE	ISCHEMIC		HEMORRHAGIC
	THROMBOTIC	EMBOLIC	
Evolution	Intermittent or stepwise improvement between episodes of worsening Completed stroke	Abrupt development of completed stroke Steady progression	Usually abrupt onset
Onset	Gradual (minutes to hours)	Sudden	Sudden, may be gradual if caused by hypertension
Level of consciousness	Preserved (patient is awake)	Preserved (patient is awake)	Deepening stupor or coma
Contributing associated factors	Hypertension Atherosclerosis	Cardiac disease	Hypertension Vessel disorders
Prodromal symptoms	Transient ischemic attack		
Neurologic deficits	Deficits during the first few weeks Slight headache Speech deficits Visual problems Confusion	Maximum deficit at onset Paralysis Expressive aphasia	Focal deficits Severe, frequent
Cerebrospinal fluid	Normal; possible presence of protein	Normal	Bloody
Seizures	No	No	Usually
Duration	Improvements over weeks to months Permanent deficits possible	Rapid improvements	Variable Permanent neurologic deficits possible

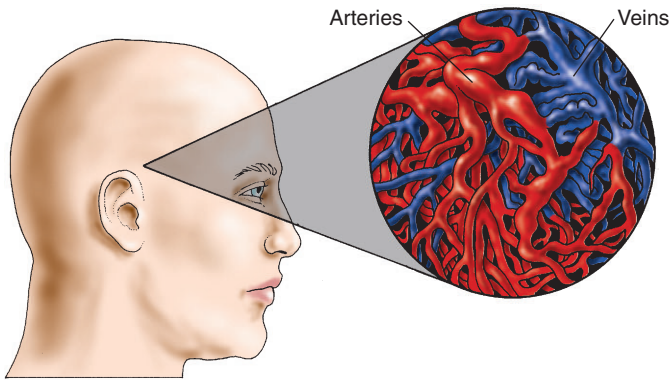


FIG. 47-2 Appearance of an arteriovenous malformation. Note the dilated, entangled blood vessels.

rupture. Blood flow to distal areas of the brain supplied by the artery is markedly diminished, which leads to cerebral ischemia and infarction and further neurologic dysfunction.

An **arteriovenous malformation (AVM)** is an uncommon abnormality that occurs during embryonic development. It is a tangled or spaghetti-like mass of malformed, thin-walled, dilated vessels (Fig. 47-2). The congenital absence of a capillary network forms an abnormal communication between the arterial and venous systems. The vessels may eventually rupture, causing bleeding into the subarachnoid space or into the intracerebral tissue, because normally the capillary network lowers the pressure between the arterial and venous systems. In the absence of the capillary network, the thin-walled veins are subjected to arterial pressure.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Like that of many health problems, the causes of stroke are likely a combination of genetic and environmental risk factors. Major risk factors increase the likelihood of strokes and can be divided into those that can be modified and those that cannot (nonmodifiable factors). Many of these factors have a familial or genetic predisposition and are discussed elsewhere in this text. For example, first-order relative (mother, father, sister, brother) stroke risk increases with a strong family history of hypertension or atherosclerotic disease. Relatives of a patient with an aneurysm may be at higher risk for intracranial aneurysms and should consider diagnostic testing and follow-up.

Incidence/Prevalence

It is estimated that there are more than 4.7 million stroke survivors in the United States. About 730,000 strokes occur each year, but deaths have declined over the past 15 years. The number of strokes occurring in the younger adult population is increasing as a result of chronic IV drug abuse. Those using crack cocaine experience an increased incidence of stroke resulting from changes in the clotting mechanism caused by the drugs, spasm of cerebral vessels, or hemodynamic stress from the sudden increase in systolic blood pressure.

Some patients who have had strokes have another one within 1 year. Strokes tend to occur more often in the southern United States (“stroke belt”), which may be related to the larger older population, tobacco use, and obesity.

Although stroke symptoms can appear at any time of the day or night, researchers have found that there is a circadian

CHART 47-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Common Modifiable Risk Factors for Developing a Stroke

- Smoking
- Substance abuse (particularly cocaine)
- Obesity
- Sedentary lifestyle
- Oral contraceptive use
- Heavy alcohol use
- Use of phenylpropanolamine (PPA), found in antihistamine drugs

pattern with a peak incidence between 6 AM and noon and the lowest incidence between midnight and 6 AM (Beal, 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

In 2007, the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association completed an exhaustive review of risk factors that contribute to stroke. These risk factors have been divided into three groups: risk factors that cannot be changed, risk factors that can be changed with medical treatment, and risk factors that can be changed by lifestyle modification.

People with predisposing health conditions should be aware that they could have a stroke unless they change their lifestyle habits (Chart 47-2). Teach them the importance of seeking professional health care and adhering to the recommended treatment plan. Also remind them that other risk factors contribute to health problems such as a sedentary lifestyle and high-fat diet. Recommend a diet high in fruits and vegetables and low in saturated and *trans* fats. Light to moderate alcohol consumption may reduce the risk for stroke, but a higher consumption may increase it. Additional information about lifestyle modifications, such as weight control and smoking cessation, can be found elsewhere in this text. Table 47-2 lists common risk factors that *cannot* be changed (nonmodifiable) and those that may be altered with appropriate care management.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

American Indian/Alaskan Native groups have the highest prevalence of stroke. Black men and women have more strokes than white men and women. Hispanic or Latino men have more strokes than non-Hispanic men (Summers et al., 2009). Mexican Americans with atrial fibrillation have more recurrent strokes than non-Hispanic whites (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 1008). The causes for these differences are not well known, but genetic, environmental, and/or lifestyle factors may play a role, including dietary habits.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement by a client about preventing stroke indicates a need for further teaching by the nurse?

- A. “I am going to join Alcoholics Anonymous to help me stop drinking.”
- B. “I only smoke cigars, which is better than smoking cigarettes.”
- C. “I need to walk at least 5 days a week to increase my exercise level.”
- D. “I need to lose at least 30 pounds to get my BMI into normal range.”

TABLE 47-2 RISK FACTORS FOR DEVELOPING STROKE THAT CANNOT BE CHANGED OR CAN BE ALTERED WITH COLLABORATIVE MANAGEMENT

Risk factors that cannot be changed:

1. Age: Risk for stroke increases as a person gets older.
2. Sex: Men have a 30% higher incidence of stroke, but postmenopausal women are also at a significantly higher risk.
3. Family history: If a person has a stroke, it increases the risk for stroke in other family members.
4. Race: African Americans have a higher risk for stroke because of their increased incidence of high blood pressure, obesity, and diabetes.
5. Myocardial infarction (MI): A history of an MI puts the patient at increased risk for a stroke.
6. History of migraine headaches: Patients who suffer from migraines may be at higher risk for ischemic strokes.
7. A prior stroke: Patients who have strokes are at risk for another stroke.
8. Sickle cell disease: Patients with this type of disorder are at risk for stroke at a younger age.
9. Berry aneurysms: These are small sac-like areas in the wall of an artery in the brain and commonly are found at junctions of vessels at the base of the brain; they can rupture without warning, causing bleeding within the brain.

Risk factors that can be altered with collaborative management:

1. High blood pressure (HBP): HBP can be managed with a combination of drug therapy, diet, and exercise.
2. High cholesterol levels: Patients with high cholesterol can reduce their stroke risk by 30% through lifestyle changes and drug therapy.
3. Transient ischemic attacks (TIAs): When patients have symptoms of TIA, they must seek medical attention immediately for anticoagulation therapy to prevent the possibility of a stroke.
4. Cardiovascular disease: Atherosclerosis and atrial fibrillation are major risk factors for stroke, but if diagnosed early, they can be controlled with drug therapy.
5. Diabetes: Consistent diabetic control is essential to decrease the risk for strokes.
6. Blood clotting disorders: Patients with clotting problems are at high risk for thrombotic stroke and require preventive anticoagulants.
7. Sleep apnea: Patients with sleep apnea have 3 to 6 times the risk for stroke. Weight loss and/or using a breathing device at night called a *continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)* machine can manage this problem.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

An accurate history is important in the diagnosis of a stroke. The information obtained assists in identifying the area of the brain involved, as well as the cause.

If possible, obtain a history of the patient's activity when the stroke began. Ischemic strokes often occur during sleep, whereas hemorrhagic strokes tend to occur during activity. Next ask the patient or a family member how the symptoms progressed. Be sure to document the history of the stroke's onset. Symptoms of an embolic or hemorrhagic stroke tend to occur abruptly, whereas thrombotic strokes generally have a more gradual progression. Determine the severity of

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Are Some Ethnic Groups More Likely to Have Recurrent Strokes Than Others?

Simpson, J.R., Zahuranec, D.B., Lisabeth, L.D., Sanchez, B.N., Skolarus, L.E., Mendizabal, J.E., et al. (2010). Mexican Americans with atrial fibrillation have more recurrent strokes than do non-Hispanic whites. *Stroke*, 41(10), 2132-2136.

Atrial fibrillation is a common risk factor for acute ischemic stroke. The researchers used surveillance methods from the Brain Attack Surveillance in Corpus Christi Project to determine recurrence rates in patients who had both atrial fibrillation and a history of at least one stroke. A total of 236 patients were studied over an 8-year period.

Mexican Americans (MAs) are the largest group of Hispanic Americans and have a higher incidence of stroke than non-Hispanic whites (NHWs). However, little is known about the post-stroke differences in these groups. This study demonstrated that the recurrence and severity of stroke was significantly higher in the MA population who had atrial fibrillation when compared with the NHW group.

Level of Evidence: 4

The study is descriptive but used a large sample over a prolonged period of time in one geographic area.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Nurses need to be aware of which ethnic groups are most at risk for strokes, especially those with atrial fibrillation. Although the study was limited to one geographic area, the number of subjects illustrates the need for health teaching. Atrial fibrillation is a treatable and controllable risk factor. Teach patients about the importance of adherence to the treatment regimen. Aggressive stroke prevention is essential.

the symptoms, such as whether they worsened after the initial onset (hemorrhagic stroke) or began to improve (embolic stroke). It is important to determine whether the symptoms come and go, possibly indicating a transient ischemic attack (TIA) or a reversible ischemic neurologic deficit (RIND).

During the interview, observe the patient's level of consciousness (LOC) and assess for indications of intellectual or memory impairments or difficulties with speech or hearing. Question the patient or family member about the presence of any sensory or motor changes, visual problems, problems with balance or gait, and changes in reading or writing abilities.

In addition, ask about the patient's medical history with specific attention directed toward a history of head trauma, diabetes, hypertension, heart disease, anemia, and obesity. Obtain a list of current medications, including prescribed drugs, over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, herbal and nutritional supplements, and recreational (illicit) drugs. To complete the history, obtain data about the patient's social history, including education, employment, travel, leisure activities, and personal habits (e.g., smoking, diet, exercise pattern, drug and alcohol use).

The patient with a cerebral aneurysm often reports the onset of a sudden, severe headache described as "the worst headache of my life." Additional symptoms include nausea and vomiting, photophobia, cranial neuropathy, stiff neck, and change in mental status. There may also be a family history of aneurysms.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

First responder personnel (e.g., paramedics, emergency medical technicians) perform an initial neurologic examination using well-established stroke assessment tools.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

In the ED, evaluate the stroke patient within 10 minutes of arrival. This same standard applies to patients already hospitalized for other medical conditions who have a stroke. The priority is assessment of ABCs—**a**irway, **b**reathing, and **c**irculation. Many hospitals have designated stroke teams and centers that are expert in acute stroke management.

ED nurses perform a complete neurologic assessment on admission. The National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS) is a commonly used valid and reliable assessment tool that nurses complete as soon as possible after the patient arrives in the ED (Table 47-3). The NIHSS includes 11 areas of assessment and serves as the patient's baseline (Mink & Miller, 2011a). The most important area to assess is the patient's level of consciousness (LOC). Use the Glasgow Coma Scale (see Fig. 43-10 in Chapter 43 on p. 918) to frequently monitor for changes in LOC that could indicate increased intracranial pressure. Specific patient manifestations depend on the extent and location of the ischemia and the arteries involved (Chart 47-3).

Cognitive Changes. The patient may have a variety of cognitive problems in addition to changes in LOC. LOC varies depending on the extent of increased intracranial pressure (ICP) caused by the stroke and on the location of the stroke. Assess for:

- Denial of the illness
- Spatial and **proprioceptive** (awareness of body position in space) dysfunction
- Impairment of memory, judgment, or problem-solving and decision-making abilities
- Decreased ability to concentrate and attend to tasks

Dysfunction in one or more of these areas may be severe depending on the hemisphere involved (Chart 47-4).

The *right* cerebral hemisphere is more involved with visual and spatial awareness and **proprioception** (sense of body position). A person who has a stroke involving the right cerebral hemisphere is often unaware of any deficits and may be disoriented to time and place. Personality changes include impulsivity (poor impulse control) and poor judgment. The *left* cerebral hemisphere, the dominant hemisphere in all but about 15% to 20% of the population, is the center for language, mathematic skills, and analytic thinking. Therefore a left hemisphere stroke results in **aphasia** (inability to use or comprehend language), **alexia** or **dyslexia** (reading problems), **agraphia** (difficulty with writing), and **acalculia** (difficulty with mathematic calculation). A complete assessment of these problems is performed by a speech-language pathologist (SLP).

Motor Changes. The motor examination provides information about which part of the brain is involved. A **right hemiplegia** (paralysis on one side of the body) or **hemiparesis** (weakness on one side of the body) indicates a stroke involving the *left* cerebral hemisphere because the motor nerve fibers cross in the medulla before entering the spinal

CHART 47-3 KEY FEATURES

Stroke Syndromes

Middle Cerebral Artery Strokes

- Contralateral hemiparesis: arm > leg
- Contralateral sensory deficit
- Homonymous hemianopsia
- Unilateral neglect or inattention
- Aphasia, anomia, alexia, agraphia, and acalculia
- Impaired vertical sensation
- Spatial deficit
- Perceptual deficit
- Visual field deficit
- Altered level of consciousness: drowsy to comatose

Posterior Cerebral Artery Strokes

- Perseveration (word or action repetition)
- Aphasia, amnesia, alexia, agraphia, visual agnosia, and ataxia
- Loss of deep sensation
- Decreased touch sensation
- Stupor; coma

Internal Carotid Artery Strokes

- Contralateral hemiparesis
- Sensory deficit
- Hemianopsia, blurred vision, blindness
- Aphasia (dominant side)
- Headache
- Bruit

Anterior Cerebral Artery Strokes

- Contralateral hemiparesis: leg > arm
- Bladder incontinence
- Personality and behavior changes
- Aphasia and amnesia
- Positive grasp and sucking reflex
- Perseveration
- Sensory deficit (lower extremity)
- Memory impairment
- Apraxic gait

Vertebrobasilar Artery Strokes

- Headache and vertigo
- Coma
- Memory loss and confusion
- Flaccid paralysis
- Areflexia, ataxia, and vertigo
- Cranial nerve dysfunction
- Disconjugate gaze
- Visual deficits (uniorbital) and homonymous hemianopsia
- Sensory loss: numbness

cord and periphery. On the other hand, a *left* hemiplegia or hemiparesis indicates a stroke in the *right* cerebral hemisphere. If the brainstem or cerebellum is affected, the patient may experience hemiparesis or quadriparesis and **ataxia** (gait disturbance).

In collaboration with the physical therapist (PT) and occupational therapist (OT), assess the patient's muscle tone. The patient with **hypotonia**, or **flaccid paralysis**, cannot overcome the forces of gravity, and the extremities tend to fall to the side. The extremities feel heavy, and muscle tone is inadequate for balance, equilibrium, or protective mechanisms. **Hypertonia** (**spastic paralysis**) tends to cause fixed positions or contractures of the involved extremities. Range of motion (ROM) of the joints is restricted, and shoulder

TABLE 47-3 NIH STROKE SCALE

CATEGORY AND MEASUREMENT	SCORE*
1a. Level of Consciousness (LOC) 0 = Alert; keenly responsive. 1 = Not alert; but arousable by minor stimulation to obey, answer, or respond. 2 = Not alert; requires repeated stimulation to attend or is obtunded and requires strong or painful stimulation to make movements (not stereotyped). 3 = Responds only with reflex motor or autonomic effects or totally unresponsive, flaccid, and areflexic.	_____
1b. LOC Questions 0 = Answers two questions correctly. 1 = Answers one question correctly. 2 = Answers neither question correctly.	_____
1c. LOC Commands 0 = Performs two tasks correctly. 1 = Performs one task correctly. 2 = Performs neither task correctly.	_____
2. Best Gaze 0 = Normal. 1 = Partial gaze palsy; gaze is abnormal in one or both eyes, but forced deviation or total gaze paresis is not present. 2 = Forced deviation, or total gaze paresis not overcome by the oculocephalic maneuver.	_____
3. Visual 0 = No visual loss. 1 = Partial hemianopia. 2 = Complete hemianopia. 3 = Bilateral hemianopia (blind including cortical blindness).	_____
4. Facial Palsy 0 = Normal symmetrical movements. 1 = Minor paralysis (flattened nasolabial fold, asymmetry on smiling). 2 = Partial paralysis (total or near-total paralysis of lower face). 3 = Complete paralysis of one or both sides (absence of facial movement in the upper and lower face).	_____
5. Motor (Arm) 0 = No drift; limb holds 90 (or 45) degrees for full 10 seconds. 1 = Drift; limb holds 90 (or 45) degrees, but drifts down before full 10 seconds; does not hit bed or other support. 2 = Some effort against gravity; limb cannot get to or maintain (if cued) 90 (or 45) degrees, drifts down to bed, but has some effort against gravity. 3 = No effort against gravity; limb falls. 4 = No movement. Untestable = Amputation or joint fusion.	Right arm: _____ Left arm: _____
6. Motor (Leg) 0 = No drift; leg holds 30-degree position for full 5 seconds. 1 = Drift; leg falls by the end of the 5-second period but does not hit bed. 2 = Some effort against gravity; leg falls to bed by 5 seconds, but has some effort against gravity. 3 = No effort against gravity; leg falls to bed immediately. 4 = No movement. Untestable = Amputation or joint fusion.	Right leg: _____ Left leg: _____
7. Limb Ataxia 0 = Absent. 1 = Present in one limb. 2 = Present in two limbs. Untestable = Amputation or joint fusion	_____
8. Sensory 0 = Normal; no sensory loss. 1 = Mild-to-moderate sensory loss; patient feels pinprick is less sharp or is dull on the affected side; or there is a loss of superficial pain with pinprick, but patient is aware of being touched. 2 = Severe-to-total sensory loss; patient is not aware of being touched in the face, arm, and leg.	_____

Continued

TABLE 47-3 NIH STROKE SCALE—cont'd

CATEGORY AND MEASUREMENT	SCORE*
9. Best Language 0 = No aphasia; normal. 1 = Mild-to-moderate aphasia; some obvious loss of fluency or facility of comprehension, without significant limitation on ideas expressed or form of expression. 2 = Severe aphasia; all communication is through fragmentary expression; great need for inference, questioning, and guessing by the listener. 3 = Mute, global aphasia; no usable speech or auditory comprehension.	_____
10. Dysarthria 0 = Normal. 1 = Mild-to-moderate dysarthria; patient slurs at least some words and, at worst, can be understood with some difficulty. 2 = Severe dysarthria; patient's speech is so slurred as to be unintelligible in the absence of or out of proportion to any dysphasia, or is mute/anarthric. Untestable = Intubated or other physical barrier.	_____
11. Extinction and Inattention (Neglect) 0 = No abnormality. 1 = Visual, tactile, auditory, spatial, or personal inattention or extinction to bilateral simultaneous stimulation in one of the sensory modalities. 2 = Profound hemi-inattention or extinction to more than one modality; does not recognize own hand or orients to only one side of space.	_____

*The patient can have a score of 0 to 40, with 0 having no neurologic deficits and 40 being the most deficits.

Modified from National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale, 2003. www.ninds.nih.gov/doctors/NIH_stroke_scale.pdf.

CHART 47-4 KEY FEATURES

Left and Right Hemisphere Strokes

FEATURE	LEFT HEMISPHERE*	RIGHT HEMISPHERE
Language	Aphasia Agraphia Alexia	Impaired sense of humor
Memory	Possible deficit	Disorientation to time, place, and person Inability to recognize faces
Vision	Inability to discriminate words and letters Reading problems Deficits in the right visual field	Visual spatial deficits Neglect of the left visual field Loss of depth perception
Behavior	Slowness Cautiousness Anxiety when attempting a new task Depression or a catastrophic response to illness Sense of guilt Feeling of worthlessness Worries over future Quick anger and frustration Intellectual impairment	Impulsiveness Lack of awareness of neurologic deficits Confabulation Euphoria Constant smiling Denial of illness Poor judgment Overestimation of abilities (risk for injury)
Hearing	No deficit	Loss of ability to hear tonal variations

*Location for speech in all but 15% to 20% of people.

subluxation may easily occur from either spasticity or flaccidity. Also assess proprioception, head and trunk control, balance, coordination, and gait. The patient who has had a stroke may also be unable to use an object correctly (**agnosia**) or carry out a purposeful motor activity or speech (**apraxia**).

Loss of neurologic control by the cerebral cortex causes a spastic (upper motor neuron) uninhibited bladder. Bowel

function may also be affected. Assess the patient for incontinence (most common) or retention of urine and stool. Some patients have both problems.

Sensory Changes. The sensory examination evaluates the patient's response to touch and painful stimuli. In addition to diminished motor function, decreased sensation typically occurs on the affected side of the body.

Evaluate for indications of **unilateral body neglect syndrome**, which is particularly common with strokes in the **right cerebral hemisphere**. In this syndrome, the patient is unaware of the existence of his or her left or paralyzed side. The typical picture is that of the patient sitting in a wheelchair and leaning to the left with the arm caught in the wheelchair wheel. When questioned, the patient often states that everything is fine and believes that he or she is sitting up straight in the chair. The patient may wash or dress only one side of the body.

Another important part of the nursing assessment focuses on visual ability. Infarction or ischemia involving the carotid artery may cause pupil constriction or dilation, **ptosis** (eyelid drooping), visual field deficits, or pallor and petechiae of the conjunctiva. **Amaurosis fugax**, a brief episode of blindness in one eye, results from retinal ischemia caused by ophthalmic or carotid artery insufficiency. **Hemianopsia**, or blindness in half of the visual field, results from damage to the optic tract or occipital lobe. Usually this deficit occurs as **homonymous hemianopsia**, in which there is blindness in the same side of both eyes (Fig. 47-3). The patient with this condition must turn his or her head to scan the complete range of vision. Otherwise, he or she does not see half of the visual field. For example, the patient eats only half of a meal because that is the only portion seen. Patients with brainstem or cerebellar damage may have abnormal eye movements, such as nystagmus (involuntary movements of the eyes).

Cranial Nerve Function. Assess the patient's ability to chew, which reflects the function of cranial nerve (CN) V. Assessment of the patient's ability to swallow reflects the

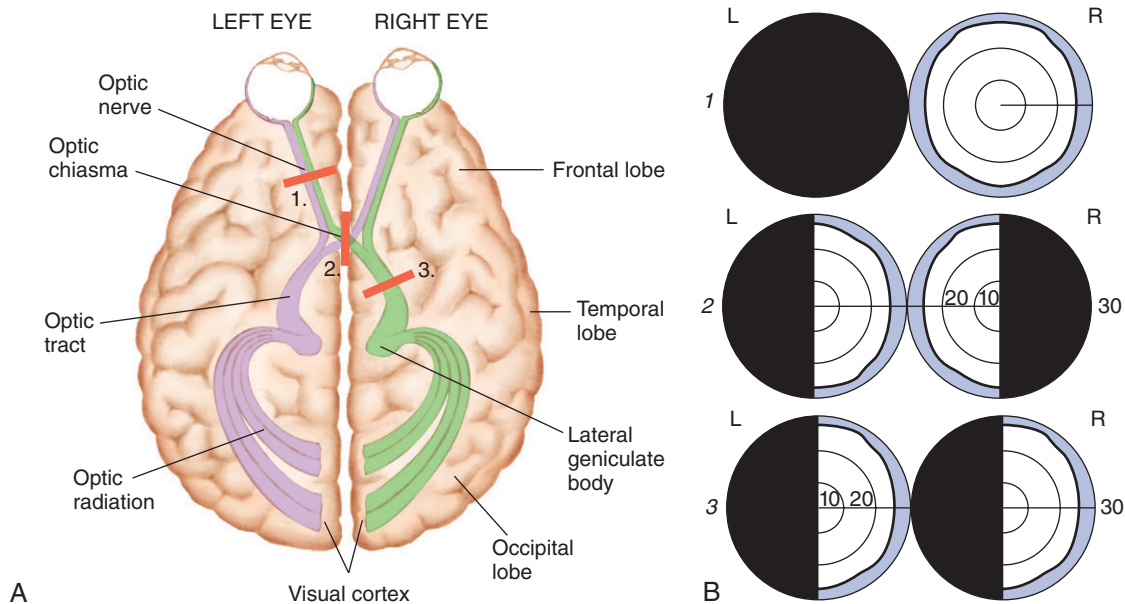


FIG. 47-3 A, Site of lesions causing visual loss. 1, Total blindness left eye; 2, Bitemporal hemianopia; 3, Left homonymous hemianopia. **B,** Visual fields corresponding to lesions shown in **A**. 1, Total blindness left eye; 2, Bitemporal hemianopia; 3, Left homonymous hemianopia.

function of CNs IX and X. In addition, note any facial paralysis or paresis (CN VII), absent gag reflex (CN IX), or impaired tongue movement (CN XII). The patient who has difficulty chewing or swallowing foods and liquids (**dysphagia**) is at risk for aspiration pneumonia and may become constipated or dehydrated from inadequate fluid intake.

Cardiovascular Assessment. Patients with embolic strokes may have a heart murmur, dysrhythmias (most often atrial fibrillation), or hypertension. It is not unusual for the patient to be admitted to the hospital with a blood pressure greater than 180 to 200/110 to 120 mm Hg. Although a somewhat higher blood pressure (150/100 mm Hg) is needed to maintain cerebral perfusion after an acute ischemic stroke, pressures above this limit may lead to another stroke.

Psychosocial Assessment

The typical patient with a stroke is older than 60 years, is hypertensive, and has varying degrees of motor weakness and level of consciousness. Language and cognitive deficits, as well as behavior and memory problems, may also occur.

Assess the patient's reaction to the illness, especially in relation to changes in body image, self-concept, and ability to perform ADLs. In collaboration with the patient's family and friends, identify any problems with coping or personality changes.

Ask about the patient's financial status and occupation, because they may be affected by the residual neurologic deficits of the stroke. Patients who do not have disability or health insurance may worry about how their family will cope financially with the disruption in their lives. Early involvement of social services, certified hospital chaplain, or psychological counseling may enhance coping skills.

Assess for **emotional lability**, especially if the frontal lobe of the brain has been affected. In such cases, the patient laughs and then cries unexpectedly for no apparent reason. Explain these uncontrollable emotions to the family or significant others so they do not feel responsible for these reactions.

Laboratory Assessment

Clinical history and presentation are usually enough to identify a stroke once it has occurred. No definitive laboratory tests confirm its diagnosis. Elevated hematocrit and hemoglobin levels are often associated with a severe or major stroke as the body attempts to compensate for lack of oxygen to the brain. An elevated white blood cell (WBC) count may indicate the presence of an infection, possibly subacute bacterial endocarditis, or a response to physiologic stress or inflammation. The health care provider typically requests a prothrombin time (PT) or international normalized ratio (INR) and a partial thromboplastin time (PTT) to establish baseline information in case anticoagulation therapy is started. These diagnostic tests may also provide supportive evidence that a hemorrhagic stroke has occurred.

Imaging Assessment

Brain imaging is the most important tool for confirming the diagnosis of a stroke. *Computed tomography (CT)* without contrast is the standard for initial diagnosis (Mink & Miller, 2011b). Cerebral aneurysms, if large enough, may also be identified. For a patient with an ischemic or occlusive stroke, the head CT is usually initially negative, indicating thrombotic or embolic stroke rather than intracerebral hemorrhage. After the first 24 hours, CT shows progressive changes of ischemia, infarction, and associated cerebral edema. This test is invaluable in establishing baseline information for future comparison in case the patient's condition deteriorates. In addition, the scan enables the physician to identify pathologic changes that may mimic a stroke, such as a brain tumor or cerebral hematoma, both of which may be unrelated to cerebrovascular disease.

Magnetic resonance imaging demonstrates ischemic brain injury earlier than CT. Magnetic resonance angiography and multimodal techniques such as perfusion-weighted imaging enhance the sensitivity of the MRI to detect early changes in the brain, including confirming blood flow. Ultrasonography

(carotid duplex scanning) and echocardiography help determine additional cardiovascular risks.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

To assist in the determination of a cardiac cause of a stroke, the health care provider may request a 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG) and an evaluation of cardiac enzymes. As with other cardiovascular diseases, it is not unusual to find these changes on the ECG: inverted T wave, ST depression, and prolongation of the QT interval in the cardiac cycle.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with a stroke are:

1. Inadequate perfusion to the brain related to interruption of arterial blood flow and a possible increase in ICP
2. Impaired Swallowing related to neuromuscular impairment
3. Impaired Physical Mobility and Self-Care Deficit related to neuromuscular impairment or cognitive impairment
4. Aphasia or dysarthria related to decreased circulation in the brain or facial muscle weakness
5. Urinary and/or Bowel Incontinence related to reflex bladder and bowel
6. Sensory changes related to altered neurologic reception, transmission, and perception
7. Unilateral body neglect syndrome related to disturbed perceptual abilities or hemianopsia

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Improving Cerebral Perfusion

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a stroke is expected to have an adequate blood flow to the brain and through the cerebral blood vessels to maintain brain function and prevent further brain injury.

Interventions. Interventions for patients experiencing strokes are determined primarily by the type and extent of the stroke. For patients having ischemic strokes, the standard of practice is to start two IV lines with non-dextrose isotonic saline (Summers et al., 2009). The immediate primary role of the nurse is to manage the patient receiving treatment and continuously assess for increasing intracranial pressure.

Nonsurgical Management. Nursing interventions are initially aimed at monitoring for neurologic changes or complications associated with stroke and its treatment. The two major treatment modalities for patients with acute ischemic stroke are fibrinolytic therapy and endovascular interventions. If the thrombus is lodged in one of the carotid arteries, an endarterectomy may be performed. Regardless of the immediate management approach used, once the patient is stable, provide ongoing supportive care. Provide interventions to prevent and/or monitor for early signs of complications, such as hyperglycemia, urinary tract infection, and pneumonia. Implement interventions to prevent patient falls. These health problems are discussed in appropriate chapters in this textbook.

Fibrinolytic Therapy. For select patients with ischemic strokes, early intervention with fibrinolytic therapy (“clot-busting drug”) is the standard of practice to improve blood flow to or through the brain. The success of fibrinolytic therapy from a stroke depends on the interval between the

time the patient was last seen normal (LSN) and available treatment. It also depends on where the treatment is given. Hospitals with stroke centers or specialized stroke teams who care for numerous stroke patients have lower mortality rates than those hospitals that care for fewer of these patients (Bederson et al., 2009).

Intravenous (systemic) fibrinolytic therapy (also called *thrombolytic therapy*) for an acute ischemic stroke (AIS) dissolves the cerebral artery occlusion to re-establish blood flow and prevent cerebral infarction. Recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rtPA [Retavase]) is the only drug approved at this point for the treatment of acute ischemic stroke. Thrombolytics activate plasminogen, which degrades the thrombus by breaking down fibrin. The most important factor in whether or not to give rtPA is the time LSN. The standard window for eligibility is 3 hours from time LSN. However, in 2009, the American Stroke Association recommended an expanded time interval from 3 to 4.5 hours for patients unless they fall into the following categories:

- Age older than 80
- Anticoagulation with an international normalized ratio less than or equal to 1.7
- Baseline National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale greater than 25
- History of both stroke and diabetes

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Women typically have 30% lower odds of receiving tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) than men. These disparities are very concerning because tPA is the only approved therapy to reduce the functional limitations caused by ischemic stroke and there is evidence that women have better outcomes from tPA than men. The reasons for lower tPA rates in women are not yet fully understood. Advocate for women by teaching them about this finding, and discuss the importance of coming to the ED in a timely fashion as soon as stroke symptoms begin (Beal, 2010).

Fibrinolytic therapy is explained to the patient and/or family member, and informed consent is obtained. The dosage of the drug is based on the patient's actual weight. Each hospital has strict protocols for mixing and administering rtPA and for monitoring the patient before and after rtPA administration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

In addition to frequent monitoring of vital signs, carefully observe for signs of intracerebral hemorrhage and other signs of bleeding during administration of rtPA. Other best practice interventions are listed in Chart 47-5.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client receiving IV sodium heparin after a dose of rtPA (Retavase) begins to have severe epistaxis. What is the nurse's first action?

- A. Slow the heparin infusion to keep the vein open.
- B. Call the health care provider immediately.
- C. Check the INR and prothrombin time levels.
- D. Stop the infusion immediately.

CHART 47-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nursing Interventions During and After IV Administration of rtPA

- Infuse 0.9 mg/kg (maximum dose 90 mg) over 60 minutes with 10% of the dose given as a bolus over 1 minute.
- Admit the patient to a critical care or specialized stroke unit.
- Perform neurologic assessments, including vital signs, every 10 to 15 minutes during infusion and every 30 minutes after that for at least 6 hours; monitor hourly for 24 hours after treatment.
- If systolic blood pressure is 180 mm Hg or greater or diastolic is 105 mm Hg or greater, give antihypertensive drugs as prescribed.
- Do not place invasive tubes, such as NG tubes or indwelling urinary catheters, until patient is stable to prevent bleeding.
- Discontinue the infusion if the patient reports severe headache or has severe hypertension, bleeding, nausea, and/or vomiting; notify the health care provider immediately.
- Obtain a follow-up CT scan after treatment before starting antiplatelet or anticoagulant drugs.

rtPA, Recombinant tissue plasminogen activator.

Endovascular Interventions. Endovascular procedures include intra-arterial thrombolysis using drug therapy and mechanical **embolectomy** (clot removal). Intra-arterial thrombolysis has the advantage of delivering the fibrinolytic agent directly into the thrombus within 6 hours of the stroke's onset. It is particularly beneficial for some patients who have an occlusion of the middle cerebral artery or those who arrive in the ED after the window for rtPA. If the patient arrives in less than 8 hours, the interventional neuroradiologist may perform mechanical embolectomy using special instrumentation systems that can remove the clot by suction or other method (Mink & Miller, 2011a). Patients having either fibrinolytic therapy or endovascular interventions are admitted to the critical care setting for intensive collaborative monitoring.

Some patients may have worsening of their neurologic status starting within 24 to 48 hours after their stroke. A major complication is increased intracranial pressure (ICP) (Chart 47-6). Reassess patients every 1 to 4 hours (depending on severity of the condition) using the approved assessment tools.

Monitoring for Increased Intracranial Pressure. The patient is most at risk for increased ICP resulting from edema during the first 24 to 48 hours after onset of the stroke.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Be alert for symptoms of increased ICP in the stroke patient, and report any deterioration in the patient's neurologic status to the health care provider immediately! The first sign of increased ICP is a declining level of consciousness (LOC).

Keep the head of the bed (HOB) elevated to between 25 and 30 degrees to prevent a decreased blood flow to the brain. The best HOB positioning has not yet been determined, and more studies are needed to determine best practice. Provide oxygen therapy to prevent hypoxia for patients with oxygen saturation less than 92% or those with a decreased LOC

CHART 47-6 KEY FEATURES

Increased Intracranial Pressure (ICP)

- Decreased level of consciousness (LOC) (lethargy to coma)
- Behavior changes: restlessness, irritability, and confusion
- Headache
- Nausea and vomiting (may be projectile)
- Change in speech pattern
- Aphasia
- Slurred speech
- Change in sensorimotor status
- Pupillary changes: dilated and nonreactive pupils ("blown pupils") or constricted and nonreactive pupils
- Cranial nerve dysfunction
- Ataxia
- Seizures (usually within first 24 hrs after stroke)
- Cushing's triad
- Severe hypertension
- Widened pulse pressure
- Bradycardia
- Abnormal posturing:
 - Decerebrate (extensor)
 - Decorticate (flexion)

(Summers et al., 2009). Maintain the head in a midline, neutral position to help promote venous drainage from the brain. When severe hemiparesis is present, position the patient on his or her side to prevent aspiration and promote comfort.

In collaboration with other team members, avoid patient care activities that may increase ICP, especially if the patient has indications of cerebral edema. Avoid positioning the patient in extreme hip and neck flexion. Extreme hip flexion may increase intrathoracic pressure, which may make ICP more difficult to control. Extreme neck flexion interferes with venous drainage from the brain, also affecting ICP control.

Additional nursing considerations include avoiding the clustering of nursing procedures (e.g., giving a bath followed immediately by changing the bed linen) within a short time. This action is needed because the effect on ICP elevation is more dramatic when multiple activities are clustered within a narrow time period. Hyperoxygenating the patient before suctioning may also be appropriate to avoid even transient hypoxemia and resultant ICP elevation from dilation of cerebral arteries. Assess the necessity of suctioning because it increases ICP.

A quiet environment is particularly important for the patient experiencing a headache, which is common with an aneurysm or increased ICP. The patient may have **photophobia** (sensitivity to light). Therefore keep the room lights very low.

Monitor vital signs closely, at least every 1 to 2 hours. Notify the health care provider if the blood pressure exceeds acceptable levels. Generally, the health care provider allows the patient with *acute ischemic stroke* to be slightly hypertensive (a systolic blood pressure [SBP] between 140 and 150 mm Hg) to promote cerebral tissue perfusion. A higher blood pressure (above 180 mm Hg systolic and/or 110 mm Hg diastolic) could lead to a hemorrhagic stroke or rebleeding of an aneurysm (if present).

Evidence-based guidelines are not available for managing blood pressure in patients with hemorrhagic strokes, but for

many patients, severe hypertension is the cause of their stroke (Mink & Miller, 2011b).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

If the stroke patient's SBP is more than 200 mm Hg, notify the health care provider immediately to prescribe a continuous IV antihypertensive medication. Monitor the patient's BP and mean arterial pressure (MAP) every 5 minutes until the SBP is between 140 and 150 mm Hg to maintain brain perfusion. An ICP monitoring system may be used to ensure that cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) is maintained.

Carefully monitor the patient's temperature because fever may cause increased ICP. Hypothermia may cause decreased cerebral perfusion. A complete discussion of the *management of increased ICP, including drug therapy, is on p. 1027 under Interventions in the Traumatic Brain Injury section.*

Patients admitted to a critical care unit are connected to a cardiac monitor and observed for dysrhythmias. The nurse performs a cardiac assessment, with particular attention directed toward auscultation of heart sounds to identify the presence of cardiac murmurs or atrial fibrillation (AF). Murmurs or AF may place the patient at increased risk for emboli. Close physical assessment for indications of hemodynamic stability is indicated. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring is often needed to monitor and evaluate physiologic stability and response to therapy.

Monitoring for Other Complications. Monitor the patient with an aneurysm or arteriovenous malformation (AVM) for signs and symptoms of hydrocephalus and vasospasm. **Hydrocephalus** (increased cerebrospinal fluid [CSF] within the ventricular and subarachnoid spaces) may occur as a result of blood in the CSF. This prevents CSF from being reabsorbed properly by the arachnoid villi. Cerebral edema, which interferes with the flow of CSF out from the ventricular system, may also develop. Eventually the ventricles become enlarged. If hydrocephalus is left untreated, increased intracranial pressure (ICP) results. Observe for clinical manifestations of hydrocephalus, which are similar to those of ICP elevation, including a change in the LOC. Clinical findings may also include headache, pupil changes, seizures, poor coordination, gait disturbances (if ambulatory), and behavior changes.

Clinical manifestations of vasospasm may include decreased LOC, motor and reflex changes, and increased neurologic deficits (e.g., cranial nerve dysfunction, motor weakness, and aphasia). The symptoms may fluctuate with the occurrence and degree of vasospasm present.

Rebleeding or rupture is a common complication for the patient with an aneurysm or AVM. It may occur within 24 hours of the initial bleed or rupture and up to 7 to 10 days later. Assess for severe headache, nausea and vomiting, a decreased LOC, and additional neurologic deficits. Potential consequences of aneurysm rebleeding may be catastrophic.

Ongoing Drug Therapy. Ongoing drug therapy depends on the type of stroke and the resulting neurologic dysfunction. In general, the purposes of drug therapy are to prevent further thrombotic episodes (anticoagulation) and to protect the neurons from hypoxia.

Although previously widely used, anticoagulants are controversial and are not considered current best practice by the

American Stroke Association for acute ischemic strokes or for preventing future strokes (Adams et al., 2007). Sodium heparin and other anticoagulants, such as warfarin (Coumadin, Warfilone), are **high-alert drugs** that can cause bleeding, including intracerebral hemorrhage.

However, an *initial* dose of 325 mg of enteric-coated or other form of aspirin (Ecotrin, Ancasal) is recommended within 24 to 48 hours after stroke onset. Aspirin should not be given within 24 hours of rtPA administration. These drugs are antiplatelet drugs and prevent blood clotting by reducing platelet adhesiveness (clumping). They can cause bruising, hemorrhage, and liver disease over a long-term period. Teach the patient to report any unusual bruising or bleeding to the health care provider. The 2007 best practice guidelines for the treatment of acute ischemic stroke recommend *against* the use of clopidogrel (Plavix) alone or in combination with aspirin (Adams et al., 2007). However, many health care providers still prescribe them.

To treat seizures, lorazepam (Ativan), a benzodiazepine, may be administered with close neurologic and cardiopulmonary monitoring. For long-term antiseizure therapy, the health care provider may also prescribe antiepileptic drugs (AEDs), such as phenytoin (Dilantin), gabapentin (Neurontin), or topiramate (Topamax). Neuroprotective drugs such as calcium channel blockers (e.g., nimodipine [Nimotop]) may be given to treat or prevent cerebral vasospasm after a subarachnoid hemorrhage. Vasospasm, which usually occurs between 4 and 14 days after the stroke, slows blood flow to the area and worsens ischemia. Calcium channel blockers work by relaxing the smooth muscles of the vessel wall and reducing the incidence and severity of the spasm. Neurologic functioning may improve, and further deterioration from ischemia is then prevented. In addition, these drugs dilate collateral vessels to ischemic areas of the brain. Although these neuroprotective and vasodilating drugs are sometimes used, the American Stroke Association does not recommend them (Adams et al., 2007). Stool softeners, analgesics for pain, and antianxiety drugs may also be prescribed as needed for symptom management. Stool softeners also prevent the Valsalva maneuver during defecation to prevent increased ICP.

Other Nonsurgical Interventions. With the refinement of vascular stents, carotid artery angioplasty with stenting (CAS) is common to *prevent* or, in some cases, help manage an acute ischemic stroke. This interventional radiology procedure is usually done under moderate sedation. It may be performed by a cardiovascular surgeon or interventional radiologist.

A technique using a **distal/embolic protection device** has made this procedure very safe. The device is placed beyond the stenosis through a catheter inserted into the femoral artery (groin). The device catches any clot debris that breaks off during the CAS procedure. Placement of a carotid stent is performed to open a blockage in the carotid artery typically at the division of the common carotid artery into the internal and external carotid arteries. Throughout the procedure, the patient's neurologic and cardiovascular status are assessed. CAS is less invasive, causes less blood loss, requires shorter hospital stays (overnight) and recovery time, and has fewer complications than a carotid endarterectomy. Postprocedure care is the same as that provided for a carotid endarterectomy (see Surgical Management on p. 1016).

A rare postprocedure complication, hyperperfusion syndrome, has a very high morbidity and mortality rate. This

syndrome is thought to be the result of an impaired auto-regulation of cerebral blood flow, which results from long-standing decreased cerebral perfusion pressure that occurs with carotid artery disease. The signs and symptoms include severe temporal headache, hypertension, seizures, and focal neurologic deficits. This syndrome may be associated with intracranial hemorrhage and may occur within 1 hour postprocedure up to 24 hours or even 1 week later (Oran & Oran, 2010).

The usual treatment of an *arteriovenous malformation (AVM)* uses interventional therapy to block abnormal arteries or veins and prevent bleeding from the vascular lesion. The same procedure may be performed to occlude the vessels surrounding an aneurysm. Under fluoroscopic guidance, the physician inserts a microcatheter into the carotid artery, typically using a femoral artery approach, and threads it to the vessel to be embolized. The physician then injects an embolic liquid agent to embolize the involved arteries (Fig. 47-4). When the liquid makes contact with the blood, it immediately hardens. Embolization is usually done before gamma knife or conventional surgery. (See later discussions of these procedures in this chapter.)

For clipping small aneurysms, a minimally invasive procedure using an endoscope (lighted tube) may be used. Other procedures that do not require a cranial incision are classified as *interventional radiology*. For example, an interventional neuroradiologist can direct a small catheter into the femoral artery and advance the catheter into the aneurysm. Specially designed, detachable platinum wire coils are placed into the aneurysm, which helps seal the area with a clot. It is predicted that this method will soon treat most intracranial aneurysms, thus avoiding craniotomies and their complications.

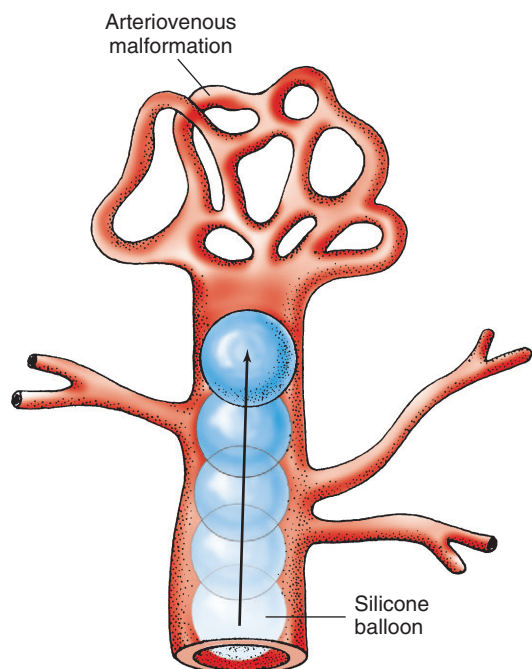


FIG. 47-4 Embolization procedure to treat an arteriovenous malformation. The liquid embolic agent travels to the area to cause vessel thrombosis.

Surgical Management. Few patients are candidates for surgery to treat strokes. The surgical procedure depends on the cause of the stroke.

Because of the frequent use of angioplasty and stenting, open carotid endarterectomy is becoming less common. This procedure may prevent progressing stroke in symptomatic patients with recurrent TIAs or carotid stenosis but usually is performed as an intervention to prevent strokes. The purpose of a **carotid endarterectomy** is to remove atherosclerotic plaque from the inner lining of the carotid artery. The procedure opens the artery enough to re-establish blood flow and decrease stroke risk.

The patient usually stays in the hospital for 2 nights unless complications occur or the patient is older. Postprocedure care involves monitoring vital signs, neurologic status, and peripheral pulses. Check the incision site for bleeding. Complications are not common, although stroke is possible. Monitor the patient for cerebral hyperperfusion, which may occur because of increased vascular pressure (from the open artery) and lead to intracranial hemorrhage (stroke).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Before discharge after carotid endarterectomy, teach the patient to report these symptoms to the health care provider as soon as possible:

- Severe headache
- Change in brain function (e.g., drowsiness, decreased cognition)
- Muscle weakness
- Severe neck pain
- Neck swelling
- Hoarseness or difficulty swallowing (due to nerve damage)

In an **extracranial-intracranial bypass**, the surgeon performs a craniotomy (surgical opening into the brain through the skull) and bypasses the blocked artery by making a graft or a bypass from the first artery to the second artery. This procedure establishes blood flow around the blocked artery and re-establishes blood flow to the involved areas. The two most common techniques are the superficial temporal artery-to-middle cerebral artery (STA-MCA) graft and the occipital-to-posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA) bypass. Studies show that immediate surgery is associated with a high risk for intracranial hemorrhage and no improvement in outcome except in the patient with an embolus to the middle cerebral artery (Adams et al., 2007).

Whenever possible, an AVM is also totally removed via a craniotomy. The surgeon cuts and separates the group of vessels and removes the defect. Gamma radiation delivered through the gamma knife (see discussion on p. 1033 in the Stereotactic Radiosurgery section) produces fibrous thickening of the endothelial lining of the vessels to prevent further vessel enlargement and ultimately eliminate the lesion from the cerebral circulation. Improved microsurgical techniques have significantly reduced morbidity and mortality rates, and these procedures are becoming the treatment of choice in many medical centers.

Although not commonly done after a stroke, cerebral aneurysms may be repaired via a craniotomy as soon as the patient's condition is stabilized. Surgery may be postponed for patients

with ruptured aneurysms that caused stupor or coma, because their condition makes them high-risk surgical candidates. During surgery, the aneurysm is clipped or a clamp is placed at the base, or neck, of the aneurysm to prevent blood from entering the area. Visitors may be limited, and measures to decrease the patient's stress and increase comfort are usually initiated. The care of the patient having a craniotomy is discussed on p. 1033.

Managing Impaired Swallowing

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a stroke is expected to avoid aspiration and have adequate nutrition to promote health and prevent complications, including major weight loss.

Interventions. Aspiration is a frequent complication for patients with dysphagia (difficulty swallowing). Many of these aspirations are “silent” and are not recognized until pulmonary complications occur. The best practice for all stroke patients is to have them maintain an NPO status until their swallowing ability is assessed and a plan of care is developed for impaired swallowing. Before the patient is given any liquids, food, and medication, he or she must be screened for the ability to swallow. Follow agency guidelines for the screening procedure using an evidence-based bedside swallowing screening tool.

Observe for facial drooping, drooling, impaired voluntary cough, hoarseness, incomplete mouth closure, or cranial nerve palsies. Next check the gag and cough reflexes. If the patient does not pass this swallowing screen, collaborate with the speech-language pathologist (SLP) to conduct a bedside swallowing screening and evaluation. He or she may recommend a modified barium swallow (video fluoroscopy) to identify specific structures that are impaired during swallowing. *Ensure that the patient remains completely NPO status until the SLP determines that the patient can tolerate liquids or foods without aspirating.* Based on the complete swallowing evaluation, the SLP makes recommendations for feeding for the staff to follow. Remind all unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) and the family about the need to follow these precautions exactly as they are written.

Some patients can swallow without difficulty but are at risk for aspiration because they are easily distracted and impulsive. These patients require a distraction-free environment with minimal disruption from television, visitors, or environmental noise. Observe for indications of fatigue, because it can significantly interfere with the patient's desire and ability to eat.

Studies indicate that as many as 50% of patients were malnourished at 2 to 3 weeks after a severe stroke (Summers et al., 2009). To avoid this complication, collaborate with the dietitian as needed to provide an accurate, comprehensive nutritional assessment on admission and throughout the hospital stay. Implement nutritional interventions, such as an early gastrostomy or oral nutrition, by at least the 3rd or 4th hospital day to prevent weight loss, an altered immune status, increased length of stay, and increased mortality (Summers et al., 2009).

For patients who can tolerate oral foods and liquids, follow the SLP's recommendations for thickened liquids, head positioning, and patient teaching to prevent aspiration. Teach UAP and family members how to follow these instructions, and have them readily available for reference.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client with a confirmed acute ischemic stroke is admitted to the medical unit after evaluation in the emergency department. What is the nurse's priority action on admission?

- A. Ask the nursing technician to weigh the client and record it.
- B. Consult with the physical therapist about the client's rehabilitative care.
- C. Keep the client NPO until the swallowing assessment is complete.
- D. Give warfarin and check activated thromboplastin levels.

Improving Mobility and Promoting Self-Care

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a stroke is expected to ambulate and provide self-care independently, with or without an assistive-adaptive device.

Interventions. Patients who have had a stroke often have flaccid or spastic paralysis. It is not unusual for the patient to eventually have a flaccid arm and spastic leg on the affected side because the affected leg often regains function more quickly than the arm. Patients begin rehabilitation as soon as possible to regain function and prevent complications of immobility, such as pneumonia, atelectasis, and pressure ulcers.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be sure to support the affected flaccid arm of the stroke patient, and teach UAP to avoid pulling on it. Position the arm on a pillow while the patient is sitting to prevent it from hanging freely, which could cause shoulder subluxation. The physical or occupational therapist provides a sling-like device to support the arm during ambulation.

Another major complication of impaired physical mobility is the development of venous thromboembolism (VTE), especially deep vein thrombosis (DVT) that can lead to a pulmonary embolism (PE). This risk is highest in older patients and those with a severe stroke. Provide care to prevent this complication by applying sequential compression stockings or pneumatic compression boots, changing the patient's position frequently, and ambulating the patient if possible. Report any indications of DVT to the health care provider, and document assessments in the patient's chart. [Chapter 38](#) discusses VTE in detail.

The rehabilitation therapists evaluate the patient's ability to perform mobility skills, basic ADLs, and household tasks that will be performed at home. After a thorough evaluation, collaborate with them to develop a plan of care to promote patient independence, with or without assistive or adaptive devices. Therapy begins in the hospital setting and continues after discharge in most cases. [Chapter 8](#) describes interventions for improving mobility and promoting self-care.

Promoting Effective Communication

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a stroke is expected to receive, interpret, and express spoken, written, and nonverbal messages, if possible. However, some patients may need to develop strategies for alternative methods of communication, such as pictures or nonverbal language.

TABLE 47-4 TYPES OF APHASIA

Expressive

- Referred to as *Broca's*, or *motor*, *aphasia*
- Difficulty speaking
- Difficulty writing

Receptive

- Referred to as *Wernicke's*, or *sensory*, *aphasia*
- Difficulty understanding spoken words
- Difficulty understanding written words
- Speech often meaningless
- Made-up words

Mixed

- Combination of difficulty understanding words and speech
- Difficulty with reading and writing

Global

- Profound speech and language problems
- Often no speech or sounds that cannot be understood

Interventions. Language or speech problems are usually the result of a stroke involving the dominant hemisphere. The left cerebral hemisphere is the speech center in most patients. Speech and language problems may be the result of aphasia or dysarthria. Whereas aphasia is caused by cerebral hemisphere damage, **dysarthria** (slurred speech) is due to a loss of motor function to the tongue or to the muscles of speech, causing facial weakness and slurred speech. Involvement of the speech-language pathologist (SLP) as early as possible in the hospitalization greatly increases the patient's chances for optimal recovery. Remind patients to practice their exercises for dysarthria to strengthen their facial and oral muscles.

Aphasia can be classified in a number of ways. Most commonly, it is classified as expressive, receptive, or mixed (Table 47-4). **Expressive (Broca's, or motor) aphasia** is the result of damage in Broca's area of the frontal lobe. It is a motor speech problem in which the patient generally understands what is said but cannot communicate verbally. He or she also has difficulty writing but may be able to write. Rote speech and automatic speech such as responses to a greeting are often intact. The patient is aware of the deficit and may become frustrated and angry. Reassure patients and remind them to talk slowly.

Receptive (Wernicke's, or sensory) aphasia is due to injury involving Wernicke's area in the temporoparietal area. The patient cannot understand the spoken and often the written word. Although he or she may be able to talk, the language is often meaningless. Neologisms (made-up words) are common parts of speech.

Usually the patient has some degree of dysfunction in the areas of both expression and reception. This is known as *mixed aphasia*. Reading and writing ability are equally affected. Few patients have just expressive or receptive aphasia. In most cases, though, one type is dominant.

To help communicate with the patient with aphasia, use these guiding principles:

- Present one idea or thought in a sentence (e.g., "I am going to help you get into the chair").
- Use simple one-step commands rather than ask patients to do multiple tasks.

- Speak slowly but not loudly; use cues or gestures as needed.
- Avoid "yes" and "no" questions for patients with expressive aphasia, because they often give automatic responses that may be incorrect.
- Use alternative forms of communication if needed, such as a computer, communication board, or flash cards (often with pictures).

For more specific communication strategies for your patient, collaborate with the SLP.

Promoting Continence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a stroke is expected to control elimination of urine and stool.

Interventions. The patient may be incontinent of urine and stool because of an altered level of consciousness, impaired innervation to the bladder and rectum, and/or the inability to communicate the need to urinate or defecate. Before beginning a patient education program to correct these problems, the cause must first be established. Typically, the patient who has had a stroke can regain both bowel and bladder control in time. To begin a bladder training program, place the patient on the bedpan or the commode or offer the urinal every 2 hours. Encourage a total fluid intake of at least 2000 mL daily unless contraindicated because of renal or cardiac health problems. A bedside bladder ultrasound is used to check for residual urine after voiding in the early phase of the bladder training program to ensure that the patient is emptying the bladder. Retained urine can lead to a urinary tract infection.

Before establishing a bowel training program, determine the patient's normal time for bowel elimination and any routine that helps promote a stool. This routine is followed, if possible, and the patient is placed on the commode or toilet at the same time as the previous schedule at home. Encourage the patient to drink apple or prune juice and to consume high-fiber foods to help promote bowel elimination. A stool softener (Colace) may be prescribed. Suppositories may also assist in re-establishing a bowel routine. Chapter 8 provides a complete discussion of bowel and bladder training programs.

If the patient has an indwelling urinary catheter, it should be removed as soon as possible to prevent the development of bacteremia and sepsis. The patient with a fever or an older adult who becomes increasingly confused should always be evaluated for a urinary tract infection.

Managing Sensory Perception

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The major concern of patients with sensory or perceptual changes is adapting to neurologic deficits. Therefore the patient with a stroke is expected to adapt to sensory or perceptual changes in vision, proprioception (position sense), and sensation and to be free from injury.

Interventions. Patients with right hemisphere brain damage typically have difficulty with visual-perceptual or spatial-perceptual tasks. They have problems with depth and distance perception and with discrimination of right from left or up from down. Because of these problems, they have difficulty performing routine ADLs. Caregivers help the patient adapt to these disabilities by using frequent verbal and tactile cues and by breaking down tasks into discrete steps.

Always approach the patient from the unaffected side, which should face the door of the room.

Place objects within the patient's field of vision. A mirror may help visualize more of the environment. If the patient has **diplopia** (double vision), a patch may be placed over the affected eye. Remind the nursing staff to ensure a safe environment by removing clutter from the room.

The patient with a left hemisphere lesion generally has memory deficits and may show significant changes in the ability to carry out simple tasks. To assist with memory problems, re-orient the patient to the month, year, day of the week, and circumstances surrounding hospital admission. Establish a routine or schedule that is as structured, repetitious, and consistent as possible. Provide information in a simple, concise manner. A step-by-step approach is often most effective because the patient can master one step before moving to the next. When possible, ask the family to bring in pictures and other familiar objects.

The patient may be unable to plan and execute tasks in an organized manner. **Apraxia**, or the inability to perform previously learned motor skills or commands, may be present. Typically, the patient with apraxia exhibits a slow, cautious, and hesitant behavior style. The physical therapist (PT) assists the patient in compensating for loss of position sense.

Preventing Unilateral Body Neglect

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with stroke is expected to adjust and use techniques to compensate for unilateral (one-sided) body neglect.

Interventions. Unilateral neglect, or neglect syndrome, occurs most commonly in patients who have had a right cerebral stroke. However, it can occur in any patient who experiences hemianopsia, in which the vision of one or both eyes is affected. This problem places the patient at additional risk for injury, especially falls, because of an inability to recognize his or her physical impairment or because of a lack of proprioception (position sense).

Teach the patient to touch and use both sides of the body. For example, encourage the patient to wash both the affected and unaffected sides of the body. When dressing, remind the patient to dress the affected side first. If hemianopsia is present, teach the patient to turn his or her head from side to side to expand the visual field. This scanning technique is also useful when the patient is eating or ambulating.

Community-Based Care

The patient with a stroke may be discharged to home, a rehabilitation center, or a skilled nursing facility (SNF), depending on the extent of the disability and the availability of family or caregiver support. Some patients have no significant neurologic dysfunction and are able to return home and live independently or with minimal support. Other patients are able to return home but require ongoing assistance with ADLs and supervision to prevent accidents or injury. The case or care manager coordinates speech/language, physical, and/or occupational therapy services to continue in the home or on an ambulatory care basis. Patients admitted to a rehabilitation unit/facility or SNF require continued or more complex nursing care as well as extensive physical, occupational, recreational, speech-language, or cognitive therapy, which is coordinated by a case manager. The expected outcome for rehabilitation is to maximize the patient's abilities in all

aspects of life. Some patients who have strokes have severe brain damage. They have profound neurologic impairments and require palliative care.

Home Care Management

Collaborate with the case manager to plan the patient's discharge. Coordinate with rehabilitation therapists to identify needs for assistive or adaptive and safety equipment. The extent of this assessment depends on the patient's disabilities. The home of the patient with hemiparesis should be free from scatter rugs or other obstacles in the walking pathways. The bathtub and toilet should be equipped with grab bars. Anti-skid patches or strips should be placed in the bathtub to prevent slipping. The PT or OT works with the patient and the family or significant others to obtain all needed assistive devices and home modifications *before* the patient is discharged from the hospital, rehabilitation setting, or SNF. Appointments for outpatient speech, physical, and occupational therapy are arranged before discharge for continuing care (per The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals).

Teaching for Self-Management

As part of the discharge process, teach the family about depression that may occur within the 3 months after a stroke. The strongest predictors of post-stroke depression (PSD) are a history of depression, severe stroke, and post-stroke physical or cognitive impairment. Patients may not exhibit typical signs of depression because of their cognitive, physical, and emotional impairments. PSD is associated with increased morbidity and mortality, especially in older men.

The teaching plan for the patient with a stroke also includes drug therapy, ambulation/transfer skills, communication skills, safety precautions, nutritional management, activity levels, and self-management skills. Health teaching should focus on tasks that must be performed by the patient and the family after hospital discharge. Provide both written and verbal instruction in all these areas. Return demonstrations assist in evaluating the family members' competency in tasks required for the patient's care (Fig. 47-5).

The patient must take the prescribed drugs to prevent another stroke and control hypertension. Teach the patient and the family the name of each drug, the dosage, the timing



FIG. 47-5 Son adjusting his mother's wheelchair.

of administration and how to take it, and possible side effects. In collaboration with the PT and OT, teach the patient how to climb stairs safely, if he or she is able; transfer from the bed to a chair; get into and out of a car; and use any aids for mobility. The patient and family members are also taught how to use any equipment needed to increase independence in self-management skills. Provide important information regarding what to do in an emergency and whom to call for nonemergency questions.

Families may feel overwhelmed by the continuing demands placed on them. Depending on the location of the lesion, the patient may be anxious, slow, cautious, and hesitant and lack initiative (left hemisphere lesions) or he or she may be impulsive and seemingly unaware of any deficit. Family members and other caregivers need to spend time away from the patient on a routine basis to continue to provide full-time care without sacrificing their own physical and emotional health. Refer the family to social services or other community resources for further support, counseling, and possible respite care.

Health Care Resources

Available resources include a variety of publications from the American Heart Association (www.americanheart.org), including *Stroke: A Guide for Families* and *Stroke: Why Do They Behave That Way?* The National Stroke Association (www.stroke.org) also provides publications and videotapes for caregivers and patients. *Recovering After a Stroke: A Patient and Family Guide* is available from the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (www.ahrq.gov). Refer the patient and family members or significant others to local stroke support groups.

For patients who require palliative end-of-life care, refer the family to hospice care. **Chapter 9** gives a detailed description of end-of-life care and advance directives.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with stroke based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Has an adequate blood flow through the cerebral vasculature to maintain brain function
- Ambulates and performs self-care independently, with or without assistive devices
- Learns to adapt to sensory and perceptual changes
- Adjusts and uses techniques to compensate for one-sided neglect
- Communicates effectively or develops strategies for effective communication
- Has adequate nutrition and avoids aspiration
- Controls elimination of urine and stool

TRAUMATIC BRAIN INJURY

Pathophysiology

A head injury is caused by a blow or jolt to the head or by penetration of the head by a bullet or other foreign object. As a result, the normal functioning of the brain is disrupted. Regardless of the severity of injury, the patient may have short-term or long-term physical, cognitive, financial, and emotional consequences.

Various terms are used to describe the brain injuries that occur when a mechanical force is applied either directly or indirectly to the brain. A force produced by a blow to the head is a *direct* injury, whereas a force applied to another body part with a rebound effect to the brain is an *indirect* injury. The brain responds to these forces by movement within the rigid cranial vault. It may also rebound or rotate on the brainstem, causing diffuse axonal injury (shearing injuries). The brain may be contused (bruised) or lacerated/torn as it moves over the inner surfaces of the cranium, which are irregularly shaped and sharp. Damage most commonly occurs to the frontal and temporal lobes.

Movement or distortion within the cranial cavity is possible because of multiple factors. The first factor is how the brain is supported by cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) within the cranial cavity. When external force is applied to the head, the brain can be injured by the internal surfaces of the skull and meninges. The second factor is the consistency of brain tissue, which is very fragile and prone to injury. Brain injury can also be categorized as primary or secondary.

Primary Brain Injury

Primary brain damage occurs at the time of injury and results from the physical stress (force) within the tissue caused by open or closed trauma. An **open head injury** occurs when the skull is fractured or when it is pierced by a penetrating object. The integrity of the brain and the dura is violated, and there is exposure to environmental contaminants. Damage may occur to the underlying vessels, dural sinus, brain, and cranial nerves. A **closed head injury** is the result of blunt trauma; the integrity of the skull is not violated. It is the more serious of the two types of injury, and the damage to brain tissue depends on the degree and mechanisms of injury.

Brain injury may also be described as mild, moderate, or severe. A Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) score of 13 to 15 and a loss of consciousness for up to 15 minutes reflect a *mild traumatic brain injury (TBI)* (MTBI). A *moderate TBI* often includes a period of loss of consciousness (LOC) up to 6 hours and may occur with other systemic injury and a GCS score of 9 to 12. A short critical care stay may be needed for close monitoring. After injury, these patients may have difficulty with work, learning, and role function. *Severe head injury* (GCS score of 3 to 8 and loss of consciousness for longer than 6 hours) is more serious and requires management in critical care with ongoing monitoring of hemodynamic stability and intracranial pressure (ICP).

The incidence of *minor* head injuries is difficult to estimate because most are not reported. However, they account for most of all diagnosed head injuries. Often patients do not seek medical care because they deny that anything is wrong, do not have any health insurance, or may feel guilty or embarrassed over the circumstances of the injury.

Symptoms include a wide array of physical and cognitive problems that range from persistent headache, dizziness, and drowsiness to other symptoms listed on **Chart 47-7**. These symptoms usually resolve within 72 hours. In some cases the symptoms persist and may last days, weeks, or months. For other patients, severe physical and cognitive problems remain despite relatively mild initial symptoms and normal diagnostic test findings. This cluster of symptoms is also referred to as *post-concussion syndrome*.

CHART 47-7 KEY FEATURES

Traumatic Brain Injury

- Amnesia (loss of memory)
- Headache
- Dizziness
- Seizure
- Loss of consciousness or sleepiness/drowsiness
- Restlessness or irritability
- Disorientation or confusion
- Scalp bruising and tenderness
- Personality changes
- Diplopia
- Gait changes
- Severe head injury:
 - Pupil changes
 - Bradycardia
 - Papilledema
 - High blood pressure/widened pulse pressure
 - Hypotension and tachycardia (hypovolemic shock)
 - Nuchal rigidity (cerebrospinal fluid [CSF] leak)

Open Head Injury. The types of fractures associated with an open head injury are linear, depressed, open, and comminuted. A **linear fracture** is a simple, clean break in which the impacted area of bone bends inward and the area around it bends outward. Linear fractures are the most common type of skull fracture. In a **depressed fracture**, the bone is pressed inward into the brain tissue to at least the thickness of the skull. In an **open fracture**, the scalp is lacerated, creating a direct opening to the brain tissue. A **comminuted fracture** involves fragmented bone with depression into the brain tissue.

A unique fracture is a **basilar skull fracture**. It occurs at the base of the skull, usually extending into the anterior, middle, or posterior fossa, and results in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leakage from the nose or ears. This fracture has the potential for hemorrhage caused by damage to the internal carotid artery; damage to cranial nerves (CNs) I, II, VII, and VIII; and infection.

Most penetrating injuries to the skull are caused by gunshot wounds (GSWs) and knife injuries. The degree of injury to brain tissue depends on the velocity (speed), mass, shape, and direction of impact. High-velocity injuries produce the greatest damage to brain tissue. As with any open head injury, the patient with a penetrating injury is at high risk for infection from the object that pierced the skull and from other environmental contaminants.

Closed Head Injury. Closed head injuries are caused by blunt trauma and lead to concussions, contusions, and lacerations of the brain. A **contusion** is a bruising of the brain tissue and is most commonly found at the site of impact (coup injury) or in a line opposite the site of impact (**contrecoup injury**) (Fig. 47-6). The base of the frontal and temporal lobes is most often involved. A **concussion** is a shaky movement of the brain and may be mild or more severe. Some patients lose consciousness for a short time.

The damage to the brain may be mild, as occurs in a concussive injury, or it may be more severe, causing diffuse axonal injury or widespread injury to the white matter of the brain. **Diffuse axonal injury (DAI)** is usually related to

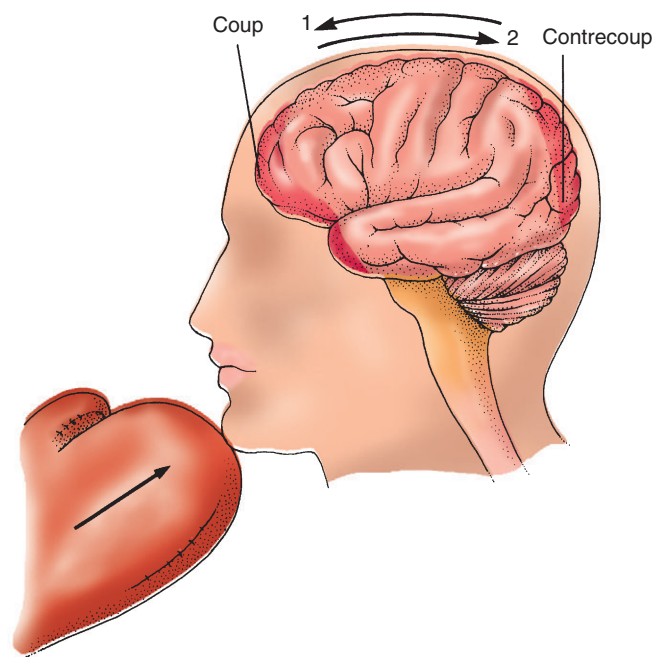


FIG. 47-6 Coup (site of impact) injury to frontal area of brain, and contrecoup injury to frontal and temporal areas of the brain.

high-speed acceleration/deceleration, typically seen in motor vehicle crashes. In this injury, significant damage occurs to axons in the white matter. Damage may also be found in the corpus callosum, midbrain, cerebellum, and upper brainstem. Depending on severity, small areas of hemorrhage and enlargement of the lateral ventricles may be seen on computed tomography (CT). Severe DAI may present with immediate coma, and most survivors require long-term care.

A **laceration** causes actual tearing of the cortical surface vessels, which may lead to secondary hemorrhage and significant cerebral edema and inflammation. This condition is more serious than a contusion.

Types of Force

Other factors that must be considered in the dynamics of head injury are the type of force and the mechanisms of injury involved. An **acceleration** injury is caused by an external force contacting the head, suddenly placing the head in motion. A **deceleration** injury occurs when the moving head is suddenly stopped or hits a stationary object (Fig. 47-7). These forces may be sufficient to cause the cerebrum to rotate about the brainstem, resulting in shearing, straining, and distortion of the brain tissue, particularly of the axons in the brainstem and cerebellum. Small areas of hemorrhage may develop around the blood vessels that sustain the impact of these forces (stress), with destruction of adjacent brain tissue. Particularly affected are the basal nuclei and the hypothalamus.

Secondary Injury

Secondary injury to brain injury includes any processes that occur *after* the initial injury and worsen or negatively influence patient outcomes. They result from physiologic,

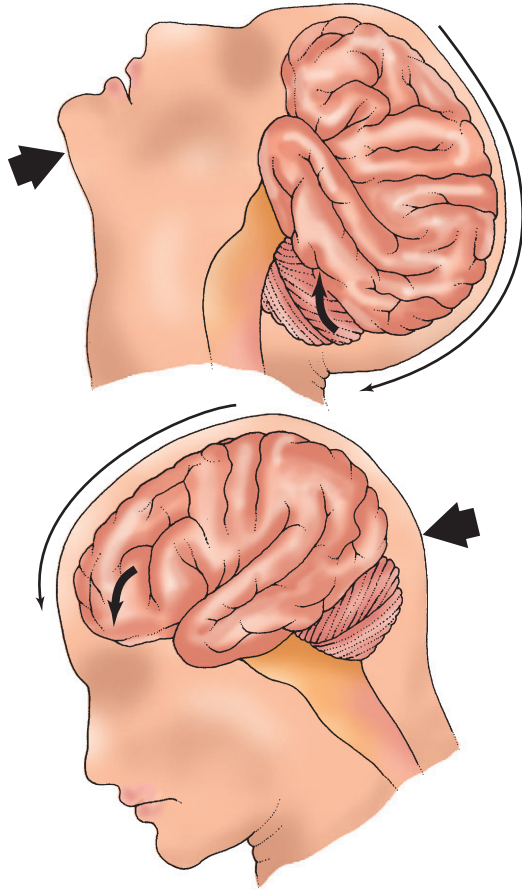


FIG. 47-7 Head movement during acceleration-deceleration injury, which is typically seen in motor vehicle crashes.

vascular, and biochemical events that are an extension of the primary injury and involve cellular changes that contribute to tissue injury. The most common responses are hypotension, hypoxia, ischemia, and cerebral edema. Damage to the brain tissue occurs primarily because the delivery of oxygen and glucose to the brain is interrupted.

Increased Intracranial Pressure. The cranial contents include brain tissue, blood, and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). These components are encased in the relatively rigid skull. Within this space, there is little room for any of the components to expand or increase in volume. Through the processes of accommodation and compliance, ICP is maintained at its normal level of 10 to 15 mm Hg despite periodic increases in pressure that occur with straining during defecation, coughing, or sneezing. Any increase in the volume of one component must be compensated for by a decrease in the volume of one of the other components.

As a first response to an increase in the volume of any of these components, the CSF is shunted or displaced from the cranial compartment to the spinal subarachnoid space or the rate of CSF absorption is increased. An additional response, if needed, is a decrease in cerebral blood volume by movement of cerebral venous blood into the sinuses. As long as the brain can compensate for the increase in volume and remain compliant, increases in ICP are minimal.

Increased ICP is the leading cause of death from head trauma in patients who reach the hospital alive. It occurs when

compliance no longer takes place and the brain cannot accommodate further volume changes. As ICP increases, cerebral perfusion decreases, leading to tissue hypoxia, a decrease in serum pH level, and an increase in the level of carbon dioxide. This process causes cerebral vasodilation, edema, and a further increase in ICP, and the cycle continues. If the condition remains untreated, the brain may herniate downward toward the brainstem or laterally from a unilateral lesion within one cerebral hemisphere, causing irreversible brain damage and possibly death (**brain herniation syndromes**).

Two types of edema may cause increased ICP: vasogenic edema and cytotoxic edema. A third type (interstitial edema) occurs in the presence of acute brain swelling. *Vasogenic* edema is seen most often as a cause of increased ICP in the adult. It involves an increase in the volume of brain tissue. This increase is caused by an abnormal permeability of the walls of the cerebral vessels, which allows protein-rich plasma infiltrate to leak into the extracellular space of the brain. The fluid collects primarily in the white matter.

Cytotoxic, or cellular, edema may occur as a result of a hypoxic insult, which causes a disturbance in cellular metabolism, the sodium pump, and active ion transport. The brain is quickly depleted of available oxygen, glucose, and glycogen and converts to anaerobic metabolism. The sodium pump fails, and sodium enters the cells and pulls water from the extracellular space. The serum sodium level decreases to less than 120 mEq/L (hyponatremia). As a result, an abnormal accumulation of fluid in the brain cells and a decrease in the extracellular fluid space occur. Cytotoxic edema may lead to vasogenic edema and a further increase in ICP.

Interstitial edema occurs with acute brain swelling and is associated with elevated blood pressure or increased CSF pressure. Edema develops rapidly in the perivascular and periventricular white space and can be controlled through measures to reduce blood pressure, decrease CSF pressures, or increase the **cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP)**. The CPP is the pressure gradient over which the brain is perfused. It is influenced by oxygenation, cerebral blood volume, blood pressure, cerebral edema, and ICP and is determined by subtracting the mean ICP from the mean arterial pressure. *Maintenance of a CPP above 70 mm Hg is generally accepted as an expected outcome of therapy.*

Hemorrhage. Hemorrhage, which causes a brain hematoma (collection of blood) or clot, may occur as part of the primary injury and begin at the moment of impact. It may also arise later from vessel damage. Classically, bleeding is caused by vascular damage from the shearing force of the trauma or direct physical damage from skull fractures or penetrating injury. *All hematomas are potentially life threatening because they act as space-occupying lesions and are surrounded by edema.* Three major types of hemorrhage after TBI are **epidural**, **subdural**, and **intracerebral hemorrhage**. Subarachnoid hemorrhage may also occur.

An **epidural hematoma** results from arterial bleeding into the space between the dura and the inner skull (Fig. 47-8). It is often caused by a fracture of the temporal bone, which houses the middle meningeal artery. Patients with epidural hematomas have “lucid intervals” that last for minutes during which time the patient is awake and talking. This follows a momentary unconsciousness that occurs within minutes of the injury.

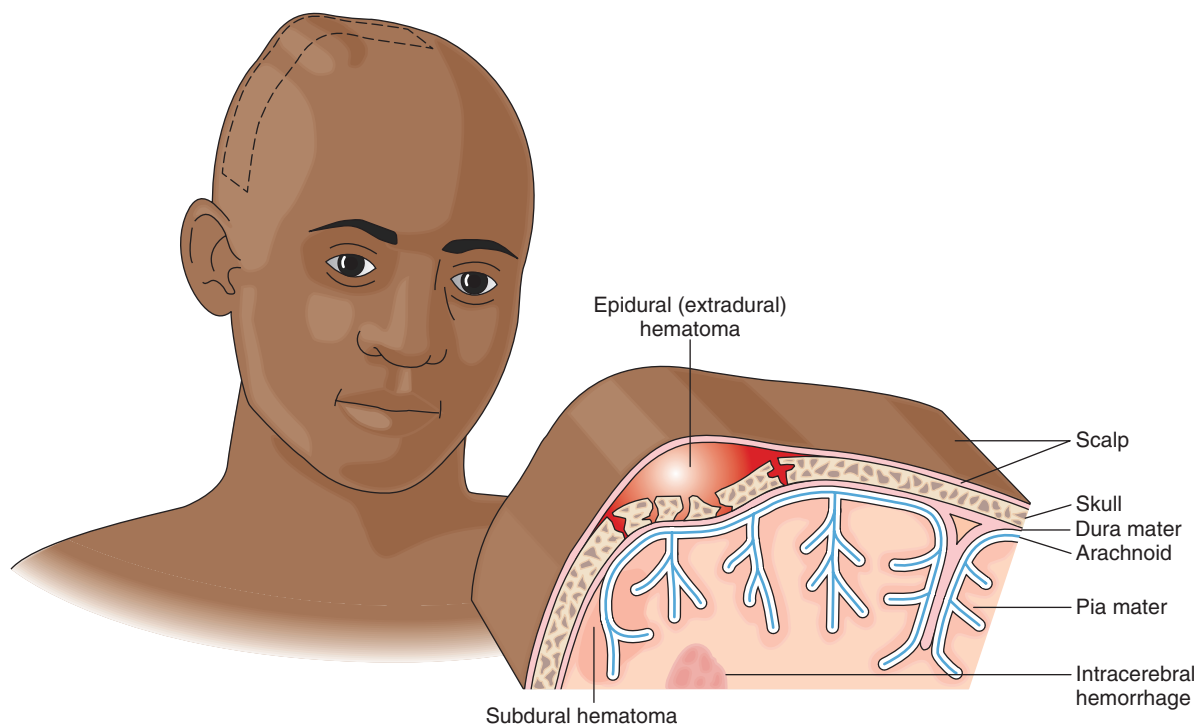


FIG. 47-8 Epidural hematoma (outside the dura mater of the brain), subdural hematoma (under the dura mater), and intracerebral hemorrhage (within the brain tissue).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After the initial interval, symptoms progress very quickly with potentially life-threatening ICP elevation and structural changes. Monitor the patient suspected of epidural bleeding frequently (every 5-10 minutes) for changes in neurologic status. The patient can become quickly and increasingly symptomatic and lose consciousness. *An epidural hematoma is a neurosurgical emergency!* Notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team immediately if these changes occur. Carefully document your assessments and the patient's overall condition.

A **subdural hematoma (SDH)** results from venous bleeding into the space beneath the dura and above the arachnoid (see Fig. 47-8). It occurs most often from a tearing of the bridging veins within the cerebral hemispheres or from a laceration of brain tissue. Bleeding from this injury occurs more slowly than from an epidural hematoma. SDHs are subdivided into acute, subacute, and chronic. An acute SDH presents within 48 hours after impact; the subacute SDH, between 48 hours and 2 weeks; and the chronic SDH, from 2 weeks to several months after injury. SDHs have the highest mortality rate because they often are unrecognized until the patient presents with severe neurologic compromise.

An intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH) is the accumulation of blood within the brain tissue caused by the tearing of small arteries and veins in the subcortical white matter (see Fig. 47-8). It often acts as a space-occupying lesion and may be potentially devastating, depending on its location. ICH may also produce significant brain edema and ICP elevations. A brainstem hemorrhage occurs as a result of direct trauma, fractures, or torsion injuries to the brainstem. Brainstem injuries have a very poor prognosis.

Hydrocephalus. Hydrocephalus is an abnormal increase in CSF volume. It may be caused by impaired reabsorption of CSF at the arachnoid villi (from subarachnoid hemorrhage or meningitis), called a **communicating hydrocephalus**. It may also be caused by interference or blockage with CSF outflow from the ventricular system (from cerebral edema, tumor, or debris). The ventricles may dilate from the relative increase in CSF volume. Ultimately, if not treated, this increase may lead to increased ICP.

Brain Herniation. In the presence of increased ICP, the brain tissue may shift and herniate downward. Of the several types of herniation syndromes (Fig. 47-9), uncal herniation is one of the most clinically significant because it is life threatening. It is caused by a shift of one or both areas of the temporal lobe, known as the **uncus**. This shift creates pressure on the third cranial nerve. Late findings include dilated and non-reactive pupils, ptosis (drooping eyelids), and a rapidly deteriorating level of consciousness. Central herniation is caused by a downward shift of the brainstem and the diencephalon from a supratentorial lesion. It is clinically manifested by Cheyne-Stokes respirations, pinpoint and nonreactive pupils, and potential hemodynamic instability. All herniation syndromes are potentially life threatening, and the physician must be notified immediately when they are suspected.

Etiology

The most common causes of traumatic brain injury (TBI) in the United States are falls and motor vehicle crashes. In many cases, alcohol and drugs are contributing factors to the event. Acts of violence and sports-related injuries are the next most common causes. The United States is seeing increasing numbers of survivors of head injury from wartime blast injuries. Preventive measures to avoid TBI have also been developed.

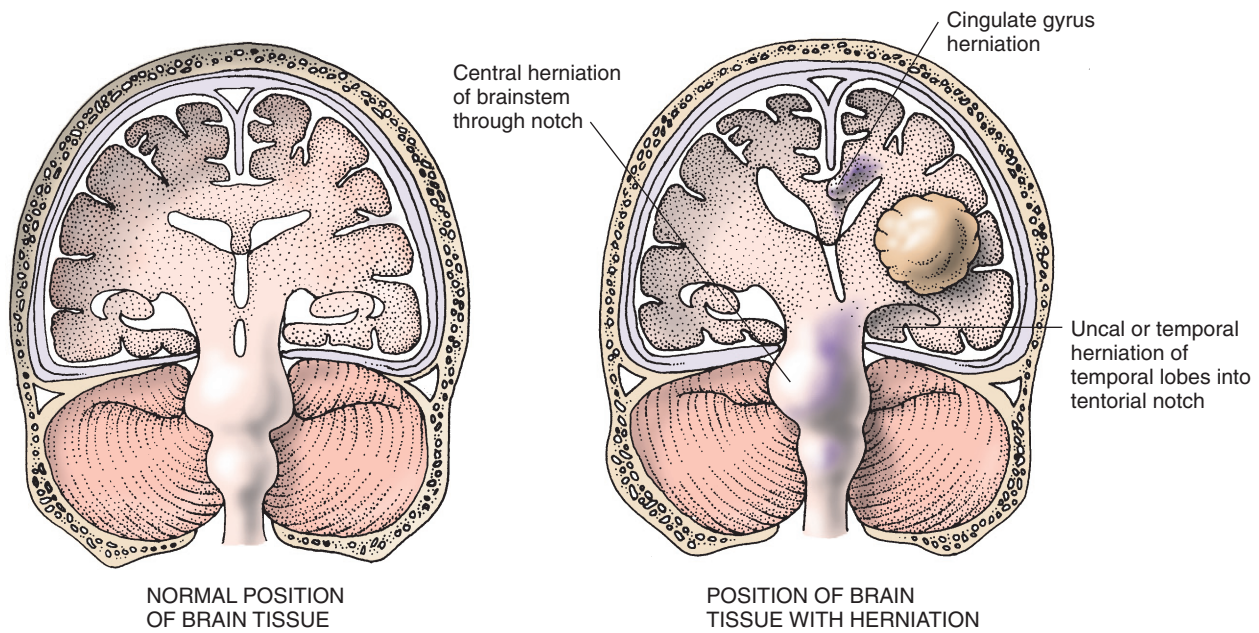


FIG. 47-9 Herniation syndromes.

Incidence/Prevalence

Each year over a million people in the United States have some type of TBI. Of these, many require hospitalization and some die. Summer and spring months, evenings, nights, and weekends are associated with the greatest number of injuries. Young males are more likely than young females to have a TBI. Men tend to play more sports, take more risks when driving, and consume larger amounts of alcohol than women. Falls occur most often in older adults, especially older women who have osteoporosis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Prevention of falls is particularly important, especially for older adults. People need to be aware of environmental factors that may increase the likelihood of falls such as throw rugs and inadequate lighting. When possible, they should have safety equipment installed in bathtubs and showers. Remind them that balance and coordination may decrease as a result of aging.

Nurses should educate the public on ways to decrease the incidence of TBI by using safe practices such as wearing seat belts. Helmets should be used for skateboarding and bicycle and motorcycle riding. Teach the importance of following driving laws to avoid speeding and other violations.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Obtaining an accurate history from a patient who has sustained a TBI may be difficult because of either the seriousness of the injury or the presence of **amnesia** (loss of memory). It is not unusual for the patient to experience amnesia for the events before or after the injury. The patient with a serious head injury is often admitted to the hospital unconscious or in a confused and combative state. If the patient cannot

provide information, the history can be obtained from first responders or witnesses to the injury. Always ask when, where, and how the injury occurred. Did the patient lose consciousness; if so, for how long? Has there been a change in the level of consciousness (LOC)? If trauma is related to drug or alcohol consumption, it may be difficult to differentiate neurologic changes from head trauma from those produced by intoxication.

Obtain as much information about the events as possible immediately after the injury. Patients with a severe injury may have several different presentations. The patient may be completely unresponsive after the injury. Or, the patient may first be responsive and neurologically deteriorate rapidly within a few minutes to several hours. In another typical presentation, the patient is unconscious for a few minutes as a result of the primary brain injury, returns to a normal level of consciousness, and then rapidly deteriorates from secondary insult to the brain.

Determine whether the patient had any seizure activity before or after the injury and whether there is a history of a seizure disorder. Obtain precise information about the circumstances of falls, particularly in the older patient (**Chart 47-8**). Other pertinent information includes hand dominance, any diseases of or injuries to the eyes, and any allergies to drugs or food, particularly seafood. People allergic to seafood are often allergic to the IV contrast media used in diagnostic tests. Inquire about a history of alcohol or drug use and abuse because these substances may mask the symptoms of increased ICP. The Joint Commission and the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) require that all patients be screened for abuse and neglect when they are admitted to any type of health care facility.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

No two injuries are alike. The patient with a TBI may have a variety of manifestations depending on the severity of injury and the resulting increase in intracranial pressure (ICP) (see **Chart 47-6**). Underlying neurologic problems may

CHART 47-8 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Head Injury

- Head injury is the fifth leading cause of death in older adults.
- The 65- to 75-year age-group has second highest incidence of head injury of all age-groups.
- Falls and motor vehicle crashes are the most common causes of head injury.
- Factors that contribute to high mortality are:
 - Falls causing subdural hematomas (closed head injuries), especially chronic subdural hematomas
 - Poorly tolerated systemic stress, which is increased by admission to a high-stimuli environment
 - Medical complications, such as hypotension, hypertension, and cardiac problems
 - Decreased protective mechanisms, which make patients susceptible to infections (especially pneumonia)
 - Decreased immunologic competence, which is further diminished by head injury

be masked by drugs or alcohol. Assess for signs of increased ICP, including hypotension, hypoxemia (decreased blood level of oxygen), or **hypercapnia** (increased blood level of carbon dioxide). The early detection of subtle changes in the patient's neurologic status enables the health care team to prevent or treat potentially life-threatening complications.

Airway and Breathing Pattern Assessment. *The first priority is the assessment of the patient's ABCs—airway, breathing, and circulation.* Because TBI is associated with cervical spinal cord injuries, all patients with head trauma are treated as though they have cord injury until x-ray studies prove otherwise. *Older adults are especially prone to cervical injuries at the first or second vertebral level, a life-threatening problem.* Assess for indicators of spinal cord injury, such as loss of motor and sensory function, tenderness along the spine, and abnormal head tilt.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The upper cervical spinal nerves innervate the diaphragm to control breathing. Monitor TBI patients for respiratory problems and diaphragmatic breathing, as well as diminished or absent reflexes. Although hypoxia and hypercapnia are best detected through SaO_2 and end-tidal volume carbon dioxide measurement, observe chest wall movement and listen to breath sounds. Report any sign of respiratory problems immediately to the physician!

In some cases, an endotracheal tube is inserted for mechanical ventilation. Injuries to the brainstem may cause a change in the patient's breathing pattern, such as Cheyne-Stokes respirations, central neurogenic hyperventilation, and/or apnea.

Vital Signs Assessment. The mechanisms of autoregulation are often impaired as the result of a TBI. The more serious the injury, the more severe is the impact on autoregulation. Monitor the patient's blood pressure and pulse to detect possible changes in cerebral blood flow. The patient may have hypotension or hypertension. **Cushing's triad**, a classic but late sign of increased ICP, is manifested by severe hypertension with a widened pulse pressure and bradycardia.

As ICP increases, the pulse becomes thready, irregular, and rapid. Cerebral blood flow increases in response to hypertension. Vasogenic edema may occur, further increasing ICP.

Hypotension and tachycardia suggest hypovolemic shock. This decrease in blood volume may lead to decreased cerebral perfusion pressure and eventually to ischemia and infarction of the brain tissue. Hypovolemic shock is usually due to intra-abdominal bleeding or bleeding into the soft tissue around major fractures—not to intracranial bleeding. Cardiac dysrhythmias may result from chest trauma, bruising of the heart, or interference with the autonomic nervous system. They may also result from severe ICP elevations and brainstem pressure.

Neurologic Assessment. Many hospitals use the Glasgow Coma Scale or other assessment tool to document neurologic status (see Fig. 43-10 in Chapter 43). *The most important variable to assess is LOC!* A decrease or change in LOC is typically the first sign of deterioration in neurologic status. Changes in consciousness or orientation are due to injury to the cerebral cortex and may also involve damage to the reticular formation. A decrease in arousal or increased sleepiness and coma are caused by pressure on the reticular activating system within the brainstem. *Early indicators of a change in LOC include behavior changes (e.g., restlessness, irritability) and disorientation, which are often subtle in nature.*

Ask about previous eye injury or drugs that affect pupillary dilation and constriction, such as anticholinergics and adrenergics.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Check pupils of TBI patients for size and reaction to light. Report and document any changes in pupil size, shape, and reactivity to the health care provider immediately because they could indicate an increase in ICP.

Pupillary changes or eye signs differ depending on which areas of the brain are damaged. *Pinpoint and nonresponsive pupils are indicative of brainstem dysfunction at the level of the pons.* Of particular importance is the **ovoid pupil**, which is regarded as the midstage between a normal-size pupil and a dilated pupil. In some agencies, a portable automated pupillometer is used to measure pupil size and reaction rather than manual examination.

Asymmetric (uneven) pupils, loss of light reaction, or unilateral or bilateral dilated pupils are treated as herniation of the brain from increased ICP until proven differently. *Pupils that are fixed (nonreactive) and dilated are a poor prognostic sign, resulting from a marked increase in ICP. Patients with this problem are sometimes referred to as having "blown" pupils.*

Check gross vision if the patient's condition permits. Have the patient read any printed material (e.g., your name tag) or count the number of fingers that you hold within the patient's visual field. Loss of vision is usually caused by injury to the occipital lobe, which produces temporary cortical blindness.

If the patient can participate, the health care provider or neurosurgical nurse tests *cranial nerves* (CNs) III, IV, and VI. Extraocular movements may be diminished because of increased ICP and hydrocephalus. Damage to the

optic chiasm or optic tract may cause visual-field deficits or **diplopia** (double vision). In the unconscious patient, additional oculocephalic and oculovestibular tests are performed to test the integrity of the brainstem and of CNs III, VI, and VII.

Monitor for additional late signs of increased ICP. These manifestations include severe headache, nausea, vomiting (often projectile), seizures, and papilledema (seen by ophthalmoscopic examination). **Papilledema**, also known as a **choked disc**, is edema and hyperemia (increased blood flow) of the optic disc. It is always a sign of increased ICP. Headache and seizures are a response to the injury and may or may not be associated with increased ICP. Always remember that the patient with a head injury is at risk for potentially devastating ICP elevations hours or a few days after the event!

Assess for bilateral motor responses. The patient's motor loss or dysfunction usually appears contralateral (opposite side) to the site of the lesion, similar to a stroke. For example, a left-sided hemiparesis reflects an injury to the right cerebral hemisphere. A deterioration in motor function or the development of abnormal posturing (**decerebrate** or **decorticate posturing**) or flaccidity is another indicator of increased ICP (see Fig. 43-11 in Chapter 43). These changes are due to dysfunction within the pyramidal (motor) tracts of the spinal cord. Assess for brainstem or cerebellar injury, which may cause **ataxia** (loss of balance), decreased or increased muscle tone, and weakness. Remember that changes in motor function may also be an indicator of a spinal cord injury.

Carefully observe the patient's ears and nose for any signs of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leaks that result from a basilar skull fracture. CSF placed on a white absorbent background can be distinguished from other fluids by the "halo" sign, a yellowish stain surrounded by bloody drainage. If it is present, it tests positive for glucose when a strip testing method (dipstick) is used. However, this method of determining a CSF leak is not always reliable. If there is a CSF leak, assess for **nuchal rigidity** (stiff neck), which may indicate infection or blood in the CSF. Nuchal rigidity is not checked until a spinal cord injury has been ruled out.

Palpate the patient's head carefully to detect the presence of fractures or hematomas. Look for areas of ecchymosis (bruising), tender areas of the scalp, and lacerations.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

An alert and oriented client is admitted to the emergency department with a moderate head injury. Which assessment finding will the nurse report immediately to the health care provider?

- A. Headache
- B. Slight dizziness
- C. Fatigue
- D. Sudden drowsiness

Psychosocial Assessment

Patients with a mild head injury may still have symptoms of disability 1 year or longer after injury. Long-term effects are not common. The person who has had a moderate or severe head injury, however, is never the same as before the injury. These patients have varying degrees of personality changes manifested by temper outbursts, depression, risk-taking behavior, and denial of disability. They may become talkative

and develop a very outgoing personality. Memory, especially recent or short-term memory, is affected and should not be confused with problems of aphasia. The ability to learn new information and concentration may be affected. The patient may have problems with insight and planning. All these problems may lead to difficulties within the family structure and with social and work-related interactions. Assess coping strategies that have been used in the past to determine the patient's ability to adapt to the changes in physical and cognitive abilities.

Assess family dynamics, particularly if the patient is discharged to the family's care directly from the acute care hospital. The family or significant others must also cope with changes in the patient's physical appearance and cognitive abilities. Many families become angry with the patient for being injured, especially when his or her behavior or their own behavior resulted in an injury that could have been prevented. They may feel guilty that they did not or were not able to prevent the injury. The family or significant others may feel overwhelmed by the complexity of care required and the long recovery period. Help both the family and the patient develop coping strategies to deal with the potential role reversals and role changes caused by the injury.

Laboratory Assessment

There are no laboratory tests to diagnose a primary brain injury. However, several laboratory tests are used to diagnose or indicate measures to prevent secondary brain insult. The health care provider requests arterial blood gases, complete blood count (CBC), and serum glucose and electrolyte levels. These tests are performed to monitor hemodynamic status, identify electrolyte imbalance, and detect infection. Severe electrolyte imbalances can also contribute to secondary injury, as well as increase the risk for seizures. A toxicology screen and an electrocardiogram (ECG) are often requested.

Imaging Assessment

The health care provider immediately requests computed tomography (CT) scanning to identify the extent and scope of injury to the brain. This diagnostic test can identify the presence of a lesion that requires surgical intervention, such as an epidural or subdural hematoma. Radiography and CT scanning of the cervical spine and the skull are done to rule out fractures and dislocations. A chest x-ray is done to identify fractured ribs or other chest injuries. An abdominal ultrasound or CT may be obtained to assist in the diagnosis of abdominal bleeding or bowel laceration.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is particularly useful in the diagnosis of diffuse axonal injury, but it is not recommended for patients with ICP or other invasive monitoring devices.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

As the patient's condition stabilizes, the physician may request other diagnostic tests to identify the extent of injury to the brain. For example, the integrity of the cerebral vessels is measured through the use of Doppler flow studies or an arteriogram. Cerebral perfusion is measured by cerebral blood flow studies. Evoked potentials provide information on the functioning sensory pathways and may be useful in predicting outcome.

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with a *severe* head injury is admitted to the critical care unit or a trauma center. Patients with *moderate* head injuries are admitted to either the general nursing unit or the critical care unit, where they are closely observed for at least 24 hours. Those with *mild* TBI may possibly be sent home from the emergency department with instructions.

Nonsurgical Management

As with any critically injured patient, priority is given to maintaining a patent airway, breathing, and circulation. Specific nursing interventions for the patient with a head injury are directed toward preventing or detecting increased ICP, promoting fluid and electrolyte balance, and monitoring the effects of treatments and drug therapy. Providing health teaching and emotional support for the patient and family is a vital part of the plan of care.

Preventing and Detecting ICP. Take and record the patient's *vital signs* every 1 to 2 hours or more often based on patient acuity. The health care provider may prescribe drug therapy to prevent severe hypertension or hypotension. The patient in the critical care unit is connected to a cardiac monitor to detect any cardiac dysrhythmias. Nonspecific ST-segment or T-wave changes may occur, possibly in response to stimulation of the autonomic nervous system or an increase in the level of circulating catecholamines such as epinephrine. Document and report cardiac irregularities to the health care provider.

The patient with a head injury is often admitted with a fever—a defense mechanism in the presence of trauma or an indication of inflammatory response. Fever as a consequence of infection may develop later in the course of the disease. A third cause of fever is a central fever caused by hypothalamic damage. It is manifested by an absence of sweating and no diurnal (night and day) variation. This type of fever is high and lasts several days to weeks. In addition, it responds better to cooling (e.g., hypothermia blanket, sponge bath) than to the administration of antipyretic drugs such as acetaminophen (Tylenol, Ace-Tabs ). *Fever from any cause is associated with higher morbidity and mortality rates.*

Prophylactic *hyperventilation* during the first 20 hours after injury is usually avoided because it may produce ischemia by causing cerebral vasoconstriction. The result is a decrease in cerebral blood volume and ICP. In acute neurologic deterioration, however, it may be used for brief periods of ICP elevations.

The patient who requires mechanical breathing assistance is ventilated to maintain a partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (P_{aCO_2}) of about 35 to 38 mm Hg. One major outcome is to prevent increased carbon dioxide. *Carbon dioxide is a very potent vasodilator that can contribute to increases in ICP. Arterial oxygen levels (P_{aO_2}) are maintained between 80 and 100 mm Hg to prevent cerebral vasodilation resulting from hypoxemia. Monitor arterial blood gas values at least twice daily and after each change in the ventilator setting.*

Pulmonary secretions tend to pool as the result of a decreased LOC, ineffective cough, or altered breathing pattern. The secretions may be thick because of the diuretics or fluid intake restriction that may be used to prevent cerebral edema. Collaborate with the respiratory therapist to provide chest physiotherapy as needed based on patient assessment. Pay close attention to the ICP response.

Carefully observe the patient with increased ICP when suctioned. If the patient is intubated, manually hyperventilate him or her with 100% oxygen before each pass of the catheter. Overly aggressive hyperventilation with endotracheal suctioning may be dangerous, though, because of the cerebral vasoconstriction caused by even transient hypocapnia (low arterial carbon dioxide levels). This may increase the risk for cerebral ischemia as a secondary event. Allow the patient to rest a few minutes after suctioning to prevent increased ICP. Lidocaine given IV or endotracheally may be used to suppress the cough reflex; coughing increases ICP.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Position the TBI patient to avoid extreme flexion or extension of the neck and to maintain the head in the midline, neutral position. Log roll the patient during turning to avoid extreme hip flexion, and keep the head of the bed elevated at least 30 degrees or as recommended by the health care provider.

Head positioning should be based on both intracranial pressure (ICP) and systemic blood pressure. If increasing head elevation lowers ICP but also significantly lowers systemic blood pressure, the patient does not benefit and may actually be harmed. Base head elevation on cerebral perfusion pressure when possible. Carefully position the head of the bed in the older patient. The dura is tightly adhered to the skull and may pull away from the brain, leading to a subdural hematoma.

Patients with *severe* TBI often die. As the deterioration begins, keep in mind that the patient may be a potential organ donor. *Before* brain death is declared, contact the local organ procurement organization. Determine if the patient consented to be an organ donor. This information is typically on a driver's license or other state-issued card or advance directive. The patient's wishes should be followed unless he or she has a medical condition that prevents organ donation. The physician discusses the severity of the patient's condition and the possibility of organ donation with the family. Some families may not agree with the patient's decision, which can cause an ethical dilemma. Health care agencies have ethics committees that can help with these situations.

Determining Brain Death. In 2010, the American Academy of Neurology guidelines for determining brain death were updated. Four prerequisites must be met to establish a brain death diagnosis (Wijdicks et al., 2010):

- Coma of known cause as established by history, clinical examination, laboratory testing, and neuroimaging
- Normal or near-normal core body temperature (higher than 36° C)
- Normal systolic blood pressure (higher than or equal to 100 mm Hg)
- At least one neurologic examination (some states and health care systems require two)

No consensus has been reached on who is qualified to perform head-to-toe brain death neurologic examinations, but neurologists and critical care intensivists typically do them. Neuroimaging tests are not required to confirm brain death but are desirable. Example of tests that may be done include cerebral angiography, bedside electroencephalography (EEG), and cerebral computed tomographic angiography. There is

no evidence that new tests like cerebral MRI are better at determining death and may cause a risk for bias in identifying death (Hills, 2010).

Drug Therapy. *Glucocorticoids* (dexamethasone [Decadron, Dexasone] and methylprednisolone sodium succinate [Solu-Medrol, Medrol]) have no benefit in the management of increased ICP as a result of head injury or cerebral infarction. Instead, mannitol (Osmitol), an osmotic diuretic, is used to treat cerebral edema by pulling water out of the extracellular space of the edematous brain tissue. It is most effective when given in boluses rather than as a continuous infusion. Furosemide (Lasix), a loop diuretic, is often used as adjunctive therapy to reduce the incidence of rebound from mannitol. It also enhances the therapeutic action of mannitol, reduces edema and blood volume, decreases sodium uptake by the brain, and decreases the production of CSF at the choroid plexus.

Administer *mannitol* through a filter in the IV tubing or, if given by IV push, draw it up through a filtered needle to eliminate microscopic crystals. For the patient receiving either osmotic or loop diuretics, monitor for intake and output, severe dehydration, and indications of acute renal failure, weakness, edema, and changes in urine output. Serum electrolyte and osmolality levels are measured every 6 hours. Mannitol is used to obtain a serum osmolality of 310 to 320 mOsm/L, depending on physician preference and the desired outcome of therapy. Insert an indwelling urinary catheter to maintain strict measurement of output. Check the patient's serum and urine osmolality daily.

Opioids such as morphine sulfate or fentanyl may be used with ventilated patients to decrease agitation and control restlessness if the agitation is caused by pain. Fentanyl has fewer effects on blood pressure and heart rate than morphine and may therefore be a safer agent to manage pain. These agents may be reversed with naloxone (Narcan), but opioid reversal should be avoided if at all possible to reduce risk for withdrawal and rebound pain and agitation. Sedatives such as lorazepam (Ativan) and midazolam (Versed) may be used for anxiety to promote comfort and treat agitation. Sedatives and opioids may mask the neurologic assessment and potentially lower blood pressure. Therefore they should be administered in small incremental doses to a predetermined endpoint with close assessment of hemodynamic stability and neurologic status.

Antiepileptic drugs, such as phenytoin (Dilantin), to prevent seizures that occur initially more than 7 days (**late-onset seizures**) after injury are not recommended. However, they may be recommended as an option to prevent seizure activity that may occur within 7 days after injury (**early-onset seizures**). Acetaminophen (Tylenol, Ace-Tabs ♣) and aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid [ASA], Ancasal ♣) are given to patients who are febrile (temperature greater than 101° F [38.3° C]) to reduce fever.

Inducing Barbiturate Coma. *Barbiturate coma* (coma induced by barbiturates) has been used for intracranial hypertension (increased ICP) that cannot be controlled by other means. Either pentobarbital sodium (Nembutal, Novopentobarb ♣) or thiopentone is the drug of choice. These drugs decrease the metabolic demands of the brain and cerebral blood flow, stabilize cell membranes, decrease the formation of vasogenic edema, and produce a more uniform blood supply. The health care provider adjusts the dosage to

maintain complete unresponsiveness. As a consequence, it is difficult to recognize subtle or obvious neurologic changes. The patient requires mechanical ventilation, sophisticated hemodynamic monitoring, and ICP monitoring. Complications of barbiturate coma include decreased GI motility, cardiac dysrhythmias from hypokalemia, hypotension, and fluctuations in body temperature.

Maintaining Fluid and Electrolyte Management. The patient with TBI is at risk for diabetes insipidus (DI) and the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) because the pituitary gland may be injured or compressed from cerebral edema (see Chapter 65). In the patient with multiple trauma, fluid overload can occur and cerebral edema can worsen from the rapid administration of IV fluids or plasma expanders. Fluid management may be titrated to optimize volume resuscitation but minimize brain swelling and ICP elevation. ICP is also influenced by the response to diuretic therapy and laboratory values. Check urine specific gravity every 1 to 4 hours. Monitor serum and urine osmolality and electrolytes at least daily.

Managing Nutritional Status. The patient with a *major* head injury after the acute phase of management may have changes in these areas:

- Sense of smell
- Ability to taste, swallow, or feel the presence of food within the oral cavity
- Vision, pain, and temperature sensation

As a result, he or she is at risk for nutritional deficits that may interfere with the healing process.

The patient who is moderately to severely injured usually has a decreased LOC, at least temporarily. As a result, the patient cannot chew or swallow and must receive nutrition and fluids by other methods. If LOC does not improve, long-term nutritional support by enteral feeding is used. A small-lumen nasogastric or nasoduodenal tube or a percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tube is inserted for continuous or intermittent feeding. Small-bore tubes decrease the risk for aspiration in a patient who is at high risk. For care of the patient receiving enteral feeding, see Chapter 63.

With the use of either type of tube, be sure that unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) weigh the patient daily. Collaborate with the dietitian to determine whether caloric needs are being met. Monitor serum prealbumin levels to assess adequacy of protein intake. Assess the patient daily for signs of dehydration, such as dry mucous membranes and weight loss.

For the patient who can take food and fluids by mouth, ensure that mealtime is a pleasant experience. Position the patient to maximize swallowing ability. The speech-language pathologist (SLP) identifies strategies to prevent food from accumulating in the cheek of the affected side. In general, patients who have swallowing problems can tolerate or swallow soft or semisoft foods and liquids (mechanical soft or dental diet, junior baby foods, custards, scrambled eggs) better than thin liquids (water, juice, milk). Powdered thickener (e.g., Thick-It) may be added to thicken foods for better consistency. Supplements such as milkshakes and commercial products may be needed to meet the patient's caloric and protein requirements. Collaborate with the dietitian and SLP to create a nutritional plan appropriate for the patient with dysphagia.

Managing Sensory, Cognitive, and Behavioral Changes. If a large lesion of the parietal lobe is present, the patient may

experience a loss of sensation for pain, temperature, touch, and proprioception (position sense), which prevents an appropriate response to environmental stimuli. A hazard-free environment is necessary to prevent injury (e.g., from burns if the patient's coffee is too hot). In collaboration with the rehabilitation therapist, integrate a sensory stimulation program into the comatose or stuporous patient's routine care activities. Sensory stimulation is done to facilitate a meaningful response to the environment. Present visual, auditory, or tactile stimuli one at a time, and explain the purpose and the type of stimulus presented. For example, show a picture of the patient's mother and say, "This is a picture of your mother." The picture is shown several times, and the same words are used to describe the picture. If auditory tapes or DVDs are used, they should be no longer than 10 to 15 minutes. If the stimulus is presented for a longer period, it simply becomes "white" noise, or meaningless background noise.

Patients with a milder injury may be disoriented and have a short-term memory loss. Always introduce yourself before any interaction. Keep explanations of procedures and activities short and simple, and give them immediately before and throughout patient care. To the extent possible, maintain a sleep-wake cycle with scheduled rest periods. Orient the patient to time (day, month, and year) and place, and explain the reason for the hospitalization. Reassure the patient that he or she is safe. Ask the family to bring in familiar objects, such as pictures. Provide orientation cues within the environment, such as a large clock with numbers or a single-date calendar.

An overwhelming majority of brain injury survivors have cognitive impairments, or thinking problems. Cognitive impairments interfere with the brain-injured patient's ability

to function effectively in school, at work, and in his or her personal life. *Cognitive rehabilitation* is a way of helping brain-injured patients regain function in areas that are essential for a return to independence and a reasonable quality of life. However, these services are not widely available or accessible.

The patient is at risk for seizure activity. Keep the bed in low position with the siderails up. Use alternatives to restraints first, according to hospital policy. For example, covering the patient's IV site may prevent dislodgment. Keeping the patient's hands busy with activity pillows or puzzles accomplishes the same purpose.

Apply hand mittens if these measures are not successful and the patient attempts to pull out the IV line, nasogastric tube, or endotracheal tube. Restraining any extremity increases agitation and fear. Be sure to follow the agency's policy for caring for patients in restraints, if needed. Release hand mitten restraints every 2 hours, perform passive range of motion, and wash the patient's hands. If the patient is able, assist with toileting and provide water.

Orient the patient to the surroundings as needed, and provide a quiet environment. Closely monitor the patient's response to television programs or the radio. Often he or she cannot distinguish the programs from what is happening within his or her own environment.

Surgical Management

The physician may elect to insert an intracranial pressure (ICP) monitoring device, using minimally invasive surgery (MIS), to evaluate the patient's ICP more closely (Table 47-5). All devices are inserted through a *burr hole* (also known as a *keyhole craniotomy*). Each device is connected to an electronic transducer that converts ICP to electronic impulses and

TABLE 47-5 ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF INTRACRANIAL PRESSURE MONITORING DEVICES

MONITORING DEVICE	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Intraventricular catheter (IVC)	- Allows accurate measurement of intracranial pressure (ICP) - Allows drainage or sampling of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) - Allows instillation of contrast media - Provides reliable evaluation of cerebral compliance	- Provides additional site for potential infection - Most invasive method for monitoring ICP - Must be balanced and recalibrated frequently - Catheter can become occluded by blood or tissue - Insertion can be difficult with small or collapsed ventricles - CSF leakage can occur around insertion site
Subarachnoid bolt or screw	- Lower infection rates than with IVC - Quickly and easily placed - Can be used with small or collapsed ventricles - Does not penetrate brain parenchyma	- Tendency for dampened waveform - Less accurate at high ICP - May become occluded by blood or tissue - Must be balanced and recalibrated frequently (i.e., every 4 hr and whenever patient is repositioned) - Baseline drift - Does not provide for CSF sampling
Subdural/epidural catheter or sensor	- Least invasive - Decreased risk for infection - Easily and quickly placed	- Increasing baseline drift over time; therefore accuracy and reliability are questionable - Does not provide for CSF sampling or drainage
Fiberoptic transducer-tipped catheter	- Can be placed in subdural or subarachnoid space, in ventricle, or into brain tissue - Easily transported - Requires calibrating only once (during insertion) - Baseline drift to 1 mm Hg/day - Decreased risk for infection - Less waveform artifact - No need to adjust transducer to patient's position - Easy to insert	- Does not provide for CSF sampling or drainage - Cannot be recalibrated after placement - Probe needs periodic replacement - Fragile fiberoptic cable easily damaged and broken

provides information that can be viewed using a monitor at the patient's bedside. The monitor can record the pressure waves and provide a digital readout of the pressure. *Be sure to provide ongoing head-to-toe assessments even though the patient's ICP is being invasively monitored!*

In extreme cases in which the patient's ICP cannot be controlled, the physician may elect to perform a **craniotomy** (incision into the cranium) to remove ischemic tissue or the tips of the temporal lobes. The removal of nonvital brain tissue allows expansion of brain tissue without further increasing ICP. A craniotomy may also be performed to remove epidural or subdural hematomas. Care of the patient with a craniotomy is discussed on p. 1034 under Postoperative Care in the Brain Tumors section.

Community-Based Care

The patient with a *minor* or *moderate* head injury recovers at home after discharge from the emergency department (ED) or hospital (**Chart 47-9**). The patient with a *major* head injury requires long-term case management and ongoing rehabilitation after hospitalization. A number of specialized head injury rehabilitation facilities are available in the United States and Canada. Communicate the patient's plan of care, including drug therapy (reconciliation), to the nurse in the rehabilitation facility to ensure continuity of care (per The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals).

Home Care Management

The major desired outcome for rehabilitation after head injury is to maximize the patient's ability to return to his or her highest level of functioning. Activities such as

occupational therapy (OT), physical therapy (PT), and speech-language therapy may continue in the home after discharge from the rehabilitation facility. Adaptation of the home environment to accommodate the patient safely may be needed. For example, smoke and fire alarms must function properly because the patient with a head injury often loses the sense of smell. This information can be obtained from the admission data or by a home visit. Home adaptations and referrals to outside agencies are completed before discharge.

Teaching for Self-Management

Collaborate with the case manager (CM) to provide the patient and family with both written and verbal instructions for discharge. The teaching plan includes a review of seizure precautions and strategies to adapt to sensory dysfunction. Discuss issues related to personality or behavior problems that may arise and how to cope with them. Explain the purpose, dosage, schedule, and route of administration of drug therapy. Teach the family to encourage the patient to participate in activities as tolerated. Demonstrations and return demonstrations of care activities help family members become more skillful. Stress the importance of regular follow-up visits with therapists and other health care providers.

Patients with personality and behavior problems respond best to a structured and consistent environment. Instruct the family to develop a home routine that provides structure, repetition, and consistency. Remind the family about the importance of reinforcing positive behaviors rather than negative behaviors.

CHART 47-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Minor Head Injury

- If the person is sleeping, wake him or her every 3 to 4 hours for the first 2 days, asking his or her name, where he or she is, and the name of the caregiver.
- Expect the person to report headache, nausea, or dizziness for at least 24 hours. If these symptoms are severe or do not improve, contact the physician immediately or take the person back to the emergency department.
- For a headache, give acetaminophen (Tylenol) every 4 hours as needed.
- Avoid giving the person sedatives, sleeping pills, or alcoholic beverages for at least 24 hours unless the physician instructs otherwise.
- Do not allow the person to engage in strenuous activity for at least 48 hours.
- Do not allow nose blowing or ear cleaning for 48 hours.
- If any of these symptoms occur, take the person back to the emergency department immediately:
 - Blurred vision
 - Drainage from the ear or nose
 - Weakness
 - Slurred speech
 - Progressive sleepiness
 - Vomiting
 - Worsening headache
 - Unequal pupil size
- Keep follow-up appointments with the health care provider.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient who has sustained a *minor* head injury (e.g., a concussion) that **post-concussion syndrome** may occur. This syndrome is a group of clinical manifestations including, but not limited to:

- Personality changes
- Irritability
- Headaches
- Dizziness
- Restlessness
- Nervousness
- Insomnia
- Memory loss
- Depression

A few patients have post-concussion syndrome for weeks, months, or even years to the extent that it interferes with daily activities such as employment. The prolonged pattern is classified as post-trauma syndrome. The exact cause is not known.

Most patients with *moderate to severe* TBI are discharged with varied physical and cognitive disabilities. Changes in personality and behavior are very common. The family must learn to cope with the patient's increased fatigue, irritability, temper outbursts, depression, and memory problems. These patients often require constant supervision at home, and families may feel socially isolated. Teach the family about the importance of regular respite care, either in a structured day-care respite program or through relief provided by a friend or neighbor. Family members, particularly the primary caregiver, may become depressed and have feelings of loneliness.

In addition, they may feel angry with the patient because of the additional responsibilities (financial and emotional) that his or her care has placed on them. To help the family cope with these problems, suggest that they join and actively participate in a local head injury support group.

Health Care Resources

Collaborate with the CM to refer families and patients to local chapters of the Brain Injury Association of America (BIAA) (www.biausa.org) and the National Brain Injury Foundation (NBIF) (www.nbif.org) for information and support. The BIAA has a number of helpful publications on preventing and living with TBI. Other resources include religious, spiritual, and cultural leaders.

BRAIN TUMORS

Brain tumors can arise anywhere within the brain structures and are named according to the cell or tissue where they are located; however, cerebral tumors are the most common. *Primary* tumors originate within the central nervous system (CNS) and rarely **metastasize** (spread) outside this area. *Secondary* brain tumors result from metastasis from other areas of the body, such as the lungs, breast, kidney, and GI tract.

Pathophysiology

Complications of Cerebral Tumors

Regardless of location, the tumor expands and invades, infiltrates, compresses, and displaces normal brain tissue. This leads to one or more of these problems:

- Cerebral edema/brain tissue inflammation
- Increased intracranial pressure (ICP)
- Neurologic deficits
- Hydrocephalus
- Pituitary dysfunction

Cerebral edema (vasogenic edema) results from changes in capillary endothelial tissue permeability that allow plasma to seep into the extracellular spaces. This leads to *increased ICP* and, depending on the location of the tumor, brain herniation syndromes. A variety of *neurologic deficits* result from edema, infiltration, distortion, and compression of surrounding brain tissue. The cerebral blood vessels may become compressed because of edema and increased ICP. This compression leads to ischemia (decreased blood flow) of the area supplied by the vessel. In addition, the tumor may enter the walls of the vessel, causing it to rupture and hemorrhage into the tumor bed or other brain tissue. Some patients who have brain tumors have seizure activity from interference with the brain's normal electrical activity.

Increased ICP may also result from *hydrocephalus* (increased cerebrospinal fluid [CSF]) related to obstruction of the flow of CSF or displacement of the lateral ventricles by the expanding lesion. Typically, a tumor obstructs the aqueduct of Sylvius or one of the ventricles or pushes into the subarachnoid space.

Pituitary dysfunction may occur as the tumor compresses the pituitary gland and causes the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) or diabetes insipidus (DI). These disorders result in severe fluid and electrolyte imbalances and can be life threatening. (See [Chapter 65](#) for a complete description.)

TABLE 47-6 CLASSIFICATION OF BRAIN TUMORS

Benign	Malignant
• Acoustic neuroma • Meningioma • Pituitary adenoma • Astrocytoma • Grade 1 (may undergo changes and become malignant) • Chondroma • Craniopharyngioma • Hemangioblastoma	• Astrocytoma • Grade 2 • Grade 3 • Grade 4 (also known as <i>glioblastoma multiforme</i>) • Oligodendroglioma • Ependymoma • Medulloblastoma • Chondrosarcoma • Glioma • Lymphoma

Classification of Tumors

Brain tumors are usually classified as benign, malignant (cancerous), or metastatic ([Table 47-6](#)). They may or may not be treated, depending on their location. Benign (non-cancerous) tumors are generally associated with a favorable outcome. Malignant or metastatic tumors require more aggressive intervention including surgery, radiation, and/or chemotherapy.

A second classification system is based on location. **Supratentorial** tumors are located within the cerebral hemispheres. Located beneath the tentorium (fold of dura mater) is the **infratentorial** area—the area of the brainstem structures and cerebellum.

A third classification system depends on the cellular or anatomic origins of the tumor. The nervous system is composed of two types of cells: (1) neurons, which are responsible for nerve impulse conduction; and (2) neuroglial cells, which provide support, nourishment, and protection for neurons. Four specific types of neuroglial cells are astrocytes, oligodendroglia, ependymal cells, and microglia. When classifying gliomas according to this system, tumors are named by their cell type. For example, an astrocytoma is a tumor of astrocytes. Gliomas are *malignant* tumors.

Meningiomas, the most common **benign** tumors, arise from the coverings of the brain (the meninges). This tumor is capsular, globular, and well outlined and causes compression and displacement of nearby brain tissue. Although complete removal of the tumor is possible, it tends to recur.

Pituitary tumors that occur in the anterior lobe account for up to one fourth of brain tumors and may cause endocrine dysfunction. The most common type of pituitary tumor is the adenoma. These tumors are *benign* and often occur in young and middle-aged adults. The presenting symptoms include visual disturbances and hypopituitary signs, such as loss of body hair, diabetes insipidus (DI), infertility, visual field defects, and headaches.

Acoustic neuromas arise from the sheath of Schwann cells in the peripheral portion of cranial nerve VIII. They are also referred to as *cerebellar pontine angle (CPA) tumors* to describe their anatomic location. Acoustic neuromas compress brain tissue and tend to surround nearby cranial nerves (VII, V, IX, X), making surgical removal difficult without causing permanent cranial nerve dysfunction. Women are twice as likely as men to have acoustic neuromas. Common symptoms include hearing loss, **tinnitus** (ringing in the ears), and dizziness or vertigo.

Metastatic, or secondary, tumors account for many brain tumors. Cancer cells from the lung, breast, colon, pancreas, and kidney can travel to the brain via the blood and the lymphatic system. Multiple metastatic lesions are fairly common.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The exact cause of brain tumors is unknown. Several areas under investigation include genetic mutations and a variety of environmental factors. The use of cellular phones has been investigated as a cause of brain tumors, but findings are not confirmed.

Incidence/Prevalence

Brain tumors account for a small percentage of all cancer deaths. Primary brain tumors are relatively uncommon; many more patients have metastatic lesions (Cahill & Armstrong, 2011). Malignant brain tumors are seen primarily in patients 40 to 70 years of age, and the survival rate is low compared with that of other cancers.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

When possible, obtain a history from both the patient and the family, including current signs and symptoms. A complete neurologic assessment is needed to establish baseline data and to determine the nature and extent of neurologic deficits.

The clinical manifestations of brain tumors vary with the site of the tumor (Chart 47-10). In general, assess for these symptoms of a brain tumor, which include:

- Headaches that are usually more severe on awakening in the morning
- Nausea and vomiting
- Visual symptoms
- Seizures

CHART 47-10 KEY FEATURES

Common Brain Tumors

Cerebral Tumors

- Headache (most common feature)
- Vomiting unrelated to food intake
- Changes in visual acuity and visual fields; diplopia (visual changes caused by papilledema)
- Hemiparesis or hemiplegia
- Hypokinesia (decreased motor ability)
- Hyperesthesia, paresthesia, decreased tactile discrimination
- Seizures
- Aphasia
- Changes in personality or behavior

Brainstem Tumors

- Hearing loss (acoustic neuroma)
- Facial pain and weakness
- Dysphagia, decreased gag reflex
- Nystagmus
- Hoarseness
- Ataxia and dysarthria (cerebellar tumors)

- Changes in mentation or personality
- **Papilledema** (swelling of the optic disc)

Neurologic deficits result from the destruction, distortion, or compression of brain tissue. *Supratentorial (cerebral)* tumors usually result in paralysis, seizures, memory loss, cognitive impairment, language impairment, or vision problems. *Infratentorial* tumors produce ataxia, autonomic nervous system dysfunction, vomiting, drooling, hearing loss, and vision impairment. As the tumor grows, ICP increases and the symptoms become progressively more severe.

Diagnosis is based on the history, neurologic assessment, clinical examination, and results of neurodiagnostic testing. Noninvasive diagnostic studies such as CT, MRI, and skull films are conducted first. These tests identify the size, location, and extent of the tumor. The MRI may be used for initial diagnostic evaluation and is a more sensitive diagnostic study, whereas the CT is often used for follow-up during the course of illness.

Cerebral angiography is usually not indicated to diagnose a brain tumor but may be used to provide additional information about blood supply to the tumor. Electroencephalography (EEG), lumbar puncture (LP), brain scan, and positron emission tomography (PET) may be indicated to provide further information about the size, location, and characteristics of the tumor. *To prevent brain herniation, LP should not be performed if the patient is exhibiting signs of ICP elevation.* Laboratory tests may also be requested to evaluate endocrine function, renal status, and electrolyte balance.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions depend on the type, size, and location of the tumor. For example, a small benign tumor may be periodically monitored through CT and MRI scanning to assess its growth. Malignant tumors may be managed by chemotherapy, radiation, and/or surgery.

Nonsurgical Management

The desired outcomes of treatment of brain tumors are to decrease tumor size, improve quality of life, and improve survival time. The type of treatment selected depends on the tumor size and location, patient symptoms and general condition, and whether the tumor has occurred again. In addition to traditional interventions, a number of experimental treatment modalities are being investigated. These include blood-brain barrier disruption, recombinant DNA, monoclonal antibodies, new chemotherapeutic drugs, and immunotherapy. For example, an antitenascin radioactive monoclonal antibody treatment (81C6) that is directly injected into the cavity where the tumor was removed is being investigated. The antibodies deliver radiation directly into the brain but are less potent than traditional radiation.

Traditional *radiation therapy* may be used alone, after surgery, or in combination with chemotherapy and surgery. Chapter 24 discusses radiation treatment for patients with cancer.

Drug Therapy. The health care provider may prescribe a variety of drugs to treat the tumor, manage the patient's symptoms, and prevent complications. *Chemotherapy* may be given alone, in combination with radiation and surgery, and with tumor progression. Although these drugs may control tumor growth or decrease tumor burden, the benefit does not

last. Chemotherapy usually involves more than one agent that may be given orally, IV, intra-arterially, and/or intrathecally through an Ommaya reservoir placed in a cranial ventricle. In electrochemotherapy, electric voltage carries agents into the tumor. When given systemically, the drug must be lipid-soluble to cross the blood-brain barrier.

Commonly used oral drugs are CCNU (lomustine), temozolomide (Temodar), procarbazine (Matulane), and methotrexate (MTX). Vincristine (Oncovin) may be given IV in combination with other drugs. Monitor for side effects of these drugs, which are similar to those of any chemotherapeutic drug. Chapter 24 describes general nursing implications for care of a patient receiving chemotherapy.

Direct drug delivery to the tumor is an emerging practice. Disk-shaped drug (Gliadel) wafers may be placed directly into the cavity created during surgical tumor removal (interstitial chemotherapy). The major drug in the wafer is BCNU (carmustine). This therapy is usually used for newly diagnosed high-grade malignant gliomas, but recurrent tumors may also be treated with this method. Other drugs used are molecularly targeted. Examples include erlotinib (Tarceva), gefitinib (Iressa), and bevacizumab (Avastin).

Analgesics, such as codeine and acetaminophen (Tylenol, Ace-Tabs), are given for headache. Dexamethasone (Decadron) is usually given to control cerebral edema. Glucocorticoids may be used for the treatment of edema resulting from brain tumors. Phenytoin (Dilantin) or other antiepileptic drugs may be given to prevent or treat seizure activity. Proton pump inhibitors such as IV or oral pantoprazole (Protonix) are given to decrease gastric acid secretion and prevent the development of stress ulcers.

Stereotactic Radiosurgery. Stereotactic radiosurgery (SRS) is an alternative to traditional surgery. Several techniques are used, including the modified linear accelerator (LINAC) using accelerated x-rays, a particle accelerator using beams of protons (cyclotron), and isotope seeds implanted in the tumor (brachytherapy). The gamma knife and CyberKnife are the newest treatments.

The gamma knife is a SRS procedure that uses a single high dose of ionized radiation to focus multiple beams of gamma radiation produced by the radioisotope *cobalt-60* to destroy intracranial lesions selectively without damaging surrounding healthy tissue (Fig. 47-10). Combining neurodiagnostic imaging tools—including MRI, CT, magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), and angiography—with the gamma knife allows for precise localization of deep-seated or anatomically difficult lesions. Treatment usually takes less than an hour, and patients require only overnight hospitalization. Advantages of this technique include its:

- Noninvasive nature
- Lower risk when compared with traditional craniotomy
- Surgical precision
- Decreased cost
- Decreased morbidity
- Decreased length of hospital stay
- Rapid recovery time

A disadvantage is that the device requires an uncomfortable rigid head frame. In another system called the *CyberKnife*, no frame is needed.

Both procedures are used primarily for brain tumors or arteriovenous malformations (AVMs) that are in a difficult

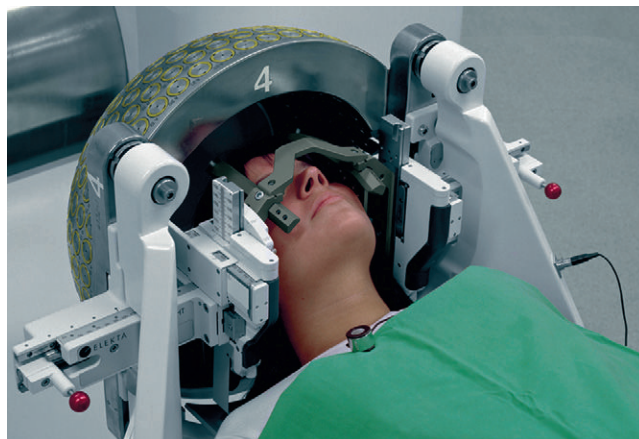


FIG. 47-10 A gamma knife treatment. The treatment beams are widely dispersed over the surface of the head to prevent damage to healthy brain tissue. The beams are intense only at the point of target.

location and therefore not removable by craniotomy. These procedures may also be used with patients who refuse conventional surgery, for patients whose age and physical condition do not allow general anesthesia, as an adjunct to radiation therapy, and for recurrent or residual AVM or tumors after embolization or craniotomy.

Surgical Management

Brain biopsy may be done to determine the specific pathology of the tumor. Then, a **craniotomy** (incision into the cranium) may be performed to improve symptoms related to the lesion or to decrease pressure from the tumor. The challenge for the neurosurgeon is to remove the tumor as completely as possible without damaging normal tissue. Complete removal is possible with some benign tumors, which results in a “surgical cure.” Postoperatively, the patient is admitted to the critical care unit.

Preoperative Care. The patient having a craniotomy is typically very anxious about having his or her head opened and the brain exposed. Concerns are centered on the possibility of increased neurologic deficits after the surgery and the patient’s self-image when part or all of the head is shaved. Provide reassurance that the surgeon will spare vital parts of the brain while removing or decreasing the size of the tumor. Teach the patient and family about what to expect immediately after surgery and throughout the recovery period. Some patients require short-term or long-term rehabilitation.

Check that the patient has not had alcohol, tobacco, anti-coagulants, or NSAIDs for at least 5 days before surgery. Some neurosurgeons require a week or longer. Be sure that the patient has been NPO status for at least 8 hours. Other preoperative care is similar to that for any patient having surgery, as described in Chapter 16.

Operative Procedures. Surgery is performed under local or general anesthesia or sedation. Small tumors that are easily located may be removed by *minimally invasive surgery (MIS)*. For example, the trans-nasal approach using endoscopy can be performed for pituitary tumors. The patient has a short hospital stay and few complications after surgery. Stereotactic surgery using a rigid head frame can be done for tumors that are easily reached. This procedure requires only burr holes

and local anesthesia because the brain has no sensory neurons for pain. Laser surgery can also be done.

For a *craniotomy*, the surgeon makes an incision along or behind the hairline after placing the patient's head in a skull fixation device. Several burr holes are drilled into the skull, and a saw is used to remove a piece of bone (bone flap) to expose the tumor area. The flap is stored carefully until the end of the procedure. The tumor is located using imaging technology and removed or debulked (decreased in size). After the tumor removal, the bone flap is replaced and held by small screws or bolts. A drain or monitoring device may be inserted. The surgeon creates a soft dressing "cap" over the top of the head to keep the surgical area clean.

Postoperative Care. The focus of postoperative care is to monitor the patient to detect changes in status and to prevent or minimize complications, especially increased intracranial pressure (ICP).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess neurologic and vital signs every 15 to 30 minutes for the first 4 to 6 hours after a craniotomy and then every hour. If the patient is stable for 24 hours, the frequency of these checks may be decreased to every 2 to 4 hours, depending on the agency's policy or the patient's condition. Report immediately and document new neurologic deficits, including a decreased level of consciousness (LOC), motor weakness or paralysis, aphasia (speech and/or language problems), visual changes, and personality changes!

Periorbital (around the eye) edema and ecchymosis of one or both eyes are not unusual and are treated with cold compresses to decrease swelling. Irrigate the affected eye with warm saline solution or artificial tears to improve patient comfort. If the patient is still recovering from anesthesia, has a decreased LOC, or may not be able to protect the airway, he or she may remain intubated and have controlled mechanical ventilation.

Providing Nursing Care. The patient in the critical care unit has routine cardiac monitoring because dysrhythmias may occur as a result of fluid and electrolyte imbalance. Ensure strict recording of the patient's intake and output and possible fluid restriction to 1500 mL daily if clinically indicated (e.g., pituitary complications). Teach unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to perform gentle range-of-motion exercises to all extremities at least every 2 to 3 hours. Delegate and supervise turning and deep breathing every 2 hours. To prevent the development of deep vein thrombosis, maintain sequential compression stockings or pneumatic compression boots until the patient ambulates.

For patients who have undergone *supratentorial* surgery, elevate the head of the bed 30 degrees or as tolerated to promote venous drainage from the head. *Position the patient to avoid extreme hip or neck flexion and maintain the head in a midline, neutral position to prevent increased ICP.* Turn the patient side to side or supine to prevent pressure ulcers and prevent pneumonia. If a large tumor has been removed, place the patient on the nonoperative side to prevent displacement of the cranial contents by gravity.

Keep the patient with an *infratentorial* (brainstem) craniotomy flat and positioned on either side for 24 to 48 hours. This position prevents pressure on the neck-area incision site.

It also prevents pressure on the internal tumor excision site from higher cerebral structures. Make sure that the patient remains NPO status for 24 hours, because edema around the medulla and lower cranial nerves may cause vomiting and aspiration.

Check the head dressing every 1 to 2 hours for signs of drainage. Mark the area of drainage once during each shift for baseline comparison, although this practice varies by health care agency. A small or moderate amount of drainage is expected. Some patients may have a Hemovac, Jackson-Pratt, or other surgical drain in place for 24 hours after surgery. Measure the drainage every 8 hours, and record the amount and color. A typical amount of drainage is 30 to 50 mL every 8 hours. Follow the manufacturer's and neurosurgeon's instructions to maintain suction within the drain.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After craniotomy, monitor the patient's dressing for excessive amounts of drainage. Report a saturated head dressing or drainage greater than 50 mL/8 hr immediately to the surgeon! Observe for manifestations of hypovolemic shock, and position the patient flat to maintain blood pressure if needed.

The usual laboratory studies monitored postoperatively include complete blood count (CBC), serum electrolyte levels and osmolarity, coagulation studies, and arterial blood gas (ABG) measurements. The patient's hematocrit and hemoglobin concentration may be abnormally low from blood loss during surgery or elevated if the blood was replaced. Hyponatremia (low serum sodium) may occur as a result of fluid volume overload, syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), or steroid administration.

Hypokalemia (low serum potassium) may cause cardiac irritability. Weakness, a change in LOC, and confusion are symptoms of hyponatremia and hypokalemia. Hypernatremia may be caused by meningitis, dehydration, or diabetes insipidus (DI). It is manifested by muscle weakness, restlessness, extreme thirst, and dry mouth. Additional signs of dehydration such as decreased urinary output, thickened lung secretions, and hypotension may be present. *Untreated hypernatremia can lead to seizure activity. DI should be considered if the patient voids large amounts of very dilute urine with an increasing serum osmolarity and electrolyte concentration.*

Often the patient is mechanically ventilated and hyperventilated for the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery to help prevent increased ICP and improve cerebral oxygen levels. The desired outcome of controlled ventilation is to keep the partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (Paco₂) at about 35 mm Hg, with normal arterial oxygen levels. This intervention is designed to avoid cerebral vasodilation from increased carbon dioxide with the resulting rise in ICP. If the patient is awake or attempting to breathe at a rate other than that set on the ventilator, drugs such as fentanyl citrate or midazolam (Versed) are given to treat pain and anxiety, as well as to promote rest and comfort. Suction the patient as needed. *Remember to hyperoxygenate the patient carefully before, during, and after suctioning!*

Drugs routinely given postoperatively include antiepileptic drugs, histamine blockers, proton pump inhibitors, and corticosteroids, such as dexamethasone (Decadron). Give

analgesics such as codeine for pain, and give acetaminophen for fever or mild pain. Some surgeons may elect to administer prophylactic antibiotics to prevent infection.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client returns from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) after a craniotomy for removal of a right frontal lobe tumor. How will the nurse position the client after surgery?

- A. Flex the client's knees to decrease intra-abdominal pressure.
- B. Keep the client on the right side to prevent surgical site bleeding.
- C. Elevate the client's head to at least 30 degrees to promote venous drainage.
- D. Log roll the client, and keep the head elevated at no more than 15 degrees.

Preventing and Managing Postoperative Complications. Postoperative complications are listed in Table 47-7. The major complication of supratentorial surgery is increased ICP from cerebral edema, hemorrhage, or obstruction of the normal flow of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF).

Symptoms of *increased ICP* include severe headache, deteriorating LOC, restlessness, irritability, and dilated or pinpoint pupils that are slow to react or nonreactive to light. Treatment of increased ICP is the same as that described on p. 1027 under Interventions in the Traumatic Brain Injury section.

Subdural and epidural *hematomas and intracranial hemorrhage* are manifested by severe headache, a rapid decrease in LOC, progressive neurologic deficits, and herniation syndromes (brain tissue shifting, often downward). Bleeding into the posterior fossa may lead to sudden cardiovascular and respiratory arrest. Treatment of a hematoma requires surgical removal. An intracranial hemorrhage is treated with aggressive medical management (e.g., osmotic diuretics, ICP monitoring).

Hydrocephalus (increased CSF in the brain) is caused by obstruction of the normal CSF pathway from edema, an expanding lesion such as a hematoma, or blood in the subarachnoid space. Rapidly progressive hydrocephalus produces the classic symptoms of increased ICP. Slowly progressive hydrocephalus is manifested by headache, decreased LOC, irritability, blurred vision, and urinary incontinence. An intraventricular catheter (**ventriculostomy**) may be placed as

an emergency procedure to drain CSF for rapidly deteriorating neurologic function. If long-term treatment is required for chronic hydrocephalus, a surgical shunt is inserted to drain CSF to another area of the body. A major complication of the shunting procedure is a subdural hematoma from the tearing of bridging veins. An external lumbar drain may also be used temporarily. Additional information about shunts may be found in neuroscience nursing textbooks.

Respiratory complications include atelectasis, pneumonia, and neurogenic pulmonary edema. Prevent atelectasis and pneumonia by turning the patient frequently and encouraging him or her to take frequent deep breaths to expand the lungs each hour. Humidified air and incentive spirometry are also useful techniques. Other treatment modalities include endotracheal or oral tracheal suctioning and chest physiotherapy. However, these measures may cause an increase in ICP.

Although not common, *neurogenic pulmonary edema* is a life-threatening complication of traumatic brain injury (TBI), brain tumors, and brain surgery. Its symptoms are the same as those of acute pulmonary edema, but there are no associated cardiac problems. In spite of aggressive treatment, most patients with neurogenic pulmonary edema do not survive.

Wound infections occur more often in older and debilitated patients and in patients with a history of diabetes, long-term steroid use, obesity, and previous infections. The patient may contribute to the problem by rubbing or scratching the wound. If infection is present, the wound appears reddened and puffy. It may begin to separate, is sensitive to touch, and feels warm. The patient may or may not be febrile. Treatment is based on the degree and extent of the infection. A localized infection may be treated by cleaning it with an antiseptic and applying local antibiotics. For more severe infections, systemic antibiotic administration is needed. If the underlying bone is involved, it may need to be removed.

Meningitis is an inflammation of the meninges and may occur as a result of surgery or wound infection, a cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leak, or contamination during surgery. (See the discussion of meningitis in Chapter 44 for a more complete explanation of this complication.)

Complications related to *fluid and electrolyte imbalance* include DI, SIADH, and cerebral salt wasting (CSW). DI is seen most often after supratentorial surgery, especially procedures involving the pituitary gland or hypothalamus. Failure of the posterior pituitary gland to release antidiuretic hormone (ADH) leads to failure of the renal tubules to reabsorb water. The patient's urine output increases dramatically (it may be up to 10 L/day), and the urine specific gravity drops to below 1.005. Urine osmolality decreases, whereas serum osmolality increases. The patient may become dehydrated, and hypovolemic shock may develop rapidly if this condition is left untreated. Fluid therapy to replace urinary losses and prevent dehydration may be accomplished by having the patient increase oral intake or use IV fluids. Hormonal replacement may also be necessary, especially if fluid loss is greater than 6 L/24 hr. Aqueous vasopressin is short-acting, lasting only 6 to 8 hours. Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP) may be administered for long-term replacement therapy.

Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) occurs when the posterior pituitary gland releases too much ADH, causing water retention. The urine output decreases dramatically, with a urine output of less than 20 mL/hr.

TABLE 47-7 POSTOPERATIVE COMPLICATIONS OF CRANIOTOMY

- Increased intracranial pressure (ICP) - Hematomas - Subdural hematoma - Epidural hematoma - Subarachnoid hemorrhage - Hypovolemic shock - Hydrocephalus - Respiratory complications - Atelectasis - Hypoxia - Pneumonia - Neurogenic pulmonary edema	- Wound infection - Meningitis - Fluid and electrolyte imbalances - Dehydration - Hyponatremia - Hypernatremia - Seizures - Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) leak - Cerebral edema
---	---

Sodium concentration in the urine is normal or elevated, whereas the serum sodium level falls. Other indications of SIADH are loss of thirst, weight gain, irritability, muscle weakness, and decreased LOC. SIADH is treated by fluid restriction, which is usually sufficient to correct the hyponatremia. Slow, controlled IV infusion of 3% hypertonic sodium may be needed for severe hyponatremia (<118 mEq/L).

Cerebral salt wasting (CSW) is thought to result from the influence of atrial natriuretic factor (ANF). ANF cells are located in the hypothalamus and the right atrium and regulate fluid volume. CSW is believed to be the primary cause of hyponatremia in the neurosurgical population. It is characterized by hyponatremia, decreased serum osmolarity, and decreased blood volume. Serum vasopressin and ANF levels can differentiate CSW and SIADH. CSW is treated with the replacement of sodium and isotonic fluid volume.

Patients with complications related to fluid and electrolyte imbalance undergo strict measurement of their intake and output. Be sure that an accurate weight measurement is taken every day at the same time with the same scale. Carefully assess for indications of fluid overload or dehydration during treatment. Serum electrolyte levels and osmolarity are measured daily (or more often if clinically indicated).

Community-Based Care

The patient with a brain tumor is managed at home if possible. Maintaining a reasonable quality of life is an important outcome for recovery and rehabilitation. Unless the patient has a significant degree of disability, no special preparation for home care is needed. Patients with hemiparesis need assistance to ensure that their home is accessible according to their method of mobility (e.g., cane, walker, wheelchair). The environment should be made safe to prevent falls. For example, teach caregivers to remove scatter rugs and to place grab bars in the bathroom.

Information about the selection of rehabilitation or chronic care facility, if needed, can be obtained from the case manager (CM) or discharge planner. The selected facility should have experience in providing care for neurologically impaired patients. A psychologist should be available to provide input in the evaluation of the cognitive disabilities that the patient may have.

It is very important that the patient and family fully understand the importance of any recommended follow-up health care appointments. The discharge summary should state the name of the person who has been given the follow-up information.

Health teaching includes drug therapy and who to call if adverse drug events occur. Remind the patient to avoid taking any over-the-counter drugs unless approved by the health care provider.

Teach the patient to maintain a program of regular physical exercise within the limits of any disabilities. Referral to the dietitian may be needed to ensure adequate caloric intake for the patient receiving radiation or chemotherapy.

Seizures are a potential complication that can occur at any time for as long as 1 year or more after surgery. Provide the patient and the family with information about seizure precautions and what to do if a seizure occurs.

Refer the patient and the family or significant others to the American Brain Tumor Association (www.abta.org) or the National Brain Tumor Foundation (www.braintumor.org). The American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org) is also an

appropriate community resource for patients with malignant tumors. Home care agencies are available to provide both the physical and rehabilitative care that the patient may need at home. Hospice services and palliative care may be needed if he or she is terminally ill. (See [Chapter 9](#) for additional information.) Brain tumor support groups may also be a valuable asset to the patient and family.

BRAIN ABSCESS

A **brain abscess** is a purulent infection of the brain in which pus forms in the extradural, subdural, or intracerebral area of the brain. The causative organisms are usually bacteria that invade the brain directly or indirectly. Cerebral abscesses may be a complication of meningitis.

Pathophysiology

In general, organisms from the ear, sinus, or mastoid area enter the brain by traveling along the wall of the cerebral veins, and therefore they may spread to any area of the brain. At times, the organisms (especially those from the ear) destroy the bone, form a tract, and enter the brain directly. Septic emboli (dislodged clots) from the heart, the lungs, or a dental or peritonsillar abscess may break off and enter the systemic circulation. These organisms may become lodged in a cerebral vessel and produce a localized infection. Penetrating trauma, open head injuries, and neurosurgical procedures provide a potential means for the direct entry of an organism into the brain.

The organisms cause a local infection, and acute inflammation surrounds the involved area. Within a few days, necrosis of the tissue takes place, pus forms, and the tissue liquefies. This process is followed by the development of cerebral edema from localized vascular congestion and tissue swelling in response to inflammation. During the next few weeks, the area becomes encapsulated. The abscess usually occurs deep within the cerebral hemisphere and involves the white matter of the brain. In a few cases, it spreads through the brain tissue to the subarachnoid space and ventricular system.

The organism varies with the source of the abscess. *Streptococci* are the most common organisms and are often found with other anaerobes such as *Bacteroides*. *Enterobacteriaceae* such as *Escherichia coli* and *Proteus* organisms may also be combined with *Streptococcus*. Yeast and fungi also cause cerebral abscess formation, particularly in patients who are immunosuppressed. *Toxoplasma gondii* is one of the most commonly seen central nervous system (CNS) opportunistic infections in the acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) population.

Most brain abscesses occur in the frontal and temporal lobes. A few affected patients have more than one abscess. Mortality rates vary up to more than one half of patients with abscesses. Those that occur in immunosuppressed patients are associated with a higher mortality rate.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The clinical manifestations of a brain abscess begin slowly and are similar to some of the manifestations of meningitis. The patient may have headache, fever, and neurologic deficits

or nonspecific signs and symptoms. Perform ongoing neurologic assessments. The patient may be mildly lethargic or somewhat confused. The pupillary response to light is normal in the early stages. As increased intracranial pressure (ICP) progresses, the pupils may become sluggish, unequal, dilated, and nonresponsive to light. The patient's level of consciousness (LOC) declines to a state in which he or she loses the ability to interact with the environment. Airway and respiratory function may also be altered.

Examination of the patient's visual fields often reveals a **temporal field blindness** (decrease in peripheral vision laterally). If the abscess affects the cerebral hemispheres, nystagmus (involuntary eye movements) may be evident. Motor examination reveals a generalized weakness. More significant motor problems, such as hemiplegia, may be apparent in the presence of a frontal lobe abscess. An ataxic gait is seen with a cerebellar abscess. Sensory impairment varies, although the patient often exhibits no sensory deficits. The patient may have varying degrees of aphasia (impaired communication ability) if he or she has a frontal or temporal lobe abscess. Seizure activity may occur because of irritation of the cortical tissue. Late in the disease process, more severe symptoms of increased ICP occur and include severe headache, decreased LOC (possibly coma), a widened pulse pressure, bradycardia, and irregular respirations. The patient with AIDS often presents with systemic infection, CNS involvement, and lymphoma.

Some patients may have atypical presentations, including older adults (age-related compromise in immune function), those receiving steroid therapy or immune-modulating drugs, and patients with later stages of human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection (immune system compromise). In the earlier stages, the inflammatory response is responsible for much of the clinical presentation, particularly if cerebral abscess formation results from meningitis. The risk is that the patient may progress to severe abscess formation before the onset of "classic" manifestations.

Diagnostic Assessment

The white blood cell (WBC) count and erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) are usually elevated, indicating the presence of infection. If the abscess is encapsulated, the WBC count may be normal. Obtain specimens for aerobic and, when

possible, anaerobic cultures of the blood, ear, nose, and throat to determine the primary source of infection.

The health care provider requests a CT scan to determine the presence of cerebritis, hydrocephalus, or a midline shift. MRI is also useful in detecting the presence of an abscess early in the course of the disease. An EEG can localize the lesion in most cases and shows high-voltage, slow-wave activity; electro-cerebral silence may be noted in the area of the abscess. Radiography of the sinuses and the mastoid is often indicated. A lumbar puncture may be performed if meningitis is also suspected and the patient does not have ICP elevation. A needle biopsy is performed to identify the cause of the infection.

INTERVENTIONS

Drug therapy is prescribed by the physician to treat the abscess. Typically used antibiotics include penicillin G benzathine (Bicillin) and nafcillin sodium (Nafcil, Unipen). Metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazol ) or vancomycin may be used if an anaerobic organism is the causative agent. Antibiotic dosing may be increased to ensure adequate CNS penetration. These agents are particularly useful in the early stages (cerebritis) of abscess formation. A combination of antibiotics is used, particularly if the abscess resulted from septic emboli. Antiepileptic drugs such as phenytoin (Dilantin) may be used to prevent seizures. The drug regimen is strictly followed to maintain therapeutic blood levels. Give analgesics to treat headache.

The physician may surgically drain an encapsulated abscess via a burr hole to reduce the mass effect of the lesion. In certain cases, a craniotomy may be performed to remove the abscess. The decision to perform surgery is based on the patient's general condition, the stage of abscess development, and the site of the abscess. Provide routine preoperative and postoperative care for the patient undergoing a craniotomy, as discussed on p. 1033 under Surgical Management in the Brain Tumors section.

The patient with a brain abscess is discharged to home if few or no neurologic deficits are present. Patients with severe dysfunction are usually transferred to long-term care or a rehabilitation facility. Some patients have permanent neurologic deficits.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing impaired mobility, sensation, and cognition as a result of severe acute neurologic health problems affecting the brain?

- Decreased level of consciousness (LOC)
- Inability to communicate (aphasia)
- Impaired swallowing (dysphagia)
- Weakness or paralysis of one side of the body (hemiparesis or hemiplegia)
- Alteration in gait
- Inability to perform ADLs
- Report of nausea and vomiting
- Report of impaired visual acuity or fields
- Ptosis (eyelid drooping)

- Unilateral body neglect
- Report of decreased peripheral sensation
- Inability to make appropriate judgments; confusion
- Impaired memory
- Report of severe headache

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing impaired mobility, sensation, and cognition as a result of severe neurologic health problems affecting the brain?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Assess airway, breathing, and circulation (ABC) status.
- Assess neurologic status, especially LOC and mental state.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Take vital signs (high blood pressure or widened pulse pressure may indicate increased intracranial pressure [ICP]).
- Assess functional status.
- Assess for swallowing and nutrition status.

Respond by:

- Notifying health care provider or Rapid Response Team if patient is having increased ICP.
- Ensuring an adequate airway.
- Giving oxygen to perfuse the brain.
- Establishing IV access.
- Protecting the patient from injury.

- Collaborating with health care team members as needed to meet patient's needs.
- Assisting with ADLs and mobility as needed.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Think about how you responded.
- Continue to monitor neurologic status.
- Monitor for indications of secondary brain insult as patient is treated.
- Think about what health teaching is needed for the patient and family.
- Provide emotional support for the patient and family.
- Think about what other interventions you could implement in caring for the patient.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- When caring for a patient with a stroke or traumatic brain injury (TBI), assess airway, breathing, and circulation status first and implement interventions to maintain them.
- Monitor patients with critical neurologic health problems for manifestations of increasing intracranial pressure (ICP) as described in [Chart 47-6](#).
- Be aware that the first sign of increased ICP is a *decrease* in level of consciousness (LOC).
- Collaborate with members of the health care team when managing patients with critical neurologic health problems, including the physical and occupational therapists, dietitian, and social worker.
- Coordinate continuity of care with the hospital case manager or discharge planner when discharging or transferring patients to community-based agencies or home.
- Teach patients and families about community organizations, such as the National Stroke Association and the Brain Injury Association of America.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Conduct a complete health assessment for patients with a stroke, with an emphasis on neurologic status.
- Teach patients and families about modifiable risk factors for stroke as listed in [Chart 47-2](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the emotional reactions of families to a brain cancer diagnosis, and help them cope by providing information and referrals to support systems.
- Teach patients and their families about community resources to help them cope with life changes, especially

community support groups that are provided by state and national organizations.

- Assess patients with strokes for sensory perceptual changes such as unilateral neglect and impaired vision; help patients adapt to these changes, such as turning their head from side to side to see the entire meal tray.

Physiological Integrity

- Recall the differences between a transient ischemic attack and a brain attack (stroke).
- Assess the patient's ability to perform ADLs, including the ability to eat because of swallowing problems.
- Assess for expressive and/or receptive aphasia in patients who have had a stroke.
- Monitor the patient on thrombolytic therapy or anticoagulants for bleeding and abnormal coagulation studies.
- Provide best practices for thrombolytic therapy administration as listed in [Chart 47-5](#).
- Evaluate the collaborative care of the stroke patient by helping him or her achieve the highest level of functioning in the community or long-term health care agency.
- Assess for manifestations of TBI as outlined in [Chart 47-7](#).
- Teach patients with minor head injury and their families to monitor for neurologic changes as listed in [Chart 47-9](#).
- Assess for manifestations of brain tumors as listed in [Chart 47-10](#).
- Recognize that the desired outcome for the patient with a brain tumor is to remove it if possible. Other methods may be used to decrease its size, including chemotherapy and radiation.
- The mainstay of management for patients with brain abscess is systemic antibiotic therapy.



CHAPTER

48

Assessment of the Eye and Vision*M. Linda Workman*<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

Video Clip: Central Vision

Video Clip: External Eye

Video Clip: Pupil Responses

LEARNING OUTCOMES**Safe and Effective Care Environment**

1. Use aseptic technique when touching the eyelids or external eye structures.
2. Use appropriate technique when instilling eyedrops or eye ointments.
3. Verify that informed consent has been obtained before invasive tests of the eye or vision are performed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach all people about the use of eye protection equipment and strategies.
5. Perform health history and risk assessment for eye and vision problems.
6. Teach patients who have systemic health problems that may affect eye health and vision to adhere to prescribed therapies and to have yearly eye examinations by an ophthalmologist.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests and procedures to assess vision and eye problems.
8. Provide the opportunity for the patient and family to express their concerns about a possible change in vision.

Physiological Integrity

9. Explain the concept of refraction in relation to how the cornea, lens, aqueous humor, and vitreous humor contribute to vision.
10. Explain the relationship between intraocular pressure and eye health.
11. Use knowledge of anatomy and psychomotor skills when assessing the eye and vision.
12. Explain the eye changes associated with aging and their impact on vision.
13. Interpret the findings of visual acuity by the Snellen chart.

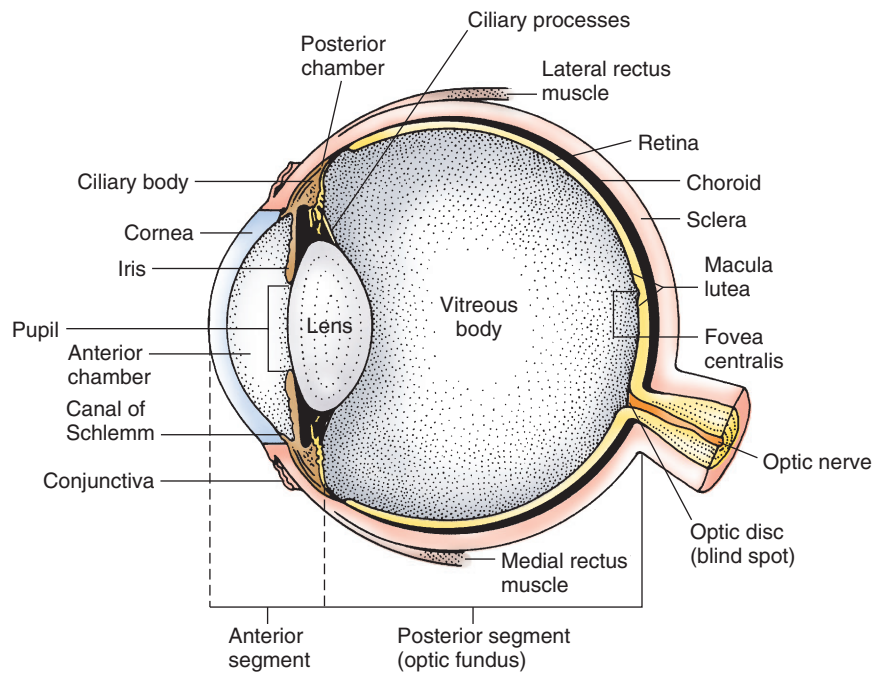


FIG. 48-1 Anatomic features of the eye.

The eye works with the brain to cause vision. Many people consider vision to be the most important sense for sensation and cognition. It is used to assess surroundings, allow independence, warn of danger, appreciate beauty, work, play, and interact with other people.

Vision begins with the eye, where light is changed into nerve impulses. These impulses are sent to the brain, where images are fully perceived. Many systemic conditions, as well as eye problems, affect the eye and change vision temporarily or permanently. Changes in the eye and vision can provide information about the patient's general health status and problems that might occur in self-care.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Structure

The eyeball, a round, ball-shaped organ, is located in the front part of the eye orbit. The **orbit** is the bony socket of the skull that surrounds and protects the eye along with the attached muscles, nerves, vessels, and tear-producing glands.

Layers of the Eyeball

The eye has three layers, or coats (Fig. 48-1). The external layer is the **sclera** (the opaque tissue making up the “white” of the eye) and the transparent cornea on the front of the eye.

The middle layer, or **uvea**, is heavily pigmented and consists of the choroid, the ciliary body, and the iris. The choroid, a dark brown membrane between the sclera and the retina, lines most of the sclera. It has many blood vessels that supply nutrients to the retina.

The ciliary body connects the choroid with the iris and secretes aqueous humor. The **iris** is the colored portion of the external eye; its center opening is the **pupil**. The muscles of the iris contract and relax to control pupil size and the amount of light entering the eye.

The innermost layer is the **retina**, a thin, delicate structure made up of sensory photoreceptors that begin the transmission of impulses to the optic nerve. The retina contains blood vessels and two types of photoreceptors called *rods* and *cones*. The rods work at low light levels and provide peripheral vision. The cones are active at bright light levels and provide color and central vision.

The **optic fundus** is the area at the inside back of the eye that can be seen with an ophthalmoscope. This area contains the **optic disc**, a creamy pink or white depressed area where the fine nerve fibers that synapse with the photoreceptors join together to form the optic nerve and exit the eyeball. The optic disc is sometimes called the “blind spot” because it contains only nerve fibers and no photoreceptor cells. To one side of the optic disc is a small, yellowish pink area called the *macula lutea*. The center of the macula is the *fovea centralis*, where vision is the most acute.

Refractive Structures and Media

Light waves pass through these structures on the way to the retina: cornea, aqueous humor, lens, and vitreous humor. Each structure has a different density, which causes the light waves to bend (**refract**) and focus images on the retina. Together, these structures are the eye's *refracting media*.

The **cornea** is the clear layer that forms the external bump on the front of the eye (see Fig. 48-1). The **aqueous humor** is a clear, watery fluid that fills the anterior and posterior chambers of the eye. Aqueous humor is continually produced by the ciliary processes and passes from the posterior chamber, through the pupil, and into the anterior chamber. This fluid drains through the canal of Schlemm into the blood to maintain a balanced intraocular pressure (IOP), the pressure within the eye (Fig. 48-2).

The **lens** is a circular, convex structure that lies behind the iris and in front of the vitreous body. It is normally transparent and bends the rays of light entering through the pupil so

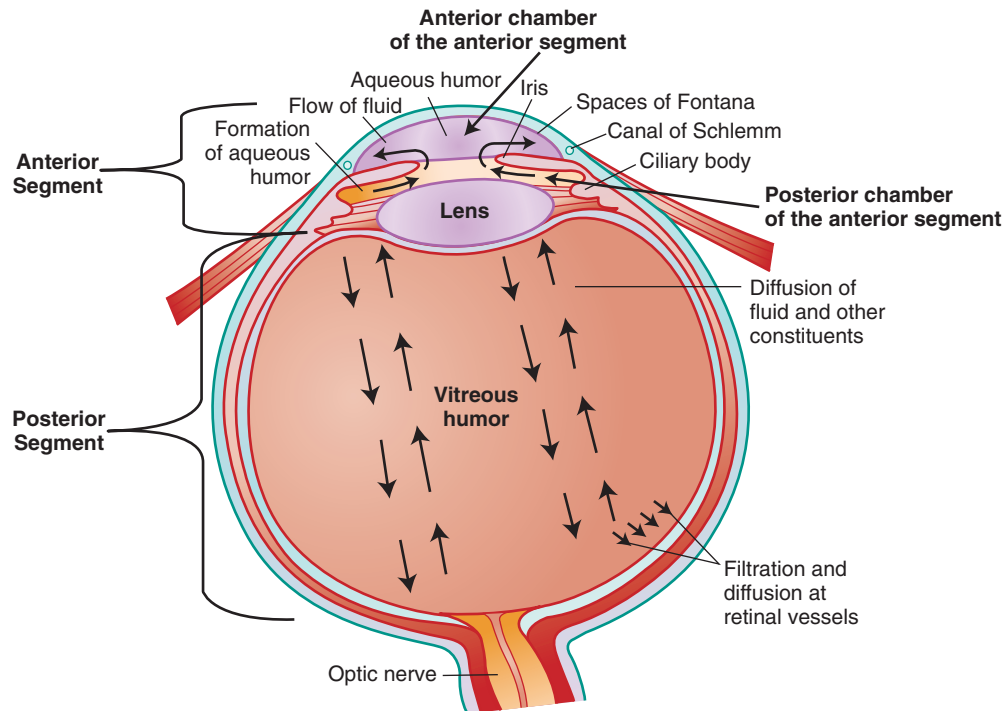


FIG. 48-2 Flow of aqueous humor.

that they focus properly on the retina. The curve of the lens changes to focus on near or distant objects. A *cataract* is a lens that has lost its transparency.

The **vitreous body** is a clear, thick gel that fills the *vitreous chamber* (the space between the lens and the retina). This gel transmits light and maintains eye shape.

The eye is a hollow organ and must be kept in the shape of a ball for vision to occur. To maintain this shape, the gel in the posterior segment (*vitreous humor*) and the fluid in the anterior segment (*aqueous humor*) must be present in set amounts that apply pressure inside the eye to keep it inflated (McCance et al., 2010). This pressure is known as **intraocular pressure** or **IOP**. IOP has to be just right. If the pressure is too low, the eyeball is soft and collapses, preventing light from getting to the light-sensitive photoreceptors in the back of the eye on the retina. If the pressure becomes too high, the extra pressure compresses capillaries and nerve fibers in the eye. Pressure on retinal blood vessels prevents blood from flowing through them, and as a result the photoreceptors and nerve fibers become hypoxic. Compression of the fine nerve fibers prevents intracellular fluid flow, which also reduces nourishment to the distal portions of these thin nerve fibers. The increased intraocular pressure and resulting hypoxia of the photoreceptors and their synapsing nerve fibers is a condition called *glaucoma*. Continued hypoxia inside the eye result in photoreceptor necrosis and death and permanent nerve fiber damage. With extensive photoreceptor loss and nerve fiber damage, vision is lost and the person is permanently blind.

External Structures

The eyelids are thin, movable skinfolds that protect the eyes, shut out light during sleep, and keep the cornea moist. The upper eyelid is larger than the lower one. The **canthus** is the place where the two eyelids meet at the corner of the eye.

The **conjunctivae** are the mucous membranes of the eye. The palpebral conjunctiva is a thick membrane with many blood vessels that lines the undersurface of each eyelid. The thin, transparent bulbar conjunctiva covers the entire front of the eye.

Tears are produced by a small **lacrimal gland**, which is located in the upper outer part of each orbit (Fig. 48-3). Tears flow across the front of the eye, toward the nose, and into the inner canthus. They drain through the **punctum** (an opening at the nasal side of the lid edges), into the lacrimal duct and sac, and then into the nose through the nasolacrimal duct.

Muscles, Nerves, and Blood Vessels

Six voluntary muscles rotate the eye and coordinate eye movements (Fig. 48-4 and Table 48-1). Coordinated eye movements ensure that the retina of each eye receives an image at the same time so only a single image is seen.

The muscles around the eye are innervated by cranial nerves (CNs) III (oculomotor), IV (trochlear), and VI (abducens). The **optic nerve** (CN II) is the nerve of sight, connecting the optic disc to the brain. Part of the trigeminal nerve (CN V) stimulates the blink reflex when the cornea is touched. The facial nerve (CN VII) innervates the lacrimal glands and muscles controlling lid closure.

The ophthalmic artery brings oxygenated blood to the eye and structures in the orbit. This artery branches to supply blood to the retina. The ciliary arteries supply the sclera, choroid, ciliary body, and iris. Venous drainage occurs through the two ophthalmic veins.

Function

The four eye functions that provide clear images and vision are refraction, pupillary constriction, accommodation, and convergence.

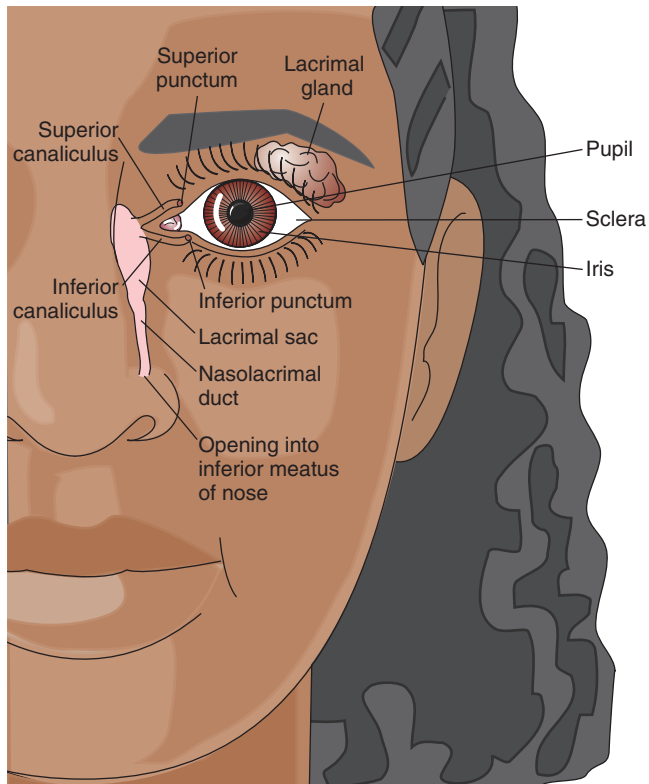


FIG. 48-3 Front view of the eye and adjacent structures.

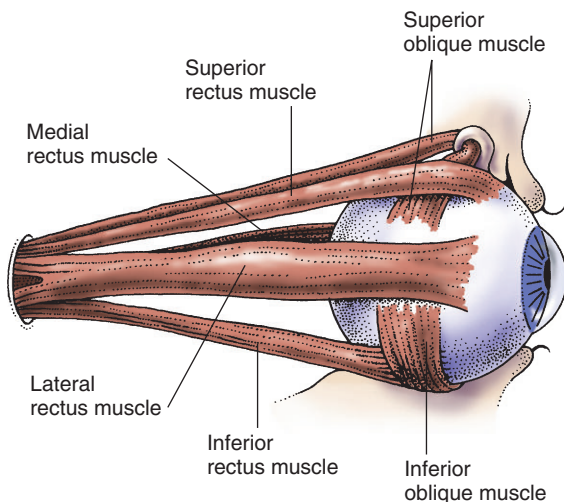


FIG. 48-4 The extraocular muscles.

Refraction involves bending light rays from the outside world into the eye. The different curved surfaces and refractive media of the eye allow light to pass through to the retina. Each surface and media bends (refracts) light differently to focus an image on the retina. **Emmetropia** is the perfect refraction of the eye: with the lens at rest, light rays from a distant source (20 feet [6 m] or more) are focused into a sharp image on the retina. Fig. 48-5 shows the normal refraction of light within the eye. Images fall on the retina inverted and reversed left to right. For example, an object in the lower nasal visual field strikes the upper outer area of the retina.

TABLE 48-1 FUNCTIONS OF OCULAR MUSCLES

Superior Rectus Muscle

- Together with the lateral rectus, this muscle moves the eye diagonally upward toward the side of the head.
- Together with the medial rectus, this muscle moves the eye diagonally upward toward the middle of the head.

Lateral Rectus Muscle

- Together with the medial rectus, contraction of this muscle holds the eye in a straight position.
- Contracting alone, this muscle turns the eye toward the side of the head.

Medial Rectus Muscle

- Contracting alone, this muscle turns the eye toward the nose.

Inferior Rectus Muscle

- Together with the lateral rectus, this muscle moves the eye diagonally downward toward the side of the head.
- Together with the medial rectus, this muscle moves the eye diagonally downward toward the middle of the head.

Superior Oblique Muscle

- Contracting alone, this muscle pulls the eye downward.

Inferior Oblique Muscle

- Contracting alone, this muscle pulls the eye upward.

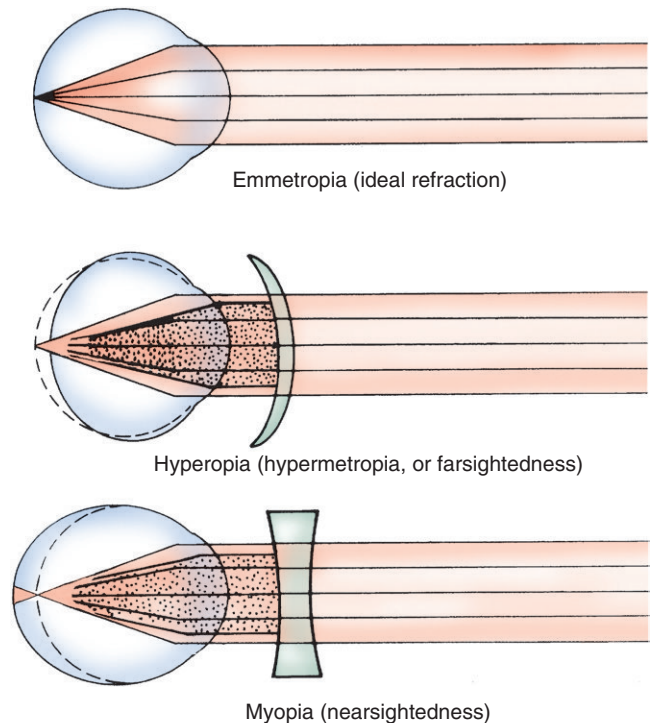


FIG. 48-5 Refraction and correction in emmetropia, hyperopia, and myopia.

Errors of refraction are common. **Hyperopia** (farsightedness or *hypermetropia*) occurs when the eye does not refract light enough. As a result, images actually fall (*converge*) behind the retina (see Fig. 48-5). Vision beyond 20 feet is normal, but near vision is poor. Hyperopia is corrected with a convex lens in eyeglasses or contact lenses.

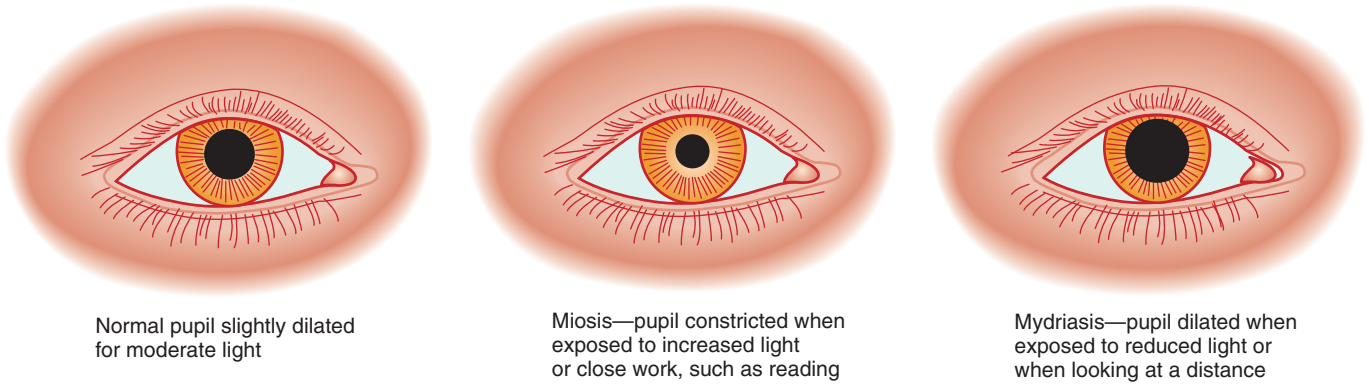


FIG. 48-6 Miosis and mydriasis.

CHART 48-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Eye and Vision Related to Aging

STRUCTURE/ FUNCTION	CHANGE	IMPLICATION
Appearance	Eyes appear “sunken.” Arcus senilis forms. Sclera yellows or appears blue.	Do not use eye appearance as an indicator for hydration status. Reassure patient that this change does not affect vision. Do not use sclera to assess for jaundice.
Cornea	Cornea flattens, which blurs vision.	Encourage older adults to have regular eye examinations and wear prescribed corrective lenses for best vision.
Ocular muscles	Muscle strength is reduced, making it more difficult to maintain an upward gaze or maintain a single image.	Reassure patient that this is a normal happening and to re-focus gaze frequently to maintain a single image.
Lens	Elasticity is lost, increasing the near point of vision (making the near point of best vision farther away). Lens hardens, compacts, and forms a cataract.	Encourage patient to wear corrective lenses for reading. Stress the importance of yearly vision checks and monitoring for when intervention is needed.
Iris	Decrease in ability to dilate results in small pupil size and poor adaptation to darkness.	Teach older adults the need for good lighting for best vision to avoid tripping and bumping into objects.
Pupil	Pupil size is smaller, reducing the ability to see in dim light.	Teach older adults the need for good lighting for best vision to avoid tripping and bumping into objects.
Color vision	Discrimination among greens, blues, and violets decreases.	The patient may not be able to use “dipstick” or other color-indicator monitors of health status.
Tears	Tear production is reduced, resulting in dry eyes, discomfort, and increased risk for corneal damage or eye infections.	Teach patient to use saline eyedrops on a schedule to reduce dryness. Teach patient to increase humidity in the home.

Myopia (nearsightedness) occurs when the eye overbends the light and images converge in front of the retina (see Fig. 48-5). Near vision is normal, but distance vision is poor. Myopia is corrected with a biconcave lens in eyeglasses or contact lenses.

Astigmatism is a refractive error caused by unevenly curved surfaces on or in the eye, especially of the cornea. These uneven surfaces distort vision.

Pupillary constriction and dilation control the amount of light that enters the eye. If the level of light to one or both eyes is increased, both pupils constrict (become smaller). The amount of constriction depends on how much light is available and how well the retina can adapt to light changes. Pupillary constriction is called **miosis**, and pupillary dilation is called **mydriasis** (Fig. 48-6). Drugs can alter pupillary constriction.

Accommodation allows the healthy eye to focus images sharply on the retina whether the image is close to the eye or distant. The process of maintaining a clear visual image when

the gaze is shifted from a distant to a near object is known as **accommodation**. The eye can adjust its focus by changing the curve of the lens.

Convergence is the ability to turn both eyes inward toward the nose at the same time. This action helps ensure that only a single image of close objects is seen.

Eye Changes Associated with Aging

Changes inside the eye cause visual acuity to decrease with age (Touhy & Jett, 2010). Age-related changes of the nervous system and in the eye support structures also reduce visual function (Chart 48-1).

Structural changes occur with aging, including decreased eye muscle tone that reduces the ability to keep gaze focused on a single object. The lower eyelid may relax and fall away from the eye (*ectropion*), leading to dry-eye symptoms.

Arcus senilis, an opaque, bluish white ring within the outer edge of the cornea, is caused by fat deposits (Fig. 48-7). Although very common, this change does not affect vision.

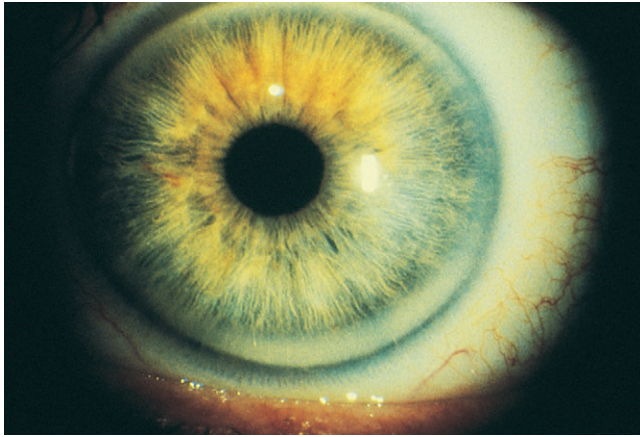


FIG. 48-7 Arcus senilis of the iris.

The clarity and shape of the cornea change with age. After age 65 years, the cornea flattens and the curve of its surface becomes irregular. This change causes or worsens astigmatism and blurs vision.

Fatty deposits cause the sclera to develop a yellowish tinge. A bluish color may be seen as the sclera thins. With age, the iris has less ability to dilate, which leads to difficulty in adapting to dark environments. Older adults may need additional light for reading and other “close up” work and to avoid tripping over objects.

Functional changes also occur with aging. The lens yellows with aging, reducing the ability of the eye to transmit and focus light. The aging lens hardens, shrinks, and loses elasticity. As the lens loses elasticity, the eye reduces accommodation. The **near point of vision** (the closest distance at which the eye can see an object clearly) increases. Near objects, especially reading material, must be placed farther from the eye to be seen clearly. This age-related change is called **presbyopia**. The **far point** (farthest point at which an object can be distinguished) decreases. Together these changes narrow the visual field of an older adult.

As a person ages, general color perception decreases, especially for green, blue, and violet. More light is needed to stimulate the photoreceptors. Intraocular pressure (IOP) is slightly higher in older adults.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Vision is important to everyday function and quality of life. Many vision and eye problems can be avoided, and others can be corrected or managed if discovered early. Teach all people about eye protection methods, adequate nutrition, and the importance of regular eye examinations.

The risks for cataract formation and for cancer of the eye (ocular melanoma) increase with exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light. Teach people to protect the eyes by using sunglasses that filter UV light whenever they are outdoors. Also explain that UV protection should be used in tanning salons and in work environments that have UV exposure.

Vision can be affected by injury, and eye injury also increases the risk for both cataract formation and glaucoma. Urge all people to wear eye and head protection during work in occupations that involve particulate matter, fluid or blood spatter, high temperatures, or sparks. Eye and head protection should be worn during participation in sports, such as

CHART 48-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Using Eyedrops

- Check the name, strength, expiration date, color, and clarity of the eyedrops to be instilled.
- If both eyes are to receive the same drug and one eye is infected, use two separate bottles and carefully label each bottle with “right” or “left” for the correct eye.
- Wash your hands.
- Remove the cap from the bottle.
- Tilt your head backward, open your eyes, and look up at the ceiling.
- Using your nondominant hand, gently pull the lower lid down against your cheek, forming a small pocket.
- Hold the eyedrop bottle (with the cap off) like a pencil, with the tip pointing down, with your dominant hand.
- Rest the wrist holding the bottle against your mouth or upper lip.
- Without touching any part of the eye or lid with the tip of the bottle, gently squeeze the bottle and release the prescribed number of drops into the pocket you have made with your lower lid.
- Gently release the lower lid.
- Close your eye gently (without squeezing the lids tightly).
- Gently press and hold the corner of the eye nearest the nose to close off the punctum and prevent the drug from being absorbed systemically.
- Without pressing on the lid, gently blot away any excess drug or tears with a tissue.
- Keep the eye closed for about 1 minute.
- Place the cap back on the bottle.
- Check to see whether the drug needs to be kept in the refrigerator.
- Wash your hands again.

baseball, or any activity that increases the risk for the eye being hit by objects in motion. Teach people to avoid rubbing the eyes because excessive eye rubbing can traumatize the delicate outer eye surfaces.

Eye infections can lead to vision loss. Although the eye surface is not sterile, the sclera and cornea have no separate blood supply and thus are at risk for infection because the immunities in the blood do not reach these structures. Teach everyone to wash their hands before touching the eye or eyelid. Teach people who use eyedrops about the proper technique to use these drugs (**Chart 48-2**) and to not share eyedrops with others. If an eye has a discharge, teach the patient to use a separate eyedrop bottle for this eye and to wash the unaffected eye before washing the affected eye.

Other health problems, especially diabetes mellitus and hypertension, can have serious adverse effects on vision. Teach patients who have these health problems about the importance of controlling blood glucose levels and managing blood pressure to reduce the risk for vision loss. Explain that yearly consultation with an ophthalmologist is needed to ensure coordination with their regular health care provider to slow or prevent eye complications.

Teach all people who have a refractive error to have an eye examination yearly. Young adults who do not have vision problems may need an eye examination only every 3 to 5 years unless a problem develops. Adults older than 40 years should have an eye examination yearly that includes assessment of intraocular pressure and visual fields, because the risk for both glaucoma and cataract formation increases with age.

CHART 48-3 EYE AND VISION ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Cognitive-Perceptual Pattern

- Do you have any difficulty seeing objects at a distance?
- Do you have any difficulty reading fine print or doing close work?
- Do you wear eyeglasses or contact lenses?
- What type of light do you use for reading?
- Do you wear sunglasses or a hat when outdoors?
- Do you have frequent headaches?
- Have you noticed any change in your ability to see things at night?
- When did you last have your eyes examined?
- Do you go to an ophthalmologist or an optometrist?
- When were you last tested for glaucoma?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach people to see a health care provider *immediately* when an eye injury occurs or an eye infection is suspected.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The older adult client asks whether the white ring in the iris of both eyes is a cataract that can be removed to improve her vision. What is the nurse's best response?

- "A cataract forms inside the eye, not on the surface. This growth should be assessed for cancer."
- "This type of ring in the eye gets worse as intraocular pressure increases, leading to glaucoma."
- "The ring is a cataract, and it cannot be removed until it reaches and covers over the pupil."
- "The ring is just a buildup of deposits, not a cataract, and never interferes with vision."

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Collect information to determine whether problems with the eye or vision have an impact on ADLs or other daily functions. [Chart 48-3](#) lists questions to ask when assessing the eye and vision.

Age is an important factor to consider when assessing the visual processes and eye structure. The incidence of glaucoma and cataract formation increases with aging. Presbyopia commonly begins in the 40s.

Gender also may be important. For example, retinal detachments are more common in men and dry-eye syndromes are more common in women.

Occupation and leisure activities can affect vision. Ask patients about work and specifically how the eyes are used. In some occupations, such as computer programming, constant exposure to monitor screens may lead to eyestrain. Machine operators are at risk for eye injury because of the high speeds at which particles can be thrown at the eye. Ask the patient who works in industrial settings about the use of protective eyewear, such as goggles. Chronic exposure to infrared or ultraviolet light may cause photophobia and

TABLE 48-2 SYSTEMIC CONDITIONS AND COMMON DRUGS AFFECTING THE EYE AND VISION

Systemic Conditions and Disorders

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypertension
- Lupus erythematosus
- Sarcoidosis
- Thyroid dysfunction
- Acquired immune deficiency syndrome
- Cardiac disease
- Multiple sclerosis
- Pregnancy

Drugs

- Antihistamines
- Decongestants
- Antibiotics
- Opioids
- Anticholinergics
- Cholinergic agonists
- Sympathomimetics
- Oral contraceptives
- Chemotherapy agents
- Corticosteroids
- Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors
- Beta blockers

cataract formation. Teach the patient about the use of eye protection during work.

Ask whether the patient plays sports, the type of sport played, and whether eye protection is used. Even a blow to the head near the eye, such as with a baseball, can damage external eye structures, the eye, the connections with the brain, or the area of the brain where vision is perceived.

Systemic health problems can affect vision. Check whether the patient has any condition listed in [Table 48-2](#). Ask about past accidents, injuries, surgeries, or blows to the head that may have led to the present problem. Specifically ask about previous laser surgeries because patients often do not classify laser treatment as surgery.

Drugs, even systemic drugs, can affect vision and the eye (see [Table 48-2](#)). Ask about the use of any prescription or over-the-counter drugs, especially decongestants and antihistamines, which tend to dry the eye and may increase intraocular pressure (IOP). Many patients do not consider over-the-counter eyedrops to be drugs. Record the name, strength, dose, and scheduling for all drugs the patient uses. Ocular effects from drugs include **pruritus** (itching), foreign body sensation, redness, tearing, **photophobia** (sensitivity to light), and the development of cataracts or glaucoma.

Nutrition History

Because some ocular problems are caused by or made worse with vitamin deficiencies, ask the patient about his or her food choices. For example, vitamin A deficiency can cause eye dryness, keratomalacia, and blindness. However, nutrients and antioxidants such as lutein and beta carotene may help maintain retinal function. A diet rich in fruit and red, orange, and dark green vegetables is important to eye health. Teach all people to eat five to ten servings of these foods daily.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Ask about a family history of eye problems. Some conditions, such as a refractive error, show a familial tendency. Some genetic problems lead to visual impairment in adulthood (Nussbaum et al., 2007). When a patient tells you that other relatives, especially first-degree relatives (parents, siblings, and children), have eye problems, record the gender of the affected person, his or her relationship to the patient, the exact nature of the problem, and the age that the problem was first noted.

Current Health Problems

Ask the patient about the onset of visual changes. Did the change occur rapidly or slowly? Determine whether the symptoms are present to the same degree in both eyes.

Ask these questions if ocular injury or eye trauma is involved:

- How long ago did the injury occur?
- What was the patient doing when it happened?
- If a foreign body was involved, what was its source?
- Was any first aid administered at the scene? If so, what actions were taken?

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Notify the ophthalmologist immediately for any patient who has a sudden or persistent loss of vision within the past 48 hours, eye trauma, a foreign body in the eye, or sudden ocular pain.

Physical Assessment

Inspection

Look for head tilting, squinting, or other noticeable actions that indicate the patient is compensating to try to attain clear vision. For example, patients with double vision may cock the head to the side to focus the two images into one or they may close one eye to see more clearly.

Assess for symmetry in the appearance of the eyes. Check the eyes to determine whether they are equal distance from the nose, are the same size, and have the same degree of prominence. Assess the eyes for their placement in the orbits and for symmetry of movement. **Exophthalmos** (*proptosis*) is protrusion of the eye. **Enophthalmos** is the sunken appearance of the eye.

Examine the eyebrows and eyelashes for hair distribution, and determine the direction of the eyelashes. Eyelashes normally point outward and away from the eyelid. Assess the eyelids for **ptosis** (drooping), redness, lesions, or swelling. The lids normally close completely, with the upper and lower lid edges touching. When the eyes are open, the upper lid covers a small portion of the iris. The edge of the lower lid lies below the line between the cornea and sclera. No sclera should be visible between the eyelid and the iris.

Scleral and corneal assessment requires a penlight. Examine the sclera for color; it is usually white. A yellow color may indicate jaundice or systemic problems. In dark-skinned people, the normal sclera may appear yellow and small, pigmented dots may be visible (Jarvis, 2012).

The cornea is best observed by directing a light at it from the side using several angles. The cornea should be transparent, smooth, shiny, and bright. Any cloudy areas or specks may be the result of accidents or injuries.

Assess the blink reflex by bringing a fist quickly toward the patient's face; patients with vision will blink. This reflex can also be assessed by expelling a syringe full of air toward the eyes. The patient blinks if the reflex is intact.

Pupillary assessment involves examining each pupil separately and comparing the results. This examination is also part of a rapid neurologic assessment. The pupils are usually round and of equal size. About 5% of people normally have a noticeable difference in the size of their pupils, which is known as **anisocoria** (Jarvis, 2012). Pupil size varies in people exposed to the same amount of light. Pupils are smaller in older adults. People with myopia have larger pupils. People with hyperopia have smaller pupils. The normal pupil diameter is between 3 and 5 mm. Smaller pupils reduce vision in low light conditions.

Observe the pupils for their response to light. Increasing light causes constriction, whereas decreasing light causes dilation. Constriction of both pupils is the normal response to direct light and to accommodation. Assess pupillary reaction to light by asking the patient to look straight ahead while you quickly bring the beam of a penlight in from the side and direct it at the right pupil. Constriction of the right pupil is a direct response to shining the penlight into that eye. Constriction of the left pupil when light is shined at the right pupil is known as a **consensual response**. Assess the responses for each eye. (You may see the abbreviation "PERRLA" in a patient's medical record, which stands for *pupils equal, round, reactive to light, and accommodative*.)

Evaluate each pupil for speed of reaction. The pupil should immediately constrict when a light is directed at it. This rapid response is termed *brisk*. If the pupil takes more than 1 second to constrict, the response is termed *sluggish*. Pupils that fail to react are termed *nonreactive* or *fixed*. Compare the reactivity speed of right and left pupils, and document any difference.

To assess for accommodation, hold your finger about 18 cm from the patient's nose and move it toward the nose. The patient's eyes normally converge during this movement, and the pupils constrict equally. When accommodation stops, the pupils first enlarge and then return to their normal size.

Vision Testing

Vision is measured by various tests. First test each eye separately, and then test both eyes together. Patients who wear corrective lenses are tested both without and with their lenses.

Visual acuity tests measure both distance and near vision. The Snellen chart, or "eye chart," is a simple tool to measure distance vision. This chart has letters, numbers, pictures, or a single letter presented in various positions (Fig. 48-8). The chart with one letter in different positions is used for patients who cannot read, who do not speak the language used at the facility, or who cannot speak but do have adequate cognition. Have the patient stand 20 feet from the chart, cover one eye, and use the other eye to read the line that appears most clear. If the patient can do this accurately, ask him or her to read the next lower line. Repeat this sequence to the last line on which the patient can correctly identify most characters. Repeat the procedure with the other eye. Record findings as a comparison between what the patient can read at 20 feet and the distance at which a person with normal vision can read the same line. For example, 20/50 means that the patient can see at 20 feet from the chart what a "healthy eye" can see at 50 feet.

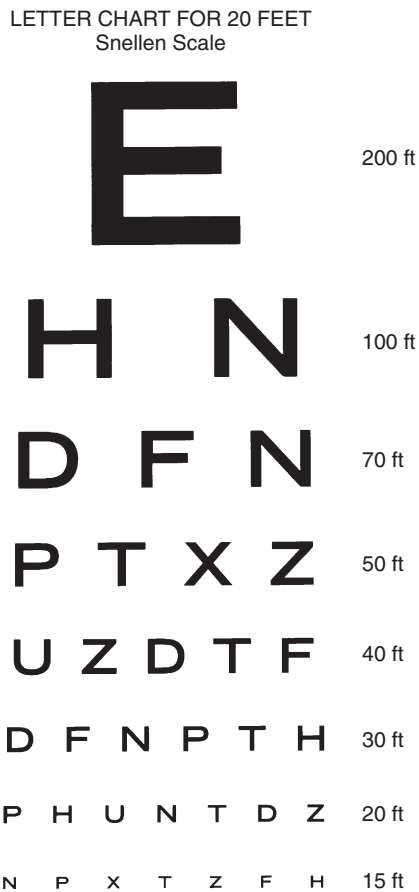


FIG. 48-8 A typical Snellen chart.

For patients who are in a confined space that does not permit a 20-foot distance to the eye chart or who cannot see the 20/400 character, assess visual acuity by holding fingers in front of their eyes and asking them to count the number of fingers. Acuity is recorded as “count fingers vision at 5 feet,” or the farthest distance at which fingers are counted correctly.

Patients who cannot count fingers are tested for hand motion (HM) acuity. Stand about 2 to 3 feet in front of the patient. Ask him or her to cover the eye not being tested. Direct a light onto your hand from behind the patient. Demonstrate the three possible directions in which the hand can move during the test (stationary, left-right, or up-down). Move your hand slowly (1 second per motion), and ask the patient, “What is my hand doing now?” Repeat this procedure five times. Visual acuity is recorded as HM at the farthest distance at which most of the hand motions are identified correctly.

If the patient cannot detect hand movement, test acuity by measuring light perception (LP). Ask the patient first to cover the left eye. In a darkened room, direct the beam of a penlight at the patient’s right eye from a distance of 2 to 3 feet for 1 to 2 seconds. Instruct the patient to say “on” when the beam of light is perceived and “off” when it is no longer detected. If the patient identifies the presence or absence of light three times correctly, acuity is recorded as LP.

Near vision is tested for patients who have difficulty reading without using glasses or other means of vision

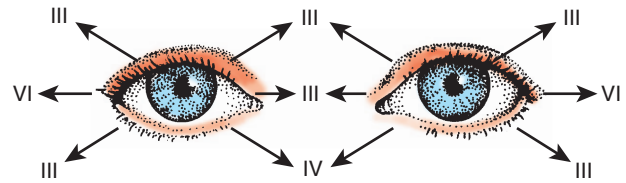


FIG. 48-9 Checking extraocular movements in the six cardinal positions indicates the functioning of cranial nerves III, IV, and VI.

correction. Use a small, handheld miniature chart called a *Rosenbaum Pocket Vision Screener* or a *Jaeger card*. Ask the patient to hold the card 14 inches away from his or her eyes and read the characters. Test each eye separately and then together. Record the value of the lowest line on which the patient can identify more than half the characters.

Visual field testing is used to determine the degree of peripheral vision. It can be performed formally with a computerized machine or informally with a “confrontation test” for a crude but rapid check of peripheral vision. During the confrontation test, sit facing the patient and ask him or her to look directly into your eyes while you look into the patient’s eyes. Cover your right eye and have the patient cover his or her left eye so that you both have the same visual field. Then move a finger or an object from a nonvisible area into the patient’s line of vision. The patient with normal peripheral vision should notice the object at about the same time you do. Repeat this examination by covering your left eye and the patient covering his or her right eye. Note any areas in which you can see but the patient cannot.

Extraocular muscle function is assessed using the corneal light reflex and the six cardinal positions of gaze. These tests not only assess smoothness of eye movements but also test the function of cranial nerves III, IV, and VI.

The corneal light reflex determines alignment of the eyes. After asking the patient to stare straight ahead, shine a penlight at both corneas from a distance of 12 to 15 inches. The bright dot of light reflected from the shiny surface of the cornea should be in a symmetric position (e.g., at the 1 o’clock position in the right eye and at the 11 o’clock position in the left eye). An asymmetric reflex indicates a deviating eye and possible muscle weakness.

Use the six cardinal positions of gaze to assess muscle function (Fig. 48-9). The eye will not turn to a particular position if the muscle is weak or if the controlling nerve is affected. Ask the patient to hold his or her head still and to move only the eyes to follow a small object. Move the object to the patient’s right (lateral), upward and right (temporal), down and right, left (lateral), upward and left (temporal), and down and left (see Fig. 48-9). While the patient moves the eyes to these positions, note whether both eyes move in a parallel manner and any deviation of movement. **Nystagmus**, an involuntary and rapid twitching of the eyeball, is a normal finding for the far lateral gaze. It may also be caused by abnormal nerve function.

Color vision is usually tested using the *Ishihara chart*, which shows numbers composed of dots of one color within a circle of dots of a different color (Fig. 48-10). Test each eye separately by asking the patient what numbers he or she sees on the chart. Reading the numbers correctly indicates normal color vision.

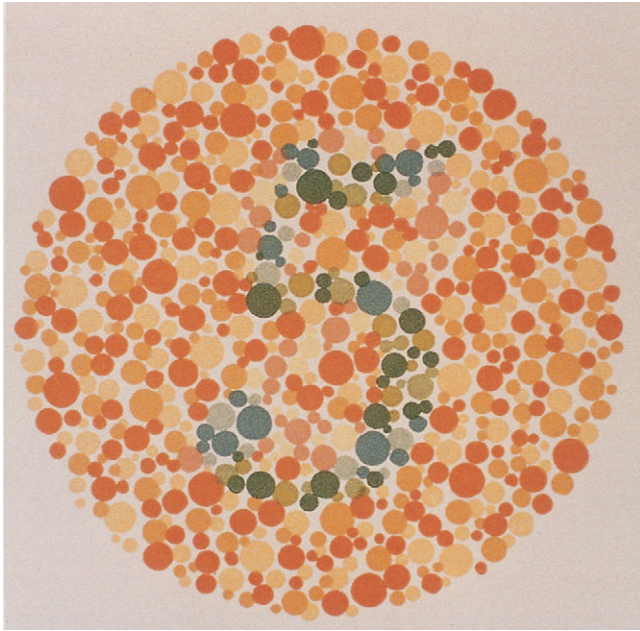


FIG. 48-10 An Ishihara chart for testing color vision.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which client assessment finding does the nurse report to the health care provider immediately?

- A. The left pupil is slightly smaller than the right pupil.
- B. Both eyes twitch when the client looks to the far lateral gaze position.
- C. The right pupil does not change size when a light is shined directly at it.
- D. The lowest line the client can read clearly at 20 feet on the Snellen chart is marked 50 feet.

Psychosocial Assessment

A patient with changes in visual perception may be anxious about possible vision loss. Patients with severe visual defects may be unable to perform ADLs or engage in some leisure activities. Dependency resulting from reduced vision can affect self-esteem. Ask the patient how he or she feels about the vision changes, and assess the effectiveness of coping techniques. Discuss these concerns with the family to determine available support. Also assess the patient's knowledge and use of services for the visually impaired. Provide information about local resources and services for reduced vision.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

Cultures of corneal or conjunctival swabs and scrapings help diagnose infections. Obtain a sample of the exudate for culture before antibiotics or topical anesthetics are instilled. Take swabs from the conjunctivae and any ulcerated or inflamed areas.

Imaging Assessment

Computed tomography (CT) is a useful diagnostic tool for looking at the eyes, the bony structures around the eyes, and the extraocular muscles. It is also used for detecting tumors

in the orbital space. Contrast dye is used unless trauma is suspected. Tell the patient that this test is not painful but does require that he or she be positioned in a confined space and must keep the head still during the procedure.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is often used to examine the orbits and the optic nerves and to evaluate ocular tumors. MRI cannot be used to evaluate injuries involving metal in the eyes. *Metal in the eye is an absolute contraindication for MRI.*

Radioisotope scanning is used to locate tumors and lesions. Isotope studies differentiate an intraocular tumor from a hemorrhage, especially in the choroid layer.

After signing an informed consent form, the patient receives a tracer dose of the radioactive isotope, either orally or by injection. He or she is asked to lie still and breathe normally. The scanner measures the radioactivity emitted by the radioactive atoms concentrated in the area being studied. Sedation may be used for patients who are anxious.

Assure the patient that the amount of radioisotope used is small and that he or she is not radioactive. No other special follow-up care is required.

Ultrasonography is used to examine the orbit and eye with high-frequency sound waves. This noninvasive test aids in the diagnosis of trauma, intraorbital tumors, proptosis, and choroidal or retinal detachments. It is also used to determine gross outline changes in the eye and the orbit in patients with cloudy corneas or lenses that reduce direct examination of the fundus. Ultrasonography helps calculate the length of the eye, one of the measurements used to determine the strength of the intraocular lens implant needed after cataract removal.

Inform the patient that this test is painless because anesthetic drops are instilled into the lower lid. He or she sits upright with the chin in the chin rest. The probe is touched against the patient's anesthetized cornea, and sound waves are bounced through the eye. The sound waves create a reflective pattern on a computer screen that can be examined for abnormalities. No special follow-up care is needed. Remind the patient not to rub or touch the eye until the effects of the anesthetic drops have worn off.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Many tests are used to examine specific eye structures but are not needed for routine vision assessment. Such tests may be indicated for those with special risks, symptoms, or exposures. These tests are performed only by physicians, optometrists, or advanced practice nurses.

Slit-lamp examination magnifies the anterior eye structures (Fig. 48-11). The patient leans on a chin rest to stabilize the head. A narrow beam (slit) of light is aimed so that only a narrow segment of the eye is brightly lighted. The examiner can then locate the position of any abnormality in the cornea, lens, or anterior vitreous humor.

Corneal staining consists of placing fluorescein or other topical dye into the conjunctival sac. The dye outlines irregularities of the corneal surface that are not easily visible. This test is used for corneal trauma, problems caused by a contact lens, or the presence of foreign bodies, abrasions, ulcers, or other corneal disorders.

This procedure is noninvasive and is performed under aseptic conditions. The dye is applied topically to the eye, and the eye is then viewed through a blue filter. Nonintact areas of the cornea stain a bright green color.

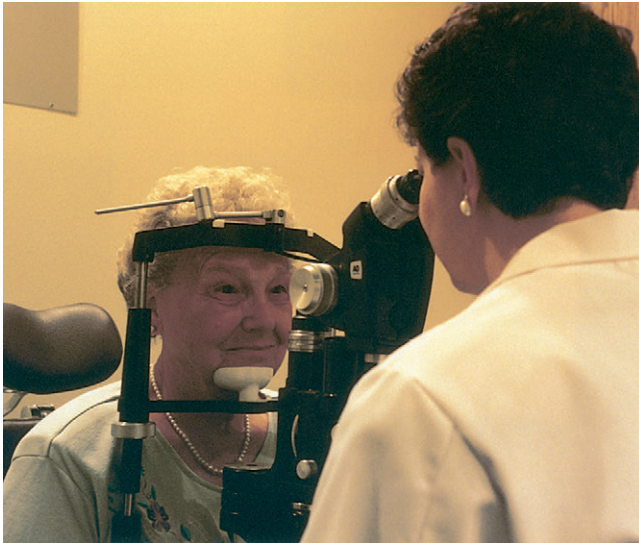


FIG. 48-11 Slit-lamp ocular examination.

Tonometry measures intraocular pressure (IOP) using a tonometer. This instrument applies pressure to the outside of the eye until it equals the pressure inside the eye as indicated when the cornea begins to indent. Normal IOP readings have always been considered to range from 10 to 21 mm Hg; however, this number is not absolute and must be considered along with corneal thickness. The thickness of the cornea affects how much pressure must be applied before indentation occurs. For example, a person with a thicker cornea will have a higher tonometer reading that may falsely indicate increased IOP. A person with a thinner-than-normal cornea may have a low tonometer reading even when higher IOP is present.

About 5% of patients with healthy eyes have a slightly higher pressure. Tonometer readings are indicated for all patients older than 40 years. Adults with a family history of glaucoma should have their IOP measured once or twice a year. The most common method to measure IOP by an ophthalmologist is the Goldman's applanation tonometer used with a slit lamp (Fig. 48-12). This method involves direct eye contact. Another instrument, the Tono-Pen (Fig. 48-13), is designed for use by patients in the home to measure IOP daily.

Intraocular pressure varies throughout the day. It is often higher in the morning but may peak at any time of the day. Therefore always document the time of IOP measurement and teach patients who are measuring IOP at home to perform the measurement at the same time or times each day.

Ophthalmoscopy allows viewing of the eye's external and interior structures with an instrument called an *ophthalmoscope*. This examination can be performed by any nurse but usually is performed by a physician, advanced practice nurse, or physician assistant. It is easiest to examine the fundus when the room is dark, because the pupil will dilate. Stand on the same side as the eye being examined. Tell the patient to look straight ahead at an object on the wall behind you. Placing your thumb on the patient's eyebrow can help you know the distance from the ophthalmoscope to the patient. Hold the ophthalmoscope firmly against your face, and align it so that your eye sees through the sight hole (Fig. 48-14).

When using the ophthalmoscope, move toward the patient's eye from about 12 to 15 inches away and to the side



Goldman's applanation tonometer

FIG. 48-12 Use of Goldman's applanation tonometer and a slit lamp to measure intraocular pressure (IOP).



FIG. 48-13 The Tono-Pen.

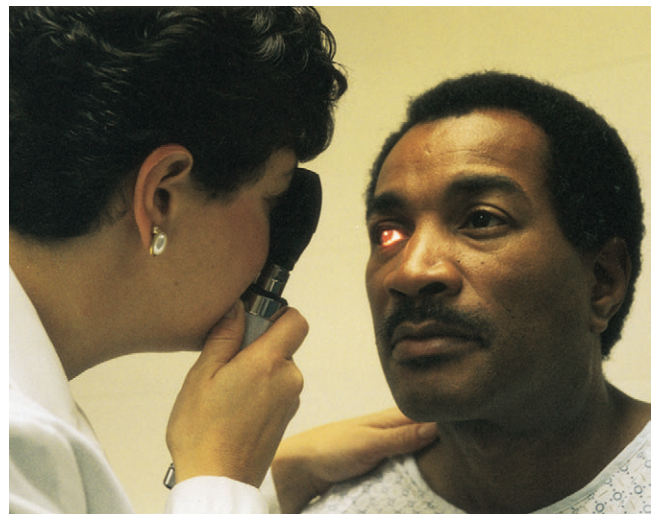


FIG. 48-14 Proper technique for direct ophthalmoscopic visualization of the retina.

of his or her line of vision. As you direct the ophthalmoscope at the pupil, a red glare (**red reflex**) should be seen in the pupil as a reflection of the light on the retina. An absent red reflex may indicate a lens opacity or cloudiness of the vitreous. Move toward the patient's pupil while following the red

TABLE 48-3 STRUCTURES ASSESSED BY DIRECT OPHTHALMOSCOPY**Red Reflex**

- Presence or absence

Optic Disc

- Color
- Margins (sharp or blurred)
- Cup size
- Presence of rings or crescents

Optic Blood Vessels

- Size
- Color
- Kinks or tangles
- Light reflection
- Narrowing
- Nicking at arteriovenous crossings

Fundus

- Color
- Tears or holes
- Lesions
- Bleeding

Macula

- Presence of blood vessels
- Color
- Lesions
- Bleeding

reflex. The retina should then be visible through the ophthalmoscope. Examine the optic disc, optic vessels, fundus, and macula. Table 48-3 lists the features that can be observed in each structure.

The use of an ophthalmoscope may make a confused patient or one who does not understand the language more anxious. When working with a patient who does not speak the language used at the facility, use an interpreter, when possible, to ensure the patient's understanding and cooperation with the examination.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Avoid using an ophthalmoscope with a confused patient.

Fluorescein angiography, which is performed by a physician or advanced practice nurse, provides a detailed image of eye circulation. Photographs are taken in rapid succession after the dye is given IV. This test is useful for assessing problems of retinal circulation (e.g., diabetic retinopathy, retinal hemorrhage, and macular degeneration) or for diagnosing intraocular tumors.

Explain the procedure to the patient, and instill mydriatic eyedrops (cause pupil dilation) 1 hour before the test. Chart 48-4 lists the best practice for correct eyedrop instillation. Check that the informed consent has been signed by the patient or responsible person. Warn that the dye may cause the skin to appear yellow for several hours after the test. The stain is eliminated through the urine, which also changes color.

Intravenous access must be obtained. After the needle is in the vein, 5 mL of a 10% solution of fluorescein is injected.

CHART 48-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Instillation of Eyedrops**

- Check the name, strength, expiration date, color, and clarity of the eyedrops to be instilled.
- Check to see whether only one eye is to have the drug or if both eyes are to receive the drug.
- If both eyes are to receive the same drug and one eye is infected, use two separate bottles and carefully label each bottle with "right" or "left" for the correct eye.
- Wash your hands.
- Put on gloves if secretions are present in or around the eye.
- Explain the procedure to the patient.
- Have the patient sit in a chair, and you stand behind the patient.
- Ask the patient to tilt the head backward, with the back of the head resting against your body and looking up at the ceiling.
- Gently pull the lower lid down against the patient's cheek, forming a small pocket.
- Hold the eyedrop bottle (with the cap off) like a pencil, with the tip pointing down.
- Rest the wrist holding the bottle against the patient's cheek.
- Without touching any part of the eye or lid with the tip of the bottle, gently squeeze the bottle and release the prescribed number of drops into the pocket you have made with the patient's lower lid.
- Gently release the lower lid.
- Tell the patient to close the eye gently (without squeezing the lids tightly).
- Gently press and hold the corner of the eye nearest the nose to close off the punctum and prevent the drug from being absorbed systemically.
- Without pressing on the lid, gently blot away any excess drug or tears with a tissue.
- Remove your gloves, and place the cap back on the bottle.
- Ask the patient to keep the eye closed for about 1 minute.
- Wash your hands again.

A digital camera is set up with equipment to photograph retinal and choroidal blood vessels as the dye passes through them. The results can be viewed immediately on a computer screen. The procedure takes only a few minutes because the vessels fill quickly.

! DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE**Patient-Centered Care; Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration**

The patient is a 75-year-old woman from Mexico who was brought to the clinic by her daughter. The patient speaks no English, and the daughter serves as her interpreter. The daughter explains that even though her mother wears nonprescription glasses that she bought at the drugstore to do close work, she says that everything is always blurry. A complete eye examination is planned with an eye chart, an ophthalmoscope, a slit lamp, and tonometry.

1. What type of Snellen chart would be most appropriate for this patient? Explain your choice.
2. Should the daughter be allowed to stay with her? Why or why not? After an explanation by her daughter of what is expected of her, the patient participates in the Snellen chart test and "reads" the 70-foot line correctly but is incorrect on the 50-foot line. She then sits quietly and cooperates during the examination with the ophthalmoscope. However, when a slit-lamp examination is attempted, the patient keeps moving her head to the side and shouts "no, no, no," and tells her daughter that she is afraid of this big machine.
3. Is a slit-lamp examination important to perform for this patient? Why or why not?
4. What technique or techniques could be used to allay her fears?

Encourage patients to drink fluids to help eliminate the dye. Remind them that any yellow or green staining of the skin will disappear in a few hours. After the test, the urine will be bright green until the dye is excreted. Teach the patient to wear dark glasses and avoid direct sunlight until pupil dilation returns to normal, because the bright light will cause eye pain.

Electroretinography is the process of graphing the retina's response to light stimulation. This test is helpful in detecting and evaluating blood vessel changes from disease or drugs. The graph is obtained by placing a contact lens electrode on an anesthetized cornea. Lights at varying speeds and intensities are flashed, and the neural response is graphed. The measurement from the cornea is identical to the response that would be obtained if electrodes were placed directly on the retina.

Perimetry is a commonly used test to screen the visual fields. During this computerized test, the patient is asked to

look straight ahead and then indicate, by pressing a control button, when a moving light enters the peripheral vision. This process draws a "map" of the person's peripheral vision and any deficits.

Gonioscopy is a test performed when a high IOP is found and determines whether open angle or closed angle glaucoma is present. It uses a special lens that eliminates the corneal curve, is painless, and allows visualization of the angle where the iris meets the cornea.

Laser imaging of the retina and optic nerve creates a three-dimensional view of the back of the eye. It is commonly used for those people with ocular hypertension or who are at risk for glaucoma from other problems. This type of computerized examination assesses the thickness and contours of the optic nerve and retina for changes that indicate damage as a result of high IOP. This type of test can be used serially for a person at risk for glaucoma to detect early changes and indicate when intervention is needed.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to NOTICE in a patient with adequate sensation related to the eye and vision?

Physical Assessment

- Eyes are symmetric on the face on a line just about even with the tops of the ears.
- Eyes are clear with no drainage or open areas.
- Patient does not squint or tilt the head.
- Patient does not close one eye to read or see at a distance.
- Patient startles when a sudden move is made at the face.
- Patient blinks 5 to 10 times per minute.
- Pupils are the same size in each eye.

- Both pupils constrict when a light is shined at only one eye.
- Appearance is neat with buttons properly buttoned and hair combed or brushed.
- Patient comments on the presence of art or unusual visual objects in the immediate environment.
- Patient walks without hesitation into a room without bumping into objects in his or her path.

Psychological Assessment

- Patient is oriented and not confused.
- Patient makes eye contact when speaking.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Wash your hands before moving a patient's eyelids.
- If a patient has discharge from one eye, examine the eye without the discharge first.
- Wear gloves when examining an eye with drainage.
- Avoid using an ophthalmoscope on a confused patient.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients not to rub their eyes.
- Identify patients at risk for eye injury as a result of work environment or leisure activities.
- Urge all patients to wear eye protection when they are performing yard work, working in a woodshop or metal

shop, using chemicals, or are in any environment in which drops or particulate matter is airborne.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Provide opportunities for the patient and family to express their concerns about a possible change in vision status.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient about vision problems in any other members of the family, because some vision problems have a genetic component.
- Test the visual acuity of both eyes immediately of any person who experiences an eye injury or any sudden change in vision.

Care of Patients with Eye and Vision Problems

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Glaucoma

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Use aseptic technique when performing an eye examination or instilling drugs into the eye.
2. Apply the principles of infection control when caring for a patient with an eye infection.
3. Orient the patient with reduced vision to his or her immediate environment.
4. Ensure that all members of the health care team are aware of a patient's visual limitations and need for assistance.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach all people, especially those older than 40 years, to have an annual eye examination including measurement of intraocular pressure.
6. Teach patients and family members how to correctly instill ophthalmic drops and ointment into the eye.
7. Teach the patient and family how to alter the home environment for patient safety.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during procedures to correct vision and eye problems.

9. Provide opportunities for the patient and family to express concerns about a change in vision.
10. Refer the patient with reduced vision to local services for the blind.
11. Teach the patient with reduced vision about techniques for performing ADLs and self-care independently.

Physiological Integrity

12. Explain the consequences of increased intraocular pressure (IOP).
13. Identify common actions, conditions, and positions that increase IOP.
14. Prioritize educational needs for the patient after cataract surgery with lens replacement.
15. Prioritize educational needs for patients with primary open-angle glaucoma.
16. Describe the mechanisms of action and nursing implications of drug therapy for glaucoma.

Vision is affected by many factors and problems. Some problems occur gradually, such as cataracts, and others can result from an acute insult or illness. Even when reduced vision is temporary, the patient must make some changes in function or lifestyle.

EYELID DISORDERS

The eyelid is composed of thin skin attached to small muscles. It protects the eye surface and spreads tears. Problems can occur with changes in the structure, function, or position of the eyelid. Lid structure may also be altered by age.



FIG. 49-1 Application of ophthalmic ointment.

Blepharitis

Blepharitis, an inflammation of the eyelid edges, occurs most often in the older adult and those with dry eye syndrome (see the Keratoconjunctivitis Sicca section, p. 1056). Reduced tear production often leads to bacterial infection of the eye, because tears inhibit bacterial growth.

Patients usually have itchy, red, and burning eyes. **Seborrhea** (greasy, itchy scaling) of the eyebrows and eyelids is often present. Greasy scales and matting may be seen where the eyelashes exit the eyelid.

Blepharitis is controlled with eyelid care using warm, moist compresses followed by gentle scrubbing with dilute baby shampoo. Instruct the patient to avoid rubbing the eyes, because if infection is present, this action can spread the infection to other eye structures.

Entropion and Ectropion

An **entropion** is the turning inward of the eyelid causing the lashes to rub against the eye. Entropion can be caused by eyelid muscle spasms or by scarring and deformity of the eyelid after trauma. It occurs often among older adults because of age-related loss of tissue support.

The patient usually reports “feeling something in my eye.” Pain and tears may also be present. The eyelid is turned inward, and the conjunctiva is red. Corneal abrasion may result from constant irritation.

Surgery corrects eyelid position by either tightening the orbicular muscles and moving the eyelid to a normal position or by preventing inward rotation of the eyelid. After surgery, the eye is covered with a patch and the patient is discharged a few hours later.

Demonstrate instillation of eyedrops, and evaluate the patient’s ability to instill the drops. Instruct the patient to leave the patch in place until he or she is seen by the ophthalmologist and to report any pain or drainage under the patch. Teach the patient or family member how to clean the suture line with a cotton swab and the prescribed solution. A small amount of antibiotic ointment may be applied (Fig. 49-1). **Chart 49-1** describes how to apply ophthalmic ointment. **Chart 49-2** lists information on common ophthalmic drugs for eye inflammation and infection.

An **ectropion** is the turning outward and sagging of the eyelid, which often occurs with aging, caused by muscle

CHART 49-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Instillation of Ophthalmic Ointment

- Check the name, strength, and expiration date of the ointment to be instilled. Be sure it is an ophthalmic (eye) preparation and not a general topical ointment.
- Check to see whether only one eye is to receive the drug or if both eyes are to receive the drug.
- If both eyes are to receive the same drug and one eye is infected, use two separate tubes and carefully label each tube with “right” or “left” for the correct eye.
- Wash your hands and put on gloves.
- Explain the procedure to the patient.
- Have the patient sit in a chair, and you stand behind the patient.
- Ask the patient to tilt the head backward, with the back of the head resting against your body and looking up at the ceiling.
- Gently pull the lower lid down against the patient’s cheek, forming a small pocket.
- Hold the tube (with the cap off) like a pencil, with the tip pointing down.
- Rest the wrist holding the tube against the patient’s cheek.
- Without touching any part of the eye or lid with the tip of the tube, gently squeeze the tube and release about a $\frac{1}{4}$ - to $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch thin strip of ointment into the pocket you have made with the patient’s lower lid. Start at the nose side of the pocket, and move toward the outer edge of the pocket.
- Gently release the lower lid.
- Tell the patient to close the eye gently (without squeezing the lids tightly).
- With the patient’s eye closed, gently wipe away any excess ointment with a tissue.
- Tell the patient that sight in that eye will be blurred while the ointment is present in the eye and that he or she should not drive or operate heavy machinery until the ointment is removed.
- Remove your gloves, and place the cap back on the tube.
- Ask the patient to keep the eye closed for about 1 minute.
- Wash your hands again.
- To remove ointment from the eye, wear gloves if drainage is present.
- Then ask the patient to close the eye; wipe the closed lids with a clean tissue from the corner of the eye nearest the nose outward. If you are wiping the same eye twice, use a different area of the tissue or use a new one.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Check the route of administration for ophthalmic drugs. Most are administered as eye instillation route, not the oral route. Administering these drugs orally can cause systemic side effects in addition to not having a therapeutic effect on the eye.

relaxation or weakness. This lid position reduces the washing action of tears, leading to corneal drying and ulceration.

Patients often have constant tears and a sagging lower eyelid. Surgery can restore lid alignment. After surgery, the eye is covered with a patch and the patient is discharged. Nursing care is the same as for an entropion.

Hordeolum

A **hordeolum**, or *stye*, is an infection of the sweat glands in the eyelid (external hordeolum) or of the eyelid sebaceous gland (internal hordeolum). A red, swollen, tender area occurs on the skin surface side of the eyelid. The most

common causative organisms are *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*, and *Streptococcus*. The hordeolum usually affects only one eyelid at a time. Vision is not affected.

Small, beady, swollen areas may be on the skin side of the eyelid or on the conjunctival side of the eyelid. Pain occurs as the hordeolum fills with purulent material.

Management includes applying warm compresses four times a day and an antibacterial ointment. When the lesion opens, the pus drains and the pain subsides.

Nursing interventions include instructing the patient how to apply compresses. [Chart 49-3](#) describes the proper technique for application of an eye compress.

After compresses have been applied, instill antibiotic ointment. Advise the patient that ointments may cause blurred vision, and teach him or her to remove the ointment from the eyes before driving or operating machinery. To remove the ointment, teach the patient to close the eye and then gently wipe the closed eyelid from the nasal side of the eye outward.

CHART 49-2 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Eye Inflammation and Infection

DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS*†	RATIONALES
Topical Anesthetics		
Proparacaine HCl, or proxymetacaine (AK-Taine, Alcaine, Ocu-Caine, Ophthetac)	Remind the patient not to rub or touch the eye while it is anesthetized.	Touching may injure the eye.
Tetracaine HCl, cocaine HCl (Pontocaine)	Patch the eye if the patient leaves the facility before the anesthetic wears off. Instruct the patient not to use discolored solution. Teach the patient to store the bottle tightly closed.	The use of a patch prevents injury, such as corneal abrasion. Discoloration is a sign of altered drug composition. Air may cause drug contamination and oxidation.
Topical Steroids		
Prednisolone acetate (Ocu-Pred, Ophtho-Tate 🍁)	Tell the patient to shake the bottle vigorously before use.	Drug is a suspension; shaking is required to distribute the drug evenly in the solution.
Prednisolone phosphate (Inflamase)	Teach the patient to check for corneal ulceration (pain, reduced vision, secretions).	Steroid use predisposes the patient to local infection.
Dexamethasone (Dexair, Dextotic, Maxidex)	Warn the patient not to share eyedrops with others.	Disease transmission is possible when sharing eyedrops.
Betamethasone (Betnesol)		
Fluorometholone (Fluor-Op, Liquifilm)		
Anti-Infective Agents		
Gentamicin (Genoptic, Gentak Alcomycin 🍁)	Teach the patient the importance of using the drug exactly as prescribed, even if he or she needs to use it hourly.	Bacterial and fungal eye infections worsen rapidly and can lead to blindness if not treated adequately.
Tobramycin (Tobrex)	Teach the patient how to clean exudate from the eyes before using drops.	Cleansing decreases the risk for contaminating the drug and increases contact of the conjunctiva with the drug.
Ciprofloxacin (Ciloxan)		
Erythromycin (Ilotycin)		
Chlortetracycline (Aureomycin)		
Sulfisoxazole (Gantrisin)		
Ofloxacin (Ocuflox)	Reinforce the importance of completing the prescribed drug regimen.	Adherence is critical to maintain a therapeutic level of drug.
Levofloxacin (Quixin)		
Antibiotic-Steroid Combinations		
Tobramycin with dexamethasone (TobraDex)	This is the same as for the general anti-infective agents alone and for the steroids alone.	This is the same as for the general anti-infective agents alone and for the steroids alone.
Neomycin sulfate with polymyxin B sulfate and dexamethasone (Maxitrol)		
Topical Antiviral Agents		
Trifluridine (Viroptic)	Teach the patient to refrigerate the drug and protect it from light.	Drug stability is affected by warm temperatures and light.
Vidarabine (Vira-A)	Teach the patient to assess for itching lids and burning eyes.	Sensitivity to these drugs is common.
Antifungal Agents		
Amphotericin B	Teach the patient to assess for itching lids and burning eyes.	Sensitivity to these drugs is common.
Natamycin (Natacyn)		
Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Agents		
Flurbiprofen (Ocufen)	Teach the patient to check for bleeding in the eye.	These drugs disrupt platelet aggregation.
Diclofenac (Voltaren)	Teach the patient not to wear soft contact lenses during therapy with these drugs.	These drugs interact with contact lens materials and increase the risk for infection.
Bromfenac (Xibrom)		
Ketorolac (Acular)		

*When instilling eyedrops, teach patients to use nasal punctal occlusion to reduce the risk for systemic absorption and side effects.

†When more than one topical ophthalmic drug is prescribed, teach patients to separate the instillation of each drug by 10-15 minutes (or package recommendations).

CHART 49-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Application of an Ocular Compress

- Wash your hands.
- Fold a clean washcloth into fourths.
- Soak the washcloth with running tap water that is warm to your inner wrist. (If cool compresses are needed, follow the same steps using cold running tap water.)
- Place the cloth over your closed eye.
- Keep the cloth in place with minimal pressure until the cloth cools (or warms, if cool compresses are prescribed).
- Refold the washcloth so that a different “fourth” will be held against the eye.
- Resoak the cloth with running tap water.
- Repeat applications three times for as many times each day as prescribed by your health care provider.

Chalazion

A **chalazion** is an inflammation of a sebaceous gland in the eyelid. It begins with redness and tenderness, followed by a gradual *painless* swelling. Later, redness and tenderness are not present. Most chalazia protrude on the inside of the eyelid. The patient has eye fatigue, light sensitivity, and excessive tears.

Management includes applying warm compresses four times a day, followed by instillation of ophthalmic ointment. If the chalazion is large enough to affect vision or is cosmetically displeasing, it may be removed surgically.

After surgery, antibiotic ointment is instilled and the eye is covered with a patch. Best practices for application of a nonpressure eye patch are described in [Chart 49-4](#).

Instruct the patient to leave the eye patch in place for about 6 hours and then remove the patch and apply warm, wet compresses. Antibiotic eyedrops are instilled after use of

CHART 49-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Application of an Eye Patch

Nonpressure Eye Patch

1. Assemble the equipment:
 - Eye patch
 - Skin preparation pad
 - Nonallergenic paper tape
2. Explain the procedure to the patient.
3. Wash your hands.
4. Apply a skin preparation to the patient's forehead and cheek.
5. Instruct the patient to close both eyes gently.
6. Place a patch over the closed eyelid.



7. Apply tape from the cheek to the middle of the forehead in a diagonal line.



8. Cover the patch with overlapping pieces of tape.



Pressure Eye Patch

1. Assemble the equipment:
 - Two eye patches for each eye requiring treatment
 - Skin preparation pad
 - Nonallergenic paper tape
- 2-5. Follow corresponding steps under Nonpressure Eye Patch.
6. Fold one eye patch in half, place it over the closed eyelid, and apply a second eye patch (unfolded) over the folded one.



- 7, 8. Follow corresponding steps under Nonpressure Eye Patch.

the compresses. Teach him or her to immediately report increasing redness, purulent drainage, or reduced vision to the ophthalmologist.

KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS SICCA

Pathophysiology

The lacrimal system moistens the eye surface with tears and removes tears from the eye. Problems arise from reduced tear production, infection, or inflammation in the lacrimal system.

Keratoconjunctivitis sicca, or dry eye syndrome, results from changes in tear production, tear composition, or tear distribution. Drugs (e.g., antihistamines, beta-adrenergic blocking agents, anticholinergic drugs) also can reduce tear production. Diseases associated with decreased tear production include rheumatoid arthritis, leukemia, sarcoidosis, and Sjögren's syndrome. Radiation or chemical burns to the eye also decrease tear production. Injury to cranial nerve VII inhibits tears. Eye dryness may follow vision-enhancing surgery. Dry eye syndromes are much more common in women than in men (Pullen & Hall, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient has a foreign body sensation in the eye, burning and itching eyes, and *photophobia* (sensitivity to light). The corneal light reflex is dulled. Tears contain mucus strands.

Management depends on symptom severity. Cyclosporine (Restasis) eyedrops may be prescribed to increase tear production. Artificial tears (HypoTears, Refresh) also can be used to reduce daytime dryness. A lubricating ointment (Lacri-Lube SOP, Refresh P.M.) is used at night. If the dry eye syndrome is caused by an abnormal eyelid position, surgery may be needed.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client who is prescribed to use an ophthalmic ointment?

- "Keep the tube in the refrigerator to make the ointment easier to control when you squeeze the tube."
- "Wear gloves when you apply the ointment to prevent absorbing the drug through your skin."
- "Patch your eye at night to prevent ointment from getting on your bedding or in your hair."
- "Do not drive with ointment in your eyes."

CONJUNCTIVAL DISORDERS

The conjunctiva is a thin mucous membrane that covers and protects the eye. Because of its location, the conjunctiva is subject to trauma and infection.

Hemorrhage

Conjunctival blood vessels are fragile and can break with increased pressure during sneezing, coughing, or vomiting. Hemorrhages may also occur with hypertension, trauma, or blood clotting problems.

The small, well-defined area of hemorrhage is bright red under the conjunctiva. The patient is usually concerned

about its appearance although no pain or visual impairment occurs with the hemorrhage. It resolves within 14 days without treatment.

Conjunctivitis

Conjunctivitis is an inflammation or infection of the conjunctiva. Inflammation occurs from exposure to allergens or irritants. Infectious conjunctivitis occurs with bacterial or viral infection and is readily transmitted from person to person (Saligan & Yeh, 2008).

Allergic conjunctivitis manifestations are edema, a sensation of burning, a "bloodshot" eye appearance, excessive tears, and itching. Management includes vasoconstrictor and corticosteroid eyedrops (see Chart 49-2). Teach women to avoid using makeup near the eye until all symptoms have subsided.

Bacterial conjunctivitis, or "pink eye," is usually caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Haemophilus influenzae*. Manifestations are blood vessel dilation, mild edema, tears, and discharge. The discharge is watery at first and then becomes thicker, with shreds of mucus.

Cultures of the drainage are obtained to identify the organism. Drug therapy with topical antibiotics is prescribed to eliminate the infection. Nursing interventions focus on preventing infection spread to the other eye or to other people. Document the amount, color, and type of drainage. Remind the patient to wash his or her hands after touching the eye and before using eyedrops. Warn him or her not to touch the unaffected eye without first washing the hands and to avoid sharing washcloths and towels with others. Instruct women to discard eye makeup and applicators used at the time the infection developed to avoid the possibility of recontamination.

Trachoma

Trachoma is a chronic conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*. It scars the conjunctiva and is a common cause of preventable blindness worldwide. The incidence is highest in warm, moist climates where sanitation is poor.

The incubation period is 5 to 14 days, and at first the disease resembles bacterial conjunctivitis. Manifestations include tears, photophobia, and eyelid edema. Follicles form on the upper eyelid conjunctiva. As the disease progresses, the eyelid scars and turns inward, causing the eyelashes to damage the cornea.

Cultures are used to identify the causative organism. A 4-week course of oral or topical tetracycline (Achromycin, Apo-Tetra) or erythromycin (Apo-Erythro-EC, E-Mycin, E.E.S.) is given. Azithromycin (Zithromax) can be used once per week for 1 to 3 weeks.

Nursing interventions focus on infection control. Teach the patient to wash the hands before and after touching the eyes. Teach him or her to keep washcloths separate from those of unaffected people and to launder them separately.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients who are prescribed antibiotic eyedrops or ointments to complete the entire course of antibiotics. Stopping antibiotic therapy too soon promotes infection recurrence and development of antibiotic-resistant bacteria.

CORNEAL DISORDERS

For a sharp image to be focused on the retina, the cornea must be transparent and intact. Corneal problems may be caused by irritation or infection (keratitis) with ulceration of the corneal surface, degeneration of the cornea (keratoconus), or deposits in the cornea. All corneal problems reduce the refracting power of the cornea, and some can lead to blindness.

CORNEAL ABRASION, ULCERATION, AND INFECTION

Pathophysiology

A **corneal abrasion** is a scrape or scratch of the cornea that disrupts its integrity. This painful condition can be caused by a small foreign body, trauma, or, most commonly, contact lens use. Other conditions that promote loss of corneal integrity include malnutrition, dry eye syndromes, and some cancer therapies. The abrasion allows organisms to enter, leading to corneal infection. Bacterial, protozoal, and fungal infections can lead to **corneal ulceration**, which is a deeper disruption of the epithelium. *This problem is an emergency because the cornea has no separate blood supply and infections that can permanently impair vision develop rapidly.* Use of homemade contact lens solutions and the use of large-volume solution containers that can easily become contaminated have led to a sharp rise in the incidence of corneal ulcers infected with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and fungi.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient with a corneal disorder has pain, reduced vision, photophobia, and eye secretions. Cloudy or purulent fluid may be present on the eyelids or lashes. Wear gloves when examining the eye.

The entire cornea may look hazy or cloudy with a patchy area of ulceration. When fluorescein stain is used, the patchy areas appear green. Microbial culture and corneal scrapings can help determine the causative organism. Anti-infective therapy is started before the organism is identified because of the high risk for vision loss. For culture, obtain swabs from the ulcer and its edges. For corneal scrapings, the cornea is anesthetized with a topical agent and a physician or advanced practice nurse remove samples from the center and edge of the ulcer.

Antibiotics, antifungals, and antivirals are prescribed to reduce or eliminate the organisms. Usually, a broad-spectrum antibiotic is prescribed first and may be changed when culture results are known. Steroids may be used with antibiotics to reduce the inflammatory response in the eye. Drugs can be given topically as eyedrops, injected subconjunctivally, or injected IV. **Chart 48-4** in **Chapter 48** lists best practices for instilling eyedrops. The nursing priorities are to begin the drug therapy, to ensure patient understanding of the drug therapy regimen, and to prevent infection spread.

Often, the anti-infective therapy involves instilling eyedrops *every hour* for the first 24 hours. Teach the patient how to apply the eyedrops correctly. (See **Chart 48-2** in **Chapter 48**.) Use sterile saline eyedrops to demonstrate the technique,

and obtain a return demonstration. If the patient cannot safely self-apply the drugs, teach a family member how to do it.

If the eye infection occurs from a corneal abrasion or ulcer, only one eye is affected. Teach the patient not to use the drug in the unaffected eye. In addition, teach him or her to wash hands after touching the affected eye and before touching or doing anything to the healthy eye. If both eyes are infected, separate bottles of drugs are needed for each eye. Teach the patient to clearly label the bottles “right eye” and “left eye” and not to switch the drugs from eye to eye. Also teach him or her to completely care for one eye, then wash the hands, and using the drugs for the remaining eye, care for that eye. Teach the patient not to wear contact lenses during the entire time that these drugs are being used because the eye then has fewer protections against infection or injury. In addition, the drugs can cloud or damage the contact lenses.

Stress the importance of applying the drug as often as prescribed, even at night. Stopping the infection at this stage can save the vision in the infected eye. Also instruct the patient to make and keep all follow-up appointments; usually the patient is seen again in 24 hours or less.

The type of anti-infective used and the frequency of application may change when the organism is identified and the infection is responding to the therapy. Drug therapy may continue for 3 or more weeks to ensure eradication of the infection. Warn women to avoid using makeup around the eye until the infection has cleared to prevent spread of infection. Instruct patients to discard all open containers of contact lens solutions and bottles of eyedrops because these may be contaminated. Patients should not wear contact lenses for weeks to months until the infection is gone and the ulcer is healed.

KERATOCONUS AND CORNEAL OPACITIES

Pathophysiology

The cornea can permanently lose its shape, become scarred or cloudy, or become thinner. When these conditions occur, refraction is reduced and images are not focused sufficiently for useful vision. **Keratoconus**, the degeneration of the corneal tissue resulting in abnormal corneal shape, can occur with trauma or may be an inherited disorder (**Fig. 49-2**). Inadequately treated corneal infections and severe trauma

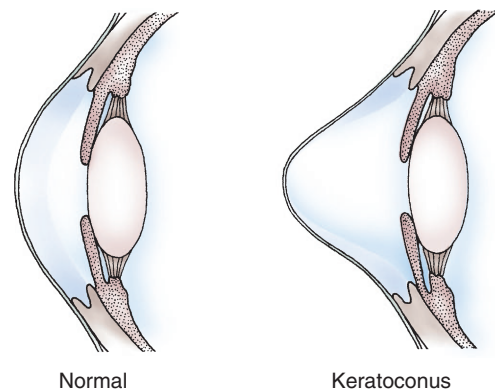


FIG. 49-2 Profile of a normal cornea and one with keratoconus.

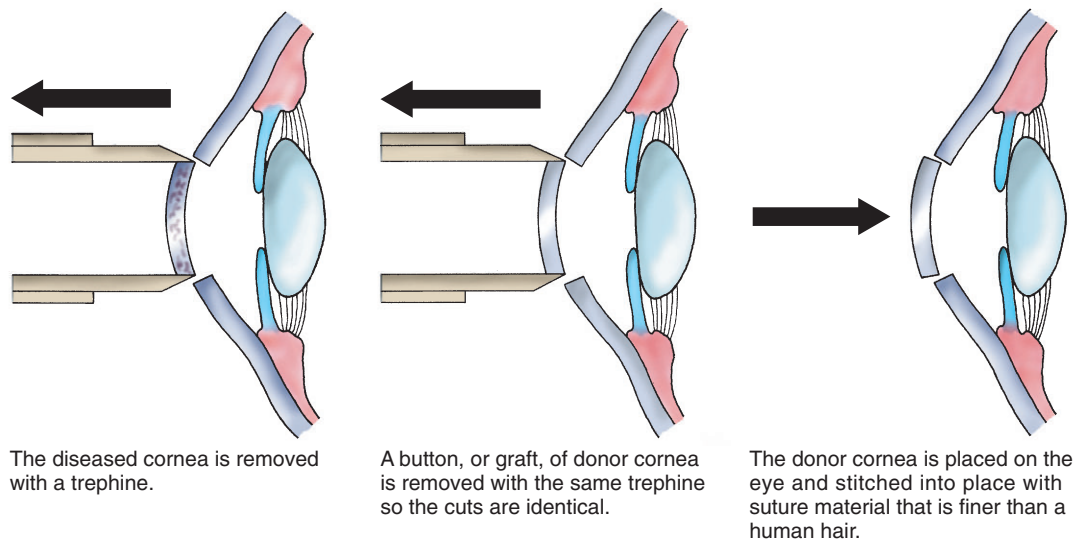


FIG. 49-3 The steps involved in corneal transplantation (penetrating keratoplasty).

can damage and scar the cornea and lead to severe visual impairment that can be improved only by surgical interventions.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

For a misshaped cornea that is still clear, surgical management involves a corneal implant that adjusts the shape of the cornea. The device approved for this procedure is the Intacs corneal ring. With this procedure, the shape of the cornea is changed by placing a flexible ring in the outer edges of the cornea (outside of the optical zone).

The procedure is performed on both eyes during one surgery under local anesthesia. Improvement to best vision is immediate. Overcorrection or undercorrection of refraction is possible. However, removal, replacement, or adjustment of ring tightness can enhance satisfaction. In addition, replacements can be made if the patient's vision changes further as a result of aging. Because the ring is applied to the cornea outside of the optical zone, the risk for corneal clouding or scarring is lower than with other surgical eye procedures.

Surgery to improve clarity for a permanent corneal disorder that obscures vision is a **keratoplasty** (corneal transplant), in which the diseased corneal tissue is removed and replaced with tissue from a human donor cornea. This process improves vision by removing corneal deformities and replacing them with healthy corneal tissue.

Preoperative care may be short, with little time for teaching because transplantation is performed when the donor cornea becomes available. The patient is usually anxious. Use a calm approach to assess his or her knowledge of the surgery and of care before and after surgery.

Examine the eyes for signs of infection, and report any redness, drainage, or edema to the ophthalmologist. Instill prescribed antibiotic eyedrops, and obtain IV access before surgery.

Operative procedures are *keratoplasties* and are usually performed with local anesthesia in an ambulatory surgical setting. The transplant may involve the entire depth of corneal

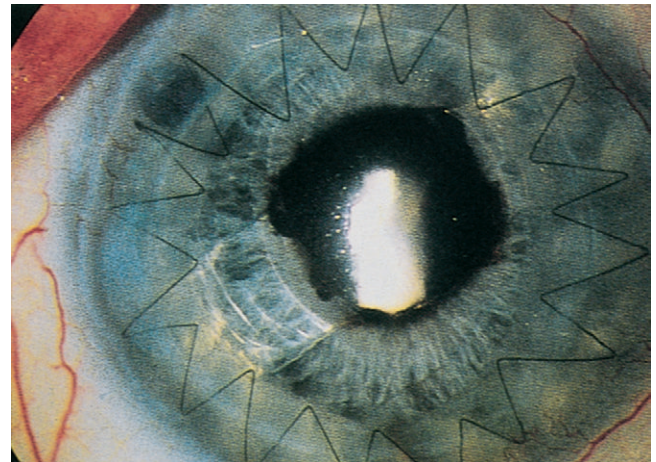


FIG. 49-4 The appearance of the eye with sutures in place after corneal transplantation.

tissue (penetrating keratoplasty) or only certain layers of the corneal tissue (lamellar keratoplasty). The nerves around and behind the eye are numbed so that the patient cannot move or see out of the eye. The center 7 to 8 mm of the diseased cornea is removed (Fig. 49-3) with an instrument that works like a cookie cutter. The same instrument is used to cut the tissue graft from the donor cornea so that the graft will be a perfect fit. The donor corneal graft is sutured into place on the eye. Fig. 49-4 shows the eye after transplantation. The procedure usually takes about an hour, and the patient is discharged to home 1 to 2 hours after the procedure.

Postoperative care involves extensive patient teaching. After the procedure, an antibiotic is injected under the conjunctiva and an antibiotic ointment instilled. The eye is covered with a pressure patch and a protective shield until the next day, when the patient returns to the surgeon.

Notify the ophthalmologist of changes in vital signs or of drainage on the dressing. Instruct the patient to lie on the nonoperative side to reduce intraocular pressure (IOP).

TABLE 49-1 ACTIVITIES THAT INCREASE INTRAOCULAR PRESSURE

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Bending from the waist | • Vomiting |
| • Lifting objects weighing more than 10 lbs | • Having sexual intercourse |
| • Sneezing, coughing | • Keeping the head in a dependent position |
| • Blowing the nose | • Wearing tight shirt collars |
| • Straining to have a bowel movement | |

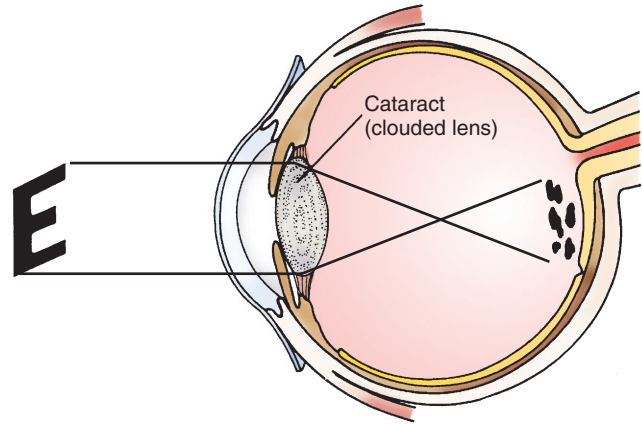
Show the patient or family member how to apply a patch, and obtain a return demonstration. The patch may need to be worn during the day for the first 3 to 5 days. Teach the patient to wear the shield at night for the first month after surgery and whenever he or she is around small children or pets. Instruct him or her *not* to use an ice pack on the eye. Complications after surgery include bleeding, wound leakage, infection, and graft rejection. Teach the patient how to instill eyedrops, and obtain a return demonstration. Show pictures of what the eye and sutures should look like. Teach him or her to examine the eye (or have a family member do the examination) daily for the presence of infection or graft rejection. The presence of purulent discharge, a continuous leak of clear fluid from around the graft site (not tears), or excessive bleeding should be reported immediately to the surgeon. Other complications include decreased vision, increased redness of the eye, pain, increased sensitivity to light, and the presence of light flashes or “floaters” in the field of vision. Teach the patient to report any of these manifestations to the surgeon if they develop after the first 48 hours and persist for more than 6 hours.

The eye should be protected from any activity that can increase the pressure on, around, or inside the eye. Teach the patient to avoid jogging, running, dancing, and any other activity that promotes rapid or jerky head motions for several weeks after surgery. Other activities that may raise intraocular pressure (IOP) and should be avoided are listed in Table 49-1. Returning to work depends on the type of work. Patients who have sedentary jobs, such as secretaries, may return to work in 1 week, whereas those who perform heavy lifting or manual labor may need to be off work for 6 to 8 weeks.

Graft rejection can occur. Inflammation starts in the donor cornea near the graft edge and moves toward the center. Vision is reduced, and the cornea becomes cloudy. Topical corticosteroids and other immunosuppressants are used to stop the rejection process. If rejection continues, the graft becomes opaque and blood vessels branch into the opaque tissue.

Eye donation is a common procedure and needed for corneal transplantation. Corneal tissue is obtained from a local eye or tissue bank. An eye bank obtains its supply of corneal tissue from volunteer donors. These donors must be free of infectious disease or cancer at the time of death. If a deceased patient is a potential eye donor, follow these steps:

- Raise the head of the bed 30 degrees.
- Instill prescribed antibiotic eyedrops, such as Neosporin or tobramycin.
- Close the eyes, and apply a *small* ice pack to the closed eyes.
- Contact the family and physician to discuss eye donation.

**FIG. 49-5** The visual impairment produced by the presence of a cataract.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which comment made by a client 1 week after a corneal transplant indicates to the nurse a need to review postoperative care?

- A. “I have been feeding my cat on the counter so that I don’t have to bend over.”
- B. “I have been using an icepack on my eye to reduce the redness and swelling.”
- C. “My daughter has been helping me inspect my eye and place the eyedrops.”
- D. “Instead of reading a book, I now listen to books on tape.”

CATARACT

Pathophysiology

The lens is a transparent, refractive elastic structure suspended behind the iris. A **cataract** is a lens opacity that distorts the image projected onto the retina (Fig. 49-5). With aging, the lens gradually loses water and increases in density (Touhy & Jett, 2010). This increased density occurs as older lens fibers are compressed and new fibers are produced in the outer layers. Lens proteins dry out and form crystals. As the density of the lens increases, it becomes opaque with a painless loss of transparency. Both eyes may have cataracts; however, the rate of progression in each eye is usually different.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Cataracts are classified by nature or by onset. They may be present at birth or develop at any time. Cataracts may be age-related or caused by trauma or exposure to toxic agents. They also occur with other diseases and eye disorders (Table 49-2).

Incidence/Prevalence

About 20 to 22 million people in North America have cataracts (National Eye Institute, 2010; Statistics Canada, 2010). The age-related cataract is the most common type. Some degree of cataract formation is expected in all people older than 70 years.

TABLE 49-2 COMMON CAUSES OF CATARACTS**Age-Related Cataracts**

- Lens water loss and fiber compaction

Traumatic Cataracts

- Blunt injury to eye or head
- Penetrating eye injury
- Intraocular foreign bodies
- Radiation exposure, therapy

Toxic Cataracts

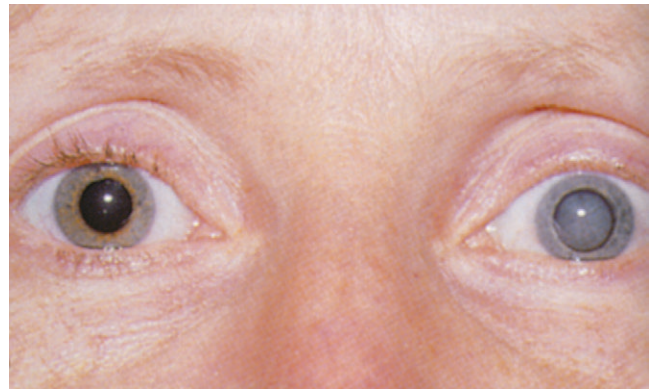
- Corticosteroids
- Phenothiazine derivatives
- Miotic agents

Associated Cataracts

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypoparathyroidism
- Down syndrome
- Chronic sunlight exposure

Complicated Cataracts

- Retinitis pigmentosa
- Glaucoma
- Retinal detachment

**FIG. 49-6** The appearance of an eye with a mature cataract.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Although most cases of cataracts in North America are age-related, the onset of cataract formation occurs earlier with heavy sun exposure or exposure to other sources of ultraviolet (UV) light. Teach people to reduce the risk for cataract by wearing sunglasses that limit exposure to UV light whenever they are out in bright sunlight. Cataracts also may result from direct eye injury. Urge all people to wear eye and head protection during sports, such as baseball, or any activity that increases the risk for the eye being hit by objects in motion.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Age is important because cataracts are most prevalent in the older adult. Ask about these predisposing factors:

- Recent or past trauma to the eye
- Exposure to radioactive materials, x-rays, or UV light
- Systemic disease (e.g., diabetes mellitus, hypoparathyroidism, Down syndrome)
- Prolonged use of corticosteroids, chlorpromazine, beta blockers, or miotic drugs
- Intraocular disease (e.g., recurrent uveitis)

Ask the patient to describe his or her vision. For example, you might say, “Tell me what you can see well and what you have difficulty seeing.”

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Early manifestations of cataracts are slightly blurred vision and decreased color perception. At first, the patient may think his or her glasses or contact lenses are smudged. As lens cloudiness continues, blurred and double vision occur and

the patient may have difficulty with ADLs. Without surgical intervention, visual impairment progresses to blindness. *No pain or eye redness is associated with age-related cataract formation.*

Vision is tested using a Snellen chart and brightness acuity testing (see [Chapter 48](#)). Examine the lens with an ophthalmoscope, and describe any observed densities by size, shape, and location. As the cataract matures, the opacity makes it difficult to see the retina and the red reflex may be absent. When this occurs, the pupil is white ([Fig. 49-6](#)).

Psychosocial Assessment

Loss of vision is gradual, and the patient may not be aware of it until reading or driving is affected. Fear of blindness can be overwhelming, and the patient has anxiety about loss of independence. Encourage the patient and family to express concerns about reduced vision.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The priority problem for the patient with cataracts is reduced vision, which is a safety risk. Patients often live with reduced vision for years before the cataract is removed. Interventions for safety and independence before surgery are on pp. 1073-1075 in Patient-Centered Collaborative Care in the Reduced Vision section.

Improving Vision

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with cataracts is expected to recognize when he or she is no longer able to perform ADLs safely and independently and then is expected to have cataract surgery. This procedure is covered by Medicare for patients who are 65 years or older.

Interventions. Surgery is the only “cure” for cataracts. After vision is reduced to the extent that ADLs are affected, the surgery should be performed as soon as possible.

Preoperative Care. The health care provider has the responsibility of (1) giving the patient accurate information so that he or she can make informed decisions about treatment and (2) obtaining informed consent. Reinforce this information, and teach about the nature of cataracts, their progression, and their treatment.

Because cataract surgery is usually an ambulatory procedure and most patients are older, preoperative teaching is challenging. Assess how the patient’s vision affects ADLs, especially dressing, eating, and ambulating. Stress that care

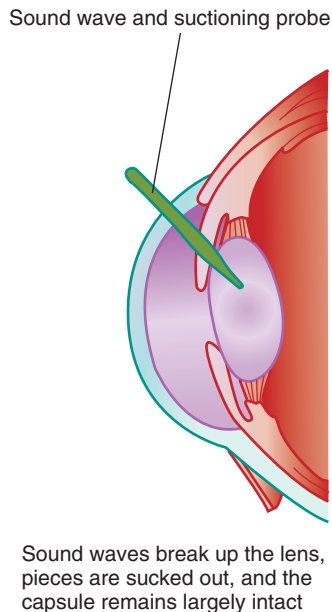


FIG. 49-7 Cataract removal by phacoemulsification.

after surgery requires the instillation of different types of eyedrops several times a day for 2 to 4 weeks. Careful assessment of eye appearance is also needed. If the patient is unable to perform these tasks, help him or her make arrangements for this care.

Ask the patient whether he or she takes any drugs that affect blood clotting, such as aspirin, warfarin (Coumadin), clopidogrel (Plavix), and dabigatran (Pradaxa). Ensure that this information is communicated to the surgeon because some of these drugs may need to be discontinued before cataract surgery.

An IV infusion may or may not be started in the operating room. A sedative is given before surgery, and a series of ophthalmic drugs are instilled just before surgery to dilate the pupils and cause vasoconstriction. Other eyedrops are instilled to induce paralysis to prevent lens movement. When the patient is in the surgical area, a local anesthetic is injected into the muscle cone behind the eye for anesthesia and eye paralysis.

Operative Procedures. Extraction of the lens is most commonly performed by *phacoemulsification* (Fig. 49-7). A probe is inserted through the capsule, and high-frequency sound waves break the lens into small pieces, which are then removed by suction. The capsule remains intact, and the replacement intraocular lens (IOL) is placed inside it to focus light rays in the retina. The IOL is a small, clear, plastic lens. Different types are available, and one is selected by the surgeon and patient to allow correction of a specific refractive error. Some patients have distant vision restored to 20/20 and may need glasses only for reading or close work. Some replacement lenses have multiple focal planes and may correct all vision for a patient to the extent that glasses or contact lenses may not be needed. Lens replacement surgery is now performed for people who do not have cataracts but who want corrected vision.

Postoperative Care. Immediately after surgery, antibiotics are given subconjunctivally. Usually antibiotic and steroid

ointments also are instilled. The eye is left unpatched, and the patient is discharged within an hour after surgery. Instruct him or her to wear dark glasses outdoors or in brightly lit environments until the pupil responds to light. Teach the patient and family members how to instill the prescribed eyedrops. (See Chart 48-2 in Chapter 48.) Work with them in creating a written schedule for the timing and the order of eyedrops administration. Stress the importance of keeping all follow-up appointments.

Remind the patient that mild eye itching is normal, as is a “bloodshot appearance.” The eyelid may be slightly swollen. However, significant swelling or bruising is abnormal. Cool compresses may be beneficial. Discomfort at the site is controlled by a mild analgesic such as acetaminophen (Abenol , Tylenol) or acetaminophen with oxycodone (Endocet , Percocet, Tylox). Remind him or her to avoid aspirin because of its effects on blood clotting.

Pain early after surgery may indicate increased intraocular pressure (IOP) or hemorrhage. Teach patients to contact the surgeon if pain occurs with nausea or vomiting.

To reduce increases in IOP, teach the patient and family about activity restrictions. Activities that can cause a sudden rise in IOP are listed in Table 49-1.

Another major complication is infection. Teach the patient and family to observe for increasing redness of the eye, a change in visual acuity, tears, and photophobia. Creamy white, dry, crusty drainage on the eyelids and lashes is normal. However, yellow or green drainage indicates infection and must be reported.

Patients experience a dramatic improvement in vision on the day of surgery. Remind them that final best vision will not be present until 4 to 6 weeks after surgery. However, vision is not expected to become worse after the procedure.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Instruct the patient who has had cataract surgery to immediately report any reduction of vision after surgery in the eye that had the cataract removed.

Community-Based Care

The patient is usually discharged within an hour after cataract surgery. Nursing interventions focus on helping the patient and family with plans for return to the home, assisted-living, or extended-care setting.

Home Care Management

If the patient has difficulty instilling eyedrops, a supportive neighbor, friend, or family member can be taught the procedure. Adaptive equipment that positions the bottle of eyedrops directly over the eye can also be purchased (Fig. 49-8). Eyedrops are often prescribed for 2 to 6 weeks after cataract surgery.

Teaching for Self-Management

The best outcome of cataract removal requires close adherence to the drug regimen after surgery. Providing the patient or family with accurate information and demonstration of needed skills are nursing priorities for this patient population (Lockey, 2009). Review these indications of complications



FIG. 49-8 The Xal-Ease adaptive device for self-administering eyedrops.

after cataract surgery with the patient and family before discharge:

- Sharp, sudden pain in the eye
- Bleeding or increased discharge
- Green or yellow, thick drainage
- Lid swelling
- Reappearance of a bloodshot sclera after the initial appearance has cleared
- Decreased vision
- Flashes of light or floating shapes

Remind the patient to avoid activities that might increase IOP (see [Table 49-1](#)). Hair may be washed a day or two after surgery but only with the head tilted back, such as in a beauty salon or barber shop, to avoid getting water in the eye. Teach the patient to stand in the shower with the face away from the showerhead for the first week after surgery.

Teach the patient about activity restrictions. Cooking and light housekeeping are permitted, but vacuuming should be avoided for several weeks because of the forward flexion involved and the rapid, jerky movements required. Advise him or her to refrain from driving, operating machinery, and participating in sports until given specific permission from the ophthalmologist. [Chart 49-5](#) lists items to cover in the focused assessment of a patient in the home environment after cataract surgery.

Health Care Resources

If the patient lives alone and has no support, arrange for a home care nurse to assess him or her and the home situation. If the patient is unable to instill eyedrops independently, a friend, neighbor, or family member can be taught this technique.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with cataracts on the basis of improving vision. The expected outcomes include that the patient after cataract surgery will:

CHART 49-5 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient after Cataract Surgery

Assess the eye and vision:

- Visual acuity in both eyes using a Jaeger card
- Visual fields of both eyes
- Compare operative eye with nonoperative eye for presence or absence of:
 - Redness
 - Tearing
 - Drainage

Ask the patient about:

- Pain in or around the operative eye
- Any change in visual acuity (decreased or improved) in the operative eye
- Whether any of these has been noticed in the operative eye:
 - Dark spots
 - Increase in the number of floaters
 - Bright flashes of light

Assess the home environment for:

- Safety hazards (especially tripping and falling hazards)
- Kitchen hazards
- Level of room lighting

Assess patient adherence with and understanding of treatment and limitations, such as:

- Signs and symptoms to report
- Drug regimen
- Activity restrictions

Assess functional ability:

- Activities of daily living
- Adherence to drug regimen

- Have improved sensory function (vision)
- Recognize manifestations of complications

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client who had cataract removal with placement of an intraocular implant 1 week ago now calls in and reports that her eye is more bloodshot than it was yesterday and that a small amount of greenish drainage is present. What is the priority nursing action?

- Reassure the client that these symptoms are normal for this stage of recovery after cataract surgery.
- Explain how to apply a wet compress to the affected eye for 15 minutes four times daily.
- Instruct the client to come to the office immediately to be seen by the ophthalmologist.
- Instruct the client to use the antibiotic eyedrops four times daily instead of twice daily.

GLAUCOMA

Pathophysiology

Glaucoma is a group of eye disorders resulting in increased IOP. Intraocular pressure (IOP) is the fluid pressure within the eye. As described in [Chapter 48](#), the eye is a hollow organ. For proper eye function, the gel in the posterior segment (vitreous humor) and the fluid in the anterior segment (aqueous humor) must be present in set amounts that apply pressure inside the eye to keep it ball-shaped.

TABLE 49-3 COMMON CAUSES OF GLAUCOMA**Primary Glaucoma**

- Aging
- Heredity
- Central retinal vein occlusion

Associated Glaucoma

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypertension
- Severe myopia
- Retinal detachment

Secondary Glaucoma

- Uveitis
- Iritis
- Neovascular disorders
- Trauma
- Ocular tumors
- Degenerative disease
- Eye surgery

The gel-like vitreous humor is made as the eyes form and grow. Once eye growth is complete, this volume does not change. The aqueous humor, however, is continuously made from blood plasma. The ciliary bodies located behind the iris and just in front of the lens make and secrete this fluid (see Fig. 48-2 in Chapter 48). The fluid flows through the pupil into the bulging area in front of the iris. At the outer edges of the iris beneath the cornea, blood vessels collect fluid and return it to the blood. Usually about 1 mL of aqueous humor is present at all times, but it is continuously made and reabsorbed at a rate of about 5 mL daily. *A normal IOP requires a balance between production and outflow of aqueous humor. If the IOP becomes too high, the extra pressure compresses retinal blood vessels and photoreceptors and their synapsing nerve fibers. This compression results in poorly oxygenated photoreceptors and nerve fibers. These sensitive nerve tissues become ischemic and die. When too many have died, sight is lost and the person is permanently blind.* Tissue damage usually starts in the periphery and moves inward toward the fovea centralis. Left untreated, glaucoma can result in blindness. Glaucoma is usually painless, and the patient may be unaware of a gradual reduction in vision.

There are several causes and types of glaucoma (Table 49-3). It is classified as primary, secondary, or associated. In primary glaucoma, the most common form, the structures involved in circulation and reabsorption of the aqueous humor undergo direct pathologic change.

Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG), the most common form of primary glaucoma, usually affects both eyes and has no symptoms in the early stages. Outflow of aqueous humor through the chamber angle is reduced. Because the fluid cannot leave the eye at the same rate it is produced, IOP gradually increases. **Primary angle-closure glaucoma** (also called *PACG* or *acute glaucoma*) is less common, has a sudden onset, and is an emergency. The basic problems are a narrowed angle and forward displacement of the iris. The iris pressing against the cornea closes the chamber angle, obstructing the outflow of aqueous humor. This can happen suddenly and without warning. It is more common in women and Asian patients (Kock & Sikes, 2009).

Glaucoma is a common cause of blindness in affluent countries. It is age-related, occurring in about 10% of people older than 80 years (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG) develops slowly, with gradual loss of visual fields that may go unnoticed because central vision is unaffected. At times, the patient may have foggy vision, reduced accommodation, mild aching in the eyes, or headaches and may require frequent changes in eye-glass prescriptions. Late manifestations occur after irreversible damage to optic nerve function and include seeing halos around lights, losing peripheral vision, and having decreased vision that does not improve with eyeglasses. The Concept Map on p. 1066 addresses collaborative care issues for patients who have glaucoma.

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Ophthalmoscopic examination of the patient with glaucoma shows cupping and atrophy of the optic disc. It becomes wider and deeper and turns white or gray. Visual fields are measured to determine the extent of peripheral vision loss. In POAG, the visual fields first show a small defect that gradually progresses to a larger field defect.

Manifestations of acute angle-closure glaucoma differ from those of POAG. The onset is acute, and the patient has sudden, severe pain around the eyes that radiates over the face. Headache or brow pain, nausea, and vomiting may occur. Other manifestations include seeing colored halos around lights and sudden blurred vision with decreased light perception. The sclera may appear reddened and the cornea foggy. Ophthalmoscopic examination reveals a shallow anterior chamber, cloudy aqueous humor, and a moderately dilated, nonreactive pupil.

Diagnostic Assessment

An elevated intraocular pressure (IOP) is measured by tonometry. In open-angle glaucoma, the tonometry reading is between 22 and 32 mm Hg (normal is 10 to 21 mm Hg). In angle-closure glaucoma, the tonometry reading may be 30 mm Hg or higher. Visual field testing by perimetry is performed, as is visualization by gonioscopy to determine whether the angle is open or closed (Sharts-Hopko & Glynn-Milley, 2009). Usually, the optic nerve is imaged to determine to what degree nerve damage is present. All of these diagnostic assessment techniques are described in Chapter 48.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

Blindness from glaucoma can be prevented by early detection, lifelong treatment, and close monitoring with follow-up care. Some degree of vision loss occurs, although use of topical agents that reduce IOP has been found to delay or prevent damage. Chart 49-6 lists ways to assist the person with impaired vision to remain as independent as possible.

Concept Map: Primary Open-Angle Glaucoma (POAG)

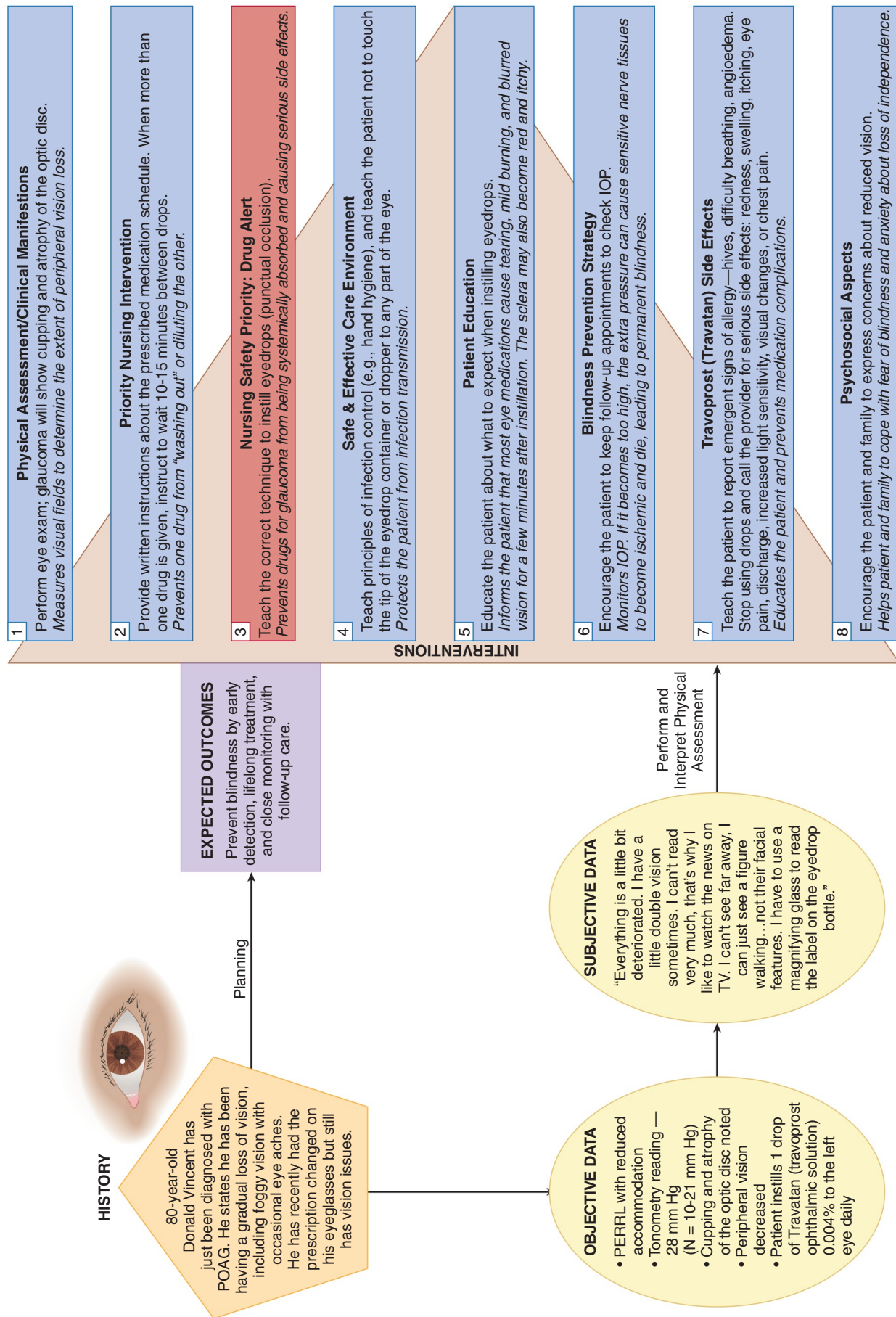


CHART 49-6 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Promote Independent Living in Patients with Impaired Vision**Drugs**

- Having a neighbor, relative, friend, or visiting nurse visit once a week to measure the proper drugs for each day may be helpful.
- If the patient is to take drugs more than once each day, it is helpful to use a container of a different shape (with a lid) each time. For example, if the patient is to take drugs at 9 AM, 1 PM, and 9 PM, the 9 AM drugs would be placed in a round container, the 1 PM drugs in a square container, and the 9 PM drugs in a triangular container.
- It is helpful to place each day's drug containers in a separate box with raised letters on the side of the box spelling out the day.
- "Talking clocks" are available for the patient with low vision.
- Some drug boxes have alarms that can be set for different times.

Communication

- Telephones with large, raised block numbers may be helpful. The best models are those with black numbers on a white phone or white numbers on a black phone.
- Telephones that have a programmable, automatic dialing feature are very helpful. Programmed numbers should include those for the fire department, police, relatives, friends, neighbors, and 911.

Safety

- It is best to leave furniture the way the patient wants it and not move it.
- Throw rugs are best eliminated.
- Appliance cords should be short and kept out of walkways.
- Lounge-style chairs with built-in footrests are preferable to footstools.
- Nonbreakable dishes, cups, and glasses are preferable to breakable ones.
- Cleansers and other toxic agents should be labeled with large, raised letters.
- Hook-and-loop (Velcro) strips at hand level may help mark the locations of switches and electrical outlets.

Food Preparation

- Meals on Wheels is a service that many older adults find helpful. This service brings meals at mealtime, cooked and ready to eat.

The cost of this service varies, depending on the patient's ability to pay.

- Many grocery stores offer a "shop by telephone" service. The patient can either complete a computer booklet indicating types, amounts, and brands of items desired, or the store will complete this booklet over the telephone by asking the patient specific information. The store then delivers groceries to the patient's door (many stores also offer a "put away" service) and charges the patient's bank card.
- A microwave oven is a safer means of cooking than a standard stove, although many older patients are afraid of microwave ovens. If the patient has and will use a microwave oven, others can prepare meals ahead of time, label them, and freeze them for later use. Also, many microwavable complete frozen dinners that comply with a variety of dietary restrictions are available.
- Friends or relatives may be able to help with food preparation. Often relatives do not know what to give an older person for birthdays or other gift-giving occasions. One suggestion is a homemade prepackaged frozen dinner that the patient enjoys.

Personal Care

- Handgrips should be installed in bathrooms.
- The tub floor should have a nonskid surface.
- Male patients should use an electric shaver rather than a razor.
- Choosing a hairstyle that is becoming but easy to care for (avoiding parts) helps in independent living.
- Home hair care services may be available.

Diversional Activity

- Some patients can read large-print books, newspapers, and magazines (available through local libraries and vision services).
- Books, magazines, and some newspapers are available on audiotapes or discs.
- Patients experienced in knitting or crocheting may be able to create items fashioned from straight pieces, such as afghans.
- Card games, dominoes, and some board games that are available in large, high-contrast print may be helpful for patients with low vision.

Drug therapy for glaucoma focuses on reducing IOP through these mechanisms:

- Constricting the pupil so that the ciliary muscle is contracted, allowing better circulation of the aqueous humor to the site of absorption
- Reducing the production or increasing the absorption of aqueous humor

Eyedrop drugs are the mainstay of control for glaucoma. They do not improve lost vision but prevent more damage by decreasing IOP. The classes of drugs to manage glaucoma are the prostaglandins agonists, adrenergic agonists, beta-adrenergic blockers, cholinergic agonists, and carbonic anhydrase inhibitors. Most eyedrops cause tearing, mild burning, and blurred vision for a few minutes after instilling the drug. The sclera may also become red and itchy. Specific drug actions and nursing interventions are listed in [Chart 49-7](#).

The priority nursing intervention for the patient on drug therapy for glaucoma is teaching. Provide written instructions similar to those in [Chart 48-2](#) in [Chapter 48](#). The benefit of drug therapy is achieved only when the drugs are used on the prescribed schedule, usually every 12 hours. Teach patients

the importance of instilling the drops on time and not skipping doses. When more than one drug is prescribed, teach him or her to wait 10 to 15 minutes between drug instillations to prevent one drug from "washing out" or diluting another drug. Stress the need for good handwashing, keeping the eyedrop container tip clean, and avoiding touching the tip to any part of the eye. Also teach the technique of punctal occlusion (placing pressure on the corner of the eye near the nose) immediately after eyedrop instillation to prevent systemic absorption of the drug. [Fig. 49-9](#) demonstrates this technique.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Most eyedrops used for glaucoma therapy can be absorbed systemically and cause serious systemic problems. Although punctal occlusion should be used after instilling any type of eyedrop, it is critical to teach patients to use the technique with eyedrops for glaucoma.

Systemic osmotic drugs may be given for angle-closure glaucoma as part of emergency management to rapidly

CHART 49-7 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY (EYEDROPS)

Categories for Management of Glaucoma

CATEGORY AND DRUG	PURPOSE/ACTIONS	NURSING IMPLICATIONS	RATIONALES
Prostaglandin Agonists Bimatoprost (Lumigan) Latanoprost (Xalatan) Travoprost (Travatan)	Drugs lower IOP by dilating the blood vessels in the trabecular mesh of the eye, where the aqueous humor is reabsorbed, collecting more aqueous humor and allowing more fluid to leave the eye.	Teach the patient to check the cornea for abrasions or other signs of trauma. Remind the patient that, over time, the eye color darkens and eyelashes elongate in the eye receiving the drug. If only one eye is to be treated, teach the patient <i>not</i> to place drops in the other eye to try to make the eye colors similar. Warn the patient that using higher doses than are prescribed can reduce the effectiveness of the drug in controlling the glaucoma.	Drugs should not be used when the cornea is not intact. Knowing the side effects in advance reassures the patient that their presence is expected and normal. Using the drug in an eye with normal IOP can cause a <i>lower</i> -than-normal IOP, which reduces vision. Drug action is based on blocking receptors, which can increase in number when the drug is overused.
Adrenergic Agonists Apraclonidine (Iopidine) Brimonidine tartrate (Alphagan) Dipivefrin hydrochloride (Propine)	These drugs bind to receptors in the eye, reducing the amount of aqueous humor produced by the ciliary bodies. In addition, the pupil of the eye is dilated and flow of the fluid through the pupil is improved. Both these actions reduce the amount of fluid present in the eye at any one time, lowering the intraocular pressure.	Ask whether the patient is taking any antidepressants from the MAO inhibitor class, such as phenelzine (Nardil) or tranylcypromine (Parnate). Teach the patient to wear dark glasses outdoors and also indoors when lighting is bright. Teach the patient not to use the eyedrops with contact lenses in place and to wait 15 minutes after using the drug to put in the lenses.	These enzyme inhibitors increase blood pressure as do the adrenergic agonists. When taken together, the patient may experience hypertensive crisis. The pupil dilates (mydriasis) and remains dilated, even when there is plenty of light, causing discomfort. These drugs are absorbed by the contact lens, which can become discolored or cloudy.
Beta-Adrenergic Blockers Betaxolol hydrochloride (Betoptic) Carteolol (Cartrol, Ocupress) Levobunolol (Betagan) Timolol (Betimol, Istalol, Timoptic) Timoptic GFS (gel-forming solution) (Timoptic-XE, Timolol-GFS)	By selectively blocking beta-adrenergic receptors in the eye, less aqueous humor is produced by the ciliary bodies. The fluid also appears to be absorbed slightly faster as a result of this drug therapy. Both actions reduce IOP.	Ask whether the patient has moderate to severe asthma or COPD. Warn diabetic patients to check their blood glucose levels more often when taking these drugs. Teach patients who also take oral beta blockers to check their pulse at least twice per day and to notify the health care provider if the pulse is consistently below 58 beats per minute.	If these drugs are absorbed systemically, they constrict pulmonary smooth muscle and narrow airways. These drugs induce hypoglycemia and also mask the hypoglycemic symptoms. These drugs potentiate the effects of systemic beta blockers and can cause an unsafe drop in heart rate and blood pressure.
Cholinergic Agonists Carbachol (Carboptic, Isopto Carbachol, Miostat) Echothiophate (Phospholine Iodide) Pilocarpine (Adorbocarpine, Akarpine, Isopto Carpine, Ocu-Carpine, Ocusert, Piloptic, PiloSTAT)	These drugs lower IOP by decreasing the amount of aqueous humor produced and by improving flow of the fluid. They make the pupil smaller (miosis) but, at the same time, make more room between the iris and the lens, allowing the fluid to flow through the pupil better even though it is smaller.	Teach the patient not to use more eyedrops than are prescribed and to report increased salivation or drooling to the health care provider. Teach the patient to use good light when reading and to take care in darker rooms.	These drugs are readily absorbed by conjunctival mucous membranes and can cause systemic side effects of headache, flushing, increased saliva, and sweating. The pupil of the eye will not open more to let in more light, and it may be harder to see objects in dim light. This problem can increase the risk for falls.

COPD, Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; IOP, intraocular pressure; MAO, monamine oxidase.

CHART 49-7 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY (EYEDROPS)

Categories for Management of Glaucoma—cont'd

CATEGORY AND DRUG	PURPOSE/ACTIONS	NURSING IMPLICATIONS	RATIONALES
Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitors			
Brinzolamide (Azopt) Dorzolamide (Trusopt)	Drugs reduce IOP by directly inhibiting production of aqueous humor from the zonules of the ciliary bodies. They do not affect the flow or absorption of the fluid.	Ask whether the patient has an allergy to sulfonamide antibacterial drugs. Teach the patient to shake the drug before applying. Teach the patient not to use the eyedrops with contact lenses in place and to wait 15 minutes after using the drug to put in the lenses.	Drugs are similar to the sulfonamides, and if a patient is allergic to the sulfonamides, an allergy is likely with these drugs, even as eyedrops. Drug separates on standing. These drugs are absorbed by the contact lens, which can become discolored or cloudy.
Combination Drugs			
Brimonidine tartrate and timolol maleate (Combigan)	Same as for each drug alone.	Same as for each drug alone.	Same as for each drug alone.



FIG. 49-9 Applying punctal occlusion to prevent systemic absorption of eyedrops.

reduce IOP. These agents include oral glycerin and IV mannitol (Osmitrol).

Surgical Management

Surgery is used when drugs for the patient with open-angle glaucoma are not effective at controlling IOP. Two common procedures are laser trabeculoplasty and filtering microsurgery. A *laser trabeculoplasty* burns the trabecular meshwork, scarring it and causing the meshwork fibers to tighten. Tight fibers increase the size of the spaces between the fibers, improving outflow of aqueous humor and reducing IOP. *Filtering microsurgery* creates a drainage hole in the iris between the posterior and anterior chambers. Both are ambulatory surgery procedures.

If glaucoma fails to respond to common approaches or if the drainage hole does not remain open, other more invasive procedures may be used. These include deep sclerectomy, viscocanalostomy, or an implanted shunt (Sharts-Hopko & Glynn-Milley, 2009).

A *sclerectomy* for glaucoma involves removing a section of sclera and trabecular meshwork along with a section of the canal of Schlemm to allow more direct drainage of aqueous humor. A *viscocanalostomy* requires removal of a section of

sclera but the main focus is artificially widening the canal of Schlemm to improve drainage. The *implanted shunt* has a small tube or filament connected to a flat plate positioned on the outside of the eye in the eye orbit. (The plate is not visible on the front part of the eye.) The open part of the fine tube is placed into the front chamber of the eye, just in front of the iris. The fluid then drains through the tube (or along the outside of the tube) into the area around the flat plate where it collects and is reabsorbed into the bloodstream.

A serious complication after glaucoma surgery is choroidal hemorrhage. If IOP is too low, fluid may enter the suprachoroid space and cause a choroidal detachment. Extra fluid in this space may break blood vessels located there. Manifestations of choroidal hemorrhage include:

- Acute pain deep in the eye
- Decreased vision
- Vital sign changes



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which assessment question is most important for the nurse to ask a client with glaucoma who has just been prescribed the drug apraclonidine (Iopidine)?

- "Are you allergic to sulfa drugs?"
- "What other drugs do you currently take?"
- "Do you have any difficulty passing urine?"
- "Do you have asthma or any other respiratory problem?"

VITREOUS HEMORRHAGE

The vitreous is the gel that fills the posterior two thirds of the eye and maintains the eye's shape. Vitreous hemorrhage (bleeding into the vitreous cavity) may result from aging, systemic diseases, or trauma. With aging, the vitreous may spontaneously detach from the retina. Torn blood vessels allow bleeding into the vitreous. Diabetes and hypertension damage retinal blood vessels and cause vitreal hemorrhage.

Reduced visual acuity is the main manifestation of vitreous hemorrhage. A mild hemorrhage may cause the patient to see a red haze or "floaters." A moderate hemorrhage may

cause the patient to see “black streaks” or “tiny black dots.” Severe hemorrhage may reduce visual acuity to hand motion. The eye has a reduced red reflex because light rays do not reach the retina. The location and extent of the hemorrhage are determined by ultrasonography.

The hemorrhage may absorb slowly with no treatment. Leaking blood vessels can be sealed with laser therapy. If the hemorrhage is still present several weeks to months later, a **vitrectomy** (surgical removal of the vitreous) may be needed.

UVEITIS

The eye’s uveal tract has three related parts: the iris, the ciliary body, and the choroid. Any of these anterior or posterior structures can become inflamed (**uveitis**).

Anterior uveitis is inflammation of the iris or of the ciliary body, or both. The cause is unknown but uveitis often follows exposure to allergens, infectious agents, trauma, or systemic disease (rheumatoid arthritis, herpes simplex, herpes zoster). It can follow any local or systemic bacterial infection. Manifestations include aching around the eye; tearing; blurred vision; photophobia; a small, irregular, nonreactive pupil; and a “bloodshot” appearance of the sclera.

Posterior uveitis is another term for **retinitis** (inflammation of the retina) and **chorioretinitis** (inflammation of the choroid and the retina). It occurs with tuberculosis, syphilis, and toxoplasmosis.

The onset of symptoms is slow and painless. Reduced vision in the affected eye results from fluid, fibrin, and cells leaking into the vitreous cavity. The pupil is small, nonreactive, and irregularly shaped. Black dots are visible against the red background of the fundus. Lesions appear as grayish yellow patches on the retinal surface.

Management of uveitis includes resting the ciliary body with a cycloplegic drug to paralyze the ciliary muscles and dilate the pupil. This action prevents adhesions from forming between the iris and the lens. Steroid drops are given hourly to reduce the inflammation and to prevent adhesion of the iris to the cornea and lens. Ocular injections of steroids are used in posterior uveitis or when topical steroids have been ineffective. Analgesics that contain neither aspirin nor opioids are prescribed for pain. Systemic antibiotic therapy may be started for posterior uveitis or when infection is present with anterior uveitis.

Cool or warm compresses are applied for ocular pain. Darkening the room and wearing sunglasses reduce the discomfort of photophobia. Because of blurred vision from the cycloplegic drops, instruct the patient not to drive or operate machinery. Review the manifestations of bacterial and fungal ulcers and those of increased intraocular pressure (IOP).

RETINAL DISORDERS

MACULAR DEGENERATION

Pathophysiology

Macular degeneration is the deterioration of the macula (the area of central vision) and can be age-related or exudative. Age-related macular degeneration (AMD) has two types. The most common type is *dry* AMD, caused by gradual blockage of retinal capillaries, allowing retinal cells in the macula to

become ischemic and necrotic. Rod and cone photoreceptors die. Central vision declines, and patients describe mild blurring and distortion at first. Eventually, the person loses all central vision (National Eye Institute, 2010). About 2 million older adults in the United States and Canada have dry AMD (National Eye Institute, 2010; **Statistics Canada, 2010**). This vision loss affects independence, well-being, and quality of life, as well as health care costs. It is often the impetus for an older adult leaving his or her independent living environment and moving into assisted living (**Touhy & Jett, 2010**).

Dry AMD is more common and progresses at a faster rate among smokers than among nonsmokers (**Noble & Chaudhary, 2010**). Other risk factors include hypertension, female gender, short stature, family history, and a long-term diet poor in carotene and vitamin E (National Eye Institute, 2010).

Another cause of AMD is the growth of new blood vessels in the macula, which have thin walls and leak blood and fluid (*wet* AMD). Exudative macular degeneration is also a type of wet macular degeneration but can occur at any age. The condition can occur in only one eye or in both eyes. In addition, the person with AMD can also develop exudative macular degeneration. Patients with exudative degeneration have a sudden decrease in vision after a serous detachment of pigment epithelium in the macula. Newly formed blood vessels invade this injured area and cause fluid and blood to collect under the macula (like a blister), resulting in scar formation and visual distortion.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Dry AMD has no cure. Management of dry AMD is focused on slowing the progression of the vision loss and helping the patient maximize remaining vision (**Watkinson, 2010**). Current research findings suggest that the risk for dry macular degeneration can be reduced by increasing long-term dietary intake of antioxidants, vitamin B₁₂, and the carotenoids *lutein* and *zeaxanthin*. The same dietary treatments appear to slow the progression of macular degeneration.

The loss of central vision reduces the ability to read, write, recognize safety hazards, and drive. Suggest alternative strategies (e.g., large-print books, public transportation) and referrals to community organizations that provide a wide range of adaptive equipment. See pp. 1073-1075 of Patient-Centered Collaborative Care in the Reduced Vision section for a complete discussion of patient care needs.

Management of patients with exudative or wet macular degeneration is geared toward slowing the process and identifying further changes in visual perception. Fluid and blood may resorb in some patients with exudative degeneration. Laser therapy to seal the leaking blood vessels in or near the macula can limit the extent of the damage. Recent clinical trials with agents that slow or prevent new blood vessel formation, the vascular endothelial growth factor inhibitors (VEGFIs), have shown success in the management of wet macular degeneration. This therapy uses either bevacizumab (Avastin), which is a drug used as targeted therapy for cancer, or ranibizumab (Lucentis), which is a VEGFI approved specifically for ocular problems. Management involves monthly injections of the drug into the vitreal chamber. The results were a reduction of vitreal fluids and an increase in visual acuity (Tao et al., 2010).



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is an 82-year-old woman who has just been diagnosed as having early-stage dry age-related macular degeneration (AMD). She is 5 feet tall and weighs 180 pounds. Her other health problems include type 2 diabetes and moderate hypertension. She is shocked at the diagnosis and sobs almost uncontrollably. When you ask her what she knows about AMD, she tries to stop crying and lights up a cigarette. She tells you that her mother and older sister both “went blind” with AMD and had to move into assisted living. She also tells you that she is the driver for her social group, her favorite pastimes are reading and playing cards, and she dreads the thought of giving up driving. Her final statement is “I’ll probably be blind by this time next year.”

1. What risk factors does this patient have for age-related dry macular degeneration?
2. Is her fear of inevitable blindness valid?
3. Does she have to stop driving now? Why or why not?
4. What will you tell her about macular degeneration?

RETINAL HOLES, TEARS, AND DETACHMENTS

Pathophysiology

A **retinal hole** is a break in the retina. These holes can be caused by trauma or can occur with aging. A **retinal tear** is a more jagged and irregularly shaped break in the retina. It can result from traction on the retina. A **retinal detachment** is the separation of the retina from the epithelium. Detachments are classified by the nature of their development.

Rhegmatogenous detachments occur following a hole or tear in the retina caused by mechanical force, creating an opening for the vitreous to move under the retina. When sufficient fluid collects in this space, the retina detaches. *Traction* detachments occur when the retina is pulled away from the support tissue by bands of fibrous tissue in the vitreous. *Exudative* detachments are caused by fluid collecting under the retina. These often occur with a systemic disease or with ocular tumors. No retinal break occurs.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The onset of a retinal detachment is usually sudden and painless because no pain fibers are located in the retina. Patients may suddenly see bright flashes of light (**photopsia**) or floating dark spots in the affected eye. During the initial phase of the detachment or if the detachment is partial, the patient may describe the sensation of a curtain being pulled over part of the visual field. The visual field loss corresponds to the area of detachment.

On ophthalmoscopic examination, detachments are seen as gray bulges or folds in the retina that quiver. Depending on the cause of the detachment, a hole or tear also may be seen at the edge of the detachment.

If a retinal hole or tear is discovered before it causes a detachment, the defect may be closed or sealed. Closure prevents fluid from collecting under the retina and reduces the risk for a detachment. Treatment involves creating an inflammatory response that will bind the retina and choroid together around the break. The inflammatory response can be created using **cryotherapy** (a freezing probe), **photocoagulation** (laser), or **diathermy** (high-frequency current).

Spontaneous reattachment of the retina is rare. Surgical repair is needed to place the retina in contact with the underlying structures. A common repair procedure is scleral buckling.

Preoperative Care

The patient is usually anxious and fearful about a possible permanent loss of vision. *Nursing priorities include providing information and reassurance to allay fears.*

Instruct the patient to restrict activity and head movement before surgery to prevent further tearing or detachment and to promote drainage of any fluid under the retina. An eye patch is placed over the affected eye to reduce eye movement. Topical drugs are given before surgery to inhibit pupil constriction and accommodation.

Operative Procedures

The surgery is performed with the patient under general anesthesia. In scleral buckling, the ophthalmologist repairs wrinkles or folds in the retina so that the retina can assume its normal smooth position. To promote reattachment, a small piece of silicone is placed against the sclera and held in place by an encircling band (which is the actual “buckle”). This device keeps the retina in contact with the choroid and sclera to promote attachment. Any fluid under the retina is drained.

A gas or silicone oil placed inside the eye can be used to promote retinal reattachment. These agents float up against the retina to hold it in place until healing occurs.

Postoperative Care

After surgery, an eye patch and shield usually are applied. Monitor the patient’s vital signs, and check the eye patch and shield for any drainage.

Activity after surgery varies. If gas or oil has been placed in the eye, position the patient on his or her abdomen. Instruct the patient to lie with the head turned so that the affected eye is facing up, for several days or until the gas has been absorbed. As an alternative, he or she can sit on the side of the bed and place the head on an over-the-bed table.

Give drugs as prescribed for pain and nausea. Teach the patient to report any sudden increase in pain or pain occurring with nausea. Report these symptoms to the surgeon immediately because they may indicate the development of complications. Remind the patient to avoid activities that increase intraocular pressure (IOP) (see [Table 49-1](#)).

Teach the patient to avoid reading, writing, and close work, such as sewing, in the first week after surgery because these activities cause rapid eye movements and promote detachment. Teach him or her the manifestations of infection and detachment (sudden reduced visual acuity, eye pain, pupil that does not respond to light by constricting). Instruct the patient to notify the surgeon immediately if these manifestations occur.

RETINITIS PIGMENTOSA

Several types of retinal disorders can cause progressive degeneration of the retina and lead to blindness. Retinitis pigmentosa (RP) is a condition in which retinal nerve cells degenerate and the pigmented cells of the retina grow and move into the sensory areas of the retina, causing further degeneration.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Different forms of retinitis pigmentosa can be inherited as an autosomal dominant (AD) trait, an autosomal recessive (AR) trait, or an X-linked recessive trait (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Mutations in more than 20 genes have been identified as being responsible for retinitis pigmentosa, and gene testing for more than 800 mutations of the AR and AD forms of the problem is commercially available.

The earliest manifestation of RP is night blindness, often occurring in childhood. Over time, decreased visual acuity progresses to total blindness. Examination of the retina shows heavy pigmentation in a lacy pattern. Cataracts may accompany this disorder.

No current therapy is effective in preventing the degenerative process. Current management strategies focus on protecting active retinal cells and slowing the progression of disease. Teach patients with RP to avoid drugs that are known to adversely affect retinal cells, such as isotretinoin (Accutane) and drugs for erectile dysfunction (e.g., sildenafil [Viagra]). Also remind them to wear eyeglasses that provide ultraviolet protection. The ingestion of 15,000 international units of vitamin A daily is recommended to slow the progression of the disorder, as is the daily ingestion of docosahexaenoic acid (DHA), an omega-3 fatty acid and antioxidant (Foundation Fighting Blindness, 2010). Additional supplements that appear to slow the progression of RP include beta carotene, lutein, and zeaxanthin. When macular edema is present, oral acetazolamide (Diamox) can reduce the edema. Cataract surgery and lens replacement is recommended when cataracts further reduce vision. Other treatments under investigation include retinal microchip implantation, retinal tissue transplantation, and stem cell therapy.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client whose sister was just diagnosed with autosomal recessive retinitis pigmentosa is pregnant with a male fetus. The client's husband has no relatives with the disorder. She asks what the chances are that her son could be affected. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Because it is likely that you are a carrier and your husband does not have any affected relatives, only your daughters can develop the disease."
- "Because it is likely that you are a carrier and your husband does not have any affected relatives, none of your children will have the disease but each child will have a 50% risk for being a carrier."
- "Because your sister actually has retinitis pigmentosa, the risk for your children having the disorder is 50% with each pregnancy."
- "Because you are a woman, your daughters will each have a 50% risk for having the disease, and all of your sons will be carriers."

REFRACTIVE ERRORS

Pathophysiology

The ability of the eye to focus images on the retina depends on the length of the eye from front to back and the refractive power of the lens system. **Refraction** is the bending of light rays. Problems in either eye length or refraction can result in refractive errors.

Myopia is nearsightedness, in which the eye over-refracts the light and the bent images fall in front of, not on, the

retina. **Hyperopia**, also called *hypermetropia*, is farsightedness, in which refraction is too weak, causing images to be focused behind the retina. **Presbyopia** is the age-related problem in which the lens loses its elasticity and is less able to change shape to focus the eye for close work. As a result, images fall behind the retina. This problem usually begins in people in their 30s and 40s. **Astigmatism** occurs when the curve of the cornea is uneven. Because light rays are not refracted equally in all directions, the image does not focus on the retina.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Refractive errors are diagnosed through a process known as **refraction**. The patient is asked to view an eye chart while lenses of different strengths are systematically placed in front of the eye. With each lens strength, he or she is asked whether the lenses sharpen or worsen vision. The strength of the lens needed to focus the image on the retina is expressed in measurements called *diopters*.

Nonsurgical Management

Refractive errors are corrected with a lens that focuses light rays on the retina (see Fig. 48-5 in Chapter 48). Hyperopic vision is corrected with a convex lens that moves the image forward. Myopic vision is corrected with a biconcave lens to move the focused image back to the retina.

Eyeglasses are used to correct refractive errors. They are easy to use, durable, and relatively low cost. Disadvantages are a change in appearance, the weight of the frame on the nose, and reduced peripheral vision (only central vision is corrected with eyeglasses).

Contact lenses also correct refractive errors. Round plastic disks rest against the cornea and fit under the eyelid. Hard contact lenses correct errors in two ways—by changing the shape of the cornea and by providing direct refraction. Changing corneal shape increases its refracting ability. Direct refraction from the contact lens places the specific refractive power and shape needed in front of the eye so that light rays are correctly focused onto the retina.

Complications of hard contact lens wear include corneal edema, which occurs when the lenses are worn for an extended period. Corneal abrasion can result from overwear, which dries the cornea and causes small breaks, or from the irritation of the contact lens against the cornea.

Soft contact lenses are better tolerated than hard contact lenses. They are about the thickness of plastic wrap and can be worn for longer periods because they allow greater corneal access to moisture and oxygen. Problems with soft lenses are related to lens deterioration, deposits in the lens, and failure to follow correct lens care practices.

There are two types of soft contact lenses: daily-wear lenses (worn only during waking hours) and extended-wear lenses. Extended-wear contact lenses are worn continuously for days to several weeks, depending on the patient's environment, activities, and tolerance of the lenses.

Surgical Management

Surgery is a popular alternative for the treatment of refractive errors. The most common vision-enhancing surgery is laser in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK). This procedure is much more

expensive than eyeglasses or any type of contact lens, and it is rarely covered by insurance.

LASIK can correct nearsightedness, farsightedness, and astigmatism using the excimer laser. The superficial layers of the cornea are lifted temporarily as a flap, and brief but powerful laser pulses reshape the deeper corneal layers. After reshaping is complete, the corneal flap is placed back into its original position.

Usually both eyes are treated at the same time, which is most convenient for the patient, although this practice has some risks. If the laser malfunctions or if instruments are contaminated, the vision in both eyes could be adversely affected (Ayers, 2010). Many patients have improved vision within an hour after surgery, although complete healing to best vision may take up to 4 weeks. The outer corneal layer is not damaged, and pain is minimal.

After LASIK correction of refractive errors, many patients no longer require eyeglasses or contact lenses. Overcorrection or undercorrection is possible, however, and some patients may need a mild prescription for a continued refractive error.

Complications include corneal clouding, chronic dry eyes, and refractive errors. Some patients have developed blurred vision and other refractive errors months to years after this surgery as a result of keratectasia. This problem is related to the formation of the corneal flap during surgery and laser-thinning of the cornea. The cornea then becomes unstable and does not refract appropriately.

Although it is a relatively safe procedure, not everyone should have LASIK. People for whom risks may outweigh benefits of LASIK surgery include anyone who has a disorder or is taking drugs that delay wound healing (e.g., human immune deficiency virus [HIV] disease, rheumatoid arthritis, other autoimmune diseases, diabetes), those whose refractive errors are unstable and require yearly changes in prescriptive correction, those who routinely engage in contact sports, those who have thin corneas, and those who have any type of dry eye syndrome (Ayers, 2010).

Another procedure, Intacs corneal ring placement, can enhance vision for nearsightedness. However, this procedure is most often performed for keratoconus. For more information about the procedure, see surgical intervention for keratoconus on p. 1058.

TRAUMA

Trauma to the eye or orbital area can result from almost any activity. Care varies depending on the area of the eye affected and whether the globe of the eye has been penetrated.

Hyphema

A **hyphema** is a hemorrhage in the anterior chamber occurring when a force is applied to the eye and breaks the blood vessels. If the hyphema is large, it may block the pupil and reduce vision, possibly causing pain and photophobia. Hemolysis of the blood occurs, and the blood is filtered out of the eye through the trabecular meshwork. If the blood particles obstruct the meshwork, increased intraocular pressure (IOP) results.

Management includes bedrest in semi-Fowler's position to use gravity as an aid in keeping the hyphema away from the optical center of the cornea. Minimal or no sudden eye movements are permitted for 3 to 5 days to decrease the risk for

rebleeding. Cycloplegic (paralyzing) eyedrops may be prescribed, and the eye is protected by a patch and shield. Television and reading are restricted. A hyphema usually resolves in 5 to 7 days.

Contusion

A contusion of the eyeball and surrounding tissue is caused by traumatic contact with a blunt object. The force of the blow pushes the eye back in the socket. The globe is compressed, and stretching of the ocular soft tissues occurs, which can damage and possibly rupture the globe. Results of the injury may not be immediate and include edema of the eyelids, subconjunctival hemorrhage, corneal edema, and hyphema.

Periorbital ecchymosis, or "black eye," a common contusion injury, is usually caused by blunt trauma. Bleeding into the soft tissue occurs, creating the bruise. The color fades gradually and disappears in 10 to 14 days. Visual acuity is usually not affected, although orbital pain, photophobia, eyelid edema, and diplopia may be present.

Treatment begins at the time of injury. Ice is applied immediately. The patient should have a thorough eye examination to rule out any other eye injuries.

Foreign Bodies

Eyelashes, dust, fingernails, dirt, and airborne particles can come in contact with the conjunctiva or cornea and irritate or abrade the surface. If nothing is seen on the cornea or conjunctiva, the eyelid is everted to examine the conjunctivae. The patient usually has a feeling of something being in the eye and may have blurred vision. Pain occurs if the corneal surface is injured. Tearing and photophobia may be present.

Evaluation of vision is done before treatment. The eye of any patient with a suspected corneal abrasion is examined with fluorescein, followed by irrigation with normal saline (0.9%) to gently remove the particles. Best practices for ocular irrigation are listed in [Chart 49-8](#).

If an eye patch is applied after the foreign body is removed, tell the patient how long the patch must be left in place. Follow-up with the ophthalmologist is needed.

Lacerations

Lacerations are wounds caused by sharp objects and projectiles. The injury can occur to any part of the eye, but the most commonly injured areas are the eyelids and the cornea.

Initially, close the eye and apply a small ice pack to decrease bleeding. The patient should receive medical attention as soon as possible. If the patient can open the eye, check visual acuity and clean the eyelids. Minor lacerations of the eyelid can be sutured in an emergency department, an urgent care center, or an ophthalmologist's office. A microscope is needed in the operating room if the patient has a laceration that involves the eyelid margin, affects the lacrimal system, involves a large area, or has jagged edges.

Corneal lacerations are an emergency because eye contents may prolapse through the laceration. Manifestations include severe eye pain, photophobia, tearing, decreased visual acuity, and inability to open the eyelid. If the laceration is the result of a penetrating injury, an object may be seen protruding from the eye. *The object is removed only by the ophthalmologist, because it may be holding eye structures in place.*

CHART 49-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Ocular Irrigation

1. Assemble equipment:
 - Normal saline IV (1000-mL bag)
 - Macro drip IV tubing
 - IV pole
 - Eyelid speculum
 - Topical anesthetic (proparacaine hydrochloride)
 - Gloves
 - Collection receptacle (emesis basin works well)
 - Towels
 - pH paper
2. Quickly obtain a history from the patient while flushing the tubing with normal saline:
 - Nature and time of the injury
 - Type of irritant or chemical (if known)
 - Type of first aid administered at the scene
 - Any allergies to the “caine” family of medications
3. Evaluate the patient’s visual acuity *before* treatment:
 - Ask the patient to read your name tag with the affected eye while covering the good eye.
 - Ask the patient to “count fingers” with the affected eye while covering the good eye.
4. Put on gloves.
5. Place a strip of pH paper in the cul-de-sac of the patient’s affected eye to test the pH of the agent splashed into the eye and to know when it has been washed out.
6. Instill proparacaine hydrochloride eyedrops as prescribed.
7. Place the patient in a supine position with the head turned slightly toward the affected eye.
8. Have the patient hold the affected eye open, or position an eyelid speculum.
9. Direct the flow of normal saline across the affected eye from the nasal corner of the eye toward the outer corner of the eye.
10. Assess the patient’s comfort during the procedure.
11. If both eyes are affected, irrigate them simultaneously using separate personnel and equipment.

Antibiotics are given to reduce the risk for infection. Depending on the depth of the laceration, scarring may develop. If the scar alters vision, a corneal transplant may be needed later. If the eye contents have prolapsed through the laceration or if the injury is severe, **enucleation** (surgical eye removal) may be indicated.

Penetrating Injuries

Patients with penetrating eye injuries have the poorest chance of retaining vision in the injured eye. Glass, high-speed metal or wood particles, BB pellets, and bullets are common causes of penetrating injuries. The particles can enter the eye and lodge in or behind the eyeball.

The patient has eye pain and reports “I suddenly felt something hit my eye.” An entrance wound may be visible. Depending on where the object enters and rests within the eye, vision may be affected.

X-rays and computed tomography (CT) scans of the orbit are usually performed. Computer-generated reconstructions of the CT images are created to study this complex area to ensure the orbit is intact and to look for fractures that might entrap orbital muscles. *Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is contraindicated because the procedure may move any metal-containing projectile and cause more injury.*

Surgery is usually needed to remove the foreign object. In some cases, foreign bodies need to be removed by a vitrectomy. IV antibiotics are started before surgery to reduce the risk for infection. A tetanus booster is given if necessary.

Assess and document visual acuity. If the patient cannot see print, determine whether he or she can count fingers or see hand motions. If the patient cannot see movement, assess his or her ability to see light.

OCULAR MELANOMA

Pathophysiology

Melanoma is the most common malignant eye tumor in adults ([American Cancer Society, 2011](#); [Simar, 2009](#)). This tumor occurs most often in the uveal tract among people in their 30s and 40s and is associated with exposure to ultraviolet (UV) light. Because of its rich blood supply, a melanoma can spread by extension through the sclera or invasion into nearby tissue and the brain.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Manifestations of melanoma may not be readily apparent; the tumor may be discovered during a routine examination. Blurred vision may occur if the macular area is invaded. Visual acuity is reduced if the tumor grows inward toward the center of the eye from the choroid and alters the visual pathway. Increased intraocular pressure (IOP) can result if the tumor obstructs flow of aqueous humor. Iris color changes when the tumor infiltrates the iris. Sudden loss of a visual field may result from tumor invasion that causes retinal detachment.

Diagnostic tests for a melanoma depend on the size and tumor growth rate. Ultrasonography or MRI is performed to determine the tumor’s location and size. Treatment depends on the tumor’s size and growth rate, as well as the condition of the other eye. Small iris lesions are monitored until growth is observed. Tumors of the choroid are treated by surgical enucleation or by radiation therapy with a radioactive plaque ([Simar, 2009](#)).

Enucleation (surgical removal of the entire eyeball) is the most common surgery for ocular melanoma and is performed under general anesthesia. After the eye is removed, a ball implant is inserted as a base for the socket prosthesis.

The implant is covered with surrounding tissue, muscles, and conjunctiva. A plastic conformer is placed over the conjunctiva to maintain the shape of the eyelids until a prosthesis can be fitted. After the dressing is removed, a pressure patch is placed over the eye for 24 hours.

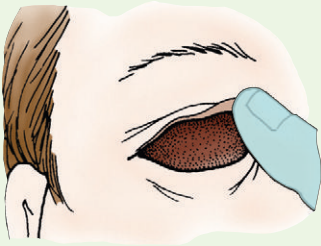
Until the prosthesis is fitted (after about 1 month), an antibiotic-steroid ointment is inserted into the cul-de-sac once daily. Best practices for prosthesis care are listed in [Chart 49-9](#).

Radiation therapy is an “eye-sparing” procedure that can reduce the size and thickness of melanomas but rarely eliminates the tumors completely. The radioactive plaque—a round, flat disk about the size of a dime and containing a radioactive material—is sutured to the sclera overlying the tumor site. The length of time the plaque remains sutured to the sclera depends on the size of the tumor and the dose of radiation to be delivered.

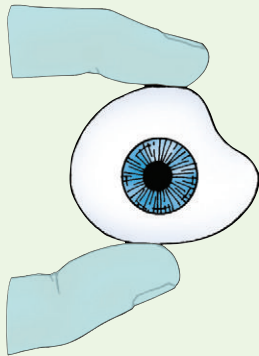
CHART 49-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Insertion and Removal of an Ocular Prosthesis**Insertion**

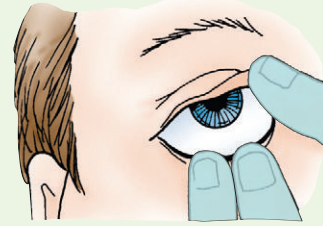
1. Assemble equipment:
 - Prosthesis
 - Gloves
 - Towel
2. Explain the procedure to the patient.
3. Wash your hands.
4. Cover the work area with a cloth or towel.
5. Don gloves.
6. Remove the prosthesis from its container, and rinse it with warm water.
7. Lift the patient's upper lid using your nondominant hand.



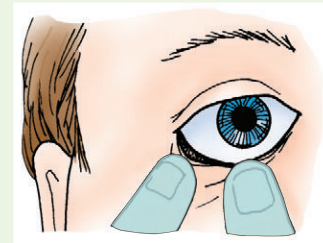
8. Place the prosthesis between the thumb and forefinger of your dominant hand. The notched end of the prosthesis should be closest to the patient's nose.



9. Insert the prosthesis with the top edge slipping under the upper lid. Continue until most of the iris is covered by the upper lid.



10. Gently release the upper eyelid.
11. Retract the lower lid slightly until the bottom edge of the prosthesis slips behind it.



12. Release your hands slowly.

Removal

1. Assemble equipment:
 - Normal saline-filled, labeled container
 - Gloves
2. Explain the procedure to the patient.
3. Wash your hands.
4. Don gloves.
5. Instruct the patient to sit up and tilt the head slightly downward.
6. Place your hand against the patient's cheek, palm side up.
7. Pull the lower lid slightly down and laterally.
8. Allow the prosthesis to slide out onto your hand, or pull gently if necessary.
9. Place the prosthesis in a container filled with normal saline labeled with the patient's name. Cover the container.

Complications of radiation therapy include vascular changes, retinopathy, glaucoma, necrosis of the sclera, and cataract formation. Vitreous hemorrhage may develop as the tumor becomes smaller and pulls or breaks blood vessels.

While the plaque is in place, an eye patch may or may not be used. Cycloplegic eyedrops and an antibiotic-steroid combination are given. Teach the patient how to instill eyedrops.

REDUCED VISION**Pathophysiology**

Different forms of reduced vision may affect any or all aspects of vision, including color, light, image, movement, and acuity. Reduced vision may be temporary, such as when cataracts obscure vision but surgery has not yet been planned or performed. Patients are legally blind if their best visual acuity with corrective lenses is 20/200 or less in the better eye or if the widest diameter of the visual field in that eye is no greater than 20 degrees.

Blindness can occur in one or both eyes. When one eye is affected, the field of vision is narrowed and depth perception is impaired. Central vision can be impaired by diseases involving the macula, such as macular edema or macular degeneration. Loss of peripheral vision occurs with glaucoma. The loss of side vision affects the patient's ability to drive and awareness of hazards in the periphery.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Priorities for nursing involve teaching the patient techniques to make better use of existing vision (Watkinson, 2009). Moving the head slightly up and down can enhance a three-dimensional effect. When shaking hands or pouring water, the patient can line up the object and move toward it. He or she should choose a position that favors the eye with better vision. For example, people with vision in the right eye should position people and items on their right.

CHART 49-10 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Providing Care to the Patient with Reduced Vision

- Always knock or announce your entrance into the patient's room or area and introduce yourself.
- Ensure that all members of the health care team also use this courtesy of announcement and introduction.
- Ensure that the patient's reduced vision is noted in the medical record, is communicated to all staff, is marked on the call board, and is identified on the door of the patient's room.
- Determine to what degree the patient can see anything.
- Orient the patient to the environment, counting steps with him or her to the bathroom.
- Assist the patient in placing objects on the bedside table or in the bed and around the bed and room, and do not move them without the patient's permission.
- Remove all objects and clutter between the patient's bed and the bathroom.
- Ask the patient what type of assistance he or she prefers for grooming, toileting, eating, and ambulating, and communicate these preferences with the staff.
- Describe food placement on a plate in terms of a clock face.
- Open milk cartons; open salt, pepper, and condiment packages; and remove lids from cups and bowls.
- Unless the patient also has a hearing problem, use a normal tone of voice when speaking.
- When walking with the patient, offer him or her your arm and walk a step ahead.

Nursing interventions for the patient with reduced sight focus on communication, safety, ambulation, self-care, and support (Watkinson, 2009). Chart 49-10 lists ways to help patients with reduced vision to function as independently as possible.

Communication is important in helping the patient remain independent and connected to the world. Reduced vision is a common occurrence, and many adaptive devices are available to help the person maintain independence. Many towns and cities have auditory traffic signals so that persons with reduced vision can know when it is safe to cross a street. Curbs in these areas may have high-contrast color paint to let the person know when to step up or down. Libraries have large-print books and books on tape. "Talking" clocks, watches, and timers are available. Playing cards, games, restaurant menus, calendars, and instruction booklets are available in large print sizes. Computer keyboards with high contrast and larger letters in the keys are available, as are large screens. Direct the patient with reduced vision to the local resources to obtain adaptive items and to learn how to use them (Watkinson, 2009).

Safety is a major issue for the person with reduced vision. For patients at home with reduced vision, the home is the place where they feel most safe. They are familiar with room and item location. For example, they may have counted the number of footsteps needed to move from one area to another within the home. It is important to stress to family and friends that changes in item location should not be made without input from the person with reduced vision.

Even people who have experienced gradually reduced vision over time and who have had time to adjust may benefit from having a person with vision assist in making adaptations in the home. Adaptations may include the following:

- Using tape and a heavy black marker, mark the 350-degree temperature setting on the oven and mark the 70-degree temperature setting on the heating or cooling thermostat.
- Paint or mark light switches in a deep color that contrasts with the surrounding wall.
- Label canned goods with large, bold, black letters on white tape.
- Teach the patient to feel for the crease in paper milk cartons that indicates the place to open the spout.
- Help the patient differentiate different drugs by altering the shape or contours of a bottle. Rubber bands can be wound around a bottle to change its texture. Raised symbols can be glued to caps to make identification easier.

The patient is most at risk for safety problems in an unfamiliar or changing environment. When a person with reduced vision must be hospitalized, promote safety and independence by orienting him or her to the new environment.

Most people with reduced vision had sight at some time and have background knowledge regarding size and shape that can be used when providing information. Many blind people have some degree of sight. When talking with a person who has limited sight or is blind, always use a normal tone of voice unless he or she has a hearing problem.

First orient the patient to the immediate environment, including the size of the room. Use one object in the room, such as a chair or hospital bed, as the focal point during your description. Guide the person to the focal point, and orient him or her to the environment from that point. For example, you might say, "To the left of the bed is a chair." Then describe all other objects in relation to the focal point. Go with the patient to other important areas, such as the bathroom, so that he or she can learn their locations. Highlight the location of the toilet, sink, and toilet paper holder. *Never leave the patient with reduced vision in the center of an unfamiliar room.*

Patients with reduced vision prefer to establish the location of important objects, such as the call light, water pitcher, and clock. Once their location has been fixed, do not move these items without the patient's consent. Do not move the location of chairs, stools, and wastebaskets without consulting the patient.

At mealtime, set up food on the tray using clock placement. For example, "There is sliced ham at the 6 o'clock position; peas are located at the 3 o'clock position; to the right of the plate is coffee; salt and pepper are next to the coffee."

Ambulation with a patient who has reduced vision involves allowing him or her to grasp your arm at the elbow. Keep the arm close to your body so that he or she can detect your direction of movement. Alert the patient when obstacles are in the path ahead.

Patients may use a cane to detect obstacles, such as furniture, walls, or curbs. The cane is held in the dominant hand several inches off the floor and sweeps the ground where his or her foot will be placed next. The laser cane sends out signals to help detect obstacles.

Self-care and the ability to control the environment are important. Knock on the door before entering the hospital room or any other environment of a patient with reduced vision. State your name and the reason for visiting when entering the room. Coordinate with other members of the health care team to ensure this etiquette is used consistently.

Mark the door to the room to indicate it is occupied by a person with reduced vision.

Support is needed, especially when the reduced vision is of sudden onset and may be permanent. Patients' reactions to the loss of sight are similar to the reaction to loss of a body part. Allow the newly blind person a period of grieving for the "dead" (nonseeing) eye. He or she may feel hopeless and angry. With time, anger usually gives way to acceptance. The ability to cope may begin within days, but some patients mourn for months or years.

Patients benefit from the honest support that you can provide. They need to hear that it is normal to mourn, to cry, and to feel the loss. Help them move toward acceptance by encouraging the mastery of one task at a time and by providing positive reinforcement for each success.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client with reduced vision who is 1 day postoperative for a non-vision problem expresses concern to the nurse that he is afraid if a hospital fire occurred he would not be able to get out in time. Which nurse response or action is most likely to allay his fears?

- A. Demonstrating how to close the door and place wet towels at the bottom edge of the door.
- B. Reminding him that the hospital meets all current fire codes and has never experienced a major fire.
- C. Helping him count the steps to the stairway exit and reminding him that he is on the second floor.
- D. Reassuring him that even if a fire broke out, the nurses and other personnel would stay on the unit with him.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing reduced sensation as a result of vision problems?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Patient squints or tilts the head when viewing objects or print at a distance.
- Patient closes one eye to read or see at a distance.
- Patient moves reading materials either very close to his or her face or as far away from the face as he or she can reach.
- Patient may not startle when a sudden move is made at the face.
- Pupils are unequal and may not react to light.
- Eyes do not focus on a distant object and track it as it is moved closer to the face.
- Red reflex may be absent or present in only one eye.
- Appearance is disheveled with buttons not properly buttoned and clothing colors or patterns not complementary.
- Patient does not make eye contact and turns head toward sounds rather than sights.
- Patient walks with hesitation into a room or bumps into objects in his or her path.
- Patient may seem confused about time and place.

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing reduced sensation as a result of vision problems?

Interpret by:

- Assessing visual acuity with a Snellen chart, counting fingers, hand motion, or light perception.
- Asking the patient to describe the objects in the room and their colors.
- Asking the patient what he or she can see well and what is more difficult to see.

Respond by:

- Orienting the patient to the immediate surroundings.
- Offering your arm for the patient to hold when he or she is moving to a different location.
- Not leaving the patient alone in the center of a strange room.
- Asking him or her what assistance is needed for independent activity.
- Assessing the immediate environment for safety hazards and removing the hazard.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Consider what environmental changes could make the unit safer or more manageable for a person with reduced vision.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use gloves when examining an eye with drainage from the eye or tear duct.
- Avoid performing an ophthalmoscopic examination on a confused patient.
- Orient the patient with reduced vision to his or her immediate surroundings, including how to call for help and where the bathroom is located.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Identify the room of a patient with reduced vision (without identifying the patient).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify people at risk for vision problems as a result of work environment or leisure activities, and teach them specific ways to protect the eyes.
- Encourage all patients to wear eye protection when they are performing yard work, are working in a woodshop or metal shop, are using chemicals, or are in any environment in which drops or particulate matter is airborne.
- Encourage all adult patients older than 40 years to have an eye examination with measurement of intraocular pressure every year.
- Encourage everyone to use polarizing sunglasses whenever outdoors in bright sunlight.
- Teach all patients to wash their hands before and after touching the eyes.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Use a normal tone of voice to talk with a patient who has a vision problem and normal hearing.

- Knock on the door before entering the room of a patient with reduced vision, and introduce yourself.
- Allow the patient and family the opportunity to express concerns about a vision change.
- Refer patients newly diagnosed with visual impairment to appropriate local resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient about vision problems in any other members of the family, because many vision problems have a genetic component.
- Teach patients the proper techniques for self-instillation of eyedrops and eye ointment.
- Stress the importance of completing an antibiotic regimen for an eye infection.
- Teach patients who are at risk for increased intraocular pressure what activities to avoid (see [Table 49-1](#)).
- Teach patients with an infection of the eye or eyelid not to rub the eye (to avoid infecting the other eye).
- Never attempt to remove any object protruding from the eye.

Assessment of the Ear and Hearing

Judith Laver Bierschbach

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Ears: Weber Test

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

Video Clip: Ear Canal

Video Clip: External Ear

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Apply principles of infection control when examining an ear with drainage.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Teach all people how to perform ear hygiene safely.
3. Teach all people to use ear protection equipment and strategies.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests and procedures to assess ear and hearing problems.
5. Provide opportunities for the patient and family to express feelings and concerns about a possible change in hearing.

Physiological Integrity

6. Identify people at risk for hearing problems as a result of drug therapy, genetic predisposition, or exposure to environmental hazards.
7. Perform a clinical ear and hearing assessment, including health history and psychosocial assessment.
8. Describe adaptations needed when caring for patients who have age-related changes in the structure of the ear and hearing.
9. Identify 10 common drugs that affect hearing.
10. Demonstrate the correct use of an otoscope.

The ear and the brain together allow hearing. Hearing is one of the five senses important for communicating with the world. Functional hearing assists in the concepts of sensation and cognition. It is used to assess surroundings, allow independence, warn of danger, appreciate music, work, play, and interact with other people.

Ear and hearing problems are common among adults of all ages. Assessment of the ear and hearing is an important skill for nurses in any care environment. Therefore an understanding of the anatomy and physiology of the ear is essential. Many ear and hearing problems develop over long periods and may be affected by drugs or systemic health problems.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Structure

The ear has three divisions: the external ear, the middle ear, and the inner ear. Each part is important to hearing.

External Ear

The external ear develops in the embryo at the same time as the kidneys and urinary tract. Thus any person with a defect of the external ear should be examined for possible problems of the kidney and urinary systems.

The **pinna** is the part of the external ear that is composed of cartilage covered by skin and attached to the head at about

a 10-degree angle. It is embedded in the temporal bone on both sides of the head at the level of the eyes. The external ear also includes the **mastoid process**, which is the bony ridge located over the temporal bone behind the pinna. The external ear extends from the pinna through the external ear canal to the **tympanic membrane** (eardrum) (Fig. 50-1). The ear canal is slightly S-shaped and lined with **cerumen** (wax)-producing glands, sebaceous glands, and hair follicles. Cerumen helps protect and lubricate the ear canal. The hair follicles and cerumen protect the eardrum and the middle ear. The distance from the opening of the ear canal to the eardrum in an adult is 1 to 1½ inches (2.5 to 3.75 cm).

Middle Ear

The middle ear begins at the medial or inner side of the eardrum. The eardrum separates the external ear and the middle ear.

The middle ear consists of a compartment called the **epitympanum**. Located in the epitympanum are the top opening of the eustachian tube and three small bones known as the

bony ossicles, which are the **malleus** (hammer), the **incus** (anvil), and the **stapes** (stirrup) (Fig. 50-2). The bony ossicles are joined loosely, thereby moving with vibrations created when sound waves hit the eardrum.

The eardrum, a thick sheet of tissue, is transparent, opaque, or pearly gray and moves when air is injected into the external canal. The landmarks on the eardrum include the **annulus**, the **pars flaccida**, and the **pars tensa**. These correspond to the parts of the malleus that can be seen through the transparent eardrum. The eardrum is attached to the first bony ossicle, the malleus, at the umbo (Fig. 50-3). The umbo is seen

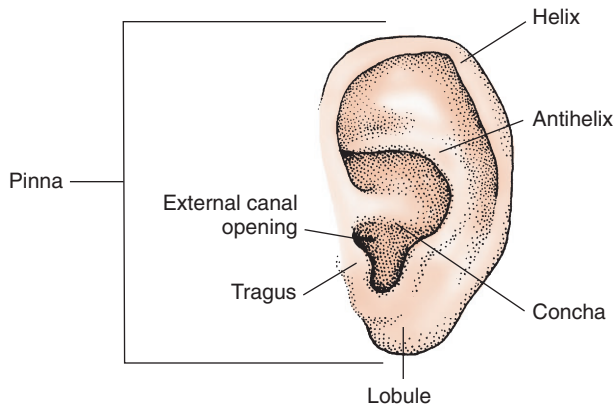


FIG. 50-1 Anatomic features of the external ear.

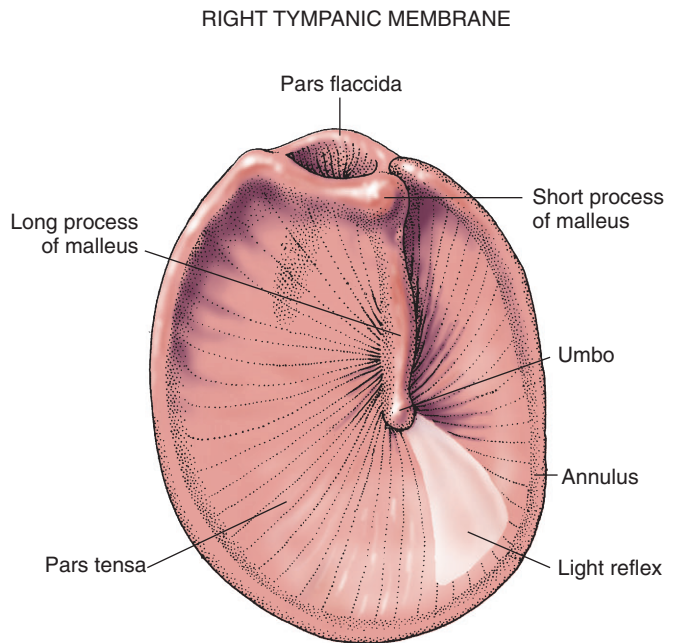


FIG. 50-3 Landmarks on the tympanic membrane.

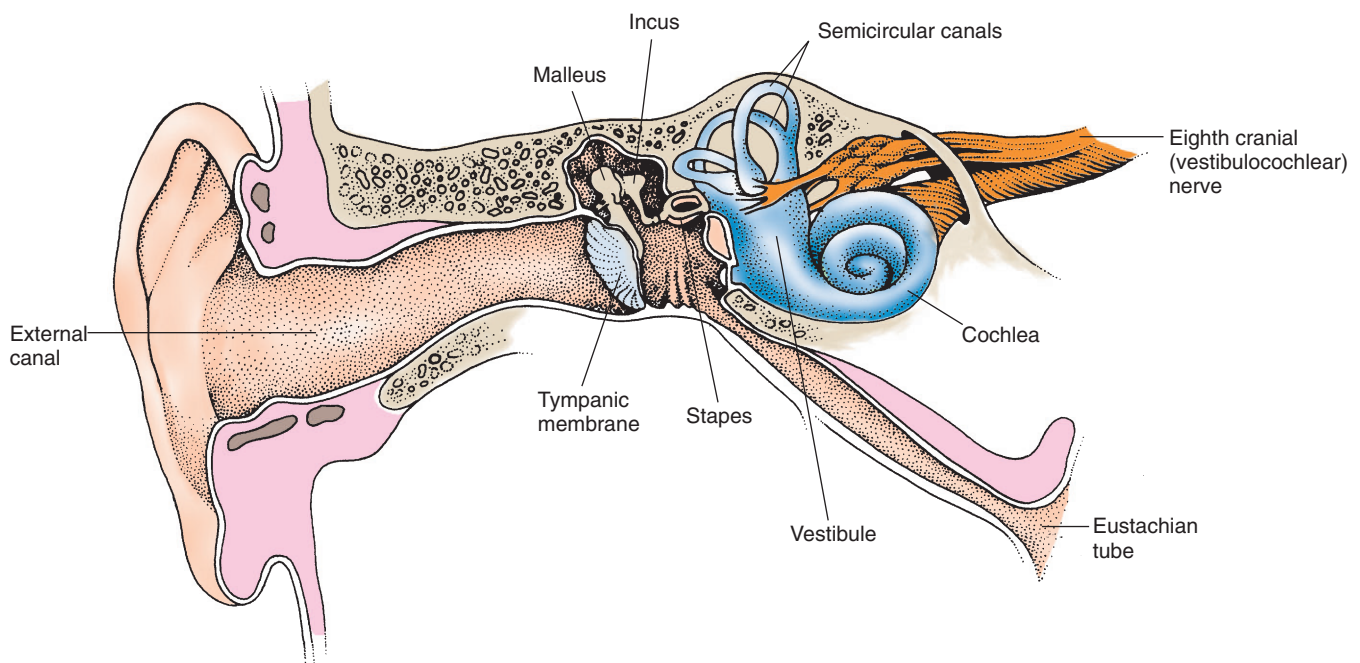


FIG. 50-2 Anatomic features of the middle and inner ear.

through the eardrum membrane as a white dot and is one end of the long process of the malleus. The pars flaccida is that portion of the eardrum above the short process of the malleus. The pars tensa is that portion surrounding the long process of the malleus.

The middle ear is separated from the inner ear by the round window and the oval window. The eustachian tube begins at the floor of the middle ear and extends to the throat. The tube opening in the throat is surrounded by adenoid lymphatic tissue (Fig. 50-4). The eustachian tube allows the pressure on both sides of the eardrum to equalize. Secretions from the middle ear drain through the tube into the throat.

Inner Ear

The inner ear is on the other side of the oval window and contains the semicircular canals, the cochlea, the vestibule, and the distal end of the eighth cranial nerve (see Fig. 50-2). The **semicircular canals** are tubes made of cartilage and contain fluid and hair cells. These canals are connected to the sensory nerve fibers of the vestibular portion of the eighth cranial nerve. The fluid and hair cells within the canals help maintain the sense of balance.

The **cochlea**, the spiral organ of hearing, is divided into the scala tympani and the scala vestibuli. The scala media is filled with *endolymph*, and the scala tympani and scala vestibuli are filled with *perilymph*. These fluids protect the cochlea and the semicircular canals by allowing these structures to “float” in the fluids and be cushioned against abrupt head movements.

The **organ of Corti** is the receptor of hearing located on the basilar membrane of the cochlea. The cochlea contains hair cells that detect vibration from sound and stimulate the eighth cranial nerve.

The **vestibule** is a small, oval-shaped, bony chamber between the semicircular canals and the cochlea. It contains the utricle and the saccule, organs that are important for balance.

Function

Hearing is the main function of the ear and occurs when sound is delivered through the air to the external ear canal and the temporal bone covering the mastoid air cells. The sound waves strike the mastoid and the movable eardrum, creating vibrations. The eardrum is connected to the first bony ossicle, which allows the sound wave vibrations to be transferred from the eardrum to the malleus, the incus, and the stapes. From the stapes, the vibrations are transmitted to the cochlea. Receptors at the cochlea transduce (change) the vibrations into action potentials. The action potentials are conducted to the brain as nerve impulses by the cochlear portion of the eighth cranial (auditory) nerve. The nerve impulses are processed and interpreted as sound by the brain in the auditory cortex of the temporal lobe.

Ear and Hearing Changes Associated with Aging

Ear and hearing changes related to aging are listed in Chart 50-1, along with implications for care of older patients who have these changes. Some of the ear changes, such as an increase in ear size, are harmless. Other changes to ear structures may pose threats to the hearing ability of older adults.

All older adults should be screened for hearing acuity. Many scales or tools are available to assess hearing loss. However, asking “Do you have a hearing problem now?” may be just as helpful as these scales. Family members may have noticed behaviors that suggest changes in a patient’s hearing.

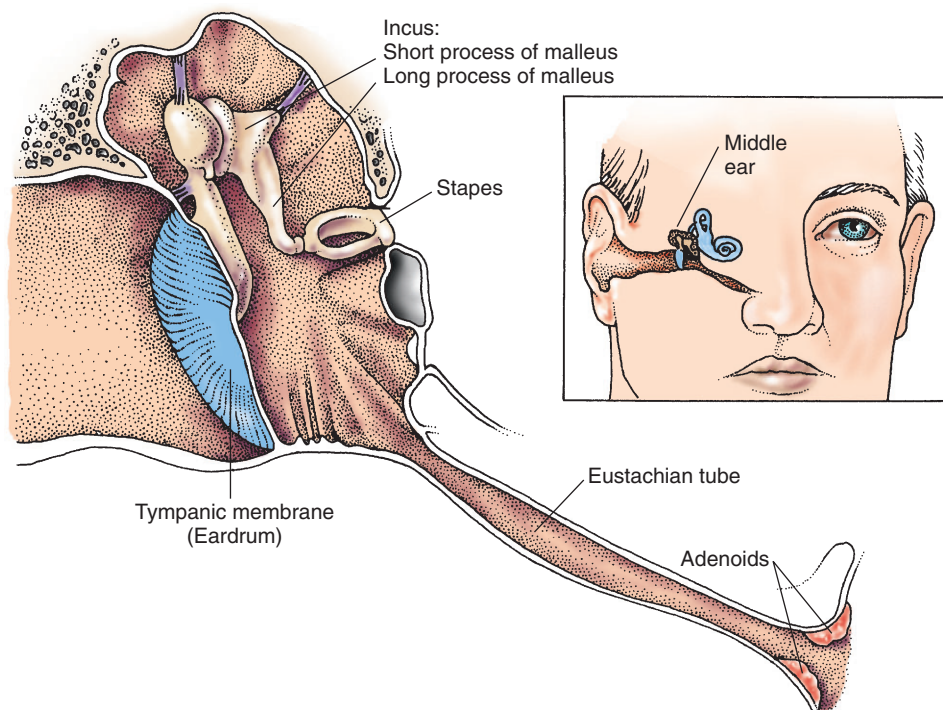


FIG. 50-4 Anatomic features and attached structures of the middle ear.

CHART 50-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Age-Related Changes in the Ear and Hearing

EAR OR HEARING CHANGE	NURSING ADAPTATIONS AND ACTIONS
Pinna becomes elongated because of loss of subcutaneous tissues and decreased elasticity.	Reassure the patient that this is normal and does not indicate a problem. When positioning a patient on his or her side, take care not to “fold” the ear under the head.
Hair in the canal becomes coarser and longer, especially in men.	Reassure the patient that this is normal. The patient may require more frequent ear irrigation to keep cerumen from clumping in the hair.
Cerumen is drier and impacts more easily, reducing hearing function.	Teach the patient to irrigate the ear canal weekly or whenever he or she notices a change in hearing.
Tympanic membrane loses elasticity and may appear dull and retracted.	Do not use this finding as the only indication of otitis media.
Hearing acuity decreases (in some people).	Establish that a hearing deficiency exists, using simple, noninvasive tests such as the voice test and the watch test. If a deficit is present, refer the patient to an ear, nose, and throat specialist to determine what type of hearing loss is present and what can be done to improve hearing. Do not assume all older adults have a hearing loss!!
The ability to hear high-frequency sounds is lost first. Older adults may have particular problems hearing the <i>f</i> , <i>s</i> , <i>sh</i> , and <i>pa</i> sounds.	Provide a quiet environment when speaking (close the door to the hallway), and face the patient. If the patient wears glasses, be sure he or she is using them to see your lips and facial expression to enhance speech understanding. Speak slowly and in a deeper voice, and emphasize beginning word sounds. Some patients with a hearing loss that is not corrected may benefit from wearing a stethoscope while listening to you speak.

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Obtain a thorough history from the patient before performing the physical examination. Hearing assessment begins while observing the patient listening to and answering questions. The patient's posture and appropriateness of responses provide information about hearing acuity. For example, posture changes, such as tilting the head to one side or leaning forward when listening to another person speak, may indicate the presence of a hearing problem. Other indicators of hearing difficulty include frequently asking the speaker to repeat statements or frequently saying “What?” or

CHART 50-2 EAR AND HEARING ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Cognitive-Perceptual Pattern

- Do you have any hearing difficulty?
- Do you use any type of hearing aid?
- Do you notice that you have the volume of the television or radio set at an increased level?
- Are you sitting closer to the television or radio to hear more clearly?
- Do you have difficulty in your ability to hear or follow conversations in a noisy environment, such as a restaurant?
- Do you have difficulty hearing high-pitched sounds like the doorbell?

Health Perception–Health Management Pattern

- Have you had your hearing checked?
- If you are or were exposed to environmental noise, have you consistently used appropriate hearing protection?
- Do you avoid cleaning your ear canals with foreign objects such as toothpicks or paper clips?
- Have you discussed with your health care provider the side effects of any drugs you may be taking that might affect your ear and hearing?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

“Huh?” Notice whether the patient responds to whispered questions and conversations and startles when an unexpected sound occurs in the environment. Also assess whether the patient's responses match the question asked. For example, when you ask the patient “How old are you?” does the patient respond with an age or does he or she say “No, I don't have a cold.”

During the interview, sit in adequate light and face the patient to allow him or her to see you speak. Use short, simple language the patient is comfortable with rather than long medical terms. Obtain data on demographics, personal and family history, socioeconomic status, current health problems, and the use of remedies for ear problems. [Chart 50-2](#) lists important questions to ask about functional hearing.

The patient's gender is important. Some hearing disorders, such as otosclerosis, are more common in women. Other disorders, such as Ménière's disease, are more common in men. Age is also an important factor in hearing loss.

Personal history includes past or current manifestations of ear pain, ear discharge, [vertigo](#) (spinning sensation), [tinnitus](#) (ringing), decreased hearing, and difficulty understanding people when they talk or difficulty hearing environmental noise. Ask the patient about:

- Ear trauma
- Ear surgery
- Past ear infections
- Excessive cerumen
- Ear itch
- Any invasive instruments routinely used to clean the ear (e.g., Q-Tip, match, bobby pin, key)
- Type and pattern of ear hygiene
- Exposure to loud noise or music
- Air travel (especially in unpressurized aircraft)
- Swimming and whether ear protection is used

- History of hereditary factors that can cause progressive hearing loss
- History of health problems that can decrease the blood supply to the ear such as heart disease, hypertension, or diabetes
- History of vitiligo (a pigment disorder in which there may be a loss of melanin-containing cells in the inner ear, resulting in hearing loss)
- History of smoking (reduces oxygenation of the cochlea)
- History of vitamin B₁₂ and folate deficiency (associated with age-related hearing loss)

If the patient uses foreign objects to clean the ear canal (e.g., bobby-pins, Q-tips, toothpicks, keys), explain the danger in using these objects. They can scrape the skin of the canal, push cerumen up against the eardrum, and even puncture the eardrum. If the patient says that cerumen buildup is a problem, teach him or her to use an ear irrigation syringe and proper solutions to remove it. [Chart 50-3](#) describes techniques to teach patients how to remove cerumen safely.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients the safe way to clean their ears, stressing that nothing smaller than his or her own fingertip should be inserted into the canal.

If the patient uses a hearing aid, assess whether hearing is improved with its use. Obtain the date of the last hearing test, the type of test given, and the results. Ask about problems that may impair hearing such as allergies, upper respiratory infections, hypothyroidism, arteriosclerosis, head trauma, and recent head, facial, or dental surgery. A thorough drug history is important because many drugs are **ototoxic** (damaging to the ear) ([Table 50-1](#)).

Ask about the patient's occupation and hobbies that involve exposure to loud noise or music. Assess whether protective ear devices are used. Also ask whether any devices are consistently inserted into the ear, such as ear plugs or earpiece headsets, and for how long each day they are used. Use this opportunity to teach the patient about protecting his or her ears from loud noises by wearing protective ear devices, such as over-the-ear headsets or foam ear inserts, when persistent loud noises are in the environment. Also suggest the use of earplugs when engaging in water sports to prevent ear infections.

Assess the patient's socioeconomic status to determine the availability and affordability of health care. Some people might hesitate to have their hearing loss diagnosed because of the fear of needing to wear a hearing aid and the cost associated with these devices.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Family history, as well as personal history, is important in determining genetic risk for hearing loss. Although most genetic hearing loss is seen in childhood, some genetic problems can lead to progressive hearing loss in adults (Nussbaum et al., 2007). For example, most people with Down syndrome develop hearing loss as adults. People with osteogenesis imperfecta have bilateral and progressive hearing loss by their 30s.

CHART 50-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Self-Ear Irrigation for Cerumen Removal

- Do not attempt to remove ear wax or irrigate the ears if you have ear tubes or if you have blood, pus, or other drainage from the ear.
- Use an ear syringe designed for the purpose of wax removal. These are inexpensive, available at most drug stores, reusable, and can be used by more than one person when cleaned properly between uses.
- The safest type of ear syringe to use is one that has a right-angle or "elbow" in the tip.
- Irrigating your ears in the shower is an easy method.
- Always use tap water that feels just barely warm to you. If you are using a thermometer, keep the water temperature as close as possible to 98° or 99° F. Water that is warmer or colder can make you feel dizzy and nauseated.
- If your ear wax is thick and sticky, you may need to place a few drops of a warm ceruminolytic (commercial eardrops that soften ear wax) into the ear an hour or so before you irrigate the ear. Other substances that can be used for this purpose include baby oil or mineral oil.
- Fill the syringe with the lukewarm tap water.
- If you are using a syringe with an elbow tip, place only the last part of the tip into your ear and aim it toward the roof of your ear canal.
- If you are using a straight-tipped syringe, insert the tip only about $\frac{1}{2}$ - to $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch into your ear canal, aiming toward the roof of the canal.
- Hold your head at a 30-degree angle to the side you are irrigating.
- Use one hand to hold the syringe and the other to push the plunger or squeeze the bulb.
- Apply gentle but firm continuous pressure, allowing the water to flow against the top of the canal.
- Do not use blasts or bursts of sudden pressure.
- The ear canal should fill, and water will begin to flow out, bringing ear wax and debris with it.
- If a dental water-pressure irrigator is used, put it on the lowest possible setting.
- This process should not be painful! If pain occurs, decrease the pressure. If pain persists, stop the irrigation.
- Continue the irrigation until at least a cup of solution has washed into and out from your ear canal. (You may have to refill the syringe.)
- Tilting your head at a 90-degree angle to the side should allow most, if not all, of the water to drain out of your ear.
- Repeat the procedure on the other ear.
- If you feel that water is still in the canal, hold a hair dryer on a low setting near the ear.
- Irrigate your ears anytime from weekly to monthly, depending on how fast your ear wax collects.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Mutations in several different genes are associated with hearing loss. One type of hearing loss among adults has a genetic basis with a mutation in gene *GJB2* on chromosome 1. This mutation causes poor production of the protein *connexin-26*, which has a role in the function of cochlear hair cells. Other genetic problems slow the metabolism and excretion of drugs, including ototoxic drugs. This allows ototoxic drugs to remain in the body longer, thus increasing the risk for hearing loss.

TABLE 50-1 OTOTOXIC DRUGS

DRUG TYPE	DRUG	DRUG TYPE	DRUG
Antibiotics	Amikacin	Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents	Ibuprofen (Advil, Nuprin, Motrin)
	Capreomycin		Indomethacin (Indocin)
	Chloramphenicol		Naproxen (Aleve, Naprosyn, Anaprox)
	Dihydrostreptomycin		Piroxicam (Feldene), diflunisal (Dolobid), diclofene (Voltaren), etodolac (Lodine), nabumetone (Relafen), ketorolac (Toradol)
	Erythromycin		Salicylates (aspirin, Disalcid, Bufferin, Ecotrin, Trilisate, Ascriptin, Empirin, Excedrin, Fiorinal)
	Gentamicin (Garamycin, Cidomycin)		
	Kanamycin		
	Metronidazole (vestibulotoxicity rarely)		
	Neomycin		
	Netilmicin		
	Streptomycin		
	Tobramycin		
Diuretics	Acetazolamide (Apo-Acetazolamide 🍁, Diamox)	Chemotherapy agents	Actinomycin
	Ethacrynic acid (Edecrin)		Bleomycin
	Bumetanide		Cisplatin (Abiplatin, Platinol)
	Furosemide (Lasix, Apo-Furosemide 🍁, Furoside 🍁)		Carboplatin
			Nitrogen mustard (Mustargen)
			Vincristine
			Carbamazepine
			Hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil)
		Miscellaneous	Quinine (Legatrin, Novo-Quinine 🍁, Quinamm)
			Quinidine (Apo-Quinidine 🍁, Cardioquin, Quinidex)

Ask the patient:

- Who in your family has hearing problems?
- Are the problems present in men and women equally or are they present more in one gender?
- At what age was hearing loss diagnosed in your relative(s)?
- Are both ears affected?

Current Health Problems

Assess current ear-related problems by asking the patient about any ear “trouble,” ear pain, or discharge, including earwax. Ask about any change in hearing, such as **hyperacusis** (the intolerance for sound levels that do not bother other people) or **tinnitus** (ringing in the ears). If a change in hearing is reported, ask whether one or both ears are involved and if the change was sudden or gradual. Also ask about problems with dizziness, sensations of being “off-balance,” or **vertigo** (sensation of spinning movement).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The client is a 28-year-old woman who reports to the nurse that she has experienced reduced hearing in both ears during the past 2 years. Which health issue or personal factor is most likely to be associated with the reduced hearing?

- Use of cotton-tipped applicators to clean the ears for her entire adult life.
- Use of oral contraceptives as the method of birth control for the past 3 years.
- Participation in a vegetarian diet that permits milk and eggs for the past 5 years.
- Management of chronic joint pain with daily naproxen (Aleve) for the past 3 years.

Physical Assessment

Inspection and palpation are used to assess the ear. Begin the examination by placing the patient in a sitting or supine position. Remove any hearing aids before the examination. Inspect the hearing aid for cracks, debris, and a proper fit. A complete ear examination is usually performed by a physician, advanced practice nurse, or physician assistant. The brief assessment of the ear and hearing usually performed by a medical-surgical nurse is described next.

External Ear and Mastoid Assessment

Inspect the entire external ear for shape, location of attachment to the head, and condition, including the condition of the visible external canal. The normal pinna is uniformly shaped without skin tags or deformity. The pinna should be attached to the side of the head at a posterior angle of 10 degrees or less. The normal external canal is dry, clean, free from lesions, and not reddened.

Abnormalities of the pinna include swelling, nodules, and lesions. In chronic gout, collections of uric acid crystals result in hard, irregular, painless nodules called **tophi** on the pinna. Other nodules on the pinna might also be from basal cell carcinoma or rheumatoid arthritis. Small, crusted, ulcerated, or indurated lesions on the pinna that fail to heal could be squamous cell carcinoma.

Inspect the mastoid process for redness and swelling, which indicate inflammation. To assess for tenderness, gently tap with one finger over the mastoid process, compress the tragus with one finger, and gently move the pinna forward and backward. Any tenderness suggests an inflammatory process in either the external ear or the mastoid.

Assess for and record these problems:

- Furuncles
- Large amounts of cerumen
- Scaliness

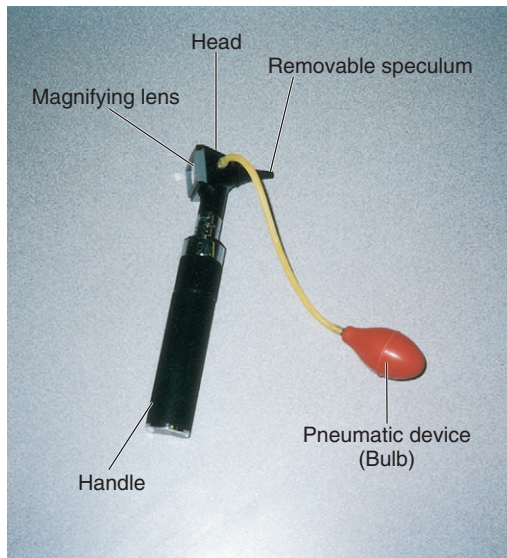


FIG. 50-5 Functional components of an otoscope.

- Redness
- Swelling of or drainage from the ear associated with a foreign object (insects or other substances), trauma, or infection
- Drainage such as blood, cerebrospinal fluid, pus, or serous fluid, and its character

Otoscopic Assessment

The purpose of a brief otoscopic examination is to assess the patency of the external canal, identify lesions or excessive cerumen in the canal, and assess whether the eardrum is intact or inflamed. An instrument called an **otoscope** is used to examine the ear. Many types are available. It consists of a light, a handle, a magnifying lens, and a pressure bulb for injecting air into the external canal to test mobility of the eardrum (Fig. 50-5). Specula of various diameters attach to the head of the otoscope. Select the largest speculum that most comfortably fits the patient's external canal.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Do not use an otoscope to examine the ears of any patient who is unable to hold his or her head still during the examination.

If the patient has pain during the external ear examination, cautiously attempt an otoscopic examination. The speculum will cause extreme pain if it comes in contact with inflamed tissue in the external canal.

When performing an otoscopic examination, tilt the patient's head slightly away and hold the otoscope upside down, like a large pen (Fig. 50-6). This position permits your hand to lie against the patient's head for support. If the patient moves, both your hand and the otoscope also move, preventing damage to the external canal or eardrum. Hold the otoscope in your dominant hand, and gently pull the pinna up and back with your nondominant hand to straighten the canal. View the ear canal while you slowly insert the speculum. Use caution to avoid the pain associated with



FIG. 50-6 Proper technique for an otoscopic examination.

touching the speculum on the walls of the external canal. More experienced clinicians may use the down position during the otoscopic examination, with fingers placed on the patient's cheek for safety.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Observe the ear canal through the otoscope as you insert the speculum into the external canal to avoid the risk for perforating the eardrum.

After the otoscope is comfortably introduced in the external canal, assess for lesions and the amount, consistency, and color of cerumen and hair. The normal external canal is skin colored, intact, and without lesions. It contains various amounts of soft cerumen and small, fine hairs.

Assess the eardrum for intactness and color. *The normal eardrum is always intact.* The eardrum is shiny, transparent, and opaque or pearly gray and without lesions. Redness is seen in otitis media. Reflection of the otoscope's light from the normal eardrum is the **light reflex**, and it appears as a clearly outlined triangle of light. The base of the triangle is on the annulus, and the point of the triangle is on the umbo. On the right eardrum, the light reflex appears in the right lower quadrant. On the left eardrum, the light reflex appears in the left lower quadrant. The light reflex is termed **diffuse** when the light reflex is spotty or multiple because of a changed eardrum shape from retraction or bulging.

! CULTURAL AWARENESS

Cerumen is generally moist and tan or brown in Euro-Americans and African Americans. It is dry and light brown to gray in Asians and American Indians. The distinction of dry or moist ear wax is a genetically inherited trait. The color of the lining of the external ear canal varies with the patient's skin tone. Variations should not be mistaken for indications of problems. Patients with more moist earwax may form cerumen impactions more easily than patients with drier, flaky earwax and require more frequent ear irrigations.

General Auditory Assessment

After assessing the external ear and the canals of both ears, briefly assess the patient's hearing acuity. Several rapid and simple tests for hearing can be performed at the patient's bedside. Although these tests do not determine the true extent or type of hearing loss, they can indicate a patient's functional hearing ability.

The *voice test* for hearing is a simple hearing acuity test that is conducted by asking the patient to block one external ear canal while standing 1 to 2 feet (30 to 60 cm) away. Quietly whisper a statement, and then ask the patient to repeat it. Test each ear separately. If the patient does not respond correctly, use a louder whisper. If you suspect the patient is lip-reading, use your hand to block the view of your mouth, or stand behind him or her while whispering.

The *watch test* for hearing is the use of a ticking watch to test acuity for high-frequency sounds. Hold a ticking watch about 5 inches (12.7 cm) from each ear and ask whether the ticking is heard. The patient with normal hearing should be able to hear it. If a watch that ticks cannot be found, test hearing by clicking the fingernails of your thumb and forefinger together about 12 inches from the patient's ear or just behind his or her head. More complex assessments of hearing, performed by audiologists, physicians, advanced practice nurses, specialty nurses, and physician assistants, can determine the type and extent of hearing loss.

Sound is transmitted by air conduction and bone conduction. Air conduction of sound is normally more sensitive than bone conduction. If hearing acuity is decreased, the hearing loss is categorized as:

- **Conductive hearing loss**, which results from physical obstruction of sound wave transmission such as a foreign body in the external canal, a retracted or bulging tympanic membrane, or fused bony ossicles.
- **Sensorineural hearing loss**, which results from a defect in the cochlea, the eighth cranial nerve, or the brain itself. Exposure to loud noise and music may cause this type of hearing loss as a result of damage to the cochlear hair cells.
- **Mixed conductive-sensorineural hearing loss**, which is a profound hearing loss resulting from both conductive and sensorineural hearing loss.

Each auditory function test determines the degree of hearing loss and differentiates the type of loss.

Audiology testing involves the use of a handheld device to generate tones of varying intensities to test hearing. Hearing can be measured at a 40-decibel (dB) intensity at frequencies of 500, 1000, 2000, and 4000 cycles per second (cps), or hertz (Hz). The audiometer is larger than a standard otoscope and is easily used to assess hearing.

Tuning fork tests for hearing acuity are the Weber and Rinne tests. These tests are useful, although limited, in distinguishing between conductive and sensorineural hearing losses. The frequency range of the tuning fork used for these tests corresponds to that of normal speech.

The Weber tuning fork test is performed by placing a vibrating tuning fork on the middle of the patient's head and asking him or her to indicate in which ear the sound is louder. The normal test result is sound heard equally in both ears. The term *lateralization* is used if the sound is louder in one ear. For example, lateralization to the right means that the sound is heard loudest in the right ear.

The Rinne tuning fork test compares hearing by air conduction with hearing by bone conduction. Sound is normally heard two to three times longer by air conduction than by bone conduction. The Rinne tuning fork test is performed by placing the vibrating tuning fork stem on the mastoid process (bone conduction) and asking the patient to indicate when the sound is no longer heard. When the patient no longer hears the sound, the fork is brought quickly in front of the pinna (air conduction) without touching the patient. He or she should then indicate when this sound is no longer heard. The patient normally continues to hear the sound two to three times longer in front of the pinna (air conduction) after not hearing it with the tuning fork touching the mastoid process (bone conduction).

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient may become irritable, frustrated, and depressed by an inability to hear and respond appropriately. The inability to hear often isolates the patient from the world. Depression may result from the sensory isolation of hearing loss. Be sensitive to the patient, and conduct the interview at a pace appropriate for that person.

Ask about social and work relationships to determine whether the patient is isolated because of hearing problems. In addition, encourage the patient to express feelings related to hearing loss and discuss any changes in daily living activities that have been made as a result of a change in hearing. Also obtain information from family members, especially if the patient does not acknowledge having a hearing problem.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety

You are admitting a 78-year-old man to a rehabilitation and long-term care facility on discharge from the hospital after a transurethral resection prostatectomy. He is not very steady on his feet and is still dribbling urine. The hand-off report indicates that he did not seem to understand his care instructions although his family states he has no cognitive, vision, or hearing problems. When you tell the patient your name (Terry), he repeats it as "Mary." When you repeat your name a little louder, he says "Just quit mumbling and shouting. I have perfect hearing."

1. Should you apologize for this misunderstanding? Why or why not?
2. You plan to make a hearing assessment as part of your admission assessment. How should you introduce this assessment to the patient after his statement of having perfect hearing?
3. What types of issues could be affecting his hearing?

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests generally are not of value in determining hearing acuity. For an external ear infection, the typical causative organisms are known and this infection is treated without obtaining cultures. If the usual antibiotic therapy is not successful at clearing the infection, microbial culture and antibiotic sensitivity tests may be performed.

Imaging Assessment

Computed tomography (CT), with or without contrast enhancement, shows the structures of the ear in great detail by multiple x-ray scans of the head. These scans are then averaged by a computer. CT is especially helpful in diagnosing acoustic tumors.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is a noninvasive, non-radioactive diagnostic tool that uses a computer to generate images. Because of its superior contrast resolution, bones do not obscure the tissue image, so the MRI most accurately reflects soft-tissue changes. Patients with older internal metal vascular clips cannot have MRI. Newer clips are made from titanium and are not a contraindication for MRI.

Specific Auditory Assessment

Audiometry. Audiometry is the measurement of hearing acuity. It is performed by audiologists, audiology technicians, or nurses with special training. **Frequency** is the highness or lowness of tones (expressed in hertz). The greater the number of vibrations per second, the higher the frequency (pitch) of the sound. The fewer the number of vibrations per second, the lower the frequency (pitch).

Intensity of sound is expressed in decibels (dB). **Threshold** is the lowest level of intensity at which pure tones and speech are heard by a patient about 50% of the time.

The lowest intensity at which a young, normal ear can detect sound about 50% of the time is 0 dB. Sound at 110 dB is so intense (loud) that it is painful for most people with normal hearing. Conversational speech is around 60 dB, and a soft whisper is around 20 dB (Table 50-2). A hearing loss of 45 to 50 dB renders the person unable to hear speech without a hearing aid. A person with a hearing loss of 90 dB may not be able to hear speech even with a hearing aid.

Pure tones are generated by an audiometer to determine hearing acuity. The two types of audiometry are pure-tone audiometry and speech audiometry.

Pure-Tone Audiometry. Pure-tone audiometry generates tones with an audiometer that are presented to the patient at frequencies for hearing speech, music, and other common sounds. It can be performed by air-conduction testing or bone-conduction testing. The results of pure-tone audiometry are graphed on an audiogram. The hearing of one ear may be masked while the hearing of the other ear is tested.

Pure-tone air-conduction testing determines whether a patient hears normally or has a hearing loss. It is designed to

test air-conduction hearing sensitivity (through earphones) at frequencies ranging from 125 to 8000 Hz. Thresholds are usually confined to the frequencies of 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, and 8000 Hz. The intensities for pure tones generally range from 10 to 110 dB.

The patient sits in a sound-isolated room to reduce background noise. Earphones are placed over the ears, and tones of varying frequencies and intensities are delivered through the earphones, testing one ear at a time. The patient presses a button or raises a hand to indicate when he or she hears a tone. No special follow-up care is needed.

Pure-tone bone-conduction testing determines whether the hearing loss detected by air-conduction testing is due to conductive or sensorineural factors or to a combination of the two. It is used only when the results of air-conduction testing are abnormal. Testing is similar to air-conduction testing except that a bone-conduction vibrator, placed firmly behind the pinna on the mastoid process, is used instead of earphones. No special follow-up care is needed.

Interpretation of audiometric evaluation determines whether the patient's hearing is within normal limits or, with a hearing impairment, whether the hearing loss is conductive, sensorineural, or mixed. The type of loss can be determined by an experienced clinician who examines the shape of the audiogram after completion of pure-tone air- and bone-conduction audiometry.

Speech Audiometry. In speech audiometry, the patient's ability to hear spoken words is measured through a microphone connected to an audiometer. The two components of speech audiometry are the speech reception threshold and speech discrimination.

Speech reception threshold is the minimum loudness at which a patient can repeat simple words. This test determines how loud a simple speech stimulus must be before the patient can hear it well enough to repeat it correctly. In one common test, lists of two-syllable words called **spondee** are used (i.e., words in which there is generally equal stress on each syllable, such as *airplane*, *railroad*, and *cowboy*).

The speech reception threshold measured by the audiometer is the hearing level at which the patient can repeat simple words correctly 50% of the time. The test is conducted in a manner similar to the pure-tone tests.

Speech discrimination testing determines the patient's ability to discriminate among similar sounds or among words that contain similar sounds. The ability to understand speech is the most important measurable aspect of human hearing. Speech discrimination testing assesses *understanding* of speech. A hearing loss may decrease sensitivity to sound and impair understanding of what is being said.

A standard format contains lists of 25 to 50 **monosyllabic** (one-syllable) words, such as *carve*, *day*, *toe*, and *ran*, and phonemically balanced words, with equal word difficulty between lists. The lists are presented to the patient through earphones at a selected loudness level, generally about 30 to 40 dB above the speech reception threshold, or at the patient's most comfortable listening level. A percentage score is derived from the number of words repeated correctly.

Tympanometry. Tympanometry assesses mobility of the eardrum and structures of the middle ear by systematically changing air pressure in the external auditory canal. The progression or resolution of serous otitis and otitis media can be accurately monitored with this procedure.

TABLE 50-2 DECIBEL INTENSITY AND SAFE EXPOSURE TIME FOR COMMON SOUNDS

SOUND	DECIBEL INTENSITY (DB)	SAFE EXPOSURE TIME*
Threshold of hearing	0	
Whispering	20	
Average residence or office	40	
Conversational speech	60	
Car traffic	70	>8 hr
Motorcycle	90	8 hr
Chain saw	100	2 hr
Rock concert, front row	120	3 min
Jet engine	140	Immediate danger
Rocket launching pad	180	Immediate danger

*For every 5-dB increase in intensity, the safe exposure time is cut in half.

This test is helpful in distinguishing middle ear pathologic conditions, such as otosclerosis, ossicular disarticulation, otitis media, and perforation of the eardrum. It is also useful for assessing patency of the eustachian tube and for checking recovery of middle ear function after surgery.

Auditory Brainstem-Evoked Response. Auditory brainstem-evoked response (ABR) assesses hearing in patients who are unable to indicate their recognition of sound stimuli during standard hearing tests. This test helps diagnose both conductive and sensorineural hearing losses. Electrodes are placed on the scalp during the test. After the test, clean the patient's hair to remove the electrode gel.

To prepare the patient for ABR:

- Tell the patient that no fasting or sedation is needed
- Carefully explain the procedure and its purpose
- Inform the patient that the procedure usually takes about 30 minutes

Assessment of Balance

Electronystagmography (ENG) is a test that is sensitive in detecting both central and peripheral disease of the vestibular system in the ear. The ENG detects and records **nystagmus** (involuntary eye movements) because the eyes and ears depend on each other for balance. Electrodes are taped to the skin near the eyes, and one or more procedures (caloric testing, changing gaze position, or changing head position) are performed to stimulate nystagmus. Failure of nystagmus to occur with cerebral stimulation suggests an abnormality in the vestibulocochlear apparatus, the cerebral cortex, the auditory nerve, or the brainstem.

To prepare the patient for ENG:

- Carefully explain the procedure and its purpose. The examiners will be asking the patient to name names or do simple math problems during the test to ensure he or she stays alert.
- Tell the patient to fast for several hours before the test and to avoid caffeine-containing beverages for 24 to 48 hours before the test.
- Tell patients with pacemakers that they should not have the test because pacemaker signals interfere with the sensitivity of ENG.

- Carefully introduce oral fluids after the test to prevent nausea and vomiting.

Caloric testing evaluates the vestibular (inner ear) portion of the auditory nerve. Warm water or warm air is infused into the ear. A normal response is the onset of vertigo and nystagmus within 20 to 30 seconds. Prepare the patient for caloric testing by:

- Carefully explaining the procedure and its purpose.
- Telling the patient to fast for several hours before the test.
- Telling the patient that the affected side will be tested first.
- Explaining that he or she will be on bedrest after the procedure with careful introduction of oral fluids to prevent nausea and vomiting.

Dix-Hallpike testing for vertigo is performed by assisting the patient to a sitting position on an examination table. Stand to the side of the patient, and quickly reposition him or her from sitting to supine with the head extending beyond the end of the table. This change of position is done first to one side and then to the other side. A patient with benign positional vertigo will have a burst of nystagmus after a delay of 5 to 10 seconds.

To prepare the patient for the Dix-Hallpike test:

- Carefully explain the procedure and its purpose.
- Tell him or her to keep the eyes open and try not to blink.
- Explain that double vision may occur during the test.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution or action is the priority for the nurse to teach the client who is scheduled to undergo tympanometry, pure-tone audiometry, and caloric testing?

- Avoid aspirin and aspirin-containing products for 1 week before testing.
- Shower and wash your hair the night before testing.
- Do not eat or drink within 4 hours before testing.
- Do not smoke for 24 hours before the testing.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to NOTICE in a patient with adequate sensation related to the ear and hearing?

- Ears are symmetric on the face on a line about even with the corners of the eyes and with the tops of the ears rotated slightly toward back.
- Outer ear (pinna) has no open areas, scales, or bumps.
- No drainage occurs from the ear canal.
- Does not tilt one side of the head or lean forward when listening to another person speak.
- Startles when a loud or unexpected sound occurs in the environment.

- Responds appropriately to questions.
- Does not consistently ask a speaker to repeat himself or herself; does not say “What?” or “Huh?” frequently.
- Responds appropriately to greetings with other people in the immediate environment.
- Responds appropriately to whispered questions and conversations, even when the speaker is not facing the patient.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use a separate speculum cover for each ear when conducting an otoscopic examination.
- Slowly and gently introduce the otoscopic speculum into the external ear canal during assessment.
- Use Standard Precautions with any patient who has drainage from the ear canal.
- Do not perform an otoscopic examination on a confused patient.
- Use the suggestions presented in the Patient History section to enhance communication with a patient who has a hearing impairment.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients the proper way to clean the pinna and external ear canal.

- Identify patients at risk for hearing impairment as a result of work environment or leisure activities.
- Encourage all patients, even if they already have a hearing impairment, to use ear protection in loud environments.
- Inform all patients who smoke that smoking increases the risk for development of hearing problems.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express fear or anxiety about a change in hearing status.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient about hearing problems in any other members of the family, because many hearing problems have a genetic component.
- Ask the patient whether he or she has ever used any ototoxic drugs (see [Table 50-1](#)).

Care of Patients with Ear and Hearing Problems

Judith Laver Bierschbach



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Apply principles of infection control when examining an ear with drainage.
2. Implement precautions to prevent falls in patients experiencing vertigo or dizziness.
3. Correctly instill eardrops.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach patients using hearing aids how to use and care for them properly.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests, procedures, and follow-up to manage ear and hearing problems.
6. Provide opportunities for the patient and family to express feelings and concerns about a change in hearing.

7. Refer hearing-impaired patients and families to local and Internet-based support services.

Physiological Integrity

8. Compare the clinical manifestations and interventions for external otitis with those of otitis media.
9. Safely remove impacted cerumen from the ear canal of an older patient.
10. Coordinate the care of the patient with Ménière's disease.
11. Prioritize nursing care needs for the patient after tympanoplasty.
12. Prioritize educational needs for the patient after stapedectomy.
13. Identify an appropriate method for communicating with a patient who has recently become hearing impaired.

The ears are important for hearing and balance. Ear disorders may lead to hearing difficulty, balance problems, and impaired general function. Hearing problems reduce the ability of patients to fully communicate with the world around them. They can lead to confusion, mistrust, social isolation, and the inability to give and receive accurate information. Although ear and hearing disorders are often easily managed, early recognition and intervention are necessary to prevent additional damage and to promote a maximum level of wellness.

CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE EXTERNAL EAR

The external ear is the outermost part of the ear structures and is subject to outside factors that can cause problems. Disorders of the external ear include congenital malformation (birth defects), trauma, and infectious or noninfectious lesions of the pinna, auricle, or auditory canal. The presence of birth defects in one area does not necessarily mean that other areas of the ear also will be affected. Abnormalities of

the external ear range from crumpling or falling forward of the pinna to complete absence (**atresia**) of the auditory canal. Trauma can damage or destroy the auricle and external canal. Surgical reconstruction can re-form the pinna with skin grafts and plastic prostheses. Trauma to the auricle resulting in a hematoma requires the removal of blood via needle aspiration to prevent calcification and hardening, which is often referred to as a **cauliflower** or **boxer's ear**.

Benign cysts or polyps of the auricle or external canal are surgically removed if they block the canal and affect hearing. Cancer cells, usually basal cell carcinoma, can occur on the pinna. Usually, treatment consists of simple excision. When the lesion becomes larger, its location near the skull and facial nerve makes treatment more difficult.

EXTERNAL OTITIS

Pathophysiology

External otitis is a painful condition caused when irritating or infective agents come into contact with the skin of the external ear. The result is either an allergic response or inflammation with or without infection. Affected skin becomes red, swollen, and tender to touch or movement. Swelling of the ear canal can lead to temporary hearing loss due to obstruction. Allergic external otitis is often caused by contact with cosmetics, hair sprays, earphones, earrings, or hearing aids. The most common infectious organisms are *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Streptococcus*, *Staphylococcus*, and *Aspergillus*.

External otitis occurs more often in hot, humid environments, especially in the summer, and is known as **swimmer's ear** because it occurs most often in people involved in water sports. Patients who have traumatized their external ear canal with sharp or small objects (e.g., hairpins, cotton-tipped applicators) or with headphones also are more susceptible to external otitis.

Necrotizing or malignant otitis is the most virulent form of external otitis. Organisms spread beyond the external ear canal into the ear and skull. The high mortality rate seen with malignant external otitis results from complications such as meningitis, brain abscess, and destruction of cranial nerve VII.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Manifestations of external otitis range from mild itching to pain with movement of the pinna or tragus, particularly when upward pressure is applied to the external canal. Patients report feeling as if the ear is plugged and hearing is reduced.

Use caution during otoscopic examination to avoid pressing on the walls of the external canal, which causes pain. Drainage from the ear is often greenish white. To prevent cross-contamination, examine the unaffected ear first. Hearing loss in the affected ear can be severe when inflammation obstructs the ear canal and prevents sounds from reaching the eardrum (**tympanic membrane**).

Management focuses on reducing inflammation, edema, and pain. Nursing priorities include comfort measures, such as applying heat to the ear for 20 minutes three times a day. This can be accomplished by using towels warmed with water and then wrapped in a plastic bag or by using a heating pad placed on a low setting. Teach the patient that minimizing head movements reduces pain.

CHART 51-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Instillation of Eardrops

- Gather the solutions to be administered.
- Check the labels to ensure correct dosage and time.
- Wear gloves to remove and discard any ear packing.
- Wash your hands.
- Perform a gentle otoscopic examination to determine whether the eardrum is intact.
- Irrigate the ear if the eardrum is intact (see [Chart 51-2](#)).
- Place the bottle of eardrops (with the top on tightly) in a bowl of warm water for 5 minutes.
- Tilt the patient's head in the opposite direction of the affected ear, and place the drops in the ear.
- With his or her head tilted, ask the patient to gently move the head back and forth five times.
- Insert a cotton ball into the opening of the ear canal to act as packing.
- Wash your hands again.

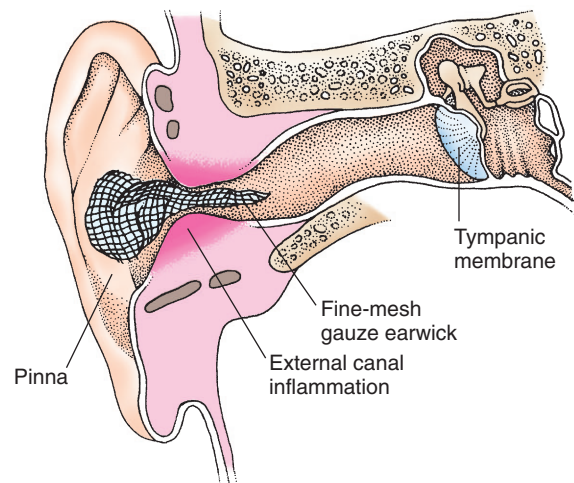


FIG. 51-1 Earwick for instillation of antibiotics into the external canal. When edema occludes the external auditory canal, it is difficult for antibiotic solutions to enter the canal adequately. An earwick is placed through the meatus. Solutions placed on the external portion of the earwick are absorbed through the canal.

Topical antibiotic and steroid therapies are most effective in decreasing inflammation and pain. Review best practices for instilling eardrops with the patient, as shown in [Chart 51-1](#). Observe the patient self-administer the eardrops to make sure that proper technique is used. If edema obstructs the external canal, an earwick is inserted past the blockage, with drugs applied to the outside end ([Fig. 51-1](#)). A long piece of gauze dressing serves as an earwick, which the health care provider inserts using forceps to push carefully through the blocked external auditory canal to the eardrum. The earwick may be removed when eardrops can flow freely into the canal. Use handwashing whenever the infected ear is touched. Oral or IV antibiotics are used in severe cases, especially when infection spreads to surrounding tissue or area lymph nodes are enlarged.

Analgesics, including opioids, may be needed for pain relief during the initial days of treatment. NSAIDs, such as acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin, Entrophen ) and ibuprofen (Advil), or acetaminophen (Tylenol, Abenol ) may relieve less-severe pain.

After the inflammation has subsided, a solution of 50% rubbing alcohol, 25% white vinegar, and 25% distilled water may be dropped into the ear to keep it clean and dry and to prevent recurrence. Teach the patient not to use cotton-tipped applicators to dry the ears, because this use could damage the canal and increase the risk for infection or inflammation. Teach him or her to use preventive measures for minimizing ear canal moisture, trauma, or exposure to materials that lead to local irritation or contact dermatitis. Recommend the use of earplugs when engaging in water sports to those patients with recurrent episodes of external otitis.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The client with external otitis reports reduced hearing in the affected ear and asks whether the hearing loss will be permanent. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. "Yes, but fortunately the hearing of the other ear remains normal."
- B. "Yes, but this type of problem can be helped with a hearing aid."
- C. "No, infection does not lead to any type of permanent hearing loss."
- D. "No, if the infection does not reach the middle ear, hearing will return."

FURUNCLE

A **furuncle** is a localized external otitis caused by bacterial infection, usually *Staphylococcus*, of a hair follicle. Most furuncles occur on the outer half of the external canal.

The manifestations of a furuncle include intense local pain to light touch. The area is swollen and red, with tight skin covering the area, possibly with a purulent head. No drainage is seen unless the furuncle has ruptured. Hearing is impaired if the lesion blocks the canal.

Treatment consists of local and systemic antibiotics and local heat application. An earwick may be used with one-half strength Burow's solution to relieve pain. The furuncle may need to be incised and drained if it does not resolve with antibiotic therapy.

PERICHONDritis

Perichondritis is an infection of the **perichondrium**, a tough, fibrous tissue layer that surrounds the cartilage and shapes the pinna. This tissue supplies blood to the ear cartilage. Infection can be caused by opening an area of pus or localized infection, insect bites, trauma, postoperative complication of tympanoplasty, and cartilage ear piercing. When infection occurs between the perichondrium and the cartilage, blood flow to the cartilage can be reduced to the point that necrosis occurs and the pinna may become deformed. This can occur as a complication of high helical ear piercing and may require removal of necrotic tissue.

The purposes of management are to eliminate the infection and ensure that the perichondrium stays in direct contact

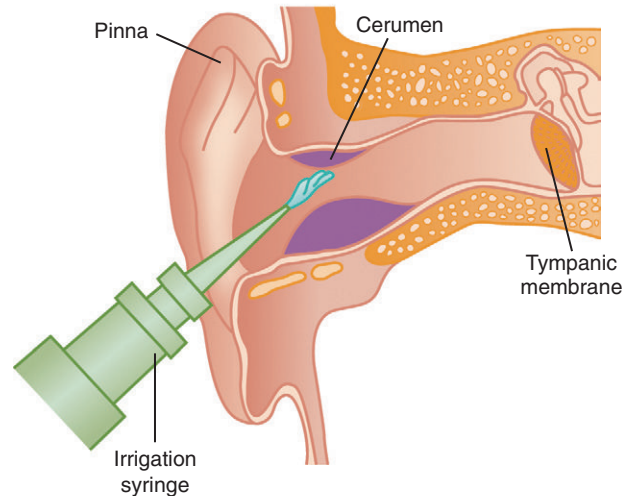


FIG. 51-2 Irrigation of the external canal. Cerumen and debris can be removed from the ear by irrigation with warm water. The stream of water is aimed above or below the impaction to allow back-pressure to push it out rather than further down the canal.

with the cartilage. In addition to systemic antibiotic therapy, a wide incision is made and suction drainage is used to remove pus and other fluid.

CERUMEN OR FOREIGN BODIES

Pathophysiology

Cerumen (wax) is the most common cause of an impacted canal. A canal can also become impacted as a result of foreign bodies that can enter or be placed in the external ear canal, such as vegetables, beads, pencil erasers, and insects. Although uncomfortable, cerumen or foreign bodies are rarely true emergencies and can be carefully removed by a health care professional. Cerumen impaction in the older adult is common, and removal of the cerumen from older adults often improves hearing (Holcomb, 2009).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Patients with a cerumen impaction or a foreign body in the ear may experience a sensation of fullness in the ear, with or without hearing loss, and may have ear pain, itching, dizziness, or bleeding from the ear. The object may be visible with direct inspection.

When the occluding material is cerumen, management options include watchful waiting, manual removal, and the use of ceruminolytic agents followed by either manual irrigation or the use of a low-pressure, electronic, oral irrigation device (Holcomb, 2009). The canal can be irrigated with a mixture of water and hydrogen peroxide at body temperature (Fig. 51-2), following best practices for proper irrigation (Chart 51-2). Removal of a cerumen obstruction by irrigation is a slow process and may take more than one sitting. When it is the cause of hearing loss, cerumen removal may improve hearing. Between 50 and 70 mL of solution is the maximum

CHART 51-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Ear Irrigation**

- Wash your hands.
- Use an otoscope to check the location of the impacted cerumen; ascertain that the eardrum is intact and that the patient does not have otitis media.
- Gather the proper equipment: basin, syringe (without needle), otoscope, towel.
- Warm tap water (or other prescribed solution) to body temperature.
- Fill a syringe with the warmed irrigating solution.
- Place a towel around the patient's neck.
- Place a basin under the ear to be irrigated.
- Place the tip of the syringe at an angle so that the fluid pushes on one side of and not directly on the impaction (this helps loosen the impaction instead of forcing it further into the canal).
- Apply gentle but firm continuous pressure, allowing the water to flow against the top of the canal.
- Do not use blasts or bursts of sudden pressure.
- If pain occurs, decrease the pressure. If pain persists, stop the irrigation.
- Watch the fluid return for signs of cerumen plug removal.
- Continue to irrigate the ear with about 70 mL of fluid.
- If the cerumen does not drain out, wait 10 minutes and repeat the irrigation procedure.
- Monitor the patient for signs of nausea.
- If the patient becomes nauseated, stop the procedure.
- If the cerumen cannot be removed by irrigation, place (or the patient may place) mineral oil into the ear three times a day for 2 days to soften dry, impacted cerumen, after which irrigation may be repeated.
- After completion of the irrigation, have the patient turn his or her head to the side just irrigated to drain any remaining irrigation fluid.
- Wash your hands.

amount that the patient with an impaction usually can tolerate at one sitting.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Do not irrigate an ear with an eardrum perforation or otitis media because this may spread the infection to the inner ear. Also, do not irrigate the ear when the foreign object is vegetable matter, because this material expands when wet, making the impaction worse. For vegetable matter, the object needs to be physically removed by an experienced health care professional.

If the cerumen is thick and dry or cannot be removed easily, suggest an over-the-counter ceruminolytic product such as Cerumenex to soften the wax before trying to remove it. Another way to soften cerumen is to add 3 drops of glycerin or mineral oil to the ear at bedtime and 3 drops of hydrogen peroxide twice a day. After several days of this treatment, the cerumen is more easily removed by irrigation. In some cases, a small curette or cerumen spoon may be used by a health care professional to scoop out the wax. Care is taken with this method because damage to the canal or the eardrum can occur with improper technique.

Discourage the use of cotton swabs and ear candles (hollow tubes coated in wax inserted into the ear and then lighted at

CHART 51-3 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT**Cerumen Impaction**

- Assess the hearing of all older patients using simple voice tests (see Chapter 50).
- Perform a gentle otoscopic inspection of the external canal and eardrum of any older patient who has a problem with hearing acuity, especially the patient who wears a hearing aid.
- Use ear irrigation to remove any impacted cerumen.
- Make certain that the irrigating fluid is about 98.6° F (37° C) to reduce the chance for stimulating the vestibular sense.
- Use no more than 5 to 10 mL of irrigating fluid at a time.
- If nausea, vomiting, or dizziness develops, stop the irrigation immediately.
- Teach the patient how to irrigate his or her own ears.
- Obtain a return demonstration of ear irrigation from the patient, observing for specific areas in which the patient may need assistance.
- Encourage the patient to wash the external ears daily using a soapy, wet washcloth over the index finger (best done in the shower or while washing the hair).

the far end) to clean the ears or remove cerumen. Chart 50-3 in Chapter 50 describes steps to teach patients regarding ear hygiene and self-ear irrigation. Refer to Chart 51-3 for nursing care considerations of older adult patients with cerumen impaction.

Insects are killed before removal unless they can be coaxed out by a flashlight or a humming noise. Lidocaine, a numbing agent, can be placed in the ear canal for pain relief. Mineral oil or diluted alcohol instilled into the ear can suffocate the insect, which is then removed with ear forceps.

If the patient has local irritation, an antibiotic or steroid ointment may be applied to prevent infection and reduce local irritation. Hearing acuity is tested if hearing loss is not resolved by removal of the object.

Surgical removal of the foreign object may be required. The object is removed through the ear canal (transcanal route) using a wire bent at a 90-degree angle. The wire is looped around the object, and the object is pulled out.

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Safety; Patient-Centered Care**

A 78-year-old woman who is an assisted-living resident reports pain in and drainage from her right ear. She also reports decreased hearing in the affected ear. When you examine her, she asks if she can just have some medicine without an examination of the ear. You reassure her that you will be gentle and not cause more pain. She reluctantly agrees to be examined.

1. Describe exactly how you would proceed with this ear assessment.
2. What other vital signs should you take and why?
As you prepare to perform an otoscopic examination of the right ear, the patient tells you that last week her ear itched and that she used a pencil to scratch the ear canal. When she removed the pencil, the eraser was missing. Her ear pain and discharge began about 3 days later.
3. Should you proceed with an otoscopic examination now? Why or why not?
4. What type of problem do you suspect with this situation?

Because this procedure is painful, general anesthesia is needed.

CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE MIDDLE EAR

OTITIS MEDIA

Pathophysiology

The three common forms of otitis media are acute otitis media, chronic otitis media, and serous otitis media. Each type affects the middle ear but has different causes and pathologic changes. If otitis progresses or is untreated, permanent conductive hearing loss may occur.

Acute otitis media and chronic otitis media, also known as *suppurant* or *purulent* otitis media, are similar. An infecting agent in the middle ear causes inflammation of the mucosa, leading to swelling and irritation of the small bones (*ossicles*) within the middle ear, followed by purulent inflammatory exudate. Acute disease has a sudden onset and lasts 3 weeks or less. Chronic otitis media often follows repeated acute episodes, has a longer duration, and causes greater middle ear injury. It may be a result of the continuing presence of a biofilm in the middle ear. A biofilm is a community of bacteria working together to overcome host defense mechanisms to continue to survive and proliferate (Lee et al., 2009). (See Chapter 25 for more information about biofilms.) Therapy for complications associated with chronic otitis media, unlike that of acute otitis media, usually involves surgical intervention.

The eustachian tube and mastoid, connected to the middle ear by a sheet of cells, are also affected by the infection. If the eardrum membrane perforates and infective materials spill into the external ear, external otitis develops that thickens and scars the middle ear if left untreated. Necrosis of the ossicles destroys middle ear structures and causes hearing loss.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient with acute or chronic otitis media has ear pain with and without movement of the external ear. Acute otitis media causes more intense pain. As the pressure in the middle ear increases, there is a sensation of fullness in the ear. Hearing is reduced and distorted. The patient may notice a sticking or cracking sound in the ear upon yawning or swallowing or may have tinnitus in the form of a low hum or a low-pitched sound. Conductive hearing loss may occur as sound wave transmission is obstructed. Headaches and systemic symptoms such as malaise, fever, nausea, and vomiting can occur. As the pressure on the middle ear pushes against the inner ear, the patient may have dizziness or vertigo.

Otoscopic examination findings vary, depending on the stage of the condition. The eardrum is initially retracted, which allows landmarks of the ear to be seen clearly. At this early stage, the patient has only vague ear discomfort. As the condition progresses, the eardrum's blood vessels dilate and appear red (Fig. 51-3). In the third stage, the eardrum becomes red, thickened, and bulging, with loss of landmarks. Decreased eardrum mobility is evident on inspection with a pneumatic otoscope. Pus may be seen behind the membrane.

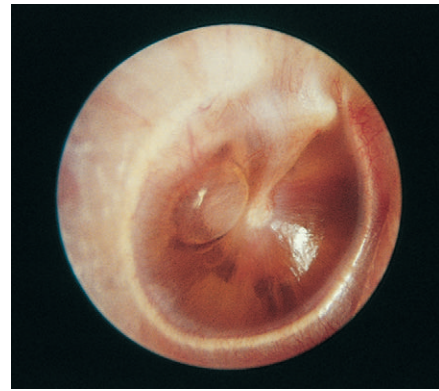


FIG. 51-3 Otoscopic view of otitis media.

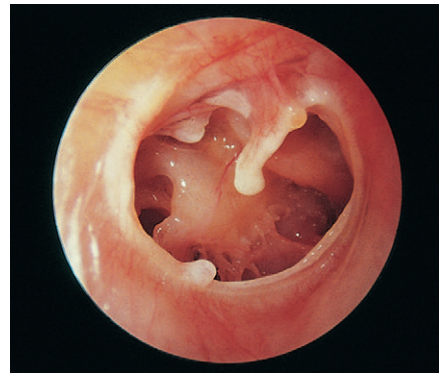


FIG. 51-4 Otoscopic view of a perforated tympanic membrane.

If the condition progresses, the eardrum spontaneously **perforates** (ruptures) and pus or blood drains from the ear (Fig. 51-4). When the membrane ruptures, the patient notices a marked decrease in pain as the pressure on middle ear structures is relieved (Fig. 51-5). Eardrum perforations from any cause may heal if the underlying problem is controlled. Initially, the eardrum membrane is thinner over the healed perforation. A simple central perforation does not interfere with hearing unless the small bones of the middle ear are damaged or the perforation is large. Repeated perforations with extensive scarring can cause hearing loss.

Cultures of drainage after a perforation from uncontrolled otitis media may reveal the infecting agent. Cultures are taken only when previous treatment is ineffective. When the eardrum is not perforated, a needle aspiration or myringotomy may be performed by a physician or nurse practitioner to withdraw fluid for culture.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

Management can be as simple as putting the patient in a quiet environment. Bedrest limits head movements that intensify the pain. Heat may be applied by using a heating pad adjusted to a low setting. Application of cold also may relieve pain.

Topical antibiotics are not used to treat otitis media. Systemic antibiotic therapy decreases pain by reducing inflammation. Teach the patient to complete the antibiotic therapy as prescribed and to not stop taking the drug when manifestations are no longer present. Stopping the drug early may

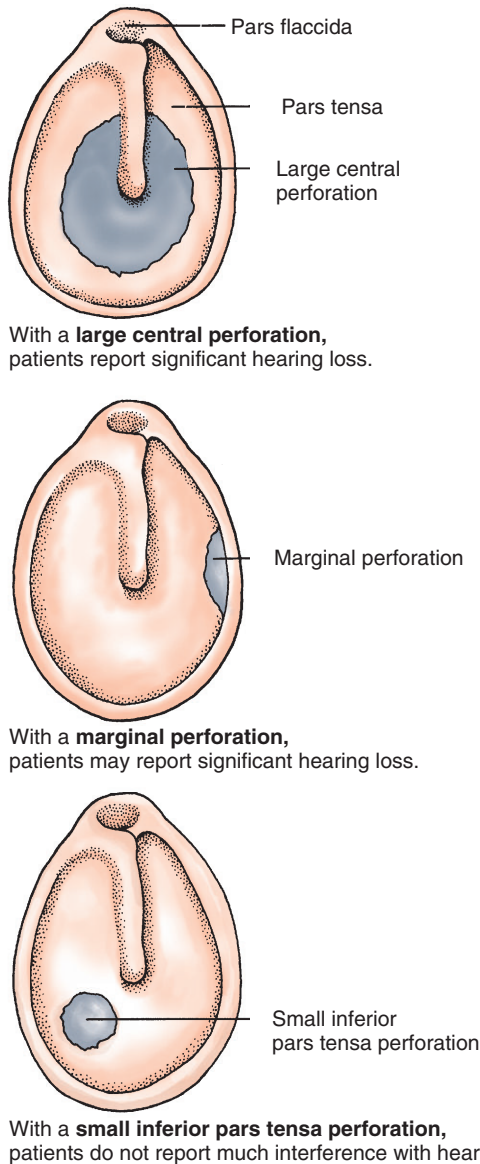


FIG. 51-5 Perforations of the tympanic membrane. Central perforations heal more quickly than marginal perforations. Marginal perforations that do not heal allow cholesteatoma formation.

result in infection recurrence and contributes to antibiotic resistance. Analgesics such as aspirin, ibuprofen (Advil), and acetaminophen (Tylenol, Abenol ) relieve pain and reduce fever, helping the patient feel better. When pain is severe, opioid analgesics such as codeine also may be prescribed.

Antihistamines and decongestants are prescribed to decrease fluid in the middle ear. The body can then reabsorb the fluid, reducing pressure and pain.

Surgical Management

If pain persists after antibiotic therapy and the eardrum continues to bulge, a **myringotomy** (surgical opening of the pars tensa of the eardrum) is performed. This procedure drains middle ear fluids and immediately relieves pain.

Preoperative care includes reassuring the patient that the myringotomy will relieve pain and is usually performed

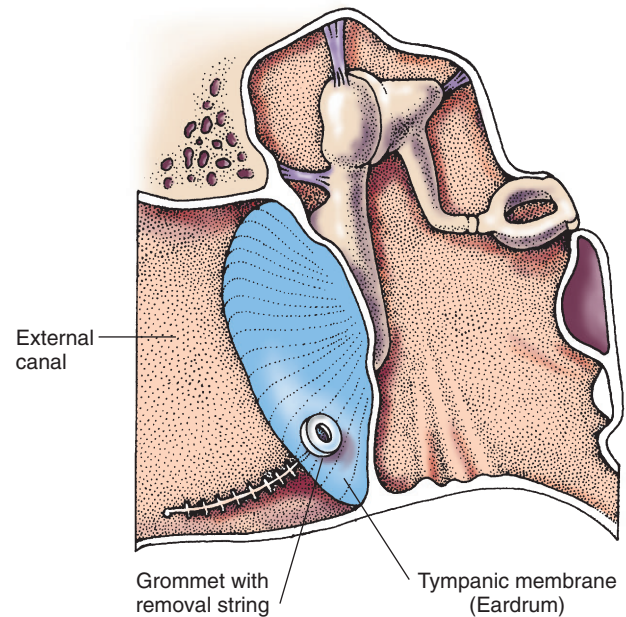


FIG. 51-6 Grommet through the tympanic membrane. A small grommet is placed through the tympanic membrane away from the margins, which allows prolonged drainage of fluids from the middle ear. The grommet can be removed later and the tympanic membrane allowed to heal naturally or patched with a small piece of homogenous tissue.

without anesthesia. Many people are concerned about a perforation and its effect on hearing. To relieve some of this anxiety, discuss the reasons for the procedure and encourage the patient to use techniques such as deep breathing before and during the procedure. Systemic antibiotic therapy continues before and after this procedure. Clean the external canal with a bacteriostatic solution such as povidone-iodine (Betadine) before the myringotomy.

The operative procedure is a small surgical incision often performed in an office or clinic setting and heals rapidly. Another approach is the removal of fluid from the middle ear with a needle. For relief of pressure caused by serous otitis media and for those patients who have repeated episodes of otitis media, a small **grommet** (polyethylene tube) may be surgically placed through the eardrum to allow continuous drainage of middle ear fluids (Fig. 51-6).

Postoperative care priorities include teaching the patient to keep the external ear and canal free of other substances while the incision is healing. Instruct him or her to keep the head dry by not washing the hair or showering for several days. Other instructions after surgery are listed in [Chart 51-4](#).

MASTOIDITIS

Pathophysiology

The lining of the middle ear is continuous with the lining of the mastoid air cells, which are embedded in the temporal bone. **Mastoiditis** is an infection of the mastoid air cells caused by untreated or inadequately treated otitis media. This infection can be acute or chronic. Antibiotic therapy is used to treat the middle ear infection before it progresses to mastoiditis.

CHART 51-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Recovery from Ear Surgery

- Avoid straining when you have a bowel movement.
- Do not drink through a straw for 2 to 3 weeks.
- Avoid air travel for 2 to 3 weeks.
- Avoid excessive coughing for 2 to 3 weeks.
- Stay away from people with respiratory infections.
- If you need to blow your nose, blow gently, without occluding either nostril, with your mouth open.
- Avoid getting your head wet, washing your hair, and showering for 1 week.
- Keep your ear dry for 6 weeks by placing a ball of cotton coated with petroleum jelly (e.g., Vaseline) in your ear. Change the cotton ball daily.
- Avoid rapidly moving the head, bouncing, and bending over for 3 weeks.
- Change your ear dressing every 24 hours or as directed.
- Report excessive drainage immediately to your physician.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The manifestations of mastoiditis include swelling behind the ear and pain with minimal movement of the tragus, the pinna, or the head. Pain is *not* relieved by myringotomy. **Cel-lulitis** (infection spreading sideways through the tissues of the skin) develops on the skin or external scalp over the mastoid process. The ear is pushed sideways and down. Otoscopic examination shows a red, dull, thick, immobile eardrum with or without perforation. Lymph nodes behind the ear are tender and enlarged. Patients may have low-grade fever, malaise, ear drainage, and loss of appetite. Hearing loss occurs, and computed tomography (CT) scans show fluid in the air cells of the mastoid process.

Interventions focus on halting the infection before it spreads to other structures. IV antibiotics are used to prevent the spread of infection. These drugs have limited use in actual mastoiditis treatment because they do not easily penetrate the infected bony structure of the mastoid. Cultures of the ear drainage determine which antibiotics should be most effective. Surgical removal of the infected tissue is needed if the infection does not respond to antibiotic therapy within a few days. A simple or modified radical mastoidectomy with tympanoplasty is the most common treatment. All infected tissue must be removed so that the infection does not spread to other structures. A tympanoplasty is then performed to reconstruct the ossicles and the eardrum to restore hearing. Patient preparation, the operative procedure, and follow-up care for tympanoplasty are discussed on pp. 1101 and 1102.

Complications occur when infective material is not removed completely or when other structures are contaminated. Complications include damage to cranial nerves VI and VII, decreasing the patient's ability to look sideways (cranial nerve VI) and causing a drooping of the mouth on the affected side (cranial nerve VII). Other complications include vertigo, meningitis, brain abscess, chronic purulent otitis media, and wound infection.

TRAUMA

Pathophysiology

Trauma and damage may occur to the eardrum and ossicles by infection, by direct damage, or through rapid changes in the middle ear pressure. Foreign objects placed in the external canal exert pressure on the eardrum and cause perforation. If the objects continue through the canal, the bones of the middle ear may be damaged. Blunt injury to the skull and ears can also damage or fracture middle ear structures. Slapping the external ear increases the pressure in the ear canal and can tear the eardrum. The eardrum has a limited stretching ability and gives way under high pressure. Excessive nose blowing and rapid changes of pressure that occur with non-pressurized air flight (**barotrauma**) can increase pressure within the middle ear. High pressure damages the ossicles and can perforate the eardrum.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Most eardrum perforations heal within a week or two without treatment. Repeated perforations, especially from chronic otitis media, heal more slowly, with scarring. Depending on the amount of damage to the ossicles, hearing may or may not return. Hearing aids can improve hearing in this type of hearing loss. Surgical reconstruction of the ossicles and eardrum through a tympanoplasty or a myringoplasty may also improve hearing. (See later discussion of nursing care on p. 1102 in the Tympanoplasty section.)

Nursing care priorities focus on teaching about trauma prevention. Caution patients to avoid inserting objects into the external canal and to follow the steps in [Chart 50-3](#) in [Chapter 50](#) for ear hygiene. Stress the importance of using ear protectors when blunt trauma is likely, especially in sports such as boxing and wrestling.

NEOPLASMS

Tumors of the middle ear are rare, and the most common type is the *glomus jugulare*, a benign lesion arising from the jugular vein. Malignant ear tumors also can occur. The growth of any lesion within the middle ear area disrupts conductive hearing, erodes the ossicles, and may spread to the inner ear and nearby cranial nerves.

Patients have progressive hearing loss and tinnitus. Infection and pain rarely occur with *glomus jugulare* tumors. Otoscopic examination shows a bulging eardrum or a mass extending to the external ear canal. The many blood vessels of the *glomus jugulare* tumor give it a reddish color and a visible pulsation when seen through the eardrum.

Diagnosis is made by physical examination, tomography, and angiography. Tumors are removed by surgery, which often destroys hearing in the affected ear. If all of the edges of the tumor can be seen clearly through the eardrum, surgery is performed through the ear canal to remove the tumor. When the tumor edges extend past the eardrum, more testing is needed to determine the extent of involvement. Radiation therapy is used to decrease the blood supply of the *glomus jugulare* tumor but is not the preferred method of treatment.

TABLE 51-1 RESOURCE AGENCIES FOR EAR AND HEARING IMPAIRMENT

House Research Institute 2100 West Third Street, Fifth Floor Los Angeles, CA 90057 Voice: (800) 388-8612 Fax: (213) 483-8789 www.hei.org E-mail: info@hei.org	American Speech-Language-Hearing Association 2200 Research Boulevard Rockville, MD 20850-3289 Voice: (800) 638-8255 Fax: (301) 296-8580 www.asha.org
Laurent Clerc National Deaf Education Center Gallaudet University 800 Florida Avenue NE Washington, DC 20002 Voice/TTY: (202) 651-5051	Hearing Loss Association of America 7910 Woodmont Avenue, Suite 1200 Bethesda, MD 20814 Voice/TTY: (301) 657-2248 Fax: (301) 657-2248 www.shhh.org
American Academy of Otolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery One Prince Street Alexandria, VA 22314-3357 Voice/TTY: (703) 836-4444 www.entnet.org	American Tinnitus Association P.O. Box 5 Portland, OR 97207-0005 Voice: (800) 634-8978 www.ata.org

Benign tumors are removed because, with continued growth, other structures can be affected, further damaging the facial or trigeminal nerve. When possible, reconstruction of the middle ear structures is performed later to restore conductive hearing.

CONDITIONS AFFECTING THE INNER EAR

TINNITUS

Tinnitus (continuous ringing or noise perception in the ear) is a common hearing problem. Diagnostic testing cannot confirm tinnitus, nor can the disorder be observed. Testing is performed, however, to assess hearing and rule out other disorders.

Manifestation of tinnitus range from mild ringing, which can go unnoticed during the day, to a loud roaring in the ear, which can interfere with thinking and attention span. Some patients feel as if the constant ringing could drive them mad. When patients report tinnitus, consider the many factors that cause tinnitus: presbycusis, **otosclerosis** (irregular bone growth around ossicles), Ménière's disease, certain drugs, exposure to loud noise, and other inner ear problems (Bauer & Brozoski, 2008).

The problem and its management vary with the underlying cause (Newman et al., 2008). When no cause can be found or the disorder is untreatable, therapy focuses on ways to mask the tinnitus with background sound, noise-makers, and music during sleeping hours. Ear mold hearing aids can amplify sounds to drown out the tinnitus during the day. The American Tinnitus Association assists patients in coping with tinnitus. Refer patients with tinnitus to local and online support groups to help cope with this problem (Table 51-1).

VERTIGO AND DIZZINESS

Vertigo and dizziness are common manifestations of many ear disorders. **Dizziness** is a disturbed sense of a person's relationship to space. Patients vary greatly in defining dizziness. Vertigo is often used interchangeably with dizziness, but the definition and cause are somewhat different (Warren, 2008). True **vertigo** is a real sense of whirling or turning in space.

The visual system, the vestibular system (cochlea, semicircular canals), and the proprioceptive system (muscles and nerve endings) combine to give input to the brain about balance. Problems in any of these areas lead to a disturbed sense of balance and motion. Problems that cause vertigo include Ménière's disease, labyrinthitis, acoustic neuromas, motion sickness, and drug or alcohol ingestion.

Manifestations of vertigo include nausea, vomiting, falling, nystagmus, hearing loss, and tinnitus. Until the cause of the vertigo can be identified, each manifestation is treated. Teach patients these strategies to reduce manifestations:

- Restrict head motion and change position slowly.
- Maintain adequate hydration, especially after vomiting.
- Take drugs that reduce the vertigo effects such as over-the-counter dimenhydrinate (Dramamine, Gravol 🍁) or prescription drugs such as diazepam (Valium, Apo-Diazepam 🍁), meclizine (Antivert, Bonamine 🍁), and scopolamine (Transderm Scop, Transderm-V 🍁).

Many patients are dissatisfied with drug side effects, especially drowsiness, which can be worse than the vertigo. Teach patients to maintain a safe, uncluttered environment to prevent accidents during periods of vertigo and to use a cane or walker to maintain balance. Also instruct them to not drive or operate machinery when taking these drugs.

LABYRINTHITIS

Labyrinthitis is an infection of the labyrinth, which may occur as a complication of acute or chronic otitis media. Infection results from an erosion of the bony capsule, allowing organisms to invade the inner ear. Labyrinthitis often results from the growth of a **cholesteatoma** (benign overgrowth of squamous cell epithelium) from the middle ear into the semicircular canal. It may follow middle ear or inner ear surgery when infection is present. Labyrinthitis is often viral in origin and may occur with an upper respiratory infection or mononucleosis.

Manifestations include hearing loss, tinnitus, nystagmus to the affected side, and vertigo with nausea and vomiting. **Meningitis** (infection of the brain covering) is a common complication of labyrinthitis.

Labyrinthitis is usually a self-limiting condition. If it does not resolve with supportive therapy, management includes systemic antibiotics. Teach the patient to complete the antibiotic therapy as prescribed and to not stop taking the drug when manifestations are no longer present. Stopping the drug early can lead to infection recurrence and antibiotic resistance. Advise patients to stay in bed in a darkened room until manifestations are reduced. Antiemetics and antivertiginous drugs, such as dimenhydrinate (Dramamine, Gravol 🍁) and meclizine (Antivert, Bonamine 🍁), relieve symptoms.

The patient also needs psychosocial support. Hearing loss on the affected side may be permanent, although vertigo subsides as the inflammation resolves. Persistent balance problems may improve with gait training and physical therapy.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which problem is most important for the nurse to prevent with a client who has any degree of dizziness from an ear disorder?

- A. Pain
- B. Falls
- C. Dehydration
- D. Hearing loss

MÉNIÈRE'S DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Ménière's disease has three features: tinnitus, one-sided sensorineural hearing loss, and vertigo, occurring in attacks that can last for several days. (Some patients have continuous manifestations of varying intensity rather than intermittent attacks.) Patients are almost totally incapacitated during an attack, and full recovery often takes several days. The pathology of Ménière's disease is an excess of endolymphatic fluid that distorts the entire inner-canal system. This distortion decreases hearing by dilating the cochlear duct, causes vertigo because of damage to the vestibular system, and stimulates tinnitus (Peate, 2009). At first, hearing loss is reversible, but repeated damage to the cochlea from increased fluid pressure leads to permanent hearing loss.

The exact cause of Ménière's disease is unknown, but it often occurs with infections, allergic reactions, and fluid imbalances. Long-term stress may also have a role in the disease.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ménière's disease usually first occurs in people between the ages of 20 and 50 years. The disease is more common in men and in white people. Severe, debilitating attacks alternate with symptom-free periods. Patients often have certain manifestations before an attack of vertigo, such as headaches, increasing tinnitus, and a feeling of fullness in the affected ear.

Patients describe the tinnitus as a continuous, low-pitched roar or a humming sound, which worsens just before and during an attack. Hearing loss occurs first with the low-frequency tones but worsens to include all levels after repeated episodes. In the early stages of Ménière's disease, hearing is normal or nearly normal between episodes, but permanent hearing loss develops as the attacks increase.

Patients describe the vertigo as periods of whirling, which might even cause them to fall. The vertigo is so intense that even while lying down, the patient often holds the bed or ground to keep from falling. Severe vertigo usually lasts 3 to 4 hours, but he or she may feel dizzy long after the attack. Nausea and vomiting are common. Other manifestations

include rapid eye movements (**nystagmus**) and severe headaches.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

Teach patients to move the head slowly to prevent worsening of the vertigo. Nutrition and lifestyle changes can reduce the amount of endolymphatic fluid. Encourage patients to stop smoking because of the blood vessel-constricting effects.

Nutrition therapy with a hydrops diet may stabilize body fluid levels to prevent excess endolymph accumulation. The basic structure of this diet involves:

- Distributing food and fluid intake evenly throughout the day and from day to day
- Avoiding foods or fluids that have a high salt content
- Drinking adequate amounts of fluids (low in sugar) daily
- Avoiding caffeine-containing fluids and foods
- Limiting alcohol intake to one glass of beer or wine each day
- Avoiding foods containing monosodium glutamate (MSG)

Coordinate with a dietitian for more detailed information about hydrops diet therapy for reduction of Ménière's manifestations.

Drug therapy may reduce the vertigo and vomiting and restore normal balance. Mild diuretics are prescribed to decrease endolymph volume, which reduces vertigo, hearing loss, tinnitus, and aural fullness. Nicotinic acid has been found to be useful because of its vasodilatory effect. Antihistamines such as diphenhydramine hydrochloride (Benadryl, Allerdryl ☛) and dimenhydrinate (Dramamine, Gravol ☛), and antivertiginous drugs such as meclizine (Antivert, Bonamine ☛), help reduce the severity of or stop an acute attack. Antiemetics such as chlorpromazine hydrochloride (Thorazine, Novo-Chlorpromazine ☛), droperidol (Inapsine), promethazine (Phenergan), and ondansetron (Zofran) help reduce the nausea and vomiting. Diazepam (Valium, Apo-Diazepam ☛) calms the patient; reduces vertigo, nausea, and vomiting; and allows the patient to rest quietly during an attack. Intratympanic therapy with gentamicin and steroids is another method for preventing manifestations; however, some or all hearing is lost in the ear receiving this drug combination.

Another nonsurgical treatment is the Meniett device, which applies low-pressure micropulses to the inner ear for 5 minutes three times daily. This action displaces inner ear fluid and relieves manifestations. Placement of a tympanostomy tube in the eardrum of the affected ear is needed to use this therapy. Long-term success in control of vertigo is over 80%. Although hearing loss is not improved, Meniett device usage does not adversely affect balance, as do most forms of surgical therapy for Ménière's disease.

Surgical Management

For years, surgical treatment of Ménière's disease was a last resort because the hearing in the affected ear was often lost with the more radical procedures. When medical therapy is ineffective and the patient's general function is decreased significantly, surgery may be performed. The choice of the surgical procedure depends on the degree of usable hearing, the severity of the spells, and the condition of the opposite ear.

The most radical procedure involves resection of the vestibular nerve or total removal of the labyrinth (**labyrinthectomy**), performed through the ear canal. The footplate of the stapes is moved aside, and the labyrinth is removed through the oval window.

Another procedure performed early in the course of the disease is endolymphatic decompression with drainage and a shunt (Lee & Pensak, 2008). The effectiveness of this procedure varies. The endolymphatic sac is drained, and a small tube is inserted to improve fluid drainage. Some patients report relief of vertigo with retention of their hearing. If an endolymphatic decompression has been performed, movement of the vestibular structures of the inner ear causes vertigo early after surgery. Reassure the patient that the vertigo is a temporary result of the surgical procedure, not the disease.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which new symptom in a 68-year-old man taking diphenhydramine (Benadryl) for vertigo from Ménière's disease will the nurse report to the prescriber?

- A. Decreased urination
- B. Drowsiness
- C. Dry mouth
- D. Cough

ACOUSTIC NEUROMA

An **acoustic neuroma** is a benign tumor of cranial nerve VIII that often damages other structures as it grows. Depending on the size and exact location of the tumor, damage to hearing, facial movements, and sensation can occur (McCance

et al., 2010). An acoustic neuroma can cause many neurologic manifestations as the tumor enlarges in the brain.

Manifestations begin with tinnitus and progress to gradual sensorineural hearing loss in most patients. Later, patients have constant mild to moderate vertigo. As the tumor enlarges, nearby cranial nerves are damaged.

Acoustic neuromas are diagnosed with computed tomography (CT) scanning and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Audiograms show sensorineural hearing loss. Cerebrospinal fluid assays show increased pressure and protein.

Surgical removal through a craniotomy is performed, and the remaining hearing is lost. Care is taken to preserve the function of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII). Care after craniotomy is discussed in Chapter 47. Acoustic neuromas rarely recur after surgical removal.

HEARING LOSS

Pathophysiology

Hearing loss is a common handicap worldwide. It may be conductive, sensorineural, or a combination of the two (Fig. 51-7). Conductive hearing loss occurs when sound waves are blocked from contact with inner ear nerve fibers because of external ear or middle ear disorders. If the inner ear sensory nerve fibers that lead to the cerebral cortex are damaged, the hearing loss is *sensorineural*. Combined hearing loss is *mixed conductive-sensorineural*.

The differences in conductive and sensorineural hearing loss are listed in Table 51-2. Disorders that cause conductive hearing loss are often corrected with minimal or no permanent damage. Sensorineural hearing loss is often permanent, and measures must be taken to prevent further damage or to amplify sounds as a means to improve hearing.

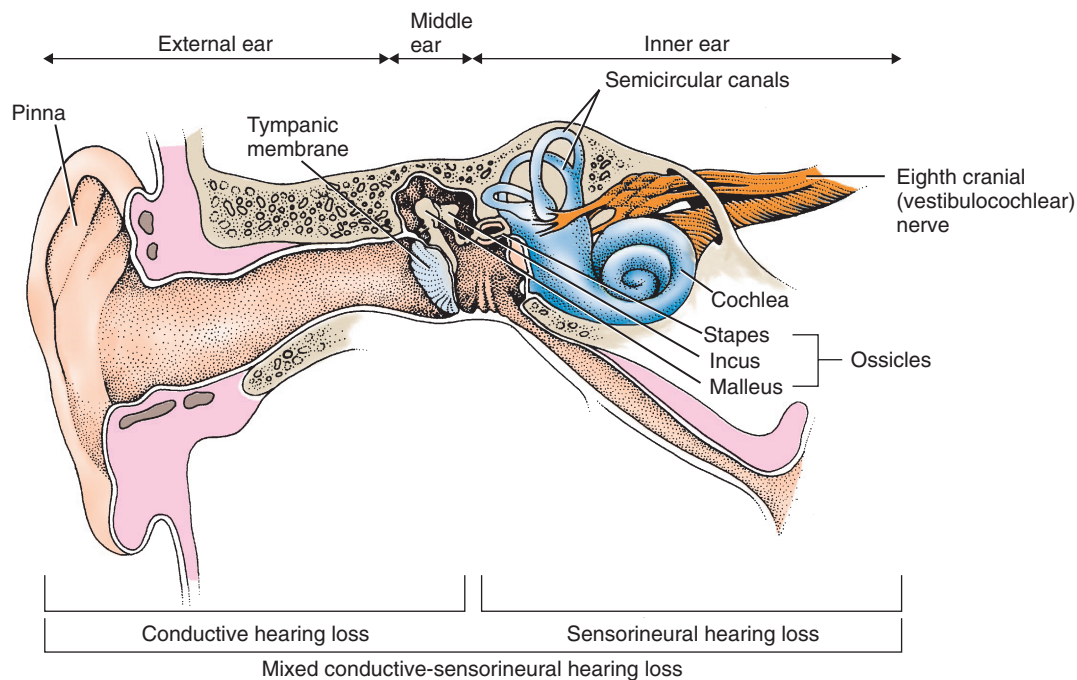


FIG. 51-7 Anatomy of hearing loss. Hearing loss can be divided into three types: (1) conductive (difficulty in the external or the middle ear); (2) sensorineural (difficulty in the inner ear or the acoustic nerve); and (3) mixed conductive-sensorineural (a combination of the two).

TABLE 51-2 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF CONDUCTIVE AND SENSORINEURAL HEARING LOSS

CONDUCTIVE HEARING LOSS	SENSORINEURAL HEARING LOSS
Causes	
Cerumen	Prolonged exposure to noise
Foreign body	Presbycusis
Perforation of the tympanic membrane	Ototoxic substance
Edema	Ménière's disease
Infection of the external ear or middle ear	Acoustic neuroma
Tumor	Diabetes mellitus
Otosclerosis	Labyrinthitis
	Infection
	Myxedema
Assessment Findings	
Evidence of obstruction with otoscope	Normal appearance of external canal and tympanic membrane
Abnormality in tympanic membrane	Tinnitus common
Speaking softly	Occasional dizziness
Hearing best in a noisy environment	Speaking loudly
Rinne test: air conduction greater than bone conduction	Hearing poorly in loud environment
Weber test: lateralization to affected ear	Rinne test: air conduction less than bone conduction
	Weber test: lateralization to unaffected ear

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Conductive hearing loss can be caused by any inflammation or obstruction of the external or middle ear by cerumen or foreign objects. Changes in the eardrum such as bulging, retraction, and perforations may indicate damage to middle ear structures, which leads to conductive hearing loss. Tumors, scar tissue, and overgrowth of soft bony tissue (**otosclerosis**) on the ossicles from previous middle ear surgery also lead to conductive hearing loss.

Sensorineural hearing loss occurs when the inner ear or auditory nerve (cranial nerve VIII) is damaged. Prolonged exposure to loud noise can damage the hair cells of the cochlea. Many drugs are toxic to the inner ear structures, and their effects on hearing can be transient or permanent, dose related or non-dose related, and affect one or both ears. When ototoxic drugs (e.g., those listed in [Table 50-1](#) in

[Chapter 50](#)) are given to patients with reduced kidney function, increased ototoxicity can result because drug elimination is slower. Older patients are especially at risk for ototoxicity because of reduced kidney function.

Presbycusis is a sensorineural hearing loss that occurs as a result of aging ([Ko, 2010](#)). It is caused by breakdown or atrophy of cochlear nerve cells, loss of elasticity of the basilar membrane, or a decreased blood supply to the inner ear. Deficiencies of vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid may play a role in presbycusis. Other causes include atherosclerosis, hypertension, infections, fever, Ménière's disease, diabetes, and ear surgery. Each disorder accelerates degenerative changes of the cochlea ([Touhy & Jett, 2010](#)). Trauma to the ear also contributes to sensorineural hearing loss ([Laubach, 2010](#)).

Incidence/Prevalence

Because hearing loss may be gradual and affect only some aspects of hearing, many adults are unaware that their hearing is impaired. The actual incidence of hearing loss is not known, but hearing loss dramatically increases among people in their 70s and 80s ([Pratt et al., 2009](#)) (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 1099).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

For most people, hearing is an important factor in social interactions and to gain knowledge. With special care to the ears, hearing can be preserved at maximum levels. Address barriers to the use of hearing protection, exposure to loud music, and other modifiable risk factors that lead to hearing loss ([Stephenson, 2009](#)). Encourage everyone to have simple hearing testing performed as part of their annual health assessment.

Teach everyone the danger in using foreign objects (e.g., bobby-pins, Q-tips, toothpicks, keys) to clean the ear canal. These objects can scrape the skin of the canal, push cerumen up against the eardrum, and even puncture the eardrum. Explain that nothing smaller than a person's own fingertip should be inserted into the canal. If cerumen buildup is a problem, teach the person to use an ear irrigation syringe and proper solutions to remove it. ([Chart 50-3](#) in [Chapter 50](#) describes techniques to remove cerumen safely.)

Teach all people about protecting their ears from loud noises by wearing protective ear devices, such as over-the-ear headsets or foam ear inserts, when exposed to persistent loud noises. Suggest the use of earplugs when engaging in water sports to prevent ear infections, as well as using an over-the-counter product such as Swim-Ear to assist with drying the ear after swimming.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Some types of hearing loss in adults can have a genetic origin. Some syndromes in which a single gene mutation results in many abnormal manifestations also increase the risk for progressive hearing loss in adults. Two such syndromes are Usher's syndrome and Alport's syndrome ([Nussbaum et al., 2007](#)). Usher's syndrome, in addition to hearing loss, occurs with blindness as a result of retinitis pigmentosa. This syndrome has an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance. Alport's syndrome, which causes abnormal kidney function in addition to hearing loss, has many forms and many patterns of inheritance. One type of adult-onset hearing loss that does not have any other physical problems is associated with a mutation in the *GJB2* gene on chromosome 1 ([Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man \[OMIM\], 2010](#)). This problem has an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask patients how long they have noticed a difference in their hearing and whether the changes occurred suddenly or gradually. Age is an important factor, because some ear and hearing changes occur with advancing age. Chronic otitis media occurs more often in the older adult. Ask about occupational exposure to loud or continuous noises, as well as current or previous use of ototoxic drugs. Also ask about any

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Is the Incidence of Hearing Loss Among Older Adults?

Pratt, S.R., Kuller, L., Talbott, E.O., McHugh-Pemu, K., Buhari, A.M., & Xu, X. (2009). Prevalence of hearing loss in black and white elders: Results of the cardiovascular health study. *Journal of Speech, Language, and Hearing Research*, 52(4), 973-989.

Hearing loss is more common among older adults; however, the actual incidence and the personal characteristics more closely associated with hearing loss are not known. The purpose of this study was to determine the influence of age, gender, and race on both the incidence and severity of hearing loss. The subjects were 548 persons who were part of a cohort of participants in a large cardiovascular health cohort study sponsored by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute of the National Institutes of Health; they represented a cross-section of the original 5201 members of the original cohort. Subjects ranged in age from 72 to 96 years and consisted of 48 black men, 74 black women, 179 white men, and 247 white women. Hearing was assessed after otoscopic examination determined no impediment to conduction through the ear canal existed. Hearing tests were performed by audiologists using pure-tone air-conduction testing measuring standard and extended high-frequency thresholds. In addition to descriptive statistics, multiple linear regression analyses were performed to examine relationships between hearing and variables of age, gender, race, smoking, and cardiovascular disease.

Age was the most significant contributor to hearing loss, with subjects in their 80s experiencing greater and more severe hearing loss than those in their 70s. Overall, men had more hearing loss than women and hearing loss was greater among whites than among blacks. A surprising outcome of the study was that neither smoking history nor cardiovascular disease had a negative effect on hearing.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although very large, the study was descriptive in nature without randomization of subject selection or assignment. The methods of statistical analysis were appropriate for the research questions posed.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The results of this study indicated that more than 50% of adults older than 80 years experienced significant hearing loss, especially men. Nurses must consider this when communicating with older adults, especially during assessment and teaching sessions when miscommunication could result in serious problems. Although nurses should not assume that all older adults have a hearing loss, it is important to use communication techniques that improve information transfer in all situations. These include:

- Facing the patient during any communication
- Ensuring that your mouth is visible to the patient when you speak
- Making the environment as quiet as possible (turning radios and televisions off or down, closing the door to the hall, moving to a treatment room or conference room if the noise in the room is too loud and cannot be managed)
- Speaking clearly and at a pace that is slightly slower (such as that you would use for public speaking)
- Asking the patient to repeat the main points of what has been said in his or her own words
- Observing the patient's face and body language for cues that communication is effective or ineffective

history of external ear or middle ear infection and whether eardrum perforation occurred. Ask patients about any direct trauma to the ears. Because some types of hearing loss have a genetic basis, ask whether any family members are hearing impaired. When pain occurs with acute-onset hearing loss,

CHART 51-5 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Suspected Hearing Loss

Assess whether the patient has any of these ear problems:

- Pain
- Feeling of fullness or congestion
- Dizziness or vertigo
- Tinnitus
- Difficulty understanding conversations, especially in a noisy room
- Difficulty hearing sounds
- The need to strain to hear
- The need to turn the head to favor one ear or the need to lean forward to hear

Assess visible ear structures, particularly the external canal and tympanic membrane:

- Position and size of the pinna
- Patency of the external canal; presence of cerumen or foreign bodies, edema, or inflammation
- Condition of the tympanic membrane: intact, edema, fluid, inflammation

Assess functional ability, including:

- Frequency of asking people to repeat statements
- Withdrawal from social interactions or large groups
- Shouting in conversation
- Failing to respond when not looking in the direction of the sound
- Answering questions incorrectly

ask about recent upper respiratory infection and allergies affecting the nose and sinuses.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Chart 51-5 lists focused assessment techniques for patients with suspected hearing loss. Hearing loss may be sudden or gradual and often affects both ears. The ability to hear high-frequency soft consonants—especially *s*, *sh*, *f*, *th*, and *ch* sounds—is lost first. Patients often state that they have no problem with hearing but cannot understand specific words. They might think that the speaker is mumbling. They often have continuous tinnitus in both ears. Vertigo may be present, depending on the extent of inner ear involvement.

Tuning fork tests help diagnose hearing loss (see Chapter 50). With the Weber test, the patient can usually hear sounds well in the ear with a conductive hearing loss because of bone conduction. With the Rinne test, the patient reports that sound transmitted by bone conduction is louder and more sustained than that transmitted by air conduction.

Otoscopic examination is performed to assess the external ear canal, the eardrum, and structures of the middle ear that can be seen through the eardrum (see Chapter 50). Findings from examination vary, depending on the cause of the hearing loss.

External ear canal obstruction can result in hearing loss. Inspect the canal, looking for:

- Whether the canal is open
- The amount and character of cerumen present
- The integrity of the skin lining the canal
- The presence of redness, exudates, lesions, or foreign objects

Middle ear infections can also reduce hearing. In infection or inflammation, the eardrum appears red, thickened, and bulging, with a loss of landmarks. Loss of eardrum mobility

is seen with inspection through a pneumatic otoscope. Document the presence of scars or perforations on the eardrum.

Psychosocial Assessment

For people with a hearing loss, communication can become a struggle and they may isolate themselves because of the difficulty in talking and listening. Social isolation can lead to depression, fear, and despair. Be sensitive to emotional changes that may be related to reduced hearing and a decline in conversational skills. Encourage the patient and family to express their feelings and concerns about an actual or potential hearing loss.

Laboratory Assessment

No laboratory test diagnoses hearing loss. However, some laboratory findings can indicate problems that affect hearing.

White blood cell counts are elevated in the patient with acute or chronic otitis media. Microbial culture and antibiotic sensitivity tests can determine the causative organism and appropriate drug therapy when infection causes hearing loss.

The patient with hearing loss from peripheral neuropathy may have other systemic diseases, including human immune deficiency virus (HIV) disease or diabetes. Patients undergoing cancer chemotherapy or interferon therapy are at risk for neuropathic hearing loss.

Imaging Assessment

Imaging assessment can determine non-auditory problems affecting hearing ability. Skull x-rays are used to determine bony involvement in otitis media and the location of otosclerotic lesions, and CT and MRI are used to determine soft-tissue involvement and the presence and location of tumors.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Audiometry can help determine the extent and type of hearing loss. An audiogram shows whether hearing loss is only conductive or whether it has a sensorineural component. This is important in determining possible causes of the hearing loss and in planning interventions.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for the patient with any degree of hearing impairment are:

1. Difficulty hearing related to obstruction, infection, damage to the middle ear, or damage to the auditory nerve
2. Potential for reduced communication related to difficulty hearing

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Increasing Hearing

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hearing impairment is expected to either have an increase in functional hearing or maintain existing hearing levels. Indicators include:

- No or minimal loss of high pitch tones
- No or minimal loss of ability to distinguish conversation from background environmental noise
- Turning toward sound
- Identifying discrete sounds

Interventions. Interventions are expected to identify the problem, halt the pathologic processes, and increase usable hearing. Nursing care priorities focus on teaching the patient about the use and care of an appropriate assistive device, providing support to the patient and family who are working to maintain or increase communication, and assisting patients to find local and Internet-based support services.

Nonsurgical Management. Interventions include early detection of hearing impairment, use of drug therapy and comfort measures, and use of assistive devices to amplify or augment the patient's usable hearing.

Early detection helps correct the problem causing the hearing loss. Assess for indications of hearing loss, as listed in [Chart 51-5](#).

Drug therapy is focused on either correcting the underlying pathologic change or reducing the side effects of problems occurring with hearing loss. Topical antibiotics are given to patients with external otitis. Systemic antibiotics are needed when patients have other ear infections. Teach the patient receiving antibiotic therapy the importance of taking the drug or drugs exactly as prescribed and completing the entire course. Caution him or her to not stop the drug just because manifestations have improved. By treating the infection, antibiotics reduce local edema and improve hearing. When pain occurs with hearing disorders, analgesics are used, depending on the location and type of pain. Many ear disorders disturb equilibrium, causing vertigo and dizziness with nausea and vomiting. Antiemetic, antihistamine, antivertiginous, and benzodiazepine drugs can help correct nausea, vertigo, and dizziness.

Assistive devices are useful for patients with permanent, progressive hearing loss. Portable amplifiers can be used while watching television to avoid increasing the volume and disturbing others. Telephone amplifiers increase telephone volume, allowing the caller to speak in a normal voice. Flashing lights activated by the ringing telephone or a doorbell alert patients visually. In some cases, patients may have a specially trained dog to help them be aware of sounds (ringing telephones or doorbells, cries of other people, and potential dangers), in much the same way that a seeing-eye dog assists a blind person. Provide information about agencies that can assist the hearing-impaired person.

Small, portable audio amplifiers can assist in communicating with patients with hearing loss but who have chosen not to use a hearing aid. The use of audio amplifiers or allowing patients to use a stethoscope for listening helps you communicate with anyone who requires additional volume to hear speech.

A hearing aid is a miniature electronic amplifier that is usually used for patients with conductive hearing loss. Hearing aids are less effective for sensorineural hearing loss and may make hearing worse by amplifying background noise. The amplifier can be worn in one or both ears. Some hearing-impaired patients refuse to use hearing aids, believing that other people will think they are old. Most common hearing aids are small. Some are attached to a person's glasses and are visible to other people. Another type fits into the ear and is less noticeable. Newer devices fit completely in the canal with only a fine, clear filament visible. The cost of smaller hearing aids is greater than the cost of larger ones. Local agencies offer special classes for the hearing impaired that help the users benefit from this device.

Offer some special tips to help the patient adjust to the hearing aid. Hearing with a hearing aid is different from natural hearing. Teach the patient to start using the hearing aid slowly, at first wearing it only at home and only during part of the day. Listening to television and the radio and reading aloud can help the patient get used to new sounds. The tone or volume of the hearing aid can be adjusted. A difficult aspect of a hearing aid is the amplification of background noise. The patient must learn to concentrate and filter out background noises.

Teach the patient how to care for the hearing aid (Chart 51-6). Hearing aids are delicate devices that should be handled

CHART 51-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Hearing Aid Care

- Keep the hearing aid dry.
- Clean the ear mold with mild soap and water while avoiding excessive wetting.
- Clean debris from the hole in the middle of the part that goes into your ear with a toothpick.
- Turn off the hearing aid and remove the battery when not in use.
- Check and replace the battery frequently.
- Keep extra batteries on hand.
- Keep the hearing aid in a safe place.
- Avoid dropping the hearing aid or exposing it to temperature extremes.
- Adjust the volume to the lowest setting that allows you to hear, to prevent feedback squeaking.
- Avoid using hair spray, cosmetics, oils, or other hair and face products that might come into contact with the receiver.
- If the hearing aid does not work:
 - Change the battery.
 - Check the connection between the ear mold and the receiver.
 - Check the on/off switch.
 - Clean the sound hole.
 - Adjust the volume.
 - Take the hearing aid to an authorized service center for repair.

only by people who know how to care for them properly. The cost of the aids varies greatly but is a significant investment.

Cochlear implantation may help patients with sensorineural hearing loss. Although a superficial surgical procedure is needed to implant the device, the procedure does not enter the inner ear and thus is not considered a surgical correction for hearing impairment. A small computer converts sound waves into electronic impulses. Electrodes are placed near the internal ear, with the computer attached to the external ear. The electronic impulses then directly stimulate nerve fibers. Some patients have a 50% return of their hearing with this method (Bassim & Fayad, 2010).

Surgical Management. Many surgical interventions are available for patients with specific disorders leading to hearing loss.

Tympanoplasty. Tympanoplasty reconstructs the middle ear to improve conductive hearing loss. The procedures vary from simple reconstruction of the eardrum (**myringoplasty**) to replacement of the ossicles within the middle ear (**ossiculoplasty**). A type I tympanoplasty is used for a myringoplasty; a type II tympanoplasty is used in cases of greater damage, and it provides more extensive reconstruction (Fig. 51-8).

Preoperative Care. The patient requires specific instructions before surgery. Systemic antibiotics reduce the risk for infection. Before surgery, irrigate the ear with a solution of equal parts of vinegar and sterile water to restore normal ear pH. Teach the patient to follow other measures to decrease the risks for infection, such as avoiding people with upper respiratory infections, getting adequate rest, eating a balanced diet, and drinking adequate amounts of fluid.

Assure the patient that hearing loss immediately after surgery is normal because of canal packing and that hearing will improve when it is removed. Teach about deep breathing and coughing after surgery, but stress that forceful coughing increases middle ear pressure and must be avoided.

Operative Procedures. Surgery is performed only when the middle ear is free of infection. If an infection is present, the graft is more likely to become infected and not heal. Surgery

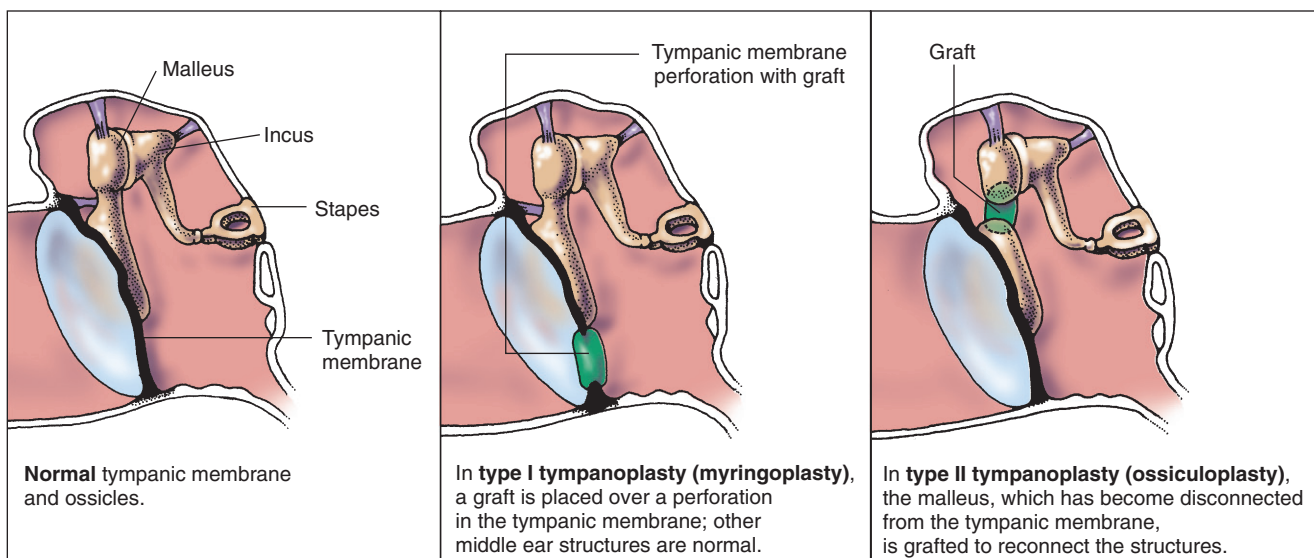


FIG. 51-8 A normal tympanic membrane and two types of tympanoplasties.

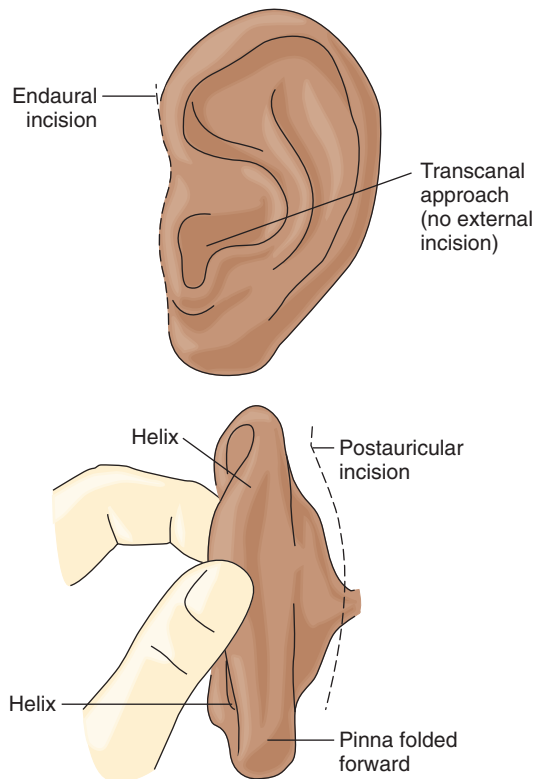


FIG. 51-9 Surgical approaches for the ear. The endaural approach is used when the external canal is too small to use for a transcanal approach. The postauricular approach is used for more extensive repair of the middle ear and inner ear structures.

of the eardrum and ossicles requires the use of a microscope and is a delicate procedure. Local anesthesia can be used, although general anesthesia is often used to prevent the patient from moving.

The surgeon can repair the eardrum with many materials, including muscle fascia, a skin graft, and venous tissue. If the ossicles are damaged, more extensive surgery is needed for repair or replacement. The ossicles can be reached in several ways—through the ear canal, with an endaural incision, or by an incision behind the ear with a mastoidectomy (Fig. 51-9).

The surgeon removes diseased tissue and cleans the middle ear cavity. The ossicles are assessed for damage and the extent of needed repair or replacement. The patient's cartilage or bone, cadaver ossicles, stainless steel wire, or special polymers (Teflon) are used to repair or replace the ossicles.

Postoperative Care. An antiseptic-soaked gauze, such as iodoform gauze (NU GAUZE), is packed in the ear canal. If a skin incision is used, a dressing is placed over it. Keep the dressing clean and dry, using sterile technique for changes. Keep the patient flat, with the head turned to the side and the operative ear facing up for at least 12 hours after surgery. Give prescribed antibiotics to prevent infection.

Patients often report hearing improvement after removal of the canal packing. Until that time, communicate as with a hearing-impaired patient, directing conversation to the unaffected ear. Instruct the patient in care and activity restrictions (see Chart 51-4).

CHART 51-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Ear Infection or Trauma

- Do not use small objects, such as cotton-tipped applicators, matches, toothpicks, keys, or hairpins, to clean your external ear canal.
- Wash your external ear and canal daily in the shower or while washing your hair.
- Blow your nose gently.
- Do not occlude one nostril while blowing your nose.
- Sneeze with your mouth open.
- Wear sound protection around loud or continuous noises.
- Avoid activities with high risk for head or ear trauma, such as wrestling, boxing, motorcycle riding, and skateboarding; wear head and ear protection when engaging in these activities.
- Keep the volume on head receivers at the lowest setting that allows you to hear.
- Frequently clean objects that come into contact with your ear (e.g., headphones, telephone receivers).
- Avoid environmental conditions with rapid changes in air pressure.

Stapedectomy. A partial or complete stapedectomy with a prosthesis corrects some types of hearing loss. This procedure is most effective for patients with hearing loss related to otosclerosis. The average age for patients undergoing primary stapes surgery is increasing. Regardless of age, hearing usually improves after primary stapes surgery; however, some patients redevelop conductive hearing loss after surgery and revision surgery is needed.

Preoperative Care. To prevent infection, the patient must be free from external otitis at surgery. Teach the patient to follow measures that prevent middle ear or external ear infections (Chart 51-7).

Review with the patient the expected outcomes and possible complications of the surgery. Hearing is initially worse after a stapedectomy. The success rate of this procedure is high. However, there is always a risk for failure that might lead to total deafness on the affected side. Possible complications include vertigo, infection, and facial nerve damage, and the patient must understand these risks before proceeding with surgery.

Operative Procedures. A stapedectomy is usually performed through the external ear canal with the patient under local anesthesia. The head and neck of the stapes and, less often, the footplate are removed. After removal of the bone, a small hole is drilled or made with a laser in the footplate and a prosthesis in the shape of a piston is connected between the incus and the footplate (Fig. 51-10). Sounds cause the prosthesis to vibrate as the stapes did. After stapedectomy, most patients have restoration of functional hearing.

Postoperative Care. Inform the patient that improvement in hearing may not occur until 6 weeks after surgery. At first, the ear packing interferes with hearing. Swelling after surgery reduces hearing but is temporary. Drugs for pain help reduce discomfort, and antibiotics are used to reduce the risk for infection. Teach the patient to follow the procedures in Chart 51-4.

The surgical procedure is performed in an area where cranial nerves VII, VIII, and X can be damaged by trauma or by swelling after surgery. *Assess for facial nerve damage or*

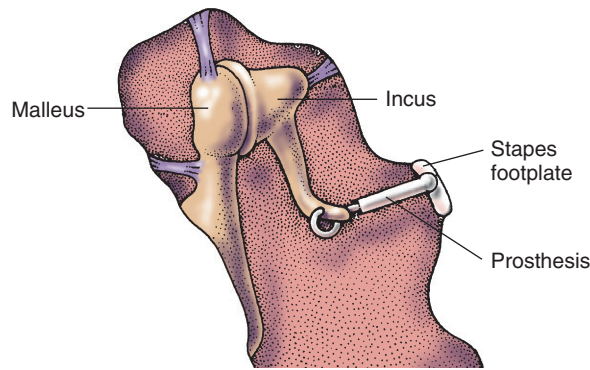


FIG. 51-10 Prosthesis used with stapedectomy. The stapes is removed, leaving the footplate. After a hole is made in the footplate, a metal or plastic prosthesis is connected to the incus and inserted through the hole to act as a vibration device, much as the stapes worked before the development of otosclerosis.

muscle weakness. Indications include an asymmetric appearance or drooping of features on the affected side of the face. Ask the patient about changes in facial perception of touch and in taste. Vertigo, nausea, and vomiting are common after surgery because of the nearness to inner ear structures.

Antivertiginous drugs, such as meclizine (Antivert, Bonamine ) and antiemetic drugs, such as droperidol (Inapsine), are given. Take care to prevent injury, especially during times of increased vertigo.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Prevent injury by assisting the patient with ambulation during the first 1 to 2 days after stapedectomy. In addition, keep top bed siderails up, and remind the patient to move his or her head slowly when changing position to avoid vertigo.

Totally Implanted Devices. A newly approved device to treat bilateral moderate to severe sensorineural hearing loss is the Esteem system. It is designed to improve hearing to the same or better level as a high quality hearing aid but without any visible part. The device has three components that are totally implanted: a sound processor, a sensor, and a computer driver. Vibrations of the eardrum and ossicles are picked up by the sensor and converted to electric signals that are processed by the sound processor. Each processor is specifically programmed to the patient's specific hearing pathology. The processor filters out some background noise and amplifies the desired sound signal, which is then transferred to the driver. The driver then converts the processed signal into vibrations that are transmitted to the inner ear for sound perception (U.S. Food and Drug Administration, 2010).

Patient criteria for this new device include:

- Bilateral stable sensorineural hearing loss determined by pure-tone audiometry
- Speech discrimination score of 40% or higher (see Chapter 50)
- Healthy tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, and ossicles of the middle ear

CHART 51-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Communicating with a Hearing-Impaired Patient

- Position yourself directly in front of the patient.
- Make sure that the room is well lighted.
- Get the patient's attention before you begin to speak.
- Move closer to the better-hearing ear.
- Speak clearly and slowly.
- Do not shout (shouting raises the frequency of the sound and often makes understanding more difficult).
- Keep hands and other objects away from your mouth when talking to the patient.
- Attempt to have conversations in a quiet room with minimal distractions.
- Have the patient repeat your statements rather than just indicate assent.
- Rephrase sentences and repeat information to aid in understanding.
- Use appropriate hand motions.
- Write messages on paper if the patient is able to read.

- Large enough space in the ear cavity to accommodate the parts of the device
- Minimum of 30 days of experience with an appropriately fitted hearing aid
- Absence of acute or chronic middle ear, inner ear, or mastoid infection
- Absence of Ménière's disease or recurring vertigo that requires treatment
- Absence of excessive sensitivity to silicone rubber, polyurethane, stainless steel, titanium, or gold

Possible complications of the device and the surgery required to implant it include:

- Temporary facial paralysis
- Changes in taste sensation
- Ongoing or new-onset tinnitus

Unlike more standard cochlear implants, the middle ear is entered and it is considered a surgical procedure. Care before and after surgery is similar to that required with stapedectomy. A distinct disadvantage is the cost of the implant and procedure, which exceeds \$30,000 and is not currently covered by insurance.

Maximizing Communication

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hearing loss or impairment is expected to become proficient in hearing compensation behaviors to maintain or improve communication. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Uses hearing assistive devices
- Cares for external hearing assistive devices
- Uses sign language, lip-reading, or closed captioning (for television viewing)
- Accurately interprets messages
- Uses nonverbal language
- Exchanges messages accurately with others

Interventions. Nursing priorities focus on facilitating communication and reducing anxiety.

Use best practices that are listed in Chart 51-8 for communicating with a hearing-impaired patient. Do not shout at the patient because the sound may be projected at a higher

frequency, making him or her less able to understand. The most obvious means of communicating is by the written word (if he or she is able to see, read, and write) or with pictures of familiar phrases and objects. Many television programs are now closed captioned (subtitled).

Assistive devices, described on p. 1100, can greatly increase communication for the patient with a hearing impairment.

Lip-reading and *sign language* can also increase communication. In lip-reading classes, patients are taught the special cues to look for when lip-reading and how to understand body language. However, the best lip-reader still misses more than half of what is being said. Because hearing is assisted by even minimal lip-reading, urge patients to wear their eyeglasses when talking with someone to see lip movement.

Sign languages, such as American Sign Language (ASL), combine speech with hand movements that signify letters, words, and phrases. These languages take time and effort to learn, and many people cannot learn them, just as many people cannot learn foreign languages.

Managing anxiety can increase the effectiveness of communication efforts. One source of anxiety is the possibility of permanent hearing loss. Provide accurate information about the likelihood of hearing returning. When the hearing impairment is likely to be permanent or become more profound, reassure patients that communication and social interaction can be maintained.

To reduce anxiety and prevent social isolation, assist patients to use resources and communication to make social contact satisfying. Ask about past or present diversional activities to identify the patient's most satisfying activities and social interactions, and determine the effort necessary to continue them. Activities can be altered to improve patient satisfaction. Someone accustomed to large gatherings might choose smaller groups instead. A quiet evening meal at home with friends might substitute for dinner in a noisy restaurant.

Community-Based Care

Lengthy hospitalization is rare for most patients with ear and hearing disorders. If surgical repair is needed and the procedure is completed without complications, the procedure may be completed in an ambulatory setting or the hospital stay is usually only 1 day.

Home Care Management

Patients who have persistent vertigo, either with the disorder or as a side effect of surgery, remain in danger of falling. Assess the home for potential hazards and to determine whether family members or significant others are available to assist with meal preparation and other ADLs. A nurse case manager can coordinate with the home care nurse to assist patients and their families in determining the best ways to maintain adequate self-care abilities, maintain a safe environment, decide about assistance needs, and provide needed care.

Teaching for Self-Management

Give patients written instructions about how to take drugs and when to return for follow-up care. If the patient cannot read, give these instructions to a family member who may assist with care. Teach patients how to instill eardrops (see [Chart 51-1](#)) and irrigate the ears (see [Chart 51-2](#)), and obtain a return demonstration.

To prevent infection after surgery, instruct patients to follow the suggestions in [Chart 51-7](#). For patients who use a hearing aid, teach them how to use it effectively.

Health Care Resources

If patients do not have family or friends to help during the time before or after surgery, a referral to a home care agency is needed. Help with meal preparation, cleaning, and personal hygiene can be arranged by the hospital discharge planners.

Follow-up hearing tests are scheduled when the lesions are well healed, in about 6 to 8 weeks. Audiograms done before and after treatment are compared, and evaluation for further intervention to improve hearing begins. A complication of surgery is continued disability or complete loss of hearing in the affected ear. Surgery is performed on the ear with the greatest hearing loss. If the surgery does not improve hearing, patients must decide to either attempt surgical correction of the other ear or continue to use an amplification device. When the underlying disorder causing the hearing impairment is progressive, this decision is difficult. Support patients by listening to their concerns and giving additional information when needed.

Costs to the person with a hearing impairment can be extensive. Information and support can come from several organizations that publish informative articles to help patients reduce hearing loss (see [Table 51-1](#)). Many public and private agencies offer hearing evaluations, as well as supply information and counseling for patients with hearing disorders.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with hearing loss or hearing impairment based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Have at least partial improvement of hearing
- Have minimal anxiety
- Use appropriate hearing compensation behaviors
- Be able to communicate effectively with family, friends, co-workers, and health care professionals

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

The patient is a 48-year-old man who is an advertising executive in a large agency. He has recently been diagnosed with bilateral sensorineural hearing loss. His other health issues include hypertension (which he manages with losartan [Cozaar]) and gastroesophageal reflux disease (which he manages with esomeprazole [Nexium]). He also has completed chemotherapy for Hodgkin's lymphoma within the past 6 months. He is surprised by his diagnosis because he works at keeping himself physically fit. He is distraught and very concerned that his co-workers will consider him "over the hill" with an "old man's" disease. He says that using a hearing aid is out of the question.

1. Is there any possibility that his hearing loss is related to current or past health problems? If so, which one(s) and why?
2. What additional personal and family information should you obtain from this patient?
3. How would you approach his concern about being considered old?
4. What options are available to improve his hearing?

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing hearing problems?

- Person tilts one side of the head or leans forward to listen when another person speaks.
- Person watches the lips of a speaker closely.
- Person does not startle when a loud or unexpected sound occurs in the environment.
- Person frequently asks the speaker to repeat statements or questions.
- Person does not verbally interact with those around him or her.
- When a sentence is whispered to the person, he or she does not accurately repeat it back to the speaker.
- Person responds inappropriately to questions. For example, if asked “Is the room too cold?” the patient may respond “No, I don’t feel old.”

How should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing hearing problems?

- Reduce the background sound when speaking to the person (close the door to the hall, use a private area, turn off televisions and radios).
- Speak slowly, distinctly, and with a deeper tone.
- Face the patient while speaking.
- Ensure that all members of the health care team are aware of the patient’s impairment and use an appropriate method to communicate with the patient.
- Determine whether the patient can communicate by sign language.
- Identify safety issues specific for the patient with a hearing impairment.
- Use a certified medical interpreter when taking a history from, explaining procedures to, or teaching the patient who has a hearing impairment.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use Contact Precautions with any patient who has drainage from the ear canal.
- Avoid performing an otoscopic examination on a confused or uncooperative patient.
- Use the suggestions presented under History in the Hearing Loss section to enhance communication with a patient who has a hearing impairment.
- Protect the patient with vertigo or dizziness from injury, and assist with ambulation.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients the proper way to clean the pinna and external ear canal.
- Encourage all patients, even if they already have a hearing impairment, to use ear protection in a loud environment.
- Teach patients how to properly care for their hearing aids.
- Instruct patients to avoid closing off one naris when blowing the nose.
- Remind patients who engage in water sports and who are at risk for external otitis to wear earplugs when in the water.
- Teach proper ear hygiene for cleaning cerumen from the external canal.

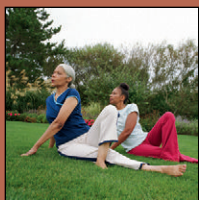
- Urge everyone to avoid exposure to loud noises for extended periods without proper OSHA-approved ear protection.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Encourage the patient and family to express feelings and concerns about a change in hearing status.
- Refer patients newly diagnosed with hearing impairment or any chronic ear problem to appropriate local resources and support groups.
- Explain therapeutic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Teach family members ways to communicate with a hearing-impaired patient with and without a hearing aid.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient about hearing problems in any other members of the family, because many hearing problems have a genetic component.
- Check the hearing of any patient receiving an ototoxic drug (Table 50-1 in Chapter 50) for more than 5 days.
- Teach patients the proper techniques for self-instillation of eardrops and ear irrigation.
- Stress the importance of completing an antibiotic regimen for an ear infection.
- Follow the guidelines in Chart 51-2 when irrigating the ear canal.
- Avoid ear canal irrigation if the eardrum is perforated or if the canal contains vegetative matter.



UNIT XII

Problems of Mobility

Management of Patients with Problems of the Musculoskeletal System

CHAPTER

52

Assessment of the Musculoskeletal System

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Classification of Joints: Condylod Joint
Animation: Classification of Joints: Gliding Joint (Hand)
Animation: Classification of Joints: Hinge Joint
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
Video Clip: Gait
Video Clip: Muscular Development and Strength

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with the physical and occupational therapists to perform a complete musculoskeletal assessment, including functional status, as needed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Explain how physiologic aging changes of the musculoskeletal system affect care of older adults.

Psychosocial Integrity

3. Assess the patient's and family's reaction to change in body image caused by a major musculoskeletal health problem.
4. Recognize the importance of support systems and effective strategies for the patient with unexpected altered body image caused by a musculoskeletal health problem.

Physiological Integrity

5. Recall the anatomy and physiology of the musculoskeletal system.
6. Conduct a musculoskeletal history using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns.
7. Assess patients for mobility, gait, motor skills, pain, and the use of assistive devices.
8. Interpret assessment findings in a patient with a musculoskeletal health problem.
9. Assess patients regarding iodine allergy before imaging assessments.
10. Explain the use of laboratory testing for a patient with a musculoskeletal health problem.
11. Develop a teaching plan to educate the patient and family about diagnostic procedures.

The musculoskeletal system is the second largest body system. It includes the bones, joints, and skeletal muscles, as well as the supporting structures needed to move them. *Mobility* (movement) is a basic human need that is essential for performing ADLs. When a patient cannot move to perform ADLs or other daily routines, self-esteem and a sense of self-worth can be diminished.

Disease, surgery, and trauma can affect one or more parts of the musculoskeletal system, often leading to decreased mobility. When mobility is impaired for a long time, other body systems can be affected. For example, prolonged immobility can lead to skin breakdown, constipation, and thrombus formation. If nerves are damaged by trauma or disease, patients may also have problems with *sensation*.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Skeletal System

The skeletal system consists of 206 bones and multiple joints. The growth and development of these structures occur during childhood and adolescence and are not discussed in this text. Common physical skeletal differences among ethnic groups are listed in Table 52-1.

Bones

Types and Structure. Bone can be classified in two ways—by shape and by structure. **Long bones**, such as the femur, are cylindric with rounded ends and often bear weight. **Short bones**, such as the phalanges, are small and bear little or no weight. **Flat bones**, such as the scapula, protect vital organs and often contain blood-forming cells. Bones that have unique shapes are known as **irregular bones**. The carpal bones in the wrist and the small bones in the inner ear are examples of irregular bones. The **sesamoid bone** is the least common type and develops within a tendon; the patella is a typical example.

The second way bone is classified is by *structure* or composition. As shown in Fig. 52-1, the outer layer of bone, or

cortex, is composed of dense, compact bone tissue. The inner layer, in the medulla, contains spongy, cancellous tissue. Almost every bone has both tissue types but in varying quantities. The long bone typically has a shaft, or **diaphysis**, and two knoblike ends, or **epiphyses**.

The structural unit of the cortical compact bone is the haversian system, which is detailed in Fig. 52-1. The haversian system is a complex canal network containing microscopic blood vessels that supply nutrients and oxygen to bone, as well as lacunae, which are small cavities that house **osteocytes** (bone cells). The canals run vertically within the hard cortical bone tissue.

The softer **cancellous** tissue contains large spaces, or trabeculae, which are filled with red and yellow marrow. **Hematopoiesis** (production of blood cells) occurs in the red marrow. The yellow marrow contains fat cells, which can be dislodged and enter the bloodstream to cause fat embolism syndrome (FES), a life-threatening complication. Volkmann's canals connect bone marrow vessels with the haversian system and periosteum, the outermost covering of the bone. In the deepest layer of the periosteum are osteogenic cells, which later differentiate into **osteoblasts** (bone-forming cells) and **osteoclasts** (bone-destroying cells).

Bone also contains a **matrix**, or **osteoid**, consisting chiefly of collagen, mucopolysaccharides, and lipids. Deposits of inorganic calcium salts (carbonate and phosphate) in the matrix provide the hardness of bone.

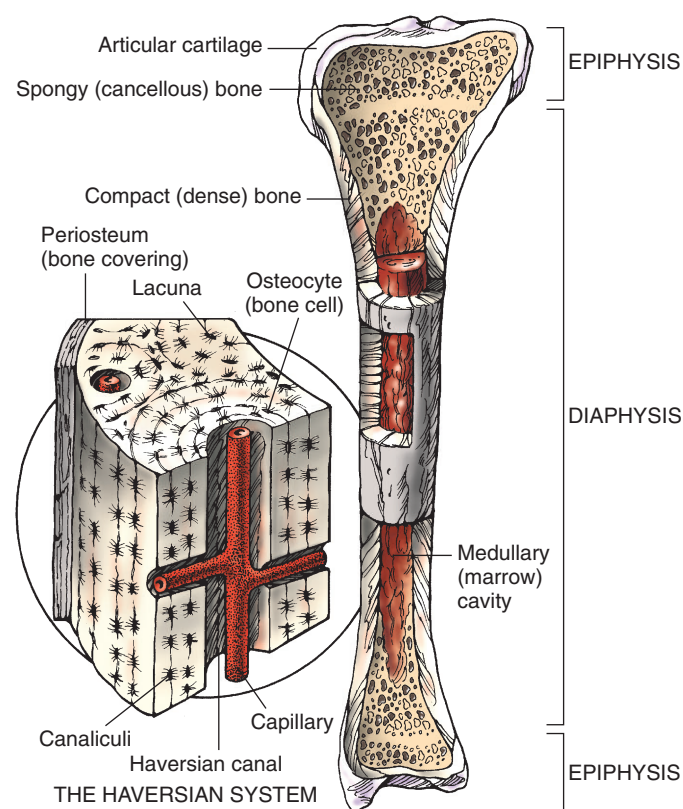


FIG. 52-1 The structure of a typical long bone. The cortex, or outer layer, is composed of dense, compact tissue. The microscopic structure of this compact cortical tissue is the haversian system.

TABLE 52-1 MUSCULOSKELETAL DIFFERENCES IN SELECTED GROUPS

GROUP	MUSCULOSKELETAL DIFFERENCES
African Americans	Greater bone density than Europeans, Asians, and Hispanics. Accounts for decreased incidence of osteoporosis.
Amish	Greater incidence of dwarfism than in other populations.
Chinese Americans	Bones are shorter and smaller with less bone density. Increased incidence of osteoporosis.
Egyptian Americans	Shorter in stature than Euro-Americans and African Americans.
Filipino/Vietnamese	Short in stature; adult height about 5 feet.
Irish Americans	Taller and broader than other Euro-Americans. Less bone density than African Americans.
Navajo American Indians	Taller and thinner than other American Indians.

Bone is a very vascular tissue. Its estimated total blood flow is between 200 and 400 mL/min. Each bone has a main nutrient artery, which enters near the middle of the shaft and branches into ascending and descending vessels. These vessels supply the cortex, the marrow, and the haversian system. Very few nerve fibers are connected to bone. Sympathetic nerve fibers control dilation of blood vessels. Sensory nerve fibers transmit pain signals experienced by patients who have primary lesions of the bone, like bone tumors.

Function. The skeletal system:

- Provides a framework for the body and allows the body to be weight bearing, or upright
- Supports the surrounding tissues (e.g., muscle and tendons)
- Assists in movement through muscle attachment and joint formation
- Protects vital organs, such as the heart and lungs
- Manufactures blood cells in red bone marrow
- Provides storage for mineral salts (e.g., calcium and phosphorus)

After puberty, bone reaches its maturity and maximum growth. Bone is a dynamic tissue. It undergoes a continuous process of formation and **resorption**, or destruction, at equal rates until the age of 35 years. In later years, bone resorption increases, decreasing bone mass and predisposing patients to injury, especially older women.

Numerous minerals and hormones affect bone growth and metabolism, including:

- Calcium
- Phosphorus
- Calcitonin
- Vitamin D
- Parathyroid hormone (PTH)
- Growth hormone
- Glucocorticoids
- Estrogens and androgens
- Thyroxine
- Insulin

Bone accounts for about 99% of the *calcium* in the body and 90% of the *phosphorus*. In healthy adults, the serum concentrations of calcium and phosphorus maintain an inverse relationship. As calcium levels rise, phosphorus levels decrease. When serum levels are altered, calcitonin and PTH work to maintain equilibrium. If the calcium in the blood is decreased, the bone, which stores calcium, releases calcium into the bloodstream in response to PTH stimulation.

Calcitonin is produced by the thyroid gland and *decreases* the serum calcium concentration if it is increased above its normal level. Calcitonin inhibits bone resorption and increases renal excretion of calcium and phosphorus as needed to maintain balance in the body.

Vitamin D and its metabolites are produced in the body and transported in the blood to promote the absorption of calcium and phosphorus from the small intestine. They also seem to enhance PTH activity to release calcium from the bone. A decrease in the body's vitamin D level can result in osteomalacia (softening of bone) in the adult. Vitamin D metabolism and osteomalacia are described in [Chapter 53](#).

When serum calcium levels are lowered, *parathyroid hormone* (PTH, or parathormone) secretion increases and stimulates bone to promote osteoclastic activity and *release* calcium to the blood. PTH reduces the renal excretion of

calcium and facilitates its absorption from the intestine. If serum calcium levels increase, PTH secretion diminishes to preserve the bone calcium supply. This process is an example of the feedback loop system of the endocrine system.

Growth hormone secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland is responsible for increasing bone length and determining the amount of bone matrix formed before puberty. During childhood, an increased secretion results in gigantism and a decreased secretion results in dwarfism. In the adult, an increase causes acromegaly, which is characterized by bone and soft-tissue deformities (see [Chapter 65](#)).

Adrenal glucocorticoids regulate protein metabolism, either increasing or decreasing catabolism to reduce or intensify the organic matrix of bone. They also aid in regulating intestinal calcium and phosphorus absorption.

Estrogens stimulate osteoblastic (bone-building) activity and inhibit PTH. When estrogen levels decline at menopause, women are susceptible to low serum calcium levels with increased bone loss (osteoporosis). *Androgens*, such as testosterone in men, promote anabolism (body tissue building) and increase bone mass.

Thyroxine is one of the principal hormones secreted by the thyroid gland. Its primary function is to increase the rate of protein synthesis in all types of tissue, including bone. *Insulin* works together with growth hormone to build and maintain healthy bone tissue.

Joints

A **joint** is a space in which two or more bones come together. This is also referred to as *articulation* of the joint. The major function of a joint is to provide movement and flexibility in the body.

There are three types of joints in the body:

- Synarthrodial, or completely immovable, joints (e.g., in the cranium)
- Amphiarthrodial, or slightly movable, joints (e.g., in the pelvis)
- Diarthrodial (synovial), or freely movable, joints (e.g., the elbow and knee)

Although any of these joints can be affected by disease or injury, the synovial joints are most commonly involved.

The diarthrodial, or synovial, joint is the most common type of joint in the body. **Synovial joints** are the only type lined with synovium, a membrane that secretes synovial fluid for lubrication and shock absorption. As shown in [Fig. 52-2](#), the synovium lines the internal portion of the joint capsule but does not normally extend onto the surface of the cartilage at the spongy bone ends. Articular cartilage consists of a collagen fiber matrix impregnated with a complex ground substance. Patients with inflammatory types of arthritis often have synovitis (synovial inflammation) and breakdown of the cartilage. **Bursae**, small sacs lined with synovial membrane, are located at joints and bony prominences to prevent friction between bone and structures adjacent to bone. These structures can also become inflamed, causing bursitis.

Synovial joints are described by their anatomic structures. *Ball-and-socket* joints (shoulder, hip) permit movement in any direction. *Hinge* joints (elbow) allow motion in one plane—flexion and extension. The knee is often classified as a hinge joint, but it rotates slightly, as well as flexes and extends. It is best described as a *condylar* type of synovial

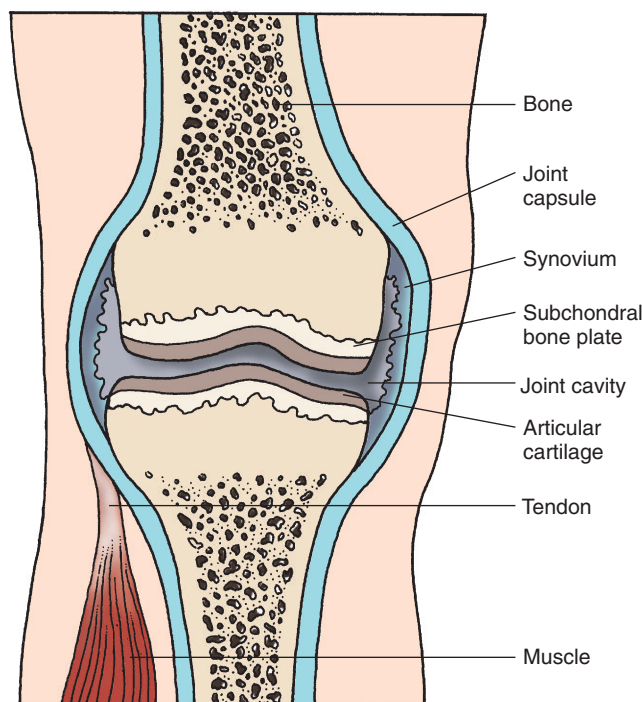


FIG. 52-2 The structure of a synovial joint. Synovium lines the joint capsule but does not extend into the articular cartilage.

joint. The gliding movement of the wrist is characteristic of the *biaxial* joint. *Pivot* joints permit rotation only, as in the radioulnar area.

Muscular System

There are three types of muscle in the body: smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and skeletal muscle. Smooth, or non-striated, involuntary muscle is responsible for contractions of organs and blood vessels and is controlled by the autonomic nervous system. Cardiac muscle, or striated, involuntary muscle, is also controlled by the autonomic nervous system. The smooth and cardiac muscles are discussed with the body systems to which they belong in the assessment chapters.

In contrast to smooth and cardiac muscle, skeletal muscle is striated, voluntary muscle controlled by the central and peripheral nervous systems. The junction of a peripheral motor nerve and the muscle cells that it supplies is sometimes referred to as a **motor end plate**. Muscle fibers are held in place by connective tissue in bundles, or fasciculi. The entire muscle is surrounded by dense fibrous tissue, or fascia, which contains the muscle's blood, lymph, and nerve supply.

The main function of skeletal muscle is *movement* of the body and its parts. When bones, joints, and supporting structures are adversely affected by injury or disease, the adjacent muscle tissue is often involved, limiting mobility. During the aging process, muscle fibers decrease in size and number, even in well-conditioned adults. Atrophy results when muscles are not regularly exercised and they deteriorate from disuse.

Supporting structures for the muscular system are very susceptible to injury. They include **tendons** (bands of tough, fibrous tissue that attach muscles to bones) and **ligaments**, which attach bones to other bones at joints.

CHART 52-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Musculoskeletal System Related to Aging

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Decreased bone density	Teach safety tips to prevent falls. Reinforce need to exercise, especially weight-bearing exercise.	Porous bones are more likely to fracture. Exercise slows bone loss.
Increased bone prominence	Prevent pressure on bone prominences.	There is less soft tissue to prevent skin breakdown.
Kyphotic posture: widened gait, shift in the center of gravity	Teach proper body mechanics; instruct the patient to sit in supportive chairs with arms.	Correction of posture problems prevents further deformity; the patient should have support for bony structures.
Cartilage degeneration	Provide moist heat, such as a shower or warm, moist compresses.	Moist heat increases blood flow to the area.
Decreased range of motion (ROM)	Assess the patient's ability to perform ADLs and mobility.	The patient may need assistance with self-care skills.
Muscle atrophy, decreased strength	Teach isometric exercises.	Exercises increase muscle strength.
Slowed movement	Do not rush the patient; be patient.	The patient may become frustrated if hurried.

MUSCULOSKELETAL CHANGES ASSOCIATED WITH AGING

Osteopenia, or decreased bone density (bone loss), occurs as one ages. Many older adults, especially white, thin women, have severe osteopenia, a disease called *osteoporosis*. This condition causes postural and gait changes and predisposes the person to fractures. [Chapter 53](#) discusses this health problem in detail.

Synovial joint cartilage can become less elastic and compressible as a person ages. As a result of these cartilage changes and continued use of joints, the joint cartilage becomes damaged, leading to osteoarthritis (OA). Genetic defects in cartilage may also contribute to joint disease. The most common joints affected are the weight-bearing joints of the hip, knee, and cervical and lumbar spine, but joints in the shoulder and upper extremity, feet, and hands can be affected. Refer to [Chapter 20](#) for a complete discussion of OA.

As one ages, muscle tissue atrophies. Increased activity and exercise can slow the progression of atrophy and restore muscle strength. Musculoskeletal changes cause decreased coordination, loss of muscle strength, gait changes, and a risk for falls with injury. (See [Chapter 3](#) for discussion on fall prevention.) [Chart 52-1](#) lists the major anatomic and physiologic changes and implications for nursing care.

CHART 52-2 MUSCULOSKELETAL ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Activity-Exercise Pattern

- Do you have sufficient energy for desired/required activities?
- What is your exercise pattern? Type of exercise? Regularity?
- What spare time (leisure) activities do you engage in?
- What is your perceived ability for (code for level according to key below):

Feeding?	Level 0: Full self-care
Bathing?	Level I: Requires use of equipment or device
Toileting?	
Bed mobility?	Level II: Requires assistance of or supervision by another person
Dressing?	
Grooming?	Level III: Requires assistance of or supervision by another person and equipment or device
General mobility?	
Cooking?	
Home maintenance?	Level IV: Is dependent and does not participate
Shopping?	

Cognitive-Perceptual Pattern

- Do you experience any discomfort?
- Do you have pain? If so, how do you manage it?
- What is the easiest way for you to learn things?
- Do you have any difficulty learning?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

In the assessment of a patient with an actual or potential musculoskeletal problem, a detailed and accurate history is helpful in identifying priority problems and nursing interventions (Chart 52-2). The history reveals information about the patient that can direct the physical assessment.

Accidents, illnesses, lifestyle, and drugs may contribute to a patient's current problem. Young men are at the greatest risk for trauma related to motor vehicle crashes. Older adults are at the greatest risk for falls that result in fractures and soft-tissue injury. When taking a personal health history, question the patient about any traumatic injuries and sports activities, no matter when they occurred. An injury to the lumbar spine 30 years ago may have caused a patient's current low back pain. A motor vehicle crash or sports injury can cause osteoarthritis years after the event.

Previous or current illness or disease may affect musculoskeletal status. For example, a patient with diabetes who is treated for a foot ulcer is at high risk for acute or chronic osteomyelitis (bone infection). In addition, diabetes slows the healing process. Ask the patient about any previous hospitalizations and illnesses or complications. Inquire about his or her ability to perform ADLs independently or if assistive/adaptive devices are used.

Current lifestyle also contributes to musculoskeletal health. Weight-bearing activities such as walking can reduce risk factors for osteoporosis and maintain muscle strength. High-impact sports, such as excessive jogging or running, can cause musculoskeletal injury to soft tissues and bone. Tobacco use slows the healing of musculoskeletal injuries. Excessive

alcohol intake can decrease vitamins and nutrients the person needs for bone and muscle tissue growth.

When assessing a patient with a possible musculoskeletal alteration, inquire about occupation or work life. A person's occupation can cause or contribute to an injury. For instance, fractures are not uncommon in patients whose jobs require manual labor, such as housekeepers, mechanics, and industrial workers. Certain occupations, such as computer-related jobs, may predispose a person to carpal tunnel syndrome (entrapment of the median nerve in the wrist) or neck pain. Construction workers and health care workers may experience back injury from prolonged standing and excessive lifting. Amateur and professional athletes often experience acute musculoskeletal injuries (e.g., joint dislocations and fractures) and chronic disorders (e.g., joint cartilage trauma), which can lead to osteoarthritis.

Ask about allergies, particularly allergy to dairy products, and previous and current use of drugs—prescribed, over-the-counter, and illicit. Allergy to dairy products could cause decreased calcium intake. Some drugs, such as steroids, can negatively affect calcium metabolism and promote bone loss. Other drugs may be taken to relieve musculoskeletal pain. Inquire about herbs, vitamin and mineral supplements, or biologic compounds that may be used for arthritis and other musculoskeletal problems, such as glucosamine and chondroitin. Complementary and alternative therapies are commonly used by patients with various types of arthritis and **arthralgias** (joint aching).

Nutrition History

A brief review of the patient's nutrition history helps determine any risks for inadequate nutrient intake. For example, most people, especially women, do not get enough calcium in their diet. Determine if the patient has had a significant weight gain or loss.

Ask the patient to recall a typical day of food intake to help identify deficiencies and excesses in the diet. Lactose intolerance is a common problem that can cause inadequate calcium intake. People who cannot afford to buy food are especially at risk for undernutrition. Some older adults and others are not financially able to buy the proper foods for adequate nutrition.

Inadequate protein or insufficient vitamin C or D in the diet slows bone and tissue healing. Obesity places excess stress and strain on bones and joints, with resulting fractures and trauma to joint cartilage. In addition, obesity inhibits mobility in patients with musculoskeletal problems, which predisposes them to complications such as respiratory and circulatory problems. People with eating disorders such as anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa are also at risk for osteoporosis related to decreased intake of calcium and vitamin D.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Obtaining a family history assists in identifying disorders that have a familial or genetic tendency. Osteoporosis (age-related bone loss) and gout, for instance, often occur in several generations of a family. Osteogenic sarcoma, a type of bone cancer, may be genetically influenced by *Tp53* gene mutation (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Positive family history of these types of disorders can increase risks to the patient. **Chapters 20 and**

53 provide a more complete description of musculoskeletal problems that have strong genetic links.

Current Health Problems

The most common reports of persons with a musculoskeletal problem are pain and weakness, either of which can impair mobility. Collect data pertinent to the patient's presenting health problem as follows:

- Date and time of onset
- Factors that cause or exacerbate (worsen) the problem
- Course of the problem (e.g., intermittent or continuous)
- Clinical manifestations (as expressed by the patient) and the pattern of their occurrence
- Measures that improve clinical manifestations (e.g., heat, ice)

Assessment of pain can present many challenges. Pain can be related to bone, muscle, or joint problems. *Pain* may be described as acute or chronic, depending on the onset and duration. Pain with movement could indicate a fracture and/or muscle or joint injury. Assess the intensity of pain by using a pain scale and asking the patient to rate the level of pain he or she is experiencing. Quality of pain may be described as dull, burning, aching, or stabbing. Determine the location of pain and areas to which the pain may radiate. With any pain assessment, it is always best if the patient describes the pain in his or her own words and points to its location, if possible.

Weakness may be related to individual muscles or muscle groups. Determine if weakness occurs in proximal or distal muscles or muscle groups. Proximal weakness may indicate **myopathy** (a problem in muscle tissue), whereas distal weakness may indicate **neuropathy** (a problem in nerve tissue). Muscle weakness in the lower extremities may increase the risk for falls and injury. Weakness in the upper extremities may interfere with ADLs.

Assessment of the Skeletal System

Although bones, joints, and muscles are usually assessed simultaneously in a head-to-toe approach, each subsystem is described separately for emphasis and understanding. For physical assessment of the musculoskeletal system, use inspection, palpation, and range of motion (ROM). A general assessment is described in this chapter. More specific assessment techniques are discussed in the musculoskeletal problem chapters in this unit.

General Inspection

Observe the patient's posture, gait, and general mobility for gross deformities and impairment. Note unusual findings, and coordinate with the physical or occupational therapist for an in-depth physical assessment.

Posture and Gait. *Posture* includes the person's body build and alignment when standing and walking. Assess the curvature of the spine and the length, shape, and symmetry of extremities. Fig. 52-3 illustrates several common spinal deformities. Inspect muscle mass for size and symmetry.

Most patients with musculoskeletal problems eventually have a problem with *gait*. The nurse or therapist evaluates the patient's balance, steadiness, and ease and length of stride. Any limp or other asymmetric leg movement or deformity is

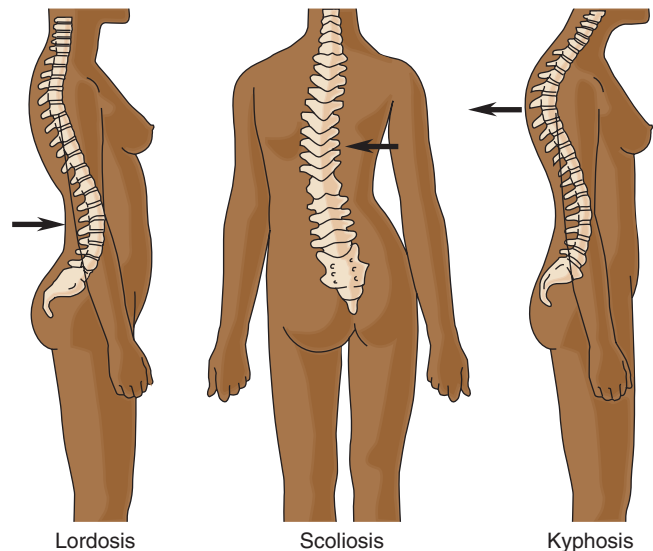


FIG. 52-3 Common spinal deformities.

noted. An abnormality in the stance phase of gait is called an **antalgic** gait. When part of one leg is painful, the patient shortens the stance phase on the affected side. An abnormality in the swing phase is called a **lurch**. This abnormal gait occurs when the muscles in the buttocks and/or legs are too weak to allow the person to change weight from one foot to the other. In this case, the shoulders are moved either side-to-side or front-to-back for help in shifting the weight from one leg to the other. Some patients, such as those with chronic hip pain and muscle atrophy from arthritic disorders, have a combination of an antalgic gait and lurch.

Mobility and Functional Assessment. In collaboration with the physical or occupational therapist, assess the patient's need for ambulatory devices, such as canes and walkers, during transfer from bed to chair and while walking and climbing stairs. Observe his or her ability to perform ADLs, such as dressing and bathing (see Chart 52-2). Pain and deformity may limit physical mobility and function. Coordinate with the physical and occupational therapists to assess the patient's functional status. A complete discussion of functional assessment is found in Chapter 8.

Assess major bones, joints, and muscles by inspection, palpation, and determination of ROM. Pay special attention to areas that are affected or may be affected, according to the patient's history or current problem.

A **goniometer** is a tool that may be used by rehabilitation therapists or nurses to provide an exact measurement of flexion and extension or joint ROM. Active range of motion (AROM) can be evaluated by asking the patient to move each joint through the ROM himself or herself. If the patient cannot actively move a joint through range of motion, ask him or her to relax the muscles in the extremity. Hold the part with one hand above and one hand below the joint to be evaluated and allow passive range of motion (PROM) to evaluate joint mobility. Movements shown in Fig. 52-4 may be used to evaluate active and passive ROM. Circumduction is a movement that can also be evaluated in the shoulder by having the patient move the arm in circles from the shoulder joint. As long as the patient can function to meet personal

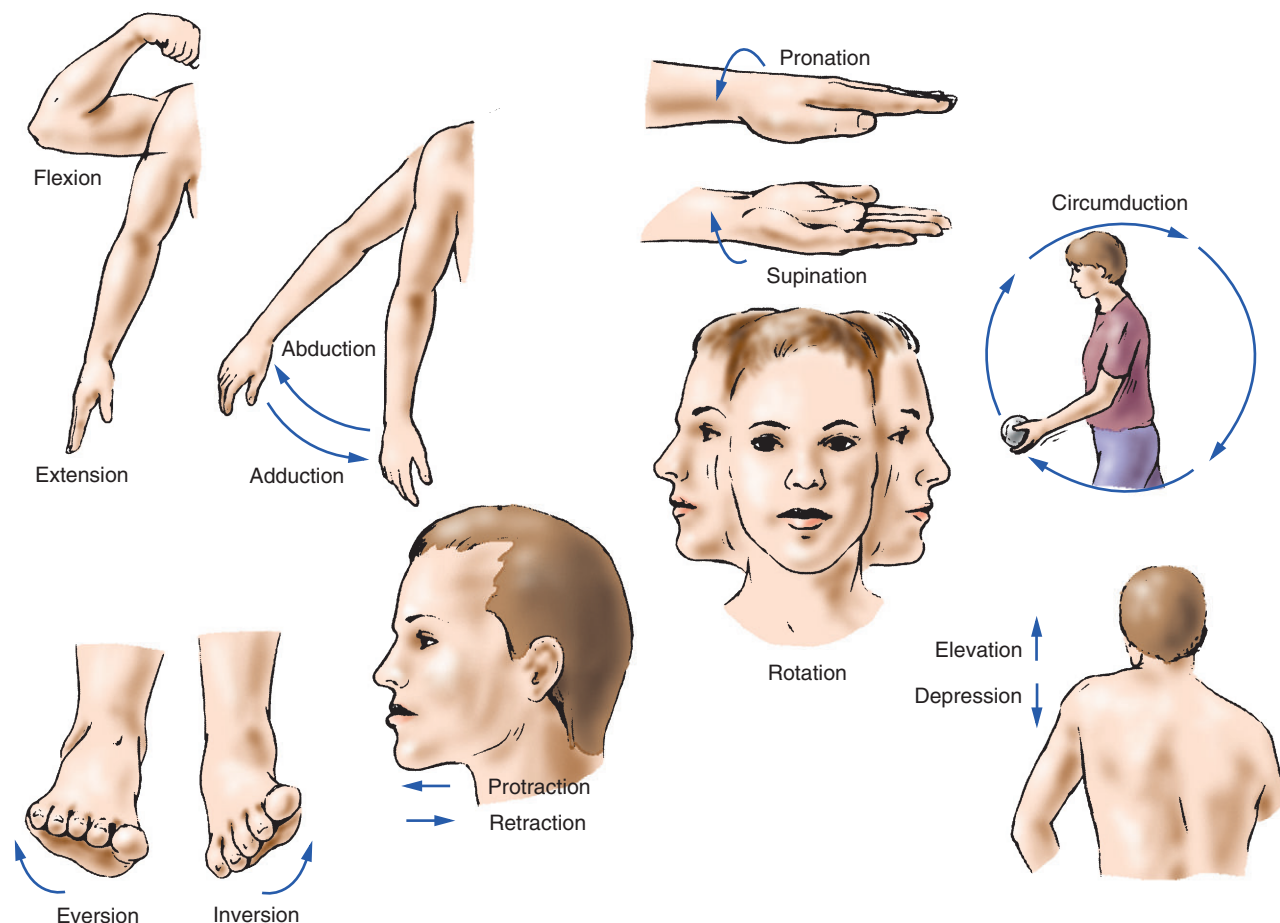


FIG. 52-4 Movements of the skeletal muscles.

needs, a limitation in ROM may not be significant. For each anatomic location, observe the skin for color, elasticity, and lesions that may relate to musculoskeletal dysfunction. For instance, redness or warmth may indicate an inflammatory process and/or pressure injury to skin.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A nurse is performing a musculoskeletal assessment on an older adult. What physiologic changes of aging will the nurse expect?

Select all that apply.

- A. Scoliosis
- B. Muscle atrophy
- C. Slowed movement
- D. Rheumatoid arthritis
- E. Antalgic gait

Specific Assessments

If the patient has pain or weakness in the *face* or *neck*, inspect and palpate this area for tenderness and masses. Ask the patient to open his or her mouth while palpating the temporomandibular joints (TMJs). Common abnormal findings are tenderness or pain, **crepitus** (a grating sound), and a spongy swelling caused by excess synovium and fluid.

Inspect and palpate each vertebra of the spine in the neck. Proceed cautiously and gently if pain is present. Clinical

findings may include malalignment; tenderness; or inability to flex, extend, and rotate the neck as expected. Muscle and nerve pain often accompany neck pain if spinal nerves are involved.

The thoracic *spine*, lumbar spine, and sacral spine are evaluated in the same manner as the neck. Spinal alignment problems are common (see Fig. 52-3). Place both hands over the posterior iliac crests with the thumbs over the lumbosacral area. Apply pressure with the thumbs along the lumbosacral spine to elicit tenderness. Many patients do not have discomfort until the area is palpated. **Lordosis** is a common finding in adults who have abdominal obesity. During screening for **scoliosis**, ask the patient to flex forward from the hips and inspect for a lateral curve in the spine.

If the extremities are affected by a musculoskeletal problem, assess arms or legs at the same time for side-to-side comparisons. For example, inspect and palpate both shoulders for size, swelling, deformity, poor alignment, tenderness or pain, and mobility. A shoulder injury may prevent the patient from combing his or her hair with the affected arm, but severe arthritis may inhibit movement in both arms. Assess the elbows and wrists in a similar way.

Because the hand has multiple joints in a single digit, assessment of hand function is perhaps the most critical part of the examination. If the hands are affected, inspect and palpate the metacarpophalangeal (MCP), proximal interphalangeal (PIP), and distal interphalangeal (DIP) joints. The

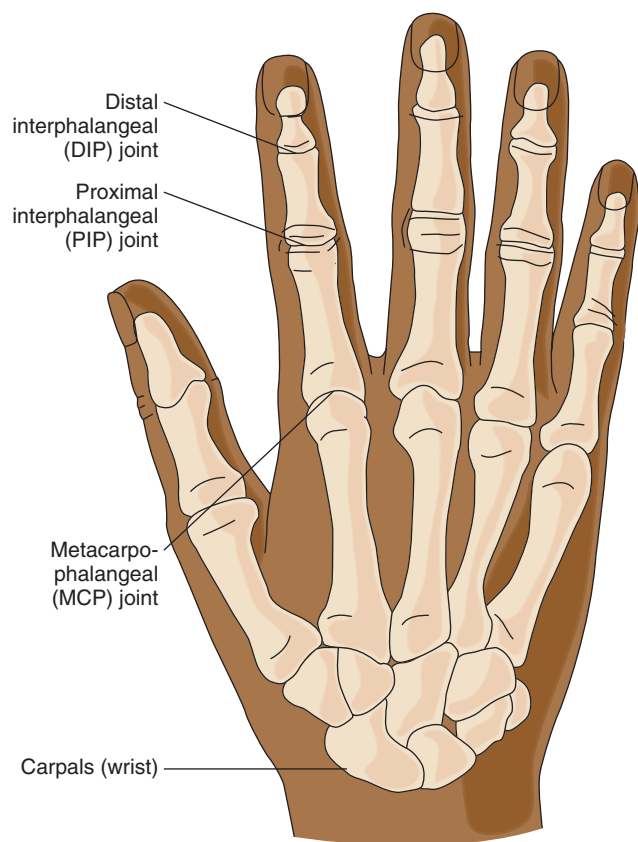


FIG. 52-5 The small joints of the hand.

same digits are compared on the right and left hands (Fig. 52-5). Determine the range of motion (ROM) for each joint by observing active movement. If movement is not possible, evaluate passive motion. For a quick and easy assessment of ROM, ask the patient to make a fist and then appose each finger to the thumb. If he or she can perform these maneuvers, ROM of the hand is not seriously restricted.

Evaluation of the hip joint relies primarily on determination of its degree of mobility, because the joint is deep and difficult to inspect or palpate. The patient with hip pain usually experiences it in the *groin* or has pain that radiates to the knee. The knee is readily accessible for physical assessment, particularly when the patient is sitting and the knee is flexed. Fluid accumulation, or **effusion**, is easily detected in the knee joint. Limitations in movement with accompanying pain are common findings. The knees may be poorly aligned, as in **genu valgum** (“knock-knee”) or **genu varum** (“bow-legged”) deformities.

The ankles and feet are often neglected in the physical examination. However, they contain multiple bones and joints that can be affected by disease and injury. Observe and palpate each joint and test for ROM if feet are affected by musculoskeletal problems.

Neurovascular Assessment

While completing a physical assessment of the musculoskeletal system, perform an assessment of peripheral vascular and nerve integrity. Beginning with the injured side, always compare one extremity with the other.

TABLE 52-2 LOVETT'S SCALE FOR GRADING MUSCLE STRENGTH

RATING	DESCRIPTION
5	Normal: ROM unimpaired against gravity with full resistance
4	Good: can complete ROM against gravity with some resistance
3	Fair: can complete ROM against gravity
2	Poor: can complete ROM with gravity eliminated
1	Trace: no joint motion and slight evidence of muscle contractility
0	Zero: no evidence of muscle contractility

ROM, Range of motion.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Perform a complete **neurovascular assessment** (also called a “circ” check), which includes *palpation of pulses in the extremities below the level of injury and assessment of sensation, movement, color, temperature, and pain in the injured part*. If pulses are not palpable, use a Doppler to find pulses in the extremities. See [Chart 54-3](#) in [Chapter 54](#) for more details about neurovascular assessment.

Assessment of the Muscular System

During the skeletal assessment, notice the size, shape, tone, and strength of major skeletal muscles. The circumference of each muscle may be measured and compared symmetrically for an estimation of muscle mass if abnormalities are observed.

Ask the patient to demonstrate muscle strength. Apply resistance by holding the extremity and asking the patient to move against resistance. As an option, place your hands on the patient's upper arms and ask the patient to try to raise the arms. Although movement against resistance is not easily quantified, several scales used by nurses and therapists are available for grading the patient's strength. A commonly used scale is shown in [Table 52-2](#).

Psychosocial Assessment

The data from the history and physical assessment provide clues for anticipating psychosocial problems. For instance, prolonged absence from employment or permanent disability may cause job or career loss. Further stress may be experienced if chronic pain continues and the patient cannot cope with numerous stressors. Anxiety and depression are common when patients have chronic pain. Deformities resulting from musculoskeletal disease or injury, such as an amputation, can affect a person's body image and self-concept. Help the patient identify support systems and coping mechanisms that may be useful if he or she has long-term musculoskeletal health problems. Encourage him or her to verbalize feelings related to loss and body image changes. Refer the patient for psychological or spiritual counseling if needed and if it is culturally appropriate.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

[Chart 52-3](#) lists the common laboratory tests used in assessing patients with musculoskeletal disorders. There is no special patient preparation or follow-up care for any of these

CHART 52-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Musculoskeletal Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Serum calcium	9.0-10.5 mg/dL (2.25-2.75 mmol/L) <i>Older adults:</i> decreased	<i>Hypercalcemia</i> (increased calcium) - Metastatic cancers of the bone - Paget's disease - Bone fractures in healing stage <i>Hypocalcemia</i> (decreased calcium) - Osteoporosis - Osteomalacia
Serum phosphorus	3.0-4.5 mg/dL (0.97-1.45 mmol/L) <i>Older adults:</i> decreased	<i>Hyperphosphatemia</i> (increased phosphorus) - Bone fractures in healing stage - Bone tumors - Acromegaly <i>Hypophosphatemia</i> (decreased phosphorus) - Osteomalacia
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)	30-120 units/L <i>Older adults:</i> slightly increased	<i>Elevations</i> may indicate: - Metastatic cancers of the bone - Paget's disease - Osteomalacia
Serum muscle enzymes Creatine kinase (CK-MM)	Total CK: <i>Men:</i> 55-170 units/L <i>Women:</i> 30-135 units/L	<i>Elevations</i> may indicate: - Muscle trauma - Progressive muscular dystrophy - Effects of electromyography
Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)	Total LDH: 100-190 units/L <i>LDH₁:</i> 17%-27% <i>LDH₂:</i> 27%-37% <i>LDH₃:</i> 18%-25% <i>LDH₄:</i> 3%-8% <i>LDH₅:</i> 0% to 5%	<i>Elevations</i> may indicate: - Skeletal muscle necrosis - Extensive cancer - Progressive muscular dystrophy
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)	0-35 units/L <i>Older adults:</i> increased	<i>Elevations</i> may indicate: - Skeletal muscle trauma - Progressive muscular dystrophy
Aldolase (ALD)	3.0-8.2 units/dL	<i>Elevations</i> may indicate: - Polymyositis and dermatomyositis - Muscular dystrophy

tests. Teach the patient about the purpose of the test and the procedure that can be expected. Additional tests performed for patients with connective tissue diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, are described in [Chapter 20](#).

Disorders of bone and the parathyroid gland are often reflected in an alteration of the serum calcium or phosphorus level. Therefore these electrolytes, especially calcium, are monitored.

Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) is an enzyme normally present in blood. The concentration of ALP increases with bone or liver damage. In metabolic bone disease and bone cancer, the enzyme concentration rises in proportion to the osteoblastic activity, which indicates bone formation. The level of ALP is normally slightly increased in older adults.

The major *muscle enzymes* affected in skeletal muscle disease or injuries are:

- Creatine kinase (CK-MM)
- Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)
- Aldolase (ALD)
- Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)

As a result of damage, the muscle tissue releases additional amounts of these enzymes, which increases serum levels.

The serum CK level begins to rise 2 to 4 hours after muscle injury and is elevated early in muscle disease, such as muscular dystrophy. The CK molecule has two subunits: M (muscle) and B (brain). Three isoenzymes have been identified. Skeletal muscle CK (CK-MM, or CK₃) is the only isoenzyme that rises in concentration with damage to skeletal muscle, such as trauma, surgery, and neuromuscular disease. This test is 90% accurate because it is affected by exercise and certain drugs, such as anticoagulants, furosemide, and statins (Kress et al., 2008).

AST is moderately elevated (three to five times normal) in certain muscle diseases, such as muscular dystrophy. The levels of the isoenzymes aldolase A (ALD-A) and LDH₅ also increase in patients with these disorders.

Imaging Assessment

The skeleton is very visible on *standard x-rays*. Anteroposterior and lateral projections are the initial screening views used most often. Other approaches, such as oblique or stress views, depend on the part of the skeleton to be evaluated and the necessity of the x-ray.

Bone density, alignment, swelling, and intactness can be seen on x-ray. The conditions of joints can be determined,

including the size of the joint space, the smoothness of articular cartilage, and synovial swelling. Soft-tissue involvement may be evident but not clearly differentiated.

Inform the patient that the x-ray table is hard and cold, and instruct him or her to remain still during the filming process. Coordinate with the radiology department or clinic to keep older adults and those at risk for hypothermia as warm as possible (e.g., by using blankets).

Whereas standard x-rays superimpose one structure on another, **tomography** produces planes, or slices, for focus and blurs the images of other structures. This procedure is helpful in detailing the musculoskeletal system, because the many close structures make visualization difficult.

Xeroradiography highlights the contrast between structures. Margins and edges can be clearly seen (edge enhancement). Disadvantages of xeroradiography are the higher radiation dose to the patient and inability of the test to determine tissue densities.

Myelography involves the injection of contrast medium into the subarachnoid space of the spine, usually by spinal puncture. The vertebral column, intervertebral disks, spinal nerve roots, and blood vessels can be visualized. Although this test is still performed, it is far less popular. Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) have often replaced such invasive and potentially painful and risky diagnostic techniques. The post-test care is similar to that for lumbar puncture, except that the patient is usually placed with the head of the bed elevated 30 to 50 degrees to prevent the contrast medium from getting into the brain (see Chapter 43).

An **arthrogram** is an x-ray study of a joint after contrast medium (air or solution) has been injected to enhance its visualization. Double-contrast arthrography, which uses both air and contrast, may be performed when a traumatic injury is suspected. The physician can often determine bone chips, torn ligaments, or other loose bodies within the joint. This test is not used commonly because of newer advances in diagnostic imaging. Most joints are now studied by MRI.

Computed tomography (CT) has gained wide acceptance for detecting musculoskeletal problems, particularly those of the vertebral column and joints. The scanned images can be used to create additional images from other angles or to create three-dimensional images and view complex structures from any position. The nurse or radiology technologist should ask the patient about iodine-based contrast allergies.

Nuclear Scans. The **bone scan** is a radionuclide test in which radioactive material is injected for viewing the entire skeleton. It may be used primarily to detect tumors, arthritis, osteomyelitis, osteoporosis, vertebral compression fractures, and unexplained bone pain. Bone scans are used less commonly today as more sophisticated MRI equipment becomes more available. However, it may be very useful for detecting hairline fractures in patients with unexplained bone pain and diffuse metastatic bone disease.

The **gallium** and **thallium scans** are similar to the bone scan but are more specific and sensitive in detecting bone problems. Gallium citrate (^{67}Ga) is the radioisotope most commonly used. This substance also migrates to brain, liver, and breast tissue and therefore is used in examination of these structures when disease is suspected.

For patients with osteosarcoma, thallium (^{201}Tl) is better than gallium or technetium for diagnosing the extent of the

disease. Thallium has traditionally been used for the diagnosis of myocardial infarctions but can be used for additional evaluation of cancers of the bone.

Because bone takes up gallium slowly, the nuclear medicine physician or technician administers the isotope 4 to 6 hours before scanning. Other tests that require contrast media or other isotopes cannot be given during this time.

Instruct the patient that the radioactive material poses no threat because it readily deteriorates in the body. Because gallium is excreted through the intestinal tract, it tends to collect in feces after the scanning procedure.

Depending on the tissue to be examined, the patient is taken to the nuclear medicine department 4 to 6 hours after injection. The procedure takes 30 to 60 minutes, during which time the patient must lie still for accurate test results to be achieved. The scan may be repeated at 24, 48, and/or 72 hours. Mild sedation may be necessary to facilitate relaxation and cooperation during the procedure for confused older adults or those in severe pain.

No special care is required after the test. The radioisotope is excreted in stool and urine, but no precautions are taken in handling the excreta. Remind the patient to push fluids to facilitate urinary excretion.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), with or without the use of contrast media, is commonly used to diagnose musculoskeletal disorders. It is more accurate than computed tomography (CT) and myelography for many spinal and knee problems. MRI is most appropriate for joints, soft tissue, and bony tumors that involve soft tissue. CT is still the test of choice for injuries or pathology that involves only bone.

The image is produced through the interaction of magnetic fields, radio waves, and atomic nuclei showing hydrogen density. Simply put, the radio waves “bounce” off the body tissues being examined. Because each tissue has its own density, the computer image clearly distinguishes normal and abnormal tissues. For some tissues, the cross-sectional image is better than that produced by radiography or CT. The lack of hydrogen ions in cortical bone makes it easily distinguishable from soft tissues. The test is particularly useful in identifying problems with muscles, tendons, and ligaments.

Ensure that the patient removes all metal objects and checks for clothing zippers and metal fasteners. Although joint implants made of titanium or stainless steel are usually safe, depending on the age of the MRI equipment, pacemakers, stents, and surgical clips usually are not. **Chart 52-4** lists questions that the nurse or technician should consider in preparing the patient for MRI. Open MRIs prevent the claustrophobia that occurs with the older, encased machines.

Ultrasonography. Sound waves produce an image of the tissue in ultrasonography. An ultrasound procedure may be used to view:

- Soft-tissue disorders, such as masses and fluid accumulation
- Traumatic joint injuries
- Osteomyelitis
- Surgical hardware placement

A jelly-like substance applied to the skin over the site to be examined promotes the movement of a metal probe. No special preparation or post-test care is necessary. A quantitative ultrasound (QUS) may be done for determining fractures or bone density.

CHART 52-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Preparing the Patient for Magnetic Resonance Imaging

- Is the patient pregnant?
- Does the patient have ferromagnetic fragments or implants, such as an older-style aneurysm clip?
- Does the patient have a pacemaker, stent, or electronic implant?
- Does the patient have chronic kidney disease? (Gadolinium contrast agents may cause severe systemic complications if the kidneys do not function.)
- Can the patient lie still in the supine position for 45 to 60 minutes? (May require sedation.)
- Does the patient need life-support equipment available?
- Can the patient communicate clearly and understand verbal communication?
- Did the patient get any tattoo *more than 20 years ago*? (If so, metal particles *may* be in the ink.)
- Is the patient claustrophobic? (Ask this question for closed MRI scanners; open MRIs do not cause claustrophobia.)

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Biopsies. In a **bone biopsy**, the physician extracts a specimen of the bone tissue for microscopic examination. This invasive test may confirm the presence of infection or neoplasm, but it is not commonly done today. One of two techniques may be used to retrieve the specimen: needle (closed) biopsy or incisional (open) biopsy. It is important to watch for bleeding from the puncture site and for tenderness, redness, or warmth that could indicate infection. Mild analgesics may be used.

Muscle biopsy is done for the diagnosis of atrophy (as in muscular dystrophy) and inflammation (as in polymyositis). The procedure and care for patients undergoing muscle biopsy are the same as those for patients undergoing bone biopsy.

Electromyography. Electromyography (EMG) is used to evaluate diffuse or localized muscle weakness. EMG is usually accompanied by nerve conduction studies for determining the electrical potential generated in an individual muscle. EMG helps in the diagnosis of neuromuscular, lower motor neuron, and peripheral nerve disorders. This test is contraindicated for patients undergoing anticoagulant therapy.

Inform the patient that EMG may cause temporary discomfort, especially when the patient is subjected to episodes of electrical current. For selected patients, mild sedation is prescribed. The physician may also prescribe a temporary discontinuation of skeletal muscle relaxants several days before the procedure to prevent drugs from affecting the test results.

The test may be performed at the bedside or in an EMG laboratory. When both EMG and nerve conduction studies are done, nerve conduction is usually tested first. Flat electrodes are placed along the nerve to be evaluated, and low electrical currents are passed through the electrodes to the nerve and muscle innervated. If nerve conduction occurs, the muscle contracts.

For testing muscle potential, multiple small needle electrodes are inserted. The patient is asked to perform activities for measurement of muscle potential during minimal and maximal contraction. The degree of nerve and muscle activity is recorded for later interpretation.

A few medical complications are associated with EMG. The nurse provides comfort measures and inspects the needle sites for hematoma formation. The application of ice can prevent this complication. The patient may also report increased pain and anxiety after the test.

Arthroscopy. The **arthroscopy** may be used as a diagnostic test or a surgical procedure. An arthroscope is a fiberoptic tube inserted into a joint for direct visualization of the ligaments, menisci, and articular surfaces of the joint. The knee and shoulder are most commonly evaluated. In addition, synovial biopsy and surgery to repair traumatic injury can be done through the arthroscope as an ambulatory care procedure.

Patient Preparation. Because the knee is most commonly “scoped,” the care described for the patient undergoing arthroscopy relates to that joint. Arthroscopy is performed on an ambulatory basis or as same-day surgery. The patient must be able to flex the knee. Those who cannot flex the knee at least 40 degrees or who have an infected knee are not candidates for the procedure. If the patient cannot flex the knee, the arthroscope cannot be inserted into the joint space to allow visualization. Joint infection may worsen from the mechanical trauma of arthroscope insertion.

If the procedure is done for surgical repair, the patient may have a physical therapy consultation before arthroscopy to learn the leg exercises that are necessary after the test. Straight-leg raises (SLRs) and quadriceps setting exercises (isometrics with the leg extended) are practiced in sets of 10 each. ROM exercises are also taught but may not be allowed immediately after arthroscopic surgery. The nurse in the surgeon’s office or at the surgical center can teach these exercises or reinforce the information provided by the physical therapist. The nurse also reinforces the explanation of the procedure and post-test care and ensures that the patient has signed an informed consent.

Procedure. The patient is usually given local, light general, or epidural anesthesia, depending on the purpose of the procedure. In some settings, a large pneumatic tourniquet is used around the thigh to minimize bleeding during the procedure. Drugs that promote vasoconstriction for control of bleeding may be used alone or in conjunction with the tourniquet.

The knee is flexed to at least 40 degrees and is irrigated. As shown in Fig. 52-6, the arthroscope is inserted through a small incision less than ¼-inch (0.6 cm) long. Multiple incisions may be required to allow inspection at a variety of angles. After the procedure, a dressing may be applied, depending on the amount of manipulation during the test or surgery.

Postprocedure Care. The immediate care after an arthroscopy is the same for patients having the procedure for diagnostic purposes and those having an arthroscopy for surgical intervention.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority for postprocedure care after arthroscopy is to assess the neurovascular status of the patient’s affected limb every hour or according to agency or surgeon protocol. Monitor and document distal pulses, warmth, color, capillary refill, pain, movement, and sensation of the affected extremity.

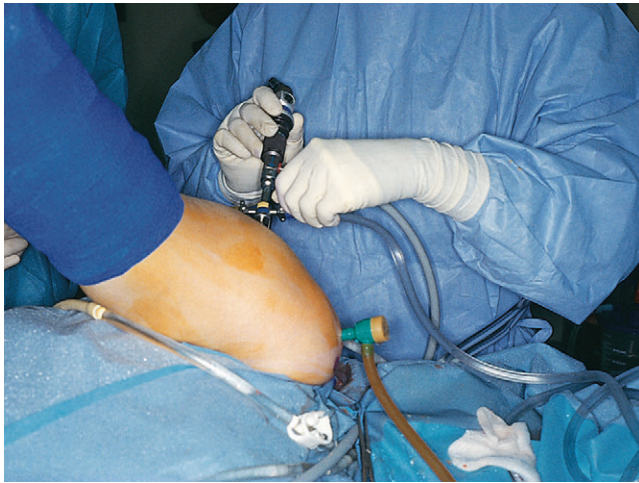


FIG. 52-6 An arthroscope is used in the diagnosis of pathologic changes in the joints. This patient is undergoing arthroscopy of the shoulder.

Encourage the patient to perform exercises as taught before the procedure, if appropriate. For the mild discomfort experienced after the diagnostic arthroscopy, the physician prescribes a mild analgesic, such as acetaminophen (Tylenol, Ace-Tabs 🍁). If postoperative, the patient may

have short-term activity restrictions, depending on the musculoskeletal problem. Ice is often used for 24 hours, and the extremity should be elevated for 12 to 24 hours. When arthroscopic surgery is performed, the health care provider usually prescribes an opioid-analgesic combination, such as oxycodone and acetaminophen (Percocet, Tylox).

Although complications are not common, monitor and teach the patient to observe for:

- Swelling
- Increased joint pain attributable to mechanical injury
- Thrombophlebitis
- Infection

Severe joint or limb pain after discharge may indicate a possible complication. Teach the patient to contact the physician immediately. The surgeon usually sees the patient about 1 week after the procedure to check for complications.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client returns to PACU after an arthroscopy to repair several knee ligaments. What is the nurse's priority when caring for this client?

- A. Take vital signs every hour.
- B. Check for swelling and bleeding.
- C. Perform frequent neurovascular assessments.
- D. Ensure that the surgical dressing is intact.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you NOTICE in a patient with adequate mobility and sensation related to the musculoskeletal system?

Physical Assessment

- No gross deformities or impairments in posture or gait
- Adequate size, strength, and symmetry of muscle for age
- Can perform ADLs independently
- Can perform other routine daily activities independently
- Can ambulate with or without assistive devices
- No pain or tenderness on palpation or passive range-of-motion (ROM) of joints

- Active ROM of joints within normal limits for age
- No crepitus when moving joints
- No swelling of joints or extremities
- Equal size and alignment of extremities
- Equal sensation in extremities

Diagnostic Assessment

- Muscle enzymes (e.g., CK-MM, ALD) within normal limits for age
- Bone density adequate for age and gender
- Joint changes within normal limits for age

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Collaborate with the physical and/or occupational therapist to perform a complete musculoskeletal assessment if indicated.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Be aware that older adults have physiologic changes that affect their musculoskeletal system (see [Chart 52-1](#)).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess the patient's support systems and coping mechanisms when musculoskeletal trauma or disease affects his or her body image.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Ask about the patient's occupation, because heavy manual labor may cause back injury and other musculoskeletal trauma.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess the patient's pain intensity, quality, duration, and location.
- Assess the patient's mobility, including gait, posture, and muscle strength.
- Assess for musculoskeletal changes associated with aging (see [Chart 52-1](#)).
- Interpret the patient's laboratory values that are related to musculoskeletal disease (see [Chart 52-3](#)).
- Teach the patient that mild discomfort can be expected during electromyography, a test to assess the electrical potential of muscles and their innervation.
- Instruct the patient to report swelling, infection, and increased pain after an arthroscopy.
- Ask the patient questions to ensure safety before an MRI (see [Chart 52-4](#)).
- Ask the patient about allergy to contrast media before diagnostic testing such as CT scans.
- Evaluate the neurovascular status of the patient's affected extremity after an arthroscopic procedure as the *priority for care*.

Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Coordinate with health care team members when planning and providing care for patients with musculoskeletal problems.
2. Teach the patient and family about home safety when the patient has a metabolic bone problem such as osteoporosis.
3. Identify community resources for patients with musculoskeletal problems that impair mobility.
4. Apply principles of infection control for patients with osteomyelitis, including Contact Precautions if needed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Develop a teaching plan for all age-groups about ways to decrease the risk for osteoporosis.
6. Perform health risk assessments for people at risk for osteoporosis and osteomalacia.
7. Assess the genetic risk for patients who have parents with muscular dystrophy.
8. Refer patients with genetic-associated diseases for genetic counseling and testing.

Psychosocial Integrity

9. Assess the patient's and family's responses to a bone cancer diagnosis and treatment options.
10. Evaluate patient's and family's coping strategies and fears related to grief and loss before and after bone cancer surgery.

Physiological Integrity

11. Educate the patient and family about common drugs used for bone diseases, such as calcium supplements and bisphosphonates.
12. Compare and contrast osteoporosis and osteomalacia.
13. Identify key features of Paget's disease of the bone.
14. Differentiate acute and chronic osteomyelitis.
15. Prioritize care for patients with osteomyelitis.
16. Identify collaborative management options for treating patients with primary and metastatic bone cancer.
17. Describe common disorders of the foot, including hallux valgus and plantar fasciitis, that can affect mobility.
18. Explain the role of the nurse when caring for an adult patient with muscular dystrophy.

Musculoskeletal disorders include metabolic bone diseases, such as osteoporosis and Paget's disease, bone tumors, and a variety of deformities and syndromes. Older adults are at the greatest risk for most of these problems, although primary bone cancer is most often found in adolescents and young adults. As technologic advances occur and patients survive

longer with primary cancers, metastatic lesions have become more prevalent among older adults. Almost all musculoskeletal health problems can cause the patient to have difficulty meeting the human need of *mobility*. This chapter focuses on selected disorders not covered in [Chapter 20](#) on arthritis and other connective tissue diseases.

METABOLIC BONE DISEASES

OSTEOPOROSIS

Pathophysiology

Osteoporosis is a chronic metabolic disease in which bone loss causes decreased density and possible fracture. It is often referred to as a “silent disease” because the first sign of osteoporosis in most people follows some kind of a fracture. The spine, hip, and wrist are most often at risk, although any bone can fracture (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010).

Osteoporosis is a major health problem in the world. The estimated cost for osteoporosis-related health care alone in the United States is more than \$18 billion each year with continual cost increases each year. By 2040, that number is expected to double or triple (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010).

Bone is a dynamic tissue that is constantly undergoing changes in a process referred to as **bone remodeling**. Osteoporosis and **osteopenia** (low bone mass) occur when osteoclastic (bone resorption) activity is greater than osteoblastic (bone building) activity. The result is a decreased **bone mineral density (BMD)**. BMD determines bone strength and peaks between 25 and 30 years of age. Before and during the peak years, osteoclastic activity and osteoblastic activity work at the same rate. After the peak years, bone resorption activity exceeds bone-building activity, and bone density decreases. BMD decreases most rapidly in postmenopausal women as serum estrogen levels diminish. Although estrogen does not build bone, it helps prevent bone loss. **Trabecular**, or **cancelous** (spongy), bone is lost first, followed by loss of **cortical** (compact) bone. This results in thin, fragile bone tissue that is at risk for fracture.

Standards for the diagnosis of osteoporosis are based on BMD testing that provides a T-score for the patient. A T-score represents the number of standard deviations above or below the average BMD for young, healthy adults. *Osteopenia is present when the T-score is at -1 and above -2.5. Osteoporosis is diagnosed in a person who has a T-score at or lower than -2.5.* Medicare reimburses for BMD testing every 2 years in people ages 65 years and older who (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010):

- Are estrogen deficient
- Have vertebral abnormalities
- Receive long-term steroid therapy
- Have primary hyperparathyroidism
- Are being monitored while on osteoporosis drug therapy

Osteoporosis can be classified as generalized or regional. *Generalized* osteoporosis involves many structures in the skeleton and is further divided into two categories, primary and secondary. *Primary* osteoporosis is more common and occurs in postmenopausal women and in men in their seventh or eighth decade of life. Even though men do not experience the rapid bone loss that postmenopausal women have, they do have decreasing levels of testosterone (which builds bone) and altered ability to absorb calcium. This results in a slower loss of bone mass in men, especially those older than 75 years. *Secondary* osteoporosis may result from other medical conditions, such as hyperparathyroidism; long-term drug therapy, such as with corticosteroids; or prolonged immobility, such as that seen with spinal cord injury (Table 53-1). Treatment

TABLE 53-1 CAUSES OF SECONDARY OSTEOPOROSIS

Diseases/Conditions	Drugs (Chronic Use)
• Diabetes mellitus • Hyperthyroidism • Hyperparathyroidism • Cushing's syndrome • Growth hormone deficiency • Metabolic acidosis • Female hypogonadism • Paget's disease • Osteogenesis imperfecta • Rheumatoid arthritis • Prolonged immobilization • Bone cancer • Cirrhosis • HIV/AIDS • Chronic airway limitation	• Corticosteroids • Heparin • Anticonvulsants (phenobarbital, phenytoin) • Ethanol (alcohol) • Drugs that induce hypogonadism (decreased levels of sex hormones) • High levels of thyroid hormone • Cytotoxic agents • Immunosuppressants • Loop diuretics • Aluminum-based antacids

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; HIV, human immune deficiency virus.

CHART 53-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing Risk Factors for Primary Osteoporosis

Assess for:

- Older age in both genders and all races
- Parental history of osteoporosis, especially mother
- History of low-trauma fracture after age 50 years
- Low body weight, thin build
- Chronic low calcium and/or vitamin D intake
- Estrogen or androgen deficiency
- Current smoking (active or passive)
- High alcohol intake (3 or more drinks a day)
- Lack of physical exercise or prolonged immobility

of the secondary type is directed toward the cause of the osteoporosis when possible.

Regional osteoporosis, an example of secondary disease, occurs when a limb is immobilized related to a fracture, injury, or paralysis. Immobility for longer than 8 to 12 weeks can result in this type of osteoporosis. Bone loss also occurs when people spend prolonged time in a gravity-free or weightless environment (e.g., astronauts).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Primary osteoporosis is caused by a combination of genetic, lifestyle, and environmental factors. Chart 53-1 lists the major factors that contribute to the development of this disease.

Primary osteoporosis most often occurs in women after menopause as a result of decreased estrogen levels. Women lose about 2% of their bone mass every year in the first 5 years after natural or surgical (ovary removal) menopause. For women of any age who do not take estrogen replacement, the risk for osteoporosis increases.

Men also develop osteoporosis after the age of 50 because their testosterone levels decrease. Testosterone is the major sex hormone that builds bone tissue. Men are often underdiagnosed, even when they become older adults. A recent study of almost 1200 men in a VA rehabilitation center showed that screening for osteoporosis had not been conducted. As a result of bone mineral density screening, the researchers found 33 study patients who had osteoporosis and were at

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The genetic and immune factors that cause osteoporosis are very complex. Strong evidence demonstrates that genetics is a significant factor, with a heritability of 50% to 90% (Chang et al., 2010). Many genetic changes have been identified as possible causative factors, but there is no agreement about which ones are most important or constant in all patients. For example, changes in the vitamin D receptor (*VDR*) gene and calcitonin receptor (*CTR*) gene have been found in some patients with the disease. Receptors are essential for the uptake and use of these substances by the cells.

The bone morphogenetic protein-2 (*BMP-2*) gene has a key role in bone formation and maintenance. Some osteoporotic patients who have had fractures have changes in their *BMP-2* gene. Alterations in growth hormone-1 (*GH-1*) have been discovered in petite Asian-American women, those who are predisposed to developing osteoporosis.

Hormones, tumor necrosis factor (TNF), interleukins, and other substances in the body help control osteoclasts in a very complex pathway. The recent identification of the importance of the cytokine receptor activator of nuclear factor kappa-B ligand (*RANKL*), its receptor *RANK*, and its decoy receptor osteoprotegerin (*OPG*) has helped researchers understand more about the activity of osteoclasts in metabolic bone disease. Disruptions in the *RANKL*, *RANK*, and *OPG* system can lead to increased osteoclast activity in which bone is rapidly broken down (McCance et al., 2010).

high risk for fractures, especially of the hip. Those who were diagnosed with the disease were the oldest patients who had a lower body mass index and weight (Swislocki et al., 2010).

Body build and weight seems to influence who gets the disease. Osteoporosis occurs most often in older, lean-built Euro-American and Asian women, particularly those who do not exercise regularly. However, African Americans are at risk for decreased vitamin D, which is needed for adequate calcium absorption in the small intestines. Obese women can store estrogen in their tissues for use as necessary to maintain a normal level of serum calcium. Weight-bearing exercise reduces bone resorption (loss) and stimulates bone formation. Prolonged immobility produces rapid bone loss.

The relationship of osteoporosis to nutrition is well established. For example, excessive caffeine in the diet can cause calcium loss in the urine. A diet lacking enough calcium and vitamin D stimulates the parathyroid gland to produce parathyroid hormone (PTH). PTH triggers the release of calcium from the bony matrix. Activated vitamin D is needed for calcium uptake in the body. Malabsorption of nutrients in the GI tract also contributes to low serum calcium levels. Institutionalized or homebound patients who are not exposed to sunlight may be at a higher risk because they do not receive adequate vitamin D for the metabolism of calcium.

Calcium loss occurs at a more rapid rate when phosphorus intake is high. (Chapter 13 describes the usual relationship between calcium and phosphorus in the body.) People who drink large amounts of carbonated beverages each day (over 40 ounces) are at high risk for calcium loss and subsequent osteoporosis, regardless of age or gender.

Protein deficiency may also reduce bone density. Because 50% of serum calcium is protein bound, protein is needed to use calcium. However, excessive protein intake may increase calcium loss in the urine. For instance, people who are on high-protein, low-carbohydrate diets, like the Atkins diet, may consume too much protein to replace other food not allowed. Dietary protein intake in healthy adults is

recommended at 0.8 grams per kilogram of body weight. Protein is needed for bone healing when a fracture occurs.

Excessive alcohol and tobacco use are other risk factors for osteoporosis. Although the exact mechanisms are not known, these substances promote acidosis, which in turn increases bone loss. Alcohol also has a direct toxic effect on bone tissue, resulting in decreased bone formation and increased bone resorption. For those people who have excessive alcohol intake, alcohol calories decrease hunger and the need to take in adequate amounts of nutrients.

Osteoporosis also occurs in young adults who participate in excessive exercise or weight-loss dieting or in those who have eating disorders, such as anorexia nervosa or bulimia nervosa. Young females with these risk factors have a low body weight and absent menstruation, which contribute to the development of osteoporosis. Dancers, gymnasts, and other athletes may overtrain without sufficient caloric intake, which also results in severe weight loss. Young girls and women may have an obsession with being slim. Particular attention must be paid to bone health for these groups.

Incidence/Prevalence

Osteoporosis is a potential health problem for more than 44 million Americans. About 10 million people in the United States have the disease, and about 34 million people 50 years of age and older have osteopenia and are at risk for development of osteoporosis. Women remain the largest group affected by osteoporosis, although men, especially those older than 75 years, also have the disease. After the age of 50, men are at increased risk for osteoporosis and osteoporotic-related fractures (Voda, 2009b).

People of all ethnic and racial backgrounds are at some degree of risk, but white, thin women are likely to get primary osteoporosis at an earlier age (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Although there is some advantage of increased bone density in dark-skinned women, lifestyle and health beliefs about prevention may put all women at an equal risk for osteoporosis. Dietary preferences or the ability to afford high-nutrient food may influence the woman's rate of bone loss. For example, many blacks have lactose intolerance and cannot drink milk or eat other dairy-based foods. Milk and cheese are good sources of protein, a nutrient needed to bind calcium for use by the body.

Osteoporosis results in more than 1.5 million fractures each year. A woman who experiences a hip fracture has a four times greater risk for a second fracture. Fractures as a result of osteoporosis and falling can decrease a patient's mobility and quality of life. The mortality rate for older patients with hip fractures is very high, especially within the first 6 months, and the debilitating effects can be devastating.

Nursing home residents fall 11 times more often than their community-dwelling counterparts (Parikh et al., 2009). Yet, skilled nursing facilities (SNFs) do not routinely screen residents for osteoporosis. A national study by Gloth and Simonson (2008) reported the results of osteoporosis screening for more than 34,000 SNF residents in 26 states. Over 42% of residents were categorized as having a high risk for osteoporosis and associated fractures (see the Evidence-Based Practice box on p. 1122).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Is Osteoporosis Underdiagnosed in Residents Admitted to Skilled Nursing Facilities?

Gloth, F.M., 3rd, & Simonson, W. (2008). Osteoporosis is underdiagnosed in skilled nursing facilities: A large-scale heel BMD screening study. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 9(3), 190-193.

The purpose of this nationwide study in the United States was to investigate the belief that osteoporosis is underdiagnosed in the skilled nursing facility (SNF) setting. Local consultant pharmacists screened 34,486 SNF residents in 26 states using the peripheral dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DXA) scan to determine bone mineral density (BMD) of the heel. Residents ranged in age from younger than 59 years to older than 80 years. Of the total screened residents, 22.4% were categorized as low risk, 35.1% as moderate risk, and 42.5% as high risk for osteoporosis and related fractures. The researchers concluded that osteoporosis is grossly underdiagnosed and BMD screening should be a part of the resident's admission assessment.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although the sample was very large and the study answered the research question, no experimental or quasi-experimental design was used. However, it would be inappropriate to use these designs to answer the research question.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

Nurses working with older adults in any setting need to be aware of the prevalence of osteoporosis among this population. They can be instrumental in developing screening programs that can identify the most at-risk older adults so they can be treated and monitored more carefully for fractures. Those at risk need to have health teaching about drug therapy and lifestyle changes that could slow or improve the disease process.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Peak bone mass is achieved by about 30 years of age in most women. *Building strong bone as a young person may be the best defense against osteoporosis in later adulthood. Young women need to be aware of appropriate health and lifestyle practices that can prevent this potentially disabling disease.*

Nurses can play a vital role in patient education to prevent and manage osteoporosis. *Teaching should begin with young women because they begin to lose bone after 30 years of age.*

The focus of osteoporosis prevention is to decrease modifiable risk factors. For example, teach patients who do not include enough dietary calcium which foods should be included, such as dairy products and dark green, leafy vegetables. Teach them to read food labels for sources of calcium content. Explain the importance of sun exposure (but not so much as to get sunburned) and adequate vitamin D in the diet. In 2010, the Institute of Medicine published recommendations for healthy people younger than 71 years to take 600 international units of activated vitamin D each day; 800 to 1000 international units each day is recommended for people older than 71 years. The National Osteoporosis Foundation recommends higher doses for healthy people. Patients being treated for osteoporosis or osteomalacia (vitamin D deficiency) are prescribed much higher therapeutic doses.

Teach the need to limit the amount of carbonated beverages consumed each day. Remind patients who have sedentary lifestyles about the importance of exercise and what types of exercise builds bone tissue. Weight-bearing exercises, such as regularly scheduled walking, are preferred. Teach

people to avoid activities that cause jarring, such as horseback riding, to prevent potential vertebral compression fractures.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

A complete health history with assessment of risk factors is important in the prevention, early detection, and treatment of osteoporosis. Patients who have risk factors for osteoporosis are at increased risk for fractures when falls occur. Include a fall risk assessment in the health history, especially for older adults. Assess for fall risk factors, including:

- Delirium
- Dementia
- Immobility
- Muscular weakness
- History of falls
- Visual or hearing deficits
- Current drugs

The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals (NPSG) specify the need to reduce risk for harm to patients resulting from falls. *People with osteoporosis are at an increased risk for fracture if a fall occurs. The World Health Organization (WHO) Fracture Risk Algorithm (FRAX) is often used to determine the patient's risk for fractures associated with bone loss. Chapter 3 discusses falls in older adults in more detail.*

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

When performing a musculoskeletal assessment, inspect and palpate the vertebral column. The classic "dowager's hump," or kyphosis of the dorsal spine, is often present (Fig. 53-1). The patient may state that he or she has gotten shorter, perhaps as much as 2 to 3 inches (5 to 7.5 cm) within the previous 20 years. Take or delegate height and weight measurements, and compare with previous measurements if they are available.

The patient may have back pain, which often occurs after lifting, bending, or stooping. The pain may be sharp and acute in onset. Pain is worse with activity and is relieved by rest. Palpation of the vertebrae, particularly the lower thoracic and lumbar vertebrae, can increase the patient's discomfort. Therefore palpation should be gentle.

Back pain accompanied by tenderness and voluntary restriction of spinal movement suggests one or more compression vertebral fractures, the most common type of osteoporotic fracture. Movement restriction and spinal deformity may result in constipation, abdominal distention, reflux esophagitis, and respiratory compromise in severe cases. The most likely area for spinal fracture is between T8 and L3. This problem is discussed in more detail in Chapter 54.

Fractures are also common in the distal end of the radius (wrist) and the upper third of the femur (hip). Ask the patient to locate all areas that are painful, and observe for signs and symptoms of fractures, such as swelling and malalignment.

Psychosocial Assessment

Women associate osteoporosis with menopause, getting older, and becoming less independent. The disease can result in suffering, deformity, and disability that can affect the patient's well-being and life satisfaction. The quality of life

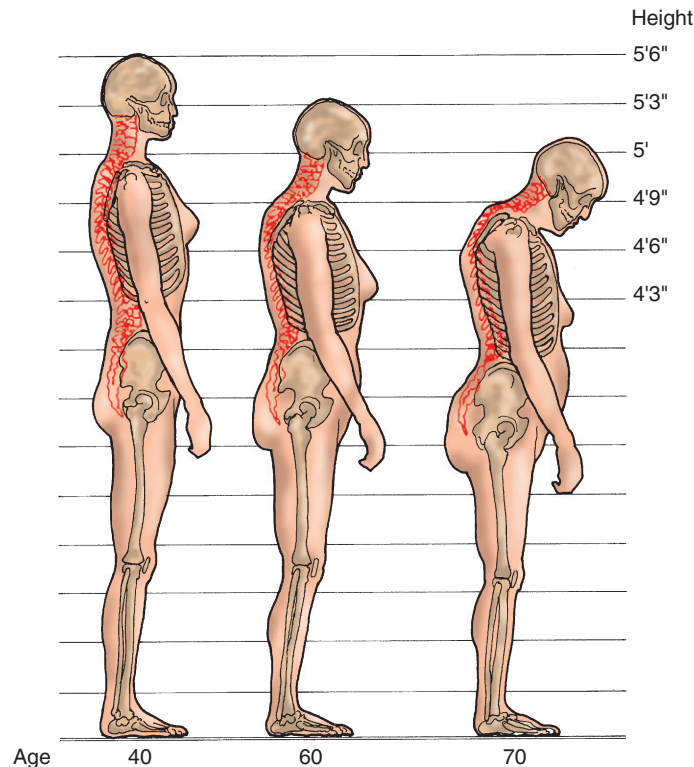


FIG. 53-1 A normal spine at age 40 years and osteoporotic changes at ages 60 and 70 years. These changes can cause a loss of as much as 6 inches in height and can result in the so-called *dowager's hump* (far right) in the upper thoracic vertebrae.

may be further impacted by pain, insomnia, depression, and **fallophobia** (fear of falling).

Assess the patient's concept of body image, especially if he or she is severely kyphotic. For example, the patient may have difficulty finding clothes that fit properly. Social interactions may be avoided because of a change in appearance or the physical limitations of being unable to sit in chairs in restaurants, movie theaters, and other places. Changes in sexuality may occur as a result of poor self-esteem or the discomfort caused by positioning during intercourse.

Because osteoporosis poses a risk for fractures, teach the patient to be extremely cautious about activities. As a result, the threat of fracture can create anxiety and fear and result in further limitation of social or physical activities. Assess for these feelings to assist in treatment decisions and health teaching. For example, the patient may not exercise as prescribed for fear that a fracture will occur.

Laboratory Assessment

There are no definitive laboratory tests that confirm a diagnosis of primary osteoporosis, although a number of *biochemical markers* can provide information about bone resorption and formation activity. These biochemical markers are sensitive to bone changes and can be used to monitor effectiveness of treatment for osteoporosis. *Bone-specific alkaline phosphatase (BSAP)* is found in the cell membrane of the osteoblast and indicates bone formation status. *Osteocalcin* is a protein substance in bone and increases during bone resorption activity. Pyridinium (PYD) cross-links are released into circulation during bone resorption. *N-telopeptide (NTX)* and *C-telopeptide (CTX)* are proteins released when bone is

broken down. Some laboratories require a 24-hour urine collection for testing, whereas others use a double-voided specimen. Some markers, like NTX and CTX, can also be measured in the blood using immunoassay techniques. Increased levels of any of these markers indicate a risk for osteoporosis. Increased levels are found in patients with osteoporosis, Paget's disease, and bone tumors (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

A battery of tests can be performed to rule out secondary osteoporosis or other metabolic bone diseases, such as osteomalacia and Paget's disease. These include measurements of serum calcium, vitamin D, and phosphorus. Urinary calcium levels may also be assessed. Serum protein measurements and thyroid function tests are done to check for hyperthyroidism.

Imaging Assessment

Conventional x-rays of the spine and long bones show decreased bone density but only after a 25% to 40% bone loss has occurred. Fractures can also be seen on x-ray.

The most commonly used screening and diagnostic tool for measuring bone mineral density (BMD) is **dual x-ray absorptiometry (DXA)**. The spine and hip are most often assessed when central DXA (cDXA) scan is performed. Many physicians recommend that women in their 40s have a baseline screening DXA scan so that later bone changes can be detected and compared. DXA is a painless scan that emits less radiation than a chest x-ray. *It is the best tool currently available for a definite diagnosis of osteoporosis.* The patient stays dressed but is asked to remove any metallic objects such as belt buckles, coins, keys, or jewelry that might interfere with the test. The results are displayed on a computer graph, and

a T-score is calculated. No special follow-up care for the test is required. However, the patient needs to discuss the results with the physician for any decisions about possible preventive or management interventions.

A peripheral DXA (pDXA) scan assesses BMD of the heel, forearm, or finger. It is often used for large-scale screening purposes. For example, [Gloth and Simonson \(2008\)](#) reported a large-scale heel BMD study for screening over 34,000 skilled nursing facility residents. The pDXA is also commonly used for screening at community health fairs and women's health centers.

Quantitative computed tomography (QCT) can also measure bone density, using either a central or peripheral technique. This procedure analyzes trabecular and cortical bone separately and is especially sensitive to changes in the vertebral column. The test is more expensive than the DXA scan and exposes the patient to more radiation; however, it is a safe screening test ([National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010](#)).

Peripheral quantitative ultrasound (pQUS) is an effective and low-cost peripheral screening tool that can detect osteoporosis and predict risk for hip fracture. The heel, tibia, and patella are most commonly tested. The procedure requires no special preparation, is quick, and has no radiation exposure or specific follow-up care ([Pagana & Pagana, 2010](#)). The National Osteoporosis Foundation recommends that men older than 70 years have the pQUS as a screening tool for the disease.

ANALYSIS

The most common problem for patients with osteoporosis or osteopenia is potential for fractures related to weak, porous bone tissue.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Planning: Expected Outcomes

The expected outcome is that the patient avoids fractures by preventing falls, managing risk factors, and adhering to preventive or treatment measures for bone loss.

Interventions

Because the patient is predisposed to fractures, nutritional therapy, exercise, lifestyle changes, and drug therapy are used to slow bone resorption and form new bone tissue. Patient education can help prevent osteoporosis or slow the progress. These measures help reduce the chance of fractures and their complications. The role of drug therapy has increased over the past decade and helps prevent fractures related to osteoporosis. Drug therapy should begin when the BMD T-score for the hip is below -2.0 with no other risk factors or when the T-score is below -1.5 with one or more risk factors or previous fracture.

Nutrition Therapy. The nutritional considerations for the treatment of a patient with a diagnosis of osteoporosis are the same as those for preventing the disease. Teach patients about the adequate amounts of protein, magnesium, vitamin K, and trace minerals that are needed for bone formation. Calcium and vitamin D intake should be increased. Teach patients to avoid excessive alcohol and caffeine consumption. For the patient who has sustained a fracture, adequate intake of protein, vitamin C, and iron is important to promote bone healing. People who are lactose intolerant can choose a variety

of soy and rice products that are fortified with calcium and vitamin D. In addition, calcium and vitamin D are added to many fruit juices, bread, and cereal products.

A variety of nutrients are needed to maintain bone health. *The promotion of a single nutrient will not prevent or treat osteoporosis.* Help the patient develop a nutritional plan that is most beneficial in maintaining bone health; the plan should emphasize fruits and vegetables, low-fat dairy and protein sources, increased fiber, and moderation in alcohol and caffeine ([National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010](#)).

Lifestyle Changes. Exercise is important in the prevention and management of osteoporosis. It also plays a vital role in pain management, cardiovascular function, and an improved sense of well-being.

In collaboration with the health care provider, the physical therapist may prescribe exercises for strengthening the abdominal and back muscles for those at risk for vertebral fractures. These exercises improve posture and support for the spine. Abdominal muscle tightening, deep breathing, and pectoral stretching are stressed to increase lung capacity. Exercises for the extremity muscles include muscle-tightening, resistive, and range-of-motion (ROM) exercises. Encourage active ROM exercises, which improve joint mobility and increase muscle tone, as well as prescribed exercise activities. Swimming provides overall muscle exercise.

In addition to exercises for muscle strengthening, a general weight-bearing exercise program should be implemented. Teach patients that *walking for 30 minutes three to five times a week is the single most effective exercise for osteoporosis prevention.* Teach the patient that certain high-impact recreational activities, such as running, bowling, and horseback riding, may cause vertebral compression fractures and should be avoided.

In addition to nutrition and exercise, other lifestyle changes may be needed. Teach the patient to avoid tobacco in any form, especially cigarette smoking. The patient must be careful to prevent falls and other activities that can cause a fracture. Teach the patient about the importance of having a hazard-free environment, including avoiding scatter rugs, cluttered rooms, and wet floor areas.

Hospitals and long-term care facilities have risk management programs to assess for the risk for falls. For those patients at high risk, communicate this information to other members of the health care team, using colored armbands or other easy-to-recognize methods (National Patient Safety Goals). [Chapter 3](#) discusses fall prevention in health care agencies and at home in more detail.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement by the client regarding lifestyle changes to prevent osteoporosis indicates a need for further teaching by the nurse?

- A. "I need to eat more green, leafy vegetables and dairy products."
- B. "I will cut down the amount of wine I drink each night."
- C. "I plan to begin smoking cessation classes at the hospital."
- D. "I am going to want to work out 3 days a week at the gym."

Drug Therapy. The health care provider may prescribe calcium and vitamin D supplements, bisphosphonates, or estrogen agonist/antagonists (formerly called *selective*

estrogen receptor modulators), or a combination of several drugs to treat or prevent osteoporosis (Chart 53-2). Estrogen and combination hormone therapy are not used solely for osteoporosis prevention or management because they can increase other health risks such as breast cancer and myocardial infarction (Woman's Health Initiative, 2005).

Calcium and Vitamin D. Intake of *calcium* alone is not a treatment for osteoporosis, but calcium is an important part of a *prevention* program to promote bone health. Most people cannot or do not have enough calcium in their diet, and therefore calcium supplements are needed. Calcium carbonate, found in over-the-counter (OTC) drugs such as Os-Cal, is one of the most cost-effective supplement formulas. Calcium citrate, available OTC as Citracal, is often recommended for those who have gastric upset when taking a calcium supplement. Teach patients to take calcium supplements with food and 6 to 8 ounces of water, although Citracal can be taken anytime. It is best to divide the daily dose, with at least one third of the daily dose being taken in the evening. Teach women to start taking supplements in young adulthood to assist in maintaining peak bone mass. Instruct patients of any age to take calcium supplements that also contain activated vitamin D, such as Os-Cal Ultra.

Remind patients to take these supplements under the supervision of a health care provider. **Hypercalcemia** (excess serum calcium) can cause serious damage to the urinary system and other body systems. Teach patients to drink plenty of fluids to prevent urinary or renal calculi (stones). Chapter 13 describes the clinical manifestations of hypercalcemia.

Bisphosphonates. Bisphosphonates (BPs) slow bone resorption by binding with crystal elements in bone, especially spongy, trabecular bone tissue. They are the most common drugs used for osteoporosis, but some are also approved for Paget's disease and hypercalcemia related to cancer. Three FDA-approved BPs—alendronate (Fosamax), ibandronate (Boniva), and risedronate (Actonel)—are commonly used for the *prevention and treatment* of osteoporosis (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010). These drugs are available as oral preparations, with ibandronate (Boniva) also available as an IV preparation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not confuse Fosamax with Flomax, a selective alpha-adrenergic blocker used for benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH).

Oral BPs are commonly associated with a serious problem called **esophagitis** (inflammation of the esophagus). Esophageal ulcers have also been reported with the use of BPs, especially when the tablet is not completely swallowed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients to take bisphosphonates (BPs) early in the morning with 8 ounces of water and wait 30 to 60 minutes in an upright position before eating. If chest discomfort occurs, a symptom of esophageal irritation, instruct patients to discontinue the drug and contact their health care provider. Patients with poor renal function, hypocalcemia, or gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) should not take BPs.

The most recent additions to the bisphosphonates are IV zoledronic acid (Reclast) and IV pamidronate (Aredia). For management of osteoporosis, Reclast is needed only once a year and Aredia is given every 3 to 6 months. Both drugs have been linked to a complication called jaw **osteonecrosis** (jaw bone death) in which infection and necrosis of the mandible or maxilla occur (Lee, 2009). The incidence of this serious problem is low but can be a complication of this infusion therapy.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the patient to have an oral assessment and preventive dentistry before beginning any bisphosphonate therapy. Instruct the patient to inform any dentist who is planning invasive treatment, such as a tooth extraction or implant, that he or she is taking a BP (Cohen, 2010).

Estrogen Agonist/Antagonists. Formerly called the *selective estrogen receptor modulators* (SERMs), estrogen agonist/antagonists are a class of drugs designed to mimic estrogen in some parts of the body while blocking its effect elsewhere. Raloxifene (Evista) is currently the only approved drug in this class and is used for *prevention and treatment* of osteoporosis in postmenopausal women. Raloxifene increases bone mineral density (BMD), reduces bone resorption, and reduces the incidence of osteoporotic vertebral fractures. The drug should not be given to women who have a history of thromboembolism.

Other Agents. Parathyroid hormone is prepared as *teriparatide* under the brand name Forteo and is a bone-building agent approved for *treatment* of osteoporosis in postmenopausal women with high risk for fracture. Teach patients to self-administer Forteo as a daily subcutaneous injection. This drug stimulates new bone formation, thus increasing BMD. Reduced risk for fracture in the spine, hip, and wrist has been reported in women, and reduced risk for hip fracture has been reported in men. Patients may experience dizziness or leg cramping as side effects of Forteo (National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2010). Teach the patient to lie down if these problems occur and notify the health care provider as soon as possible.

Calcitonin is a thyroid hormone that inhibits osteoclastic activity, thus decreasing bone loss. It is used for the *treatment* of osteoporosis, Paget's disease, and hypercalcemia associated with cancer. The drug also has an analgesic effect after vertebral fracture, thereby promoting early recovery.

Calcitonin can be given subcutaneously or intranasally. The nasal route is preferred because it improves drug adherence, decreases side effects, and is convenient. However, the effect of calcitonin may decrease after use for 2 or more years. Patients may require a holiday from this treatment to maintain effectiveness. Teach the patient to alternate nares to prevent mucosal irritation, a common side effect. The drug must be refrigerated.

Community-Based Care

Patients with osteoporosis are usually managed at home. Osteoporosis disease-management programs managed by nurse practitioners have helped diagnose and treat the disease. Greene and Dell (2010) reported that over a 6-year period, a

CHART 53-2 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Osteoporosis

DRUG AND USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE OF DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Supplements			
Calcium (with vitamin D if needed) (e.g., Os-Cal, Citracal) 1-1.5 g in divided doses orally daily	Increases calcium intake (and vitamin D if needed)	Give a third of daily dose at bedtime. Push fluids. Assess for a history of urinary stones. Monitor serum calcium level. Monitor urinary calcium level (no more than 4 mg/kg in 24 hr). Observe for signs of hypercalcemia.	Calcium is most readily utilized by the body when the patient is fasting and immobile. Increased fluid intake aids in preventing the formation of calcium-based urinary stones. Calcium supplements are not given to patients who are susceptible to urinary stone formation. Hypercalcemia, or calcium excess, is a side effect of calcium supplementation. The kidneys attempt to excrete excess calcium. Hypercalcemia can result in urinary stones, cardiac dysrhythmias, and an increase or decrease in skeletal muscle tone.
Bisphosphonates			
Alendronate (Fosamax) or (Fosamax plus D) For Prevention: 5 mg orally daily or 35 mg orally weekly (available as tablet or liquid) For Treatment: 10 mg orally daily or 70 mg orally weekly with 2800-5600 international units of vitamin D	Prevents bone loss and increases bone density	Take on an empty stomach, first thing in the morning with a full glass of water. Take 30 minutes before food, drink, or other drugs. Remain upright, sitting or standing, for 30 minutes after administration. Take liquid (75 mL) and follow with 2 ounces of water.	Difficulty swallowing, esophagitis, esophageal ulcers, and gastric ulcers can result from alendronate therapy. Any of these should be reported to a health care provider as soon as possible.
Risedronate (Actonel) or (Actonel with Calcium) 5 mg orally daily, 35 mg orally every week, or 150 mg monthly	Same as for alendronate	Follow interventions for alendronate. Observe for CNS side/adverse effects, such as drowsiness, anxiety, agitation.	Same as for alendronate. Drug can also cause CNS effects that may not be tolerated.
Ibandronate (Boniva) 150 mg orally once every month or 3.375 mg IV every 3 months	Same as for alendronate	Take on the same day each month. Take on an empty stomach, first thing in the morning with a full glass of water. Take 60 minutes before food, drink, or other drugs. Remain upright for 1 hour after administration.	Same as for alendronate.
Zoledronic acid (Reclast, Zometa) For Prevention: 5 mg IV once every 2 years For Treatment: 5 mg IV once a year	Same as for other bisphosphonates	Infuse over 15-30 minutes. Make sure the patient has a dental examination before starting the drug. Do not give to patients who are sensitive to aspirin. Check serum creatinine before and after administering the drug.	The drug should not be infused too quickly to prevent rare complications such as atrial fibrillation. The drug can cause jaw or maxillary osteonecrosis, particularly if oral hygiene is poor. The patient may experience bronchoconstriction. The drug can cause renal insufficiency or kidney failure.
Estrogen Agonist/Antagonists*			
Raloxifene (Evista) 60 mg orally daily	Prevents bone loss and increases bone density	Teach patient signs and symptoms of VTE. Monitor liver function tests (LFTs) in collaboration with health care provider.	Raloxifene can cause increased risk for VTE, especially in the first 4 months of therapy. Raloxifene can cause increased LFT values or worsen hepatic disease (should not be given to patient who has liver disease).

CNS, Central nervous system; VTE, venous thromboembolism.

*Formerly Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulators (SERMs).

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

A 62-year-old patient visits the physician's office to receive her first treatment for osteoporosis. She has a recent history of a badly fractured ankle and osteopenia (for which she has been taking Actonel). Her mother and grandmother had osteoporosis and osteoarthritis. The patient does not smoke but enjoys an occasional glass of wine when she and her husband go out for dinner. She drinks only 1 or 2 cups of caffeinated beverages a day. Although she realizes the importance of regular exercise, she has no time to fit that into her schedule because she travels throughout the country for her job. As her office nurse, you will be monitoring her as she has her first dose of Reclast.

1. What risk factors does this patient have for osteopenia and osteoporosis?
2. What health teaching might this patient need? How can you help her plan time for increasing her physical activity level? What does current evidence show that supports your answer?
3. What actions will you take before starting her Reclast?
4. How fast will you administer the drug, and what method will you use?

large osteoporosis disease-management program resulted in a 263% increase in the number of DXA scans done each year, a 153% increase in the number of patients treated with drug therapy, and a 38.1% decrease in the expected hip fracture rate.

Some patients have fractures that may require hospitalization or medical management in an emergency department (ED) or urgent care setting. In any setting, assess for risk factors for osteoporosis and provide health teaching as appropriate.

The patient with osteoporosis who has one or more fractures may be discharged to the home setting. In some instances, though, the patient is transferred to a long-term care facility for rehabilitation or permanent residence when support systems are not available. Collaborate with case managers or discharge planners to assist in preparing patients and their families for placement in long-term care facilities. Chapter 54 discusses continuing care for patients who have fractures.

Refer patients to the National Osteoporosis Foundation (www.nof.org) in the United States to provide information to patients and health care professionals regarding the disease and its treatment. The Osteoporosis Society of Canada (www.osteoporosis.ca) has similar services. Large hospitals often have osteoporosis specialty clinics and support groups for patients with osteoporosis.

OSTEOMALACIA

Pathophysiology

Osteomalacia is loss of bone related to a vitamin D deficiency. It causes softening of the bone resulting from inadequate deposits of calcium and phosphorus in the bone matrix. Normal remodeling of the bone is disrupted, and calcification does not occur. Osteomalacia is the adult equivalent of **rickets**, or vitamin D deficiency, in children.

Vitamin D deficiency is the most important factor in development of osteomalacia. In its natural form, vitamin D is activated by the ultraviolet radiation of the sun and obtained from certain foods as a nutritional supplement. In combination with calcium and phosphorus, the vitamin is necessary for bone formation.

TABLE 53-2 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF OSTEOPOROSIS AND OSTEOMALACIA

CHARACTERISTIC	OSTEOPOROSIS	OSTEOMALACIA
Definition	Decreased bone mass	Demineralized bone
Pathophysiology	Lack of calcium	Lack of vitamin D
Radiographic findings	Osteopenia, fractures	Pseudofractures, Looser's zones, fractures
Calcium level	Low or normal	Low or normal
Phosphate level	Normal	Low or normal
Parathyroid hormone	Normal	High or normal
Alkaline phosphatase	Normal	High

TABLE 53-3 CAUSES OF OSTEOMALACIA

Vitamin D Disturbance • Inadequate production • Lack of sunlight exposure • Dietary deficiency • Abnormal metabolism • Drug therapy • Phenytoin (Dilantin) • Fluoride • Barbiturates • Liver disease • Renal disease	• Inadequate absorption • Postgastrectomy • Malabsorption syndrome • Inflammatory bowel disease
	Kidney Disease • Chronic kidney disease • Acute tubular disorders • Acidosis • Hypophosphatemia
	Familial Metabolic Error • Hypophosphatemia

Osteomalacia is frequently confused with osteoporosis because of similar characteristics shared by the two disease processes. Table 53-2 compares and contrasts osteoporosis and osteomalacia.

In addition to primary disease related to lack of sunlight exposure or dietary intake, vitamin D deficiency caused by various health problems may result in osteomalacia (Table 53-3). Malabsorption of vitamin D from the small bowel is a common complication of partial or total gastrectomy and bypass or resection surgery of the small intestine. Disease of the small bowel, such as Crohn's disease, may cause decreased vitamin and mineral absorption.

Liver and pancreatic disorders disrupt vitamin D metabolism and decrease its production. Chronic kidney disease (CKD) interferes with the synthesis of calcitriol, the most active vitamin metabolite. Osteomalacia can also be caused by bone tumors (**oncogenic** or **tumor-induced osteomalacia**).

Conditions that contribute to phosphate depletion (hypophosphatemia) lead to osteomalacia because they stimulate movement from bone and prevent calcium uptake in the bone. Osteomalacia is also an adverse effect of certain drugs, particularly anticonvulsants, barbiturates, and fluoride. The exact mechanism for the drug effects is not known. Genetic deviations in vitamin D or phosphate metabolism may contribute to bone changes seen in osteomalacia.

Osteomalacia is not common in the United States and Western Europe. However, it is more common in less affluent nations and in countries where famine is common.

Newcomers from these countries may seek health care in the United States. Older adults are most at risk. This group may have inadequate exposure to sunlight or intake of vitamin D–fortified foods. People who adhere to very restrictive vegan diets without adequate supplement of vitamin D can also be at risk. Assess for the risk for osteomalacia in anyone who has poor nutritional intake related to homelessness, who severely abuses drugs or alcohol, or who is very poor.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

To prevent or help treat osteomalacia, teach patients to increase vitamin D through dietary intake, sun exposure, and drug supplements. Instruct the at-risk patient about foods high in vitamin D, such as milk and food that has had it added. Remind patients that cheese and yogurt rarely contain vitamin D although they are rich in calcium. Instruct them to read food labels for nutrient content. Remind patients, especially those who are homebound, about the importance of daily sun exposure (at least 5 minutes each day) for the most important source of vitamin D.

Some people are lactose intolerant or do not use dairy products because of their vegan diets. However, many products are available for people who avoid dairy products. Soy and rice milk, tofu, and soy products are substitutes, but they are expensive. Teach patients to choose those products that are fortified with vitamin D. Other foods rich in the vitamin are eggs, swordfish, chicken, and liver, as well as enriched cereals and bread products. The at-risk patient should also take vitamin D supplements as prescribed by his or her health care provider.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Collect important data for the patient with osteomalacia or suspected osteomalacia, including age, ability to be exposed to sunlight, and skin pigmentation. The older adult who has been homebound or chronically institutionalized is at the greatest risk. People who have dark skin and who may consume minimal protein are more at risk than light-skinned people with the same dietary habits. Dark-skinned people tend to avoid the sun and need protein for calcium binding. Take a thorough nutritional history to determine the intake of foods containing vitamin D and calcium. Coordinate the assessment with the dietitian.

Assessment includes any history of chronic disease processes of the GI tract including inflammatory bowel disease, gastric or intestinal bypass surgery, or any problem that interferes with absorption from the GI tract. A history of renal or liver dysfunction may lead to ineffective metabolism of vitamin D. Drugs such as phenytoin (Dilantin) or fluoride preparations may also interfere with metabolism of vitamin D.

Osteomalacia is easily confused with osteoporosis, and both disorders may occur at the same time (see Table 53-2). In the early stages of osteomalacia, the manifestations are nonspecific. Muscle weakness and bone pain may be misdiagnosed as arthritis or other connective tissue disorder. In some cases, proximal muscle weakness in the shoulder and pelvic girdle area is the only presenting symptom.

Muscle weakness in the lower extremities may cause a waddling and unsteady gait, which contributes to falls and subsequent fractures. Hypophosphatemia leads to an inadequate production of muscle cell adenosine triphosphate, thus resulting in a decrease in muscle cell energy. If hypocalcemia is present, muscle cramping may occur with weakness.

In collaboration with the physical therapist, assess muscle strength and observe the patient's gait. Document concerns about muscle cramps and bone pain. Skeletal discomfort is often vague and generalized. The spine, ribs, pelvis, and lower extremities are most often affected. The patient usually describes the pain as aggravated by activity and worse at night.

Palpate the affected bones for tenderness. Bone tenderness may occur when pressure is applied to the tibia or rib cage. Skeletal malalignment, like long-bone bowing or spinal deformity, may be similar to that seen in osteoporosis. In extreme cases, the pelvis narrows, so vaginal childbirth is difficult. If osteomalacia is untreated, vertebral, rib, and long-bone fractures may occur. The patient may be misdiagnosed as having bone cancer or osteoporosis.

X-rays of bone in patients with osteomalacia reveal a decrease in the cancellous bone and lack of osteoid sharpness. The classic diagnostic finding specific to the disease, however, is the presence of radiolucent bands (Looser's lines or zones). Looser's zones represent stress fractures that have not mineralized. They often appear symmetrically in the medial area of the femoral neck, ribs, and pelvis and may progress to complete fractures with minimal trauma. Bone biopsy of these areas may be needed for complete diagnosis. DXA scan may assist in diagnosis of osteomalacia.

INTERVENTIONS

The major treatment for osteomalacia is vitamin D in an active form, such as ergocalciferol. Studies indicate that large doses over a short period can correct low vitamin D status. For example, Przybelski et al. (2008) measured the serum vitamin D levels of 63 nursing home residents. Twenty-five residents had low serum levels and were given ergocalciferol 50,000 international units three times a week. After the treatment period, the mean total vitamin D serum concentration in the treated residents increased from 17.3 to 63.8 ng/mL. The researchers concluded that nursing home residents should be routinely screened to identify and treat those with low vitamin D levels to decrease the risk for fractures from osteomalacia and osteoporosis. Vitamin D is needed to adequately absorb and utilize calcium in the body.

Nurses play a vital role in educating other health care professionals about the need to screen patients for low vitamin D levels. For all at-risk patients, teach them about which high calcium and vitamin D foods to eat and the importance of adequate daily sunlight. Additional health teaching is discussed above in the Health Promotion and Maintenance section.

PAGET'S DISEASE OF THE BONE

Pathophysiology

Paget's disease, or **osteitis deformans**, is a chronic metabolic disorder in which bone is excessively broken down (osteoclastic activity) and re-formed (osteoblastic activity). The result is bone that is structurally disorganized, causing bones to be

weak with increased risk for bowing of long bones and fractures. Two types of Paget's disease can occur—familial and sporadic.

Three pathophysiologic phases of the disorder have been described: active, mixed, and inactive. In the first phase (the active phase), a rapid increase in osteoclasts (cells that break down bone) causes massive bone destruction and deformity. The osteoclasts of pagetic bone are large and multinuclear, unlike the osteoclasts of normal bone tissue.

In the mixed phase, the osteoblasts (bone-forming cells) react to compensate in forming new bone. The result is bone that is vascular, structurally weak, and deformed. Paget's disease occurs in one bone or in multiple sites. The most common areas of involvement are the vertebrae, femur, skull, clavicle, humerus, and pelvis.

When the osteoblastic activity exceeds the osteoclastic activity, the inactive phase occurs. The newly formed bone becomes sclerotic and very hard.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Because Paget's disease is often present in identical twins, an autosomal dominant pattern has been suggested. The disease has been noted in up to 30% of people with a positive family history for Paget's disease. Several complex genetic factors have been identified in families with the disease, including mutations in the:

- *RANKL/RANK/OPG* system, which is needed for osteoclast development and activity (see p. 1121 in the Osteoporosis section)
- Valosin-containing gene of complement binding protein (*VCP*), an important inflammatory factor
- Sequestosome 1 (*SQSTM1*) or *p62*, an expressed adaptor protein that can bind to ubiquitin and the atypical protein kinase C (Najaf et al., 2009).

Teach patients the importance of genetics in familial Paget's disease, and refer them to the appropriate genetic counseling resource. Ask the patient if genetic testing is desired.

Paget's disease is second only to osteoporosis as one of the most common bone diseases in the United States, affecting about one million people. The disease is seen more frequently in people ages 50 years and older and in those of European heritage. The risk for developing Paget's disease increases as a person ages, particularly in those 80 years old and older. Men are affected twice as often as women (National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Most patients are asymptomatic, and the disease may be confined to one bone. It may be accidentally discovered during a routine laboratory or x-ray examination. In more severe disease, the manifestations are diverse and potentially fatal (Chart 53-3).

Ask the patient about a history of fracture and current bone pain. Bone pain, usually described as mild to moderate, may cause the patient to seek medical attention. The most common sites for pain are the hip and pelvis, but even the bones in the ear may be affected, causing hearing loss. The pain is usually described as aching, poorly defined, deep, and worsened by pressure. It is most noticeable at night or when

CHART 53-3 KEY FEATURES

Paget's Disease of the Bone

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Bone and joint pain (may be in a single bone) that is aching, poorly described, and aggravated by walking
- Low back and sciatic nerve pain
- Bowing of long bones
- Loss of normal spinal curvature
- Enlarged, thick skull
- Pathologic fractures
- Osteogenic sarcoma (bone cancer)

Skin Manifestations

- Flushed, warm skin

Other Manifestations

- Apathy, lethargy, fatigue
- Hyperparathyroidism
- Gout
- Urinary or renal stones
- Heart failure from fluid overload

the patient is resting. Patients may report redness and warmth at affected sites. These manifestations may be related to increased vascularity and blood flow.

The pain associated with the disorder may result from metabolic bone activity, secondary arthritis, impending fracture, or nerve impingement. Arthritis often occurs at the joints (cartilage) of the affected bones, resulting from bowing in the long bones of the leg. Some patients have joint replacements as a result of very painful weight-bearing joints. Nerve impingement is particularly common in the lumbosacral area of the vertebral column, presenting as back pain that radiates along one or both legs.

Observe posture, stance, and gait to identify gross bony deformities. Because of the enlargement of the vertebrae, loss of normal spinal curvature, and lower extremity malalignment, the patient may have decreased height. Assess for kyphosis or scoliosis of the spinal column. Note any long-bone bowing in the legs with subsequent varus (bow-leg) deformity. Long bones of the arms may also develop bowing. Flexion contracture in the hip joint is often present. Any of these deformities may be asymmetric. This weakened bone is at risk for fracture from even a minor injury. All of these problems interfere with the patient's need for independent mobility.

When performing a musculoskeletal assessment in a patient with Paget's disease, pay particular attention to the size and shape of the skull, which is typically soft, thick, and enlarged. Pressure from an enlarged temporal bone may lead to deafness and vertigo (dizziness). Basilar (in the occipital area) complications can compress any of the cranial nerves and result in neurologic problems. Assess the patient for changes in vision, swallowing, hearing, and speech. Platybasia, or basilar invagination, causes brainstem (vital sign center) damage that threatens life. In some cases, the bony enlargement of the skull blocks cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), resulting in hydrocephalus.

Pathologic fractures may be the presenting clinical manifestation of the disorder. The femur and the tibia are most often affected, and fracture of these bones can result from minimal trauma. The fracture line is usually perpendicular to the long axis of the bone, and healing is unpredictable because of abnormal metabolic activity within the bone.

Although rare, bones affected by Paget's disease may develop malignant changes. The most dreaded complication of Paget's disease is cancer, most commonly osteogenic sarcoma. Increased incidence of sarcoma occurs in men in the 70- to 80-year-old group. It affects the femur, humerus, and old fracture sites and has a grave prognosis because of early metastasis to the lung or extensive local invasion. When

severe bone pain is present in a patient with Paget's disease, bone cancer is suspected.

Assess the skin for its color and temperature. In people with Paget's disease, the skin is typically flushed and warm because of increased blood flow. In addition, assess the patient's energy level because apathy, lethargy, and fatigue are common.

Other less common manifestations of Paget's disease include hyperparathyroidism and gout. Secondary hyperparathyroidism leads to an increase in serum and urinary calcium levels. In severe cases, serum calcium excess results from prolonged immobilization. Calcium deposits occur in joint spaces or as stones in the urinary tract. **Hyperuricemia** (serum uric acid excess) and gout occur because the increased metabolic activity of bone creates an increase in nucleic acid catabolism. Therefore kidney stones are more common in people with Paget's disease.

In a few cases, increased blood flow causes the heart to work harder to increase cardiac output, resulting in heart failure if not treated. Cardiac complications tend to occur only when more than a third of the skeleton is involved.

Diagnostic Assessment

Increases in *serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP)* and urinary hydroxyproline levels are the primary laboratory findings indicating possible Paget's disease. Overactive osteoblasts cause an altered ALP level. ALP can be further evaluated by alkaline phosphatase isoenzymes. The isoenzyme testing can further break ALP into three fractions—liver, bone, and intestinal. Elevated bone isoenzymes can help in a more definitive diagnosis of Paget's disease. Serum isoenzyme levels of bone ALP are used to monitor effectiveness of treatment (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

The 24-hour *urinary hydroxyproline* level reflects bone collagen turnover and indicates the degree of disease severity. The higher the hydroxyproline, the more severe is the disease.

The *calcium* levels in blood and urine may be low, normal, or elevated. The immobilized patient is more likely to have an increase in calcium levels as a result of calcium moving from bone into the blood.

Paget's disease often causes an elevated *uric acid* because nucleic acid from overactive bone metabolism increases. This finding may be misinterpreted as primary gout.

X-rays are also used to diagnose Paget's disease. They reveal characteristic changes including the presence of osteolytic lesions and enlarged bones with radiolucent, or punched-out, appearance. Decrease in joint space may be seen with arthritic changes in joints. Malalignment deformities, fractures, and secondary arthritic changes may be present.

Radionuclide bone scan may be most sensitive in detecting Paget's disease. A radiolabeled bisphosphonate is injected IV and shows pagetic bone in areas of high bone turnover activity. This test can determine the extent of Paget's disease in the skeleton. Computed tomography (CT) is useful in the detection of cancerous tumors, changes in the skull, and spinal cord or nerve compression. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may also be used for the same purpose as the CT scan.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical or surgical management may be necessary to reduce pain and promote *mobility*. Nonsurgical interventions are used first.

Drug Therapy

The primary intervention for Paget's disease is drug therapy. Potent prescription drugs are used to treat Paget's disease. In addition, simple analgesics such as OTC NSAIDs can be used to control pain.

The purpose of *drug therapy* in Paget's disease is to relieve pain and to decrease bone resorption. Management of mild to moderate pain may include the use of aspirin or NSAIDs such as ibuprofen (Motrin, Apo-Ibuprofen ♣). When the calcium level is more than twice the normal value and the disease is widespread, the health care provider usually prescribes more potent drugs, such as selected bisphosphonates. Treatment with these agents for Paget's disease requires dosages and duration of therapy different from those for osteoporosis. **Chart 53-2** includes information about some of these commonly used drugs.

Oral bisphosphonates are a first-line treatment choice for Paget's disease when alkaline phosphatase levels are at least twice the normal serum level. Alendronate (Fosamax), risedronate (Actonel), etidronate (Didronel), and tiludronate (Skelid) are given in tablet form. When oral agents are not effective, pamidronate (Aredia) and zoledronic acid (Reclast, Zometa) are administered IV. Aredia is given once every 3 months, and Reclast is given once a year as a single IV dose. These drugs are usually highly effective. To reduce the risk for hypocalcemia, patients should receive 1500 mg of calcium daily in divided doses and 800 international units of vitamin D daily for at least 2 weeks after zoledronic acid infusion unless they are prone to kidney stones. **Chart 53-2** provides additional information about caring for patients receiving bisphosphonates.

Calcitonin is a hormone that seems to reduce bone resorption and, subsequently, relieve pain. The drug often causes a dramatic decrease in the alkaline phosphatase level in a few weeks. Calcitonin is approved for subcutaneous administration in treating Paget's disease because the nasal spray has shown to be ineffective. It binds to osteoclast receptors, therefore slowing bone breakdown. The drug may be used for those patients who do not tolerate bisphosphonates. Side effects of calcitonin include nausea, flushing, and skin rash. Skin testing may be done before administration of the first dose.

Other Interventions

In addition to administering drugs, implement physical measures to reduce pain and increase *mobility*. These measures may include application of heat and gentle massage. An exercise program may be started with the help of a physical therapist. Exercise may be difficult because of pain and danger of fracture. Non-impact exercise should be used, but the patient may benefit from strengthening and weight-bearing exercises. In collaboration with the physical therapist, teach the patient about ROM and gentle stretching. Additional interventions for pain relief, such as relaxation techniques, are discussed in **Chapter 5**.

Measures to promote bone health are also important and include a diet rich in calcium and vitamin D. Nutrition therapy for bone health is described on p. 1124 in the discussion of Interventions in the Osteoporosis section.

Provide the patient with information to contact the U.S. local chapter of The Paget Foundation (www.paget.org) and the Arthritis Foundation (www.arthritis.org). The Arthritis

Society in Canada (www.arthritis.ca) is also an excellent service. These resources provide information and support for the patient and family or significant others. Nutritional instruction should be similar to information given to the patient with osteoporosis.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is starting on alendronate (Fosamax) for prevention of osteoporosis. What precaution will the nurse include in the client's health teaching about this drug?

- A. "Take with food or milk to prevent stomach upset."
- B. "Monitor the drug injection site for redness or itching."
- C. "Take the drug at night before you go to bed."
- D. "Do not lie down for at least 30 minutes after taking the drug."

OSTEOMYELITIS

Infection in bony tissue can be a severe and difficult-to-treat problem. Bone infection can result in chronic recurrence of infection, loss of function and mobility, amputation, and even death.

Pathophysiology

Bacteria, viruses, or fungi can cause infection in bone known as **osteomyelitis**. Invasion by one or more pathogenic microorganisms stimulates the inflammatory response in bone tissue. The inflammation produces an increased vascular leak and edema, often involving the surrounding soft tissues. Once inflammation is established, the vessels in the area become thrombosed and release exudate (pus) into bony tissue. Ischemia of bone tissue follows and results in necrotic bone. This area of necrotic bone separates from surrounding bone tissue, and **sequestrum** is formed. The presence of sequestrum prevents bone healing and causes superimposed infection, often in the form of bone abscess. As shown in Fig. 53-2, the cycle repeats itself as the new infection leads to further inflammation, vessel thromboses, and necrosis.

Osteomyelitis is categorized as **exogenous**, in which infectious organisms enter from outside the body as in an open fracture, or **endogenous**, in which organisms are carried by the bloodstream from other areas of infection in the body.

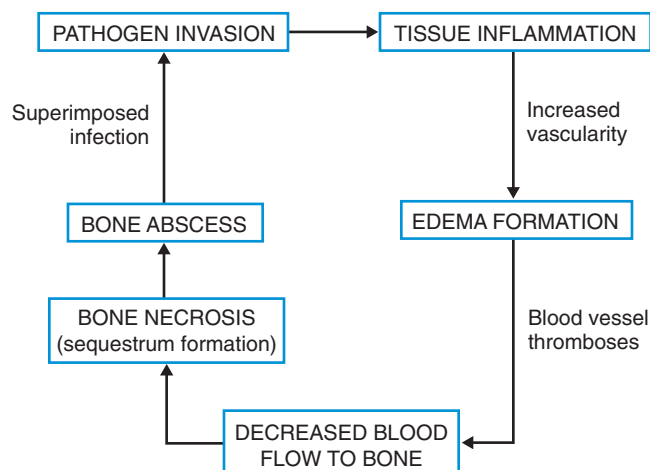


FIG. 53-2 Infection cycle of osteomyelitis.

Endogenous osteomyelitis may also be referred to as **hematogenous** osteomyelitis. A third category is **contiguous**, in which bone infection results from skin infection of adjacent tissues. Osteomyelitis can be further divided into two major types: acute osteomyelitis and chronic osteomyelitis.

Etiology

Each type of bone infection has its own causative factors. Pathogenic microbes favor bone that has a rich blood supply and a marrow cavity. **Acute hematogenous infection** results from bacteremia, underlying disease, or nonpenetrating trauma. Urinary tract infections, particularly in older men, tend to spread to the lower vertebrae. Long-term IV catheters (e.g., Hickman catheters) can be primary sources of infection. Patients undergoing long-term hemodialysis and IV drug abusers are also at risk for osteomyelitis. *Salmonella* infections of the GI tract may spread to bone. Patients with sickle cell disease and other hemoglobinopathies often have multiple episodes of salmonellosis, which can cause bone infection.

Poor dental hygiene and periodontal (gum) infection can be a causative factor in **contiguous** osteomyelitis in facial bones. Minimal nonpenetrating trauma can cause hemorrhages or small-vessel occlusions, leading to bone necrosis. Regardless of the source of infection, many infections are caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Treatment of infection may be complicated further by the presence of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) or other drug-resistant microorganism, which is very common in hospitalized and other institutionalized patients. One of the major desired outcomes in health care settings today is to reduce the number of MRSA infections from any source.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Malignant external otitis media involving the base of the skull is sometimes seen in older adults with diabetes. The most common cause of contiguous spread in older adults, however, is found in those who have slow-healing foot ulcers. Multiple organisms tend to be responsible for the resulting osteomyelitis.

Penetrating trauma leads to acute osteomyelitis by direct inoculation. A soft-tissue infection may be present as well. Animal bites, puncture wounds, and bone surgery can result in bone infection. The most common offending organism is *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, but other gram-negative bacteria may be found.

If bone infection is misdiagnosed or inadequately treated, **chronic osteomyelitis** may develop. Inadequate care management results when the treatment period is too short or when the treatment is delayed or inappropriate. About half of cases of chronic osteomyelitis are caused by gram-negative bacteria. Although bacteria are the most common causes of osteomyelitis, viruses and fungal organisms also may cause infection.

Incidence/Prevalence

Hematogenous osteomyelitis is the most common type of osteomyelitis. It occurs more often in children but is becoming increasingly common in adults, particularly older adults. Acute infection is more common in children. Chronic infection is more common in adults. Men have osteomyelitis more

often than women, related to a higher incidence of blunt or penetrating trauma. Conditions such as malnutrition, alcoholism, diabetes, kidney or liver disease, and immune-suppressing disorders increase the risk and complicate effective treatment. Bone tissues in the vertebrae and long bones are common sites of infection. The adult with a compromised blood supply is at greatest risk for chronic infection. Advanced age and concurrent disease may prolong the course of the infection for as long as a year or more.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Bone pain, with or without other manifestations, is a common concern of patients with bone infection. The pain is described as a constant, localized, pulsating sensation that worsens with movement.

The patient with *acute* osteomyelitis has fever, usually with temperature greater than 101° F (38.3° C). *Older adults may not have an extreme temperature elevation because of lower core body temperature and compromised immune system that occur with normal aging.* The area around the infected bone swells and is tender when palpated. Erythema (redness) and heat may also be present. When vascular compromise is severe, patients may not feel discomfort because of nerve damage from lack of blood supply.

When vascular insufficiency is suspected, assess circulation in the distal extremities. Ulcerations may be present on the feet or hands, indicating inadequate healing ability as a result of poor circulation.

Fever, swelling, and erythema are less common in those with *chronic* osteomyelitis. Ulceration resulting in sinus tract formation, localized pain, and drainage is more characteristic of chronic infection (Chart 53-4).

The patient with acute osteomyelitis usually has an elevated white blood cell (leukocyte) count, which may be double the normal value. In chronic infection, normal values or slight elevations may be seen.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) may be normal early in the course of the disease but rises as the condition progresses. It may remain elevated for as long as 3 months after drug therapy is discontinued.

If bacteremia is present, a potentially life-threatening complication that could lead to septic shock, a blood culture identifies the offending organisms to determine which antibiotics should be used in treatment. Both aerobic and

anaerobic blood cultures should be collected before therapy is started.

Although bone changes cannot be detected early with standard x-rays, changes in blood flow can be seen early in the course of the disease by radionuclide scanning. A bone scan, using technetium or gallium, is extremely helpful in the diagnosis of osteomyelitis and identifies most cases. In some cases, MRI may be more sensitive than traditional bone scanning in the diagnosis of osteomyelitis.

INTERVENTIONS

The specific treatment protocol depends on the type and number of microbes present in the infected tissue. If other measures fail to resolve the infectious process, surgical management may be needed.

Nonsurgical Management

To reverse *acute* osteomyelitis, the health care provider starts antimicrobial (e.g., antibiotic) therapy as soon as possible. In the presence of copious wound drainage, Contact Precautions are used to prevent the spread of the offending organism to other patients and health care personnel. Teach patients, visitors, and staff members how to use these precautions. (See Chapter 25 for a discussion of Contact Precautions.)

IV antimicrobial therapy is usually prescribed for several weeks for acute osteomyelitis. More than one agent may be needed to combat multiple types of organisms. The hospital or home care nurse gives the drugs at specifically prescribed times so that therapeutic serum levels are achieved. Observe for the actions, side effects, and toxicity of these drugs. *Teach family members or other caregivers in the home setting how to administer antimicrobials if they are continued after hospital discharge or are used only at home.*

The optimal drug regimen for patients with chronic osteomyelitis is not well established. Prolonged therapy for more than 3 months may be needed to eliminate the infection. Because of the cost of lengthy hospital stays, patients are typically cared for in the home setting with long-term vascular access catheters, such as the peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC), for drug administration. After discontinuation of IV drugs, oral therapy may be needed for weeks or months. Patients and families must understand the complications of inadequate treatment or failure to follow up with health care providers. Teach them that drug therapy must be continued over a long period to be effective.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Even when symptoms of osteomyelitis appear to be improved, teach the patient and family that the full course of IV and oral antimicrobials must be completed to ensure that the infection is resolved.

CHART 53-4 KEY FEATURES

Acute and Chronic Osteomyelitis

Acute Osteomyelitis

- Fever; temperature usually above 101° F (38.3° C)
- Swelling around the affected area
- Erythema of the affected area
- Tenderness of the affected area
- Bone pain that is constant, localized, and pulsating; intensifies with movement

Chronic Osteomyelitis

- Ulceration of the skin
- Sinus tract formation
- Localized pain
- Drainage from the affected area

In addition to systemic drug therapy, the wound may be irrigated, either continuously or intermittently, with one or more antibiotic solutions. A medical technique in which beads made of bone cement are impregnated with an antibiotic and packed into the wound can provide direct contact of the antibiotic with the offending organism.

Drugs are also needed to control pain. Patients experience acute and chronic pain and must receive a regimen of drug

therapy for control. Chapter 5 describes pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic interventions for both acute and chronic pain.

If an open wound or ulcer is present in the hospital or long-term care setting, the patient's treatment usually includes Standard Precautions for limited infections in which the wound is not draining but is covered. This practice may vary according to health care agency policy. Contact Precautions are reserved for more severe infections, particularly when the purulent material cannot be adequately contained by a dressing. Cover the open area and use clean technique when dressings are changed to prevent further contamination. The previous clinical practice was to use strict aseptic technique, but most agencies are now using clean technique for contaminated ("dirty") wounds. Wounds may be managed through the window of a cast, which must remain dry during dressing or irrigation procedures. Teach patients and families how to continue clean dressing procedures at home.

A treatment to increase tissue perfusion for patients with chronic, unremitting osteomyelitis is the use of a hyperbaric chamber or portable device to administer hyperbaric oxygen (HBO) therapy. These devices are usually available in large tertiary care centers and may not be accessible to all patients who might benefit from them. With HBO therapy, the affected area is exposed to a high concentration of oxygen that diffuses into the tissues to promote healing. In conjunction with high-dose drug therapy and surgical débridement, HBO has proven very useful in treating a number of anaerobic infections. Other wound-management therapies are described in Chapter 27.

Surgical Management

Antimicrobial therapy alone may not meet the desired outcome of treatment. Surgical techniques may be used to minimize the disfigurement that can be a devastating result of severe osteomyelitis. Surgery is reserved for patients with chronic osteomyelitis.

Because bone cannot heal in the presence of necrotic tissue, a *sequestrectomy* may be performed to debride the necrotic bone and allow revascularization of tissue. The excision of dead and infected bone often results in a sizable cavity, or bone defect. The use of bone *grafts* to repair bone defects is also widely used.

When infected bone is extensively resected, reconstruction with *microvascular bone transfers* may be done. This procedure is reserved for larger skeletal defects. The most common donor sites are the patient's fibula and iliac crest. The bone graft may have an attached muscle or skin flap, if necessary. The steps of the procedure are similar to those of bone grafting in that débridement of dead or necrotic bone is done before bone transfer.

Nursing care of the patient after surgery is similar to that for any postoperative patient (see Chapter 18). However, the important difference is that neurovascular (NV) assessments must be done frequently because the patient experiences increased swelling after the surgical procedure. Elevate the affected extremity to increase venous return and thus control swelling. Assess and document the patient's NV status, including:

- Pain
- Movement
- Sensation

- Warmth
- Temperature
- Distal pulses
- Capillary refill (not as reliable as the above indicators)

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After surgery to treat osteomyelitis, frequently check for signs of neurovascular compromise, including pain that cannot be controlled, paresis or paralysis (weakness or inability to move), paresthesia (abnormal, tingling sensation), pallor, and pulselessness. If any of these findings occur, report them immediately to the surgeon.

If the bony defect is small, a *muscle flap* may be the only surgery required. Local muscle flaps are used in the treatment of chronic osteomyelitis when soft tissue does not fill the dead space, or cavity, resulting from bone débridement. The flap provides wound coverage and enhances blood flow to promote healing. A split-thickness skin graft is often applied several days after the muscle flap.

When the previously described surgical procedures are not appropriate or successful and as a last resort, the affected limb may need to be amputated. The physical and psychological care for a patient who has undergone an amputation is discussed in Chapter 54.

For all of the surgical procedures and their recovery phases, long-term antimicrobial treatment is necessary. The preoperative and postoperative nursing care is similar to that for repair of musculoskeletal trauma and is also discussed in Chapter 54.

BENIGN BONE TUMORS

Pathophysiology

Benign (noncancerous) bone tumors are often asymptomatic and may be discovered on routine x-ray examination or as the cause of pathologic fractures. The cause of benign bone tumors is not known. Tumors may arise from several types of tissue. The major classifications include **chondrogenic** tumors (from cartilage), **osteogenic** tumors (from bone), and **fibrogenic** tumors (from fibrous tissue and found most often in children). Although many specific benign tumors have been identified, only the common ones are described here.

The most common benign bone tumor is the *osteochondroma*. Although its onset is usually in childhood, the tumor grows until skeletal maturity and may not be diagnosed until adulthood. The tumor may be a single growth or multiple growths and can occur in any bone. The femur and the tibia are most often involved.

The *chondroma*, or *enchondroma*, is a lesion of mature hyaline cartilage affecting primarily the hands and the feet. The ribs, sternum, spine, and long bones may also be involved. Chondromas are slow growing and often cause pathologic fractures after minor injury. They are found in people of all ages, occur in both men and women, and can affect any bone.

The origin of the *giant cell tumor* remains uncertain. This lesion is aggressive and can be extensive and may involve surrounding soft tissue. Although classified as benign, giant cell tumors can metastasize (spread) to the lung. Unlike most other benign bone tumors, giant cell tumors affect women

older than 20 years. The peak incidence occurs in patients in their 30s.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assess for pain, the most common manifestation of benign bone tumors. Pain can range from mild to moderate. It can be caused by direct tumor invasion into soft tissue, compressing peripheral nerves, or by a resulting pathologic fracture.

In addition to assessing the patient's pain, observe and palpate the suspected involved area. When the tumor affects the lower extremities or the small bones of the hands and feet, local swelling may be detected as the tumor enlarges. In some cases, muscle atrophy or muscle spasm may be present. Carefully palpate the bone and muscle to detect these changes and elicit tenderness.

Routine x-rays and tomography are used to find bone tumors. Tumors are characterized by sharp margins, intact cortices, and smooth, uniform periosteal bone.

CT is less useful except in complex anatomic areas, such as the spinal column and sacrum. The test is helpful in evaluating the extent of soft-tissue involvement. MRI may be especially helpful in viewing problems of the spinal column.

The health care provider uses drug therapy and surgery in combination when possible. Non-drug pain relief measures are also used. Depending on the patient's preference and tolerance, measures such as heat or cold may help relieve pain.

In addition to prescribing analgesics to reduce pain, the health care provider usually prescribes one or more NSAIDs to inhibit prostaglandin synthesis that increases pain and inflammation. Give these drugs after meals or with food to reduce GI side effects.

The most common surgical procedure used for benign bone tumors is removal. If the tumor is small, surgery may not be needed. When the tumor is very extensive, as in a giant cell tumor, it is removed with care to restore or maintain the function of the adjacent joint, most often the knee. In some cases, the knee is replaced with a prosthetic device and, less often, is fused (**arthrodesis**). Bone grafting may be needed. The collaborative care for patients undergoing these surgical procedures is discussed in [Chapter 20](#).

BONE CANCER

Cancerous bone tumors may be primary or secondary (those that originate in other tissues and metastasize to bone). *Primary tumors* occur most often in people between 10 and 30 years of age and make up a small percentage of bone cancers. As for other forms of cancer, the exact cause of bone cancer is unknown. *Metastatic lesions* most often occur in the older age-group and account for most bone cancers.

Previous radiation therapy in the anatomic area is a big risk factor. For example, bone cancer of the ribs in the path of radiation for breast cancer is fairly common.

Pathophysiology

Osteosarcoma, or osteogenic sarcoma, is the most common type of *primary* malignant bone tumor. More than 50% of cases occur in the distal femur, followed in decreasing order of occurrence by the proximal tibia and humerus.

The tumor is relatively large, causing acute pain and swelling. The involved area is usually warm because the blood flow

to the site increases. The center of the tumor is sclerotic from increased osteoblastic activity. The periphery is soft, extending through the bone cortex in the classic sunburst appearance associated with the neoplasm. An inward spread into the medullary canal is also common.

Osteosarcoma typically **metastasizes** (spreads) to the periphery of the lung within 2 years of treatment. Metastasis usually results in death.

Osteosarcoma occurs twice as often in males as in females between ages 10 and 30 years and in older patients with Paget's disease. Patients who have received radiation for other forms of cancer or who have benign lesions are also at high risk.

Although *Ewing's sarcoma* is not as common as other tumors, it is the most malignant. Like other primary tumors, it causes pain and swelling. In addition, systemic manifestations, particularly low-grade fever, leukocytosis, and anemia, characterize the lesions. The pelvis and the lower extremity are most often affected. Pelvic involvement is a poor prognostic sign. It often extends into soft tissue. Death results from metastasis to the lungs and other bones. Although the tumor can be seen in patients of any age, it usually occurs in children and young adults in their 20s. Men are affected more often than women.

In contrast to the patient with osteosarcoma, the patient with *chondrosarcoma* experiences dull pain and swelling for a long period. The tumor typically affects the pelvis and proximal femur near the diaphysis. Arising from cartilaginous tissue, it destroys bone and often calcifies. The patient with this type of tumor has a better prognosis than one with osteogenic sarcoma. Chondrosarcoma occurs in middle-aged and older people, with a slight predominance in men.

Arising from fibrous tissue, *fibrosarcomas* can be divided into subtypes, of which malignant fibrous histiocytoma (MFH) is the most malignant. Usually, the clinical presentation of MFH is gradual, without specific symptoms. Local tenderness, with or without a palpable mass, occurs in the long bones of the lower extremity. As with other bone cancers, the lesion can metastasize to the lungs. Although MFH affects people of all ages, it typically occurs in middle-aged men but is not common.

Primary tumors of the prostate, breast, kidney, thyroid, and lung are called *bone-seeking* cancers because they spread to the bone more often than other primary tumors. The vertebrae, pelvis, femur, and ribs are the bone sites commonly affected. Simply stated, primary tumor cells, or seeds, are carried to bone through the bloodstream. *Pathologic fractures caused by metastatic bone are a major concern in patient care management.* The most commonly affected areas for fracture are the acetabulum and the proximal femur.

Metastatic bone tumors greatly outnumber primary bone tumors. They affect primarily people older than 40 years. In patients with a history of cancer and local pain, bone metastasis is suspected.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The data collected for the patient suspected of having a malignant bone tumor are similar to the data needed for the patient with a benign growth. In addition, ask whether the

patient has had previous radiation therapy for cancer and determine the status of the patient's general health.

The clinical manifestations seen in the patient with primary bone cancer or metastatic disease vary, depending on the specific type of lesion. Usually, the patient has a group of nonspecific concerns, including pain, local swelling, and a tender, palpable mass. Marked disability and impaired mobility may occur in those with advanced metastatic bone disease.

In a patient with Ewing's sarcoma, a low-grade fever may occur because of the systemic features of the neoplasm. For this reason, it is often confused with osteomyelitis. Fatigue and pallor resulting from anemia are also common.

In performing a musculoskeletal assessment, inspect the involved area and palpate the mass for size and tenderness. In collaboration with the physical and occupational therapists, assess the patient's ability to perform mobility tasks and ADLs.

Patients with malignant bone tumors may be young adults whose productive lives are just beginning. They need strong support systems to help cope with the diagnosis and its treatment. Family, significant others, and health care professionals are major components of the needed support. Determine what systems or resources are available.

Patients often experience a loss of control over their lives when a diagnosis of cancer is made. As a result, they become anxious and fearful about the outcome of their illness. Coping with the diagnosis becomes a challenge. As patients progress through the grieving process, there may be initial denial. Identify the anxiety level, and assess the stage or stages of the grieving process. Explore any maladaptive behavior, indicating ineffective coping mechanisms. [Chapter 24](#) further describes the psychosocial assessment for patients with cancer.

The patient with a malignant bone tumor typically shows elevated serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP) levels, indicating the body's attempt to form new bone by increasing osteoblastic activity. The patient with Ewing's sarcoma or metastatic bone cancer often has anemia. In addition, leukocytosis is common with Ewing's sarcoma. The progression of Ewing's sarcoma may be evaluated by elevated serum lactic dehydrogenase (LDH) levels.

In some patients with bone metastasis from the breast, kidney, or lung, the serum calcium level is elevated. Massive bone destruction stimulates release of the mineral into the bloodstream. In patients with Ewing's sarcoma and bone metastasis, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) may be elevated because of secondary tissue inflammation.

As with benign bone tumors, routine x-rays and CT reveal malignant lesions. Although each tumor type has its own characteristic radiographic pattern, certain findings are common to all. Cancerous tumors typically show poor demonstration of bone margins, bone destruction, irregular periosteal new bone, and breakthrough of the cortical layer.

Metastatic lesions may increase or decrease bone density, depending on the amount of osteoblastic and osteoclastic activity. CT is helpful in determining the extent of soft-tissue damage. The patient may have an MRI for difficult-to-visualize areas such as the vertebrae.

In some cases, a needle bone biopsy may be performed, usually under fluoroscopy to guide the surgeon. Needle biopsy is an outpatient procedure with rare complications. After biopsy, the cancer is staged for size and degree of spread. One popular method is the TNM staging system, based on

tumor size and number (T), the presence of cancer cells in lymph nodes (N), and metastasis (spread) to distant sites (M).

Another staging method is to correlate the tumor grade (high or low), tumor site (intracompartmental or extracompartmental), and presence of metastatic disease (positive or negative). Staging guides the health care team in their decision regarding patient-centered collaborative care.

INTERVENTIONS

Because the pain is often due to direct primary tumor invasion, treatment is aimed at reducing the size of or removing the tumor. The expected outcome of treating metastatic bone tumors is palliative rather than curative. Palliative therapies may prevent further bone destruction and improve patient function. A combination of nonsurgical and surgical management is used. Members of the interdisciplinary health care team collaborate to plan the best approach for positive patient outcomes.

Nonsurgical Management

In addition to analgesics for local pain relief, chemotherapeutic agents and radiation therapy are often administered to shrink the tumor. In patients with spinal involvement, bracing and immobilization with cervical traction may reduce back pain. Interventional radiology techniques are used to decrease vertebral pain and treat compression fractures.

Drug Therapy. The physician may prescribe *chemotherapy* to be given alone or in combination with radiation or surgery. Certain proliferating tumors, such as Ewing's sarcoma, are sensitive to cytotoxic drugs. Others, such as chondrosarcomas, are often totally drug resistant. Chemotherapy seems to work best for small, metastatic tumors and may be administered before or after surgery. In most cases, the physician prescribes a combination of agents. At present, there is no universally accepted protocol of chemotherapeutic agents. The drugs selected are determined in part by the primary source of the cancer in metastatic disease. For example, when metastasis occurs from breast cancer, estrogen and progesterone blockers may be used. [Chapter 24](#) describes the general nursing care of patients who receive chemotherapy. Remember that all chemotherapeutic agents are categorized as high-alert medications ([Institute for Safe Medication Practices, 2008](#)).

Other drugs are given for specific metastatic cancers, depending on the location of the primary site. For example, biologic agents, such as cytokines, are given to stimulate the immune system to recognize and destroy cancer cells, especially in patients with renal cancer. Zoledronic acid (Zometa) and pamidronate (Aredia) are two IV bisphosphonates that are approved for bone metastasis from the breast, lung, and prostate. These drugs help protect bones and prevent fractures. Inform patients that osteonecrosis of the jaw may also occur, especially in those who have invasive dental procedures. Monitor associated laboratory tests, such as serum creatinine and electrolytes, because these drugs can be toxic to the kidneys.

Radiation Therapy. Radiation, either brachytherapy or external radiation, is used for selected types of malignant tumors. For patients with Ewing's sarcoma and early osteosarcoma, radiation may be the treatment of choice in reducing tumor size and thus pain.

For patients with metastatic disease, radiation is given primarily for palliation. The therapy is directed toward the painful sites to provide a more comfortable life span. One or

more treatments are given, depending on the extent of disease. With precise planning, radiation therapy can be used with minimal complications. The general nursing care for patients receiving radiation therapy is described in [Chapter 24](#).

Interventional Radiology. Interventional radiologists can perform several noninvasive procedures to help relieve pain in the patient with metastasis to the spinal column. Two types of *thermal ablation techniques*, *radiofrequency ablation (RFA)* and *cryoablation*, can be done under moderate sedation or general anesthesia. RFA kills the targeted tissue with heat using a small needle inserted into the tumor. Most patients have pain relief or control after this ambulatory care procedure. *Cryoablation* is similar to RFA, but the radiologist uses an extremely cold gas through a probe into the tumor. Although this procedure has been available for years, newer surgical equipment allows a small incision and the patient can return to usual daily activities in a day or two.

The radiologist may also perform a *vertebroplasty* if the patient with spinal metastasis has pathologic compression fractures. After making a small incision, bone cement is injected through a needle into the fractured area. The cement hardens within 15 minutes. Like thermal ablation, this procedure is done in an ambulatory care setting and the patient is placed under moderate sedation.

Surgical Management

Primary bone tumors are usually reduced or removed with surgery and often combined with radiation or chemotherapy.

Preoperative Care. In addition to the nature, progression, and extent of the tumor, the patient's age and general health state are considered. Chemotherapy may be administered preoperatively.

As for any patient preparing for cancer surgery, the patient with bone cancer needs psychological support from the nurse and other members of the health care team. Assess the level of the patient's and family's understanding about the surgery and related treatments. As an advocate, encourage the patient and family to discuss concerns and questions and provide information regarding hospital routines and procedures. Spiritual support is important to some patients. They may prefer to contact a member of the clergy or a spiritual leader or talk with a clergy member affiliated with the hospital. Assist in arranging for spiritual assistance if requested.

Anticipate postoperative needs as much as possible before the patient undergoes surgery. Remind the patient what to expect postoperatively and how to help ensure adequate recovery.

Operative Procedures. Wide or radical resection procedures are used for patients with bone sarcomas to salvage the affected limb. Wide excision is removal of the lesion surrounded by an intact cuff of normal tissue and leads to cure of low-grade tumors only. A radical resection includes removal of the lesion, the entire muscle, bone, and other tissues directly involved. It is the procedure used for high-grade tumors.

Large bone defects that result from tumor removal may require either:

- Total joint replacements with prosthetic implants, either whole or partial
- Custom metallic implants
- Allografts from the iliac crest, rib, or fibula

As an alternative to total replacement, an allograft may be implanted with internal fixation for those patients who do not have metastases. This is a common procedure for sarcomas of the proximal femur. Allograft procedures for the knee are also performed, particularly in young adults. Preoperative chemotherapy is given to enhance the likelihood of success. **Allografts** with adjacent tendons and ligaments are harvested from cadavers and can be frozen or freeze-dried for a prolonged period. The graft is fixed with a series of bolts, screws, or plates.

Although not commonly done, patients with metastatic disease intractable (not reversible) pain can be surgically treated with percutaneous **cordotomy** (cutting of the spinal nerve roots). **Cryosurgery** (cold application) may reduce pain and tumor size.

Postoperative Care. The surgical incision for a limb salvage procedure is often extensive. A pressure dressing with wound suction is typically maintained for several days. The patient who has undergone a limb salvage procedure has some degree of impaired physical mobility and a self-care deficit. The nature and extent of the alterations depend on the location and extent of the surgery.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients who have allografts, observe for signs of hemorrhage, infection, or fracture. Report these changes to the surgeon immediately.

Muscle strengthening and range-of-motion (ROM) exercises begin immediately postoperatively and continue for at least a year. After upper extremity surgery, the patient can engage in active-assistive exercises by using the opposite hand to help achieve motions such as forward flexion and abduction of the shoulder. Continuous passive motion (CPM) using a CPM machine may be initiated as early as the first postoperative day for either upper extremity or lower extremity procedures.

After lower extremity surgery, the emphasis is on strengthening the quadriceps muscles by using passive and active motion when possible. Maintaining muscle tone is an important prerequisite to weight bearing, which progresses from toe touch or partial weight bearing to full weight bearing by 3 months postoperatively. Coordinate the patient's plan of care for ambulation and muscle strengthening with the physical therapist.

The patient who has had a bone graft may have a cast or other supportive device for several months. Weight bearing is prohibited until there is evidence that the graft is incorporated into the adjacent bone tissue.

During the recovery phase, the patient may also need assistance with ADLs, particularly if the surgery involves the upper extremity. Assist if needed, but at the same time encourage the patient to do as much as possible unaided. Some patients need assistive/adaptive devices for a short period while they are healing. Coordinate the patient's plan of care for promoting independence in ADLs with the occupational therapist.

Surrounding tissues, including nerves and blood vessels, may be removed during surgery. Vascular grafting is common,

but the lost nerve(s) is (are) usually not replaced. Assess the neurovascular status of the affected extremity and hand or foot every 1 to 2 hours immediately after surgery. Splinting or casting of the limb may also cause neurovascular (NV) compromise and needs to be checked for proper placement. Assess for NV compromise as described on p. 1133 under Surgical Management in the Osteomyelitis section.

Pelvic lesions, although not common, may also be surgically removed. Reconstruction generally entails bone fusion with muscle and nerve preservation. A hip spica cast or other device may be necessary until the graft has been incorporated. The patient may need a cane, crutches, or walker for ambulation.

The major complications of reconstructive surgery, such as a joint replacement, are superficial and deep wound infection, dislocation or loosening of the implants, and rapid neurovascular compromise. Report an increase in pain or temperature or a rapid deterioration in circulation to the surgeon promptly. Chapter 20 discusses postoperative care of patients having total joint replacements.

In addition to needing emotional support to cope with physical disabilities, the patient may need help coping with the surgery and its effects. Help identify available support systems as soon as possible.

As a result of most of the surgical procedures, the patient experiences an altered body image. Suggest ways to minimize cosmetic changes. For example, a lowered shoulder can be covered by a custom-made pad worn under clothing. The patient can cover lower extremity defects with pants.

The nurse's most important role is to be an active listener and to encourage the patient and family or significant others to verbalize their feelings. Counselors and members of the clergy or spiritual leaders may provide additional assistance in promoting acceptance of the diagnosis, treatment, or, possibly, impending death. Chapter 9 provides information about loss, death, and dying.

Regardless of the prognosis, a diagnosis of bone cancer is a major stressor that causes the patient and family or significant others to grieve. Help the patient and others cope with the loss and resolve the grief. Although patients are asked on admission to a health care agency if they want advance directives, they may have chosen not to have them. If a patient has terminal metastatic bone cancer, though, ask if he or she would like to complete advance directives, like a living will. If the patient already has written advance directives, be sure that a copy is on the medical record and has been given to the health care provider.

Advocate for the patient and the family to promote the physician-patient relationship. For instance, the patient may not completely understand the medical or surgical treatment plan but may hesitate to question the physician. The nurse's intervention can increase communication, which is essential in successful management of the patient with cancer.

Community-Based Care

After medical treatment for a primary malignant tumor, the patient is usually managed at home with follow-up care. The patient with metastatic disease may remain in the home or, when home support is not available, may be admitted to a long-term care facility for extended or hospice care. Coordinate the patient's discharge plan and continuity of care with



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration; Safety

A 75-year-old widow reports pain in her right rib cage area. She had a right simple mastectomy 8 years ago and was thought to be cancer-free until this time. A chest x-ray revealed bone metastasis in several ribs. On additional testing, the patient was found to also have multiple bone lesions in her right femur and pelvis. The patient is admitted to the cancer center for intensive treatment. Her only daughter is with her.

1. The patient states that she is very angry that her cancer has returned because she thought it was cured. She wonders if she should not have had a double mastectomy 8 years ago and perhaps the bone cancer could have been prevented. How will you respond to her feelings?
2. What treatment options does this patient have to manage her bone cancer? What is the purpose of treating the cancer at this time?
3. For what major complications is this patient most at risk and how will you plan to help prevent them? (Hint: See Chapter 24.)
4. With what health care team members will you collaborate and why?
5. What will you tell the daughter about her condition?
6. What are the major considerations for discharge planning?

the case manager and other health care team members, depending on the patient's needs.

Home Care Management

In collaboration with the occupational therapist, evaluate the patient's home environment for structural barriers that may hinder mobility. The patient may be discharged with a cast, walker, crutches, or a wheelchair.

Accessibility to eating and toileting facilities is essential to promote ADL independence. Because the patient with metastatic disease is susceptible to pathologic fractures, potential hazards that may contribute to falls or injury should be removed.

Teaching for Self-Management

For the patient receiving intermittent chemotherapy or radiation on an ambulatory basis, emphasize the importance of keeping appointments. Review the expected side and toxic effects of the drugs with the patient and family. Teach how to treat less serious side effects and when to contact the health care provider. If the drugs are administered at home via long-term IV catheter, explain and demonstrate the care involved with daily dressing changes and potential catheter complications. Chapter 15 describes the health teaching required for a patient receiving infusion therapy at home.

If the patient has undergone surgery, he or she has a wound and limited *mobility*. Teach the patient, family, and/or significant others how to care for the wound. Help the patient learn how to perform ADLs and mobility activities independently for self-management. Coordinate with the physical and occupational therapists to assist in ADL teaching, and provide or recommend assistive and adaptive devices, if necessary. The physical therapist also teaches the proper use of ambulatory aids, such as crutches, and exercises.

Pain management can be a major problem, particularly for the patient with metastatic bone disease. Discuss the various options for pain relief, including relaxation and music

therapy. Emphasize the importance of those techniques that worked during hospitalization.

The patient with bone cancer may fear that the malignancy will return. Acknowledge this fear, but reinforce confidence in the health care team and medical treatment chosen.

Mutually establish realistic outcomes regarding returning to work and participating in recreational activities. Encourage the patient to resume a functional lifestyle, but caution that it should be gradual. Certain activities, such as participating in sports, may be prohibited.

Help the patient with advanced metastatic bone disease prepare for death. The nurse and other support personnel assist the patient through the stages of death and dying. Identify resources that can help the patient write a will, visit with distant family members, or do whatever he or she thinks is needed for a peaceful death. In the later stages of the disease, hospice care may be an option (see Chapter 9). Nurses working in this area of care can be most helpful in managing end-of-life care.

Health Care Resources

In addition to family and significant others, cancer support groups are helpful to the patient with bone cancer. Some organizations, such as *I Can Cope*, provide information and emotional support. Others, such as *CanSurmount*, are geared more toward patient and family education. The American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org) and the Canadian Cancer Society (www.cancer.ca) can also provide education and resources for patients and families.

The hospital staff nurse, discharge planner, or case manager also ensures that follow-up care, including nursing care and physical or occupational therapy, is available in the home. The patient with terminal cancer may choose to become part of a hospice program.

DISORDERS OF THE HAND

Dupuytren's Contracture

Dupuytren's contracture, or deformity, is a slowly progressive thickening of the palmar fascia, resulting in flexion contracture of the fourth (ring) and fifth (little) fingers of the hand. The third or middle finger is occasionally affected. Although Dupuytren's contracture is a common problem, the cause is unknown. It usually occurs in older Euro-American men, tends to occur in families, and can be bilateral.

When function becomes impaired, surgical release is required. A partial or selective fasciectomy (cutting of fascia) is performed. After removal of the surgical dressing, a splint may be used. Nursing care is similar to that for the patient with carpal tunnel repair (see Chapter 54).

Ganglion

A **ganglion** is a round, benign cyst, often found on a wrist or foot joint or tendon. The synovium surrounding the tendon degenerates, allowing the tendon sheath tissue to become weak and distended. Ganglia are painless on palpation, but they can cause joint discomfort after prolonged joint use or minor trauma or strain. The lesion can rapidly disappear and then recur. Ganglia are most likely to develop in people between 15 and 50 years of age. With local or regional anesthesia in a physician's office or clinic, the fluid within the cyst can be aspirated through a small needle. A cortisone injection

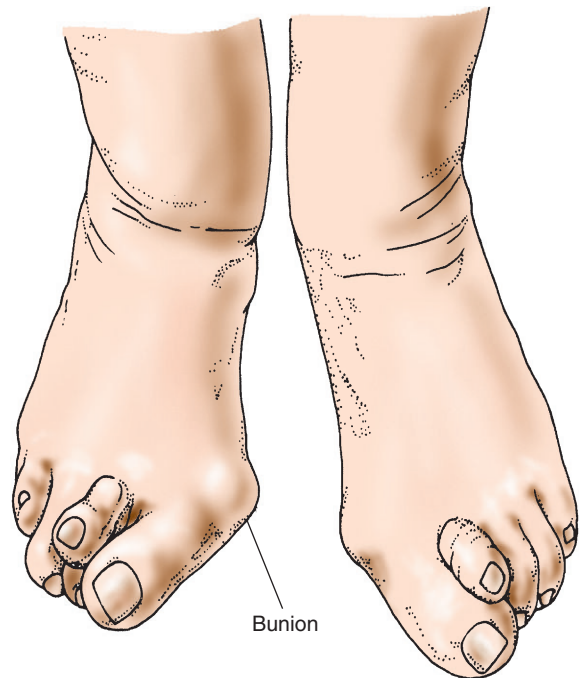


FIG. 53-3 Appearance of hallux valgus with a bunion.

may follow. If the cyst is very large, it is removed using a small incision. Patients should avoid strenuous activity for 48 hours after surgery and report any signs of inflammation to their physician.

DISORDERS OF THE FOOT

Foot Deformities

The **hallux valgus** deformity is a common foot problem in which the great toe drifts laterally at the first metatarsophalangeal (MTP) joint (Fig. 53-3). The first metatarsal head becomes enlarged, resulting in a **bunion**. As the deviation worsens, the bony enlargement causes pain, particularly when shoes are worn. Women are affected more often than men. Hallux valgus often occurs as a result of poorly fitted shoes—in particular, those with narrow toes and high heels. Other causes include osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and family history.

The surgical procedure, a simple **bunionectomy**, involves removal of the bony overgrowth and bursa and realignment. When other toe deformities accompany the condition or if the bony overgrowth is large, several **osteotomies**, or bone resections, may be performed. Fusions may also be performed. Screws or wires are often inserted to stabilize the bones in the great toe and first metatarsal during the healing process. If both feet are affected, one foot is usually treated at a time. Surgery usually is performed as a same-day procedure.

Most patients are allowed partial weight bearing while wearing an orthopedic boot or shoe. Walking is difficult because the feet bear body weight. The healing time after surgery may be more than 6 to 12 weeks because the feet receive less blood flow than other parts of the body because of their distance from the heart.

Often patients have hammertoes and hallux valgus deformities at the same time. As shown in Fig. 53-4, a **hammertoe**

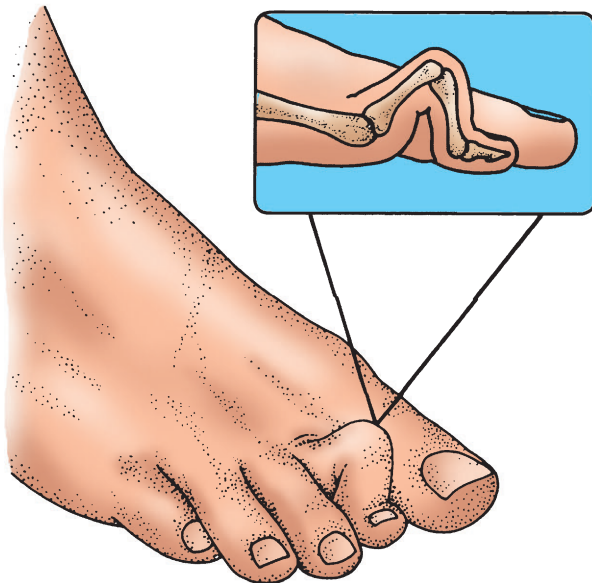


FIG. 53-4 Hammertoe of the second metatarsophalangeal joint.

is the dorsiflexion of any MTP joint with plantar flexion of the proximal interphalangeal (PIP) joint next to it. The second toe is most often affected. As the deformity worsens, uncomfortable corns may develop on the dorsal side of the toe and calluses may appear on the plantar surface. Patients are uncomfortable when wearing shoes and walking.

Hammertoe may be treated by surgical correction of the deformity with **osteotomies** (bone resections) and the insertion of wires or screws for fixation. The postoperative course is similar to that for the patient with hallux valgus repair. The patient uses crutches until full weight bearing is allowed several weeks after surgery.

Morton's Neuroma

In the patient with **Morton's neuroma**, or plantar digital neuritis, a small tumor grows in a digital nerve of the foot. The patient usually describes the pain as an acute, burning sensation in the web space. The pain involves the entire surface of the third and fourth toes. Management involves surgical removal of the neuroma and application of a pressure dressing. Ambulation is usually permitted immediately after surgery.

Plantar Fasciitis

Plantar fasciitis is an inflammation of the plantar fascia, which is located in the area of the arch of the foot. It is often seen in middle-aged and older adults, as well as in athletes, especially runners. In ambulatory care settings, plantar fasciitis accounts for 10% of running injuries. Obesity is also a contributing factor.

Patients report severe pain in the arch of the foot, especially when getting out of bed. The pain is worsened with weight bearing. Although most patients have unilateral plantar fasciitis, the problem can affect both feet.

Most patients respond to conservative management, which includes rest, ice, stretching exercises, strapping of the foot to maintain the arch, shoes with good support, and orthotics. NSAIDs or steroids may be needed to control pain and

TABLE 53-4 TREATMENT OF COMMON FOOT PROBLEMS

DESCRIPTION/CAUSE	TREATMENT
Corn Induration and thickening of the skin caused by friction and pressure; painful conical mass	Surgical removal by podiatrist
Callus Flat, poorly defined mass on the sole over a bony prominence caused by pressure	Padding and lanolin creams; overall good skin hygiene
Ingrown Nail Nail sliver penetration of the skin, causing inflammation	Removal of sliver by podiatrist; warm soaks; antibiotic ointment
Hypertrophic Ungual Labium Chronic hypertrophy of nail lip caused by improper nail trimming; results from untreated ingrown nail	Surgical removal of necrotic nail and skin; treatment of secondary infection

inflammation. If conservative measures are unsuccessful, endoscopic surgery to remove the inflamed tissue may be required.

Teach the patient about the importance of adhering to the treatment plan and coordinating care with the physical therapist for instruction in exercise.

Other Problems of the Foot

Table 53-4 lists other common foot problems and how they are managed. Although patients are usually not hospitalized for these conditions, the nurse may recognize a foot disorder and alert the physician. Even small deformities or other foot deformities can be very annoying and painful for the patient and may hinder ambulation, as well as interfere with ADLs.

SCOLIOSIS

Pathophysiology

Scoliosis occurs when the vertebrae rotate and begin to compress. The spinal column begins to move into a lateral curve, most commonly in the right lateral thoracic area (see Fig. 52-3 in Chapter 52). As the degree of curvature increases, damage to the vertebral bodies results. The degree of the curvature increases during periods of growth, such as in adolescence. Curvature of greater than 50 degrees results in an unstable spine, and curvature of greater than 60 degrees in the thoracic spine results in compromise of cardiopulmonary function.

The exact cause of scoliosis is not well understood, yet it affects about 6 million people in the United States. The process may result from some problem in the balance mechanism located in the central nervous system. Females are affected more often than males, and onset is often in adolescence. School health nurses screen children for scoliosis during the middle school years. Information about caring for children with scoliosis is found in most pediatric nursing textbooks. Scoliosis that occurs in childhood or early adolescence may persist into adulthood.

Three types of scoliosis can be described: congenital, neuromuscular, and idiopathic; the most common curve pattern in adults is idiopathic scoliosis and the cause is unknown (Voda, 2009a). Congenital scoliosis occurs during embryonic development. Neuromuscular scoliosis can result from a neuromuscular condition in childhood or adulthood, such as cerebral palsy or spinal cord tumors. Untreated scoliosis can lead to back pain, deformity, and cardiopulmonary complications.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

A complete history of the patient with spinal deformity should include onset of problem, in adolescence or adulthood, and what treatments may have been used in the past. Patients who had surgery for scoliosis during adolescence are returning with progressive, debilitating back pain from degenerative disk disease below the level of vertebral fusion. A loss of lumbar curvature, or **lordosis**, described as “flat back” syndrome, may also be present. Complete a thorough pain assessment for patients reporting back pain.

Observe the patient from the front and back, while standing and during forward flexion from the hips. Physical examination usually reveals asymmetry of hip and shoulder height, prominence of the thoracic ribs and scapula on one side, and visible curve in the spinal column. Observation from the side may reveal kyphosis of the thoracic spine. Assess for leg length differences as well.

Methods of managing adult scoliosis differ from those used for children. The adult spinal column is less flexible and therefore less likely to respond to exercises, weight reduction, bracing, and casting for correction of the deformity. In the adult, the disorder is progressive and can result in an additional one degree of deviation each year.

INTERVENTIONS

Adults with less than 50 degrees of curvature of the spine may be treated conservatively with moist heat, pain medication, and exercise. Those with greater than 50 degrees of curvature may require surgical intervention to prevent shortness of breath and fatigue, osteoarthritis, and severe back pain.

The *surgical* reconstructive procedure consists of surgical fusion and insertion of instrumentation, including plates, screws, or rods to stabilize the spine. The surgeon performs spinal fusion by packing cancellous bone chips, usually from the iliac crest, between the affected vertebrae for support and stabilization. Both an anterior and a posterior approach may be needed. If so, the surgeon may perform both procedures during the same operative day or may stage them 7 to 10 days apart. The metal instrumentation supports the spine and immobilizes the fused area during healing.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority for nursing care after spinal reconstructive surgery is to assess the patient's respiratory status and encourage deep breathing. Teach the patient how to use the incentive spirometer to prevent atelectasis.

Either an anterior or posterior surgical thoracic or abdominal approach may be used. For anterior thoracic surgery, a chest tube is in place for about 72 hours; for anterior abdominal surgery, the patient has a nasogastric tube for 24 hours. Other nursing care is similar to that for the patient undergoing a laminectomy or spinal fusion, including teaching the patient how to log roll, keeping the body in alignment (see Chapter 45).

Recognize that the patient having spinal reconstructive surgery will have a high level of anxiety and pain. Be sure to remind the patient how to use the IV patient-controlled analgesia. Assist him or her when sitting up, standing, and walking for the first time. Collaborate with the physical therapist to improve mobility and ambulation.

Teach patients and their families about home care, including how to care for the wound; body mechanics to prevent bending, twisting, and lifting; and how to adapt to achieve ADLs independently. Some patients may require home care nursing, physical therapy, or a home health aide for a short time after discharge (Voda, 2009a). Collaborate with the case manager to make the appropriate arrangements for continuity of care to meet the patient's needs.

For some patients, a return to work in about 3 to 6 weeks is realistic. Other surgical procedures may prevent the patient from performing these activities until 3 to 6 months postoperatively. Refer patients and their families to the National Scoliosis Foundation (www.scoliosis.org) for information and support services.

PROGRESSIVE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHIES

Many types of **muscular dystrophy (MD)** have been categorized as slowly progressive or rapidly progressive. The slowly progressive types are most commonly seen in adults. Most pediatric nursing books describe the care for patients with MD in detail. Four forms of MD are often seen in adults. Each type has its own distinct characteristics and causes, but all are progressive (Table 53-5).

The exact pathophysiologic mechanisms are unknown, but several causes are possible. These include:

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The major pathologic change that occurs in most types of MD is the production or faulty action of a muscle protein called **dystrophin**. The purpose of this protein is to maintain muscle integrity by sending signals to coordinate smooth, synchronous muscle fiber contraction. The coding of this protein is by a large gene that has many parts located on the X chromosome. Different mutations of the gene where dystrophin is located determine the degree of muscle weakness. Because this protein connects with other substances for final muscle action, genetic mutations of these other substances can make dystrophin fail to work properly.

The most common forms of MD are Duchenne MD (DMD) and Becker MD (BMD). Both are X-linked recessive disorders. Women who are *carriers* (able to pass on the gene without having the disorder) have a 50% chance of passing the MD gene to their daughters, who are then carriers, and to their sons, who then have the disease. These types of MD, then, affect only males. In DMD, most patients die very young and therefore do not have children. In BMD, the patient lives longer and may have children. None of these men's sons will have the disease, but their daughters will be carriers (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Refer carriers for genetic testing and counseling.

TABLE 53-5 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF COMMON MUSCULAR DYSTROPHIES SEEN IN ADULTS

ONSET	GENETIC LINK	CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS	PROGRESSION
Becker (Benign X-Linked) Dystrophy			
5-25 yr	Sex-linked recessive; expression in males	Wasting of pelvic and shoulder muscles; normal cardiac and mental function	Gradual progression; inability to walk 25 yr after onset; usually normal life span
Limb-Girdle Dystrophy			
Usually 20s or 30s	Usually autosomal dominant; expression in either gender	Upper extremity and neck muscles and lower extremity and hip muscle weakness	Extremely variable; severe disability within 10-20 yr after onset; life span shortened by 10-20 yr
Facioscapulohumeral (Landouzy-Dejerine) Dystrophy			
Usually in 20s	Autosomal dominant; expression in either gender	Facial and shoulder girdle muscle involvement	Usually benign; normal life span
Myotonic (Steinert) Dystrophy			
Birth to 40s	Autosomal dominant; expression in either gender	Muscle atrophy with multiple organ involvement (e.g., heart, lungs, smooth muscle, and endocrine system)	Usually gradual if onset in adulthood

- Poor blood flow to muscle resulting in reduced tissue oxygenation
- Disturbance in nerve-muscle interaction
- Loss of cell membrane integrity as a result of increased enzyme activity

Regardless of the type of MD, the primary problem is progressive muscle weakness. The major cause of death is respiratory failure caused by profound respiratory muscle weakness. Cardiac failure also occurs because dystrophin activity is needed for cardiac muscle contraction and maintenance.

Diagnosis of MD is often difficult because the clinical manifestations are similar to those of other muscular disorders. Muscle biopsy often confirms the diagnosis. Muscle weakness and trophic changes are characteristic of all types of MD. Serum muscle enzyme values, such as aldolase and creatine kinase, may be elevated, and electromyographic (EMG) findings are often abnormal.

Collaborative care of the patient with MD is supportive and involves the entire health care team. Physical and occupational therapy help the patient maintain as much function, *mobility*, and independence as possible. Refer the patient and family to the local chapter of the Muscular Dystrophy

Association (www.mda.org) for support services and information.

Major organ or body system involvement is medically managed, but the life span is often shortened from these manifestations of the disease. With the exception of steroids, no drug has been found to slow the progression of the disorder, although immunosuppressive agents, anabolic steroids, and growth factors have been tried.

An experimental treatment, myoblast transfer therapy (MTT), has been supported by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA). MTT involves injections of healthy muscle cells (myoblasts) taken from a donor and multiplied in a laboratory. The cells are then given to the patient with MD, where they theoretically fuse with each other and the recipient's unhealthy muscle cells. Gene therapy may also be an option for curing MD in the future.

Nursing interventions focus on making the patient as comfortable as possible and reinforcing techniques and exercises taught in the physical therapy program. The nurse's role in caring for a patient with cardiac or other organ involvement is the same as for any patient with dysfunction of these systems.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has impaired mobility as a result of chronic musculoskeletal disorders?

- Spinal deformity (e.g., kyphosis, lateral deviation)
- Bone malalignment (e.g., leg bowing)
- Muscle weakness
- Bone swelling or deformity
- Fracture
- Joint inflammation
- Flushed skin (Paget's disease)
- Fever (bone infection)
- Report of pain
- Report of weight loss

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with impaired mobility as a result of chronic musculoskeletal disorders?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Ability to ambulate (with or without assistive device)
- ADLs ability
- Body weight
- Pain intensity and quality
- Neurovascular assessment findings
- Ability to cope with decreased mobility

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

Respond:

- Provide pain control interventions, including drugs and nonpharmacologic measures.
- Collaborate with members of the health care team, including PT, OT, dietitian, as needed.
- Teach about drugs that may be needed for long-term use, including side and toxic effects.
- Explain about the need for adequate calcium and vitamin D for healthy bones and bone healing.
- Assist with ADLs and ambulation as needed, but encourage independence when possible.
- Implement measures to prevent patient falls in the inpatient and home setting.
- Encourage the patient to discuss feelings related to disorders causing impaired mobility.
- Refer patients to appropriate community resources, such as the National Osteoporosis Foundation and Paget Disease Foundation.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient's response to pain control interventions.
- Prevent and monitor the patient for falls.
- Evaluate the patient's knowledge of nutrition and drug therapy.
- Evaluate the patient's coping ability related to disease diagnosis and treatment.
- Think about what else you might do to promote mobility.
- Decide whether you need to provide alternative interventions or additional health teaching.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Coordinate with health care team members when assessing patients with osteoporosis for risk for falls.
- In coordination with the physical and occupational therapists, educate the patient and family on home safety when the patient has a metabolic bone disease, such as osteoporosis.
- Refer to The Joint Commission for information about National Patient Safety Goals related to fall injury prevention.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients at risk for osteoporosis to minimize risk factors, such as stopping smoking, decreasing alcohol intake, exercising regularly, and increasing dietary calcium.
- Remind patients at risk for osteoporosis to have regular screening tests, such as the DXA scan.
- Instruct older adults to have at least 5 minutes of sun per day and to eat vitamin D–fortified foods to prevent osteomalacia.
- Refer patients with genetic-associated diseases for genetic testing and counseling.
- Assess the genetic risk for patients who have parents with muscular dystrophy.
- Refer patients with musculoskeletal problems to appropriate community resources, such as the Paget Disease Foundation and the National Osteoporosis Foundation.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assist patients with osteoporosis to overcome fear of falling, or fallophobia, which prevents them from

socializing or going outside their homes. Collaborate with the physical therapist to determine whether ambulatory devices such as canes are indicated.

Physiological Integrity

- Remind patients taking bisphosphonates (BPs) to take them early in the morning, at least 30 to 60 minutes before breakfast, with a full glass of water and to remain sitting upright during that time to prevent esophagitis, a common complication of BP therapy.
- Most patients are unaware that they have osteoporosis until they experience a fracture, the most common complication of the disease.
- Osteomalacia, the result of a deficiency in vitamin D, can be caused by the factors listed in [Table 53-3](#).
- Remember that severe chronic pain is a priority for patients with metastatic bone disease.
- Use appropriate infection control practices when caring for patients with an open wound associated with osteomyelitis.
- For patients who have surgery for bone cancer, report postoperative manifestations of infection, dislocation, or neurovascular compromise to the surgeon promptly.
- Assess for key features of Paget's disease as summarized in [Chart 53-3](#).
- Remember that bone tumors can be benign or malignant.
- Be aware that even minor hand and foot problems can be very painful. Common foot problems are described in [Table 53-4](#).
- In collaboration with the health care team, provide supportive care for the patient with muscular dystrophy.
- Recognize that most major types of muscular dystrophy are genetic and manifest usually in childhood. Care is supportive.

Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal Trauma

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key to NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the importance of collaborating with the health care team when providing care for patients with fractures and amputations.
2. Apply principles of infection control when caring for a patient with a compound fracture.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Identify community resources about amputations for patients and their families.
4. Recognize the importance of teaching the public about ways to prevent fractures and other musculoskeletal injuries.
5. Plan discharge teaching for patients with fractures or amputations.
6. Plan care that meets the special needs of older adults with hip fractures, including interventions to increase mobility.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Describe how to assess the patient's and family's reaction to changes in body image resulting from amputation.
8. Explain how to assist patients in coping with loss of a body part.

Physiological Integrity

9. Compare and contrast common types of fractures.
10. Describe the usual healing process for bone.

11. Assess patients with musculoskeletal trauma to prioritize interventions for their care.
12. Explain the typical clinical manifestations that are seen in patients with fractures.
13. Delineate nursing care needed to maintain casts for patients with fractures.
14. Delineate nursing care needed to maintain traction and external fixation for patients with fractures.
15. Plan pain management for patients with musculoskeletal trauma.
16. Identify the risk for complications from fractures, and take measures to help prevent them.
17. Describe how to perform focused musculoskeletal and neurovascular assessment for patients with musculoskeletal trauma.
18. Develop a postoperative plan of care, including health teaching, for a patient after fracture repair.
19. Describe emergency care for people who have a traumatic amputation.
20. Plan postoperative care, including health teaching, after an elective amputation.
21. Identify common causes of amputations.
22. Identify appropriate complementary and alternative therapies for patients with phantom limb pain.
23. Describe the patient-centered collaborative care needed to manage complex regional pain syndrome.
24. Plan care for patients with common types of sports-related injuries.

Musculoskeletal trauma accounts for about two thirds of all injuries and is one of the primary causes of disability in the United States. It ranges from simple muscle strain to multiple bone fractures with severe soft-tissue damage.

Fractures and other musculoskeletal trauma impair a patient's *mobility* in varying degrees, depending on the severity and extent of the injury. These injuries also affect *sensation* because of pressure on nerve endings from edema. In some cases, peripheral nerves are directly damaged as a result of musculoskeletal injury.

FRACTURES

Pathophysiology

A **fracture** is a break or disruption in the continuity of a bone that often affects *mobility and sensation*. It can occur anywhere in the body and at any age. All fractures have the same basic pathophysiologic mechanism and require similar patient-centered collaborative care, regardless of fracture type or location.

Classification of Fractures

A fracture is classified by the extent of the break:

- **Complete fracture.** The break is across the entire width of the bone in such a way that the bone is divided into two distinct sections.
- **Incomplete fracture.** The fracture does not divide the bone into two portions because the break is through only part of the bone.

A fracture is described by the extent of associated soft-tissue damage as **open** (or **compound**) or **closed** (or **simple**). The skin surface over the broken bone is disrupted in a **compound** fracture, which causes an external wound. These fractures are often graded to define the extent of tissue damage. A **simple** fracture does not extend through the skin and therefore has no visible wound.

Fig. 54-1 shows common types of fractures. In addition to being identified by type, fractures are described by their cause. A **pathologic (spontaneous) fracture** occurs after minimal trauma to a bone that has been weakened by disease. For example, a patient with bone cancer or osteoporosis can

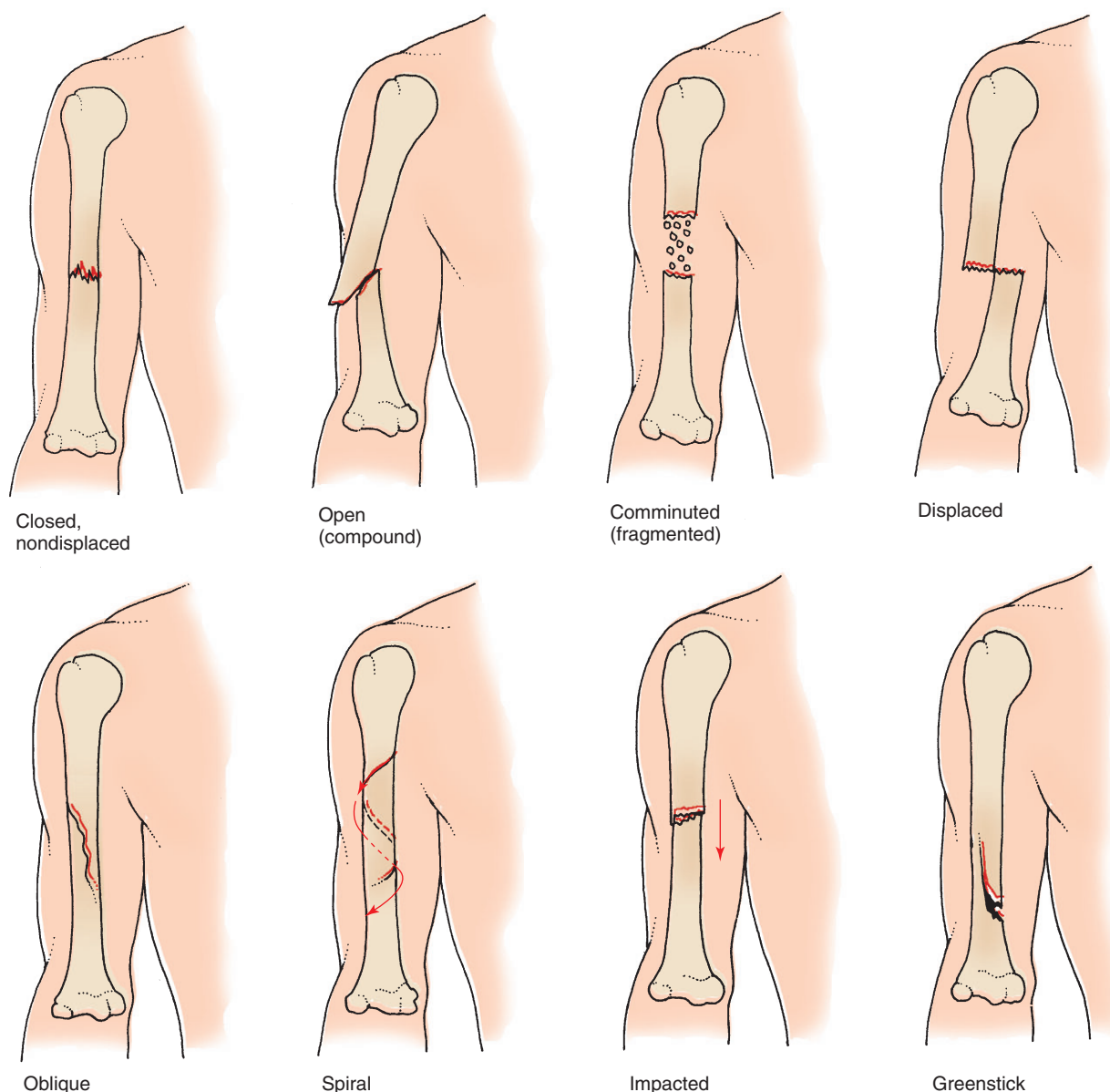


FIG. 54-1 Common types of fractures.

easily have a pathologic fracture. A **fatigue (stress) fracture** results from excessive strain and stress on the bone. This problem is commonly seen in recreational and professional athletes. **Compression fractures** are produced by a loading force applied to the long axis of cancellous bone. They commonly occur in the vertebrae of older patients with osteoporosis and are extremely painful.

Stages of Bone Healing

When a bone is fractured, the body immediately begins the healing process to repair the injury and restore the body's equilibrium. Fractures heal in five stages that are a continuous process and not single stages. In stage one, within 24 to 72 hours after the injury, a hematoma forms at the site of the fracture because bone is extremely vascular. Stage two occurs in 3 days to 2 weeks when granulation tissue begins to invade the hematoma. This then prompts the formation of fibrocartilage, providing the foundation for bone healing. Stage three of bone healing occurs as a result of vascular and cellular proliferation. The fracture site is surrounded by new vascular tissue known as a **callus** (within 3 to 6 weeks). **Callus** formation is the beginning of a nonbony union. As healing continues in stage four, the callus is gradually resorbed and transformed into bone. This stage usually takes 3 to 8 weeks. During the fifth and final stage of healing, consolidation and remodeling of bone continue to meet mechanical demands. This process may start as early as 4 to 6 weeks after fracture and can continue for up to 1 year, depending on the severity of the injury and the age and health of the patient. Fig. 54-2 summarizes the stages of bone healing.

In young, healthy adult bone, healing takes about 4 to 6 weeks. In the older person who has reduced bone mass, healing time is lengthened. Complete healing often takes 3 to 6 months or longer in people who are older than 70 years. Other factors also affect healing. Examples include the severity of the trauma, the type of bone injured, how the fracture is managed, infections at the fracture site, and ischemic or avascular necrosis (AVN).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Bone healing is often affected by the aging process. Bone formation and strength rely on adequate nutrition. Calcium, phosphorus, vitamin D, and protein are necessary for the production of new bone (see Chapter 53). For women, the loss of estrogen after menopause decreases the body's ability to form new bone tissue. Chronic diseases can also affect the rate at which bone heals. For instance, peripheral vascular diseases, such as arteriosclerosis, reduce arterial circulation to bone. Thus the bone receives less oxygen and fewer nutrients, both of which are needed for repair.

Complications of Fractures

Regardless of the type or location of the fracture, several limb- and life-threatening acute and chronic complications can result from the injury. Clinical manifestations of beginning complications must be treated early to prevent serious consequences. In some cases, careful monitoring and assessment can prevent these complications:

- Acute compartment syndrome
- Crush syndrome
- Hypovolemic shock
- Fat embolism syndrome
- Venous thromboembolism
- Infection
- Chronic complications, such as ischemic necrosis and delayed union

Acute Compartment Syndrome. Compartments are areas in the body in which muscles, blood vessels, and nerves are contained within fascia. Most compartments are located in the extremities. **Fascia** is an inelastic tissue that surrounds groups of muscles, blood vessels, and nerves in the body. **Acute compartment syndrome (ACS)** is a serious condition in which increased pressure within one or more compartments reduces circulation to the area. The most common sites for this problem in patients with musculoskeletal trauma are the compartments in the lower leg and forearm.

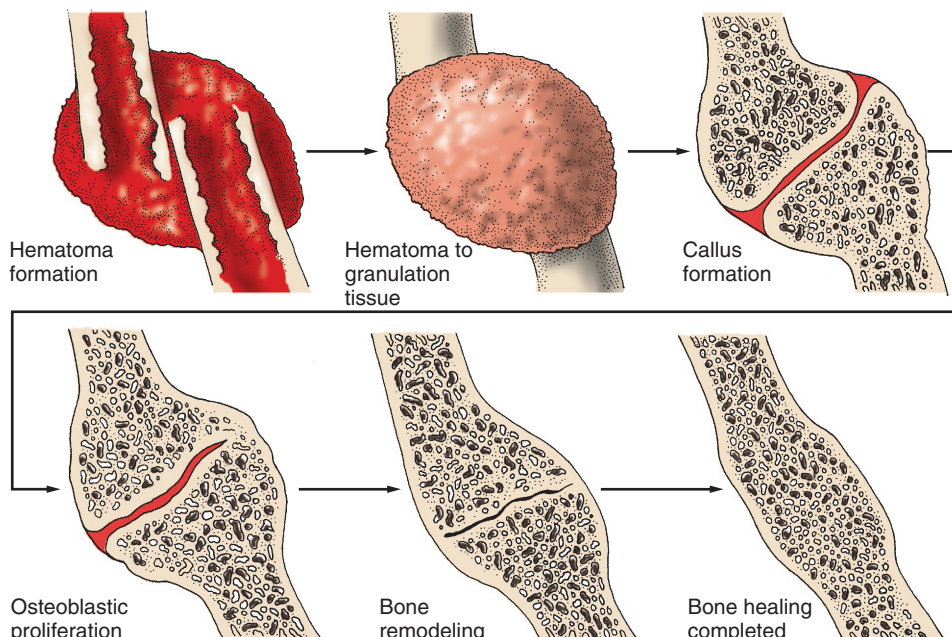


FIG. 54-2 The stages of bone healing.

CHART 54-1 KEY FEATURES

Compartment Syndrome

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	CLINICAL FINDINGS
Increased compartment pressure	No change
Increased capillary permeability	Edema
Release of histamine	Increased edema
Increased blood flow to area	Pulses present Pink tissue
Pressure on nerve endings	Pain
Increased tissue pressure	Referred pain to compartment
Decreased tissue perfusion	Increased edema
Decreased oxygen to tissues	Pallor
Increased production of lactic acid	Unequal pulses Flexed posture
Anaerobic metabolism	Cyanosis
Vasodilation	Increased edema
Increased blood flow	Tense muscle swelling
Increased tissue pressure	Tingling Numbness
Increased edema	Paresthesia
Muscle ischemia	Severe pain unrelieved by drugs
Tissue necrosis	Paresis/paralysis

The pathophysiologic changes of increased compartment pressure are sometimes referred to as the *ischemia-edema cycle*. Capillaries within the muscle dilate, which raises capillary pressure. Capillaries then become more permeable because of the release of histamine by the ischemic muscle tissue. As a result, plasma proteins leak into the interstitial fluid space and edema occurs. Edema increases pressure on nerve endings and causes pain. Blood flow to the area is reduced, and further ischemia results. Sensory deficits or paresthesia generally appears before changes in vascular or motor signs. The color of the tissue pales, and pulses begin to weaken but rarely disappear. The affected area is usually palpably tense, and pain occurs with passive motion of the extremity. If the condition is not treated, cyanosis, tingling, numbness, paresis, necrosis, and severe pain can occur. [Chart 54-1](#) summarizes the sequence of pathophysiologic events in compartment syndrome and the associated clinical assessment findings.

The pressure to the compartment can be from an external or internal source. Tight, bulky dressings and casts are examples of *external* pressure. Blood or fluid accumulation in the compartment is a common source of *internal* pressure. The injury or trauma causing the problem is above the compartment involved, which decreases blood flow to the more distal area of injury. ACS is not limited to patients with musculoskeletal problems. It can also occur in those with severe burns, extensive insect bites or snakebites, or massive infiltration of IV fluids. In these situations, edema increases internal pressure in one or more compartments.

Problems resulting from compartment syndrome include infection, persistent motor weakness in the affected extremity, contracture, and myoglobinuric renal failure. In extreme cases, amputation becomes necessary.

Infection from necrosis may become severe enough that amputation of the limb is needed. *Motor weakness* from

injured nerves is not reversible, and the patient may require an orthotic device for assistance in mobility. Volkmann's *contractures* of the forearm, which can begin within 12 hours of the pressure increase, result from shortening of the ischemic muscle and from nerve involvement.

Myoglobinuric renal failure from muscle breakdown is a potentially fatal complication of compartment syndrome. It occurs when large or multiple compartments are involved. Injured muscle tissues release myoglobin (muscle protein) into the circulation, where it can clog the renal tubules and cause acute renal failure. Although the exact pathophysiologic mechanisms are unknown, it is suspected that myoglobin has a direct toxic effect on the kidney. Damaged muscle cells also release potassium, which cannot be excreted because of the renal failure. The resulting hyperkalemia may cause dysrhythmias and cardiac arrest.

Crush Syndrome. Crush syndrome (CS) occurs from an external crush injury that compresses one or more compartments in the leg, arm, or pelvis. It is a potentially life-threatening, systemic complication that results from hemorrhage and edema after a severe fracture injury. As muscle becomes ischemic and necrotic from pressure within the compartment, myoglobin is released into circulation, where it can occlude the distal renal tubules and result in kidney failure.

Specific causes of CS include:

- Twisting-type injuries
- Natural disasters, such as earthquakes
- Work-related injuries, such as being trapped under heavy equipment such as a car
- Drug or alcohol overdose, when one or more limbs may be compressed by body weight for a prolonged time
- Older adults who fall, are unable to get up, and lie for a prolonged time

Regardless of the cause, CS is indicated by:

- Acute compartment syndrome
- Hypovolemia (decreased circulating blood volume)
- Hyperkalemia (increased serum potassium)
- **Rhabdomyolysis** (myoglobin release from skeletal muscle into the bloodstream)
- Acute tubular necrosis (ATN) resulting from hypovolemia and rhabdomyolysis
- Dark brown urine
- Muscle weakness and pain

Management focuses on preventing (1) ATN from myoglobin release and (2) cardiac dysrhythmias related to hyperkalemia. Kayexalate may reduce serum potassium adequately, but hemodialysis may be required if potassium levels remain high or kidney failure occurs.

Hypovolemic Shock. Bone is very vascular. Therefore there is a risk for bleeding with bone injury. In addition, trauma can cut nearby arteries and cause hemorrhage, resulting in rapidly developing hypovolemic shock. (The pathophysiology of hypovolemic shock is described in [Chapter 39](#).)

Fat Embolism Syndrome. **Fat embolism syndrome (FES)** is another serious complication in which fat globules are released from the yellow bone marrow into the bloodstream within 12 to 48 hours after an injury or other illness. These globules clog small blood vessels that supply vital organs, most commonly the lungs, and impair organ perfusion. FES usually results from long bone fractures or fracture repair but occasionally is seen in patients who have a total

CHART 54-2 KEY FEATURES

Pulmonary Emboli: Fat Embolism Versus Blood Clot Embolism

FAT EMBOLISM	BLOOD CLOT EMBOLISM
Definition Obstruction of the pulmonary vascular bed by fat globules	Obstruction of the pulmonary artery by a blood clot or clots
Origin 95% from fractures of the long bones; occurs usually within 48 hr of injury	85% from deep vein thrombosis in the legs or pelvis; can occur anytime
Assessment Findings Altered mental status (earliest sign) Increased respirations, pulse, temperature Chest pain Dyspnea Crackles Decreased SaO ₂ Petechiae (50%-60%) Retinal hemorrhage (not common) Mild thrombocytopenia	Same as for fat embolism, except no petechiae
Treatment Bedrest Gentle handling Oxygen Hydration (IV fluids) Possibly steroid therapy Fracture immobilization	Preventive measures (e.g., leg exercises, antiembolism stockings, SCDs) Bedrest Oxygen Possibly mechanical ventilation Anticoagulants Thrombolytics Possible surgery: pulmonary embolectomy, vena cava umbrella

SaO₂, Arterial oxygen saturation; SCD, sequential compression device.

joint replacement. It may also occur, although less often, in those with pancreatitis, osteomyelitis, blunt trauma, or sickle cell disease.

The problem can occur at any age or in either gender, but young men between ages 20 and 40 years and older adults between ages 70 and 80 years are at the greatest risk. Patients with fractured hips have the highest risk, but FES is also common in those with fractures of the pelvis.

The earliest manifestation of FES is altered mental status, which is caused by a low arterial oxygen level. Dyspnea and chest pain may follow. Petechiae, a macular, measles-like rash, may appear over the neck, upper arms, or chest and abdomen. This rash is a classic manifestation but can be a late sign.

Abnormal laboratory findings include:

- Increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Decreased serum calcium levels
- Decreased red blood cell and platelet counts
- Increased serum lipase level

These changes in blood values are poorly understood, but they aid in diagnosis of the condition.

FES can result in respiratory failure or death, often from pulmonary edema. When the lungs are affected, the

complication may be misdiagnosed as a pulmonary embolism from a blood clot (Chart 54-2).

Venous Thromboembolism. Venous thromboembolism (VTE) includes deep vein thrombosis (DVT) and its major complication, pulmonary embolism (PE). It is the most common complication of lower extremity surgery or trauma and the most often fatal complication of musculoskeletal surgery. Factors that make patients with fractures most likely to develop VTE include:

- Cancer or chemotherapy
- Surgical procedure longer than 30 minutes
- History of smoking
- Obesity
- Heart disease
- Prolonged immobility
- Oral contraceptives or hormones
- History of VTE complications
- Older adults (especially with hip fractures)

The pathophysiology and management of VTE is described in Chapter 38.

Infection. Whenever there is trauma to tissues, the body's defense system is disrupted. Wound infections are the most common type of infection resulting from orthopedic trauma. They range from superficial skin infections to deep wound abscesses. Infection can also be caused by implanted hardware used to repair a fracture surgically, such as pins, plates, or rods. Clostridial infections can result in gas gangrene or tetanus and can prevent the bone from healing properly.

Bone infection, or **osteomyelitis**, is most common with open fractures in which skin integrity is lost and after surgical repair of a fracture. For patients experiencing this type of trauma, the risk for hospital-acquired infections is increased. These infections are common, and many are from multidrug-resistant organisms, such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). Reducing MRSA infections is a primary desired outcome for all health care agencies.

Chronic Complications. Ischemic necrosis and delayed bone healing are later complications of musculoskeletal trauma. **Ischemic necrosis** is sometimes referred to as **aseptic** or **avascular necrosis (AVN)** or **osteonecrosis**. Blood supply to the bone is disrupted, leading to the death of bone tissue. This problem is most often a complication of hip fractures or any fracture in which there is displacement of bone. Surgical repair of fractures also can cause necrosis because the hardware can interfere with circulation. Patients on long-term corticosteroid therapy, such as prednisone, are also at high risk for ischemic necrosis.

Delayed union is a fracture that has not healed within 6 months of injury. Some fractures never achieve union; that is, they never completely heal (*nonunion*). Others heal incorrectly (*malunion*). These problems are most common in patients with tibial fractures, fractures that involve many treatment techniques (e.g., cast, traction), and pathologic fractures. Union may also be delayed or not achieved in the older patient. If bone does not heal, he or she typically has chronic pain and immobility from deformity.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The primary cause of a fracture is trauma from a motor vehicle crash or fall, especially in older adults. The trauma may be a direct blow to the bone or an indirect force from muscle contractions or pulling forces on the bone. Sports,

vigorous exercise, and malnutrition are contributing factors. Bone diseases, such as osteoporosis, increase the risk for a fracture in older adults (see [Chapter 53](#)). Genetic factors that increase risk for fracture are discussed with these specific health problems throughout this text.

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of fractures depends on the location of the injury. Rib fractures are the most common type in the adult population. Femoral shaft fractures occur most often in young and middle-aged adults. The incidence of proximal femur (hip) fractures is highest in older adults. Humeral fractures are common in adults; the older the person, usually the more proximal is the fracture. Wrist (Colles') fractures are typically seen in middle and late adulthood and usually result from a fall.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Airbags and seat belts have decreased the number of severe injuries and deaths, but they have increased the number of leg and ankle fractures, especially in older adults. Encourage people to use seat belts, and support legislation for improved vehicle design and re-evaluation of the federal standards for motor vehicle safety. Health teaching should also focus on other risks for musculoskeletal injury, including:

- Osteoporosis screening and education
- Fall prevention
- Home safety assessment and modification, if needed
- Dangers of drinking and driving
- Drug safety (prescribed, over-the-counter, and illicit)
- Older adults and driving
- Helmet use when riding bicycles, motorcycles, all-terrain vehicles (ATVs), and skateboards

These educational interventions are discussed throughout this book and in other texts. Fall prevention is discussed in detail in [Chapter 3](#) as part of care for older adults.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

If the patient is in severe pain, delay the interview until he or she is more comfortable. Then, ask about the cause of the fracture, which helps in developing an individualized plan of care. Some type of force, such as incisional, crush, acceleration or deceleration, and shearing and friction, leads to most musculoskeletal injuries. As a result, several body systems are often affected.

Incisional injuries, as from a knife wound, and *crush* injuries cause hemorrhage and decrease blood flow to major organs. *Acceleration or deceleration* injuries cause direct trauma to the spleen, brain, and kidneys when these organs are moved from their fixed locations in the body. *Shearing and friction* damage the skin and cause a high level of wound contamination.

Asking about the events leading to the injury helps identify which forces have been experienced and therefore which body systems or parts of the body to assess. For example, a forward fall often results in Colles' fracture of the wrist because the person tries to catch himself or herself with an outstretched hand. Knowing the mechanism of injury also

helps determine whether other types of injury, such as head and spinal cord injury, might be present.

A drug history, including substance abuse, is important regardless of the patient's age. For example, a young adult may have had an excessive amount of alcohol, which contributed to a motor vehicle crash or to a fall at the work site. Many older adults also consume alcohol and an assortment of prescribed and over-the-counter drugs, which can cause dizziness and loss of balance.

A medical history may identify possible causes of the fracture and gives clues as to how long it will take for the bone to heal. Certain diseases such as bone cancer and Paget's disease cause pathologic fractures that often do not achieve total healing or union.

Ask about the patient's occupation and recreational activities. Some occupations are more hazardous than others. For instance, construction work is potentially more physically dangerous than office work. Certain hobbies and recreational activities are also extremely hazardous, such as skiing. Contact sports, such as football and ice hockey, often result in musculoskeletal injuries, including fractures. Other activities do not have such an obvious potential for injury but can cause fractures nonetheless. For instance, daily jogging or running can lead to fatigue fractures.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with a fracture often has trauma to other body systems. Therefore assess all major body systems *first* for life-threatening complications, including head, chest, and abdominal trauma. For example, some fractures can cause internal organ damage resulting in hemorrhage. When a pelvic fracture is suspected, assess vital signs, skin color, and level of consciousness for indications of possible hypovolemic shock. Check the urine for blood, which indicates possible damage to the urinary system, often the bladder. If the patient cannot void, suspect that the bladder or urethra has been damaged. Complete assessment of these areas is described elsewhere in this text.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The most common manifestation of fractures is moderate to often severe pain. Patients with severe or multiple fractures of the arms, legs, or pelvis have severe pain. Vertebral compression fractures are also extremely painful. Patients with a fractured hip may have groin pain or pain referred to the back of the knee or lower back. Pain is usually due to muscle spasm and edema, which result from the fracture. Patients with one or more fractured ribs have severe pain when they take deep breaths. Monitor respiratory status, which may be severely compromised from pain or pneumothorax (air in the pleural cavity). Assess the patient's pain level and manage pain *before* continuing the physical assessment.

For fractures of the shoulder and upper arm, the physical assessment is best done with the patient in a sitting or standing position, if possible, so that shoulder drooping or other abnormal positioning can be seen. Support the affected arm and flex the elbow to promote comfort during the assessment. For more distal areas of the arm, perform the assessment with the patient in a supine position so that the extremity can be elevated to reduce swelling.

Place the patient in a supine position for assessment of the legs and pelvis. A patient with an impacted hip fracture may

be able to walk for a short time after injury, although this is not recommended.

When inspecting the site of a possible fracture, look for a change in bone alignment. The bone may appear deformed, a limb may be internally or externally rotated, and/or one or more bones may also be dislocated (out of their joint capsules). Observe for extremity shortening or a change in bone shape.

If the skin is intact (closed fracture), the area over the fracture may be **ecchymotic** (bruised) from bleeding into the underlying soft tissues. **Subcutaneous emphysema**, the appearance of bubbles under the skin because of air trapping, may be present but is usually seen later.

Swelling at the fracture site is rapid and can result in marked neurovascular compromise. *Gently perform a thorough neurovascular assessment, and compare extremities. Assess skin color and temperature, sensation, mobility, pain, and pulses distal to the fracture site. If the fracture involves an extremity and the patient is not in severe pain, check the nails for capillary refill by applying pressure to the nail and observing for the speed of blood return. If nails are brittle or thick, assess the skin next to the nail. Checking for capillary refill is not as reliable as other indicators of perfusion.* Chart 54-3 describes the procedure for a neurovascular assessment, which evaluates circulation, movement, and sensation (CMS function).



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

A 68-year-old woman slipped on ice on her walkway to her driveway. Her neighbor, an RN, was awakened by her scream for help and rushed to find the woman holding her deformed and swollen ankle. The nurse called 911, performed a rapid head-to-toe assessment, and stayed with her, trying to make her as comfortable as possible. The woman is alert and has no other apparent injury or problem. Upon arrival at the emergency department (ED), another nurse and you greet the patient and help her transfer into a room reserved for her.

1. What are your priority assessments for the patient when coming into the ED? What sources of evidence would you seek to answer this clinical question?
2. The patient has a dislocated ankle (distal tibia and fibula) and reports that she is still in pain even though the EMT gave her IV fentanyl. How will you respond to this patient, and what action will you take?
3. The patient's daughter comes to the ED and asks you if her mother's history of osteopenia may have caused the fracture. How will you answer her?
4. What factors may have contributed to this patient's "slip and fall?"

Psychosocial Assessment

The psychosocial status of a patient with a fracture depends on the extent of the injury, possible complications, coping ability, and the availability of support systems. Hospitalization is not required for a single, uncomplicated fracture, and the patient returns to usual daily activities within a few days. Examples include a single fracture of a finger, wrist, foot, or toe.

In contrast, a patient suffering severe or multiple traumas may be hospitalized for weeks and may undergo many surgical procedures, treatments, and prolonged rehabilitation. These disruptions in lifestyle can create a high level of stress.

The stresses that result from a long-term condition affect relationships between the patient and family members or

CHART 54-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessment of Neurovascular Status in Patients with Musculoskeletal Injury

ASSESSMENT METHOD	NORMAL FINDINGS
Skin Color Inspect the area distal to the injury.	No change in pigmentation compared with other parts of the body.
Skin Temperature Palpate the area distal to the injury (the dorsum of the hands is most sensitive to temperature).	The skin is warm.
Movement Ask the patient to move the affected area or the area distal to the injury (active motion). Move the area distal to the injury (passive motion).	The patient can move without discomfort. No difference in comfort compared with active movement.
Sensation Ask the patient if numbness or tingling is present (paresthesia). Palpate with a paper clip (especially the web space between the first and second toes or the web space between the thumb and forefinger).	No numbness or tingling. No difference in sensation in the affected and unaffected extremities. (Loss of sensation in these areas indicates peroneal nerve or median nerve damage.)
Pulses Palpate the pulses distal to the injury.	Pulses are strong and easily palpated; no difference in the affected and unaffected extremities.
Capillary Refill (Least Reliable) Press the nail beds distal to the injury until blanching occurs (or the skin near the nail if nails are thick and brittle).	Blood returns (return to usual color) within 3 sec (5 sec for older patients).
Pain Ask the patient about the location, nature, and frequency of the pain.	Pain is usually localized and is often described as stabbing or throbbing. (Pain out of proportion to the injury and unrelieved by analgesics might indicate compartment syndrome.)

friends. Assess the patient's feelings, and ask how he or she coped with previously experienced stressful events. Body image and sexuality may be altered by deformity, treatment modalities for fracture repair, or long-term immobilization. Assess the availability of support systems, such as family, church, or community groups who can help patients during the acute and rehabilitation phases needed when multiple or severe fractures occur. Active patients of any age or those who are older and live alone may become depressed during the healing process. Acute and chronic pain can decrease energy levels and may also cause sadness or depression.

Laboratory Assessment

No special laboratory tests are available for assessment of fractures. Hemoglobin and hematocrit levels may often be low because of bleeding caused by the injury. If extensive soft-tissue damage is present, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) may be elevated, which indicates the expected inflammatory response. If this value increases during fracture healing, the patient may have a bone infection. During the healing stages, serum calcium and phosphorus levels are often increased as the bone releases these elements into the blood.

Imaging Assessment

The health care provider requests standard x-rays and tomograms to confirm a diagnosis of fracture. These reveal the bone disruption, malalignment, or deformity. If the x-ray does not show a fracture but the patient is symptomatic, the x-ray is usually repeated with additional views.

The computed tomography (CT) scan is useful in detecting fractures of complex structures, such as the hip and pelvis. It also identifies compression fractures of the spine. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is useful in determining the amount of soft-tissue damage that may have occurred with the fracture.

ANALYSIS

The most common problems for patients with fractures are:

1. Acute Pain related to one or more fractures, soft-tissue damage, muscle spasm, and edema
2. Potential for neurovascular compromise related to tissue edema and/or bleeding
3. Potential for infection related to a wound caused by an open fracture
4. Impaired Physical Mobility related to acute or chronic pain

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Acute Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a fracture is expected to state that he or she has adequate pain control after fracture reduction and immobilization.

Interventions. A fracture can happen anywhere and may be accompanied by multiple injuries to vital organs. Patient-centered collaborative care depends on the severity and extent of the injury and the number of fractures the patient has.

Emergency Care: Fracture. For any patient who experiences trauma in the community, first call 911 and assess for airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs, or primary survey). Then provide lifesaving care if needed before being concerned about the fracture (Chart 54-4). If CPR is needed, ensure circulation first, followed by airway and breathing (see Chapter 36).

If the person is clothed, cut away clothing from the fracture site, and remove any jewelry from the affected extremity. Control any bleeding by direct pressure on the area and digital pressure over the artery above the fracture. To prevent shock, place the patient in a supine position and keep him or her warm.

After a head-to-toe assessment (secondary survey) and patient stabilization by the prehospital team, pain is managed with IV opioids such as fentanyl. Cardiac monitoring for patients who are older than 50 years is established before drug administration. To prevent further tissue damage, reduce

CHART 54-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with an Extremity Fracture

1. Assess the patient's airway, breathing, and circulation, and perform a quick head-to-toe assessment.
2. Remove the patient's clothing (cut if necessary) to inspect the affected area while supporting the area above and below the injury. Do not remove shoes because this can cause increased trauma.
3. Remove jewelry on the affected extremity in case of swelling.
4. Apply direct pressure on the area if there is bleeding and pressure over the proximal artery nearest the fracture.
5. Keep the patient warm and in a supine position.
6. Check the neurovascular status of the area distal to the fracture, including temperature, color, sensation, movement, and capillary refill. Compare affected and unaffected limbs.
7. Immobilize the extremity by splinting; include joints above and below the fracture site. Recheck circulation after splinting.
8. Cover any open areas with a dressing (preferably sterile).

pain, and increase circulation, the prehospital or emergency team immobilizes the fracture by splinting. An air splint or any object or device that extends to the joints above and below the fracture to immobilize it can be used as a **splint**. Sterile gauze is placed loosely over open areas to prevent further contamination of the wound.

In the emergency department (ED), physician's office, or urgent care center, fracture management begins with reduction and immobilization of the fracture, while attending to continued pain assessment and management.

Reduction, or realignment of the bone ends for proper healing, is accomplished by a closed method or an open (surgical) procedure. In some cases, dislocated bones are also reduced, such as when the distal tibia and fibula are dislocated with a fractured ankle. Immobilization is achieved by the use of bandages, casts, traction, internal fixation, or external fixation.

The health care provider selects the treatment method based on the type, location, and extent of the fracture. These interventions prevent further injury and reduce pain.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management includes closed reduction and immobilization with a bandage, splint, cast, or traction. For some small, closed bone fractures in the hand or foot, reduction is not required. Immobilization with an orthotic device or special orthopedic shoe or boot may be the only management during the healing process.

For each modality, the primary nursing concern is assessment and prevention of neurovascular dysfunction or compromise. Assess the patient's neurovascular status every hour for the first 24 hours and every 1 to 4 hours thereafter, depending on the injury (see Chart 54-3). The patient usually reports discomfort that is unrelieved by analgesics if the bandage, splint, or cast is too tight. Elevate the fractured extremity higher than the heart, and apply ice for the first 24 to 48 hours as needed to reduce edema.

Closed Reduction and Immobilization. Closed reduction is the most common nonsurgical method for managing a simple fracture. While applying a manual pull, or traction, on the bone, the health care provider moves the bone ends so that they realign. Moderate sedation and/or analgesia is often



FIG. 54-3 A universal wrist and forearm splint used for immobilization.

used during this procedure to decrease pain. An x-ray shows that the bone ends are approximated (aligned) before the bone is immobilized.

Bandages and Splints. For certain areas of the body, such as the scapula (shoulder) and clavicle (collarbone), an elastic bandage or commercial immobilizer may be used to keep the bone in place during healing. Because upper extremity bones do not bear weight, splints may be sufficient to keep bone fragments in place for a closed fracture. **Fig. 54-3** shows a wrist splint for fracture immobilization. Thermoplastic, a durable, flexible material for splinting, allows custom fitting to the patient's body part. Splints for lower extremities are also custom-fitted using flexible materials and held in place with elastic bandages (e.g., ace wrap).

Casts. For more complex fractures or fractures of the lower extremity, the physician or orthopedic technician applies a cast to hold bone fragments in place after reduction. A **cast** is a rigid device that immobilizes the affected body part while allowing other body parts to move. It also allows early mobility and reduces pain. Although its most common use is for fractures, a cast may be applied for correction of deformities (e.g., clubfoot) or for prevention of deformities (e.g., those seen in some patients with rheumatoid arthritis).

Several types of materials are used to make casts. The traditional plaster-of-Paris cast is no longer commonly used for management of most fractures. It requires application of a well-fitted stockinette under the material. If the stockinette is too tight, it may impair circulation. If it is too loose, wrinkles can lead to the development of pressure ulcers. Padding is applied over the stockinette, followed by wet plaster rolls wrapped around the extremity or other body part. The cast feels hot because an immediate chemical reaction occurs, but it soon becomes damp and cool. This type of cast takes 24 to 72 hours to dry, depending on the size and location of the cast. A wet cast feels cold, smells musty, and is grayish. The cast is dry when it feels hard and firm, is odorless, and has a shiny white appearance.

If the skin under the cast is open, the health care provider, orthopedic technician, or specially trained nurse cuts a window in the cast so that the wound can be observed and cared for. The piece of cast removed to make the window must be retained and replaced after wound care to prevent localized edema in the area. This is most important when a window is cut from a cast on an extremity. Tape or elastic bandage wrap may be used to keep the "window" in place. A window is also an access for taking pulses, removing wound drains, or preventing abdominal distention when the patient is in a body or spica cast.



FIG. 54-4 Application of fiberglass synthetic cast.

If the cast is too tight, it may be cut with a cast cutter to relieve pressure or allow tissue swelling. The health care provider may choose to **bivalve** the cast (i.e., cut it lengthwise into two equal pieces) if bone healing is almost complete. Either half of the cast can be removed for inspection or for provision of care. The two halves are then held in place by an elastic bandage wrap.

Synthetic materials for casts are much more common and include fiberglass and polyester-cotton knit (**Fig. 54-4**). These materials are lighter than plaster and require minimal drying time. Fiberglass casts are dry in 10 to 15 minutes and can bear weight 30 minutes after application. Polyester-cotton knit casts take 7 minutes to dry and can withstand weight bearing in about 20 minutes. Some health care providers may use synthetic casts for upper extremities and plaster-of-Paris casts for lower extremities because plaster casts can bear more weight for a longer time. However, newer synthetic materials are stronger than earlier ones. Synthetic casts can be bivalved as needed.

Casts can be generally divided into four main groups: arm casts, leg casts, cast braces, and body or spica casts. **Table 54-1** describes specific casts that are used for various parts of the body.

When a patient is in bed with an *arm cast*, teach him or her to elevate the arm above the heart to reduce swelling. The hand should be higher than the heart. Ice may be prescribed for the first 24 to 48 hours. When the patient is out of bed, the arm is supported with a sling placed around the neck to alleviate fatigue caused by the weight of the cast. The sling should distribute the weight over a large area of the shoulders and trunk, not just the neck. Some health care providers prefer that the patient not use a sling after the first few days in an arm cast, particularly a short-arm cast. This encourages normal movement of the mobile joints and enhances bone healing.

A *leg cast* allows mobility and requires the patient to use ambulatory aids such as crutches. A cast shoe, sandal, or boot that attaches to the foot or a rubber walking pad attached to the sole of the cast assists in ambulation (if weight bearing is allowed) and helps prevent damage to the cast. Teach the patient to elevate the affected leg on several pillows to reduce swelling and to apply ice for the first 24 hours or as prescribed.

TABLE 54-1 TYPES OF CASTS USED FOR MUSCULOSKELETAL TRAUMA

TYPE AND CHARACTERISTICS OF CAST	USE
Upper Extremity Casts	
Short-arm cast (SAC) (extends from below the elbow to and including part of the hand)	Stable fractures of the wrist (metacarpals, carpals, or distal radius)
Long-arm cast (LAC) (includes the upper arm to and including part of the hand)	Unstable fractures of the wrist, distal humerus, radius, or ulna
Hanging-arm cast (same as LAC but heavier, with added loop at the mid-forearm)	Fractures of the humerus that cannot be aligned by LAC (light traction is possible while the patient is in bed or by an attached strap that extends around the neck)
Thumb spica (gauntlet) cast (similar to SAC with the thumb casted in abduction)	Fractures of the thumb
Shoulder spica cast (the shoulder is casted in abduction with the elbow flexed)	Unstable fractures of the shoulder girdle or humerus; dislocations of the shoulder
Lower Extremity Casts	
Short-leg cast (SLC) (from below the knee to the base of the toes)	Fractures of the ankle, metatarsals, or foot
Long-leg cast (LLC) (from the mid-upper thigh to the base of the toes)	Unstable fractures of the tibia, fibula, or ankle
Walking cast (a walking device on the bottom of SLC or LLC)	Same as for SLC or LLC
Leg cylinder (similar to SLC, but the ankle and foot are not casted)	Stable fractures of the tibia, fibula, or knee
Long-leg cylinder (similar to LLC, but the ankle and foot are not casted)	Stable fractures of the distal femur, proximal tibia, or knee
Cast Braces (or Brace Casts) (Not As Common)	
Patellar weight-bearing cast (similar to SLC or leg cylinder)	Mid-shaft or distal shaft fractures of the femur
External polycentric knee hinge cast (a hinge connects the lower and upper leg and allows 90 degrees of knee flexion)	Same as for the patellar weight-bearing cast
Body Casts (Not As Common)	
Hip spica (extends from below the nipple line down the affected leg [single], down the leg and half of the unaffected leg [1½], or down both legs [double])	Dislocation of the hip; pelvic or hip injuries
Risser cast (the body jacket extends from the shoulders to beyond the iliac crests and hips, with a large opening over the anterior chest)	Scoliosis; thoracic spinal fractures
Halo cast (the body jacket contains a halo brace)	Fractures of the cervical spine

A *body cast* encircles the trunk of the body and is not commonly used for adults. A **spica cast** encases a portion of the trunk and one or two extremities. A patient with either of these casts presents a special challenge for nursing care. Potential complications related to severe impairment in mobility include:

- Skin breakdown
- Respiratory dysfunction, such as pneumonia and atelectasis
- Constipation
- Joint contractures

Cast syndrome (superior mesenteric artery syndrome), an uncommon but serious complication, may be seen in orthopedic patients who have been placed in a hip spica or body cast. Partial or complete upper intestinal obstruction results in classic symptoms: abdominal distention, epigastric pain, nausea, and vomiting. The vomiting often occurs after meals, and patients may have normal bowel sounds. Partial obstruction occurs initially from compression of the third portion of the duodenum between the superior mesenteric artery and the aorta. This can progress to complete obstruction from duodenal edema caused by continued vomiting and distention. Placing a window in the abdominal portion of the cast or bivalving the cast may be sufficient to prevent or relieve pressure on the duodenum. Management of intestinal obstruction is the same as for any patient with this complication.

Before the cast is applied, explain the purpose of the cast and the procedure for its application. With a plaster cast,

warn the patient about the heat that will be felt immediately after the wet cast is applied. Do not cover the new cast. Allow for air-drying.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When moving a patient with a wet plaster cast, handle it with the palms of the hands to prevent indentations and resulting areas of pressure on the skin. Turn the patient every 1 to 2 hours to allow air to circulate and dry all parts of the cast. Be sure to remind unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) and the family that the cast is wet and requires special handling. If the health care provider requests that the cast be elevated to reduce swelling, use a cloth-covered pillow instead of one encased in plastic, which could cause the cast to retain heat and prevent drying. Elevation of the casted extremity reduces edema but may impair arterial circulation to the affected limb. Therefore performing a neurovascular assessment of the limb distal to (below) the cast is very important.

For preventing contamination by urine or feces, the perineal area of a dry long-leg or body cast may be covered in plastic. Fracture pans are preferred over traditional bedpans because they are smaller and more comfortable. Remind UAP to take care to prevent spillage onto the cast.

Once the plaster cast is dry, inspect it at least once every 8 hours for drainage, cracking, crumbling, alignment, and fit. Plaster casts act like sponges and absorb drainage, whereas synthetic casts act like a wick pulling drainage away from

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Check to ensure that any type of cast is not too tight, and frequently monitor neurovascular status, usually every hour for the first 24 hours after application if the patient is hospitalized. You should be able to insert a finger between the cast and the skin. Teach the patient to apply ice for the first 24 to 36 hours to reduce swelling and inflammation.

the drainage site. Padding can also absorb wound drainage. Document the presence of any drainage on the cast. However, the evidence is not clear on whether drainage should be circled on the cast because it may increase anxiety and is not a reliable indicator of drainage amount. *Immediately report to the health care provider any sudden increases in the amount of drainage or change in the integrity of the cast.* After swelling decreases, it is not uncommon for the cast to become too loose and need replacement. If the patient is not admitted to the hospital, provide instructions regarding cast care.

During hospitalization, assess for other complications resulting from casting that can be serious and life threatening, such as infection, circulation impairment, and peripheral nerve damage. If the patient returns home after cast application, teach him or her how to monitor for these complications and when to notify the health care provider.

Infection most often results from the breakdown of skin under the cast (pressure necrosis). If pressure necrosis occurs, the patient typically reports a very painful “hot spot” under the cast and the cast may feel warmer in the affected area. Teach the patient or family to smell the area for mustiness or an unpleasant odor that would indicate infected material. If the infection progresses, a fever may develop.

Circulation impairment and peripheral nerve damage can result from tightness of the cast. Teach the patient to assess for circulation at least daily, including the ability to move the area distal to the extremity, numbness, and increased pain.

The patient with a cast may be immobilized for a prolonged period, depending on the extent of the fracture and the type of cast. Assess for complications of immobility, such as skin breakdown, pneumonia, atelectasis, thromboembolism, and constipation. Before the cast is removed, inform the patient that the cast cutter will not injure the skin but that heat may be felt during the procedure.

Because of prolonged immobilization, a joint may become contracted, usually in a fixed state of flexion. Osteoarthritis and osteoporosis may develop from lack of weight bearing. Muscle can also atrophy from lack of exercise during prolonged immobilization of the affected body part, usually an extremity.

Traction. **Traction** is the application of a pulling force to a part of the body to provide reduction, alignment, and rest. It is also used as a last resort to decrease muscle spasm (thus relieving pain) and prevent or correct deformity and tissue damage. A patient in traction is often hospitalized, but in some cases, home care is possible even for skeletal traction.

Mechanical traction can be either:

- Continuous, as in fracture treatment
- Intermittent, for relief of muscle spasm in other types of musculoskeletal/neurologic trauma, such as cervical nerve root compression

TABLE 54-2 TYPES OF TRACTION USED FOR MUSCULOSKELETAL TRAUMA

TYPE AND CHARACTERISTICS OF TRACTION	USE
Upper Extremity Traction	
Sidearm skin or skeletal traction (the forearm is flexed and extended 90 degrees from the upper part of the body)	Fractures of the humerus with or without involvement of the shoulder and clavicle
Overhead or 90-90 traction, skin or skeletal (the elbow is flexed and the arm is at a right angle to the body over the upper chest)	Same as above (depends on the physician's preference)
Plaster traction (pins inserted through the bone are fixed in the cast)	Fractures of the wrist
Lower Extremity Traction	
Buck's extension traction (skin) (the affected leg is in extension)	Fractures of the hip or femur preoperatively Prevention of hip flexion contractures Hip dislocation
Russell's traction (similar to Buck's traction, but a sling under the knee suspends the leg)	Fractures of the hip or distal end of the femur
Balanced skin or skeletal traction (the limb is usually elevated in a Thomas splint with Pearson's attachment, or a Böhler-Braun splint is used)	Fractures of the femur or pelvis (acetabulum)
Spinal Column and Pelvic Traction	
Cervical halter (a strap under the chin)	Cervical muscle spasms, strain/sprain, or arthritis
Cervical skeletal (e.g., halo brace, Crutchfield tongs)	Cervical fractures of the spine; muscle spasms
Pelvic belt (a strap around the hips at the iliac crests is attached to weights at the foot of the bed)	Pain, strain, sprain, or muscle spasms in the lower back
Pelvic sling (a wide strap around the hips is attached to an overhead bar to keep the pelvis off the bed)	Pelvic fractures; other pelvic injuries

Traction may also be classified as running traction or balanced suspension. In *running* traction, the pulling force is in one direction and the patient's body acts as countertraction. Moving the body or bed position can alter the countertraction force. *Balanced suspension* provides the countertraction so that the pulling force of the traction is not altered when the bed or patient is moved. This allows for increased movement and facilitates care (Table 54-2).

The two most common types of traction are skin and skeletal traction. *Skin traction* involves the use of a Velcro boot (Buck's traction) (Fig. 54-5), belt, or halter, which is usually secured around the affected leg. The primary purpose of skin traction is to decrease painful muscle spasms that accompany hip fractures. The weight is used as a pulling force and is limited to 5 to 10 pounds (2.3 to 4.5 kg) to prevent injury to the skin.

In *skeletal traction*, pins, wires, tongs (e.g., Crutchfield), or screws are surgically inserted directly into bone. These allow the use of longer traction time and heavier weights—usually 15 to 30 pounds (6.8 to 13.6 kg). Skeletal traction aids in bone



FIG. 54-5 Skin traction with a hook-and-loop fastener (Velcro) boot, commonly used for hip fractures.

realignment. Pin site care is an important part of nursing management to prevent infection.

The nurse may set up or assist in the setup of traction if specially educated. In larger or specialty hospitals or units, orthopedic technicians or physician assistants often set up traction. Once traction is applied, maintain the correct balance between traction pull and countertraction force.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When patients are in traction, weights usually are not removed without a prescription. They should not be lifted manually or allowed to rest on the floor. Weights should be freely hanging at all times. Teach this important point to UAP on the unit, to other personnel such as those in the radiology department, and to visitors. Inspect the skin at least every 8 hours for signs of irritation or inflammation. When possible, remove the belt or boot that is used for skin traction every 8 hours to inspect under the device.

Check traction equipment frequently to ensure its proper functioning. Inspect all ropes, knots, and pulleys at least every 8 to 12 hours for loosening, fraying, and positioning. Check the weight for consistency with the health care provider's prescription. Sometimes one of the weights is accidentally removed by a staff member or visitor who bumps into it. Replace the weights if they are not correct, and notify the health care provider or orthopedic technician.

If the patient reports severe pain from muscle spasm, the weights may be too heavy or the patient may need realignment. Report the pain to the health care provider if body realignment fails to reduce the discomfort. Assess neurovascular status of the affected body part to detect circulatory compromise and tissue damage. The circulation is usually monitored every hour for the first 24 hours after traction is applied and every 4 hours thereafter.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client has a new synthetic arm cast for a radial fracture. What health care teaching does the nurse include for the client's home care?

Select all that apply.

- A. "Apply heat on the cast for the first 24 hours to increase blood flow for healing."
- B. "Keep your arm elevated, preferably above your heart, as much as possible."
- C. "Report severe numbness or inability to move your fingers to your physician."
- D. "Take your pain medication as needed according to the prescription directions."
- E. "Don't cover the cast with anything because it will stay wet for 24 hours."

Drug Therapy. After fracture treatment, the patient often has pain for a prolonged time during the healing process. The health care provider commonly prescribes opioid and non-opioid analgesics, anti-inflammatory drugs, and muscle relaxants.

For patients with chronic, severe pain, opioid and non-opioid drugs are alternated or given together to manage pain both centrally in the brain and peripherally at the site of injury. For severe or multiple fractures, patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with morphine, fentanyl, or other drug is used. *Meperidine (Demerol) should never be used for older adults because it has toxic metabolites that can cause seizures and other complications. Many hospitals no longer use this drug for patients of any age. Oxycodone and oxycodone with acetaminophen (Percocet) are common oral opioid drugs that are very effective for most patients with fracture pain. NSAIDs are given to decrease associated tissue inflammation.*

For patients who have less severe injury, the analgesic may be given on an as-needed basis. Collaborate with the patient regarding the best times for the strong pain relievers to be given (e.g., before a complex dressing change, after physical therapy sessions, and at bedtime). Assess the effectiveness of the analgesic and its side effects. Constipation is a common side effect of opioid therapy, especially for older adults. Assess for frequency of bowel movements, and administer stool softeners as needed. Encourage fluids and activity as tolerated. **Chapter 5** discusses the various methods of pain management, including epidural analgesia and patient-controlled analgesia.

Some patients experience a long-term, intense burning pain and edema that are associated with *complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS)*, formerly called *reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD)*. This syndrome often results from fractures and other musculoskeletal trauma and is discussed on p. 1168 later in this chapter.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. With long-term, severe pain, the patient cannot depend solely on drugs for relief. Recommend temporary pain relief measures, such as ice or heat, depending on the cause of the pain. If swelling causes pressure on the affected area, ice and elevation of the affected body part may be appropriate. Teach the patient to plan activities that allow for rest and quiet periods. Some patients like soft music playing while resting. Muscle spasms are best relieved by application of heat and massage. Other physical measures include a warm, soothing bath, a back rub, and the use of therapeutic touch.



FIG. 54-6 The Hex-Fix external fixation system for tibia-fibula fractures.

If these measures are not effective in reducing pain, distraction, imagery, or music therapy may be used as an alternative. Teach the patient relaxation techniques, such as deep breathing, for use during periods of severe pain. [Chapters 2 and 5](#) discuss these techniques in detail.

Surgical Management. For some types of fractures, closed reduction is not appropriate or sufficient. Surgical intervention may be needed to realign the bone for the healing process.

Preoperative Care. Teach the patient and family what to expect during and after the surgery. The preoperative care for a patient undergoing orthopedic surgery is similar to that for anyone having surgery with general or epidural anesthesia. (See [Chapter 16](#) for a thorough discussion of preoperative nursing care.)

Operative Procedures. Open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) is one of the most common methods of reducing and immobilizing a fracture. External fixation with closed reduction is used when patients have soft-tissue injury (open fracture). Although nurses do not decide which surgical technique is used, understanding the procedures enhances patient teaching and care.

Because ORIF permits early mobilization, it is often the preferred surgical method. **Open reduction** allows the surgeon to directly view the fracture site. **Internal fixation** uses metal pins, screws, rods, plates, or prostheses to immobilize the fracture during healing. The surgeon makes one or more incisions to gain access to the broken bone(s) and implants one or more devices into bone tissue after each fracture is reduced. A cast, boot, or splint is placed to maintain immobilization during the healing process.

After the bone achieves union, the metal hardware may be removed, depending on the location and type of fracture. Hardware is removed most frequently in ankle fractures, depending on the severity of the injury. If the metal implants are not bothersome, they may remain in place. Specific types of internal fixation devices are discussed later in the Fractures of Specific Sites section.

An alternative modality for the management of fractures is the external fixation apparatus, as shown in [Fig. 54-6](#). **External fixation** is a system in which pins or wires are inserted through the skin and affected bone and then connected to a rigid external frame. The system may be used for

upper or lower extremity fractures or for fractures of the pelvis, especially for open fractures when wound management is needed. After a fixator is removed, the patient may be placed in a cast or splint until healing is complete.

External fixation has several advantages over other surgical techniques:

- There is minimal blood loss compared with internal fixation.
- The device allows early ambulation and exercise of the affected body part while relieving pain.
- The device maintains alignment in closed fractures that will not maintain position in a cast and stabilizes comminuted fractures that require bone grafting.

In open fractures, in which skin and tissue trauma accompany the fracture, the device permits easy access to the wound while the bone heals. This method is usually preferred over the use of a window in a cast for wound care.

A disadvantage of external fixation is an increased risk for pin site infection. Pin site infections can lead to osteomyelitis, which is serious and difficult to treat (see [Chapter 53](#)).

Postoperative Care. The postoperative care for a patient undergoing ORIF or external fixation is similar to that provided for any patient undergoing surgery (see [Chapter 18](#)). Because bone is a vascular, dynamic body tissue, the patient is at risk for complications specific to fractures and musculoskeletal surgery. IV ketorolac (Toradol) is often given in the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) or soon after discharge to the post-surgical area to reduce inflammation and pain. Aggressive pain management starts as soon as possible after surgery to prevent the development of chronic pain and promote early mobility.

Additional information about postoperative care is found beginning on p. 1159 in the Fractures of Specific Sites section. Depending on the fractures that are repaired, some ORIF procedures are performed as same-day surgeries. Patients stay in the hospital up to 23 hours after surgery.

For patients with an **external fixator**, pay particular attention to the pin sites for signs of inflammation or infection. In the first 48 to 72 hours, *clear* fluid drainage or weeping is expected. Although no standardized method or evidence-based protocol for pin care has been established, recommendations have been made based on the evidence available regarding pin site care. Because the pins go through the skin and into bone, the risk for infection is high. Monitor the pin sites at least every 8 to 12 hours for drainage, color, odor, and severe redness, which indicate inflammation and possible infection. Follow agency policy for how to clean the pin site areas, and ensure that it follows the evidence-based guidelines from the National Association of Orthopaedic Nurses (www.naon.org) (Holmes & Brown, 2005).

The patient with an external fixator may have a disturbed body image. The frame may be large and bulky, and the affected area may have massive tissue damage with dressings. Be sensitive to this possibility in planning care. Teach about alterations to clothing that may be required while the fixator is in place.

The Ilizarov technique of circular external fixation is sometimes used to treat new fractures (closed, comminuted fractures and open fractures with bone loss), as well as malunion or nonunion of fractures. It may also be used to treat congenital bone deformities, especially in children and “little people” (e.g., dwarfs).

The circular external fixation device is used to gently pull apart the cortex of the bone and stimulate new bone growth. Unlike the traditional fixator, the Ilizarov external fixator promotes rotation, angulation, lengthening, or widening of bone to correct bony defects and allows for healing of any soft-tissue defect. The nursing care associated with this device is similar to the care of the patient with other external fixation systems with one major exception. If the device is being used for filling bone gaps using bone transport or distraction, teach the patient how to manually turn the four-sided nuts (also called *clickers*) up to four times a day. Daily distraction rates vary, but 1 mm daily is common. Screening and teaching are particularly important because the patient adjusts and cares for the apparatus over a long period of up to 6 months to 1 year. Pain control is a priority outcome for patients using this device.

Procedures for Nonunion. Some management techniques are not successful because the bone does not heal. Several additional options are available to the physician to promote bone union, such as electrical bone stimulation, bone grafting, and ultrasound fracture treatment.

For selected patients, *electrical bone stimulation* may be successful. This procedure is based on research showing that bone has electrical properties that are used in healing. The exact mechanism of action is unknown. A noninvasive, external **electrical bone stimulation** system delivers a small continuous electrical charge directed toward the non-healed bone. There are no known risks with this system, although patients with pacemakers cannot use this device on an arm. Implanted direct-current stimulators are placed directly in the fracture site and have no external apparatus. Both systems require several months of treatment.

Another method of treating nonunion is *bone grafting*. A bone graft may also replace diseased bone or increase bone tissue for joint replacement. In most cases, chips of bone are taken from the iliac crest or other site and are packed or wired between the bone ends to facilitate union. Allografts from cadavers may also be used. These grafts are frozen or freeze-dried and stored under sterile conditions in a bone bank.

Bone banking from living donors is becoming increasingly popular. If qualified, patients undergoing total hip replacement may donate their femoral heads to the bank for later use as bone grafts for others. Careful screening ensures that the bone is healthy and that the donor has no communicable disease. The bone cannot be donated without written consent.

One of the newest modalities for fracture healing is **low-intensity pulsed ultrasound** (Exogen therapy). Used for slow-healing fractures or for new fractures as an alternative to surgery, ultrasound treatment has had excellent results. The patient applies the treatment for about 20 minutes each day. It has no contraindications or adverse effects.

Physical Therapy. Many patients with musculoskeletal trauma, including fractures, are referred by their health care provider for rehabilitation therapy with a physical therapist (PT). The timing for this referral depends on the nature, severity, and treatment modality of the fracture(s).

For example, some patients who have an ORIF for one or more ankle fractures may begin therapy when the incisional staples or Steri-Strips are removed and an orthopedic knee boot is fitted. Based on the initial evaluation, the PT performs gentle manipulative exercises to increase range of motion.

The therapist may also begin to help the patient with laterality, a concept to help the brain identify the injured foot from the uninjured foot. Computer programs and mirror-box therapy can help reprogram the brain as part of cognitive retraining. In mirror-box therapy for an injured foot, the patient covers his or her affected foot while looking at and moving the uninjured foot in front of the mirror. The brain perceives the foot in the mirror as the injured foot.

Stimulation by touch also helps the brain acknowledge the injured foot. The PT teaches the patient to have someone frequently touch the injured area and use various materials and objects against the skin to desensitize it.

When weight bearing begins about 6 weeks after surgery, the PT teaches the patient how to begin with toe-touch or partial weight bearing using crutches or a walker. Muscle strengthening exercises of the affected leg help with ambulation because atrophy begins shortly after injury.

The PT also assists with pain control and edema reduction by using ice/heat packs, electrical muscle stimulation (“e-stim”), and special treatments such as dexamethasone iontophoresis. **Iontophoresis** is a method for absorbing dexamethasone, a synthetic steroid, through the skin near the painful area to decrease inflammation and edema. A small device delivers a minute amount of electricity via electrodes that are placed on the skin. The patient may describe the sensation as a pinch or slight sting. The current increases the ability of the skin to absorb the drug from a topical patch into the affected soft tissue.

The success of rehabilitation is affected by the patient’s motivation and willingness to perform prescribed exercises and activities between PT visits. Rehabilitation for ankle surgery, for example, may take several months, depending on the severity of the injury and the age and general health condition of the patient.

Preventing and Monitoring for Neurovascular Compromise

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a fracture is expected to have no compromise in neurovascular status as evidenced by adequate circulation, movement, and sensation (CMS). If severe compromise occurs, the patient is expected to have early and prompt emergency treatment to prevent severe tissue damage.

Interventions. Perform neurovascular (NV) assessments (also known as “circ checks” or CMS assessments) frequently before and after fracture treatment. Patients who have extremity casts, splints with elastic bandage wraps, and open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) or external fixation are especially at risk for NV compromise. If blood flow to the distal extremity is impaired, the patient reports increased pain and decreased sensation and movement. If these symptoms are allowed to progress, patients are at risk for acute compartment syndrome (ACS).

Early recognition of the signs and symptoms of ACS can prevent loss of function or loss of a limb. Identify patients who may be at risk, and monitor them closely. ACS can begin in 6 to 8 hours after an injury or take up to 2 days to appear. If it is suspected, notify the health care provider immediately, and if possible, implement interventions to relieve the pressure. For example, for the patient with tight, bulky dressings, loosen the bandage or tape. If the patient has a cast, follow agency protocol about who may cut the cast.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Monitor for early signs of ACS. Assess for the “six Ps” including **p**ain, **p**ressure, **p**aralysis, **p**aresthesia, **p**allor, and **p**ulselessness (rare). Pain is increased even with passive motion and may seem out of proportion to the degree of injury. Analgesics that had controlled pain become less effective. Numbness and tingling or paresthesias are often one of the first signs of the problem. The affected extremity then becomes pale and cool as a result of decreased arterial perfusion to the affected area. Capillary refill is an important assessment of perfusion but may not be reliable in an older adult because of arterial insufficiency. Losses of movement and function and decreased pulses or pulselessness are late signs of ACS! Fortunately, ACS is not common, but it creates an emergency situation when it does occur.

In a few cases, compartment pressure may be monitored on a one-time basis with a handheld device with a digital display or pressure can be monitored continuously. Monitoring is recommended for comatose or unresponsive high-risk patients with multiple trauma and fractures.

If ACS is verified, the surgeon may perform a **fasciotomy**, or opening in the fascia, by making an incision through the skin and subcutaneous tissues into the fascia of the affected compartment. This procedure relieves the pressure and restores circulation to the affected area. No consensus exists on what pressure requires fasciotomy (normal is 0 to 8 mm Hg). Compartment pressures must be considered in relation to the patient’s hemodynamic status. After fasciotomy, the open wound is packed and dressed daily or more often until secondary closure occurs, usually in 4 to 5 days, depending on the patient’s healing ability. At that time, the surgeon usually débrides the wound and may apply a skin graft to promote healing.

Preventing Infection

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a fracture is expected to be free of wound or bone infection as evidenced by no fever, no increase in white blood cell count, and negative wound culture (if wound is present).

Interventions. When caring for a patient with an open fracture, use clean or aseptic technique for dressing changes and wound irrigations. Check agency policy for specific protocols. *Immediately notify the health care provider if you observe inflammation and purulent drainage.* Other infections, such as pneumonia and urinary tract infection, may occur several days after the fracture. Monitor the patient’s vital signs every 4 to 8 hours because increases in temperature and pulse often indicate systemic infection.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults may not have a temperature elevation even in the presence of severe infection. An acute onset of confusion (delirium) often suggests an infection in the older adult patient.

For most patients with an open fracture, the health care provider prescribes one or more broad-spectrum antibiotics prophylactically and performs surgical débridement of any wounds as soon as possible after the injury. First-generation cephalosporins, clindamycin (Cleocin), and ciprofloxacin (Cipro) are commonly used. In addition to systemic antibiotics, local antibiotic therapy through wound irrigation is commonly prescribed, especially during débridement.

A very effective wound therapy is the vacuum-assisted closure (VAC) system as a method of increasing the rate of wound healing for open fractures. This device allows quicker wound closure, which decreases the risk for infection.

When the bone is surgically repaired, hardware and/or bone grafts have typically been implanted. However, they are limited in their use. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the use of recombinant human bone morphogenetic protein-2 (rhBMP-2) for tibial and spinal fractures. This implanted genetically engineered substance increases wound healing, decreases hardware failure, and decreases the risk for infection.

Improving Physical Mobility

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with a fracture is expected to increase physical mobility and be free of complications associated with impaired mobility. The patient is also expected to move purposefully in his or her own environment independently with or without an ambulatory device unless restricted by traction or other modality.

Interventions. The interventions necessary for this diagnosis can be grouped into two types: those that help increase mobility and those that prevent complications of impaired mobility.

Promoting Mobility. The use of crutches or a walker increases mobility and assists in ambulation. The patient may progress to using a walker or cane after crutches.

Crutches are the most commonly used ambulatory aid for many types of lower extremity musculoskeletal trauma (e.g., fractures, sprains, amputations). In most agencies, the physical therapist or emergency department/ambulatory care nurse fits the patient for crutches and teaches him or her how to ambulate with them. Reinforce those instructions, and evaluate whether the patient is using the crutches correctly.

Walking with crutches requires strong arm muscles, balance, and coordination. For this reason, crutches are not often used for older adults. Walkers and canes are preferred for the older adult. Crutches can cause upper extremity bursitis or axillary nerve damage if they are not fitted or used correctly. For that reason, the top of each crutch is padded. To prevent pressure on the axillary nerve, there should be two to three finger breadths between the axilla and the top of the crutch when the crutch tip is at least 6 inches (15 cm) diagonally in front of the foot. The crutch is adjusted so that the elbow is flexed no more than 30 degrees when the palm is on the handle (Fig. 54-7). The distal tips of each crutch are rubber to prevent slipping.

There are several types of gaits for walking with crutches. The most common one for musculoskeletal injury is the three-point gait, which allows little weight bearing on the affected leg. The procedure for these gaits is discussed in fundamentals of nursing books.

A **walker** is most often used by the older patient who needs additional support for balance. The physical therapist assesses the strength of the upper extremities and the unaffected leg. Strength is improved with prescribed exercises as needed.

A **cane** is sometimes used if the patient needs only minimal support for an affected leg. The straight cane offers the least support. A hemi-cane or quad-cane provides a broader base for the cane and therefore more support. The cane is placed on the *unaffected* side and should create no more than 30 degrees of flexion of the elbow. The top of the cane should



FIG. 54-7 Assisting the patient with crutch walking. Note how the therapist guards the patient and how the patient's elbows are at no more than 30 degrees of flexion.

be parallel to the greater trochanter of the femur or styloid of the wrist. [Chapter 8](#) describes these ambulatory devices in more detail.

Preventing Complications of Immobility. The nurse plays a vital role in preventing and assessing for complications in immobilized patients with fractures. Additional information about nursing care for preventing problems associated with immobility is found in [Chapter 8](#).

Community-Based Care

The patient with an *uncomplicated* fracture is usually discharged to home from the emergency department or urgent care center. Older adults with hip or other fractures or patients with multiple traumas are hospitalized and then transferred to home, a rehabilitation setting, or a long-term care facility for rehabilitation. Collaborate with the case manager or the discharge planner in the hospital to ensure continuity of care. Be sure to communicate the plan of care clearly to the health care agency receiving the patient.

Home Care Management

If the patient is discharged to home, the nurse, therapist, or case manager (CM) may assess the home environment for structural barriers to mobility, such as stairs. Be sure that the patient has easy access to the bathroom. Ask about scatter rugs, waxed floors, and walkway areas that could increase the risk for falls. If the patient needs to use a wheelchair or ambulatory aid, make sure that he or she can use it safely and that there is room in the house to ambulate with these devices. The physical therapist may teach the patient how to use stairs, but older adults or those using crutches may experience difficulty performing this task. Depending on the age and condition of the patient, a home health care nurse may make one or two visits to check that the home is safe and that the

CHART 54-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Care of the Extremity After Cast Removal

- Remove scaly, dead skin carefully by soaking; do not scrub.
- Move the extremity carefully. Expect discomfort, weakness, and decreased range of motion.
- Support the extremity with pillows or your orthotic device until strength and movement return.
- Exercise slowly as instructed by your physical therapist.
- Wear support stockings or elastic bandages to prevent swelling (for lower extremity).

patient and family are able to follow the interdisciplinary plan of care.

Teaching for Self-Management

The patient with a fracture may be discharged from the hospital, emergency department, office, or clinic with a bandage, splint, cast, or external fixator. Provide verbal and written instructions on the care of these devices. [Chart 54-5](#) describes care of the affected extremity after removal of the cast.

The patient may also need to continue wound care at home. Instruct the patient and family about how to assess and dress the wound to promote healing and prevent infection. Teach them how to recognize complications and when and where to seek professional health care if complications occur. Additional educational needs depend on the type of fracture and fracture repair.

Encourage patients and their families to ensure adequate foods high in protein and calcium that are needed for bone and tissue healing. For patients with lower extremity fractures, less weight bearing on long bones can cause anemia. The red bone marrow needs weight bearing to stimulate red blood cell production. Encourage foods high in iron content. Teach the patient to take a daily iron-added multivitamin (take with food to prevent possible nausea).

Health Care Resources

Arrange for follow-up care at home. A social worker may need to help the patient apply for funds to pay medical bills. If there is severe bone and tissue damage, be realistic and help the patient and family understand the long-term nature of the recovery period. Multiple treatment techniques and surgical procedures required for complications can be mentally and emotionally draining for the patient and family. A vocational counselor may be needed to help the patient find a different type of job, depending on the extent of the fracture.

An older or incapacitated patient may need assistance with ADLs, which can be provided by home care aides if family or other caregiver is not available. In collaboration with the case manager, anticipate the patient's needs and arrange for these services.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with one or more fractures based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient:

- States that he or she has adequate pain control
- Has adequate blood flow to maintain tissue perfusion and function
- Is free of infection
- Is free of physiologic consequences of impaired mobility
- Ambulates or moves independently with or without an assistive device (if not restricted by traction or other device)

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Evidence-Based Practice; Informatics

The 68-year-old patient with multiple fractures of her ankle presented in the Decision-Making Challenge on p. 1149 needs a joint reduction for her dislocated tibia and fibula. As her nurse, you explain the procedure and assure her that she will not have pain during the procedure. You apply a pulse oximeter, nasal oxygen, and capnography monitoring system in preparation for the procedure.

1. What is the purpose of the capnography system?
2. While the patient receives moderate sedation, you note that her respiratory rate drops to 8 breaths/min and her capnography reading is 18. What do these values mean? What evidence-based action will you take first as a result of these values? What will you document in the electronic patient record about the patient's response during the procedure?
3. After the joint is reduced, a splint and large bulky dressing with elastic wraps are applied. The patient will be going home with her daughter, using crutches. What crutch-walking technique will you teach her?
4. What other health teaching will she need and why?

FRACTURES OF SPECIFIC SITES

Upper Extremity Fractures

In addition to the general care discussed in the previous section, management of upper extremity fractures includes specific interventions related to the location and nature of the injury. Unless multiple fractures or massive soft-tissue damage occurs, upper extremity fractures do not usually require hospitalization. However, they often take many months to heal. In some cases, patients may not regain complete function for up to a year, even after extensive rehabilitation in occupational therapy. Assess neurovascular status in the affected arm and hand before and after fracture treatment. Monitor for numbness and tingling distal to (below) the injury, which may indicate peripheral nerve damage.

Fractures of the *clavicle* typically result from a fall on an outstretched hand, a fall on the shoulder, or a direct blow to the upper chest and shoulder area. Most clavicular fractures are self-healing. A splint or bandage is used for immobilization. Complicated open fractures, although uncommon, may require open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) by pins, wires, or screws.

Scapular fractures are not common and are usually caused by direct impact to the area. Serious internal trauma, including pneumothorax, pulmonary contusion, and fractured ribs, can accompany these fractures. The shoulder is kept in position with a commercial immobilizer until the fracture heals, usually in 2 to 4 weeks. Intra-articular neck and glenoid fractures may require surgical intervention with plate and screw fixation.

Fractures of the *proximal humerus*, particularly impacted or displaced fractures, are common in the older adult. As

persons age, fractures of the humerus occur more frequently in the area closer to the shoulder joint. This makes treatment more difficult in the older adult. An impacted injury is usually treated with a sling or other device for immobilization. A displaced fracture often requires ORIF with pins or a prosthesis.

Humeral shaft fractures are generally corrected by closed reduction and a hanging-arm cast or splint. If necessary, the fracture is repaired surgically (with an intramedullary rod or metal plate and screws) or with external fixation. Non-union of the bone and radial nerve palsy are frequent complications of this fracture. Bone grafting helps promote union. Prolonged splinting is necessary while the radial nerve regenerates.

A direct blow to the condyles of the distal humerus can cause either or both condyles to fracture, usually in a T- or Y-shaped configuration. The most serious complication is damage to the brachial or median nerve. Condylar fracture is usually treated by ORIF with a series of screws, although skeletal traction and casting can be used.

Fractures of the *elbow (olecranon)* are common in adults and typically result from a fall on the elbow. Many are successfully treated by closed reduction and application of a cast. ORIF is performed for displaced fractures, and a splint is worn during the healing phase.

Forearm fractures of the ulna without accompanying injury to the radius are rare. As with other fractures of long bones, closed reduction with casting may be the appropriate treatment. If the fracture is displaced, ORIF with intramedullary rods or plates and screws is required.

One or more of the bones in the *wrist and hand* can break, but the most common fracture is of the carpal scaphoid bone in young adult men. This is also one of the most misdiagnosed fractures because it is poorly visualized on an x-ray film. Closed reduction and casting for 6 to 12 weeks is the treatment of choice. If the bone does not heal, ORIF with bone grafting is performed.

A *Colles' (wrist)* fracture is common in older adults, particularly women with osteoporosis. A Colles' fracture occurs in the last inch of the distal radius and often is the result of a fall on an outstretched hand. These fractures can usually be treated by splinting or casting for 6 to 8 weeks.

Fractures of the *metacarpals* and *phalanges (fingers)* are usually not displaced, which makes their treatment less difficult than that of other fractures. Metacarpal fractures are immobilized for 3 to 4 weeks. Phalangeal fractures are immobilized in finger splints for 10 to 14 days.

Lower Extremity Fractures

Fractures of the Hip

Hip fracture is the most common injury in older adults and one of the most frequently seen injuries in any health care setting or community. It has a high mortality rate as a result of multiple complications related to surgery, depression, and prolonged immobility. Between 25% and 40% of patients who had a hip fracture die within 1 year after surgery.

Hip fractures include those involving the upper third of the femur and are classified as **intracapsular** (within the joint capsule) or **extracapsular** (outside the joint capsule). These types are further divided according to fracture location (Fig. 54-8). In the area of the femoral neck there is concern with

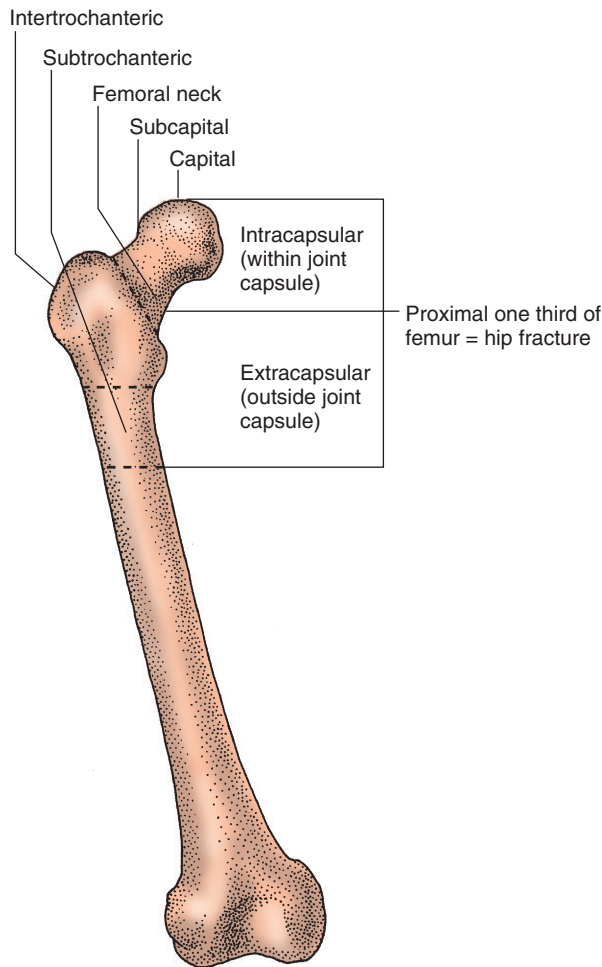


FIG. 54-8 Types of hip fractures.

disruption of the blood supply to the head of the femur, which can result in ischemic or avascular necrosis (AVN) of the femoral head. AVN causes death and necrosis of bone tissue and results in pain and decreased mobility. This problem is most likely in patients with displaced fractures.

Osteoporosis is the biggest risk factor for hip fractures (see Chapter 53). This disease weakens the upper femur (hip), breaks, and then causes the person to fall. The number of

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Teach older adults about the risk factors for hip fracture including physiologic aging changes, disease processes, drug therapy, and environmental hazards. Physiologic changes include sensory changes such as diminished visual acuity and hearing; changes in gait, balance, and muscle strength; and joint stiffness. Disease processes like osteoporosis, foot disorders, and changes in cardiac function increase the risk for hip fracture. Drugs, such as diuretics, antihypertensives, antidepressants, sedatives, opioids, and alcohol, are factors that increase the risks for falling in older adults. Use of three or more drugs at the same time drastically increases the risk for falls. Throw rugs, loose carpeting, inadequate lighting, uneven walking surfaces or steps, and pets are environmental hazards that also cause falls.

The older adult with hip fracture usually reports groin pain or pain behind the knee on the affected side. In some cases, the patient has pain in the lower back or has no pain at all. However, the patient is not able to stand. X-ray or other imaging assessment confirms the diagnosis.



FIG. 54-9 A hip prosthesis used for fractures.

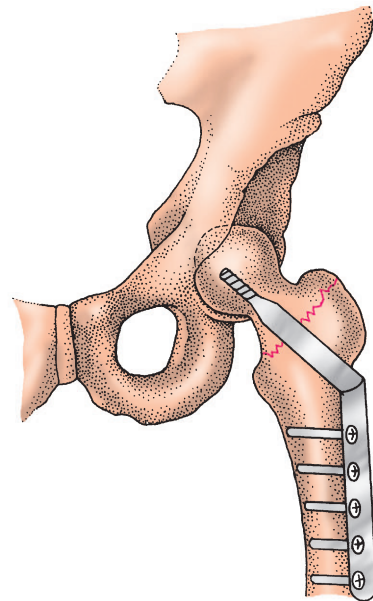


FIG. 54-10 A compression hip screw used for open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) of the hip.

people with hip fracture is expected to continue to increase as the population ages, and the associated health care costs will be tremendous.

The treatment of choice is surgical repair (open reduction, internal fixation, or ORIF), when possible, to reduce pain and allow the older patient to be out of bed and ambulatory. Skin (Buck's) traction may be applied before surgery to help decrease pain associated with muscle spasm. Depending on the exact location of the fracture, an ORIF may include an intramedullary rod, pins, prostheses (for femoral head or neck fractures), or a compression screw. Epidural or general anesthesia is used. Figs. 54-9 and 54-10 illustrate examples of these devices. Occasionally a patient will be so debilitated that surgery cannot be done. In these cases, nonsurgical options include pain management and bedrest to allow natural fracture healing.

Patients usually receive IV morphine after admission to the emergency department and PCA morphine or epidural analgesia after surgery (Herr & Titler, 2009). Meperidine (Demerol) should not be used due to its toxic metabolites that can cause seizures and other adverse drug events, especially in the older adult population (see the Evidence-Based

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Do ED Nurses Follow Best Practices for Acute Pain Management for Older Adults with a Fractured Hip?

Herr, K., & Tittler, M. (2009). Acute pain assessment and pharmacological management practices for the older adult with a hip fracture: Review of ED trends. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 35(4), 312-320.

The researchers conducted a retrospective review of 1454 older adult patients with hip fractures admitted through the emergency department in 12 acute care hospitals over a 3-year period after The Joint Commission issued new pain assessment and management standards for this population. Pain assessment and management practices were examined for trends over time. Almost all patients had some documentation of pain assessment using either a numeric scale or non-numeric scale (e.g., verbal descriptor or faces scale).

The mean intensity of pain was between 6.8 and 7.2 on a 1-to-10 pain scale. Yet, only 60% of patients had an order for an analgesic. Of those orders, about 90% received an opioid. Practice improvements showed a decline in IM opioid administration and meperidine administration and an increase in IV morphine as the drug of choice. These trends are in line with current best practices but need improvement, especially the need for pain control for patients who have fractures.

Level of Evidence: 4

The study was a large descriptive study that examined medical records for trends in practice.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

This study demonstrates the need for nurses to advocate for their patients for pain control. Pain is the priority problem that patients have when they sustain a fracture. Many health care providers are hesitant to prescribe pain medication for older adults for fear of respiratory depression or other negative outcome. Titrated opioid drugs are safe for older adults when given in the health care setting. Uncontrolled pain can cause delirium and increased anxiety among older adults. If a patient cannot state his or her pain intensity, non-verbal descriptors like grimacing or yelling out validate the presence of pain.

Practice box above). Chapter 5 discusses the nursing care associated with pain management in detail.

After a hip repair, older adults frequently experience acute confusion, or delirium. They may pull at tubes or the surgical dressing or attempt to climb out of bed, possibly falling and causing self-injury. Other patients stay awake all night and sleep during the day. Keep in mind that some patients have a quiet delirium. Monitor the patient frequently to prevent falls. Ask the family or other visitors to let staff know if the patient is attempting to get out of bed. Chapter 3 describes fall prevention strategies and delirium management in detail.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Patients who have an ORIF are at risk for hip dislocation or subluxation. Be sure to prevent hip adduction and rotation to keep the operative leg in proper alignment. Regular pillows or abduction devices can be used for patients who are confused or restless. If straps are used to hold the device in place, check the skin for signs of pressure. Perform neurovascular assessments to ensure that the device is not interfering with arterial circulation or peripheral nerve conduction.

The patient begins ambulating with assistance the day after surgery to prevent complications associated with immobility (e.g., pressure ulcers, atelectasis, venous thromboembolism). Early movement and ambulation also decrease the chance of infection and increase surgical site healing.

Special considerations for the patient having a hip repair also include careful inspection of skin including areas of pressure, especially the heels. Use of skin traction to reduce muscle spasms may increase the period of bedrest before surgery. Decreased mobility after surgery can increase the risk for pressure injury in this area within 24 hours.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Be sure that the patient's heels are up off the bed at all times. Inspect the heels and other high-risk bony prominence areas every 8 to 12 hours. Delegate turning and repositioning every 1 to 2 hours to uncensored assistive personnel (UAP), and supervise this nursing activity.

Other postoperative interventions to prevent complications, such as venous thromboembolism, are similar to those for total hip replacement (see Chapter 20).

Many patients recover fully from hip fracture repair and regain their functional ability. They are typically discharged to their home, rehabilitation unit or center, or a skilled nursing facility for physical and occupational therapy. However, some patients are not able to return to their pre-fracture ADLs and mobility level. These patients usually do not return to their homes and are placed in long-term care facilities. A classic pilot study by Folden and Tappen (2007) identified predictors for patients who are likely to fully recover. They found that balance and cognitive ability were the best predictors.

Other Fractures of the Lower Extremity

Other fractures of the lower extremity may or may not require hospitalization. However, if the patient has severe or multiple fractures, especially with soft-tissue damage, hospital admission is usually required. Patients who have surgery to repair their injury may also be hospitalized. Coordinate care with the physical therapist regarding mobility, transfers, positioning, and ambulation. Collaborate with the case manager regarding placement after discharge. Most patients go home unless there is no support system or additional rehabilitation is needed. Health teaching and ensuring continuity of care are essential.

Fractures of the *lower two thirds of the femur* usually result from trauma often from a motor vehicle crash. A femur fracture is seldom immobilized by casting because the powerful muscles of the thigh become spastic, which causes displacement of bone ends. Extensive hemorrhage can occur with femur fracture.

Surgical treatment is ORIF with nails, rods, or a compression screw. In a few cases in which extensive bone fragmentation or severe tissue trauma is found, external fixation may be employed. Healing time for a femur fracture may be 6 months or longer. Skeletal traction, followed by a full-leg brace or cast, may be used in nonsurgical treatment.

Like most other fractures, *patellar* (knee cap) fractures result from direct impact. The surgeon typically repairs the fracture by closed reduction and casting or internal fixation with screws. A knee immobilizer is used so that the fracture can heal properly.

Trauma to the lower leg most often causes fractures of both the *tibia* and the *fibula*, particularly the lower third, and is often referred to as a “tib-fib” fracture. The major treatment techniques are closed reduction with casting, internal fixation, and external fixation. If closed reduction is used, the patient wears a cast for at least 8 to 10 weeks. Because of poor blood supply to parts of the tibia and fibula, delayed union is not unusual with this type of fracture. Internal fixation with nails or a plate and screws, followed by a long-leg cast for 4 to 6 weeks, is another option. When the fractures cause extensive skin and soft-tissue damage, the initial treatment may be external fixation, often for 6 to 10 weeks, usually followed by application of a cast until the fracture is completely healed. The patient uses ambulatory aids, usually crutches.

Ankle fractures are described by their anatomic place of injury. For example, a bimalleolar (Pott’s) fracture involves the medial malleolus of the tibia and the lateral malleolus of the fibula. The small talus that makes up the rest of the ankle joint may also be broken. An ORIF is usually performed using two incisions—one on the medial (inside) aspect of the ankle and one on the lateral (outer) side. Several screws or nails are placed into the tibia, and a compression plate with multiple screws keeps the fibula in alignment. Weight bearing is restricted until the bone heals.

Treatment of fractures of the foot or phalanges (toes) is similar to that of other fractures, with either closed or open reduction. Phalangeal fractures are more painful than but not as serious as most other types of fractures. Crutches are used for ambulation.

Fractures of the Chest and Pelvis

Chest trauma may cause fractures of the ribs or sternum. The most commonly fractured ribs are numbers 4 through 8. The major concern with rib and sternal fractures is the potential for puncture of the lungs, heart, or arteries by bone fragments or ends. Assess airway, breathing, and circulation status **first** for any patient having chest trauma. Fractures of the lower ribs may damage underlying organs, such as the liver, spleen, or kidneys. These fractures tend to heal on their own without surgical intervention. Patients are often uncomfortable during the healing process and require analgesia. They also have a high risk for pneumonia because of shallow breathing caused by pain on inspiration. Encourage them to breathe normally if possible.

Because the pelvis is very vascular and is close to major organs and blood vessels, associated internal damage is the major focus in fracture management. After head injuries, pelvic fractures are the second most common cause of death from trauma. In young adults, pelvic fractures typically result from motor vehicle crashes or falls from buildings. Falls are the most common cause in older adults. The major concern related to pelvic injury is venous oozing or arterial bleeding. Loss of blood volume leads to hypovolemic shock.

Assess for internal abdominal trauma by checking for blood in the urine and stool and by monitoring the abdomen for the development of rigidity or swelling. The trauma team may use peritoneal lavage, computed tomography (CT) scanning, or ultrasound for assessment of hemorrhage. Ultrasound is noninvasive, rapid, reliable, and cost-effective and can be done at the bedside.

There are many classification systems for pelvic fractures. A system that is particularly useful divides fractures of the pelvis into two broad categories: non-weight-bearing fractures and weight-bearing fractures.

When a *non-weight-bearing* part of the pelvis is fractured, such as one of the pubic rami or the iliac crest, treatment can be as minimal as bedrest on a firm mattress or bed board. This type of fracture can be quite painful, and the patient may need stool softeners to facilitate bowel movements because of hesitancy to move. Well-stabilized fractures usually heal in 2 months.

A *weight-bearing* fracture, such as multiple fractures of the pelvic ring creating instability or a fractured acetabulum, necessitates external fixation or open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF) or both. Progression to weight bearing depends on the stability of the fracture after fixation. Some patients can fully bear weight within days of surgery, whereas others managed with traction may not be able to bear weight for as long as 12 weeks.

Compression Fractures of the Spine

Most vertebral fractures are associated with osteoporosis, metastatic bone cancer, and multiple myeloma. Compression fractures result when trabecular or cancellous bone within the vertebra becomes weakened and causes the vertebral body to collapse. The patient has severe pain, deformity (kyphosis), and occasional neurologic compromise. As discussed in the Osteoporosis section of [Chapter 53](#), the patient’s quality of life is reduced by the impact of this problem.

Nonsurgical management includes bedrest, analgesics, nerve blocks, and physical therapy to maintain muscle strength. Vertebral compression fractures (VCFs) that remain painful and impair mobility may be surgically treated with [vertebroplasty](#) or kyphoplasty. These procedures are minimally invasive techniques in which bone cement is injected through the skin (percutaneously) directly into the fracture site to provide stability and immediate pain relief. [Kyphoplasty](#) includes the additional step of inserting a small balloon into the fracture site and inflating it to contain the cement and to restore height to the vertebra. This procedure is preferred because it reduces the complication of leaking of bone cement outside the vertebral body and it may restore height to decrease kyphosis.

Minimally invasive surgeries can be done in an operating or interventional radiology suite by a surgeon or interventional radiologist. They can be done with moderate sedation or general anesthesia. IV ketorolac (Toradol) may be given before the procedure to reduce inflammation. Large-bore needles are placed into the fracture site using fluoroscopy or computed tomography guidance. Then the deflated balloon is inserted through the needles and inflated in the fracture site, and the cement is injected.

Patients may have the procedures in an ambulatory care setting and return home after 2 to 4 hours or be admitted to the hospital for an overnight stay. [Chart 54-6](#) describes the preoperative and postoperative care for percutaneous interventions for vertebral compression devices.

Before discharge, teach the patient to report any signs or symptoms of infection from puncture sites. Remind him or her to not soak in a bath for 1 week, use analgesics as needed, resume activity, and contact the health care provider for questions or concerns.

CHART 54-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nursing Care for Patients Having Vertebroplasty or Kyphoplasty

Provide *preoperative care* including:

- Check the patient's coagulation laboratory test results; platelet count should be more than 100,000/mm³.
- Make sure that all anticoagulant drugs were discontinued as requested by the physician.
- Assess and document the patient's neurologic status, especially extremity movement and sensation.
- Assess the patient's pain level.
- Assess the patient's ability to lie prone for at least 1 hour.
- Establish an IV line, and take vital signs.

Provide *postoperative care* including:

- Place the patient in a flat supine position for 1 to 2 hours or as requested by the physician.
- Monitor and record vital signs and frequent neurologic assessments; report any change immediately to the physician.
- Apply an ice pack to the puncture site if needed to relieve pain.
- Assess the patient's pain level, and compare it with the preoperative level; give mild analgesic as needed.
- Monitor for complications such as bleeding at the puncture site or shortness of breath; report these findings immediately if they occur.
- Assist the patient with ambulation.

Before discharge, teach the patient and family the following:

- The patient should avoid driving or operating machinery for the first 24 hours because of drugs used during the procedure.
- Monitor the puncture site for signs of infection, such as redness, pain, swelling, or drainage.
- Keep the dressing dry, and remove it the next day.
- The patient should begin usual activities, including walking the next day, and should slowly increase activity level over the next few days.

Fractures at Other Sites

Because the skull and vertebral column protect the brain and spinal cord, these fractures are described in [Chapters 45 and 47](#). Fractures of the mandible or nose and other facial trauma are also discussed elsewhere in the text.

AMPUTATIONS

An **amputation** is the removal of a part of the body. Advances in microvascular surgical procedures, better use of antibiotic therapy, and improved surgical techniques for traumatic injury and bone cancer all help reduce the number of amputations. The psychosocial aspects of the procedure are as devastating as the physical impairments that result. The loss is complete and permanent and causes a change in body image and often in self-esteem. Collaborate with members of the health care team, including prosthetists, rehabilitation therapists, psychologists, case managers, and physiatrists (rehabilitation physicians), when providing care to the patient who has an amputation.

Pathophysiology

Types of Amputation

Amputations may be elective or traumatic. Most are *elective* and are related to complications of peripheral vascular disease and arteriosclerosis. These complications result in ischemia in distal areas of the *lower extremity*. Diabetes mellitus is often

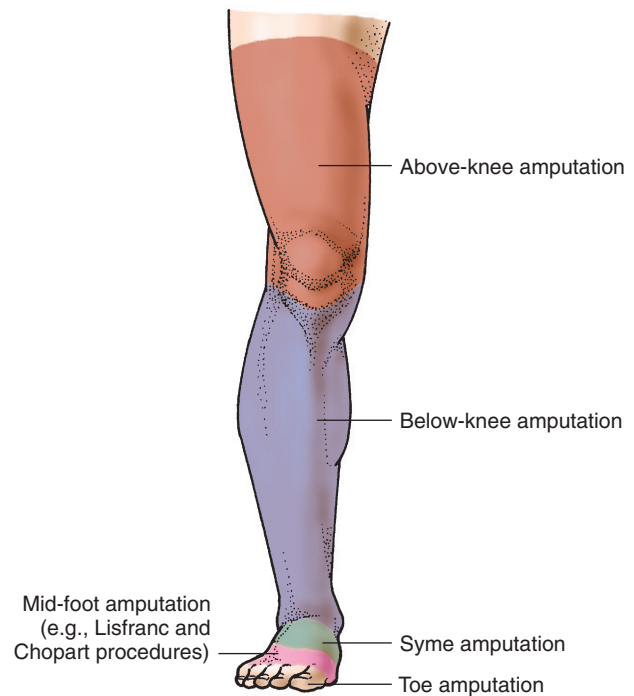


FIG. 54-11 Common levels of lower extremity amputation.

an underlying cause. Amputation is considered only after other interventions have not restored circulation to the lower extremity, sometimes referred to as *limb salvage procedures* (e.g., percutaneous transluminal angioplasty [PTA]). These procedures are discussed elsewhere in this text.

Traumatic amputations most often result from accidents and are the primary cause of *upper extremity* amputation. A person may clean lawn mower blades or a snow blower without disconnecting the machine. A motor vehicle crash or industrial machine accident may also cause an amputation. The number of traumatic amputations also increases during war as a result of hidden land mines and bombs (e.g., in Iraq), and typically, one or both legs are affected. Thousands of veterans of war in the United States are amputees and have had to adjust to major changes in their lifestyles.

Injury that causes severe crushing of tissues or significant blood vessel damage usually results in amputation to preserve function of the residual limb. The ability to salvage limbs injured related to trauma, however, is increasing. Some body parts that are severed can be reattached or replanted.

Levels of Amputation

Lower extremity (LE) amputations are performed much more frequently than upper extremity amputations. Five types of lower extremity amputations may be performed ([Fig. 54-11](#)).

The loss of any or all of the small toes presents a minor disability. Loss of the great toe is significant because it affects balance, gait, and “push off” ability during walking. Midfoot amputations (e.g., the Lisfranc and the Chopart amputations) and the Syme amputation are common procedures for peripheral vascular disease. In the Syme amputation, most of the foot is removed but the ankle remains. The advantage of this surgery over traditional amputations below the knee is

that weight bearing can occur without the use of a prosthesis and with reduced pain.

An intense effort is made to preserve knee joints with below-the-knee amputation (BKA). When the cause for the amputation extends beyond the knee, above-knee or higher amputations are performed. Hip disarticulation, or removal of the hip joint, and hemipelvectomy (removal of half of the pelvis with the leg) are more common in younger patients than in older ones who cannot easily handle the cumbersome prostheses required for ambulation. The higher the level of amputation, the more energy is required for mobility. These higher-level procedures are typically done for cancer of the bone, osteomyelitis, or trauma as a last resort.

Fewer than 10% of all amputations are upper extremity (UE) amputations. An amputation of any part of the upper extremity is generally more incapacitating than one of the leg. The arms and hands are necessary for ADLs such as feeding, bathing, dressing, and driving a car. In the upper extremity, as much length as possible is saved to maintain function. Early replacement with a prosthetic device is vital for the patient with this type of amputation.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

The incidence of lower extremity amputations is greater in black and Hispanic populations because the incidence of major diseases leading to amputation, such as diabetes and arteriosclerosis, is greater in these populations (Lowe & Tariman, 2008). Limited access to health care for these minority groups may also play a major role in limb loss. Language barriers may also be an obstacle to seeking health care providers.

Complications of Amputation

The most common complications of elective or traumatic amputations are:

- Hemorrhage
- Infection
- Phantom limb pain
- Neuroma
- Flexion contractures

When a person loses part or all of an extremity either by surgery or by trauma, major blood vessels are severed, which causes *bleeding*. If the bleeding is uncontrolled, the patient is at risk for hypovolemic shock and possibly death.

As with any surgical procedure or trauma, *infection* can occur in the wound or the bone (osteomyelitis). The older adult who is malnourished and confused is at the greatest risk because excreta may soil the wound or he or she may remove the dressing and pick at the incision. Preventing infection is a major emphasis in hospitals and other health care settings. In some cases, Medicare will not reimburse for acquired infections.

Phantom limb pain is a frequent complication of amputation. Sensation is felt in the amputated part immediately after surgery and usually diminishes over time. When this sensation persists and is unpleasant or painful, it is referred to as **phantom limb pain (PLP)**. PLP is more common in patients who had chronic limb pain before surgery and less common in those who have traumatic amputations. The patient reports pain in the removed body part shortly after surgery, usually after an above-the-knee amputation (AKA). The pain is often described as intense burning, crushing, or cramping. Some

patients report that the removed part is in a distorted, uncomfortable position. They experience numbness and tingling, referred to as *phantom limb sensation*, as well as pain. Others state that the most distal area of the removed part feels as if it is retracted into the residual limb end. For most patients, the pain is triggered by touching the residual limb or by temperature or barometric pressure changes, concurrent illness, fatigue, anxiety, or stress. Routine activities such as urination can trigger the pain. If pain is long-standing, especially if it existed before the amputation, any stimulus can cause it, including touching any part of the body.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Recognize the patient's phantom limb pain as real, and treat it aggressively. A combination of drug therapy and complementary and alternative therapies is the best approach for pain management.

Neuroma—a sensitive tumor consisting of damaged nerve cells—forms most often in amputations of the upper extremity but can occur anywhere. The patient may or may not have pain. It is diagnosed by sonography and can be treated either surgically or nonsurgically. Surgery to remove the neuroma may be performed, but it often regrows and is more painful than before the surgery. Nonsurgical modalities include nerve blocks (e.g., with phenol), steroid injections, and cognitive therapies such as hypnosis.

Flexion contractures of the hip or knee are seen in patients with amputations of the lower extremity. This complication must be avoided so that the patient can ambulate with a prosthetic device. Proper positioning and active range-of-motion exercises help prevent this complication.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A client who had an elective below-the-knee amputation reports pain in the part of his leg that was amputated. What is the nurse's best response to his pain?

- A. "The pain will go away in a few days or so."
- B. "That's phantom limb pain and every amputee has that."
- C. "On a scale of 0 to 10, how would you rate your pain?"
- D. "The pain is not real, so we don't treat it."

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The typical patient undergoing elective amputation is a middle-aged or older man with diabetes and a lengthy history of smoking. He most likely has not cared for his feet properly, which has resulted in a nonhealing, infected foot ulcer and possibly gangrene. Therefore adherence to the disease management plan may help prevent the need for later amputation. Lifestyle habits like maintaining a healthy weight, regular exercise, and avoiding smoking can help prevent chronic diseases like diabetes and poor blood circulation.

The second largest group who have amputations comprise young men who have motorcycle or other vehicular crashes or who are injured by industrial equipment or by combat or accidents in war. These men may either experience a traumatic amputation or undergo a surgical amputation because of a severe crushing injury and massive soft-tissue damage. Teach young male adults the importance of taking safety

precautions to prevent injury at work and to avoid speeding or driving while drinking alcohol. An increasing number of young women also tend to speed and drive while drinking, which endangers themselves and others around them.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Monitor neurovascular status in the affected extremity that will be amputated. When the patient has peripheral vascular disease, also check circulation in both legs. Assess skin color, temperature, sensation, and pulses in both affected and unaffected extremities. Capillary refill can be difficult to determine in the older adult related to thickened and opaque nails. In this situation, the skin near the nail bed can be used (see [Chart 54-3](#)). Capillary refill may not be as reliable as other indicators. Observe and document any discoloration of the skin, edema, ulcerations, presence of necrosis, and hair distribution on the lower extremities.

Psychosocial Assessment

People react differently to the loss of a body part. Be aware that an amputation of a portion of one finger, especially the thumb, can be traumatic to the patient. The thumb is needed for hand activities. Therefore the loss must not be underestimated. Patients undergoing amputation face a complete, permanent loss. Evaluate their psychological preparation for a planned amputation, and expect them to go through the grieving process. Adjustment to a traumatic, unexpected amputation is often more difficult than accepting a planned one. The young patient may be bitter, hostile, and depressed. In addition to loss of a body part, the patient may lose a job, the ability to participate in favorite recreational activities, or a social relationship if other people cannot accept the body change.

The patient has an altered self-concept. The physical alteration that results from an amputation affects body image and self-esteem. For example, a patient may think that an intimate relationship with a partner is no longer possible. An older adult may feel a loss of independence. Assess the patient's feelings about himself or herself to identify areas in which he or she needs emotional support. Refer the patient to the certified hospital chaplain, other spiritual leader, or social worker if he or she is hospitalized. Counseling resources are also available in the community.

Attempt to determine the patient's willingness and motivation to withstand prolonged rehabilitation after the amputation. Asking questions about how he or she has dealt with previous life crises can provide clues. Adjustment to the amputation and rehabilitation is less difficult if the patient is willing to make needed changes.

In addition to assessing the patient's psychosocial status, assess the family's reaction to the surgery or trauma. Their response usually correlates directly with the patient's progress during recovery and rehabilitation. Expect the family to grieve for the loss, and they must be allowed to adjust to the change.

Assess the patient's and family's coping abilities, and help them identify personal strengths and weaknesses. Assess the

patient's religious, spiritual, and cultural beliefs. Certain groups require that the amputated body part be stored for later burial with the rest of the body or be buried immediately. Other cultural customs and rituals may apply depending on the group with which the patient associates.

Diagnostic Assessment

The surgeon determines which tests are performed to assess for viability of the limb based on blood flow. A large number of noninvasive techniques are available for this evaluation. For complete accuracy, the health care provider does not rely on any single test.

One procedure is measurement of segmental limb blood pressures, which can also be used by the nurse at the bedside. In this test, an **ankle-brachial index (ABI)** is calculated by dividing ankle systolic pressure by brachial systolic pressure. A normal ABI is 1 or higher.

Blood flow in an extremity can also be assessed by other noninvasive tests, including Doppler ultrasonography or laser Doppler flowmetry and transcutaneous oxygen pressure (TcPO₂). The ultrasonography and laser Doppler measure the speed of blood flow in the limb. The TcPO₂ measures oxygen pressure to indicate blood flow in the limb and has proved reliable for predicting healing.

INTERVENTIONS

A traumatic amputation requires rapid emergency care to possibly save the severed body part for reattachment and prevent hemorrhage.

Emergency Care: Traumatic Amputation

For a person who has a traumatic amputation in the community, first call 911. Assess the patient for airway or breathing problems. Examine the amputation site, and apply direct pressure with layers of dry gauze or other cloth, using clean gloves if available. Many nurses carry gloves and first aid kits for this type of emergency. Elevate the extremity above the patient's heart to decrease the bleeding. Do not remove the dressing to prevent dislodging the clot.

The fingers are the most likely part to be amputated and replanted. The current recommendation for prehospital care is to wrap the completely severed finger in dry sterile gauze (if available) or a clean cloth. Put the finger in a watertight, sealed plastic bag. *Place the bag in ice water, never directly on ice, at 1 part ice and 3 parts water* (Laskowski-Jones, 2006). Avoid contact between the finger and the water to prevent tissue damage. Do not remove any semidetached parts of the digit. Be sure that the part goes with the patient to the hospital.

Collaborative Care for the Patient with an Amputation

Patient care depends on the type and location of the amputation. For example, an above-the-knee amputation (AKA) has the potential for more postoperative complications than does a partial foot amputation. Regardless of where the amputation occurs, collaborate with the rehabilitation therapists to improve ambulation and/or enable the patient to be independent in ADLs. For many amputations, prostheses can be used to substitute for the missing body part.

Patients undergoing lower extremity amputation today are not confined to a wheelchair. Advancements in the design of

prosthetics have enabled them to become independent. Therefore complications from extended bedrest are not common, even for older adults.

Assessing Tissue Perfusion and Managing Pain. *The nurse's primary focus is to monitor for signs indicating that there is sufficient tissue perfusion but no hemorrhage.* The skin flap at the end of the residual (remaining) limb should be pink in a light-skinned person and not discolored (lighter or darker than other skin pigmentation) in a dark-skinned patient. The area should be warm but not hot. Assess the closest proximal pulse for presence and strength, and compare it with that in the other extremity. If the patient has bilateral vascular disease, however, comparison of limbs may not be an accurate way of measuring blood flow. Use a Doppler device to determine if the affected side is being perfused.

All patients experience pain as a result of either a traumatic or surgical (elective) amputation. Some patients also report pain in the missing body part, often called **phantom limb pain (PLP)**. Be sure to determine which type the patient has, because they are managed very differently.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If the patient reports PLP, recognize that the pain is real and should be managed promptly and completely! It is not therapeutic to remind the patient that the limb cannot be hurting because it is missing. To prevent increased pain, handle the residual limb carefully when assessing the site or changing the dressing.

Opioid analgesics are not as effective for PLP as they are for residual limb pain. IV infusions of calcitonin (Miacalcin, Calcimar) during the week after amputation can reduce phantom limb pain. The health care provider prescribes other drugs on the basis of the type of PLP the patient experiences. For instance, beta-blocking agents such as propranolol (Inderal, Apo-Propranolol ♣, Detensol ♣) are used for constant, dull, burning pain. Antiepileptic drugs such as carbamazepine (Tegretol) and gabapentin (Neurontin) may be used for knifelike or sharp burning pain. Antispasmodics such as baclofen (Lioresal) may be prescribed for muscle spasms or cramping. Some patients improve with antidepressant drugs.

Teach patients about other modalities for managing PLP, including:

- Ultrasound therapy
- Massage
- Heat
- Biofeedback
- Relaxation therapy
- Hypnosis
- Psychotherapy

Most of these modalities are described in **Chapters 2 or 5**. Incorporate them into the plan of care if agreeable with the patient by collaborating with specialists who are trained to perform them. For example, physical therapists often use massage, heat, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), and ultrasound therapy for pain control. Collaborate with the certified hospital chaplain to provide emotional support or a social worker or psychologist to provide psychotherapy, as needed.

Preventing Infection

The surgeon typically prescribes a broad-spectrum prophylactic antibiotic immediately before elective surgery. These may be continued in patients with traumatic amputations or those who have open wounds on the residual limb. The initial pressure dressing and drains are usually removed by the surgeon 48 to 72 hours after surgery. Inspect the incision or wound for signs of infection. Record the appearance, amount, and odor of drainage, if present. The surgeon may want the incision open to air until staples or sutures are removed or may want the residual limb to have a continuous soft or rigid dressing made of fiberglass. A soft dressing is secured by an elastic bandage wrapped firmly around the residual limb.

Promoting Mobility and Preparing for Prosthesis

Collaborate with the physical therapist to begin exercises as soon as possible after surgery. If the amputation is planned, the therapist may work with the patient before surgery to start muscle-strengthening exercises and evaluate the need for ambulatory aids, such as crutches. If the patient can practice with these devices before surgery, learning how to ambulate after surgery is much easier.

For patients with AKAs or BKAs, teach range-of-motion (ROM) exercises for prevention of flexion contractures, particularly of the hip and knee. A trapeze and an overhead frame aid in strengthening the arms and allow the patient to move independently in bed. Teach the patient how to perform range-of-motion exercises. Be sure to turn the patient every 2 hours, or teach the patient to turn independently. Move the patient slowly to prevent muscle spasms (Pullen, 2010).

A firm mattress is essential for preventing contractures with a leg amputation. Assist the patient into a prone position every 3 to 4 hours for 20- to 30-minute periods if tolerated and not contraindicated. This position may be uncomfortable initially but is necessary to prevent hip flexion contractures. Instruct the patient to pull the residual limb close to the other leg and contract the gluteal muscles of the buttocks for muscle strengthening. After staples are removed, the physical therapist may begin resistive exercises, which should also be done at home.

For above- and below-the-knee amputations, teach the patient how to push the residual limb down toward the bed while supporting it on a soft pillow at first. Then instruct him or her to continue this activity using a firmer pillow and then progress to a harder surface. This activity helps prepare the residual limb for prosthesis and reduces the incidence of phantom limb pain and sensation (Pullen, 2010).

Elevation of a lower-leg residual limb on a pillow while the patient is in a supine position is controversial. Some practitioners advocate avoiding this practice at all times because it promotes hip or knee flexion contracture. Others allow elevation for the first 24 to 48 hours to reduce swelling and subsequent discomfort. Inspect the residual limb daily to ensure that it lies completely flat on the bed.

Before an elective amputation, the patient often sees a certified prosthetist-orthotist (CPO) so that planning can begin for the postoperative period. Arrangements for replacing an arm part are especially important so that the patient can achieve self-management. Some patients are fitted with a temporary prosthesis at the time of surgery. Others, particularly older patients with vascular disease, are fitted after the residual limb has healed.

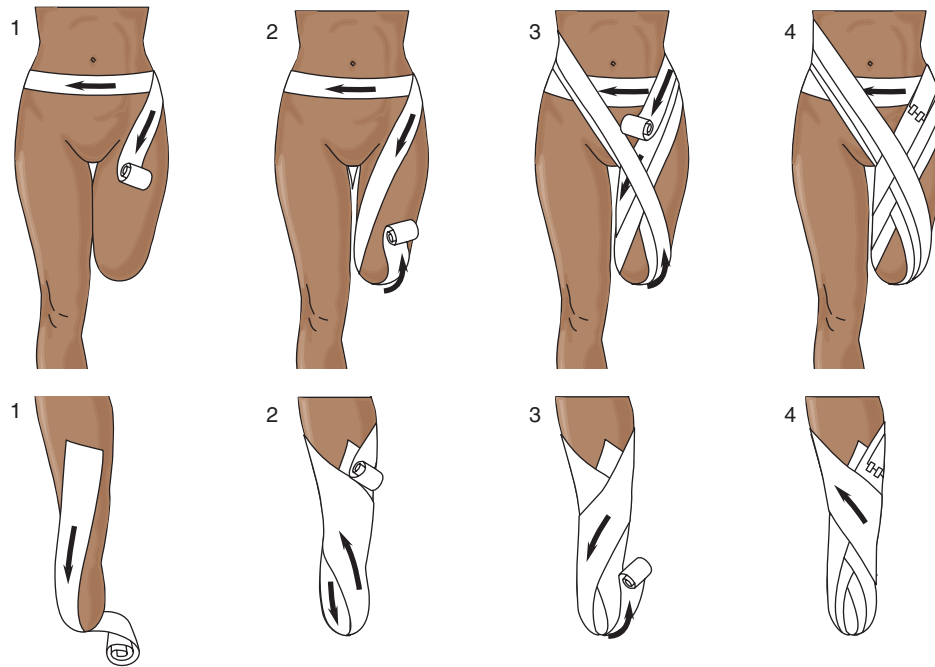


FIG. 54-12 A common method of wrapping an amputation stump. *Top*, Wrapping for above-knee amputation. *Bottom*, Wrapping for below-knee amputation.

The patient being fitted for a leg prosthesis should bring a sturdy pair of shoes to the fitting. The prosthesis will be adjusted to that heel height.

Several devices help shape and shrink the residual limb in preparation for the prosthesis. Rigid, removable dressings are preferred because they decrease edema, protect and shape the limb, and allow easy access to the wound for inspection. The Jobst air splint, a plastic inflatable device, is sometimes used for this purpose. One of its disadvantages is air leakage and loss of compression. Wrapping with elastic bandages can also be effective in reducing edema, shrinking the limb, and holding the wound dressing in place.

For wrapping to be effective, reapply the bandages every 4 to 6 hours or more often if they become loose. *Figure-eight wrapping prevents restriction of blood flow. Decrease the tightness of the bandages while wrapping in a distal-to-proximal direction.* After wrapping, anchor the bandages to the highest joint, such as above the knee for BKAs (Fig. 54-12).

The design of and materials for prostheses have improved dramatically over the years. Computer-assisted design and manufacturing (CAD-CAM) is used for a custom fit. One of the most important developments in lower extremity prosthetics is the ankle-foot prosthesis, such as the Flex-Foot for more active amputees.

Promoting Body Image and Lifestyle Adaptation

The patient often experiences feelings of inadequacy as a result of losing a body part, especially the older adult who was in poor health before surgery and men who are often the main providers for their families. If possible, arrange for him or her to meet with a rehabilitated amputee who is about the same age as the patient.

Use of the word *stump* for referring to the remaining portion of the limb (residual limb) continues to be controversial. Patients have reported feeling as if they were part of

a tree when the term was used. However, some rehabilitation specialists who routinely work with amputees believe the term is appropriate because it forces the patient to realize what has happened and promotes adjustment to the amputation. *Assess the patient to determine what term he or she prefers.*

Assess the patient's verbal and nonverbal references to the affected area. Some patients behave euphorically (extremely happy) and seem to have accepted the loss. *Do not jump to the conclusion that acceptance has occurred.* Ask the patient to describe his or her feelings about changes in body image and self-esteem. He or she may verbalize acceptance but refuse to look at the area during a dressing change. This inconsistent behavior is not unusual and should be documented and shared with other health care team members.

A patient who seems to adjust to the amputation during hospitalization may realize that it is difficult to cope with the loss after discharge from the hospital. Teach the patient and family about available resources and support from organizations such as the Amputee Coalition of America (ACA) (www.amputee-coalition.org) and the National Amputation Foundation (NAF) (www.nationalamputation.org). The NAF was originally started for veterans but has since expanded to offer services to civilians.

With advancements in prostheses and surgical techniques, most patients can return to their jobs and other activities. Professional athletes who use prostheses are often quite successful in sports. Patients with amputations ski, hike, golf, bowl, and participate in other physically demanding activities. Many amputees participate actively in organized and recreational sports.

If a job or career change is necessary, collaborate with a social worker or vocational rehabilitation specialist to evaluate the patient's skills. A supportive family or significant other is important for the adjustment to this change. The patient may also think that an intimate relationship is no longer

possible because of physical changes. Discuss sexuality issues with the patient and his or her partner as needed. Professional assistance from a sex therapist, intimacy coach, or psychologist may be needed.

Help the patient and family set realistic desired outcomes and take one day at a time. Help them recognize personal strengths. If the desired outcomes are not realistic, frustration and disappointment may decrease motivation during rehabilitation. Basic principles of rehabilitation are discussed in Chapter 8.

Community-Based Care

The patient is discharged directly to home or to a skilled facility or rehabilitation facility, depending on the extent of the amputation. When rehabilitation is not feasible as in the debilitated or demented older adult, he or she may be discharged to a long-term care facility. Coordinate this transfer with the case manager or discharge planner to ensure continuity of care.

At home, the patient with a leg amputation needs to have enough room to use a wheelchair if the prosthesis is not yet available. He or she must be able to use toileting facilities and have access to areas necessary for self-management, such as the kitchen. Structural home modifications may be required before the patient goes home.

After the sutures or staples are removed, the patient begins residual limb care. A home care nurse may be needed to teach the patient and/or family how to care for the limb and the prosthesis if it is available (Chart 54-7). The limb should be rewrapped three times a day with an elastic bandage applied in a figure-eight manner (see Fig. 54-12). For many patients, a shrinker stocking or sock is easier to apply. After the limb is healed, it is cleaned each day with the rest of the body during bathing with soap and water. Teach the patient and/

or family to inspect it every day for signs of inflammation or skin breakdown.

COMPLEX REGIONAL PAIN SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS), formerly called **reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD)** and **causalgia**, is a poorly understood dysfunction of the central and peripheral nervous systems that leads to severe, chronic pain. Genetic factors may play a role in the development of this devastating complication. CRPS most often results from fractures or other traumatic musculoskeletal injury and commonly occurs in the feet and hands. In some cases, specific nerve injuries are present, but in others, no injury can be identified. A triad of clinical manifestations is present, including abnormalities of the autonomic nervous system (changes in color, temperature, and sensitivity of skin over the affected area, excessive sweating, edema), motor symptoms (paresis, muscle spasms, loss of function), and sensory symptoms (intense burning pain that becomes intractable [unrelenting]).

Over time, spotty and diffuse osteoporosis can be seen on x-ray examination. Timing of diagnosis is important because the syndrome is more difficult to treat when diagnosed in the later stages.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The first priority of management is pain relief. Little research has been done to demonstrate the best practices for caring for a patient with CRPS (Hsu, 2009). Therefore a combination of interventions is used. Nurses play an important role in patient management, which includes drug therapy and a variety of nonpharmacologic modalities. Many classes of drugs may be used to manage the intense pain. These include topical analgesics, antiepileptic drugs, antidepressants, corticosteroids, bisphosphonates, and analgesics. Chapter 5 discusses pain management in detail.

In collaboration with the physical and occupational therapists, assist in maintaining adequate range of motion (ROM) and function. The skin of a patient with CRPS tends to alternate between warm, swollen, and red to cool, clammy, and bluish. Skin care needs to be gentle with minimal stimulation.

Peripheral or spinal cord neurostimulation using an external or internal implanted device delivers electrical pulses to block pain from getting to the brain where pain is perceived. The external or acupuncture method requires weekly sessions or a short-term continuous trial before the device is surgically implanted. Complications of implantable neurostimulators include spinal cord damage from hematoma or edema formation or other neurologic dysfunction.

A chemical sympathetic nerve block may be used. This procedure can be done by an IV infusion of phentolamine, a drug that blocks sympathetic receptors, or by injecting an anesthetic agent next to the spine to block sympathetic nerves.

Minimally invasive surgical **sympathectomy**, or cutting of the sympathetic nerve branches via endoscopy through a small axillary incision, may be required. Topical skin adhesive is used to close the very small incision. The patient

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Collaborate with the prosthetist to teach the patient about prosthesis care after amputation to ensure its reliability and proper function. These devices are custom made, taking into account the patient's level of amputation, lifestyle, and occupation. Proper teaching regarding correct cleansing of the socket and inserts, wearing the correct liners, assessing shoe wear, and a schedule of follow-up care is essential before discharge. This information may need to be reviewed by the home care nurse.

CHART 54-7 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with a Lower Extremity Amputation in the Home

- Assess the residual limb for:
 - Adequate circulation
 - Infection
 - Healing
 - Flexion contracture
 - Dressing/elastic wrap
- Assess the patient's ability to perform ADLs in the home.
- Evaluate the patient's ability to use ambulatory aids and to care for the prosthetic device (if available).
- Assess the patient's nutritional status.
- Assess the patient's ability to cope with body image change.

is discharged to home a few hours later with a follow-up examination the next day with the health care provider. Usual activities can resume a few days later.

Assist the patient in coping with CRPS because it often has a profound psychological effect. A referral for psychological counseling or psychotherapy may be indicated. The Reflex Sympathetic Dystrophy Syndrome Association (RSDSA) (www.rsds.org) and National Pain Association (www.nationalpainassociation.org) are available to help patients and their families organize or locate support groups and other resources.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is concerned that a client who had an open reduction, internal fixation of his tibia and fibula is at risk for complex regional pain syndrome. What assessment findings at the affected area are common when a client has this complication? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Dull, aching pain
- B. Decrease in sweating
- C. Muscle spasms
- D. Skin discoloration
- E. Paresis
- F. Edema

SPORTS-RELATED INJURIES

In addition to the bone and muscle problems already discussed, trauma can cause cartilage, ligament, and tendon injury. Many musculoskeletal injuries are the result of playing sports (professional and recreational) or doing other strenuous physical activities. The popularity of all-terrain vehicles (ATVs) and skateboarding has increased injuries in younger patients. Sports injuries have become so common that large metropolitan hospitals have sports medicine clinics and physicians who specialize in this field.

Although the specific types of injury are numerous, this chapter includes only the most common ones seen in a hospital or ambulatory care setting. The principles of injury to one part of the body are similar to those of other sports injuries. For example, a tendon rupture in a knee is cared for in the same manner as a tendon rupture in the wrist. [Chart 54-8](#) lists general emergency measures for sports-related injuries. All patients require frequent neurovascular monitoring.

Because the knee is most often injured, it is discussed as a typical example of other areas of the body. Trauma to the

knee results in **internal derangement**, a broad term for disturbances of an injured knee joint. When surgery is required to resolve the problem, most surgeons prefer to perform the procedure through an arthroscope when possible. A description of arthroscopy is presented in [Chapter 53](#).

KNEE INJURIES: PATELLOFEMORAL PAIN SYNDROME

Patellofemoral pain syndrome (PFPS) is the most common diagnosis in patients who have knee pain. It occurs most often in people who are runners or who overuse their knee joints. For that reason, it is sometimes referred to as “runner’s knee.” Patients with this problem describe pain as being behind or around their patella (knee cap) in one or both knees. Swelling is not common although stiffness may be present, especially when the knee is flexed.

Management usually involves rest, physical therapy, bracing or splinting, and mild analgesics. For patients who have pain lasting for more than 12 months, arthroscopic surgery is performed.

KNEE INJURIES: MENISCUS

Pathophysiology

There are two semilunar cartilaginous structures, or menisci, in the knee joint: the medial meniscus and the lateral meniscus. These pads act as shock absorbers, but they can tear. Tearing is usually a result of twisting the leg when the knee is flexed and the foot is placed firmly on the ground. The medial meniscus is much more likely to tear than the lateral meniscus because it is less mobile. Internal rotation causes a tear in the medial meniscus. External rotation causes a tear in the lateral meniscus.

Tears can be anterior or posterior, longitudinal or transverse. In the medial meniscus, a longitudinal tear, or “bucket handle” injury, often causes the knee to lock (i.e., the torn cartilage jams between the femur and the tibia and prevents extension of the knee). Surgery is often required for this type of injury. In transverse tears, the knee does not lock and surgery may not be required.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient with a torn meniscus typically has pain, swelling, and tenderness in the knee. A clicking or snapping sound can often be heard when the knee is moved.

A common diagnostic technique is the **McMurray test**. The examiner flexes and rotates the knee and then presses on the medial aspect while slowly extending the leg. The test result is positive if clicking is palpated or heard. A negative finding, however, does not rule out a tear.

For a locked knee, the treatment may be manipulation followed by splinting or casting for 3 to 6 weeks. If the problem recurs, a partial or total **meniscectomy** is performed. An *open* meniscectomy requires a surgical incision for removal of all or part of the meniscus and is rarely performed. Most surgeons prefer to remove only the affected portion during a *closed* meniscectomy, which can be done through an arthroscope as a same-day surgical procedure. As described in [Chapter 53](#), an arthroscope is a metal tubular

CHART 54-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of Patients with Sports-Related Injuries

- Do not move the victim until spinal cord injury is ascertained (see [Chapter 45](#) for assessment of spinal cord injury).
- Rest the injured part; immobilize the joint above and below the injury by applying a splint if needed.
- Apply ice intermittently for the first 24 to 48 hours (heat may be used thereafter).
- Elevate the affected limb to decrease swelling.
- Use compression for the first 24 to 48 hours (e.g., elastic wrap).
- Always assume the area is fractured until x-ray studies are done.
- Assess neurovascular status in the area distal to the injury.



FIG. 54-13 A knee immobilizer.

instrument used for examination or surgery of joints. One or more small incisions (less than $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch [0.6-cm] long) are made in the knee for insertion of the arthroscope. The surgeon threads a cutting device through the arthroscope for removal of the torn cartilage while the knee is irrigated. The surgeon may use a laser during the procedure, depending on the type and severity of the injury. A bulky pressure dressing is applied after the procedure, and the affected leg is wrapped in elastic bandages.

As for any postoperative patient, check the surgical dressing for bleeding and monitor vital signs after the patient is admitted to the same-day surgical unit. Perform neurovascular checks as outlined in [Chart 54-3](#), usually every hour for the first few hours and then every 4 hours. Teach the patient and family what signs and symptoms to watch for after surgery and when to notify the health care provider.

The patient begins exercises immediately after surgery to strengthen the leg, prevent venous thromboembolism, and reduce swelling. Quadriceps setting, in which the patient straightens the leg while pushing the knee against the bed, is done in sets of 10 or more. Straight-leg raises are also performed. Range-of-motion (ROM) exercises are usually not started for several days.

To prevent bending the affected knee, the physician may request a knee immobilizer, such as the one shown in [Fig. 54-13](#). Elevate the leg on one or two pillows according to the physician's preference, and apply ice to reduce postoperative swelling. Full weight bearing is restricted for several weeks, depending on the amount of cartilage removed. The patient is usually discharged from the hospital with crutches in less than 23 hours.

KNEE INJURIES: LIGAMENTS

The cruciate and collateral ligaments in the knee are predisposed to injury, often from sports or vehicular crashes. The anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) is the most commonly torn

ligament in the knee. Athletes often get these injuries during skiing, skating, or gymnastics. Women have ACL tears more often than men, possibly related to hormonal influences, biomechanical factors, and anatomic differences. Proper athletic shoes and learning how to land when jumping can help prevent this injury.

When the ACL is torn, the patient feels a snap and the knee gives way because of ACL laxity. Within hours, the knee is swollen, stiff, and painful. Examination by the health care provider shows positive ligament laxity. The diagnosis of an ACL tear is best confirmed by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

Treatment may be nonsurgical or surgical, depending on the severity of the injury and the activity of the patient. Exercises, bracing, and limits on activities while the ligament heals may be sufficient. If medical management is not effective or the tear is severe, surgery may be needed.

The surgeon repairs the tear by reattaching the torn portions of the ligament through arthroscopy. The leg is placed in a brace or immobilizer. If the ligament cannot be repaired, reconstructive surgery may be performed with autologous grafts. A ligament from another part of the body is used to replace the torn knee ligament. Another option is artificial knee implants such as the GORE-TEX ligament.

Complete healing of knee ligaments after surgery can take 6 to 9 months or longer. These patients may use a continuous passive motion (CPM) machine at home. Teach the patient how to use and care for the machine. CPM use is discussed with the postoperative care of the total knee patient in [Chapter 20](#).

OTHER INJURIES

CARPAL TUNNEL SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) is a common condition in which the median nerve in the wrist becomes compressed, causing pain and numbness. The carpal tunnel is a rigid canal that lies between the carpal bones and a fibrous tissue sheet. A group of tendons surrounds the synovium and shares space with the median nerve in the carpal tunnel. When the synovium becomes swollen or thickened, this nerve is compressed.

The median nerve supplies motor, sensory, and autonomic function for the first three fingers of the hand and the palmar aspect of the fourth (ring) finger. Because the median nerve is close to other structures, wrist flexion causes nerve impingement, and extension causes increased pressure in the lower portion of the carpal tunnel.

CTS usually presents as a chronic problem. Acute cases are rare. Excessive hand exercise, edema or hemorrhage into the carpal tunnel, or thrombosis of the median artery can lead to acute CTS. *Patients with hand burns or a Colles' fracture of the wrist are particularly at risk for this problem.* In most cases, the cause may not result in nerve deficit for years.

CTS is also a common complication of certain metabolic and connective tissue diseases. For example, **synovitis** (inflammation of the synovium) occurs in patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA). The hypertrophied synovium compresses the median nerve. In other chronic disorders such as diabetes mellitus, inadequate blood supply can

CHART 54-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Health Promotion Activities to Prevent Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

- Become familiar with federal and state laws regarding workplace requirements to prevent repetitive stress injuries such as carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS).
- When using equipment or computer workstations that can contribute to developing CTS, assess that they are ergonomically appropriate, including:
 - Specially designed wrist rest devices
 - Geometrically designed computer keyboards
 - Chair height that allows good posture
- Take regular short breaks away from activities that cause repetitive stress, such as computers.
- Stretch fingers and wrists frequently during work hours.
- Stay as relaxed as possible when using equipment that causes repetitive stress.

cause median nerve neuropathy or dysfunction, resulting in CTS.

CTS is the most *common* type of **repetitive stress injury (RSI)**. RSIs are the fastest growing type of occupational injury. People whose jobs require repetitive hand activities such as pinching or grasping during wrist flexion (e.g., factory workers, computer operators, jackhammer operators) are predisposed to CTS. It can also result from overuse in sports activities such as golf, tennis, or racquetball.

In a few cases, CTS may be a familial or congenital problem that manifests in adulthood. Space-occupying growths such as ganglia, tophi, and lipomas can also result in nerve compression.

Women, especially those older than 50 years, are much more likely than men to experience CTS, most likely due to the higher prevalence of diseases such as RA in women. The problem most often affects the dominant hand but can occur in both hands simultaneously. CTS is beginning to be found in children and adolescents as a result of the increased use of computers in everyday life.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Most businesses recognize the hazards of repetitive motion as a primary cause of occupational injury and disability. Both men and women in the labor force are experiencing increasing numbers of RSIs. Occupational health nurses have played an important role in ergonomic assessments and in the development of ergonomically designed furniture and various aids to decrease CTS and other musculoskeletal injuries.

U.S. federal and state legislation has been passed to ensure that all businesses, including health care organizations (HCOs), provide *ergonomically appropriate workstations* for their employees (Occupational Safety and Health Administration). The Joint Commission also requires that hospitals and other HCOs provide a safe work environment for all staff. In Canada, each province requires the work setting to have joint health and safety committees in which employees are actively involved in setting safety standards (Canadian Centre for Occupational Health and Safety). **Chart 54-9** lists best practices for preventing CTS in the health care setting.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

A medical diagnosis is often made based on the patient's history and report of hand pain and numbness and without further assessment. Ask about the nature, intensity, and location of the pain. Patients often state that the pain is worse at night as a result of flexion or direct pressure during sleep. The pain may radiate to the arm, shoulder and neck, or chest.

In addition to reports of numbness, patients with carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) may also have **paresthesia** (painful tingling). *Sensory* changes usually occur weeks or months before *motor* manifestations.

The health care provider performs several tests for abnormal sensory findings. Phalen's wrist test, sometimes called **Phalen's maneuver**, produces paresthesia in the median nerve distribution (palmar side of the thumb, index and middle fingers, and half of the ring finger) within 60 seconds due to increased internal carpal pressure. The patient is asked to relax the wrist into flexion or to place the back of the hands together and flex both wrists at the same time. The Phalen's test is positive in most patients with CTS.

The same sensation can be created by tapping lightly over the area of the median nerve in the wrist (**Tinel's sign**). If the test is unsuccessful, a blood pressure cuff can be placed on the upper arm and inflated to the patient's systolic pressure (tourniquet). This often causes pain and tingling.

The newest pain-provoking diagnostic test being used is the Okutsu position test. The patient is asked to place the hands in a palm-to-palm position with thumbs extended. Then he or she is asked to move the wrist toward the radial side as far as it can be done and hold that position for 1 minute. Pain and tingling occur more often than from the Tinel's and Phalen's tests.

Motor changes in carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) begin with a weak pinch, clumsiness, and difficulty with fine movements. These changes progress to muscle weakness and wasting, which can impair self-management. If desired, test for pinching ability and ask the patient to perform a fine-movement task, such as threading a needle. Strenuous hand activity worsens the pain and numbness.

In addition to inspecting for muscle atrophy and task performance, observe the wrist for swelling. Gently palpate the area and note any unusual findings. Autonomic changes may be evidenced by skin discoloration, nail changes (e.g., brittleness), and increased or decreased hand sweating.

When a definitive diagnosis is uncertain, the health care provider may request routine x-rays, electromyography (EMG) and nerve conduction studies (NCS), and/or ultrasonography. MRI is generally not very helpful in diagnosis. NCS testing reveals nerve dysfunction before muscle atrophy is observed. An ultrasound scan may be done to view the cause of the problem. The most common finding is an enlarged median nerve within the carpal tunnel.

INTERVENTIONS

The health care provider uses conservative measures before surgical intervention. However, CTS can recur with either type of treatment. Management depends on the patient, but established best practices have not been determined (Uchiyama et al., 2010).

Nonsurgical Management

Aggressive drug therapy and immobilization of the wrist are the major components of nonsurgical management. Teach the patient the importance of these modalities in the hope of preventing surgical intervention.

NSAIDs are the most commonly prescribed drugs for the relief of pain and inflammation, if present. In addition to or instead of systemic medications, the physician may inject corticosteroids directly into the carpal tunnel. If the patient responds to the injection, several additional weekly or monthly injections are given. Teach him or her to take NSAIDs with or after meals to reduce gastric irritation.

A splint or hand brace may be used to immobilize the wrist during the day, during the night, or both. Many patients experience temporary relief with these devices. The occupational therapist places the wrist in the neutral position or in slight extension.

Laser or ultrasound therapy may also be helpful. Some patients report fewer symptoms after beginning yoga or other exercise routine.

Surgical Management

Surgery is necessary in about half of patients with CTS. Surgery can relieve the pressure on the median nerve by providing nerve decompression. Major surgical complications are rare after CTS surgery. In some cases, however, CTS recurs months to years after surgery.

The nurse in the physician's office or same-day surgical center reinforces the teaching provided by the surgeon regarding the nature of the surgery. Postoperative care is reviewed so the patient knows what to expect. [Chapter 16](#) describes general preoperative care in detail.

Whatever the cause of nerve compression, the surgeon removes it either by cutting or by the newer laser technique. The two most common surgeries are the open carpal tunnel release (OCTR) and the newer endoscopic carpal tunnel release (ECTR). When CTS is a complication of rheumatoid arthritis, a [synovectomy](#) (removal of excess synovium) through a small inner-wrist incision may resolve the problem. Removal of a space-occupying growth, if present, also decompresses the nerve. A recent systematic review showed that surgical treatment seems to be more effective than conservative measures over the long term. However, there was no evidence that one type of procedure, open or endoscopic, was more effective than the other (Huisstede et al., 2010).

ECTR, the endoscopic technique, is a common alternative to OCTR, the open technique. The surgeon makes a very small incision (less than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch [1.2 cm]) through which the endoscope is inserted. The surgeon then uses special instruments, which may include a laser, to free the trapped median nerve. Although ECTR is less invasive and costs less than the open procedure, the patient may have a longer period of postoperative pain and numbness compared with recovery from OCTR.

After surgery, monitor vital signs and check the dressing carefully for drainage and tightness. If ECTR has been performed, the dressing is very small. The surgeon may require that the patient's affected hand and arm be elevated above heart level for several days to reduce postoperative swelling. Check the neurovascular status of the fingers every hour during the immediate postoperative period, and encourage the patient to move them frequently. Offer pain medication

and assure him or her that a prescription for analgesics will be provided before discharge.

Hand movements, including lifting heavy objects, may be restricted for 4 to 6 weeks after surgery. The patient can expect weakness and discomfort for weeks or perhaps months. Teach him or her to report any changes in neurovascular status, including increased pain and numbness, to the surgeon's office immediately.

Remind the patient and family that the surgical procedure might not be a cure. For instance, synovitis may recur with rheumatoid arthritis and may recompress the median nerve. Multiple surgeries and other treatments are common with CTS.

The patient may need assistance with self-management activities during recovery. Ensure that assistance in the home is available before discharge; this is usually provided by the family or significant others.

TENDINOPATHY AND JOINT DISLOCATION

Other injuries can affect any synovial joint. The nursing management of each of these is similar to the collaborative care previously discussed for knee injuries. One of the most common injuries seen in general and sports medicine is Achilles tendon–related injuries (tendinopathy). *Rupture of the Achilles tendon* is common in adults who participate in strenuous sports or in women who wear high heels regularly. It can also occur after taking fluoroquinolone antibiotics, such as levofloxacin (Levoquin) and ciprofloxacin (Cipro) (Barry, 2010).

In the older adult, quadriceps tendon rupture may occur from a fall down several steps. Most cases of Achilles tendinopathy can be treated with RICE (see [Chart 54-8](#)):

- **Rest**
- **Ice**
- **Compression**
- **Elevation**

Some evidence supports the use of NSAIDs, and changes in activity and shoes may be helpful (Chang et al., 2010). Ultrasound treatments may also be effective.

For severe damage and as a last resort, the tendon is surgically repaired and the leg is immobilized in a cast or brace for at least 6 to 8 weeks. If the tendon is beyond repair, a [tendon transplant](#) (also known as *tendon reconstruction*) may be performed. A tendon is removed from one part of the body and transplanted to the affected area, or a cadaver donor is used.

[Dislocation of a joint](#) occurs when the ends of two or more bones are moved away from each other. If the dislocation is not complete, the joint is partially dislocated, or [subluxed](#). It can occur in any diarthrodial (synovial) joint but is most common in the shoulder, hip, knee, and fingers. This injury is usually the result of trauma but can be congenital or pathologic and can result from joint disease, such as arthritis.

The typical manifestations of dislocation are:

- Pain
- Immobility
- Alteration in contour of the joint
- Deviation in length of the extremity
- Rotation of the extremity

The health care provider performs a closed reduction of the joint and moves the joint surfaces back into their normal

anatomic position. The patient requires light anesthetic or moderate sedation. The joint is immobilized by a cast, splint, brace, or immobilizer until healing occurs.

Recurrent dislocations are common in the knee and shoulder. For this problem, the joint may be fixed with wires or other device to prevent further displacement. A cast, splint, or traction is applied for 3 to 6 weeks.

STRAINS AND SPRAINS

A **strain** is excessive stretching of a muscle or tendon when it is weak or unstable. Strains are sometimes referred to as *muscle pulls*. Falls, lifting a heavy item, and exercise often cause this injury.

Strains are classified according to their severity:

- A first-degree (mild) strain causes mild inflammation but little bleeding. Swelling, ecchymosis (bruising), and tenderness are usually present.
- A second-degree (moderate) strain involves tearing of the muscle or tendon fibers without complete disruption. Muscle function may be impaired.
- A third-degree (severe) strain involves a ruptured muscle or tendon with separation of muscle from muscle, tendon from muscle, or tendon from bone.

Severe pain and disability result from severe strains.

Management usually involves cold and heat applications, exercise, and activity limitations. The health care provider may prescribe anti-inflammatory drugs to decrease inflammation and pain. Muscle relaxants may also be used. In third-degree strains, surgical repair of the ruptured muscle or tendon may be needed.

A **sprain** is excessive stretching of a ligament. Twisting motions from a fall or sports activity typically cause the injury. Sprains are also classified according to severity. Pain and swelling result from ligament injuries. The treatment for *mild (first-degree)* sprains includes RICE (see [Chart 54-8](#)).

Second-degree sprains require immobilization, such as elastic bandage and an air stirrup ankle brace or splint, and partial weight bearing while the tear heals. For severe ligament damage (*third-degree* sprain), immobilization for 4 to

6 weeks is necessary. Arthroscopic surgery may be done, particularly for chronic joint instability.

ROTATOR CUFF INJURIES

The musculotendinous, or rotator, cuff of the shoulder functions to stabilize the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity during shoulder abduction. Young adults usually sustain a tear of the cuff by substantial trauma, such as may occur during a fall, while throwing a ball, or with heavy lifting. Older adults tend to have small tears related to aging, repetitive motions, or falls, and the tears are usually painless.

The patient with a torn rotator cuff has shoulder pain and cannot easily abduct the arm at the shoulder. When the arm is abducted, he or she usually drops the arm because abduction cannot be maintained (drop arm test). Pain is more intense at night and with overhead activities. Partial-thickness tears are more painful than full-thickness tears, but full-thickness tears result in more weakness and loss of function. Muscle atrophy is commonly seen. Diagnosis is confirmed with x-rays, MRI, ultrasonography, and/or CT scans.

The health care provider usually treats the patient with partial-thickness tears conservatively with NSAIDs, intermittent steroid injections, physical therapy, and activity limitations while the tear heals. Physical therapy treatments may include ultrasound, electrical stimulation, ice, and heat ([Smith & Smith, 2010](#)).

For patients who do not respond to conservative treatment in 3 to 6 months or for those who have a complete (full-thickness) tear, the surgeon repairs the cuff using open, mini-open, or arthroscopic procedures. After surgery, the affected arm is usually immobilized for several weeks. Pendulum exercises are started on the third or fourth postoperative day and progress to active exercises in about 2 weeks. If the surgery is extensive, the patient's arm may be immobilized for a longer time before exercises begin. Patients then begin outpatient rehabilitation in the occupational therapy department. Teach them that they may not have full function for several months.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has impaired mobility and sensation as a result of acute musculoskeletal trauma?

- Extremity swelling, bleeding, bruising, shortening, malalignment, and/or rotation
- Report of severe pain
- Break in skin integrity
- Report of decreased or unusual sensation in extremity
- Inability or decreased ability to move extremity
- Difficulty breathing (rib trauma)
- Severe kyphosis (compression fractures)

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with impaired mobility and sensation as a result of acute musculoskeletal trauma?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- ABC (airway, breathing, circulation) ability
- Pain intensity and quality
- Vital signs
- Neurovascular assessment (“circ check”)

Respond:

- First, establish ABCs if problem exists.
- If skin is not intact, cover wound with dry, sterile dressing, if available; use clean cloth as an option. Apply pressure to proximal pulse if patient is bleeding; for traumatic amputation, apply direct pressure to the residual body part.
- Implement measures to prevent hypovolemic shock if patient is bleeding, including lying patient flat, keeping him or her warm, and elevating the bleeding part.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Splint the extremity (in community setting) to prevent movement and further damage.
- If in hospital setting, assist health care provider in splinting.
- Provide pain control interventions by drug therapy as soon as possible.
- Provide emotional assurance for the patient by being present and comforting.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient's response to pain control interventions.
- Think about what else you could do to prevent complications.
- Determine what health teaching will be needed, depending on the treatment that is provided (e.g., surgery, cast).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Collaborate with physical and occupational therapists for care of patients with extremity fractures.
- Collaborate with the prosthetist, physical and occupational therapists, psychologist, and sex therapist or intimacy coach for care of patients with amputations.
- Several community organizations, such as the Amputee Coalition of America, are available to help patients and their families cope with the loss of a body part.
- Use strict aseptic technique when caring for wounds in patients with compound fractures to help prevent infection; give antibiotic therapy as prescribed.
- Assess the risk for and implement interventions to prevent complications of immobility in patients having musculoskeletal injury or surgery (e.g., pressure ulcers, venous thromboembolism [VTE]).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients and their family members and significant others how to care for casts or traction at home.
- Reinforce teaching for ambulating with crutches, walkers, or canes.
- Provide special care for older adults with hip fractures, including preventing heel pressure ulcers and promoting early ambulation to prevent complications of immobility.
- Teach exercises to patients with leg amputation to prevent hip flexion contractures.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Be aware that patients with severe musculoskeletal trauma may have a prolonged hospitalization and recovery period.
- For patients with severe trauma or amputation, assess coping skills and encourage verbalization.
- Recognize that the patient having an amputation may need to adjust to an altered lifestyle; however, new custom prosthetics improve mobility.

- Help the patient with an amputation or other musculoskeletal trauma and family to set realistic expected outcomes and take one day at a time.

Physiological Integrity

- Be aware that open fractures cause a higher risk for infection than do closed fractures.
- Assess patients with fractures for complications, such as VTE, infection, and acute compartment syndrome.
- Recognize that fat embolism syndrome is different from pulmonary (blood clot) embolism as outlined in [Chart 54-2](#).
- Provide emergency care of the patient with a fracture as described in [Chart 54-4](#).
- Identify the patient at risk for acute compartment syndrome; loosen bandages, or request that the patient's cast be cut if neurovascular compromise is noted.
- As a priority, assess neurovascular status frequently in patients with musculoskeletal injury, traction, or cast as described in [Chart 54-3](#).
- Provide appropriate cast care, depending on the type of cast (plaster or synthetic); check for pressure necrosis under the cast by feeling for heat, assessing the patient's pain level, and smelling the cast for an unpleasant odor.
- Provide pin care for patients with skeletal traction or external fixation; assess for manifestations of infection at the pin sites.
- Provide postoperative care for the patient having a fracture repair, including promoting mobility and monitoring for complications of immobility.
- Provide care for patients having a vertebroplasty or kyphoplasty as described in [Chart 54-6](#).
- Observe for hemorrhage and infection in the patient having an amputation.
- Postoperatively, assess for and promptly manage phantom limb pain in the patient who has an amputation; collaborate with specialists to incorporate complementary and alternative therapies into the patient's plan of care.
- Provide emergency care for patients with a sports-related injury as outlined in [Chart 54-8](#).

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

Nutrition, Metabolism, and Bowel Elimination

Why do we eat, and how are nutrition, metabolism, and bowel elimination related? Within the human body, as in all living systems, energy is required to perform any function. The word *metabolism* means to change or transform. Humans transform the energy stored within food into the types of energy needed to make the body work.

As shown in Fig. 1, *nutrition* involves ingesting many types of foods that contain proteins, carbohydrates, fats, vitamins, and minerals. Once inside the GI tract, the processes of digestion break down food into its basic elements, which then are absorbed into the blood and delivered to cells. Through metabolism, cells convert these basic elements into chemical energy, mostly adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Different cells then use metabolism to further transform ATP into heat energy, mechanical energy, chemical energy, and electrical energy. The transformation of chemical energy into other types of energy within the human body is *irreversible*. It is lost from the body in the form of heat and work. Thus bringing food into the body on a daily basis is important in meeting the human needs of nutrition and metabolism.

Heat energy helps maintain the core body temperature at or near 98.6° F—the ideal temperature for important physiologic reactions. When environmental temperatures are low, more food is needed to maintain body temperature. When environmental temperatures are high, less food is needed to maintain body temperature. Therefore, in general,

more calories need to be consumed per day in the winter than in the summer.

Mechanical energy is used for cell and tissue movement, cell shape changes, and whole body movement. *Electrical energy* generates the action potentials that allow nerves to transmit impulses and muscles to contract. *Chemical energy* is used to drive every chemical reaction in the body. As long as it remains alive, the body continuously needs to change food into these different energies.

Bowel elimination is the way the body rids itself of those food components that cannot be absorbed into the blood and converted into energy, such as fiber and cellulose. If these components remained in the GI tract, they would soon fill it to the point that no nutrients could be ingested.

Consider Fig. 1 as representing the entire nutrition, metabolism, and bowel elimination of a person throughout his or her lifetime. The energy ingested in the form of food exactly matches the energy transformed by metabolism and is used for all the different types of internal and external “work” of the body. When this ideal situation exists, the person always has the right amount of nutrients and neither stores excess nutrients nor breaks down body tissues to use for energy.

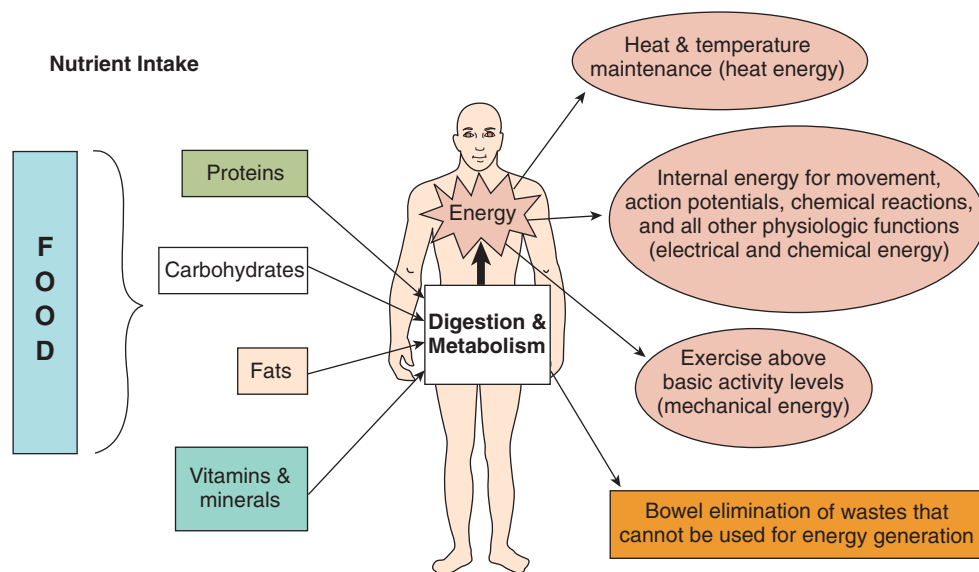


FIG. 1

In Fig. 2, the person is not ingesting enough nutrients to meet metabolic energy needs. As a result, the different types of work are less efficient and the person metabolizes his or her own body tissues to provide needed energy. If this situation continues, it will lead to death.

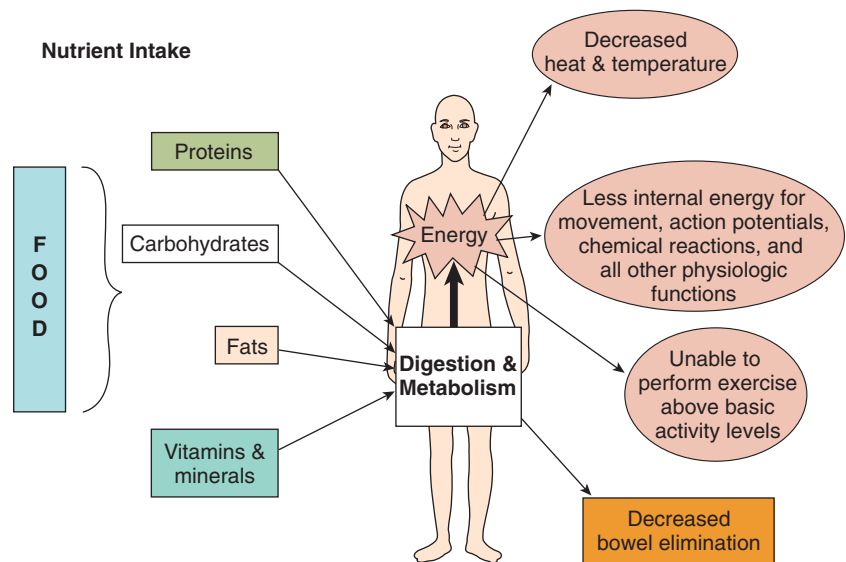


FIG. 2

In Fig. 3, the person is ingesting more nutrients than are needed to meet energy needs. As a result, these extra energy compounds are converted first into glycogen and eventually into fat. Although fat represents stored energy, excessive fat can harm the body. In addition, when food is ingested to excess, metabolism and work energies are not increased. Only heat and bowel elimination increase.

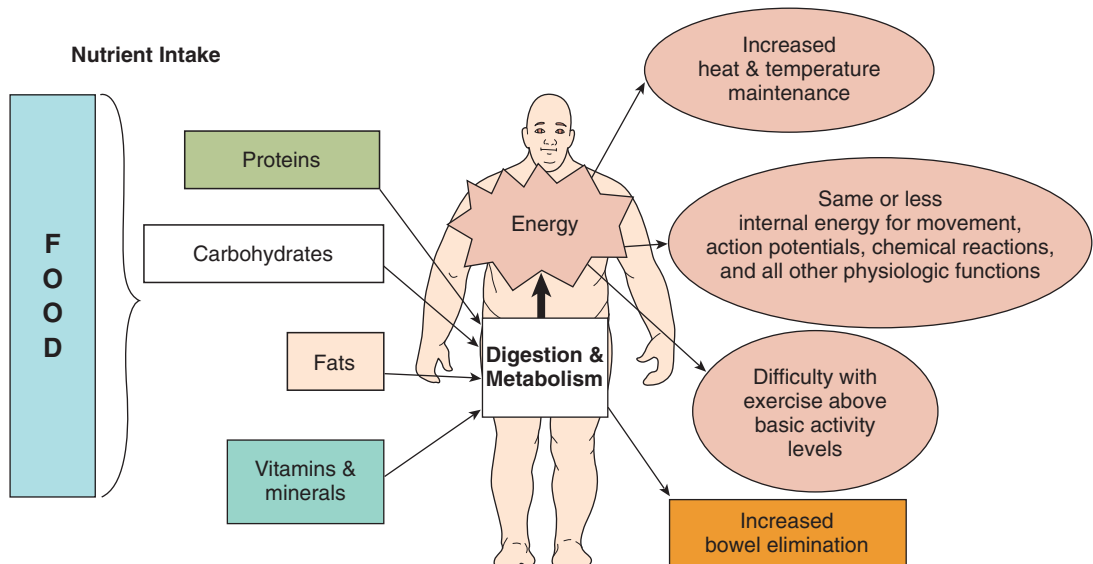


FIG. 3

Problems of Digestion, Nutrition, and Elimination

Management of Patients with Problems of the Gastrointestinal System



CHAPTER

55

Assessment of the Gastrointestinal System

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Digestion
Animation: Rectal Examination
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
Video Clip: Abdomen, Bowel Sounds
Video Clip: Palpation of Abdomen
Video Clip: Percussion, Abdomen
Video Clip: Percussion, Liver, Spleen

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Assess patients for complications of diagnostic tests.
2. Prioritize post-test care for patients having endoscopic procedures.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Identify factors that place patients at risk for GI problems.
4. Teach pre-test and post-test care for diagnostic GI testing to patients and families.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Identify general psychological responses to GI health problems.

Physiological Integrity

6. Briefly review the anatomy and physiology of the GI system.
7. Describe GI system changes associated with aging.
8. Perform a GI history using selected Gordon's Functional Health Patterns.
9. Perform focused physical assessment for patients with suspected or actual GI health problems.
10. Explain and interpret common laboratory tests for a patient with a GI health problem.

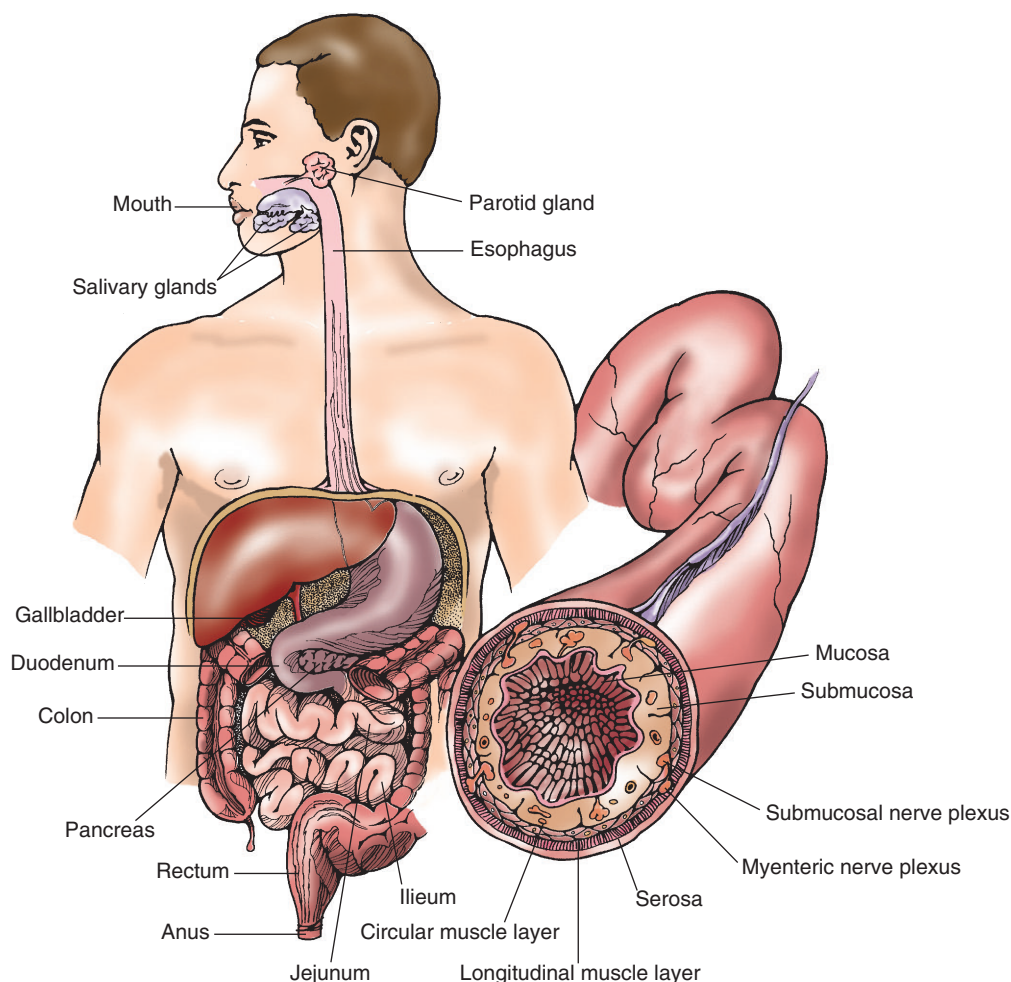


FIG. 55-1 The gastrointestinal system (GI tract) can be thought of as a tube (with necessary structures) extending from the mouth to the anus for a 25-foot length. The structure of this tube (*shown enlarged*) is basically the same throughout its length.

The GI system includes the GI tract (alimentary canal), consisting of the mouth, esophagus, stomach, small and large intestines, and rectum. The salivary glands, liver, gallbladder, and pancreas secrete substances into this tract to form the GI system (Fig. 55-1). The main function of the GI tract, with the aid of organs such as the pancreas and the liver, is the *digestion* of food to meet the body's *nutritional* needs and the *elimination* of waste resulting from digestion. Adequate nutrition is required for proper functioning of the body's organs and other cells (see the Concept Overview). The GI tract is susceptible to many health problems, including structural or mechanical alterations, impaired motility, infection, and cancer.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Overview of the Gastrointestinal System

Structure

The GI tract is a hollow muscular tube surrounded by four tissue layers. The **lumen**, or inner wall, of the GI tract consists of four layers: mucosa, submucosa, muscularis, and serosa. The *mucosa*, the innermost layer, includes a thin layer of

smooth muscle and specialized exocrine gland cells. It is surrounded by the submucosa, which is made up of connective tissue. The *submucosa* layer is surrounded by the muscularis. The *muscularis* is composed of both circular and longitudinal smooth muscles, which work to keep contents moving through the tract. The outermost layer, the *serosa*, is composed of connective tissue. Although the GI tract is continuous from the mouth to the anus, it is divided into specialized regions. The mouth, pharynx, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines each perform a specific function. In addition, the secretions of the salivary, gastric, and intestinal glands; liver; and pancreas empty into the GI tract to aid digestion.

Function

The functions of the GI tract include secretion, digestion, absorption, motility, and elimination. Food and fluids are ingested, swallowed, and propelled along the lumen of the GI tract to the anus for elimination. The smooth muscles contract to move food from the mouth to the anus. Before food can be absorbed, it must be broken down to a liquid, called **chyme**. **Digestion** is the mechanical and chemical process in which complex foodstuffs are broken down into simpler forms that can be used by the body. During digestion, the stomach

secretes hydrochloric acid, the liver secretes bile, and digestive enzymes are released from accessory organs, aiding in food breakdown. After the digestive process is complete, absorption takes place. **Absorption** is carried out as the nutrients produced by digestion move from the lumen of the GI tract into the body's circulatory system for uptake by individual cells.

Oral Cavity

The oral cavity (mouth) includes the buccal mucosa, lips, tongue, hard palate, soft palate, teeth, and salivary glands. The buccal mucosa is the mucous membrane lining the inside of the mouth. The tongue is involved in speech, taste, and **mastication** (chewing). Small projections called *papillae* cover the tongue and provide a roughened surface, permitting the movement of food in the mouth during chewing. The hard palate and the soft palate together form the roof of the mouth.

Adults have 32 permanent teeth: 16 each in upper and lower arches. The different types of teeth function to prepare food for digestion by cutting, tearing, crushing, or grinding the food. Swallowing begins after food is taken into the mouth and chewed. Saliva is secreted in response to the presence of food in the mouth and begins to soften the food. Saliva contains mucin and an enzyme called *salivary amylase* (also known as *ptyalin*), which begins the breakdown of carbohydrates.

Esophagus

The esophagus is a muscular canal that extends from the pharynx (throat) to the stomach and passes through the center of the diaphragm. Its primary function is to move food and fluids from the pharynx to the stomach. At the upper end of the esophagus is a sphincter referred to as the **upper esophageal sphincter (UES)**. When at rest, the UES is closed to prevent air into the esophagus during respiration. The portion of the esophagus just above the gastroesophageal (GE) junction is referred to as the **lower esophageal sphincter (LES)**. When at rest, the LES is normally closed to prevent reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus. If the LES does not work properly, gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) can develop (see Chapter 57).

Stomach

The stomach is located in the midline and left upper quadrant (LUQ) of the abdomen and has four anatomic regions. The *cardia* is the narrow portion of the stomach that is below the gastroesophageal (GE) junction. The *fundus* is the area nearest to the cardia. The main area of the stomach is referred to as the *body* or *corpus*. The *antrum* (pylorus) is the distal (lower) portion of the stomach and is separated from the duodenum by the pyloric sphincter. Both ends of the stomach are guarded by sphincters (cardiac and pyloric), which aid in the transport of food through the GI tract and prevent backflow.

Smooth muscle cells that line the stomach are responsible for gastric motility. The stomach is also richly innervated with intrinsic and extrinsic nerves. **Parietal cells** lining the wall of the stomach secrete hydrochloric acid, whereas chief cells secrete pepsinogen (a precursor to pepsin, a digestive enzyme). Parietal cells also produce **intrinsic factor**, a substance that aids in the absorption of vitamin B₁₂. Absence of the intrinsic factor causes pernicious anemia.

After ingestion of food, the stomach functions as a food reservoir where the digestive process begins, using

mechanical movements and chemical secretions. The stomach mixes or churns the food, breaking apart the large food molecules and mixing them with gastric secretions to form chyme, which then empties into the duodenum. The *intestinal phase* begins as the chyme passes from the stomach into the duodenum, causing distention. It is assisted by secretin, a hormone that inhibits further acid production and decreases gastric motility.

Pancreas

The pancreas is a fish-shaped gland that lies behind the stomach and extends horizontally from the duodenal C-loop to the spleen. The pancreas is divided into portions known as the *head*, the *body*, and the *tail* (Fig. 55-2).

Two major cellular bodies (exocrine and endocrine) within the pancreas have separate functions. The *exocrine* part is about 80% of the organ and consists of cells that secrete enzymes needed for digestion of carbohydrates, fats, and proteins (trypsin, chymotrypsin, amylase, and lipase). The *endocrine* part of the pancreas is made up of the islets of Langerhans, with alpha cells producing glucagon and beta cells producing insulin. These hormones produced are essential in the regulation of *metabolism*. Chapter 67 describes the endocrine function of the pancreas in detail.

Liver and Gallbladder

The *liver* is the largest organ in the body (other than skin) and is located mainly in the right upper quadrant (RUQ) of the abdomen. The right and left hepatic ducts transport bile from the liver. It receives its blood supply from the hepatic artery and portal vein, resulting in about 1500 mL of blood flow through the liver every minute.

The *liver* performs more than 400 functions in three major categories: storage, protection, and metabolism. It *stores* many minerals and vitamins, such as iron, magnesium, and the fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K.

The *protective* function of the liver involves phagocytic **Kupffer cells**, which are part of the body's reticuloendothelial system. They engulf harmful bacteria and anemic red blood cells. The liver also detoxifies potentially harmful compounds (e.g., drugs, chemicals, alcohol). Therefore the risk for drug toxicity increases with aging because of decreased liver function.

The liver functions in the *metabolism* of proteins considered vital for human survival. It breaks down amino acids to remove ammonia, which is then converted to urea and is excreted via the kidneys. In addition, it synthesizes several plasma proteins, including albumin, prothrombin, and fibrinogen. The liver's role in carbohydrate metabolism involves storing and releasing glycogen as the body's energy requirements change. The organ also synthesizes, breaks down, and temporarily stores fatty acids and triglycerides.

The liver forms and continually secretes bile, which is essential for the breakdown of fat. The secretion of bile increases in response to gastrin, secretin, and cholecystokinin. Bile is secreted into small ducts that empty into the common bile duct and into the duodenum at the sphincter of Oddi. However, if the sphincter is closed, the bile goes to the gallbladder for storage.

The *gallbladder* is a pear-shaped, bulbous sac that is located underneath the liver. It is drained by the cystic duct, which joins with the hepatic duct from the liver to form the

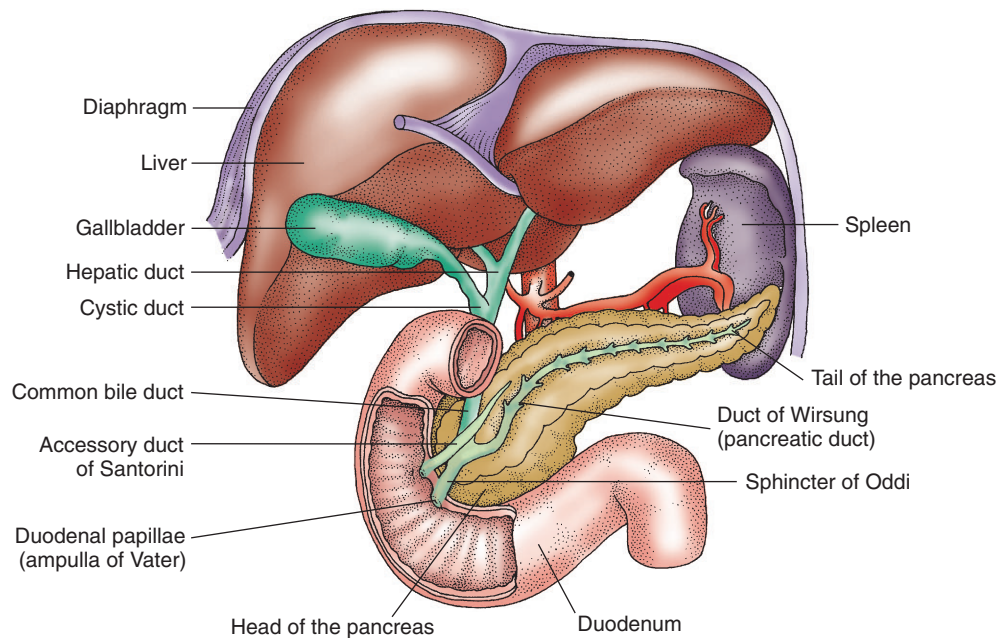


FIG. 55-2 The anatomy of the pancreas, the liver, and the gallbladder.

common bile duct (CBD). The gallbladder collects, concentrates, and stores the bile that has come from the liver. It releases the bile into the duodenum via the CBD when fat is present.

Small Intestine

The small intestine is the longest and most convoluted portion of the digestive tract, measuring 16 to 19 feet (5 to 6 m) in length in an adult. It is composed of three different regions: duodenum, jejunum, and ileum. The *duodenum* is the first 12 inches (30 cm) of the small intestine and is attached to the distal end of the pylorus. The common bile duct and pancreatic duct join to form the ampulla of Vater, emptying into the duodenum at the duodenal papilla. This papillary opening is surrounded by muscle known as the **sphincter of Oddi**. The 8-foot (2.5-m) portion of the small intestine that follows the sphincter of Oddi is the *jejunum*. The last 8 to 12 feet (2.5 to 4 m) of the small intestine is called the *ileum*. The ileocecal valve separates the entrance of the ileum from the cecum of the large intestine.

The inner surface of the small intestine has a velvety appearance because of numerous mucous membrane finger-like projections. These projections are called *intestinal villi*. In addition to the intestinal villi, the small intestine has circular folds of mucosa and submucosa, which increase the surface area for digestion and absorption.

The small intestine has three main *functions*: movement (mixing and peristalsis), digestion, and absorption. Because the intestinal villi increase the surface area of the small intestine, it is the major organ of absorption of the digestive system. The small intestine mixes and transports the chyme to mix with many digestive enzymes. It takes an average of 3 to 10 hours for the contents to be passed by peristalsis through the small intestine. Intestinal enzymes aid in the digestion of proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids.

Large Intestine

The large intestine extends about 5 to 6 feet in length from the ileocecal valve to the anus and is lined with columnar epithelium that has absorptive and mucous cells. It begins with the *cecum*, a dilated, pouchlike structure that is inferior to the ileocecal opening. At the base of the cecum is the vermiform appendix, which has no known digestive function. The large intestine then extends upward from the cecum as the colon. The colon consists of four divisions: ascending colon, transverse colon, descending colon, and sigmoid colon. The sigmoid colon empties into the rectum.

Following the sigmoid colon, the large intestine bends downward to form the rectum. The last 1 to 1½ inches (3 to 4 cm) of the large intestine is called the *anal canal*, which opens to the exterior of the body through the anus. Sphincter muscles surround the anal canal.

The large intestine's *functions* are movement, absorption, and elimination. Movement in the large intestine consists mainly of segmental contractions, like those in the small intestine, to allow enough time for the absorption of water and electrolytes. In addition, peristaltic contractions are triggered by colonic distention to move the contents toward the rectum, where the material is stored until the urge to defecate occurs. Absorption of water and some electrolytes occurs in the large intestine to reduce the fluid volume of the chyme. This process creates a more solid material, the feces, for elimination.

GASTROINTESTINAL CHANGES ASSOCIATED WITH AGING

Physiologic changes occur as people age, especially ages 65 years and older. Changes in digestion and elimination that can affect nutrition are common. For example, decreased gastric hydrochloric acid (HCl) can lead to decreased absorption of essential minerals like iron. [Chart 55-1](#) lists common

CHART 55-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Gastrointestinal System Related to Aging

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	DISORDERS RELATED TO CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Stomach Atrophy of the gastric mucosa is characterized by a decrease in the ratio of gastrin-secreting cells to somatostatin-secreting cells. This change leads to decreased hydrochloric acid levels (hypochlorhydria).	Decreased hydrochloric acid levels lead to decreased absorption of iron and vitamin B ₁₂ and to proliferation of bacteria. Atrophic gastritis occurs as a consequence of bacterial overgrowth.	Encourage bland foods high in vitamins and iron. Assess for epigastric pain.	Bland foods help prevent gastritis. Assessment helps detect gastritis.
Large Intestine Peristalsis decreases, and nerve impulses are dulled.	Decreased sensation to defecate can result in postponement of bowel movements, which leads to constipation and impaction.	Encourage a high-fiber diet and 1500 mL of fluid intake daily (if not contraindicated). Encourage as much activity as tolerated.	These interventions increase the sensation of needing to defecate.
Pancreas Distention and dilation of pancreatic ducts change. Calcification of pancreatic vessels occurs with a decrease in lipase production.	Decreased lipase level results in decreased fat absorption and digestion. Steatorrhea, or excess fat in the feces, occurs because of decreased fat digestion.	Encourage small, frequent feedings. Assess for diarrhea.	Small, frequent feedings help prevent steatorrhea. Diarrhea may be steatorrhea. Excessive diarrhea can lead to dehydration.
Liver A decrease in the number and size of hepatic cells leads to decreased liver weight and mass. This change and an increase in fibrous tissue lead to decreased protein synthesis and changes in liver enzymes. Enzyme activity and cholesterol synthesis are diminished.	Decreased enzyme activity depresses drug metabolism, which leads to accumulation of drugs—possibly to toxic levels.	Assess for adverse effects of all drugs.	Assessment can help detect drug toxicity.

GI changes and nursing implications when caring for older adults.

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

The purpose of the health history is to determine the events related to the current health problem. One tool for assessing GI function is the nutritional-metabolic pattern and the elimination pattern assessment found in [Chart 55-2](#). Focus questions about changes in appetite, weight, and stool. Determine the patient's pain experience.

Collect data about the patient's age, gender, and culture. This information can be helpful in assessing who is likely to have particular GI system disorders. For instance, older adults are more at risk for stomach cancer than are younger adults. Younger adults are more at risk for inflammatory bowel disease (IBD). The exact reasons for these differences continue to be studied.

Question the patient about previous GI disorders or abdominal surgeries. Ask about prescription medications being taken, including how much, when the drugs are taken, and why they have been prescribed. Inquire if the patient takes over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, herbs, and/or supplements. In particular, ask whether aspirin, NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen), laxatives, herbal preparations, or enemas are routinely taken. Large amounts of aspirin or NSAIDs can predispose the patient to peptic ulcer disease and GI bleeding.

Long-term use of laxatives or enemas can cause dependence and result in constipation and electrolyte imbalance. Some herbal preparations, especially ayurvedic herbs, can affect appetite, absorption, and elimination. Determine if the patient smokes or has ever smoked cigarettes, cigars, or pipes. Smoking is a major risk factor for most GI cancers. Chewing tobacco is a major cause of oral cancer.

Finally, investigate the patient's travel history. Ask whether he or she has traveled outside of the country recently. This information may provide clues about the cause of symptoms like diarrhea.

Nutrition History

A nutrition history is important when assessing GI system function. Many conditions manifest themselves as a result of alterations in intake and absorption of nutrients. The purpose of a nutritional assessment is to gather information about



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Cultural and religious patterns are important in obtaining a complete nutritional history. Ask if certain foods pose a problem for the patient. For example, the spices or hot pepper used in cooking in many cultures can aggravate or precipitate GI tract symptoms such as indigestion. Note religious patterns such as fasting or abstinence.

About 80% to 90% of black people are lactose intolerant. A much smaller percentage of white people also have this problem. Lactose intolerance causes bloating, cramping, and diarrhea as a result of lack of the enzyme *lactase*. Lactase is needed to convert lactose in milk and other dairy products to glucose and galactose.

CHART 55-2 GASTROINTESTINAL ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Nutritional-Metabolic Pattern

- What is your typical daily food intake? Describe a day's meals, snacks, and vitamins.
- How much salt do you typically add to your food? Do you use salt substitutes?
- How is your appetite? Any recent change?
- Do you have any difficulty chewing or swallowing?
- Do you wear dentures? How well do they fit?
- Do you ever experience indigestion or "heartburn"? How often? What seems to cause it? What helps it?
- Do you have pain, diarrhea, gas, or any other problems? Do any specific foods cause this for you?
- What is your typical daily fluid intake? What types of fluids (water, juices, soft drinks, coffee, tea)? How much?
- Have you had any recent change in your weight? Weight gain? Weight loss? How much?
- Have you noticed a change in the tightness of your rings or shoes? Tighter? Looser?
- Have you noticed any difference in the size of your abdomen?

Elimination Pattern

- What is your usual bowel elimination pattern? Frequency? Character? Discomfort? Laxatives?
- Do you have any pain or bleeding associated with bowel movements?
- Have you experienced any changes in your usual bowel pattern?
- When was your last rectal examination?
- Have you ever had an endoscopy or a colonoscopy?
- What is your usual urinary elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Color? Odor? Control?
- Have you noticed a change in the amount of urine?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

how well the patient's nutritional needs are being met. Inquire about any special diet and whether there are any known food allergies. Ask the patient to describe the usual foods that are eaten daily and the times that meals are taken.

Health problems can also affect nutritional intake, so explore any changes that have occurred in eating habits as a result of illness. **Anorexia** (loss of appetite for food) can occur with GI disease. Assess changes in taste and any difficulty or pain with swallowing (dysphagia) that could be associated with esophageal disorders. Also ask if abdominal pain or discomfort occurs with eating and whether the patient has experienced any nausea, vomiting, or **dyspepsia** (indigestion or heartburn). Unknown food allergies often cause these symptoms. Inquire about any unintentional weight loss, because some cancers of the GI tract may present in this manner. Assess for alcohol and caffeine consumption, because both substances are associated with many GI disorders, such as gastritis and peptic ulcer disease.

The patient's socioeconomic status may have a profound impact on his or her nutritional status. For example, people who have limited budgets, such as some older adults or the unemployed, may not be able to purchase foods required for a balanced diet. In addition, they may substitute less expensive and perhaps less effective OTC medications or herbs for prescription drugs. Necessary medical care may be delayed, and patients may not seek health care until conditions are well advanced.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Ask about a family history of GI disorders. Some GI health problems have a genetic predisposition. For example, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) is an inherited autosomal dominant disorder that predisposes the patient to colon cancer (McCance et al., 2010). Specific genetic risks are discussed with the GI problems in later chapters.

Current Health Problems

Because GI clinical manifestations are often vague and difficult for the patient to describe, it is important to obtain a chronologic account of the current problem, symptoms, and any treatments taken. Furthermore, ask about the location, quality, quantity, timing (onset, duration), and factors that may aggravate or alleviate each symptom (see [Chart 55-2](#)).

For example, a change in bowel habits is a common assessment finding. Obtain this information from the patient:

- Pattern of bowel movements
- Color and consistency of the feces
- Occurrence of diarrhea or constipation
- Effective action taken to relieve diarrhea or constipation
- Presence of frank blood or tarry stools
- Presence of abdominal distention or gas

An unintentional weight gain or loss is another symptom that needs further investigation. Assess the patient's:

- Normal weight
- Weight gain or loss
- Period of time for weight change
- Changes in appetite or oral intake

Pain is a common concern of patients with GI tract disorders. The mnemonic **PQRST** may be helpful in organizing the current problem assessment ([Jarvis, 2012](#)):

P: Precipitating or palliative. What brings it on? What makes it better? Worse? When did you first notice it?

Q: Quality or quantity. How does it look, feel, or sound? How intense/severe is it?

R: Region or radiation. Where is it? Does it spread anywhere?

S: Severity scale. How bad is it (on a scale of 1 to 10)? Is it getting better, worse, or staying the same?

T: Timing. Onset—Exactly when did it first occur? Duration—How long did it last? Frequency—How often does it occur?

Abdominal pain is often vague and difficult to evaluate. Ask the patient to describe the type of pain, such as burning, gnawing, or stabbing. The location of the pain can be determined by asking him or her to point to the involved site. Ask about the relationship of food intake to the onset or worsening of pain. For example, a high-fat meal may cause gallbladder pain.

Changes in the skin may result from several GI tract disorders, such as liver and biliary system obstruction. Ask about whether these clinical manifestations have occurred, or assess whether they are present:

- Skin discolorations or rashes
- Itching
- **Jaundice** (yellowing of skin caused by bilirubin pigments)
- Increased bruising
- Increased tendency to bleed

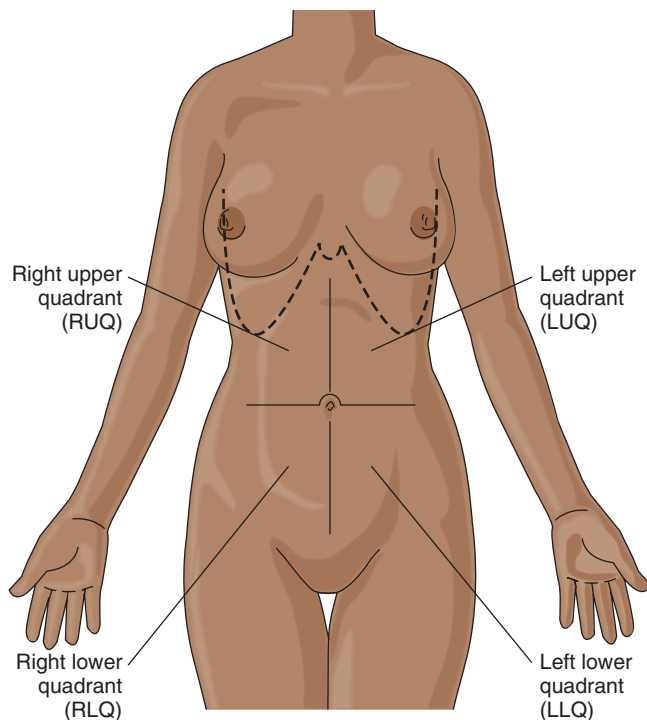


FIG. 55-3 A topographic division of the abdomen into quadrants.

Physical Assessment

Physical assessment involves a comprehensive examination of the patient's nutritional status, mouth, and abdomen. Nutritional assessment is discussed in detail in [Chapter 63](#). Oral assessment is described in [Chapter 56](#).

In preparation for examination of the *abdomen*, ask the patient to empty his or her bladder and then to lie in a supine position with knees bent, keeping the arms at the sides to prevent tensing of the abdominal muscles.

The abdominal examination usually begins at the patient's right side and proceeds in a systematic fashion ([Fig. 55-3](#)):

- Right upper quadrant (RUQ)
- Left upper quadrant (LUQ)
- Left lower quadrant (LLQ)
- Right lower quadrant (RLQ)

[Table 55-1](#) lists the organs that lie in each of these areas.

If areas of pain or discomfort are noted from the history, this area is examined last in the examination sequence. This sequence should prevent the patient from tensing abdominal muscles because of the pain, which would make the examination difficult. Examine any area of tenderness cautiously, and instruct the patient to state whether it is too painful. Observe his or her face for signs of distress or pain.

The abdomen is assessed by using the four techniques of examination, but in a sequence different from that used for other body systems: inspection, auscultation, percussion, and then palpation. This sequence is preferred so that palpation and percussion do not increase intestinal activity and bowel sounds. As a nurse generalist, perform inspection, auscultation, and light palpation. Percussion and deep palpation may be done by health care providers, including advanced practice nurses (APNs), or specialty nurses. If appendicitis or an abdominal aneurysm is suspected, palpation is not done.

TABLE 55-1 LOCATION OF BODY STRUCTURES IN EACH ABDOMINAL QUADRANT

Right Upper Quadrant (RUQ)

- Most of the liver
- Gallbladder
- Duodenum
- Head of the pancreas
- Hepatic flexure of the colon
- Part of the ascending and transverse colon

Right Lower Quadrant (RLQ)

- Cecum
- Appendix
- Right ureter
- Right ovary and fallopian tube
- Right spermatic cord

Midline

- Abdominal aorta
- Uterus (if enlarged)
- Bladder (if distended)

Left Upper Quadrant (LUQ)

- Left lobe of the liver
- Stomach
- Spleen
- Body and tail of the pancreas
- Splenic flexure of the colon
- Part of the transverse and descending colon

Left Lower Quadrant (LLQ)

- Part of the descending colon
- Sigmoid colon
- Left ureter
- Left ovary and fallopian tube
- Left spermatic cord

Inspection

Inspect the skin, and note any of these findings:

- Overall symmetry of the abdomen
- Presence of discolorations or scarring
- Abdominal distention
- Bulging flanks
- Taut, glistening skin

Observe the shape of the abdomen by observing its contour and symmetry. The contour of the abdomen can be rounded, flat, concave, or distended. It is best determined when standing at the side of the bed or treatment table and looking down on the abdomen. View the abdomen at eye level from the side. Note whether the contour is symmetric or asymmetric.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If a bulging, pulsating mass is present during assessment of the abdomen, do not touch the area because the patient may have an abdominal aortic aneurysm, a life-threatening problem. Notify the health care provider of this finding immediately! Peristaltic movements are rarely seen unless the patient is thin and has increased peristalsis. If these movements are observed, note the quadrant of origin and the direction of peristaltic flow. Report this finding to the health care provider because it may indicate an intestinal obstruction.

Asymmetry of the abdomen can indicate problems affecting the underlying body structures (see Table 55-1). Note the shape and position of the umbilicus for any deviations. The presence of ecchymosis around the umbilicus (**Cullen's sign**) is an indication of intra-abdominal bleeding.

Finally, observe the patient's abdominal movements, including the normal rising and falling with inspiration and expiration, and note any distress during movement. Occasionally, pulsations may be visible, particularly in the area of the abdominal aorta.

Auscultation

Auscultation of the abdomen is performed with the diaphragm of the stethoscope, because bowel sounds are usually high pitched. Place the stethoscope lightly on the abdominal wall while listening for bowel sounds in all four quadrants, beginning in the RLQ at the ileocecal valve area.

Bowel sounds are created as air and fluid move through the GI tract. They are normally heard as relatively high-pitched, irregular gurgles every 5 to 15 seconds, with a normal frequency range of 5 to 30 per minute. Bowel sounds are characterized as normal, hypoactive, or hyperactive. They are diminished or absent after abdominal surgery or in the patient with peritonitis or paralytic ileus.

For many years, nurses have been taught to count the number of bowel sounds in each quadrant as part of routine and postoperative abdominal assessment to assess for peristalsis. However, a classic study showed that the best, most reliable method for assessing the return of peristalsis after abdominal surgery is to ask the patient if he or she has passed flatus within the past 8 hours or a stool within the past 12 to 24 hours (Madsen et al., 2005).

Increased bowel sounds, especially loud, gurgling sounds, result from increased motility of the bowel (**borborygmus**). These sounds are usually heard in the patient with diarrhea or gastroenteritis or above a complete intestinal obstruction.

When auscultating the abdomen, also listen for vascular sounds or **bruits** ("swooshing" sounds) over the abdominal aorta, the renal arteries, and the iliac arteries. A bruit heard over the aorta usually indicates the presence of an aneurysm. *If this sound is heard, do not percuss or palpate the abdomen. Notify the health care provider of your findings!*

Percussion

Percussion may be used by APNs and other health care providers to determine the size of solid organs; to detect the presence of masses, fluid, and air; and to estimate the size of the liver and spleen. The **percussion notes** normally heard in the abdomen are termed **tympanic** (the high-pitched, loud, musical sound of an air-filled intestine) or **dull** (the medium-pitched, softer, thudlike sound over a solid organ, such as the liver).

The liver and spleen can be percussed. An enlarged liver is called **hepatomegaly**. Dullness heard in the left anterior axillary line indicates enlargement of the spleen (**splenomegaly**). Mild to moderate splenomegaly can be detected before the spleen becomes palpable.

Palpation

The purpose of palpation is to determine the size and location of abdominal organs and to assess for the presence of masses or tenderness. Palpation of the abdomen consists of

two types: light palpation and deep palpation. Only physicians and APNs, such as clinical nurse specialists and nurse practitioners, should perform deep palpation. Deep palpation is used to further determine the size and shape of abdominal organs and masses.

The technique of **light palpation** is used to detect large masses and areas of tenderness. Place the first four fingers of the palpating hand close together and then place them lightly on the abdomen and proceed smoothly and systematically from quadrant to quadrant. Depress the abdomen to a depth of $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch (1.25 to 2.5 cm). Proceed with a rotational movement of the palpating hand. Note any areas of tenderness or guarding because these areas will be examined last and cautiously during deep palpation. While performing light palpation, notice signs of rigidity, which, unlike voluntary guarding, is a sign of peritoneal inflammation. Areas of pain should be evaluated for rebound tenderness (**Blumberg's sign**). With fingers placed at a 90-degree angle in relation to the abdomen, the examiner pushes slowly and deeply, releasing quickly. Pain felt on release is a positive sign for rebound tenderness and should be reported to the health care provider.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is seen in the emergency department with reports of nausea, anorexia, and diarrhea. In what sequence will the nurse assess the client's abdomen? (Select in order of priority.)

- A. Auscultation
- B. Percussion
- C. Inspection
- D. Light palpation

Psychosocial Assessment

Psychosocial assessment focuses on how the GI health problem affects the patient's life and lifestyle. Remember that patients are often reluctant to discuss elimination problems, which may be very personal and embarrassing. The interview focus is on whether usual activities have been interrupted or disturbed, including employment. Question the patient about recent stressful events. Emotional stress has been associated with the development or exacerbation (flare-up) of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and other GI disorders. If the patient is diagnosed with cancer, he or she is expected to experience the phases of the grieving process. Patients may be depressed, angry, or in denial. More specific psychosocial assessments are included in later GI chapters as part of each disease discussion.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

To make an accurate assessment of the many possible causes of GI system abnormalities, laboratory testing of blood, urine, and stool specimens may be performed.

Serum Tests. A **complete blood count (CBC)** aids in the diagnosis of anemia and infection. It also detects changes in the blood's formed elements. In adults, GI bleeding is the most frequent cause of anemia. It is associated with GI cancer, peptic ulcer disease, and inflammatory bowel disease.

Because the liver is the main site of all proteins involved in coagulation, prothrombin time (PT) is useful in evaluating

the levels of these clotting factors. *PT* measures the rate at which prothrombin is converted to thrombin, a process that depends on vitamin K–associated clotting factors. Severe acute or chronic liver damage leads to a prolonged *PT* secondary to impaired synthesis of clotting proteins.

Many *electrolytes* are altered in GI tract dysfunction. For example, calcium is absorbed in the GI tract and may be measured to detect malabsorption. Excessive vomiting or diarrhea causes sodium or potassium depletion, thus requiring replacement.

Assays of serum enzymes are important in the evaluation of liver damage. **Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)** and **alanine aminotransferase (ALT)** are two enzymes found in the liver and other organs. These enzymes are elevated in most liver disorders, but they are highest in conditions that cause necrosis, such as severe viral hepatitis and cirrhosis.

Elevations in serum *amylase* and *lipase* may indicate acute pancreatitis. In this disease, serum amylase levels begin to elevate within 24 hours of onset and remain elevated for up to 5 days. Serum amylase and lipase are not elevated when *extensive* pancreatic necrosis is present because there are few pancreatic cells manufacturing the enzymes.

Bilirubin is the primary pigment in bile, which is normally conjugated and excreted by the liver and biliary system. It is measured as total serum bilirubin, conjugated (direct) bilirubin, and unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin. These measurements are important in the evaluation of jaundice and in the evaluation of liver and biliary tract functioning. Elevations in direct and indirect bilirubin levels can indicate impaired secretion.

The serum level of *ammonia* may also be measured to evaluate hepatic function. Ammonia is normally used to rebuild amino acids or is converted to urea for excretion. Elevated levels are seen in conditions that cause severe hepatocellular injury, such as cirrhosis of the liver or fulminant hepatitis (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Two primary *oncofetal antigens*—*CA19-9* and *CEA*—are evaluated to diagnose cancer, monitor the success of cancer therapy, and assess for the recurrence of cancer in the GI tract. These antigens may also be increased in benign GI conditions. New tests, such as ECCO 15 and ESMO 34, have been developed in Europe and are undergoing clinical trials. **Chart 55-3** lists blood tests commonly used by the health care provider in the diagnosis of GI disorders.

Urine Tests. The presence of **amylase** can be detected in the urine. In acute pancreatitis, renal clearance of amylase is increased. Amylase levels in the urine remain high even after serum levels return to normal. This becomes an important finding in patients who are symptomatic for 3 days or longer (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Urine *urobilinogen* is a form of bilirubin that is converted by the intestinal flora and excreted in the urine. Its measurement is useful in the evaluation of hepatic and biliary obstruction, because the presence of bilirubin in the urine often occurs before jaundice is seen.

Stool Tests. The 2010 American Cancer Society Screening Guidelines recommend yearly fecal occult blood test (FOBT), yearly fecal immunochemical test (FIT), or stool DNA (sDNA) at unspecified intervals to detect colorectal cancer early when it can be treated. These tests use a take-home, multi-sample method rather than having the test done during a digital rectal examination.

The traditionally used **FOBT** (e.g., Hemoccult II) requires an active component of guaiac and is therefore more likely than the FIT (e.g., HemeSelect or InSure) to yield false-positive results. In addition, patients having the guaiac-based test must avoid certain foods before the test, such as raw fruits and vegetables and red meat. Vitamin C–rich foods, juices, and tablets must also be avoided. Anticoagulants, such as warfarin (Coumadin), and NSAIDs should be discontinued for 7 days before testing begins. Patient compliance is likely to be higher with the FIT method because drugs and food do not interfere with the test results (Heseltine, 2007).

The newest test for detection of colorectal cancer is stool DNA (ColoSure). This test examines stool DNA to detect changes in the vimentin gene. Most patients with colorectal cancer have genetic changes that can be detected by this simple test.

Stool samples may also be collected to test for *ova* and *parasites* to aid in the diagnosis of parasitic infection. They may also be tested for *fecal fats* when **steatorrhea** (fatty stools) or malabsorption is suspected. Fat is normally absorbed in the small intestine in the presence of biliary and pancreatic secretions. In malabsorption, fat is abnormally excreted in the stool.

Other common stool tests, stool cytotoxic assay and stool culture, detect the presence of infectious agents, especially ***Clostridium difficile***. Patients who are suspected of having *C. difficile* are usually symptomatic. Prolonged antibiotic therapy, especially in older adults, depresses the natural intestinal flora, causing an overgrowth of the pathogen. The bacterium releases a toxin that causes colonic epithelium necrosis resulting in severe diarrhea that is easily transmitted from person to person via the fecal-oral route.

A stool culture takes a longer time to get results and is not the test of choice. Instead, the cytotoxic assay is considered the most reliable because it has a high sensitivity (Keske & Letizia, 2010). However, the results may not be available for up to 3 days. The most common test to detect *C. difficile* is the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) toxin A+B. It is easy to use, and the results are usually available in 2 to 6 hours (Keske & Letizia, 2010).

Imaging Assessment

Radiographic examinations and similar diagnostic procedures are useful in detecting structural and functional disorders of the GI system. Teach the patient how to prepare for the examination, provide an explanation of the procedure, and teach the required postprocedure care.

A *plain film of the abdomen* may be the first x-ray study that the health care provider requests when diagnosing a GI problem. This film can reveal abnormalities such as masses, tumors, and strictures or obstructions to normal movement. Patterns of bowel gas appear light on the abdominal film and can be useful in detecting an obstruction (ileus). No preparation is required except to wear a hospital gown and remove any jewelry or belts, which may interfere with the film.

When abdominal pain is severe or when bowel perforation is suspected, an *acute abdomen series* may be requested. This procedure consists of a chest x-ray, supine abdomen film, and an upright abdomen film. The chest x-ray may reveal a hiatal hernia, and an upright abdomen film may show air in the peritoneum from a bowel perforation. Today computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

CHART 55-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Gastrointestinal Assessment

TEST (SERUM)	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Calcium (total)	9.0-10.5 mg/dL (values decrease in older adults)	<i>Decreased</i> values indicate possible: Malabsorption Renal failure Acute pancreatitis
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L or 3.5-5.0 mmol/L	<i>Decreased</i> values indicate possible: Vomiting Gastric suctioning Diarrhea Drainage from intestinal fistulas
Albumin	3.5-5.0 g/dL	<i>Decreased</i> values indicate possible: Hepatic disease
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	3-35 international units/L or 8-20 units/L	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Liver disease Hepatitis Cirrhosis
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST)	5-40 units/L	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Liver disease Hepatitis Cirrhosis
Alkaline phosphatase	30-85 international units/L or 42-128 units/L	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Hepatic disease Biliary obstruction
Bilirubin (total)	0.1-1.0 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Hemolysis Biliary obstruction Hepatic damage
Conjugated (direct) bilirubin	0.1-0.3 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Biliary obstruction
Unconjugated (indirect) bilirubin	0.2-0.8 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Hemolysis Hepatic damage
Ammonia	15-110 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Hepatic disease such as cirrhosis
Xylose absorption	<i>5-g dose in 2 hr:</i> >20 mg/dL or >1.3 mmol/L <i>25-g dose in 2 hr:</i> >25 mg/dL or >1.7 mmol/L	<i>Decreased</i> values in blood and urine indicate possible: Malabsorption in the small intestine
Serum amylase	56-90 international units/L or 25-125 units/L	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Acute pancreatitis
Serum lipase	0-110 units/L	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Acute pancreatitis
Cholesterol	<200 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Pancreatitis Biliary obstruction <i>Decreased</i> values indicate possible: Liver cell damage
Carbohydrate antigen 19-9 (CA19-9)	<37 units/mL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Cancer of the pancreas, stomach, colon Acute pancreatitis Inflammatory bowel disease
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)	<i>Nonsmoker:</i> <2.5 ng/mL <i>Smoker:</i> up to 5 ng/mL	<i>Increased</i> values indicate possible: Colorectal, stomach, pancreatic cancer Ulcerative colitis Crohn's disease Hepatitis Cirrhosis

scans or ultrasound scans are used more often than abdominal x-rays.

An **upper GI radiographic series** is an x-ray visualization from the mouth to the duodenojejunal junction. It is used to detect disorders of structure or function of the esophagus

(barium swallow), stomach, or duodenum. An extension of the upper GI series, the *small bowel follow-through* (SBFT), continues tracing the barium through the small intestine—up to and including the ileocecal junction—to detect disorders of the jejunum or ileum. These tests are not performed

as commonly today because endoscopy procedures allow for direct visualization of the internal GI tract.

Remind the patient to withhold foods and liquids for 8 hours before the test. If possible, opioid analgesics and anticholinergic medications are withheld for 24 hours before the test because they decrease intestinal tract motility. Instruct the patient about the barium preparation and the need to drink about 16 ounces of the barium. The radiology nurse or technician explains that a rotating examination table will be used to assist the patient in assuming the vertical, supine, prone, and lateral positions required for this test.

The initial procedure takes about 30 minutes. Fluoroscopy is used to trace the barium through the esophagus and stomach. The patient stands against the x-ray table for this part of the test. The table then moves to a lying position for more views of the stomach and duodenum. The patient then drinks more barium as quickly as possible while x-rays are taken. To attempt to make him or her as comfortable as possible, a pillow for the head and a sheet to prevent chilling are supplied whenever possible. The position changes help coat the mucosa and identify gastroesophageal reflux and hiatal hernia.

If a small bowel radiographic series is included, the patient drinks additional barium and more x-rays are taken at specific intervals. This series can take several hours, depending on how long it takes the barium to reach the cecum.

After either of these series, teach the patient to drink plenty of fluids to help eliminate the barium. A mild laxative or stool softener may be given to assist in its elimination. The radiology nurse or technician instructs the patient that stools may be chalky white for 24 to 72 hours as barium is excreted. When all barium is passed, brown stools return. If the patient is at home, he or she is instructed to report abdominal fullness, pain, or a delay in return to brown stools.

A **barium enema** examination, also known as a **lower GI series**, is an x-ray of the large intestine. The 2010 American Cancer Society Screening Guidelines include this test as an option to determine the presence of colorectal cancer or polyps for people older than 50 years. The options include:

- Double-contrast barium enema every 5 years
- Flexible sigmoidoscopy every 5 years
- CT colonography (virtual colonoscopy) every 5 years
- Colonoscopy every 10 years

Patient preparation is similar to that for colonoscopy. After the study is completed, the patient expels the barium. The radiology nurse or technician teaches the patient to drink plenty of fluids to assist in eliminating the barium and prevent an intestinal obstruction. A laxative is given to help remove the barium from the intestinal tract. Stools are chalky white for about 24 to 72 hours, until all barium is passed. If the patient has positive results, he or she is scheduled for a colonoscopy.

Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC) is an x-ray of the biliary duct system using an iodinated dye instilled via a percutaneous needle inserted through the liver into the intrahepatic ducts. This procedure may be performed when a patient has jaundice or persistent upper abdominal pain, even after cholecystectomy, but is rarely done as a diagnostic procedure today. Better information about dilated biliary ducts can be obtained using ultrasound scans and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) (discussed on p. 1188).

Computed tomography (CT), also referred to as a **CT scan**, provides a noninvasive cross-sectional x-ray view that can detect tissue densities and abnormalities in the abdomen, including the liver, pancreas, spleen, and biliary tract. It may be performed with or without contrast medium.

For the CT scan, the patient is told that he or she will need to lie still in a rather enclosed space of the machine. He or she must remove all jewelry and metal. If contrast medium is to be used, ask about allergies to seafood and iodine. The patient is NPO for at least 4 hours before the test if a contrast medium is to be used. IV access will be required for injection of the contrast medium. Advise the patient that he or she may feel warm and flushed upon injection. The patient who is mildly claustrophobic may require a mild sedative to tolerate the study. The radiologic technician instructs the patient to lie still and to hold his or her breath when asked, as the technician takes a series of images. The test takes about 30 minutes.

Like other parts of the body, the abdomen and its organs may also be evaluated by **magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)**, such as **magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP)**. For many patients with abdominal symptoms, this may be the first diagnostic test requested by the health care provider.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older adult is scheduled for a double-contrast barium enema. What is the priority health teaching the nurse will provide?

- A. "Be sure to take the laxative as prescribed after the test."
- B. "Drink a gallon of GoLYTELY the day before the test."
- C. "Do not take food or fluids for 24 hours before the test."
- D. "Tell the nurse if you have flatus after the test is completed."

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Endoscopy. **Endoscopy** is direct visualization of the GI tract using a flexible fiberoptic endoscope. It is commonly requested to evaluate bleeding, ulceration, inflammation, tumors, and cancer of the esophagus, stomach, biliary system, or bowel. Obtaining specimens for biopsy and cell studies (e.g., *Helicobacter pylori*) is also possible through the endoscope. There are several types of endoscopic examinations. The patient must sign an informed consent form before having these invasive studies.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy. **Esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD)** is a visual examination of the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum. This procedure has significantly reduced the number of upper GI series that are done. If GI bleeding is found during an EGD, the physician can inject a sclerotherapy agent into the affected area to stop the bleeding. If the patient has an esophageal stricture, it can be dilated during an EGD.

Teach the patient preparing for an upper GI endoscopic examination to remain NPO for 6 to 8 hours before the procedure. Usual drug therapy for hypertension or other diseases may be taken the morning of the test. However, diabetic patients should consult their health care provider for special instructions. Patients are also usually asked to avoid anticoagulants, aspirin, or NSAIDs for several days before the test unless it is absolutely necessary. Tell the patient that a flexible tube will be passed down the esophagus while he or she is under moderate sedation. Midazolam hydrochloride (Versed),



FIG. 55-4 Esophagogastroduodenoscopy allows visualization of the esophagus, the stomach, and the duodenum. If the esophagus is the focus of the examination, the procedure is called *esophagoscopy*. If the stomach is the focus, the procedure is called *gastrosocopy*.

fentanyl (Fentanyl, Sublimaze), and/or propofol (Diprivan) are commonly used drugs for sedation. Atropine may be administered to dry secretions. In addition, a local anesthetic is sprayed to inactivate the gag reflex and facilitate passage of the tube. Explain that this anesthetic will depress the gag reflex and that swallowing will be difficult. If the patient has dentures, they are removed.

After the drugs are given, the patient is placed in the left lateral decubitus (Sims', or left side-lying) position with a towel or basin at the mouth for secretions. A bite block is inserted to prevent biting down on the endoscope and to protect the teeth. The physician passes the tube through the mouth and into the esophagus (Fig. 55-4). The procedure takes about 20 to 30 minutes.

After the test, the endoscopy nurse or technician checks vital signs frequently (usually every 30 minutes) until the sedation wears off. The siderails of the bed are raised during this time. The patient remains NPO until the gag reflex returns (usually in 1 to 2 hours).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority for care after esophagogastroduodenoscopy is to prevent aspiration. Do not offer fluids or food by mouth until you are sure that the gag reflex is intact! Monitor for signs of perforation, such as pain, bleeding, or fever.

Remind the patient to not drive for at least 12 hours after the procedure because of sedation. Teach him or her that a hoarse voice or sore throat may persist for several days after the test. Throat lozenges can be used to relieve throat discomfort.

Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography. **Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)** includes visual and radiographic examination of the liver, gallbladder, bile ducts, and pancreas to identify the cause and location of obstruction. It is commonly used today for therapeutic purposes rather than for diagnosis. After a cannula is inserted into the common bile duct, a radiopaque dye is instilled and then several x-ray images are obtained. The

physician may perform a **papillotomy** (a small incision in the sphincter around the ampulla of Vater) to remove gallstones. If a biliary duct stricture is found, plastic or metal stents may be inserted to keep the ducts open. Biopsies of tissue are also frequently taken during this test.

The patient prepares for this test in the same manner as for an EGD, including being NPO for 6 to 8 hours before the test. The patient requires IV access for moderate sedation drugs. Ask about prior exposure to x-ray contrast media and any sensitivities or allergies. If the patient has dentures, they are removed.

Ask the patient if he or she has an implantable medical device, such as a cardiac pacemaker. Electrocautery cannot be used with this type of device (Brueschoff, 2010). Perform medication reconciliation to determine if the patient is taking anticoagulants, NSAIDs, antiplatelet drugs, or antihyperglycemic agents. The physician decides which of these drugs are safe to take and whether any will need to be stopped before the test.

The endoscopic portion of an ERCP is similar to that of an EGD, except that the endoscope is advanced farther to the duodenum and into the biliary tract. Once the cannula is in the common duct, contrast medium is injected and x-rays are taken to view the biliary tract. A tilt table assists in distributing the contrast medium to all areas to be assessed. The patient is placed in a left lateral position for viewing the common bile duct. Once the cannula is placed, he or she is put in a prone position. After examination of the biliary tree, the cannula is directed into the pancreatic duct for examination. The ERCP lasts from 30 minutes to 2 hours, depending on the treatment that may be done.

After the test, assess vital signs frequently, usually every 15 minutes, until the patient is stable. To prevent aspiration, check to ensure that the gag reflex has returned before offering fluids or food. *Teach the patient and family to monitor for severe postprocedure complications at home, including cholangitis (gallbladder inflammation), bleeding, perforation, sepsis, and pancreatitis. The patient has severe pain if any of these complications occur. Fever is present in sepsis. These problems do not occur immediately after the procedure; they may take several hours to 2 days to develop.*

Colicky abdominal pain can result from air instilled during the procedure. Instruct the patient to report abdominal pain, fever, nausea, or vomiting that fails to resolve after returning home. Be sure that the patient has someone to drive him or her home if the test was done on an ambulatory basis.

Small Bowel Capsule Endoscopy. Small bowel endoscopy, or **enteroscopy**, provides a view of the small intestine. Capsule video endoscopy (M2A) is a small bowel enteroscopy that visualizes the entire small bowel, including the distal ileum. It is used to evaluate and locate the source of GI bleeding. Before the development of the M2A Capsule Endoscope, viewing the small intestine was inadequate. The capsule battery lasts around 8 hours so it is not used to view the colon.

Prepare the patient by explaining the procedure, the purpose, and what to expect during the testing. The patient must fast (water only) for 8 to 10 hours before the test and be NPO for the first 2 hours of the testing.

At the time of the procedure, the patient's abdomen is marked for the location of the sensors, and the eight-lead sensors (Sensor Array) are applied. The patient wears an

abdominal belt that houses a data recorder to capture the transmitted images. After the capsule is taken with a glass of water, the patient may return to normal activity for the remainder of the study. He or she can resume a normal diet 4 hours after swallowing the capsule. At the end of the procedure, the patient returns to the facility with the capsule equipment for downloading to a central computer. The procedure lasts about 8 hours.

Because the M2A Capsule Endoscope is a single-use device that moves through the GI tract by peristalsis and is excreted naturally, explain to the patient that the capsule will be seen in the stool. No other follow-up is necessary.

Colonoscopy. Colonoscopy is an endoscopic examination of the entire large bowel. The American Cancer Society recommends that, beginning at age 50 years, all men and women should have a colonoscopy every 10 years or choose another equally effective recommended screening option (ACS, 2010). Those at high risk for cancer (e.g., family history) or those who had polyps removed should have the test more often. The physician may also obtain tissue biopsy specimens or remove polyps through the colonoscope. A colonoscopy can also evaluate the cause of chronic diarrhea or locate the source of GI bleeding. A sclerotherapy drug may be injected at the site of any bleeding. An alternative to this invasive procedure is the *CT colonography (virtual colonoscopy)*, which is not invasive and uses a CT scanner to view the colon. Patient preparation for this alternative is the same as that for the traditional colonoscopy.

Patient Preparation. Teach the patient to stay on a clear liquid diet the day before the scheduled colonoscopy. Instruct him or her to avoid red, orange, or purple (grape) beverages, and drink an abundant amount of Gatorade or other sports drink to replace electrolytes that are lost during bowel preparation. The patient should be NPO (except water) 4 to 6 hours before the procedure.

Remind patients to avoid aspirin, anticoagulants, and antiplatelet drugs for several days before the procedure. Diabetic patients should check with their health care provider about drug therapy requirements on the day of the test because they are NPO.

The patient drinks an oral liquid preparation for cleaning the bowel (e.g., sodium phosphate [Phospho-Soda]) the evening before the examination and may repeat that procedure the morning of the study. Some physicians prescribe a gallon of GoLYTELY to cleanse the bowel the day before. This regimen should not be used for older adults to prevent excessive fluid and electrolyte loss. All solutions should be chilled to improve their taste. Remind the patient to drink them quickly to prevent nausea. Watery diarrhea usually begins in about an hour after starting the bowel preparation process. In some cases, the patient may require laxatives, suppositories (e.g., bisacodyl [Dulcolax]), or one or more small-volume cleansing enemas (e.g., Fleet's).

Procedure. IV access is necessary for the administration of moderate sedation. The physician prescribes drugs to aid in relaxation, usually IV midazolam hydrochloride (Versed), propofol (Diprivan), and/or an opiate, such as Fentanyl. Complementary and alternative therapies, such as reiki, are being studied to determine if they reduce the amount of sedation needed (see the Evidence-Based Practice box above).

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Does Modified Reiki Decrease Pain and Anxiety in Patients Undergoing a Colonoscopy?

Hulse, R.S., Stuart-Shor, E.M., & Russo, J. (2010). Endoscopic procedure with a modified Reiki intervention: A pilot study. *Gastroenterology Nursing, 33*(1), 20-26.

This pilot study examined the use of Reiki before colonoscopy to reduce anxiety and intra-procedure medications compared with usual care. A prospective, nonblinded, partially randomized patient preference design was used for 21 first-time colonoscopy patients. There were no differences in the makeup of the control ($n = 10$) and experimental groups ($n = 11$): about half were woman, and the mean age was 58 years.

The Reiki intervention reduced the patients' blood pressure, pulse, and respirations, but the drug regimen used during the procedure was the same in both groups. The experimental group did not require additional medication during the procedure. The researchers concluded that adjunctive therapy may help reduce anxiety and pain in patients having a colonoscopy.

Level of Evidence: 5

This pilot study is very small and needs to be replicated using a more rigorous, randomized, controlled trial.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The use and study of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) have increased in the past decade. A number of therapies have been shown to decrease pain and anxiety. Nurses need to consider using these modalities as part of holistic patient care. Many patients employ CAM and would prefer it be a part of their care. Assess the patient's use of adjunctive therapies, and ask the patient what he or she prefers.

Initially, the patient is placed on the left side with the knees drawn up while the endoscope is placed into the rectum and moved to the cecum. Air may be instilled for better visualization. The entire procedure lasts about 30 to 60 minutes. Atropine sulfate is kept available in case of bradycardia resulting from vasovagal response.

Follow-up Care. Check vital signs every 15 minutes until the patient is stable. Keep the siderails up until the patient is fully alert, and maintain NPO status. Observe for signs of perforation (causes severe pain) and hemorrhage, such as a rapid drop in blood pressure. Reassure the patient that a feeling of fullness, cramping, and passage of flatus are expected for several hours after the test. Fluids are permitted after the patient passes flatus to indicate that peristalsis has returned.

If a polypectomy or tissue biopsy was performed, there may be a small amount of blood in the first stool after the colonoscopy. However, report excessive bleeding or severe pain to the health care provider immediately (Chart 55-4).

As with other endoscopic procedures, the patient will need someone to provide transportation home. Remind the patient to avoid driving for 12 hours after the procedure because of the effects of sedation.

Virtual Colonoscopy. A noninvasive imaging procedure to obtain multi-dimensional views of the entire colon is the *CT colonography*, most popularly known as the **virtual colonoscopy**. The bowel preparation and dietary restrictions are

CHART 55-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient after a Colonoscopy

- Do not allow the patient to take anything by mouth until sedation wears off and he or she is alert and passes flatus.
- Take vital signs every 15 to 30 minutes until the patient is alert.
- Keep the top siderails up until the patient is alert.
- Assess for rectal bleeding or severe pain.
- Remind the patient that fullness and mild abdominal cramping are expected for several hours.
- Assess for manifestations of bowel perforation, including severe abdominal pain and guarding. Fever may occur later.
- Assess for manifestations of hypovolemic shock, including dizziness, light-headedness, decreased blood pressure, tachycardia, pallor, and altered mental status (may be the first sign).
- If the procedure is performed in an ambulatory care setting, arrange for another person to drive the patient home.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Evidence-Based Practice

A 55-year-old woman has her first screening colonoscopy today, and you are assigned as her preprocedure and postprocedure nurse. When you take her vital signs before the procedure, her blood pressure is 156/88 mm Hg. She does not have a history of hypertension or diabetes mellitus. Upon further observation, you notice that the patient seems very anxious. She states that her sister had a colonoscopy last year and was diagnosed with stage 3 colorectal cancer for which she is being treated.

1. How will you respond to the patient at this time?
2. What other preprocedure care will you provide before she has her colonoscopy?
3. After the procedure, the patient seems very drowsy and asks for something to drink. How will you respond to her and why? What evidence supports this decision?
4. The patient tells you that she had two polyps removed but there is no sign of cancer. In view of her polyps and her family history of colorectal cancer, what health teaching about colorectal cancer screening will you provide?

similar to those for traditional colonoscopy. However, if a polyp is detected during a virtual colonoscopy or bleeding is found, the patient must have a follow-up invasive colonoscopy for treatment. Therefore the advantage of the traditional colonoscopy is that both diagnostic testing and minor surgical procedures can be done at the same time.

Sigmoidoscopy. Proctosigmoidoscopy, often referred to as a *sigmoidoscopy*, is an endoscopic examination of the rectum and sigmoid colon using a flexible scope. The purpose of this test is to screen for colon cancer, investigate the source of GI bleeding, or diagnose or monitor inflammatory bowel disease. If sigmoidoscopy is used as an alternative to colonoscopy for colorectal cancer screening, it is recommended that screening begin at 50 years of age and should be done every 5 years thereafter ([American Cancer Society, 2010](#)). Patients at high risk for cancer may require more frequent screening.

The patient should have a clear liquid diet for at least 24 hours before the test. A cleansing enema or sodium biphosphate (Fleet's) enema is usually required the morning of the procedure. A laxative may also be prescribed the evening before the test.

The patient is placed on the left side in the knee-chest position. No moderate sedation is required. The endoscope is lubricated and inserted into the anus to the required depth for viewing. Tissue biopsy may be performed during this procedure, but the patient cannot feel it. The examination usually lasts about 30 minutes.

Inform the patient that mild gas pain and flatulence may be experienced from air instilled into the rectum during the examination. If a biopsy was obtained, a small amount of bleeding may be observed. Instruct the patient that excessive bleeding should be reported immediately to the health care provider.

Gastric Analysis. Gastric analysis measures the hydrochloric acid and pepsin content for evaluation of aggressive gastric and duodenal disorders (e.g., Zollinger-Ellison syndrome). There are two tests in gastric analysis: basal gastric secretion and gastric acid stimulation. Basal gastric secretion measures the secretion of hydrochloric acid between meals. If only small amounts of secretion are collected, a follow-up gastric stimulation test is given.

The patient is NPO for at least 12 hours before the test. Teach patients to avoid alcohol, tobacco, and drugs that may affect gastric secretion for 24 hours before the study. A nasogastric (NG) tube is inserted, and gastric residual contents are aspirated and discarded.

The NG tube is attached to suctioning equipment for collecting the contents at 15-minute intervals for 1 hour. Samples are collected and labeled with basal acid output (BAO), time, and volume of each specimen.

For the gastric acid stimulation test, the NG tube is left in place and a drug that stimulates gastric acid secretion (e.g., pentagastrin or betazole dihydrochloride [Histalog]) is given. Fifteen minutes after injection of the drug, specimens are again collected at 15-minute intervals for 1 hour. Samples are collected and labeled with maximal acid output (MAO), time, and volume of each specimen. Depressed levels of gastric secretion suggest the presence of gastric cancer. Increased levels of gastric secretion indicate Zollinger-Ellison syndrome and duodenal ulcers (see [Chapter 58](#)).

After the test is completed, the NG tube is removed and the patient can resume normal eating patterns. No other follow-up is necessary.

Ultrasonography. Ultrasonography (US) is a technique in which high-frequency, inaudible vibratory sound waves are passed through the body via a transducer. The echoes of the sound waves created are then recorded and converted into images for analysis. US is commonly used to view soft tissues, such as the liver, the spleen, the pancreas, and the biliary system. The advantages of this test are that it is painless and noninvasive and requires no radiation.

The patient may be fasting, depending on the abdominal organs to be examined. Inform the patient that it will be necessary to lie still during the study. He or she is instructed to drink 1 to 2 L of fluid just before the test, because a full bladder is necessary for accurate visualization.

The patient is usually placed in a supine position. The technician applies insulating gel to the end of the transducer and on the area of the abdomen under study. This gel allows airtight contact of the transducer with the skin. The technician moves the transducer back and forth over the skin until the desired images are obtained. The study takes about 15 to 30 minutes. No follow-up care is necessary.

Endoscopic Ultrasonography. Endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS) provides images of the GI wall and high-resolution images of the digestive organs. The ultrasonography is performed through the endoscope. This procedure is useful in diagnosing the presence of lymph node tumors, mucosal tumors, and tumors of the pancreas, stomach, and rectum. The patient preparation and follow-up care are similar to the preparation and follow-up care for both endoscopy and ultrasonography.

Liver-Spleen Scan. A liver-spleen scan uses IV injection of a radioactive material that is taken up primarily by the liver and secondarily by the spleen. The scan evaluates the liver and the spleen for tumors or abscesses, organ size and location, and blood flow.

Teach the patient about the need to lie still during the scanning. Assure the patient that the injection has only small amounts of radioactivity and is not dangerous. Ask female patients of childbearing age if they may be pregnant or are currently breast-feeding. The radionuclide can be found in breast milk, and radiation from x-rays or scans should be avoided in pregnancy.

The technician or the physician gives the radioactive injection through an IV line, and a wait of about 15 minutes is necessary for uptake. The patient is placed in many different positions while the scanning takes place. Tell the patient that the radionuclide is eliminated from the body through the urine in 24 hours. Careful handwashing after toileting decreases the exposure to any radiation present in the urine.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you NOTICE in a patient with adequate digestion and elimination related to the GI system?

Physical Assessment

- No nausea or vomiting
- Sufficient appetite
- No intentional weight loss
- No dyspepsia (indigestion)
- No jaundice
- Abdomen soft and not tender
- Normoactive bowel sounds present in all quadrants
- No change in bowel habits

- No abdominal pain
- Normal brown, formed stool
- No frequent diarrhea or constipation

Diagnostic Assessment

- No occult blood in stool
- Normal liver enzymes, such as ALT
- Normal bilirubin levels
- Serum and urine amylase within normal limits
- Serum ammonia level within normal limit
- Serum albumin within normal limit
- Electrolytes within normal limits

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Remember that the priority for care is to check for the return of the gag reflex after an upper endoscopic procedure before offering fluids or food; aspiration may occur if the gag reflex is not intact.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- If an endoscopic procedure on an ambulatory basis is scheduled, remind the patient to have someone available to drive him or her home because of the effects of moderate sedation.
- Teach patients having invasive colon diagnostic procedures to follow instructions carefully for the bowel preparation before testing; the bowel must be clear to allow visualization of the colon.
- Instruct the patient to drink plenty of fluids and take a laxative as prescribed to eliminate barium if used during diagnostic testing.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Remember that problems of digestion, nutrition, and elimination can markedly affect lifestyle.

Physiological Integrity

- Perform a focused abdominal assessment using inspection, auscultation, and light palpation.
- Do not palpate or auscultate any abdominal pulsating mass because it could be a life-threatening aortic aneurysm.
- Assess and report any major complications of GI testing to the health care provider.
- Review and interpret laboratory results, and report abnormal findings to the health care provider (see [Chart 55-3](#)).
- Monitor vital signs carefully for the patient having any endoscopic procedure and moderate sedation.
- Assess patients who have endoscopies for bleeding, fever, and severe pain.
- For patients having a colonoscopy, check for passage of flatus before allowing fluids or food.

Care of Patients with Oral Cavity Problems

Cherie R. Rebar



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Keys for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Plan continuity of care between the hospital and community-based agencies for patients having oral surgery.
2. Identify appropriate community resources for patients with oral cavity health problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Teach patients ways to prevent oral cancer and maintain good oral health.
4. Develop a teaching plan for patients who have stomatitis to promote digestion and nutrition.
5. Develop a teaching plan for community-based care of patients with oral cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Identify the patient's response to an oral cancer diagnosis.

7. Refer patients with oral cancer to appropriate support groups.

Physiological Integrity

8. Prioritize postoperative care for patients undergoing surgery for oral cancer to maintain a patent airway and prevent aspiration.
9. Describe collaborative interventions to promote nutrition for postoperative patients having extensive oral surgery.
10. Identify methods to help patients communicate effectively after oral surgery.
11. Plan care for patients who have disorders of the salivary glands.
12. State best practices for teaching or providing oral care for patients.

The oral cavity, or mouth, is where *digestion* of food begins. The teeth tear, grind, and crush food into small particles to promote swallowing. The enzymes in saliva begin the breakdown of carbohydrates. If a person cannot take food or fluid into the mouth, cannot chew food, or cannot swallow, the basic *human need for nutrition* may not be met by use of the GI tract. Adequate intake of fluids and nutrients into the body is vital to promote function of every body organ and system.

The pharynx (throat) is located just behind the mouth and has a role in both *digestion* and oxygenation. The pharynx is the portal between the mouth and the GI tract, where

nutrients are broken down for utilization within the body. The pharynx also is a portal for oxygenation, as inhaled air passes through the nose, into the pharynx, and down into the trachea. A blockage of the posterior oral cavity, for example, by a tumor, can interfere with oxygenation and digestion.

Oral cavity disorders, then, can severely affect *nutrition* and oxygenation, as well as speech, body image, and self-esteem. Although there are many oral health problems, this chapter discusses the most common disorders. Nurses play an important role in maintaining and restoring oral health through nursing interventions, including patient and family

CHART 56-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Maintaining a Healthy Oral Cavity

- Perform self-examination of your mouth every week; report any unusual finding or any noted change.
- Be sure to eat a well-balanced diet.
- Brush and floss your teeth every day. Set a routine, and keep to it. Keeping floss where you can see it (such as on the countertop by the sink) will encourage you to stick to your routine.
- Manage your stress as much as possible; learn how to maintain your emotional health by using healthy coping mechanisms.
- Avoid contact with agents that may cause inflammation of the mouth, such as mouthwashes that contain alcohol.
- If possible, avoid drugs that may cause inflammation of the mouth or reduce the flow of saliva.
- Be aware of any changes in the occlusion of your teeth, mouth pain, or swelling; seek medical attention promptly.
- See your dentist regularly; have problems attended to promptly.
- If you wear dentures, make sure they are in good repair and fit properly.

education. [Chart 56-1](#) lists ways to help maintain a healthy oral cavity.

STOMATITIS

Pathophysiology

Stomatitis is a broad term that refers to inflammation within the oral cavity and may present in many different ways. Painful single or multiple ulcerations (called *aphthous ulcers* or “canker sores”) that appear as inflammation and erosion of the protective lining of the mouth are one of the most common forms of stomatitis. The sores cause pain, and open areas place the person at risk for bleeding and infection. Mild erythema (redness) may respond to topical treatments. Extensive stomatitis may require treatment with opioid analgesics. Stomatitis is classified according to the cause of the inflammation. *Primary stomatitis*, the most common type, includes **aphthous** (noninfectious) **stomatitis**, herpes simplex stomatitis, and traumatic ulcers. *Secondary stomatitis* generally results from infection by opportunistic viruses, fungi, or bacteria in patients who are immunocompromised. It can also result from drugs, such as chemotherapy. (See [Chapter 24](#) for discussion of chemotherapy-induced stomatitis.)

A common type of secondary stomatitis is caused by *Candida albicans*. *Candida* is sometimes present in small amounts in the mouth, especially in older adults. Long-term antibiotic therapy destroys other normal flora and allows the *Candida* to overgrow. The result can be **candidiasis**, also called *moniliasis*, a fungal infection that is very painful. Candidiasis is also common in those undergoing immunosuppressive therapy, such as chemotherapy, radiation, and steroids.

In addition, the mouth is susceptible to the effects of human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection. Other systemic diseases that can cause stomatitis include chronic kidney disease and inflammatory bowel disease. Poor oral

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Are Best Practices When Providing Oral Hygiene to Critically Ill Older Adults Who Are Orally Intubated?

Feider, L., Mitchell, P., & Bridges, E. (2010). Oral care practices for orally intubated critically ill adults. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(2), 175-183.

Evidence shows that when proper oral care is provided as a nursing intervention for older adults, infections such as aspiration pneumonia and ventilator-associated pneumonia (VAP) decrease. In this study, a survey of 347 respondents was conducted to determine the type of oral care provided by critical care nurses for older adults who were orally intubated. These data were compared with the recommendations for oral care found in the *AACN Procedure Manual for Critical Care Nurses* and the Centers for Disease Prevention and Control (CDC) oral care guidelines.

Survey results demonstrated that there was a variety of facility policies for oral care and therefore various interpretations of how oral care should be given. Methods included a mix of brushing, swabbing, suctioning, and rinsing with chlorhexidine gluconate. Nurses were not aware that facility policies were often not consistent with national oral care standards based on current evidence.

Level of Evidence: 2

The study was a large descriptive, cross-sectional survey, with results compared against national recommendations for best practice.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The findings of this research clearly indicate that nurses recognize and practice facility-based policies but are not aware of published best practices, such as those from the CDC. Because proper oral care has been associated with a decrease in complications associated with VAP, nurses must become aware of these evidence-based standards of care and bridge the gap that exists between those standards and facility policy.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults are especially at high risk for candidiasis because aging causes a decrease in immune function. The risk increases for patients who are diabetic, malnourished, or under emotional stress. Those who wear dentures may use soft denture liners that provide comfort but can also be colonized by *C. albicans*, contributing to denture stomatitis. In addition, it is now known that older adults who have poor oral hygiene are at high risk for mouth infections and aspiration pneumonia. All health care professionals in any health care setting should be trained in and aware of best practices for oral care for geriatric populations; this could greatly improve patient outcomes, especially for older intubated adults in critical care settings. (See the Evidence-Based Practice box above.)

health is a risk factor for certain infections, such as ventilator-associated pneumonia.

Stomatitis can result from infection, allergy, vitamin deficiency, systemic disease, and irritants such as tobacco and alcohol. Infectious agents, such as bacteria and viruses, may have a role in the development of recurrent stomatitis.

Certain foods may trigger allergic responses that cause aphthous ulcers. Foods such as coffee, potatoes, cheese, nuts, citrus fruits, and gluten may be causative factors. In some cases, strict diets have resulted in the improvement of ulcers. Deficiencies in complex B vitamins, folate, zinc, and iron associated with malnutrition can contribute to the formation of recurrent stomatitis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

When performing an oral assessment, ask about a history of recent infections, nutritional changes, oral hygiene habits, oral trauma, or stress. A drug history should also be collected, including over-the-counter (OTC) drugs and nutritional and herbal supplements. Document the course of the current outbreak, and determine if stomatitis has occurred frequently. Ask the patient if the lesions interfere with swallowing, eating, or communicating.

The symptoms of stomatitis range in severity from a dry, painful mouth to open ulcerations, predisposing the patient to infection. These ulcerations can alter *nutritional* status because of difficulty with eating or swallowing. When they are severe, stomatitis and edema have the potential to obstruct the airway.

In oral candidiasis, a type of yeast infection, white plaque-like lesions appear on the tongue, palate, pharynx (throat), and buccal mucosa (inside the cheeks) (Fig. 56-1). When these patches are wiped away, the underlying surface is red and sore. Patients may report pain, but others describe the lesions as dry or hot. The older adult patient who has systemic illness or is taking antibiotics or chemotherapy is particularly susceptible to oral candidiasis.

While examining the mouth, wear nonsterile gloves. Use adequate lighting, using a penlight and tongue blade. Assess the mouth for lesions, coating, and cracking. Document characteristics of the lesions including their location, size, shape, odor, color, and drainage.

If lesions are seen along the pharynx and the patient reports **dysphagia** (pain on swallowing), suspect that the lesions might extend down the esophagus. Additional swallowing studies may be prescribed by the health care provider to establish a firm diagnosis.

The physical assessment should also include palpating the cervical and submandibular lymph nodes for swelling.

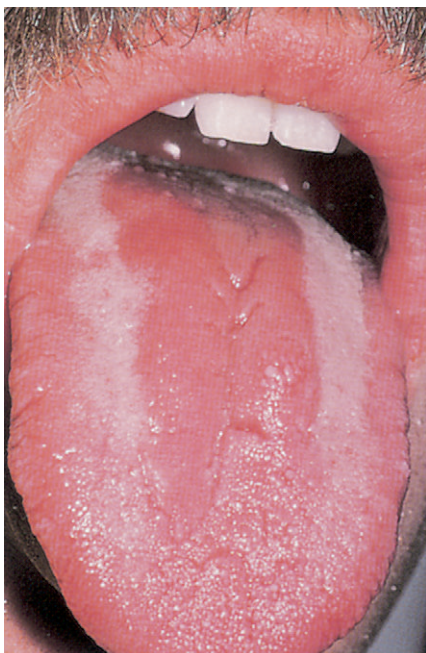


FIG. 56-1 Oral candidiasis.

Advanced practice nurses and other health care providers usually perform this part of the examination.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When assessing the patient with stomatitis, be alert for signs and symptoms of dysphagia, such as coughing or choking when swallowing, a sensation of food “sticking” in the pharynx, or difficulty initiating the swallowing process. If dysphagia is suspected based on the patient’s subjective description or the objective assessment, document all findings and report these to the health care provider. Dysphagia can cause numerous problems, including airway obstruction, aspiration pneumonia, and malnutrition.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for stomatitis are targeted toward health promotion through careful *oral hygiene* and food selection. When providing mouth care for the patient, the nurse may delegate oral care to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP). Because the accountability for the delegated task is the nurse’s, remind UAP to use a soft-bristled toothbrush or disposable foam swabs to stimulate gums and clean the oral cavity. Toothpaste should be free of sodium lauryl sulfate (SLS), if possible, because this ingredient has been associated with various types of stomatitis. Teach the patient to rinse the mouth every 2 to 3 hours with a sodium bicarbonate solution or warm saline solution (may be mixed with hydrogen peroxide). He or she should avoid most commercial mouthwashes because they have high alcohol content, causing a burning sensation in irritated or ulcerated areas. Health food stores sell more natural mouthwashes that are not alcohol-based. Teach the patient to check the labels for alcohol content. Frequent, gentle mouth care promotes débridement of ulcerated lesions and can prevent superinfections. Chart 56-2 lists measures for special oral care.

Drug therapy used for stomatitis includes antimicrobials, immune modulators, and symptomatic topical agents. Complementary and alternative therapies may also be tried.

Antimicrobials, including antibiotics, antivirals, and antifungals, may be necessary for control of infection. Tetracycline syrup (swish/swallow) 250 mg/10 mL four times daily for 10 days may be prescribed, especially for recurrent

CHART 56-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient with Problems of the Oral Cavity

- Remove dentures if the patient has severe stomatitis or oral pain.
- Encourage the patient to perform oral hygiene or provide it after each meal and as often as needed.
- Increase mouth care to every 2 hours or more frequently if stomatitis is not controlled.
- Use a soft toothbrush or gauze for oral care.
- Encourage frequent rinsing of the mouth with warm saline or sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) solution, or a combination of these solutions.
- Teach the patient to avoid commercial mouthwashes, particularly those with high alcohol content, and lemon-glycerin swabs.
- Assist the patient in selecting soft, bland, and nonacidic foods.
- Apply topical analgesics or anesthetics as prescribed by the health care provider, and monitor their effectiveness.

aphthous ulcers (RAUs). The patient rinses for 2 minutes and swallows the syrup, thus obtaining both topical and systemic therapy. Minocycline swish/swallow and chlorhexidine mouthwashes may also be used.

A regimen of IV acyclovir (Zovirax) is prescribed for immunocompromised patients who contract herpes simplex stomatitis. Acyclovir is typically administered to those with normal kidney function at a dose of 5 mg/kg, infused at a constant rate over a 1-hour period every 8 hours for 7 days. Patients with healthy immune systems may be given acyclovir in oral or topical form.

For fungal infections like yeast, nystatin (Mycostatin) oral suspension 600,000 units four times daily for 7 to 10 days is the drug most often used. The patient swishes and swallows the topical preparation. Ice pop troches (lozenges) of the antifungal preparation allow the drug to slowly dissolve, and the cold provides an analgesic effect. Topical triamcinolone in benzocaine (Kenalog in Orabase) and oral dexamethasone elixir used as a swish/expectorate preparation are commonly used for stomatitis, especially RAU.

Immune modulating agents that may be prescribed include:

- Oral levamisole
- Topical amlexanox (Aphthasol)
- Topical granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF)
- Thalidomide

The exact mechanism for how these drugs work is not clear. However, they may inhibit release of mediators that contribute to the inflammation seen in patients with RAU.

Other drugs can be used to control pain, such as OTC benzocaine anesthetics (e.g., Orabase, Anbesol) and camphor phenol (Campho-Phenique). Fifteen mL of 2% viscous lidocaine every 3 hours (maximum of 8 doses per day) can be used as a gargle or mouthwash. Teach patients to use this drug with extreme caution because its anesthetizing effect may cause burns from hot liquids in the mouth. Patients may also become more susceptible to choking when using viscous lidocaine.

Dietary changes may also help decrease pain. Cool or cold liquids can be very soothing. Teach patients to avoid hard, spicy, salty, and acidic foods or fluids that can further irritate the ulcers. Include foods high in protein and vitamin C to promote healing, including scrambled eggs, bananas, custards, puddings, and ice cream, unless the patient has lactose intolerance.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Nystatin (Mycostatin) suspension is prescribed for a client who is diagnosed with oral candidiasis. What instructions does the nurse provide to the client when using this drug?

- A. "Take the drug when your mouth hurts or seems dry."
- B. "Swish the drug around in your mouth before swallowing it."
- C. "Spit the drug out after you rinse your mouth with it."
- D. "Use the drug once a day for 7 to 10 days."

ORAL TUMORS

Oral cavity tumors can be benign, precancerous, or cancerous. Whether benign or malignant, tumors of the mouth affect many daily functions, including swallowing, chewing, and speaking. Pain accompanying the tumor can also limit

daily activities and self-care. Oral tumors affect body image, especially if treatment involves removal of the tongue or part of the mandible (jaw) or requires a tracheostomy.

PREMALIGNANT LESIONS

Leukoplakia

Leukoplakia presents as slowly developing changes in the oral mucous membranes causing thickened, white, firmly attached patches that cannot easily be scraped off. These patches appear slightly raised and sharply rounded. Most of these lesions are benign. However, a small percentage of them become cancerous. Although leukoplakia can be found anywhere on the oral mucosa, lesions on the lips or tongue are more likely to progress to cancer.

Leukoplakia results from mechanical factors that cause long-term oral mucous membrane irritation, such as poorly fitting dentures, chronic cheek nibbling, or broken or poorly repaired teeth. In addition, oral hairy leukoplakia (OHL) can be found in patients with HIV infection. Tobacco products (smoked, dipped, or chewed) have also been implicated in the development of leukoplakia, sometimes referred to as "smoker's patch." Oral leukoplakia can be confused with oral candidal infection. However, unlike candidal infection, leukoplakia cannot be removed by scraping.

Leukoplakia is the most common oral lesion among adults. OHL is associated with Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) and can be an early manifestation of HIV infection. When associated with HIV infection, the appearance of OHL is highly correlated with progression from HIV infection to acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS). Leukoplakia not associated with HIV infection is more often seen in people older than 40 years. Men have twice the incidence of leukoplakia that women have, but this ratio is changing because increasing numbers of women are smoking.

Erythroplakia

Erythroplakia presents as a red, velvety mucosal lesion on the surface of the oral mucosa. There are more malignant changes in erythroplakia than in leukoplakia; therefore erythroplakia is often considered "precancerous" in presentation. As such, these lesions should be regarded with suspicion and analyzed by biopsy. Erythroplakia is most commonly found on the floor of the mouth, tongue, palate, and mandibular mucosa. It can be difficult to distinguish from inflammatory or immune reactions.

ORAL CANCER

In the past decade, dentists and physicians have begun systematically screening their patients for oral cancer. Oral assessment has become a part of the routine dental examination. People should visit a dentist at least twice a year for professional dental hygiene and oral cancer screening, which includes inspecting and palpating the mouth for lesions.

Prevention strategies for oral cancer include minimizing sun and tanning bed exposure, tobacco cessation, and decreasing alcohol intake. Most dentists now use digital technology instead of x-rays when performing the annual or biannual dental examination. Excessive, prolonged radiation from x-rays has been associated with head and neck cancer ([Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010](#)). Teach patients to follow the guidelines in [Chart 56-1](#) to maintain oral health.

Pathophysiology

Squamous Cell Carcinoma

More than 90% of oral cancers are squamous cell carcinomas that begin on the surface of the epithelium. Over a period of many years, premalignant (or dysplastic) changes begin. Cells begin to vary in size and shape. Alterations in the thickness of the lining of the epithelium develop, resulting in atrophy. These tumors usually grow slowly, and the lesions may be large before the onset of symptoms unless ulceration is present. *Mucosal erythroplasia is the earliest sign of oral carcinoma. Oral lesions that appear as red, raised, eroded areas are suspicious for cancer. A lesion that does not heal within 2 weeks or a lump or thickening in the cheek is a symptom that warrants further assessment (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010).*

Squamous cell cancer can be found on the lips, tongue, buccal mucosa, and oropharynx. The major risk factors in its development are increasing age, tobacco use, and alcohol use. Most oral cancers occur in people older than 40 years. Tobacco use in any form (e.g., smoking or chewing tobacco) can increase the risk for cancer. A person who frequently consumes alcohol and uses tobacco in any form is at the highest risk. Genetic changes in patients with oral cancer have been found, especially the mutation of the *TP53* gene (McCance et al., 2010).

An increased rate of oral cancer is found in people with occupations such as textile workers, plumbers, and coal and metal workers. Additional factors, such as sun exposure, poor nutritional habits, poor oral hygiene, and infection with the human papilloma virus (HPV16) may also contribute to oral cancer (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010). People with **periodontal** (gum) **disease** in which mandibular (jaw) bone loss has occurred are especially at risk for cancer of the mouth.

Mouth cancers account for about 3% of all cancers in men and 2% of all cancers in women in the United States. Over 37,000 new cases are diagnosed each year, with almost 8000 deaths (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010). Most cancers occur in middle-aged and older people, although in recent years, younger adults have been affected, probably as a result of sun exposure.

Basal Cell Carcinoma

Basal cell carcinoma of the mouth occurs primarily on the lips. The lesion is asymptomatic and resembles a raised scab. With time, it evolves into a characteristic ulcer with a raised, pearly border. Basal cell carcinomas do not metastasize (spread) but can aggressively involve the skin of the face. The major risk factor for this type of cancer is excessive sunlight exposure.

Basal cell carcinoma occurs as a result of the failure of basal cells to mature into keratinocytes. It is the second most common type of oral cancer, but it is much less common than squamous cell carcinoma.

Kaposi's Sarcoma

Kaposi's sarcoma is a malignant lesion in blood vessels. It is usually painless and appears as a raised, purple nodule or plaque. In the mouth, the hard palate is the most common site of Kaposi's sarcoma, but it can be found also on the gums, tongue, or tonsils. It is most often associated with AIDS. (See Chapter 21 for a complete discussion of Kaposi's sarcoma.)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Begin by assessing the patient's routine oral hygiene regimen and use of dentures or oral appliances, which might add to discomfort or mechanically irritate the mucosa. Ask about oral bleeding, which might indicate an ulcerative lesion or periodontal (gum) disease. Determine the patient's past and current appetite and nutritional state, including difficulty with chewing or swallowing. A continuing trend of weight loss may be related to metastasis, heavy alcohol intake, difficulty in eating or chewing, or an underlying health problem (Chart 56-3).

An examination of the oral cavity requires adequate lighting. Thoroughly inspect the oral cavity for any lesions, evidence of pain, or restriction of movement. Gently using a tongue blade and penlight, examine all areas of the mouth. Carefully note any change in speech caused by tongue movement. Notice any change in voice or swallowing, and assess for thick or absent saliva. After inspection, the advanced practice nurse, specialty nurse, or other health care provider uses bimanual palpation of any visible nodules to determine size and fixation. The cervical lymph nodes should also be palpated (Fig. 56-2).

The functioning and appearance of the mouth are strongly linked with body image and quality of life. Therefore it is

CHART 56-3 KEY FEATURES

Oral Cancer

- Bleeding from the mouth
- Poor appetite
- Difficulty chewing
- Difficulty swallowing
- Poor nutritional status and weight loss
- Thick or absent saliva
- Painless oral lesion that is red, raised, or eroded
- Thickening or lump in cheek

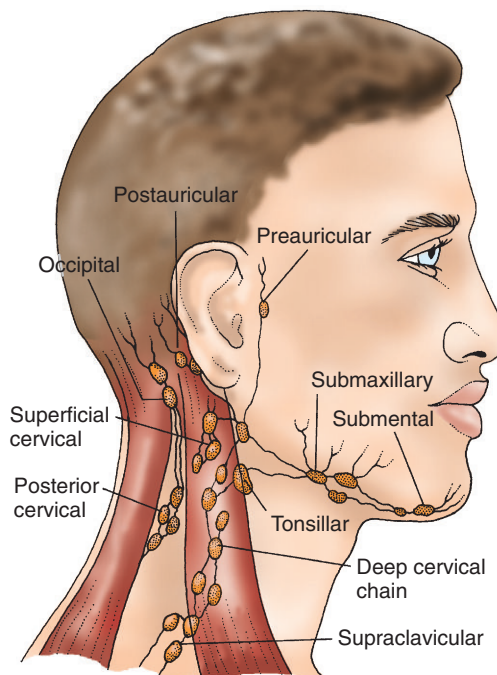


FIG. 56-2 The lymph nodes of the cervical region.

important to assess the impact of oral lesions on the patient's self-concept. In addition, assess for any educational or cultural needs that might affect health teaching or treatment. Evaluate the patient's support system and past coping mechanisms.

Oral CDx brushing of a lesion is helpful in determining whether it is precancerous. This procedure is usually performed by a dentist during a routine dental examination (Oral CDx, 2008). However, biopsy is the definitive method for diagnosis of oral cancer. The physician obtains a needle biopsy specimen of the abnormal tissue to assess for malignant or premalignant changes. Incisional biopsies may also be performed. An intraoral biopsy can be done under local anesthesia. In very small lesions, an excisional biopsy can permit complete tumor removal. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is useful in detecting perineural involvement and in evaluating thickness in cancers of the tongue. Both computed tomography (CT) and MRI can be used to determine spread to the liver or lungs if further staging of the disease is warranted.

An aqueous solution of toluidine blue 1% can be applied to oral lesions to determine if they are malignant. This preparation stains malignant lesions, leaving normal tissue unaffected. However, a lesion that is the result of an inflammatory process may also absorb the stain, leading to a false-positive result. Although a biopsy is still needed to confirm a cancer diagnosis, toluidine blue may be useful for screening high-risk patients (National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research, 2008).

INTERVENTIONS

Both the presence of tumors of the oral cavity and the effects of their treatment threaten the integrity of the oral mucosa and the patient's airway. Oral cavity lesions can be treated by surgical excision, by nonsurgical treatments such as radiation or chemotherapy, or by a combination of treatments (referred to as *multimodal therapy*). Chemotherapy is currently not used independently in the treatment of oral cancers but is used in addition to other modes of treatment to sensitize malignant cells to radiation, to shrink a malignancy before surgery, or to decrease the potential for malignancy (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010). Multimodal therapy is the most costly treatment option, yet more frequently used (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010). *If the patient has extensive tumor involvement and copious, tenacious (thick and "stringy") secretions, maintaining an open airway is the nurse's priority for care.* Other nursing interventions focus on restoring and maintaining oral health

Nonsurgical Management

Implement interventions to *manage the patient's airway* by increasing air exchange, removing secretions, and preventing aspiration as needed. Assess for dyspnea resulting from the tumor obstruction or from excessive secretions. Assess the quality, rate, and depth of respirations. Auscultate the lungs for adventitious sounds, such as wheezes caused by aspiration. Listen for stridor caused by partial airway obstruction. Promote deep breathing to help produce an effective cough to mobilize the patient's secretions.

To increase air exchange, place the patient in a semi-Fowler's or high-Fowler's position. Encourage fluids to help liquefy secretions. Chest physiotherapy also increases air exchange as well as promotes effective coughing. If available,

collaborate with the respiratory therapist about performing this procedure. If needed, use oral suction equipment with a dental tip or a tonsil tip (Yankauer catheter) to remove secretions that obstruct the airway. Teach the patient and family to use the catheters as needed.

If edema occurs with oral cavity lesions, the patient may receive steroids to reduce inflammation. Antibiotics may be prescribed if infection is present because it can increase inflammation and edema. A cool mist supplied by a face tent may assist with oxygen transport and control of edema.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Aspiration precautions prevent or reduce the risk factors for aspiration. Assess the patient's level of consciousness (LOC), gag reflex, and ability to swallow. To prevent aspiration, place the patient sitting upright at 90 degrees (high-Fowler's position). As a precaution, keep suction equipment nearby. For patients at high risk, assess the gag reflex before giving any fluids. Remind UAP to feed patients at risk for aspiration in small amounts. Teach visitors to speak with the nurse before offering any type of food or drink to the patient. Provide thickened liquids as an aid to prevent aspiration.

It is important to work with the patient to *establish an oral hygiene routine*. Perform oral hygiene every 2 hours for ulcerated lesions, infection, or in the immediate postoperative period. Modifications might be needed because of oral discomfort, bleeding, or edema. Oral care with a soft-bristled toothbrush is preferred. If the platelet count falls below 40,000/mm³, switch the patient to an ultrasoft "chemobrush." The use of "toothettes" or a disposable foam brush is discouraged because these products may not adequately control bacteremia-promoting plaque and may further dry the oral mucosa. Lubricant can be applied to moisten the lips and oral mucosa as needed.

Teach patients and their families that the patient should avoid using commercial mouthwashes and lemon-glycerin swabs. Commercial mouthwashes contain alcohol, and lemon-glycerin swabs are acidic. These substances can cause a burning sensation and contribute to dry oral mucous membranes. Encourage frequent rinsing of the mouth with sodium bicarbonate solution or warm saline (see also Chart 56-2). Follow hospital or health care provider protocol if available.

Radiation therapy for oral cancers can be given by external beam or interstitial implantation to reduce the size of the tumor before surgery. *External-beam* radiation passes through the skin or mucous membrane to the tumor site. Typically, treatments are given as five daily treatments per week, with a 2-day break each week, over a 6- to 9-week period. Each treatment lasts only about 10 to 15 minutes, with more time being dedicated to undertaking special precautions to minimize the dose of radiation to the brain or spinal cord (Oral Cancer Foundation, 2010).

Another option is the implantation of radioactive substances (*interstitial radiation* therapy or brachytherapy) either to boost the dosage or to deliver a radiation dose close to the tumor bed. This form of implant therapy can be curative in early-stage lesions in the floor of the mouth or anterior tongue. It may also add a boost of radiation to a tumor that received external-beam radiation.

With the exception of radioactive seeds, which have a low level of emission, patients receiving interstitial radiation are

usually hospitalized for the duration of treatment. *Place patients on radiation transmission precautions while the materials are active or in place.* A tracheostomy may be required with interstitial implants because of edema and increased oral secretions. (See [Chapter 24](#) for general nursing care of patients undergoing radiation therapy.)

Teach the patient undergoing *chemotherapy* and family members about the side effects of these agents, which vary with each drug. Give antiemetics as prescribed, and provide other comfort measures as needed. (See [Chapter 24](#) for general care of patients receiving chemotherapy.)

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Patients who are undergoing radiation and/or chemotherapy treatment may experience a decreased ability to tolerate prescribed and over-the-counter medications. Teach patients about expected side effects, and remind them to not take any medication (including over-the-counter medications, herbs, or vitamin supplements) without first discussing them with their health care provider.

One of the most recent advances in the use of drugs for oral cancer is targeted therapy. Hormone-like substances known as *growth factors* (GFs) occur in the body's cells. Oral tumor cells, along with other types of cancers, grow quickly because they have more GF receptors than normal healthy tissue. One of these GFs is called *epidermal growth factor* (EGF), which has been associated with oral cancers. Newer drugs that can target and block EGF receptors (EGF-R) are being tested, and more than a dozen have been approved, including cetuximab (Erbix), erlotinib (Tarceva), and panitumumab (Vectibix). [Chapter 24](#) describes targeted molecular therapy.

Surgical Management

The physician can often remove small, noninvasive lesions of the oral cavity in an ambulatory setting with local anesthesia. The surgical defect is usually small enough to be closed by sutures. These smaller lesions may also be responsive to carbon dioxide laser therapy or *cryotherapy* (extreme cold application), as well as photodynamic therapy. These procedures can be performed as an ambulatory care procedure in a surgical center but may require general anesthesia.

Small oral cancers are equally responsive to radiation or photodynamic therapy and to surgery. More invasive lesions (stages III and IV) require more extensive surgical excision and result in a greater loss of function and disfigurement. Not all lesions can be excised by the peroral approach (through the mouth). The goal of surgical resection is removal of the tumor with a surgical margin that is free of cancer cells.

Preoperative Care. Before excision of a lesion in the oral cavity, assess and document the patient's level of understanding of the disease process, the rationale for the surgery, and the planned intervention. Problems associated with cancer therapy can be reduced or optimally managed by collaborating with the patient and family regarding preparation and instruction. Reinforce information as needed. Include family members or other caregivers in the health teaching unless culturally inappropriate.

For small, local excisions, postoperative restrictions include a liquid diet for a day and then advancing as tolerated.

There are no activity limitations, and postoperative analgesics are prescribed.

Instructions for the patient undergoing large surgical resections may include but are not limited to these expectations after surgery:

- Placement of a temporary tracheostomy, oxygen therapy, and suctioning
- Temporary loss of speech because of the tracheostomy
- Frequent monitoring of postoperative vital signs
- NPO status until intraoral suture lines are healed
- Need to have IV lines in place for drug delivery and hydration
- Postoperative drug therapy and activity (out of bed on the first postoperative day)
- Possibility of surgical drains

Because communication is interrupted, assess the patient's ability to read, write, and draw pictures to communicate. In coordination with the patient, select the method of communication to use after surgery with staff and family members (e.g., Magic Slate, computer, picture board, or pad and pencil). Preprinted flashcards may be used to communicate the patient's needs, such as "I am tired," "I am in pain," or "I am hungry." Urge the patient to practice the chosen method before surgery to reduce frustration after surgery.

Operative Procedures. Three factors influence the extent of surgery performed for oral cancers: the size and location of the tumor, tumor invasion into the bone, and whether there has been metastasis (cancer spread) to neck lymph nodes. Small, noninvasive tumors can be removed perorally (through the mouth). Otherwise, an external approach may be used. The most extensive oral operations are composite resections, which combine partial or total *glossectomy* (tongue removal) and partial *mandibulectomy* (jaw removal). In the **com-mando** (co-mandible) **procedure** (**COM**bined neck dissection, **MAND**ibulectomy, and **O**ropharyngeal resection), the surgeon removes a segment of the mandible with the oral lesion and performs a radical neck dissection (see [Chapter 31](#)).

Metastasis to cervical lymph nodes usually indicates a poor prognosis for patients with cancer of the oral cavity. In those with cervical node metastasis, a neck dissection may also be performed. A radical neck dissection usually involves the removal of all cervical lymph nodes on the affected side, along with cranial nerve XI (the accessory nerve), the internal jugular vein, and the sternocleidomastoid (front neck) muscle. Modified and selective neck dissections may be performed in patients with minimal lymph node involvement.

Postoperative Care. The patient may have a temporary or permanent tracheostomy, requiring intensive nursing care to promote airway clearance. In addition, care must be taken to protect the surgical incision site from mechanical damage and infection (see [Chapter 31](#)). Nursing interventions to relieve pain or discomfort and promote nutrition are also important. Older adults are a special risk for surgery and need to be monitored very carefully ([Chart 56-4](#)).

Ensure that the predetermined method of communication is available for the patient, family members, and staff. When the patient has an adequate airway and can effectively clear secretions by coughing, the tracheostomy tube may be removed. When the tube is removed, an airtight dressing is placed over the site and the tracheostomy incision heals without the need for sutures.

CHART 56-4 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Postoperative Older Adult with Oral Cancer

- Assess the mouth and surrounding tissues for candidiasis, mucositis, and pain; assess for loss of appetite and taste.
- Monitor the patient's weight.
- Monitor nutritional and fluid intake.
- Assess for difficulty in eating or speech.
- Assess pain status and measures used to control pain.
- Monitor the patient's response to medications.
- Identify psychosocial problems, such as depression, anxiety, and fear.
- Assess the patient's overall physiological condition and how this may affect pharmacologic therapy.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

After extensive excision or resection for oral cancer, the most important nursing intervention is maintaining the patient's airway! Upon awakening from anesthesia, the patient may not recall, or realize, that a tracheostomy tube is in place and may initially panic because of the inability to speak. Remind the patient why he or she cannot speak, and provide reassurance that the vocal cords are intact (unless a total laryngectomy has been performed, in which case the loss of voice is permanent).

Patients who have undergone extensive resection may have slurred speech or difficulty in speaking as a result of nerve damage or tongue removal. Collaborate with the speech-language pathologist if speech is altered.

Protect the incision site to avoid infection. Provide gentle mouth care for cleaning away thick secretions and stimulating the flow of saliva. The delivery of oral care depends on the nature and extent of the surgical procedure. Give oral care at least every 4 hours in the early postoperative phase. The presence of unusual odors from the mouth can indicate infection; therefore continual assessment of the oral cavity is very important. In the early postoperative phase, take care to avoid disruption of the suture line during oral hygiene.

Elevate the head of the bed to assist in decreasing edema by gravity. If skin grafting was done, inspect the donor site (generally on the anterior thigh) every 8 hours for bleeding or signs of infection. (See [Chapter 31](#) for specific nursing care of the patient with a radical neck dissection.)

To provide optimal *pain relief* in the postoperative period, rely on subjective and objective data to assess the need for analgesics and their effectiveness. The desired outcome of drug therapy during this period is relief of pain while allowing the patient to function at an optimal level. Those who have undergone surgery for oral cancer describe their pain as throbbing or pounding. IV morphine is usually the initial pain medication given. Tylox or Percocet (oxycodone plus acetaminophen) may be used for systemic relief of moderate pain after the IV morphine is discontinued.

Patients who have undergone extensive resections of the oral cavity remain on NPO status for several days. This time allows healing in the oral cavity before food comes in contact with the incision. Nasogastric feeding or total parenteral nutrition may be needed until oral nutrition can begin (see [Chapter 63](#)).

When oral fluid intake is started, assess for and document signs of difficulty swallowing, aspiration, or leakage of saliva or

fluids from the suture line. Monitor daily weights and hydration. Nutritional supplementation may be used to improve the patient's quality of life. Patients who have weight loss or who are having difficulty maintaining hydration may be candidates for the placement of a gastrostomy tube. Coordinate nutritional care with the dietitian.

Encourage the patient to perform swallowing exercises. Collaborate with the speech-language pathologist to assist with swallowing techniques. Thickened fluids may be needed to prevent aspiration. A swallowing impairment may be temporary or permanent.

**DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE****Teamwork and Collaboration; Patient-Centered Care**

A 40-year-old homeless woman is admitted to the emergency department with difficulty breathing and swallowing. On assessment, the triage nurse finds that she has very poor dental hygiene and a large oral tumor. After a thorough evaluation, the patient is scheduled for oral surgery to remove as much of the tumor as possible.

1. As the patient's nurse, what is your priority for her care immediately after surgery?
2. As you develop her plan of care, for what complications is this patient most at risk?
3. With what members of the health care team will you collaborate?
4. In view of her homelessness, what support systems might you seek?
5. What follow-up care is realistic for this patient?

Community-Based Care

Continuing care for the patient with an oral tumor depends on the severity of the tumor, its collaborative care, and available support systems. Most patients are maintained at home during follow-up care. Ongoing nutritional management remains a vital part of the treatment plan. In addition, the patient and family may benefit from a community-based support group for cancer victims.

Home Care Management

If radiation therapy is part of the patient's treatment plan, home care considerations include health teaching and management strategies. Complications due to radiation to the head or neck can be acute or delayed. Acute effects include treatment-related mucositis, stomatitis, and alterations in taste. Long-term effects such as **xerostomia** (excessive mouth dryness) and dental decay require ongoing oral care, the use of saliva substitutes, and follow-up dental visits. Although ongoing dental care is important, the possible adverse effects that radiation has on bone make elective oral surgical procedures, such as tooth extraction, impossible in the area of the radiation. Fatigue is a common side effect of radiation and chemotherapy.

The patient whose tracheostomy tube has been removed is often placed on a soft diet by mouth before discharge. Occasionally, however, patients are discharged from the hospital while still requiring tracheostomy suction, oral suction, and nasogastric feedings. Suction equipment, nutritional supplies, and nursing care can be provided by home care companies. (See [Chapter 63](#) for home care preparation for the patient receiving home parenteral nutrition and [Chapter 31](#) for home care preparation for the patient with a tracheostomy.)

CHART 56-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Care of the Patient with Oral Cancer at Home

- Follow the treatment plan for cancer therapies.
- Remember that taste sensation may be decreased; add seasonings to food to better enjoy it.
- Use a thickening agent for liquids if dysphagia is present.
- Eat soft foods if stomatitis occurs.
- Inspect the mouth every day for changes, such as redness.
- Continue meticulous oral hygiene at home using a chemobrush and frequent rinsing; clean after every use.
- Use saliva substitute as prescribed.
- Avoid sun or tanning bed exposure if radiation is part of therapy.
- Clean with a gentle, nondeodorant soap, such as Ivory.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient and family about drug therapy, nutritional therapies, any treatments (e.g., tracheostomy care, suture line care, dressing changes), and early symptoms of infection before hospital discharge (Chart 56-5). Alterations in taste and dysphagia make maintaining adequate nutrition a challenge for the oral cancer patient. Alterations in taste occur when the taste buds are included in the radiation treatment field. Taste sensation may begin to return several weeks after the completion of treatment. Some types of chemotherapy can also affect the patient's taste. Sometimes the loss of taste is permanent.

Changes in taste include dislike of meat, such as beef or pork, and metallic tastes in the mouth. Teach patients to add seasonings to foods, to use gravies or sauces to make foods more palatable, and to use high-protein foods such as cheeses, milk, eggs, puddings, and legumes in place of meat. Instruct patients with dysphagia in swallowing exercises. Recommend thickened liquids because thin liquids, such as water, are difficult to control during swallowing. Collaborate with the dietitian to teach the family how to assess the nutritional intake of the patient who is just beginning to eat. Liquid dietary supplements are usually recommended at this time. If bleeding or stomatitis is present, recommend soft foods to prevent further injury to the mucous membranes.

Teach the patient or family members to inspect the oral cavity daily for areas of redness, which can indicate the onset of stomatitis. Meticulous oral hygiene should be continued at home, especially with adjuvant chemotherapy or radiation. Reinforce the oral hygiene routine, emphasizing the need for frequent mouth rinsing to reduce the number of microorganisms and to maintain adequate hydration. The patient should use a chemobrush (an extra-soft type of toothbrush), rinse the chemobrush with hydrogen peroxide and water or with a diluted bleach solution after each use, and change chemobrushes weekly. The brush may also be cleaned in a dishwasher.

Saliva production is greatly reduced as a consequence of radiation. The resulting xerostomia (dry mouth) causes the inability to eat dry foods and may be permanent. Teach the patient regarding the use of saliva substitutes.

Skin reactions are also a common side effect of radiation. Instruct the patient to avoid sun exposure, to avoid perfumed lotions and powders, and to cleanse the face and neck area with a gentle nondeodorant soap. Teach male patients to use an electric razor for shaving and to avoid alcohol-based after-shave lotions to prevent further skin irritation.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client who has completed radiation therapy for an oral tumor is being discharged to home. What health teaching should the nurse provide? **Select all that apply.**

- A. "Eat any foods that appeal to you."
- B. "Rinse your mouth several times daily with Listerine."
- C. "Use saliva substitutes as prescribed."
- D. "Avoid exposure to the sun and tanning beds."
- E. "Use a nondeodorant soap like Ivory."
- F. "Use a firm-bristled toothbrush to remove plaque."

Health Care Resources

Patients who have undergone composite resection often require community services because they have both physical and psychosocial needs. Depression related to a change in body image is common. Excision of a portion of the jaw can leave a facial defect that may be difficult to hide. Assess for depression and other behavioral responses. A social worker or other health care professional may be needed for patient and family counseling. Those who have undergone a total glossectomy may be able to speak with special training and the use of an intraoral prosthesis created by a maxillofacial prosthodontist. The prosthesis is similar to dentures.

Collaborate with the case manager to provide assistance in obtaining special equipment or nutritional resources needed by the patient at home. The case manager assesses the patient's financial needs and makes referrals to government, community, and religious organizations as needed. Refer the patient to the American Cancer Society (ACS) (www.cancer.org) or the Oral Cancer Foundation (www.oralcancerfoundation.org) for local support groups and resources, including additional information. The ACS often provides dressing supplies and transportation to and from follow-up visits or medical treatments.

DISORDERS OF THE SALIVARY GLANDS

ACUTE SIALADENITIS

Pathophysiology

Acute sialadenitis, the inflammation of a salivary gland, can be caused by infectious agents, irradiation, or immunologic disorders. Salivary gland inflammation can have a bacterial or viral cause, such as infection with cytomegalovirus (CMV). The most common bacterial organisms are *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus pyogenes*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, and *Escherichia coli*. This disorder most commonly affects the parotid or submandibular gland in adults.

A decrease in the production of saliva (as in dehydrated or debilitated patients or in those who are on NPO status postoperatively for an extended time) can lead to acute sialadenitis. The bacteria or viruses enter the gland through the ductal opening in the mouth. Systemic drugs, such as phenothiazines and the tetracyclines, can also trigger an episode of acute sialadenitis. Untreated infections of the salivary glands can evolve into abscesses, which can rupture and spread infection into the tissues of the neck and the mediastinum.

Patients who receive radiation for the treatment of cancers of the head and neck or thyroid may develop decreased salivary flow, predisposing them to acute or persistent sialadenitis. The effect of radiation on the salivary glands is rapid and

dose related. Immunologic disorders such as HIV infection can cause enlargement of the parotid gland that result from secondary infection. Sjögren's syndrome, an autoimmune disorder, is characterized by chronic salivary gland enlargement and inflammation (see Chapter 20).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

During the initial interview, assess for any predisposing factors for sialadenitis, such as ionizing radiation to the head or neck area. Collect a thorough drug history, and ask about systemic illnesses, such as HIV infection.

Dehydration can be assessed by examining the oral membrane for dryness and the skin for turgor. Other assessment findings include pain and swelling of the face over the affected gland. Assess facial function because the branches of cranial nerve VII (the facial nerve) lie close to the salivary glands. Fever and general malaise also occur, and purulent drainage can often be massaged from the affected duct in the oral cavity.

Collaborative care includes the administration of IV fluids and measures such as these to treat the underlying cause and increase the flow of saliva:

- Hydration
- Application of warm compresses
- Massage of the gland
- Use of a saliva substitute
- Use of **sialagogues** (substances that stimulate the flow of saliva)

Sialagogues include lemon slices and citrus-flavored and other fruit-flavored candy. Massage is accomplished by milking the edematous gland with the fingertips toward the ductal opening. Elevation of the head of the bed promotes gravity drainage of the edematous gland.

Acute sialadenitis is best prevented by adherence to routine oral hygiene. This practice prevents infections from ascending to the salivary glands from the mouth.

POST-IRRADIATION SIALADENITIS

The salivary glands are sensitive to ionizing radiation, such as from radiation therapy or radioactive iodine treatment of thyroid cancers. Exposure of the glands to radiation produces a type of sialadenitis known as **xerostomia** (very dry mouth caused by a severe reduction in the flow of saliva) within 24 hours. Radiation to the salivary glands can also produce pain and edema, which generally abate after several days.

Xerostomia may be temporary or permanent, depending on the dose of radiation and the percentage of total salivary

gland tissue irradiated. Little can be done to relieve the patient's dry mouth during the course of radiation therapy. Frequent sips of water and frequent mouth care, especially before meals, are the most effective interventions. After the course of radiation therapy has been completed, saliva substitutes may provide moisture for 2 to 4 hours at a time. Over-the-counter solutions are available, or methylcellulose (Cologel), glycerin, and saline may be mixed to form a solution.

SALIVARY GLAND TUMORS

Of all oral tumors, those of the salivary glands are relatively rare. Initially, malignant tumors present as slow-growing, painless masses. Involvement of the facial nerve results in facial weakness or paralysis (partial or total) on the affected side.

Collect information about any prior radiation exposure, because radiation to the head and neck areas is associated with the occurrence of salivary gland tumors. Salivary gland tumors present as localized, firm masses. Large tumors may cause facial nerve paralysis. Submandibular and minor salivary gland tumors may be tender or painful. Tumor invasion of the hypoglossal nerve causes impaired movement of the tongue, and a loss of sensation can follow. *Pay particular attention to assessment of the facial nerve because of its proximity to the salivary glands.* Assess the patient's ability to:

- Wrinkle the brow
- Raise the eyebrows
- Squeeze and hold the eyes shut, while the nurse gently pulls upwards on the eyebrows and cheeks beneath the orbit to check for symmetry
- Wrinkle the nose
- Pucker the lips
- Puff out the cheeks
- Grimace or smile

Be aware of any asymmetry when the patient performs these motions. The treatment of choice for both benign and malignant tumors of the salivary glands is surgical excision. However, radiation therapy is often used for salivary gland cancers that are large, have recurred, show evidence of residual disease after excision, or are highly malignant.

Patients who have undergone **parotidectomy** (surgical removal of the parotid glands) or submandibular gland surgery are at risk for weakness or loss of function of the facial nerve because the nerve courses directly through the gland. Facial nerve repair with grafting can be done at the time of surgery. A combination of surgery followed by radiation is common for advanced disease. Care for patients after parotidectomy is similar to that required for those having oral cancer surgery, described on p. 1197.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has inadequate digestion and oxygenation as a result of oral cavity problems?

- Dysphagia (difficulty swallowing)
- Dyspnea
- Stridor or wheezes
- Changes in speech or voice
- Copious, thickened oral secretions
- Excessive coughing during meals

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate digestion and oxygenation as a result of oral cavity problems?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Breath sounds
- Oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry
- Ability to cough and clear the airway

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Ability to manage excessive oral secretions
- Ability to chew food and swallow

Respond:

- Place the patient with the head elevated to at least 30 degrees.
- Apply oxygen as needed.
- Suction the oral cavity as needed.
- Encourage deep breathing and coughing every 2 hours.
- Increase fluids to liquefy secretions, depending on swallowing ability.
- Notify the respiratory therapist or Rapid Response Team if interventions are not successful in restoring oxygenation.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of increased oxygenation, including increased ease of breathing.
- Observe patient for evidence of increased ability to swallow.
- Observe patient for evidence of increased ability to manage oral secretions.
- Consider follow-up interventions to manage patient, including coordinating care with dietitian and speech-language pathologist.
- Think about what else you might do to promote digestion and nutrition.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Be aware that airway management is the priority for care for patients having surgery for oral cancer.
- Place patients having oral cancer surgery in a high-Fowler's position to facilitate breathing and prevent aspiration.
- Be sure to assess for swallowing ability to prevent aspiration by checking the gag reflex before offering liquids or food to the patient who has had oral cancer surgery.
- Plan continuity of care to meet patients' needs when they are transferred from the hospital to community-based agencies.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients to seek medical or dental attention for oral lesions that do not heal; these lesions could be oral carcinomas.
- Remind patients to visit their dentist regularly for dental hygiene and oral examination.
- Follow the best practice recommendations for maintaining oral health as listed in [Chart 56-1](#).
- Instruct patients to avoid harsh commercial mouthwashes if they have oral lesions.
- Teach patients to avoid tobacco, alcohol, and sun exposure to decrease their chance of having oral cancer.
- Instruct patients with acute sialadenitis to use sialogogues to stimulate saliva, such as citrus foods or candies.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assist the patient and family in identifying and using coping mechanisms to deal with possible changes in body image and altered self-esteem.

- Recognize that patients with stomatitis are often unable to eat or swallow without discomfort.
- Refer patients with oral cancer to support groups, such as those available through the American Cancer Society.

Physiological Integrity

- Remember that stomatitis usually manifests as painful single or multiple ulcerations within the mouth.
- Recognize that stomatitis can be caused by a variety of organisms; *Candida* infections are very common in patients who receive antibiotic therapy and in those who are immunocompromised.
- Provide gentle oral care for patients with oral lesions, including chemobrushes and warm saline or sodium bicarbonate solution.
- Be aware that patients with stomatitis receive antimicrobials, anti-inflammatory agents, immune modulators, and topical agents for relief of symptoms, including pain.
- Differentiate leukoplakia and erythroplakia: leukoplakia presents as thin, white patches, and erythroplakia presents as red, velvety lesions.
- Be aware that patients with oral cancer may have chemotherapy, radiation, surgery, or a combination of these treatment methods.
- Be aware that sialadenitis can occur as result of radiation therapy.
- For patients with salivary gland tumors, assess for facial nerve involvement.
- Remember that a parotidectomy involves the removal of the salivary glands; postoperative care is similar to that for patients who have oral cancer surgery.

Care of Patients with Esophageal Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Explain the importance of collaborating with the health care team when providing care to patients with esophageal health problems that impair swallowing or limit nutrition.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Teach the patient and family about lifestyle changes to decrease gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) and the discomfort of hiatal hernias.
3. Describe special considerations for the older adult with GERD.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Identify the need for psychosocial support to patients and their families through diagnosis and treatment of esophageal cancer.

Physiological Integrity

5. Evaluate the impact of esophageal cancer on the patient's nutritional status, including the risk for aspiration.
6. Perform focused assessments for patients with esophageal health problems.
7. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology to anticipate complications of GERD.
8. Plan how to teach patients with GERD about drug therapy.
9. Develop a teaching plan for the patient and family about postoperative care after esophageal surgery.
10. Apply knowledge of pathophysiology to recognize complications of esophageal surgical procedures.
11. Plan community-based care for patients diagnosed with esophageal cancer.

The esophagus moves partially digested food from the mouth to the stomach. If food cannot reach the stomach, the patient cannot meet the *human need for nutrition*. Nutrients in food are necessary for normal body cell function. Common problems of the esophagus that can interfere with *digestion* and *nutrition* are caused by inflammation, structural defects or obstruction, and cancer. Patient-centered collaborative care requires dietary and lifestyle changes, as well as medical and surgical therapies.

GASTROESOPHAGEAL REFLUX DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is the most common upper GI disorder in the United States. It occurs most often in middle-aged and older adults but can affect people of any age. **GERD** occurs as a result of **reflux** (backward flow) of GI contents into the esophagus. The incidence of GERD is increasing throughout the world (Chait, 2010).

Reflux produces symptoms by exposing the esophageal mucosa to the irritating effects of gastric or duodenal contents, resulting in inflammation. A person with acute symptoms of inflammation is often described as having **reflux esophagitis**, which may be mild or severe (McCance et al., 2010).

The reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus is normally prevented by the presence of two high-pressure areas that remain contracted at rest. A 1.2-inch (3-cm) segment at the proximal end of the esophagus is called the *upper esophageal sphincter (UES)*. Another small portion at the gastroesophageal junction (near the cardiac sphincter) is called the **lower esophageal sphincter (LES)**. The function of the LES is supported by its anatomic placement in the abdomen, where the surrounding pressure is significantly higher than in the low-pressure thorax. Sphincter function is also supported by the acute angle (angle of His) that is formed as the esophagus enters the stomach.

The most common cause of GERD is excessive relaxation of the LES, which allows the reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus and exposure of the esophageal mucosa to acidic gastric contents. Nighttime reflux tends to cause prolonged exposure of the esophagus to acid because the supine position decreases peristalsis and the benefit of gravity. Although controversial, *Helicobacter pylori* may contribute to reflux as well (McCance et al., 2010).

A person having reflux may be asymptomatic and not aware that reflux is occurring. However, the esophagus has only limited resistance to the damaging effects of the acidic GI contents. The pH of acid secreted by the stomach ranges from 1.5 to 2.0, whereas the pH of the distal esophagus is normally neutral (6.0 to 7.0).

Refluxed material is returned to the stomach by a combination of gravity, saliva, and peristalsis. The inflamed esophagus cannot eliminate the refluxed material as quickly as a healthy one, and therefore the length of exposure increases with each reflux episode. Hyperemia (increased blood flow) and **erosion** (ulceration) occur in the esophagus in response to the chronic inflammation. Gastric acid and pepsin injure tissue. Minor capillary bleeding often occurs with the erosion, but hemorrhage is rare.

During the process of healing, the body may substitute **Barrett's epithelium** (columnar epithelium) for the normal squamous cell epithelium of the lower esophagus. Although this new tissue is more resistant to acid and therefore supports esophageal healing, it is considered premalignant. It is associated with an increased risk for cancer in patients with prolonged GERD. The fibrosis and scarring that accompany the healing process can produce **esophageal stricture** (narrowing of the esophageal opening). The stricture leads to progressive difficulty in swallowing. Uncontrolled esophageal reflux also creates a risk for other serious complications, such as hemorrhage and aspiration pneumonia. GERD may be one of the causes of adult-onset asthma, laryngitis, and dental decay. It has also been associated with cardiac disease.

Gastric distention caused by eating very large meals or delayed gastric emptying predisposes the patient to reflux. A number of individual factors, including certain foods and drugs, influence the function of the LES (Table 57-1). Smoking and alcohol also weaken the tone of the LES.

Patients who have a nasogastric tube also have decreased esophageal sphincter function. The tube keeps the cardiac

TABLE 57-1 FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO DECREASED LOWER ESOPHAGEAL SPHINCTER PRESSURE

- | | |
|--|--|
| • Fatty foods | • Calcium channel blockers |
| • Caffeinated beverages, such as coffee, tea, and cola | • Nitrates |
| • Chocolate | • Peppermint, spearmint |
| • Citrus fruits | • Alcohol |
| • Tomatoes and tomato products | • Anticholinergic drugs |
| • Smoking and use of other tobacco products | • High levels of estrogen and progesterone |
| | • Nasogastric tube placement |

CHART 57-1 KEY FEATURES

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease

- | | |
|--|---|
| • Dyspepsia (heartburn) | • Epigastric pain |
| • Regurgitation (may lead to aspiration or bronchitis) | • Belching |
| • Coughing, hoarseness, or wheezing at night | • Flatulence |
| • Water brash (hypersalivation) | • Nausea |
| • Dysphagia | • Pyrosis (retrosteral burning) |
| • Odynophagia (painful swallowing) | • Globus (feeling of something in back of throat) |
| | • Pharyngitis |
| | • Dental caries (severe cases) |

sphincter open and allows acidic contents from the stomach to enter the esophagus. Other factors that increase intra-abdominal and intragastric pressure (e.g., pregnancy, wearing tight belts or girdles, bending over, ascites) overcome the gastroesophageal pressure gradient maintained by the LES and allow reflux to occur. Many patients with obstructive sleep apnea report frequent episodes of GERD. People with hiatal hernias often have reflux because the upper portion of the stomach protrudes through the diaphragm into the thorax to allow acid to reach the esophagus (see later discussion of hiatal hernia).

Overweight and obese patients are at an increased risk for the disease. Increased weight increases intra-abdominal pressure, which contributes to reflux of stomach contents into the esophagus.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient about a history of heartburn or atypical chest pain associated with the reflux of GI contents. Ask whether he or she has been newly diagnosed with asthma or has experienced morning hoarseness or pneumonia. These symptoms are suggestive of severe reflux reaching the pharynx or mouth or pulmonary aspiration.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The clinical manifestations of reflux vary in severity, depending on the patient (Chart 57-1). **Dyspepsia**, also known as “heartburn,” and *regurgitation* are the main symptoms of GERD. The pain is described as a substernal burning sensation that tends to move up and down the chest in a wavelike fashion. Because heartburn might not be viewed as a serious concern, patients may delay seeking treatment. If the

heartburn is severe, the pain may radiate to the neck or jaw or may be referred to the back. The pain typically worsens when the patient bends over, strains, or lies down. Patients may come to the emergency department (ED) fearing that they are having a myocardial infarction (“heart attack”).

With severe GERD, the pain occurs after each meal and lasts for 20 minutes to 2 hours. Patients usually obtain prompt relief by drinking fluids, taking antacids, or maintaining an upright posture.

Regurgitation (backward flow into the throat) of food particles or fluids is common. The patient feels warm fluid traveling up the throat without nausea. If the fluid reaches the level of the pharynx, he or she notes a sour or bitter taste in the mouth. This problem can even occur in an upright position. The danger of aspiration is increased if regurgitation occurs when the patient is lying down.

Eructation (belching), **flatulence** (gas), and bloating after eating are other common manifestations. Nausea and vomiting rarely occur, and unplanned weight loss is not common.

Assess for crackles in the lung, which can be an indication of associated aspiration. Assess the patient for coughing, hoarseness, or wheezing at night. Bronchitis may occur in those who have long-term regurgitation.

A reflex salivary hypersecretion known as **water brash** occurs in response to reflux. Water brash is different from regurgitation. The patient reports a sensation of fluid in the throat, but unlike with regurgitation, there is no bitter or sour taste.

Chronic GERD can cause **dysphagia** (difficulty swallowing). Dysphagia usually indicates a narrowing of the esophagus because of stricture or inflammation. Assess the patient for:

- The degree of dysphagia
- Whether dysphagia occurs when ingesting solids, liquids, or both
- Whether dysphagia is intermittent or occurs with each swallowing effort

Odynophagia (painful swallowing) can also occur with chronic GERD, but it is rare in people with uncomplicated reflux disease. Severe and long-lasting chest pain may be present if spasms occurring in the esophagus cause the muscle to contract with excess force. The resulting pain can be agonizing and may last for hours.

Other manifestations include chronic cough that occurs mostly at night or when the patient is lying down, asthma, and atypical chest pain. Cough and symptoms of asthma occur when refluxed acid is spilled over into the tracheobronchial tree. *Atypical chest pain* is thought to be caused by stimulation of pain receptors in the esophageal wall and by esophageal spasm. This type of chest pain can mimic angina and needs to be carefully distinguished from cardiac pain.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

In the older adult, the incidence of heartburn decreases in those with gastroesophageal reflux (GERD). Instead, the more severe complications of the disease are more frequent in this population, including atypical chest pain; ear, nose, and throat infections; and pulmonary problems, such as aspiration pneumonia, sleep apnea, and asthma. Barrett’s esophagus and esophageal erosions are also more common in older adults. The cause for these differences is not known (Chait, 2010).

Diagnostic Assessment

The most accurate method of diagnosing GERD is *24-hour ambulatory esophageal pH monitoring*. This test involves placing a small catheter through the nose into the distal esophagus. The patient is asked to keep a diary of activities and symptoms, and the pH is continuously monitored and recorded. Ambulatory pH monitoring is especially useful in diagnosing patients with atypical symptoms. A wireless monitoring device may be used to promote patient comfort.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) is useful in diagnosing or evaluating reflux esophagitis or in monitoring complications such as Barrett’s esophagus. This test requires the use of moderate sedation during the procedure, and patients must have someone accompany them home after recovery. During the procedure, tissue samples can be obtained for biopsy and strictures can be dilated (see Chapter 55).

Although not as common, *esophageal manometry*, or motility testing, may be performed when the diagnosis is uncertain. Water-filled catheters are inserted in the patient’s nose or mouth and slowly withdrawn while measurements of LES pressure and peristalsis are recorded. When used alone, manometry is not sensitive or specific enough to establish a diagnosis of GERD.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

The purpose of treatment for GERD is to relieve symptoms, treat esophagitis, and prevent complications such as strictures or Barrett’s esophagus. For most patients, GERD can be controlled by nutrition therapy, lifestyle changes, and drug therapy. *The most important role of the nurse is patient and family education. Teach the patient that GERD is a chronic disorder that requires ongoing management. The disease should be treated more aggressively in older adults (Chait, 2010).*

Nonpharmacologic Interventions. Nutrition therapy is used to relieve symptoms in patients with relatively mild GERD. Ask about the patient’s basic meal patterns and food preferences. Coordinate with the dietitian, patient, and family about how to adapt to changes in eating that may decrease reflux symptoms.

Teach the patient to limit or eliminate foods that decrease LES pressure, such as chocolate, alcohol, fatty foods (especially fried), caffeine, and carbonated beverages. The patient should also restrict spicy and acidic foods (e.g., orange juice, tomatoes) until esophageal healing can occur, because these foods irritate the inflamed tissue and cause heartburn. Peppermint may also aggravate symptoms.

Large meals increase the volume of and pressure in the stomach and delay gastric emptying. Therefore remind the patient to eat four to six small meals each day rather than three large ones. Encourage patients to eat no food for at least 3 hours before going to bed. Reflux episodes are most damaging at night. Patients may have the most difficulty restricting evening snacks. Advise the patient to eat slowly and chew thoroughly to facilitate digestion and prevent eructation (belching).

The control of GERD involves *lifestyle changes* to promote health and control reflux (Chart 57-2). Teach the patient to elevate the head by 6 to 12 inches for sleep to prevent nighttime reflux. This can be done by placing blocks under the head of the bed or by using a large, wedge-style pillow instead of a standard pillow.

CHART 57-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Health Promotion and Lifestyle Changes to Control Reflux

- Eat four to six small meals a day.
- Limit or eliminate fatty foods, coffee, tea, cola, and chocolate.
- Reduce or eliminate from your diet any food or spice that increases gastric acid and causes pain.
- Limit or eliminate alcohol and tobacco.
- Do not snack in the evening, and take no food for 2 to 3 hours before you go to bed.
- Eat slowly and chew your food thoroughly to reduce belching.
- Remain upright for 1 to 2 hours after meals, if possible.
- Elevate the head of your bed 6 to 12 inches using wooden blocks, or elevate your head using a foam wedge. Never sleep flat in bed.
- If you are overweight, lose weight.
- Do not wear constrictive clothing.
- Avoid heavy lifting, straining, and working in a bent-over position.
- Chew “chewable” antacids thoroughly, and follow with a glass of water.

Teach the patient to sleep in the right side-lying position to decrease the effects of nighttime episodes of reflux. Nighttime reflux is extremely common, and infrequent swallowing in combination with a supine position impairs esophageal clearance. Smoking and alcohol cause decreased LES pressure. Explore the possibility and methods for smoking cessation, and make appropriate referrals. Ask the patient about his or her use of alcoholic beverages. If appropriate, assist the patient in finding alcohol-cessation programs.

Assist the patient in examining approaches to weight reduction. Decreasing intra-abdominal pressure often reduces reflux symptoms. Teach the patient to avoid wearing constrictive clothing, lifting heavy objects or straining, and working in a bent-over or stooped position. Emphasize that these general adaptations are an essential and effective part of disease management and can produce prompt results in uncomplicated cases.

Obese patients often have obstructive sleep apnea, as well as GERD. Those who receive continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) treatment report improved sleeping and decreased episodes of reflux at night. See [Chapter 31](#) for a discussion of CPAP.

Some drugs lower LES pressure and *cause* reflux, such as oral contraceptives, anticholinergic agents, sedatives, NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen), nitrates, and calcium channel blockers. The possibility of eliminating those drugs causing reflux should be explored with the health care provider.

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy for GERD management includes three major types—antacids, histamine blockers, and proton pump inhibitors. These drugs have one or more of these functions ([Chart 57-3](#)):

- Inhibit gastric acid secretion
- Accelerate gastric emptying
- Protect the gastric mucosa

In uncomplicated cases of GERD, *antacids* may be effective for *occasional* episodes of heartburn. Antacids act by elevating the pH level of the gastric contents, thereby deactivating pepsin. They are not helpful in controlling frequent

symptoms because their length of action is too short and their nighttime effectiveness is minimal. These drugs also *increase* LES pressure and therefore are not given for long-term use.

Antacids containing aluminum hydroxide or magnesium hydroxide may be used. Maalox and Mylanta consist of a combination of these two agents. Patients often tolerate them better because they produce fewer side effects, such as constipation and diarrhea. Teach the patient to take the antacid 1 hour before and 2 to 3 hours after each meal. Some antacids are prepared as double-strength (DS) suspensions or tablets. The advantage of DS preparations is that a smaller amount of the drug is required. For example, 30 mL of regular Mylanta equals 15 mL of Mylanta-II (DS preparation).

Gaviscon, a combination of alginic acid and sodium bicarbonate, is often a very effective drug for GERD. It forms a thick foam that floats on top of the gastric contents and theoretically decreases the incidence of reflux. If reflux occurs, the foam enters the esophagus first and buffers the acid in the refluxed material. Remind the patient to take this drug when food is in the stomach.

Histamine receptor antagonists, commonly called *histamine blockers*, such as famotidine (Pepcid), ranitidine (Zantac), and nizatidine (Axid), decrease acid. With low-dose forms of these drugs available over the counter (OTC) and widely advertised for heartburn, many patients self-medicate before seeking professional assistance from their health care provider. When patients who have self-medicated with OTC preparations have uncontrolled symptoms, the health care provider usually prescribes a *higher* dose.

Ranitidine and the other preparations are long acting, allowing less-frequent dosing. They also appear to produce fewer side effects and may be safe for long-term use. Although these drugs do not affect the occurrence of reflux directly, they do reduce gastric acid secretion, improve symptoms, and promote healing of inflamed esophageal tissue.

Proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), such as omeprazole (Prilosec), rabeprazole (Aciphex), pantoprazole (Protonix), and esomeprazole (Nexium), are the *main* treatment for more severe GERD. Some PPIs are available as OTC drugs. These agents provide effective, long-acting inhibition of gastric acid secretion by affecting the proton pump of the gastric parietal cell. PPIs reduce gastric acid secretion and can be given in a single daily dose. If once-a-day dosing fails to control symptoms, twice-daily dosing may be used. A newer PPI, omeprazole/sodium bicarbonate (Zegerid), is the first immediate-release PPI and is designed for short-term use. Another newer PPI, dexlansoprazole (Kapidex), is a dual-release (delayed-release) drug that is available in several dosages but tends to be associated with more side and adverse effects than some of the other PPIs.

Some PPIs, such as Nexium and Protonix, may be administered in IV form for short-term use to treat or to prevent stress ulcers that can result from surgery. PPIs promote rapid tissue healing, but recurrence is common when the drug is stopped. Long-term use may mask reflux symptoms, and stopping the drug determines if reflux has been resolved. Long-term use may also cause community-acquired pneumonia and GI infections.

Research has also found that long-term use of proton pump inhibitors may increase the risk for hip fracture, especially in older adults. PPIs can interfere with calcium

CHART 57-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease (GERD)

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE FOR DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Antacids			
Aluminum or magnesium salts (Mylanta, Maalox) 30 mL orally between meals and as needed (PRN) throughout the day and at bedtime (Also see Chart 58-3 in Chapter 58)	Increases pH of gastric contents by deactivating pepsin	Give 1 hr before meals, 2-3 hr after meals, and at bedtime. Observe the patient for constipation or diarrhea. Suggest the use of combination mixtures or alternating use of aluminum and magnesium products.	These drugs work best if the stomach is empty. If given after meals, hydrogen ion load is high in food. Aluminum products produce constipation, and magnesium products induce diarrhea. Balancing their effects is important for patient adherence.
Alginic acid and sodium bicarbonate (Gaviscon), 1 tablet or 10-20 mL orally throughout the day and at bedtime	Buffers acid in stomach	Give after meals and at bedtime.	Alginic acid forms a viscous foam that floats on top of the gastric contents, impeding reflux or buffering its effects when it occurs.
Histamine Receptor Antagonists			
Ranitidine (Zantac) 150 mg orally twice daily Famotidine (Pepcid) 40 mg orally daily or 20 mg orally twice daily Nizatidine (Axiid) 150 mg orally twice daily	Decreases gastric acid secretions by blocking histamine receptors in parietal cells	Administer with meals and at bedtime. Use cautiously and in reduced dosages in patients with renal disease. Observe for dysrhythmias. Do not mix with tomato-based, mixed-vegetable juices; apple juice is the preferred choice.	Ranitidine and famotidine are more potent, longer-acting drugs but produce fewer side effects. Patients need an adequate creatinine clearance to prevent drug toxicity. Dysrhythmias are common adverse effects of the drug. Nizatidine may be less potent when mixed with tomato-based, mixed-vegetable juices.
Prokinetic Drugs			
Metoclopramide (Reglan) 10 mg orally three or four times daily	Increases gastric emptying	Instruct the patient to take the drug before meals. Teach the patient to report any neurologic or psychotropic side effects, such as restlessness, anxiety, ataxia, or hallucinations.	This drug increases the rate of gastric emptying. Long-term drug use produces adverse effects in up to one third of patients. <i>Therefore this drug is not commonly used.</i>
Proton Pump Inhibitors			
Omeprazole (Prilosec, Losec) 20-30 mg orally daily Lansoprazole (Prevacid) 15 mg orally daily for gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD); up to 60 mg orally for GI ulcers or Zollinger-Ellison syndrome Rabeprazole (Aciphex) 60 mg orally daily (may increase to 120 mg in two divided doses) Pantoprazole (Protonix, Protonix IV) 40 mg orally daily or 40 mg IV daily for 7-10 days given in 15-min or 2-min infusions Esomeprazole (Nexium) 20-40 mg orally daily; 20-40 mg IV daily for 7-10 days given between 10 and 30 min (do not run less than 3 minutes)	Decreases gastric acid production (long-acting)	Instruct the patient to take the drug before meals. Observe the patient for typical side effects: abdominal cramping, diarrhea, headache. For the patient who has difficulty swallowing or has a nasogastric tube, open the capsule and mix granules in apple juice (or applesauce if not tube-fed). Do not crush, break, or chew delayed-release tablets. Teach patient to wear sunscreen. Do not crush, break, or chew delayed-release tablets. Do not give Protonix IV with other IV drugs. Do not administer with digoxin, rabeprazole, or iron salts. Do not crush, break, or chew this delayed-release oral drug. Do not give IV Nexium with other IV drugs.	Gastric acid suppression is greater than 90%. Action is prolonged, but GI effects are severe in some patients. Same as for omeprazole. The drug is safe to administer by opening (not crushing) the capsule. This form of the drug is released slowly into the body throughout the day. The drug predisposes the patient to burns. This form of the drug is released slowly into the body throughout the day. Protonix IV is not compatible with most other IV drugs. This drug may alter the effect and absorption of these agents. The oral form of the drug is released slowly throughout the day. IV Nexium is not compatible with most other drugs.

CHART 57-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Postoperative Instructions for Patients Having Endoscopic Therapies for Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease (e.g., Stretta Procedure)

- Remain on clear liquids for 24 hours after the procedure.
- After the first day, consume a soft diet, such as custard, pureed vegetables, mashed potatoes, and applesauce.
- Avoid nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and aspirin for 10 days.
- Continue drug therapy as prescribed, usually proton pump inhibitors.
- Use liquid medications whenever possible.
- Do not allow nasogastric tubes for at least 1 month because the esophagus could be perforated.
- Contact the health care provider immediately if these problems occur:
 - Chest or abdominal pain
 - Bleeding
 - Dysphagia
 - Shortness of breath
 - Nausea or vomiting

absorption and protein digestion and therefore reduce available calcium to bone tissue. Decreased calcium makes bones more brittle and likely to fracture, especially as people age (Chait, 2010).

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client with gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is newly diagnosed by the nurse practitioner, who prescribes pantoprazole (Protonix) 40 mg. What teaching will the nurse provide for this client about this drug?

- "Be sure to take this drug every day until you feel better."
- "Do not take the drug with tomato-based foods or drinks."
- "Be aware that this drug can cause anxiety and restlessness."
- "Do not crush the drug because it has a delayed release."

Endoscopic Therapies. In the past 15 years, several non-invasive endoscopic procedures have been approved for severe GERD. Two techniques used are the Stretta procedure and endoluminal gastroplication. These nonsurgical methods are becoming more popular and may often replace surgery for GERD when other measures are not effective. Patients who are very obese or have severe symptoms may not be candidates for these procedures.

In the Stretta procedure, the physician applies radiofrequency (RF) energy through the endoscope using needles placed near the gastroesophageal junction. The RF energy decreases vagus nerve activity, thus reducing discomfort for the patient. This nonsurgical procedure has also been approved for patients with Barrett's esophagus (Bulsiewicz & Shaheen, 2011).

In the gastroplication procedure, the physician tightens the LES through the endoscope using sutures near the sphincter. Chart 57-4 outlines discharge instructions for endoscopic therapies.

The advantages of endoscopic therapies compared with surgery include:

- Use of light or moderate sedation (rather than general anesthesia)
- Ambulatory care procedure (rather than an inpatient stay)
- Short procedure (45 minutes versus several hours)
- 1 to 2 days absence from work (rather than 2 to 3 weeks)
- No antibiotics and lower complication rate, including fewer deaths

Surgical Management

A very small percentage of patients with GERD require anti-reflux surgery. It is usually indicated for otherwise healthy patients who have failed to respond to medical treatment or have developed complications related to GERD. Various surgical procedures may be used through conventional open techniques or laparoscope.

Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication (LNF) is a minimally invasive surgery (MIS) and is the gold standard for surgical management. A discussion of this procedure can be found in the next section (Hiatal Hernia) in the Surgical Management discussion. Patients who have surgery are encouraged to continue following the basic anti-reflux regimen of antacids and nutritional therapy because the rate of recurrence is high.

HIATAL HERNIA

Hiatal hernias, also called *diaphragmatic hernias*, involve the protrusion of the stomach through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm into the chest. The esophageal hiatus is the opening in the diaphragm through which the esophagus passes from the thorax to the abdomen. Most patients with hiatal hernias are asymptomatic, but some may have daily symptoms similar to those with GERD (McCance et al., 2010).

Pathophysiology

The two major types of hiatal hernias are sliding hernias and paraesophageal (rolling) hernias. *Sliding hernias* are the most common type. The esophagogastric junction and a portion of the fundus of the stomach slide upward through the esophageal hiatus into the chest, usually as a result of weakening of the diaphragm (Fig. 57-1). The hernia generally moves freely and slides into and out of the chest during changes in position or intra-abdominal pressure. Although **volvulus** (twisting) and obstruction do occur rarely, the major concern for a sliding hernia is the development of esophageal reflux and its complications (see Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease section earlier in this chapter). The development of reflux is related to chronic exposure of the lower esophageal sphincter (LES) to the low pressure of the thorax, which significantly reduces the effectiveness of the LES. Symptoms associated with decreased LES pressure are worsened by positions that favor reflux, such as bending or lying supine. Coughing, obesity, and ascites also increase reflux symptoms.

With *rolling hernias*, also known as *paraesophageal hernias*, the gastroesophageal junction remains in its normal intra-abdominal location but the fundus (and possibly portions of the stomach's greater curvature) rolls through the esophageal hiatus and into the chest beside the esophagus (see Fig. 57-1). The herniated portion of the stomach may be small or quite large. In rare cases, the stomach completely inverts into the chest. Reflux is not usually present because the LES remains

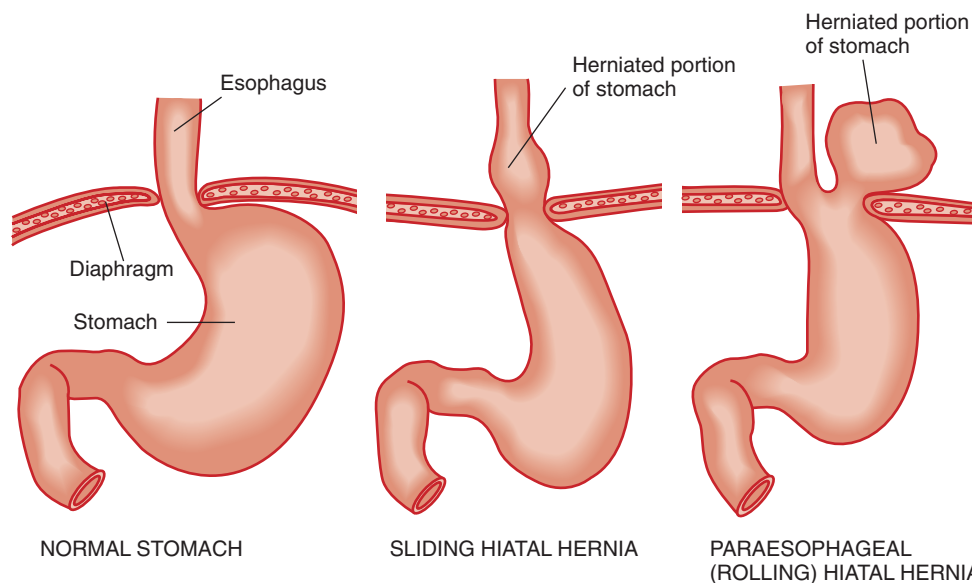


FIG. 57-1 A comparison of the normal stomach and sliding and paraesophageal (rolling) hiatal hernias.

anchored below the diaphragm. However, the risks for volvulus (twisting), obstruction (blockage), and strangulation (stricture) are high. The development of iron deficiency anemia is common because slow bleeding from venous obstruction causes the gastric mucosa to become engorged and ooze. Significant bleeding or hemorrhage is rare.

Rolling hernias are thought to develop from an anatomic defect occurring when the stomach is not properly anchored below the diaphragm rather than from muscle weakness. They can also be caused by previous esophageal surgeries, including sliding hernia repair.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient if he or she has heartburn, regurgitation (backward flow of food into the throat), pain, dysphagia (difficulty swallowing), and eructation (belching). Assess general physical appearance and nutritional status. Note the location, onset, duration, and quality of pain, as well as factors that relieve it or make it worse. The primary symptoms of sliding hiatal hernias are associated with reflux. Auscultate the lungs because pulmonary symptoms similar to asthma may be triggered by episodes of aspiration, particularly at night. A detailed history is crucial in attempting to differentiate angina from noncardiac chest pain caused by reflux. Symptoms resulting from hiatal hernia typically worsen after a meal or when the patient is in a supine position (Chart 57-5).

In those with rolling hernias, assess for symptoms related to the stretching or displacement of thoracic contents by the hernia. Patients may report a feeling of fullness after eating or have breathlessness or a feeling of suffocation if the hernia interferes with breathing. Some may experience chest pain associated with reflux that mimics angina.

The *barium swallow study with fluoroscopy* is the most specific diagnostic test for identifying hiatal hernia. Rolling

CHART 57-5 KEY FEATURES

Hiatal Hernias

Sliding Hiatal Hernias

- Heartburn
- Regurgitation
- Chest pain
- Dysphagia
- Belching

Paraesophageal Hernias

- Feeling of fullness after eating
- Breathlessness after eating
- Feeling of suffocation
- Chest pain that mimics angina
- Worsening of manifestations in a recumbent position

hernias are usually clearly visible, and sliding hernias can often be observed when the patient moves through a series of positions that increase intra-abdominal pressure. To visualize sliding hernias, an esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) may be performed to view both the esophagus and gastric lining (see Chapter 55).

INTERVENTIONS

Patients with hiatal hernias may be managed either medically or surgically. Collaborative care is based on the severity of symptoms and the risk for serious complications. Sliding

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The most important role of the nurse in caring for a patient with a hiatal hernia is health teaching. Encourage the patient to avoid eating in the late evening and to avoid foods associated with reflux. Teach the patient and family that the patient should follow a restricted diet and exercise to reduce body weight if overweight. Obesity increases intra-abdominal pressure and worsens both the hernia and the symptoms of reflux. Teach about positioning, including:

- Sleep at night with the head of the bed elevated 6 inches
- Remain upright for several hours after eating
- Avoid straining or excessive vigorous exercise
- Refrain from wearing clothing that is tight or constrictive around the abdomen

hiatal hernias are most commonly treated medically. Large rolling hernias can become strangulated or obstructed. Therefore early surgical repair is preferred.

Nonsurgical Management

The collaborative interventions for patients with hiatal hernia are similar to those for GERD and include drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and lifestyle changes. The health care provider typically prescribes antacids and histamine receptor antagonists, such as ranitidine (Zantac), in an attempt to control reflux and its symptoms. Nutrition therapy is also important and follows the guidelines discussed earlier for GERD.

Surgical Management

Surgery may be required when the risk for complications is high or when damage from chronic reflux becomes severe.

Preoperative Care. If the surgery is not urgent, the surgeon instructs patients who are overweight to lose weight before surgery. They are also advised to quit or significantly reduce smoking. As part of preoperative teaching, reinforce the surgeon's instructions and prepare the patient for what to expect after surgery.

Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication (LNF) is the minimally invasive surgery commonly used for hiatal hernia repair. Complications after LNF occur less frequently compared with those seen in patients having the more traditional open surgical approach.

A small percentage of patients are not candidates for LNF and therefore require a conventional open fundoplication. Teach patients having this procedure what to expect after surgery. For example, for the trans-thoracic surgical approach, teach the patient about chest tubes. Inform the patient that a nasogastric tube will be inserted during surgery and will remain in place for several days. Oral intake is started gradually with clear liquids after peristalsis is re-established or to stimulate peristalsis. Instruct the patient how to deep breathe and use the incentive spirometer. These measures are essential to prevent postoperative respiratory complications. The high incision makes deep breathing extremely painful. Teach the patient about postoperative pain, and assure him or her that adequate postoperative analgesic will be given promptly. Pain levels must be continuously monitored.

Operative Procedures. Although several hiatal hernia repair procedures are used, each involves reinforcement of the lower esophageal sphincter (LES) by fundoplication. The surgeon wraps a portion of the stomach fundus around the distal esophagus to anchor it and reinforce the LES (Fig. 57-2). In laparoscopic surgery, the repair is performed through several ½-inch incisions in the abdomen. For the conventional open procedure, the surgeon typically uses a high trans-thoracic approach that requires a large chest incision for access to the surgical area.

Postoperative Care. Patients having the LNF procedure are at risk for bleeding and infection, although these problems are not common. *The nursing care priority is to observe for these complications and provide health teaching as described in Chart 57-6.*

Postoperative care after *conventional open repair* closely follows that required after any esophageal surgery. Complications after open surgery are more common and potentially serious. Carefully assess for complications of open

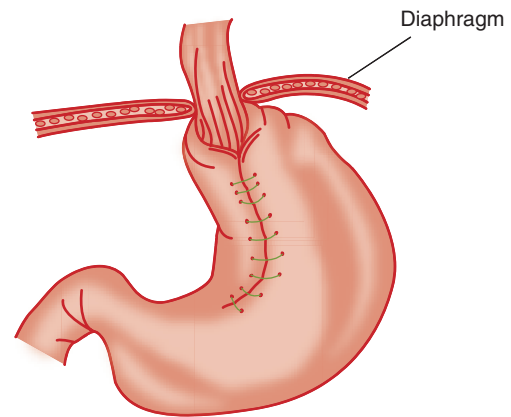


FIG. 57-2 Open surgical approach for Nissen fundoplication for gastroesophageal reflux disease or hiatal hernia repair.

CHART 57-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Postoperative Instructions for Patients Having Laparoscopic Nissen Fundoplication (LNF)

- Stay on a soft diet for about a week, including mashed potatoes, puddings, custard, and milkshakes; avoid carbonated beverages, tough foods, and raw vegetables that are difficult to swallow.
- Remain on antireflux medications as prescribed for at least a month.
- Do not drive for a week after surgery; do not drive if taking opioid pain medication.
- Walk every day, but do not do any heavy lifting.
- Remove small dressings 2 days after surgery, and shower; do not remove Steri-Strips until 10 days after surgery.
- Wash incisions with soap and water, rinse well, and pat dry; report any redness or drainage from the incisions to your surgeon.
- Report fever above 101° F (38.3° C), nausea, vomiting, or uncontrollable bloating or pain. For patients older than 65 years, report elevations above 100° F (37.8° C).
- Schedule an appointment for follow-up with your surgeon in 3 to 4 weeks.

fundoplication surgery, described next, and report any complications to the health care provider (Chart 57-7).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The primary focus of care after conventional surgery for a hiatal hernia repair is the prevention of respiratory complications. Elevate the head of the patient's bed at least 30 degrees to lower the diaphragm and promote lung expansion. Assist the patient out of bed and begin ambulation as soon as possible. Be sure to support the incision during coughing to reduce pain and to prevent excessive strain on the suture line, especially with obese patients.

CHART 57-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Assessment of Postoperative Complications Related to Fundoplication Procedures**

COMPLICATION	ASSESSMENT FINDINGS
Temporary dysphagia	The patient has difficulty swallowing when oral feeding begins.
Gas bloat syndrome	The patient has difficulty belching to relieve distention.
Atelectasis, pneumonia	The patient experiences dyspnea, chest pain, or fever.
Obstructed nasogastric tube	The patient experiences nausea, vomiting, or abdominal distention. The nasogastric tube does not drain.

Incentive spirometry and deep breathing are routinely used after surgery to maintain patency of the airways and lung expansion. Adequate pain control with analgesics is essential for postoperative deep breathing and coughing. Patients with a smoking history or chronic airway limitation (e.g., chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, asthma) require more aggressive management by the respiratory therapist to prevent atelectasis and pneumonia. Patients with large hiatal hernias are at the highest risk for developing respiratory complications.

The patient having the conventional surgery usually has a large-bore (diameter) nasogastric (NG) tube to prevent the fundoplication wrap from becoming too tight around the esophagus. Initially the NG drainage should be dark brown with old blood but should become normal yellowish green within the first 8 hours after surgery. Check the NG tube every 4 to 8 hours for proper placement in the stomach. The tube should be properly anchored so it is not displaced, because re-insertion could perforate the fundoplication. Follow the surgeon's requests for care of the patient with an NG tube.

Monitor patency of the NG tube to keep the stomach decompressed. This prevents retching or vomiting, which can strain or rupture the stomach sutures. The NG tube is irritating. Therefore provide frequent oral hygiene to increase comfort. Assess the patient's hydration status regularly, including accurate measures of intake and output. Adequate fluid replacement helps thin respiratory secretions.

After open fundoplication, the patient may begin clear fluids when peristalsis is re-established or in an effort to stimulate peristalsis. Some surgeons create a temporary gastrostomy for feeding to allow for undisturbed healing of the repair. The patient gradually progresses to a near-normal diet during the first 4 to 6 weeks. Some foods, especially caffeinated or carbonated beverages and alcohol, are either restricted or eliminated. The food storage area of the stomach is reduced by the surgery, and meals need to be both smaller and more frequent.

Carefully supervise the first oral feedings because temporary dysphagia is common. Continuous dysphagia usually indicates that the fundoplication is too tight, and dilation may be required.

Another common complication of this surgery is the **gas bloat syndrome**, in which patients are unable to voluntarily

eructate (belch). The syndrome is usually temporary but may persist, even in those who have the laparoscopic approach. Teach the patient to avoid drinking carbonated beverages and to avoid eating gas-producing foods (especially high-fat foods), chewing gum, and drinking with a straw.

Other patients have **aerophagia** (air swallowing) from attempting to reverse or clear acid reflux. Teach them to relax consciously before and after meals, to eat and drink slowly, and to chew all food thoroughly. Air in the stomach that cannot be removed by belching can be extremely uncomfortable. Frequent position changes and ambulation are often effective interventions for eliminating air from the GI tract. If gas pain is still present, patients are taught to take simethicone, 80 mg four times daily as needed. Be sure to remind the patient to crush and dissolve the medication in water before taking.

Community-Based Care

Patients undergoing one of the open surgical repairs require activity restrictions during the 3- to 6-week postoperative recovery period. For laparoscopic surgery, activity is typically restricted for a shorter time and the patient can return to his or her usual lifestyle more quickly, usually in a few days to a week.

For long-term management, teach the patient and family about appropriate nutritional modifications. The use of stool softeners or bulk laxatives is recommended for the first postoperative weeks until healing is complete. Instruct the patient to avoid straining and to prevent constipation. Teach him or her to inspect the healing incision daily and to notify the health care provider if swelling, redness, tenderness, discharge, or fever occurs. Advise the patient to avoid contact with people with respiratory infections and to contact the health care provider if symptoms of a cold or influenza develop. Continuous coughing can cause the incision or the fundoplication to dehiscence ("break open"). Advise the patient to avoid smoking. Provide information about smoking-cessation methods, if appropriate.

If needed, collaborate with the dietitian to educate the patient and family about dietary changes. Encourage the patient to eat smaller and more frequent meals. Few ongoing diet restrictions are needed, but overeating or eating the wrong types of foods can produce discomfort if the patient cannot belch. Instruct the patient to report reflux symptoms to the health care provider.

Although severe surgical complications are rare, conditions such as gas bloat syndrome and dysphagia may continue. Prepare the patient for these problems and for the potential that reflux may not be completely controlled or may occur again. Although surgery controls the condition, a cure is rare and lifestyle modifications need to be ongoing.

ESOPHAGEAL TUMORS

Pathophysiology

Although esophageal tumors can be benign, most are usually malignant (cancerous) and the majority arise from the epithelium. Squamous cell carcinomas of the esophagus are located in the upper two thirds of the esophagus. Adenocarcinomas are more commonly found in the distal third and at the gastroesophageal junction and are now the most common type of esophageal cancer (McCance et al., 2010). Esophageal

tumors grow rapidly because there is no serosal layer to limit their extension. Because the esophageal mucosa is richly supplied with lymph tissue, there is early spread of tumors to lymph nodes. Esophageal tumors can protrude into the esophageal lumen and can cause thickening or invade deeply into surrounding tissue. In rare cases, the lesion may be confined to the epithelial layer (in situ). In most cases, the tumor is large and well established on diagnosis. More than half of esophageal cancers **metastasize** (spread throughout the body).

The two primary risk factors associated with the development of squamous cell carcinoma of the esophagus are tobacco use and heavy alcohol intake. The compounds in tobacco smoke may be responsible for the genetic mutations seen in many esophageal tumors. A smoker has two to six times the risk for eventually developing esophageal cancer than does a nonsmoker (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2010). Many alcoholic beverages contain potent carcinogens that may be responsible for the development of esophageal tumors. Smoking and excessive alcohol can act together in causing esophageal cancer. Obesity and malnutrition are also risk factors.

Long-term, untreated *gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)* can lead to esophageal adenocarcinoma. For people with Barrett's esophagus, the risk for developing esophageal cancer also greatly increases. **Barrett's esophagus** results from exposure to acid and pepsin, which leads to the replacement of normal distal squamous mucosa with columnar epithelium as a response to tissue injury. This tissue undergoes

dysplasia (cell appearance changes) and, ultimately, becomes cancerous. In parts of the world where esophageal cancer is more common, the incidence of squamous cell carcinoma appears to be linked to high levels of nitrosamines (which are found in pickled and fermented foods) and foods high in nitrate. Diets that are chronically deficient in fresh fruits and vegetables have also been implicated in the development of squamous cell carcinoma.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Assess for risk factors related to the development or symptoms of esophageal cancer, such as racial and ethnic background, age, gender, history of alcohol consumption, tobacco use, dietary habits, and other esophageal problems (e.g., dysphagia, reflux). Esophageal cancer (squamous cell) occurs most often in middle-aged and older adults and tends to occur more in black males, although the exact cause for racial differences is not known. White males are more predisposed to esophageal adenocarcinoma. Ask the patient about consumption of smoked pickled foods, changes in appetite, changes in taste, or weight loss. *Cancer of the esophagus is a silent tumor in its early stages, with few observable signs. By the time the tumor causes symptoms, it usually has spread extensively.*

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Dysphagia (difficulty swallowing) is the most common symptom of esophageal cancer, but it may not be present until the esophageal opening has gotten much smaller. Dysphagia is both persistent and progressive when **stricture** (narrowing) occurs. It is initially associated with swallowing solids, particularly meat, and then progresses rapidly over a period of weeks or months to difficulty in swallowing soft foods and liquids. Late in the disease, even saliva can induce choking. Patients usually report a sensation that food is sticking in the throat or in the substernal area. Careful assessment of the dysphagia is an important part of the diagnosis because dysphagia associated with other esophageal disorders is not usually continuous. Weight loss often accompanies dysphagia and can be more than 20 pounds over several months.

Odynophagia (painful swallowing) is reported by many patients as a steady, dull, substernal pain that may radiate. It occurs most often when the patient drinks cold liquids. The presence of severe or persistent pain often indicates tumor invasion of the mediastinal structures. Assess for regurgitation, vomiting, **halitosis** (foul breath), and chronic hiccups, which often accompany advanced disease. In most patients, pulmonary problems develop. Assess for chronic cough, increased secretions, and a history of recent infections. Tumors in the upper esophagus may involve the larynx and thus cause hoarseness. **Chart 57-8** summarizes the common clinical manifestations of esophageal tumors.

Psychosocial Assessment

The diagnosis of esophageal cancer causes high patient anxiety. The disease is accompanied by distressing symptoms and is often terminal. The fear of choking can place unusual

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Certain genetic factors may have a role in the development of esophageal cancers. It is thought that these cancers result from mutations in tumor suppressor genes. Tumor suppressor genes are normal genes that control cell growth and division. When this type of gene is mutated and does not work properly, cells are unable to stop growing and dividing and tumors can result. (See **Chapter 23** for a more complete discussion.)

Overexpression and mutations of the *Tp53*, *Tp16*, and *Tp17* tumor suppressor genes have been found in people with esophageal cancer (Nussbaum et al., 2007). In addition, the presence of the mutated *Tp53* gene may be an indication of advanced disease, especially in patients with adenocarcinomas.

Overexpression of *cyclin D1*, a protein that promotes cell growth and division, has also been found in patients with esophageal squamous cell cancers. Cyclins are products of oncogenes, which are normal genes involved in cell division and are controlled by suppressor genes. Prolonged exposure to carcinogens, such as tobacco, can cause oncogenes to escape the control of suppressor genes, leading to overexpression of cyclins and uncontrolled cell growth (cancer).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client has a history of gastroesophageal reflux disease and is worried about getting cancer of the esophagus. What health teaching about ways to decrease the risk for cancer will the nurse provide?

Select all that apply.

- "Consider dieting and exercise because you are overweight."
- "Drink a glass of red wine every night because it provides antioxidants."
- "Join a good smoking-cessation program as soon as possible."
- "Eat plenty of fruits and vegetables instead of so much junk food."
- "Sleep with two pillows every night to prevent reflux when sleeping."

stress, especially at mealtimes. The loss of pleasure and social aspects of eating may affect relationships with family and friends. Assess the patient's response to the diagnosis and prognosis. Ask about his or her usual coping strengths and resources. Assess the impact of the disease on the patient's usual daily activity routine. Determine the availability of support systems and the potential financial impact of the disease and its treatment. Refer the patient and family members to psychological counseling, pastoral care, and/or the social worker or case manager as needed. [Chapter 9](#) describes end-of-life care for patients in the terminal stage of the disease.

Diagnostic Assessment

A barium swallow study with fluoroscopy is usually the first diagnostic test requested to evaluate dysphagia. In a barium swallow, the margins of a tumor may be seen. The definitive diagnosis of esophageal cancer is made by *esophageal ultrasound (EUS)* with fine needle aspiration to examine the tumor tissue. An esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) may also be performed to inspect the esophagus and obtain tissue specimens for cell studies and disease staging. A complete cancer staging workup is performed to determine the extent of the disease and plan appropriate therapy.

Positron emission tomography (PET) may identify metastatic disease with more accuracy than a computed tomography (CT) scan. PET can also help evaluate response to chemotherapy to treat the cancer.

ANALYSIS

The most specific common problem for patients with esophageal cancer is *decreased nutritional intake related to impaired swallowing and possible metastasis*. Many patients with cancer also have pain and are fearful due to the diagnosis of cancer. [Chapter 24](#) describes problems that are typically seen with any patient with cancer.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Promoting Nutrition

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The major concern for a patient with esophageal cancer is weight loss secondary to dysphagia. Therefore he or she is expected to maintain adequate nutrient intake and weight either orally or via an alternative method.

Interventions. Interventions to maintain or improve nutritional status focus on treatments that remove or shrink the obstructive tumor. Methods to reduce the effects of

treatment that can impact nutrition are also a priority. Surgery is the most definitive intervention for esophageal cancer.

Nonsurgical treatment options for cancer of the esophagus that can assist in both disease and nutrition management include:

- Nutrition therapy
- Swallowing therapy
- Chemotherapy
- Radiation therapy
- Chemoradiation
- Targeted therapies
- Photodynamic therapy
- Esophageal dilation
- Endoscopic therapies

Nonsurgical Management. The treatment of esophageal cancer often involves a combination of the therapies just mentioned. Patients with cancer of the esophagus experience many physical problems, and symptom management becomes essential.

The purpose of nutrition therapy is to administer food and fluids to support the patient who is malnourished or at high risk for becoming malnourished. Conduct a screening assessment to provide information about the patient's nutritional status. The dietitian determines the caloric needs of the patient to meet daily requirements. Be sure the patient is weighed daily. Careful positioning is essential for a patient who is experiencing frequent reflux or who has tubes to keep the esophagus patent. Teach the patient to remain upright for several hours after meals and to avoid lying completely flat. Remind unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) and other health care team members to keep the head of the bed elevated to a 30-degree angle or more to prevent reflux.

Semisoft foods and thickened liquids are preferred because they are easier to swallow. Record the amount of food and fluid intake every day to monitor progress in meeting desired nutritional outcomes. Liquid nutritional supplements (e.g., Boost, Ensure) are used between feedings to increase caloric intake. Ongoing efforts are made to preserve the ability to swallow, but enteral feedings (tube feedings) may be needed temporarily when dysphagia is severe. In patients with complete esophageal obstruction or life-threatening fistulas, the surgeon may create a gastrostomy or jejunostomy for feeding. Encourage the patient and family to meet with the dietitian for diet teaching and planning. [Chapter 63](#) describes care for patients receiving enteral feeding.

Collaborate with the speech-language pathologist (SLP) to assist the patient with oral exercises to improve swallowing (*swallowing therapy*). Ask the patient to suck on a lollipop to enhance tongue strength. Teach the patient to reach for food particles on the lips or chin using the tongue. In preparation

CHART 57-8 KEY FEATURES

Esophageal Tumors

- Persistent and progressive dysphagia (most common feature)
- Feeling of food sticking in the throat
- Odynophagia (painful swallowing)
- Severe, persistent chest or abdominal pain or discomfort
- Regurgitation
- Chronic cough with increasing secretions
- Hoarseness
- Anorexia
- Nausea and vomiting
- Weight loss (often more than 20 pounds)
- Changes in bowel habits (diarrhea, constipation, bleeding)

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When the patient with an esophageal tumor is eating or drinking, monitor for signs and symptoms of aspiration, such as choking or coughing! Food aspiration can cause airway obstruction, pneumonia, or both, especially in older adults. In coordination with the SLP, teach family members and caregivers how to feed the patient, if needed. Teach them how to monitor for aspiration and implement appropriate measures if choking occurs.

for swallowing, remind the patient to position the head in forward flexion (chin tuck). Then tell him or her to place food at the back of the mouth. Monitor him or her for sealing of the lips and for tongue movements while eating. Check for pocketing of food in the cheeks after swallowing.

The use of *chemotherapy* in the treatment of esophageal cancer has been only moderately effective. It can be given as a primary treatment if the patient is not a candidate for surgery or for palliation (control of symptoms). In most cases, though, chemotherapy is given in combination with radiation therapy to provide the patient the best chance of cure. The rationale for this approach is to shrink the tumor and eliminate any other tumor that may be in the local lymph nodes, improving the odds for a complete surgical resection. The two most commonly used chemotherapeutic agents have traditionally been 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) and a platinum-based agent, such as cisplatin (Platinol), carboplatin (Paraplatin), and oxaliplatin (Eloxatin). These drugs make the tumor cells more sensitive to the effects of radiation. Other drugs have been tried successfully for treatment of esophageal cancer, including paclitaxel (Taxol), docetaxel (Taxotere), and irinotecan (Camptosar). Because chemotherapeutic drugs affect healthy cells as well as cancer cells, they have many side effects that cause discomfort to the patient. [Chapter 24](#) describes chemotherapy in detail and discusses the role of the nurse in caring for patients receiving these drugs.

Radiation therapy to manage esophageal cancer is only moderately effective and can be used alone or in combination with other treatments. Radiation alone can provide palliation of symptoms by shrinking the tumor. It is contraindicated for patients with tracheoesophageal fistula, mediastinitis, mediastinal hemorrhage, or infiltration of the cancer to the trachea or bronchus. Normal esophageal tissue is very sensitive to the effects of radiation. Although high doses of radiation demonstrate the best results for tumor shrinkage, esophageal stricture or stenosis can result in many patients, which then requires esophageal dilation. [Chapter 24](#) describes radiation methods and the general nursing care for the patient having radiation therapy.

Chemoradiation is a treatment for esophageal cancer that involves the use of chemotherapy at the same time as radiation therapy. One cycle of chemotherapy is given during the first week of radiation and another is delivered during the fifth week of radiation. Additional drug cycles are given after radiation therapy is complete.

The newest addition to the treatment of esophageal cancer is targeted therapies, used in combination with radiation and chemotherapy. Unlike chemotherapy, these therapies interfere with cancer cell growth in a variety of ways with less impact on healthy cells. Many of these drugs focus on proteins that are involved in signaling cells when to grow and divide. A key to success with targeted therapy is that the cancer cells must overexpress the targeted protein. Thus each patient's cancer cells are first examined for the overexpression to determine if targeted therapy is appropriate and which drug to use. A number of agents have been approved for other GI cancers but are still used experimentally for esophageal cancer. For example, cetuximab (Erbix) is a monoclonal antibody that targets the epithelial growth factor receptor (EGFR) on the surface of cancer cells. EGFR is often overexpressed in esophageal tumors. Other targeted therapies, such

as trastuzumab (Herceptin), gefitinib (Iressa), and erlotinib (Tarceva), have also been used. [Chapter 24](#) describes targeted therapies in detail, including nursing implications for patient safety and quality care.

Photodynamic therapy (PDT) was originally used for the treatment of skin cancer but is now used also as a palliative treatment for patients with advanced esophageal cancer who are not candidates for surgery. It may be used also as a cure for patients who have very small, localized tumors. The patient is injected with porfimer sodium (Photofrin), a light-sensitive drug that collects in cancer cells. Two days after the injection, a fiberoptic probe with a light at the tip is threaded into the esophagus through an endoscope. The light activates the Photofrin, destroying only cancer cells. PDT is far less invasive than surgery and is performed on an ambulatory care basis under moderate sedation.

The side effects of Photofrin are rare but include nausea, fever, and constipation. Before the procedure, the patient is given written guidelines concerning photosensitivity measures. Remind the patient to avoid exposure to sunlight for 1 to 3 months. Sunglasses and protective clothing that covers all exposed body areas are essential. The patient may experience chest pain secondary to tissue damage and will require pain relief with opioid analgesics for a short time. Teach the patient to follow a clear liquid diet for 3 to 5 days after the procedure and advance to full liquids as tolerated. Warn the patient that tissue particles may release from the tumor site and be present in the sputum. [Chapter 24](#) describes in detail the health teaching needed to promote patient safety associated with PDT.

Esophageal dilation may be performed as necessary throughout the course of the disease to achieve temporary but immediate relief of dysphagia. It is usually performed on an ambulatory care basis. Dilators are used to tear soft tissue, thereby widening the esophageal lumen (opening). In most cases, malignant tumors can be dilated safely, but perforation remains a significant risk. Large metal stents may be used to keep the esophagus open for longer periods. A stent covered with graft material can be used to seal a perforation. Bacteremia can also occur. To reduce the risk for endocarditis, antibiotics are given. The treatment is repeated as often as needed to preserve the patient's ability to swallow.

When patients are not candidates for surgery or the tumor is too large to remove surgically, laser therapy or electrocoagulation using endoscopy may be performed as a palliative measure. Both of these methods destroy some cancer cells and reduce tumor size to improve swallowing. The procedures are done in ambulatory care settings or same-day surgery centers using moderate sedation.

Surgical Management. The purposes of surgical resection vary from palliation to cure. **Esophagectomy** is the removal of all or part of the esophagus. An **esophagogastrectomy** involves the removal of part of the esophagus and proximal stomach. The remaining stomach may be "pulled up" to take the place of the esophagus, or a section of the jejunum or colon may be placed as a conduit. Conventional open surgical techniques are lengthy and are associated with many complications or death. Fistula formation between the trachea and esophagus, abscess, and respiratory complications are common.

For patients with early-stage cancer, a laparoscopic-assisted **minimally invasive esophagectomy (MIE)** may be

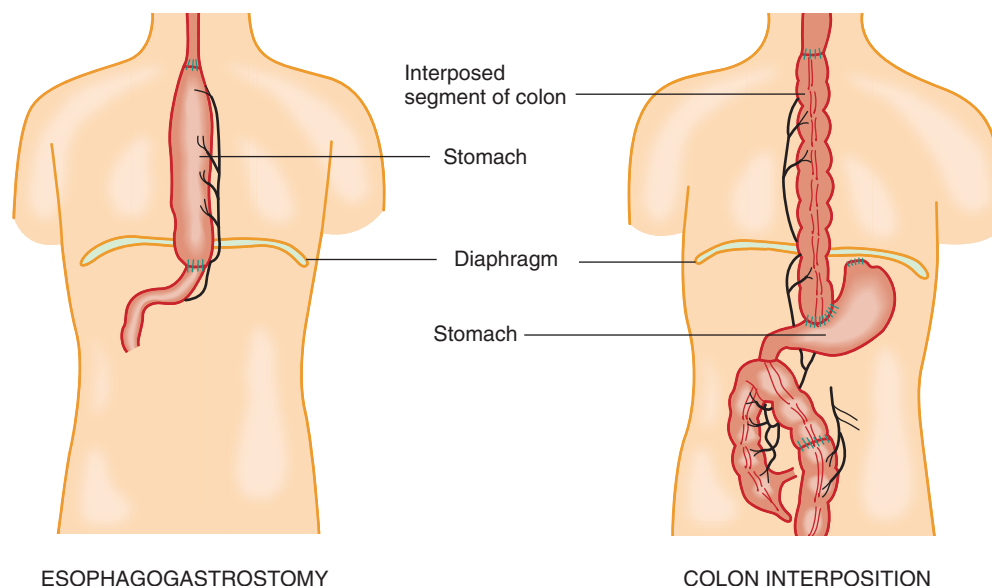


FIG. 57-3 Open surgical approaches to the treatment of esophageal cancer.

performed. However, most patients require the conventional open surgery because of tumor size and metastasis by the time they are diagnosed with the disease.

Preoperative Care. Preoperative preparation for patients undergoing esophagectomy or esophagogastrectomy can be quite extensive, especially before conventional techniques. Advise the patient to stop smoking 2 to 4 weeks before surgery to enhance pulmonary function. Patient preparation may include 5 days to 2 to 3 weeks of nutritional support to decrease the risk for postoperative complications. Ideally this supplementation is given orally, but many patients require tube feeding or parenteral nutrition. Teach the patient and family to monitor the patient's weight and intake and output. A preoperative evaluation may be required to treat dental disease. Teach the patient to use meticulous oral care four times daily to decrease the risk for postoperative infection.

Preoperative nursing care focuses on teaching and on psychological support regarding the surgical procedure and preoperative and postoperative instructions. Teach the patient about:

- The number and sites of all incisions and drains
- The placement of a jejunostomy tube for initial enteral feedings
- The need for chest tubes if the pleural space is entered
- The purpose of the nasogastric tube
- The need for IV infusion

Teach the patient about routines for turning, coughing, deep breathing, and chest physiotherapy. Emphasize the crucial nature of postoperative respiratory care. If colon interposition (resecting a piece of colon and creating an esophagus) is planned, the patient also has a complete bowel preparation before surgery.

The patient facing a serious illness and extensive surgery can be expected to have feelings of grief and anxiety. Encourage the patient to talk about personal feelings and fears, and involve the family or significant others in all preoperative teaching and discussions. A social worker or case manager

can be extremely helpful in providing continuity of care and support to the entire family.

Operative Procedures. In the MIE procedure, the surgeon makes four or five small incisions in the chest and abdomen using a video-assisted thoracoscope and laparoscope. The lower esophagus and gastric fundus are removed. The remaining portion of the esophagus is then anastomosed (reconnected) to the stomach.

For most patients, the surgeon performs an open subtotal or total esophagectomy because tumors are often large and involve distant lymph nodes. For a subtotal (partial) removal, the diseased portion of the esophagus is removed and the cervical portion is anastomosed (connected) to the stomach (Fig. 57-3). A **pyloromyotomy** is done by cutting and suturing the pylorus. Finally, a jejunostomy tube may be placed for postoperative enteral feeding.

For patients with early-stage tumors of the lower third of the esophagus, a transhiatal esophagectomy is the preferred surgical approach. The surgery is performed through an upper midline cervical incision. With this approach, the pleural space is not entered, reducing respiratory complications. For patients with tumors in the upper esophagus, a radical neck dissection and laryngectomy may also be needed if the disease has spread to the larynx. **Chapter 31** discusses the care of patients having these procedures.

The surgeon may perform a **colon interposition** when the tumor involves the stomach or the stomach is otherwise unsuitable for anastomosis. A section of right or left colon is removed and brought up into the thorax to substitute for the esophagus (see Fig. 57-3).

Postoperative Care. The patient requires intensive postoperative care and is at risk for multiple serious complications. The patient having an MIE has the same risk for postoperative complications as one having the open procedure. The advantages of MIE, though, include:

- Less blood loss during surgery; fewer blood transfusions

- Decreased healing and recovery time
- Decreased trauma to the body
- No large incisions
- Less postoperative pain
- Shorter hospital stay (5 to 7 days rather than 7 to 10 days)

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Respiratory care is the highest postoperative priority for patients having an esophagectomy. For those who had traditional surgery, intubation with mechanical ventilation is needed for at least the first 16 to 24 hours. Pulmonary complications include atelectasis and pneumonia. The risk for postoperative pulmonary complications is increased in the patient who has received preoperative radiation. Once the patient is extubated, begin deep breathing, turning, and coughing every 1 to 2 hours. Assess the patient for decreased breath sounds and shortness of breath every 1 to 2 hours. Provide incisional support and adequate analgesia for effective coughing.

Remind nursing and other staff to keep the patient in a semi-Fowler's or high Fowler's position to support ventilation and prevent reflux. The health care provider prescribes prophylactic antibiotics and supplemental oxygen. *Ensure the patency of the chest tube drainage system, and monitor for changes in the volume or color of the drainage.*

Cardiovascular complications, particularly hypotension during surgery, can occur as a result of pressure placed on the posterior heart and usually respond well to IV fluid administration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Monitor for manifestations of fluid volume overload, particularly in older patients and in those who have undergone lymph node dissection. Assess for edema, crackles in the lungs, and increased jugular venous pressure. In the immediate postoperative phase, the patient is often admitted to the intensive care unit. Critical care nurses assess hemodynamic parameters such as cardiac output, cardiac index, and systemic vascular resistance every 2 hours to monitor for myocardial ischemia. Observe for atrial fibrillation that results from irritation of the vagus nerve during surgery, and manage according to agency protocol.

The patient with poor nutrition or prior radiation or chemotherapy is at risk for infection. For those who undergo more radical surgical procedures, there is a serious risk for leakage at the anastomosis (surgical connection) sites. This situation is especially true with colon interpositions because several sites are stressed by the effects of tension, poor blood supply, and delayed healing. *Mediastinitis* (inflammation of the mediastinum) resulting from an anastomotic leak can lead to fatal sepsis.

Wound management is another major postoperative concern for conventional surgery because the patient typically has multiple incisions and drains. *Provide direct support to the incision during turning and coughing to prevent dehiscence.* Wound infection can occur 4 to 5 days after surgery. Leakage from the site of anastomosis is a dreaded complication that can appear 2 to 10 days after surgery. If an anastomotic leak occurs, all oral intake is discontinued and is not resumed until the site of the leak has healed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After esophageal surgery, carefully assess for fever, fluid accumulation, general signs of inflammation, and symptoms of early shock (e.g., tachycardia, tachypnea). Report any of these findings to the surgeon OR Rapid Response Team immediately!

A nasogastric (NG) tube is placed intraoperatively to decompress the stomach to prevent tension on the suture line. Monitor the NG tube for patency, and carefully secure the tube to prevent dislodgment, which can disrupt the sutures at the anastomosis. *Do not irrigate or reposition the NG tube in patients who have undergone esophageal surgery unless requested by the surgeon!* The initial nasogastric drainage is bloody but should change to a greenish yellow color by the end of the first postoperative day. The continued presence of blood may indicate internal bleeding at the suture line. Provide oral hygiene for the patient every 2 to 4 hours while the tube is in place, or delegate and supervise this activity (Chart 57-9).

The nutritional management of the patient who has undergone esophageal surgery is an early postoperative concern. After conventional surgery, on the second postoperative day, initial feedings usually begin through the jejunostomy tube (J tube). The feedings are slowly increased over the next several days. Feeding by this method can be discontinued once the patient is taking adequate oral nutrition. However, some patients may require J-tube feedings for about 1 month if large amounts of residual feeding are aspirated.

Before beginning oral feedings, a cine-esophagram study is performed to detect any anastomotic leaks, strictures, or signs of aspiration. If no leaks are seen, a liquid diet is started. If liquids are well tolerated, the patient's diet is advanced to include semisolid foods and then solid foods.

Place the patient in an upright position, and supervise all initial swallowing efforts. The food storage area of the stomach has been radically decreased, and gravity is the only defense against reflux. *Teach the patient and/or family the importance of the patient eating six to eight small meals per day. Fluids should be taken between, rather than with, meals to*

CHART 57-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Managing the Patient with a Nasogastric Tube After Esophageal Surgery

- Check for tube placement every 4 to 8 hours.
- Ensure that the tube is patent (open) and draining; drainage should turn from bloody to yellowish green by the end of the first postoperative day.
- Secure the tube well to prevent dislodgment.
- Do not irrigate or reposition the tube without a physician's request.
- Provide meticulous oral and nasal hygiene every 2 to 4 hours.
- Keep the head of the bed elevated to at least 30 degrees.
- When the patient is permitted to have a small amount of water, place him or her in an upright position and observe for dysphagia (difficulty swallowing).
- Observe for leakage from the anastomosis site, as indicated by fever, fluid accumulation, and manifestations of early shock (tachycardia, tachypnea, altered mental status).

prevent diarrhea. Diarrhea can occur 20 minutes to 2 hours after eating and can be managed with loperamide (Imodium) before meals. The diarrhea is thought to be the result of **vagotomy syndrome**, which develops as a result of interrupted vagal fibers to the abdominal organs during surgery.

Community-Based Care

Patients with esophageal cancer have many challenges to face once they are discharged home. The combination treatment regimens cause long-lasting side effects, such as fatigue and weakness. These complex treatments also require the patient and family to be knowledgeable about symptom management and to know when to report concerns to the health care provider.

Home Care Management

Once the patient is discharged to home, ongoing respiratory care remains a priority. Give the patient and family instructions for ambulation and incentive spirometer use. Encourage the patient to be as active as possible and to avoid excessive bedrest because this can lead to complications of immobility. Teach the family to protect the patient from infection and to contact the health care provider immediately if signs of respiratory infection develop. Patients should stay away from people with infections and avoid large crowds.

Teaching for Self-Management

Remind the patient and family to wash their hands frequently, and teach them to inspect the incisions daily for redness, tenderness, swelling, odor, and discharge because proper wound healing is still a concern at the time of discharge. Instruct them to report a temperature greater than 101° F (38.3° C), or 100° F (37.8° C) for older adults. Prepare written instructions about the signs of anastomosis leakage. *Teach the patient or family to immediately report to the health care provider the presence of fever and a swollen, painful neck incision.*

Nutritional support also remains a concern. Encourage the patient to continue increasing oral feedings as tolerated. Remind him or her to eat small, frequent meals containing high-calorie, high-protein foods that are soft and easily swallowed. Teach the value of using supplemental egg-nogs and milkshakes between meals, and instruct the patient to eat slowly. Lactose-free products should be used if the patient cannot tolerate dairy foods. Patients who have undergone esophageal resection can lose up to 10% of their body weight. Teach the patient to monitor his or her weight at home and to report a weight loss of 5 pounds or more in 1 month. If sufficient oral intake is not possible, the family may need instruction about tube feedings or parenteral nutrition at home.

Emphasize the importance of remaining upright after meals. Dysphagia or odynophagia may recur because of stricture, reflux, or cancer recurrence. These symptoms should be promptly reported to the health care provider. Despite radical surgery, the patient with cancer of the esophagus often still has a terminal illness and a relatively short life expectancy. Emphasis is placed on maximizing quality of life. Realistic planning is important as the patient's condition eventually worsens, and the patient and family are assisted to plan for the future together. Assist family members in exploring formal and informal sources of support. Help the family or significant others arrange for hospice care when it is needed. **Chapter 9** describes end-of-life care, including hospice.

Health Care Resources

Referrals to community or home care organizations assist the family in providing care in the home. The patient may need transportation to the radiation treatment center five times per week for up to 6 weeks. Oncology nursing care may be needed to monitor and evaluate the patient who is receiving chemotherapy at home through venous access devices or portable infusion pumps. Inform the patient and family about the services available through the American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org), including support groups and transportation. Familiarize the family with area hospice services for future planning. Coordinate resource referrals with the case manager or home care agency.

EVALUATION: EXPECTED OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with esophageal cancer based on the identified priority patient problems. The major expected outcome is that the patient will be able to consume adequate nutrition and maintain a stable weight.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Teamwork and Collaboration; Safety; Evidence-Based Practice

A 58-year-old patient is admitted for a partial esophagectomy. He has a history of alcoholism and says he quit drinking when he found out about his diagnosis. He has not smoked in 35 years. You are assigned to care for the patient after he returns from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU).

1. What is the priority for care for this patient after surgery? What position will you place the patient in and why? Locate one or two sources of current evidence supporting your answer.
2. For what postoperative complications will you monitor, and why could they occur after this surgery?
3. The patient has a nasogastric (NG) tube in place after surgery. What nursing care will you provide for the patient related to the NG tube?
4. The patient's life partner tells you that he is worried that the patient may not be able to return to his job as a family practice physician. How might you respond to his concern?
5. With what members of the health care team might you collaborate and why?

ESOPHAGEAL DIVERTICULA

Diverticula are sacs resulting from the herniation of esophageal mucosa and submucosa into surrounding tissue. They may develop anywhere along the length of the esophagus. No environmental risk factors are known to be involved in their development. The incomplete or late opening of swallowing muscles can cause high pressure in the hypopharynx and lead to *Zenker's diverticula*, the most common form. This type occurs most often in older adults. Patients report dysphagia (difficulty swallowing), regurgitation (reflux), nocturnal cough, and halitosis (bad breath). They can also be at risk for perforation because the mucosa is without the protection of the normal esophageal muscle layer.

Esophageal diverticula are diagnosed most often by esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD). This procedure must be performed with strict care because of the risk for perforation. Nutrition therapy and positioning are the major interventions for controlling symptoms related to diverticula. Collaborate with the dietitian to assist the patient in exploring variations in the size and frequency of meals and in food

texture and consistency. Semisoft foods and smaller meals are often best tolerated and may reduce or relieve the symptoms of pressure and reflux. Nocturnal reflux associated with diverticula is managed by teaching the patient to sleep with the head of the bed elevated and to avoid the supine position for at least 2 hours after eating. Advise the patient to avoid vigorous exercise after meals. Teach him or her to avoid restrictive clothing and frequent stooping or bending.

Surgical management is aimed at removing the diverticula. Postoperatively, the patient is NPO for several days to promote healing. During that period, the patient receives IV fluids for hydration, tube feedings, and then oral fluid and food. Provide pain relief measures, and monitor for complications such as bleeding or perforation. *A nasogastric (NG) tube is placed during surgery for decompression and is not irrigated or repositioned unless specifically requested by the surgeon.*

Community-based care includes teaching the patient and family about:

- Nutritional therapy
- Positioning guidelines to prevent reflux
- Warning signs of complications, such as bleeding or infection

ESOPHAGEAL TRAUMA

Trauma to the esophagus can result from blunt injuries, chemical burns, surgery or endoscopy, or the stress of continuous severe vomiting (Table 57-2). Trauma may affect the esophagus directly, impairing swallowing and nutrition, or it may create problems in related structures such as the lungs or mediastinum. The incidence of most forms of esophageal trauma is low in adults. When excessive force is exerted on the esophageal mucosa, it may perforate or rupture, allowing

TABLE 57-2 COMMON CAUSES OF ESOPHAGEAL PERFORATION

• Straining	• Instrument or tubes
• Seizures	• Chemical injury
• Trauma	• Complications of esophageal surgery
• Foreign objects	• Ulcers

the caustic acid secretions to enter the mediastinal cavity. These tears are associated with a high mortality rate related to shock, respiratory impairment, or sepsis.

Chemical injury is usually a result of the accidental or intentional ingestion of caustic substances. The damage to the mouth and esophagus is rapid and severe. Acid burns tend to affect the superficial mucosal lining, whereas alkaline substances cause deeper penetrating injuries. Strong alkalis can cause full perforation of the esophagus within 1 minute. Additional problems may include aspiration pneumonia and hemorrhage. Esophageal strictures may develop as scar tissue forms.

Patients with esophageal trauma are initially evaluated and treated in the emergency department. Assessment focuses on the nature of the injury and the circumstances surrounding it. *Assess for airway patency, breathing, chest pain, dysphagia, vomiting, and bleeding as the priorities for patient care.* If the risk for extending the damage is not excessive, an x-ray or endoscopic study may be requested to evaluate tears or perforation. A CT scan of the chest can be done to assess for the presence of mediastinal air.

After the injury, keep the patient NPO to prevent further leakage of esophageal secretions. Esophageal and gastric suction can be used for drainage and to rest the esophagus. Esophageal rest is maintained for more than a week after injury to allow for initial healing of the mucosa. Total parenteral nutrition (TPN) is prescribed to provide calories and protein for wound healing while the patient is not eating.

To prevent sepsis, the health care provider prescribes broad-spectrum antibiotics. High-dose corticosteroids may be administered to suppress inflammation and prevent strictures (esophageal narrowing). In addition, opioid and non-opioid analgesics are prescribed for pain management. When caustic burns involve the mouth, topical agents such as lidocaine (Xylocaine Viscous) may be used for analgesia and local anti-inflammatory action.

If nonsurgical management is not effective in healing traumatized esophageal tissue, the patient may need surgery to remove the damaged tissue. Those with severe injuries may require resection of part of the esophagus with a gastric pull-through and repositioning or replacement by a bowel segment.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has inadequate digestion and nutrition as a result of chronic esophageal problems?

- Dysphagia (difficulty swallowing)
- Odynophagia (painful swallowing)
- Dyspepsia (indigestion or “heartburn”)
- Regurgitation (reflux)
- Eructation (belching)
- Chronic cough
- Choking
- Halitosis (foul breath)
- Weight loss

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate digestion and nutrition as a result of chronic esophageal problems?

Perform and interpret focused physical findings, including:

- Assess ability to chew and swallow food.
- Assess chest pain (dyspepsia) for quality, location, and intensity.
- Assess body weight change.
- Auscultate lungs.
- Assess readiness to learn.

Respond by:

- Providing semi-solid or thickened liquids if solid foods cannot be swallowed comfortably
- Collaborating with the dietitian and occupational therapist (OT) for swallowing evaluation and training
- Monitoring for aspiration of secretions or food

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Teaching lifestyle changes, such as foods to avoid, smoking and alcohol cessation, weight reduction (if obese), and importance of drug therapy to control symptoms
- Monitoring weight
- Monitoring for increased dysphagia
- Monitor for manifestations of aspiration.
- Observe patient for improvement in GI symptoms.
- Evaluate effectiveness of health teaching.
- Think about what else you might do to promote digestion and nutrition.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Evaluate for rapid weight changes (decrease if obese, and increase if severe weight loss has occurred).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Consult with the dietitian, patient, and family regarding nutritional restrictions for patients with GERD.
- Collaborate with the health care team for the patient with impaired swallowing and/or limited nutrition.
- Teach the patient and family to recognize the symptoms of dysphagia.
- Remain with the dysphasic patient during meals to prevent or assist with choking episodes.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach the patient oral exercises aimed at improving swallowing.
- Stress the importance of recognizing and controlling reflux through nutrition therapy and medications to avoid further esophageal damage that could lead to Barrett's esophagus.
- Teach the patient to elevate the head of the bed by 6 inches for sleep to prevent nighttime reflux.
- Instruct the patient to sleep in the right side-lying position to minimize the effects of nighttime episodes of reflux.
- Teach the patient with esophageal cancer to monitor his or her body weight and to notify the health care provider for a loss of 5 pounds or greater within 1 month.
- Teach the patient to avoid alcoholic beverages, smoking, and other substances as listed in [Chart 57-2](#) because they lead to increased gastroesophageal reflux.
- Teach the patient to prevent gas bloat syndrome by avoiding drinking carbonated beverages, eating gas-producing foods, chewing gum, and drinking with a straw.
- Review postprocedure instructions for patients having endoscopic therapies for GERD as outlined in [Chart 57-4](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express fear or anxiety regarding the diagnosis of esophageal cancer and related treatment regimen of surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drug therapy, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Refer the patient or family members to psychological counseling, hospice, pastoral care, and the case manager as needed.

Physiological Integrity

- For patients with GERD, teach the importance of strict adherence to antireflux agents in preventing esophageal damage (see [Chart 57-3](#)).
- Be aware that laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication (LNF) is the most common surgical procedure for patients with GERD and hiatal hernia.
- Assess for complications and provide postoperative care for patients having the LNF procedure, as described in [Charts 57-6 and 57-7](#).
- Be sure to frequently monitor the nutritional status of the patient with esophageal cancer.
- Teach the patient having open conventional esophageal surgery about incisions, drains, and jejunostomy tube placement before he or she undergoes surgery for esophageal cancer.
- For the patient with a nasogastric (NG) tube, check the NG tube every 4 to 8 hours for proper placement and anchorage; follow guidelines as outlined in [Chart 57-9](#).
- Assess the patient after esophageal surgery for pulmonary and cardiac complications of surgery, and report changes to the health care provider.
- Assess patients for key features of esophageal tumors as listed in [Chart 57-8](#).

CHAPTER

58

Care of Patients with Stomach Disorders

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Bleeding Ulcer, Pathophysiology
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Describe the importance of collaborating with members of the health care team when caring for patients with stomach disorders.
2. Identify community resources for patients with gastric disorders.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Develop a teaching plan for patients about complementary and alternative therapies that have been used to help manage gastritis and peptic ulcer disease (PUD).
4. Plan interventions to promote GI health and prevent gastritis.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Identify the need for end-of-life care for patients with advanced gastric cancer.

Physiological Integrity

6. Compare etiologies and assessment findings of acute and chronic gastritis.

7. Identify risk factors for gastritis.
8. Compare and contrast assessment findings associated with gastric and duodenal ulcers.
9. Identify the most common medical complications that can result from PUD.
10. Describe the purpose and adverse effects of drug therapy for gastritis and PUD.
11. Monitor patients with PUD and gastric cancer for signs of upper GI bleeding.
12. Prioritize interventions for patients with upper GI bleeding.
13. Plan individualized care for the patient having gastric surgery.
14. Explain the purpose and procedure for gastric lavage.
15. Evaluate the impact of gastric disorders on the nutrition status of the patient.
16. Develop a preoperative and postoperative plan of care for the patient undergoing gastric surgery.
17. Identify risk factors for gastric cancer.

Although only a few diseases affect the stomach, they can be very serious and in some cases life threatening. The most common disorders include gastritis, peptic ulcer disease, and gastric cancer. Each of these health problems can result in impaired or altered *digestion* and *nutrition*. The stomach is part of the upper GI system that is responsible for a large part of the digestive process. Patient-centered collaborative care

for stomach disorders often includes therapies to meet the patient's *need for adequate nutrition*.

GASTRITIS

Gastritis is the inflammation of gastric mucosa (stomach lining). It can be scattered or localized and can be classified

according to cause, cellular changes, or distribution of the lesions. Gastritis can be erosive (causing ulcers) or non-erosive. Although the mucosal changes that result from *acute* gastritis typically heal after several months, this is not true for *chronic* gastritis.

Pathophysiology

Prostaglandins provide a protective mucosal barrier that prevents the stomach from digesting itself by a process called acid **autodigestion**. If there is a break in the protective barrier, mucosal injury occurs. The resulting injury is worsened by histamine release and vagus nerve stimulation. Hydrochloric acid can then diffuse back into the mucosa and injure small vessels. This back-diffusion causes edema, hemorrhage, and erosion of the stomach's lining. The pathologic changes of gastritis include vascular congestion, edema, acute inflammatory cell infiltration, and degenerative changes in the superficial epithelium of the stomach lining.

Types of Gastritis

Inflammation of the gastric mucosa or submucosa after exposure to local irritants or other cause can result in **acute gastritis**. The early pathologic manifestation of gastritis is a thickened, reddened mucous membrane with prominent **rugae**, or folds. Various degrees of mucosal necrosis and inflammatory reaction occur in acute disease. The diagnosis cannot be based solely on clinical symptoms. Complete regeneration and healing usually occur within a few days. If the stomach muscle is not involved, complete recovery usually occurs with no residual evidence of gastric inflammatory reaction. If the muscle is affected, hemorrhage may occur during an episode of acute gastritis.

Chronic gastritis appears as a patchy, diffuse (spread out) inflammation of the mucosal lining of the stomach. As the disease progresses, the walls and lining of the stomach thin and atrophy. With progressive gastric atrophy from chronic mucosal injury, the function of the parietal (acid-secreting) cells decreases and the source of intrinsic factor is lost. The intrinsic factor is critical for absorption of vitamin B₁₂. When body stores of vitamin B₁₂ are eventually depleted, **pernicious anemia** results. The amount and concentration of acid in stomach secretions gradually decrease until the secretions consist of only mucus and water.

Chronic gastritis is associated with an increased risk for gastric cancer. The persistent inflammation extends deep into the mucosa, causing destruction of the gastric glands and cellular changes. Chronic gastritis may be categorized as type A, type B, or atrophic.

Type A (nonerosive) chronic gastritis refers to an inflammation of the glands, as well as the fundus and body of the stomach. Type B chronic gastritis usually affects the glands of the antrum but may involve the entire stomach. In atrophic chronic gastritis, diffuse inflammation and destruction of deeply located glands accompany the condition. Chronic atrophic gastritis affects all layers of the stomach, thus decreasing the number of cells. The muscle thickens, and inflammation is present. Chronic atrophic gastritis is characterized by total loss of fundal glands, minimal inflammation, thinning of the gastric mucosa, and intestinal metaplasia (abnormal tissue development). These cellular changes can lead to peptic ulcer disease (PUD) and gastric cancer (McCance et al., 2010).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Acute Gastritis. The onset of infection with *Helicobacter pylori* can result in acute gastritis. *H. pylori* is a gram-negative bacterium that penetrates the mucosal gel layer of the gastric epithelium. Although less common, other forms of bacterial gastritis from organisms such as staphylococci, streptococci, *Escherichia coli*, or salmonella can cause life-threatening problems such as sepsis and extensive tissue necrosis (death).

Long-term NSAID use creates a high risk for acute gastritis. NSAIDs inhibit prostaglandin production in the mucosal barrier. Other risk factors include alcohol, caffeine, and corticosteroids. Acute gastritis is also caused by local irritation from radiation therapy and accidental or intentional ingestion of corrosive substances, including acids or alkalis (e.g., lye and drain cleaners). Emotional stress and acute anxiety may also contribute to gastritis.

Chronic Gastritis. **Type A gastritis** has been associated with the presence of antibodies to parietal cells and intrinsic factor. Therefore an autoimmune cause for this type of gastritis is likely. Parietal cell antibodies have been found in most patients with pernicious anemia and in more than one half of those with type A gastritis. A genetic link to this disease, with an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance, has been found in the relatives of patients with pernicious anemia (McCance et al., 2010).

The most common form of the disease is **type B gastritis**, caused by *H. pylori* infection. A direct correlation exists between the number of organisms and the degree of cellular abnormality present. The host response to the *H. pylori* infection is activation of lymphocytes and neutrophils. Release of inflammatory cytokines, such as interleukin (IL)-1, IL-8, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha, damages the gastric mucosa (McCance et al., 2010).

Chronic local irritation and toxic effects caused by alcohol ingestion, radiation therapy, and smoking have been linked to chronic gastritis. Surgical procedures that involve the pyloric sphincter, such as a pyloroplasty, can lead to gastritis by causing reflux of alkaline secretions into the stomach. Other systemic disorders such as Crohn's disease, graft-versus-host disease, and uremia can also precipitate the development of chronic gastritis.

Atrophic gastritis is a type of chronic gastritis that is seen most often in older adults. It can occur after exposure to toxic substances in the workplace (e.g., benzene, lead, nickel) or *H. pylori* infection, or it can be related to autoimmune factors.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Gastritis is a very common health problem in the United States. Yet, a balanced diet, regular exercise, and stress-reduction techniques can help prevent it (**Chart 58-1**). A balanced diet includes following the recommendations of the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) and limiting intake of foods and spices that can cause gastric distress, such as caffeine, chocolate, mustard, pepper, and other strong or hot spices. Alcohol and tobacco consumption should also be avoided. Regular exercise maintains peristalsis, which helps prevent gastric contents from irritating the gastric mucosa. Stress-reduction techniques can include aerobic exercise, meditation, reading, and/or yoga, depending on individual preferences. Psychotherapy may also be considered.

Excessive use of aspirin and other NSAIDs should also be avoided. If a family member has *H. pylori* infection or has had

CHART 58-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Gastritis Prevention

- Eat a well-balanced diet.
- Avoid drinking excessive amounts of alcoholic beverages.
- Use caution in taking large doses of aspirin, other NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen), and corticosteroids.
- Avoid excessive intake of caffeine-containing beverages, especially coffee and tea.
- Be sure that foods and water are safe, to avoid contamination.
- Manage stress levels using complementary and alternative therapies, such as relaxation and meditation techniques.
- Stop smoking.
- Protect yourself against exposure to toxic substances in the workplace, such as lead and nickel.
- Seek medical treatment if you are experiencing symptoms of esophageal reflux (see Chapter 57).

CHART 58-2 KEY FEATURES

Gastritis

Acute Gastritis

- Rapid onset of epigastric pain or discomfort
- Nausea and vomiting
- Hematemesis (vomiting blood)
- Gastric hemorrhage
- Dyspepsia (heartburn)
- Anorexia

Chronic Gastritis

- Vague report of epigastric pain that is relieved by food
- Anorexia
- Nausea or vomiting
- Intolerance of fatty and spicy foods
- Pernicious anemia

it in the past, patient testing should be considered. This test can identify the bacteria before they cause gastritis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Symptoms of *acute* gastritis range from mild to severe. The patient may report epigastric discomfort, anorexia, cramping, nausea, and vomiting (Chart 58-2). Assess for abdominal tenderness and bloating, **hematemesis** (vomiting blood), or **melen** (traces of blood in the stool). Symptoms last only a few hours or days and vary with the cause. Aspirin/NSAID-related gastritis may result in **dyspepsia** (heartburn). Gastritis or food poisoning caused by endotoxins, such as staphylococcal endotoxin, has an abrupt onset. Severe nausea and vomiting often occur within 5 hours of ingestion of the contaminated food. *In some cases, gastric hemorrhage is the presenting symptom, which is a life-threatening emergency.*

Chronic gastritis causes few symptoms unless ulceration occurs. Patients may report nausea, vomiting, or upper abdominal discomfort. Periodic epigastric pain may occur after a meal. Some patients have anorexia (see Chart 58-2).

Several blood tests are available to detect *H. pylori* if gastritis or an ulcer is suspected. Examples of these tests are described on p. 1228 in the Peptic Ulcer Disease section of this chapter. One of the most common methods is a blood test to detect IgG or IgM anti-*H. pylori* antibodies.

Esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) via an endoscope with biopsy is the gold standard for diagnosing gastritis. The physician takes a biopsy to establish a definitive diagnosis of the type of gastritis. If lesions are patchy and diffuse, biopsy of several suspicious areas may be necessary to avoid misdiagnosis. A *cytologic examination* of the biopsy specimen is performed to confirm or rule out gastric cancer. Tissue samples can also be taken to detect *H. pylori* using *rapid urease testing*. As the name implies, this test provides quick results unlike the more traditional tissue culture that takes several weeks to determine if the bacteria are present. The results of these tests are more reliable if the patient has discontinued taking antacids for at least a week (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

INTERVENTIONS

Patients with gastritis are not often seen in the acute care setting unless they have an exacerbation (“flare up”) of acute or chronic gastritis that results in fluid and electrolyte imbalance or bleeding. Collaborative care is directed toward supportive care for relieving the symptoms and removing or reducing the cause of discomfort.

Acute gastritis is treated symptomatically and supportively because the healing process is spontaneous, usually occurring within a few days. When the cause is removed, pain and discomfort usually subside. If bleeding is severe, a blood transfusion may be necessary. Fluid replacement is prescribed for patients with severe fluid loss. Surgery, such as partial gastrectomy, pyloroplasty, and/or vagotomy, may be needed for patients with major bleeding or ulceration. Treatment of *chronic* gastritis varies with the cause. The approach to management includes the elimination of causative agents, treatment of any underlying disease (e.g., uremia, Crohn’s disease), avoidance of toxic substances (e.g., alcohol, tobacco), and health teaching.

Eliminating the causative factors, such as *H. pylori* infection if present, is the primary treatment approach. Drugs and nutritional therapy are also used. In the *acute* phase, the health care provider prescribes drugs that block and buffer gastric acid secretions to relieve pain.

H₂-receptor antagonists, such as famotidine (Pepcid) and nizatidine (Axid), are typically used to block gastric secretions. Sucralfate (Carafate, Sulcrate ) is a *mucosal barrier fortifier*, may also be prescribed. *Antacids* used as buffering agents include aluminum hydroxide combined with magnesium hydroxide (Maalox) and aluminum hydroxide combined with simethicone and magnesium hydroxide (Mylanta). Antisecretory agents (**proton pump inhibitors [PPIs]**) such as omeprazole (Prilosec) or pantoprazole (Protonix) may be prescribed to suppress gastric acid secretion (Chart 58-3).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the patient to monitor for symptom relief and side effects of drugs to treat gastritis and to notify the health care provider of any adverse effects or worsening of gastric distress. The dose, frequency, or type of drug may need to be changed if symptoms of gastric irritation appear or persist. *Remind patients not to take additional over-the-counter (OTC) drugs such as Pepcid AC if they are taking similar prescribed drugs.*

CHART 58-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Peptic Ulcer Disease

DRUG AND USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE OF DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Antacids			
Magnesium hydroxide with aluminum hydroxide (Maalox, Mylanta) 50-80 mEq orally 1 hr and 3 hr after meals and at bedtime	Increases pH of gastric contents by deactivating pepsin	Give 2 hr after meals and at bedtime. Use liquid rather than tablets. Do not give other drugs within 1-2 hr of antacids. Assess patients for a history of renal disease. Assess the patient for a history of heart failure. Observe the patient for the side effect of diarrhea. Give 1 hr after meals and at bedtime. Use liquid rather than tablets if palatable. Do not give other drugs within 1-2 hr of antacids. Observe patients for the side effect of constipation. If constipation occurs, consider alternating with magnesium antacid. Use for patients with renal failure.	Hydrogen ion load is high after ingestion of foods. Suspensions are more effective than chewable tablets. Antacids interfere with absorption of other drugs. Hypermagnesemia may result. These antacids have a high sodium content. These antacids contain magnesium, which cannot be excreted by poorly functioning kidneys, thus causing toxicity. Inadequate renal perfusion from heart failure decreases the ability of the kidneys to excrete magnesium, thus causing toxicity. Magnesium often causes diarrhea. Hydrogen ion load is high after ingestion of food. Suspensions are more effective than chewable tablets. Antacids interfere with absorption of other drugs. Aluminum causes constipation, and magnesium has a laxative effect. Aluminum binds with phosphates in the GI tract. This antacid does not contain magnesium.
Aluminum hydroxide (Amphojel) 50-80 mEq orally 1 hr and 3 hr after meals and at bedtime			
H₂ Antagonists			
Ranitidine (Zantac) 150 mg orally twice daily or 300 mg orally at bedtime; 50 mg IV every 6 hr or 8 mg/hr IV (continuous)	Decreases gastric acid secretions by blocking histamine receptors in parietal cells	Give single dose at bedtime for treatment of GI ulcers. NOTE: IV ranitidine may also be given to prevent surgical stress ulcers. NOTE: IV famotidine may also be given to prevent surgical stress ulcers.	Bedtime administration suppresses nocturnal acid production.
Famotidine (Pepcid) 40 mg orally once daily or in two divided doses; 20 mg IV every 12 hr			
Nizatidine (Axid) 150 mg orally twice daily or 300 mg at bedtime			

Continued

CHART 58-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Peptic Ulcer Disease—cont'd

DRUG AND USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE OF DRUG	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Mucosal Barrier Fortifiers			
Sucralfate (Carafate, Sulcrate) 1 g orally four times daily or 2 g twice daily	Binds with bile acids and pepsin to protect stomach mucosa	Give 1 hr before and 2 hr after meals, and at bedtime. Do not give within 30 min of giving antacids or other drugs.	Food may interfere with drug's adherence to mucosa. Antacids may interfere with effect.
Proton Pump Inhibitors			
Omeprazole (Prilosec, Losec) 20 mg orally twice daily or 40 mg at bedtime	Suppresses H ₂ K-ATPase enzyme system of gastric acid secretion	Have patients take capsule whole; do not crush (unless giving Zegerid, a fast-acting form of the drug). Give single dose at bedtime for ulcer disease.	Delayed-release capsules allow absorption after granules leave the stomach. Bedtime administration suppresses nocturnal acid production.
Lansoprazole (Prevacid) 15 or 30 mg orally at bedtime		Give single dose at bedtime for ulcer disease; do not crush.	Bedtime administration suppresses nocturnal acid production.
Rabeprazole (Aciphex) 20 mg orally once daily		Take after the morning meal. Do not crush capsule.	Drug promotes healing and symptom relief of duodenal ulcers. Drug is a sustained-release capsule.
Pantoprazole (Protonix) 40 mg orally or IV daily for 7-10 days		Do not crush. IV form must be given with filter and in a separate line. Do not give Protonix IV with other IV drugs.	Drug is enteric-coated. Given IV, drug precipitates easily.
Esomeprazole (Nexium) 20 or 40 mg orally daily (or IV daily for 7-10 days)		Give 1 hr before meals. Assess for hepatic impairment. Do not give Nexium IV with other IV drugs.	The IV form is not compatible with most other drugs. Food decreases absorption. Patients with severe hepatic problems need a low dose. The IV form is not compatible with most other drugs.
Prostaglandin Analogs			
Misoprostol (Cytotec) 200 mcg orally four times daily	Decreases gastric secretions and enhances resistance to mucosal injury when patient is taking NSAIDs	Take with food. Avoid magnesium-containing antacids.	Drug protects against NSAID-induced ulcers. Both misoprostol and magnesium-containing antacids can cause diarrhea.
Antimicrobials			
Clarithromycin (Biaxin) 500 mg orally three times daily Amoxicillin (Amoxil) 1 g orally twice daily Tetracycline 500 mg orally four times daily Metronidazole (Flagyl) 250 mg orally three times daily and at bedtime	Treats <i>Helicobacter pylori</i>	Antimicrobials should be given as part of therapy to eradicate <i>H. pylori</i> infection. The selection of the specific drug depends on its effectiveness, side effects, and drug interactions.	<i>H. pylori</i> is a gram-negative bacterium implicated in the development of peptic ulcer disease (PUD).

Patients with *chronic* gastritis may require vitamin B₁₂ for prevention or treatment of pernicious anemia. If *H. pylori* is found, the health care provider treats the infection. Current practice for infection treatment is described on p. 1229 in the discussion of Drug Therapy in the Peptic Ulcer Disease section.

The nurse, health care provider, or pharmacist teaches patients to avoid drugs and other irritants that are associated with gastritis episodes, if possible. These drugs include corticosteroids, erythromycin (E-Mycin, Erythromid ) , and NSAIDs, such as naproxen (Naprosyn) and ibuprofen (Motrin, Advil, Amersol ) , Novo-Profen ) . NSAIDs are also available as OTC drugs and should not be used. Teach patients to read all OTC drug labels because many preparations contain aspirin or other NSAID.

Instruct the patient to limit intake of any foods and spices that cause distress, such as those that contain caffeine or high acid content (e.g., tomato products, citrus juices) or those that are heavily seasoned with strong or hot spices. Bell peppers and onions are also commonly irritating foods. Most patients seem to progress better with a bland, non-spicy diet and smaller, more frequent meals. Alcohol and tobacco should also be avoided.

Assist the patient with various techniques that reduce stress and discomfort, such as progressive relaxation, cutaneous stimulation, guided imagery, and distraction. Other complementary and alternative therapies that have been used are listed in Table 58-1. Chapter 2 describes these therapies in detail.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client with a recent diagnosis of acute gastritis needs health teaching about nutrition therapy. Which foods and beverages should the nurse teach the client to avoid? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Potatoes
- B. Onions
- C. Apples
- D. Milk
- E. Orange juice
- F. Tomato juice

TABLE 58-1 COMMONLY USED COMPLEMENTARY AND ALTERNATIVE THERAPIES FOR GASTRITIS AND PEPTIC ULCER DISEASE (PUD)

Herbs and Vitamins

- Gamma-linolenic acid (GLA)
- Probiotics
- Vitamin B₁₂
- Bromelain
- Vitamin A
- Vitamin C
- Astragalus
- Barberry
- Chamomile
- Cranberry
- Dandelion

- Ginger
- Green tea
- Licorice
- Slippery elm
- Turmeric
- Yarrow

Homeopathy

- Pulsatilla
- Ipecacuanha
- Carbo vegetabilis
- Nux vomica

PEPTIC ULCER DISEASE

A **peptic ulcer** is a mucosal lesion of the stomach or duodenum. **Peptic ulcer disease (PUD)** results when mucosal defenses become impaired and no longer protect the epithelium from the effects of acid and pepsin.

Pathophysiology

Types of Ulcers

Three types of ulcers may occur: gastric ulcers, duodenal ulcers, and stress ulcers (less common). Most gastric and duodenal ulcers are caused by *H. pylori* infection, which is transmitted via the fecal-oral route and thought to be acquired in childhood. It can also be transmitted from contaminated endoscopic equipment (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). About half of the world's population is infected with the bacterium (Fromm, 2009).

As a response to the bacteria, cytokines, neutrophils, and other substances are activated and cause epithelial cell necrosis. Urease, a substance secreted by the *H. pylori* bacterium, produces ammonia and creates a more alkaline environment (McCance et al., 2010). Hydrogen ions are then released in response to the presence of ammonia and contribute further to mucosal damage. Urease can be detected through laboratory testing to confirm the *H. pylori* infection.

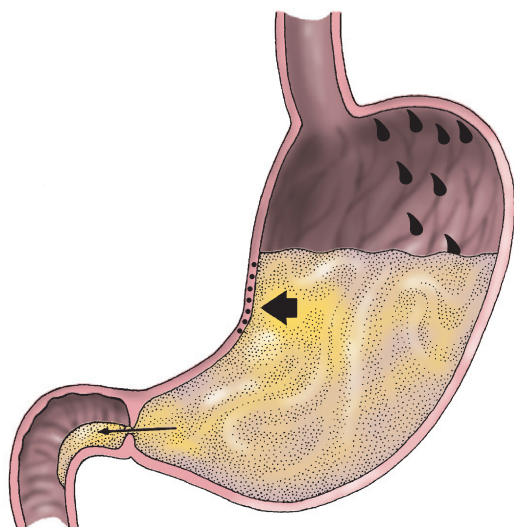
Gastric ulcers usually develop in the antrum of the stomach near acid-secreting mucosa. When a break in the mucosal barrier occurs (such as that caused by *H. pylori* infection), hydrochloric acid injures the epithelium. Gastric ulcers may then result from back-diffusion of acid or dysfunction of the pyloric sphincter (Fig. 58-1). Without normal functioning of the pyloric sphincter, bile refluxes (backs up) into the stomach. This reflux of bile acids may break the integrity of the mucosal barrier and produce hydrogen ion back-diffusion, which leads to mucosal inflammation. Toxic agents and bile then destroy the membrane of the gastric mucosa.

Gastric emptying is often delayed in patients with gastric ulceration. This causes regurgitation of duodenal contents, which worsens the gastric mucosal injury. Decreased blood flow to the gastric mucosa may also alter the defense barrier and thereby allow ulceration to occur. Gastric ulcers are deep and penetrating, and they usually occur on the lesser curvature of the stomach, near the pylorus (Fig. 58-2).

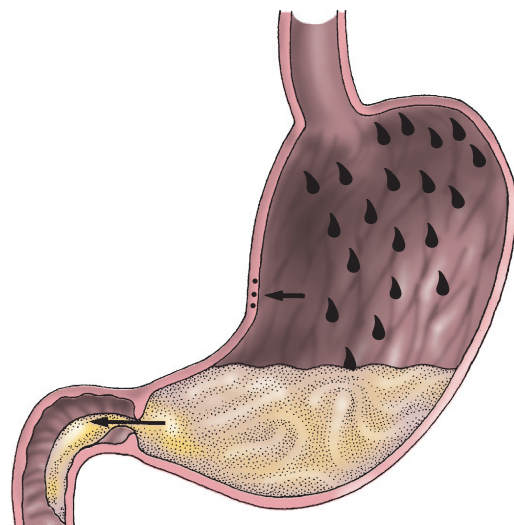
Most *duodenal ulcers* occur in the upper portion of the duodenum. They are deep, sharply demarcated lesions that penetrate through the mucosa and submucosa into the muscularis propria (muscle layer). The floor of the ulcer consists of a necrotic area residing on granulation tissue and surrounded by areas of fibrosis.

The main feature of a duodenal ulcer is high gastric acid secretion, although a wide range of secretory levels is found. In patients with duodenal ulcers, pH levels are low (excess acid) in the duodenum for long periods. Protein-rich meals, calcium, and vagus nerve excitation stimulate acid secretion. Combined with hypersecretion, a rapid emptying of food from the stomach reduces the buffering effect of food and delivers a large acid bolus to the duodenum (see Fig. 58-1). Inhibitory secretory mechanisms and pancreatic secretion may be insufficient to control the acid load.

Many patients with duodenal ulcer disease have confirmed *H. pylori* infection. These bacteria produce substances that



Conditions favoring the development of **gastric ulcers** are normal gastric acid secretion and delayed stomach emptying with *increased diffusion of gastric acid back into the stomach tissues*.



Conditions favoring the development of **duodenal ulcers** are normal diffusion of acid back into stomach tissues with *increased secretion of gastric acid and increased stomach emptying*.

FIG. 58-1 The pathophysiology of peptic ulcer.

damage the mucosa. Urease produced by *H. pylori* breaks down urea into ammonia.

Stress ulcers are acute gastric mucosal lesions occurring after an acute medical crisis or trauma, such as head injury and sepsis. In the patient who is NPO for major surgery, gastritis may lead to **stress ulcers**, which are multiple shallow erosions of the stomach and occasionally the proximal duodenum. Patients who are critically ill, especially those with extensive burns (**Curling's ulcer**), sepsis (ischemic ulcer), or increased intracranial pressure (**Cushing's ulcer**), are also susceptible to these ulcers.

Bleeding caused by gastric erosion is the main manifestation of acute stress ulcers. Multifocal lesions associated with stress ulcers occur in the stomach and proximal duodenum. These lesions begin as areas of ischemia and evolve into erosions

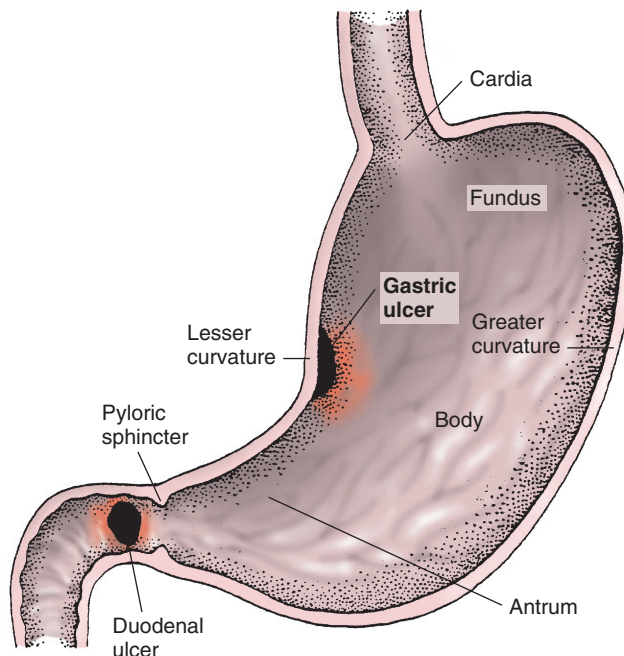


FIG. 58-2 The most common sites for peptic ulcers.

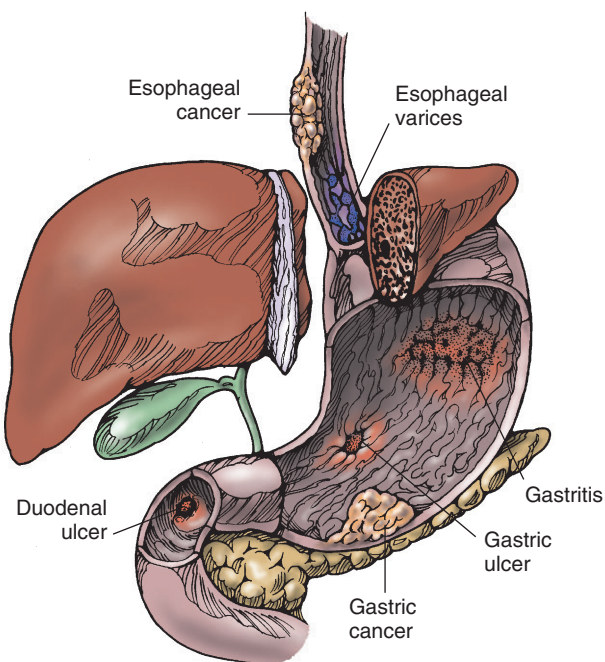


FIG. 58-3 Common causes of upper GI bleeding.

and ulcerations that may progress to massive hemorrhage. Little is known of the exact etiology of stress ulcers. However, in the presence of elevated levels of hydrochloric acid, ischemic areas can progress to erosive gastritis and subsequent ulcerations. Stress ulcers are associated with lengthened hospital stay and increased mortality rates.

Complications of Ulcers

The most common complications of PUD are hemorrhage, perforation, pyloric obstruction, and intractable disease. Hemorrhage is the most serious complication (Fig. 58-3). It

CHART 58-4 KEY FEATURES

Upper GI Bleeding

- Bright red or coffee-ground vomitus (hematemesis)
- Tarry stools or frank (bright red) blood in stools
- Melena (occult blood) (especially in older adults)
- Decreased blood pressure
- Increased weak and thready pulse
- Decreased hemoglobin and hematocrit
- Vertigo
- Acute confusion (in older adults)
- Dizziness
- Syncope

tends to occur more often in patients with *gastric* ulcers and in older adults. Many patients have a second episode of bleeding if underlying infection with *H. pylori* remains untreated or if therapy does not include an H_2 antagonist. With massive bleeding, the patient vomits bright red or coffee-ground blood (**hematemesis**). Hematemesis usually indicates bleeding at or above the duodenojejunal junction (upper GI bleeding) (Chart 58-4).

Minimal bleeding from ulcers is manifested by occult blood in a tarry stool (**melena**). Melena may occur in patients with gastric ulcers but is more common in those with duodenal ulcers. Gastric acid digestion of blood typically results in a granular dark vomitus (*coffee-ground appearance*). The digestion of blood within the duodenum and small intestine may result in a black stool.

Gastric and duodenal ulcers can perforate and bleed. *Perforation* occurs when the ulcer becomes so deep that the entire thickness of the stomach or duodenum is worn away. The stomach or duodenal contents can then leak into the peritoneal cavity. Sudden, sharp pain begins in the mid-epigastric region and spreads over the entire abdomen. The amount of pain correlates with the amount and type of GI contents spilled. The classic pain causes the patient to be apprehensive. The abdomen is tender, rigid, and boardlike (**peritonitis**). The patient assumes the knee-chest (“fetal”) position to decrease the tension on the abdominal muscles. He or she can become severely ill within hours. Bacterial septicemia and hypovolemic shock follow. Peristalsis diminishes, and paralytic ileus develops. *Peptic ulcer perforation is a surgical emergency and can be life threatening!*

Pyloric (gastric outlet) obstruction (blockage) occurs in a small percentage of patients and is manifested by vomiting caused by stasis and gastric dilation. Obstruction occurs at the pylorus (the gastric outlet) and is caused by scarring, edema, inflammation, or a combination of these factors.

Symptoms of obstruction include abdominal bloating, nausea, and vomiting. When vomiting persists, the patient may have hypochloremic (metabolic) alkalosis from loss of large quantities of acid gastric juice (hydrogen and chloride ions) in the vomitus. Hypokalemia may also result from the vomiting or metabolic alkalosis.

Many patients with ulcers have a single episode with no recurrence. However, *intractability* may develop from complications of ulcers, excessive stressors in the patient's life, or an inability to adhere to long-term therapy. He or she no longer responds to conservative management, or recurrences of symptoms interfere with ADLs. In general, the patient continues to have recurrent pain and discomfort despite treatment. Those who fail to respond to traditional

treatments or who have a relapse after discontinuation of therapy are referred to a gastroenterologist.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Peptic ulcer development is associated primarily with bacterial infection with *H. pylori* and NSAIDs. NSAIDs (e.g., ibuprofen) break down the mucosal barrier and disrupt the mucosal protection mediated systemically by cyclooxygenase (COX) inhibition. COX-2 inhibitors (celecoxib [Celebrex]) are less likely to cause mucosal damage but place patients at high risk for cardiovascular events, such as myocardial infarction. In addition, NSAIDs cause decreased endogenous prostaglandins, resulting in local gastric mucosal injury. GI complications from NSAID use can occur at any time, even after long-term uncomplicated use. NSAID-related ulcers are difficult to treat, even with long-term therapy, because these ulcers have a high rate of recurrence.

Certain substances may contribute to gastroduodenal ulceration by altering gastric secretion, producing localized damage to mucosa and interfering with the healing process. For example, corticosteroids (e.g., prednisone), theophylline (Theo-Dur), and caffeine stimulate hydrochloric acid production. Patients receiving radiation therapy may also develop GI ulcers. Other risk factors for PUD are the same as for gastritis (see Chart 58-1).

Genetic factors may be important. *H. pylori* infection tends to occur in people who are genetically susceptible. Those with a family history of PUD are at higher risk for having PUD than those without a family history (McCance et al., 2010).

Incidence/Prevalence

PUD affects millions of people across the world. However, health care provider visits, hospitalizations, and the mortality rate for PUD have decreased in the past few decades. The use of proton pump inhibitors and *H. pylori* treatment may explain these declines. Duodenal ulcers are increasing in “baby boomers,” however, which may be the result of increased NSAID use for arthritic pain as they age.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Health promotion and illness prevention practices are the same as for gastritis (see Chart 58-1). For critically ill patients, health care providers prescribe drug therapy to prevent stress ulcers as described on p. 1229 in the Drug Therapy section.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT****History**

Collect data related to the causes and risk factors for peptic ulcer disease (PUD). Question the patient about factors that can influence the development of PUD, including alcohol intake and tobacco use. Note if certain foods such as tomatoes or caffeinated beverages precipitate or worsen symptoms. Information regarding actual or perceived daily stressors should also be obtained.

A history of current or past medical conditions focuses on GI problems, particularly any history of diagnosis or treatment for *H. pylori* infection. Review all prescription and OTC

drugs that the patient is taking. Specifically inquire whether the patient is taking corticosteroids, chemotherapy, or NSAIDs. Also ask whether he or she has ever undergone radiation treatments. Assess whether the patient has had any GI surgeries, especially a partial gastrectomy, which can cause chronic gastritis.

A history of GI upset, pain and its relationship to eating and sleep patterns, and actions taken to relieve pain are also important. Inquire about any changes in the character of the pain, because this may signal the development of complications. For example, if pain that was once intermittent and relieved by food and antacids becomes constant and radiates to the back or upper quadrant, the patient may have ulcer perforation. However, many people with active duodenal or gastric ulcers report having no ulcer symptoms.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Physical assessment findings may reveal epigastric tenderness, usually located at the midline between the umbilicus and the xiphoid process. *If perforation into the peritoneal cavity is present, the patient has a rigid, boardlike abdomen accompanied by rebound tenderness and pain.* Initially, auscultation of the abdomen may reveal hyperactive bowel sounds, but these may diminish with progression of the disorder.

Dyspepsia (*indigestion*) is the most commonly reported symptom associated with PUD. It is typically described as sharp, burning, or gnawing. Some patients may perceive discomfort as a sensation of abdominal pressure or of fullness or hunger. Specific differences between gastric and duodenal ulcers are listed in Table 58-2.

Gastric ulcer pain often occurs in the upper epigastrium with localization to the left of the midline and is aggravated by food. Duodenal ulcer pain is usually located to the right of the epigastrium. The pain associated with a duodenal ulcer occurs 90 minutes to 3 hours *after* eating and often awakens the patient at night. Pain may also be exacerbated (made worse) by certain foods (e.g., tomatoes, hot spices, fried foods, onions, alcohol, caffeine drinks) and certain drugs (e.g., NSAIDs, corticosteroids). Perform a comprehensive pain assessment that includes:

- Location
- Characteristics
- Onset/duration
- Frequency
- Quality
- Severity
- All precipitating and alleviating factors

Nausea and vomiting may be symptoms accompanying ulcer disease, most commonly with pyloric sphincter dysfunction. It results from gastric stasis associated with pyloric obstruction. Appetite is generally maintained in patients with a peptic ulcer unless pyloric obstruction is present. Some health care agencies use a 0-to-5 nausea scale to rate the degree of the patient's report of nausea (Halpin et al., 2010).

To assess for fluid volume deficit that occurs from bleeding, take orthostatic blood pressures and monitor for signs and symptoms of dehydration. Orthostatic changes are present if there is a decrease of more than 20 mm Hg in systolic blood pressure, a decrease of 10 mm Hg in diastolic blood pressure, and/or an increase in pulse when the patient rises from a lying to an erect (sitting or, if possible, standing) position. Also assess for dizziness, especially when the patient

TABLE 58-2 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF GASTRIC AND DUODENAL ULCERS

FEATURE	GASTRIC ULCER	DUODENAL ULCER
Age	Usually 50 yr or older	Usually 50 yr or older
Gender	Male/female ratio of 1.1 : 1	Male/female ratio of 1 : 1
Blood group	No differentiation	Most often type O
General nourishment	May be malnourished	Usually well nourished
Stomach acid production	Normal secretion or hyposecretion	Hypersecretion
Occurrence	Mucosa exposed to acid-pepsin secretion	Mucosa exposed to acid-pepsin secretion
Clinical course	Healing and recurrence	Healing and recurrence
Pain	Occurs 30-60 min after a meal; at night: rarely Worsened by ingestion of food	Occurs 1½-3 hr after a meal; at night: often awakens patient between 1 and 2 AM Relieved by ingestion of food
Response to treatment	Healing with appropriate therapy	Healing with appropriate therapy
Hemorrhage	Hematemesis more common than melena	Melena more common than hematemesis
Malignant change	Perhaps in less than 10%	Rare
Recurrence	Tends to heal, and recurs often in the same location	60% recur within 1 yr; 90% recur within 2 yr
Surrounding mucosa	Atrophic gastritis	No gastritis

is upright, because this is a symptom of fluid volume deficit. Older adults often experience dizziness when they get out of bed and are at risk for falls.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

When taking a history of a client diagnosed with a duodenal ulcer, which assessment finding does the nurse expect?

- A. Severe weight loss
- B. Pain while eating
- C. Hematemesis after eating
- D. Waking at night with pain

Psychosocial Assessment

Assess the impact of ulcer disease on the patient's lifestyle, occupation, family, and social and leisure activities. Evaluate the impact that lifestyle changes will have on the patient and family. This assessment may reveal information about the patient's ability to adhere to the prescribed treatment regimen and to obtain the needed social support to alter his or her lifestyle.

Laboratory Assessment

Serologic testing for IgG anti-*H. pylori* antibody is the most common noninvasive method to confirm *H. pylori* infection. IgA and IgM anti-*H. pylori* antibody testing may also be performed. Serologic immune testing methods, such as the

enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), may be done several months after the diagnosis of infection to determine the effectiveness of treatment. A negative result indicates that treatment was successful.

Although *H. pylori* does not survive in the stool, an ELISA may detect its presence. A breath test to detect urease may also be performed as a screening tool, but it is not reliable as the serologic testing method.

Patients who have venous bleeding from a peptic ulcer may have decreased hemoglobin and hematocrit values. The stool may also be positive for occult (not seen) blood if bleeding is present.

Imaging Assessment

In the past, upper GI series with barium follow-through was the typical test for diagnosing peptic ulcers. However, this procedure is not the most reliable way to visualize any lesions. If perforation is suspected, the health care provider may request a chest and abdomen x-ray series.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

The major diagnostic test for PUD is esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD), which is the most accurate means of establishing a diagnosis. Direct visualization of the ulcer crater by EGD allows the health care provider to take specimens for *H. pylori* testing and for biopsy and cytologic studies for ruling out gastric cancer. The rapid urease test can confirm a quick diagnosis because urease is produced by the bacteria in the gastric mucosa. EGD may be repeated at 4- to 6-week intervals while the health care provider evaluates the progress of healing in response to therapy. Chapter 55 describes this test in more detail.

GI bleeding may be tested using a nuclear medicine GI bleeding study. No special preparation is required for this scan. The patient is injected with a contrast medium (usually Tc99m), and the GI system is scanned for the presence of bleeding after a waiting period. A second scan may be done 1 to 2 days after the bleeding is treated to determine if the interventions were effective.

ANALYSIS

The priority patient problems for patients with peptic ulcer disease (PUD) are:

1. Acute or Chronic Pain related to gastric and/or duodenal ulceration
2. Potential for upper GI bleeding

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Acute Pain or Chronic Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PUD is expected to report pain control as evidenced by no more than a 3 on a 0-10 pain intensity scale.

Interventions. PUD causes significant discomfort that impacts many aspects of daily living. Interventions to manage pain focus on drug therapy and dietary changes. One of the primary purposes for drug therapy is to decrease pain by eliminating *H. pylori* infection and promoting healing of gastric mucosa.

Drug Therapy. The primary purposes of drug therapy in the treatment of PUD are to (1) provide pain relief, (2) eliminate *H. pylori* infection, (3) heal ulcerations, and (4) prevent recurrence. Several different regimens can be used. In

selecting a therapeutic drug regimen, the health care provider must consider the efficacy of the treatment, the anticipated side effects, the ability of the patient to adhere to the regimen, and the cost of the treatment.

Although numerous drugs have been evaluated for the treatment of *H. pylori* infection, no single agent has been used successfully against the organism. A common drug regimen for *H. pylori* infection is PPI-triple therapy, which includes a proton pump inhibitor (PPI) such as lansoprazole (Prevacid) plus two antibiotics such as metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazol) and tetracycline (Ala-Tet, Panmycin, Nu-Tetra) or clarithromycin (Biaxin, Biaxin XL) and amoxicillin (Amoxil, Amoxi) for 7 to 14 days. Seven-day therapy is also effective when a PPI, levofloxacin (Levaquin), and either amoxicillin or clarithromycin are used (Schrauwen et al., 2009).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Many older adults have *H. pylori* infection that is undiagnosed because of vague symptoms associated with physiologic changes of aging and comorbidities that mask dyspepsia. Teach older adults about the importance of *H. pylori* screening because early detection and aggressive treatment can prevent PUD and gastric cancer (Fromm, 2009).

Hyposecretory drugs reduce gastric acid secretions and are therefore used for both peptic ulcer disease (PUD) and gastritis management. The primary prescribed drugs include proton pump inhibitors and H₂-receptor antagonists (see Chart 58-3).

Proton pump inhibitors (PPIs) are the drug class of choice for treating patients with acid-related disorders. Examples include omeprazole (Prilosec), lansoprazole (Prevacid), rabeprazole (Aciphex), pantoprazole (Protonix), and esomeprazole (Nexium). These drugs suppress the H,K-ATPase enzyme system of gastric acid production, and several of them are available as over-the-counter (OTC) drugs.

Omeprazole, lansoprazole, and esomeprazole are each available as delayed-release capsules designed to release their contents after they pass through the stomach. Omeprazole and lansoprazole may be dissolved in a sodium bicarbonate solution and given through any feeding tube. Bicarbonate protects the dissolved omeprazole and lansoprazole granules in gastric acid. Therefore the drugs are still absorbed correctly. These capsules can also be opened. The enteric-coated capsules can be put in apple juice or orange juice and given through a large-bore feeding tube. Rabeprazole (Aciphex) and pantoprazole (Protonix) are enteric-coated tablets that quickly dissolve after the tablet has moved through the stomach and should not be crushed before giving them. Several of the PPIs are also available in an IV form, which may be helpful for patients who are NPO. A new faster-acting form of omeprazole combined with sodium bicarbonate (Zegerid) can be purchased OTC and is prescribed most often for active duodenal ulcers for a 4- to 8-week period.

Some patients use these PPIs for years and perhaps a lifetime. However, these drugs should not be used for a prolonged period because, over time, they may contribute to osteoporotic-related fractures, especially spinal fractures in older women (Kwok et al., 2010). Omeprazole (Prilosec and Prilosec OTC) reduce the effect of clopidogrel (Plavix), an antiplatelet drug. Teach patients to tell their health care provider if they are taking clopidogrel.

H₂-receptor antagonists are drugs that block histamine-stimulated gastric secretions. These drugs may also be used for indigestion and gastritis. Lower-dose forms are available in over-the-counter (OTC) products. *H₂-receptor antagonists* block the action of the *H₂* receptors of the parietal cells, thus inhibiting gastric acid secretion. Two of the most common drugs are famotidine (Pepcid) and nizatidine (Axid) and are available as Pepcid OTC and Axid AR in OTC form. These drugs are typically administered in a single dose at bedtime and are used for 4 to 6 weeks in combination with other therapy.

Antacids buffer gastric acid and prevent the formation of pepsin. They may help small duodenal ulcers heal but are usually not used alone as drug therapy. Liquid suspensions are the most therapeutic form, but tablets may be more convenient and enhance adherence. The most widely used preparations are mixtures of aluminum hydroxide and magnesium hydroxide. This combination overcomes the unpleasant GI side effects of either of these preparations when used alone. Mylanta and Maalox are examples of this type of combination antacid formulation. The aluminum and magnesium hydroxide combination products neutralize well at small doses. These products must be administered cautiously to patients with renal impairment because elimination is reduced and excessive amounts are retained in the body.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the patient that to achieve a therapeutic effect, sufficient antacid must be ingested to neutralize the hourly production of acid. For optimal effect, take antacids about 2 hours after meals to reduce the hydrogen ion load in the duodenum. Antacids may be effective from 30 minutes to 3 hours after ingestion. If taken on an empty stomach, they are quickly evacuated. Thus the neutralizing effect is reduced.

Calcium carbonate (Tums) is a potent antacid, but it triggers gastrin release, causing a rebound acid secretion. Therefore its use in acid inhibition is not recommended.

Antacids can interact with certain drugs such as phenytoin (Dilantin), tetracycline (Ala-Tet, Nu-Tetra 🍁), and ketoconazole (Nizoral) and interfere with their effectiveness. Ask what other drugs the patient is using before a specific antacid is prescribed. Other drugs are given 1 to 2 hours before or after the antacid. Inform the patient that flavored antacids, especially wintergreen, should be avoided. The flavoring increases the emptying time of the stomach. Thus the desired effect of the antacid is negated.

Teach the patient with past or present heart failure to avoid antacids with high sodium content, such as aluminum hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide, sodium bicarbonate, and simethicone combination products (Gelusil and Mylanta). Magaldrate (Riopan) has the lowest sodium concentration.

Sucralfate (Carafate) is a *mucosal barrier fortifier* (protector) that forms complexes with proteins at the base of a peptic ulcer. This protective coat prevents further digestive action of both acid and pepsin. Sucralfate does not inhibit acid secretion. Rather, it binds bile acids and pepsins, reducing injury from these substances. The drug may be used in conjunction with *H₂-receptor antagonists* and antacids but should not be administered within 1 hour of the antacid. Sucralfate is given on an empty stomach 1 hour before each meal and at bedtime. The main side effect of this drug is constipation.

Nutrition Therapy. The role of diet in the management of ulcer disease is controversial. There is no evidence that dietary restriction reduces gastric acid secretion or promotes tissue healing, although a bland diet may assist in relieving symptoms. Food itself acts as an antacid by neutralizing gastric acid for 30 to 60 minutes. An increased rate of gastric acid secretion, called *rebound*, may follow.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient with peptic ulcer disease to avoid substances that increase gastric acid secretion. This includes caffeine-containing beverages (coffee, tea, cola). Both caffeinated and decaffeinated coffees should be avoided, because coffee contains peptides that stimulate gastrin release.

Teach the patient to exclude any foods that cause discomfort. A bland, nonirritating diet is recommended during the acute symptomatic phase. Bedtime snacks are avoided because they may stimulate gastric acid secretion. Eating six smaller daily meals may help, but this regimen is no longer a regular part of therapy. No evidence supports the theory that eating six daily meals promotes healing of the ulcer. This practice may actually stimulate gastric acid secretion. Patients should avoid alcohol and tobacco because of their stimulatory effects on gastric acid secretion.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Teach patients about complementary and alternative therapies that can reduce stress, including hypnosis and imagery. For example, the use of yoga and meditation techniques has demonstrated a beneficial effect on anxiety disorders. Many have suggested that GI disorders result from the dysfunction of both the GI tract itself and the brain. This means that emotional stress is thought to worsen GI disorders such as peptic ulcer disease. Yoga is thought to alter the activities of the central and autonomic nervous systems.

Many herbs, such as powders of slippery elm and marshmallow root, quercetin, and licorice, are used commonly by patients with gastritis and PUD. These herbs are thought to heal inflamed tissue and increase blood flow to the gastric mucosa. Other substances include zinc, vitamin C, essential fatty acids, acidophilus, vitamins E and A, and glutamine. All of these substances enhance healing. Table 58-1 provides a more complete list of therapies that have been used. Many of them have been scientifically supported in animal studies. Additional research using humans is being conducted.

Managing Upper GI Bleeding

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with upper GI bleeding (often called *upper GI hemorrhage* or *UGH*) is expected to have vital signs within normal limits.

Interventions. Blood loss from PUD results in high morbidity and mortality. Fluid volume loss secondary to vomiting can lead to dehydration and electrolyte imbalances. Monitoring and early recognition of complications are critical to the successful management of PUD. Interventions aimed at managing complications associated with PUD include prevention and/or management of bleeding, perforation, and gastric outlet obstruction. In some cases, surgical treatment of complications becomes necessary.

Nonsurgical Management. Because prevention or early detection of complications is needed to obtain a positive

clinical outcome, monitor the patient carefully and immediately report changes to the health care provider. The type of intervention selected will depend on the type and severity of the complication.

Emergency: Upper GI Bleeding. The patient who is actively bleeding has a life-threatening emergency. He or she needs supportive therapy to prevent hypovolemic shock and possible death.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

*The first priority for care of the patient with upper GI bleeding is to maintain **a**irway, **b**reathing, and **c**irculation (ABCs). Provide oxygen and other ventilatory support as needed. Start two large-bore IV lines for replacing fluids and blood. Monitor vital signs, hematocrit, and oxygen saturation.*

The purpose of managing hypovolemia is to expand intravascular fluid in a patient who is volume depleted. Carefully monitor the patient's fluid status, including intake and output. *Fluid replacement in older adults should be closely monitored to prevent fluid overload.* Serum electrolytes are also assessed because depletions from vomiting or nasogastric suctioning must be replaced. Volume replacement with isotonic solutions (e.g., 0.9% normal saline solution, lactated Ringer's solution) should be started immediately. The health care provider may prescribe blood products such as packed red blood cells to expand volume and correct a low hemoglobin and hematocrit. For patients with active bleeding, fresh frozen plasma may be given if the prothrombin time is 1.5 times higher than the midrange control value.

Continue to monitor the patient's hematocrit, hemoglobin, and coagulation studies for changes from the baseline measurements. With mild bleeding (less than 500 mL), slight feelings of weakness and mild perspiration may be present. When blood loss exceeds 1 L/24 hr, manifestations of shock may occur, such as hypotension, chills, palpitations, diaphoresis, and a weak, thready pulse.

A combination of several different treatments, including nasogastric tube (NGT) placement and lavage, endoscopic therapy, interventional radiologic procedures, and acid suppression, can be used to control acute bleeding and prevent rebleeding. If the patient is actively bleeding at home, he or she is usually admitted to the emergency department for GI lavage. If the patient is already a patient in the hospital, lavage can be done at the bedside. After the bleeding has stopped, H₂-receptor antagonists, proton pump inhibitors, and antacids are the primary drugs used.

Nasogastric Tube Placement and Lavage. Upper GI bleeding often requires the health care provider or nurse to insert a large-bore nasogastric tube (NGT) to:

- Determine the presence or absence of blood in the stomach
- Assess the rate of bleeding
- Prevent gastric dilation
- Administer lavage

Patients who have upper GI bleeding often have discomfort, nausea, and/or vomiting, which can be worsened by inserting an NGT. Therefore several methods are available to prevent these problems, such as applying lidocaine gel or spray before the tube is placed. Some health care providers do not use any

of these methods to promote patient comfort, even though they have been shown to be effective.

Once the NGT is placed, proper positioning of the tube is confirmed by x-ray examination. Irrigate the NGT to maintain its patency and prevent obstruction with clotted blood (Chart 58-5).

Gastric lavage requires the insertion of a large-bore NGT with instillation of a room-temperature solution in volumes of 200 to 300 mL. There is no evidence that sterile saline or sterile water is better than tap water for this procedure. Follow agency protocol for the solution that is required. The solution and blood are repeatedly withdrawn manually until returns are clear or light pink and without clots. Instruct the patient to lie on the left side during this procedure to limit the flow of the lavage solution out of the stomach. The NGT may remain in place for a few days or be removed after lavage.

Endoscopic Therapy. Endoscopic therapy via an esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) can assist in achieving homeostasis during an acute hemorrhage by isolating the bleeding artery to embolize (clot) it. Octreotide (Sandostatin) or terlipressin (Novapressin) may be given IV as adjuvant therapy. These drugs are synthetic GI hormones (somatostatin analogs) that suppress gastric acid secretion.

Pre-EGD nursing care involves inserting one or two large-bore IV catheters if they are not in place. A large catheter allows the patient to receive IV moderate sedation (e.g., midazolam [Versed] and an opioid) and possibly a blood transfusion. Keep the patient NPO 4 to 6 hours before the procedure. This prevents the risk for aspiration and allows the endoscopist to view and treat the ulcer. A patient must sign a consent form before the EGD *after* the physician informs him or her about the procedure. During the EGD, a specialized endoscopy nurse and technician assist the physician with the procedure.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

*After esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD), monitor vital signs, heart rhythm, and oxygen saturation frequently until they return to baseline. In addition, frequently assess the patient's ability to swallow saliva. The patient's gag reflex may initially be absent after an EGD because of anesthetizing (numbing) the throat with a spray before the procedure. **After the procedure, do not allow the patient to have food or liquids until the gag reflex is intact!***

Endoscopic therapy is beneficial for most patients with active bleeding. However, ulcers that continue to bleed or continue to rebleed despite endoscopic therapy may require an interventional radiologic procedure or surgical repair.

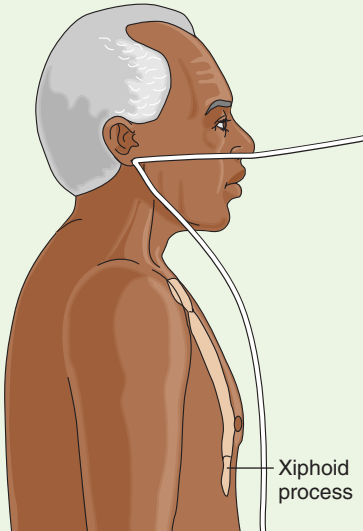
Interventional Radiologic Procedures. For patients with persistent, massive upper GI bleeding or those who are not surgical candidates, catheter-directed embolization may be performed. This endovascular procedure is usually done if endoscopic procedures are not successful or available. A femoral approach is most often used, but brachial access may be used. An arteriogram is performed to identify the arterial anatomy and find the exact location of the bleeding. A liquid substance is used to clot the bleeding artery. Nursing care of patients having this procedure is similar to the care required for patients undergoing arteriography (Loffroy & Guiu, 2009).

Acid Suppression. Aggressive acid suppression is used to prevent rebleeding. When acute bleeding is stopped and clot

CHART 58-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nasogastric Tubes

1. Inform the patient about the procedure and its potential discomfort.
2. Position the patient with pillows behind the shoulders.
3. Lubricate the tube with a water-soluble lubricant.
4. Measure the length of the tube to be passed:
 - a. Measure from the bridge of the nose to the earlobe to the xiphoid process.
 - b. Indicate this length with a piece of tape on the tube.



5. Determine which nostril is more patent.
6. Encourage the patient to swallow or drink water if the level of consciousness and treatment plan permit.
7. Insert the tube:
 - a. Pass the tube gently into the nasopharynx. Ask the patient to swallow repeatedly while the tube is advanced.
 - b. If resistance is met, rotate the tube slowly, aiming downward and toward the closer ear.
 - c. In the intubated or semiconscious patient, flex the head toward the chest while passing the tube.
8. Withdraw the tube immediately if any change is noted in respiratory status.
9. Test for tube placement by using these techniques:
 - a. Obtain a sample of the gastric contents by aspirating with a 50-mL catheter-tipped syringe.
 - b. Test the pH of the gastric contents (should be between 1 and 3.5).
 - c. Obtain a request for an x-ray study to confirm placement.
10. Connect the tube to suction at low pressure:
 - a. The Levin tube is connected to intermittent low suction.
 - b. The Salem sump or Anderson tube is connected to continuous low suction.
11. Secure the tube to the patient's nose and to his or her gown:
 - a. Tie a slipknot around the tube with a rubber band.
 - b. Pin the rubber band to the gown.
12. Check intake and output every 4 hr or more often, as indicated.
13. Observe the patient for nausea, vomiting, abdominal fullness, or distention.
14. If irrigation is indicated, use only a normal saline solution.
15. Observe the patient for alterations in fluid and electrolyte balance.
16. If indicated, instruct the patient about movement that will not dislodge the tube and cause nasal irritation.
17. Remove the tape securing the tube to the nose daily and PRN to clean skin; reapply tape.

formation has taken place within the ulcer crater, the clot remains in contact with gastric contents. Acid-suppressive agents are used to stabilize the clot by raising the pH level of gastric contents. Several types of drugs are used. H_2 -receptor antagonists prevent acid from being produced by parietal cells. Proton pump inhibitors prevent the transport of acid across the parietal cell membrane, whereas antacids buffer acid produced in the stomach.

Perforation is managed by immediately replacing fluid, blood, and electrolytes, administering antibiotics, and keeping the patient NPO. Maintain nasogastric suction to drain gastric secretions and thus prevent further peritoneal spillage. Carefully monitor intake and output and check vital signs at least hourly. Monitor the patient for clinical manifestations of septic shock, such as fever, pain, tachycardia, lethargy, or anxiety.

Pyloric obstruction is caused by edema, spasm, or scar tissue. Symptoms of obstruction related to difficulty in emptying the stomach include feelings of fullness, distention, or nausea after eating, as well as vomiting copious amounts of undigested food.

Treatment of obstruction is directed toward restoring fluid and electrolyte balance and decompressing the dilated stomach. Obstruction related to edema and spasm generally responds to medical therapy. First, the stomach must be decompressed with nasogastric suction. Next, interventions are directed at correcting metabolic alkalosis and dehydration. The NGT is clamped after about 72 hours. Check the patient for retention of gastric contents. If the amount retained is not more than 50 mL in 30 minutes, the health care provider may allow oral fluids. In some cases, surgical intervention may be required to treat PUD.

Surgical Management. Evidence-based guidelines for the treatment of PUD that include *H. pylori* treatment and the development of nonsurgical means of controlling bleeding have led to a decline in the need for surgical intervention. In PUD, surgical intervention may be used to:

- Treat patients who do not respond to medical therapy or other nonsurgical procedures
- Treat a surgical emergency that develops as a complication of PUD, such as perforation

Two general surgical approaches are available for PUD—minimally invasive surgery and conventional open surgery.

Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) via laparoscopy (a type of endoscope) is occasionally used to remove a chronic gastric ulcer or treat hemorrhage from perforation. Several small incisions allow access to the stomach and duodenum. The patient may have partial stomach removal (subtotal gastrectomy), pyloroplasty (to open the pylorus) and/or a vagotomy (vagus nerve cutting) to control acid secretion (Fig. 58-4). The advantages of MIS over traditional procedures include a shorter hospital stay, fewer complications, less pain, and better, quicker recovery. MIS is discussed in more detail in Chapter 17. Conventional surgery is performed using an open approach. This procedure is discussed on p. 1235 under Surgical Management in the Gastric Cancer section.

Community-Based Care

Patients may be discharged from the hospital as long as there is no evidence of ongoing bleeding, orthostatic changes, or cardiopulmonary distress or compromise. Those discharged after treatment for peptic ulcer disease (PUD) and/

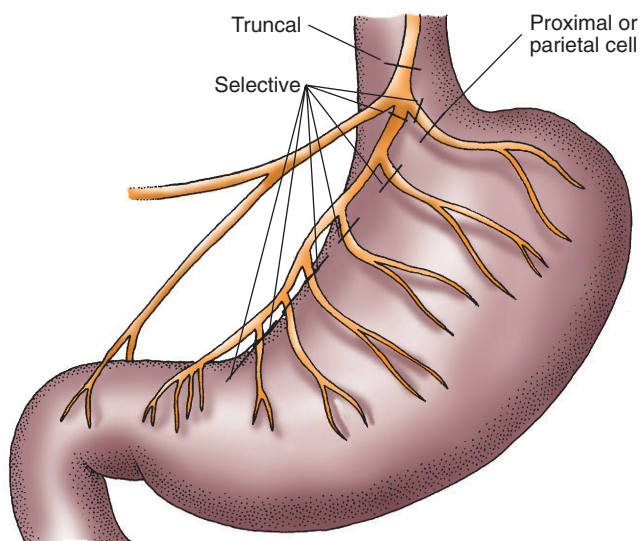


FIG. 58-4 Various types of vagotomies.

CHART 58-6 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Ulcer Disease

Assess gastrointestinal and cardiovascular status, including:

- Vital signs, including orthostatic vital signs
- Skin color
- Presence of abdominal pain (location, severity, character, duration, precipitating factors, and relief measures)
- Character, color, and consistency of stools
- Changes in bowel elimination pattern
- Hemoglobin and hematocrit
- Bowel sounds; palpate for areas of tenderness

Assess nutritional status, including:

- Dietary patterns and habits
- Intake of caffeine and alcohol
- Relationship of food to symptoms

Assess medication history:

- Use of steroids
- Use of NSAIDs
- Use of over-the-counter medications

Assess patient's coping style:

- Recent stressors
- Past coping style

Assess patient's understanding of illness and ability to adhere to the therapeutic regimen:

- Symptoms to report to health care provider
- Expected and side effects of medications
- Food and drug interactions
- Need for smoking cessation

or complications secondary to the disease must face several challenges to manage the disease successfully. Long-term adherence to drug therapy may require the patient to take several drugs each day. Permanent lifestyle alterations in nutrition habits must also be made.

Home Care Management

Most patients are discharged to the home to continue their recovery. Those who have had major surgery or have had complications, such as hemorrhage, may require one or two visits from a home care nurse to assess clinical progress, especially if the patient is an older adult (Chart 58-6).

Teaching for Self-Management

The primary focus of home care preparation is patient and family teaching regarding risk factors for the recurrence of PUD. Teach them how to recognize new complications and what to do if they occur, especially abdominal pain; nausea and vomiting; black, tarry stools; and weakness or dizziness.

Teach the patient and family about risk factors for recurring peptic ulcers. Help them plan ways to make needed lifestyle changes. For postsurgical patients, especially those who have undergone partial stomach removal, a smaller meal may be required. Other postoperative nutrition changes are described on p. 1238 in the discussion of Teaching for Self-Management in the Gastric Cancer section.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient who has had surgery for PUD to avoid any OTC product containing aspirin or other NSAID. Emphasize the importance of following the treatment regimen for treating *H. pylori* infection and healing the ulcer. Emphasize the importance of keeping all follow-up appointments. Help the patient identify situations that cause stress, describe feelings during stressful situations, and develop a plan for coping with stressors. Encourage the patient to learn and use relaxation techniques, such as exercise, biofeedback, humor, and imagery. Psychotherapy may be indicated to cope with excessive anxiety or stress.

Health Care Resources

If needed, refer the patient and family to the National Digestive Diseases Information Clearinghouse (www.acg.gi.org/patients/gitract/nddic.asp). This group provides information and support to patients who have digestive disorders.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with peptic ulcer disease (PUD) based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Does not have active PUD or associated complications
- Verbalizes pain relief or control
- Adheres to the drug regimen and lifestyle changes to prevent recurrence and heal the ulcer

ZOLLINGER-ELLISON SYNDROME

Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (ZES) is a rare disease that is manifested by upper GI tract ulceration, increased gastric acid secretion, and one or more duodenal or pancreatic tumors, called **gastrinomas**. About two thirds of these tumors are malignant. Although most of these tumors grow slowly, a small portion of patients have tumors that develop rapidly and metastasize widely. Metastasis occurs mainly in the liver and regional lymph nodes.

Pathophysiology

ZES is caused by gastrin-secreting tumors that stimulate the acid-secreting cells of the stomach to maximal activity. This large quantity of acid causes GI ulceration. In the early course of the disease, symptoms are similar to those of peptic ulcer disease (PUD). However, these symptoms tend to progress and respond poorly to traditional ulcer therapy. Diarrhea occurs in almost half of patients. It may be associated with

large amounts of hydrochloric acid secreted into the proximal duodenum. **Steatorrhea** (an excessive amount of fat in the feces) results from the inactivation of pancreatic lipase secondary to the large concentrations of acid and decreased amounts of bile acids.

In some patients, gastrinoma results from an autosomal dominant disorder called *multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN-1) syndrome*, in which there is a mutation in the *MEN-1* suppressive gene. Gastrinomas contain multiple hormones, but adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) is most commonly found (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Patients may report PUD symptoms and may have diarrhea and/or steatorrhea. Ask whether any relatives have had ZES. Radiographic and endoscopic findings for ZES are similar to those for PUD. *However, infection with H. pylori is usually absent.* The diagnosis is usually made by radioimmunoassay studies that reveal *increased serum gastrin levels* in conjunction with the clinical features of the disease.

The aim of therapy is to suppress acid secretion to control symptoms. Proton pump inhibitors (PPIs), such as lansoprazole (Prevacid) and omeprazole (Prilosec, Losec ) are the drugs of choice to reduce gastric acid secretion and heal the ulcers. High doses of H₂-receptor antagonists are also effective in reducing gastric acid and providing symptom relief.

The tumor requires complete surgical resection as a curative treatment. In some patients, a radical pancreaticoduodenectomy (Whipple procedure) is performed. Chapter 62 in the discussion of Surgical Management in the Pancreatic Cancer section describes this procedure and nursing care in detail. Patients with aggressive disease can also be treated with chemotherapeutic agents such as 5-fluorouracil, doxorubicin, and streptozocin to reduce tumor size and control symptoms before surgery. Octreotide (Sandostatin) may also be used.

GASTRIC CANCER

Most cancers of the stomach are adenocarcinomas. This type of cancer develops in the mucosal cells that form the innermost lining of any portion or all of the stomach. Often there are no symptoms in the early stages and the disease is advanced when detected.

Pathophysiology

Gastric cancer usually begins in the glands of the stomach mucosa. Atrophic gastritis and intestinal metaplasia (abnormal tissue development) are precancerous conditions. Inadequate acid secretion in patients with atrophic gastritis creates an alkaline environment that allows bacteria (especially *H. pylori*) to multiply. This infection causes mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma, which starts in the stomach (McCance et al., 2010).

Gastric cancers spread by direct extension through the gastric wall and into regional lymphatics, which carry tumor deposits to lymph nodes. Direct invasion of and adherence to adjacent organs (e.g., the liver, pancreas, and transverse colon) may also result. Hematogenous spread via the portal vein to the liver and via the systemic circulation to the lungs and bones is the most common mode of metastasis. Peritoneal

seeding of cancer cells from the tumor areas to the omentum, peritoneum, ovary, and pelvic cul-de-sac can also occur.

In people with *advanced* gastric cancer, there is invasion of the muscularis (stomach muscle) or beyond. These lesions are not cured by surgical resection. The overall 5-year survival rate of people with stomach cancer in the United States is poor because most patients have no symptoms until the disease advances.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Infection with H. pylori is the largest risk factor for gastric cancer because it carries the cytotoxin-associated antigen A (CagA) gene. Patients with pernicious anemia, gastric polyps, chronic atrophic gastritis, and **achlorhydria** (absence of secretion of hydrochloric acid) are two to three times more likely to develop gastric cancer.

The disease also seems to be positively correlated with eating pickled foods, nitrates from processed foods, and salt added to food. The ingestion of these foods over a long period can lead to atrophic gastritis, a precancerous condition. A low intake of fruits and vegetables is also a risk factor for cancer (McCance et al., 2010).

Gastric surgery seems to increase the risk for gastric cancer because of the eventual development of atrophic gastritis, which results in changes to the mucosa. Patients with Barrett's esophagus from prolonged or severe gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) have an increased risk for cancer in the cardia (at the point where the stomach connects to the esophagus).

Incidence/Prevalence

Men appear to have a slightly greater risk than women. Asians and Asian Americans are at an especially high risk because of preferences for salted and smoked fish. The average age for developing gastric cancer is 70 years (National Cancer Institute, 2010).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Minority groups in the United States have a greater incidence of gastric cancer than Euro-Americans (whites), probably because of diets higher in salt and pickled foods. Asian/Pacific Islanders, American Indians/Alaska Natives, and blacks are the most at-risk groups (National Cancer Institute, 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Teach patients with gastritis and/or *H. pylori* infection to follow the treatment regimen to ensure that gastritis heals and *H. pylori* infection is eliminated. *Stress the need for eating a well-balanced diet and limiting pickled foods, salted foods, and processed foods to help prevent gastric cancer.*



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The nurse assesses a client for the risk for gastric cancer. Which of these factors would likely increase the client's risk? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Having a history of untreated gastroesophageal reflux disease
- B. Being an adult between 20 and 40 years of age
- C. Eating a diet high in smoked and pickled foods
- D. Eating a diet with high-fiber foods
- E. Eating a diet high in salt and adding salt to food

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Question the patient about known risk factors for the development of gastric cancer. Ask about preferred foods, especially pickled, salted, or smoked foods. Inquire whether the patient has ever been diagnosed with or treated for *H. pylori* infection, gastritis, or pernicious anemia. Note whether he or she has a history of gastric surgery or polyps. Also ask whether any of the patient's immediate relatives have gastric cancer.

Although patients with *early* gastric cancer may be asymptomatic, indigestion (heartburn) and abdominal discomfort are the *most* common symptoms (Chart 58-7). These symptoms are often ignored, however, or a change in diet or use of antacids relieves them. As the tumor grows, these symptoms become more severe and do not respond to nutrition changes or antacids. Epigastric or back pain is also an early symptom that may go unrecognized.

In *advanced* gastric cancer, progressive weight loss, nausea, and vomiting can occur. Vomiting represents pronounced dilation, thickening of the stomach wall, or pyloric obstruction. Obstructive symptoms appear earlier with tumors located near the pylorus than with fundic lesions. Patients with advanced disease may have weakness, fatigue, and anemia. Physical assessment findings in advanced disease may be absent, or a palpable epigastric mass may suggest hepatomegaly (liver enlargement) from metastatic disease. Hard, enlarged lymph nodes in the left supraclavicular chain, left axilla, or umbilicus result from metastasis from gastric cancer. Masses on the right suggest metastasis in the perigastric lymph nodes or liver.

In patients with advanced disease, anemia is evidenced by *low hematocrit* and hemoglobin values. Patients may have macrocytic or microcytic anemia associated with decreased iron or vitamin B₁₂ absorption. *The stool may be positive for occult blood. Hypoalbuminemia and abnormal results of liver tests* (e.g., bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase) occur with

advanced disease and with hepatic metastasis. *The level of carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) is elevated in advanced cancer of the stomach.*

The health care provider uses esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) with biopsy for definitive diagnosis of gastric cancer. The lesion can be viewed directly, and biopsies of all visible lesions can be obtained to determine the presence of cancer cells. During the endoscopy, an endoscopic (endoluminal) ultrasound (EUS) of the gastric mucosa can also be performed. This technology allows the health care provider to evaluate the depth of the tumor and the presence of lymph node involvement, which permits more accurate staging of the disease. Computed tomography (CT), positron emission tomography (PET), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis are used in determining the extent of the disease and planning therapy.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of gastric cancer includes drug therapy, radiation, and/or surgery. Drug therapy and radiation may be used instead of surgery or as an adjunct before and/or after surgery.

Nonsurgical Management

The treatment of gastric cancer depends highly on the stage of the disease. Radiation and chemotherapy commonly prolong survival of patients with advanced gastric disease.

Combination *chemotherapy* with multiple cycles of drugs such as cisplatin and epirubicin before and after surgery may be given. Bone marrow suppression, nausea, and vomiting are common adverse drug effects. Chapter 24 discusses the general nursing care of patients receiving chemotherapy.

Although gastric cancers are somewhat sensitive to the effects of radiation, the use of this treatment is limited because the disease is often widely spread to other abdominal organs on diagnosis. Organs such as the liver, kidneys, and spinal cord can endure only a limited amount of radiation. Intraoperative radiotherapy (IORT) is available in large tertiary care health care systems. Radiation may be used for palliative management when surgery is not an option.

The most common side effects of radiation include impaired skin integrity, fatigue, and anorexia. Nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea may occur about 1 week after treatment is initiated and diminish a month or more after treatment ends. (See Chapter 24 for more information on radiation therapy.)

Surgical Management

Surgical resection by removing the tumor is the preferred method for treating gastric cancer. The primary surgical procedures for the treatment of gastric cancer are total gastrectomy and subtotal (partial) gastrectomy. In early stages, laparoscopic surgery (minimally invasive surgery [MIS]) plus adjuvant chemotherapy or radiation may be curative. Patients having MIS have less pain, shorter hospital stays, rare postoperative complications, and quicker recovery. However, MIS is seldom performed because very few patients are diagnosed in the early stage of the disease.

Most patients with advanced disease are candidates for palliative surgical treatment. Metastasis in the supraclavicular lymph nodes, inguinal lymph nodes, liver, umbilicus, or perirectal wall indicates that the opportunity for cure by resection has been lost. Palliative resection may significantly improve

CHART 58-7 KEY FEATURES

Early Versus Advanced Gastric Cancer

Early Gastric Cancer*

- Indigestion
- Abdominal discomfort initially relieved with antacids
- Feeling of fullness
- Epigastric, back, or retrosternal pain

Advanced Gastric Cancer

- Nausea and vomiting
- Obstructive symptoms
- Iron deficiency anemia
- Palpable epigastric mass
- Enlarged lymph nodes
- Weakness and fatigue
- Progressive weight loss
- Signs of distant metastasis:
 - Virchow's nodes
 - Blumer's shelf
 - "Sister Mary Joseph nodes"
 - Krukenberg's tumor

*Note: Many patients with early gastric cancer have no clinical manifestations.

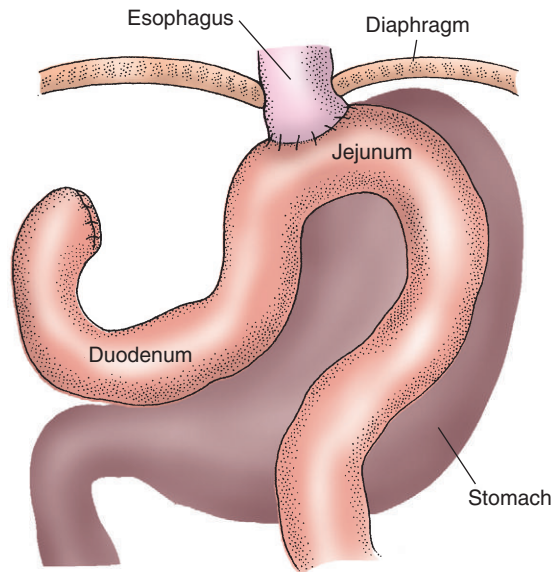


FIG. 58-5 Total gastrectomy with anastomosis of the esophagus to the jejunum (esophagojejunostomy) is the principal surgical intervention for extensive gastric cancer.

the quality of life for a patient suffering from obstruction, hemorrhage, or pain.

Preoperative Care. Before conventional open-approach surgery, a nasogastric tube (NGT) is inserted and connected to suction to remove secretions and empty the stomach. This allows surgery to take place without contamination of the peritoneal cavity by gastric secretions. [Chart 58-5](#) describes the procedure for inserting the NGT and nursing care associated with maintenance. The NGT remains in place for a few days *postoperatively* to prevent the accumulation of secretions, which may lead to vomiting or GI distention and pressure on the incision.

Because weight loss is problematic for patients with gastric cancer, nutrition therapy is a vital aspect of preoperative and postoperative management. Preoperatively, compression by the tumor can prevent adequate nutritional intake. To correct malnutrition before surgery, the health care provider may prescribe enteral supplements to the diet and/or total parenteral nutrition (TPN). Vitamin, mineral, iron, and protein supplements are essential to correct nutritional deficits.

Other preoperative nursing measures for the patient undergoing open gastric surgery are the same as those for any patient undergoing abdominal surgery and general anesthesia (see [Chapter 16](#)).

Operative Procedures. The surgeon usually removes part or all of the stomach to take out the tumor. When the tumor is located in the mid-portion or distal (lower) portion of the stomach, a subtotal (partial) gastrectomy is typically performed. The omentum, spleen, and relevant nodes are also removed.

For the patient with a removable growth in the proximal (upper) third of the stomach, a total gastrectomy is performed ([Fig. 58-5](#)). In this procedure the surgeon removes the entire stomach along with the lymph nodes and omentum. The surgeon sutures the esophagus to the duodenum or jejunum to reestablish continuity of the GI tract. More radical surgery involving removal of the spleen and distal pancreas

is controversial, although the Whipple procedure may be used to prolong life. However, the complications of this drastic surgery are very serious and common. For patients with advanced disease, total gastrectomy is performed only when gastric bleeding or obstruction is present.

Patients with tumors at the gastric outlet who are not candidates for subtotal or total gastrectomy may undergo gastroenterostomy for palliation. The surgeon creates a passage between the body of the stomach and the small bowel, often the duodenum.

Postoperative Care. Provide the usual postoperative care for patients who have had general anesthesia to prevent atelectasis, paralytic ileus, and wound infection (see [Chapter 18](#)). In addition, monitor the patient for the development of complications that are specific to gastric surgery.

Auscultate the lungs for adventitious sounds (crackles or reduced breath sounds), and monitor for the return of bowel sounds. Take vital signs as appropriate to detect signs of infection or bleeding. Aggressive pulmonary exercises and early ambulation can help prevent respiratory complications and deep vein thrombosis. Also inspect the operative site every shift for the presence of redness, swelling, or drainage, which indicates wound infection. Keep the head of the bed elevated to prevent aspiration from reflux.

Decreased patency caused by a clogged NGT can result in *acute gastric dilation* after surgery. This problem is manifested by epigastric pain and a feeling of fullness, hiccups, tachycardia, and hypotension. Irrigation or replacement of the NGT by request of the surgeon can relieve these symptoms.

Dumping syndrome is a term that refers to a group of vasomotor symptoms that occur after eating. This syndrome is believed to occur as a result of the rapid emptying of food contents into the small intestine, which shifts fluid into the gut causing abdominal distention. Observe for *early* manifestations of this syndrome, which typically occurs within 30 minutes of eating. Symptoms include vertigo, tachycardia, syncope, sweating, pallor, palpitations, and the desire to lie down. Report these manifestations to the surgeon, and encourage the patient to lie down. Monitor the patient for late symptoms.

Late dumping syndrome, which occurs 90 minutes to 3 hours after eating, is caused by a release of an excessive amount of insulin. The insulin release follows a rapid rise in the blood glucose level that results from the rapid entry of high-carbohydrate food into the jejunum. Observe for manifestations, including dizziness, light-headedness, palpitations, diaphoresis, and confusion.

Dumping syndrome is managed by nutrition changes that include decreasing the amount of food taken at one time and eliminating liquids ingested with meals. In collaboration with the dietitian, teach the patient to eat a high-protein, high-fat, low- to moderate-carbohydrate diet ([Table 58-3](#)). Acarbose may be used to decrease carbohydrate absorption. A somatostatin analog, octreotide (Sandostatin), 50 mcg subcutaneously 2 to 3 times daily 30 minutes before meals may be prescribed in severe cases. This drug decreases gastric and intestinal hormone secretion and slows stomach and intestinal transit time.

Alkaline reflux gastropathy, also known as *bile reflux gastropathy*, is a complication of gastric surgery in which the pylorus is bypassed or removed. Endoscopic examination reveals regurgitated bile in the stomach and mucosal

TABLE 58-3 DIET FOR DUMPING SYNDROME

FOOD GROUP	FOODS ALLOWED OR ENCOURAGED	FOODS TO USE WITH CAUTION	FOODS THAT MUST BE EXCLUDED
Soups		Fluids 1 hr before and after meals	Spicy soups
Meat and meat substitutes	8 oz or more per day: fish, poultry, beef, pork, veal, lamb, eggs, cheese, and peanut butter		Spicy meats or meat substitutes
Potato and substitutes	Potato, rice, pasta, starchy vegetables (small amount)		Highly spiced potatoes or substitutes
Bread and cereal	White bread, rolls, muffins, crackers, and cereals (small amount)	Whole-grain bread, rolls, crackers, and cereals	Breads with frosting or jelly, sweet rolls, and coffee cake
Vegetables	Two or more cooked vegetables	Gas-producing vegetables, such as cabbage, onions, broccoli, or raw vegetables	
Fruits	Limit three per day: unsweetened cooked or canned fruits	Unsweetened juice or fruit drinks 30-45 min after meals; fresh fruit	Sweetened fruit or juice
Beverages	Dietetic drinks	Limit to 1 hr after meals; caffeine-containing beverages, such as coffee, tea, and cola; if tolerated, diet carbonated beverages	Milk shakes, malts, and other sweet drinks; regular carbonated beverages and alcohol
Fats	Margarine, oils, shortening, butter, bacon, and salad dressings	Mayonnaise	Any fats with milk products
Desserts	Fruit (see Fruits)	Sugar-free gelatin, pudding, and custard	All sweets, cakes, pies, cookies, candy, ice cream, and sherbet
Seasonings and miscellaneous	Diet jelly, diet syrups, sugar substitutes	Excessive amounts of salt	Excessive amounts of spices, sugar, jelly, honey, syrup, or molasses

General Principles

- Several small meals daily
- Relatively high fat and protein content
- Low roughage
- Relatively low carbohydrate content
- No milk, sweets, or sugars
- Liquid between meals *only*

hyperemia. Symptoms include early satiety (satisfied quickly with little food), abdominal discomfort, and vomiting.

Delayed gastric emptying is often present after gastric surgery and usually resolves within 1 week. Edema at the anastomosis (surgical connection areas) or adhesions (scar tissue) obstructing the distal loop may cause mechanical blockage. Metabolic causes (e.g., hypokalemia, hypoproteinemia, or hyponatremia) should be considered. The edema is resolved with nasogastric suction, maintenance of fluid and electrolyte balance, and proper nutrition.

Afferent loop syndrome may occur when the duodenal loop is partially obstructed after radical surgery. Pancreatic and biliary secretions fill the intestinal loop, which becomes distended. Painful contractions attempt to propel these secretions from the loop. Teach patients to report abdominal bloating and pain 20 to 60 minutes after eating, often followed by nausea and vomiting. Treatment consists of surgical correction of the incomplete loop obstruction.

Several problems related to *nutrition* develop as a result of partial removal of the stomach, including deficiencies of vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and iron; impaired calcium metabolism; and reduced absorption of calcium and vitamin D. These problems are caused by a reduction of intrinsic factor. The decrease results from the resection and from inadequate absorption because of rapid entry of food into the bowel. In the absence of intrinsic factor, clinical manifestations of pernicious anemia may occur. Assess for the development of atrophic glossitis secondary to vitamin B₁₂

deficiency. In atrophic glossitis, the tongue takes on a shiny, smooth, and “beefy” appearance. The patient may also have signs of anemia secondary to folic acid and iron deficiency. Monitor the complete blood count (CBC) for signs of megaloblastic anemia and leukopenia (low red blood cell [RBC] and white blood cell [WBC] levels). These manifestations are corrected by the administration of vitamin B₁₂. The health care provider may also prescribe folic acid or iron preparations.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

A 58-year-old patient had a partial gastrectomy for gastric cancer yesterday and has a nasogastric tube connected to suction. When you meet him to perform your initial assessment, he tells you that he is a family physician who is one of few health care providers in a rural town and is worried about who will care for his patients during his postoperative recovery and treatment. He is also concerned about who will “look after” his older life partner who has been living with him for 21 years.

1. How will you respond to the patient’s concerns?
2. What priority care will you plan to provide for him today and why?
3. For what complications is he at risk and why? How would you know if he has abdominal bleeding?
4. Conduct an electronic data-based search for current evidence related to health teaching for this patient. How will you determine the strength of the evidence? How will you conduct an analysis and draw conclusions about the data you find?

Community-Based Care

Patients who have undergone total gastrectomy and those who are debilitated with advanced gastric cancer are discharged to home with maximal assistance and support or to a transitional care unit or skilled nursing facility. Patients who have undergone subtotal gastrectomy and are not debilitated may be discharged to home with partial assistance for ADLs. Recurrence of cancer is common, and patients need regular follow-up examinations and imaging assessments. Collaborate with the case manager (CM) to ensure continuity of care and thorough follow-up with diagnostic testing.

Home Care Management

Gastric cancer is a life-threatening illness. Therefore the patient and family members require physical and emotional care. Assess their ability to cope with the disease and the possible need for end-of-life care. The adverse effects of gastric cancer treatment can be debilitating, and patients need to learn symptom management strategies. Hospice programs can help both the patient and the family cope with these physical and emotional needs.

Patients may fear returning home because of their inability for self-management. Enlisting family and health care resources for the patient may ease some of this anxiety. Provide the family with adequate information about community support systems to make the transition to home care easier. If the prognosis is poor, they need continued professional support from case managers, social workers, and/or nurses to cope with death and dying. (See [Chapter 9](#) for a discussion of end-of-life care.)

Teaching for Self-Management

Educate the patient and family about any continuing needs, drug therapy, and nutrition therapy. If patients are discharged to home with surgical dressings, teach the patient and family

how to change them. Review the manifestations of incisional infection (e.g., fever, redness, and drainage) that they should report to their surgeon.

Patients who will be receiving radiation therapy or chemotherapy require instructions related to the side effects of these treatments. Nausea and vomiting are common side effects of chemotherapy, and instruction in the use of prescribed antiemetics may be needed. (See [Chapter 24](#) for health teaching for patients receiving chemotherapy or radiation therapy.)

In collaboration with the dietitian, teach the patient and family about the type and quantity of foods that will provide optimal nutritional value. Interventions to minimize dumping syndrome and decrease gastric stimulants are also emphasized (see [Table 58-3](#)). Remind the patient to:

- Eat small, frequent meals
- Avoid drinking liquids with meals
- Avoid foods that cause discomfort
- Eliminate caffeine and alcohol consumption
- Begin a smoking-cessation program, if needed
- Receive B₁₂ injections, as prescribed
- Lie flat after eating for a short time

Health Care Resources

A home care referral provides continued assessment, assistance, and encouragement to the patient and family. A home care nurse can help with care procedures and provide valuable psychological support. Additional referrals to a dietitian, professional counselor, or clergy/spiritual leader may be necessary. Referral to a hospice agency can be of great assistance for the patient with advanced disease. Hospice care may be delivered in the home or in an institutional setting. Appropriate support groups (e.g., I Can Cope, provided by the American Cancer Society) can be a major resource.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing impaired digestion and nutrition as a result of a stomach disorder?

- Report of epigastric pain or indigestion before or after a meal
- Report of inability to tolerate certain foods
- Nausea and/or vomiting (with or without blood)
- Melena or frank blood in stools

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing impaired digestion and nutrition as a result of a stomach disorder?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Taking vital signs
- Observing and documenting assessment findings
- Preparing for gastric lavage if hematemesis is present

- Interpreting laboratory values and other diagnostic findings:

- Presence of *H. pylori*
- Decreased hemoglobin and hematocrit

Respond by:

- Maintaining airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs)
- Placing patient in sitting position or on left side to prevent aspiration if vomiting
- Preparing to assist with gastric lavage if hematemesis is present

On what should you REFLECT?

- Think about what else you could do to care for this patient.
- Consider with whom you should collaborate to improve or maintain digestion and nutrition for this patient.
- After patient interventions, monitor for changes in vital signs, hematocrit, and hemoglobin.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Provide information about organizations for digestive disorders to receive information and support; refer the patient to the American Cancer Society if gastric cancer is the diagnosis.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients at risk for gastritis and PUD, especially older adults who take large amounts of NSAIDs and those with *H. pylori*.
- Teach patients behaviors to prevent PUD, such as avoiding large consumption of caffeine, alcohol, coffee, aspirin, and other NSAIDs. Also teach them to avoid contaminated foods and water and smoking (see [Chart 58-1](#)).
- Teach patients about various complementary and alternative therapies that are currently used for gastritis and PUD.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow patients with gastric cancer to express feelings of grief, fear, and anxiety.
- For patients with advanced gastric cancer, identify the need for end-of-life care, including referral to hospice care.

Physiological Integrity

- Teach patients the importance of adhering to *H. pylori* treatment to prevent the risk for gastric cancer.
- For patients who have undergone a gastrectomy, collaborate with the dietitian and instruct the patient regarding diet changes to avoid abdominal distention and dumping syndrome.
- Teach patients with abnormal symptoms (e.g., abdominal tenderness, abdominal pain that is relieved by food or pain

that becomes worse 3 hours after eating, dyspepsia, melena, and/or distention) to consult with their physician immediately for a prompt diagnosis and treatment.

- Teach patients that hematemesis is a medical emergency and that they should go to the emergency department for prompt treatment.
- Teach the proper administration of antacids (one to two after meals). Tell patients that antacids can interfere with the effectiveness of certain drugs, such as phenytoin (Dilantin).
- Teach the proper administration of H₂ antagonists. Explain that they should be given on an empty stomach (see [Chart 58-3](#)).
- Teach the proper administration of antisecretory agents, noting that most cannot be crushed because they are sustained-release or enteric-coated tablets.
- Assess patients for clinical manifestations of gastritis.
- Monitor patients with ulcers for any of the signs and symptoms of GI bleeding that are listed in [Chart 58-4](#). Report any of these symptoms if noted to a physician immediately.
- Insert a nasogastric tube (NGT) as outlined in [Chart 58-5](#).
- After an EGD, monitor the patient's vital signs, heart rhythm, and oxygen saturation frequently until they return to baseline. To prevent aspiration, assess the gag reflex and ensure that it is intact before giving the patient food.
- Observe the patient for signs and symptoms of dumping syndrome after gastric surgery; teach the manifestations and management of this syndrome. Advise the patient to eat six small meals per day and to consume a diet high in protein and fat but low in carbohydrate-rich foods. Liquids should not be taken with meals.

Care of Patients with Noninflammatory Intestinal Disorders

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Nasogastric Tube Placement

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Concept Map Creator

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Prioritize nursing care for the patient with abdominal trauma.
2. Identify community-based resources for patients with colorectal cancer (CRC).
3. Describe the importance of collaborating with health care team members to provide care for patients with CRC.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach patients health promotion practices to prevent CRC.
5. Plan health teaching for patients to promote self-management when caring for a colostomy.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Assess patient and family response to a diagnosis of CRC.

Physiological Integrity

7. Develop a teaching-learning plan for patients with irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).
8. Differentiate the most common types of hernias.
9. Develop a plan of care for a patient undergoing a minimally invasive inguinal hernia repair.
10. Identify risk factors for CRC.
11. Interpret assessment findings for patients with CRC.
12. Explain the role of the nurse in managing the patient with CRC.
13. Develop a perioperative plan of care for a patient undergoing a colon resection and colostomy.
14. Explain the differences between small-bowel and large-bowel obstructions.
15. Develop a plan of care for a patient with an intestinal obstruction to promote elimination.
16. Describe the postoperative care for a patient having a hemorrhoid surgical procedure.
17. Explain the pathophysiology of malabsorption syndrome.

Intestinal health problems may be inflammatory or non-inflammatory. This chapter describes those disorders that are noninflammatory in origin. Noninflammatory intestinal problems often cause rectal bleeding, changing bowel patterns, and abdominal pain. If not diagnosed and managed early, some intestinal problems can lead to inadequate absorption of vital nutrients and therefore affect the need for *nutrition* and *elimination*.

IRRITABLE BOWEL SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a functional GI disorder that causes chronic or recurrent diarrhea, constipation, and/or abdominal pain and bloating. It is sometimes referred to as *spastic colon*, *mucous colon*, or *nervous colon* (Fig. 59-1). IBS is the most common digestive disorder seen in clinical

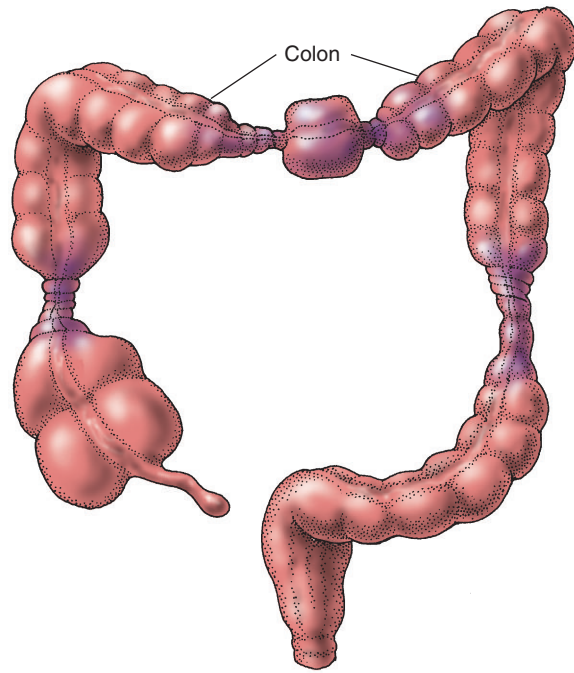


FIG. 59-1 Spastic contractions of the colon as they occur with irritable bowel syndrome.

practice and may affect as many as one in five people in the United States.

In most patients, no actual pathophysiologic bowel changes occur. However, microscopic inflammatory changes have recently been found in some patients with the disease due to bacterial overgrowth and subsequent infection.

In patients with IBS, bowel motility changes and increased or decreased bowel transit times result in changes in the normal *bowel elimination* pattern to one of these classifications: diarrhea (IBS-D), constipation (IBS-C), alternating diarrhea and constipation (IBS-A), or a mix of diarrhea and constipation (IBS-M). Symptoms of the disease typically begin to appear in young adulthood and continue throughout the patient's life.

The etiology of IBS remains unclear. Recent research suggests that a combination of environmental, immunologic, genetic, hormonal, and stress factors play a role in the development and course of the disease. Examples of environmental factors include foods and fluids like caffeinated or carbonated beverages and dairy products. Infectious agents have also been identified. Several recent studies have found that patients with IBS often have small-bowel bacterial overgrowth, which causes bloating and abdominal distention. Multiple normal flora and pathogenic agents have been identified, including *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (Kerckhoffs et al., 2011). Other researchers believe that these agents are less causative and serve as measurable biomarkers for the disease (Malinen et al., 2010).

Immunologic and genetic factors have also been associated with IBS, especially cytokine genes, including proinflammatory interleukins (IL) such as IL-6 and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha (Barkhordari et al., 2010). These findings may provide the basis of targeted drug therapy for the disease.

In the United States, women are two times more likely to have IBS than men. This difference may be the result of hormonal differences. However, in other areas of the world, this distribution pattern may not occur. For example, researchers found that there is not a female predominance for the disease in Asian countries (Gwee et al., 2010).

Considerable evidence relates the role of stress and mental or behavioral illness, especially anxiety and depression, to IBS. Many patients diagnosed with IBS meet the criteria for at least one primary mental health disorder. Some researchers suggest that psychosocial problems may be a cause for IBS (Nicholl et al., 2008). However, the pain and other chronic symptoms of the disease may lead to secondary mental health disorders. For example, when diarrhea is predominant, patients fear that there will be no bathroom facilities available and can become very anxious. The long-term nature of dealing with a chronic disease for which there is no cure can lead to secondary depression in some patients.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient about a history of weight change, fatigue, malaise, abdominal pain, changes in the bowel pattern (constipation, diarrhea, or an alternating pattern of both) or consistency of stools, and the passage of mucus. Patients with IBS do not usually lose weight. Ask whether the patient has had any GI infections. Collect information on all drugs the patient is taking, because some of them can cause symptoms similar to those of IBS. Ask about the nutrition history, including the use of caffeinated drinks or beverages sweetened with sorbitol or fructose, which can cause bloating or diarrhea.

The course of the illness is specific to each patient. Most patients can identify factors that cause exacerbations, such as diet, stress, or anxiety. Food intolerance may be associated with IBS. Dairy products (e.g., lactose intolerance), raw fruits, and grains can contribute to bloating, **flatulence** (gas), and abdominal distention.

A flare-up of worsening cramps, abdominal pain, and diarrhea and/or constipation may bring the patient to the health care provider. One of the *most common concerns of patients with IBS is pain in the left lower quadrant of the abdomen*. Assess the location, intensity, and quality of the pain. Some patients have internal visceral (organ) hypersensitivity that can cause or contribute to the pain. Nausea may be associated with mealtime and defecation. The constipated stools are small and hard and are generally followed by several softer stools. The diarrheal stools are soft and watery, and mucus is often present in the stools. Patients with IBS often report belching, gas, anorexia, and bloating.

The patient generally appears well, with a stable weight, and nutritional and fluid status are within normal ranges. Inspect and auscultate the abdomen. Bowel sounds vary but are generally within normal range. With constipation, bowel sounds may be hypoactive; with severe diarrhea, they may be hyperactive.

Routine laboratory values (including a complete blood count [CBC], serum albumin, erythrocyte sedimentation rate [ESR], and stools for occult blood) are normal in IBS. Some health care providers request a *hydrogen breath test*

(Lindberg, 2009). When small-intestinal bacterial overgrowth or malabsorption of nutrients is present, excess hydrogen is produced. Some of this hydrogen is absorbed into the bloodstream and travels to the lungs where it is exhaled. Patients with IBS often have an increased amount of hydrogen during exhalation.

Teach the patient that he or she will need to be NPO (may have water) for at least 12 hours before the hydrogen breath test. At the beginning of the test, the patient blows into a hydrogen analyzer. Then, small amounts of test sugar are ingested, depending on the purpose of the test, and additional breath samples are taken every 15 minutes for 1 hour or longer. If lactose tolerance is evaluated, lactose is ingested. If bacterial overgrowth is tested, lactulose is given (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with IBS is usually cared for in an ambulatory care setting and learns self-management strategies. Interventions include health teaching, drug therapy, and stress reduction. Some patients also use complementary and alternative therapies. A holistic approach to patient care is essential for positive outcomes (Bengtsson et al., 2010).

Keeping a symptom diary in which the patient records potential triggers and bowel habits for a period of time can assist in identifying triggers for disease symptoms. Assist patients to identify and avoid specific foods that they cannot tolerate. These foods may include caffeine, alcohol, egg, wheat products, beverages that contain sorbitol or fructose, and other gastric irritants. Milk and milk products should be avoided if lactose intolerance is suspected. In this case, teach patients to use lactose-free or soy products as substitutes. Patients who are lactose intolerant need to increase intake of calcium-rich, lactose-free foods or take a calcium supplement because they are at high risk for osteoporosis.

Dietary fiber and bulk help produce bulky, soft stools and establish regular bowel habits. The patient should ingest about 30 to 40 g of fiber each day. Eating regular meals, drinking 8 to 10 cups of liquid each day, and chewing food slowly help promote normal bowel function. If needed, collaborate with the dietitian to help the patient and family with meal planning.

Drug therapy depends on the predominant symptom of IBS. The health care provider may prescribe bulk-forming or antidiarrheal agents and/or newer drugs to control symptoms.

For the treatment of *constipation-predominant IBS (IBS-C)*, bulk-forming laxatives, such as *psyllium* hydrophilic mucilloid (Metamucil), are generally taken at mealtimes with a glass of water. The hydrophilic properties of these drugs help prevent dry, hard, or liquid stools. *Lubiprostone* (Amitiza) is a new oral drug available for women with IBS-C. The drug is not effective for men. Lubiprostone is classified as a locally acting chloride channel activator that increases intestinal chloride without affecting intestinal sodium and potassium concentrations. Teach the patient to take the drug with food and water.

Diarrhea-predominant IBS (IBS-D) may be treated with antidiarrheal agents, such as loperamide (Imodium), and psyllium (a bulk-forming agent). *Alosetron* (Lotronex), a selective serotonin (5-HT₃) receptor antagonist, may be used with caution in women with IBS-D as a last resort when they

have not responded to conventional therapy. Patients taking this drug must agree to report symptoms of colitis or constipation early because it is associated with potentially life-threatening bowel complications.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Before the patient begins alosetron, take a thorough drug (including herbs) history, both prescribed and over the counter, because it interacts with many drugs in a variety of classes. Teach patients to report constipation, fever, increasing abdominal pain, increasing fatigue, darkened urine, bloody diarrhea, or rectal bleeding as soon as it occurs and stop the drug immediately.

Many patients with IBS who have bloating and abdominal distention without constipation have success with *rifaximin* (Xifaxan), an antibiotic that works locally with little systemic absorption (Pimental et al., 2011). Although the drug has been approved for “traveler’s diarrhea” and other illnesses, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has not yet approved its use for patients with IBS.

A newer group of drugs called *muscarinic-receptor antagonists* also inhibit intestinal motility. Some of these agents have been approved for people with overactive bladders but have not yet received FDA approval for IBS. Examples in this group currently undergoing clinical trials are darifenacin (Enablex) and fesoterodine (Toviaz).

For IBS in which pain is the predominant symptom, tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline (Elavil) have also been successfully used. It is unclear whether their effectiveness is due to the antidepressant or anticholinergic effects of the drugs. If patients have postprandial (after eating) discomfort, they should take these drugs 30 to 45 minutes before mealtime.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies

For patients with increased intestinal bacterial overgrowth, recommend daily probiotic supplements. *Probiotics* have been shown to be effective for reducing bacteria and successfully alleviating GI symptoms of IBS (Lyra et al., 2010). There is also evidence that peppermint oil capsules may be effective in reducing symptoms for patients with IBS (Pirodda, 2009).

Acupuncture and moxibustion (Acu-Moxa) treatment has helped some patients by reducing flatulence and bloating and improving stool consistency (Anastasi et al., 2009). Moxibustion is the use of herbs to facilitate healing. Encourage patients to try these therapies, especially if they can be reimbursed by insurance companies. Third-party payers are becoming more sensitive to the use of these proven therapies as adjuncts in holistic disease management.

Stress management is also an important part of holistic care. Suggest relaxation techniques, meditation, and/or yoga to help the patient decrease GI symptoms. If the patient is in a stressful work or family situation, personal counseling may be helpful. Based on patient preference, make appropriate referrals or assist in making appointments, if needed. The opportunity to discuss problems and attempt creative problem solving is often helpful. Teach the patient that regular exercise is important for managing stress and promoting regular bowel elimination.

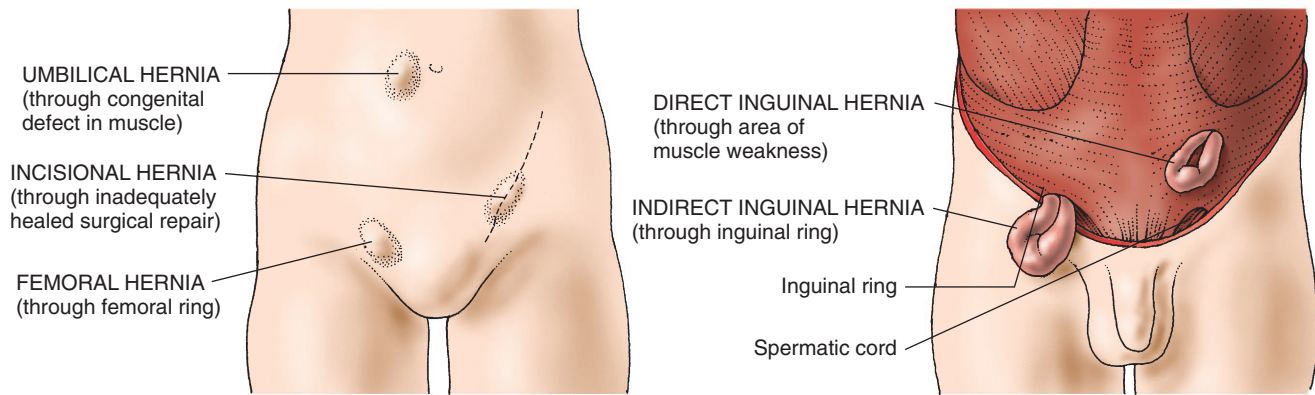


FIG. 59-2 Types of abdominal hernias.



FIG. 59-3 A right direct inguinal hernia.

HERNIATION

Pathophysiology

A **hernia** is a weakness in the abdominal muscle wall through which a segment of the bowel or other abdominal structure protrudes. Hernias can also penetrate through any other defect in the abdominal wall, through the diaphragm, or through other structures in the abdominal cavity.

The most common types of abdominal hernias (Fig. 59-2) are indirect, direct, femoral, umbilical, and incisional.

- An **indirect inguinal hernia** is a sac formed from the peritoneum that contains a portion of the intestine or omentum. The hernia pushes downward at an angle into the inguinal canal. In males, indirect inguinal hernias can become large and often descend into the scrotum.
- **Direct inguinal hernias**, in contrast, pass through a weak point in the abdominal wall (Fig. 59-3).
- **Femoral hernias** protrude through the femoral ring. A plug of fat in the femoral canal enlarges and eventually pulls the peritoneum and often the urinary bladder into the sac.
- **Umbilical hernias** are congenital or acquired. Congenital umbilical hernias appear in infancy. Acquired umbilical hernias directly result from increased intra-abdominal pressure. They are most commonly seen in obese people.

- **Incisional, or ventral, hernias** occur at the site of a previous surgical incision. These hernias result from inadequate healing of the incision, which is usually caused by postoperative wound infections, inadequate nutrition, and obesity.

Hernias may also be classified as reducible, irreducible (incarcerated), or strangulated. A hernia is **reducible** when the contents of the hernial sac can be placed back into the abdominal cavity by gentle pressure. An **irreducible** (incarcerated) hernia cannot be reduced or placed back into the abdominal cavity. *Any hernia that is not reducible requires immediate surgical evaluation.*

A hernia is **strangulated** when the blood supply to the herniated segment of the bowel is cut off by pressure from the hernial ring (the band of muscle around the hernia). If a hernia is strangulated, there is ischemia and obstruction of the bowel loop. This can lead to necrosis of the bowel and possibly bowel perforation. *Signs of strangulation are abdominal distention, nausea, vomiting, pain, fever, and tachycardia.*

The most important elements in the development of a hernia are congenital or acquired muscle weakness and increased intra-abdominal pressure. The most significant factors contributing to increased intra-abdominal pressure are obesity, pregnancy, and lifting heavy objects.

Indirect inguinal hernias, the most common type, are most common in men because they follow the tract that develops when the testes descend into the scrotum before birth. Direct hernias occur more often in older adults. Femoral and adult umbilical hernias are most common in obese or pregnant women. Incisional hernias can occur in people who have undergone abdominal surgery.

Defects in the muscle wall result from weakened collagen or widened spaces at the inguinal ligament. These muscle weaknesses can be inherited or acquired as part of the aging process. Increases in intra-abdominal pressure as a result of pregnancy, obesity, abdominal distention, ascites, heavy lifting, or coughing can contribute to their occurrence.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Even though the muscle weakness cannot be prevented, exercises can strengthen muscles. Obesity is considered a contributing factor because it causes increased intra-abdominal pressure. Weight control helps decrease the likelihood of hernias by decreasing pressure on the abdominal muscles.

Heavy lifting and straining also increase intra-abdominal pressure and should be avoided.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient with a hernia typically comes to the health care provider's office or the emergency department with a report of a "lump" or protrusion felt at the involved site. The development of the hernia may be associated with straining or lifting.

Perform an abdominal assessment inspecting the abdomen when the patient is lying and again when he or she is standing. If the hernia is reducible, it may disappear when the patient is lying flat. The advanced practice nurse or other health care provider asks the patient to strain or perform the Valsalva maneuver and observes for bulging. Auscultate for active bowel sounds. *Absent bowel sounds may indicate obstruction and strangulation, which is a medical emergency!*

To palpate an inguinal hernia, the health care provider gently examines the ring and its contents by inserting a finger in the ring and noting any changes when the patient coughs. *The hernia is never forcibly reduced; that maneuver could cause strangulated intestine to rupture.*

If a male patient suspects a hernia in his groin, the health care provider has him stand for the examination. Using the right hand for the patient's right side and the left hand for the patient's left side, the examiner pushes in the loose scrotal skin with the index finger, following the spermatic cord upward to the external inguinal cord. At this point, the patient is asked to cough, and any palpable herniation is noted.

INTERVENTIONS

The type of treatment selected depends on patient factors such as age, as well as the type and severity of the hernia.

Nonsurgical Management

If the patient is not a surgical candidate, often an older adult with multiple health problems, the health care provider may prescribe a truss for an inguinal hernia, most often for men. A **truss** is a pad made with firm material. It is held in place over the hernia with a belt to help keep the abdominal contents from protruding into the hernial sac. If a truss is used, it is applied only after the physician has reduced the hernia if it is not incarcerated. The patient usually applies the truss upon awakening. Teach him to assess the skin under the truss daily and to protect it with a light layer of powder.

Surgical Management

Most hernias are inguinal. Surgical repair of a hernia is the treatment of choice. Surgery is usually performed on an ambulatory care basis for patients who have no pre-existing health conditions that would complicate the operative course. In same-day surgery centers, anesthesia may be regional or general and the surgery is typically laparoscopic. More extensive surgery, such as a bowel resection or temporary colostomy, may be necessary if strangulation results in a gangrenous section of bowel. Patients undergoing extensive surgery are hospitalized for a longer period.

A **minimally invasive inguinal hernia repair (MIIHR)** through a laparoscope, also called **herniorrhaphy**, is the surgery of choice. A conventional open herniorrhaphy may be performed when laparoscopy is not appropriate. Patients having minimally invasive surgery (MIS) recover more quickly, have less pain, and develop fewer postoperative complications compared with those having the conventional surgery.

In addition to patient education about the procedure, the most important preoperative preparation is to teach the patient to remain NPO for the number of hours before surgery that the surgeon specifies. If same-day surgery is planned, remind the patient to arrange for someone to take him or her home and be available for the rest of the day at home. For patients having an open surgical approach, provide general preoperative care as described in [Chapter 16](#).

During an MIIHR, the surgeon makes several small incisions, identifies the defect, and places the intestinal contents back into the abdomen. During a traditional herniorrhaphy, the surgeon makes an abdominal incision to perform this procedure. When a **hernioplasty** is also performed, the surgeon reinforces the weakened outside abdominal muscle wall with a mesh patch.

The patient who has had MIIHR is discharged from the surgical center in 3 to 5 hours, depending on recovery from anesthesia. Teach him or her to rest for several days before returning to work and a normal routine. Caution patients who are taking oral opioids for pain management to not drive or operate heavy machinery. Teach them to observe incisions for redness, swelling, heat, drainage, and increased pain and promptly report their occurrence to the surgeon. Remind patients that soreness and discomfort rather than severe, acute pain are common after MIS. Be sure to make a follow-up telephone call on the day after surgery to check on the patient's status.

General postoperative care of patients having a hernia repair is the same as that described in [Chapter 18](#) *except that they should avoid coughing*. To promote lung expansion, encourage deep breathing and ambulation. With repair of an indirect inguinal hernia, the physician may suggest a scrotal support and ice bags applied to the scrotum to prevent swelling, which often contributes to pain. Elevation of the scrotum with a soft pillow helps prevent and control swelling.

In the immediate postoperative period, male patients who have had an inguinal hernia repair may experience difficulty voiding. Encourage them to stand to allow a more natural position for gravity to facilitate voiding and bladder emptying. Urine output of less than 30 mL per hour should be reported to the surgeon. Techniques to stimulate voiding such as allowing water to run may also be used. A fluid intake of at least 1500 to 2500 mL daily prevents dehydration and maintains urinary function. A "straight" or intermittent catheterization is required if the patient cannot void.

Most patients have uneventful recoveries after a hernia repair. Surgeons generally allow them to return to their usual activities after surgery, with avoidance of straining and lifting for several weeks while subcutaneous tissues heal and strengthen.

Provide oral instructions and a written list of symptoms to be reported, including fever, chills, wound drainage, redness or separation of the incision, and increasing incisional pain. Teach the patient to keep the wound dry and clean with antibacterial soap and water. Showering is usually permitted in a few days.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A nurse is caring for a client 1 day after an open hernia repair surgery. Which assessment finding will the nurse report to the surgeon immediately?

- A. Pain in the incisional area
- B. Blood pressure of 130/82 mm Hg
- C. Bronchovesicular breath sounds
- D. Rigid, board-like abdomen

COLORECTAL CANCER

Pathophysiology

Colorectal refers to the colon and rectum, which together make up the large intestine, also known as the *large bowel*. Colorectal cancer (CRC) is cancer of the colon or rectum and is a major health problem worldwide. In the United States, it is one of the most common malignancies.

Most CRCs are **adenocarcinomas**, which are tumors that arise from the glandular epithelial tissue of the colon. They develop as a multi-step process, resulting in a number of molecular changes, such as loss of key tumor suppressor genes and activation of certain oncogenes that alter colonic mucosa cell division. The increased proliferation of the colonic mucosa forms polyps that can transform into malignant tumors. Most CRCs are believed to arise from adenomatous polyps that present as a visible protrusion from the mucosal surface of the bowel (McCance et al., 2010).

Tumors occur in different areas of the colon, with about two thirds occurring within the rectosigmoid region. The percentages in Fig. 59-4 indicate an increased incidence of cancer in the proximal sections of the large intestine over the past 35 years.

Colorectal cancer (CRC) can metastasize by direct extension or by spreading through the blood or lymph. The tumor may spread locally into the four layers of the bowel wall and

into neighboring organs. It may enlarge into the lumen of the bowel or spread through the lymphatics or the circulatory system. The circulatory system is entered directly from the primary tumor through blood vessels in the bowel or via the lymphatics. The liver is the most frequent site of metastasis from circulatory spread. Metastasis to the lungs, brain, bones, and adrenal glands may also occur. Colon tumors can also spread by peritoneal seeding during surgical resection of the tumor. Seeding may occur when a tumor is excised and cancer cells break off from the tumor into the peritoneal cavity. For this reason, special techniques are used during surgery to decrease this possibility.

Complications related to the increasing growth of the tumor locally or through metastatic spread include bowel obstruction or perforation with resultant peritonitis, abscess formation, and fistula formation to the urinary bladder or the vagina. The tumor may invade neighboring blood vessels and cause frank bleeding. Tumors growing into the bowel lumen can gradually obstruct the intestine and eventually block it completely. Those extending beyond the bowel wall may place pressure on neighboring organs (uterus, urinary bladder, and ureters) and cause symptoms that mask those of the cancer. Chapter 23 discusses cancer pathophysiology in more detail.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The major risk factors for the development of colorectal cancer (CRC) include being older than 50 years, genetic predisposition, personal or family history of cancer, and/or diseases that predispose the patient to cancer such as familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), Crohn's disease, and ulcerative colitis (McCance et al., 2010). Only a small percentage of colorectal cancers are familial and transmitted genetically.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

People with a first-degree relative (sister, sibling, or child) diagnosed with colorectal cancer (CRC) have three to four times the risk for developing the disease. An autosomal dominant inherited genetic disorder known as *familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)* accounts for 1% of CRCs. FAP is the result of one or more mutations in the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene (McCance et al., 2010). In these very young patients, thousands of adenomatous polyps develop over the course of 10 to 15 years and have nearly a 100% chance of becoming malignant. By 20 years of age, most patients require surgical intervention, usually a colectomy with ileostomy or ileoanal pull-through, to prevent cancer. Chemotherapy may also be used for cancer prevention.

Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) is another autosomal dominant disorder and accounts for a small percentage of all colorectal cancers. HNPCC is also caused by gene mutations, including *MLH1* and *MLH2*. People with these mutations have an 80% chance of developing CRC at an average of 45 years of age. They also tend to have a higher incidence of endometrial, ovarian, stomach, and ureteral cancers (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Genetic testing is available for both of these familial CRC syndromes. Refer patients for genetic counseling and possible testing if the patient prefers.

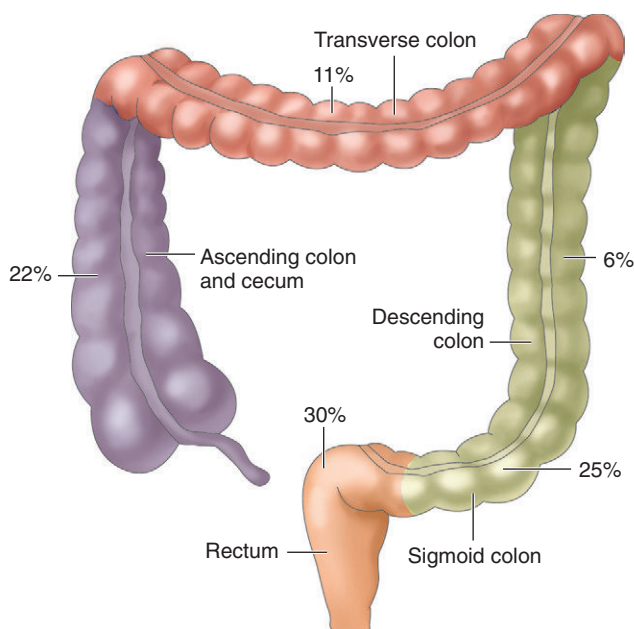


FIG. 59-4 The incidence of cancer in relation to colorectal anatomy.

The role of infectious agents in the development of colorectal and anal cancer continues to be investigated. Some lower GI cancers are related to *Helicobacter pylori*, *Streptococcus bovis*, JC virus, and human papilloma virus (HPV) infections.

There is also strong evidence that long-term smoking, increased body fat, physical inactivity, and heavy alcohol

consumption are risk factors for colorectal cancer ([American Cancer Society \[ACS\], 2010](#)). A high-fat diet, particularly animal fat from red meats, increases bile acid secretion and anaerobic bacteria, which are thought to be carcinogenic within the bowel. Diets with large amounts of refined carbohydrates that lack fiber decrease bowel transit time.

Incidence/Prevalence

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most common cause of cancer death in the United States ([ACS, 2010](#)). It is not common before 40 years of age, but the incidence in younger adults is slowly increasing, most likely due to increases in HPV infections ([Stubenrauch, 2010](#)). The overall incidence of CRC has decreased over the past 10 years, most likely as a result of increased cancer screenings. The disease is most common in African Americans, and their survival rate is lower than that of Euro-Americans (Caucasians). The possible reasons for this difference include less use of diagnostic testing (especially colonoscopy), decreased access to health care, cultural beliefs, and lack of education about the need for early cancer detection (Good et al., 2010; [Hamlyn, 2008](#)).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

People at risk can take action to decrease their chance of getting CRC and/or increase their chance of surviving it. For example, those whose family members have had hereditary CRC should be genetically tested for FAP and HNPCC. If gene mutations are present, the person at risk can collaborate with the health care team to decide what prevention or treatment plan to implement.

Teach people about the need for diagnostic screening. When an adult turns 40 years of age, he or she should discuss with the health care provider about the need for colon cancer screening. The interval depends on level of risk. People of average risk who are 50 years of age and older, without a family history, should undergo regular CRC screening. The screening includes fecal occult blood testing (FOBT) and colonoscopy every 10 years or double-contrast barium enema every 5 years. People who have a personal or family history of the disease should begin screening earlier and more frequently ([National Comprehensive Cancer Network, 2008](#)). Teach all patients to follow the American Cancer Society recommendations for CRC screening listed in [Chart 59-1](#).

Teach patients, regardless of risk, to modify their diets as needed to decrease fat, refined carbohydrates, and low-fiber foods. Encourage baked or broiled foods, especially those high in fiber and low in animal fat. Teach people the hazards of smoking, excessive alcohol, and physical inactivity. Refer patients as needed for smoking- or alcohol-cessation programs, and recommend ways to increase regular physical exercise.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When taking a history, ask the patient about major risk factors, such as a personal history of breast, ovarian, or endometrial cancer (which can spread to the colon); ulcerative colitis; Crohn's disease; familial polyposis or adenomas;

CHART 59-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Screening Recommendations for Men and Women Ages 50 Years and Older at Average Risk for Colorectal Cancer

PROCEDURE: CHOICE OF ONE OF THE FOLLOWING	INTERVAL AFTER SCREENING INITIATED AT AGE 50 YEARS	COMMENTS
FOBT and sigmoidoscopy	Every 5 years	FOBT procedure: two or three samples from three consecutive bowel movements obtained at home; tested by physician or nurse
OR Double-contrast barium enema	Every 5 years	
OR Colonoscopy	Every 10 years	

FOBT, Fecal occult blood testing.

polyps, or a family history of CRC. Also assess the patient's participation in age-specific cancer screening guidelines. Ask about whether the patient uses tobacco and/or alcohol. Assess the patient's usual physical activity level.

Ask whether vomiting and changes in bowel habits, such as constipation or change in shape of stool with or without blood, have been noted. The patient may also report fatigue (related to anemias), abdominal fullness, vague abdominal pain, or unintentional weight loss. These symptoms suggest advanced disease.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The clinical manifestations of CRC depend on the location of the tumor. *However, the most common signs are rectal bleeding, anemia, and a change in stool consistency or shape.* Stools may contain microscopic amounts of blood that are not noticeably visible, or the patient may have mahogany (dark)-colored or bright red stools ([Fig. 59-5](#)). Gross blood is not usually detected with tumors of the right side of the colon but is common (but not massive) with tumors of the left side of the colon and the rectum.

Tumors in the transverse and descending colon result in symptoms of obstruction as growth of the tumor blocks the passage of stool. The patient may report "gas pains," cramping, or incomplete evacuation. Tumors in the rectosigmoid colon are associated with [hematochezia](#) (the passage of red blood via the rectum), straining to pass stools, and narrowing of stools. Patients may report dull pain. Right-sided tumors can grow quite large without disrupting bowel patterns or appearance because the stool consistency is more liquid in this part of the colon. These tumors ulcerate and bleed intermittently, so stools can contain dark or mahogany-colored blood. A mass may be palpated in the lower right quadrant, and the patient often has anemia secondary to blood loss.

Examination of the abdomen begins with assessment for obvious distention or masses. Visible peristaltic waves accompanied by high-pitched or "tinkling" bowel sounds may indicate a partial bowel obstruction from the tumor. Total absence

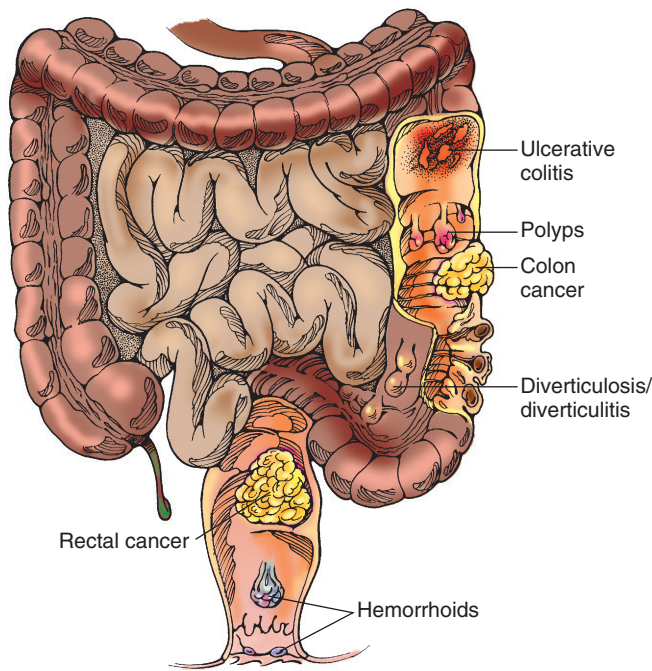


FIG. 59-5 Common causes of lower gastrointestinal bleeding.

of bowel sounds indicates a complete bowel obstruction. Palpation and percussion are performed by the advanced practice nurse or other health care provider to determine whether the spleen or liver is enlarged or whether masses are present along the colon. The examiner may also perform a digital rectal examination to palpate the rectum and lower sigmoid colon for masses. Fecal occult blood screening should not be done with a specimen from a rectal examination because it is not reliable.

Psychosocial Assessment

The psychological consequences associated with a diagnosis of colorectal cancer (CRC) are many. Patients must cope with a diagnosis that instills fear and anxiety about treatment, feelings that life has been disrupted, a need to search for ways to deal with the diagnosis, and concern about family. They also have questions about why colon cancer affected them, as well as concerns about pain, possible disfigurement, and possible death. In addition, if the cancer is believed to have a genetic origin, there is anxiety concerning implications for immediate family members.

Laboratory Assessment

Hemoglobin and hematocrit values are often decreased as a result of the intermittent bleeding associated with the tumor. For some patients, that may be the first indication that a tumor is present. CRC that has metastasized to the liver causes liver function tests to be elevated.

A positive test result for occult blood in the stool (**fecal occult blood test [FOBT]**) indicates bleeding in the GI tract. These tests can yield false-positive results if certain vitamins or drugs are taken before the test. Remind the patient to avoid aspirin, vitamin C, and red meat for 48 hours before giving a stool specimen. Also assess whether the patient is taking anti-inflammatory drugs (e.g., ibuprofen, corticosteroids, or

salicylates). These drugs should be discontinued for a designated period before the test. Two or three separate stool samples should be tested on 3 consecutive days. Negative results do not completely rule out the possibility of CRC.

Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), an oncofetal antigen, is elevated in many people with CRC. The normal value is less than 5 ng/mL or 5 mcg/L (SI units) (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). This protein is not specifically associated with the colorectal cancer, and it may be elevated in the presence of other benign or malignant diseases and in smokers. CEA is often used to monitor the effectiveness of treatment and to identify disease recurrence.

Imaging Assessment

A double-contrast barium enema (air and barium are instilled into the colon) or colonoscopy provides better visualization of polyps and small lesions than a barium enema alone. These tests may show an occlusion in the bowel where the tumor is decreasing the size of the lumen.

Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the chest, abdomen, pelvis, lungs, or liver helps confirm the existence of a mass, the extent of disease, and the location of distant metastases. CT-guided virtual colonoscopy is growing in popularity and may be more thorough than traditional colonoscopy. However, treatments or surgeries cannot be performed when a virtual colonoscopy is used.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

A sigmoidoscopy provides visualization of the lower colon using a fiberoptic scope. Polyps can be visualized, and tissue samples can be taken for biopsy. Polyps are usually removed during the procedure. A colonoscopy provides views of the entire large bowel from the rectum to the ileocecal valve. As with sigmoidoscopy, polyps can be seen and removed, and tissue samples can be taken for biopsy. *Colonoscopy is the definitive test for the diagnosis of colorectal cancer. These procedures and associated nursing care are discussed in Chapter 55.*

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with colorectal cancer (CRC) include:

1. Potential for colorectal cancer metastasis
2. Grieving related to cancer diagnosis

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The primary approach to treating CRC is to remove the entire tumor or as much of the tumor as possible to prevent or slow metastatic spread of the disease. A patient-centered collaborative care approach is essential to meet the desired outcomes.

Preventing or Controlling Metastasis

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with colorectal cancer (CRC) is expected to not have the cancer spread to vital organs. Thus the patient's life expectancy will be increased and the quality of life will be improved. However, if metastasis is present, the desired outcome is to ensure that the patient is as comfortable as possible and pain is well-managed.

Interventions. Although surgical resection is the primary means used to control the disease, several adjuvant (additional) therapies are used. Adjuvant therapies are

administered before or after surgery to achieve a cure, if possible, and to prevent recurrence.

Nonsurgical Management. The type of therapy used is based on the pathologic staging of the disease. Several staging systems may be used. The American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) system uses this broad staging classification and description:

- Stage I—Tumor invades up to muscle layer
- Stage II—Tumor invades up to other organs or perforates peritoneum
- Stage III—Any level of tumor invasion and up to 4 regional lymph nodes
- Stage IV—Any level of tumor invasion; many lymph nodes affected with distant metastases

Radiation Therapy. The administration of preoperative radiation therapy has not improved overall survival rates for colon cancer, but it has been effective in providing local or regional control of the disease. Postoperative radiation has not demonstrated any consistent improvement in survival or recurrence. However, as a palliative measure, radiation therapy may be used to control pain, hemorrhage, bowel obstruction, or metastasis to the lung in advanced disease. For rectal cancer, unlike colon cancer, radiation therapy is almost always a part of the treatment plan. Reinforce information about the radiation therapy procedure to the patient and family, and monitor for possible side effects (e.g., diarrhea, fatigue). **Chapter 24** describes the general care of patients undergoing radiation therapy.

Drug Therapy. Adjuvant *chemotherapy* after primary surgery is recommended for patients with stage II or stage III disease to interrupt the DNA production of cells and improve survival. The drugs of choice are IV 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) with leucovorin (LV) (folinic acid), capecitabine (Xeloda), or a combination of drugs referred to as *FOLFOX*. The most frequently used *FOLFOX* combination for metastatic CRC is 5-FU (fluorouracil), leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (Eloxatin), a platinum analog. These drugs cannot discriminate between cancer and healthy cells. Therefore common side effects are diarrhea, mucositis, leukopenia, mouth ulcers, and peripheral neuropathy.

Bevacizumab (Avastin) is the first antiangiogenesis drug to be approved for advanced CRC. This type of drug reduces blood flow to the growing tumor cells, thereby depriving them of necessary nutrients needed to grow. It is usually given in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents.

Cetuximab (Erbix), a monoclonal antibody, may also be given for advanced disease. This drug works by blocking factors that promote cancer cell growth. Cetuximab is usually given in combination with another drug.

Intrahepatic arterial chemotherapy, often with 5-FU, may be administered to patients with liver metastasis. Patients with CRC also receive drugs for relief of symptoms, such as opioid analgesics and antiemetics.

Surgical Management. Surgical removal of the tumor with margins free of disease is the best method of ensuring removal of CRC. The size of the tumor, its location, the extent of metastasis, the integrity of the bowel, and the condition of the patient determine which surgical procedure is performed for colorectal cancer (**Table 59-1**). Many regional lymph nodes are removed and examined for presence of cancer. The number of lymph nodes that contain cancer is a strong predictor of prognosis. The most common surgeries performed

TABLE 59-1 SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR COLORECTAL CANCERS IN VARIOUS LOCATIONS

Right-Sided Colon Tumors

- Right hemicolectomy for smaller lesions
- Right ascending colostomy or ileostomy for large, widespread lesions
- Cecostomy (opening into the cecum with intubation to decompress the bowel)

Left-Sided Colon Tumors

- Left hemicolectomy for smaller lesions
- Left descending colostomy for larger lesions

Sigmoid Colon Tumors

- Sigmoid colectomy for smaller lesions
- Sigmoid colostomy for larger lesions
- Abdominoperineal resection for large, low sigmoid tumors (near the anus) with colostomy (the rectum and the anus are completely removed, leaving a perineal wound)

Rectal Tumors

- Resection with anastomosis or pull-through procedure (preserves anal sphincter and normal elimination pattern)
- Colon resection with permanent colostomy
- Abdominoperineal resection with colostomy

are **colon resection** (removal of the tumor and regional lymph nodes) with reanastomosis, **colectomy** (colon removal) with *colostomy* (temporary or permanent) or *ileostomy/ileoanal pull-through*, and **abdominoperineal (AP) resection**. A **colostomy** is the surgical creation of an opening of the colon onto the surface of the abdomen. An AP resection is performed when rectal tumors are present. The surgeon removes the sigmoid colon, rectum, and anus through combined abdominal and perineal incisions.

For patients having a colon resection, minimally invasive surgery (MIS) via laparoscopy is commonly performed today. This procedure results in shorter hospital stays, less pain, fewer complications, and quicker recovery compared with the conventional open surgical approach.

Preoperative Care. Reinforce the physician's explanation of the planned surgical procedure. The patient is told as accurately as possible what anatomic and physiologic changes will occur with surgery. The location and number of incision sites and drains are also discussed.

Before evaluating the tumor and colon during surgery, the surgeon may not be able to determine whether a colostomy (or less commonly, an ileostomy) will be necessary. The patient is told that a colostomy is a possibility. If a colostomy is planned, the surgeon consults a certified wound, ostomy, continence nurse (CWOCN) or an enterostomal therapist (ET) (ostomy nurse) to recommend optimal placement of the ostomy. He or she teaches the patient about the rationale and general principles of ostomy care. In many settings, the CWOCN marks the patient's abdomen to indicate a potential ostomy site that will decrease the risk for complications such as interference of the undergarments or a prosthesis with the ostomy appliance. **Table 59-2** describes the role of the CWOCN or ET.

The patient who requires low rectal surgery (e.g., AP resection) is faced with the risk for postoperative sexual

TABLE 59-2 PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT BY THE CWCN OR ET NURSE**Key Points of Psychosocial Assessment**

- Patient's and family's level of knowledge of disease and ostomy care
- Patient's educational level
- Patient's physical limitations (particularly sensory)
- Support available to patient
- Patient's type of employment
- Patient's involvement in activities such as hobbies
- Financial concerns regarding purchase of ostomy supplies

Key Points of Physical Assessment

- Before marking, the nurse specialist considers:
 - Contour of the abdomen in lying, sitting, and standing positions
 - Presence of skin folds, creases, bony prominences, and scars
 - Need to avoid a prosthesis
 - Location of belt line
 - Location that is easily visible to the patient
 - Possible location in the rectus muscle

Adapted from Pontieri-Lewis, V. (2006). Basics of ostomy care. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(4), 199-202.
 ET, Enterostomal therapist; CWCN, certified wound, ostomy, continence nurse.

dysfunction and urinary incontinence after surgery as a result of nerve damage during surgery. The surgeon discusses the risk for these problems with the patient before surgery and allows him or her to verbalize concerns and questions related to this risk. Reinforce teaching about abdominal surgery performed for the patient under general anesthesia, and review the routines for turning and deep breathing (see [Chapter 16](#)). Teach the patient about the method of pain management to be used after surgery such as IV patient-controlled analgesia (PCA), epidural analgesia, or other method.

If the bowel is not obstructed or perforated, elective surgery is planned. The patient may be instructed to thoroughly clean the bowel, or “bowel prep,” to minimize bacterial growth and prevent complications. Mechanical cleaning is accomplished with laxatives and enemas or with “whole-gut lavage.” For whole-gut lavage, the patient may drink large quantities of a sodium sulfate and polyethylene glycol solution (e.g., GoLYTELY). This solution overwhelms the absorptive capacity of the small bowel and clears feces from the colon. However, the use of bowel preps is controversial, and some surgeons do not recommend it because of patient discomfort. Older adults may become dehydrated from this process. Infection rates are not different with or without bowel preps.

To reduce the risk for infection, the surgeon may prescribe one dose of oral or IV antibiotics to be given before the surgical incision is made. Teach patients that a nasogastric tube (NGT) may be placed for decompression of the stomach after surgery. A peripheral IV or central venous catheter is also placed for fluid and electrolyte replacement while the patient is NPO after surgery. Patients having minimally invasive surgeries do not need an NGT.

The patient with colorectal cancer faces a serious illness with long-term consequences of the disease and treatment. A case manager or social worker can be very helpful in identifying patient and family needs, as well as ensuring continuity of care and support.

Operative Procedures. For the conventional open surgical approach, the surgeon makes a large incision in the abdomen and explores the abdominal cavity to determine whether the tumor can be removed. For a colon resection, the portion of the colon with the tumor is excised and the two open ends of the bowel are irrigated before **anastomosis** (reattachment) of the colon. If an anastomosis is not feasible because of the location of the tumor or the bowel is inflamed, a colostomy is created.

A colostomy may be created in the ascending, transverse, descending, or sigmoid colon ([Fig. 59-6](#)). One of several techniques is used to construct a colostomy. A loop **stoma** (surgical opening) is made by bringing a loop of colon to the skin surface, severing and everting the anterior wall, and suturing it to the abdominal wall. Loop colostomies are usually performed in the transverse colon and are usually temporary. An external rod may be used to support the loop until the intestinal tissue adheres to the abdominal wall. Care must be taken to avoid displacing the rod, especially during appliance changes.

An end stoma is often constructed, most often in the descending or sigmoid colon, when a colostomy is intended to be permanent. It may also be done when the surgeon oversees the distal stump of the colon and places it in the abdominal cavity, preserving it for future reattachment. An end stoma is constructed by severing the end of the proximal portion of the bowel and bringing it out through the abdominal wall.

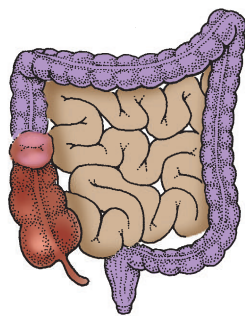
The least common colostomy is the **double-barrel stoma**, which is created by dividing the bowel and bringing both the proximal and distal portions to the abdominal surface to create two stomas. The proximal stoma (closest to the patient's head) is the functioning stoma and eliminates stool. The distal stoma (farthest from the head) is considered nonfunctioning, although it may secrete some mucus. The distal stoma is sometimes referred to as a *mucous fistula*.

MIS colon resection or total colectomy allows complete tumor removal with an adequate surgical margin and removal of associated lymph nodes. Several small incisions are made, and a miniature video camera is placed within the abdomen to help see the area that is involved. This technique takes longer than the conventional procedure and requires specialized training. However, blood loss is less.

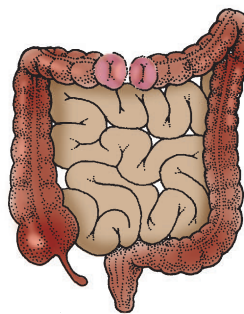
Postoperative Care. Patients who have an *open colon resection* without a colostomy receive care similar to that of those having any abdominal surgery (see [Chapter 18](#)). Other patients have surgeries that also require colostomy management. They typically have a nasogastric tube (NGT) after open surgery and receive IV PCA for the first 24 to 36 hours. After NGT removal, the diet is slowly progressed from liquids to solid foods as tolerated. The care of patients with an NGT is found on p. 1256 in the discussion of Interventions in the Intestinal Obstruction section.

By contrast, patients who have *laparoscopic (MIS) surgery* can progress from liquids to solids more quickly. Because they usually have less pain, they are able to ambulate earlier than those who have the conventional approach. The hospital stay is usually shorter for the patient with MIS—less than 23 hours or 1 to 2 days, depending on the patient's age and general condition.

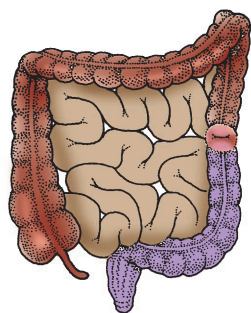
Colostomy Management. The patient who has a colostomy may return from surgery with a clear ostomy pouch system



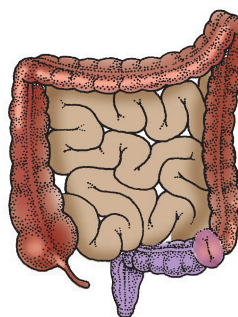
The **ascending colostomy** is done for right-sided tumors.



The **transverse (double-barrel) colostomy** is often used in such emergencies as intestinal obstruction or perforation because it can be created quickly. There are two stomas. The proximal one, closest to the small intestine, drains feces. The distal stoma drains mucus.



The **descending colostomy** is done for left-sided tumors.



The **sigmoid colostomy** is done for rectal tumors.

FIG. 59-6 Different locations of colostomies in the colon.

in place. A clear pouch allows the health care team to observe the stoma. If no pouch system is in place, a petrolatum gauze dressing is usually placed over the stoma to keep it moist. This is covered with a dry, sterile dressing. In collaboration with the ostomy nurse, place a pouch system as soon as possible. The colostomy pouch system, also called an *appliance*, allows more convenient and acceptable collection of stool than a dressing does.

Assess the color and integrity of the stoma frequently. A healthy stoma should be reddish pink and moist and protrude about $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (2 cm) from the abdominal wall (Fig. 59-7). During the initial postoperative period, the stoma may be slightly edematous. A small amount of bleeding at the stoma is common.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Report any of these problems related to the colostomy to the surgeon:

- Signs of ischemia and necrosis (dark red, purplish, or black color; dry, firm, or flaccid)
- Unusual bleeding
- Mucocutaneous separation (breakdown of the suture line securing the stoma to the abdominal wall)

Also assess the condition of the peristomal skin (skin around the stoma), and frequently check the pouch system for proper fit and signs of leakage. The skin should be intact, smooth, and without redness or excoriation.



FIG. 59-7 A mature colostomy.

The colostomy should start functioning in 2 to 4 days postoperatively. When it begins to function, the pouch may need to be emptied frequently because of excess gas collection. It should be emptied when it is one-third to one-half full of stool. Stool is liquid immediately postoperatively but becomes more solid, depending on where in the colon the stoma was placed. For example, the stool from a colostomy in the ascending colon is liquid, the stool from a colostomy in the transverse colon is pasty, and the stool from a

colostomy in the descending colon is more solid (similar to usual stool expelled from the rectum).

Wound Management. For an AP resection, the perineal wound is generally surgically closed and two bulb suction drains such as Jackson-Pratt drains are placed in the wound or through stab wounds near the wound. The drains help prevent drainage from collecting within the wound and are usually left in place for several days, depending on the character and amount of drainage. These drains are described in more detail in [Chapter 18](#).

Monitoring drainage from the perineal wound and cavity is important because of the possibility of infection and abscess formation. Serosanguineous drainage from the perineal wound may be observed for 1 to 2 months after surgery. Complete healing of the perineal wound may take 6 to 8 months. This wound can be a greater source of discomfort than the abdominal incision and ostomy, and more care may be required. The patient may experience phantom rectal sensations because sympathetic innervation for rectal control has not been interrupted. Rectal pain and itching may occasionally occur after healing. However, there is no known physiologic explanation for these sensations. Interventions may include use of antipruritic drugs, such as benzocaine, and sitz baths. Continually assess for signs of infection, abscess, or other complications, and implement methods for promoting wound drainage and comfort ([Chart 59-2](#)).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A nurse is assigned to care for a client who had a partial colectomy and ascending colostomy yesterday. What assessment findings are expected for the client? **Select all that apply.**

- A. The colostomy stoma is pinkish red and moist.
- B. The nasogastric tube is draining bright red blood.
- C. The client has pain that is controlled by analgesics.
- D. The colostomy is draining solid brown stool.
- E. The perineal incision is covered with a surgical dressing.

Assisting with the Grieving Process

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The expected outcomes are that the patient will verbalize feelings about the diagnosis and treatment and progress through the normal stages of grief.

Interventions. The patient and family are faced with a possible loss of or alteration in body functions. Medical and surgical interventions for the treatment of colorectal cancer may result in cure, disease control, or palliation. Interventions are designed to assist the patient in planning effective strategies for expressing feelings of grief and developing coping skills.

Observe and identify:

- The patient's and family's current methods of coping
- Effective sources of support used in past crises
- The patient's and family's present perceptions of the health problem
- Signs of anticipatory grief, such as crying, anger, and withdrawal from usual relationships

Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings about the diagnosis, treatment, and anticipated alteration in body functions if a colostomy is planned. (See discussion of Operative Procedures on p. 1248 in the Surgical Management section.)

CHART 59-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Perineal Wound Care

Wound Care

- Place an absorbent dressing (e.g., abdominal pad) over the wound.
- Instruct the patient that he or she may:
 - Use a feminine napkin as a dressing
 - Wear jockey-type shorts rather than boxers

Comfort Measures

- If prescribed, soak the wound area in a sitz bath for 10 to 20 minutes three or four times per day.
- Administer pain medication as prescribed, and assess its effectiveness.
- Instruct the patient about permissible activities. The patient should:
 - Assume a side-lying position in bed; avoid sitting for long periods
 - Use foam pads or a soft pillow to sit on whenever in a sitting position
 - Avoid the use of air rings or rubber donut devices

Prevention of Complications

- Maintain fluid and electrolyte balance by monitoring intake and output and by monitoring output from the perineal wound.
- Observe incision integrity, and monitor wound drains; watch for erythema, edema, bleeding, drainage, unusual odor, and excessive or constant pain.

Sadness, anger, feelings of loss, and depression are normal responses to this change in body function.

If a colostomy is planned, instruct the patient on what to expect about the appearance and care of the colostomy. Postoperatively, encourage him or her to look at and touch the stoma. When the patient is physically able, ask him or her to participate in colostomy care. Participation helps restore the patient's sense of control over his or her lifestyle and thus facilitates improved self-esteem.

Assist the patient in identifying the nature of and reaction to the loss. Encourage the patient to verbalize feelings and identify fears to help move him or her through the appropriate phases of the grief process. Establish a trusting, ongoing relationship with the patient, and provide support through the personal grieving stages.

In collaboration with the social worker or chaplain, and when appropriate, assist the patient in identifying personal coping strategies. Encourage him or her to implement cultural, religious, and social customs associated with the loss, and identify sources of community support. Modifications in lifestyle are needed for patients with CRC. Help the patient and family identify these changes and how best to make them.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Refer patients who are at risk for or have familial CRC for genetic counseling. Specially trained nurses can discuss the purposes and goals of genetic testing. Ensure privacy and confidentiality. A review of the family history may provide important information concerning the pattern of colorectal cancer inheritance. To make an informed decision, the patient and family need information about the advantages, risks, and costs of appropriate genetic tests. Monitor the patient's response regarding genetic risk factors.

The chaplain, social worker, or case manager assists in discussions and decisions with them concerning treatment, the prognosis, and end-of-life decisions, as appropriate.

Community-Based Care

Patients undergoing an uncomplicated colon resection by open approach are typically hospitalized for 3 days or longer, depending on the age of the patient and any complications or concurrent health problems. Collaborate with the case manager to assist patients and their families in coping with the immediate postoperative phase of recovery. After hospitalization for surgery, the patient is usually managed at home. Radiation therapy or chemotherapy is typically done on an ambulatory care basis. For the patient with advanced cancer, hospice care may be an option (see [Chapter 9](#)).

Home Care Management

Assess all patients for their ability for self-management within limitations. For those requiring assistance with care, home care visits by nurses or assistive nursing personnel can be provided.

For the patient who has undergone a colostomy, review the home situation to aid the patient in arranging for care. Ostomy products should be kept in an area (preferably the bathroom) where the temperature is neither hot nor cold (skin barriers may become stiff or melt in extreme temperatures) to ensure proper functioning. The home care nurse or CWCN or ET may serve as a consultant after the patient is discharged home to ensure continuity of care (per The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals).

No changes are needed in sleeping accommodations. A moisture-proof covering may initially be placed over the bed mattress if patients feel insecure about the pouch system. They may consume their usual diet on discharge.

Teaching for Self-Management

Before discharge, teach the patient to avoid lifting heavy objects or straining on defecation to prevent tension on the anastomosis site. If he or she had the open surgical approach, the patient should avoid driving for 4 to 6 weeks while the incision heals. Patients who have had laparoscopy can usually return to all usual activities in 1 to 2 weeks.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

A stool softener may be prescribed to keep stools at a soft consistency for ease of passage. Teach patients to note the frequency, amount, and character of the stools. In addition to this information, teach those with colon resections to watch for and report clinical manifestations of intestinal obstruction and perforation (e.g., cramping, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting). Advise the patient to avoid gas-producing foods and carbonated beverages. Four to six weeks may be required to establish the effects of certain foods on bowel patterns.

Colostomy Care. Rehabilitation after surgery requires that patients and family members learn how to perform colostomy care. Provide adequate opportunity before discharge for patients to learn the psychomotor skills involved in this care. Plan sufficient practice time for learning how to handle, assemble, and apply all ostomy equipment. Teach patients and families or other caregivers about:

- The normal appearance of the stoma
- Signs and symptoms of complications
- Measurement of the stoma
- The choice, use, care, and application of the appropriate appliance to cover the stoma
- Measures to protect the skin adjacent to the stoma
- Nutrition changes to control gas and odor
- Resumption of normal activities, including work, travel, and sexual intercourse

The appropriate pouch system must be selected and fitted to the stoma. Patients with flat, firm abdomens may use either flexible (bordered with paper tape) or nonflexible (full skin barrier wafer) pouch systems. A firm abdomen with lateral creases or folds requires a flexible system. Patients with deep creases, flabby abdomens, a retracted stoma, or a stoma that is flush or concave to the abdominal surface benefit from a convex appliance with a stoma belt. This type of system presses into the skin around the stoma, causing the stoma to protrude. This protrusion helps tighten the skin and prevents leaks around the stoma opening onto the peristomal skin.

Measurement of the stoma is necessary to determine the correct size of the stomal opening on the appliance. The opening should be large enough not only to cover the peristomal skin but also to avoid stomal trauma. The stoma will shrink within 6 to 8 weeks after surgery. Therefore it needs to be measured at least once weekly during this time and as needed if the patient gains or loses weight. Teach the patient and family caregiver to trace the pattern of the stomal area on the wafer portion of the appliance and to cut an opening about $\frac{1}{8}$ - to $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch larger than the stomal pattern to ensure that stomal tissue will not be constricted.

Skin preparation may include clipping peristomal hair or shaving the area (moving from the stoma outward) to achieve a smooth surface, prevent unnecessary discomfort when the wafer is removed, and minimize the risk for infected hair follicles. Advise the patient to clean around the stoma with mild soap and water before putting on an appliance. He or she should avoid using moisturizing soaps to clean the area because the lubricants can interfere with adhesion of the appliance.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient and family to apply a skin sealant (preferably without alcohol) and allow it to dry before application of the appliance (colostomy bag) to facilitate less painful removal of the tape or adhesive. If peristomal skin becomes raw, stoma powder or paste or a combination may also be applied. The paste or other filler cream is also used to fill in crevices and creases to create a flat surface for the faceplate of the colostomy bag. If the patient develops a fungal rash, an antifungal cream or powder should be used.

Control of gas and odor from the colostomy is often an important outcome for patients with new ostomies. Although a leaking or inadequately closed pouch is the usual cause of odor, flatus can also contribute to the odor. Remind the patient that although generally no foods for ostomates are forbidden, certain foods and habits can cause flatus or contribute to odor when the pouch is open. Broccoli, beans, spicy foods, onions, brussels sprouts, cabbage, cauliflower, cucumbers, mushrooms, and peas often cause flatus, as does chewing gum, smoking, drinking beer, and skipping meals. Crackers,

CHART 59-3 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with a Colostomy

Assess gastrointestinal status, including:

- Dietary and fluid intake and habits
- Presence or absence of nausea and vomiting
- Weight gain or loss
- Bowel elimination pattern and characteristics and amount of effluent (stool)
- Bowel sounds

Assess condition of stoma, including:

- Location, size, protrusion, color, and integrity
- Signs of ischemia, such as dull coloring or dark or purplish bruising

Assess peristomal skin for:

- Presence or absence of excoriated skin, leakage underneath drainage system
- Fit of appliance and effectiveness of skin barrier and appliance

Assess patient's and family's coping skills, including:

- Self-care abilities in the home
- Acknowledgment of changes in body image and function
- Sense of loss

toast, and yogurt can help prevent gas. Asparagus, broccoli, cabbage, turnips, eggs, fish, and garlic contribute to odor when the pouch is open. Buttermilk, cranberry juice, parsley, and yogurt will help prevent odor. Charcoal filters, pouch deodorizers, or placement of a breath mint in the pouch will help eliminate odors. The patient should be cautioned to not put aspirin tablets in the pouch because they may cause ulceration of the stoma. Vents that allow release of gas from the ostomy bag through a deodorizing filter are available and may decrease the patient's level of self-consciousness about odor.

The patient with a sigmoid colostomy may benefit from colostomy irrigation to regulate elimination. However, most patients with a sigmoid colostomy can become regulated through diet. An irrigation is similar to an enema but is administered through the stoma rather than the rectum.

In addition to teaching the patient about the clinical manifestations of obstruction and perforation, ask the patient to report any fever or sudden onset of pain or swelling around the stoma. Other home care assessment is listed in [Chart 59-3](#).

Psychosocial Concerns. The diagnosis of cancer can be emotionally immobilizing for the patient and family or significant others, but treatment may be welcomed because it may provide hope for control of the disease. Explore reactions to the illness and perceptions of planned interventions.

The patient's reaction to ostomy surgery may include:

- Fear of not being accepted by others
- Feelings of grief related to disturbance in body image
- Concerns about sexuality

Symms et al. (2008) found in their study of male veterans with intestinal ostomies that problems related to sexual activity and intimacy were their greatest challenge. (See the Evidence-Based Practice box above.)

Allow the patient to verbalize his or her feelings. By teaching how to physically manage the ostomy, help him or her begin to restore self-esteem and improve body image. Inclusion of family and significant others in the rehabilitation process may help maintain relationships and raise self-esteem. Anticipatory instruction includes information on leakage accidents, odor control measures, and adjustments to resuming sexual relationships.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

What Are the Sexuality Challenges That Men with Intestinal Ostomies Have?

Symms, M.R., Rawl, S.M., Grant, M., Wendel, C.S., Coons, S.J., Hickey, S., et al. (2008). Sexual health and quality of life among male veterans with intestinal ostomies. *Clinical Nurse Specialist*, 22(1), 30-40.

The researchers conducted this study of 481 male veterans in three Veterans Administration sites to determine the effect of intestinal ostomies on their sexual health. The design was case-controlled, and both quantitative and qualitative data were collected. The study group was compared with another group who had other surgeries. Quality of life was determined by responses on the modified City of Hope Quality of Life-Ostomy questionnaire.

Compared with sexual activity before surgery, the study group reported more problems with intimacy and sexuality than the control group. They had less sexual activity and more erectile dysfunction than men in the control group. For study group subjects, those who had successful sexual relationships felt less isolation and less trouble adjusting to their ostomies.

Level of Evidence: 2

The study used a large sample and a control group for comparison.

Commentary—Implications for Practice and Research

Although the researchers used a convenience sample of one group of men, they had a large sample and obtained both quantitative and qualitative data. Nurses need to include a sexual health assessment in their care of patients with ostomies. They need to be open to discussion about sexual issues and refer patients to other resources, such as intimacy or sexual counselors, as needed. Additional studies should be conducted with non-veterans and include women of various ethnicities.

Health Care Resources

Several resources are available to maintain continuity of care in the home environment and provide for patient needs that the nurse is not able to meet. Make referrals to community-based case managers or social workers, who can provide further emotional counseling, aid in managing financial concerns, or arrange for services in the home or long-term care as needed.

Provide information about the United Ostomy Associations of America, Inc. (www.uoaa.org), a self-help group of people who have ostomies. This group has literature such as the organization's publication (*Ostomy Quarterly*) and information about local chapters. The organization conducts a visitor program that sends specially trained visitors (who have an ostomy [ostomate]) to talk with patients. After obtaining consent, make a referral to the visitor program so that the volunteer ostomate can see the patient both preoperatively and postoperatively. A physician's consent for visitation may be necessary.

The local division or unit of the American Cancer Society (ACS) (www.cancer.org) can help provide necessary medical equipment and supplies, home care services, travel accommodations, and other resources for the patient who is having cancer treatment or surgery. Inform the patient and family of the programs available through the local division or unit.

Because of short hospital stays, patients with new ostomies receive much health teaching from nurses working for home care agencies. This resource also helps provide physical care needs, medication management, and emotional support. If

the patient has advanced colorectal cancer, a referral for hospice services in the home, nursing home, or other long-term care setting may be appropriate. The home care nurse informs the patient and family about what ostomy supplies are needed and where they can be purchased. Price and location are considered before recommendations are made.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with colorectal cancer based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient:

- Adjusts to actual or impending loss
- Is free of complications or metastasis associated with CRC
- States he or she has well-controlled pain and is as comfortable as possible (if metastasis is present)

INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

Pathophysiology

Intestinal obstructions can be partial or complete and are classified as mechanical or nonmechanical. In **mechanical obstruction**, the bowel is physically blocked by problems outside the intestine (e.g., adhesions), in the bowel wall (e.g., Crohn's disease), or in the intestinal lumen (e.g., tumors). **Nonmechanical obstruction** (also known as **paralytic ileus** or *adynamic ileus*) does not involve a physical obstruction in or outside the intestine. Instead, peristalsis is decreased or absent as a result of neuromuscular disturbance, resulting in a slowing of the movement or a backup of intestinal contents.

Intestinal contents are composed of ingested fluid, food, and saliva; gastric, pancreatic, and biliary secretions; and swallowed air. In both mechanical and nonmechanical obstructions, the intestinal contents accumulate at and above the area of obstruction. Distention results from the intestine's inability to absorb the contents and move them down the intestinal tract. To compensate for the lag, peristalsis increases in an effort to move the intestinal contents forward. This increase stimulates more secretions, which then leads to additional distention. The bowel then becomes edematous, and increased capillary permeability results. Plasma leaking into the peritoneal cavity and fluid trapped in the intestinal lumen decrease the absorption of fluid and electrolytes into the vascular space. Reduced circulatory blood volume (hypovolemia) and electrolyte imbalances typically occur. Hypovolemia ranges from mild to extreme (hypovolemic shock).

Specific fluid and electrolyte problems result, depending on the part of the intestine that is blocked. An obstruction high in the small intestine causes a loss of gastric hydrochloride, which can lead to *metabolic alkalosis*. Obstruction below the duodenum but above the large bowel results in loss of both acids and bases, so that acid-base imbalance is usually not compromised. Obstruction at the end of the small intestine and lower in the intestinal tract causes loss of alkaline fluids, which can lead to *metabolic acidosis*.

If hypovolemia is severe, renal insufficiency or even death can occur. Bacterial peritonitis with or without actual perforation can also result. Bacteria in the intestinal contents lie stagnant in the obstructed intestine. This is not a problem unless the blood flow to the intestine is compromised.

However, with so-called *closed-loop obstruction* (blockage in two different areas) or a **strangulated obstruction** (obstruction with compromised blood flow), the risk for peritonitis is greatly increased. Bacteria without blood supply can form and release an endotoxin into the peritoneal or systemic circulation and cause septic shock. With a strangulated obstruction, major blood loss into the intestine and the peritoneum can result.

Etiology

Intestinal obstruction is a common and serious disorder caused by a variety of conditions and is associated with significant morbidity. It can occur anywhere in the intestinal tract, although the ileum in the small intestine (the narrowest part of the intestinal tract) is the most common site.

Mechanical obstruction can result from:

- Adhesions (scar tissue from surgeries or pathology)
- Benign or malignant tumor
- Complications of appendicitis
- Hernias
- Fecal impactions (especially in older adults)
- Strictures due to Crohn's disease or previous radiation therapy
- **Intussusception** (telescoping of a segment of the intestine within itself) (Fig. 59-8)
- **Volvulus** (twisting of the intestine) (see Fig. 59-8)
- Fibrosis due to disorders such as endometriosis
- Vascular disorders (e.g., emboli and arteriosclerotic narrowing of mesenteric vessels)

In people ages 65 years or older, diverticulitis, tumors, and fecal impaction are the most common causes of obstruction.

Paralytic ileus, or nonmechanical obstruction, is most commonly caused by handling of the intestines during abdominal surgery; intestinal function is lost for a few hours

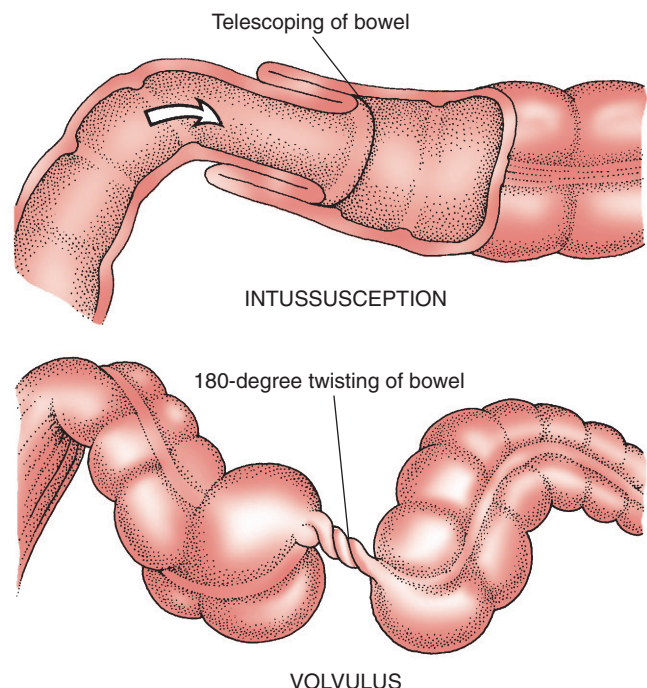


FIG. 59-8 Two types of mechanical obstruction.

to several days. Electrolyte disturbances, especially hypokalemia, predispose the patient to this problem. The ileus can also be a consequence of peritonitis, because leakage of colonic contents causes severe irritation and triggers an inflammatory response. Vascular insufficiency to the bowel, also referred to as *intestinal ischemia*, is another potential cause of an ileus. It results when arterial or venous thrombosis or an embolus decreases blood flow to the mesenteric blood vessels surrounding the intestines, as in heart failure or severe shock. Severe insufficiency of blood supply can result in infarction of surrounding organs (e.g., bowel infarction).

Incidence/Prevalence

Obstruction of the intestines is the most common reason for surgery of the small intestine. Because bowel obstruction is a result of other disorders, statistics on the incidence of bowel obstruction are not readily available.

Obstruction of the intestines occurs in all age-groups, but the incidence differs with age. In adults, most obstructions occur in the small intestine.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Collect information about a history of:

- Abdominal surgery
- Radiation therapy
- Inflammatory bowel disease
- Gallstones
- Hernias
- Trauma
- Peritonitis
- Tumors

Question the patient about recent nausea and vomiting and the color of emesis. Perform a thorough pain assessment with particular attention to the onset, aggravating factors, alleviating factors, and patterns or rhythms of the pain. Severe pain that then stops and changes to tenderness on palpation may indicate perforation and should be reported promptly to the physician. Ask about the passage of flatus and the time, character, and consistency of the last bowel movement. Singultus (hiccups) is common with all types of intestinal obstruction. When an obstruction is suspected, keep the patient NPO and contact the physician promptly for further guidance.

Assess for a family history of colorectal cancer (CRC), and ask about blood in the stool or a change in bowel pattern. Body temperature with uncomplicated obstruction is rarely higher than 100° F (37.8° C). A temperature higher than this, with or without guarding and tenderness, and a sustained elevation in pulse could indicate a strangulated obstruction or peritonitis. A fever, tachycardia, hypotension, increasing abdominal pain, abdominal rigidity, or change in color of skin overlying the abdomen should be reported to the attending physician immediately.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with *mechanical* obstruction in the *small intestine* often has mid-abdominal pain or cramping. The pain can be sporadic, and the patient may feel comfortable between

episodes. If strangulation is present, the pain becomes more localized and steady. Vomiting often accompanies obstruction and is more profuse with obstructions in the proximal small intestine. The vomitus may contain bile and mucus or be orange-brown and foul smelling as a result of bacterial overgrowth with low ileal obstruction. **Obstipation** (no passage of stool) and failure to pass flatus accompany complete obstruction. Diarrhea may be present in partial obstruction.

Mechanical colonic obstruction causes a milder, more intermittent colicky abdominal pain than is seen with small-bowel obstruction. Lower abdominal distention and obstipation may be present, or the patient may have ribbon-like stools if obstruction is partial. Alterations in bowel patterns and blood in the stools accompany the obstruction if colorectal cancer or diverticulitis is the cause.

On examination of the abdomen, observe for abdominal distention, which is common in all forms of intestinal obstruction. Peristaltic waves may also be visible. Auscultate for proximal high-pitched bowel sounds (**borborygmi**), which are associated with cramping early in the obstructive process as the intestine tries to push the mechanical obstruction forward. In later stages of mechanical obstruction, bowel sounds are absent, especially distal to the obstruction. Abdominal tenderness and rigidity are usually minimal. The presence of a tense, fluid-filled bowel loop mimicking a palpable abdominal mass may signal a closed-loop, strangulating small-bowel obstruction.

In most types of *nonmechanical* obstruction, the pain is described as a constant, diffuse discomfort. Colicky cramping is not characteristic of this type of obstruction. Pain associated with obstruction caused by vascular insufficiency or infarction is usually severe and constant. On inspection, abdominal distention is typically present. On auscultation of the abdomen, note and document decreased bowel sounds in early obstruction and absent bowel sounds in later stages. Vomiting of gastric contents and bile is frequent, but the vomitus rarely has a foul odor and is rarely profuse. Obstipation may or may not be present. **Chart 59-4** compares small-bowel and large-bowel obstructions.

CHART 59-4 KEY FEATURES

Small-Bowel and Large-Bowel Obstructions

SMALL-BOWEL OBSTRUCTIONS	LARGE-BOWEL OBSTRUCTIONS
Abdominal discomfort or pain possibly accompanied by visible peristaltic waves in upper and middle abdomen	Intermittent lower abdominal cramping
Upper or epigastric abdominal distention	Lower abdominal distention
Nausea and early, profuse vomiting (may contain fecal material)	Minimal or no vomiting
Obstipation	Obstipation or ribbon-like stools
Severe fluid and electrolyte imbalances	No major fluid and electrolyte imbalances
Metabolic alkalosis	Metabolic acidosis (not always present)

Laboratory Assessment

There is no definitive laboratory test to confirm a diagnosis of mechanical or nonmechanical obstruction. White blood cell (WBC) counts are normal unless there is a strangulated obstruction, in which case there may be leukocytosis (increased WBCs). Hemoglobin, hematocrit, creatinine, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) values are often elevated, indicating dehydration. Serum sodium, chloride, and potassium concentrations are reduced because of loss of fluid and electrolytes. Elevations in serum amylase levels may be found with strangulating obstructions, which can damage the pancreas.

Patients with high obstruction in the small intestine have arterial blood gas (ABG) values indicative of metabolic alkalosis. Obstruction in the large intestine may show values suggestive of metabolic acidosis. [Chapter 14](#) describes ABGs and these acid-base imbalances in detail.

Imaging Assessment

The health care provider obtains supine and upright abdominal x-rays and a CT scan as soon as an obstruction is suspected. Distention with fluid and gas in the small intestine with the absence of gas in the colon indicates an obstruction in the small intestine. X-ray findings are often normal when a strangulated obstruction actually exists in the small intestine.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

The diagnostic examination chosen depends on the suspected location of the obstruction. As an initial assessment, the physician may choose to do an abdominal ultrasound to evaluate the potential cause of the obstruction. The physician may perform endoscopy (sigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy) to determine the cause of the obstruction, except when perforation or complete obstruction is suspected.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions are aimed at uncovering the cause and relieving the obstruction. Intestinal obstructions can be relieved by nonsurgical or surgical means. If the obstruction is partial and there is no evidence of strangulation, nonsurgical management is the treatment of choice.

Nonsurgical Management

Paralytic ileus responds well to nonsurgical methods of relieving obstruction. Nonsurgical approaches are also preferred in the treatment of patients with terminal disease associated with bowel obstruction. In addition to being NPO, patients typically have a nasogastric tube (NGT) inserted to decompress the bowel by draining fluid and air. The tube is attached to suction.

Nasogastric Tubes. Most patients with an obstruction have an NGT unless the obstruction is mild.

A Salem sump tube is inserted through the nose and placed into the stomach. It is attached to low continuous suction. This tube has a vent ("pigtail") that prevents the stomach mucosa from being pulled away during suctioning. Levin tubes do not have a vent and therefore should be connected to low intermittent suction. They are used less often than the Salem sump tubes. [Chart 58-5](#) in [Chapter 58](#) describes how to insert an NGT.

Question the patient about the passage of flatus, and record flatus and the character of bowel movements daily. Flatus or stool means that peristalsis has returned. Assess for nausea, and ask the patient to report this manifestation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

At least every 4 hours, assess the patient with an NGT for proper placement of the tube, tube patency, and output (quality and quantity). Monitor the nasal skin around the tube for irritation. Use a device that secures the tube to the nose to prevent accidental removal. Clean the nose with the same type of skin protectant used for ostomy skin care before applying the NGT securing device. Assess for peristalsis by auscultating for bowel sounds with the suction disconnected (suction masks peristaltic sounds).

Monitor any NGT for proper functioning. Occasionally, NGTs move out of optimal drainage position or become plugged. In this case, note a decrease in gastric output or stasis of the tube's contents. Assess the patient for nausea, vomiting, increased abdominal distention, and placement of the tube. If the NGT is repositioned or replaced, confirmation of proper placement is obtained by x-ray examination before use. After appropriate placement is established, aspirate the contents and irrigate the tube with 30 mL of normal saline every 4 hours or as requested by the health care provider.

Other Nonsurgical Interventions. Most types of nonmechanical obstruction respond to nasogastric decompression in conjunction with medical treatment of the primary disorder. Incomplete mechanical obstruction can sometimes be successfully treated without surgery. Obstruction caused by lower fecal impaction usually resolves after disimpaction and enema administration. Intussusception may respond to hydrostatic pressure changes during a barium enema.

IV fluid replacement and maintenance are indicated for all patients with intestinal obstruction because the patient is NPO and fluids and electrolytes are lost (particularly potassium) through vomiting and nasogastric suction. On the basis of serum electrolytes and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels, the health care provider prescribes aggressive fluid replacement with 2 to 4 L of normal saline or lactated Ringer's solution with potassium added. Use care with patients who are susceptible to fluid overload (e.g., older adults with a history of heart or kidney failure). Monitor lung sounds, weight, and intake and output daily. Blood replacement may be indicated in strangulated obstruction because of blood loss into the bowel or peritoneal cavity.

Monitor vital signs and other measures of fluid status (e.g., urine output, skin turgor, mucous membranes) every 2 to 4 hours depending on the severity of the patient's symptoms. In collaboration with the dietitian, the physician may prescribe total parenteral nutrition (TPN), especially if the patient has had chronic nutritional problems and has been NPO for an extended period. [Chapter 63](#) discusses the nursing care of patients receiving TPN.

The patient with intestinal obstruction is usually thirsty, although older adults have a decreased thirst response as they age. Delegate frequent mouth care to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to help maintain moist mucous membranes. Be sure to supervise this activity. A few ice chips may be allowed if the patient is not having surgery. Follow agency protocol or the physician's request regarding ice chips.

Abdominal distention can cause a great deal of discomfort, especially when it is severe. The colicky, crampy pain that comes and goes with mechanical obstruction and the nausea, vomiting, dry mucous membranes, and thirst contribute to

the patient's discomfort. Continually assess the character and location of the pain, and immediately report any pain that significantly increases or changes from a colicky, intermittent type to a constant discomfort. These changes can indicate perforation of the intestine or peritonitis.

Opioid analgesics may be temporarily withheld in the diagnostic workup period so that clinical manifestations of perforation or peritonitis are not masked. Explain to the patient and family the rationale for not giving analgesics. In addition, if analgesics such as morphine are given, they may slow intestinal motility and can cause vomiting. Be alert to this side effect because nausea and vomiting are also signs of NG tube obstruction or worsening bowel obstruction.

Help the patient obtain a position of comfort with frequent position changes to promote increased peristalsis. A semi-Fowler's position helps alleviate the pressure of abdominal distention on the chest. This position is for comfort and promotion of thoracic excursion to facilitate breathing.

Discomfort is generally less with nonmechanical obstruction than with mechanical obstruction. With both types of obstruction, discomfort is aggravated by taking in food or fluids.

If strangulation is thought to be likely, the health care provider prescribes IV broad-spectrum antibiotics. In addition, in cases of partial obstruction or paralytic ileus, drugs that enhance gastric motility such as octreotide acetate (Sandostatin) may be used.

Surgical Management

In patients with complete mechanical obstruction and in some cases of incomplete mechanical obstruction, surgical intervention is necessary to relieve the obstruction. A strangulated obstruction is complete, and surgical intervention is always required. An **exploratory laparotomy** (a surgical opening of the abdominal cavity to investigate the cause of the obstruction) is initially performed for many patients with obstruction. More specific surgical procedures depend on the cause of the obstruction.

Preoperative Care. Provide general preoperative teaching for both the patient and family as discussed in [Chapter 16](#). In cases of complete obstruction, the patient may feel too ill to want the information. Reinforce the information with the family or other caregiver. Depending on the cause and severity of the obstruction, as well as the expertise of the surgeon, patients have either minimally invasive surgery (MIS) via laparoscopy or a conventional open approach.

Operative Procedures. In the *conventional open surgical approach*, the surgeon makes a large incision, enters the abdominal cavity, and explores for obstruction and its cause, if possible (**exploratory laparotomy**). If adhesions are found, they are lysed (cut and released). Obstruction caused by a tumor or diverticulitis requires a colon resection with primary anastomosis or a temporary or permanent colostomy. If obstruction is caused by intestinal infarction, an embolectomy, thrombectomy, or resection of the gangrenous small or large bowel may be necessary. In severe cases, a colectomy (removal of the entire colon) may be needed.

For the *MIS approach*, the specially trained surgeon makes several small incisions in the abdomen and places a video camera to view the abdominal contents to determine the extent of the obstruction. A laparoscope (type of endoscope) with a lighted end is inserted along with various surgical

instruments to remove the problem. This procedure takes longer than the open approach, but blood loss is less.

Postoperative Care. General postoperative care for the patient undergoing an *exploratory laparotomy* with lysis of adhesions, colon resection, thrombectomy, or embolectomy is similar to that described in [Chapter 18](#). In addition, patients have an NGT in place until peristalsis resumes. A clear liquid diet may be prescribed to encourage peristalsis return. As liquids are started, the NGT can be disconnected from suction and capped for 1 to 2 hours after the patient has taken clear liquids to determine if he or she is able to tolerate them. If the patient vomits after liquids, the suction is resumed. When the patient has return of peristalsis, the NGT is removed slowly by first discontinuing suction and then clamping the tube for a scheduled amount of time. Residual drainage is checked at each stage to assess peristalsis without decompression before removing the tube entirely.

Most patients today have laparoscopic surgery (MIS) for mechanical intestinal obstructions. They usually do *not* have an NGT and can recover more quickly than those with the open surgical approach. The hospital stay for those having MIS to remove tumors, adhesions, and other obstructions may be as short as 1 to 2 days compared with 3 days or longer for the conventional surgical patients. Recovery is much quicker because there is less pain and fewer postoperative complications among those who had laparoscopic surgery.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

A 91-year-old woman is admitted from an independent living facility with a diagnosis of complete intestinal obstruction due to a severe fecal impaction. She has been vomiting for 2 days and is extremely dehydrated. Her serum electrolytes are abnormal, and she is very weak. Her daughter and granddaughter are in the emergency department and tell you that they are very concerned about her health. They ask you what is wrong with her and what her prognosis is.

1. What is your best response to the family members at this time?
2. What evidence-based collaborative interventions are appropriate for this patient immediately?
3. What information do you need to better care for the patient?
4. What electrolyte imbalances would you expect? What clinical manifestations of dehydration do you expect this patient to have? How might her presentation be somewhat different from that of a younger adult and why?
5. What safety concerns do you have for this patient? What interventions are needed to ensure her safety?

Community-Based Care

All patients with intestinal obstruction are hospitalized for monitoring and treatment. The length of stay varies according to the type of obstruction, the treatment, and the presence of complications. Patients who have complicated obstruction, such as strangulation or incarceration, are at greater risk for peritonitis, sepsis, and shock.

Patients with nonmechanical (adynamic) intestinal obstruction are less likely to require a lengthy hospitalization because of the obstruction alone. Adynamic obstruction generally responds to NG intubation and suction within a few days. However, if the ileus occurs as a complication of an abdominal surgery, the hospital stay could be lengthy.

CHART 59-5 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Preventing Fecal Impaction

- Teach the patient to eat high-fiber foods, including plenty of raw fruits and vegetables and whole-grain products.
- Encourage the patient to drink adequate amounts of fluids, especially water.
- Do not routinely administer a laxative; teach the patient that laxative abuse decreases abdominal muscle tone and contributes to an atonic colon.
- Encourage the patient to exercise regularly, if possible. Walking every day is an excellent exercise for promoting intestinal motility.
- Use natural foods to stimulate peristalsis, such as warm beverages and prune juice.
- Take bulk-forming products, such as Metamucil, to provide fiber.
- Check the patient's stool for amount and frequency; oozing of soft or diarrheal stool often indicates a fecal impaction.
- Have the patient sit on a toilet or bedside commode, rather than on a bedpan, for elimination.

Home Care Management

For the patient who has had an intestinal obstruction, preparation for home care depends on the cause of the obstruction and the treatment required. Those who have resolution of obstruction without surgical intervention are assessed for their knowledge of strategies to avoid recurrent obstruction. For example, if fecal impaction was the cause of the obstruction, assess the patient's ability to carry out a bowel regimen independently (Chart 59-5). For those who have had surgery, evaluate their ability to function at home with the added tasks of incision care and possibly colostomy care.

Teaching for Self-Management

Instruct the patient to report any abdominal pain or distention, nausea, or vomiting, with or without constipation, because these symptoms might indicate recurrent obstruction. The patient should be reassured, however, that recurrent paralytic ileus is not common.

Teach the patient who has had surgery about incision care, drug therapy, and activity limitations. Drug therapy consists of an oral opioid analgesic, such as oxycodone hydrochloride with acetaminophen (Tylox, Percocet, Endocet ) , to be taken as needed for incisional discomfort. As with any opioid therapy, scheduled doses of a laxative with a softener (e.g., Docusate with Senna) may be added to prevent constipation and possible recurrent obstruction.

The patient who had curative treatment of the underlying cause most likely requires less support than one who had treatment of obstruction related to a serious disease that will require further management. Encourage the patient to express fears and concerns about the future. Assess the patient's understanding and needs with regard to treatment plans.

Health Care Resources

The need for follow-up appointments depends on the cause of the obstruction and the treatment required. In collaboration with the case manager, make arrangements for a home care nurse if the patient needs help with incision or colostomy care.

ABDOMINAL TRAUMA**Pathophysiology**

Abdominal trauma is defined as injury to the structures located between the diaphragm and the pelvis, which occurs when the abdomen is subjected to blunt or penetrating forces. Organs injured may include the large or small bowel, liver, spleen, duodenum, pancreas, kidneys, and urinary bladder.

At least one half of all *blunt abdominal traumas* occur from motor vehicle crashes. Other causes of blunt trauma include falls, aggravated assaults, and contact sports. The spleen is the most commonly injured organ from *blunt* abdominal trauma. *Penetrating abdominal trauma* is caused by gunshot wounds, stabbing, or impalement with an object. The liver is the most commonly injured organ from penetrating abdominal trauma. Most penetrating injuries are caused by gunshot wounds (GSWs). *Trauma is the leading cause of death in young adults (younger than 40 years) in the United States.*

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

First, assess any patient experiencing trauma for airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Once the patient with abdominal trauma has been assessed for airway, breathing, and circulation, focus on the risks for hemorrhage, shock, and peritonitis. Mental status, vital signs, and skin perfusion are *priority* nursing assessments, with skin perfusion being the most reliable clinical guide in assessing hypovolemic shock:

- In a person with mild shock, the skin is pale, cool, and moist.
- With moderate shock, diaphoresis is more marked and urine output ceases.
- With severe shock, changes in mental status are manifested by agitation, disorientation, and recent memory loss.

Assess for abdominal trauma by asking the patient about the presence, location, and quality of pain. Inspect the abdomen, flanks, back, genitalia, and rectum for contusions, abrasions, lacerations, ecchymosis, penetrating injuries, and symmetry. All of the patient's clothes must be removed for this examination.

Inspection of the abdomen may reveal distention. To perform an adequate inspection, turn the patient while maintaining spinal immobilization. *Ecchymosis (bruising) may indicate internal bleeding. Ecchymosis present in the distribution of a lap seat belt should be reported to the health care provider immediately because the bowel or other major organ may be injured.*

Auscultate the abdomen for bowel sounds. Absent or diminished bowel sounds may be caused by the presence of blood, bacteria, or a chemical irritant in the abdominal cavity. Also auscultate for bruits in the abdomen, which could indicate renal artery injury.

Injury to the spleen is present in many people with left lower rib fractures. Liver injury may be present in those with right lower rib fractures. Dullness over hollow organs that normally contain gas, such as the stomach and the large and small intestines, may indicate the presence of blood or fluid. Light abdominal palpation identifies areas of tenderness,

rebound tenderness, guarding, rigidity, and spasm. A palpated mass may be blood or a fluid collection.

The patient without obvious significant bleeding or definite signs of peritoneal irritation undergoes abdominal ultrasound, **diagnostic peritoneal lavage (DPL)**, and CT. For DPL, the physician inserts a large-bore catheter into the abdomen and allows fluid to enter the abdominal cavity. If the return drainage from the abdomen is pink or grossly bloody, the health care team prepares for surgery. Abdominal ultrasound or focused abdominal sonography for trauma (FAST) is used to diagnose blunt abdominal trauma and may replace CT and DPL for diagnosis. Patients with hemodynamic instability or peritonitis are candidates for immediate laparotomy.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical and surgical interventions are aimed at preserving or restoring hemodynamic stability, preventing or decreasing blood loss, and preventing complications. Patients with abdominal trauma from a vehicle crash often have other injuries such as multiple fractures. *The priority for care is to establish and maintain the ABCs.*

Emergency Care: Abdominal Trauma

Nursing interventions include placement of at least two large-bore IV catheters in the upper extremities. IV catheters are not used in the lower extremities; if the vasculature has been injured, fluid can pool in the abdomen. The health care provider may insert a central venous catheter to assist with rapid fluid volume infusion. IV fluids include saline, crystalloids, and possibly blood. Be sure to type and cross-match the patient for as many as 4 to 8 units of packed red blood cells.

These laboratory values are monitored:

- Arterial blood gases
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Serum electrolyte, glucose and amylase, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) determinations
- Liver function tests
- Coagulation studies

Measuring arterial blood gases may help determine the severity of shock. Hemoglobin and hematocrit values do not initially reflect true blood loss; values can be skewed because of hemoconcentration from volume loss or the dilutional effects of IV fluids. Serial hemoglobin and hematocrit measurements may be more accurate in determining true blood loss. An elevated white blood cell (WBC) count may indicate a ruptured spleen or intestinal injury. Elevated levels of serum transaminases may indicate liver injury. Elevation of serum amylase activity may signal injury to the pancreas or the bowel. All laboratory work is compiled so that values can be compared and subtle changes noted.

Continuous hemodynamic monitoring is begun in the emergency department. Insert an indwelling urinary (Foley) catheter unless there is blood at the urinary meatus. Initially and hourly thereafter, evaluate urine output for bleeding and specific gravity. Laboratory tests indicate the amount of blood and protein in the urine. If there is an open abdominal wound or evisceration, cover it with a sterile dry dressing unless the physician requests otherwise. Unless it is contraindicated, as in the case of a skull fracture, the physician or nurse inserts a nasogastric tube (NGT) to identify bleeding

and minimize the risk for vomiting and aspiration. Antibiotics are administered as prescribed to reduce the risk for peritonitis.

If the patient with known abdominal trauma has no definite clinical manifestations of active bleeding or organ injury, he or she is admitted to the hospital for observation. Many patients are admitted to the critical care unit. Blunt trauma can cause active, but often not obvious, damage.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient who has sustained abdominal trauma, assess for abdominal or referred pain and nausea. Every 15 to 30 minutes in the early postinjury period and then hourly, evaluate:

- Mental status
- Vital signs
- Clinical findings, such as vomiting, guarding, rigidity, or rebound tenderness
- Bowel sounds
- Urine output

Report any change immediately to the health care provider! It is more important to recognize the high risk for an active abdominal injury and assess for general signs of organ injury (e.g., hemorrhage and peritonitis) than to identify the exact nature of the abdominal injury. Opioid analgesics are given for pain after the physician's initial assessment is complete. Explain to the patient and family the rationale for delaying analgesics.

Intra-abdominal Pressure Monitoring

Some patients are monitored for intra-abdominal pressure (IAP) using a continuous monitoring system. As the name implies, **intra-abdominal pressure** is pressure within the abdominal cavity. The normal IAP in healthy adults is 0 to 5 mm Hg, but obese patients often have a higher normal value. In patients with abdominal injury (especially blunt trauma), IAP may increase to the point that major body organs are damaged.

When IAP becomes higher than the central venous pressure, the inferior vena cava and other abdominal vessels are compressed. This leads to impaired venous return, increased afterload, and decreased preload. The patient is then at risk for deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism (PE). The patient has tachycardia and hypotension. As the IAP increases further (over 20 mm Hg), acidosis and ischemia occur. *If elevated IAP is left untreated, damage to the intestine increases the risk for sepsis, multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS), and death.* Renal, cardiac, and respiratory damage are the most likely to occur, although the central nervous system can be affected.

The health care provider may request continuous or intermittent IAP monitoring in the critical care unit. It is usually done by inserting a urinary catheter and using a stopcock, pressure transducer system, clamp, IV tubing, and bag of saline. *Report any increase in IAP immediately to the physician. A sustained or repeated IAP of 12 mm Hg or higher is considered **intra-abdominal hypertension (IAH)** or **acute compartment syndrome (ACS)**.* Acute IAH has a rapid onset after abdominal trauma (especially blunt trauma) and must be treated immediately using either a nonsurgical (vasopressor drugs and fluids) or surgical approach (fasciotomy). Surgery is risky because it increases the chance of embolic stroke and PE.

Surgical Management

For the patient with severe abdominal trauma, the surgeon performs an *exploratory laparotomy* and repairs abdominal injuries immediately if there are definite signs of peritoneal irritation. These signs include rebound tenderness, significant blood loss, evisceration, or a gunshot wound (GSW) with possible peritoneal involvement. After surgery, many of these patients are admitted to a critical care unit and mechanically ventilated.

Most stab wounds and GSWs require exploratory laparotomy. Using local anesthesia, the surgeon explores and cleans superficial penetrating wounds. The patient does not require an exploratory laparotomy for superficial wounds.

Patients with multiple trauma stay in the hospital for a prolonged period. Before discharge from the hospital, teach the patient and family the signs and symptoms of abdominal bleeding whether or not surgery has been performed. Instruct them to report abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, bloody or black stools, fever, weakness, and dizziness.

Hemorrhage can occasionally occur weeks after blunt abdominal trauma, despite medical evaluation or treatment. For the patient who has surgery or exploration of wounds, provide instructions on wound care before discharge from the hospital. Provide additional health teaching as the patient's overall condition requires.

POLYPS

Pathophysiology

Polyyps in the intestinal tract are small growths covered with mucosa and attached to the surface of the intestine. Although most are benign, they are significant because some have the potential to become malignant.

Polyyps are identified by their tissue type. Although only a very small number of adenomas progress to cancer, almost all colorectal cancers develop from an adenoma. Adenomas are further classified as villous or tubular. Of these, villous adenomas pose a greater cancer risk.

Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) and hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC) are inherited syndromes characterized by progressive development of colorectal adenomas. Unless these syndromes are treated, colorectal cancer (CRC) inevitably occurs by the fourth to fifth decade of life. These conditions were discussed on p. 1245 in the Genetic/Genomic Considerations feature in the Colorectal Cancer section.

In addition to being classified by their tissue type, polyyps are described according to their appearance (Fig. 59-9).

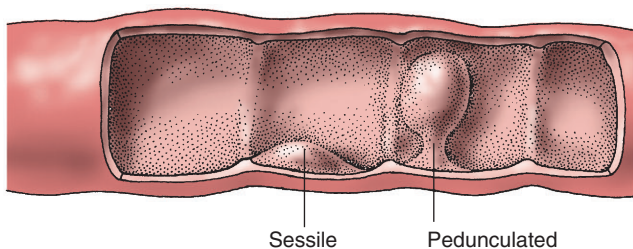


FIG. 59-9 Pedunculated and sessile polyyps. Pedunculated polyyps, such as tubular adenomas, are stalk-like. Sessile polyyps, such as villous adenomas, are broad based.

Pedunculated polyyps are stalk-like; a thin stem attaches them to the intestinal wall. They become elongated as peristalsis pulls them into the lumen of the intestine. Polyyps attached to the intestinal walls by a broad base are described as sessile. A malignant polyp may be pedunculated or sessile.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Polyyps are usually asymptomatic and are discovered during routine colonoscopy screening. However, they can cause gross rectal bleeding, intestinal obstruction, or intussusception (telescoping of the bowel). Biopsy specimens of polyyps can be obtained and the entire polyp can be removed (polypectomy) with the use of a snare that fits through the sigmoidoscope or colonoscope. This often eliminates the need for abdominal surgery to remove a suspicious or definitely malignant polyp. The patient with FAP often requires a total colectomy (colon removal) to prevent the development of cancer.

Nursing care focuses on patient education. Instruct the patient about:

- The nature of the polyp
- Clinical manifestations to report to the health care provider
- The need for regular, routine monitoring or screening

If the patient has had a polypectomy, follow-up sigmoidoscopic or colonoscopic examinations are needed because there is an increased risk for developing multiple polyyps.

Nursing care of the patient after a polypectomy of the colorectal area includes monitoring for abdominal distention and pain, rectal bleeding, mucopurulent drainage from the rectum, and fever. A small amount of blood might appear in the stool after a polypectomy, but this should be temporary.

HEMORRHOIDS

Pathophysiology

Hemorrhoids are unnaturally swollen or distended veins in the anorectal region. The veins involved in the development of hemorrhoids are part of the normal structure in the anal region. With limited distention, the veins function as a valve overlying the anal sphincter that assists in continence. Increased intra-abdominal pressure causes elevated systemic and portal venous pressure, which is transmitted to the anorectal veins. Arterioles in the anorectal region shunt blood directly to the distended anorectal veins, which increases the pressure. With repeated elevations in pressure from increased intra-abdominal pressure and engorgement from arteriolar shunting of blood, the distended veins eventually separate from the smooth muscle surrounding them. The result is prolapse of the hemorrhoidal vessels.

Hemorrhoids can be internal or external (Fig. 59-10). **Internal hemorrhoids**, which cannot be seen on inspection of the perineal area, lie above the anal sphincter. **External hemorrhoids** lie below the anal sphincter and can be seen on inspection of the anal region. Prolapsed hemorrhoids can become thrombosed or inflamed, or they can bleed.

Hemorrhoids are common and not significant unless they cause pain or bleeding. Caused by increased abdominal pressure, the condition worsens during pregnancy, constipation

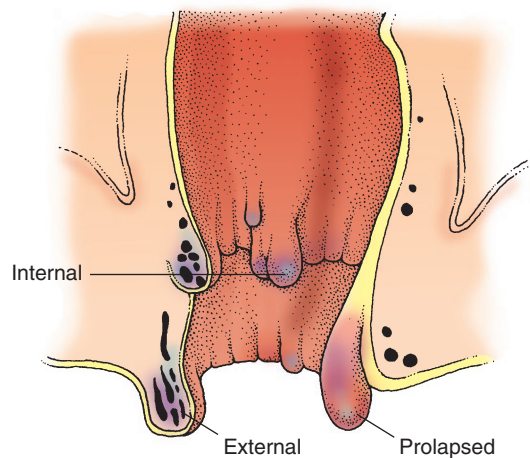


FIG. 59-10 Internal, external, and prolapsed hemorrhoids. *Internal hemorrhoids* lie above the anal sphincter and cannot be seen on inspection of the anal area. *External hemorrhoids* lie below the anal sphincter and can be seen on inspection of the anal region. Hemorrhoids that enlarge, fall down, and protrude through the anus are called *prolapsed hemorrhoids*.

with straining, obesity, heart failure, prolonged sitting or standing, and strenuous exercise and weight lifting. Decreased fluid intake can also cause hemorrhoids because of the development of hard stool and subsequent constipation. Straining while evacuating stool causes them to enlarge.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Prevention of constipation is the most important preventive measure. It can be prevented by increasing fiber in the diet, such as eating more whole grains and raw vegetables and fruits. Encourage patients to drink plenty of water unless otherwise contraindicated (e.g., kidney disease, heart disease). Remind the patient to avoid straining at stool. Remind him or her to exercise regularly with a gradual buildup in intensity. Maintaining a healthy weight also helps prevent hemorrhoids.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The most common symptoms of hemorrhoids are bleeding, swelling, and prolapse (bulging). Blood is characteristically bright red and is present on toilet tissue or streaked in the stool. Pain is a common symptom and is often associated with thrombosis, especially if thrombosis occurs suddenly. Other symptoms include itching and a mucous discharge. Diagnosis is usually made by inspection and digital examination, although anoscopy, proctoscopy, or proctoscopic ultrasonography can be performed.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions are typically conservative and are aimed at reducing symptoms with a minimum of discomfort, cost, and time lost from usual activities. Local treatment and nutrition therapy are used when symptoms begin. Cold packs applied

to the anorectal region for a few minutes at a time beginning with the onset of pain and tepid sitz baths three or four times per day are often enough to relieve discomfort, even if the hemorrhoids are thrombosed.

Topical anesthetics, such as lidocaine (Xylocaine), are useful for severe pain. Dibucaine (Nupercainal) ointment and similar products are available over the counter and may be applied for mild to moderate pain and itching. This ointment should be used only temporarily, however, because it can mask worsening symptoms and delay diagnosis of a severe disorder. If itching or inflammation is present, the health care provider prescribes a steroid preparation, such as hydrocortisone. Cleansing the anal area with moistened cleansing tissues rather than standard toilet tissue helps avoid irritation. The anal area should be cleansed gently by dabbing, rather than by wiping.

Diets high in fiber and fluids are recommended to promote regular bowel movements without straining. Stool softeners, such as docusate sodium (Colace), can be used temporarily. Irritating laxatives are avoided, as are foods and beverages that can make hemorrhoids worse. Spicy foods, nuts, coffee, and alcohol can be irritating. Remind patients to avoid sitting for long periods. The health care provider may prescribe mild oral analgesics for pain if the hemorrhoids are thrombosed.

Conservative treatment should alleviate symptoms in 3 to 5 days. If symptoms continue or recur frequently, the patient may require surgical intervention.

The surgeon can perform several procedures for symptomatic internal hemorrhoids on an ambulatory care basis. Current recommended therapies include ultrasound coagulation, rubber band ligation, circular stapling, and laser-assisted or simple resection of the hemorrhoids. The type of surgery depends on the degree of prolapse, whether there is thrombosis, and the overall condition of the patient.

The harmonic scalpel is an ultrasonically activated instrument that vibrates to coagulate small and medium-size vessels. In rubber band ligation, a rubber ring is placed around the internal hemorrhoid that constricts blood flow to the hemorrhoid, resulting in shrinking of the hemorrhoid. The rubber band usually causes a feeling of tightness in the area until the rubber band falls off in 2 to 4 days. Complications of these procedures include pain, thrombosis of other hemorrhoids, infection, and abscess formation. Bleeding may occur after the band falls off. If the hemorrhoid is prolapsed, a circular stapling device is used to excise a band of mucosa above the prolapse and restore the hemorrhoidal tissue back into the anal canal.

Hemorrhoidectomy, or resection of the hemorrhoid, tends to cause more pain than the other procedures. Urinary retention can also occur because of rectal spasms and anorectal tenderness. Hemorrhage, which may be internal and not visible or external, is a rare but potential complication.

Teach patients with hemorrhoids about the need to eat high-fiber, high-fluid diets to promote regular bowel patterns before and after surgery. Advise them to avoid stimulant laxatives, which can be habit forming.

For patients who undergo any type of surgical intervention, monitor for bleeding and pain postoperatively and teach them to report these problems to their health care provider. Using moist heat (e.g., sitz baths) three or four times per day can help promote comfort.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Tell the patient who has had surgical intervention for hemorrhoids that the first postoperative bowel movement may be very painful. Be sure that someone is with or near the patient when this happens. Some patients become light-headed and diaphoretic and may have syncope ("blackout").

The physician usually prescribes stool softeners such as docusate sodium (Colace) to begin preoperatively and continue after surgery. Analgesics and anti-inflammatory drugs are prescribed. A mild laxative should be administered if the patient has not had a bowel movement by the third postoperative day.

MALABSORPTION SYNDROME**Pathophysiology**

Malabsorption is a syndrome associated with a variety of disorders and intestinal surgical procedures. It interferes with the ability to absorb nutrients and is a result of a generalized flattening of the mucosa of the small intestine. With various disorders, physiologic mechanisms limit absorption of nutrients because of one or more of these abnormalities:

- Bile salt deficiencies
- Enzyme deficiencies
- Presence of bacteria
- Disruption of the mucosal lining of the small intestine
- Altered lymphatic and vascular circulation
- Decrease in the gastric or intestinal surface area

The nutrient involved in malabsorption depends on the type and location of the abnormality in the intestinal tract.

Deficiencies of bile salts can lead to malabsorption of fats and fat-soluble vitamins. Bile salt deficiencies can result from decreased synthesis of bile in the liver, bile obstruction, or alteration of bile salt absorption in the small intestine.

Enzymes normally found in the intestine split disaccharides (complex sugars) to monosaccharides (simple sugars). Examples of these enzymes are lactase, sucrase, maltase, and isomaltase. Lactase deficiency is the most common disaccharide enzyme deficiency. Without sufficient amounts of this enzyme, the body is not able to break down lactose. Lactase deficiency can be due to genetic inheritance, injury to intestinal mucosa from viral hepatitis, bacterial proliferation in the intestine, or sprue. Deficiencies of the other disaccharide enzymes are rare.

Pancreatic enzymes are also necessary for absorption of vitamin B₁₂. With destruction or obstruction of the pancreas or insufficient pancreatic stimulation, this nutrient is not well absorbed. Chronic pancreatitis, pancreatic carcinoma, resection of the pancreas, and cystic fibrosis can cause these malabsorption problems.

Loops of bowel can accumulate intestinal contents, resulting in bacterial overgrowth, when peristalsis is decreased. Bacteria at these sites break down bile salts, and fewer salts are available for fat absorption. They can also ingest vitamin B₁₂, which contributes to vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. This process can occur after a gastrectomy.

Disruption of the mucosal lining of the intestine is responsible for the malabsorption that occurs with celiac

(nontropical) sprue, tropical sprue, Crohn's disease, and ulcerative colitis. In celiac (nontropical) sprue, the absorptive surface area in the small intestine is lost; there is malabsorption of most nutrients. Celiac sprue is thought to be due to a genetic immune hypersensitivity response to gluten or its breakdown products or to result from the accumulation of gluten in the diet with peptidase deficiency.

Tropical sprue is caused by an infectious agent that has not been identified but is thought to be bacterial. Mucosal changes occur in a more widespread manner than in celiac sprue. However, the changes are not as severe as in celiac sprue. Tropical sprue results in malabsorption of fat, folic acid, and vitamin B₁₂ in later stages of the disease.

The inflammation in Crohn's disease interferes with the surface of cells absorbing bile salts and therefore leads to fat malabsorption. In ulcerative colitis, protein loss may occur.

Obstruction to lymphatic flow in the intestine can lead to loss of plasma proteins along with loss of minerals (e.g., iron, copper, calcium), vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, and lipids. Lymphatic obstruction can be caused by many conditions. Certain cancers such as lymphoma, inflammatory states, radiation enteritis, Crohn's disease, heart failure, and constrictive pericarditis are causes of lymphatic obstruction.

Interference with blood flow to the intestinal mucosa results in malabsorption. With intestinal surgery, there is loss of the surface area needed to facilitate absorption. Resection of the ileum results in vitamin B₁₂, bile salt, and other nutrient deficiencies. Gastric surgery is one of the most common causes of malabsorption and maldigestion. Other conditions associated with poor digestion and malabsorption include small-bowel ischemia and radiation enteritis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT**

Chronic diarrhea is a classic symptom of malabsorption. It occurs as a result of unabsorbed nutrients, which add to the bulk of the stool, and unabsorbed fat. **Steatorrhea** (greater than normal amounts of fat in the feces) is a common sign. It is a result of bile salt deconjugation, nonabsorbed fats, or bacteria in the intestine. Not all patients with malabsorption have diarrhea. Instead, some have an increased stool mass. Other clinical manifestations include:

- Unintentional weight loss
- Bloating and flatus (carbohydrate malabsorption)
- Decreased libido
- Easy bruising (purpura)
- Anemia (with iron and folic acid or vitamin B₁₂ deficiencies)
- Bone pain (with calcium and vitamin D deficiencies)
- Edema (caused by hypoproteinemia)

Laboratory studies reveal a decrease in mean corpuscular volume (MCV), mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC). These decreases indicate hypochromic microcytic anemia resulting from iron deficiency. Increased MCV and variable MCH and MCHC values indicate macrocytic anemia resulting from vitamin B₁₂ and folic acid deficiencies. Serum iron levels are low in protein malabsorption because of

insufficient gastric acid for use of iron. Serum cholesterol levels may be low from decreased absorption and digestion of fat. Low serum calcium levels may indicate malabsorption of vitamin D and amino acids. Low levels of serum vitamin A (retinol) and carotene, its precursor, indicate a bile salt deficiency and malabsorption of fat. Serum albumin and total protein levels are low if protein is lost. A quantitative fecal fat analysis is elevated in either malabsorption or maldigestion.

A *lactose tolerance test* result that shows less than a 20% rise in the blood glucose level over the fasting blood glucose level indicates lactose intolerance. A hydrogen breath test can also be performed to detect this problem. The xylose absorption test can reveal low urine and serum D-xylose levels if malabsorption in the small intestine is present, a common finding in celiac sprue. An abnormal D-xylose test can indicate bacterial overgrowth in the small intestine.

The *Schilling test* measures urinary excretion of vitamin B₁₂ for diagnosis of pernicious anemia and a variety of other malabsorption syndromes. The *bile acid breath test* assesses the absorption of bile salt. If the patient has bacterial overgrowth, the bile salts will become deconjugated and the carbon dioxide level in the breath will peak earlier than expected.

Biopsy of the small intestine is performed for diagnosis of tropical sprue or celiac sprue. Ultrasonography is used to diagnose pancreatic tumors and tumors in the small intestine that are causing malabsorption. X-rays of the GI tract reveal pancreatic calcifications, tumors, or other abnormalities that cause malabsorption. A CT scan may also be done.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for most malabsorption syndromes focus on (1) avoidance of substances that aggravate malabsorption and (2) supplementation of nutrients. Surgical management of the primary disease may be indicated. Drug therapy may also improve or resolve malabsorption.

Nutrition management includes a low-fat diet for patients who have gallbladder disease, severe steatorrhea, or cystic fibrosis. A low-fat diet may or may not be indicated for pancreatic insufficiency because this disorder improves with enzyme replacement. Some clinicians believe that limitation of fat intake is not necessary with enzyme replacement. Dietary intake of fat is actually beneficial to the patient because it has a high number of calories. After a total gastrectomy, a high-protein, high-calorie diet and small, frequent meals are recommended. Lactose-free or lactose-restricted diets are available for patients with lactase deficiency, and gluten-free diets are available for those with celiac sprue.

The health care provider prescribes nutritional supplements according to the specific deficiency. Common supplements include:

CHART 59-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Special Skin Care for Patients with Chronic Diarrhea

- Use medicated wipes or premoistened disposable wipes rather than toilet tissue to clean the perineal area.
- Clean the perineal area well with mild soap and warm water after each stool; rinse soap from the area well.
- If the physician allows, provide a sitz bath several times per day.
- Apply a thin coat of A+D Ointment or other medicated protective barrier, such as aloe products, after each stool.
- Keep the patient off the affected buttock area.
- For open areas, cover with thin DuoDerm or Tegaderm occlusive dressing to promote rapid healing.
- Observe for fungal or yeast infections, which appear as dark red rashes with "satellite" lesions. Obtain prescription for medication if this problem occurs.

- Water-soluble vitamins, such as folic acid and vitamin B complex
- Fat-soluble vitamins, such as vitamin A, vitamin D, and vitamin K
- Minerals, such as calcium, iron, and magnesium
- Pancreatic enzymes, such as pancrelipase (Pancrease, Viokase)

Antibiotics are used to treat tropical sprue, Whipple's disease, and other disorders involving bacterial overgrowth. Tropical sprue is treated with trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim, Septra). Bacterial overgrowth can be caused by a variety of disorders but is often treated with tetracycline and metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazol ). Steroids are sometimes given in celiac disease to decrease inflammation.

Drug therapy is used to control the clinical manifestations of malabsorption. Antidiarrheal agents, such as diphenoxylate hydrochloride and atropine sulfate (Lomotil), are often used to control diarrhea and steatorrhea. Anticholinergics, such as dicyclomine hydrochloride (Bentyl, Bentylol ) , may be given before meals to inhibit gastric motility. IV fluids may be necessary to replenish fluid losses associated with diarrhea.

Provide special measures to protect the skin when chronic diarrhea occurs (Chart 59-6). Conduct an ongoing assessment for clinical manifestations of malabsorption, and relate these to activities and dietary intake. For example, patients with steatorrhea are monitored for fluid and electrolyte imbalances and are encouraged to drink electrolyte-rich liquids liberally. Teach them the rationale for dietary, drug, and surgical management of nutritional deficiencies, and evaluate interventions on the basis of changes in or resolution of clinical manifestations.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has impaired absorption and inadequate nutrition as a result of non-inflammatory intestinal disorders?

- Rectal bleeding
- Report of change in bowel habits
- Diarrhea or report of constipation
- Fatigue
- Vomiting
- Abdominal pain
- Change in bowel sounds (decreased or increased)
- Weight loss

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with impaired absorption and inadequate nutrition as a result of noninflammatory intestinal disorders?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Vital signs
- Complete pain assessment
- Abdominal assessment
- Current weight compared with previous weight

Respond:

- Decrease abdominal pain by placing patient in sitting position.
- Start IV (large-bore) to replace fluids and electrolytes, and give blood transfusion as prescribed.
- Provide rest.
- Provide privacy and dignity.

- Assist with hygiene as needed.
- Insert nasogastric tube and connect to low suction as needed.
- Check laboratory values of hemoglobin and hematocrit.
- Check stool for occult or frank blood.
- Give antidiarrheal drugs if prescribed.
- Record intake and output.
- Assist with ADLs and ambulation as needed.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Continue to monitor for vomiting and diarrhea and for changes in pain.
- Think about what you need to document. Decide when you might need to call the health care provider or Rapid Response Team.
- Determine what health teaching and community resources may be needed for the patient and family.
- Think about what you can do to help prevent complications of the health problem.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Refer patients with familial CRC syndromes for genetic counseling and testing.
- Refer ostomy patients to the United Ostomy Associations of America, Inc. and the American Cancer Society for additional information and support groups.
- Consult with the certified wound, ostomy, continence nurse (CWOCN) or enterostomal therapist (ET) when a patient is scheduled for or has a new colostomy.
- Prioritize care for patients experiencing abdominal trauma: first assess airway, breathing, and circulation (ABCs), and then monitor mental status, vital signs, and skin perfusion to assess for hypovolemic shock.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients with irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) to avoid GI stimulants, such as caffeine, alcohol, and milk and milk products, and to manage stress.
- Instruct patients on dietary modifications to decrease the occurrence of colorectal cancer (CRC).
- Teach adults 50 years and older to have routine screening for CRC as listed in [Chart 59-1](#); people with genetic predispositions should have earlier and more frequent screening.
- Teach patients and caregivers how to provide colostomy care, including dietary measures, skin care, and ostomy products.

- Teach people measures for preventing constipation to minimize hemorrhoid occurrence.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess effects of IBS on patient lifestyle; recommend stress management techniques.
- Assist the patient with CRC with the anticipatory grieving process.
- Be aware that having a colostomy is a life-altering event that can severely impact one's body image; issues related to sexuality and fear of acceptance should be discussed.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess patients with IBS for elimination pattern, abdominal pain, and nausea.
- Be aware that minimally invasive inguinal hernia repair is an ambulatory procedure done via laparoscopy; postoperative management requires health teaching regarding rest for a few days and inspection of incisions for signs of infection.
- Be aware that a strangulated hernia can cause ischemia and bowel obstruction, requiring immediate intervention.
- Monitor patients who have conventional open herniorrhaphy for ability to void.
- Recognize that surgical procedures for CRC vary depending on tumor location as specified in [Table 59-1](#).
- Keep the peristomal skin clean and dry; observe for leakage around the pouch seal.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Provide meticulous perineal wound care for patients having an abdominoperineal (AP) resection, as described in [Chart 59-2](#).
- Assess the characteristics of the colostomy stoma, which should be reddish pink and moist; report abnormalities such as ischemia and necrosis (purplish or black) or unusual bleeding to the surgeon.
- Recall that bowel sounds are altered in patients with obstruction; absent bowel sounds imply total obstruction.
- Assess the patient's nasogastric tube for proper placement, patency, and output at least every 4 hours.
- Monitor patients with bowel obstruction for signs and symptoms of fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances.
- Teach patients having hemorrhoid surgery to take stool softeners before and after surgery to decrease discomfort during defecation.
- Be aware that intestinal polyps are usually benign but can become malignant if not removed.

CHAPTER

60

Care of Patients with Inflammatory Intestinal Disorders

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Describe the importance of collaborating with health care team members to provide care for patients with chronic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Differentiate care for older adults with acute and chronic inflammatory bowel disorders.
3. Develop a health teaching plan for patients to promote self-management when caring for ileostomy or other surgical diversion.
4. Identify community resources for patients and families regarding chronic IBD.
5. Discuss ways that food poisoning can be prevented.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Identify expected body image changes associated with having an ileostomy or other surgical diversion.
7. Describe patient and family response to chronic IBD.

Physiological Integrity

8. Differentiate common types of acute inflammatory bowel disease.
9. Develop a collaborative plan of care for the patient who has appendicitis and peritonitis.
10. Discuss the common causes of gastroenteritis.
11. Compare and contrast the pathophysiology and clinical manifestations of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease.
12. Identify priority problems for patients with ulcerative colitis.
13. Explain the purpose of and nursing implications related to drug therapy for patients with IBD.
14. Plan priority postoperative care for a patient undergoing surgery for IBD.
15. Develop a hospital discharge teaching plan for patients having surgery for IBD.
16. Explain the role of nutrition therapy in managing the patient with diverticular disease.
17. Describe the comfort measures that the nurse can use for the patient with anal disorders.

Inflammatory bowel health problems affect the small intestine, large intestine (colon), or both. Together, these organs are called the *intestinal tract*. Continued digestion of food and absorption of nutrients occur primarily in the small intestine (bowel) to meet the body's needs for energy. Water is reabsorbed in the large intestine to help maintain a fluid balance and promote the passage of waste products. When the intestinal tract and its nearby structures become inflamed,

digestion and nutrition may be inadequate to meet a patient's needs.

ACUTE INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISORDERS

Appendicitis, gastroenteritis, and peritonitis are the most common acute inflammatory bowel problems. These

disorders are potentially life threatening and can have major systemic complications if not treated promptly.

APPENDICITIS

Pathophysiology

Appendicitis is an acute inflammation of the vermiform appendix that occurs most often among young adults. It is the most common cause of right lower quadrant (RLQ) pain. The appendix usually extends off the proximal cecum of the colon just below the ileocecal valve. Inflammation occurs when the lumen (opening) of the appendix is obstructed (blocked), leading to infection as bacteria invade the wall of the appendix. The initial obstruction is usually a result of fecaliths (very hard pieces of feces) composed of calcium phosphate-rich mucus and inorganic salts. Less common causes are malignant tumors, helminthes (worms), or other infections.

When the lumen is blocked, the mucosa secretes fluid, increasing the internal pressure and restricting blood flow, resulting in pain. If the process occurs slowly, an abscess may develop, but a rapid process may result in peritonitis (inflammation of the peritoneum). *All complications of peritonitis are serious. Gangrene can occur within 24 to 36 hours, is life threatening, and is one of the most common indications for emergency surgery. Perforation may develop within 24 hours, but the risk rises rapidly after 48 hours.* Perforation of the appendix also results in peritonitis with a temperature of greater than 101° F (38.3° C) and a rise in pulse rate.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Appendicitis is relatively rare at extremes in age. However, perforation is more common in older people, causing a higher mortality rate. The diagnosis of appendicitis is difficult to establish in older adults because symptoms of pain and tenderness may not be as pronounced in this age-group. This difference results in treatment delay and an increased risk for perforation, peritonitis, and death.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History taking and tracking the sequence of symptoms are important because nausea or vomiting before abdominal pain can indicate gastroenteritis. Abdominal pain followed by nausea and vomiting can indicate appendicitis. Ask about risk factors such as age, familial tendency, and intra-abdominal tumors. Classically, patients with appendicitis have cramplike pain in the epigastric or periumbilical area. Anorexia is a frequent symptom with nausea and vomiting occurring in many cases.

Perform a complete pain assessment. Initially, pain can present anywhere in the abdomen or flank area. As the inflammation and infection progress, the pain becomes more severe and steady and shifts to the RLQ between the anterior iliac crest and the umbilicus. This area is referred to as **McBurney's point** (Fig. 60-1). *Abdominal pain that increases with cough or movement and is relieved by bending the right hip or the knees suggests perforation and peritonitis.* An advanced practice nurse or other health care provider assesses for muscle rigidity and guarding on palpation of the abdomen. The patient

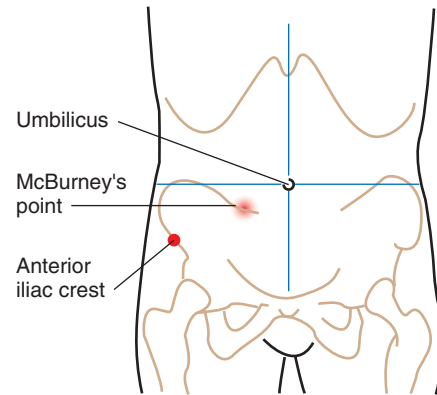


FIG. 60-1 McBurney's point is located midway between the anterior iliac crest and the umbilicus in the right lower quadrant. This is the classic area for localized tenderness during the later stages of appendicitis.

may report pain after release of pressure. This is referred to as "rebound" tenderness.

Laboratory findings do not establish the diagnosis, but often there is a moderate elevation of the white blood cell (WBC) count (leukocytosis) to 10,000 to 18,000/mm³ with a "shift to the left" (an increased number of immature WBCs). A WBC elevation to greater than 20,000/mm³ may indicate a perforated appendix. An ultrasound study may show the presence of an enlarged appendix. If symptoms are recurrent or prolonged, a computed tomography (CT) scan can be used for diagnosis and may reveal the presence of a fecalith.

INTERVENTIONS

All patients with suspected or confirmed appendicitis are hospitalized and examined by a surgeon. When the diagnosis is not clear, the health care team observes the patient before surgical exploration.

Nonsurgical Management

Keep the patient with suspected or known appendicitis on NPO to prepare for the possibility of emergency surgery and to avoid making the inflammation worse.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient with suspected appendicitis, administer IV fluids as prescribed to prevent fluid and electrolyte imbalance and to replace fluid volume. If tolerated, advise the patient to maintain a semi-Fowler's position so that abdominal drainage, if any, can be contained in the lower abdomen. Once the diagnosis of appendicitis is confirmed and surgery is scheduled, administer opioid analgesics and antibiotics as prescribed. *The patient with suspected or confirmed appendicitis should not receive laxatives or enemas, which can cause perforation of the appendix. Heat should never be applied to the abdomen because this may increase circulation to the appendix and result in increased inflammation and perforation!*

Surgical Management

Surgery is required as soon as possible. An **appendectomy** is the removal of the inflamed appendix by one of several surgical approaches. Uncomplicated appendectomy procedures are usually done via laparoscopy. A **laparoscopy** is a

minimally invasive surgical (MIS) procedure with one or more small incisions near the umbilicus through which a small endoscope is placed. Patients having this type of surgery for appendix removal have few postoperative complications. A newer procedure known as *natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery* (NOTES) (e.g., transvaginal endoscopic appendectomy) does not require an external skin incision. In this procedure, the surgeon places the endoscope into the vagina or other orifice and makes a small incision to enter the peritoneal space. Patients having any type of laparoscopic procedures are typically discharged the same day of surgery with less pain and few complications after discharge. Most patients can return to usual activities in 1 to 2 weeks.

If the diagnosis is not definitive but the patient is at high risk for complications from suspected appendicitis, the surgeon may perform an exploratory laparotomy to rule out appendicitis. A **laparotomy** is an open surgical approach with a larger abdominal incision for complicated or atypical appendicitis or peritonitis.

Preoperative teaching is often limited because the patient is in pain or may be transferred quickly to the operating suite for emergency surgery. The patient is prepared for general anesthesia and surgery, as described in [Chapter 16](#). After surgery, care of the patient who has undergone an appendectomy is the same as that required for anyone who has received general anesthesia (see [Chapter 18](#)).

If peritonitis or abscesses are found, wound drains are inserted and a nasogastric tube may be placed to decompress the stomach and prevent abdominal distention. Administer IV antibiotics and opioid analgesics as prescribed. Help the patient out of bed on the evening of surgery to help prevent respiratory complications, such as atelectasis. He or she may be hospitalized for as long as 3 to 5 days and return to normal activity in 4 to 6 weeks.

PERITONITIS

Peritonitis is a life-threatening, acute inflammation of the visceral/parietal peritoneum and endothelial lining of the abdominal cavity. Primary peritonitis is rare and indicates the peritoneum is infected via the bloodstream. This problem is not discussed here.

Pathophysiology

Normally the peritoneal cavity contains about 50 mL of sterile fluid (transudate), which prevents friction in the abdominal cavity during peristalsis. When the peritoneal cavity is contaminated by bacteria, the body first begins an inflammatory reaction walling off a localized area to fight the infection. This local reaction involves vascular dilation and increased capillary permeability, allowing transport of leukocytes and subsequent phagocytosis of the offending organisms. If this walling off process fails, the inflammation spreads and contamination becomes massive, resulting in diffuse (widespread) peritonitis.

Peritonitis is most often caused by contamination of the peritoneal cavity by bacteria or chemicals. Bacteria gain entry into the peritoneum by perforation (from appendicitis, diverticulitis, peptic ulcer disease) or from an external penetrating wound, a gangrenous gallbladder, bowel obstruction, or ascending infection through the genital tract. Less common causes include perforating tumors, leakage or contamination

during surgery, and infection by skin pathogens in patients undergoing continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD). Common bacteria responsible for peritonitis include *Escherichia coli*, *Streptococcus*, *Staphylococcus*, *Pneumococcus*, and *Gonococcus*. Chemical peritonitis results from leakage of bile, pancreatic enzymes, and gastric acid.

When diagnosis and treatment of peritonitis are delayed, blood vessel dilation continues. The body responds to the continuing infectious process by shunting extra blood to the area of inflammation (hyperemia). Fluid is shifted from the extracellular fluid compartment into the peritoneal cavity, connective tissues, and GI tract (“*third spacing*”). This shift of fluid can result in a significant decrease in circulatory volume and *hypovolemic shock*. Severely decreased circulatory volume can result in insufficient perfusion of the kidneys, leading to kidney failure with electrolyte imbalance. Assess for clinical manifestations of these life-threatening problems.

Peristalsis slows or stops in response to severe peritoneal inflammation, and the lumen of the bowel becomes distended with gas and fluid. Fluid that normally flows to the small bowel and the colon for reabsorption accumulates in the intestine in volumes of 7 to 8 L daily. The toxins or bacteria responsible for the peritonitis can also enter the bloodstream from the peritoneal area and lead to bacteremia or **septicemia** (bacterial invasion of the blood).

Respiratory problems can occur as a result of increased abdominal pressure against the diaphragm from intestinal distention and fluid shifts to the peritoneal cavity. Pain can interfere with respirations at a time when the patient has an increased oxygen demand because of the infectious process.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient about abdominal pain, and determine the character of the pain (e.g., cramping, sharp, aching), location of the pain, and whether the pain is localized or generalized. Ask about a history of a low-grade fever or recent spikes in temperature.

Physical findings of peritonitis ([Chart 60-1](#)) depend on several factors: the stage of the disease, the ability of the body to localize the process by walling off the infection, and whether the inflammation has progressed to generalized

CHART 60-1 KEY FEATURES

Peritonitis

- Rigid, boardlike abdomen (classic)
- Abdominal pain (localized, poorly localized, or referred to the shoulder or chest)
- Distended abdomen
- Nausea, anorexia, vomiting
- Diminishing bowel sounds
- Inability to pass flatus or feces
- Rebound tenderness in the abdomen
- High fever
- Tachycardia
- Dehydration from high fever (poor skin turgor)
- Decreased urine output
- Hiccups
- Possible compromise in respiratory status

peritonitis. The patient most often appears acutely ill, lying still, possibly with the knees flexed. Movement is guarded, and he or she may report and show signs of pain (e.g., facial grimacing) with coughing or movement of any type. During inspection, observe for progressive abdominal distention, often seen when the inflammation markedly reduces intestinal motility. Auscultate for bowel sounds, which usually disappear with progression of the inflammation.

The cardinal signs of peritonitis are abdominal pain and tenderness. In the patient with localized peritonitis, the abdomen is tender on palpation in a well-defined area with rebound tenderness in this area. With generalized peritonitis, tenderness is widespread.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients with peritonitis, assess for abdominal wall rigidity, which is a classic finding that is sometimes referred to as a “boardlike” abdomen. Monitor the patient for a high fever because of the infectious process. Assess for tachycardia occurring in response to the fever and decreased circulating blood volume. Observe whether he or she has dry mucous membranes and a low urine output seen with third spacing. Nausea and vomiting may also be present. Hiccups may occur as a result of diaphragmatic irritation. Be sure to document all assessment findings.

White blood cell (WBC) counts are often elevated to 20,000/mm³ with a high neutrophil count. Blood culture studies may be done to determine whether septicemia has occurred and to identify the causative organism to enable appropriate therapy. The health care provider requests laboratory tests to assess fluid and electrolyte balance and renal status, including electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, hemoglobin, and hematocrit. Oxygen saturation and end-carbon dioxide monitoring may be obtained to assess respiratory function and acid-base balance.

Abdominal x-rays can assess for free air or fluid in the abdominal cavity, indicating perforation. The x-rays may also show dilation, edema, and inflammation of the small and large intestines. An abdominal sonogram may be useful in locating the problem.

INTERVENTIONS

Patients with peritonitis are hospitalized because of the severe nature of the illness. If complications are extensive, the patients are often admitted to a critical care unit. Nursing interventions focus on the early identification of complications.

Nonsurgical Management

The physician prescribes IV fluids and broad-spectrum antibiotics immediately after establishing the diagnosis of peritonitis. IV fluids are used to replace fluids collected in the peritoneum and bowel. Monitor daily weight and intake and output carefully. A nasogastric tube (NGT) decompresses the stomach and the intestine, and the patient is NPO. Apply oxygen as prescribed and according to the patient's respiratory status and oxygen saturation via pulse oximetry. Administer analgesics, and monitor for pain control. Document pain assessments thoroughly. A surgical consultation is requested in case surgery should become necessary.

Surgical Management

Abdominal surgery is the usual treatment for identifying and repairing the cause of the peritonitis. If the patient is so critically ill that surgery would be life threatening, it may be delayed. Surgery focuses on controlling the contamination, removing foreign material from the peritoneal cavity, and draining collected fluid.

Exploratory **laparotomy** (surgical opening into the abdomen) or laparoscopy is used to remove or repair the inflamed or perforated organ (e.g., appendectomy for an inflamed appendix; a colon resection, with or without a colostomy, for a perforated diverticulum). Before the incision(s) is closed, the surgeon irrigates the peritoneum with antibiotic solutions. Several catheters may be inserted to drain the cavity and provide a route for irrigation after surgery.

The preoperative care is similar to that described in Chapter 16 for patients having general anesthesia. Chapter 18 describes general postoperative care for exploratory laparotomy. Multi-system complications can occur with peritonitis. Loss of fluids from the extracellular space to the peritoneal cavity, NGT suctioning, and NPO status require that the patient receives IV fluid replacement. Be sure that unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) carefully measure intake and output. Fluid rates may be changed frequently based on laboratory values and patient condition.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Monitor the patient's level of consciousness, vital signs, respiratory status (respiratory rate and breath sounds), and intake and output at least hourly immediately after abdominal surgery. Maintain the patient in a semi-Fowler's position to promote drainage of peritoneal contents into the lower region of the abdominal cavity. This position helps increase lung expansion.

The patient has one or more incisions and drains. If an open surgical procedure is needed, the infection may slow healing of an incision or the incision may be partially open to heal by second or third intention. These wounds require special care involving manual irrigation or packing as prescribed by the surgeon. If the surgeon requests peritoneal irrigation through a drain, *maintain sterile technique during manual irrigation*. Assess whether the patient retains the fluid used for irrigation by comparing the amount of fluid returned with the amount of fluid instilled. Fluid retention could cause abdominal distention or pain.

Community-Based Care

The length of hospitalization depends on the extent and severity of the infectious process. Patients who have a localized abscess drained and who respond to antibiotics and IV fluids without multi-system complications are discharged in several days. Others may require mechanical ventilation or hemodialysis with longer hospital stays. Some patients may be transferred to a transitional care unit to complete their antibiotic therapy and recovery. Convalescence is often longer than for other surgeries because of multi-system involvement.

When discharged home, assess the patient's ability for self-management at home with the added task of incision care and a reduced activity tolerance. Provide the patient and

family with written and oral instructions to report these problems to the health care provider immediately:

- Unusual or foul-smelling drainage
- Swelling, redness, or warmth or bleeding from the incision site
- A temperature higher than 101° F (38° C)
- Abdominal pain
- Signs of wound dehiscence or ileus

Patients with an incision healing by second or third intention may require dressings, solution, and catheter-tipped syringes to irrigate the wound. A home care nurse may be needed to assess, irrigate, or pack the wound and change the dressing as needed until the patient and family feel comfortable with the procedure. If the patient needs assistance with ADLs, a home care aide or temporary placement in a skilled care facility may be indicated. Collaborate with the case manager (CM) to determine the most appropriate setting for seamless continuing care in the community.

Review information about antibiotics and analgesics. For patients taking oral opioid analgesics such as oxycodone with acetaminophen (Tylox, Percocet, Endocet ) for any length of time, a stool softener such as docusate sodium (Colace, Regulax ) may be prescribed. Older adults are especially at risk for constipation from codeine-based drugs.

Teach patients to refrain from any lifting for *at least* 6 weeks. Other activity limitations are made on an individual basis with the physician's recommendation.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

An older adult has a perforated appendix and is scheduled for emergent surgery. What assessment findings will the nurse expect the client to have before surgery? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Bradycardia
- B. Dizziness
- C. Distended abdomen
- D. Fever
- E. Diarrhea
- F. Fistulas
- G. Incontinence

GASTROENTERITIS

Pathophysiology

Gastroenteritis is an increase in the frequency and water content of stools and/or vomiting as a result of inflammation of the mucous membranes of the stomach and intestinal tract. It affects mainly the small bowel and can be caused by either viral or bacterial infections, which have similar manifestations. They are considered self-limiting in their course unless complications occur. All organisms implicated in gastroenteritis can cause diarrhea. However, the organisms discussed in this section have distinguishing characteristics.

Some clinicians include shigellosis when discussing gastroenteritis. Others consider shigellosis separately as a dysentery type of illness. Dysenteries affect the *large* bowel. Gastroenteritis affects the *small* bowel. Other clinicians classify infectious disease of the intestine as bacterial, viral, or parasitic, without using the term *gastroenteritis*.

Food poisoning is sometimes described in conjunction with gastroenteritis with specific reference to the organism causing the food poisoning. Gastroenteritis, however, differs

from food poisoning with regard to transmission in the body, incubation time, and effect on immunity.

The following discussion of gastroenteritis includes the epidemic viral form and the bacterial forms (*Campylobacter*, *Escherichia coli*, and shigellosis) (Table 60-1). Organisms associated with food poisoning are discussed later in this chapter.

Infection with viral and bacterial organisms can produce GI illnesses that cause watery diarrhea. These disorders may be caused by noninflammatory, inflammatory, or penetrating mechanisms. Organisms such as enterotoxigenic *E. coli* can release enterotoxin (a noninflammatory toxic substance specific to the intestinal mucosa), which results in diarrhea. *Shigella* or *Campylobacter* can attach itself to mucosal epithelium without penetrating it, resulting in destruction of the intestinal villi and malabsorption. Infections that are caused by bacterial toxins reduce the absorptive capacity of the distal small bowel and proximal colon, resulting in diarrhea. Finally, the organism can penetrate the intestine, causing cellular destruction, necrosis, and a potential for ulceration. Diarrhea occurs often with white blood cells (WBCs) or red blood cells (RBCs) present in the stool.

All of these organisms are transmitted via the oral-fecal route and result in *increased* GI motility, with fluids and electrolytes being secreted into the intestine at rapid rates. Invading organisms more easily attach to the intestinal mucosa if the normal intestinal flora is altered. This can occur in patients who are receiving antibiotics, are malnourished, or are debilitated. Two groups of viruses, the rotaviruses (which usually affect young children) and Norwalk virus, as well as bacterial pathogens, are the most common causes of

TABLE 60-1 COMMON TYPES OF GASTROENTERITIS AND THEIR CHARACTERISTICS

TYPE	CHARACTERISTICS
Viral Gastroenteritis	
Epidemic viral	Caused by many parvovirus-type organisms Transmitted by the fecal-oral route in food and water Incubation period 10-51 hrs Communicable during acute illness
Rotavirus and Norwalk virus	Transmitted by the fecal-oral route and possibly the respiratory route Incubation in 48 hrs Rotavirus is most common in infants and young children Norwalk virus affects young children and adults
Bacterial Gastroenteritis	
<i>Campylobacter</i> enteritis	Transmitted by the fecal-oral route or by contact with infected animals or infants Incubation period 1-10 days Communicable for 2-7 weeks
<i>Escherichia coli</i> diarrhea	Transmitted by fecal contamination of food, water, or fomites
Shigellosis	Transmitted by direct and indirect fecal-oral routes Incubation period 1-7 days Communicable during the acute illness to 4 wk after the illness Humans possibly carriers for months

gastroenteritis. Rotaviruses can also affect older adults in group settings, such as long-term care facilities.

The three most common types of *bacterial* gastroenteritis are *E. coli* diarrhea (“traveler’s diarrhea”), *Campylobacter* enteritis (another “traveler’s diarrhea”), and *Shigellosis* (bacillary dysentery). The reservoirs of *E. coli* are humans, who are often asymptomatic.

Diarrhea caused by *E. coli* and *Campylobacter* occurs worldwide, commonly in epidemic outbreaks. *E. coli* epidemics are highest in areas of poor sanitation during warm months. *Campylobacter* incidence is highest during warm months. *Shigellosis* occurs in every age-group but most frequently in children (younger than 10 years) and older adults because of their depressed immune systems. Outbreaks of *shigellosis* are common in areas with crowded living conditions, such as in correctional facilities.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient history can provide information related to the potential cause of the illness. Ask about recent travel, especially to tropical regions of Asia, Africa, or Central or South America. Some areas of Mexico may also be the source of gastroenteritis. Newcomers (immigrants) from these countries often have gastroenteritis. Traveler’s diarrhea can begin 3 days to 2 weeks after the patient’s arrival.

The patient who has gastroenteritis usually looks ill. Nausea and vomiting can occur with all types of gastroenteritis but are usually limited to the first 1 or 2 days. Patients have diarrhea, which varies in consistency and amount with the causative organism.

In patients with epidemic viral gastroenteritis, myalgia (muscle aches), headache, and malaise are often reported. Weakness and cardiac dysrhythmias may be the result of loss of potassium (hypokalemia) from diarrhea. Monitor for and document manifestations of hypokalemia.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients with gastroenteritis, note any abdominal distention and listen for hyperactive bowel sounds. Depending on the amount of fluids lost through diarrhea and vomiting, patients may have varying degrees of dehydration manifested by:

- Poor skin turgor
- Fever
- Dry mucous membranes
- Orthostatic blood pressure changes (which can cause falls, especially for older adults)
- Hypotension
- Oliguria

In some cases, dehydration may be severe, and shock may occur if diarrhea is prolonged. *Dehydration occurs rapidly in older adults and may require hospitalization. Monitor mental status changes, such as acute confusion, that result from hypoxia in the older adult. These changes may be the only clinical manifestation of dehydration in older adults.*

Diarrhea associated with epidemic viral gastroenteritis is commonly limited to 24 to 48 hours. Infection with the Norwalk virus has a rapid onset of nausea, abdominal

cramps, vomiting, and diarrhea. This enteritis is usually mild. *Campylobacter* enteritis is a more severe disease with foul-smelling stools containing blood, which can number 20 to 30 per day for up to 7 days. *E. coli* gastroenteritis may or may not have blood or mucus in the stool. Diarrhea can last for up to 10 days. *Shigella* causes stools to have blood and mucus, which can continue for up to 5 days. Monitor for and document the number of stools daily for the patient who is hospitalized.

As part of the laboratory assessment, Gram stain of stool is usually done before culture. Cultures positive for the organism are diagnostic (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Many WBCs on Gram stain suggest shigellosis. The presence of WBCs and RBCs in the stool may indicate *Campylobacter* gastroenteritis.

INTERVENTIONS

For any type of gastroenteritis, encourage fluid replacement. The amount and route of fluid administration are determined by the patient’s hydration status and overall health condition.

Fluid Replacement

Teach patients to drink extra fluids to replace fluid lost through vomiting and diarrhea. Depending on the patient’s age and severity of dehydration, he or she may be admitted to the hospital for gastroenteritis or may stay in the emergency department or urgent care center until adequate hydration is restored.

Obtain a weight, orthostatic blood pressure, and other vital sign measurements at admission. IV fluids such as half-strength normal saline (0.45% sodium chloride) to replace sodium lost in vomitus, with or without potassium supplements, are infused as prescribed. *Potassium is usually needed for patients with excessive diarrhea.* Continue to monitor the patient’s vital signs, intake and output, and weight. A rapid gain or loss of 1 kg (2.2 lbs) of body weight is equivalent to the gain or loss of 1 L of fluid. Advise the patient to alternate periods of rest and activity.

Depending on the type of gastroenteritis, especially if the geographic area is experiencing epidemic infections, the local health department may need to be notified. For example, it is mandatory that every case of shigellosis be reported. In some endemic areas, *Campylobacter* enteritis must be reported.

Drug Therapy

Drugs that suppress intestinal motility may not be given for bacterial or viral gastroenteritis. *Use of these drugs can prevent the infecting organisms from being eliminated from the body.* If the health care provider determines that antiperistaltic agents are necessary, an initial dose of loperamide (Imodium) 4 mg can be administered orally, followed by 2 mg after each loose stool, up to 16 mg daily.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Diphenoxylate hydrochloride with atropine sulfate (Lomotil, Lomanate) reduces GI motility but is used sparingly because of its habit-forming ability. *The drug should not be used for older adults because it also causes drowsiness and could contribute to falls.*

Treatment with antibiotics may be needed if the gastroenteritis is due to bacterial infection with fever and severe diarrhea. Depending on the type and severity of the illness, examples of drugs that may be prescribed include ciprofloxacin (Cipro), levofloxacin (Levaquin), or azithromycin (Zithromax). If the gastroenteritis is due to shigellosis, anti-infective agents such as trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (Septra DS, Bactrim DS, Roubac ) or ciprofloxacin are prescribed.

For relatively short-term diarrhea of 24 to 48 hours' duration, the diagnosis is based primarily on the patient's history and clinical manifestations, not by a stool examination. When diarrhea is severe or persists for long periods, the stool is examined to determine the causative organism and to begin specific treatment. It should be determined whether the diarrhea is caused by *Salmonella* or by parasites because these organisms respond to specific medications (see p. 1289 in the Parasitic Infection section). Diarrhea that continues longer than 10 days, especially if associated with nocturnal diarrhea, is probably *not* due to gastroenteritis.

Skin Care

Frequent stools that are rich in electrolytes and enzymes, as well as frequent wiping and washing of the anal region, can irritate the skin. Teach the patient to avoid toilet paper and harsh soaps. Ideally, he or she can gently clean the area with warm water or an absorbent material, followed by thorough but gentle drying. Cream, oil, or gel can be applied to a damp, warm washcloth to remove stool that sticks to open skin. Special prepared skin wipes can also be used. Protective barrier cream can be applied to the skin between stools. Sitz baths for 10 minutes two or three times daily can also relieve discomfort.

If leakage of stool is a problem, the patient can use absorbent cotton or panty liner and keep it in place with snug underwear. For patients who are incontinent, remind unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to keep the perineal and buttock areas clean and dry. The use of incontinent pads at night instead of briefs allows air to circulate to the skin and prevents irritation.

Teaching for Self-Management

During the acute phase of the illness, teach the patient and family about the importance of fluid replacement. Teaching the patient and family about reducing the risk for transmission of gastroenteritis is also important (Chart 60-2). Adhere to these precautions for up to 7 weeks after the illness or up to several months if *Shigella* was the offending organism.

CHRONIC INFLAMMATORY BOWEL DISEASE

Ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease are the two most common inflammatory bowel diseases (IBDs) that affect adults. Comparisons and differences are listed in Table 60-2. Viral and bacterial dysenteries can cause symptoms similar to those of IBD, and other problems must be ruled out before a definitive diagnosis is made.

The approach to each patient is individualized. Encourage patients to self-manage their disease by learning about the illness, treatment, drugs, and complications.

CHART 60-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing Transmission of Gastroenteritis

Advise the patient to:

- Wash hands well for at least 30 seconds with an antibacterial soap, especially after a bowel movement, and maintain good personal hygiene.
- Restrict the use of glasses, dishes, eating utensils, and tubes of toothpaste for their own use. In severe cases, disposable utensils may be wise.
- Maintain clean bathroom facilities to avoid exposure to stool.
- Inform the health care provider if symptoms persist beyond 3 days.
- Do not prepare or handle food that will be consumed by others. If the patient is employed as a food handler, the public health department should be consulted for recommendations about the return to work.

TABLE 60-2 DIFFERENTIAL FEATURES OF ULCERATIVE COLITIS AND CROHN'S DISEASE

FEATURE	ULCERATIVE COLITIS	CROHN'S DISEASE
Location	Begins in the rectum and proceeds in a continuous manner toward the cecum	Most often in the terminal ileum, with patchy involvement through all layers of the bowel
Etiology	Unknown	Unknown
Peak incidence at age	15-25 yr and 55-65 yr	15-40 yr
Number of stools	10-20 liquid, bloody stools per day	5-6 soft, loose stools per day, non-bloody
Complications	Hemorrhage Nutritional deficiencies	Fistulas (common) Nutritional deficiencies
Need for surgery	Infrequent	Frequent

ULCERATIVE COLITIS

Pathophysiology

Ulcerative colitis (UC) creates widespread inflammation of mainly the rectum and rectosigmoid colon but can extend to the entire colon when the disease is extensive. Distribution of the disease can remain constant for years. UC is a disease that is associated with periodic remissions and exacerbations (flare-ups) (McCance et al., 2010). Many factors can cause exacerbations, including intestinal infections.

The intestinal mucosa becomes hyperemic (has increased blood flow), edematous, and reddened. In more severe inflammation, the lining can bleed and small erosions, or ulcers, occur. Abscesses can form in these ulcerative areas and result in tissue necrosis (cell death). Continued edema and mucosal thickening can lead to a narrowed colon and possibly a partial bowel obstruction. Table 60-3 lists the categories of the severity of UC.

The patient's stool typically contains blood and mucus. Patients report **tenesmus** (an unpleasant and urgent sensation to defecate) and lower abdominal colicky pain relieved with defecation. Malaise, anorexia, anemia, dehydration,

TABLE 60-3 AMERICAN COLLEGE OF GASTROENTEROLOGISTS CLASSIFICATION OF UC SEVERITY

SEVERITY	STOOL FREQUENCY	SIGNS/SYMPTOMS
Mild	<4 stools/day with/without blood	Asymptomatic Laboratory values usually normal
Moderate	>4 stools/day with/without blood	Minimal symptoms Mild abdominal pain Mild intermittent nausea Possible increased C-reactive protein* or ESR†
Severe	>6 bloody stools/day	Fever Tachycardia Anemia Abdominal pain Elevated C-reactive protein* and/or ESR†
Fulminant	>10 bloody stools/day	Increasing symptoms Anemia may require transfusion Colonic distention on x-ray

Adapted from Present, D.H. (2006). *Current and investigational approaches in the management of ulcerative colitis*. Secaucus, NJ: Thomson Professional Postgraduate Services/Shire Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

UC, Ulcerative colitis.

*C-reactive protein is a sensitive acute-phase serum marker that is evident in the first 6 hours of an inflammatory process.

†ESR (erythrocyte sedimentation rate) may be helpful but is less sensitive than C-reactive protein.

fever, and weight loss are common. Extraintestinal manifestations such as migratory polyarthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, and erythema nodosum are present in a large number of patients. The common complications of UC, including extraintestinal manifestations, are listed in Table 60-4.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The exact cause of UC is unknown, but genetic and immunologic factors have been suspected. A genetic basis of the disease has been supported because it is often found in families and twins. Immunologic causes, including autoimmune dysfunction, are likely the etiology of extraintestinal manifestations of the disease. Epithelial antibodies in the IgG class have been identified in the blood of some patients with UC (McCance et al., 2010).

With long-term disease, cellular changes can occur that increase the risk for colon cancer. Damage from proinflammatory cytokines, such as specific interleukins (e.g., IL-1, IL-6, IL-8) and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha, have cytotoxic effects on the colonic mucosa (McCance et al., 2010).

Incidence/Prevalence

Chronic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) affects about 1.4 million people in the United States and is split about equally between ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease

TABLE 60-4 COMPLICATIONS OF ULCERATIVE COLITIS AND CROHN'S DISEASE

COMPLICATION	DESCRIPTION
Hemorrhage/perforation	Lower gastrointestinal bleeding results from erosion of the bowel wall.
Abscess formation	Localized pockets of infection develop in the ulcerated bowel lining.
Toxic megacolon	Paralysis of the colon causes dilation and subsequent colonic ileus, possibly perforation.
Malabsorption	Essential nutrients cannot be absorbed through the diseased intestinal wall, causing anemia and malnutrition (most common in Crohn's disease).
Nonmechanical bowel obstruction	Obstruction results from toxic megacolon or cancer.
Fistulas	In Crohn's disease in which the inflammation is transmural, fistulas can occur anywhere but usually track between the bowel and bladder resulting in pyuria and fecaluria.
Colorectal cancer	Patients with ulcerative colitis with a history longer than 10 years have a high risk for colorectal cancer. This complication accounts for about one third of all deaths related to ulcerative colitis.
Extraintestinal complications	Complications include arthritis, hepatic and biliary disease (especially cholelithiasis), oral and skin lesions, and ocular disorders, such as iritis. The cause is unknown.
Osteoporosis	Osteoporosis occurs especially in patients with Crohn's disease.

(discussed later). Peak age for being diagnosed with UC is between 30 and 40 years and again at 55 to 65 years. Women are more often affected than men in their younger years, but men have the disease more often as middle-aged and older adults (Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of America, 2008).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Collect data on family history of IBD, previous and current therapy for the illness, and dates and types of surgery. Obtain a nutrition history, including intolerance of milk and milk products and fried, spicy, or hot foods. Ask about usual bowel elimination pattern (color, number, consistency, and character of stools), abdominal pain, tenesmus, anorexia, and fatigue. Note any relationship between diarrhea, timing of meals, emotional distress, and activity. Inquire about recent (past 2 to 3 month) exposure to antibiotics suggesting *Clostridium difficile* infection. Has the patient traveled to or emigrated from tropical areas? Ask about recent use of NSAIDs that can either present with the initial diagnosis or cause a flare-up of the disease. Ask about any extraintestinal symptoms such as arthritis, mouth sores, vision problems, and skin disorders.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Ulcerative colitis is more common among Jewish persons than among those who are not Jewish, and among whites more than non-whites (Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of America, 2008). The reasons for these cultural differences are not known.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Symptoms vary with an acuteness of onset. Vital signs are usually within normal limits in mild disease. In more severe cases, the patient may have a low-grade fever (99° to 100° F [37.2° to 37.8° C]). The physical assessment findings are usually nonspecific, and in milder cases the physical examination may be normal. Viral and bacterial infections cause symptoms similar to those of UC.

Note any abdominal distention along the colon. Patients with fever associated with tachycardia may indicate peritonitis, dehydration, and bowel perforation. Assess for clinical manifestations associated with extraintestinal complications, such as inflamed joints and lesions inside the mouth.

Psychosocial Assessment

Many patients are very concerned about the frequency of stools and the presence of blood. *The inability to control the disease symptoms, particularly diarrhea, can be disruptive and stress producing.* Severe illness may limit the patient's activities outside the home with fear of fecal incontinence resulting in feeling "tied to the toilet." Severe anxiety and depression may result. Eating may be associated with pain and cramping and an increased frequency of stools. Mealtimes may become unpleasant experiences. Frequent visits to health care providers and close monitoring of the colon mucosa for abnormal cell changes can be anxiety provoking.

Assess the patient's understanding of the illness and its impact on his or her lifestyle. Encourage and support the patient while exploring:

- The relationship of life events to disease exacerbations
- Stress factors that produce symptoms
- Family and social support systems
- Concerns regarding the possible genetic basis and associated cancer risks of the disease
- Internet access for reliable education information

Laboratory Assessment

As a result of chronic blood loss, hematocrit and hemoglobin levels may be low, which indicates anemia and a chronic disease state. *An increased WBC count, C-reactive protein, or erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) is consistent with inflammatory disease.* Blood levels of sodium, potassium, and chloride may be low as a result of frequent diarrheal stools and malabsorption through the diseased bowel (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Hypoalbuminemia (decreased serum albumin) is found in patients with extensive disease from losing protein in the stool.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

A colonoscopy is the most definitive test for diagnosing UC. Annual colonoscopies are recommended when the patient has longer than a 10-year history of UC involving the entire colon. In some cases, a *computed tomography (CT) scan* may be done to confirm the disease or its complications. *Barium enemas* with air contrast can show differences between UC and Crohn's disease and identify complications, mucosal patterns, and the distribution and depth of disease involvement. In early disease, the barium enema may show incomplete filling as a result of inflammation and fine ulcerations along the bowel contour, which appear deeper in more advanced disease.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with ulcerative colitis are:

1. Diarrhea and incontinence related to inflammation of the bowel mucosa
2. Pain related to inflammation and ulceration of the bowel mucosa and skin irritation
3. Potential for lower GI bleeding and resulting anemia

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Decreasing Diarrhea and Bowel Incontinence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The major concern for a patient with ulcerative colitis is the occurrence of frequent, bloody diarrhea and fecal incontinence from tenesmus. Therefore, with treatment, the patient is expected to have decreased diarrhea, formed stools, and control of bowel movements.

Interventions. Many measures are used to relieve symptoms and to reduce intestinal motility, decrease inflammation, and promote intestinal healing. Nonsurgical and/or surgical management may be needed.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management includes drug and nutrition therapy. The use of physical and emotional rest is also an important consideration. Teach the patient to record color, volume, frequency, and consistency of stools to determine severity of the problem.

Monitor the skin in the perianal area for irritation and ulceration resulting from loose, frequent stools. Stool cultures may be sent for analysis if diarrhea continues. Have the patient weigh himself or herself one or two times per week. If the patient is hospitalized, remind unlicensed assistive personnel to weigh him or her on admission and daily and document all weights.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is caring for a client with an exacerbation of ulcerative colitis. Which laboratory finding for the client will the nurse expect?

- A. Decreased erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- B. Decreased serum potassium
- C. Decreased C-reactive protein
- D. Decreased platelet count

Drug Therapy. Common drug therapy for UC includes aminosaliclates, glucocorticoids, antidiarrheal drugs, and immunomodulators. Teach patients about side effects and adverse drug events (ADEs) and when to call their health care provider.

The *aminosalicylates* are drugs commonly used to treat mild to moderate UC and/or maintain remission. Several aminosaliclic acid compounds are available. These drugs, also called 5-ASAs, are thought to have an anti-inflammatory effect by inhibiting prostaglandins and are usually effective in 2 to 4 weeks.

Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine, Azulfidine EN-tabs), the first aminosaliclate approved for UC, is metabolized by the intestinal bacteria into 5-ASA, which delivers the beneficial effects of the drug, and sulfapyridine, which is responsible for unwanted side effects.

Mesalamine (Asacol, Pentasa, Rowasa, Apriso, Canasa) is better tolerated than sulfasalazine because none of its

TABLE 60-5 RECOMMENDED DOSES FOR 5-ASA MEDICATIONS

GENERIC NAME	TRADE NAME	DOSAGE AVAILABLE	RECOMMENDED DOSE
Sulfasalazine	Azulfidine	500 mg tablets	3-4 g daily in divided doses
	Azulfidine En-tabs		Children >2 yr: 30 mg/kg/day not to exceed 2 g/day
	Azulfidine oral suspension (50 mg/mL)	250 mg/5 mL liquid	
Mesalamine	Asacol	400 mg tablets	800 mg three times daily
	Pentasa	500 mg tablets	1 g four times daily
	Rowasa enemas	4 g/60 mL	At bedtime
	Rowasa suppository	1000 mg/supp	Twice daily or at bedtime
Olsalazine (rarely used)	Dipentum	250 mg tablets	1 g daily in two divided doses
Balsalazide	Colazal	750 mg tablets	3 tablets three times daily

5-ASA, 5-aminosalicylic acid.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients taking sulfasalazine to report nausea, vomiting, anorexia, rash, and headache to the health care provider. With higher doses, hemolytic anemia, hepatitis, male infertility, or agranulocytosis can occur. This drug is in the same family as sulfonamide antibiotics. Therefore assess the patient for an allergy to sulfonamide or other drugs that contain sulfur *before* the patient takes the drug. The use of a thiazide diuretic is also a contraindication for sulfasalazine.

preparations contain sulfapyridine. Asacol is an enteric-coated drug and is released in the terminal ileum and right side of the colon. Pentasa and Apriso are delayed- and extended-release drugs that work throughout the colon and rectum. Rowasa can be given as an enema, and Canasa can be given as a suppository. These preparations have minimal systemic absorption and therefore have fewer side effects. Table 60-5 lists commonly used 5-ASA drugs.

Glucocorticoids, such as prednisone and prednisolone, are corticosteroid therapies prescribed during exacerbations of the disease. Prednisone (Deltasone, Winpred) 40 to 65 mg daily is typically prescribed, but the dose may be increased as acute flare-ups occur. Once clinical improvement occurs, the corticosteroids are tapered because of the adverse effects that commonly occur with long-term steroid therapy (e.g., hyperglycemia, osteoporosis, peptic ulcer disease, increased risk for infection). For patients with rectal symptoms, topical steroids in the form of small retention enemas may be prescribed.

To provide symptomatic management of diarrhea, **antidiarrheal drugs** may be prescribed. These drugs are given very cautiously, however, because they can cause colon dilation and toxic megacolon. Common antidiarrheal drugs include diphenoxylate hydrochloride and atropine sulfate (Lomotil) and loperamide (Imodium).

Immunomodulators are drugs that alter a person's immune response. Alone, they are often not effective in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. However, in combination with steroids, they may offer a synergistic effect to a quicker response, thereby decreasing the amount of steroids needed. Immunosuppressants used with UC (and Crohn's disease, discussed later in this chapter) include infliximab (Remicade) and adalimumab (Humira).

Although not approved as a first-line therapy for ulcerative colitis, **infliximab** (Remicade) may be used for refractory disease or for severe complications, such as **toxic megacolon** (massive dilation of the colon that can lead to gangrene and

peritonitis) and extraintestinal manifestations. Remicade is an immunoglobulin G (IgG) monoclonal antibody that reduces the activity of tumor necrosis factor (TNF) to decrease inflammation. Adalimumab (Humira) is another monoclonal antibody approved for refractory (not responsive to other therapies) cases. They are used more commonly in management of Crohn's disease. These drugs cause immunosuppression and should be used with caution. Teach the patient to report any signs of a beginning infection, including a cold, and to avoid large crowds or others who are sick.

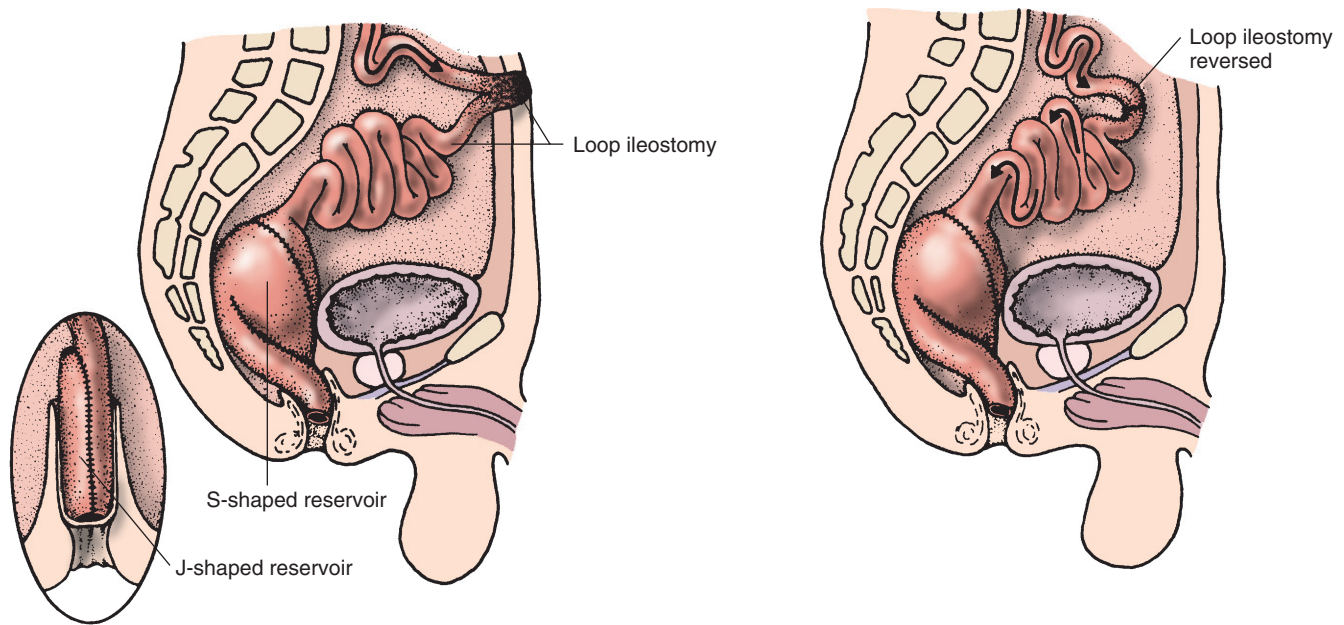
Nutrition Therapy and Rest. Patients with severe symptoms are kept NPO to ensure bowel rest. The physician may prescribe total parenteral nutrition (TPN) for severely ill and malnourished patients during severe exacerbations. Chapter 63 describes this therapy in detail. Patients with less severe symptoms may drink elemental formulas such as Vivonex PLUS or Vivonex T.E.N, which are absorbed in the small bowel and reduce bowel stimulation.

Diet is not a major factor in the inflammatory process, but some patients with ulcerative colitis (UC) find that caffeine and alcohol increase diarrhea and cramping. For some patients, raw vegetables and other high-fiber foods can cause GI symptoms. Lactose-containing foods may be poorly tolerated and should be reduced or eliminated. Teach patients that carbonated beverages, pepper, nuts and corn, dried fruits, and smoking are common GI stimulants that could cause discomfort. Each patient differs in their food and fluid tolerances.

During an exacerbation of the disease, activity is generally restricted because rest can reduce intestinal activity, provide comfort, and promote healing. Ensure that the patient has easy access to a bedpan, bedside commode, or bathroom in case of urgency or tenesmus.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. In addition to dietary changes, complementary and alternative therapies may be used to supplement traditional management of ulcerative colitis. Examples include herbs (e.g., flaxseed), selenium, and vitamin C. Biofeedback, hypnosis, yoga, acupuncture, and ayurveda (a combination of diet, yoga, herbs, and breathing exercises) may also be helpful. These therapies need further study to validate their effectiveness, but some patients find them helpful.

Surgical Management. Some patients with ulcerative colitis require surgery to help manage their disease when medical therapies alone are not effective. In some cases, surgery is performed for complications of UC such as toxic megacolon, hemorrhage, dysplastic biopsy results, and colon cancer.

**Stage 1.**

After removal of the colon, a temporary loop ileostomy is created and an ileo-anal reservoir is formed. The reservoir is created in an S-shaped reservoir (using three loops of ileum) or a J-shaped reservoir (suturing a portion of ileum to the rectal cuff, with an upward loop).

Stage 2.

After the reservoir has had time to heal—usually several months—the temporary loop ileostomy is reversed and stool is allowed to drain into the reservoir.

FIG. 60-2 The creation of an ileo-anal reservoir.

Preoperative Care. General preoperative teaching related to abdominal surgery is described in [Chapter 16](#). If a temporary or permanent ileostomy is planned, provide an in-depth explanation to the patient and family. An **ileostomy** is a procedure in which a loop of the ileum is placed through the abdominal wall (**stoma**) for drainage of fecal material into a pouching system worn on the abdomen. The external pouching system consists of a solid skin barrier (wafer) to protect the skin and a fecal collection device (pouch), similar to the system used for patients with colostomies (discussed in [Chapter 61](#)).

If an ileostomy is planned, the surgeon consults with a certified wound, ostomy, continence nurse (CWCN) or enterostomal therapist (ET) (sometimes called an *ostomy nurse*) before surgery for recommendations on the best location of the stoma. A visit from an **ostomate** (a patient with an ostomy) may be helpful before surgery. Parenteral antibiotics are given within 1 hour of surgical opening based on current best evidence and per The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals.

In the past, patients have been required to follow a bowel preparation process before surgery using laxatives, enemas, and/or oral antibiotics to cleanse the bowel of normal flora to help reduce the risk for infection. Current research indicates that mechanical (enemas) and antibiotic bowel preparation does not affect the incidence of surgical site infections and is therefore not typically required (Howard et al., 2009).

Operative Procedures. Any one of several surgical approaches may be used for the patient with UC. Minimally invasive procedures, such as laparoscopic, laparoscopic-assisted, hand-assisted, and robotic-assisted surgery, are

becoming common for patients with ulcerative colitis in large tertiary care centers (Kessler et al., 2011). Laparoscopic surgery usually involves one or several small incisions but often takes longer to perform than the open surgical approach. A newer procedure, natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES), can be performed via the anus or vagina for select patients. Patients may have moderate sedation or general anesthesia for minimally invasive surgical procedures and are often *not* admitted to critical care units for continuing postoperative care.

Patients who are obese, have had previous abdominal surgeries, or have dense scar tissue (adhesions) may not be candidates for laparoscopic procedures. The conventional open surgical approach involves an abdominal incision and is done under general anesthesia. Patients with open procedures are typically admitted to critical care units for stabilization.

Restorative Proctocolectomy with Ileo Pouch–Anal Anastomosis (RPC-IPAA). This procedure has become the gold standard for patients with UC. In some centers, the surgery is performed via laparoscopy (laparoscopic RPC-IPAA). It is usually a two-stage procedure that *first* includes the removal of the colon and most of the rectum ([Fig. 60-2](#)). The anus and anal sphincter remain intact. The surgeon surgically creates an internal pouch (reservoir) using the last 1½ feet of the small intestine. The pouch, sometimes called a *J-pouch*, *S-pouch*, or *pelvic pouch*, is then connected to the anus. A temporary ileostomy through the abdominal skin is created to allow healing of the internal pouch and all anastomosis sites. It also allows for an increase in the capacity of the internal pouch. In the *second* surgical stage, the loop ileostomy is closed. The time interval between the first and second stage varies, but

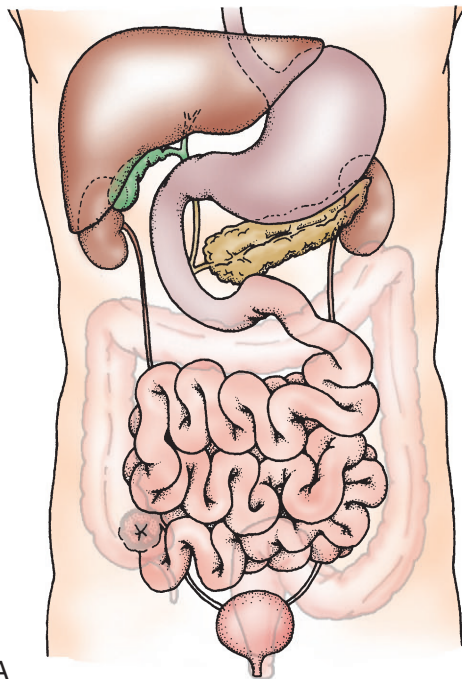


FIG. 60-3 A, Total proctocolectomy with a permanent ileostomy. This involved removal of the colon, the rectum, and the anus with closure of the anus. Note the missing colon, rectum, and anus with the resultant stoma (**B**) in the right lower quadrant.

many patients have the second surgical stage to close the ileostomy within 1 to 2 months of the first surgery.

Usually bowel continence is excellent after this procedure, but some patients have leakage of stool during sleep. They may take antidiarrheal drugs to help control this problem.

Total Proctocolectomy with a Permanent Ileostomy. Total proctocolectomy with a permanent ileostomy is done for patients who are not candidates or do not want the ileo-anal pouch. The procedure involves the removal of the colon, rectum, and anus with surgical closure of the anus (Fig. 60-3, A). The surgeon brings the end of the ileum out through the abdominal wall and forms a stoma, or **ostomy**.

With an ileostomy, initially after surgery the output is a loose, dark green liquid that may contain some blood. Over time, a process called “ileostomy adaptation” occurs. The small intestine begins to perform some of the functions that had previously been done by the colon, including the

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The ileostomy stoma (Fig. 60-3, B) is usually placed in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen below the belt line. It should not be prolapsed or retract into the abdominal wall. Assess the stoma frequently. It should be pinkish to cherry red to ensure an adequate blood supply. If the stoma looks pale, bluish, or dark, report these findings to the health care provider immediately!

absorption of increased amounts of sodium and water. Stool volume decreases, becomes thicker (pastelike), and turns yellow-green or yellow-brown. The effluent (fluid material) usually has little odor or a sweet odor. Any foul or unpleasant odor may be a symptom of a problem such as blockage or infection.

The ostomy drains frequently, and the stool is irritating. *The patient must wear a pouch system at all times.* The stool from the small intestine contains many enzymes and bile salts, which can quickly irritate and excoriate the skin. *Skin care around the stoma is a priority!* A pouch system with a skin barrier (gelatin or pectin) provides sufficient protection for most patients. Other products are also available.

Postoperative Care. Provide general postoperative care after surgery, as described in Chapter 18. All patients requiring open approach surgery for ulcerative colitis have a large abdominal incision. At first, most patients are NPO and a nasogastric tube (NGT) is used for suction. The tube is removed in 1 to 2 days as the drainage decreases, and fluids and food are slowly introduced. The patient having minimally invasive surgery (MIS) usually does not have an NGT.

In collaboration with the ostomy nurse, help the patient adjust and learn the required care. The ileostomy begins to drain within 24 hours after surgery at more than 1 L per day. Be sure that fluids are replaced by adding an additional 500 mL or more each day to prevent dehydration. After about a week of high-volume output, the drainage slows and becomes thicker. During this period, some patients need antidiarrheal drugs.

The hospital stay is usually from 2 to 5 days, depending on whether the patient has laparoscopic or conventional open surgery. Patients having MIS have less pain from surgery and faster restoration of bowel function when compared with other surgical patients, but the incidence of complications is about the same (Fajardo et al., 2010).

For those who have the RPC-IPAA procedure, remind them that the internal pouch can become inflamed. This problem is usually effectively treated with metronidazole (Flagyl) for 7 to 10 days. Teach patients that after the second stage of surgery, they might have burning during bowel elimination because gastric acid cannot be well absorbed by the ileum. Also instruct them to omit foods that can cause odors or gas, such as cabbage, asparagus, and beans. Teach patients to eliminate foods that cannot be well digested, such as nuts and corn. Each patient differs in which foods he or she can tolerate.

Surgery for UC may result in altered body image. However, it may be viewed as positive because the patient will have fewer symptoms and feel more comfortable than before the procedure. Patients have to adjust to having an ostomy before they can resume their presurgery activities.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The health care provider prescribes sulfasalazine (Azulfidine) for a client with ulcerative colitis. What nursing action is most important before the client begins the medication?

- Determine if the client's insurance pays for the drug.
- Ask the client if he smokes or drinks alcohol.
- Ask the client if he has any allergies to sulfa-type drugs.
- Teach the client the importance of avoiding crowds.

Minimizing Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The desired outcome for the patient is that he or she will verbalize decreased pain as a result of evidence-based pain management collaborative interventions.

Interventions. Pain control requires pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic measures. Physical discomfort can contribute to emotional distress. A variety of symptom-reducing interventions and supportive measures are used. Surgery also reduces pain for many patients.

The purpose of pain management is alleviation of pain or a reduction in pain to a level of comfort that is acceptable to the patient. Increases in pain may indicate the development of complications such as peritonitis (see earlier discussion in this chapter). Assist the patient in reducing or eliminating factors that can cause or increase the pain experience. For example, he or she may benefit from nutrition changes to decrease abdominal discomfort such as cramping and bloating.

Antidiarrheal drugs may be needed to control diarrhea, thus reducing the discomfort. However, they must be used with caution and for a short time because toxic megacolon can develop.

Perineal skin can be irritated by contact with loose stools and frequent cleaning. Explain special measures for skin care. Use of medicated wipes is soothing if the rectal area is tender or sensitive from the use of toilet tissue (Chart 60-3). Various manufacturers of ostomies (Hollister, ConvaTec) produce a system for skin care that may help prevent and heal perineal skin irritation. These systems usually include a skin-cleaning solution, a moisturizing and healing cream, and a petroleum jelly-like barrier that prevents contact of moisture and stool with the skin.

Monitoring for Lower GI Bleeding

Planning: Expected Outcomes. For patients who experience GI bleeding, the patient with UC is expected to have a reduction in or cessation of bleeding with prompt collaborative care. If possible, patients are expected to remain free of complications of the disease that can cause bleeding, such as perforation.

Interventions. The primary nursing priority is to monitor the patient closely for signs and symptoms of GI bleeding resulting from the disease or its complications.

If the patient has lower GI bleeding of more than 0.5 mL per minute, a GI bleeding scan may be useful to localize the site of the bleeding (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). This test cannot indicate the cause of the bleeding, however, and may take several hours to administer. Patients in the critical care unit are not candidates for the test because they must leave the unit for the test.

CHART 60-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Pain Control and Skin Care for Patients with Inflammatory Bowel Disease

PATIENT PROBLEM	INTERVENTIONS
Abdominal pain (particularly with exacerbations of the disease)	Administer analgesics. Assist with frequent positioning. Identify foods that increase pain. Perform a comprehensive pain assessment. Observe for signs and symptoms of peritonitis. Evaluate effectiveness of pain management. Teach music therapy, guided imagery.
Skin excoriation and/or irritation from frequent bowel movements	Encourage good skin care with a mild soap and water after each bowel movement. Gently pat the area dry. Identify foods that increase diarrhea. Sitz baths may be of benefit. Apply a thin coat of A+D Ointment or aloe cream. Use medicated wipes instead of tissue. Ensure appropriate ostomy supplies that fit well. Antidiarrheal medications may help, but use with caution. Observe for symptoms related to megacolon (fever, leukocytosis, tachycardia, distended abdomen with 3-view abdominal x-ray noting an enlarged colon).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient with ulcerative colitis, monitor stools for blood loss. The blood may be bright red (frank bleeding) or black and tarry (**melena**). Monitor hematocrit, hemoglobin, and electrolyte values, and assess vital signs. Prolonged slow bleeding can lead to anemia. Observe for fever, tachycardia, and signs of fluid volume depletion. Changes in mental status may occur, especially among older adults, and may be the first indication of dehydration or anemia.

If symptoms of GI bleeding begin, notify the health care provider immediately. Blood products are often prescribed for patients with severe anemia. Prepare for the blood transfusion by inserting a large-bore IV catheter if it is not already in place. Chapter 42 outlines nursing actions during blood transfusion.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

The patient with ulcerative colitis provides self-management at home but usually requires hospitalization during severe exacerbations and surgery. In addition, those who have extraintestinal problems often need ongoing collaborative care for joint and/or skin problems.

Home care management focuses on controlling clinical manifestations and monitoring for complications. For patients returning home or transferring to nursing home or transitional care after surgery, ongoing respiratory care, incision care (if applicable), ostomy care, and pain management should be continued.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient about the nature of ulcerative colitis, including its acute episodes, remissions, and symptom management. Also stress that even though the cause is unknown, relapses

can be resolved with proper health care. Teach patients taking immunosuppressive drugs, such as corticosteroids and monoclonal antibodies, to report signs of possible infection, such as sore throat, to the health care provider. Remind them to avoid crowds and anyone who has an infection. Review the purpose of drug therapy, when drugs should be taken, side effects, and adverse drug events. Any signs and symptoms of an infection need to be reported to the health care provider.

Instruct the patient about measures to reduce or control abdominal pain, cramping, and diarrhea. Also teach the patient and family about symptoms associated with disease exacerbation that should be reported to the health care provider, such as fever higher than 101° F (38° C), tachycardia, palpitations, and an increase in diarrhea, abdominal pain, or nausea/vomiting. Provide written information and contact numbers for the health care provider.

There is no special diet for a patient with an ileostomy. However, teach the patient to avoid any foods that cause gas or make the stool thicker. Examples include high-fiber foods like nuts, raw cabbage, corn, celery, apples with peels, and popcorn. The patient needs to learn what foods he or she tolerates best and adjust the diet accordingly.

If he or she has undergone a temporary or permanent surgical diversion, collaborate with the ostomy nurse to explain and demonstrate required care so that the patient can self-manage. Also teach the importance of including adequate amounts of salt and water in the diet because the ileostomy increases the loss of these substances. Urge the patient to be cautious in situations that lead to heavy sweating or fluid loss, such as strenuous physical activity, high environmental heat, and episodes of diarrhea and vomiting.

Finding the best ostomy pouching system is a major issue for many patients. An effective system is one that:

- Protects the skin
- Contains the effluent (drainage) and reduces odor, if any
- Remains securely attached to the skin for a dependable period of time

Most patients desire an adhesive barrier that will last for 3 to 7 days. The barrier must create a solid seal to prevent the enzymes in the drainage from irritating the skin. Solid barriers are classified as “regular wear” or “extended wear.” A person with a high output may want an extended-wear barrier. A special cream can be used to help fill any uneven skin surfaces and provide a consistent seal. Pouches are also individualized by the patient. Large pouches can hold more but are heavy when full. Patients also have to consider the costs of the various systems and how much their insurance (if they have it) will pay for them. [Chart 60-4](#) describes the main aspects of ileostomy care, including skin care.

A patient with an ileostomy may have many concerns about management at home and about sexual and social adjustments. Considering possible sexual issues helps the patient identify and discuss these concerns with the sex partner. For example, a change in positioning during intercourse may alleviate apprehension. Social situations may cause anxiety related to decreased self-esteem and a disturbance in body image. Encourage the patient to discuss possible concerns in addressing and resolving these potentially stressful events. Clinical depression is common among patients with ulcerative colitis. Refer patients to appropriate mental health resources if depression is suspected.

CHART 60-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Ileostomy Care

Skin Protection

- Use a skin barrier to protect your skin from contact with contents from the ostomy.
- Use skin care products, such as skin sealants and ostomy skin creams. If your skin continues to come into contact with ostomy contents, select a product to fill in problem areas and provide an even skin surface.
- Watch your skin for any irritation or redness.

Pouch Care

- Empty your pouch when it is one-third to one-half full.
- Change the pouch during inactive times, such as before meals, before retiring at night, on waking in the morning, and 2 to 4 hours after eating.
- Change the entire pouch system every 3 to 7 days.

Nutrition

- Chew food thoroughly.
- Be cautious of high-fiber and high-cellulose foods. You may need to eliminate these from the diet if they cause severe problems (diarrhea, constipation, or blockage). Examples include corn, peanuts, coconut, Chinese vegetables, string beans, tough-fiber meats, shrimp and lobster, rice, bran, and vegetables with skins (tomatoes, corn, and peas).

Drug Therapy

- Avoid taking enteric-coated and capsule medications.
- Inform any health care provider who is prescribing medications for you that you have an ostomy. Before having prescriptions filled, inform your pharmacist that you have an ostomy.
- Do not take any laxative or enemas. You should usually have loose stool and should contact a physician if no stool has passed in 6 to 12 hours.

Symptoms to Watch for

- Report any drastic increase or decrease in drainage to your health care provider.
- If stomal swelling, abdominal cramping, or distention occurs or if ileostomy contents stop draining:
 - Remove the pouch with faceplate.
 - Lie down, assuming a knee-chest position.
 - Begin abdominal massage.
 - Apply moist towels to the abdomen.
 - Drink hot tea.
- If none of these maneuvers is effective in resuming ileostomy flow or if abdominal pain is severe, call your health care provider right away.

Health Care Resources

If the patient needs assistance with self-management at home, collaborate with the case manager or social worker to arrange the services of a home care aide or nurse. A home care nurse can provide assessment and guidance in integrating ostomy care into the patient's lifestyle. The nurse may also teach about wound care, including the monitoring of wound healing, if needed ([Chart 60-5](#)). The patient and family need to know where to purchase ostomy supplies, along with the name, size, and manufacturer's order number.

For patients with a permanent ileostomy, locate a community ostomy support group by contacting the United Ostomy Associations of America (www.uoaa.org). The United

Ostomy Association of Canada serves the needs of Canadian patients (www.ostomycanada.ca). A local support group or the Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of America (www.cdfa.org) may be helpful in obtaining supplies and providing education for ostomates. Inform the patient and family of available ostomy ambulatory care clinics and ostomy specialists. If the patient agrees, a visit from an ostomate can be continued after discharge to home.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with ulcerative colitis based on the identified priority patient problems. Expected outcomes may include that the patient will:

- Verbalize decreased pain
- Gain control over bowel elimination

CHART 60-5 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Assess gastrointestinal function and nutritional status, including:

- Abdominal cramping or pain
- Bowel elimination pattern, specifically frequency, characteristics, and amount of stools and presence or absence of blood in stools
- Food and fluid intake (include relationship of specific foods to cramping and stools)
- Weight gain or loss
- Signs and symptoms of dehydration
- Presence or absence of fever, rectal tenesmus, or urgency
- Bowel sounds
- Condition of perianal skin, including presence or absence of perianal fistula or abscess

Assess patient's and family's coping skills, including:

- Current and ongoing stress level and coping style
- Availability of support system

Assess home environment, including:

- Adequacy and availability of bathroom facilities
- Opportunity for rest and relaxation

Assess ability to self-manage therapeutic regimen, including:

- Drug therapy
- Signs and symptoms to report
- Nutrition therapy
- Availability of community resources
- Importance of follow-up care

- Not experience lower GI bleeding
- Self-manage the ileostomy (temporary or permanent)
- Maintain peristomal skin integrity
- Demonstrate behaviors that integrate ostomy care into his or her lifestyle if a permanent ileostomy is performed

CROHN'S DISEASE

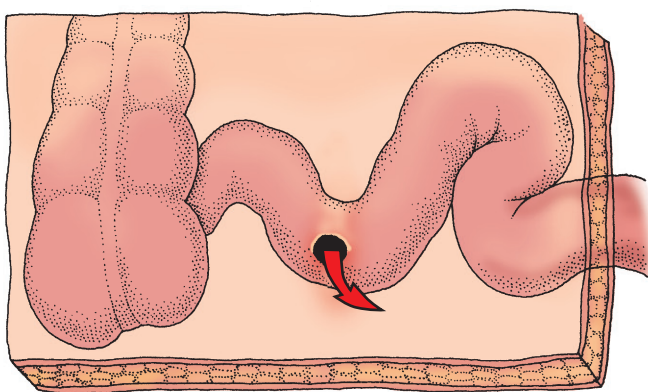
Pathophysiology

Crohn's disease (CD) is an inflammatory disease of the small intestine (most often), the colon, or both. It can affect the GI tract from the mouth to the anus but most commonly affects the terminal ileum. CD is a slowly progressive and unpredictable disease with involvement of multiple regions of the intestine with normal sections in between (called "skip lesions" on x-rays). Like ulcerative colitis (UC), this disease is recurrent with remissions and exacerbations.

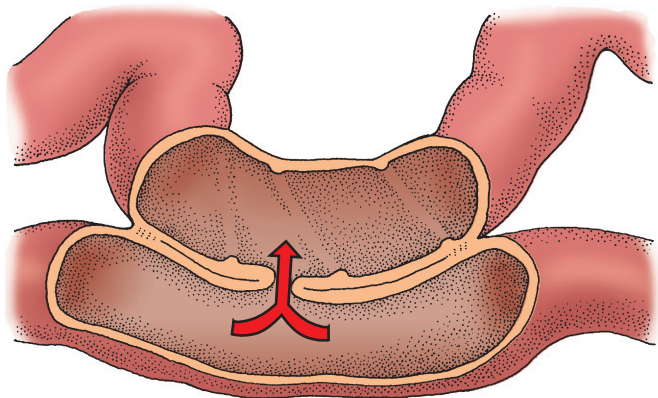
Unlike UC, Crohn's disease presents as transmural inflammation that causes a thickened bowel wall. Strictures and deep ulcerations (cobblestone appearance) also occur, which put the patient at risk for developing bowel fistulas. The result is severe diarrhea and malabsorption of vital nutrients. Anemia is common, usually from iron deficiency or malabsorption issues.

The complications associated with Crohn's disease are similar to those of ulcerative colitis (see Table 60-4). Hemorrhage is more common in ulcerative colitis, but it can occur in CD as well. Severe malabsorption by the small intestine is more common in patients with CD because UC does not involve the small bowel to any significant extent. *Therefore patients with CD can become very malnourished and debilitated.*

Rarely, cancer of the small bowel and colon develop but can occur after the disease has been present for 15 to 20 years. Fistula formation is a common complication of CD but is rare in UC. Fistulas can occur between segments of the intestine or manifest as cutaneous fistulas (opening to the skin) or perirectal abscesses. They can also extend from the bowel to other organs and body cavities, such as the bladder or vagina (Fig. 60-4). Some patients develop intestinal obstruction, which, at first, is secondary to inflammation and edema.



External enterocutaneous
(between skin and intestine)



Enteroenteric
(between intestine and intestine)

FIG. 60-4 The types of fistulas that are complications of Crohn's disease.

Over time, fibrosis and scar tissue develop and obstruction results from a narrowing of the bowel. Most patients with CD require surgery at some time.

The exact cause of CD is not known, but it seems to include a combination of genetic, immune, and environmental factors. About 10% to 20% of patients have a positive family history for the disease, but no predominant inheritance pattern is present (Nussbaum et al., 2007). The discovery of a mutation in the *NOD2/CARD15* gene on chromosome 16 seems to be associated with some patients who have CD. This gene is found in monocytes that normally recognize and destroy bacteria. Other gene mutations that may contribute to the pathogenesis of CD are *IBD3*, *IBD5*, and *IBD10*.

Proinflammatory cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor- α (TNF- α) and interleukins (e.g., IL-6 and IL-8), are immunologic factors that contribute to the etiology of CD. Many of the drugs used for the disease inhibit or block one or more of these factors.

Other risk factors include tobacco use, Jewish ethnicity, and living in urban areas (McCance et al., 2010). The reasons for these factors have not been established. It was once thought that stress and nutrition play a role in the *development* of CD, but these factors have not been proven. However, inadequate nutrition can worsen the patient's symptoms.

Almost a million people in the United States have Crohn's disease. Most have symptoms and are diagnosed as adolescents or young adults. It is more common in people of Ashkenazi Jewish background than in any other group (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Crohn's disease is made worse by bacterial infection and inflammation. A detailed history is needed to identify manifestations specific to the disease. Ask about recent unintentional weight loss, the frequency and consistency of stools, the presence of blood in the stool, fever, and abdominal pain.

Perform a thorough abdominal examination, assess for manifestations of the disease, and evaluate the patient's nutritional and hydration status.

When inspecting the abdomen, assess for distention, masses, or visible peristalsis. Inspection of the perianal area may reveal ulcerations, fissures, or fistulas. During auscultation, bowel sounds may be decreased or absent with severe inflammation or obstruction. An increase in high-pitched or rushing sounds may be present over areas of narrowed bowel loops. Muscle guarding, masses, rigidity, or tenderness may be noted on palpation by the advanced practice nurse or other health care provider.

The clinical presentation of Crohn's disease varies greatly from person to person. Most patients report diarrhea, abdominal pain, and low-grade fever. Fever is common with fistulas, abscesses, and severe inflammation. If the disease occurs in only the ileum, diarrhea occurs five or six times per day, often with a soft, loose stool. **Steatorrhea** (fatty diarrheal stools) is common. Rarely, stools may contain bright red blood.

Abdominal pain from the inflammatory process is usually constant and often located in the right lower quadrant. The

patient also may have pain around the umbilicus before and after bowel movements. If the lower colon is diseased, pain is common in both lower abdominal quadrants.

Most patients with Crohn's disease have *weight loss*. Nutritional problems are the result of increased catabolism from chronic inflammation, anorexia, malabsorption, or self-imposed dietary restrictions. These problems result in fluid and electrolyte imbalances and vital nutrient deficiencies.

The inflammatory bowel changes decrease the small bowel's ability to absorb nutrients, which may be made worse by surgery and fistulas.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient with Crohn's disease, be especially alert for manifestations of peritonitis (discussed earlier in this chapter), small-bowel obstruction, and nutritional and fluid imbalances. Early detection of a change in the patient's status helps reduce these life-threatening complications.

The patient who has Crohn's disease (CD) needs a complete psychosocial assessment. The chronic nature of the problem and the associated complications can greatly affect patients and their families. Lifestyle changes are necessary to cope with such a disruptive and painful chronic illness. Assess the patient's coping skill, and help identify support systems. Clinical depression and severe anxiety disorders are common among patients with CD.

The health care provider requests many laboratory studies for patients with Crohn's disease. The results of laboratory tests often indicate the extent and severity of inflammation or complications that occur with the disease.

Anemia is common as a result of slow bleeding and poor nutrition. Serum levels of folic acid and vitamin B₁₂ are generally low because of malabsorption, further contributing to anemia. Amino acid malabsorption and protein-losing enteropathy may result in *decreased albumin* levels. C-reactive protein and ESR may be elevated to indicate inflammation. White blood cells (WBCs) in the urine may show infection (pyuria), which is caused by ureteral obstruction or an enterovesical (bowel to bladder) fistula. If severe diarrhea or fistula is present, the patient may have electrolyte losses, particularly potassium and magnesium. Assess the patient for clinical manifestations that can occur as a result of electrolyte losses (see [Chapter 13](#)).

X-rays show the narrowing, ulcerations, strictures, and fistulas common with Crohn's disease. An abdominal ultrasound or CT scan may also be performed. In acute illness, these tests may be deferred until the risk for perforation lessens. If the patient has lower GI bleeding of more than 0.5 mL per minute, a gastrointestinal bleeding scan may be useful to localize the site of the bleeding ([Pagana & Pagana, 2010](#)).

INTERVENTIONS

Collaborative care for patients with Crohn's disease is similar to that described on p. 1274 in the Nonsurgical Management discussion in the Ulcerative Colitis section. Specific interventions vary with the severity of disease and the complications that are present.

Drug Therapy

Drugs used to manage Crohn's disease (CD) are similar to those used in the treatment of ulcerative colitis (UC). For mild to moderate disease, 5-ASA drugs may be very effective (see p. 1274 in the Drug Therapy discussion in the Ulcerative Colitis section).

Most patients have moderate to severe disease and need stronger drug therapy to control their symptoms. Two agents that may be prescribed for CD are azathioprine (Imuran) and mercaptopurine (Purinethol). These drugs suppress the immune system but can lead to serious infections. Methotrexate (MTX) may also be given to suppress immune activity of the disease.

More recently, a group of monoclonal antibody drugs has been approved for use in Crohn's disease when other drugs have been ineffective. These drugs inhibit tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha, which decreases the inflammatory response. Examples of commonly used drugs for patients with CD include infliximab (Remicade), adalimumab (Humira), natalizumab (Tysabri), and certolizumab pegol (Cimzia). These agents are not given to patients with a history of cancer, heart disease, or multiple sclerosis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Both infliximab and certolizumab pegol must be given in a health care setting, such as a physician's office via parenteral routes. Adalimumab (Humira) is self-administered by subcutaneous injection every other week. If needed, instruct patients on how to give themselves a subcutaneous injection. Teach patients to report injection site reactions, including redness and swelling. Remind them that headache, abdominal pain, and nausea and vomiting are common side effects. Teach them to avoid crowds, such as malls and large shopping centers, and people with infection. Reinforce the need to report any infection, including a cold or sore throat, to the health care provider immediately.

Natalizumab is given IV under medical supervision every 4 weeks for moderate to severe CD and is given when other drugs are not effective. Although the use of this drug has decreased the length of hospital stays (Dudley-Brown et al., 2009), natalizumab can cause progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), a deadly infection that affects the brain. Before giving the drug, be sure that patient is free of all infections. Teach patients the importance of reporting any cognitive, motor, or sensory changes immediately to the health care provider.

Although glucocorticoids can be effective for patients with Crohn's disease, sepsis can result from abscesses or fistulas that may be present. These drugs mask the symptoms of infection. Therefore they must be used with caution. Monitor the patient closely for signs of infection. Metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazole 🍁) has also been helpful in patients with fistulas.

Nutrition Therapy

Long-standing nutritional deficits can have severe consequences for the patient with Crohn's disease. Malnutrition can lead to poor fistula and wound healing, loss of lean muscle mass, decreased immune responses, and increased morbidity and mortality. During severe exacerbations of the disease, the patient may be hospitalized to provide bowel rest and nutritional support with total parenteral nutrition (TPN). For less severe exacerbations, an elemental or

semi-elemental product such as Vivonex PLUS may be prescribed to induce remission. These products are absorbed in the jejunum and therefore permit the distal small intestine and colon to rest. Nutritional supplements, such as Ensure or Sustacal, can be added then to provide nutrients and more calories. Teach the patient to avoid GI stimulants, such as caffeinated beverages and alcohol.

Fistula Management

Fistulas (abnormal tracts between two or more body areas) are common with acute exacerbations of Crohn's disease. They can be between the bowel and bladder (enterovesical), between two segments of bowel (enteroenteric), between the skin and bowel (enterocutaneous), or between the bowel and vagina (enterovaginal) (see Fig. 60-4). The patient with one or more fistulas often has complications such as systemic infections, skin problems, malnutrition, and fluid and electrolyte imbalances. Treatment of the patient with a fistula is complicated and includes nutrition and electrolyte therapy, skin care, and prevention of infection.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Adequate nutrition and fluid and electrolyte balance are priorities in the care of the patient with a fistula. GI secretions are high in volume and rich in electrolytes and enzymes. The patient is at high risk for malnutrition, dehydration, and hypokalemia (decreased serum potassium). Assess for these complications, and collaborate with the health care team to manage them. Monitor urinary output. A decrease indicates possible dehydration, which should be treated immediately by providing additional fluids.

The patient requires at least 3000 calories daily to promote healing of the fistula. If he or she cannot take adequate oral fluids and nutrients, total enteral nutrition (TEN) or TPN may be prescribed. For patients who do not require TEN or TPN, collaborate with the dietitian to:

- Carefully monitor the patient's tolerance to the prescribed diet.
- Assist the patient in selecting high-calorie, high-protein, high-vitamin, low-fiber meals.
- Offer enteral supplements, such as Ensure and Vivonex PLUS.
- Record food intake for accurate calorie counts.

Providing enteral supplements, recording intake and output, and taking daily weights may be delegated to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) under the supervision of the RN.

Collaborate with the wound or ostomy nurse to select the most appropriate wound management for each patient.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients with fistulas, preserving and protecting the skin is the nursing priority. *Be sure that wound drainage is not in direct contact with skin because intestinal fluid enzymes are caustic!* Clean the skin promptly to prevent skin breakdown or fungal infection, which can cause major discomfort for the patient.

Enzymes and bile in the stool contribute to the problem of skin irritation and excoriation. Skin irritation needs to be prevented. This may be accomplished through the use of skin



FIG. 60-5 Skin barriers, such as wafers (**A**) are cut to fit $\frac{1}{8}$ inch around the fistula. A drainable pouch (**B**) is applied over the wafer and clamped (**C**) until the pouch is to be emptied. Effluent should drain into the bag and not contact the skin.

barriers, pouching systems, and insertion of drains (Fig. 60-5). Skin barriers or dressings are used when the fistula drainage is less than 100 mL in 24 hours. A pouch is used for heavily draining fistulas to reduce the risk for skin breakdown and measure the **effluent** (drainage). However, they are very challenging because of location and drainage amount. Treatment with an antifungal powder applied to the skin around the fistula is often very helpful to prevent or treat *Candida* infection.

For some fistulas, pouching may not be possible because of their location. Drainage may need to be managed using regulated wall suction or a vacuum-assisted closure (VAC) device. Continuous low wall suction is attached to a suction catheter in the wound bed of the fistula, not into the fistula tract. These systems are not meant for long-term management.

VAC therapy promotes wound healing by secondary intention as it prepares the wound bed for closure, reduces edema, promotes granulation and perfusion, and removes exudate and infectious material. It should not be used for patients who are at risk for bleeding or only for the purpose of drainage containment. Chapter 27 describes this therapy in detail.

Patients with fistulas are also at high risk for intra-abdominal abscesses and sepsis. Antibiotic therapy is commonly prescribed. Observe for signs of systemic infection or sepsis, such as fever, abdominal pain, or a change in mental status. Monitor for increased WBC levels that could indicate a systemic infection.

Other helpful interventions for the patient with CD are those that relax the patient and soothe the GI tract. Such therapies may include naturopathy, herbs (e.g., ginger), acupuncture, hypnotherapy, and ayurveda (a combination of diet, herbs, yoga, breathing exercises). The evidence supporting the use of these substances for CD is lacking, but

many patients find them helpful for overall physical and emotional health. Teach patients about the availability of these therapies, and recommend that they include them in their collaborative plan of care.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration; Informatics

A 29-year-old woman who practices as a licensed practical nurse in a long-term care setting is admitted to the hospital with a draining enterocutaneous fistula as a result of long-term Crohn's disease. She has been taking infliximab (Remicade) for about 10 months but has noticed a return in her symptoms over the past week. The patient tells you that she is very upset about her condition and that she needs to go back to work as soon as she can. She is single but works extra shifts to help support her mother, who has advanced colon cancer.

1. What is your best response to the patient at this time?
2. What patient assessments will you perform on admission and why?
3. Based on the patient data provided, what priority problems do you identify?
4. Using best, current evidence, how will you plan care with other members of the health care team? What members of the health care team will be involved in this patient's care and why?

Surgical Management

Surgery for Crohn's disease may be performed for those patients who have not improved with medical management or for those who have complications from the disease. Surgery to manage CD is not as successful as that for ulcerative colitis due to the extent of the disease. The patient with a fistula may undergo resection of the diseased area. Other indications for surgical treatment include perforation, massive hemorrhage, intestinal obstruction or strictures, abscesses, or cancer.

In some cases, a resection (removal of part of the small bowel) can be performed as minimally invasive surgery (MIS) via laparoscopy. This surgery involves one or more small incisions, less pain, and a quicker surgical recovery. Both small-bowel resection (usually the ileum) and ileocecal resection can be done using this procedure. For other patients, an open surgical approach is used to allow for better visual access to the bowel.

Strictureplasty may be performed for bowel strictures related to Crohn's disease. This procedure increases the bowel diameter. Care before and after each of these surgical procedures is similar to care for patients undergoing other types of abdominal surgery (see [Chapters 16 and 18](#)).

Community-Based Care

The discharge care plan for the patient with Crohn's disease is similar to that for the patient with ulcerative colitis (see p. 1278 in the discussion of Community-Based Care in the Ulcerative Colitis section). Collaborate with the case manager and wound nurse to help the patient plan self-management.

The interventions that were started in the hospital to manage the disease should be continued in the home. Reinforce measures to control the disease and related symptoms and manage nutrition. Teach the patient and family to make arrangements for the patient to have easy access to the bathroom, as well as privacy to perform fistula care, if needed.

The teaching plan for Crohn's disease is similar to that for the patient with ulcerative colitis. Teach the patient about the usual course of the disease, symptoms of complications, and when to notify the health care provider. Provide health teaching for drug therapy, including purpose, dose, and side effects. In addition to other drugs, vitamin supplements, including monthly vitamin B₁₂ injections, may be needed because of the inability of the ileum to absorb these nutrients. In collaboration with the dietitian, instruct the patient to follow a low-residue, high-calorie diet and to avoid foods that cause discomfort, such as milk, gluten, and other GI stimulants like caffeine.

Remind the patient to take rest periods, especially during exacerbations of the disease. If stress appears to increase symptoms of the disease, recommend stress management techniques, counseling, and/or physical activity to improve quality of life (Crumbock et al., 2009). For long-term follow-up, teach the patient about the increased risk for bowel cancer and the importance of having frequent colonoscopies.

If a patient has a fistula, explain and demonstrate fistula care. Provide the opportunity for the patient to practice this care in the hospital. Ideally, he or she should be independent in fistula care before leaving the hospital. However, because of location of the fistula (perirectal or vaginal) or a large abdomen, assistance may be needed. If this is the case, teach a family member or other caregiver how to manage the fistula. Patients may be transferred to a transitional or skilled nursing unit for collaborative care.

Patients who are discharged to home after undergoing resection and anastomosis may require visits from a home care nurse to assess the surgical wound and monitor for complications (see [Chart 60-5](#)). Assess the patient's and family's ability to monitor the progress of fistula healing and to watch for indications of infection and sepsis. A home care aide or other service might be helpful for the patient who cannot

meet nutritional needs or who needs help with grocery shopping and meal preparation.

In collaboration with the CM, assist with obtaining the equipment and supplies for fistula care, such as skin barriers and wound drainage bags. A support group sponsored by the United Ostomy Associations of America (www.uoaa.org) or a local hospital in the community may also be available to help with meeting physical and psychosocial needs.

DIVERTICULAR DISEASE

Diverticula are pouchlike herniations of the mucosa through the muscular wall of any portion of the gut but most commonly the colon. **Diverticulosis** is the presence of many abnormal pouchlike herniations (diverticula) in the wall of the intestine. **Diverticulitis** is the inflammation of one or more diverticula.

Pathophysiology

Diverticula can occur in any part of the small or large intestine but usually occur in the sigmoid colon ([Fig. 60-6](#)). The muscle of the colon hypertrophies, thickens, and becomes rigid, and herniation of the mucosa and submucosa through the colon wall is seen. Diverticula seem to occur at points of weakness in the intestinal wall, often at areas where blood vessels interrupt the muscle layer. Muscle weakness develops as part of the aging process or as a result of a lack of fiber in the diet.

Without inflammation, diverticula cause few problems. If undigested food or bacteria become trapped in a diverticulum, however, blood supply to that area is reduced. Bacteria invade the diverticulum, resulting in diverticulitis, which then can perforate and develop a local abscess. A perforated diverticulum can progress to an intra-abdominal perforation with peritonitis (inflammation of the peritoneum).

Bleeding from diverticula can range from minor local bleeding to massive hemorrhage. Minor bleeding is often due to inflammation in areas of new blood vessel tissue at the base of the diverticulum. Hemorrhage can result when a blood

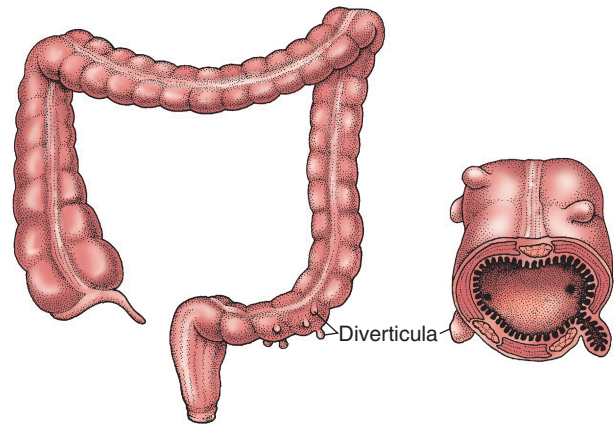


FIG. 60-6 Several abnormal outpouchings, or herniations, in the wall of the intestine, which are diverticula. These can occur anywhere in the small or large intestine but are found most often in the sigmoid colon, as shown in this figure. Diverticulitis is the inflammation of a diverticulum that occurs when undigested food or bacteria become trapped in the diverticulum.

vessel breaks down within a diverticulum. Inflammation from recurrent diverticulitis can lead to scarring and narrowing of the bowel lumen, which may then result in obstruction. Inflammation can also result in fistulas to other organs, such as the bladder and the vagina.

High intraluminal pressure forces the formation of a pouch in the weakened area of the mucosa, frequently near blood vessels. Diets low in fiber that cause less bulky stool and constipation have been implicated in the formation of diverticula. Retained undigested food in diverticula is suggested to be one cause of diverticulitis. The retained food reduces blood flow to that area and makes bacterial invasion of the sac easier.

The exact incidence of diverticulosis is unknown, but millions of people are affected by the problem. Diverticulitis is found in one half of adults older than 60 years, with more men than women affected. The cause for this difference is not known. Although diverticulosis is common, only one of five people with this disease has noticeable symptoms.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The patient with *diverticulosis* usually has no symptoms. Unless pain or bleeding develops, the condition may go undiagnosed. Occasionally, diverticulosis will cause symptoms. For the patient with uncomplicated diverticulosis, ask about intermittent pain in the left lower quadrant and a history of constipation. If diverticulitis is suspected, ask about a history of low-grade fever, nausea, and abdominal pain. Inquire about recent bowel elimination patterns because constipation may develop as a result of intestinal inflammation. Also ask about any bleeding from the rectum.

On physical examination, uncomplicated *diverticulosis* may produce no clinical manifestations. Occasionally, tenderness occurs on abdominal palpation.

The patient with *diverticulitis* may have abdominal pain, most often localized to the left lower quadrant. It is intermittent at first but becomes progressively steady. Occasionally, pain may be just above the pubic bone or may occur on one side. Abdominal pain is generalized if peritonitis has occurred. Nausea and vomiting are common. The patient's temperature is elevated, ranging from a low-grade fever to 101° F (38.3° C). Chills may be present. Often an increased heart rate (tachycardia) occurs with fever.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The first sign of peritonitis in older adults may be a sudden change in mental status (e.g., acute confusion). For those who have dementia, the confusion worsens. Fever and chills may not be present due to normal physiologic changes associated with aging.

On examination of the abdomen, observe for distention. The patient may report tenderness over the involved area. Localized muscle spasm, guarded movement, and rebound tenderness may be present with peritoneal irritation. If generalized peritonitis is present, profound guarding occurs; rebound tenderness is more widespread; and sepsis, hypotension, or hypovolemic shock can occur. If the perforated

diverticulum is close to the rectum, the health care provider may palpate a tender mass during the rectal examination. Blood pressure checks may show orthostatic changes. *If bleeding is massive, the patient may have hypotension and dehydration that result in shock.*

For the patient with uncomplicated diverticulosis, laboratory studies are not indicated. The patient with diverticulitis, however, has an *elevated white blood cell (WBC) count. Decreased hematocrit and hemoglobin* values are common if chronic or severe bleeding occurs. Stool tests for occult blood, if requested, are sometimes positive. Urinalysis may show a few red blood cells (RBCs) if the left ureter is near a perforated diverticulum.

X-rays of the intestinal tract with barium contrast may show diverticula. An upper GI series with small-bowel follow-through shows diverticula of the small intestine, and barium enema shows diverticula of the large intestine. Diverticula are most often diagnosed during routine colonoscopy.

The patient with diverticulitis usually does *not* undergo a barium enema procedure in the acute phase of the illness because of the risk for rupture of the inflamed diverticulum. A barium enema may be completed after the patient has been treated with antibiotics and the inflammation has resolved. Abdominal x-rays may be done to evaluate for free air and fluid indicating perforation. A computed tomography (CT) scan may be performed to diagnose an abscess or thickening of the bowel related to diverticulitis.

Abdominal ultrasonography, a noninvasive test, may also reveal bowel thickening or an abscess. The physician may recommend a colonoscopy 4 to 8 weeks *after the acute phase* of the illness to rule out a tumor in the large intestine, particularly if the patient has rectal bleeding.

INTERVENTIONS

Patients are managed on an ambulatory care basis if the symptoms are mild. Monitor the patient for any prolonged or increased fever, abdominal pain, or blood in the stool.

The patient with moderate to severe diverticulitis may be hospitalized, especially if the patient is older. Manifestations suggesting the need for admission are a temperature higher than 101° F (38.3° C), persistent and severe abdominal pain for more than 3 days, and/or lower GI bleeding.

Nonsurgical Management

A combination of drug and nutrition therapy with rest is used to decrease the inflammation associated with diverticular disease. Broad-spectrum antimicrobial drugs, such as metronidazole (Flagyl) plus trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (TMZ) (Bactrim or Bactrim DS, Septra) or ciprofloxacin (Cipro) are often prescribed. A mild analgesic may be given for pain. [Chart 60-6](#) lists nursing interventions needed for care of older adults with diverticulitis.

The patient with more severe pain may be admitted to the hospital for IV fluids to correct dehydration and IV drug therapy. For patients with moderate to severe diverticulitis, an opioid analgesic, such as morphine sulfate, may alleviate pain.

Laxatives and enemas are avoided because they increase intestinal motility. Assess the patient on an ongoing basis for manifestations of fluid and electrolyte imbalance.

Teach the patient to rest during the acute phase of illness. Remind him or her to refrain from lifting, straining,

CHART 60-6 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Diverticulitis

- Provide antibiotics, analgesics, and anticholinergics as prescribed. Observe older patients carefully for side effects of these drugs, especially confusion (or increased confusion), urinary retention or failure, and orthostatic hypotension.
- Do not give laxatives or enemas. Teach the patient and the family about the importance of avoiding these measures.
- Encourage the patient to rest and to avoid activities that may increase intra-abdominal pressure, such as straining and bending.
- While diverticulitis is active, provide a *low-fiber* diet. When the inflammation resolves, provide a *high-fiber* diet. Teach the patient and family about these diets and when they are appropriate.
- Because older patients do not always experience the typical pain or fever expected, observe carefully for other signs of active disease, such as a sudden change in mental status.
- Perform frequent abdominal assessments to determine distention and tenderness on palpation.
- Check stools for occult or frank bleeding.

coughing, or bending to avoid an increase in intra-abdominal pressure, which can result in perforation of the diverticulum. Nutrition therapy should be restricted to low fiber or clear liquids based on symptoms. The patient with more severe symptoms is NPO. A nasogastric tube (NGT) is inserted if nausea, vomiting, or abdominal distention is severe. Infuse IV fluids as prescribed for hydration. In collaboration with the dietitian, the patient increases dietary intake slowly as symptoms subside. When inflammation has resolved and bowel function returns to normal, a fiber-containing diet is introduced gradually.

Surgical Management

Diverticulitis can result in rupture of the diverticulum with peritonitis, pelvic abscess, bowel obstruction, fistula, persistent fever or pain, or uncontrolled bleeding. The surgeon performs emergency surgery if peritonitis, bowel obstruction, or pelvic abscess is present. Colon resection, with or without a colostomy, is the most common surgical procedure for patients with diverticular disease. The surgeon removes the portion that is inflamed or diseased and, if possible, creates an anastomosis of the colon to restore patency. Inflammation and infection, however, may prevent an anastomosis. If this is the case, the surgeon may perform a colostomy (see Fig. 60-3, B for appearance of a stoma). Some patients may have colostomy closure and anastomosis after the bowel has been allowed to rest for 3 to 6 months.

Preparation of the patient for surgery depends on the severity of the condition and whether it is an emergency or is performed a few weeks after the acute stage. The surgeon informs the patient whether a temporary or permanent colostomy might be required. If a colostomy is a possible outcome, collaborate with the certified wound, ostomy, and continence nurse (CWCN) or an enterostomal therapist (ET) (ostomy nurse) to describe its function and care.

The patient may have one of two surgical approaches: conventional open approach or minimally invasive surgery (MIS) via a laparoscopy. The advantage of MIS is that patients are discharged from the hospital quicker, have less pain after surgery, and have fewer postoperative complications. They

are able to resume normal activities much faster than patients having the conventional open surgery.

The nursing care for patients after an open colon resection for diverticulitis is the same as that for any patient who has undergone open abdominal surgery. The patient may have a drain in place at the abdominal incision site for several days. If a colostomy has been performed, the stoma may be covered with a petroleum gauze dressing because the colostomy does not drain for about 2 days, or a colostomy bag may be placed over the stoma. If the stoma is visible, monitor for color and integrity. The stoma should be pinkish to cherry red without retraction into the abdomen or prolapse.

The patient may be NPO with an NGT until peristalsis returns if open surgery is performed. Clear liquids are then introduced; the diet is advanced to solids, depending on the return of peristalsis and bowel function. Patients who had laparoscopic surgery usually do not have an NGT.

Most patients with a colostomy for diverticulitis have a sigmoid colostomy because the sigmoid colon is the most common site of diverticulitis. Drainage from a sigmoid colostomy at first consists of loose stool, but eventually the stool becomes formed. A tight seal around the stoma is essential to avoid contact of feces with the skin. Colostomy care is detailed in Chapter 59.

Give the patient an opportunity to express feelings about the ostomy if it was created. Discuss these feelings with the patient, reinforcing that anger and depression are normal responses. When he or she is physically able, encourage the patient to look at the stoma and touch the pouching system. Collaborate with the ostomy nurse to teach the patient how to self-manage ostomy care.

Community-Based Care

The length of stay for patients hospitalized for diverticulitis ranges from 1 to 4 days, depending on the response to treatment and the surgical procedure performed. Discharge plans vary according to the treatment. The patient who has surgical intervention has the added responsibilities of incision care and possibly colostomy care with temporary limitations placed on activities.

Patients with diverticular disease need education regarding a high-fiber diet. Encourage the patient with *diverticulosis* to eat a diet high in cellulose and hemicellulose types of fiber. These substances can be found in wheat bran, whole-grain breads, and cereals. Teach the patient to eat at least 25 to 35 g of fiber per day. Fresh fruits and vegetables with high fiber content are added to add bulk to stools.

If not accustomed to eating high-fiber foods, teach the patient to add them to the diet gradually to avoid flatulence and abdominal cramping. If he or she cannot tolerate the recommended fiber requirement, a bulk-forming laxative, such as psyllium hydrophilic mucilloid (Metamucil), can be taken to increase fecal size and consistency. Teach the patient to drink plenty of fluids to help prevent bloating that may occur with a high-fiber diet. Alcohol should be avoided because it irritates the bowel. Foods containing seeds or indigestible material that may block a diverticulum, such as nuts, corn, popcorn, cucumbers, tomatoes, figs, and strawberries, may be eliminated. Teach the patient that dietary fat intake should not exceed 30% of the total daily caloric intake.

Teach the patient to avoid all fiber when symptoms of *diverticulitis* are present, because high-fiber foods are then

irritating. As inflammation resolves, fiber can gradually be added until progression to a high-fiber diet is established. The patient who has undergone surgery is usually taking solid food by the time of discharge from the hospital.

Provide oral and written instructions on incision care and the signs and symptoms to report to the health care provider for the patient who had abdominal surgery. If a colostomy was created, reinforce ostomy care as needed. Encourage the patient to express concerns about body image. Allow time and address sexual concerns regarding the changed body image.

Instruct the patient with any type of diverticular disease, orally and in writing, about the manifestations of acute diverticulitis, including fever, abdominal pain, and bloody, mahogany, or tarry stools. Advise patients to avoid the use of laxatives (other than bulk-forming types) and enemas. Reassure them that this disorder should not cause problems if a proper diet is followed.

In collaboration with the case manager, arrange for a home care nurse, if needed, to assess wound healing and proper functioning of the ostomy and the appliance. If the patient is interested, arrange for a visit from an ostomy volunteer (ostomate) or an ostomy nurse. For information about other community resources, remind the patient to contact the United Ostomy Associations of America (www.uoaa.org).

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

An older adult with a history of diverticulitis is admitted to the emergency department stating that she has severe abdominal pain and has not had a bowel movement in 6 days. What priority assessment will the nurse perform?

- A. Listen to the client's breath sounds.
- B. Take the client's height and weight.
- C. Auscultate the client's bowel sounds.
- D. Perform a rectal examination.

ANAL DISORDERS

Anorectal Abscess

Anorectal abscess is a localized area of induration and pus caused by inflammation of the soft tissue near the rectum or anus. It is most often the result of obstruction of the ducts of glands in the anorectal region. Feces, foreign bodies, or trauma can be the cause of the obstruction and stasis, leading to infection that spreads into nearby tissue.

Rectal pain is often the first symptom. There may be no other manifestations at first, but local swelling, redness, and tenderness are present within a few days after the onset of pain. If the abscess becomes chronic, discharge, bleeding, and pruritus (itching) may exist. Fever occurs if larger abscesses are present.

Anorectal abscesses are managed by surgical incision and drainage (I&D). The physician can often incise (surgically remove) simple perianal and ischioanal abscesses using a local anesthetic. For patients with more extensive abscesses, a regional or general anesthetic may be needed. Systemic antibiotics are given only for patients who are immunocompromised, are diabetic, have valvular disease or a prosthetic valve, or are obese.

CHART 60-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Promoting Perineal Comfort

- Keep the perineal area clean with mild soap.
- Pat the perineal area dry instead of rubbing it.
- Provide warm sitz baths, or apply warm compresses to the area.
- If the area is acutely inflamed, apply cold packs.
- Provide a chair cushion for the seated patient. For the older or debilitated patient, monitor the skin carefully to prevent pressure sores.
- Use absorbent pads for drainage, if any, and change them often.
- Use premoistened wipes for cleaning the perineal area after a bowel movement.
- Use witch hazel wipes (e.g., Tucks) to relieve pain.
- Give bulk-forming agents, such as psyllium mucilloid (Metamucil), as prescribed, to reduce pain associated with defecation.
- Apply a topical anesthetic cream to the perineal area, as prescribed.
- Give oral analgesics, as prescribed, for pain relief.
- Do not administer enemas or give potent laxatives.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For patients with an anorectal abscess, nursing interventions are focused on comfort and helping the patient maintain optimal perineal hygiene (Chart 60-7). Encourage the use of warm sitz baths, analgesics, bulk-producing agents, and stool softeners after the surgery until healing occurs. *Stress the importance of good perineal hygiene after all bowel movements and the maintenance of a regular bowel pattern with a high-fiber diet.*

Patients are often embarrassed about having anal problems. Provide privacy and maintain the patient's dignity during the examination and treatment.

Anal Fissure

An **anal fissure** is a tear in the anal lining, which can be very painful. Smaller fissures occur with straining to have a stool, such as with diarrhea or constipation. Larger, deeper fissures may occur as a result of another disorder (e.g., Crohn's disease, tuberculosis, leukemia, neoplasm) or from trauma (e.g., from a foreign body, rough anal intercourse, perirectal surgery).

An *acute* anal fissure is superficial and usually resolves on its own or heals quickly with conservative treatment. *Chronic* fissures recur, and surgical treatment may be needed. Pain during and after defecation and bright red blood in the stool are the most common symptoms. Other manifestations include pruritus, urinary frequency or retention, dysuria, and **dyspareunia** (painful intercourse).

The diagnosis is made by stretching and inspecting the perianal skin. If the patient is having pain at the time of the examination, diagnostic testing is usually limited to inspection. If he or she is not in severe pain, a digital examination and possibly a sigmoidoscopy are performed. When painless or multiple fissures are present, a colonoscopy may be performed to rule out any inflammatory bowel disorder.

Management of an acute fissure is usually aimed at local pain relief and softening of stools to reduce trauma to the area. Teach the patient to use warm sitz baths, analgesics, and

bulk-producing agents (e.g., psyllium hydrophilic mucilloid [Metamucil]) to help minimize the pain from defecation. Topical anti-inflammatory agents (hydrocortisone creams and suppositories) may be helpful for some patients.

Explain pain control measures to the patient. Remind him or her to notify the health care provider if pain is not relieved within a few days. If fissures do not respond to management within several days to weeks, surgical repair under a local anesthetic may be needed. Teach the patient to report any drainage or bleeding from the rectum to the health care provider.

Anal Fistula

An anal fistula, or *fistula in ano*, is an abnormal tract leading from the anal canal to the perianal skin. Most anal fistulas result from anorectal abscesses, which are caused by obstruction of anal glands (see [Anorectal Abscess](#), p. 1287). Fistulas can also occur with tuberculosis, Crohn's disease, or cancer. Intermittent discharge is usually noted over the perianal area.

The patient with an anal fistula has pruritus (itching), purulent discharge, and tenderness or pain that is worsened by bowel movements. A proctoscope may be used to identify the source of symptoms and to locate the fistula. Because fistulas do not heal spontaneously, surgery is necessary. To perform a fistulotomy, the surgeon opens the tissue over the tract and scrapes the base. The incision site then heals by secondary intention. For a fistula higher in the anus, a special surgical technique is used to preserve important sphincters. After surgery, instruct the patient about sitz baths, analgesics, and the use of bulk-producing agents or stool softeners to reduce pain.

PARASITIC INFECTION

Pathophysiology

Parasites can enter and invade the GI tract and cause infections. They commonly enter through the mouth (oral-fecal transmission) from contaminated food or water, oral-anal sexual practices, or contact with feces from a contaminated person. Common parasites that cause infection in humans are *Giardia lamblia*, which causes giardiasis; *Entamoeba histolytica*, which causes amebiasis (amebic dysentery); and *Cryptosporidium*. *Handwashing is the best way to prevent the spread of parasitic infections.*

G. lamblia is a protozoal parasite that causes superficial invasion, destruction, and inflammation of the mucosa in the small intestine. This organism occurs in cysts and trophozoites (sporozoan parasites). Trophozoites die rapidly after they leave the body in stool. Cysts, however, can remain alive in the right type of environment for weeks or months. Humans who eliminate cysts are infectious. Flies can spread the cysts, and the problem is more common in areas that use human excrement for fertilizer. Humans are hosts to this organism, but beavers and dogs may be reservoirs for infection.

Giardiasis is a well-recognized problem in international travelers, campers, and immunosuppressed patients. In the United States, giardiasis is prevalent and is the most common parasitic infection. This disorder affects only the intestinal system, causing acute diarrhea, chronic diarrhea, or malabsorption syndrome. The acute phase usually is self-limiting, lasting days or weeks. The chronic phase can last for years.

Diarrhea is usually mild in both forms, but it can be severe. As stools increase in frequency, they become more watery, greasy, frothy, and malodorous with mucus. Weight loss and weakness are also common. Malabsorption can occur with diarrhea that continues for longer than 3 weeks. Manifestations result from malabsorption of fat, protein, and vitamin B₁₂ and lactase deficiency.

Humans are the only known hosts for *E. histolytica* (also known as *amebiasis*). This organism also occurs in cysts and trophozoites. Amebiasis occurs worldwide, but it is most common in tropical areas. Prevalence rates are as high in areas with poor sanitation, crowding, and poor nutrition. Amebiasis causes tens of thousands of deaths annually worldwide. The disease causes less severe symptoms and often goes undiagnosed in temperate climates.

E. histolytica either feeds on bacteria in the intestine or invades and ulcerates the mucosa of the large intestine. The parasite can be limited to the GI tract (intestinal amebiasis), or it can extend outside the intestines (extraintestinal amebiasis). People can have intestinal amebiasis without having any symptoms, or symptoms can range from mild to severe.

Cryptosporidium is manifested by diarrhea. This infection occurs most commonly in immunosuppressed patients, particularly those with human immune deficiency virus (HIV). It can also occur in children and older adults from contaminated swimming pools. (See [Chapter 21](#) for a discussion of HIV infection.)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

A thorough history can help determine potential sources of exposure to parasitic infection. A history of travel to parts of the world where such infections are prevalent increases suspicion for infection with parasites. GI symptoms related to travel may be delayed as long as 1 to 2 weeks after the return home. Immigrants (newcomers) may have the infection upon entering a new country. A nutrition history is especially helpful if several people in a group become ill. Common water supplies or bodies of water may be infected with *Giardia* or *Cryptosporidium*. Trichinosis should be considered if the patient has eaten pork products.

Mild to moderate *E. histolytica* infestation causes the daily passage of several strongly foul-smelling stools, possibly with mucus but without blood, accompanied by abdominal cramping, flatulence (gas), fatigue, and weight loss.

The infected patient usually experiences remissions and recurrences. Severe amebic dysentery is manifested by frequent, more liquid, and foul-smelling stools with mucus and blood. Fever up to 104° F (40° C), [tenesmus](#) (feeling the urge to defecate), generalized abdominal tenderness, and vomiting can also occur. The ulcerations of invading amebiasis that occur in the colon can cause pain, bleeding, and obstruction. Ulcerations can also occur in the rectum, resulting in formed stool with blood. Complications are rare but include appendicitis and bowel perforation.

Extraintestinal amebiasis can occur without symptoms of intestinal infection. The most common form is amebic liver abscess, which causes symptoms of fever, pain, and an

enlarged liver. The abscess can rupture, and death can result if the infection and complications are not treated.

The diagnosis of *amebiasis* is made by examining the stool for parasites. Because *E. histolytica* is difficult to detect, serial stool examinations are needed if the disease is suspected. The use of sigmoidoscopy may detect ulcerations in the rectum or colon. Exudate obtained during sigmoidoscopic examination is studied for the parasite. The white blood cell (WBC) count can be very high when severe dysentery is present.

The diagnosis of *giardiasis* is also confirmed by the presence of parasites in the stool. Because organisms may not be detected for at least 1 week after symptoms appear, multiple stool samples should be examined.

INTERVENTIONS

Treatment for all types of *amebiasis* involves the use of amebicide drugs. Metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazole) and diloxanide furoate (Entamide) or diloxanide furoate and tetracycline hydrochloride (Sumycin) followed by chloroquine are commonly prescribed. The patient with severe dysentery requires IV fluids replacement and possibly opiates, such as diphenoxylate hydrochloride and atropine sulfate (Lomotil), to control bowel motility. The patient with extraintestinal amebiasis or severe dehydration is hospitalized, especially the older adult. The patient with asymptomatic, mild, or moderate disease is treated with drug therapy on an ambulatory care basis. Therapy effectiveness is based on the examination of at least three stools at 2- to 3-day intervals, starting 2 to 4 weeks after drug therapy has been completed. *Teach patients the importance of keeping their follow-up appointments and taking all drugs as prescribed.*

Treatment for *giardiasis* is drug therapy. Metronidazole is the drug of choice, 250 mg orally three times daily for 5 days. Tinidazole (Fasigyn) can be used as an alternative. Stools are examined 2 weeks after treatment to assess for drug effectiveness.

Infection with *Cryptosporidium* is usually self-limiting in people who have normal immune function. Drug therapy for

patients who are immunosuppressed may include paromomycin (Paromycin), an aminoglycoside antibiotic. Teach patients that this drug can cause dizziness.

FOOD POISONING

Foodborne illnesses are a common problem in the United States and all other parts of the world and can cause death. The problem results when a person ingests infectious organisms in food. Unlike gastroenteritis, food poisoning is not directly communicable from person to person and incubation periods are shorter. However, like gastroenteritis, it causes diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting. Food poisoning can be differentiated from gastroenteritis by obtaining a thorough history of common food intake in patients who have common symptoms of acute diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting.

Food poisoning is caused by over 250 pathogens. Examples include gram-negative *Salmonella*, *Staphylococcal aureus*, *Escherichia coli*, and botulism. Table 60-6 lists more information about these microbes. All cases of botulism and salmonellosis need to be reported to the local health department. Cases of staphylococcal and *E. coli* food poisoning are reported if epidemic outbreaks occur.

Salmonellosis

Salmonellosis is a bacterial infection caused by the *Salmonella* organism and affects many people each year in the United States. *Salmonella* bacteria live in the intestinal tracts of humans and animals. They can be transmitted by the “five Fs”: flies, fingers, food, feces, and fomites. Incubation is 8 to 48 hours after the person has ingested the contaminated food or liquid, the most common source. Foods that are most commonly contaminated are eggs, beef, poultry, and green leafy vegetables (e.g., spinach). In 2008, contaminated jalapeno peppers from Mexico caused *Salmonella* infection in hundreds of people in the United States.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Explain modes of transmission of parasitic infections and means to avoid the spread of infection and recurrent contact with parasitic organisms. *Inform the patient that the infection can be transmitted to others until amebicides effectively kill the parasites. Teach the patient to:*

- Avoid contact with stool.
- Keep toilet areas clean.
- Wash hands meticulously with an antimicrobial soap after bowel movements.
- Maintain good personal hygiene by bathing or showering daily.
- Avoid stool from dogs and beavers.

Advise the patient to avoid sexual practices that allow rectal contact until drug therapy is completed. *All household and sexual partners should have stool examinations for parasites.* If the water supply is suspected as the source, a sample is obtained and sent for analysis. Multiple infections are common in households, often as a result of contaminated water supplies. Well water and water from areas with inadequate or no filtration equipment can be sources of contamination.

TABLE 60-6 COMMON TYPES OF FOOD POISONING

Staphylococcal Infection

- Caused by contaminated meats and dairy products
- Can be transmitted by human carriers
- Causes abrupt onset of vomiting and diarrhea without fever

Escherichia coli Infection

- Caused by meat contaminated with animal feces
- Causes abrupt vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal cramping, and fever

Botulism

- Commonly associated with improperly canned foods, especially fruits and vegetables
- Nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and weakness progressing to paralysis
- Diplopia, dysphagia, and dysarthria

Salmonellosis

- Caused by contaminated food or drink but can be transmitted by the fecal-oral route
- Fever, nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramping, and diarrhea lasting for 3 to 5 days

Symptoms usually last for 4 to 7 days. Most people have fever, nausea, vomiting, cramping abdominal pain, and foul-smelling diarrhea, which may be bloody. In some patients, fever is very high.

Salmonellosis is usually self-limiting, but bacteremia that infects the joints or bone may occur later in the disease process. Diagnosis is made by stool culture. Treatment is symptomatic. If bacteremia occurs, antibiotics such as ampicillin or ciprofloxacin (Cipro) are prescribed. Unfortunately, some *Salmonella* bacteria have become resistant to antibiotics because of the use of these drugs in animals. Some patients, especially older adults, are hospitalized with severe diarrhea and dehydration.

Patients may be carriers of the bacterium for up to 1 year. Instruct those with *Salmonella* gastroenteritis and their contacts to wash their hands before meals and after defecating to avoid transmission of the organism.

Staphylococcal Infection

Staphylococcus is responsible for 25% of reported food poisoning outbreaks. It is found in meats and dairy products and can be transmitted by carriers of the organism. For staphylococcal food poisoning to occur, there must be contamination of food and a period of time (hours) during which the organisms multiply. This can take place during the slow cooling of food after it is cooked.

Symptoms of staphylococcal food poisoning include an abrupt onset of vomiting, abdominal cramping, and diarrhea. The person usually has symptoms 2 to 4 hours after ingesting the contaminated food. The patient is afebrile but weak.

A diagnosis can be made when stool culture yields 100,000 enterotoxin-producing staphylococci. However, symptoms rarely last more than 24 hours, and people do not always seek medical attention. Antimicrobial drug therapy is not usually indicated unless an agent produces progressive systemic involvement. Parenteral fluids may be needed for dehydration.

Escherichia coli Infection

Since 1992, a number of outbreaks of *E. coli* food poisoning have occurred in the United States. Many strains of *E. coli* exist, and not all of them cause harm. However, some cause disease by making a substance called *Shiga toxin*. The bacteria that make these substances are called *Shiga toxin-producing E. coli*, or *STEC* for short. The most commonly identified *STEC* in the United States is *E. coli* O157:H7 (sometimes called just O157). In 2007, prepackaged spinach processed in the United States was contaminated with these bacteria and caused hundreds of people to become ill.

Enterohemorrhagic strains of *E. coli* (EHEC) and *STEC* can cause serious complications, such as hemorrhagic colitis and hemolytic-uremic syndrome. These problems affect older adults most often.

The symptoms of *STEC* infections vary, but most people have severe abdominal cramping, vomiting, and diarrhea (often bloody). Treatment of the patient with *E. coli* food poisoning includes IV fluids and supportive therapy, possibly with antidiarrheal agents. Antibiotics are not effective. [Chart 60-8](#) outlines best practices for preventing *STEC* infections.

CHART 60-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Ways to Prevent *STEC* (*E. coli*) Infections

- Wash your hands *thoroughly* after using the bathroom and after changing diapers and before preparing or eating food.
- Wash your hands after contact with any animals or their environments (e.g., zoo).
- Cook meats thoroughly to at least 160° to 170° internal temperature; use a food thermometer to ensure doneness.
- Avoid raw milk, unpasteurized juices (like fresh apple cider), and unpasteurized dairy products.
- Avoid swallowing water when swimming.
- Prevent cross-contamination during food preparation by washing hands, counters, cutting boards, and utensils after they touch raw meat.

STEC, Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*.

Botulism

Botulism is a paralytic disease resulting from ingestion of a toxin in food contaminated with *Clostridium botulinum*. Botulism occurs most often with home-canned foods, particularly vegetables, fruits, condiments, and, less commonly, meat and fish. It can also occur in commercially prepared products and with products not adequately heated to destroy toxins before they are eaten.

Incubation is usually 18 to 36 hours. After this time, symptoms occur. Initial symptoms include diplopia (double vision), dysphagia (difficulty swallowing), and dysarthria (slurred speech). Illness may be mild or severe, with paralysis, respiratory failure, and death. Weakness can progress rapidly from the neck to the arms, chest, and legs. Paralytic ileus, severe constipation, and urinary retention can also occur. Nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain may occur before or after the onset of paralysis. The diagnosis is made on the basis of the patient's history and a stool culture of *C. botulinum*. The blood may be positive for toxins.

Treatment with trivalent botulism antitoxin is given as soon as the diagnosis is made if the patient is not hypersensitive to it. The physician may lavage the stomach to stop absorption of toxin. All patients are hospitalized to observe for and treat respiratory paralysis. Nothing is given orally until swallowing and respiratory function are restored. The physician prescribes IV fluids as needed. If respiratory paralysis occurs, intubation and mechanical ventilation are implemented. If ventilation can be maintained, the patient can survive with no neurologic deficits after the illness.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To prevent botulism, teach patients the importance of discarding cans of food that are punctured or swollen or that have defective seals. Remind them to check for expiration dates and to not use any canned food that has expired. Containers for home-canned foods must be sterilized by boiling for 20 minutes to destroy *C. botulinum* spores before canning.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has impaired digestion and inadequate nutrition as a result of inflammatory intestinal problems?

- Report of nausea
- Vomiting
- Report of epigastric or abdominal pain
- Diarrhea (sometimes bloody)
- Elevated temperature
- Weakness

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with impaired digestion and inadequate nutrition as a result of inflammatory intestinal problems?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment findings, including:

- Vital signs
- Complete pain assessment
- Skin turgor and mucous membrane dryness
- Abdominal assessment
- Current and previous weight
- History of recent food intake
- History of recent travel

Respond:

- Prevent pain and aspiration by placing patient in sitting position.
- Place IV catheter (large-bore) to replace fluids.
- Provide privacy, and assist with hygiene.
- Provide rest.
- Check laboratory values for hemoglobin and hematocrit (anemia).
- Check serum electrolytes (dehydration, hypokalemia).
- Give antidiarrheal drugs if prescribed.
- Record intake and output.
- Assist with ADLs and ambulation as needed.

On what should you REFLECT?

- Continue to monitor for vomiting and diarrhea and changes in pain level.
- Think about what you need to document.
- Decide when you might need to call the health care provider or Rapid Response Team (for hospitalized patients).
- Determine what health teaching and community resources may be needed for this patient and family.
- Think about what you can do to help prevent complications of the health problem.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Teach patients to use infection control measures to prevent transmission of gastroenteritis as stated in [Chart 60-2](#).
- Collaborate with a CWOCN or ET nurse for ileostomy teaching and care; collaborate with a case manager when planning for patient discharge.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients with chronic IBD to avoid GI stimulants, such as alcohol and caffeine; each patient's response to foods differs.
- Instruct patients with diverticulosis about nutrition modifications, such as avoiding nuts, foods with seeds, and GI stimulants.
- Teach patients with diverticulosis to eat a high-fiber diet; diverticulitis requires a low-fiber diet.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Be aware that all inflammatory bowel diseases (acute and chronic) are very disruptive to one's daily routine; chronic IBD requires a lifetime of modifications.

- Recognize that having an ileostomy impacts the patient's body image and self-esteem; assess for coping strategies that the patient has previously used, and identify personal support systems to assist in coping.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess for the classic clinical manifestations of appendicitis, which include abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, and abdominal tenderness upon palpation (McBurney's point); some patients also have leukocytosis.
- Assess for the key features of peritonitis as listed in [Chart 60-1](#).
- Assess for signs and symptoms of dehydration in patients who have inflammatory bowel disease.
- Administer antidiarrheal medications as prescribed to decrease stools and therefore prevent dehydration in patients with inflammatory bowel diseases.
- Be aware that there are two major types of chronic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD): ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease; both have similarities but also have differences (see [Table 60-2](#)).
- Recognize that perforation (rupture) of the appendix requires prompt intervention and can result in peritonitis.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Be alert for GI bleeding in the patient with chronic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD).
- Be aware that patients with Crohn's disease are at high risk for malnutrition as a result of an inability to absorb nutrients via the small intestine.
- Teach patients how to provide ileostomy care, paying particular attention to skin care; the effluent has a high enzyme content that can easily cause severe skin excoriation (see [Chart 60-4](#)).
- Monitor for complications of UC as listed in [Table 60-4](#).
- Provide nursing interventions for patients with IBD as listed in [Chart 60-3](#).
- Administer 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) drugs as prescribed (e.g., Pentasa) to decrease inflammation in patients with UC; most of these same drugs are also used for Crohn's disease management.
- Administer infliximab (Remicade) or other monoclonal antibody agent as prescribed for patients with Crohn's disease; these drugs may also be useful for those with UC in selected cases.
- Observe for manifestations of lower GI bleeding in patients with chronic inflammatory and diverticular disease.
- Instruct patients with anorectal disorders to use sitz baths, bulk-forming agents (e.g., Metamucil), and stool softeners to decrease pain.
- Be aware that GI problems, including diarrhea, may also be caused by parasites and food poisoning.

Care of Patients with Liver Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Cirrhosis
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Describe the need to collaborate with health care team members to provide care for patients with liver problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify community resources for patients with chronic liver disease.
3. Identify risk factors for cirrhosis and hepatitis.
4. Develop a health teaching plan for patients and families to prevent hepatitis and its spread to others.
5. Develop a health teaching plan for patients and families to prevent or slow the progress of alcohol-induced cirrhosis.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Explain the psychosocial needs of patients with hepatitis.

Physiological Integrity

7. Explain the pathophysiology and complications associated with cirrhosis of the liver.
8. Interpret laboratory test findings commonly seen in patients with cirrhosis.

9. Analyze assessment data from patients with cirrhosis to determine priority patient problems.
10. Develop a collaborative plan of care for the patient with late-stage cirrhosis.
11. Describe the role of the nurse in monitoring for and managing potentially life-threatening complications of cirrhosis.
12. Identify emergency interventions for the patient with bleeding esophageal varices.
13. Explain the role of the nurse when assisting with a paracentesis procedure.
14. Compare and contrast the transmission of hepatitis viral infections.
15. Explain ways in which each type of hepatitis can be prevented.
16. Identify potentially life-threatening complications of liver trauma.
17. Describe treatment options for patients with cancer of the liver.
18. Describe the common complications that result from liver transplantation.

The liver is the largest and one of the most vital internal organs, performing more than 400 functions and affecting every system in the body. When the liver is diseased or damaged, it cannot provide these activities. As a result, *digestion, nutrition, and metabolism* can be severely affected. Liver diseases range in severity from mild hepatic inflammation to chronic end-stage cirrhosis.

CIRRHOSIS

Cirrhosis is extensive, irreversible scarring of the liver, usually caused by a chronic reaction to hepatic inflammation and necrosis. The disease typically develops slowly and has a progressive, prolonged, destructive course resulting in end-stage liver disease. The most common causes for cirrhosis in the

United States are hepatitis C, alcoholism, and biliary obstruction. Worldwide, hepatitis B and hepatitis D are the leading causes. Without liver transplantation, cirrhosis is usually fatal (Kelso, 2008).

Pathophysiology

Cirrhosis is characterized by widespread fibrotic (scarred) bands of connective tissue that change the liver's normal makeup. Inflammation caused by either toxins or disease results in extensive degeneration and destruction of **hepatocytes** (liver cells). As cirrhosis develops, the tissue becomes nodular. These nodules can block bile ducts and normal blood flow throughout the liver. Impairments in blood and lymph flow result from compression caused by excessive fibrous tissue. In early disease, the liver is usually enlarged, firm, and hard. As the pathologic process continues, the liver shrinks in size, resulting in decreased liver function, which can occur in weeks to years. Some patients with cirrhosis have no symptoms until serious complications occur. The impaired liver function results in elevated serum liver enzymes (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Cirrhosis of the liver can be divided into several common types, depending on the cause of the disease (McCance et al., 2010):

- Postnecrotic cirrhosis (caused by viral hepatitis [especially hepatitis C] and certain drugs or other toxins)
- Laennec's or alcoholic cirrhosis (caused by chronic alcoholism)
- Biliary cirrhosis (also called *cholestatic*; caused by chronic biliary obstruction or autoimmune disease)

Complications of Cirrhosis

Common problems and complications associated with hepatic cirrhosis depend on the amount of damage sustained by the liver. In **compensated cirrhosis**, the liver is scarred but can still perform essential functions without causing major symptoms. In **decompensated cirrhosis**, liver function is impaired with obvious manifestations of liver failure.

The loss of hepatic function contributes to the development of metabolic abnormalities. Hepatic cell damage may lead to these common complications:

- Portal hypertension
- Ascites and esophageal varices
- Coagulation defects
- Jaundice
- Portal-systemic encephalopathy (PSE) with hepatic coma
- Hepatorenal syndrome
- Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis

Portal Hypertension. **Portal hypertension**, a persistent increase in pressure within the portal vein greater than 5 mm Hg, is a major complication of cirrhosis (Minano & Garcia-Tsao, 2010). It results from increased resistance to or obstruction (blockage) of the flow of blood through the portal vein and its branches. The blood meets resistance to flow and seeks collateral (alternative) venous channels around the high-pressure area.

Blood flow backs into the spleen, causing **splenomegaly** (spleen enlargement). Veins in the esophagus, stomach, intestines, abdomen, and rectum become dilated. Portal hypertension can result in ascites (abdominal fluid), esophageal varices

(distended veins), prominent abdominal veins (caput medusae), and hemorrhoids.

Ascites and Esophageal Varices. **Ascites** is the collection of free fluid within the peritoneal cavity caused by increased hydrostatic pressure from portal hypertension (McCance et al., 2010). The collection of plasma protein in the peritoneal fluid reduces the amount of circulating plasma protein in the blood. When this decrease is combined with the inability of the liver to produce albumin because of impaired liver cell functioning, the serum colloid osmotic pressure is decreased in the circulatory system. The result is a fluid shift from the vascular system into the abdomen, a form of "third spacing." As a result, the patient may have hypovolemia and edema at the same time.

Massive ascites may cause renal vasoconstriction, triggering the renin-angiotensin system. This results in sodium and water retention, which increases hydrostatic pressure and the vascular volume and leads to more ascites.

As a result of portal hypertension, the blood backs up from the liver and enters the esophageal and gastric veins. **Esophageal varices** occur when fragile, thin-walled esophageal veins become distended and tortuous from increased pressure. The potential for varices to bleed depends on their size; size is determined by direct endoscopic observation. Varices occur most often in the distal esophagus but can also be present in the stomach and rectum.

Bleeding esophageal varices is a life-threatening medical emergency. Severe blood loss may occur, resulting in shock from hypovolemia. The bleeding may be either **hematemesis** (vomiting blood) or **melena** (black, tarry stools). Loss of consciousness may occur before any observed bleeding. Variceal bleeding can occur spontaneously with no precipitating factors. However, any activity that increases abdominal pressure may increase the likelihood of a variceal bleed, including heavy lifting or vigorous physical exercise. In addition, chest trauma or dry, hard food in the esophagus can cause bleeding.

Patients with portal hypertension may also have **portal hypertensive gastropathy**. This complication can occur with or without esophageal varices. Slow gastric mucosal bleeding occurs, which may result in chronic slow blood loss, occult-positive stools, and anemia.

Splenomegaly (enlarged spleen) results from the backup of blood into the spleen. The enlarged spleen destroys platelets, causing thrombocytopenia (low serum platelet count) and increased risk for bleeding. Thrombocytopenia is often the first clinical sign that a patient has liver dysfunction.

Biliary Obstruction. In patients with cirrhosis, the production of bile in the liver is decreased. This prevents the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins (e.g., vitamin K). Without vitamin K, clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X are not produced in sufficient quantities and the patient is susceptible to bleeding and easy bruising. These abnormalities are confirmed by coagulation studies.

Jaundice (yellowish coloration of the skin) in patients with cirrhosis is caused by one of two mechanisms: hepatocellular disease or intrahepatic obstruction (Table 61-1). **Hepatocellular** jaundice develops because the liver cells cannot effectively excrete bilirubin. This decreased excretion results in excessive circulating bilirubin levels. **Intrahepatic obstructive** jaundice results from edema, fibrosis, or scarring of the hepatic bile channels and bile ducts, which interferes with

TABLE 61-1 LABORATORY DIAGNOSTIC DIFFERENTIATION OF JAUNDICE

TEST	HEPATOCELLULAR JAUNDICE	OBSTRUCTIVE JAUNDICE	HEMOLYTIC JAUNDICE
Serum bilirubin			
Indirect (unconjugated)	Increased	Slightly increased	Increased
Direct (conjugated)	Increased	Moderately increased	Normal
Urine bilirubin	Increased	Increased	None
Urobilinogen			
Stool	Normal to decreased	None	Increased
Urine	Normal to increased	None	Increased

TABLE 61-2 STAGES OF PORTAL-SYSTEMIC ENCEPHALOPATHY

Stage I Prodromal • Subtle manifestations that may not be recognized immediately • Personality changes • Behavior changes (agitation, belligerence) • Emotional lability (euphoria, depression) • Impaired thinking • Inability to concentrate • Fatigue, drowsiness • Slurred or slowed speech • Sleep pattern disturbances	Stage III Stuporous • Progressive deterioration • Marked mental confusion • Stuporous, drowsy but arousable • Abnormal electroencephalogram tracing • Muscle twitching • Hyperreflexia • Asterixis
Stage II Impending • Continuing mental changes • Mental confusion • Disorientation to time, place, or person • Asterixis (hand flapping)	Stage IV Comatose • Unresponsiveness, leading to death in most patients progressing to this stage • Unarousable, obtunded • Usually no response to painful stimulus • No asterixis • Positive Babinski's sign • Muscle rigidity • Fetus hepaticus (characteristic liver breath—musty, sweet odor) • Seizures

normal bile and bilirubin excretion. Patients with jaundice often report pruritus (itching).

Hepatic Encephalopathy. Hepatic encephalopathy (also called **portal-systemic encephalopathy [PSE]**) is a complex cognitive syndrome that results from liver failure and cirrhosis. Patients report sleep disturbance, mood disturbance, mental status changes, and speech problems early as this complication begins. Hepatic encephalopathy may be reversible with early intervention. Later neurologic symptoms include an altered level of consciousness, impaired thinking processes, and neuromuscular problems.

Hepatic encephalopathy may develop slowly in patients with chronic liver disease and go undetected until the late stages. Symptoms develop rapidly in acute liver dysfunction. Four stages of development have been identified: prodromal, impending, stuporous, and comatose (Table 61-2). The patient's symptoms may gradually progress to coma or fluctuate among the four stages.

The exact mechanisms causing hepatic encephalopathy are not clearly understood but probably are the result of the shunting of portal venous blood into the central circulation so that the liver is bypassed. As a result, substances absorbed by the intestine are not broken down or detoxified and may lead to metabolic abnormalities, such as elevated serum

ammonia and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) (Kelso, 2008). Elevated serum ammonia results from the inability of the liver to detoxify protein by-products and is common in patients with hepatic encephalopathy. However, it is not a clear indicator of the presence of encephalopathy. Some patients may have major impairment without high elevations of serum ammonia, and elevations of ammonia can occur without evidence of encephalopathy.

Factors that may lead to hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis include:

- High-protein diet
- Infections
- Hypovolemia (decreased fluid volume)
- Hypokalemia (decreased serum potassium)
- Constipation
- GI bleeding (causes a large protein load in the intestines)
- Drugs (e.g., hypnotics, opioids, sedatives, analgesics, diuretics, illicit drugs)

The prognosis depends on the severity of the underlying cause, the precipitating factors, and the degree of liver dysfunction.

Other Complications. The development of **hepatorenal syndrome (HRS)** indicates a poor prognosis for the patient with liver failure. It is often the cause of death in these patients. This syndrome is manifested by:

- A sudden decrease in urinary flow (<500 mL/24 hr) (oliguria)
- Elevated blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine levels with abnormally decreased urine sodium excretion
- Increased urine osmolality

HRS often occurs after clinical deterioration from GI bleeding or the onset of hepatic encephalopathy. It may also complicate other liver diseases, including acute hepatitis and fulminant liver failure.

Patients with cirrhosis and ascites may develop acute *spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP)*. Those who are particularly susceptible are patients with very advanced liver disease. This may be the result of low concentrations of proteins; proteins normally provide some protection against bacteria.

The bacteria responsible for SBP are typically from the bowel and reach the ascitic fluid after migrating through the bowel wall and transversing the lymphatics. Clinical manifestations vary but may include fever, chills, and abdominal pain and tenderness. However, manifestations can also be minimal with only mild symptoms in the absence of fever. Worsening encephalopathy and increased jaundice may also be present without abdominal symptoms.

The diagnosis of SBP is made when a sample of ascitic fluid is obtained by paracentesis for cell counts and culture. An ascitic fluid leukocyte count of more than 250 polymorphonuclear (PMN) leukocytes may indicate the need for treatment.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Hepatitis C is the leading cause of cirrhosis and liver failure in the United States. It is an infectious bloodborne illness that usually causes chronic disease. Inflammation caused by infection over time leads to progressive scarring of the liver. It usually takes decades for cirrhosis to develop, although alcohol use in combination with hepatitis C may speed the process.

Hepatitis B and hepatitis D are the most common causes of cirrhosis worldwide. Hepatitis B also causes inflammation and low-grade damage over decades that can ultimately lead to cirrhosis. Hepatitis D is another virus that infects the liver but only in people who already have hepatitis B (see discussion of hepatitis on p. 1305).

Cirrhosis can occur as a result of other factors. For example, *alcohol* has a direct toxic effect on the hepatocytes and causes liver inflammation (**alcoholic hepatitis**). The liver becomes enlarged, with cellular degeneration and infiltration by fat, leukocytes, and lymphocytes. Over time, the inflammatory process decreases and the destructive phase increases. Early scar formation is caused by fibroblast infiltration and collagen formation. Damage to the liver tissue progresses as malnutrition and repeated exposure to the alcohol continue. If alcohol is withheld, the fatty infiltration and inflammation is reversible. If alcohol abuse continues, widespread scar tissue formation and fibrosis infiltrate the liver as a result of cellular necrosis. The long-term use of illicit drugs, such as cocaine, has similar effects on the liver.

The amount of alcohol necessary to cause cirrhosis varies widely from person to person, and there are gender differences. In women, it may take as few as two to three drinks per day over a minimum of 10 years. In men, perhaps six drinks per day over the same time period may be needed to cause disease. Binge drinking can increase risk for hepatitis and fatty liver.

Biliary cirrhosis occurs as a result of obstruction of the bile duct, usually from gallbladder disease or an autoimmune form of the disease called *primary biliary cirrhosis (PBC)*. Patients with PBC typically have a genetic predisposition to the disease and a positive antimitochondrial antibody (AMA) (Lindor et al., 2009). [Table 61-3](#) summarizes known causes of liver cirrhosis.

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of cirrhosis in the United States is not well known, but about 27,000 die from it each year. The disease affects twice as many men as women (Kelso, 2008).

TABLE 61-3 COMMON CAUSES OF CIRRHOSIS

• Alcoholic liver disease	• Drugs and chemical toxins
• Viral hepatitis	• Gallbladder disease
• Autoimmune hepatitis	• Metabolic/genetic causes
• Steatohepatitis (from fatty liver)	• Cardiovascular disease

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Obtain data from patients with suspected cirrhosis, including age, gender, and employment history, especially history of exposure to alcohol, drugs (prescribed and illicit), and chemical toxins. Keep in mind that all exposures are important regardless of how long ago they occurred. Determine whether there has ever been a needle stick injury. Sexual history and orientation may be important in determining an infectious cause for liver disease, because men having sex with men (MSM) are at high risk for hepatitis A, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C. People with hepatitis can develop cirrhosis ([American Liver Foundation, 2011](#)).

Inquire about whether there is a family history of alcoholism and/or liver disease. Ask the patient to describe his or her alcohol intake, including the amount consumed during a given period. Is there a history of illicit drug use, including oral, IV, and intranasal forms? Is there a history of tattoos? Has the patient been in the military or in prison? Is the patient a health care worker, firefighter, or police officer? For patients previously or currently in an alcohol or drug recovery program, how long have they been sober? This information is sensitive and often difficult for the patient to answer. Be sure to establish why you are asking these questions, and accept answers in a nonjudgmental manner. Provide privacy during the interview. For many people, the behaviors causing the liver disease occurred years before the onset of their current illness and they are regretful and often embarrassed.

Ask the patient about previous medical conditions, such as an episode of jaundice or acute viral hepatitis, biliary tract disorders (such as cholecystitis), viral infections, surgery, blood transfusions, autoimmune disorders, obesity, altered lipid profile, heart failure, respiratory disorders, or liver injury.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Because cirrhosis has a slow onset, many of the *early* manifestations are vague and nonspecific. Assess for:

- Fatigue
- Significant change in weight
- GI symptoms, such as anorexia and vomiting
- Abdominal pain and liver tenderness (both of which may be ignored by the patient)

Liver function problems are often found during a routine physical examination or when laboratory tests are completed for an unrelated illness or problem. The patient with *compensated cirrhosis* may be completely unaware that there is a liver problem. The first sign may present before the onset of symptoms when routine laboratory tests, presurgical evaluations, or life and health insurance assessments show abnormalities. These tests could indicate abnormal liver function or thrombocytopenia, requiring a more thorough diagnostic workup.

The development of late signs of *advanced cirrhosis* (also called “end-stage liver failure”) usually causes the patient to seek medical treatment. GI bleeding, jaundice, ascites, and spontaneous bruising indicate poor liver function and complications of cirrhosis.

Thoroughly assess the patient with liver dysfunction or failure because it affects every body system ([Fig. 61-1](#)). The

NEUROLOGIC FINDINGS

Asterixis
Paresthesias of feet
Peripheral nerve degeneration
Portal-systemic encephalopathy
Reversal of sleep-wake pattern
Sensory disturbances

GASTROINTESTINAL (GI)
FINDINGS

Abdominal pain
Anorexia
Ascites
Clay-colored stools
Diarrhea
Esophageal varices
Fetor hepaticus
Gallstones
Gastritis
Gastrointestinal bleeding
Hemorrhoidal varices
Hepatomegaly
Hiatal hernia
Hypersplenism
Malnutrition
Nausea
Small nodular liver
Vomiting

RENAL FINDINGS

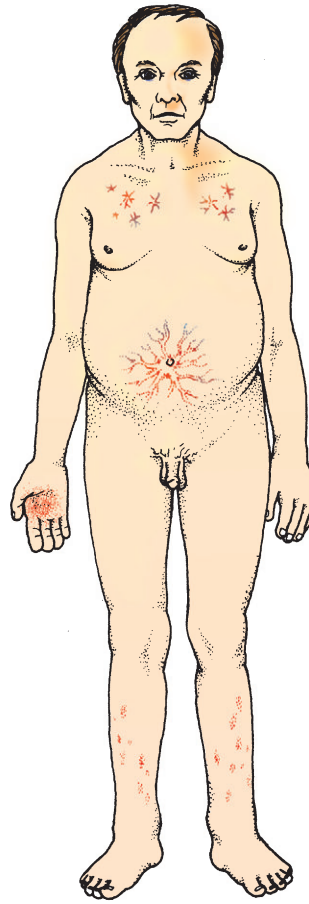
Hepatorenal syndrome
Increased urine bilirubin

ENDOCRINE FINDINGS

Increased aldosterone
Increased antidiuretic hormone
Increased circulating estrogens
Increased glucocorticoids
Gynecomastia

IMMUNE SYSTEM DISTURBANCES

Increased susceptibility to infection
Leukopenia



CARDIOVASCULAR FINDINGS

Cardiac dysrhythmias
Development of collateral circulation
Fatigue
Hyperkinetic circulation
Peripheral edema
Portal hypertension
Spider angiomas

PULMONARY FINDINGS

Dyspnea
Hydrothorax
Hyperventilation
Hypoxemia

HEMATOLOGIC FINDINGS

Anemia
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Impaired coagulation
Splenomegaly
Thrombocytopenia

DERMATOLOGIC FINDINGS

Axillary and pubic hair changes
Caput medusae
Ecchymosis
Increased skin pigmentation
Jaundice
Palmar erythema
Pruritus
Spider angiomas

FLUID AND ELECTROLYTE
DISTURBANCES

Ascites
Decreased effective blood volume
Dilutional hyponatremia or hypernatremia
Hypocalcemia
Hypokalemia
Peripheral edema
Water retention

FIG. 61-1 The clinical picture of a patient with liver dysfunction. Manifestations vary according to the progression of the disease.

clinical picture and course vary from patient to patient depending on the severity of the disease. Assess for:

- Obvious yellowing of the skin (jaundice) and sclerae (icterus)
- Dry skin
- Rashes
- Purpuric lesions, such as **petechiae** (round, pinpoint, red-purple lesions) or **ecchymosis** (large purple, blue, or yellow bruises)
- Warm and bright red palms of the hands (palmar erythema)
- Vascular lesions with a red center and radiating branches, known as **“spider angiomas”** (telangiectases, spider nevi, or vascular spiders), on the nose, cheeks, upper thorax, and shoulders
- Ascites (abdominal fluid)
- Peripheral dependent edema of the extremities and sacrum
- Sicca syndrome (in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis [PBC]) (Lindor et al., 2009)

- Osteoporosis (especially in patients with PBC) (Lindor et al., 2009)
- Vitamin deficiency (especially fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K)

Abdominal Assessment. Massive ascites can be detected as a distended abdomen with bulging flanks. The umbilicus may protrude, and dilated abdominal veins (caput medusae) may radiate from the umbilicus. Ascites can cause physical problems. For example, orthopnea and dyspnea from increased abdominal distention can interfere with lung expansion. The patient may have difficulty maintaining an erect body posture, and problems with balance may affect walking. Inspect and palpate for the presence of inguinal or umbilical hernias, which are likely to develop because of increased intra-abdominal pressure.

Minimal ascites is often more difficult to detect, especially in the obese patient. Advanced assessment techniques, such as the percussion test for shifting dullness and the presence of a fluid wave, may be performed by the health care provider.

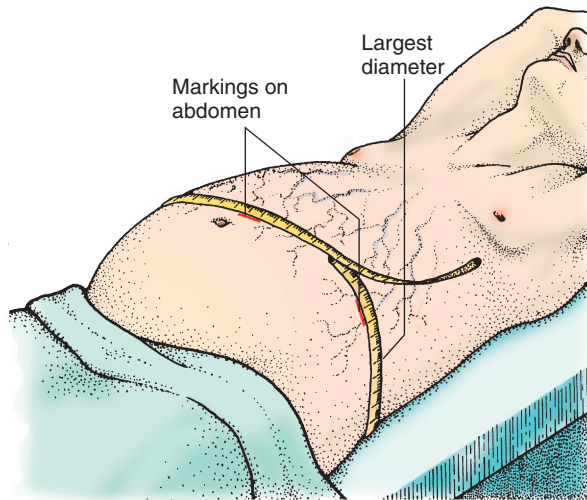


FIG. 61-2 How to measure abdominal girth. With the patient supine, bring the tape measure around the patient and take a measurement at the level of the umbilicus. Before removing the tape, mark the abdomen along the sides of the tape on the patient's flanks (sides) and midline to ensure that later measurements are taken in the same place.

When performing an assessment of the abdomen, keep in mind that **hepatomegaly** (liver enlargement) occurs in many cases of early cirrhosis. Splenomegaly is common in nonalcoholic causes of cirrhosis. As the liver deteriorates, it may become hard and small. The advanced practice nurse or other health care provider palpates the right upper quadrant for hepatomegaly below the costal (rib cage) border. It may also be assessed by percussing for dullness over the enlarged liver.

Measure the patient's abdominal girth to evaluate the progression of ascites (Fig. 61-2). To measure abdominal girth, the patient lies flat while the nurse or other examiner pulls a tape measure around the largest diameter (usually over the umbilicus) of the abdomen. The girth is measured at the end of exhalation. Mark the abdominal skin and flanks to ensure the same tape measure placement on subsequent readings. *Taking daily weights, however, is the most reliable indicator of fluid retention.*

Other Physical Assessment. Observe vomitus and stool for blood. This may be indicated by frank blood in the excrement or by a positive fecal occult blood test (FOBT) (Hema-Check, Hematest). Gastritis, stomach ulceration, or oozing esophageal varices may be responsible for the blood in the stool.

Note the presence of **fetor hepaticus**, which is the distinctive breath odor of chronic liver disease and hepatic encephalopathy and is characterized by a fruity or musty odor. Fetor hepaticus results from the inability of the damaged liver to metabolize and detoxify mercaptan, which is produced by bacterial breakdown of methionine, a sulfurous amino acid.

Amenorrhea (no menstrual period) may occur in women and men may exhibit testicular atrophy, **gynecomastia** (enlarged breasts), and impotence as a result of inactive hormones. Patients with problems of the hematologic system caused by hepatic failure may have bruising and petechiae (small, purplish hemorrhagic spots on the skin).

Continually assess the patient's neurologic function. Subtle changes in mental status and personality often progress to coma, a late complication of encephalopathy. Monitor for **asterixis**, a coarse tremor characterized by rapid, nonrhythmic extensions and flexions in the wrists and fingers.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with hepatic cirrhosis may undergo subtle or obvious personality, cognitive, and behavior changes, such as agitation. He or she may experience sleep pattern disturbances or may exhibit signs of emotional lability (fluctuations in emotions), euphoria (a very elevated mood), or depression. A psychosocial assessment identifies needs and helps guide care.

Repeated hospitalizations are common for patients with cirrhosis. It is a life-altering chronic disease, impacting not only the patient but also the immediate and extended family members and significant others. There are significant emotional, physical, and financial changes. Substance abuse may continue even as health worsens. It is important, whenever possible, to use resources available to these patients and their families. Collaborate with social workers, substance abuse counselors, and mental health/behavioral health care professionals as needed for patient assessment and management.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory study abnormalities are common in patients with liver disease (Table 61-4). Serum levels of aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) may be elevated because these enzymes are released into the blood during hepatic inflammation. However, as the liver deteriorates, the hepatocytes may be unable to create an inflammatory response and the AST and ALT may be normal. ALT levels are more specific to the liver whereas AST can be found in muscle, kidney, brain, and heart. An AST/ALT ratio greater than 2 is usually found in alcoholic liver disease.

Increased alkaline phosphatase and gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) levels are caused by biliary obstruction and therefore may increase in patients with cirrhosis (Kelso, 2008). However, alkaline phosphatase also increases when bone disease, such as osteoporosis, is present. Total serum bilirubin levels also rise. Indirect bilirubin levels increase in patients with cirrhosis because of the inability of the failing liver to excrete bilirubin. Therefore bilirubin is present in the urine (urobilinogen) in increased amounts. Fecal urobilinogen concentration is decreased in patients with biliary tract obstruction. These patients have light- or clay-colored stools.

Total serum protein and albumin levels are decreased in patients with severe or chronic liver disease as a result of decreased synthesis by the liver (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Loss of osmotic "pull" proteins like albumin promotes the movement of intravascular fluid into the interstitial tissues (e.g., ascites). Prothrombin time/international normalized ratio (PT/INR) is prolonged because the liver decreases the production of prothrombin. The platelet count is low, resulting in a characteristic thrombocytopenia of cirrhosis. Anemia may be reflected by decreased red blood cell (RBC), hemoglobin, and hematocrit values. The white blood cell (WBC) count may also be decreased. Ammonia levels are usually elevated in patients with advanced liver disease. Serum creatinine may be elevated in patients with deteriorating kidney

TABLE 61-4 ASSESSMENT OF ABNORMAL LABORATORY FINDINGS IN LIVER DISEASE

ABNORMAL FINDING	SIGNIFICANCE
Serum Enzymes	
Elevated serum aspartate aminotransferase (AST)	Hepatic cell destruction, hepatitis (most specific indicator)
Elevated serum alanine aminotransferase (ALT)	Hepatic cell destruction, hepatitis
Elevated lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	Hepatic cell destruction
Elevated serum alkaline phosphatase	Obstructive jaundice, hepatic metastasis
Bilirubin	
Elevated serum total bilirubin	Hepatic cell disease
Elevated serum direct conjugated bilirubin	Hepatitis, liver metastasis
Elevated serum indirect unconjugated bilirubin	Cirrhosis
Elevated urine bilirubin	Hepatocellular obstruction, viral or toxic liver disease
Elevated urine urobilinogen	Hepatic dysfunction
Decreased fecal urobilinogen	Obstructive liver disease
Serum Proteins	
Increased serum total protein	Acute liver disease
Decreased serum total protein	Chronic liver disease
Decreased serum albumin	Severe liver disease
Elevated serum globulin	Immune response to liver disease
Other Tests	
Elevated serum ammonia	Advanced liver disease or portal-systemic encephalopathy (PSE)
Prolonged prothrombin time (PT) or international normalized ratio (INR)	Hepatic cell damage and decreased synthesis of prothrombin

function. Dilutional hyponatremia (low serum sodium) may occur in patients with ascites.

Patients with primary biliary cirrhosis, an autoimmune disease, usually have high disease-specific AMA and anti-nuclear antibody (ANA) titers and elevated levels of immunoglobulin M (IgM) (Lindor et al., 2009).

Imaging Assessment

Plain x-rays of the abdomen may show hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, or massive ascites. A computed tomography (CT) scan may be requested.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is another test used to diagnose the patient with liver disease. It can reveal mass lesions, giving additional specific information. This information is helpful in determining whether the condition is malignant or benign.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Ultrasound (US) of the liver is often the first assessment for a person with suspected liver disease to detect ascites, hepatomegaly, and splenomegaly. It can also determine the presence of biliary stones or biliary duct obstruction. Liver US is useful

in detecting portal vein thrombosis and evaluating whether the direction of portal blood flow is normal.

Some patients being assessed for liver disease require biopsies to determine the exact pathology and the extent of disease progression. This procedure can be problematic because a large number of patients are at risk for bleeding. Even a **percutaneous** (through the skin) biopsy can pose a significant risk to the patient. To minimize this risk, an interventional radiologist can perform a liver biopsy using a long sheath through a jugular vein that then is threaded into the hepatic vein and liver. A tissue sample is obtained for microscopic evaluation. If a biopsy procedure is not possible, a radioisotope liver scan may be used to identify cirrhosis or other diffuse disease.

The physician may request *arteriography* if US is not conclusive in finding portal vein thrombosis. To evaluate the portal vein and its branches, a portal venogram may be performed instead, by passing a catheter into the liver and into the portal vein. This procedure is described on p. 1302 in the Transjugular Intrahepatic Portal-Systemic Shunt section.

The physician may perform an **esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD)** to directly visualize the upper GI tract and to detect the presence of bleeding or oozing esophageal varices, stomach irritation and ulceration, or duodenal ulceration and bleeding. EGD is performed by introducing a flexible fiberoptic endoscope into the mouth, esophagus, and stomach while the patient is under moderate sedation. A camera attached to the scope permits direct visualization of the mucosal lining of the upper GI tract. An **endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)** uses the endoscope to inject contrast material via the sphincter of Oddi to view the biliary tract and allow for stone removals, sphincteromies, biopsies, and stent placements if required. These procedures are described in more detail in [Chapter 55](#).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

When caring for a client with advanced cirrhosis, what laboratory assessment findings will the nurse expect? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Increased serum albumin
- B. Decreased bilirubin in the urine
- C. Increased alanine aminotransferase
- D. Increased alkaline phosphatase
- E. Decreased bilirubin in the stool
- F. Increased platelets

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with cirrhosis include:

1. Excess Fluid Volume related to third spacing of abdominal and peripheral fluid
2. Potential for hemorrhage due to portal hypertension
3. Potential for hepatic encephalopathy due to shunting of portal venous blood and/or increased serum ammonia levels

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Fluid Volume

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with cirrhosis is expected to have less excess fluid volume as evidenced by decreased ascites and peripheral edema and adequate circulatory volume. If ascites continues, the patient will not have

respiratory distress and will manage ascites by adhering to the collaborative plan of care (see the Concept Map for liver failure due to cirrhosis on p. 1301).

Interventions. Fluid accumulations are minimal during the early stages of ascites. Therefore interventions are aimed at preventing the accumulation of additional fluid and moving the existing fluid collection. Nonsurgical treatment measures are used to treat ascites in most cases.

Supportive measures to control abdominal ascites include nutrition therapy, drug therapy, paracentesis, and respiratory support. The patient's fluid and electrolyte status is also carefully monitored. If the patient is jaundiced, he or she will likely scratch the skin because the excess bilirubin products cause irritation and pruritus (itching).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For skin irritation and pruritus associated with jaundice, teach the patient to use cool rather than warm water on the skin and to not use an excessive amount of soap. Teach unlicensed assistive personnel to use lotion to soothe the skin. Assess for open skin areas from scratching, which could become infected.

Nutrition Therapy. The health care provider usually places the patient with abdominal ascites on a low-sodium diet as an initial means of controlling fluid accumulation in the abdominal cavity. The amount of daily sodium (Na^+) intake restriction varies, but a 1- to 2-gram (2000 mg) Na^+ restriction may be tried first. In collaboration with the dietitian, explain the purpose of the restriction and advise the patient and family to read the sodium content labels on all food and beverages. Table salt should be completely excluded. Low-sodium diets may be distasteful, so suggest alternative flavoring additives such as lemon, vinegar, parsley, oregano, and pepper. Remind the patient that seasoned and salty food is an acquired taste; in time, he or she will become used to the decrease in dietary sodium.

In general, patients with late-stage cirrhosis are malnourished and have multiple dietary deficiencies. Vitamin supplements such as thiamine (due to alcohol withdrawal), folate, and multivitamin preparations are typically added to the IV fluids because the liver cannot store vitamins. For patients with biliary cirrhosis, bile may not be available for fat-soluble vitamin transport and absorption. Oral vitamins are prescribed when IV fluid administration is discontinued.

Drug Therapy. The health care provider usually prescribes a *diuretic* to reduce fluid accumulation and to prevent cardiac and respiratory problems. Monitor the effect of diuretic therapy by weighing the patient daily, measuring daily intake and output, measuring abdominal girth, documenting peripheral edema, and assessing electrolyte levels. Serious electrolyte imbalances, such as hypokalemia (decreased potassium) and hyponatremia (decreased sodium), may occur with loop diuretic therapy. Depending on the diuretic selected, the provider may prescribe an oral or IV potassium supplement. Some clinicians prescribe a combination of furosemide (Lasix) and spironolactone (Aldactone) as a combination diuretic therapy for the treatment of ascites. Because these drugs work differently, they are used for maintenance of sodium and potassium balance. For example, furosemide causes potassium loss, whereas spironolactone conserves it in the body.

CHART 61-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

The Patient with Paracentesis

- Explain the procedure, and answer patient questions.
- Obtain vital signs, including weight.
- *Ask the patient to void before the procedure to prevent injury to the bladder!*
- Position the patient in bed with the head of the bed elevated.
- Monitor vital signs per protocol or physician's request.
- Measure the drainage, and record accurately.
- Describe the collected fluid.
- Label and send the fluid for laboratory analysis; document in the patient record that specimens were sent.
- After the physician removes the catheter, apply a dressing to the site; assess for leakage.
- Maintain bedrest per protocol.
- Weigh the patient after the paracentesis; document in the patient record weight both before and after paracentesis.

All patients with ascites have the potential to develop **spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP)** from bacteria in the collected ascitic fluid. In some patients, mild symptoms such as low-grade fever and loss of appetite occur. In others, there may be abdominal pain, fever, and change in mental status. When performing an abdominal assessment, listen for bowel sounds and assess for abdominal wall rigidity. Send a sample of ascitic fluid for a culture before drug therapy begins. Quinolones such as norfloxacin (Noroxin) are the drugs of choice for SBP. If the patient is allergic to this class of *antibiotics*, combination antibiotics like trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim) are given.

Paracentesis. For some patients, abdominal **paracentesis** may be needed. Nursing implications associated with this procedure are described in [Chart 61-1](#). The procedure is performed at the bedside, in an interventional radiology department, or in an ambulatory care setting. The physician inserts a trocar catheter or drain into the abdomen to remove the ascitic fluid from the peritoneal cavity. This procedure is done using ultrasound for added safety. In some situations, a short-term ascites drain catheter may be placed while the patient is awaiting surgical intervention, or new tunneled ascites drains (e.g., PleurX drains) can allow a patient or family caregiver to drain ascites at home.

If SBP is suspected, a sample of fluid is withdrawn and sent for cell count and culture. If the patient has symptoms of infection, the physician may prescribe antibiotics while awaiting the culture results.

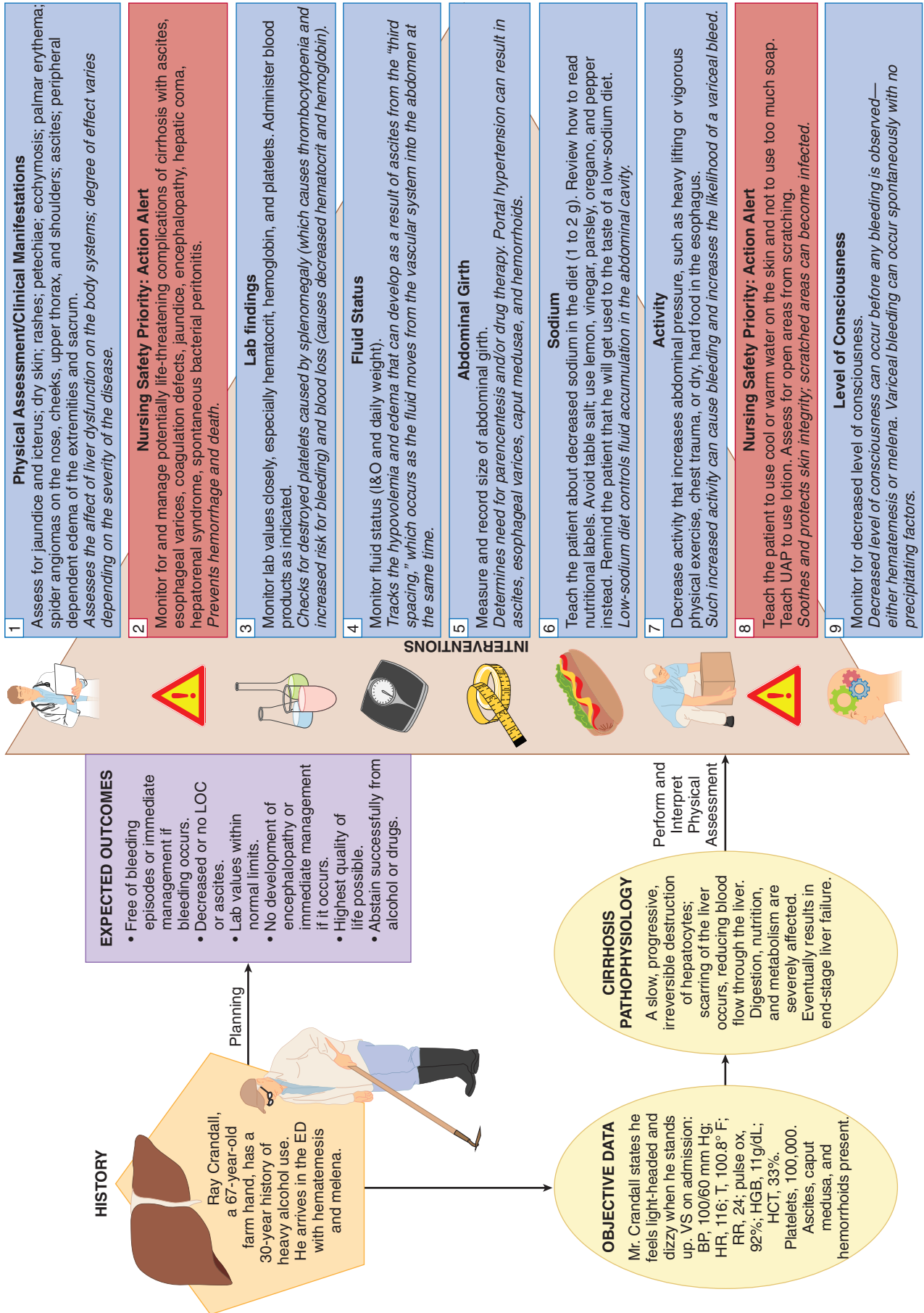
Respiratory Support. Excessive ascitic fluid volume may cause the patient to have respiratory problems. He or she may develop **hepatopulmonary syndrome**. Dyspnea develops as a

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient with hepatopulmonary syndrome, monitor his or her oxygen saturation with pulse oximetry. If needed, apply oxygen therapy to ease breathing. Elevate the head of the bed to at least 30 degrees or as high as the patient wants to improve breathing. This position, with his or her feet elevated to decrease dependent ankle edema, often relieves dyspnea. Weigh the patient daily, or delegate and supervise this activity.

Concept Map: Cirrhosis



result of increased intra-abdominal pressure, which limits thoracic expansion and diaphragmatic excursion. Auscultate lungs every 4 to 8 hours for crackles that could indicate pulmonary complications, depending on the patient's overall condition.

Fluid and electrolyte imbalances are common as a result of the disease or treatment. Laboratory tests, such as blood urea nitrogen (BUN), serum protein, hematocrit, and electrolytes, help determine fluid and electrolyte status. An elevated BUN, decreased serum proteins, and increased hematocrit may indicate hypovolemia.

If medical management fails to control ascites, the physician may choose to divert ascites into the venous system by creating a shunt. Patients with ascites are poor surgical risks. The transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt (TIPS) is a nonsurgical procedure that is used to control long-term ascites and to reduce variceal bleeding. This procedure is described in the discussion of Interventions in the Preventing or Managing Hemorrhage section that follows.

Preventing or Managing Hemorrhage

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to be free of bleeding episodes. However, if he or she has a hemorrhage, it is expected to be controlled by prompt, evidence-based interdisciplinary interventions. Esophageal variceal bleeds are the most common type of upper GI bleeding.

Interventions. All patients with cirrhosis should be screened for esophageal varices by endoscopy to detect them early *before they bleed*. If patients have varices, they are placed on preventive therapy. If acute bleeding occurs, early interventions are used to manage it. *Because massive esophageal bleeding can cause rapid blood loss, emergency interventions are needed.*

Drug Therapy. The role of early drug therapy is to *prevent* bleeding and infection in patients who have varices. A non-selective *beta-blocking agent* such as propranolol (Inderal) is usually prescribed to prevent bleeding. By decreasing heart rate and the hepatic venous pressure gradient, the chance of bleeding may be reduced.

Up to 20% of cirrhotic patients who are admitted to the hospital due to upper GI bleeding have bacterial infections, and even more patients develop health care–associated infections, usually urinary tract infections or pneumonia. Infection is one of the most common indicators that patients will have an acute variceal bleed (AVB). Therefore cirrhotic patients with GI bleeding should receive *antibiotics* on admission to the hospital. The recommended antibiotic is oral norfloxacin (Noroxin) or ciprofloxacin (Cipro). IV ceftriaxone (Cefizox) may be more effective for some patients (Augustin et al., 2010).

If bleeding occurs, the health care team intervenes quickly to control it by combining vasoactive drugs with endoscopic

therapies. *Vasoactive drugs* reduce portal pressure. Research shows that IV terlipressin (a synthetic vasopressin) and natural somatostatin are the most effective (Augustin et al., 2010). Octreotide, a synthetic somatostatin, and vasopressin may be used as a last resort because they have multiple side effects.

Endoscopic Therapies. Endoscopic therapies include ligation of the bleeding veins or sclerotherapy. Both procedures have been very effective in controlling bleeding and improving patient survival rates. Esophageal varices may be managed with **endoscopic variceal ligation (EVL) (banding)**. This procedure involves the application of small “O” bands around the base of the varices to decrease the blood supply to the varices. The patient is unaware of the bands, and they cause no discomfort.

Endoscopic sclerotherapy (EST), also called injection **sclerotherapy**, may be done to stop bleeding. The varices are injected with a sclerosing agent via a catheter. This procedure is associated with complications such as mucosal ulceration, which could result in further bleeding.

Rescue Therapies. If rebleeding occurs, rescue therapies are used. These procedures include a second endoscopic procedure, balloon tamponade and esophageal stents, and shunting procedures. Short-term esophagogastric balloon tamponade using a Minnesota or Sengstaken-Blakemore tube with esophageal stents is a very effective way to control bleeding. However, the procedure can cause potentially life-threatening complications, such as aspiration, asphyxia, and esophageal perforation (Augustin et al., 2010). Similar to a nasogastric tube, the tube is placed through the nose and into the stomach. An attached balloon is inflated to apply pressure to the bleeding variceal area. Before this tamponade, the patient is usually intubated and placed on a mechanical ventilator to protect the airway (Kelso, 2008). This therapy is used if the patient is not able to have a second endoscopy or TIPS procedure.

Transjugular Intrahepatic Portal-Systemic Shunt. The transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt (TIPS) is a nonsurgical procedure performed in interventional radiology departments. This procedure is used for patients who have not responded to other modalities for hemorrhage or long-term ascites. If time permits, patients have a Doppler ultrasound to assess vein anatomy and patency. The patient receives heavy IV sedation or general anesthesia for this procedure. The radiologist places a large sheath through the jugular vein. A needle is guided through the sheath and pushed through the liver into the portal vein. A balloon enlarges this tract, and a stent keeps it open. Most patients also have a Doppler ultrasound study of the liver after the TIPS procedure to record the blood flow through the shunt.

Serious complications of TIPS are not common. Patients are usually discharged in 1 or 2 days and are followed up with ultrasounds for the first year after the shunt is placed. Some of them require re-opening at least once during the first year as an ambulatory care procedure.

Other Interventions. Depending on the procedure done to control esophageal bleeding, patients usually have a nasogastric tube (NGT) inserted to detect any new bleeding episodes. Patients often receive packed red blood cells, fresh frozen plasma, dextran, albumin, and platelets through large-bore IV catheters.

Monitor vital signs every hour, and check coagulation studies, including prothrombin time (PT), partial

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Both terlipressin and somatostatin can cause ischemic complications and serious dysrhythmias. Observe patients for significant changes in cardiac rhythm, apical pulse rate, and blood pressure. Monitor for clinical manifestations of a stroke, and report any changes immediately to the physician. The patient is managed in the critical care setting.

thromboplastin time (PTT), platelet count, and international normalized ratio (INR).

Additional interventions for upper GI bleeding are discussed in [Chapter 58](#). All patients with GI bleeding from esophageal varices should be considered for liver transplantation to prevent further bleeding episodes.

Preventing or Managing Hepatic Encephalopathy

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to be free of encephalopathy. However, if it occurs, it is expected that the interdisciplinary team will intervene early to prevent further health problems or death.

Interventions. The mechanisms that cause hepatic encephalopathy are not completely clear, but ammonia probably plays a significant role. The poorly functioning liver cannot convert ammonia and other by-products of protein metabolism to a less toxic form. They are carried by the circulatory system to the brain, where they affect cerebral function. The aim of management is to stop or slow this process.

Because ammonia is formed in the GI tract by the action of bacteria on protein, nonsurgical treatment measures to decrease ammonia production include dietary limitations and drug therapy to reduce bacterial breakdown. Collaborate with the dietitian, pharmacist, and physician to plan and implement these interventions.

Nutrition Therapy. Patients with cirrhosis have increased nutritional requirements—high-carbohydrate, moderate-fat, and high-protein foods. However, the diet may be changed for those who have elevated serum ammonia levels with signs of encephalopathy. Patients should have a moderate amount of protein and fat foods and simple carbohydrates. Strict protein restrictions are not required because patients need protein for healing. In collaboration with the dietitian, be sure to include family members or significant others in nutrition counseling. The patient is often weak and unable to remember complicated guidelines. Brief, simple directions regarding dietary dos and don'ts are recommended. Keep in mind any financial, cultural, or personal preferences when discussing food choices, including the patient's food allergies.

When a patient with cirrhosis has GI bleeding, it can result in the formation of increased amounts of ammonia as intestinal bacteria attempt to metabolize the blood cells. GI bleeding may lead to hepatic coma.

Drug Therapy. Drugs are used sparingly because they are difficult for the failing liver to metabolize. In particular, opioid analgesics, sedatives, and barbiturates should be restricted, especially for the patient with a history of encephalopathy.

Several types of drugs, however, may eliminate or reduce ammonia levels in the body. These include lactulose (e.g., Evalose, Heptalac) or lactitol and nonabsorbable antibiotics. However, these drugs are often not effective.

The health care provider may prescribe *lactulose* (or lactitol) to promote the excretion of ammonia in the stool. This drug is a viscous, sticky, sweet-tasting liquid that is given either orally or by NG tube. The purpose is to obtain a laxative effect. Cleansing the bowels may rid the intestinal tract of the toxins that contribute to encephalopathy. It works by increasing osmotic pressure to draw fluid into the colon and prevents absorption of ammonia in the colon. The drug may be prescribed to the patient who has manifested signs of

encephalopathy, regardless of the stage. The desired effect of the drug is production of two or three soft stools per day and a decrease in patient confusion caused by this complication.

Observe for response to lactulose. The patient may report intestinal bloating and cramping. Serum ammonia levels may be monitored but do not always correlate with symptoms. Hypokalemia and dehydration may result from excessive stools. Remind unlicensed nursing personnel to help the patient with skin care if needed to prevent breakdown caused by excessive stools.

Several *nonabsorbable antibiotics* may be given if lactulose does not help the patient meet the desired outcome or if he or she cannot tolerate the drug. These drugs should not be given together. Older adults can become weak and dehydrated from having multiple stools. Neomycin sulfate (Mycifradin), a broad-spectrum antibiotic, may be given to act as an intestinal antiseptic. It destroys the normal flora in the bowel, diminishing protein breakdown and decreasing the rate of ammonia production. Maintenance doses of neomycin are given orally but may also be administered as a retention enema. Long-term use has the potential for kidney toxicity and therefore is not commonly used. It cannot be used for patients with existing kidney disease.

Metronidazole (Flagyl, Novonidazole ) is another broad-spectrum antibiotic with similar action to neomycin, but it has less potential for renal toxicity. However, it should also be used for a short period of time and is therefore not commonly used. Rifaximin (Xifaxan) seems to be the most effective and safest for long-term use.

Frequently assess for changes in level of consciousness and orientation. Check for asterixis (liver flap) and fetor hepaticus (liver breath). These signs suggest worsening encephalopathy. Thiamine supplements and benzodiazepines may be needed if the patient is at risk for alcohol withdrawal.

Community-Based Care

If the patient with late-stage cirrhosis survives life-threatening complications, he or she is usually discharged to the home or to a long-term care facility after treatment measures have managed the acute medical problems. A home care referral may be needed if the patient is discharged to the home. These chronically ill patients are often readmitted multiple times, and community-based care is aimed at preventing rehospitalization. Patients with end-stage disease may benefit from hospice care. Collaborate with the case manager (CM) or other discharge planner to coordinate interdisciplinary continuing care.

Home Care Management

In collaboration with the patient, family, and CM, assess physical adaptations needed to prepare the patient's home for recovery. Referrals for physical therapy, nutrition therapy, and transportation for physician and laboratory follow-up may be needed. The patient's rest area needs to be close to a bathroom because diuretic and/or lactulose therapy increases the frequency of urination and stools. If the patient has difficulty reaching the toilet, additional equipment (e.g., bedside commode) is necessary. Special, adult-size incontinence pads or briefs may be helpful if the patient has an altered mental status and has incontinence. If the patient has shortness of breath from massive ascites, elevating the head of the bed and maintaining the patient in a semi-Fowler's to high Fowler's

CHART 61-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Cirrhosis

Nutrition Therapy

- Consume a diet that adheres to the guidelines set by your physician, nurse, or dietitian.
- If you have excessive fluid in your abdomen, follow the low-sodium diet prescribed for you.
- Eat small, frequent meals that are nutritionally well balanced.
- Include in your diet daily supplemental liquids (e.g., Ensure or Ensure Plus) and a multivitamin.

Drug Therapy

- Take the diuretics or preventive beta blocker prescribed for you. If you experience muscle weakness, irregular heartbeat, or lightheadedness, contact your health care provider right away.
- Take the medication prescribed for you that helps prevent gastrointestinal bleeding.
- Take the lactulose syrup as prescribed to maintain two or three bowel movements every day.
- Do *not* take any other medication (prescribed or over the counter) unless specifically prescribed by your health care provider.

Alcohol Abstinence

- Do not consume any alcohol.
- Seek support services for help if needed.

position may help alleviate respiratory distress. Alternatively, a reclining chair with a foot elevator may be used.

Teaching for Self-Management

The patient is discharged to the home setting with an individualized teaching plan (Chart 61-2) that includes nutrition therapy, drug therapy, and alcohol abstinence, if needed. The patient who has a tunneled ascites drain (e.g., PleurX drain) will need teaching about how to access the drain and remove excess fluid. If needed, family teaching is also required.

In collaboration with the dietitian and in keeping with the patient's financial, cultural, and personal food preferences, provide information on eating a well-balanced diet. The patient with encephalopathy often finds that small, frequent meals are best tolerated. If the patient's nutritional intake or albumin/pre-albumin is decreased after discharge, multivitamin supplements and supplemental liquid feedings (e.g., Ensure, Boost) are usually needed. Teach patients to avoid excessive vitamins and minerals that can be toxic to the liver, such as fat-soluble vitamins, excessive iron supplements, and niacin. Remind patients to check labels for these substances before taking any vitamin supplement.

The patient is often discharged while receiving diuretics. Provide instructions regarding the health care provider's prescription for the diuretic. Teach about side effects of therapy, such as hypokalemia. The patient may need to take a potassium supplement if he or she is taking a diuretic that is not potassium-sparing.

If the patient has had problems with bleeding from gastric ulcers, the provider may prescribe an H₂-receptor antagonist agent or proton pump inhibitor to reduce acid reflux (see Chapter 57). Patients who have had episodes of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) may be on a daily maintenance antibiotic. Because some patients may have alienated relatives

over the years because of substance abuse, it may be necessary to help them identify a friend, neighbor, or person in their recovery group for support.

Teach family members about how to recognize signs of encephalopathy and to contact the health care provider if these signs develop. Reinforce that constipation, bleeding, and infections can increase the risk for encephalopathy.

Advise the patient to avoid all over-the-counter drugs, especially NSAIDs and hepatic toxic herbs, vitamins, and minerals. Reinforce the need to keep appointments for follow-up medical care. Remind the patient and family to notify the physician immediately if any GI bleeding (overt bleeding or melena) is noted so that re-evaluation can begin quickly.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

One of the most important aspects of ongoing care for the patient with cirrhosis is to stress the need to avoid alcohol and illicit drugs. By avoiding alcohol and drugs, the patient may:

- Prevent further fibrosis of the liver from scarring
- Allow the liver to heal and regenerate
- Prevent gastric and esophageal irritation
- Reduce the incidence of bleeding
- Prevent other life-threatening complications

Health Care Resources

The patient with chronic cirrhosis may require a home care nurse for several visits after hospital discharge. The home care nurse can monitor the effectiveness of treatment in controlling ascites. The encephalopathic patient may need to be monitored for adherence to drug therapy and alcohol abstinence, if appropriate. Individual and group therapy sessions may be arranged to assist patients in dealing with alcohol abstinence if they are too ill to attend a formal treatment program. If needed, refer the patient and family to self-help groups, such as Alcoholics Anonymous and Al-Anon.

The patient with cirrhosis may also desire spiritual support. Finances are frequently a problem for the chronically ill patient and family; social support and community services need to be identified. The American Liver Foundation (www.liverfoundation.org) and American Gastroenterological Association (www.gastro.org) are excellent sources for more information about liver disease.

For patients who are not candidates for liver transplantation, address end-of-life issues. Discuss options such as hospice care with patients and their families. Be aware that they will go through a grieving process and will perhaps be in denial or very angry (see Chapter 9).

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with cirrhosis based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Have a decrease in or have no ascites
- Have electrolytes within normal limits (WNL)
- Not have hemorrhage or will be managed immediately if bleeding occurs
- Not develop encephalopathy or will be managed immediately if it occurs

- Have the highest quality of life possible
- Successfully abstain from alcohol or drugs (if disease is caused by these substances)

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

The nurse is providing discharge teaching for the client with advanced liver disease. Which statement by the client indicates a need for further teaching?

- A. "I don't need hospice because I'm only 55 years old."
- B. "I'll ask my wife to contact our local support group."
- C. "I plan to talk with the pastor at our church."
- D. "My wife and I plan to get Meals on Wheels."

HEPATITIS

Pathophysiology

Hepatitis is the widespread inflammation of liver cells. **Viral hepatitis** is the most common type and can be either acute or chronic. Less common types of hepatitis are caused by chemicals, drugs, and some herbs. This section discusses hepatitis caused by a virus. **Viral hepatitis** results from an infection caused by one of five major categories of viruses:

- Hepatitis A virus (HAV)
- Hepatitis B virus (HBV)
- Hepatitis C virus (HCV)
- Hepatitis D virus (HDV)
- Hepatitis E virus (HEV)

Some cases of viral hepatitis are not any of these viruses. These patients have non-A-E hepatitis.

Liver injury with inflammation can develop after exposure to a number of drugs and chemicals by inhalation, ingestion, or parenteral (IV) administration. **Toxic and drug-induced hepatitis** can result from exposure to hepatotoxins (e.g., industrial toxins, alcohol, and drugs). Hepatitis may also occur as a secondary infection during the course of infections with other viruses, such as Epstein-Barr, herpes simplex, varicella-zoster, and cytomegalovirus.

After the liver has been exposed to any causative agent (e.g., a virus), it becomes enlarged and congested with inflammatory cells, lymphocytes, and fluid, resulting in right upper quadrant pain and discomfort. As the disease progresses, the liver's normal lobular pattern becomes distorted as a result of widespread inflammation, necrosis, and hepatocellular regeneration. This distortion increases pressure within the portal circulation, interfering with the blood flow into the hepatic lobules. Edema of the liver's bile channels results in obstructive **jaundice** (yellowing of the skin).

Classification of Hepatitis and Etiologies

The five major types of acute viral hepatitis vary by mode of transmission, manner of onset, and incubation periods. Hepatitis cases must be reported to the local public health department, which then notifies the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

Hepatitis A. The causative agent of **hepatitis A**, hepatitis A virus (HAV), is a ribonucleic acid (RNA) virus of the enterovirus family. *It is a hardy virus and survives on human hands.* The virus is resistant to detergents and acids but is destroyed by chlorine (bleach) and extremely high temperatures.

TABLE 61-5 EXAMPLES OF EXTRAHEPATIC MANIFESTATIONS OF HEPATITIS A

Neurologic Findings • Post-viral encephalitis • Guillain-Barré syndrome • Transverse myelitis	Renal Findings • Acute tubular necrosis (ATN) • Nephrotic syndrome
Hematologic Findings • Aplastic anemia • Autoimmune hemolysis • Anemia	Gastrointestinal Findings • Pancreatitis • Acalculous cholecystitis
	Other Findings • Reactive arthritis • Cutaneous vasculitis

HAV usually has a mild course similar to that of a typical flu-like infection and often goes unrecognized. It is spread most often by the fecal-oral route by fecal contamination either from person-to-person contact (e.g., oral-anal sexual activity) or by consuming contaminated food or water. Common sources of infection include shellfish caught in contaminated water and food contaminated by food handlers infected with HAV. The incubation period of hepatitis A is usually 15 to 50 days, with a peak of 25 to 30 days. The disease is usually not life threatening, but its course may be more severe in people older than 40 years and those with pre-existing liver disease such as hepatitis C.

In a small percentage of HAV cases, severe illness with extrahepatic manifestations can occur (Table 61-5). Advanced age and conditions such as chronic liver disease may cause widespread damage that requires a liver transplant. In some cases, death may occur from HAV.

The incidence of hepatitis A is particularly high in non-affluent countries in which sanitation is poor. However, over 35,000 cases are diagnosed each year in the United States (American Liver Foundation, 2010). Some adults have hepatitis A and do not know it. The course is similar to that of a GI illness, and the disease and recovery are usually uneventful.

Hepatitis B. The **hepatitis B** virus (HBV) is not transmitted like HAV. It is a double-shelled particle containing DNA composed of a core antigen (HBcAg), a surface antigen (HBsAg), and another antigen found within the core (HBeAg) that circulates in the blood. HBV may be spread through these common modes of transmission (Lok & McMahon, 2009):

- Unprotected sexual intercourse with an infected partner
- Sharing needles
- Accidental needle sticks or injuries from sharp instruments primarily in health care workers (low incidence)
- Blood transfusions (that have not been screened for the virus, before 1992)
- Hemodialysis
- Maternal-fetal route (more common in Asia)
- Close person-to-person contact by open cuts and sores

In addition, patients who are immunosuppressed either by disease or drug therapy are more likely to develop hepatitis B.

The clinical course of hepatitis B may be varied. Symptoms usually occur within 25 to 180 days of exposure and include:

- Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting
- Fever
- Fatigue
- Right upper quadrant pain
- Dark urine with light stool
- Joint pain
- Jaundice

Blood tests confirm the disease, although many people with hepatitis B have no symptoms.

Most adults who get hepatitis B recover, clear the virus from their body, and develop immunity. However, a small percentage of people do not develop immunity and become carriers. **Hepatitis carriers** can infect others even though they are not sick and have no obvious signs of hepatitis B. Chronic carriers are at high risk for cirrhosis and liver cancer. Because of the high number of newcomers from endemic areas, the incidence of hepatitis B has increased in the United States.

Hepatitis C. The causative virus of **hepatitis C** (HCV) is an enveloped, single-stranded RNA virus. Transmission is blood to blood. The rate of sexual transmission is very low in a single-couple relationship but increases with multiple sex partners.

HCV is spread most commonly by:

- Illicit IV drug needle sharing (highest incidence)
- Blood, blood products, or organ transplants received before 1992
- Needle stick injury with HCV-contaminated blood (health care workers at high risk)
- Unsanitary tattoo equipment
- Sharing of intranasal cocaine paraphernalia

The disease is **not** transmitted by casual contact or by intimate household contact. However, those infected are advised not to share razors, toothbrushes, or pierced earrings because microscopic blood may be on these items.

The average incubation period is 7 weeks. Acute infection and illness are not common. Most people are completely unaware that they have been infected. They are asymptomatic and not diagnosed until many months or years after the initial exposure when an abnormality is detected during a routine laboratory evaluation or when liver problems occur. Unlike with hepatitis B, most people infected with hepatitis C do not clear the virus and a chronic infection develops.

HCV usually does its damage over decades by causing a chronic inflammation in the liver that eventually causes the liver cells to scar. This scarring may progress to cirrhosis. Alcohol use increases the progression and severity of cirrhosis.

Hepatitis C–induced cirrhosis is the leading indication for liver transplantation in the United States. Unfortunately, the newly transplanted liver often becomes re-infected with the virus.

Hepatitis D. **Hepatitis D** (delta hepatitis, or HDV) is caused by a defective RNA virus that needs the helper function of HBV. It occurs only with HBV to cause viral replication. This usually develops into chronic HDV. The incubation period is about 14 to 56 days. As with HBV, the disease is transmitted primarily by parenteral routes, especially patients who are IV drug abusers. Having sexual contact with a person with HDV is also a high risk factor.

Hepatitis E. The **hepatitis E** virus (HEV) causes a water-borne infection associated with epidemics in the Indian

subcontinent, Asia, Africa, the Middle East, Mexico, and Central and South America. Many large outbreaks have occurred after heavy rains and flooding. Like hepatitis A, HEV is caused by fecal contamination of food and water.

In the United States, hepatitis E has been found only in international travelers. It is transmitted via the fecal-oral route, and the clinical course resembles that of hepatitis A. HEV has an incubation period of 15 to 64 days. There is no evidence at this time of a chronic form of HEV. The disease tends to be self-limiting and resolves on its own.

Complications of Hepatitis

Failure of the liver cells to regenerate, with progression of the necrotic process, results in a severe acute and often fatal form of hepatitis known as **fulminant hepatitis**. Hepatitis is considered to be chronic when liver inflammation lasts longer than 6 months. **Chronic hepatitis** usually occurs as a result of hepatitis B or hepatitis C. Superimposed infection with hepatitis D (HDV) in patients with chronic HBV may also result in chronic hepatitis. Chronic hepatitis can lead to cirrhosis and liver cancer. Many patients have multiple infections, especially the combination of HBV with either HCV, HDV, or HIV infections.

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of hepatitis A and hepatitis B is declining as a result of CDC recommendations for vaccination. However, hepatitis B and hepatitis C are a concern because of their association with cirrhosis and liver cancer. Although exact numbers are not known, it is estimated that about 200 million people worldwide have the hepatitis C virus (HCV), making this type of hepatitis the most common type. Currently there is no vaccine for HCV. Therefore it is expected that the cases of HCV will rise over the next several decades as a result of increasing illicit drug use. This increase will require a major increase in transplantations and lead to many more deaths (Lok & McMahon, 2009).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Hepatitis vaccines for infants, children, and adolescents have helped decrease the incidence of hepatitis A and hepatitis B. Some adults are also advised to receive these immunizations.

Measures for preventing hepatitis A (HAV) in adults include:

- Proper handwashing, especially after handling shellfish
- Avoiding contaminated food or water (including tap water in countries with high incidence)
- Receiving immunoglobulin within 14 days if exposed to the virus
- Receiving the HAV vaccine before traveling to areas where the disease is common (e.g., Mexico, Caribbean)
- Receiving the vaccine if living or working in enclosed areas with others, such as college dormitories, correctional institutions, day-care centers, and long-term care facilities

Several HAV vaccines are available (e.g., Havrix and Vaqta). Both of these vaccines are made of inactivated hepatitis A virus and are given in the deltoid muscle.

Several vaccines can also provide protection against hepatitis B (HBV) infection (e.g., Engerix-B and Recombivax-HB). Twinrix is a combination HAV and HBV vaccine that is also available for adults. Examples of groups for whom

immunization against HBV should be used include (Lok & McMahon, 2009):

- People who have sexual intercourse with more than one partner
- People with sexually transmitted disease (STD) or a history of STD
- Men having sex with men (MSM)
- People with any chronic liver disease (such as hepatitis C or cirrhosis)
- Patients with human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection
- People who are exposed to blood or body fluids in the workplace, including health care workers, firefighters, and police
- People in correctional facilities
- Patients needing immunosuppressant drugs
- Family members, household members, and sexual contacts of people with HBV infection

Additional measures to prevent viral hepatitis for health care workers and others in contact with infected patients are listed in [Charts 61-3 and 61-4](#).

CHART 61-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Prevention of Viral Hepatitis in Health Care Workers

- Use Standard Precautions to prevent the transmission of disease between patients or between patients and health care staff (see [Chapter 25](#)).
- Eliminate needles and other sharp instruments by substituting needleless systems. (Needle sticks are the major source of hepatitis B transmission in health care workers.)
- Take the hepatitis B vaccine (e.g., Recombivax HB), which is given in a series of three injections. This vaccine also prevents hepatitis D by preventing HBV.
- For postexposure prevention of hepatitis A, seek medical attention immediately for immunoglobulin (Ig) administration.
- Report all cases of hepatitis to the local health department.

CHART 61-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Health Practices to Prevent Viral Hepatitis

- Maintain adequate sanitation and personal hygiene. Wash your hands before eating and after using the toilet.
- Drink water treated by a water purification system.
- If traveling in underdeveloped or nonindustrialized countries, drink only bottled water. Avoid food washed or prepared with tap water, such as raw vegetables, fruits, and soups. Avoid ice.
- Use adequate sanitation practices to prevent the spread of the disease among family members.
- Do not share bed linens, towels, eating utensils, or drinking glasses.
- Do not share needles for injection, body piercing, or tattooing.
- Do not share razors, nail clippers, toothbrushes, or Waterpiks.
- Use a condom during sexual intercourse, or abstain from this activity.
- Cover cuts or sores with bandages.
- If ever infected with hepatitis, never donate blood, body organs, or other body tissue.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Begin by asking the patient whether he or she has had known exposure to a person with hepatitis. For the patient who presents with few or no symptoms of liver disease but has abnormal laboratory tests (e.g., elevated alanine aminotransferase [ALT] or aspartate aminotransferase [AST] level), the history may need to include additional questions regarding risk factors such as:

- Exposure to either inhaled or ingested chemical
- Use of herbal supplements
- Use of any new prescribed drug or over-the-counter (OTC) medication
- Recent ingestion of shellfish
- Exposure to a possibly contaminated water source
- Travel to another country
- Sexual activities with men, women, or both, and whether it was protected or unprotected
- Illicit drug use, IV or intranasal
- For health care workers, recent needle stick exposure
- Body piercing or tattooing
- Close living accommodations (e.g., military barracks, correctional institutions, overcrowded dormitories, long-term facilities, day-care centers) or employment in any such setting
- Blood or blood products or organ transplants received before 1992
- Military service
- Place of birth (United States or other country) and parents' place of birth
- History of alcohol use (how many drinks each day or week)
- Human immune deficiency virus (HIV)

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess whether the patient has:

- Abdominal pain
- Changes in skin or sclera (icterus)
- **Arthralgia** (joint pain) or **myalgia** (muscle pain)
- Diarrhea/constipation
- Changes in color of urine or stool
- Fever
- Lethargy
- Malaise
- Nausea/vomiting
- Pruritus (itching)

Lightly palpate the right upper abdominal quadrant to assess for liver tenderness. The patient may report right upper quadrant pain with jarring movements. Inspect the skin, sclerae, and mucous membranes for jaundice. He or she may present for medical treatment only after jaundice appears, believing that other vague symptoms are related to an influenza-like syndrome.

Jaundice in hepatitis results from intrahepatic obstruction and is caused by edema of the liver's bile channels. Dark urine and clay-colored stools are often reported by the patient. If possible, obtain a urine and stool specimen for visual inspection and laboratory analysis. The patient may also have skin abrasions from pruritus (itching).

Psychosocial Assessment

Viral hepatitis has various presentations, but for most infected people the initial course is mild with few or no symptoms. The long-term complications of fibrosis and cirrhosis cause the more serious problem. This is especially true for patients who have chronic HBV and HCV infection.

Emotional problems for affected patients may center on their feeling sick and fatigued. General malaise, inactivity, and vague symptoms contribute to depression. Some patients often feel guilty and are remorseful about decisions made that caused the disease. These feelings are most likely to occur when the source of infection is from drug abuse. Family members may be angry that the patient caused the disease.

Infectious diseases such as hepatitis continue to have a social stigma. The patient may feel embarrassed by the precautions that are imposed in the hospital and continue to be necessary at home. This embarrassment may cause the patient to limit social interactions. Patients may be afraid that they will spread the virus to family and friends.

Family members are sometimes afraid of getting the disease and may distance themselves from the patient. Allow them to verbalize these feelings, and explore the reasons for these fears. Educate the patient and family members about modes of transmission, and clarify information as needed.

Patients may be unable to return to work for several weeks during the acute phases of illness. The loss of wages and the cost of hospitalization for a patient without insurance coverage may produce great anxiety and financial burden. This situation may last for months or years if hepatitis becomes chronic.

Laboratory Assessment

Hepatitis A, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C are usually confirmed by acute elevations in levels of liver enzymes, indicating liver cellular damage, and by specific serologic markers.

Levels of ALT and AST levels may possibly rise into the thousands in acute or fulminant cases of hepatitis. Alkaline phosphatase levels may be normal or elevated. Serum total bilirubin levels are elevated and are consistent with the clinical appearance of jaundice. Elevated levels of bilirubin are also present in the urine (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

The presence of *hepatitis A* is established when hepatitis A virus (HAV) antibodies (anti-HAV) are found in the blood. Ongoing inflammation of the liver by HAV is indicated by the presence of immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibodies, which persist in the blood for 4 to 6 weeks. Previous infection is identified by the presence of immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies. These antibodies persist in the serum and provide permanent immunity to HAV.

The presence of the *hepatitis B* virus (HBV) is established when serologic testing confirms the presence of hepatitis B antigen-antibody systems in the blood and a detectable viral count (HBV polymerase chain reaction [PCR] DNA). Antigens located on the surface (shell) of the virus (HBsAg) and IgM antibodies to hepatitis B core antigen (anti-HBcAg IgM) are the most significant serologic markers. The presence of these markers establishes the diagnosis of hepatitis B. *The patient is infectious as long as HBsAg (hepatitis B surface antigen) is present in the blood.* Persistence of this serologic marker after 6 months or longer indicates a carrier state or chronic hepatitis. HBsAg levels normally decline and disappear after the acute hepatitis B episode. The presence of antibodies to hepatitis B surface antibody (HBsAb) in the blood indicates recovery and immunity to hepatitis B. *People who*

have been vaccinated against HBV have a positive HBsAb because they also have immunity to the disease (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) is the initial screening test for patients suspected of being infected with *hepatitis C* virus (HCV). It is also the most commonly used enzyme test for HCV antibodies (anti-HCV). The antibodies can be detected within 4 weeks of the infection (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). A more specific assay called the *recombinant immunoblot assay (RIBA)* can be used as a confirmatory test. These tests show that the patient has been exposed to HCV and has developed the antibody. To identify the actual circulating virus, the HCV PCR RNA test is used. This confirms active virus and can measure the viral load. A new diagnostic tool called the OraQuick HCV Rapid Antibody Test was approved by the Food and Drug Administration in the United States in 2010. It has the advantage of providing a quick diagnosis of the disease as a point-of-care test.

The presence of *hepatitis D* virus (HDV) can be confirmed by the identification of intrahepatic delta antigen or, more often, by a rise in the hepatitis D virus antibodies (anti-HDV) titer. This increase can be seen within a few days of infection (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) testing is usually reserved for travelers in whom hepatitis is present but the virus cannot be detected. Hepatitis E antibodies (anti-HEV) are found in people infected with the virus.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Liver biopsy may be used to confirm the diagnosis of hepatitis and to establish the stage and grade of liver damage. Characteristic changes help the pathologist distinguish among a virus, drug, toxin, fatty liver, iron, and other disease. It is usually performed in an ambulatory care setting as a percutaneous procedure (through the skin) after a local anesthetic is given. If coagulation is abnormal, however, it may be done using either a computed tomography (CT)-guided or transjugular route to reduce the risk for pneumothorax or hemothorax. Ultrasound may also be used.

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with viral hepatitis can be mildly or acutely ill depending on the severity of the inflammation. Most patients are not hospitalized, although older adults and those with dehydration may be admitted for a short-term stay. The plan of care for all patients with viral hepatitis is based on measures to rest the liver, promote cellular regeneration, and prevent complications, if possible.

During the acute stage of viral hepatitis, interventions are aimed at resting the inflamed liver to promote hepatic cell regeneration. *Rest* is an essential intervention to reduce the liver's metabolic demands and increase its blood supply. Collaborative care is generally supportive. The patient is usually tired and expresses feelings of general malaise. Complete bedrest is usually not required, but rest periods alternating with periods of activity are indicated and are often enough to promote hepatic healing. Individualize the patient's plan of care and change it as needed to reflect the severity of symptoms, fatigue, and the results of liver function tests and enzyme determinations. Activities such as self-care and ambulating are gradually added to the activity schedule as tolerated.

The diet should be high in carbohydrates and calories with moderate amounts of fat and protein after nausea and

anorexia subside. Small, frequent meals are often preferable to three standard meals. Ask the patient about food preferences because favorite foods are tolerated better than randomly selected foods. Encourage the patient to eat foods that are appealing. High-calorie snacks may be needed. Supplemental vitamins are often prescribed.

Drugs of any kind are used sparingly for patients with hepatitis to allow the liver to rest. An antiemetic to relieve nausea may be prescribed.

For patients with chronic hepatitis B and hepatitis C, a number of drugs are given, including antiviral and immunomodulating drugs. Examples of antiviral drugs that may be used for HBV include:

- Tenofovir or entecavir (Baraclude) (as first-line therapy for patients who develop cirrhosis, but no co-infection)
- Interferon (as a first-line drug for patients who do *not* have cirrhosis)
- Adefovir dipivoxil (Hepsera) (as second-line therapy)
- Lamivudine (Epivir-HBV)
- Telbivudine (Tyzeka)

Teach patients taking these drugs to report any muscle weakness or aching because most of them can cause myopathy (muscle weakness).

The current standard of care for hepatitis C is a combination of drugs, typically subcutaneous pegylated interferon alpha once a week and oral ribavirin (Copegus, Rebetol) daily. Ribavirin should never be given to a pregnant patient. Women of childbearing age must agree to use contraception if they are receiving treatment or if they are sexual partners of patients taking this drug. A new drug that can better achieve a sustained viral response, telaprevir (Incivek), has recently been approved by the FDA. In addition, a new protease inhibitor, boceprevir (Victrelis), has been approved by the FDA to treat chronic hepatitis C in adults who have not been treated previously or have failed the typical treatment.

The length of treatment for hepatitis C depends on genotype or strain of hepatitis. There are several different genotypes; most Americans who have hepatitis C are genotype 1. This genotype usually requires 48 weeks of treatment. Genotypes 2 and 3 have a better response rate if the viral load is low and usually need only 24 weeks of treatment.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

A 27-year-old secretary is preparing to fly home to visit her mother. Her best friend, who is a nurse, notices that the woman has yellowish skin and icterus. He asks if she has noticed any changes in her urine and bowel movements. She responds that she has noticed that her urine is dark and her stool has been much lighter for the past week. He tells her that she may have hepatitis or some other liver problem and takes her to the emergency department, where she is diagnosed with hepatitis A. She is very dehydrated and weak and is admitted for overnight hydration, additional testing, and observation. You have been assigned to take care of her this AM.

1. What transmission precautions will you provide for this patient and why? Should her friend who is a nurse be treated in any way? Why or why not?
2. The patient is very upset that she is not able to fly home and see her mother, who is ill. She asks you when she will be able to take the trip. What is your best response to her concerns?
3. How will you determine when the patient is adequately rehydrated?
4. What health teaching will you provide before she goes home?

CHART 61-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Viral Hepatitis

- Avoid all medications, including over-the-counter drugs such as acetaminophen (Tylenol, Exdol ) , unless prescribed by your physician.
- Avoid all alcohol.
- Rest frequently throughout the day, and get adequate sleep at night.
- Eat small, frequent meals with a high-carbohydrate, moderate-fat, and moderate-protein content.
- Avoid sexual intercourse until antibody testing results are negative.
- Follow the guidelines for preventing transmission of the disease (see Chart 61-4).

Genotypes 4 and 5 are typically treated for 48 weeks. The desired outcome of treatment is to have a negative HCV PCR RNA level and to sustain a negative level after treatment has ended. The secondary expected outcome is improvement in liver function. Response rates vary, but adults who are young, have a low viral load, and have minimal scarring on liver biopsy have a better chance of clearing the virus and remaining free of hepatitis C after treatment has ended.

Community-Based Care

Home care management varies according to the type of hepatitis and whether the disease is acute or chronic. A primary focus in any case is preventing the spread of the infection. For hepatitis transmitted by the fecal-oral route, careful handwashing and sanitary disposal of feces are important. Standard Precautions are used for hepatitis transmitted percutaneously and permucosally. Education is therefore very important. Collaborate with the certified infection control practitioner and infectious disease specialist if needed in caring for these patients. These experts can also suggest resources for the patient and family.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach the patient with viral hepatitis and the family to use measures to prevent infection transmission (see Chart 61-4). *In addition, instruct the patient to avoid alcohol and to check with the health care provider before taking any medication or vitamin, supplement, or herbal preparation.*

Encourage the patient to increase activity gradually to prevent fatigue. Suggest that he or she eat small, frequent meals of high-carbohydrate foods (Chart 61-5).

FATTY LIVER (STEATOSIS)

Fatty liver is caused by the accumulation of fats in and around the hepatic cells. It may be caused by alcohol abuse or other factors. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) are types of fatty liver disease. Causes include:

- Diabetes mellitus
- Obesity
- Elevated lipid profile

Fatty infiltration of the liver may result from faulty fat metabolism in the liver and the movement of fatty acids from adipose tissue (fat). Many patients are asymptomatic. The most common and typical finding is an elevated ALT and AST or normal ALT and elevated AST (part of a group of liver function tests [LFTs]).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), ultrasound, and nuclear medicine examinations can be used to confirm excessive fat in the liver. A percutaneous biopsy can also confirm the diagnosis. Interventions are aimed at removing the underlying cause of the infiltration. Weight loss, glucose control, and aggressive treatment using lipid-lowering agents are recommended. Monitoring liver function tests is essential in disease management.

HEPATIC ABSCESS

Although hepatic abscesses are not common, they carry a high mortality (death) rate. Abscesses occur when the liver is invaded by bacteria or protozoa. These organisms destroy the liver tissue, producing a necrotic cavity filled with infective agents, liquefied liver cells and tissue, and leukocytes. The infectious necrotic tissue walls off the abscess from the healthy liver.

A **pyogenic liver abscess** occurs when bacteria invade the liver. Infecting organisms include *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Staphylococcus*, and *Enterococcus* species. A pyogenic abscess is generally solitary and confined to the right lobe, but occasionally abscesses are multiple. The usual cause is acute cholangitis, which occurs as a complication of cholelithiasis. Pyogenic liver abscesses may also result from liver trauma, abdominal peritonitis, and sepsis, or an abscess can extend to the liver after pneumonia or bacterial endocarditis. Symptoms are usually sudden.

The protozoan *Entamoeba histolytica* causes an **amebic hepatic abscess**, which may occur after amebic dysentery. These abscesses usually occur in the form of a single abscess in the right hepatic lobe, and the symptoms develop slowly.

Patients with hepatic abscesses are generally quite ill. On occasion, an abscess is not diagnosed until autopsy. Common manifestations include:

- Right upper abdominal pain with a palpable, tender liver
- Anorexia
- Weight loss
- Nausea and vomiting
- Fever and chills
- Weakness and malaise
- Shoulder pain
- Dyspnea
- Pleural pain if the diaphragm is involved

A liver abscess is usually diagnosed by contrast-enhanced CT scan or ultrasound. These abscesses are usually drained under CT or ultrasound guidance. Specimens may be sent for laboratory analysis so that the optimal antibiotic can be selected.

LIVER TRAUMA

The liver is one of the most common organs to be injured in patients with abdominal trauma. Damage or injury should be suspected whenever any upper abdominal or lower chest trauma is sustained. The liver is often injured by steering

CHART 61-6

KEY FEATURES

Liver Trauma

- Right upper quadrant pain with abdominal tenderness
- Abdominal distention and rigidity
- Guarding of the abdomen
- Increased abdominal pain exaggerated by deep breathing and referred to the right shoulder (Kehr's sign)
- Indicators of hemorrhage and hypovolemic shock:
 - Hypotension
 - Tachycardia
 - Tachypnea
 - Pallor
 - Diaphoresis
 - Cool, clammy skin
 - Confusion or other change in mental state

wheels in vehicular accidents. Common injuries include simple lacerations, multiple lacerations, avulsions (tears), and crush injuries.

The liver is a highly vascular organ and receives almost a third of the body's cardiac output. When hepatic trauma occurs, blood loss can be massive. *Observe for early signs of hypovolemic shock (Chart 61-6).*

An ultrasound or CT scan of the abdomen is often done to determine the presence of a hematoma (blood clot). A decreased hematocrit may confirm suspected blood loss. Clinical manifestations include right upper quadrant pain with abdominal tenderness, distention, guarding, and rigidity. Abdominal pain exaggerated by deep breathing and referred to the right shoulder may indicate diaphragmatic irritation.

When organ damage is confirmed, a surgeon uses a laparoscope or performs an open exploratory laparotomy to identify and control the source and type of bleeding. Minor surgical interventions, such as suture placement, wound packing, decompression, or a combination of these procedures, are often performed to stop the bleeding. Liver lobe resection is required in some extensive liver injuries. This procedure may be done using laparoscopy. Catheter-directed embolization of an intrahepatic blood vessel as an interventional radiologic procedure may be a useful alternative to surgical resection.

Patients with hepatic trauma require multiple blood products such as packed red blood cells and fresh frozen plasma, as well as massive volume infusion to maintain adequate hydration. After surgery, the patient is admitted to a critical care unit. Monitor the patient for persistent or new bleeding. Closely monitor complete blood count and coagulation studies for trends in changes.

CANCER OF THE LIVER

Pathophysiology

Cancers may be *primary* tumors (hepatocellular carcinoma) starting in the liver, or they may be *metastatic* cancers that spread from another organ to the liver. They are most often seen in regions of Asia and the Mediterranean area. Worldwide, the disease kills about 1 million people each year and affects Vietnamese men more than any other group. Black and Hispanic populations have twice the rate of the disease as Euro-Americans, and older adults are affected more than

other age-groups (Rossi et al., 2010). In the United States and worldwide, the incidence of liver cancer is increasing because there is an increase in cases of hepatitis C (HCV).

Chronic infection with HBV and HCV frequently lead to cirrhosis, which is a risk factor for developing liver cancer. It is important to remember that cirrhosis from any cause, including alcoholic liver disease, increases the risk for cancer.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

In the early stage of cancer, most patients are without symptoms. Later in the disease, they report weight loss, anorexia, and weakness. Ask the patient if he or she has or has had recent abdominal pain, the most common concern. It is most often felt in the right upper quadrant before jaundice, bleeding, ascites, and edema develop. Palpation may reveal an enlarged, nodular liver.

Elevated serum alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) (a tumor marker for cancers of the liver, testis, and ovary) and increased alkaline phosphatase are also common (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). Ultrasound (US) and contrast-enhanced CT are both useful in detecting metastasis. If the primary tumor site is not known, a CT- or ultrasound-guided liver biopsy can confirm the diagnosis, although this procedure is risky because of possible bleeding and spread of the cancer cells.

INTERVENTIONS

Surgical resection and liver transplantation offer the only treatments for long-term survival. Unfortunately, most patients are not candidates for surgical removal because their tumors are unresectable. Selective internal radiation therapy (SIRT) has been successful for some patients. Other palliative approaches include hepatic artery embolization, ablation techniques, and drug therapy.

Hepatic artery embolization causes cell death by blocking blood supply to the tumor in the liver. It is performed under moderate sedation by an interventional radiologist who threads a catheter through the femoral artery to inject small particles into the hepatic artery. The patient usually stays overnight in the hospital for observation in case of bleeding. This procedure may be followed by infusing a chemotherapy agent directly into the hepatic artery (chemoembolization).

Common *ablation* procedures include radiofrequency ablation (RFA), percutaneous ethanol injection, and cryotherapy. RFA uses energy waves to heat cancer cells and kill them. It is most often performed as an ambulatory care procedure using a percutaneous laparoscopic approach. Ethanol may also be injected directly into the tumor to destroy tumor cells, although this procedure is not as commonly done as RFA (Rossi et al., 2010). Cryotherapy uses liquid nitrogen to freeze and destroy liver tumors. The general nursing care for patients having these procedures is described in Chapter 24.

Chemotherapy may be administered orally or IV. However, it is not effective in many cases. Examples of drugs used are doxorubicin (Adriamycin), 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), and cisplatin. Sorafenib (Nexavar) is a kinase inhibitor that is approved for inoperable liver cancer. Other drugs are targeted therapies that are being investigated and used with some success.

Another drug route is a catheter-directed method directly into the hepatic artery, a procedure called *hepatic arterial infusion (HAI)*. The interventional radiologist places a catheter into the artery that supplies the tumor and injects a mixture of chemotherapy and contrast agent into the tumor. This procedure has the unique effect of depositing chemotherapeutic drugs directly into the tumor without causing major systemic effects. Examples of agents given are fluorodeoxyuridine (FUDR) with or without dexamethasone (the most commonly used), oxaliplatin, mitomycin-C, or irinotecan (Moore, 2007). Chapter 24 describes the general nursing care for patients receiving chemotherapy.

Patients with advanced liver cancer usually need end-of-life care and hospice services. Collaborate with the case manager to help patients and their families find the best community resources that meet their needs. Chapter 9 describes end-of-life care and hospice services in detail.

LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

Liver transplantation has become a common procedure worldwide. The patient with end-stage liver disease or acute liver failure who has not responded to conventional medical or surgical intervention is a potential candidate for liver transplantation. The most common reason for a liver transplant is hepatitis C. It may also be used for the patient with a *primary* liver tumor.

The patient for potential transplantation has extensive physiologic and psychological assessment and evaluation by physicians and transplant coordinators. Alternative treatment should be extensively explored before committing a patient for a liver transplant. Patients who are *not* considered candidates for transplantation are those with:

- Severe cardiovascular instability with advanced cardiac disease
- Severe respiratory disease
- Metastatic tumors
- Inability to follow instructions regarding drug therapy and self-management

Liver transplantation has become the most effective treatment for an increasing number of patients with acute and chronic liver diseases. Inclusion and exclusion criteria vary among transplantation centers and are continually revised as treatment options change and surgical techniques improve.

Donor livers are obtained primarily from trauma victims who have not had liver damage. They are distributed through a nationwide program—the United Network of Organ Sharing (UNOS). This system distributes donor livers based on regional considerations and patient acuity. Candidates with the highest level of acuity receive highest priority.

The donor liver is transported to the surgery center in a solution that preserves the organ for up to 8 hours. The diseased liver is removed through an incision made in the upper abdomen. The new liver is carefully put in its place and is attached to the patient's blood vessels and bile ducts. The procedure can take many hours to complete and requires a highly specialized team and large volumes of fluid and blood replacement.

Living donors have also been used and are usually close family members or spouse. This is done on a voluntary basis after careful psychological and physiologic preparation and testing. The donor's liver is resected (usually removal of one

lobe) and implanted into the recipient after removal of the diseased liver. In both the donor and the recipient, the liver regenerates and grows in size to meet the demands of the body.

Pathophysiology

Although liver transplantations are commonly done, complications can occur. Some problems can be medically managed, whereas others require removal of the transplant. The two most common complications are acute graft rejection and infection.

The success of all transplantations has greatly improved since the introduction many years ago of cyclosporine (cyclosporin A), an immunosuppressant drug. Today, many other anti-rejection drugs are used. (See [Chapter 19](#) for a complete discussion of rejection and preventive drug therapy.)

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient who has undergone liver transplantation, monitor for clinical manifestations of rejection, which may include tachycardia, fever, right upper quadrant or flank pain, decreased bile pigment and volume, and increasing jaundice. Laboratory findings include elevated serum bilirubin, rising ALT and AST levels, elevated alkaline phosphatase levels, and increased prothrombin time/international normalized ratio (PT/INR).

Transplant rejection is treated aggressively with immunosuppressive drugs. As with all rejection treatments, the patient is at a greater risk for infection. If therapy is not effective, liver

function rapidly deteriorates. Multi-system organ failure, including respiratory and renal involvement, develops along with diffuse coagulopathies and portal-systemic encephalopathy (PSE). The only alternative for treatment is emergency retransplantation.

Infection is another potential threat to the transplanted graft and the patient's survival. Vaccinations and prophylactic antibiotics are helpful in prevention. Immunosuppressant therapy, which must be used to prevent and treat organ rejection, significantly increases the patient's risk for infection. Other risk factors include the presence of multiple tubes and intravascular lines, immobility, and prolonged anesthesia.

In the early post-transplantation period, common infections include pneumonia, wound infections, and urinary tract infections. Opportunistic infections usually develop after the first postoperative month and include cytomegalovirus, mycobacterial infections, and parasitic infections. Latent infections such as tuberculosis and herpes simplex may be reactivated.

The physician prescribes broad-spectrum antibiotics for prophylaxis during and after surgery. Obtain culture specimens from all lines and tubes and collect specimens for culture at predetermined time intervals as dictated by the agency's policy. If an infection is detected, the physician prescribes organism-specific anti-infective agents.

The biliary anastomosis is susceptible to breakdown, obstruction, and infection. If leakage occurs or if the site becomes necrotic or obstructed, an abscess can form or peritonitis, bacteremia, and cirrhosis may develop. Observe for potential complications, which are listed in [Table 61-6](#).

TABLE 61-6 ASSESSMENT AND PREVENTION OF COMMON POSTOPERATIVE COMPLICATIONS ASSOCIATED WITH LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

ASSESSMENT	PREVENTION
Acute Graft Rejection Occurs from the 4th to 10th postoperative day Manifested by tachycardia, fever, right upper quadrant (RUQ) or flank pain, diminished bile drainage or change in bile color, or increased jaundice Laboratory changes: (1) increased levels of serum bilirubin, transaminases, and alkaline phosphatase; (2) prolonged prothrombin time	Prophylaxis with immunosuppressant agents, such as cyclosporine Early diagnosis to treat with more potent anti-rejection drugs
Infection Can occur at any time during recovery Manifested by fever or excessive, foul-smelling drainage (urine, wound, or bile); other indicators depend on location and type of infection	Antibiotic prophylaxis; vaccinations Frequent cultures of tubes, lines, and drainage Early removal of invasive lines Good handwashing Early diagnosis and treatment with organism-specific anti-infective agents
Hepatic Complications (Bile Leakage, Abscess Formation, Hepatic Thrombosis) Manifested by decreased bile drainage, increased RUQ abdominal pain with distention and guarding, nausea or vomiting, increased jaundice, and clay-colored stools Laboratory changes: increased levels of serum bilirubin and transaminases	If present, keep T-tube in dependent position and secure to patient; empty frequently, recording quality and quantity of drainage Report manifestations to physician immediately May necessitate surgical intervention
Acute Renal Failure Caused by hypotension, antibiotics, cyclosporine, acute liver failure, or hypothermia Indicators of hypothermia: shivering, hyperventilation, increased cardiac output, vasoconstriction, and alkalemia Early indicators of renal failure: changes in urine output, increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine levels, and electrolyte imbalance	Monitor all drug levels with nephrotoxic side effects Prevent hypotension Observe for early signs of renal failure, and report them immediately to the physician

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Care of the patient undergoing liver transplantation requires an interdisciplinary team approach. Receiving a transplant has a major psychosocial impact. Transplant complications cause patients to be very anxious. In collaboration with the members of the health care team, assure them and their families that these problems are common and usually successfully treated.

After the patient is identified as a candidate and a donor organ is procured, the actual liver transplantation surgical procedure usually takes many hours. The length of the procedure can vary greatly.

In the immediate postoperative period, the patient is managed in the critical care unit and requires aggressive

monitoring and care. Assess for signs and symptoms of complications of surgery, and immediately report them to the surgeon (see Table 61-6).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient who has had a liver transplantation, monitor the temperature frequently per hospital protocol, and report elevations, increased abdominal pain, distention, and rigidity, which are indicators of peritonitis. Nursing assessment also includes monitoring for a change in neurologic status that could indicate encephalopathy from a nonfunctioning liver. Report signs of clotting problems (e.g., bloody oozing from a catheter, petechiae, ecchymosis) to the surgeon immediately because they may indicate impaired function of the transplanted liver.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate digestion, nutrition, and metabolism as a result of impaired liver function?

- Jaundice
- Icterus
- Report of nausea and anorexia
- Vomiting
- Weight loss
- Bruising or bleeding
- Ascites

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate digestion, nutrition, and metabolism as a result of impaired liver function?

Perform and interpret physical assessment findings, including:

- Assess respiratory status to check for dyspnea or shallow breathing.
- Check level of consciousness and cognition.
- Take vital signs (look for fever or decreased BP) and oxygen saturation.
- Check for blood in the vomitus.
- Perform an abdominal assessment, including measuring girth.

- Check urine for dark color and stool for clay-colored appearance.
- Take current weight, and compare with previous weight.
- Assess skin for open areas.
- Check most recent laboratory values for coagulation studies and LFTs.

Respond by:

- Applying oxygen to assist in ease of breathing
- Keeping head of bed elevated to at least 30 degrees
- Maintaining rest
- Collaborating with dietitian and pharmacist as needed
- Prioritizing and pacing activities to prevent fatigue
- Monitoring patient closely for complications, such as bleeding; call the Rapid Response Team if bleeding occurs

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor the patient for restored digestion and nutrition, such as increased appetite.
- Think about what may have caused the liver problem.
- Consider for what complications the patient is at risk.
- Think about what members of the health care team need to provide care for this patient.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Monitor the patient with cirrhosis for bleeding and neurologic changes.
- When caring for patients with cirrhosis, collaborate with the dietitian, physician, and pharmacist.

- Refer patients with liver disorders to the American Liver Foundation; refer dying patients to hospice and other community resources as needed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Follow the guidelines listed in Chart 61-3 to prevent viral hepatitis in the workplace.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Teach patients to take precautions to prevent viral hepatitis in the community as described in [Chart 61-4](#).
- For patients with viral hepatitis, instruct them to follow the guidelines listed in [Chart 61-5](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Recognize that patients with cirrhosis have mental and emotional changes due to hepatic encephalopathy.
- Be aware that patients with cirrhosis and/or chronic hepatitis may feel guilty about their disease because of past habits such as drug and alcohol abuse.
- Be aware that family members and friends may fear getting hepatitis from the patient.
- Be aware that patients having liver transplantation have major concerns about the possibility of complications, such as organ rejection.

Physiological Integrity

- Be aware that cirrhosis has many causes other than alcohol abuse (see [Table 61-3](#)).
- Monitor laboratory values of patients suspected of or diagnosed with cirrhosis of the liver as listed in [Tables 61-1](#) and [61-4](#).

- Observe for clinical manifestations of hepatic encephalopathy (PSE) as listed in [Table 61-2](#).
- Assess for manifestations of cirrhosis as shown in [Fig. 61-1](#).
- Provide care for the patient having a paracentesis as described in [Chart 61-1](#).
- Administer drug therapy to decrease ammonia levels (which cause PSE) in patients with cirrhosis, such as lactulose and nonabsorbable antibiotics.
- Differentiate the five major types of hepatitis: A, B, C, D, and E. HDV occurs only with HBV and is transmitted most commonly by blood and body fluid exposure. Hepatitis A is transmitted via the fecal-oral route. Hepatitis C is the most common type and is also transmitted via blood and body fluids.
- Be aware that patients with chronic viral hepatitis often develop cirrhosis and cancer of the liver.
- Recognize that potent immunomodulators and antivirals are given to treat hepatitis B and hepatitis C.
- Monitor for bleeding in the patient with liver trauma; assume that any abdominal trauma has damaged the liver.
- Observe the patient having a liver transplantation for complications, such as those described in [Table 61-6](#).

Care of Patients with Problems of the Biliary System and Pancreas

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy; Gallbladder Removal

Answers for NCLEX Examination Challenges and Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with health care team members to provide care for patients with pancreatic disorders.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Teach people about health promotion practices to prevent gallbladder disease.
3. Teach people about health promotion practices to prevent pancreatitis.
4. Identify community-based resources for patients with pancreatic disorders.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Describe the psychosocial needs of patients with pancreatic cancer and their families.
6. Assess patient and family response to a diagnosis of pancreatic cancer.

Physiological Integrity

7. Identify risk factors for gallbladder disease.
8. Interpret diagnostic test results associated with gallbladder disease.
9. Compare postoperative care of patients undergoing a traditional cholecystectomy with that of patients having laparoscopic cholecystectomy.
10. Compare and contrast the pathophysiology of acute and chronic pancreatitis.
11. Interpret laboratory test results associated with acute pancreatitis.
12. Interpret common assessment findings associated with acute and chronic pancreatitis.
13. Prioritize nursing care for patients with acute pancreatitis and patients with chronic pancreatitis.
14. Explain the use and precautions associated with enzyme replacement for chronic pancreatitis.
15. Develop a postoperative plan of care for patients having a Whipple procedure.

The biliary system (liver and gallbladder) and pancreas secrete enzymes and other substances that promote food digestion in the stomach and small intestine. When these organs do not work properly, the person has impaired *digestion*, which may result in inadequate *nutrition*. Collaborative care for patients with problems of the biliary system and pancreas includes the need to promote nutrition for healthy cellular function. This chapter focuses on problems of the

gallbladder and pancreas. Liver disorders were described in [Chapter 61](#).

Because of the close anatomic location of these organs, disorders of the gallbladder and pancreas may extend to other organs if the primary health problem is not treated early. Inflammation is caused by **obstruction** (blockage) in the biliary system from gallstones, edema, stricture, or tumors. For example, gallstones in the cystic duct cause cholecystitis.

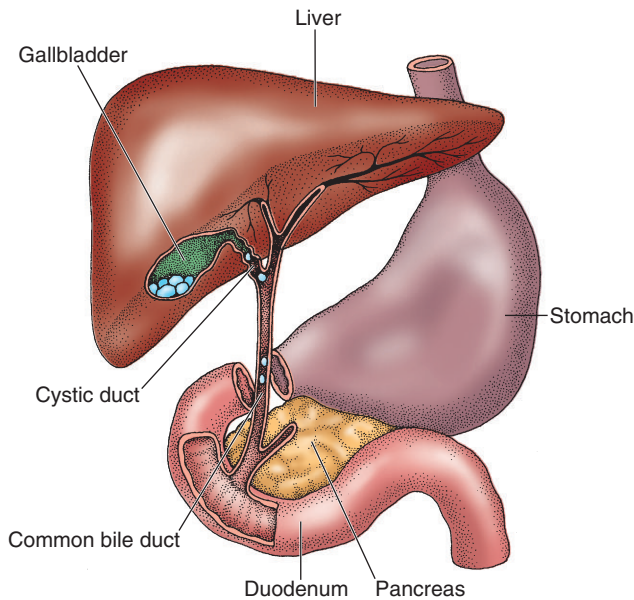


FIG. 62-1 Gallstones within the gallbladder and obstructing the common bile and cystic ducts.

Gallstones lodged in the ampulla of Vater block the flow of bile and pancreatic secretions, which can result in pancreatitis.

GALLBLADDER DISORDERS

CHOLECYSTITIS

Pathophysiology

Cholecystitis is an inflammation of the gallbladder that affects many people, most commonly in affluent countries. It may be either acute or chronic, although most patients have the acute type. Over 500,000 surgeries for this health problem are done in the United States each year (Comstock, 2008).

Acute Cholecystitis

Two types of acute cholecystitis can occur: calculous and acalculous cholecystitis. The most common type is **calculous cholecystitis**, in which chemical irritation and inflammation result from gallstones (**cholelithiasis**) that obstruct the cystic duct (most often), gallbladder neck, or common bile duct (choledocholithiasis) (Fig. 62-1). When the gallbladder is inflamed, trapped bile is reabsorbed and acts as a chemical irritant to the gallbladder wall; that is, the bile has a toxic effect. Reabsorbed bile, in combination with impaired circulation, edema, and distention of the gallbladder, causes ischemia and infection. The result is tissue sloughing with necrosis and gangrene. The gallbladder wall may eventually perforate (rupture). If the perforation is small and localized, an abscess may form. **Peritonitis**, infection of the peritoneum, may result if the perforation is large.

The exact pathophysiology of gallstone formation is not clearly understood, but abnormal metabolism of cholesterol and bile salts plays an important role in their formation. The gallbladder provides an excellent environment for the production of stones because it only occasionally mixes its normally abundant mucus with its highly viscous,

concentrated bile. Impaired gallbladder motility can lead to stone formation by delaying bile emptying and causing biliary stasis.

Gallstones are composed of substances normally found in bile, such as cholesterol, bilirubin, bile salts, calcium, and various proteins. They are classified as either cholesterol stones or pigment stones. Cholesterol calculi form as a result of metabolic imbalances of cholesterol and bile salts. They are the most common type found in people in the United States. Pigmented stones are associated with cirrhosis of the liver (McCance et al., 2010).

Bacteria can collect around the stones in the biliary system. Severe bacterial invasion can lead to life-threatening *suppurative* cholangitis when symptoms are not recognized quickly and pus accumulates in the ductal system.

Acalculous cholecystitis (inflammation occurring without gallstones) is typically associated with biliary stasis caused by any condition that affects the regular filling or emptying of the gallbladder. For example, a decrease in blood flow to the gallbladder or anatomic problems such as twisting or kinking of the gallbladder neck or cystic duct can result in pancreatic enzyme reflux into the gallbladder, causing inflammation. Most cases of this type of cholecystitis occur in patients with:

- Sepsis
- Severe trauma or burns
- Long-term total parenteral nutrition
- Multi-system organ failure
- Major surgery
- Hypovolemia

Chronic Cholecystitis

Chronic cholecystitis results when repeated episodes of cystic duct obstruction cause chronic inflammation. Calculi are almost always present. In chronic cholecystitis, the gallbladder becomes fibrotic and contracted, which results in decreased motility and deficient absorption.

Pancreatitis and cholangitis (bile duct inflammation) can occur as chronic complications of cholecystitis. These problems result from the backup of bile throughout the biliary tract. Bile obstruction leads to jaundice.

Jaundice (yellow discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes) and **icterus** (yellow discoloration of the sclerae) can occur in patients with acute cholecystitis but are most commonly seen in those with the *chronic* form of the disease. Obstructed bile flow caused by edema of the ducts or gallstones contributes to **extrahepatic obstructive jaundice**. Jaundice in cholecystitis may also be caused by direct liver involvement. Inflammation of the liver's bile channels or bile ducts may cause *intrahepatic* obstructive jaundice, resulting in an increase in circulating levels of bilirubin, the major pigment of bile.

When the concentration of bilirubin in the blood increases, jaundice can occur. In a person with obstructive jaundice, the normal flow of bile into the duodenum is blocked, allowing excessive bile salts to accumulate in the skin. This accumulation of bile salts leads to **pruritus** (itching) or a burning sensation. The bile flow blockage also prevents bilirubin from reaching the large intestine, where it is converted to urobilinogen. Because urobilinogen accounts for the normal brown color of feces, clay-colored stools result. Water-soluble bilirubin is normally excreted by the kidneys in the urine. When

TABLE 62-1 RISK FACTORS FOR CHOLECYSTITIS

• Women • Aging • American Indian, Mexican American, or Caucasian • Obesity • Rapid weight loss or prolonged fasting • Increased serum cholesterol • Women on hormone replacement therapy (HRT) or older birth control pills	• Cholesterol-lowering drugs • Family history of gallstones • Prolonged total parenteral nutrition • Crohn's disease • Gastric bypass surgery • Sickle cell disease • Glucose intolerance/diabetes mellitus • Pregnancy • Genetic factors
--	---

an excess of circulating bilirubin occurs, the urine becomes dark and foamy because of the kidneys' effort to clear the bilirubin.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

A familial or genetic tendency appears to play a role in the development of cholelithiasis, but this may be partially related to familial nutrition habits (excessive dietary cholesterol intake) and sedentary lifestyles. Genetic-environment interactions may contribute to gallstone production (Attasaranya et al., 2008).

Cholelithiasis is seen more frequently in obese patients, probably as a result of impaired fat metabolism or increased cholesterol. The risk for developing gallstones increases as people age. Patients with diabetes mellitus are also at increased risk because they usually have higher levels of fatty acids (triglycerides). American Indians have a higher incidence of the disease than other groups, which may be due to the higher incidence of diabetes mellitus and obesity in this population (McCance et al., 2010). Risk factors for cholecystitis are listed in Table 62-1.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Women who are between 20 and 60 years of age are twice as likely to develop gallstones as are men. Obesity is a major risk factor for gallstone formation, especially in women. Pregnancy and drugs such as hormone replacements and birth control pills (especially the older oral contraceptives) alter hormone levels and delay muscular contraction of the gallbladder, decreasing the rate of bile emptying. The incidence of gallstones is higher in women who have had multiple pregnancies. Combinations of causative factors increase the incidence of stone formation, especially in women. Therefore some clinicians refer to the patient most at risk for cholecystitis and gallstones by the four **Es**:

- **F**emale
- **F**orty
- **F**at
- **F**ertile

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Patients with acute cholecystitis present with abdominal pain, although clinical manifestations vary in intensity and frequency (Chart 62-1).

CHART 62-1 KEY FEATURES

Cholecystitis

- Episodic or vague upper abdominal pain or discomfort that can radiate to the right shoulder
- Pain triggered by a high-fat or high-volume meal
- Anorexia
- Nausea and/or vomiting
- Dyspepsia (indigestion)
- Eructation (belching)
- Flatulence (gas)
- Feeling of abdominal fullness
- Rebound tenderness (Blumberg's sign)
- Fever
- Jaundice, clay-colored stools, dark urine, steatorrhea (most common with chronic cholecystitis)

Obtain the patient's height, weight, and vital signs, or delegate these activities to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP). Ask about food preferences, and determine whether excessive fat and cholesterol are part of the diet. Inquire if any foods cause pain. Question whether any GI symptoms occur when fatty food is eaten: **flatulence** (gas), **dyspepsia** (indigestion), **eructation** (belching), anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain or discomfort.

Ask the patient to describe the pain, including its intensity and duration, precipitating factors, and any measures that relieve it. Pain may be described as indigestion of varying intensity, ranging from a mild, persistent ache to a steady, constant pain in the right upper abdominal quadrant. It may radiate to the right shoulder or scapula. In some cases, the abdominal pain of chronic cholecystitis may be vague and nonspecific. The usual pattern is episodic. Patients often refer to acute pain episodes as "gallbladder attacks."

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults and patients with diabetes mellitus may have atypical manifestations of cholecystitis, including the absence of pain and fever. Localized tenderness may be the only presenting sign. The older patient may become acutely confused (delirium) as the first manifestation of gallbladder disease.

The severe pain of **biliary colic** is produced by obstruction of the cystic duct of the gallbladder or movement of one or more stones. When a stone is moving through or is lodged within the duct, tissue spasm occurs in an effort to get the stone through the small duct.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Biliary colic may be so severe that it occurs with tachycardia, pallor, diaphoresis, and prostration (extreme exhaustion). Assess the patient for possible shock caused by biliary colic. Notify the health care provider or Rapid Response Team if these manifestations occur. Stay with the patient, and lower the head of the bed.

Ask patients to describe their daily activity or exercise routines to determine whether they are sedentary. Question whether there is a family history of gallbladder disease. If the patient is female, ask whether she takes hormone replacement therapy (HRT) or birth control pills.

Assessment for rebound tenderness (**Blumberg's sign**) and deep palpation are performed only by physicians and advanced practice nurses. To elicit rebound tenderness, the health care provider pushes his or her fingers deeply and steadily into the patient's abdomen and then quickly releases the pressure. Pain that results from the rebound of the palpated tissue may indicate peritoneal inflammation. Deep palpation below the liver border in the right upper quadrant may reveal a sausage-shaped mass, representing the distended, inflamed gallbladder. Percussion over the posterior rib cage worsens localized abdominal pain.

In *chronic* cholecystitis, patients may have slowly developing symptoms and may not seek medical treatment until late symptoms such as jaundice (yellowing of the skin), clay-colored stools, and dark urine occur from biliary obstruction. Yellowing of the sclerae (icterus) and oral mucous membranes may also be present. **Steatorrhea** (fatty stools) occurs because fat absorption is decreased because of the lack of bile. Bile is needed for the absorption of fats and fat-soluble vitamins in the intestine. As with any inflammatory process, the patient may have an elevated temperature of 99° to 102° F (37.2° to 38.9° C), tachycardia, and dehydration from fever and vomiting.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults become dehydrated much quicker than other age-groups, and they may not present with a fever. Monitor for a new onset of disorientation or acute confusion due to decreased blood volume available to oxygenate the cells of the brain (hypoxia).

Diagnostic Assessment

A differential diagnosis rules out other diseases that may cause similar symptoms, such as peptic ulcer disease, hepatitis, and pancreatitis. An increased white blood cell (WBC) count indicates inflammation. Serum levels of alkaline phosphatase, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) may be elevated, indicating abnormalities in liver function in patients with severe biliary obstruction. The direct (conjugated) and indirect (unconjugated) serum bilirubin levels are also elevated. If the pancreas is involved, serum amylase and lipase levels are elevated.

Calcified gallstones are easily viewed on abdominal x-ray. Stones that are not calcified cannot be seen. *Ultrasonography (US) of the right upper quadrant is the best diagnostic test for cholecystitis.* It is safe, accurate, and painless. Acute cholecystitis is seen as edema of the gallbladder wall and pericholecystic fluid. A hepatobiliary scan can be performed to visualize the gallbladder and determine patency of the biliary system.

When the cause of cholecystitis or cholelithiasis is not known or the patient has manifestations of biliary obstruction (e.g., jaundice), an *endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography* (ERCP) may be performed. Some patients have the less invasive and safer *magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography* (MRCP), which can be performed by an interventional radiologist. For this procedure, the patient is given oral or IV contrast material (gadolinium) before having a magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scan (Daniak et al., 2008). Before the test, ask the patient about any history of urticaria (hives) or other allergy. Gadolinium does not contain iodine, which decreases the risk for an allergic response. **Chapter 55** discusses these tests in more detail.

INTERVENTIONS

Most patients do not respond to nonsurgical interventions during the acute phase of cholecystitis. Surgery is the treatment of choice.

Nonsurgical Management

Many people with gallstones have no symptoms. Acute pain occurs when gallstones partially or totally obstruct the cystic or common bile duct. Most patients find that they need to avoid fatty foods to prevent further episodes of biliary colic. Withhold food and fluids if nausea and vomiting occur. IV therapy is used for hydration.

Acute biliary pain requires opioid analgesia, such as morphine or hydromorphone (Dilaudid). In the past, meperidine (Demerol) was the drug of choice because it was thought to cause fewer spasms of the sphincter of Oddi, which blocks bile flow. However, this drug breaks down into a toxic metabolite (normeperidine) and can cause seizures, especially in older adults. All opioids may cause some degree of sphincter spasm.

Ketorolac (Toradol, Acular) may be used for mild to moderate pain. The health care provider prescribes antiemetics to control nausea and vomiting. IV antibiotic therapy may also be given, depending on the cause of cholecystitis or as a one-time dose for surgery.

For some patients with small stones or for those who are not good surgical candidates, a treatment that is commonly used for kidney stones can be used to break up gallstones—*extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL)*. This procedure can be used only for patients who have a normal weight, cholesterol-based stones, and good gallbladder function. The patient lies on a water-filled pad, and shock waves break up the large stones into smaller ones that can be passed through the digestive system. During the procedure, he or she may have pain from the movement of the stones or duct or gallbladder spasms. A therapeutic bile acid, such as ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA), may be used after the procedure to help dissolve the remaining stone fragments.

Another treatment option in people who cannot have surgery is the insertion of a percutaneous transhepatic biliary catheter to open the blocked duct(s) so that bile can flow. Catheters can be placed several ways, depending on the condition of the biliary ducts, in an internal, external, or internal/external drain. Biliary catheters usually divert bile from the liver into the duodenum to bypass a stricture. When all of the bile enters the duodenum, it is called an *internal* drain. However, in some cases, a patient has an *internal/external* drain in which part of the bile empties into a drainage bag. Patients who need this drain for an extended period may have the external drain capped. If jaundice or leakage around the catheter site occurs, teach the patient to reconnect the catheter to a drainage bag and have a follow-up cholangiogram injection done by an interventional radiologist. An *external* only catheter is connected either temporarily or permanently to a drainage bag. A reduction in bile drainage indicates that the drain is no longer working.

Surgical Management

Cholecystectomy is a surgical removal of the gallbladder. One of two procedures is performed: the laparoscopic cholecystectomy and, far less often, the traditional open approach cholecystectomy.

Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, a minimally invasive surgery (MIS), is currently the “gold standard” and is performed far more often than the traditional open approach. The advantages of MIS include:

- Complications are not common.
- The death rate is very low.
- Bile duct injuries are rare.
- Patient recovery is quicker.
- Postoperative pain is less severe.

The laparoscopic procedure (often called a “lap chole”) is commonly done on an ambulatory care basis in a same-day surgery suite. The surgeon explains the procedure. The nurse answers questions and reinforces the physician’s instructions. Reinforce what to expect after surgery, and review pain management, deep-breathing exercises, and incentive spirometry use. There is no special preoperative preparation other than the routine preparation for surgery under general anesthesia described in Chapter 16. An IV antibiotic is usually given immediately before or during surgery.

During the surgery, the surgeon makes a very small midline puncture at the umbilicus. Additional small incisions may be needed, although single-incision laparoscopic cholecystectomy (SILC) using a flexible endoscope can be done (Binenbaum et al., 2009). The abdominal cavity is insufflated with 3 to 4 L of carbon dioxide. Gasless laparoscopic cholecystectomy using abdominal wall lifting devices is a more recent innovation in some centers. This technique results in improved pulmonary and cardiac function. A trocar catheter is inserted, through which a laparoscope is introduced. The laparoscope is attached to a video camera, and the abdominal organs are viewed on a monitor. The gallbladder is dissected from the liver bed, and the cystic artery and duct are closed. The surgeon aspirates the bile and crushes any large stones and then extracts the gallbladder through the umbilical port.

Removing the gallbladder with the laparoscopic technique reduces the risk for wound complications. Some patients have discomfort from carbon dioxide retention in the abdomen.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After a laparoscopic cholecystectomy, assess the patient’s oxygen saturation level frequently until the effects of the anesthesia have passed. Offer the patient food and water when fully awake, and monitor for nausea and vomiting. Be sure to have the head of the bed elevated in the same-day surgery unit to prevent aspiration from vomiting. Assist the patient to the bathroom to void. Early ambulation also promotes absorption of the carbon dioxide. Administer an oral opioid as needed after the laparoscopic procedure. IV pain control is usually not needed after the laparoscopic procedure because there is only one or a few small incisions that are covered with Steri-Strips and small adhesive bandages (e.g., Band-Aids).

The patient is usually discharged from the hospital or surgery center the same day, although older and obese patients may stay overnight. Provide postoperative teaching regarding pain management, incision care, and follow-up appointments. After laparoscopic surgery, the patient can return to usual activities much sooner than those having an open cholecystectomy. Most patients are able to resume usual activities within a week.

A newer procedure is *natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery* (NOTES) for removal of or repair of organs.

Surgery can be performed on many body organs through the mouth, vagina, and rectum. For removal of the gallbladder, the vagina is used most often in women because it can be easily decontaminated with Betadine or other antiseptic and allows easy access into the peritoneal cavity. The surgeon makes a small internal incision through the cul-de-sac of Douglas between the rectum and uterine wall to access the gallbladder. The main advantages of this procedure are the lack of visible incisions and minimal, if any, postoperative complications (Navarra et al., 2010).

Traditional Cholecystectomy. Use of the open surgical approach (abdominal laparotomy) has greatly declined during the past 20 years. Patients who have this type of surgery usually have severe biliary obstruction.

The surgical nurse provides the usual preoperative care and teaching in the operating suite on the day of surgery (see Chapter 16). The surgeon removes the gallbladder through an incision and explores the biliary ducts for the presence of stones or other cause of obstruction. If the common bile duct is explored, the surgeon may insert a T-tube drain to ensure patency of the duct, although this is not done commonly today. Trauma to the common bile duct stimulates inflammation, which can slow bile flow and contribute to bile stasis. In addition, the surgeon usually inserts a drainage tube such as a Jackson-Pratt (JP) drain. This tube is placed in the gallbladder bed to prevent fluid accumulation. The drainage is usually serosanguineous (serous fluid mixed with blood) and is stained with bile in the first 24 hours after surgery. Antibiotic therapy is given to prevent infection.

Patient care for a patient who has had a traditional open cholecystectomy is similar to the care for any patient who has had abdominal surgery under general anesthesia as described in Chapter 18. Postoperative incisional pain after a traditional cholecystectomy is controlled with opioids using a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pump. Encourage the patient to use coughing and deep-breathing exercises when pain is controlled and the incision is splinted.

Antiemetics may be necessary for episodes of postoperative nausea and vomiting. Administer the antiemetic early, as prescribed, to prevent retching associated with vomiting and thus to decrease pain related to muscle straining.

Provide care for the incision, the surgical drain, and possibly a T-tube to drain bile into a drainage bag via gravity flow. The surgeon typically removes the surgical dressing and drain within 24 hours after surgery.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

The priority for caring for the patient with a T-tube is to avoid raising the drainage system above the site of insertion to prevent backup of bile into the surgical area and causing infection. Although less commonly used today due to many complications, the T-tube may remain in place for over a week.

The patient is NPO until fully awake postoperatively. Document the patient’s level of consciousness, vital signs, and pain level. Assess the surgical incision for signs of infection, such as excessive redness or purulent drainage. Report changes to the surgeon immediately. Begin ambulation as soon as possible to prevent deep vein thrombosis and promote peristalsis.

TABLE 62-2 CAUSES OF POSTCHOLECYSTECTOMY SYNDROME

• Pseudocyst • Common bile duct (CBD) leak • CBD or pancreatic duct stricture or obstruction • Sphincter of Oddi dysfunction	• Retained or new CBD gallstone • Pancreatic or liver mass • Primary sclerosing cholangitis • Diverticular compression
---	---

Advance the diet from clear liquids to solid foods as peristalsis returns. The patient usually resumes solid foods and is discharged to home 1 to 2 days after surgery, depending on any complications and the patient's general condition. In the early postoperative period, if bile flow is reduced, a low-fat diet may reduce discomfort and prevent nausea. For most patients, a special diet is not required. Advise them to eat nutritious meals and avoid excessive intake of fatty foods, especially fried food, butter, and "fast food." If the patient is obese, recommend a weight-reduction program, such as Weight Watchers.

Teach the patient to keep the incision clean and report any changes that may indicate infection. Remind him or her to report repeat abdominal or epigastric pain with vomiting that may occur several weeks to months after surgery. These symptoms indicate possible **postcholecystectomy syndrome (PCS)**.

Although PCS occurs in a small number of patients, patients who have it are usually discouraged that they have pain after already having surgery to cure it (Comstock, 2008). Causes of PCS are listed in Table 62-2. Management depends on the exact cause but usually involves the use of endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) to find the cause of the problem and repair it. This procedure and related nursing care are described in Chapter 55. Collaborative care includes pain management, antibiotics, nutrition and hydration therapy (possibly short-term parenteral nutrition), and control of nausea and vomiting.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is admitted to the same-day surgery unit after recovery from a laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Which action is the nurse's priority in caring for the client?

- Turn the client on the right side to help the flow of bile into the drainage bag.
- Check that the nasogastric tube is connected to low intermittent suction.
- Document the client's use of the patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) pump.
- Monitor the client's oxygen saturation level via pulse oximetry.

CANCER OF THE GALLBLADDER

Pathophysiology

Primary cancer of the gallbladder is rare and is more common in women than in men. Adenocarcinoma and squamous cell cancer of the gallbladder account for the majority of the cases. The tumor tends to begin in the inner layer (mucosa) of the gallbladder wall. It then grows outward to include the entire gallbladder before it begins to metastasize (spread) to

close organs like the liver, small intestine, and pancreas. These rare cancers appear more frequently in patients with pre-existing chronic cholecystitis and cholelithiasis. They also tend to occur more often in American Indians than in any other group, but the reason for this finding is not known (McCance et al., 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Early symptoms, when present, develop slowly and are similar to those of chronic cholecystitis and cholelithiasis. Assess for characteristic manifestations, which include:

- Anorexia
- Weight loss
- Nausea and vomiting
- Abdominal bloating
- Fever
- General malaise
- Jaundice (in advanced disease)
- Enlargement of the liver and spleen
- Severe abdominal pain (in advanced disease)

A moderately tender, irregularly shaped mass may be palpated. Gallbladder cancer is typically discovered during other procedures for diagnosis of suspected cholecystitis or during cholecystectomy.

The diagnosis of gallbladder cancer is usually made by ultrasonography, but other tests can be done. Some patients have a computed tomography (CT) scan or magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) in which a contrast medium is injected into the bile ducts. Other more invasive tests, like endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), may be performed. Liver function studies indicate liver involvement. Two serum tests that reveal the presence of cancer cells are carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) assay and CA 19-9.

INTERVENTIONS

The prognosis for the patient with cancer of the gallbladder is poor because it is usually diagnosed in late disease due to the lack of specific manifestations. Three treatments are used: surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy. Surgical intervention is either potentially curative (for an early resectable tumor) or palliative (for advanced disease with metastasis). The patient who is diagnosed with early disease has either a simple cholecystectomy (gallbladder removal) or extended cholecystectomy (removal of the gallbladder, surrounding lymph nodes, and a small margin of the liver). For palliative surgery to extend the patient's life or decrease discomfort, radical surgery is done.

Nursing care is similar to that for patients who have a cholecystectomy (see p. 1319) or Whipple procedure (see p. 1331), depending on the extent of disease. These procedures are described elsewhere in this chapter. Teach terminally ill patients and their families about end-of-life care and available hospice services (see Chapter 9).

Radiation therapy and chemotherapy alone are not effective for gallbladder cancer. However, they may be given as adjunctive procedures with surgery or instead of surgery in patients who are not surgical candidates to shrink the tumor.

Intensity-modulated radiation therapy that is much more advanced and intense than regular radiation is used. Chemotherapy with 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), doxorubicin, and mitomycin may be effective in reducing tumor size. [Chapter 24](#) describes in detail the care of the patient receiving radiation and chemotherapy.

PANCREATIC DISORDERS

ACUTE PANCREATITIS

Pathophysiology

Acute pancreatitis is a serious and, at times, life-threatening inflammatory process of the pancreas. This process is caused by a premature activation of excessive pancreatic enzymes that destroy ductal tissue and pancreatic cells, resulting in autodigestion and fibrosis of the pancreas. The pathologic changes occur in different degrees. The severity of pancreatitis depends on the extent of inflammation and tissue damage. Pancreatitis can range from mild involvement evidenced by edema and inflammation to **necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis (NHP)**. NHP is diffusely bleeding pancreatic tissue with fibrosis and tissue death.

The pancreas is unusual in that it functions as both an exocrine gland and an endocrine gland. The primary *endocrine* disorder is diabetes mellitus and is discussed in [Chapter 67](#). The *exocrine* function of the pancreas is responsible for secreting enzymes that assist in the breakdown of starches, proteins, and fats. These enzymes are normally secreted in the inactive form and become activated once they enter the small

intestine. Early activation (i.e., activation within the pancreas rather than the intestinal lumen) results in the inflammatory process of pancreatitis. Direct toxic injury to the pancreatic cells and the production and release of pancreatic enzymes (e.g., trypsin, lipase, elastase) result from the obstructive damage. After pancreatic duct obstruction, increased pressure may contribute to ductal rupture allowing spillage of trypsin and other enzymes into the pancreatic parenchymal tissue. Autodigestion of the pancreas occurs as a result ([Fig. 62-2](#)). In *acute* pancreatitis, four major pathophysiologic processes occur: lipolysis, proteolysis, necrosis of blood vessels, and inflammation.

The hallmark of pancreatic necrosis is enzymatic fat necrosis of the endocrine and exocrine cells of the pancreas caused by the enzyme *lipase*. Fatty acids are released during this *lipolytic process* and combine with ionized calcium to form a soaplike product. The initial rapid lowering of serum calcium levels is not readily compensated for by the parathyroid gland. Because the body needs ionized calcium and cannot use bound calcium, hypocalcemia occurs.

Proteolysis involves the splitting of proteins by hydrolysis of the peptide bonds, resulting in the formation of smaller polypeptides. Proteolytic activity may lead to thrombosis and gangrene of the pancreas. Pancreatic destruction may be localized and confined to one area or may involve the entire organ.

Elastase is activated by trypsin and causes elastic fibers of the blood vessels and ducts to dissolve. The *necrosis of blood vessels* results in bleeding, ranging from minor bleeding to massive hemorrhage of pancreatic tissue. Another pancreatic

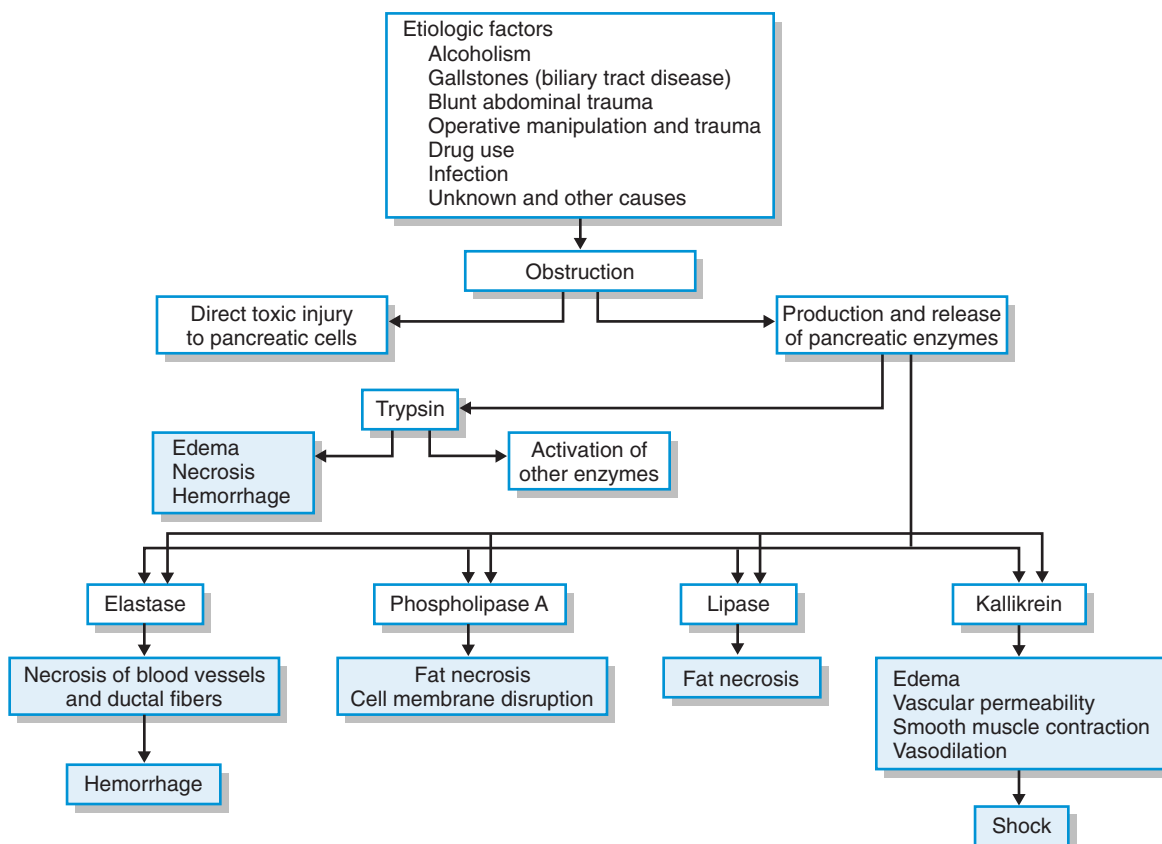


FIG. 62-2 The process of autodigestion in acute pancreatitis.

enzyme, kallikrein, causes the release of vasoactive peptides, bradykinin, and a plasma kinin known as *kallidin*. These substances contribute to vasodilation and increased vascular permeability, further compounding the hemorrhagic process. This massive destruction of blood vessels by necrosis may lead to generalized hemorrhage with blood escaping into the retroperitoneal tissues. *The patient with hemorrhagic pancreatitis is critically ill, and extensive pancreatic destruction and shock may lead to death. The majority of deaths in patients with acute pancreatitis result from irreversible shock.*

The *inflammatory stage* occurs when leukocytes cluster around the hemorrhagic and necrotic areas of the pancreas. A secondary bacterial process may lead to suppuration (pus formation) of the pancreatic parenchyma or the formation of an abscess. (See discussion of Pancreatic Abscess on p. 1328.) Mild infected lesions may be absorbed. When infected lesions are severe, calcification and fibrosis occur. If the infected fluid becomes walled off by fibrous tissue, a pancreatic pseudocyst is formed. (See discussion of **Pancreatic Pseudocyst** on p. 1329.)

Complications of Acute Pancreatitis

Acute pancreatitis may result in severe, life-threatening complications (Table 62-3). Jaundice occurs from swelling of the head of the pancreas, which slows bile flow through the common bile duct. The bile duct may also be compressed by calculi (stones) or a pancreatic pseudocyst. The resulting total bile flow obstruction causes severe jaundice. Intermittent hyperglycemia occurs from the release of glucagon, as well as the decreased release of insulin due to damage to the pancreatic islet cells. Total destruction of the pancreas may occur, leading to type 1 diabetes.

Left lung pleural effusions frequently develop in the patient with acute pancreatitis. Amylase effusions probably occur when exudate containing pancreatic enzymes passes from the peritoneal cavity into the pleural cavity via the transdiaphragmatic lymph channels. *Atelectasis and pneumonia may occur also, especially in older patients.*

Multi-system organ failure is caused by necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis (NHP). The patient is at risk for acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS). This severe form of pulmonary edema is caused by disruption of the alveolar-capillary membrane and is a serious complication of acute pancreatitis. (See Chapter 34 for a discussion of ARDS.) In acute pancreatitis, pulmonary failure accounts for more than half of all deaths that occur in the first week of the disease.

Coagulation defects are another major potential complication and may result in death. Complex physiologic changes in the pancreas cause the release of necrotic tissue and enzymes into the bloodstream, resulting in altered

coagulation. Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) involves hypercoagulation of the blood, with consumption of clotting factors and the development of microthrombi.

Shock in acute pancreatitis results from peripheral vasodilation from the released vasoactive substances and the retroperitoneal loss of protein-rich fluid from proteolytic digestion. Hypovolemia may result in decreased renal perfusion and acute renal failure. Paralytic (adynamic) ileus results from peritoneal irritation and seepage of pancreatic enzymes into the abdominal cavity.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

In many cases, the cause of pancreatitis is not known, but many factors can injure the pancreas. The most common cause is biliary tract disease, with gallstones accounting for almost half of the cases of obstructive pancreatitis. Acute pancreatitis may occur as a result of trauma from surgical manipulation after biliary tract, pancreatic, gastric, and duodenal procedures, such as cholecystectomy, the Whipple procedure, and partial gastrectomy. The trauma may also occur as a complication of the diagnostic procedure *endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)*, although this rarely occurs.

Other causative factors include:

- Trauma: external (blunt trauma, stab wounds, gunshot wounds [GSWs])
- Pancreatic obstruction: tumors, cysts, or abscesses; abnormal organ structure
- Metabolic disturbances: hyperlipidemia, hyperparathyroidism, or hypercalcemia
- Renal disturbances: failure or transplantation
- Familial, inherited pancreatitis
- Penetrating gastric or duodenal ulcers, resulting in peritonitis
- Viral infections, such as coxsackievirus B infection
- Alcoholism
- Toxicities of drugs, including opiates, sulfonamides, thiazides, steroids, and oral contraceptives (less common)

Incidence/Prevalence

Pancreatic “attacks” are especially common during holidays and vacations when alcohol consumption may be high, especially in men. Women are affected most often after cholelithiasis and biliary tract problems. They are also most at risk for pancreatitis within several months after childbirth.

Death occurs in a small percentage of patients with acute pancreatitis, but with early diagnosis and treatment, mortality can be reduced. It occurs at a higher rate in *older adults* and in patients with postoperative pancreatitis. The prognosis for recovery is usually good for pancreatitis associated with biliary tract disease and poor if pancreatitis accompanies alcoholism.

TABLE 62-3 POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS OF ACUTE PANCREATITIS

• Pancreatic infection (causes septic shock) • Hemorrhage (necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis [NHP]) • Acute kidney failure • Paralytic ileus • Hypovolemic shock • Pleural effusion	• Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) • Atelectasis • Pneumonia • Multi-organ system failure • Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) • Type 2 diabetes mellitus
---	--

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Most often, the patient reports severe and constant abdominal pain. Conduct the interview *after pain is controlled*. Ask whether the abdominal pain occurs when drinking alcohol or

eating a high-fat meal. Obtain information about alcohol usage, including the amount of alcohol consumed during what period of time (i.e., years of consumption, how much usually consumed over a particular period). Question the patient about a family or personal history of alcoholism, pancreatitis, trauma, or biliary tract disease. Ask whether any abdominal surgical interventions, such as cholecystectomy, or diagnostic procedures, such as ERCP, have been performed recently.

Ask about other medical problems known to cause pancreatitis, including peptic ulcer disease, renal failure, vascular disorders, hyperparathyroidism, and hyperlipidemia. Inquire about recent viral infections. Ask the patient or family member to list all prescription and over-the-counter (OTC) drugs taken recently, including nutritional and herbal supplements.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The diagnosis of pancreatitis is made based on the clinical presentation combined with the results of diagnostic studies—both laboratory and imaging assessments. Clinical manifestations of acute pancreatitis vary widely and depend on the severity of the inflammation. Typically, a patient is diagnosed after presenting with severe abdominal pain in the mid-epigastric area or left upper quadrant. Assess the intensity and quality of pain. The patient often states that the pain had a sudden onset and radiates to the back, left flank, or left shoulder. The pain is described as intense, **boring** (feeling that it is going through the body), and continuous and is worsened by lying in the supine position. Often the patient finds relief by assuming the fetal position (with the knees drawn up to the chest and the spine flexed) or by sitting upright and bending forward. He or she may report weight loss resulting from nausea and vomiting. Ask a nursing assistant or technician to weigh the patient.

When performing an abdominal assessment, inspect for:

- Generalized jaundice
- Gray-blue discoloration of the abdomen and periumbilical area
- Gray-blue discoloration of the flanks, caused by pancreatic enzyme leakage to cutaneous tissue from the peritoneal cavity

Listen for bowel sounds; absent or decreased bowel sounds usually indicate paralytic (adynamic) ileus. On light palpation, note abdominal tenderness, rigidity, and guarding as a result of peritonitis. A palpable mass may be found if a pancreatic pseudocyst is present. Pancreatic ascites creates a dull sound on percussion.

Monitor and record vital signs frequently to assess for elevated temperature, tachycardia, and decreased blood

pressure, or delegate and supervise this activity. Respiratory problems, such as left lung pleural effusions, atelectasis, and pneumonia, are common in patients with acute pancreatitis. Auscultate the lung fields for adventitious sounds or diminished breath sounds, and observe for dyspnea or orthopnea.

Psychosocial Assessment

If excessive alcohol is a causative factor, tactfully explore the patient's alcohol intake history. Provide patient privacy and establish a trusting relationship. Discuss the intake of alcohol and the reasons for overindulging. Ask him or her when increased drinking episodes occur and, in particular, whether binges occur during holidays, vacations, or weekends or revolve around particular activities, such as television viewing. Question the patient about any recent traumatic or stressful event that may have contributed to increased alcohol consumption, such as the death of a family member or a job loss.

Laboratory Assessment

Diagnostic laboratory abnormalities are typical in patients with acute pancreatitis (Table 62-4). A variety of pancreatic and nonpancreatic disorders can cause increased serum amylase levels. In patients with pancreatitis, *amylase* levels usually increase within 12 to 24 hours and remain elevated for 2 to 3 days. Persistent elevations may be an indicator of pancreatic abscess or pseudocyst (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Lipase also helps determine the presence of acute pancreatitis. Serum levels may rise later than amylase and remain elevated for up to 2 weeks. Because these levels stay elevated for such a long time, the health care provider may find this test useful in diagnosing patients who are not examined until several days after the initial onset of symptoms. An increase in lipase and amylase in the urine is also expected (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

If pancreatitis is accompanied by biliary dysfunction (biliary pancreatitis), serum *bilirubin* and *alkaline phosphatase* levels are usually elevated. A sensitive indicator of biliary

TABLE 62-4 CAUSES OF DIAGNOSTIC LABORATORY ABNORMALITIES IN ACUTE PANCREATITIS

ABNORMAL FINDING	CAUSE
Cardinal Diagnostic Tests	
Increased <i>serum amylase</i>	Pancreatic cell injury
Elevated <i>serum lipase</i>	Pancreatic cell injury
Elevated <i>serum trypsin</i>	Pancreatic cell injury
Elevated <i>serum elastase</i>	Pancreatic cell injury
Other Diagnostic Tests	
Elevated serum glucose	Pancreatic cell injury, resulting in impaired carbohydrate metabolism; decreased insulin release
Decreased serum calcium and magnesium	Fatty acids combined with calcium; seen in fat necrosis
Elevated bilirubin	Hepatobiliary obstructive process
Elevated alanine aminotransferase	Hepatobiliary involvement
Elevated leukocyte count	Inflammatory response

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient with acute pancreatitis, monitor for significant changes in vital signs that may indicate the life-threatening complication of shock. Hypotension and tachycardia may result from pancreatic hemorrhage, excessive fluid volume shifting, or the toxic effects of abdominal sepsis from enzyme damage. Observe the patient for changes in behavior and level of consciousness (LOC) that may be related to alcohol withdrawal, hypoxia, or impending sepsis with shock.

obstruction in acute pancreatitis is serum *alanine aminotransferase (ALT)*. A threefold or greater rise in concentration indicates that the diagnosis of acute biliary pancreatitis is valid. Elevated *white blood cell (WBC) count and differential*, *erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)*, and serum *glucose* levels are also common in acute pancreatitis. The levels often correlate with disease severity.

Decreased serum *calcium* and *magnesium* levels are seen with fat necrosis. Calcium levels may fall and remain decreased for 7 to 10 days. Those that consistently remain below 8 mg/dL are associated with a poor prognosis. Other tests include the basic metabolic panel (BMP), complete blood count (CBC), triglycerides, serum total protein, and albumin. The blood urea nitrogen (BUN), serum glucose, and triglycerides are usually elevated. Hemoconcentration is common as a result of third-space fluid loss. Leukocytosis (elevated WBCs) and thrombocytopenia (decreased platelets) are common (Holcomb, 2007). Albumin levels are decreased because cytokines (e.g., tumor necrosis factor [TNF]) released as part of the inflammatory response allow it to move from the bloodstream into the extravascular space. The presence of C-reactive protein suggests pancreatic inflammation and necrosis.

Imaging Assessment

Abdominal ultrasound is the most sensitive test to diagnose causes of pancreatitis like gallstones and can be performed at the bedside. However, it is not helpful in viewing the pancreas because of overlying bowel gas. Therefore *contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT)* provides a more reliable image and diagnosis of acute pancreatitis. This noninvasive technique may also be used to rule out pancreatic pseudocyst or ductal calculi.

An abdominal x-ray may also reveal gallstones. A chest x-ray may show elevation of the left side of the diaphragm or pleural effusion. Pancreatic stones are best diagnosed through ERCP.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with acute pancreatitis are:

1. Acute Pain related to pancreatic inflammation and enzyme leakage
2. Inadequate nutrition related to the inability to ingest food and absorb nutrients

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Acute Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with acute pancreatitis is expected to state that he or she has a decrease in or absence of abdominal pain, as evidenced by a pain intensity scale measurement.

Interventions. The priorities for patient care are to provide supportive care by relieving symptoms, to decrease inflammation, and to anticipate or treat complications. As for any patient, continually assess for and support the ABCs (*airway, breathing, and circulation*). In collaboration with the respiratory therapist, if available, provide oxygen and other respiratory support as needed. The collaborative plan of care depends on the severity of the illness.

Abdominal pain is the most common symptom of pancreatitis. The main focus of nursing care is aimed at controlling pain by interventions that decrease GI tract activity, thus decreasing pancreatic stimulation. Pain assessment to measure

the effectiveness of these interventions is an essential part of nursing care.

Nonsurgical Management. Mild pancreatitis requires hydration with IV fluids, pain control, and drug therapy. The health care team initially attempts to relieve pain with non-surgical interventions, which include fasting and rest, drug therapy, and comfort measures. If the patient has a life-threatening complication or requires frequent assessment, he or she is admitted to a critical care unit for invasive hemodynamic monitoring.

To rest the pancreas and reduce pancreatic enzyme secretion, withhold food and fluids during the acute period. The health care provider prescribes IV isotonic fluid administration to maintain hydration. IV replacement of calcium and magnesium may also be needed. Measure and document intake and output. Some patients have an indwelling urinary catheter to obtain accurate measurements.

Nasogastric drainage and suction are reserved for more severely ill patients who have continuous vomiting or biliary obstruction. Gastric decompression using a nasogastric tube (NGT) prevents gastric juices from flowing into the duodenum.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because paralytic (adynamic) ileus is a common complication of acute pancreatitis, prolonged nasogastric intubation may be necessary. Assess frequently for the return of peristalsis by asking the patient if he or she has passed flatus or had a stool. The return of bowel sounds is not reliable as an indicator of peristalsis return.

To decrease pain, the primary drug class used is opioid. Other drugs may also be prescribed. Pain management for acute pancreatitis typically begins with the administration of opioids by patient-controlled analgesia (PCA). Drugs such as morphine or hydromorphone (Dilaudid) are typically used because meperidine (Demerol) can cause seizures, especially in older adults. Other options that have been used successfully to manage acute pain include IV or transdermal fentanyl and epidural analgesia.

In mild pancreatitis, the pain usually subsides in 2 to 3 days. However, with severe acute pancreatitis, the abdominal pain and tenderness may persist for up to 2 weeks. The dosages and intervals of drug administration are individualized according to the severity of the disease and the symptoms.

Histamine receptor antagonists (e.g., ranitidine [Zantac]) and proton pump inhibitors (e.g., omeprazole [Prilosec]) help decrease gastric acid secretion. Antibiotics may be used, but they are indicated primarily for patients with acute necrotizing pancreatitis. Common drugs used include cefuroxime (Zinacef) and ceftazidime (Ceptaz).

Helping the patient assume a side-lying position (with the legs drawn up to the chest) may decrease the abdominal pain of pancreatitis. Sitting with the knees flexed toward the chest is also helpful.

If the patient is NPO or has an NGT, remind assistive nursing personnel to implement frequent oral hygiene measures to keep mucous membranes moist and free of inflammation or crusting. Because of the drying effect of drugs and the absence of oral fluids, the mouth and oral cavity may be

extremely dry, resulting in considerable discomfort and possibly parotitis (inflammation of the parotid [salivary] glands).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient with acute pancreatitis, monitor his or her respiratory status every 8 hours or more often as needed, and provide oxygen to promote comfort in breathing. Respiratory complications such as pleural effusions increase patient discomfort. Fluid overload can be detected by assessing for weight gain, listening for crackles, and observing for dyspnea. Carefully monitor for signs of respiratory failure.

Observe for signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia by assessing for Chvostek's and Trousseau's signs. These tests cause muscle spasms after stimulating the associated nerves. [Chapter 13](#) discusses assessment and interventions for patients with hypocalcemia in more detail.

Lowering the patient's anxiety level may also substantially reduce pain. Explain all procedures and other aspects of patient care thoroughly. Provide reassurance, offer diversional activities such as music and reading material, and encourage visitors to direct attention away from the pain.

If pancreatitis was caused by gallstones, an ERCP with a **sphincterotomy** (opening of the sphincter of Oddi) may be performed on an urgent or emergent basis. If this procedure is not successful, surgery is required. ERCP is described in detail in [Chapter 55](#).

Surgical Management. Surgical intervention for acute pancreatitis is usually not indicated. However, if an ERCP is not successful in removing gallstones, a laparoscopic cholecystectomy may be performed as described on p. 1319 in the discussion of Surgical Management in the Cholecystitis section.

Complications of pancreatitis, such as pancreatic pseudocyst and abscess, may also require surgical intervention. Laparoscopy (minimally invasive surgery [MIS]) may be done to drain an abscess or pseudocyst. For patients who are high surgical risks, pseudocysts or abscesses can be treated by percutaneous drainage under CT guidance.

Promoting Nutrition

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with acute pancreatitis is expected to have adequate nutrition to meet his or her metabolic needs.

Interventions. The patient is maintained on NPO status in the early stages of pancreatitis. Antiemetics for nausea and vomiting are prescribed as needed. Patients who have severe pancreatitis and are unable to eat for 24 to 48 hours after illness onset may begin jejunal tube feeding unless paralytic ileus is present. *Early* nutritional intervention enhances immune system functioning and may prevent complications and worsening inflammation. Enteral feeding is preferred over total parenteral nutrition (TPN) because it causes fewer episodes of glucose elevation and other complications associated with TPN. Be sure that the patient is weighed every day. Collaborate with the health care provider, dietitian, and pharmacist to plan and implement the most appropriate nutritional intervention. [Chapter 63](#) describes collaborative care of patients receiving enteral feeding and TPN.

When food is tolerated during the healing phase, the health care provider prescribes small, frequent, moderate- to high-carbohydrate, high-protein, low-fat meals. Foods should

be bland with little spice. GI stimulants such as caffeine-containing foods (tea, coffee, cola, and chocolate), as well as alcohol, should be avoided. Monitor the patient beginning to resume oral food intake for nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. *If any of these symptoms occur, notify the health care provider immediately.*

To boost caloric intake, commercial liquid nutritional preparations supplement the diet. The health care provider may also prescribe fat-soluble and other vitamin and mineral replacement supplements. Glutamine, omega-3 fatty acids, fiber, antioxidants, and/or nucleotides may be added to the patient's nutrition plan.

Community-Based Care

Home care preparation is individualized for each patient's circumstances. Some patients may be severely weakened from their acute illness and need to confine activity to one floor, limiting stair climbing and other strenuous activities until they regain their strength. Collaborate with the case manager to plan the best place for the patient to recover and resources that may be needed.

Education needs to be started early in the hospitalization period—as soon as the acute episodes of pain have subsided. Assess the patient's and family's knowledge of the disease.

The desired outcomes for discharge planning and education are to avoid further episodes of pancreatitis and prevent progression to a chronic disease. If the patient abuses alcohol, instruct him or her to abstain from drinking to prevent further pain attacks and extension of inflammation and pancreatic insufficiency. Tell the patient that if alcohol is consumed, acute pain will return and further autodigestion of the pancreas may lead to chronic pancreatitis.

Teach the patient to notify the health care provider after discharge to home if acute abdominal pain or biliary tract disease (as evidenced by jaundice, clay-colored stools, or darkened urine) occurs. These signs and symptoms are possible indicators of complications or disease progression.

Patients with acute pancreatitis may require several visits by a home care nurse if the hospital course was complicated. In these cases, home care may be needed for wound care and assistance with ADLs. The patient requires medical follow-up



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Teamwork and Collaboration; Informatics

A 78-year-old man is admitted from home to the medical unit with acute pancreatitis secondary to a history of gallstones, hypertension, osteoarthritis, and type 2 diabetes mellitus. He has lost 20 pounds (9.0 kg) in the past 2 months and reports severe boring-like abdominal pain, fatigue, and weakness. On physical assessment, he has decreased bowel sounds in all quadrants, crackles in the bases of his lungs, and signs of dehydration. Vital signs are: T, 100° F; P, 110; R, 36; and BP, 102/58.

1. What is the priority for this patient's care at this time? What current evidence supports your answer? Where would you look for current evidence that would help you answer this question? (Be specific in your answer.)
2. What laboratory findings would you expect him to have? Why?
3. With whom should you collaborate to meet the desired outcomes for his care?
4. What community support and health teaching is he going to require when he is discharged?

with the primary care physician or nurse practitioner to monitor the disease process. For those with alcoholism, provide information about groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). Family members may attend support groups such as Al-Anon and Alateen.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with acute pancreatitis based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that the patient will:

- Have control of abdominal pain, as indicated by self-report
- Have adequate nutrients available to meet metabolic needs

CHRONIC PANCREATITIS

Pathophysiology

Chronic pancreatitis is a progressive, destructive disease of the pancreas that has remissions and exacerbations (“flare-ups”). Inflammation and fibrosis of the tissue contribute to pancreatic insufficiency and diminished function of the organ.

Chronic pancreatitis can be classified into several categories. *Alcoholism* is the primary risk factor for **chronic calcifying pancreatitis (CCP)**, the most common type. In the early stages of the disease, pancreatic secretions precipitate as insoluble proteins that plug the pancreatic ducts and flow of pancreatic juices. As the protein plugs become more widespread, the cellular lining of the ducts changes and ulcerates. This inflammatory process causes fibrosis of the pancreatic tissue. Intraductal calcification and marked pancreatic tissue destruction (necrosis) develop in the late stages. The organ becomes hard and firm as a result of cell atrophy and pancreatic insufficiency.

Chronic calcifying pancreatitis is found predominantly in men, but the incidence in women is increasing. In women, chronic pancreatitis occurs more commonly among those with biliary tract disease (cholecystitis and cholelithiasis).

Chronic obstructive pancreatitis develops from inflammation, spasm, and obstruction of the sphincter of Oddi, often from cholelithiasis (gallstones). Inflammatory and sclerotic lesions occur in the head of the pancreas and around the ducts, causing an obstruction and backflow of pancreatic secretions. (See *Complications of Acute Pancreatitis*, p. 1322.)

Autoimmune pancreatitis is a chronic inflammatory process in which immunoglobulins invade the pancreas. Other organs may also be infiltrated, including the lungs and liver. Whereas other types of chronic pancreatitis may predispose the patient to pancreatic cancer, there is no evidence that autoimmune pancreatitis is a risk factor (Novotny et al., 2010).

Idiopathic and **hereditary chronic pancreatitis** may be associated with *SPINK1* and *CFTR* gene mutations (Midha et al., 2010). The protein encoded by the *SPINK1* gene is a trypsin inhibitor. The *CFTR* gene is associated with cystic fibrosis. Research on these gene mutations can help develop targeted drug therapy for treatment of these diseases.

Pancreatic insufficiency in any type of chronic pancreatitis causes loss of *exocrine* function. Most patients with chronic pancreatitis have decreased pancreatic secretions and bicarbonate. Pancreatic enzyme secretion must be greatly reduced to produce steatorrhea resulting from severe malabsorption

of fats. These characteristic stools are pale, bulky, and frothy and have an offensive odor. The action of colonic bacteria on unabsorbed lipids and proteins is responsible for the extremely foul odor. On inspection of the stools, the fat content is visible. In severe chronic pancreatitis, stool fat output may be more than 40 g/day.

Fat malabsorption also contributes to weight loss and muscle wasting (a decrease in muscle mass) and leads to general debilitation. Protein malabsorption results in a “starvation” edema of the feet, legs, and hands caused by decreased levels of circulating albumin.

The loss of pancreatic *endocrine* function is responsible for the development of diabetes mellitus in patients with chronic pancreatic insufficiency. (See *Chapter 67* for a complete discussion of diabetes mellitus.)

The patient with chronic pancreatitis may have pulmonary complications, such as pleuritic pain, pleural effusions, and pulmonary infiltrates. Pancreatic ascites may decrease diaphragmatic excursion and lung expansion, resulting in impaired ventilation. In the ill patient with chronic pancreatitis, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) may develop.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Many of the clinical manifestations of chronic pancreatitis differ from those of an acute inflammation. Abdominal pain is the major clinical manifestation for most types of pancreatitis (*Chart 62-2*). For those with chronic pancreatitis, pain is typically describes as a continuous burning or gnawing dullness with periods of acute exacerbation (flare-ups). The pain is very intense and relentless. The frequency of acute exacerbations may increase as the pancreatic fibrosis develops.

Perform an abdominal assessment. Abdominal tenderness is less intense in patients with chronic pancreatitis than in those with acute pancreatitis. A mass may be palpated in the left upper quadrant, which may suggest a pancreatic pseudocyst or abscess. Massive pancreatic ascites may be present, producing dullness on abdominal percussion. Because respiratory complications can occur, auscultate the lung fields for adventitious sounds or decreased aeration and observe for dyspnea or orthopnea.

CHART 62-2 KEY FEATURES

Chronic Pancreatitis

- Intense abdominal pain (major clinical manifestation) that is continuous and burning or gnawing
- Abdominal tenderness
- Ascites
- Possible left upper quadrant mass (if pseudocyst or abscess is present)
- Respiratory compromise manifested by adventitious or diminished breath sounds, dyspnea, or orthopnea
- Steatorrhea; clay-colored stools
- Weight loss
- Jaundice
- Dark urine
- Polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia (diabetes mellitus)

Ask the patient to collect a random stool specimen if able, or ask him or her to describe the stools. The specimen may show **steatorrhea** (foul-smelling fatty stools that may increase in volume as pancreatic insufficiency progresses and lipase production decreases). Assess for unintentional weight loss, muscle wasting, jaundice, dark urine, and the manifestations of diabetes mellitus, such as polyuria (increased urinary output), polydipsia (excessive thirst), and polyphagia (increased appetite).

Diagnosis is based on the patient's clinical manifestations and laboratory and imaging assessment. Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) is done to visualize the pancreatic and common bile ducts. Imaging studies such as computed tomography (CT) scanning, contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), abdominal ultrasound (US), and endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) are also useful in making the diagnosis. In chronic pancreatitis, laboratory findings include normal or moderately elevated serum amylase and lipase levels. Obstruction of the intrahepatic bile duct can cause elevated serum bilirubin and alkaline phosphatase levels. Intermittent elevations in serum glucose levels are common and can be detected by blood glucose monitoring, both fasting and non-fasting.

INTERVENTIONS

The focus of caring for the patient with chronic pancreatitis is to manage pain, assist in maintaining a sufficient nutritional intake, and prevent recurrence.

Nonsurgical Management

Nonsurgical interventions include primarily drug and nutrition therapy. The major intervention for the pain of chronic pancreatitis is drug therapy. Medicate the patient as prescribed according to the assessment of the intensity of pain. Evaluate the effectiveness of the drug intervention. Opioid analgesia is most frequently used initially, but dependency may occur. Non-opioid analgesics may be tried to relieve pain. (See [Chapter 5](#) for other interventions for chronic pain.)

Pancreatic-enzyme replacement therapy (PERT) is the standard of care to prevent malnutrition, malabsorption, and excessive weight loss ([Chart 62-3](#)). Pancrelipase is usually prescribed in capsule or tablet form and contains varying amounts of amylase, lipase, and protease. Pancrelipase delayed-release capsules (Creon) or enteric tablets should not be crushed or chewed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach the patient who is taking pancreatic-enzyme replacement therapy to take these drugs with meals and snacks and a glass of water. Instruct patients who have difficulty swallowing either to cover the capsules with applesauce or, if needed, open the capsules and spread their contents over applesauce, mashed fruit, or rice cereal. Enzyme preparations should not be mixed with foods containing proteins because the enzymatic action dissolves the food into a watery substance. Be sure that patients drink a full glass of water after taking the drug to ensure that none of the enzymes remain in the mouth. Advise patients to wipe their lips with a wet towel to prevent the skin irritation and breakdown that residual enzymes can cause.

The dosage of pancreatic enzymes depends on the severity of the malabsorption. Record the number and consistency of

CHART 62-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Enzyme Replacement for the Patient with Chronic Pancreatitis

- Take pancreatic enzymes with meals and snacks and follow with a glass of water.
- Administer enzymes after antacid or H₂ blockers. (Decreased pH inactivates drug.)
- Swallow the tablets or capsules without chewing to minimize oral irritation and to allow the drug to be released slowly.
- If you cannot swallow the capsule, pierce the gelatin casing and place contents in applesauce.
- Do not mix enzyme preparations in protein-containing foods.
- Wipe your lips after taking enzymes to avoid skin irritation.
- Do not crush enteric-coated preparations.
- Follow up on all scheduled laboratory testing. (Pancrelipase can cause an increase in uric acid levels.)

stools per day to monitor the effectiveness of enzyme therapy. If pancreatic enzyme treatment is effective, the stools should become less frequent and less fatty.

If the patient has diabetes, the health care provider prescribes insulin or oral hypoglycemic agents for glucose control. Patients maintained on total parenteral nutrition (TPN) are particularly susceptible to elevated glucose levels and may require regular insulin additives to the solution. Closely monitor blood glucose so that hyperglycemia is controlled. Check finger-stick blood glucose (FSBG) or sugar (FSBS) levels every 2 to 4 hours. [Chapter 63](#) describes in detail the care associated with TPN.

The health care provider may also prescribe drug therapy to decrease gastric acid. Gastric acid destroys the lipase needed to break down fats. Controlling the acidity of the stomach with H₂ blockers or proton pump inhibitors or neutralizing stomach acid with oral sodium bicarbonate may enhance the effectiveness of PERT.

Protein and fat malabsorption result in significant weight loss and decreased muscle mass in the patient with chronic pancreatitis. Therefore the nutritional interventions for acute pancreatitis are also used for chronic pancreatitis. The patient often limits food intake to avoid increased pain. For this reason, nutrition maintenance is often difficult to achieve. Patients receive either total parenteral nutrition (TPN) or total enteral nutrition (TEN), including vitamin and mineral replacement.

Collaborate with the dietitian to teach the patient about long-term dietary management. He or she needs an increased number of calories, up to 4000 to 6000 calories/day, to maintain weight. Those foods high in carbohydrates and protein also assist in the healing process. Foods high in fat are avoided because they cause or increase diarrhea. Teach all patients to avoid alcohol. Alcohol-cessation programs may be recommended.

Surgical Management

Surgery is not a primary intervention for the treatment of chronic pancreatitis. However, it may be indicated for ongoing abdominal pain, incapacitating relapses of pain, or complications such as abscesses and pseudocysts.

The underlying pathologic changes determine the procedure indicated. Using laparoscopy, the surgeon incises and

drains an abscess or pseudocyst. Laparoscopic cholecystectomy or choledochotomy (incision of the common bile duct) may be indicated if biliary tract disease is an underlying cause of pancreatitis. If the pancreatic duct sphincter is fibrotic, the surgeon performs a sphincterotomy (incision of the sphincter) to enlarge it. Endoscopic sphincterotomy may be used for patients who are poor surgical candidates.

In some cases, laparoscopic distal pancreatectomy may be appropriate for resection of the distal pancreas or pancreas head. Endoscopic pancreatic necrosectomy and natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery (NOTES) are becoming more common for removing necrosed pancreatic tissue. Both procedures are performed through the GI wall without a visible skin incision. The NOTES procedure is discussed in Surgical Management on p. 1319 in the Cholecystitis section.

In a few cases, pancreas transplantation may be done. However, this procedure is performed most often for patients with severe, uncontrolled diabetes. [Chapter 67](#) discusses pancreas transplantation.

Community-Based Care

Collaborate with the hospital-based case manager (CM) or discharge planner about home care or follow-up in another setting. A community-based CM may continue to follow the patient after hospital discharge. If the patient is discharged to home, the activity area should be limited to one floor until he or she regains strength and can increase activity. Teach patients and families that toilet facilities must be easily accessible because of chronic steatorrhea and frequent defecation. If they are not easily accessible, a bedside commode is obtained for the home.

Because there is no known cure for chronic pancreatitis, patient and family education is aimed at preventing acute episodes of the disease, providing long-term care, and promoting health maintenance ([Chart 62-4](#)). Teach the patient to avoid known irritating substances, such as caffeinated beverages (stimulates the GI system) and alcohol. Collaborate with the dietitian in diet teaching, which focuses on eating bland, low-fat, frequent meals and avoiding rich, fatty foods. Stress the importance of adhering to the nutritional recommendations. Written instructions are essential, with consideration of personal and cultural food preferences.

CHART 62-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Exacerbations of Chronic Pancreatitis

- Avoid things that make your symptoms worse, such as drinking caffeinated beverages.
- Avoid alcohol ingestion; refer to self-help group for assistance.
- Avoid nicotine.
- Eat bland, low-fat, high-protein, moderate-carbohydrate meals; avoid gastric stimulants, such as spices.
- Eat small meals and snacks high in calories.
- Take the pancreatic enzymes that have been prescribed for you with meals.
- Rest frequently; restrict your activity to one floor until you regain your strength.

Remind the patient and family members or significant others of the importance of adhering to pancreatic enzyme replacement. The patient must take the prescribed enzymes with meals and snacks to aid in the digestion of food and promote the absorption of fats and proteins. Teach the patient to take the enzymes before or at the beginning of the meal. Instruct him or her to report any increase in abdominal distention, cramping, and foul-smelling, frothy, fatty stools to the health care provider so that these supplements may be increased as needed. Remind the patient to report any skin breakdown so that therapeutic interventions to promote skin integrity can be started. Abdominal fistulas are common and present a difficult challenge because pancreatic secretions irritate the skin.

The frequency of defecation (whether continent or incontinent) poses challenging skin care problems. Instruct the patient to keep the skin dry and free of the abrasive fatty stools, which damage the skin. The skin should be cleaned thoroughly after each stool and a moisture barrier applied to prevent breakdown and maintain skin integrity. Many products on the market actively repel stool from the skin.

If the patient develops diabetes mellitus as a result of chronic pancreatitis, management of elevated glucose levels after discharge from the hospital may require oral antidiabetic agents or insulin injections. If this is the case, collaborate with the certified diabetic educator (CDE) to provide in-depth teaching concerning diabetes, its signs and symptoms, medical management, drug therapy, nutrition therapy, blood glucose monitoring, and general care.

Chronic illnesses are devastating for families. The high costs of medical insurance, medical treatment, and drug therapy cause serious financial problems. Often the patient with chronic pancreatitis is unable to work. Collaborate with the CM about ways to assist the patient with resources for financial help.

The patient may require several home visits by nurses, depending on the severity of the chronic health problems and home maintenance and support needs. The nurse assesses the patient for pain management, adherence to the nutritional plan and alcohol abstinence, the effectiveness of pancreatic enzyme therapy, and psychosocial adaptation to a chronic illness. Refer him or her and the family to a counselor or a self-help group, such as Alcoholics Anonymous (www.aa.org) and Al-Anon (www.al-anon.org), if appropriate.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The physician assistant prescribes pancreatic enzyme replacement capsules for a client with chronic pancreatitis. What health teaching will the nurse provide?

- "Take the enzymes after meals to be most effective."
- "Swallow the capsule whole or with applesauce."
- "Drink a full glass of milk after taking the drug."
- "Crush the capsules and tablets and mix with juice."

PANCREATIC ABSCESS

Pancreatic abscesses are the most serious complication of acute necrotizing pancreatitis. If untreated, they are always fatal. After surgery, the recurrence rate is high. The abscesses form from collections of purulent liquefaction of the necrotic pancreas.

Pancreatic abscesses occur after severe acute pancreatitis, episodes of chronic pancreatitis, or gallbladder surgery. The development of either a single abscess or multiple abscesses results from extensive inflammatory necrosis of the pancreas that is readily invaded by infectious organisms, such as enteric bacteria and *Candida*. They can erode through the retroperitoneum into the bowel mesentery, the mediastinum, the pleural space, or the pelvis.

Patients with pancreatic abscesses often appear more seriously ill than those with pseudocysts. Clinical manifestations are similar. However, the temperature in patients with abscesses may spike to as high as 104° F (40° C). Blood cultures are helpful in revealing the infective organism. Pleural effusions commonly accompany these abscesses if they enter the pleural space. Ultrasonography and contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) cannot differentiate between pancreatic pseudocysts and abscesses.

Drainage via the percutaneous method or laparoscopy should be performed as soon as possible to prevent sepsis. Antibiotic treatment alone does not resolve the abscess. Death rates remain high even after surgical drainage. Many patients require multiple drainage procedures for repeated abscesses.

PANCREATIC PSEUDOCYST

Pathophysiology

Pancreatic pseudocysts, or false cysts, are so named because, unlike true cysts, they do not have an epithelial lining. They are encapsulated, saclike structures that form on or surround the pancreas. The pseudocyst wall is inflamed, vascular, and fibrotic. It may contain up to several liters of straw-colored or dark brown viscous fluid, the enzymatic exudate of the pancreas (McCance et al., 2010). Risk factors for pseudocysts are acute pancreatitis, abdominal trauma, and chronic pancreatitis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

A pseudocyst can be palpated as an epigastric mass in about half of all cases. The primary presenting symptom is epigastric pain radiating to the back. Other common clinical manifestations include abdominal fullness, nausea, vomiting, and jaundice. Pseudocysts are diagnosed and their growth and resolution monitored by serial pancreatic diagnostic testing. Complications of pseudocyst formation include:

- Hemorrhage
- Infection
- Obstruction of the bowel, biliary tract, or splenic vein
- Abscess
- Fistula formation
- Pancreatic ascites

Pseudocysts may spontaneously resolve, or they may rupture and produce hemorrhage. Surgical intervention is necessary if the pseudocyst does not resolve within 6 to 8 weeks or if complications develop. Possible surgeries include:

- Percutaneous drainage using a needle, usually under CT scan guidance
- Endoscopic-assisted drainage using an endoscope to locate the pseudocyst
- Surgical drainage of the pseudocyst into the stomach or jejunum

To provide external drainage, the surgeon inserts a sump drainage tube to remove pancreatic secretions and exudate. Pancreatic fistulas are common after surgery, and skin breakdown from corrosive pancreatic enzymes in patients who have external drainage presents a major nursing care challenge.

PANCREATIC CANCER

Pathophysiology

Cancer of the pancreas is a leading cause of cancer deaths each year in the United States. It is difficult to diagnose early because the pancreas is hidden and surrounded by other organs. Treatment has limited results, and 5-year survival rates are low (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2010).

Pancreatic tumors usually originate from epithelial cells of the pancreatic ductal system. If the tumor is discovered in the early stages, the tumor cells may be localized within the glandular organ. However, this is highly unlikely. Most often, the tumor is discovered in the late stages of development and may be a well-defined mass or is diffusely spread throughout the pancreas.

The tumor may be a primary cancer, or it may result from metastasis from cancers of the lung, breast, thyroid, kidney, or skin. Primary tumors are generally adenocarcinomas and grow in well-differentiated glandular patterns. They grow rapidly and spread to surrounding organs (stomach, duodenum, gallbladder, and intestine) by direct extension and invasion of lymphatic and vascular systems. This highly metastatic lesion may eventually invade the lung, peritoneum, liver, spleen, and lymph nodes.

Clinical manifestations depend on the site of origin or metastasis. The head of the pancreas is the most common site. The tumors are usually small lesions with poorly defined margins. Jaundice results from tumor compression and obstruction of the common bile duct and from gallbladder dilation, causing the organ to enlarge.

Cancers of the body and tail of the pancreas are usually large and invade the entire tail and body. These tumors may be palpable abdominal masses, especially in the thin patient. Through metastatic spread via the splenic vein, metastasis to the liver may cause **hepatomegaly** (enlargement of the liver up to two to three times its normal size). Cancers of the body and tail spread more extensively than do pancreatic head carcinomas, with invasion of the retroperitoneum, vertebral column, spleen, adrenal glands, colon, or stomach. Regardless of where it originates, it spreads rapidly through the lymphatic and venous systems to other organs.

Venous thromboembolism is a common complication of pancreatic cancer. Necrotic products of the pancreatic tumor are believed to have thromboplastic properties resulting in the blood's hypercoagulable state. In addition, the patient is at high risk because of decreased mobility and extensive surgical manipulation.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

A small number of those with pancreatic cancer have an inherited risk. Mutations in certain oncogenes have been identified. Mutations have also been revealed in tumor suppressor genes, such as *p16* and *BRCA2*—the same mutation that makes some women susceptible to breast and ovarian cancer. Genes responsible for hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer can also increase a person's risk for pancreatic cancer (ACS, 2010).

The exact cause of pancreatic cancer is unknown. High-risk populations are those in their sixth to eighth decades of life and those with a personal history of smoking.

Other risk factors associated with the disease include:

- Diabetes mellitus
- Chronic pancreatitis
- Cirrhosis
- High intake of red meat, especially processed meat like bacon
- Long-term exposure to chemicals such as gasoline and pesticides
- Obesity

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Pancreatic cancer often presents in a slow and vague manner. The presenting symptoms depend somewhat on the location of the tumor. The first sign may be jaundice, which suggests late, advanced disease (Chart 62-5). Jaundice occurs because the gallbladder and liver are commonly involved. As the tumor spreads, the green-gold skin color associated with obstructive jaundice progressively worsens. Ask the patient whether the color of the stool and urine has changed. As a result of the obstructive process, the stool is clay colored and the urine is dark and frothy. Inspect the skin for dryness and scratch marks, indicating pruritus from jaundice caused by bile salt collection. Assess the sclerae for icterus (yellowing) and the mucous membranes for signs of jaundice.

The enlarged gallbladder and liver may be palpable. In advanced cases of pancreatic carcinoma, the tumor may be felt as a firm, fixed mass in the left upper abdominal quadrant or epigastric region.

The most common concern is fatigue, which is described as a diminished energy level and an increased need for rest relative to the level of activity. The patient notices an inability to perform usual physical or intellectual activities.

Question the patient about abdominal pain, which is usually described as a vague, constant dullness in the upper abdomen and nonspecific in nature. Pain also indicates advanced stages of the disease and may be related to eating or activity. Ask whether the patient has pain in other areas of the body. Referred back pain may be caused by pressure on the nerve plexus. Some patients have leg or calf pain with swelling and redness as a result of deep vein thrombosis or thrombophlebitis.

CHART 62-5 KEY FEATURES

Pancreatic Cancer

- | | |
|---|--|
| • Jaundice | • Glucose intolerance |
| • Clay- (light) colored stools | • Splenomegaly (enlarged spleen) |
| • Dark urine | • Flatulence |
| • Abdominal pain: usually vague, dull, or nonspecific that radiates into the back | • Gastrointestinal bleeding |
| • Weight loss | • Ascites (abdominal fluid) |
| • Anorexia | • Leg or calf pain (from thrombophlebitis) |
| • Nausea or vomiting | • Weakness and fatigue |

Weigh the patient to determine the extent of weight loss and whether it has occurred rapidly. Ask about food intake and intolerances. Anorexia accompanied by early satiety, nausea, flatulence (gas), and vomiting are common. GI bleeding may develop from esophageal or gastric varices caused by the tumor pressing on the portal vein. A new diagnosis of diabetes is found in some patients.

In addition to the focused history, perform a general abdominal assessment. In particular, observe for distention and swelling, which may be **ascites** (abdominal fluid). Percussion over the ascitic abdomen elicits dullness, seen in the advanced stages of the disease process.

No specific blood tests diagnose pancreatic cancer. Serum amylase and lipase levels, as well as alkaline phosphatase and bilirubin levels, are increased. The degree of elevation depends on the acuteness or chronicity of the pancreatic and biliary damage. Elevated carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) levels occur in most patients with pancreatic cancer. This test may provide early information about the presence of tumor cells. Other tumor markers such as CA 19-9 and CA 242 have been found to be useful serologic tests for monitoring a proven diagnosis and for continuing surveillance for potential spread or recurrence (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Abdominal ultrasound and contrast-enhanced computed tomography (CT) are the most commonly used imaging techniques for confirming a tumor and can differentiate the tumor from a cyst. Endoscopic ultrasonography can also be performed to sample tissue for diagnosis and provide information on tumor type and size (Riehl, 2007). Contrast harmonic echo-endoscopic ultrasound increases the accuracy of diagnosing solid pancreatic masses (Fusaroli et al., 2010).

Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) also provides visual diagnostic data. An alternative to ERCP is a percutaneous transhepatic biliary cholangiogram with placement of a percutaneous transhepatic biliary drain (PTBD). This drain decompresses the blocked biliary system by draining bile, either internally, externally, or both. Aspiration of pancreatic ascitic fluid by abdominal paracentesis may reveal cancer cells and elevated amylase levels.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of the patient with pancreatic cancer is geared toward preventing tumor spread and decreasing pain. These measures are not curative, only palliative. The cancers are often metastatic and recur despite treatment.

Nonsurgical Management

As in other types of cancer, chemotherapy or radiation is used to relieve pain by shrinking the tumor. It may be used before, after, or instead of surgery. *Chemotherapy* has had limited success in increasing survival time. In most cases, combining agents has been more successful than single-agent chemotherapy. 5-Fluorouracil (5-FU), a commonly used drug, may be given alone or with gemcitabine (Gemzar) for locally advanced, or unresectable, pancreatic cancers. Gemcitabine may also be given with capecitabine (Xeloda), docetaxel (Taxotere), and/or erlotinib (Tarceva), a targeted agent for unresectable or metastatic tumors. Some patients receive three or four drugs and have had more tumor shrinkage as a result. Observe for adverse drug effects, such as fatigue, rash, anorexia, and diarrhea.

Other targeted therapies being investigated include growth factor inhibitors, anti-angiogenesis factors, and kinase inhibitors (also known as *tyrosine kinase inhibitors*). Kinase inhibitors are a newer group of drugs that focus on cancer cells with little or no effect on healthy cells. Chapter 24 describes general nursing interventions associated with chemotherapy.

To control pain, the patient takes high doses of opioid analgesics (usually morphine) as prescribed and uses other comfort measures before the pain escalates and peaks. Because of the poor prognosis, drug dependency is not a consideration. Chapter 5 describes in detail the care of the patient with chronic cancer pain.

Intensive external beam *radiation* therapy to the pancreas may offer pain relief by shrinking tumor cells, alleviating obstruction, and improving food absorption. It does not improve survival rates. Implantation of radioactive iodine (^{125}I) seeds, in combination with systemic or intra-arterial administration of floxuridine (FUDR), has also been used. The patient may experience discomfort during and after the radiation treatments. Chapter 24 describes radiation therapy in more detail.

For patients experiencing biliary obstruction who are high surgical risks, **biliary stents** placed percutaneously (through the skin) can ensure patency to relieve pain. These stents are devices made of plastic materials that keep the ducts of the biliary system open. Using another approach, self-expandable stents may be inserted endoscopically to relieve obstruction.

Surgical Management

Complete surgical resection of the pancreatic tumor offers the patient with pancreatic cancer the only effective treatment, but it is done only in patients with small tumors. *Partial pancreatectomy* is the preferred surgery for tumors smaller than 3 centimeters in diameter (Halls & Ward-Smith, 2007). Recent technologic advances have expanded the role of **minimally invasive surgery (MIS)** via laparoscopy in the staging, palliation, and removal of pancreatic cancers. The procedure selected depends on the purpose of the surgery and stage of the disease. For example, if the patient has a biliary obstruction, a laparoscopic procedure to relieve the obstruction is performed. This procedure diverts bile drainage into the jejunum.

For larger tumors, the surgeon may perform either a *radical pancreatectomy* or the *Whipple procedure (pancreaticoduodenectomy)*. These procedures have traditionally been done using an open surgical approach. Because of new advances in laparoscopic technology using a hand-assist device, this method is beginning to replace the conventional method. Some surgeons are not yet trained in how to perform this technique. Therefore the traditional open surgical approach remains the most common method of performing these surgeries.

Preoperative Care. The patient with pancreatic cancer may be a poor surgical risk because of malnutrition and debilitation. Specific care depends on the type of surgical approach being used.

Often, in the late stages of pancreatic cancer or before the Whipple procedure, the physician inserts a small catheter into the jejunum (**jejunostomy**) so that enteral feedings may be given. This feeding method is preferred to prevent reflux and to facilitate absorption. Feedings are started in low concentrations and volumes and are gradually increased as tolerated.

Provide feedings using a pump to maintain a constant volume, and assess for diarrhea frequency to determine tolerance. Chapter 63 provides additional information about enteral feeding.

For optimal nutrition, TPN may be necessary in addition to tube feedings or as a single measure to provide nutrition. When central venous access is required, a peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) or other type of IV catheter may be necessary. Meticulous IV line care is an important nursing measure to prevent catheter sepsis. Sterile dressing changes and site observation are extremely important (see Chapter 15). Additional nursing care measures for the patient receiving TPN are given in Chapter 63. Monitor nutrition indicators such as serum prealbumin and albumin.

For the laparoscopic procedure, no bowel preparation is needed. However, either approach requires that the patient have nothing by mouth (NPO) for at least 6 to 8 hours before surgery. Surgeon preference and agency policy determine the preferred protocol for preoperative preparation.

Operative Procedures. The **Whipple procedure (radical pancreaticoduodenectomy)** involves extensive surgical manipulation and is used most often to treat cancer of the head of the pancreas. The procedure entails removal of the proximal head of the pancreas, the duodenum, a portion of the jejunum, the stomach (partial or total **gastrectomy**), and the gallbladder, with anastomosis of the pancreatic duct (**pancreaticojejunostomy**), the common bile duct (**choledochojejunostomy**), and the stomach (**gastrojejunostomy**) to the jejunum (Fig. 62-3). In addition, the surgeon may remove the spleen (**splenectomy**).

Postoperative Care. In addition to routine postoperative care measures, the patient who has undergone an open radical pancreaticoduodenectomy requires intensive nursing care

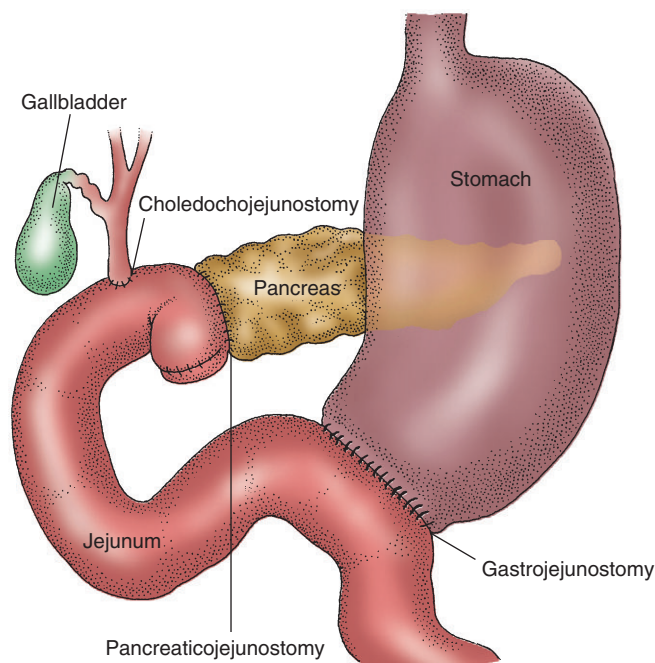


FIG. 62-3 The three anastomoses that constitute the Whipple procedure: choledochojejunostomy, pancreaticojejunostomy, and gastrojejunostomy.

TABLE 62-5 POTENTIAL COMPLICATIONS OF THE WHIPPLE PROCEDURE

Cardiovascular Complications • Hemorrhage at anastomosis sites with hypovolemia • Myocardial infarction • Heart failure • Thrombophlebitis	Gastrointestinal Complications • Adynamic (paralytic) ileus • Gastric retention • Gastric ulceration • Bowel obstruction from peritonitis • Acute pancreatitis • Hepatic failure • Thrombosis to mesentery
Pulmonary Complications • Atelectasis • Pneumonia • Pulmonary embolism • Acute respiratory distress syndrome • Pulmonary edema	Wound Complications • Infection • Dehiscence • Fistulas: pancreatic, gastric, and biliary
	Metabolic Complications • Unstable diabetes mellitus • Renal failure

and is usually admitted to a surgical critical care unit. Observe for multiple potential complications of the open Whipple procedure as listed in Table 62-5.

The primary benefit of MIS is the patient's fast postoperative recovery and less pain than with traditional open procedures. The patient having the laparoscopic Whipple surgery or radical pancreatectomy is also less at risk for severe complications. For patients having one of these procedures, observe for and implement preventive measures for these surgical complications:

- Diabetes (Check blood glucose often.)
- Hemorrhage (Monitor pulse, blood pressure, skin color, and mental status [e.g., LOC].)
- Wound infection (Monitor temperature, and assess wounds for redness and induration [hardness].)
- Bowel obstruction (Check bowel sounds and stools.)
- Intra-abdominal abscess (Monitor temperature and patient's report of severe pain.)

Immediately after surgery, the patient is NPO and usually has a nasogastric tube (NGT) to decompress the stomach. Monitor GI drainage and tube patency. In open surgical approaches, biliary drainage tubes are placed during surgery to remove drainage and secretions from the area and to prevent stress on the anastomosis sites. Assess the tubes and drainage devices for tension or kinking, and maintain them in a dependent position.

Monitor the drainage for color, consistency, and amount. The drainage should be serosanguineous. The appearance of clear, colorless, bile-tinged drainage or frank blood with an increase in output may indicate disruption or leakage of an anastomosis site. Most of the disruptions of the site occur within 7 to 10 days after surgery. Hemorrhage can occur as an early or late complication.

Place the patient in the semi-Fowler's position to reduce tension on the suture line and anastomosis site as well as to optimize lung expansion. Stress can be decreased by maintaining NGT drainage at a low or high intermittent suction level to keep the remaining stomach (if a partial gastrectomy

is done) or the jejunum (if a total gastrectomy is done) free of excessive fluid buildup and pressure. The NGT also reduces stimulation of the remaining pancreatic tissue.

The development of a fistula (an abnormal passageway) is the most common and most serious postoperative complication. Biliary, pancreatic, or gastric fistulas result from partial or total breakdown of an anastomosis site. The secretions that drain from the fistula contain bile, pancreatic enzymes, or gastric secretions, depending on which site is ruptured. These secretions, particularly pancreatic fluid, are corrosive and irritating to the skin, and internal leakage causes chemical peritonitis. Peritonitis (inflammation and infection of the peritoneum causing boardlike abdominal rigidity) requires treatment with multiple antibiotics. If you suspect any postoperative complications resulting from MIS or open surgical approaches, call the surgeon immediately and provide assessment findings that support your concerns.

Because the open Whipple procedure is extensive and can take many hours to complete, maintaining fluid and electrolyte balance can be difficult. Patients often have significant intraoperative blood loss and postoperative bleeding. The intestine is exposed to air for long periods, and fluid evaporates. Significant losses of fluid and electrolytes occur from the NGT and other drainage tubes. In addition, these patients may be malnourished and have low serum levels of protein and albumin, which maintain colloid osmotic pressure within the circulating system. Reduction in the serum osmotic pressure makes the patient likely to develop third spacing of body fluids, with fluid moving from the vascular to the interstitial space, resulting in shock. These problems are less likely to occur when MIS is used. Therefore, when possible, the trained surgeon prefers to perform laparoscopic Whipple procedures to shorten operating time and prevent the many complications that can occur.

Closely monitor vital signs for decreased blood pressure and increased heart rate, decreased vascular pressures with a pulmonary artery catheter (Swan-Ganz catheter) (in ICU setting), and decreased urine output to detect early signs of hypovolemia and prevent shock. Be alert for pitting edema of the extremities, dependent edema in the sacrum and back, and an intake that far exceeds output. Maintain sequential compression devices to prevent deep vein thrombosis.

Maintenance of prescribed IV isotonic fluid replacement with colloid replacements is important. Monitor hemoglobin and hematocrit values to assess for blood loss and the need for blood transfusions. Review electrolyte values for decreased serum levels of sodium, potassium, chloride, and calcium. IV fluid concentrations must be altered to correct these electrolyte imbalances. The physician prescribes replacement of electrolytes as needed.

Immediately after the Whipple procedure, the patient may have hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia as a result of stress and surgical manipulation of the pancreas. Most of the endocrine cells (responsible for insulin and glucagon secretion) are located in the body and tail of the pancreas. In some patients, up to half of the gland remains and diabetes does not develop. However, a large number of patients are diabetic before surgery. For patients having a radical pancreatectomy, administer insulin as prescribed because the entire pancreas is removed. Monitor glucose levels frequently during the early postoperative period, and administer insulin injections as prescribed.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client has had an open Whipple procedure for pancreatic cancer. Which nursing interventions are appropriate for this client in the postoperative period? **Select all that apply.**

- A. Maintain IV fluids, and monitor for fluid imbalance.
- B. Assess for signs and symptoms of deep vein thrombosis.
- C. Connect the nasogastric tube to high intermittent suction.
- D. Start pancreatic enzyme replacements as soon as possible.
- E. Check finger-stick blood glucose levels regularly.
- F. Tell the client to lie flat to protect the incision.

Community-Based Care

The patient with pancreatic cancer is usually followed by a case manager (CM), both in the hospital and in the home or other community-based setting. Collaborate with the CM to ensure that the patient receives cost-effective treatment and that his or her needs are met.

Home Care Management

The stage of progression of pancreatic cancer and available home care resources determine whether the patient can be discharged to home or whether additional care is needed in a skilled nursing facility or with a hospice provider. Home care preparations depend on the patient's physical and activity limitations and should be tailored to his or her needs. Coordinate care with the patient, family, or whoever will be providing care after discharge from the hospital—home care provider, hospice care provider, or extended-care provider.

The patient and family need compassionate emotional support to deal with issues related to this illness. The diagnosis of pancreatic cancer can frighten and overwhelm the patient and family. Assist family members in looking

realistically and objectively at the amount of physical care required. Tell family members that their own physical and emotional health are at risk during this stressful period and that supportive counseling may be needed. If the family does not have a religious affiliation or a spiritual leader (e.g., a minister or a rabbi) to provide support, suggest alternative counseling options. Refer patients and families to the certified hospital chaplain if desired. It is appropriate for the nurse to make the initial contact or appointment according to the patient's or family's wishes.

Teaching for Self-Management

When the patient is discharged to home, many interventions are palliative and aimed at managing symptoms such as pain. In many cases, the diagnosis of pancreatic cancer is made a few months before death occurs. The patient needs time to adjust to the diagnosis, which is usually made too late for cure or prolonged survival. Help the patient identify what needs to be done to prepare for death, including end-of-life care. For example, he or she may want to write a will or see family members and friends whom he or she has not seen recently. The patient needs to make known to family members or others his or her specific requests for the funeral or memorial service. These actions help prepare for death in a dignified manner. [Chapter 9](#) discusses in detail anticipatory grieving and preparation for death, as well as symptom management during the end of life.

Health Care Resources

Regular home care nursing and assistive nursing personnel visits may be scheduled to assist the patient and family by providing physical, psychological, and supportive care. Supply information about local hospice care (see [Chapter 9](#)) and cancer support groups.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate digestion and nutrition as a result of gallbladder and pancreatic disorders?

- Report of intense abdominal pain
- Report of nausea, especially after food
- Report of anorexia
- Vomiting
- Jaundice
- Report of weight loss
- Dark urine
- Clay-colored stools

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate digestion and nutrition as a result of gallbladder and pancreatic disorders?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Take vital signs to assess for hypovolemia and fever.
- Assess respiratory status, including breath sounds.
- Conduct a complete pain assessment if possible.
- Weigh the patient.

- Check laboratory values, especially enzyme levels like amylase and lipase, liver function studies, and CBC. Assess vomitus for quality and amount.

Respond by:

- Keeping the patient's head of the bed elevated and knees flexed
- Providing pain management by comfort measures and analgesia
- Providing oxygen if patient is having dyspnea or adventitious breath sounds
- Reassuring the patient who may be concerned about possible cancer

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for improvement in signs and symptoms, including pain control.
- Think about what could have caused the health problem.
- Think about what else you could do to help the patient meet desired outcomes.
- Plan health teaching for patient discharge.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- When caring for a patient with a T-tube, do not place the drainage bag higher than the tube insertion site.
- Recognize that acute pain relief is the first priority for patients with acute pancreatitis.
- Be aware that patients with biliary and pancreatic disorders are at high risk for biliary obstruction, a serious and painful complication.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Recognize that obese, middle-aged women are most likely to have gallbladder disease.
- Teach patients to avoid losing weight too quickly and to keep weight under control to help prevent gallbladder disease.
- Instruct patients about ways to prevent exacerbations of chronic pancreatitis as outlined in [Chart 62-4](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Provide pain relief measures for patients with acute pancreatitis to reduce anxiety.
- Refer patients with pancreatitis who use excessive alcohol to community resources such as Alcoholics Anonymous.

- Refer patients with pancreatic cancer for support services such as spiritual leaders and counselors.
- Help prepare the pancreatic cancer patient and family for the death and dying process.

Physiological Integrity

- Be aware that autodigestion of the pancreas causes severe pain in patients with acute pancreatitis (see [Fig. 62-2](#)).
- Monitor serum laboratory values, especially amylase and lipase (both elevated), in patients with pancreatitis (see [Table 62-4](#)).
- Assess for common clinical manifestations of cholecystitis as listed in [Chart 62-1](#).
- For patients with acute pancreatitis, provide pain management including opioid analgesia.
- Assess for common clinical manifestations of chronic pancreatitis as listed in [Chart 62-2](#).
- Teach patients about enzyme replacement therapy as described in [Chart 62-3](#).
- Assess patients with presenting clinical manifestations of pancreatic cancer as described in [Chart 62-5](#).
- Observe for and implement interventions to prevent life-threatening complications of the Whipple procedure as outlined in [Table 62-5](#).

Care of Patients with Malnutrition and Obesity

Cherie R. Rebar and Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with members of the health care team when providing care for patients with malnutrition or obesity.
2. Protect bariatric patients from injury.
3. Select appropriate activities to delegate to unlicensed assistive personnel to promote a patient's nutrition.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Provide care that meets the special nutrition needs of older adults.
5. Teach overweight and obese patients the importance of lifestyle changes to promote health.
6. Perform a nutrition screening for all patients to determine if they are at high risk for nutritional health problems.
7. Identify the key recommendations from the *Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2010* document.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Assess patient responses to being obese.

Physiological Integrity

9. Interpret findings of a nutrition screening and assessment.

10. Calculate body mass index (BMI), and interpret findings.
11. Describe the risk factors for malnutrition, especially for older adults.
12. Explain why serum visceral protein levels indicate change in nutritional status.
13. Identify the role of nutritional supplements in restoring or maintaining nutrition.
14. Describe complications of total enteral nutrition (TEN).
15. Explain how to prevent complications of total parenteral nutrition (TPN).
16. Explain how to maintain enteral tube patency.
17. Describe evidence-based practices to prevent aspiration for patients with nasoenteric tubes.
18. Explain the medical complications associated with obesity.
19. Identify the role of drug therapy in the management of obesity.
20. Prioritize nursing care for patients having bariatric surgery.
21. Develop a discharge teaching plan for patients having bariatric surgery.

Carbohydrates, protein, and fat are nutrients in food that supply the body with energy. In healthy people, most of this energy undergoes digestion and is absorbed from the GI tract. Food energy is used to maintain body temperature, respiration, cardiac output, muscle function, protein

synthesis, and the storage and metabolism of food sources. Therefore proper *nutrition* plays a major role in promoting and maintaining health.

Energy balance refers to the relationship between energy used and energy stored. Weight loss occurs when energy

TABLE 63-1 EXAMPLES OF 2010 DIETARY GUIDELINES FOR AMERICANS

- Control total calorie intake to manage body weight.
- Consume less than 300 mg per day of dietary cholesterol.
- Increase intake of fat-free or low-fat milk and milk products, such as milk, yogurt, cheese, or fortified soy products.
- Choose a variety of protein foods, which include seafood, lean meat and poultry, eggs, beans and peas, soy products, and unsalted nuts and seeds.
- Reduce the intake of calories from solid fats and added sugars.
- Reduce daily sodium intake to less than 2300 mg and further reduce intake to 1500 mg among persons who are 51 years or older and those of any age who are African American or have hypertension, diabetes, or chronic kidney disease.
- Limit the consumption of foods that contain refined grains, especially refined grains that contain solid fats, added sugars, and sodium.
- Increase vegetable and fruit intake.

Source: Dietary Guidelines for Americans Council. (2010). Retrieved March 31, 2011, from www.cnpp.usda.gov/Publications/DietaryGuidelines/2010/DGAC/Report/A-ExecSummary.pdf.

used is more than intake. If food intake is more than energy used, weight is gained. Body proteins are used for energy when calorie intake is insufficient. The body attempts to meet its calorie requirements even if it is at the expense of protein needs.

NUTRITION STANDARDS FOR HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

The role of nutrition in disease has been a subject of interest for many years. The current focus is on health promotion and the prevention of disease by healthy eating and exercise. In the United States, the [Dietary Guidelines for Americans](#) are revised by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) and the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) every 5 years. The most recent guidelines (2010) emphasize the need to include preferences of specific racial/ethnic groups, vegetarians, and other populations when selecting foods to maintain a healthful diet that is balanced with moderation and variety. If alcohol is consumed, it should be limited to one drink per day for women and two drinks for men ([USDA, 2010](#)). Examples of other guidelines are listed in [Table 63-1](#).

The USDA also recently designed a picture to remind people about the good foods to increase and the foods that should be reduced in the daily diet. [Fig. 63-1](#) illustrates the USDA's MyPlate to show that half of each meal should consist of fruits and vegetables. When grains are consumed, half of them should be whole grains rather than refined grain products.

An increasing number of people are adopting a variety of vegetarian diet patterns for health, environmental, or moral reasons. In general, vegetarians are leaner than those who consume meat. The [lacto-vegetarian](#) eats milk, cheese, and dairy foods but avoids meat, fish, poultry, and eggs. The [lacto-ovo-vegetarian](#) includes eggs in his or her diet. The [vegan](#) eats only foods of plant origin. Some people among these groups eat fish as well. Vegans can develop anemia as a result of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. Therefore they should include a daily source of vitamin B₁₂ in their diets, such as a fortified

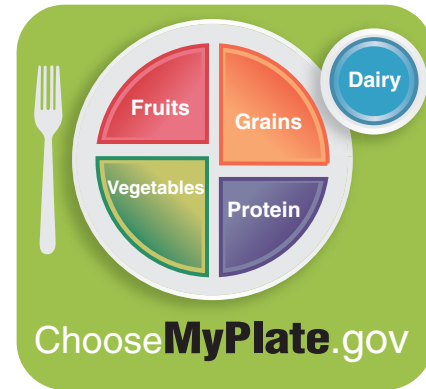


FIG. 63-1 The U.S. Department of Agriculture MyPlate.

breakfast cereal, fortified soy beverage, or meat substitute. All vegetarians should ensure that they get adequate amounts of calcium, iron, zinc, and vitamins D and B₁₂. Well-planned vegetarian diets can provide adequate nutrition. The [National Agriculture Library \(2008\)](#) publishes a Vegetarian Nutrition Resource List that provides credible resources regarding vegetarian health.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Many people have specific food preferences based on their ethnicity or race. For example, for people of Hispanic descent, tortillas, beans, and rice may be desired over pasta, risotto, and potatoes. *Never assume that a person's racial or ethnic background means that he or she eats only foods associated with his or her primary ethnicity.* Health teaching about nutrition should incorporate any cultural preferences (also see [Chapter 4](#)).

Some people have food allergies or intolerances. For instance, lactose intolerance (lactose is found in milk and milk products) is a common problem that occurs in a number of ethnic groups. It is found more often in Mexican Americans and black people as well as in some American Indian groups, Asian Americans, and Ashkenazi Jews. A small percentage of white people, particularly those of Mediterranean descent (e.g., Greek, Italian), are also lactose intolerant. The cause of [lactose intolerance](#) is an inadequate amount of the lactase enzyme, which converts lactose into absorbable glucose. Patients may benefit from learning more about the management of lactose intolerance from resources provided by organizations such as the American Dietetic Association.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The USDA recommends that older adults drink eight glasses of water a day and eat plenty of fiber to prevent or manage constipation. It also suggests daily calcium and vitamins D and B₁₂ supplements and a reduction in sodium and cholesterol-containing foods.

One of the most recent publications from Health Canada on nutrition is the Canada Food Guide. Compared with previous documents, it includes more culturally diverse foods, information on *trans* fats, customized individual recommendations, and exercise guidelines. Several booklets can be purchased to help people select the best foods and nutrients from the new Guide, such as *Eating Well with Canada's Food Guide*. In addition, Canada has published a separate booklet to address the special needs of some of its indigenous people. The *Eating Well with Canada's Food Guide—First Nations*,

Inuit, and Métis includes berries, wild plants, and wild game to reflect the values and traditions for aboriginal people living in Canada (Health Canada, 2007).

NUTRITIONAL ASSESSMENT

Malnutrition (also called *undernutrition*) and obesity are common nutritional health problems. These problems lead to deficits that cause many comorbidities and complications, including death.

Nutritional status reflects the balance between nutrient requirements and intake. Common factors that affect these requirements include age, gender, disease, infection, and psychological stress. Nutrient intake is influenced by eating behavior, economic factors, emotional stability, disease, drug therapy, and cultural factors.

Evaluation of nutritional status is an important part of total patient assessment and includes:

- Review of the nutritional history
- Food and fluid intake record
- Laboratory data
- Food-drug interactions
- Health history and physical assessment
- Anthropometric measurements
- Psychosocial assessment

Monitor the nutritional status of a patient during hospitalization as an important part of your initial assessment. Collaborate with the interdisciplinary health care team to identify patients at risk for nutritional problems.

Initial Nutritional Screening

Not every patient needs a complete nutritional assessment, but it is important to identify those at risk for problems through screening. An initial screening provides an inexpensive, quick way of determining which patients need more extensive nutritional assessment by the health care team. *The Joint Commission Patient Care Standards require that a nutritional screening occur within 24 hours of the patient's hospital admission. If indicated, an in-depth nutritional assessment should be performed.* When patients are in the hospital more than a week, nutritional assessment should be part of the daily plan of care.

The initial **nutritional screening** includes inspection, measured height and weight, weight history, usual eating habits, ability to chew and swallow, and any recent changes in appetite or food intake. Examples of questions that help identify patients at risk for nutritional problems are part of the history and physical assessment (Chart 63-1).

The Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA), a two-part tool that has been tested worldwide, provides a reliable, rapid assessment for patients in the community and in any health care setting. The *first* part (A-F) is a screening section that takes 3 minutes to complete and asks about food intake, mobility, and body mass index (BMI) (described on p. 1339). It also screens for weight loss, acute illness, and psychological health problems. If the patient scores 11 points or less, the *second* part (G-R) of the MNA is completed, for an additional 12 questions. The entire assessment takes less than 15 minutes (Fig. 63-2) (DiMaria-Ghalili & Guenter, 2008). A new MNA® Short Form can be used as a stand-alone tool to evaluate whether the older patient is well-nourished, at risk for malnutrition, or malnourished. The alternative is to take the

CHART 63-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Nutritional Screening Assessment

General

- Does the patient have any conditions that cause nutrient loss, such as malabsorption syndromes, draining abscesses, wounds, fistulas, or prolonged diarrhea?
- Does the patient have any conditions that increase the need for nutrients, such as fever, burn, injury, sepsis, or antineoplastic therapies?
- Has the patient been NPO for 3 days or more?
- Is the patient receiving a modified diet or a diet restricted in one or more nutrients?
- Is the patient being enterally or parenterally fed?
- Does the patient describe food allergies, lactose intolerance, or limited food preferences?
- Has the patient experienced a recent unexplained weight loss?
- Is the patient on drug therapy, either prescription, over-the-counter, or herbal/natural products?

Gastrointestinal

- Does the patient report nausea, indigestion, vomiting, diarrhea, or constipation?
- Does the patient exhibit glossitis (tongue inflammation), stomatitis (oral inflammation), or esophagitis?
- Does the patient have difficulty chewing or swallowing?
- Does the patient have a partial or total GI obstruction?
- What is the patient's state of dentition?

Cardiovascular

- Does the patient have ascites or edema?
- Is the patient able to perform ADLs?
- Does the patient have heart failure?

Genitourinary

- Is fluid intake about equal to fluid output?
- Does the patient have an ostomy?
- Is the patient hemodialyzed or peritoneally dialyzed?

Respiratory

- Is the patient receiving mechanical ventilatory support?
- Is the patient receiving oxygen via nasal prongs?
- Does the patient have chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) or asthma?

Integumentary

- Does the patient have abnormal nail or hair changes?
- Does the patient have rashes or dermatitis?
- Does the patient have dry or pale mucous membranes or decreased skin turgor?
- Does the patient have pressure areas on the sacrum, hips, heels, or ankles?

Extremities

- Does the patient have pedal edema?
- Does the patient have cachexia?

Modified with courtesy of Ross Products Division, Abbott Laboratories, Columbus, OH.

patient's calf circumference, which can be a reliable alternative if BMI is unavailable.

Anthropometric Measurements

Anthropometric measurements are noninvasive methods of evaluating nutritional status. These measurements include height and weight and assessment of body fat.

NESTLÉ NUTRITION SERVICES



Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA)

Last name:	First name:	Sex:	Date:
Age:	Weight, kg:	Height, cm:	I.D. Number:

Complete the screen by filling in the boxes with the appropriate numbers.

Add the numbers for the screen. If score is 11 or less, continue with the assessment to gain a Malnutrition Indicator Score.

Screening

A Has food intake declined over the past 3 months due to loss of appetite, digestive problems, chewing or swallowing difficulties?

0 = severe loss of appetite

1 = moderate loss of appetite

2 = no loss of appetite

☐

B Weight loss during last 3 months

0 = weight loss greater than 3 kg (6.6 lbs)

1 = does not know

2 = weight loss between 1 and 3 kg (2.2 and 6.6 lbs)

3 = no weight loss

☐

C Mobility

0 = bed or chair bound

1 = able to get out of bed/chair but does not go out

2 = goes out

☐

D Has suffered psychological stress or acute disease in the past 3 months

0 = yes 2 = no

☐

E Neuropsychological problems

0 = severe dementia or depression

1 = mild dementia

2 = no psychological problems

☐

F Body Mass Index (BMI) (weight in kg) / (height in m)²

0 = BMI less than 19

1 = BMI 19 to less than 21

2 = BMI 21 to less than 23

3 = BMI 23 or greater

☐

Screening score (subtotal max. 14 points)

12 points or greater Normal – not at risk – no need to complete assessment

11 points or below Possible malnutrition – continue assessment

Assessment

G Lives independently (not in a nursing home or hospital)

0 = no 1 = yes

☐

H Takes more than 3 prescription drugs per day

0 = yes 1 = no

☐

I Pressure sores or skin ulcers

0 = yes 1 = no

☐

J How many full meals does the patient eat daily?

0 = 1 meal

1 = 2 meals

2 = 3 meals

☐

K Selected consumption markers for protein intake

• At least one serving of dairy products

(milk, cheese, yogurt) per day? yes ☐ no ☐

• Two or more servings of legumes or eggs per week? yes ☐ no ☐

• Meat, fish or poultry every day yes ☐ no ☐

0.0 = if 0 or 1 yes

0.5 = if 2 yes

1.0 = if 3 yes

☐ . ☐

L Consumes two or more servings of fruits or vegetables per day?

0 = no 1 = yes

☐

M How much fluid (water, juice, coffee, tea, milk...) is consumed per day?

0.0 = less than 3 cups

0.5 = 3 to 5 cups

1.0 = more than 5 cups

☐ . ☐

N Mode of feeding

0 = unable to eat without assistance

1 = self-fed with some difficulty

2 = self-fed without any problem

☐

O Self view of nutritional status

0 = views self as being malnourished

1 = is uncertain of nutritional state

2 = views self as having no nutritional problem

☐

P In comparison with other people of the same age, how does the patient consider his/her health status?

0.0 = not as good

0.5 = does not know

1.0 = as good

2.0 = better

☐ . ☐

Q Mid-arm circumference (MAC) in cm

0.0 = MAC less than 21

0.5 = MAC 21 to 22

1.0 = MAC 22 or greater

☐ . ☐

R Calf circumference (CC) in cm

0 = CC less than 31

1 = CC 31 or greater

☐

Assessment (max. 16 points)

☐ ☐ . ☐

Screening score

☐ ☐

Total Assessment (max. 30 points)

☐ ☐ . ☐

Malnutrition Indicator Score

17 to 23.5 points at risk of malnutrition

☐

Less than 17 points malnourished

☐

Ref.: Guigoz Y, Vellas B and Garry PJ. 1994. Mini Nutritional Assessment: A practical assessment tool for grading the nutritional state of elderly patients. *Facts and Research in Gerontology*. Supplement #2:15-59.
Rubenstein LZ, Harker J, Guigoz Y and Vellas B. Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA) and the MNA: An Overview of CGA, Nutritional Assessment, and Development of a Shortened Version of the MNA. In: "Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA): Research and Practice in the Elderly". Vellas B, Garry PJ and Guigoz Y, editors. Nestlé Nutrition Workshop Series. Clinical & Performance Programme, vol. 1. Karger, Bâle, in press.

© Nestlé, 1994, Revision 1998. N67200 12/99 10M

Copyright Nestlé, 1994, Revision 1998, Societe des Produits Nestlé S.A.

Copyright Nestlé, 1994, Revision 1998, Societe des Produits Nestlé S.A.

FIG. 63-2 The Mini Nutritional Assessment (MNA).

Obtain a current *height and weight* to provide a baseline. Be sure to obtain accurate measurements because patients tend to overestimate height and underestimate weight. Measurements taken days or weeks later may indicate an early change in nutritional status. *You may delegate this activity to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) under your supervision.*

Patients should be measured and weighed while wearing minimal clothing and no shoes. Determine the height in inches or centimeters using the measuring stick of a weight scale if the patient can stand. He or she should stand erect and look straight ahead, with the heels together and the arms at the sides. For patients who cannot stand or those who cannot stand erect (e.g., some older adults), use a sliding-blade **knee height caliper**, if available. This device uses the distance between the patient's patella and heel to estimate height. It is especially useful for patients who have knee or hip contractures.

UAP weigh ambulatory patients with an upright balance-beam scale. Non-ambulatory patients can be weighed with a movable wheelchair balance-beam scale or a bed scale.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Be sure that the manufacturer calibrates weight scales twice yearly for accurate readings. For daily or sequential weights, obtain the weight at the same time each day, if possible, preferably before breakfast. Conditions such as congestive heart failure and renal disease cause weight gain; dehydration and conditions such as cancer cause weight loss. Weight is the most reliable indicator of fluid gain or loss, so accurate weights are essential!

Normal weights for adult men and women are available from several reference standards, including the revised Metropolitan Life tables. Some health care professionals prefer these tables because they consider body-build differences by gender and body frame size.

Changes in body weight can be expressed by three different formulas:

1. Weight as a percentage of ideal body weight (IBW):

$$\%IBW = \frac{\text{Current weight}}{\text{Ideal body weight}} \times 100$$

2. Current weight as a percentage of usual body weight (UBW):

$$\%UBW = \frac{\text{Current weight}}{\text{Usual body weight}} \times 100$$

3. Change in weight:

$$\text{Weight change} = \frac{\text{Usual weight} - \text{Current weight}}{\text{Usual weight}} \times 100$$

An unintentional weight loss of 10% over a 6-month period at any time significantly affects nutritional status and should be evaluated. Depending on the patient's needs, weights may need to be taken daily, several times a week, or weekly for monitoring status and the effectiveness of nutritional support.

In the health care setting, *assessment of body fat* is usually calculated by the dietitian. For people who participate in a structured exercise program in the community, this assessment is typically performed by a fitness trainer or physical therapist.

The **body mass index (BMI)** is a measure of nutritional status that does not depend on frame size. It indirectly estimates total fat stores within the body by the relationship of weight to height. *Therefore an accurate height is as important as an accurate weight.*

A simple calculation for estimating BMI can be programmed into handheld computers or calculators using one of these two formulas:

$$BMI = \frac{\text{Weight (lb)}}{\text{Height (in inches)}^2} \times 703$$

$$BMI = \frac{\text{Weight (kg)}}{\text{Height (in meters)}^2}$$

BMI can also be determined using a table that is linked with height and weight. The least risk for malnutrition is associated with scores between 18.5 and 25. BMIs above and below these values are associated with increased health risks ([Centers for Disease Control and Prevention \[CDC\], 2009](#)).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Body weight and BMI usually increase throughout adulthood until about 60 years of age. As people get older, they become less hungry and eat less, even if they are healthy. Older adults should have a BMI between 23 and 27 ([DiMaria-Ghalili & Amella, 2005](#)).

The average daily energy intake expended by this group tends to be more than the average energy intake. This physiologic change has been called the "anorexia of aging" ([Conte et al., 2009](#)). Many older adults are underweight, leading to undernutrition and increased risk for illness.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older adult is admitted to the hospital with pressure ulcers and septicemia. His height is 5 feet, 10 inches (1.78 meters), and he weighs 342 pounds (155 kg). His current body mass index (BMI) is _____. (Your answer should be rounded to the nearest tenth.)

Skinfold measurements estimate body fat and can be measured by either the nurse or the dietitian. The *triceps and subscapular* skinfolds are most commonly measured using a special caliper. Both are compared with standard measurements and recorded as percentiles.

The *midarm circumference (MAC)* and *calf circumference (CC)* can be obtained to measure muscle mass and subcutaneous fat. These measurements are needed if the Mini Nutritional Assessment tool is used. To measure MAC, place a flexible tape around the upper arm at the midpoint, taking care to hold the tape firmly but gently to avoid compressing the tissue. This measurement is usually recorded in centimeters. The midarm muscle mass (MAMM) measures the amount of muscle in the body and is a sensitive indicator of protein reserves. It can be computed from the MAC and the

triceps skinfold measure. The CC is obtained using a similar procedure on the calf.

MALNUTRITION

Pathophysiology

Protein-energy malnutrition (PEM), also known as **protein-calorie malnutrition (PCM)**, may present in three forms: marasmus, kwashiorkor, and marasmic-kwashiorkor. **Marasmus** is generally a calorie malnutrition in which body fat and protein are wasted. Serum proteins are often preserved. **Kwashiorkor** is a lack of protein quantity and quality in the presence of adequate calories. Body weight is more normal, and serum proteins are low. **Marasmic-kwashiorkor** is a combined protein and energy malnutrition. This problem often presents clinically when metabolic stress is imposed on a chronically starved patient. The outcome of unrecognized or untreated PEM is often dysfunction or disability and increased morbidity and mortality.

Malnutrition (also called *undernutrition*) is a multinutrient problem because foods that are good sources of calories and protein are also good sources of other nutrients. In the malnourished patient, protein catabolism exceeds protein intake and synthesis, resulting in negative nitrogen balance, weight loss, decreased muscle mass, and weakness.

The function of the liver, heart, lungs, GI tract, and immune system decreases in the patient with malnutrition. A decrease in serum proteins (**hypoproteinemia**) occurs as protein synthesis in the liver decreases. Vital capacity is also reduced as a result of respiratory muscle atrophy. Cardiac output diminishes. Malabsorption occurs because of atrophy of GI mucosa and the loss of intestinal villi.

Other common complications of severe malnutrition in adults include:

- Leanness and **cachexia** (muscle wasting with prolonged malnutrition)
- Decreased activity tolerance
- Lethargy
- Intolerance to cold
- Edema
- Dry, flaking skin and various types of dermatitis
- Poor wound healing
- Possible death
- Infection, particularly postoperative infection and sepsis

Malnutrition results from inadequate nutrient intake, increased nutrient losses, and increased nutrient requirements. Inadequate nutrient intake can be linked to poverty, lack of education, substance abuse, decreased appetite, and a decline in functional ability to eat independently, particularly in older adults. Infectious diseases, such as tuberculosis and human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection, can also cause PEM. Diseases that produce diarrhea and infections leading to anorexia result in negative calorie and protein balance. Anorexia then leads to poor food intake. Vomiting causes decreased intestinal absorption with increased nutrient losses. Medical treatments such as chemotherapy can also cause malnutrition. In addition, catabolic processes, such as that caused by prolonged immobility, increase nutrient requirements and metabolic losses.

Inadequate nutrient intake can result also when a person is admitted to the hospital or long-term care facility. For

example, decreased staffing may not allow time for patients who need to be fed, especially older adults, who may eat slowly. Many diagnostic tests, surgery, trauma, and unexpected medical complications require a period of NPO or cause **anorexia** (loss of appetite).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

In some cases, malnutrition results when the provided meals are different from what the patient usually eats. Be sure to identify specific food preferences that the patient can eat and enjoy that are in keeping with his or her cultural practices.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older adults in the community or in any health care setting are most at risk for poor nutrition, especially PEM. Risk factors include physiologic changes of aging, environmental factors, and health problems. Chart 63-2 lists some of these major factors. Chapter 3 discusses nutrition for older adults in more detail.

Acute PEM may develop in patients who were adequately nourished before hospitalization but experience starvation while in a catabolic state from infection, stress, or injury. **Chronic** PEM can occur in those who have cancer, end-stage kidney or liver disease, or chronic neurologic disease.

Eating disorders, such as anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa seen most often in teens and young adults, also lead to malnutrition. **Anorexia nervosa** is a self-induced starvation resulting from a fear of fatness, even though the patient is underweight. **Bulimia nervosa** is characterized by episodes of binge eating in which the patient ingests a large amount of food in a short time. The binge eating is followed by some form of purging behavior, such as self-induced vomiting or excessive use of laxatives and diuretics. If not treated, death can result from starvation, infection, or suicide. Information about eating disorders can be found in textbooks on mental/behavioral health nursing.

CHART 63-2 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Risk Assessment for Malnutrition

Assess for:

- Decreased appetite
- Weight loss
- Poor-fitting or no dentures/poor dental health
- Poor eyesight
- Dry mouth
- Limited income
- Lack of transportation
- Inability to prepare meals because of functional decline or fatigue
- Loneliness and/or depression
- Chronic constipation (e.g., in patients with Alzheimer's disease)
- Decreased meal enjoyment
- Chronic physical illness
- "Failure to thrive" (a combination of three of five symptoms, including weakness, slow walking speed, low physical activity, unintentional weight loss, exhaustion)
- Prescription and OTC drugs (including herbs, vitamins, and minerals)
- Acute or chronic pain

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Review the medical history to determine the possibility of increased metabolic needs or nutritional losses, chronic disease, trauma, recent surgery of the GI tract, drug and alcohol abuse, and recent significant weight loss. Each of these conditions can contribute to malnutrition. For older adults, explore mental status changes and note poor eyesight, diseases affecting major organs, constipation or incontinence, and slowed reactions. Review prescription and over-the-counter (OTC) drugs, including vitamin, mineral, herbal, and other nutritional supplements.

For patients who live independently in the community, the nurse may assess their performance of instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs). Functional status can best be evaluated for institutionalized patients by assessing their ADL performance. Poor nutrition is a major contributing factor to decreased functional ability.

In collaboration with the dietitian, obtain information about the patient's usual daily food intake, eating behaviors, change in appetite, and recent weight changes. If the patient is able to communicate, ask him or her to describe the usual foods eaten daily, cultural food preferences, and the times of meals and snacks. If available, ask the family these questions if the patient cannot communicate. If the patient cannot understand the questions due to language differences, locate an interpreter to assist with communication. The dietitian can more thoroughly analyze the diet, if necessary, based on your initial nutritional screening.

Ask about changes in eating habits as a result of illness, and document any change in appetite, taste, and weight loss. *A weight loss of 5% or more in 30 days, a weight loss of 10% in 6 months, or a weight that is below ideal may indicate malnutrition.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

When assessing for malnutrition, assess for difficulty or pain in chewing or swallowing. *Unrecognized dysphagia is a common problem among nursing home residents and can cause malnutrition, dehydration, and aspiration pneumonia.* Ask the patient whether any foods are avoided and why. Ask UAP to report any choking while the patient eats. Record the occurrence of nausea, vomiting, heartburn, or any other symptoms of discomfort with eating.

Ask the patient about dental health problems, including the presence of dentures. Dentures or partial plates that do not fit well interfere with food intake. Dental caries (decay) or missing teeth may also cause discomfort while eating.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess for manifestations of various nutrient deficiencies (Table 63-2). Inspect the patient's hair, eyes, oral cavity, nails, and musculoskeletal and neurologic systems. Examine the condition of the skin, including any reddened or open areas. The previously described anthropometric measurements

TABLE 63-2 MANIFESTATIONS OF NUTRIENT DEFICIENCIES

SIGN/SYMPTOM	POTENTIAL NUTRIENT DEFICIENCY
Hair	
Alopecia	Zinc
Easy to remove	Protein
Lackluster hair	Protein
"Corkscrew" hair	Vitamin C
Decreased pigmentation	Protein
Eyes	
Xerosis of conjunctiva	Vitamin A
Corneal vascularization	Riboflavin
Keratomalacia	Vitamin A
Bitot's spots	Vitamin A
Gastrointestinal Tract	
Nausea, vomiting	Pyridoxine
Diarrhea	Zinc, niacin
Stomatitis	Pyridoxine, riboflavin, iron
Cheilosis	Pyridoxine, iron
Glossitis	Pyridoxine, zinc, niacin, folic acid, vitamin B ₁₂
Magenta tongue	Vitamin A, riboflavin
Swollen, bleeding gums	Vitamin C
Fissured tongue	Niacin
Hepatomegaly	Protein
Skin	
Dry and scaling	Vitamin A
Petechiae/ecchymoses	Vitamin C
Follicular hyperkeratosis	Vitamin A
Nasolabial seborrhea	Niacin
Bilateral dermatitis	Niacin
Extremities	
Subcutaneous fat loss	Calories
Muscle wastage	Calories, protein
Edema	Protein
Osteomalacia, bone pain, rickets	Vitamin D
Hematologic	
Anemia	Vitamin B ₁₂ , iron, folic acid, copper, vitamin E
Leukopenia, neutropenia	Copper
Low prothrombin time, prolonged clotting time	Vitamin K, manganese
Neurologic	
Disorientation	Niacin, thiamine
Confabulation	Thiamine
Neuropathy	Thiamine, pyridoxine, chromium
Paresthesia	Thiamine, pyridoxine, vitamin B ₁₂
Cardiovascular	
Congestive heart failure, cardiomegaly, tachycardia	Thiamine
Cardiomyopathy	Selenium
Cardiac dysrhythmias	Magnesium

Courtesy of Ross Products Division, Abbott Laboratories, Columbus, OH.

may also be obtained. The nurse or UAP should monitor all food and fluid intake and note any mouth pain or difficulty in chewing or swallowing. A 3-day caloric intake may be collected and then calculated by the dietitian.

Psychosocial Assessment

The psychosocial history provides information about the patient's economic status, occupation, educational level, gender orientation, ethnicity/race, living and cooking arrangements, and mental status. Determine whether financial resources are adequate for providing the necessary food. If resources are inadequate, the social worker or case manager may refer the patient and family to available community services. [Chapter 3](#) discusses nutrition in older adults in more detail.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests supply objective data that can support subjective data and identify preclinical deficiencies. However, they must be carefully interpreted with regard to the total patient; an isolated value may yield an inaccurate conclusion.

A low *hemoglobin* level may indicate anemia, recent hemorrhage, or hemodilution caused by fluid retention. Hemoglobin may also be low secondary to conditions such as low serum albumin, infection, catabolism, or chronic disease. High levels may indicate hemoconcentration or dehydration, or they may be secondary to liver disease.

Low *hematocrit* levels may reflect anemia, hemorrhage, excessive fluid, renal disease, or cirrhosis. High hematocrit levels may indicate dehydration or hemoconcentration.

Serum albumin, thyroxine-binding prealbumin, and transferrin are measures of **visceral proteins**. Serum *albumin* is a plasma protein that reflects the nutritional status of the patient a few weeks before testing and is therefore not the most sensitive test. In addition, patients who are dehydrated often have high levels of albumin and those with fluid excess have a lowered value. The normal serum albumin level for men and women is 3.5 to 5.0 g/dL or 35 to 50 g/L (SI units) (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Thyroxine-binding **prealbumin (PAB)** is a plasma protein that provides a more sensitive indicator of nutritional deficiency because of its short half-life of 2 days. Depending on the laboratory test used, the normal PAB range is 15 to 36 mg/dL or 150 to 360 mg/L (SI units) (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). PAB can also assess improvement in nutritional status with refeeding; levels can increase by 1 mg/dL daily with adequate nutritional support.

Although not used as commonly, serum **transferrin**, an iron-transport protein, can be measured directly or calculated as an indirect measurement of total iron-binding capacity (TIBC). It has a short half-life of 8 to 10 days and therefore is also a more sensitive indicator of protein status than albumin.

Cholesterol levels normally range between 160 and 200 mg/dL in adult men and women. Values are typically low with malabsorption, liver disease, pernicious anemia, end-stage cancer, or sepsis. A cholesterol level below 160 mg/dL has been identified as a possible indicator of malnutrition. Cholesterol testing is discussed in more detail in [Chapter 35](#).

Total lymphocyte count (TLC) can be used to assess immune function. Malnutrition suppresses the immune system and

leaves the patient more likely to get an infection. When a patient is malnourished, the TLC is usually decreased to below 1500/mm³.

ANALYSIS

The priority problem for the patient with malnutrition is:

1. Inadequate nutrition to meet body needs related to inability to ingest or digest food or absorb nutrients.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Improving Nutrition

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with malnutrition is expected to have nutrients available to meet his or her metabolic needs as evidenced by normal serum proteins and adequate hydration.

Interventions. The preferred route for nutritional intake is through the GI tract because it enhances the immune system and is safer, easier, less expensive, and more enjoyable.

Nutrition Management. The dietitian calculates the nutrients required daily and plans the patient's diet. In collaboration with the health care provider and dietitian, provide high-calorie, nutrient-rich foods (e.g., milkshakes, cheese, supplement drinks like Boost or Ensure). Assess the patient's food likes and dislikes. A feeding schedule of six small meals may be tolerated better than three large ones. A pureed or

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Malnourished ill patients often need to be encouraged to eat. Instruct UAP who are feeding patients to keep food at the appropriate temperature and to provide mouth care before feeding. Assess for other needs, such as pain management, and provide interventions to make the patient comfortable. Pain can prevent patients from enjoying their meals. Remove bedpans, urinals, and emesis basins from sight. Provide a quiet environment, which is conducive to eating. Soft music may calm those with advanced dementia or delirium. Appropriate time should be taken so that the patient does not feel rushed through a meal.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Some patients, especially older adults, may take a long time to eat even small quantities of food because they tend to be less hungry than younger adults. If available, suggest that family members bring in favorite or ethnic foods that the patient might be more likely to eat. Teach them about ways to encourage the patient to increase food intake. [Chart 63-3](#) describes additional interventions to promote nutritional intake in older adults.

Restorative feeding programs help nursing home residents who need special assistance. These residents often eat in a separate dining area so that time and attention can be given to them. Some nursing homes have designated food and nutrition nursing assistants and/or trained volunteers who are primarily responsible for promoting and maintaining nutrition and hydration. Delegate and supervise these UAPs during resident mealtime.

If the patient cannot take in enough nutrients in food, fortified **medical nutritional supplements (MNSs)** (e.g., Ensure, Sustacal, Carnation Instant Breakfast [also available as lactose-free supplement]) may be given, especially to older adults. Many commercial enteral products are available. For patients with medical diagnoses such as liver and renal disease or diabetes, special products that meet those needs are available.

dental soft diet may be easier for those who have problems chewing or are **edentulous** (toothless).

Nutritional supplements used in acute care, long-term care, and home care can be costly. In addition, patients may refuse them and the supplements are then wasted. In a classic study, Bender et al. (2000) found that a more successful alternative to having the MNS given by nursing assistant staff in the nursing home was to have the supplements delivered by nurses during their usual medication passes. In this study, the nurses gave 60 mL or more of the MNS at least four times a day with the residents' medications. As a result, the patients gained weight and had fewer pressure ulcers, thus making the program very cost-effective and providing positive clinical outcomes.

Nutritional supplements are supplied as liquid formulas, powders, soups, coffee, and puddings in a variety of flavors. They come in different degrees of sweetness and are also available as modular supplements that provide single nutrients. Examples of modular supplements are Polycose glucose polymers for carbohydrates and Resource Beneprotein for protein, both available in liquid and powder form.

CHART 63-3 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Promoting Nutritional Intake

- Be sure patient is toileted and receives mouth care before mealtime.
- Make sure that patient has glasses and hearing aids in place, if appropriate, during meals.
- Be sure that bedpans, urinals, and emesis basins are removed from sight.
- Give analgesics to control pain and/or antiemetics for nausea at least 1 hour before mealtime.
- Remind unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to have patient sit in chair, if possible, at mealtime.
- If needed, open cartons and packages and cut up food at the patient's and/or family's request.
- Observe the patient during meals for food intake.
- Ask the patient about food likes and dislikes and ethnic food preferences.
- Encourage self-feeding, or feed the patient slowly; *delegate* this activity to UAP if desired.
- If feeding patient, sit at eye-level if culturally appropriate.
- Create an environment that is conducive to eating and socialization and relaxation, if possible.
- Decrease distractions, such as environmental noise from television, music, or other people.
- Provide adequate, nonglaring lighting.
- Keep patient away from offensive or medicinal odors.
- Keep eye contact with the patient during the meal if culturally appropriate.
- Serve snacks with activities, especially in long-term care settings; *delegate* this activity to UAP if desired.
- Document the percentage of food eaten at each meal and snack; *delegate* this activity to UAP if appropriate.
- Ensure that meals are visually appealing, appetizing, appropriately warm or cold, and properly prepared.
- Do not interrupt patients during mealtimes for nonurgent procedures or rounds.
- Assess for need for supplements between meals and at bedtime.
- Review the patient's drug profile, and discuss with the health care provider the use of drugs that might be suppressing appetite.
- If the patient is depressed, be sure that the depression is treated by the health care provider.

Carbohydrate modulars are useful only if additional calories are needed. Protein modulars are indicated when metabolic stress causes a need for higher protein intake.

The dietitian may ask the nursing staff to keep a food and fluid intake record for at least 3 consecutive days to help assess the patient's nutritional status. Delegate this activity to UAP under your supervision. UAP also weigh the patient daily, every 3 days, or once a week, depending on the health care setting and severity of malnutrition.

Drug Therapy. Multivitamins, zinc, and an iron preparation are often prescribed to treat or prevent anemia. Monitor the patient's hemoglobin and hematocrit levels. Drug therapy can affect nutritional status. For example, iron can cause constipation and zinc can cause nausea and vomiting.

If the patient still does not receive enough nutrition by mouth using the interventions just mentioned, request **specialized nutrition support (SNS)**. SNS consists of either total enteral nutrition (TEN) or total parenteral nutrition (TPN).

Total Enteral Nutrition. Patients often cannot meet the desired outcomes of nutritional therapy through their usual oral intake because of increased metabolic demands or a decreased ability to eat. Therefore TEN using enteral tube feeding may be necessary to supplement oral intake or to provide total nutritional support.

Patients likely to receive TEN can be divided into three groups:

- Those who can eat but cannot maintain adequate nutrition by oral intake of food alone
- Those who have permanent neuromuscular impairment and cannot swallow
- Those who do not have permanent neuromuscular impairment but are critically ill and cannot eat because of their condition

Patients in the first group are often older adults or patients receiving cancer treatment who cannot meet their calorie and protein needs. In some cases, this artificial nutrition and hydration may not be desired. For example, some patients have advance directives stating that they do not want to be kept alive by artificial nutrition and hydration if certain conditions exist. *However, legal and ethical questions arise when patients are not able to make their wishes known!*

For many years it was believed that withholding food and fluids would cause discomfort. Terminally or chronically ill patients who do not eat and drink may not suffer. In fact, they may be more comfortable if food and fluids are withheld. *The decision to feed is complex, and there is no clear right or wrong answer. To compound this legal and ethical dilemma, medical complications (e.g., aspiration, pressure ulcers) are common in older adults who are tube-fed.*

Decisions about these dilemmas are aided by the advice of interdisciplinary ethics committees in health care facilities. When clinicians are making decisions about the desirability of tube feedings in these cases, the focus should be on achieving consensus by:

- Reviewing what is known about tube feedings, especially their risks and benefits
- Reviewing the medical facts about the patient
- Investigating any available evidence that would help understand the patient's wishes
- Obtaining the opinions of all stakeholders in the situation
- Delaying any action until consensus is achieved

Those in the second group of patients likely to receive TEN usually have permanent swallowing problems and require some type of feeding tube for delivery of the enteral product on a long-term basis. Examples of conditions that can cause permanent swallowing problems are strokes, severe head trauma, and advanced multiple sclerosis. Patients in the third group receive enteral nutrition for as long as their illness lasts. The feeding is discontinued when the patient's condition improves and he or she can eat again. TEN is contraindicated for patients in states of significant hemodynamic compromise, such as those with diffuse peritonitis, severe acute or chronic pancreatitis, intestinal obstruction, intractable vomiting or diarrhea, and paralytic ileus (Bankhead et al., 2009).

Many commercially prepared enteral products are available. A therapeutic combination of carbohydrates, fat, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements is available in liquid form. Differences among products allow the dietitian to select the right formula for each patient. A prescription from the health care provider is required for enteral nutrition, but the dietitian usually makes the recommendation and computes the amount and type of product needed for each patient.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

An older client admitted to the hospital from the nursing home refuses to eat anything on her meal tray. What instructions will the nurse give to the nursing assistant who is attempting to feed the client? **Select all that apply.**

- A. "Feed her the soft food because she has no teeth."
- B. "Place the fork in her hand and leave the room."
- C. "Sit at her level so that she can feel more comfortable."
- D. "Take your time feeding her and don't rush her."
- E. "Offer her the Ensure supplement instead of feeding her."
- F. "Ask the client what foods she likes and dislikes."

Methods of Administering Total Enteral Nutrition. TEN is administered as "tube feedings" through one of the available GI tubes, either through a nasenteric or enterostomal tube. It can be used in the patient's home or any health care setting.

A **nasenteric tube (NET)** is any feeding tube inserted nasally and then advanced into the GI tract, such as a Keofeed, Entriplex, or Dobhoff tube. Commonly used NETs include the **nasogastric (NG) tube** and the smaller (small-bore) **nasoduodenal tube (NDT)** (Fig. 63-3, A). A nasojejunal tube (NJT) is also available but is used less often than the other NETs.

The NDTs are used for delivering *short-term* enteral feedings (usually less than 4 weeks) because they are easy to use and are safer for the patient at risk for aspiration *if the tip of the tube is placed below the pyloric sphincter of the stomach and into the duodenum*. Small-bore polyurethane or silicone tubes from 8 to 12 Fr external diameter are preferred. The smaller tubes are more comfortable and are less likely to cause complications such as nasal irritation, sinusitis, tissue erosion, and pulmonary compromise.

Enterostomal feeding tubes are used for patients who need *long-term* enteral feeding. The most common types are gastrostomies and jejunostomies. The surgeon directly accesses the GI tract using various surgical, endoscopic, and laparoscopic techniques.

A **gastrostomy** is a stoma created from the abdominal wall into the stomach, through which a short feeding tube is inserted by the surgeon. It may require a small abdominal incision or may be placed endoscopically. This tube is called a **percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG)** or dual-access gastrostomy-jejunostomy (PEG/J) tube. The PEG does not require general anesthesia for placement and is more secure and more durable than traditional gastrostomies. An alternative to either device is the **low-profile gastrostomy device (LPGD)** (Fig. 63-3, B and C). The LPGD is available



FIG. 63-3 Feeding tubes used for total enteral nutrition. **A**, Nasoduodenal tube. **B** and **C**, Gastrostomy tubes.

with a firm or balloon-style internal bumper or retention disk. An anti-reflux valve keeps GI contents from leaking onto the skin. This device is less irritating to the skin, longer lasting, and more cosmetically pleasing. It also allows greater patient independence. However, skin-level devices do not allow easy access for checking **residuals** (the amount of feeding that remains in the stomach).

Jejunostomies are used less often than gastrostomies. A **jejunostomy** is used for long-term feedings when it is desirable to bypass the stomach, such as with gastric disease, upper GI obstruction, and abnormal gastric or duodenal emptying.

Tube feedings are administered by bolus feeding, continuous feeding, and cyclic feeding. **Bolus feeding** is an intermittent feeding of a specified amount of enteral product at set intervals during a 24-hour period, typically every 4 hours. This method can be accomplished manually or by infusion through a mechanical pump or controller device. Another method of tube feeding is continuous enteral feeding. **Continuous feeding** is similar to IV therapy in that small amounts are continuously infused (by gravity drip or by a pump or controller device) over a specified time. The most commonly seen method, **cyclic feeding**, is the same as continuous feeding except the infusion is stopped for a specified time in each 24-hour period, usually 6 hours or longer (“down time”). Down time typically occurs in the morning to allow bathing, treatments, and other activities.

Infusion rates for cyclic feedings (and to some extent for intermittent bolus feeding) vary with the total amount of solution to be infused, the specific composition of the product, and the response of the patient to the feeding. The health care provider and dietitian usually decide the type, rate, and method of tube feeding, as well as the amount of additional water (“free water”) needed. If the patient can swallow small amounts of food, he or she may also eat orally while the tube is in place.

The nurse is responsible for the care and maintenance of the feeding tube and the enteral feeding. **Chart 63-4** lists best practices for the patient receiving TEN.

Complications of Total Enteral Nutrition. The nursing priority for care is patient safety, including preventing, assessing, and managing complications associated with tube feeding. Some complications of therapy result from the type of tube used to administer the feeding, and others result from the enteral product itself. The most common problem is the development of a clogged tube. Use the tips in **Chart 63-5** to maintain tube patency.

Patients receiving TEN are at risk for several other complications, including refeeding syndrome, tube misplacement and dislodgement, abdominal distention and nausea/vomiting, and fluid and electrolyte imbalance, often associated with diarrhea. These problems can be prevented if the patient is carefully monitored and complications are detected early.

Refeeding Syndrome. **Refeeding syndrome** is a life-threatening metabolic complication that can occur when nutrition is restarted for a patient who is in a *starvation* state. When a patient is starved for nutrition, the body breaks down fat and protein, rather than carbohydrates, for energy. Protein catabolism leads to muscle and cell loss, often in major organs like the heart, liver, and lungs. The body’s cells lose valuable electrolytes, including potassium and phosphate, into the

plasma. Insulin secretion decreases in response to these changes. When *refeeding* begins, insulin production resumes and the cells take up glucose and electrolytes from the bloodstream, thus depleting serum levels.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

The electrolyte shift of refeeding syndrome can cause cardiovascular, respiratory, and neurologic problems, primarily as a result of hypophosphatemia (Mehanna et al., 2008). Observe for clinical manifestations of this electrolyte imbalance, including shallow respirations, weakness, acute confusion, seizures, and increased bleeding tendency. Report and document your findings immediately. More information on fluid and electrolyte imbalance can be found in Chapter 13.

CHART 63-4 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Tube Feeding Care and Maintenance

- If nasogastric or nasoduodenal feeding is prescribed, use a soft, flexible, small-bore feeding tube (smaller than 12 Fr). *The initial placement of the tube should be confirmed by x-ray study.* Secure the tube with tape or a commercial attachment device after applying a skin protectant; change the tape regularly.
- Check tube placement by x-ray study when the correct position of the tube is in question; *an x-ray study is the most reliable method.*
- If a gastrostomy or jejunostomy tube is used, assess the insertion site for signs of infection or excoriation (e.g., excessive redness, drainage). Rotate the tube 360 degrees each day, and check for in-and-out play of about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (0.6 cm). If the tube cannot be moved, notify the health care provider immediately because the retention disk may be embedded in the tissue. Cover the site with a dry, sterile dressing, and change the dressing at least once a day.
- Check and record the residual volume every 4 to 6 hours, or per facility policy, by aspirating stomach contents into a syringe. If residual feeding is obtained, check with the health care provider for the appropriate intervention (usually to slow or stop the feeding for a time) or use the American Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (ASPEN) best practice recommendations.
- Check the feeding pump to ensure proper mechanical operation.
- Ensure that the enteral product is infused at the prescribed rate (mL/hr).
- Change the feeding bag and tubing every 24 to 48 hours; label the bag with the date and time of the change with your initials. Use an irrigation set for no more than 24 hours.
- For continuous or cyclic feeding, add only 4 hours of product to the bag at a time to prevent bacterial growth. *A closed system is preferred, and each set should be used no longer than 24 hours.*
- Wear clean gloves when changing or opening the feeding system or adding product; wipe the lid of the formula can with clean gauze; wear sterile gloves for critically ill or immunocompromised patients.
- Label open cans with date and time opened; cover, and keep refrigerated. Discard any unused open cans after 24 hours.
- *Do not use blue (or any color) food dye in formula because it does not assess aspiration and can cause serious complications.*
- To prevent aspiration, keep the head of the bed elevated at least 30 degrees during the feeding and for at least 1 hour after the feeding for bolus feeding; continuously maintain semi-Fowler’s position for patients receiving cyclic or continuous feeding.
- Monitor laboratory values, especially blood urea nitrogen (BUN), serum electrolytes, hematocrit, prealbumin, and glucose.
- Monitor for complications of tube feeding, especially diarrhea.
- Monitor and carefully record the patient’s weight and intake and output as requested by the physician or dietitian.

CHART 63-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Maintaining a Patent Feeding Tube

- Flush the tube with 20 to 30 mL of water (or the amount prescribed by the health care provider or dietitian):
 - At least every 4 hours during a continuous tube feeding
 - Before and after each intermittent tube feeding
 - Before and after drug administration (use warm water)
 - After checking residual volume
- If the tube becomes clogged, use 30 mL of water for flushing, applying gentle pressure with a 50-mL piston syringe.
- Avoid the use of carbonated beverage, except for existing clogs *when water is not effective*. Do not use cranberry juice.
- Whenever possible, use liquid medications instead of crushed tablets unless liquid forms cause diarrhea; make sure that the drug is compatible with the feeding solution.
- Do not mix drugs with the feeding product before giving. Crush tablets as finely as possible, and dissolve in warm water. (*Check to see which tablets are safe to crush. For example, do not crush slow-acting [SA] or slow-release [SR] drugs.*)
- Consider use of automatic flush feeding pump such as Flexiflo or Kangaroo.

Refeeding syndrome can be prevented if patients are carefully assessed and managed for nutritional needs. Interventions to supplement or replace nutrition should be implemented early before the patient is in a starvation state.

Tube Misplacement and Dislodgement. A less common but more serious complication is misplacement or dislodgement of the tube, *which can cause aspiration and possible death*. Lung intubation occurs in up to 27% of enteral tubes placed in hospitalized patients (Elpern et al., 2007). *Immediately remove any tube that you suspect is dislodged!* The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals and the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid require all health care facilities to establish and implement procedures and systems to prevent patient harm from medical complications.

Several techniques should be used to confirm proper placement to prevent harm and to keep the patient safe. *An x-ray is the most accurate confirmation method and should always be done upon initial tube insertion.* After the initial placement is confirmed, check the placement before each intermittent feeding or at least every 4 to 8 hours during feeding. Also check placement before each drug administration.

The traditional auscultatory method for checking tube placement may not be reliable, especially for patients with small-bore tubes. In this method, the nurse instills 20 to 30 mL of air into the tube ("insufflation") while listening over the epigastric area (stomach) with a stethoscope. *The resulting whooshing sound does not guarantee correct tube placement!*

Although some patients have respiratory distress if the tube is misplaced into the lungs, some do not. Therefore better methods for patient safety are being researched. Several safer procedures have been recommended for checking tube placement *after the initial placement has been confirmed by x-ray*. These methods include:

- Testing aspirated contents for pH, bilirubin, trypsin, or pepsin
- Assessing for carbon dioxide using capnometry

Some hospitals and nursing homes support testing the *pH of GI contents* at the bedside. To perform this procedure, aspirate

a sample of the GI content, observe its color, and test its pH. When aspirating fluid, wait at least 1 hour after drug administration and then flush the tube with 20 mL of air to clear it. Collect the aspirate, and test it with pH paper. The pH of gastric fluid ranges from 0 to 4.0. If the tube has moved down into the intestines, the pH will be between 7.0 and 8.0. If the tube is in the lungs, the pH will be greater than 6.0. The pH may also be as high as 6 if the patient takes certain drugs, such as H₂ blockers (e.g., ranitidine [Zantac] and famotidine [Pepcid]). Because these drugs affect pH, bilirubin testing or capnometry may be more reliable and valid methods for predicting tube location.

A newer method that has been researched is the use of *capnometry* to determine if carbon dioxide is emitted from the tube (Elpern et al., 2007). A device to measure the presence of the gas is attached to the end of the tube after placement. The test is positive for carbon dioxide if the tube is placed into the lungs, rather than the stomach. *The tube should be immediately removed if the gas is detected.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If enteral tubes are misplaced or become dislodged, the patient is likely to aspirate. Aspiration pneumonia is a common, life-threatening complication associated with TEN, especially for older adults. Observe for increasing temperature and pulse, as well as for other signs of dehydration such as dry mucous membranes and decreased urinary output. Auscultate lungs every 4 to 8 hours to check for diminishing breath sounds, especially in lower lobes. Patients may become short of breath and report chest discomfort. A chest x-ray confirms this diagnosis, and treatment with antibiotics is started.

Abdominal Distention and Nausea/Vomiting. Abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting during tube feeding are often caused by overfeeding. To *prevent* overfeeding, check gastric residual volumes every 4 to 6 hours, depending on facility policy and the needs of the patient. The American Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (ASPEN) recommends holding a feeding if the gastric residual volumes are more than 200 mL on two consecutive assessments. In some facilities, feedings are temporarily held if the gastric residual is 100 mL or more, depending on the patient. After a period of rest, the feeding can be restarted at a lower flow rate.

A problem with frequent residual assessments is that the formula may clog the tube during aspiration, even if flushed with water. If the patient's residual volumes have been low or zero and he or she has no abdominal distention, nausea, or vomiting, consider discontinuing these assessments, depending on facility policy.

Fluid and Electrolyte Imbalances. *Patients receiving enteral nutrition therapy are at an increased risk for fluid imbalances.* They are often older or debilitated and may also have cardiac or renal problems. Fluid imbalances associated with enteral nutrition are usually related to the body's response to increased serum osmolarity, but *fluid overload* from too much tube feeding can also occur.

Osmolarity is the amount or concentration of particles dissolved in solution. This concentration exerts a specific osmotic pressure within the solution. Normal osmolarity of extracellular fluid (ECF) ranges between 270 and 300 mOsm. Enteral feeding products range in osmolarity from isotonic (about 300 mOsm) to extremely hypertonic (600 mOsm).

Electrolytes (including sodium) contribute to this hypertonicity, but more of the osmolarity is determined by the concentration of proteins and sugar molecules in the enteral product. Even when the product is isotonic, the ECF can become hyperosmolar unless some hypotonic fluids are also administered to the patient. This situation is most likely to develop in patients who are unconscious, unable to respond to the thirst reflex, on fluid restrictions, or receiving hyperosmotic enteral preparations.

Because increased plasma osmolarity is largely a result of extra glucose and proteins (which tend to remain in the plasma rather than move to interstitial spaces), the plasma osmotic pressure (water-pulling pressure) is increased. In this situation, intracellular and interstitial water move into and expand the plasma volume. This volume expansion results in an increased renal excretion of water (in patients with normal renal function) and leads to osmotic *dehydration*. If patients do *not* have normal renal and cardiac function, expansion of the plasma volume can lead to circulatory overload and pulmonary edema, especially in older adults. Assess for signs and symptoms of circulatory overload, such as peripheral edema, sudden weight gain, crackles, dyspnea, increased blood pressure, and bounding pulse. Collaborate with the dietitian and health care provider to plan the correct amount of fluid to be provided.

Excessive *diarrhea* may develop when hyperosmolar enteral preparations are delivered quickly. This situation can also lead to *dehydration* through excessive water loss. Collaborate with the health care provider and dietitian for recommendations to prevent diarrhea. The dietitian usually changes the feeding to a more iso-osmolar formula. Most of these formulas can be started full strength but slowly at 15 to 20 mL/hr. The rate is gradually increased as the patient tolerates and as the expected nutritional outcome is achieved.

If diarrhea continues, especially if it has a very foul odor, the patient should be evaluated for *Clostridium difficile* or other infectious organisms. Contamination can occur because of repeated and often faulty handling of the feeding solution and system. *Wear clean gloves when changing systems and adding product. Sterile gloves may help prevent infection in critically ill or immunocompromised patients. A closed feeding system is preferred over an open one because the chance of contamination is lessened* (see [Chart 63-4](#)). Tubes with ports also minimize contamination by eliminating the need to open the feeding system to administer drugs.

In some cases, diarrhea may be the result of multiple liquid medications, such as elixirs and suspensions that have a very high osmolarity. Examples include acetaminophen (Tylenol), furosemide (Lasix), and phenytoin (Dilantin). Patients receiving multiple liquid drugs should be evaluated by the health care provider to determine whether their drug regimen can be changed to prevent diarrhea. Diluting these liquids may also be an option.

Depending on the patient's state of health, some electrolyte imbalances can be avoided. This is achieved by the use of enteral preparations containing lower concentrations of the electrolytes that the patient cannot handle well. For example, renal patients with high potassium levels receive a special formula that is used for this imbalance.

The two most common electrolyte imbalances associated with enteral nutrition therapy are hyperkalemia and hyponatremia. Both of these conditions may be related to

hyperglycemia-induced hyperosmolarity of the plasma and the resultant osmotic diuresis. Fluid and electrolyte imbalances are discussed in detail in [Chapter 13](#).

Parenteral Nutrition. When a patient cannot effectively use the GI tract for nutrition, either partial or total parenteral nutrition therapy may maintain or improve his or her nutritional status. This form of IV therapy differs from standard IV therapy in that any or all nutrients (carbohydrates, proteins, fats, vitamins, minerals, and trace elements) can be given. One liter of IV fluid containing 5% dextrose, which is often used as standard therapy, provides only 170 kcal. A hospitalized patient typically receives 3 to 4 L a day, for a total number of calories ranging between 500 and 700 a day. This calorie intake is not sufficient when the patient requires IV therapy for a prolonged period and cannot eat an adequate diet or has increased calorie needs for tissue repair and building.

Partial Parenteral Nutrition. Partial, or peripheral, parenteral nutrition (PPN) is usually given through a cannula or catheter in a large distal vein of the arm or through a peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC line). (See [Chapter 15](#) for care of patients with PICC lines.) This nutritional alternative is used for some patients who can eat but are not able to take in enough nutrients to meet their needs. The patient must have adequate peripheral vein access and be able to tolerate large volumes of fluid to have PPN. Two types of solutions are commonly used in various combinations for PPN: IV fat (lipid) emulsions (IVFEs) and amino acid–dextrose solutions. IVFEs are usually given using a piggyback method.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For patients receiving fat emulsions, monitor for manifestations of fat overload syndrome, especially in those who are critically ill. These manifestations include fever, increased triglycerides, clotting problems, and multi-system organ failure. Discontinue the IVFE infusion and report any of these changes to the health care provider immediately if this complication is suspected.

Most IVFEs (20% fat emulsion) are isotonic, but the tonicity of commercially prepared amino acid–dextrose solutions ranges from 300 mOsm to nearly 900 mOsm for PPN. Amino acid–dextrose solutions are considered more stable than IVFEs and therefore additives (e.g., vitamins, minerals, electrolytes, trace elements) tend to be mixed with them. These solutions must be delivered through an in-line filter and are administered by an infusion pump for an accurate and constant delivery rate.

Some PPN products are a *mixture* of lipids (10% or 20% fat emulsion) and an amino acid–dextrose (usually 10%) solution. This mixture of three types of nutrients is referred to as a 3:1, *total nutrient admixture (TNA)*, or *triple-mix solution*.

Total Parenteral Nutrition. When the patient requires intensive nutritional support for an extended time, the health care provider prescribes centrally administered **total parenteral nutrition (TPN)**. TPN is delivered through access to central veins, usually through a PICC line or the subclavian or internal jugular veins. Central venous catheters and associated nursing care are described in detail in [Chapter 15](#).

Total parenteral nutrition solutions contain higher concentrations of dextrose and proteins, usually in the form of synthetic amino acids or protein hydrolysates (3% to 5%). These solutions are hyperosmotic (three to six times the osmolality of normal blood). The base solutions are available as commercially prepared solutions. The hospital or community pharmacist adds components (specific electrolytes, minerals, trace elements, and insulin) according to the patient's nutritional needs. This therapy provides needed calories and spares body proteins from catabolism for energy requirements.

The TPN solutions are administered with an infusion pump. The osmolality of the fluid and the concentrations of the specific components make controlled delivery essential.

Patients receiving parenteral nutrition fluids are at risk for a wide variety of serious and potentially life-threatening complications. Complications may result from the solutions or from the peripheral or central venous catheter. The following discussion is limited to the complications that involve fluid or electrolyte balance. Complications of IV cannulas and central venous catheters are discussed in [Chapter 15](#), including infection and sepsis.

Patients receiving parenteral nutrition therapy are at high risk for fluid imbalance. Not only is fluid delivered directly into the venous system, but also the extreme hyperosmolality of the solutions stimulates fluid shifts between body fluid compartments. The hyperosmolality is caused by their amino acid and dextrose concentrations. Increased dextrose causes hyperglycemia (increased blood glucose). As a result, some of the dextrose moves into the interstitial and intracellular spaces, where it is metabolized. However, dextrose remains in the plasma volume when the solutions are administered too rapidly, without enough insulin coverage, or in the presence of hyponatremia and hypokalemia. The result is a shift of water from the interstitial and intracellular spaces into the plasma. Expansion of the plasma volume together with hyperglycemia can cause osmotic diuresis and lead to serious dehydration and hypovolemic shock. If the patient also has cardiac or renal dysfunction, he or she may develop fluid overload, congestive heart failure, and pulmonary edema. Monitor the infusion rate of the parenteral fluid, and give insulin as prescribed.

Monitor for these complications by taking daily weights and by recording accurate intake and output while the patient is receiving parenteral nutrition. Serum glucose and electrolyte values are also monitored ([Chart 63-6](#)). Report any major changes or abnormalities to the health care provider, and document all assessments and interventions.

Patients receiving TPN are at an increased risk for many different electrolyte imbalances, depending on the composition of the solution and whether a fluid imbalance occurs. The health care provider usually requests frequent determinations of serum electrolyte levels to detect these imbalances. The risk for metabolic and electrolyte complications is reduced when the rate of administration is carefully controlled and patients are closely monitored for response to treatment. Potassium and sodium imbalances are common, especially when insulin is also administered as part of the therapy. Calcium imbalances, particularly hypercalcemia, are associated with TPN, although immobility may play more of a role than the actual therapy in developing this imbalance.

CHART 63-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care and Maintenance of Total Parenteral Nutrition

- Check each bag of total parenteral nutrition (TPN) solution for accuracy by comparing it with the physician's or pharmacist's prescription.
- Monitor the IV pump for accuracy in delivering the prescribed hourly rate.
- If the TPN solution is temporarily unavailable, give 10% dextrose/water (D/W) or 20% D/W until the TPN solution can be obtained.
- If the TPN administration is not on time ("behind"), do not attempt to "catch up" by increasing the rate.
- Monitor the patient's weight daily or according to facility protocol.
- Monitor serum electrolytes and glucose daily or per facility protocol. (Many facilities require finger-stick blood sugars [FSBSs] every 4 hours, especially if the patient is receiving insulin. Urine testing for ketones may also be requested.)
- Monitor for, report, and document complications, including fluid and electrolyte imbalances.
- Monitor and carefully record the patient's intake and output.
- Assess the patient's IV site for signs of infection or infiltration (see [Chapter 15](#)).
- Change the IV tubing every 24 hours or per facility protocol.
- Change the dressing around the IV site every 48 to 72 hours or per facility protocol.
- Before administering TPN, have a second nurse check the prescription and solution to prevent patient harm.

Community-Based Care

Malnourished patients can be cared for in a variety of settings, including the acute care hospital, transitional care unit, nursing home, or their own home. Malnutrition is often diagnosed when the patient is admitted to the acute care hospital or shortly after hospitalization if complications such as poor wound healing or sepsis occur. If the patient is severely compromised, he or she may require admission to a traditional nursing home for either transitional or long-term care. If adequate home support is available, he or she may be discharged to home in the care of a family member or other caregiver. Home care nurses may be needed to monitor and direct the care.

Home Care Management

The malnourished patient needs a variety of resources at home to continue aggressive nutrition support. If he or she can consume food by the oral route, the case manager or other discharge planner determines whether financial resources are available for the necessary nutrition supplements. If the hospital provides ambulatory nutrition counseling services, the patient is scheduled for follow-up after discharge for assessment of weight gain.

Teaching for Self-Management

The dietitian teaches the malnourished patient and family about high-calorie, high-protein diet and nutritional supplements. In collaboration with the pharmacist, review specific parenteral solutions with the patient and family or significant others.

Reinforce the importance of adhering to the prescribed diet, and review any drugs the patient may be taking. If using

an iron preparation, teach the importance of taking the drug immediately before or during meals. Caution the patient that iron tends to cause constipation. For the older adult already susceptible to constipation, emphasize the importance of measures for prevention, including adequate fiber intake, adequate fluids, and exercise.

Some patients are discharged to home with enteral or parenteral nutrition. Teach the family or other caregiver how to continue these therapies. Remind caregivers to consider the psychosocial aspects of these alternative methods for nutrition. For example, the caregiver can bring the enteral product and napkin to the patient on a decorative tray to make the feeding experience more elegant and “normal.” Moving the feeding equipment out of view of the patient when it is not in use is also helpful.

Health Care Resources

The malnourished patient discharged to home on enteral or parenteral nutrition support needs the specialized services of a home nutrition therapy team. This team generally consists of the physician, nurse, dietitian, pharmacist, and case manager or social worker. Several commercial companies supply these services to patients at home in addition to the feeding supplies and formulas and health teaching.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the malnourished patient based on the identified priority patient problem. The primary expected outcome is that he or she has available nutrients to meet the metabolic demands for maintaining weight and total protein and has adequate hydration.

OBESITY

Pathophysiology

Obesity, like cancer, is not just one disease but, instead, many conditions with varying causes. The terms *obesity* and *overweight* are often used interchangeably, but they refer to different health problems. **Overweight** is an increase in body weight for height compared with a reference standard, or up to 10% greater than ideal body weight (IBW). However, this weight may not reflect excess body fat. It is possible for well-developed athletes to appear overweight because of increased muscle (lean) mass, in which the proportion of muscle to fat is greater than average.

Obesity refers to an excess amount of body fat when compared with lean body mass. The normal amount of body fat in *men* is between 15% and 20% of body weight. For *women*, the normal amount is 18% to 32%. An obese person weighs at least 20% above the upper limit of the normal range for ideal body weight. **Morbid obesity**, also called *extreme obesity*, refers to a weight that has a severely negative effect on health—usually more than 100% above IBW.

More than 72 million Americans are obese (Clancy, 2010), and another third of Americans are overweight. About 10% or more of adults are morbidly obese. *This problem is the second leading cause of preventable deaths in the United States, second only to smoking, and has become a national crisis. Obesity across the life span is considered an epidemic in the United States and Canada. Worldwide, it is recognized as a major global health problem, costing billions of dollars for health care and lost productivity.*

The pathophysiology of obesity is very complex. A number of chemicals in the body, including hormones known as *adipokines*, work together to affect appetite and fat metabolism:

- **Leptin**: a hormone released by fat cells and possibly by gastric cells; it also acts on the hypothalamus to control appetite
- **Adiponectin**: an anti-inflammatory and insulin sensitizing hormone
- **Resistin**: a hormone produced by fat cells that creates resistance to insulin activity
- **Inflammatory cytokines**: such as inflammatory interleukins and tumor necrosis factor- α
- **Apolipoprotein E**: one of several regulators of lipoprotein metabolism
- **Cholecystokinin**: a hormone that stimulates digestive juices and may work with leptin to increase or decrease appetite
- **Ghrelin**: the “hunger hormone” that is secreted in the stomach; increases in a fasting state and decreases after a meal

Some adipokines are neuropeptides, including orexins and anorexins, which play a role in body weight. **Orexins** are appetite stimulants; examples are ghrelin secreted by the stomach and peptide YY from the intestines. **Anorexins** decrease appetite and include leptin and insulin (McCance et al., 2010). Increased circulating plasma levels of orexins are associated with the development of obesity. However, in some people, high levels of leptin may not be effective in suppressing appetite—a condition known as *leptin resistance*. In this case, overeating and excessive weight gain can result. Hyperleptinemia also stimulates the autonomic nervous system and contributes to blood vessel inflammation and ventricular hypertrophy. These actions may help explain why obese patients are most at risk for hypertension, atherosclerosis, and heart disease (Kulie et al., 2011). Obesity is also associated with insulin resistance, which predisposes obese patients to type 2 diabetes mellitus (see Chapter 67).

Obesity is determined by weight compared with height, BMI, and waist circumference. To establish the percentage of IBW, the *height and weight* of the patient are compared with the midpoint of the desirable weight using an accepted reference standard. The *body mass index (BMI)*, as described previously, is a measure of heaviness and is only an indirect indicator of body fat. It reflects the combined effects of body build, proportions, lean body mass, and body fat. However, BMI has substantial correlations with fat mass for adult men and women and has been validated as a risk factor for cardiovascular disease. A BMI of 25 to 29.9 indicates that a person is overweight. A BMI of 30 or more indicates obesity. *People who are morbidly obese have a BMI of greater than 40 and are at a major risk for life-threatening health problems.*

The distribution of excess body fat rather than the degree of obesity has been used to predict increased health risks. For example, the waist circumference (WC) is a stronger predictor of coronary artery disease (CAD) than is the BMI. A WC greater than 35 inches (89 cm) in women, and a WC greater than 40 inches (102 cm) in men indicate central obesity (National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, 2008). Central obesity is a major risk factor for CAD, stroke, type 2 diabetes, some cancers (e.g., colon, breast), sleep apnea, and early death.

TABLE 63-3 COMMON COMPLICATIONS OF OBESITY

- Type 2 diabetes mellitus - Hypertension Hyperlipidemia (increased serum lipids) - Coronary artery disease (CAD) - Stroke - Peripheral artery disease (PAD) - Metabolic syndrome - Obstructive sleep apnea	- Obesity hypoventilation syndrome - Depression and other mental health/behavioral health problems - Urinary incontinence Cholelithiasis (gallstones) - Gout - Chronic back pain - Early osteoarthritis - Decreased wound healing
---	---

The waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) is also a predictor of CAD. This measure differentiates peripheral lower body obesity from central obesity. A WHR of 0.95 or greater in men (0.8 or greater in women) indicates android obesity with excess fat at the waist and abdomen.

Complications of Obesity

The major complications of obesity affect primarily the cardiovascular and respiratory systems. However, excess weight can also cause degeneration of the musculoskeletal system, especially the joints (osteoarthritis). Obese people are also more susceptible to infections and infectious diseases than are thinner people and tend to heal more slowly. [Table 63-3](#) lists some of the most common complications of obesity.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The causes of obesity involve complex interrelationships of many environmental, genetic, and behavioral factors. A number of causes of both human and animal obesity have been identified.

One of the most common causes of being overweight or obese is eating *high-fat and high-cholesterol diets*. Obesity is associated with diet when it contains a significant amount of *saturated fat*, which increases low-density lipoproteins (LDL-C). *Trans fatty acids* (TFAs), saturated fats, and cholesterol are linked to obesity and CAD ([American Heart Association, 2010](#)). By contrast, monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats are healthy fats.

TFA is made when food manufacturers add hydrogen to vegetable oil, a process known as *hydrogenation*. This process increases the food's shelf life and flavor. Large amounts of TFA can be found in vegetable shortening, commercial baked goods, snack foods, and French fries. Food labels in the United States and Canada include amounts of total fat, subtypes of fat, and cholesterol content per serving.

Physical inactivity has been identified as another cause of overweight and obesity. The major barriers to increasing physical activity include a lack of time or decreased mobility associated with prolonged illness. Regular exercise is associated with lower death rates for adults of any age. It also increases lean muscle, decreases body fat, aids in weight control, and enhances psychological well-being. Regular exercise can also decrease the risk for falling in older adults (see [Chapter 3](#)).

Although some people think that regular exercise has to include joining a fitness program or exercising for long periods, simple forms of exercise like walking 20 minutes

provide the same type of benefit. Older adults can engage in this type of exercise. It does not cost money (like joining a program) and provides health benefits such as strengthening joints and improving cardiovascular health.

Another cause of obesity is *drug therapy*. Some prescribed drugs contribute to weight gain when they are taken on a long-term basis. Examples include:

- Corticosteroids
- Estrogens and certain progestins
- Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)
- Antihypertensives
- Antidepressants and other psychoactive drugs
- Antiepileptic drugs
- Certain oral antidiabetic agents

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Familial and genetic factors seem to play a very important role in obesity. When both parents are overweight, about 80% of their children will be overweight. If neither parent is overweight, fewer than 10% of the children will be overweight. In studies of identical twins, nonidentical twins, and parent-sibling relationships, about 50% of the difference in body fatness is transmitted to children and about 50% of this amount is genetically controlled (McCance et al., 2010).

Genetic composition may predispose some people, but not others, to obesity. Leptin, the hormone encoded by the *ob* gene, appears to send a message to the brain that the body has stored enough fat. This message serves as a signal to stop eating. In some obese people, other gene mutations have been identified, including an abnormality of the melanocortin-4 receptor that inhibits appetite in families with a history of obesity.

A small number of obese people have disorders of the neuroendocrine system. Examples include injury to the hypothalamus, Cushing's disease, polycystic ovary failure, hypogonadism, and growth hormone deficiency.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Obesity is a major public health problem and is associated with many complications, including death. As a result of this increasing problem, the *Healthy People 2010* agenda addressed the need to reduce the proportion of children, adolescents, and adults who are obese. The new *Healthy People 2020 objectives for Nutrition and Weight Status* include specific population targets related to obesity and healthy nutritional habits ([Table 63-4](#)). In collaboration with the dietitian, teach the importance of weight management and exercise to improve health. Even a 5% weight loss can drastically decrease the risk for coronary artery disease (CAD) and diabetes mellitus.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

In addition to taking a complete history regarding present and past health problems, collect this information about the patient in collaboration with the dietitian:

- Economic status
- Usual food intake
- Eating behavior
- Cultural background
- Attitude toward food

TABLE 63-4 MEETING HEALTHY PEOPLE 2020 SAMPLE OBJECTIVES AND TARGETS: NUTRITION AND WEIGHT STATUS

- Reduce the proportion of adults who are obese (by 10%).
- Increase the proportion of adults who are at a healthy weight (by 10%).
- Increase the proportion of physician visits made by adult patients that include counseling about nutrition or diet (by 15.2%).
- Increase the proportion of primary care physicians who regularly assess body mass index (BMI) in their adult patients (by 10%).
- Increase the contribution of total vegetables to the diets of the population aged 2 years and older (to 1.1 cups per 1000 calories).
- Increase the contribution of fruits to the diets of the population aged 2 years and older (to 0.9 cups per 1000 calories).
- Reduce consumption of saturated fat in the population aged 2 years and older (by 9.5%).

- Appetite
- Chronic diseases
- Drugs (prescribed and OTC, including herbal preparations)
- Physical activity/functional ability
- Family history of obesity
- Developmental level

A nutritional history usually includes a 24-hour recall of food intake and the frequency with which foods are consumed. The adequacy of the diet can be evaluated by comparing the amount and types of foods consumed daily with the established standards. The dietitian then provides a more detailed analysis of nutritional intake.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Obtain an accurate height and weight. The dietitian calculates the percentage of ideal body weight (% IBW) and the body mass index (BMI). He or she may also:

- Measure the waist circumference
- Calculate the waist-to-hip ratio
- Determine arm and calf circumferences

Examine the skin of the obese patient for reddened or open areas. Lift skinfold areas, such as pendulous breasts and abdominal aprons (**panniculus**), to observe for *Candida* (yeast) (a condition called *intertrigo*) or other infections or lesions. Infection of the panniculus is referred to as **panniculitis**.

Psychosocial Assessment

Obtain a psychosocial history to determine the patient's circumstances and emotional factors that might prevent successful therapy or that might be worsened by therapy. Interview the patient to determine his or her perception of current weight and weight reduction. Some patients do not view weight as a problem, which affects treatment and outcome. Ask the patient questions about his or her health beliefs related to being overweight, such as:

- What does food mean to you?
- Do you want to lose weight?
- What prevents you from losing weight?
- What do you think will motivate you to lose weight?
- How do you think you might benefit from losing weight?

Many patients report that they have tried multiple diets to lose weight but either the diets have not worked or they regained the weight they had initially lost. People who attempt restrictive diets become easy targets for the billion-dollar weight-loss industry, yet most dieters regain lost weight. This problem can be even more concerning for the older adult who loses weight and then regains it. Recent studies have shown that this cycle may contribute to loss of lean muscle mass, especially in older men (Lee et al., 2010).

The results of dieting and other efforts can lead to a sense of failure and lowered self-esteem, which often stimulates more overeating. Many overweight and obese people eat in response to environmental and emotional stressors rather than because they are hungry. Ask patients to identify their perceived stressors and what triggers their need for food.

Lifestyle changes are difficult without adequate family and community support. Assess useful coping strategies and support systems that the patient can use during treatment for obesity.

Explore the patient's history to assess:

- Attempts at weight-reduction diets and outcomes
- Effects of obesity on lifestyle
- Effects of obesity on social interactions
- Mental health/behavioral health problems, such as depression
- Effects of obesity on intimate relationships, especially sexuality

Obese men often experience erectile dysfunction (ED), which can cause or worsen depression. Women often experience changes in their menstrual cycles and may have problems getting pregnant.

INTERVENTIONS

Weight is lost only when energy used is greater than intake. Weight loss may be accomplished by nutritional modification with or without the aid of drugs and in combination with a regular exercise program. Patients who may be candidates for surgical treatment include those who have:

- Repeated failure of nonsurgical interventions
- A BMI equal to or greater than 40
- Weight more than 100% above IBW (i.e., morbidly obese)

Nonsurgical Management

Various nutritional approaches and drug therapy have attempted to help obese patients achieve permanent weight loss.

Diet Programs. Diets for helping people lose weight include fasting, very-low-calorie diets, balanced and unbalanced low-energy diets, and novelty diets.

Short-term fasting programs have not been successful in treating morbidly obese patients, and prolonged fasting does not produce permanent benefits. Most patients regain the weight that was lost by this method. In addition, the risks associated with fasting (e.g., severe ketosis) require close medical supervision.

Very-low-calorie diets generally provide 200 to 800 calories/day. Two types of these diets are the *protein-sparing modified fast* and the *liquid formula diet*. The protein-sparing modified fast provides protein of high biologic value (1.5 g/kg of desirable body weight daily) within a limited number of calories. The diet produces rapid weight loss while preserving lean

body mass. The liquid formula diet provides between 33 and 70 g of protein daily.

Both diets require an initial cardiac evaluation, supervision by an interdisciplinary health care team with monitoring by a physician, nutrition counseling by a dietitian, and supplementation with vitamins and minerals. These diets are only one part of a weight-reduction program. Patients who are on these diets should receive nutrition education, psychological counseling, exercise, and behavior therapy. Comparable weight losses have been achieved with both diets, but again, most patients regain the weight they lost.

Nutritionally *balanced diets* generally provide about 1200 calories/day with a conventional distribution of carbohydrate, protein, and fat. Vitamin and mineral supplements may be necessary if energy intakes fall below 1200 calories for women and 1800 calories for men. This diet provides conventional foods that are economical and easy to obtain. Thus the outcome of weight loss is facilitated, and it is hoped that loss is maintained. For example, Weight Watchers is an organization that provides education about nutritionally balanced diets based on a point system. They offer on-site weekly group support meetings or the option of an online community.

Unbalanced low-energy diets, such as the low-carbohydrate diet (e.g., Atkins or South Beach diet), restrict one or more nutrients. Protein and vegetables are encouraged, but certain carbohydrates and high-fat foods are not. Although they remain controversial in the medical community, these diets are extremely popular. Scientific outcome data have been conflicting.

Novelty diets, such as the grapefruit diet, the Cookie diet, and the Hollywood diet, are often nutritionally *inadequate*. This type of diet implies that a certain food or liquid increases metabolic rate or accelerates the oxidation of body fat. Weight loss is achieved because energy is restricted by food choice, but patients do not sustain weight loss after stopping the diet.

Nutrition Therapy. Nutritional recommendations for each patient should be developed through close interaction among the patient, family, physician, nurse, and dietitian. The diet should meet the patient's needs, habits, and lifestyle and should be realistic.

The dietitian develops a diet plan and instructs the patient. At a minimum, the diet should:

- Have a scientific rationale
- Be nutritionally adequate for all nutrients
- Have a low risk-benefit ratio
- Be practical and conducive to long-term success

Calorie estimates are easily calculated. Resting metabolic rate is determined using a gender-specific formula that incorporates the appropriate activity factor. This figure reflects the total calories needed daily for maintaining current weight. To encourage a weight loss of 1 pound (2.2 kg) a week, the dietitian subtracts 500 calories each day. To encourage a weight loss of 2 pounds (4.4 kg) a week, 1000 calories each day are subtracted. The amount of weight lost varies with the patient's food intake, level of physical activity, and water losses. A reasonable expected outcome of 5% to 10% loss of body weight has been shown to improve glycemic control and reduce cholesterol and blood pressure. These benefits continue if the weight loss is sustained.

Exercise Program. A major intervention to manage obesity is to increase the type and amount of daily exercise to burn calories along with change in eating habits. For most

people, adding exercise to a nutritional intervention produces more weight loss than just dieting alone. More of the weight lost is fat, which preserves lean body mass. An increase in exercise can reduce the waist circumference and the waist-to-hip ratio.

Teach patients that increasing and maintaining physical activity levels are important in maintaining weight loss. Many overweight or obese patients are so unfit that it may take several months of conditioning before they can exercise sufficiently to lose weight.

The physical therapist or exercise physiologist or assistant first obtains a clinical exercise and health history. It is important to determine the patient's current exercise pattern, if any, and exercise habits over a lifetime. Teach about the importance of an exercise component in a weight-loss program. The patient's desire to participate in an exercise program and his or her preferred types of exercise are also identified.

The health care provider may evaluate the patient by an exercise stress test. Not all patients need one, but those with chronic disease may need the results to assist with an individual exercise plan. Patients are counseled about unusual signs and symptoms during exercise (e.g., chest pain) and what to do if they occur. The physical therapist or exercise physiologist first emphasizes the importance of exercising consistently and then stresses its duration, intensity, and frequency.

A minimum-level workout should be developed so that consistency can be achieved. The expected outcome is to maintain a lifetime of increased physical activity. The patient is likely to be less fatigued and discouraged with a low-intensity, short-duration program. Encourage sedentary (physically inactive) patients to increase their activity by walking 30 to 40 minutes at least 5 days each week. The activity may be performed all at once or divided over the course of the day. Remind the patient to exercise only under the supervision of the physician. All members of the interdisciplinary team should encourage and support any increase in physical activity. Structured national programs with support staff, such as Curves, may be helpful for some patients. The staff typically offer diet counseling as well as cardiovascular and muscle-toning activities.

Drug Therapy. A BMI of 30 or a BMI of 27 with comorbidities is one indicator for the use of drug therapy. **Anorectic drugs** suppress appetite, which reduces food intake and, over time, may result in weight loss. The Food and Drug Administration in the United States has pulled several drugs off the market and not approved other drugs due to concerns about cardiovascular complications associated with long-term use. The only *prescription* drug still available for the *long-term* treatment of obesity is orlistat (Xenical).

Orlistat inhibits lipase and leads to partial hydrolysis of triglycerides. Because fats are only partially digested and absorbed, calorie intake is decreased. The usual dosage is 120 mg three times daily. Most patients taking this drug have GI symptoms that include loose stools, abdominal cramps, and nausea unless they reduce their fat intake to less than 30% of their food intake each day. Therefore it should be used with caution and limited to adults between 18 and 75 years of age. Treatment is usually not extended beyond 12 months. A lower-dose 60-mg orlistat tablet (Alli) is the only *over-the-counter* weight loss aid product that has received FDA approval for long-term use.

Other sympathomimetic drugs suppress appetite for *short-term* use along with a structured weight-management and exercise program. These drugs act on the central nervous system, including suppressing the appetite center in the hypothalamus. Examples include phentermine (Adipex-P), diethylpropion (Tenuate, Tenuate Dospan), and phendimetrazine (Bontril).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Patients with hypertension, heart disease, and hyperthyroidism should not take anorectic drugs because they may worsen their symptoms. These drugs are not prescribed for any patient taking psychoactive agents because they cause similar side effects. Teach patients who are candidates for sympathomimetic drugs about side effects, which include:

- Palpitations
- Diarrhea or constipation
- Restlessness
- Insomnia
- Dry mouth
- Blurred vision (especially Bontril)
- Change in sex drive or activity
- Anxiety

Behavioral Management. Behavioral management of obesity helps the patient change daily eating habits to lose weight. This ongoing process should produce a change in behavior. Self-monitoring techniques include keeping a record of foods eaten (food diary), exercise patterns, and emotional and situational factors. Stimulus control involves controlling the external cues that promote overeating. Reinforcement techniques are used to self-reward the behavior change. Cognitive restructuring involves modifying negative beliefs by learning positive coping self-statements. Counseling by health care professionals must continue before, during, and after treatment. The 12-step program offered by Overeaters Anonymous (www.oa.org) has helped many people lose weight, especially those who are compulsive eaters.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Many complementary and alternative therapies have been tested and used for obesity. These modalities aim to suppress appetite and therefore limit food intake to lose weight:

- Acupuncture
- Acupressure
- Ayurvedic (a combination of holistic approaches)
- Hypnosis

Descriptions of most of these methods can be found in [Chapter 2](#).

Surgical Management

At any weight, some patients seek to improve their appearance by having a variety of cosmetic procedures to reduce the amount of adipose tissue in selected areas of the body. A typical example of this type of surgery is **liposuction**, which can be done in a physician's office or ambulatory surgery center. Although the patient's appearance improves, if weight gain continues, the fatty tissue will return. This procedure is not a solution for people who are morbidly obese.

Morbidly obese people who do not respond to traditional interventions may be considered for a major surgical

procedure aimed at producing permanent weight loss. Patients with a body mass index (BMI) of 40 or greater or a BMI of 35 or greater along with additional risk factors are considered for surgery. Surgery has been perceived as a last resort to address weight issues, but it *is the only method that has a long-term impact on morbid obesity*.

Bariatrics is a branch of medicine that manages obesity and its related diseases. Surgical procedures include these three types: gastric restrictive, malabsorption, or both. *Restrictive* surgeries decrease the volume capacity of the stomach to limit the amount of food that can be eaten at one time. As the name implies, *malabsorption* procedures interfere with the absorption of food and nutrients from the GI tract.

Every year, more than 100,000 people in the United States have these procedures, and that number is rapidly increasing. The surgeon may use a conventional open approach or minimally invasive surgery (MIS). Most patients have MIS by having either the laparoscopic adjustable gastric band (LAGB) or the laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy (LSG). Both procedures are classified as restrictive surgeries (Kaser & Kukla, 2009). The decision of whether the patient is a candidate for the MIS is based on weight, body build, history of abdominal surgery, and co-existing medical complications. With any surgical approach, patients must agree to modify their lifestyle and follow stringent protocols to lose weight and keep the weight off. After bariatric surgery, many patients no longer have complications of obesity, such as diabetes mellitus, hypertension, depression, or sleep apnea.

Preoperative Care. Preoperative care is similar to that for any patient undergoing abdominal surgery or laparoscopy (see [Chapter 16](#)). However, obese patients are at increased surgical risks of pulmonary and thromboembolic complications, as well as death. Some surgeons require limited weight loss before bariatric surgery to decrease these complications. Patients also have a thorough psychological assessment and testing to detect depression, substance abuse, or other mental health/behavioral health problem that could interfere with their success after surgery. Additional assessments to evaluate cognitive ability, coping skills, development, motivation, expectations, and support systems are also performed. Patients who are not alert and oriented or do not have sufficient strength and mobility are not considered for bariatric surgery. *The primary role of the nurse is to reinforce health teaching in preparation for surgery.* Most bariatric surgical centers provide education sessions for groups of patients who plan to have a bariatric procedure.

Operative Procedures. *Gastric restriction* surgeries allow for normal digestion without the risk for nutritional deficiencies. In the LAGB procedure, the surgeon places an adjustable band to create a small proximal stomach pouch through a laparoscope (Fig. 63-4, A). The band may or may not be inflatable. For example, the REALIZE® band requires that saline be injected into a balloon to control the tightness of the band. This type of procedure is considered to be restrictive; malabsorption complications do not usually occur (Pettit, 2009). For the LSG, the surgeon removes the portion of the stomach where ghrelin, the “hunger hormone,” is secreted. Restrictive surgeries are the easiest to perform and can be reversed. However, weight lost is often regained after a period of time. By contrast, patients having the malabsorption procedures maintain 60% to 70% of their weight loss even after 20 years.

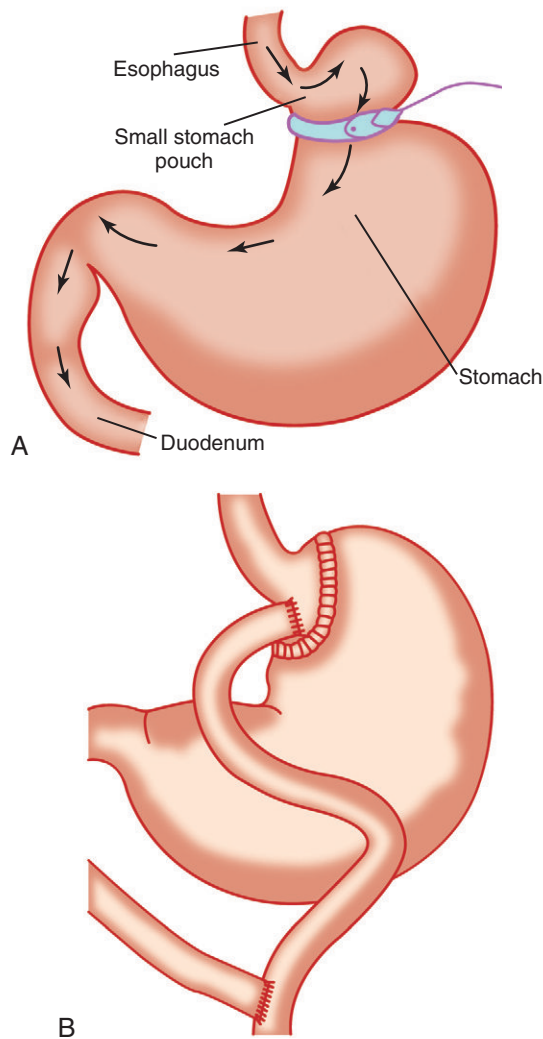


FIG. 63-4 Bariatric surgical procedures. **A**, Adjustable banded gastroplasty. **B**, Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RNYGB).

The most common *malabsorption surgery* performed in the United States is the *Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RNYGB)*, which is often done as a robotic surgical procedure. Other procedures less commonly done are the biliopancreatic diversion (rarely done) and the duodenal switch. All of these procedures result in quicker weight loss, but they are more invasive with a higher risk for postoperative complications. In RNYGB, most commonly just called a **gastric bypass**, gastric resection is combined with malabsorption surgery. The patient's stomach, duodenum, and part of the jejunum are bypassed so that fewer calories can be absorbed (see Fig. 63-4, B).

Postoperative Care. Postoperative care depends on the type of surgery—the conventional open approach or the minimally invasive technique. Although many patients have MIS, they are considered as having major abdominal surgery along with all its risks and are cared for accordingly. These patients may require less than 24 hours in the hospital; some may need 1 to 2 days. Patients with open procedures may need several days to recover.

Patients having one of the MIS procedures have less pain, scarring, and blood loss. They typically have a faster recovery time and a faster return to daily activities.

The priority for immediate care of postoperative bariatric surgery patients is airway management. Patients with short and thick necks often have compromised airways and need aggressive respiratory support, possibly mechanical ventilation in the critical care unit.

All patients experience some degree of pain, but it is usually less severe when MIS is done. Patients may use patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with morphine for up to the first 24 hours. All patients receive oral opioid analgesic agents as prescribed after the PCA is discontinued. Liquid forms of drug therapy are preferred. Acute pain management is discussed in detail in [Chapter 5](#).

Care of the bariatric surgical patient is similar to that of any patient having abdominal or laparoscopic surgery. A *major focus is patient and staff safety*. Special bariatric equipment and accommodations, including an extra-wide bed and additional personnel for moving the patient, are needed for both the surgical suite and postoperative care units. Weight-rated beds must be wide enough to allow the patient to turn. Bed rails should not be touching the body because they can cause pressure areas. Pressure between skinfolds, as well as tubes and catheters, can also cause skin breakdown. Monitor the skin in these areas, and keep it clean and dry.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Some patients who have bariatric surgery have a nasogastric (NG) tube put in place, especially after open surgical procedures. In gastroplasty procedures, the NG tube drains both the proximal pouch and the distal stomach. Closely monitor the tube for patency. Never reposition the tube, because its movement can disrupt the suture line! The NG tube is removed on the second day if the patient is passing flatus.

Clear liquids are introduced slowly if the patient can tolerate water, and 1-ounce cups are used for each serving. Pureed foods, juice, and soups thinned with broth, water, or milk are added to the diet 24 to 48 hours after clear liquids are tolerated. Typically, the patient can increase the volume to 1 ounce over 5 minutes or until satisfied, but the diet is limited to liquids or pureed foods for 6 weeks. The patient then progresses to regular food, with an emphasis on nutrient-dense foods. Nausea, vomiting, or discomfort occurs if too much liquid is ingested.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Anastomotic leaks are the most common serious complication and cause of death after gastric bypass surgery. Monitor for manifestations of this life-threatening problem, including increasing back, shoulder, or abdominal pain; restlessness; and unexplained tachycardia and oliguria (scant urine). Report any of these findings to the surgeon immediately!

In addition to the postoperative complications typically associated with abdominal and laparoscopic surgeries, bariatric patients have special needs and risks. Implement these measures to prevent complications:

- Apply an abdominal binder to prevent wound dehiscence for open surgical procedures.

- Place the patient in semi-Fowler's position or use bi-level or continuous positive airway pressure (BiPAP or CPAP) ventilation at night to improve breathing and decrease risk for sleep apnea or other pulmonary complications, such as pneumonia and atelectasis.
- Monitor oxygen saturation; provide oxygen at 2 L/min as prescribed.
- Apply sequential compression stockings and administer prophylactic anticoagulant (usually heparin) therapy as prescribed to help prevent thromboembolic complications, including pulmonary embolism (PE).
- Observe skin areas and folds for redness, excoriation, or breakdown to treat these problems early.
- Use absorbent padding between folds to prevent pressure areas and skin breakdown; make sure that tubes and catheters are not causing pressure as well.
- Remove urinary catheter within 24 hours after surgery to prevent urinary tract infection.
- Assist the patient out of bed on the day of surgery; encourage and assist with turning every 2 hours using an appropriate weight-bearing overhead trapeze. Collaborate with the physical or occupational therapist if needed for transfers or ambulation assistive devices, such as walkers.
- Ambulate patient as soon as possible to prevent post-operative complications, such as deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolus.
- Measure and record abdominal girth daily, as requested.
- In collaboration with the dietitian, provide six small feedings and plenty of fluids to prevent dehydration.
- Observe for signs and symptoms of **dumping syndrome** (caused by food entering the small intestine instead of the stomach) after *gastric bypass*, such as tachycardia, nausea, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Teamwork and Collaboration; Informatics

A 34-year-old morbidly obese man had a laparoscopic adjustable gastric band procedure yesterday afternoon as part of a long-term plan for weight loss. He tells you that he is afraid he is going to die. He also tells you that he is scared that his two young children, ages 2 and 5, will become "fat like me." As he talks with you, his respiratory rate increases to over 40 breaths per minute. He is having diaphoresis and places his hand on his chest as he speaks.

1. What patient problems do you think he is having at this time? What data support your answer?
2. What health assessments will you perform at this time and why?
3. How will you respond to his problems at this time and why?
4. When he is ready for discharge, what health teaching will you provide related to the *Healthy People 2020* and *2010 Dietary Guidelines for Americans*? Find the complete evidence-based documents on the Internet and develop a teaching plan for this patient.
5. With whom will you collaborate as you prepare for his discharge to home?

Community-Based Care

Obese patients are cared for in a variety of settings, including the acute care hospital and transitional care unit (particularly after surgery) or in their own home. Obesity is a chronic,

CHART 63-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Discharge Teaching for the Patient After Bariatric Surgery

Nutrition: Diet progression, nutrient (including vitamin and mineral) supplements, hydration guidelines

Drug therapy: Analgesics and antiemetic drugs, if needed; drugs for other health problems

Wound care: Clean procedure for open or laparoscopic wounds; cover during shower or bath

Activity level: Restrictions, such as avoiding lifting; activity progression; return to driving and work

Signs and symptoms to report: Fever; excessive nausea or vomiting; epigastric, back, or shoulder pain; red, hot, and/or draining wound(s); pain, redness, or swelling in legs; chest pain; difficulty breathing

Follow-up care: Health care provider office or clinic visits, support groups and other community resources, counseling for patient and family

Continuing education: Nutrition and exercise classes; follow-up visits with dietitian

lifelong problem. Diets, drug therapy, exercise, and behavior modification can produce short-term weight losses with reasonable safety. However, most patients who do lose weight often regain the weight. Treatment of obesity should focus on the long-term reduction of health risks and medical problems associated with obesity, improving quality of life, and promoting a health-oriented lifestyle. Interdisciplinary team members need to provide a nonjudgmental, supportive atmosphere that encourages the patient to:

- Increase physical activity
- Decrease fat intake and reliance on appetite-reducing drugs
- Establish a normal eating pattern in response to physiologic hunger
- Address psychological problems and concerns

Frequent, long-term ambulatory care follow-up coordinated by a case manager is essential for successful treatment.

Teach patients that bowel changes are common after surgery, including constipation. Vitamin and mineral supplements are often needed after surgery, especially vitamin D, B-complex vitamins, iron, and calcium.

The most important features of health teaching for any obese patient and family focus on health-related behavior patterns. In collaboration with the dietitian, counsel the patient on a healthful eating pattern. The physical therapist or exercise physiologist recommends an appropriate exercise program. A psychologist may recommend cognitive restructuring approaches that help alter dysfunctional eating patterns. For patients who have surgery, additional discharge teaching is needed. [Chart 63-7](#) lists the important areas that should be reviewed.

Bariatric surgery results in a major lifestyle change and a variety of emotions. During weight loss, the patient may become depressed or anxious. Some experience a "hibernation phase" for about a month after surgery because of physical and emotional adjustments. Patients are usually followed closely by the surgeon and dietitian for several years.

Encourage them to keep all appointments and to adhere to the community-based treatment plan to ensure success. Plastic surgery, such as **panniculectomy** (removal of the abdominal apron, or **panniculus**), may be performed after weight is stabilized, usually in about 18 to 24 months.

Provide the patient with a list of available community resources, such as Overeaters Anonymous (www.oa.org) and the American Obesity Association (www.obesity.org). For surgical patients, the American Society for Metabolic and Bariatric Surgery (www.asmb.org) may be helpful.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing inadequate nutrition as a result of malnutrition or obesity?

Malnutrition

- Weight below ideal body weight or report of unexplained weight loss of 10 pounds in 6 months
- Dry, flaky skin
- Brittle nails and hair
- Leanness
- Activity intolerance
- Report of lethargy or fatigue
- Weakness
- Complications, such as infections, pressure ulcers, poor healing

Obesity

- Weight at least 20% above ideal
- Excessive fat
- Shortness of breath during activity or at rest
- Slowed movement
- Change in gait or limping
- Complications, such as type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, depression

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing inadequate nutrition as a result of malnutrition or obesity?

Perform and interpret assessments, including:

- Take and record height and weight.
- Calculate BMI based on height and weight.
- Check laboratory values for hematocrit and hemoglobin and visceral proteins.

- Take complete medical history to determine associated complications and cause of nutritional problem.
- Assess impact of nutritional status on daily life, including ADLs.
- Assess coping mechanisms, especially for patients who are morbidly obese.

Respond by:

- Teaching patients about their need for a healthy nutritional state
- Teaching patients how to either lose or gain weight, depending on their specific problem (e.g., nutritional supplements for malnutrition; restrictive diet and exercise for obesity)
- Teaching patients to weigh frequently
- Monitoring changes in serum visceral proteins (especially prealbumin) as an indicator of improved nutrition for malnourished patients
- Initiating total enteral or total parenteral nutrition as prescribed for malnutrition
- Informing morbidly obese patients about bariatric surgery options

On what should you REFLECT?

- Monitor patient for indicators of improved nutrition (e.g., increased prealbumin and weight for malnutrition; weight loss and decreased fat for obesity).
- Think about what may have caused these nutritional problems and how they can be prevented.
- Think about what else you can do to improve nutritional health of patients you care for.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Ensure that feeding tube placement is verified by x-ray; check placement every 4 to 8 hours by aspirating gastric contents and assessing pH for nasogastric tubes.
- Place patients receiving tube feeding in a semi-Fowler's position at all times to prevent aspiration; check residual contents every 4 hours or as designated per facility policy.

- Use gloves when changing feeding system tubing or adding product; use sterile gloves when working with critically ill or immunocompromised patients.
- Use a feeding pump when the patient receives continuous or cyclic tube feeding.
- Collaborate with the interdisciplinary health care team, especially the dietitian, health care provider, and case manager, when caring for patients with malnutrition or obesity.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Be sure that bariatric furniture and equipment are available for the obese patient in the hospital or other health care setting; avoid pressure on skinfold areas.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Perform nutritional screening for all patients to determine if they are at risk (see [Charts 63-1 and 63-2](#)).
- For patients receiving enteral or parenteral nutrition at home, teach family members or other caregivers how to provide nutrition while avoiding complications.
- Teach patients who are undernourished to eat high-protein, high-calorie foods and nutritional supplements.
- Instruct obese patients about the importance of health care provider–approved exercise for weight reduction.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Be aware that some obese patients may not view their weight as a problem and are therefore unlikely to be part of a weight-reduction plan.
- Recognize that obesity can cause depression or anxiety, low self-esteem, and a disturbed body image.
- Be aware of legal and ethical issues related to tube-feeding older adults with chronic or terminal illness.

Physiological Integrity

- Review serum prealbumin, hemoglobin, and hematocrit levels to identify patients at nutritional risk.
- Older patients are at increased risk for malnutrition (see [Chart 63-2](#)).
- Assess patients with severe malnutrition for common complications, such as edema; lethargy; and dry, flaking skin.
- Implement interventions to promote nutritional intake in older adults as specified in [Chart 63-3](#).
- Provide nursing interventions for managing total enteral nutrition as listed in [Chart 63-4](#).

- Maintain feeding tube patency for patients receiving total enteral nutrition as described in [Chart 63-5](#).
- Provide care for patients receiving total parenteral nutrition as specified in [Chart 63-6](#).
- Recognize that many people are following low-carbohydrate rather than low-fat diets to lose weight.
- Recall that normal body mass index (BMI) for adults should be between 18.5 and 25; older adults should have a BMI between 23 and 27. A BMI of 27 to 30 indicates overweight, over 30 indicates obesity, and 40 and greater indicates morbid obesity.
- Recall that obesity causes early onset of many chronic illnesses, such as osteoarthritis, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and coronary artery disease. Pulmonary problems, such as obstructive sleep apnea, delayed wound healing, and infections are also common.
- Remember that bariatric surgery includes gastric restriction procedures or gastric bypass; a panniculectomy may be performed to remove skinfolds once weight is stabilized.
- Be alert for signs and symptoms of anastomotic leak after bariatric surgery, including severe pain, restlessness, anxiety, and unexplained tachycardia.
- Provide postoperative care for patients having bariatric surgery to prevent complications such as wound dehiscence, respiratory distress, skin breakdown, and thromboembolic complications, such as pulmonary embolism. Observe for complications, such as dumping syndrome in patients who have a gastric bypass. Tachycardia, nausea, diarrhea, and abdominal cramping are common manifestations of dumping syndrome.
- Provide discharge teaching for patients having bariatric surgery as described in [Chart 63-7](#).



UNIT XIV

Problems of Regulation and Metabolism

Management of Patients with Problems of the Endocrine System

CHAPTER

64

Assessment of the Endocrine System

M. Linda Workman

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Ensure that agency laboratory procedures for collecting and handling specimens for endocrine function studies are followed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify factors that place patients at risk for endocrine health problems.
3. Teach everyone about the dangers of misusing or abusing hormones or steroids.

Psychosocial Integrity

4. Encourage the patient to express concerns about a change in appearance, sexuality, or fertility.
5. Assess whether the patient has experienced recent changes in behavior or responses to stress.
6. Teach patients and family members about what to expect during tests and procedures to assess for endocrine problems.

Physiological Integrity

7. Describe the relationship between hormones and receptor sites.
8. Explain negative feedback as a control mechanism for hormone secretion.
9. Apply the principles of anatomy and physiology to understand the role of the endocrine system in homeostasis.
10. Identify adaptations in nursing assessment or interventions needed because of age-related changes in endocrine function.
11. Interpret laboratory test findings and clinical manifestations for patients with possible endocrine problems.

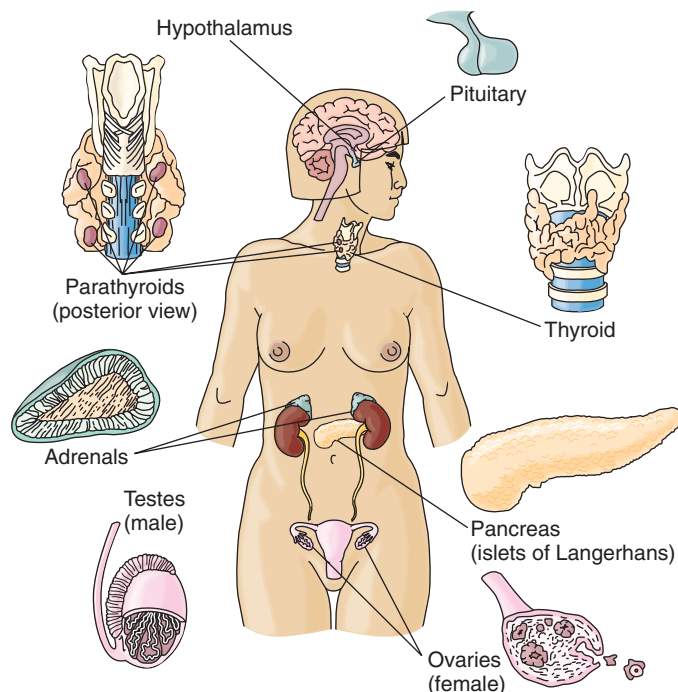


FIG. 64-1 The locations of various glands within the endocrine system.

The endocrine system is made up of glands in many tissues and organs in a variety of body areas (Fig. 64-1). The purpose of all endocrine glands is to secrete **hormones**, which are natural chemicals that exert their effects on specific tissues known as **target tissues**. Target tissues are usually located some distance from the endocrine gland, with no direct physical connection between the endocrine gland and its target tissue. For this reason, endocrine glands are called “ductless” glands and must use the blood to transport secreted hormones to the target tissues (McCance et al., 2010). Endocrine glands include:

- Hypothalamus (a neuroendocrine gland)
- Pituitary gland
- Adrenal glands
- Thyroid gland
- Islet cells of the pancreas
- Parathyroid glands
- Gonads

The endocrine system works with the nervous system to control overall body function, known as **neuroendocrine regulation**. Many interactions must occur between the endocrine system and all other body systems to ensure that each system maintains a constant normal balance (**homeostasis**) in response to environmental changes. For example, neuroendocrine control of body systems keeps the internal body temperature at or near 98.6° F (37° C), even when environmental temperatures vary. Other actions keep the serum sodium level between 136 and 145 mEq/L (mmol/L), regardless of whether a person eats 2 g or 12 g of sodium per day.

Table 64-1 lists hormones secreted by various endocrine glands. Hormones travel through the blood to all body areas but exert their actions only on target tissues. They recognize their target tissues and exert their actions by binding to recep-

TABLE 64-1 PRINCIPAL HORMONES OF THE ENDOCRINE GLANDS

GLAND	HORMONES
Hypothalamus	Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH) Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) Growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH) Growth hormone–inhibiting hormone (somatostatin GHIH) Prolactin-inhibiting hormone (PIH) Melanocyte-inhibiting hormone (MIH)
Anterior pituitary	Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), also known as <i>thyrotropin</i> Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH, corticotropin) Luteinizing hormone (LH), also known as <i>Leydig cell–stimulating hormone (LCSH)</i> Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) Prolactin (PRL) Growth hormone (GH) Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH)
Posterior pituitary	Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone [ADH]) Oxytocin
Thyroid	Triiodothyronine (T ₃) Thyroxine (T ₄) Calcitonin
Parathyroid	Parathyroid hormone (PTH)
Adrenal cortex	Glucocorticoids (cortisol) Mineralocorticoids (aldosterone)
Ovary	Estrogen Progesterone
Testes	Testosterone
Pancreas	Insulin Glucagon Somatostatin

tors on or within the target tissue cells. In general, each receptor site type is specific for only one hormone. Hormone-receptor actions work in a “lock and key” manner in that only the correct hormone (key) can bind to and activate the receptor site (lock) (Fig. 64-2). Binding a hormone to its receptor causes the target tissue to change its activity, producing specific responses.

Disorders of the endocrine system usually are related to:

- An excess of a specific hormone
- A deficiency of a specific hormone
- A receptor defect

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

The control of cellular function by any hormone depends on a series of reactions working through negative feedback control mechanisms. Hormone secretion usually depends on the need of the body for the final action of that hormone. When a body condition starts to move away from the normal range and a specific action or response is needed to correct this change, secretion of the hormone capable of starting the correcting action or response is stimulated until the need (demand) is met and the body condition returns to the normal range. As the correction occurs, hormone secretion decreases (and may halt). This type of control for hormone

synthesis is “**negative feedback**” because the hormone causes the *opposite* action of the initial condition change.

An example of a simple negative feedback hormone response is the control of insulin secretion. When blood glucose levels start to rise above normal, the hormone *insulin* is secreted. Insulin increases glucose uptake by the cells, causing a *decrease* in blood glucose levels. Thus the action of insulin (decreasing blood glucose levels) is the opposite of or

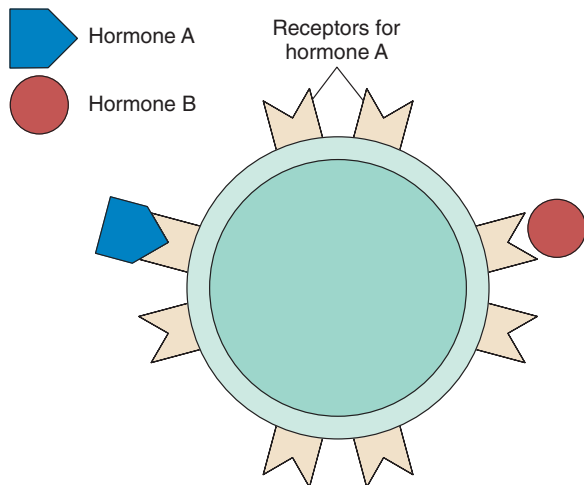


FIG. 64-2 “Lock and Key” hormone-receptor binding. *Hormone A* fits and binds to its receptors, causing a change in cell action. *Hormone B* does not fit or bind to receptors; no change in cell action results.

negative to the condition that stimulated insulin secretion (elevated blood glucose levels).

Some hormones have more complex interactions for negative feedback. These interactions involve a series of reactions in which more than one endocrine gland, as well as the final target tissues, is stimulated. In this situation, the first hormone in the series may have another endocrine gland as its target tissue. For this type of mechanism to maintain homeostasis, this series of interactions must occur:

- The central nervous system receives and reacts to various sensory inputs transmitted to the hypothalamus as stimuli.
- The hypothalamus responds to the stimuli with the production and release of either releasing or inhibiting factors, which are transported to the pituitary.
- In the pituitary gland, the releasing or inhibiting factors either stimulate or inhibit the release of specific hormones.
- The anterior pituitary hormones then control the secretion of hormones in other endocrine glands. These glands then secrete hormones into the blood that then act on their target organs or tissues, resulting in a change of at least one function.

An example of complex control is the interaction of the hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary with the adrenal cortex (Fig. 64-3). Low blood levels of cortisol from the adrenal cortex stimulate the secretion of corticotrophic-releasing hormone (CRH) in the hypothalamus. CRH stimulates the anterior pituitary gland to secrete adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). ACTH then triggers the release of cortisol from the adrenal cortex. The rising blood levels of cortisol

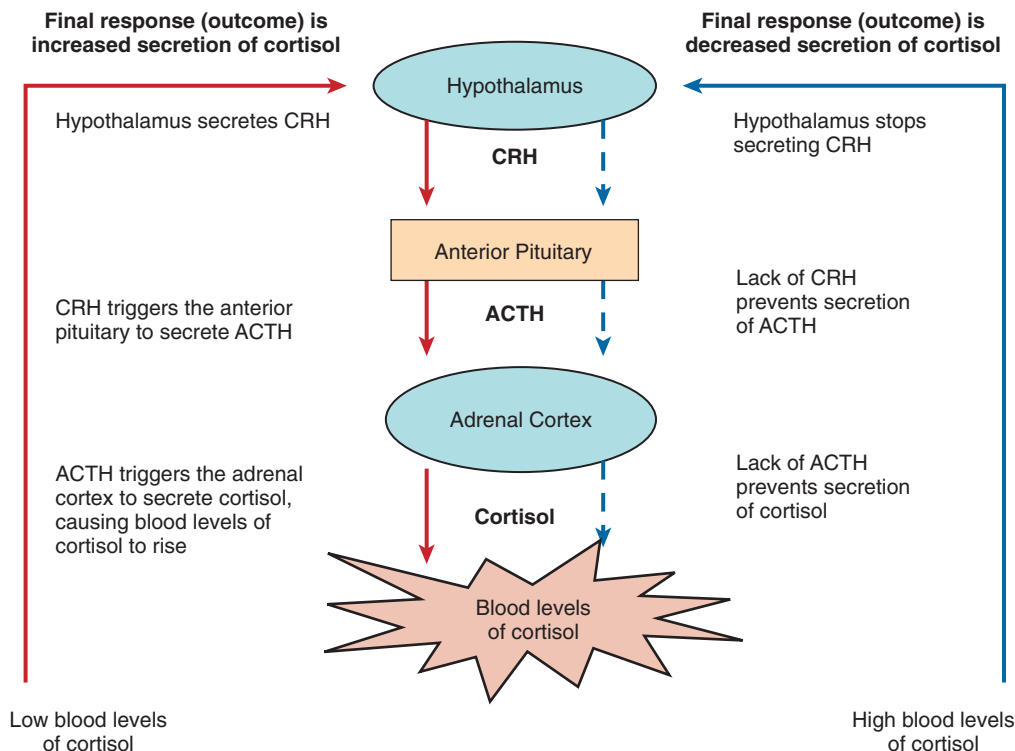


FIG. 64-3 Examples of positive and negative feedback control of hormone secretion. *ACTH*, Adrenocorticotrophic hormone; *CRH*, corticotrophic hormone.

inhibit CRH release from the hypothalamus. Without CRH, the anterior pituitary gland stops secretion of ACTH. In response, normal blood cortisol levels are maintained.

The normal blood level range of each hormone is well defined. Excesses or deficiencies of hormone secretion can lead to pathologic conditions.

Hypothalamus and Pituitary Glands

The hypothalamus is a small area of nerve and glandular tissue located beneath the thalamus in the brain. Nerve fibers connect the hypothalamus to the rest of the central nervous system. The hypothalamus shares a small, closed circulatory system with the anterior pituitary gland, known as the **hypothalamic-hypophyseal portal system**. This system allows hormones produced in the hypothalamus to travel directly to the anterior pituitary gland so that only very small amounts are wasted in systemic circulation.

The endocrine function of the hypothalamus is to produce regulatory hormones (see Table 64-1). Some of these hormones are released into the blood and travel to the anterior pituitary, where they either stimulate or inhibit the release of anterior pituitary hormones.

The pituitary gland is located at the base of the brain in a protective pocket of the sphenoid bone (see Fig. 64-1). The pituitary gland is about 1 cm in diameter and is divided into the anterior lobe (**adenohypophysis**) and the posterior lobe (**neurohypophysis**). Nerve fibers in the hypophyseal stalk connect the hypothalamus to the posterior pituitary (Fig. 64-4).

In response to the releasing hormones of the hypothalamus, the anterior pituitary secretes **tropic hormones**, which are hormones that stimulate other endocrine glands. Other pituitary hormones, such as prolactin, produce their effect directly on final target tissues (Table 64-2).

The hormones of the posterior pituitary, vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone [ADH]) and oxytocin, are produced in the hypothalamus and sent through the nerve tracts that connect the hypothalamus with the posterior pituitary. These

hormones are stored in the nerve endings of the posterior pituitary and are released into the blood when needed.

Other factors can affect the release of hormones from the pituitary gland. Drugs, diet, lifestyle, and pathologic conditions can increase or decrease pituitary hormone secretion.

Gonads

The **gonads** are the male and female reproductive endocrine glands. Male gonads are the *testes*, and female gonads are the *ovaries*. Function of these glands begins at puberty.

During puberty in the male, the increased secretion of gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone [LH] and follicle-stimulating hormone [FSH]) from the anterior pituitary gland stimulates maturation of the testes, production of testosterone, and maturation of the external genitalia. During puberty in the female, increased secretion of the same gonadotropins stimulates ovarian maturation, estrogen production, ovulation, and maturation of the external genitalia.

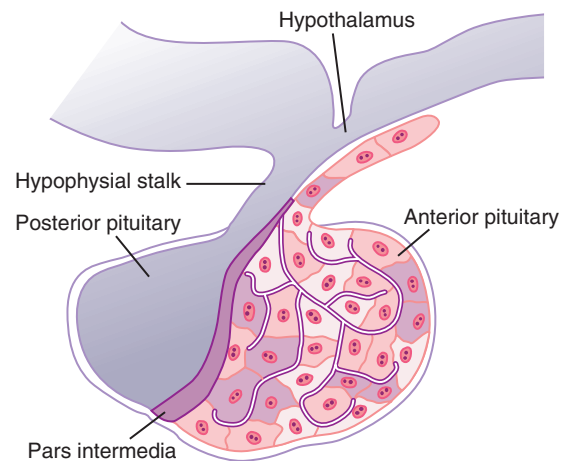


FIG. 64-4 The hypothalamus, hypophyseal stalk, anterior pituitary gland, and posterior pituitary gland.

TABLE 64-2 PITUITARY HORMONES: TARGET TISSUES AND SUBSEQUENT ACTIONS

HORMONE	TARGET TISSUE	ACTIONS
Anterior Pituitary		
TSH (thyroid-stimulating hormone or thyrotropin)	Thyroid	Stimulates synthesis and release of thyroid hormone
ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone, corticotropin)	Adrenal cortex	Stimulates synthesis and release of corticosteroids and adrenocortical growth
LH (luteinizing hormone [known as <i>Leydig cell-stimulating hormone</i> in males])	Ovary Testis	Stimulates ovulation and progesterone secretion Stimulates testosterone secretion
FSH (follicle-stimulating hormone [known as <i>interstitial cell- or Sertoli cell-stimulating hormone</i> in males])	Ovary Testis	Stimulates estrogen secretion and follicle maturation Stimulates spermatogenesis
PRL (prolactin)	Mammary glands	Stimulates breast milk production
GH (growth hormone)	Bone and soft tissue	Promotes growth through lipolysis, protein anabolism, and insulin antagonism
MSH (melanocyte-stimulating hormone)	Melanocytes	Promotes pigmentation
Posterior Pituitary*		
Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone [ADH])	Kidney	Promotes water reabsorption
Oxytocin	Uterus and mammary glands	Stimulates uterine contractions and ejection of breast milk

*These hormones are synthesized in the hypothalamus and are stored in the posterior pituitary gland. They are transported from the hypothalamus down the hypothalamic stalk to the posterior pituitary while bound to proteins known as *neurophysins*.

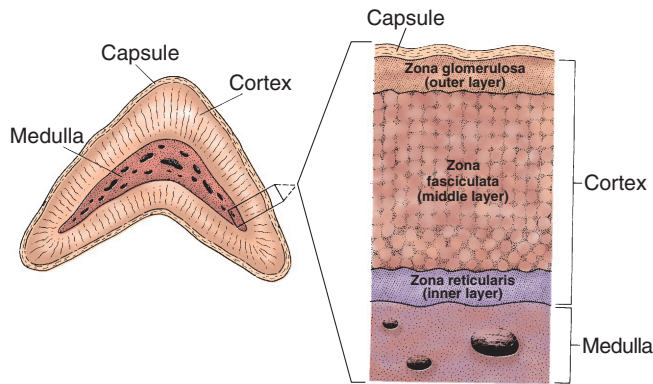


FIG. 64-5 The structural detail of the adrenal gland.

The function of the testes and ovaries is detailed in Chapter 72.

Adrenal Glands

The adrenal glands are vascular, tent-shaped organs on the top of each kidney that have an outer cortex and an inner medulla (see Fig. 64-1). The adrenal hormones have effects throughout the body.

Adrenal Cortex

The adrenal cortex makes up about 90% of the adrenal gland and has cells divided into three layers (Fig. 64-5). **Mineralocorticoids** are the hormones produced in the zona glomerulosa and help control the body's sodium and potassium content. Glucocorticoids, androgens, and estrogens are produced in the zona fasciculata and zona reticularis. The hormones secreted by the cortex are often called **adrenal steroids** or **corticosteroids**.

Mineralocorticoids are produced and secreted by the adrenal cortex to help control body fluids and electrolytes. **Aldosterone** is the major mineralocorticoid and maintains extracellular fluid volume. It promotes sodium and water reabsorption and potassium excretion in the kidney tubules. Aldosterone secretion is regulated by the renin-angiotensin system, serum potassium ion concentration, and adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH).

Renin is produced by specialized cells of the renal afferent arterioles. Its release is triggered by a decrease in extracellular fluid volume from blood loss, sodium loss, or posture changes. Renin converts renin substrate (formerly called *angiotensinogen*), a plasma protein, to angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted by a converting enzyme to form angiotensin II, the active form of angiotensin. In turn, angiotensin II stimulates the secretion of aldosterone. Chapter 13 (see Fig. 13-6) further explains the renin-angiotensin system. Aldosterone causes the kidney to reabsorb sodium and water to bring the plasma volume and osmolarity back to normal.

Serum potassium level also controls aldosterone secretion. The adrenal cortex secretes aldosterone when the serum potassium level increases above normal by as little as 0.1 mEq/L. Aldosterone then enhances kidney excretion of potassium to reduce the blood level back to normal.

Glucocorticoids are produced by the adrenal cortex and are essential for life. The main glucocorticoid produced by the adrenal cortex is **cortisol**. Cortisol affects:

TABLE 64-3 FUNCTIONS OF GLUCOCORTICOID HORMONES

- Prevent hypoglycemia by increasing liver gluconeogenesis and inhibiting peripheral glucose use
- Maintain excitability and responsiveness of cardiac muscle
- Increase lipolysis, releasing glycerol and free fatty acids
- Increase protein catabolism
- Degrade collagen and connective tissue
- Increase the number of mature neutrophils released from bone marrow
- Exert anti-inflammatory effects that decrease the migration of inflammatory cells to sites of injury
- Maintain behavior and cognitive functions

- Carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism
- The body's response to stress
- Emotional stability
- Immune function

Cortisol also influences other important body processes. For example, it must be present for catecholamine action and maintaining the normal excitability of the heart muscle cells. Glucocorticoid functions are listed in Table 64-3.

Glucocorticoid release is regulated directly by the anterior pituitary hormone *ACTH* and indirectly by the hypothalamic corticotropin-releasing hormone (*CRH*). The release of *CRH* and *ACTH* is affected by the serum level of free cortisol, the normal sleep-wake cycle, and stress.

As described earlier and shown in Fig. 64-3, when blood cortisol levels are low, the hypothalamus secretes *CRH*, which triggers the pituitary to release *ACTH*. Then *ACTH* triggers the adrenal cortex to secrete cortisol. Adequate or elevated blood levels of cortisol *inhibit* the release of *CRH* and *ACTH*. This inhibitory effect is an example of a negative feedback system.

Glucocorticoid release peaks in the morning and reaches its lowest level 12 hours after each peak. Emotional, chemical, or physical stress increases the release of glucocorticoids.

Sex hormones (androgens and estrogens) are secreted in low levels by the adrenal cortex in both genders. Adrenal secretion of these hormones is usually not significant because the gonads (testes and ovaries) secrete much larger amounts of androgens and estrogens. In women, however, the adrenal gland is the major source of androgens. Women who have adrenal insufficiency or who have had surgical removal of the adrenals may need a small amount of testosterone replacement.

Adrenal Medulla

The adrenal medulla is a sympathetic nerve ganglion that has secretory cells. Stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system causes the release of adrenal medullary hormones, the **catecholamines** (which include epinephrine and norepinephrine). These hormones travel to all areas of the body through the blood and exert their effects on target cells. The adrenal medullary hormones are not essential for life because they also are secreted by other body tissues, but they do play a role in the physiologic stress response.

The adrenal medulla secretes about 15% norepinephrine (NE) and 85% epinephrine. Hormone effects vary with the specific receptor in the cell membranes of the target tissue.

TABLE 64-4 CATECHOLAMINE RECEPTORS AND EFFECTS OF ADRENAL MEDULLARY HORMONE STIMULATION ON SELECTED ORGANS AND TISSUES

ORGAN OR TISSUE	RECEPTORS	EFFECTS
Heart	Beta ₁	Increased heart rate Increased contractility
Blood vessels	Alpha Beta ₂	Vasoconstriction Vasodilation
Gastrointestinal tract	Alpha Beta	Increased sphincter tone Decreased motility
Kidneys	Beta ₂	Increased renin release
Bronchioles	Beta ₂	Relaxation; dilation
Bladder	Alpha Beta ₂	Sphincter contractions Relaxation of detrusor muscle
Skin	Alpha	Increased sweating
Fat cells	Beta	Increased lipolysis
Liver	Alpha	Increased gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis
Pancreas	Alpha Beta	Decreased glucagon and insulin release Increased glucagon and insulin release
Eyes	Alpha	Dilation of pupils

These receptors are of two types: alpha adrenergic and beta adrenergic. Both types of receptors are further classified as alpha₁ and alpha₂ receptors and beta₁, beta₂, and beta₃ receptors. NE acts mainly on alpha-adrenergic receptors, and epinephrine acts mainly on beta-adrenergic receptors.

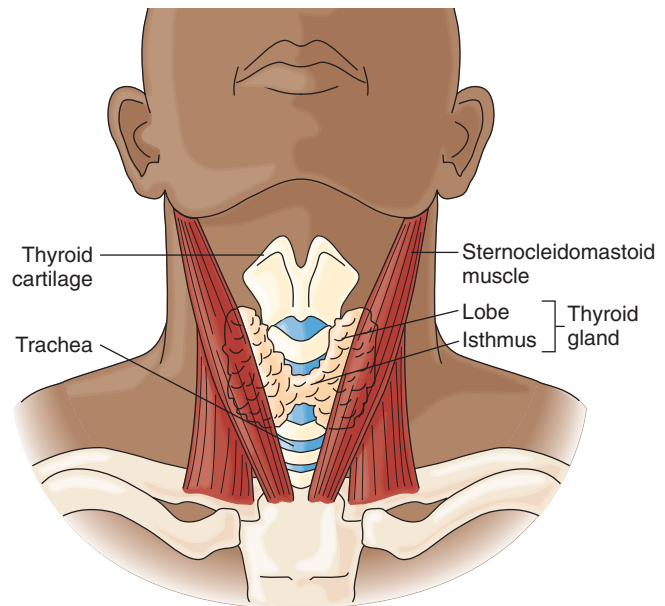
Catecholamines exert their actions on many target organs (Table 64-4). Activation of the sympathetic nervous system, which then releases adrenal medullary catecholamines, is an important part of the body's response to stress. Catecholamines are secreted in small amounts at all times to maintain homeostasis. Stress triggers increased secretion of these hormones. This sympathetic activation results in the "fight-or-flight" response, a state of heightened physical and emotional awareness.

Thyroid Gland

The thyroid gland is in the anterior neck, directly below the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 64-6). It has two lobes joined by a thin strip of tissue (*isthmus*) in front of the trachea.

The thyroid gland has a rich blood supply and is composed of follicular and parafollicular cells. Follicular cells produce the thyroid hormones **thyroxine (T₄)** and **triiodo-L-thyronine (T₃)**. Parafollicular cells produce **thyrocalcitonin (TCT, or calcitonin)**, which helps regulate serum calcium levels.

Control of metabolism occurs through T₃ and T₄. Both hormones increase metabolism, which causes an increase in oxygen use and heat production in all tissues. The two hormones differ in structure, but their functions are the same. Most circulating T₄ and T₃ are bound to plasma proteins. The free hormone moves into the cell, where it binds to its receptor in the cell nucleus. Once in the cell, T₄ is converted to T₃,

**FIG. 64-6** Anatomic location of the thyroid gland.**TABLE 64-5 FUNCTIONS OF THYROID HORMONES IN ADULTS**

- Control metabolic rate of all cells
- Promote sufficient pituitary secretion of growth hormone and gonadotropins
- Regulate protein, carbohydrate, and fat metabolism
- Exert effects on heart rate and contractility
- Increase red blood cell production
- Affect respiratory rate and drive
- Increase bone formation and decrease bone resorption of calcium
- Act as insulin antagonists

the most active thyroid hormone. The conversion of T₄ to T₃ is impaired by stress, starvation, dyes, beta blockers, amiodarone, corticosteroids, and propyl-thiouracil (PTU). Cold temperatures increase the conversion. Table 64-5 lists thyroid hormone functions.

Secretion of T₃ and T₄ is controlled by the hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid gland axis negative feedback mechanism. The hypothalamus secretes thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH). TRH triggers the anterior pituitary gland to secrete thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), which then stimulates the thyroid gland to make and release thyroid hormones. If thyroid hormone levels are high, TRH and TSH release is inhibited. If thyroid hormone levels are low, TRH and TSH release is increased. Cold and stress are two factors that cause the hypothalamus to secrete TRH, which then stimulates the anterior pituitary to secrete TSH.

Thyroid hormone production involves a series of steps. Dietary intake of protein and iodine is needed to produce thyroid hormones. Iodine is absorbed from the intestinal tract as iodide. The thyroid gland withdraws iodide from the blood and concentrates it. After iodide is in the thyroid, it combines with the amino acid *tyrosine* to form T₄ and T₃. These hormones bind to thyroglobulin and are stored in the follicular cells of the thyroid gland. With stimulation, T₄ and

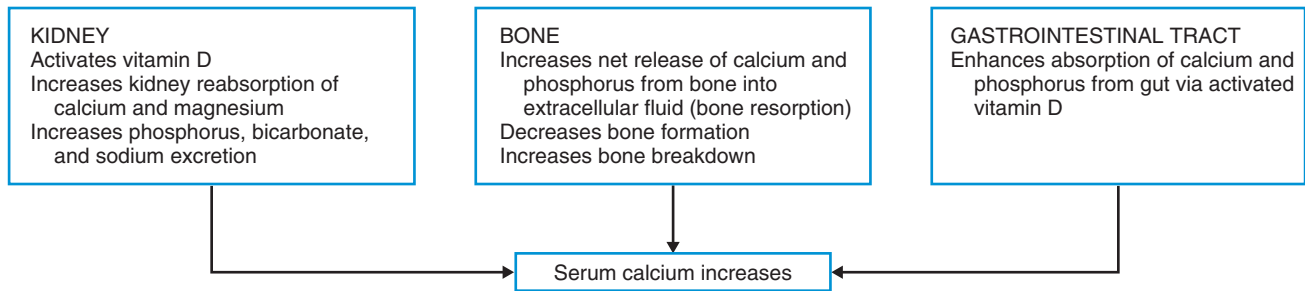


FIG. 64-7 Effects of parathyroid hormone on target tissues to maintain calcium balance.

T_3 break off from thyroglobulin and are released into the blood. They enter many cells, bind to the nucleus, and turn on genes important in metabolism. Thus the presence of T_4 and T_3 directly regulates basal metabolic rate (BMR).

Calcium and phosphorus balance occurs through the actions of calcitonin (also called *thyrocalcitonin*, or TCT). This hormone also is produced in the thyroid gland. Calcitonin lowers serum calcium and serum phosphorus levels by reducing bone resorption (breakdown). Its actions are opposite of parathyroid hormone.

The serum calcium level determines calcitonin secretion. Low serum calcium levels suppress the release of calcitonin. Elevated serum calcium levels increase its secretion.

Parathyroid Glands

The parathyroid glands consist of four small glands located close to or within the back surface of the thyroid gland (see Fig. 64-1). The chief cells of the parathyroid glands secrete parathyroid hormone (PTH).

Parathyroid hormone regulates calcium and phosphorus metabolism by acting on bones, the kidneys, and the GI tract (Fig. 64-7). Bone is the main storage site of calcium. PTH increases **bone resorption** (bone release of calcium into the blood from bone storage sites), thus increasing serum calcium. In the kidneys, PTH activates vitamin D, which then increases the absorption of calcium and phosphorus from the intestines. In the kidney tubules, PTH allows calcium to be reabsorbed and put back into the blood.

Serum calcium level determines PTH secretion. Secretion decreases when serum calcium levels are high, and it increases when serum calcium levels are low. Serum phosphorus levels also affect PTH secretion. PTH and calcitonin work together to maintain normal calcium levels in the blood and extracellular fluid.

Pancreas

The pancreas lies behind the stomach and has exocrine and endocrine functions. The exocrine function of the pancreas involves the secretion of digestive enzymes through ducts that empty into the duodenum. The cells in the islets of Langerhans perform the pancreatic endocrine functions (Fig. 64-8). About one million islet cells are found throughout the pancreas.

The islets have three distinct cell types: alpha cells, which secrete glucagon; beta cells, which secrete insulin; and delta cells, which secrete somatostatin. Glucagon and insulin affect carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism. Somatostatin, which is secreted not only in the pancreas but also in the intestinal tract and the brain, inhibits the release of glucagon

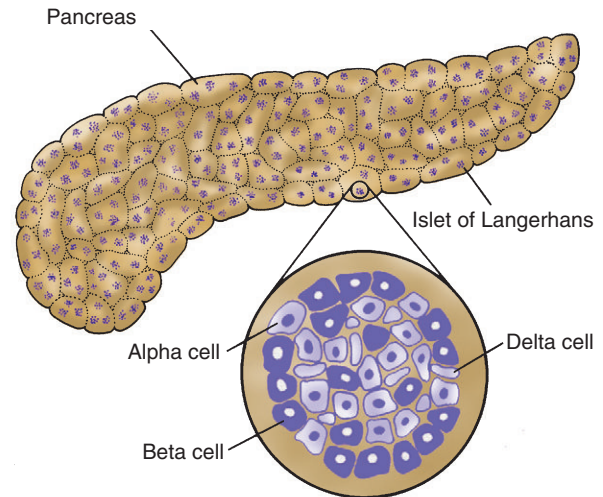


FIG. 64-8 The cells of the islets of Langerhans of the pancreas.

and insulin from the pancreas. It also inhibits the release of gastrin, secretin, and other GI peptides.

Glucagon is a hormone that increases blood glucose levels. It is triggered by decreased blood glucose levels and increased blood amino acid levels. Together with epinephrine, growth hormone (GH), and cortisol, glucagon prevents hypoglycemia. Chapter 67 discusses glucagon function in more detail.

Insulin promotes the movement and storage of carbohydrate (CHO), protein, and fat (Table 64-6). It lowers blood glucose levels by enhancing glucose movement across cell membranes and into the cells of many tissues. Basal levels of insulin are secreted continuously to control metabolism. Insulin secretion rises in response to an increase in blood



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which hormone levels should the nurse expect to change in response to a client receiving a continuous cortisol infusion over a 24-hour period when the endocrine negative feedback mechanism is functioning properly?

- Lower-than-normal serum cortisol levels; lower-than-normal serum ACTH levels
- Lower-than-normal serum cortisol levels; higher-than-normal serum ACTH levels
- Higher-than-normal serum cortisol levels; lower-than-normal serum ACTH levels
- Higher-than-normal serum cortisol levels; higher-than-normal serum ACTH levels

CHART 64-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Endocrine System Related to Aging

CHANGES	CLINICAL FINDINGS	NURSING ACTIONS/ADAPTATIONS
Decreased antidiuretic hormone (ADH) production	Urine is more dilute and may not concentrate when fluid intake is low.	The patient is at greater risk for dehydration as a result of urine loss. Assess the older patient more frequently for dehydration. If fluids are not restricted because of another health problem, teach unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) to offer fluids at least every 2 hours while awake.
Decreased ovarian production of estrogen	Bone density decreases. Skin is thinner, drier, and at greater risk for injury. Perineal and vaginal tissues become drier, and the risk for cystitis increases.	Teach the patient to engage in regular exercise and weight-bearing activity to maintain bone density. Handle the patient carefully to avoid injury from pathologic fractures. Avoid pulling or dragging the patient. Use minimal tape on the skin. Assist patients confined to bed or chairs to change positions at least every 2 hours. Teach patients to use moisturizers on the skin and to avoid agents that promote skin dryness. Perform or assist the patient to perform perineal care at least twice daily. Unless another health problem requires fluid restriction, encourage all women to drink at least 2 liters of fluids daily. Teach sexually active women to urinate immediately after sexual intercourse. Teach sexually active women that using vaginal lubricants with sexual activity can reduce discomfort and the risk for tissue damage.
Decreased glucose tolerance	Weight becomes greater than ideal along with: - Elevated fasting blood glucose level - Elevated random blood glucose level - Slow wound healing - Frequent yeast infections - Polydipsia - Polyuria	Obtain a family history of obesity and type 2 diabetes. Encourage the patient to engage in regular exercise and to keep body weight within 10 lbs of ideal. Teach patients the clinical manifestations of diabetes, and instruct them to report any of these manifestations to the health care provider. Suggest diabetes testing for any patient with: - Persistent vaginal candidiasis - Failure of a foot or leg skin wound to heal in 2 weeks or less - Increased hunger and thirst - Noticeable decrease in energy level
Decreased general metabolism	Less tolerant of cold. Decreased appetite. Decreased heart rate & blood pressure (BP).	Can be difficult to distinguish from hypothyroidism. Check for additional manifestations of: - Lethargy - Constipation (as a change from usual bowel habits) - Decreased cognition - Slowed speech - Body temperature consistently below 97° F (36° C) - Heart rate below 60 beats/min Teach patients to dress warmly in cool or cold weather.

TABLE 64-6 ANABOLIC EFFECTS OF INSULIN

Effects on Liver - Promotes glycogen synthesis and storage - Inhibits glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, and ketogenesis - Increases triglyceride synthesis	Effects on Muscle - Promotes protein synthesis - Increases amino acid transport - Promotes glycogenesis Effects on Fat - Increases fatty acid synthesis - Promotes triglyceride storage - Decreases lipolysis
--	--

glucose levels. More information on insulin is presented in Chapter 67.

Endocrine Changes Associated with Aging

The effects of aging on the endocrine system vary widely. The three endocrine tissues that usually have reduced function with aging are the gonads, the thyroid gland, and the endocrine pancreas (Lamberts, 2008; Touhy & Jett, 2010). It is difficult to distinguish normal from abnormal endocrine activity because of these other age-related variables:

- Acute and chronic illnesses
- Alterations in diet, activity, and lean body mass-to-fat ratio
- Disturbances in sleep patterns
- Decreased metabolic clearance rate of hormones
- Increased use of multiple drugs that may affect hormone function

It is important to consider these factors when assessing the older adult with endocrine dysfunction.

Encourage the older adult to participate in regular screening examinations, including fasting and random blood glucose checks, calcium level determinations, and thyroid function testing. Chart 64-1 lists the endocrine changes that occur in the older adult.

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Use a systems approach to obtain the history of patients with a possible endocrine problem. This approach can be difficult because of the variety and combination of clinical manifestations. Identify the patient's response to actual or perceived changes, and discuss the potential diagnostic and

CHART 64-2 ENDOCRINE ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns**Nutritional-Metabolic Pattern**

- What is your typical daily food intake? Describe a day's meals, snacks, and vitamins.
- How much salt do you typically add to your food? Do you use salt substitutes?
- How is your appetite?
- Do you have any difficulty chewing or swallowing?
- What is your typical daily fluid intake? What types of fluids (water, juices, soft drinks, coffee, tea)? How much?
- Have you had any recent change in your weight? Weight gain? Weight loss? How much?
- Have you noticed a change in the tightness of your rings or shoes? Tighter? Looser?
- Have you noticed any change in thirst?

Elimination Pattern

- What is your usual bowel elimination pattern? Frequency? Character? Discomfort? Laxative use?
- What is your usual urinary elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Color? Odor? Control?
- Have you noticed a change in the amount of urine?
- Do you have any problem with excessive perspiration?
- Do you have any other type of drainage?

Sleep-Rest Pattern

- Do you have any difficulty falling asleep when you go to bed?
- Is there a change in the number of hours you sleep per night?
- Do you take any drugs to help you sleep?
- About how many times do you awaken during the night?
- Do you have any difficulty getting back to sleep?
- Are you bothered by nightmares or vivid dreams?
- Do you have difficulty awakening in the morning?
- Do you feel generally rested and ready for daily activities after sleep?
- Do you take scheduled naps or rest periods during the day?
- Do you find yourself falling asleep at work or at home while reading or watching television?
- Have you noticed any difficulty in your ability to concentrate?

Sexuality-Reproductive Pattern

- Are you sexually active?
- Are you satisfied with your level of sexual activity?

- Do you participate in sex as often as you would like?
- Do you participate in sex as often as your partner would like?
- Have you noticed a change in your interest in having sex over the past year?

Female:

- At what age did menstruation start?
- How regular are your periods?
- Do you have any pain, cramping, or clotting during your periods?
- Have you ever been pregnant? What was the outcome of the pregnancy(ies)?
- Do you use contraceptives? What type? Have you had any problems with your chosen method of contraception?
- Do you have any pain during intercourse?

Activity-Exercise Pattern

- Do you feel you have sufficient energy to perform tasks or routines that are required of you?
- Do you feel you have sufficient energy to do what you would like to do?
- Do you exercise? How often? For how long each time? What type(s) of exercise do you perform?
- What activities do you perform in your spare time?
- What is your ability to perform the following tasks?

Feeding _____	Grooming _____
Bathing _____	General Mobility _____
Toileting _____	Cooking _____
Bed Mobility _____	Home Maintenance _____
Dressing _____	Shopping _____

Functional Levels Code

Level 0: Full self-care

Level I: Requires use of equipment or device

Level II: Requires help from another person(s): assistance, supervision, teaching

Level III: Requires help from another person(s) and equipment or device

Level IV: Dependent; does not participate in self-care

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

management plan. Chart 64-2 lists assessment questions based on Gordon's Functional Health Patterns (Gordon, 2011). Although endocrine problems can disturb any health pattern, the patterns most commonly affected are nutritional-metabolic, activity-exercise, elimination, sleep-rest, and sexuality-reproductive. These data are combined with physical, psychosocial, and laboratory findings for a complete assessment of endocrine function.

The age and gender of the patient provide baseline assessment data. Certain disorders are more common in older than in younger patients, such as diabetes mellitus, loss of ovarian function, and decreased thyroid function.

Manifestations of endocrine disorders can be gender related, such as the sexual effects of hyperpituitarism and hypopituitarism (see Chapter 65). Thyroid problems are more common in women (McCance et al., 2010). Assess for a history of endocrine dysfunction, manifestations that could indicate an endocrine disorder, and hospitalizations. Ask about past and current drugs, such as hydrocortisone, levothyroxine, oral contraceptives, and antihypertensive agents.

The use of exogenous hormone drugs, when not needed for hormone replacement, can cause serious dysfunction in many endocrine glands. Use the opportunity to warn patients about the dangers of misusing or abusing hormone-based drugs such as androgens and thyroid hormones.

Because the patient's socioeconomic status is a sensitive issue, explore whether his or her resources are adequate for a healthy diet, needed drugs, and consistent health care follow-up. It may be appropriate to involve social service and home care agencies at an early stage.

Nutrition History

Nutritional changes or GI tract disturbances may reflect many different endocrine problems. Ask about a history of nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain. An increase or decrease in food or fluid intake may also indicate specific disorders. For example, diabetes insipidus triggers excessive thirst, and adrenal hypofunction triggers salt craving. Hunger and thirst also are associated with diabetes mellitus. Rapid changes in weight without diet changes are often associated

with several endocrine disorders, including diabetes mellitus and thyroid problems.

Dietary deficiencies, especially of protein and iodide-containing foods (saltwater fish and seafood, iodized table salt), may be a cause of an endocrine disorder. Teach the patient about a well-balanced diet that includes at least 60 g of protein daily, less animal fat, and fewer concentrated simple sugars. Teach patients who do not eat saltwater fish on a regular basis to use iodized salt in food preparation.

Family History and Genetic Risk

Ask the patient about any family history of obesity, growth or development difficulties, diabetes mellitus, infertility, or thyroid disorders. These problems may have an autosomal dominant, recessive, or cluster pattern of inheritance.

Current Health Problems

Focus on the patient's reason for seeking health care, asking questions such as:

- Did the symptoms occur gradually, or was the onset sudden?
- Have you been treated for this problem in the past?
- How have the current problems affected your activities of daily living?

These questions can provide clues to specific endocrine disorders. Also explore changes in energy levels, elimination patterns, sexual and reproductive functions, and physical features.

Energy level changes occur with many endocrine problems, especially thyroid problems (see [Chapter 66](#)) and adrenal problems (see [Chapter 65](#)). Ask the patient about any change in ability to perform ADLs, and assess his or her current energy level. For instance, has he or she been sleeping longer, or are fatigue and generalized weakness present?

Elimination is also affected by the endocrine system. Identify the patient's past pattern of elimination to determine deviations from the normal routine. Ask about the amount and frequency of urination. Does he or she urinate frequently in large amounts? Does the patient wake during the night to urinate ([nocturia](#)), or is pain present with urination ([dysuria](#))? Information about the frequency of bowel movements and their consistency and color may provide clues to problems in fluid balance or metabolic rate (i.e., thyroid function).

Sexual and reproductive functions are greatly affected by endocrine disturbances. Ask women about any changes in the menstrual cycle, such as increased flow, duration, and frequency of menses; pain or excessive cramping; or a recent change in the regularity of menses. Ask men whether they have experienced impotence. Question both men and women about a change in libido (sexual desire) or any fertility problems.

Physical appearance changes can reflect an endocrine problem. Discuss any changes that the patient perceives in physical features. Obvious changes are identified during the physical assessment, but patients may be able to describe some of the more subtle changes. Ask about changes in:

- Hair texture and distribution
- Facial contours and eye protrusion
- Voice quality
- Body proportions
- Secondary sexual characteristics

For example, you might ask a man whether he is shaving less often or a woman if she has noticed an increase in facial hair. These changes may be associated with pituitary, thyroid, parathyroid, or adrenal dysfunction.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which client assessment finding indicates to the nurse the need to assess further for a possible endocrine problem?

- A. A history of taking oral contraceptives for more than 2 years
- B. A weight loss of 15 lbs in the past 6 weeks without dieting
- C. The client's father's diagnosis of prostate cancer
- D. A recent need for corrective lenses

Physical Assessment

Inspection

An endocrine problem can change physical features because of its effect on growth and development, regulation of sex hormone levels, fluid and electrolyte balance, and the body's use of nutrients. Different clinical findings can occur with many endocrine disorders or with nonendocrine problems.

Use a head-to-toe approach to inspect the patient. Observe the patient's general appearance, and assess height, weight, fat distribution, and muscle mass in relation to age. It is important to remember that heredity and age rather than a health problem may be responsible for some physical features (e.g., short stature).

When examining the head, focus on abnormalities of facial structure, features, and expression, such as:

- Prominent forehead or jaw
- Round or puffy face
- Dull or flat expression
- Exophthalmos (protruding eyeballs and retracted upper lids)

Check the lower half of the neck for a visible enlargement of the thyroid gland. Normally the thyroid tissue cannot be observed. The isthmus may be noticeable when the patient swallows. Jugular vein distention may be seen on inspection of the neck and can indicate fluid overload.

Skin changes may reflect a specific endocrine dysfunction. Observe skin color, and look for areas of pigment loss (hypopigmentation) or hyperpigmentation. Fungal skin infections, slow wound healing, bruising, and petechiae are often seen in patients with adrenal hyperfunction. Skin infections, foot ulcers, and slow wound healing are common among patients with diabetes mellitus. In secondary hypofunction of the adrenal glands, the skin over the finger joints, elbows, and knees, as well as any scar tissue, may show increased pigmentation due to increased levels of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and melanocyte-stimulating hormone.

Vitiligo (patchy areas of pigment loss with increased pigmentation at the edges) is seen with primary hypofunction of the adrenal glands and is caused by autoimmune destruction of melanocytes in the skin. Areas of pigment loss most often occur on the face, neck, and extremities. Mucous membranes may have large areas of uneven pigmentation. Document the location, color, distribution, and size of skin color changes and lesions.

Inspect the patient's fingernails for malformation, thickness, or brittleness, all of which may suggest thyroid gland problems. Examine the extremities and the base of the spine for edema, which suggests a fluid and electrolyte imbalance.

Inspection of the trunk can show signs of specific endocrine dysfunction. Check for any abnormalities in chest size and symmetry. Truncal obesity and the presence of a "buffalo hump" between the shoulders on the back may indicate adrenocortical excess. Hormonal imbalance may also change secondary sexual characteristics. Inspect the breasts of both men and women for size, symmetry, pigmentation, and discharge. **Striae** (reddish purple "stretch marks") on the breasts or abdomen are often seen with adrenocortical excess.

Assess the patient's hair distribution for indications of endocrine gland dysfunction. Changes can include **hirsutism** (excessive growth of body hair, especially on the face, chest, and the linea alba of the abdomen of women), excessive hair loss, or changes in hair texture.

Examination of the genitalia may reveal a dysfunction in hormone secretion. Observe the size of the scrotum and penis or of the labia and clitoris in relation to standards for the patient's age. The distribution and quantity of pubic hair are often affected in hypogonadism.

Palpation

The thyroid gland and the testes can be examined by palpation. Chapters 72 and 75 discuss examination of the testes. The thyroid gland is palpated for size, symmetry, general shape, and the presence of nodules or other irregularities.

Palpate the thyroid gland by standing either behind or in front of the patient (Fig. 64-9). The posterior approach may be easier (Jarvis, 2012). Having the patient swallow sips of water during the examination helps the clinician palpate the thyroid gland.

Ask the patient to sit and to lower the chin. Using the posterior approach, place the thumbs of both your hands on the back of the patient's neck, with the fingers curved around to the front of the neck on either side of the trachea. Ask the patient to swallow, and then locate the isthmus of the thyroid as you feel it rising. Identify the anterior surface of the thyroid lobe. To examine the thyroid, proceed in this way:

- Turn the patient's head to the right.
- Displace the thyroid cartilage to the right with the fingers of your left hand.
- Palpate the right lobe with your right hand.
- Reverse this procedure to examine the left lobe.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Always palpate the thyroid gently because vigorous palpation can stimulate a thyroid storm in a person who has or is suspected to have hyperthyroidism.

Auscultation

Auscultate the chest to assess cardiac rate and rhythm. Document this information to use later as a means of assessing treatment effectiveness. Some endocrine problems induce dysrhythmias. Many endocrine disturbances can cause dehydration and volume depletion. Therefore document any

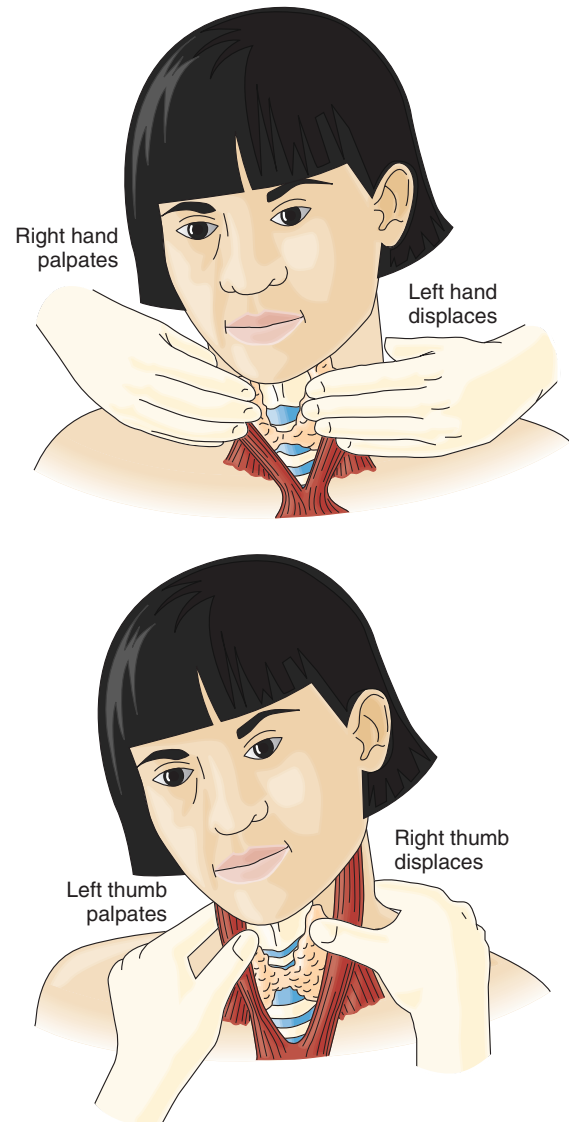


FIG. 64-9 Techniques for palpation of the thyroid gland.

difference in the patient's blood pressure and pulse in the lying, standing, or sitting positions (orthostatic vital signs).

If an enlarged thyroid gland is palpated, auscultate the area of enlargement for bruits. Hypertrophy of the thyroid gland causes an increase in vascular flow, which may result in bruits.

Psychosocial Assessment

Information obtained from the history and physical examination may help identify psychosocial problems. Assess the patient's coping skills, support systems, and health-related beliefs. Many endocrine problems can change a patient's behaviors, personality, and psychological responses. Ask the patient whether he or she has noticed a change in how stress is handled, frequency of crying, or degree of patience and anger expression. The patient may not recognize these changes in himself or herself. When possible, ask the family about changes in the patient's behaviors or personality.

A number of endocrine disorders affect the patient's perception of self. For example, body features can change significantly in disorders of the pituitary, adrenal, and thyroid

CHART 64-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Endocrine Testing

For blood tests:

- Check your laboratory's method of handling hormone test samples for tube type, timing, drugs to be administered as part of the test, etc. For example, blood samples drawn for catecholamines must be placed on ice and taken to the laboratory immediately.
- Explain the procedure and any restrictions to the patient.
- If you are drawing blood samples from a line, clear the IV line thoroughly. Do not use a double- or triple-lumen line to obtain samples; contamination or dilution from another port is possible.
- Emphasize the importance of taking a drug prescribed for the test on *time*. Tell the patient to set an alarm if the drug is to be taken during the night.

For urine tests:

- Instruct the patient to begin the urine collection (whether for 2, 4, 8, 12, or 24 hours) by first emptying his or her bladder.
- Remind the patient to *not* save the urine specimen that begins the collection. The timing for the urine collection begins *after* this specimen.
- Tell the patient to note the time of the discarded specimen and to plan to collect all urine from this time until the end of the urine collection period.
- To end the collection, instruct the patient to empty his or her bladder at the end of the timed period and *add* that urine to the collection.
- Check with the laboratory to determine any special handling of the urine specimen (e.g., Is a preservative needed? Does the container need to be kept cold?).
- If needed, make sure that the preservative has been added to the collection container at the *beginning* of the collection.
- Tell the patient about any preservative and the need to avoid splashing urine from the container, because some preservatives make the urine caustic.
- If the specimen must be kept cool or cold, instruct the patient to place the container in an inexpensive cooler with ice. The specimen container should not be kept with food or drinks.

glands. Infertility, impotence, and other changes in sexual function may result from endocrine dysfunction. Encourage the patient to express his or her feelings and concerns about a change in appearance or in sexual function. Ask about any difficulty in coping with such changes.

Patients with endocrine problems may require lifelong drugs and follow-up care. Assess their readiness to learn and ability to carry out specific self-management skills. Patients may also face financial difficulties resulting from a prolonged medical regimen or loss of employment. A referral to social service agencies may be needed.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

For the patient with possible endocrine dysfunction, laboratory tests are an essential part of the diagnostic process. Body fluids commonly used for these tests include blood, urine, and saliva (Klee, 2008). Regardless of the test requested, check with the agency's laboratory to ensure proper collection and handling of the specimen for accurate results. The specialized testing for specific disorders is described in [Chapters 65 to 67](#). Best practices for the collection of specimens for general endocrine testing are listed in [Chart 64-3](#).

Stimulation/Suppression Tests. Measurement of specific hormone blood levels does not always distinguish between the normal and the abnormal. The wide normal range for some hormones makes it necessary to trigger responses by stimulation or suppression tests.

For the patient who might have an underactive endocrine gland, a stimulus may be provided to determine whether the gland is capable of normal hormone production. This method is called *stimulation testing*. Measured amounts of selected hormones are given to stimulate the target gland to maximum production. Hormone levels are then measured and compared with expected normal values. Failure of the hormone level to rise with stimulation indicates hypofunction. For example, insulin injection should stimulate increased release of growth hormone (GH) and adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) from a normal anterior pituitary gland. When insulin injection does not result in increased release of these hormones, a problem with the anterior pituitary gland is likely, especially hypofunction.

Suppression tests are used when hormone levels are high or in the upper range of normal. Failure of suppression of hormone production during testing indicates hyperfunction. For example, when a bolus of glucose is given orally or intravenously, the normal anterior pituitary responds by suppressing the release of GH. A hyperfunctioning anterior pituitary gland fails to suppress GH release when blood glucose levels are elevated rapidly.

Assays. An assay measures the level of a specific hormone in blood or other body fluid. Some assays are indirect, such as the radioimmunoassay. Other hormone assay methods include immunometric assays, chromatographic assays, and mass spectrometry. An immunometric assay uses a large antibody with a component that “captures” the hormone and a second component that creates a signal when the antibody binds to the hormone (antigen). Chromatographic assays separate molecules in the serum by size, light absorption, and other properties. Each hormone has very specific properties that allow it to separate from other blood substances and form a unique bandwidth. Mass spectrometry methods also allow individual hormones to separate from other serum molecules based on the amount (mass) and charge of individual components. On a graph, these separate hormones each shows as a unique “spike” pattern. Many different hormone concentrations can be analyzed at the same time by this method.

Venous Sampling. In addition to general blood levels of hormones, another endocrine assessment test is venous sampling of blood from specific endocrine glands. Blood samples are taken directly from veins that drain a specific endocrine gland and hormone levels are measured. This test is used when a biopsy fails to identify a suspected mass. Unexpected blood hormone levels may indicate the location of a mass, a dysfunctional gland, or a dysfunctional part of a gland.

Urine Tests. Hormone levels and their metabolites in the urine are often measured to determine endocrine function. Because many of the endocrine hormones are secreted in a pulsatile fashion, measurement of a specific hormone in a 24-hour urine collection, rather than as a single blood or urine sample, better reflects the overall function of certain glands, such as the adrenal gland. Teach the patient how to collect a 24-hour urine sample (see also [Chart 64-3](#)).

Certain hormones require additives in the container at the beginning of the collection. Instruct the patient not to discard

the preservative from the container and to use caution when handling it because some solutions are caustic. Remind him or her that this collection is timed for *exactly* 24 hours. Instruct the patient to avoid taking any unnecessary drugs during endocrine testing because some drugs can interfere with the laboratory assays.

Tests for Glucose. Tests for functions of the islet cells of the pancreas are indirect. They measure the *result* of pancreatic islet cell function. Blood glucose values and the oral glucose tolerance test help diagnose diabetes mellitus. The glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) value reveals the *average* blood glucose level over a period of 2 to 3 months. (See Chapter 67 for a full discussion of diabetes mellitus.)

Imaging Assessment

Anterior, posterior, and lateral skull x-rays may be used to view the sella turcica. Erosion of the sella turcica indicates invasion of the wall from an abnormal growth.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) with contrast is the most sensitive method of imaging the pituitary gland, although computed tomography (CT) scans can also be used to evaluate it. The thyroid, parathyroid glands, ovaries, and testes are evaluated by ultrasound. In addition, CT

scans are used to evaluate the adrenal glands, ovaries, and pancreas.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Needle biopsy is a relatively safe and quick outpatient procedure used to indicate the composition of thyroid nodules. It is used to determine whether surgical intervention is needed.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

The patient is a 50-year-old man who is being seen because he has been leaking clear fluid from both breasts for several weeks. Among the tests that have been requested to check for a pituitary tumor is a suppression test with IV glucose. He is very nervous over the possibility of having what he calls a “brain tumor” and of receiving the glucose intravenously. He tells you he does not need this test because he does not have diabetes, but his older brother does have the disease.

1. Is the patient correct in thinking that a pituitary tumor is a brain tumor? Why or why not?
2. How is the glucose suppression test related to diabetes?
3. Can this test be avoided or changed to reduce his apprehension? If so, in what way?

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Follow the laboratory’s procedures for collecting and handling specimens for endocrine function studies.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach all patients that abusing or misusing hormones or steroids can have an adverse effect on endocrine function.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Encourage the patient to express concerns about a change in appearance, sexual function, or fertility as a result of a possible endocrine problem.

- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for endocrine tests.
- Ask family members about changes in the patient’s personality or behavior.

Physiological Integrity

- The onset of endocrine problems can be slow and insidious or abrupt and life threatening.
- Ask the patient about other family members with endocrine disorders, because some problems have a genetic component.
- Ask the patient what prescribed and over-the-counter drugs are taken on a regular basis, because some drugs can alter endocrine function.

Care of Patients with Pituitary and Adrenal Gland Problems

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Protect the patient with antidiuretic hormone (ADH) deficiency from dehydration.
2. Use appropriate interventions to prevent injury in the patient who has hypercortisolism.
3. Modify the environment to reduce stimulation for the patient with pheochromocytoma.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach patients how to avoid increasing intracranial pressure after pituitary surgery.
5. Identify the teaching priorities for the patient taking hormone replacement therapy for pituitary or adrenal hypofunction.
6. Teach patients how to monitor therapy effectiveness for diabetes insipidus or syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH).

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Be accepting of patient behavior.

8. Encourage the patient and family to express concerns about a change in endocrine health.
9. Explain all disease management–related procedures to the patient and family.

Physiological Integrity

10. Compare the common clinical manifestations associated with pituitary hypofunction and pituitary hyperfunction.
11. Coordinate nursing care for the patient immediately after a transsphenoidal hypophysectomy.
12. Interpret clinical changes and laboratory data to determine the effectiveness of therapy for diabetes insipidus and for SIADH.
13. Compare the clinical manifestations of hypercortisolism and adrenal insufficiency.
14. Prioritize nursing care for the patient with acute adrenal insufficiency.
15. Coordinate nursing care for the patient with Cushing's disease or syndrome.

Hormones secreted from the pituitary gland and adrenal glands influence the function of many tissues and organs. When any of these glands secrete too much or too little of one or more hormones, the effects are widespread and may induce psychological, as well as physical, changes. The anterior pituitary gland regulates growth, metabolism, pigmentation, and sexual development. The posterior pituitary gland secretes **vasopressin**, also known as *antidiuretic hormone* or *ADH*. Posterior pituitary problems result in fluid and

electrolyte imbalances. The adrenal gland produces and secretes hormones that influence homeostasis and are life sustaining. Nursing care for the patient with pituitary or adrenal gland disorders includes assessment, patient education, evaluation of patient response to therapy, and providing support.

A complete history and physical examination are performed to detect specific clinical findings. The patient also often undergoes many diagnostic tests and relies on the nurse

for specific instructions and explanations. Surgical intervention may be indicated. The patient often needs lifelong hormone replacement therapy, and physical and emotional support are critical.

DISORDERS OF THE ANTERIOR PITUITARY GLAND

The anterior pituitary gland (**adenohypophysis**) controls growth, metabolic activity, and sexual development through the actions of these hormones:

- Growth hormone (GH; somatotropin)
- Thyrotropin (thyroid-stimulating hormone [TSH])
- Corticotropin (adrenocorticotrophic hormone [ACTH])
- Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)
- Luteinizing hormone (LH)
- Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH)
- Prolactin (PRL)

Hormone disorders of the anterior pituitary gland can result from problems arising within the anterior pituitary gland itself (*primary pituitary dysfunction*) or from problems in the hypothalamus that change anterior pituitary function (*secondary pituitary dysfunction*). In either case, one or more hormones may be undersecreted (*pituitary hypofunction*) or oversecreted (*pituitary hyperfunction*).

HYPOPITUITARISM

Pathophysiology

A person with hypopituitarism has a deficiency of one or more anterior pituitary hormones, resulting in metabolic problems and sexual dysfunction. If only one hormone is affected, the condition is known as *selective hypopituitarism*. Decreased production of *all* of the anterior pituitary hormones is an extremely rare condition known as **panhypopituitarism**.

More commonly, there is a decrease in the secretion of one hormone and a lesser decrease in the secretion of other hormones. Deficiencies of *adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)* and *thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)* are the *most* life threatening because they cause a decrease in the secretion of vital hormones from the adrenal and thyroid glands. Adrenal gland hypofunction is discussed on pp. 1381-1384; hypothyroidism is discussed in **Chapter 66**.

Deficiency of the **gonadotropins** (luteinizing hormone [LH] and follicle-stimulating hormone [FSH])—hormones that stimulate the ovaries and testes to produce sex hormones) changes sexual function in both men and women. In men, gonadotropin deficiency results in testicular failure, with decreased testosterone production from the Leydig cells and decreased or absent sperm production. Decreased testosterone levels in men cause sterility. In women, gonadotropin deficiency results in ovarian failure, amenorrhea, and infertility.

Growth hormone (GH) deficiency changes tissue growth patterns indirectly. GH itself has little effect on tissues and cells; however, it stimulates the liver to produce somatomedins. These substances, especially somatomedin C, then enhance growth activities in cells and tissues. Somatomedin C is responsible for bone and cartilage growth and maintenance.

GH deficiency may be a result of decreased GH production, failure of the liver to produce somatomedins, or a failure of the cells or tissues to respond to the somatomedins. Deficiency in children leads to short stature and other manifestations of growth retardation. Deficiency in adults does not affect height but does increase the rate of bone destructive activity, leading to thinner, more fragile bones (**osteoporosis**) and an increased risk for fractures.

The cause of hypopituitarism varies. Benign or malignant pituitary tumors can compress and destroy pituitary tissue. Pituitary function can be impaired by severe malnutrition or rapid loss of body fat, such as in people with **anorexia nervosa** (a disorder in which people see themselves as overweight and eat so little that starvation results). Shock or severe hypotension reduces blood flow to the pituitary gland, leading to hypoxia and infarction. Other causes of hypopituitarism include head trauma, brain tumors or infection, radiation or surgery of the head and brain, and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) (**Melmed & Kleinberg, 2008**). *Idiopathic hypopituitarism* is an isolated hormone deficiency with an unknown cause.

Postpartum hemorrhage is the most common cause of pituitary infarction, which results in decreased hormone secretion. This clinical problem is known as *Sheehan's syndrome*. The pituitary gland normally enlarges during pregnancy, and when hypotension results from hemorrhage, ischemia and necrosis of the gland occur. Usually this condition develops immediately after delivery, although some cases have occurred several years later.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Changes in physical appearance and target organ function occur with deficiencies of specific pituitary hormones (**Chart 65-1**). Gonadotropin (LH and FSH) deficiency results in the loss of or change in secondary sex characteristics in men and women. While assessing the male patient, look for facial and body hair loss. Ask about episodes of impotence and decreased *libido* (sex drive). Women may report **amenorrhea** (absence of menstrual periods), **dyspareunia** (painful intercourse), infertility, and decreased libido. While examining the female patient, check for dry skin, breast atrophy, and a decreased amount or absence of axillary and pubic hair.

Neurologic manifestations of hypopituitarism as a result of tumor growth often first occur as changes in vision. Assess the patient's visual acuity, especially peripheral vision, for changes or loss. Temporal headaches are a common finding. Other manifestations may include **diplopia** (double vision) and ocular muscle paralysis, limiting eye movement.

Laboratory findings vary widely with hypopituitarism. Some pituitary hormone levels may be measured directly. Often, however, the *effects* of the hormones, rather than their actual levels, are assessed. Blood levels of triiodothyronine (T₃) and thyroxine (T₄) from the thyroid, as well as testosterone and estradiol from the gonads, are measured easily. If levels of one or all of these hormones are low or in the low-normal range, further evaluation is necessary. Levels of pituitary gonadotropins (LH and FSH) and TSH are sufficient if function of the target organ is apparent. Function of LH

CHART 65-1 KEY FEATURES

Pituitary Hypofunction**DEFICIENT HORMONE CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS****Anterior Pituitary Hormones**

Growth hormone (GH)	Decreased bone density Pathologic fractures Decreased muscle strength Increased serum cholesterol levels
Gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone [LH], follicle-stimulating hormone [FSH])	Women: • Amenorrhea • Anovulation • Low estrogen levels • Breast atrophy • Loss of bone density • Decreased axillary and pubic hair • Decreased libido Men: • Decreased facial hair • Decreased ejaculate volume • Reduced muscle mass • Loss of bone density • Decreased body hair • Decreased libido • Impotence
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (thyrotropin) (TSH)	Decreased thyroid hormone levels Weight gain Intolerance to cold Scalp alopecia Hirsutism Menstrual abnormalities Decreased libido Slowed cognition Lethargy
Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)	Decreased serum cortisol levels Pale, sallow complexion Malaise and lethargy Anorexia Postural hypotension Headache Hypoglycemia Hyponatremia Decreased axillary and pubic hair (women)

Posterior Pituitary Hormones

Vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone [ADH])	Diabetes insipidus: • Greatly increased urine output • Low urine specific gravity (<1.005) • Hypovolemia: • Hypotension • Dehydration • Increased plasma osmolarity • Increased thirst • Output does not decrease when fluid intake decreases
--	---

and FSH is assessed by observing for the presence of secondary sexual characteristics. Function of TSH is assessed by measuring circulating levels of thyroid hormones. ACTH levels may be normal or low, and prolactin (PRL) levels are low to high.

Stimulation testing can be useful to evaluate pituitary function. For example, insulin injection in people with normal pituitary function causes an increased release of GH

and ACTH. With decreased pituitary function, levels of either of these hormones remain unchanged.

Pituitary problems may cause changes in the sella turcica (the bony nest where the pituitary gland rests) that can be seen with skull x-rays. Changes may include enlargement, erosion, and calcifications as a result of pituitary tumors. Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can more distinctly define bone or soft-tissue lesions. An angiogram may be used to rule out the presence of an aneurysm or other vascular problems in the area before surgery.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of the adult with hypopituitarism focuses on replacement of deficient hormones. Older patients or those with a chronic disease often require a lower amount of hormone replacement. Men who have gonadotropin deficiency receive sex steroid replacement therapy with androgens (testosterone). The most effective route of androgen replacement is IM, although use of transdermal testosterone patches is increasing. Instruct the patient in self-administration. Therapy begins with high-dose testosterone and is continued until **virilization** (presence of male secondary sex characteristics) is achieved. Maximal effects of treatment include increases in penis size, libido, muscle mass, bone size, and bone strength. Chest, facial, pubic, and axillary hair growth also increases, and the voice deepens. Patients usually report improved self-esteem and body image after therapy is initiated. The dose may then be decreased, but therapy continues throughout life.

Androgen therapy is avoided in men with prostate cancer. Side effects of testosterone therapy include **gynecomastia** (male breast tissue development), acne, baldness, and prostate enlargement.

Achieving fertility in these patients is difficult and requires additional parenteral testosterone therapy and injections of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Teach the patient about the additional therapy, and provide emotional support because the outcome of fertility treatment is uncertain.

Women who have gonadotropin deficiency receive hormone replacement with a combination of estrogen and progesterone. The risk for hypertension or **thrombosis** (formation of blood clots in deep veins) is increased with estrogen therapy, especially among women who smoke. Emphasize measures to reduce risk and the need for regular health visits. For women who wish to become pregnant, clomiphene (Clomid) may be given to induce ovulation. Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and hCG are used to stimulate ovulation if therapy with clomiphene fails.

Adult patients with GH deficiency may be treated with injections of GH, although this treatment is rare.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Health Promotion and Maintenance**

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach the female client undergoing drug therapy with estrogen and progesterone for hypopituitarism?

- "Use a nonhormonal form of contraception to prevent an unplanned pregnancy."
- "Wear a hat with a brim and use sunscreen when outdoors."
- "Do not smoke or use nicotine in any form."
- "Avoid drinking alcoholic beverages."

HYPERPITUITARISM

Pathophysiology

Hyperpituitarism is hormone oversecretion that occurs with pituitary tumors or tissue hyperplasia (tissue overgrowth). Tumors occur most often in the anterior pituitary cells that produce growth hormone (GH), prolactin (PRL), and adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). Overproduction of PRL also may occur in response to tumors that overproduce GH and ACTH. Excess ACTH may occur with increased secretion of melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH).

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

An uncommon cause of hyperpituitarism is multiple endocrine neoplasia, type 1 (*MEN1*), in which there is inactivation of the suppressor gene *MEN1* (Melmed & Kleinberg, 2008). This problem has an autosomal dominant inheritance pattern and is usually expressed as a benign tumor that affects the pituitary, parathyroid glands, and pancreas. In pituitary function, *MEN1* leads to excessive production of growth hormone and acromegaly. Ask a patient suspected of having acromegaly whether either parent also has this problem or has had a tumor of the pancreas or parathyroid glands.

The most common cause of hyperpituitarism is a pituitary adenoma—a benign tumor of one or more tissues within the anterior pituitary. Adenomas are classified by size, invasiveness, and the hormone secreted. An invasive pituitary adenoma involves a portion or all of the sella turcica. When the sella turcica is not involved, the adenoma is “enclosed.”

As an adenoma gets larger and compresses brain tissue, neurologic symptoms, as well as endocrine symptoms, may occur. Such symptoms may include visual changes, headache, and increased intracranial pressure (ICP).

Prolactin (PRL)-secreting tumors are the most common type of pituitary adenoma. Excessive PRL inhibits the secretion of gonadotropins and sex hormones in men and women, resulting in *galactorrhea* (breast milk production), amenorrhea, and infertility.

Overproduction of GH in adults results in *acromegaly* (Fig. 65-1). The onset may be gradual with slow progression, and changes may remain unnoticed for years before diagnosis of the disorder. Early detection and treatment are essential to prevent irreversible changes in the soft tissues, such as those of the face, hands, feet, and skin. Other changes include increased skeletal thickness, hypertrophy of the skin, and enlargement of many organs, such as the liver and heart. Some changes may be reversible after treatment, but skeletal changes are permanent.

Bone thinning and bone cell overgrowth occur slowly. Degeneration of joint cartilage and hypertrophy of ligaments, vocal cords, and eustachian tubes are common. Nerve entrapment occurs because of tissue overgrowth and myelin loss in peripheral nerves. Because GH blocks the action of insulin, **hyperglycemia** (elevated blood glucose levels) is also common.

Excess ACTH overstimulates the adrenal cortex. The result is excessive production of glucocorticoids, mineralocorticoids, and androgens, which leads to the development of Cushing's disease (see Hypercortisolism [Cushing's Disease], pp. 1384-1390).

Usually, hyperpituitarism is caused by hormone-secreting benign tumors (*adenomas*) arising from one pituitary cell

type. It can also be caused by hypothalamic problems that lead to excessive production of releasing hormones, which then overstimulate the normal pituitary gland.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The manifestations of hyperpituitarism vary, depending on which hormone is produced in excess. Obtain data about the patient's age, gender, and family history. Ask about any change in hat, glove, ring, or shoe size. Fatigue and lethargy are common. The patient with high GH levels may have backache and **arthralgias** (joint pain) from bone changes. Ask specifically about headaches and changes in vision.

The patient with hypersecretion of PRL often reports difficulties in sexual functioning. Ask women about menstrual changes (e.g., amenorrhea, irregular menses, and difficulty in becoming pregnant) and about decreased libido or *dyspareunia* (painful intercourse). Men may report decreased libido and impotence.

Changes in appearance and target organ function occur with excesses of specific anterior pituitary hormones (Chart 65-2). Initial manifestations of GH excess are increases in lip and nose sizes, a prominent brow ridge, and increases in head, hand, and foot sizes. The patient with hyperpituitarism often seeks health care because of dramatic changes in appearance. Assess the impact of these changes on self-image and personal relationships.

In hyperpituitarism, usually only one hormone is produced in excess because the cell types within the pituitary gland are so individually organized. The most common hormones produced in excess are PRL, ACTH, and GH. Tumors producing TSH, luteinizing hormone (LH), or follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) are rare, and elevations of these hormones warrant evaluation. Elevations of LH and FSH are normal in the postmenopausal woman.

Imaging assessment for hyperpituitarism is the same as for hypopituitarism. Skull x-rays are used to identify abnormalities of the sella turcica. CT scans and MRI can define soft-tissue lesions, and angiography can rule out an aneurysm or vascular malformations.

Suppression testing can help diagnose hyperpituitarism and determine whether the normal negative feedback control mechanisms for hormonal regulation are intact. For example, high blood glucose levels suppress the release of GH. In a suppression test, 100 g of oral glucose or 0.5 g/kg of body weight is given IV. GH levels are measured serially for up to 120 minutes. GH levels that do not fall below 5 ng/mL indicate a positive (abnormal) result.

INTERVENTIONS

The expected outcomes of management for the patient who has hyperpituitarism are to return hormone levels to normal or near normal, reduce or eliminate headache and visual disturbances, prevent complications, and reverse as many of the body changes as possible.

Nonsurgical Management

Encourage the patient to express concerns about his or her altered physical appearance. Help him or her identify personal strengths and positive characteristics, reinforcing each



FIG. 65-1 The progression of acromegaly.

patient's uniqueness and importance. Galactorrhea, gynecomastia, and reduced sexual functioning can disturb self-image and personal identity. Reassure the patient that treatment may reverse some of these problems. Encourage the patient to discuss his or her feelings.

Drug therapy may be used alone or in combination with surgery and/or radiation. The most common drugs used are dopamine agonists, including bromocriptine mesylate (Parlodel), cabergoline (Dostinex), and pergolide (Permax) (Melmed & Kleinberg, 2008). These drugs stimulate dopamine receptors in the brain and inhibit the release of GH and PRL. In most cases, small tumors decrease until the pituitary gland is of normal size. Large pituitary tumors usually decrease to some extent. In patients with acromegaly, bromocriptine reduces GH levels and decreases tumor size,

especially when GH levels remain high after surgery or before the full effect of radiation therapy has occurred.

Side effects of bromocriptine include **orthostatic** (postural) hypotension, gastric irritation, nausea, headaches, abdominal cramps, and constipation. Give bromocriptine with a meal or a snack to reduce some of these side effects. Treatment starts with a low dose and is gradually increased until the desired level (usually 7.5 mg/day) is reached. *If pregnancy occurs, the drug is stopped immediately.*

Other agents used for acromegaly are the somatostatin analogs, especially octreotide (Sandostatin), and a growth hormone receptor blocker, pegvisomant (Somavert). Octreotide inhibits GH release through negative feedback. Pegvisomant blocks growth hormone (GH) receptor activity and production of insulin-like growth factor (IGF). Although

CHART 65-2 KEY FEATURES

Anterior Pituitary Hyperfunction**Prolactin (PRL)**

- Hypogonadism (loss of secondary sexual characteristics)
- Decreased gonadotropin levels
- Galactorrhea
- Increased body fat
- Increased serum prolactin levels

**Growth Hormone (GH)
Acromegaly**

- Folding of the scalp skin
- Thickened lips
- Coarse facial features
- Increasing head size
- Protrusion of the lower jaw
- Deepening of the voice
- Tufting of the fingertips
- Enlarged hands and feet
- Joint enlargement and pain
- Kyphosis and backache
- Barrel-shaped chest
- Excessive sweating
- Hyperglycemia
- Airway narrowing, sleep apnea
- Enlarged heart, lungs, and liver

Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone (ACTH)**Cushing's Disease (Pituitary)**

- Elevated plasma cortisol levels
- Weight gain
- Truncal obesity
- "Moon face"
- Extremity muscle wasting
- Loss of bone density
- Hypertension
- Hyperglycemia
- Purple striae
- Acne
- Thin, easily damaged skin
- Hyperpigmentation

Thyrotropin (Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone [TSH])

- Elevated plasma TSH levels
- Elevated plasma thyroid hormone levels
- Weight loss
- Tachycardia and dysrhythmias
- Heat intolerance
- Increased GI motility
- Fine tremors

Gonadotropins (Luteinizing Hormone [LH], Follicle-Stimulating Hormone [FSH])**Men:**

- Elevated LH and FSH levels
- Hypogonadism or hypergonadism

Women:

- Normal LH and FSH levels
- (The most common clinical manifestations in men and women are related to the physical presence of a tumor rather than to excessive hormone secretion.)

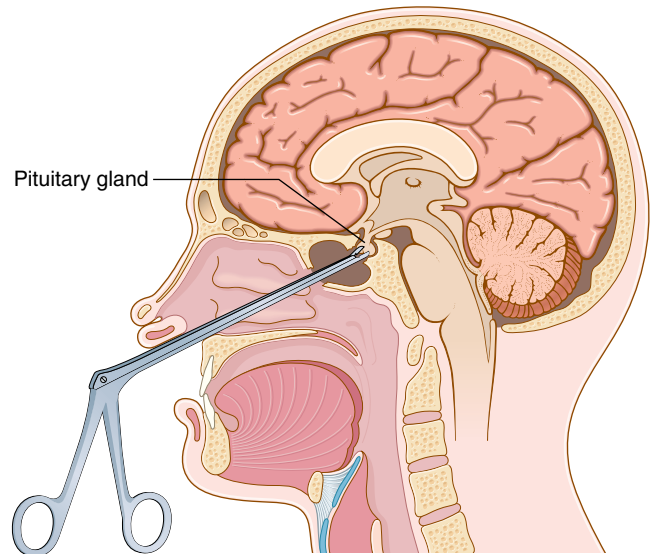


FIG. 65-2 The transsphenoidal surgical approach to the pituitary gland. Selective adenomectomy leaves normal pituitary tissue undisturbed.

these therapies are effective, a disadvantage is that they must be given as an injection on a daily or weekly schedule. A major side effect is gallbladder disease. Pegvisomant may cause an increase in tumor size.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Teach patients taking bromocriptine to seek medical care immediately if chest pain, dizziness, or watery nasal discharge occurs because of the possibility of serious side effects, including cardiac dysrhythmias, coronary artery spasms, and cerebrospinal fluid leakage.

Radiation therapy is not useful in the immediate management of acute hyperpituitarism. These therapy regimens take a long time to complete, and several years may pass before a therapeutic effect can be seen. Side effects of radiation therapy include hypopituitarism, optic nerve damage, and other eye

and vision problems. Use of the gamma knife procedure is increasing the accuracy of radiation therapy.

Surgical Management

Surgical removal of the pituitary gland and tumor (**hypophysectomy**) is the most common treatment for hyperpituitarism.

Preoperative Care. Explain that hypophysectomy decreases hormone levels, relieves headaches, and may reverse changes in sexual functioning. Body changes, organ enlargement, and visual changes are not usually reversible. Explain that because nasal packing is present for 2 to 3 days after surgery, it will be necessary to breathe through the mouth, and a "mustache" dressing ("drip" pad) will be placed under the nose. Instruct the patient not to brush teeth, cough, sneeze, blow the nose, or bend forward after surgery. These activities can increase intracranial pressure (ICP) and delay healing.

Operative Procedures. Depending on tumor size and other patient factors, a minimally invasive endoscopic transnasal approach may be used instead of the more traditional transsphenoidal approach (Fig. 65-2). Although both procedures are less invasive than a craniotomy, the endoscopic approach uses smaller diameter instruments and results in less damage to nasal structures (Graham et al., 2009). Both procedures are performed with the patient in a semi-sitting position. For the transsphenoidal approach, the surgeon makes an incision just above the upper lip and reaches the pituitary gland through the sphenoid sinus. After the gland is removed, a muscle graft is taken, often from the thigh, to support the area and prevent leakage of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Nasal packing is inserted after the incision is closed, and a mustache dressing is applied. If the tumor cannot be reached by either the endoscopic transnasal approach or the transsphenoidal approach, a craniotomy may be indicated (see Chapter 47).

Postoperative Care. Monitor the patient's neurologic response, and document any changes in vision or mental

CHART 65-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE***The Patient After Hypophysectomy***

- Monitor the patient's neurologic status hourly for the first 24 hours and then every 4 hours.
- Monitor fluid balance, especially for output greater than intake, because transient diabetes insipidus can occur.
- Encourage the patient to maintain pulmonary hygiene through deep-breathing exercises.
- Instruct the patient to not cough, blow the nose, or sneeze.
- Instruct the patient to use dental floss and oral mouth rinses, because brushing the teeth is not permitted until the incision heals sufficiently.
- Instruct the patient to avoid bending at the waist for any reason, because this position increases intracranial pressure.
- Monitor the nasal drip pad for the type and amount of drainage. The presence of the halo sign may indicate a CSF leak.
- Monitor bowel movements to prevent constipation and subsequent "straining."
- Teach the patient self-administration of the prescribed hormones.

CSF, Cerebrospinal fluid.

status, altered level of consciousness, or decreased strength of the extremities. Observe the patient for complications such as transient diabetes insipidus (discussed on pp. 1378-1380), CSF leakage, infection, and increased ICP.

Teach the patient to report any postnasal drip or increased swallowing, which might indicate leakage of CSF. Keep the head of the bed elevated after surgery. Assess nasal drainage for quantity, quality, and the presence of glucose (which indicates that the fluid is CSF). A light yellow color at the edge of the clear drainage on the dressing is called the "halo sign" and indicates CSF. If the patient has persistent, severe headaches, CSF fluid may have leaked into the sinus area. Most CSF leaks resolve with bedrest. If the CSF leak persists, the physician may perform a spinal tap to reduce CSF pressure. Surgical intervention is rarely necessary.

Teach the patient to avoid coughing early after surgery because it increases pressure in the incision area and may lead to a CSF leak. Remind the patient to perform deep-breathing exercises hourly while awake to prevent pulmonary problems. Patients may have mouth dryness from mouth breathing. Perform frequent oral rinses, and apply a lubricating jelly to dry lips.

Infection can occur after surgery. Specifically assess for manifestations of meningitis, such as headache, fever, and nuchal (neck) rigidity. The surgeon may prescribe antibiotics, analgesics, and antipyretics.

If the entire pituitary gland has been removed, replacement of thyroid hormones and glucocorticoids is lifelong. Best practices for care after surgery are listed in [Chart 65-3](#).

After surgery, the patient needs daily self-management regimens and frequent checkups. He or she may need strategies to reduce stress. The home care nurse performs a focused assessment during any home visit to a patient who has undergone a hypophysectomy ([Chart 65-4](#)). Review drug regimens and manifestations of infection and cerebral edema with the family.

After a transsphenoidal hypophysectomy, advise the patient to avoid activities that might interfere with healing. Teach him or her to avoid bending over from the waist to pick

CHART 65-4 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT***The Patient Who Has Undergone Transsphenoidal or Endoscopic Nasal Hypophysectomy for Hyperpituitarism***

Assess cardiovascular status:

- Vital signs, including apical pulse, pulse pressure, presence or absence of orthostatic hypotension, and the quality/rhythm of peripheral pulses

Assess cognition and mental status:

- Level of consciousness
- Orientation to time, place, and person
- Accurate reading of a seven-word sentence containing no words longer than three syllables

Assess condition of operative site:

- Observe nasal area for drainage:
If present, note color, clarity, and odor
Test clear drainage for the presence of glucose

Assess neuromuscular status:

- Reactivity of patellar and biceps reflexes
- Oral temperature
- Handgrip strength
- Steadiness of gait
- Visual fields
- Distant and near visual acuity
- Pupillary responses to light

Assess kidney function:

- Observe urine specimen for color, odor, cloudiness, and amount

Ask about:

- Headaches or visual disturbances
- Ease of bowel movements
- 24-hour fluid intake and output
- 24-hour diet recall
- 24-hour activity recall
- Over-the-counter and prescribed drugs taken

Assess patient's understanding of illness and adherence with treatment:

- Signs and symptoms to report to health care provider
- Drug plan (correct timing and dose)

up objects or tie shoes because this position increases ICP. Teach the patient to bend the knees and then lower the body to pick up fallen objects. ICP also increases when the patient strains to have a bowel movement. Suggest techniques to prevent constipation, such as eating high-fiber foods, drinking plenty of fluids, and using stool softeners or laxatives. Activities that increase ICP should be avoided for up to 2 months after surgery.

Teach the patient to avoid toothbrushing for about 2 weeks after surgery until the incision has healed. Frequent mouth care (every 4 to 6 hours) with mouthwash and daily flossing provide adequate oral hygiene. Numbness in the area of the incision and a decreased sense of smell are expected after surgery and usually last 3 to 4 months. Advise the patient to use a mirror to check the gums for bleeding, because reduced sensation increases the risk for injury.

After a hypophysectomy, hormone replacement with vasopressin may be needed to maintain fluid balance. (See discussion of Interventions on pp. 1378-1380 in the Diabetes Insipidus section.) If the anterior portion of the pituitary gland is removed, instruct the patient in cortisol, thyroid, and gonadal hormone replacement. Teach the patient to report the return of any symptoms of hyperpituitarism immediately to the primary health care provider.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The nurse notes that the mustache dressing of a client who is 12 hours postoperative from a transsphenoidal hypophysectomy is wet. What is the nurse's best action?

- Reapply a dry dressing and document this expected response.
- Ask the client whether other symptoms of a cold are present.
- Notify the surgeon or the Rapid Response Team.
- Test the drainage for the presence of glucose.

DISORDERS OF THE POSTERIOR PITUITARY GLAND

Disorders of the posterior pituitary gland (**neurohypophysis**) are related to a deficiency or excess of the hormone *vasopressin* (antidiuretic hormone [ADH]) and usually occur independently from anterior pituitary problems. Diabetes insipidus occurs with ADH deficiency, and the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) occurs with ADH excess.

DIABETES INSIPIDUS

Pathophysiology

Diabetes insipidus (DI) is a water metabolism problem caused by an ADH deficiency (either a decrease in ADH synthesis or an inability of the kidneys to respond to ADH). ADH deficiency results in the excretion of large volumes of dilute urine. Without ADH, distal kidney tubules and collecting ducts do not reabsorb water, leading to **polyuria** (excessive water loss through urination) and dehydration.

Dehydration caused by this massive water loss increases plasma osmolarity, which stimulates the osmoreceptors to relay a sensation of thirst to the cerebral cortex. Thirst promotes increased fluid intake and aids in maintaining water homeostasis. *If the thirst mechanism is poor or absent or if the person is unable to obtain water, dehydration becomes more severe and can lead to death.*



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Ensure that no patient suspected of having DI is deprived of fluids for more than 4 hours, because he or she cannot reduce urine output and severe dehydration can result.

ADH deficiency is classified as nephrogenic, drug-related, primary, or secondary, depending on whether the problem is caused by insufficient production of ADH or an inability of the kidney to respond to the presence of ADH (Simmons, 2010).

Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus is an inherited disorder. The kidney tubules do not respond to the actions of ADH, which results in poor water reabsorption by the kidney. The actual amount of hormone produced is not deficient.

Primary diabetes insipidus is caused by a defect in the hypothalamus or pituitary gland, resulting in a lack of ADH production or release. **Secondary diabetes insipidus** can result from tumors in or near the hypothalamus or pituitary gland, head trauma, infectious processes, surgical procedures

CHART 65-5

KEY FEATURES

Diabetes Insipidus

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Hypotension
- Decreased pulse pressure
- Tachycardia
- Peripheral pulses weak, easily blocked
- Hemoconcentration:
 - Increased hemoglobin
 - Increased hematocrit
 - Increased BUN

Kidney/Urinary Manifestations

- Increased urine output:
 - Dilute, low specific gravity
 - Hypo-osmolar

Skin Manifestations

- Poor turgor
- Dry mucous membranes

Neurologic Manifestations

- Increased sensation of thirst
- Irritability*
- Decreased cognition*
- Hyperthermia*
- Lethargy to coma*
- Ataxia*

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen.

*Occurs when access to water is limited and rapid dehydration results.

(hypophysectomy), or metastatic tumors. Less often, it is caused by brain hemorrhage, brain disease, or cerebral aneurysm, which reduces ADH production.

Drug-related diabetes insipidus is usually caused by lithium carbonate (Eskalith, Lithobid, Carbolith) and demeclocycline (Declomycin). These drugs can interfere with the response of the kidneys to ADH.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Most manifestations of DI are related to dehydration (Chart 65-5) (Simmons, 2010). The key manifestations are an increase in the frequency of urination and excessive thirst. Ask about a history of any known causative factors, such as recent surgery, head trauma, or drug use (e.g., lithium). Although increased fluid intake prevents serious volume depletion, the patient who is deprived of fluids or who cannot increase oral fluid intake may develop shock from fluid loss. Manifestations of dehydration, such as poor skin turgor and dry or cracked mucous membranes or skin, may be present. (See Chapter 13 for further discussion of dehydration.)

Water loss produces changes in blood and urine tests. The first step in diagnosis is to measure a 24-hour fluid intake and output without restricting food or fluid intake. DI is considered if urine output is more than 4 L during this period and is greater than the volume ingested. *The amount of urine excreted in 24 hours may vary from 4 to 30 L/day.* Urine is dilute with a low specific gravity (less than 1.005) and low osmolarity (50 to 200 mOsm/kg).

INTERVENTIONS

Management focuses on controlling manifestations with drug therapy (Chart 65-6). If only a partial deficit of ADH is present, effective control can be achieved with oral chlorpropamide (Diabinese, Novo-Propamide). This drug increases the action of existing ADH and possibly has a stimulating effect on the production of ADH in the hypothalamus.

CHART 65-6 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Diabetes Insipidus

DRUG/DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Desmopressin (DDAVP, Rhinal Tube, Minirin, Stiminate) Tablets: 0.1-0.2 mg orally twice daily Nasal spray: 10-20 mcg every 8-12 hr Parenteral: 1-2 mcg IV or subcutaneously every 12 hr	The drug is a synthetic type of ADH that serves as a replacement. It binds to kidney receptors and enhances the reabsorption of water, thus reducing urine output.	Teach the patient using the inhaled form of the drug to blow the nose before taking the drug. Teach the patient using the inhaled form to sit upright and hold his or her breath when spraying or using the rhinal tube. Warn the patient not to drink more than 3 L of fluids daily while on this drug. Teach the patient to weigh himself or herself daily and to notify the health care provider if 2 lbs or more is gained in 24 hours. Tell the patient to notify the health care provider if he or she experiences a persistent headache or acute confusion.	Drug is absorbed through the nasal mucosa. Nasal secretions can dilute the drug and inhibit its absorption. Sitting upright and holding the breath keeps the drug in contact with the nasal mucosa, rather than going down the throat, enhancing drug absorption. Drug promotes fluid retention and can lead to fluid overload. A rapid increase in weight is an indicator of excessive fluid retention and may require a change in drug dosage. These are manifestations of water toxicity, which must be treated before seizure activity occurs.
Vasopressin (Pitressin) 5-10 units parenterally two to four times daily	The drug is an exogenous form of ADH that serves as a replacement. It binds to kidney receptors and enhances the reabsorption of water, thus reducing urine output.	For the hospitalized patient, monitor for signs of water intoxication, such as listlessness, drowsiness, confusion, headache, anuria, and weight gain. Warn the patient not to drink more than 3 L of fluids daily while on this drug. Teach the patient to weigh himself or herself daily and to notify the health care provider if 2 lbs or more is gained in 24 hours. Tell the patient to notify the health care provider if he or she experiences a persistent headache or acute confusion.	Vasopressin-induced water intoxication can also lead to seizures, coma, and death. Drug promotes fluid retention and can lead to fluid overload. A rapid increase in weight is an indicator of excessive fluid retention and may require a change in drug dosage. These are manifestations of water toxicity, which must be treated before seizure activity occurs.
Chlorpropamide (Diabinese, Insulase) 250-500 mg orally daily	The drug is an antidiabetic agent that also has some antidiuretic activity through an unknown mechanism. It decreases urine output.	Ask whether the patient has any allergies to sulfa-based drugs. Teach patients the manifestations of hypoglycemia and to always carry candy or concentrated sugar with them.	Drug contains sulfa, and a person who is hypersensitive to sulfa drugs is likely to also be hypersensitive to this drug. The main action of the drug is to lower blood glucose levels. When taken by a person whose blood glucose level is normal, hypoglycemia can result.

ADH, Antidiuretic hormone.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Diabinese and Diamox are sound-alike, look-alike drugs. Do not confuse them. Diamox is a type of diuretic, which could increase urine output and the risk for dehydration.

When ADH deficiency is severe, ADH is replaced in amounts sufficient to maintain water balance. Desmopressin acetate (DDAVP) is a synthetic form of vasopressin given orally or intranasally in a metered spray and is the drug of choice (Robinson & Verbalis, 2008). The frequency of dosing varies with patient responses. Teach patients that each metered spray delivers 10 mcg, and those with mild DI may need only one or two doses in 24 hours. For more severe DI, one or two metered doses two or three times daily may be needed. During severe dehydration, ADH may be given IV or IM. Ulceration of the mucous membranes, allergy, a sensation of chest tightness, and lung inhalation of the spray may occur with use of the intranasal preparations. If side effects occur or if the patient has an upper respiratory infection, oral or subcutaneous vasopressin is used.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

The parenteral form of desmopressin is 10 times stronger than the oral form, and the dosage must be reduced.

For the hospitalized patient with DI, nursing management focuses on early detection of dehydration and maintaining adequate hydration. Interventions include accurately measuring fluid intake and output, checking urine specific gravity, and recording the patient's weight daily.

Urge the patient to drink fluids in an amount equal to urine output. If fluids are given IV, ensure the patency of the access catheter and accurately monitor the amount infused hourly.

The patient with permanent DI requires lifelong desmopressin or vasopressin therapy. Assess his or her ability to follow instructions and participate in health care. Teach that polyuria and polydipsia are signals for the need for another dose.

Drugs for DI induce water retention and can cause fluid overload (see Chapter 13). *Teach all patients taking these drugs*

to weigh themselves daily to identify weight gain. Stress the importance of using the same scale and weighing at the same time of day while wearing a similar amount of clothing. If weight gain or other signs of water toxicity occur (e.g., persistent headache, acute confusion), instruct the patient or family that the patient must go to the emergency department or call 911. Instruct the patient to wear a medical alert bracelet identifying the disorder and drugs.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Which response in a client with diabetes insipidus indicates to the nurse that another dose of desmopressin acetate (DDAVP) is needed?

- A. Urine output and specific gravity are increased.
- B. Urine output is increased and urine specific gravity is decreased.
- C. Urine output and specific gravity are decreased.
- D. Urine output is decreased and urine specific gravity is increased.

SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE

Pathophysiology

The **syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH)** is a problem in which vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone [ADH]) is secreted even when plasma osmolarity is low or normal. A decrease in plasma osmolarity normally inhibits ADH production and secretion. SIADH is also known as the *Schwartz-Bartter syndrome*. SIADH occurs with many pathologic conditions (e.g., cancer therapy) and with specific drugs, including selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (Fitzgerald, 2008). Table 65-1 lists specific drugs and other common causes of SIADH.

In SIADH, ADH continues to be released even when plasma is hypo-osmolar. Water is *retained*, which results in dilutional **hyponatremia** (a decreased serum sodium level) and fluid overload. The increase in plasma volume increases the glomerular filtration rate and inhibits the release of renin

and aldosterone. The combined effect is an increased sodium loss in urine, leading to greater hyponatremia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient about his or her medical history, which may reveal conditions that occur with the development of SIADH. Information about these conditions should be obtained:

- Recent head trauma
- Cerebrovascular disease
- Tuberculosis or other pulmonary disease
- Cancer
- All past and current drug use

The early manifestations of SIADH are related to water retention. GI disturbances, such as loss of appetite, nausea, and vomiting, may occur first. Weigh the patient, and document any recent weight gain. Use this information to monitor responses to therapy. In SIADH, free water (not salt) is retained and dependent edema is not usually present, even though water is retained.

Water retention, hyponatremia, and fluid shifts affect central nervous system function, especially when the serum sodium level drops below 115 mEq/L. The patient may have lethargy, headaches, hostility, disorientation, and a change in level of consciousness. Manifestations can progress from lethargy and headaches to decreased responsiveness, seizures, and coma. Assess deep tendon reflexes, which are usually decreased.

Vital sign changes include a full and bounding pulse (caused by the increased fluid volume) and hypothermia (caused by central nervous system disturbance). Chapter 13 presents other findings that occur with hyponatremia.

Water retention changes both plasma and urine osmolarity. Urine volume decreases, and urine osmolarity increases. Plasma volume increases, and plasma osmolarity decreases. Elevated urine sodium levels and specific gravity reflect increased urine concentration. Serum sodium levels are decreased, often as low as 110 mEq/L, because of fluid retention and sodium loss.

Radioimmunoassay of ADH can diagnose SIADH when ADH levels are inappropriately elevated when plasma osmolarity is normal or decreased.

INTERVENTIONS

Medical interventions for SIADH focus on restricting fluid intake, promoting the excretion of water, replacing any lost sodium, and interfering with the action of ADH. Nursing interventions focus on monitoring response to therapy, preventing complications, teaching the patient and family about fluid restrictions and drug therapy, and preventing injury.

Fluid restriction is essential because fluid intake further dilutes plasma sodium levels. In some cases, fluid intake may be kept as low as 500 to 600 mL/24 hr. Dilute tube feedings with saline rather than plain water, and use saline to irrigate GI tubes. Mix drugs to be given by GI tube with saline.

Measure intake, output, and daily weights to assess the degree of fluid restriction needed. A weight gain of 2 pounds or more per day or a gradual increase over several days is

TABLE 65-1 CONDITIONS CAUSING THE SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE

Malignancies • Small cell lung cancer • Pancreatic, duodenal, and GU carcinomas • Thymoma • Hodgkin's lymphoma • Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	CNS Disorders • Trauma • Infection • Tumors (primary or metastatic) • Strokes • Porphyrria • Systemic lupus erythematosus
Pulmonary Disorders • Viral and bacterial pneumonia • Lung abscesses • Active tuberculosis • Pneumothorax • Chronic lung diseases • Mycoses • Positive-pressure ventilation	Drugs • Exogenous ADH • Chlorpropamide • Vincristine • Cyclophosphamide • Carbamazepine • Opioids • Tricyclic antidepressants • General anesthetics

ADH, Antidiuretic hormone; CNS, central nervous system; GU, genitourinary.

cause for concern. A 1-kg weight increase is equal to a 1000-mL fluid retention (1 kg = 1 L). The patient may be uncomfortable during fluid restriction. Keep mucous membranes moist by offering frequent oral rinsing (remind the patient not to swallow the rinses).

Drug therapy with tolvaptan (Samsca) or conivaptan (Vaprisol) is used to treat SIADH when hyponatremia is present in hospitalized patients. These drugs are vasopressin antagonists that promote water excretion without causing sodium loss (Belavic, 2010). Tolvaptan is an oral drug, and conivaptan is given IV. Tolvaptan has a black box warning that rapid increases in serum sodium levels (those greater than a 12 mEq/L increase in 24 hours) have been associated with central nervous system demyelination that can lead to serious complications and death.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Administer tolvaptan or conivaptan only in the hospital setting so that serum sodium levels can be monitored closely for the development of hypernatremia.

Diuretics may be used to manage SIADH when sodium levels are near normal and heart failure is present. Be aware of the diuretic effects on sodium loss. Sodium loss can be potentiated, further contributing to the problems caused by SIADH. For milder SIADH, demeclocycline (Declomycin), an oral antibiotic, may help correct the fluid imbalance, although the drug is not approved for this problem.

Hypertonic saline (i.e., 3% sodium chloride [3% NaCl]) may be used to treat SIADH when the serum sodium level is very low. Give IV saline cautiously because it may add to existing fluid overload and promote heart failure. If the patient needs routine IV fluids, a saline solution rather than a water solution is prescribed.

Monitor the patient's response to therapy to prevent the fluid overload from SIADH from becoming worse, leading to pulmonary edema and heart failure. Any patient with SIADH, regardless of age, is at risk for these complications. The older adult or one who has coexisting cardiac problems, kidney problems, pulmonary problems, or liver problems is at greater risk.

Monitor for increased fluid overload (bounding pulse, increasing neck vein distention, crackles in lungs, increasing peripheral edema, reduced urine output) at least every 2 hours. *Pulmonary edema can occur very quickly and can lead to death.* Notify the health care provider of any change that indicates the fluid overload from SIADH either is not responding to therapy or is becoming worse.

Providing a safe environment is needed when the serum sodium level falls below 120 mEq/L. Possible neurologic changes and the risk for seizures increase as a result of osmotic fluid shifts into brain tissue. Observe for and document changes in the patient's neurologic status. Assess for subtle changes, such as muscle twitching, before they progress to seizures or coma. Check orientation to time, place, and person every 2 hours because disorientation or confusion may be present. Reduce environmental noise and lighting to prevent overstimulation.

Flow sheets with continuing information about the level of consciousness, motor and sensory neurologic assessments,

and laboratory data are helpful in detecting neurologic trends. The frequency of neurologic checks depends on the patient's status. For the patient with SIADH who is hyponatremic but alert, awake, and oriented, neurologic checks every 4 hours are sufficient. For the patient who has had a change in level of consciousness, perform neurologic checks at least every hour. Inspect the environment every shift, making sure that basic safety measures, such as siderails being securely in place, are observed.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The serum electrolyte values for a client with syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone being treated with tolvaptan (Samsca) indicate the following changes within the past 12 hours. Which change does the nurse report immediately to the health care provider?

- A. Serum potassium decrease from 4.2 mEq/L to 3.8 mEq/L
- B. Serum sodium increase from 122 mEq/L to 140 mEq/L
- C. Serum calcium increase from 9.5 mg/dL to 10.2 mg/dL
- D. Serum chloride decrease from 109 mEq/L to 99 mEq/L

DISORDERS OF THE ADRENAL GLAND

ADRENAL GLAND HYPOFUNCTION

Pathophysiology

Production of adrenocortical steroids may decrease as a result of inadequate secretion of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), dysfunction of the hypothalamic-pituitary control mechanism, or direct dysfunction of adrenal gland tissue. Manifestations may develop gradually or occur quickly with stress. In acute adrenocortical insufficiency (**adrenal crisis**), life-threatening manifestations may appear without warning.

Insufficiency of adrenocortical steroids causes problems through the loss of aldosterone and cortisol action. Impaired secretion of cortisol results in decreased **gluconeogenesis** (making glucose from proteins) along with depletion of liver and muscle glycogen, leading to **hypoglycemia** (low blood glucose levels). Glomerular filtration and gastric acid production decrease, leading to reduced urea nitrogen excretion, causing anorexia and weight loss.

Reduced aldosterone secretion causes potassium, sodium, and water imbalances. Potassium excretion is decreased, causing hyperkalemia. Sodium and water excretion are increased, causing hyponatremia and hypovolemia. Potassium retention also promotes reabsorption of hydrogen ions, which can lead to acidosis.

Low adrenal androgen levels decrease the body, axillary, and pubic hair, especially in women, because the adrenals produce most of the androgens in females. The severity of symptoms is related to the degree of hormone deficiency.

Acute adrenal insufficiency, or **addisonian crisis**, is a life-threatening event in which the need for cortisol and aldosterone is greater than the available supply. Often, it occurs in response to a stressful event (e.g., surgery, trauma, severe infection), especially when the adrenal hormone output is already reduced. The problems of acute adrenal insufficiency are the same as those of chronic insufficiency but are more severe. *Unless intervention is initiated promptly, however, sodium levels fall and potassium levels rise rapidly. Severe hypotension results from the blood volume depletion that*

occurs with the loss of aldosterone. Best practices for emergency care of patients with acute adrenal insufficiency are listed in [Chart 65-7](#).

Adrenal insufficiency (Addison's disease) is classified as primary or secondary. Causes of primary and secondary adrenal insufficiency are listed in [Table 65-2](#). A common cause of secondary adrenal insufficiency is the sudden cessation of long-term glucocorticoid therapy. This therapy

CHART 65-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient with Acute Adrenal Insufficiency

Hormone Replacement

- Start rapid infusion of normal saline or dextrose 5% in normal saline.
- Initial dose of hydrocortisone sodium succinate (Solu-Cortef) is 100 to 300 mg or dexamethasone 4 to 12 mg as an IV bolus.
- Infuse additional 100 mg of hydrocortisone sodium succinate by continuous IV drip over the next 8 hours.
- Give hydrocortisone 50 mg IM concomitantly every 12 hours.
- Initiate an H₂ histamine blocker (e.g., ranitidine) IV for ulcer prevention.

Hyperkalemia Management

- Administer insulin (20 to 50 units) with dextrose (20 to 50 mg) in normal saline to shift potassium into cells.
- Administer potassium binding and excreting resin (e.g., Kayexalate).
- Give loop or thiazide diuretics.
- Avoid potassium-sparing diuretics, as prescribed.
- Initiate potassium restriction.
- Monitor intake and output.
- Monitor heart rate, rhythm, and ECG for manifestations of hyperkalemia (slow heart rate; heart block; tall, peaked T waves; fibrillation; asystole).

Hypoglycemia Management

- Administer IV glucose, as prescribed.
- Administer glucagon, as needed and prescribed.
- Maintain IV access.
- Monitor blood glucose level hourly.

ECG, Electrocardiogram.

TABLE 65-2 CAUSES OF PRIMARY AND SECONDARY ADRENAL INSUFFICIENCY

Primary Causes

- Idiopathic (autoimmune) disease*
- Tuberculosis
- Metastatic cancer
- Fungal lesions
- AIDS
- Hemorrhage
- Gram-negative sepsis (Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome)
- Adrenalectomy
- Abdominal radiation therapy
- Drugs (mitotane) and toxins

Secondary Causes

- Pituitary tumors
- Postpartum pituitary necrosis (Sheehan's syndrome)
- Hypophysectomy
- High-dose pituitary radiation
- High-dose whole-brain radiation

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome.

*Most common cause.

suppresses production of glucocorticoids through negative feedback by causing atrophy of the adrenal cortex. Glucocorticoid drugs must be withdrawn gradually to allow for pituitary production of ACTH and activation of adrenal cells to produce cortisol.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When possible, take the history from the patient. If he or she is confused, ask the family about manifestations and factors that cause adrenal hypofunction. Ask about any change in activity level, because lethargy, fatigue, and muscle weakness are often present. Include questions about salt intake because salt craving often occurs with adrenal hypofunction.

GI problems, such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain, often occur. Ask about weight loss during the past months. Women may have menstrual changes related to weight loss, and men may report impotence.

Ask whether the patient has had radiation to the abdomen or head. Document medical problems (e.g., tuberculosis or previous brain surgery) and all past and current drugs, especially steroids, anticoagulants, opioids, or cytotoxic drugs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The manifestations of adrenal insufficiency vary, and the severity is related to the degree of hormone deficiency ([Chart 65-8](#)). In patients with primary insufficiency, plasma ACTH and melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH) levels are in response to the adrenal-hypothalamic-pituitary feedback system. Elevated MSH levels result in areas of increased pigmentation ([Fig. 65-3](#)). In primary autoimmune disease, patchy areas of decreased pigmentation may occur because of destruction of skin melanocytes. Body hair may also be decreased. In secondary disease, skin pigmentation is not changed.

Assess for signs of hypoglycemia (e.g., sweating, headaches, tachycardia, and tremors) and fluid depletion (postural hypotension and dehydration). [Hyperkalemia](#) (elevated blood potassium levels) can cause dysrhythmias with an irregular heart rate and result in cardiac arrest.

CHART 65-8 KEY FEATURES

Adrenal Insufficiency

Neuromuscular Manifestations

- Muscle weakness
- Fatigue
- Joint/muscle pain

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Anorexia
- Nausea, vomiting
- Abdominal pain
- Bowel changes (constipation/diarrhea)
- Weight loss
- Salt craving

Skin Manifestations

- Vitiligo
- Hyperpigmentation

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Anemia
- Hypotension
- Hyponatremia
- Hyperkalemia
- Hypercalcemia

Psychosocial Assessment

Depending on the degree of imbalance, patients may appear lethargic, depressed, confused, and even psychotic or fearful. Observe the patient, and check his or her orientation to person, place, and time. Families may report that the patient has a decreased energy level, experiences wide mood swings, and is forgetful.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory findings include low serum cortisol, low fasting blood glucose, low sodium, elevated potassium, and increased blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels (Chart 65-9). In primary disease, the eosinophil count and ACTH level are elevated. Plasma cortisol levels do not rise during stimulation tests.

Urinary 17-hydroxycorticosteroids are the glucocorticoid metabolites, and 17-ketosteroid levels reflect the adrenal

androgen metabolites. Both levels are in the low or low-normal range in adrenal hypofunction.

An ACTH stimulation test is the most definitive test for adrenal insufficiency (Stewart, 2008). ACTH 0.25 to 1 mg is given IV, and plasma cortisol levels are obtained at 30-minute and 1-hour intervals. In primary insufficiency, the cortisol response is absent or very decreased. In secondary insufficiency, it is increased. When acute adrenal insufficiency is suspected, treatment is started without stimulation testing.

Imaging Assessment

Skull x-rays, CT, MRI, and arteriography may help determine the cause of pituitary problems leading to adrenal insufficiency. CT scans may show adrenal gland atrophy.

INTERVENTIONS

Nursing interventions focus on promoting fluid balance, monitoring for fluid deficit, and preventing hypoglycemia. Weigh the patient daily, and record intake and output. Assess vital signs every 1 to 4 hours, depending on the patient's condition and the presence of dysrhythmias or postural hypotension. Monitor laboratory values to identify hemoconcentration (e.g., increased hematocrit or BUN). Chapter 13 discusses fluid volume deficit in detail.

Cortisol and aldosterone deficiencies are corrected by replacement therapy. Hydrocortisone corrects glucocorticoid deficiency (Chart 65-10). Oral cortisol replacement regimens vary. The most common drug used for this purpose is prednisone. Generally, divided doses are given, with two-thirds given in the morning and one-third in the late afternoon to mimic the normal release of this hormone. Although most patients do well on this regimen, some may not tolerate the dosage or may need more.

An additional mineralocorticoid hormone, such as fludrocortisone (Florinef), may be needed to maintain electrolyte balance (especially sodium and potassium). Dosage adjustment may be needed, especially in hot weather when more sodium is lost because of excessive perspiration. Salt



FIG. 65-3 The increased pigmentation seen in primary adrenocortical insufficiency.

CHART 65-9 LABORATORY PROFILE

Adrenal Gland Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS	
		HYPOFUNCTION OF THE ADRENAL GLAND	HYPERFUNCTION OF THE ADRENAL GLAND
Sodium	136-145 mEq/L	Decreased	Increased
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	Increased	Decreased
Glucose	70-115 mg/dL <i>Older adults:</i> slightly increased	Normal to decreased	Normal to increased
Calcium	9-10.5 mg/dL (total) 4.5-5.6 mg/dL (ionized) <i>Older adults:</i> slightly decreased	Increased	Decreased
Bicarbonate	23-30 mEq/L	Increased	Decreased
BUN	10-20 mg/dL <i>Older adults:</i> may be slightly higher	Increased	Normal
Cortisol	6 AM to 8 AM: 5-23 mcg/dL or 138-635 SI units (nmol/L) 4 PM to 6 PM: 3-13 mcg/dL or 83-359 SI units (nmol/L)	Decreased	Increased

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen; SI, International System of Units.

CHART 65-10 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Hypofunction of the Adrenal Gland

DRUG	USUAL DOSAGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Cortisone	25-50 mg orally either once daily in AM or daily in divided doses	Instruct the patient to take the drug with meals or a snack.	GI irritation can occur.
Hydrocortisone (Cortef, Hycort )	20-50 mg orally either once daily in AM or daily in divided doses	Instruct the patient to report these signs or symptoms of excessive drug therapy: • Rapid weight gain • Round face • Fluid retention	Cushing's syndrome, which indicates a need for dosage adjustment, can occur.
Prednisone (Winpred )	5-10 mg orally either once daily in AM or daily in divided doses	Instruct the patient to report illness, such as: • Severe diarrhea • Vomiting • Fever	Other conditions may indicate a need for dosage change. The usual daily dosage may not be adequate during periods of illness or severe stress.
Fludrocortisone (Florinef)	0.05-0.2 mg orally daily	Monitor the patient's blood pressure. Instruct the patient to report weight gain or edema.	Hypertension is a potential side effect. Sodium-related fluid retention is possible.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Drug Alert**

Prednisone and prednisolone are sound-alike drugs, and care is needed not to confuse them. Although they are both corticosteroids, they are not interchangeable because prednisolone is several times more potent than prednisone and dosages are not the same.

restriction or diuretic therapy should not be started without considering whether it might lead to an adrenal crisis.

ADRENAL GLAND HYPERFUNCTION

The adrenal gland may oversecrete just one hormone or all adrenal hormones. Hypersecretion by the adrenal cortex results in hypercortisolism (e.g., **Cushing's disease** or **Cushing's syndrome**), **hyperaldosteronism** (excessive mineralocorticoid production), or excessive androgen production. Hyperstimulation of the adrenal medulla caused by a tumor (**pheochromocytoma**) results in excessive secretion of catecholamines (epinephrine and norepinephrine).

HYPERCORTISOLISM (CUSHING'S DISEASE)**Pathophysiology**

Cushing's disease is the exaggerated secretion of cortisol from the adrenal cortex, causing widespread problems. It is caused by either a problem in the adrenal cortex itself, a problem in the anterior pituitary gland, or a problem in the hypothalamus. In addition, glucocorticoid therapy can also lead to problems of hypercortisolism.

The presence of excess glucocorticoids, regardless of the cause, affects metabolism and all body systems. An increase in total body fat results from slow turnover of plasma fatty acids. This fat is redistributed, producing truncal obesity, "buffalo hump," and "moon face" (Fig. 65-4). Increases in the breakdown of tissue protein and an increase in urine nitrogen excretion also occur, resulting in decreased muscle mass and muscle strength, thin skin, and fragile capillaries. The effects on minerals lead to bone density loss.

High levels of corticosteroids kill lymphocytes and shrink organs containing lymphocytes, such as the spleen and the



FIG. 65-4 The typical appearance of a patient with Cushing's disease or syndrome. Note truncal obesity, moon face, buffalo hump, thinner arms and legs, and abdominal striae.

lymph nodes. Eosinophils and macrophages are reduced. Although the number of neutrophils may be increased, the reduction of cytokines makes these cells less active. Thus inflammatory and immune response protections are reduced.

TABLE 65-3 CONDITIONS CAUSING INCREASED CORTISOL SECRETION

Endogenous Secretion (Cushing's Disease)	Exogenous Administration (Cushing's Syndrome)
- Bilateral adrenal hyperplasia* - Pituitary adenoma increasing the production of ACTH (pituitary Cushing's disease) - Malignancies: carcinomas of the lung, GI tract, pancreas - Adrenal adenomas or carcinomas	- Therapeutic use of ACTH or glucocorticoids—most commonly for treatment of: - Asthma - Autoimmune disorders - Organ transplantation - Cancer chemotherapy - Allergic responses - Chronic fibrosis

ACTH, Adrenocorticotrophic hormone.

*Most common cause.

In most cases, increased androgen production also occurs and causes acne, **hirsutism** (increased hair growth), and occasionally clitoral hypertrophy. Increased androgen production disrupts the normal ovarian hormone feedback mechanism, decreasing the ovary's production of estrogens and progesterone. **Oligomenorrhea** (scant or infrequent menses) occurs as a result.

Etiology

Cushing's disease or syndrome is a group of clinical problems caused by an excess of cortisol. Table 65-3 lists causes of cortisol excess. When the anterior pituitary gland oversecretes adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), this hormone causes hyperplasia of the adrenal cortex in both adrenal glands and an excess of most hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex. (See Fig. 64-3 in Chapter 64.) This problem is known as **pituitary Cushing's disease** because the tissue causing the problem is the pituitary. When the excess glucocorticoids are caused by a problem in the actual adrenal cortex, usually a benign tumor (*adrenal adenoma*), the problem is called **adrenal Cushing's disease** and usually occurs in only one adrenal gland. When glucocorticoid excess results from drug therapy for another health problem, it is known as **Cushing's syndrome**.

Incidence/Prevalence

The most common cause of Cushing's disease is a pituitary adenoma. Adrenal adenomas account for only about 15% of the disease (Stewart, 2008). Women are more likely than men to develop Cushing's disease. The actual incidence of Cushing's syndrome from chronic use of exogenous corticosteroids is not known. However, because these drugs are commonly used to control serious chronic inflammatory conditions such as asthma, other respiratory problems, and rheumatoid arthritis, Cushing's syndrome is more common than Cushing's disease and affects both genders equally.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask about the patient's other health problems and drug therapies, because glucocorticoid therapy is a common cause of hypercortisolism. Regardless of cause, the patient has many

CHART 65-11 KEY FEATURES

Hypercortisolism (Cushing's Disease/Syndrome)

General Appearance

- Fat redistribution:
 - Moon face
 - Buffalo hump
 - Truncal obesity
- Weight gain

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Hypertension
- Increased risk for thromboembolic events
- Frequent dependent edema
- Capillary fragility:
 - Bruising
 - Petechiae

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Muscle atrophy (most apparent in extremities)
- Osteoporosis (bone density loss)
 - Pathologic fractures
 - Decreased height with vertebral collapse
 - Aseptic necrosis of the femur head
 - Slow or poor healing of bone fractures

Skin Manifestations

- Thinning skin ("paper-like" appearance, especially on the back of the hands)
- Striae
- Increased pigmentation (with ectopic or pituitary production of ACTH)

Immune System Manifestations

- Increased risk for infection
- Decreased immune function:
 - Decreased circulating lymphocytes
 - Decreased production of immunoglobulins (antibodies)
- Decreased inflammatory responses:
 - Decreased eosinophil count
 - Slight increase in neutrophil count but activity is reduced
- Decreased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, histamine, and prostaglandins
- Manifestations of infection/inflammation may be masked

ACTH, Adrenocorticotrophic hormone.

changes because of the widespread effect of excessive cortisol levels. Record age, gender, and usual weight. He or she may report a significant weight gain and an increased appetite. Ask about changes in activity or sleep patterns, fatigue, and muscle weakness. Ask about bone pain or a history of fractures because osteoporosis is common in hypercortisolism. Ask about a history of frequent infections and easy bruising, which suggest hypercortisolism. Women often stop menstruating. GI problems include ulcer formation from increased hydrochloric acid secretion and decreased production of protective gastric mucus.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient with hypercortisolism has specific physical changes, although all body systems are affected (see Fig. 65-4 and Chart 65-11). Observe the patient's general appearance. Changes in fat distribution may result in fat pads on the neck, back, and shoulders ("buffalo hump"); an enlarged trunk with thin arms and legs; and a round face ("moon face"). Other changes include muscle wasting and weakness. Assess and document changes, and use these findings to prioritize patient problems and interventions.

Skin changes result from increased blood vessel fragility and include bruises, thin or translucent skin, and wounds that have not healed. Reddish purple **striae** ("stretch marks") occur on the abdomen, thighs, and upper arms because of the destructive effect of cortisol on collagen.

Excessive cortisol secretion causes acne and a fine coating of hair over the face and body. In women, look for the

presence of hirsutism, clitoral hypertrophy, and male pattern balding related to androgen excess.

Cardiac changes occur as a result of altered water and mineral metabolism. Both sodium and water are reabsorbed and retained, leading to hypervolemia and edema formation. Blood pressure is elevated and pulses are full and bounding.

Musculoskeletal changes occur as a result of nitrogen depletion and mineral loss. Muscle mass decreases, especially in arms and legs, which look too small in proportion to the trunk (see Fig. 65-4). Muscle weakness increases the risk for falls. Bone is thinner as a result of mineral loss, and osteoporosis is common, increasing the risk for pathologic fractures.

Glucose metabolism is profoundly affected by hypercortisolism. Fasting blood glucose levels are high because the liver is stimulated to convert more glycogen to glucose and the insulin receptors are less sensitive, so blood glucose does not move as easily into the tissues. In addition, muscle mass loss reduces glucose uptake.

Immune changes caused by excess cortisol result in immunosuppression and an increased risk for infection. Excess cortisol reduces the number of circulating lymphocytes, inhibits macrophage activity, reduces antibody synthesis, and inhibits production of cytokines and inflammatory chemicals (e.g., histamine). These patients not only are at greater risk for infection but also may not have the expected inflammatory manifestations (fever, purulent exudate, redness in the affected area) when an infection is present.

Psychosocial Assessment

Hypercortisolism can result in emotional instability, and patients often say that they do not feel like themselves anymore. Ask about mood swings, irritability, confusion, or depression. Ask the patient whether he or she has been crying or laughing inappropriately or has had difficulty concentrating. Family members often report changes in the patient's mental or emotional status. The patient may have neurotic or psychotic behavior as a result of high blood cortisol levels. In addition, the hormones stimulate the central nervous system, heightening the awareness of and responses to sensory stimulation. The patient often reports sleep difficulties and fatigue.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory tests include blood, salivary, and urine cortisol levels. These are high in patients with hypercortisolism regardless of the origin of the disorder. Plasma ACTH levels vary, depending on the cause of the problem. In pituitary Cushing's disease, ACTH levels are elevated. In adrenal Cushing's disease or when Cushing's syndrome results from chronic steroid use, ACTH levels are very low.

Salivary cortisol levels may be used to detect hypercortisolism. This test is accurate in assessing cortisol levels because cortisol-binding proteins are not present in saliva. Usually, salivary cortisol levels are obtained at midnight (Stewart, 2008). Saliva, not spit, is needed for the assay. Saliva is easily and painlessly collected with the use of a salivary specimen cushion placed in the cheek next to the salivary gland. A normal salivary cortisol level is lower than 2.0 ng/mL. Higher levels indicate hypercortisolism.

Urine is tested to measure levels of free cortisol and the metabolites of cortisol and androgens (17-hydroxycorticosteroids and 17-ketosteroids). In Cushing's disease, levels of

urine cortisol and androgens are all elevated in a 24-hour specimen, as are urine calcium, potassium, and glucose levels (Fraser & Van Uum, 2010).

Dexamethasone suppression testing can screen for hypercortisolism and may take place overnight or over a 3-day period. Set doses of dexamethasone are given. A 24-hour urine collection follows drug administration. When urinary 17-hydroxycorticosteroid excretion and cortisol levels are suppressed by dexamethasone, Cushing's disease is not present.

Additional laboratory findings that accompany hypercortisolism include:

- Increased blood glucose level
- Decreased lymphocyte count
- Increased sodium level
- Decreased serum calcium level
- Decreased serum potassium level

Imaging Assessment

Imaging for hypercortisolism includes x-rays, CT scans, MRI, and arteriography. These images can identify lesions of the adrenal or pituitary glands, lung, GI tract, or pancreas.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with Cushing's disease or Cushing's syndrome are:

1. Fluid overload
2. Risk for Injury related to skin thinning, poor wound healing, and bone density loss
3. Potential for infection
4. Potential for acute adrenal insufficiency

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Expected outcomes of hypercortisolism management are the reduction of plasma cortisol levels, removal of tumors, and restoration of normal or acceptable body appearance. When the disorder is caused by pituitary or adrenal problems, cure is possible. When caused by drug therapy for another health problem, the focus is to prevent complications from hypercortisolism.

Restoring Fluid Volume Balance

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypercortisolism is expected to achieve and maintain an acceptable fluid balance. Indicators include that these parameters are within or close to the normal range:

- Blood pressure
- Stable body weight
- Serum electrolytes

Interventions. Interventions for patients with fluid overload from hypercortisolism focus on ensuring patient safety, restoring fluid balance, and providing supportive care. Depending on the cause, surgical management may be used to reduce cortisol production.

Nonsurgical Management. Patient safety, drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and monitoring are the basis of nonsurgical interventions for hypercortisolism and fluid overload.

Patient safety includes preventing fluid overload from becoming worse, leading to pulmonary edema and heart failure. Any patient with fluid overload, regardless of age, is at risk for these complications. The older adult or one who has coexisting cardiac problems, kidney problems, pulmonary problems, or liver problems is at greater risk.

Monitor for indicators of increased fluid overload (bounding pulse, increasing neck vein distention, lung crackles, increasing peripheral edema, reduced urine output) at least every 2 hours. *Pulmonary edema can occur very quickly and can lead to death.* Notify the health care provider of any change that indicates fluid overload either is not responding to therapy or is becoming worse.

The patient with fluid overload and dependent edema is at risk for skin breakdown. Use a pressure-reducing or pressure-relieving overlay on the mattress. Assess skin pressure areas, especially the coccyx, elbows, hips, and heels, daily for redness or open areas. Many patients with fluid overload may be receiving oxygen by mask or nasal cannula. Check the skin around the mask, nares, and ears and under the elastic band. Assist the patient to change positions every 2 hours, or ensure that others delegated to perform this intervention are diligent in this action.

Drug therapy involves the use of drugs that interfere with adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) production or adrenal hormone synthesis for temporary relief. Aminoglutethimide (Elipten, Cytadren) and metyrapone (Metopirone) use different pathways to decrease cortisol production. For patients with hypercortisolism from increased ACTH production, cyproheptadine (Periactin) may be used because it interferes with ACTH production. Mitotane (Lysodren) is an adrenal cytotoxic agent used for inoperable tumors causing hypercortisolism.

Monitor the patient for response to drug therapy, especially weight loss and increased urine output. Observe for manifestations of electrolyte imbalance, especially changes in electrocardiogram (ECG) patterns. Assess laboratory findings, especially sodium and potassium values, every 8 hours or whenever they are drawn.

Nutrition therapy for the patient with hypercortisolism may involve restrictions of both fluid and sodium intake to control fluid volume. Review the patient's serum sodium levels whenever fluid overload is present. Often sodium restriction involves only "no added salt" to ordinary table foods when fluid overload is mild. For more pronounced fluid overload, the patient may be restricted to anywhere from 2 g/day to 4 g/day of sodium. When sodium restriction is ongoing, teach the patient and family how to check food labels for sodium content and how to keep a daily record of sodium ingested. Explain to the patient and family the reason for any fluid restriction and the importance of adhering to the prescribed restriction.

Monitoring intake and output, as well as weight, provides information on therapy effectiveness. Ensure that unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) understand that these measurements need to be accurate, not just estimated, because treatment decisions are based on these findings. In addition to regulating the total amount of fluid ingested in a 24-hour period, schedule fluid offerings throughout the 24 hours. Teach UAP to check urine for color and character and to report these findings. Check the urine specific gravity (a specific gravity below 1.005 may indicate fluid overload). If IV therapy is used, infuse the exact amount prescribed.

Fluid retention may not be visible. Remember that rapid weight gain is the best indicator of fluid retention and overload. Metabolism can account for no more than a half pound of weight gain in one day. Each pound of weight gained (after the first half pound) equates to 500 mL of retained

water. Weigh the patient at the same time every day (before breakfast), using the same scale. Whenever possible, have the patient wear the same type of clothing for each weigh-in.

Radiation therapy may be used to treat hypercortisolism caused by pituitary adenomas. However, radiation is not always effective and often destroys normal tissue. Observe for any changes in the patient's neurologic status, such as headache, elevated blood pressure or pulse, disorientation, or changes in pupil size or reaction. The patient may have skin dryness, redness, flushing, or alopecia at the radiation site. Review these possible side effects with the patient. [Chapter 47](#) discusses radiation therapy to the head.

Surgical Management. The surgical treatment of adrenocortical hypersecretion depends on the cause of the disease. When adrenal hyperfunction is due to increased pituitary secretion of ACTH, removal of a pituitary adenoma may be attempted. In many instances, a total **hypophysectomy** (surgical removal of the pituitary gland) is needed. Hypophysectomy is performed via the transsphenoidal or transfrontal craniotomy route. (See earlier discussion of hypophysectomy on pp. 1376-1377; see also [Chapter 47](#) for nursing care of patients undergoing a craniotomy.) If hypercortisolism is caused by adrenal tumors, a partial or complete **adrenalectomy** (removal of the adrenal gland) may be needed.

Preoperative Care. Electrolyte imbalances are corrected before surgery. Continue to monitor blood potassium, sodium, and chloride levels. Dysrhythmias from potassium imbalance may occur, and cardiac monitoring is needed. Hyperglycemia is controlled before surgery, and blood glucose levels are monitored.

The patient with hypercortisolism is at risk for complications such as infections and fractures. Prevent infection with handwashing and aseptic technique. Decrease the risk for falls by raising top siderails and encouraging the patient to ask for assistance when getting out of bed. A high-calorie, high-protein diet is prescribed before surgery.

Glucocorticoid preparations are given before surgery. The patient continues to receive glucocorticoids during surgery to prevent adrenal crisis because the removal of the tumor results in a sudden drop in cortisol levels. Before surgery, discuss the care needs for after surgery and the need for long-term drug therapy.

Operative Procedures. A unilateral adrenalectomy is performed when one gland is involved. A bilateral adrenalectomy is needed when ACTH-producing tumors cannot be treated by other means or when both adrenal glands are diseased. Surgery can be abdominal or through the lateral flank. The flank approach is preferred because the abdominal cavity is not entered and complications are reduced. A laparoscopic adrenalectomy, a minimally invasive surgical approach, is increasingly being used and reduces some complications after surgery.

Postoperative Care. After an adrenalectomy, the patient is usually sent to a critical care unit. Immediately after surgery, assess the patient every 15 minutes for shock (e.g., hypotension; a rapid, weak pulse; and a decreasing urine output) due to possible insufficient glucocorticoid replacement. Monitor ongoing vital signs and other hemodynamic variables (central venous pressure, pulmonary wedge pressure), intake and output, daily weights, and serum electrolyte levels.

After a bilateral adrenalectomy, patients require lifelong glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement, starting

immediately after surgery. In unilateral adrenalectomy, hormone replacement continues until the remaining adrenal gland increases hormone production. This therapy may be needed for up to 2 years after surgery.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which precaution is most important for the nurse to teach a client who is prescribed oral corticosteroids for hormone replacement therapy after a unilateral adrenalectomy?

- A. "Do not stop taking this drug without consulting your prescriber."
- B. "Avoid crowds and people who are ill."
- C. "Be sure to take this drug with food."
- D. "Reduce your salt intake."

Preventing Injury

The patient who has hypercortisolism is at risk for injury from skin breakdown, bone fractures, and GI bleeding. Prevention of these injuries is a major nursing care focus.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypercortisolism is expected to avoid injury. Indicators include:

- Skin is intact.
- Minimal or no bruising is present.
- Bones are intact.
- Stools, vomitus, and other GI secretions contain no gross or occult blood.

Interventions. Priority nursing interventions for prevention of injury focus on skin assessment and protection, coordinating care to ensure gentle handling, and patient teaching regarding drug therapy for prevention of GI ulcers.

Skin injury is a continuing risk for any patient who has hypercortisolism. Even when surgery has corrected the cortisol excess, the changes induced in the skin and blood vessels remain for weeks to months. Assess the skin for reddened areas, excoriation, breakdown, and edema. If mobility is decreased, turn the patient every 2 hours and pad bony prominences.

Instruct the patient to avoid activities that can result in skin trauma. To reduce tissue injury, teach him or her to use a soft toothbrush and an electric shaver. Instruct patients to keep the skin clean and to dry it thoroughly after washing. Excessive dryness can be prevented by using a moisturizing lotion.

Adhesive tape often causes skin breakdown. Use tape sparingly, and use caution when removing it. After venipuncture or arterial puncture, the patient may have increased bleeding because of blood vessel fragility. Exert pressure over the site for longer than normal to prevent bleeding and bruising.

Pathologic fractures from bone density loss and osteoporosis are possible for months to years after cortisol levels return to normal. Teach the patient about safety issues and dietary needs. When helping the patient move in bed, use a lift sheet instead of grasping him or her. Remind the patient to call for help when ambulating. Review the use of walkers or canes, if needed. Keep rooms free of objects that might cause a fall. Teach UAP to use a gait belt when walking with a patient who has bone density loss.

Coordinate with a dietitian to teach the patient about nutrition therapy. A high-calorie diet is prescribed that includes items from all of the major food groups and increased amounts of calcium and vitamin D. Generous amounts of milk, cheese, yogurt, and green leafy and root vegetables add calcium to promote bone density. Advise the patient to avoid caffeine and alcohol, which increase the risk for GI ulcers and may promote bone density loss.

GI bleeding is common with hypercortisolism as a result of systemic changes. Cortisol inhibits production of the thick, gel-like mucus that protects the stomach lining, decreases blood flow to the area, and triggers the release of excess hydrochloric acid. Although surgery reduces the hypercortisolism, the normal protective mucus and increased blood flow may take days to weeks to return. Interventions focus on reducing gastric irritation, usually through drug therapy to protect the GI mucosa and decrease the secretion of hydrochloric acid.

Antacids buffer stomach acids and protect the GI mucosa. Teach the patient that these drugs should be taken on a regular schedule rather than on an as-needed basis.

Some agents block the H₂ receptors in the gastric mucosa. When histamine binds to these receptors, a series of actions release hydrochloric acid. Drugs that block the H₂-receptor site include cimetidine (Tagamet, Peptol , Novo-Cimetine , ranitidine (Zantac, Apo-Ranitidine , famotidine (Pepcid), and nizatidine (Axid). Omeprazole (Losec , Prilosec) and esomeprazole (Nexium) inhibit the gastric proton pump and prevent the formation of hydrochloric acid.

Encourage the patient to reduce or eliminate habits that contribute to gastric irritation, such as consuming alcohol or caffeine, smoking, and fasting. Discuss other prescribed and over-the-counter drugs that he or she may be taking. NSAIDs and drugs that contain aspirin or other salicylates can cause gastritis and intensify GI bleeding.

Preventing Infection

Glucocorticoids reduce both inflammation and the immune responses, increasing the risk for infection. For the patient who is taking glucocorticoid replacement therapy, the risk is ongoing. For the patient who is recovering from surgery to prevent hypercortisolism, the infection risk continues for weeks after surgery.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypercortisolism is expected to remain free from infection and avoid situations that increase the risk for infection. Indicators include these manifestations and behaviors:

- Absence of fever and foul-smelling or purulent drainage
- Absence of cough, chest pain, and dyspnea
- Absence of urinary frequency, urgency, or pain and burning
- Avoids crowds and large gatherings
- Obtains appropriate vaccinations
- Washes hands frequently

Interventions. A major focus in caring for the patient with hypercortisolism is protection from infection. All personnel must use extreme care during all nursing procedures. Thorough handwashing is of the utmost importance. Anyone with an upper respiratory tract infection who must enter the patient's room must wear a mask. Observe strict procedures

when performing dressing changes or any invasive procedure.

Continually assess the patient for possible infection. Manifestations may not be obvious because hypercortisolism suppresses manifestations of infection. Fever and the formation of pus (indicators of infection) depend on the presence of white blood cells (WBCs). The immunosuppressed patient may have a severe infection without pus and with only a low-grade fever.

Monitor the patient's daily complete blood count (CBC) with differential WBC count and absolute neutrophil count (ANC). Inspect the mouth during every shift for lesions and mucosa breakdown. Assess the lungs every 8 hours for crackles, wheezes, or reduced breath sounds. Assess all urine for odor and cloudiness. Ask about any urgency, burning, or pain on urination.

Take vital signs at least every 4 hours to assess for fever. A temperature elevation of even 1° F (or 0.5° C) above baseline is significant for a patient who is immunosuppressed and indicates infection until it has been proved otherwise.

Skin care is important for preventing infection because the skin may be the patient's only intact defense. Teach him or her about hygiene, and urge daily bathing. If the patient is immobile, turn him or her every hour and apply skin lubricants.

Perform pulmonary hygiene every 2 to 4 hours. Listen to the lungs for crackles, wheezes, or reduced breath sounds. Urge the patient to cough and deep breathe or to perform sustained maximum inhalations every hour while awake.

Preventing Acute Adrenal Insufficiency

The patient most at risk for acute adrenal insufficiency is the one who has Cushing's syndrome as a result of glucocorticoid drug therapy. The exogenous drug inhibits the feedback control pathway (see Fig. 64-3 in Chapter 64), preventing the hypothalamus from secreting corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). The lack of CRH inhibits secretion of

ACTH from the anterior pituitary gland. Without normal levels of ACTH, the adrenal glands atrophy and completely stop production of any of the corticosteroids. As a result, the patient completely depends on the exogenous drug. If the drug is stopped, even for a day or two, the atrophied adrenal glands cannot produce the glucocorticoids and the patient develops acute adrenal insufficiency, a life-threatening condition. Management of this problem is described on p. 1382.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

The patient with hypercortisolism usually has muscle weakness and fatigue for some weeks after surgery and remains at risk for falls and other injury. These problems may necessitate one-floor living for a short time, and a home health aide may be needed to assist with hygiene, meal preparation, and maintenance.

Teaching for Self-Management

The patient taking exogenous glucocorticoids who is discharged to home remains at continuing risk for fluid volume excess. Teach him or her and the family to monitor the patient's weight at home. Verify that the patient understands the relationship between body weight and fluid balance. Suggest that a record of these daily weights be kept to show the health care provider at any checkups. Also, instruct the patient to call the health care provider if he or she gains more than 3 lbs in a week or more than 1 to 2 lbs in a 24-hour period.

Lifelong hormone replacement is needed after bilateral adrenalectomy. Teach the patient and family about adherence to the drug regimen and its side effects (Chart 65-12).

Protecting the patient from infection at home is just as important as it was during hospitalization. Urge him or her to use proper hygiene and to avoid crowds or others with infections. Encourage the patient and all people living in the same home with him or her to have yearly influenza vaccinations. Stress that the patient should immediately notify the



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is a 45-year-old woman who has recently been diagnosed with a chronic lung inflammation with pulmonary fibrosis. She has been prescribed 45 mg of prednisone daily to slow the progression of this disease and has been adherent to this therapy for the past 12 weeks. She now has a moon face, buffalo hump, acne, thinning scalp hair, and muscle weakness. Today, her blood pressure is elevated and she is being started on an antihypertensive drug, along with an H₂ histamine blocker. Since her last visit, she has gained 18 lbs. She tells you that she feels as though she has aged 20 years in 2 months, and that her appearance changes are "devastating." She is concerned about now having to take two more drugs on a daily basis. She also reveals to you that she did not take her prednisone for 3 days last week hoping that she would lose weight.

1. In what ways does prednisone induce the changes she shows and has described?
2. How should you address the issue of her not taking the prednisone as prescribed?
3. Is her weight gain irreversible while she is taking prednisone? Why or why not?
4. What should you tell her about the newly prescribed drugs?
5. What resources can you suggest to improve her appearance?

CHART 65-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Cortisol Replacement Therapy

- Take your medication in divided doses—the first dose in the morning and the second dose between 4 and 6 PM.
- Take your medication with meals or snacks.
- Weigh yourself daily.
- Increase your dosage as directed for increased physical stress or severe emotional stress, including surgery, dental work, influenza, fever, pregnancy, and family problems.
- Never skip a dose of medication. If you have persistent vomiting or severe diarrhea and cannot take your medication by mouth for 24 to 36 hours, call your physician. If you cannot reach your physician, go to the nearest emergency department. You may need an injection to take the place of your usual oral medication.
- Always wear your medical alert bracelet or necklace.
- Make regular visits for health care follow-up.
- Learn how to give yourself an intramuscular injection of hydrocortisone.

health care provider if he or she has a fever or any other sign of infection. [Chart 42-11](#) in [Chapter 42](#) lists guidelines for patients for infection prevention.

Health Care Resources

Immediately after returning home, the patient may need a support person to stay and provide more attention than could be given by a visiting nurse or home care aide. Contact with the health care team is needed for follow-up and identification of potential problems. The patient taking corticosteroid therapy may have manifestations of adrenal insufficiency if the dosage is inadequate. Suggest that the patient obtain and wear a medical alert bracelet listing the condition and the drug replacement therapy.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with hypercortisolism based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient should:

- Have an acceptable fluid balance
- Remain free from injury
- Remain free from infection
- Not experience acute adrenal insufficiency

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

HYPERALDOSTERONISM

Pathophysiology

Hyperaldosteronism is an increased secretion of aldosterone with mineralocorticoid excess. Primary hyperaldosteronism (*Conn's syndrome*) results from excessive secretion of aldosterone from one or both adrenal glands, usually caused by a benign adrenal adenoma. In secondary hyperaldosteronism, excessive secretion of aldosterone is caused by high levels of angiotensin II that are stimulated by high plasma renin levels. Causes of high renin levels include kidney hypoxemia and the use of thiazide diuretics.

Increased aldosterone levels affect the kidney tubules and cause sodium retention with potassium and hydrogen ion excretion. Hyponatremia, hypokalemia, and metabolic alkalosis result. Sodium retention increases blood volume, which raises blood pressure but usually does not cause peripheral edema. The elevated blood pressure may cause strokes, heart attacks, and kidney damage. (See [Chapter 13](#) for discussion of electrolyte imbalances.)

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Hypokalemia and elevated blood pressure are the most common problems of the patient with hyperaldosteronism. He or she may have headache, fatigue, muscle weakness, **nocturia** (excessive urination at night), and loss of stamina. **Polydipsia** (excessive fluid intake) and **polyuria** (excessive urine output) occur less frequently. **Paresthesias** (sensations of numbness and tingling) may occur if potassium depletion is severe ([Crawford, & Harris, 2011](#)).

Hyperaldosteronism is diagnosed on the basis of laboratory studies, x-rays, and imaging with CT or MRI. Serum

potassium levels are decreased, and sodium levels are elevated. Plasma renin levels are low, and aldosterone levels are high. Hydrogen ion loss leads to metabolic alkalemia (elevated blood pH). Urine has a low specific gravity and high aldosterone levels.

INTERVENTIONS

Surgery is the most common treatment for early-stage hyperaldosteronism. One or both adrenal glands may be removed. Surgery is not performed, however, until the patient's potassium levels are normal. Drugs used to increase potassium levels include spironolactone (Aldactone, Spiro, Sincomen ) , a potassium-sparing diuretic and aldosterone antagonist. Potassium supplements may be prescribed to increase potassium levels before surgery. The patient may also benefit from a low-sodium diet before surgery, but sodium restriction is not needed after surgery because aldosterone levels return to normal.

The patient who has undergone a unilateral adrenalectomy may need temporary glucocorticoid replacement. Replacement is lifelong if both adrenal glands are removed. Glucocorticoids are given before surgery to prevent adrenal crisis. The patient receiving long-term replacement therapy should wear a medical alert bracelet. (See the discussion of adrenalectomy on pp. 1387-1389 in the Hypercortisolism [Cushing's Disease] section for more discussion of care after surgery and patient education.)

When surgery cannot be performed, spironolactone therapy is continued to control hypokalemia and hypertension. Because spironolactone is a potassium-sparing diuretic, hyperkalemia can occur in patients who have impaired kidney function or excessive potassium intake. Advise the patient to avoid potassium supplements and foods rich in potassium. Hyponatremia can occur with spironolactone therapy, and the patient may need increased dietary sodium. Instruct the patient to report symptoms of hyponatremia, such as dryness of the mouth, thirst, lethargy, or drowsiness. Teach patients to report any additional side effects of spironolactone therapy, including gynecomastia, diarrhea, drowsiness, headache, rash, **urticaria** (hives), confusion, erectile dysfunction, hirsutism, and amenorrhea.

PHEOCHROMOCYTOMA

Pathophysiology

Pheochromocytoma is a catecholamine-producing tumor that arises in the adrenal medulla. These tumors usually occur as a single lesion in one adrenal gland, although they can be bilateral or in the abdomen. Pheochromocytomas are usually benign, but at least 10% are malignant ([Young, 2008](#)).

The tumors produce, store, and release epinephrine and norepinephrine (NE). Excessive epinephrine and NE stimulate adrenergic receptors and can have wide-ranging adverse effects mimicking the action of the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system.

The cause is unknown, but some pheochromocytomas occur with inherited disorders such as neurofibromatosis (type 1), multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN-2), Von Hippel-Lindau disease, and pheochromocytoma-paraganglioma syndrome ([Cook, 2009](#)). These tumors are rare and occur slightly more often in women. They can occur at any age but appear most commonly in patients between 40 and 60 years of age.

**PATIENT-CENTERED
COLLABORATIVE CARE****ASSESSMENT**

The patient often has intermittent episodes of hypertension or attacks that range from a few minutes to several hours. During these episodes, the patient has severe headaches, palpitations, profuse diaphoresis, flushing, apprehension, or a sense of impending doom. Pain in the chest or abdomen, with nausea and vomiting, can also occur. Increased abdominal pressure, defecation, and vigorous abdominal palpation can provoke a hypertensive crisis. Drugs such as tricyclic antidepressants, droperidol, glucagon, metoclopramide, phenothiazines, and naloxone can induce a hypertensive crisis in the patient with pheochromocytoma. Foods or beverages high in tyramine (e.g., aged cheese, red wine) also induce hypertension. The patient may also report heat intolerance, weight loss, and tremors.

The most common diagnostic test is a 24-hour urine collection for vanillylmandelic acid (VMA) (a product of catecholamine metabolism), metanephrine, and catecholamines, all of which are elevated in the presence of a pheochromocytoma. Other tests that may be conducted when catecholamine levels are not consistent include the clonidine suppression test and, rarely, stimulation testing. MRI or CT scans can precisely locate tumors in the adrenal gland. After diagnosis, CT scans of the chest and abdomen may be used to locate any other tumors.

INTERVENTIONS

Surgery is the main treatment for a pheochromocytoma. One or both adrenal glands are removed (depending on whether the tumor is bilateral). After surgery, nursing interventions focus on promoting adequate tissue perfusion, nutritional needs, and comfort measures.

Hypertension is the hallmark of the disease and the most common serious complication after surgery (Daub, 2008). Monitor the blood pressure regularly, and place the cuff consistently on the same arm, with the patient in lying and standing positions. Identify stressors that may lead to a hypertensive crisis, and attempt to reduce them. Teach the patient to not smoke, drink caffeine-containing beverages, or change position suddenly. Provide a diet rich in calories, vitamins, and minerals.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Do not palpate the abdomen of a patient with a pheochromocytoma, because this action could stimulate a sudden release of catecholamines and trigger severe hypertension.

The patient often benefits from hydration before surgery because decreased blood volume increases the risk for hypotension during and after surgery. Assess the patient's hydration status, and report manifestations of dehydration or fluid overload.

Provide a calm, restful environment for the patient who has a severe headache. Instruct the patient to limit activity. A private, darkened room helps promote rest. If the patient is sleeping, avoid interruptions if possible.

The patient's blood pressure is stabilized with adrenergic blocking agents such as phenoxybenzamine (Dibenzylin) starting several weeks before surgery because of the increased risk for severe hypertension during surgery (Tsegay et al., 2008). The drug dosages are adjusted for 2 to 3 weeks before surgery until blood pressure is controlled and hypertensive attacks do not occur. The blood volume expands, and blood pressure in the supine position returns to normal.

Anesthetic agents and touching of the tumor during surgery can cause a catecholamine release. Short-acting alpha-adrenergic blockers are given by IV bolus or continuous infusion for a hypertensive crisis.

Nursing care after surgery is similar to that for the patient who has undergone an adrenalectomy (see Hypercortisolism [Cushing's Disease], pp. 1387-1389). Closely monitor the patient for hypertension and for hypotension (from the sudden decrease in catecholamine levels) and for hypovolemia. Hemorrhage and shock are possible, and plasma expanders or fluids may be needed. Monitor vital signs, as well as fluid intake and output. If opioids are given, check for their effect on blood pressure.

Tumors may be inoperable because of the patient's other medical conditions. Management then is medical, with alpha-adrenergic and beta-adrenergic blocking agents, because the tumors do not respond well to chemotherapy or radiation therapy. For these patients, self-measurement of blood pressure with home monitoring equipment is essential. (See Chapter 38 for teaching priorities and community-based care of the patient with chronic hypertension.)

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Handle all patients with bone density loss carefully, using lift sheets whenever possible.
- Use good handwashing techniques before providing any care to a patient who is immunosuppressed.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Instruct the patient with adrenal insufficiency to wear a medical alert bracelet and to carry simple carbohydrates with them at all times.
- Teach the patient and family about the clinical manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Teach patients who have permanent endocrine hypofunction the proper techniques and timing of hormone replacement therapy.
- Teach patients with diabetes insipidus the proper way to self-administer desmopressin orally or by nasal spray.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Encourage the patient and family to express concerns about a change in health status.
- Explain all treatment procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient.
- Allow patients who experience a change in physical appearance to mourn this change.

Physiological Integrity

- Ensure that hormone replacement drugs are given as close to the prescribed times as possible.

- Use Infection Precautions for patients who are immunosuppressed.
- During the immediate period after a transsphenoidal or an endoscopic nasal hypophysectomy, teach the patient to avoid activities that increase intracranial pressure (e.g., bending at the waist, straining to have a bowel movement, coughing).
- Measure intake and output accurately on patients who have either diabetes insipidus or syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH).
- Teach the patient with diabetes insipidus the manifestations of dehydration.
- Do not palpate the abdomen of a patient who has a pheochromocytoma.

Care of Patients with Problems of the Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands

M. Linda Workman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Adjust the environment for the patient with severe hypothyroidism or thyrotoxicosis.
2. Ensure the availability of suction and emergency intubation equipment for anyone who has thyroid or parathyroid surgery.
3. Prevent injury in the patient who has bone density loss or hypocalcemia.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

4. Teach patients taking thyroid hormone inhibitors the correct timing of therapy, side effects, adverse effects, and when to seek medical assistance.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Be accepting of patient behavior and changes in appearance.

6. Inform patients and family members that changes in cognition and behavior resulting from thyroid problems are usually temporary.

Physiological Integrity

7. Compare the clinical manifestations of hyperthyroidism with those of hypothyroidism.
8. Interpret clinical changes and laboratory data to determine the effectiveness of interventions for thyroid problems.
9. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the first 24 hours after thyroid or parathyroid surgery.
10. Identify teaching priorities for the patient taking thyroid hormone replacement therapy.
11. Compare the clinical manifestations of hyperparathyroidism with those of hypoparathyroidism.

The thyroid and parathyroid glands secrete hormones that affect overall metabolism, electrolyte balance, and excitable membrane activity. Thus problems of either gland usually have widespread effects and manifestations. Mild disturbances produce subtle problems. More severe disturbances may produce life-threatening problems.

THYROID DISORDERS

HYPERTHYROIDISM

Pathophysiology

Hyperthyroidism is excessive thyroid hormone secretion from the thyroid gland. The manifestations of hyper-

thyroidism are called **thyrotoxicosis**, regardless of the origin of the thyroid hormones (Davies & Larsen, 2008). (For example, a person who takes a large amount of synthetic thyroid hormones can have thyrotoxicosis but does not have hyperthyroidism.) Thyroid hormones increase metabolism in all body organs, and excesses produce many different manifestations. Hyperthyroidism can be temporary or permanent, depending on the cause.

In hyperthyroidism the excessive thyroid hormones stimulate most body systems, causing hypermetabolism and increased sympathetic nervous system activity. Many of the manifestations are caused by the body's response to the demands of hypermetabolism (Chart 66-1).

Thyroid hormones stimulate the heart, increasing both heart rate and stroke volume. These responses increase

CHART 66-1 KEY FEATURES

Hyperthyroidism**Skin Manifestations**

- Diaphoresis (excessive sweating)
- Fine, soft, silky body hair
- Smooth, warm, moist skin
- Thinning of scalp hair

Pulmonary Manifestations

- Shortness of breath with or without exertion
- Rapid, shallow respirations
- Decreased vital capacity

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Palpitations
- Chest pain
- Increased systolic blood pressure
- Widened pulse pressure
- Tachycardia
- Dysrhythmias

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Weight loss
- Increased appetite
- Increased stools
- Hypoproteinemia

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Muscle weakness
- Muscle wasting

Neurologic Manifestations

- Blurred or double vision
- Eye fatigue
- Corneal ulcers or infections
- Increased tears
- Injected (red) conjunctiva
- Photophobia
- Eyelid retraction, eyelid lag*
- Globe lag*
- Hyperactive deep tendon reflexes
- Tremors
- Insomnia

Metabolic Manifestations

- Increased basal metabolic rate
- Heat intolerance
- Low-grade fever
- Fatigue

Psychological/Emotional Manifestations

- Decreased attention span
- Restlessness
- Irritability
- Emotional lability
- Manic behavior

Reproductive Manifestations

- Amenorrhea
- Decreased menstrual flow
- Increased libido

Other Manifestations

- Goiter
- Wide-eyed or startled appearance (exophthalmos)*
- Decreased total white blood cell count
- Enlarged spleen

*Present in Graves' disease only.

cardiac output, systolic blood pressure, and blood flow (Burton, 2011).

Elevated thyroid hormone levels affect protein, lipid, and carbohydrate metabolism. Protein **synthesis** (buildup) and **degradation** (breakdown) are increased, but breakdown exceeds buildup, causing a net loss of body protein known as a **negative nitrogen balance**. Glucose tolerance is decreased, and the patient has **hyperglycemia** (elevated blood glucose levels). Fat metabolism is increased, and body fat decreases. Although the patient has an increased appetite, the increased metabolism causes weight loss and nutritional deficiency.

Thyroid hormones are produced in response to the stimulation hormones secreted by the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary glands. Thus oversecretion of thyroid hormones changes the secretion of hormones from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary gland through negative feedback (see Chapter 64). Thyroid hormones also have some influence over sex hormone production in both men and women. Women have menstrual problems and decreased fertility.

Both men and women with hyperthyroidism have an increased **libido** (sexual urge or interest).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Hyperthyroidism has many causes, the most common of which is Graves' disease, also called *toxic diffuse goiter*. **Graves' disease** is an autoimmune disorder in which antibodies (thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins [TSIs]) are made and attach to the thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) receptors on the thyroid tissue. The thyroid gland responds by increasing the number and size of glandular cells, which enlarges the gland, forming a **goiter**, and overproduces thyroid hormones (thyrotoxicosis). Other manifestations specific to Graves' disease include **exophthalmos** (abnormal protrusion of the eyes) and **pretibial myxedema** (dry, waxy swelling of the front surfaces of the lower legs). *Not all patients with a goiter have hyperthyroidism.*

Hyperthyroidism caused by multiple thyroid nodules is termed **toxic multinodular goiter**. The nodules may be enlarged thyroid tissues or benign tumors (adenomas). These patients usually have had a goiter for years. The overproduction of thyroid hormones is milder than that seen in Graves' disease, and the patient does not have exophthalmos or pretibial edema.

Hyperthyroidism also can be caused by excessive use of thyroid replacement hormones. This type of problem is called **exogenous hyperthyroidism**.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Graves' disease has a strong association with other autoimmune disorders, such as diabetes mellitus, vitiligo, and rheumatoid arthritis. It often occurs in both members of identical twins, with an inheritance pattern of familial clustering or complex, which suggests a polygenic gene-environmental interaction (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

Incidence/Prevalence

Hyperthyroidism is a common endocrine disorder. Graves' disease can occur at any age but is diagnosed most often in women between 20 and 40 years of age, affecting women about ten times more often than men (Davies & Larsen, 2008). Toxic multinodular goiter usually occurs after the age of 50 and affects women four times more often than men (McCance et al, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE**ASSESSMENT****History**

The patient may have noticed many changes and problems because hyperthyroidism affects all body systems, although changes may occur over such a long period that not all patients are aware of them. Record age, gender, and usual weight. The patient may report a recent unplanned weight loss, an increased appetite, and an increase in the number of bowel movements per day.

A hallmark of hyperthyroidism is heat intolerance. The patient may have **diaphoresis** (increased sweating) even when environmental temperatures are comfortable for others. He or she often wears lighter clothing in cold weather. The patient



FIG. 66-1 Exophthalmos.

may also report palpitations or chest pain as a result of the cardiovascular effects. Ask about changes in breathing patterns, because dyspnea (with or without exertion) is common.

Visual changes may be the earliest problem the patient notices, especially exophthalmos with Graves' disease (Fig. 66-1). Ask about changes in vision, such as blurring or double vision and tiring of the eyes.

Ask whether he or she has noticed a change in energy level or in the ability to perform ADLs. Fatigue, weakness, and insomnia are common. Family and friends may report that the patient has become irritable or depressed.

Ask women about changes in menses, because amenorrhea or a decreased menstrual flow is common. Initially, both men and women may have an increase in libido, but this changes as the patient becomes more fatigued.

Explore the patient's medical history. Information about previous thyroid surgery or radiation therapy to the neck is important to obtain because some people remain hyperthyroid after surgery or are resistant to radiation therapy. Ask about past and current drugs, especially the use of thyroid hormone replacement or antithyroid drugs.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Exophthalmos is common in patients with Graves' disease. The wide-eyed or "startled" look is due to edema in the extraocular muscles and increased fatty tissue behind the eye, which pushes the eyeball forward. Pressure on the optic nerve may impair vision. Swelling and shortening of the muscles may cause problems with focusing. If the eyelid fails to close completely and the eye is unprotected, the eye may become overly dry and develop corneal ulcers or infection. Observe the patient's eyes for excessive tearing and a bloodshot appearance, and ask about sensitivity to light (**photophobia**).

Observe the patient's general appearance. In addition to the exophthalmos of Graves' disease, two other eye problems are common in all types of hyperthyroidism: eyelid retraction (eyelid lag) and globe (eyeball) lag. In eyelid lag, the upper eyelid fails to descend when the patient gazes slowly



FIG. 66-2 Goiter.

TABLE 66-1 GOITER CLASSIFICATION

GOITER GRADE	DESCRIPTION
0	No palpable or visible goiter.
1	Mass is not visible with neck in the normal position. Goiter can be palpated and moves up when the patient swallows.
2	Mass is visible as swelling when the neck is in the normal position. Goiter is easily palpated and is usually asymmetric.

downward. In globe lag, the upper eyelid pulls back faster than the eyeball when the patient gazes upward. During assessment, ask the patient to look down and then up, and document the response.

Observe the size and symmetry of the thyroid gland. Palpate the thyroid gland to assess the presence of a mass or general enlargement. In goiter, a generalized thyroid enlargement, the thyroid gland may increase to four times its normal size (Fig. 66-2). Goiters are common in Graves' disease and are classified by size (Table 66-1). **Bruits** (turbulence from increased blood flow) may be heard in the neck with a stethoscope. (See Chapter 64 for thyroid palpation and auscultation.)

The cardiovascular problems of hyperthyroidism include increased systolic blood pressure, tachycardia, and dysrhythmias. Usually the diastolic pressure is decreased, causing a widened pulse pressure.

Inspect the hair and skin. Fine, soft, silky hair and smooth, warm, moist skin are common. Muscle weakness and hyperactive deep tendon reflexes are common. Observe motor movements of the hands for tremors. The patient may appear restless, irritable, and fatigued.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with hyperthyroidism often has wide mood swings, irritability, decreased attention span, and manic behavior. Hyperactivity often leads to fatigue because of the inability to sleep well. Some patients describe their activity as

having two modes—either “full speed ahead” or “completely stopped.” Ask whether he or she cries or laughs without cause or has difficulty concentrating. Family members often report a change in the patient’s mental or emotional status.

Laboratory Assessment

Testing for hyperthyroidism involves measurement of blood values for triiodothyronine (T_3), thyroxine (T_4), T_3 resin uptake (T_3RU), and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). Antibodies to TSH (TSH-RAb) are measured to diagnose Graves’ disease. The most common changes in laboratory tests for Graves’ disease and other forms of hyperthyroidism are listed in Chart 66-2.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Thyroid scan evaluates the position, size, and functioning of the thyroid gland. Radioactive iodine (RAI [^{123}I]) is given by mouth, and the uptake of iodine by the thyroid gland (radioactive iodine uptake [RAIU]) is measured. The half-life of ^{123}I is short, and radiation precautions are not needed. Pregnancy should be ruled out before the scan is performed. The normal thyroid gland has an uptake of 5% to 35% of the given dose at 24 hours. RAIU is increased in hyperthyroidism.

Assess whether the patient has undergone procedures or has taken drugs that might affect the results of the scan. Procedures that use iodine-containing dye (e.g., renography) should not be performed for at least 4 weeks before a thyroid scan is done. Any drug that contains iodine should be discontinued for 1 week before the scan.

Ultrasonography of the thyroid gland can determine its size and the general composition of any masses or nodules. This

procedure takes about 30 minutes to perform and is painless.

Electrocardiography (ECG) usually shows tachycardia. Other ECG changes with hyperthyroidism include atrial fibrillation, dysrhythmias, and changes in P and T waveforms.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Why is a goiter often present in clients who have Graves’ disease?

- The low circulating levels of thyroid hormones stimulate the feedback system and trigger the anterior pituitary gland to secrete more thyroid-stimulating hormone, which increases the numbers and size of glandular cells in the thyroid gland.
- The autoantibodies stimulate the inflammatory and immune responses to increase the number of white blood cells circulating in the thyroid gland, which increases tissue size without increasing the number of glandular cells.
- The excessive autoantibodies bind to the thyroid hormone receptor sites, which increases the number and size of glandular cells in the thyroid gland.
- The autoantibodies stimulate blood vessel growth and blood storage within the thyroid gland, increasing its overall size.

INTERVENTIONS

Because Graves’ disease is the most common form of hyperthyroidism, the interventions discussed in the following sections include those specific for the problems that occur with Graves’ disease. The purposes of medical management are to decrease the effect of thyroid hormone on cardiac function

CHART 66-2 LABORATORY PROFILE

Thyroid Function

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS	
		HYPERTHYROIDISM	HYPOTHYROIDISM
Serum T_3	70-205 ng/dL, or 1.2-3.4 SI units	Increased	Decreased
Serum T_4	4-12 mcg/dL, or 51-154 SI units	Increased	Decreased
Free T_4 index	0.8-2.4 ng/dL, or 10-31 SI units	Increased	Decreased
T_3 resin uptake	24%-34% (varies with different laboratories)	Increased	Decreased
TRH stimulation test	Doubling of baseline TSH 30 min after IV injection of 500 mcg TRH (women have greater response)	Little or no TSH response	Delayed or poor TSH response in secondary hypothyroidism (pituitary failure) Elevated two or more times the normal in primary hypothyroidism (thyroid gland failure)
Thyroid suppression test	N/A	Fails to suppress RAIU or T_4 levels	No change in RAIU or T_4 levels
TSH stimulation test (thyroid stimulation test)	>10% in RAIU or >1.5 mcg/dL	N/A (test differentiates primary from secondary hypothyroidism)	No response in primary hypothyroidism Normal response in secondary hypothyroidism
Thyroid antibodies (antithyroglobulin antibody)	Titer <1:100	High titer of antithyroglobulin antibodies	Increased titers
Thyrotropin receptor antibodies (TSH-RAb)	Titer <130% of basal activity	High titers indicate Graves’ disease	No response
TSH	0.3-5.0 μ U/mL or 0.3-5.0 SI units.	Low in Graves’ disease High in secondary or tertiary hyperthyroidism	High in primary disease Low in secondary or tertiary disease

N/A, Not applicable; RAIU, radioactive iodine uptake; SI, International System of Units; T_3 , triiodothyronine; T_4 , thyroxine; TRH, thyrotropin-releasing hormone; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

and to reduce thyroid hormone secretion. The priorities for nursing care focus on monitoring for complications, reducing stimulation, promoting comfort, and teaching the patient and family about therapeutic drugs and procedures.

Nonsurgical Management

Monitoring includes measuring the patient's apical pulse, blood pressure (BP), and temperature at least every 4 hours. Instruct the patient to report immediately any palpitations, dyspnea, vertigo, or chest pain. Increases in temperature may indicate a rapid worsening of the patient's condition and the onset of **thyroid storm**, a life-threatening event that occurs with uncontrolled hyperthyroidism and is characterized by high fever and severe hypertension. *Immediately report a temperature increase of even one degree Fahrenheit.* If this task is delegated to unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP), instruct them to report the patient's temperature to you as soon as it has been obtained. If a temperature elevation is reported, immediately assess the patient's cardiac status. If the patient has a cardiac monitor, check for dysrhythmias.

Reducing stimulation is important because a noisy or stressful environment can increase the manifestations of hyperthyroidism and increase the risk for cardiac complications. Encourage the patient to rest. Keep the environment as quiet as possible by closing the door to his or her room, limiting visitors, and eliminating or postponing nonessential care or treatments.

Promoting comfort can be accomplished through actions such as reducing the room temperature to decrease discomfort caused by heat intolerance. Instruct UAP to ensure the patient always has a fresh pitcher of ice water and to change the bed linen whenever it becomes damp from diaphoresis. Suggest that the patient take a cool shower several times each day. If showering is not possible, cool sponge baths may increase comfort. Prevent eye dryness in patients with exophthalmos by encouraging the use of artificial tears and by taping the eyelids closed for sleep.

Drug therapy with antithyroid drugs is the initial treatment of hyperthyroidism. **Chart 66-3** lists teaching priorities for the patient receiving drug therapy for hyperthyroidism. The preferred drugs are the thionamides, which include propylthiouracil (PTU) and methimazole (Tapazole). These drugs block thyroid hormone production by preventing iodide binding in the thyroid gland (see **Chart 66-3**). In addition, PTU also prevents T_4 from being converted to the more powerful T_3 in the tissues. Methimazole doses are lower than PTU doses. The response to these drugs is delayed because the patient may have large amounts of stored thyroid hormones that continue to be released.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Both propylthiouracil and methimazole are effective but dangerous drugs. Propylthiouracil now has a black box warning because it is associated with an incidence of serious liver injury and liver failure. Methimazole can cause birth defects. The Food and Drug Administration recommends that unless a patient is pregnant or is allergic to methimazole, propylthiouracil should be avoided. Assess any patient taking propylthiouracil for manifestations of liver problems (e.g., yellowing of the sclera and skin, dark urine, clay-colored stools, elevated liver enzymes) (Aschenbrenner, 2009).

Iodine preparations may be used for short-term therapy before surgery. They decrease blood flow through the thyroid gland, reducing the production and release of thyroid hormone. Improvement usually occurs within 2 weeks, but it may be weeks before metabolism returns to normal. This treatment can result in hypothyroidism, and the patient is monitored closely for the need to adjust the drug regimen.

Lithium also inhibits thyroid hormone release. However, its use is limited because of side effects such as depression, diabetes insipidus, tremors, nausea, and vomiting. Lithium may be used for a patient who cannot tolerate other antithyroid drugs.

Beta-adrenergic blocking drugs, such as propranolol (Inderal, Detensol ) may be used as supportive therapy. These drugs relieve diaphoresis, anxiety, tachycardia, and palpitations but do not inhibit thyroid hormone production. See **Chapters 36 and 40** for a discussion of the actions and nursing implications of these agents.

Radioactive iodine (RAI) therapy is not used in pregnant women because ^{131}I crosses the placenta and can damage the fetal thyroid gland. The patient with hyperthyroidism may receive RAI in the form of oral ^{131}I . The dosage depends on the thyroid gland's size and sensitivity to radiation. The thyroid gland picks up the RAI, and some of the cells that produce thyroid hormone are destroyed by the local radiation. Because the thyroid gland stores thyroid hormones to some degree, the patient may not have complete symptom relief until 6 to 8 weeks after RAI therapy. Additional drug therapy for hyperthyroidism is still needed during the first few weeks after RAI treatment.

RAI therapy is performed on an outpatient basis. One dose may be sufficient, although some patients need a second or third dose. The radiation dose is low and is usually completely eliminated within a month; however, the source is unsealed, and some radioactivity is present in the patient's body fluids and stool for a few weeks after therapy (Al-Shakhray, 2008). Radiation precautions are needed to prevent exposure to family members and other people. **Chart 66-4** lists precautions to teach the patient during the first few weeks after receiving ^{131}I .

The degree of thyroid destruction varies. Some patients become hypothyroid as a result of treatment. This problem may occur within a few weeks, or it may take several years to develop. The patient then needs lifelong thyroid hormone replacement. All patients who have undergone RAI therapy should be monitored regularly for changes in thyroid function.

Surgical Management

Antithyroid drugs and RAI therapy are now the most common treatments for patients with hyperthyroidism. Surgery to remove all or part of the thyroid gland may be needed for patients who have a large goiter causing tracheal or esophageal compression or who do not have a good response to antithyroid drugs. Removal of all (**total thyroidectomy**) or part (**subtotal thyroidectomy**) of the thyroid tissue decreases the production of thyroid hormones. After a total thyroidectomy, patients must take lifelong thyroid hormone replacement.

Preoperative Care. If possible, the patient is treated with drug therapy first to have near-normal thyroid function (**euthyroid**) before thyroid surgery. This state is achieved

Hyperthyroidism

DRUG/USUAL DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTION	RATIONALE
For Treatment of Mild to Moderate Hyperthyroidism			
Propylthiouracil (PTU, Propyl-Thyracil ) Initial dose 100-150 mg orally every 8 hr Maintenance dose 50-150 mg orally every 8 hr	Reduces manifestations of hyperthyroidism by preventing the new formation of thyroid hormones by inhibiting thyroid binding of iodide and by preventing the conversion of T ₄ to T ₃ in the tissues.	Teach patient to take the drug every 8 hr. Teach patient to avoid crowds and people who are ill. Teach patient to report darkening of the urine, a yellow appearance to the skin or whites of the eyes, and an increased tendency to bruise or bleed. Teach patient to check for weight gain, slow heart rate, and cold intolerance.	Taking the drug evenly throughout the day results in better drug action. Drug reduces blood cell counts and the immune response, increasing the risk for infection. These manifestations may indicate liver toxicity or failure, a possible side effect of the drug. These indicate hypothyroidism and may require a lower drug dose.
Methimazole (Northyx, Tapazole) Initial dose 5-20 mg orally every 8 hr Maintenance dose 1-4 mg orally every 8 hr	Reduces manifestations of hyperthyroidism by preventing the new formation of thyroid hormones by inhibiting thyroid binding of iodide.	Teach patient to take the drug every 8 hr. Remind women to notify their health care providers if they become pregnant. Teach patient to avoid crowds and people who are ill. Teach patient to check for weight gain, slow heart rate, and cold intolerance. Teach patient about the possibility of muscle and joint pain.	Taking the drug evenly throughout the day results in better drug action. This drug causes birth defects and should not be used during pregnancy. Drug reduces blood cell counts and the immune response, increasing the risk for infection. These indicate hypothyroidism and may require a lower drug dose. Knowing the side effects to expect reduces anxiety.
Lithium carbonate (Eskalith, Lithobid, Lithonate) 300 mg orally every 8 hr	Reduces the manifestations of hyperthyroidism by inhibiting the release of thyroid hormones (temporarily). Used only when the patient cannot take a thionamide.	Teach patient to take the drug every 8 hr. Teach patient to drink at least 3 to 4 quarts of fluids daily. Teach patient to check for weight gain, slow heart rate, and cold intolerance.	Taking the drug evenly throughout the day results in better drug action. Drug increases urine output and can cause dehydration. These indicate hypothyroidism and may require a lower drug dose.
For Initial Treatment of Severe Hyperthyroidism or Thyrotoxicosis			
Iodine and iodine-containing agents: Lugol's solution Saturated solution of potassium iodide (SSKI) Dosages vary depending on the agent, how the drug is administered, and the severity of the manifestations	The sudden excess of iodine rapidly inhibits thyroid hormone release and dramatically (but temporarily) resolves the cardiac and other manifestations of hyperthyroidism. These agents are not recommended for long-term therapy.	Administer these drugs 1 hour <i>after</i> a thionamide has been given. Check patient for a fever or rash, and ask about a metallic taste, mouth sores, sore throat, or GI distress.	Initially, the iodine agents can cause an increase in the production of thyroid hormones. Giving a thionamide first prevents this initial increase in thyroid hormone production. These are manifestations of <i>iodism</i> , a toxic effect of the drugs, and may require that the drug be discontinued.

CHART 66-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Safety Precautions for the Patient Receiving an Unsealed Radioactive Isotope

- Use a toilet that is not used by others for least 2 weeks after receiving the radioactive iodine.
- Sit to urinate (males and females) to avoid splashing the seat, walls, and floor.
- Flush the toilet three times after each use.
- If urine is spilled on the toilet seat or floor, use paper tissues or towels to clean it up, bag them in sealable plastic bags, and take them to the hospital's radiation therapy department.
- Men with urinary incontinence should use condom catheters and a drainage bag rather than absorbent gel-filled briefs or pads.
- Women with urinary incontinence should use facial tissue layers in their clothing to catch the urine rather than absorbent gel-filled briefs or pads.
- Using a laxative on the second and third days after receiving the radioactive drug helps you excrete the contaminated stool faster (this also decreases the exposure of your abdominal organs to radiation).
- Wear only machine-washable clothing, and wash these items separately from others in your household.
- After washing your clothing, run the washing machine for a full cycle on empty before it is used to wash the clothing of others.
- Avoid close contact with pregnant women, infants, and young children for the first week after therapy. Remain at least 3 feet (about 1 meter) away from these people, and limit your exposure to them to no more than 1 hour daily.
- Some radioactivity will be in your saliva during the first week after therapy. Precautions to avoid exposing others to this contamination (both household members and trash collectors) include:
 - Not sharing toothbrushes or toothpaste tubes
 - Using disposable tissues, rather than cloth handkerchiefs, and either flushing used ones down the toilet or keeping them in a plastic bag and turning them in to the radiation department of the hospital for disposal
 - Use disposable utensils, plates, and cups
 - Selecting foods that can be eaten completely and do not result in a saliva-coated remnant (Foods to avoid are fruit with a core that can be contaminated, meat with a bone [e.g., chicken wings or legs, ribs])

with antithyroid drugs that decrease the secretion of thyroid hormones. In addition, iodine preparations are used to decrease thyroid size and vascularity, thereby reducing the risk for hemorrhage and the potential for thyroid storm during surgery.

Hypertension, dysrhythmias, and tachycardia must be controlled before surgery. The patient with hyperthyroidism is often not at an optimal weight and may need to follow a high-protein, high-carbohydrate diet for days or weeks before surgery.

Teach the patient to perform coughing and deep-breathing exercises. Stress the importance of supporting the neck when coughing or moving by placing both hands behind the neck. This action reduces the strain on the suture line. Explain that hoarseness may be present for a few days as a result of endotracheal tube placement during surgery.

Patients often fear thyroid surgery, perhaps because the incision is on the neck. Reassure the patient by calmly explaining the surgery and the care after surgery. Remind him or her that a drain as well as a dressing may be in place after surgery. Answer any questions the patient and family have.

Operative Procedures. A thyroidectomy is performed with the patient under general anesthesia. In the traditional open approach, the patient's neck is extended and the surgeon makes a "collar" incision just above the clavicle. The surgeon attempts to avoid the parathyroid glands and recurrent laryngeal nerves to reduce the risk for complications and injury. Minimally invasive video-assisted thyroidectomy is being used for some patients (Snissarenko et al., 2009).

With a subtotal thyroidectomy, the remaining thyroid tissues are sutured to the trachea. With a total thyroidectomy, the entire thyroid gland is removed but the parathyroid glands are left with an intact blood supply to prevent causing hypoparathyroidism.

Postoperative Care. Monitoring the patient for complications is the most important nursing action after thyroid surgery. Monitor vital signs every 15 minutes until the patient is stable and then every 30 minutes for 24 hours. Increase or decrease the monitoring of vital signs based on changes in the patient's condition.

Assess the patient's level of discomfort. Use sandbags or pillows to support the head and neck. Place the patient, while he or she is awake, in a semi-Fowler's position. When positioning the patient, decrease tension on the suture line by avoiding neck extension. Give prescribed drugs for pain control as needed.

Humidifying the air promotes easier respiration and thins respiratory secretions. Assist the patient to cough and deep-breathe every 30 minutes to 1 hour. Suction oral and tracheal secretions when necessary.

Thyroid surgery can cause hemorrhage, respiratory distress, parathyroid gland injury (resulting in **hypocalcemia** [low serum calcium levels] and **tetany** [hyperexcitability of nerves and muscles]), damage to the laryngeal nerves, and thyroid storm. Remain alert to the potential for complications, and identify manifestations early.

Hemorrhage is most likely to occur during the first 24 hours after surgery. Inspect the neck dressing and behind the patient's neck for blood. A drain may be present, and a moderate amount of serosanguineous drainage is normal. Hemorrhage may be seen as bleeding at the incision site or as respiratory distress caused by tracheal compression.

Respiratory distress can result from swelling, tetany, or damage to the laryngeal nerve resulting in spasms. Laryngeal **stridor** (harsh, high-pitched respiratory sounds) is heard in acute respiratory obstruction. Keep emergency tracheostomy equipment in the patient's room. Check that oxygen and suctioning equipment are nearby and in working order.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When stridor, dyspnea, or other symptoms of obstruction appear after thyroid surgery, notify the Rapid Response Team. In some agencies, nurses can remove clips or sutures when medical assistance is not immediately available and swelling at the surgical site is obstructing the airway.

Hypocalcemia and tetany may occur if the parathyroid glands are removed, damaged or their blood supply is impaired during thyroid surgery, resulting in decreased parathyroid hormone (PTH) levels. Ask the patient hourly about tingling around the mouth or of the toes and fingers. Assess for muscle twitching as a sign of calcium deficiency. Calcium gluconate or calcium chloride for IV use should be available in an emergency situation. (For information on the later signs of hypocalcemia, see the discussion of postoperative care on p. 1407 in the Hyperparathyroidism section, and p. 1408 in the Assessment discussion in the Hypoparathyroidism section. The care of patients with hypocalcemia is also discussed in Chapter 13.)

Laryngeal nerve damage may occur during surgery. This problem results in hoarseness and a weak voice. Assess the patient's voice at 2-hour intervals, and document any changes. Reassure the patient that hoarseness is usually temporary.

Thyroid storm, or **thyroid crisis**, is a life-threatening event that occurs in patients with uncontrolled hyperthyroidism and occurs most often with Graves' disease (McAdams-Jones, 2008). Manifestations of crisis develop quickly. It is often triggered by stressors such as trauma, infection, diabetic ketoacidosis, and pregnancy. Other conditions that can lead to thyroid storm include vigorous palpation of the goiter, exposure to iodine, and radioactive iodine (RAI) therapy. Although thyroid storm after surgery is less common because patients receive antithyroid drugs, beta blockers, and iodides before thyroid surgery, it can still occur.

The manifestations of thyroid storm are caused by excessive thyroid hormone release, which dramatically increases metabolic rate. *Key manifestations include fever, tachycardia, and systolic hypertension.* The patient may have GI problems such as abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Often he or she is very anxious and has tremors. As the crisis progresses, the patient may become restless, confused, or psychotic and may have seizures, leading to coma. *Even with treatment, thyroid storm may lead to death.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When caring for a patient with hyperthyroidism, even after a partial thyroidectomy, immediately report a temperature increase of even 1° F because it may indicate an impending thyroid crisis.

CHART 66-5 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient During Thyroid Storm

- Maintain a patent airway and adequate ventilation.
- Give antithyroid drugs as prescribed: methimazole (Tapazole), up to 60 mg daily; propylthiouracil (PTU, Propyl-Thyracil ) , 300 to 900 mg daily.
- Administer sodium iodide solution, 2 g IV daily as prescribed.
- Give propranolol (Inderal, Detensol ) , 1 to 3 mg IV as prescribed. Give slowly over 3 minutes. The patient should be connected to a cardiac monitor, and a central venous pressure catheter should be in place.
- Give glucocorticoids as prescribed: hydrocortisone, 100 to 500 mg IV daily; prednisone, 4 to 60 mg IV daily; or dexamethasone, 2 mg IM every 6 hours.
- Monitor continually for cardiac dysrhythmias.
- Monitor vital signs every 30 minutes.
- Provide comfort measures, including a cooling blanket.
- Give non-salicylate antipyretics as prescribed.
- Correct dehydration with normal saline infusions.
- Apply cooling blanket or ice packs to reduce fever.

Emergency measures to prevent death vary with the intensity and type of specific symptoms. After the cause has been identified, interventions focus on maintaining airway patency, providing adequate ventilation, reducing fever, and stabilizing the hemodynamic status. [Chart 66-5](#) outlines the best practices for emergency management of thyroid storm.

Eye and vision problems of Graves' disease are not corrected by treatment for hyperthyroidism. Treatment of infiltrative ophthalmopathy is symptomatic. Teach the patient with mild symptoms to elevate the head of the bed at night and to use artificial tears. If [photophobia](#) (sensitivity to light) is present, dark glasses or eye patches are often helpful. For those who cannot close the eyelids completely, recommend gently taping the lids closed with nonallergenic tape at bedtime. These actions prevent irritation and injury. If pressure behind the eye continues and forces the eye forward, blood supply to the eye can be compromised, leading to ischemia and blindness.

In severe cases, short-term steroid therapy is prescribed to reduce swelling and halt the infiltrative process. Prednisone (Deltasone, Winpred ) is given in high doses (often 120 mg daily) at first and then is tapered down according to the patient's response. Explain the need to reduce the prednisone gradually, and review its side effects with the patient.

Diuretics may be prescribed to decrease edema around the eye. Surgical intervention (orbital decompression) may be needed if loss of sight or damage to the eyeball is possible. However, it is not usually performed for cosmetic reasons alone ([Leung et al., 2009](#)).

Health teaching includes reviewing with the patient and family the manifestations of hyperthyroidism and instructing the patient to report an increase or recurrence of symptoms. Also teach about the manifestations of hypothyroidism (discussed in the next section) and the need for thyroid hormone replacement. Reinforce the need for regular follow-up because hypothyroidism can occur several years after radioactive iodine therapy.

If the patient has had surgery, the surgeon usually removes the sutures on the third or fourth postoperative day. Teach the patient to inspect the incision area and to report redness, tenderness, drainage, or swelling to the surgeon.

The discharged patient may continue to have mood changes as a result of hyperthyroidism. Explain the reason for mood swings to the patient and family, and reassure them that these will decrease with continued treatment.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

You are preparing the patient who is 2 days postoperative from a total thyroidectomy for Graves' disease to be discharged to home. She is relieved the surgery is over and tells you that she is so happy that drugs are no longer needed and that her appearance, especially the goiter and the protruding eyes, will return to normal. However, she is concerned that her voice is still hoarse today, although less so than yesterday.

1. Is she correct in thinking that drugs are no longer needed? Why or why not?
2. What will you teach her about her appearance?
3. What will you teach her about the hoarseness?
4. What are the additional teaching priorities for this patient?

HYPOTHYROIDISM

Pathophysiology

The manifestations of hypothyroidism ([Chart 66-6](#)) are the result of decreased metabolism from low levels of thyroid hormones. Thyroid cells may fail to produce sufficient levels of thyroid hormones (THs) for several reasons. Sometimes the cells themselves are damaged and no longer function normally. At other times, the thyroid cells are functional but the person does not ingest enough of the substances needed to make thyroid hormones, especially iodide and tyrosine. When the production of thyroid hormones is too low or absent, the blood levels of TH are very low and the patient has a decreased metabolic rate. This lowered metabolism causes the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary gland to make stimulatory hormones, especially thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), in an attempt to trigger hormone release from the poorly responsive thyroid gland. The TSH binds to thyroid cells and causes the thyroid gland to enlarge, forming a goiter, although thyroid hormone production does not increase.

Most tissues and organs are affected by the low metabolic rate caused by hypothyroidism. Cellular energy is decreased, and metabolites that are compounds of proteins and sugars called *glycosaminoglycans* build up inside cells; this buildup increases the mucus and water, forms cellular edema, and changes organ texture. The edema is mucinous (called [myxedema](#)), rather than edema caused by water alone, and changes the patient's appearance ([Fig. 66-3](#)). Nonpitting edema forms everywhere, especially around the eyes, in the hands and feet, and between the shoulder blades. The tongue thickens, and edema forms in the larynx, making the voice husky. All general physiologic function is decreased.

[Myxedema coma](#) is a rare, serious complication of untreated or poorly treated hypothyroidism. The decreased metabolism causes the heart muscle to become flabby and the

CHART 66-6 KEY FEATURES

Hypothyroidism**Skin Manifestations**

- Cool, pale or yellowish, dry, coarse, scaly skin
- Thick, brittle nails
- Dry, coarse, brittle hair
- Decreased hair growth, with loss of eyebrow hair
- Poor wound healing

Pulmonary Manifestations

- Hypoventilation
- Pleural effusion
- Dyspnea

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Bradycardia
- Dysrhythmias
- Enlarged heart
- Decreased activity tolerance
- Hypotension

Metabolic Manifestations

- Decreased basal metabolic rate
- Decreased body temperature
- Cold intolerance

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Muscle aches and pains
- Delayed contraction and relaxation of muscles

Neurologic Manifestations

- Slowing of intellectual functions:
 - Slowness or slurring of speech
 - Impaired memory
 - Inattentiveness
- Lethargy or somnolence
- Confusion
- Hearing loss
- Paresthesia (numbness and tingling) of the extremities
- Decreased tendon reflexes

Psychological/Emotional Manifestations

- Apathy
- Depression
- Paranoia
- Withdrawal

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Anorexia
- Weight gain
- Constipation
- Abdominal distention

Reproductive Manifestations**Women**

- Changes in menses (amenorrhea or prolonged menstrual periods)
- Anovulation
- Decreased libido

Men

- Decreased libido
- Impotence

Other Manifestations

- Periorbital edema
- Facial puffiness
- Nonpitting edema of the hands and feet
- Hoarseness
- Goiter (enlarged thyroid gland)
- Thick tongue
- Increased sensitivity to opioids and tranquilizers
- Weakness, fatigue
- Decreased urine output
- Anemia
- Easy bruising
- Iron deficiency
- Folate deficiency
- Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency



FIG. 66-3 Myxedema.

TABLE 66-2 CAUSES OF HYPOTHYROIDISM

Primary Causes**Decreased Thyroid Tissue**

- Surgical removal of the thyroid
- Radiation-induced thyroid destruction
- Autoimmune thyroid destruction
- Congenital thyroid agenesis
- Congenital thyroid hypoplasia
- Congenital thyroid dysgenesis
- Cancer (thyroidal or metastatic)

Decreased Synthesis of Thyroid Hormone

- Endemic iodine deficiency
- Excessive exposure to iodine
- Drugs
 - Lithium
 - Phenylbutazone
 - Propylthiouracil
 - Sodium or potassium perchlorate
 - Aminogluthethimide

Secondary Causes**Inadequate Production of Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone**

- Pituitary tumors, trauma, infections, or infarcts
- Congenital pituitary defects
- Hypothalamic tumors, trauma, infections, or infarcts

chamber size to increase. The result is decreased cardiac output and decreased perfusion to the brain and other vital organs. The decreased perfusion makes the already slowed cellular metabolism worse, resulting in tissue and organ failure. *The mortality rate for myxedema coma is extremely high, and this condition is considered a life-threatening emergency.* Myxedema coma can be caused by a variety of events, drugs, or conditions.

Etiology

Most cases of hypothyroidism in the United States occur as a result of thyroid surgery and radioactive iodine (RAI) treatment of hyperthyroidism. Worldwide, hypothyroidism is common in areas where the soil and water have little natural iodide, causing endemic goiter. (This problem was common in the midwest region of the United States before iodide was

added to table salt and before saltwater fish was widely available.) Hypothyroidism is also caused by a variety of other conditions (Table 66-2).

Incidence/Prevalence

Hypothyroidism occurs most often in women between 30 and 60 years of age. Women are affected 7 to 10 times more often than men (McCance et al., 2010). An association exists between the development of hypothyroidism and diabetes mellitus. Incidence increases with age.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

A decrease in thyroid hormones produces many manifestations related to decreased metabolism. However, changes may have occurred slowly, often over weeks or months, and the patient may not have noticed them. Ask him or her to compare activity now with that of a year ago. The patient often reports an increase in time spent sleeping, sometimes up to 14 to 16 hours daily. Generalized weakness, anorexia, muscle aches, and paresthesias may also be present. Constipation is common, as is cold intolerance. Ask whether more blankets at night or sweaters and extra clothing, even in warm weather, have been needed. Some of these changes may be subtle and missed because they are considered part of the aging process.

Both men and women with hypothyroidism may report a decrease in libido. Women may have had difficulty becoming pregnant or have changes in menses (heavy, prolonged bleeding or amenorrhea). Men may have problems with impotence and infertility.

Ask the patient about current or previous use of drugs, such as lithium, thiocyanates, aminoglutethimide, sodium or potassium perchlorate, or cobalt. All these drugs can impair thyroid hormone production. In particular, the cardiac drug *amiodarone* (Cordarone) often has damaging effects on the thyroid gland (Kessenich & Higgs, 2010). Also determine whether the patient has ever been treated for hyperthyroidism and what specific treatment was used.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Observe the patient's overall appearance. Fig. 66-3 shows the typical appearance of an adult with hypothyroidism. Common changes include coarse features, edema around the eyes and face, a blank expression, and a thick tongue. The patient's overall muscle movement is slow. He or she may not speak clearly and may take a longer time to respond to questions.

Cardiac and respiratory functions are decreased. Heart rate may be below 60 beats per minute, and respiratory rate may be slower than normal. The patient's body temperature is often lower than 97° F.

Weight gain is very common, even when the person is ingesting an appropriate number of calories for size, age, and gender. Weigh the patient, and ask whether the result is the same or different from his or her weight a year ago.

Depending on the cause of hypothyroidism, the patient may have a goiter. However, some types of hypothyroidism do not induce a goiter and some types of hyperthyroidism do. Therefore the presence of a goiter suggests a thyroid problem but does not indicate whether the problem is excessive hormone secretion or too little hormone secretion.

Psychosocial Assessment

Hypothyroidism causes many problems in psychosocial functioning. Depression is the most common reason for seeking medical attention. Family members often bring the patient for the initial evaluation. The patient may be too lethargic, apathetic, or drowsy to recognize changes in his or her condition. Families may report that the patient is withdrawn and has reduced mental function. Assess his or her attention span

and memory, both of which can be impaired by hypothyroidism. Weight gain may have a negative affect on body image. The mental slowness can contribute to social isolation.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory findings for hypothyroidism are the opposite of those for hyperthyroidism. Triiodothyronine (T_3) and thyroxine (T_4) serum levels are decreased. TSH levels are high in primary hypothyroidism but can be decreased or near normal in patients with secondary hypothyroidism (see Chart 66-2). Patients older than 80 years may have lower-than-normal levels of thyroid hormones without manifestations of hypothyroidism, and hormone replacement is not used until other manifestations are present (Touhy & Jett, 2010).

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients who have hypothyroidism are:

1. Decreased oxygenation related to decreased energy, obesity, muscle weakness, and fatigue
2. Hypotension related to altered heart rate and rhythm as a result of decreased myocardial metabolism
3. Altered cognitive functioning related to impaired brain metabolism and edema
4. Potential for myxedema coma

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Both cardiac and respiratory problems are serious, and their management is a priority. However, the most common cause of death among patients with myxedema coma is respiratory failure.

Improving Oxygenation

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypothyroidism is expected to have improved respiratory function and oxygenation. Indicators include:

- Maintenance of SpO_2 of at least 90%
- Absence of cyanosis
- Maintenance of cognitive orientation

Interventions. Observe and record the rate and depth of respirations. Measure oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry, and apply oxygen if the patient has hypoxemia. Auscultate the lungs for any problems, such as a decrease in breath sounds. If hypothyroidism is severe, the patient may have such severe respiratory distress that ventilatory support is required. Severe respiratory distress often occurs with myxedema coma.

Sedating a patient with hypothyroidism can make respiratory difficulties worse and is avoided, if possible. When sedation is needed, the dosage is reduced because hypothyroidism increases sensitivity to these drugs. Assess the patient receiving sedation for respiratory adequacy.

Preventing Hypotension

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypothyroidism is expected to have adequate cardiovascular function and tissue perfusion. Indicators include that the patient:

- Maintains heart rate above 60 beats/min
- Maintains blood pressure within normal limits for his or her age and general health
- Has no dysrhythmias, peripheral edema, or neck vein distention

Interventions. The patient with hypothyroidism can have decreased blood pressure, bradycardia, and dysrhythmias. Priority nursing actions are focused on monitoring for condition changes and preventing complications. Monitor blood pressure and heart rate and rhythm, and observe closely for signs of shock, such as hypotension, decreasing urine output, and changes in mental status.

If hypothyroidism has been chronic, the patient may have cardiovascular disease. Instruct the patient to report episodes of chest pain or chest discomfort immediately.

The patient with hypothyroidism requires lifelong thyroid hormone replacement. Synthetic hormone preparations are usually prescribed. The most common is levothyroxine sodium (Synthroid, T₄, Eltroxin ). Therapy is started with low doses and gradually increased over a period of weeks. The patient with more severe symptoms of hypothyroidism is started on the lowest dose of thyroid hormone replacement. This caution is especially important when the patient has known cardiac problems. Starting at too high a dose or increasing the dose too rapidly can cause severe hypertension, heart failure, and myocardial infarction (Brent et al., 2008). *Teach patients, as well as their families, who are beginning thyroid replacement hormone therapy to take the drug exactly as prescribed and not to change the dose or schedule without consulting the health care provider. In addition, teach them not to switch brands because the response to different drug brands can vary.*

Assess the patient for chest pain and dyspnea during initiation of therapy. The final dosage is determined by blood levels of TSH and the patient's physical responses. The dosage and time required for symptom relief vary with each patient. Monitor for and teach the patient and family about the manifestations of hyperthyroidism (see Chart 66-1), which can occur with replacement therapy.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which is the nurse's most important assessment before giving the client prescribed levothyroxine (Synthroid) the first oral dose of the drug?

- A. Measuring heart rate and rhythm
- B. Checking core body temperature
- C. Asking about an allergy to "sulfa" drugs
- D. Determining the level of gastric motility

Supporting Cognition

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with hypothyroidism is expected to have cognitive function that is at a level that was present before the thyroid problem started. Indicators include that the patient:

- Demonstrates immediate memory
- Communicates clearly and appropriately for age and ability
- Is attentive during conversations

Interventions. Observe for and record the presence and severity of lethargy, drowsiness, memory deficit, poor attention span, and difficulty communicating. These problems should decrease with thyroid hormone treatment, and mental awareness usually returns to the patient's normal level within 2 weeks. Orient the patient to person, place, and time, and

explain all procedures slowly and carefully. Provide a safe environment.

Family members may have difficulty coping with the patient's behavior. Encourage them to accept the mood changes and mental slowness as manifestations of the disease. Remind the family that these problems should improve with therapy.

Preventing Myxedema Coma

Any patient with hypothyroidism who has any other health problem or who is newly diagnosed is at risk for myxedema coma. Factors leading to myxedema coma include acute illness, surgery, chemotherapy, discontinuing thyroid replacement therapy, and the use of sedatives or opioids. Problems that often occur with this condition include:

- Coma
- Respiratory failure
- Hypotension
- Hyponatremia
- Hypothermia
- Hypoglycemia

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Myxedema coma can lead to shock, organ damage, and death. Assess the patient with hypothyroidism at least every 8 hours for changes that indicate increasing severity, especially changes in mental status, and report these promptly to the health care provider (Simmons, 2010).

Treatment is instituted quickly according to the patient's manifestations and without waiting for laboratory confirmation. Best practices for emergency care of the patient with myxedema coma are listed in Chart 66-7.

Community-Based Care

Hypothyroidism is usually a chronic condition. Patients with hypothyroidism are managed on an outpatient basis and may reside anywhere. Patients in acute care settings, subacute care settings, and rehabilitation centers may have long-standing hypothyroidism in addition to other acute or chronic health

CHART 66-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Emergency Care of the Patient During Myxedema Coma

- Maintain a patent airway.
- Replace fluids with IV normal or hypertonic saline, as prescribed.
- Give levothyroxine sodium IV as prescribed.
- Give glucose IV as prescribed.
- Give corticosteroids as prescribed.
- Check the patient's temperature hourly.
- Monitor blood pressure hourly.
- Cover the patient with warm blankets.
- Monitor for changes in mental status.
- Turn every 2 hours.
- Institute Aspiration Precautions.

CHART 66-8 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT**Thyroid Problems**

Teach the patient these facts about changes in the thyroid gland related to aging:

- The thyroid gland decreases in size with increasing age.
- Thyroid hormone secretion decreases with age, but the hormone level remains stable because storage site clearance of the hormone also decreases with age.
- The basal metabolic rate decreases with age, usually as a result of decreased activity. This decrease changes the body composition from predominantly muscular to predominantly fatty.
- Older patients require lower doses of replacement thyroid hormone. Too large a dose may adversely affect the heart muscle.

problems. Ensure that whoever is responsible for overseeing the patient's daily care is aware of the condition and understands its treatment.

Home Care Management

The patient with hypothyroidism does not usually require changes in the home unless cognition has decreased to the point that he or she poses a danger to himself or herself. Activity intolerance and fatigue may necessitate one-floor living for a short time. If manifestations have not improved before discharge, discuss the need for extra heat or clothing because of cold intolerance. The patient who has a decreased attention span may need help with the drug regimen. Discuss this issue with the family and patient, and develop a plan for drug therapy. One person should be clearly designated as responsible for drug preparation and delivery so that doses are neither missed nor duplicated.

Teaching for Self-Management

The most important educational need for the patient with hypothyroidism is about hormone replacement therapy and its side effects. Emphasize the need for lifelong drugs, and review the manifestations of both hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism. Teach the patient to wear a medical alert bracelet. Teach the patient and family when to seek medical interventions for dosage adjustment and the need for periodic blood tests of hormone levels. Instruct the patient to not take any over-the-counter (OTC) drugs because thyroid hormone preparations interact with many other drugs. Older patients may need additional information about the effects of aging on the thyroid gland (Chart 66-8).

Advise the patient to eat a well-balanced diet with adequate fiber and fluid intake to prevent constipation. Caution him or her that use of fiber supplements may interfere with the absorption of thyroid hormone. Thyroid hormones should be taken on an empty stomach. Remind the patient about the importance of adequate rest. Encourage family members to voice their concerns to the health care provider.

Assist the family in understanding that the time required for resolution of hypothyroidism varies. During this time, the patient may continue to have mental dullness or slowness. Teach the family to orient the patient often and to explain everything clearly, simply, and as often as needed.

Teach the patient to monitor himself or herself for therapy effectiveness. The two easiest parameters to check are need for sleep and bowel elimination. When the patient requires more sleep and is constipated, the dose of replacement hormone may need to be increased. When the patient has difficulty getting to sleep and has more bowel movements than normal for him or her, the dose may need to be decreased.

Health Care Resources

Immediately after returning home, the patient may need a support person to stay and provide more attention than could be given by a visiting nurse or home care aide. Contact with the health care team is needed for follow-up and identification of potential problems. The patient taking thyroid drugs may have manifestations of hypothyroidism if the dosage is inadequate or may have manifestations of hyperthyroidism if the dose is too high. A home care nurse performs a focused assessment at every home visit to the patient with thyroid dysfunction (Chart 66-9).

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with hypothyroidism based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient should:

- Maintain normal cardiovascular function
- Maintain adequate respiratory function
- Experience improvement in thought processes

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

The client who has been taking levothyroxine (Synthroid) for 3 months reports all of the following conditions. Which condition indicates to the nurse that the drug dosage may need to be adjusted?

- A. Difficulty sleeping
- B. Increased urine output
- C. Decreased sense of smell
- D. Difficulty remembering to take the drug

THYROIDITIS**Pathophysiology**

Thyroiditis is an inflammation of the thyroid gland. There are three types: acute, subacute, and chronic. Chronic thyroiditis (Hashimoto's disease) is the most common type.

Acute thyroiditis is caused by bacterial invasion of the thyroid gland. Manifestations include pain, neck tenderness, malaise, fever, and dysphagia (difficulty swallowing). It usually resolves with antibiotic therapy.

Subacute or granulomatous thyroiditis results from a viral infection of the thyroid gland after a cold or other upper respiratory infection. Manifestations include fever, chills, dysphagia, and muscle and joint pain. Pain can radiate to the ears and the jaw. The thyroid gland feels hard and enlarged on palpation. Thyroid function can remain normal, although hyperthyroidism or hypothyroidism may develop.

Chronic thyroiditis (Hashimoto's disease) is a common type of hypothyroidism that affects women more often than

CHART 66-9 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Thyroid Dysfunction

Assess cardiovascular status:

- Vital signs, including apical pulse, pulse pressure, presence or absence of orthostatic hypotension, and the quality and rhythm of peripheral pulses
- Presence or absence of peripheral edema
- Weight gain or loss

Assess cognition and mental status:

- Level of consciousness
- Orientation to time, place, and person
- Accurately reading a seven-word sentence containing no words greater than three syllables
- Can the patient count backward from 100 by threes?

Assess condition of skin and mucous membranes:

- Moistness of skin, most reliable on chest and back
- Skin temperature and color

Assess neuromuscular status:

- Reactivity of patellar and biceps reflexes
- Oral temperature
- Handgrip strength
- Steadiness of gait
- Presence or absence of fine tremors in the hand

Ask about:

- Sleep in the past 24 hours
- Patient warm enough or too warm indoors
- 24-hour diet recall
- 24-hour activity recall
- Over-the-counter and prescribed drugs taken
- Last bowel movement

Assess patient's understanding of illness and adherence with therapy:

- Manifestations to report to health care provider
- Drug therapy plan (correct timing and dose)

men, usually when patients are in their 30s to 50s (Brent et al., 2008). Hashimoto's disease is an autoimmune disorder that is usually triggered by a bacterial or viral infection. The thyroid is invaded by antithyroid antibodies and lymphocytes, causing thyroid tissue destruction. When large amounts of the gland are destroyed, serum thyroid hormone levels are low and secretion of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) is increased.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The manifestations of Hashimoto's disease are dysphagia and painless enlargement of the gland. Diagnosis is based on circulating antithyroid antibodies and needle biopsy of the thyroid gland. Serum thyroid hormone levels, TSH levels, and radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU) vary with disease stage.

The patient is given thyroid hormone to prevent hypothyroidism and to suppress TSH secretion, which decreases the size of the thyroid gland. Surgery (subtotal thyroidectomy) is needed if the goiter does not respond to thyroid hormone, is disfiguring, or compresses other structures.

Nursing interventions focus on promoting comfort and teaching the patient about hypothyroidism, drugs, and surgery. (See discussion of Postoperative Care on pp. 1399-1400 in the Hyperthyroidism section.)

THYROID CANCER**Pathophysiology**

The four distinct types of thyroid cancer are papillary, follicular, medullary, and anaplastic (American Cancer Society, 2011). The initial manifestation of thyroid cancer is a single, painless lump or nodule in the thyroid gland. Additional manifestations depend on the presence and location of **metastasis** (spread of cancer cells).

Papillary carcinoma, the most common type of thyroid cancer, occurs most often in younger women. It is a slow-growing tumor that can be present for years before spreading to nearby lymph nodes. When the tumor is confined to the thyroid gland, the chance for cure is good with a partial or total thyroidectomy.

Follicular carcinoma occurs most often in older patients. The cancer invades blood vessels and spreads to bone and lung tissue. It can adhere to the trachea, neck muscles, great vessels, and skin, resulting in **dyspnea** (difficulty breathing) and **dysphagia** (difficulty swallowing). When the tumor involves the recurrent laryngeal nerves, the patient may have a hoarse voice.

Medullary carcinoma is most common in patients older than 50 years. This tumor often occurs as part of multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN) type II, a familial endocrine disorder. The tumor usually secretes calcitonin, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), prostaglandins, and serotonin.

Anaplastic carcinoma is a rapid-growing, aggressive tumor that directly invades nearby structures. Manifestations include **stridor** (harsh, high-pitched respiratory sounds), hoarseness, and dysphagia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Radiation therapy is used most often for anaplastic carcinoma because this cancer has usually metastasized (spread) at diagnosis. Surgery is the treatment of choice for papillary, follicular, and medullary carcinomas. A total thyroidectomy is usually performed with a nodal neck dissection if regional lymph nodes are involved. (See the postoperative care discussion in the Surgical Management section for Hyperthyroidism on pp. 1399-1400.) Suppressive doses of thyroid hormone are usually taken for 3 months after surgery. A radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU) study is performed after

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Health Promotion and Maintenance**

The client scheduled to receive a radioablative dose of ^{131}I for thyroid cancer asks how long he will need to use radiation precautions after receiving the treatment. What is the nurse's best response?

- "Because the isotope collects in the tumor cells, precautions are needed until the cancer is completely gone."
- "The dose of radiation is low, and most of it is excreted in the first week. Precautions are needed for only 2 weeks."
- "You will need to use radiation precautions until the radiologist removes the radiation source from your thyroid gland."
- "The radiation used is taken up by your thyroid gland, so only your thyroid is considered radioactive. Because the thyroid does not excrete to the outside of the body, precautions are needed only on the days you actually receive the treatment."

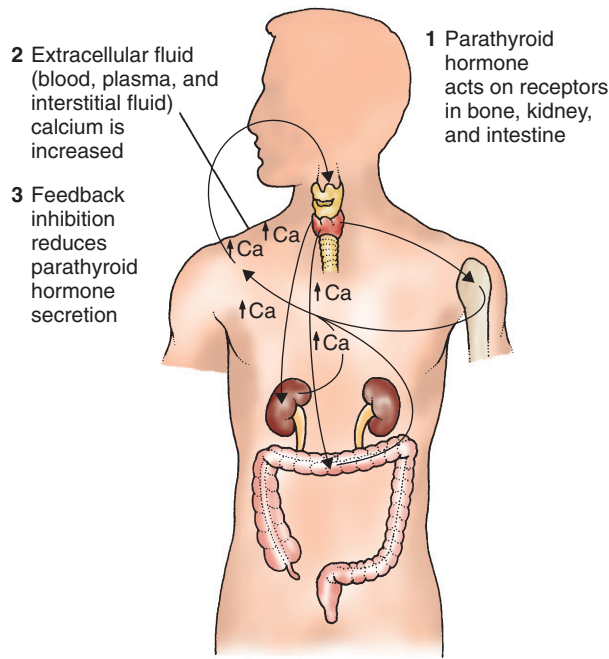


FIG. 66-4 The physiologic actions of parathyroid hormone.

drugs are withdrawn. If there is RAI uptake, the patient is treated with **ablative** (enough to destroy the tissue) amounts of RAI. (See [Chart 66-4](#) for precautions to teach the patient receiving unsealed RAI therapy.) If thyroid cancer does not respond to RAI, chemotherapy is initiated.

Usually the patient is hypothyroid after treatment for thyroid cancer. Nursing interventions then focus on teaching the patient about hypothyroidism and its management. (See discussion of Patient-Centered Collaborative Care on pp. 1402-1404 in the Hypothyroidism section.)

PARATHYROID DISORDERS

HYPERPARATHYROIDISM

Pathophysiology

The parathyroid glands maintain calcium and phosphate balance ([Fig. 66-4](#)). Serum calcium level is normally maintained within a narrow range. Phosphate levels vary more widely. Increased levels of parathyroid hormone (PTH) act directly on the kidney, causing increased kidney reabsorption of calcium and increased phosphate excretion. These processes cause **hypercalcemia** (excessive calcium) and **hypophosphatemia** (inadequate phosphate) in the patient with hyperparathyroidism.

In bone, excessive PTH levels increase bone resorption (bone loss of calcium) by decreasing **osteoblastic** (bone production) activity and increasing **osteoclastic** (bone destruction) activity. This process releases calcium and phosphate into the blood and reduces bone density. With chronic calcium excess and hypercalcemia, calcium is deposited in soft tissues.

Although the exact triggering mechanisms are unknown, primary hyperparathyroidism results when one or more

TABLE 66-3 CAUSES OF PARATHYROID DYSFUNCTION

Causes of Hyperparathyroidism

- Parathyroid adenoma
- Parathyroid carcinoma
- Congenital hyperplasia
- Neck trauma or radiation
- Vitamin D deficiency
- Chronic kidney disease with hypocalcemia
- Parathyroid hormone-secreting carcinomas of the lung, kidney, or GI tract

Causes of Hypoparathyroidism

- Surgical or radiation-induced thyroid ablation
- Parathyroidectomy
- Congenital dysgenesis
- Idiopathic (autoimmune) hypoparathyroidism
- Hypomagnesemia

parathyroid glands do not respond to the normal feedback of serum calcium. The most common cause is a benign tumor in one parathyroid gland. [Table 66-3](#) lists other causes of hyperparathyroidism.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Manifestations of hyperparathyroidism may be related either to the effects of excessive PTH or to the effects of the accompanying hypercalcemia.

Ask the patient about any bone fractures, recent weight loss, arthritis, or psychological distress. Determine whether the patient has received radiation treatment to the head or neck. The patient with long-standing disease may have a waxy pallor of the skin and bone deformities in the extremities and back.

High levels of PTH cause **renal calculi** (kidney stones) and deposits of calcium in the soft tissue of the kidney. Bone lesions are due to an increased rate of bone destruction and may result in pathologic fractures, bone cysts, and osteoporosis.

GI problems (e.g., anorexia, nausea, vomiting, epigastric pain, constipation, weight loss) are common, particularly when serum calcium levels are high. Elevated serum gastrin levels are caused by hypercalcemia and lead to peptic ulcer disease. Fatigue and lethargy may be present and become more severe as the serum calcium levels increase. When serum calcium levels are greater than 12 mg/dL, the patient may have psychosis with mental confusion, which leads to coma and death if left untreated. (See [Chapter 13](#) for more information about hypercalcemia.)

Serum PTH, calcium, and phosphate levels and urine cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) are the most commonly used laboratory tests to detect hyperparathyroidism ([Chart 66-10](#)). X-rays may show kidney stones, calcium deposits, and bone lesions (e.g., cysts or fractures). Loss of bone density occurs in the patient with chronic hyperparathyroidism. Other diagnostic tests include arteriography, computed tomography (CT) scans, venous sampling of the thyroid for blood PTH levels, and ultrasonography. Explain the procedures and care for the patient undergoing diagnostic tests.

CHART 66-10 LABORATORY PROFILE

Parathyroid Function

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS	
		HYPERPARATHYROIDISM	HYPOPARATHYROIDISM
Serum calcium	Total: 9.0-10.5 mg/dL or 2.25-2.75 SI units Ionized (active): 4.64-5.28 mg/dL or 1.16-1.32 SI units	Increased in primary hyperparathyroidism	Decreased
Serum phosphate	3.0-4.5 mg/dL or 0.97-1.45 SI units <i>Older adults:</i> May be slightly lower	Decreased	Increased
Serum magnesium	1.3-2.1 mEq/L	Increased	Decreased
Serum parathyroid hormone	C-terminal 50-330 pg/mL	Increased	Decreased
Vitamin D (calciferol)	14-60 ng/mL	Variable	Decreased
Urine cAMP	18.3-45.4 nmol/L in a 24-hour urine collection specimen	Increased	Decreased

SI, International System of Units; cAMP, cyclic adenosine monophosphate.

INTERVENTIONS**Nonsurgical Management**

Diuretic and hydration therapies are used for reducing serum calcium levels in patients who are not candidates for surgery. Usually furosemide (Lasix, Uritol ) , a diuretic that increases kidney excretion of calcium, is used together with IV saline in large volumes to promote calcium excretion. Priority nursing interventions focus on monitoring and preventing injury.

Monitor cardiac function and intake and output every 2 to 4 hours during hydration therapy. Continuous cardiac monitoring may be needed. Compare recent electrocardiogram (ECG) tracings with the patient's baseline tracings. Especially look for changes in the T waves and the QT interval, as well as changes in rate and rhythm. Closely monitor serum calcium levels, and immediately report any sudden drop to the health care provider. Sudden drops in calcium levels may cause tingling and numbness in the muscles.

Preventing injury is important because the patient with chronic hyperparathyroidism often has significant bone density loss and is at risk for pathologic fractures. Teach all members of the health care team to handle the patient carefully. Use a lift sheet to reposition the patient rather than pulling him or her. Ensure that the hospitalized patient is accompanied when ambulating to prevent falls.

Drug therapy is used when hydration and furosemide cannot reduce hypercalcemia or if it is necessary to discontinue IV fluids. Other drugs can help reduce the manifestations of hyperparathyroidism, especially those related to hypercalcemia.

Oral phosphates inhibit bone resorption and interfere with calcium absorption. IV phosphates are used only when serum calcium levels must be lowered rapidly. Calcitonin decreases the release of skeletal calcium and increases the kidney excretion of calcium. It is not effective when used alone because of its short duration of action. The therapeutic effects are greatly enhanced if calcitonin is given along with glucocorticoids.

Some drugs known as *calcium chelators* lower calcium levels by binding (*chelating*) calcium, which reduces the levels of free calcium. Mithramycin, a cytotoxic agent, is the most effective and potent calcium chelator used to lower serum

calcium levels. In most patients, a single IV dose of 10 to 15 mg/kg of body weight by slow infusion can lower serum calcium levels within 48 hours. However, the toxic effects limit its use to two or three doses. *Thrombocytopenia* (decreased circulating platelets) and kidney and liver toxicity can result after only one dose. Liver function test, blood urea nitrogen and creatinine, complete blood count (CBC), and serum calcium levels are closely monitored in the patient receiving mithramycin. Another calcium chelator is penicillamine (Cuprimine, Pendramine).

Surgical Management

Surgical management of hyperparathyroidism is a parathyroidectomy. Before surgery, the patient is stabilized and calcium levels are decreased to near normal. If mithramycin has been used to lower serum calcium levels, studies to determine bleeding and clotting times are needed, as is a CBC to determine bone marrow function.

The operative procedure involves a transverse incision in the lower neck. All four parathyroid glands are examined for enlargement. If a tumor is present on one side but the other side is normal, the surgeon removes the glands containing tumor and leaves the remaining glands on the opposite side intact. If all four glands are diseased, they are all removed.

Nursing care before and after surgical removal of the parathyroid glands is the same as that for thyroidectomy. See the Preoperative Care section on pp. 1397-1399 and the Postoperative Care section on pp. 1399-1400 for specific nursing interventions.

The remaining glands, which may have atrophied as a result of PTH overproduction, require several days to several weeks to return to normal function. A hypocalcemic crisis can occur during this critical period. Usually, the surgeon requests the serum calcium to be assessed frequently after surgery. Check serum calcium levels immediately after surgery and every 4 hours thereafter until calcium levels stabilize. Monitor for manifestations of hypocalcemia, such as tingling and twitching in the extremities and face. Check for Trousseau's and Chvostek's signs, either of which indicates potential tetany (see [Chapter 13](#)).

The recurrent laryngeal nerve can be damaged. Assess the patient for changes in voice patterns and hoarseness.

When hyperparathyroidism is due to **hyperplasia** (tissue overgrowth), three glands plus half of the fourth gland are usually removed. If all four glands are removed, a small portion of a gland may be implanted in the forearm, where it produces PTH and maintains calcium homeostasis. If all these maneuvers fail, the patient will need lifelong treatment with calcium and vitamin D because the resulting hypoparathyroidism is permanent (see next section).

HYPOPARATHYROIDISM

Pathophysiology

Hypoparathyroidism is a rare endocrine disorder in which parathyroid function is decreased. Problems are directly related to a lack of parathyroid hormone (PTH) secretion or to decreased effectiveness of PTH on target tissue. Whether the problem is a lack of PTH secretion or an ineffectiveness of PTH on tissues, the result is the same: *hypocalcemia*.

Iatrogenic hypoparathyroidism, the most common form, is caused by the removal of all parathyroid tissue during total thyroidectomy or by deliberate surgical removal of the parathyroid glands.

Idiopathic hypoparathyroidism can occur spontaneously. The exact cause is unknown, but an autoimmune basis is suspected. It may occur with other autoimmune disorders such as adrenal insufficiency, hypothyroidism, diabetes mellitus, pernicious anemia, and vitiligo.

Hypomagnesemia (decreased serum magnesium levels) may also cause hypoparathyroidism. Hypomagnesemia is seen in alcoholics and in patients with malabsorption syndromes, chronic kidney disease, and malnutrition. It causes impairment of PTH secretion and may interfere with the effects of PTH on the bones, kidneys, and calcium regulation.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask about any head or neck surgery or radiation therapy because these treatments may damage the parathyroid glands and cause hypoparathyroidism. Also determine whether the neck has ever sustained a serious injury in a car crash or by strangulation. Assess whether the patient has any manifestations of hypoparathyroidism, which may range from mild tingling and numbness to muscle tetany. Tingling and

numbness around the mouth or in the hands and feet reflect mild to moderate hypocalcemia. Severe muscle cramps, spasms of the hands and feet, and seizures (with no loss of consciousness or incontinence) reflect a more severe hypocalcemia. The patient or family may notice mental changes ranging from irritability to psychosis.

The physical assessment may show excessive or inappropriate muscle contractions that cause finger, hand, and elbow flexion. This can signal an impending attack of tetany. Check for Chvostek's sign and Trousseau's sign; positive responses indicate potential tetany (see [Chapter 13](#)). Bands or pits may encircle the crowns of the teeth, which indicates a loss of calcium from the teeth with enamel loss.

Diagnostic tests for hypoparathyroidism include electroencephalography (EEG), blood tests, and CT scans. EEG changes revert to normal with correction of hypocalcemia. Serum calcium, phosphate, magnesium, vitamin D, and urine cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) levels may be used in the diagnostic workup for hypoparathyroidism (see [Chart 66-10](#)). The CT scan can show brain calcifications, which indicate chronic hypocalcemia.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical management of hypoparathyroidism focuses on correcting hypocalcemia, vitamin D deficiency, and hypomagnesemia. For patients with acute and severe hypocalcemia, IV calcium is given as a 10% solution of calcium chloride or calcium gluconate over 10 to 15 minutes. Acute vitamin D deficiency is treated with calcitriol (Rocaltrol), 0.5 to 2 mg daily. Acute hypomagnesemia is corrected with 50% magnesium sulfate in 2-mL doses (up to 4 g daily) either IM or IV. Long-term oral therapy for hypocalcemia involves the intake of calcium, 0.5 to 2 g daily, in divided doses.

Long-term therapy for vitamin D deficiency is 50,000 to 400,000 units of ergocalciferol daily. The dosage is adjusted to keep the patient's calcium level in the low-normal range (slightly hypocalcemic), enough to prevent symptoms of hypocalcemia. It must also be low enough to prevent increased urine calcium levels, which can lead to stone formation.

Nursing management includes teaching about the drug regimen and interventions to reduce anxiety. Teach the patient to eat foods high in calcium but low in phosphorus. Milk, yogurt, and processed cheeses are avoided because of their high phosphorus content. *Stress that therapy for hypocalcemia is lifelong.* Advise the patient to wear a medical alert bracelet. With adherence to the prescribed drug and diet regimen, the calcium level usually remains high enough to prevent a hypocalcemic crisis.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Keep the environment of a patient at risk for thyroid storm cool, dark, and quiet.

- Keep emergency suctioning and tracheostomy equipment in the room of a patient who has had thyroid or parathyroid surgery.
- Use a lift sheet to move or reposition a patient with hypocalcemia.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

- Teach all patients to take antithyroid drugs or thyroid hormone replacement therapy as prescribed.
- Include the person who prepares the patient's meals when teaching about dietary electrolyte restrictions.
- Collaborate with the dietitian to teach patients about diets that are restricted in calcium or phosphate.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Be accepting of patient behavior.
- Remind patients and family members that changes in cognition and behavior related to thyroid problems are usually temporary.

- Encourage the patient who has a permanent change in appearance (e.g., exophthalmia) to mourn the change.

Physiological Integrity

- Monitor the hydration status of patients who have hypercalcemia.
- Teach patients that hormone replacement therapy for hypothyroidism is lifelong.
- Teach patients to use clinical manifestations (e.g., the number of bowel movements per day, the ability to sleep) as indicators of therapy effectiveness and when the dose of thyroid hormone replacement may need to be adjusted.

CHAPTER

67

Care of Patients with Diabetes Mellitus

Margaret Elaine McLeod



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Insulin Function

Answer Keys for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Diabetes Mellitus—Type 2

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Assess the person who has diabetes for specific current and ongoing factors that pose threats to safety.
2. Administer insulin and other antidiabetic agents in a safe and accurate manner.
3. Apply the principles of infection control in the care of patients with diabetes.
4. Individualize patient teaching methods for diabetes management.
5. Teach patients and families the safe use of insulin injection equipment and glucose monitoring equipment.
6. Teach patients with peripheral neuropathy how to avoid injury.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

7. Encourage everyone to prevent type 2 diabetes by achieving and maintaining ideal weight and participating in regular exercise.
8. Teach all patients with diabetes how to self-manage their disease.
9. Teach the patient and family about the manifestations and emergency treatment of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia.

Psychosocial Integrity

10. Allow the patient the opportunity to express concerns regarding the diagnosis of diabetes or the treatment regimen.
11. Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
12. Refer patients newly diagnosed with diabetes to local resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

13. Compare the risk factors, age of onset, manifestations, and pathologic mechanisms of type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus.
14. Explain the effects of insulin on carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism.
15. Explain how to mix different kinds of insulin together.
16. Evaluate laboratory data to determine effectiveness of the prescribed dietary, drug, and exercise therapies for diabetes.
17. Explain how to perform foot assessment and foot care for the patient with diabetes.
18. Collaborate with members of the health care team to provide care for patients with diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) or hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS).

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a chronic metabolic disease that requires lifelong behavioral and lifestyle changes. A collaborative approach helps the patient successfully manage the disease. As part of the team, you will plan, organize, and coordinate care with other health care team members to

provide care and education and promote the patient's health and well-being.

Diabetes is a major public health problem, and its complications, especially hypertension and **hyperlipidemia** (high blood lipid levels), cause many serious health problems. In

the United States, diabetes mellitus (DM) is a leading cause of blindness, end-stage kidney disease, and foot or leg amputations. Many people have undiagnosed diabetes and, among those who are diagnosed, many have continuous high blood glucose levels. The complications of DM can be greatly reduced with **glycemic** (blood glucose) control along with management of hypertension and hyperlipidemia. Thus nursing priorities focus on helping the patient with diabetes achieve and maintain lifestyle changes that prevent long-term complications by keeping blood glucose levels and cholesterol levels as close to normal as possible (Young, 2011).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Classification of Diabetes

For all types of diabetes mellitus (DM), the main feature is chronic **hyperglycemia** (high blood glucose level) resulting from problems with insulin secretion, insulin action, or both. The disease is classified by the underlying problem causing a lack of insulin and the severity of the insulin deficiency. Table 67-1 outlines the types of DM.

The Endocrine Pancreas

The pancreas has mostly exocrine functions that are related to digestion and endocrine functions that are related to blood glucose control. The endocrine portion of the pancreas has about 1 million small glands, the *islets of Langerhans*, scattered through the organ. The two types of islet cells

important to glucose control are the *alpha cells*, which secrete glucagon, and the *beta cells*, which produce insulin and amylin. **Glucagon** is a “counterregulatory” hormone that has actions opposite those of insulin. It prevents *hypoglycemia* (low blood glucose levels) by triggering the release of glucose from cell storage sites. Insulin prevents hyperglycemia by allowing body cells to take up, use, and store carbohydrate, fat, and protein.

Active insulin is a protein made up of 51 amino acids. It is initially produced as inactive *proinsulin*, a prohormone that contains an additional amino acid chain (the C-peptide chain). Proinsulin is converted into active insulin by removal of the C-peptide (Fig. 67-1).

About 40 to 50 units of insulin is secreted daily directly into liver circulation in a two-step manner. It is secreted at low levels during fasting (**basal insulin secretion**) and at increased levels after eating (**prandial**). An early burst of insulin secretion occurs within 10 minutes of eating. This is followed by an increasing release that lasts until the blood glucose level is normal.

Glucose Homeostasis

Glucose is the main fuel for central nervous system (CNS) cells. Because the brain cannot produce or store much glucose, it needs a continuous supply from circulation to prevent

TABLE 67-1 CLASSIFICATION OF DIABETES MELLITUS

Type 1 Diabetes

- Beta-cell destruction leading to absolute insulin deficiency
- Autoimmune
- Idiopathic

Type 2 Diabetes

- Ranges from insulin resistance with relative insulin deficiency to secretory deficit with insulin resistance

Other Specific Conditions Resulting in Hyperglycemia

- Genetic defects of beta-cell function
- Genetic defects in insulin action
- Diseases of the exocrine pancreas: pancreatitis, trauma, neoplasia, cystic fibrosis, hemochromatosis
- Endocrinopathies: acromegaly, Cushing's disease, glucagonoma, pheochromocytoma, hyperthyroidism, aldosteronism
- Drug or chemical-induced conditions (from use of pentamidine, nicotinic acid, glucocorticoids, thyroid hormone, diazoxide, beta-adrenergic agents, thiazides, phenytoin, interferon-alpha, other drugs)
- Infections: congenital rubella, cytomegalovirus, human immune deficiency virus
- Uncommon forms of immune-related diabetes
- Other genetic syndromes associated with diabetes: Down syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome, Turner's syndrome, Huntington disease, and others

Gestational Diabetes Mellitus (GDM)

- Glucose intolerance with onset or first recognition during pregnancy

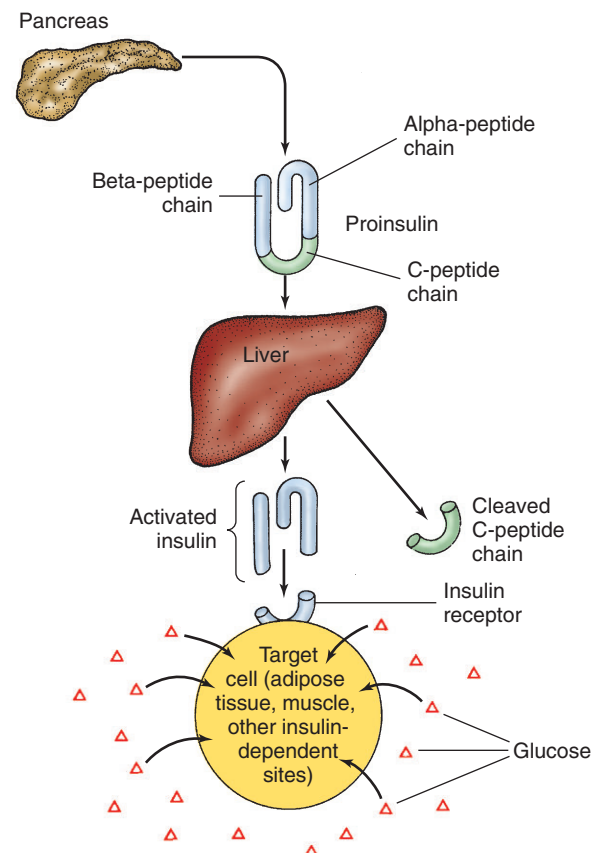


FIG. 67-1 Proinsulin, secreted by and stored in the beta cells of the islets of Langerhans in the pancreas, is transformed by the liver into active insulin. Insulin attaches to receptors on target cells, where it promotes glucose transport into the cells through the cell membranes.

neuronal dysfunction and cell death. Other organs can use both glucose and fatty acids to generate energy. Glucose is stored inside cells as glycogen in the liver and muscles, and free fatty acids are stored as triglyceride in fat cells. Fat is the most efficient means of storing energy. Fat has 9 calories of stored energy per gram. Protein and carbohydrate have only 4 calories per gram. During a prolonged fast or after illness or injury, proteins are broken down and some of the amino acids are converted into glucose.

Several organs and hormones play a role in maintaining glucose homeostasis. During the fasting state, when the stomach is empty, blood glucose is maintained between 60 and 150 mg/dL (3.3 and 8.3 mmol/L) by a balance between glucose uptake by cells and glucose production by the liver. Insulin plays a pivotal role in this process.

Movement of glucose into some cells requires the presence of specific carrier proteins, glucose transport (GLUT) proteins and insulin. Insulin is like a “key” that opens “locked” membranes to glucose, allowing glucose in the blood to move into cells to generate energy. Insulin starts this action by binding to insulin receptors on the cell membranes, which changes membrane permeability to glucose.

Insulin exerts many effects on metabolism and cellular processes in different body tissues and organs. The main metabolic effects of insulin are to stimulate glucose uptake in skeletal muscle and heart muscle and to suppress liver production of glucose and very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL). In the liver, insulin promotes the production and storage of glycogen (**glycogenesis**) at the same time that it inhibits glycogen breakdown into glucose (**glycogenolysis**). It increases protein and lipid (fat) synthesis and inhibits **ketogenesis** (conversion of fats to acids) and **gluconeogenesis** (conversion of proteins to glucose). In muscle, insulin promotes protein and glycogen synthesis. In fat cells, it promotes triglyceride storage. Overall, insulin keeps blood glucose levels from becoming too high and helps keep blood lipid levels in the normal range.

In the *fasting state* (not eating for 8 hours), insulin secretion is suppressed, which leads to increased gluconeogenesis in the liver and kidneys, along with increased glucose generation by the breakdown of liver glycogen. In the fed state, insulin released from pancreatic beta cells reverses this process. Instead, glycogen breakdown and gluconeogenesis are inhibited. At the same time, insulin also enhances glucose uptake and use by cells and reduces both fat breakdown (**lipolysis**) and protein breakdown (**proteolysis**). When more glucose is present in liver cells than can be metabolized for energy or stored as glycogen, insulin causes the excess glucose to be converted to free fatty acids (FFAs). These extra FFAs are deposited as fat in fat cells.

Glucose in the blood after a meal is controlled by the emptying rate of the stomach and delivery of nutrients to the small intestine where they are absorbed into circulation. Incretin hormones (e.g., GLP-1), secreted in response to the presence of food in the stomach, have several actions. They increase insulin secretion, inhibit glucagon secretion, and slow the rate of gastric emptying, thereby preventing hyperglycemia after meals.

Counterregulatory hormones increase blood glucose by actions opposite those of insulin when more energy is needed. Glucagon is the main counterregulatory hormone. Other hormones that increase blood glucose levels are epinephrine,

TABLE 67-2 PHYSIOLOGIC RESPONSE TO INSUFFICIENT INSULIN

- Decreased glycogenesis (conversion of glucose to glycogen)
- Increased glycogenolysis (conversion of glycogen to glucose)
- Increased gluconeogenesis (formation of glucose from non-carbohydrate sources, such as amino acids and lactate)
- Increased lipolysis (breakdown of triglycerides to glycerol and free fatty acids)
- Increased ketogenesis (formation of ketones from free fatty acids)
- Proteolysis (breakdown of protein with amino acid release in muscles)

norepinephrine, growth hormone, and cortisol. The combined actions of insulin and counterregulatory hormones (discussed in the next section) keep blood glucose levels in the range of 60 to 100 mg/dL (3.3 to 5.6 mmol/L) to support brain functions. When glucose levels fall, insulin secretion stops and glucagon is released. Glucagon causes the release of glucose from the liver. Liver glucose is made through breakdown of glycogen to glucose (glycogenolysis) and conversion of amino acids into glucose (gluconeogenesis). When liver glucose is unavailable, the breakdown of fat (lipolysis) and the breakdown of proteins (proteolysis) provide fuel for energy.

Absence of Insulin

Insulin is needed to move glucose into most body tissues. The lack of insulin in diabetes, from either a lack of production or a problem with insulin use at its cell receptor, prevents some cells from using glucose for energy. The body then breaks down fat and protein in an attempt to provide energy and also increases the levels of counterregulatory hormones in an attempt to make glucose from other sources. **Table 67-2** outlines the body's response to insufficient insulin.

Without insulin, glucose builds up in the blood, causing **hyperglycemia**, which is high blood glucose levels. Hyperglycemia causes fluid and electrolyte imbalances, leading to the classic symptoms of diabetes: polyuria, polydipsia, and polyphagia.

Polyuria is frequent and excessive urination and results from an osmotic diuresis caused by excess glucose in the urine. As a result of diuresis, sodium, chloride, and potassium are excreted in the urine and water loss is severe. Dehydration results, and **polydipsia** (excessive thirst) occurs. Because the cells receive no glucose, cell starvation triggers **polyphagia** (excessive eating). Despite eating vast amounts of food, the person remains in starvation until insulin is available to move glucose into the cells.

With insulin deficiency, fats break down, releasing free fatty acids. Conversion of fatty acids to **ketone bodies** (small acids) provides a backup energy source. Because ketone bodies, or “ketones,” are abnormal breakdown products of fatty acids, they collect in the blood when insulin is not available, leading to metabolic acidosis.

The dehydration that occurs with diabetes leads to **hemoconcentration** (an increased blood concentration), **hypovolemia** (a decreased blood volume), **hyperviscosity** (thick, concentrated blood), poor tissue perfusion, and **hypoxia** (poor tissue oxygenation), especially to the brain. Hypoxic

cells do not metabolize glucose efficiently, the Krebs' cycle is blocked, and lactic acid increases, causing more acidosis.

The excess acids caused by absence of insulin increase hydrogen ion (H^+) and carbon dioxide (CO_2) levels in the blood, causing metabolic acidosis. These products trigger the respiratory centers of the brain to increase the rate and depth of respiration in an attempt to excrete more carbon dioxide and acid. This type of breathing is known as **Kussmaul respiration**. Acetone is exhaled, giving the breath a "fruity" odor. When the lungs can no longer offset acidosis, the blood pH drops. Arterial blood gas studies show a metabolic acidosis (decreased pH with decreased arterial bicarbonate [HCO_3^-] levels) and compensatory respiratory alkalosis (decreased partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide [$Paco_2$]).

Insulin lack initially causes potassium depletion. With the increased fluid loss from hyperglycemia, excessive potassium is excreted in the urine, leading to low serum potassium levels. High serum potassium levels may occur in acidosis because of the shift of potassium from inside the cells to the blood. Serum potassium levels in DM, then, may be low (**hypokalemia**), high (**hyperkalemia**), or normal, depending on hydration, the severity of acidosis, and the patient's response to treatment. Chapter 14 discusses acid-base balance and acidosis in more detail.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The client newly diagnosed with diabetes asks why he is always so thirsty. What is the nurse's best response?

- "The extra glucose in the blood increases the blood sodium level, which increases your sense of thirst."
- "Without insulin, glucose is excreted rather than used in the cells. The loss of glucose directly triggers thirst, especially for sugared drinks."
- "The extra glucose in the blood makes the blood thicker, which then triggers thirst so that the water you drink will dilute the blood glucose level."
- "Without insulin, glucose combines with blood cholesterol, which damages the kidneys, making you feel thirsty even when no water has been lost."

Acute Complications of Diabetes

Three glucose-related emergencies can occur in patients with diabetes:

- Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) caused by lack of insulin and ketosis
- Hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS) caused by insulin deficiency and profound dehydration
- Hypoglycemia from too much insulin or too little glucose

All three problems require emergency treatment and can be fatal if treatment is delayed or incorrect. These problems and their interventions are described later.

Chronic Complications of Diabetes

Diabetes mellitus (DM) can lead to health problems and early death because of changes in large blood vessels (**macrovascular**) and small blood vessels (**microvascular**) in tissues and organs. Complications result from poor tissue circulation and cell death. Macrovascular complications, including coronary heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral

vascular disease, lead to increased early death. Microvascular complications of blood vessel structure and function lead to **nephropathy** (kidney dysfunction), **neuropathy** (nerve dysfunction), and **retinopathy** (vision problems). Explanations for these diabetic vascular complications include:

- Chronic hyperglycemia thickens basement membranes, which causes organ damage.
- Glucose toxicity directly or indirectly affects functional cell integrity.
- Chronic ischemia in small blood vessels causes connective tissue hypoxia and microischemia.

Chronic high blood glucose levels are the main cause of microvascular complications and allow premature development of macrovascular complications. Additional risk factors that contribute to poor health outcomes for people with DM include smoking, physical inactivity, increased body weight, hypertension, and excessive blood levels of cholesterol and other fats. Many of these factors can be modified to reduced complications related to DM.

The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) showed that hyperglycemia is a critical factor for long-term complications in patients with type 1 DM. Intensive therapy aiming for blood glucose levels as close to normal as possible delays the onset and progression of retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, and macrovascular disease. Additional studies show that intensive therapy with lowered blood glucose levels delays the onset of retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy in patients with type 2 DM. A strong relationship exists between microvascular complications and blood glucose levels. For every percentage point decrease in **HbA_{1c}** (hemoglobin A_{1c}), a 35% reduction in the risk for kidney and eye complications has been shown.

Macrovascular Complications

Cardiovascular Disease. Diabetes mellitus (DM) is associated with a reduced life span, largely as a result of cardiovascular disease (CVD). Most patients with DM die as a result of a thrombotic event, usually myocardial infarction (MI). DM also affects the heart muscle, causing both systolic and diastolic heart failure. Left ventricular dysfunction with heart failure and fatal cardiac dysrhythmias are more common after MI in patients with DM.

Patients with diabetes, those with prediabetes, and those with metabolic syndrome are at increased risk for CVD. This excess risk affects women to a greater degree than men and is influenced by the patient's ethnic group. The Adult Treatment Panel III of the National Cholesterol Education Program recommends that diabetes be considered a "coronary heart disease risk equivalent" and a target for aggressive reduction of risk factors.

Patients with DM often also have the traditional cardiovascular risk factors of obesity, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and sedentary lifestyle. Cigarette smoking and a positive family history greatly increase risk for CVD. Kidney disease, indicated by **albuminuria** (presence of albumin in the urine), increases the risk for coronary heart disease and mortality from MI. Patients with DM often have higher levels of C-reactive protein (CRP), an acute-phase inflammatory marker associated with increased risk for cardiovascular problems and death.

Cardiovascular complication rates can be reduced through aggressive management of hyperglycemia, hypertension, and

hyperlipidemia. The American Diabetes Association (ADA) recommends that blood pressure be maintained below 130/80 mm Hg and that low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol remain below 100 mg/dL (2.60 mmol/L) for patients without manifestations of CVD and to less than 70 mg/dL (1.8 mmol/L) for patients with manifestations of CVD (ADA, 2010b). Diets high in saturated fat raise total cholesterol and LDL cholesterol levels, which increase the risk for coronary artery disease. Lifestyle modifications that focus on reducing saturated fat, *trans* fat, and cholesterol intake; increasing intake of omega-3 fatty acids, fiber, and plant sterols; weight loss (if indicated); and increasing physical activity are recommended to improve the lipid profile for patients with DM (ADA, 2010b).

Priority nursing actions focus on interventions to reduce modifiable risk factors associated with CVD, such as smoking cessation, diet, exercise, blood pressure control, maintenance of prescribed aspirin use, and maintenance of prescribed lipid-lowering drug therapy.

Cerebrovascular Disease. The risk for stroke is 2 to 4 times higher in people with DM compared with those who do not have the disease. Diabetes also increases the likelihood of severe carotid atherosclerosis. Hypertension, hyperlipidemia, nephropathy, peripheral vascular disease, and alcohol and tobacco use further increase the risk for stroke in people with DM.

DM affects stroke outcomes as well. Patients with DM are likely to suffer irreversible brain damage with carotid emboli that produce only transient ischemic attacks in people without DM. Elevated blood glucose levels at the time of the stroke may lead to greater brain injury and higher mortality.

In addition, chronic hyperglycemia with microvascular disease may contribute to neuronal damage, brain atrophy, and cognitive impairment. These problems are more frequent and more severe in patients who have longer-duration DM and an increase in the complications of neuropathy and retinopathy (Roberts et al., 2008).

Microvascular Complications

Eye and Vision Complications. Legal blindness (a corrected visual acuity of 20/200 or less) is 25 times more common in patients with diabetes. Diabetic retinopathy (DR) is strongly related to the duration of diabetes. After 20 years of DM, nearly all patients with type 1 disease and most with type 2 disease have some degree of retinopathy. Unfortunately, DR has few manifestations until vision loss occurs.

The cause and progression of DR are related to problems that block retinal blood vessels and cause them to leak, leading to retinal hypoxia. **Nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy** (Fig. 67-2) causes structural problems in retinal vessels, including areas of poor retinal circulation, edema, hard fatty deposits in the eye, and retinal hemorrhages. Microaneurysms are small capillary wall dilations in retinal vessels that form throughout the eye and leak fluid and blood into the retina. This leakage causes retinal edema and hard exudates.

Other retinal problems include retinal hemorrhages, optic nerve atrophy from hypoxia, and venous beading. **Venous beading** is the abnormal appearance of retinal veins in which areas of swelling and constriction along a segment of vein resemble links of sausage. It occurs in areas of retinal ischemia. Nonproliferative diabetic retinopathies develop slowly and rarely cause reduced vision to the point of blindness.

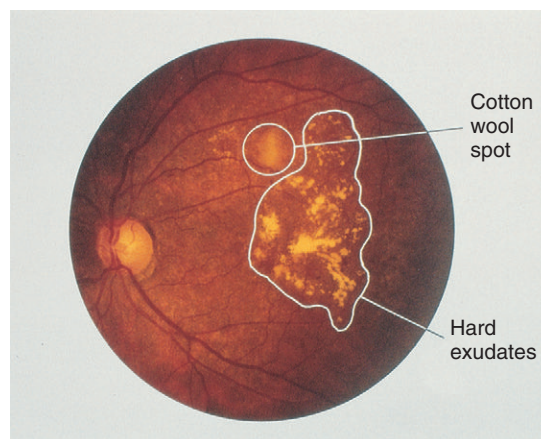


FIG. 67-2 Select ophthalmic changes seen in nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy.

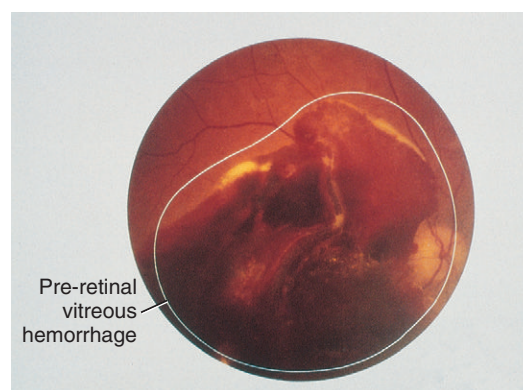


FIG. 67-3 Ophthalmic hemorrhage that is possible with proliferative diabetic retinopathy.

Proliferative diabetic retinopathy is the growth of new retinal blood vessels, also known as *neovascularization*. When retinal blood flow is poor and hypoxia develops, retinal cells secrete growth factors that stimulate formation of new blood vessels in the eye. These new vessels are thin, fragile, and bleed easily, leading to eye hemorrhage and vision loss (Fig. 67-3).

Vision loss from DR has several mechanisms. Central vision may be impaired by macular edema, which can occur at any stage of DR. Diabetic macular edema is characterized by increased blood vessel permeability and deposits of hard exudates at the center of the retina. This problem is the main cause of vision loss in the person with DM. Vision loss also occurs from macular degeneration, corneal scarring, and changes in lens shape or clarity.

Hyperglycemia may cause blurred vision, even with eyeglasses. Hypoglycemia may cause double vision. Cataracts occur at a younger age and progress faster among patients with DM. Open-angle glaucoma also is more common in patients with DM. The management of cataracts and glaucoma is the same as for patients who do not have diabetes (see Chapter 49).

Control of blood glucose, blood pressure, and blood lipid level is important in preventing DR. Thus patients with DM

TABLE 67-3 FEATURES OF DIABETIC NEUROPATHY

COMPLICATION		MANIFESTATION
Diffuse Neuropathies		
Distal symmetric polyneuropathy	Sensory alterations	Paresthesias: burning/tingling sensations, starting in toes and moving up legs Dysesthesias: burning, stinging, or stabbing pain Anesthesia: loss of sensation
	Motor alterations in intrinsic muscles of foot	Foot deformities: high arch, claw toes, hammertoes; shift of weight-bearing to metatarsal heads and tips of toes
Autonomic neuropathy	Anhidrosis	Drying, cracking of skin
	Gastrointestinal	Delayed gastric emptying, gastric retention, early satiety, bloating, nausea, vomiting, anorexia, constipation, diarrhea
	Neurogenic bladder	Atonic bladder, urinary retention
	Impotence	Erectile dysfunction
	Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy	Early fatigue, weakness with exercise, orthostatic hypotension
	Defective counterregulation	Loss of warning signs of hypoglycemia
Focal Neuropathies		
Focal ischemia	Thoracolumbar radiculopathy with sensory and reflex loss	Pain radiating across back, side, and front of chest or abdomen
	Cranial nerve palsies, third and sixth nerves	Sudden diplopia or ptosis; eye pain
	Amyotrophy	Pain; asymmetric weakness; wasting of iliopsoas, quadriceps, and adductor muscles
Entrapment neuropathies	Median nerve	Carpal tunnel syndrome
	Popliteal nerve/knee	Footdrop
	Posterior tibial nerve at tarsal tunnel	Tarsal tunnel syndrome: sensory impairment in sole of foot; weakness of intrinsic muscles of foot; burning pain and paresthesias at ankle and plantar surface

should have routine ophthalmic evaluations to detect vision problems early before vision loss occurs.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The older patient with diabetic retinopathy also has visual changes from aging. As a result, the patient's ability to perform self-care may be seriously affected. The patient with retinopathy may have blurred vision, distorted central vision, fluctuating vision, loss of color perception, and mobility problems resulting from loss of depth perception. It is especially important to assess the patient's ability to measure and inject insulin and to monitor blood glucose levels to determine if adaptive devices are needed to assist in self-management activities.

Diabetic Neuropathy. Neuropathy is a progressive deterioration of nerves that results in loss of nerve function. It is a common complication of DM and often involves all parts of the body. Damage to sensory nerve fibers results in either pain or loss of sensation. Damage to motor nerve fibers results in muscle weakness. Damage to nerve fibers in the autonomic nervous system can cause dysfunction in every part of the body. This combination of factors leads to the nerve damage in diabetic neuropathy (Bedlack, 2009):

- Metabolic factors of hyperglycemia, long duration of DM, hyperlipidemia, low insulin levels
- Damaged blood vessels leading to reduced neuronal oxygen and other nutrients
- Autoimmune neuronal inflammation
- Increased genetic susceptibility to nerve damage
- Smoking and alcohol use

Hyperglycemia leads to neuropathy through blood vessel changes that cause nerve hypoxia. Both the axon and its myelin sheath are damaged by reduced blood flow, resulting

in blocked nerve impulse transmission. Excessive glucose is converted to sorbitol, which collects in nerves. The increased sorbitol also impairs motor nerve conduction. Common diabetic neuropathies are listed in Table 67-3. Autonomic nervous system neuropathy leads to problems in cardiovascular, GI, and urinary function. Keeping blood glucose levels in the normal range can slow the development and progression of diabetic neuropathies.

Diabetic neuropathy can be focal or diffuse, each with different causes and rates of progression. *Diffuse neuropathies* are the most common neuropathies in DM and involve widespread nerve function loss. They have a slow onset, affect both sides of the body, involve motor and sensory nerves, progress slowly, are permanent, and include autonomic nerve dysfunction. Late complications include foot ulcers and deformities.

Focal neuropathies affect a single nerve or nerve group and usually are caused by an acute ischemic event or by nerve trapping. Both problems lead to nerve damage or nerve death. Ischemic neuropathies occur when the blood supply to a nerve or nerve group is disrupted. The symptoms begin suddenly, affect only one side of the body area, and are self-limiting. Recovery time varies. The most common neuropathies affect the nerves that control the eye muscles. Manifestations begin with pain on one side of the face near the affected eye. The eye muscles become paralyzed, resulting in double vision. The problem usually resolves in 2 to 3 months.

Entrapment neuropathies stem from trapping and compressing a nerve in a body compartment or between tissues. Symptoms begin gradually and can occur anywhere. They may be bilateral, having a waxing and waning course without spontaneous recovery. An example of focal entrapment neuropathy is carpal tunnel syndrome.

Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy (CAN) affects sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves of the heart and blood vessels. This problem contributes to left ventricular dysfunction, painless myocardial infarctions, and exercise intolerance. Most often, CAN leads to **orthostatic** (postural) hypotension and **syncope** (brief loss of consciousness on standing). These problems are due to failure of the heart and arteries to adjust to position changes by increasing heart rate and vascular tone. As a result, blood flow to the brain is interrupted briefly. Orthostatic hypotension and syncope increase the risk for falls, especially among older adults.

Autonomic neuropathy can affect the entire GI system. Common GI problems from diabetic neuropathy include gastroesophageal reflux, delayed gastric emptying and gastric retention, early satiety, heartburn, nausea, vomiting, and anorexia. Sluggish movement of the small intestine can lead to bacterial overgrowth, which causes bloating, gas, and diarrhea. Diarrhea caused by diabetes is chronic, may be severe, and often occurs at night. Constipation, the most common GI problem with DM, is intermittent and may alternate with bouts of diarrhea. **Gastroparesis** (delay in gastric emptying) is a cause of hypoglycemia.

Urinary problems from neuropathy results in incomplete emptying and urine retention, which leads to urinary infection and kidney problems. Manifestations include frequency, urgency, and incontinence.

Diabetic Nephropathy. **Nephropathy** is a pathologic change in the kidney that reduces kidney function and leads to kidney failure. Diabetes is the leading cause of end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) and kidney failure in the United States. Risk factors for nephropathy include a 10- to 15-year history of DM, diabetic retinopathy, poor blood glucose control, uncontrolled hypertension, and genetic predisposition. Studies have shown that the onset of diabetic kidney disease may be prevented and the progression to ESKD can be delayed by maintaining optimum blood glucose control, keeping blood pressure within the normal ranges, and using drug therapy to protect the kidneys (*American Association of Diabetic Educators [AADE], 2009a*). Drugs that protect the kidneys are the angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors and the angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs).

Kidney disease causes progressive albumin excretion and a declining glomerular filtration rate (GFR). The earliest manifestation of nephropathy is **microalbuminuria** (small amounts of albumin in the urine). Annual testing for microalbuminuria is recommended for patients who have had type 1 DM for at least 5 years and in everyone with type 2 DM (*ADA, 2010b*).

Chronic high blood glucose levels cause hypertension in kidney blood vessels and excess kidney perfusion. The increased pressure damages the kidney in many ways. The blood vessels become leakier, especially in the glomerulus. This leakiness allows filtration of larger particles (including albumin and other proteins), which then form deposits in the kidney tissue and blood vessels. Blood vessels narrow, decreasing kidney oxygenation and leading to kidney cell hypoxia and cell death. These processes worsen over time, with scarring of glomerular blood vessels and loss of urine filtration ability, leading to kidney failure.

Kidney damage is also related to hypertension for patients with DM and cardiovascular disease. Both systolic and

diastolic hypertension speed the progression of diabetic nephropathy.

Male Erectile Dysfunction. Erectile dysfunction (ED) is the inability to achieve or maintain a penile erection sufficient for satisfactory sexual performance. ED occurs at a higher rate (about 50%) and an earlier age among men with DM as compared with the general population. This occurs 10 to 15 years earlier than in the general population and increases with age. It is related to poor blood glucose control, obesity, hypertension, heavy cigarette smoking, and the presence of other chronic vascular complications. *Chapter 75* discusses erectile function problems in depth.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

Why is controlling blood glucose levels important?

- A. High blood glucose levels increase the risk for heart disease, strokes, blindness, and kidney failure.
- B. High blood glucose levels increase the risk for seizure disorders, arthritis, osteoporosis, and bone fractures.
- C. Low blood glucose levels increase the risk for peripheral neuropathy, Alzheimer's disease, and premature aging.
- D. Low blood glucose levels increase the risk for obesity, pancreatitis, dehydration, and certain types of cancer.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Type 1 Diabetes

Type 1 diabetes mellitus (DM) is an autoimmune disorder in which beta cells are destroyed in a genetically susceptible person (*Table 67-4*). The immune system fails to recognize normal body cells as “self” and takes destructive actions against them. In type 1 DM, immune system cells, mediators, and antibodies attack and destroy insulin-secreting cells in the islets. Although the exact cause of why normal cells are attacked by immune system cells is not known, people with certain tissue types are more likely to develop autoimmune diseases, including type 1 DM. Specifically, patients who have the tissue types *HLA-DR* or *HLA-DQ* are at an increased risk for type 1 DM. Certain viral infections, such as mumps and coxsackievirus infection, appear to trigger autoimmune destruction of pancreatic beta cells (*McCance et al., 2010*).

Indicators or markers of immune damage to insulin-producing cells (a key feature of type 1 DM) are the presence of blood antibodies directed against the beta cells themselves or against substances made by beta cells. Most patients with type 1 diabetes have islet cell antibodies (ICAs), insulin

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Risk for type 1 diabetes is determined by inheritance of genes coding for the *HLA-DR* and *HLA-DQ* tissue types. However, although inheritance of these genes increases the risk, most people with these genes do not develop type 1 diabetes. Development of the disease is an interactive effect of genetic predisposition and exposure to certain environmental factors. The risk for type 1 diabetes in the general population ranges from 1 in 400 to 1 in 1000. The risk greatly increases for those who have at least one parent with diabetes (from 1 in 20 to 1 in 50) (*Nussbaum et al., 2007*). It is unclear why some genetically susceptible people develop diabetes and others do not.

TABLE 67-4 DIFFERENTIATION OF TYPE 1 AND TYPE 2 DIABETES

FEATURES	TYPE 1	TYPE 2
Former names	Juvenile-onset diabetes Ketosis-prone diabetes Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM)	Adult-onset diabetes Ketosis-resistant diabetes Non–insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM)
Age at onset	Usually younger than 30 yr, occurs at any age	Peaks in 50s; may occur earlier
Symptoms	Abrupt onset, thirst, hunger, increased urine output, weight loss	Frequently none; thirst, fatigue, blurred vision, vascular or neural complications
Etiology	Viral infection	Not known
Pathology	Pancreatic beta-cell destruction	Insulin resistance Dysfunctional pancreatic beta cell
Antigen patterns	<i>HLA-DR, HLA-DQ</i>	None
Antibodies	ICAs present at diagnosis	None
Endogenous insulin and C-peptide	None	Low, normal, or high
Inheritance	Complex	Dominant, multifactorial
Nutritional status	Usually nonobese	60% to 80% obese
Insulin	All dependent on insulin	Required for 20% to 30%
Medical nutrition therapy	Mandatory	Mandatory

ICAs, Islet cell antibodies.

autoantibodies (IAAs), autoantibodies to glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), or autoantibodies to tyrosine phosphates. Circulating ICA and IAA may be present before manifestations of type 1 DM develop.

Type 2 Diabetes and Metabolic Syndrome

Type 2 DM is a progressive disorder in which the person has a combination of insulin resistance and decreased secretion of insulin by pancreatic beta cells. Insulin resistance (a reduced ability of cells to respond to insulin) develops from obesity and physical inactivity in a genetically susceptible person. Insulin resistance occurs before the onset of type 2 DM and often is accompanied by other cardiovascular risk factors of hyperlipidemia, hypertension, and increased clot formation. Most patients with type 2 DM are obese. With the increased rate of obesity occurring in younger people, the age of onset for type 2 DM is also decreasing. The specific causes of type 2 DM are not known, although insulin resistance and beta-cell failure have many genetic and nongenetic causes. Heredity plays a major role in the development of type 2 DM. Offspring of patients with type 2 DM have a 15% chance for developing the disease and a 30% risk for having impaired glucose tolerance. Specific gene defects have been identified in certain groups with high incidence rates of type 2 DM (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

Metabolic syndrome, also called *syndrome X*, is the simultaneous presence of metabolic factors known to increase risk for developing type 2 DM and cardiovascular disease. Features of the syndrome include:

- Abdominal obesity: waist circumference of 40 inches (100 cm) or more for men and 35 inches (88 cm) or more for women
- Hyperglycemia: fasting blood glucose level of 100 mg/dL or more or on drug treatment for elevated glucose
- Hypertension: systolic BP of 130 mm Hg or more or diastolic BP of 85 mm Hg or more or on drug treatment for hypertension
- Hyperlipidemia: triglyceride level of 150 mg/dL or more or on drug treatment for elevated triglycerides; high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol less than 40 mg/dL for men or less than 50 mg/dL for women

Any one of these health problems increases the rate of atherosclerosis and the risk for stroke, coronary heart disease, and early death. Teach patients about the lifestyle changes that can improve health. Reducing weight to within 20% of ideal or body mass index to less than 25 kg/m² by modifying diet and exercising more will reduce cardiovascular risk. Drug therapy may be required to achieve desired lipid and blood pressure outcomes.

Incidence/Prevalence

More than 57 million American adults have **prediabetes**, defined as impaired fasting glucose (IFG) or impaired glucose tolerance (IGT). IFG (fasting plasma glucose levels of 100 mg/dL [5.6 mmol/L] to 125 mg/dL [6.9 mmol/L]) and IGT (2-hr oral glucose tolerance values of 140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L] to 199 mg/dL [11.0 mmol/L]) are considered risk factors for diabetes and for cardiovascular disease. Over a 3- to 5-year period, people with prediabetes have a fivefold to fifteenfold higher risk for developing type 2 DM than do those with normal blood glucose levels. IFG and IGT are associated with obesity (especially abdominal or central obesity), dyslipidemia with high triglycerides and/or low HDL cholesterol, and hypertension (AADE, 2009b).

The Diabetes Prevention Trial demonstrated that changes in physical activity and eating habits (primarily reduced calories from fat) resulting in weight loss were associated with reduced diabetes risk. Encourage the person with prediabetes to adopt healthy eating habits that limit caloric and fat intake sufficient for weight reduction and to participate in physical activity in order to sustain weight loss.

Diabetes is the seventh leading cause of death in the United States, where it affects 25.8 million people, or 8.3% of the population. An additional 7.0 million people are unaware they have the disease (ADA, 2011).

About 90% of people with diabetes have type 2 DM. It is diagnosed most often among middle-aged and older adults, affecting about 9.6% of patients ages 20 to 59 years and 20.9% of patients ages 60 years or older. The prevalence of diabetes is higher for men than for women (ADA, 2011).

Although type 2 diabetes is a disease of middle-aged and older adults, recent surveys show an increase of the disorder in childhood and adolescence as a result of obesity. Because the prevalence of obesity is rising in North America, diabetes will become even more common. Obesity and a higher-than-normal body mass index (BMI) greatly increase the risk for diabetes.

HEALTH PROMOTION AND MAINTENANCE

Diabetes is a common disorder causing many preventable but devastating complications and is a major public health problem. Control of diabetes and its complications is a major focus for health promotion activities. No interventions are successful in preventing type 1 DM. Health promotion for patients with type 1 DM focuses on controlling hyperglycemia to reduce its long-term complications.

Adopting a low-calorie diet that results in weight loss and increasing physical activity have been shown to improve metabolic and cardiac risk factors. These improvements include reducing hypertension, increasing heart rate variability between resting rate and exercise rate, lowering triglyceride levels, increasing high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (the “good” cholesterol) levels, and reducing low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (the “bad” cholesterol) levels. These changes reduce the incidence of type 2 DM in older adults by 58% (Mozaffarian et al., 2009).

Teach all patients with DM that tight control of blood glucose levels can prevent many complications. Urge all patients with DM to regularly follow up with their health care provider or endocrinologist, to have their eyes and vision tested yearly by an ophthalmologist, and to have urine microalbumin levels assessed yearly. Early detection of changes in the eye or kidney permits adjustments in treatment regimens that can slow or halt progression of retinopathy and

CULTURAL AWARENESS

Diabetes is a significant health problem for African Americans, American Indians, and Mexican Americans. The increase in obesity and sedentary lifestyles in the U.S. population is the probable cause of this growing problem. The ADA has identified patients who should be tested for diabetes in [Table 67-5](#).

Racial and ethnic differences affect clinical outcomes for patients with diabetes. The prevalence of hypertension in patients with diabetes is at least twice the rate of patients who do not have diabetes, with non-Hispanic whites and African Americans having the highest prevalence. Microvascular complications of the eyes, nerves, and kidneys are more common in African Americans and American Indians with diabetes than in non-Hispanic whites with diabetes. Possible factors for these differences include lack of access to health care, lifestyle issues, mistrust of the health care system, reduced financial resources, and lack of knowledge about the relationship between glucose control and complications.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The client newly diagnosed with type 2 diabetes asks how diabetes type 1 and diabetes type 2 are different. What is the nurse's best response?

- “Diabetes type 1 develops in people younger than 40 years and diabetes type 2 develops only in older people.”
- “Diabetes type 2 develops in people younger than 40 years and diabetes type 1 develops only in older people.”
- “Patients with type 1 diabetes are at higher risk for obesity and heart disease, whereas patients with type 2 diabetes are at higher risk for strokes.”
- “Patients with type 1 diabetes produce no insulin and patients with type 2 diabetes produce insulin but their insulin receptors are not very sensitive to it.”

TABLE 67-5 INDICATIONS FOR TESTING INDIVIDUALS FOR TYPE 2 DIABETES

- Testing for diabetes should be considered in people 45 years of age and older, particularly in those with a BMI greater than 25 kg/m². If normal, it should be repeated at 3-year intervals.
- Testing should be considered at a younger age or be carried out more frequently in people who are overweight (BMI >25 kg/m²) and have these additional associated factors:
 - Have a first-degree relative with diabetes
 - Are habitually physically inactive
 - Are members of a high-risk ethnic population (e.g., African American, Hispanic American, American Indian, Asian American, or Pacific Islander)
- Deliver a baby weighing more than 9 pounds or have been diagnosed with GDM
- Are hypertensive (>140/90 mm Hg)
- Have a high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol level less than 35 mg/dL (0.90 mmol/L) and/or a triglyceride level greater than 250 mg/dL (2.82 mmol/L)
- Have polycystic ovary syndrome
- Have IFG or IGT on previous testing
- Have a history of vascular disease

Data from American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010a). Position statement: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 14. BMI, Body mass index; GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus; IFG, impaired fasting glucose; IGT, impaired glucose tolerance.

nephropathy. Encourage all people to maintain weight within an appropriate range for height and body build and to engage in physical activity at least three times per week.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask questions about risk factors and symptoms related to diabetes. Age is important because type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM) is more common in older patients, especially among African Americans and Mexican Americans. Ask women how large their children were at birth, because many women who develop type 2 DM had gestational diabetes or were glucose intolerant during pregnancy. These women often have given birth to infants weighing 9 pounds or more.

Assessing weight and weight change is important, because excess weight and obesity are risk factors for type 2 DM. The patient with type 1 DM often has weight loss with increased appetite during the weeks before diagnosis. For both types of DM, patients usually have fatigue, polyuria, and polydipsia. Ask about recent major or minor infections. In particular, ask women about frequent vaginal yeast infections. Ask all patients whether they have noticed that small skin injuries become infected more easily or take longer to heal. Also ask whether they have noticed any changes in vision or in the sense of touch.

Laboratory Assessment

Diagnosis of Diabetes. Diabetes can be diagnosed by assessing blood glucose levels. The ADA defines normal blood glucose values in [Chart 67-1](#). ADA criteria for the diagnosis of type 2 DM are outlined in [Table 67-6](#). A test result

CHART 67-1 LABORATORY PROFILE

Blood Glucose Values

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL RESULTS
Fasting blood glucose test	<100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L) Older adults: Levels rise 1 mg/dL per decade of age	Levels >100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L) but <126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) indicate impaired fasting glucose (IFG). Levels >126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) obtained on at least two occasions are diagnostic of diabetes, even in older adults.
Glucose tolerance test (2-hr post-load result)	<140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L)	Levels >140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) and <200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) indicate impaired glucose tolerance (IGT). Levels >200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) indicate provisional diagnosis of diabetes.
Glycosylated hemoglobin (hemoglobin A _{1c} [HbA _{1c}]) test	4%-6%	Levels >8% indicate poor diabetic control and need for adherence to regimen or changes in therapy.

Data from American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010a). Position statement: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 42-47; American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010b). Position statement: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2010. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 11-61.

TABLE 67-6 CRITERIA FOR THE DIAGNOSIS OF TYPE 2 DIABETES

A_{1c} 6.5%. The test should be performed in a laboratory using a method that is NGSP certified and standardized to the DCCT assay.
Or
Fasting plasma glucose greater than 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L).
Fasting is defined as no caloric intake for at least 8 hr.
Or
2-hr plasma glucose greater than 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) during an oral glucose tolerance test. The test should be performed using a glucose load containing the equivalent of 75 g anhydrous glucose dissolved in water.
Or
In a patient with classic manifestations of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis, a casual blood glucose concentration greater than 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L). *Casual* is defined as any time of the day without regard to time since last meal. The classic manifestations of diabetes include polyuria, polydipsia, and unexplained weight loss.

NOTE: In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycemia, the first three criteria should be confirmed by repeat testing.

Data from American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010a). Position statement: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 14. NGSP, National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program; DCCT, Diabetes Control and Complications Trial.

CHART 67-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Blood Glucose Testing**Fasting Blood Glucose**

- Do not eat any food or drink any liquid except water for at least 8 hours before the test.

Oral Glucose Tolerance Test

- Eat a balanced diet with carbohydrate intake of at least 150 g for a minimum of 3 days before the test while maintaining normal physical activity.
- Carbohydrate restriction, bedrest, acute illness, and certain drugs interfere with the test. Phenytoin (Dilantin), anovulatory drugs, diuretics, nicotinic acid, and glucocorticoids adversely affect results.
- The test is performed in the morning after a 10- to 12-hour fast.
- A fasting blood sample is obtained.
- You will be asked to drink 300 mL of a flavored beverage containing 75 g of glucose within 5 minutes of the fasting blood sample.
- Blood samples are drawn at 30-minute intervals for 2 hours.
- During the test, you will remain at rest and not be able to smoke or drink liquids.

diagnostic of DM should be repeated to rule out laboratory error unless classic manifestations of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis are also present.

The diagnosis of diabetes mellitus has recently changed to include elevated glycosylated hemoglobin levels. This test was not previously recommended for diagnosing diabetes because of a lack of assay standardization. **Glycosylated hemoglobin A_{1c} (HbA_{1c})** is a test that measures how much glucose permanently attaches to a specific area of the hemoglobin molecule. Because glucose binds to a variety of proteins (including hemoglobin) through a process called *glycosylation*, the higher the blood glucose level is over time, the more glycosylated hemoglobin becomes. HbA_{1c} testing is now highly standardized for accuracy and precision. The ADA defines HbA_{1c} levels greater than 6.5% as diagnostic of DM (ADA, 2009).

Fasting plasma glucose (FPG) is used to diagnose diabetes in nonpregnant adults. The patient should have no caloric intake for at least 8 hours (water is permitted). The blood sample needs to be obtained before insulin or oral antidiabetic agents have been taken. A diagnosis of diabetes is made with two separate test results greater than 126 mg/dL (7 mmol/L) (ADA, 2010a). Patient and family education about blood glucose testing is presented in [Chart 67-2](#). *Random or casual plasma glucose* greater than 200 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) is used to diagnose diabetes in patients with severe classic hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis.

Oral glucose tolerance testing (OGTT) is the most sensitive test for the diagnosis of DM. However, it is not routinely used in the diagnosis because it is inconvenient to patients, costly, and time consuming compared with fasting blood glucose measures. The diagnosis of gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) is based on the oral glucose tolerance test (75-g glucose load, 2-hr test or 100-g glucose load, 3-hr test). Before the test, review instructions from [Chart 67-2](#) with the patient. He or she drinks a beverage containing a glucose load, and blood samples are collected at hourly intervals. Two or more

of the plasma levels must be met or exceeded for a diagnosis of DM (ADA, 2010a).

Other blood tests for diabetes can help determine whether a patient has type 1 or type 2 DM, although they are not commonly used. Type 1 DM is an autoimmune disease with the presence of autoantibodies to proteins. The presence of islet cell antibodies (ICAs) is an indicator for type 1 DM. Measurement of C-peptide levels indicates beta secretory function of the pancreas. C-peptide levels correlate well with insulin levels and are used to diagnose type 1 DM.

Screening for Diabetes. Evidence from type 1 DM prevention studies suggests that measurement of islet cell antibodies identifies people who are at risk for developing type 1 DM. Testing to detect prediabetes and type 2 DM should be considered in patients older than 45 years and those defined as overweight (BMI greater than 25 kg/m²). Testing is considered for patients who are younger than 45 years and are overweight if they have additional risk factors for diabetes or have other health problems associated with diabetes. Screening for diabetes is done with hemoglobin A_{1c} levels or either fasting plasma glucose levels or the 2-hour OGTT (75-g glucose load) (ADA, 2010a; ADA, 2010b).

Ongoing Assessment. Glucose can bind to a variety of structures, including proteins, through a process called *glycosylation*. *Glycosylated hemoglobin assays* are useful because blood glucose permanently attaches to hemoglobin. The higher the blood glucose level is over time, the more glycosylated hemoglobin becomes. Thus glycosylated HbA_{1c} is a good indicator of the average blood glucose levels. Measurement of A_{1c} shows the average blood glucose level during the previous 120 days—the life span of red blood cells. HbA_{1c} testing is used to assess long-term glycemic control, as well as to predict the risk for complications. *Unlike the fasting blood glucose test, HbA_{1c} test results are not altered by eating habits the day before the test.* This testing is performed at diagnosis and at specific intervals to evaluate the treatment plan. Hemolysis, blood loss, and pregnancy all increase red blood cell turnover and reduce HbA_{1c} levels. Triglycerides and bilirubin interfere with the assay, leading to overestimation of A_{1c} levels in patients with hypertriglyceridemia. HbA_{1c} testing is recommended at least twice yearly in patients who are meeting expected treatment outcomes and have stable blood glucose control. Quarterly assessment is recommended for patients whose therapy has changed or who are not meeting prescribed glycemic levels (ADA, 2010a). Table 67-7 shows the correlation between HbA_{1c} and mean blood glucose levels.

When glucose binds to amino groups on serum proteins, especially albumin, the glycosylated protein product is called *fructosamine*. This product increases with elevated blood glucose levels in the same way as hemoglobin does. However, because serum proteins and albumin turn over in 14 days, compared with 120 days for red blood cells, these proteins can indicate blood glucose control over a shorter period. These measures are useful when tight control of blood glucose is necessary (e.g., pregnancy), in short-term follow-up of treatment changes, or in patients with hemoglobin abnormalities in which HbA_{1c} is not an accurate reflection of glucose control. Available tests are called *glycosylated serum albumin* (GSA), *glycosylated serum protein* (GSP), and *fructosamine*.

Urine Tests. *Ketone bodies* are a product of fat metabolism. The presence of moderate to high urine ketones (hyperketonuria) indicates a severe lack of insulin. Hyperketonuria

TABLE 67-7 CORRELATION BETWEEN HBA_{1c} LEVEL AND MEAN PLASMA GLUCOSE LEVELS

HBA _{1c} (%)	MEAN PLASMA GLUCOSE	
	MG/DL	MMOL/L
6	126	7.0
7	154	8.6
8	183	10.2
9	212	11.8
10	240	13.4
11	269	14.9
12	298	16.5

Data from American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010b). Position statement: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2010. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 19. HbA_{1c}, Hemoglobin A_{1c}.

in the presence of hyperglycemia is a medical emergency that, when detected early, can be treated with insulin and careful monitoring. Urine testing for ketones should be performed during acute illness or stress, when blood glucose levels consistently exceed 300 mg/dL (16.7 mmol/L), during pregnancy, or when any symptoms of ketoacidosis are present. Ketone testing also is recommended for patients with diabetes participating in a weight-loss program. Hyperketonuria without hyperglycemia suggests that weight loss is occurring without disrupting blood glucose control.

Ketone bodies include beta-hydroxybutyric acid, acetoacetic acid, and acetone. They appear in urine in the same proportion as they do in blood but are affected by urine volume and concentration. Ketones are variably reabsorbed by the kidney tubules and may be present in urine long after blood levels have returned to normal. For these reasons, urine ketone bodies are not used to evaluate the effectiveness of treatment for ketoacidosis.

Tests for kidney function are important because the presence of urine protein without kidney symptoms may indicate microvascular changes in the kidney. Urine albumin excretion rates of 20 to 200 g/min (30 to 300 mg/hr) indicate microalbuminuria. Even minor elevations of albumin are associated with increased mortality.

Once clinical proteinuria has been detected, kidney function (e.g., glomerular filtration rate) is assessed by creatinine clearance tests (see Chapter 68). In patients with nephropathy, a rise in serum creatinine level is related to both poor blood glucose control and hypertension.

Urine glucose testing is an indirect measurement of blood glucose and is much less precise than blood glucose testing. Fluid intake, urine elimination patterns, and certain drugs affect the results. This test may be appropriate for a quick screening but should not be used for monitoring diabetes management.

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for patients with diabetes are:

1. Potential for injury related to hyperglycemia
2. Potential for impaired wound healing related to endocrine and vascular effects of diabetes
3. Potential for injury related to diabetic neuropathy
4. Pain related to diabetic neuropathy

5. Potential for injury related to diabetic retinopathy–induced reduced vision
6. Potential for kidney disease related to impaired renal circulation
7. Potential for hypoglycemia
8. Potential for diabetic ketoacidosis
9. Potential for hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state and coma

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The management of diabetes mellitus (DM) is complex and involves extensive patient education. The Concept Map on p. 1422 highlights care issues for the patient with type 2 DM.

Preventing Injury from Hyperglycemia

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with diabetes is expected to manage DM and prevent disease progression by maintaining blood glucose levels in the expected range. Indicators are that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Performs treatment regimen as prescribed
- Follows recommended diet
- Monitors blood glucose using correct testing procedures
- Manages symptoms of hyperglycemia
- Seeks health care if blood glucose levels fluctuate outside of recommended parameters
- Meets recommended activity levels
- Uses drugs as prescribed
- Maintains optimum weight
- Problem-solves about barriers to self-management

Interventions

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical management of diabetes mellitus (DM) involves nutritional interventions, blood glucose monitoring, a planned exercise program, and in some instances, drugs to lower blood glucose levels. The nurse, together with the patient, physician, dietitian, pharmacist, case manager, and in some cases, physical therapist, plans, coordinates, and delivers care.

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) has proposed these treatment outcomes for glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) and blood glucose levels (ADA, 2010a):

- HbA_{1c} levels are maintained at 7% or below.
- The majority of premeal (preprandial) blood glucose levels are 70 to 130 mg/dL (3.9 to 7.2 mmol/L).
- Peak after-meal (postprandial) blood glucose levels are less than 180 mg/dL (<10.0 mmol/L).

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy is indicated when a patient with type 2 DM does not achieve blood glucose control with diet changes, regular exercise, and stress management. Several categories of drugs are available to lower blood glucose levels. Patients with type 1 DM require insulin therapy for blood glucose control.

Drugs are started at the lowest effective dose and increased every 1 to 2 weeks until the patient reaches desired blood glucose control or the maximum dosage. If the maximum dosage of one agent does not control blood glucose levels, a second agent with a different mechanism of action may be added. Insulin therapy is indicated for the patient with type 2 DM when blood glucose cannot be controlled with the use of two or three different antidiabetic agents.

Antidiabetic drugs are not a substitute for dietary modification and exercise. Teach the patient about the need for

continuing dietary restrictions and regular exercise while taking antidiabetic drugs.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

To avoid adverse drug interactions, teach the patient who is taking an antidiabetic drug to consult with his or her primary care provider or pharmacist before using *any* over-the-counter drugs.

Drug Selection. The choice of antidiabetic drug is based on cost, the patient's ability to manage multiple drug dosages, age, and response to the drugs. Shorter-acting drugs (e.g., glipizide) are preferred for older patients, those with irregular eating schedules, and those with liver, kidney, or cardiac function problems. Longer-acting drugs (e.g., glyburide, glimepiride) with once-daily dosing are better for adherence. Beta-cell function in type 2 DM often declines over time, reducing the effectiveness of some drugs. The treatment regimen for a patient with type 2 DM may eventually require insulin therapy either alone or with oral drugs.

Antidiabetic Drugs. Drug therapy is prescribed when dietary control has proven insufficient or if the patient is highly symptomatic. Some antidiabetic drugs are oral agents and others require subcutaneous injection.

Insulin Secretagogues. Insulin secretagogues stimulate insulin release from pancreatic beta cells and are used for patients who are still able to produce insulin. These drugs work by blocking potassium in pancreatic beta cells, which increases the time the beta cells spend in the calcium-release stage of cell signaling. This extra time allows for a higher intracellular calcium level, which then signals each beta cell to release more insulin.

Sulfonylurea Agents. Sulfonylurea agents lower fasting plasma glucose levels by triggering the release of insulin from beta cells. Drugs in this class differ in strength, overall effects, metabolism, and risk for complications (Chart 67-3). First-generation sulfonylurea drugs are seldom used.

Side effects of sulfonylurea agents include weight gain and hypoglycemia. Underweight older adults with cardiovascular, liver, or kidney impairment are more susceptible to hypoglycemia. Many drugs interact with sulfonylureas (Table 67-8).

Meglitinide Analogs. Meglitinide analogs are classified as insulin secretagogues and have actions and adverse effects similar to those of sulfonylureas. Repaglinide (Prandin) and Nateglinide (Starlix) were designed to increase meal-related insulin secretion. They are rapidly absorbed and have a short duration of action. Meglitinide analogs lower HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 1.5 percentage points.

Repaglinide (Prandin) is taken before meals, has a rapid onset with a limited duration of action, and is used to treat both fasting and after-meal hyperglycemia. Adverse effects include hypoglycemia, GI disturbances, upper respiratory infections, joint and back pain, and headache.

Nateglinide (Starlix) is rapidly absorbed and stimulates insulin secretion within 20 minutes of ingestion. It is taken just before meals to control mealtime hyperglycemia and improves overall glycemic control in patients with type 2 DM. The major adverse effect is hypoglycemia. Teach patients who skip meals to also skip their scheduled dose of Starlix to reduce the risk for hypoglycemia.

Text continued on page 1428.

Concept Map: Diabetes Mellitus — Type 2

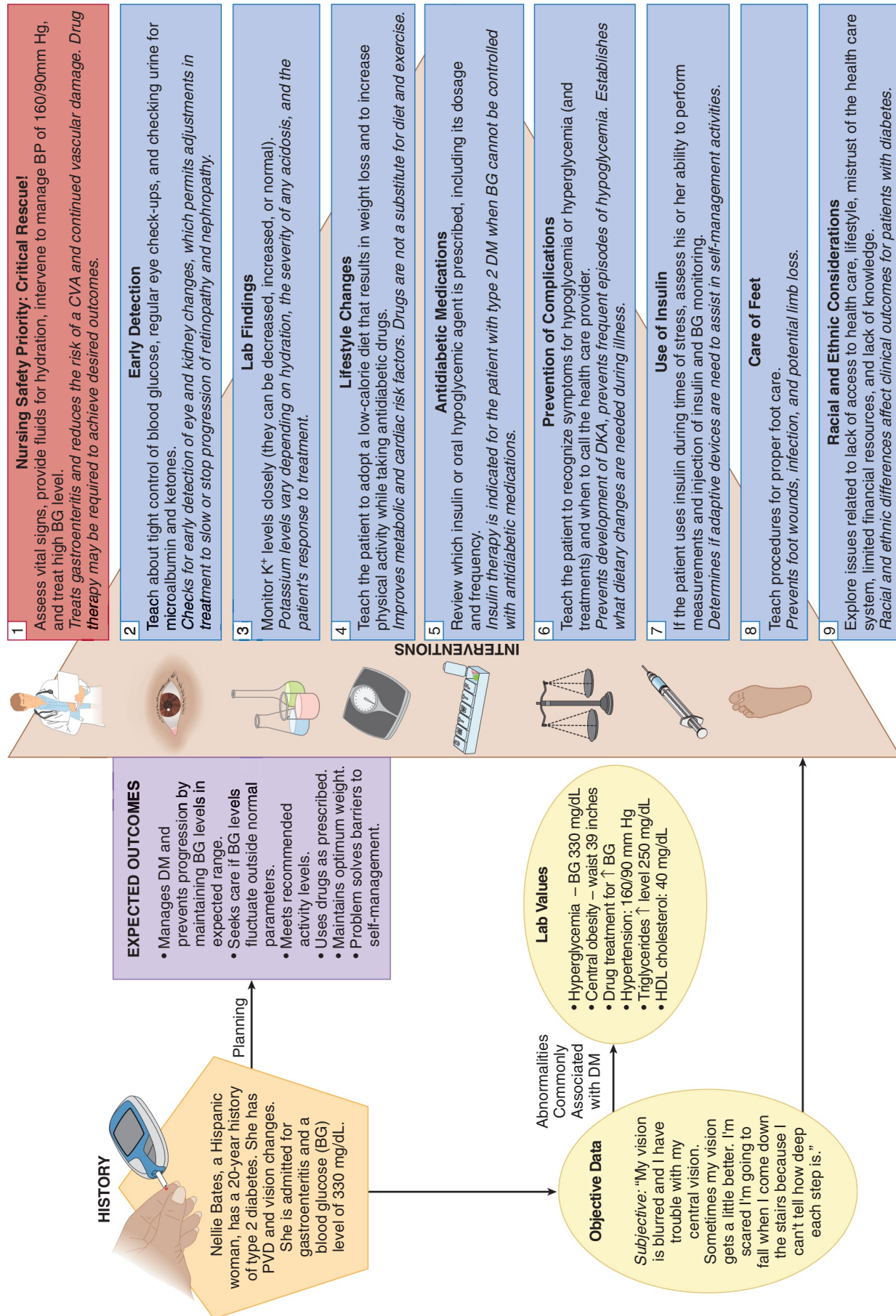


CHART 67-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Diabetes Mellitus

USE IN DIABETES	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Secretagogues		
Second-Generation Sulfonylurea Agents		
Glipizide (Glucotrol) Usual dose: 5-10 mg every 12 hr Glucotrol XL (Extended-release form) 5-20 mg orally once daily	Teach patients to take the drug 30 min before meals. Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia. Monitor patients with impaired kidney function carefully for hypoglycemia. Instruct patients to swallow the extended-release form of the drug whole and not divided, chewed, or crushed.	Taking the drug 30 min before a meal achieves the best after-meal blood glucose concentration. Because the drug induces insulin secretion, hypoglycemia is possible. The drug is eliminated by the kidney. Patients with impaired kidney function have higher blood levels of the drug and are at risk for hypoglycemia. Damaging the extended-release form of the drug causes the rapid release of the entire dose and can cause hypoglycemia.
Glimepiride (Amaryl) Initial dose: 1-2 mg orally once daily Maintenance dose: 1-4 mg orally once daily Maximum dose: 8 mg daily	Used as single therapy or in combination with metformin or insulin in treatment of type 2 diabetes.	Debilitated or malnourished patients or those with impaired kidney or liver function are more sensitive to blood glucose-lowering effects of glimepiride.
Meglitinide Analogs		
Repaglinide (Prandin) Usual dose: 0.5-4 mg orally daily	Increase insulin secretion in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Short-acting agent used to prevent postmeal blood glucose elevation.	Drug is most effective when administered with or just before eating a meal. Hypoglycemia may occur shortly after dosing when the meal is delayed or omitted.
Nateglinide (Starlix) Usual dose: 60-120 mg orally before meals	Increase insulin secretion in the treatment of type 2 diabetes. Short-acting agent used to prevent postmeal blood glucose elevation.	Drug is most effective when administered with or just before eating a meal. Hypoglycemia may occur shortly after dosing when the meal is delayed or omitted.
Biguanides		
Metformin (Glucophage) Usual dose: 850 mg orally twice daily with the morning and evening meals (Glucophage XL) Usual dose: 500-2000 mg orally daily before breakfast	Lowers both basal and postmeal blood glucose levels in patients with type 2 diabetes by reducing hepatic glucose production and tissue sensitivity to insulin. Monitor liver and kidney function before starting metformin and periodically thereafter. Monitor cardiopulmonary status throughout therapy. Monitor for conditions that increase risk for lactic acidosis. Instruct patients taking metformin to report symptoms of lactic acidosis: malaise, unusual muscle pain, respiratory distress, increasing somnolence, and abdominal distress.	Adverse GI side effects such as diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, flatulence, indigestion, and abdominal discomfort are common. Taking the drug with food reduces these effects. Metformin should be used with caution in older patients since aging is associated with reduced kidney function. Metformin is contraindicated in people with serum creatinine in males >1.5 mg/dL (132.6 $\mu\text{mol/L}$), and in females >1.4 mg/dL (123.8 $\mu\text{mol/L}$). Metformin should not be used in patients with congestive heart failure requiring drug therapy. These patients are at risk for hypoperfusion and hypoxemia, conditions which increase the risk for lactic acidosis. Metformin is contraindicated in people with risk factors for lactic acidosis: reduced kidney function, liver impairment, respiratory insufficiency, severe infection, alcohol abuse. Onset of lactic acidosis is subtle and accompanied by nonspecific symptoms.

Continued

CHART 67-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Diabetes Mellitus—cont'd

USE IN DIABETES	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Metformin—cont'd	Instruct patients taking metformin to report any illness that causes severe vomiting, diarrhea, or fever. Withhold metformin for 48 hr before use of iodinated contrast materials used in certain radiographic studies. Instruct patients taking Glucophage XL that tablets must be swallowed whole and never crushed or chewed.	Precipitating events for lactic acidosis include hypoxemia, dehydration, and sepsis. Iodinated contrast materials can alter kidney function and increase the risk for lactic acidosis. Metformin therapy is restarted when kidney function has returned to normal. Damaging the extended-release form of the drug causes the rapid release of the entire dose and can cause hypoglycemia.
Alpha-Glucosidase Inhibitors	Acarbose (Precose) Usual dose: 50-100 mg orally three times daily Used to prevent postmeal blood glucose elevation in the treatment of type 2 diabetes.	Acarbose must be taken at the beginning of a meal to be fully effective. Acarbose works only when taken at the beginning of a meal. If it is not taken at that time, it should not be taken until the next meal.
	Monitor for abdominal pain, diarrhea, and flatulence. Teach patients about dietary habits to decrease GI discomfort.	GI side effects are very common. Symptoms can be reduced by slow titration of dose. Avoiding foods that will increase GI discomfort such as rich foods, sauces, beverages including beer and carbonated soft drinks, gas-producing foods such as beans, nuts, bran cereals, broccoli, and cabbage reduce the GI side effects of the drug. Meals and snacks should be low in fat. Drinking plenty of water, especially in the early part of the day, and avoiding overeating also reduce symptoms.
Monitor kidney function.	Monitor liver function tests. Emphasize the need to report symptoms of unexplained nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, fatigue, anorexia, or dark urine.	Drug may accumulate in patients with kidney dysfunction; drug not recommended for patients with serum creatinine >2 mg/dL (176.8 µmol/L).
	Instruct patients receiving acarbose to treat hypoglycemia with glucose tablets, glucose gel, or low-fat milk.	Acarbose is associated with elevation in serum transaminase levels. Doses >150 mg/day associated with increases in ALT and AST (SGOT). ALT should be checked every 3 months for first year and periodically thereafter. Acarbose does not cause hypoglycemia when given alone. Hypoglycemia caused by other agents should be treated with oral dextrose. Sucrose (table sugar or candy bars) will not reverse symptoms of hypoglycemia due to acarbose. Remove from wrapper immediately before taking the drug to prevent deterioration of acarbose.
Miglitol (Glyset) Usual dose: 50 mg orally three times daily Used to prevent postmeal blood glucose elevation in the treatment of type 2 diabetes.	Teach patients to store the drug according to manufacturer's directions. Instruct patients to take the drug with the first bite of each main meal. Monitor kidney function.	Miglitol must be taken at the beginning of a meal to be fully effective. Drug may accumulate in patients with kidney dysfunction; drug not recommended for patients with serum creatinine >2 mg/dL.
Monitor for abdominal pain, diarrhea, and flatulence.	Monitor liver function tests.	GI side effects are very common. Symptoms can be reduced by slow titration of dose. Miglitol is associated with elevation in serum transaminase levels.
Emphasize the need to report symptoms of unexplained nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, fatigue, anorexia, or dark urine.		These manifestations are associated with reduced liver function.

Thiazolidinediones

Pioglitazone (Actos)

Usual dose: 15 mg or 30 mg once orally daily without regard to meals

Improves tissue sensitivity to insulin in the treatment of type 2 diabetes.

Teach patients taking miglitol to treat hypoglycemia with glucose tablets, glucose gel, or low-fat milk.

Miglitol does not cause hypoglycemia when given alone. Hypoglycemia caused by other agents should be treated with oral dextrose. Sucrose (table sugar or candy bars) will not reverse symptoms of hypoglycemia due to acarbose.

Emphasize the need for liver function tests as recommended. Instruct patients to report symptoms of unexplained nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, fatigue, anorexia, or dark urine.

Rare cases of liver failure have occurred with pioglitazone. Liver function tests are measured at the start of therapy and at regular intervals thereafter. Not recommended for moderate to severe liver impairment (ALT >2.5 upper limit of normal or active liver disease) or in patients with jaundice.

Advise women of the need for effective contraception during therapy.

Administration of pioglitazone with certain oral contraceptives may reduce the plasma concentration of the oral contraceptive. Postmenopausal women with insulin resistance may resume ovulation during therapy. Fluid retention can lead to weight gain and can cause or exacerbate congestive heart failure.

Monitor weight; assess for edema and shortness of breath.

Stress importance of continuing therapy even if a response is not evident within 2 weeks.

Full therapeutic response may not be evident for 8-12 weeks after initiation of therapy.

Rosiglitazone (Avandia)

Usual dose: 4 mg orally daily in the morning, or 2 mg twice daily in the morning and evening without regard to food

Improves tissue sensitivity to insulin in the treatment of type 2 diabetes.

Emphasize the need for liver function tests as recommended. Instruct the patient to report symptoms of unexplained nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, fatigue, anorexia, or dark urine.

Rare cases of liver failure have occurred with rosiglitazone. Liver function tests are measured at the start of therapy and at regular intervals thereafter. Not recommended for moderate to severe liver impairment (ALT >2.5 upper limit of normal or active liver disease) or in patients with jaundice.

Advise women of the need for effective contraception during therapy.

Administration of rosiglitazone with certain oral contraceptives may reduce the plasma concentration of the oral contraceptive. Postmenopausal women with insulin resistance may resume ovulation during therapy. Fluid retention can lead to weight gain and can cause or exacerbate congestive heart failure.

Monitor weight; assess for edema and shortness of breath.

Stress importance of continuing therapy even if a response is not evident within 2 weeks.

Full therapeutic response may not be evident for 2-3 months after initiation of therapy.

Fixed Combinations

Actoplus Met (pioglitazone/metformin)

Usual doses:

15 mg/500 mg or

15 mg/850 mg

orally once or twice daily

Pioglitazone added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on metformin therapy alone.

Instruct patients in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.

Hypoglycemia may occur when metformin is given in combination with thiazolidinedione agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for pioglitazone and metformin.

Avandamet (rosiglitazone/metformin)

Usual oral doses:

1 mg/500 mg

2 mg/500 mg

4 mg/500 mg

Maximum dose: 8 mg/2000 mg daily

Rosiglitazone added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on metformin therapy alone.

Teach patients to take the drug in divided doses with meals. Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.

Hypoglycemia may occur when metformin is given in combination with thiazolidinedione agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for metformin and rosiglitazone.

Continued

CHART 67-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Diabetes Mellitus—cont'd

	USE IN DIABETES	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Avandaryl (glimepiride/ rosiglitazone) Usual oral doses: 1 mg/4 mg 2 mg/4 mg 4 mg/4 mg Maximum dose: 4 mg/8 mg daily	Rosiglitazone added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on glimepiride therapy alone.	Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Hypoglycemia may occur when glimepiride is given in combination with thiazolidinedione agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for rosiglitazone and glimepiride.
Duetact (glimepiride/ pioglitazone) Usual once daily doses: 2 mg/30 mg 4 mg/30 mg	Pioglitazone added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on glimepiride therapy alone.	Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Hypoglycemia may occur when glimepiride is given in combination with thiazolidinedione agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for pioglitazone and glimepiride.
Glucovance (glyburide/ metformin) Usual oral twice-daily doses: 1.25 mg/250 mg 2.5 mg/500 mg 5 mg/500 mg	Metformin added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on glyburide therapy alone.	Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Hypoglycemia may occur when metformin is given in combination with sulfonylurea agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for metformin and glyburide.
Janumet (sitagliptin/metformin) Usual oral twice-daily doses: 100 mg/1000 mg 100 mg/2000 mg Maximum dose: 100 mg/2000 mg	Sitagliptin added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on metformin therapy alone.	Teach patients to take the drug twice daily with meals.	Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for sitagliptin and metformin.
Metaglip (glipizide/ metformin) Usual oral twice-daily doses: 2.5 mg/250 mg 2.5 mg/500 mg 5 mg/500 mg	Metformin added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on glipizide therapy alone.	Teach patients to take the drug with meals. Teach patients how to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Hypoglycemia may occur when metformin is given in combination with sulfonylurea agent. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for metformin and glipizide.
PrandiMet (repaglinide /metformin) Usual oral doses taken two or three times daily: 1 mg/500 mg 2 mg/500 mg Maximum dose: 10 mg/2500 mg	Repaglinide added to regimen when blood glucose is inadequately controlled on metformin therapy alone.	Instruct patients in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Hypoglycemia may occur when metformin is given in combination with repaglinide. Refer to Nursing Interventions and Rationales listed for repaglinide and metformin.
Amylin Analog Pramlintide (Symlin) Initial subcutaneous dose immediately before each meal: 15 mcg Maintenance dose: 30 mcg or 60 mcg	Used for people with type 1 or type 2 diabetes who have not received desired glucose control with optimal insulin therapy.	Teach the patient to prepare and self-administer pramlintide. Instruct the patient in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia. Instruct the patient to eat at least 250 calories or 30 g of carbohydrate after taking pramlintide.	A U-100 insulin syringe is used to administer pramlintide. It is necessary to convert the microgram dosage to insulin syringe unit increments. Pramlintide carries a Black Box Warning for severe insulin-induced hypoglycemia. The risk for hypoglycemia is greatest within 3 hours of injection.

Pramlintide and insulin are not compatible when mixed together.	Instruct the patient in measures to avoid drug incompatibilities: Do not mix pramlintide and insulin together in the same syringe. Inject pramlintide into an anatomical site distant from the insulin injection site.	
Incretin Mimetics (GLP-1 agonist) Exenatide (Byetta) Initial subcutaneous dose: 5 mcg twice daily Maintenance dose: 10 mcg twice daily	Exenatide is used as monotherapy or as part of 2- or 3-drug regimen for patients with type 2 diabetes.	Teach the patient to prepare and self-administer exenatide. Instruct patients to administer as subcutaneous injection within 60 minutes before morning and evening meals (or two main meals of the day). Teach patients the actions to take for missed doses of the drug. Instruct the patient in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia. Instruct patient to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of unexplained persistent severe abdominal pain with or without nausea and vomiting. Teach patients to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of hypersensitive reactions to their provider.
Exenatide is available in a prefilled pen containing 60 doses for 30 days of use. Patient education in use of the pen is necessary to ensure that the patient receives the correct dose of the drug. Instruct patients to take the missed dose at the next meal. Exenatide is not given after a meal. Hypoglycemia has been reported when exenatide is given in combination with a sulfonylurea agent. Acute pancreatitis, including both fatal and nonfatal hemorrhagic or necrotizing pancreatitis, has been reported in patients taking exenatide. Hypersensitive reactions including exfoliative dermatitis, urticaria, skin rash, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome have been reported in patients taking exenatide.	Liraglutide is available in a prefilled multi-dose pen. Patient education in use of the pen is necessary to ensure that the patient receives the correct dose of the drug. Side effects tend to be dose-related and lessen over time. Hypoglycemia may occur when liraglutide is given in combination with a sulfonylurea agent. Pancreatitis has been reported in patients taking liraglutide.	Liraglutide (Victoza) Initiate at 0.6 mg per day for 1 week Increase to 1.2 mg after 1 week Maximum once daily subcutaneous dose: 1.8 mg
Liraglutide is available in a prefilled multi-dose pen. Patient education in use of the pen is necessary to ensure that the patient receives the correct dose of the drug. Side effects tend to be dose-related and lessen over time. Hypoglycemia may occur when liraglutide is given in combination with a sulfonylurea agent. Pancreatitis has been reported in patients taking liraglutide.	Instruct patients to administer once daily, at any time of the day, independent of meals. Inject subcutaneously in abdomen, thigh, or upper arm. Monitor for nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, dyspepsia, and constipation. Instruct patients in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia. Observe and report symptoms of pancreatitis: persistent severe abdominal pain with or without nausea and vomiting.	DPP-4 Inhibitors Sitagliptin (Januvia) Recommended dose: 100 mg orally once daily
Drug is effective with or without food and does not increase the risk for hypoglycemia. Acute pancreatitis, including both fatal and nonfatal hemorrhagic or necrotizing pancreatitis, has been reported in patients taking sitagliptin. Drug is effective with or without food and does not increase the risk for hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia may occur when saxagliptin is given in combination with glyburide.	Instruct patients to administer once daily, with or without food. Instruct patient to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of unexplained persistent severe abdominal pain with or without nausea and vomiting. Instruct patients to administer once daily, with or without food. Instruct patients in measures to prevent and treat hypoglycemia.	Saxagliptin (Onglyza) Recommended dose: 2.5 mg or 5 mg orally once daily

ALT, Alanine aminotransferase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; SGOT, serum glutamate oxaloacetate transaminase.

TABLE 67-8 DRUG INTERACTIONS WITH SULFONYLUREA AGENTS

POTENTIATE HYPOGLYCEMIA	WORSEN HYPERGLYCEMIA
Angiotensin-converting agents (captopril [Capoten], enalapril [Vasotec])	Adrenalin
Alcohol	Calcium channel blocking agents (diltiazem [Cardizem], nifedipine [Procardia])
Allopurinol (Zyloprim)	Corticosteroids (prednisone)
Analgesics (azapropazone, phenylbutazone, salicylates)	Diazoxide (Proglycem [oral], Hyperstat [IV])
Antifungal azoles (fluconazole [Diflucan], ketoconazole [Nizoral], miconazole [Monistat])	Estrogen (Estrace, Premarin)
Beta-adrenergic blocking agents (atenolol, [Tenormin], propranolol [Inderal])	Estrogen-progesterone-containing oral contraceptives (Brevicon, Depo-Provera, Estrostep)
Chloramphenicol (Chloromycetin)	Furosemide (Lasix)
Clofibrate (Atromid-S)	Isoniazid (INH)
Warfarin (Coumadin)	Nicotinic acid (Nicolar)
Fluoroquinolones (ciprofloxacin [Cipro], gatifloxacin [Tequin], levofloxacin [Levaquin])	Phenothiazines (chlorpromazine [Thorazine], prochlorperazine [Compazine], trifluoperazine [Stelazine])
Heparin	Phenytoin (Dilantin)
Histamine H ₂ antagonists (cimetidine [Tagamet], ranitidine [Zantac])	Rifampin (Rifadin)
Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors (phenelzine [Nardil])	Sympathomimetics
NSAIDs (indomethacin [Indocin], ibuprofen [Advil])	Thiazide diuretics (hydrochlorothiazide [HydroDIURIL], chlorothiazide [Diuril])
Octreotide (Sandostatin)	
Probenecid (Benemid, Probalan)	
Sulfinpyrazone (Anturane)	
Sulfonamides (trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole [Bactrim], sulfisoxazole [Gantrisin])	
Tricyclic antidepressants (amitriptyline hydrochloride, desipramine hydrochloride [Norpramin], doxepin hydrochloride [Sinequan])	

Data from *AHFS Drug Information*. (2009). Bethesda, MD: American Society of Health-System Pharmacists.

Insulin Sensitizers. Insulin sensitizers include biguanides (metformin) and thiazolidinediones (TZDs). Metformin (Glucophage) does not increase insulin secretion. It decreases liver glucose production, thereby reducing fasting plasma glucose release, and improves insulin receptor sensitivity. TZDs bind to a regulatory protein, peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR), that controls expression of genes that regulate glucose and fat metabolism. TZDs increase cellular utilization of glucose, which lowers blood glucose levels.

The ADA recommends metformin as initial therapy for type 2 DM because the drug does not induce weight gain or hypoglycemia and has a relatively low cost and few adverse

effects. It should not be given to anyone with kidney disease and elevated blood creatinine levels. The drug should be withheld for 48 hours before and after using contrast material and surgical procedures requiring anesthesia. Metformin lowers HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 1.5 percentage points.

The most common side effects are abdominal discomfort and diarrhea. Metformin can cause lactic acidosis in patients with kidney problems and should not be used in conditions that decrease drug clearance, such as liver disease, alcoholism, or severe congestive heart failure or in patients older than 80 years. Hypoxemia, dehydration, and sepsis also increase the risk for lactic acidosis. Symptoms of lactic acidosis can be subtle. Teach the patient to report symptoms of fatigue, unusual muscle pain, difficulty breathing, unusual or unexpected stomach discomfort, dizziness, lightheadedness, or irregular heartbeats to the primary care provider. Instruct patients to take metformin with meals to reduce GI effects. Caution against excessive alcohol intake because alcohol increases the risk for lactic acidosis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Metformin can cause lactic acidosis in patients with renal insufficiency and should not be used by anyone with kidney disease. To prevent kidney damage, the drug should be withheld after using contrast material or any surgical procedure requiring anesthesia until adequate kidney function is established.

Thiazolidinediones (TZDs) improve insulin sensitivity and reduce liver glucose production. TZDs also improve insulin action in muscle, fat, and liver tissue. The two drugs in this class are rosiglitazone (Avandia) and pioglitazone (Actos).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not confuse Actos with Actonel. Actos is an oral antidiabetic drug from the thiazolidinedione class, and Actonel is a drug that prevents calcium loss from bones.

All drugs in this class reduce blood lipid levels. Major side effects of TZD treatment are an increase in adipose tissue and fluid retention. Some patients taking these drugs gain weight. Edema, with development of congestive heart failure, is possible but rare. Other side effects include infection, headache, peripheral edema, and pain. Patients taking these drugs should have periodic liver function studies because of the potential for liver damage. There is an increased incidence of fractures of the upper arms, hands, and feet in women using rosiglitazone and pioglitazone. TZDs lower HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 0.5 to 1.4 percentage points.

Rosiglitazone has been associated with an increased risk for heart-related deaths, bone fracture, and macular edema. In May 2011, the FDA issued prescribing information, which includes this black box warning:

- Prescription of rosiglitazone, either as a single drug or combined with other drugs, is limited to only those

patients who are already using the drug and whose disease cannot be adequately controlled by other drugs or a combination of drugs. It is absolutely contraindicated in patients with any symptomatic heart failure.

- Rosiglitazone causes or exacerbates congestive heart failure in some patients. Monitor for signs and symptoms of heart failure (excessive rapid weight gain, difficulty breathing and/or swelling) after starting treatment or after increases in dosage of rosiglitazone. If heart failure signs and symptoms occur, the heart failure should be managed appropriately and discontinuation of rosiglitazone must be considered.
- Rosiglitazone is available only through pharmacies that are certified by the Avandia-Rosiglitazone Medicines Access Programs.

(A **Black Box Warning** is a government designation indicating that a drug has at least one serious side effect and must be used with caution.)

Alpha-Glucosidase Inhibitors. Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors prevent after-meal hyperglycemia by delaying absorption of carbohydrate from the small intestine. These drugs inhibit enzymes in the intestinal tract, reducing the rate of digestion of starches and the absorption of glucose. This action prevents a sudden blood glucose surge after meals. Acarbose *delays* rather than prevents glucose absorption and does not cause weight loss. Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors lower HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 0.5 to 0.8 percentage points.

The most common side effects are flatulence, diarrhea, and abdominal discomfort. There are two drugs in this class. Acarbose (Precose, Prandase ) is well tolerated when started at a low dose (25 mg once daily to three times daily with meals) and increased slowly. At higher doses, poor carbohydrate absorption occurs. Miglitol (Glyset) should be taken three times daily with the first bite of each main meal.

These drugs do not cause hypoglycemia unless given with sulfonylureas or insulin. Because alpha-glucosidase inhibitors delay carbohydrate absorption and interfere with the conversion of complex sugars to glucose, many of the standard products used to manage hypoglycemia have a slower onset of action. These drugs do not inhibit absorption of glucose or lactose. Teach patients to use oral glucose tablets, glucose gel, or low-fat milk to manage hypoglycemia. Severe hypoglycemia may require glucose infusion or glucagon injection.

Incretin Mimetics. Incretin mimetics are natural “gut” hormones that, along with insulin, also lower plasma glucose levels. These agents include glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) and glucose-dependent insulintropic polypeptide (GIP) that are released by the intestine throughout the day in response to food intake (Appel, 2011). GLP-1 has effects on the stomach, liver, pancreas, and brain to work together to regulate blood glucose. It lowers glucagon secretion from the pancreas, leading to reduced liver glucose production. It also delays gastric emptying, slows the rate of nutrient absorption into the blood, and reduces food intake, all of which lower blood glucose levels. GLP and GIP are rapidly metabolized by an enzyme known as DPP-4, which inactivates their effects. Patients with type 2 DM have a reduced incretin effect, indicating that they have either a decreased level of incretin hormones or a resistance to their effects. Two incretin agents are approved for use in patients with type 2 DM—exenatide (Byetta) and liraglutide (Victoza). Incretin

agents lower HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 0.5 to 1.0 percentage points.

Exenatide (Byetta) is a GLP-1 agonist. It mimics the actions of GLP-1, stimulating insulin secretion only when blood glucose is high. This action restores “first phase” insulin release and improves blood glucose control by lowering both after-meal and fasting blood glucose levels. The drug is approved for use as a single agent or in combination with a sulfonylurea, metformin, or thiazolidinedione in patients with type 2 DM.

The main side effect of exenatide is nausea. Most patients lose weight as a result of the anorexic effect of the drug. It stimulates insulin secretion and may cause hypoglycemia when given with sulfonylurea drugs (which also stimulate insulin secretion) but not with metformin alone. Exenatide should not be used for patients with end-stage kidney disease or those with kidney impairment that reduces glomerular filtration to less than 30 mL/min.

Exenatide is available as a fixed-dose prefilled pen injector delivering either 5 mcg or 10 mcg of drug per dose. It is injected subcutaneously in thigh, abdomen, or upper arm within 60 minutes *before* the morning and evening meals or before the two main meals of the day. Teach patients not to administer exenatide *after* a meal. Unopened prefilled pens are stored in a refrigerator between 36° F and 46° F (2° C and 8° C). Opened pen injectors can be stored for up to 30 days at room temperature in a closed container protected from heat and light. Instruct the patient to discard an open pen after 30 days even if it is not empty.

Liraglutide (Victoza) is a glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) agonist approved as an addition to diet and exercise to improve glycemic control in adults with type 2 DM. It enhances glucose-dependent insulin secretion from the pancreas, suppresses excess glucagon secretion, delays gastric emptying, reduces appetite, and preserves beta-cell mass and function.

The most common adverse effects are GI related and included nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, dyspepsia and constipation. The frequency of effects tends to be dose-related and decreased over time. Hypoglycemia is uncommon, and occurs more often in combination with a sulfonylurea agent. Liraglutide carries a black box warning for thyroid tumors and is not to be used by patients with a history of medullary thyroid carcinoma (Appel, 2011).

Liraglutide is available as a solution for subcutaneous injection in a prefilled multi-dose pen. It is administered once daily at any time of the day, independent of meals. Each pen delivers doses of 0.6 mg, 1.2 mg, or 1.8 mg. Unopened prefilled pens should be stored under refrigeration between 36° F and 46° F (2° C and 8° C). Opened pens can be stored for up to 30 days at controlled room temperature between 59° F and 86° F (15° C and 30° C) or in a refrigerator. Pens need to be protected from excessive heat and sunlight. Therapy with liraglutide begins at 0.6 daily mg for 1 week. This dose is intended to reduce GI symptoms during initial titration. After 1 week, the dose is increased to 1.2 mg daily and to 1.8 mg daily, if needed.

Monitor patients taking incretin mimetics for symptoms of pancreatitis. Teach patients to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of unexplained, persistent severe abdominal pain with or without nausea and vomiting to their primary care provider as soon as possible.

DPP-4 Inhibitors. DPP-4 inhibitors work by inhibiting the enzyme that inactivates the incretin hormones (Martin, 2010). As a result, more natural incretin hormones (GLP-1 and GIP) are available to regulate blood glucose. Glucagon levels are decreased, and insulin secretion from pancreatic beta cells is increased. The two DPP-4 inhibitors approved for use in patients with type 2 DM are sitagliptin (Januvia) and saxagliptin (Onglyza). DPP-4 inhibitors lower HbA_{1c} levels by an average of 0.6 to 0.9 percentage points.

Sitagliptin increases the body's active incretin hormone levels, reducing both before-meal and after-meal blood glucose levels. It works only when blood glucose is elevated. Sitagliptin is approved as single agent therapy for patients with type 2 DM unable to manage the disease with diet and exercise alone and as add-on therapy for those patients with inadequate blood glucose control who are also taking a sulfonylurea, metformin, or thiazolidinediones. The recommended dose is 100 mg orally, once daily, with or without food. Dosage adjustment is needed for patients with moderate to severe kidney impairment.

Side effects include stuffy or runny nose, sore throat, upper respiratory infection, and GI effects of abdominal pain, nausea, and diarrhea. Monitor for symptoms of kidney impairment. Hypersensitivity reactions including exfoliative dermatitis, urticaria, skin rash, and Stevens-Johnson syndrome have been reported. Teach patients to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of hypersensitive reactions to their health care provider.

Patients taking sitagliptin (Januvia) should be monitored for symptoms of pancreatitis. Acute pancreatitis, including both fatal and nonfatal hemorrhagic or necrotizing pancreatitis, has been reported in patients who received sitagliptin therapy. Teach patients to discontinue use of the drug and to report symptoms of unexplained, persistent severe abdominal pain with or without nausea and vomiting to their health care provider as soon as possible.

Saxagliptin (Onglyza) lowers HbA_{1c} levels in patients with type 2 diabetes when used alone or in combination with metformin, sulfonylurea, or thiazolidinediones (TZDs). Common adverse effects include nasopharyngitis, headache, diarrhea, upper respiratory infection, urinary tract infection, and peripheral edema. Hypoglycemia was reported, particularly when saxagliptin was given in combination with glyburide.

Amylin Analogs. Amylin analogs are drugs similar to amylin, a naturally occurring hormone produced by beta cells in the pancreas that works with and is co-secreted with insulin in response to blood glucose elevation. Amylin levels are deficient in patients with type 1 DM who are also deficient in insulin. Pramlintide (Symlin), an analog of amylin, is approved for patients with either type 1 or type 2 DM treated with insulin. It is indicated as adjunct therapy for patients who use mealtime insulin delivery and have not achieved desirable glucose control despite optimum insulin therapy.

Pramlintide works by three mechanisms: delayed gastric emptying, reducing after-meal blood glucose levels, and triggering satiety (in the brain). (Satiety leads to decreased caloric intake and eventual weight loss.) The initial dose of pramlintide is 15 mcg subcutaneously before meals with at least 250 calories or 30 g of carbohydrate. It can be given up to 4 times per day. Dosage is increased in 15-mcg increments to a target dose of 30 mcg or 60 mcg. Pramlintide alters gastric

uptake. Therefore instruct patients to take oral drugs in which rapid onset of action is important (e.g., analgesics) either 1 hour before or 2 hours after eating.

Teach the patient to prepare and self-administer pramlintide. A U-100 syringe is used to administer the drug. However, it is necessary to convert the microgram dosage to insulin syringe unit increments (e.g., 15 mcg is equal to 2.5 units on a U-100 insulin syringe). Teach the patient to inject pramlintide into a site different from where insulin is injected.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not mix pramlintide and insulin in the same syringe because the pH of the two drugs is not compatible.

Nausea, vomiting, and anorexia are common side effects of pramlintide therapy. It should not be used for patients with symptomatic gastroparesis. Pramlintide carries a black box warning for insulin-induced severe hypoglycemia. The hypoglycemic risk is higher in patients with type 1 DM and usually occurs within 3 hours of injection. The black box also warns about the risk for hypoglycemia during driving or operating heavy equipment.

Combination Agents. Combination agents combine drugs with different mechanisms of action. Glucovance, for example, combines glyburide with metformin. Combining drugs with different mechanisms of action may be highly effective in maintaining desired blood glucose control. Some patients may need a combination of oral agents and insulin to control blood glucose levels.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

A client with type 2 diabetes who also has heart failure is prescribed metformin extended-release (Glucophage XR) once daily. On assessment, the nurse finds that the client now has muscle aches, drowsiness, low blood pressure, and a slow, irregular heartbeat. What is the nurse's best action?

- A. Assess the client's blood glucose level and prepare to administer IV glucose.
- B. Reassure the client that these symptoms are normal effects of this drug.
- C. Hold the dose and notify the prescriber immediately.
- D. Administer the drug at bedtime to prevent falls.

Insulin Therapy. Insulin therapy is needed for type 1 DM and also may be used for type 2 DM. The safety of insulin therapy in older patients may be affected by reduced vision, mobility and coordination problems, and decreased memory. There are many types of insulin and regimens that have the purpose of achieving normal blood glucose levels. Because insulin is a small protein that is quickly digested and inactivated in the GI tract, it must be administered as an injection or by another route that bypasses the GI tract.

Types of Insulin. Insulin is manufactured using DNA technology to synthesize pure human insulin. Insulin analogs are synthetic human insulins in which the structure of the insulin molecule is altered to change the rate of absorption and duration of action within the body. One example is Lispro insulin, a rapid-acting insulin analog that is created by switching the

TABLE 67-9 TIME ACTIVITY OF PHARMACEUTICAL INSULIN

PREPARATION	BRAND	ONSET (HR)	PEAK (HR)	DURATION (HR)
Rapid-Acting Insulin				
Insulin aspart	NovoLog	0.25	1-3	3-5
Insulin glulisine	Apidra	0.3	0.5-1.5	3-4
Human lispro injection	Humalog	0.25	0.5-1.5	5
Short-Acting Insulin				
Regular human insulin injection	Humulin R	0.5	2-4	5-7
	Novolin R	0.5	2.5-5	8
	ReliOn R			
Humulin R (Concentrated U-500)	Humulin R (U-500)	1.5	4-12	24
Intermediate-Acting Insulin				
Isophane Insulin NPH injection	Humulin N	1.5	4-12	16-24+
	Novolin N			
	ReliOn N			
Insulin detemir injection	Levemir	1	6-8	5.7-24
70% human insulin isophane suspension/30% human insulin injection	Humulin 70/30	0.5	2-12	24
	Novolin 70/30			
	ReliOn 70/30			
50% human insulin isophane suspension/50% human insulin injection	Humulin 50/50	0.5	3-5	24
70% insulin aspart protamine suspension/30% insulin aspart injection	NovoLog Mix 70/30	0.25	1-4	24
75% insulin lispro protamine suspension/25% insulin lispro injection	Humalog Mix 75/25	0.25	1-2	24
Long-Acting Insulin				
Insulin glargine injection	Lantus	2-4	None	24

positions of lysine and proline in one area of the insulin molecule.

Rapid-, short-, intermediate-, and long-acting forms of insulin can be injected separately, and some can be mixed in the same syringe. Insulin is available in concentrations of 100 units/mL (U-100) or 500 units/mL (U-500). U-500 is used only in rare cases of insulin resistance.

Teach the patient that the insulin types, the injection technique, the site of injection, and the patient response can all affect the absorption, onset, degree, and duration of insulin activity. Reinforce that changing insulins may affect blood glucose control and should be done only under supervision of the health care provider. Table 67-9 outlines the time activity of human insulin.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The client newly diagnosed with type 1 diabetes asks why insulin is given only by injection and not as an oral drug. What is the nurse's best response?

- Injected insulin works faster than oral drugs to lower blood glucose levels."
- "Oral insulin is so weak that it would require very high dosages to be effective."
- "Insulin is a small protein that is destroyed by stomach acids and intestinal enzymes."
- "Insulin is a "high alert drug" and could more easily be abused if it were available as an oral agent."

Insulin Regimens. Insulin regimens try to duplicate the normal insulin release pattern from the pancreas. The pancreas produces a constant (*basal*) amount of insulin that balances liver glucose production with glucose use and maintains normal blood glucose levels between meals. The pancreas also produces additional (*prandial*) insulin to prevent blood glucose elevation after meals. The insulin dose required for blood glucose control varies among patients. A usual starting dose is between 0.5 and 1 unit/kg of body weight per day. For multiple-dose regimens or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII), basal insulin makes up about 40% to 50% of the total daily dosage, with the remainder divided into premeal doses of rapid-acting insulin analogs or regular insulin. Basal insulin coverage is provided by NPH insulin or by intermediate-acting and long-acting insulin analogs, insulin glargine (Lantus) or insulin detemir (Levemir). Because the rate of absorption is slowed by increasing the dosage, adjustments in dosage should be made no more than every 3 to 4 days. Dosage adjustments are based on the results of blood glucose monitoring.

Single daily injection protocols require insulin injection only once daily. This protocol may include one injection of intermediate- or long-acting insulin or a combination of short- and intermediate-acting insulin. Many patients with type 2 diabetes combine once-daily insulin injection with oral agent therapy.

Multiple-component insulin therapy combines short- and intermediate-acting insulin injected twice daily. Two thirds of the daily dose is given before breakfast and one third before

the evening meal. Ratios of intermediate-acting and regular insulin are based on results of blood glucose monitoring.

Intensified regimens include a basal dose of intermediate- or long-acting insulin and a bolus dose of short- or rapid-acting insulin designed to bring the next blood glucose value into the target range. Blood glucose elevations above the target range are treated with “correction” doses of short- or rapid-acting insulin. The patient’s blood glucose patterns determine insulin dosage. Frequency of blood glucose monitoring is based on the timed action of short- and intermediate- or long-acting insulins and may occur as often as eight times daily. Blood glucose testing 1 to 2 hours after meals and within 10 minutes before the next meal helps determine the adequacy of the bolus dose. The patient determines the effects of basal insulin by monitoring blood glucose levels before breakfast (fasting) and before the evening meal.

Patients on intensified insulin regimens need extensive education to achieve target blood glucose values. They need to know how to adjust insulin doses and understand nutrition therapy to maintain dietary flexibility and target blood glucose values. Patients must also be able to accurately monitor blood glucose levels so that therapy decisions can be based on accurate data.

Regardless of the specific insulin regimen, adherence to insulin injection schedules is critical in achieving glycemic control and maintaining HbA_{1c} levels below the 7% needed to reduce long-term complications. At times, skipping an occasional insulin dose may be related to an unusual meal pattern for a day or a change in exercise. However, many patients continue to “skip” insulin doses regularly, which increases their overall risk for serious health problems and early death. Determining what factors are associated with this behavior can help nurses and other health care professionals provide an individualized approach to assisting the patient with DM to understand the benefits of insulin therapy adherence (Peyrot et al., 2010). (See the Evidence-Based Practice box at right.)

Factors Influencing Insulin Absorption. Many factors affect insulin absorption and availability, including injection site; timing, type, or dose of insulin used; and physical activity.

Injection site area affects the speed of insulin absorption. Fig. 67-4 shows common insulin injection areas. Absorption is fastest in the abdomen, followed by the deltoid, thigh, and buttocks. Rotating injection site areas prevents lipohypertrophy (increased fat deposits in the skin) and lipoatrophy (loss of fatty tissue, leaving an uneven appearance). Rotation *within* one anatomic site is preferred to rotation from one area to another to prevent day-to-day changes in absorption. The abdomen (except for a 2-inch radius around the navel) is the preferred injection site area because it provides the most rapid insulin absorption.

Absorption rate is determined by insulin properties. The longer the duration of action, the more unpredictable is absorption. Larger doses of insulin also prolong the absorption. Factors that increase blood flow from the injection site, such as local application of heat, massage of the area, and exercise of the injected area, increase insulin absorption. Scarred sites often become favorite injection sites because they are less sensitive to pain, but these areas usually slow the rate of insulin absorption.

Injection depth changes insulin absorption. Usually, injections are made into the subcutaneous tissue. Most patients

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Why Do Adults with Diabetes Omit Prescribed Insulin Doses?

Peyrot, M., Rubin, R., Kruger, D., & Travis, L. (2010). Correlates of insulin injection omission. *Diabetes Care*, 33(2), 240-245.

Both type 1 and type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM) result in severe and life-shortening complications when blood glucose levels are not controlled. Extensive research has shown that maintaining hemoglobin A_{1c} levels below 7% dramatically reduces or delays these complications. For people with type 1 DM, insulin therapy is required for blood glucose control. For many people with type 2 DM, insulin therapy is needed when other drug therapies are no longer effective. Intentional omission of insulin has been identified as a relatively common behavior in adolescents with DM. This study sought to determine to what degree intentional insulin omission occurs in adults with DM and what personal factors are associated with this behavior.

A total of 502 adults with diabetes were recruited into this online survey-based descriptive study, all of whom were prescribed insulin therapy. The majority, 77%, had type 2 DM and 23% had type 1 DM. Of these 502 subjects, 57% reported having intentionally omitted an insulin dose on occasion; however, 20% reported intentionally omitting insulin doses regularly. The incidence was highest among those with type 2 DM. Other variables that correlated with the behavior of regularly omitting insulin doses were lower socioeconomic level, not having followed a healthy diet, and having a prescribed insulin regimen that required more frequent daily injections. Insulin injection factors that correlated with omitting doses included the perception that injections were painful and embarrassing and that insulin scheduling interfered with the life activities of eating, exercising, and working. Some of the factors that either did not correlate with omitting insulin doses or had only minimal influence were race/ethnicity, education level, and the presence of depressive symptoms.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although very large, the study was descriptive in nature without randomization of subject selection or assignment. The information collected relied on subject self-report. The methods of statistical analysis were appropriate for the research questions posed.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The results of this study indicate that insulin omission is more common among people with type 2 DM. The researchers postulated that perhaps this group may view their disease as less serious than type 1 DM, especially if they retain any beta-cell function. These subjects also viewed the use of insulin to be more burdensome, painful, and embarrassing than did those with type 1 DM.

Because the overall damage caused by hyperglycemia is the same regardless of the category of DM, it is imperative that patients with type 2 DM understand the relationship between poor blood glucose control and development of complications. Nurses and other members of the health care team must convey the benefits of tight glycemic control that insulin therapy provides, as well as the benefits of a healthy diet. One factor possibly contributing to this problem is a lack of continuing access to support from health care professionals, especially diabetes educators. Assisting the patient to access local and online information and support services may help increase understanding about the disease and its effective therapy.

Some of the issues regarding the “pain” of injections can be reduced by teaching patients about the use of smaller needles, as well as injection into body areas with less sensitivity. Nurses can help patients identify ways and means to self-inject insulin without drawing undue attention and to disguise injection site bruising.

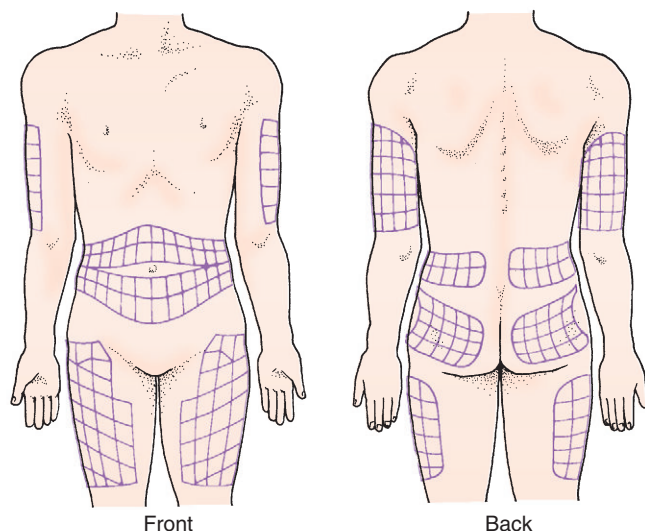


FIG. 67-4 Common insulin injection areas and sites.

lightly grasp a fold of skin and inject at a 90-degree angle. Aspiration for blood is not needed. A thin patient may need to pinch the skin and inject at a 45-degree angle to avoid IM injection. IM injection has a faster absorption and is not used for routine insulin use. Assess the older patient's ability to inject insulin, and arrange for assistance when self-care is no longer possible.

Timing of injection affects blood glucose levels. The interval between premeal injections and eating, known as "lag time," affects blood glucose levels after meals. Insulin lispro, insulin aspart, and insulin glulisine have rapid onsets of action and should be given within 10 minutes before mealtime when blood glucose is in the target range. If hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia is not present, these insulins can be given at any time from 10 minutes before mealtime to just before eating or even immediately after eating. Regular insulin should be given at least 20 to 30 minutes before eating when glucose levels are within the target range. When blood glucose levels are above the target range, the lag time should be increased to permit insulin to begin to have an effect sooner. Rapid-acting insulin analogs can be given 15 minutes before and regular insulin 30 to 60 minutes before eating a meal. When blood glucose levels are below the target range, injection of regular insulin should be delayed until immediately before eating and injection of rapid-acting insulin should be delayed until sometime after eating the meal.

Mixing insulins can change the time of peak action. Mixtures of short- and intermediate-acting insulins produce a more normal blood glucose response in some patients than does a single dose. The patient's response to mixed insulin may differ from the response to the same insulins given separately.

When rapid-acting (Humalog or NovoLog) or short-acting (regular) insulin is mixed with a longer-acting insulin, draw the shorter-acting dose into the syringe first. This action prevents contamination of the shorter-acting insulin vial with the longer-acting insulin. Short-acting and NPH insulins may be used immediately when mixed, or they may be stored. Mixing clouds the solution and makes the onset of action and peak effect time less predictable. Follow American

TABLE 67-10 AMERICAN DIABETES ASSOCIATION GUIDELINES FOR THE MIXING OF INSULINS

- Patients whose condition is well controlled on a particular mixed-insulin regimen should maintain their standard procedure for preparing insulin doses.
- No other drug or diluents should be mixed with any insulin product unless approved by the prescribing health care provider.
- Insulin glargine should not be mixed with any other forms of insulin because of the low pH of its diluent.
- Currently available NPH and short-acting insulin formulations when mixed may be used immediately or stored for future use.
- Rapid-acting insulin can be mixed with NPH insulin.
- When rapid-acting insulin is mixed with either an intermediate-acting or a long-acting insulin, the mixture should be injected within 15 minutes before a meal.
- Insulin formulations may change; therefore manufacturers should be consulted when their recommendations appear to conflict with the American Diabetes Association guidelines.

Data from American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2004). Insulin administration. *Diabetes Care*, 27(Suppl. 1), 106-109.

Diabetes Association (ADA) guidelines for mixing insulins (Table 67-10).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Do not mix any other insulin type with insulin glargine, insulin detemir, or with any of the premixed insulin formulations, such as Humalog Mix 75/25.

Complications of Insulin Therapy. Hypoglycemia from insulin excess has many causes. Its effects and treatment are discussed on pp. 1451-1454 in the Preventing Hypoglycemia section.

Lipoatrophy is a loss of fat tissue in areas of repeated injection that results from an immune reaction to impurities in insulin. Treatment consists of injection of insulin at the edge of the atrophied area. Lipohypertrophy is an increased swelling of fat that occurs at the site of repeated insulin injections. The overlying skin has decreased sensitivity, and the area can become large and unsightly. Treatment consists of rotating the injection site among different body areas. Teach patients who take insulin to rotate injection sites to prevent lipohypertrophy.

Two conditions of fasting hyperglycemia can occur (Fig. 67-5). **Dawn phenomenon** results from a nighttime release of growth hormone that causes blood glucose elevations at about 5 to 6 AM. It is managed by providing more insulin for the overnight period (e.g., giving the evening dose of intermediate-acting insulin at 10 PM). **Somogyi phenomenon** is morning hyperglycemia from the counterregulatory response to nighttime hypoglycemia. It is managed by ensuring adequate dietary intake at bedtime and evaluating the insulin dose and exercise programs to prevent conditions that lead to hypoglycemia. Both problems are diagnosed by blood glucose monitoring during the night. Help identify these problems, and teach the patient and family about management.

Alternative Methods of Insulin Administration. Many methods of insulin delivery are available in addition to traditional subcutaneous injections.

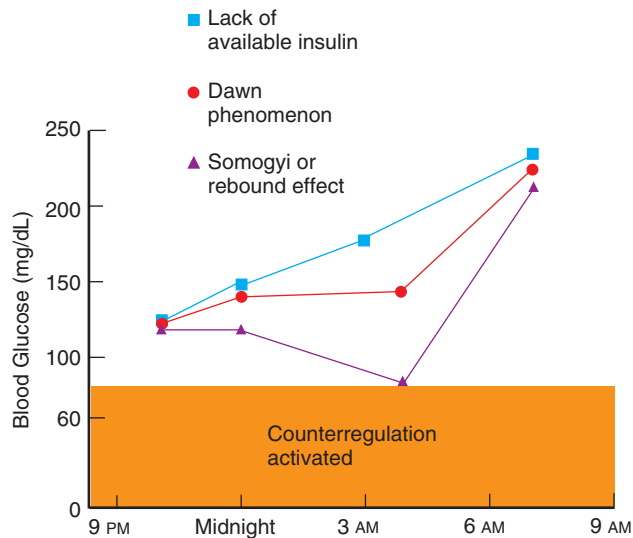


FIG. 67-5 Three blood glucose phenomena in patients with diabetes.



FIG. 67-6 External insulin pump.

Continuous subcutaneous infusion of a basal dose of insulin (CSII) with increases in insulin at mealtimes is more effective in controlling blood glucose levels than a multiple-injection schedule. CSII allows flexibility in meal timing, because if a meal is skipped, the additional mealtime dose of insulin is not given. It is given by an externally worn pump containing a syringe and reservoir with rapid-acting insulin and is connected to the patient by an infusion set. Teach him or her to adjust the amount of insulin based on data from blood glucose monitoring. Rapid-acting insulin analogs are used with insulin infusion pumps (Fig. 67-6).

Problems with CSII include skin infections that can occur when the infusion site is not cleaned or the needle is not changed every 2 to 3 days. When the patient is receiving rapid-acting insulin and has normal blood glucose levels,

stopping the infusion quickly results in hyperglycemia. CSII may lead to more frequent and more severe ketoacidosis than other methods of insulin delivery because of inexperience in pump use, infection, accidental cessation or obstruction of the infusion, or mechanical pump problems. Stress the importance of testing for ketones when blood glucose levels are greater than 300 mg/dL (16.7 mmol/L).

Patients using CSII need intensive education. Because of the risk for hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia, he or she must be able to operate the pump, adjust the settings, and respond appropriately to alarms. Removing the pump for any length of time can result in hyperglycemia. Provide supplemental insulin schedules for times when the pump is not operational. CSII is more costly than traditional insulin injections, and not all costs are covered by insurance.

Injection devices now include a needleless system and a pen-type injector in addition to traditional insulin syringes. With a needleless device, the needle is replaced by an ultra-thin liquid stream of insulin forced through the skin under high pressure. Insulin given by jet injection is absorbed at a faster rate and has a shorter duration of action. Cost is a drawback to this system.

Patient Education: Drugs. Provide specific instructions about insulin therapy, new drug therapies, and self-monitoring of blood glucose levels.

Insulin storage varies by use. Teach patients to refrigerate insulin that is not in use to maintain potency, prevent exposure to sunlight, and inhibit bacterial growth. Insulin in use may be kept at room temperature for up to 28 days to reduce irritation at the injection site caused by cold insulin.

To prevent loss of drug potency, teach the patient to avoid exposing insulin to temperatures below 36° F (2.2° C) or above 86° F (30° C), to avoid excessive shaking, and to protect insulin from direct heat and light. Insulin should not be allowed to freeze. Insulin glargine (Lantus) should be stored in a refrigerator (36° to 46° F [2.2° to 7.8° C]) even when in use. Teach patients to discard any unused insulin after 28 days.

Teach patients to always have a spare bottle of each type of insulin used. A slight loss in potency may occur after the bottle has been in use for more than 30 days, even when the expiration date has not passed. Prefilled syringes are stable up to 30 days when refrigerated. If possible, store prefilled syringes in the upright position, with the needle pointing upward, so that insulin particles do not clog it. Teach patients to roll prefilled syringes between the hands before using. The effect of premixing insulins on blood glucose control is assessed by examining blood glucose levels.

Dose preparation is critical for insulin effectiveness and patient safety. Teach patients that the person giving the insulin needs to inspect the insulin before each use for changes (e.g., clumping, frosting, precipitation, or change in clarity or color) that may indicate loss in potency. Rapid-acting, short-acting, and glargine insulins should be clear, and all other types of insulin should be uniformly cloudy after gently rolling the vial between the hands. If potency is questionable, another vial of the same type of insulin should be used.

Syringes are the most commonly used method to administer insulin. The standard insulin syringes are marked in insulin units. They are available in 1-mL (100-U), ½-mL (50-U), and ⅓-mL (30-U) sizes. The unit scale on the barrel of the syringe differs with the syringe size and manufacturer.

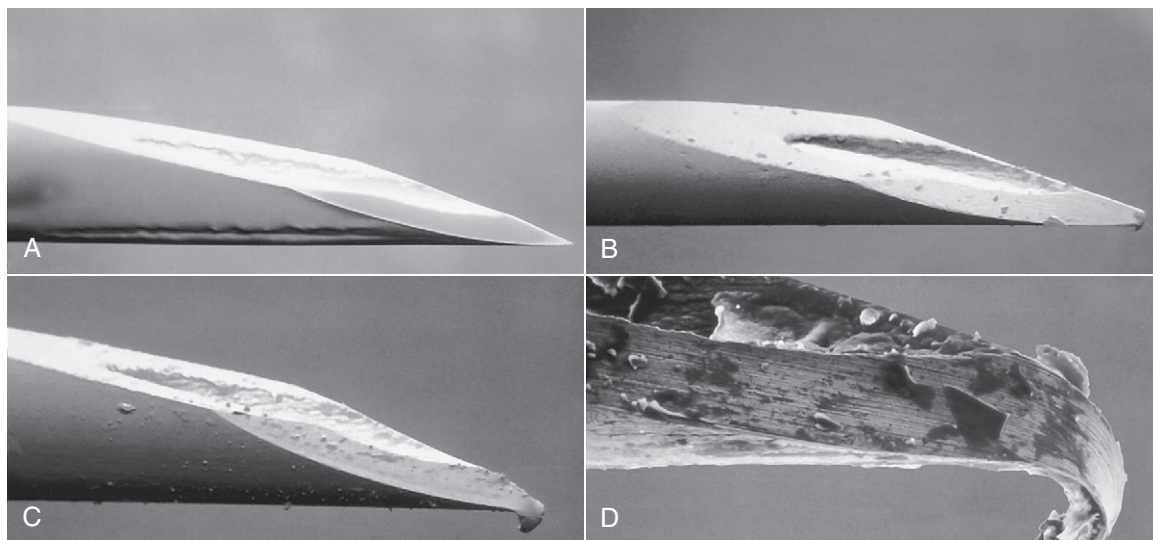


FIG. 67-7 Reuse of an insulin needle. **A**, A new needle. **B**, A needle that has been used once. **C**, A needle that has been used twice. **D**, A needle that has been used six times.

CHART 67-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Subcutaneous Insulin Administration

- Wash your hands.
- Inspect the bottle for the type of insulin and the expiration date.
- Gently roll the bottle of intermediate-acting insulin in the palms of your hands to mix the insulin.
- Clean the rubber stopper with an alcohol swab.
- Remove the needle cover, and pull back the plunger to draw air into the syringe. The amount of air should be equal to the insulin dose. Push the needle through the rubber stopper, and inject the air into the insulin bottle.
- Turn the bottle upside down, and draw the insulin dose into the syringe.
- Remove air bubbles in the syringe by tapping on the syringe or injecting air back into the bottle. Redraw the correct amount.
- Make certain the tip of the plunger is on the line for your dose of insulin. Magnifiers are available to assist in measuring accurate doses of insulin.
- Remove the needle from the bottle. Recap the needle if the insulin is not to be given immediately.
- Select a site within your injection area that has not been used in the past month.
- Clean your skin with an alcohol swab. Lightly grasp an area of skin, and insert the needle at a 90-degree angle.
- Push the plunger all the way down. This will push the insulin into your body. Release the pinched skin.
- Pull the needle straight out quickly. Do not rub the place where you gave the shot.
- Dispose of the syringe and needle without recapping in a puncture-proof container.

Insulin syringe needles are measured in 28-, 29-, 30-, and 31-gauge and in lengths of $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch and $\frac{5}{16}$ -inch. Short needles are not used for obese patients because of poor insulin absorption. To ensure accurate insulin measurement, instruct the patient to always buy the same type of syringe. [Charts 67-4 and 67-5](#) review instructions for drawing up a single insulin injection and for mixing regular and NPH insulin in the same syringe.

CHART 67-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

How to Mix a Prescribed Dose of 10 Units of Regular Insulin and 20 Units of NPH Insulin

- Wash your hands.
- Inspect the bottle for the type of insulin and the expiration date.
- Gently roll the bottle of intermediate-acting (NPH) insulin in the palms of your hands to mix the insulin.
- Clean the rubber stopper with an alcohol swab.
- Inject 20 units of air into the NPH insulin bottle. The amount of air should be equal to the dose of insulin needed. Always inject air into the intermediate-acting insulin first. Withdraw the needle.
- Inject 10 units of air into the regular insulin bottle. The amount of air is equal to the dose of insulin desired.
- Withdraw 10 units of regular insulin. Be sure that the syringe is free of air bubbles. Always withdraw the shorter-acting insulin first.
- Withdraw 20 units of NPH insulin with the same syringe, being careful not to inject any short-acting insulin into the bottle. (A total of 30 units should be in the syringe.)

Manufacturers recommend that disposable needles be used only once. Reuse of an insulin syringe and needle can compromise insulin sterility. Most insulins contain products that inhibit growth of bacteria commonly found on the skin; however, most patients with diabetes are at an increased risk for infection. Another reason to not reuse smaller (30- and 31-gauge) needles is that even with one injection, the needle tip can become bent to form a hook, which can lacerate tissue or break off to leave needle fragments in the skin ([Fig. 67-7](#)). Teach the patient to discard the syringe and needle after one use by participating in a community program, such as a drop-off center for household hazardous waste, or in a national disposal program, such as a “sharps” mail-back program (in accordance with The Joint Commission’s National Patient Safety Goals). Information on needle disposal can be obtained at www.safeneedledisposal.org.

Pen-type injectors hold small, lightweight, prefilled insulin cartridges. The injectors are easy to carry and make intensive

therapy with multiple injections easier. These devices allow greater accuracy than traditional insulin syringes, especially when measuring small doses. Discuss proper storage for pre-filled insulin pens or cartridges. More drugs are becoming available in a pre-filled syringe or cartridge. Ensure that the product is appropriate to the patient's unique needs. *Pen-type injectors are not designed for independent use by visually impaired patients or by those with cognitive impairment.* Ensure that the patient has received education on its use. Each syringe or cartridge has specific requirements. Patients using the FlexPen (Novo Nordisk) must be able to attach a needle and to perform an air shot of 2 units to ensure that a dose of insulin is administered. The Institute for Safe Medication Practices (ISMP) and The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals identify insulin as a *High-Alert* drug. (**High-Alert** drugs are those that have an increased risk for causing patient harm if given in error.) The ISMP cautions that digital displays on some of the newer insulin formulations can be misread. If the pen is held upside down, as a left-handed person might do, a dose of 52 units actually appears to be a dose of 25 units, and a dose of 12 units looks like a dose of 21 units.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care

You are teaching a 22-year-old woman newly diagnosed with type 1 diabetes how to self-administer insulin. This is the second teaching session, and she can draw up the correct amount and maintain sterility. She has not been able to actually inject the needle into her skin, saying "It doesn't hurt but I just can't stand to push that needle in." She has not had any difficulty when her sister or the nurse has injected the insulin.

1. What should your immediate response be?
2. What modifications in your teaching technique can you make?
3. Is it critical that the patient learn to inject herself at this session? Why or why not?
4. Is there any type of adaptation that can help with this problem?

Patient Education: Blood Glucose Monitoring. Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) levels provides information to assess effectiveness of the management plan. SMBG allows patients and providers to evaluate patient response to therapy and assess whether glycemic targets are being reached. Results of SMBG are useful in preventing hypoglycemia and adjusting drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and physical activity. Assessment of blood glucose levels is very important for these situations:

- Symptoms of hypoglycemia/hyperglycemia
- Hypoglycemic unawareness
- Periods of illness
- Before and after exercise
- Gastroparesis
- Adjustment of diabetes medications
- Evaluation of other drug therapies (e.g., steroids)
- Preconception planning
- Pregnancy

Technique for SMBG follows principles that are the same for most self-monitoring systems. The finger is pricked, a drop of blood flows over or is drawn into a testing strip or disc impregnated with chemicals, and the glucose value is displayed in mg/dL or mmol/L. Most meters display blood glucose results on a screen. For vision-impaired patients,

"talking meters" are available to allow independence in blood glucose monitoring.

Home blood glucose meters measure glucose in whole blood, whereas most laboratory tests measure glucose in plasma, which is generally 10% to 15% higher than glucose measured in whole blood. Many meters currently in use give results as "plasma equivalents" even though they are measuring whole blood. This value is calculated from the whole blood glucose reading using a formula built into the glucose meter. This conversion allows patients to compare their home glucose monitoring results with laboratory measurements of glucose.

Data obtained from SMBG are evaluated along with other measures of blood glucose (e.g., glycosylated hemoglobin, or hemoglobin A_{1c} [HbA_{1c}], values) or periodic laboratory blood glucose tests. Even when SMBG is performed correctly, the results are affected by hematocrit values (anemia falsely elevates glucose values; polycythemia falsely depresses them) and may be unreliable in the hypoglycemic or severe hyperglycemic ranges.

Blood glucose meters must meet the accuracy standards set by the International Organization for Standardization (IOS). According to the IOS, blood glucose meters must provide results that are within 20% of a laboratory standard 90% of the time. The performance of SMBG systems depends on accuracy of the specific blood glucose meter, operator proficiency, and test strip quality. Results are influenced by the size and quality of the blood sample; the meter's calibration to the strip in use; environmental conditions of altitude, temperature, and moisture; and patient-specific conditions of hematocrit level, triglyceride level, high levels of substances such as ascorbic acid in blood, and the presence of hypotension or hypoxia.

Accuracy of the blood glucose monitor is ensured when the manufacturer's directions are followed. The most significant source of error in blood glucose measurement is related to the skill of the user and not to errors of the instrument. Common errors in SMBG involve failure to obtain a sufficient blood drop, poor storage of test strips, using expired strips, and not changing the code number on the meter to match the strip bottle code. Help the patient select a meter based on cost of the meter and strips, ease of use, and availability of repair and servicing. Provide training, explain and demonstrate procedures, assess visual acuity, and check the patient's ability to perform the procedure through a return demonstration. Glucose meters are designed to reduce user error as much as possible. Newer meters no longer require wiping the blood from the strip in timed sequence, include error signals for inadequate sample size, "lock out" if control solutions are not tested, and store hundreds of SMBG results. (See the Consumer Guide published yearly in the January edition of Diabetes Forecast [forecast.diabetes.org] for information to help patients determine which blood glucose meter best meets their needs.)

Even when highly trained personnel tested meters under optimal conditions, accuracy and precision varied widely among capillary blood glucose monitoring devices. Teach patients to properly calibrate the machine. Instruct them to re-check the calibration and re-test if they obtain a test result that is unusual for them and whenever they are in doubt about test accuracy. Continued retraining of patients performing SMBG helps ensure accurate results because

performance accuracy deteriorates over time. Laboratory glucose determinations are more accurate than SMBG.

Frequency of testing varies with the complexity of the drug schedules and the patient's prescribed therapy target outcomes. The ADA recommends that patients taking multiple insulin injections or using insulin pump therapy monitor glucose levels three or more times daily. For patients taking less-frequent injections of insulin, non-insulin therapy, or nutrition therapy alone, SMBG is useful for evaluation of therapy.

Blood glucose therapy target goals are set individually for each patient. The entire health care team works with him or her to reach target blood glucose levels. The ADA recommends that patients with type 1 diabetes aim for HbA_{1c} values less than 7%, premeal glucose levels of 70 to 130 mg/dL (3.9 to 7.2 mmol/L), and postmeal glucose levels less than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) (ADA, 2010b).

Infection control measures are needed for SMBG. Teach the patient to follow Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) guidelines for infection control during SMBG. The chance of becoming infected from blood glucose monitoring processes is reduced by handwashing before monitoring and by not reusing lancets. *Instruct patients to not share their blood glucose monitoring equipment.* Hepatitis B virus can survive in a dried state for at least 1 week. Infection can be spread by the lancet holder even when the lancet itself has been changed. Small particles of blood can stick to the device and infect multiple users. Regular cleaning of the meter is critical for infection control. Remind health care staff who perform blood glucose testing and family members who help with testing to wear gloves.

Many meters have sophisticated data-handling capabilities. Many can be downloaded by a cable or by infrared technology to a computer that has diabetes management software. Some meters allow entry of additional data such as insulin dose, amounts of carbohydrate eaten, or exercise. A radio link to an insulin pump allows automatic transfer of glucose readings to a calculator that assists the patient in deciding on an appropriate insulin dose.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Prevent hypoglycemia by ensuring that appropriate blood glucose testing products are used for patients receiving parenteral maltose, parenteral galactose, and oral xylose products.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration issued an Important Safety Information Notice about blood glucose measurement following use of parenteral maltose, parenteral galactose, and oral xylose-containing products.

When patients receive icodextrin (EXTRANEAL) peritoneal dialysis solution, blood glucose values obtained using point-of-care blood glucose monitors may be falsely elevated. Icodextrin is metabolized to maltose, and the presence of maltose in blood can cause readings to be falsely elevated when using some, but not all, portable glucose monitors. Insulin therapy based on falsely elevated blood glucose values has caused hypoglycemia, coma, and death. Products containing maltose, galactose, and xylose also cause blood glucose readings to be falsely elevated. Maltose is found in immune globulin intravenous (Octagam 5%, Gamimune N 5%),

rho(D) immune globulin (WinRho SDF), and vaccinia immune globulin (VIG-IV). Galactose and xylose are found in some foods, herbs, and dietary supplements; they are also used in diagnostic tests.

Portable glucose monitors using test strips with glucose dehydrogenase pyrroloquinoline quinone (GDH-PQQ) or glucose-dye-oxidoreductase (GDO) reagents cannot distinguish between glucose, maltose, and other sugars and will provide falsely elevated "glucose" readings in the presence of these sugars. The GDH-PQQ and GDO reagent-based glucose monitors are widely available and commonly used in hospital settings to provide point-of-care blood glucose testing. Various manufacturers, including Abbott, Bayer, Roche, CH Diagnostics, and Home Diagnostics, have glucose strips that use GDH-PQQ technology.

It is important that staff understand the potential for hypoglycemia when patients are admitted to the hospital. In that instance, it is safest to monitor blood glucose patterns by laboratory methods. Blood glucose monitoring needs to be performed with a system whose test strips use a different enzyme technology. The best resource for guidance in selecting a glucose monitoring system that is not reactive to maltose interference is the manufacturer of the test strip. Some manufacturers produce test strips that use more than one type of enzyme technology.

Alternate site testing allows patients to obtain blood from sites other than the fingertip and is available on many meters. However, use caution when interpreting results obtained from alternate sites. These results are not necessarily the same as those from the fingertip when tested at the same time. Comparison studies have shown wide variation between fingertip and alternate sites, and the variation is most evident during times when blood glucose levels are rapidly changing. Teach patients that there is a lag time for blood glucose levels between the fingertip and other sites when blood glucose levels are changing rapidly and that the fingertip reading is the only safe choice at those times.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Teach patients with a history of hypoglycemic unawareness not to test at alternative sites.

Continuous blood glucose monitoring (CGM) systems monitor glucose levels in interstitial fluid. The system consists of three parts: a disposable sensor that measures glucose levels, a transmitter that is attached to the sensor, and a receiver that displays and stores glucose information. A thin plastic sensor is inserted into subcutaneous tissue. Electrodes measure interstitial glucose concentrations and convert these values to blood glucose levels. The transmitter attached to the sensor uses radiofrequency communication to send information to the receiver, which provides real-time glucose information to the user. After an initiation or warm-up period, the sensor gives glucose values every 1 to 5 minutes. Sensors are approved for 3- to 7-day use, depending on the manufacturer. CGM provides information about the current blood glucose level, provides short-term feedback about results of treatment, and provides warnings when glucose readings become dangerously high or low. Most available sensors require at least two capillary glucose readings per day for calibration of

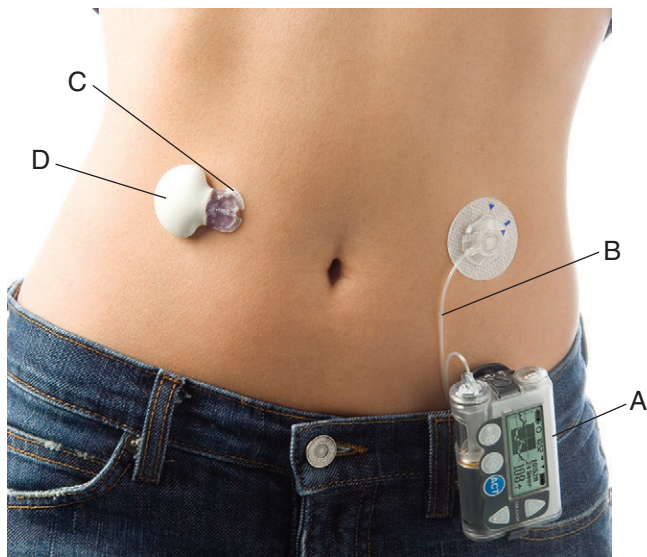


FIG. 67-8 The MiniMed Paradigm® REAL-Time Insulin Pump and Continuous Glucose Monitoring System. **A**, Pump. **B**, Injection cannula. **C**, Glucose sensor. **D**, Data transmitter.

the sensor. Sensor accuracy depends on these calibrations. There may be a lag time between the capillary glucose measurement and the glucose sensor value. If the blood glucose value is changing rapidly, the time between capillary and interstitial glucose values may be as long as 30 minutes. For this reason, capillary glucose readings need to be checked on all extreme values and before any corrective treatment is given.

Fig. 67-8 shows this type of system. The costs for CGM systems are substantial. The initial device varies from \$400 to more than \$2000. An additional monthly charge of at least \$300 includes the cost of disposable sensors, which last between 3 to 7 days, and additional glucose test strips used to calibrate the sensors and perform FDA-required capillary glucose testing before treatment decisions are made.

Continuous glucose monitoring is meant to supplement, not replace, finger stick tests. Insulin should be given only after confirming the results of any of the continuous glucose monitoring systems.

Nutrition Therapy. Effective self-management of diabetes requires that the meal plan, education, and counseling programs be “patientized” for each patient. A dietitian should be a member of the treatment team. The nurse, dietitian, patient, and family work together on all aspects of the meal plan, which must be realistic and as flexible as possible. Plans that consider the patient’s cultural background, financial status, and lifestyle are more likely to be successful.

Desired Outcomes of Nutrition Therapy. The ADA (2008) advocates that nutrition therapy focuses on these outcomes:

- Achieving and maintaining blood glucose levels in the normal range or as close to normal as is safely possible
- Achieving and maintaining a blood lipid profile that reduces the risk for vascular disease
- Achieving blood pressure levels in the normal range or as close to normal as is safely possible
- Preventing or slowing the rate of development of the chronic complications of diabetes by modifying nutrient intake and lifestyle

- Addressing patient nutrition needs taking into account personal and cultural preferences and willingness to change
- Maintaining the pleasure of eating by limiting food choices only when indicated by scientific evidence
- Meeting the nutritional needs of unique times of the life cycle, particularly for pregnant and lactating women and for older adults with diabetes
- Providing self-management training for patients treated with insulin or insulin secretagogues for exercising safely, including the prevention and treatment of hypoglycemia, and managing diabetes during acute illness

Principles of Nutrition in Diabetes. The dietitian develops a meal plan based on the patient’s usual food intake, weight-management expectations, and lipid and blood glucose patterns. Day-to-day consistency in the timing and amount of food eaten helps control blood glucose. Patients receiving insulin therapy need to eat at times that are coordinated with the timed action of insulin. Teach patients using intense insulin therapy to adjust premeal insulin to allow for timing and quantity changes in their meal plan.

Carbohydrate recommendation for the patient with diabetes is a diet containing 45% to 65% of calories from carbohydrate, with a minimum intake of 130 g carbohydrate/day. The diet should include carbohydrate from fruit, vegetables, whole grains, legumes, and low-fat milk. Diets restricting total carbohydrate to less than 130 g/day are not recommended in the management of diabetes (ADA, 2008).

Food choices that prevent after-meal (*postprandial*) blood glucose elevation are important in achieving blood glucose control. The amount and types of carbohydrate consumed have the greatest impact on after-meal blood glucose levels.

The percentage of calories from carbohydrates is determined for each patient. Various starches have different blood glucose responses. Place the emphasis on the *total amount* of carbohydrate consumed each day rather than the source of the carbohydrate. Little evidence supports the assumption that sugars are more rapidly absorbed than starches and cause blood glucose values to increase more rapidly.

Dietary fat and cholesterol intake for people with diabetes focuses on limiting saturated fatty acids, *trans* fatty acids, and cholesterol to reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease. Current recommendations from the ADA (2008, 2010b) for patients with diabetes are:

- Limiting saturated fatty intake to less than 7% of total calories
- Minimizing intake of *trans* fat
- Limiting dietary cholesterol to less than 200 mg/day
- Having two or more servings of fish per week (with the exception of commercially fried fish) to provide n-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids

Trans fatty acids raise low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol and lower high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol; both actions increase the risk for cardiovascular disease. *Trans* fatty acids are found in hard margarine and in foods prepared with or fried in hydrogenated and partly hydrogenated oils. Teach the patient to restrict intake of *trans* fatty acids by limiting the amount of commercially fried foods and bakery goods eaten.

Further dietary fat restrictions for patients with diabetes are determined by a dietitian based on specific lipid levels.

Adults with diabetes should be tested annually for abnormalities of fasting serum cholesterol, triglyceride, HDL cholesterol, and calculated LDL cholesterol levels (ADA, 2008).

Protein intake of 15% to 20% of total daily calories is appropriate for patients with diabetes and normal kidney function. In patients with microalbuminuria, reducing protein intake to 10% of calories (0.8-1.0 g/kg) may slow progression of kidney failure. Reducing protein intake to not more than 0.8 g/kg body weight in later stages of chronic kidney disease may improve function (ADA, 2008).

Fiber improves carbohydrate metabolism and lowers cholesterol levels. Taste and texture, limited food choices, and GI side effects make it difficult to achieve a high-fiber intake. Assist the patient to first reach the target of 14 g per 1000 calories. The American Heart Association recommends a fiber intake of 25 g each day. Teach the patient to select a variety of fiber-containing foods such as legumes, fiber-rich cereals (more than 5 g fiber/serving), fruits, vegetables, and whole-grain products because they provide vitamins, minerals, and other substances important for good health.

Teach the patient that adding high-fiber foods to the diet gradually can reduce abdominal cramping, loose stools, and flatulence. An increase in fluid intake should accompany increased fiber intake. The nurse and the patient should pay careful attention to blood glucose levels because hypoglycemia can result when dietary fiber intake increases significantly.

Sweeteners include sucrose and a variety of nonnutritive substances. Dietary sucrose does not increase blood glucose more than equal amounts of other starches. Intake of sucrose and sucrose-containing foods by patients with diabetes does not need to be restricted out of a concern for causing hyperglycemia. Sucrose can be included in the meal plan as long as it is adequately covered with insulin or other glucose-lowering agents.

The use of products to enhance the taste of food while not disturbing blood glucose control is desirable. The FDA has approved five nonnutritive sweeteners: saccharin, aspartame, acesulfame, neotame, and sucralose.

Alcohol consumption can affect blood glucose levels. Levels are not affected by *moderate* use of alcohol when diabetes is well controlled. Teach patients with diabetes that two alcoholic beverages for men and one for women can be ingested with, and in addition to, the usual meal plan. (One alcoholic beverage equals 12 ounces of beer, 5 ounces of wine, or 1 and ½ ounces of distilled spirits.) Alcohol raises plasma triglycerides. Thus reducing or abstaining from alcohol is important for patients with hyperlipidemia. One alcoholic beverage is substituted for two fat exchanges when calculating caloric intake (ADA, 2008).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because of the potential for alcohol-induced hypoglycemia, instruct the patient with diabetes to ingest alcohol only with or shortly after meals.

Patient Education: Prescribed Nutrition Plan. No one meal plan is right for all patients with diabetes. Each patient's nutrition recommendations are based on blood glucose monitoring results, total blood lipid levels, and glycosylated

hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}). These tests help determine whether current meal and exercise patterns need adjustment or whether present habits need reinforcement. A specific nutritional prescription is developed for each patient.

Reinforce information provided by the dietitian. The patient with DM needs to understand how to adjust food intake during illness, planned exercise, and social occasions (e.g., restaurant meals) when the usual time of eating is delayed. He or she may be unable to follow the prescribed plan because of an inability to see, read, or understand printed materials. Share dietary information with the person who prepares the meals. The dietitian sees each patient at least yearly to identify changes in lifestyle and make appropriate nutrition therapy changes. Some patients, such as those with weight control problems or low incomes, may need more frequent evaluation and counseling.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement made by the client during nutritional counseling indicates to the nurse that the client with diabetes type 1 correctly understands his or her nutritional needs?

- A. "If I completely eliminate carbohydrates from my diet, I will not need to take insulin."
- B. "I will make certain that I eat at least 130 g of carbohydrate each day regardless of my activity level."
- C. "My intake of protein in terms of grams and calories should be the same as my intake of carbohydrate."
- D. "My intake of unsaturated fats in terms of grams and calories should be the same as my intake of protein."

Meal Planning Strategies. Many meal planning approaches are available. Each approach emphasizes different aspects of nutrition.

Exchange systems are based on three food groups: carbohydrates, meat and meat substitutes, and fat. The exchange list for meal planning assumes that foods with similar nutrient content affect blood glucose levels similarly. Plans based on the exchange system produce predictable blood glucose responses. The patient's prescription identifies how many items from each food group are to be eaten at a meal or snack. Information can be obtained from the American Dietetic Association at www.eatright.org.

Carbohydrate (CHO) counting is a simple approach to meal planning that uses label information of the nutritional content of packaged food items. Because fat and protein have little effect on after-meal blood glucose levels, CHO counting focuses on the nutrient that has the greatest impact on these levels. It uses total grams of carbohydrate, regardless of the food source. The dietitian determines the number of grams of carbohydrate to be eaten at each meal and snack and helps the patient make appropriate food choices. This method is effective in achieving overall blood glucose control when carbohydrate intake is consistent from day to day.

Patients using intensive insulin or pump therapies can use CHO counting to determine insulin coverage. After the amount of insulin needed to cover the usual meal is determined, insulin may be added or subtracted for changes in carbohydrate intake. An initial formula of 1 unit of rapid-acting insulin for each 15 g of carbohydrate provides flexibility to meal plans. The patient determines the grams of carbohydrate in a specific meal or snack by reading labels or

TABLE 67-11 CARBOHYDRATE COUNTING

MEAL	FOOD SOURCE	GRAMS OF CARBOHYDRATES	TOTAL	INSULIN DOSE* (1:15 RATIO)
Breakfast	2 slices honey grain bread	32		
	¼ cup egg substitute	0		
	½ cup orange juice	15		
	1 tablespoon lower-fat margarine	0	47	3
Lunch	2 oz tuna, canned in water	0		
	1 hamburger bun	30		
	Fat-free Pringles (#15)	15		
	1 tablespoon reduced-fat mayonnaise	0		
	1 tomato and 1 lettuce slice	0		
	1 medium dill pickle	0		
	Sugar-free pudding made with fat-free milk	15	60	4
Supper	3 oz chicken breast, grilled	0		
	1 small (3 oz) baked potato	15		
	1 cup steamed broccoli	10		
	1 French roll	25		
	1 tablespoon lower-fat margarine	0		
	2 tablespoons reduced-fat sour cream	0		
	½ cup canned pineapple (in own juice)	15	65	4

*Insulin dose has been rounded off to the nearest whole unit.

weighing and measuring each item. The total grams of carbohydrate are used to calculate the bolus dose of insulin based on his or her prescribed insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio. See Table 67-11 for an example of carbohydrate counting.

People at high risk for type 2 diabetes are encouraged to achieve moderate weight loss (7% total body weight), participate in regular physical activity (150 minutes per week), and reduce caloric and dietary fat intake. These at-risk people are also encouraged to increase fiber intake to at least 14 g per 1000 calories consumed and to eat foods containing whole grains.

Special considerations for type 1 diabetes include developing insulin regimens that conform to the patient's preferred meal routines, food preferences, and exercise patterns. Patients using rapid-acting insulin by injection or an insulin pump should adjust insulin doses based on the carbohydrate content of the meals and snacks. Insulin-to-carbohydrate ratios are developed and are used to provide mealtime insulin doses. Blood glucose monitoring before and 2 hours after meals determines whether the insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio is correct. For patients who are on fixed insulin regimens and do not adjust premeal insulin dosages, consistency of timing of meals and the amount of CHO eaten at each meal is important to prevent hypoglycemia.

Physical exercise can cause hypoglycemia if insulin is not decreased before activity. For planned exercise, reduction in insulin dosage is the preferred method for hypoglycemia prevention. For unplanned exercise, intake of additional CHO is usually needed. Moderate exercise increases glucose utilization by 2 to 3 mg/kg/min. A 70-kg person would need about 10 to 15 g additional CHO per hour of moderate-intensity physical activity. More CHO is needed for intense activity (ADA, 2008).

It is important for patients with type 1 diabetes to avoid gaining weight. **Hyperinsulinemia** (chronic high blood insulin levels) can occur with intensive treatment schedules and may result in weight gain. These patients may need to manage hyperglycemia by restricting calories rather than

increasing insulin. Weight gain can be minimized by following the prescribed meal plan, getting regular exercise, and avoiding overtreatment of hypoglycemia.

Special considerations for type 2 diabetes focus on lifestyle changes. Many patients with type 2 diabetes are overweight and insulin resistant. Nutrition therapy stresses lifestyle changes that reduce calories eaten and increase calories expended through physical activity. Many patients also have abnormal blood fat levels and hypertension (metabolic syndrome), making reductions of saturated fat, cholesterol, and sodium desirable. A moderate caloric restriction (250 to 500 calories less than average daily intake) and an increase in physical activity improve diabetic control and weight control. Decreases of more than 10% of body weight can result in

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Older patients are at increased risk for malnutrition, hypoglycemia, and especially dehydration, a factor in the development of hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS). Many factors contribute to malnutrition. Nutritional needs of the older adult change as the person's taste, smell, and appetite diminish and his or her ability to obtain and prepare food decreases. Older patients who prepare their own food or have tooth loss or poorly fitting dentures may not eat enough food. Neuropathy with gastric retention or diarrhea compounds poor food intake. Impaired cognition and depression may disrupt self-care. Older patients may have a marginal food supply because of inadequate income, may have poor understanding of meal-planning needs, or may live alone and have reduced incentive to prepare or eat proper meals. They may eat in restaurants or live in situations in which they have little control over meal preparation. Regular visits by home health nurses can assist older patients in following a diabetic meal plan.

A realistic approach to nutrition therapy is essential for the older patient with diabetes. Changing the eating habits of 60 to 70 years is very difficult. The nurse, dietitian, and patient assess the patient's usual eating patterns. Teach the older patient taking antidiabetic drugs about the importance of eating meals and snacks at the same time every day, eating the same amount of food from day to day, and eating all food allowed on the diet.

significant improvement in HbA_{1c}. Decreasing intake of cholesterol-raising fatty acids helps reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease.

When patients with type 2 diabetes need insulin, consistency in timing and carbohydrate content of meals is important. Division of the total daily calories into three meals or into smaller meals and snacks is based on patient preference.

Exercise Therapy. Regular exercise is an essential part of diabetic management. It has beneficial effects on carbohydrate metabolism and insulin sensitivity. Programs of increased physical activity and weight loss reduce the incidence of type 2 diabetes in patients with impaired glucose tolerance (AADE, 2008).

Plasma glucose levels remain stable in physically active patients without diabetes because of the balance between glucose use by exercising muscles and glucose production by the liver. Exercise does not result in hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia. The patient with type 1 DM cannot make the hormonal changes needed to maintain stable blood glucose levels during exercise. Without an adequate insulin supply, cells cannot use glucose. Low insulin levels trigger release of glucagon and epinephrine (counterregulatory hormones) to increase liver glucose production, further raising blood glucose levels. In the absence of insulin, free fatty acids become the source of energy. Exercise in the patient with uncontrolled diabetes results in further hyperglycemia and the formation of ketone bodies. He or she may have prolonged elevated blood glucose levels after vigorous exercise.

Exercise in the person with diabetes can cause hypoglycemia because of increased muscle glucose uptake and inhibited glucose release from the liver. It can occur during exercise and for up to 24 hours after exercise. Replacement of muscle and liver glycogen stores, along with increased insulin sensitivity after exercise, causes insulin requirements to drop.

Benefits of Exercise. Appropriate exercise results in better regulation of blood glucose levels and lowering of insulin requirements for patients with type 1 DM. Exercise also increases insulin sensitivity, which enhances cell uptake of glucose and promotes weight loss.

Regular exercise decreases risk for cardiovascular disease. It decreases most blood lipid levels and increases high-density lipoproteins (HDLs). Exercise decreases blood pressure and improves cardiovascular function. Regular vigorous physical activity prevents or delays type 2 DM by reducing body weight, insulin resistance, and glucose intolerance.

Adjustments for Diabetes Complications. Exercise in the presence of long-term complications of diabetes often requires some adjustment. Vigorous aerobic or resistance exercise may be contraindicated in the presence of proliferative diabetic retinopathy or severe nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy. Teach the patient with retinopathy to avoid the **Valsalva maneuver** (breath holding while bearing down) and activities that increase blood pressure. Heavy lifting, rapid head motion, or jarring activities can cause vitreous hemorrhage or retinal detachment. Decreased pain sensation in the extremities increases the risk for skin breakdown and infection and for joint destruction. Teach patients with peripheral neuropathy to wear proper footwear and to examine their feet daily for lesions. Teach anyone with a foot injury or open sore to engage in non-weight-bearing activities such as swimming, bicycling, or arm exercises. Those with autonomic neuropathy

are at increased risk for exercise-induced injury from impaired temperature control, postural hypotension, and impaired thirst with risk for dehydration. Physical activity also can increase urine protein excretion. Encourage high-risk patients to start with short periods of low-intensity exercise and to increase the intensity and duration slowly (ADA, 2010b).

Safety Assessment. Assessment before initiating an exercise program is necessary to ensure patient safety. Although current ADA guidelines do not recommend routine screening for patients with diabetes who have no manifestations of cardiovascular disease, be alert to conditions that might predispose the patient to injury or that contraindicate certain types of exercise. Regular physical activity increases the risk for both musculoskeletal injury and life-threatening cardiovascular events. The ADA recommends screening when any of these conditions exist (Roelker, 2008):

- Typical or atypical chest pain
- Abnormal electrocardiogram (ECG) suggestive of ischemia or infarction
- Peripheral or carotid occlusive disease
- Age older than 35 years with sedentary lifestyle in a patient who plans a vigorous exercise program
- Two or more risk factors in addition to diabetes, such as dyslipidemia, hypertension, tobacco use
- Family history for premature coronary artery disease, or microalbuminuria or macroalbuminuria of more than 10 years' duration
- Age older than 25 years and type 1 diabetes of more than 15 years' duration
- Severe autonomic neuropathy, severe peripheral neuropathy, history of foot lesions, and unstable proliferative retinopathy

Screening for coronary artery disease before an exercise program is started is recommended for patients with cardiovascular risk factors. The purpose of exercise treadmill testing (ETT) is to determine if a person can exercise to 85% of their predicted heart rate without having ischemic changes. Also, ETT provides information about exercise capacity and functional status. Failure to achieve 85% of the predicted heart rate is associated with increased death from all causes.

Imaging studies provide information regarding the risk for exercise-induced ischemia. Medical stress tests with vasodilator therapy are recommended for patients who are not able to exercise or who have abnormal ECG. Stress echocardiography provides information about left ventricular systolic, left ventricular diastolic, and valvular function, and it assesses for evidence of exercise-induced ischemia. Additional tests may be performed to determine the presence of obstructive lesions in coronary arteries.

The positive benefits of exercise are short term (i.e., triglyceride reduction lasts for up to 72 hours). Advise people with DM to perform at least 150 min/week of moderate-intensity aerobic physical activity, or 75 min/week of vigorous aerobic physical activity or an equivalent combination of the two. In the absence of contraindications, patients with type 2 diabetes are urged to perform resistance exercise 3 times a week, targeting all major muscle groups (ADA 2010b). The effect of a single bout of aerobic exercise on insulin sensitivity lasts 24 to 72 hours, depending on the duration and intensity of the activity. The ADA recommends that there be no more than 2 consecutive days without aerobic physical activity.

A 5- to 10-minute warm-up period with stretching and low-intensity exercise before exercise prepares the skeletal muscles, heart, and lungs for a progressive increase in exercise intensity. After the activity session, a cool-down should be performed similarly to the warm-up. The cool-down should last 5 to 10 minutes and gradually bring the heart rate down to pre-exercise level.

Guidelines for exercise are based on blood glucose levels and urine ketone levels. Recommend that the patient test blood glucose before exercise, at intervals during exercise, and after exercise to determine if it is safe to exercise and to evaluate the effects of exercise. The absence of urine ketones indicates that enough insulin is available for glucose transport and that exercise should be effective in lowering blood glucose levels. *When urine ketones are present, the patient should NOT exercise.* Ketones indicate that current insulin levels are not adequate and that exercise would elevate blood glucose levels. Carbohydrate foods should be ingested to raise blood glucose levels above 100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L) before engaging in exercise.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Teach patients with type 1 diabetes to perform vigorous exercise only when blood glucose levels are 100 to 250 mg/dL (5.6 to 13.8 mmol/L) and no ketones are present in the urine.

Patient Education: Exercise Promotion. Chart 67-6 lists tips to teach the patient and family about self-management and exercise. Instruct the patient to wear shoes with good traction and cushioning and to examine the feet daily and after

CHART 67-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Exercise

- Teach the patient about the relationship between regularly scheduled exercise and blood glucose levels, blood lipid levels, and complications of diabetes.
- Reinforce the level of exercise recommended for the patient based on his or her physical health.
- Instruct the patient to wear appropriate footwear designed for exercise.
- Remind the patient to examine his or her feet daily and after exercising.
- Warn the patient not to exercise within 1 hour of insulin injection or near the time of peak insulin action.
- Teach patients how to prevent hypoglycemia during exercise:
 - Do not exercise unless blood glucose level is at least 80 and less than 250 mg/dL.
 - Have a carbohydrate snack before exercising if 1 hour has passed since the last meal or if the planned exercise is high intensity.
 - Carry a simple sugar to eat during exercise if symptoms of hypoglycemia occur.
 - Ensure that identification information about diabetes is carried during exercise.
- Remind the patient to check blood glucose levels more frequently on days in which exercise is performed and that extra carbohydrate and less insulin may be needed during the 24-hour period after extensive exercise.

exercise. Warn him or her to not exercise in extreme heat or cold or during periods of poor blood glucose control. Teach the patient to stay hydrated, especially during and after exercise in a warm environment.

Teach patients not to exercise within 1 hour of insulin injection or at the peak time of insulin action. Exercise can increase absorption of insulin from the injection site, increasing blood insulin levels. The risk for hypoglycemia increases when insulin is injected into an area that is exercised.

Teach patients about the risk for hypoglycemia and its preventive measures. Those taking insulin secretagogues or insulin should monitor blood glucose levels to determine the effects of exercise. Reinforce that snacks containing rapidly absorbable carbohydrate may be eaten before and during exercise to maintain normal blood glucose levels. Extra carbohydrate may be needed for up to 24 hours after exercise to prevent hypoglycemia. The amount of additional carbohydrate is directed by the results of blood glucose monitoring. Teach the patient to decrease insulin dosage before planned exercise as directed.

Advise the nonobese patient who is taking insulin secretagogues or insulin to have a carbohydrate-containing snack before exercise if at least 1 hour has passed since the last food was eaten or if high-intensity exercise is planned. Additional carbohydrate intake is not needed when the blood glucose level exceeds 100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L) before exercise and the planned activity is of low intensity and short duration. When vigorous activity of long duration is planned, teach the patient to eat an additional 15 to 30 g of carbohydrate for every 30 to 60 minutes of exercise. Snacks such as fruit, fruit juice, bread products, and whole milk can prevent hypoglycemia. Teach patients to carry a simple sugar (hard candy) to eat if symptoms of hypoglycemia occur. Also instruct them to carry identifying information about having diabetes.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

With age, the ability of the heart and lungs to deliver oxygen to tissues and organs declines. These changes may be due more to decline in muscle mass than to changes in cardiac output. Aerobic activities are important in maintaining muscle mass. Healthy older adults are able to maintain cardiac output by increasing stroke volume during exercise.

The emphasis for any activity program is on changing sedentary behavior to active behavior at any level. Encourage sedentary older adults to begin with low-intensity physical activity. Start low-intensity activities in short sessions (less than 10 minutes); include warm-up and cool-down components with active stretching. Changes in activity levels should be gradual. Formal evaluation by a physical therapist and/or occupational therapist may be needed.

In the absence of retinopathy-related restrictions, strength (resistance) training for major muscles of the legs, arms, stomach, and trunk, performed two or three times weekly, helps preserve muscle mass and minimizes general functional decline. Examples of specific exercise can be found at www.geri.com.

Blood Glucose Control in Hospitalized Patients. Hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients occurs for many reasons and is associated with poor outcomes. In patients without a previous diagnosis of diabetes, elevated blood glucose may be due to “stress hyperglycemia.” Hyperglycemia may result from decline in basic level of glucose control caused by illness, decreased physical activity, withholding of antidiabetic drugs, administration of drugs that cause hyperglycemia such as

corticosteroids, and initiation of tube feedings or parenteral nutrition.

Hyperglycemia among general medical-surgical patients is linked with higher infection rates, longer hospital stays, increased need for intensive care, and greater mortality. Serum glucose levels greater than 200 mg/mL (11.0 mmol/L) after cardiothoracic surgical procedures are associated with higher rates of wound infection. Admission glucose levels greater than 198 mg/dL (10.9 mmol/L) are associated with greater risk for mortality and complications. Hypoglycemia, defined as blood glucose values lower than 40 mg/dL (2.2 mmol/L), is considered an independent risk factor for mortality.

Current American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (AACE) and ADA guidelines recommend treatment protocols that maintain blood glucose levels between 140 and 180 mg/dL (7.8 and 10.0 mmol/L) for critically ill patients. For the majority of non-critically ill patients, premeal glucose targets should be lower than 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) in conjunction with random blood glucose values less than 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L). To prevent hypoglycemia, insulin regimens should be reviewed if blood glucose levels fall below 100 mg/dL (5.6 mmol/L) and should be modified when blood glucose levels are less than 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) (ADA, 2010b).

Continuous IV insulin solutions are the most effective method for achieving glycemic targets in the intensive care setting. Scheduled subcutaneous injection with basal, meal, and correction elements is the preferred method for achieving and maintaining glucose control in non-critically ill patients. Using correction dose or “supplemental insulin” to correct premeal hyperglycemia in addition to scheduled prandial and basal insulin is recommended. The correction dose is determined by the patient’s insulin sensitivity and current blood glucose level. The health care provider calculates sensitivity by adding up the patient’s total daily insulin requirement and dividing that amount into 1500 (for type 2 DM) or 1700 (for type 1 DM).

Prevention of hypoglycemia is also part of managing blood glucose levels. Causes of inpatient hypoglycemia include an inappropriate insulin type, mismatch between insulin type and/or timing of nutritional intake, and altered nutritional intake without insulin dosage adjustment. Many facilities have protocols for hypoglycemia treatment that direct staff to provide carbohydrate replacement if the patient is alert and able to swallow, or to administer 50% dextrose intravenously or glucagon by subcutaneous injection if the patient cannot swallow.

There is confusion about whether to give or to hold insulin from a patient who is NPO. Administration of rapid-acting or short-acting insulin, as well as amylin and incretin mimetics, will cause hypoglycemia if a patient is not eating. Basal insulin should be administered when the patient is NPO because it treats baseline glucose levels. Insulin mixtures are not administered because they contain some short-acting or rapid-acting insulin and will cause hypoglycemia.

Surgical Management. Surgical interventions for diabetes include transplantation of the pancreas. Successful transplantation improves quality of life by eliminating the need for insulin injections, blood glucose monitoring, and many dietary restrictions. It can eliminate the acute complications related to blood glucose control but is only partially

successful in reversing long-term diabetes complications. Pancreatic transplant is successful when the patient no longer needs insulin therapy and all blood measures of glucose are normal.

Transplantation requires lifelong drug therapy to prevent graft rejection. These drug regimens have toxic side effects that restrict their use to patients who have serious progressive complications of diabetes. In addition, some anti-rejection drugs have the effect of increasing blood glucose levels. Pancreas-alone transplants are considered for patients with severe metabolic complications, clinical and emotional problems with insulin that are so severe as to be incapacitating, and consistent failure of insulin-based therapy to prevent acute complications.

Pancreas transplantation is considered in patients with diabetes and end-stage kidney disease who have had or plan to have a kidney transplant. Normal blood glucose levels after pancreas transplantation improve kidney graft survival. Pancreas graft survival is better when performed at the time of the kidney transplant.

Whole-Pancreas Transplantation. Improved surgical techniques and newer anti-rejection drugs have improved transplantation outcomes. The 1-year survival rate for patients is above 95%, with more than 83% of patients remaining free of insulin injection and diet restrictions after 1 year. The degree of HLA tissue-type matching affects the results.

Pancreatic transplantation is performed in one of three ways: pancreas alone (PTA), pancreas after kidney transplant (PAK), and simultaneous pancreas and kidney transplant (SPK). SPK is the ideal procedure for patients with DM and uremia.

Operative Procedure. Most pancreatic transplants are from cadaver donors using a total pancreas still attached to the exit of the pancreatic duct. Because the pancreas performs important digestive functions, the recipient’s pancreas is left in place and the donated pancreas is placed in the pelvis. The insulin released by the pancreas graft is secreted into the bloodstream. The new pancreas also produces about 800 to 1000 mL of fluid daily, which is diverted to either the bladder or the bowel.

Chronic loss of pancreatic secretions can cause dehydration and electrolyte imbalance, and drainage of these fluids into the urinary bladder causes irritation. When the pancreas is attached to the bladder, the loss of fluid rich in bicarbonate may cause acidosis. Some techniques allow intestinal drainage of pancreatic fluids.

Rejection Management. A combination of drugs and antibodies are used to reverse rejection. (See Chapter 19 for a listing of agents used to prevent or treat transplant rejection.) Patients undergoing anti-rejection therapy first receive drugs to prevent viral, bacterial, and fungal infection because of the risk for opportunistic infections.

In most episodes of rejections, kidney problems occur before pancreatic problems. An increase in serum creatinine indicates rejection of both the transplanted kidney and the pancreas. In patients with bladder drainage of pancreatic hormones, a decrease in the urine amylase level by 25% is an indication to treat rejection. High blood glucose levels are a later marker of rejection and usually indicate irreversible graft failure.

Long-Term Effects. Long-term anti-rejection therapy increases the risk for infection, cancer, and atherosclerosis.

The transplanted pancreas does not duplicate all the functions of a normal pancreas. When insulin drains into systemic rather than portal (liver) circulation, blood insulin levels rise (*hyperinsulinemia*) and increase the risk for hypertension and macrovascular disease.

Complications. Complications are common in patients taking long-term anti-rejection therapy. Monitor laboratory values, fluid and electrolyte status, physical changes, and changes in vital signs to identify possible complications. Early removal of IV and intra-arterial lines, use of sterile technique with dressing changes and catheter irrigations, strict hand-washing by all health care personnel, and good pulmonary hygiene help prevent infection.

Complications immediately after surgery include thrombosis, pancreatitis, anastomosis leak with infection, and rejection of the transplanted pancreas. Pancreatic blood vessel thrombosis occurs in about 30% of patients after transplantation. Observe for and report any sudden drop in urine amylase levels, rapid increases in blood glucose, gross **hematuria** (bloody urine), and tenderness or pain in the graft area (iliac fossa). Pancreatitis in the transplanted organ occurs to some degree in all patients after surgery. Report elevations in serum amylase that persist after 48 to 96 hours.

The most serious complication of enteric-drained pancreas transplantation is leaking and intra-abdominal abscess. Observe for and report elevation in temperature, abdominal discomfort, and elevation in white blood cell (WBC) count. Bladder-drained pancreas transplantation has a lower rate of intra-abdominal abscess formation. However, drainage of bicarbonate-rich fluid with pancreatic enzymes into the urinary bladder can cause urinary tract infections, cystitis, urethritis, and balanitis. Metabolic acidosis occurs from the loss of large amounts of alkaline pancreatic secretions.

Assess for and document manifestations of rejection. In acute rejection, decreased kidney function is indicated by increased serum creatinine, decreased urine output, hypertension, increased weight, graft tenderness, and fever. Proteinuria is often the first indicator of chronic graft rejection. Check for increased blood amylase, lipase, or glucose; decreased urine amylase; graft tenderness; hyperglycemia; and fever. *It is especially important to assess for signs of infection and start appropriate therapy. Fever can indicate both infection and rejection.*

Monitor for side effects of the anti-rejection drugs. Cyclosporine (Neoral) is toxic to the kidney. Signs of toxicity are elevated creatinine and decreased urine output. Monitor WBC counts daily, because azathioprine (Imuran) can suppress bone marrow function. Prednisone has many side effects, including elevated blood glucose levels. Common side effects of tacrolimus (Prograf) are hypertension, kidney toxicity, neurotoxicity, GI toxicity, and glucose intolerance.

The patient's quality of life improves as a result of freedom from the need for insulin, a less restricted lifestyle, and a return to a normal diet. Stress, however, the potential need for insulin injections to treat hyperglycemia caused by anti-rejection drugs.

Islet Cell Transplantation. Islet cell transplantation eliminates the need for insulin and protects against the complications of diabetes. Wider use of this procedure is hindered by the limited supply of beta cells available for transplantation and by issues related to rejection. Islet cells from tissue-typed (HLA-matched) cadaver pancreas glands are injected into the portal vein. The new cells lodge in the liver and begin to

function, secreting insulin and maintaining near-perfect blood glucose control.

Islet cell transplantation may successfully restore long-term endogenous insulin production and glycemic control in patients with type 1 diabetes and unstable baseline control. Currently, most patients undergoing this procedure eventually have a progressive loss of islet cell function over time. Very few islet cell transplant recipients have remained insulin-free for more than 4 years. The reasons for this gradual loss of function are not known and make this procedure a long-term but temporary intervention. It is considered an experimental procedure.

Enhancing Surgical Recovery

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with diabetes undergoing a surgical procedure is expected to recover completely without complications. Indicators include:

- Wound healing
- Absence of infection
- Maintenance of blood glucose levels within expected range
- Discharge readiness

Interventions. Surgery is a physical and emotional stressor, and the patient with diabetes has a higher risk for complications. Anesthesia and surgery cause a stress response with release of counterregulatory hormones that elevate blood glucose. Stress hormones suppress insulin action, increasing the risk for ketoacidosis and metabolic acidosis. Hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS) (previously known as *hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar nonketotic syndrome [HHNS]*) is a common complication after major surgery and is associated with increased mortality. Diuresis from hyperglycemia can cause severe dehydration and increase the risk for kidney failure.

Complications of diabetes increase the risk for surgical complications. Patients with DM are at higher risk for hypertension, ischemic heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, MI, and cardiomyopathy. Heart failure is a serious risk factor and must be improved before surgery. Damage to nerves controlling the heart and blood vessels (autonomic neuropathy) may result in sudden tachycardia, bradycardia, or postural hypotension. The patient with DM is at risk for acute kidney injury and urinary retention after surgery, especially if he or she has albumin in the urine (indicator of kidney damage). Nerves to the intestinal wall and sphincters can be impaired, leading to delayed gastric emptying and reflux of gastric acid, which increases the risk for aspiration with anesthesia. Autonomic neuropathy may cause paralytic ileus after surgery.

Preoperative Care. Patients undergoing major surgery should be admitted to the hospital 2 to 3 days before surgery to optimize blood glucose control. Second-generation sulfonylureas are discontinued 1 day before surgery. Metformin (Glucophage) is stopped 48 hours before surgery and restarted only after kidney function is normal. All other oral drugs are stopped the day of surgery. Patients taking long-acting insulin may need to be switched to intermediate-acting insulin forms 1 to 2 days before surgery.

Preoperative blood glucose levels should be less than 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L). Higher levels can cause neutrophil dysfunction and increased infection rates. They also impair wound healing by altering collagen formation, which decreases wound strength.

Plan ahead for pain control after surgery. Pain, a stressor, triggers the release of counterregulatory hormones, increasing blood glucose levels and insulin needs. Opioid analgesics slow GI motility and alter blood glucose levels. The older patient who receives opioids is more at risk for confusion, paralytic ileus, hypoventilation, hypotension, and urinary retention. Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) systems reduce respiratory complications and confusion. (See [Chapter 5](#) for pain interventions and [Chapter 16](#) for general preoperative care.)

Intraoperative Care. IV infusion of insulin, glucose, and potassium is standard therapy for perioperative management of diabetes. The purpose is to keep the glucose level between 140 and 180 mg/dL (7.8 and 10.0 mmol/L) during surgery to prevent hypoglycemia and reduce risks from hyperglycemia. Levels below 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) reduce the risk for wound infection. Insulin/glucose infusion rates are based on hourly capillary glucose tests. Higher insulin doses may be needed because stress releases glucagon and epinephrine. Patients with DM should receive about 5 g of glucose per hour during surgery to prevent hypoglycemia, ketosis, and protein breakdown.

Monitor the patient's temperature—it may be lowered deliberately in some surgical procedures and inadvertently in others. Low operating room temperatures and large incisions also lower body temperature. Hypothermia decreases metabolic needs, depresses heart rate and contractility, causes vasoconstriction, and impairs insulin release, resulting in high blood glucose levels. Monitor arterial blood gas values for acidosis.

Postoperative Care. Hyperglycemia is associated with increased mortality and morbidity after surgical procedures. Current AACE and ADA guidelines recommend insulin protocols that maintain blood glucose levels between 140 and 180 mg/dL (7.8 and 10.0 mmol/L) for critically ill patients. Targets less than 110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L) are avoided (Moghissi et al., 2009).

Protocols and computer-based programs can be used to determine the insulin infusion rate required to maintain blood glucose levels within a defined target range. Many insulin infusion algorithms are implemented by nursing staff. Continue glucose and insulin infusions as prescribed until the patient is stable and can tolerate oral feedings. Short-term insulin therapy may be needed after surgery for the patient who usually uses oral agents. For those receiving insulin therapy, dosage adjustments may be required until the stress of surgery subsides.

Monitoring. Patients with autonomic neuropathy or vascular disease need close monitoring to avoid hypotension or respiratory arrest. Those who take beta blockers for hypertension need close monitoring for hypoglycemia because these drugs mask symptoms of hypoglycemia. Patients with **azotemia** (increased protein or nitrogen waste products in the blood) may have problems with fluid management. Check central venous pressure or pulmonary artery pressure as needed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

When a patient who has had reasonably controlled blood glucose levels in the hospital develops an unexpected rise in blood glucose values, check for wound infection.

Glucose levels are a sensitive marker of counterregulatory hormones, which are often activated before patients become febrile. Hyperglycemia often occurs before a fever.

Hyperkalemia (high blood potassium level) is common in patients with mild to moderate kidney failure and can lead to cardiac dysrhythmia. In other patients, **hypokalemia** (low blood potassium level) may occur and be made worse by insulin and glucose given during surgery. Monitor the cardiac rhythm and serum potassium values.

Cardiovascular monitoring using serial electrocardiograms (ECGs) is recommended for older patients with diabetes, those with long-standing type 1 DM, and those with heart disease. Patients with diabetes are at higher risk for MI after surgery with a higher mortality rate. Changes in ECG or in potassium level may indicate a silent MI.

Kidney monitoring, especially observing fluid balance, helps detect acute kidney injury. Diagnosis of kidney impairment may require the use of x-ray studies using dyes, which may be nephrotoxic. Management of infections may require the use of nephrotoxic antibiotics. Ensure adequate hydration when these drugs are used. Check for impending kidney failure by assessing fluid and electrolyte status.

Nutritional Care. Patients requiring clear or full liquid diets should receive about 200 g of carbohydrate daily in equally divided amounts at meals and snack times. Liquids should not be sugar-free. For tube feedings, either a standard formula (50% carbohydrate) or a lower-carbohydrate formula (33%-40% carbohydrate) may be used. Most patients require 25 to 35 calories per kg of body weight every 24 hours. After surgery, food intake is initiated as quickly as possible, and progression from clear liquids to solid foods should be accomplished as rapidly as tolerated (ADA, 2008).

Use of total parenteral nutrition (TPN) in patients with diabetes can cause severe metabolic changes. Anticipate that hyperglycemia will occur with TPN therapy. Monitor blood glucose often to determine the need for supplemental short-acting insulin. Insulin can be added to the TPN infusion or given as a separate IV infusion.

Returning to a normal meal plan as soon as possible after surgery promotes healing and metabolic balance. When oral foods are tolerated, make sure the patient takes at least 150 to 200 g of carbohydrate daily to prevent hypoglycemia.

Preventing Injury from Peripheral Neuropathy

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with diabetes is expected to identify factors that increase the risk for injury, practice proper foot care, and maintain intact skin on the feet. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Follows preventive foot care practices
- Cleanses and inspects the feet daily
- Wears properly fitting shoes
- Avoids walking in bare feet
- Trims toenails properly
- Reports nonhealing breaks in the skin of the feet to the health care provider

Interventions. Patients with DM need intensive teaching about foot care. *Foot injury is the most common complication of diabetes leading to hospitalization.* Studies have shown that patients with DM have up to a 25% lifetime risk for developing a foot ulcer. Once an ulcer has developed, there is an increased risk for wound progression that will eventually lead to amputation. Almost all lower extremity amputations are



FIG. 67-9 A “Charcot foot” type of diabetic foot deformity.

preceded by foot ulcers. The 5-year mortality rate after leg or foot amputation ranges from 39% to 67% ([National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases \[NIDDK\], 2011](#)). Diabetic foot ulcers are the result of a combination of factors. The major causes of diabetic foot ulcers are peripheral neuropathy and ischemia from peripheral vascular disease.

Motor neuropathy results in damage to the nerves of the intrinsic foot muscles that lead to imbalance between flexion and extension of the foot. This imbalance leads to anatomic foot deformities that create abnormal bony prominences and pressure points that gradually cause skin breakdown and ulceration. In claw toe deformity, toes are hyperextended and increase pressure on the metatarsal heads (“ball” of the foot), resulting in ulceration. Thinning or shifting of the fat pad under the metatarsal heads decreases cushioning and increases areas of pressure. These changes predispose the patient to callus formation, ulceration, and infection. The Charcot foot is a type of diabetic foot deformity with multiple anatomic abnormalities, often including a hallux valgus (turning inward of the great toe) ([Fig. 67-9](#)). The foot is warm, swollen, and painful. Walking collapses the arch, shortens the foot, and gives the foot a “rocker bottom” shape.

Autonomic neuropathy causes loss of normal sweating and skin temperature regulation, resulting in dry, thinning skin. Skin cracks and fissures increase the risk for infection. Sensory neuropathy may cause tingling or burning, but more often it produces numbness and reduced sensation. Without sensation, the patient does not notice injuries to the foot and does not treat them. Peripheral arterial disease commonly

affects the tibial and peroneal arteries of the calf, resulting in reduced blood supply to the foot. This problem increases the risk for ulcer formation and reduces ulcer healing ([McCance et al., 2010](#)).

Foot injuries can be caused by walking barefoot, wearing ill-fitting shoes, sustaining thermal injuries from heat (e.g., hot water bottles, heating pads, baths), or receiving caustic burns from over-the-counter corn treatments. Because the blood supply to the diabetic foot is poor, these injuries can lead to amputation.

Ulcers result from continued pressure. Plantar ulcers (on the sole, usually the ball) are from standing or walking. Those on the top or sides of the foot usually are from shoes. The increased pressure causes calluses. Ulcers usually form over or around the great toe, under the metatarsal heads, and on the tops of claw toes.

Broken skin increases the risk for infection. Skin tends to break in areas of pressure. Infection is common in diabetic foot ulcers and, once present, is difficult to treat. Infection also impairs glucose control, leading to higher blood glucose levels and reduced immune defenses, which further increases the risk for infection.

Prevention of High-Risk Conditions. Neuropathy of the feet and legs can be delayed by keeping blood glucose levels as near normal as possible. Poor blood glucose control increases the risk for neuropathy and amputation. Intensive therapy reduces the risk for peripheral sensory neuropathy by 60%. Urge smoking cessation to reduce the risk for vascular complications.

The risk for ulcers or amputation increases with duration of diabetes. Other risk factors are male gender; poor glucose control; and cardiovascular, retinal, or kidney complications. Foot-related risks include poor gait and stepping mechanics, peripheral neuropathy, increased pressure (callus, erythema, hemorrhage under a callus, limited joint mobility, foot deformities, or severe nail pathology), peripheral vascular disease, and a history of ulcers or amputation.

Peripheral Neuropathy Management. The feet should be evaluated closely at least annually. [Chart 67-7](#) lists self-management activities for prevention of injury from peripheral neuropathy, and [Table 67-12](#) lists foot risk categories.

Complete a full foot assessment as outlined in [Chart 67-8](#). Sensory examination with Semmes-Weinstein monofilaments is the most practical measure of the risk for foot ulcers. The nylon monofilament is mounted on a holder standardized to exert a 10-g force. There is no agreement on the exact number of sites to test. A person who cannot feel the 10-g pressure at any point is at increased risk for ulcers. To perform the examination:

- Provide a quiet and relaxed setting. Ask the patient to close his or her eyes during the test.
- Test the monofilament on the patient’s cheek so he or she knows what to expect.
- Test the sites noted in [Fig. 67-10](#).
- Apply the monofilament at a right angle to the skin surface.
- Apply enough force to bend the filament using a smooth, not jabbing, motion ([Fig. 67-11](#)).
- The approach, contact, and removal of the filament at each site should take 1 to 2 seconds.
- Apply the filament along the perimeter and **not** on an ulcer site, callus, scar, or necrotic tissue. Do not slide

CHART 67-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Peripheral Neuropathy and Safety

- Protect feet and other body areas where sensation is reduced (e.g., do not walk around in bare feet or stocking feet; always wear shoes with a protective sole).
- Be sure shoes are long enough and wide enough to prevent creating sores or blisters.
- Provide a long break-in period for new shoes; do not wear new shoes for longer than 2 hours at a time.
- Avoid pointed-toe shoes and shoes with heels higher than 2 inches.
- Inspect your feet daily (with a mirror) for open areas or redness.
- Avoid extremes of temperature; wear warm clothing in the winter, especially over hands, feet, and ears.
- Test water temperature with a thermometer when washing dishes or bathing. Use warm water rather than hot water (less than 110° F).
- Use potholders when cooking.
- Use gloves when washing dishes or gardening.
- Do not eat foods that are “steaming hot,” allow them to cool before placing them in your mouth.
- Eat foods that are high in fiber (e.g., fruit, whole grain cereals, vegetables).
- Drink two to three liters of fluid (nonalcoholic) daily unless your health care provider has told you to restrict fluid intake.
- Get up from a lying or sitting position slowly. If you feel dizzy, sit back down until the dizziness fades before standing and then stand in place for a few seconds before walking or using the stairs.
- Look at your feet and the floor or ground where you are walking to assess how the ground, floor, or step changes to prevent tripping or falling.
- Avoid using area rugs, especially those that slide easily.
- Use handrails when going up or down steps.

the filament across the skin or make repeated contact at the test site.

Randomize the sequence of applying the filament throughout the examination. Have the patient identify where the filament touched rather than asking “Do you feel this?”

Footwear. All patients with any degree of peripheral neuropathy need to wear protective shoes. They should be fitted by an experienced shoe fitter, such as a certified podiatrist. The shoe should be $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{8}$ inch longer than the longest toe. Heels should be less than 2 inches high. Shoes that are too tight damage tissue when worn for 4 hours or longer. Teach the patient to change shoes by midday and again in the evening. Socks or stockings need to fit properly and be appropriate for the planned activity. Socks should feel soft and have no thick seams, creases, or holes. They should pad the foot and absorb excess moisture. Teach patients to avoid tight stockings or those that have constricting bands. Patients with toe deformities should buy custom shoes with high, wide toe boxes and extra depth. Those with severely deformed feet, such as Charcot feet, need specially molded shoes. All new shoes need a long break-in period with frequent inspection for irritation or blistering.

Foot Care. Teach patients about preventive foot care and the need for examination of the feet and legs at each visit to a health care provider. Identify patients with high-risk foot conditions, and teach them about foot care. Explain problems caused by loss of protective sensation, the importance of

TABLE 67-12 FOOT RISK CATEGORIES

Risk Categories

Risk Category 0

- Has disease that leads to insensitivity
- Has protective sensation
- Has not had a plantar ulcer

Risk Category 1

- Does not have protective sensation
- Has not had a plantar ulcer
- Does not have a foot deformity

Risk Category 2

- Does not have protective sensation
- Has not had a plantar ulcer
- Does have a foot deformity

Risk Category 3

- Does not have protective sensation
- Has history of plantar ulcer

Management Categories

Management Category 0

- Examine feet at each visit, at least four times per year
- Foot clinic visit once a year
- Patient education

Management Category 1

- Examine feet at each visit, at least four times per year
- Foot clinic visit every 6 months
- Soft insoles
- Patient education

Management Category 2

- Examine feet at each visit, at least 4 times per year
- Foot clinic visit every 3-4 months
- Custom-molded insoles
- Prescription footwear
- Patient education

Management Category 3

- Examine feet at each visit, at least four times per year
- Foot clinic visit every 1-2 months
- Custom-molded insoles
- Prescription footwear
- Patient education

From Gillis W. Long Hansen's Disease Center Rehabilitation Branch. (1992). *Foot screening: Care of the foot in diabetes—The Carville approach*. Carville, LA: Department of Health and Human Services.

CHART 67-8 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Diabetic Foot

Assess the patient for risk for diabetic foot problems:

- History of previous ulcer
- History of previous amputation

Assess the foot for abnormal skin and nail conditions:

- Dry, cracked, fissured skin
- Ulcers
- Toenails: thickened, long nails; ingrown nails
- Tinea pedis; onychomycosis (mycotic nails)

Assess the foot for status of circulation:

- Symptoms of claudication
- Presence or absence of dorsalis pedis or posterior tibial pulse
- Prolonged capillary filling time (greater than 25 seconds)
- Presence or absence of hair growth on the top of the foot

Assess the foot for evidence of deformity:

- Calluses, corns
- Prominent metatarsal heads (metatarsal head is easily felt under the skin)
- Toe contractures: clawed toes, hammertoes
- Hallux valgus or bunions
- Charcot foot (“rocker bottom”)

Assess the foot for loss of strength:

- Limited ankle joint range of motion
- Limited motion of great toe

Assess the foot for loss of protective sensation:

- Numbness, burning, tingling
- Semmes-Weinstein monofilament testing at 10 points on each foot

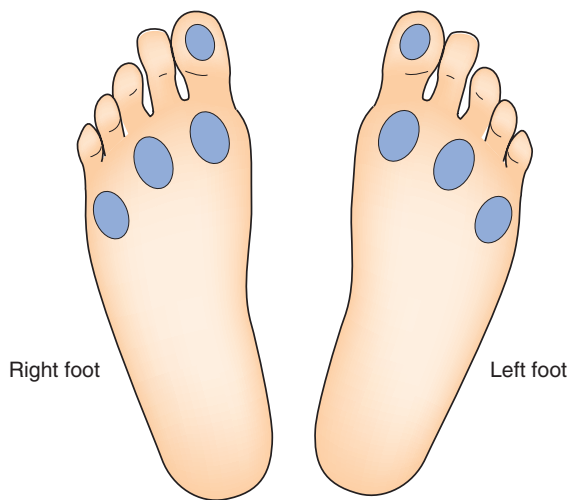


FIG. 67-10 Placement sites of monofilaments for testing of protective sensation.

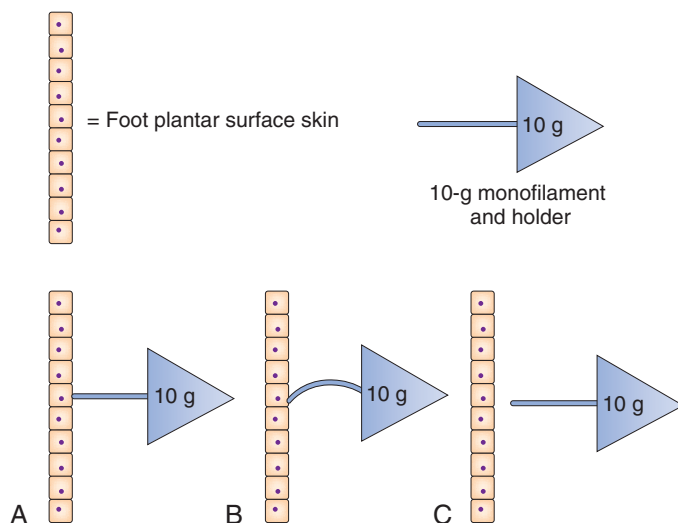


FIG. 67-11 Correct technique for sensation testing with 10-g monofilament. **A**, Apply monofilament to designated areas of the foot sole (intact skin only, see Fig. 67-10). **B**, Apply pressure to the filament until either the patient states he or she can feel the pressure or until the filament bends (see pp. 1446-1447). **C**, Quickly remove the filament without sliding it or touching other areas of the foot.

monitoring the feet daily, proper care of the feet (including nail and skin care), and how to select appropriate footwear. Advise patients with neuropathy to break in new shoes slowly to reduce the risk for blisters.

Teach patients to inspect their feet daily. Assess their ability to inspect all areas of the foot and to perform foot care. Teach family members how to inspect and care for the patient's feet if the patient cannot. Chart 67-9 lists foot care instructions for self-management.

Wound Care. The standards of care for diabetic ulcers are a moist wound environment, débridement of necrotic tissue, and elimination of pressure (*offloading*).

Wound environment is influenced by the dressing. Dressings reduce or prevent infection, allow débridement, reduce

CHART 67-9 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF MANAGEMENT

Foot Care Instructions

- Inspect your feet daily, especially the area between the toes.
- Wash your feet daily with lukewarm water and soap. Dry thoroughly.
- Apply moisturizing cream to your feet after bathing. Do not apply to the area between your toes.
- Change into clean cotton socks every day.
- Do not wear the same pair of shoes 2 days in a row, and wear only shoes made of breathable materials, such as leather or cloth.
- Check your shoes for foreign objects (nails, pebbles) before putting them on. Check inside the shoes for cracks or tears in the lining.
- Purchase shoes that have plenty of room for your toes. Buy shoes later in the day, when feet are normally larger. Break in new shoes gradually.
- Wear socks to keep your feet warm.
- Trim your nails straight across with a nail clipper. Smooth the nails with an emery board.
- See your physician or nurse immediately if you have blisters, sores, or infections. Protect the area with a dry, sterile dressing. Do not use adhesive tape to secure dressing.
- Do not treat blisters, sores, or infections with home remedies.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not step into the bathtub without checking the temperature of the water with your wrist or thermometer. Optimal temperature is 95° F (35° C). Maximum temperature is 110° F (43° C).
- Do not use very hot or cold water. Never use hot water bottles, heating pads, or portable heaters to warm your feet.
- Do not treat corns, blisters, bunions, calluses, or ingrown toenails yourself.
- Do not go barefooted.
- Do not wear sandals with open toes or straps between the toes.
- Do not cross your legs or wear garters or tight stockings that constrict blood flow.
- Do not soak your feet.

wound pain, and stimulate granulation tissue. Many commercial products are available. Antiseptics such as povidone iodine, hydrogen peroxide, and chlorhexidine interfere with wound healing. Dressings that keep the wound moist are essential.

Débridement removes dead tissues that support bacterial growth. Proper débridement is needed to reduce the risk for infection and to reduce pressure around the wound. It is accomplished with surgery, topical débriding agents, and dressings. Mechanical débridement, although helpful, can delay healing by removing newly formed tissue.

Eliminating pressure on an infected area is essential to wound healing. Teach patients with foot ulcers to not wear a shoe on the affected foot while the ulcer is healing. Those with poor sensation may keep walking on an ulcer because it does not hurt. This results in pressure necrosis that delays healing and increases ulcer size. Pressure is reduced by specialized orthotic devices, custom-molded shoe inserts, or shoe adjustments that redistribute weight.

The purpose of offloading is to redistribute force away from ulcer sites and pressure points to wider areas of the foot. Several products are available for offloading, including total-contact casting, half shoes, removable cast walkers, wheelchairs, and crutches. Total-contact casts redistribute pressure over the bottom of the foot. Casting material is molded to the

foot and leg so pressure is spread along the entire surface of contact, thereby reducing vertical force. The almost complete elimination of motion of the total-contact cast reduces plantar shear forces. The cast is removed 24 to 48 hours after application to inspect the foot and the cast fit. The cast is replaced and then removed and reapplied weekly thereafter until the ulcer is healed. *Teach the patient that foot ulcers will recur unless weight is permanently redistributed.*

Growth factors applied to wounds increase healing by stimulating new tissue and enhancing cell growth. This treatment has helped heal foot ulcers present for many months or even years. Because it is costly, this therapy is usually performed in specialized treatment centers.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient, Angelina Lopez, is a 44-year-old woman who was diagnosed with type 2 diabetes on admission for a wound infection of her right foot. She stepped on a piece of a small toy while walking in her bare feet at home. The toy broke the skin of the foot and lodged there, leading to infection. She was unaware of the presence of the toy and sought medical help only when her foot began to drain purulent fluid and smell. Examination of her retinas shows damage indicating she has had diabetes for at least 10 years. She is overweight and hypertensive (for which she has just been prescribed an antihypertensive). She is crying and tells you that her grandmother in Mexico died after an amputation because of diabetes. She says she just doesn't understand how she "caught" diabetes and is worried that she too will die young.

1. What specific risk factors led to the wound infection?
2. What will you tell her about "catching" diabetes?
3. Is she or is she not at risk for dying young? Why or why not?
4. What will you say immediately to address her worry?
5. What are the teaching priorities for this patient?

Managing Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with neuropathic pain is expected to experience relief of pain. Indicators include these consistent behaviors:

- Uses preventive measures
- Uses available resources to increase comfort
- Reports pain controlled

Interventions. Neuropathic pain results from damage anywhere along the nerve. The mechanism for neuropathic pain in the patient with diabetes is unclear. Many patients with diabetes suffer from the painful neuropathy. Common symptoms of diabetic neuropathy include:

- Burning
- Muscle cramps
- Piercing, stabbing, or darting pain
- Metatarsalgia (feeling as if you are walking on marbles)
- Hyperalgesia (exaggerated pain response)
- Allodynia (pain in response to normally nonpainful stimuli)
- Tingling, numbness, and loss of proprioception in lower extremities

Maintaining normal blood glucose levels and avoiding extreme fluctuations prevent neuropathy and relieve symptoms of acute nerve dysfunction. Rapid improvement in blood glucose control may actually trigger acute peripheral neuropathy.

Several pharmacologic agents are used to manage neuropathic pain. The anticonvulsants *gabapentin* (Neurontin) and *pregabalin* (Lyrica) and the serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor (SNRI) *duloxetine* (Cymbalta) are approved for management of peripheral neuropathic pain. Tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline hydrochloride (Elavil, Levate ) and nortriptyline (Pamelor) are widely used for neuropathic pain but are not approved for this purpose and have some significant side effects. Their use is contraindicated for older adults and those with cardiovascular disease.

The burning of neuropathy may respond to capsaicin cream 0.075% (Axsain , Zostrix-HP). This drug reduces amounts of substance P, which is involved in pain transmission (see Chapter 5). Teach the patient to apply it four times daily for several weeks. Neuropathic pain may worsen for several days after therapy is started before improving.

Unpleasant symptoms are noted with abrupt discontinuation of many of these drugs. Teach the patient about possible side effects of the drug before its initiation, and warn him or her to avoid abrupt discontinuation. A gradual reduction in the dose rather than abrupt cessation is recommended to prevent side effects.

Provide support and practical information on measures to reduce pain. Simple measures such as a bed cradle to lift bed clothes off hypersensitive skin can be beneficial. Assist the patient to maintain stable glucose control. *All patients with neuropathy are at increased risk for foot ulcers and require more frequent assessment and education in routine foot management.*

Preventing Injury from Reduced Vision

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with diabetes is expected to be free of injury related to reduced vision and to maintain current level of vision. Indicators include:

- No further reduction of visual fields
- No double vision

Interventions

Blood Glucose Control. Poor blood glucose control, proteinuria, diastolic hypertension, and long duration of diabetes are risk factors for diabetic retinopathy and vision loss. Surgical intervention for retinal hemorrhage or new retinal blood vessel growth can reduce vision loss.

Besides regular eye examinations to evaluate retinopathy, urge the patient with impaired vision to have an optometrist or ophthalmologist assess the remaining vision and prescribe appropriate eyewear. A functional vision assessment, performed by a low-vision technician, rehabilitation teacher, or diabetes educator, determines the patient's use of lighting, contrast, non-optical and low-vision devices, large-print options, and use of central or peripheral vision. Low-vision reading aids include products or devices such as closed circuit television systems, handheld magnifiers, desktop systems, portable low-vision aids, talking calculators, talking and large-print books, check-writing guides, and telescopic lenses. The American Foundation for the Blind maintains a list of services for visually impaired people that is organized by type of service and geographic area. More information is available at (800) 232-5463 and www.afb.org.

Environmental Management. Not all visually impaired patients need special devices. Adjustments in lighting, contrast, color, distance, type size of printed materials, and eye movement often improve visual abilities. Instruct the patient

to supplement overhead fluorescent lighting with an incandescent lamp directed toward the workspace. Placing dark equipment against a white or yellow background (or vice versa) provides contrast to enhance vision. Coding objects such as vials of insulin with bright colors or with felt-tipped markers helps identify the correct bottle. Bringing the blood glucose lancet or insulin syringe close to the eye makes it easier to see. Suggest large type or bold print to ease reading. Teach the patient to use peripheral vision.

Prefilled insulin pens are not approved for use by people with severe visual impairment unless they are assisted by a person with good vision who is trained to use the pen correctly. Adaptive devices can help the patient self-administer insulin independently. Some syringes may have a magnifier attached to the syringe. Other devices include preset dose gauges (which measure the space between the end of the syringe barrel and the plunger) to help the patient draw up the correct amount of insulin by feeling this distance. The blind patient can accurately measure insulin by using products such as the Count-A-Dose Insulin Measuring Device. This device is designed to be used with the BD Lo-Dose syringe. It holds two insulin vials and has a slot to direct the syringe needle into the vials' rubber stoppers. The patient draws insulin into the syringe by turning a thumb-wheel, which clicks for each unit (clicks can be both heard and felt). (See the Consumer Guide published yearly in the January edition of Diabetes Forecast [forecast.diabetes.org] for information to help patients determine which adaptive devices best meet their needs.) When teaching the patient to use an adaptive device, stress:

- Differentiating between bottles of fast-acting and slower-acting insulin by wrapping a rubber band around the fast-acting insulin bottle
- Ensuring proper placement of the device on the syringe
- Holding the insulin bottle upright when measuring insulin
- Avoiding air bubbles in the syringe by pulling a small amount of insulin into the syringe, moving the plunger in and out three times, and measuring insulin on the fourth draw

Design a system to determine how many doses can be drawn from a bottle so the patient does not inject air from an empty bottle instead of insulin.

Specialized adaptive equipment also is available to assist with blood glucose monitoring techniques. Assist the patient to select a blood glucose monitoring device best suited to his or her level of visual impairment. For patients with reliable low vision, monitors with large display screens and easy-to-use features may be used. The Prodigy Voice (Diagnostic Devices) is fully audio for patients who are visually impaired. The monitor uses no coding, has automatic turn-on with test strip insertion, and has a button for repeating the last message. Assess the ability of the patient to obtain an adequate blood sample and to apply it to the test strip. Commercially made blood drop guides can assist with this task.

Reducing the Risk for Kidney Disease

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with diabetes is expected to maintain a normal urine elimination pattern. Indicators include:

- Urine protein levels within normal limits
- 24-hour intake and output balance

- Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and serum creatinine within the normal ranges
- Serum electrolytes within the normal ranges

Interventions

Prevention. Tight control of blood glucose levels may slow kidney disease in patients with type 1 diabetes. Diabetic kidney disease is more likely to develop in those with poor blood glucose control. Progression to end-stage kidney disease can be delayed or prevented by normalizing blood pressure, correcting hyperlipidemia, and restricting dietary protein. Control of hypertension is essential for the reduction of diabetic nephropathy (ADA, 2010c). Both systolic and diastolic hypertension greatly accelerate the progression of diabetic kidney disease.

Stress the need for evaluation of kidney function according to the ADA Standards of Care. Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is the best overall measure of kidney function. Serum creatinine should be measured at least annually for an estimation of GFR in all patients with diabetes (ADA, 2010b). An annual test for microalbuminuria is performed for patients who have had type 1 DM for over 5 years and in all those with type 2 DM starting at diagnosis and during pregnancy.

After 5 or more years of DM, the earliest change signaling diabetic kidney disease is an excretion of 30 to 299 mg of albumin per day (*microalbuminuria*). When albumin excretion rises above 300 mg per day, it is termed *albuminuria*. Screening for microalbuminuria is performed by three methods: (1) random spot urine collection to measure the albumin-creatinine ratio, (2) 24-hour urine collection to measure creatinine clearance, and (3) timed urine collection (e.g., 4 hours or overnight). Timed urine collections are not reliable in patients with neuropathy and incomplete bladder emptying. The preferred method of screening for microalbuminuria is by measuring the albumin-to-creatinine ratio in a random spot urine collection (ADA, 2010c).

Aggressive control of blood glucose and hypertension in patients without microalbuminuria can avoid nephropathy. Once microalbuminuria develops, management focuses on controlling blood pressure and blood glucose, restricting dietary protein, avoiding nephrotoxic agents, promptly treating urinary tract infections, and preventing dehydration.

Control of blood pressure and blood glucose levels requires the patient's participation and effort. Prescribed drugs must be taken according to schedules, and dietary restriction must be maintained. Teach patients about the roles of blood pressure and blood glucose levels in kidney disease. Help them maintain normal blood glucose levels and blood pressure levels below 130/80 mm Hg. Stress the need for yearly screening for microalbuminuria.

Smoking cessation is important in halting the progression of diabetic kidney disease. Smoking increases the risk for development of microalbuminuria, increases the rate of advancement to proteinuria, and accelerates the rate of progression of kidney disease in patients with either type 1 or type 2 DM. Teach the patient about the risks of smoking, and refer him or her to appropriate resources for assistance in smoking cessation.

Any urinary tract infection (UTI) can lead to kidney infection and further reduce kidney function. Explain the manifestations of UTI. Urge the patient to take antibiotics exactly as prescribed, completing the entire course of treatment.

Reinforce the need for follow-up urine cultures to reduce the risk for kidney damage. Avoid indwelling urinary catheters when possible.

Drugs can affect kidney function either through toxic effects on the kidney or by an acute but reversible reduction in function. The most common nephrotoxic drugs are antifungal agents (amphotericin B) and aminoglycoside antibiotics such as amikacin (Amikin), streptomycin, kanamycin (Kantrex), gentamicin (Garamycin), and tobramycin (Tobrex). Outside the hospital, the leading nephrotoxic agents are NSAIDs such as ibuprofen (Advil) or naproxen (Aleve). To prevent accidental ingestion of nephrotoxic drugs, teach the patient to check with a health care provider before taking over-the-counter drugs or herbal remedies.

Radiocontrast dyes can also affect kidney function, especially in patients with preexisting kidney problems. Monitor IV hydration before and after contrast is used to prevent contrast-induced nephropathy in patients with diabetes.

Drug Therapy. Use of angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors (ACEIs) or angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) is recommended for all patients with microalbuminuria or advanced stages of nephropathy (ADA, 2010c). ACE inhibitors reduce the level of albuminuria and the rate of progression of kidney disease. These drugs have not shown to be effective in primary prevention of microalbuminuria. Monitor serum potassium levels for development of hyperkalemia.

Nutrition Therapy. Patients with nephropathy should restrict dietary protein to 0.8 g/kg of body weight per day. Once the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) starts falling, further reducing protein may slow the decline in kidney function (ADA, 2010c). Because lifelong dietary restrictions are difficult, provide ongoing teaching to encourage adherence.

Fluid and Electrolyte Management. Fluid and electrolyte management can prevent more loss of kidney function. Avoiding dehydration is important for kidney perfusion and function. Assess fluid balance, and use measures to prevent dehydration. The most common cause of dehydration in patients with diabetes is overuse of diuretics. Teach patients to report edema or symptoms of orthostatic hypotension, and provide ongoing education to promote nutrition therapy.

Dialysis for patients with DM and kidney failure is the same as for patients without diabetes (see Chapter 71). The dosage of insulin needs to be adjusted when dialysis starts.

Preventing Hypoglycemia

Hypoglycemia is defined as the presence of Whipple's triad: manifestations consistent with low blood glucose, a low plasma glucose concentration, and resolution of symptoms or signs after plasma glucose concentration is raised. Hypoglycemic symptoms are mediated through both the central and peripheral nervous systems. Once plasma glucose levels fall below 70 mg/dL (3.88 mmol/L), a sequence of events begins with release of counterregulatory hormones, stimulation of the autonomic nervous system, and production of *neurogenic* and *neuroglycopenic* symptoms. Peripheral autonomic symptoms (adrenergic), including sweating, irritability, tremulousness, anxiety, tachycardia, and hunger, serve as an early warning system and occur before the central neuroglycopenic symptoms (confusion, paralysis, seizure, and coma) due to central glucose deprivation. *Neuroglycopenic symptoms* occur when brain glucose *gradually declines* to a

TABLE 67-13 SYMPTOMS OF HYPOGLYCEMIA

Neuroglycopenic Symptoms	Neurogenic Symptoms
• Weakness • Fatigue • Difficulty thinking • Confusion • Behavior changes • Emotional instability • Seizures • Loss of consciousness • Brain damage • Death	• Adrenergic: • Shaky/tremulous • Heart pounding • Nervous/anxious • Cholinergic: • Sweaty • Hungry • Tingling

low level. *Neurologic symptoms* result from autonomic nervous activity triggered by a *rapid decline* in blood glucose (Table 67-13).

Central nervous system (CNS) function depends on a continuous supply of glucose in the blood. The brain cannot make glucose and stores only a few minutes' supply as glycogen. This needed supply is not maintained when the blood glucose level falls below critical levels.

The first defense against falling blood glucose levels in a person who does not have diabetes is decreased insulin secretion, decreased glucose use, and increased glucose production. Normally, insulin secretion decreases when blood glucose levels drop to about 83 mg/dL (4.5 mmol/L). Counterregulatory hormones are activated at about 67 mg/dL (3.7 mmol/L), a level well above the threshold for symptoms of hypoglycemia. The main counterregulatory hormone is glucagon. Epinephrine also becomes important in patients with DM who are deficient in glucagon. Both glucagon and epinephrine raise blood glucose levels by stimulating liver glycogen breakdown and conversion of protein to glucose. Epinephrine also limits insulin secretion. Growth hormone and cortisol also are important during prolonged hypoglycemia. Their effects do not become evident until 4 hours after the onset of hypoglycemia.

Type 1 DM disrupts the body's response to hypoglycemia, a change that occurs within 1 to 5 years of diagnosis. Regulation of circulating insulin levels is lost because insulin comes from an injection rather than from the pancreas. As blood glucose levels fall, insulin levels do not decrease. Over time, the pancreas loses its ability to secrete glucagon in response to hypoglycemia. After a few more years of type 1 DM, the response of epinephrine to falling blood glucose levels is also reduced. It does respond, but it takes a lower blood glucose level to become active. These problems greatly increase the risk for severe hypoglycemia.

A second problem with long-standing type 1 DM is *hypoglycemic unawareness*, in which patients no longer have the warning symptoms of impending hypoglycemia that should prompt them to take preventive action. This problem occurs most often in patients who have had type 1 DM for 30 years or longer.

The blood glucose level at which symptoms of hypoglycemia occur varies among patients. Many have symptoms when blood glucose levels are well above 50 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L), especially if the level dropped rapidly or they are used to chronic hyperglycemia. Thus clinical criteria used to

TABLE 67-14 DIFFERENTIATION OF HYPOGLYCEMIA AND HYPERGLYCEMIA

FEATURE	HYPOGLYCEMIA	HYPERGLYCEMIA
Skin	Cool, clammy	Warm, moist
Dehydration	Absent	Present
Respirations	No particular or consistent change	Rapid, deep*; Kussmaul type; acetone odor ("fruity" odor) to breath
Mental status	Anxious, nervous,* irritable, mental confusion,* seizures, coma	Varies from alert to stuporous, obtunded, or frank coma
Symptoms	Weakness,* double vision, blurred vision, hunger, tachycardia, palpitations	No specific symptoms for DKA Acidosis; hypercapnia; abdominal cramps, nausea and vomiting Dehydration: decreased neck vein filling, orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia, poor skin turgor
Glucose	<70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L)	>250 mg/dL (13.8 mmol/L)
Ketones	Negative	Positive

DKA, Diabetic ketoacidosis.

*Classic symptoms.

categorize hypoglycemia are based on severity rather than blood glucose levels. In mild hypoglycemia, the patient remains alert and able to self-manage symptoms. In severe hypoglycemia, neurologic function is so impaired that he or she needs another person's help to increase blood glucose levels.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with DM is expected to have decreased episodes of hypoglycemia and remain oriented to person, place, and time, as indicated by a Glasgow Coma Scale score above 7.

Interventions. A blood glucose level below 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) alerts you to assess for manifestations of hypoglycemia (Table 67-13; see also Table 67-14).

Blood Glucose Management. Monitor blood glucose levels before giving antidiabetic drugs, before meals, before bedtime, and when the patient is symptomatic. All patients who take insulin, those taking long-acting insulin secretagogues (glyburide [glibenclamide]), and those taking metformin in combination with glyburide (Glucovance) are at risk for hypoglycemia. This risk is increased if they are older, have liver or kidney impairment, or are taking drugs that enhance the effects of antidiabetic drugs. Proper patient selection, drug dosage, and instructions are important factors in avoiding severe hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia may be difficult to recognize in those who take beta-blocking drugs. Symptoms become less intense and less obvious. Manifestations of hypoglycemia in older patients may be mistaken for other conditions.

The most common causes of hypoglycemia are:

- Too much insulin as it relates to food intake and physical activity
- Insulin injected at the wrong time relative to food intake and physical activity
- The wrong type of insulin injected at the wrong time

- Decreased food intake resulting from missed or delayed meals
- Delayed gastric emptying from gastroparesis
- Decrease liver glucose production after alcohol ingestion
- Increased insulin sensitivity as a result of regular exercise and weight loss
- Decreased insulin clearance from progressive kidney failure

Nutrition Therapy. When the patient is hypoglycemic, start carbohydrate replacement per physician prescription or standing protocols. Ingestion of 15 to 20 g of glucose is the preferred treatment for hypoglycemia. If the patient can swallow, give a liquid form of carbohydrate, although any source of carbohydrate can be used to treat hypoglycemia. Ingestion of 15 to 20 g of glucose is the preferred treatment for blood glucose levels less than 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L), repeated in about 15 minutes if manifestations have not improved or if blood glucose levels are still less than 70. The amount of carbohydrate should be increased to 30 g when treating glucose levels less than 50 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L).

Ten grams of oral glucose raises plasma glucose levels by about 40 mg/dL over 30 minutes, and 20 g of oral glucose raises plasma glucose levels by about 60 mg/dL over 45 minutes. Glucose levels often begin to fall about 60 minutes after glucose ingestion. Specific recommendations are listed in Chart 67-10.

The blood glucose level determines the form and amount of glucose used. The response to treatment of hypoglycemia should be apparent in 10 to 20 minutes; however, test plasma glucose again in about 60 minutes because additional treatment may be needed. Fluid is absorbed much more quickly from the GI tract than are solids. Concentrated sweet fluids, such as juice with sugar added or a soft drink, may slow absorption.

Management of hypoglycemia requires ingestion of glucose or glucose-containing foods. The blood glucose response correlates better with the glucose content rather than the carbohydrate content of the food. Adding protein to carbohydrate does not improve blood glucose response and does not prevent subsequent hypoglycemia. Adding fat may retard and then prolong the blood glucose response, resulting in post-treatment hyperglycemia. Commercially available products provide predictable glucose absorption.

Drug Therapy. Glucagon given subcutaneously or IM and 50% dextrose given IV is used for patients who cannot swallow. Glucagon is the main counterregulatory hormone and is used as therapy for severe hypoglycemia in DM. It converts liver glycogen to glucose but is not effective in starved patients who have little liver glycogen. Take care to prevent aspiration in patients receiving glucagon, because it often causes vomiting. Give 50% dextrose carefully to avoid extravasation because it is hyperosmolar and can damage tissue. The effects of glucagon and dextrose are temporary. After the patient responds and is no longer nauseated, give a simple sugar followed by a small snack or meal. IV glucose is used to maintain mild hyperglycemia. Diazoxide (Proglycem) or octreotide (Sandostatin) may be required to treat sulfonylurea-induced hypoglycemia. Evaluate response by monitoring blood glucose levels for several hours. Symptoms may persist for an hour or more after treatment. A target blood glucose level is 70 to 110 mg/dL (3.9 to 6.2 mmol/L).

CHART 67-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Treatment of Hypoglycemia at Home

For *mild* hypoglycemia (hungry, irritable, shaky, weak, headache, fully conscious; blood glucose usually less than 60 mg/dL [3.4 mmol/L]):

- Treat the symptoms of hypoglycemia with 10 to 15 g of carbohydrate. You may use one of the following:
 - Glucose tablets or glucose gel (dosage is printed on the package)
 - $\frac{1}{2}$ cup of fruit juice
 - $\frac{1}{2}$ cup of regular (nondiet) soft drink
 - 8 ounces of skim milk
 - 6 to 10 hard candies
 - 4 cubes of sugar
 - 4 teaspoons of sugar
 - 6 saltines
 - 3 graham crackers
 - 1 tablespoon of honey or syrup
- Re-test blood glucose in 15 minutes.
- Repeat this treatment if symptoms do not resolve.
- Eat a small snack of carbohydrate and protein if your next meal is more than an hour away.

For *moderate* hypoglycemia (cold, clammy skin; pale; rapid pulse; rapid, shallow respirations; marked change in mood; drowsiness; blood glucose usually less than 40 mg/dL [2.2 mmol/L]):

- Treat the symptoms of hypoglycemia with 15 to 30 g of rapidly absorbed carbohydrate.
- Take additional food, such as low-fat milk or cheese, after 10 to 15 minutes.

For *severe* hypoglycemia (unable to swallow; unconsciousness or convulsions; blood glucose usually less than 20 mg/dL [1.0 mmol/L]):

- Treatment administered by family members:
 - Administer 1 mg of glucagon as intramuscular or subcutaneous injection.
 - Administer a second dose in 10 minutes if the person remains unconscious.
 - Notify a primary care provider immediately, and follow instructions.
 - If still unconscious, transport the person to the emergency department.
 - Give a small meal when the person wakes up and is no longer nauseated.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For the patient with *severe* hypoglycemia (unable to swallow, unconscious or convulsing, blood glucose usually less than 20 mg/dL [1.0 mmol/L]), treat by:

1. Giving glucagon 1 mg subcutaneously or IM
2. Repeating the dose in 10 minutes if the patient remains unconscious
3. Notifying the primary health care provider immediately, and following instructions

Prevention Strategies. Teach the patient how to prevent hypoglycemia by avoiding the four common causes of hypoglycemia. These are (1) excess insulin, (2) deficient intake or absorption of food, (3) exercise, and (4) alcohol intake.

Insulin excess from variable absorption of insulin can cause hypoglycemia even when insulin is injected correctly. This excess also can be caused by lowered insulin resistance,

which occurs with termination of pregnancy or resolution of an infection. Increased insulin sensitivity can occur with weight loss or exercise programs. Differences in insulin formulation can result in hypoglycemia. Teach the patient to not change insulin brands without medical supervision.

Deficient food intake from inadequate or incorrectly timed meals can result in hypoglycemia. Changes in gastric absorption may cause hypoglycemia in patients with delayed gastric emptying. This problem is more common in those with DM of long duration, is more severe with solid than with liquid meals, and is made worse by illness or poor glucose control. Teach the patient about the importance of regularity in timing and quantity of food eaten.

Exercise usually causes blood glucose levels to fall in a patient with type 1 DM. Prolonged exercise increases cellular glucose uptake for several hours after exercise. Teach the patient about blood glucose monitoring and carbohydrate consumption before and during exercise.

Alcohol inhibits liver glucose production and leads to hypoglycemia. It interferes with the counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia and impairs glycogen breakdown, making exercise-induced hypoglycemia more severe. Alcohol is more likely to cause hypoglycemia when the patient does not eat for long periods, when basic nutrition is poor, and when glycogen stores are depleted. Teach him or her to ingest alcohol only with or shortly *after* eating a meal with enough carbohydrate to prevent hypoglycemia. Warn patients to avoid excess alcohol at bedtime to prevent nighttime hypoglycemia.

Patient and Family Education. The cause of hypoglycemia may be subtle. At the onset of menses, a fall in hormone levels decreases insulin needs and contributes to hypoglycemia. When patients switch to a new bottle of insulin, hypoglycemia may occur because the fresh insulin has greater potency. Some patients have hypoglycemia when they change injection sites. Drugs such as propranolol (Inderal, Detensol ) or other beta blockers mask warning signs and thus predispose patients to severe hypoglycemia. Some episodes of hypoglycemia occur without an obvious cause and are due to the erratic absorption of insulin, which can occur in any patient.

Many patients who have been treated in the emergency department for hypoglycemia do not receive adequate instruction on how to prevent another episode and are at continuing risk. Help each patient develop a personal treatment plan for hypoglycemia. Routinely taking 10 to 15 g of carbohydrate results in overtreatment of hypoglycemia in some patients and undertreatment in others. The exact glucose rise from a set amount of carbohydrate varies; however, using the estimate that each 5 g of carbohydrate raises blood glucose about 20 mg/dL is a good starting plan. For example, the patient may be directed to take:

- 20 to 30 g of carbohydrate if the blood glucose level is 50 mg/dL (2.8 mmol/L) or less
- 10 to 15 g of carbohydrate if the blood glucose level is 51 to 70 mg/dL (2.9 to 3.9 mmol/L)

Use blood glucose monitoring results to revise or reinforce this plan.

Encourage the patient to wear a medical alert bracelet, and help him or her obtain one. This bracelet is helpful if the patient becomes hypoglycemic and is unable to provide self-care.

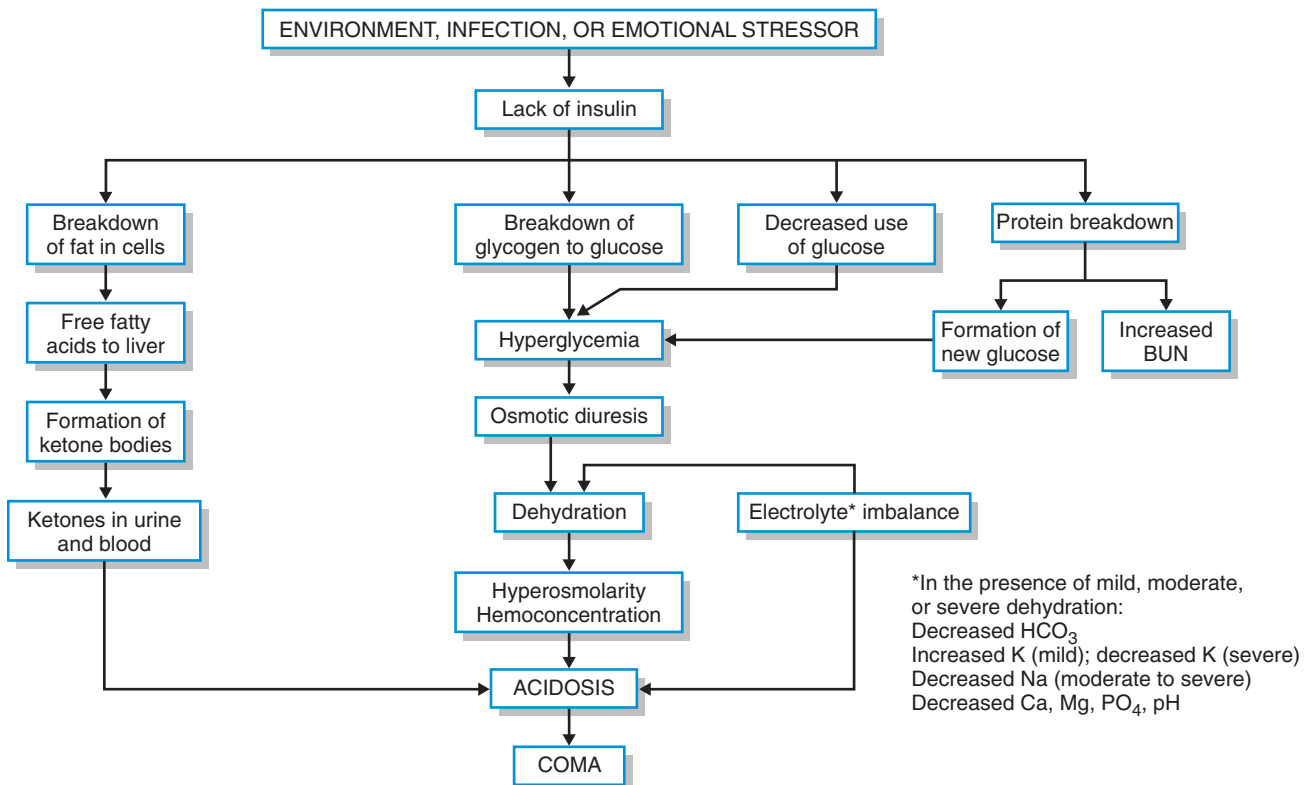


FIG. 67-12 The pathophysiologic mechanism of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA).

Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of hypoglycemia. Emphasize that delaying a meal for more than 30 minutes raises the risk for hypoglycemia when using some insulin regimens. Instruct him or her to keep a carbohydrate source nearby at all times. Teach the patient and family how to administer glucagon.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The risk for severe or fatal hypoglycemia associated with insulin use or other antidiabetic drugs increases dramatically in the older adult with DM. Age-related changes in liver and kidney function slow metabolism of these drugs, predisposing to prolonged and recurrent hypoglycemia. Older patients may have a delayed release of epinephrine, as well as an impaired response of glucagon to falling blood glucose levels. In addition, they often have a reduced awareness of the autonomic manifestations and may not know how to interpret manifestations of hypoglycemia. Older patients have impaired psychomotor performance when their blood sugars are low, preventing them from taking appropriate steps to return their blood sugars to normal. Physical symptoms such as confusion may make the older patient unable to correct hypoglycemia.

Instruct the older patient with DM and the family to check blood glucose values when symptoms such as unsteadiness, lightheadedness, poor concentration, trembling, or sweating occur. Assess eating patterns to make sure he or she is eating sufficient foods at appropriate times. Encourage a patient with a poor appetite to eat a small snack at bedtime to prevent hypoglycemia during the night.

Antidiabetic drugs with low hypoglycemia potential should be selected for older patients. The highest rates of severe and fatal episodes of hypoglycemia are associated with the use of glyburide, and most of these events occurred in patients older than 70 years. Drug regimens that require that meals be eaten on time increase the potential for hypoglycemic reactions.

Hypoglycemia is a major risk for patients receiving intensive insulin protocols who engage in exercise programs. Explain that nightmares or headaches on days after prolonged or severe exercise occur with hypoglycemia.

Establishing Treatment Plans. Blood glucose monitoring directs hypoglycemia treatment. Treatment continues until blood glucose levels reach and stay in the target range. Once blood glucose control is regained, the specific cause of each hypoglycemic episode should be determined and measures taken to prevent recurrence.

Preventing Diabetic Ketoacidosis

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is characterized by uncontrolled hyperglycemia, metabolic acidosis, and increased production of ketones. This condition results from the combination of insulin deficiency and an increase in counterregulatory hormone release (Fig. 67-12). Laboratory diagnosis of DKA is shown in Table 67-15. Hormonal changes lead to increased liver and kidney glucose production and decreased glucose use in peripheral tissues. Increased production of counterregulatory hormones leads to the production of ketacids with resultant ketonemia and metabolic acidosis.

DKA occurs most often in patients with type 1 DM but also can occur in those with type 2 DM who are under severe stress (e.g., trauma, surgery, infection). The most common precipitating factor for development of DKA is infection. *Death occurs in up to 10% of these cases even with appropriate treatment.* Mortality is highest for older patients who also have infection, stroke, MI, vascular thrombosis, intestinal obstruction, or pneumonia.

Hyperglycemia leads to osmotic diuresis with dehydration and electrolyte loss. Classic symptoms of DKA include

TABLE 67-15 DIFFERENCES BETWEEN DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS AND HYPERGLYCEMIC-HYPEROSMOLAR STATE

	DIABETIC KETOACIDOSIS (DKA)	HYPERGLYCEMIC-HYPEROSMOLAR STATE (HHS)
Onset	Sudden	Gradual
Precipitating factors	Infection Other stressors Inadequate insulin dose	Infection Other stressors Poor fluid intake
Manifestations	Ketosis: Kussmaul respiration, "fruity" breath, nausea, abdominal pain Dehydration or electrolyte loss: polyuria, polydipsia, weight loss, dry skin, sunken eyes, soft eyeballs, lethargy, coma	Altered central nervous system function with neurologic symptoms Dehydration or electrolyte loss: same as for DKA
Laboratory Findings		
Serum glucose	>300 mg/dL (16.7 mmol/L)	>600 mg/dL (33.3 mmol/L)
Osmolarity	Variable	>320 mOsm/L
Serum ketones	Positive at 1:2 dilutions	Negative
Serum pH	<7.35	>7.4
Serum HCO ₃ ⁻	<15 mEq/L	>20 mEq/L
Serum Na ⁺	Low, normal, or high	Normal or low
BUN	>30 mg/dL; elevated because of dehydration	Elevated
Creatinine	>1.5 mg/dL; elevated because of dehydration	Elevated
Urine ketones	Positive	Negative

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen; HCO₃⁻, bicarbonate; Na⁺, sodium.

polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, weight loss, vomiting, abdominal pain, dehydration, weakness, altered mental status, shock, and coma. Mental status can vary from total alertness to profound coma. As ketone levels rise, the buffering capacity of the body is exceeded, the pH of the blood decreases, and acidosis occurs. **Kussmaul respirations** (very deep and rapid respirations) cause respiratory alkalosis in an attempt to correct metabolic acidosis by exhaling carbon dioxide. Initial serum sodium levels may be low or normal. Initial potassium levels depend on how long DKA lasts before treatment. After therapy starts, serum potassium levels drop quickly.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to have few episodes of hyperglycemia and avoid diabetic ketoacidosis. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Maintains blood glucose levels within the prescribed target range
- Adjusts insulin doses to match eating patterns and blood glucose levels during illness
- Maintains easily digestible liquid diet containing carbohydrate and salt when nauseated
- Describes correct procedure for urine ketone testing
- Describes when to seek help from health care professional

Interventions

Blood Glucose Management. Monitor for manifestations of DKA (see Table 67-15 and Fig. 67-12). Document and use these findings to determine therapy effectiveness. *First assess the airway, level of consciousness, hydration status, electrolytes, and blood glucose level.* Check the patient's blood pressure, pulse, and respirations every 15 minutes until stable. Record urine output, temperature, and mental status every hour. When a central venous catheter is present, assess central venous pressure every 30 minutes or as prescribed. After treatment starts and these values are stable, monitor and record vital signs every 4 hours. Use blood glucose values to assess therapy effectiveness and determine when to switch from saline to dextrose-containing solutions.

Fluid and Electrolyte Management. *Closely assess the patient's fluid status.* The kidneys are less able to respond to changes in pH or fluid and electrolyte balance, to concentrate urine, or to regulate blood osmolarity. The risk for kidney failure rises with age. Impaired bicarbonate reabsorption and acid excretion in poorly functioning kidney tubules can lead to acidosis. Cardiovascular disease can cause fluid retention. The dehydrated patient's lips and mouth may be dry and the tongue furrowed. Temperature may be elevated. Age-related skin changes, such as loss of elasticity and dryness, make skin turgor an unreliable sign of dehydration in the older patient. In patients with poor kidney function and excess fluid volume, assess for edema around the eyes and in the limbs, increasing abdominal girth, increasing blood pressure and pulse volume, jugular venous distention, and orthostatic hypotension. Edema occurs with excess interstitial fluid and often is not apparent until interstitial volume increases by 2 to 3 L. Daily weights are good indicators of fluid status because 1 kg of body weight equals 1 L of fluid.

Check the clinical indicators of fluid imbalance. Fluid overload can cause hypertension, especially in patients with kidney failure. Jugular venous pressure increases with volume overload. Orthostatic hypotension may indicate volume depletion. In that case, jugular venous pulsation may not be visible at a 45-degree angle. In severe volume depletion, the jugular venous pulsation may not be visible even with the patient lying flat.

The first outcome of fluid therapy is to restore volume and maintain perfusion to the brain, heart, and kidneys. Typically, initial infusion rates are 15 to 20 mL/kg/hr during the first hour (Fowler, 2009).

The second outcome of fluid therapy, replacing total body fluid losses, is achieved more slowly. The choice for fluid replacement depends on hemodynamics (status of blood pressure), the state of hydration, serum electrolyte levels, and urine output. In general, hypotonic fluids are infused at 4 to 14 mL/kg/hr after the initial fluid bolus. When blood glucose levels reach 250 mg/dL (13.8 mmol/L), give 5% dextrose in 0.45% saline. This solution prevents hypoglycemia and cerebral edema, which can occur when serum osmolarity declines too rapidly.

During the first 24 hours of treatment, the patient needs enough fluids to replace the actual volume deficit and ongoing losses. This may be as much as 6 to 10 L. Assess cardiac, kidney, and mental status to avoid fluid overload. Watch for signs of congestive heart failure and pulmonary edema. Central venous pressure may be monitored for older patients and those with myocardial disease. Assess the status of fluid

replacement by monitoring blood pressure and intake and output.

Drug Therapy. The outcome of insulin therapy is to lower serum glucose by about 50 to 75 mg/dL/hr. Unless the episode of DKA is mild, regular insulin by continuous IV infusion is the treatment of choice. Effective blood insulin levels are reached quickly when an IV bolus dose is given at the start of the infusion. An initial IV bolus dose of 0.1 unit/kg is followed by an IV infusion of 0.1 unit/kg/hr. Continuous insulin infusion is used because of the 4-minute half-life of IV insulin and because of the delayed onset of action and prolonged half-life of subcutaneous regular insulin. Subcutaneous insulin is started when the patient can take oral fluids and ketosis has stopped. Criteria for resolution of DKA include blood glucose less than 200 mg/mL along with a serum bicarbonate level higher than 18 mEq/L, venous pH higher than 7.3, and a calculated ion gap of less than 12 mEq/L. Assess therapy effectiveness by hourly blood glucose measurements.

Acidosis Management. The key diagnostic feature of DKA is elevation in circulating total body ketone concentration. The severity of DKA is best assessed by measurements of serum β -hydroxybutyrate. Accumulation of ketoacids results in an increased anion gap metabolic acidosis. The anion gap is calculated by subtracting the sum of chloride and bicarbonate concentration from the sodium concentration. A normal anion gap is between 7 and 9 mEq/L; an anion gap greater than 10 to 12 mEq/L indicates metabolic acidosis.

Despite total-body potassium depletion, mild to moderate hyperkalemia is common in patients with hyperglycemia. Insulin therapy, correction of acidosis, and volume expansion decrease serum potassium concentration. To prevent hypokalemia, potassium replacement is initiated after serum levels fall below normal. *Assess for signs of hypokalemia, including fatigue, malaise, confusion, muscle weakness, shallow respirations, abdominal distention or paralytic ileus, hypotension, and weak pulse.* An ECG shows cardiac conduction changes related to potassium. Hypokalemia is a common cause of death in the treatment of DKA.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Before giving IV potassium, make sure the patient produces at least 30 mL/hr of urine.

Bicarbonate is used only for severe acidosis because it may reverse acidosis too rapidly and lead to severe hypokalemia, which can cause fatal cardiac dysrhythmias. Rapid correction can worsen the patient's mental status. Acidosis is corrected with fluid replacement and insulin therapy. Sodium bicarbonate, given by slow IV infusion over several hours, is indicated when the arterial pH is 7.0 or less or the serum bicarbonate level is less than 5 mEq/L (5 mmol/L).

After acid-base disturbances are corrected, efforts are directed toward determining the cause of DKA. Infection is the most common cause (see [Table 67-15](#)).

Patient and Family Education. Exploring the factors leading to DKA helps in planning specific educational efforts. Teach the patient and family to check blood glucose levels every 4 to 6 hours as long as symptoms such as anorexia,

CHART 67-11 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Sick-Day Rules

- Notify your health care provider that you are ill.
- Monitor your blood glucose at least every 4 hours.
- Test your urine for ketones when your blood glucose level is greater than 240 mg/dL (13.8 mmol/L).
- Continue to take insulin or oral antidiabetic agents.
- To prevent dehydration, drink 8 to 12 ounces of sugar-free liquids every hour that you are awake. If your blood glucose level is below your target range, drink fluids that contain sugar.
- Continue to eat meals at regular times.
- If unable to tolerate solid food because of nausea, consume more easily tolerated foods or liquids equal to the carbohydrate content of your usual meal.
- Call your primary care provider for any of these danger signals:
 - Persistent nausea and vomiting
 - Moderate or large ketones
 - Blood glucose elevation after two supplemental doses of insulin
 - High (101.5° F [38.6° C]) temperature or increasing fever; fever for more than 24 hours
- Treat symptoms (e.g., diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, fever) as directed by your primary care provider.
- Get plenty of rest.

nausea, and vomiting are present and as long as glucose levels exceed 250 mg/dL (13.8 mmol/L). Teach them to check urine ketone levels when blood glucose levels exceed 300 mg/dL (16.7 mmol/L).

Teach the patient to reduce the risk for dehydration by maintaining food and fluid intake. Unless another health problem is present that requires fluid restriction, suggest that he or she drink at least 3 L of fluid daily and increase this amount when infection is present. When nausea is present, instruct the patient to take liquids containing both glucose and electrolytes (e.g., soda pop, diluted fruit juice, and sports drinks [Gatorade]). Small amounts of fluid may be tolerated even when vomiting is present. When blood glucose levels are normal or elevated, the patient should take 8 to 12 ounces (240 to 360 mL) of calorie-free and caffeine-free liquids every hour while awake to prevent dehydration.

Liquids containing carbohydrate can be taken if the patient with diabetes cannot eat solid food. Ingesting at least 150 g of carbohydrate daily reduces the risk for starvation ketosis. After consulting a primary care provider, urge the patient to take additional rapid-acting (lispro) or short-acting (regular) insulin based on blood glucose levels.

Instruct the patient and family to consult the primary care provider when these problems occur:

- Blood glucose exceeds 250 mg/dL (13.8 mmol/L).
- Ketonuria lasts for more than 24 hours.
- The patient cannot take food or fluids.
- Illness lasts more than 1 to 2 days.

Also instruct them to detect hyperglycemia by monitoring blood glucose whenever the patient is ill. Illness can result in dehydration with DKA, hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state, or both. The sooner the patient seeks treatment, the less severe the metabolic alteration. He or she should not omit insulin therapy during illness. [Chart 67-11](#) lists guidelines for the ill patient.

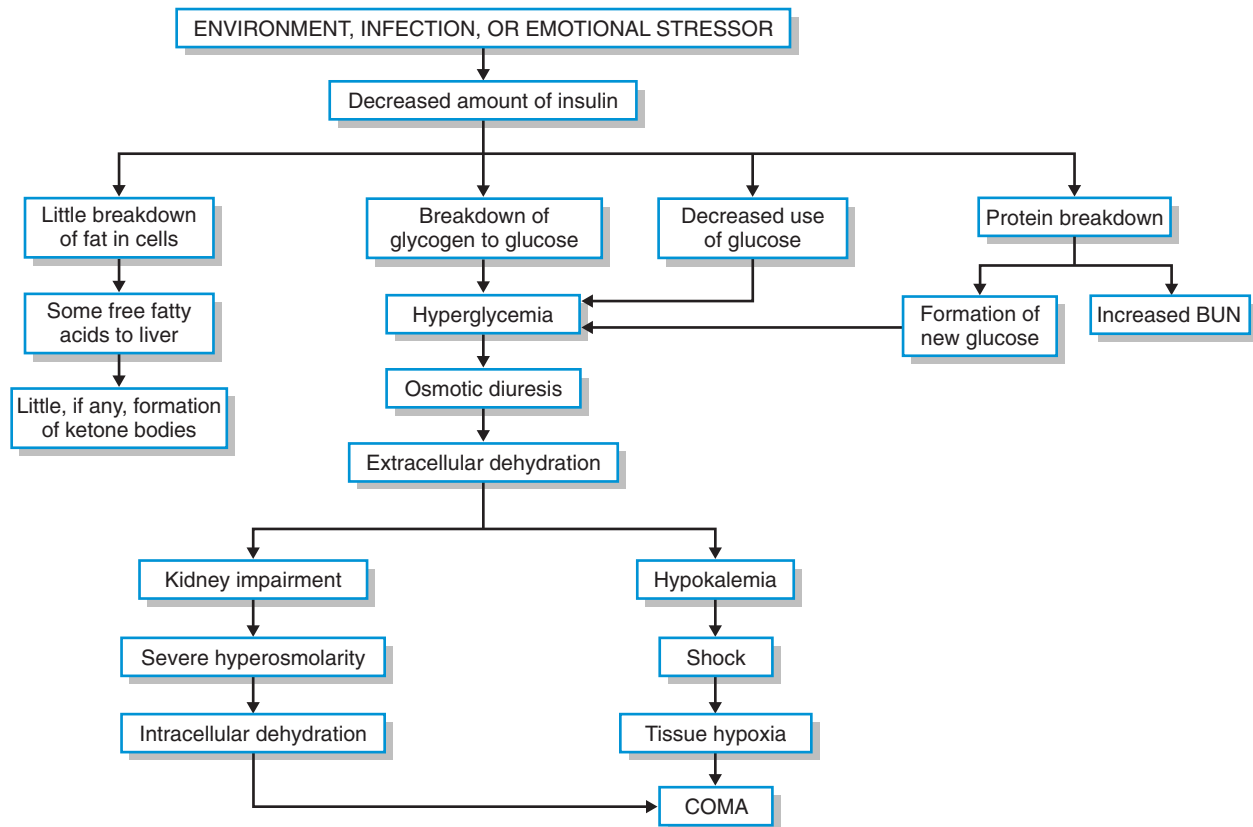


FIG. 67-13 The pathophysiologic mechanism of hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS). *BUN*, Blood urea nitrogen.

Preventing Hyperglycemic-Hyperosmolar State

Hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS), formerly known as *hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar nonketotic syndrome (HHNS)*, is a hyperosmolar (increased blood osmolarity) state caused by hyperglycemia. The processes of HHS are outlined in Fig. 67-13. Both HHS and diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) are caused by hyperglycemia and dehydration. HHS differs from DKA in that ketone levels are low or absent and blood glucose levels are much higher. Blood glucose levels may exceed 600 mg/dL (33.3 mmol/L), and blood osmolarity may exceed 320 mOsm/L. Other biochemical problems with HHS also are more severe than those with DKA. Table 67-15 lists the differences between DKA and HHS.

HHS is the end result of a sustained osmotic diuresis. Kidney impairment in HHS allows for extremely high blood glucose levels. Glucose impairs the concentrating ability of the kidney. Normally, kidneys act as a safety valve to eliminate glucose above levels around 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L). As serum concentrations of glucose exceed the renal threshold, the kidney's capacity to reabsorb glucose is exceeded.

Decreased blood volume, caused by osmotic diuresis, or underlying kidney disease, common in many older patients with diabetes, results in further deterioration of kidney function. The decreased volume further reduces glomerular filtration rate, causing the glucose level to increase. Decreased kidney perfusion from hypovolemia further impairs kidney function.

Myocardial infarction, sepsis, pancreatitis, stroke, and some drugs (glucocorticoids, diuretics, phenytoin [Dilantin], propranolol [Inderal], and calcium channel blockers) also

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

HHS occurs most often in older patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus, many of whom did not know that they had diabetes. Mortality rates in older patients are as high as 40% to 70%. The onset of HHS is slow and may not be recognized. The older patient often seeks medical attention later and is sicker than the younger patient. HHS does not occur in adequately hydrated patients. Older patients are at greater risk for dehydration and HHS because of age-related changes in thirst perception and poor urine-concentrating abilities.

Many older adults take diuretics, which contributes to dehydration. In the long-term care settings and for home-bound older adults who depend on others for oral intake, many patients do not ingest enough fluids and can more easily become dehydrated. Ensure that older adults with diabetes are weighed every 3 days or weekly to monitor trends and detect dehydration early.

may cause HHS. Central nervous system (CNS) changes range from confusion to complete coma. Unlike DKA, patients with HHS may have seizures, myoclonic jerking, and reversible paralysis. The degree of neurologic impairment is related to serum osmolarity, with coma occurring once serum osmolarity is greater than 350 mOsm/L (350 mmol/L).

The development of HHS rather than DKA is related to residual insulin secretion. In HHS, the patient secretes just enough insulin to prevent ketosis but not enough to prevent hyperglycemia. The hyperglycemia of HHS is more severe than that of DKA, greatly increasing the blood osmolarity and causing profound diuresis. Severe dehydration and electrolyte loss occur, and the patient may lose 15% to 25% of body fluid. When dehydration is severe, glucose is not filtered into the urine, causing even greater hyperglycemia and

hyperosmolarity. Impairment of the thirst center in the brain occurs, making it impossible for the patient to drink enough fluid to prevent dehydration. This problem is worse in the older adult with diabetes because age-related changes in the thirst center reduce the patient's sensation of thirst.

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with DM is expected to have few episodes of hyperglycemia and avoid HHS. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Maintains blood glucose levels within the target range
- Uses antidiabetic drugs appropriately
- Remains well hydrated
- Describes when to seek help from health care professionals

Interventions

Monitoring. Assess for manifestations of HHS. (See Tables 67-14 and 67-15 for symptoms of hyperglycemia.) Continually assess fluid status.

Fluid Therapy. The expected outcome of therapy is to rehydrate the patient and restore normal blood glucose levels within 36 to 72 hours. The choice of fluid replacement and the rate of infusion are critical in managing HHS. The severity of the CNS problems is related to the level of blood hyperosmolarity and cellular dehydration. Re-establishing fluid balance in brain cells is a difficult and slow process, and many patients do not recover baseline CNS function until hours after blood glucose levels have returned to normal.

The *first* priority for fluid replacement in HHS is to increase blood volume. In shock or severe hypotension, give normal saline. Otherwise, use half-normal saline because it more rapidly corrects the water deficit. Infuse fluids at 1 L/hr until central venous pressure or pulmonary capillary wedge pressure begins to rise or until blood pressure and urine output are adequate. The rate is then reduced to 100 to 200 mL/hr. Half of the estimated water deficit is replaced in the first 12 hours, and the rest is given over the next 36 hours. Body weight, urine output, kidney function, and the presence or absence of pulmonary congestion and jugular venous distention determine the rate of fluid infusion. In patients with congestive heart failure, kidney disease, or acute kidney injury (failure), monitor central venous pressure. *Assess the patient hourly for signs of cerebral edema—abrupt changes in mental status, abnormal neurologic signs, and coma.* Lack of improvement in level of consciousness may indicate inadequate rates of fluid replacement or reduction in plasma osmolarity. Regression after initial improvement may indicate a too-rapid reduction in plasma osmolarity. A slow but steady improvement in CNS function is the best evidence that fluid management is satisfactory.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

For patients being managed for a hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state, immediately report changes in the level of consciousness; changes in pupil size, shape, or reaction; or seizures.

Continuing Therapy. IV insulin is administered after adequate fluids have been replaced. The typical intervention is an initial bolus dose of 0.15 unit per kg IV followed by an infusion of 0.1 unit per kg per hour until blood glucose levels fall to 250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L). A reduction of blood

glucose of 50 to 70 mg/dL per hour is a reasonable expected outcome. Monitor the patient closely for indications of hypokalemia. Total body potassium depletion is often unrecognized because the level of potassium in the blood may be normal or high. The serum potassium level may drop quickly when insulin therapy is started. Potassium replacement is initiated once urine output is adequate. Serum electrolytes should be obtained every 1 to 2 hours until stable, and the patient's cardiac rhythm should be monitored continuously for signs of hypokalemia or hyperkalemia. Patient education and interventions to minimize dehydration are similar to those for ketoacidosis.

COMMUNITY-BASED CARE

Teaching for Self-Management

Education about blood glucose control begins at the time of diagnosis. It takes place in a hospital or outpatient setting, clinic, or primary care provider's office and involves physicians, nurses, dietitians, pharmacists, social workers, and psychologists. Diabetes is a condition that is managed by the patient; therefore education should be a continuous process. Education is provided to patients to achieve blood glucose control to the maximum of their abilities.

Assessing Learning Needs and Readiness to Learn

Gather information about the patient's current knowledge, skills, attitudes, and behaviors. The patient must have a basic level of understanding about diabetes management in order to reach target blood glucose levels. Assess his or her awareness of diabetes and the needs of both patient and family before teaching. This assessment includes:

- Health and medical history
- Nutrition history and practices
- Physical activity and exercise behaviors
- Prescription and over-the-counter medications, and complementary and alternative therapies and practices
- Factors that influence learning such as education and literacy levels, perceived learning needs, motivation to learn, and health beliefs
- Diabetes self-management behaviors, including experience with self-adjusting the treatment plan
- Previous diabetes self-management training, actual knowledge, and skills
- Physical factors including age, mobility, visual acuity, hearing, manual dexterity, alertness, attention span, and ability to concentrate or special needs or limitations requiring adaptive support and use of alternative skills
- Psychosocial concerns, factors, or issues including family and social support
- Current mental health status
- History of substance abuse including alcohol, tobacco, and recreational drugs
- Occupation, vocation, education level, financial status, and social, cultural, and religious practices
- Access to and use of health care resources

Adult learners want information that applies directly to them. Find out what concerns the patient most about having diabetes, and ask what he or she wants to learn. Learning is enhanced when it is related to what the learner already knows. Start with what the patient already knows, and build on that

base. Because they will be managing their own care after discharge, patients tend to focus on issues most important to them. Treatment measures that need to start soon after diagnosis may be of more interest to the patient than long-term control. Learning is reinforced and retained when it can be applied immediately and repeatedly.

The patient's physical condition dictates the timing of teaching. He or she does not have the energy to learn complex information when blood glucose levels are fluctuating. Explaining that well-controlled blood glucose levels improve the sense of well-being can help the patient accept the therapy plan. Pace your teaching to match the patient's energy level. Use an informal teaching process until he or she feels able to attend a formal class.

Each patient learns in his or her own way. A successful diabetes education program combines several teaching methods. Some patients learn better when they read pamphlets. Others learn better when they watch videos. Learning improves when the equipment is handled, techniques are practiced, success is rewarded, and errors are corrected immediately.

Assessing Physical, Cognitive, and Emotional Limitations

Assess the patient's education and reading level to determine what level of information to present. He or she must be able to understand the printed material. It is important to match the literacy level of printed material provided to the literacy level of the patient. Even highly educated patients do not want to read complicated information when they are sick. Develop creative teaching strategies for the patient who cannot read.

Assess the patient's ability to read printed information, insulin labels, and markings on syringes and equipment. Many with type 2 diabetes have **presbyopia** (age-related farsightedness) and other visual problems made worse by blurred vision caused by fluctuating blood glucose levels.

Assess the patient's ability to reason with numbers and other mathematical concepts. Adjusting insulin dosage based on blood glucose monitoring is a difficult concept and may not be appropriate for patients who cannot understand it. Managing drugs, exercise, and diet requires complex interpretation and behavior.

Assess manual dexterity for any physical limitations that may alter the teaching plan. A hand injury, tremors, or severe arthritis may require a change in insulin preparation.

Information is best learned when the patient is ready. Those with newly diagnosed diabetes are facing a life crisis. Some are motivated to learn information and are willing to change lifelong behaviors. Others may grieve the loss of their previous lifestyle and use denial to cope. In this instance, the patient may not be able to learn needed information right away.

Survival Skills Information

The initial phase of diabetes education involves teaching information necessary for the survival of anyone diagnosed with diabetes. Survival information includes:

- Simple information on pathophysiology of diabetes
- Learning how to prepare and administer insulin or how to take oral drugs for diabetes
- Basic diet information
- Monitoring of blood glucose and ketones

- Recognition, treatment, and prevention of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia
- Sick-day management
- Where to buy diabetes supplies and how to store them
- When and how to notify the primary care provider

A dietitian provides the initial diet instruction. The patient needs to understand what to eat, how much to eat, and when to eat. Stress the importance of eating on time and the dangers of skipping meals. He or she must know how to maintain food intake during illness. Reinforce dietary instruction, answer questions, and refer questions to the dietitian or primary care provider as indicated.

After being taught, the patient should be able to identify the drugs needed to control blood glucose levels. If insulin is used, he or she must be able to prepare and give the dose accurately using sterile technique. The patient must also be able to state when insulin is to be injected, where insulin is injected, and how insulin is stored. Stress the dangers of skipping doses. Carefully review drug interactions, especially with older patients taking oral antidiabetic drugs.

Patients should be able to state their plan for regular physical activity. They must be able to describe the relationship between exercise and blood glucose control and identify situations in which activity should not be performed. Provide guidelines for additional carbohydrate intake to prevent hypoglycemia from excessive exercise.

The patient also must be able to state the plan for monitoring blood glucose. The person doing the monitoring must be able to do the procedure accurately and understand the results. Explain when blood glucose should be monitored, acceptable ranges, and actions to take when results are out of these ranges. If the patient cannot perform self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG) because of illness, ensure that a resource (e.g., home care agency, health clinic, or primary care provider's office) will be available to do the monitoring.

The most important part of survival-level education is to ensure that the patient understands the significance, symptoms, causes, and treatment of hypoglycemia. He or she must be able to state the causes of hypoglycemia and the activities needed to prevent it. The patient must be able to describe appropriate carbohydrates to have available and the need to notify the physician of hypoglycemic episodes. Teach a family member how and when to inject glucagon.

The patient also must understand the significance of hyperglycemia and its relationship to illness. Instruct him or her on actions to take during illness and when to communicate with the primary care provider.

Most of this information is best retained when the patient is ready to learn. Education is a challenge because patients tend to be hospitalized for shorter periods. All diabetes education may be provided in an outpatient setting, where contact with the patient is limited. Important information must be squeezed into the time available. Many patients do not progress in self-management beyond the survival level because of psychological barriers.

In-Depth Education

In-depth education and counseling involve teaching more detailed information related to survival skills, as well as helping the patient learn preventive measures for avoiding long-term complications. Educational sessions with patient and family are needed to "patientize" the diabetes regimen for their needs

and abilities. Education is often provided by a team of a physician, nurse educator, dietitian, social worker, pharmacist, psychologist, case manager, and other health care professionals as needed. It may occur in various outpatient settings.

Besides knowledge gained at the survival level, the patient should be able to discuss the action of insulin in the body and the effects of insulin deficiency. He or she should also be able to explain the effects of diet, drugs, and activity on blood glucose. The patient should be able to relate maintaining normal blood glucose levels to preventing complications. This includes relating changes in glucose level to the possible need for a change in insulin dosage.

The patient must be able to describe the meal plan and explain the adjustments needed to meet diabetic diet requirements. He or she should state how food intake should be altered when eating out or increasing exercise. *The patient must be able to list specific foods to be eaten to prevent and treat hypoglycemia, as well as adjustments to make when ill.* Include in this teaching the family member usually responsible for buying groceries and preparing meals.

The patient with diabetes must be able to prepare and give insulin accurately and must be able to discuss the onset, peak, and duration of the insulin used. Review formulas for self-adjustment in insulin (when permitted by the physician), and explain blood glucose monitoring requirements needed to evaluate the effects of additional insulin. If the patient takes an oral antidiabetic drug, ask him or her to identify the drug and describe its prescribed schedule. The patient must identify over-the-counter drugs with the potential to cause adverse interactions and the need to inform all care providers of the drug regimen.

Review how to perform desired physical activities safely. The patient must state blood glucose levels that are safe for exercise, the frequency of SMBG during exercise, drug adjustments before exercise, food required before exercise, and what food to have available during exercise. He or she should be aware of the risk for injury during exercise and explain the importance of protective footwear.

The purposes of in-depth education are to help the patient solve problems of blood glucose fluctuation through the use of SMBG. He or she should be able to identify practices, such as travel (Chart 67-12), that cause blood glucose to fluctuate and to treat these problems with supplemental insulin, changes in activity, or changes in diet. Ask him or her to demonstrate urine ketone testing and to describe when urine ketones should be measured.

The patient must be able to describe a plan for periodic evaluation of blood glucose control by the primary care provider, as well as periodic dental and eye examinations. He or she must be able to perform foot care, wear properly fitting shoes, and describe hazards related to foot care. The patient must be able to describe ways to reduce specific risk factors, such as cigarette smoking and hypertension.

The patient must state that diabetes is a lifelong disease that requires lifestyle changes, describe the changes being made, and indicate those that need to be made. He or she should be able to identify stress-producing situations and discuss ways to reduce stress.

Psychosocial Preparation

The diagnosis of diabetes may represent a loss of control. All but a few patients lose flexibility. Life becomes ordered, and routines must be followed. Certain events surrounding

CHART 67-12 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Travel Tips for Patients with Diabetes

Before traveling, visit your primary care provider and diabetes educator.

- See your physician to make certain you do not have any other health problems.
- Obtain a letter from your physician (typed on office letterhead) that indicates you have diabetes and lists the drugs you are taking.
- Obtain any needed immunizations or inoculations.
- Obtain prescriptions from your physician for your drugs, including glucagon if you take insulin, and prescriptions for motion sickness, nausea and vomiting, and traveler's diarrhea.
- Develop a plan for changing strengths of insulin if you are traveling to a country that does not carry the type of insulin you use. Learn how to use a U-100 syringe to draw up U-40 insulin.
- Develop a plan for meal and drug adjustment across time zones. Eastbound travel will shorten the day, requiring a reduction in the amount of drug needed. Westbound travel may add an extra meal to the day and require additional drug.
- Obtain a list of foods from your diabetes educator that you can substitute for food served in restaurants or airplanes.

If you are traveling by air, train, or boat, call ahead and request special meals for those with diabetes.

- Plan for delays in eating.
- Eat something every 4 hours.
- Drink a glass of water every 2 hours to prevent dehydration.
- Do not assume that special meals will be available; substitute items you cannot eat with foods you have in your travel kit.

Notify airline and hotel personnel that you have diabetes.

- Always wear medical alert identification and keep your medical alert card in your wallet.

While traveling:

- Check your blood glucose level frequently.
- Do not engage in activities when blood glucose levels are lower than 65 mg/dL.
- Stretch and walk around every 2 hours to help your circulation.
- Check your feet frequently for blisters and sores. You may be doing more walking than usual.
- Take extra shoes with you, and plan to change shoes often when walking more than normal.
- Protect your skin against exposure to the sun. Drug-induced photosensitivity can occur with some oral hypoglycemic agents.

Always have your travel kit with you; do not check your kit along with the rest of your luggage. Include these items in your travel kit:

- Insulin bottles in boxes with prescription labels
- Twice as much drug and twice as many supplies as you think you will need (pack drugs separately from checked luggage)
- Insulin stored in an insulated carrying case that will maintain temperatures according to the manufacturer's directions
- The letter from your physician (typed on office letterhead) that indicates you have diabetes and lists the drugs you are taking
- A supply of fast-acting sugar (e.g., glucose tablets or gel, hard candy, sugar cubes), as well as longer-acting foods (e.g., cheese and crackers, peanut butter and crackers)
- A self-monitoring diary

diabetes are predictable. Taking an insulin injection and not eating for several hours causes hypoglycemia. Poorly controlled diabetes leads to complications and premature death. Tight control of blood glucose levels prevents complications.

The stress of diabetes is in addition to the demands of normal daily life. The patient must be able to integrate the

demands of diabetes into daily and recreational schedules while keeping blood glucose stable.

Assist in healthy psychological adaptation to diabetes by providing successful educational experiences. Mastery of blood glucose monitoring helps the patient feel that he or she has control over the disease. Knowing the effects of extra activities, extra food, or extra insulin is helpful in learning to adjust the regimen.

Feeling a sense of control over the condition does much to promote a positive attitude about diabetes. Success in injecting insulin provides concrete evidence that he or she can master the disease. Teach by breaking a task into small, achievable units to ensure mastery. For example, a patient may begin learning how to inject insulin by first obtaining an accurate dose.

Devote as much teaching time as possible to insulin injection and blood glucose monitoring. Patients with newly diagnosed diabetes are often fearful of giving themselves injections. After this technique has been mastered, they become less anxious and are able to attend to other tasks.

Recognize that not everyone will have a healthy adaptation to diabetes. Major depression affects many patients with diabetes and severely impacts quality of life and all aspects of functioning, including self-management behaviors. Clinical anxiety disorder is another problem common in patients with diabetes. Refer those who have significant problems coping with the day-to-day demands of diabetes to mental health counseling for appropriate treatment.

Home Care Management

Patients with diabetes self-manage their disease. Each day they decide what to eat, whether to exercise, and whether to take prescribed drugs. Maintaining blood glucose control depends on the accuracy of self-management skills. The main role of the health care professional is to provide support and education and to empower the patient to make informed decisions. Self-management education allows patients to identify their problems and provides techniques to help them make decisions, take appropriate actions, and alter these actions as needed.

Provide information about resources. The patient must know whom to contact in case of emergency. Older adults who live alone need to have daily telephone contact with a friend or neighbor. The patient may also need help shopping and preparing meals. He or she may have limited access to transportation and may not have sufficient supplies of food, particularly in bad weather. Because of the likelihood of visual problems in older patients, they may need assistance in preparing insulin syringes for injection or in monitoring blood glucose. Make referrals to home care or public health agencies as needed. [Chart 67-13](#) identifies areas for assessment during a home or clinic visit.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with diabetes based on the identified priority patient problems. Outcome success for diabetes education is the ability of the patient to maintain blood glucose levels within their established target range. General outcome criteria are listed below and in [Table 67-16](#). More specific outcomes are listed with each priority patient problem. The expected outcomes include that the patient should:

- Achieve blood glucose control
- Avoid acute and chronic complications of diabetes

CHART 67-13 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Insulin-Dependent Patient with Diabetes During a Home or Clinic Visit

- Assess overall mental status, wakefulness, ability to converse.
- Take vital signs and weight:
 - Fever could indicate infection.
 - Are blood pressure and weight within target range? If not, why?
- Question patient regarding any change in visual acuity; check current visual acuity.
- Inspect oral mucous membranes, gums, and teeth.
- Question patient about injection areas used; inspect areas being used; assess whether patient is using areas and sites appropriately.
- Inspect skin for intactness, wounds that have not healed, new sores, ulcers, bruises, or burns; assess any previously known wounds for infection, progression of healing.
- Question patient regarding foot care.
- Assess lower extremities and feet for peripheral pulses, lack of or decreased sensation, abnormal sensations, breaks in skin integrity, condition of toes and nails.
- Question patient regarding color and consistency of stools and frequency of bowel movements; assess abdomen for bowel sounds.
- Review patient's home health diary:
 - Is blood glucose within targeted range? If not, why?
 - Is glucose monitoring being recorded often enough?
 - Is the patient's food intake adequate and appropriate? If not, why?
 - Is exercise occurring regularly? If not, why?
- Assess patient's ability to perform self-monitoring of blood glucose.
- Assess patient's procedures for obtaining and storing insulin and syringes, cleaning equipment, disposing of syringes and needles.
- Assess patient's insulin preparation and injection technique.

TABLE 67-16 OUTCOME CRITERIA FOR DIABETES TEACHING

Before being discharged to home, the patient with diabetes or the significant other should be able to:

- Tell why insulin or an oral hypoglycemic agent is being prescribed.
- Name which insulin or oral hypoglycemic agent is being prescribed, and name the dosage and frequency of administration.
- Discuss the relationship between mealtime and the action of insulin or the oral hypoglycemic agent.
- Discuss plans to follow diabetic diet instructions.
- Prepare and administer insulin accurately.
- Test blood for glucose, or state plans for having blood glucose levels monitored.
- Test urine for ketones, and state when this test should be done.
- Verbalize how to store insulin.
- List symptoms that indicate a hypoglycemic reaction.
- Tell what carbohydrate sources are used to treat hypoglycemic reactions.
- Tell what symptoms indicate hyperglycemia.
- Tell what dietary changes are needed during illness.
- Verbalize when to call the physician or the nurse (frequent episodes of hypoglycemia, symptoms of hyperglycemia).
- Verbalize the procedures for proper foot care.

- Have a satisfactory and complete postoperative recovery without complications
- Avoid injury
- Experience relief of pain
- Maintain optimal vision
- Maintain a urine output in the expected range

- Have an optimal level of mental status functioning
- Have decreased episodes of hypoglycemia
- Have decreased episodes of hyperglycemia

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use aseptic technique during any invasive procedure when caring for a patient with diabetes.
- Administer antidiabetic drugs and insulin in a safe manner.
- Use good handwashing techniques before providing any care to a patient who has diabetes.
- Wash your hands before and after testing the patient's blood glucose levels.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all patients to maintain weight within an appropriate range.
- Encourage all patients, including patients with diabetes, to participate regularly in exercise or physical activity appropriate to their health status.
- Teach the patient and family about the manifestations of infection and when to seek medical advice.
- Instruct patients with diabetes to wear a medical alert bracelet.
- Instruct patients to not share blood glucose monitoring equipment.
- Reinforce to all patients with diabetes that tight control over blood glucose levels reduces the risk for the vascular complications of diabetes.
- Remind patients with diabetes to have yearly eye examinations by an ophthalmologist.
- Teach patients with peripheral neuropathy to use a bath thermometer to test water for bathing, to avoid walking barefoot, and to inspect their feet daily.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explore with the patient what the diagnosis of diabetes means to him or her.
- Allow the patient the opportunity to express concerns about the diagnosis of diabetes or the treatment regimen.
- Explain all procedures, restrictions, drugs, and follow-up care to the patient and family.
- Pace your education sessions to match the learning needs and style of the patient.
- Use return demonstration strategies when teaching the patient about drug regimen, insulin injection, blood glucose monitoring, and foot assessment.

- Refer patients newly diagnosed with diabetes to local resources and support groups.
- Assess patients' visual acuity and peripheral tactile sensation to determine needed adjustments in teaching self-medication and self-monitoring of blood glucose levels.

Physiological Integrity

- Teach the patient about any drugs to be continued after discharge from the hospital.
- Instruct the patient and family on the manifestations of complications and when to seek assistance.
- Instruct all patients with diabetes to avoid becoming dehydrated and to drink at least 3 L of water each day unless another medical condition requires fluid restriction.
- Instruct patients who are taking sulfonylurea drugs about an increased risk for hypoglycemic reactions.
- Teach patients who are taking metformin the clinical manifestations of lactic acidosis (fatigue, dizziness, difficulty breathing, stomach discomfort, irregular heartbeat).
- Warn patients to not take over-the-counter drugs with their oral antidiabetic drugs without consulting their primary care provider.
- When mixing different kinds of insulin together, draw the shorter-acting insulin into the syringe before drawing up the longer-acting insulin.
- Never dilute or mix insulin glargine with any other insulin or solution.
- Teach patients to rotate insulin injection sites within one area rather than to another area to prevent changes in absorption.
- Avoid injecting insulin within a 2-inch radius of the umbilicus.
- Avoid IM insulin injection.
- Teach patients to administer an accurate dose of insulin using a prefilled or disposable insulin pen.
- Teach patients who experience Somogyi phenomenon (early morning hyperglycemia) to ensure an adequate dietary intake at bedtime.
- Instruct patients to always carry a glucose source.
- Teach patients who exercise to test urine for ketone bodies if blood glucose levels are greater than 250 mg/dL before engaging in strenuous exercise.
- Instruct patients in foot care as outlined in [Chart 67-9](#).

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

Urinary Elimination

The need for urinary elimination is really the need for homeostasis—the ability of the body to maintain its internal environment at a “steady state” and within very narrow ranges of normal, regardless of external changes. The body works best when blood and other extracellular fluids have a serum sodium concentration of 135 to 145 mEq/L (mmol/L) and a serum potassium level of 3.5 to 5.0 mEq/L (mmol/L). Serious health problems and death occur when these electrolytes are much higher or lower than these normal ranges. Keeping the amount of total body water, especially blood volume, within the normal range is also important to proper function and health. When blood volume is too high, hypertension develops and damages vital organs. When blood volume is too low, hypotension can be so severe that vital organs are not perfused with oxygen and become hypoxic. In addition, protein waste products containing nitrogen, such as urea, act as a poison and must be prevented from getting too high. Humans ingest many foods and liquids that contain water, electrolytes, and substances that will be converted to waste products. Without control mechanisms to balance the intake of these substances with their elimination, we would rapidly accumulate too much of everything and die.

As part of the renal/urinary system, the kidneys are responsible for maintaining this balance of what is taken into the



body, what is allowed to remain in the body, and what is eliminated from the body. Although some products are eliminated in the stool, there is no discrimination or adjustment in bowel elimination. Urinary elimination, however, allows a person to eat and drink almost anything (except poisons and infectious organisms) in almost any amount without upsetting the homeostatic balance for body water, electrolytes, waste products, and blood pressure. For example, on one day a person may drink 2 L of fluids and eat food that contains 2 g of sodium and 5 g of potassium. The next day this same person may drink 3 L of fluids and eat food that contains 12 g of sodium and 10 g of potassium. Yet because the kidneys selectively adjust to change the amount of each substance that gets eliminated, the blood pressure, serum sodium, and serum potassium levels remain the same and within the normal ranges on both days. A “steady-state” or homeostatic balance of these substances is maintained because the kidneys adjust the output to match the intake (Fig. 1).

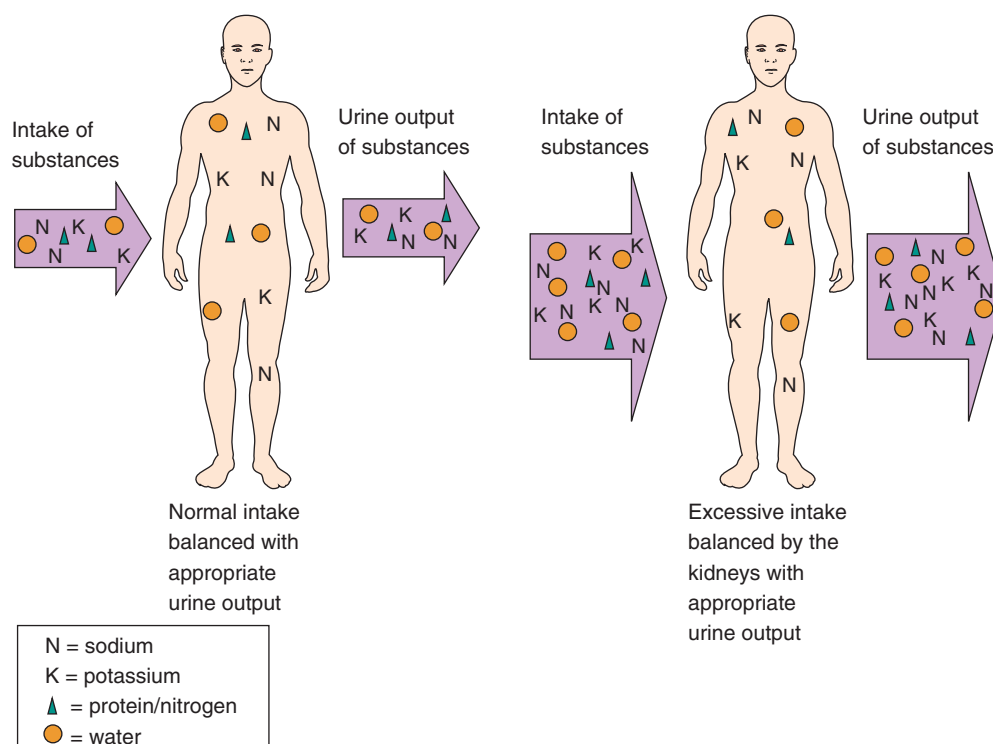


FIG. 1

When kidney function is impaired to any degree as a result of renal/urinary problems, the human need for urinary elimination is not met and the steady-state homeostasis of water, electrolyte, and waste products is disrupted (Fig. 2).

Without intervention, this lack of steady state leads to excesses of body water, electrolytes, and nitrogenous waste products that interfere with normal organ function and can cause death.

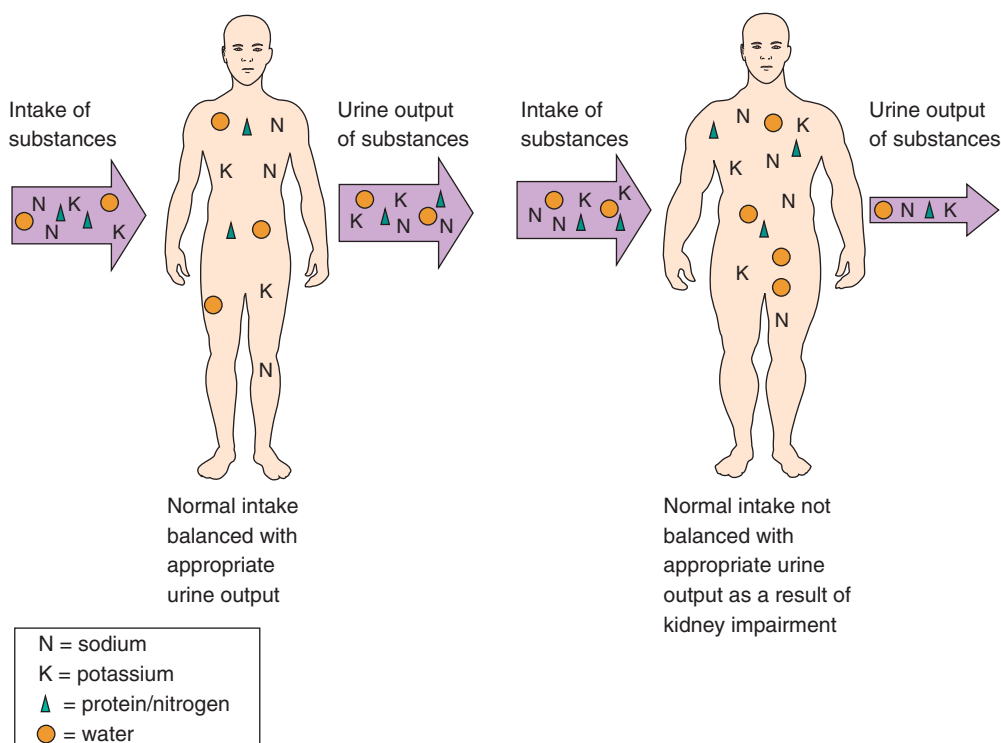


FIG. 2

CHAPTER
68

Assessment of the Renal/Urinary System

Chris Winkelman<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Filtration

Animation: Nephrons

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Use Standard Precautions when handling urine specimens or examining the patient's genitalia.
2. Determine whether the patient has risks for an allergic reaction to contrast dyes or a drug–contrast dye adverse interaction before testing procedures.
3. Verify that informed consent has been obtained and that the patient has a clear understanding of the potential risks before he or she undergoes invasive procedures to assess the kidneys and urinary function.
4. Examine individual patient factors contributing to safety risks.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach all people about the importance of maintaining an adequate oral fluid intake.

6. Teach about or assist with cleansing of the perineum or urinary meatus after using the toilet and during daily bathing or showering.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Use language comfortable for the patient during assessment of the kidneys and urinary system.
8. Encourage the patient to express feelings or concerns about a change in kidney or bladder function.
9. Respect the patient's dignity when performing kidney and urinary assessment.
10. Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.

Physiological Integrity

11. Briefly review the relevant anatomy and physiology of the kidney and urinary system.

LEARNING OUTCOMES—cont'd

12. Describe age-related changes in the kidney and urinary system.
13. Describe the correct techniques to use in physically assessing the kidney and urinary system.
14. Use laboratory data to distinguish between dehydration and kidney impairment.
15. Describe how to obtain a sterile urine specimen from a urinary catheter.
16. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the first 24 hours after IV urography.
17. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the first 24 hours after a kidney biopsy.

The kidneys help maintain health in many ways. Most important for urinary elimination, they maintain body fluid volume and composition and filter waste products for elimination. The kidneys also help regulate blood pressure and acid-base balance, produce erythropoietin for red blood cell (RBC) synthesis, and convert vitamin D to an active form.

The renal system includes the kidneys and the entire urinary tract. The ureters, bladder, and urethra are the drainage route for the excretion of urine. Structural or functional problems in the kidney or urinary tract may alter fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance.

Assessment of the patient at risk for or with actual problems of the kidney or urinary system begins with a history and physical assessment. Understanding the anatomy, physiology, and diagnostic tests of the renal system helps you in problem-solving about kidney function in the clinical setting. It also assists you in teaching the patient about the purpose of procedures and in physically and emotionally preparing the patient for assessment.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Kidneys

Structure

Gross Anatomy. Normally, two kidneys are located behind the peritoneum, not really in the abdominal cavity, one on either side of the spine (Fig. 68-1). The adult kidney is 4 to 5

inches (10 to 13 cm) long, 2 to 3 inches (5 to 7 cm) wide, and about 1 inch (2.5 to 3 cm) thick. It weighs about 8 ounces (250 g). The left kidney is slightly longer and narrower than the right kidney. Larger-than-usual kidneys may indicate obstruction or polycystic disease. Smaller-than-usual kidneys may indicate chronic kidney disease (CKD).

Variation in kidney shape and number is not uncommon and does not necessarily mean there is also a problem in kidney function. Some people have more than two kidneys or may have only one, large, horseshoe-shaped kidney. As long as tests of kidney function are normal, these variations are of no significance.

Several layers of tissue surround the kidney, providing protection and support. On the outer surface of the kidney is a layer of fibrous tissue called the **capsule** (Fig. 68-2). This capsule covers most of the kidney except the **hilum**, which is the area where the renal artery and nerve plexus enter and the renal vein and ureter exit. The renal capsule is surrounded by layers of fat and connective tissue.

Lying beneath the renal capsule are the two layers of functional kidney tissue—the cortex and the medulla. The **renal cortex** is the outer tissue layer and is covered by the renal capsule. The **medulla** is the medullary tissue lying below the cortex in the shape of many fans. Each “fan” is called a **pyramid**, and there are 12 to 18 pyramids per kidney. The **renal columns** are cortical tissue that dips down into the interior of the kidney and separates the pyramids.

The tip, or end, of each pyramid is called a **papilla**. The papillae drain urine into the collecting system. A cuplike structure called a **calyx** collects the urine at the end of each papilla. The calices join together to form the **renal pelvis**, which narrows to become the ureter.

The kidneys have a rich blood supply and receive 20% to 25% of the total cardiac output. Blood flow to the kidneys varies from about 600 to 1300 mL/min. The blood supply to each kidney comes from the renal artery, which branches from the abdominal aorta. The renal artery divides into progressively smaller arteries, supplying all blood to areas of the kidney tissue (**parenchyma**) and the nephrons. The smallest arteries (afferent arterioles) feed the nephrons directly to form urine.

Venous blood from the kidneys starts with the capillaries surrounding each nephron. These capillaries drain into progressively larger veins, with blood eventually returned to the inferior vena cava through the renal vein.

Microscopic Anatomy. The **nephron** is the “working” or functional unit of the kidney, and it is here that urine is actually formed from blood. There are about 1 million nephrons per kidney, and each nephron separately makes urine from blood.

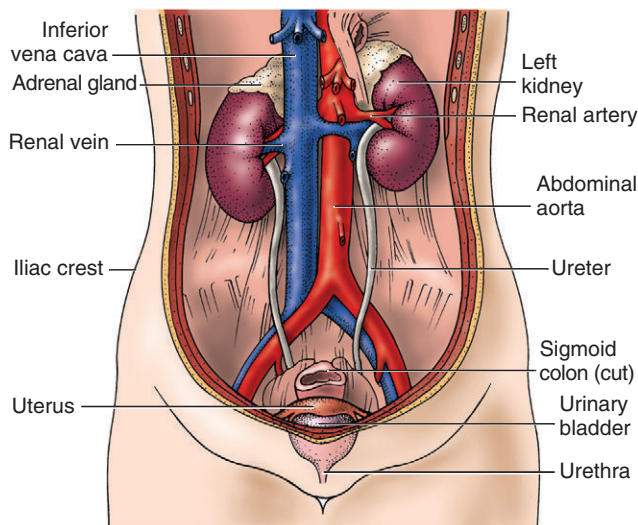


FIG. 68-1 Anatomic location of the kidneys and structures of the urinary system.

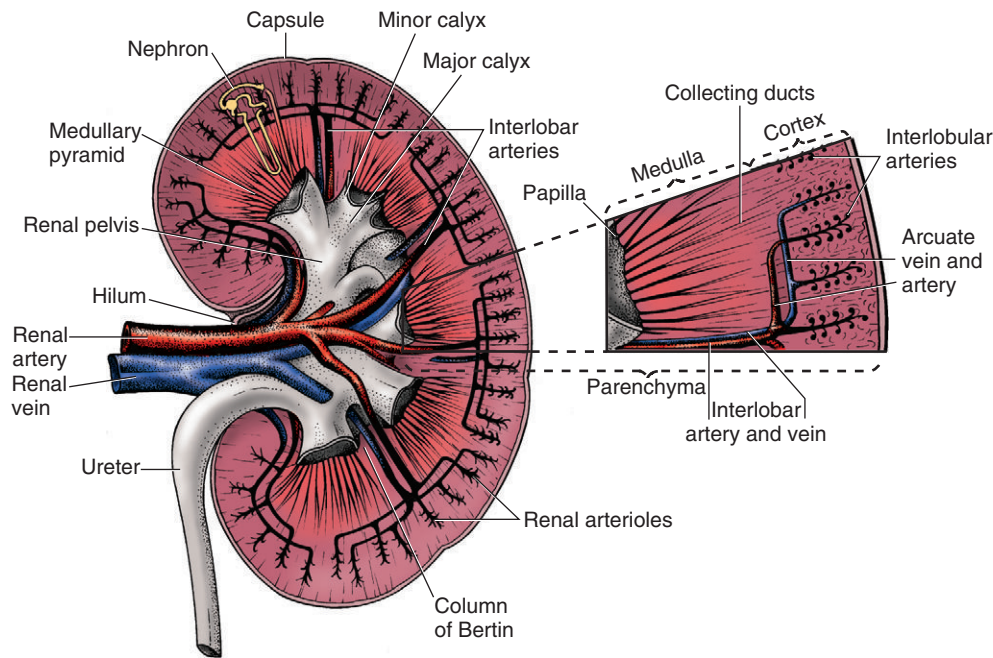


FIG. 68-2 Bisection of the kidney showing the major structures of the kidney.

There are two types of nephrons: cortical nephrons and juxtamedullary nephrons. The cortical nephrons are short, with all parts located in the renal cortex. The juxtamedullary nephrons (about 20% of all nephrons) are longer, and their tubes and blood vessels dip deeply into the medulla. The purpose of the juxtamedullary nephrons is to concentrate urine during times of low fluid intake. The ability to concentrate urine allows for continued excretion of body wastes with less fluid loss.

Blood supply to the nephron is delivered through the **afferent arteriole**—the smallest, most distal portion of the renal arterial system. From the afferent arteriole, blood flows into the **glomerulus**, which is a series of specialized capillary loops. It is through these capillaries that water and small particles are filtered from the blood to make urine. The remaining blood leaves the glomerulus through the **efferent arteriole**, which is the first vessel in the venous system of the kidney. From the efferent arteriole, blood exits into one of two additional capillary systems:

- The *peritubular capillaries* around the tubular part of the cortical nephrons
- The *vasa recta* around the tubular part of juxtamedullary nephrons

Each nephron is a tubelike structure with distinct parts (Fig. 68-3). The tube begins with Bowman's capsule, a saclike structure that surrounds the glomerulus. The tubular tissue of Bowman's capsule narrows into the *proximal convoluted tubule (PCT)*. The PCT twists and turns, finally straightening into the descending limb of the *loop of Henle*. The descending loop of Henle dips in the direction of the medulla but forms a hairpin loop and comes back up into the cortex as the ascending loop of Henle.

There are two segments of the ascending limb of the loop of Henle: the thin segment and the thick segment. The *distal convoluted tubule (DCT)* forms from the thick segment of the ascending limb of the loop of Henle. The DCT ends in one

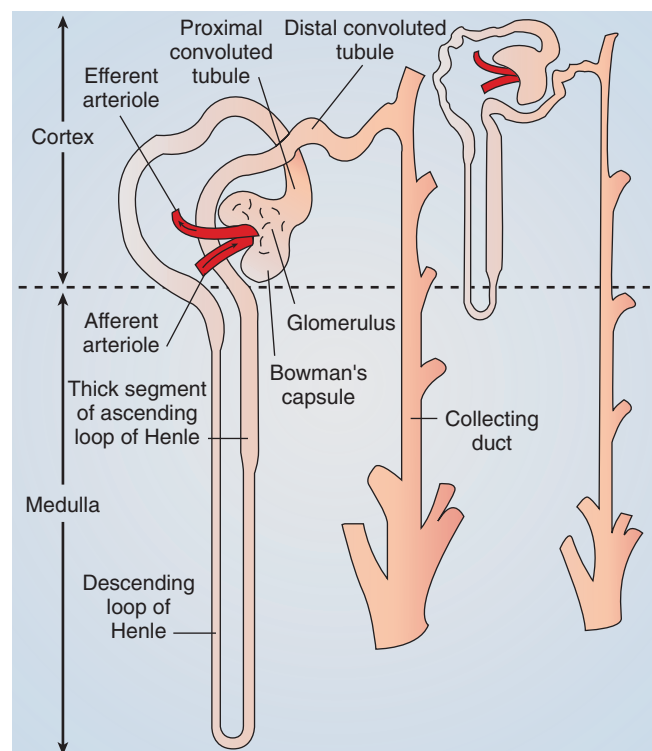


FIG. 68-3 Anatomy of the nephron, the functional unit of the kidney. Note that the particular nephron labeled here is a juxtamedullary nephron.

of many collecting ducts located in the kidney tissue. The urine in the collecting ducts passes through the papillae and empties into the renal pelvis.

Special cells in the afferent arteriole, efferent arteriole, and DCT are known as the **juxtaglomerular complex** (Fig. 68-4).

These specialized cells produce and store renin. **Renin** is a hormone that helps regulate blood flow, glomerular filtration rate (GFR), and blood pressure. Renin is secreted when sensing cells in the DCT (called the *macula densa*) sense changes in blood volume and pressure. The macula densa lies next to the renin-producing cells. Renin is produced when the macula densa cells sense that blood volume, blood

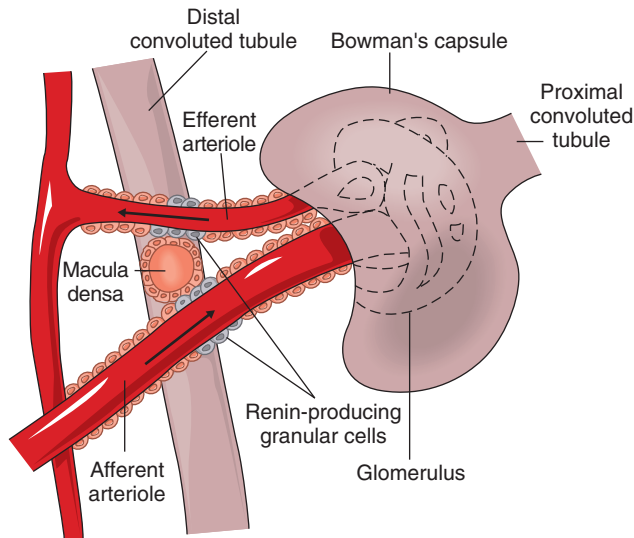


FIG. 68-4 The juxtaglomerular complex showing juxtaglomerular cells and the macula densa.

pressure, or blood sodium level is low. Renin then converts renin substrate (angiotensinogen) into angiotensin I. This leads to a series of reactions that cause secretion of the hormone *aldosterone* (Fig. 68-5). Aldosterone increases kidney reabsorption of sodium and water, restoring blood pressure, blood volume, and blood sodium levels. It also promotes excretion of potassium. (See Chapter 13 for more discussion of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone pathway.)

The glomerular capillary wall has three layers (Fig. 68-6): the endothelium, the basement membrane, and the epithelium. The endothelial and epithelial cells lining these capillaries are separated by pores that filter water and small particles from the blood into Bowman's capsule. This fluid is called the "filtrate" or "early urine."

Function

The kidneys have both regulatory and hormonal functions. The regulatory functions control fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance. The hormonal functions control red blood cell (RBC) formation, blood pressure, and vitamin D activation.

Regulatory Functions. The kidney processes that maintain fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance are glomerular filtration, tubular reabsorption, and tubular secretion. These processes use filtration, diffusion, active transport, and osmosis. (See Chapter 13 for a review of these actions.) Table 68-1 lists the functions of nephron tubules and blood vessels.

Glomerular filtration is the first process in urine formation. As blood passes from the afferent arteriole into the glomerulus, water, electrolytes, and other small particles (e.g., creatinine, urea nitrogen, glucose) are filtered across the glomerular

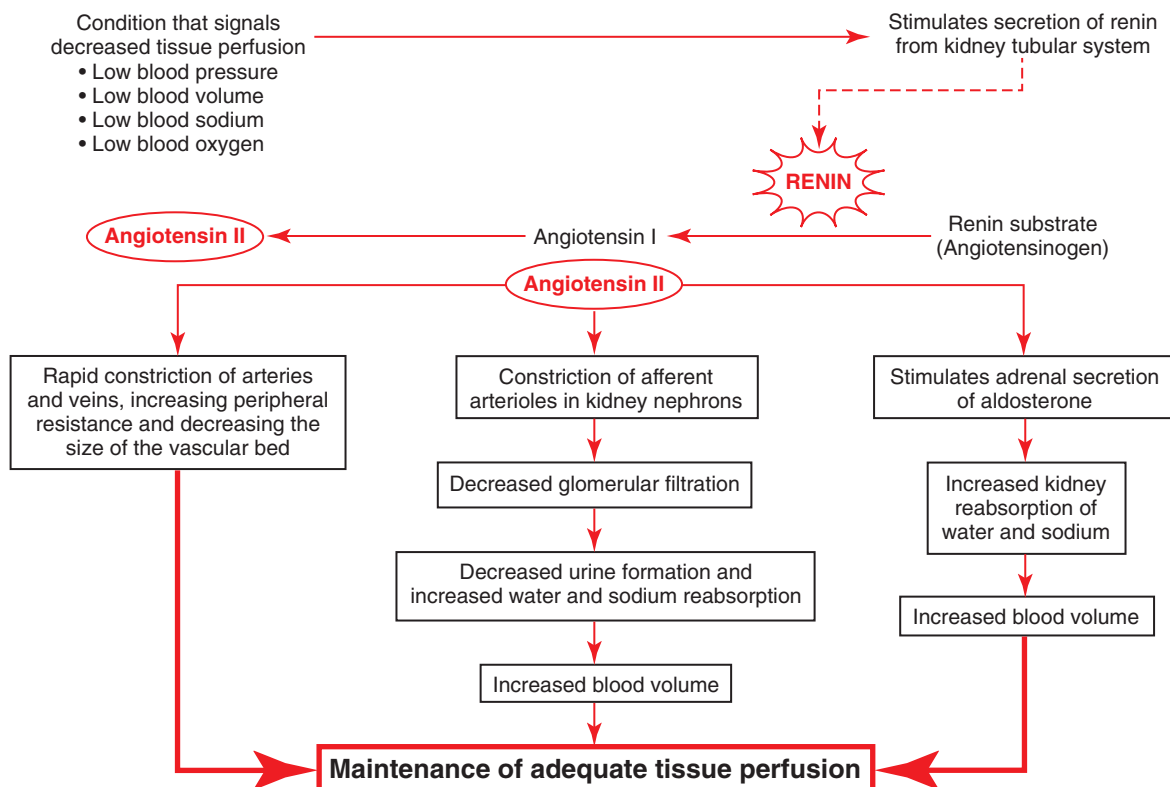


FIG. 68-5 The role of aldosterone, renin substrate (angiotensinogen), angiotensin I, and angiotensin II in the renal regulation of water and sodium.

membrane into the Bowman's capsule to form *glomerular filtrate*. As the filtrate enters the proximal convoluted tubule (PCT), it is called *tubular filtrate*.

Large particles, such as blood cells, albumin, and other proteins, are too large to filter through the glomerular

capillary walls. *Therefore these substances are not normally present in the filtrate or in the final urine.*

About 180 L of glomerular filtrate is formed from the blood each day. The rate of filtration is expressed in milliliters per minute. Normal glomerular filtration rate (GFR) averages 125 mL/min. If the entire amount of filtrate were excreted as urine, death would occur quickly from dehydration. Actually, only about 1 to 3 L is excreted each day as urine. The rest is reabsorbed back into the circulatory system.

The GFR is controlled by blood pressure and blood flow. The ability of the kidneys to self-regulate renal blood pressure and renal blood flow keeps GFR constant. GFR is controlled by selectively constricting and dilating the afferent and efferent arterioles. When the afferent arteriole is constricted or the efferent arteriole is dilated, pressure in the glomerular capillaries falls and filtration decreases. When the afferent arteriole is dilated or the efferent arteriole is constricted, pressure in the glomerular capillaries rises and filtration increases. Through this process, the kidney can maintain a constant GFR, even when systemic blood pressure changes. When systolic pressure drops below about 70 mm Hg, these processes cannot compensate and GFR stops.

Tubular reabsorption is the second process involved in urine formation. This reabsorption of most of the filtrate keeps normal urine output at 1 to 3 L/day and prevents

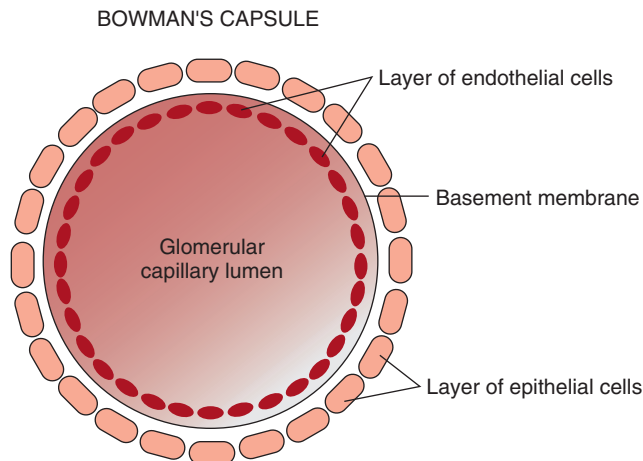


FIG. 68-6 Glomerular capillary wall.

TABLE 68-1 VASCULAR AND TUBULAR COMPONENTS OF THE NEPHRON

STRUCTURE	ANATOMIC FEATURES	PHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS	STRUCTURE	ANATOMIC FEATURES	PHYSIOLOGIC ASPECTS
Vascular Components					
Afferent arteriole	Delivers arterial blood from the branches of the renal artery into the glomerulus	Autoregulation of renal blood flow via vasoconstriction or vasodilation Renin-producing granular cells	Proximal convoluted tubule (PCT)	Evolves from and is continuous with Bowman's capsule Specialized cellular lining facilitates tubular reabsorption	Site for reabsorption of sodium, chloride, water, glucose, amino acids, potassium, calcium, bicarbonate, phosphate, and urea
Glomerulus	Capillary loops with thin, semipermeable membrane	Site of glomerular filtration Glomerular filtration occurs when hydrostatic pressure (blood pressure) is greater than opposing forces (tubular filtrate and oncotic pressure)	Loop of Henle	Continues from PCT Juxtamedullary nephrons dip deep into the medulla Permeable to water, urea, and sodium chloride	Regulation of water balance
Efferent arteriole	Delivers arterial blood from the glomerulus into the peritubular capillaries or the vasa recta	Autoregulation of renal blood flow via vasoconstriction or vasodilation Renin-producing granular cells	Descending limb (DL)	Continues from the loop of Henle Permeable to water, urea, and sodium chloride	Regulation of water balance
Peritubular capillaries (PTCs) and vasa recta (VR)	PTCs: surround tubular components of cortical nephrons VR: surround tubular components of juxtamedullary nephrons	Tubular reabsorption and tubular secretion allow movement of water and solutes to or from the tubules, interstitium, and blood	Ascending limb (AL)	Emerges from DL as it turns and is redirected up toward the renal cortex	Potassium and magnesium reabsorption in the thick segment Thin segment is impermeable to water
Tubular Components			Distal convoluted tubule (DCT)	Evolves from AL and twists so the macula densa cells lie adjacent to the juxtaglomerular cells of afferent arteriole	Site of additional water and electrolyte reabsorption, including bicarbonate Potassium and hydrogen secretion
Bowman's capsule (BC)	Thin membranous sac surrounding $\frac{2}{3}$ of the glomerulus	Collects glomerular filtrate (GF) and funnels it into the tubule	Collecting ducts	Collect formed urine from several tubules and deliver it into the renal pelvis	Receptor sites for antidiuretic hormone regulation of water balance

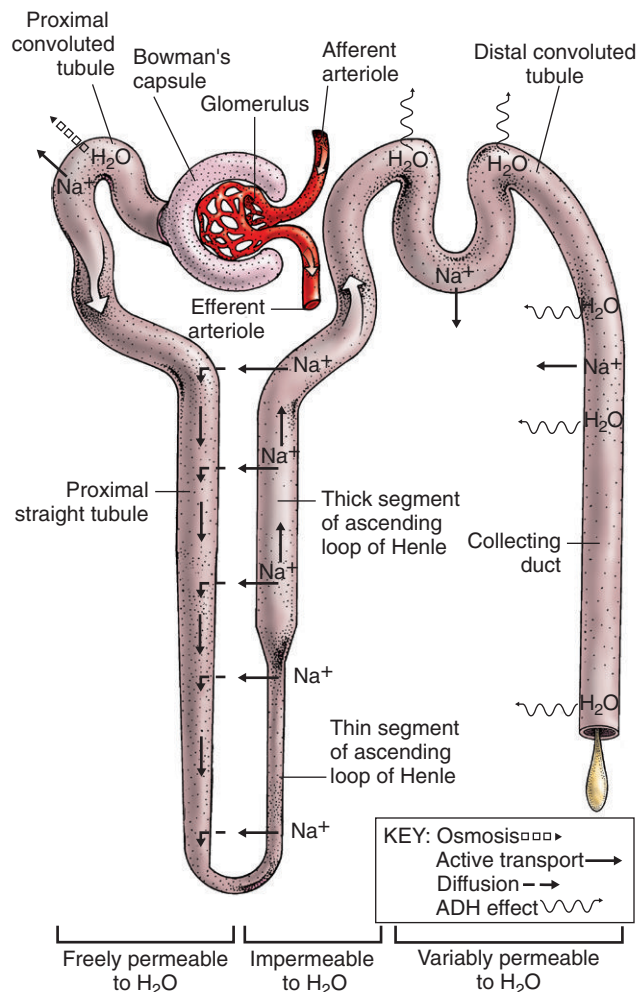


FIG. 68-7 Sodium and water reabsorption by the tubules of a cortical nephron. ADH, Antidiuretic hormone; Na^+ , sodium.

dehydration. As the filtrate passes through the tubular parts of the nephron, most of the water and electrolytes is reabsorbed. Reabsorption returns particles (**solute**s) and water to the blood. Reabsorption occurs *from the filtrate* across the tubular lumen of the nephron and into the blood of the peritubular capillaries. The PCT reabsorbs about 65% of the total glomerular filtrate.

The tubules return about 99% of all filtered water back into the body (Fig. 68-7). Most water reabsorption occurs as the filtrate passes through the PCT. Water reabsorption continues as the filtrate flows down the descending loop of Henle. The thin and thick segments of the ascending loop of Henle are *not* permeable to water, and water reabsorption does not occur here.

The distal convoluted tubule (DCT) can be permeable to water, and some water reabsorption can occur as the filtrate continues to flow through the tubule. The membrane of the DCT may be made more permeable to water through the action of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and aldosterone. ADH increases tubular permeability to water, allowing water to leave the tube and be reabsorbed into the capillaries. ADH is also known as *vasopressin* and affects arteriole constriction. Arteriole constriction alters blood pressure, which, in turn,

affects the amount of fluid and solutes that exit glomeruli capillaries. Aldosterone promotes the reabsorption of sodium in the DCT. Water reabsorption occurs as a result of the movement of sodium (where sodium goes, water follows).

The ability of the kidneys to vary the volume or concentration of urine helps regulate water balance regardless of fluid intake. In this way, the healthy kidney can prevent dehydration when fluid intake is low and can prevent circulatory overload when fluid intake is excessive.

In addition to water, some particles in the tubular filtrate also are *returned to the blood*. This process is called *tubular reabsorption* and is selective. About 50% of all urea in the early urine is reabsorbed. On the other hand, no creatinine is reabsorbed.

Most sodium, chloride, and water reabsorption occurs in the PCT. The collecting ducts are the other site of sodium, chloride, and water reabsorption. Here reabsorption is caused by aldosterone. Potassium is also mostly reabsorbed in the PCT, with an additional 20% to 40% reabsorbed in the thick segment of the loop of Henle.

Bicarbonate, calcium, and phosphate are mostly reabsorbed in the PCT. Bicarbonate reabsorption helps balance acids and maintain a normal blood pH. Blood levels of calcitonin and parathyroid hormone (PTH) (see [Chapters 13 and 66](#)) control calcium balance.

The kidney reabsorbs some of the glucose filtered from the blood. However, there is a limit to how much glucose the kidney can reabsorb. This limit is called the **renal threshold** for glucose reabsorption or the **transport maximum** for glucose reabsorption. The usual renal threshold for glucose is about 220 mg/dL. This means that at a blood glucose level of 220 mg/dL or less, all glucose is reabsorbed and returned to the blood, with no glucose present in final urine. When blood glucose levels are greater than 220 mg/dL, some glucose stays in the filtrate and is present in the urine. Normally, almost all glucose and any amino acids or proteins are reabsorbed and are not present in the urine.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Report the presence of glucose or proteins in the urine of a patient undergoing a screening examination to the health care provider because this is an abnormal finding and requires further assessment.

Tubular secretion is the third process involved in urine formation. Like glomerular filtration, it allows substances to move from the blood into the early urine. During tubular secretion, substances move from the peritubular capillaries in reverse, across capillary membranes, and into the cells that line the tubules. From the cells, these substances are moved into the urine and are excreted from the body. Potassium (K^+) and hydrogen (H^+) ions are some of the substances moved in this way to maintain homeostasis of electrolytes and pH.

Hormonal Functions. The kidneys produce renin, prostaglandins, bradykinin, erythropoietin, and activated vitamin D (Table 68-2). Other kidney products, such as the kinins, change kidney blood flow and capillary permeability. The kidneys also help break down and excrete insulin.

Renin, as discussed on p. 1468 in the Microscopic Anatomy section, assists in blood pressure control. It is formed and

TABLE 68-2 RENAL HORMONE PRODUCTION AND HORMONES INFLUENCING RENAL FUNCTION

	SITE	ACTION
Renal Hormone Production		
Renin	Renin-producing granular cells	Raises blood pressure as result of angiotensin (local vasoconstriction) and aldosterone (volume expansion) secretion
Prostaglandins	Kidney tissues	Regulate intrarenal blood flow by vasodilation or vasoconstriction
Bradykinins	Juxtaglomerular cells of the arterioles	Increase blood flow (vasodilation) and vascular permeability
Erythropoietin	Kidney parenchyma	Stimulates bone marrow to make red blood cells
Activated vitamin D	Kidney parenchyma	Promotes absorption of calcium in the GI tract
Hormones Influencing Kidney Function		
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin)	Released from posterior pituitary	Makes DCT and CD permeable to water to maximize reabsorption and produce a concentrated urine
Aldosterone	Released from adrenal cortex	Promotes sodium reabsorption and potassium secretion in DCT and CD; water and chloride follow sodium movement
Natriuretic hormones	Cardiac atria, cardiac ventricle, brain	Cause tubular secretion of sodium

CD, Collecting duct; DCT, distal convoluted tubule.

released when there is a decrease in blood flow, blood volume, or blood pressure through the renal arterioles or when too little sodium is present in kidney blood. These conditions are detected through the receptors of the juxtaglomerular complex.

Renin release causes the production of *angiotensin II* through a series of steps (see Fig. 68-5). Angiotensin II increases systemic blood pressure through powerful blood vessel constricting effects and triggers the release of aldosterone from the adrenal glands. Aldosterone increases the reabsorption of sodium in the distal tubule of the nephron. Therefore more water is reabsorbed and blood pressure is increased because of increases in blood volume. When blood flow to the kidney is reduced, this system also regulates pressures in the nephron to prevent fluid loss and maintain circulating blood volume (see also Chapter 13).

Prostaglandins are produced in the kidney and many other tissues. Those produced specifically in the kidney are prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2) and prostacyclin (PGI_2). These substances help regulate glomerular filtration, kidney vascular resistance, and renin production. PGE_2 acts on the distal tubule and collecting duct to increase sodium and water excretion.

Bradykinin is released by the kidney in response to the presence of angiotensin II, prostaglandins, and ADH. It is a small hormone that dilates the afferent arteriole and increases capillary membrane permeability to some solutes. These actions maintain kidney blood flow and reabsorption even when other conditions cause systemic blood vessel constriction.

Erythropoietin is produced and released in response to decreased oxygen tension in the kidney's blood supply. It triggers red blood cell (RBC) production in the bone marrow. When kidney function is poor, erythropoietin production decreases and the person becomes anemic.

Vitamin D activation occurs through a series of steps. Some of these steps take place in the skin when it is exposed to sunlight, and then more processing occurs in the liver. From there, vitamin D is converted to its active form (1,25-dihydroxy-cholecalciferol) in the kidney. It is needed to absorb calcium in the intestinal tract and to regulate calcium balance.

Ureters

Each kidney has a single ureter—a hollow tube that connects the renal pelvis with the urinary bladder. The ureter is about $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (1.25 cm) in diameter and about 12 to 18 inches (30 to 45 cm) in length. The diameter of the ureter narrows in three areas:

- In the upper third of the ureter, at the point at which the renal pelvis becomes the ureter, is a narrowing known as the **ureteropelvic junction (UPJ)**.
- The ureter also narrows as it bends toward the abdominal wall (aortiliac bend).
- Each ureter narrows at the point it enters the bladder; this point is called the **ureterovesical junction (UVJ)**.

The ureter tunnels through bladder tissue for a short distance and then opens into the bladder at the trigone (Fig. 68-8).

The ureter has three layers: an inner lining of mucous membrane (*urothelium*), a middle layer of smooth muscle fibers, and an outer layer of fibrous tissue. The outer layer contains the blood supply. The middle layer of muscle fibers is controlled by several nerve pathways from the lower spinal cord.

Contractions of the smooth muscle in the ureter move urine from the renal pelvis of the kidney to the bladder. Stretch receptors in the renal pelvis regulate this movement. For example, a large volume of urine in the renal pelvis triggers the stretch receptors, which respond by increasing ureteral contractions and ureter peristalsis.

Urinary Bladder

Structure

The urinary bladder is a muscular sac (see Fig. 68-8). The upper surface lies next to the peritoneal cavity. In men, the bladder is in front of the rectum. In women, it is in front of the vagina. The bladder lies directly behind the pubic bone.

The bladder is composed of the *body* (the rounded sac portion) and the *bladder neck* (posterior urethra), which connects to the bladder body. The bladder has three linings—an inner lining of epithelial cells (*urothelium*), middle layers of smooth muscle (*detrusor muscle*), and an outer lining. The *trigone* is an area on the posterior wall between the points of ureteral entry (ureterovesical junctions [UVJs]) and the urethra.

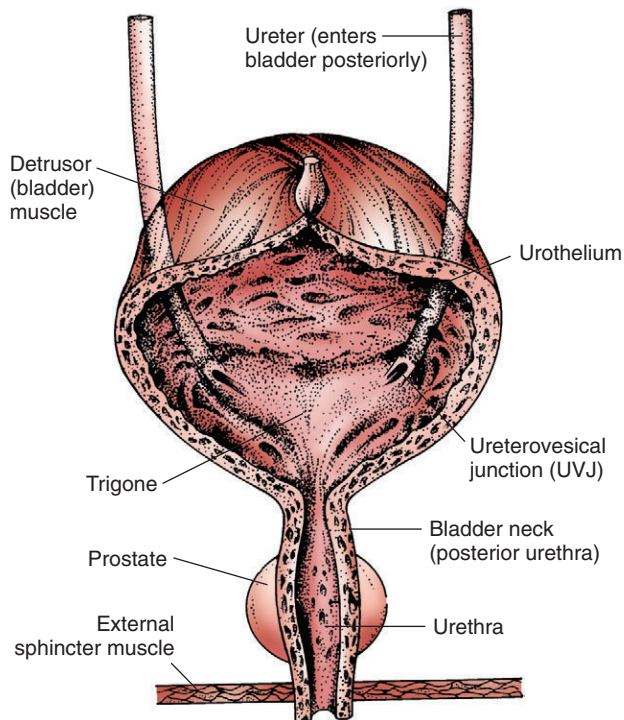


FIG. 68-8 Gross anatomy of the urinary bladder.

The **internal urethral sphincter** is the smooth detrusor muscle of the bladder neck and elastic tissue. The **external urethral sphincter** is skeletal muscle that surrounds the urethra. In men, the external sphincter surrounds the urethra at the base of the prostate gland. In women, the external sphincter is at the base of the bladder. The pudendal nerve from the spinal cord controls the external sphincter.

Function

The bladder is a temporary urine storage site. The bladder also provides continence and enables voiding. The secretions of the bladder lining resist bacteria.

Continence is the ability to voluntarily control bladder emptying. Bladder continence occurs during bladder filling through the combination of detrusor muscle relaxation, internal sphincter muscle tone, and external sphincter contraction. As the bladder fills with urine, stretch sensations are transmitted to spinal sacral nerves S2 and S3.

Maintaining continence occurs by the interaction of the nerves that control the muscles of the bladder, bladder neck, urethra, and pelvic floor, as well as by factors that close the urethra. During bladder filling, the sympathetic nervous system fibers prevent detrusor muscle contraction. These control centers are located in the cerebral cortex, the brainstem, and the sacral part of the spinal cord. For urethral closure to be adequate for continence, the mucosal surfaces must be in contact and must be adhesive. Contact depends on the presence and proper function of the involved nerves and muscles. Adhesion depends on the adequate secretion of mucus-like substances.

Micturition (voiding) is a reflex of autonomic control that triggers contraction of the detrusor muscle at the same time as relaxation of the external sphincter and the muscles of the pelvic floor. With detrusor muscle contraction, the UVJ of

the ureter closes and the normally round bladder assumes the shape of a funnel. Voiding is a voluntary act as the result of a learned response and is controlled by the cerebral cortex and the brainstem. Contraction of the external sphincter inhibits the micturition reflex and prevents voiding.

Urethra

The urethra is a narrow tube lined with mucous membranes and epithelial cells. Its purpose is to eliminate urine from the bladder. The **urethral meatus**, or opening, is the endpoint of the urethra. In men, the urethra is about 6 to 8 inches (15 to 20 cm) long, with the meatus located at the tip of the penis. The male urethra has three sections:

- The prostatic urethra, which extends from the bladder to the prostate gland
- The membranous urethra, which extends to the wall of the pelvic floor
- The cavernous urethra, which is external and extends through the length of the penis

In women, the urethra is about 1 to 1.5 inches (2.5 to 3.75 cm) long and exits the bladder through the pelvic floor. The meatus lies slightly below the clitoris and directly in front of the vagina and rectum.

Kidney and Urinary System Changes Associated with Aging

Kidney Changes

Structural and functional changes occur in the kidney as a result of the aging process. These changes often affect health. The kidney loses cortical tissue and gets smaller by 80 years of age. This cortical loss is caused by reduced blood flow to the kidney. The medulla is not affected by aging, and the juxtamedullary nephron functions are preserved. However, the glomerular and tubular linings thicken. Both the number of glomeruli and their surface areas decrease with aging. Tubule length also decreases. These changes reduce the ability of the older adult to filter blood and excrete waste products.

Kidney size and function decrease with aging (Chart 68-1). Blood flow to the kidney declines by about 10% per decade as blood vessels thicken. This means that blood flow to the kidney is not as adaptive in older adults compared with younger adults, leaving nephrons more vulnerable to damage during episodes of either hypotension or hypertension.

Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) decreases with age, especially after 45 years of age. By age 65, the GFR is about 65 mL/min (half the rate of a young adult). This decline is more rapid in patients with diabetes, hypertension, or heart failure. As a result, the older patient is at greater risk for fluid overload. The combination of reduced kidney mass, reduced blood flow, and decreased GFR contributes to reduced drug clearance and a greater risk for drug reactions and kidney damage from drugs and contrast dyes in older adults.

Tubular changes with aging decrease the ability to concentrate urine, resulting in **urgency** (a sense of a nearly uncontrollable need to urinate) and **nocturnal polyuria** (increased urination at night). The regulation of sodium, acids, and bicarbonate remains effective but is less efficient. Along with an age-related impairment in the thirst mechanism, these changes increase the risk for dehydration and **hyponatremia** (increased blood sodium levels) in the older adult. Hormonal changes include a decrease in renin secretion, aldosterone levels, and activation of vitamin D.

CHART 68-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Renal/Urinary System Related to Aging

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Decreased glomerular filtration rate (GFR)	Monitor hydration status. Ensure adequate fluid intake. Administer potentially nephrotoxic agents or drugs carefully.	With aging, the ability of the kidneys to regulate water balance is decreased. The kidneys are less able to conserve water when necessary. Dehydration results in decreased renal blood flow and increases the nephrotoxic potential of many agents. Acute or chronic kidney failure may result.
Nocturia	Ensure adequate nighttime lighting and a hazard-free environment. Ensure the availability of a toilet, bedpan, or urinal. Discourage excessive fluid intake for 2-4 hr before the patient retires for the evening. Evaluate drugs and timing.	Nocturia may occur from decreased renal concentrating ability associated with aging. The desire to maintain continence prompts people to seek the bathroom. Falls and injuries are common among older patients seeking bathroom facilities. Excessive fluid intake at night may increase nocturia. Some drugs increase urine output.
Decreased bladder capacity	Encourage the patient to use the toilet, bedpan, or urinal at least every 2 hr. Respond as soon as possible to the patient's indication of the need to void.	By emptying the bladder on a regular basis, urinary incontinence from overflow may be avoided. A quick response may alleviate episodes of urinary stress incontinence.
Weakened urinary sphincter muscles and shortened urethra in women	Provide thorough perineal care after each voiding.	The shortened urethra increases the potential for bladder infections. Good perineal hygiene may prevent skin irritations and urinary tract infection (UTI).
Tendency to retain urine	Observe the patient for urinary retention (e.g., bladder distention) or urinary tract infection (e.g., dysuria, foul odor, confusion). Provide privacy, assistance, and voiding stimulants such as warm water over the perineum as needed. Evaluate drugs for possible contribution to retention.	Urinary stasis may result in a UTI. UTIs may become bloodstream infections, resulting in urosepsis or septic shock. Nursing interventions can help initiate voiding. Anticholinergic drugs promote urinary retention.

Urinary Changes

Changes in the detrusor muscle elasticity lead to decreased bladder capacity and reduced ability to retain urine. The urge to void may cause immediate bladder emptying because the urinary sphincters lose tone and often become weaker with age. In women, weakened muscles shorten the urethra and promote incontinence. In men, an enlarged prostate gland makes starting the urine stream difficult and may cause urinary retention.

**CULTURAL AWARENESS**

African Americans have more rapid age-related decreases in GFR than do white people (Brenner, 2008). Kidney excretion of sodium is less effective in hypertensive African Americans who have high sodium intake, and the kidneys have about 20% less blood flow as a result of anatomic changes in small renal vessels and intrarenal responses to renin. Thus African-American patients are at greater risk for kidney failure than are white patients. Yearly health examinations should include urinalysis and checking for the presence of microalbuminuria.

ASSESSMENT METHODS**Patient History**

One way to assess kidney and urologic function is to use Gordon's Functional Health Patterns (Gordon, 2011). The patterns most related to the renal system are Nutritional/Metabolic and Elimination (Chart 68-2).

Demographic information, such as age, gender, race, and ethnicity, is important to consider as nonmodifiable risk factors in the patient with any kidney or urinary problem. A sudden onset of hypertension in patients older than 50 years suggests possible kidney disease. Clinical changes with adult polycystic kidney disease typically occur in patients in their 40s or 50s. In men older than 50 years, altered urinary patterns accompany prostate disease.

Anatomic gender differences make some disorders worse or more common. For example, men rarely have urinary tract infections unless there are abnormalities, such as ureteral reflux or prostatic enlargement. Women have a shorter urethra and more commonly develop **cystitis** (bladder infection) because bacteria pass more readily into the bladder.

Ask the patient about any previous kidney or urologic problems, including tumors, infections, stones, or urologic surgery. A history of any chronic health problems, especially diabetes mellitus or hypertension, increases the risk for development of kidney disease because these disorders damage kidney blood vessels.

Ask the patient about chemical exposures at the workplace or with hobbies. Exposure to hydrocarbons (e.g., gasoline, oil), heavy metals (especially mercury and lead), and some gases (e.g., chlorine, toluene) can impair kidney function. Use this opportunity to teach patients who come into contact with chemicals at work or during leisure time activities to avoid direct skin or mucous membrane contact with these chemicals. Use of heroin, cocaine, methamphetamine, ecstasy,

CHART 68-2 RENAL/URINARY ASSESSMENT

*Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns***Nutritional/Metabolic Pattern**

- What is your typical daily food intake? Describe a day's meals, snacks, and vitamins.
- How much salt do you typically add to your food? Do you use salt substitutes?
- How is your appetite?
- Have you experienced any nausea or vomiting?
- What is your typical daily fluid intake?
- What types of fluids do you drink (water, juices, soft drinks, coffee, tea)?
- How much fluid do you drink each day?
- Have you had any recent change in your weight? Weight gain? Weight loss? How much?
- Have you noticed a change in the tightness of your rings or shoes? Tighter? Looser?
- Have you noticed any skin changes lately? More dry? Less dry? Itchy?

Elimination Pattern

- What is your usual bowel elimination pattern? Frequency? Character? Discomfort? Laxatives?
- What is your usual urinary elimination pattern? Frequency? Amount? Color? Odor? Control?
- Have you noticed a change in the amount of urine?
- Do you have any problem with excessive perspiration?
- Do you have any other type of drainage?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

and volatile solvents (inhalants) has also been associated with kidney damage.

Specifically ask the patient whether he or she has ever been told about the presence of protein or albumin in the urine. The question "Have you ever been told that your blood pressure is high?" may prompt a response different from the one to the question "Do you have high blood pressure?" Ask women about health problems during pregnancy (e.g., proteinuria, high blood pressure, gestational diabetes, urinary tract infections). Obtain information about:

- Chemical or environmental toxin exposure in occupational or other settings
- Recent travel to geographic regions that pose infectious disease risks
- Recent physical injuries
- Trauma
- Sexual contacts
- A history of altered patterns of urinary elimination

Socioeconomic status may influence health care practices. Prevention, early detection, and treatment of kidney or urinary problems may be limited by lack of insurance or access to health care, lack of transportation, and reduced income. Low income may also result in difficulty following medical advice, having prescriptions filled, and keeping follow-up appointments.

Educational level may affect health-seeking practices and the patient's understanding of a disease or its symptoms. Recurring urinary tract infections often result from inadequate or incomplete treatment, including lack of follow-up to ensure the infection is cleared. The lack of money to pay

TABLE 68-3 COMMONLY USED RENAL AND URINARY TERMS

anuria	Total urine output of less than 100 mL in 24 hours
azotemia	Increased blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine levels suggestive of kidney impairment but without outward symptoms of kidney failure
dysuria	Discomfort or pain associated with micturition
frequency	Feeling the need to void often, usually voiding small amounts of urine each time; may void every hour or even more frequently
hesitancy	Difficulty in initiating the flow of urine, even when the bladder has sufficient urine to initiate a void and the sensation of the need to void is present
micturition	The act of voiding
nocturia	Awakening prematurely from sleep because of the need to empty the bladder
oliguria	Decreased urine output; total urine output between 100 and 400 mL in 24 hours
polyuria	Increased urine output; total urine output usually greater than 2000 mL in 24 hours
uremia	Full-blown manifestations of kidney failure; sometimes referred to as the <i>uremic syndrome</i> , especially if the cause of the renal failure is unknown
urgency	A sudden onset of the feeling of the need to void immediately; may result in incontinence if the patient is unable to get to toileting facilities quickly

for antibiotics or nutritious foods may inhibit or delay recovery.

The patient's health beliefs affect the approach to health and illness. Cultural background or religious affiliation may influence the belief system.

The language used by patients may be different from that used by the health care professional. Anatomic or medical terms may have no meaning for the patient (Table 68-3). When obtaining a history, listen to and explore the terms used by the patient. By using the patient's own terms, you may help him or her provide a more complete description of the problem. This technique may increase the amount of information obtained and decrease the patient's discomfort when discussing bodily functions.

Nutrition History

Ask the patient with known or suspected kidney or urologic disorders about his or her usual diet and any recent changes in the diet. Note any excessive intake or omission of certain food categories. Ask about food and fluid intake. Assess how much and what types of fluids the patient drinks daily, especially fluids with a high calorie or caffeine content. Use this opportunity to teach the patient the importance of drinking about 3 L of fluid daily (if another medical problem does not require fluid restriction) to prevent dehydration and cystitis. If the patient has followed a diet for weight reduction, the details of the diet plan are important and collaboration with a dietitian may be needed. A high-protein intake can result in temporary kidney problems. For example, a patient at risk for **calculi** (stone) formation who ingests large amounts of protein or has a poor fluid intake may form new stones.

Ask about any change in appetite or in the ability to discriminate tastes. These symptoms can occur with the buildup of nitrogenous waste products from kidney failure. Changes in thirst or fluid intake may also cause changes in urine

output. Endocrine disorders may also cause changes in thirst, fluid intake, and urine output (see [Chapter 64](#) for a discussion of endocrine influences on fluid balance).

Medication History

Identify all of the patient's prescription drugs because many can impair kidney function. Ask about the duration of drug use and whether there have been any recent changes in prescribed drugs. Drugs for diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cardiac disorders, hormonal disorders, cancer, arthritis, and psychiatric disorders are potential causes of kidney dysfunction. Antibiotics, such as gentamicin (Garamycin, Cidomycin ) , may also cause acute kidney injury. Drug-drug interactions and drug-contrast dye interactions also are potential causes of kidney dysfunction.

Explore the past and current use of over-the-counter (OTC) drugs or agents, including dietary supplements, vitamins and minerals, herbal agents, laxatives, analgesics, acetaminophen, and NSAIDs. Many of these agents affect kidney function. For example, dietary supplementation with synthetic creatine, used to increase muscle mass, has been associated with compromised kidney function. High-dose or long-term use of NSAIDs or acetaminophen can seriously reduce kidney function. Some agents are associated with hypertension, hematuria, or proteinuria, which may occur before kidney dysfunction.

Family History and Genetic Risk

The family history of the patient with a suspected kidney or urologic problem is important because some disorders have a familial inheritance pattern. Ask whether his or her siblings, parents, or grandparents have had kidney problems. Past terms used for kidney disease include *Bright's disease*, *nephritis*, and *nephrosis*. Patients may use these terms to describe kidney disease as it was known by their parents or grandparents years ago. Adult polycystic kidney disease can occur in either gender. Exposure to gadolinium-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can result in nephrogenic systemic fibrosis.

Current Health Problems

The effects of kidney failure result in changes in all body systems. Therefore document all of the patient's current health problems. Ask him or her to describe all health concerns, because some kidney disorders cause systemic problems or problems in other body systems. Recent upper respiratory problems, achy muscles or joints, chronic disease, or GI problems may be related to problems of kidney function.

Assess the kidney and urologic system specifically by asking about any changes in the appearance (color, odor, clarity) of the urine, pattern of urination, ability to initiate or control voiding, and other unusual symptoms. For example, urine that is reddish, dark brown or black, greenish, or different from the usual yellowish color usually prompts the patient to seek health care assistance. Urine typically has a mild but distinct odor of ammonia. An increase in the intensity of color, a change in odor quality, or a decrease in urine clarity may suggest infection.

Ask about changes in urination patterns, such as **incontinence** (involuntary bladder emptying), **nocturia** (urination at night), frequency, or an increase or decrease in the amount

of urine. The normal urine output for adults is about 1500 to 2000 mL/day, or within 500 mL of the volume of fluid ingested daily. Ask about how closely the urine output is to the volume of fluid ingested. The patient usually does not know the exact amount of urine produced. A bladder diary may provide useful data. Also ask whether:

- Initiating urine flow is difficult
- A burning sensation or other discomfort occurs with urination
- The force of the urine stream is decreased (in men)
- Persistent dribbling of urine is present

The onset of pain in the flank, in the lower abdomen or pelvic region, or in the perineal area triggers concern and usually prompts the patient to seek assistance. Ask about the onset, intensity, and duration of the pain, its location, and its association with any activity or event.

Pain associated with kidney or ureteral irritation is often severe and spasmodic. Pain that radiates into the perineal area, groin, scrotum, or labia is described as *renal colic*. This pain occurs with distention or spasm of the ureter, such as in an obstruction or the passing of a stone. Renal colic pain may be intermittent or continuous and may occur with pallor, diaphoresis, and hypotension. These general symptoms occur because of the location of the nerve tracts near or in the kidneys and ureters.

Because the kidneys are close to the GI organs and the nerve pathways are similar, GI manifestations may occur with kidney problems. These renointestinal reflexes often complicate the description of the kidney problem.

Uremia is the buildup of nitrogenous waste products in the blood as a result of kidney failure. Manifestations include anorexia, nausea and vomiting, muscle cramps, **pruritus** (itching), fatigue, and lethargy.

Physical Assessment

The physical assessment of the patient with a known or suspected kidney or urologic disorder includes general appearance, a review of body systems, and specific structure and functions of the kidney and urinary system.

Assess the patient's general appearance, and check the skin for the presence of any rashes, bruising, or yellowish discoloration. The skin and tissues may show edema, especially in the **pedal** (foot), **pretibial** (shin), and sacral tissues and around the eyes, which is associated with kidney disease. Use a stethoscope to listen to the lungs to determine whether fluid is present. Weigh the patient and measure blood pressure as a baseline for later comparisons.

Assess the level of consciousness and level of alertness. Record any deficits in memory, concentration, or thought processes. Family members may report subtle changes. Cognitive changes may be the result of the buildup of waste products when kidney disease is present.

Assessment of the Kidneys, Ureters, and Bladder

Assess the kidneys, ureters, and bladder during an abdominal assessment. Auscultate before percussion and palpation because these activities can enhance bowel sounds and obscure abdominal vascular sounds.

Inspect the abdomen and the flank regions with the patient in both the supine and the sitting positions. Observe the patient for asymmetry (e.g., swelling) or discoloration (e.g., bruising or redness) in the flank region, especially in the area

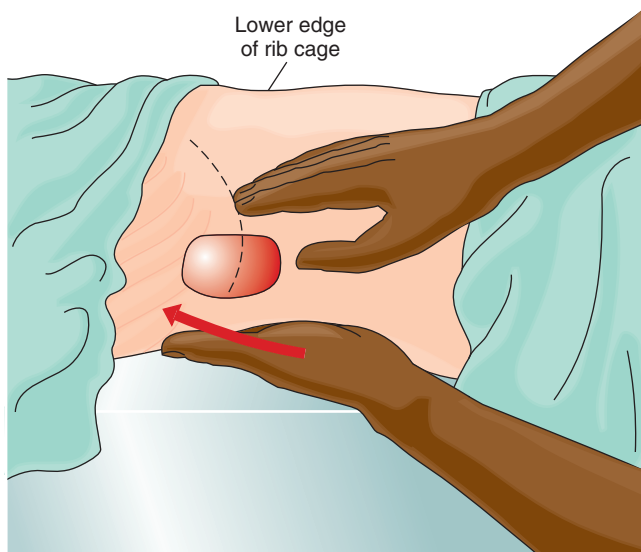


FIG. 68-9 Advanced technique for palpation of the kidney.

of the costovertebral angle (CVA). The CVA is located between the lower portion of the twelfth rib and the vertebral column.

Listen for a bruit by placing a stethoscope over each renal artery on the midclavicular line. A **bruit** is an audible swishing sound produced when the volume of blood or the diameter of the blood vessel changes. It often occurs with blood flow through a narrowed vessel, as in renal artery stenosis.

Kidney palpation is usually performed by a physician or advanced practice nurse. It can help locate masses and areas of tenderness in or around the kidney. Lightly palpate the abdomen in all quadrants. Ask about areas of tenderness or pain, and examine nontender areas first. The outline of the bladder may be seen as high as the umbilicus in patients with severe bladder distention. *If tumor or aneurysm is suspected, palpation may harm the patient.*

Because the kidneys are located deep and posterior, palpation is easier in thin patients who have little abdominal musculature. For palpation of the right kidney, the patient is in a supine position while the examiner places one hand under the right flank and the other hand over the abdomen below the lower right part of the rib cage. The lower hand is used to raise the flank, and the upper hand depresses the abdomen as the patient takes a deep breath (Fig. 68-9). The left kidney is deeper and often cannot be palpated. A transplanted kidney is readily palpated in either the lower right or left abdominal quadrant. The normal kidney is smooth, firm, and nontender.

A distended bladder sounds dull when percussed. After gently palpating to determine the outline of the distended bladder, begin percussion on the lower abdomen and continue in the direction of the umbilicus until dull sounds are no longer produced. If you suspect bladder distention, use a portable bladder scanner to determine the amount of retained urine.

If the patient reports flank pain or tenderness, percuss the nontender flank first. Have the patient assume a sitting, side-lying, or supine position, and then form one of your hands into a clenched fist. Place your other hand flat over the CVA of the patient. Then quickly deliver a firm thump to your hand over the CVA area. Costovertebral tenderness often

occurs with kidney infection or inflammation. Patients with inflammation or infection in the kidney or nearby structures may describe their pain as severe or as a constant, dull ache.

Assessment of the Urethra

Using a good light source and wearing gloves, inspect the urethra by examining the meatus and the tissues around it. Record any unusual discharge such as blood, mucus, or pus. Inspect the skin and mucous membranes of surrounding tissues. Record the presence of lesions, rashes, or other abnormalities of the penis or scrotum or of the labia or vaginal opening. Urethral irritation is suspected when the patient reports discomfort with urination. Use this opportunity to remind women to clean the perineum by wiping from front to back, never from back to front. Teach them that the front-to-back technique keeps organisms in stool from coming close to the urethra, which could increase the risk for infection.

Women from other cultures may have undergone female circumcision. This procedure alters the anatomic appearance of the vulvar-perineal area and increases the risk for urinary tract infections. It also makes urethral inspection or catheterization difficult. Document any noted anatomic changes and ask the patient to describe her hygiene practices for this area.

Psychosocial Assessment

Concerns about the urologic system may evoke fear, anger, embarrassment, anxiety, guilt, or sadness in the patient. Childhood learning often includes privacy with regard to toilet habits. Urologic disorders may bring up forgotten memories of difficult toilet training and bedwetting or of childhood experiences of exploring one's body. The patient may ignore symptoms or delay seeking health care because of emotional responses or cultural taboos about the urogenital area.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Psychosocial Integrity

A 67-year-old client who had an abdominal x-ray as part of pre-admission testing for a gastrointestinal problem has just been told that he has a horseshoe-shaped kidney. He is very upset, telling the nurse that he has never had any health problems until the past month and now feels that he is "falling apart." What is the nurse's best response?

- Remind him that it was lucky that he was being x-rayed anyway and that the problem was found at an early stage.
- Reassure him that it is unlikely that the kidney shape is important since he has not had other kidney problems.
- Ask him whether anyone else in his family has ever been diagnosed with a horseshoe-shaped kidney.
- Reassure him that his health care provider will request a consultation with a kidney specialist.

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

Blood Tests. Serum creatinine is produced when protein or muscle breaks down. Creatinine is filtered by the kidneys and excreted in the urine. Because muscle mass and protein breakdown are usually constant, the serum creatinine level is a good indicator of kidney function. Normal serum creatinine levels vary with age, gender, and body muscle mass.

CHART 68-3 LABORATORY PROFILE

Renal Function Blood Studies

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Serum creatinine	Males: 0.6-1.2 mg/dL (53-106 mmol/L) Females: 0.5-1.1 mg/dL (44-97 mmol/L) Older adults: may be decreased	An <i>increased level</i> indicates kidney impairment. A <i>decreased level</i> may be caused by a decreased muscle mass.
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	10-20 mg/dL (3.6-7.1 mmol/L) Older adults: 60-90 yr: 8-23 mg/dL (2.9-8.2 mmol/L) Older than 90 yr: 10-31 mg/dL (3.6-11.1 mmol/L)	An <i>increased level</i> may indicate hepatic or renal disease, dehydration or decreased kidney perfusion, a high-protein diet, infection, stress, steroid use, GI bleeding, or other situations in which blood is in body tissues. A <i>decreased level</i> may indicate malnutrition, fluid volume excess, or severe hepatic damage.
BUN/creatinine ratio	Mass ratio: 12:1 to 20:1 Mole ratio: 48.5:1 to 80.8:1	An <i>increased ratio</i> may indicate fluid volume deficit, obstructive uropathy, catabolic state, or a high-protein diet. A <i>decreased ratio</i> may indicate fluid volume excess or acute renal tubular acidosis. No change in the ratio with increases in both the BUN and creatinine levels indicates renal impairment.

Data from Pagana, K.D., & Pagana, T.J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Levels are slightly higher in men than in women because men tend to have a larger muscle mass than do women, but there are exceptions (Chart 68-3). Creatinine levels in bodybuilders tend to be higher than normal without reflecting a kidney function problem. Muscle mass and the amount of creatinine produced decrease with age. Because of decreased rates of creatinine clearance, however, the serum creatinine level remains relatively constant in older adults unless kidney disease is present.

No common pathologic condition other than kidney disease increases the serum creatinine level. The serum creatinine level does not increase until at least 50% of the kidney function is lost, and therefore any elevation of serum creatinine values is important and should be assessed further.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

An increase of serum creatinine 1.5 times above baseline or a decrease of urine output to <0.5 mL/kg/hr for 6 or more hours places a patient at risk for acute kidney injury. Monitor both baseline and trend values to determine risk for and actual kidney damage, especially among patients exposed to agents that can cause kidney dysfunction. Inform the health care provider of increased serum creatinine and decreased urine output values promptly.

Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) measures the kidney excretion of urea nitrogen, a by-product of protein breakdown in the liver. Urea nitrogen is produced mostly from liver metabolism of food sources of protein. The kidneys filter urea nitrogen from the blood and excrete the waste in urine. BUN levels indicate the extent of kidney clearance of this nitrogen waste product.

Other factors influence the BUN level, and an elevation does not always mean kidney disease is present (see Chart 68-3). For example, rapid cell destruction from infection, cancer treatment, or steroid therapy may elevate BUN level. In addition, blood is a protein. Blood in the tissues rather than in the blood vessels is reabsorbed as if it were a general protein. Thus reabsorbed blood protein is processed by the liver and increases BUN levels. This means that injured tissues can result in increased BUN levels even when kidney function is normal. Also, BUN is increased by protein turnover in exercising muscle and is elevated as a result of concentration during dehydration.

The liver must function properly to produce urea nitrogen. When liver and kidney dysfunction are present, urea nitrogen levels are actually *decreased* because the liver failure limits urea production. The BUN level is not always elevated with kidney disease and is not the best indicator of kidney function. However, an elevated BUN level is highly *suggestive* of kidney dysfunction.

Blood urea nitrogen to serum creatinine ratio can help determine whether non-kidney-related factors, such as low cardiac output or red blood cell destruction, are causing the elevated BUN level. When blood volume is deficient (e.g., dehydration) or cardiac output is low, the BUN level rises more rapidly than the serum creatinine level. As a result, the ratio of BUN to creatinine is *increased*.

When both the BUN and serum creatinine levels increase at the same rate, the BUN/creatinine ratio remains normal. However, the elevated serum creatinine and BUN levels suggest kidney dysfunction that is not related to dehydration or poor perfusion.

Blood osmolarity is a measure of the overall concentration of particles in the blood and is a good indicator of hydration status. The kidneys excrete or reabsorb water to keep blood osmolarity in the range of 285 to 295 mOsm/L. Osmolarity is slightly higher in older adults (285 to 301 mOsm/L). When blood osmolarity is decreased, the release of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is inhibited. Without ADH, the distal tubule and collecting ducts are *not* permeable to water. As a result, water is *excreted*, not reabsorbed, and blood osmolarity increases. When blood osmolarity increases, ADH is released. ADH increases the permeability of the distal tubule to water. Then water is reabsorbed and blood osmolarity decreases.

Urine Tests

Urinalysis. Urinalysis is a part of any complete physical examination and is especially useful for patients with suspected kidney or urologic disorders (Chart 68-4). Ideally, the urine specimen is collected at the morning's first voiding. Specimens obtained at other times may be too dilute. The specimen may be collected by several techniques (Table 68-4).

Urine color comes from urochrome pigment. Color variations may result from increased levels of urochrome or other pigments, changes in the concentration or dilution of the urine, and the presence of drug metabolites in the urine. Urine smells faintly like ammonia and is normally clear without **turbidity** (cloudiness) or haziness.

CHART 68-4 LABORATORY PROFILE

Urinalysis

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Color	Pale yellow	<i>Dark amber</i> indicates concentrated urine. <i>Very pale</i> yellow indicates dilute urine. <i>Dark red</i> or brown indicates blood in the urine. Brown also may indicate increased urinary bilirubin level. Red also may indicate the presence of myoglobin. <i>Other color</i> changes may result from diet or drugs.
Odor	Specific aroma, similar to ammonia	<i>Foul smell</i> indicates possible infection, dehydration, or ingestion of certain foods or drugs.
Turbidity	Clear	<i>Cloudy urine</i> indicates infection, sediment, or high levels of urinary protein.
Specific gravity	Usually 1.005-1.030; possible range 1.000-1.040 (after 12-hr fluid restriction, >1.025) <i>Older adult:</i> Decreased because of decreased concentrating ability	<i>Increased</i> in decreased kidney perfusion, inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion, or congestive heart failure. <i>Decreased</i> in chronic kidney disease, diabetes insipidus, malignant hypertension, diuretic administration, and lithium toxicity.
pH	Average: 6; possible range: 4.6-8	<i>Changes</i> are caused by diet, the administration of drugs, infection, freshness of the specimen, acid-base imbalance, and altered renal function.
Glucose	<0.5 g/day (<2.78 mmol/L)	<i>Presence</i> reflects hyperglycemia or a decrease in the renal threshold for glucose.
Ketones	None	<i>Presence</i> reflects incomplete metabolism of fatty acids, as in diabetic ketoacidosis, prolonged fasting, anorexia nervosa.
Protein	0.8 mg/dL	<i>Increased</i> amounts may indicate stress, infection, recent strenuous exercise, or glomerular disorders.
Bilirubin (urobilinogen)	None	<i>Presence</i> suggests liver or biliary disease or obstruction.
Red blood cells (RBCs)	0-2 per high-power field	<i>Increased</i> amounts are normal with indwelling or intermittent catheterization or menses but may reflect tumor, stones, trauma, glomerular disorders, cystitis, or bleeding disorders.
White blood cells (WBCs)	<i>Males:</i> 0-3 per high-power field <i>Females:</i> 0-5 per high-power field	<i>Increased</i> amounts may indicate an infectious or inflammatory process anywhere in the renal/urinary tract, renal transplant rejection, fever, or exercise.
Casts	A few or none, composed of RBC, WBC, protein, or tubular cell casts	<i>Increased</i> amounts indicate the presence of bacteria or protein, which is seen in severe kidney disease and could also indicate urinary calculi.
Crystals	None	<i>Presence</i> of normal or abnormal crystals may indicate that the specimen has been allowed to stand.
Bacteria	<1000 colonies/mL	<i>Increased</i> amounts indicate the need for urine culture to determine the presence of urinary tract infection.
Parasites	None	<i>Presence</i> of <i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i> indicates infection, usually of the urethra, prostate, or vagina.
Leukoesterase	None	<i>Presence</i> suggests urinary tract infection.
Nitrites	None	<i>Presence</i> suggests urinary <i>Escherichia coli</i> .

Specific gravity is the density of urine compared with water, which has a specific gravity of 1.000. Density is related to the number of particles in a specific volume of urine. The normal specific gravity of urine ranges from 1.005 to about 1.030. In kidney disease, changes in specific gravity do not reflect systemic fluid volume. For example, dilute urine with a low specific gravity may occur in a dehydrated patient who is deficient in antidiuretic hormone (ADH).

An *increase* in specific gravity occurs with dehydration, decreased kidney blood flow, or the presence of ADH. (ADH production is normally increased with stress, surgery, anesthetic agents, and certain drugs such as morphine and commonly used oral antidiabetic drugs.) In these situations, the normal kidney response is to reabsorb water and decrease urine output. As a result, the urine produced is more concentrated.

A *decrease* in specific gravity occurs with increased fluid intake, diuretic drugs, and diabetes insipidus. In these

conditions, the normal kidney response is to excrete more water; thus urine output is increased. In kidney disease, the specific gravity decreases because the damaged kidneys reabsorb less water. The specific gravity does not vary with changes in plasma osmolarity (i.e., it becomes fixed).

pH is a measure of urine acidity or alkalinity. A pH value less than 7 is acidic, and a value greater than 7 is alkaline. Many factors influence urine acidity or alkalinity. A diet high in certain fruits and vegetables results in a more alkaline urine. A high-protein diet produces a more acidic urine. The presence of *Escherichia coli* in the urine also results in an acidic urine.

Urine specimens become more alkaline when left standing unrefrigerated for more than 1 hour, when bacteria are present, or when a specimen is left uncovered. Alkaline urine increases cell breakdown; thus the presence of red blood cells may be missed on analysis. Ensure that urine specimens are covered and delivered to the laboratory promptly or

TABLE 68-4 COLLECTION OF URINE SPECIMENS

NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Voided Urine Collect the first specimen voided in the morning. Send the specimen to the laboratory as soon as possible. Refrigerate the specimen if a delay is unavoidable.	Urine is more concentrated in the early morning. After urine is collected, cellular breakdown results in more alkaline urine. Refrigeration delays the alkalization of urine. Bacteria are more likely to multiply in an alkaline environment.
Clean-Catch Specimen Explain the purpose of the procedure to the patient. Instruct the patient to self-clean before voiding: Instruct the female patient to separate the labia and use the sponges and solution provided to wipe with three strokes over the urethra. The first two wiping strokes are over each side of the urethra; the third wiping stroke is centered over the urethra (from front to back). Instruct the male patient to retract the foreskin of the penis and to similarly clean the urethra, using three wiping strokes with the sponge and solution provided (from the head of the penis downward). Instruct the patient to initiate voiding after cleaning. The patient then stops and resumes voiding into the container. Only 1 ounce (30 mL) is needed; the remainder of the urine may be discarded into the commode. Ensure that the patient understands the procedure. Assist the patient as needed.	Correct technique is needed to obtain a valid specimen. Surface cleaning is necessary to remove secretions or bacteria from the urethral meatus. A midstream collection further removes secretions and bacteria because urine flushes the distal portion of the internal urethra. An improperly collected specimen may result in inappropriate or incomplete treatment. The patient's understanding and the nurse's assistance ensure proper collection.
Catheterized Specimen For non-indwelling (straight) catheters: Avoid routine use. Follow the facility's procedures for catheterization technique. For indwelling catheters: Apply a clamp to the drainage tubing, distal to the injection port. Clean the injection port cap of the catheter drainage tubing with an appropriate antiseptic. Povidone-iodine solution or alcohol is acceptable. Attach a sterile 5-mL syringe into the port and aspirate the quantity of urine required. Inject the urine sample into a sterile specimen container. Remove the clamp to resume drainage. Properly dispose of the syringe.	The one-time passage of a urinary catheter may be necessary to obtain an uncontaminated specimen for analysis or to measure the volume of residual urine. These procedures minimize bacterial entry. Urine is collected from an indwelling catheter or tubing when patients have catheters for continence or long-term urinary drainage. Clamping allows urine to collect in the tubing at the location where the specimen is obtained. Surface contamination is prevented by following the cleaning procedures. A minimum of 5 mL is needed for culture and sensitivity (C&S) testing. A sterile container is used for C&S specimens.
24-Hour Urine Collection Instruct the patient thoroughly. Provide written materials to assist in instruction. Place signs appropriately. Inform all personnel or family caregivers of test in progress. Check laboratory or procedure manual on proper technique for maintaining the collection (e.g., on ice, in a refrigerator, or with a preservative). On initiation of the collection, ask the patient to void, discard the urine, and note the time. If a Foley catheter is in use, empty the tubing and drainage bag at the start time and discard the urine. Collect all urine of the next 24 hr. Twenty-four hours after initiation, ask the patient to empty the bladder and add that urine to the container. Do not remove urine from the collection container for other specimens.	A 24-hr collection of urine is necessary to quantify or calculate the rate of clearance of a particular substance. Instructional materials for patients, signs, etc. remind patients and staff to ensure that the total collection is completed. Proper technique prevents breakdown of elements to be measured. Proper techniques ensure that <i>all</i> urine formed within the 24-hr period is collected. Urine in the container is not considered a "fresh" specimen and may be mixed with preservative.

refrigerated. During acidosis or alkalosis, the kidneys, along with blood buffers and the lungs, normally respond to keep serum pH normal. [Chapter 14](#) discusses acid-base balance and imbalance.

Glucose is filtered by the glomerulus and is reabsorbed in the proximal tubule of the nephron. When the blood glucose level rises above 220 mg/dL, the renal threshold for reabsorption is exceeded and some glucose is present in the urine. Changes in the renal threshold for glucose occur in many patients, such as those with infection or those with long-standing diabetes mellitus. It is possible that their serum glucose level may be high (e.g., greater than 400 mg/dL) and glucose may still not be present in the urine. More often, these patients show glucose in the urine even when blood glucose levels are normal or only slightly elevated.

Ketone bodies are formed from the incomplete metabolism of fatty acids. Three types of ketone bodies are acetone, acetoacetic acid, and beta-hydroxybutyric acid. *Normally there are no ketones in urine.* Ketone bodies are produced when fat is used instead of glucose for cellular energy. Ketones present in the blood are partially excreted in the urine.

Protein, such as albumin, is not normally present in the urine. Levels greater than 300 mg/24 hr, or 200 mcg/min, are abnormal. Protein molecules are too large to pass through intact glomerular membranes. When glomerular membranes are not intact, protein molecules pass through and are excreted in the urine. Increased membrane permeability is caused by infection, inflammation, or immunologic problems. Some systemic problems cause production of abnormal proteins, such as globulin. These proteins are not detected by routine urinalysis and require electrophoresis or other tests for detection.

A random finding of **proteinuria** (protein in the urine) followed by a series of negative (normal) findings does not imply kidney disease. If infection is the cause of the proteinuria, urinalyses after elimination of the infection should be negative for protein. Persistent proteinuria needs further investigation.

Microalbuminuria is the presence of albumin in the urine that is not measurable by a urine dipstick or usual urinalysis procedures. Specialized assays are used to quickly analyze a freshly voided urine specimen for microscopic levels of albumin. The normal microalbumin levels in a freshly voided specimen should range between 2.0 and 20 mg/mmol for men and between 2.8 and 28 mg/mmol for women. Higher levels indicate microalbuminuria and could mean very early kidney disease, especially in patients with diabetes mellitus. In 24-hour urine specimens, levels of 30 to 300 mg/24 hr, or 20 to 200 mcg/min, indicate microalbuminuria.

Leukoesterase is an enzyme found in some white blood cells, especially neutrophils. When the number of these cells increases in the urine or they are broken (*lysed*), the urine then contains leukoesterase. The presence of leukoesterase and nitrites in the urine is a sensitive screen for assessing urinary tract infections. A normal reading is no leukoesterase in the urine. A positive test (+ sign) indicates increasing leukocytes in the urine.

Nitrites are not usually present in urine. Many types of bacteria, when present in the urine, convert nitrates (normally found in urine) into nitrites. A positive finding indicates urinary tract infection.

Sediment is precipitated particles in the urine. These particles include cells, casts, crystals, and bacteria. Normally, urine contains few, if any, cells. Types of cells abnormally present in the urine include tubular cells (from the tubule of the nephron), epithelial cells (from the lining of the urinary tract), red blood cells (RBCs), and white blood cells (WBCs).

Casts are structures formed around other particles. There may be casts of cells, bacteria, or protein. When cells, bacteria, or proteins are present in the urine, minerals and sticky materials clump around them and form a cast. Casts are described by the type of particle they have surrounded (e.g., RBC cast, WBC cast, tubular epithelial cast) or the stage of cast breakdown. Casts are described as “granular” (coarse or fine) and “waxy.”

Urine crystals come from mineral salts as a result of diet, drugs, or disease. Common salt crystals are formed from calcium, oxalate, urea, phosphate, magnesium, or other substances. Some drugs, such as the sulfates, can also form crystals.

Bacteria multiply quickly, so the urine specimen must be analyzed promptly to avoid falsely elevated counts of bacterial colonization. Normally urine is sterile, but it is easily contaminated by perineal bacteria during collection.

Recent advances in technology and molecular biology are leading to new diagnostic tests using urine, including identification of biomarkers of disease and profiling for specific proteins. Markers are being used in investigation to identify early-onset kidney dysfunction, target therapy, and predict responsiveness to intervention. Markers for angiogenesis and kidney cell adhesion, regulation, and apoptosis will likely contribute to clinical diagnostics in the future.

Urine for Culture and Sensitivity. Urine is analyzed for the number and types of organisms present. Manifestations of infection and unexplained bacteria in a urine specimen are indications for urine culture and sensitivity testing. Bacteria from urine are placed in a medium with different antibiotics. In this way, we can know which antibiotics are effective in killing or stopping the growth of the organisms (organisms are “sensitive”) and which are not effective (organisms are “resistant”). A clean-catch or catheter-derived specimen is best for culture and sensitivity testing.

Composite Urine Collections. Some urine collections are made for a specified number of hours (e.g., 24 hours) for more precise analysis of one or more substances. These collections are often used to measure urine levels of creatinine or urea nitrogen, sodium, chloride, calcium, catecholamines, or other components ([Chart 68-5](#)). For a composite urine specimen, *all* urine within the designated time frame must be collected (see [Table 68-4](#)). If other urine must be obtained while the collection is in progress, measure and record the amount collected but not added to the timed collection.

The urine collection may need to be refrigerated or stored on ice to prevent changes in the urine during the collection time. Follow the procedure from the laboratory for urine storage. The urine collection must be free from fecal contamination. Menstrual blood and toilet tissue also contaminate the specimen and can invalidate the results.

The collection of urine for a 24-hour period is often more difficult than it seems. With hospitalized patients, the cooperation of staff personnel, the patient, family members, and visitors is essential. Placing signs in the bathroom, instructing

CHART 68-5 LABORATORY PROFILE

24-Hour Urine Collections

COMPONENT	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Creatinine	0.8-2 g/24 hr Males: 1-2 g/24 hr or 14-26 mg/kg/24 hr (124-230 μ mol/kg/24 hr or 7.1-17.7 mmol/24 hr) Females: 0.6-1.8 g/24 hr or 11-20 mg/kg/24 hr (97-177 μ mol/kg/24 hr or 5.3-15.9 mmol/24 hr) Older adults: 10 mg/kg/24 hr (88.4 μ mol/kg/24 hr) at 90 yr	<i>Decreased amounts</i> indicate a deterioration in kidney function caused by kidney disease. <i>Increased amounts</i> occur with infections, exercise, diabetes mellitus, and meat meals.
Urea nitrogen	12-20 g/24 hr (0.43-0.71 mmol/24 hr)	<i>Decreased amounts</i> occur when kidney damage or liver disease is present. <i>Increased amounts</i> commonly result from a high-protein diet, dehydration, trauma, or sepsis.
Sodium	40-220 mEq/24 hr (40-220 mmol/24 hr)	<i>Decreased amounts</i> are seen in hemorrhage, shock, hyperaldosteronism, and prerenal acute kidney injury. <i>Increased amounts</i> are common with diuretic therapy, excessive salt intake, hypokalemia, and acute tubular necrosis.
Chloride	110-250 mEq/24 hr (110-250 mmol/24 hr) Older adults: 95-195 mEq/24 hr (95-195 mmol/24 hr)	<i>Decreased amounts</i> are seen in certain kidney diseases, malabsorption syndrome, pyloric obstruction, prolonged nasogastric tube drainage, diarrhea, diaphoresis, heart failure, and emphysema. <i>Increased amounts</i> are seen with hypokalemia, adrenal insufficiency, and massive diuresis.
Calcium	100-400 mg/24 hr (2.50-7.50 mmol/kg/24 hr)	<i>Decreased amounts</i> are often associated with hypocalcemia, hypoparathyroidism, nephrosis, and nephritis. <i>Increased amounts</i> are commonly seen with calcium kidney stones, hyperparathyroidism, sarcoidosis, certain cancers, immobilization, and hypercalcemia.
Total catecholamines*	<100 mcg/24 hr (<591 mmol/24 hr)	<i>Increased amounts</i> occur with pheochromocytoma, neuroblastomas, stress, or strenuous exercise.
Protein	1-14 mg/dL (10-140 mg/L) or 50-80 mg/24 hr at rest	<i>Increased amounts</i> indicate glomerular disease, nephrotic syndrome, diabetic nephropathy, urinary tract malignancies, and irritations.

*Epinephrine and norepinephrine only; dopamine is not measured.

the patient and family, and emphasizing the need to save the urine are helpful.

Creatinine Clearance. Creatinine clearance is a calculated measure of glomerular filtration rate. It is the best indication of overall kidney function. The amount of creatinine cleared from the blood (e.g., filtered into the urine) is measured in the total volume of urine excreted in a defined period. The optimal calculation for glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is based on a 24-hour urine collection, but urine can be collected for shorter periods (e.g., 8 or 12 hours). The analysis compares the urine creatinine level with the blood creatinine level, and therefore a blood specimen for creatinine must also be collected.

The laboratory or care provider calculates the creatinine clearance. The patient's age, gender, height, weight, diet, and activity level influence the expected amount of creatinine to be excreted. Thus these factors are considered when interpreting creatinine clearance test results. Although creatinine clearance can be calculated based on age, weight, serum creatinine, and other non-urine measures, a 24-hour collection and direct measurement is preferred for patients with high risk for or actual kidney dysfunction.

The rate of creatinine clearance is expressed as milliliters per minute per square meter of body surface area. The range for normal creatinine clearance is 90 to 139 mL/min/m² for men and 80 to 125 mL/min/m² for women.

Creatinine clearance values are used to determine the patient's current kidney function. Decreases in the creatinine clearance rate may require reducing drug doses and often signifies the need to further explore the cause of kidney deterioration.

Urine Electrolytes. Urine samples can be analyzed for electrolyte levels (e.g., sodium, chloride). Normally the amount of sodium excreted in the urine is nearly equal to that consumed. Urine sodium levels of less than 10 mEq/L indicate that the tubules are able to conserve (reabsorb) sodium.

Urine Osmolarity. Osmolarity measures the concentration of particles in solution. The particles in urine contributing to osmolarity include electrolytes, glucose, urea, and creatinine. Urine osmolarity can vary from 50 to 1400 mOsm/L, depending on the patient's hydration status and kidney function. With average fluid intake, the range for urine osmolarity is 300 to 900 mOsm/L. Electrolytes, acids, and other wastes of normal metabolism are continually produced. These particles are the solute load that must be excreted in the urine on a regular basis. This is referred to as *obligatory solute excretion*. If the patient loses excessive fluids, the kidney response is to save water while excreting wastes by excreting small amounts of highly concentrated urine. Diet, drugs, and activity can change urine osmolarity. Thus urine with an increased osmolarity is concentrated urine with less water and more

TABLE 68-5 COMMON RADIOLOGIC AND SPECIAL DIAGNOSTIC TESTS FOR PATIENTS WITH DISORDERS OF THE KIDNEY AND URINARY SYSTEM

TEST	PURPOSE	COMMENTS
Radiography of kidneys, ureters, and bladder (KUB) (plain film of abdomen)	To screen for the presence of two kidneys To measure kidney size To detect gross obstruction	
Excretory urography	To measure kidney size To detect obstruction To assess parenchymal mass	Radiopaque contrast medium may cause an allergic (hypersensitivity) reaction in iodine-sensitive patients. Contrast agent is also hypertonic and increases the risk for acute kidney injury in adults with serum creatinine levels greater than 1.5 mg/dL. Nephrotoxic complications can be prevented by parenteral fluid administration.
Nephrotomography	To assess various planes of kidney tissue for cysts, tumors, or calculi	Same as for excretory urography.
Computed tomography (CT)	To measure kidney size To evaluate contour to assess for masses or obstruction	Contrast medium may provoke acute kidney injury. See comments with excretory urography for high-risk patients and preventive measures related to contrast. May be performed without contrast medium and still obtain adequate visualization.
Cystography and cystoscopy	To identify abnormalities of the bladder wall and urethral and ureteral occlusions To treat small obstructions or lesions via fulguration, lithotripsy, or removal with a stone basket	Instrumentation of the urinary tract increases the risk for infection. Monitor for infection for 48-72 hr after the procedure.
Voiding cystourethrography (VCUG)	To outline bladder's contour and detect urinary reflux from vesicourethral junctions	The risk for infection is similar to that in cystography because urinary catheterization is necessary. Monitor for postprocedure infection.
Ultrasonography (US)	To identify the size of the kidneys or obstruction in the kidneys or the lower urinary tract May detect tumors or cysts	Ultrasonography entails minimal risk to the patient. Ultrasonography is a good alternative to excretory urography.
MAG3 study 99m	To assess kidney function, structural abnormalities, kidney injury or impairment, obstruction, and kidney stones	Radioactive material (technetium Tc mertiatide) is used for this test.
Intravenous pyelography (IVP) (fluoroscopy)	To assess kidney function, identify anomalies To image kidney/urinary stones (size, location, radiodensity) To screen for kidney injury after trauma	Contraindicated during pregnancy (ionizing radiation is a risk to the fetus). Contrast dye can cause renal dysfunction. Colonic cleaning improves quality of image.
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	Staging of cancers, similar to CT	Patient must be able to lie still (motion can interfere with imaging).
Renal scan	Evaluation of kidney blood flow Estimation of glomerular filtration rate Provides functional information without exposing the patient to iodinated contrast dye	ACE inhibitors should be held for 48 hours before the test. ACE inhibitors may be given during the test, placing the patient at risk for episodes of hypotension. Ensure adequate hydration for best results.

ACE, Angiotensin-converting enzyme.

preparation procedures vary but usually include the use of laxatives the day before the procedure. Enemas also may be prescribed, but their use is controversial because some air and fluid can be retained.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Bowel preparation procedures increase the risk for dehydration, especially in older adult patients. To help prevent dehydration, contact the testing department and ask that urograms be scheduled early in the day for older patients.

The contrast dye is potentially kidney-damaging (nephrotoxic). The risk for *contrast-induced kidney failure* is greatest in patients who are older or dehydrated, who have some renal insufficiency (e.g., serum creatinine levels greater than 1.5 mg/dL), or who are also taking other nephrotoxic drugs.

In addition, patients taking metformin are at risk for lactic acidosis when they receive iodinated contrast media. Metformin should be discontinued 24 hours before the time of a procedure and for at least 48 hours after the procedure. Kidney function should be re-evaluated before the patient resumes metformin therapy.

All patients at risk for contrast-induced nephrotoxicity need additional IV fluids before the procedure to maintain hydration and decrease the risk for kidney damage. Acetylcysteine (an antioxidant) may be used to prevent contrast-induced nephrotoxic effects in radiologic procedures, although its benefits have not been proven. Diuretics may be given immediately after the dye is injected to enhance dye excretion in patients who are well hydrated.

Instruct the patient in the preparation procedures for the urogram, and explain the procedure so that he or she knows

CHART 68-6 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing the Patient About to Undergo a Diagnostic Test or Interventional Procedure Using Contrast Medium

Before the procedure:

- Ask the patient if he or she has ever had a reaction to contrast media. (Such a patient has the highest risk for having another reaction.)
- Ask the patient about a history of asthma. (Patients with asthma have been shown to be at greater risk for contrast reactions than the general public. When reactions do occur, they are more likely to be severe.)
- Ask the patient about known hay fever or food or drug allergies, especially to seafood, eggs, milk, or chocolate. (Contrast reactions have been reported to be as high as 15% in these patients.)
- Ask the patient to describe any specific allergic reactions (e.g., hives, facial edema, difficulty breathing, bronchospasm).
- Assess for a history of kidney impairment and for conditions that have been implicated in increasing the chance of developing kidney failure after contrast media (e.g., diabetic nephropathy, class IV heart failure, dehydration, concomitant use of potentially nephrotoxic drugs such as the aminoglycosides or NSAIDs, and cirrhosis).
- Ask the patient if he or she is taking metformin (Glucophage). (Metformin must be discontinued at least 24 hours before any study using contrast media because the life-threatening complication of lactic acidosis, although rare, could occur.)
- Assess hydration status by checking blood pressure, heart and respiratory rates, mucous membranes, skin turgor, and urine concentration.
- Ask the patient when he or she last ate or drank anything.

From Cohan, R.H., & Ellis, J.H. (1997). Iodinated contrast material in urology: Choice of agent and management of complications. *Urologic Clinics of North America*, 24(3), 471-491.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Ensure that the patient who is prescribed metformin does not receive the drug after a procedure requiring IV contrast material until adequate kidney function has been determined.

what to expect (Chart 68-7). Intervene on behalf of the patient to ensure that questions are answered *before* the procedure.

Procedure. The dye is injected IV with the patient in a supine position. As blood (with the dye) rapidly circulates into the kidney blood vessels and is filtered by the glomeruli, the dye is excreted in the urine. A series of x-rays are taken at various times after injection. Nephrotomograms may be taken at the same time as the urogram. Tomograms take images of different planes of tissue and show any abnormalities present at varying depths. The technologist then asks the patient to empty the bladder and return for a few more x-rays. An outline of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder results as urine containing the dye is excreted.

The urogram provides information about:

- The number, size, shape, and location of the kidneys
- The adequacy of filling and the rate of excretion of contrast medium

CHART 68-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Excretory Urogram

- The urogram outlines your urinary tract and helps determine any problems there.
- Notify your nurse or physician if you have had any reactions (allergic or otherwise) to any food or drugs, especially shellfish (e.g., shrimp, scallops, crab, lobster) or iodine, or to x-ray “dyes” such as contrast media; if you have a history of asthma; or if you are taking metformin (Glucophage) or Glucovance.
- The day before the test, follow the instructions about changes in your diet and fluid intake to be sure that as much information as possible is gained from the test.
- After you start the bowel preparation, you may need to be close to toileting facilities. The preparation drugs usually work quickly.
- You will be lying on an x-ray table with the x-ray machine above you for most of the procedure.
- A pressure band, similar to a large blood pressure cuff, may be placed around your stomach or abdomen to help obtain better x-rays.
- If you do not already have an IV access site, one will be started to give you the contrast agent.
- After the contrast is injected, you may feel a sense of warmth or heat as it travels throughout your body. You also may have a taste in your mouth that is sometimes described as metallic. These sensations last only a few seconds or minutes.
- When the pressure band is inflated, you may feel some tightness around your abdomen. The sensation is similar to the feeling on your arm when you have your blood pressure taken.
- A series of x-rays will be taken. You may be asked to empty your bladder and return to the table for more films. You also may be asked to have a standing film taken.
- After the test is completed, you are usually able to resume your normal activities and diet.
- You will not notice any change in the color or characteristics of your urine.
- Please do not hesitate to ask your nurse, physician, or x-ray technologist any question, no matter how slight the question may seem to you. It is important that you have as much understanding as possible.

- The number, size, location, appearance, and patency of the calices, pelves, and ureters
- The size, location, and nature of the urinary bladder

Follow-up Care. After the urogram, monitor the patient for altered kidney function and other effects from the dye. Ensure adequate hydration by urging the patient to take oral fluid or by giving IV fluids. Hydration reduces the risk for kidney damage. Monitor blood creatinine levels to assess ongoing kidney function.

Computed Tomography. Inform the patient that a computed tomography (CT) scan provides three-dimensional information about the kidneys, ureters, bladder, and surrounding tissues. The CT scan is performed in a special room, usually in the radiology department. It is usually performed after other diagnostic procedures and can provide information about tumors, cysts, abscesses, other masses, and obstruction. CT can also be used to image the kidney’s vascular system (i.e., CT angiography). Some hospitals require patients having CT scans to be NPO for some period before the scan, although there is no specific evidence guiding this practice.

Determine whether the scan requires administration of a dye. Oral or injected contrast dye is usually given before starting the imaging procedure. Dye use may be omitted in patients at risk for contrast-induced acute kidney injury (AKI), but the images produced are less distinct.

When a dye is used, the follow-up care is the same as for IV urography. When no contrast or dye is used, there is no special postprocedural care.

Cystography and Cystourethrography. Explain the procedure to the patient. A urinary catheter is temporarily needed to instill contrast dye. The dye is needed to enhance x-ray visibility of the lower urinary tract.

In both cystography and cystourethrography, dye is instilled into the bladder via a urethral catheter. After bladder filling, x-rays are taken from the front, back, and side positions. For the voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG), the patient is requested to void and x-rays are taken during the voiding. A VCUG is obtained to determine whether urine refluxes into the ureter. The cystogram is often used in cases of trauma when urethral or bladder injury is suspected.

Monitor for infection as a result of catheter placement. In this test, the dye is not nephrotoxic because it does not enter the bloodstream and does not reach the kidney. Encourage fluid intake to dilute the urine and reduce the burning sensation from catheter irritation after removal. Monitor for changes in urine output because pelvic or urethral trauma may be present.

Renography (Kidney Scan). Explain that a kidney scan is performed to provide general information about blood flow to and in the kidneys. A small amount of radioactive material, a radionuclide, is used. Reassure the patient that there is no danger from the small amount of radioactive material present in the agent. Radionuclides are not associated with nephrotoxicity.

For a kidney scan, the radionuclide is injected IV. After injection, the agent is absorbed into kidney tissue and gives off low-level radioactive emissions (scintillations). The amount of emission is measured by a scintillation counter. A special camera records the emissions and produces an image. At the same time, the rate and location of the emissions are recorded by computer and information about blood flow, or glomerular filtration, is provided.

In some cases, captopril (Capoten), an antihypertensive drug, is given at the start of the procedure to change blood flow in the kidney. This procedure is a “captopril renal scan.” The drug can cause severe hypotension during and after the procedure.

When the patient can urinate, urination into a commode does not place anyone at risk from the small amount of radioactive material excreted. If he or she is incontinent, change the bed linens promptly and wear gloves for Standard Precautions. If captopril was used during the procedure, assess the patient’s blood pressure frequently. Warn him or her to avoid rapid position changes and about the risk for falling as a result of orthostatic (positional) hypotension.

Ultrasonography. Inform the patient that ultrasonography does not cause discomfort and is without risk. This test usually requires a full bladder. Ask the patient to drink water, if needed, to help fill the bladder. This test applies sound waves to structures of different densities to produce images of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder and surrounding tissues. Ultrasonography allows assessment of kidney size, cortical

thickness, and status of the calices. The test can identify obstruction in the urinary tract, tumors, cysts, and other masses without the use of contrast dye.

The patient undergoing kidney ultrasound is usually placed in the prone position. Sonographic gel is applied to the skin over the back and flank areas to enhance sound-wave conduction. A transducer in contact with and moving across the skin delivers sound waves and measures the echoes. Images of the internal structures are produced. Skin care to remove the gel is all that is needed after ultrasonography.

Renal Arteriography (Angiography). Renal arteriography allows dye to enter the renal blood vessels and generates images to determine blood vessel size and abnormalities. This test has largely been replaced by other imaging techniques (e.g., nuclear renal scans, ultrasonography, computed tomography) and is seldom used as a stand-alone diagnostic procedure. The most common use of renal arteriography is at the time of a renal angioplasty or other intervention.

Cystoscopy and Cystourethroscopy

Patient Preparation. Cystoscopy and cystourethroscopy are operative procedures and require completion of a preoperative checklist and a signed informed consent statement. The physician provides a complete description of and reasons for the procedure, and the nurse reinforces this information. Cystoscopy may be performed for diagnosis or treatment. This test is used to examine for bladder trauma (cystoscopy) or urethral trauma (cystourethroscopy) and to identify causes of urinary tract obstruction. Cystoscopy may be used to remove bladder tumors or an enlarged prostate gland.

Cystoscopy may be performed under general or local anesthesia with sedation. The patient’s age and general health and the expected duration of the procedure are considered in the decision about anesthesia. A light evening meal may be eaten. Usually the patient is NPO after midnight on the night before the cystoscopy. A bowel preparation with laxatives or enemas is performed the evening before the procedure.

Procedure. The cystoscopy is performed in a designated cystoscopic examination room. If the procedure is performed in a surgical suite under general anesthesia, the usual surgical support personnel are present (see Chapter 17). This procedure is often performed in clinics, ambulatory surgery or short-procedure units, or urologist’s office.

Assist the patient onto a table, and after sedation, place him or her in the lithotomy position. After the anesthesia is given and the area cleansed and draped, the urologist inserts a cystoscope through the urethra into the urinary bladder. This examination commonly includes the use of both the cystoscope and the urethroscope.

Follow-up Care. After this procedure with general anesthesia, the patient is returned to a postanesthesia care unit (PACU) or area. If local anesthesia and sedation were used, he or she may be returned directly to the hospital room. Patients undergoing cystoscopic examinations as outpatients are transferred to an area for monitoring before discharge to home. Monitor for airway patency and breathing, changes in vital signs (including temperature), and changes in urine output. Also observe for the complications of bleeding and infection.

A catheter may or may not be present after cystoscopy. The patient without a catheter has urinary frequency as a result of irritation from the procedure. The urine may be pink tinged, but gross bleeding is not expected. Bleeding or the

presence of clots may obstruct the catheter and decrease urine output. Monitor urine output, and notify the physician of obvious blood clots or a decreased or absent urine output. Irrigate the Foley catheter with sterile saline, if prescribed. Notify the physician if the patient has a fever (with or without chills) or an elevated white blood cell (WBC) count, which suggests infection. Urge the patient to take oral fluids to increase urine output (which helps prevent clotting) and to reduce the burning sensation on urination.

Retrograde Procedures. Retrograde means going against the normal flow of urine. A retrograde examination of the ureters and pelves (*pyelogram*), the bladder (*cystogram*), and the urethra (*urethrogram*) involves instilling dye into the lower urinary tract. Because the dye is instilled directly to obtain an outline of the structures desired, the dye does not enter the bloodstream. Therefore the patient is not at risk for dye-induced acute kidney injury or a systemic allergic response.

The patient is prepared for retrograde procedures (retrograde pyelography, retrograde cystography, and retrograde urethrography) in the same way as for cystoscopy. Retrograde x-rays are obtained during the cystoscopy. After placement of the cystoscope by the urologist, catheters are placed into each ureter and contrast dye is instilled into each ureter and renal pelvis. The catheters are removed by the urologist, and x-rays are taken to outline these structures as the dye is excreted. The procedure identifies obstruction or structural abnormalities.

For patients undergoing retrograde cystoscopy or urethrography, contrast dye is instilled similarly into the bladder or urethra. Cystography and urethrography identify structural problems, such as fistulas, diverticula, and tumors.

After retrograde procedures, monitor the patient for infection caused by placing instruments in the urinary tract. Because these procedures are performed during cystoscopic examination, follow-up care is the same as that for cystoscopy.

Other Diagnostic Assessments

Urodynamic Studies. Urodynamic studies examine the processes of voiding and include:

- Tests of bladder capacity, pressure, and tone
- Studies of urethral pressure and urine flow
- Tests of perineal voluntary muscle function

These tests are often used along with voiding urographic or cystoscopic procedures to evaluate problems with urine flow.

Cystometrography (CMG) can determine how well the bladder wall (detrusor) muscle functions and how sensitive it is to stretching as the bladder fills. This test provides information about bladder capacity, bladder pressure, and voiding reflexes.

Explain the procedure, and inform the patient that a urinary catheter may be needed temporarily during the procedure. Ask the patient to void normally. Record the amount, rate of flow, and time of voiding. Insert a urinary catheter to measure the residual urine volume. The cystometer is attached to the catheter, and fluid is instilled via the catheter into the bladder. The point at which the patient first notes a feeling of the urge to void and the point at which he or she notes a strong urge to void are recorded. Bladder capacity and bladder pressure readings are recorded graphically. The patient is asked to void when the bladder instillation is complete (about

500 mL). The residual urine after voiding is recorded, and the catheter is removed. Electromyography of the perineal muscles may be performed during this examination.

For any procedure that involves inserting instruments into the urinary tract, monitor for infection. Record the patient's temperature, the character of the urine, and urine output volume.

Urethral pressure profile (also called a *urethral pressure profilometry [UPP]*) can provide information about the nature of urinary incontinence or urinary retention.

Explain the procedure, and inform the patient that a urinary catheter may be needed temporarily during the procedure. A special catheter with pressure-sensing capabilities is inserted into the bladder. Variations in the pressure of the smooth muscle of the urethra are recorded as the catheter is slowly withdrawn.

As with any study involving inserting instruments into the urinary tract, monitor the patient for manifestations of infection.

Urine stream testing is used to evaluate pelvic muscle strength and the effectiveness of pelvic muscles in stopping the flow of urine. It is useful in assessing urinary incontinence.

Explain the procedure, and reassure the patient that efforts will be made to ensure privacy. The patient is asked to begin urinating. Three to five seconds after urination begins, the examiner gives the patient a signal to stop urine flow. The length of time required to stop the flow of urine is recorded.

Cleaning the perineal area, as after any voiding, is all that is necessary after the urine stream test.

Electromyography (EMG) of the perineal muscles tests the strength of the muscles used in voiding. This information may help identify methods of improving continence. Inform the patient that some mild, temporary discomfort may accompany placement of the electrodes. In EMG of the perineal muscles, electrodes are placed in either the rectum or the urethra to measure muscle contraction and relaxation. After the completion of EMG, administer analgesics as prescribed to promote the patient's comfort.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which assessments are most important for the nurse to perform when monitoring a client after a retrograde cystogram?

- A. Temperature and urine character
- B. Kidney tenderness and flank pain
- C. 24-hour urine volume, BUN and creatinine levels
- D. Angioedema and other indicators of systemic allergic response

Kidney Biopsy

Patient Preparation. Explain that a kidney biopsy can help determine a cause of unexplained kidney problems and can help direct or change therapy. Most kidney biopsies are performed **percutaneously** (through the skin and other tissues) using ultrasound or CT guidance. The patient signs an informed consent. Patients are NPO for 4 to 6 hours before the procedure.

Because of the risk for bleeding after the biopsy, coagulation studies such as platelet count, activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), prothrombin time (PT), and bleeding time are performed before surgery. A blood transfusion may

be needed to correct anemia before biopsy. Hypertension and uremia increase the risk for bleeding, and antihypertensive drugs or dialysis may be prescribed before a biopsy.

Procedure. In a percutaneous biopsy, the nephrologist or radiologist obtains tissue samples without an incision. Patients receive sedation and are monitored throughout the procedure. The patient is placed in the prone position on the procedure table. The entry site is selected after taking preliminary images. The area is prepped and sterilely draped. A local anesthetic is injected, and the physician then inserts the biopsy device into the tissues toward the kidney. Needle depth and placement are confirmed by ultrasound or CT. While the patient holds his or her breath, the needle is advanced into the renal cortex. Samples are then taken with a spring-loaded coring biopsy needle and sent for pathologic study.

Follow-up Care. After a percutaneous biopsy, the major risk is bleeding from the biopsy site. For 24 hours after the biopsy, monitor the dressing site, vital signs, urine output, hemoglobin level, and hematocrit. Even if the dressing is dry and there is no hematoma, the patient could be bleeding from the site. An internal bleed is not readily visible but is suspected with flank pain, decreasing blood pressure, decreasing urine output, or other signs of hypovolemia or shock.

The patient follows a plan of strict bedrest, lying in a supine position with a back roll for additional support for 2 to 6 hours after the biopsy. The head of the bed may be elevated, and the patient may resume oral intake of food and fluids. After bedrest, the patient may have limited bathroom privileges if there is no evidence of bleeding.

Monitor for hematuria, the most common complication of kidney biopsy. Hematuria occurs microscopically in most patients, but 5% to 9% have gross hematuria. This problem usually resolves without treatment in 48 to 72 hours after the biopsy but can persist for 2 to 3 weeks. In rare cases, transfusions and surgery are required. There should be no obvious blood clots in the urine.

The patient may have some local pain after the biopsy. If aching originates at the biopsy site and begins to radiate to

the flank and around the front of the abdomen, bleeding may have started or a hematoma is forming around the kidney. This pattern of discomfort with bleeding occurs because blood in the tissues around the kidney increases pressure on local nerve tracts.

If bleeding occurs, IV fluid, packed red blood cells, or both may be needed to prevent shock. In general, a small amount of bleeding creates enough pressure to compress bleeding sites. This is called a “tamponade effect.” If tamponade does not occur and bleeding is extensive, surgery for hemostasis or even nephrectomy may be needed. A hematoma in, on, or around the kidney may become infected, requiring treatment with antibiotics and surgical drainage.

If no bleeding occurs, the patient can resume general activities after 24 hours. Instruct him or her to avoid lifting heavy objects, exercising, or performing other strenuous activities for 1 to 2 weeks after the biopsy procedure. Driving may also be restricted. Refer to [Chapter 18](#) for general postoperative care for the patient undergoing an open kidney biopsy.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Patient-Centered Care

At the start of the shift, you are assessing a 36-year-old patient 12 hours after a percutaneous biopsy of the left kidney. You observe that the bruising around the site extends about 2 inches past the dressing (a total diameter of 4 inches) and is swollen. The patient rates his pain at a 5 on a 0-to-10 pain-rating scale, which is up from the 3 he reported several hours ago. When you empty the urinal, the urine is pink-tinged. The patient has been lying on his right side for the past several hours and asks if he can change positions.

1. What assessment information will you document in the chart?
2. What additional information should you ask the patient and assess directly?
3. How could you accurately monitor changes in the size of the bruising at the surgical site?
4. What would be the best position for this patient for the next 2 hours?
5. Should you notify the surgeon at this time? Why or why not?

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to NOTICE in a patient with adequate urinary elimination?

Vital signs

- Body temperature is within normal range.
- Blood pressure is within normal range.

Physical assessment

- Daily urine output is within 500 mL of daily fluid intake.
- Skin texture is normal (no edema or superficial crystals present).
- Skin color is appropriate for race with no excessive yellowing, bruising, or petechiae.
- Urine is clear and some variation of yellow in color.
- Patient voids 300 to 500 mL per voiding.
- Patient does not report pain or burning on urination.
- Patient has no difficulty starting or stopping the stream of urine.

- Patient is continent of urine and can maintain continence without sensation of urgency.
- Patient is alert and oriented.

Psychological assessment

- Patient is able to communicate concerns about the urinary tract system.
- Patient is aware and informed about kidney function and diagnostic tests.

Laboratory assessment

- Hematocrit and hemoglobin are within normal limits (no anemia).
- BUN and creatinine are within normal limits.
- Serum electrolytes are within normal ranges.
- Urinalysis shows no bacteria, blood, sediment, or protein.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use sterile technique when inserting a catheter or any other instrument into the urinary system.
- Use Contact Precautions with any patient who has drainage from the genitourinary tract.
- Evaluate risk for kidney injury from diagnostic testing by asking about allergy to radiopaque contrast dye, shellfish, or iodine or adverse reactions following the use of diagnostic agents such as gadolinium in MRI.
- Identify prescribed and over-the-counter drugs that increase risk for kidney dysfunction.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients to clean the perineal area after voiding, after having a bowel movement, and after sexual intercourse.
- Urge all patients to maintain an adequate fluid intake (sufficient to dilute urine to a light yellow color). A minimum of 2 L/day may be recommended unless another health problem requires fluid restriction.
- Teach patients who come into contact with chemicals in their workplaces or for leisure time activities to avoid direct skin or mucous membrane contact with these chemicals.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express concerns about tests of the kidney and urinary tract or about a potential change in kidney function.
- Assess the patient's level of comfort in discussing issues related to elimination and the urogenital area.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.
- Provide as much privacy as possible for patients undergoing examination or testing of the kidney/urinary tract.
- Use language and terminology that the patient can understand during discussions of kidney/urinary assessment.

Physiological Integrity

- Ask the patient about kidney problems in any other members of the family, because some problems have a genetic component.
- Ask the patient about current and past drug use (prescribed, over-the-counter, and illicit), and evaluate drug use for potential nephrotoxicity.
- Assess urine output closely after any procedure in which contrast dye is used IV.
- Assess the patient for bleeding or manifestations of infection after any invasive test of kidney/urinary function.

Care of Patients with Urinary Problems

Chris Winkelman

WEBSITE

<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Renal Stone; Kidney Stone; Nephrolithiasis

Animation: Insertion of Foley Catheter

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges

Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Assess the appropriateness for continuing therapy with indwelling urinary catheters.
2. Use principles of asepsis during catheter insertion.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Encourage everyone to have a daily fluid intake of 1.5 to 2.5 L unless another health problem requires fluid restriction or to have sufficient fluid intake to result in urine output of 2 to 2.5 L daily.
4. Teach women risk-reduction interventions for urinary tract infections.
5. Teach the proper application of pelvic floor exercises to reduce or prevent urinary incontinence.
6. Encourage anyone who comes into contact with chemicals as part of work or hobbies to use appropriate personal protective equipment to reduce the risk for bladder cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

7. Use language the patient is comfortable with when discussing urinary and sexual issues.
8. Encourage patients and families to express their feelings and concerns about a change in urinary elimination.
9. Explain to the patient and family what to expect during tests and procedures for urinary problems.
10. Refer patients with long-term urinary problems to appropriate community resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

11. Coordinate care to prevent urinary tract infections among hospitalized patients.
12. Compare the pathophysiology and manifestations of stress incontinence, urge incontinence, overflow incontinence, mixed incontinence, and functional incontinence.
13. Coordinate nursing care for the patient who has invasive bladder cancer.

The urinary system consists of the ureters, bladder, and urethra. Their functions are to store the urine made by the kidney and eliminate it from the body. These actions do not contribute to the homeostatic purposes of *urinary elimination*. However, when problems in the urinary system interfere with the mechanics of moving urine out of the body, urinary elimination is inadequate and homeostasis of fluids, electrolytes, nitrogenous wastes, and blood pressure is disrupted.

Urinary problems affect the storage or elimination of urine. Both acute and chronic urinary problems are common and costly. More than 20 million people in the United States are treated annually for urinary tract infections, cystitis, kidney and ureter stones, or urinary incontinence (U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010). Although life-threatening complications are rare with urinary problems, patients may have significant functional, physical, and psychosocial changes that reduce quality of life. Nursing interventions are directed

TABLE 69-1 FACTORS CONTRIBUTING TO URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS

FACTOR	MECHANISM
Obstruction	Incomplete bladder emptying creates a continuous pool of urine in which bacteria can grow, prevents flushing out of bacteria, and allows bacteria to ascend more easily to higher structures. Bacteria have a greater chance of multiplying the longer they remain in residual urine. Overdistention of the bladder damages the mucosa and allows bacteria to invade the bladder wall.
Stones (calculi)	Large stones can obstruct urine flow. The rough surface of a stone irritates mucosal surfaces and creates a spot where bacteria can establish and grow. Bacteria can live within stones and cause re-infection.
Vesicoureteral reflux	Bacteria-laden urine is forced backward from the bladder up into the ureters and kidneys, where pyelonephritis can develop. Reflux of sterile urine can cause kidney scarring, which may promote kidney dysfunction.
Diabetes mellitus	Excess glucose in urine provides a rich medium for bacterial growth. Peripheral neuropathy affects bladder innervation and leads to a flaccid bladder and incomplete bladder emptying.
Characteristics of urine	Alkalotic urine promotes bacterial growth. Concentrated urine promotes bacterial growth.
Gender	Women are susceptible to periurethral colonization with coliform bacteria. Use of diaphragms, frequency of intercourse, and a new partner within the past year are associated with urinary tract infection (UTI) in women. Bladder displacement during pregnancy predisposes women to cystitis and the development of pyelonephritis. A diaphragm or pessary that is too large can obstruct urine flow or traumatize the urethra.
Age	Urinary stasis may be caused by incomplete bladder emptying as a result of an enlarged prostate in men and cystocele and prolapse in women. Neuromuscular conditions that cause incomplete bladder emptying, such as Parkinson disease and strokes, affect older adults more frequently. The use of anticholinergic drugs in older adults contributes to delayed bladder emptying. Fecal incontinence contributes to poor perineal hygiene. Hypoestrogenism in older women adversely affects the cells of the vagina and urethra, making them more susceptible to infections.
Sexual activity	Irritation of the perineum and urethra during intercourse can promote migration of bacteria from the perineal area to the urinary tract in some women. Spermicides can alter vaginal pH, increasing potential numbers of pathogens. Inadequate vaginal lubrication may exacerbate potential urethral irritation. Bacteria may be introduced into the man's urethra during anal intercourse or during vaginal intercourse with a woman who has a bacterial vaginitis.
Recent use of antibiotics	Antibiotics change normal protective flora, providing opportunity for pathogenic bacterial overgrowth and colonization.

toward prevention, detection, and management of urologic disorders.

INFECTIOUS DISORDERS

Infections of the urinary tract and kidneys are common, especially among women. Manifestations of urinary tract infection (UTI) account for more than 7 million health care visits and 1 million hospital admissions annually in the United States (U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010). UTIs are the most common health care–acquired infection. Total direct and indirect costs for adult urinary tract infections are estimated at \$1.6 billion each year (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2009).

Urinary tract infections are described by their location in the tract. Acute infections in the urinary tract include *urethritis* (urethra), *cystitis* (bladder), and *prostatitis* (prostate gland). Acute *pyelonephritis* is a kidney infection. The site of infection is important to know because site, along with the specific type of bacteria present, determines treatment. Several risk factors are associated with occurrence of UTIs (Table 69-1).

CYSTITIS

Pathophysiology

Cystitis is an inflammation of the bladder. It can be caused by irritation or, more commonly, by infection from bacteria, viruses, fungi, or parasites. Infectious cystitis is the most common of the UTIs. Noninfectious cystitis is caused by irritation from chemicals or radiation. **Interstitial cystitis** is an inflammatory disease that has no known cause.

Infectious agents, most commonly bacteria, move up the urinary tract from the external urethra to the bladder. Less common, spread of infection through the blood and lymph fluid can occur. Once bacteria enter the urinary tract, several factors influence the outcome (Table 69-2).

The presence of bacteria in the urine is **bacteriuria** and can occur with any urologic infection. When bacteriuria is without symptoms of infection, it is called *colonization*. Colonization, asymptomatic bacteriuria, is more common in older adults. This problem does not appear to progress to acute infection or kidney impairment unless the patient has other pathologic problems, and then it requires treatment.

TABLE 69-2 IMPORTANT FACTORS INFLUENCING THE OUTCOME OF URINARY TRACT INFECTION

FACILITATING ASPECTS	PROTECTIVE ASPECTS
Anatomy Females: Short length of the urethra and its proximity to the vagina and rectum facilitate colonization of coliform bacteria. Males: With age, the prostate enlarges and may obstruct the normal flow of urine, producing stasis. Physiology Females: Pregnancy predisposes a woman to ureteral reflux and subsequent pyelonephritis; with age, the decline in estrogen facilitates colonization of <i>Escherichia coli</i>. In addition, vaginal atrophy can alter urethral competency. Males: With age, prostatic secretions lose their antibacterial characteristics and predispose to bacterial proliferation in the urine. Trauma Females: Vaginal penetration with sexual intercourse may traumatize the urethra and bladder base, leading to postcoital (or “honeymoon”) cystitis; a vaginal diaphragm that is too large can place pressure on the urethra, causing trauma; vaginal childbirth can cause permanent damage to the urethra. Males: Sexually transmitted diseases may cause urethral strictures that obstruct the flow of urine and predispose to urinary stasis. Both males and females: Urethral instrumentation (e.g., catheterization) may disturb the urothelial surface and predispose to adherence of bacteria that would ordinarily not be pathogenic. Infectious Agent Some organisms are better able to adhere to host cells and secrete substances that induce inflammation.	Males: Long length of the urethra and its distance from the rectum provide protection from colonization with coliform bacteria. Females: Well-estrogenized mucosa in the urethra and trigone may inhibit bacterial colonization and enhance urogenital blood flow. Males: Normal prostatic secretions inhibit bacterial growth. Both males and females: Mucin is produced by urothelial cells lining the bladder—this helps maintain mucosal integrity and prevent cellular damage; mucin may also prevent bacteria from adhering to urothelial cells. Females: Adequate lubrication, either natural or artificial, with intercourse may prevent any trauma. A small inoculum (number of microorganisms introduced into the body) is more easily flushed away by the flow of urine.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

UTIs, like other infections, are the result of interactions between a pathogen and the host. Usually, a high bacterial *virulence* (ability to invade and infect) is needed to overcome normal strong host resistance. However, a compromised host is more likely to become infected even with bacteria that have low virulence. Genetically, invading bacteria with special adhesions are more likely to cause ascending UTIs that start in the urethra or bladder and move up into the ureter and kidney. Patient-specific genetic factors such as blood type and ability to produce bladder surface biofilms that protect bacteria may influence the risk for UTI (Bowen & Hellstrom, 2007).

Infectious cystitis is most commonly caused by organisms from the intestinal tract. About 90% of UTIs are caused by *Escherichia coli*. Less common organisms include *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and organisms from the *Proteus* and *Enterobacter* species (Bowen & Hellstrom, 2007).

In most cases, organisms first grow in the perineal area, then move into the urethra as a result of irritation, trauma, or catheterization of the urinary tract, and finally ascend to the bladder. Catheters are the most common factor placing patients at risk for UTIs in the hospital setting. Within 48 hours of catheter insertion, bacterial colonization begins. About 50% of patients with indwelling catheters become infected within 1 week of catheter insertion.

How a catheter-related infection occurs varies between genders. Bacteria from a woman's perineal area are more likely to ascend to the bladder by moving along the outside

of the catheter. In men, bacteria tend to gain access to the bladder from inside the lumen of the catheter. Any break in the closed urinary drainage system allows bacteria to move through the urinary tract. Best practices to reduce the risk for catheter contamination and catheter-related UTIs are listed in Chart 69-1.

Organisms other than bacteria also can cause cystitis. Fungal infections, such as those caused by *Candida*, can occur during long-term antibiotic therapy, because antibiotics reduce normal protective flora. Patients who are severely immunosuppressed, are receiving corticosteroids or other immunosuppressive agents, or have diabetes mellitus or acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) are at higher risk for fungal UTIs.

Viral and parasitic infections are rare and usually are transferred to the urinary tract from an infection at another body site. For example, *Trichomonas*, a parasite found in the vagina, can also be found in the urine. Treatment of the vaginal infection (see Chapter 74) also resolves the UTI.

Noninfectious cystitis may result from chemical exposure, such as to drugs (e.g., cyclophosphamide [Cytoxan, Procytox]), from radiation therapy, and from immunologic responses, as with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE).

Interstitial cystitis is a rare, chronic inflammation of the bladder, urethra, and adjacent pelvic muscles that is not a result of infection. The condition affects women ten times more often than men, and the diagnosis is difficult to make. Manifestations are similar to those of infectious cystitis with voiding occurring as often as 60 times daily, more intense urgency preceding urination, and suprapubic or pelvic pain,

CHART 69-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Minimizing Catheter-Related Infection

- Assess patients daily for those who no longer need indwelling catheters.
- Consider appropriate alternatives to an indwelling catheter.
- Use aseptic routine when handling catheter devices; manipulation can promote an environment favorable to pathogens.
- Select a small-size catheter (14 to 18 Fr with a 5-mL balloon).
- Use strict sterile technique to insert the catheter (in the hospital setting); a break in technique can introduce pathogens into the urinary tract.
- Do not inject more than 10 mL into the balloon.
- Maintain a closed-system irrigation by ensuring that catheter tubing connections are sealed securely; disconnections can introduce pathogens into the urinary tract.
- Avoid routine catheter irrigation.
- Keep urine collection bags below the level of the bladder at all times; elevating the collection bag above the bladder causes reflux of pathogens from the bag into the urinary tract.
- Secure the catheter to the patient's thigh (women) or lower abdomen (men); catheter movement can cause urethral friction and irritation.
- Perform daily catheter care by washing the perineum and proximal portion of the catheter with soap and water and drying gently (removes pathogens and reduces pathogenic population).
- Consider the use of coated catheters for patients requiring indwelling catheters for more than 3 to 5 days. This coating reduces bacterial colonization along the catheter.

Application of antiseptic solutions or antibiotic ointments to the perineal area of catheterized patients has not been demonstrated to have any beneficial effect.

Data from Smith, J. (2003). Indwelling catheter management: From habit to evidence-based practice. *Ostomy and Wound Management*, 49(12), 34-45.

sometimes radiating to the groin, vulva or rectum, that is relieved by voiding. Results from urinalysis and urine culture are negative for infection (Evans & Sant, 2007; Siegel et al., 2008).

Although cystitis is not life threatening, infectious cystitis can lead to life-threatening complications, including pyelonephritis and sepsis. Severe kidney damage is a rare complication unless the patient also has other predisposing factors, such as anatomic abnormalities, pregnancy, obstruction, reflux, calculi, or diabetes.

The spread of the infection from the urinary tract to the bloodstream is termed **urosepsis** and is more common among older adults (Kessenich, 2010). Sepsis from any source is a systemic infection that can lead to overwhelming organ failure, shock, and death. The most common cause of sepsis in the hospitalized patient is a UTI (CDC, 2009). Sepsis has a high mortality and prolongs hospital stays (see Chapter 39).

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of UTI is second only to that of upper respiratory infections in primary care. Patients who have **frequency** (an urge to urinate frequently in small amounts), **dysuria** (pain or burning with urination), and **urgency** (the feeling that urination will occur immediately) account for more than 5 million health care visits annually. About 50% of these patients will have a confirmed UTI (U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The prevalence of UTIs varies with age and gender. Women of any age are more commonly affected with UTIs than are men. In men, the incidence of UTI greatly increases after 73 years of age. In women, the prevalence of UTIs increases from 20% among all women to 50% in those older than 80 years (U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010). Skin and mucous membrane changes from a lack of estrogen appear to account for much of the increased risk in older women. Prostate disease increases risk for UTIs in men.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Although cystitis is common, in many cases it is preventable. In the health care setting, reducing the use of indwelling urinary catheters is a major prevention strategy (Gray, 2010). When catheters must be used, strict attention to sterile technique during insertion can reduce the risk for UTIs as can consistent and adequate perineal and catheter care (see Chart 69-1).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Ensuring that urinary catheters are used appropriately and discontinued as early as possible is everyone's responsibility. Do not allow catheters to remain in place for staff convenience.

Changes in fluid intake patterns, urinary elimination patterns, and hygiene patterns can help prevent or reduce cystitis in the general population. Teach all people to have a minimum fluid intake of 1.5 to 2.5 L daily unless fluid restriction is required for other health problems. Another strategy is to have sufficient fluid intake to cause 2 to 2.5 L of urine daily. Encourage people to drink more water rather than sugar-containing drinks. Teach people to avoid urinary stasis by urinating every 3 to 4 hours rather than waiting until the bladder is greatly distended. Encourage everyone either to shower daily or to wash the perineal and urethral areas daily with mild soap and a water rinse. Teach women to avoid the use of vaginal washes. Other hygiene measures that specifically reduce the risk for cystitis and other UTIs are listed in Chart 69-2.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Frequency, urgency, and dysuria are the common manifestations of a urinary tract infection (UTI), but other manifestations may be present (Chart 69-3). Urine may be cloudy, foul smelling, or blood tinged. Ask the patient about risk factors for UTI during the assessment (see Table 69-1). For noninfectious cystitis, the Pelvic Pain and Urgency/Frequency (PUF) Patient Symptom Scale can identify patients with interstitial cystitis.

Before performing the physical assessment, ask the patient to void so that the urine can be examined and the bladder emptied before palpation. Assess vital signs to help rule out sepsis. Inspect the lower abdomen, and palpate the urinary

CHART 69-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing a Urinary Tract Infection

- Drink at least 2 to 3 L of sugarless fluid every day.
- Be sure to get enough sleep, rest, and nutrition daily.
- [For women] Clean your perineum (the area between your legs) from front to back.
- [For women] Avoid using or wearing irritating substances, such as bubble bath, nylon underwear, and scented toilet tissue. Wear loose-fitting cotton underwear.
- [For women] Empty your bladder before and after intercourse.
- For both women and men, gently wash the perineal area before intercourse.
- Avoid the use of scented or flavored lubricants.
- If you experience burning when you urinate, if you have to urinate frequently, or if you find it difficult to begin urinating, notify your physician or other health care provider right away, especially if you have a chronic medical condition (e.g., diabetes) or are pregnant.
- Empty your bladder as soon as you feel the urge to urinate.
- Empty your bladder regularly (every 4 hours), even if you do not feel the urge to urinate.
- You may try these home therapies:
 - Cranberry juice (pure), 50 mL daily
 - Apple cider vinegar, 2 tablespoons three times daily in juice
 - Vitamin C, 500 mg daily to acidify the urine
- To prevent recurrent infection:
 - Take your prescribed antibiotic or other drug as directed, even after the symptoms go away.
 - Schedule a follow-up appointment for 10 to 14 days after you finish taking the drug. At your follow-up visit, another urine sample may be taken for analysis or culture.

CHART 69-3 KEY FEATURES

Urinary Tract Infection

Common Clinical Manifestations

- Frequency
- Urgency
- Dysuria
- Hesitancy or difficulty in initiating urine stream
- Low back pain
- Nocturia
- Incontinence
- Hematuria
- Pyuria
- Bacteriuria
- Retention
- Suprapubic tenderness or fullness
- Feeling of incomplete bladder emptying

Rare Clinical Manifestations

- Fever
- Chills
- Nausea or vomiting
- Malaise
- Flank pain

Clinical Manifestations that May Occur in the Older Adult

- The only symptom may be something as vague as increasing mental confusion or frequent, unexplained falls.
- A sudden onset of incontinence or a worsening of incontinence may be the only symptom of an early UTI.
- Fever, tachycardia, tachypnea, and hypotension, even without any urinary symptoms, may be signs of urosepsis.
- Loss of appetite, nocturia, and dysuria are common symptoms.

UTI, Urinary tract infection.

bladder. Distention after voiding indicates incomplete bladder emptying.

Using Standard Precautions, examine any lesions around the urethral meatus and vaginal opening. To help differentiate between a vaginal and a urinary tract infection, note whether

there is any vaginal discharge (vaginal discharge and irritation are more indicative of vaginal infection). Women often report burning with urination when normal acidic urine touches labial tissues that are inflamed or ulcerated by vaginal infections or sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). Maintain privacy with drapes during the examination.

The prostate is palpated by digital rectal examination (DRE) for size, change in shape or consistency, and tenderness. The physician or advanced practice nurse performs the DRE.

Laboratory Assessment

Laboratory assessment for a UTI is a urinalysis with testing for leukocyte esterase and nitrate. The combination of a positive leukocyte esterase and nitrate is 68% to 88% sensitive in the diagnosis of a UTI (Bowen & Hellstrom, 2007). Although a urinalysis can include a microscopic count of bacteria, white blood cells (WBCs), and red blood cells (RBCs), this additional testing is more expensive, is time consuming, and may not improve diagnostic accuracy. The presence of more than 20 epithelial cells/high power field (hpf) suggests contamination. The presence of 100,000 colonies/mL or the presence of three or more WBCs (pyuria) with RBCs (hematuria) indicates infection.

A urinalysis is performed on a clean-catch midstream specimen. If the patient cannot produce a clean-catch specimen, you may need to obtain the specimen with a small-diameter (6 Fr) catheter. For a routine urinalysis, 10 mL of urine is needed; smaller quantities are sufficient for culture.

A urine culture confirms the type of organism and the number of colonies. Urine culture is expensive, and results take at least 48 hours. It is indicated when the UTI is complicated or does not respond to usual therapy or the diagnosis is uncertain. A UTI is confirmed when more than 10^5 colony-forming units are in the urine from any patient. In patients who also have symptoms of UTI, as few as 10^3 colony-forming units may allow the diagnosis to be made. The presence of many different types of organisms in low colony counts usually indicates that the specimen is contaminated. Sensitivity testing follows culture results when complicating factors are present (e.g., stones or recurrent infection), when the patient is older, or to ensure the appropriate antibiotics are prescribed.

Occasionally the serum WBC count may be elevated, with the differential WBC count showing a “left shift” (see Chapter 19). This shift indicates that the number of immature WBCs is increasing in response to the infection. As a result, the number of bands, or immature WBCs, is elevated. Left shift most often occurs with urosepsis and rarely occurs with uncomplicated cystitis, which is a local rather than a systemic infection.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

The diagnosis of cystitis is based on the history, physical examination, and laboratory data. If urinary retention and obstruction of urine outflow are suspected, urography, abdominal sonography, or computed tomography (CT) may be needed to locate the site of obstruction or the presence of calculi. Voiding cystourethrography (see Chapter 68) is needed when ureteral reflux is suspected.

Cystoscopy (see Chapter 68) may be performed when the patient has recurrent UTIs (more than three or four a year).

A urine culture is performed first to ensure that no infection is present. If infection is present, the urine is sterilized with antibiotic therapy before the procedure to reduce the risk for sepsis. Cystoscopy identifies abnormalities that increase the risk for cystitis. Such abnormalities include bladder calculi, bladder diverticula, urethral strictures, foreign bodies (e.g., sutures from previous surgery), and **trabeculation** (an abnormal thickening of the bladder wall caused by urinary retention and obstruction). Retrograde pyelography, along with the cystoscopic examination, shows outlines and images of the drainage tract. Areas of obstruction or malformation and the presence of reflux are then identified early.

Cystoscopy is needed to accurately diagnose interstitial cystitis. A urinalysis usually shows WBCs and RBCs but no bacteria. Common findings in interstitial cystitis are a small-capacity bladder, the presence of Hunner's ulcers (a type of bladder lesion), and small hemorrhages after bladder distention.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

The expected outcome is to maintain an optimal urinary elimination pattern. Nursing interventions for the management of cystitis focus on comfort and teaching about drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and prevention measures.

Drug Therapy. Drugs used to treat bacteriuria and promote patient comfort include urinary antiseptics or antibiotics, analgesics, and antispasmodics. Cure of a UTI depends on the antibiotic levels achieved in the urine (Chart 69-4). Oral antifungal agents are usually prescribed for fungal infections. When oral antifungal therapy is not sufficient, amphotericin B is most often given in daily bladder instillations. Antispasmodic drugs decrease bladder spasm and promote complete bladder emptying.

Antibiotic therapy is used for bacterial UTIs (see Chart 69-4). Guidelines indicate that a 3-day, high-dose course of trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole or a fluoroquinolone is effective in treating uncomplicated, community-acquired UTIs in women (Bowen & Hellstrom, 2007). Fluoroquinolones cannot be used to treat UTIs during pregnancy because

of the potential for birth defects. The shorter courses increase adherence and reduce cost. Longer antibiotic treatment (7 to 21 days) and/or different agents are required for hospitalized patients; those with complicating factors, such as pregnancy, indwelling catheters, or stones; and those with diabetes or immunosuppression.

Long-term, low-dose antibiotic therapy is used for chronic, recurring infections caused by structural abnormalities or stones. Trimethoprim 100 mg daily may be used for long-term management of the older patient with frequent UTIs. For women who have recurrent UTIs after intercourse, one low-dose tablet of trimethoprim (TMP) (Proloprim, Trimpex) or TMP/sulfamethoxazole (half or single-strength Bactrim, Cotrim, Septra) or nitrofurantoin (Macrochantin, Nephronex ♣, Novofuran ♣) after intercourse is often prescribed. Estrogen used as an intravaginal cream may prevent recurrent UTIs in the postmenopausal woman, although this therapy is controversial.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Pregnant women with a bacterial UTI require prompt and aggressive treatment because simple cystitis can lead to acute pyelonephritis during pregnancy. Pyelonephritis in pregnancy can cause preterm labor and adversely affect the fetus.

Nutrition Therapy. The diet should include all food groups and include more calories for the increased metabolism caused by infection. Urge patients to drink enough fluid to maintain a diluted urine throughout the day and night unless fluid restriction is required for other health problems. The drinking of 50 mL of concentrated cranberry juice daily appears to decrease the ability of bacteria to adhere to the epithelial cells lining the urinary tract, decreasing the incidence of symptomatic UTIs in some patients. Cranberry juice must be consumed for 3 to 4 weeks to be effective, and the efficacy of cranberry tablets has not been established (Bowen & Hellstrom, 2007). It is important to note that cranberry juice is an irritant to the bladder with interstitial cystitis and should be avoided by patients with this condition. Avoiding caffeine, carbonated beverages, and tomato products may decrease bladder irritation during cystitis.

Comfort Measures. A warm sitz bath taken two or three times a day for 20 minutes may provide comfort and some relief of local symptoms. If burning with urination is severe or urinary retention occurs, teach the patient to sit in the sitz bath and urinate into the warm water.

Surgical Management

Surgery for cystitis treats the conditions that increase the risk for recurrent UTIs (e.g., removal of obstructions and repair of vesicoureteral reflux). Procedures may include cystoscopy (see Chapter 68) to identify and remove calculi or obstructions.

Community-Based Care

Assess the patient's level of understanding of the problem. His or her knowledge about factors that promote the development of cystitis determines the teaching interventions planned.

Teach the patient how to take prescribed drugs. Stress the need for correct spacing of doses throughout the day and the

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Two of the fluoroquinolone antibiotics, Tequin and Noroxin, are designated as sound-alike, look-alike agents with other drugs and could easily be administered in error. Take care to not confuse Tequin with Tegretol, an oral anticonvulsant, or with Ticlid, a platelet inhibitor. Take care to not confuse Noroxin with Neurontin, an oral anticonvulsant.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client prescribed cephalexin (Keflex) for cystitis reports that she has had a severe allergic reaction to penicillin in the past. What is the nurse's best action?

- A. Reassure the client that Keflex is not penicillin.
- B. Place an allergy alert band on the client's wrist.
- C. Notify the prescriber before administering the first Keflex dose.
- D. Highlight this important information in the client's medical record.

CHART 69-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Urinary Tract Infections

DRUG/DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Antimicrobials			
Sulfonamides			
Trimethoprim*/sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim, Bacter-Aid, Septra, Sulfatrim, Sultrex, Roubac ) 160 mg trimethoprim/800 mg sulfamethoxazole orally every 12 hr	Drug reduces bacteria in the urinary tract by direct killing (trimethoprim) and by inhibiting bacterial reproduction (sulfamethoxazole).	Ask patients about drug allergies, especially to sulfa drugs, before beginning drug therapy. Teach patients to drink a full glass of water with each dose and to have an overall fluid intake of at least 3 L daily. Teach patients to keep out of the sun or to wear protective clothing outdoors and use a sunscreen. Caution patients to complete the drug regimen even if the symptoms improve or disappear sooner.	Allergies to sulfa drugs are common and require changing the drug therapy. Sulfamethoxazole can form crystals that precipitate in the kidney tubules. Fluid intake prevents this complication. This drug increases skin sensitivity to the sun and can lead to severe sunburns, even in darker-skinned patients. Not completing the drug regimen can lead to an infection recurrence and to bacterial drug resistance.
Fluoroquinolones			
Ciprofloxacin (Cipro, ProQuin) 250 mg orally twice daily Gatifloxacin  (Tequin, Zymar) 200-400 mg orally or IV once daily Levofloxacin (Levaquin) 400 mg orally daily Lomefloxacin (Maxaquin) 250 mg orally daily Norfloxacin (Noroxin) 400 mg orally twice daily Ofloxacin (Floxin) 200 mg orally twice daily Sparfloxacin (Zagam) 200-400 mg orally daily	Drugs from this class reduce bacteria in the urinary tract by direct killing (bactericidal actions) and by inhibiting bacterial reproduction (bacteriostatic actions).	Teach patients taking the extended-release drugs to swallow them whole, not to crush or chew the tablets. Warn patients to not take the drug within 2 hours of taking an antacid. Teach patients how to take their pulse, to monitor it twice daily while on this drug, and to notify the prescriber if new-onset irregular heartbeats occur. Teach patients to keep out of the sun or to wear protective clothing outdoors and use a sunscreen. Caution patients to complete the drug regimen even if the symptoms improve or disappear sooner.	Crushing or chewing the tablet releases all the drug at once, ruining the extended effect. Many antacids (especially those containing magnesium or aluminum) interfere with drug absorption. This class of drugs can induce serious cardiac dysrhythmias. Most quinolones increase skin sensitivity to the sun and can lead to severe sunburns even in darker-skinned patients. Not completing the drug regimen can lead to an infection recurrence and to bacterial drug resistance.
Penicillins			
Amoxicillin (Amoxil) 500 mg orally every 12 hr Amoxicillin/clavulanate (Augmentin, Clavulin ) 500 mg/125 mg orally every 12 hr	Drugs from this class reduce bacteria in the urinary tract by direct killing (bactericidal actions) as a result of interrupting bacterial cell wall synthesis.	Ask patients about drug allergies to penicillin before beginning drug therapy. Teach patients to take the drug with food. Instruct patients to call the prescriber if severe or watery diarrhea develops. Suggest that women who take oral contraceptives use an additional method of birth control while taking this drug. Caution patients to complete the drug regimen even if the symptoms improve or disappear sooner.	Allergies to penicillin are common and require changing the drug therapy. Taking it with food reduces the risk for GI upset. A complication of penicillin therapy is pseudomembranous colitis, which may require discontinuing the drug. Penicillin appears to reduce the effectiveness of estrogen-containing oral contraceptives. Not completing the drug regimen can lead to an infection recurrence and to bacterial drug resistance.
Cephalosporins			
Cefadroxil (Duricef) 1-2 g orally every 12 hr Cefixime (Suprax) 400 mg orally every 12 to 24 hr	Drugs from this class reduce bacteria in the urinary tract by direct killing (bactericidal actions) as a result of interrupting bacterial cell wall synthesis.	Ask about drug allergies to penicillin or cephalosporins before beginning drug therapy. Instruct patients to call the prescriber if severe or watery diarrhea develops. Caution patients to complete the drug regimen even if the symptoms improve or disappear sooner.	Drugs in this class are structurally similar to penicillin. Anyone with allergies to penicillin is likely to be allergic to the cephalosporins. A complication of penicillin therapy is pseudomembranous colitis, which may require discontinuing the drug. Not completing the drug regimen can lead to an infection recurrence and to bacterial drug resistance.

Continued

CHART 69-4 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Urinary Tract Infections—cont'd

DRUG/DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Fosfomycin (Monurol) 3 g orally as a one-time dose	This drug reduces bacteria in the urinary tract by direct killing (bactericidal actions) as a result of interrupting bacterial cell wall synthesis.	Instruct patients to mix the contents of a package in about $\frac{1}{2}$ cup of cold water, stir well, and drink all the liquid. Avoid taking this drug when also taking metoclopramide or any other drug that increases GI motility.	This oral drug is available as granules that must be dissolved before taking. Drugs that increase GI motility reduce the absorption of fosfomycin.
Urinary Antiseptics			
Nitrofurantoin (Furadantin, Macrobid, Macrodantin, Nephronex  , Urotoin) 100 mg orally every 12 hr	Drugs from this class usually reduce bacteria in the urinary tract by inhibiting bacterial reproduction (bacteriostatic actions).	Teach patients to shake the bottle well before measuring the drug. Suggest that patients obtain a calibrated spoon for liquid drugs and to not use household spoons. Teach patients to drink a full glass of water with each dose and to have an overall fluid intake of at least 3 L daily. Caution patients to complete the drug regimen even if the symptoms improve or disappear sooner.	Drug is a suspension and requires shaking to ensure homogeneity. Household spoons are not accurate for measuring drugs. Drug precipitates in the kidney tubules and damages the kidney. Fluid intake prevents this complication. Not completing the drug regimen can lead to an infection recurrence and to bacterial drug resistance.
Bladder Analgesics			
Phenazopyridine (Azo-Dine, Prodim, Pyridate, Pyridium, Uristat, Phenazo ) 200 mg orally 3 times daily, after meals	Drug reduces bladder pain and burning on urination by exerting a topical analgesic or local anesthetic effect on the mucosa of the urinary tract.	Remind patients that this drug will not treat an infection, only the symptoms. Teach patients to take the drug with or immediately after a meal. Warn patients that urine will turn red or orange.	Drug does not have any antibacterial actions. Food reduces the risk for GI disturbances. This expected response to the drug may stain clothing or toilets.
Antispasmodics			
Hyoscyamine (Anaspaz, Cystospaz, many others) 0.125 mg-0.25 mg orally 3 to 4 times daily	Drug relieves bladder spasms by inhibiting nerve stimulation to the bladder muscle.	Teach patients to notify the prescriber if blurred vision or other eye problems, confusion, dizziness or fainting spells, fast heartbeat, fever, or difficulty passing urine occurs. Teach patients to wear dark glasses in sunlight or other bright-light areas.	These are manifestations of drug toxicity. Drug dilates the pupil and increases eye sensitivity to light.

*Trimethoprim can be given alone to patients with a sulfa allergy.

need to complete all of the prescribed drugs. If the drug will change the color of the urine, as it does with phenazopyridine (Pyridium, Urogesic, Phenazo ) , inform the patient to expect this change. Offer techniques for remembering the drug schedule, such as the use of a daily calendar or the association of drugs with usual activities (e.g., mealtimes).

Patients may associate symptoms of discomfort with sexual activities and have feelings of guilt and embarrassment. Open and sensitive discussions with a woman who has recurrences of UTI after sexual intercourse can help her find techniques to handle the problem (see [Chart 69-2](#)). Explore with her the factors that contribute to her infections, such as sexual penetration when the bladder is full, diaphragm use, and her general resistance to infection. Some positions during intercourse may reduce urethral irritation and subsequent cystitis. Remind the patient that although perineal washing before intercourse is helpful, vigorous cleaning of the perineum with harsh soaps and vaginal douching may irritate the perineal tissues and increase the risk for UTI. At the patient's request, discuss the problem with her and her partner to help them find ways of maintaining their intimate relationship.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The 26-year-old female patient with recurrent cystitis tells you that she now “holds” her urine all day and drinks very little to prevent the need to use the public toilet while at work. She is convinced that the toilet is the source of her repeated bladder infections.

1. Is this patient's understanding of the cause of recurrent cystitis correct? Why or why not?
2. What other assessment data should you obtain and why?
3. What will you tell her about the effectiveness of her actions to reduce the need to urinate at a public toilet?
4. What techniques could you suggest for her to use a public toilet for urination?

URETHRITIS

Pathophysiology

Urethritis is an inflammation of the urethra that causes symptoms similar to urinary tract infection (UTI). In men, manifestations include burning or difficulty urinating and a discharge from the urethral meatus. The most common cause

of urethritis in men is sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). These include gonorrhea or nonspecific urethritis caused by *Ureaplasma* (a gram-negative bacterium), *Chlamydia* (a sexually transmitted gram-negative bacterium), or *Trichomonas vaginalis* (a protozoan found in both the male and female genital tract).

In women, urethritis causes manifestations similar to those of bacterial cystitis. Urethritis is known by several other terms: *pyuria-dysuria syndrome*, *frequency-dysuria syndrome*, *trigonitis syndrome*, and *urethral syndrome*. Urethritis is most common in postmenopausal women and appears to be caused by tissue changes related to low estrogen levels.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Ask the patient about a history of STD, painful or difficult urination, discharge from the penis or vagina, and discomfort in the lower abdomen. Urinalysis may show **pyuria** (white blood cells [WBCs] in the urine) without a large number of bacteria. However, results of urethral culture may indicate an STD. In women, the diagnosis may be made by excluding cystitis when urinalysis and urethral culture are negative for bacteria but symptoms persist. In such cases, pelvic examination may reveal tissue changes from low estrogen levels in the vagina. Urethroscopy may show low estrogen changes with inflammation of urethral tissues.

STDs and infection are treated with antibiotic therapy. More information on STDs can be found in [Chapter 76](#).

Postmenopausal women often have improvement in their urethral symptoms with the use of estrogen vaginal cream. Estrogen cream applied locally to the vagina increases the amount of estrogen in the urethra as well, and irritating symptoms are reduced.

NONINFECTIOUS DISORDERS

URETHRAL STRICTURES

Urethral strictures are narrowed areas of the urethra. These problems may be caused by complications of an STD (usually gonorrhea) and by trauma during catheterization, urologic procedures, or childbirth. About one third of urethral strictures have no obvious cause. Strictures occur more often in men than in women. They may be a factor in other urologic problems, such as recurrent UTIs, urinary incontinence, and urinary retention.

The most common symptom of urethral stricture is obstruction of urine flow. Strictures rarely cause pain. Because urine stasis can result when flow is obstructed, the patient with a stricture is at risk for developing a UTI and may have overflow incontinence. **Overflow incontinence** is the involuntary loss of urine when the bladder is overdistended. Assess the patient for these two problems.

A urethral stricture is treated surgically. Dilation of the urethra (using a local anesthetic) is only a temporary measure, not a curative one. Stent placement can be used in some patients. The best chance of long-term cure is with **urethroplasty**, which is the surgical removal of the affected area with or without grafting to create a larger opening. The recurrence rate after surgery is still high, and most patients need repeated procedures. The urethral stricture location and length are the

most important factors affecting choice of interventions and recovery.

URINARY INCONTINENCE

Pathophysiology

Continence is the control over the time and place of urination and is unique to humans and some domestic animals. It is a learned behavior in which a person can suppress the urge to urinate until a socially appropriate location is available (e.g., a toilet). Efficient bladder emptying (i.e., coordination between bladder contraction and urethral relaxation) is needed for continence.

Incontinence is an involuntary loss of urine severe enough to cause social or hygienic problems. It is *not* a normal consequence of aging or childbirth and often is a stigmatizing and an underreported health problem. Many people suffer in silence, are socially isolated, and may be unaware that treatment is available. In addition, the cost of incontinence can be enormous.

Continence occurs when pressure in the urethra is greater than pressure in the bladder. For normal voiding to occur, the urethra must relax and the bladder must contract with enough pressure and duration to empty completely. Voiding should occur in a smooth and coordinated manner under a person's conscious control. Incontinence has several possible causes and can be either temporary or chronic ([Table 69-3](#)). Temporary causes usually do not involve a disorder of the urinary tract. The most common forms of adult urinary incontinence are stress incontinence, urge incontinence, overflow incontinence, functional incontinence, and a mixed form.

Stress incontinence is the most common type. Its main feature is the loss of small amounts of urine during coughing, sneezing, jogging, or lifting. In the continent person, the urethra can be relaxed and tightened under conscious control because skeletal muscles of the pelvic floor surround it. When a person feels the urge to urinate, the conscious contraction of the urethra can override a bladder contraction if the urethral contraction is strong enough.

Patients with *stress incontinence* cannot tighten the urethra enough to overcome the increased bladder pressure caused by contraction of the detrusor muscle. This is common after childbirth, when the pelvic muscles are stretched and weakened. The weakened pelvic floor allows the urethra to move during exertion. If the pelvic muscles are not strengthened, this condition continues. Low estrogen levels after menopause also contribute to stress incontinence. Vaginal, urethral, and pelvic floor muscles become thin and weak without estrogen.

Urge incontinence is the perception of an urgent need to urinate as a result of bladder contractions regardless of the volume of urine in the bladder. Normally when the bladder is full, contraction of the smooth muscle fibers of the bladder detrusor muscle signals the brain that it is time to urinate. Continent persons override that signal and relax the detrusor muscle for the time it takes to locate a toilet. Those who suffer from urge incontinence cannot suppress the signal and have a sudden strong urge to void and often leak large amounts of urine at this time. Urge incontinence is also known as an *overactive bladder* (OAB). Overactivity may have no known cause or may be the result of abnormal detrusor contractions

TABLE 69-3 TYPES OF URINARY INCONTINENCE

TYPE	DEFINITION/DESCRIPTION	CAUSE	CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS
Stress incontinence	The involuntary loss of urine during activities that increase abdominal and detrusor pressure. Patients cannot tighten the urethra sufficiently to overcome the increased detrusor pressure; leakage of urine results.	Weakening of bladder neck supports; associated with childbirth. Intrinsic sphincter deficiency caused by such congenital conditions as epispadias (abnormal location of the urethra on the dorsum of the penis) or myelomeningocele. Acquired anatomic damage to the urethral sphincter (from repeated incontinence surgeries, prostatectomy, radiation therapy, and trauma).	Urine loss with physical exertion, cough, sneeze, or exercise. Usually only small amounts of urine are lost with each exertion. Normal voiding habits (≤ 8 times per day, ≤ 2 times per night). Post-void residual usually ≤ 50 mL. Pelvic examination shows hypermobility of the urethra or bladder neck with Valsalva maneuvers.
Urge incontinence	The involuntary loss of urine associated with a strong desire to urinate. Patients cannot suppress the signal from the bladder muscle to the brain that it is time to urinate.	Unknown.	An abrupt and strong urge to void. May have loss of large amounts of urine with each occurrence.
Detrusor hyperreflexia (reflex incontinence)	The abnormal detrusor contractions result from neurologic abnormalities.	Central nervous system (CNS) lesions from stroke, multiple sclerosis, and parasacral spinal cord lesions. Local irritating factors such as caffeine, medications, or bladder tumor.	Post-void residual ≤ 50 mL.
Overflow incontinence	The involuntary loss of urine associated with overdistention of the bladder when the bladder's capacity has reached its maximum. The urethra is obstructed, so it fails to relax sufficiently to allow urine to flow, resulting in incomplete bladder emptying or complete urinary retention, causing overflow incontinence.	Diabetic neuropathy; side effects of medication; after radical pelvic surgery or spinal cord damage; outlet obstruction. Causes external to the mechanism of the urethra: an enlarged prostate (male patients) and large genital prolapse (female patients). When the cause is intrinsic to the urethra, abnormal contraction of the skeletal muscle occurs, causing obstruction. This condition, called detrusor dyssynergia, is seen in patients with spinal cord injuries and multiple sclerosis.	Bladder distention, often up to the level of the umbilicus. Constant dribbling of urine.
Mixed incontinence	A combination of stress, urge, and overflow incontinence.	As with each separate disorder.	As with each separate disorder.
Functional incontinence	Leakage of urine caused by factors other than disease of the lower urinary tract.		Quantity and timing of urine leakage vary; patterns are difficult to discern.
Transient causes	Transient causes improve with treatment of the underlying condition.	Loss of cognitive functioning. Loss of awareness that urination is to occur in a socially acceptable place. Abnormal openings in the urinary tract, such as a fistula or diverticulum. Drugs, such as sedatives, hypnotics, diuretics, anticholinergics, decongestants, antihypertensives, and calcium channel blockers. Diabetes insipidus or psychogenic polydipsia. Inability to get to toileting facilities. Direct bladder pressure or urethral obstruction.	Altered mental state, as in delirium, confusion, depression, dementia, sepsis, mental illness, or severe psychological stress. Urinary drainage noted from areas other than the urinary meatus. Some drugs cause altered mental state; others cause increased urine production.
Permanent causes	Permanent causes are organic but may be improved with treatment.	Cognitive impairment. Traumatic or surgical effects. Those factors contributing to stress incontinence, urge incontinence, and overflow incontinence. Structural or functional defects of the bladder or the sphincters. Injuries or diseases of the spinal cord, brainstem, or cerebral cortex (neurogenic bladder). Congenital defects, including exstrophy of the bladder (bladder turned "inside out") and spina bifida.	Increased urine output. Restrains, restricted mobility. Constipation or fecal impaction. Clinical manifestations depend on the cause.

related to other problems. Such problems include stroke and other neurologic problems, other urinary tract problems, and irritation from concentrated urine or artificial sweeteners, caffeine, alcohol, and citric intake. Drugs, such as diuretics, and nicotine can also irritate the bladder.

Mixed incontinence is the presence of more than one type of incontinence. Often urine loss is related to both stress and urge incontinence. The manifestations mimic more than one subtype. This category is more common in older women.

Overflow incontinence occurs when the detrusor muscle fails to contract and the bladder becomes overdistended. This type of incontinence (also known as *reflex incontinence*) occurs when the bladder has reached its maximum capacity and some urine must leak out to prevent bladder rupture. Causes for the underactive (acontractile) bladder may or may not be determined.

The urethra can be obstructed and fail to relax enough to allow urine flow. Incomplete bladder emptying or urinary retention from urethral obstruction results in overflow incontinence.

Functional incontinence is incontinence occurring as a result of factors other than the abnormal function of the bladder and urethra. A common factor is the loss of cognitive function in patients affected by dementia. To maintain continence, a person must be aware that urination needs to occur in a socially acceptable place. Patients with dementia may not have that awareness.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Incontinence may have temporary or permanent causes. Evaluation of the incontinent patient means considering all possible causes, beginning with those that are temporary and correctable. Surgical and traumatic causes of urinary incontinence are related to procedures or surgery in the lower pelvic structures, areas that contain complex nerve pathways. Radical urologic, prostatic, and gynecologic procedures for treatment of pelvic cancers may result in urinary incontinence. Injury to segments S2 to S4 of the spinal cord may cause incontinence from impairment of normal nerve pathways.

Inappropriate bladder contraction may result from disorders of the brain and nervous system or from bladder irritation due to chronic infection, stones, chemotherapy, or radiation therapy. Failure of bladder contraction occurs with neuropathy of diabetes mellitus and syphilis.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

Many factors contribute to urinary incontinence in older adults (Chart 69-5). An older person may have decreased mobility from many causes. In inpatient settings, mobility is limited when the older patient is restrained or placed on bedrest. Vision and hearing impairments may also prevent the patient from locating a call light to notify the nurse or assistive personnel of the need to void. Assess for these factors, and minimize them to prevent urinary incontinence. Getting out of bed to urinate is a common cause of falls among older adults.

Incidence/Prevalence

Incontinence is a major health problem that affects more than 13 million people of all ages in the United States (Agency for Health Care Policy and Research [AHCPR], 2001a); about 85% are women. It is most common in older adults, including

CHART 69-5 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Factors Contributing to Urinary Incontinence*

Drugs

- Central nervous system depressants, such as opioid analgesics, decrease the patient's level of consciousness and the urge to void, and they contribute to constipation.
- Diuretics cause frequent voiding, often of large amounts of urine.
- Multiple drugs can contribute to changes in mental status or mobility, and they can irritate the bladder.
- Anticholinergic drugs or drugs with anticholinergic side effects are especially challenging, because they affect both cognition and the ability to void. Monitor patient responses to these drugs early in treatment.

Disease

- Cerebrovascular accidents and other neurologic disorders decrease mobility, sensation, or cognition.
- Arthritis decreases mobility and causes pain.
- Parkinson disease causes muscle rigidity and an inability to initiate movement.

Depression

- Depression decreases the energy necessary to maintain continence.
- Decreased self-esteem and feelings of self-worth decrease the importance to the patient of maintaining continence.

Inadequate Resources

- Patients who need assistive devices (e.g., eyeglasses, cane, walker) may be afraid to ambulate without them or without personal assistance.
- Products that help patients manage incontinence are often costly.
- No one may be available to assist the patient to the bathroom or help with incontinence products.

*These factors are in addition to the physiologic changes of aging given in Chapter 3.

15% to 30% of community-dwelling older people and at least one half of all nursing home residents (AHCPR, 2001a).

In adult patients younger than 65 years, urinary incontinence occurs twice as often in women as in men. Incontinence in women may occur after one or more pregnancies. Men in this age-group rarely experience incontinence unless they have prostate disease or a spinal cord injury.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Effective screening includes asking patients to respond “always,” “sometimes,” or “never” to these questions:

- Do you ever leak urine or water when you don't want to?
- Do you ever leak urine or water when you cough, laugh, or exercise?
- Do you ever leak urine or water on the way to the bathroom?
- Do you ever use pads, tissue, or cloth in your underwear to catch urine?

If any answer is “always” or “sometimes,” proceed with a focused assessment (AHCPR, 2001b) (Chart 69-6).

CHART 69-6 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Urinary Incontinence

Note the presence of risk factors for urinary incontinence:	Detail the symptoms of urinary incontinence:
• Age • If female, menopausal status • Neurologic disease: • Parkinson disease • Dementia • Multiple sclerosis • Stroke • Spinal injury • Diabetes mellitus • Childbirth • Urologic procedures • Prescribed and over-the-counter drugs • Bowel patterns • Stress/anxiety level	• Leakage • Frequency • Urgency • Nocturia • Sensation of full bladder before leakage
	Obtain a 24-hour intake and output record or a voiding diary:
	• Time and amount of oral intake and continent voidings • Time and estimated amount of incontinent leakages • Activity around the time of leakage
	Assess the patient's:
	• Mobility • Self-care ability • Cognitive ability • Communication patterns
	Assess the environment for barriers to toileting:
	• Privacy • Restrictive clothing • Access to toilet

Data from Mather, K. (2002). Nursing assistants' perceptions of their ability to provide continence care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 23(2), 76-81; and Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR). (1996; revised 2001). *Urinary incontinence in adults: Acute and chronic management. Clinical practice guideline*. AHCPR Publication No. 96-0682. Rockville, MD: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; www.ahcpr.gov/clinic/uhistory.html (Clinical Practice Guidelines Online: *Urinary Incontinence Guideline: Real World Examples of Use*).

Incontinence may be underreported because health care professionals do not ask patients about urine loss. *Do not assume that patients will volunteer the information without specifically being asked.*

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess the abdomen to estimate bladder fullness, to rule out palpable hard stool, and to evaluate bowel sounds. Determine the amount of *residual urine* (urine remaining in the bladder immediately after voiding) by portable ultrasound. With a health care provider's order, catheterizing the patient immediately after voiding can also be used to determine residual volume. Urinary incontinence is confirmed by evaluating the force and character of the urine stream during voiding. Asking the patient to cough while wearing a perineal pad is useful in evaluating stress incontinence; a wet pad on forceful coughing may indicate stress incontinence. A cystometrogram (see Chapter 68) is used most often for diagnosis.

For women, inspect the external genitalia to determine whether there is apparent urethral or uterine prolapse, **cystocele** (herniation of the bladder into the vagina), or rectocele. These conditions occur with pelvic floor muscle weakness. An advanced practice nurse puts on an examination glove and inserts two fingers into the vagina to assess the strength of these muscles. Strength is described as *weak*, *adequate*, or *strong* based on the amount of pressure felt by the nurse as the patient tightens her vaginal muscles. Describe and document the color, consistency, and odor of any secretions from the genitourinary orifices. The urine stream

interruption test (see Chapter 68) is another method of determining pelvic muscle strength. For men, inspect the urethral meatus for any discharge.

A digital rectal examination (DRE) is performed by the physician or advanced practice nurse on both male and female patients. It provides information about the nerve integrity to the bladder. The examiner determines whether there is tactile sensation in the anal area by observing whether the rectal sphincter is relaxed or contracted on digital insertion. Because nerve supply to the bladder is similar to nerve supply to the rectum, the presence of tactile sensation and a rectal sphincter that contracts suggest that the nerve supply to the bladder is intact. The health care provider assesses for prostate enlargement in men as a possible cause of incontinence.

Laboratory Assessment

A urinalysis is useful to rule out infection. This test is the first step in the assessment of incontinent patients of any age. The presence of red blood cells (RBCs), white blood cells (WBCs), leukocyte esterase, or nitrites is an indication for culturing the urine. Any infection is treated before further assessment of incontinence.

Imaging Assessment

Imaging is rarely needed unless surgery is being considered. Urography is most useful for locating the kidneys and ureters. A voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG) may be performed to assess the size, shape, support, and function of the bladder. Problems identified by this test include obstruction (especially prostate obstruction in men) and post-void residual (PVR). Assessment of PVR also can be made with a portable ultrasonographic bladder scanner.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Patients who have unusual symptoms, medical complications, or a history of failed incontinence surgery may need urodynamic studies to determine the cause of their incontinence. These studies are not standardized procedures and may consist of any combination of these tests:

- Cystourethroscopy to examine the inside of the bladder and urethra directly
- Cystometrogram (CMG) to measure the pressure inside the bladder as it fills
- Urethral pressure profilometry (UPP) to measure the pressure in the urethra in relation to the bladder pressure during various activities
- Uroflowmetry to measure rate and degree of bladder emptying

Testing may take several hours and more than one visit.

Electromyography (EMG) of the pelvic muscles may be a part of the urodynamic studies. A perineometer is a tampon-shaped instrument inserted into the vagina to measure the strength of pelvic muscle contractions. The graph shows the amplitude of muscle contraction to the patient as a method of biofeedback.

ANALYSIS

Priority problems for patients with urinary incontinence include:

1. Stress Urinary Incontinence related to weak pelvic muscles and structural supports

2. Urge Urinary Incontinence related to decreased bladder capacity, bladder spasms, diet, and neurologic impairment
3. Reflex Urinary Incontinence related to neurologic impairment
4. Functional Urinary Incontinence related to impaired cognition or neuromuscular limitations
5. Complete urinary incontinence (mixed) related to many causes

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Several interventions are useful for each type of incontinence in addition to drugs, surgical repair, and nutrition therapy.

Reducing Stress Urinary Incontinence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With appropriate therapy, the patient with urinary incontinence is expected to develop urinary continence. Indicators include that the patient rarely or never demonstrates these actions:

- Urine leakage between voidings
- Urine leakage with increased abdominal pressure (e.g., sneezing, laughing, lifting)

Interventions. Initial interventions for patients with stress incontinence include keeping a diary, behavioral interventions, and drugs. Surgery also may be an option if other interventions are not effective. Explain the purpose of a detailed diary in which the patient records times of urine leakage, activities, and foods eaten. The diary is then used by the health care provider to plan and evaluate interventions. Collection devices, absorbent pads, and undergarments may be used during the sometimes lengthy process of assessment and treatment and by those patients who elect not to pursue further interventions.

Nonsurgical Management. Drug therapy and behavioral interventions (primarily diet and exercise) for stress incontinence require the patient's active participation for success. Nursing interventions focus on teaching patients about the drugs and behavioral strategies and on providing ongoing encouragement, clarification, and support to maximize intervention effects.

Pelvic floor (Kegel) exercise therapy for women with stress incontinence strengthens the muscles of the pelvic floor (circumvaginal muscles). These muscles become strengthened, as any other skeletal muscle does, by frequent, systematic, and repeated contractions.

The most important step in teaching pelvic muscle exercises is to help the patient learn which muscle to exercise. During the pelvic examination in women and the rectal examination in men or women, instruct the patient to tighten the pelvic muscles around your fingers. Then provide feedback about the strength of the contraction. Biofeedback devices, such as electromyography or perineometers (see discussion on p. 1500 in the Other Diagnostic Assessment section), measure the strength of contraction. Retention of a vaginal weight also shows that the patient has identified the proper muscle. Starting and stopping the urine stream or stopping the passage of flatus also indicates that the patient has correctly identified the pelvic muscles.

Instructions for pelvic muscle exercises are given in [Chart 69-7](#). Although improvement may take several months, most patients notice a positive change after 6 weeks. Teach patients to continue the exercises to maintain the improvement.

CHART 69-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Pelvic Muscle Exercises

- The pelvic muscles are composed of a sling of muscles that support your bladder, urethra, and vagina. Like any other muscles in your body, you can make your pelvic muscles stronger by alternately contracting (tightening) and relaxing them in regular exercise periods. By strengthening these muscles, you will be able to stop your urine flow more effectively.
- To identify your pelvic muscles, sit on the toilet with your feet flat on the floor about 12 inches apart. Begin to urinate, and then try to stop the urine flow. Do not strain down, lift your bottom off the seat, or squeeze your legs together. When you start and stop your urine stream, you are using your pelvic muscles.
- To perform pelvic muscle exercises, tighten your pelvic muscles for a slow count of 10 and then relax for a slow count of 10. Do this exercise 15 times while you are lying down, sitting up, and standing (a total of 45 exercises). Repeat—and this time rapidly contract and relax the pelvic muscles 10 times. This should take no more than 10 to 12 minutes for all three positions, or 3 to 4 minutes for each set of 15 exercises.
- Begin with 45 exercises a day in three sets of 15 exercises each. You will notice faster improvement if you can do this twice a day, or a total of 20 minutes each day. Remember to exercise in all three positions so your muscles learn to squeeze effectively despite your position. At first, it is helpful to have a designated time and place to do these exercises because you will have to concentrate to do them correctly. After you have been doing them for several weeks, you will notice improvement in your control of urine. However, many people report that improvement may take as long as 3 months.

Nutrition therapy in the form of weight reduction is helpful for obese patients because stress incontinence is made worse by increased abdominal pressure from obesity. Teach the patient to avoid alcohol, nicotine, artificial sweeteners, citrus, and caffeine (bladder irritants). Stress the importance of maintaining an adequate fluid intake, especially water. Refer the patient to the dietitian as needed.

Drug therapy can be useful for some people with stress incontinence. Because bladder pressure is greater than urethral resistance in patients with stress incontinence, drugs may be used to improve urethral resistance ([Chart 69-8](#)).

Estrogen is used to treat postmenopausal women with stress incontinence, although it is not known exactly how this drug helps improve continence. Estrogen may increase the blood flow and tone of the muscles around the vagina and urethra, thus improving the patient's ability to contract those muscles during times of increased intra-abdominal stress.

Vaginal cone therapy involves using a set of five small, cone-shaped weights. They are of equal size but of varying weights and are used together with pelvic muscle exercise. The woman inserts the lightest cone, labeled 1, into her vagina ([Fig. 69-1](#)), with the string to the outside, for a 1-minute test period. If she can hold the first cone in place without its slipping out while she walks around, she proceeds to the second cone, labeled 2, and repeats the procedure. The patient begins her treatment with the heaviest cone she can comfortably hold in her vagina for the 1-minute test period. Treatment periods are 15 minutes twice a day. When the patient can comfortably hold the cone in her vagina for the

15-minute period, she progresses to the next heaviest weight. Treatment is completed with the cone labeled 5.

Weighted vaginal cones can help strengthen the pelvic muscles and decrease stress incontinence but may not help pelvic prolapse. Vaginal cones do not require a prescription.

Other interventions for stress incontinence include behavior modification, psychotherapy, electrical stimulation devices to strengthen urethral contractions, and urethral plugs. Many intravaginal and intrarectal electrical stimulation devices have been used with varying degrees of success. More research is needed to determine the ideal level of stimulation and methods of reducing discomfort before electrical stimulation becomes a standard treatment for incontinence.

One brand of urethral plug is the Reliance insert. It is like a tiny tampon that the patient inserts into the urethra. After insertion, the patient inflates a tiny balloon, which rests at the bladder neck and prevents the flow of urine. To void, the patient pulls a string to deflate the balloon and removes the device. The applicator is reusable, although the tampon part is disposed of after each void.

Surgical Management. Stress incontinence may be corrected by vaginal, abdominal, or retropubic surgeries. Success rates vary between 50% and 90% for most procedures, but these rates are difficult to evaluate because of the varying

definitions of cure. Cure also may vary between short-term and long-term (over 5 years) results. Complications can be significant, with rates ranging from less than 2% for collagen or siloxane injection to 50% for bladder neck suspension.

Preoperative Care. Teach the patient about the procedure, and clarify the surgeon's explanation of events surrounding the surgery. Extensive urodynamic testing (see [Chapter 68](#)) is often performed before surgery, and you must explain the need for such thorough assessment to the patient and family.

Operative Procedures. The procedures used for women include repositioning the urethra and bladder, changing the structure of the involved tissues, or inserting artificial devices to improve function ([Table 69-4](#)).

Postoperative Care. After surgery, assess for and intervene to prevent or detect complications. For prevention of movement or traction on the bladder neck, secure the urethral catheter with tape or a tube holder. If a suprapubic catheter is used instead of a urethral catheter, monitor the dressing for urine leakage and other drainage. Catheters are usually in place until the patient can urinate easily and has residual urine volume after voiding of less than 50 mL. (See [Chapters 16 and 18](#) for a discussion of general care before and after surgery.)

CHART 69-8 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Urinary Incontinence

DRUG/DOSAGE	PURPOSE/ACTION	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Estrogen (Cenestin, Cenestin, Enjuvia, Premarin, C.E.S. ) 0.3-1.25 mg orally daily OR 2-4 g vaginal cream every other day	This drug reduces incontinence, possibly by improving vaginal and urethral blood flow and tone.	Teach patients to report any unusual vaginal bleeding to their health care provider. Teach patients to avoid smoking while on this drug and to report any calf pain or swelling.	Estrogen increases the risk for endometrial cancer. Estrogen increases the risk for thrombophlebitis, especially among women who smoke.
Anticholinergics/Antispasmodics			
Oxybutynin (Ditropan) 5 mg orally 3-4 times daily; (Ditropan XL) 5-10 mg orally daily Tolterodine (Detrol) 2 mg orally twice daily; (Detrol LA) 4 mg orally daily Propantheline (Pro-Banthine, Propanthel ) 7.5-30 mg orally 3-4 times daily Dicyclomine (Barmine, Bentyl) 10-40 mg orally 3-4 times daily Trospium (Sanctura) 20 mg orally every 12 hr	These drugs reduce incontinence by causing bladder muscle relaxation and suppressing the urge to void.	Ask whether the patient has glaucoma before starting the drug. Suggest that patients increase fluid intake and use hard candy to moisten the mouth. Teach patients to increase fluid intake and the amount of dietary fiber. Teach patients to monitor urine output and to report an output significantly lower than intake to the health care provider. Instruct patients taking the extended-release forms of these drugs not to chew or crush the tablet/capsule	Anticholinergics can increase intraocular pressure and make glaucoma worse. Dry mouth is a common side effect of drugs in this category. Constipation is a common side effect of drugs in this category. Drugs in this category can cause urinary retention. Crushing or chewing the tablet/capsule releases all the drug at once, ruining the extended effect and increasing the possibility of side effects
Tricyclic Antidepressants			
Imipramine (Tofranil, Novo-Pramine ) 25-100 mg orally 4 times daily Desipramine (Norpramin) 10-25 mg orally 3 times daily Nortriptyline (Pamelor, Aventyl) 10-25 mg orally 3 times daily	Drugs from this class have some anticholinergic actions and also block acetylcholine receptors. Both actions can relieve urinary incontinence.	Warn patients not to take these drugs with any other tricyclic antidepressants or MAO inhibitors. Teach patients to change positions slowly, especially in the morning. Teach patients the same interventions as for anticholinergic agents.	These drugs prolong the effects of catecholamines (epinephrine and norepinephrine) and lead to hypertensive crisis. These drugs cause dizziness and orthostatic hypotension and can increase the risk for falls. These drugs have anticholinergic activity and produce the same side effects.

MAO, Monoamine oxidase.

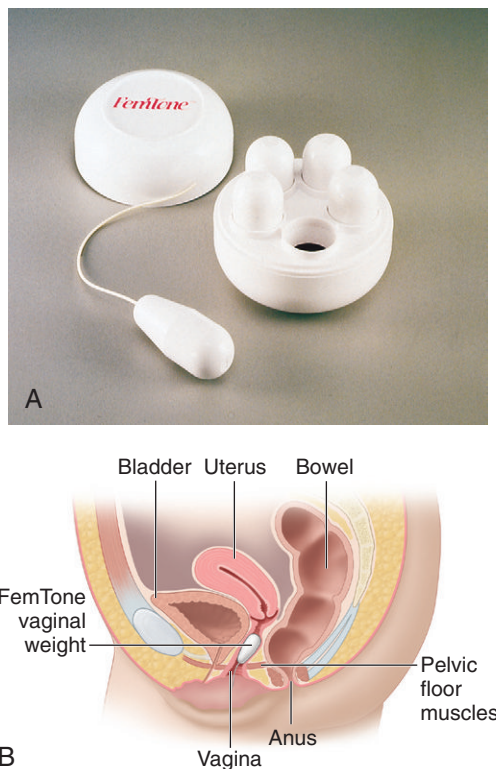


FIG. 69-1 **A**, FemTone vaginal weights, or cones. The number on the top of each cone represents increasing weight up to the heaviest cone, a 5. **B**, Diagram showing the correct positioning of a vaginal weight, or cone, in place.

Reducing Urge Urinary Incontinence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with urinary incontinence is expected to use techniques to prevent or manage urge incontinence. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Responds to urge in a timely manner
- Gets to toilet between urge and passage of urine
- Avoids substances that stimulate the bladder (e.g., caffeine, alcohol)

Interventions. Interventions for patients with urge incontinence or overactive bladder include behavioral interventions and drugs. Surgery is not the recommended treatment of this condition. Collection devices and absorbent pads and undergarments may be used.

Drug Therapy. Because the hypertonic bladder contracts involuntarily in patients with urge incontinence, drugs that relax the smooth muscle and increase the bladder's capacity are prescribed (see Chart 69-8).

The most effective drugs are anticholinergics, such as propantheline (Pro-Banthine, Propanthel $\clubsuit$), and anticholinergics with smooth muscle relaxant properties, such as oxybutynin (Ditropan and Ditropan XL), tolterodine (Detrol and Detrol LA), and dicyclomine hydrochloride (Barmine, Bentyl, Spasmodan $\clubsuit$), all of which inhibit the nerve fibers that stimulate bladder contractions. Anticholinergic drugs have serious side effects and are used along with behavioral interventions. Tricyclic antidepressants with anticholinergic and alpha-adrenergic agonist activity, such as imipramine (Tofranil, Novopramine $\clubsuit$), have been used successfully. The effectiveness of other drugs, such as flavoxate (Urispas) and

TABLE 69-4 SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR STRESS INCONTINENCE

PROCEDURE	PURPOSE	NURSING CONSIDERATIONS
Anterior vaginal repair (colporrhaphy)	Elevates the urethral position and repairs any cystocele.	Because the operation is performed by vaginal incision, it is often done in conjunction with a vaginal hysterectomy. Recovery is usually rapid, and a urethral catheter is in place for 24-48 hr.
Retropubic suspension (Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz or Burch colposuspension)	Elevates the urethral position and provides longer-lasting results.	The operation requires a low abdominal incision and a urethral or suprapubic catheter for several days postoperatively. Recovery takes longer, and urinary retention and detrusor instability are the most frequent complications.
Needle bladder neck suspension (Pereyra or Stamey procedure)	Elevates the urethral position and provides longer-lasting results without a long operative time.	The combined vaginal approach with a needle and a small suprapubic skin incision does not allow direct vision of the operative site; however, the high complication rates may be due to the selection of patients who, because of their medical condition, are not good candidates for longer retropubic procedures.
Pubovaginal sling procedures	A sling made of synthetic or fascial material is placed under the urethrovesical junction to elevate the bladder neck.	The operation uses an abdominal, vaginal, or combined approach to treat intrinsic sphincter deficiencies. Temporary or permanent urinary retention is common postoperatively.
Midurethral sling procedures	A tensionless vaginal sling is made from polypropylene mesh (or other materials) and placed near the urethrovesical junction to increase the angle, which inhibits movement of urine into the urethra with lower intravesicular pressures.	This outpatient procedure uses a vaginal approach to improve symptoms of stress incontinence. Temporary or permanent urinary retention is common postoperatively.
Artificial sphincters	A mechanical device to open and close the urethra is placed around the anatomic urethra.	The operation is done more frequently in men. The most common complications include mechanical failure of the device, erosion of tissue, and infection.
Periurethral injection of collagen or Siloxane	Implantation of small amounts of an inert substance through several small injections provides support around the bladder neck.	The procedure can be done in an ambulatory care setting and can be repeated as often as necessary. Certain compounds may migrate after injection; an allergy test to bovine collagen must be performed before implantation.

the antihistamines, NSAIDs, beta-adrenergic agonists, and calcium channel blockers, has yet to be determined.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients taking the extended-release forms of anticholinergic drugs to swallow the tablet or capsule whole without chewing it or crushing it. Chewing or crushing the tablet/capsule ruins the extended-release feature, allowing the entire dose to be absorbed quickly, which increases drug side effects.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

While assessing a client with overactive bladder, the nurse discovers the client also has the following health problems. Which health problem could be made worse by the drug *tolterodine* (Detrol)?

- A. Asthma
- B. Glaucoma
- C. Hypotension
- D. Diabetes mellitus

Nutrition Therapy. Teach the patient to avoid foods that have a direct bladder-stimulating or diuretic effect, such as caffeine and alcohol. Spacing fluids at regular intervals throughout the day (e.g., 120 mL every hour or 240 mL every 2 hours) and limiting fluids after the dinner hour (e.g., only 120 mL at bedtime) help avoid fluid overload on the bladder and allow urine to collect at a steady pace.

Behavioral Interventions. Behavioral interventions for urge incontinence include bladder training, habit training, exercise therapy, and electrical stimulation.

Interventions for urinary bladder training and urinary habit training are listed in [Chart 69-9](#). It can be difficult for patients to use these interventions because they involve a great deal of patient participation. Provide ongoing encouragement, clarification, and support to increase the effects of all interventions. Behavioral interventions are often combined with drug therapy for greatest effect.

Bladder training is an education program for the patient that begins with a thorough explanation of the problem of urge incontinence. Instead of the bladder being in control of the patient, the patient learns to control the bladder. For the program to succeed, he or she must be alert, aware, and able to resist the urge to urinate.

Start a schedule for voiding, beginning with the longest interval that is comfortable for the patient, even if the interval is only 30 minutes. Instruct the patient to void every 30 minutes and to ignore any urge to urinate between the set intervals. Once he or she is comfortable with the starting schedule, increase the interval by 15 to 30 minutes. Instruct the patient to follow the new schedule until he or she achieves success again. As the interval increases, the bladder gradually tolerates more volume. Teach him or her relaxation and distraction techniques to maximize success in the retraining. Provide positive reinforcement for maintaining the prescribed schedule.

Habit training (scheduled toileting) is a type of bladder training that is successful in reducing incontinence in cognitively impaired patients. To use habit training, caregivers assist the patient in voiding at specific times (e.g., every 2

CHART 69-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY AND QUALITY CARE

Bladder Training and Habit Training to Reduce Urinary Incontinence

Bladder Training

- Assess patient's awareness of bladder fullness and ability to cooperate with training regimen.
- Assess the patient's 24-hour voiding pattern for 2 to 3 consecutive days.
- Base the initial interval of toileting on the voiding pattern (e.g., 45 minutes).
- Teach the patient to void every 45 minutes on the first day and to ignore or suppress the urge to urinate between the 45-minute intervals.
- Take the patient to the toilet or remind him or her to urinate at the 45-minute intervals.
- Provide privacy for toileting and run water in the sink to promote the urge to urinate at this time.
- If the patient is not consistently able to resist the urge to urinate between the intervals, reduce the intervals by 15 minutes.
- Continue this regimen for at least 24 hours or for as many days as it takes for the patient to be comfortable with this schedule and not urinate between the intervals.
- When the patient remains continent between the intervals, increase the intervals by 15 minutes daily until a 3- to 4-hour interval is comfortable for the patient.
- Praise successes. If incontinence occurs, work with the patient to re-establish an acceptable toileting interval.

Habit Training

- Assess the patient's 24-hour voiding pattern for 2 to 3 days.
- Base the initial interval of toileting on the voiding pattern (e.g., 2 hours).
- Assist the patient to the toilet or provide a bedpan/urinal every 2 hours (or whatever has been determined to be an appropriate toileting interval for the individual patient).
- During the toileting, remind the patient to void and provide cues such as running water.
- If the patient is incontinent between scheduled toileting, reduce the time interval by 30 minutes until the patient is continent between voidings.
- Assist the patient to toilet and prompt to void at prescribed intervals.
- Do not leave the patient on the toilet or bedpan for longer than 5 minutes.
- Ensure that all nursing staff members comply with the established toileting schedule and do not apply briefs or encourage the patient to "just wet the bed."
- Reduce toileting interval by 30 minutes if there are more than two incontinence episodes in 24 hours.
- If the patient remains continent at the toileting interval, attempt to increase the interval by 30 minutes until a 3- to 4-hour continence interval is reached.
- Praise the patient for successes, and spend extra time socializing with the patient.
- When incontinence occurs, ensure that the patient and bed are cleaned appropriately but do not spend extra time socializing with the patient.
- Discuss daily record of continence with staff to provide reinforcement and encourage compliance with toileting schedule.
- Include unlicensed assistive personnel in all aspects of the habit training.

hours on the even hours). The goal is to get the patient to the toilet before incontinence occurs. The focus is on reducing incontinence. When that has been achieved, the focus may change to increase bladder capacity by gradually lengthening the voiding intervals, but this is only secondary.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Habit training is undermined when unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) apply absorbent briefs or tell patients to “just wet the bed.” This practice also increases the risk for falls because patients may try to get out of bed unassisted to use the toilet. Work with all staff members, including UAP, to implement consistently the toileting schedule for habit training.

Prompted voiding, a supplement to habit training, attempts to increase the patient’s awareness of the need to void and to prompt him or her to ask for toileting assistance. Habit training otherwise relies completely on a time schedule.

Exercise therapy with pelvic muscle exercises for urge incontinence has been helpful and is taught in the same way as for stress incontinence (see [Chart 69-7](#)). Improved urethral resistance helps the patient overcome abnormal detrusor contractions long enough to get to the toilet.

Electrical stimulation with either an intravaginal or intra-rectal electrical stimulation device is available to treat both urge and stress incontinence.

Reducing Reflex Urinary Incontinence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With appropriate intervention, the patient with reflex incontinence is expected to achieve continence. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Recognizes the urge to void
- Maintains a predictable pattern of voiding
- Responds to urge in a timely manner
- Empties bladder completely
- Keeps urine volume in the bladder under 300 mL to prevent overdistention

Interventions. Interventions for the patient with reflex (overflow) incontinence caused by obstruction of the bladder outlet may include surgery to relieve the obstruction. The most common surgical procedures are prostate removal (see [Chapter 75](#)) and repair of uterine prolapse (see [Chapter 74](#)). For overflow incontinence related to detrusor muscle weakness, the most effective methods of treatment are the behavioral interventions of bladder compression and intermittent self-catheterization.

Drug Therapy. Drugs are prescribed for short-term management of urinary retention, often after surgery. They are not used in long-term management of overflow incontinence caused by a hypotonic bladder. The most commonly used drug is bethanechol chloride (Urecholine), an agent that increases bladder pressure.

Behavioral Interventions. The most common behavioral interventions are bladder compression and intermittent self-catheterization.

Bladder compression uses techniques that promote bladder emptying and include the Credé method, the Valsalva maneuver, double-voiding, and splinting.

For the Credé method, teach the patient how to press over the bladder area, increasing its pressure, or to trigger nerve

stimulation by tugging at pubic hair or massaging the genital area. These techniques manually assist the bladder in emptying. In the Valsalva maneuver, breathing techniques increase chest and abdominal pressure. This increased pressure is then directed toward the bladder during exhalation. With the technique of double-voiding, the patient empties the bladder and then, within a few minutes, attempts a second bladder emptying.

For women who have a large *cystocele* (prolapse of the bladder into the vagina), a technique called *splinting* both compresses the bladder and moves it into a better position. The woman inserts her fingers into her vagina, gently lifts the cystocele, and begins to urinate.

Intermittent self-catheterization is often used to help patients with long-term problems of incomplete bladder emptying. It is effective, can be learned fairly easily, and remains the preferred method of bladder emptying in patients who have incontinence as a result of a neurogenic bladder ([Newman & Willson, 2011](#)). These points are important in teaching the technique:

- Proper handwashing and cleaning of the catheter reduce the risk for infection.
- A small lumen and good lubrication of the catheter prevent urethral trauma.
- A regular schedule for bladder emptying prevents distention and mucosal trauma.

Patients must be able to understand instructions and have the manual dexterity to manipulate the catheter. Caregivers or family members in the home can also be taught to perform straight catheterization using a clean (rather than sterile) technique with good outcomes ([Kannankeril et al., 2011](#)).

Reducing Functional Urinary Incontinence

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with functional urinary incontinence is expected to remain dry. Indicators include that the patient often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Uses urine containment or collection measures to ensure dryness
- Manages clothing independently

Interventions. Causes of functional (or chronic intractable) incontinence vary greatly. Some are reversible, and others are not. The focus of intervention is treatment of reversible causes. When incontinence is not reversible, urinary habit training (see discussion of habit training, p. 1504) is used to establish a predictable pattern of bladder emptying to prevent incontinence. A final strategy focuses on containment of the urine and protection of the patient’s skin. Nonsurgical interventions include applied devices, containment, and catheterization.

Applied devices include intravaginal pessaries for women and penile clamps for men. The intravaginal pessary supports the uterus and vagina and helps maintain the correct position of the bladder. (See [Chapter 74](#) for further discussion of pessaries.) The penile clamp is applied around the outside of the penis to compress the urethra and prevent urine leakage.

The dangers of pessaries and penile clamps include damage to the tissues and infection from constant pressure in sensitive areas. Both devices require either that the patient has manual dexterity or that a caregiver applies and removes the device. Instruct the patient or caregivers in the use of

these devices. Male patients may use an external collecting device, such as a condom catheter. Design of an effective external collecting device for women has not been as successful.

Containment is achieved with absorbent pads and briefs designed to collect urine and keep the patient's skin and clothing dry. Many types and sizes of pads are available:

- Shields or liners inserted inside a panty
- Undergarments consisting of full-size pads with waist straps
- Plastic-lined protective underpants with or without elastic legs
- Combination pad and pant systems
- Absorbent bed pads

A major concern with the use of protective pads is the risk that skin breakdown will occur. Materials and costs vary. Some are reusable; others are disposable. The disposal of these products raises ecologic concerns. Avoid use of the word "diaper" when discussing these adult protective pants, however, because of the usual association of diapers with a baby.

Catheterization for control of incontinence may be intermittent or involve an indwelling catheter. Intermittent catheterization is preferred to an indwelling catheter because of the reduced risk for infection. An indwelling urinary catheter is appropriate for patients with skin breakdown who need a dry environment for healing, for those who are terminally ill and need comfort, and for those who are critically ill and require careful measurement of urine output.

Reducing Total or Mixed Urinary Incontinence

Total or mixed urinary incontinence is a combination of two or more types of involuntary urine loss syndromes. For example, stress incontinence and urge incontinence often occur together in women during and after menopause. For the patient with total or mixed incontinence, combinations of assessment techniques (as discussed under each syndrome) are used. Interventions are also combined to promote continence. The problems and interventions for mixed incontinence are the same as for each specific type of incontinence separately. After identifying the specific types of incontinence an individual patient has, apply the appropriate priority patient problems, interventions, and expected outcomes discussed earlier with each incontinence type.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice

The patient is a 32-year-old woman who is 8 weeks postpartum from a vaginal delivery of her first child, a 9-pound boy. She has recently taken up running again and reports a small loss of urine with every running step. She states her mother has had a continuing problem with incontinence for years and seldom leaves her home. The patient is worried that this problem is genetic and will only get worse with time. She is also worried that if surgery is needed to correct the problem, she will have to stop breast-feeding her infant.

1. What other information should you obtain from this patient?
2. What type or types of incontinence is she most likely to have from the information she has provided thus far?
3. Is this problem likely to be genetic? Why or why not?
4. What will you tell her regarding surgery and her concern about being separated from her infant?
5. What measures can you recommend to help reduce her incontinence?

Community-Based Care

Community-based care for the patient with urinary incontinence considers his or her personal, physical, emotional, and social resources. Important personal resources for self-care include mobility, vision, and manual dexterity. When planning care, consider who will be the primary caregiver and what factors may influence the effectiveness of the plan.

Home Care Management

Assess the home environment for barriers that limit access to the bathroom. Eliminate hazards that might slow walking or lead to a fall. Such hazards include throw rugs, furniture with legs that extend into the walking area, slippery waxed or polished floors, and poor lighting.

If the patient must climb stairs to reach a bathroom, handrails should be installed and stairs kept free of obstacles. Toilet seat extenders may help provide the right level of seating so that maximal abdominal pressure may be applied for voiding. Portable commodes may be obtained when ambulatory access to toilets is impractical or impossible. Physical and occupational therapists are valuable resources for assisting with home care management.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient and family about the cause of the specific type of incontinence, and discuss available treatment options for its management. The teaching plan addresses the prescribed drugs (purpose, dosage, method and route of administration, and expected and potential side effects). Instruct the patient and family about the importance of weight reduction and dietary modification to help control urinary incontinence. Remind the patient who smokes that nicotine can contribute to bladder irritation and that smoker's cough can cause urine leakage.

When external devices or protective pads are needed, describe the possible options, discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each, and help the patient make a selection best for his or her lifestyle and resources. For patients who will use intermittent catheterization or those with artificial urinary sphincters, demonstrate the correct technique to the patient or caregiver. Evaluate return demonstrations for correct technique. [Chart 69-10](#) also addresses teaching.

Psychosocial Preparation

The embarrassment of incontinence can be devastating to a patient's self-esteem, body image, and relationships. Sexual intimacy is often adversely affected by incontinence. The unpredictable nature of incontinence creates anxiety. Patients are often embarrassed to seek help, and even when resources are identified, they may need help to feel comfortable in using the resources. Buying supplies at a local store may threaten privacy.

Accept and acknowledge the personal concerns of the patient and caregiver. Never make their concerns seem trivial. Help the patient learn methods of managing the fear or anxiety. As he or she learns the specifics of the plan that will allow control of urinary incontinence, the confidence to resume social interactions should return.

Health Care Resources

Referral to home care agencies for help with personal care and to continence clinics that specialize in evaluation and treatment may be helpful. In many continence clinics, nurses

CHART 69-10 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Urinary Incontinence

- Maintain a normal body weight to reduce the pressure on your bladder.
- Do not try to control your incontinence by limiting your fluid intake. Adequate fluid intake is necessary for kidney function and health maintenance.
- If you have a catheter in your bladder, follow the instructions given to you about maintaining the sterile drainage system.
- If you are discharged with a suprapubic catheter in your bladder, inspect the entry site for the tube daily, clean the skin around the opening gently with warm soap and water, and place a sterile gauze dressing on the skin around the tube. Report any redness, swelling, drainage, or fever to your physician.
- Do not put anything into your vagina, such as tampons, drugs, hygiene products, or exercise weights, until you check with your physician at your 6-week checkup after surgery.
- Do not have sexual intercourse until after your 6-week postoperative checkup.
- Do not lift or carry anything heavier than 5 pounds or participate in any strenuous exercise until your physician gives you postoperative clearance. In some cases, this could be as long as 3 months.
- Avoid exercises, such as running, jogging, step or dance aerobic classes, rowing, cross-country ski or stair-climber machines, and mountain biking. Brisk walking without any additional hand, leg, or body weights is allowed. Swimming is allowed after all drains and catheters have been removed and your incision is completely healed.
- If Kegel exercises are recommended, ask your nurse for specific instructions.

collaborate with physicians and other health care professionals to evaluate and manage patients. The treatment plan is specific for each patient; supplies and products are custom selected.

Patients may benefit from education and from the support of others who experience similar concerns. The National Association for Continence (NAFC) (www.nafc.org), Access to Continence Care and Treatment (www.wellweb.com/INCONT/acct/contents.htm), and the Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nurses (www.wocn.org) publish newsletters and educational materials written with simple, easy-to-understand explanations. The American Foundation for Urologic Disease (www.afud.com) provides information on many areas of bladder dysfunction. The Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) has also published a caregiver guide (AHCPR Publication No. 96-0683) for the public that is available on the Internet or by calling (800) 358-9295. Local hospitals often have local NAFC-approved support groups.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

- For which client living at home is intermittent self-catheterization an inappropriate method for incontinence management?
- 36-year-old woman who is blind
 - 46-year-old man who has paraplegia
 - 56-year-old woman who has diabetes
 - 66-year-old man who has severe osteoarthritis

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with urinary incontinence based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that the patient will:

- Describe the type of urinary incontinence experienced
- Demonstrate knowledge of proper use of drugs and correct procedures for self-catheterization, use of the artificial sphincter, or care of an indwelling urinary catheter
- Demonstrate effective use of the selected exercise or bladder-training program
- Select and use incontinence devices and products
- Have a reduction in the number of incontinence episodes

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

UROLITHIASIS

Pathophysiology

Urolithiasis is the presence of *calculi* (stones) in the urinary tract. Stones often do not cause symptoms until they pass into the urinary tract, where they can cause excruciating pain. **Nephrolithiasis** is the formation of stones in the kidney. Formation of stones in the ureter is **ureterolithiasis**.

Urologic stones are caused by many disorders. However, the exact mechanism of stone formation is not entirely understood. Everyone excretes crystals in the urine at some time, but fewer than 10% of people form stones. Most stones contain calcium (calcium oxalate or calcium phosphate) as one part of the stone complex. Struvite (15%), uric acid (8%), and cystine (3%) are more rare compositions of stones. Formation of stones involves three conditions:

- Slow urine flow, resulting in supersaturation of the urine with the particular element (e.g., calcium) that first becomes crystallized and later becomes the stone
- Damage to the lining of the urinary tract (e.g., abrasion from crystals)
- Decreased amounts of inhibitor substances in the urine that would otherwise prevent supersaturation and crystal aggregation

High urine acidity (as with uric acid and cystine stones) or alkalinity (as with calcium phosphate and struvite stones) and drugs (as with triamterene, indinavir, and acetazolamide) contribute to stone formation.

One example of a metabolic problem causing stone formation begins when excessive amounts of calcium are absorbed through the intestinal tract (the most common cause of hypercalciuria). As blood circulates through the kidneys, the excess calcium is filtered into the urine, causing supersaturation of calcium in the urine. If fluid intake is poor, such as when a patient is dehydrated, supersaturation is more likely to occur and the risk for calcium combining with another compound to form a larger molecule increases. Calcium complexes often serve as a center for other deposits, and eventually a stone forms.

Stones that form in the kidney and then pass into the ureter often lodge in areas where the ureter bends or slightly changes shape. When the stone occludes the ureter and blocks

the flow of urine, the ureter dilates. Enlargement of the ureter is called **hydroureter**.

The pain associated with ureteral spasm is excruciating and may cause the patient to go into shock from stimulation of nearby nerves. In addition, **hematuria** (bloody urine) may result from damage to the urothelial lining. If the obstruction is not removed, urinary stasis can cause infection and impair kidney function on the side of the blockage. As the blockage persists, **hydronephrosis** (enlargement of the kidney caused by blockage of urine lower in the tract and filling of the kidney with urine) and permanent kidney damage may develop.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The cause of urolithiasis is unknown. At least 90% of patients who form stones have a metabolic risk factor. Table 69-5 lists some metabolic problems that often cause stone formation.

A diet high in calcium is not believed to cause stones unless a metabolic problem or kidney tubule defect already exists. Data suggest that a normal-calcium diet that is relatively low in animal protein, sodium, or both may help prevent stone formation. A low-calcium diet does not prevent stone formation (Brenner, 2008). Urinary stasis, urinary retention, immobility, and dehydration all increase the risk for stones to form. Except for the use of the thiazides for calcium oxalate stones, diuretics can cause volume depletion and thus may promote the formation of stones. Generally, fluid intake sufficient to cause a urine output of 2 to 2.5 L daily is recommended.

TABLE 69-5 METABOLIC DEFECTS THAT COMMONLY CAUSE CALCULI

METABOLIC DEFICIT	ETIOLOGY
Hypercalcemia	
Primary	Absorptive: increased intestinal calcium absorption Renal: decreased kidney tubular excretion of calcium
Secondary	Resorptive: hyperparathyroidism, vitamin D intoxication, kidney tubular acidosis, prolonged immobilization
Hyperoxaluria	
Primary	Genetic: autosomal recessive trait resulting in high oxalate production
Secondary	Dietary: excess oxalate from foods such as spinach, rhubarb, Swiss chard, cocoa, beets, wheat germ, pecans, peanuts, okra, chocolate, and lime peel
Hyperuricemia	
Primary	Gout is an inherited disorder of purine metabolism (20% of patients with gout have uric acid calculi)
Secondary	Increased production or decreased clearance of purine from myeloproliferative disorders, thiazide diuretics, carcinoma
Struvite	Made of magnesium ammonium phosphate and carbonate apatite; formed by urea splitting by bacteria, most commonly, <i>Proteus mirabilis</i> ; needs an alkaline urine to form
Cystinuria	Autosomal recessive defect of amino acid metabolism that precipitates insoluble cystine crystals in the urine

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

More than 30 genetic variations are associated with the formation of kidney stones. Single gene disorders are rare. More commonly, nephrolithiasis is a complex disease, with genetic variation in intestinal calcium absorption, kidney calcium transport, or kidney phosphate transport all associated with stone formation (Brenner, 2008). Always ask a patient with a kidney or ureteral stone whether other family members have also had this problem.

Incidence/Prevalence

The incidence of stone disease is high and varies with geographic location, race, and family history. About 12% of adults will have at least one episode of kidney stone disease. The incidence is higher in men; however, struvite stones are twice as common in women. Recurrence rates vary depending on the type of treatment. The recurrence rate of untreated calcium oxalate stones is 35% to 50% in 5 to 10 years. A higher recurrence of stones occurs in patients with a family history of stone disease and in those who had their first occurrence by age 25 years.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

The incidence of stone disease is most common in the southeastern United States, Japan, and Western Europe. Calcium stone disease is more common in men than in women and tends to occur in young adults or during early middle adulthood. Kidney stone disease occurs more often in younger adults than older adults and more commonly among white people (Brenner, 2008). For patients in these higher-risk groups, nursing care includes teaching family members, as well as patients, about the manifestations of a stone and interventions to reduce stone formation.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Ask the patient about a personal or family history of urologic stones. Obtain a diet history, including fluid intake patterns. If he or she has a history of stone formation, ask about past treatment, whether chemical analysis of the stone was performed, and what preventive measures are followed.

The major manifestation of stones is severe pain, commonly called **renal colic**. Flank pain suggests that the stone is in the kidney or upper ureter. Flank pain that extends toward the abdomen or to the scrotum and testes or the vulva suggests that stones are in the ureters or bladder. Pain is most intense when the stone is moving or when the ureter is obstructed.

Renal colic begins suddenly and is often described as “unbearable.” Nausea, vomiting, pallor, and diaphoresis often accompany the pain. A large stationary stone in the kidney (staghorn calculus), however, rarely causes much pain because it is not moving. Frequency and dysuria occur when a stone reaches the bladder. **Oliguria** (scant urine output) or **anuria** (absence of urine output) suggests obstruction, possibly at the bladder neck or urethra. *Urinary tract obstruction is an emergency and must be treated immediately to preserve kidney function.*

Examine the patient to detect bladder distention. The patient may appear pale, ashen, and diaphoretic and may suffer from excruciating pain. Vital signs may be moderately

elevated with pain; body temperature and pulse are elevated with infection. Blood pressure may decrease if the severe pain causes shock.

Urinalysis is performed in patients with suspected stones. Hematuria is common, and blood may make the urine appear smoky or rusty. The presence of RBCs is usually caused by stone-induced trauma on the lining of the ureter, bladder, or urethra. WBCs and bacteria may be present as a result of urinary stasis. Increased *turbidity* (cloudiness) and odor indicate that infection may also be present. Microscopic examination of the urine may identify crystals from which stones could form. Urinary pH is measured to determine acidity or alkalinity.

The serum WBC count is elevated with infection. Increases in the serum calcium, serum phosphate, or serum uric acid levels indicate excess minerals are present and may contribute to stone formation.

Stones are easily seen on x-rays of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder (KUB) (Fig. 69-2); IV urograms; or computed tomography (CT). Noncontrast CT is the most sensitive test to identify urinary tract stones. These procedures confirm the presence and location of the stones.

IV urography is useful for identifying whether the urinary tract is obstructed. However, because of the risk for acute kidney injury (AKI) induced by contrast dye, other diagnostic tests may be chosen for high-risk patients (older adults and patients with diabetes mellitus, multiple myeloma, or elevated serum creatinine levels).

Renal ultrasonography creates images from sound waves hitting structures of different densities. Solid structures, such as stones, are extremely dense, and the images of stones are clear. Small stones are harder to identify and locate. Ultrasound is the main method used to identify hydronephrosis from any cause.

INTERVENTIONS

Nursing interventions focus on pain management and prevention of infection and urinary obstruction. Most patients can expel the stone without invasive procedures. The most important factors regarding whether a stone will pass on its

own are its composition, size, and location. The larger the stone and the higher up in the urinary tract it is, the less likely it is to be passed. When the stone is passed, it should be captured and sent to the laboratory for analysis. Other interventions are needed when the patient does not pass the stone spontaneously (Fig. 69-3).

Managing Pain

Nonsurgical and surgical approaches are used to assist the patient with a kidney stone achieve an acceptable degree of pain relief.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical measures to relieve pain include strategies to enhance stone passing, as well as direct pain management.



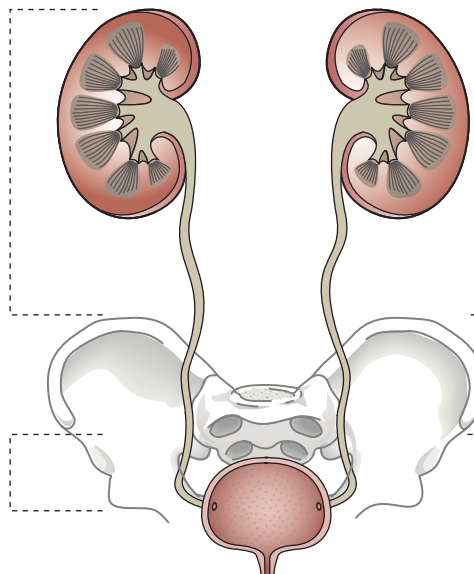
FIG. 69-2 Urinary stones on x-ray of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder (KUB).

PROXIMAL URETER

- ESWL
- Retrograde ureteroscopy
- Antegrade nephrostouretrolithotomy
- Stenting alone
- Percutaneous ureterolithotomy or nephrolithotomy

DISTAL URETER

- ESWL/ureteroscopy
- Antegrade nephrostouretrolithotomy
- Stenting alone
- Open ureterolithotomy



MIDURETER

- Retrograde ureteroscopy
- ESWL
- Antegrade nephrostouretrolithotomy
- Open ureterolithotomy

FIG. 69-3 Treatment options for ureteral stones. ESWL, Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy.

Drug therapy is needed most in the first 24 to 36 hours when pain is most severe. Opioid analgesics are often needed to control the severe pain caused by stones in the urinary tract. Opioid agents, such as morphine (Statex ) , are often given IV for rapid pain relief. NSAIDs such as ketorolac (Toradol) in the acute phase may be quite effective. When NSAIDs are used, the risk for bleeding is increased and the use of extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy is delayed.

Control of pain is more effective when drugs are given at regularly scheduled intervals or by a constant delivery system (e.g., skin patch) instead of PRN. Spasmolytic drugs, such as oxybutynin chloride (Ditropan) and propantheline bromide (Pro-Banthine, Propanthel ) , are important for control of pain (see [Chart 69-8](#)). Give the drugs, and assess the response by asking the patient to rate the discomfort on a pain-rating scale.

Complementary and alternative therapy with relaxation techniques, such as hypnosis and imagery, therapeutic or healing touch, and acupuncture, can reduce pain. Patients often have difficulty finding a comfortable position. Thus assisting the patient with positioning can often aid in pain reduction. Breathing techniques, such as those used in childbirth, can also help him or her relax.

Other management techniques include avoiding overhydration and underhydration in the acute phase to help make the passage of a stone less painful. Strain the urine and teach the patient to strain it to monitor for stone passage. Send any stone passed to the laboratory for analysis, because preventive therapy is based on stone composition.

Lithotripsy, also known as *extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL)*, is the use of sound, laser, or dry shock waves to break the stone into small fragments. The patient receives moderate sedation and lies on a flat table with the lithotripter aimed at the stone, which is located by fluoroscopy. A local anesthetic cream is applied to the skin site over the stone 45 minutes before the procedure. During the procedure, cardiac rhythm is monitored by electrocardiography (ECG) and the shock waves are delivered in synchrony with the R wave. About 500 to 1500 shock waves are applied in 30 to 45 minutes. Continuous ECG monitoring for dysrhythmia and fluoroscopic observation for stone destruction are maintained.

After lithotripsy, strain the urine to monitor the passage of stone fragments. Bruising may occur on the flank of the affected side. Occasionally a stent is placed in the ureter before ESWL to ease passage of the stone fragments. Cystine stones are often resistant to ESWL.

Surgical Management. Minimally invasive surgical and open surgical procedures are used if urinary obstruction occurs or if the stone is too large to be passed.

Minimally Invasive Surgical Procedures. Minimally invasive surgical (MIS) procedures include stenting, retrograde ureteroscopy, percutaneous ureterolithotomy, and percutaneous nephrolithotomy.

Stenting is performed with a **stent**—a small tube that is placed in the ureter by ureteroscopy. The stent dilates the ureter and enlarges the passageway for the stone or stone fragments. This totally internal procedure prevents the passing stone from coming in contact with the ureteral mucosa, thereby reducing pain, bleeding, and infection risk, all of which could block the ureter. A Foley catheter may be placed to facilitate passage of the stone through the urethra.

Retrograde ureteroscopy is an endoscopic procedure. The ureteroscope is passed through the urethra and bladder into the ureter. Once the stone is seen, it is removed using grasping baskets, forceps, or loops. Lithotripsy also can be performed through the ureteroscope. A Foley catheter may be placed to facilitate passage of the stone fragments through the urethra.

Percutaneous ureterolithotomy or nephrolithotomy is the removal of a stone in the kidney or ureter through the skin. The patient lies prone or on the side and receives local or general anesthesia. The physician identifies the ideal entry point with fluoroscopy and then passes a needle into the collecting system of the kidney. Once a tract has been made in the kidney, other equipment, such as an **intracorporeal** (inside the body) ultrasonic or laser lithotripter, can be used to break up and remove the stone. An endoscope with a special attachment to grasp and extract the stone can be used. Often a nephrostomy tube is left in place at first to prevent the stone fragments from passing through the urinary tract.

Provide routine nephrostomy tube care and monitor the patient for complications after the procedure. Complications include bleeding at the site or through the tube, pneumothorax, and infection.

Open Surgical Procedures. When other stone removal attempts have failed or when risk for a lasting injury to the ureter or kidney is possible, an *open ureterolithotomy* (into the ureter), *pyelolithotomy* (into the kidney pelvis), or *nephrolithotomy* (into the kidney) procedure may be performed. These procedures are used for a large or impacted stone.

Preoperative Care. Prepare the patient for the selected procedure by explaining how, when, and where the procedure will be performed. Describe what he or she can expect to see, hear, and feel before and after the procedure. The patient is given nothing by mouth and also receives a bowel preparation before the procedure. (See [Chapter 16](#) for routine care before surgery.)

Operative Procedures. The retroperitoneal area is entered through a large flank incision, as for nephrectomy (see [Chapter 70](#)), pyelolithotomy, or nephrolithotomy, and through a lower abdominal incision for ureterolithotomy. The urinary tract is entered surgically, and the stone is removed. Before closure, tubes and drains may be placed (e.g., nephrostomy tube, ureteral stent, Penrose or other wound drainage device, and Foley catheter).

Postoperative Care. Follow routine procedures for assessment of the patient who has received anesthesia. (See [Chapter 18](#) for routine care after surgery.) Monitor the amount of bleeding from incisions and in the urine. Maintain adequate fluid intake. Strain the urine to monitor the passage of stone fragments. Teach the patient how to prevent future stones through dietary changes, including consistent daily fluid intake to avoid dehydration and supersaturation.

Preventing Infection

Control of infections before invasive procedures is critical for the prevention of urosepsis. Interventions include giving appropriate antibiotics, either to eliminate an existing infection or to prevent new infections, and maintaining adequate nutrition and fluid intake. Because infection always occurs with struvite stone formation, the health care team plans for long-term infection prevention.

Drug therapy is the most common intervention. Broad-spectrum antibiotics, such as the aminoglycosides (e.g.,

gentamicin [Garamycin]) and cephalosporins (e.g., cephalexin [Keflex, Novo-Lexin ]), are first prescribed for infections occurring with stone disease. The broad coverage is effective against gram-negative organisms. After the results of the culture and sensitivity (C&S) studies are obtained, more specific antibiotics may be prescribed. C&S studies are often done 48 hours after the start of antibiotic therapy and again 48 hours after completion of the prescribed course of therapy.

Blood levels of antibiotics may be measured to ensure that adequate levels have been reached. If the desired blood level of these antibiotics is exceeded, toxic effects and kidney damage may result. If the blood level of the antibiotic is not adequate, organisms may not be completely eliminated. Evidence of a new infection (e.g., chills, fever, altered mental status) warrants the collection of a urine sample for repeat C&S tests.

For the patient with struvite stones, periodic and long-term monitoring of the urine for infection is needed. Urine cultures are checked monthly for 3 months and then quarterly for 1 year. Drugs that prevent bacteria from splitting urea, such as acetohydroxamic acid (Lithostat) and hydroxyurea (Hydrea), are often prescribed long-term for patients with struvite stones. Serum creatinine levels are monitored in patients receiving acetohydroxamic acid. This drug is stopped if creatinine levels are above 2 mg/dL. Review interventions aimed at preventing urinary tract infection (UTI). (See Interventions discussion on p. 1494 in the Cystitis section.)

Nutrition therapy ideally includes adequate calorie intake with a balance of all food groups. Encourage a fluid intake sufficient to dilute urine to a light color throughout the 24-hour day (typically 2 to 3 L/day) unless another health problem requires fluid restriction.

Preventing Obstruction

Measures to prevent urinary obstruction by stones include a high intake of fluids (3 L/day or more) and careful measures of intake and output. Fluid intake sufficient to provide a diluted urine helps prevent dehydration, promotes the flow of urine, and decreases the chance of crystals forming a stone. Interventions also depend on the type of stone the patient has

formed. Drugs, diet modification, and fluid intake are the major strategies used to prevent future stones.

Drug therapy to prevent obstruction depends on what is causing stone formation and the type of stone formed. Teach the patient the reason for the drug, and assess for side effects or adverse drug reactions. Some drugs may need to be avoided because they may contribute to stone formation.

Drugs to treat *hypercalciuria* (high levels of calcium in the urine) include thiazide diuretics (e.g., chlorothiazide [Diuril] or hydrochlorothiazide [HydroDIURIL, Urozide ]), orthophosphate, and sodium cellulose phosphate. Thiazide diuretics promote calcium resorption from the kidney tubules back into the body, thereby reducing urine calcium loads. Orthophosphates alter calcium-phosphorus metabolism, resulting in decreased urine saturation of calcium oxalate. Sodium cellulose phosphate reduces intestinal absorption of calcium.

For patients with *hyperoxaluria* (high levels of oxalic acid in the urine), allopurinol (Zyloprim) and vitamin B₆ (pyridoxine) are used.

For patients with chronic gout, allopurinol helps prevent the formation of urate (uric acid) stones. To alkalize the urine, drugs such as potassium citrate, 50% sodium citrate, and sodium bicarbonate are used. The desired urine pH is 6 to 6.5. Because the normal urine pH averages 5 to 6, the desired values are termed *alkaline*.

For patients with *cystinuria* (high levels of cystine in the urine), both alpha-mercaptopyrionylglycine (AMPG) and captopril (Capoten) lower urine cystine levels. They are used when hydration and urine alkalization have not been successful.

Nutrition therapy depends on the type of stone formed (Table 69-6). Collaborate with the dietitian to plan for and teach the appropriate diet to the patient.

Other measures can help the patient pass the stone more quickly. Encourage the patient to walk as often as possible. Walking promotes passage of stones and reduces bone calcium resorption. Check the urine pH daily, and strain all urine with filter paper to collect passed stones and fragments.

TABLE 69-6 DIETARY TREATMENT FOR KIDNEY AND URINARY STONES

STONE TYPE	DIETARY INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Calcium oxalate	Avoid oxalate sources, such as spinach, black tea, and rhubarb. Decrease sodium intake.	Reduction of urinary oxalate content may help prevent these stones from forming. Urinary pH is not a factor. High sodium intake reduces kidney tubular calcium reabsorption.
Calcium phosphate	Limit intake of foods high in animal protein to 5-7 servings per week and never more than 2 per day. Some patients may benefit from a reduced calcium intake (milk, other dairy products). Decrease sodium intake.	Reduction of protein intake reduces acidic urine and prevents calcium precipitation. Reduction of urine calcium concentration may prevent calcium precipitation and crystallization. High sodium intake reduces kidney tubular calcium reabsorption.
Struvite (magnesium ammonium phosphate)	Limit high-phosphate foods, such as dairy products, organ meats, and whole grains.	Reduction of urinary phosphate content may help prevent these stones from forming.
Uric acid (urate)	Decrease intake of purine sources, such as organ meats, poultry, fish, gravies, red wines, and sardines.	Reduction of urinary purine content may help prevent these stones from forming.
Cystine	Limit animal protein intake (as above). Encourage oral fluid intake (500 mL every 4 hours while awake and 750 mL at night).	Reduces urinary uric acid. Increased fluid helps dilute the urine and prevents the cystine crystals from forming.

CHART 69-11 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Urinary Calculi

- Finish your entire prescription of antibiotics to ensure that you will not get a urinary tract infection.
- You may resume your usual daily activities.
- Remember to balance regular exercise with sleep and rest.
- You may return to work 2 days to 6 weeks after surgery, depending on the type of intervention, your personal tolerance, and your physician's directives.
- Depending on the type of stone you had, your diet may be restricted to prevent further stone formation.
- Remember to drink at least 3 L of fluid a day to dilute potential stone-forming crystals, prevent dehydration, and promote urine flow.
- Monitor urine pH as directed (possibly up to three times per day).
- Expect bruising after lithotripsy. The bruising may be quite extensive and may take several weeks to resolve.
- Your urine may be bloody for several days after surgery.
- Pain in the region of the kidneys or bladder may signal the beginning of an infection or the formation of another stone. Report any pain, fever, chills, or difficulty with urination immediately to your physician or nurse.
- Keep follow-up appointments to check on infection, and have repeat cultures done.

Teaching for self-management includes the key points listed in [Chart 69-11](#). Follow-up care to evaluate effects of intervention includes a 24-hour urine collection and serum chemical analysis. The patient often has great anxiety and fear that a stone and its pain may recur. In addition to anxiety about the pain, the risk for repeated surgical interventions or permanent and serious kidney damage is of major concern. Psychosocial preparation is enhanced when patients know what to expect and what actions to take if problems develop. Reassure the patient that preventive and health promotion activities help prevent recurrence.

UROTHELIAL CANCER

Pathophysiology

Urothelial cancers are malignant tumors of the *urothelium*—the lining of transitional cells in the kidney, renal pelvis, ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra. Most urothelial cancers occur in the bladder. Thus the term *bladder cancer* is often used to describe this condition.

In the United States, about 73% of urinary tract cancers are transitional cell carcinomas of the bladder ([American Cancer Society \[ACS\], 2011](#)). The second most common site of urinary tract cancer is the kidney and renal pelvis. Urothelial cancers are usually low grade, have multiple points of origin (*multifocal*), and are recurrent. Once the cancer spreads beyond the transitional cell layer, it is highly invasive and can spread beyond the bladder. Because of the nature of this cancer, patients may have recurrence up to 10 years after being cancer-free ([ACS, 2011](#)).

Tumors confined to the bladder mucosa are treated by simple excision, whereas those that are deeper but not into the muscle layer are treated with excision plus **intravesical** (inside the bladder) chemotherapy. Cancer that has spread deeper into the bladder muscle layer is treated with more extensive surgery, often a **radical cystectomy** (removal of the

bladder and surrounding tissue) with urinary diversion. Chemotherapy and radiation therapy are used in addition to surgery. If untreated, the tumor invades surrounding tissues, spreads to distant sites (liver, lung, and bone), and ultimately leads to death.

Exposure to toxins, especially chemicals used in the hair-dressing, rubber, paint, electric cable, and textile industries, increases the risk for bladder cancer. The greatest risk factor for bladder cancer is tobacco use. Other risks include *Schistosoma haematobium* (a parasite) infection, excessive use of drugs containing phenacetin, and long-term use of cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan, Procytox .

About 67,000 new cases of bladder cancer are diagnosed each year in the United States, and about 13,000 deaths occur each year from the disease ([ACS, 2011](#)). This cancer is rare in adults younger than 40 years and is most common after 60 years of age.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Many people believe that tobacco use is associated with cancers only of organs that come into direct contact with it, such as the lungs. However, many compounds in tobacco enter the bloodstream and affect distant organs, such as the bladder. Therefore encourage everyone who smokes to quit and nonsmokers to not start. Just as important, encourage anyone who comes into contact with dry, liquid, or gaseous chemicals to take precautions. Some people work with chemicals, and others may come into contact with them while engaging in hobbies, such as refinishing furniture. Many chemicals and fumes can enter the body through contact with skin and with mucous membranes in the respiratory tract. Use of personal protective equipment, such as gloves and masks, can reduce this contact. Also encourage anyone who works with chemicals to shower or bathe and change clothing as soon as contact is completed.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Ask about the patient's perception of his or her general health. Document the gender and age of the patient. Ask about active and passive exposure to cigarette smoke. To detect exposure to harmful environmental agents, ask the patient to describe his or her occupation and hobbies in detail. Also ask the patient to describe any change in the color, frequency, or amount of urine and any abdominal discomfort.

Observe the overall appearance of the patient, especially skin color and general nutritional status. Inspect, percuss, and palpate the abdomen for asymmetry, tenderness, and bladder distention.

Examine the urine for color and clarity. Blood in the urine is often the first major sign of bladder cancer. It may be gross or microscopic and is usually painless and intermittent. Dysuria, frequency, and urgency occur when infection or obstruction is also present.

Psychosocial Assessment

Assess the patient's emotions, including his or her response to a tentative diagnosis of bladder cancer, and note anxiety, fear, sadness, anger, or guilt. Early manifestations are painless,

and many patients ignore the blood in the urine because it is intermittent. They also may be reluctant to seek treatment because they suspect a sexually transmitted disease (STD). As a result, they may have guilt or anger about their own delays in seeking medical attention.

Assess the patient's methods of coping and the degree of support from family members. Social support may provide motivation and improve coping during recovery from treatment.

Diagnostic Assessment

The only significant finding on a routine urinalysis is gross or microscopic hematuria. Cytologic testing on voided urine specimens is not usually helpful. Bladder-wash specimens and bladder biopsies are the most specific tests for cancer.

Cystoscopy with retrograde urography is usually performed to evaluate painless hematuria. A biopsy of a visible bladder tumor can be performed during cystoscopy. This is essential for staging and is usually performed in a day-surgery unit before admission to the hospital for treatment. IV urography may be used when there is blood in the urine. Excretory urography is useful in identifying obstructions, especially where the ureter joins the bladder. Computed tomography (CT) scans show tumor invasion of surrounding tissues. Ultrasonography shows masses but is less valuable for tumor staging. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may help assess deep, invasive tumors.

INTERVENTIONS

Therapy for the patient with bladder cancer usually begins with surgical removal of the tumor for diagnosis and staging of disease. For tumors extending beyond the mucosa, surgery is followed by intravesical chemotherapy or immunotherapy. High-grade or recurrent tumors are treated with more radical surgery plus intravesical chemotherapy, radiotherapy, or both. Systemic chemotherapy is reserved for patients with distant metastases. (See [Chapter 24](#) for general care of the patient receiving chemotherapy or radiation therapy.)

Nonsurgical Management

Prophylactic immunotherapy with intravesical instillation of bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG), a live virus compound, is used to prevent tumor recurrence of superficial cancers. This procedure is more effective than single-agent chemotherapy. Usually the agent is instilled in an outpatient clinic and allowed to dwell in the bladder for a specified length of time, usually 2 hours. When the patient urinates, live virus is excreted with the urine.

Teach patients receiving this treatment to prevent contact of the live virus with other members of the household by not sharing a toilet with others for at least 24 hours after instillation. Instruct men to urinate while sitting down to avoid splashing the urine. After 24 hours, the toilet should be completely cleaned using a solution of 10% liquid bleach. If only one toilet is available in the household, teach the patient to flush the toilet after use and follow this by adding one cup of undiluted bleach to the bowl water. The bowl is then flushed after 15 minutes and the seat and flat surfaces of the toilet wiped with a cloth containing a solution of 10% liquid bleach. Teach the patient to wear gloves during the cleaning and to dispose of the cloth after sealing it in a plastic bag.

Underwear or other clothing that has come into contact with the urine during the 24 hours after instillation should

be washed separately from other clothing in a solution of 10% liquid bleach. Sexual intercourse is avoided for 24 hours after the instillation.

Multiagent chemotherapy is successful in prolonging life after distant metastasis has occurred but rarely results in a cure. Radiation therapy is also useful in prolonging life.

Surgical Management

The type of surgery for bladder cancer depends on the type and stage of the cancer and the patient's general health. Complete bladder removal (*cystectomy*) with additional removal of surrounding muscle and tissue offers the best chance of a cure for large, invasive bladder cancers. Four alternatives are used after cystectomy: ileal conduit; continent pouch; bladder reconstruction, also known as *neobladder*; and ureterosigmoidostomy.

Preoperative Care. Specific patient education depends on the type and extent of the planned surgical procedure. Coordinate education before surgery with the patient, surgeon, and enterostomal therapist (ET). Discuss the type of planned urinary diversion and the selection of a site for the stoma. Including the patient in this planning improves the chances for the patient to have a positive attitude about body image and a positive self-image. Use educational counseling to ensure understanding about self-care practices, methods of pouching, control of urine drainage, and management of odor.

The site selected for the stoma should be visible and avoid folds of skin, bones, and scar tissue. When possible, the patient's waistline or belt area is avoided. Prepare the patient for the number and type of drains that will be present after surgery. General care before surgery is discussed in [Chapter 16](#).

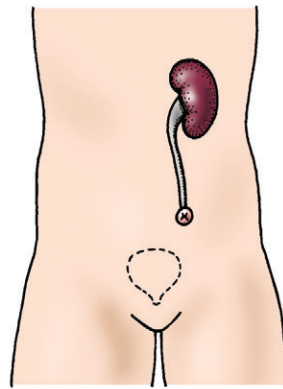
Operative Procedures. Transurethral resection of the bladder tumor (TURBT) or partial cystectomy is performed for small, early, superficial tumors. In a partial (segmental) cystectomy, a portion of the bladder is removed. This procedure is used when there is only a single isolated bladder tumor.

When the entire bladder must be removed (complete cystectomy), the ureters are diverted into a collecting reservoir. Techniques for urinary diversion are shown in [Fig. 69-4](#). With an ileal conduit, the ureters are surgically placed in the ileum and urine is collected in a pouch on the skin around the stoma. More often, continent reservoirs or "neobladders" are created from an intestinal graft. With cutaneous ureterosomy or ureteroureterostomy, the ureter opening is brought out onto the skin. The cutaneous ureterostomies may be located on either side of the abdomen or side by side.

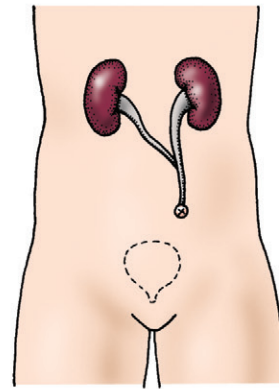
Postoperative Care. After cutaneous ureterosomy, an external pouch covers the ostomy to collect urine. Work with the ET to focus care on the wound, the skin, and urinary drainage. (See [Chapters 59 and 60](#) for ostomy care.)

The patient with a Kock's pouch, a continent reservoir, may have a Penrose drain and a plastic Medena catheter in the stoma. The drain removes lymphatic fluid or other secretions; the catheter ensures urine drainage so that suture lines can heal. The patient with a neobladder usually requires 2 to 4 days in the intensive care unit (ICU) and will have a drain at first in the event the neobladder requires irrigation. Later, irrigation can be performed with intermittent catheterization. Irrigation is performed to ensure patency. There is no sensation of bladder fullness with a neobladder because sensory nerves are not attached. As a result, the patient will need to learn new cues to void, such as prescribed times or

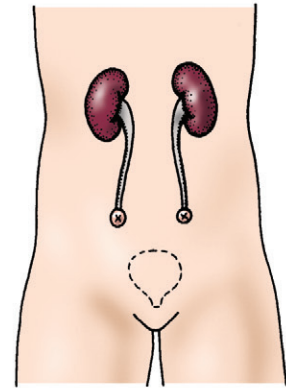
Ureterostomies divert urine directly to the skin surface through a ureteral skin opening (stoma). After ureterostomy, the patient must wear a pouch.



Cutaneous ureterostomy

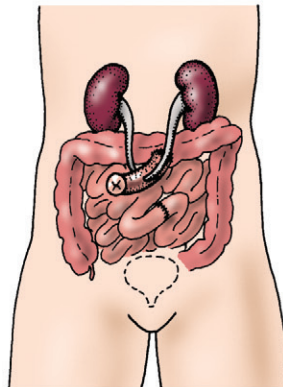


Cutaneous ureteroureterostomy

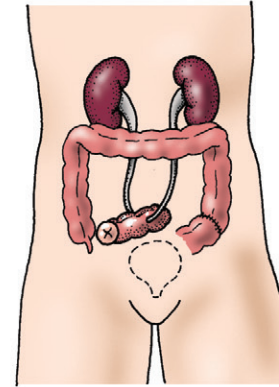


Bilateral cutaneous ureterostomy

Conduits collect urine in a portion of the intestine, which is then opened onto the skin surface as a stoma. After the creation of a conduit, the patient must wear a pouch.

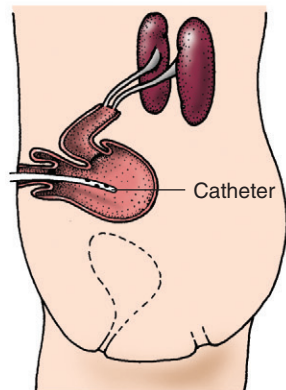


Ileal (Bricker's) conduit



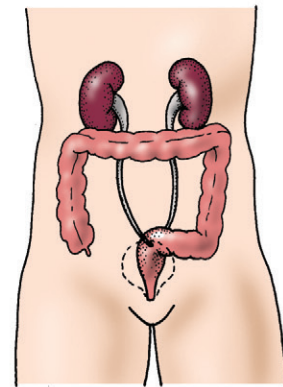
Colon conduit

Ileal reservoirs divert urine into a surgically created pouch, or pocket, that functions as a bladder. The stoma is continent, and the patient removes urine by regular self-catheterization.

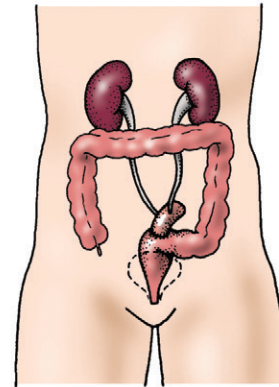


Continent internal ileal reservoir (Kock's pouch)

Sigmoidostomies divert urine to the large intestine, so no stoma is required. The patient excretes urine with bowel movements, and bowel incontinence may result.



Ureterosigmoidostomy



Ureteroileosigmoidostomy

FIG. 69-4 Urinary diversion procedures used in the treatment of bladder cancer.

noticing a feeling of neobladder pressure. General care after surgery is discussed in [Chapter 18](#).

Different types of drains and nephrostomy catheters are used, sometimes on a temporary basis, to drain urine from the kidney. Some are totally internal, with no drainage to the outside. Others may drain exclusively to the outside and urine is collected in a pouch or bag. For this type of drainage system, urine output remains constant. A decrease in amount or no drainage is cause for concern and must be reported to the surgeon or nephrologist, as is leakage around the catheter.

Some nephrostomy tubes are connected both to the new bladder (internal drainage) and to an external drainage system. With this type of system, urine output from the external portion of the catheter is variable. With any drainage system, intervention is needed if the external catheter is accidentally partially or completely pulled out. Immediately notify the surgeon or nephrologist. If the catheter remains partially in place, secure it from further movement. This action may result in a re-insertion process rather than a total replacement.

Community-Based Care

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient and family about drugs, diet and fluid therapy, the use of external pouching systems, and the technique for catheterizing a continent reservoir.

With some procedures, the patient may need electrolyte replacement to prevent long-term deficits. Teach him or her to avoid foods that are known to produce gas if the urinary diversion uses the intestinal tract. When intestinal production of gas is excessive, flatus can induce incontinence.

Patients who have a neobladder created often have extreme weight loss during the first few weeks after surgery. Collaborate with a dietitian to develop a diet plan specific to the patient to meet his or her caloric needs.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Infection is common in patients who have a neobladder. Teach patients and family members the manifestations of infection and the importance of reporting the infection immediately to the surgeon.

Instruct the patient and family about any changes in self-care activities related to the urinary diversion. In collaboration with the enterostomal therapist, demonstrate external pouch application, local skin care, pouch care, methods of adhesion, and drainage mechanisms. If a Kock's pouch has been created, teach the patient how to use a catheter to drain the pouch. For all instruction, observe at least one return demonstration by the patient or the caregiver. Ideally, the patient assumes responsibility for self-care before discharge.

Assist the patient to prepare for the impact of urinary diversion on self-image, body image, sexual functioning, and self-esteem. Counseling provides information and support to reduce feelings of powerlessness.

Through discussions with the patient about usual social situations, help him or her gain control over new toileting practices. Men with a urinary diversion into the sigmoid colon need to learn the habit of sitting to urinate. For patients of either gender, promote confidence in social situations by encouraging frequent emptying of urinary collection devices before traveling or attending social functions. Resumption of sexual activity is a major concern for many, regardless of age, and may remain problematic for many years after surgery (Gemmill et al., 2010) (see the Evidence-Based Practice Box at right). Address this topic openly and with sensitivity. Cystectomy causes impotence in men, but treatment is available (see Chapter 75).

Health Care Resources

The United Ostomy Association and the American Cancer Society have educational materials that may be useful to patients. Refer patients and family members to local chapters or units of these organizations. In some areas, local support groups have meetings to assist others and to send visitors to provide peer counseling and support. Home care personnel may assist with follow-up, easing the transition from hospital to home. The Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nurses Society has educational programs and a journal for the care of patients with ostomies.

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

How Does Urinary Diversion for Bladder Cancer Affect Sexual Expression and Quality of Life?

Gemmill, R., Ferrell, B., Krouse, R., & Grant, M. (2010). Going with the flow: Quality-of-life outcomes of cancer survivors with urinary diversion. *Journal of the Wound, Ostomy and Continence Nurses*, 37(1), 65-72.

Urinary diversion (UD) is a common outcome after treatment of bladder cancer and requires continued daily personal attention. In addition, the urinary system is anatomically associated with many of the physical aspects of sexual expression and behavior for both men and women. As survival rates from bladder cancer increase, more individuals are long-term with UD. One purpose of this descriptive study was to describe health-related quality of life (HRQOL) concerns among cancer survivors with different types of UD (continent or incontinent).

The study methods involved distribution of a HRQOL questionnaire that had been developed, tested, revised, and retested over many years at multiple sites for its utility in assessing the four dimensions of physical well-being, psychological well-being, social well-being, and spiritual well-being among cancer patients. This highly valid questionnaire was revised to include issues that were specifically ostomy-related. The revised tool had acceptable levels of reliability and validity as indicated by a subscale Cronbach alpha ranging between 0.77 to 0.90 and an overall Cronbach alpha of $r = 0.95$.

Data obtained from a total of 307 respondents meeting study criteria were analyzed using univariate logistical regression and multivariate logistical regression methods. The median time of having a UD in this sample was 9.5 years (range of 3 to 13 years). Only one third of respondents reported having an overall "excellent" HRQOL. Common areas of dissatisfaction were related to reduced sexual activity, daily time involved with care related to the UD, peristomal irritation, bowel changes, urine leakage, fear of disease recurrence, and embarrassment related to urine leakage or body image. A major finding of this study was that these issues were not limited to the immediate postoperative period but persisted for years.

Level of Evidence: 4

Although very large, the study was descriptive in nature without randomization of subject selection or assignment. The information collected relied on subject self-report. The methods of statistical analysis were appropriate for the research questions posed. A major strength of the study was the collection of data from long-term recipients of UD.

Commentary: Implications for Practice and Research

The results of this study indicate that adjustment of patients to UD requires considerable time and that quality of life is affected for years. The problems associated with sexuality were experienced by both men and women. Many of the issues identified by the respondents could be made easier by nursing interventions that include adequate patient teaching, long-term support, and continued access to wound and ostomy care nurses.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement made by the client who is receiving intravesicular instillations of BCG for bladder cancer indicates to the nurse that more teaching is needed?

- "Holding my urine for at least 8 hours after the treatment keeps the drug in contact with my bladder."
- "Drinking plenty of fluids during the evening after the treatment helps get the drug out of my system."
- "Sitting to urinate for 24 hours after treatment prevents exposure of other people to the drug."
- "Avoiding intercourse for 24 hours after treatment reduces my wife's exposure to the drug."

BLADDER TRAUMA

Pathophysiology

Bladder trauma can be caused by penetrating or blunt injury to the lower abdomen. Penetrating injury may occur by stabbing, gunshot wound, or other trauma in which objects pierce the abdominal wall. A fractured pelvis with puncture of the bladder by bone fragments is the most common cause of bladder trauma. Bladder trauma may also be a result of sexual assault.

Blunt trauma compresses the abdominal wall and the bladder. A seat belt may compress the bladder hard enough to cause injury, especially if the bladder is full or distended.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Patients with a penetrating bladder wound often have anuria or hematuria. In the emergency department, initial assessment includes inspection of the urinary meatus for blood.

Diagnostic tests include cystography and voiding cystourethrography (VCUG). If kidney or ureteral trauma is suspected, IV urography is scheduled before cystography so that any leakage of bladder contrast medium does not mask the outlines of the kidneys or ureters. The cystogram shows whether there is a defect in bladder filling; the voiding cystourethrogram defines bladder emptying.

Bladder trauma, other than a simple contusion, requires surgical intervention. When bone fractures are present, they are stabilized before bladder repair to prevent further bladder damage. Surgical interventions include repairing the bladder wall and peritoneal membrane. Usually, repairs of the bladder are closure procedures.

Patients with an anterior bladder wall injury usually have a Penrose drain and a Foley catheter in place after surgery. Those with a posterior bladder wall injury have a Penrose drain and Foley or suprapubic catheter after surgery. In some instances, vaginal or rectal fistulas may also require repair.

Psychosocial support is critical for patients who have sustained traumatic injuries. Refer them to counseling resources to assist in dealing with psychosocial issues.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing urinary elimination problems as a result of cystitis?

- Patient urinates frequently in small amounts.
- Patient reports pain and burning on urination.
- Patient reports suprapubic pain.
- Urine is cloudy and foul-smelling.
- Urine may be darker or smoky or have obvious blood in it.

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing urinary elimination problems as a result of a UTI?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Ask how long manifestations have been present.
- Ask about low back pain (midline in men) or flank pain.
- Ask whether he or she has had a UTI in the past; how long ago; how it was treated; and if antibiotics were prescribed, whether the drug course was completed.
- Ask about the presence of pregnancy or any chronic health problem, especially diabetes.
- Determine fluid intake and output volumes.
- Assess for bladder distention by palpation or with a bedside bladder ultrasound scanner (see [Chapter 68](#)).

- Assess for pain over the right and left kidneys.
- Examine the meatus for irritation.
- If a Foley catheter is in place, determine why it is in use and how long it has been present.
- Interpret laboratory values:
 - Is the complete blood count within normal limits?
 - Is the urinalysis positive for bacteria, leukocyte esterase, nitrate, red blood cells, or white blood cells?

Respond by:

- Assessing the need for continuing indwelling catheter
- Teaching the patient comfort measures
- Teaching the patient the importance of completing the prescribed drug regimen

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved urinary output (see [Chapter 68](#)).
- Think about what may have caused this infection in a hospitalized patient (or long-term care resident) and what steps could be taken to prevent a similar episode.
- Think about what patient-teaching focus could help reduce the risk for future UTI.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use sterile technique when inserting a catheter or any other instrument into the urinary system.

- Use Contact Precautions with any drainage from the genitourinary tract.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach patients to clean the perineal area daily, after voiding, after having a bowel movement, and after sexual intercourse.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION! —cont'd

- Encourage all patients to maintain an adequate fluid intake (minimum of 1.5 to 2.5 L daily unless another health problem requires fluid restriction).
- Instruct women who have stress incontinence the proper way to perform pelvic floor strengthening exercises.
- Teach patients who come into contact with chemicals in their workplaces or with leisure-time activities to avoid direct skin and mucous membrane contact with these chemicals.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express feelings or concerns regarding a potential cancer diagnosis.
- Use a nonjudgmental approach in caring for patients with urinary incontinence.
- Avoid referring to protective pads or pants as “diapers.”
- Recognize the need for the patient undergoing cystectomy and urinary diversion to grieve about the body image change.
- Assess the patient’s level of comfort in discussing issues related to elimination and the urogenital area.

- Use language and terminology during kidney and urinary assessment that the patient is comfortable using.
- Refer patients to community resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

- Identify hospitalized patients at risk for bacteriuria and urosepsis.
- Report immediately any condition that obstructs urine flow.
- Instruct patients with UTI to complete all prescribed antibiotic therapy even when symptoms of infection are absent.
- Evaluate daily the indications for maintaining indwelling catheters, and discontinue their use as soon as possible.
- Teach patients the expected side effects and any adverse reactions to prescribed drugs.
- Assess the patient’s manual dexterity and cognitive awareness before teaching a regimen of intermittent self-catheterization.

CHAPTER

70

Care of Patients with Renal Disorders

Chris Winkelman



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Health Promotion and Maintenance

1. Encourage patients with diabetes to achieve tight glycemic control.
2. Encourage patients with hypertension to follow their treatment regimens to maintain blood pressure within the target range.
3. Teach patients at risk for urinary tract infection (UTI) to maintain a daily fluid intake of 2 L unless another health problem requires fluid restriction.
4. Teach patients on antibiotic therapy for a UTI to complete the drug regimen.
5. Teach all people strategies to prevent kidney trauma.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Use language the patient is comfortable with during assessment of the kidney and urinary system.

7. Encourage the patient to express feelings or concerns about a change in kidney function.
8. Explain treatment procedures to patients and families.

Physiological Integrity

9. Explain the genetics of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease.
10. Use laboratory data and clinical manifestations to determine the effectiveness of therapy for pyelonephritis.
11. Describe the clinical manifestations of hydronephrosis.
12. Explain the relationship between hypertension and kidney disease.
13. Coordinate nursing care for the patient with pyelonephritis.
14. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the first 24 hours after a nephrectomy.

The kidneys participate in *urinary elimination* by filtering wastes and balancing fluids, electrolytes, acids, and bases. Any problem that disrupts kidney function limits the ability to meet that need and has the potential to impair general homeostasis (Fig. 70-1). The kidneys work together with many other organ systems. Thus kidney disorders affect systemic health and can lead to life-threatening outcomes. Kidney disorders are classified as congenital, obstructive, infectious, glomerular, and degenerative. Kidney tumors and kidney trauma are also described in this chapter. Acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease are discussed in Chapter 71.

CONGENITAL DISORDERS

POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Polycystic kidney disease (PKD) is an inherited disorder in which fluid-filled cysts develop in the nephrons. In the dominant form, only a few nephrons have cysts until the person reaches his or her 30s. In the recessive form of the disease, nearly 100% of nephrons have cysts from birth. Cysts develop anywhere in the nephron as a result of abnormal kidney cell division.

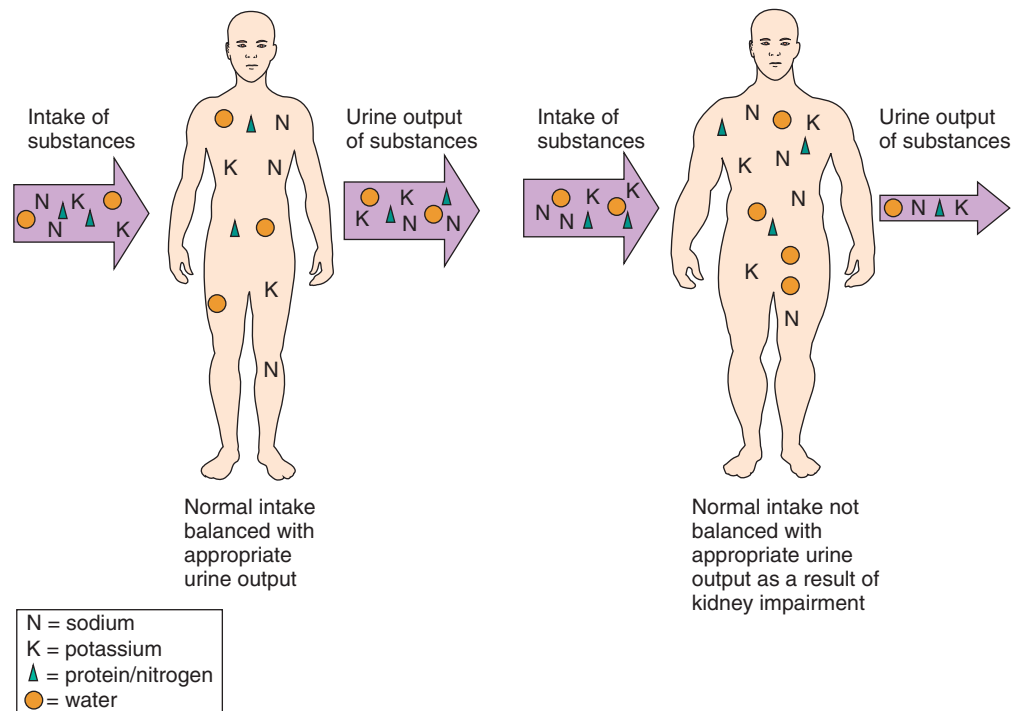


FIG. 70-1 Unbalanced body water, electrolytes, and waste products as a result of kidney problems that prevent adjustments in urinary elimination.

Over time, small cysts become much larger (up to a few centimeters in diameter) and more widely distributed. The growing cysts damage the glomerular and tubular membranes. As the cysts fill with fluid and enlarge, the nephron and kidney function become less effective.

The kidney tissue is eventually replaced by nonfunctioning cysts, which look like clusters of grapes (Fig. 70-2). The kidneys become very large. Each cystic kidney may enlarge to two or three times its normal size, becoming as large as a football, and may weigh 10 pounds or more each. Other abdominal organs are displaced, and the patient has pain. The fluid-filled cysts are also at increased risk for infection, rupture, and bleeding, which increase pain.

Most patients with PKD have high blood pressure. The cause of hypertension is related to kidney ischemia from the enlarging cysts. As the vessels are compressed and blood flow to the kidneys decreases, the renin-angiotensin system is activated, raising blood pressure. Control of hypertension is a top priority because proper treatment can disrupt the process that leads to further kidney damage.

Cysts may occur also in other tissues, such as the liver and blood vessels. They may reduce liver function. In addition, the incidence of cerebral *aneurysms* (outpouching and thinning of an artery wall) is higher in patients with PKD. These aneurysms may rupture, causing bleeding and sudden death. For reasons as yet unknown, kidney stones occur in 8% to 36% of the patients with PKD. Heart valve problems (e.g., mitral valve prolapse), left ventricular hypertrophy, and colonic diverticula also are common in patients with PKD.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

PKD has several forms and can be inherited as either an autosomal dominant trait or, less commonly, as an autosomal recessive trait. People who inherit the recessive form of PKD

usually die in early childhood. The 5% to 10% incidence of PKD in patients with no family history occurs as a result of a new gene mutation.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

The autosomal dominant form of PKD (ADPKD) is the most common form of polycystic disease. Children of parents who have the autosomal dominant form of PKD have a 50% chance of inheriting the gene that causes the disease. Fig. 70-3 shows a typical pedigree for a family with ADPKD. Presentation of ADPKD can vary for age of onset, manifestations, and illness severity, even within one family. However, it is highly penetrant, meaning that nearly 100% of people who inherit a PKD gene will develop kidney cysts by age 30 (Nussbaum et al., 2007). Half of these people develop chronic kidney disease by age 50 years. ADPKD-1 is the most common and most severe form of the autosomal dominant disease. ADPKD-2 has a slower rate of cyst formation, so symptoms occur later in life and progression to end-stage kidney disease and other complications is delayed.

Autosomal recessive PKD is rare, and most people with the disease die in early childhood. It is caused by a gene mutation different from the dominant form. To inherit a recessive gene, both parents must carry a copy of the mutated allele and both mutated alleles must be inherited. Thus each child has a 1-in-4 chance of inheriting autosomal recessive polycystic disease.

There is no way to prevent PKD, although early detection and management of hypertension may slow the progression of kidney damage. Genetic counseling may be useful for adults who have one parent or both parents with PKD. Family history analysis is a simple assessment that can be used to help identify people at risk for PKD (see Fig. 70-3).

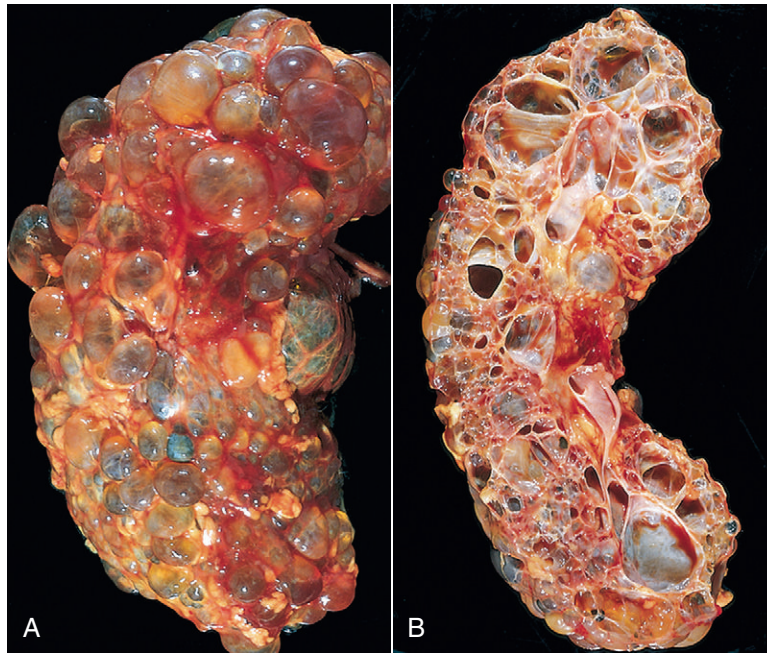


FIG. 70-2 External surface (A) and internal surface (B) of a polycystic kidney.

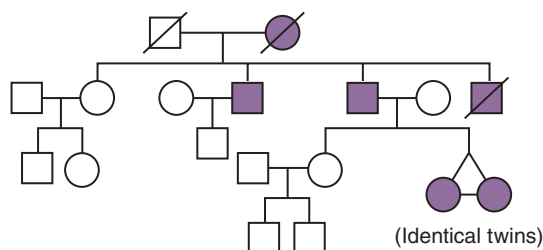


FIG. 70-3 Four-generation pedigree for autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD). Colored-in symbols indicate family members with ADPKD. Slashes indicate the person has died.

Incidence/Prevalence

PKD is a common disorder, affecting 250,000 to 500,000 people in the United States. It is more common in white people than in people of other races. Men and women have an equal chance of inheriting the disease because the gene responsible for PKD is not located on the sex chromosomes (Polycystic Kidney Disease Foundation, 2011).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Explore the family history of a patient with suspected or actual PKD, and ask whether either parent was known to have PKD or whether there is any family history of kidney disease. The age at which the problem was diagnosed in the parent and any related complications are important to obtain. Ask about constipation, abdominal discomfort, a change in urine

CHART 70-1 KEY FEATURES

Polycystic Kidney Disease

- Abdominal or flank pain
- Hypertension
- Nocturia
- Increased abdominal girth
- Constipation
- Bloody or cloudy urine
- Kidney stones

color or frequency, high blood pressure, headaches, and a family history of sudden death from a stroke.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Chart 70-1 lists key features of PKD. Pain is often the first manifestation. Inspect the abdomen. A distended abdomen is common as the cystic kidneys swell and push the abdominal contents forward. Polycystic kidneys are easily palpated because of their increased size. Proceed with *gentle* abdominal palpation because the cystic kidneys and nearby tissues may be tender and palpation is uncomfortable.

The patient also may have flank pain as a dull ache or as sharp and intermittent discomfort. Dull, aching pain is caused by increased kidney size with distention or by infection within the cyst. Sharp, intermittent pain occurs when a cyst ruptures or a stone is present. When a cyst ruptures, the patient may have bright red or cola-colored urine. Infection is suspected if the urine is cloudy or foul smelling or if there is **dysuria** (pain on urination).

Nocturia (the need to urinate excessively at night) is an early manifestation and occurs because of decreased urine concentrating ability. As kidney function further declines, the patient has increasing hypertension, edema, and uremic manifestations such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting, pruritus, and fatigue (see Chapter 71). Because berry aneurysms often occur in patients with PKD, a severe headache with or without neurologic or vision changes requires attention.

Psychosocial Assessment

As an inherited disorder, PKD may cause psychosocial responses. The patient often has seen the effects and problems of the disease in close family members. He or she may have had a parent who died or close relatives who required dialysis or transplantation. While obtaining the family history, listen carefully for spoken and unspoken feelings of anger, resentment, futility, sadness, or anxiety. Such feelings may need further exploration. The focus of the feelings may be one or both parents or the process of diagnosis and treatment. Feelings of guilt and concern for the patient's children may also complicate the issue.

Diagnostic Assessment

Urinalysis shows **proteinuria** (protein in the urine) once the glomeruli are involved. **Hematuria** (blood in the urine) may be gross or microscopic. Bacteria in the urine indicate infection, usually in the cysts. Obtain a urine sample for culture and sensitivity testing when there is evidence of infection. As kidney function declines, serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels rise. With decreasing kidney function, creatinine clearance decreases. Changes in kidney handling of sodium may cause either sodium losses or sodium retention.

Diagnostic studies include renal sonography, computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Small cysts are detected by sonography, CT, or MRI. Renal sonography shows evidence of PKD, with minimal risk.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

The 36-year-old unaffected daughter of a 63-year-old man with PKD is visiting her two 31-year-old sisters (identical twins) who are both hospitalized with acute complications of their PKD (see Fig. 70-3). You find the unaffected sister in the hallway crying. She tells you that she feels sad that her sisters are suffering so much and guilty that she has escaped the disease. She also tells you that, although she wants to donate a kidney to the sister whose disease has already progressed to end-stage kidney disease (ESKD), she is not a blood type match. (Both parents have type A blood, the unaffected sister has type A blood, and the affected twin sisters have type O blood.) In addition, she has a 2-year-old son and a 6-week-old son, and she fears that they may either develop the disease or pass it on to their children. She also tells you that she is grateful that her father's PKD is not as severe as her sisters' disease.

1. What is the pattern of inheritance for the PKD depicted in Fig. 70-3 (and explain why it could not be another pattern of inheritance)?
2. Are the unaffected sister's fears of passing the disease on to her children or grandchildren founded or unfounded? Provide a rationale for your decision.
3. Is the unaffected sister correct in thinking that her blood type difference eliminates the possibility that she could donate a kidney to one of her sisters? Why or why not? (You may need to review blood type issues in Chapter 42 and kidney transplantation issues in Chapter 71.)
4. What comments or suggestions could you make to help the unaffected sister feel less guilty about her own good health?

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for the patient with PKD include pain management and prevention of infection, constipation, hypertension, and chronic kidney disease. When the disease progresses

to the point that the kidneys no longer function to clear wastes, care becomes similar to that needed for the patient with end-stage kidney disease (see Chapter 71).

Managing Pain

Comfort strategies include drug therapy and complementary approaches. A combination may be most effective. NSAIDs are used cautiously because of their tendency to reduce kidney blood flow. Aspirin-containing compounds are avoided to reduce the risk for bleeding.

If cyst infection causes discomfort, antibiotics such as trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim, Septra, Trimplex) or ciprofloxacin (Cipro) are prescribed. (See Chart 69-4 in Chapter 69.) These drugs enter the cyst wall. Monitor the serum creatinine levels because antibiotic therapy can be nephrotoxic. Apply dry heat to the abdomen or flank to promote comfort when kidney cysts are infected. When pain is severe, cysts can be reduced by needle aspiration and drainage; however, they usually refill.

Teach the patient methods of relaxation and comfort using deep breathing, guided imagery, or other strategies. The expected outcome is patient self-management. (See Chapter 5 for pain management.)

Preventing Constipation

Teach the patient who has adequate urine output how to prevent constipation by maintaining adequate fluid intake, increasing dietary fiber when fluid intake is more than 2500 mL/24 hr, and exercising regularly. Explain that pressure on the large intestine may occur as the polycystic kidneys increase in size. The patient should know that these recommendations for bowel management might change, particularly if end-stage kidney disease also develops. Advise him or her about the use of stool softeners and bulk agents, including the careful use of laxatives, to prevent chronic constipation.

Controlling Hypertension and Preventing End-Stage Kidney Disease

Blood pressure control is necessary to reduce cardiovascular complications and slow the progression of kidney dysfunction. Nursing interventions include education to promote self-management and understanding. When kidney impairment results in decreased urine concentration with nocturia and low urine specific gravity, urge the patient to drink at least 2 L of fluid per day to prevent dehydration, which can further reduce kidney function. Restricting sodium intake may help control blood pressure. See Chapter 38 for a detailed discussion about the causes and management of hypertension.

Drug therapy for blood pressure control includes antihypertensive agents and diuretics. Antihypertensive agents include angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, calcium channel blockers, beta blockers, and vasodilators (see Chapter 38). ACE inhibitors may help control the cell growth aspects of PKD and reduce microalbuminuria.

Teach the patient and family how to measure and record blood pressure. Help the patient establish a schedule for self-administering drugs, monitoring daily weights, and keeping blood pressure records (Chart 70-2). Explain the potential side effects of the drugs. Make available written materials, such as drug teaching cards and booklets.

A low-sodium diet is often prescribed to control the hypertension that usually occurs with PKD. However, some

CHART 70-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Polycystic Kidney Disease

- Measure and record your blood pressure daily, and notify your health care provider for consistent changes in blood pressure.
- Take your temperature if you suspect you have a fever.
- Weigh yourself every day at the same time of day and with the same amount of clothing; notify your physician or nurse if you have a sudden weight gain.
- Limit your intake of salt to help control your blood pressure.
- Notify your physician or nurse if your urine smells foul or has blood in it.
- Notify your physician or nurse if you have a headache that does not go away or if you have visual disturbances.
- Monitor bowel movements to prevent constipation.

patients may have salt wasting and should not follow a sodium-restricted diet. As the disease progresses, the protein intake may be limited to slow the development of end-stage kidney disease. Assist the patient and family in understanding the diet plan and why it was prescribed. Work closely with the dietitian to foster the patient's understanding. Also refer the patient for nutritional counseling.

Health Care Resources

The Polycystic Kidney Disease Foundation (www.pkdcure.org) and the National Kidney & Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC) of the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (www2.niddk.nih.gov) conduct research and provide education about PKD. Many pamphlets are available; there is a fee for some materials. Chapters of the National Kidney Foundation (NKF) and the American Association of Kidney Patients (AAKP) also have resources for information and support.

OBSTRUCTIVE DISORDERS

HYDRONEPHROSIS, HYDROURETER, AND URETHRAL STRICTURE

Pathophysiology

Hydronephrosis and hydroureter are problems of urine outflow obstruction. Urethral strictures also obstruct urine outflow. Prompt recognition and treatment are crucial to prevent permanent kidney damage.

In **hydronephrosis**, the kidney enlarges as urine collects in the renal pelvis and kidney tissue. Because the capacity of the renal pelvis is normally 5 to 8 mL, obstruction in the pelvis or at the point where the ureter joins the renal pelvis quickly distends the renal pelvis. Kidney pressure increases as the volume of urine increases. Over time, sometimes in only a matter of hours, the blood vessels and kidney tubules can be damaged extensively (Fig. 70-4).

In patients with **hydroureter** (enlargement of the ureter), the effects are similar but the obstruction is in the ureter rather than in the kidney. The ureter is most easily obstructed where the iliac vessels cross or where the ureters enter the bladder. Ureter dilation occurs above the obstruction and enlarges as urine collects (see Fig. 70-4).

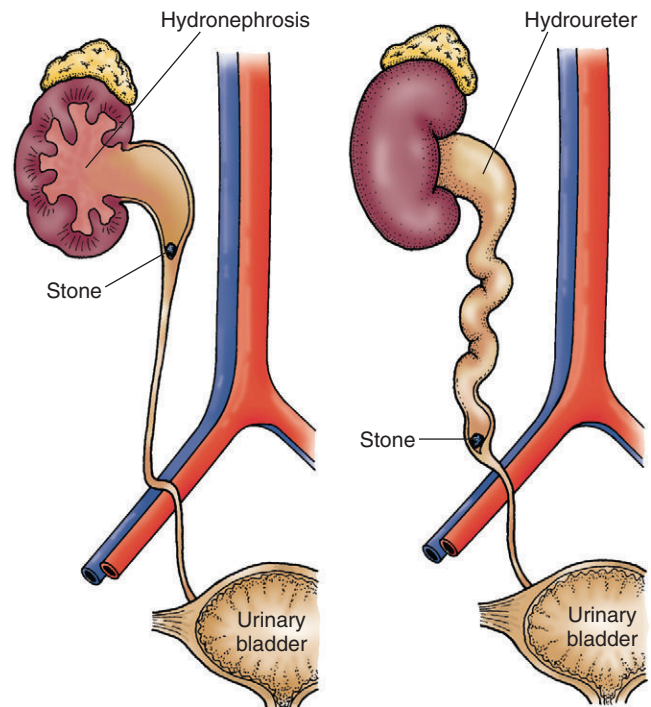


FIG. 70-4 Hydronephrosis is caused by obstruction in the upper part of the ureter. Hydroureter is caused by obstruction in the lower part of the ureter.

In patients with a **urethral stricture**, the obstruction is very low in the urinary tract, causing bladder distention before hydroureter and hydronephrosis. The problems and kidney damage are similar without prompt treatment.

Urinary obstruction causes damage when pressure builds up directly on kidney tissue. Tubular filtrate pressure also increases in the nephron as drainage through the collecting system is impaired. With this added pressure, glomerular filtration decreases or ceases, and complete necrosis of the affected kidney can occur. Nitrogen waste products (urea, creatinine, and uric acid) and electrolytes (sodium, potassium, chloride, and phosphorus) are retained, and acid-base balance is impaired.

Causes of hydronephrosis or hydroureter include tumors, stones, trauma, structural defects, and fibrosis. In patients with cancer, obstructed ureters may result from the tumors themselves, pelvic radiation, or surgical treatment. Early treatment of the causes can prevent hydronephrosis and hydroureter and thus prevent permanent kidney damage. The specific time needed to prevent permanent damage depends on the patient's kidney health. Permanent damage can occur in less than 48 hours in some patients and after several weeks in other patients.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Obtain a history from the patient, focusing on known kidney or urologic disorders. A history of childhood urinary tract problems may indicate previously undiagnosed structural defects. Ask about his or her usual pattern of urination, especially amount, frequency, color, clarity, and odor. Ask about

recent flank or abdominal pain. Chills, fever, and malaise may be present with a urinary tract infection (UTI).

Inspect each flank to identify asymmetry, which may occur with a kidney mass, and *gently* palpate the abdomen to locate areas of tenderness. Palpate and percuss the bladder to detect distention, or use a bedside bladder scanner. Gentle pressure on the abdomen may cause urine leakage, which reflects a full bladder and possible obstruction.

Urinalysis may show bacteria or white blood cells if infection is present. When urinary tract obstruction is prolonged, microscopic examination may show tubular epithelial cells. Blood chemistries are normal unless glomerular filtration decreases. Blood creatinine and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels increase with a reduced glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Serum electrolyte levels may be altered with elevated blood levels of potassium, phosphorus, and calcium along with a metabolic acidosis (bicarbonate deficit).

IV urography shows ureteral or renal pelvis dilation. Urinary outflow obstruction can be seen with sonography (renal echography) or computed tomography (CT).

INTERVENTIONS

Urinary retention and potential for infection are the primary problems. Failure to treat the cause of obstruction leads to infection and end-stage kidney disease.

Urologic Interventions

If the stricture is caused by a stone, it can be located and removed using cystoscopic or retrograde urogram procedures. The urologist uses a cystoscope to guide a stone basket over the stone and removes it through the bladder. After stone removal, a plastic stent is usually left in the ureter for a few weeks to improve urine flow in the area irritated by the stone. The stent is later removed by another cystoscopic procedure.

Radiologic Interventions

When a stricture is causing hydronephrosis and cannot be corrected with urologic procedures, a **nephrostomy** is performed. This procedure diverts urine externally and prevents further damage to the kidney.

Patient Preparation. If possible, the patient is kept NPO for 4 to 6 hours before the procedure. Clotting studies (e.g., international normalized ratio [INR], prothrombin time [PT], and partial thromboplastin time [PTT]) should be normal or corrected. The patient receives moderate sedation for the procedure.

Procedure. The patient is placed in the prone position. The kidney is located under ultrasound or fluoroscopic guidance, and a local anesthetic is given. A needle is placed into the kidney, a soft-tipped guidewire is placed through the needle, and then a catheter is placed over the wire. The catheter tip remains in the renal pelvis, and the external end is connected to a drainage bag. The procedure immediately relieves the pressure and prevents further damage. The nephrostomy tube remains in place until the obstruction is resolved (with or without further intervention).

Follow-up Care. Assess the amount of drainage in the collection bag. The amount of drainage depends on whether a ureteral catheter is also being used (with a separate drainage bag). Patients with ureteral tubes may have all urine pass through to the bladder or may have urine drain into the

collection bags. The type of urine drainage expected should be clearly communicated in the chart. If urine is expected to drain into the collection bag, assess the amount of drainage hourly for the first 24 hours. If the amount of drainage decreases and the patient has back pain, the tube may be clogged or dislodged.

Monitor the nephrostomy site for leaking urine or blood. Urine drainage may be red-tinged for the first 12 to 24 hours after the procedure and should gradually clear. Assess the patient for manifestations of infection, including fever or a change in urine character.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After nephrostomy, notify the physician immediately when the drainage decreases or stops, drainage becomes cloudy or foul-smelling, the nephrostomy site leaks blood or urine, or the patient has back pain.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

Which laboratory test result for a client who is about to have a nephrostomy for hydronephrosis does the nurse report immediately to the physician?

- A. Serum sodium 137 mEq/L
- B. Serum potassium 4.8 mEq/L
- C. Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) 23 mg/dL
- D. International normalized ratio (INR) 4.6

INFECTIOUS DISORDERS: PYELONEPHRITIS

In the healthy person, urine is normally sterile and remains sterile if there is no obstruction to urine passage in the kidney and urinary tract. When any structural abnormality is present, the risk for damage as a result of infection is greatly increased. **Urinary tract infection (UTI)** is an infection in this normally sterile system. **Pyelonephritis** is a bacterial infection in the kidney and renal pelvis.

Pathophysiology

Pyelonephritis is either the presence of active organisms in the kidney or the effects of kidney infections. **Acute pyelonephritis** is the active bacterial infection, whereas **chronic pyelonephritis** results from repeated or continued upper urinary tract infections or the effects of such infections. Chronic pyelonephritis often occurs with a urinary tract defect, obstruction, or, most commonly, when urine refluxes from the bladder back into the ureters. The vesicoureteral junction is the point at which the ureter joins the bladder. **Reflux** is the reverse or upward flow of urine toward the renal pelvis and kidney.

In pyelonephritis, organisms move up from the urinary tract into the kidney tissue. Descending infection transmitted by organisms in the blood may occur, but not often. Bacteria trigger the inflammatory response, and local edema results.

Acute pyelonephritis involves acute tissue inflammation, tubular cell necrosis, and possible abscess formation. **Abscesses**, which are pockets of infection with pus, can occur anywhere in the kidney. The infection is scattered within the

kidney; healthy tissues can lie next to infected areas. Fibrosis and scar tissue develop from the inflammation. The calices thicken, and scars develop in the interstitial tissue.

Reflux of infected urine from the bladder into the ureters and kidney is responsible for most cases of chronic pyelonephritis. Reflux within the kidney can occur when some papillae in the kidney do not close properly. Inflammation and fibrosis lead to deformity of the renal pelvis and calices. Repeated or continuous infections create additional scar tissue, changing blood vessel, glomerular, and tubular structure. As a result, filtration, reabsorption, and secretion are impaired and kidney function is reduced (Fig. 70-5).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Single episodes of *acute pyelonephritis* may result from the entry of bacteria, especially during pregnancy, obstruction, or reflux. *Chronic pyelonephritis* usually occurs with structural deformities or obstruction with reflux. Reflux or obstruction leading to chronic pyelonephritis is often caused by stones or neurogenic impairment of voiding. Reflux is more common in children who have acquired scarring during acute infection or as a result of anatomic anomalies. Reflux and scarring contribute to chronic pyelonephritis as an adult. Chronic pyelonephritis in adults who did not have reflux as a child usually occurs with spinal cord injury, bladder tumor, prostate enlargement, or urinary tract stones.

Acute or chronic pyelonephritis occurs often in patients who have undergone manipulation of the urinary tract (e.g., placement of a urinary catheter), those with diabetes mellitus or chronic kidney stones, or those who overuse analgesics. In those with diabetes mellitus, the reduced bladder tone increases the risk for pyelonephritis. In patients with chronic stone disease, stones may retain organisms, resulting in ongoing infection and kidney scarring. NSAID use can lead to papillary necrosis and reflux.

The most common pyelonephritis-causing organism is *Escherichia coli*. *Enterococcus faecalis* is common in hospitalized patients. Both organisms are in the intestinal tract. Other organisms that cause pyelonephritis in hospitalized patients include *Proteus mirabilis*, *Klebsiella*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. When the infection is bloodborne, common infecting organisms include *Staphylococcus aureus* and the *Candida* and *Salmonella* species.

Other causes of kidney scarring leading to kidney function impairment include antibody reactions, cell-mediated

immunity against the bacterial antigens, or autoimmune reactions.

Incidence/Prevalence

There are approximately 250,000 cases of acute pyelonephritis each year, resulting in more than 100,000 hospitalizations. Chronic pyelonephritis is commonly associated with vesico-ureteral reflux or other anatomic abnormalities and is more common in women, although exact numbers for incidence and prevalence are not available. After 65 years of age, rates of pyelonephritis for men increase greatly because of the increased incidence of prostatitis and enlarged prostate.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask about a history of urinary tract infections (UTIs), diabetes mellitus, stone disease, and defects of the genitourinary tract. Determine whether the UTIs occurred with pregnancy, and ask the patient about any previous episodes of pyelonephritis or similar symptoms. Ask about disease or treatment that causes immunosuppression, because they can also increase risk for pyelonephritis. Recurrences are common and may lead to a decline of kidney function.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Ask about specific manifestations of acute pyelonephritis (Chart 70-3). Chronic pyelonephritis has a less dramatic presentation, with manifestations related to the infection or kidney function. Ask the patient to describe any vague or nonspecific urinary symptoms or abdominal discomfort. Inquire about any history of repeated low-grade fevers. The patient with chronic pyelonephritis often has bacteruria that causes no symptoms. Chart 70-4 outlines the kidney effects of chronic pyelonephritis.

CHART 70-3 KEY FEATURES

Acute Pyelonephritis

- Fever
- Chills
- Tachycardia and tachypnea
- Flank, back, or loin pain
- Tender costovertebral angle (CVA)
- Abdominal, often colicky, discomfort
- Nausea and vomiting
- General malaise or fatigue
- Burning, urgency, or frequency of urination
- Nocturia
- Recent cystitis or treatment for urinary tract infection (UTI)

CHART 70-4 KEY FEATURES

Chronic Pyelonephritis

- Hypertension
- Inability to conserve sodium
- Decreased urine concentrating ability, resulting in nocturia
- Tendency to develop hyperkalemia and acidosis

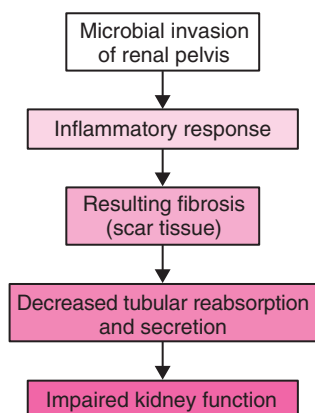


FIG. 70-5 Pathophysiology of pyelonephritis.

Inspect the flanks, and gently palpate the costovertebral angle (CVA). Inspect both CVAs for enlargement, asymmetry, edema, or redness, all of which can indicate inflammation. If there is no tenderness to light palpation in either CVA, an advanced practice nurse firmly percusses each area. Tenderness or discomfort may indicate infection or inflammation.

Psychosocial Assessment

The patient with any problem in the genitourinary area may have feelings of anxiety, embarrassment, or guilt. Listen carefully for signs of anxiety or specific fears, and prevent embarrassment during assessment. Feelings of guilt, often associated with sexual habits or practices, may be masked through delay in seeking treatment or through vague, nonspecific responses to specific or direct questions. Encourage patients to tell their own story in familiar, comfortable language.

Laboratory Assessment

Urinalysis shows a positive leukocyte esterase and nitrite dipstick test and the presence of white blood cells and bacteria. Occasional red blood cells, white blood cell casts, and protein may be present. The urine is cultured to determine whether gram-positive or gram-negative organisms are causing the infection. The urine sample for culture and sensitivity testing, obtained by the clean-catch method, shows the bacterial species and susceptibility or resistance of the specific organism to various antibiotics. In patients with recurrent episodes of pyelonephritis or upper UTIs, more specific testing of bacterial antigens and antibodies may help determine whether the same organism is responsible for the recurrent infections.

Blood cultures are obtained for specific organisms. Other blood tests include the C-reactive protein and erythrocyte sedimentation rate to determine the presence of inflammation.

Imaging Assessment

An x-ray of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder (KUB) and IV urography are performed to diagnose stones or obstructions. A cystourethrogram is indicated for some patients. These procedures define urinary tract structures and identify any defects. Specific defects to be identified include foreign bodies, such as stones; obstruction to the outflow of urine, such as tumors, structural defects, or prostate enlargement; and urine reflux caused by incompetent bladder-ureter valve closure. (See Chapter 68 for more information on imaging assessment.)

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Other diagnostic tests include examining antibody-coated bacteria in urine, certain enzymes (e.g., lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 5), and radionuclide scintillation (e.g., gallium scan). Examining urine for antibody-coated bacteria helps identify patients who may need long-term antibiotic therapy. High-molecular-weight enzymes in urine, such as lactate dehydrogenase isoenzyme 5, are present with any kidney tissue deterioration problem and give trend data. The gallium scan can identify active pyelonephritis or abscesses in or around the kidney.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for the patient with pyelonephritis are:

1. Acute Pain (flank and abdominal) related to inflammation and infection

2. Potential for chronic kidney disease and end-stage kidney disease related to infectious tissue destruction

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Managing Pain

Planning: Expected Outcomes. With proper intervention, the patient with pyelonephritis is expected to achieve an acceptable state of comfort. Indicators include that he or she often or consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Uses pharmacologic relief measures
- Uses NSAIDs appropriately
- Reports pain controlled

Interventions. Interventions may be nonsurgical or surgical. The use of several techniques that crush stones, such as lithotripsy and percutaneous ultrasonic pyelolithotomy (see Chapter 69), has decreased the need for surgery.

Nonsurgical Management. Interventions include the use of drug therapy, nutrition and fluid therapy, and teaching to ensure the patient's understanding of the treatment.

Drug therapy with antibiotics is prescribed to treat the infection. At first, the antibiotics are broad spectrum. After urine and blood culture and sensitivity results are known, more specific antibiotics may be prescribed. Urinary antiseptic drugs (e.g., nitrofurantoin [Macrobid]) may also be prescribed to provide comfort.

Nutrition therapy involves ensuring that the patient's nutritional intake has adequate calories from all food groups for healing to occur. Fluid intake is recommended at 2 L/day unless another health problem requires fluid restriction.

Surgical Management. Surgical interventions can correct structural problems causing urine reflux or obstruction of urine outflow or can remove the source of infection.

Antibiotics are given, usually IV, to achieve adequate blood levels or sterile blood culture results. Teach the patient the nature and purpose of the proposed surgery, the expected outcome, and how he or she can participate.

The surgical procedures may be one of these: **pyelolithotomy** (stone removal from the kidney), **nephrectomy** (removal of the kidney), ureteral diversion, or reimplantation of ureter to restore proper bladder drainage.

A pyelolithotomy is needed for removal of a large stone in the renal pelvis that blocks urine flow and causes infection. Nephrectomy is a last resort when all other measures to clear the infection have failed. For patients with poor ureter valve closure or dilated ureters, **ureteroplasty** (ureter repair or revision) or ureteral reimplantation (through another site in the bladder wall) preserves kidney function and eliminates infections.

See Chapter 69 for nursing care after surgery for the patient undergoing urologic surgery.

Preventing End-Stage Kidney Disease

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to conserve existing kidney function for as long as possible and have a slow progression to end-stage kidney disease once the damage has occurred. Indicators include that he or she consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Describes the role of antibiotics and self-administration of drugs
- Explains and offers techniques to ensure adequate nutrition and hydration
- Describes the plan for post-treatment follow-up, including knowledge of recurrent symptoms

- Modifies prescribed regimen as directed by a health care professional

Interventions. Specific antibiotics are prescribed to treat the infection. Stress the importance of completing the drug therapy as directed. Discuss with the patient and family the importance of regular follow-up examinations and completing the recommended diagnostic tests.

Blood pressure control is needed to slow the progression of kidney dysfunction. When kidney impairment decreases concentrating ability, encourage the patient to drink at least 2 L of fluid per day to prevent dehydration (dehydration could further reduce kidney function). When dietary protein is restricted, refer the patient to the dietitian as needed. Other interventions related to the progression of chronic kidney disease are covered in [Chapter 71](#).

Community-Based Care

Pyelonephritis causes fear and anxiety in the patient and family. The severity of the acute process and its potential to develop into a chronic process are frightening. The patient and the family need reassurance that treatment and preventive measures can be successful.

Home Care Management

If no surgery is performed, the patient may need help with self-care, nutrition, and drug management at home. If surgery is performed, he or she may need help with incision care, self-care, and transportation for follow-up appointments.

Teaching for Self-Management

After assessing the patient's and family's understanding of pyelonephritis and its therapy, explain:

- Drug regimen (purpose, timing, frequency, duration, and possible side effects)
- The role of nutrition and adequate fluid intake
- The need for a balance between rest and activity, including any limitations after surgery
- The manifestations of disease recurrence
- The use of previously successful coping mechanisms

Advise the patient to complete all prescribed antibiotic regimens and to report any side effects or unusual symptoms to the physician rather than stopping the drugs. Refer the patient and family for nutritional counseling as needed, because many patients have special nutritional requirements, such as those for diabetes or pregnancy.

Health Care Resources

The patient may also briefly need a home health nurse to help with drug or nutrition therapy at home. Housekeeping services may be helpful while he or she is regaining strength.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with pyelonephritis based on the identified priority patient problems. Expected outcomes may include that the patient will:

- Report that pain is controlled
- Be knowledgeable about the disease, its treatment, and interventions to prevent or reduce disease progression

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority patient problem in the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Which statement made by a client who has acute pyelonephritis indicates to the nurse correct understanding of the antibiotic therapy?

- "If my temperature is normal for 3 days in a row, the infection is gone and I can stop taking the drug."
- "If my temperature goes above 100° for 2 days, I should take double the dose of the drug."
- "Even if I feel completely well, I should take the drug exactly as prescribed until it is gone."
- "I should notify my prescriber to change the medication if I develop diarrhea while taking this drug."

IMMUNOLOGIC KIDNEY DISORDERS

Glomerulonephritis (GN) is the third leading cause of end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) ([U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010](#)). Whether the disease starts in the kidney or occurs as the result of other health problems, the glomeruli are usually injured ([Table 70-1](#)). For disease that starts in the kidney, a genetic basis and immune problem are common. In addition, systemic diseases and infections can have kidney effects and cause glomerular injury ([Table 70-2](#)). Conditions that lead to glomerular disease include systemic lupus erythematosus and diabetic nephropathy.

Each type of disease or syndrome has a specific pathophysiology and clinical manifestations. Their *glomerular* effects are caused by injury to the glomeruli and result in

TABLE 70-1 PRIMARY GLOMERULAR DISEASES AND SYNDROMES

- Acute glomerulonephritis
- Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN)
- Chronic glomerulonephritis
- Nephrotic syndrome
- Persistent, vague urinary abnormalities with few or no symptoms

TABLE 70-2 SECONDARY GLOMERULAR DISEASES AND SYNDROMES

- Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
- Schönlein-Henoch purpura
- Goodpasture's syndrome
- Systemic necrotizing vasculitis
- Wegener's granulomatosis
- Periarthritis nodosa (also called *polyarteritis nodosa*)
- Amyloidosis
- Diabetic glomerulopathy
- HIV-associated nephropathy
- Alport's syndrome
- Multiple myeloma
- Viral hepatitis B
- Viral hepatitis C
- Cirrhosis
- Sickle-cell disease
- Nonstreptococcal postinfectious acute glomerulonephritis
- Infective endocarditis
- Hemolytic-uremic syndrome
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura

proteinuria, hematuria, decreased glomerular filtration rate (GFR), edema, and hypertension. The extent and duration of kidney injury, prognosis, and specific cause vary among these syndromes.

Immunologic changes injure the glomeruli, interstitium, or tubules, and the effects may be acute or chronic. Both antibody and cellular immune responses are involved. The resultant kidney disorder can be systemic or confined to the kidneys.

Most forms of glomerulonephritis (GN) occur with a collection of immune complexes in the glomeruli (Fig. 70-6). An immune complex is made up of antigens (foreign substances within the body) and antibodies. The antigen can be part of any normal kidney tissue, or it can be dissolved in a body fluid (e.g., blood). Bacteria and viruses are also antigens. Exposure to bacteria, viruses, drugs, or other toxins is believed to be the trigger for glomerular injury.

Antibody reaction with antigens can cause immune complexes to form and become deposited in glomerular tissue. These complexes trigger many inflammatory mediators, such as complement, white blood cells, and blood clotting proteins, which also damage the kidney tissue. Actions that cause tissue injury include damage to cell membranes, local edema, movement of white blood cells to the site of inflammation, and platelet activation.

ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Pathophysiology

An infection often occurs before the kidney manifestations of acute glomerulonephritis (GN). The onset of symptoms is about 10 days from the time of infection. Usually, patients recover quickly and completely from acute GN. The term *acute nephritic syndrome* also describes this disorder.

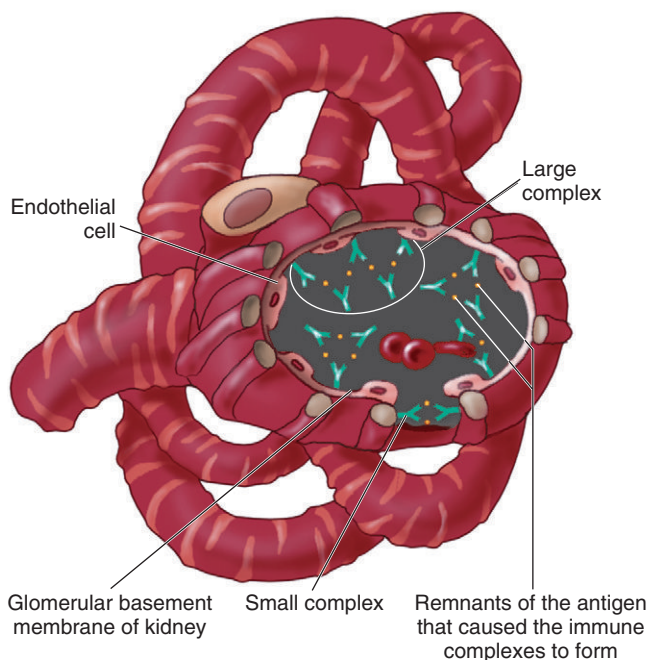


FIG. 70-6 An immune complex precipitating in the glomerulus of a patient with glomerulonephritis.

Most causes of acute GN are infectious (Table 70-3) or are related to other systemic diseases (see Table 70-2). The incidence of acute GN is unknown. GN after a systemic streptococcal infection is more common in men.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask about recent infections, particularly of the skin or upper respiratory tract, and about recent travel or other possible exposures to viruses, bacteria, fungi, or parasites. Recent illnesses, surgery, or other invasive procedures may suggest infections. Ask about any known systemic diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), which could cause acute GN.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Inspect the patient's skin for lesions or recent incisions (including body piercings). Assess the face, eyelids, hands, and other areas for edema (present in about 75% of the patients with acute GN). Assess for fluid overload and circulatory congestion (which may accompany the sodium and fluid retention occurring with acute GN). Ask about any difficulty in breathing or shortness of breath. Assess for crackles in the lung fields, an S₃ heart sound (gallop rhythm), and neck vein distention.

Ask about changes in urination pattern and any change in urine color. Microscopic blood in the urine occurs most of the time, and patients often describe their urine as smoky, reddish brown, rusty, or cola colored. Ask about dysuria or oliguria. Weigh him or her to assess for fluid retention.

Take the patient's blood pressure and compare it with the baseline blood pressure. Mild to moderate hypertension often occurs with acute GN as a result of sodium and fluid retention. The patient may have fatigue, a lack of energy, anorexia, nausea, and/or vomiting if uremia from severe kidney impairment is present.

TABLE 70-3 INFECTIOUS CAUSES OF ACUTE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

- Group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus*
- Staphylococcal or gram-negative bacteremia or sepsis
- Pneumococcal, *Mycoplasma*, or *Klebsiella pneumonia*
- Syphilis
- Visceral abscesses
- Infective endocarditis
- Hepatitis B
- Infectious mononucleosis
- Measles
- Mumps
- Rocky Mountain spotted fever
- Cytomegalovirus infection
- Histoplasmosis
- Toxoplasmosis
- Varicella
- *Chlamydia psittaci* infection
- Coxsackievirus infection
- Any bacterial, parasitic, fungal, or viral infection (potentially)

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

The less common manifestations of acute GN are more likely to occur in older adults. Circulatory congestion often is present, causing acute GN to be easily confused with congestive heart failure.

Laboratory Assessment

Urinalysis shows red blood cells (*hematuria*) and protein (*proteinuria*). An early morning specimen of urine is preferred for urinalysis because the urine is most acidic and formed elements are more intact at that time. Microscopic examination often shows red blood cell casts, as well as casts from other substances. The urine sediment assay is usually positive.

The glomerular filtration rate (GFR), either estimated from a single serum and urine creatinine value or measured by the 24-hour urine test for creatinine clearance, may be decreased to 50 mL/min. Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels are usually increased. The older patient may have a greater decline in GFR.

A 24-hour urine collection for total protein assay is obtained. The protein excretion rate for patients with acute GN may be increased from 500 mg to 3 g/24 hr in most patients. Serum albumin levels are decreased because of the protein lost in the urine and because of fluid retention causing dilution.

Specimens from the blood, skin, or throat are obtained for culture, if indicated. Other serologic tests include antistreptolysin-O titers, C3 complement levels, cryoglobulins (immunoglobulin G [IgG]), antinuclear antibodies (ANAs), and circulating immune complexes.

Antistreptolysin-O titers are increased after group A beta-hemolytic *Streptococcus* infections. Complement levels are decreased when the complement system is activated. Type III cryoglobulins may be found during acute illness. ANAs suggest an autoimmune response, and SLE is just one possibility. Immune complexes containing IgG and C3 are often detected.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

A kidney biopsy provides a precise diagnosis of the condition, assists in determining the prognosis, and helps outline treatment (see [Chapter 68](#)). The specific tissue features are determined by light microscopy, immunofluorescent stains, and electron microscopy to identify cell type, the presence of immunoglobulins, or the type of tissue deposits.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions focus on managing infection, preventing complications, and providing appropriate patient education.

Managing infection as a cause of acute GN begins with appropriate antibiotic therapy. Penicillin, erythromycin, or azithromycin is prescribed for GN caused by streptococcal infection. Check the patient's known allergies before giving any drug. To prevent infection spread, antibiotics for people in immediate close contact with the patient also may be prescribed. Stress personal hygiene and basic infection control principles (e.g., handwashing) to prevent spread of the organism. Teach patients the importance of completing the entire course of the prescribed antibiotic.

Preventing complications is an important nursing intervention. For patients with fluid overload, hypertension, and

edema, diuretics and a sodium and water restriction are prescribed. Antihypertensive drugs may be needed to control hypertension (see [Chapter 38](#)). The usual fluid allowance is equal to the 24-hour urine output plus 500 to 600 mL. Patients with oliguria usually have increased serum levels of potassium and blood urea nitrogen (BUN). Potassium and protein intake may be restricted to prevent hyperkalemia and uremia as a result of the elevated BUN.

Nausea, vomiting, or anorexia indicates that uremia is present. Dialysis is necessary if uremic symptoms or fluid volume excess cannot be controlled (see [Chapter 71](#)). **Plasmapheresis** (removal and filtering of the plasma to eliminate antibodies) also may be used (see [Chapter 42](#)).

To conserve the patient's energy, assist him or her in maintaining a restful environment, balancing activity and rest, and coordinating needed activities. Urge the patient to practice relaxation techniques and to participate in diversional activities to reduce emotional stress.

Preparing for self-management includes teaching the patient and family members about the purpose of prescribed drugs, the dosage and schedule, and potential adverse side effects. Ensure that they understand dietary or fluid restrictions, including methods of detecting fluid retention. Advise the patient to measure weight and blood pressure daily at the same time each day. Instruct him or her to notify the health care provider of any sudden increase in weight or blood pressure.

If short-term dialysis is required to control fluid volume or uremic symptoms, explain peritoneal or vascular access care and dialysis schedules and routines (also see [Chapter 71](#)).

RAPIDLY PROGRESSIVE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis (RPGN), a type of acute nephritis, is also called *crescentic glomerulonephritis* because of the presence of crescent-shaped cells in the Bowman's capsule. RPGN develops over several weeks or months and causes loss of kidney function. Patients become quite ill quickly and have manifestations of kidney impairment (fluid volume excess, hypertension, oliguria, electrolyte imbalances, and uremic symptoms).

The patient may have had previous infection or systemic disease, such as systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE). The kidney function decline often progresses to end-stage kidney disease.

CHRONIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS**Pathophysiology**

Chronic glomerulonephritis, or *chronic nephritic syndrome*, develops over 20 to 30 years or even longer. The exact onset of the disorder is rarely identified. Often the cause of the disease is not known because the kidneys are atrophied and tissue is not available for biopsy or diagnosis. Mild proteinuria and hematuria, hypertension, fatigue, and occasional edema are often the only manifestations.

Although the exact cause is not known, changes in the kidney tissue result from hypertension, infections and inflammation, or poor blood flow to the kidneys. Kidney tissue atrophies, and the number of functional nephrons is greatly reduced. Biopsy in the late stages of atrophy may show

glomerular changes, cell loss, protein and collagen deposits, and fibrosis of the kidney tissue. Microscopic examination shows deposits of immune complexes.

The loss of nephrons reduces glomerular filtration. Hypertension and renal arteriole sclerosis are often present. The glomerular damage allows proteins to enter the urine. Chronic glomerulonephritis always leads to end-stage kidney disease (see [Chapter 71](#)).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask about other health problems, including systemic diseases, kidney or urologic disorders, infectious diseases (e.g., streptococcal infections), and recent exposures to infections. Ask about overall health status and whether increasing fatigue and lethargy have occurred.

Identify the patient's voiding pattern. Ask whether the frequency of voiding has increased or the quantity of urine has decreased. Ask about changes in urine color, odor, or clarity and whether dysuria or incontinence has occurred. Nocturia also is a common symptom.

Assess the patient's general comfort, and ask whether any dyspnea at rest or with exertion has occurred, because fluid overload can occur with decreased urine output. Ask about and observe for changes in mental functioning, such as irritability or an inability to read or to perform job-related functions or other processes requiring concentration. Changes in memory and the ability to concentrate occur as waste products collect in the blood.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Assess for systemic circulatory overload. Auscultate lung fields for crackles, observe the respiratory rate and depth, and measure blood pressure and weight. Auscultate the heart for rate, rhythm, and the presence of an S_3 heart sound. Inspect the neck veins for venous engorgement, and check for edema of the foot and ankle, on the shin, and over the sacrum.

Assess for uremic symptoms, such as slurred speech, ataxia, tremors, or **asterixis** (flapping tremor of the fingers or the inability to maintain a fixed posture with the arms extended and wrists hyperextended). Inspect skin for a yellowish color, texture, bruises, rashes, or eruptions. Ask about itching, and document areas of dryness or any excoriation from scratching.

Diagnostic Assessment

Urine output decreases, but the urine appears normal unless a urinary tract infection (UTI) also is present. Urinalysis shows protein, usually less than 2 g in a 24-hour collection. The specific gravity is fixed at a constant level of dilution (around 1.010). Red blood cells and casts may be in the urine.

The glomerular filtration rate (GFR), measured by creatinine clearance, is low. The serum creatinine level is elevated, usually greater than 6 mg/dL but may be as high as 30 mg/dL or more. The BUN is increased, often as high as 100 to 200 mg/dL.

Decreased kidney function causes abnormal serum electrolyte levels. Sodium retention is common, but dilution of

the plasma from excess fluid can result in a falsely normal serum sodium level (135 to 145 mEq/L) or a low sodium level (less than 135 mEq/L). When oliguria develops, potassium is not excreted and hyperkalemia occurs when levels exceed 5.4 mEq/L.

Hyperphosphatemia develops with serum levels greater than 4.7 mg/dL. Serum calcium levels are usually at the lower end of the normal range or are slightly below normal.

Acidosis develops from hydrogen ion retention and loss of bicarbonate. However, there may be a decrease in serum carbon dioxide (CO_2) levels as patients breathe more rapidly to compensate for the acidosis. If respiratory compensation is present, the pH of arterial blood is between 7.35 and 7.45. A pH of less than 7.35 means that the patient's respiratory system is not completely compensating for the acidosis (see [Chapter 14](#)).

The kidneys are abnormally small on x-ray and on IV urography and when measured by sonography or computed tomography (CT).

A kidney biopsy is important in the early stages of glomerulonephritis, when protein or blood is first present in the urine. Tissue changes include a variety of cells infiltrating the glomerular tissue, deposits of immune complexes, and blood vessel sclerosis. In advanced disease, when the kidneys are small, biopsy is not usually performed.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions focus on slowing the progression of the disease and preventing complications. Management consists of diet changes, fluid intake sufficient to prevent reduced blood flow volume to the kidneys, and drug therapy to control the problems from uremia. Eventually, the patient requires dialysis or transplantation to prevent death from uremia. (Care for the patient with ESKD requiring dialysis or transplantation is discussed in [Chapter 71](#).)

NEPHROTIC SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Nephrotic syndrome (NS) is a condition of increased glomerular permeability that allows larger molecules to pass through the membrane into the urine and then be excreted. This process causes massive loss of protein into the urine, edema formation, and decreased plasma albumin levels. Many agents and disorders are possible causes of NS.

The most common cause of glomerular membrane changes is an immune or inflammatory process. Defects in glomerular filtration can also occur as a result of genetic defects of the glomerular filtering system, such as Fabry disease. Altered liver activity may occur with nephrotic syndrome, resulting in increased lipid production and hyperlipidemia.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The main feature of nephrotic syndrome (NS) is severe proteinuria (more than 3.5 g of protein in 24 hours). Patients also have low serum albumin levels (serum albumin is less than 3 g/dL), high serum lipid levels, fats in the urine, edema, and hypertension ([Chart 70-5](#)). Renal vein thrombosis often occurs at the same time as NS, either as a cause of the problem

CHART 70-5 KEY FEATURES

Nephrotic Syndrome

Sudden onset of these manifestations:

- Massive proteinuria
- Hypoalbuminemia
- Edema (especially facial and periorbital)
- Lipiduria
- Hyperlipidemia
- Increased coagulation
- Reduced kidney function

or as an effect. NS may progress to ESKD, but this can be prevented with treatment.

Management varies depending on what process is causing the disorder (identified by kidney biopsy). Immunologic processes may improve with suppressive therapy using steroids and cytotoxic or immunosuppressive agents. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors can decrease protein loss in the urine, and cholesterol-lowering drugs can improve blood lipid levels. Heparin may reduce urine protein loss and improve kidney function. Diet changes are often prescribed. If the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is normal, dietary intake of complete proteins is needed. If the GFR is decreased, dietary protein intake must be decreased. Mild diuretics and sodium restriction may be needed to control edema and hypertension. Assess the patient's hydration status, because vascular dehydration is common. If the plasma volume is depleted, kidney problems worsen. Acute kidney injury (AKI) may be avoided if good blood flow to the kidney is maintained.

IMMUNOLOGIC INTERSTITIAL AND TUBULOINTERSTITIAL DISORDERS

Problems can arise in the kidney tissues around the nephrons, as well as in the nephron tissues. These interstitial and tubulointerstitial disorders in the kidney are usually caused by immune problems. The kidney changes may be acute or chronic. The acute effects often occur with drugs such as penicillins, cephalosporins, sulfonamides, or NSAIDs. Chronic interstitial nephritis has many causes, including analgesic use, complement activation, cyclosporin use, polycystic kidney disease, autoimmune disorders, multiple myeloma, sickle cell disease, obstructive disorders, and radiation nephritis. Drug-induced problems often occur with a rash or an elevated eosinophil count. Fever is common in interstitial nephritis of unknown cause. Progression to ESKD occurs unless the cause is identified and removed.

DEGENERATIVE DISORDERS

Degenerative disorders that change kidney function often occur with a multisystem disorder. Many of these degenerative disorders result from changes in kidney blood vessels.

NEPHROSCLEROSIS

Pathophysiology

Nephrosclerosis is a problem of thickening in the nephron blood vessels, resulting in narrowing of the vessel lumens. This change decreases kidney blood flow, and the tissue

is chronically hypoxic. Ischemia and fibrosis develop over time.

Nephrosclerosis occurs with all types of hypertension, atherosclerosis, and diabetes mellitus. The more severe the hypertension, the greater the risk for severe kidney damage. Nephrosclerosis is rarely seen when blood pressure is consistently below 160/110 mm Hg. The changes caused by hypertension may be reversible or may progress to end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) within months or years.

Hypertension is the second leading cause of ESKD, with about 30% of patients requiring kidney replacement therapy (e.g., dialysis or transplantation).



CULTURAL CONSIDERATIONS

Hypertension is more common in African Americans and American Indians, and the risks for ESKD from hypertension are also greater for these ethnic groups ([U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010](#)). Between 25 and 45 years of age, the ratio of African Americans to Caucasians at risk for ESKD from hypertension is nearly 20:1. At any health care encounter with an African-American patient or an American Indian patient, blood pressure should always be assessed. If hypertension is present, treatment and patient education can help reduce the risk for development of ESKD.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Management focuses on controlling high blood pressure and reducing albuminuria to preserve kidney function. Although many antihypertensive drugs may lower blood pressure, the patient's response is important in ensuring long-term adherence to the prescribed therapy. Factors that promote adherence include once-a-day dosing, low cost, and minimal side effects.

Lack of knowledge or misinformation about hypertension poses many challenges to health care providers working with patients who have hypertension. When kidney disease occurs, adherence to therapy is even more important for preserving health.

Many drugs can control high blood pressure (see [Chapter 38](#)), and more than one agent may be needed for best control. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors are very useful in reducing hypertension and preserving kidney function. Diuretics can maintain fluid and electrolyte balance in the presence of kidney function insufficiency. Hyperkalemia needs to be prevented when potassium-sparing diuretics, alone or in combination, are used to treat hypertensive patients with known kidney disease.

RENOVASCULAR DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Processes affecting the renal arteries may severely narrow the lumen and greatly reduce blood flow to the kidney tissues. Uncorrected renovascular disease, such as renal artery stenosis, atherosclerosis, or thrombosis, causes ischemia and atrophy of kidney tissue ([Russell, 2008](#)).

Patients with renovascular disease often have a sudden onset of hypertension, particularly in patients older than 50 years. Patients with high blood pressure but with no family history of hypertension also may potentially have renal artery stenosis (RAS). RAS from atherosclerosis or blood vessel

hyperplasia is the main cause of renovascular disease. Other causes include thrombosis and renal vessel aneurysms.

Atherosclerotic changes in the renal artery often occur along with sclerosis in the aorta and other major vessels. Changes in the renal artery are often located where the renal artery and aorta meet. Fibrotic changes of the blood vessel wall occur throughout the length of the renal artery.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Key features of renovascular disease are listed in [Chart 70-6](#). Hypertension usually first occurs after 40 to 50 years of age, and often the patient does not have a family history of hypertension. Diagnosis is made by magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), renal duplex ultrasonography, radionuclide imaging, renal arteriography, and renal vein renin levels. MRA provides an excellent image of the renal vasculature and kidney anatomy. Radionuclide imaging is a noninvasive way of evaluating kidney blood flow and excretory function. Combining radionuclide imaging with ingestion of an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor such as captopril improves the accuracy of the test. A renal arteriogram makes the features of the renal blood vessels visible. The comparison of renal vein renin levels *may* reveal which kidney is producing more renin.

INTERVENTIONS

Identifying the type of defect, extent of narrowing, and condition of the surrounding blood vessels is critical for treatment choice. The patient's overall health and the size of the atrophied kidney also affect management decisions. Many patients with renovascular disease also have cardiovascular disease, and both conditions require treatment.

RAS may be managed by drugs to control high blood pressure and by procedures to restore the blood supply to the kidney. Drugs may control high blood pressure but may not lead to long-term preservation of kidney function. In young and middle-aged adults, a lifetime of treatment with many drugs for high blood pressure makes treatment difficult and the outcomes uncertain.

Balloon angioplasty with or without stent placement to open renal vessels is less risky and requires less time for recovery than does renal artery bypass surgery (see [Chapter 38](#)). Renal artery bypass surgery is a major procedure and requires 2 or more months for recovery. A bypass may be performed for either one or both renal arteries.

Renal angioplasty with metal stent placement is one safe and effective method to repair RAS. After the procedure, the patient usually remains in ICU for 24 hours to monitor for sudden blood pressure fluctuations as the kidneys adjust to increased blood flow.

CHART 70-6 KEY FEATURES

Renovascular Disease

- Significant, difficult-to-control high blood pressure
- Poorly controlled diabetes or sustained hyperglycemia
- Elevated serum creatinine
- Decreased creatinine clearance

A synthetic blood vessel graft is inserted to redirect blood flow from the abdominal aorta into the renal artery, beyond the area of narrowing. A splenorenal bypass can also restore blood flow to the kidney. The process is similar to other arterial bypass procedures (see [Chapter 37](#)).

DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY

Pathophysiology

Diabetes mellitus is the leading cause of end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) among white people in North America. About 36% of patients requiring dialysis or kidney transplantation have diabetes mellitus ([U.S. Renal Data Systems, 2010](#)). Diabetic nephropathy occurs with either type 1 or type 2 diabetes mellitus. Severity of diabetic kidney disease is related to the degree of hyperglycemia the patient generally experiences. With poor control of hyperglycemia, the complicating problems of atherosclerosis, hypertension, and neuropathy (which promotes loss of bladder tone, urinary stasis, and urinary tract infection) are more severe and more likely to cause kidney damage.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Diabetic nephropathy is a vascular complication of diabetes. Its first manifestation is persistent albuminuria (as shown by dipstick or a urinary albumin excretion rate above 0.3 g/dL), without evidence of other kidney disease. Diabetic kidney disease is progressive ([Table 70-4](#)).

Structural and functional changes occur in the kidneys of diabetic patients. Initially, kidney size is slightly increased and glomerular filtration rates (GFRs) are higher than normal. Microlevels of albumin are first detected in the urine. Progressive kidney damage occurs before dipstick procedures can detect protein in the urine. For most patients, proteinuria (albuminuria) indicates the need for follow-up and possibly a kidney biopsy for further diagnosis. See [Chapter 67](#) for a detailed discussion of kidney issues in patients with diabetes.

Proteinuria may be mild, moderate, or severe. Patients with diabetes are always considered to be at risk for end-stage

TABLE 70-4 THE STAGES OF PROGRESSION OF TYPE 1 DIABETIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Stage I, at the time diabetes is diagnosed. Kidney size and glomerular filtration rate are increased. Blood sugar control can reverse the changes.
Stage II, 2 to 3 years after diagnosis. Glomerular and tubular capillary basement membrane changes result in microscopic changes, with loss of filtration surface area and scar formation. Glomerular changes are referred to as <i>glomerulosclerosis</i> .
Stage III, 7 to 15 years after diagnosis. Microalbuminuria is present. The glomerular filtration rate (GFR) may still be normal or may be increased.
Stage IV. Albuminuria is detectable by dipstick. GFR is decreased. Blood pressure is increased, and retinopathy is present.
Stage V. GFR decreases at an average rate of 10 mL/min/yr.
NOTE: Progression of chronic kidney disease related to type 1 diabetes mellitus can be delayed by maintaining glycemic control with HbA _{1c} levels below 8%.

kidney disease (ESKD). If possible, nephrotoxic agents (e.g., radiopaque contrast media or aminoglycosides) and dehydration are avoided. Patients with worsening kidney function may begin to have frequent hypoglycemic episodes and a reduced need for insulin or antidiabetic agents. Explain that the kidneys metabolize and excrete insulin. When kidney function is reduced, the insulin is available for a longer time and thus less of it is needed. Unfortunately, many patients believe this means their diabetes is improving. The result is a more rapid progression to ESKD. (See [Chapter 67](#) for specific information on diabetic nephropathy.)



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The client with diabetes who also has persistent proteinuria asks what he could do to prevent eventual kidney failure. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. "Wear pads and other protective gear around your lower back when engaging in contact sports."
- B. "Drink at least 3 L of water daily and avoid carbonated beverages."
- C. "Limit your intake of proteins to less than 100 g daily."
- D. "Keep your blood glucose levels in the target range."

RENAL CELL CARCINOMA

Pathophysiology

Renal cell carcinoma (RCC) is the most common type of kidney cancer and is also known as *adenocarcinoma of the kidney*. As with other cancers, the healthy tissue of the kidney is damaged and replaced by cancer cells.

Systemic effects occurring with this cancer type are called *paraneoplastic syndromes* and include anemia, erythrocytosis, hypercalcemia, liver dysfunction with elevated liver enzymes, hormonal effects, increased sedimentation rate, and hypertension.

Anemia and erythrocytosis may seem confusing; however, most patients with this cancer have *either* anemia or erythrocytosis, not both at the same time. There is some blood loss from hematuria, but the small amount lost does not cause anemia. The cause of the anemia and the erythrocytosis is related to kidney cell production of erythropoietin. At times, the tumor cells produce large amounts of erythropoietin, causing erythrocytosis. Other times, the tumor cells destroy the erythropoietin-producing kidney cells and anemia results. Hypertension may result from increased blood levels of renin.

Parathyroid hormone produced by tumor cells can cause hypercalcemia. Other hormone changes include increased renin levels (causing hypertension) and increased human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) levels, which decrease libido and change secondary sex features.

RCC has four distinct cell types. Genetic differences cause a predisposition to develop tumors of each of these types. The most well known genetic familial syndrome that includes kidney cancer is von Hippel-Lindau syndrome. These cancers are highly vascular and may occur with cancers of the pancreas, central nervous system, and adrenal glands.

Kidney tumors are classified into four stages ([Table 70-5](#)). Complications include metastasis and urinary tract obstruction. The cancer usually spreads to the adrenal gland, liver, lungs, long bones, or the other kidney ([Moldawer & Figlin](#),

TABLE 70-5 STAGING KIDNEY TUMORS

Stage I. Tumors up to 2.5 cm are situated within the capsule of the kidney. The renal vein, perinephric fat, and adjacent lymph nodes have no tumor.

Stage II. Tumors are larger than 2.5 cm and extend beyond the capsule but are within Gerota's fascia. The renal vein and lymph nodes are not involved.

Stage III. Tumors extend into the renal vein, lymph nodes, or both.

Stage IV. Tumors include invasion of adjacent organs beyond Gerota's fascia or metastasize to distant tissues.

Data from American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 00-300M-No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.

2008). When the cancer surrounds a ureter, hydroureter and obstruction may result.

The exact cause of RCC is unknown, but the risk is slightly higher for people who use tobacco or are exposed to lead, phosphate, and cadmium.

Kidney cancers account for about 51,190 new cases and 12,890 deaths annually in the United States. The 5-year survival rate is 60% in the United States. Renal cell carcinoma occurs most often in patients between 55 and 60 years of age (Jemal et al., 2007).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Ask the patient about age, known risk factors (e.g., smoking or chemical exposures), weight loss, changes in urine color, abdominal or flank discomfort, and fever. Also ask whether any other family member has ever been diagnosed with cancer of the kidney, bladder, ureter, prostate gland, uterus, or ovary.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Only about 5% to 10% of patients with renal cell cancer have flank pain, obvious blood in the urine, and a kidney mass that can be palpated. Ask about the nature of the flank or abdominal discomfort. Patients often describe the pain as dull and aching. The pain may be more intense if bleeding into the tumor or kidney occurs. Inspect the flank area, checking for asymmetry or an obvious bulge. An abdominal mass may be felt through *gentle* palpation. A renal bruit may be heard on auscultation.

Bloody urine is a *late* common sign. Blood may be visible as bright red flecks or clots, or the urine may appear smoky or cola colored. Without gross hematuria, microscopic examination may or may not reveal red cells.

Inspect the skin for pallor, darkening of the nipples, and, in men, breast enlargement (*gynecomastia*) caused by changing hormone levels. Other findings may include muscle wasting, weakness, poor nutritional status, and weight loss. All tend to occur late in the disease.

Diagnostic Assessment

Urinalysis may show red blood cells. Hematologic studies show decreased hemoglobin and hematocrit values, hypercalcemia, increased erythrocyte sedimentation rate, and

increased levels of adrenocorticotrophic hormone, human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), cortisol, renin, and parathyroid hormone.

Kidney masses may be detected by surgical exploration, IV urogram with nephrograms, or sonography. The mass and surrounding tissues may be outlined by CT with contrast or by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Complete diagnosis requires a biopsy of the tumor.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions focus on controlling the cancer and preventing metastasis.

Nonsurgical Management

Radiofrequency ablation can slow tumor growth. It is a minimally invasive procedure carried out after MRI has precisely located the tumor. The procedure is used most commonly for patients who have only one kidney or who are poor surgical candidates.

Chemotherapy has limited effectiveness against this cancer type. Use of biological response modifiers (BRMs) such as interleukin-2 (IL-2), interferon (INF), and tumor necrosis factor (TNF) has lengthened survival time (see [Chapters 19 and 24](#)). Newer targeted therapy agents, sorafenib (Nexavar) and temsirolimus (Torisel), were approved as treatment for patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma. Sorafenib, an oral drug taken daily, is a multikinase inhibitor that slows cancer cell division and inhibits blood vessel growth in the tumor. Temsirolimus is a weekly IV infusion and works by inhibiting cell division. These drugs have increased survival time of patients with advanced cancer.

Surgical Management

Renal cell carcinoma is usually treated surgically by *nephrectomy* (kidney removal). Renal cell tumors are highly vascular, and blood loss during surgery is a major concern. Before surgery, the arteries supplying the kidney may be occluded (embolized) by radiation to reduce bleeding during nephrectomy.

Preoperative Care. Instruct the patient about surgical routines (see [Chapters 16, 17, and 18](#)). Explain the probable site of incision and the presence of dressings, drains, or other equipment after surgery. Reassure the patient about pain relief. Care before surgery may include giving blood and fluids IV to prevent shock.

Operative Procedures. The patient is placed on his or her side with the kidney to be removed uppermost. The trunk area is flexed to increase exposure of the kidney area. Removal of the eleventh or twelfth rib may be needed to provide better access to the kidney. The surgeon removes the entire kidney and all visible tumor, renal artery and vein, and fascia after tying off the ureter. The adrenal gland is left intact. A drain may be placed in the wound before closure.

When a *radical* nephrectomy is performed, local and regional lymph nodes are also removed. The surgical approach may be transthoracic (as discussed in the previous paragraph), lumbar, or through the abdomen, depending on the size and location of the tumor. Radiation therapy may follow a radical nephrectomy.

Postoperative Care. Refer to [Chapter 18](#) for care of the patient after surgery. Nursing priorities are focused on assessing kidney function to determine effectiveness of the

remaining kidney, pain management, and preventing complications.

Monitoring includes assessing for hemorrhage and adrenal insufficiency. Inspect the patient's abdomen for distention from bleeding. Check the bed linens under the patient, because blood may pool there. Hemorrhage or adrenal insufficiency causes hypotension, decreased urine output, and an altered level of consciousness.

A decrease in blood pressure is an early sign of both hemorrhage and adrenal insufficiency. With hypotension, urine output also decreases immediately. Large water and sodium losses in the urine occur in patients with adrenal insufficiency. As a result, a large urine output is followed by hypotension and oliguria (less than 400 mL/24 hr or less than 25 mL/hr). IV replacement of fluids and packed red blood cells may be needed.

The second kidney is expected to provide adequate function, but this may take days or weeks. Assess urine output hourly for the first 24 hours after surgery (urine output of 0.5 mL/kg/hr or about 30 to 50 mL/hr is acceptable). Output of less than 25 to 30 mL/hr suggests decreased blood flow to the kidney and the onset or worsening of acute kidney injury. The hemoglobin level, hematocrit values, and white blood cell count may be measured every 6 to 12 hours for the first day or two after surgery.

Monitor the patient's temperature, pulse rate, and respiratory rate at least every 4 hours. Accurately measure and record fluid intake and output. Weigh the patient daily.

The patient may be in a special care unit for 24 to 48 hours after surgery for monitoring of bleeding and adrenal insufficiency. A drain placed near the site of incision removes residual fluid. Because of the discomfort of deep breathing, the patient is at risk for atelectasis. Fever, chills, thick sputum, or decreased breath sounds suggest pneumonia.

Managing pain after surgery usually requires opioid analgesics (e.g., hydromorphone [Dilaudid] and morphine [Statex ) given intravenously. The incision was made through major muscle groups used with breathing and movement. Liberal use of analgesics is needed for 3 to 5 days after surgery to manage pain. Oral agents may be tried when the patient can eat and drink.

Preventing complications focuses on infection and management of adrenal insufficiency. Antibiotics may be prescribed during and after surgery to prevent infection. The need for additional antibiotics is based on evidence of infection. Assess the patient at least every 8 hours for manifestations of systemic infection or local wound infection.

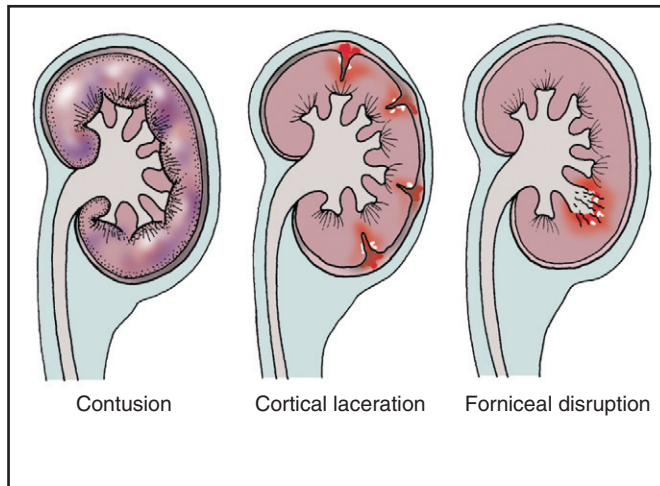
Adrenal insufficiency is possible as a complication of kidney and adrenal gland removal. Although only one adrenal gland may be affected, the remaining gland may not be able to secrete sufficient glucocorticoids immediately after surgery. Steroid replacements may be needed in some patients. [Chapter 65](#) discusses the manifestations of acute adrenal insufficiency in detail along with specific nursing interventions.

KIDNEY TRAUMA

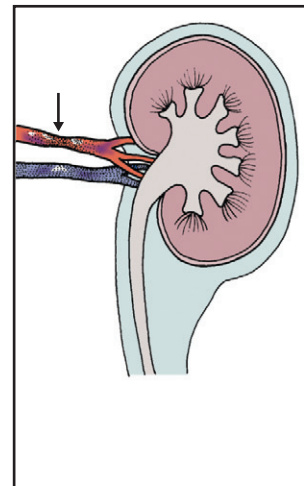
Pathophysiology

Trauma to one or both kidneys is always a concern in penetrating wounds or blunt injuries to the back, flank, or abdomen. Blunt trauma to the back, flank, or abdomen

MINOR TRAUMA



PEDICLE INJURY



MAJOR TRAUMA

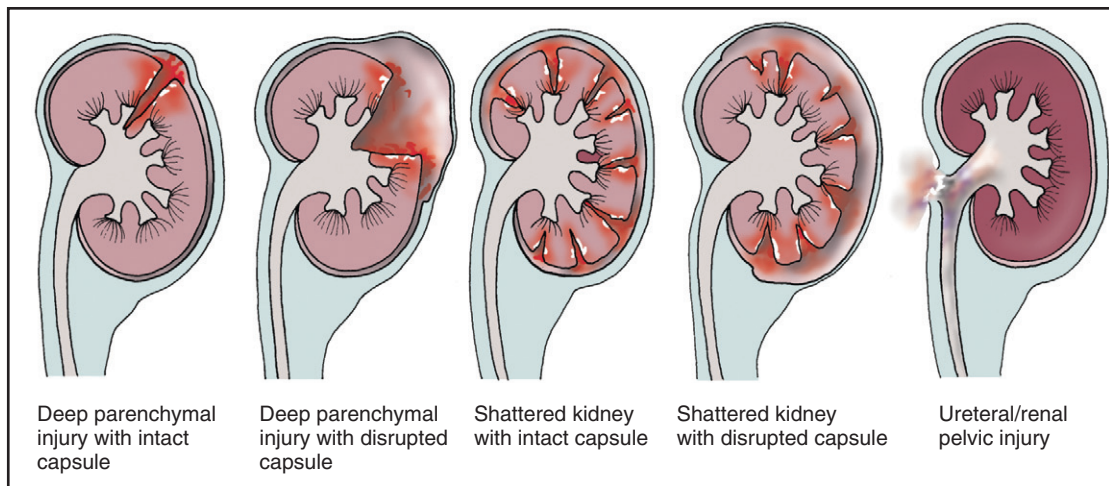


FIG. 70-7 Common types and locations of kidney trauma.

CHART 70-7 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Preventing Kidney and Genitourinary Trauma

- Wear a seat belt.
- Practice safe walking habits.
- Use caution when riding bicycles and motorcycles.
- Wear appropriate protective clothing when participating in contact sports.
- Avoid all contact sports and high-risk activities if you have only one kidney.

accounts for most kidney injuries. Injury can be minor, major, or pedicle (Fig. 70-7). Anyone can suffer kidney trauma. Strategies to prevent trauma are reviewed in Chart 70-7.

Minor injuries include contusions, small lacerations, and tearing of the parenchyma and the calyx (forniceal disruption) caused by falls, contact sports, and blows to the back

and torso. With a contusion, one or both kidneys are bruised because of impact. Small blood vessels may be damaged, causing some hematuria. Small lacerations may result in small, local hematomas. A small hematoma also may occur at the site of forniceal disruption.

Major injuries include lacerations to the cortex, medulla, or branches of the renal artery or vein. Deep tissue injuries may extend throughout the kidney and cause hematomas within or through the capsule. Injuries involving the cortex can cause tissue shattering. The capsule may remain intact or be ruptured.

A major injury often follows penetrating abdominal, flank, or back wounds (e.g., as is seen with gunshot wounds, knife wounds, or motor vehicle crashes). Bleeding is extensive, and surgical exploration is often needed. Because of the hemorrhage, decreased blood flow to the kidney can produce short-term or long-term renin-induced hypertension.

Pedicle injuries are lacerations or breaks in the renal artery or renal vein. Hemorrhage is extensive and rapid, and death may occur unless diagnosis and intervention are prompt.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Obtain a history of the patient's usual health and the events involved in the trauma from the patient, a witness, or emergency personnel. Critical information to know is a history of kidney or urologic disease, surgical intervention, or health problems such as diabetes mellitus or hypertension.

Ureteral or renal pelvic injury often causes diffuse abdominal pain, local collections of urine, and infection. Ask the patient about pain in the flank or abdominal pain. Is the pain dull? Sharp? Constant? Intermittent? Made worse by coughing?

Take the patient's blood pressure, apical and peripheral pulses, respiratory rate, and temperature. Inspect both flanks for asymmetry or penetrating injuries of the lower chest or back. Also inspect the abdomen for bruising or penetrating wounds. Percuss the abdomen for distention. Inspect the urethra for gross bleeding.

Urinalysis usually shows hemoglobin or red blood cells from renal blood vessel rupture. Microscopic examination may also show red blood cell casts, which suggest tubular damage. Hemoglobin and hematocrit values decrease with blood loss. If inflammation or infection is present, the white blood cell count is elevated.

Diagnostic procedures include IV urography and computed tomography (CT). CT scan shows the location of the injury and blood vessel and tissue integrity. Hematomas within or through the kidney capsule are seen with CT scan. A urogram reveals the integrity and patency of the collecting system. Sonography can be used instead if there is a need to avoid contrast dye, especially in patients with elevated serum creatinine levels.

INTERVENTIONS

Nonsurgical Management

Drug therapy is used for bleeding prevention or control. The need for clotting factors such as vitamin K and platelets is assessed, and they are given as needed.

Fluid therapy is given to restore circulating blood volume and ensure adequate blood flow to the kidneys. *Crystalloid solutions* replace water and some electrolytes and include 0.9% sodium chloride (normal saline solution [NSS]), 5% dextrose in 0.45% sodium chloride, and lactated Ringer's solution. When bleeding is extensive, whole blood or packed red cell replacement restores hemoglobin and promotes oxygenation. *Plasma volume expanders*, such as dextran or albumin, help restore plasma oncotic pressure and reduce fluid shift to the interstitial fluid space.

During fluid restoration, give fluids at the prescribed rate and monitor the patient for shock. Take vital signs as often as every 5 to 15 minutes. Measure and record urine output hourly. Output should be greater than 0.5 mL/kg/hr.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

If the urethral opening is bleeding, consult with the physician before attempting urinary catheterization.

Surgical Management

Nephrectomy or partial nephrectomy may be needed. When major blood vessels are torn, the kidney may be removed, repaired outside of the patient, and then reimplanted, a process known as "bench surgery."

Community-Based Care

Teach the patient and family about the effects of the injury and how to assess for infection or other complications, such as the onset of bleeding or urinary retention. Instruct the patient to check the pattern and frequency of urination and to note whether the color, clarity, and amount appear normal. Also instruct the patient to seek medical attention if anything appears abnormal or if bladder distention or inadequate bladder emptying occurs, which suggests an obstruction. Chills, fever, lethargy, or cloudy, foul-smelling urine indicates a urinary tract infection. Warn the patient to not ignore these manifestations and to seek medical care promptly if they occur.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing problems with urinary elimination as a result of acute pyelonephritis?

- Patient urinates frequently in small amounts.
- Patient reports pain and burning on urination.
- Patient reports back or flank pain.
- Urine is cloudy and foul smelling.
- Urine may be darker or smoky or have obvious blood in it.

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing problems with urinary elimination as a result of acute pyelonephritis?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Ask how long manifestations have been present.
- Ask about low back pain (midline in men) or flank pain.

- Ask whether he or she has had a UTI in the past; how long ago; how it was treated; and if antibiotics were prescribed, whether the drug course was completed.
- Ask about the presence of pregnancy or any chronic health problem, especially diabetes.
- Ask about any nausea or vomiting and its duration.
- Determine fluid intake and output volumes.
- Assess for pain over the right and left kidneys.
- Weigh the patient, and ask whether this weight is more or less than his or her usual weight.
- Assess for fever and chills.
- Assess for tachycardia.
- Interpret laboratory values:
 - Is the complete blood count with differential elevated?

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Are the BUN and serum creatinine levels elevated?
- Is the urinalysis positive for bacteria, leukocyte esterase, nitrate, red blood cells, white blood cells, or casts?

Respond by:

- Providing for pain control
- Teaching the patient the importance of completing the prescribed antibiotic drug regimen

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved urinary output (see [Chapter 68](#)).
- Think about what may have caused this infection and what steps could be taken to prevent a similar episode.
- Think about what patient teaching focus could help reduce the risk for future pyelonephritis and its complications.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all patients to maintain an adequate fluid intake (2-3 L/day unless another condition requires fluid restriction).
- Encourage patients with diabetes to adhere to regimens for glucose control and blood pressure control to prevent kidney disease.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express fear or anxiety regarding the potential for chronic kidney disease and end-stage kidney disease.
- Assess the patient's level of comfort in discussing issues related to elimination and the genitourinary area.
- Refer patients with polycystic kidney disease to a geneticist or a genetic counselor.
- During kidney/urinary assessment, use language and terminology that is comfortable for the patient.
- Refer patients to community resources, support groups, and information organizations such as the National

Kidney Foundation, the Polycystic Kidney Disease Foundation, and the American Association of Kidney Patients.

Physiological Integrity

- Report immediately any condition that obstructs urine flow.
- Instruct patients with UTI to complete all prescribed antibiotic therapy even when symptoms of infection are absent.
- Check the blood pressure and urine output frequently in patients who have any type of kidney problem.
- Report immediately to the health care provider any sudden decrease of urine output in a patient with kidney disease or kidney trauma. In general, adult urine output expectations are 0.5-1 mL/kg/hr.
- Instruct patients with any type of kidney problem to weigh daily and to notify their health care provider if there is a sudden weight gain.
- Teach patients the expected side effects and any adverse reactions to prescribed drugs.
- Teach patients the manifestations of disease recurrence and when to seek medical help.

Care of Patients with Acute Kidney Injury and Chronic Kidney Disease

Linda LaCharity



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Renal and Urinary Disorders
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator
Concept Map: End-Stage Kidney Disease
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Evaluate patient risk for dehydration, shock, and acute kidney injury.
2. Collaborate with members of the health care team to reduce patient exposure to nephrotoxins in the acute care setting.
3. Prevent injury in the patient who has bone density loss or skin changes from kidney disease.
4. Apply principles of infection control to prevent infection in patients receiving immunosuppressive therapy.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

5. Teach everyone to drink fluids to prevent dehydration during hot weather and when engaging in heavy work or exercise.
6. Assess intake and output for anyone at risk for or with hypovolemia.
7. Teach transplant recipients and their families about the importance of adhering to anti-rejection therapy.

Psychosocial Integrity

8. Encourage patients and families to express any concerns about the risk for death and the disruption of lifestyle as a result of treatment for kidney dysfunction.

9. Assess the patient for depression and nonacceptance of the diagnosis or treatment plan.
10. Refer patients to community resources and support groups.

Physiological Integrity

11. Compare the pathophysiology and causes of acute kidney injury (AKI) with those of chronic kidney disease (CKD).
12. Use laboratory data and clinical assessment to determine the effectiveness of therapy for kidney dysfunction.
13. Discuss interventions to prevent AKI.
14. Discuss the mechanisms of peritoneal dialysis (PD) and hemodialysis (HD) as renal replacement therapies.
15. Coordinate nursing care for the patient with severe CKD or end-stage kidney disease (ESKD).
16. Plan prevention strategies for the complications of PD.
17. Coordinate nursing care for the patient during the first 24 hours after kidney transplantation.

Severe kidney disease leading to renal failure is common in North America. Acute kidney injury (AKI) is most common in the acute care setting, and chronic kidney disease (CKD), which may take years to develop, is more common in the community. Both types of kidney dysfunction cause problems

by interfering with urinary elimination and disrupting homeostasis of fluid volume, blood pressure, electrolytes, wastes, and acid-base balance (see [Fig. 70-1](#) in [Chapter 70](#)). These problems can reduce general function, shorten life, and decrease quality of life. Diabetes, hypertension, and

TABLE 71-1 CHARACTERISTICS OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY AND CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

CHARACTERISTIC	ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY	CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE
Onset	Sudden (hours to days)	Gradual (months to years)
% of nephron involvement	≈50%	90%-95%
Duration	2-4 wks; less than 3 months	Permanent
Prognosis	Good for return of kidney function with supportive care; high mortality in some situations	Fatal without a renal replacement therapy such as dialysis or transplantation

cardiovascular disease are much more common in people with CKD, and their incidence increases as the stage of CKD worsens (U.S. Renal Data Systems [USRDS], 2010). Between 2003 and 2006, the number of patients with stage 3 CKD rose by 1.8% (USRDS, 2010). Thus overall, the incidence has increased only slightly and is most likely related to the use of kidney protective therapy with antihypertensive drugs such as angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors and angiotensin II receptor blocker (ARB) drugs, as well as the benefits associated with use of beta-blocker drugs in the treatment of heart failure. The incidence is expected to continue to rise as a result of the aging population and the huge increase in the incidence of type 2 diabetes. In the United States, about half a million people with end-stage-kidney disease (ESKD) are treated yearly with dialysis or kidney transplantation (Okusa et al., 2009). Kidney dysfunction has many causes. CKD is most commonly caused by hypertension (HTN) and diabetes.

As described in [Chapter 68](#), kidney functions include excretion of waste, water and salt balance, acid-base balance, and hormone secretion. When kidney function declines gradually, as occurs most often with CKD (also known as *chronic renal failure [CRF]*), 90% to 95% of the nephrons must be destroyed before kidney dysfunction is obvious. The patient may have many years of reduced kidney function (*renal insufficiency*) before the uremia of ESKD develops. During this time of decreased kidney function, the patient is at increased risk for acute kidney injury because of the stress on remaining nephrons.

When kidney decline is sudden, the functioning nephrons are overworked and kidney dysfunction may develop with the loss of only 50% of functioning nephrons. Acute kidney injury and chronic kidney disease are compared in [Table 71-1](#). Acute kidney injury affects *many* body systems. Chronic kidney disease affects *every* body system. The problems that occur with loss of kidney function are related to fluid overload, electrolyte and acid-base abnormalities, buildup of nitrogen-based wastes, and loss of kidney hormone function.

When kidney function declines to the point that the kidneys can no longer maintain homeostasis by urine elimination, renal replacement therapy is needed to prevent death.

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Pathophysiology

Acute kidney injury (AKI), which used to be known as **acute renal failure (ARF)** is a rapid decrease in kidney function, leading to the collection of metabolic wastes in the body. AKI can result from conditions that reduce blood flow to the kidneys (**prerenal acute kidney injury**); damage to the glomeruli, interstitial tissue, or tubules (**intrarenal/intrinsic acute kidney injury**); or obstruction of urine flow (**postrenal acute kidney injury**). When AKI occurs in patients who already have reduced kidney function, it may lead to **end-stage kidney disease (ESKD)** or it may resolve to nearly the pre-AKI level of kidney function. Many factors contribute to kidney insults in AKI, but the acute syndrome may be reversible, especially with prompt intervention.

The pathologic process of AKI is related to the cause of the sudden decrease in kidney function and to the affected kidney site(s). Reduced blood flow (poor perfusion), toxins, tubular ischemia, infections, and obstruction have different effects on the kidney and its function. Any of these processes can reduce glomerular filtration rate (GFR), damage nephron cells, and obstruct urine flow in the kidney tubules.

With shock or other problems causing an acute reduction in blood flow to the kidney (*hypoperfusion*), the kidney compensates by constricting renal blood vessels, activating the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone pathway, and releasing antidiuretic hormone (ADH). These responses increase blood volume and improve kidney perfusion. However, these same responses reduce urine volume, resulting in **oliguria** (urine output less than 400 mL/day) and **azotemia** (the retention and buildup of nitrogenous wastes in the blood). Nephron cell injury is more likely to occur from the lack of oxygen (*ischemia*) related to reduced blood flow (McCance et al., 2010). Toxins can cause blood vessel constriction in the kidney, leading to reduced kidney blood flow and kidney ischemia.

Kidney tissue inflammation caused by infection, drugs, or cancer results in immune-mediated changes in kidney tissue. With extensive tubular damage, tubular cells slough and combine with other formed elements (e.g., red blood cell [RBC] casts), which then obstruct tubular lumens and prevent urine outflow. *Obstruction anywhere within the urinary tract may result in reduced urine formation and full or partial obstruction to urine outflow.*

When pressure in the kidney tubules (*intrarenal pressure*) exceeds glomerular pressure, glomerular filtration stops. This problem allows nitrogen-based wastes to collect in the blood, increasing the blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and serum creatinine levels. When the BUN rises faster than the serum creatinine level, the cause is usually related to protein breakdown or dehydration. When both the BUN and the creatinine levels rise and the ratio between the two remains constant, this indicates kidney dysfunction.

Classification of Acute Kidney Injury Risk

The recent change in terminology from *acute renal failure* to *acute kidney injury* resulted in the development of standardized criteria to recognize the changes associated with the problem earlier, when interventions are more likely to reverse the process and prevent permanent kidney damage (Dirkes, 2011; Martin, 2010). This change was aimed at preventing

TABLE 71-2 THE RIFLE CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM FOR DIAGNOSIS AND SEVERITY OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

RIFLE CLASSIFICATION	SERUM CREATININE LEVEL	GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE (GFR)	URINE OUTPUT
Severity Level			
Risk	Increased 1.5 times above normal (or the patient's normal when chronic kidney disease is known to exist) OR	Decreased by at least 25% of the standard normal or the patient's normal	<0.5 mL/kg hourly for 6 hours
Injury	Increased 2.5 times standard normal or the patient's normal OR	Decreased by at least 50% of the standard normal or the patient's normal	<0.5 mL/kg hourly for 12 hours
Failure	Increased 3 times standard normal or the patient's normal OR	Decreased by more than 50% of the standard normal or the patient's normal	<0.5 mL/kg hourly for 24 hours or no urine output (anuria) for 12 hours
Outcome Level			
Loss	Complete loss of kidney function that persists for more than 4 weeks		None without renal replacement therapy
End-stage kidney disease	Complete loss of kidney function that persists for more than 3 months		None without renal replacement therapy

kidney damage both in people who had healthy kidneys before a specific precipitating event and in those who already had some degree of chronic kidney disease (CKD). (An acute kidney injury occurring in a person with CKD can greatly increase the rate of progression to end-stage kidney disease.)

Table 71-2 lists the criteria for classification of acute kidney injury based on the five RIFLE categories of changes in glomerular filtration, serum creatinine levels, and reduction of hourly urine output. (RIFLE stands for **R**isk, **I**njury, **F**ailure, **L**oss, and **E**nd-stage kidney disease.) These criteria apply to patients with no known kidney problems and to patients with CKD. The first three criteria (R,I,F), are injury severity levels. Identification of AKI at these levels and proper management can prevent progression to more serious injury that may not be reversible. The last two criteria (L,E) indicate serious injury that requires renal replacement therapy at least on a temporary basis. Even at level L, some people have return of kidney function. It is the responsibility of all health care professionals to be alert to the possibility of AKI, implement prevention strategies, and identify the need to implement appropriate interventions to prevent permanent impairment of kidney function.

Types of Acute Kidney Injury

The types of AKI are described by their causes. These include prerenal azotemia, intrarenal (*intrinsic*) AKI, and postrenal azotemia. Table 71-3 lists causes of AKI.

Prerenal azotemia is kidney injury caused by poor blood flow to the kidneys. The most common problems leading to AKI are hypovolemic shock and heart failure (Ali & Gray-Vickrey, 2011). Early AKI (levels R and I) often can be reversed by correcting blood volume, increasing blood pressure, and improving cardiac output. When the reduced blood flow is prolonged, the kidneys are severely damaged and intrarenal kidney injury results.

The term *intrarenal AKI* is often referred to as *oliguric AKI* in the clinical setting. Other terms include *acute tubular necrosis (ATN)* and *lower nephron nephrosis*. Infections (bacteria, viral, fungal), drugs (especially aminoglycoside antibiotics and NSAIDs), and invading tumors (e.g., lymphomas or leukemias) can cause acute interstitial nephritis. Other

TABLE 71-3 CAUSES OF THE THREE TYPES OF ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Prerenal Acute Kidney Injury

Any condition decreasing blood flow to the kidneys and leading to ischemia in the nephrons, such as:

- Shock (hypovolemia, hemorrhage, distributive, obstructive)
- Heart failure
- Pulmonary embolism
- Anaphylaxis
- Sepsis
- Pericardial tamponade

Intrarenal (Intrinsic) Acute Kidney Injury

Actual physical, chemical, hypoxic, or immunologic damage directly to the kidney tissue, such as:

- Acute interstitial nephritis
- Exposure to nephrotoxins
- Acute glomerular nephritis
- Vasculitis
- Acute tubular necrosis
- Renal artery or vein stenosis
- Renal artery or vein thrombosis
- Formation of crystals or precipitates in the nephron tubules

Postrenal Acute Kidney Injury

Obstruction of the urine collecting system anywhere from the calyces to the urethral meatus (obstruction of the ureter must be bilateral to cause postrenal failure unless only one kidney is functional), such as:

- Ureter, bladder, or urethral cancer
- Kidney, ureter, or bladder stones
- Bladder atony
- Prostatic hyperplasia or cancer
- Urethral stricture
- Cervical cancer

causes of intrarenal AKI include inflammation of the glomeruli (*glomerulonephritis*) or of the small vessels of the kidneys (*vasculitis*) or an obstruction of blood flow to the kidneys.

Postrenal azotemia develops from obstruction to the outflow of formed urine anywhere within the kidney or urinary tract.

TABLE 71-4 THE PHASES OF OLIGURIC ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

PHASE	DESCRIPTION	CHARACTERISTICS
Onset phase	Begins with the precipitating event and continues until oliguria develops. Lasts hours to days.	The gradual accumulation of nitrogenous wastes, such as increasing serum creatinine and BUN, may be noted.
Oliguric phase	Characterized by a urine output of 100-400 mL/24 hr that does not respond to fluid challenges or diuretics. Lasts 1-3 weeks.	Laboratory data include increasing serum creatinine and BUN levels, hyperkalemia, bicarbonate deficit (metabolic acidosis), hyperphosphatemia, hypocalcemia, and hypermagnesemia. Sodium retention occurs, but this is masked by the dilutional effects of water retention. Urinary indices are typically low and fixed; regulation of water balance by the kidneys is impaired, so urine specific gravity and urine osmolality do not vary as plasma osmolality changes.
Diuretic phase (high-output phase)	Often has a sudden onset within 2-6 wk after oliguric stage. Urine flow increases rapidly over a period of several days. The diuresis can result in an output of up to 10 L/day of dilute urine.	Electrolyte losses typically precede clearance of nitrogenous wastes. Later in the diuretic phase, the BUN level starts to fall and continues to fall until the level reaches normal limits or reaches a plateau. Normal kidney tubular function is re-established during this phase.
Recovery phase (convalescent phase)	In this phase, the patient begins to return to normal levels of activity. Complete recovery may take up to 12 months.	The patient functions at a lower energy level and has less stamina than before the illness. Residual kidney dysfunction may be noted through regular monitoring of kidney function. Kidney function may never return to pre-illness levels, but function sufficient for a long and healthy life is likely.

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen.

When kidney function declines, the oliguric phases of AKI begin (Table 71-4). Some patients have a *nonoliguric* form of AKI in which urine output remains near normal but serum creatinine levels rise. Ideally, interventions to restore circulating volume, improve cardiac output, and increase blood pressure prevent progression to a more severe level of kidney injury.

Etiology

Many types of problems can reduce kidney function. Severe hypotension from shock or dehydration reduces kidney blood flow and can lead to prerenal AKI. Cardiac disease or heart failure also can reduce kidney blood flow. The patient may be oliguric or even **anuric** (less than 100 mL/24 hr) if kidney blood flow reduction is severe. Conditions causing AKI are listed in Table 71-3.

Incidence/Prevalence

Health care–acquired AKI occurs in as many as 4% of hospital admissions and 20% of critical care admissions (Peacock & Sinert, 2010). Most AKI episodes are due to events that lead to hypotension with poor kidney perfusion and worsening of chronic kidney problems. For patients who survive the precipitating event, the chance for return of kidney function is good. However, complications during the course of AKI can greatly increase the risk for death. Bloodstream infections from IV line contamination are frequent complications that lead to death. However, the highest death rate occurs with trauma (70%) and surgery. AKI caused by **nephrotoxic** (kidney damaging) substances (Table 71-5) has the lowest rates of recovery. The prognosis for AKI caused by obstruction or glomerulonephritis is much better.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Keep in mind that severe blood volume depletion can lead to kidney injury even in people who have no known kidney problems. Urge all people to avoid dehydration by drinking at least

TABLE 71-5 SOME POTENTIALLY NEPHROTOXIC SUBSTANCES

Drugs Antibiotics/Anti-infectives - Amphotericin B - Colistimethate - Methicillin - Polymyxin B - Rifampin - Sulfonamides - Tetracycline hydrochloride - Vancomycin	Other Drugs - Acetaminophen - Captopril - Cyclosporine - Fluorinate anesthetics - Metformin - D-Penicillamine - Phenazopyridine hydrochloride - Quinine
Aminoglycoside Antibiotics - Gentamicin - Kanamycin - Neomycin - Netilmicin sulfate - Tobramycin	Other Substances Organic Solvents - Carbon tetrachloride - Ethylene glycol
Chemotherapy agents - Cisplatin - Cyclophosphamide - Methotrexate	Non-drug Chemical Agents - Radiographic contrast dye - Pesticides - Fungicides - Myoglobin (from breakdown of skeletal muscle)
Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs) - Celecoxib - Flurbiprofen - Ibuprofen - Indomethacin - Ketorolac - Meclofenamate - Meloxicam - Nabumetone - Naproxen - Oxaprozin - Rofecoxib - Tolmetin	Heavy Metals and Ions - Arsenic - Bismuth - Copper sulfate - Gold salts - Lead - Mercuric chloride

2 to 3 L of fluids daily. This is especially important for athletes or any person who performs strenuous exercise or work and sweats heavily.

Nurses have an essential role in the prevention of acute kidney injury in hospitalized patients. Always be on the lookout for signs of reduced kidney function through careful physical assessment (especially of urine output and weight), close monitoring of laboratory values, and evaluation of fluid status. Early recognition and correction of problems causing reduced kidney blood flow usually restore function before tissue damage can occur. Evaluate the patient's fluid status. Accurately measure intake and output and check body weight to identify changes in fluid balance.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

In any acute care setting, preventing volume depletion is a nursing priority because this is the most common cause of AKI. Recognizing the manifestations of volume depletion (low urine output, decreased systolic blood pressure, decreased pulse pressure, orthostatic hypotension, thirst, rising blood osmolality) and intervening early to restore volume can reverse AKI and prevent permanent kidney damage.

Also monitor laboratory values for any changes that reflect poor kidney function. Decreased urine specific gravity indicates a loss of urine-concentrating ability and is the earliest sign of kidney tubular damage. Other laboratory values that are helpful in monitoring kidney function include serum creatinine, urine and serum electrolytes, and blood urea nitrogen (BUN).

Be aware of nephrotoxic substances that the patient may ingest or be exposed to (see [Table 71-5](#)). Question any prescription for potentially nephrotoxic drugs, and validate the dose before the patient receives the drug. Antibiotics are common drugs that have nephrotoxic side effects. NSAIDs can cause or increase the risk for AKI. Combining two or more nephrotoxic drugs dramatically increases the risk for AKI. If a patient must receive a known nephrotoxic drug, closely monitor laboratory values, including BUN, creatinine, and drug peak and trough levels, for indications of reduced kidney function.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

The accurate diagnosis of AKI, including its type and its cause, depends on a detailed history of potential causes of AKI. Ask the patient about exposure to nephrotoxins, recent surgery or trauma, transfusions, or other factors that might lead to reduced kidney blood flow. Obtain a drug history, especially treatment with antibiotics, ACE inhibitors, and NSAIDs. Ask about recent imaging procedures requiring injection of a contrast dye. These dyes can cause AKI, especially in older patients with reduced kidney function. AKI must be differentiated from chronic kidney disease (CKD). Ask the patient about diseases that impair kidney function, such as diabetes mellitus, long-term hypertension, systemic lupus erythematosus, and other connective tissue diseases.

To identify possible acute glomerulonephritis, ask about acute illnesses such as influenza, colds, gastroenteritis, and sore throats. Ask whether urine color is darker or appears smoky.

Reversible prerenal azotemia may occur after any episode of acute hypotension, hemorrhage or shock, burns, heart failure, or any problem in which the blood volume is depleted. Extensive bowel preparations, being NPO before surgery without fluid replacement, and fluid loss during surgery can cause prerenal AKI in some patients.

Postrenal kidney injury is identified by focusing on urinary obstructive problems. Ask the patient about any difficulty in starting the urine stream, changes in the amount or appearance of the urine, narrowing of the urine stream, nocturia, urgency, or symptoms of kidney stones. Also ask about any cancer history that may cause urinary obstruction.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The manifestations of AKI are related to the buildup of nitrogenous wastes ([azotemia](#)), as well as to the underlying cause ([Chart 71-1](#)). Manifestations of *prerenal* azotemia are hypotension, tachycardia, decreased urine output, decreased cardiac output, decreased central venous pressure (CVP), and

CHART 71-1 KEY FEATURES

Acute Kidney Injury

Prerenal Azotemia

- Hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Decreased cardiac output
- Decreased central venous pressure
- Decreased urine output
- Lethargy

Intrarenal (Intrinsic) AKI and Postrenal Azotemia

- Renal manifestations:
 - Oliguria or anuria
 - Increased urine specific gravity
- Cardiac manifestations:
 - Hypertension
 - Tachycardia
 - Jugular venous distention
 - Increased central venous pressure
 - ECG changes: tall T waves
- Respiratory manifestations:
 - Shortness of breath
 - Orthopnea
 - Crackles
 - Pulmonary edema
 - Friction rub
- Gastrointestinal manifestations:
 - Anorexia
 - Nausea
 - Vomiting
 - Flank pain
- Neurologic manifestations:
 - Lethargy
 - Headache
 - Tremors
 - Confusion
- General manifestations:
 - Generalized edema
 - Weight gain

AKI, Acute kidney injury; ECG, electrocardiogram.

lethargy. The appearance of a patient with prerenal azotemia is similar to that of a patient with heart failure or dehydration, depending on the cause of the poor kidney blood flow.

Intrarenal (intrinsic) AKI usually occurs with damage to the glomeruli, interstitial tissue, or tubules. Manifestations are related to the retention of fluid and nitrogenous wastes. These include **oliguria** (decreased urine output) or **anuria** (absence of urine), edema, hypertension, tachycardia, shortness of breath, distended neck veins, elevated CVP, weight gain, respiratory crackles, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and lethargy or changes in levels of consciousness. Manifestations of electrolyte imbalances (particularly elevated potassium levels and low calcium levels), such as electrocardiographic (ECG) changes, may also be present.

In patients with *postrenal* AKI, monitor for oliguria or intermittent anuria, symptoms of uremia, and lethargy. Report changes in the urine stream, difficulty starting urination, and the presence of blood or particles in the urine.

Laboratory Assessment

The many changes in laboratory values in the patient with AKI are similar to those occurring in chronic kidney disease (CKD) (Chart 71-2; see also p. 1552 in the discussion of Laboratory Assessment in the **Chronic Kidney Disease** section). Expect to see rising BUN and serum creatinine levels and abnormal blood electrolyte values. Patients with AKI, however, usually do *not* have the anemia associated with CKD unless there is hemorrhagic blood loss or unless blood urea levels are high enough to break (lyse) red blood cells.

In early AKI, urine tests provide important information. Urine sodium levels are often less than 10 to 20 mEq/L in patients with prerenal azotemia. The urine is concentrated, with a specific gravity greater than 1.030. The presence of urine sediment (e.g., red blood cells [RBCs], RBC casts, and tubular cells), myoglobin, or hemoglobin; a urine sodium level lower than 40 mEq/L; and a specific gravity of less than 1.010 indicate intrarenal kidney injury. In postrenal AKI,

CHART 71-2 LABORATORY PROFILE

Kidney Disease

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	VALUES IN KIDNEY DISEASE
Serum creatinine	Male: 0.6-1.2 mg/dL Female: 0.5-1.1 mg/dL Older adults: Decreased	In Chronic Kidney Disease May increase by 0.5-1.0 mg/dL every 1-2 yr May be as high as 15-30 mg/dL <i>before</i> symptoms of severe CKD are present In Acute Kidney Injury Gradual increase of 1-2 mg/dL every 24-48 hr May increase 1-6 mg/dL in 1 wk or less
Blood urea nitrogen	10-20 mg/dL Older adults: May be slightly increased	In Chronic Kidney Disease May reach 180-200 mg/dL <i>before</i> symptoms develop In Acute Kidney Injury Often increases by 10-20 mg/dL at same pace as serum creatinine level May reach 80-100 mg/dL within 1 wk
Serum sodium	136-145 mEq/L; 136-145 mmol/L (SI units)	Normal, increased, or decreased
Serum potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L; 3.5-5.0 mmol/L (SI units)	Increased
Serum phosphorus (phosphate)	3.0-4.5 mg/dL; 0.97-1.45 mmol/L (SI units) Older adults: May be slightly decreased	Increased
Serum calcium	Total calcium: 9.0-10.5 mg/dL; 2.25-2.75 mmol/L (SI units) Ionized calcium: 4.5-5.6 mg/dL; 1.05-1.3 mmol/L (SI units) Older adults: Slightly decreased	Decreased
Serum magnesium	1.3-2.1 mEq/L; 0.65-1.05 mmol/L	Increased
Serum carbon dioxide combining power (bicarbonate)	23-30 mEq/L (venous); 23-30 mmol/L (SI units)	Decreased
Arterial blood pH	7.35-7.45	Decreased (in metabolic acidosis) or normal
Arterial blood bicarbonate (HCO ₃ ⁻)	21-28 mEq/L	Decreased
Arterial blood PaCO ₂	35-45 mm Hg	Decreased
Hemoglobin	Female: 12-16 g/dL; 7.4-9.9 mmol/L (SI units) Male: 14-18 g/dL; 8.7-11.2 mmol/L (SI units) Older adults: Slightly decreased	Decreased
Hematocrit	Female: 37%-47% Male: 42%-52% Older adults: May be slightly decreased	Decreased to 20%
Blood osmolarity	285-295 mOsm/kg or mmol/kg (SI)	Elevated in volume-depleted states, increasing the risk for acute tubular necrosis.

CKD, Chronic kidney disease; SI, International System of Units.

urine sodium levels may be normal (about 40 mEq/L), with a specific gravity of 1.000 to 1.010.

Imaging Assessment

X-rays help determine the cause of AKI. An abdominal x-ray is used to check the size of the kidneys. Enlarged kidneys, possibly due to obstruction, may result from hydronephrosis. X-rays may show stones obstructing the renal pelvis, ureters, or bladder.

Renal ultrasonography is a noninvasive procedure using high-energy sound waves. It is useful in the diagnosis of urinary tract obstruction. Dilation of the renal calyces and collecting ducts, as well as stones, can be detected. Ultrasonography can show kidney size and patency of the ureters.

CT scans without contrast dye can identify obstruction or tumors. Contrast dyes are usually avoided to prevent further kidney damage. A nuclear medicine study called MAG3 may be used to determine the nature of the renal failure, GFR, or tubular function and its severity. A renal scan can determine whether blood flow to the kidneys is sufficient. Cystoscopy or retrograde pyelography may be needed to identify obstructions of the lower urinary tract.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Kidney biopsy is performed if the cause of AKI is uncertain, an immunologic disease is suspected, or the reversibility of the kidney dysfunction needs to be determined after AKI has persisted for an extended period. Prepare the patient before the test, and provide follow-up care. Be aware of all test results and understand how they might affect the treatment regimen. (See Chapter 68 for a detailed discussion of renal diagnostic tests.)

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client admitted to the emergency department 1 hour after a motorcycle crash has all of the following laboratory test results. Which result does the nurse report to the health care provider immediately?

- A. Blood glucose level of 138 mg/dL
- B. Blood urea nitrogen of 22 mg/dL
- C. Blood osmolarity of 330 mOsm
- D. Serum potassium of 4.9 mEq/L

INTERVENTIONS

The patient with AKI may move from the oliguric phase (in which fluid and electrolytes are retained) to the diuretic phase. In the oliguric phase, the plan of care focuses on close monitoring for life-threatening electrolyte changes and nitrogen retention that may require intervention. During the diuretic phase, hypovolemia and electrolyte loss are the main problems. The patient in the diuretic phase of AKI needs a plan of care that focuses on fluid and electrolyte replacement and monitoring.

These examples of output variation reflect the continually changing nature of AKI and the need for the plan of care to be constantly updated to reflect the stages of the disease process. Drug therapy, nutrition therapy, and renal replacement therapy (peritoneal dialysis [PD], hemodialysis [HD], or hemofiltration) are commonly used to manage AKI.

Drug Therapy

Patients with AKI receive many drugs. As kidney function changes, drug dosages are changed. It is important to be knowledgeable about the site of drug metabolism and especially careful when giving drugs. Constantly monitor for possible side effects and interactions of the drugs that the patient with AKI is receiving (Chart 71-3; see also the discussion of drug therapy on pp. 1553, 1556, and 1557 in the [Chronic Kidney Disease](#) section). Diuretics may be used to increase urine output.

In patients with prerenal azotemia, fluid challenges and diuretics are often used to promote kidney blood flow. In the patient without fluid overload, 500 to 1000 mL of normal saline may be infused over 1 hour. In prerenal azotemia, the patient responds to the fluid challenge by producing urine soon after the initial bolus. Diuretics such as furosemide (Lasix) also may be prescribed along with a fluid bolus. If oliguric kidney injury is diagnosed, the fluid challenges and diuretics are discontinued. Patients often require central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring or measurement of pulmonary arterial pressure by means of a pulmonary artery catheter for accurate evaluation of their hemodynamic status. They also require constant nursing supervision for assessment of the response to fluid and drug therapy. Carefully monitor for signs of possible fluid overload.

Calcium channel blockers may be used to treat AKI resulting from nephrotoxic acute tubular necrosis (ATN). These drugs prevent the movement of calcium into the kidney cells, maintain kidney cell integrity, and improve the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) by improving kidney blood flow.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Quality Improvement

The patient is a 67-year-old woman who has type 2 diabetes (for which she takes metformin) and had a CT scan with contrast material 3 days ago for a pulmonary problem. Today she is sent to the emergency department by her primary care physician because she has gained 8 pounds since the scan and has symptoms of heart failure. She describes her urine output for the past 24 hours as being "about a teacup full." Her admitting diagnosis is possible acute kidney injury. Her vital signs are as follows: temperature 100° F; pulse 108 and irregular; respirations 32; blood pressure 166/110.

1. What additional assessment data should you obtain? Provide a rationale for your choices.
2. What risk factors does she have for acute kidney injury?
3. Is her risk greatest for prerenal acute kidney injury, intrarenal azotemia, or postrenal acute kidney injury? Explain your answer.
4. What questions will you ask her about her urine output?
5. What resources or changes in policy could have helped prevent this problem and future problems?

Nutrition Therapy

Patients who have AKI often have a high rate of protein breakdown. The exact cause for this state is not known. Increases in metabolism and protein breakdown may be related to the stress of a critical illness, causing an increase in blood levels of catecholamines, cortisol, and glucagon. The rate of protein breakdown correlates with the severity of uremia and azotemia. This state causes the breakdown of muscle for protein, which leads to an increase in azotemia and an even more elevated blood urea nitrogen (BUN) level.

CHART 71-3 COMMON EXAMPLES OF DRUG THERAPY

Kidney Disease

DRUG/DOSAGE	ACTION/PURPOSE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Cardiac Glycosides			
Digoxin (Digitek, Lanoxicaps, Lanoxin, Novodigoxin ) 0.125-0.25 mg orally or IV daily or every other day <i>Older adults:</i> 0.0625-0.125 mg orally or IV daily or every other day	Used when heart failure induces kidney injury/disease or makes it worse. Improves ventricular contraction, increasing stroke volume and cardiac output.	Teach patients to take pulse daily before taking the drug and to notify the prescriber if it is below 60. Instruct patients to notify prescriber if any of these manifestations occur: changes in color vision (more yellow color), blurred vision, eyes sensitive to light, light flashes, or halos around bright lights; changes in behavior, mood, or mental ability; chest pain or palpitations. Teach patients to not take antacids within 2 hours of taking this drug.	Drug slows the heart rate and can cause severe bradycardia. These are manifestations of drug toxicity and require the drug be stopped or the dose decreased temporarily. Antacids prevent drug absorption and may delay or inhibit drug effectiveness.
Vitamins and Minerals			
Folic acid (vitamin B ₉ , Folvite, Novofolacid ) 1 mg orally daily Ferrous sulfate (Feosol, Novoferrosulfa ) 325 mg orally three or four times daily	When the patient is receiving dialysis, many essential vitamins and minerals are removed from the blood. Replacement is needed to prevent severe deficiencies.	Teach patients to take the drugs after dialysis. Teach patients to take iron supplements (ferrous sulfate) with meals. Teach patients to take stool softeners daily while taking iron supplements. Remind patients that iron supplements change the color of the stool.	Dialysis removes the drug from the blood. Food reduces nausea and abdominal discomfort. Oral iron preparations cause constipation, and most patients with kidney disease failure must reduce their fluid intake, further increasing the risk for constipation. Knowing the expected side effects decreases anxiety when they appear.
Synthetic Erythropoietin			
Epoetin alfa (Epogen, Procrit) 50-100 units/kg subcutaneously or IV three times a week for patients on dialysis Darbepoetin alfa (Aranesp) 0.45 mcg/kg subcutaneously or IV once weekly for patients on dialysis	Drug prevents anemia by stimulating red blood cell growth and maturation in the bone marrow.	Teach patients to report any of these side effects to the prescriber as soon as possible: chest pain, difficulty breathing, high blood pressure, rapid weight gain, seizures, skin rash or hives, swelling of feet or ankles. Reinforce to patients that they must have hemoglobin levels monitored weekly.	Drug can induce serious cardiovascular problems, such as myocardial infarction (MI). Drug can raise hemoglobin and hematocrit levels to the point that blood viscosity increases, raising blood pressure and increasing the risk for MI. Drug dosage is reduced to prevent hemoglobin levels higher than 10 to 12 mg/dL.
Phosphate Binders			
Aluminum hydroxide gel (Amphojel, AlternaGEL, Alu-Cap, Nephrox) 300-600 mg orally two to four times daily Aluminum carbonate gel (Basaljel) 500 mg-2 g orally two to four times daily	High blood phosphate levels cause hypocalcemia and osteodystrophy. Drugs lower serum phosphate levels by binding phosphorus present in food.	Teach patients to take drugs with meals. Remind patients taking digoxin to separate the drugs by at least 2 hours. Teach patients to take stool softeners daily while taking these drugs. Teach patients to report muscle weakness, slow or irregular pulse, or confusion to the prescriber.	Drug action is to bind phosphate in food, preventing its absorption. These drugs reduce digoxin absorption and effects. These drugs cause constipation, and most patients with severe kidney disease must reduce their fluid intake, further increasing the risk for constipation. These are manifestations of hypophosphatemia, which require dosage adjustment.

If the patient with AKI has a good dietary intake (see discussion of [Enhancing Nutrition](#) on pp. 1555-1556 in the [Chronic Kidney Disease](#) section), nutritional support may not be needed. A dietary consult with a dietitian, who will calculate the patient's caloric needs, may be prescribed. Work with the dietitian to provide a diet with specified amounts of protein, sodium, and fluids. For the patient who does not require dialysis, 0.6 g/kg of body weight or 40 g/day of protein is usually prescribed. For patients who do require dialysis, the protein level needed will range from 1 to 1.5 g/kg. The amount of dietary sodium ranges from 60 to 90 mEq. If high blood potassium levels are present, dietary potassium is restricted to 60 to 70 mEq. The amount of fluid permitted is generally calculated to be equal to the urine volume plus 500 mL. Assess food intake every shift to ensure that caloric intake is adequate.

Many patients with AKI are too ill or their appetite is too poor to eat enough food. For these patients, some form of nutritional support (e.g., total parenteral nutrition [TPN] or hyperalimentation) is needed. The purposes of nutritional support in AKI are to provide sufficient nutrients to maintain or improve nutritional status, to preserve lean body mass, to restore or maintain fluid balance, and to preserve kidney function.

If TPN is used, the solutions are mixed to meet the patient's specific needs. Because kidney function is unstable in AKI, constantly monitor the serum electrolyte levels to indicate when the TPN solution needs to be changed. IV fat emulsion (Intralipid) infusions can provide a nonprotein source of calories. In uremic patients, fat emulsions are used in place of glucose to avoid the problems of excessive sugars.

Dialysis Therapies

Hemodialysis (HD) and peritoneal dialysis (PD) are used for patients with L and E levels of AKI. Indications for dialysis use include the presence of uremia, persistent high potassium levels, metabolic acidosis, continued fluid overload, uremic pericarditis, and encephalopathy.

Immediate vascular access for HD in patients with AKI is made by placement of a dual- or triple-lumen catheter specific for HD. When HD is expected to be used for several weeks, the catheter is usually placed in the subclavian or internal jugular vein. If only one or two HD treatments are needed, as for removal of drugs or toxins, a femoral site may be selected. Longer use of the femoral site is avoided because the patient's mobility is restricted and complications, such as hematomas and infection, are common. Repeatedly accessing the femoral site increases the risk for hematoma formation and makes repeated use of the vein impossible.

The subclavian vein is used, when possible, instead of the femoral site because the catheter can be left in place between dialysis treatments. However, the longer the catheter is left in this place, the greater the chance for infection. The subclavian dialysis catheter ([Fig. 71-1](#)) is inserted at the bedside. A physician or nurse practitioner performs the sterile procedure, and then the catheter is covered with a sterile dressing. Monitor for manifestations of procedure complications such as pneumothorax (reduced breath sounds, tracheal deviation away from midline, prominence and poor movement of one side of the chest) or subcutaneous emphysema (crackling and swelling of tissue around the site). Catheter placement is checked by chest x-ray before its use.

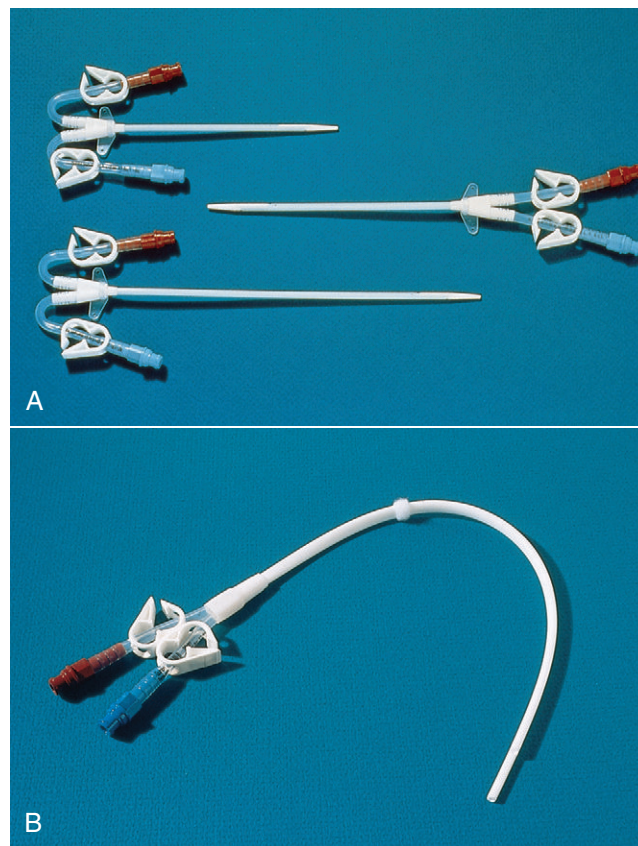


FIG. 71-1 Subclavian dialysis catheters. These catheters are radiopaque tubes that can be used for hemodialysis access. The Y-shaped tubing allows arterial outflow and venous return through a single catheter. **A**, Mahurkar catheters, made of polyurethane and used for short-term access. **B**, A PermCath catheter, made of silicone and used for long-term access.

If hemodialysis is needed for more than a few days, a long-term dialysis catheter may be used. Most of these catheters are placed in the radiology department using a tunneling technique. The patient receives moderate sedation. Under sonographic or fluoroscopic guidance, the physician makes a small incision where the internal jugular vein passes behind the clavicle. A 6- to 8-cm tunnel is created out from the side of the incision. A long-term hemodialysis catheter is inserted through the tunnel and into the jugular vein. Keeping a segment of the catheter within the subcutaneous tissues before entering the jugular vein reduces the risk for infection.

Hemodialysis catheters have two lumens, one for outflow and one for inflow. This allows the outflow of blood for dialysis to be separated from the dialyzed blood returned through the inflow lumen. A triple-lumen catheter for HD is available. The third lumen is an access for drawing venous blood or giving drugs and fluid without interrupting dialysis.

Peritoneal dialysis (PD) may also be used in the treatment of AKI, although some patients, such as those being mechanically ventilated, may not be able to tolerate the abdominal distention that occurs with PD. PD uses the peritoneum as the dialyzing membrane. The dialysate is infused through a

catheter implanted in the peritoneum. A complete discussion of PD is provided in the [Chronic Kidney Disease](#) section, pp. 1564-1567.

Continuous Renal Replacement Therapy

Continuous renal replacement therapies (CRRTs) are the standard treatment for AKI levels L and E. Renal replacement therapies in the form of hemofiltration are often better tolerated than HD for critically ill patients because this method avoids rapid shifts of fluids and electrolytes.

Continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH), continuous venovenous hemodiafiltration (CVVHD), continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration (CAVH), and continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration with dialysis (CAVHD) are the renal replacement therapies most commonly used for patients with AKI. The venovenous methods are being used more often than the arteriovenous methods. These procedures are similar to HD but their use is temporary.

Continuous venovenous hemofiltration (CVVH) is often used with critically ill patients. CVVH uses only a double-lumen venous catheter for access and is powered by a pump, making the rate of filtration more reliable than methods using mean arterial pressure. The pump increases the risk for an air embolus, but most pumps have alarms that detect air. These systems also require the use of anticoagulants but at lower doses than needed for AV systems. These procedures are used in critical care units, and patients require continuous nursing care.

The technique of CVVHD is a very common method of renal replacement therapy. It uses an infusion pump, hemodialysis membrane, and dialysate solution, as well as the same type of blood access as the CVVH technique. Similar to the CAVHD system, CVVHD adds the dialysis membrane and the dialysate solution instead of just filtering the blood and, as a result, increases the efficiency of removing waste products from the blood. CVVHD is somewhat less effective than CAVHD because the lower pressure in the venous system compared with the arterial system does not filter as much blood in the same amount of time. Thus CVVHD needs to be performed for longer periods to achieve the same effects as CAVHD. However, because the removal is slower, fewer adverse changes in blood volume and blood pressure are likely to occur.

CAVH is used for patients who have fluid volume overload, are resistant to diuretics, and have unstable blood pressures and cardiac output. The use of CAVH requires placement of both arterial and venous catheters and that the patient have a mean arterial pressure (MAP) of at least 60 mm Hg. ([Mean arterial pressure](#) is a person's average arterial pressure and is based on cardiac output and systemic vascular resistance. The normal adult MAP is 100 mm Hg.) CAVH continuously removes large amounts of plasma water, wastes, and electrolytes. Electrolytes are replaced through prescribed amounts of IV electrolyte solutions. A major disadvantage of arteriovenous (AV) filtration is the risk for bleeding caused by anticoagulants used to prevent membrane clotting.

A double-lumen dialysis catheter is inserted into a large vein (subclavian, jugular) for CAVHD. A [dialysate](#) (a solution composed of water, glucose, sodium chloride, potassium, magnesium, calcium, and bicarbonate) delivery system is used to remove waste products in addition to plasma water in patients with limited cardiac output, those with severe

hypotension, or those who do not respond to diuretic therapy. These patients cannot tolerate HD, and PD could not remove the large amount of excess fluid.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

When performing an hourly assessment of a client who had a subclavian catheter placed 6 hours ago for continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration with dialysis (CAVHD), the nurse observes these findings. For which finding does the nurse stop the CAVHD?

- A. The right foot and ankle appear slightly more edematous than the left foot and ankle.
- B. Blood pressure has decreased from 148/90 to 90/60.
- C. Pulse oximetry is increased from 89% to 91%.
- D. The trachea is in a midline position.

Posthospital Care

The care for a patient with AKI after discharge from the hospital varies, depending on the status of the disorder when the patient is discharged. The course of AKI varies, with recovery lasting up to several months. If the kidney injury is resolving, follow-up care may be provided by a nephrologist or by the family physician in consultation with the nephrologist. However, AKI may result in permanent kidney damage and CKD with the need for chronic dialysis or even transplantation. In these cases, follow-up care is similar to that needed for patients with chronic kidney disease (see [Community-Based Care](#), pp. 1571-1572).

If the AKI is beginning to resolve, the follow-up care may involve many services. Frequent medical visits are necessary, as are scheduled laboratory blood and urine tests to monitor kidney function. A dietitian is needed to modify the patient's diet according to the degree of kidney function and ongoing nutritional needs. Teach patients continuing dialysis after discharge to limit foods high in potassium, sodium, and phosphorus and to observe protein restrictions. Also teach about any needed fluid intake limitation. Instruct patients to weigh themselves daily, keep a daily log, and report any daily weight gain of 2 pounds or more immediately to the health care provider.

Some patients may need temporary dialysis until their kidneys can eliminate fluid and waste products. The dialysis started while the patient was an inpatient can be continued at an outpatient dialysis center. Teaching about the type of dialysis, how to care for vascular access sites, dietary restrictions, fluid restrictions, and prevention of complications is ongoing throughout the recovery phase. Depending on their level of independence and family support, some patients may also need home care nursing or social work assistance.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

What is the most important precaution for the nurse to teach the client with continuing kidney impairment on discharge after treatment for acute kidney injury?

- A. Avoid fluids that contain either alcohol or caffeine.
- B. Weigh yourself daily and report any rapid weight gain.
- C. Drink at least 3 liters of fluid daily to prevent dehydration.
- D. Use a dipstick to check for glucose in your urine at least once daily.

CHART 71-4 KEY FEATURES

Uremia

- Metallic taste in the mouth
- Anorexia
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Muscle cramps
- Uremic “frost” on skin
- Itching
- Fatigue and lethargy
- Hiccups
- Edema
- Dyspnea
- Muscle cramps
- Paresthesias

TABLE 71-6 PROGRESSION OF CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

STAGE OF CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE (CKD)	ESTIMATED GLOMERULAR FILTRATION RATE	INTERVENTION
Stage 1 At risk; normal kidney function (early kidney disease may or may not be present)	>90 mL/min	Screening for risk factors Uncontrolled hypertension Diabetes mellitus Chronic kidney or urinary tract infection Presence of genetic kidney diseases Exposure to nephrotoxic substances
Stage 2 Mild CKD	60-89 mL/min	Focus on reduction of risk factors
Stage 3 Moderate CKD	30-59 mL/min	Implement strategies to slow disease progression
Stage 4 Severe CKD	15-29 mL/min	Manage complications, and prepare for eventual renal replacement therapy
Stage 5 End-stage kidney disease (ESKD)	<15 mL/min	Implement renal replacement therapy/kidney transplantation

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Unlike acute kidney injury (AKI), chronic kidney disease (CKD) is a progressive, irreversible disorder and kidney function does *not* recover. When kidney function is too poor to sustain life, CKD becomes **end-stage kidney disease (ESKD)**. Terms used with kidney dysfunction include **azotemia** (buildup of nitrogen-based wastes in the blood), **uremia** (azotemia with clinical symptoms [Chart 71-4]), and **uremic syndrome**. Table 71-1 compares AKI and CKD.

Stages of Chronic Kidney Disease

The kidneys lose function (fail) in an organized fashion involving five stages based on estimated glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Progression toward ESKD usually starts with a gradual decrease in GFR (Table 71-6). In this first stage, the person may have a normal GFR (greater than 90 mL/min) with normal kidney function and no obvious kidney disease. However, there may be a *reduced renal reserve* in which

reduced kidney function occurs *without* buildup of wastes in the blood because the unaffected nephrons overwork to compensate for the diseased nephrons. Although no manifestations of kidney dysfunction are usually present at this stage, if the patient is stressed with infection, fluid overload, pregnancy, or dehydration, kidney function at this stage can appear reduced.

In the next stage, *mild CKD*, GFR is reduced, ranging between 60 and 89 mL/min. Kidney nephron damage has occurred, and there may be slight elevations of metabolic wastes in the blood because not enough healthy nephrons remain to compensate completely for the damaged nephrons. Levels of blood urea nitrogen (BUN), serum creatinine, uric acid, and phosphorus are not sensitive enough to define this stage, however, and reduced GFR is the best measure of CKD. Increased output of dilute urine may occur at this stage of CKD and, if the problem is untreated at this stage, can cause severe dehydration.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients with mild CKD that carefully managing fluid volume, blood pressure, electrolytes, and other kidney-damaging diseases (e.g., hypertension, diabetes mellitus) by following prescribed drug and nutrition therapies can prevent damage and slow the progression to ESKD.

In *moderate CKD*, GFR reduction continues and ranges between 30 and 59 mL/min. Nephron damage has continued, and the remaining nephrons cannot manage metabolic wastes, fluid balance, and electrolyte balance. Restriction of fluids, proteins, and electrolytes is needed.

Over time, patients progress to *severe CKD* (the fourth stage) and *end-stage kidney disease (ESKD)* (the fifth stage). Excessive amounts of urea and creatinine build up in the blood, and the kidneys cannot maintain homeostasis. Severe fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base imbalances occur (Pradeep & Verrelli, 2010). Without renal replacement therapy, fatal complications occur.

Kidney Changes

Kidney dysfunction with greatly reduced GFR causes many problems, including abnormal urine production, poor water excretion, electrolyte imbalances, and metabolic abnormalities. Because the healthy nephrons become larger and work harder, the GFR is effective until about three fourths of kidney function is lost. Homeostasis of electrolytes, acid-base, and nitrogenous wastes is maintained until late in the course of kidney disease.

As the disease progresses, the ability to produce dilute urine is reduced, resulting in urine with a fixed osmolarity (**isosthenuria**). As kidney function continues to decline, the BUN increases and urine output decreases. At this point, the patient is at risk for fluid overload.

Metabolic Changes

Urea and creatinine excretion are disrupted by kidney dysfunction. Creatinine comes from proteins present in skeletal muscle. The rate of creatinine excretion depends on muscle mass, physical activity, and diet. Without major changes in diet or physical activity, the serum creatinine level is constant.

Creatinine is partially excreted by the kidney tubules, and a decrease in kidney function leads to a buildup of serum creatinine. Urea is made from protein metabolism and is excreted by the kidneys. The BUN level normally varies directly with protein intake and hydration status.

The method for assessing the GFR is the use of a formula that considers the serum creatinine level, age, gender, race, and body size. The most common formula is the Cockcroft-Gault equation.

Sodium excretion changes are common. Early in CKD, the patient is at risk for *hyponatremia* (sodium depletion) because there are fewer healthy nephrons to reabsorb sodium. Thus sodium is lost in the urine. The polyuria of early kidney dysfunction also causes sodium loss.

In the later stages of CKD, kidney excretion of sodium is reduced as urine production decreases. Then sodium retention and high serum sodium levels (*hypernatremia*) can occur with only modest increases in dietary sodium intake. This problem leads to severe fluid and electrolyte imbalances (see Chapter 13). Sodium retention causes hypertension and edema.

Even with sodium retention, the serum sodium level may appear normal because plasma water is retained at the same time. If fluid retention occurs at a greater rate than sodium retention, the serum sodium level is falsely low because of dilution (see Chart 71-2).

Potassium excretion occurs mainly through the kidney. Any increase in potassium load during the later stages of CKD can lead to *hyperkalemia* (high serum potassium levels). Normal serum potassium levels of 3.5 to 5 mEq/L are maintained until the 24-hour urine output falls below 500 mL. High potassium levels then develop quickly, reaching 7 to 8 mEq/L or greater. Severe ECG changes result from this elevation, and fatal dysrhythmias can occur. Other factors contribute to high potassium levels in CKD, including the ingestion of potassium in drugs, failure to restrict dietary potassium, tissue breakdown, blood transfusions, and bleeding or hemorrhage. (See Chapter 13 for discussion of potassium problems.)

Acid-base balance is affected by CKD. In the early stages, blood pH changes little because the remaining healthy nephrons increase their rate of acid excretion. As more nephrons are lost, acid excretion is reduced and metabolic acidosis results (see Chapter 14).

Many factors lead to acidosis in CKD. First, the kidneys cannot excrete excessive hydrogen ions (acids). Normally, tubular cells move hydrogen ions into the urine for excretion, but ammonium and bicarbonate are needed for this movement to occur. In patients with CKD, ammonium production is decreased and reabsorption of bicarbonate does not occur. This process leads to a buildup of hydrogen ions and reduced levels of bicarbonate (*base deficit*). High potassium levels further reduce kidney ammonium production and excretion.

As CKD worsens and acid retention increases, increased respiratory action is needed to keep blood pH normal. The respiratory system adjusts or compensates for the increased blood hydrogen ion levels (decreased pH) by increasing the rate and depth of breathing to excrete carbon dioxide through the lungs. This breathing pattern, called *Kussmaul respiration*, increases with worsening kidney disease. Although hydrogen ions (acids) can leave the body this way, when too

much carbon dioxide is “blown off,” respiratory alkalosis results. Serum bicarbonate measures the extent of metabolic acidosis (bicarbonate deficit). Patients with CKD usually need alkali replacement to counteract acidosis.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The wife of a client with severe chronic kidney disease who has a Kussmaul pattern of respiration asks the nurse about giving the client oxygen to ease his respirations. What is the nurse's best response?

- “That is a good idea and I will check with the physician right away.”
- “The oxygen mask or tube may increase his risk for skin breakdown.”
- “He will probably need a high flow of oxygen because he is also anemic.”
- “Oxygen will not help his respirations and could make his acidosis worse.”

Calcium and phosphorus balance is disrupted by CKD. A complex, balanced normal relationship exists between calcium and phosphate and is influenced by vitamin D (see Chapter 13). The kidney produces calcitriol, the active form of vitamin D, which then enhances intestinal absorption of calcium.

In CKD, phosphate retention and a deficiency of active vitamin D disrupt the calcium and phosphate balance. Normally, excessive dietary phosphate is excreted by the kidneys in the urine. Parathyroid hormone (PTH) controls the amount of phosphate in the blood by causing tubular excretion of phosphate when there is an excess. An early effect of CKD is reduced phosphate excretion (Fig. 71-2). As plasma

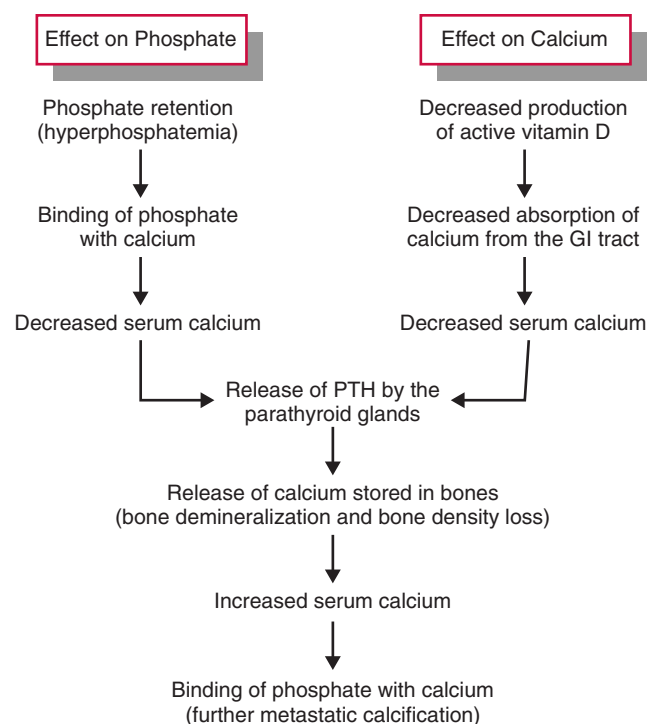


FIG. 71-2 The effects of kidney dysfunction on phosphate and calcium balance. PTH, Parathyroid hormone.

phosphate levels increase (*hyperphosphatemia*), calcium levels decrease (*hypocalcemia*). Chronic low blood calcium levels stimulate the parathyroid glands to release more PTH. Under the influence of additional PTH, calcium is released from storage areas in bones (**bone resorption**), which results in bone density loss. The extra calcium from the bone is needed to balance the excess plasma phosphate level. The problem of low blood calcium levels is made worse with severe CKD because kidney cell damage also reduces production of active vitamin D. Thus less calcium is absorbed through the intestinal tract in the absence of sufficient vitamin D.

The problems in bone metabolism and structure caused by CKD-induced low calcium levels and high phosphorus levels are called **renal osteodystrophy**. Bone mineral loss causes bone pain, spinal sclerosis, fractures, bone density loss, osteomalacia, and tooth calcium loss.

Crystals formed from excessive calcium phosphate are called *metastatic calcifications* and may precipitate in many body areas. When the plasma level of the calcium-phosphate product (serum calcium level multiplied by the serum phosphate level) exceeds 70 mg/dL, the crystals may lodge in the kidneys, heart, lungs, major blood vessels, joints, eyes (causing conjunctivitis), and brain. Skin itching increases with calcium-phosphate imbalances.

Cardiac Changes

Hypertension is common in most patients with CKD. This problem may be either the cause or the result of CKD. In patients who have other causes of hypertension such as atherosclerosis, the increased blood pressure damages the delicate capillaries in the glomerulus, and eventually ESKD results.

CKD itself elevates blood pressure by causing fluid and sodium overload and dysfunction of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. The retention of sodium and water causes circulatory overload, which elevates blood pressure. The kidneys respond to a decrease in kidney blood flow or to low serum sodium levels by trying to improve blood flow to the kidney. The release of renin triggers the production of more angiotensin and aldosterone. Angiotensin causes blood vessel constriction and increases blood pressure. Aldosterone, a hormone released by the adrenal glands, stimulates kidney tubules to reabsorb sodium and water. These actions increase plasma volume and raise blood pressure. The damaged kidneys do not recognize the increase in blood pressure and continue to produce renin. The result is severe hypertension that is difficult to treat and worsens kidney function. Many patients with CKD also have heart damage and heart enlargement from the long-term hypertension.

Hyperlipidemia occurs in CKD from changes in fat metabolism that increase triglyceride, total cholesterol, and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) levels. These changes increase the patient's risk for coronary artery disease and acute cardiac events. Problems with lipids and atherosclerosis are increased for the patient CKD and diabetes (Brites et al., 2007).

Heart failure may occur in CKD because it increases the workload on the heart as a result of anemia, hypertension, and fluid overload. Left ventricular enlargement and heart failure are common in ESKD. Uremia may cause *uremic cardiomyopathy*, the uremic toxin effect on the myocardium. Heart failure also may occur in these patients because of hypertension and coronary artery disease. Cardiac disease

continues to be the leading cause of death in patients with ESKD (USRDS, 2010).

Pericarditis also occurs in patients with CKD. The pericardial sac becomes inflamed by uremic toxins or infection. If it is not treated, this problem leads to pericardial effusion, cardiac tamponade, and death. Manifestations include severe chest pain, increased pulse rate, low-grade fever, and a pericardial friction rub that can be heard with a stethoscope placed over the left sternal border.

As the pericarditis continues and the pericardial effusion worsens, dysrhythmias may develop. The fluid around the heart makes heart tones softer and harder to hear. Blood pressure decreases, and the patient may have shortness of breath. If left untreated, pericardial effusion causes cardiac tamponade, an emergency in which pulse pressure decreases and bradycardia results. Treatment of tamponade requires removal of pericardial fluid by placement of a needle, catheter, or drainage tube into the pericardium.

Hematologic Changes

Anemia is a common problem in patients in the later stages of CKD, and it worsens the CKD manifestations. The causes of anemia include a decreased erythropoietin level that decreases red blood cell (RBC) production, decreased RBC survival time resulting from uremia, iron and folic acid deficiencies, and increased bleeding as a result of impaired platelet function.

Gastrointestinal Changes

Uremia affects the entire GI system. The normal flora of the mouth changes with uremia. The mouth contains the enzyme *urease*, which breaks down urea into ammonia. The ammonia generated from this reaction causes **halitosis** (bad breath) and may also cause **stomatitis** (mouth inflammation).

Anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and hiccups are common in patients with uremia. The specific cause of these problems is unknown but may be related to high BUN and creatinine levels as well as acidosis.

Peptic ulcer disease is common in patients with uremia, but the exact cause is unclear. Uremic colitis with watery diarrhea or constipation may also be present with uremia. Ulcers may occur in the stomach or small or large intestine, causing erosion of blood vessels. The blood loss caused by these erosions may lead to hemorrhagic shock from severe GI bleeding.

Etiology and Genetic Risk

The causes of CKD are complex (Table 71-7). More than 100 different disease processes can result in progressive loss of kidney function (see also Chapter 70). Two main causes of ESKD are hypertension and diabetes mellitus (USRDS, 2010). Infection and genetic kidney diseases also can lead to ESKD (Nussbaum et al., 2007). African-American patients are four times more likely to develop ESKD and seven times more likely to have hypertensive ESKD.

Incidence/Prevalence

The number of patients being treated for CKD is increasing. The 2010 U.S. Renal Data Systems' annual report stated that 527,283 people in the United States were under treatment for ESKD. In 2007, the reported incidence of kidney disease (new patients per year requiring renal replacement therapy)

TABLE 71-7 SELECTED CAUSES OF CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Glomerular Disease - Glomerulonephritis - Basement membrane disease - Goodpasture's syndrome - Inter-capillary glomerulosclerosis	Infection - Pyelonephritis - Tuberculosis
Tubular Disease - Chronic hypercalcemia - Chronic potassium depletion - Fanconi's syndrome - Heavy metal (lead) poisoning	Systemic Vascular Disease - Intrarenal renovascular hypertension - Extrarenal renovascular hypertension
Vascular Disease of the Kidney - Ischemic disease of the kidney - Bilateral renal artery stenosis - Nephrosclerosis - Hyperparathyroidism	Metabolic Kidney Disease - Amyloidosis - Gout (hyperuricemic nephropathy) - Diabetic nephropathy - Milk-alkali syndrome - Sarcoidosis
Urinary Tract Disease Obstructive uropathy	Connective Tissue Disease - Progressive systemic sclerosis - Systemic lupus erythematosus - Polyarteritis
Inherited or Genetic Conditions - Hypoplastic kidneys - Medullary cystic disease - Polycystic kidney disease	

NOTE: List is not all-inclusive.

was close to 110,000. More than 24% of patients with ESKD die during the first year of treatment. ESKD occurs more often in men than in women (USRDS, 2010). The greatest increase in ESKD is in patients 65 years of age and older. **Chart 71-5** addresses prevention of kidney and urinary problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The health-promotion activities to prevent or delay the onset of CKD focus on controlling the diseases that lead to its development, such as diabetes and hypertension. Identifying patients who have these disorders at an early stage is critical to CKD prevention. Teach patients to adhere to drug and diet regimens and engage in regular physical activity to prevent the blood vessel changes that lead to kidney damage. Instruct patients with diabetes to keep their blood glucose levels within the prescribed range. Teach patients with hypertension that drug therapy is not a cure and must be continued along with lifestyle changes. Urge patients with diabetes or hypertension to have yearly testing for microalbuminuria.

Teach everyone treated for an infection anywhere in the kidney/urinary system to take all antibiotics as prescribed. Urge everyone to drink at least 3 L of water daily unless a health problem requires fluid restriction. Caution people who use over-the-counter NSAIDs to avoid abusing these drugs because they reduce blood flow to the kidney and their long-term use reduces kidney function (Solomon, 2010). **Chart 71-5** is a patient education guide for prevention of kidney and urinary problems.

CHART 71-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Kidney and Urinary Problems

- Be alert to the general appearance of your urine. Note any changes in its color, clarity, or odor.
- Changes in the frequency or volume of urine passage occur with changes in fluid intake. More frequent or infrequent voiding not associated with changes in fluid intake may signal potential problems.
- Any discomfort or distress with the passage of urine is not normal. Pain, burning, urgency, aching, or difficulty with initiating urine flow or complete bladder emptying is of some concern.
- The kidneys need 1 to 2 quarts of fluid a day to flush out your body wastes. Water is the ideal flushing agent.
- Reduce your intake of carbonated soft drinks.
- Changes in kidney function are often silent for many years. Periodically ask your health care provider to measure your kidney function with a blood test (serum creatinine) and a urinalysis.
- If you have a history of kidney disease, diabetes mellitus, hypertension (high blood pressure), or a family history of kidney disease, you should know your serum creatinine level and your 24-hour creatinine clearance. At least one checkup per year that includes laboratory blood and urine testing of kidney function is recommended.
- If you are identified as having decreased kidney function, ask about whether any prescribed drug, diet, diagnostic test, or therapeutic procedure will present a risk to your current kidney function. Check out all nonprescription drugs with your physician or pharmacist before using them.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When taking a history from a patient with suspected chronic kidney disease (CKD), document the patient's age and gender. Accurately measure weight and height, and ask about usual weight and recent weight gain or loss. Weight gain may indicate fluid retention from poor kidney function. Weight loss may be the result of anorexia from high blood urea levels.

Obtain a complete history of known kidney or urologic disorders, long-term health problems, drug use, and current health problems. Ask the patient about any existing kidney disease or family history of kidney disease that might indicate a genetic problem. A history of kidney infection or stones may imply past kidney damage. Explore the possibility of long-term health problems, because illnesses such as hypertension, diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus, arthritis, cancer, and tuberculosis can cause decreased kidney function.

Document the use of current and past prescription and over-the-counter drugs, because many drugs are nephrotoxic and can cause kidney damage (see **Table 71-5**).

Examine the patient's dietary habits, and discuss any present GI problems. A change in the taste of foods often occurs with CKD. Patients may report that sweet foods are not as appealing or that meats have a metallic taste. Ask about the presence of nausea, vomiting, anorexia, hiccups, diarrhea, or constipation. These manifestations may be the result of

excess wastes that the body cannot excrete because of kidney disease.

Ask about the patient's energy level and any recent injuries or bleeding. Explore changes in his or her daily routine as a possible *result* of fatigue. Weakness, drowsiness, and shortness of breath suggest impending pulmonary edema or neurologic degeneration. Ask about bruising or bleeding, which can be caused by hematologic changes from uremia.

Discuss urine elimination in detail, including frequency of urination, appearance of the urine, and any difficulty starting or controlling urination. These data can help identify urologic problems that may influence existing kidney function.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A 40-year-old African-American woman is newly diagnosed with mild chronic kidney disease (CKD). She is otherwise very fit and healthy, and no one in her family has CKD. She asks the nurse whether any of the following factors could have caused this problem. Which factor should the nurse indicate may have influenced the development of CKD?

- She has followed a vegetarian diet that includes eggs but no dairy products for the past 3 years.
- She has taken 220 mg of naproxen twice daily for 3 years.
- Her mother and older sister have type 2 diabetes.
- She drinks 3 liters of water daily.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

CKD causes changes in all body systems (Chart 71-6). Most manifestations are related to changes in fluid volume, electrolyte and acid-base imbalances, and buildup of nitrogenous wastes.

Neurologic manifestations of CKD and uremic syndrome vary (see Chart 71-6). Observe for problems ranging from lethargy to seizures or coma, which indicate uremic encephalopathy. Assess for sensory changes that appear in a glove and stocking pattern over the hands and feet. Check for weakness in the upper or lower extremities (e.g., uremic neuropathy).

If untreated, encephalopathy can lead to seizures and coma. Dialysis is used for CKD when neurologic problems result. The manifestations of encephalopathy resolve with dialysis. However, improvement in neuropathy is limited if it is severe and motor function is impaired.

Cardiovascular manifestations of CKD and uremia result from fluid overload, hypertension, heart failure (HF), pericarditis, and potassium-induced dysrhythmias. Assess for signs of reduced sodium and water excretion. Circulatory overload, if untreated, leads to HF, pulmonary edema, peripheral edema, and hypertension.

Assess heart rate and rhythm, listening for extra sounds (particularly an S_3), irregular patterns, or a pericardial friction rub. Unless a hemodialysis (HD) vascular access has been created, measure blood pressure in each arm. Assess the jugular veins for distention, and assess for edema of the feet, shins, and sacrum and around the eyes. Shortness of breath with exertion and at night suggests fluid overload.

Respiratory manifestations of CKD also vary (e.g., breath that smells like urine [*uremic fetor* or uremic halitosis], deep sighing, yawning, shortness of breath). Observe the rhythm, rate, and depth of breathing. **Tachypnea** (increased rate of

CHART 71-6 KEY FEATURES

Severe Chronic Kidney Disease

Neurologic Manifestations

- Lethargy and daytime drowsiness
- Inability to concentrate or decreased attention span
- Seizures
- Coma
- Slurred speech
- Asterixis (jerky movements or "flapping" of the hands)
- Tremors, twitching, or jerky movements
- Myoclonus
- Ataxia (alteration in gait)
- Paresthesias

Cardiovascular Manifestations

- Cardiomyopathy
- Hypertension
- Peripheral edema
- Heart failure
- Uremic pericarditis
- Pericardial effusion
- Pericardial friction rub
- Cardiac tamponade

Respiratory Manifestations

- Uremic halitosis
- Tachypnea
- Deep sighing, yawning
- Kussmaul respirations
- Uremic pneumonitis
- Shortness of breath
- Pulmonary edema
- Pleural effusion
- Depressed cough reflex
- Crackles

Hematologic Manifestations

- Anemia
- Abnormal bleeding and bruising

Gastrointestinal Manifestations

- Anorexia
- Nausea
- Vomiting
- Metallic taste in the mouth
- Changes in taste acuity and sensation
- Uremic colitis (diarrhea)
- Constipation
- Uremic gastritis (possible GI bleeding)
- Uremic fetor (breath odor)
- Stomatitis

Urinary Manifestations

- Polyuria, nocturia (early)
- Oliguria, anuria (later)
- Proteinuria
- Hematuria
- Diluted, straw-colored appearance (early)
- Concentrated and cloudy appearance (later)

Integumentary Manifestations

- Decreased skin turgor
- Yellow-gray pallor
- Dry skin
- Pruritus
- Ecchymosis
- Purpura
- Soft-tissue calcifications
- Uremic frost (late, preterminal)

Musculoskeletal Manifestations

- Muscle weakness and cramping
- Bone pain
- Pathologic fractures
- Renal osteodystrophy

Reproductive Manifestations

- Decreased fertility
- Infrequent or absent menses
- Decreased libido
- Impotence

breathing) and **hyperpnea** (increased depth of breathing) occur with metabolic acidosis.

With severe metabolic acidosis, extreme increases in rate and depth of ventilation (Kussmaul respirations) occur. A few patients have pneumonitis, or *uremic lung*. In these patients, assess for thick sputum, reduced coughing, tachypnea, and fever. A pleural friction rub may be heard with a stethoscope. Patients often have pleuritic pain with breathing. Auscultate the lungs for crackles, which indicate fluid overload (Martchev, 2008).

Hematologic manifestations of CKD include anemia and abnormal bleeding. Check for indicators of anemia (e.g., fatigue, pallor, lethargy, weakness, shortness of breath, dizziness). Check for abnormal bleeding by observing for

bruising, petechiae, purpura, mucous membrane bleeding in the nose or gums, or intestinal bleeding (black, tarry stools [[melena](#)]).

GI manifestations of CKD include foul breath and mouth ulceration or inflammation. Document any abdominal pain, cramping, or vomiting. Test all stools for occult blood.

Skeletal manifestations of CKD are related to osteodystrophy from poor absorption of calcium and continuous bone calcium resorption. Adults with osteodystrophy have thin, fragile bones that are at risk for pathologic fractures. These bones break easily with even slight trauma. Vertebrae become more compact and may bend forward, leading to an overall loss of height. Ask about changes in height and any unexplained bone pain. Observe for spinal curvatures and any unusual bumps or protrusions in bone areas that may indicate old fractures. Handle the patient carefully during examination and care.

Urine manifestations in CKD failure reflect the kidneys' decreasing function. At first, the amount, frequency, and appearance of the urine change. Protein or blood may be in the urine.

The amount and composition of the urine change as kidney function decreases. With the onset of mild to moderate CKD, the urine may be more dilute and clearer because tubular reabsorption of water is reduced. The actual urine output in a patient with CKD varies with the amount of remaining kidney function. The patient with severe CKD or ESKD usually has oliguria, but some patients continue to produce 1 L or more per 24 hours. Daily urine volume usually changes again after dialysis is started.

Skin manifestations of CKD occur as a result of uremia. Pigment is deposited in the skin, causing a yellowish coloration. Some African Americans report a darkening of the skin. The anemia of CKD causes a sallowness, appearing as a faded sultan on lighter-skinned patients.

Skin oils and turgor are decreased in patients with uremia. A distressing problem of uremia is severe *pruritus* (itching). **Uremic frost**, a layer of urea crystals from evaporated sweat, may appear on the face, eyebrows, axilla, and groin in patients with advanced uremic syndrome. Assess for bruises (*ecchymoses*), purple patches (*purpura*), and rashes.

Psychosocial Assessment

Chronic kidney disease (CKD) and its treatment disrupt many aspects of a patient's life. You are in a unique position to evaluate the patient with newly diagnosed kidney failure and to assist with adjustments.

Psychosocial assessment and support are part of the nurse's role from the time that CKD is first diagnosed. Ask about the patient's understanding of the diagnosis and what the treatment regimen means to him or her (e.g., diet, drugs, dialysis). Assess for anxiety and for the coping styles used by the patient or family members. Psychosocial issues affected by CKD include family relations, social activity, work patterns, body image, and sexual activity. The long-term nature of severe CKD and ESKD, the many treatment options, and the uncertainties about the course of the disease and its treatment require ongoing psychosocial assessment.

Laboratory Assessment

CKD causes extreme changes in many laboratory values (see [Chart 71-2](#)). Monitor the following blood values: creatinine, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), sodium, potassium, calcium,

phosphate, bicarbonate, hemoglobin, and hematocrit. Also monitor GFR for trends.

A urinalysis is performed. In the early stages of CKD, urinalysis may show excessive protein, glucose, red blood cells (RBCs), white blood cells (WBCs), and decreased or fixed specific gravity. Urine osmolarity is usually decreased. Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is calculated based on serum creatinine levels, age, gender, race, and body size. A 24-hour creatinine clearance also may be calculated after blood and urine creatinine levels are collected and quantified. As CKD progresses, the urine output decreases dramatically.

In severe CKD, measurements of the serum creatinine and BUN levels may be used to determine the presence and degree of uremia. Serum creatinine levels may increase gradually over a period of years, reaching levels of 15 to 30 mg/dL or more, depending on the patient's muscle mass. BUN levels are directly related to dietary protein intake. Without protein restriction, BUN levels may rise 10 to 20 times the value of the serum creatinine level. With dietary protein restriction, BUN levels are elevated but less than those of non-protein-restricted patients. Fluid balance also affects BUN. [Chapter 68](#) describes the significance of BUN and creatinine levels, as well as creatinine clearance.

Imaging Assessment

Few x-ray findings are abnormal with CKD. Bone x-rays of the hand can show renal osteodystrophy. With long-term end-stage kidney disease (ESKD), the kidneys have shrunk (except for ESKD caused by polycystic kidney disease) and may be 8 to 9 cm or smaller. This small size results from atrophy and fibrosis. If CKD progresses suddenly, a kidney ultrasound or CT scan without contrast medium may be used to rule out an obstruction. (See [Chapter 68](#) for a complete description of diagnostic tests for kidney function.)

ANALYSIS

The patient with CKD has usually had a progressive reduction of kidney function and is often hospitalized for adjustment of the treatment plan. The focus of care is to manage symptoms and prevent complications. Priority problems for patients with CKD are:

1. Fluid overload related to the inability of diseased kidneys to maintain body fluid balance
2. Potential for pulmonary edema related to fluid overload
3. Decreased Cardiac Output related to reduced stroke volume, dysrhythmias, fluid overload, and increased peripheral vascular resistance
4. Inadequate nutrition related to inability to ingest, digest food, or absorb nutrients as a result of physiologic factors
5. Potential for infection related to skin breakdown, chronic disease, or malnutrition
6. Potential for injury related to effects of kidney disease on bone density, blood clotting, and drug elimination
7. Fatigue related to kidney disease, anemia, and reduced energy production
8. Anxiety related to threat to or change in health status, economic status, relationships, role function, systems, or self-concept; situational crisis; threat of death; lack of knowledge about diagnostic tests, disease process, treatment; loss of control; or disrupted family life

CHART 71-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE**Managing Fluid Volume**

- Weigh the patient daily at the same time each day, using the same scale, with the patient wearing the same amount and type of clothing, and graph the results.
- Observe the weight graph for trends (1 liter of water weighs 1 kilogram).
- Accurately measure all fluid intake and output.
- Teach the patient and family about the need to keep fluid intake within prescribed restricted amounts and to ensure that the prescribed daily amount is evenly distributed throughout the 24 hours.
- Monitor for these manifestations of fluid overload at least every 4 hours:
 - Decreased urine output
 - Rapid, bounding pulse
 - Rapid, shallow respirations
 - Presence of dependent edema
 - Auscultation of crackles or wheezes
 - Presence of distended neck veins in a sitting position
 - Decreased oxygen saturation
 - Elevated blood pressure
 - Narrowed pulse pressure
- Assess level of consciousness and degree of cognition.
- Ask about the presence of headache or blurred vision.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

The Concept Map on p. 1554 discusses nursing care issues related to patients who have end-stage kidney disease (ESKD).

Managing Fluid Volume

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to achieve and maintain an acceptable fluid balance. Indicators include that the blood pressure, body weight, central venous pressure, and serum electrolytes are normal or nearly normal.

Interventions. Management of the patient with CKD includes drug therapy, nutrition therapy, fluid restriction, and dialysis. Nutrition therapy is discussed in the [Enhancing Nutrition](#) section, pp. 1555-1556, and dialysis is discussed in the [Renal Replacement Therapies](#) section, pp. 1558-1567).

The purpose of fluid management is to attain fluid balance and prevent complications of fluid overload ([Chart 71-7](#)). Monitor the patient's intake and output and hydration status. Assess for manifestations of fluid overload (e.g., crackles in the bases of the lungs, edema, and distended neck veins).

Drug therapy with diuretics is prescribed for patients with some kidney impairment to manage fluid retention or help control blood pressure. The increased urine output produced from these drugs helps reduce fluid overload in patients who still have some urine output. Diuretics are seldom used in ESKD after dialysis is started because, as kidney function is reduced, these drugs can have harmful side effects on the remaining kidney cells and on a patient's hearing.

Assess fluid status by obtaining daily weights and reviewing intake and output. Daily weight gain in these patients indicates fluid retention rather than true body weight gain. Estimate the amount of fluid retained: 1 kg of weight equals about 1 L of fluid retained. Weigh the patient daily at the same time each day, on the same scale, wearing the same amount of clothing, and after voiding (if the patient is not

anuric). Monitor weight for changes before and after dialysis.

Fluid restriction is often needed. The amount of fluid restricted is reviewed in the discussion of sodium restriction on p. 1556. Consider all forms of fluid intake, including oral, IV, and fluid or drugs given through gastric tubes, when calculating fluid intake. Assist the patient in spreading oral fluid intake over a 24-hour period. Monitor his or her response to fluid restriction, and notify the health care provider if manifestations of fluid overload persist or worsen.

Preventing Pulmonary Edema

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to remain free of pulmonary edema by maintaining optimal fluid balance. Indicators include that the patient will have no breathing difficulty, no adventitious lung sounds (e.g., crackles, wheezes) are present on auscultation, and oxygen saturation remains within the patient's usual range.

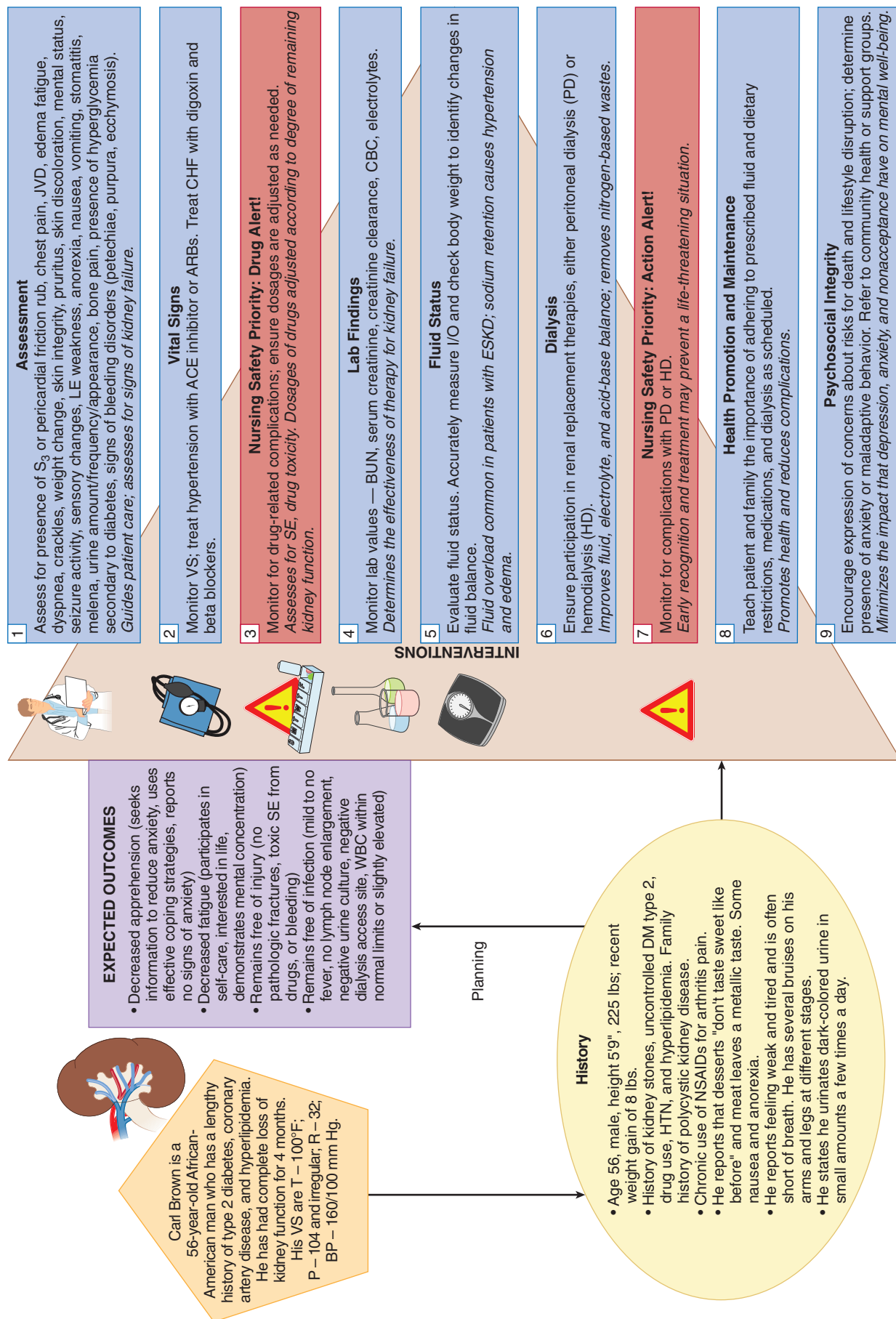
Interventions. In the patient with CKD, pulmonary edema can result from left-sided heart failure related to fluid overload or from blood vessel injury. In left-sided heart failure, the heart is unable to eject blood adequately from the left ventricle, leading to an increased pressure in the left atrium and in the pulmonary blood vessels. The increased pressure causes fluid to cross the capillaries into the pulmonary tissue, forming edema. Pulmonary edema can also occur from injury to the lung blood vessels as a result of uremia. This condition causes inflammation and capillary leak. Fluid then leaks from pulmonary circulation into the lung tissue and the alveoli.

Assess the patient for early signs of pulmonary edema, such as restlessness, anxiety, rapid heart rate, shortness of breath, and crackles that begin at the base of the lungs. As pulmonary edema worsens, the level of fluid in the lungs rises. Auscultation reveals increased crackles and decreased gas exchange. The patient may have frothy, blood-tinged sputum. As cardiac and pulmonary function decrease further, the patient becomes diaphoretic and cyanotic.

The patient with pulmonary edema usually is admitted to the ICU for aggressive treatment and continuous cardiac monitoring. Place the patient in a high-Fowler's position, and give oxygen to improve gas exchange. Drug therapy with kidney failure and pulmonary edema is difficult because of potential adverse drug effects on the kidneys. Treatment of pulmonary edema involves giving loop diuretics, such as furosemide (Lasix), IV. Kidney impairment increases the risk for *ototoxicity* (ear damage with hearing loss) with the use of furosemide; thus IV doses are given cautiously. Diuresis usually begins within 5 minutes of giving IV furosemide. Measure urine output every 15 to 30 minutes during the acute episode and every hour thereafter until the patient is stabilized. Monitor vital signs and assess breath sounds at least every 2 hours to evaluate the patient's response to this treatment.

IV morphine sulfate (1 to 2 mg) is often prescribed to reduce myocardial oxygen demand by triggering blood vessel dilation and to provide sedation. Dosage adjustments are needed to achieve the desired response and avoid respiratory depression. Monitor the patient's respiratory rate, oxygen saturation, and blood pressure hourly during this therapy. Other drugs that dilate blood vessels, such as nitroglycerin, also may be given as a continuous infusion to reduce

Concept Map: End-Stage Kidney Disease



Concept Map by Deanne A. Blach, MSN, RN

pulmonary pressure. Monitor vital signs at least hourly because this drug combination may cause severe hypotension.

Monitor serum electrolyte levels daily, and report abnormalities to the health care provider so that imbalances can be corrected quickly. Monitor ECG tracings at least every 2 hours to identify any dysrhythmias. Monitor oxygen saturation levels by pulse oximetry and arterial blood gas values. Adjust oxygen delivery to maintain adequate oxygen saturation levels. Monitor the patient for worsening of the condition, manifested as increasing hypoxemia. He or she may require temporary intubation and mechanical ventilation to prevent death.

Patients with CKD who have existing cardiac problems, high blood pressure, or chronic fluid retention are at increased risk for developing pulmonary edema. They are less likely to respond quickly to treatment and are more likely to develop problems related to drug therapy. Ultrafiltration may be used with these patients to reduce fluid volume.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Safe and Effective Care Environment

The client with end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) appears to have pulmonary edema. Which intervention does the nurse perform first?

- A. Raise the head of the bed
- B. Apply oxygen by nasal cannula
- C. Notify the Rapid Response Team
- D. Measure oxygen saturation by pulse oximetry

Increasing Cardiac Output

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to attain and maintain adequate cardiac output. Indicators include that systolic and diastolic blood pressures, ejection fraction, peripheral pulses, and cognitive status are either normal or nearly normal.

Interventions. Many patients with long-standing hypertension are at risk for kidney disease and have mild CKD. Some progress to severe CKD and ESKD. *Therefore blood pressure control is essential in preserving kidney function.* To control blood pressure, calcium channel blockers, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, alpha-adrenergic and beta-adrenergic blockers, and vasodilators may be prescribed. ACE inhibitors appear to be the most effective drugs to slow the progression of kidney failure. Calcium channel blockers seem to improve the GFR and blood flow within the kidney.

More information on the specific drugs for blood pressure control can be found in [Chapter 38](#). Indications vary depending on the patient, and these drugs are used carefully to avoid complications. Different combinations and doses may be tried until blood pressure control is adequate and side effects are minimized.

Teach the patient and family to measure blood pressure daily. Evaluate their ability to measure and record blood pressure accurately using their own equipment. Re-check measurement accuracy on a regular basis. The patient and family must understand the relationship of blood pressure control to diet and drug therapy. Also instruct the patient to weigh daily and to bring records of blood pressure measurements, drug administration times, and weights for discussion with the physician, nurse, or dietitian.

Assess the patient on an ongoing basis for manifestations of reduced cardiac output, heart failure, and dysrhythmias. These topics are discussed in [Chapters 36 through 38](#).

Enhancing Nutrition

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to maintain adequate nutrition. The patient should have a caloric intake appropriate for his or her weight-to-height ratio, muscle tone, and laboratory values (serum albumin, hematocrit, hemoglobin).

Interventions. The nutritional needs and diet restrictions for the patient with CKD vary according to the degree of remaining kidney function and the type of renal replacement therapy used ([Table 71-8](#)).

The purpose of nutrition therapy is to provide the food and fluids needed to prevent malnutrition. Patients starting hemodialysis (HD) have an increase in protein breakdown and a decrease in intake that results in a loss of lean body mass.

The patient is referred to a dietitian for dietary teaching and planning. Work with the dietitian to teach the patient about diet changes that are needed as a result of CKD. Common changes include control of protein intake; fluid intake limitation; restriction of potassium, sodium, and phosphorus intake; taking vitamin and mineral supplements; and eating enough calories to meet metabolic need.

If adequate calories are not supplied, the body will use muscle protein for energy, which leads to a negative nitrogen balance and malnutrition. The dietitian determines the number of calories and types of nutrients required to meet body needs.

Protein restriction early in the course of the disease prevents some of the symptoms of CKD and may preserve

TABLE 71-8 DIETARY RESTRICTIONS FOR THE PATIENT WITH SEVERE KIDNEY DISEASE AND END-STAGE KIDNEY DISEASE

DIETARY COMPONENT	WITH CHRONIC UREMIA	WITH HEMODIALYSIS	WITH PERITONEAL DIALYSIS
Protein	0.55-0.60 g/kg/day	1.0-1.5 g/kg/day	1.2-1.5 g/kg/day
Fluid	Depends on urine output but may be as high as 1500-3000 mL/day	500-700 mL/day plus amount of urine output	Restriction based on fluid weight gain and blood pressure
Potassium	60-70 mEq/day	70 mEq/day	Usually no restriction
Sodium	1-3 g/day	2-4 g/day	Restriction based on fluid weight gain and blood pressure
Phosphorus	700 mg/day	700 mg/day	800 mg/day

kidney function. Protein is restricted on the basis of the degree of kidney impairment (reduced GFR) and the severity of the symptoms. Buildup of waste products from protein breakdown is the main cause of uremia. Although lower protein levels are recommended, protein-calorie malnutrition must be avoided in patients receiving hemodialysis (HD). At least 1.5 g of protein per kilogram of body weight per day may be needed for weight gain and improved nutritional status in patients receiving maintenance HD.

The glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is used as an indicator of kidney function and as a guide to safe levels of protein intake. A patient with a severely reduced GFR who is *not* undergoing dialysis is usually permitted 0.55 to 0.60 g of protein per kilogram of body weight (e.g., 40 g of protein daily for a 150-pound [about 70-kg] adult). If protein is lost in the urine, protein is added to the diet in amounts equal to that lost in the urine. Protein requirements are calculated based on actual body weight (corrected for edema), not ideal body weight.

The patient receiving dialysis needs more protein because some protein is lost through dialysis. While receiving HD, protein requirements are tailored according to the patient's post-dialysis, or "dry," weight. Generally, HD patients are allowed about 1 to 1.5 g of protein/kg/day. Peritoneal dialysis (PD) patients are allowed 1.2 to 1.5 g of protein/kg/day because protein is lost with each exchange. Suggested protein-containing foods are milk, meat, or eggs. If protein intake is not adequate, a negative nitrogen balance develops and causes muscle wasting. BUN and serum prealbumin levels and albumin levels are used to monitor the adequacy of protein intake. Decreased serum prealbumin or albumin levels indicate poor protein intake. Excessive protein intake increases BUN levels in patients with CKD.

Sodium restriction is needed in patients with little or no urine output. Both fluid and sodium retention cause edema, hypertension, and heart failure (HF). Most patients with CKD retain sodium; a few cannot conserve sodium.

Estimate fluid and sodium retention status by monitoring the patient's body weight and blood pressure. In uremic patients not receiving dialysis, sodium is limited to 1 to 3 g daily and fluid intake depends on urine output. In patients receiving dialysis, the sodium restriction is 2 to 4 g daily and fluid intake is limited to 500 to 700 mL plus the amount of any urine output. Instruct the patient not to add salt at the table or during cooking. Foods high in sodium (e.g., processed foods, fast foods, potato chips, pretzels, pickles, ham, bacon, sausage) are permitted in moderation. Herbs and spices can be used in place of salt to enhance food flavor.

Potassium restriction may be needed because high blood potassium levels can cause dangerous cardiac dysrhythmias. Monitor the ECG for tall, peaked T waves caused by hyperkalemia. Document serum potassium levels. Instruct the patient with ESKD to limit potassium intake to 60 to 70 mEq/day. Teach him or her to read labels of seasoning agents carefully for sodium and potassium content. [Chart 13-8](#) in [Chapter 13](#) lists common foods that are low in potassium along with foods that are high in potassium and should be avoided. Instruct patients to avoid salt substitutes composed of potassium chloride. Those receiving PD or who are producing urine may not need potassium restriction.

Phosphorus restriction for control of phosphate levels is started early in CKD to avoid osteodystrophy (bone defects).

Monitor serum phosphate levels. Dietary phosphorus restrictions and drugs to assist with phosphate control may be prescribed. Phosphate binders must be taken at mealtimes. Most patients with CKD already restrict their protein intake, and because high-protein foods are also high in phosphorus, this reduces phosphorus intake. [Chapter 13](#) lists foods high in potassium, sodium, and phosphorus.

Vitamin supplementation is needed daily for most patients with CKD. Low-protein diets are also low in vitamins, and water-soluble vitamins are removed from the blood during dialysis. Anemia also is a problem in patients with CKD because of the limited iron content of low-protein diets and decreased kidney production of erythropoietin. Thus supplemental iron is needed. Calcium and vitamin D supplements may be needed, depending on the patient's serum calcium levels and bone status.

Nutritional needs for patients undergoing PD are slightly different from those undergoing HD. Because protein is lost with the dialysate in PD, replacing lost protein is needed. Often 1.2 to 1.5 g of protein per kilogram of body weight per day is recommended. Patients may have anorexia and have difficulty eating enough protein. High-calorie enteral supplements may also be needed (e.g., Magnacal Renal, Ensure Plus). Sodium restriction varies with fluid weight gain and blood pressure. Usually dietary potassium does not need to be restricted because the dialysate is potassium-free. Any potassium restriction is determined by serum potassium levels.

Collaborate with the dietitian to assess each patient's nutritional needs. Teach the patient and evaluate his or her understanding of and adherence with dietary regimens. Give the patient and family written examples of the diet to promote adherence. Help patients adapt the diet to their budget, ethnic background, and food preferences to meet the diet's restrictions.

Preventing Infection

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to remain free of infection. Indicators include that the patient will have only mild or no fever, no lymph node enlargement, negative urine culture, negative dialysis access site culture, and white blood cell count either within the normal range or only slightly elevated.

Interventions. Provide meticulous care to any areas where skin is not intact (e.g., AV grafts and fistulas, incisions, site of drains, puncture sites, cracked or excoriated skin, pressure sores), and provide preventive skin care to intact areas. For patients undergoing dialysis, inspect the vascular access site or peritoneal dialysis (PD) catheter insertion site every shift for redness, swelling, pain, and drainage. Monitor vital signs for any manifestation of infection (e.g., fever, tachycardia).

Preventing Injury

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to remain free of injury. Indicators include that the patient should not have any of the following problems:

- Pathologic fractures
- Toxic side effects from drug therapy
- Bleeding

Interventions. *Injury prevention strategies* are needed because the patient with long-standing CKD may have brittle, fragile bones that fracture easily and cause little pain. When

lifting or moving a patient with fragile bones, use a lift sheet rather than pulling the patient. Teach unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP) the correct use of lift sheets. Observe for normal range of joint motion and for unusual surface bumps or depressions over bones, which may indicate fractures.

Managing drug therapy in patients with CKD is a complex clinical problem. Many over-the-counter drugs contain agents that alter kidney function. Therefore it is important to obtain a detailed drug history. Know the use of each drug, its side effects, and its site of metabolism.

Certain drugs must be avoided, and the dosages of others must be adjusted according to the degree of remaining kidney function. As the patient's kidney function decreases, repeated dosage adjustments are necessary. Assess for side effects and signs of drug toxicity, and notify the prescriber as appropriate.

NURSING SAFETY ALERT

Drug Alert

Monitor the patient with severe CKD or ESKD closely for drug-related complications, and ensure that dosages are adjusted as needed.

Many drugs are routinely given to patients with CKD (see [Chart 71-3](#)). Know the rationale for these drugs and the indicated nursing interventions. Many patients also have cardiac disease and may require cardiac drugs such as digoxin. Patients with severe CKD and ESKD are particularly at risk for digoxin toxicity because the drug is excreted by the kidneys. When caring for patients with CKD who are receiving digoxin, monitor for signs of toxicity, such as nausea, vomiting, anorexia, visual changes, restlessness, headache, fatigue, confusion, *bradycardia* (pulse rate less than 50 to 60 beats/min), and *tachycardia* (pulse rate greater than 100 beats/min). Monitor the serum drug levels to be certain they are in the therapeutic range (0.8-2 ng/mL). Also closely monitor the serum potassium levels of any patient receiving digoxin.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Doses of digoxin are generally much lower than for most drugs. When digoxin is administered to older adults with kidney disease, the prescribed dose may be even lower (0.0625-0.125 mg). Check and re-check the dosage before administering digoxin to a patient with kidney disease.

Drugs to control an excessively high phosphate level include phosphate-binding agents. Calcium acetate, calcium carbonate, and aluminum hydroxide are used as phosphate-binding agents in patients with impaired kidney function or CKD. These drugs help prevent renal osteodystrophy and related injuries. Stress the importance of taking these agents and all prescribed drugs.

Hypophosphatemia (low serum phosphorus levels) is a complication of phosphate binding, especially in patients who are not eating adequately but who are continuing to take phosphate-binding drugs. *Hypercalcemia* (high serum calcium levels) also is a possible complication for patients taking calcium-containing compounds to control phosphate excess. In patients taking aluminum-based phosphate binders

for prolonged periods, aluminum deposits may cause bone disease or permanent neurologic problems. Monitor the patient for muscle weakness, anorexia, malaise, tremors, or bone pain.

Teach patients with kidney disease to avoid antacids containing magnesium. These patients cannot excrete magnesium and thus should avoid additional intake.

Some drugs, in addition to those used to manage CKD, require special attention. These drugs include antibiotics, opioids, antihypertensives, diuretics, insulin, and heparin.

Many antibiotics are safe for patients with CKD, but those excreted by the kidney require dose adjustment. To prevent complications of bloodstream infections from mouth bacteria, prophylactic antibiotic treatment is given to patients with CKD before any dental procedures. The antibiotic used varies with the patient's needs and the physician's preference.

Give opioid analgesics cautiously in patients with severe CKD or ESKD because the effects often last longer than in those with healthy kidneys. Patients with uremia are sensitive to the respiratory depressant effects of these drugs. Because opioids are broken down by the liver and not the kidneys, the dosages are often the same regardless of the level of kidney function. Monitor the patient's reactions closely after opioids are given to determine whether adjustments are needed.

As CKD progresses, the patient with diabetes often requires reduced doses of insulin or antidiabetic drugs because the failing kidneys do not excrete or metabolize these drugs well. Thus the drugs are effective longer, increasing the risk for hypoglycemia. Monitor blood glucose levels at least four times per day to determine whether a dosage change is needed.

Poor platelet function and capillary fragility in CKD make anticoagulant therapy risky. Monitor patients receiving heparin, warfarin, or any anticoagulant every shift for bleeding. See [Chapter 42](#) for more information on caring for patients at increased risk for bleeding.

Minimizing Fatigue

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with chronic kidney disease (CKD) is expected to conserve energy by balancing activity and rest. Indicators include that the patient will be able to participate in self-care activities, have interest in surroundings, and demonstrate mental concentration.

Interventions. Some causes of fatigue in the patient with CKD are vitamin deficiency, poor nutrition, anemia, and buildup of urea. All patients are given some type of vitamin and mineral supplement because of diet restrictions and vitamin losses from dialysis. Avoid giving these supplements before hemodialysis (HD) treatment because they will be dialyzed out of the body and the patient will receive no benefit.

The anemic patient with CKD is treated with erythropoietin (Epogen, Procrit). The outcome of this therapy is to maintain a hematocrit of 30% to 35%. This therapy is effective in triggering bone marrow production of red blood cells if the patient has adequate iron stores. Iron supplements may be needed if patients are iron deficient. Many who receive erythropoietin report improved appetite and sexual function along with decreased fatigue. The increased production of all blood cells from this therapy may increase blood pressure. The improved appetite challenges patients in their attempts to maintain protein, potassium, and fluid restrictions and requires additional education.

Reducing Anxiety

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with CKD is expected to have reduced tension and apprehension. Indicators include that the patient consistently demonstrates these behaviors:

- Seeks information to reduce anxiety
- Uses effective coping strategies
- Reports an absence of physical manifestations of anxiety

Interventions. The nurse coordinates a team of health care professionals to support and counsel the patient and family, often over many years of treatment. The nurse has the most contact with the patient with severe CKD and ESKD when the patient is hospitalized or undergoing in-center dialysis treatments. Perform an ongoing assessment of the patient's anxiety level to determine the level of nursing intervention required. Observe his or her behavior for cues indicating anxiety (e.g., anxious facial expressions, clenching of hands, tapping of feet, withdrawn posture, absence of eye contact, an increased pulse rate). Evaluate the support systems, such as the involvement of family and friends with the patient's care.

Unfamiliar settings and lack of knowledge about treatments and tests can increase the patient's anxiety level. Explain all procedures, tests, and treatments. Identify the patient's knowledge needs about kidney function and kidney disease. Provide instruction at a level he or she can understand using a variety of written and visual materials.

Provide continuity of care, whenever possible, by using a consistent nurse-patient relationship to decrease anxiety and promote discussions of concerns. As you develop the nurse-patient relationship, encourage the patient to discuss current problems or concerns.

Encourage the patient to ask questions and discuss fears about the diagnosis of severe kidney disease or ESKD. An open atmosphere that allows for discussion can decrease anxiety. Facilitate discussions with family members about the prognosis and the impact on lifestyle. Assist the patient to identify strategies for maintaining quality of life.

Renal Replacement Therapies

Renal replacement therapy is needed when the pathologic changes of stage 4 and stage 5 chronic kidney disease (CKD) are life threatening or pose continuing discomfort to the patient. When he or she can no longer be managed with conservative therapies, such as diet, drugs, and fluid restriction, dialysis is indicated. Transplantation may be discussed at any time.

Hemodialysis

Hemodialysis (HD) is the most common renal replacement therapy used with ESKD and kidney failure (Table 71-9). Dialysis removes excess fluids and waste products and restores chemical and electrolyte balance. HD involves passing the patient's blood through an artificial semipermeable membrane to perform the filtering and excretion functions of the kidney.

Patient Selection. Any patient may be considered for HD therapy. Starting this therapy depends on symptoms, not on the glomerular filtration rate (GFR). Dialysis is started immediately for patients who have the following: fluid overload that does not respond to diuretics, pericarditis, uncontrolled

TABLE 71-9 A COMPARISON OF HEMODIALYSIS AND PERITONEAL DIALYSIS AS RENAL REPLACEMENT THERAPY OPTIONS

HEMODIALYSIS	PERITONEAL DIALYSIS
Advantages	
More efficient clearance	Easy access
Short time needed for treatment	Few hemodynamic complications
Complications	
Disequilibrium syndrome	Protein loss
Muscle cramps	Peritonitis
Hemorrhage	Hyperglycemia
Air embolus	Respiratory distress
Hemodynamic changes (hypotension, anemia)	Bowel perforation
Cardiac dysrhythmias	Infection
Infection	
Contraindications	
Hemodynamic instability	Extensive peritoneal adhesions
	Peritoneal fibrosis
	Recent abdominal surgery
Access	
Vascular access route	Intra-abdominal catheter
Procedure	
Complex	Simple
Specially trained registered nurses required	Training less complex than for hemodialysis
Nursing Implications	
Vascular access care	Abdominal catheter care
Restrict diet	More flexible diet

hypertension, neurologic problems, and development of bleeding. Most commonly, dialysis is started when uremic manifestations, such as nausea and vomiting, decreased attention span, decreased cognition, worsening anemia, and pruritus, are present.

Many patients survive for years with HD therapy, and others may live only a few months. How long the patient survives using HD therapy depends on his or her age, the cause of kidney failure, and the presence of other diseases, such as coronary artery disease, hypertension, or diabetes. General patient selection criteria are:

- Irreversible kidney failure when other therapies are unacceptable or ineffective
- Absence of illnesses that would seriously complicate HD
- Expectation of rehabilitation
- The patient's acceptance of the regimen

Dialysis Settings. Patients with CKD may receive HD treatments in many settings, depending on specific needs. Regardless of the setting for therapy, they need ongoing nursing support to maintain this complex and lifesaving treatment.

Patients may be dialyzed in a hospital-based center if they have recently started treatment or have complicated conditions that require close supervision. Stable patients not requiring intense supervision may be dialyzed in a community or freestanding HD center. Selected patients may participate in complete or partial self-care in an outpatient center or in in-home HD.

In-home HD is the least disruptive and allows the patient to adapt the regimen to his or her lifestyle. Unfortunately, many cannot participate in in-home dialysis because they lack a skilled partner to assist with the therapy and manage the dialysis machine. Some patients and partners find the use of in-home dialysis to be too stressful. In addition, a water treatment system must be installed in the home to provide a safe, clean water supply for the dialysis process.

Procedure. Dialysis works using the passive transfer of toxins by diffusion. **Diffusion** is the movement of molecules from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. The rate of diffusion during dialysis occurs more rapidly when the membrane pores are large, there is a large surface area of membrane, the temperature of the solutions is higher, and there is a greater difference in the solute concentrations between the patient's blood and the dialysate. Large molecules, such as RBCs and most plasma proteins, cannot pass through the membrane.

When HD is started, blood and **dialysate** (dialyzing solution) flow in opposite directions across an enclosed semipermeable membrane. The dialysate contains a balanced mix of electrolytes and water that closely resembles human plasma. On the other side of the membrane is the patient's blood, which contains nitrogen waste products, excess water, and excess electrolytes. During HD, the waste products move from the blood into the dialysate because of the difference in their concentrations (diffusion). Excess water is also removed from the blood into the dialysate by *osmosis* (movement of water across a semipermeable membrane from a solution that has a lower osmolarity or concentration to a solution with a higher osmolarity or concentration). Electrolytes can move in either direction, as needed, and take some fluid with them. Potassium and sodium typically move out of the plasma into the dialysate. Bicarbonate and calcium generally move from the dialysate into the plasma. This circulating process continues for a preset length of time, restoring water, electrolyte, and acid-base balance and removing nitrogenous wastes. Water volume may be removed from the plasma by applying positive or negative pressure to the system.

The HD system includes a dialyzer, dialysate, vascular access routes, and an HD machine. The artificial kidney, or **dialyzer** (Fig. 71-3), has four parts: a blood compartment, a dialysate compartment, a semipermeable membrane, and an enclosed support structure.

Dialysate is made from clear water and chemicals and is free of any waste products or drugs. Because bacteria and other organisms are too large to pass through the membrane, dialysate is not sterile. The water used in dialysate must meet specific standards and usually requires special treatment before mixing the dialysate. The dialysate composition may be altered according to the patient's needs for management of electrolyte imbalances. During HD, the dialysate is warmed to 100° F (37.8° C) to increase the diffusion rate and to prevent hypothermia.

The HD machine has alarm systems to monitor for potential problems, including changes in dialysate temperature, air in the blood tubing, a blood leak in the dialysate compartment, changes in the pressure in either compartment, and changes in composition of the blood or dialysate. If any of these problems are detected, an alarm sounds to protect the patient from life-threatening complications.

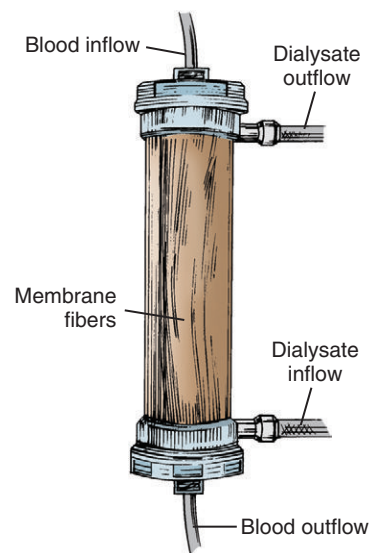


FIG. 71-3 Artificial kidney (dialyzer) used in hemodialysis.

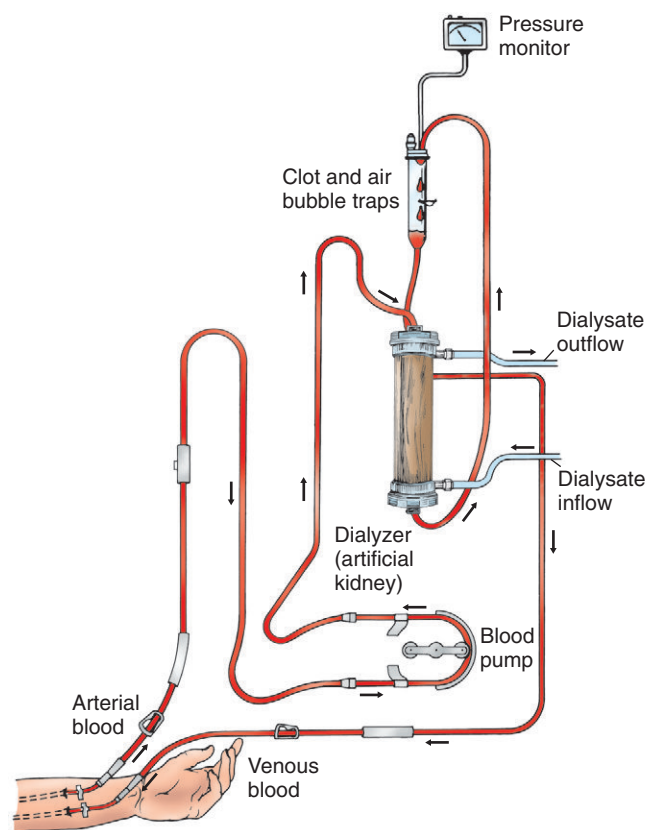


FIG. 71-4 A hemodialysis circuit.

All models of HD machines function in a manner similar to that shown in Fig. 71-4. Fig. 71-5 shows one type of HD machine. Fig. 71-6 shows a patient receiving HD. The number and length of treatments depend on the amount of wastes and fluid to be removed, the clearance capacity of the dialyzer, and the blood flow rate to and from the machine. Most patients require about 12 hours per week of total dialysis time. This time is usually divided into three 4-hour treatments. For those with some ongoing urine production, two

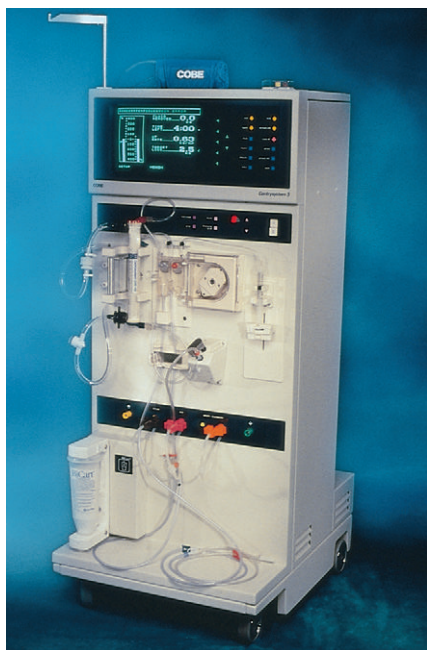


FIG. 71-5 Hemodialysis machine.

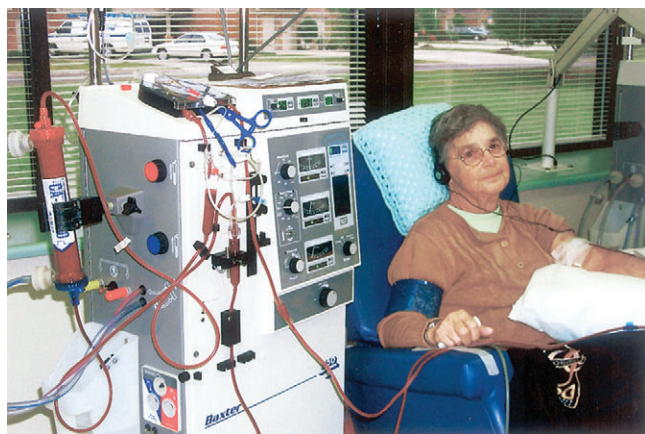


FIG. 71-6 Patient receiving hemodialysis.

5- to 6-hour treatments a week may be adequate. If the patient gains large amounts of fluid weight, a longer treatment time may be needed to remove the fluid without hypotension or severe side effects.

Anticoagulation. To prevent blood clots from forming within the dialyzer or the blood tubing, anticoagulation is needed during HD treatments. Heparin is the most commonly used drug to prevent clots from forming when blood comes in contact with foreign surfaces. Patient response to heparin varies, and the dose is adjusted based on each patient's need. Those receiving erythropoietin may require additional heparin.

Heparin remains active in the body for 4 to 6 hours after dialysis, making the patient at risk for hemorrhage during and immediately after HD treatments. Invasive procedures must be avoided during that time. Monitor him or her closely for any signs of bleeding or hemorrhage. Clotting tendencies can be monitored during HD with a bedside machine (e.g., the Hemochron), by whole-blood clotting times, or by

TABLE 71-10 TYPES OF VASCULAR ACCESS FOR HEMODIALYSIS

ACCESS TYPE	DESCRIPTION	LOCATION	INITIAL USE
Permanent			
AV fistula	An internal anastomosis of an artery to a vein	Forearm	2-4 mo or longer
AV graft	Synthetic vessel tubing tunneled beneath the skin, connecting an artery and a vein	Forearm Upper arm Inner thigh	1-2 wk
Temporary			
Hemodialysis catheter (dual- or triple-lumen)	A specially designed catheter with two or three lumens. Two lumens are for blood outflow and inflow for hemodialysis; a third allows venous access without accessing dialysis lumens	Subclavian, internal jugular, or femoral vein	Immediately after insertion and x-ray confirmation of placement
Subcutaneous device	An internal device with two metallic access ports and two catheters inserted into large central veins	Subclavian	Immediately after insertion

AV, Arteriovenous.

activated partial thromboplastin times (aPTTs) during and after HD. Protamine sulfate is an antidote to heparin and always should be available in the dialysis setting.

Vascular Access. Vascular access is required for hemodialysis (Table 71-10). The procedure requires the easy availability of a large amount of blood flow: at least 250 to 300 mL/min, usually for a period of 3 to 4 hours. Normal venous cannulation does not provide this high rate of blood flow.

Long-term vascular access is internal for most patients having long-term HD (see Table 71-10). The two common choices are an internal arteriovenous (AV) fistula or an AV graft (Fig. 71-7). *AV fistulas* are formed by surgically connecting an artery to a vein. The vessels used most often are the radial or brachial artery and the cephalic vein of the non-dominant arm. Fistulas increase venous blood flow to 250 to 400 mL/min, the amount needed for effective dialysis.

Time is needed after anastomosis for the AV fistula to develop. As the AV fistula “matures,” the increased pressure of the arterial blood flow into the vein causes the vessel walls to thicken. This thickening increases their strength and durability for repeated cannulation. Patients differ in the amount of time needed for the fistula to mature. Some fistulas may not be ready for use for as long as 4 months after the surgery, and a temporary vascular access (AV shunt or HD catheter) is used during this time. Fig. 71-8 shows a mature fistula.

To access a fistula, cannulate it by inserting two needles, one toward the venous blood flow and one toward the arterial blood flow. This procedure allows the HD machine to draw

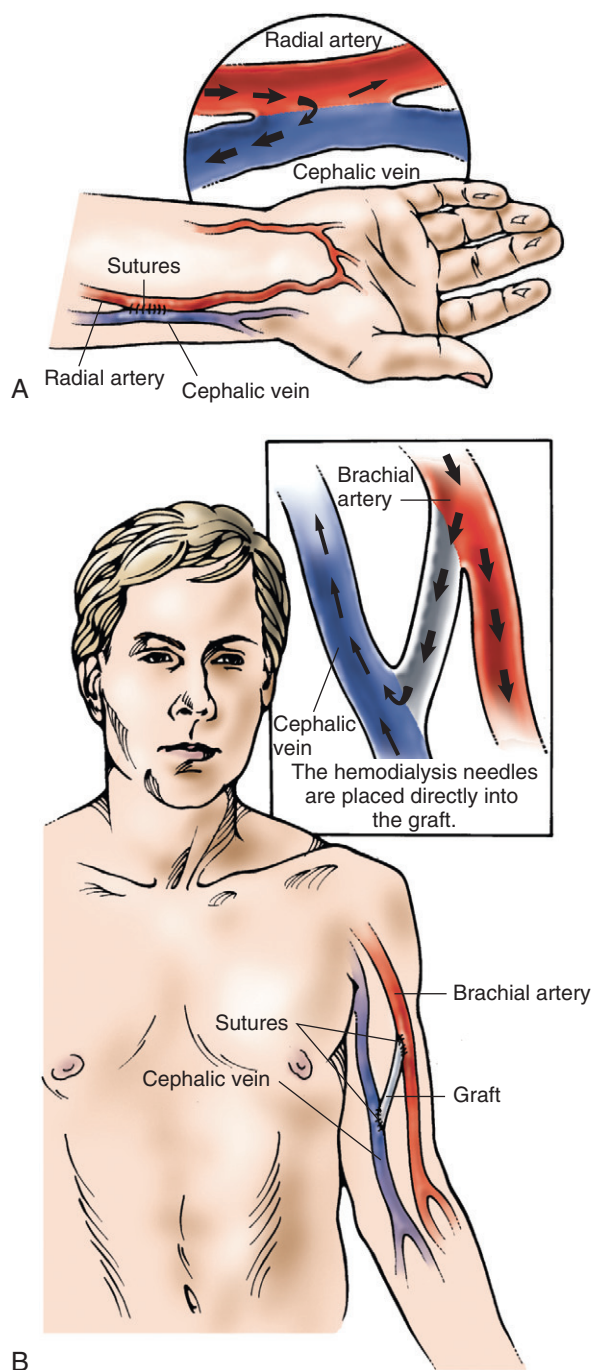


FIG. 71-7 Options for long-term vascular access for hemodialysis. **A**, A surgically created venous fistula. The increased pressure from the artery forces blood into the vein. This process causes the vein to dilate enough for fistula needles to be placed for hemodialysis. When the vein dilates in this manner, the fistula is said to be “developed” or “mature.” **B**, A surgically placed straight vascular graft in the upper arm. The graft creates a shunt between arterial and venous blood.

the blood out through the arterial needle and return it through the venous needle.

Arteriovenous grafts are used when the AV fistula does not develop or when complications limit its use. The polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) graft is a synthetic material



FIG. 71-8 A mature fistula for hemodialysis access.

(GORE-TEX). This type of graft is commonly used for older patients using HD. Fig. 71-7, B, shows a patient's AV graft.

Precautions. Some precautions are needed to ensure the functioning of an internal AV fistula or AV graft. First assess for adequate circulation in the fistula or graft as well as in the lower portion of the arm. Check distal pulses and capillary refill in the arm with the fistula or graft. Then check for a *bruit* (swishing sound) by auscultating over the access site or a *thrill* (vibration) by palpating over it. The fistula changes in appearance over time as it dilates, and skin stretching increases the risk for injury in the area. Chart 71-8 lists best practices for care of the patient with an HD access.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because repeated compression can result in the loss of the vascular access, avoid taking the blood pressure or performing venipunctures in the arm with the vascular access. Do not use AV fistula or graft for delivery of IV fluids.

Complications. Complications can occur with any type of access. The most common problems are thrombosis or stenosis, infection, aneurysm formation, ischemia, and heart failure.

Thrombosis, or clotting of the AV access, is the most frequent complication. Most grafts fail because of high-pressure arterial flow entering the venous system. The muscle layers of the veins react to this increased pressure by thickening. The venous thickening reduces or occludes blood flow. An interventional radiologist can re-open failing grafts with the injection of a thrombolytic drug (e.g., tPA) to dissolve the clot. The clot usually dissolves within minutes, and often a stricture is revealed at the point where the graft and the vein connect. The stricture can be corrected by balloon angioplasty.

CHART 71-8 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Caring for the Patient with an Arteriovenous Fistula or Arteriovenous Graft

- Do not take blood pressure readings using the extremity in which the vascular access is placed.
- Do not perform venipunctures or start an IV line in the extremity in which the vascular access is placed.
- Palpate for thrills and auscultate for bruits every 4 hours while the patient is awake.
- Assess the patient's distal pulses and circulation in the arm with the access.
- Elevate the affected extremity postoperatively.
- Encourage routine range-of-motion exercises.
- Check for bleeding at needle insertion sites.
- Assess for manifestations of infection at needle sites.
- Instruct the patient not to carry heavy objects or anything that compresses the extremity in which the vascular access is placed.
- Instruct the patient not to sleep with his or her body weight on top of the extremity in which the vascular access is placed.

AV, Arteriovenous.

TABLE 71-11 NURSING INTERVENTIONS FOR PREVENTION OF COMPLICATIONS IN HEMODIALYSIS VASCULAR ACCESS

ACCESS TYPE	BLEEDING	INFECTION	CLOTTING
AV fistula or AV graft	Apply pressure to the needle puncture sites.	Ensure adequate site cleaning before cannulation.	Avoid constrictive devices. Rotate needle insertion sites with each hemodialysis treatment. Assess for thrill and bruit.
Hemodialysis catheters (temporary and permanent)	Monitor the access site.	Use aseptic technique.	Place a heparin or heparin/saline dwell solution after hemodialysis treatment. Not used between treatments.

AV, Arteriovenous.

Most infections of the vascular access are caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* introduced during cannulation. Use sterile technique during cannulation to prevent infection (Table 71-11).

Aneurysms can form in the fistula and are caused by repeated needle punctures at the same site. Large aneurysms may cause loss of the fistula's function and require surgical repair.

Ischemia occurs in a few patients with vascular access when the fistula decreases arterial blood flow to areas below the fistula. Ischemic symptoms ("steal syndrome") vary from cold or numb fingers to gangrene. If the collateral circulation is inadequate, the fistula may need to be surgically tied off and a new one created in another area to preserve extremity circulation.

Shunting of blood directly from the arterial system to the venous system, through the fistula, can cause heart failure in

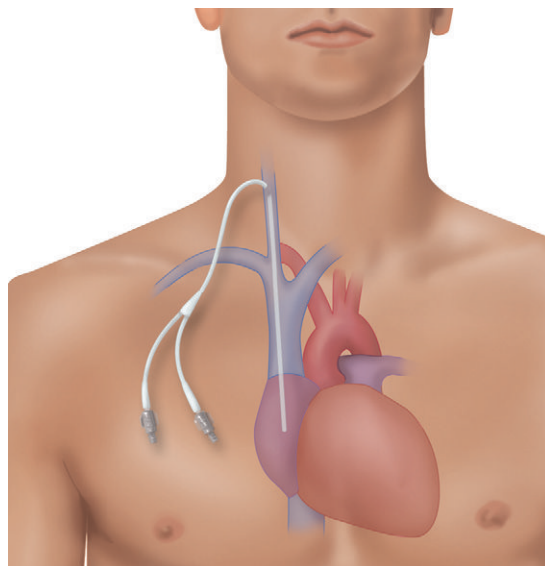


FIG. 71-9 Temporary jugular hemodialysis access.

patients with limited cardiac function. This complication is rare, but if it does occur, the fistula may need to be revised to reduce arterial blood flow.

Temporary Vascular Access. Temporary access with special catheters has replaced the use of the AV shunt for patients requiring immediate HD. A catheter designed for HD may be inserted into the subclavian, internal jugular, or femoral vein. The lumens of these devices are much smaller than the permanent accesses, and more time (4 to 8 hours) is required to complete each dialysis session.

Devices with subcutaneous access may also be surgically inserted to provide temporary access for HD. Implanted beneath the skin, these devices are composed of two small metallic ports with attached catheters that are inserted into large central veins (Fig. 71-9). The ports of subcutaneous devices have internal mechanisms that open when needles are inserted and close when needles are removed. Blood from one port flows from the body to the HD machine and returns to the body via the other port. These devices may be ideal for patients waiting for permanent access placement or a kidney transplant.

Hemodialysis Nursing Care. Many drugs, such as antibiotics, are *dialyzable* (i.e., can be partially removed from the blood during dialysis) and should not be administered just before or during dialysis. Vasoactive drugs can cause hypotension during HD and may also be held until after treatment. Coordinate with the physician to assess the patient's drug regimen and determine which drugs should be held until after HD treatment. Table 71-12 lists common dialyzable and vasoactive drugs that should be given after rather than before HD.

Post-Dialysis Care. Closely monitor the patient immediately and for several hours after dialysis for any side effects from the treatment. Common problems include hypotension, headache, nausea, malaise, vomiting, dizziness, and muscle cramps.

Obtain vital signs and weight for comparison with predialysis measurements. Blood pressure and weight are expected to be reduced as a result of fluid removal. Hypotension may require rehydration with IV fluids, such as normal

TABLE 71-12 DIALYZABLE AND VASOACTIVE DRUGS

Dialyzable Drugs
Aminoglycosides

- Amikacin
- Gentamicin
- Tobramycin

Antiviral Agents

- Acyclovir
- Ganciclovir

Penicillins

- Amoxicillin
- Ampicillin
- Cloxacillin
- Dicloxacillin
- Mezlocillin
- Penicillin G
- Ticarcillin

Anticonvulsants

- Ethosuximide
- Gabapentin
- Phenobarbital

Cephalosporins

- Cefaclor
- Cefazolin
- Cefoxitin
- Ceftizoxime
- Ceftriaxone
- Cefuroxime

Antituberculosis Agents

- Ethambutol
- Isoniazid

Miscellaneous

- Aztreonam
- Cimetidine
- Vitamins

Vasoactive Drugs
Antidysrhythmics

- Flecainide
- Lidocaine
- Procainamide
- Quinidine

Antihypertensives

- Atenolol
- Captopril
- Diltiazem
- Enalapril
- Lisinopril
- Methyldopa
- Nifedipine
- Propranolol
- Verapamil

Narcotics

- Codeine
- Morphine

Sedatives

- Midazolam
- Phenobarbital
- Propofol

Vasodilators

- Hydralazine
- Nitroglycerin
- Nitroprusside

CHART 71-9 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Caring for the Patient Undergoing Hemodialysis

- Weigh the patient before and after dialysis.
- Know the patient's dry weight.
- Discuss with the health care provider whether any of the patient's drugs should be withheld until after dialysis.
- Be aware of events that occurred during previous dialysis treatments.
- Measure blood pressure, pulse, respirations, and temperature.
- Assess for symptoms of orthostatic hypotension.
- Assess the vascular access site.
- Observe for bleeding.
- Assess the patient's level of consciousness.
- Assess for headache, nausea, and vomiting.

short periods with low blood flows so that rapid changes in plasma composition are avoided.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Critical Rescue**

Assess for and document symptoms of disequilibrium syndrome (headache, nausea, vomiting, restlessness, decreased level of consciousness, seizures, coma) during and after HD, because early recognition and treatment with anticonvulsants and barbiturates may prevent a life-threatening situation.

Infectious diseases transmitted by blood transfusion are a serious complication of long-term HD. Two of the most serious blood-transmitted infections are hepatitis and human immune deficiency virus (HIV).

Hepatitis infection (B and C) in patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) has decreased because the use of erythropoietin has reduced the need for blood transfusions to maintain red blood cell counts. Hepatitis is a problem because of the blood access and the risk for contamination during HD. The viruses can be transmitted through the use of contaminated needles or instruments, by entry of contaminated blood through open wounds in the skin or mucous membranes, or through transfusions with contaminated blood. Monitor all patients receiving HD for manifestations of hepatitis (see [Chapter 61](#)).

HIV is a bloodborne virus that poses some risk for patients undergoing HD. Fortunately, the risks for HIV transmission are reduced by the consistent practice of Standard Precautions, routine screening of donated blood for HIV, and decreased need for blood transfusions for patients with CKD and ESKD. Patients who have been undergoing HD or received frequent transfusions during the early to mid-1980s are at risk for acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) (see also [Chapter 21](#)).

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

In 2007, the occurrence of ESKD in patients ages 75 years or older increased to more than 25% of patients beginning ESKD therapy (USRDS, 2010). The overall mean age for new patients is 64.6 years. ESKD incidence caused by diabetes and hypertension continues to grow in older adults. Patients older than 65 years who are receiving HD are more at risk for dialysis-induced hypotension. These patients require more frequent monitoring during and after dialysis.

saline. The patient's temperature may also be elevated because the dialysis machine warms the blood slightly. If he or she has a fever, sepsis may be present and a blood sample is needed for culture and sensitivity.

The heparin required during HD increases the clotting time, which increases the risk for excessive bleeding. All invasive procedures must be avoided for 4 to 6 hours after dialysis. Continually monitor the patient for hemorrhage during and for 1 hour after dialysis ([Chart 71-9](#)).

Complications of Hemodialysis. Many fluid-related and infectious complications can occur from HD. The most common complications include disequilibrium syndrome and viral infections.

Dialysis disequilibrium syndrome may develop during HD or after HD has been completed. The cause appears to be the rapid decrease in fluid volume and blood urea nitrogen (BUN) levels during HD. The change in urea levels can cause cerebral edema and increased intracranial pressure. *Neurologic symptoms can result (e.g., headache, nausea, vomiting, restlessness, decreased level of consciousness, seizures, coma, or death).* The problem may be prevented by starting HD for

TABLE 71-13 PERITONEAL DIALYSIS

ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES
Easy to learn	Time-consuming exchanges
Can be done at home	Protein wasting
Ambulatory—no machine needed	Excessive glucose load, causing hyperlipidemia
When machines are used, they are small	Sterile technique required
Less stressful on the body	Presence of permanent catheter
Hemodynamic tolerance	Weight gain
Continuous process	Peritonitis risk
Better blood pressure control	Peritoneum injury risk
Less dietary and fluid restrictions	Cannot be done if patient has had many abdominal surgeries
Greater freedom in scheduling and traveling	Chronic back pain or development of hernia

Peritoneal Dialysis

Peritoneal dialysis (PD) allows exchanges of wastes, fluids, and electrolytes to occur in the peritoneal cavity. PD is slower than hemodialysis (HD), however, and more time is needed to achieve the same effect. Advantages and disadvantages are listed in Table 71-13. The use of PD has decreased and currently accounts for only 5% to 6% of dialysis (USRDS, 2010).

Patient Selection. Most patients with chronic kidney disease (CKD) can select either HD or PD. For those who are unstable, those who cannot tolerate anticoagulation, and those with chronic infection, PD is less hazardous than HD. For some patients, vascular access problems may eliminate HD as an option. At times a patient may use PD until a new arteriovenous (AV) fistula matures. PD is also often the treatment of choice for older adults because it offers more flexibility if his or her status changes frequently.

Peritoneal dialysis *cannot* be performed if peritoneal adhesions are present or if extensive intra-abdominal surgery has been performed. In these cases, the surface area of the peritoneal membrane is not sufficient for adequate dialysis exchange. Peritoneal membrane fibrosis may occur after repeated infections, which decreases membrane permeability.

Procedure. Each PD exchange process consists of three phases: fill, dwell, and drain. A siliconized rubber (Silastic) catheter is surgically placed into the abdominal cavity for infusion of dialysate (Fig. 71-10). Usually 1 to 2 L of dialysate is infused by gravity (*fill*) into the peritoneal space over a 10- to 20-minute period, according to the patient's tolerance. The fluid stays (*dwells*) in the cavity for a specified time prescribed by the physician. The fluid then flows out of the body (*drains*) by gravity into a drainage bag. The peritoneal outflow contains the dialysate and the excess water, electrolytes, and nitrogen-based waste products. The dialyzing fluid is called *peritoneal effluent* on outflow. The three phases of the process (infusion, or “fill”; dwell; and outflow, or drain) make up one PD exchange. The number and frequency of PD exchanges are prescribed by the physician, depending on manifestations and laboratory data.

Process. Peritoneal dialysis occurs through diffusion and osmosis across the semipermeable peritoneal membrane and capillaries. The peritoneal membrane is large and porous. It allows solutes and water to move from an area of higher concentration in the blood to an area of lower concentration in the dialyzing fluid (diffusion).

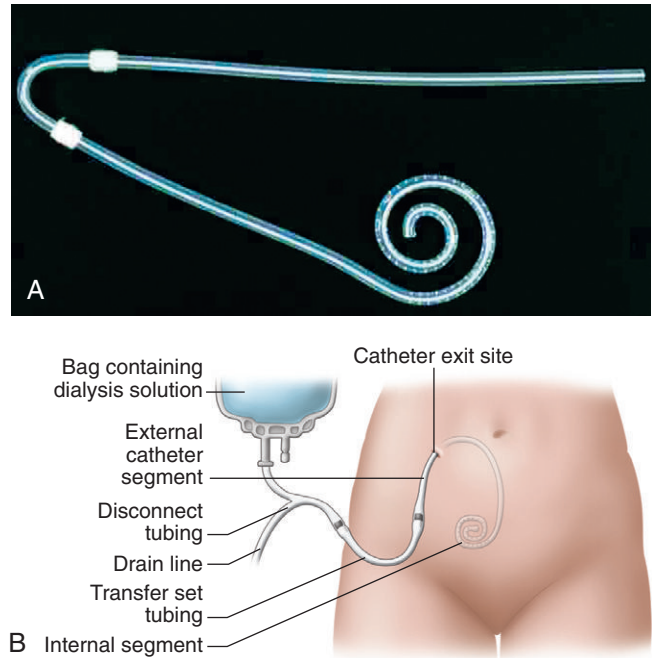


FIG. 71-10 Peritoneal dialysis catheter. **A**, The actual Silastic peritoneal dialysis catheter. **B**, Positioning of the Silastic catheter within the abdominal cavity.

The peritoneal cavity is rich in capillaries and is a ready access to the blood supply. The fluid and waste products dialyzed from the patient move through the blood vessel walls, the interstitial tissues, and the peritoneal membrane and are removed when the dialyzing fluid is drained from the body.

PD efficiency is affected by many factors, such as decreased peritoneal membrane permeability caused by infection or scarring and reduced capillary blood flow resulting from blood vessel constriction, vascular disease, or decreased perfusion of the peritoneum. For PD, water removal depends on the concentration of the dialysate. Increasing the dialysate glucose concentration makes the solution more hypertonic. The more hypertonic the solution, the greater the osmotic pressure (pulling pressure) for water filtration and fluid removal from the patient during an exchange. The dialysate concentration is prescribed based on the patient's fluid status.

Dialysate Additives. Heparin may be added to the dialysate to prevent clotting of the catheter or tubing. Usually intraperitoneal (IP) heparin is needed only after new catheter placement or if peritonitis occurs. IP heparin is not absorbed systemically and does not affect blood clotting.

Other agents that may be given in the dialysate include potassium and antibiotics. Commercially prepared dialysate does not contain potassium. Some patients need potassium added to the dialysate to prevent hypokalemia. Antibiotics may be given by the IP route when peritonitis is present or suspected. Potassium and antibiotics are not mixed in the same dialysate bag because interactions may reduce the antibiotic effect.

Types of Peritoneal Dialysis. Many types of PD are available, including continuous ambulatory PD, multiple-bag continuous ambulatory PD, automated PD, intermittent PD,

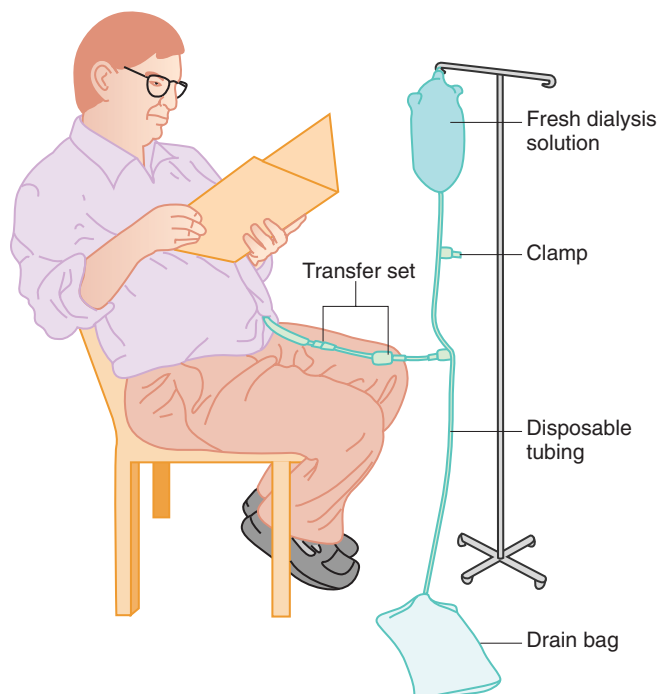


FIG. 71-11 Peritoneal dialysis exchange for control of fluids, electrolytes, nitrogenous wastes, blood pressure, and acid-base balance.

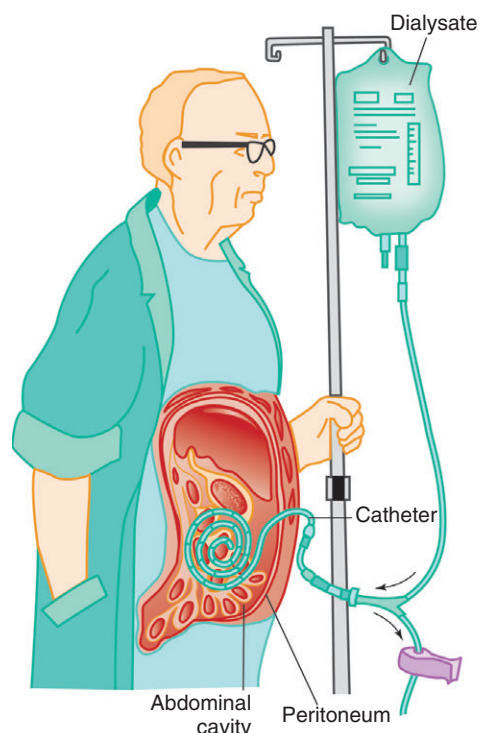


FIG. 71-13 A patient performing continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD).

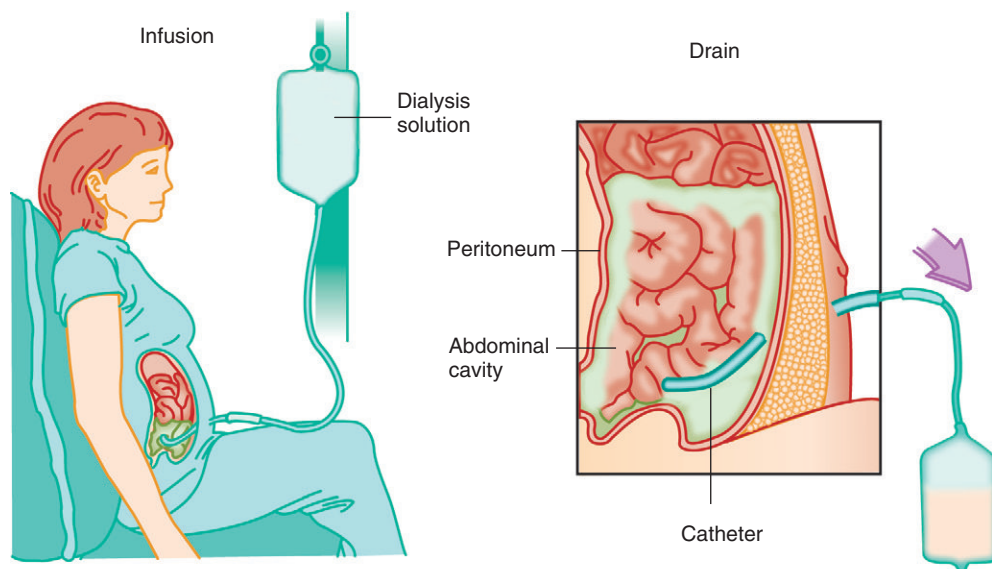


FIG. 71-12 Peritoneal membrane as dialyzing membrane for peritoneal dialysis.

and continuous-cycle PD. The type selected depends on the patient's ability and lifestyle. The two most commonly used types of PD are continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis and continuous cycling peritoneal dialysis.

Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD) is performed by the patient with the infusion of four 2-L exchanges of dialysate into the peritoneal cavity. Each time, the dialysate remains for 4 to 8 hours, and these exchanges occur 7 days a week (Fig. 71-11 through 71-13). During the dwell period, the patient can use a continuous connect system or a disconnect system.

With the continuous *connect* system (straight transfer set), the dialysate bag is attached to the catheter by 48-inch tubing. The empty bag and tubing are folded and worn beneath the clothing until they are used for outflow. After draining, the patient removes the bag and connects a new bag to repeat the process.

With the *disconnect* system (Y-transfer set), the patient removes the connecting tubing and empty dialysate bag after inflow and attaches a cap to the PD catheter. The disconnect system eliminates the need to wear the tubing and bag but requires opening the system two extra times with each

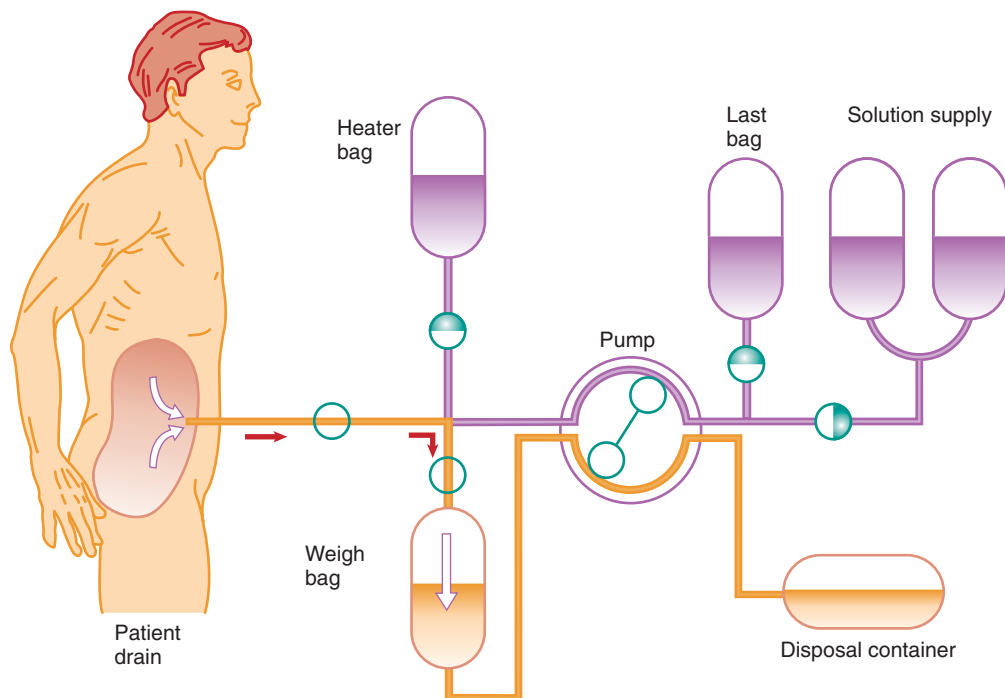


FIG. 71-14 Peritoneal dialysis machine circuit in automated peritoneal dialysis (APD).

exchange. The extra opening of the system increases the risk for infection.

With CAPD, no machine is necessary and no partner is required. However, it is best for a partner also trained in CAPD to be available as a support for the patient if illness occurs. Devices to assist in the safe, sterile connection of the tubing spike with the dialysate bag are available. These are useful for patients with poor vision, limited manual dexterity, or reduced hand and arm strength. CAPD allows constant removal of fluid and wastes and resembles kidney action more closely than HD. Some patients even perform their own exchanges while hospitalized.

Continuous-cycle peritoneal dialysis (CCPD) is a form of automated dialysis that uses an automated cycling machine. Exchanges occur at night while the patient sleeps. The final exchange of the night is left to dwell through the day and is drained the next evening as the process is repeated. CCPD offers the advantage of 24-hour dialysis, as in CAPD, but the sterile catheter system is opened less often.

Automated peritoneal dialysis (APD) may be used in the acute care setting, the outpatient dialysis center, or the patient's home. APD uses a cycling machine for dialysate inflow, dwell, and outflow according to preset times and volumes. A warming chamber for dialysate is part of the machine (Fig. 71-14). The functions are programmed for the patient's specific needs. A typical prescription calls for 30-minute exchanges (10/10/10 for inflow, dwell, and outflow) for a period of 8 to 10 hours. The machines have many safety monitors and alarms and are relatively simple to learn to use (Fig. 71-15).

Automated peritoneal dialysis has several advantages. It permits in-home dialysis while the patient sleeps, allowing him or her to be dialysis-free during waking hours. The incidence of peritonitis is reduced with APD because fewer connections and disconnections are needed. Also, APD can be



FIG. 71-15 A cyclor machine for automated peritoneal dialysis at home.

used to deliver larger volumes of dialysis solution for patients who need higher clearances.

Intermittent peritoneal dialysis (IPD) combines osmotic pressure gradients with true dialysis. The patient usually requires exchanges of 2 L of dialysate at 30- to 60-minute intervals, allowing 15 to 20 minutes of drain time. For most patients, 30 to 40 exchanges of 2 L three times weekly are needed. IPD treatments can be automated or manual.

Complications. Complications are possible with PD, but many can be prevented with meticulous care.

Peritonitis is the major complication of PD. The most common cause of peritonitis is connection site contamination. To prevent peritonitis, use meticulous sterile technique when caring for the PD catheter and when hooking up or clamping off dialysate bags (Chart 71-10).

Manifestations of peritonitis include cloudy dialysate outflow (effluent), fever, abdominal tenderness, abdominal

CHART 71-10 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Caring for the Patient with a Peritoneal Dialysis Catheter

- Mask yourself and your patient. Wash your hands.
- Put on sterile gloves. Remove the old dressing. Remove the contaminated gloves.
- Assess the area for signs of infection, such as swelling, redness, or discharge around the catheter site.
- Use aseptic technique:
 - Open the sterile field on a flat surface, and place two precut 4 × 4-inch gauze pads on the field.
 - Place three cotton swabs soaked in povidone-iodine on the field. Put on sterile gloves.
- Use cotton swabs to clean around the catheter site. Use a circular motion starting from the insertion site and moving away toward the abdomen. Repeat with all three swabs.
- Apply precut gauze pads over the catheter site. Tape only the edges of the gauze pads.

pain, general malaise, nausea, and vomiting. *Cloudy or opaque effluent is the earliest sign of peritonitis.* Examine all effluent for color and clarity to detect peritonitis early. When peritonitis is suspected, send a specimen of the dialysate outflow for culture and sensitivity study, Gram stain, and cell count to identify the infecting organism.

Pain during the inflow of dialysate is common when patients are first started on PD therapy. Usually this pain no longer occurs after a week or two of PD. Cold dialysate increases discomfort. Warm the dialysate bags before instillation by using a heating pad to wrap the bag or by using the warming chamber of the automated cycling machine. *Micro-wave ovens are **not** recommended for the warming of dialysate.*

Exit site and tunnel infections are serious complications. The exit site from a PD catheter should be clean, dry, and without pain or inflammation. Exit site infections (ESIs) can occur with any type of PD catheter. These infections are difficult to treat and can become chronic. They can lead to peritonitis, catheter failure, and hospitalization. Dialysate leakage and pulling or twisting of the catheter increase the risk for ESIs. A Gram stain and culture should be performed when exit sites have purulent drainage.

Tunnel infections occur in the path of the catheter from the skin to the cuff. Manifestations include redness, tenderness, and pain. ESIs are treated with antimicrobials. Deep cuff infections may require catheter removal.

Poor dialysate flow is usually related to constipation. To prevent constipation, a bowel preparation is prescribed before placement of the PD. An enema before starting PD may also prevent flow problems. Teach patients to eat a high-fiber diet and use stool softeners to prevent constipation. Other causes of flow difficulty include kinked or clamped connection tubing, the patient's position, fibrin clot formation, and catheter displacement.

Ensure that the drainage bag is lower than the patient's abdomen to enhance gravity drainage. Inspect the connection tubing and PD system for kinking or twisting. Ensure that clamps are open. If inflow or outflow drainage is still inadequate, reposition the patient to stimulate inflow or outflow. Turning the patient to the other side or ensuring that he or

she is in good body alignment may help. Having the patient in a supine low-Fowler's position reduces abdominal pressure. Increased abdominal pressure from sitting or standing or from coughing contributes to leakage at the PD catheter site.

Fibrin clot formation may occur after PD catheter placement or with peritonitis. Milking the tubing may dislodge the fibrin clot and improve flow. An x-ray is needed to identify PD catheter placement. If displacement has occurred, the physician repositions the PD catheter.

Dialysate leakage is seen as clear fluid coming from the catheter exit site. When dialysis is first started, small volumes of dialysate are used. It may take patients 1 to 2 weeks to tolerate a full 2-L exchange without leakage around the catheter site. Leakage occurs more often in obese patients, those with diabetes, older adults, and those on long-term steroid therapy. During periods of catheter leak, patients may require hemodialysis (HD) support.

Other complications of PD include bleeding, which is expected when the catheter is first placed, and bowel perforation, which is serious. When PD is first started, the outflow may be bloody or blood tinged. This condition normally clears within a week or two. After PD is well-established, the effluent should be clear and light yellow. Observe for and document any change in the color of the outflow. Brown-colored effluent occurs with a bowel perforation. If the outflow is the same color as urine and has the same glucose level, a bladder perforation is probable. Cloudy or opaque effluent indicates infection.

Nursing Care During Peritoneal Dialysis. In the hospital setting, PD is routinely started and monitored by the nurse. Before the treatment, assess baseline vital signs, including blood pressure, apical and radial pulse rates, temperature, quality of respirations, and breath sounds. Weigh the patient, always on the same scale, before the procedure and at least every 24 hours while receiving treatment. Weight should be checked after a drain and before the next fill to monitor the patient's "dry weight." Baseline laboratory tests, such as electrolyte and glucose levels, are obtained before starting PD and are repeated at least daily during the PD treatment.

Continually monitor the patient during PD. Take and record vital signs every 15 to 30 minutes. Assess for signs of respiratory distress, pain, or discomfort. Check the dressing around the catheter exit site every 30 minutes for wetness during the procedure. Monitor the prescribed dwell time, and initiate outflow. Assess blood glucose levels in patients who absorb glucose.

Observe the outflow pattern (outflow should be a continuous stream after the clamp is completely open). Measure and record the total amount of outflow after each exchange. Maintain accurate inflow and outflow records when hourly PD exchanges are performed. When outflow is less than inflow, the difference is retained by the patient during dialysis and is counted as fluid intake. Weigh the patient daily to monitor fluid status.

Kidney Transplantation

Dialysis and kidney transplant are life-sustaining *treatments* for end-stage kidney disease (ESKD). Kidney transplant is not considered a "cure." Each patient, in consultation with a nephrologist, determines which type of therapy is best suited to his or her physical condition and lifestyle. During 2009,

17,513 kidney transplants had been performed in the United States. In 2010 about 159,000 people were awaiting kidney transplant in North America. The median time on the waiting list was 678 days (USRDS, 2010).

Candidate Selection Criteria. Candidates for transplantation must be free of medical problems that might increase the risks from the procedure. Candidates are accepted for kidney transplant up to 70 years of age. Patients older than 70 years are considered for transplant on an individual basis because complications are more common in the older adult.

The patient is thoroughly assessed before he or she is considered for a kidney transplant. Patients who have advanced, uncorrectable cardiac disease are excluded from the procedure because these problems are made worse by transplantation. Other conditions that preclude kidney transplant include metastatic cancer, chronic infection, and severe psychosocial problems such as alcoholism or chemical dependency. Long-standing pulmonary disease increases the risk for complications and death from respiratory infections. Patients with diseases of the GI system may require treatment before consideration for transplantation. Problems such as peptic ulcer and diverticulosis are made worse by the large doses of steroids used after the surgery.

The urinary system is completely evaluated to ensure normal urine flow. Many patients with ESKD have not used their lower urinary tract for years, and ureteral or bladder problems may require surgical correction before a kidney is transplanted.

Patients with a recent history of cancer are treated with dialysis because of the shortage of donor organs and the uncertain life expectancy of these patients. In addition, the drugs used after the procedure increase the risk for cancer recurrence. If more than 2 to 5 years have passed since eradication of the cancer, the patient can be considered for a transplant.

Diabetes mellitus and other endocrine problems cause even greater risks. Patients with these problems can have a kidney transplant, but they require intense observation and management to limit complications. Other complicating conditions are considered on an individual basis, depending on the patient's current health status. Kidney transplantation can be considered for most patients with ESKD and is the optimal therapy for many people. Most people who have undergone this procedure are satisfied with their quality of life for years after the transplant.

Donors. Kidney donors may be living donors (either related or unrelated to the patient), non-heart-beating donors (NHBDs), and cadaveric donors. The available kidneys are matched on the basis of tissue type similarity between the donor and the recipient. Living donors are most often blood relatives, but unrelated donors have been used. NHBDs are persons declared dead by cardiopulmonary criteria. Kidneys from NHBDs are removed (harvested) immediately after death in cases in which patients have previously given consent for organ donation. If immediate removal must be delayed, the organ is preserved by infusing a cool preservation solution into the abdominal aorta after death is declared and until surgery can be performed. Cadaveric donors are usually individuals who suffered irreversible brain injury and brain death, most often as a result of trauma. These donors are maintained with mechanical ventilation and must have sufficient renal perfusion for the kidneys to remain viable.

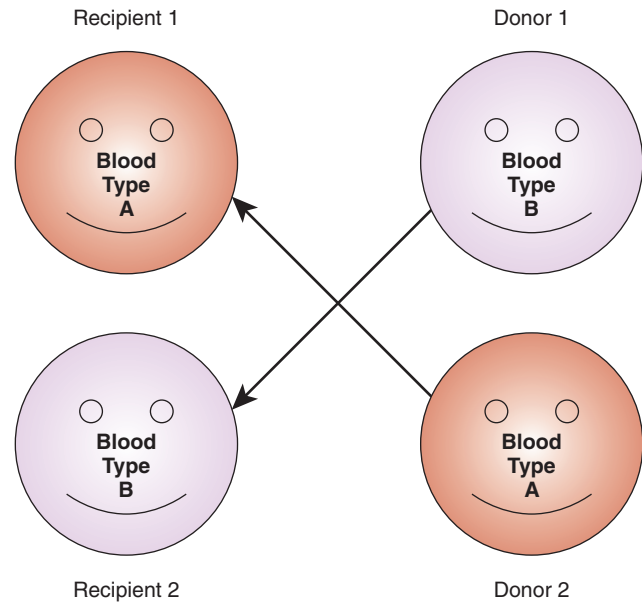


FIG. 71-16 An example of a paired exchange kidney donation. Donor 1 is related to or acquainted with recipient 1 and has agreed to donate a kidney but is not a blood type or tissue type match with recipient. Donor 1 is compatible with recipient 2 and agrees to donate a kidney to recipient 2 if donor 2 agrees to donate a kidney to recipient 1.

The size of the kidney is seldom a problem in adults. Kidneys transplanted from children become larger to meet adult needs within a few months.

Organs from living *related* donors (LRDs) have the highest rates of kidney graft survival (90%). Donors are usually at least 18 years old and are seldom older than 65 years. Physical criteria for donors include:

- Absence of systemic disease and infection
- No history of cancer
- No hypertension or kidney disease
- Adequate kidney function as determined by diagnostic studies

LRDs must express a clear understanding of the surgery and a willingness to give up a kidney. Some transplant centers require a psychiatric evaluation to assess the donor's motivation.

A list-paired exchange donation can be done when two kidney donor/recipient pairs have blood types that are not compatible within one pair. The two recipients trade donors so that each recipient can receive a kidney with a compatible blood type and tissue type (Fig. 71-16). Once the evaluations of all donors and recipients are completed, the two kidney transplant operations are scheduled to occur simultaneously (United Network for Organ Sharing [UNOS], 2011).

Because of advances in immunosuppressant therapy and medical management, the United Network of Organ Sharing (UNOS) reported 1-year kidney transplant graft survival to be almost 95% for all centers in the United States during 2010 (UNOS, 2011).

Preoperative Care. Many issues related to patient health and the actual transplant procedure must be addressed before surgery.

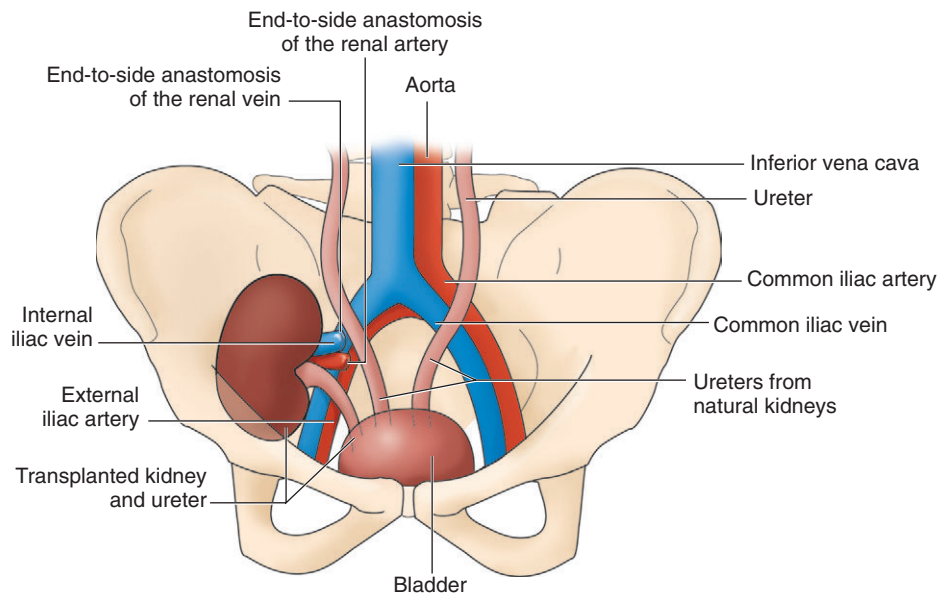


FIG. 71-17 Placement of a transplanted kidney in the right iliac fossa.

Immunologic studies are needed because the major barrier to transplant success after a suitable donor kidney is available is the body's ability to reject "foreign" tissue. This immunologic process can attack the transplanted kidney and destroy it. For immunologic problems to be overcome, tissue typing is performed on all candidates. These studies include simple blood typing and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) studies, as well as other tests. A donated kidney *must* come from a donor who is the same blood type as the recipient. The HLAs are the main immunologic feature used to match transplant recipients with compatible donors. The more similar the antigens of the donor are to those of the recipient, the more likely the transplant will be successful and rejection will be avoided (see Chapter 19).

Surgical team members for transplantation include circulating and scrub nurses, clinical nurse specialists, transplant surgeons, anesthesiologists, and nephrologists. Nursing actions before surgery include teaching about the procedure and care after surgery, in-depth patient assessment of patient readiness and ability to adhere to the plan of care, coordination of diagnostic tests, and development of treatment plans. See Chapter 16 for more discussion of standard preoperative nursing care.

The patient usually requires dialysis within 24 hours of the surgery. In addition, the recipient often receives a blood transfusion before surgery. Usually blood from the kidney donor is transfused into the recipient. This procedure increases graft survival of organs from living related donors (LRDs).

Operative Procedures. The donor nephrectomy procedure varies depending on whether the donor is a non-heart-beating donor (NHBD), cadaveric donor, or living donor. The NHBD or cadaveric donor nephrectomy is a sterile autopsy procedure performed in the operating room. All arterial and venous vessels and a long piece of ureter are preserved. After removal, the kidneys are preserved until time for implantation into the recipient. The technique for kidney removal from living donors is a delicate procedure that lasts

3 to 4 hours. A flank incision is used, and care is taken to avoid scarring. Donors often have more pain after surgery than do recipients. They also need nursing care and support for the psychological adjustment to loss of a body part.

Transplantation surgery usually takes 4 to 5 hours. The new kidney is usually placed in the right or left anterior iliac fossa (Fig. 71-17) instead of the usual kidney position. This placement allows easier connection of the ureter and the renal artery and vein. It also allows for easier kidney palpation. The recipient's own failed kidneys are not removed unless chronic kidney infection is present or, as in the case of polycystic kidney disease, the nonfunctioning, enlarged kidneys cause pain. After surgery, the patient is taken to the postanesthesia care unit and then, when stable, to a designated unit in the transplant center, to a critical care unit, or to a telemetry unit.

Postoperative Care. Care of the recipient after surgery requires that nurses be knowledgeable about the expected clinical findings and potential complications. Nursing care includes ongoing physical assessment, especially evaluation of kidney function. The transplant recipient requires close attention because the immunosuppressive drug therapy used to prevent tissue rejection impairs healing and increases the risk for infection.

Urologic management is essential to graft success. A large-bore indwelling (Foley) catheter is placed for accurate measurements of urine output and decompression of the bladder. Decompression prevents stretch on sutures and ureter attachment sites on the bladder.

Assess urine output at least hourly during the first 48 hours. An abrupt decrease in urine output may indicate complications such as rejection, acute kidney injury (AKI), thrombosis, or obstruction. Examine the urine color. The urine is pink and bloody right after surgery and gradually returns to normal over several days to several weeks, depending on kidney function. Obtain daily urine specimens for urinalysis, glucose measurement, the presence of acetone, specific gravity measurement, and culture (if needed).

Occasionally, a continuous bladder irrigation is prescribed to decrease blood clot formation, which could increase pressure in the bladder and endanger the graft. Perform routine catheter care, according to agency policy, to reduce catheter contamination. The catheter is removed as soon as possible to avoid infection, usually 3 to 7 days after surgery. After surgery, the function of the transplanted kidney (graft) can result in either oliguria or diuresis. Oliguria may occur as a result of ischemia and AKI, rejection, or other complications. To increase urine output, the physician may prescribe diuretics and osmotic agents, such as mannitol. Closely monitor the patient's fluid status because fluid overload can cause hypertension, heart failure, and pulmonary edema. Evaluate his or her fluid status by weighing daily, measuring blood pressure every 2 to 4 hours, and measuring intake and output.

Instead of oliguria, the patient may have diuresis, especially with a kidney from a living related donor (LRD). Carefully monitor intake and output, and observe for serum electrolyte imbalances, such as low potassium and sodium levels. Excessive diuresis may cause hypotension.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Notify the physician immediately about hypotension or excessive diuresis in the patient who has had a kidney transplant, because hypotension reduces blood flow and oxygen to the new kidney, threatening graft survival.

Complications. Many complications are possible after kidney transplantation. Early detection and intervention improve the chances of graft survival.

Rejection is the most serious complication of transplantation and is the leading cause of graft loss. A reaction occurs between the tissues of the transplanted kidney and the antibodies and cytotoxic T-cells in the recipient's blood. These substances treat the new kidney as a foreign invader and cause tissue destruction, thrombosis, and eventual kidney necrosis.

The three types of rejection are hyperacute, acute, and chronic. Acute rejection is the most common type with kidney transplants. It is treated with increased immunosuppressive therapy and often can be reversible. Rejection is diagnosed by manifestations, a renal scan, and kidney biopsy. Table 71-14 lists the features of the three types of rejection. Chapter 19 discusses their causes and treatment.

Acute tubular necrosis (ATN) after surgery can occur as a result of hypoxic damage when transplantation is delayed after kidneys have been harvested. These patients may need dialysis until adequate urine output returns and the blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine levels normalize. ATN is often difficult to distinguish from acute rejection, and patients need to undergo weekly biopsies to assess the need for further drug therapy if rejection is occurring.

Thrombosis of the major renal blood vessels may occur during the first 2 to 3 days after the transplant. A sudden decrease in urine output may signal impaired perfusion resulting from thrombosis. Ultrasound examination of the kidney may show decreased or absent blood supply. Emergency surgery is required to prevent ischemic damage or graft loss.

TABLE 71-14 A COMPARISON OF HYPERACUTE, ACUTE, AND CHRONIC POST-TRANSPLANT REJECTION

HYPERACUTE REJECTION	ACUTE REJECTION	CHRONIC REJECTION
Onset		
Within 48 hr after surgery	1 wk to 2 yr postoperatively (most common in first 2 wk)	Occurs gradually during a period of months to years
Clinical Manifestations		
Increased temperature	Oliguria or anuria	Gradual increase in BUN and serum creatinine levels
Increased blood pressure	Temperature over 100° F (37.8° C)	
Pain at transplant site	Increased blood pressure Enlarged, tender kidney Lethargy Elevated serum creatinine, BUN, potassium levels Fluid retention	Fluid retention Changes in serum electrolyte levels Fatigue
Treatment		
Immediate removal of the transplanted kidney	Increased doses of immunosuppressive drugs	Conservative management until dialysis is required

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen.

Renal artery stenosis may result in hypertension. Other manifestations include a bruit over the artery anastomosis site and decreased kidney function. A renal scan can quantify the blood flow to the kidney. The involved artery may be repaired surgically or by balloon angioplasty in the radiology department. The decision to perform a balloon repair is determined by the amount of healing time after the surgery.

Other vascular problems include vascular leakage or thrombosis, both of which require an emergency transplant nephrectomy.

Other complications may involve the surgical wound or urinary tract. Wound problems, such as hematomas, abscesses, and lymphoceles (lymphocyte cysts containing lymph fluid), increase the risk for infection and exert pressure on the new kidney. Infection is a major cause of death in the transplant recipient. Prevention of infection is essential. Strict aseptic technique and handwashing must be rigorously enforced. Transplant recipients may not have the usual manifestations of infection because of the immunosuppressive therapy. Low-grade fevers, mental status changes, and vague reports of discomfort may be the only manifestations before sepsis. Always consider the possibility of infection with any patient after a kidney transplant. Urinary tract complications include ureteral leakage, fistula, or obstruction; stone formation; bladder neck contracture; and graft rupture. Surgical intervention may be required.

Immunosuppressive Drug Therapy. The success of kidney transplantation depends on changing the patient's immunologic response so that the new kidney is not rejected as a

foreign organ. Immunosuppressive drugs protect the transplanted organ and are taken by the transplant recipient for the rest of his or her life. These drugs include corticosteroids, anti-lymphocyte preparations, monoclonal antibodies, and cyclosporine (Cyclosporin A). Chapter 19 discusses the mechanisms of action for these agents and the associated patient responses. Patients taking these drugs are at an increased risk for death by viral, fungal, bacterial, or protozoal infection.

Many patients do not follow the regimen correctly and are at high risk for losing the transplanted kidney. Work with the patient to ensure adherence to the drug regimen.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients and families about the importance of adhering to the anti-rejection drug regimen to prevent transplant rejection.

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Safety; Teamwork and Collaboration

The patient is a 62-year-old man with ESKD who has been on hemodialysis for 3 years while waiting for a kidney transplant. He expresses frustration with the wait from time to time and has told you that he fears that he will be considered too old to receive a kidney if much more time goes by. Today, he tells you that he won't be coming to the hemodialysis clinic anymore because he is taking a trip. When you ask him if he would like you to arrange dialysis for him on his trip, he tells you that won't be necessary. He doesn't make eye contact with you when you ask him why it won't be necessary. After a few minutes, he tells you that he is flying to India tonight and has paid to have a kidney transplant this week.

1. How should you respond to this statement?
2. Does the patient have the right to do this?
3. Is he right in thinking that he may be considered too old to receive a kidney?
4. Should you call UNOS and have his name taken off the kidney transplant waiting list?

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

Because of the complex nature of CKD, its progressive course, and many treatment options, a case manager is helpful in planning, coordinating, and evaluating care. As kidney disease progresses, the patient is seen by a physician or nurse practitioner regularly and may be hospitalized often. Together with the dietitian and social worker, evaluate the home environment and determine equipment needs before discharge. Once the patient is discharged, home care nurses direct care and monitor progress. Chart 71-11 provides a focused assessment guide for the patient after transplantation.

Provide health teaching about the diet in kidney disease and the progression of disease. As CKD approaches end-stage kidney disease (ESKD), one of these courses of treatment is chosen: hemodialysis (HD), peritoneal dialysis (PD), or transplantation. For each form of treatment, the patient and partner must learn about the procedures and consider his or her personal lifestyle, support systems, and methods of coping. Decision making about treatment type or even whether to pursue treatment is difficult for patients and

CHART 71-11 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient with Chronic Kidney Disease

Assess cardiovascular and respiratory status, including:

- Vital signs, with special attention to blood pressure
- Presence of S_3 or pericardial friction rub
- Presence of chest pain
- Presence of edema (periorbital, pretibial, sacral)
- Jugular vein distention
- Presence of dyspnea
- Presence of crackles, beginning at the bases and extending upward

Assess nutritional status, including:

- Weight gain or loss
- Presence of anorexia, nausea, or vomiting

Assess kidney status, including:

- Amount, frequency, and appearance of urine (in non-anuric patients)
- Presence of bone pain
- Presence of hyperglycemia secondary to diabetes

Assess hematologic status, including:

- Presence of petechiae, purpura, ecchymoses
- Presence of fatigue or shortness of breath

Assess gastrointestinal status, including:

- Presence of stomatitis
- Presence of melena

Assess integumentary status, including:

- Skin integrity
- Presence of pruritus
- Presence of skin discoloration

Assess neurologic status, including:

- Changes in mental status
- Presence of seizure activity
- Presence of sensory changes
- Presence of lower extremity weakness

Assess laboratory data, including:

- BUN
- Serum creatinine
- Creatinine clearance
- CBC
- Electrolytes

Assess psychosocial status, including:

- Presence of anxiety
- Presence of maladaptive behavior

BUN, Blood urea nitrogen; CBC, complete blood count.

families. Provide information and emotional support to assist patients with these decisions.

Teach patients who select hemodialysis (HD) about the machine and vascular access care. If in-home HD is selected, preparations are needed for the appropriate equipment, including a water treatment system. Regardless of whether the treatment occurs at home or in a center, provide ongoing assessment and health teaching to promote independence at home.

The patient receiving PD needs extensive training in the procedure. He or she also needs help in obtaining equipment and the many supplies needed. Home care nurses assess patients, monitor vital signs, assess adherence with drug and diet regimens, and monitor for manifestations of peritonitis.

The nurse plays a vital role in the long-term care of the patient with a kidney transplant. This patient is usually discharged 1 to 2 weeks after surgery. Facilitate acceptance and understanding of the anti-rejection drug regimen as a part of

daily life. Carefully monitor for signs of graft rejection and for complications, such as infection.

Teaching for Self-Management

Instruct patients and family members in all aspects of nutrition therapy, drug therapy, and complications. Teach them to report complications, such as fluid overload and infection. When a patient requires a more advanced form of therapy, such as dialysis or transplantation, focus teaching on the chosen type of intervention.

Hemodialysis (HD) is the most complex form of therapy for the patient and family to understand. Even if patients receive HD in a dialysis center instead of at home, they are expected to have some knowledge of the HD machine. The patient or a family member must be taught to care for the vascular access and to report signs of infection and stenosis. Those who plan to have in-home HD will need a partner. Both the patient and the partner must be taught the entire process of HD and must be able to perform it independently before the patient is discharged.

Peritoneal dialysis (PD) involves extensive health teaching. This instruction can be given to the patient alone or to the patient and a family member if the patient cannot perform the procedure. Emphasize sterile technique because peritonitis is the most common complication of PD. Instruct patients to report any manifestation of peritonitis, especially cloudy effluent and abdominal pain. If peritonitis develops, teach patients how to give themselves antibiotics by the intraperitoneal (IP) route. Stress the importance of completing the antibiotic regimen. Remind patients that repeated episodes of peritonitis can reduce the effectiveness of PD, which may require the transfer to HD.

The patient receiving a kidney transplant also needs extensive health teaching. Provide instruction about drug regimens, home monitoring, immunosuppression, manifestations of rejection, infection, and prescribed changes in the diet and activity level.

Psychosocial Preparation

Provide psychological support for the patient and family. Help the patient adjust to the diagnosis of kidney failure and eventually accept the treatment regimens.

Many patients view dialysis as a cure instead of lifelong management. For many patients, the reduction of uremic symptoms in the first weeks after starting dialysis treatment creates a sense of well-being (the “honeymoon” period). They feel better physically, and their mood may be happy and hopeful. At this time they tend to overlook the discomfort and inconvenience of dialysis. Use this time to begin health care teaching. Stress that, although the uremic symptoms are reduced, they should not expect a complete return to the previous state of well-being.

Many patients become discouraged during the first year of treatment. This mood state may last a few months to a year or longer. The difficulties of incorporating dialysis into daily life are staggering, and patients may become depressed as

problems occur. They may struggle with the idea of having to be permanently dependent on a disruptive therapy. Patients may feel helpless and dependent. Some people retreat into complete or partial denial of the disease and the need for treatment. They may deny the need for dialysis or may not adhere to drug therapy and diet restrictions. Monitor any behaviors that may contribute to nonadherence, and suggest psychiatric referrals. Help the patient and family focus on the positive aspects of the treatments. Continue health care education with patients as active participants and decision makers.

Most patients with CKD eventually enter a phase of acceptance or resignation. The idea of a chronic illness may be devastating for some people, and each person reacts differently. To make this long-term adaptation, the patient must adjust to continuous change. Specific concerns depend on the patient's health and particular treatment method.

After patients have accepted or become resigned to the chronic aspect of their disease, they usually attempt to return to their previous activities. Resuming the previous level of activity, however, may not be possible. Help patients set realistic goals that allow them to lead active, productive lives.

Health Care Resources

Professionals from many disciplines are resources for the patient with kidney failure. Home care nurses monitor the patient's status and evaluate maintenance of the prescribed treatment regimen (HD or PD). Those with advanced disease may need a home care aide to help perform ADLs. Social services are often involved because of the complex process of applying for financial aid to pay for the required medical care. A physical therapist may be beneficial in helping improve the patient's functional health. A dietitian can assist the patient and family members in understanding the special dietary needs. A psychiatric evaluation may be needed if depressive symptoms are present. Clergy and pastoral care specialists offer spiritual support.

Patients with CKD are routinely followed by a physician, usually a nephrologist. Organizations such as the National Kidney Foundation (NKF), the American Kidney Fund, and the National Association of Patients on Hemodialysis and Transplantation (NAPHT) may be helpful to patients and families.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with CKD based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes are that with appropriate management the patient should:

- Achieve and maintain appropriate fluid volume
- Maintain an adequate nutritional status
- Use effective coping strategies
- Report an absence of physical manifestations of anxiety

Specific indicators for these outcomes are listed for each priority problem under the Planning and Implementation section (see earlier).

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing altered urinary elimination as a result of acute kidney injury?

- Patient urinates infrequently.
- Patient reports back or flank pain.
- Urine may be darker, smoky, or have obvious blood in it.

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing altered urinary elimination as a result of acute kidney injury?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Ask how long manifestations have been present.
- Determine fluid intake and output volumes.
- Weigh the patient, and ask whether this weight is more or less than the usual weight.
- Assess for tachycardia.
- Assess for pulmonary congestion.
- Check for presence of generalized and dependent edema.

- Interpret laboratory values:
 - Complete blood count with hemoconcentration
 - BUN and serum creatinine levels elevated
 - Serum potassium level elevated
 - Serum osmolarity abnormal

Respond by:

- Ensuring hemodynamic stability
- Monitoring urine output
- Monitoring for fluid overload

On what should you REFLECT?

- Observe patient for evidence of improved urine output (see [Chapter 68](#)).
- Think about what may have caused this problem and what steps could be taken to prevent a similar episode.
- Think about what patient teaching focus could help reduce the risk for future acute kidney injury.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Use sterile technique when cannulating a vascular access or connecting peritoneal dialysis tubing.
- Handle patients with chronic kidney disease gently to prevent fractures.
- Assess all patients at risk for dehydration or hypovolemia for adequacy of kidney perfusion.
- Avoid taking blood pressure measurements or drawing blood from an arm with a vascular access (AV fistula or graft).
- Do not use an AV fistula or graft site to give IV fluids.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage patients with chronic kidney disease or kidney failure to follow fluid and dietary restrictions regarding sodium, potassium, and protein.
- Teach patients the expected side effects, any adverse reactions to prescribed drugs, and when to contact the prescriber.
- Teach patients using peritoneal dialysis the manifestations of peritonitis.
- Teach patients on immunosuppressive therapy to assess themselves daily for fever, general malaise, and nausea or vomiting.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow patients the opportunity to express concerns about the risk for death and the disruption of lifestyle as a result of treatment for kidney failure.
- Use language and terminology that are comfortable for the patient.
- Assess the patient for depression and nonacceptance of the diagnosis or treatment plan.
- Refer patients to community resources and support groups.

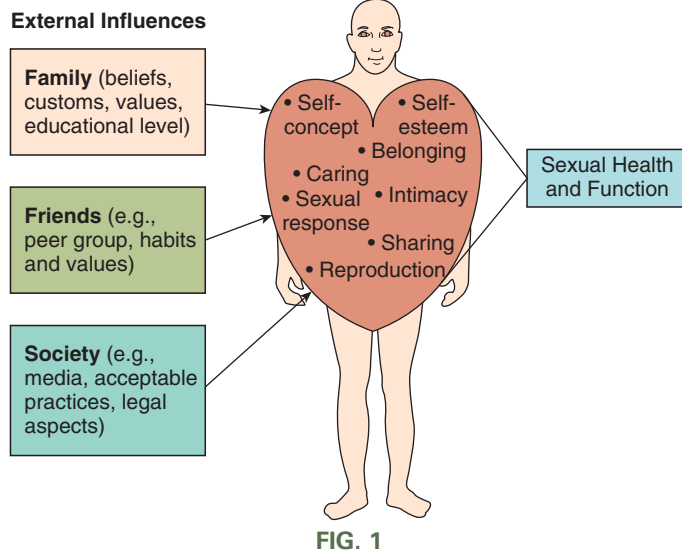
Physiological Integrity

- Report immediately any condition that obstructs urine flow.
- Collaborate with the dietitian to teach patients about needed fluid, sodium, potassium, or dietary protein restriction.
- Teach patients in the early stages of chronic kidney disease the manifestations of dehydration.
- Teach patients in the later stages of chronic kidney disease the manifestations of fluid overload and hyperkalemia.
- Avoid all invasive procedures within 4 to 6 hours after the patient has undergone hemodialysis.
- Use meticulous sterile technique when caring for the peritoneal dialysis catheter and when hooking up or clamping off dialysate bags.

CONCEPT OVERVIEW

Sexuality

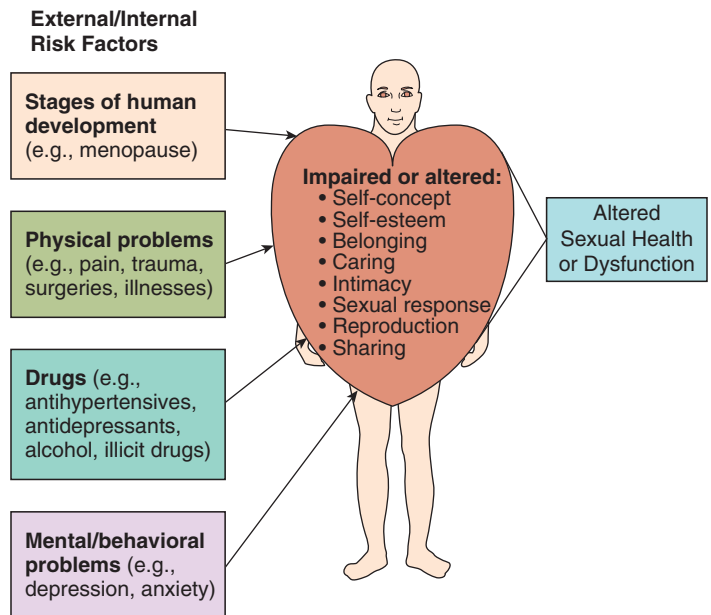
Unlike the physiologic human needs introduced in other section openers of this text, *sexuality* is a complex integration of many physiologic, emotional, social, and cultural aspects of well-being. It is closely associated with self-concept, self-esteem, role relationships, sexual response, and reproduction. Sexuality comprises other related human needs, such as belonging, intimacy (e.g., touching, kissing), sharing, and caring. When these needs are met, a person is sexually healthy (Fig. 1).



Sexuality, therefore, is a vital part of one's holistic being from birth to death. During the stages of human development, a person's attitudes, beliefs, and values related to sexuality are influenced and shaped by the environment, including family, friends, and society. For example, cultural beliefs affect the nature of physical sexual pleasure. The media also play a large role in developing sexual pleasure on sexuality. Some societies, such as the United States, tend to value youth and beauty more than aging and wisdom. As a result, people in these societies may feel less physically attractive and desirable for intimacy and belonging as they age.

Various external and internal risk factors can alter or impair sexual health. In many cases, they cause physical sexual dysfunction, which then affects emotional needs such as self-esteem (Fig. 2). These factors include:

- Stages of human development
- Physical health problems
- Drugs
- Mental/behavioral health problems



The *stages of human development* typically influence human sexuality, especially when menopause occurs in middle adulthood. Although each woman's response is different, menopause may result in a decreased libido (desire for sexual contact or intercourse). Relationships with her sexual partner(s) are altered, and interpersonal conflict can occur.

Physical health problems also can negatively affect sexual health. For example, chronic pain may cause decreased physical contact and a lowered self-concept along with chronic fatigue and decreased energy. Sexual dysfunction commonly occurs in people with chronic diseases such as diabetes and hypertension. Reproductive diseases (e.g., sexually transmitted diseases, testicular cancer) and their treatments (e.g., radiation therapy, surgery) can also affect sexuality, both physically and emotionally. Physical trauma such as spinal cord injury may prevent a person from having sexual intercourse.

Certain prescription or recreational *drugs* can cause impotence (inability to have an erection) or infertility. Alcohol and many antihypertensive agents, antidepressants, and illicit drugs interfere with sexual function in men.

Mental/behavioral health problems can also result in altered sexual health. Common examples include depression and severe anxiety states. In some cases, concern about physical performance can lead to sexual dysfunction.



CHAPTER

72

Assessment of the Reproductive System*Donna D. Ignatavicius***evolve** WEBSITE<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Animation: Lymphatic Drainage of the Breast
Animation: The Menstrual Cycle
Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
Video Clip: Bimanual Examination
Video Clip: External Genitalia
Video Clip: Inguinal Hernia Evaluation
Video Clip: Inspection (Standing)
Video Clip: Speculum Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

1. Teach patients about recommended guidelines for selected reproductive screening tests.
2. Teach pre- and post-test care for diagnostic testing for the reproductive system.

Psychosocial Integrity

3. Identify general psychological responses to reproductive health problems.

Physiological Integrity

4. Briefly review the anatomy and physiology of the male and the female reproductive systems.

5. Identify reproductive changes associated with aging and their implications for nursing care.
6. Perform a focused physical assessment of the patient with male or female reproductive system problems.
7. Explain the use of laboratory testing for patients with suspected or actual reproductive health problems.
8. Develop a teaching plan for a patient undergoing endoscopic studies for reproductive health problems.

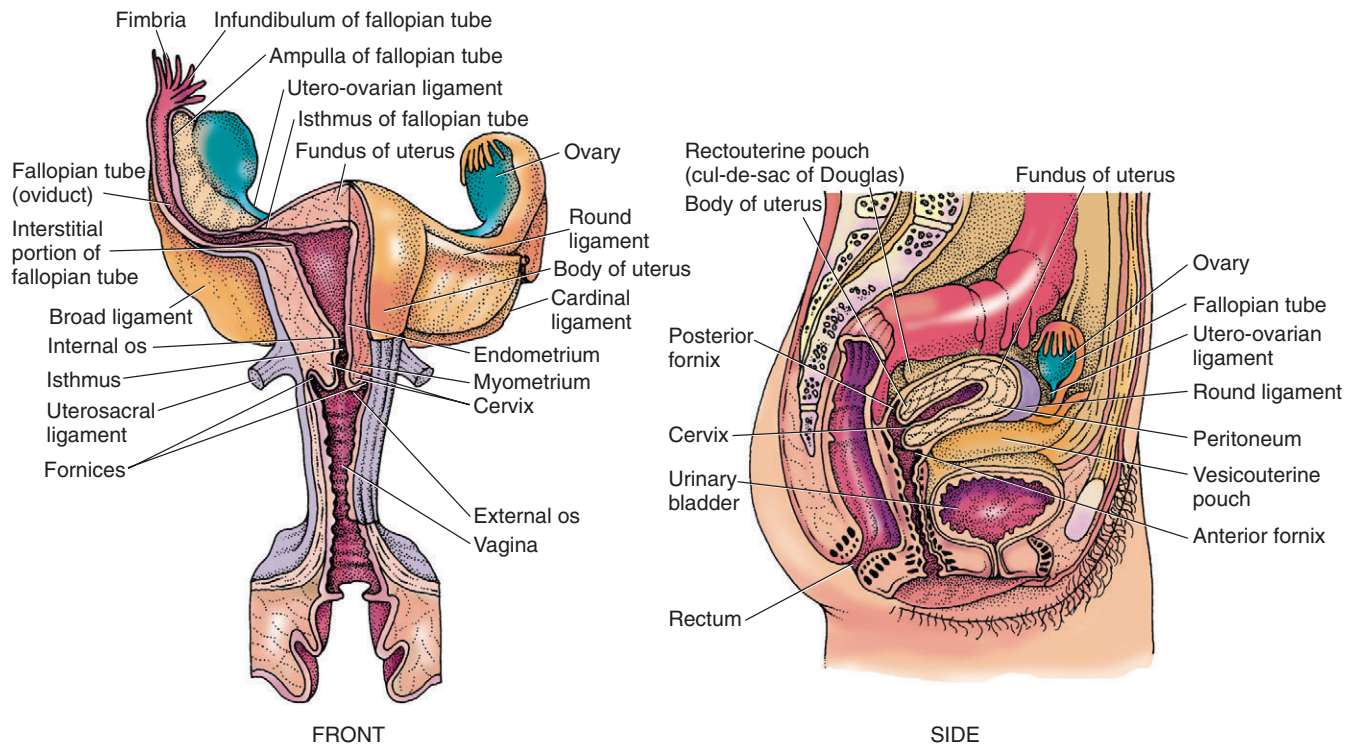


FIG. 72-1 Internal female genitalia.

The nurse is typically the first health care professional to assess the patient with a reproductive system health problem or hear a patient's concern about a reproductive problem. These problems often affect the need for *sexuality*, both its physical and psychosocial aspects, and are difficult for many people to discuss. Assessment of the male and the female reproductive systems should be part of every complete physical assessment. *Be aware of and sensitive to differences in sexual orientation and practices.*

This chapter reviews the focused reproductive system assessment that a nurse generalist performs. An advanced practice nurse or other health care provider performs the comprehensive reproductive examination. A more detailed discussion of human sexuality is found in a fundamentals or basic nursing text.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY REVIEW

Structure and Function of the Female Reproductive System

The female reproductive system is located both outside (external) and inside (internal) the body.

External Genitalia

The external female genitalia, or **vulva**, extend from the mons pubis to the anal opening. The **mons pubis** is a fat pad that covers the symphysis pubis and protects it during **coitus** (sexual intercourse).

The **labia majora** are two vertical folds of adipose tissue that extend posteriorly from the mons pubis to the perineum. The size of the labia majora varies depending on the amount of fatty tissue present. The skin over the labia majora is

usually darker than the surrounding skin and is highly vascular. It protects inner vulval structures and enhances sexual arousal.

The labia majora surround two thinner, vertical folds of reddish epithelium called the **labia minora**. The labia minora are highly vascular and have a rich nerve supply. Emotional or physical stimulation produces marked swelling and sensitivity. Numerous sebaceous glands in the labia minora lubricate the entrance to the vagina. The **clitoris** is a small, cylindric organ that is composed of erectile tissue with a high concentration of sensory nerve endings. During sexual arousal, the clitoris becomes larger and increases sexual sensation.

The **vestibule** is a longitudinal area between the labia minora, the clitoris, and the vagina that contains Bartholin glands and the openings of the urethra, Skene's glands (para-urethral glands), and vagina. The two Bartholin glands, located deeply toward the back on both sides of the vaginal opening, secrete lubrication fluid during sexual excitement. Their ductal openings are usually not visible.

The area between the vaginal opening and the anus is the **perineum**. The skin of the perineum covers the muscles, fascia, and ligaments that support the pelvic structures.

Internal Genitalia

The internal female genitalia are shown in Fig. 72-1. The **vagina** is a hollow tube that extends from the vestibule to the uterus. In addition to being the channel for the passage of the menstrual flow, the vagina allows for insertion of the penis during intercourse and passage of the fetus during a vaginal birth. Reduced estrogen levels occurring during menopause cause the vaginal wall to become dry, thinner, and smoother. The vagina then atrophies and is prone to pathogenic growth, resulting in a variety of types of infections.

The amounts of glycogen and lubricating fluid secreted by the vaginal cells are influenced by ovarian hormones. The normal vaginal bacteria (flora) interact with the secretions to produce lactic acid and maintain an acidic pH (3.5 to 5) in the vagina. This acidity helps prevent infection in the vagina.

At the upper end of the vagina, the uterine cervix projects into a cup-shaped vault of thin vaginal tissue. The recessed pockets around the cervix permit palpation of the internal pelvic organs. The posterior area provides access into the peritoneal cavity for diagnostic or surgical purposes.

The uterus (or “womb”) is a thick-walled, muscular organ attached to the upper end of the vagina. This inverted pear-shaped organ is located within the true pelvis, between the bladder and the rectum. The uterus is made up of the body and the cervix.

The upper segment of the uterine body, between the insertion sites of the fallopian tubes, is referred to as the *fundus*. Although the uterus is a hollow organ, its walls are in such close proximity in the nonpregnant state that its cavity is merely a slit.

The **cervix** is a short (1 inch [2.5 cm]), narrowed portion of the uterus and extends into the vagina. The surface of the cervix and the canal are the sites for Papanicolaou (Pap) testing. (See discussion on p. 1581.)

The **fallopian tubes** (uterine tubes) insert into the fundus of the uterus and extend laterally close to the ovaries. They provide a duct between the ovaries and the uterus for the passage of ova and sperm. In most cases, the ovum is fertilized in these tubes.

The **ovaries** are a pair of almond-shaped organs located near the lateral walls of the upper pelvic cavity. After menopause, they become smaller. These small organs develop and release ova and produce the sex steroid hormones (estrogen, progesterone, androgen, and relaxin). Adequate amounts of these hormones are needed for normal female growth and development and to maintain a pregnancy.

Breasts

The female **breasts** are a pair of mammary glands that develop in response to secretions from the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, and ovaries. The breasts are an accessory of the reproductive system that nourish the infant after birth.

Breast tissue is composed of a network of glandular and ductal tissue, fibrous tissue, and fat. The proportion of each component of breast tissue depends on genetic factors, nutrition, age, and obstetric history. The breasts are supported by ligaments that are attached to underlying muscles. They have abundant blood supply and lymph flow that drains from an extensive network toward the axilla (Fig. 72-2).

Structure and Function of the Male Reproductive System

The male reproductive system also consists of external and internal genitalia. The primary male hormone for sexual development and function is testosterone. Testosterone production is fairly constant in the adult male. Only a slight and gradual reduction of testosterone production occurs in the older adult male until he is in his 80s. Low testosterone levels decrease muscle mass, reduce skin elasticity, and lead to postural changes and changes in sexual performance.

The **penis** is an organ for urination and intercourse consisting of the body or shaft and the glans penis (the distal end

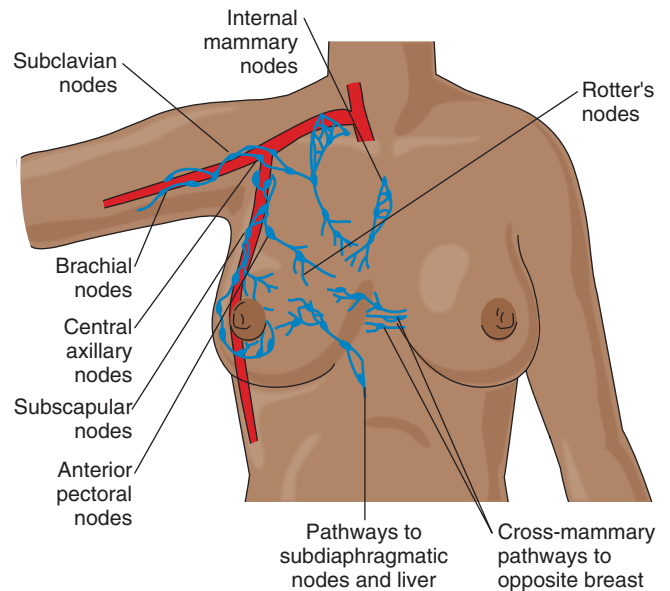


FIG. 72-2 Lymphatic drainage of the female breast.

of the penis). The glans is the smooth end of the penis and contains the slitlike opening of the urethral meatus. The urethra is the pathway for the exit of both urine and semen. A continuation of skin covers the glans and folds to form the prepuce (foreskin). Surgical removal of the foreskin (**circumcision**) for religious or cultural reasons is a common procedure in the United States and other Western countries.

The **scrotum** is a thin-walled, fibromuscular pouch that is behind the penis and suspended below the pubic bone. This pouch protects the testes, epididymis, and vas deferens in a space that is slightly cooler than inside the abdominal cavity.

The scrotal skin is darkly pigmented and contains sweat glands, sebaceous glands, and few hair follicles. It contracts with cold, exercise, tactile stimulation, and sexual excitement.

The internal male genitalia are shown in Fig. 72-3. The major organs are the testes and prostate gland. The testes are a pair of oval organs in the scrotum that produce sperm and testosterone. Each testis is suspended in the scrotum by the spermatic cord, which provides blood, lymphatic, and nerve supply to the testis. Sympathetic nerve fibers are located on the arteries in the cord, and sympathetic and parasympathetic fibers are on the vas deferens. When the testes are damaged, these autonomic nerve fibers transmit excruciating pain and a sensation of nausea.

The **epididymis** is the first portion of a ductal system that transports sperm from the testes to the urethra and is a site of sperm maturation. The **vas deferens**, or ductus deferens, is a firm, muscular tube that continues from the tail of each epididymis. The end of each vas deferens is a reservoir for sperm and tubular fluids. They merge with ducts from the seminal vesicle to form the ejaculatory ducts at the base of the prostate gland. Sperm from the vas deferens and secretions from the seminal vesicles move through the ejaculatory duct to mix with prostatic fluids in the prostatic urethra.

The **prostate gland** is a large accessory gland of the male reproductive system. It secretes a milky alkaline fluid that adds bulk to the semen, enhances sperm movement, and neutralizes acidic vaginal secretions. The prostate gland can

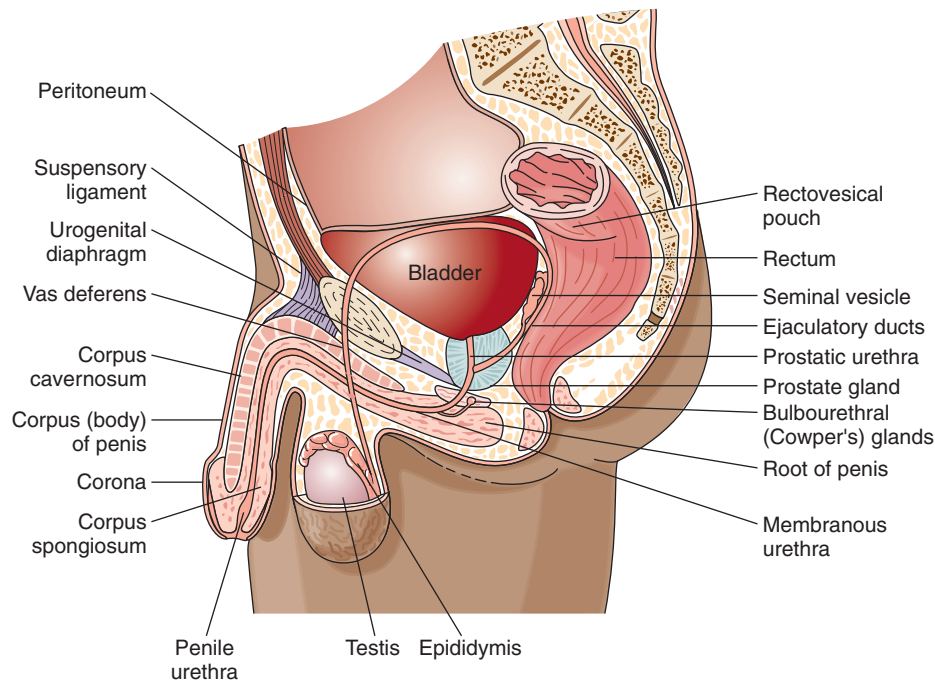


FIG. 72-3 Internal male genitalia.

be palpated through the rectum and should not project more than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (1 cm) into the rectal lumen.

As men age, the prostate gland becomes clinically significant. Men older than 50 years commonly have an enlarged prostate (benign prostatic hyperplasia [BPH]), which can cause problems such as overflow incontinence and nocturia (nighttime urination). Prostate function depends on adequate levels of testosterone.

The inguinal area (groin) is located between the superior iliac spine and the symphysis pubis and is the junction of the lower abdominal wall and thigh. The area is a common site for a **hernia**, which is a loop of bowel that protrudes through a weak spot in the muscles.

REPRODUCTIVE CHANGES ASSOCIATED WITH AGING

Age affects the function of both the male and the female reproductive systems. Many changes in the reproductive system occur as people age (Chart 72-1).

ASSESSMENT METHODS

Patient History

Establish a trusting relationship with the patient. Many patients are hesitant to share their reproductive history or concerns about sexuality. Respect their choice to refuse to answer questions and talk about their reproductive problems or sexual practices. Chart 72-2 describes questions to consider when assessing the patient's sexuality and reproductive health using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns.

Assess the patient's health habits, such as diet, sleep, and exercise patterns. Low levels of body fat may be related to ovarian dysfunction. Assess for alcohol, tobacco, and drug use (prescribed, over-the-counter [OTC], and illicit drugs),

because **libido** (sex drive), sperm production, and the ability to have or sustain an erection can be affected by these substances.

Ask female patients about the date and result of their most recent Pap test, breast self-examination, and vulvar self-examination. Determine when male patients older than 50 years had their last prostate examination and prostate-specific antigen test.

Ask about childhood illnesses that could have an effect on the reproductive system. For example, mumps in men may cause **orchitis** (painful inflammation and swelling of the testes) and can lead to testicular atrophy and sterility.

Assess for any chronic illnesses or surgeries that could affect reproductive function. For instance, endocrine disorders may affect the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal function of men or women. Almost any disease that disturbs a woman's metabolism or nutrition can depress ovarian function and cause **amenorrhea** (absence of menses). Failure of ovulation is associated with a greater risk for endometrial cancer. Patients with diabetes mellitus may experience physiologic changes such as vaginal dryness or impotence. Chronic disorders of the nervous system, respiratory system, or cardiovascular system can alter the sexual response.

Reproductive system dysfunction can also result from irradiation; prolonged use of corticosteroids, internal or external estrogen, or testosterone; and chemotherapy drugs. In addition, past severe infections can alter a person's reproductive ability. For example, pelvic inflammatory disease or a ruptured appendix followed by peritonitis can cause strictures or adhesions in the fallopian tubes and pelvic scarring. **Salpingitis** (uterine tube infection) is usually caused by chlamydial infection and can result in female infertility. If a young woman began having intercourse at a very early age and/or has multiple sex partners, she is at high risk for cervical cancer. Breast cancer is more common in women who have

CHART 72-1 NURSING FOCUS ON THE OLDER ADULT

Changes in the Reproductive System Related to Aging

PHYSIOLOGIC CHANGE	NURSING INTERVENTIONS	RATIONALES
Women		
Graying and thinning of the pubic hair Decreased size of the labia majora and clitoris	Discuss changes with the patient (applies to all structures for both women and men).	Education helps prevent problems with body image (applies to all structures for both women and men).
Drying, smoothing, and thinning of the vaginal walls	Provide information about vaginal estrogen therapy and water-soluble lubricants.	Education enables the patient to make informed decisions about the treatment of vaginal dryness, which can cause painful intercourse.
Decreased size of the uterus Atrophy of the endometrium Decreased size and marked convolution of the ovaries Loss of tone and elasticity of the pelvic ligaments and connective tissue	Provide information about Kegel exercises to strengthen pelvic muscles. Urinary incontinence can be a major problem.	Strengthening exercises may prevent or reduce pelvic relaxation and urinary incontinence.
Increased flabbiness and fibrosis of the breasts, which hang lower on the chest wall; decreased erection of the nipples	Teach or reinforce the importance of breast self-awareness, clinical breast examinations, and mammography.	These methods can detect masses or other changes that may indicate the presence of cancer.
Men		
Graying and thinning of the pubic hair Increased drooping of the scrotum and loss of rugae	Teach or reinforce the importance of testicular self-examination (TSE).	TSE may detect changes that may indicate cancer.
Prostate enlargement, with an increased likelihood of urethral obstruction	Teach the patient the signs of urethral obstruction and the importance of prostate cancer screening.	Education helps the patient detect enlargement or obstruction, which may indicate the presence of cancer.

not experienced childbearing. Ask about a history of infections or prolonged fever in males that may have damaged sperm production or caused obstruction of the seminal tract, because these changes cause infertility.

Data about sexual activity are important to obtain as part of the history. Heterosexual activity should not be assumed. Lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender (LGBT) issues are often not assessed by health care professionals or shared by the patient. [Table 4-3 in Chapter 4](#) suggests sensitive ways to ask questions about sexual activity.

**CULTURAL AWARENESS**

Other cultural beliefs and practices influence lifestyle and sexual activity. For example, a person's religious beliefs often influence specific sexual practices, the acceptable number of sexual partners, and contraceptive use. Be sensitive to these differences by being nonjudgmental and showing acceptance.

Nutrition History

A nutrition history is often critical for an accurate assessment of reproductive system problems. For example, fatigue and low libido may occur with poor diet and anemia. Obesity raises the risk for uterine cancer. High-fat diets may increase the risk for cancer of the breast, ovary, and prostate gland ([American Cancer Society \[ACS\], 2010](#)). Ask the patient to recall his or her dietary intake for a recent 24-hour period to assess quality.

Assess the patient's height, weight, and body mass index. The patient may be hesitant to discuss practices such as bingeing, purging, anorexic behaviors, or excessive exercise. However, these practices may affect the reproductive system. A certain level of body fat and weight is necessary for the

onset of menses and the maintenance of regular menstrual cycles. Decreased body fat results in insufficient estrogen levels.

Women have special nutrition needs. Those who use oral contraceptives need increased sources of folic acid and vitamins B₆, B₁₂, and C. Heavy menstrual bleeding, particularly in women who have intrauterine devices, may require oral iron supplements. Teach all women of any age about their body's need for calcium. Although adequate calcium intake throughout life is needed, it is especially important during and after menopause to help prevent osteoporosis due to decreased estrogen production (see [Chapter 53](#)).

Family History and Genetic Risk

The family history helps determine the patient's risk for conditions that affect reproductive functioning. A delayed or early development of secondary sex characteristics may be a familial pattern.

The current age and health status of family members are important. Evidence of medical diseases or reproductive problems in family members (e.g., diabetes, endometriosis, reproductive cancer) allows better interpretation of the patient's current symptoms. For example, daughters of women who were given diethylstilbestrol (DES) to control bleeding during pregnancy are at increased risk for infertility and reproductive tract cancer.

Specific *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* gene mutations increase the overall risk for breast or ovarian cancer ([ACS, 2010](#)). Men with first-degree relatives (e.g., father, brother) with prostate cancer are at greater risk for the disease than men in the general population. Testicular cancer can also be familial ([ACS, 2010](#)). More information about genetic risks is discussed with specific health problems in later chapters of this unit.

CHART 72-2 REPRODUCTIVE ASSESSMENT

Using Gordon's Functional Health Patterns

Health Perception/Health Management Pattern

- Has anyone in your family had cancer of the breast or reproductive organs? Who and what type of cancer?
- If you engage in sexual activities, do you practice "safer" sex?
- What do you do to keep healthy—regular health checkups, self-examination (breast, genital [vulvar, testicular]), healthy diet, exercise, use of medications or alternative therapies?

Sexuality-Reproductive Pattern

Male and Female

- Are you sexually active? Do you find your sexual relationship satisfying? Have there been any changes in your relationship? Are you having any problems in your sexual relationship?
- Do you use contraceptives? If so, do you have any problems with the method of contraception?
- Have you had any sexually transmitted diseases? If yes, when and what type did you have?

Female

- When did you first start menstruating? When was your last menstrual period? Do you have any menstrual problems?
- Have you ever been pregnant? If so, how many times and what were the outcomes?
- Have you had any symptoms of menopause?

Male

- Do you have any problems with getting and maintaining an erection, or do you have difficulty with ejaculation?
- Have you ever had a hernia or pain in the groin?

Self-Perception/Self-Concept Pattern

- How would you describe yourself? Do you feel good or not so good about yourself?
- Have you experienced changes in your body appearance or function? If so, are these problematic for you? Have you felt anxious, fearful, or depressed about these changes?

Based on Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.

Current Health Problems

Most patients seek medical attention as a result of pain, bleeding, discharge, and masses (Chart 72-3). Pain related to reproductive system disorders may be confused with or cause signs and symptoms that are usually associated with GI or urinary health problems (e.g., urinary frequency). Ask the patient to describe the nature of the pain, including its type, intensity, timing and location, duration, and relationship to menstrual, sexual, urinary, or GI function. Assess the factors that **exacerbate** (worsen) or relieve the pain. Ask about sleeping patterns and if pain or other manifestation is affecting the ability to get adequate rest (Ruhl, 2010).

Heavy *bleeding* or a lack of bleeding may concern the patient. Consider the possibility of pregnancy in any sexually active woman with amenorrhea. Any postmenopausal bleeding needs to be evaluated. Ask the patient to describe the amount and character of abnormal vaginal or penile bleeding. Assess whether the bleeding occurs in relation to the menstrual cycle or menopause, intercourse, trauma, or strenuous exercise. Ask about any associated symptoms, such as pain, cramping or abdominal fullness, a change in bowel habits, urinary difficulties, and weight changes. Many factors

CHART 72-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing the Patient with Reproductive Health Problems

PATIENT CONCERN

NURSING ASSESSMENT

Pain	Type and intensity of pain Location and duration of pain Factors that relieve or worsen pain Relationship to menstrual, sexual, urinary, or GI function Medications
Bleeding	Presence or absence of bleeding Character and amount of bleeding Relationship of bleeding to events or other factors (e.g., menstrual cycle) Onset and duration of bleeding Presence of associated symptoms, such as pain
Discharge	Amount and character of discharge Presence of genital lesions, bleeding, itching, or pain Presence of symptoms or discharge in sexual partner
Masses	Location and characteristics of mass Presence of associated symptoms, such as pain Relationship to menstrual cycle

can cause bleeding, and sites other than the genital tract need to be considered.

Discharge from either the male or female reproductive tract can cause severe irritation of the surrounding tissues, itching, pain, embarrassment, and anxiety. Ask about the amount, color, consistency, odor, and chronicity of the discharge. Drugs (e.g., antibiotics) and clothing (e.g., tight jeans, synthetic underwear fabric) may cause or worsen genital discharge. Many types of discharge are caused by sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) (see Chapter 76). The body location of these infections may depend on the patient's sexual practices. Ask the patient about lesions, bleeding, itching, and pain related to the genitals and orifices used during sexual activity. Also inquire about the presence of symptoms in the sexual partner(s).

Any reported *masses* in the breasts, testes, or inguinal area are evaluated. Some masses change in character or size. The patient can often relate these changes to menstrual cycles, heavy lifting, straining, or trauma. Ask about associated symptoms such as tenderness, heaviness, pain, dimpling, and tender lymph nodes.

Physical Assessment

Assessment of the Female Reproductive System

The medical-surgical nurse does not perform a comprehensive female or male reproductive examination. However, perform a focused assessment for specific concerns of the patient. The physician or advanced practice nurse does a more thorough gynecologic assessment as described below. The medical-surgical nurse often assists with the examination.

The physical examination of the reproductive system usually includes the breasts (see Chapter 73). After the breast examination, the examiner generally completes the thoracic and cardiovascular examinations and then inspects, auscultates, and palpates the abdomen. The patient's arms should be at her sides or over her chest to allow better relaxation of

the abdominal muscles. During the gynecologic examination, the examiner palpates for symptomatic and asymptomatic abdominopelvic masses. A mass can be of reproductive, intestinal, or urinary tract origin. Careful history-taking combined with the physical examination can usually determine the origin of a mass. Gynecologic masses, such as ovarian masses, may be further differentiated from lesions on the body of the uterus during the bimanual portion of the pelvic examination.

Inspection of the female genitalia and the pelvic examination are usually performed at the end of a head-to-toe physical assessment. The patient is often more apprehensive about these portions of the examination than about any other part. Pain or lack of privacy during previous pelvic or breast examinations may prevent the patient from relaxing.

Other than determining pregnancy or infertility, a pelvic examination is indicated to assess for:

- Menstrual irregularities
- Unexplained abdominal or vaginal pain
- Vaginal discharge, itching, sores, or infection
- Rape trauma or other pelvic injury
- Physical changes in the vagina, cervix, and uterus

Immediately before the pelvic and breast examinations, ask the patient to empty her bladder and undress completely. Drape the woman adequately to protect modesty throughout the examination. If she is not wearing a gown, a small towel can be placed over the breasts under the larger drape. Remove drapes only over the region being examined, and replace them after that area has been assessed. Drapes that prevent eye contact between the examiner and the patient are dehumanizing and prevent comfort during the examination. Mirrors can be used to facilitate teaching if the patient so desires. The examination is performed in a room that has adequate lighting for body inspection, that is a comfortable temperature, and that ensures privacy.

Assessment of the Male Reproductive System

Unless a male patient seeks health care for specific problem, the examiner may not inspect and palpate the male genitalia and rectum during physical examinations, depending on the health care setting and the age of the patient. Men are often embarrassed and anxious when the reproductive system is assessed. This concern may be worse when the examiner is a woman. The patient may be concerned about discomfort, the developmental stage of his genitalia, or the likelihood of an erection during the examination. If he does have an erection, the examiner should assure him that this is a normal response to a tactile stimulus (touch) and should continue the examination.

As with examinations of other body systems, explain each step of the assessment procedure before it is performed. The patient needs to be reassured that the examiner will stop and change the assessment plan or technique if the patient has pain during the examination. Teach relaxation techniques and provide support during the examination to increase comfort.

Psychosocial Assessment

The psychosocial assessment may suggest factors that lead to the patient's health problem. During the social history, ask about sources of support, strengths, and likely reactions to illness or dysfunction.

A patient's personal history or beliefs may negatively influence his or her ability to enjoy a satisfactory sexual life. These factors may include:

- Sexual trauma or abuse inflicted during childhood or adulthood
- Punishment for masturbation
- Psychological trauma
- Cultural influences, such as the idea of female passivity during intercourse
- Concerns about sexual partners or sexual lifestyle
- Use of alcohol or street drugs

Fears may affect the patient's satisfaction with sexuality or body image. He or she may also be concerned about the potential or actual reaction of family members to reproductive health problems (see [Chart 72-2](#)).

Diagnostic Assessment

Laboratory Assessment

The **Papanicolaou test**, or **Pap smear**, is a cytologic study that is effective in detecting precancerous and cancerous cells from the cervix. It is done immediately before the pelvic examination. A speculum is inserted into the vagina, and several samples of cells from the cervix are obtained with a small brush or spatula. The specimens are placed on a glass slide and sent to the laboratory for examination.

The Pap test should be scheduled between the woman's menstrual periods so that the menstrual flow does not interfere with the test interpretation. Teach women not to douche, use vaginal medications or deodorants, or have sexual intercourse for at least 24 hours before the test.

Based on current evidence, the American Cancer Society (ACS) advises all women to begin having an annual Pap test within 3 years of becoming sexually active or by no later than 21 years of age. Annual screening is recommended until 30 years of age with the conventional Pap test or every 2 years if a liquid-based test is used. After age 30 and three or more consecutive normal test results, Pap tests may be performed every 3 years until 70 years of age. Women 70 years and older who have had normal results for 10 consecutive years may discontinue testing. Those who have had a total hysterectomy, including the cervix, do not need Pap smear testing. Women who have the surgery but still have their cervix should follow the guidelines for other women (ACS, 2011).

Cytologic vaginal *cultures* can detect bacterial, viral, fungal, and parasitic disorders. Examination of cells from the vaginal walls can evaluate estrogen balance.

The **human papilloma virus (HPV) test** can identify many high-risk types of HPV associated with the development of cervical cancer. This test can be done at the same time as the Pap test for women older than 30 years and for women of any age who have had an abnormal Pap test result. It does not take the place of the Pap test because it tests for the viruses that can cause cell changes in the cervix that, if not treated, could lead to cancer. Cells are collected from the cervix and sent to a laboratory for analysis. Women who have normal Pap test results and no HPV infection are at very low risk for developing cervical cancer. Conversely, women with an abnormal Pap result and a positive HPV test are at higher risk if not treated.

Serum levels of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), luteinizing hormone (LH), and prolactin are helpful in the

CHART 72-4 LABORATORY PROFILE

Reproductive Assessment

TEST	NORMAL RANGE FOR ADULTS	SIGNIFICANCE OF ABNORMAL FINDINGS
Serum Studies		
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) (Folliotropin)	Men: 1.42-15.4 IU/L Women: follicular phase, 1.37-9.9 IU/L; midcycle, 6.17-17.2 IU/L; luteal phase, 1.09-9.2 IU/L; postmenopause, 19.3-100.6 IU/L	Decreased levels indicate possible infertility, anorexia nervosa, neoplasm. Elevations indicate possible Turner's syndrome.
Luteinizing hormone (LH) (Lutropin)	Men: 1.24-7.8 IU/L Women: follicular phase, 1.68-15 IU/L; midcycle, 21.9-56.6 IU/L; luteal phase, 0.61-16.3 IU/L; postmenopause, 14.2-52.3 IU/L	Decreased levels indicate possible infertility, anovulation. Elevations indicate possible ovarian failure, Turner's syndrome.
Prolactin	Men: 0-20 ng/mL Women: 0-20 ng/mL Pregnant women: 20-400 ng/mL	Elevations indicate possible galactorrhea (breast discharge), pituitary tumor, disease of hypothalamus or pituitary gland, hypothyroidism.
Estradiol	Men: 10-50 pg/mL Women: follicular phase, 20-350 pg/mL; midcycle, 150-750 pg/mL; luteal phase, 30-450 pg/mL; postmenopause, ≤20 pg/mL	Elevations of estradiol, total estrogens, and estriol in men indicate possible gynecomastia, decreased body hair, increased fat deposits, feminization, testicular tumor; in women, ovarian tumor.
Estriol	Men and nonpregnant women: <2.0 ng/dL	Decreased levels of estradiol, total estrogens, and estriol in women indicate possible amenorrhea, climacteric, impending miscarriage, hypothalamic disorders.
Progesterone	Men: 10-50 ng/dL Women: follicular phase, <50 ng/dL; luteal phase, 300-2500 ng/dL; postmenopausal, <40 ng/dL	Decreased levels in women indicate possible inadequate luteal phase, amenorrhea. Elevations in women indicate possible ovarian luteal cysts. Decreased levels may indicate ovarian neoplasm, ovarian dysfunction.
Testosterone	Men: 280-1080 ng/dL Women: <70 ng/dL	Increased levels in men indicate possible testicular tumor, hyperthyroidism. Decreased levels in men indicate possible hypogonadism. Elevations in women indicate possible adrenal neoplasm, ovarian neoplasm, polycystic ovary syndrome.
Prostate-specific antigen	Men: <4 ng/mL	Increased levels may indicate prostatitis, benign prostatic hyperplasia, prostate cancer.
Urine Studies		
Total estrogens	Men: 4-25 mcg/24 hr Women: 4-60 mcg/24 hr	Elevations indicate possible testicular tumors. Decreased levels indicate possible ovarian dysfunction.
Pregnanediol	Men: 0-1.9 mg/24 hr Women: follicular phase, <2.6 mg/24 hr; luteal phase, 2.6-10.6 mg/24 hr	Elevations indicate possible luteal ovarian cysts, ovarian neoplasms, adrenal disorders. Decreased levels indicate possible amenorrhea.
17-Ketosteroids	Men (20-50 yr): 6-20 mg/24 hr Women (20-50 yr): 6-17 mg/24 hr Values decrease with age	Elevations indicate possible Cushing's syndrome, increased androgen or cortisol production, severe stress. Decreased levels indicate possible Addison's disease, hypopituitarism.

Data from Pagana, K.D., & Pagana, T.J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
 1 mcg, 1 microgram or 1 millionth of a gram; 1 ng, 1 nanogram or 1 billionth of a gram; 1 pg, 1 picogram or 1 trillionth of a gram.

diagnosis of male and female reproductive tract disorders. No nutrition restrictions are necessary before the test. Serum testing can also detect estrogen, progesterone, and testosterone levels in men and women. [Chart 72-4](#) gives the normal values and the significance of abnormal findings.

Serologic studies detect antigen-antibody reactions that occur in response to foreign organisms. This form of diagnostic testing is helpful only after an infection has become well established. Serologic testing can be used in the evaluation of exposure to organisms causing syphilis, rubella, and herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV2). Results may be read as nonreactive, weakly reactive, or reactive. A single titer is not as revealing as serial titers, which can detect the rise in antibody reactions as the body continues to fight the infection.

Human immune deficiency virus (HIV) testing should be offered to all patients ages 19 to 64 years, especially those with personal risk factors (see [Chapter 21](#) for a detailed discussion of HIV testing). Testing for sexually transmitted diseases should be performed if patients have signs and symptoms associated with these problems. These tests are discussed in other chapters of this unit.

The **prostate-specific antigen (PSA)** test is used to screen for prostate cancer and to monitor the disease after treatment. PSA levels less than 4 ng/mL are normal. Elevated PSA levels, especially above 10 ng/mL, are associated with prostate cancer. Older men, particularly African-American men, often have a higher normal PSA, especially as they age.

The patient should not ejaculate for at least 24 hours before the test to avoid a false-positive result. For the same

 NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE**Health Promotion and Maintenance**

A 25-year-old client asks the nurse if she needs a Pap smear. How should the nurse respond to this question?

- A. "You don't need a Pap test until you turn 30 years old."
- B. "You should have a Pap smear every year if you are sexually active."
- C. "You should have a Pap smear every 2 years as long as it is liquid-based testing."
- D. "You should ask your nurse practitioner when she sees you."

reason, the blood for the PSA test should be drawn before the digital rectal examination (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Imaging Assessment

General X-rays. A kidney, ureter, and bladder (KUB) x-ray of the abdomen shows these structures and is used in the assessment of disorders of either the male or the female reproductive system. Pelvic masses, calcified tumors or fibroids, dermoid cysts, and metastatic bone changes may be seen. No specific preparation is needed.

Bone scans and chest x-rays may also be included in the workup of the patient with suspected metastatic cancer. They help determine the extent of the cancer spread and obstruction or displacement of the organs. These tests are discussed elsewhere in this text.

Computed Tomography. Computed tomography (CT) scans for reproductive system disorders involve the abdomen and the pelvis. They can detect and evaluate masses and lymphatic enlargement from metastasis. This scan can differentiate solid tissue masses from cystic or hemorrhagic structures.

Hysterosalpingography. A **hysterosalpingogram** is an x-ray of the cervix, uterus, and fallopian tubes and is performed after the injection of a contrast medium. This test is used to evaluate tubal anatomy and patency and uterine problems such as fibroids, tumors, and fistulas. The study should not be attempted for at least 6 weeks after abortion, delivery, or dilation and curettage. Other contraindications include reproductive tract infection and uterine bleeding.

The examination is scheduled in a radiology department 2 to 5 days after the end of the patient's normal menses. The scheduling is important to prevent the accidental flushing of a fertilized ovum from the fallopian tube or the exposure of a fetus to radiation.

The patient is usually instructed to take a laxative the evening before the test, followed by an enema or rectal suppository on the morning of the examination. These procedures reduce the distortion of the x-rays by gas shadows.

On the day of the examination, confirm the date of the patient's last menstrual period and record it in the medical record. Ask about allergies to iodine dye or shellfish. The patient signs a consent form for the procedure. Because discomfort is expected during the examination, premedication with analgesics or NSAIDs may be prescribed. Inform the patient that she may experience some nausea and vomiting, abdominal cramping, or faintness. Provide support and assistance with relaxation techniques.

The patient is placed in the lithotomy position. A speculum is inserted, and the cervix is viewed. Dye is injected through the cervix to fill and highlight the interior of the

cervix, uterus, and fallopian tubes. If the fallopian tubes are patent, the contrast material spills into the peritoneal cavity. Usually, only two or three views are obtained to show the path and distribution of the contrast medium.

The patient may experience pelvic pain after the study and should receive analgesic drugs accordingly. She may also have referred pain to the shoulder because of irritation of the phrenic nerve. Provide a perineal pad after the test to prevent the soiling of clothes as the dye drains from the cervix. Instruct the woman to contact her health care provider if bloody discharge continues for 4 days or longer and to report any signs of infection, such as lower quadrant pain, fever, malodorous discharge, or tachycardia.

Mammography. **Mammography** is an x-ray of the soft tissue of the breast. Mammograms assess differences in the density of breast tissue. They are especially helpful in evaluating poorly defined masses, multiple masses or nodules, nipple changes or discharge, skin changes, and pain. Mammography can detect about 80% to 90% of cancers that are not palpable by physical examination. However, some actual cancers may not appear on mammography or may appear as benign (ACS, 2011).

In young women's breasts, there is little difference in the density between normal glandular tissue and malignant tumors, which makes the mammogram less useful for evaluation of breast masses in these women. For this reason, annual screening mammograms are not recommended for women younger than 40 years (ACS, 2011). In older women, the amount of fatty tissue is higher and the fatty tissue appears lighter than cancers. Cancer and cysts may have the same density. Cysts usually have smooth borders, and cancers often have starburst-shaped margins.

No dietary restrictions are necessary before the mammogram. Remind the patient not to use creams, powders, or deodorant on the breasts or underarm areas before the study because these products can show on the x-ray. If there is any possibility that the patient is pregnant, the test should be rescheduled. Explain the purpose of the examination and its anticipated discomforts. Provide a cover gown and adequate privacy to undress above the waist. The patient also needs support and may need time to express her concerns about the mammogram and the presence of any lumps.

The technician positions the woman next to the x-ray machine with one breast exposed. A film plate and the platform of the machine are placed on opposite sides of the breast to be examined. The technician includes as much breast tissue as possible between the plates. The woman may experience some temporary discomfort when the breast is compressed during the positioning and the test. The test takes about 15 minutes, but the patient is usually asked to wait until the films are developed in case a view needs to be repeated. Some facilities are now using digital imaging rather than films.

The woman should know when to expect the report of the results. Because this is a time when the woman is anxious about the health of her breasts, it is a good opportunity to teach or reinforce the importance of breast self-examination (BSE) and give instructions as needed.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Ultrasonography. Ultrasonography (US) is a technique that is routinely used to assess problems such as uterine fibroids, ovarian cysts, and pelvic masses. It can be used to

monitor the progress of tumor regression after medical treatment. US is also helpful in differentiating solid tumors from cysts in breast examinations. In men, ultrasound can test for varicoceles, scrotal abnormalities, and problems of the ejaculatory ducts and seminal vesicles and the vas deferens (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

No specific preparations are needed for this study. Women should have a full bladder to help view the uterus and to make the location of other structures more distinct with abdominal ultrasonography. A full bladder is not needed for breast, scrotal, transvaginal, or transrectal scans.

For an abdominal, breast, or scrotal scan, the technician exposes the area and applies oil or gel to the area to be scanned. These substances provide better transmission of sound waves from the transducer through the patient's skin. The transducer is moved in a linear pattern across the area being tested to outline and define soft-tissue masses and to differentiate tumor type, ascites, and encapsulated fluid.

For a *transvaginal* or *transrectal* scan, the transducer is covered with a condom or vinyl glove onto which transmission gel has been placed. The transducer is then inserted into the vagina or rectum as indicated.

The patient may want to watch the viewing screen with a brief explanation of the landmarks and structures seen. There is no special follow-up care for the patient after this procedure except to provide wipes to remove the gel.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) uses a magnetic field and radiofrequency energy to scan for pelvic tumors. This scan distinguishes between normal and malignant tissues. MRIs are now being used in the diagnosis of breast cancer in women who have a genetic risk (ACS, 2011). The use of MRI in evaluating patients with dense breast tissue may reduce the need for biopsy.

Endoscopic Studies

Colposcopy. The colposcope allows three-dimensional magnification and intense illumination of epithelium with suspected disease. **Colposcopy** is suited for inspection of the cervical epithelium, vagina, and vulvar epithelium. This procedure can locate the exact site of precancerous and malignant lesions for biopsy.

The woman is placed in the lithotomy position and provided the same support as for a pelvic examination. The patient should not douche or use vaginal preparations for 24 to 48 hours before the test. This nearly painless procedure is better tolerated if it is explained in advance and if the instrument is shown to the patient.

Colposcopy provides accurate site selection for tissue biopsy. Therefore the patient should also be prepared for a biopsy. Materials for cytologic studies and biopsy should be readily available.

The physician locates the cervix or vaginal site through a speculum examination. Lubricants other than water should not be used. Cells in the area may be stained or left unstained to enhance visibility. The physician cleans and moistens the cervix with normal saline. This increases the visibility of vascular patterns and the junction between the columnar epithelium and the squamous epithelium. Acetic acid, 3%, is applied to the cervix to draw moisture from the tissue and to accentuate important features. The physician then uses a colposcope or colpomicroscope to inspect the area in question.

A biopsy specimen may also be taken if abnormal cells are seen. (See Cervical Biopsy section on p. 1585.)

After the procedure, assist the woman as you would for a pelvic examination and provide supplies to clean the perineum. Also give her a perineal pad to absorb any dye or discharge. If a biopsy specimen is taken, additional follow-up care is needed.

Laparoscopy. **Laparoscopy** is a direct examination of the pelvic cavity through an endoscope. This procedure can rule out an ectopic pregnancy, evaluate ovarian disorders and pelvic masses, and aid in the diagnosis of infertility and unexplained pelvic pain. Laparoscopy is also used during surgical procedures such as:

- Tubal sterilization
- Ovarian biopsy
- Cyst aspiration
- Removal of endometriosis tissue
- Lysis of adhesions around the fallopian tubes
- Retrieval of “lost” intrauterine devices

A laparoscopy is used instead of a laparotomy for minor surgical procedures because it uses small incisions, involves less discomfort, and does not require overnight hospitalization.

Patient Preparation. The physician explains the procedure, risks (complications associated with the use of general anesthesia, postoperative shoulder pain, and the rare occurrence of infection or electrical burns), and anticipated discomforts and obtains the patient's consent. The procedure can be performed with either a regional or general anesthetic. Patients should expect mild discomfort from the incision site and may experience referred shoulder pain from phrenic nerve irritation.

Procedure. The patient is anesthetized and placed in the lithotomy position. A urinary catheter is inserted to drain the bladder. The operating table is placed in a slight Trendelenburg position to cause the intestines to fall away from the pelvis. The cervix is held with a cannula to allow movement of the uterus during laparoscopy (Fig. 72-4). The surgeon

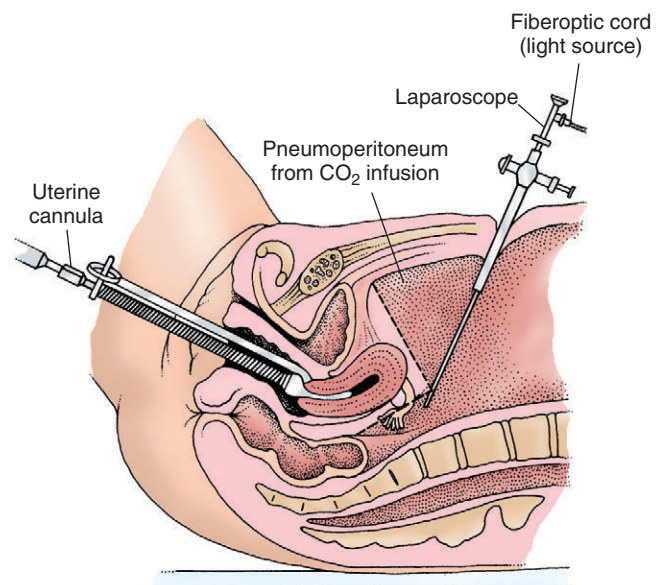


FIG. 72-4 Laparoscopy. CO₂, Carbon dioxide.

inserts a needle below the umbilicus to infuse carbon dioxide (CO₂) into the pelvic cavity, which distends the abdomen and permits better visualization of the organs. After the trocar and cannula are in place in the abdominal cavity, the surgeon removes the trocar and inserts the laparoscope. The surgeon can then visualize the pelvic cavity and reproductive organs. Further instrumentation is possible through one or more small incisions. The laparoscope is removed at the end of the procedure, and the abdomen is deflated. The small incision is closed with absorbable sutures and dressed with an adhesive bandage.

Follow-up Care. Care after surgery is similar to that for other patients after general anesthesia. The patient is usually discharged on the day of the procedure. Discomfort from the incision is managed by oral analgesics. The greatest discomfort is due to referred shoulder pain caused by residual CO₂ in the peritoneal cavity. Most of these sensations disappear within 48 hours. Instruct the patient to change the small adhesive bandage as needed and to observe the incision for signs of infection or hematoma. Remind her to avoid strenuous activity for the first week after the procedure.

Hysteroscopy. **Hysteroscopy** is an endoscopic examination to view the interior of the uterus and the cervical canal. The hysteroscope includes a fiberoptic camera. Aqueous carbon dioxide is the medium used to distend the uterus. Hysteroscopy can be used for the removal of intrauterine devices and as a complement to other diagnostic tests for infertility and unexplained bleeding.

The surgeon informs the patient of all aspects of the procedure and obtains consent. The preparation is the same as for a pelvic examination. The procedure is best performed 5 days after menses has ceased to reduce the possibility of pregnancy. The woman is placed in the lithotomy position and is usually anesthetized with a paracervical or other regional block.

After she is anesthetized, the cervix is dilated. The physician inserts the hysteroscope through the cervix. Because a medium distends the uterus, cells can be pushed through the fallopian tubes and into the pelvic cavity. Therefore hysteroscopy is contraindicated in patients with suspected cervical or endometrial cancer, in those with infection of the reproductive tract, and in pregnant patients.

Care is the same as that after a pelvic examination. Analgesics may be prescribed if the patient has cramping or shoulder pain.

Biopsy Studies

Cervical Biopsy. In a cervical biopsy, cervical tissue is removed for cytologic study. A biopsy is indicated for an identifiable cervical lesion, regardless of the cytologic findings. The health care provider usually performs a biopsy in conjunction with colposcopy as a follow-up to a suspicious Pap test finding. The procedure may be performed in a clinic or office setting.

Several techniques can be used for a cervical biopsy. If a lesion is clearly visible, an endocervical curettage can be performed as an ambulatory care procedure and with little or no anesthetic. **Conization** (removal of a cone-shaped sample of tissue) and loop electrosurgical excision procedures (LEEPs) are usually not done unless the cervical biopsy findings are positive or the results of the colposcopy are unsatisfactory (Lowdermilk & Perry, 2011). Conization can be done as a

CHART 72-5 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

The Patient Recovering from Cervical Biopsy

- Do not lift any heavy objects until the site is healed (about 2 weeks).
- Rest for 24 hours after the procedure.
- Report any excessive bleeding (more than that of a normal menstrual period) to your health care provider.
- Report signs of infection (fever, increased pain, foul-smelling drainage) to your health care provider.
- Do not douche, use tampons, or have vaginal intercourse until the site is healed (about 2 weeks).
- Keep the perineum clean and dry by using antiseptic solution rinses (as directed by your health care provider) and changing pads frequently.

cold-knife procedure, a laser excision, or an electrosurgical incision.

The biopsy is usually scheduled when the woman is in the early proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle, when the cervix is least vascular. Because a biopsy evaluates potentially cancerous cells, most women are anxious and need time to discuss their feelings and fears. The use of relaxation techniques may assist comfort. Assist the patient into the lithotomy position and prepare her in the same way as for a pelvic examination. Further preparation depends on the type of procedure to be performed.

The physician may anesthetize the patient according to the needs of the chosen procedure. He or she visualizes the cervix and obtains the tissue sample. All specimens are immediately placed into a formalin solution.

The type of anesthetic used for the procedure determines the type of immediate care needed after the procedure. Discharge instructions are listed in [Chart 72-5](#).

Endometrial Biopsy. Both endometrial biopsy and aspiration are used to obtain cells directly from the lining of the uterus to assess for cancer of the endometrium. Biopsy also helps assess menstrual disturbances (especially heavy bleeding) and infertility (corpus luteum dysfunction).

When menstrual disturbances are being evaluated, the biopsy is generally done in the immediate premenstrual period to provide an index of progesterone influence and ovulation. A biopsy performed in the second half of the menstrual cycle (about days 21 and 22) evaluates corpus luteum function and the presence or absence of a persistent secretory endometrium. Postmenopausal women may undergo biopsies at any time.

Menstrual data are obtained from the patient and are included on the specimen request for the pathologist. The woman has the same preparation as for a pelvic examination. Advise her that she may experience some cramping when the cervix is dilated. Analgesia before the procedure and relaxation and breathing techniques during the procedure may be helpful.

An endometrial biopsy is usually done as an office procedure with or without anesthesia. After the uterus is measured and the cervix dilated, the physician inserts the curette or intrauterine cannula into the uterus. A portion of the endometrium is withdrawn using either the cuplike end of the curette or with suction equipment. The patient usually has

moderate cramping. The specimens are placed into a formalin solution and sent for histologic examination.

Allow the woman to rest on the examining table until the cramping has subsided. Provide a perineal pad and a wipe to clean the perineum. Tell her that spotting may be present for 1 to 2 days but any signs of infection or excessive bleeding should be reported to the physician. Instruct the patient to avoid intercourse or douching until all discharge has ceased. Results of the biopsy are usually available within 72 hours.

Breast Biopsy. All breast masses should be evaluated for the possibility of cancer in women or, far less often, in men. Fibrocystic lesions, fibroadenomas, and intraductal papillomas can be differentiated by biopsy. Any discharge from the breasts is examined histologically.

The instructions to the patient depend on the type of biopsy and the type of anesthesia. Explain the procedure. Most biopsies are performed in an ambulatory care setting. Several methods are used to biopsy breast tissue. The patient usually receives a local anesthetic, and the tissue either is aspirated through a large-bore needle (core-needle biopsy) or is removed using a small incision to extract multiple samples of tissue.

Aspirated fluid from benign cysts may appear clear to dark green–brown. Bloody fluid suggests cancer. The specimens also undergo histologic evaluation. If cancer is found, the tissue is evaluated for estrogen receptor analysis. [Chapter 73](#) discusses types of breast cancer and their relationship to estrogen receptors.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client has a left needle breast biopsy with local anesthesia. What post-test teaching will the nurse provide?

- A. "Do not use your left arm for at least a week."
- B. "You'll likely have some discomfort for about a week."
- C. "Do not lift anything over 10 pounds for a week."
- D. "Remember to take all of your antibiotics as prescribed."

Discomfort after surgery is usually mild and is controlled with analgesics or the use of ice or heat, depending on the type and extent of the biopsy. Teach the patient how to assess the area or incision for bleeding and edema. Tell women to wear a properly supportive bra continuously for 1 week after surgery. Numbness around the biopsy site may last several weeks. If cancer is identified, provide emotional support as well as information about follow-up treatment alternatives.

Prostate Biopsy. When prostate cancer is suspected, the physician performs a needle aspiration biopsy of the prostate gland for histologic study. This procedure is often performed at the same time as cystoscopy, when the patient is under moderate sedation. The physician can perform needle biopsies without anesthesia or with the patient under local anesthesia.

Preparation for the procedure depends on the technique used to puncture the gland. Explain about the expected discomforts. Teach the patient about breathing and relaxation techniques for use during the examination. Because the purpose of this procedure is to evaluate prostate cells for cancer, the man needs support and time to discuss his fears. Preparation for a transrectal biopsy involves the use of cleansing enemas. Prophylactic antibiotics are given to reduce the risk for bacterial contamination of the blood or prostate tissue. Local anesthesia is used for transperineal biopsy.

The patient is placed in the same position as for a rectal examination. After injecting a local anesthetic for the transperineal biopsy, the physician places a finger in the rectum to help guide the needle to the prostate. For the transrectal biopsy, the physician places the needle against the examining finger and then inserts it into the rectum to the prostate. From this site, the needle is advanced through the rectal mucosa and into the prostate gland. The aspiration may be repeated several times to obtain a satisfactory specimen.

Although not common, sepsis is a life-threatening complication of transrectal biopsy. Teach the patient to report any manifestations of infection (e.g., fever, low back pain). Prophylactic antibiotics may be prescribed.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What should you expect to see in a patient without reproductive health problems that affect sexuality?

Physical assessment

- No vaginal bleeding other than usual menstruation
- No unusual vaginal discharge
- No penile bleeding or discharge
- No masses or lesions on internal or external genitalia for men or women
- Reports ability to have intercourse without pain

Psychosocial assessment

- Reports satisfaction with sexual activity
- Reports satisfaction with body image

Laboratory assessment

- Sex hormones within normal limits for age
- Prostate-specific antigen within normal limits for age

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Encourage all women to follow recommended Pap screening guidelines for early detection of precancerous and cancerous cells from the cervix.
- Assess cultural issues when identifying risks for certain reproductive problems and when evaluating health promotion practices.
- Explain all diagnostic procedures, restrictions, and follow-up care to the patient scheduled for tests.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Allow the patient the opportunity to express fear or anxiety regarding tests of the reproductive system or regarding a potential change in sexual or reproductive function.
- Assess the patient's level of comfort in discussing issues related to reproduction and sexuality.

- Encourage patients to express feelings of anxiety or discomfort related to genital examinations.

Physiological Integrity

- Urge patients with pain, bleeding, discharge, masses, or changes in reproductive function to seek health care advice.
- Provide as much privacy as possible for patients undergoing examination or testing of the reproductive system.
- Recall that reproductive changes occur with aging, as described in [Chart 72-1](#).
- Selected laboratory tests used for diagnosing reproductive health problems are found in [Chart 72-4](#).
- Teach women to report manifestations of infection to their health care provider after endoscopic procedures and biopsies of the breast, cervix, and endometrium.
- Instruct men to report manifestations of infection to their health care provider after a transrectal biopsy of the prostate.

Care of Patients with Breast Disorders

Mary Justice



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination
Video Clip: Inspection (Sitting)
Video Clip: Inspection (Supine)

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Identify community resources for patients with breast cancer.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Describe the three-pronged approach to early detection of breast masses: mammography, clinical breast examination (CBE), and breast self-awareness.
3. Teach a woman who chooses breast self-examination (BSE) as an option to use correct technique.
4. Explain the options available to a person at high genetic risk for breast cancer.
5. Evaluate patient risk factors for breast cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

6. Explain the psychosocial aspects related to having breast cancer and undergoing treatments for breast cancer.
7. Discuss sexuality issues with the patient having breast surgery.

8. Describe body image changes that can result from breast cancer surgery.

Physiological Integrity

9. Compare assessment findings associated with benign breast lesions with those of malignant breast lesions.
10. Explain the difference between breast reduction and breast augmentation.
11. Discuss treatment options for breast cancer.
12. Develop a postoperative collaborative plan of care for a patient with breast cancer.
13. Describe the role of radiation and drug therapy in the care of patients with breast cancer.
14. Identify the role of complementary and alternative therapies in breast cancer management.
15. Explain what options are available to a woman considering breast reconstruction.

Breast disorders may be benign or cancerous. Western society places a great emphasis on the breast as part of feminine beauty. Any threat to the breast has a significant effect on a woman's self-image and *sexuality*. She may feel unattractive to her partner and worry that their relationship will be negatively affected. She may be embarrassed at how she looks after treatment and refuse to look at herself. Members of the health care team need to be very supportive and acknowledge these feelings and concerns about the woman's perceived

inability to meet her need for *sexuality*. When caring for patients with breast problems, provide privacy and protect their dignity.

BENIGN BREAST DISORDERS

Most breast lumps are benign. Because the incidence of breast disease is related to age, breast disorders are described below in an age-related order (Table 73-1).

TABLE 73-1 TYPICAL PRESENTATION OF BENIGN BREAST DISORDERS

BREAST DISORDER	DESCRIPTION	INCIDENCE
Fibroadenoma	Most common benign lesion; solid mass of connective tissue that is unattached to the surrounding tissue	During teenage years into the 30s (most commonly)
Fibrocystic breast condition	<i>First stage:</i> Characterized by premenstrual bilateral fullness and tenderness <i>Second stage:</i> Presence of bilateral multi-centric nodules <i>Third stage:</i> Presence of microscopic and macroscopic cysts	Late teens and 20s
Ductal ectasia	Hard, irregular mass or masses with nipple discharge, enlarged axillary nodes, redness, and edema; difficult to distinguish from cancer	Women approaching menopause
Intraductal papilloma	Mass in duct that results in nipple discharge; mass is usually not palpable	Women 40 to 55 yr of age

FIBROADENOMA

Fibroadenomas are the most common benign tumor in women during the reproductive years. However, they also may occur in a few postmenopausal women. A **fibroadenoma** is a mass of connective tissue that is unattached to the surrounding breast tissue and is usually discovered by the woman herself or during mammography. Although the immediate fear is that of breast cancer, the risk for it occurring within a fibroadenoma is very small. On clinical examination, the tumors are oval, freely mobile, and rubbery. Their size varies from smaller than 1 cm (0.4 inch) in diameter to as large as 15 cm (6 inches) in diameter.

Fibroadenomas may occur anywhere in the breast. The health care provider may request a breast ultrasound examination or may perform a needle aspiration to establish whether the lump is cystic (fluid-filled) or solid. If the lesion is solid, ambulatory care excision using local anesthesia is sometimes the treatment of choice.

FIBROCYSTIC BREAST CONDITION

Pathophysiology

Fibrocystic changes of the breast include a range of changes involving the lobules, ducts, and stromal tissues of the breast. Because these changes affect at least half of women over the life span, they are referred to as **fibrocystic breast condition (FBC)** rather than fibrocystic disease. This condition most often occurs in premenopausal women between 20 and 50 years of age and is thought to be caused by an imbalance in the normal estrogen-to-progesterone ratio. Typical symptoms include breast pain and tender lumps or areas of thickening in the breasts. The lumps are rubbery, ill defined, and commonly found in the upper outer quadrant of the breast (Lee, 2009).

The two main features of FBC are fibrosis and cysts. Areas of fibrosis are made up of fibrous connective tissue and are

firm or hard. Cysts are spaces filled with fluid lined by breast glandular cells. Microcysts are small, nonpalpable cysts inside the breast glands. Macrocysts occur when fluid continues to build up. They often enlarge in response to monthly hormonal changes, stretching the surrounding breast tissue, and become painful. Symptoms usually resolve after menstruation and then recur before the next menstrual period in a cyclic fashion. Breast ultrasound is used to confirm the presence of a cyst. Fine needle aspiration is used to drain the cyst fluid and reduce pressure and pain. Fluid may return, and more aspirations may be necessary.

Postmenopausal women taking hormone replacement therapy (HRT) may develop FBC or experience worsening of symptoms. Having cysts or fibrosis does not increase a woman's chance of developing breast cancer. However, if a lump is very firm or has other features raising the concern about cancer, mammography is indicated. A needle biopsy or a surgical biopsy may be needed to make sure cancer is not present. Biopsy may be indicated in these situations:

- No fluid is aspirated.
- The mammogram shows suspicious findings.
- A mass remains palpable after aspiration.
- The aspirated fluid reveals cancer cells.

Symptoms often resolve after menopause when estrogen decreases.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Management of FBC focuses on the symptoms of the condition. Suggest supportive measures such as the use of mild analgesics or limiting salt intake before menses to help decrease swelling. Wearing a supportive bra can reduce pain by decreasing tension on the ligaments, although some women find that not wearing a bra is more comfortable. Local application of ice or heat may provide temporary relief of pain.

If drug therapy is indicated, oral contraceptives may be prescribed to suppress oversecretion of estrogen, and progestins may be used to correct luteal insufficiency. Danazol (Danocrine, Cyclomen ) suppresses ovarian function and estrogen stimulation of breast tissue. However, because danazol does not cure FBC and because its side effects are undesirable, it is generally used only in patients with recurrent and severe FBC.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Explain to women the benefits and risks associated with drug therapy for FBC, such as stroke, liver disease, and increased intracranial pressure. Teach them to seek medical attention immediately if any signs or symptoms of these complications occur.

Treatment for FBC may also include the use of vitamins C, E, and B complex. Diuretics may be prescribed to decrease premenstrual breast engorgement. Reduction of dietary fat and caffeine has been suggested, although the role of caffeine and fat in FBC is unclear.

Encourage the patient to continue prescribed drug therapy, and monitor the effectiveness of these interventions. Teach

the patient to become familiar with the normal feel and texture of her breasts so she is aware of any changes.

DUCTAL ECTASIA

Ductal ectasia is a benign breast problem that is usually seen in women approaching menopause. It occurs when a breast duct dilates and its walls thicken, causing the duct to become blocked. The ducts in the subareolar area are most often affected. These ducts become distended and filled with cellular debris, which activates an inflammatory response. Two manifestations result from these changes:

- A mass develops that feels hard, has irregular borders, and may be tender.
- A greenish brown nipple discharge, enlarged axillary nodes, and redness and edema over the site of the mass are noted.

Ductal ectasia does not affect a woman's breast cancer risk. However, if a mass is present, it may be difficult to distinguish it from breast cancer. Because the risk for breast cancer is increased among women in the menopause age-group, accurate diagnosis is vital. A microscopic examination of the nipple discharge is performed to detect any atypical or malignant cells, and the affected area is excised. Nursing care is directed at reducing the anxiety associated with the threat of breast cancer and at supporting the woman through the diagnostic and treatment procedures. Ductal ectasia may improve without treatment. Warm compresses and antibiotics may be helpful. If symptoms do not improve, the abnormal duct may be surgically removed.

INTRADUCTAL PAPILLOMA

Intraductal papilloma occurs most often in women 40 to 55 years of age. A benign process in the epithelial lining of the duct forms a **papilloma** (pedunculated outgrowth of tissue). As it grows, trauma and erosion within the duct result in a bloody or serous nipple discharge. A mass is rarely palpable.

Diagnosis is aimed first at ruling out breast cancer. Microscopic examination of the nipple discharge and surgical excision of the mass and ductal area are usually indicated.

ISSUES OF LARGE-BREASTED WOMEN

Although Western society emphasizes large breasts as a positive attribute, women with excessive breast tissue often have health problems and discomfort. For instance, a woman with large breasts may have difficulty finding clothes that fit well and in which she feels attractive. The breast size may be out of proportion to the rest of the body, which adds to the problem of finding clothes that fit. Larger bras are expensive and may need to be specially ordered. The woman may have large dents in the shoulders from bra straps. In addition, many large-breasted women develop fungal infections under the breasts, especially in hot weather, because it is difficult to keep this area dry and exposed to air.

Backaches from the added weight are also common. If well-fitting bras do not help and obesity is not part of the problem, the only alternative for this condition may be breast reduction surgery. The surgeon removes excess breast tissue and then repositions the nipple and remaining skin flaps to

produce the best cosmetic effect. This operation is a major surgical procedure and is called a **reduction mammoplasty**.

The decision to have the procedure is usually made after years of living with the discomfort of excessive breast size. Listen to the woman verbalize her feelings, and reinforce information as appropriate. The nursing care after surgery is similar to that for the woman having reconstructive surgery. (See discussion of Breast Reconstruction, p. 1603, in the Surgical Management section.)

ISSUES OF SMALL-BREASTED WOMEN

Some women choose to have **breast augmentation** surgery to increase or improve the size, shape, or symmetry of their breasts. Most health insurers do not pay for this procedure. Most surgeries involve the implantation of saline-filled or silicon prostheses. Some are constructed from the women's own tissue in much the same way as for reconstruction after mastectomy. *Saline* implants are filled with sterile saline and can be filled with the amount needed to get the shape and firmness the woman wants. If the implant shell leaks, the saline will be safely absorbed by the body. *Silicone* implants are filled with an elastic gel, which can leak into the breast and will not be absorbed. The plastic surgeon reviews the advantages and disadvantages of each implant or natural procedure.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Before breast augmentation surgery, teach the patient to stop smoking (to promote healing), avoid aspirin and other NSAIDs, and avoid herbs that can cause bleeding during the procedure, such as garlic, *Ginkgo biloba*, and ginseng. Tell her that the incisions will be hidden as much as possible, either under the pectoral muscle or directly behind the breast tissue as a submammary placement. One or more wound drains will be inserted during surgery, and she will need to know how to care for those drains at home. Review possible postoperative complications, including infection and prosthesis leakage, which can cause severe pain and possible fever.

After surgery, the patient can be discharged to home the same day or the day after. Remind the family or significant other that someone should stay with her for at least 24 hours after surgery. The incisions may or may not have dressings depending on the surgeon and type of surgery.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Remind the patient after breast augmentation that for the first few days she should expect soreness in her chest and arms. Her breasts will feel tight and sensitive, and the skin over her breasts may feel warm or may itch. Teach the patient that she will have difficulty raising her arms over her head and should not lift, push, or pull anything until the surgeon permits. Teach her to also avoid strenuous activity or twisting above her waist. Remind the patient to walk every few hours to prevent deep vein thrombi. Tell her to expect some swelling of the breasts for 3 to 4 weeks after surgery.

An important issue for patients who have breast augmentation surgery is breast cancer surveillance. Breast



FIG. 73-1 Gynecomastia.

self-examination (BSE) and clinical breast examination (CBE) are easily performed after prostheses are placed. The prosthesis is placed behind the woman's normal breast tissue, actually pushing it forward. However, screening mammography may not be as sensitive because the amount of visualized breast tissue is decreased. Even though breast cancer detection may be impaired, survival rates for augmented women with breast cancer are not affected (Xie et al., 2010). Likewise, there is no association between breast implants and increased risk for breast cancer (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2010a). Teach women desiring cosmetic breast augmentation about the differences in breast cancer screening.

GYNECOMASTIA

Gynecomastia literally means “female breasts” and is a symptom rather than a disease. It is usually a benign condition of breast enlargement in *men* (Fig. 73-1). However, gynecomastia can be a result of a primary cancer such as lung or testicular cancer. The enlargement is usually bilateral but may be asymmetric in a few cases. The condition is caused by abnormal growth of the glandular tissue, including the mammary ducts and ductal tissue. In many instances, it is difficult to determine gynecomastia from breast enlargement related to excess adipose tissue. Other causes of gynecomastia include:

- Drugs, such as anti-androgen agents and corticosteroids
- Aging
- Obesity
- Underlying disease causing estrogen excess, such as malnutrition, liver disease, or hyperthyroidism
- Androgen-deficiency states, such as age, chronic kidney disease, or alcoholism

Although gynecomastia is not common, men with abnormal breast findings, especially a breast mass, should be carefully evaluated for breast cancer.

BREAST CANCER

Pathophysiology

Excluding skin cancers, breast cancer is the most commonly diagnosed cancer in women and is second only to lung cancer as a cause of female cancer deaths (ACS, 2010a). Therefore most references in this section are to women with breast cancer. Because of the high incidence of the disease, almost every woman knows of someone with the disease. Thus most women have strong reactions to the threat of breast cancer. These reactions greatly influence health habits, including breast self-examination (BSE) and the patient's readiness to seek care when a suspicious area is discovered. Nurses play a key role in early detection by educating women about screening guidelines, risk factors for breast cancer, and BSE. Men should also be taught about this disease.

Early detection is the key to effective treatment and survival. The 5-year relative survival rate is lower for women who are diagnosed with an advanced stage of breast cancer. The 5-year survival rate for localized breast cancer is 98%, whereas the rate drops to 84% when the cancer has spread to the regional lymph nodes (ACS, 2010a). Survival drops dramatically when it is metastatic (spread to distant sites).

Cancer of the breast begins as a single transformed cell that grows and multiplies in the epithelial cells lining one or more of the mammary ducts or lobules. It is a heterogeneous disease, having many forms with different clinical presentations and responses to therapy (Weigelt et al., 2010). Some breast cancers will present as a palpable lump in the breast, whereas others will show up only on a mammogram.

There are two broad categories of breast cancer: noninvasive and invasive. About 20% are *noninvasive*; the remaining 80% are *invasive*. As long as the cancer remains within the duct, it is noninvasive. The cancer is classified as *invasive* when it penetrates the tissue surrounding the duct. Most of these cancers arise from the intermediate ducts. Metastasis occurs when cancer cells leave the breast via the blood and lymph systems, which permits spread of these cells to distant sites. The most common sites of metastatic disease from breast cancer are bone, lungs, brain, and liver. The course of metastatic breast cancer is related to the site affected and to the function impaired. The processes involved in cancer development are described in Chapter 24.

Noninvasive Breast Cancers

Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) is an early *noninvasive* form of breast cancer. In DCIS, cancer cells are located within the duct and have not invaded the surrounding fatty breast tissue. Because of mammography screening and earlier detection, the number of women diagnosed with DCIS has increased. If left untreated, it may spread into the breast tissue surrounding the ducts over a period of years (*invasive breast cancer*). Currently there is no way to determine which DCIS lesions will progress to invasive cancer and which ones will remain unchanged, but research is continuing in this area (Muggerud et al., 2010). *It is important to remember that although DCIS should be treated to prevent it from developing into an invasive breast cancer, it does not metastasize at this stage.*

Another type of noninvasive cancer is **lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS)**. This cancer type is rare and usually identified incidentally during biopsy for another problem. Having LCIS



FIG. 73-2 Skin dimpling on a breast as a result of fibrosis or breast cancer.



FIG. 73-3 Breast edema giving the skin an “orange peel” (peau d’orange) appearance.

increases one’s risk for developing a separate breast cancer later. Traditionally, LCIS has been treated with close observation only. However, emerging evidence suggests that many LCIS lesions will progress to invasive cancer and should be treated with surgical excision (Cangiarella et al., 2008).

Invasive Breast Cancers

The most common type of invasive breast cancer is **infiltrating ductal carcinoma**. As the name implies, the disease originates in the mammary ducts and grows in the epithelial cells lining these ducts. Once invasive, the cancer grows into the tissue around it in an irregular pattern. If a lump is present, it is felt as an irregular, poorly defined mass. As the tumor continues to grow, **fibrosis** (replacement of normal cells with connective tissue and collagen) develops around the cancer. This fibrosis may cause shortening of Cooper’s ligaments and the resulting typical skin dimpling that is seen with more advanced disease (Fig. 73-2). Another sign, sometimes indicating late-stage breast cancer, is an edematous thickening and pitting of breast skin called *peau d’orange* (orange peel skin) (Fig. 73-3).

A rare but highly aggressive form of invasive breast cancer is **inflammatory breast cancer** (IBC). Symptoms include swelling, skin redness, and pain in the breasts. IBC seldom presents as a palpable lump and may not show up on a mammogram. Because it is usually diagnosed at a later stage than other types of breast cancer, it is often harder to treat successfully (ACS, 2010b).

Breast Cancer in Men

Male breast cancer is rare, occurring in fewer than 1% of all cases. The average age of onset is 60 years. Most cases occur in those with a genetic mutation in either the *BRCA1* or the *BRCA2* gene. (See discussion of genetic risk below.)

Men usually present with a hard, painless, subareolar mass; gynecomastia may be present. Occasionally the man may have nipple discharge, retraction, erosion, or ulceration. Because *men* usually do not suspect breast cancer when they feel a lump, diagnosis frequently is delayed (Mattarella, 2010). The disease is often advanced when diagnosed; thus men have poorer survival than women (ACS, 2010a). Treatment of breast cancer in men is the same as in women at a similar stage of disease.

Breast Cancer in Young Women

Approximately 5% of breast cancer cases occur in women younger than 40 years (ACS, 2010a). Genetic predisposition is a stronger risk factor for younger women than older women (Pollán, 2010). Younger women frequently present with more aggressive forms of the disease. Screening tools are often less effective for this group because the breasts are denser. Women of childbearing age with breast cancer may be concerned about infertility after treatment. Distress about interrupted childbearing can have a major impact on their quality of life (Camp-Sorrell, 2009). Nurses should discuss issues of fertility with patients before chemotherapy. Younger women who experience abrupt menopause as a result of chemotherapy or ovarian suppression also report a greater effect on their sexuality than do older counterparts (McLachlan, 2009).

Etiology and Genetic Risk

There is no single known cause for breast cancer. *Being an older woman or man is the primary risk factor, although some people are at higher risk than others.* Several breast cancer risk factors have been identified; some are modifiable, whereas others are not (ACS, 2010a). Table 73-2 lists major risk factors for breast cancer development.

Although most breast cancers occur in women with no family history of the disease, having a first-degree relative (mother, sister, or daughter) with breast cancer increases the risk for the disease. Having more than one first-degree relative or a relative diagnosed at a younger age further increases one’s risk (ACS, 2010a). Certain genetic factors can increase a woman’s risk for both ovarian and breast cancer. Encourage women with a family history of breast or ovarian cancer to discuss this history with their physician.

Breast cancer is usually a *sporadic* (not having a definite genetic pattern) rather than an inherited or a familial disorder. Many personal and environmental interactions are

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Mutations in several genes, such as *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, are related to hereditary breast cancer. People who have specific mutations in either one of these genes are at a high risk for developing breast cancer as well as ovarian cancer. However, only 5% to 10% of all breast cancers are hereditary. Only women with a strong family history and a reasonable suspicion that a mutation is present have genetic testing for *BRCA* mutations (ACS, 2010a). Encourage women to talk with a genetics counselor to carefully consider the benefits and potential harmful consequences of genetic testing before these tests are done.

TABLE 73-2 RISK FACTORS FOR BREAST CANCER

FACTORS	COMMENTS
High Increased Risk (Relative Risk >4.0)	
Female gender	Ninety-nine percent of all breast cancers occur in women.
Age >50 yr	Greatest risk for women is ages 50 to 69 years.
Genetic factors	Inherited mutations of <i>BRCA1</i> and/or <i>BRCA2</i> increase risk.
Family history	Two or more first-degree relatives with breast cancer at an early age increases risk.
History of a previous breast cancer	The risk for developing a cancer in the opposite breast is 5 times greater than for the average population at risk.
Breast density	Dense breasts contain more glandular and connective tissue, which increases the risk for developing breast cancer.
Moderate Increased Risk (Relative Risk 2.1-4.0)	
Family history	One first-degree relative with breast cancer moderately increases risk.
Biopsy-confirmed atypical hyperplasia	The overactive growth of cells increases risk.
Ionizing radiation	Women who received frequent low-level radiation exposure to the thorax had an increased risk, especially if the exposure occurred during periods of rapid breast formation.
High postmenopausal bone density	High estrogen levels over time both strengthen bone and increase breast cancer risk.
Low Increased Risk (Relative Risk 1.1-2.0)	
Reproductive history Nulliparity OR First child born after age 30	Childless women have an increased risk, as do women who bear their first child near or after age 30.
Menstrual history (Early menstruation or late menopause, or both)	The risk for breast cancer rises as the interval between menarche and menopause increases. Women who undergo bilateral oophorectomy before age 35 have less risk for breast cancer than women who undergo natural menopause.
Oral contraceptives	There is a slight increase in breast cancer risk in women taking oral contraceptives.
Hormone replacement therapy (HRT)	Use of estrogen and progestin increases risk; routine use of hormone therapy for osteoporosis and heart disease is no longer recommended.
Obesity	Postmenopausal obesity (especially increased abdominal fat), increased body mass, insulin resistance, and hyperglycemia have been reported to be associated with an increased risk for breast cancer.
Other Risk Factors	
Alcohol	Risk is dose-dependent; consumption of 3 to 14 drinks per week is associated with a slight increase in risk; risk increases with increased consumption.
High socioeconomic status	Breast cancer incidence is greater in women of higher education and socioeconomic background. This relationship is possibly related to lifestyle differences, such as age at first birth.
Jewish heritage	Women of Ashkenazi Jewish heritage have higher incidences of <i>BRCA1</i> and <i>BRCA2</i> genetic mutations.

Modified from American Cancer Society. (2010). *Breast cancer facts & figures 2009-2010*. Atlanta: Author.

related to its development. Known factors that increase risk include exposure to high-dose ionizing radiation to the thorax (especially before 20 years of age), early menarche (before 12 years of age), and late menopause (after 50 years of age). A history of previous breast cancer, nulliparity (no pregnancies), and first birth after 30 years of age also appear to increase risk.

Other causative risk factors not as well explained are nutrition and hormone replacement therapy (HRT). Alcohol is clearly linked to an increased risk for invasive breast cancer. Having an average of one or more alcoholic drinks a day increases the risk up to one and a half times (ACS, 2010a). Obesity also increases breast cancer risk, especially for women after menopause. Fat tissue becomes the major source of estrogen after the ovaries stop functioning. Having a greater amount of fat tissue increases hormonal influence on breast cancer development (ACS, 2010b). An increase in the risk for breast cancer has been shown in postmenopausal women receiving HRT after 5 or more years of use, with the combination of estrogen and progestin carrying the highest

increased risk. However, the use HRT is not considered a major risk factor for breast cancer compared with other breast cancer risks (Bluming & Tavis, 2009). Encourage women seeking help for menopausal symptoms to discuss the benefits and risks of hormonal therapy with their health care provider.

Incidence/Prevalence

In 2010, the projected breast cancer incidence was more than 207,000 women in the United States. Of these, almost 40,000 women are likely to die of the disease (Jemal et al., 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

The American Cancer Society (ACS) establishes evidence-based guidelines for breast cancer screening in women. Guidelines have not been recommended for screening men in the general population because breast cancer in men is so uncommon (ACS, 2010b). Encourage men with a strong family history or known genetic mutations to discuss screening with their health care provider.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

One of every 8 U.S. women will develop breast cancer by age 70. Euro-American women older than 40 years are at a greater risk than other racial/ethnic groups, but African-American women *younger than 40 years* have breast cancer more often than others in that age-group. African-American women have a higher death rate at any age when compared with other women with the disease (ACS, 2010a). This difference has been attributed to limited access to and lower utilization of services for early detection and treatment (ACS, 2010c). Research has also found differences in tumor characteristics in some African-American women (Cunningham et al., 2010). For example, *triple negative breast cancer* occurs more often in African-American women and younger women. In this type of breast cancer, cells lack receptors for estrogen, progesterone, and the protein *HER2*. Triple negative breast cancer tends to be more aggressive than other types of breast cancer, and fewer effective treatments exist for it. Much research is ongoing to better understand this type of breast cancer.

For American Indian and Alaska Native women, 5-year survival rates for breast cancer are very poor (English et al., 2008). These women are less likely than non-Hispanic white women to have mammography screening (Wingo et al., 2008). Health promotion interventions to improve mammography rates should consider cultural customs, transportation, and social support.

Latino and Hispanic women have a lower incidence of breast cancer than Euro-American women but a higher death rate (ACS, 2010d).

Risk factors for Hispanic women are not as well understood as those for non-Hispanic whites, and more research is needed in this area (Hines et al., 2010). Whereas Asian women have better 5-year survival rates than Euro-American women, the rates for Native Hawaiian women are slightly poorer than Euro-American women (ACS, 2010a). Strategies that have increased breast cancer screening in the Native Hawaiian population include the use of lay educators and community cancer outreach programs (Aitaoto et al., 2009).

recommended against routine screening mammography in average-risk women ages 40 to 49 years and older than 75 years, concluding there is only a small net benefit for women in these age-groups (USPSTF, 2009). Scientific evidence shows there are benefits as well as risks associated with mammography, and disagreement exists about the emphasis that should be placed on each one. However, the ACS and The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) continue to recommend that all women age 40 and older have a screening mammogram annually (ACOG, 2011). Nurses working with women must be able to educate women on the risks and benefits of breast screening techniques so that they can make informed decisions about the screening methods best suited to their individual situations (Association of Women's Health, Obstetric, and Neonatal Nursing [AWHONN], 2010).

Women with known genetic mutations or other high risk factors for breast cancer should have screening with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) in addition to annual mammography (ACS, 2010b). Encourage women with moderate risk factors to discuss with their health care provider the benefits and limitations of adding MRI screening to their annual mammograms. MRI screening is not recommended for women with low breast cancer risk factors.

Breast Self-Awareness/Self-Examination

Nurses working with women should teach them the importance of becoming familiar with the appearance and feel of their breasts. Any changes detected by the woman should be reported to her health care provider. Teach a woman that lumps are not necessarily abnormal. For premenopausal women, lumps can come and go with the menstrual cycle. Most lumps that are detected and tested are not cancerous.

Some women may want to practice regular breast self-examination (BSE) as a method for breast self-awareness. Evidence shows that monthly BSE is no more beneficial than women simply being aware of what is normal for their own breasts and women are just as likely to find a lump by chance (ACS, 2010b). However, BSE should be presented as an option to women beginning in their early 20s. In addition to breast self-awareness, emphasis should be placed on mammography and clinical breast examination for early detection of breast cancer. The combined approach is better than any single test (ACS, 2010a). A woman who chooses to perform BSE should be taught the correct technique and have it reviewed by a health care professional during her clinical breast examination.

Teach patients how to perform BSE if they choose. The examination technique is similar for women and men. Use teaching models of normal and abnormal breasts when teaching BSE. Discuss the proper timing for BSE. Instruct premenopausal women to examine their breasts 1 week after the menstrual period. At this time, hormonal influence on breast tissue is decreased, so fluid retention and tenderness are reduced. Teach women whose breast tissue is no longer influenced by hormonal fluctuations, such as after a total hysterectomy or menopause, to pick a day each month to do BSE, such as the first day of the month.

Ensure that the setting in which you demonstrate BSE is private and comfortable. Ask the woman to undress from the waist up, and provide a gown and sheet. Teach the woman to stand in front of a mirror to inspect the breast for abnormalities. She should raise her arms above her head and press her hands on her hips to emphasize any changes in the shape of



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

When teaching women about the risk for breast cancer, which risk factor does the nurse know is the most common for the development of the disease?

- A. Having an aunt with breast cancer
- B. Being an older adult
- C. Being a Euro-American
- D. Consuming a low-fat diet

The ACS recommendation for early detection by screening for breast masses is a screening mammogram for women ages 40 years and older and a clinical breast examination (CBE) by a health professional at least every 3 years for women 20 to 40 years old. Monthly breast self-examination (BSE) is less emphasized today than in the past several decades.



NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach women that no single method for early detection of breast cancer is effective when used alone. The best approach for average-risk women is screening mammogram, clinical breast examination, and breast self-awareness.

Mammography

The use of mammography (x-ray of the breasts) screening for healthy, average-risk women has been a subject of recent controversy among various scientific and advocacy groups. In 2009, the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF)

the breasts. Palpation should be performed in a lying position and while bathing or showering. Before teaching breast palpation, ask the woman to demonstrate her own method. If she is unsure or has not performed BSE before, slowly lead her through the examination while explaining the rationale for the technique and answering questions. Demonstrate the correct technique of examining the breasts with the arm overhead instead of having the arm by her side. Showing the difference in the two positions, especially in large-breasted women, reveals the advantage of using the correct method, which spreads the tissue over the chest wall for more effective palpation (Fig. 73-4).

It is also helpful to point out different findings at this time, especially those that the woman might perceive as abnormal. Placing the woman's hand directly on the involved area and showing her precisely what is normal for her can build self-confidence. Teach her that nodular breast tissue may normally feel lumpy, which may be interpreted as widespread cancer. Indicate the *inframammary ridge*, the area of the breast where the skin folds under the breast. This thickened area may be perceived as a lump instead of a normal finding. In thin or small-breasted women, the ribs may be mistaken for masses. Demonstrate how to follow the rib to the sternum to be sure that what she is feeling is bone and not breast tissue.

Any one of three palpation methods can be used to examine the breast tissue (Fig. 73-5). Teach the importance of covering all tissue during palpation. Demonstrate the proper amount of pressure needed to palpate the breast tissue and the correct position of the hands. The finger pads, which are more sensitive than the fingertips, are used when palpating the breasts. Teach the woman to press firmly enough to detect the underlying tissue.

Clinical Breast Examination

Clinical breast examination (CBE) is typically performed by advanced practice nurses and other health care providers. However, nurses in general practice who are skilled in the technique can also perform the procedure. It is recommended that the CBE be part of a periodic health assessment, at least every 3 years for women in their 20s and 30s and every year for asymptomatic women at least 40 years of age (ACS, 2010a). Provide a private and comfortable setting, protect the patient's dignity, and allow time for discussion.

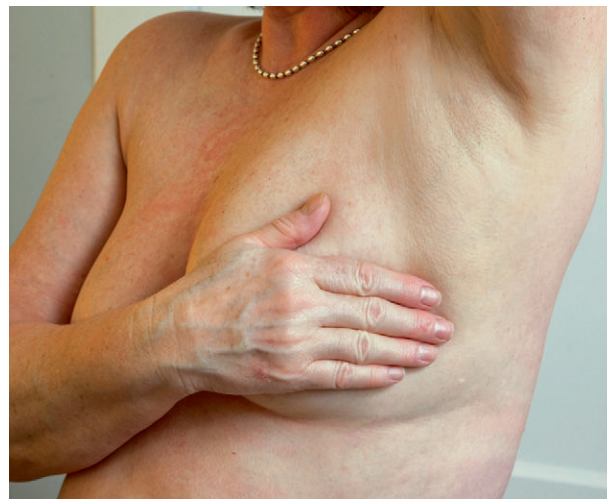


FIG. 73-4 A woman performing breast self-examination (BSE).



FIG. 73-5 Breast palpation techniques.

PATIENT'S NAME _____		Gender _____	Ethnicity/Race _____	Age _____
Weight _____		Ideal Weight _____	Marital Status _____	
HISTORY	Yes	No	Comments	
Family history of breast cancer	_____	_____	_____	
Personal history of breast cancer	_____	_____	_____	
Previous mammograms	_____	_____	_____	
Previous biopsy (findings)	_____	_____	_____	
Nipple discharge	_____	_____	_____	
Hormone use (specify)	_____	_____	_____	
BSE Practice	_____	_____	_____	
High-fat diet	_____	_____	_____	
ETOH/smoking	_____	_____	_____	
Current medications (list)	_____	_____	_____	
Age at menses _____	Age at menopause _____			
Number of pregnancies _____	_____			
COMMENTS _____				

PHYSICAL FINDINGS				
				
Mammogram Results _____				
Ultrasound Results _____				
Other Imaging Tests _____				
Biopsy/Cytology Results _____				
BSE Return Demonstration _____				
Plan _____				
PATIENT EDUCATION _____				

FIG. 73-6 A breast evaluation form.

Taking a breast history is vital. Results may be recorded on a breast evaluation form, which is a part of the medical record (Fig. 73-6). This record helps establish the woman's risk for breast disease and the need for follow-up diagnostic tests, such as mammograms, and teaching.

The physical assessment begins with inspection. The woman undresses from the waist up and first sits or stands with her hands by her sides. The examiner inspects the breasts for symmetry and size, contour, skin changes (color, texture, and venous patterns), nipple changes, and lesions.

One breast may be larger than the other, and inverted nipples are common. Ask the woman whether these findings are normal for her. Any change in symmetry may indicate a problem. The contour should be even, and the skin should have a smooth texture. Venous patterns may be visible but should be similar bilaterally. The nipples and areolae should be equal or nearly equal in size and should be a similar color. The nipples may be wrinkled or smooth, and Montgomery's tubercles on the areolae are normal. Extra nipples, although rare, are also normal and may appear anywhere on the chest. If present, they should be examined in the same manner as the normal nipples.

While the arms are by the side and relaxed, palpate the axillae (underarms) and the area above and below the clavicle

for enlarged lymph nodes. If it is necessary to move the arms away from the body, the woman should rest her arm on the examiner's to prevent flexion of the underlying muscles. The woman is then asked to raise her arms over her head, which exposes the sides and underneath portions of the breast for inspection. Finally, she is asked to place her hands on her hips and press, thus flexing the pectoral muscles. This action shows skin dimpling, retractions, or masses.

The remainder of the examination is done with the patient lying supine. Place a pillow or rolled sheet under the patient's shoulder, and the arm on that side is raised above the head. Each breast is palpated separately while the other breast remains covered. If the patient has identified a problem in one breast, the "normal" breast is examined first to establish a baseline for comparison.

For a clinical breast examination, the vertical strip, three-pressured method is the most effective technique for detecting breast cancer at its earliest stages. Every inch of the breast tissue should be palpated using light, medium, and then deep pressure. If a mass is palpated, note its position by viewing the breast as a clock face (with the 12 o'clock position being toward the woman's head) and noting the "area of the clock" where the mass is located. Palpate the tail of Spence, which extends from the upper outer quadrant of the breast into the

axilla. The supraclavicular lymph nodes are palpated for the presence of any enlarged nodes by hooking the fingers over the clavicle.

Finally, the nipple is gently compressed to detect the presence of a discharge. If a discharge is produced, note the “area of the clock” where the breast was compressed when the discharge was released. If there is a history of discharge, the woman may be able to express the discharge more successfully than the examiner can and should be asked to do so.

Discovery of a suspicious lesion or discharge during the examination requires referral to a health care provider who specializes in caring for breast disorders. Follow-up usually involves mammography and possibly ultrasound. If there is a dominant mass or high genetic risk, the woman should be referred for biopsy even if the mammogram is negative.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

As women age, the breast tissue becomes flattened and elongated and is suspended loosely from the chest wall. On palpation, the breast tissue of the older woman has a finer, more granular feel than the lobular feel in a younger woman. The inframammary ridge may be more prominent as a result of atrophy of the breast tissue. Breast examination in older adults may be easier because of tissue atrophy and relaxation of the suspensory ligaments.

Women in nursing homes and other chronic care facilities often do not have clinical breast examinations and may not be deliberately aware of the normal appearance and feel of their breasts. Teach the importance of breast self-awareness and reporting any breast changes the woman may notice. Teach BSE as an option for older women who are comfortable with and able to perform this method. Collaborate with the health care provider to ensure that residents have clinical breast examinations.

Options for High-Risk Women

Women with a personal history of breast cancer are at risk for developing a recurrence or a new breast cancer. Those with known *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genetic mutations, strong family history, or other high risk factors are also considered high-risk. Women in this category usually practice *close surveillance* as a prevention option. It is referred to as “secondary prevention” and is used to detect cancer early in the initial stages. In addition to annual mammography and clinical breast examination, high-risk women are recommended to have an annual breast MRI screening (ACS, 2010a). Close surveillance may begin as early as age 30, but evidence is limited regarding the best age at which to start screening. Encourage high-risk women to discuss their personal preferences for close surveillance with their health care providers.

Options currently available for reducing a woman's breast cancer risk are **prophylactic mastectomy** (preventive surgical removal of one or both breasts), prophylactic **oophorectomy** (removal of the ovaries), and anti-estrogen chemopreventive drugs. Although each option significantly reduces the risk for breast cancer, no option completely eliminates it. Each option has its own risks and potentially serious complications.

Even though a woman may decide to have a prophylactic mastectomy, there is a small risk that breast cancer will develop in residual breast glandular tissue because no mastectomy reliably removes all mammary tissue. Women must also understand that breast reconstruction after a prophylactic mastectomy is very different from breast augmentation. It

is a more complex surgical procedure with a greater potential for complications.

Women undergoing oophorectomy will likely experience menopausal symptoms, and they will still have some estrogen stored in body fat tissue. Antiestrogen drugs reduce breast cancer recurrence but carry other risks such as blood clots and endometrial cancer. Encourage women to carefully consider the benefits and risks of breast cancer–risk-reducing options and discuss them with their health care provider.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Often the history is taken after a mass has been discovered but before a diagnosis has been made for a woman or man with breast cancer. For some patients, the history may be obtained at the time they are seen for treatment of an identified cancer. The interview should focus on three major areas: risk factors, the breast mass, and health maintenance practices.

Record age, gender, marital status, weight, and height. Marital status and identifying the patient's primary support person provide information about who should be included in the patient's care, teaching, and support.



CULTURAL AWARENESS

Remember that some cultures do not allow the man to be part of a woman's care or only women are allowed to care for her (e.g., Arab Muslim women). Other cultures are male-predominant, and all decisions about female care are made by the man (e.g., Nigerian women).

Chapter 4 describes additional general cultural considerations related to health care.

Ask specific information on personal and family histories of breast cancer. In addition to increasing the woman's own risk, these factors also affect any sisters' or daughters' risk and should be part of later counseling.

Ask about the woman's gynecologic and obstetric history, including:

- Age at menarche
- Age at menopause
- Symptoms of menopause
- Age at first child's birth
- Number of children/pregnancies

Prolonged hormonal stimulation (e.g., early menses, late menopause) increases a woman's risk, as do birth of the first child after 30 years of age and nulliparity (having no children).

A history of the breast mass or lump reveals not only the course of the disease but also information related to health care-seeking practices and health-promoting behaviors. Ask the patient about how, when, and by whom the mass was discovered and the time between discovery and seeking care. If the patient found the mass, ask how it was discovered. The answer to this question reveals the need for discussion and teaching about health promotion practices, regardless of whether the mass proves to be cancerous. If there was a delay between discovery and seeing the health care provider, ask

CHART 73-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Assessing a Breast Mass

- Identify the location of the mass by using the “face of the clock” method.
- Describe the shape, size, and consistency of the mass.
- Assess whether the mass is fixed or movable.
- Note any skin changes around the mass, such as dimpling (*peau d’orange*), increased vascularity, nipple retraction, and ulceration.
- Assess the adjacent lymph nodes, both axillary and supraclavicular nodes.
- Ask patients if they experience pain or soreness in the area around the mass.

what caused the delay. These questions are linked to the psychosocial assessment but also reveal the length of time that the tumor has been present. Ask what procedures have been performed to diagnose the problem. Also, ask patients if they have noticed any other changes in their body within the past year. This information can help determine whether there has been obvious cancer spread. Ask especially about the presence of joint or bone pain.

Ask about the use of alcohol intake, because this is a factor that may increase breast cancer risk. Ask what prescribed and over-the-counter (OTC) drugs are used, specifically, hormonal supplements such as estrogen and natural or herbal substances that stimulate hormones. Estrogen can be taken orally, intravaginally, or via a transdermal patch. Document the type and form of hormones (birth control pills or patches, supplements) and length of use.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Document in the medical record any abnormal findings from the clinical breast examination. Describe specific information about a breast mass (Chart 73-1) such as location, using the “face of the clock” method; shape; size; consistency; and whether the mass is mobile or fixed to the surrounding tissue. Note any skin change, such as *peau d’orange* (dimpling, orange peel appearance), redness and warmth, nipple retraction, or ulceration, which can indicate advanced disease. Document the location of any enlargements of axillary and supraclavicular lymph nodes. Evaluate the presence of pain or soreness in the affected breast.

Psychosocial Assessment

A breast cancer diagnosis is usually an unanticipated event in the life of a woman who feels physically well. It initiates a sudden and distressing transition into a potentially life-threatening illness. Feelings of fear, shock, and disbelief are predominant as a woman learns about her disease and faces numerous treatment decisions. As a result, the period between diagnosis and treatment is one of the most demanding and stressful times for women with breast cancer (Lally, 2010). Use psychosocial interventions and appropriate therapeutic communication skills to assist women to cope effectively during this time.

Assess the patient’s need for information. Some people may not be ready for a lot of information at first. Most want to know how advanced the disease is, the likelihood of cure, treatment options and side effects, how treatment will affect

their life and self-image, how family or partners will be affected, and what is required for home self-management. A previous experience with cancer, especially with other people who had breast cancer, influences the reactions to the disease. Ask patients and family members whether they have known anyone with breast cancer, and explore their feelings about the disease. Provide current information about the stage of the disease and treatment options. Determine if a referral to a breast cancer support group would be helpful. Talking with someone who has been through the experience is particularly helpful in dealing with the emotional aspects of the disease.

Also assess the patient for problems related to *sexuality*. Sexual dysfunction affects up to 90% of women treated for breast cancer, although it is an issue seldom discussed between patients and health care providers (Dizon, 2009). Lack of libido (sexual desire) related to hormonal changes, psychological distress, and severe anxiety are commonly experienced by women with breast cancer. If the patient does not discuss sexual concerns voluntarily, ask about the frequency of and satisfaction with sexual relations with her partner. Use resources that provide education about alternative expressions of intimacy and a focus on pleasure rather than performance. Refer the patient and her partner to counseling if appropriate.

Laboratory Assessment

The diagnosis of breast cancer relies on pathologic examination of tissue from the breast mass. After the diagnosis of cancer is established, laboratory tests, including pathologic study of the lymph nodes, help detect possible metastases. Elevated liver enzyme levels indicate possible liver metastases, and increased serum calcium and alkaline phosphatase levels suggest bone metastases.

Imaging Assessment

Mammography is a sensitive screening tool for breast cancer. The uniqueness of this test results from its ability to reveal preclinical lesions (masses too small to be palpated manually). Traditional film mammography is increasingly being replaced by *digital mammography* in most Western countries (Skaane, 2009). *Digital mammography* has the advantage of being able to read, file, and transmit mammograms electronically. Studies have shown a slightly greater benefit from digital mammography in women who have dense breasts, such as those younger than 50 years. Patient preparation and the procedure for mammography are discussed in Chapter 72.

Ultrasonography of the breast is an additional diagnostic tool used to clarify findings on mammography. If the mammogram reveals a lesion, ultrasonography is helpful in differentiating a fluid-filled cyst from a solid mass. Mammography screening combined with ultrasound is also more effective for detecting cancers in women with dense breasts (Nothacker et al., 2009).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) may be used to better examine suspicious areas found by a mammogram or for women with dense breasts. It can help determine the actual size of the cancer and look for any other cancers in the breast (ACS, 2010b). Some facilities may offer other types of imaging tests such as *breast-specific gamma imaging (BSGI)* and *positron emission mammography (PEM)*. These tests require the patient to be injected with a small amount of tracing agent that concentrates in the tumor area if present. The agent

emits x-rays that the imaging system can detect. In some cases, these tests detect cancers not seen with traditional imaging.

If the patient has an invasive breast cancer, other imaging tests may be done to rule out metastases. A chest x-ray is done to screen for lung metastases. Bone, liver, and brain scans and computed tomography (CT) scans of the chest and abdomen can reveal distant metastases.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Whereas imaging techniques serve as tools for screening and more precise visualization of potential breast cancers, *breast biopsy (pathologic examination of the breast tissue) is the only definitive way to diagnose breast cancer*. Breast tissue is obtained by one of several types of biopsies (see Chapter 72). Tissue samples are analyzed by a pathologist to determine the presence of breast cancer. If breast cancer is identified, it is classified according to the size and type of breast cancer, the histologic grade, and the type of receptors on the cells. These characteristics are used to guide treatment. For example, a small, noninvasive breast cancer may be treated only with lumpectomy and radiation, whereas a larger, aggressive tumor (one with a high histologic grade) may be treated with a mastectomy and chemotherapy, followed by radiation. Cancer cells that contain estrogen receptors (*ER positive*) or progesterone receptors (*PR positive*) have a better prognosis and usually respond to hormonal therapy. If the type of breast cancer is *HER2*, or one in which the *neu* gene product is overexpressed, it may be treated successfully with trastuzumab (Herceptin), which is a breast cancer *targeted therapy* for this specific type.

Most women, even those with very small tumors, receive some sort of treatment in addition to surgery for breast cancer. Research has focused on ways to predict clinical outcomes so that low-risk women may avoid unnecessary treatments. Gene expression profiling systems, such as Oncotype DX and MammaPrint, have been developed to help predict clinical outcomes by analyzing genes in breast cancer tissue. Some clinicians use this information in addition to the pathologic analysis for guiding treatment decisions. However, appropriate treatment recommendations are often made without using these tests (Sotiriou & Pusztai, 2009). More research is underway to develop new systems for predicting outcomes that focus on molecular subgroups in breast cancer.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for breast cancer include:

1. Ineffective Coping related to unanticipated breast cancer diagnosis
2. Potential for metastasis of cancer to other parts of the body

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Developing Coping Strategies

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with breast cancer is expected to report the use of methods to help increase coping ability and reduce anxiety. The patient will maintain relationships and participate as an active partner in management of her disease.

Interventions. The anxiety and uncertainty for the patient with breast cancer begin the moment a lump is discovered or when a mammogram reveals an abnormality. These feelings

may be related to past experiences and personal associations with the disease. Assess the patient's perceptions of his or her own situation. Allow the patient to ventilate these feelings even if a diagnosis has not been established.

If the mass has been diagnosed as cancer, many people feel a partial sense of relief to be dealing with a known entity. A feeling of shock or disbelief usually occurs. It is difficult to accept a diagnosis of cancer when one feels basically well. Patients and their families or significant others deal in individual ways with the mix of feelings. Flexibility is the key to nursing care. Adjust your approach to care as the patient's emotional state changes. Those who have an interval between the diagnosis and treatment, during which they actively participate in the choice of treatment, cope more effectively after surgery, no matter which treatment is chosen.

An integral part of the plan to meet these emotional needs is the use of outside resources. Health care providers working with breast cancer may know other patients willing to make a preoperative visit. For example, the patient who is worried in particular about the side effects of radiation therapy may benefit more from talking to someone who has undergone radiation than from talking to the nurse or health care provider. Be sure to assess his or her preference.

Assess the patient's need for knowledge. Some may want to read and discuss any available information. Provide accurate information, and clarify any misinformation the patient may have received by the media, on the Internet, or from family and friends. The American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org) and Breastcancer.org (www.breastcancer.org) are two Internet sources that provide evidence-based information in language a lay person can understand.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Women are exposed to many misconceptions and much misinformation about breast cancer through various media. Clarify misconceptions and provide current information regarding risk factors, screening recommendations, and treatment for breast cancer.

Decreasing the Risk for Metastasis

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with breast cancer is expected to remain free of metastases or recurrence of disease, if possible. If cancer recurs, the patient will experience optimal health outcomes, including potential palliation and end-of-life care.

Interventions. There are many surgical and nonsurgical options for breast cancer treatment. Because of the various options, the patient with breast cancer often faces difficult decisions. Although patients are living longer with metastatic disease, the 5-year survival rate remains low. Newer therapeutic regimens are needed to improve outcomes for these patients (Liu et al., 2010). Once cancer is diagnosed, the extent and location of metastases determine the overall therapeutic strategy. The emphasis of breast cancer treatment is on preventing or stopping the spread of tumor cells that leads to distant metastasis. Treatment is tailored specifically to each patient, taking into account other health problems and the patient's ability to tolerate a particular therapy.

Nonsurgical Management. For patients with breast cancer at a stage for which surgery is the main treatment,

follow-up with adjuvant (in addition to surgery) radiation, chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or targeted therapy is commonly prescribed. For those who cannot have surgery or whose cancer is too advanced, these therapies are used to promote comfort (palliation). These options are discussed in the Adjuvant Therapy section on p. 1605.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Women with breast cancer often cope with distressing symptoms related to the disease itself or the side effects of chemotherapy, radiation, and hormonal therapy. Common symptoms associated with these therapies include pain, nausea, hot flashes, anxiety, depression, and fatigue. Physical and emotional symptoms associated with breast cancer may be eased with the use of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM). Up to 80% of women use some form of CAM during breast cancer treatment (Wyatt et al., 2010). The most frequently used types of CAM are biologically based therapies such as vitamins, special cancer diets, and herbal therapy. Prayer is also widely used. Other types of CAM are mind-body or body-based such as guided imagery and massage. Encourage women to seek a practitioner with a certification or license for the specific type of CAM therapy. In some states, a certification or license is required for acupuncture, chiropractic therapy, massage, and shiatsu. Some types of CAM can be self-taught or done alone after a few sessions of instruction. Table 73-3 lists complementary therapies for specific symptoms associated with breast cancer and its treatments.

There is no proven benefit to using CAM alone as a cure for breast cancer. Therefore *nurses must ensure that patient choices can be safely integrated with conventional treatment for breast cancer* (Wyatt et al., 2010). Encourage patients who are interested in trying CAM therapies to check with their health care provider before using them. Refer patients to reliable resources for information about CAM. The website *breast-cancer.org* provides accurate information about complementary therapies and the extent to which they have been researched in breast cancer patients. Cost may be a factor in decision making, since not all insurances provide coverage for

CAMs. Teach the patient that all ingested CAM agents potentially risk interaction with conventional drugs.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach women that some complementary and alternative therapies can have risks and side effects for women with breast cancer. Acupuncture should be avoided in women experiencing lymphedema, bleeding disorders, or a low white blood cell count from chemotherapy. Soy and soy products also may not be safe for women with breast cancer (see Evidence-Based Practice box below).

Surgical Management. The most common types of breast surgeries are shown in Fig. 73-7. Although controversy exists concerning the best treatment for breast cancer, experts agree that the mass itself should be removed to reduce the risk for local recurrence. A large tumor is sometimes treated with chemotherapy, called **neoadjuvant therapy**, to shrink the tumor before it is surgically removed. An advantage of this therapy is that cancers can be removed by lumpectomy rather than mastectomy.

Axillary lymph nodes are analyzed for the presence of cancer and staging purposes. Axillary lymph node dissection (ALND) is usually done when there are palpable axillary lymph nodes or when cancer is suspected to be at a later stage. Sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB) is a much less invasive approach now preferred by most surgeons for analyzing lymph nodes in early-stage breast cancers with low to moderate risk for lymph node involvement. In this method, the sentinel lymph node is identified during breast surgery by injecting the breast with radioisotope and/or dye that travels via lymphatic pathways to the sentinel lymph node. The nodes that take up the dye (or give off a certain level of radiation picked up by a handheld counter) are removed and examined for the presence of cancer cells. It is believed that

TABLE 73-3 COMPLEMENTARY AND ALTERNATIVE MEDICINE (CAM) FOR BREAST CANCER

SYMPTOM	CAM
Physical	
Pain	Acupuncture, chiropractic therapy, hypnosis, massage, music, reiki, shiatsu
Nausea/vomiting	Acupuncture, aromatherapy, ginger, hypnosis, progressive muscle relaxation, shiatsu
Fatigue	Acupuncture, massage, meditation, reiki, tai chi, yoga
Hot flashes	Acupuncture, black cohosh, flaxseed
Muscle tension	Aromatherapy, massage, shiatsu
Emotional	
Anxiety/stress/fear	Aromatherapy, guided imagery, hypnosis, journaling, massage, meditation, music therapy, progressive muscle relaxation, prayer, support groups, tai chi, yoga
Depression	Aromatherapy, yoga, journaling, progressive muscle relaxation

EVIDENCE-BASED PRACTICE

Is There a Relationship Between the Intake of Dietary Soy and Breast Cancer Risk?

Enderlin, C., Coleman, E., Stewart, C., & Hakkak, R. (2009). Dietary soy intake and breast cancer risk. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(5), 531-539.

The relationship between dietary soy and breast cancer risk was studied using a meta-synthesis of findings from health research articles published from January 1997 through June 2008. A total of 364 publications were located, and 34 studies met the criteria for the review. The researchers found that naturally-occurring dietary intake of soy food or its components appears safe for women without breast cancer; however, the safety of high supplements of soy or its components is less certain.

Level of Evidence: 1

The authors performed a meta-synthesis of findings from multiple studies to answer the research question.

Commentary: Implications for Research and Practice

Nurses should become more knowledgeable about soy foods and supplements. When assessing dietary intake, ask women about soy and soy food consumption. Women with breast cancer or those at a known or high risk for breast cancer should avoid including high intake of soy dietary supplements until their possible effects are better understood.

if cancer cells have traveled through the lymph channels, the cells will lodge in the sentinel nodes. Travel beyond these nodes to higher-level nodes may occur as a secondary event. Therefore the absence of cancer cells in the sentinel nodes is an indicator that no other nodes in the regional area are involved.

Preoperative Care. Care of the patient facing surgery for breast cancer focuses on psychological preparation and

preoperative teaching. Priority nursing interventions are directed toward relieving anxiety and providing information to increase patient knowledge. *Include the spouse or partner, who may be experiencing similar stress and confusion, in the health teaching, unless the patient's culture does not permit this approach.*

Review the type of procedure planned. Use open-ended questions (e.g., "What type of surgery are you having? Can

NORMAL ANATOMY

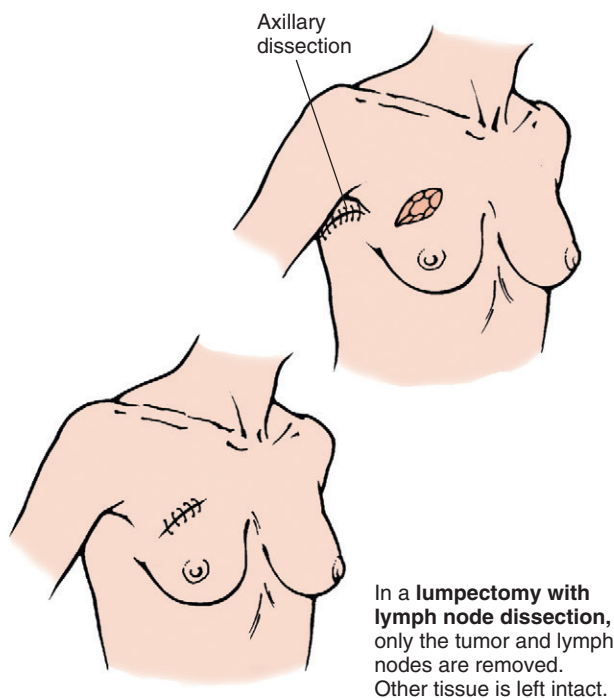
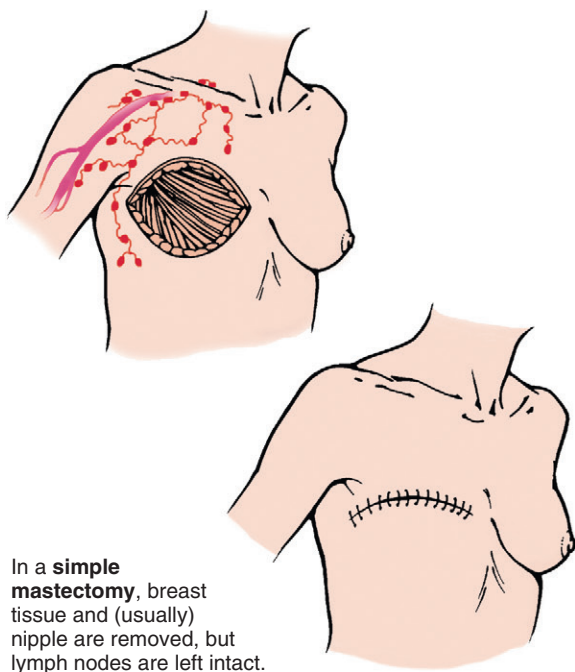
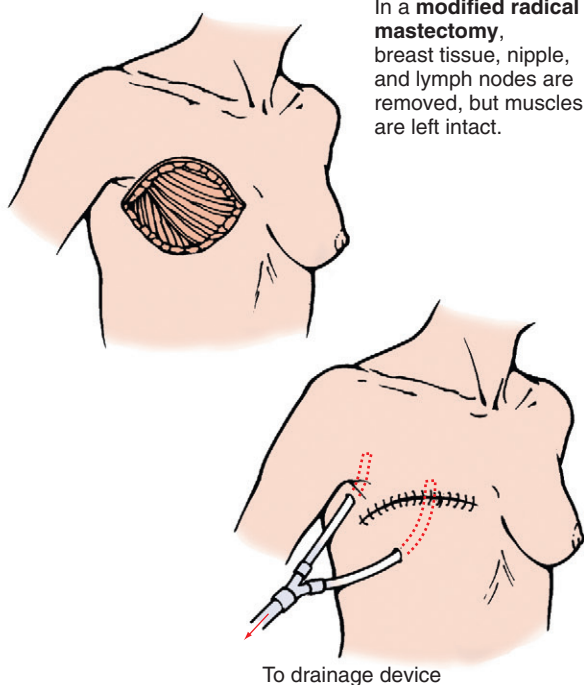
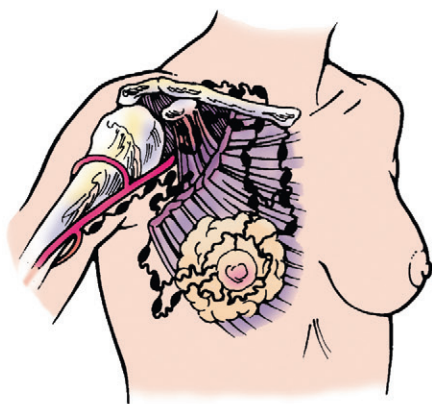


FIG. 73-7 Surgical management of breast cancer.

you explain what will happen?”) to assess the current level of knowledge. Provide postoperative information, including:

- The need for a drainage tube
- The location of the incision
- Mobility restrictions
- The length of the hospital stay (if any)
- The possibility of adjuvant therapy
- General preoperative and postoperative information needed by any surgical patient (see [Chapters 16 and 18](#))

Supplement teaching with written or electronic (DVD) materials for the patient and family to take home as references. This information should include who to call in case there are any complications. Address body image issues before surgery to correct misconceptions about appearance after surgery. If available, suggest that patients and their caregivers attend classes before surgery in an ambulatory care setting, such as a breast cancer center, to promote successful early discharge from the hospital. Programs that provide emotional support, information, and opportunities for discussion related to sexuality, body image, and preoperative and postoperative care enhance the recovery of the short-stay mastectomy patient.

Operative Procedures. During **breast-conserving surgery**, such as a *lumpectomy*, the surgeon removes the tumor and a small amount of tissue rather than the entire breast. This procedure is used primarily for stage I and stage II breast cancer. *Margins* refer to the distance between the tumor and the edge of the tissue. The desired outcome of breast-conserving surgery is to obtain *negative margins* in which no cancer cells extend to the edge of the tissue. Typically, radiation therapy follows to kill any residual tumor cells.

Breast-conserving procedures are usually performed in same-day surgical settings. The cosmetic results of these surgeries are good to excellent, and the psychological benefits of avoiding breast removal are significant for patients who choose this option.

The **modified radical mastectomy** does *not* conserve the breast; the affected breast is completely removed. Indications for a modified radical mastectomy include multi-centric disease (tumor is present in different quadrants of the breast), inability to have radiation therapy, presence of a large tumor in a small breast, and patient preference. The breast tissue, skin, and axillary nodes are removed, and the underlying muscles are left in place. The typical incision is a 4- to 5-inch-long elliptic incision from the midchest to the axilla (see [Fig. 73-7](#)). If reconstruction is to follow the procedure, the plastic surgeon may recommend a different location for the incision. When reconstruction is to be performed at the same time as the mastectomy, less-invasive techniques, such as incising a 1½-inch flap of skin around the nipple (excising the same amount of breast tissue as with conventional mastectomy), may be performed. Skin flaps or expanders may be used to create a breast mound at the time of the original procedure.

Postoperative Care. Before the patient returns from surgery, inform the staff to avoid using the affected arm for measuring blood pressure, giving injections, or drawing blood. He or she returns from the postanesthesia care unit (PACU) as soon as vital signs return to baseline levels and if no complications have occurred. Assess vital signs on a schedule of decreasing frequency, such as every 30 minutes for two times, every hour for two times, and then every 4 hours. During these checks, assess the dressing for bleeding.



FIG. 73-8 Jackson-Pratt drain in place after a mastectomy.

During a *modified radical mastectomy*, the surgeon places one or two drainage tubes, usually Jackson-Pratt drains, under the skin flaps and attaches the tubes to a small collection chamber ([Fig. 73-8](#)). Gentle suction is exerted, and fluid that would accumulate under the flaps and delay healing is collected. Various drains are available, but all allow the drainage to be seen and measured. When taking vital signs, monitor for the amount and color of drainage. Add this information to the intake and output record. Patients undergoing a *lumpectomy* may also have drainage tubes (usually Jackson-Pratt drains) placed if the lump is large or if axillary node dissection is performed.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After breast surgery, observe the surgical wound for signs of swelling and infection throughout recovery. With short hospital stays, drainage tubes are usually removed about 1 to 3 weeks after hospital discharge when the patient returns for an office visit. The drainage amount should be less than 25 mL in a 24-hour period. Inform the patient that tube removal may be uncomfortable although these tubes lie just under the skin. Provide or suggest analgesia before they are removed.

Assess the patient's position to ensure that the drainage tubes or collection device is not pulled or kinked. The patient should have the head of the bed up at least 30 degrees with the affected arm (the arm on the same side as the axillary dissection) elevated on a pillow while awake. Keeping the affected arm elevated promotes lymphatic fluid return after removal of lymph nodes and channels. Provide other basic comfort measures, such as repositioning and analgesics as prescribed on a regular basis until pain ceases. Patient-controlled analgesia may be used for some patients for a short time depending on the type of surgery that was performed.

CHART 73-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Postmastectomy Exercises

Hand Wall Climbing

- Face the wall, and put the palms of your hands flat against the wall at shoulder level.
- Flex your fingers so that your hands slowly “walk” up the wall.
- Stop when your arms are fully extended.
- Slowly “walk” your hands back down the wall until they return to shoulder level.

Pulley Exercise

- Drape a 6-foot-long rope over a shower curtain rod or over the top of a door. If you use a door for this exercise, have someone put a nail or hook at the top of the door so that the rope does not slip off.
- Grab the ends of the rope, one in each hand, and extend your arms out to your sides until they are straight.
- Keeping your arms straight, pull down with your left arm to raise your right arm as high as you can.
- Pull down with your right arm to raise your left arm as high as you can.

Rope Turning

- Tie a rope to the knob of a closed door.
- Hold the other end of the rope and step back from the door until your arm is almost straight out in front of you.
- Swinging the rope in a circle. Start with small circles, and gradually increase to larger circles as you become more flexible.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Assess the incision and flap of the post-mastectomy patient for signs of bleeding, infection, and poor tissue perfusion. Document and report abnormal findings to the surgeon immediately!

The hospital stay after breast surgery is short, often same-day or just overnight, and recovery is usually not complicated. Because some managed care plans will not authorize an overnight stay in the hospital after a mastectomy, several states have enacted legislation mandating inpatient benefits. The patient who chooses an early discharge should have a home care visit within 24 hours of the discharge.

Ambulation and a regular diet are resumed by the day after surgery. While the patient is walking, the arm on the affected side may need to be supported at first. Gradually, the arm should be allowed to hang straight by the side. Instruct the patient to avoid the hunched-back position with the arm flexed because of the risk for elbow contracture. Beginning exercises that do not stress the incision can usually be started on the first day after surgery. These exercises include squeezing the affected hand around a soft, round object (a ball or rolled washcloth) and flexion/extension of the elbow. The progression to more strenuous exercises depends on the subsequent procedures planned (e.g., reconstruction) and the surgeon's prescription.

As soon as the patient is ambulatory and surgical pain is under control, he or she is discharged to home. Common instructions for exercises after mastectomy are listed in [Chart 73-2](#).



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse is assigned to care for a client immediately after breast-conserving surgery for cancer. What is the priority for care of the client at this time?

- Teach the client to sleep in the prone position each night.
- Empty wound drains and record the output amount.
- Remind the client how to perform breast self-examination.
- Monitor the incision and flap for adequate tissue perfusion.

Breast Reconstruction. Breast reconstruction after or during mastectomy for women is common with few complications. Patients consult with the plastic surgeon to discuss the type of reconstruction, timing of the procedure, and technique desired. Many women prefer reconstruction immediately after mastectomy using their own tissue (autogenous reconstruction). Breast reconstruction at the time of mastectomy, both autogenous and prosthetic, may lessen the psychological strain associated with undergoing a mastectomy.

The surgeon should offer the option of breast reconstruction before surgery is performed. If the woman does not choose immediate reconstructive surgery, a temporary prosthesis can be used. Refer the patient to the American Cancer Society's Reach to Recovery program (www.cancer.org). In this program, a volunteer who has had breast cancer surgery visits the woman at home, offering information on breast forms, clothing, coping with breast cancer, and possible reconstructive options. For this intervention to be as helpful as possible, the volunteer should be about the same age as the patient and have experienced the same surgical procedure.

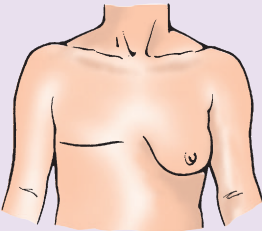
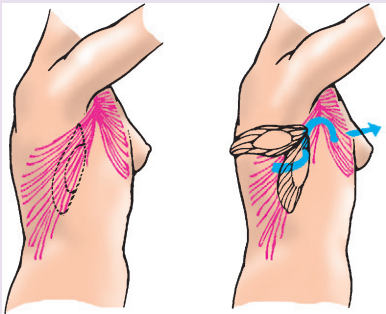
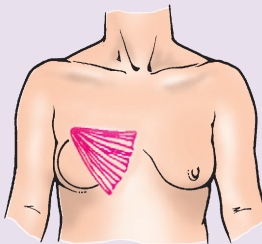
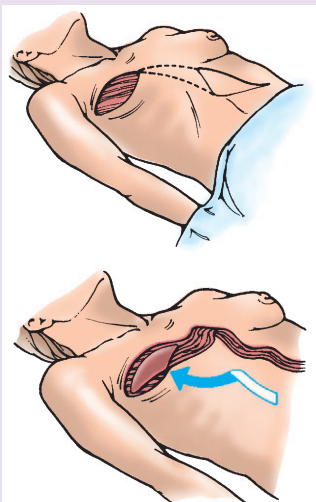
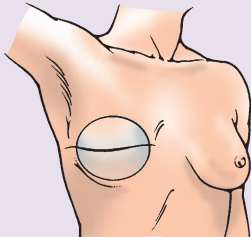
Evaluate the woman's level of satisfaction with her prosthesis several weeks after surgery. Assess her attitude by asking about future plans for restoring appearance. Although reconstruction is not appropriate for some women and others may not be interested in it, the surgeon should discuss the indications and contraindications, advantages and disadvantages, and typical recovery. If immediate reconstruction is chosen, the surgeon should be aware of this before surgery so that plans can be coordinated with those of the plastic surgeon.

Several procedures are available for restoring the appearance of the breast ([Table 73-4](#)). Reconstruction may begin during the original operative procedure or later in one to several stages. Common types of breast reconstruction are:

- Breast expanders (saline or gel)
- Autologous reconstruction using the patient's own skin, fat, and muscle

Breast expanders are the most common method of breast reconstruction used today in the United States. A tissue expander is a balloon-like device with a resealable metal port that is placed under the pectoralis muscle. A small amount of normal saline is injected intraoperatively into the expander to partially inflate it. The patient then receives additional weekly saline injections for about 6 to 8 weeks until the expander is fully inflated. When full expansion is achieved, the tissue expander is then exchanged for a permanent implant during outpatient surgery. The permanent implant is filled with either saline or silicone gel. Despite earlier claims that silicone gel caused autoimmune diseases like lupus and arthritis, silicone implants have been safely used in the majority of women who choose this type of breast implant.

TABLE 73-4 EXAMPLES OF BREAST RECONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES

PROCEDURE	DESCRIPTION	PROCEDURE	DESCRIPTION
Implantation	An implant matching the size of the other breast is placed under the muscle on the operative side to create a breast mound.	Myocutaneous flaps	A flap of skin, fat, and muscle is transferred from the donor site to the operative area. The flap contains an appropriate amount of fat to match the other breast and is similar in appearance to breast tissue. A blood supply is established by reanastomosis of vessels from the operative area to those with the flap when possible. A new nipple may be created with tissue from areas such as the labia or upper, inner thigh. Nipples can also be created by tattooing.
			
			
Tissue expansion	A tissue expander is placed under the muscle and gradually expanded with saline to stretch the overlying skin and create a pocket. After several weeks, the tissue expander is exchanged for an implant.		
			

Autologous reconstruction using the patient's own skin, fat, and muscle is advantageous because the donor site tissue is similar in consistency to the natural breast. Therefore the results more closely resemble a real breast as compared with implant reconstruction. Flap donor sites include the latissimus dorsi flap (back muscle); transverse rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap, known as the *TRAM flap* (abdominal muscle); and the gluteal flap (buttock muscle). Reconstruction of the nipple-areola complex is the last stage in the reconstruction of the breast. If necessary, a new nipple may be created with other body tissue, such as from the labia, abdomen, or inner thigh.

Women who have had a mastectomy and breast reconstruction in one breast should have close surveillance breast

cancer screening in the contralateral (opposite) breast, including imaging with mammography or mammography and MRI. Mammography and MRI are not recommended to be routinely done in reconstructed breasts because most local recurrences of breast cancer in the residual tissue are palpable during clinical breast examination (Zakhireh et al., 2010). Nursing care of the woman who has undergone breast reconstruction is outlined in [Chart 73-3](#).

Adjuvant Therapy. The decision to follow the original surgical procedure with **adjuvant therapy** (in addition to surgery) for breast cancer is based on:

- The stage of the disease
- The patient's age and menopausal status
- Patient preferences

CHART 73-3 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Postoperative Care of the Patient After Breast Reconstruction

- Assess the incision and flap for signs of infection (excessive redness, drainage, odor) during dressing changes.
- Assess the incision and flap for signs of poor tissue perfusion (duskiness, decreased capillary refill) during dressing changes.
- Avoid pressure on the flap and suture lines by positioning the patient on her nonoperative side and avoiding tight clothing.
- Monitor and measure drainage in collection devices, such as Jackson-Pratt drains.
- Teach the patient to return to her usual activity level gradually and to avoid heavy lifting.
- Remind the patient to avoid sleeping in the prone position.
- Teach the patient to avoid participation in contact sports or other activities that could cause trauma to the chest.
- Teach the patient to minimize pressure on the breast during sexual activity.
- Remind the patient to refrain from driving until advised by the physician.
- Remind the patient to ask at the 6-week postoperative visit when full activity can be resumed.
- Reassure the patient that optimal appearance may not occur for 3 to 6 months postoperatively.
- If implants have been inserted, teach the proper method of breast massage to enhance expansion and prevent capsule formation (consult with the physician).
- Emphasize breast self-awareness; if the patient performs breast self-examination (BSE); review her technique
- Remind the patient of the importance of clinical breast examination and follow-up surveillance by her physician.

- Pathologic examination
- Hormone receptor status
- Presence of a known genetic predisposition

Adjuvant therapy for breast cancer consists of radiation therapy and drug therapy. The purpose of radiation therapy is to reduce the risk for local recurrence of breast cancer. Drug therapy includes chemotherapy, targeted therapy, and/or hormonal therapy. These drugs destroy breast cancer cells that may be present anywhere in the body. They are typically delivered after surgery for breast cancer, although **neoadjuvant** chemotherapy may be given to reduce the size of a tumor before surgery. Hormonal therapy is a chemoprevention option for high-risk women with a personal history of breast cancer.

Radiation Therapy. Radiation therapy is administered after breast-conserving surgery to kill breast cancer cells that may remain near the site of the original tumor. This therapy can be delivered to the whole breast or to only part of the breast. Until recently, the traditional method has been whole-breast irradiation delivered by external beam radiation over a period of 5 to 6 weeks. More recently, partial breast irradiation (PBI) has become an option for women with early-stage breast cancer. The use of brachytherapy (radioactive implants) has been increasing steadily, accounting for approximately 10% of radiation therapy administered to breast cancer patients (Smith et al., 2009). The advantage of this type of radiation is that it is delivered over a much shorter time interval, eliminating the need for daily trips for treatment. However, few long-term studies exist showing the effectiveness of brachytherapy compared with traditional radiation therapy. The

types of methods available for delivering *partial-breast irradiation* include:

- Interstitial brachytherapy, in which several catheters loaded with a radioactive source are inserted at the lumpectomy cavity and surrounding margin, is given over a period of 4 to 5 days.
- Balloon brachytherapy, also known as *MammoSite*, involves the use of a single balloon-tipped catheter that is surgically placed near the tumor bed. The catheter is loaded with a radiation source and inflated to conform to the total cavity. Ten total treatments are given, with at least 6 hours between each treatment.
- Intraoperative radiation therapy is the most accelerated form of partial breast irradiation. It utilizes a high single dose of radiation delivered during the lumpectomy surgery.

Nursing care for the patient undergoing radiation therapy includes patient education and side effect management. Skin changes are a major side effect during this therapy (see [Chapter 24](#)). If brachytherapy is planned, instruct patients about the procedure. Assure them that they will be radioactive only while the radiation source is dwelling inside the breast tissue.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach women undergoing brachytherapy for breast cancer that radiation is contained in the temporary implant. The risk for others to be exposed to radiation is very small. Body fluids and items contacted by patients with brachytherapy are not radioactive. However, during the time the radiation is delivered, it is recommended they limit visitors, including pregnant women and children.

Chemotherapy. Chemotherapy for breast cancer is delivered systemically. Its purpose is to kill breast cancer cells that may have left the original tumor and moved to more distant sites. Chemotherapy is the standard of care for women with node-positive cancer or with a tumor larger than 1 cm (Maughan et al., 2010). As more scientific evidence emerges about the biology of tumors, it is hoped that the need for chemotherapy may be more specifically determined. Chemotherapy may be given before surgery to reduce the size of the tumor. [Table 73-5](#) lists common agents used in breast cancer and their mechanism of action. They are usually delivered in four to six courses of treatment. Combination regimens of chemotherapy have been demonstrated to be more effective than single-agent treatments. A common chemotherapy regimen for breast cancer treatment is Cytoxan, Adriamycin, and 5-FU (CAF), but several other types and combinations may be given. In early-stage breast cancer, chemotherapy regimens lower the risk for breast cancer recurrence. In advanced breast cancer, chemotherapy regimens reduce cancer size in many patients. Regimens that contain anthracyclines and taxanes have a small benefit over other chemotherapies for some types of breast cancer (Maughan et al., 2010).

Most chemotherapy for breast cancer is delivered via the central IV route such as an implantable venous access device (port-a-cath). Nurses must be very proficient in the preparation and administration of chemotherapy drugs and knowledgeable about various venous access devices. They must also be able to manage the distressing symptoms associated with

side effects of chemotherapy. [Chapter 24](#) discusses general nursing management of alopecia, nausea and vomiting, mucositis, and bone marrow suppression. Fatigue and sleep disturbance are often major concerns as side effects of chemotherapy.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Teach patients undergoing chemotherapy with anthracyclines such as doxorubicin (Adriamycin) to be aware of cardiotoxic effects. Instruct them to report excessive fatigue, shortness of breath, chronic cough, and edema to the health care provider.

TABLE 73-5 DRUG THERAPY FOR BREAST CANCER

CATEGORY	MECHANISM OF ACTION	AGENTS
Chemotherapy		
Anthracyclines	Inhibit DNA synthesis in susceptible cells	Doxorubicin (Adriamycin) (A) Epirubicin (Ellence) (E)
Taxanes	Inhibit microtubule network in rapidly dividing cells	Docetaxel (Taxotere) (D) Paclitaxel (Taxol) (P) Paclitaxel, protein-bound (Abraxane)
Alkylating agents	Interfere with the replication of susceptible cells	Cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan) (C)
Antimetabolites	Inhibit DNA synthesis and cellular replication in rapidly dividing cells	Methotrexate (Mexate) (M) Fluorouracil (5-FU) (F) Capecitabine (Xeloda)
Targeted Therapy	Selectively target critical steps in the processes required for tumor growth, viability, or invasion	Trastuzumab (Herceptin)
Hormonal Therapy		
LH-RH agonists	Block release of LH and FSH, thereby preventing ovarian production of estrogen	Goserelin (Zoladex) Leuprolide (Lupron)
Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs)	Bind to estrogen receptors; have both agonist and antagonist properties (selectively block action of estrogen in the breast but not in other organs)	Tamoxifen (Nolvadex) Raloxifene (Evista)
Aromatase inhibitors	Prevent conversion of adrenal and ovarian androgens to estrogens by inhibiting the aromatase enzyme	Anastrozole (Arimidex) Letrozole (Femara) Exemestane (Aromasin)
Estrogen receptor down-regulators	Induce degradation of estrogen receptor	Fulvestrant (Faslodex)

FSH, Follicle-stimulating hormone; LH, luteinizing hormone; LH-RH, luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone.

Chemotherapy is unpleasant and expensive and can have life-threatening short-term and long-term side effects. Because more women are living longer with breast cancer, long-term effects are increasingly emerging. Although targeted therapy is effective with fewer side effects, some side effects are nevertheless life threatening. For example, cardiac toxicity is a risk associated with the use of Herceptin, particularly when it is combined with other chemotherapy. Chemotherapy and ovarian suppression can result in infertility, a devastating effect for women of childbearing age. Hormonal therapy can result in long-term ill effects from bone loss. Discuss patient concerns, provide accurate information, and assist him or her in decision making.

Targeted Therapy. Targeted cancer therapies are drugs that target specific characteristics of cancer cells, such as a protein, an enzyme, or the formation of new blood vessels. The advantage of targeted therapy over traditional chemotherapy is that targeted therapy does not harm normal, healthy cells and therefore it has fewer side effects. The best known targeted therapy for breast cancer is the monoclonal antibody *trastuzumab* (Herceptin). This drug targets the *HER2/neu* gene product in breast cancer cells. The combination of trastuzumab and anthracyclines increases the risk for cardiotoxicity and must be used with caution (Maughan et al., 2010).

Bevacizumab (Avastin) inhibits tumor growth by targeting the growth factor *VEGF* and stopping the formation of new blood vessels that are needed to nourish the tumor. It is a drug used in several types of cancer. However, a recent review of bevacizumab by a panel of the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) showed there was no significant improvement in life span for patients with metastatic breast cancer and recommended against the use of bevacizumab in metastatic breast cancer (Food and Drug Administration [FDA], 2010).

Hormonal Therapy. The purpose of hormonal therapy is to reduce the estrogen available to breast tumors to stop or prevent their growth. *Premenopausal* women whose main estrogen source is the ovaries may benefit from *LH-RH agonists* that inhibit estrogen synthesis. These drugs include leuprolide (Lupron) and goserelin (Zoladex), which suppress the hypothalamus from making luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LH-RH). When LH-RH is inhibited, the ovaries do not produce estrogen. Although the suppression of ovarian function decreases breast cancer risk, the drastic drop in estrogen causes significant menopausal symptoms. Therefore the decision to use these drugs is not made lightly.

Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), on the other hand, do not affect ovarian function. Rather, they block the effect of estrogen in women who have estrogen receptor (ER)-positive breast cancer. SERMs are also used as chemoprevention in women at high risk for breast cancer and in women with advanced breast cancer. Tamoxifen is recommended to be taken for 5 years to achieve the best benefit for risk reduction. Common side effects of SERMs include hot flashes and weight gain. Rare but serious side effects of these drugs include endometrial cancer and thromboembolic events.

Aromatase inhibitors (AIs) are used in *postmenopausal* women whose main source of estrogen is not the ovaries but, rather, body fat. AIs reduce estrogen levels by inhibiting the conversion of androgen to estrogen through the action of the

enzyme *aromatase*. AIs are beneficial when given to postmenopausal women after 5 years of treatment with tamoxifen. A major side effect of the AIs, not seen with tamoxifen, is loss of bone density. Women taking AIs are candidates for bone-strengthening drugs and must be closely monitored for osteoporosis. Fulvestrant (Faslodex), a second-line hormonal therapy for postmenopausal women with advanced breast cancer, is used after other hormonal treatments have stopped working.

Stem Cell Transplantation. Autologous or allogeneic stem cell transplantation is an option for patients with a high risk for recurrence or who have advanced disease. **Autologous** bone marrow transplantation (taken from the patient's bone marrow), peripheral blood stem cell transplantation (taken from circulating blood), or **allogeneic** bone marrow transplantation (taken from a healthy donor's bone marrow or peripheral blood) is performed as a means of rescue therapy after very high doses of chemotherapy. The general care of the patient undergoing bone marrow or stem cell transplantation is discussed in [Chapter 42](#).

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Safety

A 39-year-old African-American woman who is an executive for a major technology business is diagnosed with breast cancer and scheduled for a lumpectomy and radiation therapy. She tells you that she regrets that her life has not allowed time for having children. She is currently single but has a male partner whom she has been dating for 3 years. After surgery, she tells the nurse that she plans on going back to work in a week or two but that she is very anxious about her future.

1. What evidence-based risk factors does this patient have?
2. What discharge instructions will you provide for her and why?
3. What will you teach the patient about radiation therapy to maintain her safety?
4. How might you help allay the patient's anxiety?

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

In collaboration with the case manager, make the appropriate referrals for care after discharge. Preoperative teaching and arrangements for home care management and referrals (Reach to Recovery, social services, home care) can be started before surgery or other treatment.

The patient who has undergone breast surgery can be discharged to the home setting unless other physical disabilities exist. Some are discharged the day after surgery with Jackson-Pratt or other types of drains in place. Many patients are discharged to home on the day of surgery. Older adults should not be sent home without a family member or friend who can stay with them for 1 to 2 days. These patients may need some assistance at home with drain care, dressings, and ADLs because of pain and impaired range of motion of the affected arm. Summaries of continuing care instructions are given in [Charts 73-4 and 73-5](#).

Teach patients that activities involving stretching or reaching for heavy objects should be avoided temporarily. This restriction can be discussed with a family member or significant other who can perform these tasks or place the objects within easy reach.

Teaching for Self-Management

The teaching plan for the patient after surgery includes:

- Measures to improve body image
- Information about interpersonal relationships and roles
- Exercises to regain full range of motion
- Measures to prevent infection of the incision
- Measures to avoid lymphedema
- Measures to avoid injury, infection, and swelling of the affected arm
- Care of the incision and drainage device

Teach incisional care to the patient, family, and/or other caregiver. The patient may wear a light dressing to prevent irritation. Explain that no lotions or ointments should be used on the area and that the use of deodorant under the affected arm should be avoided until healing is complete. Although swelling and redness of the scar itself are normal for the first few weeks, swelling, redness, increased heat, and tenderness of the

CHART 73-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Recovery from Breast Cancer Surgery

- There may be a dry gauze dressing over the incision when you leave the hospital. You may change this dressing if it becomes soiled.
- A small, dry dressing will be around the site where a drain is placed. Often there is some leakage of fluid around the drain. Check the gauze dressing for drainage, and change it if it becomes soiled. Some leakage is normal, but if the dressing becomes soaked more than once a day, call your health care provider.
- You have been taught how to empty the reservoir from your drain and how to measure the volume of drainage. You should empty the drain twice a day and record the measurements.
- Drains are generally removed when drainage is less than 25 mL in 24 hours.
- Drains are often removed at the same time as the stitches or staples, generally 7 to 10 days (could be as long as 3 weeks if needed) after surgery.
- You may take sponge baths or tub baths, making certain that the area of the drain and incision stays dry. You may shower after the stitches, staples, and drains are removed.
- You can begin using your arm for normal activities, such as eating or combing your hair. Exercises involving the wrist, hand, and elbow, such as flexing your fingers, circular wrist motions, and touching your hand to your shoulder, are very good. You can usually resume more strenuous exercises after the drains have been removed.
- You can expect some discomfort or mild pain after surgery, but within 4 to 5 days, most women have no need for pain medication or require medication only at bedtime.
- Numbness in the area of the surgery and along the inner side of the arm from the armpit to the elbow occurs in almost all women. It is the injury to the nerves that causes sensation to the skin in those areas. Women have described sensations of heaviness, pain, tingling, burning, and "pins and needles." Neuropathic pain is sometimes relieved by gabapentin (Neurontin). These sensations change over the months and usually resolve by 1 year.
- Pamphlets on exercises, hand and arm care, and general facts about breast cancer are available from us or from a volunteer visitor. The American Cancer Society has volunteers who have had surgery similar to yours and are available to visit you.

CHART 73-5 HOME CARE ASSESSMENT

Patients Recovering from Breast Cancer Surgery

Assess cardiovascular, respiratory, and urinary status:

- Vital signs
- Lung sounds
- Urine output patterns

Assess for pain and effectiveness of analgesics.

Assess dressing and incision site:

- Excess drainage
- Manifestations of infection
- Wound healing
- Intact staples

Assess drain and site:

- Drainage around drain site and in drain
- Color and amount of drainage
- Manifestations of infection

Review patient's recordings of drainage.

Evaluate patient's ability to care for and empty drain.

Assess status of affected extremity:

- Range of motion
- Ability to perform exercise regimen
- Lymphedema

Assess nutritional status:

- Food and fluid intake
- Presence of nausea and vomiting
- Bowel sounds

Assess functional ability:

- Activities of daily living
- Mobility and ambulation

Assess home environment:

- Safety
- Structural barriers

Assess patient's compliance and knowledge of illness and treatment plan:

- Follow-up appointment with surgeon
- Manifestations to report to health care provider
- Hand and arm care guidelines
- Referral to Reach to Recovery

Assess patient and caregiver coping skills:

- Determine if patient and/or caregiver has looked at incision site.
- Assess their reaction to incision site.

surrounding area indicate infection and should be reported to the surgeon immediately. If a lymph node dissection was performed, instruct the patient to elevate the affected arm on a pillow for at least 30 minutes a day for the first 6 months. Ask the patient to have someone bring a loose-fitting, non-wire bra or camisole for her to try before discharge with a soft, cotton-filled or polyester fiber-filled form supplied by the hospital or by Reach to Recovery. The patient wears this form until the incision is completely healed and the health care provider approves the fitting of a more sophisticated prosthesis, usually 6 to 8 weeks after discharge. Encourage the patient to dress in loose-fitting street clothes at home, not pajamas, to further enhance a positive self-image.

Teach the patient to continue performing the exercises that began in the hospital. Active range-of-motion exercises should begin 1 week after surgery or when sutures and drains are removed. Emphasize that reaching and stretching exercises should continue only to the point of pain or pulling, never beyond that. ENCORE, a YWCA program, is appropriate for women as early as 3 weeks after surgery and includes exercise to music, exercise in water, and psychological support. Before discharge, the surgeon may prescribe precautions or

limitations specific to plans for future procedures, such as reconstruction.

Lymphedema, an abnormal accumulation of protein fluid in the subcutaneous tissue of the affected limb after a mastectomy, is a commonly overlooked topic in health teaching. Risk factors include injury or infection of the extremity, obesity, presence of extensive axillary disease, and radiation treatment. Once it develops, it can be very difficult to manage, and *lifelong measures must be taken to prevent it*. Nurses play a vital role in educating patients about this complication (Fu et al., 2008).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY**Action Alert**

Provide information needed to help the patient avoid infection and subsequent lymphedema of the affected arm after the mastectomy. Teach the importance of avoiding having blood pressure measurements taken on, having injections in, or having blood drawn from the arm on the side of the mastectomy. Instruct the patient to wear a mitt when using the oven, wear gloves when gardening, and treat cuts and scrapes appropriately. If lymphedema occurs, early intervention provides the best chance for control. The arm should be elevated when possible and special attention paid to the special precautions. A referral to a lymphedema specialist may be necessary for the patient to be fitted for a compression sleeve and/or glove, to be taught exercises and manual lymph drainage, and to discuss ways to modify daily activities to avoid worsening the problem. Management is directed toward measures that promote drainage of the affected arm. Teach patients, especially those who have had axillary lymph nodes removed, that measures to prevent lymphedema are lifelong and include avoiding trauma to the arm on the side of the mastectomy.

Psychosocial Preparation

Concerns about appearance after surgery are common and are often a threat to the patient's self-concept as a woman. Before breast surgery, the woman and her partner can benefit from an explanation of the expected postoperative appearance. After a modified radical mastectomy, the chest wall is fairly smooth and has a horizontal incision from the axilla to the midchest area. After breast-conserving surgery, scars vary according to the amount of breast tissue removed. Women are sometimes shown pictures of post-mastectomy reconstruction but are disappointed with their own results. Emphasize that scars will fade and edema will lessen with time. Scars may be red and raised at first, but these features lessen in the first few months. After surgery, encourage the woman to look at her incision when she is ready. Do not push her to accept this body image change immediately.

Much of one's body image is a reflection of how others respond. Therefore the response of the patient's family or partner to the surgery is crucial in determining the effect on self-concept. These people may also need the support of the nurse. They may have concerns about their ability to accept the changes and need to discuss these feelings with an objective listener. They may also need help with communicating their feelings, both negative and positive, with their loved one. Involving them in teaching may also help reinforce learning and increase retention.

Discuss sexual concerns before discharge. Most surgeons recommend avoiding sexual intercourse for 4 to 6 weeks. Patients may prefer to lay a pillow over the surgical site or to wear a bra, camisole, or T-shirt to prevent contact with the

surgical site during intercourse. He or she may be embarrassed to discuss the topic of *sexuality*. Be sensitive to possible concerns, and approach the subject first.

For young women, issues related to childbearing may be a concern. Chemotherapy and radiation are considered serious teratogenic (birth defect–causing) agents. Advise sexually active patients receiving chemotherapy or radiotherapy to use birth control during therapy. The method and length of birth control should be discussed with the health care provider.

Health Care Resources

Resources available to the patient after discharge include personal support and community programs. After discharge, the spouse or partner may need help in planning support for home responsibilities. For example, a partner who may be assuming additional duties at home and work may feel stressed. Discussing the need for ongoing emotional support is also beneficial to both the patient and partner. Leaving the hospital and appearing normal do not end the anxiety and fear. Identifying a support person with whom the patient or couple can explore these feelings and discussing the need to ventilate feelings enhance personal and family recovery.

Numerous support and educational resources are available to those diagnosed with breast cancer. Nurses must provide

accurate and current information to patients who may have obtained inaccurate information from various media. There are over two million breast cancer survivors in the United States, and many men and women are active in breast cancer support and advocacy organizations. National breast cancer organizations are accessible online, and many of them have local affiliates. Examples of such organizations are Susan G. Komen for the Cure, the National Breast Cancer Coalition, Y-Me, Sisters Network, Young Survival Coalition, and Pink Ribbon Girls. Also, local support groups can be accessed through the health care provider, the local hospital, wellness centers, home care agencies, or by word of mouth. The American Cancer Society (ACS) (www.cancer.org) is a good resource for information and support.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with breast cancer based on the identified priority patient problems. The expected outcomes include that he or she will:

- Be able to cope with the diagnosis by being knowledgeable, supported, and actively involved in decision making
- Remain free of metastasis

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if a patient is experiencing impaired sexuality as a result of breast cancer or other disorder?

- Breast swelling or lump (with or without pain)
- Discharge from nipple(s)
- Skin dimpling or orange peel appearance
- Asymmetric breast tissue
- Very large or very small breasts
- Skin redness and warmth

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient having impaired sexuality as a result of breast cancer or other disorder?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Take a thorough patient and family history.
- Examine each breast, comparing sides, and document.
- Assess pain, and document.
- Assess psychosocial reaction to the breast changes.

Respond by:

- Checking recent mammogram test or other imaging assessment results
- Acknowledging patient's concerns about body image and sexuality changes
- Asking the patient about resources for support that have been used in the past for coping with crisis
- Preparing the patient for testing and possible biopsy
- Listening to the patient's concerns in a nonjudgmental manner

On what should you REFLECT?

- Consider what health care resources (team members) the patient and family will need throughout disease management.
- Think about what other community resources the patient and family will need.
- Observe the patient's progress in adapting to body image changes.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- In collaboration with the health care team, identify community resources for patients with breast cancer, including Reach to Recovery of the American Cancer Society.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Identify patients at high risk for breast cancer, especially women with family history of breast cancer; those who have had early menarche, late menopause, or first pregnancy after 30 years of age; or those who are nullipara.
- Reinforce options available to women who are high risk for breast cancer, including close surveillance and prophylactic surgery.
- Teach women to become self-aware of breasts and any breast changes; teach breast self-examination (BSE) to women who choose this method of breast self-awareness.
- Encourage women to have screening mammography according to recommended guidelines. Baseline screening should begin at 40 years of age and continue yearly. In high-risk women, screening should be started earlier.
- Encourage women to have clinical breast examination (CBE) according to recommended guidelines.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Assess patients' reactions to the diagnosis of breast cancer and the effect of breast cancer treatment on their body image and sexuality.
- Identify resources that facilitate their grief work and coping skills.
- Allow patients opportunities to express feelings of grief, fear, and anxiety.

- Teach women ways to minimize surgical area deformity and enhance body image, such as use of a breast prosthesis or the option of breast reconstruction.
- Address the reactions of family and significant others to the diagnosis of breast cancer; provide support and education.

Physiological Integrity

- Assess benign lumps as mobile and round or oval; assess possible malignant lumps as fixed and irregularly shaped, often in the upper outer breast quadrant.
- A breast reduction is an option for women with very large, heavy breasts to promote comfort.
- A breast augmentation is done for either small breasts or for reconstruction after breast removal.
- After breast cancer surgery, assess vital signs, dressings, drainage tubes, and amount of drainage.
- Notify the health care team that the arm of the surgical mastectomy side should not be used for blood pressures, blood drawing, or injections.
- Assess the return of arm and shoulder mobility after breast surgery and axillary dissection.
- Assess for the presence of lymphedema, and assist the patient to perform therapeutic measures to reduce lymphedema in the affected arm.
- Teach the patient measures to prevent lymphedema after axillary node dissection.
- Observe for and report other complications of breast cancer surgery or breast reconstruction, especially infection and inadequate vascular perfusion.
- After an axillary lymph node dissection, elevate the affected arm on a pillow.
- Radiation and drug therapy are used most often as adjuvant therapy after breast surgery but may be used before surgery to shrink the tumor.

Care of Patients with Gynecologic Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for the NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Collaborate with members of the health care team when caring for patients with gynecologic cancers.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Identify the risk factors for gynecologic cancers.
3. Provide health teaching on community resources for patients with gynecologic health problems.
4. Describe evidence-based health promotion and maintenance measures to help prevent or early-detect gynecologic cancers.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Explain the psychosocial needs of patients with gynecologic health problems, including their effect on sexuality.
6. Discuss ways to help patients adapt to physical changes, including impaired sexuality, caused by gynecologic problems and their treatment.

Physiological Integrity

7. Compare the pathophysiology, manifestations, and treatments of common menstrual cycle disorders.
8. Describe the mechanisms of action, side effects, and nursing implications of drug therapy for endometriosis.
9. Develop a teaching plan for a patient with a vaginal inflammation or infection.
10. Discuss common assessment findings associated with menopause.
11. Prioritize care after surgery for the woman undergoing an anterior and/or posterior repair.
12. Develop a plan of care for a patient undergoing a hysterectomy.
13. Explain the purpose of radiation and chemotherapy for patients with gynecologic cancers.
14. Provide information about complementary and alternative therapies.
15. Develop a community-based plan of care for patients with gynecologic cancers.

The most common gynecologic manifestations are pain, vaginal discharge, and bleeding. Some patients also have urinary symptoms associated with their gynecologic problem. Women are often hesitant to seek medical attention for these problems because of fear of a life-threatening disease diagnosis or concern about privacy and dignity. Be sensitive to the woman's concerns and encourage discussion about menstrual or other reproductive problems. Teach women about their bodies, and help them recognize when professional help should be sought. Teach them how to make informed decisions about treatments. Assess the effects of gynecologic

disorders on *sexuality* in any setting. These health problems often impair sexual function and therefore can affect the woman's relationship with her partner. Remember that *sexuality* affects a woman's sense of being, self-esteem, and body image.

ENDOMETRIOSIS

Pathophysiology

Endometriosis is endometrial (inner uterine) tissue implantation *outside* the uterine cavity. The tissue typically appears

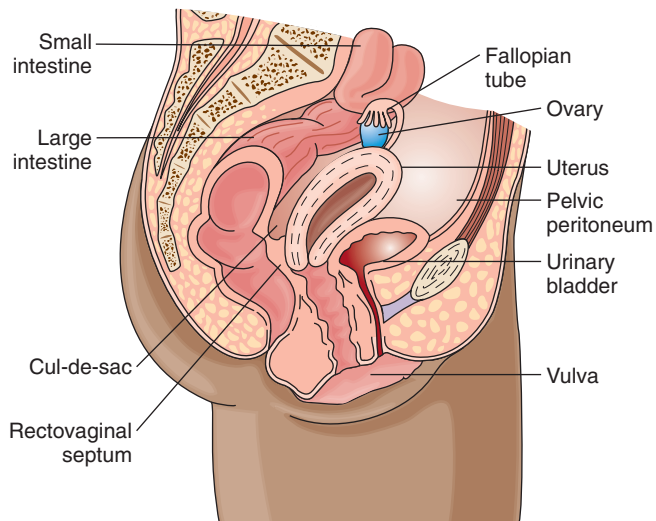


FIG. 74-1 Common sites of endometriosis.

on the ovaries and the cul-de-sac (posterior rectovaginal wall) and less commonly on other pelvic organs and structures (Fig. 74-1). A “chocolate” cyst is an area of endometriosis on an ovary. The disease affects millions of women in the United States and Canada.

Endometriosis responds to cyclic hormonal stimulation just as if it were in the uterus. Monthly cyclic bleeding occurs at the **ectopic** (out of place) site of implantation, which irritates and scars the surrounding tissue. Scarring can lead to adhesions, causing infertility (inability to become pregnant). Endometriosis progresses slowly and regresses during pregnancy and at menopause. Rarely does it become cancerous.

The cause of endometriosis is unknown. One theory is that the endometrial tissue migrates directly through the fallopian tubes during menses. The tissue then implants on pelvic structures or distant organs such as lungs or heart. The formation theory suggests that endometrial tissue develops outside the uterus as a birth defect. Other theories focus on immune, genetic, and environmental factors (e.g., exposure to dioxin, a toxic chemical). Many women with endometriosis have allergies and chemical sensitivities.

The disorder is most often found in women during their reproductive years, but it can affect women into their 80s. The prevalence among infertile women is higher than it is for women who are fertile. It is also common in those whose mothers had endometriosis.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Collect a detailed history, including the woman’s menstrual history, sexual history, and bleeding characteristics. *Pain is the most common symptom of endometriosis.* The pain usually peaks just before the menstrual flow. It is usually located in the lower abdomen, causing many women to feel a sense of rectal pressure. The degree of pain is not related to the extent of the endometriosis but to the site. Often, women with minimal disease have more severe pain than do women with extensive disease. Other manifestations include **dyspareunia**

(painful sexual intercourse), painful defecation, low backache, and infertility. GI disturbances such as nausea and diarrhea are also common. Always ask about current or past physical or sexual abuse.

A pelvic examination may reveal pelvic tenderness, tender nodules in the posterior vagina, and limited movement of the uterus. Psychosocial assessment may reveal anxiety because of uncertainty about the diagnosis. The woman may also have concerns about her self-concept if she is infertile but wants to become pregnant.

Diagnostic studies include tests to rule out pelvic inflammatory disease caused by chlamydia or gonorrhea. Serum cancer antigen CA-125 helps screen for ovarian cancer but also may be positive in women with endometriosis. Transvaginal ultrasound is used to differentiate pelvic masses that might be mistaken for endometriosis.

INTERVENTIONS

Hormonal and surgical management may be used, depending on the symptoms, the extent of disease, and the woman’s desire for childbearing. Collaborative care is aimed at:

- Reducing pain
- Restoring sexual function
- Alleviating anxiety related to the disease and the uncertainty of the diagnosis
- Educating the patient about the disease and its treatment
- Alleviating fear related to the possibility of laparoscopy or surgery
- Preventing self-esteem disturbance related to infertility

Nonsurgical Management

Several resources, such as the Endometriosis Association (www.endometriosisassn.org) and RESOLVE (an organization for infertile couples) (www.resolve.org), offer information on endometriosis that is helpful for patients and caregivers.

Disease management depends of the patient’s symptoms, severity, and preference for treatment. Menstrual cycle control using oral contraceptives or progestins, such as oral medroxyprogesterone acetate (Provera, Medroxyhexal, Alti-MPA ) and norethindrone acetate (Aygestin, Norlutate ) may be prescribed. Injectable forms of progestins, such as medroxyprogesterone (Depo-Provera), may be more convenient because these drugs are taken every 2 weeks or monthly.

Continuous low-level heat using wearable heat packs may provide temporary pain relief. Relaxation techniques, yoga, massage, and biofeedback may decrease muscle tissue hypoxia and hypertonicity and relieve ischemia by increasing blood flow to the affected areas. Calcium and magnesium may also relieve muscle cramping for some patients.

Surgical Management

Surgical management of endometriosis for a woman who wants to remain fertile is the laparoscopic removal of endometrial implants and adhesions in a same-day surgical setting. Chapter 18 describes the general postoperative care for patients having surgery. The surgeon may use a laser to treat endometriosis by vaporizing adhesions and endometrial implants. Teach patients that temporary postoperative pain from carbon dioxide can occur in the shoulders and chest.

TABLE 74-1 RISK FACTORS FOR DYSFUNCTIONAL UTERINE BLEEDING

- Obesity
- Extreme weight loss or gain
- Age older than 40 years
- High stress levels
- Polycystic ovary disease
- Long-term drug use (e.g., oral contraceptives)
- Excessive exercise

DYSFUNCTIONAL UTERINE BLEEDING

Pathophysiology

Dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB) is excessive and frequent bleeding (more than every 21 days). It is a diagnosis of exclusion, made after ruling out anatomic or systemic conditions such as drug therapy or disease. DUB occurs most often at the beginning or end of a woman's reproductive years—when ovulation is becoming established or when it is becoming irregular at or after menopause.

Normally the menstrual cycle is a series of delicately timed hormonal events regulated by hypothalamic, pituitary, ovarian, and uterine functions. **Menses**, the sloughing of the endometrial lining, is an expected result. DUB occurs when there is a hormonal imbalance. Generally, it happens when the ovaries fail to ovulate. This decreases progesterone production, which is needed to mature the uterine lining and prevent overgrowth. Without progesterone, prolonged estrogen stimulation causes the endometrium to grow past its hormonal support, causing disordered shedding of uterine lining. Most cases of DUB are classified into two types: anovulatory DUB (most common) and ovulatory DUB (Ayers & Montgomery, 2009). Common risk factors for DUB during the reproductive years are listed in Table 74-1.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

When interviewing a woman with DUB, take a complete menstrual history. Ask about illnesses, changes in weight or nutritional intake, exercise, drug ingestion, and whether she has pain.

Assess for symptoms of anemia or systemic disease, such as:

- Renal or hepatic disease
- Abnormal weight
- Signs of hormonal dysfunction, such as thyroid enlargement or male hair pattern
- Evidence of abdominal pain or masses

The health care provider inspects the external genitalia and does a bimanual pelvic examination, Papanicolaou test, and rectal examination to identify infections, lesions, or tenderness. Vaginal specimens are also tested for sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), such as that caused by chlamydia. Women at high risk for endometrial cancer should also have an endometrial biopsy. Risk factors are described later in this chapter.

A complete blood count determines if the patient is anemic. Depending on the patient's history and physical examination, thyroid-stimulating hormone and reproductive hormone levels may be evaluated.

Transvaginal ultrasound may reveal **leiomyomas** (fibroids) and measure an excessively thick endometrium. *Sonohysterography* uses vaginal ultrasound to visualize the uterus after 5 to 10 mL of sterile saline is infused through the cervix, thus outlining the inner uterine cavity.

INTERVENTIONS

Management of the patient often includes nonsurgical and surgical interventions. When nonsurgical treatment is not effective, surgery may be performed.

Nonsurgical Management

As with endometriosis, hormone manipulation is usually the treatment of choice for women with anovulatory DUB. The drugs used depend on the severity of bleeding and age of the patient. Progestin or combination hormone therapy (estrogen and progestin) is indicated when bleeding is heavy and acute. For nonemergent bleeding, contraceptives (oral or patch) provide the progestin (artificial progesterone) needed to stabilize the endometrial lining. Progestin-only pills (e.g., norethindrone [Aygestin, Norlutate ) or long-acting progestins (e.g., injectable medroxyprogesterone acetate [Depo-Provera]) are preferable for women older than 35 years who smoke or are at risk for thrombophlebitis. Some cases are managed with injectable leuprolide (Lupron), a gonadotropin-releasing (GR) hormone analog, to reduce the follicle-stimulating and luteinizing hormone levels to cause amenorrhea. This drug has many potent side and adverse effects and is not used as frequently today.

Explain the desired effects and the side effects of these drugs, and evaluate the woman's knowledge of the effects, dosage, and schedule. Be sure to remind her to take the drug exactly as prescribed and to not skip a dose or run out of it. If bleeding worsens, teach the patient to call her health care provider immediately.

Surgical Management

Removal of the built-up uterine lining, called **endometrial ablation**, stops the blood flow to fibroids that are causing excessive bleeding. This is a safe alternative for women who do not respond to medical management. Other invasive options include uterine artery embolization, dilation and curettage, and hysterectomy. A hysterectomy is performed only after other treatments have failed. (Hysterectomy is discussed under Surgical Management on p. 1619 of the Uterine Leiomyoma section.)

VULVOVAGINITIS

Pathophysiology

Vaginal discharge and itching are two problems experienced by most women at some time in their lives. Women can suffer vaginal infections from both sexually and non-sexually transmitted sources. Gonorrhea, syphilis, chlamydia, and herpes simplex virus are sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) discussed in Chapter 76.

Vulvovaginitis is inflammation of the lower genital tract resulting from a disturbance of the balance of hormones and flora in the vagina and vulva. It may be characterized by itching, change in vaginal discharge, odor, or lesions. The most common causes include:

- Fungal (yeast) infections (*Candida albicans*)
- Bacterial vaginosis
- STDs (*Trichomonas vaginalis*)
- Postmenopausal vaginal atrophy
- Changes in the normal flora or pH (from douching)
- Chemical irritant or allergens (vaginal spray, fabric dyes, detergent) or foreign body (tampon)
- Drugs, especially antibiotics
- Immunosuppression from diabetes or human immune deficiency virus (HIV)

Primary infections that affect the vulva include *herpes genitalis* and *condylomata acuminata* (human papilloma virus, venereal warts) (see [Chapter 76](#)). Secondary infections of the vulva are caused by organisms responsible for the many types of vaginitis, including *candidiasis*. Pediculosis pubis (crab lice) and scabies (itch mite) are common parasitic infestations of the skin of the vulva. Other causes of vulvitis include:

- Atrophic vaginitis
- Lichen planus (thickened, leathery skin from scratching)
- Vulvar leukoplakia (postmenopausal atrophy and thickening of vulvar tissues)
- Vulvar cancer
- Urinary incontinence

Some women may have an *itch-scratch-itch cycle*, in which the itching leads to scratching, which causes excoriation that then must heal. As healing takes place, itching occurs again. If the cycle is not interrupted, the chronic scratching may lead to the white, thickened skin of lichen planus. This dry, leathery skin cracks easily, increasing the woman's risk for infection.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Assess for vulvovaginitis by asking questions about the symptoms, assisting with a pelvic examination, and obtaining vaginal smears for laboratory testing. Inquire about symptoms of itching and burning sensation. **Erythema** (redness), edema, and superficial skin ulcers also may be present. Use a nonjudgmental approach and provide reassurance during the assessment because the patient may be embarrassed or afraid to discuss her symptoms. Encourage her to talk about her problem and its effect on her sexual health.

Interventions for vulvovaginitis depend on the causes and the specific vaginal infection. Proper health habits can benefit treatment. Instruct the patient to get enough rest and sleep, observe good dietary habits, exercise regularly, and use good personal hygiene. Teach her about how to manage her infection ([Chart 74-1](#)). [Chart 74-2](#) outlines measures to help prevent further infections.

Nursing interventions to relieve itching include applying wet compresses, sitz baths for 30 minutes several times a day, and using topical drugs such as estrogens and lidocaine. Encourage the removal of any irritant or allergen, such as changing detergents.

Treatment of pediculosis and scabies is used if needed and includes:

- Applying lindane (Kwell, Kwellada ) lotion, shampoo, or cream to the affected area as directed
- Cleaning affected clothes, bedding, and towels
- Disinfecting the home environment (lice cannot live for more than 24 hours away from the body)

CHART 74-1 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Vaginal Infections

- Your risk for getting vaginal infections increases if you have sex with more than one person.
- When you have a vaginal infection, do not have sexual intercourse, if possible, or at least make sure that your partner wears a condom.
- Sexual partners may need to be treated for infection.
- The only way to identify what infection you have is to be examined by a health care provider and to get the results of laboratory tests.
- Take your medicine as prescribed, not just until your symptoms go away.

CHART 74-2 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Vulvovaginitis

- Wear cotton underwear.
- Avoid wearing tight clothing, such as pantyhose or tight jeans, because they can cause chafing. You can also get hot and sweaty, which can cause an infection.
- Always wipe front to back after having a bowel movement or urinating.
- During bath or shower, cleanse inner labial mucosa with water, not soap.
- Do not douche or use feminine hygiene sprays.
- If your sexual partner has an infection of the sex organs, do not have intercourse with him or her until he or she has been treated.
- You are more likely to get an infection if you are pregnant, have diabetes, take oral contraceptive drugs, or are menopausal.
- Practice vulvar self-examination monthly.

NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Health Promotion and Maintenance

A client reports new onset of vulvar burning, redness, and pruritus. Which of these questions by the nurse would be the most appropriate?

- "Have you recently changed clothes detergents?"
- "Have you seen your health care provider about this problem?"
- "Have you had your HPV vaccine yet?"
- "Does this problem run in your family?"

TOXIC SHOCK SYNDROME

Pathophysiology

Toxic shock syndrome (TSS) was first recognized in 1980 when it was found to be related to menstruation and tampon use. Other conditions associated with TSS include surgical wound infection, nonsurgical infections, and gynecologic surgeries. Use of internal contraceptives has also been linked to this health problem.

In infection related to menstruation, menstrual blood provides a growth medium for *Staphylococcus aureus* (or, less frequently, *Streptococcus*). Exotoxins produced from the bacteria cross the vaginal mucosa to the bloodstream via micro-abrasions from tampon insertion or prolonged use. A small number of TSS cases are fatal. Extensive public education

CHART 74-3 KEY FEATURES

Toxic Shock Syndrome

- Fever (temperature $>102^{\circ}\text{F}$ [38.9°C])
- Diffuse rash resembling sunburn
- Peeling of skin—primarily the soles of the feet and the palms of the hands—1 to 2 wk after onset of the illness
- Hypotension (systolic blood pressure $<90\text{ mm Hg}$ or orthostatic syncope)
- Involvement of three or more of these:
 - Gastrointestinal system: vomiting, diarrhea at the onset of the syndrome
 - Musculoskeletal system: severe aching or a serum creatinine phosphatase level twice the normal level
 - Respiratory system: acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)
 - Renal/urinary system: decreased urine output, pyuria
 - Cardiovascular system: decreased left ventricular contractility; ischemic changes shown on the electrocardiogram
 - Liver: total bilirubin, aspartate aminotransferase (serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase), and alanine aminotransferase (serum glutamic-pyruvic transaminase) levels elevated; jaundice; disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)
 - Hematologic system: platelet levels below normal
 - Central nervous system: disorientation, altered consciousness in the absence of fever or hypertension
 - Mucous membranes: hyperemia of the vaginal walls, the throat, or the conjunctiva of the eye
- Negative results for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, measles, and scarlet fever and for throat, blood, and cerebrospinal fluid cultures
- Positive culture for *Staphylococcus aureus* from blood, urine, or stool

has led to a decreased number of women having the infection.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Within 24 hours of contact with the causative agent, the abrupt onset of a high fever, along with headache, flu-like symptoms, and severe hypotension with fainting, is often present. A sunburn-like rash with broken capillaries in the eyes and skin is another warning sign of TSS. Because not all women have all these manifestations, the criteria established by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) are used to verify cases (Chart 74-3). Educate all women on the prevention of TSS (Chart 74-4).

Treatment includes removal of the infection source, such as a tampon; restoring fluid and electrolyte balance; drugs to manage hypotension; and IV antibiotics. Other measures may include transfusions to reverse low platelet counts and corticosteroids to treat skin changes.

PELVIC ORGAN PROLAPSE

Pathophysiology

The pelvic organs are supported by a sling of muscles and tendons, which sometimes become weak and no longer able to hold an organ in place. **Uterine prolapse**, the most common type of **pelvic organ prolapse (POP)**, can be caused by neuromuscular damage of childbirth; increased intra-abdominal

CHART 74-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Prevention of Toxic Shock Syndrome

- Wash your hands before inserting a tampon.
- Do not use a tampon if it is dirty.
- Insert the tampon carefully to avoid injuring the delicate tissue in your vagina.
- Change your tampon every 3 to 6 hours.
- Do not use superabsorbent tampons.
- Use sanitary napkins at night.
- Call your health care provider if you suddenly experience a high temperature, vomiting, or diarrhea.
- Do not use tampons at all if you have had toxic shock syndrome.
- Not using tampons almost guarantees that you will not get toxic shock syndrome.

pressure related to pregnancy, obesity, or physical exertion; or weakening of pelvic support due to decreased estrogen. The stages of uterine prolapse are described by the degree of descent of the uterus (Fig. 74-2) through the pelvic floor.

Whenever the uterus is displaced, other structures such as the bladder, rectum, and small intestine can protrude through the vaginal walls (Fig. 74-3). A **cystocele** is a protrusion of the bladder through the vaginal wall (urinary bladder prolapse), which can lead to stress urinary incontinence (SUI) and urinary tract infections (UTIs). A **rectocele** is a protrusion of the rectum through a weakened vaginal wall (rectal prolapse).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Assessment findings for patients with a suspected uterine prolapse include the patient's feeling as if "something is falling out," dyspareunia (painful intercourse), backache, and a feeling of heaviness or pressure in the pelvis. A pelvic examination may reveal a protrusion of the cervix when the woman is asked to bear down. Listen to her concerns, and note signs of depression from having long-term symptoms.

Ask the patient about manifestations that may indicate that she has a **cystocele**. These signs and symptoms may include:

- Difficulty in emptying the bladder
- Urinary frequency and urgency
- Urinary tract infection
- **Stress urinary incontinence (SUI)** (loss of urine during activities that increase intra-abdominal pressure, such as laughing, coughing, sneezing, or lifting heavy objects)

A pelvic examination reveals a large bulge of the anterior vaginal wall when the woman is asked to bear down. Diagnostic tests include cystography (to show the presence of bladder herniation), measurement of residual urine by bladder ultrasound, and urine culture and sensitivity testing. Radiographic imaging of urinary anatomy and voiding function is useful in determining the degree of cystocele.

Rectocele assessment usually includes symptoms of constipation, hemorrhoids, fecal impaction, and feelings of rectal or vaginal fullness. A vaginal and rectal examination may show a bulge of the posterior vaginal wall when the woman is asked to bear down.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions are based on the degree of the POP. Conservative treatment is preferred over surgical treatment when possible.

Nonsurgical Management

Teach women to improve pelvic support and tone via pelvic floor muscle exercises (PFMEs, or Kegel exercises). Space-filling devices such as pessaries or spheres can be worn in the vagina to elevate the uterine prolapse. Intravaginal estrogen therapy may be prescribed for the postmenopausal woman to prevent atrophy and weakening of vaginal walls. Women with bladder symptoms may benefit from bladder training and attention to complete emptying. Management of a rectocele focuses on promoting bowel elimination. The health care provider usually prescribes a high-fiber diet, stool softeners, and laxatives.

Surgical Management

Surgery may be recommended for severe symptoms. Address the fears and concerns of the patient and her family. The least invasive procedure is usually used.

Transvaginal repair for pelvic organ prolapse (POP) using surgical vaginal mesh or tape is a commonly performed minimally invasive technique. It is particularly useful for women who are very obese. Depending on the procedure that is planned, the patient has either local or general anesthesia. The surgeon creates a sling with the mesh or tape, and the woman is discharged the same day. Procedures done under local anesthesia can be done in the surgeon's office. Over the past several years, patient report of several rare complications associated with the use of transvaginal mesh has required the U.S. Food and Drug Administration to recall at least one company's product. These complications include vaginal erosion and severe infection (Mirsaidi, 2009).

Patients who choose to have the procedure may return to usual activities, including driving, 2 weeks after surgery. Teach them to avoid sexual intercourse for at least 6 weeks or as the surgeon recommends.

Alternatives to minimally invasive surgery are open surgical techniques. An **anterior colporrhaphy** (anterior repair)

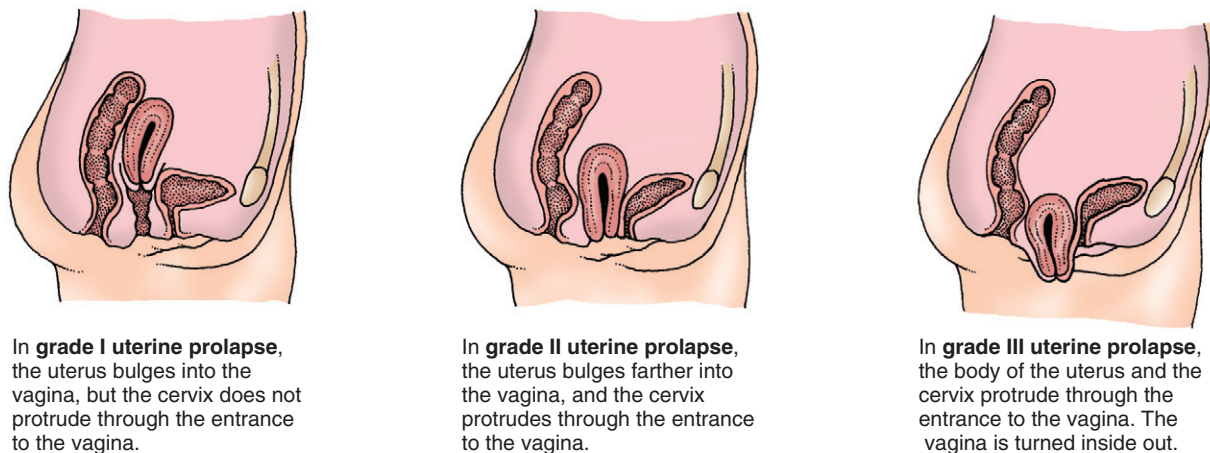


FIG. 74-2 Types of uterine prolapse.

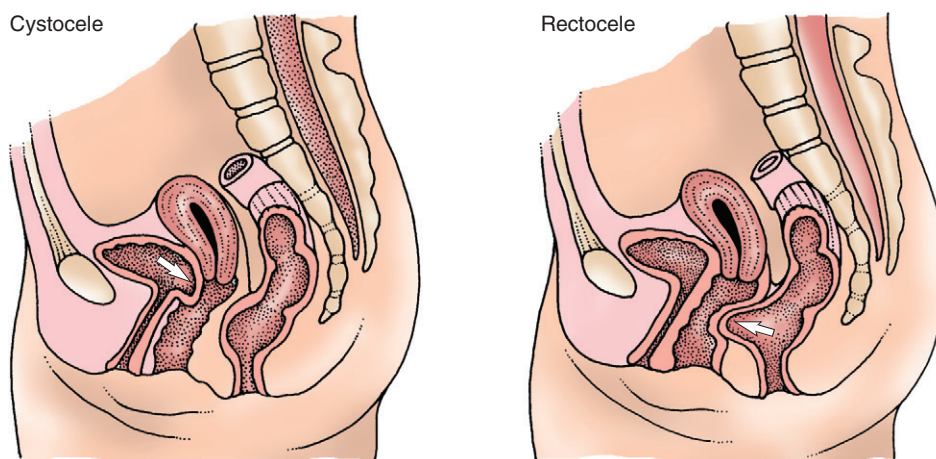


FIG. 74-3 In cystocele, the urinary bladder is displaced downward, causing bulging of the anterior vaginal wall. In rectocele, the rectum is displaced, causing bulging of the posterior vaginal wall.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

To help patients decide if she should decide on any surgical procedure using mesh or tape, be sure that the patient has received informed consent prior to surgery. Teach the patient about these possible adverse events, the signs and symptoms of infection, and when she should contact her surgeon. If possible, provide the patient with the manufacturer's labeling and written information.

tightens the pelvic muscles for better *bladder* support. A vaginal surgical approach is used and may be done as a laparoscopic-assisted procedure. Nursing care for a woman undergoing an anterior repair is similar to that for a woman undergoing a vaginal hysterectomy.

After surgery, instruct the patient to limit her activities. *Teach her to avoid lifting anything heavier than 5 pounds, strenuous exercises, and sexual intercourse for 6 weeks.* For discomfort, tell her to use heat either as a moist heating pad or warm compresses applied to the abdomen. A hot bath may also be helpful. Sutures do not need to be removed because some are absorbable and others will fall out as healing occurs. Tell the woman to notify her health care provider if she has signs of infection, such as fever, persistent pain, or purulent, foul-smelling discharge. Encourage her to keep her follow-up appointment after surgery.

Posterior colporrhaphy (posterior repair) reduces *rectal* bulging. If both a cystocele and a rectocele are present, an *anterior and posterior colporrhaphy (A&P repair)* is performed.

The nursing care after a posterior repair is similar to that after any rectal surgery. After surgery, a low-residue (low-fiber) diet is usually prescribed to decrease bowel movements and allow time for the incision to heal. Instruct the patient to avoid straining when she does have a bowel movement so that she does not put pressure on the suture line. Bowel movements are often painful, and she may need pain medication before having a stool. Provide sitz baths or delegate this activity to unlicensed nursing personnel to relieve the

woman's discomfort. Health teaching for the patient undergoing a posterior repair is similar to that for the patient undergoing an anterior repair.

Vaginal hysterectomy may accompany any uterine prolapse repair surgery unless the woman wants children or more children. This procedure is described on p. 1619.

BENIGN NEOPLASMS

OVARIAN CYST

Functional ovarian cysts can occur in a woman of any age but are rare after menopause. Other cysts and tumors of the ovaries are not related to the menstrual cycle but arise from ovarian tissue. Primary assessment involves pelvic examination and transvaginal ultrasound. Further testing with computerized tomography (CT), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), or laparoscopic biopsy to rule out cancer may be indicated. Some ovarian cysts disappear over time, and others cause discomfort for a prolonged period. Laparoscopic surgery to remove the cyst or ovary may be needed.

UTERINE LEIOMYOMA

Pathophysiology

Leiomyomas, also called **fibroids** or **myomas**, are benign, slow-growing solid tumors of the uterine myometrium (muscle layer). They are classified according to their position in the layers of the uterus. The most common types are intramural, submucosal, and subserosal (Fig. 74-4).

Intramural leiomyomas are contained in the uterine wall within the myometrium. *Submucosal* leiomyomas protrude into the cavity of the uterus and can cause bleeding and disrupt pregnancy. *Subserosal* leiomyomas protrude through the outer surface of the uterine wall and may extend to the broad ligament, pressing other organs.

Although most fibroids develop within the uterine wall, a few may appear in the cervix. Pedunculated leiomyomas are attached by a pedicle (stalk) to the outside of the uterus and

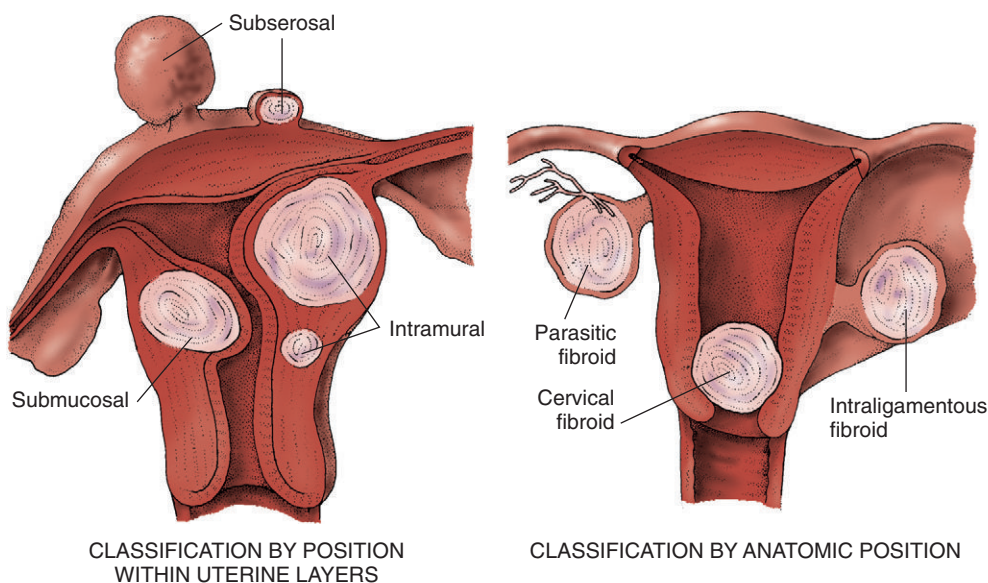


FIG. 74-4 Classification of uterine leiomyomas.

occasionally break off and attach to other tissues (parasitic fibroids).

Although the cause is not known, leiomyomas develop from excessive local growth of smooth muscle cells. This may be a genetic error causing a lack of ability to halt growth. The growth of leiomyomas may be related to stimulation by estrogen, progesterone, and growth hormone. This explains why fibroids sometimes enlarge during pregnancy and diminish in size after menopause.

The incidence of leiomyomas increases as women get older. Women who have never been pregnant also are at a high risk. Many women have asymptomatic fibroids, whereas others have severe symptoms.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Women with fibroids do not usually have pain, although acute pain may occur with twisting of the fibroid on its stalk. *The patient often seeks medical attention because of heavy vaginal bleeding.* Ask about how many tampons or menstrual pads she uses a day. The woman may report a feeling of pelvic pressure, constipation, or urinary frequency or retention. These symptoms result when an enlarged fibroid presses on other organs. The patient may notice that her abdomen has increased in size. Assess the woman's abdomen for distention or enlargement. Ask if she has dyspareunia (painful intercourse) and infertility (inability to become pregnant).

Abdominal, vaginal, and rectal examinations usually reveal the presence of a uterine enlargement. Further diagnostic procedures are needed to differentiate benign tumors from cancerous ones.

Symptoms such as dyspareunia may significantly lower the patient's quality of life. A woman who is symptomatic may fear that she has cancer. She may be anxious about abnormal bleeding or her failure to conceive. She may also be concerned if surgery is recommended if she wants to have children or more children. Assess the woman's feelings and concerns about her symptoms and fears of the unknown. If hysterectomy is recommended, explore the significance of the loss of the uterus for the woman and her partner. Discuss sexuality issues with the patient based on your assessment.

A complete blood count may identify iron deficiency anemia (related to bleeding). A pregnancy test is done to determine whether pregnancy is the cause of the uterine enlargement. An endometrial biopsy may be performed to evaluate for endometrial cancer.

Transvaginal ultrasound alone or with saline infusion (saline sonogram) provides a good picture of a submucosal fibroid that may protrude into the uterine cavity. The clinician may then choose to directly view a tumor and perform a biopsy of it, using *laparoscopy* (for tumors on the outside of the uterus) or *hysteroscopy* (for tumors accessible inside the uterus). *Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)* can differentiate between benign and malignant lesions.

INTERVENTIONS

Asymptomatic fibroids do not need treatment. The choice of management depends on the size and location of the tumor and the woman's desire for future pregnancy. Women who still desire pregnancy can take drug therapy or have magnetic

resonance-guided focused ultrasound surgery or laparoscopic myomectomy to remove the tumor. Uterine artery embolization and hysterectomy are choices for women who no longer desire pregnancy.

Nonsurgical Management

If the woman is menopausal, the fibroids usually shrink and surgery may not be necessary. *Teach the patient who is receiving hormone replacement therapy for menopausal symptoms that the fibroids may continue to grow because of estrogen stimulation.*

If the woman has few symptoms or desires childbearing, the health care provider may recommend observation and examination every 4 to 6 months. As with dysfunctional uterine bleeding, mild leiomyoma symptoms can be managed with oral contraception. *Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) agonists* such as goserelin (Zoladex) and leuprolide (Lupron Depot) induce artificial menopause but are less commonly used in the past few years due to side and adverse effects. These drugs decrease hormone exposure and may give the tumor time to shrink temporarily. This may also be done before surgery.

Magnetic resonance-guided focused ultrasound is a noninvasive, painless technique for women with few smaller fibroids who wish to preserve their fertility. The woman lies prone on an MRI scanner, which provides a three-dimensional image of the pelvis. The radiologic clinician then guides a focused pulse of ultrasound to heat the tumor to destroy it.

An alternative to surgery for the woman who does not desire pregnancy is **uterine artery embolization** (also called *uterine fibroid embolization [UFE]*) under moderate sedation. The interventional radiologist uses a percutaneous catheter inserted through the femoral artery to inject polyvinyl alcohol pellets into the uterine artery. The resulting blockage starves the tumor of circulation, allowing it (or them) to shrink. The patient stays overnight in the hospital.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After uterine artery embolization, the woman may have severe cramping caused by decreased blood flow to the uterus. Cramping continues for 2 to 4 days. Assess her pain level, and provide analgesics as needed. If a vascular closure device is used at the arterial insertion site (most commonly), raise the head of the bed. Help the patient ambulate in about 2 hours after the procedure. If a closure device was not used, keep her on bedrest with the legs immobilized for 4 hours before ambulating to prevent bleeding.

Before discharge, tell the patient to observe for post-embolization syndrome, a flu-like illness that some women develop. Teach her to resume usual activities slowly. Most patients can return to work or daily routine within a week. She should avoid strenuous activity until the physician recommends it.

Surgical Management

When possible, minimally invasive surgical (MIS) techniques are performed, such as a myomectomy. If not, a hysterectomy is the procedure of choice.

Uterus-Sparing Surgeries. If the woman desires children, the surgeon may perform a laparoscopic or hysteroscopic

myomectomy (the removal of leiomyomas from the uterus). During this procedure, a laser may be used to remove the tumors. This minimally invasive procedure is usually performed in the early phase of the menstrual cycle to minimize blood loss and to avoid the possibility of interrupting an unsuspected pregnancy. A small percentage of leiomyomas recur after surgery. Scarring makes the uterus more likely to rupture during labor, so future deliveries will be planned cesarean deliveries. Nursing care is similar to that for a woman undergoing a hysterectomy (see below).

In selected cases (e.g., submucous fibroids, menorrhagia), a *transcervical endometrial resection (TCER)* is performed via hysteroscopy. A hysteroscope (endoscope) is inserted into the uterus, and the endometrium is destroyed using diathermy (heat) or radioablation.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

Monitor for rare but potential complications of hysteroscopic surgery, which include:

- Fluid overload (fluid used to distend the uterine cavity can be absorbed)
- Embolism
- Hemorrhage
- Perforation of the uterus, bowel, or bladder and ureter injury
- Persistent increased menstrual bleeding
- Incomplete suppression of menstruation

Monitor for any indications of these problems, and report signs and symptoms, such as severe pain and heavy bleeding, to the surgeon immediately. Scarring may cause a small risk for complications in future pregnancies.

Hysterectomy. Leiomyomas are the most common reason for hysterectomies. A uterus that has smaller fibroids may be removed via a *total vaginal hysterectomy (TVH)*. The surgeon may perform a laparoscopic-assisted vaginal hysterectomy (LAVH) or use a robotic-assisted operative system (Everett & Crawford, 2010). The surgeon removes the uterus and cervix, sometimes in pieces, through the vagina without an external surgical incision.

A *total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH)* is usually performed for leiomyomas larger than the size of a 16-week pregnancy. The uterus and cervix are removed by laparoscopic-assisted minimally invasive surgery (MIS), which requires one or more very small umbilical incisions through a horizontal bikini incision (traditional open procedure). Some surgeons use robotic technology to assist in performing a TAH (Matthews et al., 2010). Robotic surgery is especially helpful when performing hysterectomies on patients who are extremely obese (Stone et al., 2010). In both vaginal and abdominal hysterectomies, the surgeon removes the uterus from the five supporting ligaments, which are then attached to the vaginal cuff so that normal depth of the vagina is maintained (Table 74-2).

Preoperative teaching by the health care team begins in the surgeon's office. Explain procedures that routinely take place before surgery, including laboratory tests and expected drugs such as a prophylactic antibiotic. Depending on the type of surgical technique planned, teach about the need for turning, coughing, and deep-breathing exercises; incentive spirometry; early ambulation; and pain relief (see Chapter 16 for a discussion of general patient care before surgery).

TABLE 74-2 COMMON GYNECOLOGIC SURGERIES

Total Hysterectomy

All the uterus, including the cervix, is removed. The procedure may be vaginal or abdominal, with laparoscopic or robotic assistance.

Bilateral Salpingo-Oophorectomy (BSO)

Fallopian tubes and ovaries are removed.

Panhysterectomy

Total abdominal hysterectomy and BSO: The uterus, ovaries, and fallopian tubes are removed.

Radical Hysterectomy

The uterus, cervix, adjacent lymph nodes, the upper third of the vagina, and the surrounding tissues (parametrium) are removed.

Psychological assessment is essential. Assess the significance of the surgery for the woman and her partner. If it involves loss of the uterus, she may feel a great loss if she wishes to retain her childbearing ability. Many women relate their uterus to self-image and femininity or believe that their sexual function is related to their uterus. Although surgical menopause by hysterectomy can create loss of libido and vaginal changes, teach the patient that vaginal estrogen cream and gentle dilation can help correct that. Reassure her regarding any misperceptions about the effects of hysterectomy, such as association with masculinization and weight gain. Assess the patient's support system. She may fear rejection by her sexual partner. Include the partner in all teaching sessions, unless this practice is not culturally acceptable.

Patients who have *uterus-sparing surgeries* usually go home the same day of surgery. They often experience less postoperative pain and fewer complications when compared with patients who have their uterus and cervix removed. Teach patients that they usually return to usual daily activities in 2 weeks, but sexual intercourse should be avoided for at least 6 weeks.

Postoperative care of the woman who has undergone a TAH is similar to that of any patient who has had laparoscopic or traditional open abdominal surgery (see Chapter 18). Assess (Chart 74-5):

- Vaginal bleeding (there should be less than one saturated perineal pad in 4 hours)
- Abdominal bleeding at the incision site(s) (a small amount is normal)
- Intactness of the incision(s)
- Urine output per urinary catheter for 24 hours or less (for open surgery)
- Pain

Specific postoperative interventions for a *vaginal hysterectomy* include:

- Assessment of vaginal bleeding (there should be less than one saturated pad in 4 hours)
- Urinary catheter care
- Perineal care

Community-Based Care

The patient with uterine leiomyomas is managed on an ambulatory care basis unless surgery is performed. After discharge, she usually returns to her home.

CHART 74-5 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

Postoperative Nursing Care of the Patient After Total Abdominal Hysterectomy

Assess cardiovascular, respiratory, renal, and gastrointestinal status, including:

- Vital signs
- Heart, lung, and bowel sounds
- Urine output
- Temperature and color of the skin
- Red blood cell, hemoglobin, and hematocrit levels
- Activity tolerance
- Dressing and drains for color and amount of drainage
- Pads for vaginal bleeding and clots
- Fluid intake (IVs until peristalsis returns and patient is tolerating oral intake)

Teach the patient to use these interventions to prevent postoperative complications:

- Cough and deep-breathing exercises
- Incentive spirometry
- Sequential compression devices
- Ambulation
- Avoidance of heavy lifting or strenuous activity
- Adequate hydration

Assess the home care teaching needs of the patient related to the illness and surgery, including:

- Physiologic effects of the surgery
- Signs or symptoms to report
- Side or toxic effects of medications
- Activity limitations related to driving and use of stairs
- Follow-up care
- Postoperative restrictions related to sexual activity, use of tampons, and bathing
- Care of wound and/or drains

Assess the patient's coping skills and reaction to the diagnosis and surgical procedure.

**NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE****Physiological Integrity**

A client returns from surgery after a total vaginal hysterectomy. What is the nurse's priority action immediately after surgery?

- Assess for excessive vaginal bleeding.
- Monitor temperature for infection.
- Assess for deep vein thrombosis.
- Check dressing for intactness.

If the patient had a hysterectomy, teach her to limit stair climbing for several weeks. If she lives alone and is not permitted to drive for 2 to 6 weeks, she will need to arrange for transportation for follow-up surgical visits.

Teach the woman who has undergone an abdominal hysterectomy about the expected physical changes, any activity restrictions, diet, sexual activity, wound care, complications, and the need for follow-up care. Chart 74-6 lists areas to include for health teaching.

Generally, women adjust well to surgery if they have completed childbearing, have interests outside the home, work, have no misconceptions about the effects of hysterectomy, and have support from the family, especially their sexual partner. Psychological reactions can occur months to years after surgery, particularly if sexual functioning and libido are diminished. Women identified as being at high risk for psychological problems may need long-term follow-up care or referral. They may need to be counseled about signs of

CHART 74-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Care After a Total Vaginal or Abdominal Hysterectomy**Expected Physical Changes**

- You will no longer have a period, although you may have some vaginal discharge for a few days after you go home.
- It will not be possible for you to become pregnant, and birth control methods are no longer needed.
- If your ovaries were removed, you may have some menopause symptoms such as hot flashes, night sweats, and vaginal dryness.
- It is normal to tire more easily and require more sleep and rest during the first few weeks after surgery.

Activity

- Limit stair climbing to fewer than five times per day.
- Do not lift anything heavier than 5 to 10 lbs.
- Gradually increase walking as exercise, but stop before you become fatigued.
- Avoid the sitting position for any extended period. When you sit, do not cross your legs at the knees.
- Avoid jogging, aerobic exercise, participating in sports, and any strenuous activity for 2 to 6 weeks, depending on what type of surgical procedure was performed.
- Do not drive until your surgeon has told you it is alright.

Sexual Activity

- Do not engage in sexual intercourse for 4 to 6 weeks, or as prescribed by your surgeon.
- If you had a vaginal "repair" as part of your surgery, the first time you have intercourse you may have some tenderness or pain because the vaginal walls are tighter. Careful intercourse and the use of water-based lubricants can help reduce this discomfort. This discomfort usually goes away with time and stretching of the vagina.

Complications

- Take your temperature twice each day for the first 3 days after surgery.
- Check your incision, if you have any, daily for signs of infection (increasing redness, open areas, drainage that is thick or foul-smelling, incision pain).

Report Any of the Following to Your Surgeon

- Increased vaginal drainage or change in drainage (bloodier, thicker, foul-smelling)
- Temperature over 100° F
- Pain, tenderness, redness, or swelling in your calves
- Pain or burning on urination

depression. Intermittent sadness is normal, but continued feelings of low self-esteem or loss of interest or pleasure in usual activities and pastimes is not normal and should be evaluated. Provide written materials, and focus on the positive aspects of the woman's life to help decrease adverse psychological reactions.

BARTHOLIN CYST**Pathophysiology**

Bartholin cyst is a common disorder of the vulva. It results from obstruction of the duct of the Bartholin gland. The secretory function of the gland continues, and the fluid fills the obstructed duct. The main causes of the obstruction are

infection, thickened mucus near the ductal opening, or trauma, such as lacerations.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient may be asymptomatic if the cyst is small. Ask if she has dyspareunia (painful intercourse) or inadequate genital lubrication. Assess for swelling in the perineal area. A large cyst usually causes constant local pain and may cause difficulty walking or sitting. Physical examination of the vulva reveals a swelling immediately beneath the skin in the posterior portion of the vulva. The cyst may appear brown or bloody, depending on its contents. Usually it is present on only one side and ranges from $\frac{3}{8}$ to 4 inches (1 to 10 cm) in size.

If the cyst is draining, a fluid sample is sent to the laboratory for culture (for gonorrhea and aerobic and anaerobic organisms) and sensitivity testing. If the woman is older than 40 years, a biopsy of the cyst is done to identify possible cancer.

If the woman is asymptomatic, no intervention is needed. An abscess usually ruptures spontaneously within 72 hours of forming. Teach the woman with an abscess to take over-the-counter or prescribed analgesics and apply moist heat (sitz baths or hot wet packs) to the vulva. Cultures most often reveal *Escherichia coli* or *Staphylococcus aureus*, for which antibiotics are prescribed.

Simple incision and drainage (I&D) may provide temporary relief. However, cysts tend to recur when the opening of the duct re-obstructs. Usually the surgeon establishes a permanent opening for drainage. **Marsupialization** (formation of a pouch that is a new duct opening) is performed using local, regional, or general anesthesia. Discomfort after surgery may be relieved with analgesics and sitz baths. Prophylactic antibiotics may be prescribed.

The Bartholin glands may be totally removed in older women when cancer is suspected or if infections with abscess formation recur. Care after surgery includes:

- Application of ice packs or sitz baths several times a day for comfort and promotion of healing
- Analgesics for pain
- Prophylactic antibiotics
- Assessment of the incision for signs of healing or infection

CERVICAL POLYP

Cervical polyps are *pedunculated* (on stalks) tumors that arise from the mucosa and extend through the opening of the cervical os. They result from a hyperplasia (overgrowth) of the endocervical epithelium in response to hormonal stimulation. Polyps may also be due to inflammation or to localized vascular congestion of the cervical blood vessels. They are the most common benign growth of the cervix and occur most often in women older than 40 years who have had several children.

A woman may be asymptomatic, have premenstrual or postmenstrual bleeding, or have bleeding after intercourse. A speculum examination may reveal a small single polyp or multiple polyps. They are bright red, are soft and fragile, and may bleed when touched.

Polyp removal is a simple office procedure. The base of the polyp is grasped with a clamp, and the polyp is twisted off and sent to the pathology laboratory for evaluation. Cautery

usually stops any bleeding at the site of removal. The woman does not feel any pain during the procedure. Instruct her to avoid tampon use, douches, and sexual intercourse for a week or until healing has taken place.

GYNECOLOGIC CANCERS

ENDOMETRIAL (UTERINE) CANCER

Pathophysiology

Endometrial cancer (cancer of the inner uterine lining) is the most common gynecologic malignancy in the United States. This chapter includes two other common gynecologic cancers, but the disease can affect any organ in the reproductive tract.

Endometrial cancer grows slowly in most cases, and early symptoms of vaginal bleeding generally lead to prompt evaluation and treatment. As a result, this type of cancer has a good prognosis. *Adenocarcinoma* is the most common type, accounting for 80% of all cases. The tumor arises from the glandular part of the endometrium and usually follows endometrial hyperplasia (overgrowth).

The initial growth of the cancer is within the uterine cavity, followed by extension into the myometrium and the cervix. Stage I endometrial cancer is confined to the endometrium. Stage II cancer also involves the cervix, and stage III reaches the vagina or lymph nodes. Stage IV endometrial cancer has spread beyond the pelvis.

Metastasis outside the uterus occurs in these ways:

- Through lymphatic spread to the ovaries and parametrial, pelvic, inguinal, and para-aortic lymph nodes
- By blood, to the lungs, liver, or bone
- By transtubal or intra-abdominal spread to the peritoneal cavity

Etiology and Genetic Risk

Endometrial cancer is strongly associated with conditions causing prolonged exposure to estrogen without the protective effects of progesterone. Risk factors for endometrial cancer are listed in [Table 74-3](#). Although most cases of endometrial cancer do not have a genetic predisposition, it is more common in families who have gene mutations for hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

Incidence and Prevalence

About 44,000 new cases of endometrial cancer occur annually in the United States. White women get the disease more often than African-American women, but African-American women die more often from the disease (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2010). Factors accounting for the differences in these death rates may include access to care and patient education opportunities.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The main symptom of endometrial cancer is postmenopausal bleeding. Ask the patient how many tampons or menstrual pads she uses each day. Some women also have a watery, bloody vaginal discharge, low back or abdominal pain, and low pelvic

TABLE 74-3 RISK FACTORS FOR ENDOMETRIAL (UTERINE) CANCER AND CERVICAL CANCER

ENDOMETRIAL (UTERINE) CANCER	CERVICAL CANCER
• Women in reproductive years • Family history of endometrial cancer or HNPCC • Diabetes mellitus • Hypertension • Obesity • Uterine polyps • Late menopause • Nulliparity (no childbirths) • Smoking • Tamoxifen (Nolvadex) given for breast cancer	• Girls and young women • Infection with HPV • Multiparity (multiple births) • Smoking • Younger than 18 years at first intercourse • Multiple sex partners • African American • Oral contraceptive use • History of STDs • Obesity or poor diet • Family history of cervical cancer • HIV/AIDS • Lower socioeconomic status • Sexual partner had a previous partner who developed cervical cancer • Intrauterine exposure to DES

AIDS, Acquired immune deficiency syndrome; DES, diethylstilbestrol; HIV, human immune deficiency virus; HNPCC, hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer; HPV, human papilloma virus; STDs, sexually transmitted diseases.

pain (caused by pressure of the enlarged uterus). Ask the patient to describe the exact location and intensity of her discomfort. A pelvic examination may reveal the presence of a palpable uterine mass or uterine polyp. The uterus is enlarged if the cancer is advanced.

Laboratory Assessment

Several laboratory tests are used to determine the overall condition of the woman with possible or confirmed endometrial cancer. For example, the complete blood count typically shows anemia because the patient has heavy bleeding. Serum tumor markers to assess for metastasis include CA-125 (cancer antigen-125) and alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), both of which may be elevated when ovarian cancer is present (Pagana & Pagana, 2010). A human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) level may be taken to rule out pregnancy before treatment for cancer begins. Genetic testing may be done for the mutation causing HNPCC, if there is a family history of this disease.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Transvaginal ultrasound and *endometrial biopsy* are the gold standard tests to determine the presence of endometrial thickening and cancer. Saline may be infused during the ultrasound to improve the image of the uterine cavity. The clinician then collects an endometrial biopsy from inside the uterus via a thin, flexible suction curette through the cervix (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Other diagnostic tests to determine the patient's overall health status and the presence of metastasis (cancer spread) include:

- Chest x-ray
- Intravenous pyelography (IVP), or excretory urography, to assess renal function and to assess for renal metastasis
- Abdominal ultrasound

- Computed tomography (CT) of the pelvis
- Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the abdomen and pelvis
- Liver and bone scans to assess for distant metastasis

Some women also have a hysteroscopic examination of the uterus and proctosigmoidoscopy depending on the stage of their cancer.

Psychosocial Assessment

Before a diagnosis is made, the woman may deny that the symptoms are related to cancer. During the diagnostic phase, the woman may express fears and concerns about having the disease. After the diagnosis is confirmed, she may express disbelief, anger, depression, anxiety, or withdrawal behaviors. Assess these emotional reactions, and encourage the patient to discuss them. Ask her about how she copes with other stressful events, and assess her support systems.

ANALYSIS

The priority problems for patients with endometrial cancer are:

1. Potential for disease metastasis
2. Ineffective Coping related to the diagnosis of cancer and fear of dying

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Reducing the Risk for Metastasis

Planning: Expect Outcomes. The patient is expected to be free of metastatic disease if she has been diagnosed without obvious metastasis. For patients whose cancer has already spread, the expected outcomes are to have the highest quality life for as long as possible. In some cases, palliation and end-of-life care are desired.

Interventions. Surgical removal and cancer staging of the tumor with adjacent lymph nodes are the most important interventions for endometrial cancer. Cancer staging is often done using minimally invasive techniques, such as laparoscopic or robotic-assisted procedures.

Surgical Management. For stage I disease, the gynecology oncologist usually removes the uterus, fallopian tubes, and ovaries (**total hysterectomy** and **bilateral salpingectomy/oophorectomy [BSO]**), as well as peritoneum fluid or washings for cytologic examination. Laparoscopic surgery has fewer complications, shorter hospital stay, and less cost. A radical hysterectomy with bilateral pelvic lymph node dissection and removal of the upper third of the vagina is performed for stage II cancer. Nursing care for a radical hysterectomy is the same as that for a simple hysterectomy except that the woman's hospitalization is usually longer and her convalescence may be extended. Radical surgery and node dissection can also be done as a minimally invasive procedure using laparoscopic or robotic-assisted technology.

Nonsurgical Management. Nonsurgical interventions (radiation therapy and chemotherapy) are used postoperatively and depend on the surgical staging.

Radiation Therapy. The oncologist prescribes radiation therapy to be delivered by external beam and/or brachytherapy for stage II and stage III cancers. Women with stage II disease may use brachytherapy (internal) radiation to prevent recurrence of vaginal cancer and improve survival.

The purpose of *brachytherapy* is to prevent disease recurrence. This treatment no longer requires a hospital stay and

CHART 74-7 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Health Teaching for the Patient Having Brachytherapy for Gynecologic Cancer

Teach the patient to report any of these signs and symptoms to the health care provider immediately:

- Heavy vaginal bleeding
- Urethral burning for more than 24 hours
- Blood in the urine
- Extreme fatigue
- Severe diarrhea
- Fever over 100° F (38° C)
- Abdominal pain

Teach the patient that she is not radioactive between treatments and there are no restrictions on her interactions with others.

is done on an ambulatory care basis. The radiologist places an applicator within the woman's uterus through the vagina. After the correct position of the applicator is confirmed by x-ray, the radioactive isotope is placed in the applicator and remains for several minutes. This procedure may be repeated between 2 and 5 times once or twice a week. Some patients also have external beam radiation while having brachytherapy treatment sessions. There are no restrictions for the woman to stay away from her family or the public between treatments.

While the radioactive implant is in place, radiation is emitted that can affect other people. The amount of time needed for the therapy depends on the amount of radiation emitted from the source. The radiologist calculates the time needed for a specific dose of radiation.

Inform the patient that she is restricted to bedrest during the treatment session. Excessive movement in bed is restricted to prevent dislodgment of the radioactive source.

Chart 74-7 lists the best practices for radiation precautions while caring for the patient receiving brachytherapy. Teach patients about when to call the health care provider after each treatment session.

External *beam radiation therapy (EBRT)* may be used to treat any stage of endometrial cancer in combination with surgery, brachytherapy, and/or chemotherapy. Depending on the extent of the tumor, the treatment is given on an ambulatory care basis for 4 to 6 weeks. Tissue around the tumor and pelvic wall nodes also are treated. *Teach the patient to monitor for signs of skin breakdown, especially in the perineal area; to avoid sunbathing; and to avoid washing the markings outlining the treatment site.*

Drug Therapy. Chemotherapy is used as palliative treatment in advanced and recurrent disease when it has spread to distant parts of the body, but it is not always effective. Although the combination can vary, three of the most common agents used for endometrial cancer are doxorubicin (Adriamycin), cisplatin (Platinol), and paclitaxel (Taxol). Chapter 24 describes chemotherapy and general nursing care during treatment.

Every woman experiences cancer differently. Many complementary therapies have evidence of benefit in decreasing the side effects of drug therapy and boosting the immune system. Help her make informed, evidence-based decisions.

Encourage her to check with her oncologist and/or pharmacist because some alternative therapies can be harmful or interfere with cancer treatment. Current evidence-based information is available about mind-body therapies, healing touch, herbs, vitamins, nutrition, and biologic therapies at the American Cancer Society website (www.cancer.org).

Helping the Patient Develop Coping Strategies

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient is expected to develop coping strategies that will help her deal with the diagnosis and collaborative care for endometrial cancer.

Interventions. Women need to discuss their concerns about the presence of cancer and the potential for recurrence. Provide emotional support, and create an atmosphere that encourages them to ask questions or express their fears and concerns. Include family members or significant others in discussions when possible.

Reactions to radiation therapy vary. Some women feel radioactive or “unclean” after treatments and may exhibit withdrawal behaviors. Reassure them by correcting any misconceptions. Patients who have chemotherapy may be upset if **alopecia** (hair loss) occurs. Warn them of this possibility before treatment starts. Wigs, scarves, or turbans can be worn until the hair grows back. Many women select these replacements before they lose their hair. Others shave their heads and begin wearing them immediately as the treatment begins. Tell women about these options so that they can make the best decision for them.

Often patients experience emotional crises because of the physical effects of cancer treatments. Radical hysterectomy may be seen as mutilating. Both radiation and chemotherapy have side effects that change physical appearance and body image. Women often may have a grief reaction to these changes. The feelings of loss depend on the visibility of the loss and the loss of function. Help the patient adapt to the body changes. One way to do this is to encourage self-management as soon as her physical condition is stable. Use a calm and accepting attitude.

Death can occur with or without treatment. The patient and family want the woman to pass the 5-year survival mark without a recurrence of disease. If there is a recurrence, they may be hostile and have manifestations of a grief reaction. Encourage patients and their families to discuss their feelings. Refer to support services such as certified hospital chaplain or other spiritual leader, social worker, or counselor. Response to loss and grieving is discussed in Chapter 9.

Community-Based Care

Home Care Management

The woman with endometrial cancer is managed at home unless surgery is indicated. After surgery, she is usually discharged to her home. Home care after surgery for endometrial cancer is the same as that after a hysterectomy. (See discussion of Hysterectomy on p. 1619 in the Uterine Leiomyoma section.) Patients who are receiving chemotherapy or radiation therapy are treated on an ambulatory care basis. Most women are surprised by the fatigue caused by radiation and chemotherapy. Help the patient and her family plan daily activities around trips to the clinic or the health care provider's office. If the tumor recurs and cure is not likely, the woman and her family need to think about hospice care and whether she can be cared for in the home.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient to report vaginal or rectal bleeding, foul-smelling discharge, abdominal pain or distention, and hematuria to the health care provider. These symptoms may be the result of the disease or its treatment.

The high dose of radiation causes sterility, and vaginal shrinkage can occur. Vaginal dilators can be used with water-soluble lubricants for 10 minutes each day until sexual activity resumes (in 10 days to 6 weeks). Reassure the woman that she is not radioactive and that her partner will not “catch” cancer by engaging in sexual intercourse.

Review all prescribed drugs, including the dosage and schedule, effects, and side effects. Emphasize the importance of keeping appointments for follow-up care.

Health Care Resources

In the United States, local American Cancer Society chapters provide written materials about endometrial cancer and information about local support groups. Each province in Canada also has a division of the Canadian Cancer Society (www.cancer.ca). If the patient is in the terminal stages of cancer, hospice care may be appropriate (see [Chapter 9](#)). If nursing care is needed at home, the hospital nurse or case manager makes referrals to a home health care agency. A referral to a social services agency may be needed if the patient cannot meet the financial demands of treatment and long-term follow-up.



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Evidence-Based Practice; Informatics; Teamwork and Collaboration

A 58-year-old woman is diagnosed with ovarian cancer today. She begins to cry and tells you that she “had a feeling all along” that she had the disease. No one in her family has had ovarian cancer, but she has two friends who recently died of the disease. She is scheduled for an exploratory laparotomy and tumor debulking in 3 days. Her oncologist told her that after she recovers from surgery, she will have brachytherapy and external beam radiation therapy (EBRT).

1. What preoperative teaching will you provide for this patient and why?
2. What will you tell her about restrictions associated with brachytherapy and EBRT?
3. Where would you search for evidence about her expected quality of life and prognosis?
4. What members may need to be involved in her care?

CERVICAL CANCER

Pathophysiology

The uterine cervix is covered with squamous cells on the outer cervix and columnar (glandular) cells that line the endocervical canal. Papanicolaou (Pap) tests sample cells from both areas as a screening test for cervical cancer. The squamo-columnar junction is the *transformation zone* where most cell abnormalities occur. The adolescent has more columnar cells exposed on the outer cervix, which may be one reason she is more vulnerable to sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) and human immune deficiency virus (HIV). In contrast, in the menopausal woman, the squamo-columnar junction may be higher up in the endocervical canal, making it difficult to sample for a Pap test.

Premalignant changes are described on a continuum from atypia (suspicious) to *cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN 1)* to *carcinoma in situ (CIS)*, which is the most advanced premalignant change. It generally takes years for the cervical cells to transform from normal to premalignant to invasive cancer. Many CIN 2 lesions progress to high-grade dysplasia. CIN 3 lesions can progress to squamous cell carcinoma or adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS).

Most cervical cancers arise from the squamous cells on the outside of the cervix. The other cancers arise from the mucus-secreting glandular cells (adenocarcinoma) in the endocervical canal. The disease spreads by direct extension to the vaginal mucosa, lower uterine segment, parametrium, pelvic wall, bladder, and bowel. Metastasis is usually confined to the pelvis, but distant spread can occur through lymphatic spread and the circulation to the liver, lungs, or bones.

Etiology

Human papilloma virus (HPV) is the most common STD in the United States. Almost all women will have HPV sometime in their life, but not all types lead to cancer. Most cases of cervical cancer are caused by certain types of HPV. Women at the highest risk are those who have a long-standing high-risk HPV strain ([Wells, 2008](#)). The high-risk HPV types, especially strains 16 and 18, impair the tumor-suppressor gene and cause most of the cervical cancers. The unrestricted tissue growth can spread, becoming invasive and metastatic. Strains 6 and 11 are associated with genital warts. Risk factors for cervical cancer are listed in [Table 74-3](#).

Incidence/Prevalence

Invasive cancer of the cervix is the third most common cancer of the female genital system, after ovarian and uterine cancer. Although much less common than breast cancer, cervical cancer has a lower 5-year survival rate (ACS, 2010).

The peak incidence occurs in patients in their mid-20s. It usually resolves spontaneously within a year. Carcinoma in situ (CIS) occurs in women about 30 years old, and invasive cancer occurs most commonly in the late 40s (ACS, 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Girls and young women should receive one of the two currently used HPV vaccines, Gardasil and Cervarix, ideally before their first sexual contact to receive protection against the highest-risk HPV types that are responsible for most cervical cancers. Gardasil is indicated for ages 9 through 26 years. It is also given for boys and men (ages 9 through 26 years) to prevent genital warts because it protects against the 6 and 11 HPV strains.

Cervarix protects girls and women ages 10 through 25 years against infection for HPV strains 16 and 18 to prevent cervical cancer. It allows for longer-lasting protection when compared with Gardasil.

Teach all young patients about the importance of receiving the vaccine and the need to have the entire series (3 injections over 6 months). Tell them that the most frequent side effects are related to local irritation from the injections (e.g., pain, redness). Other common side effects include nausea, vomiting, dizziness, headache, and diarrhea.

The American Cancer Society (ACS) recommends that women have periodic pelvic examinations and Pap tests to screen for cervical cancer early. Teach women that they should

begin these screening precautions within 3 years after having sexual intercourse or by the age of 21. Some health care providers, however, recommend the first examination and Pap test by age 18. For conventional Pap testing, *annual* screening is recommended by most experts. If the liquid test is used and the woman has no other risk factors (e.g., weakened immune system, HIV), it may be done *every 2 or 3 years* if she has three consecutive normal Pap smears and depending on the health care provider's recommendations. Teach women that if they have a hysterectomy and have no other health risk factors, a Pap test is no longer needed.

Instruct women ages 70 years and older who have had three consecutive normal Pap smears and no abnormal results that they can stop having Pap tests after a discussion with their health care provider. As women age, the usefulness of testing is questionable. The evidence about precise screening frequency remains conflicting (Wells, 2008).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

The patient who has preinvasive cancer is often asymptomatic. *The classic symptom of invasive cancer is painless vaginal bleeding.* Ask the patient if she has had or now has bleeding. It may start as spotting between menstrual periods or after sexual intercourse or douching. As the cancer grows, bleeding increases in frequency, duration, and amount and may become continuous.

Ask the woman if she has a watery, blood-tinged vaginal discharge that becomes dark and foul-smelling (occurs as the disease progresses). Leg pain (along the sciatic nerve) or swelling of one leg may be a late symptom or may indicate recurrent disease. Flank pain may be a late symptom of hydronephrosis, indicating advanced cancer pressing on the ureters, backing up the urine into the kidney. Ask the patient if she has had other signs of recurrence or metastasis such as:

- Unexplained weight loss
- **Dysuria** (painful urination)
- Pelvic pain (caused by pressure of the tumor on the bladder or the bowel)
- **Hematuria** (bloody urine)
- Rectal bleeding
- Chest pain
- Coughing

A physical examination may not reveal any abnormalities in early preinvasive cervical cancer. The internal pelvic examination may identify late-stage disease.

Diagnostic Assessment

If Pap results are abnormal, an *HPV-typing DNA test* of the cervical sample can determine the presence of one or more high-risk types. The health care provider may perform a colposcopic examination to view the transformation zone. **Colposcopy** is a procedure in which application of a 3% acetic acid solution is applied to the cervix. The cervix is then examined under magnification with a bright filter light that enhances the visualization of the characteristics of dysplasia or cancer. If abnormal tissue is recognized, multiple biopsies of the cervical tissue are performed.

If atypical glandular cells are suspected, the health care provider may perform an *endocervical curettage* (scraping of the endocervix wall) as well. Inform her that a small amount of bleeding is expected for up to 2 weeks after the biopsies.

INTERVENTIONS

Interventions for the woman with cervical cancer are similar to those for endometrial cancer: surgery, which is possibly followed by radiation and chemotherapy for later-stage disease.

Surgical Management

Early stage I management techniques include local cervical ablation therapies of electrosurgical excision, laser therapy, or cryosurgery. Small tumors that are only microinvasive are managed with excisional conization or hysterectomy. Early-stage *invasive* cancers are managed with radical surgery and radiation. Advanced inoperable cancers are treated with radiation. Factors that influence the choice of localized treatment versus surgical intervention include patient overall health, desire for future childbearing, tumor size, stage, cancer cell type, degree of lymph node involvement, and patient preference.

Early Surgical Procedures. The **loop electrosurgical excision procedure (LEEP)** is short (10 to 30 minutes) and is performed in a physician's office or in an ambulatory care setting with a local anesthetic injected into the cervix. A thin loop-wire electrode that transmits a painless electrical current is used to cut away affected tissue. LEEP is both a diagnostic procedure and a treatment, because it provides a specimen that can be examined by a pathologist to ensure the lesion was completely removed. Little discomfort is associated with this procedure. Spotting after the procedure is common. Teach patients to adhere for 3 weeks to the restrictions listed in Chart 74-8.

Laser therapy is also an office procedure used for early cancers. A laser beam is directed to the abnormal tissues, where energy from the beam is absorbed by the fluid in the tissues, causing them to vaporize. A small amount of bleeding occurs with the procedure, and the woman may have a slight vaginal discharge. Healing occurs in 6 to 12 weeks. A disadvantage of this procedure is that no specimen is available for study.

Cryotherapy involves freezing of the cancer, causing subsequent necrosis. The procedure is often painless, although

CHART 74-8 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Care After Local Cervical Ablation Therapies

- Refrain from sexual intercourse.
- Do not use tampons.
- Do not douche.
- Take showers rather than tub baths.
- Avoid lifting heavy objects.
- Report any heavy vaginal bleeding, foul-smelling drainage, or fever.

The usual time period for these restrictions is 3 weeks. Your health care provider may prescribe a different (longer or shorter) time frame for you.

some women have slight cramping after the procedure. The patient has a heavy watery discharge for several weeks after the procedure. Instruct her to follow the restrictions in [Chart 74-8](#).

In cases of microinvasive cancer, a *conization* can remove the affected tissue while still preserving fertility. This procedure is done when the lesion cannot be visualized by colposcopic examination. A cone-shaped area of cervix is removed surgically and sent to the laboratory to determine the extent of the cancer. Potential complications from this procedure include hemorrhage and uterine perforation. Long-term follow-up care is needed because new cancers can develop.

Hysterectomy. A total hysterectomy may be performed as treatment of microinvasive cancer if the woman does not want children or more children. A laparoscopic vaginal approach is commonly used. A radical hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymph node dissection may be as effective as radiation is for treating cancer that has extended beyond the cervix but not to the pelvic wall. Care for patients undergoing hysterectomy is found in the Uterine Leiomyoma section on p. 1619.

Nonsurgical Management

Radiation therapy is reserved for invasive cervical cancer. Brachytherapy and external beam radiation therapy are used in combination, depending on the extent and location of the lesion. The procedure is similar to that described on pp. 1622-1623 for endometrial cancer.

A combination of chemotherapy with cisplatin (Platinol) and radiation may also be used. This treatment modality shows increased survival times but increased toxicity for many patients. Examples of other drugs used alone or in combination include paclitaxel (Taxol), carboplatin, fluorouracil (5-FU), and mitomycin. See [Chapter 24](#) for more information about the general nursing care for the patient on chemotherapy and radiation.

OVARIAN CANCER

Pathophysiology

Most ovarian cancers are epithelial tumors that grow on the surface of the ovaries. These tumors grow rapidly, spread quickly, and are often bilateral. Tumor cells spread by direct extension into nearby organs and through blood and lymph circulation to distant sites. Free-floating cancer cells also spread through the abdomen to seed new sites, usually accompanied by ascites (abdominal fluid).

Ovarian cancer seems to be disordered growth in response to excessive exposure to estrogen. This would explain the protective effects of pregnancies and oral contraceptive use, both of which interrupt the monthly estrogen exposure. [Table 74-4](#) lists known and suspected risk factors for ovarian cancer.

Ovarian cancer is the leading cause of death from female reproductive cancers, but it is not the most common type of cancer. About 22,000 new cases are diagnosed each year, with 14,000 annual deaths (ACS, 2010). The incidence increases in women older than 50 years, and most are diagnosed after menopause. Family history accounts for a small percentage of cases. These women carry *BCRA1* or *BCRA2* genetic mutations. Of these, some choose to have a **bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO)** (removal of both ovaries and fallopian

TABLE 74-4 RISK FACTORS FOR OVARIAN CANCER

• Older than 40 years • Family history of ovarian or breast cancer or HNPCC • Diabetes mellitus • Nulliparity • Older than 30 years at first pregnancy • Breast cancer	• Colorectal cancer • Infertility • <i>BCRA1</i> or <i>BCRA2</i> gene mutations • Early menarche/late menopause • Endometriosis • Obesity/high-fat diet
---	--

HNPCC, Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer.

tubes). This surgery may reduce the risk for ovarian cancer by more than 90% in these patients (Nussbaum et al., 2007).

Survival rates are low because ovarian cancer is often not detected until its late stages. The aging of the population makes it important for nurses to teach women to “*think ovarian*” if they have vague abdominal and GI symptoms.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Health promotion measures to help prevent ovarian cancer include maintaining a normal weight and eating a well-balanced diet. Women who have had children, used oral contraception for at least 5 years, and breast-fed their children also have less risk for having the disease (Bohnenkamp et al., 2007a).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Most women with ovarian cancer have had mild symptoms for several months but may have thought they were due to normal perimenopausal changes or stress. They may report abdominal pain or swelling or have vague GI disturbances such as dyspepsia (indigestion) and gas. Ask the patient if she has had urinary frequency or incontinence, unexpected weight loss, and/or vaginal bleeding.

Complications of advanced metastatic cancer include:

- Pleural effusion
- Ascites
- Lymphedema
- Intestinal obstruction
- Malnutrition

On pelvic examination, an abdominal mass may not be palpable until it reaches a size of 4 to 6 inches (10 to 15 cm). Any enlarged ovary found after menopause should be evaluated as though it were malignant. A Pap smear is of limited value for detecting ovarian cancer.

A cancer antigen test, *CA-125*, measures the presence of damaged endometrial and uterine tissue in the blood. It may be elevated if ovarian cancer is present, but it can also be elevated in patients with endometriosis, fibroids, pelvic inflammatory disease, pregnancy, and even menses. It is also useful for monitoring a patient's progress during and after treatment. Transvaginal ultrasonography, chest radiography, and computed tomography (CT) are part of a complete workup to evaluate for metastasis. Complete blood work includes a liver profile if there is ascites.

The woman with ovarian cancer has concerns similar to those described for the patient with endometrial cancer.

Because the cancer is often diagnosed in an advanced stage, thoughts of death and dying, menopause, and loss of fertility come as a shock.

INTERVENTIONS

Nursing care of the patient with ovarian cancer is similar to that for endometrial or cervical cancer. The options for treatment depend on the extent of the cancer and usually include surgery first, followed by chemotherapy. Radiation is used for more widespread cancers.

Surgical Management

Diagnosis depends on surgical exploration. Exploratory laparotomy (abdominal surgery) is performed to diagnose, treat, and stage ovarian tumors. A total abdominal hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (removal of the ovaries and fallopian tubes), and pelvic and para-aortic lymph node dissection are usually performed. Very large tumors that cannot be removed are debulked (cytoreduction). These procedures can be performed via laparoscopic technique to decrease recovery time, minimize pain, and reduce postoperative complications. Ovarian cancer is staged during surgery.

Nursing care of the patient is similar to that for any patient having abdominal surgery (see Chapter 18). As for any patient after abdominal surgery, assess vital signs and pain and maintain catheters and drains. Teach her the importance of anti-embolism stockings, incentive spirometry, and early ambulation. Infections after ovarian cancer surgery commonly affect the respiratory and urinary tract. Assess vital signs, and monitor the quantity and quality of urine output.

Nonsurgical Management

After cytoreduction and staging of ovarian cancer, chemotherapy is the treatment that is used the most often. For all stages of ovarian cancer, cisplatin (Platinol), carboplatin, and taxanes of all types are the most common postoperative drugs used for treating ovarian cancer. They may be given IV and/or intraperitoneally. Intraperitoneal (IP) therapy is described in Chapter 15. The drugs are usually given every 3 to 4 weeks for six cycles in an inpatient or ambulatory care setting

(Blewitt, 2010). New drugs are being tested that use monoclonal antibodies, hormones, and agents that target cell growth and tumor blood supply.

Community-Based Care

Patients having surgery usually return to their home. Teach them to avoid tampons, douches, and sexual intercourse for at least 6 weeks or as instructed by the health care provider. Remind them to keep their follow-up surgical appointment and talk with the health care provider about resuming usual activities. Refer patients and their families to Gilda's Club (www.gildasclub.org) and the National Ovarian Cancer Coalition (NOCC) (www.ovarian.org) for more information and support groups. In Canada, the National Ovarian Cancer Association (www.ovariancanada.org) is available for the same purpose.

For patients with advanced metastatic disease, collaborate with the case manager, patient, and family for possible referral to hospice. Chapter 9 discusses end-of-life care and hospice in detail. The woman who is faced with the diagnosis of advanced ovarian cancer is usually very anxious about dying. Encourage her to discuss her feelings. Provide realistic assurance, as well as accurate information about treatments. Patients report their most distressing moments in the hospital were when they thought they were not getting adequate information. Encourage them to use their support systems of family members, friends, and clergy, including the hospital chaplain. Grief counseling is very appropriate. A visit from another woman who has survived a similar disease or referral to a support group may decrease fears. Refer the patient who fears passing the *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* gene to her daughter for genetic counseling and testing.

Ovarian cancer has a high recurrence rate. After recurrence, the cancer is treatable but no longer curable. If this occurs, the patient may deny symptoms at first or express feelings of anger and grief. The family is often fearful of the outcome. Provide encouragement and support during this difficult time, and help the patient and her family work through their grief and prepare for death.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing impaired sexuality as a result of gynecologic problems?

- Irregular or abnormal vaginal bleeding
- Vaginal discharge
- Report of perineal itching or burning
- Report of painful intercourse
- Abdominal distention and discomfort
- Report of irritability, anxiety, or depression
- Report of decreased libido

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to the patient experiencing impaired sexuality as a result of gynecologic problems?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Conducting an abdominal assessment
- Conducting a thorough pain assessment

- Checking for bleeding and amount (number of pads or tampons)
- Listening to patient's concerns about her sexuality

Respond by:

- Helping the patient into a sitting position
- Providing pain relief measures, such as heat and analgesia
- Referring the patient to a sexual or intimacy counselor (including the patient's partner if desired)

On what should you REFLECT?

- Think about what else you can do to help provide psychosocial support.
- Prepare for complications, such as hemorrhage, if the patient is bleeding.
- Evaluate pain level after interventions.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Refer patients with gynecologic problems to appropriate community resources such as the American Cancer Society and the Endometriosis Association.
- Collaborate with the case manager when planning care for patients with gynecologic cancers.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach women to follow the American Cancer Society's screening guidelines to prevent and early-detect for gynecologic cancers.
- Teach all women to have regular Pap tests based on their risk factors.
- Teach women to practice safe sex to prevent infections of the reproductive organs.
- Teach women about risk factors for gynecologic cancers as described in [Tables 74-3 and 74-4](#).
- Teach women how to prevent toxic shock syndrome (TSS) as listed in [Chart 74-4](#).

Psychosocial Integrity

- Explain all tests, procedures, and treatments, especially if they cause discomfort during or after the procedures.

- Assess the patient's anxiety before any gynecologic surgery.
- Encourage women who are having procedures that may interfere with fertility to express feelings of fear or grief.
- Encourage women with chronic or serious health problems to consider using support groups or counseling.

Physiological Integrity

- Urge any woman who experiences postmenopausal vaginal bleeding to consult with her gynecologic health care provider as soon as possible.
- Assess for clinical manifestations of TSS as listed in [Chart 74-3](#).
- Teach patients about specific restrictions after local cervical ablation therapy (see [Chart 74-8](#)).
- When caring for a patient who has a radioactive implant, use best practices as described in [Chart 74-7](#).
- Teach the patient who is going home after a hysterectomy how to monitor for infection or other complications.
- Instruct patients receiving external beam radiation to the abdomen to gently wash the area; to not apply creams or lotions (unless prescribed by the radiologist); to not wash off marking; to avoid exposing the area to sunlight or temperature extremes; and to wear soft, nonirritating clothing.

Care of Male Patients with Reproductive Problems

Donna D. Ignatavicius



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary
Concept Map Creator

Concept Map: Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (BPH)
Key Points
Review Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Identify health care team members to provide collaborative care and discharge planning for patients with male reproductive problems.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

2. Teach men and their partners about community resources for reproductive cancers.
3. Evaluate patient risk factors for male reproductive cancers.
4. Develop a health teaching plan for men to prevent or detect early male reproductive cancers.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Assess the patient's acceptance of body image changes that may result from male reproductive surgery.
6. Explain the psychosocial needs of men who have male reproductive problems.

Physiological Integrity

7. Perform a focused physical assessment of the man's reproductive system.
8. Describe the mechanisms of action, side effects, and nursing implications for pharmacologic management of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH).

9. Develop a postoperative plan of care for a patient undergoing surgery for benign prostatic hyperplasia.
10. Incorporate complementary and alternative therapies into the patient's plan of care.
11. Discuss treatment options for prostate cancer with patients, partners, and/or families.
12. Provide preoperative teaching for patients having a radical prostatectomy.
13. Develop a teaching plan for the patient and family about the role of drug therapy in treating prostate cancer.
14. Identify adverse effects of radiation therapy for reproductive cancers.
15. Develop a community-based plan of care for a man with prostate cancer.
16. Describe the options for treating erectile dysfunction.
17. Discuss cultural considerations related to male reproductive problems.
18. Develop a plan of care for a patient with testicular cancer, including fertility issues.
19. Compare the assessment and treatment for hydrocele, spermatocele, and varicocele.

Male reproductive problems can range from short-term infections to long-term health care problems that may require end-of-life care. Any health issue that affects the male reproductive system can affect the human need for *sexuality*. For example, some patients have surgeries that damage essential

nerves that are needed to have an erection. Others have disorders that psychologically prevent the patient from engaging in his usual sexual activity.

The role of the nurse and other health care team members is to be open, supportive, and nonjudgmental when caring

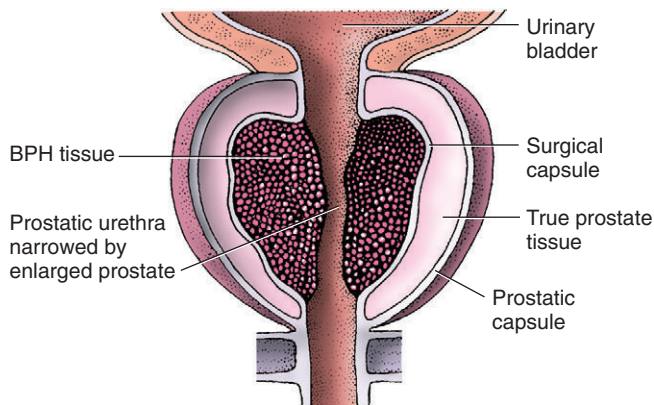


FIG. 75-1 Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) grows inward, causing narrowing of the urethra.

for men with reproductive problems. Respect the man's privacy at all times.

BENIGN PROSTATIC HYPERPLASIA

Pathophysiology

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) is a very common health problem, but the exact cause is unclear. It is likely the result of a combination of aging and the influence of androgens that are present in prostate tissue, such as dihydrotestosterone (DHT) (McCance et al., 2010). With aging and increased DHT levels, the glandular units in the prostate undergo nodular tissue **hyperplasia** (an increase in the number of cells). This altered tissue promotes local inflammation by attracting cytokines and other substances (McCance et al., 2010).

As the prostate gland enlarges, it extends upward into the bladder and inward, causing **bladder outlet obstruction** (Fig. 75-1). In response, the urinary system is affected in several ways. First, the detrusor (bladder) muscle thickens to help urine push past the enlarged prostate gland (McCance et al., 2010). In spite of the bladder muscle change, the patient has increased residual urine (stasis) and chronic urinary retention. The increased volume of residual urine often causes **overflow urinary incontinence**, in which the urine "leaks" around the enlarged prostate causing dribbling. Urinary stasis can also result in urinary tract infections and bladder calculi (stones).

In a few patients, the prostate becomes very large and the man cannot void (acute urinary retention [AUR]). The patient with this problem requires emergent care. In other patients, chronic urinary retention may result in a backup of urine and cause a gradual dilation of the ureters (**hydronephrosis**) and kidneys (**hydronephrosis**) if BPH is not treated. These problems can lead to chronic kidney disease as described in Chapter 71.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

When taking a history, several standardized assessment tools are used to help the health care provider determine the severity of lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) associated with

prostatic enlargement. One of the most commonly used assessments is the International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS), which incorporates the American Urological Association Symptom Index (AUA-SI) (Fig. 75-2) as questions 1 through 7. The additional question included on the I-PSS is the effect of the patient's urinary symptoms on quality of life. Most patients complete the questions as a self-administered tool because it is available in many languages. If the patient is illiterate or does not feel like reading the questions, the nurse or health care provider can ask them. Be sure that older men wear their glasses or contact lenses, if needed.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Ask about the patient's current urinary pattern. Assess for urinary frequency and urgency. Determine the number of times the patient awakens during the night to void (**nocturia**). Other symptoms of LUTS include:

- Difficulty in starting (hesitancy) and continuing urination
- Reduced force and size of the urinary stream ("weak" stream)
- Sensation of incomplete bladder emptying
- Straining to begin urination
- Post-void (after voiding) dribbling or leaking

If frequency and nocturia do not occur with restricted urinary flow, the patient may have an infection or other bladder problem. Ask whether the patient has had **hematuria** (blood in the urine) when starting the urine stream or at the end of voiding. BPH is a common cause of hematuria in older men.

The advanced practice nurse or other health care provider examines the patient for physical changes of the prostate gland. Remind the patient to void before the physical examination. Inspect and palpate the abdomen for a distended bladder. The health care provider may percuss the bladder. If the patient has a sense of urgency when gentle pressure is applied, the bladder may be distended. Obese patients are best assessed by percussion or bedside ultrasound bladder scanner rather than by inspection or palpation.

Prepare the patient for the prostate gland examination. Tell him that he may feel the urge to urinate as the prostate is palpated. Because the prostate is close to the rectal wall, it is easily examined by digital rectal examination (DRE). Help the patient bend over the examination table or assume a side-lying fetal position, whichever is the easiest position for him. The health care provider examines the prostate for size and consistency. BPH presents as a uniform, elastic, nontender enlargement, whereas cancer of the prostate gland feels like a stony-hard nodule. Advise the patient that after the prostate gland is palpated, it may be massaged to obtain a fluid sample for examination to rule out **prostatitis** (inflammation and possible infection of the prostate), a common problem that can occur with BPH. If the patient has bacterial prostatitis, he is treated with broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy for at least 30 days to prevent the spread of infection (McCance et al., 2010).

Psychosocial Assessment

Patients who have nocturia and other LUTS may be irritable or depressed as a result of interrupted sleep and annoying visits to the bathroom. Assess the effect of sleep interruptions on the patient's mood and mental status.

International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS)

Patient Name: _____ Date of Birth: _____ Date Completed: _____

In the past month:	Not at All	Less Than 1 in 5 Times	Less Than Half the Time	About Half the Time	More Than Half the Time	Almost Always	Your Score
1. Incomplete Emptying How often have you had the sensation of not emptying your bladder?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
2. Frequency How often have you had to urinate less than every 2 hours?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
3. Intermittency How often have you found you stopped and started again several times when you urinated?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
4. Urgency How often have you found it difficult to postpone urination?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
5. Weak Stream How often have you had a weak urinary stream?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
6. Straining How often have you had to strain to start urination?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
	None	1 Time	2 Times	3 Times	4 Times	5 Times	
7. Nocturia How many times do you typically get up at night to urinate?	0	1	2	3	4	5	
Total I-PSS Score							

Score: 1-7: Mild 8-19: Moderate 20-35: Severe

Quality of Life Due to Urinary Symptoms	Delighted	Pleased	Mostly Satisfied	Mixed	Mostly Dissatisfied	Unhappy	Terrible
If you were to spend the rest of your life with your urinary condition just the way it is now, how would you feel about that?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6

FIG. 75-2 The International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS).

Continued

About the I-PSS

The International Prostate Symptom Score (I-PSS) is based on the answers to seven questions concerning urinary symptoms and one question concerning quality of life. Each question concerning urinary symptoms allows the patient to choose one out of six answers indicating increasing severity of the particular symptom. The answers are assigned points from 0 to 5. The total score can therefore range from 0 to 35 (asymptomatic to very symptomatic).

The questions refer to the following urinary symptoms:

Questions	Symptom
1	Incomplete emptying
2	Frequency
3	Intermittency
4	Urgency
5	Weak Stream
6	Straining
7	Nocturia

Question 8 refers to the patient's perceived quality of life.

The first seven questions of the I-PSS are identical to the questions appearing on the American Urological Association (AUA) Symptom Index, which currently categorizes symptoms as follows:

- Mild (symptom score less than or equal to 7)
- Moderate (symptom score range 8 to 19)
- Severe (symptom score range 20 to 35)

The International Scientific Committee (SCI), under the patronage of the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Union Against Cancer (UICC), recommends the use of only a single question to assess the quality of life. The answers to this question range from "delighted" to "terrible," or 0 to 6. Although this single question may or may not capture the global impact of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) symptoms or quality of life, it may serve as a valuable starting point for a doctor-patient conversation.

The SCI has agreed to use the symptom index for BPH, which has been developed by the AUA Measurement Committee, as the official worldwide symptoms assessment tool for patients suffering from prostatism.

The SCI recommends that physicians consider the following components for a basic diagnostic workup: history; physical examination; appropriate labs such as U/A, creatinine, etc.; and DRE or other evaluation to rule out prostate cancer.

FIG. 75-2, cont'd

Post-void dribbling and overflow incontinence may cause embarrassment and prevent the patient from socializing or leaving his home. For some patients, this social isolation can affect quality of life and lead to clinical depression and/or severe anxiety. Johnson et al. (2010) found a strong correlation between depression and BPH in older men. Depressed patients were three times more likely to have severe symptoms.

Laboratory Assessment

A urinalysis and culture are typically obtained to diagnose urinary tract infection and microscopic hematuria. If infection is present, the urinalysis measures the number of white blood cells (WBCs).

Other laboratory studies that may be performed include:

- A complete blood count (CBC) to evaluate any evidence of systemic infection (elevated WBCs) or anemia (decreased red blood cells [RBCs]) from hematuria
- Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and serum creatinine levels to evaluate renal function (both are usually elevated with kidney disease)
- A prostate-specific antigen (PSA) and a serum acid phosphatase level if prostate cancer is suspected (both are typically elevated in patients who have prostate cancer)
- Culture and sensitivity of prostatic fluid (if expressed during the examination)

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Imaging studies that are typically performed are *transabdominal ultrasound* and *transrectal ultrasound (TRUS)*. The patient having a TRUS lies on his side while the transducer is inserted into the rectum for viewing the prostate and surrounding structures. A tissue biopsy may also be done if the health care provider is uncertain whether the prostatic problem is benign or malignant.

In some cases, the physician uses a cystoscope to view the interior of the bladder, the bladder neck, and the urethra. This examination is used to study the presence and effect of bladder neck obstruction. The procedure is usually done in an ambulatory care setting. See Chapter 69 for a detailed description of *cystoscopy* and the nursing care needed for patients having this procedure.

Residual urine may be determined by *bladder ultrasound* immediately after the patient voids. As an alternative, because the patient voids before cystoscopy, residual urine may be measured when the cystoscope is inserted. *Urodynamic pressure-flow studies* may help diagnose and grade bladder outlet obstruction and detrusor muscle function.

ANALYSIS

The priority problem for the patient with benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) is Impaired Urinary Elimination related to bladder outlet obstruction.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION

Improving Urinary Elimination

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with BPH is expected to have a normal urinary elimination pattern without urinary hesitancy, urgency, or infection.

Interventions. Patients with symptomatic BPH are first treated with nonsurgical interventions, such as drug therapy. The Concept Map on p. 1634 shows nursing assessment and collaborative interventions for the patient with BPH.

Nonsurgical Management. Drug therapy is a popular option for treating BPH. For patients with AUR or for those who do not respond or cannot tolerate drug therapy, non-invasive procedures or surgery is the treatment of choice.

Drug Therapy. Drugs from two major categories may be used alone, but most commonly they are given in combination. The health care provider usually prescribes a *5-alpha reductase inhibitor (5-ARI)* as *first-line drug therapy*. Examples of these drugs are finasteride (Proscar) and dutasteride (Avodart). Normally, testosterone is converted to DHT in the prostate gland by the enzyme *5-alpha reductase*. By taking an enzyme-inhibiting agent, the patient's DHT levels decrease, which results in reducing the enlarged prostate.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Remind patients who are being treated with a 5-ARI for BPH that they may need to take it for as long as 6 months before improvement is noticed. Teach them about possible side effects, which include erectile dysfunction (ED), decreased libido (sexual desire), and dizziness due to orthostatic hypotension. Remind them to change positions carefully and slowly.

The alpha-adrenergic receptors in prostatic smooth muscle enable the prostate gland to respond to *alpha-1 selective*

blocking agents, such as tamsulosin (Flomax), alfuzosin (Uroxatral), doxazosin (Cardura, Cardura-1 ♣), terazosin (Hytrin), and silodosin (Rapaflo). Tamsulosin is also available as an over-the-counter (OTC) drug. These drugs relax smooth muscles in the prostate gland, creating less urinary resistance and improved urinary flow. They also cause peripheral vasodilation and reduced peripheral vascular resistance.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

If giving alpha blockers in an inpatient setting, assess for orthostatic (postural) hypotension, tachycardia, and syncope ("blackout"), especially after the first dose is given to older men. If the patient is taking the drug at home, teach him to be careful when changing position and to report any weakness, lightheadedness, or dizziness to the health care provider immediately. Bedtime dosing may decrease the risk for problems related to hypotension. Drugs used to treat erection problems (e.g., Viagra) can worsen these side effects. Teach patients taking a 5-ARI or alpha blocking drug to keep all appointments for follow-up laboratory testing because both drug classes can cause liver dysfunction.

The most effective drug therapy approach for many patients is a combination of a 5-ARI drug and an alpha-1 selective blocking agent. A commonly prescribed drug regimen is finasteride and doxazosin. Newer drugs, such as Jalyn, provide a combination of dutasteride and tamsulosin in a once-a-day capsule.

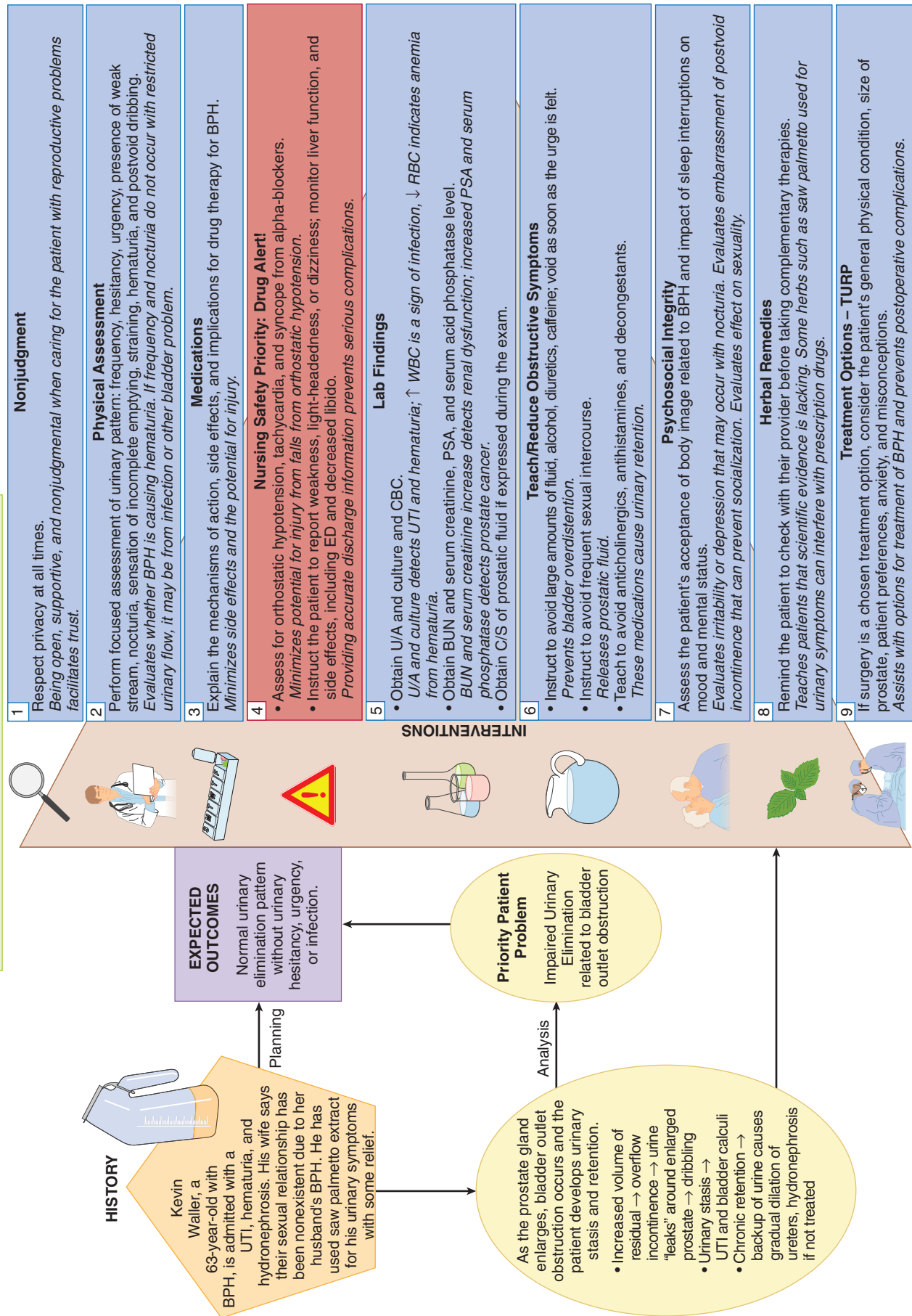
Other drugs may be helpful in managing specific urinary symptoms. For example, low-dose oral desmopressin, a synthetic antidiuretic analog, has been used successfully for nocturia (Wang et al., 2011). Drugs being tested for their effectiveness in treating BPH include bisphosphonates, ezetimibe (Zetia), Botox, and Nymox.

Complementary and Alternative Therapies. Although many men use *Serenoa repens* (saw palmetto extract), a plant extract, to help manage the urinary symptoms associated with BPH, studies on the effectiveness of this herb have not shown that it is effective (Tackland et al., 2009). Teach patients who want to try these herbs and other natural substances that scientific evidence to prove they are useful is lacking. However, if they choose to take them, remind them to check with their health care provider before taking any OTC natural substance. Some herbs interfere with prescription drugs the patient may be taking for other health problems. Side effects, such as abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting, are mild, reversible, and infrequent (Agbabiaka et al., 2009).

Other Nonsurgical Interventions. Other interventions that may reduce obstructive symptoms include those that cause the release of prostatic fluid such as frequent sexual intercourse. This approach is helpful for the man whose obstructive symptoms result from an enlarged prostate with a large amount of retained prostatic fluid.

Teach patients with BPH to avoid drinking large amounts of fluid in a short time; to avoid alcohol, diuretics, and caffeine; and to void as soon as they feel the urge. These measures are aimed at preventing overdistention of the bladder, which may result in loss of detrusor muscle tone. Teach patients to avoid any drugs that can cause urinary retention, especially anticholinergics, antihistamines, and decongestants. Emphasize the importance of telling any health care

Concept Map: Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia (BPH)



provider about the diagnosis of BPH so that these drugs are not prescribed.

If drug therapy or other measures are not helpful in relieving urinary symptoms, several noninvasive techniques are available to destroy excess prostate tissue using a variety of heat methods (**thermotherapy**). These procedures are often done in a physician's office or another ambulatory care setting. Examples include:

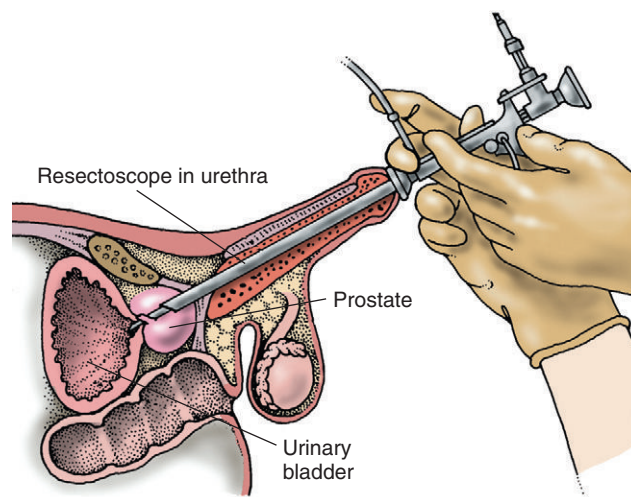
- **Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA)** (low radio-frequency energy shrinks the prostate)
- **Transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT)** (high temperatures heat and destroy excess tissue)
- **Interstitial laser coagulation (ILC)**, also called **contact laser prostatectomy (CLP)** (laser energy coagulates excess tissue)
- **Electrovaporization of the prostate (EVAP)** (high-frequency electrical current cuts and vaporizes excess tissue)

Prostatic stents may be placed into the urethra to maintain permanent patency after a procedure for destroying or removing prostatic tissue. All of these highly technical treatments use local or regional anesthesia and do not require an indwelling urinary catheter. They are also associated with less risk for complications such as intraoperative bleeding and erectile dysfunction when compared with traditional surgical approaches. Patients can return to their usual activities in a day or two.

Surgical Management. For patients who are not candidates for nonsurgical management or do not want to take drugs or have other treatment options, surgery may be performed. The gold standard continues to be a **transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)** in which the enlarged portion of the prostate is removed through an endoscopic instrument. The newer holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP) procedure is a minimally invasive surgical technique that is gaining popularity. For a few men, an open prostatectomy (entire prostate removal) may be performed (see discussion of Surgical Management on p. 1639 in the Prostate Cancer section). Some or all of these criteria indicate the need for surgery:

- Acute urinary retention (AUR)
- Chronic urinary tract infections secondary to residual urine in the bladder
- Hematuria
- Hydronephrosis

Preoperative Care. When planning surgical interventions, the patient's general physical condition, the size of the prostate gland, and the man's preferences are considered. The patient may have many fears and misconceptions about prostate surgery, such as believing that automatic loss of sexual functioning or permanent incontinence will occur. Assess the patient's anxiety, correct any misconceptions about the surgery, and provide accurate information to him and his family. Regardless of the type of surgery to be performed, provide information about anesthesia (see Chapter 17). The patient may have other medical problems that increase the risk for complications of general anesthesia and may be advised to have regional anesthesia. Epidural and spinal anesthesia are the most common types of anesthesia used for a TURP. Because the patient is awake, it is easier to assess for hyponatremia (low serum sodium), fluid overload, and water intoxication, which can result from large bladder irrigations.



In **transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)**, the surgeon inserts a resectoscope through the urethra and into the bladder and removes pieces of tissue from the prostate gland.

FIG. 75-3 Transurethral resection of the prostate procedure used for benign prostatic hyperplasia.

After a TURP, all patients have an indwelling urethral catheter for at least a day. *Be sure that they know that they will feel the urge to void while the catheter is in place.* Tell the patient that he will likely have traction on the catheter that may cause discomfort. However, reassure him that analgesics will be prescribed to relieve his pain. Explain that it is normal for the urine to be blood-tinged after surgery. Small blood clots and tissue debris may pass while the catheter is in place and immediately after it is removed.

Operative Procedures. The traditional TURP is a “closed” surgery. To perform the procedure, the surgeon inserts a resectoscope (an instrument similar to a cystoscope, but with a cutting and cauterizing loop) through the urethra (Fig. 75-3). The enlarged portion of the prostate gland is then removed in small pieces (prostate chips). A similar procedure is the transurethral incision of the prostate (TUIP), in which small cuts are made into the prostate to relieve pressure on the urethra. This alternate technique is used for smaller prostates. To prevent bleeding and excess clotting, a fibrinolytic inhibitor like tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron) may be used during surgery.

The disadvantage of a TURP is that, because only small pieces of the gland are removed, remaining prostate tissue may continue to grow and cause urinary obstruction, requiring additional TURPs. Also, urethral trauma from the resectoscope with resulting urethral strictures is possible.

In many large medical centers around the world, specialists can perform newer surgical treatments, such as the **holmium laser enucleation of the prostate (HoLEP)** (Eltabey et al., 2010). For this procedure, the surgeon uses the laser to remove the obstructive prostatic tissue and push it into the bladder for removal and seals all blood vessels. Very little blood is lost during the short procedure and is therefore safe for patients taking anticoagulants.

Postoperative Care. After both the TURP and HoLEP procedures, a urinary catheter is placed into the bladder. Traction is often applied on the catheter for the patient having a TURP by pulling it taut and taping it to the patient's abdomen or

CHART 75-1 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient After Transurethral Resection of the Prostate

- Monitor the patient closely for signs of infection. Older men undergoing prostate surgery often also have underlying chronic diseases (e.g., cardiovascular disease, chronic lung disease, diabetes).
- Help the patient out of the bed to the chair as soon as permitted to prevent complications of immobility. Older men may need assistance because of underlying changes in the musculoskeletal system (e.g., decreased range of motion, stiffness in joints). These patients are at *high risk* for falls.
- Assess the patient's pain every 2 to 4 hours, and intervene as needed to control pain.
- Provide a safe environment for the patient. Anticipate a temporary change in mental status for the older patient in the immediate postoperative period as a result of anesthetics and unfamiliar surroundings. Reorient the patient frequently. Keep catheter tubes secure.
- Use normal saline solution for the bladder irrigant unless otherwise prescribed. Normal saline solution is isotonic.
- Monitor the color, consistency, and amount of urine output.
- Check the drainage tubing frequently for external obstructions (e.g., kinks) and internal obstructions (e.g., blood clots, decreased output).
- Assess the patient for reports of severe bladder spasms with decreased urinary output, which may indicate obstruction.
- If the urinary catheter is obstructed, irrigate the catheter per agency or surgeon protocol.
- Notify the physician immediately if the obstruction does not resolve by hand irrigation or if the urinary return becomes ketchup-like.

thigh. If the catheter is taped to the patient's thigh, instruct him to keep his leg straight. The patient having the HoLEP procedure has a urinary catheter overnight, but the patient with a TURP has a catheter in place for several days. In some cases, the patient is discharged with the catheter in place.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS

When caring for older men who may become confused after surgery, reorient them frequently and remind them not to pull on the catheter. If the patient is restless or "picks" at tubes, provide a familiar object such as a family picture for him to hold for distraction and a feeling of security. Do not restrain the patient unless all other alternatives have failed.

Remind the patient that because of the urinary catheter's large diameter and the pressure of the retention balloon on the internal sphincter of the bladder, he will feel the urge to void continuously. This is a normal sensation, not a surgical complication. Advise the patient not to try to void around the catheter, which causes the bladder muscles to contract and may result in painful spasms. [Chart 75-1](#) summarizes the nursing care for patients having a TURP.

When the urinary catheter is removed, the patient may experience burning on urination and some urinary frequency, dribbling, and leakage. Reassure him that these symptoms are normal and will decrease. The patient may also pass small clots and tissue debris for several days after the TURP. *Instruct him to increase fluid intake to at least 2000 to 2500 mL daily, which helps decrease dysuria and keep the urine clear. An older*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Critical Rescue

After a TURP, monitor the patient's urine output every 2 hours and vital signs, including pain assessment, every 4 hours for the first postoperative day. Assess for postoperative bleeding. *Patients who undergo a TURP or open prostatectomy are at risk for severe bleeding or hemorrhage after surgery. Although rare, bleeding is most likely within the first 24 hours.* Blood transfusions are commonly given after a TURP surgery but are not needed after the HoLEP procedure. Bladder spasms or movement may trigger fresh bleeding from previously controlled vessels. This bleeding may be arterial or venous, but venous bleeding is more common.

If the bleeding is arterial, the urinary drainage is bright red or ketchup-like with numerous clots. If arterial bleeding occurs, notify the surgeon immediately, and irrigate the catheter with normal saline solution per physician or hospital protocol. In rare instances, the surgeon may prescribe aminocaproic acid (Amicar) to control bleeding. If this drug does not work, surgical intervention may be needed to clear the bladder of clots and to stop bleeding.

If the bleeding is venous, the urine output is burgundy, with or without any change in vital signs. Inform the surgeon of any bleeding. Closely monitor the patient's hemoglobin (Hgb) and hematocrit (Hct) levels for anemia as a result of blood loss.

patient who has renal disease or who is at risk for heart failure may not be able to tolerate this much fluid. By the time of discharge (usually 2 to 3 days after surgery), he should be voiding 150 to 200 mL of clear yellow urine every 3 to 4 hours. By discharge, pain is minimal and analgesics may not be required.

Observe for other possible but uncommon complications of TURP, such as infection and incontinence. Teach the patient that sexual function should not be affected after surgery but that **retrograde ejaculation** is possible. In this case, most of the semen flows backwards into the bladder so only a small amount will be ejaculated from the penis.

Community-Based Care

The patient with benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) is typically managed at home. Patients who have surgery are also discharged to their home or other setting from where they were admitted. Some patients, especially those who have had a TURP, may have temporary loss of control of urination or a dribbling of the urine. Reassure the patient that these symptoms are almost always temporary and will resolve. Assist the patient and his family in finding ways to keep his clothing dry until sphincter control returns. Instruct him to contract and relax his sphincter frequently to re-establish urinary control (Kegel exercises). External urinary (condom) catheters are not used except in extreme cases because they may give the patient a false sense of security and delay urinary control.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client had a transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) yesterday. The staff nurse notes that the hemoglobin is 8.2 g/dL. What is the nurse's best action?

- Notify the charge nurse as soon as possible.
- Irrigate the catheter with 30 mL normal saline.
- Document the assessment in the medical record.
- Prepare for a blood transfusion.

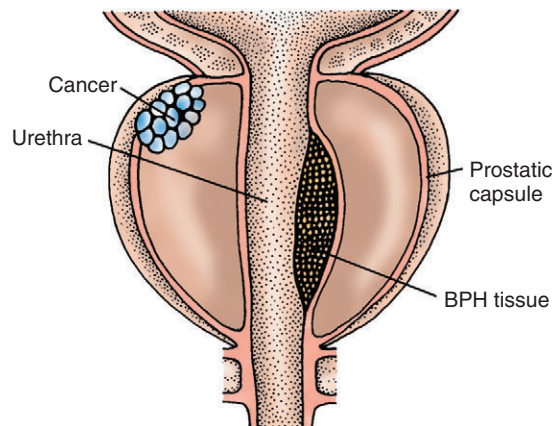


FIG. 75-4 The prostate gland with cancer and benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). Note that cancer normally arises in the periphery of the gland, whereas BPH occurs in the center of the gland.

Patients having the HoLEP procedure typically stay in the hospital overnight and usually have no urinary symptoms after surgery. This procedure may soon replace the TURP as the gold standard for surgical management of the patient with BPH.

PROSTATE CANCER

Pathophysiology

Prostate cancer is one of the most common types of cancer in men in the world. Men older than 65 years have the greatest risk for the disease. In the United States, it affects African-American men more commonly than Euro-American men and at an earlier age. The exact cause for this difference is not known.

Testosterone and dihydrotestosterone (DHT) are the major androgens (male hormones) in the adult male. Testosterone is produced by the testis and circulates in the blood. DHT is a testosterone derivative in the prostate gland. In some patients, the prostate grows very rapidly, leading to noncancerous high-grade prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN). Patients with PIN are at a higher risk for developing prostate cancer than men who do not have that growth pattern.

Many prostate tumors are androgen sensitive (McCance et al., 2010). Most are adenocarcinomas and arise from epithelial cells located in the posterior lobe or outer portion of the gland (Fig. 75-4).

Of all malignancies, prostate cancer is one of the slowest growing, and it metastasizes (spreads) in a predictable pattern. Common sites of metastasis are the nearby lymph nodes, bones, lungs, and liver (McCance et al., 2010). The bones of the pelvis, sacrum, and lumbar spine are most often affected. Chapter 23 describes staging categories of localized and advanced cancers.

Prostate cancer is likely caused by a number of factors, including androgens. Dietary factors, such as eating a diet high in animal fat (e.g., red meat) and complex carbohydrates or having a low fiber intake, increase the risk for prostate cancer. Men who have had a vasectomy or those who were

exposed to environmental toxins, such as arsenic, may also be at increased risk for the disease (Held-Warmkessel, 2008; McCance et al., 2010).

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Many gene mutations play a role in various types of prostate cancer. Some men with the most aggressive prostate cancers have *BRCA2* mutations similar to those women who have *BRCA2*-associated breast and ovarian cancers. The most common genetic factor that increases the risk for prostate cancer is a mutation in the glutathione S-transferase (*GST P1*) gene. This gene is normally part of the pathway that helps prevent cancer (McCance et al., 2010).

Health Promotion and Maintenance

Teach men about the most recent American Cancer Society (ACS) guidelines for prostate cancer screening and early detection (ACS, 2011). The current recommendations are that men should make an informed decision about whether to have prostate cancer screening. Starting at the age of 50, men should discuss the options of having prostate-specific antigen testing with their health care provider. Men at a higher risk for prostate cancer, including African Americans or men who have a first-degree relative with prostate cancer before the age of 65, should have this discussion at age 45. Men who have multiple first-degree relatives with prostate cancer at an early age should discuss screening at age 40.

Although a family history of prostate cancer cannot be changed, certain nutritional habits can be altered to possibly decrease the risk for the disease. First, teach men to eat a healthy, balanced diet, including decreasing animal fat (e.g., red meat). Instead of red meat, remind them to eat more fish and other foods high in *omega-3 fatty acids* because they are thought to be helpful in preventing cancer. Also reinforce the need to increase fruits, vegetables, soy, and high-fiber foods.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Assess the patient's age, race/ethnicity, and family history of prostate cancer. Ask about his nutritional habits, especially focusing on the intake of red meat, fish, and fruits and vegetables. Assess whether the patient has any problems with urination. Take a drug history to determine if he is taking any medication that could affect voiding. The first symptoms that the man may report are related to bladder outlet obstruction, such as difficulty in starting urination, frequent bladder infections, and urinary retention. Ask about urinary frequency, **hematuria** (blood in the urine), and **nocturia** (voiding during the night). Ask if he has had any pain during intercourse, especially when ejaculating. Inquire if the patient has had or currently has any other pain (particularly bone pain), a symptom associated with advanced prostate cancer. Ask him if he has had any recent unexpected weight loss.

Take a sexual history for recent changes in desire or function. Ask about current or previous sexually transmitted diseases, penile discharge, or scrotal pain or swelling.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

Most *early* cancers are diagnosed while the patient is having a routine physical examination or is being treated for benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). Gross blood in the urine (hematuria) is a common clinical manifestation of *late* prostate cancer. Assess for pain in the pelvis, spine, hips, or ribs. Complete a thorough pain assessment. Palpate for swollen lymph nodes, especially in the groin areas. Pain and swollen nodes also indicate advanced disease that has spread. Take and record the patient's weight because unexpected weight loss is also common when the disease is advanced.

Prepare the patient for a digital rectal examination (DRE). On rectal examination, a prostate that is found to be stony hard and with palpable irregularities or indurations is suspected to be malignant.

Psychosocial Assessment

A diagnosis of any type of cancer causes fear and anxiety for most people. Some men, particularly African Americans, develop the disease in their 40s and 50s when they are perhaps planning their retirements, putting their children through college, and/or enjoying their middle years. Assess the reaction of the patient to the diagnosis, and observe how his family reacts to the illness. Men may describe their feelings as shock, fear, anger, and “roller coaster” (Wallace & Storms, 2007). Expect that patients will go through the grieving process and may be in denial or depressed. Determine what support systems they have, such as spiritual leaders or community group support, to help them through diagnosis, treatment, and recovery.

One of the biggest concerns for the man may be his ability for sexual function after cancer treatment. Tell him that function will depend on the type of treatment he has. Most surgical techniques used today do not involve cutting the perineal nerves that are needed for an erection. A dry climax may occur if the prostate is removed because it produces most of the fluid in the ejaculate. Refer the patient to his surgeon (urologist), sex therapist, or intimacy counselor if available.

Laboratory Assessment

Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) is a glycoprotein produced by the prostate. *PSA analysis is used as a screening test for prostate cancer.* If the test is performed, it should be drawn before the DRE because the examination can cause an increase in PSA due to prostate irritation.

The normal blood level of PSA in men younger than 50 years is less than 2.5 ng/mL. PSA levels increase to as high as 6.5 ng/mL when men reach their 70s. *African-American men have a slightly higher normal value, but the reason for this difference is not known. Because other prostate problems also increase the PSA level, it is not specifically diagnostic for cancer.* The level associated with prostate cancer, however, is usually much higher than those occurring with problems such as prostatitis and benign prostatic hyperplasia (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

An elevated PSA level should decrease a few days after a prostatectomy for cancer. An increase in the PSA level several weeks after surgery usually indicates that the disease has recurred.

Because PSA is not absolutely specific to prostate cancer, another test, *early prostate cancer antigen (EPCA-2)*, may be

a serum marker for prostate cancer. It can detect changes in the prostate gland early and is a very sensitive test. EPCA-2 may also eliminate the need to perform a biopsy of prostate tissue.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

After assessments by DRE and PSA, most patients have a *transrectal ultrasound (TRUS)* of the prostate in an ambulatory care or imaging setting. The practitioner inserts a small probe into the rectum and obtains a view of the prostate using sound waves. If prostate cancer is suspected, a *biopsy* is usually performed to obtain an accurate diagnosis.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

After a *transrectal ultrasound with biopsy*, instruct the patient about possible complications, although rare, including hematuria with clots, signs of infection, and perineal pain. Teach him to report fever, chills, bloody urine, and any difficulty voiding. Advise him to avoid strenuous physical activity and to drink plenty of fluids, especially in the first 24 hours after the procedure. Teach him that a small amount of bleeding turning the urine pink is expected during this time.

After prostate cancer is diagnosed, the patient has additional imaging and blood studies to determine the extent of the disease. Common tests include lymph node biopsy, computed tomography (CT) of the pelvis and abdomen, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) to assess the status of the pelvic and para-aortic lymph nodes. A radionuclide bone scan may be performed to detect metastatic bone disease. An enlarged liver or abnormal liver function study results indicate possible liver metastasis.

Patients with advanced prostate cancer often have *elevated* levels of *serum acid phosphatase*. Most men with bone metastasis have *elevated serum alkaline phosphatase* levels.

INTERVENTIONS

As with any cancer, accurate staging and grading of prostate tumors guide treatment planning and monitoring during the course of the disease. Patients are faced with several treatment options. A urologist and oncologist are needed to help patients make the best decision. Because prostate cancer is slow growing with late metastasis, older men who are asymptomatic and have other illnesses may choose observation without immediate active treatment, especially if the cancer is early stage. This option is known as “watchful waiting,” or *expectant therapy*. This form of treatment involves initial surveillance with active treatment if the symptoms become bothersome. The average time from diagnosis to start of treatment is up to 10 years. During the watchful waiting period, men are monitored at regular intervals through DRE and PSA testing. Factors that are considered in choosing watchful waiting include potential side effects of treatment (e.g., urinary incontinence, erectile dysfunction), estimated life expectancy, and the risk for increased morbidity and mortality from not seeking active treatment.

Patients who have very early-stage cancer of the prostate who choose watchful waiting require close follow-up by their health care provider. If obstruction occurs, a transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) may be done. The care of patients having this procedure is described in the discussion

of [Surgical Management](#) on p. 1635 in the [Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia](#) section.

Specific management is based on the extent of the disease and the patient's physical condition. The patient may undergo surgery for a biopsy, staging and removal of the tumor, or palliation to control the spread of disease or relieve distressing symptoms. As with watchful waiting, the health care provider and patient must weigh the benefits of treatment against potential adverse effects such as incontinence and erectile dysfunction (ED).

Surgical Management

Surgery is the most common intervention for a cure. Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) or an open surgical technique for radical prostatectomy (prostate removal) is most often performed. A [bilateral orchiectomy](#) (removal of both testicles) is another palliative surgery that slows the spread of cancer by removing the main source of testosterone.

Preoperative Care. Preoperative care depends on the type of surgery that will be done. Minimally invasive surgery (MIS) is most appropriate for localized prostate cancer and is used as a curative intervention. The most common procedure is the *laparoscopic radical prostatectomy (LRP)*, with or without robotic assistance ([Strief, 2008](#)). Other newer procedures include transrectal high-intensity focused ultrasound (HIFU) and cryosurgery. Patients who qualify for LRP must have a PSA less than 10 ng/mL and have no previous hormone therapy or abdominal surgeries. Remind the patient that the advantages of this procedure over open surgery are:

- Decreased hospital stay (1 to 2 days)
- Minimal bleeding
- Smaller or no incisions and less scarring
- Less postoperative discomfort
- Decreased time for urinary catheter placement
- Fewer complications
- Faster recovery and return to usual activities
- Nerve-sparing advantages

For the patient undergoing an *open* radical prostatectomy, provide preoperative care as for any patient having surgery (see [Chapter 16](#)).

Operative Procedures. For the *LRP procedure*, the urologist makes one or more small punctures or incisions into the abdomen. A laparoscope with a camera on the end is inserted through one of the incisions while other instruments are inserted into the other incisions. The robotic system may be used to control the movement of the instruments by a remote device. The prostate is removed along with nearby lymph nodes.

The *open* radical prostatectomy can be performed via several surgical approaches, depending on the patient's desired outcomes and the staging of the disease. The transperineal and retropubic (nerve-sparing) approaches are most commonly used. The surgeon removes the entire prostate gland along with the prostatic capsule, the cuff at the bladder neck, the seminal vesicles, and the regional lymph nodes. The remaining urethra is connected to the bladder neck. The removal of tissue at the bladder neck allows the seminal fluid to travel upward into the bladder rather than down the urethral tract, resulting in retrograde ejaculations. The patient is sterile and has little ejaculate fluid. If the surgery spares the perineal nerves, the patient often experiences temporary erectile dysfunction (ED) for many months. For men who do not

CHART 75-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of the Patient After an Open Radical Prostatectomy

- Encourage the patient to use patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) as needed.
- Help the patient get out of bed into a chair on the night of surgery and ambulate by the next day.
- Maintain the sequential compression device until the patient begins to ambulate.
- Monitor the patient for deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolus.
- Keep an accurate record of intake and output, including Jackson-Pratt or other drainage device drainage.
- Keep the urinary meatus clean using soap and water.
- Avoid rectal procedures or treatments.
- Teach the patient how to care for the urinary catheter because he may be discharged with the catheter in place.
- Teach the patient how to use a leg bag.
- Emphasize the importance of not straining during bowel movement. Advise the patient to avoid suppositories or enemas.
- Remind the patient about the importance of follow-up appointments with the physician to monitor progress.

regain sexual potency but had a nerve-sparing procedure, a drug such as sildenafil (Viagra) may be helpful. ED is discussed later in this chapter.

Postoperative Care. Provide postoperative care of the patient after *open* radical prostatectomy as summarized in [Chart 75-2](#). Nursing interventions include all the typical care for a patient undergoing major surgery. Maintaining hydration, caring for wound drains (open procedure), managing pain, and preventing pulmonary complications are important aspects of nursing care (see [Chapter 18](#)).

Assess the patient's pain level, and monitor the effectiveness of pain management with opioids given as patient-controlled analgesia (PCA), a common method of delivery during the first 24 hours after surgery. Administer a stool softener if needed to prevent possible constipation from the drugs. Patients having the minimally invasive surgery have much less pain and fewer complications.

The patient has an indwelling urinary catheter to straight drainage. Monitor intake and output every shift and record, or delegate this activity to and supervise unlicensed assistive personnel (UAP). An antispasmodic may be prescribed to decrease bladder spasm induced by the indwelling urinary catheter. The time for catheter removal depends on the type of procedure that is performed and overall patient condition. Those with open surgical procedures use the catheter for 7 to 10 days or longer.

Ambulation should begin no later than the day after surgery. Provide assistance in walking the patient when he first gets out of bed. Assess for scrotal or penile swelling from the disrupted pelvic lymph flow. If this occurs, elevate the scrotum and penis and apply ice to the area intermittently for the first 24 to 48 hours.

Many patients who have the minimally invasive techniques are discharged in 1 to 3 days after surgery and can resume usual activities in about a week or two. Those who have open procedures are discharged in 2 to 3 days or longer, depending on their progress.

Remind patients that common potential long-term complications of open radical prostatectomy are urinary incontinence and erectile dysfunction (ED). *Urge incontinence* may occur because the internal and external sphincters of the bladder lie close to the prostate gland and are often damaged during the surgery. Kegel perineal exercises may reduce the severity of urinary incontinence after radical prostatectomy. Teach the patient to contract and relax the perineal and gluteal muscles in several ways. For one of the exercises, teach him to:

1. Tighten the perineal muscles for 3 to 5 seconds as if to prevent voiding, and then relax.
2. Bear down as if having a bowel movement.
3. Relax and repeat the exercise.

Show him how to inhale through pursed lips while tightening the perineal muscles and how to exhale when he relaxes. To regain urinary control, teach the patient to practice holding an object, such as a pencil, in the fold between the buttock and the thigh. He may also sit on the toilet with the knees apart while voiding and start and stop the stream several times.

Nonsurgical Management

Nonsurgical management may be an adjunct to surgery or alternative intervention if the cancer is widespread or the patient's condition or age prevents surgery. Available modalities include radiation therapy, hormonal therapy, and chemotherapy (less often).

Radiation Therapy. External or internal radiation therapy may be used in the treatment of prostate cancer or as “salvage” treatments when cancer recurs. It may also be done for palliation of the patient's symptoms.

External beam radiation therapy (EBRT) comes from a source outside the body. Patients are usually treated 5 days a week for 4 to 6 weeks. Three-dimensional conformal radiation therapy (3D-CRT) can more accurately target prostate tissue and can reduce side effects such as damage to the rectum. An advanced type of this radiation called *intensity-modulated radiation therapy* provides very high doses to the prostate. EBRT can also be used to relieve pain from bone metastasis. Teach patients that external beam radiation causes ED in many men well after the treatment is completed.

Other complications from EBRT include *acute radiation cystitis* causing persistent pain and hematuria. Symptoms are usually mild to moderate and subside in 6 weeks after treatment. Drugs to prevent urinary urgency such as tolterodine (Detrol LA) may be prescribed. Teach the patient to avoid caffeine and continue drinking plenty of water and other fluids.

Radiation proctitis (rectal mucosa inflammation) may also develop but is less likely with 3D-CRT. The man reports rectal urgency and cramping and passes mucus and blood. Teach him to report these symptoms to the health care provider. Like cystitis, this problem usually resolves in 4 to 6 weeks after the treatment stops. If proctitis occurs, teach patients to limit spicy or fatty foods, caffeine, and dairy products.

Low-dose brachytherapy (internal radiation) can be delivered by implanting low-dose radiation seeds directly into and around the prostate gland. This treatment includes ultrasonically guided interstitial or radioactive seed implantation. These procedures are done on an ambulatory care basis and

are the most cost-effective treatment for early-stage prostate cancer. Reassure the patient that the dose of radiation is low and that the radiation will not pose a hazard to himself or others. Teach him that ED, urinary incontinence, and rectal problems do occur in a small percentage of cases. Fatigue is also common and may last for several months after the treatment stops. [Chapter 24](#) describes general nursing care for patients having radiation therapy.

Drug Therapy. Drug therapy may consist of either hormonal therapy (androgen deprivation therapy [ADT]) or chemotherapy. Several vaccines to locate and destroy prostate cancer cells are being studied ([Slovin, 2008](#)).

Hormone Therapy. Because most prostate tumors are hormone dependent, patients with extensive tumors or those with metastatic disease may be managed by androgen deprivation. Luteinizing hormone–releasing hormone (LH-RH) agonists or anti-androgens can be used.

Examples of *LH-RH agonists* are leuprolide (Lupron), goserelin (Zoladex), and triptorelin (Trelstar). These drugs first stimulate the pituitary gland to release the luteinizing hormone (LH). After about 3 weeks, the pituitary gland “runs out” of LH, which reduces testosterone production by the testes.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients taking LH-RH agonists that side effects include “hot flashes,” erectile dysfunction, and decreased **libido** (desire to have sex). Some men also have **gynecomastia** (breast tenderness and growth). These drugs can also cause osteoporosis. Bisphosphonates like pamidronate (Aredia) are prescribed to prevent bone fractures. They can also be used to slow the damage caused by bone metastasis.

Anti-androgen drugs, also known as *androgen deprivation therapy (ADT)*, work differently in that they block the body's ability to use the available androgens ([National Comprehensive Cancer Network \[NCCN\], 2007](#)). These drugs are the major treatment for metastatic disease. Examples include flutamide (Eulexin, Euflex ) , bicalutamide (Casodex), and nilutamide (Nilandron). These drugs inhibit tumor progression by blocking the uptake of testicular and adrenal androgens at the prostate tumor site.

Anti-androgens may be used alone or in combination with LH-RH agonists for a total or maximal androgen blockade (hormone ablation). Patients who have this drug combination often have “hot flashes” similar to those experienced by menopausal women, and they can decrease the patient's perceived quality of life. Ask the patient if he has been experiencing this problem. Megestrol acetate may be prescribed for this uncomfortable condition.

Chemotherapy. Systemic chemotherapy may be an option for patients whose cancer has spread and for whom other therapies have not worked. For example, small cell prostate cancer is rare and is more responsive to chemotherapy than to hormone therapy ([NCCN, 2007](#)). Cisplatin (Platinol) and etoposide (VP-16, VePesid) often work for this type of cancer. [Chapter 24](#) describes general nursing care for patients receiving chemotherapy.

Other Drugs. Other less commonly used drugs that are available if other drugs have failed or stopped working include

high doses of ketoconazole (Nizoral), an antifungal drug that blocks androgen production, and the female hormone *estrogen* (diethylstilbestrol or DES). Teach patients taking ketoconazole that it can cause liver and adrenal problems. Teach them to take the drug on an empty stomach and to avoid drugs such as histamine blockers and antacids, which can interfere with drug absorption (Held-Warmkessel, 2008). Patients are followed closely and have frequent laboratory tests to detect any early organ damage. The drug also interacts with many other drugs, including warfarin (Coumadin), phenytoin (Dilantin), and prednisone (Deltasone). Corticosteroids such as prednisone may be given alone as palliation to reduce pain and improve the quality of life (Held-Warmkessel, 2008).

Community-Based Care

Patient-centered collaborative care of the man with prostate cancer should include his partner, if any, and family. Recognize that the patient has specific physical and psychosocial needs that should be addressed before hospital discharge and management should continue in the community setting.

Patients with prostate cancer may require care in a wide variety of settings: at the hospital, the radiation therapy department, the oncologist's office, or home at any stage of the disease process. Specific interventions depend on which treatment the patient had or if he had a combination of treatments. This section focuses on the needs of those who had a radical prostatectomy.

Home Care Management

Discharge planning and health teaching start early, even before surgery. A patient can better plan home care management when he knows what to expect. Collaborate with the case manager to coordinate the efforts of various health care providers, surgical unit nursing staff, and possibly a home care nurse. As specified by The Joint Commission and other accrediting agencies, continuity of care is essential when caring for this patient because he may need weeks or months of therapies.

Teaching for Self-Management

An important area of teaching for the patient going home after an *open* radical prostatectomy may be urinary catheter care. An indwelling urinary catheter may be in place for up to several weeks, depending on the surgical technique that was used. Teach him and his family how to care for the catheter, use a leg bag, and identify manifestations of infection and other complications. See [Chart 75-3](#) for patient and family education.

Encourage the patient to walk short distances. Lifting may be restricted to no more than 15 pounds for up to 6 weeks, depending on the type of surgery that was done. Remind him to maintain an upright position and not walk bent or flexed. Vigorous exercise such as running or jumping should be avoided for at least 12 weeks and then gradually introduced.

Teach the patient to not strain to defecate. A stool softener may be prescribed to reduce the need for straining. If an opioid is prescribed for pain management, encourage the patient to drink adequate water to prevent constipation.

If the patient had an *open* radical prostatectomy, teach him to shower for the first 2 to 3 weeks rather than soak in a bathtub. Show patients how to inspect the incision or

CHART 75-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Urinary Catheter Care at Home

- Once a day, gently wash the first few inches of the catheter starting at the penis and washing outward with mild soap and water.
- Rinse and dry the catheter well.
- If you have not been circumcised, push the foreskin back to clean the catheter site; when finished, push the foreskin forward.
- Change the drainage bag at least once a week as needed:
 - Hold the catheter with one hand and the tubing with the other hand, and twist in opposite directions to disconnect.
 - Place the end of the catheter in a clean container to catch leakage of urine.
 - Remove the rubber cap from the tubing of the leg bag or clean drainage bag.
 - Clean the end of the new tubing with alcohol swabs.
 - Insert the end of the new tubing into the catheter, and twist to connect securely.
- Clean the drainage bag just removed by pouring a solution of one part vinegar to two parts water through the tubing and bag. Rinse well with water, and allow the bag to dry.

puncture site(s) daily for signs of infection. Remind them to keep all follow-up appointments. PSA blood tests are taken 6 weeks after surgery and then every 4 to 6 months to monitor progress.

Health Care Resources

Refer the patient and partner to agencies or support groups such as the American Cancer Society's Man to Man program to help cope with prostate cancer. This program provides one-on-one education, personal visits, educational presentations, and the opportunity to engage in open and candid discussions. Another prostate cancer support group is Us TOO International (www.ustoo.com) sponsored by the Prostate Cancer Education and Support Network. This group provides education and support with national and international chapters. Information can also be obtained from the Prostate Cancer Foundation (www.prostatecancerfoundation.org) or the National Prostate Cancer Coalition (www.fightprostatecancer.org). Other personal and community support

DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

An 82-year-old man is diagnosed with advanced-stage prostate cancer. His health care provider suspects bone metastasis based on the patient's report of pain in his ribs and pelvis. The patient works as a farmer in a rural community and tells you that he doesn't "care about much" since his wife died a year ago. The health care provider wants to admit him to the hospital immediately for treatment and further diagnostic testing.

1. What is your best response to the patient at this time?
2. What diagnostic testing would be appropriate for the patient at this time?
3. What possible interventions might help this patient be more comfortable?
4. With what members of the health care team might you need to collaborate?

services such as spiritual leaders or churches and synagogues are also important to many patients.

Many men have erectile dysfunction (ED) for the first 3 to 18 months after a prostatectomy. Refer them to a specialist who can help with this problem. ED is discussed in the next section (Erectile Dysfunction). Refer patients with urinary incontinence to a urologist who specializes in this area. Drug therapy and other strategies may be used. [Chapter 69](#) discusses incontinence management in detail.

ERECTILE DYSFUNCTION

Pathophysiology

Erectile dysfunction (ED), also known as *impotence*, is the inability to achieve or maintain an erection for sexual intercourse. It affects millions of men in the United States. There are two major types of ED: organic and functional.

Organic ED is a gradual deterioration of function. The man first notices diminishing firmness and a decrease in frequency of erections. Causes include:

- Inflammation of the prostate, urethra, or seminal vesicles
- Surgical procedures such as prostatectomy
- Pelvic fractures
- Lumbosacral injuries
- Vascular disease, including hypertension
- Chronic neurologic conditions, such as Parkinson disease or multiple sclerosis
- Endocrine disorders, such as diabetes mellitus (a major cause) or thyroid disorders
- Smoking and alcohol consumption
- Drugs, such as antihypertensives
- Poor overall health that prevents sexual intercourse

If the patient has episodes of ED, it usually has a *functional* (psychological) cause. Men with functional ED usually have normal nocturnal (nighttime) and morning erections. Onset is usually sudden and follows a period of high stress.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

For a man to have an erection, he must have normal innervation and a normal libido (sex drive). Therefore a medical, social, and sexual history and a complete physical examination are needed. The first step is to determine whether the cause is organic. Diagnostic testing is done to rule out possible organic causes.

If test results are negative, the evaluation then focuses on the specific causes that may have been indicated in the medical history. For example, hormone testing is used for patients who have a poor libido, small testicles, or sparse beard growth. Serum levels of *testosterone* and *gonadotropins* such as luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) are measured. LH stimulates the Leydig cells in the testicles to produce testosterone.

Duplex Doppler ultrasonography is another test to evaluate ED. It provides information about arterial and venous blood flow to the penis. It can also be used to determine the best treatment for ED. A *nocturnal penile tumescence test* that measures nighttime erections is done in a sleep laboratory. Usually an erection is expected with each rapid eye movement (REM)

episode. This study can determine whether ED is caused by an organic or functional problem. If the man has nocturnal erections, the ED is functional. Sex or intimacy counseling is needed in this case, and the patient is referred to a certified sex therapist or other qualified specialist.

INTERVENTIONS

The most common intervention for ED is drug therapy. Other interventions include vacuum devices, intracorporal injections, intraurethral applications, and prostheses (implants).

Drug Therapy

First-line oral drugs used to manage ED, phosphodiesterase-5 (PDE-5) inhibitors, work by relaxing the smooth muscles in the corpora cavernosa so blood flow to the penis is increased. The veins exiting the corpora are compressed, limiting outward blood flow and resulting in penile **tumescence** (swelling). Teach patients to take the pill 1 hour before sexual intercourse. For some drugs, such as sildenafil (Viagra) and vardenafil (Levitra), sexual stimulation is needed within $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 hour to promote the erection. With other drugs, such as tadalafil (Cialis), erection can be stimulated over a longer period. Because the erection occurs more naturally compared with other treatment options, most men and their partners prefer this option.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Instruct patients taking PDE-5 inhibitors to abstain from alcohol before sexual intercourse because it may impair the ability to have an erection. Common side effects of these drugs include dyspepsia (heartburn), headaches, facial flushing, and stuffy nose. If more than one pill a day is being taken, leg and back cramps, nausea, and vomiting also may occur. *Teach men who take nitrates to avoid PDE-5 inhibitors because the vasodilation effects can cause a profound hypotension and reduce blood flow to vital organs.* For patients who cannot take these drugs or do not respond to them, other methods are available to achieve an erection.

Other Interventions

The basic design of a *vacuum constriction device (VCD)* is a cylinder that fits over the penis and sits firmly against the body. Using a pump, a vacuum is created to draw blood into the penis to maintain an erection. A rubber ring (tension band) is placed around the base of the penis to maintain the erection, and the cylinder is removed.

The advantage of this procedure is that the device is easy and safe to use. The disadvantage is its clumsiness and lack of spontaneity. In addition, the man may experience pain from the rubber ring or from pumping the device too quickly. The ring should be removed after an hour, or tissue could be damaged.

Injecting the penis with vasodilating drugs can make the penis erect by engorging it with blood. The most common agents used for this purpose include):

- Alprostadil (Caverject), a synthetic vasodilator identical to prostaglandin E_1 produced in the body
- Paverine, also a vasodilator
- Phentolamine (Regitine), an alpha-1, alpha-2 selective adrenergic receptor antagonist
- A combination of any or all of these drugs

CHART 75-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Testicular Self-Examination

- Examine your testicles monthly immediately after a bath or a shower, when your scrotal skin is relaxed.
- Examine each testicle by gently rolling it between your thumbs and fingers. Testicular tumors tend to appear deep in the center of the testicle.
- Look and feel for any lumps; smooth, rounded masses; or any change in the size, shape, or consistency of the testes.
- Report any lump or swelling to your doctor as soon as possible.

These drugs may be injected into the side of the penis using a 27- or 30-gauge needle. Adverse effects include priapism (prolonged erection), penile scarring, fibrosis, bleeding, bruising at the injection site, pain, infection, and vasovagal responses.

Penile implants (prostheses) are used when other modalities fail. Devices include semirigid, flexible, or hydraulic inflatable and multi-component or one-piece instruments. The three-piece inflatable device is the most commonly implanted prosthesis. A reservoir is placed in the scrotum. Tubes carry the fluid into the inflatable pieces that are placed in the penis. To inflate the prosthesis, the man squeezes the pump located in the scrotum. To deflate the prosthesis, a release button is activated. Advantages include the man's ability to control his erections. The major disadvantages include device failure and infection. The device is implanted as an ambulatory surgical procedure. Teach the patient to observe the surgical site for bleeding and infection.

TESTICULAR CANCER

Pathophysiology

Testicular cancer is a rare cancer that most often affects men between 20 and 54 years of age but can affect men of any age (American Cancer Society [ACS], 2011). It usually strikes men at a productive time of life and thus has significant economic, social, and psychological impact on the patient and his family and/or partner. With early detection by testicular self-examination (TSE) (Chart 75-4) and treatment, testicular cancer can be cured. It can occur in one testicle or both.

Primary testicular cancers fall into two major groups:

- Germ cell tumors arising from the sperm-producing cells (account for most testicular cancers)
- Non-germ cell tumors arising from the stroma, interstitial, or Leydig cells that produce testosterone (account for a very small percentage of testicular cancers)

Testicular germ cell tumors are classified into two broad categories: seminomas and nonseminomas (Table 75-1). The most common type of testicular tumor is *seminoma*. Patients with seminomas have the most favorable prognoses because the tumors are usually localized, metastasize late, and respond to treatment (Bohenkamp & Yoder, 2009). They often are diagnosed when they are still confined to the testicles and retroperitoneal lymph nodes.

Non-germ cell tumors are classified as either *interstitial cell tumors* or *androblastomas* (testicular adenomas). Most of

TABLE 75-1 CLASSIFICATION OF TESTICULAR TUMORS

Germ Cell (Germinal) Tumors	Non-Germ Cell (Nongerminal) Tumors
• Seminoma • Nonseminoma: • Embryonal carcinoma • Teratoma • Choriocarcinoma	• Interstitial cell tumor • Androblastoma

these tumors do not metastasize. Interstitial cell tumors arise from the Leydig cells, which secrete testosterone into the bloodstream. Androblastomas sometimes secrete estrogen, which accounts for the feminization and **gynecomastia** (breast enlargement) occasionally seen in these men.

The risk for testicular tumors is higher in males who have an undescended testis (**cryptorchidism**) or have human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection.

GENETIC/GENOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

Men are at a higher risk for testicular cancer if they have a family history of the disease (Hemminki et al., 2008). The incidence is higher among identical twins, brothers, and other close male relatives. Euro-American men are at a higher risk for testicular cancer than men of other races or ethnicities (Bohenkamp & Yoder, 2009). The reason for these differences is not known.

Primary testicular cancer is rarely bilateral. Other cancers such as leukemia, lymphoma, and metastatic carcinomas may invade the testes. A man with bilateral testicular tumors is more likely to have metastatic disease to the testes than primary cancer.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

When taking a history from a patient with a suspected testicular tumor, consider the risk factors. Assess for other risk factors, including a history or presence of an undescended testis and a family history of testicular cancer.

Ask the patient whether he has noticed a discomfort such as heaviness or aching in the lower abdomen or the scrotum. Determine how long any manifestations have been present.

Assess the patient's family situation. Is the patient sexually active? If so, what is his sexual preference? Does he have children? Does he want children in the future? Depending on the treatment plan chosen, would he be interested in sperm storage in a sperm bank?

If the man has one healthy testis, he can function sexually and may not have any reproductive dysfunction. If he has a retroperitoneal lymph node dissection or chemotherapy, he may become sterile because of treatment effects on the sperm-producing cells or surgical trauma to the sympathetic nervous system resulting in retrograde ejaculations.

The testes, lymph nodes, and abdomen should be thoroughly examined. Patients may feel embarrassed about having this examination. Provide privacy, and explain the

CHART 75-5 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

A Patient with a Testicular Lump

Obtain a medical history from the patient:

- When was the lump discovered?
- Are there any other symptoms (sensation of heaviness, dragging in testicle, pain, discharge from penis)?
- Is there a history of cryptorchidism?

Assess the genital system; always wear gloves during the examination of the male genitalia:

- Inspect and palpate the scrotal contents. Have the patient perform a Valsalva maneuver, and palpate for a varicocele.
- Any lump or enlargement that does not transilluminate should be suspected as malignant.

Palpate for any enlarged lymph nodes. The most common areas for lymphadenopathy are in the inguinal or supraclavicular regions.

Assess the abdomen for a possible mass or hepatomegaly.

procedure to the patient. *Inspect the testicles for swelling or a lump that the patient reports is painless. This is the most common manifestation of testicular cancer.* An advanced practice nurse or other health care provider palpates the testes for lumps and swelling that are not visible (Chart 75-5). The presence of any testicular pain, lymph node swelling, bone pain, abdominal masses, sudden hydrocele (fluid in the scrotum), or gynecomastia often indicates metastatic disease.

Psychosocial Assessment

Because testicular cancer and its treatment often lead to sexual dysfunction, pay close attention to the psychosocial aspects of the disease. *Sexuality* is an issue for men of any age, but it may be even more of an issue for younger men. Even if the cancer is detected at an early stage and the patient is cured after surgery, he may be afraid that he will be sexually deficient. He may also think of himself as “less than a whole person.” These fears can disrupt the psychosocial and sexual development of young males and can threaten their identity. The patient may be afraid that he will be unable to perform sexually, will no longer be sexually attractive or desirable, and will face rejection. Feelings of sexual inadequacy may be denied, repressed, or displaced, causing increased stress on the man’s personal and work relationships.

Assess the man’s support systems, including his partner, family members, and friends. Ask him where he feels that he can be supported, such as a religious or spiritual group, community club, or social group. Friends are often very helpful during this difficult time.

Laboratory Assessment

Common serum tumor markers that confirm a diagnosis of testicular cancer are:

- Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)
- Beta human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)
- Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)

Serum tumor marker levels are also used to evaluate responses to therapy for testicular cancer and to document the presence of residual or recurrent disease. With effective treatment, the levels of abnormal markers fall. The persistence of elevated levels of markers after orchiectomy (testicle removal) is evidence that the patient has metastatic disease, even if x-rays and scans do not show a tumor presence. The reappearance

CHART 75-6 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Sperm Banking

- You may want to investigate sperm storage in a sperm bank as a way to preserve your sperm for future use.
- No one knows how long sperm can be stored successfully, but pregnancies have resulted from sperm stored for longer than 10 years.
- Check with the sperm bank to see how much it charges to process and store your sperm and to see whether you must pay when the service is provided.
- Investigate whether your health insurance company will reimburse you for sperm collection and storage.

of the tumor markers indicates recurrence of the cancer. Therefore marker levels must be monitored regularly during the follow-up of patients treated for testicular cancer.

Serum testosterone levels are increased when the tumor affects the Leydig cells, which produce this hormone. Drugs such as alcohol and antiepileptic drugs can also cause an increase in testosterone (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

Other Diagnostic Assessment

When a patient has a change in testis size, shape, or texture, *ultrasonography* can determine whether the mass is solid or fluid filled. It also can help differentiate benign masses from malignant ones.

After the diagnosis of testicular cancer, the patient should have a *computed tomography (CT)* scan of the abdomen and the chest to identify small metastatic lesions. *Lymphangiography* shows a view of the body’s lymph system to look for spread to other areas.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is used to detect enlarged lymph nodes and abnormal nodules in certain organs that may indicate metastasis from the testicles. Chest x-rays and bone scans may also be performed if metastasis is suspected.

INTERVENTIONS

At diagnosis, the incidence of **oligospermia** (low sperm count) and **azoospermia** (absence of living sperm) is common in patients with testicular cancer. This problem is thought to be related to higher testicular temperatures created by cancer cell metabolism. The man may not discover that he has reduced sperm count until he has a sperm count performed before surgery.

Health teaching about reproduction, fertility, and sexuality is started in the pretreatment phase. Review the normal reproductive function, as well as the possible effects of cancer and its treatment on reproductive function. Explore with the patient various reproductive options, if desired (Chart 75-6). A sperm bank facility provides comprehensive information on semen collection, storage of semen, the storage contract, costs, and the insemination process.

When preparing the patient for the collection and storage of sperm, assume the role of patient advocate and keep in mind the effect of the cancer diagnosis. The psychological benefit of having stored sperm may be important for the man

and may influence his response to treatment. For some men, knowing that the potential for being a father still exists may help them cope with other fears, such as alopecia or erectile dysfunction (ED).

Suggest that the patient arrange for semen storage, if desired, as soon as possible after diagnosis. Sperm collection should be completed before he begins radiation therapy or chemotherapy or undergoes a radical lymph node dissection. After radiation therapy or chemotherapy has been started, the patient is at increased risk for producing mutagenic sperm, which may not be viable or may result in fetal abnormalities.

The patient's diagnosis and his physical condition may not allow treatment to be postponed, thus making sperm storage impossible. Also, some men may have personal or religious beliefs that do not allow sperm storage. For those who are not candidates for sperm storage in a sperm bank and for those who choose not to bank, discuss other reproductive options such as donor insemination or adoption.

Surgical Management

Surgery is the main treatment for testicular cancer. For Stage 0 or 1 (localized disease), the surgeon performs a radical unilateral **orchiectomy** to remove the affected testicle. Every effort is made to remove the cancerous testis as an intact organ to prevent releasing cancer cells into the surgical site. Depending on the type and stage of the cancer, radical retroperitoneal lymph node dissection (RPLND) may also be done.

Preoperative Care. Like most patients with cancer, the man with testicular cancer is very apprehensive. Offer support, and reinforce the teaching provided by the surgeon. Teach the patient and his family or partner about what to expect after surgery. Depending on the extent of the lymph node dissection and the need for surgical exploration, the surgeon often makes a midline incision. For patients with very early disease, minimally invasive surgery (MIS) using a laparoscope does not require a midline incision. For patients having MIS, teach them that carbon dioxide may be used as part of the surgery. Carbon dioxide can cause chest or shoulder pain from diaphragmatic irritation after the procedure.

Inform the patient and family that traditional open radical retroperitoneal lymph node dissections are long operations. In some cases, the patient may require care in a critical care unit after surgery for close observation.

Operative Procedures. Most patients with seminoma have only one surgery to remove the diseased testicle through the groin (inguinal) for a cure. A frozen section of the tumor is examined to confirm the type and stage of the cancer. A gel-filled silicone prosthesis may be surgically implanted into the scrotum at the time of the orchiectomy or later if the patient desires. Reassure the patient that this procedure does not impair fertility or sexual function. He cosmetically appears to have two testes (reconstructive surgery).

Some men have more advanced disease or tumor types that are more aggressive. These patients require several surgeries to remove both testicles and lymph nodes. Two options are available for the lymph node dissection: a traditional open approach and minimally invasive surgery (MIS) using a laparoscope. To perform the *open* approach, the surgeon removes the retroperitoneal nodes in the iliac and lumbar regions. Because the blood supply and the lymphatic vessels of the testes and kidneys are directly related, an extensive midline

incision from the xiphoid process to the pubis is necessary. Removal of the sympathetic ganglia eliminates peristalsis in the vas deferens and contractions of the seminal vesicles. This disruption results in sterility because the man's ejaculate no longer contains sperm. However, having a normal erection and experiencing orgasm usually are not affected.

The MIS procedure involves using a laparoscope through several small "keyhole" incisions through which the nodes are dissected for examination. This technique shortens the time the patient is in the operating suite, minimizes bleeding, and causes less pain after surgery. The patient has fewer postoperative complications and a shorter hospital stay.

Postoperative Care. Nursing care for the patient after surgery depends on the type of surgical procedure that was performed and the extent of the disease process.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Because of the length of the *open* orchiectomy and lymph node dissection approach, manipulation of the abdominal and retroperitoneal viscera, and the loss of lymphatic fluid, observe, assess, and report any complications of this major abdominal surgery (e.g., paralytic ileus) (see Chapter 18). Monitor vital signs (including pain), hydration, and pulmonary function carefully for the first 24 to 48 hours. Ambulate the patient as soon as possible, and teach him how to use the incentive spirometer. Assess the patency of the nasogastric tube (NGT) (if in place) and the urinary catheter. Be sure the patient wears antiembolism stockings or devices, and provide care for surgical incisions and wound drains.

The patient having the *laparoscopic* procedure does not typically have an NGT but may have a urinary catheter in place for 1 to 2 days. The other advantages of the MIS procedure are that patients have less pain and fewer complications than those who had the open surgery. Chapter 17 describes laparoscopic surgery in detail.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client who had an orchiectomy and laparoscopic radical retroperitoneal lymph node dissection this morning states that he does not understand why he is having shoulder pain. What is the nurse's best response?

- A. "The pain is from the carbon dioxide that was used during surgery."
- B. "You are having pain because of the way you were positioned during surgery."
- C. "What is your level of pain on a scale of 0 to 10, with 10 being the worst pain?"
- D. "Your shoulder should not be hurting because you had a minimally invasive surgery."

Nonsurgical Management

Combination *chemotherapy* may be used as adjuvant therapy for nonseminomatous testicular tumors or as primary treatment when there is evidence of metastatic disease. Many drug regimens are used, including varying combinations of bleomycin, cisplatin, etoposide, and/or vinblastine.

The specific combination of drugs and the frequency, cycling, and duration of treatment vary from patient to patient, depending on the extent of the disease and the protocol being followed. Chapter 24 discusses the general nursing care for the patient receiving chemotherapy.

Patients having chemotherapy are at risk for certain health problems that are associated with these drugs. Examples of these problems include hypertension, hyperlipidemia, coronary artery disease, anemia, and leukemia (Bohenkamp & Yoder, 2009). Teach patients taking these drugs about the long-term effects for which they should be continually and carefully monitored by their health care providers.

After orchiectomy for localized disease, *external beam radiation therapy* (EBRT) is commonly used. The remaining testis is shielded with a lead cup to preserve reproductive function. Even with these precautions, the patient may have a temporary decreased sperm count as a result of radiation scatter. Normally the sperm count returns to the pretreatment level within 24 to 30 months after the radiation treatment is completed. If metastases develop outside the lymphatic system, the man may still be cured with radiation therapy if the area of involvement is limited. If lymphatic involvement is extensive or if the visceral organs are involved, combination chemotherapy is used.

Community-Based Care

The patient is usually hospitalized for multiple days after an *open* radical retroperitoneal lymph node dissection but for just 1 to 2 days for the MIS procedure. This period may need to be extended if he must undergo additional surgery or chemotherapy. Because it may not be known until after the orchiectomy what type of testicular cancer he has or whether he needs additional surgery or treatment, specific discharge planning may need to be delayed until after surgery.

After an *orchiectomy*, unless the patient has a wound complication, he is discharged without a dressing on the inguinal incision. A scrotal support may be needed for several days. He may want to wear a dry dressing to prevent clothing from rubbing on the sutures and causing irritation. Tell him that the sutures will be removed in the physician's office 7 to 10 days after surgery. Patients who also had an *open retroperitoneal lymph node dissection* recover more slowly. They should not lift anything over 15 pounds, should avoid stair climbing, and should not drive a car for several weeks. Be sure that bathroom facilities are on the first floor of the house where he can easily access them.

NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For the patient who has undergone testicular surgery, emphasize the importance of scheduling a follow-up visit with the surgeon to examine the incision for healing and complications. Instruct him to notify the surgeon if chills, fever, increasing tenderness or pain around the incision, drainage, or dehiscence of the incision occurs. These manifestations may indicate infection for which antibiotics are needed. Instruct the patient who had an orchiectomy that he will be able to resume most of his usual activities within 1 week after discharge, except for lifting heavy objects (objects weighing more than 15 pounds [6.8 kg]) and stair climbing. Remind him to ask his surgeon when strenuous activities may be resumed.

Inform the patient that he may make arrangements to have a silicone prosthesis inserted into the scrotum if one was not inserted during the orchiectomy. Explain the importance of performing monthly testicular self-examination (TSE) on the remaining testis and scheduling follow-up examinations with the physician. The patient who has had testicular cancer

should schedule tests for urinary and serum levels of tumor markers and CT or MRI studies as part of his routine follow-up for at least 3 years.

Depending on the pathologic findings and the stage of the cancer, the patient may need further treatment. This information may not be known at the time of discharge. If it is known that the patient needs further surgery, he and his family need information about the future surgery. If it is known that he must undergo radiation therapy or chemotherapy, he needs education about these treatments as soon as possible.

The man who has testicular cancer needs emotional support. If permanent sterility occurs and sperm storage has not been feasible, he may desire counseling about other reproductive options. Refer the patient to agencies or support groups, such as the American Fertility Society (www.theafa.org) or RESOLVE: The National Infertility Association (www.resolve.org) (organizations for infertile couples).

OTHER PROBLEMS AFFECTING THE TESTES AND ADJACENT STRUCTURES

Problems that develop inside the scrotum usually occur as a mass or as scrotal edema. Some problems produce pain, but others do not. Fig. 75-5 shows some of the most common conditions found in men, including hydrocele, spermatocele, varicocele, and scrotal torsion.

HYDROCELE

A hydrocele is a cystic mass, usually filled with straw-colored fluid that forms around the testis (see Fig. 75-5). It results from impaired lymphatic drainage of the scrotum causing a swelling of the tissue surrounding the testis. Unless the swelling becomes large and uncomfortable or begins to impair blood flow to the testis, no treatment is necessary. Hydroceles are usually painless. It is important that the cause of the hydrocele is investigated to rule out a serious condition. The cause may be determined by examination and ultrasound. A small hydrocele may go untreated with no further problems. However, a hydrocele may become very large, which makes clothing uncomfortable and may be cosmetically unacceptable.

A hydrocele may be drained via a needle and syringe, or it may be removed surgically in an ambulatory care setting. The patient may or may not have a drain at the incision site. Teach the man that if an incision drain is present, some serosanguineous drainage may be present for the first 24 to 48 hours after surgery. Explain the importance of wearing a scrotal support (jock strap). This device keeps the dressing in place and the scrotum elevated, which helps prevent edema.

The degree of pain experienced after this surgery varies. Assess and observe the patient for pain every 2 to 3 hours immediately after surgery. Moderate incision pain is expected for the first 24 hours after surgery and should markedly decrease within 1 or 2 days. If the pain does not resolve within this time, assess for wound complications, such as infection or bleeding.

Instruct the man to schedule a follow-up visit with the surgeon to have the wound evaluated for healing. Stress the importance of continuing to wear a scrotal support to promote drainage and comfort. The scrotum can remain swollen from residual inflammation and edema for as long as several weeks. Remind the patient to stay off his feet for

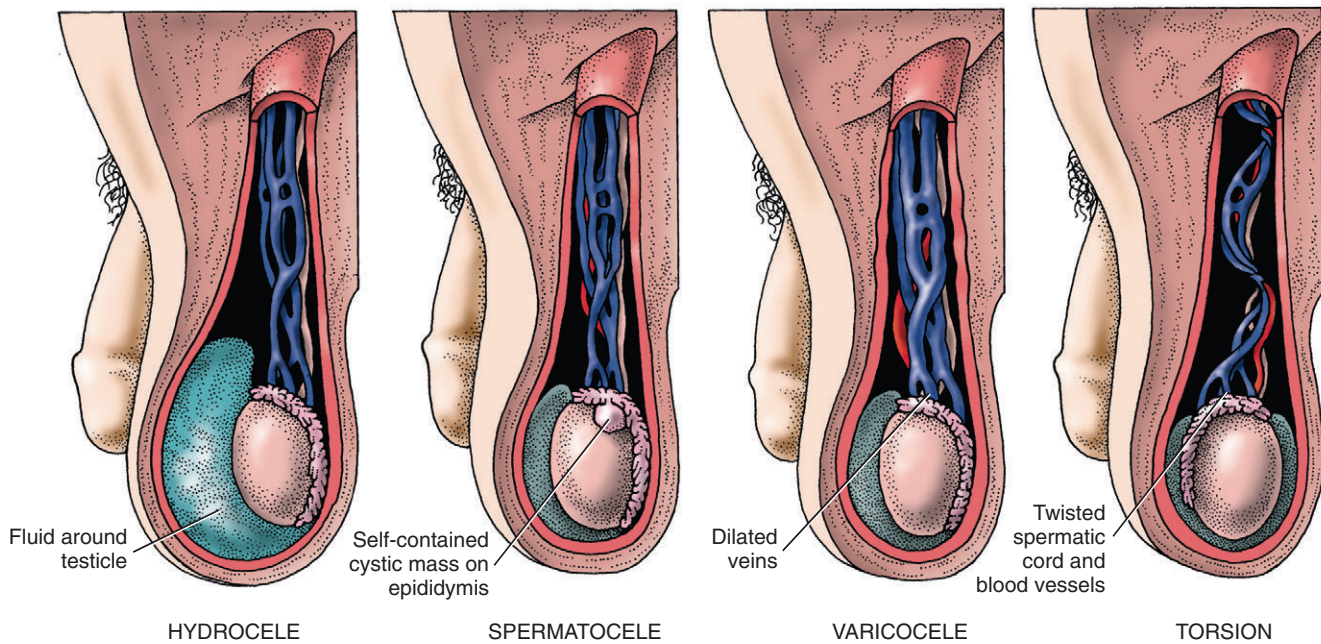


FIG. 75-5 Common problems affecting the testes and adjacent structures.

several days and to limit physical activity for a week. Reassure him that this swelling is normal and eventually subsides.

SPERMATOCELE

A spermatocele is a sperm-containing cyst that develops on the epididymis alongside the testicle (see Fig. 75-5). Trauma, infection, congenital abnormalities, or often for no identifiable reason results in the widening of a portion of the epididymis, creating a small cavity where sperm collects.

Normally, spermatoceles are small and asymptomatic and no interventions are needed. If they become large enough to cause discomfort, a spermatocelectomy is performed. In this simple procedure, the spermatocele is removed through a small scrotal incision. Routinely, no incision drain is used because drainage and swelling are minimal. A few patients have recurrence.

VARICOCELE

A varicocele is a cluster of dilated veins behind and above the testis (see Fig. 75-5). Varicosity of the testicles may result from the increased fluid secondary to damaged or incompetent valves in the testicular veins. The diagnosis is made by scrotal palpation, particularly when the patient performs a Valsalva maneuver, creating additional pressure in the varicose veins. The scrotum feels “wormlike” when palpated. If the varicocele is very small and cannot be palpated, thermography, which detects pockets of heat, or a Doppler, which magnifies the sound of the blood flowing through the veins, is used.

Varicoceles can be either unilateral or bilateral, but most are unilateral. They occur most often on the left side of the scrotum. In many cases, they are asymptomatic and no treatment is required. In a few men, varicoceles are painful and must be removed surgically.

Varicoceles can also cause infertility. It is thought that they increase scrotal temperature from the venous stasis near the testis, altering spermatogenesis. Surgical correction may

resolve the infertility. As an alternative, an interventional radiology procedure may be done to embolize the vein that drains the varicocele.

A **varicocelectomy** (surgical removal of the varicocele) is usually performed through an inguinal incision, in which the spermatic veins are ligated in the cord. It can also be performed through an incision near the superior iliac spine, in which the spermatic veins are ligated in the retroperitoneal space. A varicocelectomy may be done on an ambulatory care basis.

Before surgery, explain to the patient that persistent venous congestion of the scrotum is common after this type of surgery because of the changed circulation in the area. To promote drainage of the scrotum, place a rolled towel under the scrotum while he is in bed. Ice may be applied to the scrotum if needed. Any intervention that facilitates drainage and decreases swelling from the area promotes relief. Instruct the patient about the importance of wearing a scrotal support while ambulating. Usually he can resume normal activities, including sexual activities, within a week.

At discharge, instruct the patient to make a follow-up appointment with the surgeon to have the sutures removed. Remind him to notify the surgeon of any increasing discomfort at the incision site or in the scrotum, which might indicate an infection. Increasing scrotal discomfort can mean that the circulation to the testis has been impaired. Testicular atrophy, a rare complication of a varicocelectomy, may occur if the blood supply to the testis becomes insufficient.

CANCER OF THE PENIS

Pathophysiology

Cancer of the penis is rare among men in the United States. Most penile cancers are epidermoid (squamous) carcinomas developing from the squamous cells. These tumors tend to grow slowly and can develop anywhere on the penis but occur

most commonly on the foreskin or the glans. When the cancer is confined to the skin of the penis, it is called *carcinoma in situ (CIS)*. Other types of penile cancers include melanomas, basal cell cancers, and sarcomas.

Circumcision (the surgical removal of the prepuce from the penis) in infancy almost eliminates the possibility of penile cancer in that chronic irritation and inflammation of the glans penis predispose uncircumcised men to penile cancer. Because of the ongoing controversy about neonatal circumcision, teach men and new mothers of boys that strict personal hygiene is an important preventive measure against penile cancer.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Penile cancer usually occurs as a painless, wartlike growth or ulcer on the glans under the **prepuce** (foreskin) and may be mistaken for a venereal wart. It may also appear as a reddened lesion with plaque.

Small lesions involving only the skin may be controlled by excisional biopsy. When the lesion is not curable by excisional biopsy or radiation therapy, a **penectomy** (partial or total removal of the penis) may be required. When the lesion is limited to the glans, a partial penectomy is performed. The distal portion of the corpus cavernosum and the corpus spongiosum is amputated. The urethra is connected to the skin, and a dressing is applied. A retention catheter is in place for 3 to 5 days after surgery until the edema surrounding the urethra subsides. Assess the dressing for drainage, which should be minimal. Check the urinary catheter for patency every 4 hours for the first 24 hours.

A total penectomy is required when the lesion has penetrated the shaft of the penis or when the tumor has recurred after a partial penectomy or radiation therapy. An incision is made from the pubic bone, which encircles the penis and extends into the perineum. The bases of both corpora cavernosa are exposed and excised, and the penis is amputated. An incision drain is placed in the wound before it is sutured. Patients who undergo a total penectomy also have a perineal urethrotomy (connecting the urethra to the skin in the perineum) for urinary drainage.

After a total penectomy, observe the incision dressing every 2 to 4 hours during the first 24 hours. A moderate amount of serosanguineous drainage from the incision drains is expected.

Be aware that regardless of how accepting the patient may appear before surgery, he may experience severe emotional problems after surgery. After a partial penectomy, he must adjust to considerable changes in body image and sexuality. Encourage him to verbalize his feelings about the loss of his penis. After a total penectomy, the patient can no longer have penile-vaginal or penile-anal intercourse and cannot urinate in a standing position. It is difficult for most men to accept the possibility that they might die because of a lesion on the penis, especially because they rarely experience any systemic cancer symptoms and are otherwise healthy. Help the patient realize that removal of his penis may save his life. Be aware of the possibility of suicide attempts because his penis may be more important to him than his life. The nurse may be the one to detect the need for professional psychological



FIG. 75-6 An uncircumcised penis.

assistance for the patient or his partner. Early interventions can make a tremendous difference in the patient's or partner's well-being.

PHIMOSIS AND PARAPHIMOSIS

In *phimosis*, the prepuce is constricted so that it cannot be retracted over the glans. The prepuce remains down, around the tip of the penis. Teach uncircumcised men about the importance of cleaning the prepuce (Fig. 75-6).

In *paraphimosis*, the prepuce has not been returned to its normal position after being retracted and forms a constricting band around the glans. This constricts lymph drainage, causing the penis to swell. Blood flow becomes impeded, and tissue death can occur. *This problem is an emergency requiring immediate treatment. Uncircumcised males are at risk.* Causes include infection, not returning the foreskin to the original position, poor hygiene, vigorous sexual intercourse, and penile piercing. *When caring for a man who is not circumcised, be sure to replace the foreskin over the penis after bathing or catheterizing him to prevent this paraphimosis!*

Phimosis is corrected by **circumcision** (surgical removal of the prepuce or foreskin). This procedure also may be performed for other medical reasons or for aesthetic reasons. Circumcision in the adult male is usually performed in a same-day surgical setting. If the patient has a dressing, instruct him to soak in a warm bath that evening to allow the dressing to loosen. If the dressing falls off before the next day, caution him to not replace it. Explain that the sutures will be absorbed and need not be removed. No residual or side effects result from this surgery, and the patient should be able to resume normal activities within 1 week. Sexual intercourse may be resumed after 1 to 2 weeks when pain has subsided. Advise the man to notify his physician if he has any wound complications, such as swelling at the incision area or drainage, and to schedule a postoperative office visit.

PRIAPISM

Priapism is an uncontrolled, long-maintained erection without sexual desire, which causes the penis to become large, hard, and painful. It affects the two corpora cavernosa. The corpus spongiosum and glans penis are not affected.

Priapism can occur from neural, vascular, or pharmacologic causes, including:

- Thrombosis of the veins of the corpora cavernosa (usually resulting from trauma)
- Leukemia
- Sickle cell disease
- Diabetes mellitus
- Malignancies

Sickle cell disease causes priapism through the collection of erythrocytes within the corporal bodies. Leukemia may cause priapism because the increased number of white blood cells (WBCs) permits persistent engorgement of the corporal bodies. Cancer may also infiltrate the corporal bodies causing persistent engorgement. Priapism can also result from an abnormal neurogenic reflex, psychotropic drugs, antidepressants, antihypertensive drugs, and drugs used to treat erectile dysfunction. Other risk factors include recreational drugs (cocaine, ecstasy, marijuana), overdose of injectable drugs for erectile dysfunction, and prolonged sexual activity.

Priapism is a urologic emergency because the circulation to the penis may be compromised and the patient may not be able to void with an erect penis. The desired outcome for intervention is to improve the venous drainage of the corpora cavernosa. Conservative measures involve prostatic massage, sedation, ice packs, and bedrest. Meperidine (Demerol) is usually given immediately because of its hypotensive effect. Urinary catheterization is required if the man cannot void.

If conservative therapy is unsuccessful, treatment may proceed to aspiration of the corpora cavernosa with a large-bore needle or surgical intervention. The priapism should be resolved within the first 24 to 30 hours to prevent penile ischemia, gangrene, fibrosis, and erectile dysfunction. If a cause is identified, treatment is directed toward that underlying cause.

When caring for the patient with priapism, be sensitive to his emotional needs. He may be uncomfortable and in crisis but at the same time embarrassed by his erection and loss of control. Reassure the patient that it is understood that he is not in control of his erection, and provide him with privacy.

PROSTATITIS

Pathophysiology

Prostatitis is an inflammation of the prostate gland. The four types of prostatitis are acute bacterial (ABP), chronic bacterial (CBP), nonbacterial (NBP)/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS), and asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis. Duration of symptoms, presence or absence of WBCs in the urine, and urinary culture results determine the classification.

Bacterial prostatitis often occurs with urethritis or an infection of the lower urinary tract. Organisms may reach the prostate via the bloodstream or the urethra. The most common organisms are *Escherichia coli*, *Enterobacter*, *Proteus*, and group D streptococci. Acute bacterial prostatitis may be manifested by fever, chills, **dysuria** (painful urination), urethral discharge, and a boggy, tender prostate. Gentle palpation of the prostate usually results in a urethral discharge, which has WBCs in the prostatic secretions.

Chronic bacterial prostatitis generally occurs in older men and has a less dramatic presentation than acute bacterial prostatitis and without the systemic manifestations. The patient reports experiencing hesitancy, urgency, dysuria,

difficulty initiating and terminating the flow of urine, and decreased strength and volume of urine. Also, there may be discomfort in the perineum, scrotum, and penis.

Prostatitis can occur after a viral illness or may be associated with sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), especially in young males. Other causes may be autoimmune disorders, neuromuscular etiologies, allergy-mediated reactions, and psychosexual problems. In many instances, an exact cause of the perineal discomfort cannot be found. The patient reports mild urgency and dysuria. Rectal, perineal, and ejaculatory pain may be present. Decreased libido (sexual desire) may also be present.

Prostatodynia (pelvic floor pain) is a related condition in which manifestations of prostatitis are present but there is no inflammation of the prostate and the urine culture is negative. Also, the patient has low back pain with unilateral testicular pain, narrowed urinary stream with diminished force, and post-void dribbling.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

The patient with chronic prostatitis usually reports backache, perineal pain, mild dysuria, and urinary frequency. Hematuria may be present. The prostate may feel irregularly enlarged, firm, and slightly tender when palpated. The patient often has an elevated serum WBC count and prostate-specific antigen (PSA) level.

Complications of prostatitis are **epididymitis** (inflammation of the epididymis) and **cystitis** (inflammation of the bladder). A rare complication is a prostatic abscess. The patient with either acute or chronic bacterial prostatitis is likely to develop urinary tract infections. Sexual functioning may be reduced because of discomfort.

Early diagnosis and treatment of prostatitis with antimicrobials are important. Treatment may last from weeks to many months because there is poor penetration of antibiotics into prostatic tissue. Acute bacterial prostatitis may require hospitalization with aggressive IV antibiotics.

Emphasize the importance of comfort measures, such as sitz baths, muscle relaxants, and NSAIDs. Stool softeners are prescribed to prevent straining and rectal irritation of the prostate during a bowel movement. Alpha blockers such as tamsulosin (Flomax) may be given to promote voiding. Teach patients to avoid alcohol, coffee, tea, and spicy foods that irritate symptoms. Instruct them to avoid over-the-counter cold preparations containing decongestants or antihistamines that may cause urinary retention.

Teach the patient with chronic prostatitis about the long-term nature of the problem. Because prostatitis can cause other urinary tract infections, explain the importance of long-term antibiotic therapy and increasing fluid intake. Remind him to take the prescribed antibiotics on schedule. Because sulfamethoxazole-trimethoprim (Bactrim, Septra) diffuses into the prostatic fluid, it is often the antibiotic of choice. Before drug administration, be sure that the patient does not have any allergy to sulfa drugs.

Teach the patient about activities that drain the prostate (sexual intercourse, masturbation), which may help in the management of chronic prostatitis. Inform him that prostatitis is not infectious or contagious.

EPIDIDYMITIS

Pathophysiology

Epididymitis is an inflammation of the epididymis and may be a result of an infection or noninfectious source such as trauma. Bacterial infection is the most common cause. The infection may spread from other structures such as the prostate, bladder, or urethra. It can be a complication of an STD, such as gonorrhea or chlamydia. Although not common, epididymitis can also be a complication of long-term use of an indwelling urinary catheter, prostatic surgery, or a cystoscopic examination.

Organisms such as *Staphylococcus* and *E. coli* commonly cause epididymitis. Some men have *Chlamydia trachomatis*, which is transmitted sexually (see [Chapter 76](#)). The infective organism passes upward through the urethra and the ejaculatory duct and then along the vas deferens to the epididymis.

The man with epididymitis usually reports pain along the inguinal canal and along the vas deferens, followed by pain and swelling in the scrotum and the groin. If untreated, the epididymis becomes swollen and painful and fever may be present. Pyuria and bacteriuria may develop with resultant chills and fever. An abscess may form, requiring an **orchiectomy** (removal of one or both testes).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

Instruct the patient with epididymitis to remain in bed with his scrotum elevated to prevent traction on the spermatic cord, to facilitate venous drainage, and to relieve pain. The man should wear a scrotal support when ambulating. A smear or culture of the urine or prostate secretions may be obtained to identify the causative organism. Antibiotics appropriate to the specific organism can then be prescribed. These antibiotics are taken until all acute manifestations are gone. If the epididymitis is chlamydial or gonorrheal in origin, the patient's sexual partners are also treated with antibiotics. NSAIDs such as ibuprofen or naproxen

(Naprosyn) may be used to decrease inflammation and promote comfort.

The patient may find other comfort measures effective, such as applying cold compresses or ice to the scrotum intermittently and taking sitz baths. Advise him to avoid lifting, straining, or sexual activity until the infection is under control (which may take as long as 4 weeks).

In men with epididymitis, a testicular tumor must always be suspected, especially if the condition does not resolve in a week or two. Ultrasound study is often done to rule out an abscess or tumor. Patients with recurrent or chronic painful conditions may require an **epididymectomy** (excision of the epididymis from the testicle).

ORCHITIS

Orchitis is an acute testicular inflammation resulting from trauma or infection. The infection may be caused by the direct spread of bacteria through the urethra or by an infection elsewhere in the body, such as pneumonia, tuberculosis, gonorrhea, syphilis, or mumps. Usually both the testes and the epididymides are involved (epididymo-orchitis). Risk factors for orchitis include recurrent urinary tract infections, recurrent STDs, congenital abnormalities of the urogenital tract, instrumentation, and chronic indwelling urethral urinary catheter.

Orchitis may be unilateral or bilateral. If it is bilateral, the patient is at increased risk for sterility because of the testicular atrophy and fibrosis that occur during healing.

The manifestations of orchitis are the same as those of epididymitis and include scrotal pain, edema, reports of heavy feelings in the involved testicle(s), dysuria, pain on ejaculation, blood in the semen, and discharge from the penis. In addition, the patient may experience nausea and vomiting and pain radiating to the inguinal canal.

The treatment of orchitis is the same as for epididymitis and includes:

- Bedrest with scrotal elevation
- Application of ice
- Administration of analgesics and antibiotics

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient is experiencing impaired sexuality as a result of male reproductive problems?

- Lump or swelling in prostate or scrotum
- Report of pain in scrotum or during ejaculation
- Report of difficulty voiding (e.g., starting urine stream)
- Hematuria
- Report of dribbling of urine (incontinence)
- Report of inability to have a penile erection
- Report of decreased libido

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient experiencing impaired sexuality as a result of male reproductive problems?

Perform and interpret physical assessment, including:

- Conducting a complete pain assessment
- Inspecting and palpating bladder for distention
- Inspecting and palpating scrotum for swelling or masses
- Palpating lymph nodes for swelling, especially in the inguinal areas
- Sending urine sample for urinalysis and culture
- Checking most recent laboratory values for PSA, CBC, and serum tumor markers

Respond by:

- Catheterizing patient if retaining urine
- Providing pain relief measures, such as ice or medication as prescribed

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW—cont'd

- Elevating scrotum if swollen
- Arranging for consultation with sex or intimacy therapist, if patient desires

On what should you REFLECT?

- Evaluate patient for need for indwelling urinary catheter.
- Evaluate effectiveness of actions to control pain and swelling.
- Think about what additional resources the patient will need to cope with his problem.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!

KEY POINTS

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Teach patients with prostate cancer about American Cancer Society's Man to Man program and the American Foundation for Urologic Disease's Us TOO program to help men and their partners cope with prostate cancer.
- Have patients report signs of infection when caring for a urinary catheter in the home.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach men at risk for prostate cancer to follow the current American Cancer Society's screening and early detection guidelines.
- Teach men how to perform testicular self-examination as described in [Chart 75-4](#).
- Teach uncircumcised men the importance of keeping the penis clean to prevent penile cancer.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Because most patients with testicular cancer are young and middle-aged adults, assess their reaction to the possible loss of reproductive ability.
- Because of the high incidence of erectile dysfunction after radical prostatectomy, assess the patient's adjustment to these changes in body function.
- Assess the patient's anxiety before prostate surgery, and allow him to express feelings of fear or grief.

Physiological Integrity

- Perform a focused physical assessment for patients reporting lumps or swelling in their genital area; inspect and palpate bladder and scrotum.
- Observe for and report complications after radical prostatectomy.

- Observe for and report bloody urine with clots after TURP; irrigate the bladder per agency or surgeon protocol.
- Maintain traction on the urinary catheter after a TURP.
- Teach patients about drug therapies (5-ARIs and alpha blocking agents) used to treat BPH, including side effects.
- Teach patients to avoid any drugs that can cause urinary retention, especially anticholinergics, antihistamines, and decongestants if BPH is present.
- Remind patients wanting to use complementary and alternative therapies to check with their health care providers before using them.
- Eating a well-balanced diet with plenty of fish and fruits and vegetables may help prevent prostate cancer.
- Reinforce the man's option for managing prostate cancer; some procedures and drugs cause erectile dysfunction and incontinence either temporarily or permanently.
- Use the information listed in [Chart 75-3](#) to teach patients urinary catheter care after prostate cancer surgery.
- Teach patients about not lifting more than 15 lb (6.8 kg) after prostate surgery.
- Options for erectile dysfunction (ED) include drug therapy (most common), vacuum assist devices, penile injections, transurethral suppositories, or penile implants.
- Be aware that African-American middle-aged men are the most at risk for prostate cancer; Euro-American young men are the most at risk for testicular cancer.
- Teach patients to report symptoms of radiation cystitis or proctitis to their health care provider as soon as possible; these complications resolve in 4 to 6 weeks after the end of radiation therapy.
- Teach patients and their partners about hormonal therapy used to manage prostate cancer: LH-RH agonists and anti-androgen drugs.
- Be aware that sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) are a major cause of male reproductive system infections.

Care of Patients with Sexually Transmitted Disease

Shirley E. Van Zandt



<http://evolve.elsevier.com/Iggy/>

Answer Key for NCLEX Examination Challenges and
Decision-Making Challenges
Audio Glossary

Concept Map Creator

Key Points

Self-Assessment Questions for the NCLEX® Examination

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Safe and Effective Care Environment

1. Maintain patient confidentiality and privacy related to sexually transmitted diseases (STDs).
2. Educate patients with STDs and their sexual partners on self-care measures.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

3. Describe the role of expedited partner treatment in reducing STD recurrence.
4. Develop a health teaching plan for young adults and other at-risk people about risk factors, prevention, and treatment for STDs.

Psychosocial Integrity

5. Assess patients' and their partners' responses to a diagnosis of STD.

6. Explain the need to respect patients' personal values and beliefs regarding sexual practices.

Physiological Integrity

7. Compare the stages of syphilis.
8. Identify the role of drug therapy in managing patients with STDs.
9. Develop a health teaching plan for patients on how to self-manage their STD, including antibiotic therapy.
10. Describe the assessment findings that are typical in patients with STDs.
11. Develop a collaborative plan of care for a patient with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID).
12. Identify three sexually transmitted vaginal infections.

OVERVIEW

Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) are caused by infectious organisms that have been passed from one person to another through intimate contact, usually oral, vaginal, or anal intercourse. Some organisms that cause these diseases are transmitted only through sexual contact. Other organisms are transmitted also by parenteral exposure to infected blood, fecal-oral transmission, intrauterine transmission to the fetus, and perinatal transmission from mother to neonate (Table 76-1). *Sexually transmitted infections (STIs)* is another term that has been used to describe the same group of health problems. This terminology was intended to focus on the management of these infections and to decrease the social

stigma of labeling them as diseases. Though used in the literature, *STI* is the less common terminology. *STD continues to be the most acceptable term used by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).*

In spite of improved diagnostic techniques, increased knowledge about organisms that can be sexually transmitted, and changes in sexual attitudes and practices, the number of cases of STDs continues to increase. *Sexual issues are often sensitive, personal, and controversial, and nurses must respect the patients' lifestyle. Providing confidentiality is essential for patients to receive correct information, make informed decisions, and obtain appropriate care.*

The prevalence of STDs is a major health concern worldwide. Populations at greatest risk for acquiring STDs are

TABLE 76-1 SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

- Human immune deficiency virus infection - Chancroid - Syphilis - Lymphogranuloma venereum - Genital herpes simplex virus infection - Genital warts - Gonococcal infection - Chlamydia infection - Nongonococcal urethritis - Mucopurulent cervicitis - Epididymitis	- Pelvic inflammatory disease - Sexually transmitted enteritis - Sexually transmitted proctitis - Trichomoniasis - Candidal infection - Bacterial vaginosis - Viral hepatitis - Cytomegalovirus infection - Ectoparasitic infection: - Pediculosis pubis - Scabies
---	--

From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010). Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59 (RR-12), 1-110.

pregnant women, adolescents, and men who have sex with men (MSM). External factors such as an increasing population, cultural factors (e.g., earlier first intercourse), political and economic policies, and international travel and migration affect the prevalence of STDs. It is also affected by changing human physiology patterns such as earlier menarche, comorbidities leading to immunosuppression such as from human immune deficiency virus (HIV), or treatments for cancer or organ transplantation. Access to care plays a major role in the risk for acquiring an STD.

WOMEN'S HEALTH CONSIDERATIONS

Because of the very vascular mucous membranes of the vagina, women are more easily infected with STDs than are men and are at greater risk for health problems caused by STDs. Young women who are sexually active with men have an increased risk for contracting an STD for several reasons including increased rates of sexual activity that may be unprotected and exposure of cervical basal epithelium cells to infections. Lesbian women have a decreased risk for STDs, although many have or have had sex with men.

Some young women may also be at high risk because they:

- Lack knowledge about the risk for disease
- Believe that they are not vulnerable to disease
- Mistakenly believe that oral contraceptives; contraceptive patches, sponges, and foams; and intrauterine devices also protect them from STDs
- Consume large amounts of alcohol, which promotes risky sexual behavior

Postmenopausal women also may be at risk for STDs because many perceive that pregnancy is no longer likely and thus do not use barrier protection. Mucosal tears from vaginal atrophy in postmenopausal women may also place them at risk.

Women have more asymptomatic infections that may delay diagnosis and treatment. Many STDs reside in the cervical os and cause little change in vaginal discharge or vulvar tissue. This delay increases the likelihood of complications from STDs, including ascending infections that may cause reproductive organ damage and illness. Embarrassment, denial, or fear about STDs may further delay treatment, increasing the potential for serious complications.

STDs cause complications that can contribute to severe physical and emotional suffering, including infertility, ectopic pregnancy, cancer, and death. Some of the most common complications caused by sexually transmitted organisms are listed in Table 76-2.

TABLE 76-2 COMPLICATIONS CAUSED BY SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED ORGANISMS

COMPLICATION	CAUSATIVE ORGANISMS
Salpingitis, infertility, and ectopic pregnancy	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i> <i>Mycoplasma hominis</i> <i>Ureaplasma urealyticum</i>
Reproductive loss (abortion/miscarriage)	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> Herpes simplex virus <i>M. hominis</i> <i>U. urealyticum</i> <i>Treponema pallidum</i>
Puerperal infection	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i>
Perinatal infection	Hepatitis B virus Human immune deficiency virus Human papilloma virus <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> Herpes simplex virus <i>T. pallidum</i> Cytomegalovirus Group B streptococcus
Cancer of genital area	Human papilloma virus
Male urethritis	<i>M. hominis</i> Herpes simplex virus <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> <i>U. urealyticum</i>
Vulvovaginitis	Herpes simplex virus <i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i> Bacterial vaginosis <i>Candida albicans</i>
Cervicitis	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> Herpes simplex virus
Proctitis	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> Herpes simplex virus <i>Campylobacter jejuni</i> <i>Shigella species</i> <i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>
Hepatitis	<i>T. pallidum</i> Hepatitis A, hepatitis B, and hepatitis C viruses
Dermatitis	<i>Sarcoptes scabiei</i> <i>Phthirus pubis</i>
Genital ulceration or warts	<i>C. trachomatis</i> Herpes simplex virus Human papilloma virus <i>T. pallidum</i> <i>Haemophilus ducreyi</i> <i>Calymmatobacterium granulomatis</i>

Chlamydia infection, gonorrhea, syphilis, chancroid, human immune deficiency virus (HIV) infection, and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) are reportable to local health authorities in every state (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC], 2008). Other STDs such as genital herpes (GH) may or may not be reported, depending on local legal requirements. Positive results can be reported

by clinicians and laboratories. Reports are kept strictly confidential.

Nurses in a variety of settings are responsible for identifying people at risk for STDs, caring for patients with diagnosed STDs, and preventing further cases through education and case finding. Nurses in secondary and tertiary care settings, such as acute care hospitals, have a responsibility to recognize patients who are at risk for or who have STDs, possibly while being treated for another unrelated health problem.

The CDC provides regularly updated guidelines for treatment of STDs. These best practice guidelines provide information, treatment standards, and counseling advice to help decrease the spread of these diseases (CDC, 2010a).

INFECTIONS ASSOCIATED WITH ULCERS

SYPHILIS

Pathophysiology

Syphilis is a complex sexually transmitted disease (STD) that can become systemic and cause serious complications, including death. The causative organism is a spirochete called *Treponema pallidum*. Although the organism can be seen only with a darkfield microscope, several serologic tests may be used to screen for the presence of syphilis antibody. *T. pallidum* is damaged by dry air or any known disinfectant. The organisms die within hours at temperatures of 105.8° to 107.6° F (41° to 42° C) and are not airborne. *The infection is usually transmitted by sexual contact and blood exposure, but transmission can occur through close body contact such as kissing.*

Syphilis progresses through four stages: primary, secondary, latent, and tertiary. The appearance of an ulcer called a **chancre** is the first sign of *primary* syphilis. It develops at the site of entry (inoculation) of the organism from 10 to 90 days after exposure (3 weeks is average). Chancres may be found on any area of the skin or mucous membranes but occur most often on the genitalia, lips, nipples, and hands and in the mouth, anus, and rectum.

During this highly infectious stage, the chancre begins as a small papule. Within 3 to 7 days, it breaks down into its typical appearance: a painless, indurated (hard), smooth, weeping lesion. Regional lymph nodes enlarge, feel firm, and are not painful. Without treatment, the chancre usually disappears within 6 weeks. However, the organism spreads throughout the body and the patient is still infectious.

Secondary syphilis develops 6 weeks to 6 months after the onset of primary syphilis. During this stage, syphilis is a systemic disease because the spirochetes circulate throughout the bloodstream. Common manifestations include:

- Malaise
- Low-grade fever
- Headache
- Muscular aches and pains
- Sore throat
- Generalized rash

These symptoms are often mistaken for those of influenza. The rash, the most commonly presenting symptom, usually involves the palms and soles of the feet. Although it has no typical appearance, the rash tends to change from papules to squamous papules to pustules. Other skin lesions include psoriasis-like rashes (Fig. 76-1), wartlike lesions (condylomata lata), and mucous patches. *These lesions are highly*



FIG. 76-1 Palmar and plantar secondary syphilis.

contagious and should not be touched without gloves. The rash subsides without treatment in 4 to 12 weeks.

After the second stage of syphilis, there is a period of latency. *Early latent* syphilis occurs during the first year after infection, and infectious lesions can recur. *Late latent* syphilis is a disease of more than 1 year's duration after infection. This stage is not infectious except to the fetus of a pregnant woman. Patients with latent syphilis may or may not have reactive serologic test (e.g., Venereal Disease Research Laboratory [VDRL]) findings.

Tertiary, or late, syphilis occurs after a highly variable period, from 4 to 20 years. This stage develops in untreated cases and can mimic other conditions because any organ system can be affected. Manifestations of late syphilis include:

- Benign lesions (gummas) of the skin, mucous membranes, and bones
- Cardiovascular syphilis, usually in the form of aortic valvular disease and aortic aneurysms
- Neurosyphilis, causing central nervous system problems (e.g., meningitis, hearing loss, generalized paresis [weakness])

Because of strong U.S. public health efforts between 1990 and 1996, there was a 90% decrease in syphilis cases to an all-time low in 2000. Since 2001, there has been a steady increase in cases of primary and secondary syphilis with the majority among men having sex with men (MSM) (CDC, 2009).



CULTURAL AWARENESS

African Americans have an 8 times greater rate of acquiring syphilis than whites. Compared with whites, the 2008 rate for Hispanics was 2 times higher (CDC, 2009). The reason for these differences is unclear, but lack of access to health care may be a factor.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

One of the *Healthy People 2020* objectives is to completely eliminate syphilis in the United States (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [USDHHS], 2010) (Table 76-3). The most important tool for prevention of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), including syphilis, is education. All people, regardless of age, gender, ethnicity, socioeconomic

TABLE 76-3 MEETING HEALTHY PEOPLE 2020 OBJECTIVES AND TARGETS FOR IMPROVEMENT: SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

- Reduce the proportion of adolescents and young adults with Chlamydia trachomatis infections (by 10%).
- Reduce the proportion of females ages 15 to 44 years who have ever required treatment for pelvic inflammatory disease (by 10%).
- Reduce gonorrhea rates (by 10%).
- Reduce sustained domestic transmission of primary and secondary syphilis (by 10%).
- Reduce the proportion of females with human papilloma virus (HPV) infection (no specific target).
- Reduce the proportion of young adults with genital herpes due to herpes simplex type 2 (by 10%).

status, education, or sexual orientation, are susceptible to these diseases. STDs are largely preventable through safer sex practices. *Do not assume that a person is not sexually active because of his or her age, education, marital status, profession, or religion.* Discuss prevention methods, including safe sex, with all patients who are or may become sexually active.

Safe sex practices are those that reduce the risk for nonintact skin or mucous membranes coming in contact with infected body fluids and blood. These practices include using:

- A latex or polyurethane condom for genital and anal intercourse
- A condom or latex barrier (dental dam) over the genitals or anus during oral-genital or oral-anal sexual contact
- Gloves for finger or hand contact with the vagina or rectum

Abstinence, mutual monogamy, and decreasing the number of sexual partners also decrease the risk for acquiring an STD.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Assessment of the patient who has manifestations of syphilis begins with a history to gather information about any ulcers or rash. Take a sexual history and conduct a risk assessment to include whether previous testing or treatment for syphilis or other STDs has ever been done (Chart 76-1). Ask about allergic reactions to drugs, especially penicillin. A woman may report inguinal lymph node enlargement resulting from a chancre in the vagina or cervix that is not easily visible to her. She may state a history of sexual contact with a male partner who had an ulcer that she noticed during the encounter. Men usually discover the chancre on the penis or scrotum.

Conduct a physical examination, including inspection and palpation, to identify manifestations of syphilis. *Wear gloves while palpating any lesions because of the highly contagious treponemes that are present.* Observe for and document rashes of any type because of the variable presentation of secondary syphilis.

After the physical examination, the health care provider obtains a *specimen of the chancre* for examination under a darkfield microscope. Diagnosis of primary or secondary syphilis is confirmed if *T. pallidum* is present.

CHART 76-1 FOCUSED ASSESSMENT

The Patient with a Sexually Transmitted Disease

Assess history of present illness:

- Chief concern
- Symptoms by quality and quantity, precipitating and palliative factors
- Any treatments taken (self-prescribed or over-the-counter products)

Assess past medical history:

- Major health problems—including any history of STDs/PID or immunosuppression
- Surgeries—obstetric and gynecologic, circumcision

Assess current health status:

- Menstrual history for irregularities
- Sexual history:
 - Type and frequency of sexual activity
 - Number of sexual contacts/partners
 - Sexual orientation
- Contraceptive history
- Medications
- Allergies
- Lifestyle risks—drugs, alcohol, tobacco

Assess preventive health care practices:

- Papanicolaou (Pap) tests
- Regular STD screening
- Use of barrier contraceptives to prevent STDs and pregnancy

Assess physical examination findings:

- Vital signs
- Oropharyngeal findings
- Abdominal findings
- Genital or pelvic findings
- Anorectal findings

Assess laboratory data:

- Urinalysis
- Hematology
- ESR or CRP if PID is being considered
- Cervical, urethral, oral, rectal specimens
- Lesion samples for microbiology and virology
- Pregnancy testing

CRP, C-reactive protein; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; PID, pelvic inflammatory disease; STDs, sexually transmitted diseases.

Blood tests are also used to diagnose syphilis. The usual screening and/or diagnostic nontreponemal tests are the *Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL)* serum test and the more sensitive *rapid plasma reagin (RPR)*. These tests are based on an antibody-antigen reaction that determines the presence and amount of antibodies produced by the body in response to an infection by *T. pallidum*. They become reactive 2 to 6 weeks after infection. VDRL titers are also used to monitor treatment effectiveness. The antibodies are not specific to *T. pallidum*, and false-positive reactions often occur from such conditions as viral infections, hepatitis, and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) (Pagana & Pagana, 2010).

If a VDRL result is positive, the health care provider requests or the laboratory may automatically perform a more specific treponemal test, such as the *fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS)* test or the *microhemagglutination assay for T. palladium (MHA-TP)*, to confirm the infection. These tests are more sensitive for all stages of syphilis, although false-positive results may still occur. Patients who have a reactive test will have this positive result for their entire life, even after sufficient treatment. This poses a challenge

when receiving a positive result for a patient who denies a history of or does not know he or she had syphilis.

INTERVENTIONS

Patient-centered collaborative care includes drug therapy and health teaching to resolve the infection and prevent infection transmission to others.

Drug Therapy

Benzathine penicillin G given IM as a single 2.4 million-unit dose is the evidence-based treatment for primary, secondary, and early latent syphilis (CDC, 2010a). Patients in the late latent stage receive the same dose every week for 3 weeks (CDC, 2010a).

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Allergic reactions to benzathine penicillin G can occur. Therefore monitor for allergic manifestations (e.g., rash, edema, shortness of breath, chest tightness, anxiety). Be sure that the patient who has never had penicillin has a skin test before receiving the injection. Penicillin desensitization is recommended for penicillin-allergic patients. Keep all patients at the health care agency for at least 30 minutes after they have received the antibiotic so that manifestations of an allergic reaction can be detected and treated. The most severe reaction is anaphylaxis. Treatment should be available and implemented immediately if symptoms occur. Chapter 19 describes the management of drug allergies in detail.

After treatment, the CDC recommends follow-up evaluation including blood tests at 6, 12, and 24 months. Repeat treatment may be needed if the patient does not respond to the initial antibiotic.

The *Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction* may also follow antibiotic therapy for syphilis. This reaction is caused by the rapid release of products from the disruption of the cells of the organism. Symptoms include generalized aches, pain at the injection site, vasodilation, hypotension, and fever. They are usually benign and begin within 2 hours after therapy with a peak at 4 to 8 hours. This reaction may be treated symptomatically with analgesics and antipyretics.

Teaching for Self-Management

Reinforce teaching about the cause of infection (sexual transmission); treatment, including side effects; possible complications of untreated or incompletely treated disease; and the need for follow-up care.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Discuss with the patient with syphilis the importance of partner notification and treatment, including the risk for re-infection if the partner goes untreated. All sexual partners must be prophylactically treated as soon as possible, preferably within 90 days of the syphilis diagnosis.

Inform the patient that the disease will be reported to the local health authority and that all information will be held in strict confidence. Encourage the patient to provide accurate information for this follow-up to ensure that all at-risk partners are treated appropriately. Provide a setting that offers

privacy and encourages open discussion. Urge the patient to adhere to the treatment regimen, which includes follow-up visits. Also recommend sexual abstinence until the treatment of both the patient and partner(s) is completed.

The emotional responses to syphilis vary and may include feelings of fear, depression, guilt, and anxiety. Patients may experience guilt if they have infected others or anger if they have been infected by a partner. If further psychosocial interventions are needed, encourage the patient to discuss these feelings or refer him or her to other resources such as psychotherapy groups, self-help support groups, or STD clinics.



NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

The nurse gives a client an IM dose of penicillin G for syphilis. What is the priority action for the nurse after giving the drug?

- A. Monitor the client for at least 30 minutes for any reaction to the drug.
- B. Rub the site with an alcohol prep to ensure even distribution of the drug.
- C. Teach the client the importance of not having sexual intercourse for 7 days.
- D. Ask the client if she is allergic to any drugs, especially penicillin.

GENITAL HERPES

Pathophysiology

Genital herpes (GH) is an acute, recurring, incurable viral disease. It is the most common STD in the United States, with 16.2% of Americans currently infected with herpes simplex virus type 2 (HSV-2). The prevalence among African Americans is 39.2%, disproportionately affecting African-American women (48.0%) (CDC, 2010b). These rates are based on the presence of HSV-2 antibodies in the blood of those tested, the majority of whom have had no symptoms and most have never received a diagnosis of GH infection (CDC, 2010b).

Two serotypes of herpes simplex virus (HSV) affect the genitalia: type 1 (HSV-1) and type 2 (HSV-2). Most *nongenital* lesions such as cold sores are caused by HSV-1. Historically, HSV-2 caused most of the genital lesions. However, this distinction is academic because the transmission, symptoms, diagnosis, and treatment are nearly identical for the two types. Either type can produce oral or genital lesions through oral-genital contact with an infected person. HSV-2 has been thought to cause the majority of the primary episodes of GH, though up to one-third are caused by HSV-1 (Drugge & Allen, 2008). HSV-2 recurs and sheds asymptotically more often than HSV-1. Most people with GH have not been diagnosed because they have mild symptoms and shed virus intermittently (CDC, 2010a).

The incubation period of genital herpes is 2 to 20 days, with the average period being 1 week. Many people do not have symptoms during the primary outbreak. When outbreaks occur, they are usually more severe than in recurrent outbreaks and occasionally require hospitalization.

Recurrences are not caused by re-infection. Additional episodes are usually less severe and of shorter duration than the primary infection episode. Some patients have no symptoms at all during recurrence or viral reactivation. *However, there is viral shedding and the patient is infectious.* Long-term

complications of GH include the risk for neonatal transmission and an increased risk for acquiring HIV infection.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The diagnosis of GH is usually based on the patient's history and physical examination (see [Chart 76-1](#)). Ask the patient if he or she felt itching or a tingling sensation in the skin 1 to 2 days before the outbreak. These sensations are usually followed by the appearance of **vesicles** (blisters) in a typical cluster on the penis, scrotum, vulva, vagina, cervix, or perianal region. The blisters rupture spontaneously in a day or two and leave painful erosions that can become extensive. Assess for other symptoms such as headaches, fever, general malaise, and swelling of inguinal lymph nodes. Ask if urination is painful. Patients with urinary retention may need to be catheterized. Lesions resolve within 2 to 6 weeks.

After the lesions heal, the virus remains in a dormant state in the nerve ganglia (specifically, the sacral ganglia). Periodically, the virus may activate and symptoms recur. These recurrences may be triggered by many factors, including stress, fever, sunburn, poor nutrition, menses, and sexual activity. Assess the patient for these risk factors.

GH is confirmed through a viral culture or polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assays of the lesions. PCR is the more sensitive test. Fluid from inside the blister should be obtained within 48 hours of the first outbreak of the blisters, since accuracy decreases as they begin to heal. Serology testing, which is glycoprotein G antibody-based, can identify the HSV type, either 1 or 2. Serologic tests are used to identify infection in high-risk groups such as HIV-positive patients, patients who have partners with HSV, or MSM ([CDC, 2010a](#)). The POckit HSV-2 Rapid Test is a point-of-care test with results in 6 minutes. The HerpeSelect Immunoblot IgG test, HerpeSelect ELISA, and the Western Blot are qualitative assays that can differentiate between HSV-1 and HSV-2. All of these tests are highly specific and sensitive (Bavis et al., 2009).

INTERVENTIONS

The desired outcomes of treatment for HSV-infected patients are to decrease the discomfort from painful ulcerations, promote healing without secondary infection, decrease viral shedding, and prevent infection transmission ([Chart 76-2](#)).

Drug Therapy

Antiviral drugs are used to treat GH. *The drugs do not cure the infection but do decrease the severity, promote healing, and decrease the frequency of recurrent outbreaks while they are being used.*

Drug therapy should be offered to anyone with an initial outbreak of GH. Though the initial symptoms may be mild, they may become more severe. Topical therapy is not recommended. Acyclovir (Zovirax, Avirax ) , famciclovir (Famvir), or valacyclovir (Valtrex) may be prescribed. The main differences in these drugs are cost and frequency of use. Dosage and length of treatment differ for primary outbreaks (lasting 7 to 10 days) and recurrent outbreaks (lasting 1 to 5 days). Intermittent or continuous suppressive antiviral therapy is offered to patients to lessen or prevent outbreaks, even for

CHART 76-2 BEST PRACTICE FOR PATIENT SAFETY & QUALITY CARE

Care of or Self-Management for the Patient with Genital Herpes

- Administer oral analgesics as prescribed.
- Apply local anesthetic sprays or ointments as prescribed.
- Apply ice packs or warm compresses to the patient's lesions.
- Administer sitz baths three or four times a day.
- Encourage an increase in fluid intake to replace fluid lost through open lesions.
- Encourage frequent urination.
- Pour water over the patient's genitalia while voiding, or encourage voiding while the patient is sitting in a tub of water or standing in a shower.
- Catheterize the patient as necessary.
- Encourage genital hygiene, and encourage keeping the skin clean and dry.
- Wash hands thoroughly after contact with lesions, and launder towels that have had direct contact with lesions.
- Wear gloves when applying ointments or making any direct contact with lesions.
- Advise the patient to avoid sexual activity when lesions are present.
- Advise the patient to use latex or polyurethane condoms during all sexual exposures.
- Instruct the patient in the use, side effects, and risks versus benefits of antiviral agents.
- Advise the patient to discuss the diagnosis of genital herpes (GH) with current and new partners.

those with infrequent recurrent episodes. Therapy for severe recurrent outbreaks is most beneficial if it is started within 1 day of the appearance of lesions or during the period of itching or tingling before lesions appear.

Patients who have recurrences, regardless of frequency, may benefit from daily suppressive treatment. Suppression reduces recurrences in most patients, but it does not prevent viral shedding, even when symptoms are absent ([CDC, 2010a](#)). Patients receiving continuous therapy should periodically (possibly once a year) be reassessed for recurrences, usually by stopping the antiviral drug temporarily.

IV acyclovir and hospitalization may be indicated for patients with severe HSV infections, such as disseminated disease or encephalitis. These are severe complications of genital herpes and may be fatal.

Teaching for Self-Management

Nursing interventions focus on patient counseling and education about the infection, the potential for recurrent episodes, the correct use and possible side effects of antiviral therapy, and sexual transmission. Discussion about sexual activity is extremely important.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Remind patients to abstain from sexual activity while GH lesions are present. Urge condom use during all sexual exposures because of the increased risk for HSV transmission. Viral shedding can occur even when lesions are not present. Teach the patient about how and when to use condoms ([Chart 76-3](#)).

CHART 76-3 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Use of Condoms

- Use latex or polyurethane condoms rather than natural membrane condoms.
- Use a condom with every sexual encounter (including oral, vaginal, and anal).
- Female condoms (Reality)—polyurethane or nitrile sheaths in the vagina—are effective in preventing transmission of viruses, including HIV.
- Condoms infrequently (2 per 100) break during sexual intercourse.
- Keep condoms (especially latex) in a cool, dry place, out of direct sunlight.
- Do not use condoms that are in damaged packages or that are brittle or discolored.
- Always handle a condom with care to avoid damaging it with fingernails, teeth, or other sharp objects.
- Put condoms on before any genital contact. Hold the condom by the tip and unroll it on the penis. Leave a space at the tip to collect semen.
- If you use a lubricant with condoms, make sure that the lubricant is water based and washes away with water. Oil-based products damage latex condoms.
- Use of spermicide (nonoxonyl-9) with condoms, either lubricated condoms or vaginal application, has *not* been proven to be more or less effective against STDs than use without spermicide. *Spermicide-coated condoms have been associated with Escherichia coli urinary tract infections in women. Nonoxonyl-9 may increase risk for transmission of HIV during vaginal intercourse and anal intercourse. Its use is discouraged for anal intercourse.*
- If a condom breaks, replace it immediately.
- After ejaculation, withdraw the erect penis carefully, holding the condom at the base of the penis to prevent the condom from slipping off.
- Never use a condom more than once.

Modified from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010a). Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(RR-12), 4-5.

HIV, Human immune deficiency virus; STDs, sexually transmitted diseases.

Assess the patient's and partner's emotional responses to the diagnosis of genital herpes. Many people are initially shocked and need reassurance that they can manage the disease. Infected patients may have feelings of disbelief, uncleanness, isolation, and loneliness. They may also be angry at their partners for transmitting the infection or fear rejection by partners because they have the infection. Help patients cope with the diagnosis by being sensitive and supportive during assessments and interventions. Encourage social support, and refer patients to support groups (e.g., local support groups of the National Herpes Resource Center [www.ashstd.org/herpes/herpes_comm_support.cfm]). Symptomatic care may include oral analgesics, topical anesthetics, sitz baths, and increased oral fluid intake (Bavis et al., 2009).

Emphasize the risk for neonatal infection to all patients, both male and female. Men and women who have genital herpes need to inform the pregnancy care provider of their history. Infected male partners will be advised to avoid intercourse during pregnancy if the pregnant partner is not infected. This avoids the risk for a new primary infection and outbreak during pregnancy. People who have tested serology

positive to HSV-1 or HSV-2 but have never had GH symptoms should be counseled with the same information as those who have symptoms (CDC, 2010a).

INFECTIONS OF THE EPITHELIAL STRUCTURES

CONDYLOMATA ACUMINATA (GENITAL WARTS)

Pathophysiology

Condylomata acuminata (also known as *genital warts*) are caused by certain types of *human papilloma virus* (HPV), 90% of which are types 6 and 11 or low-risk HPV (Winer & Koutsky, 2008). These types *rarely* result in invasive cancer of the genital tract such as cervical cancer. *However, HPV types 16, 18, 31, 33, and 35, considered high-risk HPV, can be found on the skin of the genitalia and increase the risk for genital cancers, especially cervical cancer.* Infection with several HPV types can occur at the same time. The presence of one strain increases the risk for acquiring a higher-risk strain. Genital warts are the most common viral disease that is sexually transmitted and are often seen with other infections. Many American women, ages 14 to 59 years, are infected with either high- or low-risk HPV (Dunne et al., 2007).

HPV infection is thought to be the primary risk factor for development of cervical cancer (Winer & Koutsky, 2008). Sites commonly affected by infection include the urinary meatus, labia, vagina, cervix, penis, scrotum, anus, and perineal area. The incubation period is usually 2 to 3 months. There is growing evidence that HPV infection through oral and anal sex, especially in men who have sex with men (MSM), may be a risk factor for developing oral and anal cancers (Chaturvedi et al., 2008; Kim, 2010).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

The diagnosis of condylomata acuminata is made by examination of the lesions. They are initially small, white or flesh-colored papillary growths that may grow into large cauliflower-like masses (Fig. 76-2). Multiple warts usually occur in the same area. Bleeding may occur if the wart is disturbed. Warts may disappear or resolve on their own without treatment. They may occur once or recur at the original site.

A Papanicolaou (Pap) test and HPV DNA probe are used to obtain cervical specimens to assess for dysplasia and isolate and diagnose HPV of the cervix. High-risk strains of HPV can be identified and correlated with an abnormal Pap smear finding. High-risk HPV may co-exist with low-risk HPV, the likely cause of the warts. To rule out the presence of other STDs, a VDRL test, HIV test, and cultures for chlamydia and gonorrhea infections are done. If a wartlike lesion bleeds easily, appears infected, is atypical, or persists, a biopsy of the lesion is performed to rule out other pathologic problems such as cancer.

INTERVENTIONS

The desired outcomes of management are to remove the warts and treat the symptoms. No current therapy eliminates HPV. Therefore recurrences after treatment are likely. It is not



FIG. 76-2 Perianal condylomata acuminata.

known whether removal of visible warts decreases the risk for disease transmission (CDC, 2010a).

Drug Therapy

Patients may apply podofilox (Condylox) 0.5% cream or gel twice daily for 3 days with no treatment for the next 4 days. This regimen should be repeated for four cycles. Other options are imiquimod (Aldara) 5% cream applied topically at bedtime three times a week and sinecatechins 15% ointment applied three times a day, both until the warts disappear or for up to 16 weeks. Imiquimod boosts the immune system rather than simply destroying the warts. These self-treatments are less expensive than those performed in the health care provider's office, but they take longer for healing. *Teach patients that over-the-counter (OTC) wart treatments should not be used on genital tissue* (CDC, 2010a).

Cryotherapy, trichloroacetic acid (TCA) or bichloroacetic acid (BCA), and podophyllin (Pododerm) are provider-applied treatments. **Cryotherapy** (freezing), usually with liquid nitrogen, can be used every 1 to 2 weeks until lesions are resolved. TCA/BCA (80% to 90%) can be applied weekly. Podophyllin resin can be applied weekly but needs to be washed off 1 to 4 hours after application. Extensive warts have been treated with the carbon dioxide laser, intra-lesion interferon injections, and surgical removal (CDC, 2010a).

Teaching for Self-Management

The priority for nursing management is patient and sexual partner education about the mode of transmission, incubation period, treatment, and complications, especially the association with cervical cancer. Reinforce instructions about local care of the lesions or patient-applied treatment for self-management.

Inform patients that recurrence is likely, especially in the first 3 months, and that repeated treatments may be needed. Urge all patients to have complete STD testing, since exposure to one may increase risk for contracting another.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Drug Alert

Teach patients that after treatment with cryotherapy, podophyllin, or TCA, they may experience discomfort, bleeding, or discharge from the site or sloughing of parts of warts. Instruct patients to keep the area clean (shower or bath) and dry. Teach them to be alert for any signs or symptoms of infection or side effects of the treatment.

Condylomata lata (secondary syphilis) can resemble condylomata acuminata (genital warts). Sexual partners should also be evaluated and offered treatment if warts are present. Teach patients to avoid intimate sexual contact until external lesions are healed. Recommend condoms to help reduce transmission even after warts have been treated (see Chart 76-3). Encourage women to have an annual Pap test. The presence of warts requires HPV testing of the patient and partner.

In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved an HPV vaccine *Gardasil*® (Merck) that provides almost 100% immunity for HPV types 6 and 11 (predominantly types causing warts, low risk for cervical cancer) and 16 and 18 (high risk for cervical cancer). The vaccine was approved for females initially. In 2010, it was approved for males ages 9 to 26 years as a method for reducing cervical cancer. In 2009, CERVARIX® (GSK) was approved for 10- to 25-year-old females and protects only against HPV types 16 and 18. Both vaccines are recommended to be given before onset of sexual activity before there may be contact with HPV. They are also effective in protecting against infection if exposed to a second strain later. Early results have suggested that rates of genital warts and cervical cancer will be significantly lowered by these vaccines (Muñoz et al., 2010).

GONORRHEA

Pathophysiology

Gonorrhea is a sexually transmitted bacterial infection that occurs in both men and women. The causative organism is *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, a gram-negative intracellular diplococcus. It is transmitted by direct sexual contact with mucosal surfaces (vaginal intercourse, orogenital contact, or anogenital contact).

The first symptoms of gonorrhea may appear 3 to 10 days after sexual contact with an infected person. The disease can be present without symptoms and can be transmitted or progress without warning. In women, ascending spread of the organism can cause pelvic infection (**pelvic inflammatory disease [PID]**), **endometritis** (endometrial infection), **salpingitis** (fallopian tube infection), and pelvic peritonitis. Rare complications of gonorrhea in adults include arthritis, meningitis, hepatitis, and disseminated infection.

An estimated 700,000 new infections occur each year, only half of which are diagnosed or reported (CDC, 2010a). Significant disparity exists between age and racial groups. In 2008, young African-American women had the highest gonorrhea rate, followed by young African-American men (CDC, 2009). The reasons for these differences are not known, although lack of access to health care may be a factor.

Over the years, gonorrhea has become resistant to penicillin, tetracycline, and ciprofloxacin. Ciprofloxacin is no longer the drug of choice because of the development of fluoroquinolone-resistant *N. gonorrhoeae* (CDC, 2007a).

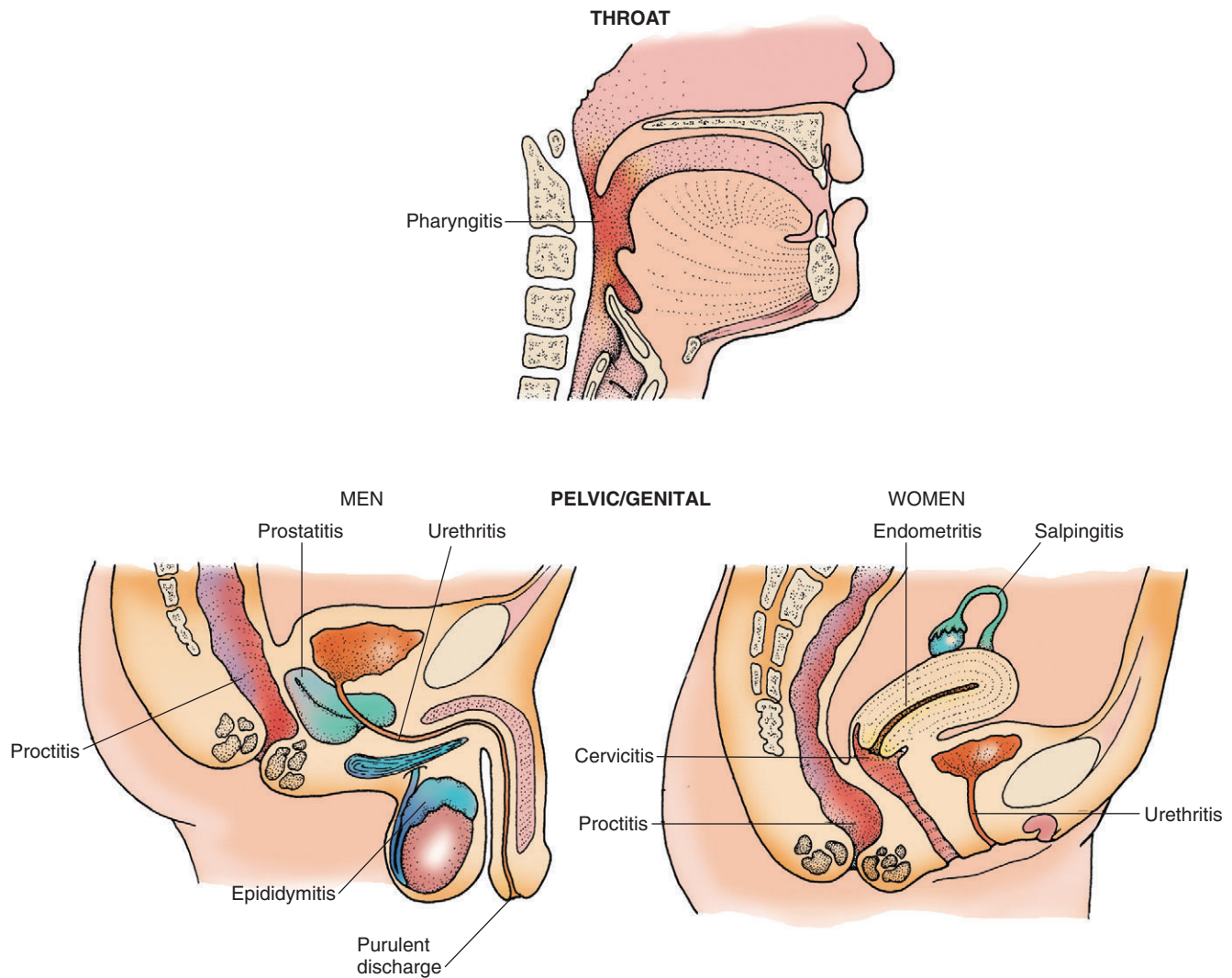


FIG. 76-3 Areas of involvement of gonorrhea in men and women.

Cephalosporins are currently the only class of antibiotics that have not developed gonorrhea resistance (CDC, 2010c).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

A complete history includes reviewing possible symptoms of gonorrhea and taking a sexual history that includes sexual orientation and sites of sexual exposure or intercourse. Assess for allergies to antibiotics (see Chart 76-1). Establish a trusting relationship and use a nonjudgmental approach to gather more complete information. This approach may decrease the patient's anxiety and fear about having an STD.

The infection can be asymptomatic in both men and women, but women have asymptomatic, or "silent," infections more often than do men. If symptoms are present, men usually notice dysuria and a penile discharge that can be either profuse yellowish green fluid or scant clear fluid. The urethra is most commonly affected, but infection can extend to the prostate, the seminal vesicles, and the epididymis. Men seek curative treatment sooner, usually because they have

symptoms, and thereby avoid some of the serious complications.

Women may report a change in vaginal discharge (yellow, green, profuse, odorous), urinary frequency, or dysuria. The cervix and urethra are the most common sites of infection.

Anal manifestations may include itching and irritation, rectal bleeding or diarrhea, and painful defecation. Assess the mouth for a reddened throat, ulcerated lips, tender gingivae, and blisters in the throat. Fig. 76-3 shows common sites of gonococcal infections.

Inspect for discharge from the urethra, cervix, and rectum. Palpation of the lower abdomen may reveal tenderness. Fever may be present, especially if an ascending or systemic infection has occurred. Gonorrheal infections that have become systemic may develop quickly. Manifestations of disseminated gonococcal infection (DGI) include fever, chills, skin lesions on distal extremities, and joint pain, with or without swelling, heat, or redness.

Clinical symptoms of gonorrhea can resemble those of chlamydia infection and therefore need to be differentiated. *Molecular testing for N. gonorrhoeae is currently the most widely used standard and preferred over cultures or*

microscopic examinations. These nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) are highly sensitive and specific. During examination, providers can swab the male urethra or female cervix to obtain specimens. These specimens can be cultured on chocolate agar (gold standard), viewed microscopically after Gram staining (male urethral specimens only), or placed in medium for molecular testing. Patient-collected urine or vaginal swabs can also be used to diagnose both gonorrhea and chlamydia infections, allowing for screening without a full examination.

In men, gonorrhea can be diagnosed by Gram staining smears of urethral discharge that has been swabbed onto a glass slide, dried, and stained. The presence of gram-negative diplococci is diagnostic for gonococcal urethritis in men. If the man has symptoms, Gram stains are very sensitive and specific for gonorrhea and allow for immediate diagnosis and treatment in the clinical setting. Without symptoms, Gram stains are less reliable. Smears do not confirm the diagnosis in women because the female genital tract normally harbors organisms that resemble *N. gonorrhoeae*.

All patients with gonorrhea should be tested for HPV, syphilis, chlamydia, hepatitis B and hepatitis C, and HIV infection because they may have been exposed to these STDs as well. Sexual partners who have been exposed in the past 30 days should be examined, and specimens should be obtained.

INTERVENTIONS

Uncomplicated gonorrhea is treated with antibiotics. Chlamydia infections are frequently found in patients with gonorrhea. Patients treated for gonorrhea should also be managed with drugs that treat chlamydia infections.

Drug Therapy

Drug therapy recommended by the CDC is ceftriaxone (Rocephin) 250 mg IM or cefixime (Suprax) 400 mg orally in a single dose, *plus* azithromycin (Zithromax) 1 g orally in a single dose or doxycycline (Monodox, Doxy-Caps, Doxycine) 100 mg orally twice daily for 1 week to treat a presumed co-infection with *Chlamydia*, unless a negative *Chlamydia* result has been obtained. These combinations seem to be effective for all mucosal gonorrheal infections; treatment failure is rare (CDC, 2010a). The CDC recommends the ceftriaxone injection because the treatment is given at the point of care, which increases drug adherence and is slightly more effective than cefixime (CDC, 2010a). A test of cure is not required. Advise the patient to return for a follow-up examination if symptoms persist after treatment. Re-infection is often the cause of these symptoms.

Sexual partners must be treated, not only evaluated, to prevent re-infection. Sexual partners also need to receive education about the infection.

A newer approach to preventing recurrence or persistent infections of STDs is expedited partner therapy (EPT), which is providing patients with newly diagnosed gonorrhea or other STD treatment for their partners. Patients are given the antibiotic or a prescription with specific instructions for administration to their partners without direct evaluation by a health care provider (CDC, 2010a). Legal questions have arisen about whether a drug can be prescribed without a relationship between the health care provider and the patient (CDC, 2010e). When patients have been given the drug to give to their partner, rates of infection have decreased and

more partners have reported receiving treatment (Trelle et al., 2007).

Gonorrhea infection can become disseminated (DGI) requiring hospitalization and IV or IM ceftriaxone 1 g every 24 hours. If symptoms resolve within 24 to 48 hours, the patient may be discharged to home to continue oral antibiotic therapy (cefixime 400 mg twice a day) for at least a week (CDC, 2010a).

Meningitis and endocarditis occur rarely. Hospitalization of patients with these problems is recommended for the initial treatment. Treatment includes IV antibiotic therapy, usually ceftriaxone 1 to 2 g every 12 hours. If meningitis or endocarditis is present, therapy is continued for 10 to 14 days for meningitis and at least 4 weeks for endocarditis. Collaborate with the infectious disease specialist for management of these infections.

Teaching for Self-Management

Teach the patient about transmission and treatment of gonorrhea. Patients must understand the need for drugs to be taken for the prescribed time for maximum effectiveness and to prevent drug resistance. Discuss the possibility of re-infection, including the risk for pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), and resultant problems such as ectopic pregnancy, infertility, and chronic pelvic pain. Instruct patients to cease sexual activity until the antibiotic therapy is completed and they no longer have symptoms; but if abstinence is not possible, urge men and women to use condoms. Explain that gonorrhea is a *reportable disease*.

When a diagnosis of gonorrhea is made, patients may have feelings of fear or guilt. They may be concerned that they have contracted other STDs or see the disease as a punishment for promiscuity or “unnatural” sex acts. They may believe that



DECISION-MAKING CHALLENGE

Patient-Centered Care; Teamwork and Collaboration

A 49-year-old woman develops a heavy greenish vaginal discharge with a very foul odor. She visits her gynecologist, who tells her that she has gonorrhea. When the patient learns how the infection is transmitted, she tells her physician that she has not “slept with any other man” since she was married 29 years ago and that the diagnosis cannot be correct. When her husband returns home from work, she confronts him about her diagnosis. He initially denies that he has had sex with any other woman but then confesses that he has been “seeing” a young woman who works at his store for about 3 months. He admits that he has symptoms of the infection, too. The patient is very upset and returns to her gynecologist in 1 week. Her husband refuses to come with her. She tells you, the office nurse, that she just can’t understand how her husband can be so unfaithful after all the years they have had together. She is considering filing for a divorce, but she is worried about her three children, ranging in age from 28 to 15.

1. What is the most appropriate way for you to respond to the patient at this time?
2. You tell the patient that her husband and the young woman involved need to be treated for the disease, and suggest expedited partner therapy. How will you explain this treatment method?
3. The patient tells you that she “never wants to meet that slut who stole my husband.” How will you respond to this statement?
4. What emotional feelings is this patient experiencing? Develop a collaborative plan of care for this patient to ensure that desired patient and family outcomes will be met.

acquiring gonorrhea (or any STD) is a risk that they must take to pursue their desired lifestyle. Such feelings can impair relationships with sexual partners. Encourage patients to express their feelings during assessments and teaching sessions. Ensuring privacy for teaching and maintaining confidentiality of medical records are essential in meeting psychosocial needs.

CHLAMYDIA INFECTION

Pathophysiology

Chlamydia trachomatis is an intracellular bacterium and the causative agent of genital chlamydia infections. It invades the epithelial tissues in the reproductive tract. The incubation period ranges from 1 to 3 weeks, but the pathogen may be present in the genital tract for months without producing symptoms (Stamm, 2008a).

C. trachomatis is reportable to local health departments in all states. Diagnosed cases continue to increase yearly, which reflects more sensitive screening tests and increased public health efforts to screen high-risk people. Each year there are an estimated 2.8 million new cases in the United States (CDC, 2009). African-American women between 16 and 24 years of age are at the highest risk for the disease (CDC, 2009).

The rate of chlamydia infections in men has increased faster than the rate of increase in women (CDC, 2009). In women, 20% to 40% of those infected develop pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), discussed later in this chapter on p. 1663.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

Obtain a complete history including medical, menstrual, and sexual information (see Chart 76-1). In particular, ask about:

- Presence of symptoms, including vaginal or urethral discharge, **dysuria** (painful urination), pelvic pain, irregular bleeding
- Any history of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)
- Whether sexual partners have had symptoms or a history of STDs
- Whether patient or partner has had unprotected intercourse

Many women with chlamydia infections are asymptomatic. For men and women, their history may reveal only risk factors associated with *C. trachomatis*, such as new or multiple sexual partners, age younger than 26 years and female, or a male having sex with a male (MSM). As with all interviews concerning sexual behavior, use a nonjudgmental approach and provide privacy and confidentiality.

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

For men, ask about dysuria, frequent urination, and a mucoid discharge that is more watery and less copious than a gonorrheal discharge. *These manifestations indicate urethritis, the main symptom of chlamydia infection in men.* Some men have the discharge only in the morning on arising. Complications include epididymitis, prostatitis, infertility, and Reiter's syndrome, a type of connective tissue disease discussed in Chapter 20.

In contrast, many women have no symptoms. Those with symptoms have a mucopurulent cervicitis with a change in vaginal discharge, easily induced cervical bleeding presenting as spotting or bleeding between menses, urinary frequency, and abdominal discomfort or pain. The vaginal discharge typically becomes yellow and more opaque. Complications of infection with *C. trachomatis* include salpingitis (inflammation of the fallopian tubes), PID, ectopic pregnancy, and infertility. These health problems are discussed in detail in maternal-child textbooks.

Diagnosis is made by sampling cells from the endocervix, urethra, or both, easily obtained with a swab. Because chlamydiae can reproduce only inside cells, host cells that harbor the organism (or parts of it) are required in the sample. Diagnosis is made definitively with a tissue culture (gold standard) obtained from the cervical os during the female pelvic examination or male urethral examination.

As with gonorrhea, the nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) and gene amplification tests (ligand chain reaction [LCR] and polymerase chain reaction [PCR] transcription-mediated amplification) are the newest methods of detecting *Chlamydia* in endocervical samples, urethral swabs, and urine. Samples can be obtained by swab by the examining clinician or by a patient-collected urine specimen. This urine self-collection method has been found to be more acceptable and highly sensitive and specific. The acceptability of urine testing has resulted in increased identification of asymptomatic people.

All sexually active women 25 years old or younger and all women older than 25 years with new or multiple partners should be screened annually for *Chlamydia* (CDC, 2010a). There is no recommendation for or against screening asymptomatic men, regardless of age or other risk, and low-risk asymptomatic women.

INTERVENTIONS

The treatment of choice for chlamydia infections is azithromycin (Zithromax) 1 g orally in a single dose or doxycycline (Monodox, Doxy-Caps, Doxycin) 100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days. The one-dose course, although more expensive, is preferred because of the ease in completing the treatment. Drugs that are prescribed for patients with allergies to these drugs include erythromycin, ofloxacin, and levofloxacin, all for 7 days (CDC, 2010a).

Giving the drug while the patient is in the health care agency helps ensure adherence. Sexual partners should be treated and tested for other STDs. **Expedited partner therapy (EPT)**, or patient-delivered partner therapy, shows signs of reducing chlamydia infection rates (CDC, 2010a).

Patient and partner education is an important nursing intervention. Explain:

- The mode of disease transmission
- The incubation period
- Manifestations, including the high possibility of asymptomatic infections
- Treatment of infection with antibiotics
- The need for abstinence from sexual intercourse until the patient and partner(s) have completed treatment (7 days from the start of treatment, including a single-dose regimen)
- No test of cure is required, but all women should be re-screened for re-infection 3 to 12 months after

treatment because of the high risk for PID. There is less evidence of the need for re-screening of treated men, but it should be considered

- The need to return for evaluation if symptoms recur or new symptoms develop (most recurrences are re-infections from a new or untreated partner)
- Possible complications of untreated or inadequately treated infection, such as PID, ectopic pregnancy, or infertility

OTHER GYNECOLOGIC CONDITIONS

PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE

Pathophysiology

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is a complex infectious process in which organisms from the lower genital tract migrate from the endocervix upward through the uterine cavity into the fallopian tubes. The spread of infection to other organs and tissues of the upper genital tract occurs from direct contact with mucosal surfaces or through the fimbriated ends of the tubes to the ovaries, parametrium, and peritoneal cavity (Fig. 76-4). This may involve one or more pelvic structures, including the uterus, fallopian tubes, and adjacent pelvic structures. The most common site is the fallopian tube. Resulting infections include:

- Endometritis (infection of the endometrial cavity)
- Salpingitis (inflammation of the fallopian tubes)
- Oophoritis (ovarian infection)
- Parametritis (infection of the parametrium)
- Peritonitis (infection of the peritoneal cavity)
- Tubal or tubo-ovarian abscess

Many different pathogens are linked to PID. Sexually transmitted organisms are most often responsible, especially *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. Organisms that

are part of the vaginal flora can also cause PID. In addition, *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Escherichia coli*, and other aerobic and anaerobic organisms have been identified in patients with PID. There is increasing evidence that the anaerobes involved in bacterial vaginosis may have a role in the development of PID and increase the risk for infection with HIV, *N. gonorrhoea*, *C. trachomatis*, and HSV (CDC, 2010a).

The organisms invade the pelvis from an infection ascending from the vagina or cervix. Infections are spread during sexual intercourse, during childbirth (including the postpartum period), and after abortion. Rarely do they result from transperitoneal spread from a ruptured appendix or intra-abdominal abscess. *Sepsis and death can occur, especially if treatment is delayed or inadequate.*

Many practitioners use the terms *PID* and *salpingitis* as equal terms for acute infections. PID is one of the leading causes of infertility and is related to the increase in the number of ectopic pregnancies reported in the United States. It is an acute syndrome resulting in tenderness in the tubes and ovaries (adnexa) and low, dull abdominal pain. However, many women experience only mild discomfort or menstrual irregularity. Others experience no symptoms at all—so-called “silent” or “subclinical” PID. The diagnosis and treatment of this disease are challenging. Irreversible scarring or stricture, causing sterility, may occur before it is diagnosed.

Because of variations in patient manifestations, the diagnosis is difficult because women may have subtle symptoms not typical of the disease. Delay in diagnosis and treatment may add to complications of PID in the upper genital tract. The disease is usually diagnosed on the basis of clinical signs and symptoms. The **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)** (2010d) has set minimum criteria for diagnosis, but no laboratory or physical examination techniques alone are both sensitive and specific (Table 76-4).

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

ASSESSMENT

History

Obtain a complete medical, family, menstrual, obstetric, and sexual history, including a history of previous episodes of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) or other sexually transmitted diseases (see Chart 76-1). Assess for contraceptive use, a history of reproductive surgery, and other risk factors previously identified. Ask the patient if sexual abuse has occurred. If so, encourage her to discuss what happened and whether she was seen by a health care provider.

Many of the same factors that place women at risk for STDs also place them at risk for PID. Risk factors for sexually active women include:

- Age younger than 26 years
- Multiple sexual partners
- Intrauterine device (IUD) placed within the previous 3 weeks
- Smoking
- A history of PID
- Chlamydial or gonococcal infection; bacterial vaginosis
- A history of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)

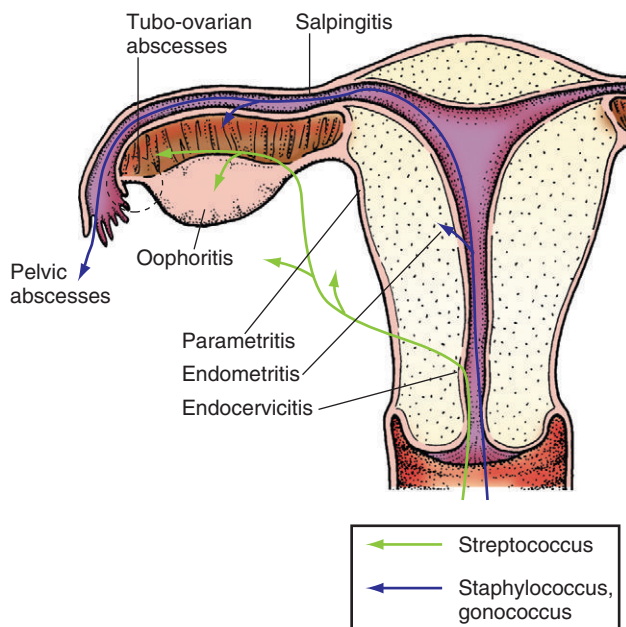


FIG. 76-4 The spread of pelvic inflammatory disease.

TABLE 76-4 DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA FOR PELVIC INFLAMMATORY DISEASE**Minimum Criteria for Initiating Empiric Treatment for Pelvic Inflammatory Disease**

- Sexually active woman and at risk for STDs
- Pelvic or lower abdominal pain
- No other cause for illness can be found (e.g., appendicitis)

and

- Uterine tenderness or
- Adnexal tenderness or
- Cervical motion tenderness (chandelier sign)

Additional Criteria to Increase the Specificity of the Diagnosis of PID

- Oral temperature $>101^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($>38.3^{\circ}\text{C}$)
- Abnormal cervical or vaginal mucopurulent discharge
- Presence of white blood cells on saline microscopy of vaginal secretions
- Elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- Elevated C-reactive protein
- Laboratory documentation of cervical infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*

Definitive Criteria for Diagnosing PID, Warranted in Selected Cases

- Histopathologic evidence of endometritis on endometrial biopsy
- Transvaginal sonography or magnetic resonance imaging techniques showing thickened fluid-filled tubes with or without free pelvic fluid or tubo-ovarian complex, or Doppler studies suggesting pelvic infection
- Laparoscopic abnormalities consistent with PID

Modified from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010a). Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(RR-12), 63-64.

PID, Pelvic inflammatory disease; STDs, sexually transmitted diseases.

Physical Assessment/Clinical Manifestations

One of the most frequent symptoms of PID is lower abdominal pain. Conduct a complete pain assessment. Other symptoms include irregular vaginal bleeding (spotting or bleeding between periods), dysuria (painful urination), an increase or change in vaginal discharge, dyspareunia (painful sexual intercourse), malaise, fever, and chills.

Observe whether the patient has discomfort with movement. Often the patient has a hunched-over gait to protect her abdomen. She may find it difficult to independently get on the examination table or stretcher. Assess for lower abdominal tenderness, possibly with rigidity or rebound tenderness. A pelvic examination by the health care provider may reveal yellow or green cervical discharge and a reddened or friable cervix (a cervix that bleeds easily). Criteria for accurate diagnosis of PID are listed in Table 76-4. The diagnosis of PID is usually based on clinical history, physical examination, and laboratory tests. Imaging studies and laparoscopy are not generally used to make the diagnosis.

Psychosocial Assessment

The woman who has symptoms of PID is usually anxious and fearful of the examination and unknown diagnosis. She may need much reassurance and support during the physical examination because her abdomen may be very tender or painful. Explain what is taking place to help promote comfort during the examination.

Because PID is often associated with an STD, the woman may feel embarrassed or uncomfortable discussing her

symptoms or history. Use a nonjudgmental approach, and encourage the patient to express her feelings and concerns. The patient's ability to follow through with the treatment plan is essential in deciding whether ambulatory care treatment is appropriate.

Laboratory Assessment

The health care provider obtains specimens from the cervix, urethra, and rectum to determine the presence of *N. gonorrhoeae* or *C. trachomatis*. The white blood cell (WBC) count, erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and C-reactive protein may be elevated but are not specific for PID. A sensitive test that detects human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) in urine or blood should be performed to determine whether the patient is pregnant. Microscopic examination of vaginal discharge should be done to evaluate for the presence of more than 10 WBCs per high-power field, which correlates with infection. Bacterial vaginosis can be found by observing the diagnostic "clue" cells with microscopic examination of vaginal discharge.

Other Diagnostic Assessment

Abdominal ultrasonography may be used to determine the presence of appendicitis and tubo-ovarian abscesses that need to be ruled out when the diagnosis of PID is made. Transvaginal ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) are used in some cases to detect tubal wall thickening, fluid-filled tubes, and free pelvic fluid or a tubo-ovarian abscess, all associated with PID. Endometrial biopsy also has been used to increase the accuracy of the diagnosis.

ANALYSIS

The priority problem for patients with pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) is infection related to invasion of pelvic organs by pathogens.

PLANNING AND IMPLEMENTATION**Managing Infection**

Planning: Expected Outcomes. The patient with PID is expected to have her infection resolved and be free of abdominal pain.

Interventions. Patient-centered collaborative care includes antibiotic therapy, self-management measures, and surgical intervention (rarely).

Uncomplicated PID is usually treated on an ambulatory care basis. The CDC (2010d) recommends hospitalization for PID if the patient:

- Has appendicitis, ectopic pregnancy, or other surgical emergency that has not been excluded
- Is pregnant
- Does not respond to oral antibiotic therapy
- Is unable to follow or tolerate an outpatient regimen
- Has severe illness, nausea and vomiting, or high fever
- Has a tubo-ovarian abscess

There are no recommendations about whether HIV-infected women should be hospitalized. Assess the ability of high-risk women for self-management at home. The clinical patient's medical condition and availability of support systems are important considerations for home care. If the infection has not responded to treatment, the patient may need to be hospitalized for IV antibiotic therapy and further evaluation.

The CDC recommends oral and/or parenteral antibiotics for PID (CDC, 2010d). Drug therapy is required for 14 days.

If the woman has not responded to oral antibiotics, she is hospitalized for IV antibiotic therapy and further evaluation. Inpatient therapy involves a combination of several IV antibiotics until the woman shows signs of improvement (e.g., decreased pelvic tenderness for at least 24 hours). Then oral antibiotics are continued until the course of treatment has lasted 14 days.

Antibiotic therapy relieves pain by decreasing the inflammation caused by infection. Other pain relief measures include taking mild analgesics and applying heat to the lower abdomen or back. *Teach the patient to maintain rest in a semi-Fowler's position to promote gravity drainage of the infection that may help relieve pain.*

! NURSING SAFETY PRIORITY

Action Alert

Instruct women who are being treated for PID as outpatients to avoid sexual intercourse and to check their temperature twice a day. Teach them to report an increase in temperature to their health care provider. Remind them to be seen by the health care provider within 72 hours from starting the antibiotics and then 1 and 2 weeks from the time of the initial diagnosis.

In a small number of patients, the pain and tenderness may not be relieved by antibiotic therapy. The surgeon may perform a laparoscopy to remove an abscess through one or more sub-umbilical incisions to provide better access to the fallopian tubes. Before surgery, provide information about hospital routines and procedures. After surgery, the care of the woman with PID is similar to that of any patient after laparoscopic abdominal surgery. One difference is that she may have a wound drain for drainage of abscess fluid that may not have been completely removed during surgery. Observe, measure, and record wound drainage every 4 to 8 hours as requested.

Community-Based Care

Collaborate with the case manager or discharge planner before the woman is discharged to home. Teach the patient with PID to have regular follow-up with her health care provider to assess for complications and assess that the infection has resolved. The ongoing role of the nurse is to assess for any continued risk for contracting PID again, signs of persistent or recurrent infection, and education to prevent exposure to and infection with all STDs (e.g., decrease the number of partners, consistently use condoms). Establish an atmosphere of trust that encourages the woman to return frequently, if needed, for education or reassurance.

Home Care Management

Parenteral antibiotic therapy may be given at home, but usually the health care provider changes the treatment regimen to oral antibiotics before hospital discharge.

Teaching for Self-Management

Patient teaching focuses on providing information about PID, identifying recurrences (persistent pelvic pain, dysmenorrhea, low backache, fever), and urging early and complete self-management to prevent complications. Review information for oral antibiotic therapy (Chart 76-4).

Counsel the patient to contact her sexual partner(s) for examination and treatment. Partners should be treated for

CHART 76-4 PATIENT AND FAMILY EDUCATION: PREPARING FOR SELF-MANAGEMENT

Oral Antibiotic Therapy for Sexually Transmitted Diseases

- Take your medicine for the number of times a day it is prescribed and until it is completed.
- Your sexual partner must be treated if you have a sexually transmitted disease (STD). Expedited partner therapy is one way to ensure partners are treated.
- Be sure to return for your follow-up appointment after completing your antibiotic treatment.
- Call if you have any questions or concerns.
- Do not have sex until after you and your partner complete your antibiotic therapy. This should be at least 7 days, even if treatment is one dose.
- Drink at least 8 to 10 glasses of fluid a day while taking your antibiotics.
- Do not take antacids containing calcium, magnesium, or aluminum, such as Tums, Maalox, or Mylanta, with your antibiotics. They may decrease the effectiveness of the antibiotic.
- Take your antibiotics on an empty stomach unless your health care provider instructs you to take them with food.
- If you are taking oral contraceptives, you should discuss with your health care provider whether the antibiotics will decrease the effectiveness of your pills.

gonorrhea and chlamydia infection regardless of their lack of symptoms. Remind the patient about follow-up care, and counsel her about the complications that can occur after an episode of PID. These problems include increased risk for recurrence, ectopic pregnancy, and infertility. Chronic pelvic pain may also develop.

Discuss contraception and the patient's need or desire for it. This discussion includes methods that may decrease the risk for future episodes of PID, such as the use of barrier methods (e.g., condom). Help the patient understand lifestyle factors that increase the risk for recurrent episodes, including sexual intercourse with multiple partners. Douching has also been suggested as a risk behavior for development of PID and/or infection with *Chlamydia* or *N. gonorrhea*.

Psychosocial concerns may require teaching and counseling. A patient who has PID may exhibit a variety of feelings (guilt, disgust, anger) about having a condition that may have been transmitted to her sexually. These feelings may affect her relationship with significant others and future sexual relationships. She may also have concerns about future fertility if PID has damaged or scarred the fallopian tubes and other reproductive organs. Provide nonjudgmental emotional support, and allow time for the woman to discuss her feelings.

? NCLEX EXAMINATION CHALLENGE

Physiological Integrity

A client is being treated with oral antibiotics in the clinic for pelvic inflammatory disease. Which of these changes will the nurse teach the client to report immediately to the health care provider?

- Increased anxiety that her partner may "catch" the disease
- Mild nausea after taking some doses of the antibiotic
- One or two diarrheal stools every day since taking the antibiotic
- Temperature of 102° F after 3 days of taking the antibiotic

Health Care Resources

If infertility is a result of PID, the patient may need referral to a clinic specializing in infertility treatment and counseling. She can also contact support groups for infertile couples, which exist in many local communities.

The costs of antibiotics for care of patients with PID and other STDs may be a concern for those who are uninsured, underinsured, or impoverished. In collaboration with the case manager or social worker, help locate community resources for free or discounted drugs for women who cannot afford them. Ask the patient directly if she has money to pay for the drug therapy including her insurance co-pay, regardless of her apparent financial status.

EVALUATION: OUTCOMES

Evaluate the care of the patient with PID based on the identified priority patient problem. The expected outcomes include that the patient should:

- Show evidence that the infection has resolved
- Report or demonstrate that pain is relieved or reduced and that she feels more comfortable

VAGINAL INFECTIONS

Vaginal infection associated with sexual activity may produce vaginal discharge or vulvar irritation. The common causes of vaginal infection that can be but are not always sexually transmitted include:

- *Trichomonas vaginalis*
- *Candida*, primarily *C. albicans*
- Bacteria that produce bacterial vaginosis, including *Gardnerella vaginalis*, *Mycoplasma hominis* and anaerobes including *Prevotella* and *Mobiluncus* species

Men can also get these infections but are not always symptomatic.

Trichomoniasis and candida infections are limited to the vagina. They can be very irritating and bothersome but do not cause any long-term problems. The partner must also be treated for *trichomoniasis* if the infection is to be resolved. *Candidiasis* does not usually require partner treatment. However, if the male partner is symptomatic (irritation of the genital skin), treatment is indicated. It is important to remember that *Candida* is a normal flora on the skin and can easily be relocated to the vagina. Although it can be transmitted sexually, candidiasis occurs among women who are not sexually active. Also, antibiotics that change the normal flora of the vagina contribute to infection.

Bacterial vaginosis (BV) has been implicated in upper genital tract infections. Women undergoing surgery of the upper genital tract should be evaluated and treated if BV is found. [Chapter 74](#) describes the management of each of these infections.

OTHER SEXUALLY TRANSMITTED DISEASES

Less common diseases in the United States that are transmitted by sexual contact are lymphogranuloma venereum, chancroid, and granuloma inguinale. Like syphilis, all of these diseases are associated with ulcers but they are seen most often in less affluent countries. As newcomers migrate into the United States, these STDs may become more common. Ask patients suspected of these infections whether they have traveled out of the United States and whether they had sexual contact with people who live in other countries.

NURSING CONCEPT REVIEW

What might you NOTICE if the patient has altered sexuality as a result of a sexually transmitted disease (STD)?

- Report of heavy and abnormal vaginal discharge
- Report of urinary frequency or dysuria
- Ulcers, blisters, or warts in the genital area
- Low-grade fever
- Report of malaise
- Report of vaginal, penile, or anal itching or irritation
- Report of abdominal pain (pelvic inflammatory disease [PID])
- Anxious behavior

What should you INTERPRET and how should you RESPOND to a patient with altered sexuality as a result of STD?

Perform and interpret focused physical assessment, including:

- Vital signs
- Pain intensity and quality
- Skin inspection (genital area)

Respond by:

- Reporting and documenting all findings

- Helping patient with abdominal pain into a semi-Fowler's position
- Providing pain control measures
- Teaching patient about prescribed antibiotic or antiviral therapy
- Teaching patient to avoid sexual intercourse while being treated
- Teaching patient the importance of treating all sexual partners
- Teaching patient and partner(s) about safe sex practices
- Providing support and listening to the patient and partner(s) without judgment

On what should you REFLECT?

- Examine your feelings about patients who make sexual choices different from your own.
- Think about what else you could do to help patients meet their physical and emotional needs during this time.
- Determine what other health teaching may be needed for this patient.
- Monitor the patient's response to pain control interventions.

GET READY FOR THE NCLEX® EXAMINATION!**KEY POINTS**

Review these Key Points for each NCLEX Examination Client Needs Category.

Safe and Effective Care Environment

- Teach patients to not have sexual intercourse during their treatment for sexually transmitted disease (STD).
- Maintain patient and partner confidentiality and privacy at all times.
- Use gloves when examining the patient's genitalia or skin lesions.

Health Promotion and Maintenance

- Teach the patient about the availability of expedited partner treatment; be sure that all doses of the drug are taken by both the patient and the partner.
- Encourage all patients who are sexually active to use condoms during sexual intimacy (see [Chart 76-3](#)).
- Urge sexually active people, especially those younger than 25 years or those older than 25 years if at high risk, to have STD screenings at least annually.

Psychosocial Integrity

- Treat all patients, regardless of diagnosis, with respect.

- Provide privacy for patients undergoing examination or testing for STDs.
- Respect the sexual choices of all patients.
- Allow the patient the opportunity to express fear or anxiety regarding a diagnosis of STD.
- Refer patients newly diagnosed with an STD to local resources and support groups as needed based on their response.
- Encourage all patients who have an STD to inform their sexual partner(s) of their health status.

Physiological Integrity

- Encourage patients to adhere to their anti-infective drug regimen (see [Chart 76-4](#)).
- Teach patients the expected side effects and possible adverse reactions to prescribed drugs.
- Assess patients with STD using the guidelines in [Chart 76-1](#).
- Teach patients about the complications of STD using the information in [Table 76-2](#).
- Be aware that PID is diagnosed based on the criteria in [Table 76-4](#).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Asterisk indicates a classic or definitive work on this subject.

Chapter 1

- *Academy of Medical-Surgical Nursing (AMSN). (2007). *Scope and standards of medical-surgical nursing practice* (4th ed.). Pitman, NJ: Anthony J. Janetti.
- Alfaro-LeFevre, R. (2008). *Critical thinking and clinical judgment: A practical approach to outcome-focused thinking* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Alfaro-LeFevre, R. (2010). *Applying the nursing process: A tool for critical thinking* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Benner, P. E., Malloch, K., & Sheets, V. (2010). *Nursing pathways for patient safety*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Bogert, S., Ferrell, C., & Rutledge, D. N. (2010). Experience with family activation of rapid response teams. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19, 215-222.
- Deno, K., & Schaper, J. (2011). Glucose control in the medical patient: Bolus insulin dosing compared to basal-bolus dosing. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(5), 217-222, 234.
- Donaldson, N., Shapiro, S., Scott, M., Foley, M., & Spetz, J. (2009). Leading successful rapid response teams: A multi-site implementation evaluation. *Journal of Nursing Administration*, 39, 176-181.
- Fisher, J. A., & Monahan, T. (2008). Tracking the social dimensions of RFID systems in hospitals. *International Journal of Medical Informatics*, 77, 176-183.
- Fowler, M. D. M. (2008). *Guide to the code of ethics for nurses: Interpretation and application*. Washington, DC: American Nurses Association.
- Gasarian, P. K., Henneman, E. A., & Chandler, G. E. (2010). Nurse decision making in the pre-arrest period. *Clinical Nursing Research*, 19, 21-37.
- *Institute for Healthcare Improvement. (2005). Protecting 5 million lives from harm. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from www.ihl.org.
- *Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2000). *To err is human: Building a safer health care system*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- *Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2003). *Health professions education: A bridge to quality*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Joint Commission Center for Transforming Healthcare. (2010). Joint Commission Center for Transforming Healthcare tackles miscommunication among caregivers. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from www.centerfortransforminghealthcare.org.
- Melnyk, B. M., & Fineout-Overholt, E. (2011). *Evidence-based practice in nursing and healthcare* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- *Morse, K. J., Warshawsky, D., Moore, J. M., & Pecora, D. C. (2007). Rapid response teams: Reducers of death. *Nursing2007, Spring*(Suppl.), 2-8.
- *National Council of State Boards of Nursing. (1995). Delegation: Concepts and decision making process. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from www.ncsbn.org.
- Quality and Safety Education for Nurses. (2011). Competency KSAs (pre-licensure). Retrieved July 2, 2011, from www.qsen.org.
- *Schroeder, S. J. (2006). Picking up the PACE: A new template for shift report. *Nursing2006*, 36(10), 22-23.

- The Joint Commission. (2011). Speak Up initiatives: The Joint Commission's award-winning patient safety program. Retrieved April 6, 2011 from <http://www.jointcommission.org/speakup.aspx>.
- Tzeng, H.-M. & Yin, C.-Y. (2010). Nurses response time to call lights and fall occurrences. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(5), 266-272.
- Yoder-Wise, P. S. (2011). *Leading and managing in nursing* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 2

- Albert, N. M., Gillinov, A. M., Lytle, B. W., Feng, J., Cwynar, R., & Blackstone, E. H. (2009). A randomized trial of massage therapy after heart surgery. *Heart and Lung*, 38(6), 480-490.
- Chan, M. F., Chan, E. A., Mok, E., & Tse, F. Y. (2009). Effect of music on depression levels and physiological responses in community-based older adults. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing*, 18(4), 285-294.
- Engberg, S., Cohen, S., & Sereika, S. M. (2009). The efficacy of acupuncture in treating urge and mixed incontinence in women: A pilot study. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy, and Incontinence Nursing*, 36(6), 661-670.
- Good, M., Albert, J. M., Anderson, G. C., Wotman, S., Cong, X., Lane, D., et al. (2010). Supplementing relaxation and music for pain after surgery. *Nursing Research*, 59(4), 259-269.
- Holliday-Welsh, D. M., Gessert, C. E., & Renier, C. M. (2009). Massage in the management of agitation in nursing home residents with cognitive impairment. *Geriatric Nursing*, 30(2), 108-117.
- Kale-Pradhan, P., Jassal, H. K., & Wilhelm, S. M. (2010). Role of *Lactobacillus* in the prevention of antibiotic-associated diarrhea: A meta-analysis. *Pharmacotherapy*, 30, 119-126.
- Klemm, P., Waddington, C., Bradley, E., Bucher, L., Collins, M., Lyons, D. L., et al. (2010). Unleashing animal-assisted therapy. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 12-13.
- *Krieger, D. (1976). Healing by laying on of hands as facilitators of bioenergetic change: The response of in-vivo hemoglobin. *Psychoenergetic Systems*, 1, 121-129.
- Lee, L. Y., Lee, D. T., & Woo, J. (2009). Tai chi and health-related quality of life in nursing home residents. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 41(1), 35-43.
- *Lu, Y. (2003). Herb use in critical care: What to watch for. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 15(3), 313-319.
- Moquin, B., Blackman, M. R., Mitty, E., & Flores, S. (2009). Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM). *Geriatric Nursing*, 30(3), 196-203.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2008). The use of complementary and alternative medicine in the United States. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011a). Acupuncture. Retrieved April 6, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/acupuncture/>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011b). Aromatherapy. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/aromatherapy/>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011c). Ayurvedic medicine. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/ayurvedicmedicine/>.

- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011d). Meditation. Retrieved July 2, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/meditation/>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011e). Probiotics. Retrieved April 6, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/probiotics/>.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). (2011f). Yoga. Retrieved April 6, 2011, from <http://www.nccam.nih.gov/health/yoga/>.
- *Pierce, B. (2007). The use of biofield therapies in cancer care. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(2), 253-258.
- *Richards, T., Johnson, J., Sparks, A., & Emerson, H. (2007). The effect of music therapy on patients' perception and manifestation of pain, anxiety, and patient satisfaction. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(1), 7-15.
- *Snyder, M., & Lindquist, R. (Eds.). (2006). *Complementary/alternative therapies in nursing* (5th ed.). New York: Springer.
- Tsai, P. F., Beck, C., Chang, J. Y., Hagen, J., Kuo, Y. F., Roberson, P. K., et al. (2009). The effect of tai chi on knee osteoarthritis pain in cognitively impaired elders: Pilot study. *Geriatric Nursing*, 30(2), 132-139.
- Wall, M., & Duffy, A. (2010). The effects of music therapy for older people with dementia. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(2), 108-113.
- *Wardell, D. W., & Weymouth, K. F. (2004). Review of studies of Healing Touch. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 36, 147-154.
- Zarowitz, B. J. (2010). Complementary and alternative medicines: Clinical pearls for commonly used dietary supplements. *Geriatric Nursing*, 31(4), 281-287.
- ### Chapter 3
- Abdallah, L. M., Remington, R., Melillo, K. D., & Flanagan, J. (2008). Using antipsychotic drugs safely in older patients. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 28-31.
- *Cole, C., & Richards, K. (2007). Sleep disruption in older adults. *AJN*, 107(5), 40-48.
- Dacenko-Grave, L., & Holm, K. (2008). Evidence-based practice: A fall prevention program that continues to work. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(4), 223-228.
- *DiMaria-Ghalili, R. A., & Amella, E. (2005). Nutrition in older adults. *AJN*, 105(3), 40-50.
- *Fink, A., Tsai, M. C., Hays, R. D., Moore, A. A., Morton, S. C., Spritzer, K., et al. (2002). Comparing the alcohol-related problems survey (ARPS) to traditional alcohol screening measures in elderly outpatients. *Archives of Gerontology and Geriatrics*, 34(1), 55-78.
- *Forrest, J., Willis, L., Holm, K., Kwon, M. S., Anderson, M. A., & Foreman, M. D. (2007). Recognizing quiet delirium. *AJN*, 107(4), 35-39.
- *Fulmer, T. (2007). How to try this: Fulmer SPICES. *AJN*, 107(10), 40-48.
- Fulmer, T. (2008). How to try this: Elder mistreatment assessment. *AJN*, 108(12), 57-58.
- Gerber, L. (2009). Putting older patients' sleep concerns to rest. *Nursing2009*, 39(4), 60-61.
- Greenawalt, K. L. (2009). How are all those medications affecting your older patient? *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 56hn1-56hn2.
- *Greenberg, S. A. (2007). How to try this: The Geriatric Depression Scale—Short Form. *AJN*, 107(10), 60-69.
- *Hendrich, A. (2007). Predicting patient falls: Using the Hendrich II Fall Risk Model in clinical practice. *AJN*, 107(11), 50-59.
- Janelli, L. M., & Quiones-Ramos, E. (2009). Can an exercise program enhance mood among Hispanic elders? *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(6), 356-360.
- *King, B. D. (2006). Functional decline in hospitalized elders. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(5), 265-270.
- Lee, L. Y., Lee, D. T., & Woo, J. (2010). The psychosocial effect of Tai Chi on nursing home residents. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 19(7-8), 927-938.
- Lyons, D. L., Grimley, S. M., & Snyder, L. (2008). Double trouble: When delirium complicates dementia. *Nursing2008*, 38(9), 48-54.
- McCaffrey, R., Hanson, C., & McCaffrey, W. (2010). Garden walking for depression: A research report. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 24(5), 252-259.
- *Milisen, K., Braes, T., Fick, T. M., & Foreman, M. D. (2006). Cognitive assessment and differentiating the 3 Ds (dementia, depression, delirium). *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 41(1), 1-22.
- Molony, S. L. (2009). Monitoring medication use in older adults. *AJN*, 109(1), 68-78.
- Naegle, M. A. (2008). How to try this: Screening for alcohol use and misuse in older adults. *AJN*, 108(11), 50-56.
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). (2011). Older adults and alcohol problems. Retrieved July 3, 2011, from www.pubs.niaaa.nih.gov/publications/socialworkeducationmodule.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). (2011). Older adults and depression. Retrieved July 3, 2011, from www.nimh.nih.gov/health/topics/depression.
- *Odenheimer, G. L. (2006). Driver safety in older adults: The physician's role in assessing driving skills in older patients. *Geriatrics*, 61(10), 14-21.
- Pagana, P. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Planton, J., & Edlund, B. J. (2010). Strategies for reducing polypharmacy in older adults. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 36(1), 8-12.
- Rocchiccioli, J. T., & Sanford, J. T. (2009). Revisiting geriatric failure to thrive. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(1), 18-24.
- Rogers, C., Keller, C., & Larkey, L. K. (2010). Perceived benefits of meditative movement in older adults. *Geriatric Nursing*, 31(1), 37-51.
- *Rigney, T. S. (2006). Delirium in the hospitalized elder and recommendations for practice. *Geriatric Nursing*, 27(3), 151-157.
- Sendelbach, S., & Guthrie, P. F. (2009). Evidence-based guideline—Acute confusion/delirium: Identification, assessment, treatment, and prevention. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(11), 11-17.
- Sweeny, S. J., Bridges, E. J., Wild, L. M., & Sayre, C. A. (2008). Care of the patient with delirium. *AJN*, 108(5), 72CC-72GG.
- Tseng, H. M., & Yin, C.-Y. (2010). Nurses response time to call lights and fall occurrences. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(5), 266-272.
- Volkert, D., Saegitz, C., Gueldenzoph, H., Sieber, C. C., & Stehle, P. (2010). Underdiagnosed malnutrition and nutrition-related problems in geriatric patients. *Journal of Nutrition, Health and Aging*, 14(5), 387-392.
- Weeks, L. E., Campbell, B., Graham, H., Chircop, A., & Sheppard-LeMoine, D. (2008). Participation in physical activity: Influences reported by seniors in the community and long-term care facilities. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 34(7), 36-43.

- Weierbach, F. M., & Click, D. F. (2009). Community resources for older adults with chronic illness. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 23(6), 355-360.
- Williams, K. N., & Kemper, S. (2010). Interventions to reduce cognitive decline in aging. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, 48(5), 42-51.
- Wooten, A. C. (2010). An integrative review of Tai Chi research: An alternative form of physical activity to improve balance and prevent falls in older adults. *Orthopedic Nursing*, 29(2), 108-118.

Chapter 4

- Badiaga, S., Raoult, D., & Brouqui, P. (2008). Preventing and controlling emerging and reemerging transmissible diseases in the homeless. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 14(9), 1353-1359.
- *Campinha-Bacote, J. (2003). Many faces: Addressing diversity in health care. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 8(1). Retrieved January 15, 2008, from www.nursingworld.com.
- Drury, L. J. (2008). Increasing competency in the care of homeless patients. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing*, 39(4), 153-154.
- *Giger, J., Davidhizar, R. E., Purnell, L., Harden, J. T., Phillips, J., & Strickland, O., American Academy of Nursing. (2007). American Academy of Nursing Expert Panel Report: Developing cultural competence to eliminate health disparities in ethnic minorities and other vulnerable populations. *Journal of Transcultural Nursing*, 18(2), 95-102.
- Hamilton, C. J., & Mahalik, J. R. (2009). Minority stress, masculinity, and social norms predicting gay men's health risk behaviors. *Journal of Counseling Psychology*, 56(1), 132-138.
- Jenner, C. O. (2010). Transgender primary care. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 22, 403-408.
- Jones, C. A., Perera, A., Chow, M., Ho, I., Nguyen, J., & Davachi, S. (2009). Cardiovascular disease risk among the poor and homeless: What we know so far. *Current Cardiology Review*, 5, 69-77.
- *Leininger, M. (2002). Culture care theory: A major contribution to advance transcultural nursing knowledge and practices. *Journal of Transcultural Nursing*, 13(3), 189-192.
- Mayer, K. H., Bradford, J. B., Makadon, H. J., Stall, R., Goldhammer, H., & Landers, S. (2008). Sexual and gender minority health: What we know and what needs to be done. *American Journal of Public Health*, 98, 989-994.
- *McClung, E., Grosseohme, D. H., & Jacobson, A. F. (2006). Collaborating with chaplains to meet spiritual needs. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(3), 147-156.
- *Muñoz, C., & Hilgenberg, C. (2005). Ethnopharmacology. *AJN*, 105(8), 41-48.
- National Coalition for the Homeless. (2009). How many people experience homelessness? Retrieved April 6, 2011, from http://www.nationalhomeless.org/factsheets/How_Many.html.
- *Pullen, R. L. (2007). Tips for communicating with a patient from another culture. *Nursing2007*, 37(10), 48.
- Purnell, L. D., & Paulanka, B. J. (2008). *Transcultural healthcare: A culturally competent approach* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Davis.
- *Smith, L. S. (2007). Speaking up for medical language interpreters. *Nursing2007*, 37(12), 48-49.
- *U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (USDHHS), Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (2001). *Tracking Healthy People 2010* (2nd ed.). Pittsburgh: U.S. Government Printing Office.

- U.S. Interagency Council on Homelessness. (June 2010). Supplemental document to the Federal Strategic Plan to Prevent and End Homelessness. Retrieved November 15, 2011 from www.usich.gov/resources/uploads/asset_library/BkgrdPap_Community.pdf.
- Weisz, V. K. (2009). Social justice considerations for lesbian and bisexual women's health care. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, and Neonatal Nursing*, 38(1), 81-87.

Chapter 5

- *American Geriatrics Society (AGS). (2002). The management of persistent pain in older persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 50(56), 205-224.
- *American Society for Pain Management Nursing (ASPMN). (2002). *ASPMN position statement: Pain management in patients with addictive disease* (pp. 1-4). Retrieved November 14, 2010, from www.aspmn.org.
- American Society for Pain Management Nursing (ASPMN). (2010). *ASPMN position statement: Use of placebos in pain management (revised)*. Retrieved April 6, 2011, from www.aspmn.org.
- *American Society for Pain Management Nursing and the American Pain Society. (2004). A position statement on the use of "as-needed" range orders for opioid analgesics in the management of acute pain. Retrieved November 10, 2010, from www.aspmn.org.
- Baumann, S. (2009). A nursing approach to pain in older adults. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(2), 77-82.
- Boyd-Seale, D., Wilkie, D. J., Kim, Y. O., Suarez, M. L., Lee, H., Molokie, R., et al. (2010). Pain barriers: Psychometrics of a 13-item questionnaire. *Nursing Research*, 59, 93-101.
- *Cranwell-Bruce, L. (2007). Update on pain management: New methods of opiate delivery. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(5), 333-335.
- *D'Arcy, Y. (2007a). Managing pain in a patient who's drug dependent. *Nursing2007*, 37(3), 37-40.
- *D'Arcy, Y. (2007b). New pain management options: Delivery systems and techniques. *Nursing2007*, 37(2), 26-27.
- D'Arcy, Y. (2009a). Overcoming barriers to pain relief in older adults. *Nursing2009*, 39(10), 32-38.
- D'Arcy, Y. (2009b). Putting pain research into practice. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 58.
- Dobbins, E. H. (2010). Where has all the meperidine gone? *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 65-66.
- Elliott, A. F., & Horgas, A. L. (2009). Effects of an analgesic trial in reducing pain behaviors in community-dwelling older adults with dementia. *Nursing Research*, 58, 140-145.
- Federico, A. (2009). Assessing pain in patients with dementia. *Nursing2009*, 39(12), 64.
- Flaherty, E. (2008). Using pain-rating scales with older adults. *AJN*, 108(6), 40-48.
- Gevirtz, C. (2009). Cannabinoids: An emerging role in pain management? *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 59-60.
- *Herr, K., Coyne, P. J., Key, T., Manworren, R., McCaffery, M., Merkel, S., et al., American Society for Pain Management Nursing. (2006). Pain assessment in the nonverbal patient: Position statement with clinical practice recommendations. *Pain Management Nursing*, 7(2), 44-52.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Lilley, L. L., Collins, S. R., Harrington, S., & Snyder, J. S. (2011). *Pharmacology and the nursing process*. St. Louis: Mosby.

- *McCaffery, M., & Pasero, C. (1999). Harmful effects of unrelieved pain. In M. McCaffery & C. Pasero (Eds.), *Pain: Clinical manual* (2nd ed., pp. 15-34). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1982). *The challenge of pain*. New York: Basic Books.
- Mitchell, A. A., Sapienza-Crawford, A. J., Hanley, K. L., Lokey, K. J., & Wells, L. (2008). Using ziconotide for intrathecal infusions. *Nursing* 2008, 38(12), 19.
- Quality and Safety Education for Nurses. (QSEN). (2011). Competency KSAs (pre-licensure). Retrieved July 3, 2011, from www.qsen.org.
- *van Herk, R., van Dijk, M., Baar, F. P. M., Tibboel, D., & de Wit, R. (2007). Observation scales for pain assessment in older adults with cognitive impairments or communication difficulties. *Nursing Research*, 56(1), 34-43.
- *Wuhrman, E., Cooney, M. F., Dunwoody, C. J., Eksterowicz, N., Merkel, S., Oakes, L. L., American Society for Pain Management Nursing. (2007). Authorized and unauthorized ("PCA by Proxy") dosing of analgesic infusion pumps: Position statement with clinical practice recommendations. *Pain Management Nursing*, 8(1), 4-11.

Chapter 6

- American Association of Colleges of Nursing. (2008). *The essentials of baccalaureate education for nursing practice*. Washington, DC: Author.
- American Nurses Association. (2008). *Essentials of genetic and genomic nursing: Competencies, curricula guidelines, and outcome indicators* (2nd ed.). Silver Springs, MD: Author.
- Ashcraft, P. F., Coleman, E. A., Lange, U., Enderlin, C., & Stewart, C. B. (2007). Obtaining family histories from patients with cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(1), 119-124, 130-134.
- Cashion, A. (2009). The importance of genetics education for undergraduate and graduate nursing programs. *Journal of Nursing Education*, 48(10), 535-536.
- Conley, Y., & Tinkle, M. (2007). The future of genomic nursing research. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 39(1), 17-24.
- Crockett-Maillet, G. (2010). Know the red flags of hereditary cancers. *The Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 35(7), 39-43.
- Feero, G., Guttmacher, E., & Collins, F. (2010). Genomic medicine: An updated primer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 2001-2011.
- Gallo, A., Angst, D., & Knafl, K. (2009). Disclosure of genetic information within families. *AJN*, 109(4), 65-69.
- Greco, K., & Salveson, C. (2009). Identifying genetics and genomics nursing competencies common among published recommendations. *Journal of Nursing Education*, 48(10), 557-565.
- Hamilton, R., & Bowers, B. (2007). The theory of genetic vulnerability: A Roy model exemplar. *Nursing Science Quarterly*, 20(3), 254-265.
- Jenkins, J., & Calzone, K. (2007). Establishing the essential nursing competencies for genetics and genomics. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 39(1), 10-16.
- Kelly, P. (2008). Understanding genomics: No longer an option for gastroenterology nurses. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 31(1), 45-54.
- Kudzma, E., & Carey, E. (2009). Pharmacogenomics: Personalizing drug therapy. *AJN*, 109(10), 50-57.
- Lea, D., Feero, G., & Jenkins, J. (2009). Keeping genetic information confidential: What you should know about the new federal law. *American Nurse Today*, 4(5), 26.

- Lea, D., Skirton, H., Read, C., & Williams, K. (2011). Implications for educating the next generation of nurses on genetics and genomics in the 21st century. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 43(1), 3-12.
- Monsen, R. (2009). *Genetics and ethics in health care*. Silver Springs, MD: American Nurses Association.
- National Coalition for Health Professional Education in Genetics. (2007, September). *Core competencies in genetics for health professionals* (3rd ed.). Retrieved October 2010, from www.nchpeg.org/core/Core_Comps_English2007.pdf.
- National Institutes of Health. (2009). NIH Genetics Home Reference: Your guide to understanding genetics conditions. Retrieved August 2010, from <http://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/>.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Nyrhinen, T., Hietala, M., Puukka, P., & Leino-Kilpi, H. (2007). Privacy and equality in diagnostic genetic testing. *Nursing Ethics*, 14(3), 295-308.
- Pestka, E., Burbank, K., & Junglen, L. (2009). Improving nursing practice with genomics. *Nursing* 2009, 39(12), 50-53.
- *Spahis, J. (2002). Human genetics: Constructing a family pedigree. *AJN*, 102(7), 44-50.

Chapter 7

- American Nurses Association. (2010). *Nursing: Scope and standards of practice* (2nd ed.). Silver Spring, MD: Author.
- Carlson, C. (2009). Use of three evidence-based postoperative pain assessment practices by registered nurses. *Pain Management Nursing*, 10(4), 174-187.
- *Committee on Quality of Health Care in America, Institute of Medicine. (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health care system for the 21st century*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Cullum, N., Ciliska, D., Haynes, R. B., & Marks, S. (2008). *Evidence-based nursing: An introduction*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Decker, S. (2009). Behavioral indicators of postoperative pain in older adults with delirium. *Clinical Nursing Research*, 18(4), 336-347.
- DiCenso, A., Guyatt, G., & Ciliska, D. (2005). *Evidence-based nursing: A guide to clinical practice*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Ervin, N. E. (2002). Evidence-based nursing practice: Are we there yet? *Journal of the New York State Nurses Association*, 33(2), 11-16.
- *Feldt, K. S. (2000). The Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators (CNPI). *Pain Management Nursing*, 1(1), 13-21.
- Fineout-Overholt, E., & Stillwell, S. B. (2011). Asking compelling clinical questions. In B. M. Melnyk & E. Fineout-Overholt (Eds.), *Evidence-based practice in nursing and healthcare: A guide to best practice* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- *Hall, D. (2007). Evaluation of 3 pain assessment tools for use with critically ill adult patients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(3), 309-310.
- Institute of Medicine; Committee on the Health Professions Education Summit. (2003). *Health professions education: A bridge to quality*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Institute of Medicine; Committee on the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation Initiative on the Future of Nursing, at the Institute of Medicine. (2010). *The future of nursing: Leading change, advancing health (Report Brief)*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. Available online at www.nap.edu.
- Langley, G. J., Moen, R. G., Nolan, K. M., Nolan, T. W., Norman, C. L., & Provost, L. P. (2009). *The improvement guide: A practical approach to enhancing organizational performance* (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

- Levin, R. F. (2008). Translating research evidence for WOCN practice—Evidence levels and quality ratings: What do they mean? *WCET Journal*, 28(1), 30-31.
- Levin, R. F. (2009). Evidence-based practice—Implementing practice changes: Walk before you run. *Research and Theory in Nursing Practice*, 23(2), 85-87.
- Levin, R. F., Keefer, J. M., Marren, J., Vetter, M., Lauder, B., & Sobolewski, S. (2010). Evidence-based practice: Merging 2 paradigms. *Journal of Nursing Care Quality*, 25(2), 117-126.
- *Levin, R. F., & Lane, H. T. (2006). Strategies to teach evidence searching: It takes a library. In R. F. Levin & H.R. Feldman (Eds.), *Teaching evidence-based practice in nursing: A guide for academic and clinical settings*. New York: Springer.
- Levin, R. F., Melnyk, B. M., Fineout-Overholt, E., Barnes, M., & Vetter, M. (2011). Fostering evidence-based practice to improve nurse and cost outcomes in a community health setting: A pilot test of the ARCC model. *Nursing Administration Quarterly*, 35(1), 1-13.
- *Levin, R. F., Singleton, J. K., & Jacobs, S. K. (2007). Developing and evaluating clinical practice guidelines: A systematic approach. In E. Capezuti, M. Mezey, T. Fulmer, & D. Zwicker (Eds.), *Evidence-based geriatric nursing protocols* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.
- *Melnyk, B. M., & Fineout-Overholt, E. (2005). *Evidence-based practice in nursing and healthcare: A guide to best practice*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Melnyk, B. M., & Fineout-Overholt, E. (2010). ARCC (Advancing Research and Clinical Practice through Close Collaboration): A model for system-wide implementation and sustainability of evidence-based practice. In J. Rycroft-Malone & T. Bucknall (Eds.), *Models and frameworks for implementing evidence-based practice: Linking evidence to action*. Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Melnyk, B. M., & Fineout-Overholt, E. (2011). *Evidence-based practice in nursing and healthcare: A guide to best practice* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Reavy, K., & Tavernier, S. (2008). Nurses reclaiming ownership of their practice: Implementation of an evidence-based practice model and process. *Journal of Continuing Education in Nursing*, 39(4), 166-172.
- Rycroft-Malone, J., & Bucknall, T. (2010). Using theory and frameworks to facilitate the implementation of evidence into practice. *Worldviews on Evidence-Based Nursing*, 7(2), 57.
- *Sackett, D. L., Straus, S. E., Richardson, W. S., Rosenberg, W., & Haynes, R. B. (2000). *Evidence-based medicine: How to practice and teach EBM* (2nd ed.). Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.
- Stetler, C. B. (2010). Stetler model. In J. Rycroft-Malone & T. Bucknall (Eds.), *Models and frameworks for implementing evidence-based practice: Linking evidence to action*. Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.
- The Joint Commission. (2010). *Approaches to pain management* (2nd ed.). Oakbrook Terrace, IL: Author.
- Titler, M. (2010). Iowa model of evidence-based practice. In J. Rycroft-Malone & T. Bucknall (Eds.), *Models and frameworks for implementing evidence-based practice: Linking evidence to action*. Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Wilding, J., Manias, E., & McCoy, D. (2009). Pain assessment and management in patients after abdominal surgery from PACU to the postoperative unit. *Journal of Perianesthesia Nursing*, 24(4), 233-240.
- Wolosin, R. (2008). Safety and satisfaction: Where are the connections? *Patient Safety & Quality Healthcare*, May/June. Available online at www.psqh.com.
- Worral, P. S., Levin, R. F., & Arsenault, D. C. (2009-2010). Documenting an EBP project: Guidelines for what to include and why. *Journal of the New York State Nurses Association*, 40(2), 12-19.

Chapter 8

- *Association of Rehabilitation Nurses (ARN). (2002). *Practice guidelines for the management of constipation in adults*. Glenview, IL: Author.
- Association of Rehabilitation Nurses (ARN). (2008a). *Standards and scope of rehabilitation nursing practice*. Glenview, IL: Author.
- Association of Rehabilitation Nurses (ARN). (2008b). *The specialty practice of rehabilitation nursing: A core curriculum* (5th ed.). Skokie, IL: Author.
- Coggrave, M. J., & Norton, C. (2010). The need for manual evacuation and oral laxatives in the management of neurogenic bowel dysfunction after spinal cord injury: A randomized controlled trial of a stepwise protocol. *Spinal Cord*, 48(6), 504-510.
- Frisina, P. G., Guellnitz, R., & Alverzo, J. (2010). A time series of falls and injury in the inpatient rehabilitation setting. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 35(4), 141-146, 166.
- *Granger, C. V., & Gresham, G. E. (1984). *Functional assessment in rehabilitation medicine*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins.
- *Lutz, B. J., Chumbler, N. R., & Roland, K. (2007). Care coordination/home telehealth for veterans with stroke and their caregivers: Addressing an unmet need. *Topics in Stroke Rehabilitation*, 14(2), 32-42.
- Nelson, A., Motacki, K., & Menzel, N. (2009). *An illustrated guide to safe patient handling and movement*. New York: Springer.
- Poslawsky, I. E., Schuurmans, M. J., Lindeman, E., & Hafsteinsdottir, T. B. (2010). A systematic review of nursing rehabilitation of stroke patients with aphasia. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 19(1-2), 17-32.
- Pryor, J. (2010). Nurses create a rehabilitation milieu. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 35(3), 123-128.
- Pullen, R. L. (2008). Transferring a patient from bed to wheelchair. *Nursing*, 38(2), 46-48.
- *Quigley, P. A., Bulat, T., & Hart-Hughes, S. (2007). Strategies to reduce risk of fall-related injuries in rehabilitation nursing. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 32(3), 120-125.
- *Rieg, L. S., Mason, C. H., & Preston, K. (2006). Spiritual care: Practical guidelines for rehabilitation nurses. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 31(6), 249-256.
- Sievert, K. D., Amend, B., Gakis, G., Toomey, P., Badke, A., Kaps, H. P., et al. (2010). Early sacral neuromodulation prevents urinary incontinence after complete spinal cord injury. *Annals of Neurology*, 67(1), 74-84.
- U.S. National Library of Medicine (NIH). (2011). Cranberry. Retrieved September 5, 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/druginfo/natural/958.html>.
- *Waters, T. R. (2007). When is it safe to manually lift a patient? *AJN*, 107(8), 53-58.
- Waters, T. R., & Rockefeller, K. (2010). Safe patient handling for rehabilitation professionals. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 35(5), 216-222.
- *Whipple, K. (2007). Therapeutic use of assistive technology: A clinical perspective. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 32(2), 48-50.
- *World Health Organization (WHO). (2001). International classification of functioning, disability, and health. Geneva: Author.

Chapter 9

- *American Association of Colleges of Nursing. (2004). ELNEC core curriculum. Retrieved September 23, 2010, from www.aacn.nche.edu/elneccurriculum.htm.
- Arnstein, P. R., & Robinson, E. M. (2011). Is palliation sedation right for your patient? *Nursing2011*, 41(8), 50.
- Beck, I., Runeson, I., & Blomqvist, K. (2009). To find inner peace: Soft massage as an established and integrated palliative care. *International Journal of Palliative Nursing*, 15(11), 541-545.
- *Carlson, A. L. (2007). Death in the nursing home: Resident, family, and staff perspectives. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 33(4), 32-41.
- Clarke, V., & Holtslander, L. F. (2010). Finding a balanced approach: Incorporating medicine wheel teachings in the care of Aboriginal people at the end of life. *Journal of Palliative Care*, 26(1), 34-36.
- Ferrell, B. (2010). Palliative care research: Nursing response to emergent society needs. *Nursing Science Quarterly*, 23(3), 221-225.
- *Field, M. J., & Cassel, C. K., Committee on Care at the End of Life, Institute of Medicine. (1997). *Approaching death: Improving care at the end of life*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Gillick, M. R. (2010). Reversing the code status of advance directives? *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 1239-1240.
- Granda-Cameron, C., Viola, S. R., Lynch, M. P., & Polomano, R. C. (2008). Measuring patient-oriented outcomes in palliative care: Functionality and quality of life. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(1), 65-77.
- Heron, M., Hoyert, D., Murphy, S., Xu, J., Kochanek, K., & Tejada-Veja, B. (2009, April 17). *National Vital Statistics Reports*. Deaths: Final data for 2006.
- HPNA 2008 Research Committee. (2008). *Hospice and Palliative Nurses Association: 2009-2010 research agenda*. Pittsburgh: HPNA.
- *Kapo, J., Morrison, L. J., & Liao, S. (2007). Palliative care for the older adult. *Journal of Palliative Medicine*, 10(1), 185-209.
- Kirk, T., Coyle, N., Poppito, S., & Bigoney, R. (2010, March 5). *Palliative sedation and existential suffering: A dialogue between medicine, nursing, philosophy, and psychology*. Boston: American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Medicine.
- Lachman, V. (2010). Do-not-resuscitate orders: Nurse's role requires moral courage. *MEDSURG Nursing: The Journal of Adult Health*, 19(4), 249-251.
- Lipman, A. G. (2009). Evidence-based palliative care. In A. G. Lipman, K. C. Jackson, & S. Tyler (Eds.), *Evidence-based symptom control in palliative care* (pp. 1-9). New York: Informa Healthcare.
- Matzo, M.L., & Sherman, D. W. (Eds.), (2010). *Palliative care nursing: Quality care to the end of life* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.
- Morrell, E. D., Brown, B. P., Qi, R., Drabiak, K., & Helft, P. R. (2008). The do-not-resuscitate order: Associations with advance directives, physician specialty and documentation of discussion 15 years after the Self-Determination Act. *Journal of Medical Ethics*, 34(9), 642-647.
- *National Center for Health Statistics. (2006). *Deaths: Final data for 2004. National Vital Statistics Reports*. Hyattsville, MD: Author.
- National Consensus Project for Quality Palliative Care Task Force. (2009). *Clinical practice guidelines for quality palliative care* (2nd ed.). Pittsburgh: Author.
- *National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization. (2005). *Caring connections*. Retrieved July 18, 2010, from www.caringinfo.org.
- National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization. (2010). NHPCO position statement and commentary on the use of palliative sedation in imminently dying terminally ill patients. Retrieved March 20, 2011, from www.jpsmjourn.com.
- Newshan, G., & Schuller-Citella, D. (2003). Large clinical study shows value of Therapeutic Touch program. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 17(4), 189-192.
- Oregon Hospice Association. (2009). Hospice FAQ. Retrieved July 18, 2010, from www.oregonhospice.org.
- Perrin, K. (2010a). Communicating with seriously ill and dying patients, their families, and their healthcare providers. In M. Matzo & D. W. Sherman (Eds.), *Palliative care nursing* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.
- Perrin, K. (2010b). Legal aspects of end-of-life decision making. In M. Matzo & D. W. Sherman (Eds.), *Palliative care nursing* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.
- Silveira, M. J., Kim, S. Y. H., & Langa, K. M. (2010). Advance directives and outcomes of surrogate decision-making before death. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 1211-1218.
- *Support Study Principal Investigators. (1995). A controlled trial to improve care for seriously ill hospitalized patients: The Study to Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks for Treatments (SUPPORT). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 274, 1591-1598.
- Supportive Care Coalition. (2008, October). Key clinical considerations on tube feeding for guiding policy and decision makers in Catholic medical care. Retrieved June 1, 2010, from www.supportivecarecoalition.org.
- Taylor, D. H. (2009). The effect of hospice on Medicare and informal care costs: The U.S. experience. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 38(1), 110-114.
- Thacker, K. S. (2008). Nurses' advocacy behaviors in end-of-life nursing care. *Nursing Ethics*, 15(2), 174-185.
- Thomas, R., Wilson, D. M., Justice, C., Birch, S., & Sheps, S. (2008). A literature review of preferences for end-of-life care in developed countries by individuals with different cultural affiliations and ethnicity. *Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing*, 10(3), 142-161.
- Venneman, S. S., Narnor-Harris, P., Perish, M., & Hamilton, M. (2008). "Allow natural death" versus "do not resuscitate": Three words that can change a life. *Journal of Medical Ethics*, 34(1), 2-6.
- Wijk, H. & Grimby, A. (2008). Needs of elderly patients in palliative care. *American Journal Hospice and Palliative Care*, 25(2), 106-111.

Chapter 10

- *American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma. (2006). *Resources for optimal care of the injured patient 2006*. Chicago, IL: Author.
- American College of Surgeons Committee on Trauma. (2008). *Advanced trauma life support course for doctors student manual* (8th ed.). Chicago, IL: Author.
- Barnard, S. (2009). Implementing an SBIRT (Screening, Brief Intervention, and Referral to Treatment) program in the emergency department: Challenges and rewards. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 35(6), 561-563.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010, June 18). FastStats: Emergency department visits. Retrieved

- September 12, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/ervisits.htm.
- Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. (2010, June 16). Critical access hospitals. Retrieved September 12, 2010, from www.cms.gov/CertificationandCompliance/04_CAHS.asp.
- *Cooper, G., & Laskowski-Jones, L. (2006). Development of trauma care systems. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, 10(3), 328-331.
- *Fernandes, C. M., Tanabe, P. L., Gilboy, N., Johnson, L. A., McNair, R. S., Rosenau, A. M., et al. (2005). Five-level triage: A report from the ACEP/ENA five-level triage task force. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 31(1), 39-50.
- Howard, P. K. (2009). Crowding: A report of the ENA ED crowding work team. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 35(1), 55-56.
- *Huryk, L. (2006). Is it really an emergency? *AJN*, 106(1), 69-72.
- Institute of Medicine (IOM) Board on Health Care Services. (2010). *Regionalizing emergency care workshop summary*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. Retrieved September 12, 2010, from www.nap.edu/catalog.php?record_id=12872.
- Johnson, D., & Parker, D. (2009). Managers Forum—Cutting-edge discussion of management, policy, and program issues in emergency care: Canine security (Solheim, J., & Papa, A. [Eds.]). *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 35(5), 469-470.
- *Laskowski-Jones, L. (2007). Should families be present during resuscitation? *Nursing2007*, 37(5), 44-47.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2008). Change management at the hospital front door: Integrating automatic patient tracking in a high volume emergency department and Level I trauma center. *Nurse Leader*, 6(2), 52-57.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2009). Responding to trauma: Your priorities in the first hour. *Nursing2009, Critical Care*, 4(1), 35-41.
- *Laskowski-Jones, L., Toulson, K., & McConnell, L. (2005). Assessing and planning for triage redesign. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 31(3), 315-318.
- Mascioli, S., Laskowski-Jones, L., Urban, S., & Moran, S. (2009). Improving hand-off communication. *Nursing2009*, 39(2), 52-55.
- Moskop, J. C., Sklar, D. P., Geiderman, J. M., Schears, R. M., & Bookman, K. J. (2009). Emergency department crowding, Part 1: Concepts, causes and moral consequences. *Annals of Emergency Medicine*, 53(5), 605-611.
- Mower-Wade, D., & Pirrung, J. M. (2010). Advanced practice nurses making a difference: Implementation of a formal rounding process. *Journal of Trauma Nursing*, 17(2), 69-71.
- National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. (2010, September 10). Injury prevention and control: Data & statistics (WISQARS). Retrieved September 12, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/injury/wisqars/index.html.
- Nolan, M. R. (2009). Older adults in the emergency department: What are the risks? *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(12), 14-18.
- Sadowski, L. S., Kee, R. A., VanderWeele, T. J., & Buchanan, D. (2009). Effect of a housing and case management program on emergency department visits and hospitalizations among chronically ill homeless adults. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301(17), 1771-1778.
- Scales, M. H., Lewchick, J., Bauer, J., & Kiljanski, A. (2007). An informal discussion of emergency nurses' current clinical practice: What's new and what works. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 33(5), 480-483.
- The Joint Commission. (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved September 12, 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- *Toulson, K., Laskowski-Jones, L., & McConnell, L. (2005). Implementation of the five-level Emergency Severity Index in a Level I trauma center emergency department with a three-tiered triage scheme. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 31(3), 259-264.
- *VanHoy, S., & Laskowski-Jones, L. (2006). Early intervention for the pneumonia patient: An emergency department triage protocol. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 32(2), 154-158.
- Wolf, L. (2008). Nurse educator: The use of human patient simulation in ED triage training can improve nursing confidence and patient outcomes. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 34(2), 169-171.

Chapter 11

- *American Heart Association. (2005a). Part 10.3: Drowning. *Supplement to Circulation: Journal of the American Heart Association*, 112(24), IV-133-IV-135.
- *American Heart Association. (2005b). Part 10.4: Hypothermia. *Supplement to Circulation: Journal of the American Heart Association*, 112(24), IV-136-IV-137.
- *Auerbach, P. S. (2007). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Auerbach, P. S. (2009). *Medicine for the outdoors: The essential guide to first aid and medical emergencies* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Auerbach, P. S., Donner, H. J., & Weiss, E. A. (2008). *Field guide to wilderness medicine* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Bledsoe, G. H., Manyak, M. J., & Townes, D. A. (2009). *Expedition & wilderness medicine*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- *Cherington, M. (2005). Spectrum of neurologic complications of lightning injuries. *NeuroRehabilitation*, 20, 3-8.
- Choo, K. J. L., Simons, F. E. R., & Sheikh, A. (2010). Glucocorticoids for the treatment of anaphylaxis (Review). *The Cochrane Library* 2010, Issue 3. John Wiley & Sons.
- Guen, J., Shenghua, L., Rili G., Mitchell, A., & Yanping, S. (2009). High altitude disease: Consequences of genetic and environmental interactions. *North American Journal of Medicine and Science*, 2(3), 74-80.
- Hausfater, P., Doumenc, B., Chopin, S., Le Manach, Y., Dautheville, S., Hericord, P., et al. (2010a). Elevation of cardiac troponin I during non-exertional heat-related illnesses in the context of a heat wave. *Critical Care*, 14(3), R99.
- Hausfater, P., Megarbane, B., Dautheville, S., Patzak, A., Andronikof, M., Andre, S., et al. (2010b). Prognostic factors in non-exertional heatstroke. *Intensive Care Medicine*, 36, 272-280.
- Johnson, C., Anderson, S. R., Dallimore, J., Winsor, S., & Warrell, D. A. (2008). *Oxford handbook of expedition and wilderness medicine*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Lasater, M. (2008). Treatment of severe hypothermia with intravascular temperature modulation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(6), 24-29.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2009). Winter emergencies: Managing ski and snowboard injuries. *Nursing2009*, 39(11), 24-30.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2010). Summer emergencies: Can you take the heat? *Nursing2010*, 40(6), 24-32.
- Layon, A. J., & Modell, J. H. (2009). Drowning: Update 2009. *Anesthesiology*, 110(6), 1390-1401.
- *Lewis, A. M. (2007). Heatstroke in older adults. *AJN*, 107(6), 52-56.

- Luks, A. M., & Swenson, E. R. (2008). Medication and dosage considerations in the prophylaxis and treatment of high-altitude illness. *Chest*, 133(3), 744-755.
- *Mitchell, A. (2006). Africanized killer bees: A case study. *Critical Care Nurse*, 26(3), 23-32.
- Norris, R. (Last updated December 17, 2008). *Snake envenomation*. Coral. e-Medicine. Retrieved June 16, 2010, from WebMD, www.emedicine.com/EMERG/topic542.htm.
- Protherics, Inc. (2008). CroFab (Crotalidae Polyvalent Immune Fab [Ovine]). [Prescribing information]. Retrieved January 11, 2011, from www.fda.gov/downloads/biologicsBloodVaccines/BloodBloodProducts/ApprovedProducts/LicensedProductsBLAs/FractionatedPlasmaProducts/UCM117573.pdf.
- Schaeffer, S., & Badillo, R. B. (2009). Poison control therapy: Updates on treating ingested-poison toxicities and snakebites. *AJN*, 109(12), 42-45.
- *Suchard, J. R. (2007). Scorpion envenomation. In P. S. Auerbach (Ed.), *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed., pp. 1033-1051). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Weinstein, S. A., Dart, R. C., & Staples, A. (2009). Envenomation: An overview of clinical toxicology for the primary care physician. *American Family Physician*, 80, 793-802.
- *Wozniak, E. J., Wisser, J., & Schwartz, M. (2006). Venomous adversaries: A reference to snake identification, field safety, and bite-victim first aid for disaster-response personnel deploying into the hurricane-prone regions of North America. *Wilderness and Environmental Medicine*, 17(4), 246-266.
- ## Chapter 12
- *American College of Surgeons. (2006). *Resources for optimal care of the injured patient*. Chicago: Author.
- *American Nurses Association (ANA). (2001). *Code of ethics for nurses with interpretive statements*. Washington, DC: Author.
- *Casani, J. A. P., & Romanosky, A. J. (2006). Surge capacity. In G. R. Ciottone (Ed.), *Disaster medicine* (pp. 193-202). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Chaffee, M. (2006). Making the decision to report to work in a disaster. *AJN*, 106(9), 54-57.
- Claudius, I., Behar, S., Ballow, S., Wood, R., Stevenson, K., Blake, N., et al. (2008). Disaster drill exercise documentation and management: Are we drilling to standard? *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 34(6), 504-508.
- DeSimone, C. L. (2009). Response of public health workers to various emergencies. *AAOHN Journal*, 57(1), 17-23.
- *Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA). (2004). *Are you ready? An in-depth guide to citizen preparedness*. Jessup, MD: Author.
- Hyer, K., & Brown, L. M. (2008). The Impact of Event Scale—Revised. *AJN*, 108(11), 60-68.
- Hyett, J. M. (2009). How to respond when lightning strikes. *Nursing2009*, 39(7), 32-35.
- Landry, L. G., & Stockton, A. (2008). Evaluation of a collaborative project in disaster preparedness. *Nurse Educator*, 33(6), 254-258.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2008). Change management at the hospital front door: Integrating automatic patient tracking in a high volume emergency department and Level I trauma center. *Nurse Leader*, 6(2), 52-57.
- Laskowski-Jones, L. (2010). When disaster strikes: Ready, or not? (Editorial). *Nursing2010*, 40(4), 6.
- Merchant, R. M., Leigh, J. E., & Lurie, N. (2010, February 24). Health care volunteers and disaster response: First be prepared. *New England Journal of Medicine*. Retrieved April 4, 2011, from www.nejm.org February 24, 2010 (10.1056/NEJMp1001737).
- *Mitchell, A. M., Kameg, K., & Sakraida, T. J. (2003a). Post-traumatic stress: Clinical implications. *Disaster Management & Response*, 1(1), 14-18.
- *Mitchell, A. M., Sakraida, T. J., & Kameg, K. (2003b). Critical incident stress debriefing: Implications for best practice. *Disaster Management & Response*, 1(2), 46-51.
- *Mitchell, A. M., Sakraida, T. J., & Zalice, K. K. (2005). Disaster care: Psychological considerations. *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 40(3), 535-550.
- *Olszewski, T. M., & Varrasse, J. F. (2005). The neurobiology of PTSD: Implications for nurses. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing*, 43(6), 40-47.
- *Papp, E. (2005). Preparing for disasters: Helping yourself as you help others. *AJN*, 105(5), 112.
- *Rice, K. L., Colletti, L. S., Hartmann, S., Schaubhut, R., & Davis, N. L. (2006). Learning from Katrina. *Nursing2006*, 36(4), 44-47.
- Rushing, J. (2008). Responding to mild and moderate unintentional hypothermia. *Nursing2008*, 38(11), 22.
- Smith, J. S. (2010). Mass casualty events: Are you prepared? *Nursing2010*, 40(4), 40-45.
- Subbarao, I., Lyznicki, J. M., Hsu, E. B., Gebbie, K. M., Markenson, D., Barzansky, B., et al. (2008). A consensus-based educational framework and competency set for the discipline of disaster medicine and public health preparedness. *Disaster Medicine and Public Health Preparedness*, 2(1), 57-68.
- *Sutingco, N. (2006). The incident command system. In G. R., Ciottone (Ed.), *Disaster medicine* (pp. 208-214). St. Louis: Mosby.
- The Joint Commission. (2008). Standards FAQs: Emergency management. Retrieved July 29, 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/AccreditationPrograms/HomeCare/Standards/09_FAQs/EM/Emergency_Management.htm.
- Tomczyk, D., Alvarez, D., Borgman, P., Cartier, M. J., Caulum, L., Galloway, C., et al. (2008). Caring for those who care: The role of the occupational health nurse in disasters. *AAOHN Journal*, 56(6), 243-250.
- U.S. Department of Health & Human Services. (2010). National Disaster Medical System helping U.S. hospitals treat survivors of earthquake in Haiti. Retrieved July 29, 2010, from www.hhs.gov/haiti/ndms_ushospitals.html.
- *Wielawski, I. M. (2006). The health legacy of September 11. *AJN*, 106(9), 27-28.
- ## Chapter 13
- Atassi, K. (2008). Action STAT: Water intoxication. *Nursing2008*, 38(2), 72.
- Avent, Y. (2007). Managing calcium imbalance in acute care. *Nurse Practitioner*, 32(10), 7-10.
- Collins, M., & Claros, E. (2011). Recognizing the face of dehydration. *Nursing2011*, 41(8), 26-31.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). Balancing act: Hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia. *Nursing2011*, 41(10), 52-55.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). Balancing act: Na⁺ and K⁺. *Nursing2011*, 41(7), 44-50.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). I.V. Fluids: What nurses need to know. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 30-38.
- David, K. (2007). IV fluids: Do you know what's hanging and why? *RN*, 70(10), 35-40.

- *Edwards, N. (2005). Interpreting laboratory values in older adults. *MEDSURG Nursing: The Journal of Adult Health*, 14(4), 220-229.
- Given, S. (2010). Hyponatremia. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 72.
- Gordon, M. (2010). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.
- Hadaway, L. (2009). Protect patients from IV infiltration. *American Nurse Today*, 4(7), 10-12.
- Hankins, J. (2007). The role of albumin in fluid balance. *Nursing2007*, 37(12), 14-15.
- Hayes, D. (2007a). When potassium takes dangerous detours. *Nursing2007*, 37(11), 56hn1-56hn4.
- Hayes, D. (2007b). How to respond to abnormal serum sodium levels. *Nursing2007*, 37(12), 56hn1-56hn4.
- Holcomb, S. (2008). Third-spacing: When body fluid shifts. *Nursing2008*, 38(7), 50-53.
- Huber, C., & Augustine, A. (2009). IV infusion alarms: Don't wait for the beep. *AJN*, 109(4), 32-33.
- Koo, L., Reedy, S., & Smith, J. (2010). Patient history key to diagnosing peripheral edema. *Nurse Practitioner*, 35(3), 44-52.
- Krost, W., Mistovich, J., & Limmer, D. (2009). Beyond the basics: Electrolyte disturbances. *EMS Magazine*, 38(4), 47-53.
- Lecko, C. (2008). Improving hydration: An issue of safety. *Nursing & Residential Care*, 10(3), 149-150.
- Lien, Y., & Shapiro, J. (2007). Hyponatremia: Clinical diagnosis and management. *American Journal of Medicine*, 120(8), 653-658.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Mentes, J. (2006). Oral hydration in older adults. *AJN*, 106(6), 40-49.
- Munger, M. (2007). New agents for managing hyponatremia in hospitalized patients. *American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy*, 64(3), 253-265.
- O'Neill, P. (2007). Helping your patient to restrict potassium. *Nursing2007*, 37(4), 64hn6, 64hn8.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Reynolds, I. (2007). Discovering and stopping hyperkalemia. *American Nurse Today*, 2(11), 52.
- Rushing, J. (2009). Assessing for dehydration in adults. *Nursing2009*, 39(4), 14.
- Sweeney, J. (2010). Managing hyponatremia. *Nursing2010*, 40(9), 63.
- Tocco, S. (2010). Cerebral salt wasting: An overlooked cause of hyponatremia. *American Nurse Today*, 5(3), 34-36.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Trissel, L. (2009). *Handbook on injectable drugs* (15th ed.). Bethesda, MD: American Society of Hospital-System Pharmacists.
- Vacca, V. (2008). Hyperkalemia. *Nursing2008*, 38(7), 72.
- Jones, M. (2010). Basic interpretation of metabolic acidosis. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(5), 63-69.
- Kramer, B. (2009). Arterial blood gases. *RN*, 72(4), 22-24.
- Lawes, R. (2009). Body out of balance: Understanding metabolic acidosis and alkalosis. *Nursing2009*, 39(11), 50-54.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pruitt, B. (2010). Interpreting ABGs: An inside look at your patient's status. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 31-35.
- Roman, M., Thimothée, S., & Vidal, J. (2008). Arterial blood gases. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(4), 268-269.
- Swiderski, D., & Byrum, D. (2007). Are you an ABG ace? *American Nurse Today*, 2(4), 18-21.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Vacca, V. (2008). Hyperkalemia. *Nursing2008*, 38(7), 72.
- ### Chapter 15
- Aguiar, T. (2010, May). *Intraosseous access: Not just for emergencies anymore*. Presentation at the Infusion Nurses Society annual meeting: Las Vegas, NV.
- *Almadrones, L. (2007). Evidence-based research for intraperitoneal chemotherapy in epithelial ovarian cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(2), 211-216.
- Bard Access Systems. (2011). PowerPICC Solo[®] Catheter: Overview. Retrieved April 6, 2011, from <http://www.bardaccess.com/nurse-powerpiccsolo.php>.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). I.V. fluids: What nurses need to know. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 30-39.
- Crimlisk, J. T., Johnstone, D. J., & Sanchez, G. M. (2009). Evidence-based practice, clinical simulations workshop, and intravenous medications: Moving toward safer practice. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(3), 153-160.
- *Earhart, A., & Kaminski, D. (2007). Evidence-based practice in infusion nursing: 2007 NACNS national conference abstracts. *Clinical Nurse Specialist*, 21(2), 107.
- Food and Drug Administration (FDA). (2009). FDA public health notification: PVC devices containing plasticizer DEHP. Retrieved October 13, 2010, from www.fda.gov/MedicalDevice/Safety/AlertsandNotices/PublicHealthNotifications/UCM062182.
- *Fowler, R., Gallagher, J. V., Isaacs, S. M., Ossman, E., Pepe, P., & Wayne, M. (2007). The role of intraosseous vascular access in the out-of-hospital environment. *Prehospital Emergency Care*, 11(1), 63-66.
- Garcia, L. S., & Isenberg, H. D. (2010). *Clinical microbiology procedures handbook* (3rd ed.). Washington, DC: ASM Press.
- Genentech USA, Inc. (2011). Cathflo(r) Activase (r) (Alteplase). Retrieved April 6, 2011, from <http://www.cathflo.com>.
- *Gillies, D., O'Riordan, L., Wallen, M., Morrison, A., Rankin, K., & Nagy, S. (2005). Optimal timing for intravenous administration set replacement. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, CD003588.
- *Goldberg, P. A., Kedves, A., Walter, K., Groszmann, A., Belous, A., & Inzucchi, S. E. (2006). Waste not, want not: Determining the optimal priming volume for intravenous insulin infusions. *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, 8(5), 598-601.
- *Gorski, L. (2007). Standard 44: Dressings. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 30(2), 87-88.
- ### Chapter 14
- *Casaletto, J. (2005). Differential diagnosis of metabolic acidosis. *Emergency Medicine Clinics of North America*, 23(3), 771-787.
- Fornier, M. (2009). Perfecting your acid-base balancing act. *American Nurse Today*, 4(1), 17-21.
- Gordon, M. (2010). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Gorski, L., Perucca, R., & Hunter, M. R. (2010). Central venous access devices: Care, maintenance, and potential complications. In M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins, & R. Perucca (Eds.), *Infusion nursing: An evidence-based approach* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- *Griffiths, V. (2007). Midline catheters: Indications, complications and maintenance. *Nursing Standard*, 22(11), 48-57.
- *Guthrie, D., Dreher, D., & Munson, M. (2007). What you need to know about PICCs, Part 1. *Nursing2007*, 37(8), 18.
- *Hadaway, L. (2007). Emergency: Infiltration and extravasation. *AJN*, 107(8), 62-72.
- Hadaway, L. C. (2009). Managing vascular access device occlusions, Part 1. *Nursing2009*, 39(1), 10.
- Hadaway, L. C. (2010a). Infusion therapy equipment. In M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins, & R. Perucca (Eds.), *Infusion nursing: An evidence-based approach* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Hadaway, L. C. (2010b). Preventing and managing peripheral extravasation. *Nursing2009*, 39(10), 26-27.
- *Infusion Nurses Society (INS). (2006). Infusion nursing standards of practice. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 29(1 Suppl. 6S), S1-S92.
- Institute for Healthcare Improvement (IHI). (2008). Implement the central line bundle. *Five Million Lives Campaign*. Retrieved October 13, 2010, from www.ihl.org/IHI/Topics/CriticalCare/IntensiveCare/Changes/ImplementtheCentralLineBundle.htm.
- *Jacobs, B. (2006). Using an infusion pump safely. *Nursing2006*, 36(10), 24.
- Khalidi, N., Kovacevich, D. S., Papke-O'Donnell, L. F., & Btaiche, I. (2009). Impact of the positive pressure valve on vascular access device occlusions and bloodstream infections. *Journal of the Association for Vascular Access*, 14(2), 84-91.
- *Khan, M., & Younger, G. (2007). Promoting safe administration of subcutaneous infusions. *Nursing Standard*, 21(31), 50-56.
- Madigan, K. (2008). Now, intraosseous infusions for adults. *American Nurse Today*, 3(1), 11-12.
- *Masoorli, S. (2007). Nerve injuries related to vascular access insertion and assessment. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 30(6), 346-350.
- McGoldrick, M. (2010). Infection prevention and control. In M. Alexander, L. Gorski, J. Hankins, & R. Perucca (Eds.), *Infusion nursing: An evidence-based approach* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Mitchell, M. D., Anderson, B. J., Williams, K., & Umscheid, C. A. (2009). Heparin flushing and other interventions to maintain patency of central venous catheters: A systematic review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 65(10): 2007-2021.
- Moran, J. E., & Ash, S. R. (2010). Locking solutions for hemodialysis catheters: Heparin and citrate—a position paper by ASDIN. *ASDIN Position Papers*. Retrieved June 18, 2010, from <http://asdin.affiniscape.com/associations/9795/filesSDI%20466%20Locking%20Solutions.pdf>.
- Moreau, N. L. (2008a). Tips for inserting an I.V. device in an older adult. *Nursing2008*, 38(12), 12.
- Moreau, N. L. (2008b). Using ultrasound to guide PICC and peripheral cannula insertion. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 20-21.
- Moreau, N. L. (2009a). Are your skin-prep and catheter maintenance techniques up-to-date? *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 15-16.
- Moreau, N. L. (2009b). Reducing the cost of catheter-related bloodstream infections. *Nursing2009*, 39(7), 14-15.
- O'Grady, N. P., Alexander, M., Burns, L. A., Dellinger, E. P., Garland, J., Heard, S. O., et al. (2011). *Guidelines for the prevention of intravascular catheter-related infections*. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Perucca, R. (2010). Peripheral venous access devices. In M. Alexander, A. Corrigan, L. Gorski, J. Hankins, & R. Perucca (Eds.), *Infusion nursing: An evidence-based approach* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- *Rosenthal, K. (2006a). Do needleless connectors increase bloodstream infection risk? *Nursing Management*, 37(4), 78-80.
- *Rosenthal, K. (2006b). Guarding against vascular site infection. *Nursing Management*, 37(4), 54-66.
- Rosenthal, K. (2008). Bridging the I.V. access gap with midline catheters. *Med/Surg Insider*, Fall, 2-5.
- *Swanson, J. M. (2007). Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: A general review. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 30(4), 232-240.
- *Winfield, C., Davis, S., Schwaner, S., Conaway, M., & Burns, S. (2007). Evidence: The first word in safe I.V. practice. *American Nurse Today*, 2(5), 31-33.

Chapter 16

- Adams, A. (2008). Is hair removal necessary before the surgical incision? *Perioperative Nursing Clinics*, 3(2), 107-113.
- *American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force. (1999). Practice guidelines for preoperative fasting and the use of pharmacologic agents to reduce the risk of pulmonary aspiration: Application to healthy patients undergoing elective procedures. *Anesthesiology*, 90(3), 896-905.
- *American Society of PeriAnesthesia Nurses (ASPAN). (2004). *Standards, recommended practices, and guidelines*. Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010a). Position statement on correct site surgery. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (p. 708). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010b). Perioperative explications for the ANA code of ethics for nurses. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 30-61). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010c). Position statement on perioperative care of patients with do-not-resuscitate (DNR) or allow-natural-death orders. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 740-742). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010d). Recommended practices for perioperative patient skin antisepsis. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 351-356). Denver: Author.
- *Beyea, S. (2002). Accident prevention in surgical settings: Keeping patients safe. *AORN Journal*, 75(2), 361-363.
- *Beyea, S. (2004). Evidence-based practice in perioperative nursing. *American Journal of Infection Control*, 32(2), 97-100.
- Beyea, S. (2007). Update on correct site surgery. *AORN Journal*, 85(2), 415-417.
- Cawley, Y. (2008). Mechanical thromboprophylaxis in the perioperative setting. *MEDSURG Nursing: Official Journal of the Academy of Medical-Surgical Nurses*, 17(3), 177-182.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2008). National health statistics report: Ambulatory medical care utilization estimates for 2006. Retrieved July 2010, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/nhsr/nhsr008.pdf.
- Cheek, D., & Jones, T. (2009). Safe surgery initiative saves lives. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 14-15.
- Crenshaw, J., & Winslow, E. (2008). Preoperative fasting duration and medication instruction: Are we improving? *AORN Journal*, 88(6), 963-976.

- Daniels, S. (2007). Protecting patients from harm: Improving hospital care for surgical patients. *Nursing2007*, 37(8), 36-41.
- DeLamar, L. (2007). Anesthesia. In J. C. Rothrock & D. McEwen (Eds.), *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed., Chapter 4). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Doerflinger, D. (2009). Older adult surgical patients: Presentation and challenges. *AORN Journal*, 90(2), 223-240.
- Grebe, R. (2007). Informed consent for patient with cognitive impairment. *Nurse Practitioner*, 32(12), 39-44.
- Gupta, A. (2009). Preoperative screening and risk assessment in the ambulatory surgery patient. *Current Opinion in Anaesthesiology*, 22(6), 705-711.
- James, A., & Abbott, J. (2009). Preoperative assessment. *British Journal of Hospital Medicine*, 70(11), M170-M172.
- Johnson, J. (2011). Preoperative assessment of high-risk orthopedic surgery patients. *Nurse Practitioner*, 36(7), 40-47.
- Kruzik, N. (2009). Benefits of preoperative education for adult elective surgery patients. *AORN Journal*, 90(3), 381-387.
- Lucas, B. (2008). Total hip and total knee replacement: Preoperative nursing management. *British Journal of Nursing*, 17(21), 1346-1351.
- McEwen, D. (2007). Ambulatory surgery. In J. C. Rothrock & D. McEwen (Eds.), *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Morse, K. (2009). Focusing on the surgical patient with cardiac problems. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 22-27.
- Neil, J. A. (2007). Perioperative care of the immunocompromised patient. *AORN Journal*, 85(3), 544-560.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Ridge, R. (2008). Doing right to prevent wrong-site surgery. *Nursing2008*, 38(3), 24-25.
- Roesler, R., Halowell, C., Elias, G., & Peters, J. (2010). Chasing zero: Our journey to preventing surgical site infection. *AORN Journal*, 91(2), 224-235.
- Rothrock, J. C., & McEwen, D. (2007). *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Scherer, D., & Fitzpatrick, J. (2008). Perceptions of patient safety culture among physicians and RNs in the perioperative area. *AORN Journal*, 87(1), 163-164, 166, 168-174.
- Sendelbach, S. (2010). Preoperative fasting doesn't mean nothing after midnight. *AJN*, 110(9), 64-65.
- Smith, L. (2007). Speaking up for medical language interpreters. *Nursing2007*, 37(12), 48-49.
- The Joint Commission. (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved October 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological Nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Watson, D. (2010). Never events in health care. *AORN Journal*, 91(3), 378-382.
- Winkelman, C. (2009). Bed rest in health and critical illness: A body systems approach. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(3), 254-266.
- Woolger, J. (2008). Preoperative testing and medication management. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, 24(4), 573-583.
- assistants. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 744-745). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010b). Position statement: Perioperative care of patients with do not resuscitate (DNR) or allow natural death orders. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 740-742). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010c). Recommended practices for cleaning and care of surgical instruments and powered equipment. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 424-445). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010d). Recommended practices for high-level disinfection. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 389-404). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010e). Recommended practices for documentation of perioperative nursing care. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 289-291). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010f). Recommended practices for environmental cleaning in the perioperative setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 241-255). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010g). Recommended practices for safe care through identification of potential hazards in the surgical environment. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 575-581). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010h). Recommended practices for laser safety in the practice settings. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 133-138). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010i). Recommended practices for managing the patient receiving moderate sedation/analgesia. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 315-325). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010j). Recommended practices for positioning the patient in the perioperative practice setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 327-350). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010k). Recommended practices for perioperative patient skin antisepsis. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 351-369). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010l). Recommended practices for sponge, sharp, and instrument counts. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 207-216). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010m). Recommended practices for maintaining a sterile field. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 91-99). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010n). Recommended practices for sterilization in the perioperative practice setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 457-480). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010o). Recommended practices for surgical attire. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 67-73). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010p). Recommended practices for hand hygiene in the perioperative

Chapter 17

- *American Society of PeriAnesthesia Nurses. (2000). *Standards of perianesthesia nursing practice*. Cherry Hill, NJ: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010a). Position statement: AORN position statement on RN first

- setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 75-89). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010q). Recommended practices for traffic patterns in the perioperative practice setting. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 101-104). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010r). Recommended practices for selection and use of surgical gowns and drapes. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 559-563). Denver: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010s). Statement on correct site surgery. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (p. 708). Denver: Author.
- Bartely, M. (2006). Preventing venous thromboembolism. *Nursing2006*, 36(1), 64cc1-64cc4.
- Birch, D., Asiri, A., & de Gara, C. (2007). The impact of a formal mentoring program for minimally invasive surgery on surgeon practice and patient outcomes. *American Journal of Surgery*, 193(5), 589-591.
- Conlon, N., Sullivan, R., Herbison, P., Zacharias, M., & Buggy, D. (2007). The effect of leaving dentures in place on bag-mask ventilation at induction of general anesthesia. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, 105(2), 370-373.
- *DeJonghe, B., Cook, D., Appere-de-Vecchi, C., et al. (2000). Using and understanding sedation scoring systems: A systematic review. *Intensive Care Medicine*, 26(3), 275-285.
- DeLamar, L. (2007). Anesthesia. In J. C. Rothrock & D. McEwen (Eds.), *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Dizer, B., Hatipoglu, S., Kaymakcioglu, N., Tufan, T., Yava, A., Iyigun, E., et al. (2009). The effect of nurse-performed preoperative skin preparation on postoperative surgical site infections in abdominal surgery. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 18(23), 3325-3332.
- Doerflinger, D. (2009). Older adult surgical patients: Presentation and challenges. *AORN Journal*, 90(2), 223-240.
- *Dunn, D. (2005). Preventing perioperative complications in special populations. *Nursing2005*, 35(11), 36-43.
- Durai, R., & Ng, P. (2010). Surgical vacuum drains: Types, uses, and complications. *AORN Journal*, 91(2), 226-271.
- *Hommertzheim, R., & Steinke, E. E. (2006). Malignant hyperthermia: The perioperative nurse's role. *AORN Journal*, 83(1), 149-164.
- Hopper, W., & Moss, R. (2010). Common breaks in sterile technique: Clinical perspectives and perioperative implications. *AORN Journal*, 91(3), 350-364.
- Jackson, S., & Brady, S. (2008). Counting difficulties: Retained instruments, sponges, and needles. *AORN Journal*, 87(2), 315-321.
- Johnson, J. (2011). Preoperative assessment of high-risk orthopedic surgery patients. *Nurse Practitioner*, 36(7), 40-47.
- Kaplow, R. (2010). Care of postanesthesia patients. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(1), 60-62.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McEwen, D. (2007). Ambulatory surgery. In J. C. Rothrock & D. McEwen (Eds.), *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Center for Health Statistics. (2007). National survey of ambulatory surgery. Retrieved March 15, 2008, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/nsas.htm.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pear, S., & Williamson, T. (2009). The RN first assistant: An expert resource for surgical site infection prevention. *AORN Journal*, 89(6), 1093-1097.
- Ridge, R. (2008). Doing right to prevent wrong-site surgery. *Nursing2008*, 38(3), 24-25.
- Roesler, R., Halowell, C., Elias, G., & Peters, J. (2010). Chasing zero: Our journey to preventing surgical site infection. *AORN Journal*, 91(2), 224-235.
- Rothrock, J. C., & McEwen, D. (2007). *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Schoonhoven, L., Defloor, T., & Grypdonck, M. (2002). Incidence of pressure ulcers due to surgery. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 11(4), 479-487.
- The Joint Commission (TJC). (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved October 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Ulmer, B. (2010). Best practices for minimally invasive procedures. *AORN Journal*, 91(5), 558-575.
- Watson, D. (2010). Never events in health care. *AORN Journal*, 91(3), 378-382.
- Weirich, T. (2008). Hypothermia/warming protocols: Why are they not widely used in the OR? *AORN Journal*, 87(2), 333-344.

Chapter 18

- *American Society of PeriAnesthesia Nurses. (2000). *Standards of perianesthesia nursing practice*. Cherry Hill, NJ: Author.
- Association of periOperative Registered Nurses (AORN). (2010). Recommended practices for transfer of patient care information. In *Perioperative standards and recommended practices* (pp. 371-377). Denver: Author.
- Baugh, N., Zuelzer, H., Meador, J., & Blankenship, J. (2007). Wounds in surgical patients who are obese. *AJN*, 107(6), 40-50.
- Beattie, S. (2007). Wound dehiscence. *RN*, 70(6), 34-37.
- Blaney-Koen, L. (2007). Safe surgery: A patient's guide. *Journal of Patient Safety*, 3(1), 56.
- Bopp, E. J., Estrada, T. J., Kilday, J. M., Spradling, J. C., Daniel, C., & Pellegrini, J. E. (2010). Biphasic dosing regimen of meclizine for prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting in a high-risk population. *American Association of Nurse Anesthetists Journal*, 78(1), 55-62.
- Crainic, C., Erickson, K., Gardner, J., Haberman, S., Patten, P., Thomas, P., et al. (2009). Comparison of methods to facilitate postoperative bowel function. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(4), 235-238.
- Dizer, B., Hatipoglu, S., Kaymakciolu, N., Tufan, T., Yava, A., Iyigun, E., et al. (2009). The effect of nurse-performed preoperative skin preparation on postoperative surgical site infections in abdominal surgery. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 18(23), 3325-3332.
- Dunn, D. (2005). Preventing perioperative complications in special populations. *Nursing2005*, 35(11), 36-43.
- Fetzer, S. (2008). Putting a stop to postop nausea and vomiting. *American Nurse Today*, 3(8), 10-12.
- *Hahler, B. (2006). Surgical wound dehiscence. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(5), 296-300.
- Johnson, C. (2009). Development of abdominal wound dehiscence after a colectomy: A nursing challenge. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(2), 96-102.

- Kaplow, R. (2010). Care of postanesthesia patient. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(1), 60-62.
- Lewthwaite, B. (2009). What do nurses know about postoperative nausea and vomiting? *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(2), 110-113, 133.
- Lucas, B. (2008). Total hip and knee replacement: Postoperative nursing management. *British Journal of Nursing*, 17(22), 1410-1414.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McEwen, D. (2007). Wound healing, dressings, and drains. In J. C. Rothrock & D. McEwen (Eds.), *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Owens, R. (2008). Teaming up to improve the quality of surgical care. *American Nurse Today*, 3(5), 25-26.
- Roesler, R., Halowell, C., Elias, G., & Peters, J. (2010). Chasing zero: Our journey to preventing surgical site infection. *AORN Journal*, 91(2), 224-235.
- Rothrock, J. C., & McEwen, D. (2007). *Alexander's care of the patient in surgery* (13th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Sullivan, J. M. (2011). Caring for older adults after surgery. *Nursing2011*, 41(4), 48-51.
- The Joint Commission. (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved October 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Walker, C., Hogstel, M., & Curry, L. (2007). Hospital discharge of older adults. *AJN*, 107(6), 60-70.

Chapter 19

- Abbas, A., Lichtman, A., & Pillai, S. (2010). *Cellular and molecular immunology* (updated 6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Borchers, A. T., Selmi, C., Meyers, F. J., Keen, C. L., & Gershwin, M. E. (2009). Probiotics and immunity. *Journal of Gastroenterology*, 44(1), 26-46.
- Braun, L. (2010). How inflammatory markers refine CV risk status. *American Nurse Today*, 5(5), 30-31.
- *Graham, J., Christian, L., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. (2006). Stress, age, and immune function: Toward a lifespan approach. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 29(4), 389-400.
- Kaufman, C. (2011). The secret life of lymphocytes. *Nursing2011*, 41(6), 50-54.
- Harvard Health. (2007). How your immune system works. In *Truth about your immune system: What you need to know* (pp. 5-14). Cambridge: Harvard Health Publications.
- Landis, R. C. (2009). Redefining the systemic inflammatory response. *Seminars in Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*, 13(2), 87-94.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Stevens, C. D. (2009). *Clinical immunity and serology: A laboratory perspective* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: F.A. Davis.
- Storey, M., & Jordan, S. (2008). An overview of the immune system. *Nursing Standard*, 23(15-17), 47-56.

- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 20

- Akyol, O., Karayury, O., & Salmond, S. (2009). Experiences of pain management in patients undergoing total knee replacement. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(2), 79-85.
- Almada, P., & Archer, R. (2009). Planning ahead for better outcomes: Preparation for joint replacement surgery begins at home! *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(1), 3-8.
- Arthritis Foundation. (2011a). Gout. Retrieved September 7, 2011, from <http://www.arthritis.org/disease-center.php?disease-id=428df=causes>.
- Arthritis Foundation. (2011b). Who gets rheumatoid arthritis? Retrieved September 7, 2011, from <http://www.arthritis.org/who-gets-rheumatoid-arthritis.php>.
- Barbay, K. (2009). Research evidence for the use of preoperative exercise in patients preparing for total hip or total knee arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(3), 127-133.
- Brown, F. M., Jr. (2008). Nursing care after a shoulder arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(1), 3-9.
- *Chen, S. Y., & Wang, H. H. (2007). The relationship between physical function, knowledge of disease, social support and self-care behavior in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *Journal of Nursing Research*, 15(3), 183-192.
- Cranwell-Bruce, L. A. (2011). Biological disease modifying anti-rheumatic drugs. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(3), 147-151.
- *Ding, C., Cicuttini, F., Blizzard, L., & Jones, G. (2007). Smoking interacts with family history with regard to change in knee cartilage volume and cartilage defect development. *Arthritis and Rheumatology*, 56(5), 1521-1528.
- Firestein, G. S., Budd, R. C., Harris, E. D., McInnes, I. B., Ruddy, S., & Sargent, J. S. (2008). *Kelley's textbook of rheumatology* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- *Fonesca, C., & Denton, C. P. (2007). Genetic association studies in systemic sclerosis: More evidence of a complex disease. *The Journal of Rheumatology*, 34(5), 903-905.
- Galimba, J. (2009). Promoting the use of periarticular modal drug injection for total knee arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(5), 250-254.
- Gevirtz, C. (2008). How chronic pain affects sexuality. *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 17.
- *Giaquinto, S., Cacciato, A., Minasi, S., Sostero, E., & Amanda, S. (2006). Effects of music-based therapy on distress following knee arthroplasty. *British Journal of Nursing*, 15(10), 576-579.
- Gillaspie, M. (2010). Better pain management after total joint arthroplasty: A quality improvement approach. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(1), 20-24.
- *Hathaway, L. (2005). Lyme disease. *Nursing2005*, 35(4), 44-45.
- *Hohler, S. E. (2005). Looking into minimally invasive total hip arthroplasty. *Nursing2005*, 35(6), 54-57.
- Horse, J. S. (2010). Improving clinical outcomes with continuous passive motion: An interactive educational approach. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(1), 27-33.
- *Jakobsson, U., & Hallberg, I. R. (2006). Quality of life among older adults with osteoarthritis: An explorative study. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 32(8), 51-60.
- *Klippel, J. H. (2007). *Primer on the rheumatic diseases* (13th ed.). Atlanta: The Arthritis Foundation.
- Leach, D., & Bonfe, M. (2009). The effectiveness of femoral/sciatic nerve blocks on postoperative pain management in total knee arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(5), 257-262.

- Lupus Foundation of America. (2011). Demographic information on lupus. Retrieved September 8, 2011 from http://www.lupus.org/webmodules/webarticlesnet/templates/new_newsroomstudent.aspx?articleid=524.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Parker, R. J. (2011). Evidence-based practice: Caring for a patient undergoing total knee arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 30(1), 4-8.
- *Pellino, T. A., Gordon, D. B., Engelke, Z. K., Busse, K. L., Collins, M. A., Silver, C. E., et al. (2005). Use of nonpharmacologic interventions for pain and anxiety after total hip and knee arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 24(3), 182-192.
- Pullen, R. L., Jr., Brewer, S., & Ballard, A. (2009). Putting a face on systemic lupus erythematosus. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 22-28.
- Remadevi, R., & Szallisi, A. (2008). Adlea (ALGRX-4975), an injectable capsaicin (TRPV1 receptor agonist) formulation for long-lasting pain relief. *Drugs*, 11(2), 120-132.
- Rutledge, D. N., Mouttapa, M., & Wood, P. B. (2009). Symptom clusters in fibromyalgia: Potential utility in patient assessment and treatment evaluation. *Nursing Research*, 58, 359-366.
- Schoen, D. C. (2009). Hip and knee arthroplasties. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(6), 323-327.
- Scleroderma Foundation. (2011). What is scleroderma? Retrieved September 7, 2011, from <http://www.scleroderma.org/medical/overview.shtm>.
- *Sestak, A. L., Nath, S. K., Sawalha, A. H., & Harley, J. B. (2007). Current status of lupus genetics. *Arthritis Research and Therapy*, 9(3), 210-219.
- Smith-Miller, C. A., Harlos, L., Roszell, S. S., & Bechtel, G. A. (2009). A comparison of patient pain responses and medication regimens after hip/knee replacement. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(5), 242-249.
- *Sunk, I. G., Bobacz, K., Hofstaetter, J. G., Amoyo, L., Soleiman, A., Smolen, J., et al. (2007). Increased expression of discoidin domain receptor 2 is linked to the degree of cartilage damage in human knee joints: A potential role in osteoarthritis pathogenesis. *Arthritis and Rheumatology*, 56(11), 3685-3692.
- *Taggart, H. M., Arslanian, C. L., Bae, S., & Singh, K. (2003). Effects of T'ai Chi exercise on fibromyalgia symptoms and health-related quality of life. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 22(5), 353-360.
- Thomas, K. M., & Sethares, K. A. (2008). An investigation of the effects of preoperative interdisciplinary patient education on understanding postoperative expectations following a total joint arthroplasty. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(6), 374-381.
- Thomas, K. M., & Sethares, K. A. (2010). Is guided imagery effective in reducing pain and anxiety in the postoperative total joint arthroplasty patient? *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(6), 393-399.
- *Turjanica, M. A. (2007). Postoperative continuous peripheral nerve blockade in the lower extremity total joint arthroplasty population. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(3), 151-154.
- Zhang, W., Moskowitz, R. W., Nuki, G., Abramson, S., Altman, R. D., Arden, N., et al. (2008). OARS recommendations for the management of hip and knee osteoarthritis, Part II: OARS evidence-based expert consensus guidelines. *Osteoarthritis and Cartilage*, 16(2), 137-162.

Chapter 21

- Abdool Karim, Q., Abdool Karim, S. S., Frohlich, J. A., Grobler, A. C., Baxter, C., Mansoor, L. E., et al. (2010). Effectiveness and safety of tenovir gel, an antiretroviral microbicide, for the prevention of HIV infection in women. *Science*, 329(5996), 1168-1174. Retrieved July 19, 2010, from www.sciencexpress.org.
- Alvarez, M. E., Jakhmola, P., Painter, T. M., Taillepierre, J. D., Romaguera, R. A., Herbst, J. H., et al. (2009). Summary of comments and recommendations from the CDC consultation on the HIV/AIDS epidemic and prevention in the Hispanic/Latino community. *AIDS Education and Prevention*, 21(5 Suppl.), 7-18.
- Aouizerat, B. E., Miasowski, C. A., Gay, C., Portillo, C. J., Coggins, T., Davis, H., et al. (2010). Risk factors and symptoms associated with pain in HIV-infected adults. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*, 21(2), 125-133.
- Bradley-Springer, L., Stevens, L., & Webb, A. (2010). Every nurse is an HIV nurse. *AJN*, 110(3), 32-39.
- *Centers for Disease Control (CDC). (1987). Public Health Service guidelines for counseling and antibody testing to prevent HIV infection and AIDS. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 36(31), 509-515.
- *Centers for Disease Control (CDC). (1991). Recommendations for preventing transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and hepatitis B virus to patients during exposure-prone invasive procedures. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 40(RR-8), 1-9.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2005a). Antiretroviral postexposure prophylaxis after sexual, injection-drug use, or other nonoccupational exposure to HIV in the United States. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 54(RR-2), 1-27.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2005b). Updated Public Health Service guidelines for the management of health-care worker exposure to HIV and recommendations for postexposure prophylaxis. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 54(RR-9), 1-22.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2008). Recommendations and reports: Appendix A—AIDS-defining conditions. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 57(RR-10), 9.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2009a). Guidelines for prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in HIV infected adults and adolescents. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 58(RR-4).
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2009b). Street smart: Prevention of HIV/AIDS and other STDs. Retrieved November 2010, from www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/prev_prog/AHP/resources/guidelines/pro_guidance/print/street-smart.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2011). *HIV surveillance report: Diagnosis of HIV infection and AIDS in the United States and dependent areas, 2009. Volume 21*. Atlanta: Author.
- Cohen, B. (2007). Caring for a patient with HIV/AIDS. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(1), 53-54.
- Coleman, S. M., Rajabian, S., Cabral, H. J., Bradford, J. B., & Tobias, C. R. (2009). Sexual risk behavior and behavior change among persons newly diagnosed with HIV: The impact of

- targeted outreach interventions among hard-to-reach populations. *AIDS Patient Care and STDs*, 23(8), 639-645.
- Cosby, C. (2007). Hematologic disorders associated with human immunodeficiency virus and AIDS. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 30(1), 22-32.
- Courtenay-Quirk, C., Horvath, K. J., Ding, H., Fisher, H., McFarlane, M., Kachur, R., et al. (2010). Perceptions among HIV-related websites among persons recently diagnosed with HIV. *AIDS Patient Care and STDs*, 24(2), 105-115.
- Davenport, A., & Meyers, F. (2009). How to protect yourself after body fluid exposure. *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 22-28.
- De Clercq, E. (2009). Anti-HIV drugs: 25 compounds approved within 25 years after the discovery of HIV. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents*, 33(4), 307-320.
- Diel, R., Loddenkemper, R., Meywald-Walter, K., Gottschalk, R., & Nienhaus, A. (2009). Comparative performance of tuberculin skin test, QuantiFERON-TB-Gold in Tube Assay, and T-Spot. TB Test in contact investigations for tuberculosis. *Chest*, 135(4), 1010-1018.
- Delgado, S., & Dort, K. (2010). HAART and its effects on the heart. *American Nurse Today*, 5(1), 50-53.
- Eaton, L., & Kalichman, S. (2009). Changes in transmission risk behaviors across stages of HIV disease among people living with HIV. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*, 20(1), 39-49.
- Higgins, J., Hoffman, S., & Dworkin, S. (2010). Rethinking gender, heterosexual men, and women's vulnerability to HIV/AIDS. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100(3), 435-445.
- Holzemer, W., & Marefat, S. (2007). Poverty, development, and PEPFAR: A U.S. strategy for combating the global HIV/AIDS epidemic. *Nursing Outlook*, 55(5), 215-217.
- Holzemer, W. L., Human, S., Arudo, J., Rosa, M. E., Hamilton, M. J., Corless, I., et al. (2009). Exploring HIV stigma and quality of life for persons living with HIV infection. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*, 20(3), 161-168.
- Kaufman, C. (2011). The secret life of lymphocytes. *Nursing2011*, 41(6), 50-54.
- Kirton, C. (2008). Managing long-term complications of HIV infection. *Nursing2008*, 38(8), 44-50.
- Kirton, C. (2011). The changing HIV epidemic. *Nursing2011*, 41(1), 36-43.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Meyer, M., & Champion, J. (2010). Protective factors for HIV infection among Mexican American men who have sex with men. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*, 21(1), 53-62.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- O'Leary, C. (2010). Neutropenia and infection. In C. Brown (Ed.), *A guide to oncology symptom management* (pp. 347-362). Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Purcell, D. (2009). Recommendations from a research consultation to address strategies for HIV/AIDS prevention focused on African Americans. *American Journal of Public Health*, 99(11), 1937-1940.
- Scherf, R., & White-Reid, K. (2008). Giving intravenous immunoglobulin. *RN*, 71(1), 29-34.
- Scordo, K. (2010). Treating antiretroviral-induced dyslipidemia in HIV-infected adults. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(7), 32-37.
- Stark, S. (2007). The aging face of HIV/AIDS. *American Nurse Today*, 2(6), 30-34.
- Swan, A., Daley, A., & Crowley, A. (2007). Contraceptive counseling for adolescents with HIV. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(5), 38-44.
- Tangredi, L. A., Danvers, K., Molony, S. L., & Williams, A. (2008). New CDC recommendations for HIV testing in older adults. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(6), 37-44.
- Vance, D. (2010). Aging with HIV: Clinical considerations for an emerging population. *AJN*, 110(3), 42-47.
- Volberding, P., Sande, M., Lange, J., & Greene, W. (2008). *Global HIV/AIDS medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2010). Global epidemic: HIV/AIDS online questions and answers. Retrieved April 2011 from: www.who.int/features/qa/71/en/index.html.
- Wright, S., Maree, J., & Sibanyoni, M. (2009). Treatment of oral thrush in HIV/AIDS patients with lemon juice and lemon grass (*Cymbopogon citratus*) and gentian violet. *Phytomedicine*, 16(2), 118-124.
- Wyatt, G. (2009). Enhancing cultural and contextual intervention strategies to reduce HIV/AIDS among African Americans. *American Journal of Public Health*, 99(11), 1941-1945.

Chapter 22

- Abbas, A., Lichtman, A., & Pillai, S. (2010). *Cellular and molecular immunology* (Updated 6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Bryant, H. (2007). Anaphylaxis: Recognition, treatment, and education. *Emergency Nurse*, 15(2), 24-28.
- Cain, J., Daly, M., & Powers, J. (2007). Act fast against anaphylaxis. *American Nurse Today*, 2(2), 30.
- Conboy-Ellis, K., & Braker-Shaver, S. (2007). Intranasal steroids and allergic rhinitis. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(4), 44-49.
- Gelpi, C., & Jacob, S. (2008). Instructions for educating patients on ROAT testing in conjunction with patch testing. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(2), 139, 143.
- IV Rounds. (2008). Handling a type I hypersensitivity reaction. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 60.
- Jevon, P. (2010). Recognition and treatment of anaphylaxis in hospital. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(16), 1015-1020.
- Kemp, S. (2007). Office approach to anaphylaxis: Sooner better than later. *American Journal of Medicine*, 160(8), 664-668.
- Kruszka, P., & O'Brian, R. (2009). Diagnosis and management of Sjögren syndrome. *American Family Physician*, 79(6), 465-470.
- Lehman, J., & Lieberman, P. (2007). Office-based management of allergic rhinitis in adults. *The American Journal of Medicine*, 120(8), 659-663.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Morris, A. (2009). Defining allergy. *Practice Nurse*, 37(9), 18-22.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pullen, R., Brewer, S., & Ballard, A. (2009). Putting a face on systemic lupus erythematosus. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 22-28.
- Rosen, A., & Casciola-Rosen, L. (2009). Autoantigens in systemic autoimmunity: Critical partner in pathogenesis. *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 265, 625-631.

- *Sampson, H. A., Muñoz-Furlong, A., Campbell, R. L., Adkinson, N. F., Jr., Bock, S. A., Branum, A., et al. (2006). Second symposium on the definition and management of anaphylaxis: Summary report—Second National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease/Food Allergy and Anaphylaxis Network symposium. *Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, 117(2), 391-397.
- Walker, S., Chantrell, J., Clarke, S., McArthur, R., Proudfoot, C., Roberts, J., et al. (2010). Primary care training for adults and children with confirmed anaphylaxis requiring treatment with adrenaline. *Primary Health Care*, 20(7), 33-38.
- Watkins, J. (2010). Pruritus, part 2: Urticaria. *Practice Nursing*, 21(1), 33-37.
- Watson, L. (2010). Recognition, assessment and management of anaphylaxis. *Nursing Standard*, 24(46), 35-39.
- White, E. (2010). Epinephrine administration: An action plan. *Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 35(3), 33-39.
- ### Chapter 23
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2009). *Cancer facts and figures for African Americans—2009-2010*. Report No. 8614.09. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010). *Cancer prevention and early detection. Facts & figures—2010*. Report No. 8600.10. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Calzone, K., Masny, A., & Jenkins, J. (Eds.). (2010). *Genetics and genomics in oncology nursing practice*. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Canadian Cancer Society's Steering Committee. (2010). *Canadian Cancer Statistics, 2010*. Toronto: Canadian Cancer Society.
- Crockett-Maillet, G. (2010). Know the red flags of hereditary cancers. *Nurse Practitioner*, 35(7), 39-43.
- Feero, G., Guttmacher, E., & Collins, F. (2010). Genomic medicine: An updated primer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 2001-2011.
- *Frank-Stromborg, M., & Olsen, S. (2001). *Cancer prevention in diverse populations: Cultural implications for health care professionals*. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Markowitz, S., & Bertagnolli, M. (2009). Molecular origins of cancer: Molecular basis of colorectal cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 361(25), 2449-2460.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pesquera, M., Yoder, L., & Lynk, M. (2008). Improving cross-cultural awareness and skills to reduce health disparities in cancer. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(2), 114-120.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Toxicology Program. (2011). *Report on carcinogens* (12th ed.). Retrieved July 2011 from <http://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/go/roc12>.
- Wells, S. (2008). Cervical cancer: An overview with suggested practice and policy goals. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(1), 43-50.
- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Bieck, T., Phillips, S., & Steele-Moses, S. (2010). Appraising the evidence for avoiding lotions or topical agents prior to radiation therapy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 103-105.
- Binner, M., Ross, D., & Browner, I. (2011). Chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy: Assessment of oncology nurses' knowledge and practice. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 38(4), 448-454.
- Borsellino, M., & Young, M. (2011). Anticipatory coping: Taking control of hair loss. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(3), 311-315.
- Breem, S., & Kumar, N. (2011). Management of treatment-related symptoms in patients with breast cancer: Current strategies and future directions. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(1), 63-71.
- Brown, C. (Ed.). (2010). *A guide to oncology symptom management*. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Byar, K., & Workman, M. (2012). Targeted therapies to treat cancer. In J. Kee, E. Hayes, & L. McCuistion (Eds.), *Pharmacology: A nursing process approach* (7th ed., pp. 543-567). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Camporeale, J. (2008). Basics of radiation therapy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(2), 193-195.
- Canadian Cancer Society's Steering Committee. (2010). *Canadian cancer statistics, 2010*. Toronto: Canadian Cancer Society.
- Collins, A., & Garner, M. (2007). Caring for lung cancer patients receiving photodynamic therapy. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(2), 53-60.
- *Cope, D., & Reb, A. (Eds.). (2006). *An evidence-based approach to the treatment and care of the older adult with cancer*. Pittsburgh: ONS Publishing.
- Donovan, D. (2009). Management of peripheral neuropathy caused by microtubule inhibitors. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 686-694.
- Dunsford, J. (2008). Nursing management of epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitor-induced toxicities. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(3), 405-407.
- Eaby, B. (2008). Managing skin reactions to targeted cancer therapy. *American Nurse Today*, 3(7), 20-21.
- Evens, K., & Eschiti, V. (2009). Cognitive effects of cancer treatment: "Chemo brain" explained. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 661-666.
- Fitch, M., Maxwell, C., Ryan, C., Löthman, H., Drudge-Coates, L., & Costa, L. (2009). Bone metastases from advanced cancers: Clinical implications and treatment options. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 701-710.
- Flores, I., & Ershler, W. (2010). Managing neutropenia in older patients with cancer receiving chemotherapy in a community setting. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 81-86.
- Frankel, C. (2010). Trastuzumab cardio-oncology: Lessons learned. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(5), 630-640.
- Gosselin, T., Gilliard, L., & Tinnen, R. (2008). Assessing the need for a dietitian in radiation oncology. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(5), 781-787.
- Gosselin, T., Schneider, S., Plambeck, M., & Rowe, K. (2010). A prospective randomized, placebo-controlled skin care study in women diagnosed with breast cancer undergoing radiation therapy. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(5), 619-626.
- Granda-Cameron, C., DeMille, D., Lynch, M. P., Huntzinger, C., Alcorn, T., Levicoff, J., et al. (2010). An interdisciplinary
- ### Chapter 24
- Abarado, C., & Mahon, S. (2010). Androgen-deprivation bone loss in patients with prostate cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(2), 191-198.

- approach to manage cancer cachexia. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 72-80.
- Hadaway, L. (2009). Preventing and managing peripheral extravasation. *Nursing2009*, 39(10), 26-27.
- Harris, D. J., Eilers, J., Harriman, A., Cashavelly, B. J., & Maxwell, C. (2008). Putting evidence into practice: Evidence-based interventions for the management of oral mucositis. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(1), 141-152.
- Hawkins, R., & Grunberg, S. (2009). Chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting: Challenges and opportunities for improved patient outcomes. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(1), 54-64.
- Huang, R. S., & Ratain, M. (2009). Pharmacogenetics and pharmacogenomics of anticancer agents. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 59(1), 42-55.
- Karius, D. (2010). Intraperitoneal chemotherapy: Improving the odds for ovarian cancer patients. *American Nurse Today*, 5(5), 12-15.
- King, J. (2008). What is tumor lysis syndrome? *Nursing2008*, 38(5), 18.
- Kuchinski, A., Reading, M., & Lash, A. (2009). Treatment-related fatigue and exercise in patients with cancer: A systematic review. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(3), 174-180.
- McGraw, B. (2008). At an increased risk: Tumor lysis syndrome. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(4), 563-565.
- Miller, S. (2010). Anemia. In C. Brown (Ed.), *A guide to oncology symptom management* (pp. 29-47). Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Moody, M., & Jackowski, J. (2010). Are patients on oral chemotherapy in your practice setting safe? *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(3), 339-346.
- Moore, S. (2010). Nonadherence in patients with breast cancer receiving oral therapies. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 41-47.
- Myers, J., Pierce, J., & Pazdernik, T. (2008). Neurotoxicity of chemotherapy in relation to cytokine release, the blood-brain barrier, and cognitive impairment. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 35(6), 916-920.
- O'Leary, C. (2010). Neutropenia and infection. In C. Brown (Ed.), *A guide to oncology symptom management* (pp. 347-362). Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Poirier, P. (2011). The impact of fatigue on role functioning during radiation therapy. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 38(4), 457-465.
- Polovich, M., Whitford, J., & Olsen, M. (Eds.). (2009). *Chemotherapy and biotherapy guidelines and recommendations for practice* (3rd ed.). Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Quirion, E. (2009). Filgrastim and pegfilgrastim use in patients with neutropenia. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 324-328.
- Running, A., & Turnbeaugh, E. (2011). Oncology pain and complementary therapy: A review of the literature. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(4), 374-379.
- Ruppert, R. (2011). Radiation therapy 101: What you need to know to help cancer patients understand their treatment and cope with side effects. *American Nurse Today*, 6(1), 24-29.
- Simchowitz, B., Shiman, L., Spencer, J., Brouillard, D., Gross, A., Connor, M., et al. (2010). Perceptions and experiences of patients receiving oral chemotherapy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 447-453.
- Simmons, C. (2010). Oral chemotherapy drugs: Handle with care. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 45-47.
- Smink, K., & Schneider, S. (2008). Overview of stereotactic body radiotherapy and the nursing role. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(6), 889-893.
- Thompson, N. (2009). Keeping neutropenic patients safe. *American Nurse Today*, 4(3), 29-31.
- Thompson, N. (2010). When cancer spreads to the bone. *American Nurse Today*, 5(9), 8-10.
- Toftthagen, C. (2010). Patient perceptions associated with chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(3), E22-E28.
- Toftthagen, C., McAllister, D., & McMillan, S. (2011). Peripheral neuropathy in patients with colorectal cancer receiving oxaliplatin. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(2), 182-188.
- Visovsky, C., Meyer, R., Roller, J., & Poppas, M. (2008). Evaluation and management of peripheral neuropathy in diabetic patients with cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(2), 243-247.
- Wanchai, A., Armer, J., & Stewart, B. (2011). Nonpharmacologic supportive strategies to promote quality of life in patients experiencing cancer-related fatigue: A systematic review. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(2), 203-214.
- Waring, J., & Gosselin, T. (2010). Developing a high-dose rate prostate brachytherapy program. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(2), 199-203.
- Weaver, C. (2009). Caring for a patient after mastectomy. *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 44-48.
- Winkeljohn, D. (2010). Adherence to oral cancer therapies: Nursing interventions. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 461-466.

Chapter 25

- Backman, C., Zoutman, D. E., & Marck, P. B. (2008). An integrative review of the current evidence on the relationship between hand hygiene interventions and the incidence of health care-associated infections. *American Journal of Infection Control*, 36(5), 333-348.
- Barnes, B. E., & Sampson, D. A. (2011). A literature review on community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in the United States: Clinical information for primary care nurse practitioners. *Journal of the Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 23(1), 23-32.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2002). Guideline for hand hygiene in health-care settings: Recommendations of the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee and the HICPAC/SHEA/APIC/IDSA Hand Hygiene Task Force. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 51(RR-16), 1-44.
- *Cheek, D. J., McGehee-Smith, H., Cunneen, J., & Cartwright, M. (2005). Sepsis: Taking a deeper look. *Nursing2005*, 35(1), 38-42.
- Childs, S. G. (2008). Biofilm: The pathogenesis of slime glycoalyx. *Orthopedic Nursing*, 27(6), 361-368.
- *Cunha, B. A. (2006). New uses for older antibiotics: Nitrofurantoin, amikacin, colistin, polymyxin B, doxycycline, and minocycline revisited. *Medical Clinics of North America*, 90, 1089-1107.
- Grossman, S., & Mager, D. (2010). *Clostridium difficile*: Implications for nursing. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(3), 155-158.
- Hurlow, J., & Bowler, P. G. (2009). Clinical experience with wound biofilm and management: A case series. *Ostomy and Wound Management*, 55(4), 38-49.

- *Korniewicz, D., & Masri, M. E. (2007). Effect of aloe-vera impregnated gloves on hand hygiene attitudes of health care workers. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(4), 247-252.
- *Lashley, F. R. (2006). Emerging infectious diseases at the beginning of the 21st century. *Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 11(1), 1-20.
- Lo, S. F., Hayter, M., Change, C. J., Wu, W. Y., & Lee, L. L. (2008). A systematic review of silver-releasing dressings in the management of infected chronic wounds. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 17(15), 1973-1985.
- *Metlay, J. P., Powers, J. H., Dudley, M. N., Christiansen, K., & Finch, R. G. (2006). Antimicrobial drug resistance, regulation, and research. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 12(2), 183-190.
- Palese, A., Buchini, S., Deroma, L., & Bartone, F. (2010). The effectiveness of the ultrasound bladder scanner in reducing urinary tract infections: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 19(21-22), 2970-2979.
- Parker, D., Callan, L., Harwood, J., Thompson, D. L., Wilde, M., & Gray, M. (2009). Nursing interventions to reduce the risk of catheter-associated urinary tract infection, Part 1: Catheter selection. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy, Continence Nursing*, 36(1), 23-34.
- Ramage, G., Culshaw, S., Jones, B., & Williams, C. (2010). Are we any closer to beating the biofilm: Novel methods of biofilm control. *Current Opinion in Infectious Disease*, 23(6), 560-566.
- Richmond, I., Bernstein, A., Creen, C., Cunningham, C., & Rudy, M. (2007). Reducing harm from MRSA. *Nursing Management*, 38(8), 22-27.
- *Romero, D. V. (2006). Hand-to-hand combat: Preventing MRSA. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 31(3), 16-23.
- Sheff, B. (2005). Avian influenza: Are you ready for a pandemic? *Nursing2005*, 35(9), 26-27.
- *Siegel, J. D., Rhinehart, E., Jackson, M., Chiarello, L., the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. (2007). *Guidelines for isolation precautions: Preventing transmission of infectious agents in healthcare settings 2007*. Atlanta: CDC.
- Solseng, T., Vinson, H., Gibbs, P., & Greenwald, B. (2009). Biofilm growth on the Lopez enteral feeding valve cultured in enteral nutrition: Potential implications for medical-surgical patients, nursing care, and research. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(4), 225-227, 233.
- Stickler, D. J., & Feneley, R. C. (2010). The encrustation and blockage of long-term indwelling catheters: A way forward in prevention and control. *Spinal Cord*, 48(11), 784-790.
- Stone, P. W., Pogorzelska, M., Kunches, L., & Hirshhom, L. R. (2008). Hospital staffing and health-care associated infections: A systematic review of the literature. *Current Opinion in Infectious Diseases*, 47(7), 937-944.
- *Todd, B. (2006a). Beyond MRSA: VISA and VRSA. *AJN*, 106(4), 28-30.
- *Todd, B. (2006b). *Clostridium difficile*: Familiar pathogen, changing epidemiology. *AJN*, 106(5), 33-36.
- Bianchi, J., & Cameron, J. (2009). Assessment of skin integrity in the elderly 1. Wound care, *British Journal of Community Nursing*, 14, S26-S32.
- Bradford, P. (2009). Skin cancer in skin of color. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(4), 170-178.
- *Gaskin, F. C. (1986). Detection of cyanosis in the person with dark skin. *Journal of the National Black Nurses Association*, 1(1), 52-60.
- Helfrich, Y., Sachs, D., & Voorhees, J. (2008). Overview of skin aging and photoaging. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(3), 177-183.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- LeBlanc, K., & Christensen, D. (2011). Demystifying skin tears, Part 2. *Nursing2011*, 41(7), 16-17.
- *Marks, J., & Miller, J. (2006). *Lookingbill and Marks' principles of dermatology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McEnroe-Petitte, D. (2011). Melanoma. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 45.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pullen, R. (2007). Assessing skin lesions. *Nursing2007*, 37(8), 44-45.
- Smith, M. (2008). Healthier aging: Taking a closer look for skin cancer. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 58-60.
- *Stanley, W. (2003). Nailing a key assessment. *Nursing2003*, 33(8), 50-51.
- The Skin Cancer Foundation. (2010). Understanding melanoma—Warning signs: The ABCDEs of melanoma. Retrieved May 2010, from www.skincancer.org.
- Thompson, P., Langemo, D., Hanson, D., Anderson, J., & Hunter, S. (2008). Assessing skin rashes. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 59.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Wheeler, T. (2008). The role of skin assessment in older people. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, 14(9), 380-384.

Chapter 27

- Ackerman, C. (2011). "Not on my watch": Treating and preventing pressure ulcers. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(2), 86-93.
- Alderden, J., Whitney, J., Taylor, S., & Zaratkiewicz, S. (2011). Risk profile characteristics associated with outcomes of hospital-acquired pressure ulcers: A retrospective review. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(4), 30-42.
- Alexis, A., & Lamb, A. (2009). Concomitant therapy for acne in patients with skin of color: A case-based approach. *Dermatology Nursing*, 29(1), 33-36.
- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Aschenbrenner, D. (2011). New drug treats metastatic melanoma. *American Journal of Nursing*, 111(7), 25-26.
- Baron, E., Kirkland, E., & Domingo, D. (2008). Advances in photoprotection. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(4), 265-270, 282-283.
- Bianchi, J., & Cameron, J. (2008). Management of skin conditions in the older population 2. *Wound Care*, 13(9), S6-S14.
- Bianchi, J., & Cameron, J. (2009). Assessment of skin integrity in the elderly 1. *Wound Care*, 14, S26-S32.

Chapter 26

- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Anderson, J., Langemo, D., Hanson, D., Thompson, P., & Hunter, S. (2007). What you can learn from a comprehensive skin assessment. *Nursing2007*, 37(4), 65-66.

- Blaney, W. (2010). Taking steps to prevent pressure ulcers. *Nursing2010*, 110(3), 44-47.
- Borlitz, J. (2009). Commonly missed dermatologic conditions. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(10), 35-45.
- Bradford, P. (2009). Skin cancer in skin of color. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(4), 170-177, 206.
- Broderick, N. (2009). Understanding chronic wound healing. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(10), 16-22.
- Christopher, G., & Meires, J. (2008). Treating acute onset psoriasis. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(7), 8-10.
- *Cuzzell, J. (2002a). Wound assessment and evaluation of wound dressings: Confusion or choice? *Dermatology Nursing*, 14(3), 187-188, 191.
- *Cuzzell, J. (2002b). Wound assessment and evaluation: Wound documentation guidelines. *Dermatology Nursing*, 14(4), 265-266.
- *Cuzzell, J. (2002c). Wound healing: Translating theory into clinical practice. *Dermatology Nursing*, 14(4), 257-261.
- Czerkasij V. (2010). Dermal fillers: Help patients put their best face forward. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(10), 43-47.
- Day, C., & Boynton, P. (2008). Implementation of wound management in a rural setting, *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(9), 35-39.
- DiAgostino, A. (2009). Skin failure in the acute care setting. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(2), 125-126.
- Dorner, B., Posthauer, M.E., & Thomas, D. (2009). The role of nutrition in pressure ulcer prevention and treatment: National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel white paper. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care*, 22(5), 212-221.
- Dunleavy, K. (2008). Putting a dent in pressure ulcer rates. *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 20-21.
- Frankel, A.J., & Goldenburg, G. (2010). Insights into treating palmoplantar psoriasis. *Skin & Aging*, 18(8). Retrieved October 2010, from www.skinandaging.com/content/insights-treating-palmoplantar-psoriasis.
- Gordon, R. (2009). Skin cancer more than skin deep. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(4), 20-27.
- Gottlieb, A., Kardos, M., & Yee, M. (2009). Current biologic treatments for psoriasis. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(5), 259-272.
- Hanson, D., Langemo, D., Anderson, J., Hunter, S., & Thompson, P. (2007). Measuring wounds. *Nursing2007*, 37(2), 18-21.
- Hanson, D., Langemo, D., Anderson, J., & Thompson, P. (2009). Wound and skin care: Can pressure mapping prevent ulcers? *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 50-51.
- Hanson, D., Thompson, P., Langemo, D., Hunter, S., & Anderson, J. (2007). Pressure mapping: A new path to pressure-ulcer prevention. *American Nurse Today*, 2(11), 10-12.
- Helfrich, Y., Sachs, D., & Voorhees, J. (2008). Overview of skin aging and photoaging. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(3), 177-183.
- Hess, C. (2009). Wound bed preparation. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 57.
- Hill, M. (2008a). Fungal infections. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(2), 137-138.
- Hill, M. (2008b). Viral infections. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(1), 57-58.
- Hinton, D. (2009). Helping patients with psoriasis. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(4), 214-215.
- Holcomb, S. (2007). Dodging the bullae: Stevens-Johnson syndrome. *Nursing2007*, 37(6), 64cc1-64cc3.
- Holcomb, S. (2008). MRSA infections. *Nursing2008*, 38(6), 33.
- Jackson, M., McKenney, T., Drumm, J., Merrick, B., LeMaster, T., & VanGilder, C. (2011). Pressure ulcer prevention in high-risk postoperative cardiovascular patients. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(4), 44-53.
- Kayser-Jones, J., Beard, R., & Sharpp, T. (2009). Dying with a stage IV pressure ulcer. *AJN*, 109(1), 40-48.
- Kumar, P. (2008). Classification of skin substitutes. *Burns*, 34(1), 148-149.
- *Langemo, D., Anderson, J., Hanson, D., Hunter, S., Thompson, P., & Posthauer, M.E. (2006). Nutritional considerations in wound care. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care*, 19(6), 297-303.
- Laustsen, G., & Neilson, T. (2007). Prevent shingles with Zostavax. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(6), 6-7.
- Ledezma, B. (2009). Ipilimumab for advanced melanoma: A nursing perspective. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(1), 97-104.
- Lee, M., & Kalb, R. (2008). Systemic therapy for psoriasis. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(2), 105-111.
- Leung-Chen, P. (2008). Everybody's crying MRSA. *AJN*, 108(8), 29-31.
- *Marks, J.G., Jr., & Miller, J. (2006). *Lookingbill & Mark's principles of dermatology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McEnroe-Petitte, D. (2011). Melanoma. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 45.
- Meadows-Oliver, M. (2009). Tinea capitis: Diagnostic criteria and treatment options. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(5), 281-286.
- Meehan, M. (2009). Pressure ulcers: The stakes just got higher. *Nursing2009*, 39(10), 45-47.
- Mendyk, M. (2008). Community-associated MRSA: Coming to a patient near you? *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(3), 26-32.
- Munn, Z. (2008). Interventions for treating scabies. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 63(2), 144-145.
- National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel (NPUAP). (2010, January). Updated staging system. Retrieved October 2010, from www.npuap.org.
- Novatnack, E., & Schween, S. (2007). Shingles: What you should know. *RN*, 70(6), 27-31.
- Nursing2009. (2009a). Head lice. *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 31.
- Nursing2009. (2009b). Photosensitivity. *Nursing2009*, 39(9), 32.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Okan, D., Woo, K., Ayello, E.A., & Sibbald, G. (2007). The role of moisture in wound healing. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care*, 20(1), 39-53.
- Pritchard, M. J., & Hwang, S. W. (2009). Cases: Severe anemia from bedbugs. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 181(5), 287-288.
- Rock, R. (2011). Get positive results with negative-pressure wound therapy. *American Nurse Today*, 6(1), 49-51.
- Rubin, K. (2009). Management of metastatic melanoma: Nursing challenges today and tomorrow. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(1), 81-89.
- Rushing, J. (2008). Assessing a patient for lice infestation. *Nursing2008*, 38(7), 20.
- Skin Cancer Foundation. (2010). Understanding melanoma. *The ABCDEs of melanoma*. Retrieved May 2010, from www.skincancer.org/the-abcde-of-melanoma.html.
- Slachta, P. (2008). Caring for chronic wounds: A knowledge update. *American Nurse Today*, 3(7), 27-31.
- Smith, L. (2007). Toxic epidermal necrolysis. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(3), 333-336.

- Smith, M. (2008). Taking a closer look for skin cancer. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 58-60.
- Snow, M. (2007). The truth about scabies. *Nursing2007*, 37(2), 28-30.
- Snyder, L. (2008). Wound basics: Type, treatment, and care. *RN*, 71(8), 32-36.
- Stranger, C. (2009). Actinic keratosis: Do the numbers add up? *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(2), 36-39.
- Sutton, D., & Thomas, D. (2008). Don't let the bedbugs bite! Identifying and managing infestations. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(8), 28-33.
- Thackman, J., McElwain, D., & Long, R. (2008). The use of hyperbaric oxygen therapy to treat chronic wounds: A review. *Wound Repair and Regeneration*, 16(3), 321-330.
- Thomas, R. (2009). Dishing the dirt on MRSA. *RN*, 72(6), 16-23.
- Thomas, S. (2008). Hydrocolloid dressings in the management of acute wounds: A review of the literature. *International Wound Journal*, 5(5), 602-613.
- Torrens, R., & Swan, B. (2009). Promoting prevention and early recognition of malignant melanoma. *Dermatology Nursing*, 21(3), 115-122.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA). (2011). Approvals. Retrieved April 2011 from www.fda.gov/Drugs/NewsEvents/Newsroom/PressAnnouncements/ucm248390.htm.
- van der Veen, V. C., van der Wal, M. B., van Leeuwen, M. C., Ulrich, M. M., & Middelkoop, E. (2010). Biological background of dermal substitutes. *Burns*, 36(3), 305-321.
- Van Rijswijk, L. (2009). Wound wise: Pressure ulcer prevention updates. *AJN*, 109(8), 56.
- Wallis, L. (2010). FDA warning about negative pressure wound therapy. *AJN*, 110(3), 16.
- Wheeler, T. (2008). The role of skin assessment in older people. *British Journal of Community Nursing*, 14(9), 380-384.
- Wielowski, I. (2009). Shingles and the vaccine to prevent it. *AJN*, 109(6), 63-65.
- Willson, K. (2011). They only come out at night: Bed bugs and their alarming resurgence. *Nursing2011*, 41(1), 54-58.
- Woo, K., Ayello, E. A., & Sibbald, R. G. (2007). The edge effect: Current therapeutic options to advance the wound edge. *Advances in Skin & Wound Care*, 20(2), 99-117.
- World Health Organization. (2010). Leprosy. Retrieved November 2010, from www.who.int/topics/leprosy/en/.
- Yantis, M., O'Toole, K., & Ring, P. (2009). Leech therapy. *AJN*, 109(4), 36-42.
- Zulkowski, K., & Gray-Leach, K. (2009). Staging pressure ulcers: What's the buzz in wound care? *AJN*, 109(1), 27-30.
- Blakeney, P., Rosenberg, L., Rosenberg, M., & Faber, A. W. (2008). Psychosocial care of persons with severe burns. *Burns*, 34(4), 433-440.
- Brown-Guttovz, H. (2011). Burn injury. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 72.
- Cancio, L. C., Batchinsky, A. I., Dubick, M. A., Park, M. S., Black, I. H., Gomez, R., et al. (2007). Inhalation injury: Pathophysiology and clinical care proceedings of a symposium conducted at the Trauma Institute of San Antonio. *Burns*, 33(6), 681-692.
- Carrougher, G., Hoffman, H., Nakamura, D., Lezotte, D., Soltani, M., Leahy, L., et al. (2009). The effect of virtual reality on pain and range of motion in adults with burn injuries. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 30(5), 785-791.
- Connor-Ballard, P. (2009a). Understanding and managing burn pain: Part 1. *AJN*, 109(4), 48-56.
- Connor-Ballard, P. (2009b). Understanding and managing burn pain: Part 2. *AJN*, 109(5), 54-62.
- Edelman, D., Maleyko-Jacobs, S., White, M. T., Lucas, C. E., & Ledgerwood, A. M. (2008). Smoking and home oxygen: A preventable public health hazard. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 29(1), 119-122.
- Harrison, C., & MacNeil, S. (2008). The mechanism of skin graft contracture: An update on current research and potential future therapies. *Burns*, 34(2), 153-163.
- Herndon, D. (2007). *Total burn care* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Jeffery, S. (2009). Current burn wound management. *Trauma*, 11(4), 241-248.
- Klein, J., & Hoffman, C. (2010). Relaxation and visual imagery techniques: Do they work? Can they really help burn patients? *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(3), 169-175.
- Kumar, P. (2008). Classification of skin substitutes. *Burns*, 34(1), 148-149.
- Laing, C. (2010). Acute carbon monoxide toxicity. *Nursing2010*, 40(11), 38-43.
- Macrino, S., Slater, H., Aballay, A., Goldfarb, I. W., & Caushaj, P. F. (2008). A three decade review of thermal injuries among the elderly at a regional burn centre. *Burns*, 34(4), 509-511.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mlcak, R., Suman, O., & Herndon, D. (2007). Respiratory management of inhalation injury. *Burns*, 33(1), 2-13.
- Moss, L. (2010). Treatment of the burn patient in primary care. *Nurse Practitioner*, 35(8), 24-31.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Patient education series: Severe sunburn. (2009). *Nursing2009*, 39(7), 31.
- Pham, T. N., Cancio, L. C., & Gibran, N. S. (2008). American Burn Association Practice Guidelines: Burn shock resuscitation. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 29(1), 257-266.
- Prelack, K., Dylewski, M., & Sheridan, R. (2007). Practical guidelines for nutritional management of burn injury and recovery. *Burns*, 33(1), 14-24.
- Schnell, H., & Zaspel, J. (2008). Cooling extensive burns: Sprayed coolants can improve initial cooling management. *Burns*, 34(4), 503-508.
- Tan, X., Yowler, C., Super, D., & Fratianna, R. (2010). The efficacy of music therapy protocols for decreasing pain, anxiety, and muscle tension levels during burn dressing changes: A prospective randomized crossover trial. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 31(4), 590-597.

Chapter 28

- Alvarado, R., Chung, K., Cancio, L., & Wolf, S. (2009). Burn resuscitation. *Burns*, 35(1), 4-14.
- American Burn Association. (2010). National Burn Repository: Summary of the findings 2000-2009. Website: www.ameriburn.org.
- Arnoldo, B., Klein, M., & Gibran, B. S. (2006). Practice guidelines for electrical burns. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 27(4), 439-447.
- Arnstein, P. (2010). What's the best way to cool my patient's burn pain? *Nursing2010*, 40(3), 61-62.
- Benner, J. (2008). Online support for burn victims. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 23.

- Thomas, S. (2008). Hydrocolloid dressings in the management of acute wounds: A review of the literature. *International Wound Journal*, 5(5), 602-613.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Van der Veen, V. C., van der Wal, M. B., Van Leeuwen, M. C., Ulrich, M. M., & Middelkoop, E. (2010). Biological background of dermal substitutes. *Burns*, 36(3), 305-321.
- Windel, E. M. (2008). Nutrition support in major burn injury: Case analysis of dietetic activity, resource use and cost. *Journal of Human Nutrition and Dietetics*, 21(2), 165-173.
- ### Chapter 29
- Benzocaine spray and methemoglobinemia. (2009). *Alberta RN*, 7(2), 28.
- Booker, R. (2009). Interpretation and evaluation of pulmonary function tests. *Nursing Standard*, 23(39), 46-56.
- Bradley, R. (2007). Improving respiratory assessment skills. *The Journal for Nurse Practitioners*, 3(4), 276-277.
- Curran, R. (2009). Vital signs, part 3: Respiratory rate, temperature, and beyond. *EMS Magazine*, 38(5), 38-45.
- DeMeulenaere, S. (2007). Pulse oximetry: Uses and limitations. *The Journal for Nurse Practitioners*, 3(5), 312-317.
- Evans, T., Lworato, L., & Lord, J. (2008). Capnography: The seventh vital sign. *RT: The Journal for Respiratory Care Practitioners*, 21(1), 30-32.
- Fernandez, M., Burns, K., Calhoun, B., George, S., Martin, B., & Weaver, C. (2007). Evaluation of a new pulse oximeter sensor. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(2), 146-151.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Minini, N., Marino, M., Kohler, W., & Stephan, M. (2009). Pulse oximetry: An essential tool for the busy med-surg nurse. *American Nurse Today*, 4(9), 31-36.
- Monitoring your adult patient with bedside pulse oximetry. (2008). *Nursing2008*, 38(9), 42-44.
- Murgu, S., Pecson, J., & Colt, H. (2011). Flexible bronchoscopy assisted by noninvasive positive pressure ventilation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(3), 70-76.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pruitt, B. (2010). Interpreting ABGs: An inside look at your patient's status. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 31-35.
- Pullen, R. (2010). Assessing the paranasal sinuses. *Nursing2010*, 40(5), 49-50.
- Ramirez, R., Pickar, T., Frens, S., Cappon, J., & Cleary, J. (2009). Capnography: A better way? *RT: The Journal for Respiratory Care Practitioners*, 22(1), 30-33.
- Roberts, M. (2010). Clinical utility and adverse effects of amiodarone therapy. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(4), 333-338.
- *Rushing, J. (2006). Assisting with thoracentesis. *Nursing2006*, 36(12), 18.
- Sarna, L., & Bialous, S. (2010). Using evidence-based guidelines to help patients stop smoking. *American Nurse Today*, 5(1), 44-47.
- Schwartz, A., & Powell, S. (2009). Brush up on oral assessment and care. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 30-32.
- The Joint Commission. (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved November 15, 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Valdez-Lowe, C., Ghareeb, S., & Artinian, N. (2009). Pulse oximetry in adults. *AJN*, 109(6), 52-59.
- *Wesley, C. (2006). Responding to methemoglobinemia after bronchoscopy. *Nursing2006*, 36(12), 64cc1-64cc2.
- Workman, M. L., & Winkelman, C. (2008). Genetic influences in common respiratory disorders. *Critical Care Clinics of North America*, 20(2), 171-189.
- ### Chapter 30
- Davis, M., & Johnston, J. (2008). Maintaining supplemental oxygen during transport. *AJN*, 108(1), 35-36.
- *Dixon, B., & Tasota, F. (2003). Action stat: Inadvertant tracheal decannulation. *Nursing2003*, 33(1), 96.
- Edelman, D., Maleyko-Jacobs, S., White, M., et al. (2008). Smoking and home oxygen therapy: A preventable public health hazard. *Journal of Burn Research*, 29(1), 119-122.
- Fieder, L., Mitchell, P., & Bridges, E. (2010). Oral care practices for orally intubated critically ill adults. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(3), 175-183.
- Fischer, R. (2007). Prevent fires when using oxygen cylinder regulators. *Nursing2007*, 37(1), 20.
- Fortney, S., & Powers, J. (2008). Dodging a trach tragedy. *American Nurse Today*, 3(10), 42.
- Fournier, M. (2010). Derailing disaster after pulmonary aspiration. *American Nurse Today*, 5(7), 41.
- Frace, M. (2010). Tracheostomy care on the medical-surgical unit. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(1), 58-61.
- Grams, L., & Spremulli, M. (2008). Assessing a patient for dysphagia. *Nursing2008*, 38(8), 15.
- Halm, M., & Krisko-Hagel, K. (2008). Instilling normal saline with suctioning: Beneficial technique or potentially harmful sacred cow? *American Journal of Critical Care*, 17(5), 469-472.
- *Happ, M. B., Tate, J., & Garrett, K. (2006). Nonspeaking older adults in the ICU. *AJN*, 106(5), 29.
- *Mahler, D., Fierro-Carrion, G., & Baird, J. (2003). Evaluation of dyspnea in the elderly. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, 19(1), 19-33.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pullen, R. (2007). Communicating with a patient on mechanical ventilation. *Nursing2007*, 37(4), 22.
- Reed, C., Reineck, C., & Fonseca, I. (2011). Communicating with intubated patients: A new approach. *American Nurse Today*, 6(7), 34-35.
- Regan, E., & Dallachiesa, L. (2009). How to care for a patient with a tracheostomy. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 34-39.
- Siela, D. (2010). Evaluation standards for management of artificial airways. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(4), 76-78.
- Sole, M. L., Penoyer, D. A., Su, X., et al. (2009). Assessment of endotracheal cuff pressure by continuous monitoring: A pilot study. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(2), 133-143.

- Sole, M. L., Su, X., Talbert, S., et al. (2011). Evaluation of an intervention to maintain endotracheal tube cuff pressure within therapeutic range. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 20(2), 109-118.
- Stich, J., & Cassella, D. (2009). Getting inspired about oxygen delivery devices. *Nursing2009*, 39(9), 51-54.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Turnbull, D., Furlonger, A., & Andrzejowski, J. (2008). The influence of changes in end-tidal carbon dioxide upon the bispectral index. *Anesthesia*, 63(5), 458-462.
- ### Chapter 31
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2011). *Cancer facts and figures, 2011*. 01-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Berry, D. (2008). Case study: Obstructive sleep apnea. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(1), 11-16.
- Bieck, T., Phillips, S., & Steele-Moses, S. (2010). Appraising the evidence for avoiding lotions or topical agents prior to radiation therapy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 103-105.
- Callaway, C. (2011). Rethinking the head and neck cancer population: The human papillomavirus association. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(2), 165-170.
- Canadian Cancer Society's Steering Committee. (2010). *Canadian cancer statistics, 2010*. Toronto: Canadian Cancer Society.
- Duffy, S. A., Scheumann, A. L., Fowler, K. E., Darling-Fisher, C., & Terrell, J. E. (2010). Perceived difficulty quitting predicts enrollment in a smoking-cessation program for patients with head and neck cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(3), 349-356.
- Happ, M. B., Sereika, S., Garrett, K., et al. (2011). Nurse-patient communication interactions in the intensive care unit. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 20(2), e28-e40.
- Jang, Y., & Kwon, M. (2010). Modified extracorporeal septoplasty technique in rhinoplasty for severely deviated noses. *Annals of Otolaryngology, & Laryngology*, 119(5), 331-335.
- Lambertz, C. K., Gruell, J., Robenstein, V., Mueller-Funaiole, V., Cummings, K., & Knapp, V. (2010). NO STOPS: Reducing treatment breaks during chemoradiation for head and neck cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(5), 585-593.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nance-Floyd, B. (2011). Tracheostomy care: An evidence-based guide to suctioning and dressing changes. *American Nurse Today*, 6(7), 14-17.
- National Comprehensive Cancer Network. (2010). *Practice guidelines in oncology: Head and neck cancers (version 2.2010)*. Fort Washington, PA: Author.
- Noonan, B., & Hegarty, J. (2010). The impact of total laryngectomy: The patient's perspective. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(3), 293-301.
- Prahlw, J., Prahlw, T., Rakow, R., & Prahlw, N. (2009). Asphyxia caused by inspissated oral and nasopharyngeal secretions. *AJN*, 109(6), 38-50.
- Robinson, S., Chia, M., Carney, A. S., Chawla, S., Harris, P., & Esterman, A. (2009). Upper airway reconstructive surgery long-term quality-of-life outcomes compared with CPAP for adult obstructive sleep apnea. *Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery*, 141(2), 257-263.
- Rodriguez, C., & Rowe, M. (2010). Use of a speech-generating device for hospitalized postoperative patients with head and

neck cancer experiencing speechlessness. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(2), 199-205.

- Rushing, J. (2009). Managing epistaxis. *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 12.
- Schaller, J. (2008). Myths & facts ... about obstructive sleep apnea. *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 27.
- Sleep apnea. (2009). *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 48.
- Tocco, S. (2008). Preventing airway obstruction. *American Nurse Today*, 3(1), 34.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Townsend-Roccichelli, J., Sanford, J., & VanderWaa, E. (2010). Managing sleep disorders in the elderly. *Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 35(5), 30-37.

Chapter 32

- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures—2011*. No. 01-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Aschenbrenner, D. (2010). Drug watch: New safety requirements for asthma drug. *AJN*, 110(6), 26-27.
- Avgeri, S., Matthaïou, D., Dimopoulos, G., Grammatikos, A. P., & Falagas, M. E. (2008). Therapeutic options for *Burkholderia cepacia* infections beyond co-trimoxazole: A systematic review of the clinical evidence. *International Journal of Antimicrobial Agents*, 33, 394-404.
- Bauldoff, G. (2009). When breathing is a burden: How to help patients with COPD. *American Nurse Today*, 4(12), 17-21.
- Bauman, M., & Handley, C. (2011). Chest-tube care: The more you know, the easier it gets. *American Nurse Today*, 6(9), 27-31.
- Bieck, T., & Phillips, S. (2010). Appraising the evidence for avoiding lotions or topical agents prior to radiation therapy. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 103-105.
- Booker, R. (2009). Interpretation and evaluation of pulmonary function tests. *Nursing Standard*, 23(39), 46-56.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010). FastStats. *National Center for Health Statistics*. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/.
- Cheng, A. G., Johnston, P. R., Luz, J., Uluer, A., Fligor, B., Licameli, G. R., et al. (2009). Sensorineural hearing loss in patients with cystic fibrosis. *Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery*, 141(1), 86-90.
- Chronic bronchitis and emphysema. (2009). *Nursing2009*, 39(4), 29.
- Collins, A., & Garner, M. (2007). Care for lung cancer patients receiving photodynamic therapy. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(2), 53-60.
- Corbridge, S., & Corbridge, T. (2010). Asthma in adolescents and adults. *AJN*, 110(5), 28-38.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2008). COPD: Help your patients breathe easier. *RN*, 71(1), 21-26.
- Cystic Fibrosis Foundation. (2009). About cystic fibrosis. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cff.org/AboutCF/.
- Daly, M. (2009). Stopping a COPD flare-up. *American Nurse Today*, 4(8), 40.
- Donahue, D. (2010). Managing pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 52-54.
- Durai, R., Hoque, H., & Davies, T. (2010). Managing a chest tube and drainage system. *AORN Journal*, 91(2), 275-280.
- Ellis, K. (2008). Keeping asthma at bay. *American Nurse Today*, 3(2), 20-25.
- Gaguski, M. E., Brandsema, M., Gernalin, L., & Martinez, E. (2010). Assessing dyspnea in patients with non-small cell lung cancer in the acute care setting. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 509-513.

- Global Initiative for Asthma (GINA). (2010). Global strategy for asthma management and prevention. Retrieved June 2011 from: <http://www.ginasthma.org/Guidelines/guidelines-resources.html>.
- Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). (2009). Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Medical Communications Resources, Inc. Retrieved January 2011, from www.goldcopd.com/guidelineitem.
- Halm, M. (2007). To strip or not to strip: Physiological effects of chest tube manipulation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(6), 609-612.
- Hansen, F., & Sawatzky, J. (2008). Stress in patients with lung cancer: A human response to illness. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 35(2), 217-223.
- Holcomb, S. (2008). New asthma guidelines: Encourage more activity and a better night's sleep. *Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 33(3), 9-11.
- John, L. (2010). Self-care strategies used by patients with lung cancer to promote quality of life. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(3), 339-347.
- Kumar, V., Abbas, A., Fausto, N., & Aster, J. (2010). *Robbins and Cotran: Pathologic basis of disease* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- LaRue, L. (2009). Sarcoidosis: A granular view. *Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 34(9), 28-33.
- Lawes, R. (2009). Putting the squeeze on asthma. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 56hn1-56hn4.
- Lomas, P., & Fowler, S. (2010). Parents and children with cystic fibrosis: A family affair. *AJN*, 110(8), 30-37.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McClelland, M. (2010). Paraneoplastic syndromes related to lung cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(3), 357-364.
- Merton, S., Sawatzky, J., & Diehl-Jones, L. (2009). Getting to the heart of pleural effusion: A case study. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(9), 506-512.
- Moreland, S. (2010). Nutritional screening and counseling in adults with lung cancer: A systematic review of the evidence. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(5), 609-614.
- Newton, T. (2009). Respiratory care of the hospitalized patient with cystic fibrosis. *Respiratory Care*, 54(6), 769-776.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man (OMIM). (2010). Asthma, susceptibility to. Retrieved December 2010, from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pruitt, B. (2008). Loosening the bonds of restrictive lung disease. *Nursing2008*, 38(8), 34-39.
- Pruitt, B. (2011). Assessing and managing asthma: A global initiative for asthma update. *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 46-52.
- Roberts, M. (2010). Clinical utility and adverse effects of amiodarone therapy. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(4), 333-338.
- Rosenblatt, R. (2009). Lung transplantation in cystic fibrosis. *Respiratory Care*, 54(6), 777-787.
- Rushing, J. (2007). Managing a water-seal chest drainage unit. *Nursing2007*, 37(12), 12.
- Saucier, S., Motyka, C., & Killu, K. (2010). Ultrasonography versus chest radiography after chest tube removal for the detection of pneumothorax. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(1), 34-38.
- Shah, A., & D'Amico, T. (2009). Lung volume reduction surgery for the management of refractory dyspnea in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Current Opinion in Supportive and Palliative Care*, 3(2), 107-111.
- Sherry, V., Patton, N., & Stricker, C. (2010). Diagnosis and management of postpneumonectomy empyema with an Eloesser flap. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(5), 553-556.
- Shutske, K., Baker, D., Zustiak, T., Carlson, A., & Van Riper, K. (2009). Teachable moments: Asthma education in the ED. *American Nurse Today*, 4(8), 24-27.
- Smith, B., & Tasota, F. (2011). Smoking out the dangers of COPD. *Nursing2011*, 41(4), 32-39.
- Song, M. K., De Vito Dabbs, A., Studer, S. M., & Zangle, S. (2008). Course of illness after the onset of chronic rejection in lung transplant recipients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 17(3), 246-253.
- Thomas, L. (2009). Effective dyspnea management strategies identified by elders with end-stage chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Applied Nursing Research*, 22(2), 79-85.
- Thompson, N. (2010). When cancer spreads to the bone. *American Nurse Today*, 5(9), 8-10.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Vacca, V. (2009). On the alert for pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Nursing2009*, 39(12), 36-40.
- Walker, S. (2008). Updates in non-small-cell lung cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(4), 587-596.
- Walker, S., & Bryden, G. (2010). Managing pleural effusions: Nursing care of patients with a Tenckhoff catheter. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(1), 59-64.
- Walz, D. (2010). Cancer-related anorexia-cachexia syndrome. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(3), 283-287.
- Weber, C., Silver, M., Cromer, D., Kaminski, S., Wirick, T., & Vallejo, J. (2011). Under pressure: Pulmonary arterial hypertension. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(4), 87-94.
- Weiss, S., Raby, B., & Rogers, A. (2009). Asthma genetics and genomics 2009. *Current Opinion in Genetics and Development*, 19(3), 279-282.
- Wells, M., Sarna, L., Cooley, M. E., Brown, J. K., Chernecky, C., Williams, R. D., et al. (2007). Use of complementary and alternative medicine therapies to control symptoms in women living with lung cancer. *Cancer Nursing*, 30(1), 45-55.
- White, K., & Ruth-Sahd, L. (2007). Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(3), 53-66.
- Widlitz, A., McDevitt, S., Ward, G. R., & Krichman, A. (2007). Practical aspects of continuous intravenous treprostinil therapy. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(2), 41-50.
- Wise, R., & Tashkin, D. (2007). Optimizing treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: An assessment of current therapies. *American Journal of Medicine*, 120(8 Suppl. A), S4-S13.
- Workman, M. L., & Winkelman, C. (2008). Genetic influences in common respiratory disorders. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 20(2), 171-189.

Chapter 33

- American Association of Critical-Care Nurses (AACN). (2008). Ventilator-associated pneumonia. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(3), 83-85.

- American Lung Association (ALA). (2010a). Trends in pneumonia and influenza morbidity and mortality. Retrieved January 2010, from www.lungusa.org/finding-cures/our-research/trend-reports/pi-trend-report.pdf.
- American Lung Association (ALA). (2010b). Trends in tuberculosis morbidity and mortality. Retrieved January 2010, from www.lungusa.org/finding-cures/our-research/trend-reports/TB-Trend-Report.pdf.
- Ames, N. (2011). Evidence to support tooth brushing in critically ill patients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 20(3), 242-250.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010a). Cover your cough. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cdc.gov/flu/protect/covercough.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010b). 2009 H1N1: Overview of a pandemic. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cdc.gov/h1n1flu/yearinreview/yir5.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010c). Prevention & control of influenza with vaccines: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59, 1-62.
- Curtin, L. (2011). Preventing ventilator-associated pneumonia: A nursing-intervention bundle. *American Nurse Today*, 6(3), 9-11.
- Dobbin, K. (2009). Understanding empyema. *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 56cc1-56cc3.
- Dobbin, K., & Howard, V. (2011). Listen closely to detect healthcare-associated pneumonia. *Nursing2011*, 41(7), 59-62.
- Eisenstadt, E. (2010). Dysphagia and aspiration pneumonia in older adults. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 22(1), 17-22.
- Ferguson, L., & Rhoads, J. (2009). Multidrug-resistant and extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis: The new face of an old disease. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(11), 603-609.
- Fowler, S. (2008). Community-acquired pneumonia: Follow the guidelines to better outcomes. *American Nurse Today*, 3(9), 26-30.
- Garcia, R., Jendresky, L., Colbert, L., Bailey, A., Zaman, M., & Majumder, M. (2009). Reducing ventilator-associated pneumonia through advanced oral-dental care: A 48-month study. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(6), 523-534.
- Gribble, E., & Williams, A. (2010). Break through multidrug-resistant TB. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(3), 14-22.
- Hoyle, C. (2009). Make your strep diagnosis spot on. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(10), 46-52.
- Kapustin, J. (2008). The 2008-09 influenza season: Are you ready? *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(10), 12-19.
- Knechel, N. (2009). Tuberculosis: Pathophysiology, clinical features, and diagnosis. *Critical Care Nurse*, 29(2), 34-43.
- Kung, Y. (2010). A close-up view of flu. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(4), 47-52.
- Lessons learned from the 2009 H1N1 pandemic flu. (2010). *AJN*, 110(10), 22-23.
- Luttenberger, K. (2010). Battling VAP from a new angle. *Nursing2010*, 40(2), 52-55.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nelson, R. (2010). Drug-resistant tuberculosis. *AJN*, 110(10), 55-57.
- Regan, E. (2009). Diagnosis rhinitis: Viral and allergic characteristics. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(9), 20-26.
- Rushing, J. (2007). Obtaining a throat culture. *Nursing2007*, 37(3), 20.
- Schappert, S., & Rechsteiner, E. (2008). Ambulatory medical care utilization estimates for 2006. *National Health Statistics Report*, 8. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/nhsr/nhsr008.pdf.
- Schweon, S. (2010). Double jeopardy: Pneumococcal pneumonia following seasonal influenza. *Nursing2010*, 40(12), 60-61.
- The war on tuberculosis. (2010). *AJN*, 110(7), 20-22.
- Todd, B. (2010). Sepsis and pneumonia take their toll. *AJN*, 110(8), 60-61.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Trossman, S. (2008). New interest in an old health threat. *American Nurse Today*, 3(1), 37-38.
- Tucker, S., Poland, G., & Jacobson, R. (2008). Requiring influenza vaccination for health care workers. *AJN*, 108(2), 32-34.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2010). Global tuberculosis control 2010. Retrieved January 2011, from www.who.int/tb/publications/global_report/2010/en/index.html.

Chapter 34

- Andrews, P., & Habashi, N. (2010). Detecting, managing, and preventing pulmonary embolism. *American Nurse Today*, 5(9), 21-25.
- ARDS Foundation. (2010). Facts About ARDS. Retrieved June 2010, from www.ardsil.com/facts.htm.
- Badet, M., Bayle, F., Richard, J. C., & Guérin, C. (2009). Comparison of optimal positive end-expiratory pressure and recruitment maneuvers during lung-protective mechanical ventilation in patients with acute lung injury/acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Respiratory Care*, 54(7), 847-854.
- Bahloul, M., Chaari, A., Kallel, H., Abid, L., Hamida, C. B., Dammak, H., et al. (2010). Pulmonary embolism in intensive care unit: Predictive factors, clinical manifestations and outcomes. *Annals of Thoracic Medicine*, 5(2), 97-103.
- Balk, R. (2009). Strategies to improve oxygenation in ALI and ARDS. *Journal of Respiratory Therapy*, 22(11), 10-14.
- Briggs, D. (2010). Nursing care and management of patients with intrapleural drains. *Nursing Standard*, 24(21), 47-55.
- Briggs, S., Goettler, C. E., Schenarts, P. J., et al. (2009). High-frequency oscillatory ventilation as a rescue therapy for adult trauma patients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(2), 144-148.
- Chan, L. Y., Jones, A. Y., Chung, R. C., & Hung, K. N. (2010). Peak flow rate during induced coughing: A predictor of successful decannulation of a tracheotomy tube in neurosurgical patients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(3), 278-284.
- Colonel, P., Houzé, M. H., Vert, H., et al. (2008). Swallowing disorders as a predictor of unsuccessful extubation: A clinical evaluation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 17(6), 504-510.
- Curry, K., Cobb, S., Kutash, M., & Diggs, C. (2008). Characteristics associated with unplanned extubations in a surgical intensive care unit. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 17(1), 45-52.
- Davis, M., & Johnston, J. (2008). Maintaining supplemental oxygen during transport. *American Journal of Nursing*, 108(1), 35-36.
- Day, M. (2011). On alert for iatrogenic pneumothorax. *Nursing2011*, 41(6), 66-67.
- Documenting pneumothorax. (2008). *Nursing2008*, 38(9), 19.
- Dunn, J., & Baker, M. (2011). Daily sedation breaks and breathing trials help wean patients from ventilators safely. *American Nurse Today*, 6(3), 12-14.

- El-Khatib, M., Zeineldine, S., Ayoub, C., Husari, A., & Bou-Khalil, P. K. (2010). Critical care clinicians' knowledge of evidence-based guidelines for preventing ventilator-associated pneumonia. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(3), 272-277.
- Farley, A., McLafferty, E., & Hendry, C. (2009). Pulmonary embolism: Identification, clinical features and management. *Nursing Standard*, 23(28), 49-56.
- Feider, L., Mitchell, P., & Bridges, E. (2010). Oral care practices for orally intubated critically ill adults. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(2), 175-183.
- Frace, M. (2010). Tracheostomy care on the medical-surgical unit. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(1), 58-61.
- Gallagher, J. (2009). Taking aim at ARDS. *Nursing2009*, 39(10), 49-54.
- Gay, S. (2010). An inside view of venous thromboembolism. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(9), 32-39.
- Grap, M. (2009). Not-so-trivial pursuit: Mechanical ventilation risk reduction. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(4), 299-309.
- Grossbach, I., Chlan, L., & Tracy, M. (2011). Overview of mechanical ventilatory support and management of patient- and ventilator-related responses. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(3), 30-44.
- Grossbach, I., Stranberg, S., & Chlan, L. (2011). Promoting effective communication for patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(3), 46-60.
- Halm, M., & Armola, R. (2009). Effect of oral care on bacterial colonization and ventilator-associated pneumonia. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(3), 275-278.
- Kallus, C. (2009). Building a solid understanding of mechanical ventilation. *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 22-28.
- Khalid, I., Doshi, P., & DiGiovine, B. (2010). Early enteral nutrition and outcomes of critically ill patients treated with vasopressors and mechanical ventilation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(3), 261-268.
- Kjonegaard, R., Fileds, W., & King, M. (2010). Current practice in airway management: A descriptive evaluation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(2), 168-174.
- Kleinman, S., Gajic, O., & Nunes, E. (2007). Promoting recognition of transfusion-related acute lung injury. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(4), 49-53.
- Konstantinides, S. (2008). Acute pulmonary embolism. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 359(26), 2804-2813.
- Le, R., & Dewan, N. (2009). Pulmonary embolectomy: Should it be offered earlier rather than later? *Respiratory Care*, 54(3), 390-392.
- Lyerla, F., LeRouge, C., Cooke, D. A., (2010). A nursing clinical decision support system and potential predictors of head-of-bed position for patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(1), 39-47.
- McAdams-Jones, D. (2009). What's causing this respiratory distress? How to recognize and reverse transfusion-related acute lung injury. *American Nurse Today*, 4(5), 28.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mellott, K. G., Grap, M. J., Munro, C. L., (2009). Patient-ventilator dyssynchrony: Clinical significance and implications for practice. *Critical Care Nurse*, 29(6), 41-55.
- Morrell, N. (2010). Prone positioning in patients with acute respiratory distress syndrome. *Nursing Standard*, 24(21), 42-45.
- Powers, J. (2007). The five P's spell positive outcomes for ARDS patients. *American Nurse Today*, 2(3), 34-38.
- Powers, K., & Talbot, L. (2011). Fat embolism syndrome after femur fracture with intramedullary nailing: Case report. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 20(3), 264-265, 267.
- Qasim, Z., & Gwinnutt, C. (2009). Flail chest: Pathophysiology and management. *Trauma*, 11, 63-70.
- Racco, M. (2009). Nutrition in the ICU: Nutritional support for the mechanically ventilated patient in the ICU. *RN*, 72(1), 26-30.
- Regan, E., & Dallachiesa, L. (2009). How to care for a patient with a tracheostomy. *Nursing2009*, 39(8), 34-39.
- Rodriguez, C., & Rowe, M. (2010). Use of a speech-generating device for hospitalized postoperative patients with head and neck cancer experiencing speechlessness. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(2), 199-205.
- Roman, M. (2010). Pneumothorax. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(3), 183-184.
- Rose, L. (2008). High-frequency oscillatory ventilation in adults. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 19(4), 412-420.
- Ruiz, C. (2011). Thwarting a pneumothorax. *American Nurse Today*, 6(5), 32.
- Schwartz, A., & Powell, S. (2009). Brush up on oral assessment and care. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 30-32.
- Stuban, S. (2010). Home mechanical ventilation. *AJN*, 110(5), 63-67.
- Tracy, M., & Chlan, L. (2011). Nonpharmacologic interventions to manage common symptoms in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(3), 19-28.
- Winkelman, C. (2008). Inflammation and genomics in the critical care unit. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 20(2), 213-221.
- Winkelman, C. (2009). Bed rest in health and critical illness: A body systems approach. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(3), 254-266.
- Winkelman, C., & Chiang, L. (2010). Manual turns in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *Critical Care Nurse*, 30(4), 36-43.
- Workman, M. L., & Winkelman, C. (2008). Genetic influences in common respiratory disorders. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 20(2), 171-189.

Chapter 35

- American Heart Association (AHA). (2010a). *Dietary and lifestyle recommendations* (updated: May 21, 2010). Retrieved August 29, 2010, from www.heart.org/HEARTORG/GettingHealthy/Diet-and-Lifestyle-Recommendations_UCM_305855_Article.jsp.
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2010b). Heart disease and stroke statistics 2010 update. Retrieved July 23, 2010, from www.americanheart.org.
- Cheek, D., & Tester, J. (2008). Women and heart disease: What's new? *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 37-42.
- *DeVon, H. A., & Zerwic, J. J. (2003). The symptoms of unstable angina: Do women and men differ? *Nursing Research*, 52(2), 108-118.
- *Giuliano, K. K., Scott, S. S., Brown, V., & Olson, M. (2003). Backrest angle and cardiac output measurement in critically ill patients. *Nursing Research*, 52(4), 242-248.
- *Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett.
- *Greenland, P., Bonow, R. O., Brundage, B. H., Budoff, M. J., Eisenberg, M. J., Grundy, S. M., et al. (2007). ACCF/AHA

- clinical expert consensus document on coronary artery calcium scoring by computed tomography in global cardiovascular risk assessment and in evaluation of patients with chest pain. *Circulation*, 115(3), 402-426.
- Howie-Esquivel, J., & White, M. (2008). Biomarkers in acute cardiovascular disease. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 23(2), 124-131.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Landgraf, J., Wishner, S. H., & Kloner, R. A. (2010). Comparison of automatic oscillometric versus auscultatory blood pressure measurement. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 106(3), 386-388.
- Lloyd-Jones, D., Adams, R., Carnethon, M., Simone, G., Ferguson, T. B., Flegal, K., et al. (2009). Heart disease and stroke statistics—2009 update: A report from the American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. *Circulation*, 119, e21-e181.
- *Mehta, M. (2003). Assessing cardiovascular status. *Nursing2003*, 33(1), 56-57.
- Metcalfe, P. A., Scragg, R. K., Schaaf, L. D., Dyal, L., Black, P. N., et al. (2008). Comparison of different markers of socioeconomic status with cardiovascular disease and diabetes risk factors in the Diabetes, Heart and Health survey. *Journal of the New Zealand Medical Association*, 121(1269). Retrieved August, 1, 2010, from www.nzma.org.nz/journal/121-1269/2929/.
- *National Cholesterol Education Program. (2002). *Third report of the Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III)*. NIH Publication No. 02-5215. Bethesda: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.
- *National High Blood Pressure Education Program. (2003). *The seventh report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure*. NIH Publication No. 03-5233. Bethesda: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.
- Ott, L. K. (2008). Assessing blood flow with CT angiography. *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 26.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pearson, T. L. (2010). Ankle brachial index as a prognostic tool for women with coronary artery disease. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(1), 20-24.
- Ridker, P. M., Paynter, N. P., Rifai, N., Gaziano, M., & Cook, N. R. (2008). C-reactive protein and parental history improve global cardiovascular risk prediction. *Circulation*, 118(22), 2243-2251.
- Sanborn, T. A., Ebrahimi, R., Manoukian, S. V., McLaurin, B. T., Cox, D. A., Feit, F., et al. (2010). Impact of femoral vascular closure devices and antithrombotic therapy on access site bleeding in acute coronary syndromes. *Circulation: Cardiovascular Interventions*, 3(1), 57-62.
- Sulzbach-Hoke, L. M., Ratcliffe, S. J., Kimmel, S. E., Kolansky, D. M., & Polomano, R. (2010). Predictors of complications following sheath removal with percutaneous coronary intervention. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(3), e1-e8.
- *The New York Heart Association. (1964). *Diseases of the heart and blood vessels: Nomenclature and criteria for diagnosis* (6th ed.). Boston: Little, Brown.
- Wright, J. D., Hirsch, R., & Wang, C.-Y. (2009). One-third of U.S. adults embraced most heart healthy behaviors in 1999-2002. *National Center for Health Statistics data brief*, (17). Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics. Retrieved July 28, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/databriefs/db17.htm.
- ### Chapter 36
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2010). Highlights of the 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for CPR and ECC. Retrieved September 18, 2011, from http://www.heart.org/idc/groups/heart-public/@wcm/@ecc/documents/downloadable/ucm_317350.pdf.
- Atwood, S., Stanton, C., & Davenport, J. S. (2009). *Introduction to basic cardiac dysrhythmias* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby/JEMS.
- Bardy, G. H., Lee, K. L., Mark, D. B., Poole, J. E., Toff, W. D., Tonkin, A. M., et al. (2008). Home use of automated external defibrillators for sudden cardiac arrest. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 358(7), 1793-1804.
- Batista, L., Lima, F., Januzzi, J., Donahue, V., Snyderman, C., & Greer, D. (2010). Feasibility and safety of combined percutaneous coronary intervention and therapeutic hypothermia following cardiac arrest. *Resuscitation*, 81(4), 398-403.
- Brady, A., Malone, A., & Fleming, S. (2009). A literature review of the individual and systems factors that contribute to medication errors in nursing practice. *Journal of Nursing Management*, 17(6), 679-697.
- Chalupka, A. N. (2010). Radiofrequency catheter ablation for atrial fibrillation. *American Association of Occupational Health Nurses*, 58(5), 220.
- Cheng, J. M. (2010). New and emerging antiarrhythmic and anticoagulant agents for atrial fibrillation. *American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy*, 67(9), S26-S34.
- Chilukuri, K., Dalal, D., Gadrey, S., Marine, J. E., MacPherson, E., Henrikson, C. A., et al. (2010). A prospective study evaluating the role of obesity and obstructive sleep apnea for outcomes after catheter ablation of atrial fibrillation. *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*, 21(5), 521-525.
- Craig, K. J., & Day, M. P. (2011). Are you up to date on the latest BLS and ACLS guidelines? *Nursing2011*, 41(5), 40-44.
- Crandall, M., Bradley, D., Packer, D., & Asirvatham, S. (2009). Contemporary management of atrial fibrillation: Update on anticoagulation and invasive management strategies. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, 87(7), 643-662.
- Crossley, G. H., Chen, J., Choucair, W., Cohen, T. J., Gohn, D. C., Johnson, W. B., et al. (2009). Clinical benefits of remote versus transtelephonic monitoring of implanted pacemakers. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 54(22), 2012-2019.
- Dagres, N., & Anastasiou-Nana, M. (2010). Atrial fibrillation and obesity: An association of increasing importance. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(21), 2328-2329.
- Davies, A. (2009). Permanent pacemakers: An overview. *British Journal of Cardiac Nursing*, 4(6), 262-269.
- DeVon, H. A., Hogan, N., Ochs, A. L., & Shapiro, M. (2010). Time to treatment for acute coronary syndromes: The cost of indecision. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(2), 106-114.
- Dobromir, D., & Nattel, S. (2010). New antiarrhythmic drugs for treatment of atrial fibrillation. *The Lancet*, 375(9721), 1212-1223.
- Epstein, A. E., DiMarco, J. P., Ellenbogen, K. A., Estes, N., Freedman, R. A., Gettes, L. S., et al. (2008). ACC/AHA/HRS 2008 guidelines for device-based therapy of cardiac rhythm abnormalities: Executive summary. *Circulation*, 117, 2820-2840.
- Franklin, D., & Bono, M. (2008). Guide to antiarrhythmic therapies. *Emergency Medicine*, 40(1), 36-39.
- Garlitski, A. C., & Estes, N. A. III. (2010). Emerging therapies for atrial fibrillation: Is the paradigm shifting? *Journal of Interventional Cardiac Electrophysiology*, 28(1), 1-4.

- Goodrich, C. (2009). Cardiopulmonary resuscitation: Where are we now? *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(4), 373-383.
- Green, J. M., & Chiaramida, A. J. (2010). *12 lead EKG confidence: A step-by-step guide*. New York: Springer.
- Grigoriyan, A., Vazquez, R., Palvinskaya, T., Bindelglass, G., Rishi, A., Amoateng-Adjepong, Y., et al. (2009). Outcomes of cardiopulmonary resuscitation for patients on vasopressors or inotropes: A pilot study. *Journal of Critical Care*, 24(3), 415-418.
- Grmec, S., & Mally, S. (2009). Timeliness of administration of vasopressors in CPR. *Critical Care*, 13(1), 401.
- Hallas, C., Burke, J., White, D., & Connelly, D. (2010). A prospective 1-year study of changes in neuropsychological functioning after implantable cardioverter-defibrillator surgery. *Circulation: Arrhythmia and Electrophysiology*, 3, 170-177.
- Harden, J. (2011). Taking a cool look at therapeutic hypothermia. *Nursing2011*, 41(9), 46-52.
- Hardin, S. R., & Steele, J. R. (2008). Atrial fibrillation among older adults: Pathophysiology, symptoms, and treatment. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 34(7), 26-32.
- Holding, S., Tyndall, K., Russell, C., & Cowan, C. (2009). The impact of a nurse-led rapid-access atrial fibrillation clinic. *British Journal of Cardiac Nursing*, 4(6), 276-281.
- Hunt, E. A., Mancini, M. E., Smyth, M., & Truitt, T. L. (2009). Using the American Heart Association's national registry of cardiopulmonary resuscitation for performance improvement. *Joint Commission Journal on Quality & Patient Safety*, 35(1), 13-20.
- Jost, D., Degrange, H., Verret, C., Hersan, O., Banville, I. L., Chapman, F. W., et al. (2010). A randomized controlled trial of the effect of automated external defibrillator cardiopulmonary resuscitation protocol on outcome from out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Circulation*, 121, 1614-1622.
- Kalahasty, G., & Ellenbogen, K. (2009). The role of pacemakers in the management of patients with atrial fibrillation. *Cardiology Clinics*, 27(1), 137-150.
- Keseg, D. P. (2010). Reducing interruptions: Continuous compression CPR & minimally interrupted CPR result in improved survival. *Journal of Emergency Medical Services*, 35(1), 14-17.
- Lloyd-Jones, D., Adams, R., Carnethon, M., De Simone, G., Ferguson, R. B., Flegal, K., et al. (2009). Heart disease and stroke statistics—2009 update: A report from the American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. *Circulation*, 119(3), 480-486.
- Marcus, G. M., Olgin, J. E., Whooley, M., Vittinghoff, E., Stone, K. L., Mehra, R., et al. (2010). Racial differences in atrial fibrillation prevalence and left atrial size. *American Journal of Medicine*, 123(4), 375.e1-7.
- McDonough, M. (2009). Mission control: Managing atrial fibrillation. *Nursing2009*, 39(11), 58-63.
- Michaels, A. D., Spinler, S. A., Leeper, B., Ohman, E. M., Alexander, K. P., Newby, L. K., et al. (2010). Medication errors in acute cardiovascular and stroke patients: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121, 1664-1682.
- Mitka, M. (2009). Researchers seek MRI-safe pacemakers. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301(5), 476.
- Morrison, D., & Smith, J. (2009). Taking a vested interest in a wearable cardioverter defibrillator. *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 29-32.
- New 80-lead EKG is easy to interpret. (2008). *ED Nursing*, 8, 112-113.
- Onalan, O., Cumurcu, G., & Bekar, L. (2008). Complete atrioventricular block associated with concomitant use of metoprolol and paroxetine. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, 83(5), 595-599.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Palatnik, A. (2009). Too fast, too slow, too ugly: Dysrhythmias that every nurse should recognize. *Nursing2009*, 39(9), 38-46.
- Pelter, M. (2010). Time to treatment for acute coronary syndromes: The cost of indecision. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(2), 115-116.
- Quirino, G., Giammaria, M., Corbucci, G., Pistelli, P., Turri, E., Mazza, A., et al. (2009). Diagnosis of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation in patients with implanted pacemakers: Relationship to symptoms and other variables. *Pacing & Clinical Electrophysiology*, 32(1), 91-98.
- Ristagno, G., Tang, W., Huang, L., Fymat, A., Chang, Y. T., Sun, S., et al. (2009). Epinephrine reduces cerebral perfusion during cardiopulmonary resuscitation. *Critical Care Medicine*, 37(4), 1408-1415.
- Roguin, A. (2009). Magnetic resonance imaging in patients with implantable cardioverter-defibrillators and pacemakers. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 54(6), 556-557.
- Rose, E., Chinitz, L. A., Holmes, D. S., & Aizer, A. (2010). A novel mechanism of failure to detect atrial arrhythmias by pacemakers and implantable cardioverter defibrillators. *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*, 21(3), 325-328.
- Ruiter, J. H., Mulder, E., Schuchert, A., Burri, H., Stuhlinger, M. C., Hartikainen, J., et al. (2010). The feasibility of fully automated pacemaker advise in treating atrial tachyarrhythmias. *Pacing & Clinical Electrophysiology*, 33(5), 605-614.
- Sayre, M. R., Berg, R. A., Cave, D. M., Page, R. L., Potts, J., White, R. D., et al. (2008). Hands-only (compression-only) cardiopulmonary resuscitation: A call to action for bystander response to adults who experience out-of-hospital sudden cardiac arrest. *Circulation*, 117(16), 2162-2167.
- Sellers, M. B., & Newby, L. K. (2011). Atrial fibrillation, anticoagulants, fall risk, and outcomes in elderly patients. *American Heart Journal*, 161(2), 241-246.
- Sherrard, H. (2008). An automated external defibrillator in the home did not reduce all-cause mortality in patients at risk of cardiac arrest. *Evidence-Based Nursing*, 11(4), 113.
- Sheu, S., Wei, I., Chen, C., Yu, S., & Tang, F. (2009). Using snowball sampling method with nurses to understand medication administration errors. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 18(4), 559-569.
- Skidmore-Roth, L. (2011). *Mosby's 2011 nursing drug reference* (24th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Tedrow, U. B., Conen, D., Ridker, P. M., Cook, N. R., Koplan, B. A., Manson, J. E., et al. (2010). The long- and short-term impact of elevated body mass index on the risk of new atrial fibrillation: The WHS (Women's Health Study). *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(21), 2319-2327.
- Wilber, D. J., Pappone, C., Neuzil, P., De Paola, A., Marchlinski, F., Natale, A., et al. (2010). Comparison of antiarrhythmic drug therapy and radiofrequency catheter ablation in patients with paroxysmal atrial fibrillation. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(4), 333-340.
- Wokhlu, A., Monahan, K. H., Hodge, D. O., Asirvatham, S. J., Friedman, P. A., Munger, T. M., et al. (2010). Long-term quality of life after ablation of atrial fibrillation: The impact of recurrence, symptom relief, and placebo effect. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(21), 2308-2316.
- Worth, T. (2009). CPR and PCI. *AJN*, 109(10), 22.

- Wung, S., & Kozik, T. (2008). Electrocardiographic evaluation of cardiovascular status. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 23(2), 169-174.
- Yeung, J., & Perkins, G. D. (2010). Timing of drug administration during CPR and the role of simulation. *Resuscitation*, 81(3), 265-266.
- ### Chapter 37
- Albert, N., Trochelman, K., Li, J., & Lin, S. (2009). Signs and symptoms of heart failure: Are you asking the right questions? *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(5), 443-452.
- Andrews, T. (2009). Restarting the clock ... again: Ethical considerations in retransplantation. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing*, 28(5), 209-213.
- *Carelock, J., & Clark, A. P. (2003). Heart failure: Pathophysiologic mechanisms. *AJN*, 101(12), 26-35.
- Chapa, D., Lee, H., Kaoe, C., Friedmann, E., Thomas, S., Anderson, J., et al. (2008). Reducing mortality with device therapy in heart failure patients without ventricular arrhythmias. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 17, 443-452.
- Chen, W., Tran, K., & Maisel, A. (2010). Biomarkers in heart failure. *Heart*, 96, 314-320.
- Christensen, D. (2008). Extreme heart makeover: Understanding mechanical circulatory support. *Nursing2008*, 38(5), 48-53.
- Dakin, C. L. (2008). New approaches to heart failure in the ED. *AJN*, 108(3), 68-71.
- DiSalvo, T., Acker, M., Dec, W., & Byrne, J. (2010). Mitral valve surgery in advanced heart failure. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(4), 271-282.
- Donlan, S., Quattromani, E., Pang, P., & Gheorghiad, M. (2009). Therapy for acute heart failure syndromes. *Current Cardiology Reports*, 11, 192-201.
- Duffy, J., Hoskins, L., & Dudley-Brown, S. (2009). Improving outcomes for older adults with heart failure: A randomized trial using a theory-guided nursing intervention. *Journal of Nursing Care Quality*, 25(1), 56-64.
- Dworakowski, R., Prendergast, B., Wendler, O., & MacCarthy, P. (2010). Treatment of acquired valvular heart disease: Percutaneous alternatives. *Clinical Medicine*, 10(2), 181-187.
- Eisen, H., & Ross, H. (2010). Prevention and treatment of cardiac transplant vasculopathy. *UpToDate*. Retrieved June 26, 2010, from www.uptodate.com/patients/content/topic.do?topicKey=rZWwH5TdOdTou.
- Hill, C. (2009). Acute heart failure: Too sick for discharge teaching? *Critical Care Nursing Quarterly*, 32(2), 106-111.
- *Hoercher, K. J., Vacha, C. J., & McCarthy, P. M. (2002). Left ventricular splints and wraps for end-stage heart failure: A new approach in the new millennium. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 16(3), 82-86.
- Jessup, M., Abraham, W. T., Casey, D. E., Feldman, A. M., Francis, G. S., Ganiats, T. G., et al., writing on behalf of the 2005 guideline update for the diagnosis and management of chronic heart failure in the adult writing committee. (2009). 2009 Focused update: ACCF/AHA guidelines for the diagnosis and management of heart failure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*, 119(14), 1977-2016.
- Joseph, S., Cedars, A., Ewald, G., Geltman, E., & Mann, D. (2009). Acute decompensated heart failure contemporary medical management. *Texas Heart Institute Journal*, 36(6), 510-520.
- Kale, P., & Fang, J. (2008). Devices in acute heart failure. *Critical Care Medicine*, 31(Suppl. 1), S121-S128.
- Lea, P. (2009). The effects of depression in heart failure. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing*, 28(4), 164-168.
- Lindgren, T. G., Fukuoka, Y., Rankin, S. H., Cooper, B. A., Carroll, D., & Munn, Y. L. (2008). Cluster analysis of elderly cardiac patients' prehospital symptomatology. *Nursing Research*, 57(1), 14-23.
- McCalmont, V., & Ohler, L. (2008). Cardiac transplantation candidate identification, evaluation and management. *Critical Care Nursing Quarterly*, 31(3), 216-229.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Moertl, D., Berger, R., Hammer, A., Huelsmann, M., Hutuleac, R., & Pacher, R. (2009). B-type natriuretic peptide predicts benefit from a home-based nurse care in chronic heart failure. *Journal of Cardiac Failure*, 15(3), 233-240.
- Noveanu, M., Breidhardt, T., Cayir, S., Potocki, M., Laule, K., & Mueller, C. (2009). B-type natriuretic peptide-guided management and outcome in patients with obesity and dyspnea: Results from the BASEL study. *American Heart Journal*, 158(3), 488-495.
- Osaki, S., Edwards, N., Velez, M., Johnson, M., Murray, M., Hoffman, J., et al. (2008). Improved survival in patients with ventricular assist device therapy: The University of Wisconsin experience. *European Journal of Cardio-Thoracic Surgery*, 34(2), 281-288.
- Ramani, G., Uber, P., & Mehra, M. (2010). Chronic heart failure: Contemporary diagnosis and management. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, 85(2), 180-195.
- Ray, S. (2010). Changing epidemiology and natural history of valvular heart disease. *Clinical Medicine*, 10(2), 168-171.
- Rogers, J., Aaronson, K., Boyle, A., Russell, S., Milano, C., Pagani, F., et al. (2010). Continuous flow left ventricular assist device improves functional capacity and quality of life of advanced heart failure patients. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(17), 1826-1834.
- Saunders, M. (2010). A comparison of employed and unemployed caregivers of older heart failure patients. *Holistic Nursing Practice*, 24(1), 16-22.
- Seward, J., & Casaclang-Verzosa, G. (2010). Infiltrative cardiovascular diseases. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(17), 1769-1779.
- Seyfarth, M., Sibbing, D., Baurer, I., Frohlich, G., Bott-Flugel, L., Byrne, R., et al. (2008). A randomized clinical trial to evaluate the safety and efficacy of a percutaneous left ventricular assist device versus intra-aortic balloon pumping for treatment of cardiogenic shock caused by myocardial infarction. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 52(19), 1584-1588.
- Sherrod, M., Gaulty, R., Crawford, M., & Cheek, D. (2009). Intravenous heart failure medications. *Home Healthcare Nurse*, 27(10), 610-619.
- Thomas, S. A., Chapa, D. V., Friedman, E., Durden, C., Ross, A., Lee, M. C. Y., et al. (2008). Depression in patients with heart failure: Prevalence, pathophysiological mechanisms, and treatment. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(2), 40-55.
- Thompson, B. (2009). Sudden cardiac death and heart failure. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(4), 356-365.
- Wexler, R., Elton, T., Pleister, A., & Feldman, D. (2009). Cardiomyopathy: An overview. *American Academy of Family Physicians*, 79(9), 778-784.

Wingate, S., & Wiegand, D. L. M. (2008). End-of-life care in the critical care unit for patients with heart failure. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(2), 84-94.

Chapter 38

- *ALLHAT Officers and Coordinators for the ALLHAT Collaborative Research Group. (2002a). Major outcomes in high-risk hypertensive patients randomized to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor or calcium channel blocker vs diuretic. The Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(23), 2981-2997.
- *ALLHAT Officers and Coordinators for the ALLHAT Collaborative Research Group. (2002b). Major outcomes in moderately hypercholesterolemic, hypertensive patients randomized to pravastatin vs usual care. The Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT-LLT). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(23), 2998-3007.
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2010). *Heart disease and stroke statistics—2010 update*. Dallas: Author.
- Anderson, D. J., Anderson, M. A., & Hill, P. D. (2010). Location of blood pressure measurement. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(5), 287-294.
- Braverman, A. C. (2010). Acute aortic dissection. *Circulation*, 122(2), 184.
- *Bussard, M. E. (2002). Reteplase: Nursing implications for catheter-directed thrombolytic therapy for peripheral vascular occlusions. *Critical Care Nurse*, 22(3), 57-63.
- Cranwell-Bruce, L. A. (2008). Antihypertensives. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(5), 337-342.
- *Day, M. W. (2003). Recognizing and managing deep vein thrombosis. *Nursing2003*, 33(5), 36-42.
- *Douglas, J. G., Bakris, G. L., Epstein, M., Ferdinand, K. C., Ferrario, C., Flack, J. M., et al. (2003). Consensus statement of the Hypertension in African Americans Working Group of the International Society on Hypertension in Blacks: Management of high blood pressure in African Americans. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 163(5), 525-541.
- *Eichinger, S., Minar, E., Bialonczyk, C., Hirschl, M., Quehenberger, P., Schneider, B., et al. (2003). D-dimer levels and risk of recurrent venous thromboembolism. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 290(8), 1071-1074.
- Forsdahl, S. H., Singh, K., Solberg, S., & Jacobsen, B. K. (2009). Risk factors for abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Circulation*, 119(16), 2202-2208.
- Gay, V., Hamilton, R., Heiskell, S., & Sparks, A. M. (2009). Influence of bedrest or ambulation in the clinical treatment of acute deep vein thrombosis on patient outcomes: A review and synthesis of the literature. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(5), 293-299.
- Harris, W. S., Miller, M., Tighe, A. P., Davidson, M. H., & Schaefer, E. J. (2008). Omega-3 fatty acids and coronary heart disease: Clinical and mechanistic perspectives. *Atherosclerosis*, 197(1), 12-24.
- Hermida, R. C., Ayala, D. E., Mojon, A., & Fernandez, J. R. (2009). Ambulatory blood pressure control with bedtime administration in subjects with prehypertension. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 22, 896-903.
- *Hess, C. T. (2003). Managing your patient's arterial ulcer. *Nursing2003*, 33(5), 17.
- Hiratzka, L. F., Bakris, G. L., Beckman, J. A., Bersin, R. M., Carr, V. E., Casey, D. E., et al. (2010). *Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of patients with thoracic aortic disease*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Horne, E. M., & Gordon, P. M. (2009). Taking aim at hypertensive crisis. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 48-53.
- Husten, C. G. (2008). Tobacco use: Ending the epidemic. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(5), 345-354.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Joint National Committee. (2003). *The Seventh Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure*. NIH Publication No. 03-5233. Bethesda, MD: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.
- Levi, M. (2008). Self-management of anticoagulation. *Expert Review of Cardiovascular Therapy*, 6(7), 979-985.
- *Lichtenstein, A. H., Appel, L. J., Brands, M., Carnethon, M., Daniels, S., Franch, H. A., et al. (2006). Diet and lifestyle recommendations revision 2006: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association Nutrition Committee. *Circulation*, 2006(114), 82-96. Retrieved October 4, 2010, from circ.ahajournals.org.
- Lloyd-Jones, D., Adams, R. J., Brown, T. M., Carnethon, M., Dai, S., De Simone, G., et al. (2010). Heart disease and stroke statistics 2010 updated: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121(7), e46-e215.
- *Malacaria, B., & Feloney, C. D. H. (2003). Going with the flow of anticoagulant therapy. *Nursing2003*, 33(3), 36-42.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine. (2010). Herbs at a glance: Garlic. Retrieved June 11, 2010 from <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/garlic/ata glance.htm>.
- *National Cholesterol Education Program. (2002). *Third Report of the Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III)*. NIH Publication No. 02-5215. Bethesda, MD: National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Safar, M. E., Priollet, P., Luizy, F., Mourad, J. J., Cacoub, P., Levesque, H., et al. (2009). Peripheral arterial disease and isolated systolic hypertension: The ATTEST study. *Journal of Human Hypertension*, 2009(23), 182-187.
- Schmid, A., Damush, T., Plue, L., Submanian, U., Bakas, T., & Williams, L. (2009). Current blood pressure self-management: A qualitative study. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 34(6), 223-229.
- Sieggreen, M. (2008). Understanding critical limb ischemia. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 50-56.
- Van Tongeren, R., Bastiaansen, A., Van Wissen, R., Le Cessie, S., Hamming, J., & Van Bockel, J. (2010). A comparison of the Doppler-derived maximal systolic acceleration versus the ankle-brachial pressure index or detecting and quantifying peripheral arterial occlusive disease in diabetic patients. *Journal of Cardiovascular Surgery*, 51(3), 391-398.
- Verdecchia, P., Angeli, F., Mazzotta, G., Gentile, G., & Reboldi, G. (2009). Home blood pressure measurements will not replace 24-hour ambulatory blood pressure monitoring. *Hypertension*, 2009(54), 188-195.
- Winslow, E. H., & Brosz, D. L. (2008). Graduated compression stockings in hospitalized postoperative patients: Correctness of usage and size. *AJN*, 108(9), 40-50.

Chapter 39

- Abbas, A., Lichtman, A., & Pillai, S. (2010). *Cellular and molecular immunology* (updated 6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- *Angus, D., Linde-Zwirble, W., Lidicker, J., Clermanit, G., Carcillo, J., & Pinsky, M. (2001). Epidemiology of severe sepsis in the United States: Analysis of incidence, outcome, and associated costs of care. *Critical Care Medicine*, 29(7), 1303-1310.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). FastStats. *National Center for Health Statistics*. Retrieved January 2011, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/.
- Cooper, B. (2008). Review and update on inotropes and vasopressors. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 19(1), 5-15.
- Dellacroce, H. (2009). Surviving sepsis: The role of the nurse. *RN*, 72(7), 16-21.
- Dellinger, R. P., Levy, M. M., Carlet, J. M., Bion, J., Parker, M. M., Jaeschke, R., et al. (2008). Surviving Sepsis Campaign—International guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2008. *Intensive Care Medicine*, 34(1), 17-60.
- Dodge, M. (2010). SIRS: A systematic approach for medical-surgical nurses to stop the progression to sepsis. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(1), 11-15.
- Ecklund, M., & Ecklund, C. (2007). How to recognize and respond to hypovolemic shock. *American Nurse Today*, 2(4), 28-31.
- El Solh, A. A., Akinnusi, M. E., Alsawalha, L. N., & Pineda, L. A. (2008). Outcome of septic shock in older adults after implementation of the sepsis "bundle." *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 56(2), 272-278.
- Giuliano, K., Lecardo, M., & Staul, L. (2011). Impact of protocol watch on compliance with the surviving sepsis campaign. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 20(4), 313-321.
- Gobel, B., & Peterson, G. (2010). Sepsis and septic shock. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(6), 793-797.
- Hatler, C., Hebden, J., Kaler, W., & Zack, J. (2010). Walk the walk to reduce catheter-related bloodstream infections. *American Nurse Today*, 5(1), 26-30.
- Held, M., & Sturtz, M. (2009). Managing acute decompensated heart failure. *American Nurse Today*, 4(2), 18-22.
- King, K., & Olson, D. (2007). What you should know about neurogenic shock. *American Nurse Today*, 2(2), 36-39.
- Landis, R. C. (2009). Redefining the systemic inflammatory response. *Seminars in Cardiothoracic and Vascular Anesthesia*, 13(2), 87-94.
- Mattiace, R. (2008). Preventing hypovolemic shock. *American Nurse Today*, 3(3), 28.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Miller, J. (2007). Keeping your patient hemodynamically stable. *Nursing2007*, 37(5), 36-41.
- Moureau, N. (2009). Reducing the cost of catheter-related bloodstream infections. *Nursing2009*, 39(7), 14-15.
- Nelson, D. P., Lemaster, T. H., Plost, G. N., & Zahner, M. L. (2009). Recognizing sepsis in the adult patient. *AJN*, 109(3), 40-45.
- Pagana, K. (2009). What does the absolute neutrophil count tell you? *American Nurse Today*, 4(2), 12-13.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Powers, K., & Burchell, P. (2010). Sepsis alert: Avoiding the shock. *Nursing2010*, 40(4), 34-38.
- Schuetz, P., Christ-Crain, M., & Müller, B. (2008). Procalcitonin and other biomarkers for the assessment of disease severity and

guidance of treatment in bacterial infections. *Advances in Sepsis*, 6(3), 82-89.

- Stricker, J. (2010). Traumatic hypovolemic shock: Halt the downward spiral. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 34-39.
- Thierry, R., & Thierry, C. (2010). Interleukin-33 safeguards neutrophils in sepsis. *Nature Medicine*, 16(6), 638-639.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Toussaint, S., & Gerlach, H. (2009). Activated protein C for sepsis. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 361(27), 2646-2652.
- Zimmermann, P. (2009). Stemming a lethal immunologic response. *American Nurse Today*, 4(9), 58.

Chapter 40

- Albert, N. M., & Lewis, C. (2008). Recognizing and managing left ventricular dysfunction: After myocardial infarction. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(2), 20-37.
- Allen, J., & Dennison, C. (2010). Randomized trials of nursing interventions for secondary prevention in patients with coronary artery disease and heart failure. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(3), 207-220.
- American Heart Association (AHA). (2010). *Heart disease and stroke statistics—2010 update*. Dallas, TX: Author. Retrieved June 16, 2011, from <http://circ.ahajournals.org/cgi/reprint/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.192667>.
- *Anderson, J. L. (2007). ACC/AHA 2007 guidelines for the management of patients with unstable angina/non ST-elevation myocardial infarction. Executive summary: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practical Guidelines (Writing Committee to revise the 2002 guidelines for the management of patients with unstable angina/non-ST elevation myocardial infarction). *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 50(7), 652-726.
- *Bellasi, A., Raggi, P., Merz, C., & Shaw, L. (2007). New insights into ischemic heart disease in women. *Cleveland Clinic Journal of Medicine*, 74(8), 585-594.
- Dolansky, M. A., Xu, F., Zullio, M., Shishehbor, B., Moore, S. M., & Rimm, A. A. (2010). Post-acute care services received by older adults following a cardiac event: A population-based analysis. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 25(4), 342-349.
- Dressler, D. (2009). Death by clot: Acute coronary syndromes, ischemic stroke, pulmonary embolism, and disseminated intravascular coagulation. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(2), 166-176.
- Ebbing, M., Bleive, Ø., Ueland, P., Nordrehaug, J., Nilsen, D., Vollset, S., et al. (2008). Mortality and cardiovascular events in patients treated with homocysteine-lowering B vitamins after coronary angiography: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 300(7), 795-804.
- Flicker, L. (2010). Cardiovascular risk factors, cerebrovascular disease burden and healthy brain aging. *Clinics in Geriatric Medicine*, 26(1), 17-27.
- *Grundy, S. M., Cleeman, J. I., Daniels, S. R., Donato, K. A., Eckel, R. H., Franklin, B. A., et al. (2005). Diagnosis and management of the metabolic syndrome: An American Heart Association/National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Scientific Statement. *Circulation*, 112(17), 2735-2752.
- Harris, W. S., Mozaffarian, D., Rimm, E., Kris-Etherton, P., Rudel, L. L., Appel, L. J., et al. (2009). Omega-6 fatty acids and risk for cardiovascular disease: A science advisory from the American Heart Association Nutrition Subcommittee of the Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity and Metabolism; Council on

- Cardiovascular Nursing; and Council on Epidemiology and Prevention. *Circulation*, 119(6), 902-907.
- Hayman, L. L., & Hughes, S. (2008). Progress in prevention: Preventing heart disease—a global challenge and a call to action. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 23(1), 65-66.
- *Kip, K. E., Marroquin, O. C., Kelley, D. E., Johnson, B. D., Kelsey, S. F., Shaw, L. J., et al. (2004). Clinical importance of obesity versus metabolic syndrome I cardiovascular risk in women: A report from the Women's Ischemia Syndrome Evaluation (WISE) study. *Circulation*, 109(6), 706-713.
- *Knox, J., & Gaster, B. (2007). Dietary supplements for the prevention and treatment of coronary artery disease. *Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine*, 13(1), 83-95.
- *Kushner, F. G., Hand, M., Smith, S. C., Jr., King, S. B., 3rd., Anderson, J. L., Antaman, E. M., et al. (2009). 2009 focused updates: ACC/AHA guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction (Updating the 2004 guideline and 2007 focused update) and the ACC/AHA/SCAI guidelines on percutaneous coronary intervention (Updating the 2005 guideline and 2007 focused update): A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 54(27), 2228-2241.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McSweeney, J. C., O'Sullivan, P., Cleves, M. A., Lefler, L. L., Cody, M., Moser, D. K., et al. (2010). Racial differences in women's prodromal and acute symptoms of myocardial infarction. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(1), 63-73.
- Mente, A., deKoning, L., Shannon, H. S., & Anand, S. S. (2009). A systematic review of the evidence supporting a causal link between dietary factors and coronary heart disease. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 169(7), 659-669.
- Moser, D. K., & Riegel, B. (2008). *Cardiac nursing: A companion to Braunwald's heart disease*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mullen-Fortino, M., & O'Brien, N. (2008). Caring for a patient after coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Nursing2008*, 38(3), 46-52.
- O'Keefe, J. H., Carter, M. D., & Lavie, C. J. (2009). Primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular diseases: A practical evidence-based approach. *Mayo Clinic Procedures*, 84(8), 741-757.
- Overbaugh, K. (2009). Acute coronary syndrome, *AJN*, 109(5), 42-52.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Sanz, J., Moreno, P. R., & Fuster, V. (2010). The year in atherothrombosis. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(14), 1487-1498.
- Scirica, B. (2010). Acute coronary syndrome: Emerging tools for diagnosis and risk assessment. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 55(14), 1403-1415.
- Shaw, L. J., Bugiardini, R., & Merz, C. N. (2009). Women and ischemic heart disease: Evolving knowledge. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 54(17), 1561-1575.
- Shoulders-Odom, B. (2008). Management of patients after percutaneous coronary interventions. *Critical Care Nurse*, 28(5), 26-41.
- *Siniorakis, E., Arvanitakis, S., Voyatzopoulos, G., Hatzianeoreou, P., Plataris, G., et al. (2000). Hemodynamic classification in acute myocardial infarction: Has anything changed in the last 3 decades? *Chest*, 117, 1286-1290.
- Stangl, V., Witzel, V., Baumann, G., & Stangl, K. (2008). Current diagnostic concepts to detect coronary artery disease in women. *European Heart Journal*, 29, 707-717.
- Summers, K., Martin, K., & Watson, K. (2010). Impact and clinical management of depression in patients with coronary artery disease. *Pharmacotherapy*, 30(3), 304-322.
- Surette, M. (2008). The science behind dietary omega-3 fatty acids. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 178(2), 177-180.
- Suzuki, K., Elkind, M. S., Boden-Albala, B., Jin, Z., Berry, G., DiTullio, M. R., et al. (2009). Moderate alcohol consumption is associated with better endothelial function: A cross sectional study. *BMC Cardiovascular Disorders*, 9, 8.
- Weustink, A. C., Mollet, N. R., Neeffjes, L. A., Meijboom, W. B., Galema, T. W., van Mieghem, C. A., et al. (2010). Diagnostic accuracy and clinical utility of noninvasive testing for coronary artery disease. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 152(10), 630-639.
- Wiviott, S. D., Braunwald, E., McCabe, C. H., Montalescot, G., Ruzyllo, W., Gottlieb, S., et al. (2007). Prasugrel versus clopidogrel in patients with acute coronary syndromes. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 357(20), 2001-2015.

Chapter 41

- Beattie, S. (2007). Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy. *RN*, 70(2), 41-43.
- Bucciarelli, P., & Mannucci, P. (2009). The hemostatic system through aging and menopause. *Climacteric*, 12(Suppl. 1), 47-51.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Matthews, J., & Newton, S. (2010). The Coombs test. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(2), 143-145.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Miller, J., & Starks, B. (2010). Deciphering clues in the CBC count. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 52-55.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Ruegg, T., Curran, C., & Lamb, T. (2009). Use of buffered lidocaine in bone marrow biopsies: A randomized, controlled trial. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(1), 52-60.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Weyland, P. (2009). Warfarin therapy management: Tap in to new ways to slow the clot. *Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 34(3), 22-28.
- *Woodrow, P. (2003). Assessing blood results in older people: Haematology and liver function tests. *Nursing Older People*, 15(3), 29-31.

Chapter 42

- Afable, M., & Lyon, D. (2008). Severe fatigue: Could it be aplastic anemia? *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(4), 569-573.
- Allen-Bard, S. (2009). Suboptimal responses to imatinib in chronic myelogenous leukemia: What are they and how do they affect treatment? *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(5), 537-542.

- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 01-300M-No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Ault, P., & Jones, K. (2009). Understanding iron overload: Screening, monitoring, and caring for patients with transfusion-dependent anemia. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(1), 511-517.
- Baker, M. (2010). Graft-versus-host disease following autologous transplantation. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(3), 269-272.
- Bauer, S., & Romvari, E. (2009). Treatment of chronic myeloid leukemia following imatinib resistance: A nursing guide to second-line treatment options. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(5), 523-534.
- Belavic, J. (2010). Drug approvals. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(2), 12-23.
- Bertolotti, P., Bilotti, E., Colson, K., Curran, K., Doss, D., Faiman, B., et al. (2008). Management of side effects of novel therapies for multiple myeloma: Consensus statements developed by the IMF Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(Suppl. 3), 9-12.
- Bevans, M., Tierney, D. K., Bruch, C., Burgunder, M., Castro, K., Ford, R., et al. (2009). Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation nursing: A practice variation study. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(6), E317-E325.
- Bielefeldt, S., & DeWitt, J. (2009). The rules of blood transfusion: Best practices for blood product administration. *American Nurse Today*, 4(2), 27-28.
- Brown, C. (Ed.). (2010). *A guide to oncology symptom management*. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Byar, K., & Workman, M. (2012). Targeted therapies to treat cancer. In J. Kee, E. Hayes, & L. McCuiston (Eds.), *Pharmacology: A nursing process approach* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Collins, T. (2011). Packed red blood cell transfusions in critically ill patients. *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(1), 25-33.
- Cook, L. (2009). Learning about blood component therapy. *Nursing2009*, 39(4), 30-33.
- Coyer, S., & Lash, A. (2008). Pathophysiology of anemia and nursing care implications. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(2), 77-83, 91.
- Devine, H., Tierney, K., Schmit-Pokorny, K., & McDermott, K. (2010). Mobilization of hematopoietic stem cells for use in autologous transplantation. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(2), 212-222.
- Dohnalek, L. (2007). Blood transfusions: How technology can improve patient safety. *American Nurse Today*, 2(5), 46-47.
- Elphee, E. (2008). Caring for patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(3), 417-423.
- Glass, M., & Spitrey, J. (2009). Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: Your questions answered. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(1), 5-9.
- Goy, A. (2009). Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: An evolving paradigm of care. *The Oncology Nurse*, 1(Suppl. 4), 4-11.
- Granados, R., & Jacob, E. (2009). Pain experience in hospitalized adults with sickle cell disease. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(3), 161-167.
- Hernandez, S., & Patterson, G. E. (2009). What you need to know about acute chest syndrome. *Nursing2009*, 39(6), 42-45.
- Hunt, C. (2010). Immune thrombocytopenia purpura. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(4), 237-239.
- Huntley, A. (2009). Transfusion reaction. *Nursing2009*, 39(1), 72.
- Katz, E. (2009). Blood transfusion: Friend or foe. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(2), 155-163.
- Keisner, S., & Shah, S. (2009). Advances in the treatment of multiple myeloma. *The Oncology Nurse*, 2(Suppl. 8), 14-15.
- Kurtin, S., & Demakos, E. (2010). An update on the treatment of myelodysplastic syndrome. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(3), E295.
- Kuman, V., Abbas, A., Fausto, N., & Aster, J. (2010). *Robbins and Cotran: Pathologic basis of disease* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kyle, R., & Rajkumar, S. V. (2009). Treatment of multiple myeloma: A comprehensive review. *Clinical Lymphoma & Myeloma*, 9(4), 278-288.
- Lambing, A. (2007). Bleeding disorders: Patient history key to diagnosis. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(12), 16-24.
- Leighton, S. (2008). The spin on apheresis. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 29-31.
- Mann-Jiles, V., & Morris, D. (2009). Quality of life of adult patients with sickle cell disease. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(6), 340-349.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McNally, G. (2011). B-cell lymphoma, unclassifiable: A review of the literature. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(2), 189-193.
- MD Consult. <http://www.mdconsult.com>.
- Miceli, T., Colson, K., Faiman, B., Miller, K., Tariman, J.; IMF Nurse Leadership Board. (2011). Maintaining bone health in patients with multiple myeloma: Survivorship care plan of the International Myeloma Foundation Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 15(4), 9-23.
- Miceli, T., Colson, K., Gavino, M., Lilleby, K., IMF Nurse Leadership Board. (2008). Myelosuppression associated with novel therapies in patients with multiple myeloma: Consensus statement of the IMF Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(Suppl. 3), 13-19.
- Miller, K., Musial, L., Whitworth, A., & Chanan-Kahn, A. (2010). Management of patients with chronic lymphocytic leukemia treated with lenalidomide. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 491-499.
- Mullen, E., & Mendez, N. (2008). Hyperviscosity syndrome in patients with multiple myeloma. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 35(3), 350-352.
- Munro, N. (2009). Hematologic complications of critical illness: Anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, and more. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(2), 145-154.
- Myers, F., & Reyes, C. (2011). Blood cultures: 5 steps to doing it right. *Nursing2011*, 41(3), 62-63.
- National Hemophilia Foundation. (2010). MASAC recommendations concerning products licensed for the treatment of hemophilia and other bleeding disorders. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://hemophilia.org>.
- Nettina, S. (2009). A new look at vitamin B₁₂ deficiency. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(11), 18-24.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pack-Mabien, A., & Haynes, J. (2009). A primary care provider's guide to preventive and acute care management of adults and children with sickle cell disease. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(5), 250-257.
- Pagana, K. (2009). What does the absolute neutrophil count tell you? *American Nurse Today*, 4(2), 12-13.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Rome, S., Doss, D., Miller, K., Westphal, J.; IMF Nurse Leadership Board. (2008). Thromboembolic events associated with novel

- therapies in patients with multiple myeloma: Consensus statement of the IMF Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(Suppl. 3), 21-27.
- Sickle Cell Information Center. (2010). Frequently asked questions. Emory University. Atlanta, GA. Website: www.scinfo.org/faq/
- Simmons, S. (2010). Anemia. *Nursing2010*, 40(6), 34.
- Smart, M. (2010). Pharmacy corner: Ofatumumab used to treat chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(2), 223.
- Smith, L., Bertolotti, P., Curran, K., Jenkins, B.; IMF Nurse Leadership Board. (2008). Gastrointestinal side effects associated with novel therapies in patients with multiple myeloma: Consensus statement of the IMF Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(Suppl. 3), 37-51.
- Sparks, M. (2009). Argatroban therapy in heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(1), 37-43.
- Tariman, J., Love, G., McCullagh, E., Sandifer, S.; IMF Nurse Leadership Board. (2008). Peripheral neuropathy associated with novel therapies in patients with multiple myeloma: Consensus statement of the IMF Nurse Leadership Board. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(Suppl. 3), 29-35.
- The Joint Commission (TJC). (2010). National Patient Safety Goals. Retrieved October 2010, from www.jointcommission.org/patientsafety/nationalpatientsafetygoals/.
- United States National Library of Medicine (2011). Genetics home reference: Sick cell disease. Retrieved June 2011 from <http://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/sickle-cell-disease>.
- Walker, D., & Held-Warmkessel, J. (2010). Acute promyelocytic leukemia: An overview with implications for oncology nurses. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(6), 747-759.
- Whelton, S. (2007). Radioimmunotherapy in the treatment of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(12), 35-38.
- Winkeljohn, D. (2010). Idiopathic thrombocytic purpura. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 411-413.
- Zimmermann, P. (2010). Revisiting IM injections. *AJN*, 110(2), 60-61.
- Chapter 43**
- Agrawal, Y., Carey, J. P., Della Santina, C. C., Schubert, M. C., & Minor, L. B. (2009). Disorders of balance and vestibular function in U.S. adults. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 169(10), 938-944.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Hickey, J. V. (2008). *The clinical practice of neurological and neurosurgical nursing* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- *Lower, J. (2003). Using pain to assess neurologic response. *Nursing2003*, 33(60), 56-57.
- *Milisen, K., Braes, T., Fick, D. M., & Foreman, M. D. (2006). Cognitive assessment and differentiating the 3 D's (dementia, depression, delirium). *Nursing Clinics of North America*, 41(1), 1-21.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Palmieri, R. L. (2009). Wrapping your head around cranial nerves. *Nursing2009*, 39(9), 24-30.
- *Photo Guide. (2006). Assessing the cranial nerves. *Nursing2006*, 36(11), 47-49.
- *Rushing, J. (2007). Assisting with lumbar puncture. *Nursing2007*, 37(1), 23.
- Solomon, E. P. (2009). *Introduction to human anatomy and physiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- *Thompson, H. J. (2006). *Neurological assessment of the older adult: A guide for nurses*. Chicago: American Association of Neuroscience Nurses.
- Vance, D. E. (2009). Speed of processing in older adults: A cognitive review for nursing. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 41(6), 290-297.
- Chapter 44**
- *Backer, J. H. (2006). The symptom experience of patients with Parkinson's disease. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 38(1), 51-57.
- Bradway, C., & Hirschman, K. B. (2008). Working with families of hospitalized older adults with dementia. *AJN*, 108(10), 52-60.
- Chadwick, C. (2008). Steady your sights on Parkinson's disease. *Nursing2008*, 38(12), 56hn1-56hn4.
- Cotter, V. T., & Evans, L. K. (2008). Try this: Avoiding restraints in older adults with dementia. *AJN*, 108(3), 45-46.
- Cranwell-Bruce, L. A. (2010). Drugs for Parkinson's disease. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(6), 347-350.
- Ellison, D., Williams, M. L., Moodt, G., & Farrar, F. C. (2010). Electrodiagnostic studies. *Critical Care Clinics of North America*, 22(1), 7-18.
- Feinberg, L. F. (2008). Caregiver assessment: Understanding the issues. *AJN*, 108(Suppl. 9), 38-39.
- Fincher, L., Ward, C., Dawkins, V., Magee, V., & Willson, P. (2009). Using telehealth to educate Parkinson's disease patients about complicated medication regimens. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(2), 16-24.
- Haahr, A., Kirkevold, M., Hall, E. O., & Ostergaard, K. (2011). Living with advanced Parkinson's disease: A constant struggle with unpredictability. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 67(2), 408-417.
- Heavey, E. (2010). An update on meningococcal meningitis. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 61-62.
- *Howland, R. H. (2007). What is vagal nerve stimulation? *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing and Mental Health Services*, 44(8), 11-14.
- Huntington's Disease Society of America (HDSA). (2010). *Fast facts about HD*. New York City: Author.
- Klager, J., Duckett, A., Sandler, S., & Moskowitz, C. (2008). Huntington's disease: A caring approach to end of life. *Journal of Care Management*, 9(2), 75-81.
- Lilley, L. L., Collins, S. R., Harrington, S., & Snyder, J. S. (2011). *Pharmacology and the nursing process*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Matthews, C., Miller, L., & Mott, M. (2007). Getting ahead of meningitis and encephalitis. *Nursing2007*, 107(11), 37-42.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Miller, C. A. (2008). Communication difficulties in hospitalized older adults with dementia. *AJN*, 108(3), 58-66.
- Moloney, M. F., & Cranwell-Bruce, L.A. (2010). Pharmacologic management of migraine headaches. *Nurse Practitioner*, 35(9), 16-22.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

- Rank, W. (2008). Interrupting status epilepticus. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 56cc1-56cc3.
- Roberts, B. R. (2010). Caring for patients with Parkinson's disease. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 58-64.
- Rowe, M. (2008). Wandering in hospitalized older patients. *AJN*, 108(10), 62-70.
- *Sanchez-del-Rio, M., Reuter, U., & Moskowitz, M. (2006). New insights into migraine pathophysiology. *Current Opinion in Neurology*, 19(3), 294-298.
- Schulz, R., & Sherwood, P. R. (2008). Physical and mental health effects of family caregiving. *AJN*, 108(Suppl. 9), 23-27.
- *Schutte, D. L. (2006). Alzheimer disease and genetics: Anticipating the questions. *AJN*, 106(12), 40-46.
- Sharer, J. (2008). Tackling sundowning in a patient with Alzheimer's disease. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(1), 27-30.
- Stockdell, R., & Amella, E. (2008). The Edinburgh Feeding Evaluation in Dementia Scale. *AJN*, 108(8), 46-54.
- *Tan, H. J., Suganthi, C., Dhachayani, S., Rizal, A. M., & Raymond, A. A. (2007). The coexistence of anxiety and depressive personality traits in migraine. *Singapore Medical Journal*, 48(4), 307-310.
- *Vacca, V. M., & Olson, A. (2007). Epilepsy in the elderly. *Advance for Nurses MD/DC/VA*, 2, 39-40.
- Walker, E. R., Wexler, B., Dilorio, C., Escoffery, C., McCarty, F., & Yeager, K. A. (2009). Content and characteristics of goals created during a self-management intervention for people with epilepsy. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 41(6), 312-321.
- Welsh, M. (2008). Treatment challenges in Parkinson's disease. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(7), 32-38.
- *Yaari, R., & Correy-Bloom, J. (2007). Alzheimer's disease. *Seminars in Neurology*, 27(1), 32-41.
- Zarit, S., & Femia, E. (2008). Behavioral and psychological interventions for family caregivers. *AJN*, 108(9), 47-53.
- Chapter 45**
- *Amato, M. P., Portaccio, E., & Zipoli, V. (2006). Are there protective treatments for cognitive decline in MS? *Journal of Neurological Science*, 245(1-2), 183-186.
- *American Association of Neuroscience Nurses. (2007). *Cervical spine surgery: A guide to preoperative and postoperative patient care*. Chicago: Author.
- *Copeland, B. (2007). Surgical versus nonsurgical treatment for back pain. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 357(12), 1255.
- DeSanto-Madeya, S. (2009). Adaptation to spinal cord injury for families post-injury. *Nursing Science Quarterly*, 22(1), 57-66.
- Duddy, M., Haghikia, A., Cocco, E., Eggers, C., Drulovic, J., Carmona, O., et al. (2011). Managing MS in a changing treatment landscape. *Journal of Neurology*, Mar25 (Epub ahead of print). Retrieved March 26, 2011, from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21437661.
- Esmonde, L., & Long, A. F. (2008). Complementary therapy use by persons with multiple sclerosis: Benefits and research priorities. *Complementary Therapies in Clinical Practice*, 14(3), 176-184.
- Fraser, C., Mahoney, J., & McGurl, J. (2008). Correlates of sexual dysfunction in men and women with multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 40(5), 312-317.
- *International Multiple Sclerosis Genetics Consortium; Hafler, D. A., Compston, A., Sawcer, S., Lander E. S., Daly, M. J., De Jager, P. L., et al. (2007). Risk alleles for multiple sclerosis identified by a genomewide study. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 357(9), 851-862.
- Liedstrom, E., Isaksson, A. K., & Ahlstrom, G. (2010). Quality of life in spite of an unpredictable future: The next of kin of patients with multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 42(6), 331-341.
- Lohne, V. (2009). Back to life again—Patients' experiences of hope three to four years after a spinal cord injury: A longitudinal study. *Canadian Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 31(2), 20-25.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for diseases in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Murphy, J., Henry, R., & Lomen-Hoerth, C. (2007). Establishing subtypes of the continuum of frontal lobe impairment in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Archives of Neurology*, 64(3), 330-334.
- National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center. (2010). Spinal cord injury facts and figures at a glance 2010. Retrieved July 19, 2011, from www.fscip.org/facts.htm.
- Nayduch, D. A. (2010). Back to basics: Identifying and managing acute spinal cord injury. *Nursing2010*, 40(9), 24-32.
- Newland, P. K., Riley, M. A., Fearing, A. D., Neath, A., & Gibson, D. (2010). Pain in women with relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis and healthy women: Relationship to demographic variables. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(3), 177-184.
- Newman, S. D., & SCI Photovoice Participants. (2010). Evidence-based advocacy: Using Photovoice to identify barriers and facilitators to community participation after spinal cord injury. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 35(2), 47-59.
- Norton, C., & Chelvanayagam, S. (2010). Bowel problems and coping strategies in people with multiple sclerosis. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(4), 220-226.
- Palmieri, R. L. (2008). Caring for a medical/surgical patient with MS. *Nursing2008*, 38(10), 34-40.
- *Ridley, B. (2006). Intrathecal baclofen therapy: Challenges in patients with multiple sclerosis. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 31(4), 158-164.
- Rubinstein, S. M., van Middelkoop, M., Kuijpers, T., Ostelo, R., Verhagen, A. P., de Boer, M. R., et al. (2010). European Spine Journal, 19(8), 1213-1228.
- Ryan, M. (2009). Drug therapies for the treatment of multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 32(3), 137-144.
- *Sabin, K. L., & Penckofer, S. M. (2007). Patient expectations of quality of life following lumbar spinal surgery. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 39(3), 180-189.
- Song, H. Y., & Nam, K. A. (2010). Coping strategies, physical function, and social adjustment in people with spinal cord injury. *Rehabilitation Nursing*, 35(1), 8-15.
- van Middelkoop, M., Rubinstein, S. M., Kuijpers, T., Verhagen, A. P., Ostelo, R., Koes, B. W., et al. (2011). A systematic review on the effectiveness of physical rehabilitation interventions for chronic non-specific low back pain. *European Spine Journal*, 20(1), 19-39.
- Chapter 46**
- *Alexander, D. M. (2007). Facing the pain of trigeminal neuralgia. *Nursing2007*, 37(7), 18-20.
- American Academy of Neurology (AAN). (2011). AAN guideline summary for patients and their families: Treatment for Guillain-Barré syndrome. Retrieved July 20, 2011, from aan.com/professional/practice/pdfs/gbs_guide_pat_care.pdf.
- *Atkinson, S. B., Carr, R., Maybee, P., & Haynes, D. (2006). The challenges of managing and treating Guillain-Barré syndrome

- during the acute phase. *Dimensions of Critical Care Nursing*, 25(6), 256-263.
- Bershad, E. M., Feen, E. S., & Suarez, J. I. (2008). Myasthenia gravis crisis. *Southern Medical Journal*, 101(1), 63-69.
- *Carlson, D. S., & Pfadt, E. (2005). When your patient has acute facial paralysis. *Nursing* 2005, 35(4), 54-55.
- Dhar, R. (2008). The morbidity and outcome of patients with Guillain-Barré syndrome admitted to the intensive care unit. *Journal of the Neurological Sciences*, 264(1-2), 121-128.
- *Feasby, T. (2007). Guidelines on the use of intravenous immune globulin for neurologic conditions. *Transfusion Medicine Reviews*, 21(Suppl. 1), S57-S107.
- Haldeman, D., & Zulkosky, K. (2008). The ascension of Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Critical Care Insider*, Spring, 2-6.
- *Hampton, T. (2007). Novel therapies target myasthenia gravis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 298(2), 163-164.
- Kernich, C. A. (2008). Myasthenia gravis: Maximizing function. *The Neurologist*, 14(1), 75-76.
- Lemos, L., Fontes, R., Flores, S., Oliverira, P., & Almeida, A. (2010). Effectiveness of the association between carbamazepine and peripheral analgesic block with ropivacaine for the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia. *Journal of Pain Research*, 3, 201-212.
- Leung, N. (2008). Guillain-Barré syndrome in elderly people. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 56(2), 1381-1382.
- Lui, H., Li, H., Xu, M., Chung, K.F., & Zhang, B. P. (2010). A systematic review on acupuncture for trigeminal neuralgia. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine*, 16(3), 30-35.
- Maat, A. P. (2008). Inclusion of the transcervical approach in the video-assisted thoracoscopic-extended thymectomy (VATET) for myasthenia gravis: A prospective trial. *Surgical Endoscopy*, 22(1), 265.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. (2011a). Restless legs syndrome fact sheet. Retrieved February 2011, from www.ninds.nih.gov.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. (2011b). Trigeminal neuralgia fact sheet. Retrieved February 2011, from www.ninds.nih.gov.
- Simmons, S. (2010). Guillain-Barré syndrome. *Nursing* 2010, 40(1), 24-29.
- *Slack, C.B., & Landis, C. A. (2006). Improving outcomes for restless legs syndrome. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 31(5), 27-37.
- Weigel, G., & Casey, K. F. (2011). Striking back: The trigeminal neuralgia and face pain handbook. Gainesville, FL: TNA Facial Pain Association.
- Chapter 47**
- *Adams, H. P., Jr., del Zoppo, G., Alberts, M. J., Bhatt, D. L., Brass, L., Furlan, A., et al. (2007). Guidelines for the early management of adults with ischemic stroke: A guideline from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association Stroke Council, Clinical Cardiology Council, Cardiovascular Radiology and Intervention Council, and the Atherosclerotic Peripheral Vascular Disease and Quality of Care Outcomes in Research Interdisciplinary Work Groups. *Stroke*, 38(5), 1655-1711.
- Beal, C. (2010). Gender and stroke symptoms: A review of the current literature. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 42(2), 80-87.
- Bederson, J. B., Connolly, E. S., Jr., Batjer, H. H., Dacey, R. G., Dion, J. E., Dinger, M. N., et al. (2009). Guidelines for the management of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage: A statement for healthcare professionals from a special writing group of the Stroke Council, American Heart Association. *Stroke*, 40(3), 994-1025.
- Cahill, J. E., & Armstrong, T. S. (2011). Caring for an adult with a malignant primary brain tumor. *Nursing* 2011, 41(6), 28-33.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2011). Cerebrovascular disease or stroke. Retrieved July 27, 2011, from www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/stroke.htm.
- Custer, N. R. (2009). What nurses should know about carotid stents. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(5), 277-282.
- *Fox, S. W., Mitchell, S. A., & Booth-Jones, M. (2006). Cognitive impairments in patients with brain tumors: Assessment and intervention in the clinic setting. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 10(2), 169-176.
- Gramitto, M., & Galitz, D. (2008). Update on stroke: The latest guidelines. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(1), 39-47.
- Hills, T. E. (2010). Determining brain death: A review of evidence-based guidelines. *Nursing* 2010, 40(12), 35-41.
- *Hinkle, J. L. (2007). Acute ischemic stroke review. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 39(5), 285-293, 310.
- *Jeong, S., & Kim, M. T. (2007). Effects of a theory-driven music and movement program for stroke survivors in a community setting. *Applied Nursing Research*, 20(3), 125-131.
- Kozub, E. (2010). Community stroke prevention programs: An overview. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 42(3), 143-149.
- McNett, M., & Gianakis, A. (2010). Nursing interventions for critically ill traumatic brain injury patients. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 42(2), 71-77.
- Miller, J., & Mink, J. (2009). Acute ischemic stroke: Not a moment to lose. *Nursing* 2009, 39(5), 37-42.
- Mink, J., & Miller, J. (2011a). Opening the window of opportunity for treating acute ischemic stroke. *Nursing* 2011, 41(1), 24-32.
- Mink, J., & Miller, J. (2011b). Respond aggressively to hemorrhagic stroke. *Nursing* 2011, 41(3), 36-43.
- Morrison, K. (2007). Improving the care of stroke patients. *American Nurse Today*, 2(4), 38-44.
- Oran, N., & Oran, I. (2010). Carotid angioplasty and stenting in carotid artery stenosis: Neuroscience nursing implications. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 42(1), 3-11.
- *Palmieri, R. L. (2006). Carotid artery stenosis paves the way for a stroke. *Nursing* 2006, 36(6), 36-42.
- *Palmieri, R. L. (2007). Responding to primary brain tumor. *Nursing* 2007, 37(1), 36-43.
- Simpson, J. R., Zahuranec, D. B., Lisabeth, L. D., Sanchez, B. N., Skolarus, L. E., Mendizabal, J. E., et al. (2010). Mexican Americans with atrial fibrillation have more recurrent strokes than do non-Hispanic whites. *Stroke*, 41(10), 2132-2136.
- Summers, D., Leonard, A., Wentworth, D., Saver, J. L., Simpson, J., Spilker, J. A., Hock, N., et al. (2009). Comprehensive overview of nursing and interdisciplinary care of the acute ischemic stroke patient: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Stroke*, 40(8), 2911-2944.
- Wijdicks, E. F. M., Varelas, P. N., Gronseth, G. S., et al. (2010). Evidence-based guideline update: Determining brain death in adults: Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. *Neurology*, 74(23), 1911-1918.
- Chapter 48**
- Cannon, J. (2010). Assessing visual acuity. *Nursing* 2010, 40(8), 65.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Keeping an eye on abnormalities. (2008). *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 48-49.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Rushing, J. (2007). Administering eyedrops. *Nursing2007*, 37(5), 18.
- *Sackett, C., & Schenning, S. (2003). Eye safety in the workplace. *Insight (American Society of Ophthalmic Registered Nurses)*, 27(4), 101-102.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Vaughan, D., Asbury, T., & Riordan-Eva, P. (Eds.). (2004). *General ophthalmology* (16th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Chapter 49**
- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 00-300M-No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Ayers, D. (2010). Take a closer look at LASIK surgery. *Nursing2010*, 40(48), 48-51.
- Foundation Fighting Blindness. (2010). Retrieved February 2011, from www.blindness.org.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kaufman, S. (2009). Developments in age-related macular degeneration: Diagnosis and treatment. *Geriatrics*, 64(3), 16-19.
- Kock, J., & Sikes, K. (2009). Getting the red out: Primary angle-closure glaucoma. *The Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 34(5), 6-9.
- Lockey, J. (2009). The provision of information for patients prior to cataract surgery. *British Journal of Nursing*, 18(19), 1207-1211.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Eye Institute of the National Institutes of Health. (2010). Prevalence of cataract and pseudophakia/aphakia among adults in the United States. Retrieved February 2011, from www.nei.nih.gov/eyedata/pbd6.asp.
- Noble, J., & Chaudhary, V. (2010). Five things to know about age-related macular degeneration. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 182(16), 1759.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pullen, R., & Hall, D. (2010). Sjögren syndrome: More than dry eyes. *Nursing2010*, 40(8), 37-41.
- Saligan, L., & Yeh, S. (2008). Seeing red: Guiding the management of ocular hyperemia. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(6), 14-20.
- Sharts-Hopko, N., & Glynn-Milley, C. (2009). Primary open-angle glaucoma: Catching and treating the "sneak thief of sight." *AJN*, 109(2), 40-47.
- Simar, K. (2009). The fundamentals of uveal melanoma. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(5), 483-485.
- Statistics Canada. (2010). Retrieved February 2011, from www.statcan.gc.ca.
- Tao, Y., Libondi, T., & Jonas, J. (2010). Long-term follow-up after multiple intravitreal bevacizumab injections for exudative age-related macular degeneration. *Journal of Ocular Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 26(1), 79-83.

- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Watkinson, S. (2009). Visual impairment in older people. *Nursing Older People*, 21(8), 30-36.
- Watkinson, S. (2010). Management of older people with dry and wet age-related macular degeneration. *Nursing Older People*, 22(5), 21-26.

Chapter 50

- Bess, F. H., & Humes, L. E. (2007). *Audiology: The fundamentals* (4th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Boys Town National Research Hospital. (2010). Hearing loss. Retrieved August 2010, from www.boystownhospital.org/.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Hearing loss. Retrieved December 2010, from www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/hearingloss/index.html.
- Diagnostic tests for vestibular disorders. (2011). Retrieved January 2011, from www.vestibular.org/vestibular-disorders/diagnostic-tests.php.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Holcomb, S. (2009). Get an earful of the new cerumen impaction guidelines. *The Nurse Practitioner Journal*, 34(4), 14-19.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kutten, J., & Reedy, S. (2009). Are you tuned in to your deaf patients? *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(8), 44-49.
- Laubach, G. (2010). Speaking up for older patients with hearing loss. *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 60-62.
- Lieu, C., Sadler, G., Fullerton, J., & Stohlmann, P. (2007). Communication strategies for nurses interacting with deaf patients. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(4), 239-245.
- *Lusk, S. L. (1997). Noise exposures: Effects of hearing and prevention of noise induced hearing loss. *AAOHN Journal*, 45(8), 397-405, 409-410.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Stach, B., Hornsby, B., Rosenfeld, M., & DeChicchis, A. (2009). The complexity of auditory aging. *Seminars in Hearing*, 30(2), 94-111.
- Stephenson, M. (2009). Hearing protection in the 21st century: They're not your father's earplugs anymore. *Seminars in Hearing*, 30(1), 56-64.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 51

- Bassim, M., & Fayad, J. (2010). Implantable middle ear hearing devices: A review. *Seminars in Hearing*, 31(1), 28-36.
- Bauer, C., & Brozoski, T. (2008). Tinnitus assessment and treatment: Integrating clinical experience with the basic science of tinnitus. *Seminars in Hearing*, 29(4), 371-385.
- Holcomb, S. (2009). Get an earful of the new cerumen impaction guidelines. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(4), 14-19.
- Humes, L., Ahlstrom, J., Bratt, G., & Peek, B. (2009). Studies of hearing-aid outcome measures in older adults: A comparison

- of technologies and an examination of individual differences. *Seminars in Hearing*, 30(2), 112-128.
- Ko, J. (2010). Presbycusis and its management. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(3), 160-165.
- Kutten, J., & Reedy, S. (2009). Are you tuned in to your deaf patients? *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(8), 44-49.
- Laubach, G. (2010). Speaking up for older patients with hearing loss. *Nursing* 2010, 40(1), 60-62.
- Lee, L., & Pensak, M. (2008). Contemporary role of endolymphatic mastoid shunt surgery in the era of transtympanic perfusion strategies. *Annals of Otology, Rhinology, & Laryngology*, 117(12), 871-875.
- Lee, M. R., Pawlowski, K. S., Luong, A., Furze, A. D., & Roland, P. S. (2009). Biofilm presence in humans with chronic suppurative otitis media. *Otolaryngology—Head & Neck Surgery*, 141(5), 567-571.
- Lieu, C. C. (2007). Communication strategies for nurses interacting with deaf patients. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(4), 239-245.
- *McAleer, M. (2006). Communicating effectively with deaf patients. *Nursing Standard*, 20(19), 51-54.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Newman, C., Sandridge, S., Meit, S., & Cherian, N. (2008). Strategies for managing patients with tinnitus: A clinical pathway model. *Seminars in Hearing*, 29(3), 300-309.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man, OMIM™. (2010). McKusick-Nathans Institute for Genetic Medicine, Johns Hopkins University (Baltimore, MD) and National Center for Biotechnology Information, National Library of Medicine (Bethesda, MD). Retrieved July 2011 from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim/.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Peate, I. (2009). Ménière's disease: Helping and understanding. *British Journal of Healthcare Assistants*, 3(12), 578-581.
- Pratt, S. R., Kuller, L., Talbott, E. O., McHugh-Pemu, K., Buhari, A. M., & Xu, X. (2009). Prevalence of hearing loss in black and white elders: Results of the cardiovascular health study. *Journal of Speech, Language, and Hearing Research*, 52(4), 973-989.
- Scheier, D. (2009). Barriers to health care for people with hearing loss: A review of the literature. *Journal of the New York State Nurses Association*, 40(1), 4-10.
- Stach, B., Hornsby, B., Rosenfeld, M., & DeChicchis, A. (2009). The complexity of auditory aging. *Seminars in Hearing*, 30(2), 94-111.
- Stephenson, M. (2009). Hearing protection in the 21st century: They're not your father's earplugs anymore. *Seminars in Hearing*, 30(1), 56-64.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. (2010). Medical devices—Recently approved devices. Retrieved January 2011, from www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/.
- Warren, E. (2008). ENT in primary care: Vertigo. *Practice Nurse*, 35(10), 39-41.
- Collyott, C. L., & Brooke, M. V. (2008). Evaluation and management of joint pain. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(4), 246-250.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Kress, T., Krueger, D., & Ziccardi, S. (2008). Creatine kinase: An assay with muscle. *Nursing* 2008, 38(10), 62.
- *Maher, A. B. (2002). Assessment of the musculoskeletal system. In A. B. Maher, S. W. Salmond, & T. A. Pellino (Eds.), *Orthopaedic nursing* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Mosher, C. M. (2010). *An introduction to orthopaedic nursing*. (4th ed.). Chicago, IL: National Association of Orthopaedic Nurses.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's diagnostic and laboratory test reference* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pullen, R. L. (2008). Preparing a patient for magnetic resonance imaging. *Nursing* 2008, 38(10), 22.
- *Taggart, H. M. (2007). *Core curriculum for orthopaedic nursing* (6th ed.). Boston: Pearson.

Chapter 53

- Chang, S. F., Yang, R. S., Chung, U. L., Chen, C. M., & Cheng, M. H. (2010). Perception of risk factors and DXA T-score among at-risk females of osteoporosis. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 19(13-14), 1795-1802.
- Cohen, H. V. (2010). Bisphosphonate-associated osteonecrosis of the jaw—Patient care considerations: Overview for the orthopaedic nursing healthcare professional. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(3), 176-180.
- Doheny, M. O., Sedlak, C. A., Zeller, R., & Estok, P. J. (2010). Validation of the Osteoporosis Smoking Health Belief instrument. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(1), 11-16.
- *Estok, P. J., Sedlak, C. A., Doheny, M. O., & Hall, R. (2007). Structural model for osteoporosis preventing behavior in postmenopausal women. *Nursing Research*, 56(7), 148-158.
- Gloth, F. M., 3rd, & Simonson, W. (2008). Osteoporosis is underdiagnosed in skilled nursing facilities: A large-scale heel BMD screening study. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*, 9(3), 190-193.
- Greene, D., & Dell, R. M. (2010). Outcomes of an osteoporosis disease-management program managed by nurse practitioners. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 22(6), 326-329.
- *Iacono, M. V. (2007). Osteoporosis: A national public health priority. *Journal of Perianesthesia Nursing*, 22(3), 175-193.
- Institute for Safe Medication Practices. (2008). ISMPs list of high-alert medications. Retrieved February 2011, from www.ismp.org/Tools/highalertmedications.pdf.
- Johnson, M. A., Davery, A., Park, S., Hausman, D. B., & Poon, L. W. (2008). Age, race and season predict vitamin D status in African American and white octogenarians and centenarians. *Journal of Nutrition and Healthy Aging*, 12(10), 690-695.
- Lee, J. (2009). Complication related to bisphosphonate therapy: Osteonecrosis of the jaw. *Journal of Infusion Nursing*, 32(6), 330-335.
- Lilley, L. L., Rainforth Collins, S., Harrington, S., & Snyder, J. S. (2011). *Pharmacology and the nursing process* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 52

- Bigony, L. (2008). Arthroscopic surgery: A historical perspective. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(6), 349-354.

- Matzo, M. (2008). Agents for preventing fractures in osteoporosis. *AJN*, 108(8), 73.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., and Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Najat, D., Garner, T., Hagen, T., Shaw, B., Sheppard, P. W., Falchetti, A., et al. (2009). Characterization of a non-UBA domain missense mutation of sequestosome (SQSTM1) in Paget's disease of bone. *Journal of Bone and Mineral Research*, 24(4), 632-642.
- National Institute of Arthritis and Musculoskeletal and Skin Diseases. (2010). Information for patients about Paget's disease of bone. Retrieved February 2011, from www.niams.nih.gov/Health_Info/Bone/pagets/patient_info.asp.
- National Osteoporosis Foundation. (2010). *Clinician's guide to prevention and treatment of osteoporosis*. Washington, DC: Author.
- *Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Parikh, S., Avorn, J., & Solomon, D. H. (2009). Pharmacological management of osteoporosis in nursing home populations: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, 57(2), 327-334.
- Przybelski, R., Agrawal, S., Krueger, D., Engelke, J. A., Walbrun, F., & Binkley, N. (2008). Rapid correction of low vitamin D status in nursing home residents. *Osteoporosis International*, 19(11), 1621-1628.
- *Sadler, C., & Huff, M. (2007). African-American women: Health beliefs, lifestyle, and osteoporosis. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 26(2), 96-101.
- Sambrook, P. N., Cameron, I. D., Chen, J. S., March, L. M., Simpson, J. M., Cumming, R. G., et al. (2010). Oral bisphosphonates are associated with reduced mortality in frail older people: A prospective five-year study. *Osteoporosis International*, 21(10), Epub ahead of print.
- Seton, M., Moses, A. M., Bode, R. K., & Schwartz, C. (2011). Paget's disease of bone: The skeletal distribution, complications, and quality of life as perceived by patients. *Bone*, 48(2), 281-285.
- Swislocki, A., Green, J. A., Heinrich, G., Barnett, C. A., Meadows, I. D., Harmon, E. B., et al. (2010). Prevalence of osteoporosis in men in a VA rehabilitation center. *American Journal of Managed Care*, 16(6), 427-433.
- Voda, S. C. (2009a). Dangerous curves: Treating adult idiopathic scoliosis. *Nursing2009*, 39(12), 42-46.
- Voda, S. C. (2009b). Help older men bone up on osteoporosis. *Nursing2009*, 39(12), 66-67.
- *Woman's Health Initiative. (2005). Findings from the WHI postmenopausal hormone therapy trials. Retrieved April 18, 2007, from www.nhlbi.nih.gov/whi/index.html.
- Chang, H. J., Burke, A. E., & Glass, R. M. (2010). Achilles tendinopathy. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(2), 188.
- Day, M. W. (2008). Fracture in the field. *Nursing2008*, 38(6), 72.
- *Folden, S., & Tappen, R. (2007). Factors influencing function and recovery following hip repair surgery. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 26(4), 234-241.
- Herr, K., & Titler, M. (2009). Acute pain assessment and pharmacological management practices for the older adult with a hip fracture: Review of ED trends. *Journal of Emergency Nursing*, 35(4), 312-320.
- *Holmes, S. B., & Brown, S. J. (2005). Skeletal pin site care: National Association of Orthopaedic Nurses guidelines for orthopaedic nursing. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 24(2), 99-107.
- Hsu, E. (2009). Practical management of complex regional pain syndrome. *American Journal of Therapeutics*, 16(2), 147-154.
- Huisstede, B. M., Randsdorp, M. S., Coert, J. H., Glerum, S., van Middlekoop, M., & Koes, B. W. (2010). Carpal tunnel syndrome. Part II—Effectiveness of surgical treatments: A systematic review. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 91(7), 1005-1024.
- Ketz, A. K. (2008). Pain management in the traumatic amputee. *Critical Care Nursing Clinics of North America*, 20(1), 51-57.
- *Laskowski-Jones, L. (2006). First aid for amputation. *Nursing2006*, 36(4), 50-52.
- Lowe, J., & Tariman, J. D. (2008). Lower extremity amputations: Black men with diabetes overburdened. *Advance for Nurse Practitioners*, 16(11), 28.
- Montana, C., & Kautz, D. D. (2011). Turning the nightmare of complex regional pain syndrome into a time of healing, renewal, and hope. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(3), 139-142.
- Nahm, E. S., Resnick, B., Orwig, D., Magaziner, J., & Degrezia, M. (2010). Exploration of informal caregiving following hip fractures. *Geriatric Nursing*, 31(4), 254-262.
- National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke. (2011). Complex regional pain syndrome fact sheet. Retrieved March 4, 2011, from www.ninds.nih.gov/disorders/reflex_sympathetic_dystrophy/detail.htm.
- *Olsson, L. E., Karlsson, J., & Ekman, I. (2007). Effects of nursing interventions within an integrated care pathway for patients with hip fracture. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 58(2), 116-125.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pullen, R. L. (2010). Caring for a patient after amputation. *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 15.
- Satryb, S. A., Wilson, T. J., & Patterson, M. M. (2011). Casting: All wrapped up. *Orthopedic Nursing*, 30(1), 37-41.
- Schoen, D. C. (2008). Preventing hip fractures. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(2), 148-152.
- Schoen, D. C. (2009). The hand. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(4), 194-198.
- Small, K. (2009). Ankle sprains and fractures in adults. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 28(6), 314-320.
- Smith, M. A., & Smith, W. T. (2010). Rotator cuff tears: An overview. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 29(5), 319-322.
- Uchiyama, S., Itsubo, T., Nakamura, K., Kato, H., Yasutomi, T., & Momose, T. (2010). Current concepts of carpal tunnel syndrome: Pathophysiology, treatment, and evaluation. *Journal of Orthopaedic Science*, 15(1), 1-13.
- Voda, S. C. (2011). Bad breaks—A nurse's guide to distal radius fractures. *Nursing2011*, 41(8), 34-40.

Chapter 54

- Al-Shaer, D., Hill, P. D., & Anderson, M. A. (2011). Nurses' knowledge and attitudes regarding pain assessment and intervention. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(1), 7-12.
- Altizer, L. L. (2008). Colles' fracture. *Orthopaedic Nursing*, 27(2), 140-145.
- Barry, M. (2010). Bringing Achilles tendinopathy to heel. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 30-33.

Chapter 55

- American Cancer Society. (2010). American Cancer Society Guidelines for the early detection of cancer. Retrieved August 5, 2011, from www.cancer.org/Healthy/FindCancerEarly/CancerScreeningGuidelines.
- Bruesehoff, M. P. (2010). ERCP—Much ado about blockages: Update your knowledge about the diagnostic and therapeutic uses for endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography. *Nursing2010*, 40(9), 46-50.
- Ellett, M. L. (2010). A literature review of the safety and efficacy of using propofol for sedation in endoscopy. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(2), 113-117.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- *Greenwald, B. (2006). A pilot study evaluating two alternate methods of stool collection for the fecal occult blood test. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(2), 89-94.
- *Heseltine, P. (2007, January). Fecal immunochemical test. *Clinical Laboratory News*. Retrieved March 24, 2008, from www.aacc.org.
- Hulse, R. S., Stuart-Shor, E. M., & Russo, J. (2010). Endoscopic procedure with a modified Reiki intervention: A pilot study. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(1), 20-26.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Keske, L. A., & Letizia, M. (2010). *Clostridium difficile* infection: Essential information for nurses. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(6), 329-333.
- *Madsen, D., Sebolt, T., Cullen, L., Folkedahl, B., Mueller, T., Richardson, C., et al. (2005). Listening to bowel sounds: An evidence-based practice project. *AJN*, 105(12), 40-48.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (Eds.). (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults & children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Society of Gastroenterology Nurses and Associates. (2008). *Gastroenterology nursing: A core curriculum* (4th ed.). Chicago: Author.
- *Yu, M. (2002). M2A Capsule Endoscopy: A breakthrough diagnostic tool for small intestine imaging. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 25(1), 24-27.

Chapter 56

- *American Dietetic Association. (2007). Position of the American Dietetic Association: Oral health and nutrition. Retrieved July 23, 2011, from www.eatright.org.
- *Berry, A. M., Davidson, P. M., Masters, J., & Rolls, K. (2007). Systematic literature review of oral hygiene practices for intensive care patients receiving mechanical ventilation. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(6), 552-562.
- Cancer Research UK. (2010). Types of mouth and oropharyngeal cancer. Retrieved June 16, 2011, from www.cancerhelp.org.uk.
- *Chia-Hui Chen, C. (2003). The Geriatric Oral Health Assessment Index (GOHAI). *Try this: Best practices in nursing for older adults*, 14(6), 5-6.
- Duffin, C. (2008). Brushing up on oral hygiene. *Nursing Older People*, 20(2), 14-16.
- Feider, L., Mitchell, P., & Bridges, E. (2010). Oral care practices for orally intubated critically ill adults. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 19(2), 175-183.
- Finlayson, T., Williams, D., Siefert, K., Jackson, J., & Ruth, N. (2010). Oral health disparities and psychosocial correlates of

- self-rated oral health in the National Survey of American Life. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100(Suppl. 1), S246-S255.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- *McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults & children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research. (2008). Bringing the promise of molecular medicine to oral cancer screening. Retrieved December 2010, from www.nidcr.nih.gov.
- Oral Cancer Foundation. (2010). Oral cancer facts. Retrieved December 15, 2010, from www.oralcancerfoundation.org.
- Oral CDx. (2008). The Oral CDx Brush Test. Retrieved December 15, 2010, from www.sopreventable.com.
- Purandare, N., Woods, E., Butler, S., & Julie, M. (2010). Dental health of community-living older people attending secondary healthcare: A cross-sectional comparison between those with and without diagnosed mental illness. *International Psychogeriatrics*, 22(3), 417-423.
- Winkeljohn, D. (2010). Adherence to oral cancer therapies: Nursing interventions. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 461-466.

Chapter 57

- A new horizon: Recommendations and treatment guidelines for Barrett's esophagus. (2009). *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(3), 211-212.
- American Cancer Society. (2010). Cancer facts and figures 2010. Retrieved February 12, 2011, from www.cancer.org.
- Bresalier, R. S. (2009). Barrett's esophagus and esophageal adenocarcinoma. *Annual Review of Medicine*, 60, 221-231.
- Bulsiewicz, W. J., & Shaheen, N. J. (2011). The role of radiofrequency ablation in the management of Barrett's esophagus. *Gastroenterological Endoscopy Clinics of North America*, 21(1), 95-109.
- Chait, M. M. (2010). Gastroesophageal reflux disease: Important considerations for older patients. *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy*, 2(12), 388-396.
- Edmondson, D., & Schiech, L. (2008). Esophageal cancer: A tough pill to swallow. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 44-51.
- Hard to swallow: Understanding dysphagia. (2008). *Nursing2008*, 38(3), 44-45.
- *Jacobson, B. C., Somers, S. C., Fuchs, C. S., Kelly, C. P., & Camargo, C. A., Jr. (2006). Body-mass index and symptoms of gastrointestinal reflux in women. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 354(22), 2340-2348.
- Jaromahum, J., & Fowlers, S. (2010). Lived experiences of eating after esophagectomy: A phenomenological study. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(2), 96-100.
- Ji, F., Wang, Z., Wu, J., Gao, X., & Chen, X. (2010). The Stretta procedure eliminated arrhythmia due to gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(5), 344-346.
- *Lawrence, B. L., & Taylor, D. (2007). Esophageal pH monitoring goes wireless. *Nursing2007*, 37(10), 26-27.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *McCormick, D. G. (2004). Stretta procedure for the treatment of gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 27(1), 22-28.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson and Thompson's genetics in medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Sweed, M. R., Edmondson, D., & Cohen, S. J. (2009). Tumors of the esophagus, gastroesophageal junction, and stomach. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 25(1), 61-75.
- *Tawk, M., Goodrich, S., Kinasewitz, G., & Orr, W. (2006). The effect of 1 week of continuous positive airway pressure treatment in obstructive sleep apnea patients with concomitant gastroesophageal reflux. *Chest*, 130(4), 1003-1008.
- Tomizawa, Y., & Wang, K. K. (2009). Changes in screening, prognosis and therapy for esophageal adenocarcinoma in Barrett's disease. *Current Opinion in Gastroenterology*, 25(4), 358-368.
- ### Chapter 58
- *Cope, D. G., & Reb, A. M. (2006). *An evidence-based approach to the treatment and care of the older adult with cancer*. Pittsburgh, PA: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Fromm, A. (2009). Care of older adult populations diagnosed with *Helicobacter pylori*: A review of current literature. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(6), 393-398.
- Halpin, A., Huckabay, L. M., Kozuki, J. L., & Forsythe, D. (2010). Weigh the benefits of using a 0-to-5 nausea scale. *Nursing2010*, 40(11), 18-20.
- Kwok, C. S., Yeong, J. K., & Loke, Y. K. (2010). Meta-analysis: Risk of fractures with acid-suppressing medication. *Bone*, 48(4), 768-776.
- Loffroy, R., & Guiu, B. (2009). Role of transcatheter arterial embolization for massive bleeding from gastroduodenal ulcers. *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, 15(47), 5889-5897.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Cancer Institute. (2010). SEER stat fact sheets: Stomach. Retrieved March 22, 2011, from www.seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/stomach.html.
- National Digestive Disease Information Clearinghouse. (2011). H. pylori and peptic ulcer. National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases home page. Retrieved August 6, 2011, from www.niddk.nih.gov/health/digest/pubs/hpylori/hpylori.htm.
- Olsson, U., Bosaeus, I., & Bergbom, I. (2010). Patients' experiences of the recovery period 12 months after upper gastrointestinal surgery. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(6), 422-431.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Ramakrishnan, K., & Salina, R. C. (2007). Peptic ulcer disease. *American Family Physician*, 76(7), 1005-1012.
- Saif, W. W., Makrilia, N., Zalonis, A., Merikas, M., & Syrigos, K. (2010). Gastric cancer in the elderly: An overview. *European Journal of Oncology*, 36(8), 709-717.
- *Schmidt, E. (2005). Nebulised lidocaine before nasogastric tube insertion reduced patient discomfort but increased risk of nasal bleeding. *Evidence-Based Nursing*, 8(2), 16.
- Schrauwen, R. W., Janssen, M. J., & de Boer, W. A. (2009). Seven-day PPI-triple therapy with levofloxacin is very effective for *Helicobacter pylori* eradication. *Netherlands Journal of Medicine*, 67(3), 96-101.
- *Schuler, A. (2007). Risks versus benefits of long-term proton pump inhibitor therapy in the elderly. *Geriatric Nursing*, 28(4), 225-229.
- Anastasi, J. K., McMahon, D. J., & Kim, G. H. (2009). Symptom management for irritable bowel syndrome: A pilot randomized controlled trial of acupuncture/moxibustion. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(4), 243-255.
- Barkhordari, E., Rezaei, N., Ansari-pour, B., Larki, P., Alighardashi, M., Ahmad-Ashtiani, H. R., et al. (2010). Proinflammatory cytokine gene polymorphisms in irritable bowel syndrome. *Journal of Clinical Immunology*, 30(1), 74-79.
- Bengtsson, M., Ulander, K., Borgdal, E. B., & Ohlsson, B. (2010). A holistic approach for planning care of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(2), 98-108.
- Berger, A. M., Grem, J. L., Visovsky, C., Marunda, H. A., & Yurkovich, J. M. (2010). Fatigue and other variables during adjuvant chemotherapy for colon and rectal cancer. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 37(1), 59-69.
- *Brush, K. A. (2007). Measuring intra-abdominal pressure. *Nursing2007*, 37(7), 42-43.
- Carlsson, E., Berndtsson, I., Hallen, A. M., Lindholm, E., & Persson, E. (2010). Concerns and quality of life before surgery and during the recovery period in patients with rectal cancer and an ostomy. *Journal of Wound, Ostomy, and Continence Nursing*, 37(6), 654-661.
- *Freeman, L. C. (2007). Responding to small-bowel obstruction. *Nursing2007*, 37(5), 56hn1-56hn6.
- Good, K., Niziolek, J., Yoshida, C., & Rowlands, A. (2010). Insights into barriers that prevent African Americans from seeking colorectal screenings: A qualitative study. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(3), 204-208.
- Gwee, K. A., Bak, Y. T., Ghoshal, U. C., Gonlachanvit, S., Lee, O. Y., Fock, K. M., et al. (2010). Asian consensus on irritable bowel syndrome. *Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, 25(7), 1189-1205.
- Hamlyn, S. (2008). Reducing the incidence of colorectal cancer in African Americans. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 31(1), 39-42.
- Herman, J., Pokkunuri, V., Braham, L., & Pimentel, M. (2010). Gender distribution in irritable bowel syndrome is proportional to the severity of constipation relative to diarrhea. *Gender Medicine: The Journal for the Study of Sex & Gender Differences*, 7(3), 240-246.
- Kerckhoffs, A. P., Ben-Amor, K., Samsom, M., van der Rest, M. E., de Vogel, J., Knol, J., et al. (2011). Molecular analysis of faecal and duodenal samples reveals significantly higher prevalence and numbers of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in irritable bowel syndrome. *Journal of Medical Microbiology*, 60, 236-245.
- Lindberg, D. A. (2009). Hydrogen breath testing in adults: What is it and why is it performed? *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(1), 19-24.
- Lyra, A., Krogius-Kurikka, L., Nikkila, J., Malinen, E., Kajander, K., Kurikka, K., et al. (2010). Effect of a multispecies probiotic supplement on quantity of irritable bowel syndrome-related intestinal microbial phylotypes. *BMC Gastroenterology*, 10, 110.
- Malinen, E., Krogius-Kurikka, L., Lyra, A., Nikkila, J., Jaaskelainen, A., Rinttilä, T., et al. (2010). Association of symptoms with gastrointestinal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome. *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, 16(36), 4532-4540.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- National Comprehensive Cancer Network. (2008). Clinical practice guidelines in oncology: Colorectal cancer screening. Retrieved March 27, 2011, from http://nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/PDF/colorectal_screening.pdf.
- ### Chapter 59
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010). *Cancer facts and figures 2010*. Atlanta: Author.

- Nicholl, B. I., Halder, S. L., Macfarlane, G. L., Thompson, D. G., O'Brien, S., Musleh, M., et al. (2008). Psychosocial risk markers for new onset irritable bowel syndrome: Results of a large prospective population-based study. *Pain*, 137(1), 147-155.
- *Norton, C. K., Linenfelter, P. I., Cyron, K. E., & Casey, K. A. (2006). Trauma and intraabdominal hypertension. *AJN*, 106(7), 51-55.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson and Thompson's genetics in medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pimental, M., Lembo, A., Chey, W. D., Zakko, S., Ringel, Y., Yu, J., et al. (2011). Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 364(1), 22-32.
- Pirotta, M. (2009). Irritable bowel syndrome: The role of complementary medicines in treatment. *Australian Family Physician*, 38(12), 966-968.
- *Pontieri-Lewis, V. (2006). Basics of ostomy care. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(4), 199-202.
- *Pullen, R. L. (2006). Teaching your patient to irrigate a colostomy. *Nursing*, 36(4), 22.
- Stubenrauch, J. M. (2010). Rectal cancer rates rising in patients under 40. *AJN*, 110(11), 15.
- Symms, M. R., Rawl, S. M., Grant, M., Wendel, C. S., Coons, S. J., Hickey, S., et al. (2008). Sexual health and quality of life among male veterans with intestinal ostomies. *Clinical Nurse Specialist*, 22(1), 30-40.
- Weingarten, M. A., Zalmanovici, A., & Yaphe, J. (2008). Dietary calcium supplementation for preventing colorectal cancer and adenomatous polyps. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 23(1), CD003548.
- Wood, G. A., & Sauder, B. L. (2009). Sexual side effects in women with anal carcinoma. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(3), 275-278.
- Chapter 60**
- Cooper, J. M., Collier, J., James, V., & Hawkey, C. J. (2010). Beliefs about personal control and self-management in 30-40 year olds living with inflammatory bowel disease: A qualitative study. *International Journal of Nursing Studies*, 47(12), 1500-1509.
- Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of America. (2008). *About ulcerative colitis and proctitis*. New York: Author.
- Cronin, E. (2010). Prednisolone in the management of patients with Crohn's disease. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(21), 1333-1336.
- Crumbock, S. C., Loeb, S. J., & Fick, D. M. (2009). Physical activity, stress, disease activity, and quality of life in adults with Crohn disease. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(3), 188-195.
- Dolejs, S., Kennedy, G., & Heise, C. P. (2011). Small bowel obstruction following restorative proctocolectomy: Affected by a laparoscopic approach? *Journal of Surgical Research*, March 29 (Epub ahead of print). Retrieved April 10, 2011, from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21474147.
- Dudley-Brown, S., Nag, A., Cullinan, C., Ayers, M., Hass, S., & Panjabi, S. (2009). Health-related quality-of-life evaluation of Crohn disease patients after receiving natalizumab therapy. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(5), 327-339.
- Fajardo, A. D., Dharmarajan, S., George, V., Hunt, S. R., Birnbaum, E. H., Fleshman, J. W., et al. (2010). Laparoscopic versus open 2-stage ileal pouch: Laparoscopic approach allows for faster restoration of intestinal continuity. *Journal of the American College of Surgeons*, 211(3), 377-383.
- *Heuer, O. E., Hammerum, A. M., Collignon, P., & Wegener, H. C. (2006). Human health hazard from antimicrobial-resistant enterococci in animals and food. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 43(7), 911-916.
- Howard, D. D., White, C. Q., Harden, T. R., & Ellis, C. N. (2009). Incidence of surgical site infections postcolorectal resections without preoperative mechanical or antibiotic bowel preparation. *American Journal of Surgery*, 75(8), 659-663.
- Kessler, H., Mudter, J., & Hohenberger, W. (2011). Recent results of laparoscopic surgery in inflammatory bowel disease. *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, 17(9), 1116-1125.
- *Lichtenstein, G., Abreu, M., Cohen, R., & Tremaine, W. (2006). American Gastroenterological Association Institute medical position statement on corticosteroids, immunomodulators, and infliximab in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology*, 130(3), 935-939.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pihl-Lesnovska, K., Hjortswang, H., Ek, A. C., & Frisman, G. H. (2010). Patients' perspective of factors influencing quality of life while living with Crohn disease. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(1), 37-44.
- *Present, D. H. (2006). *Current and investigational approaches in the management of ulcerative colitis*. Secaucus, NJ: Thomson Professional Postgraduate Services/Shire Pharmaceuticals, Inc. December, 1-17.
- *Rocca, J. D. (2007). Minimizing the perils of appendicitis. *Nursing*, 37(1), 64hn1-64hn3.
- *Sands, B. E. (2006). Clinical pearls from ACG 2006: Advances in diagnosis, staging and treatment of Crohn's disease. *Therapeutic Window, LLC CME Certified Newsletter*, November, 1-11.
- Savard, J., & Woodgate, R. (2009). Young peoples' experience of living with ulcerative colitis and an ostomy. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(1), 33-41.
- *Snow, M. (2006). Preventing *Salmonella* infection. *Nursing*, 36(9), 17.
- Spencer, C. (2010). Ulcerative colitis. *Nursing Standard*, 24(52), 59.
- *Willcutts, K., Scarano, K., & Eddins, C. W. (2005). Ostomies and fistulas: A collaborative approach. *Practical Gastroenterology*, 29(11), 63-79.
- Chapter 61**
- American Liver Foundation. (2010). *Hepatitis B*. New York: Author.
- American Liver Foundation. (2011). *Position statement on hepatitis A and vaccination*. New York: Author.
- Augustin, S., Gonzalez, A., & Genesca, J. (2010). Acute esophageal variceal bleeding: Current strategies and new perspectives. *World Journal of Hepatology*, 2(7), 261-274.
- *Garcia-Tsao, G., Sanyal, A. J., Grace, N. D., & Carey, W.; Practice Guidelines Committee of the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases; Practice Parameters Committee of the American College of Gastroenterology. (2007). Prevention and

- management of gastroesophageal varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *Hepatology*, 46(3), 922-938.
- Kelso, L. A. (2008). Cirrhosis: Caring for patients with end-stage liver failure. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(7), 24-30.
- Kinder, M. (2009). The lived experience of treatment for hepatitis C. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 32(6), 401-408.
- Lee, H., Park, W., Yang, J. H., & You, K. S. (2010). Management of hepatitis B virus infection. *Gastroenterology Nursing*, 33(2), 120-126.
- Lindor, K. D., Gershwin, M. E., Poupon, R., Kaplan, M., Bergasa, N. V., & Heathcote, E. J.; American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. (2009). AASLD practice guidelines: Primary biliary cirrhosis. *Hepatology*, 50(1), 291-308.
- Lok, A. S. F., & McMahon, B. J. (2009). AASLD: Chronic hepatitis B: Update 2009. *Hepatology*, 50(3), 661-662.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Minano, C., & Garcia-Tsao, G. (2010). Clinical pharmacology of portal hypertension. *Gastroenterology Clinics of North America*, 39(3), 681-695.
- *Moore, S. (2007). Management of hepatic colorectal metastases: A shifting paradigm. *Colorectal Cancer Nursing*, 1(2), 4-7.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pozza, R. (2008). Clinical management of HIV/hepatitis C virus coinfection. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 20(10), 496-505.
- Rossi, L., Zoratto, F., Papa, A., Iodice, F., Minozzi, M., Frati, L., et al. (2010). Current approach in the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *World Journal of Gastroenterology Oncology*, 2(9), 348-359.
- Sgorbini, M., O'Brien, L., & Jackson, D. (2009). Living with hepatitis C and treatment: The personal experience of patients. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 18(16), 2282-2291.
- Chapter 62**
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010). *Cancer facts and figures—2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- *Amerine, E. (2007). Get optimum outcomes for acute pancreatitis patients. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(6), 44-48.
- Attasany, S., Fogel, E. L., & Lehman, G. A. (2008). Choledocholithiasis, ascending cholangitis, and gallstone pancreatitis. *Medical Clinics of North America*, 92(4), 925-960.
- Bharwani, N., Patel, S., Prabhusesal, S., Fortheringham, T., & Power, N. (2011). Acute pancreatitis: The role of imaging in diagnosis and management. *Clinical Radiology*, 66(2), 164-175.
- Binenbaum, S. J., Teixeira, J. A., Forrester, G. L., Harvey, E. J., Afthinos, J., Kim, G. J., et al. (2009). Single-incision laparoscopic cholecystectomy using a flexible endoscope. *Archives of Surgery*, 144(8), 734-738.
- Comstock, D. (2008). Dealing with postcholecystectomy syndrome. *Nursing2008*, 38(4), 17-19.
- Daniak, C. N., Peretz, D., Fine, J. M., Wang, Y., Meinke, A. K., & Hale, W. B. (2008). Factors associated with time to laparoscopic cholecystectomy for acute cholecystitis. *World Journal of Gastroenterology*, 14(7), 1084-1090.
- Fusaroli, P., Spada, A., Mancino, M. G., & Caletti, G. (2010). Contrast harmonic echo-endoscopic ultrasound improves accuracy in diagnosis of solid pancreatic masses. *Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, 8(7), 629-634.
- *Halls, B. S., & Ward-Smith, P. (2007). Identifying early symptoms of pancreatic cancer. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(2), 245-248.
- *Holcomb, S. S. (2007). Stopping the destruction of acute pancreatitis. *Nursing2007*, 37(6), 43-48.
- Hubb, H. A., & Saunders, M. (2011). The yellow bird of jaundice: Recognizing biliary obstruction. *Nursing2011*, 41(10), 28-36.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Midha, S., Khajuria, R., Shastri, S., Kabra, M., & Garg, P. K. (2010). Idiopathic chronic pancreatitis in India: Phenotypic characterization and strong genetic susceptibility due to SPINK1 and CFTR gene mutations. *Gut*, 59(6), 800-807.
- Navarra, G., La Malfa, G., Lazzara, S., Ullo, G., & Curro, G. (2010). SILS and NOTES cholecystectomy: A tailored approach. *Journal of Laparoscopic and Advanced Surgical Technologies*, 20(6), 511-514.
- Novotny, I., Dite, P., Lata, J., Nechutova, H., & Klanicka, B. (2010). Autoimmune pancreatitis: Recent advances. *Digestive Diseases*, 28(2), 334-338.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *Riehl, M. (2007). Help your patient cope with pancreatic cancer. *Nursing2007*, 37(4), 54-57.
- Simmons, S. (2010). Gallstones. *Nursing2010*, 37(11), 37.
- Targarona, E. M., Maldonado, M., Marzol, J. A., & Marinello, F. (2010). Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery: The transvaginal route moving forward from cholecystectomy. *World Journal of Gastroenterology Surgery*, 2(6), 179-186.
- Van Laethem, J. L., & Marechal, R. (2007). Emerging drugs for the treatment of pancreatic cancer. *Expert Opinion on Emerging Drugs*, 12(2), 301-311.
- Chapter 63**
- American Heart Association. (2010). Knowing your fats. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.heart.org.
- Bankhead, R., Boullata, J., Brantley, S., Corkins, M., Guenter, P., Krenitsky, J., et al. (2009). Enteral nutrition administration. In A.S.P.E.N. enteral nutrition practice recommendations. *Journal of Parenteral Enteral Nutrition*, 33(2), 149-158.
- *Barth, M. M., & Jenson, C. E. (2006). Postoperative nursing care of gastric bypass patients. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 15(4), 378-388.
- *Bender, S., Pusateri, M., Cook, A., Ferguson, M., & Hall, J. C. (2000). Malnutrition: Role of the TwoCal® HN Med Pass Program. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 9(6), 284-296.
- Camden, S. G. (2009). Obesity: An emerging concern for patients and nurses. *OJIN: The Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 14(1). Retrieved March 30, 2011, from <http://nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/ANAMarketplace/ANAPeriodicals/OJIN/TableofContents/Vol142009/No1Jan09>.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2009). About BMI for adults. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.cdc.gov/healthyweight/assessing/bmi/adult_bmi/index.html.
- Clancy, C. (2010). Focus on obesity. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.ahrq.gov.
- Clutts, B. (2009). Recognition and management of complications following Roux-en-Y gastric bypass: A guide for health care workers in non-bariatric hospitals. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(6), 335-341.

- Conte, C., Cascino, A., Bartali, B., Donini, L., Rossi-Fanelli, F., & Vaiano, A. (2009). Anorexia of aging. *Current Nutrition & Food Science*, 5, 9-12.
- *DiMaria-Ghalili, R. A., & Amella, E. (2005). Nutrition in older adults. *AJN*, 105(3), 40-50.
- DiMaria-Ghalili, R. A., & Guenter, P. (2008). The Mini Nutritional Assessment. *AJN*, 108(2), 48-49.
- *Elpern, E. H., Killeen, K., Talla, E., Perez, G., & Gurka, D. (2007). Capnometry and air insufflation for assessing initial placement of gastric tubes. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(6), 544-550.
- *Grindel, M. E., & Grindel, C. G. (2006). Nursing care of the person having bariatric surgery. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 15(3), 129-144.
- *Harrington, L. (2006). Postoperative care of patients undergoing bariatric surgery. *MEDSURG Journal*, 15(6), 357-363.
- *Health Canada. (2007). Eating well with Canada's Food Guide: First Nations, Inuit, and Métis. Retrieved on August 19, 2011 from www.hc-sc.gc.ca/fn-an/food-guide-aliment/index_e.html.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kaser, N. J., & Kukla, A. (2009). Weight loss surgery. *OJIN: The Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 14(1). Retrieved March 30, 2011, from <http://nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/ANAMarketplace/ANAPeriodicals/OJIN/TableofContents/Vol142009/No1Jan09>.
- Kulie, T., Slattengren, A., Redmer, J., Counts, H., Eglash, A., & Schranger, S. (2011). Obesity and women's health: An evidence-based review. *Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine*, 24(1), 75-78.
- Lee, J., Visser, M., Tylavsky, F., Kritchevsky, S., Schwartz, A., Sahyoun, N., et al. (2010). Weight loss and regain and effects on body composition: The health, aging, and body composition study. *The Journals of Gerontology, Series A*, 65(1), 78-83.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mehanna, H. M., Moledina, J., & Travis, J. (2008). Refeeding syndrome: What it is, and how to prevent and treat it. *BMJ*, 336, 1495-1498.
- Muir, M., & Archer-Heese, G. (2009). Essentials of a bariatric patient handling program. *OJIN: The Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 14(1). Retrieved March 30, 2011, from <http://nursingworld.org/MainMenuCategories/ANAMarketplace/ANAPeriodicals/OJIN/TableofContents/Vol142009/No1Jan09>.
- National Agriculture Library. (2008). Vegetarian nutrition resource list. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.nal.usda.gov.
- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. (2011). Calculating your body mass index. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.nhlbisupport.com/bmi/.
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases. (2008). Weight and waist measurement: Tools for adults. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from www.win.niddk.nih.gov.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Palmer, J. L., & Metheney, N. A. (2008). Preventing aspiration in older adults with dysphagia. *AJN*, 108(2), 40-47.
- Pettit, E. (2009). Treating morbid obesity: Surgery is often a last resort, but can be a life-saving choice that improves self-esteem and overall quality of life. *RN*, 72(2), 30-35.
- *Sudakin, T. (2006). T.E.N. or T.P.N. *Nursing2006*, 36(12), 52-55.
- Tufts University. (2011). Modified MyPyramid for older adults. Retrieved March 30, 2011, from nutrition.tufts.edu.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA). (2010). Dietary guidelines for Americans, 2010. Retrieved August 19, 2011, from www.cnpp.usda.gov/DGAs2010-DGACReport.htm.
- Yantis, M. A., & Verlander, R. (2011). Untangling enteral nutrition guidelines. *Nursing2011*, 41(9), 33-39.
- Yoon, M. N., Lowe, M., Budgell, M., & Steele, C. M. (2011). An exploratory investigation using appreciative inquiry to promote nursing oral care. *Geriatric Nursing*, 32(5), 326-340.

Chapter 64

- Davis, G. (2007). Hormonal control and the endocrine system: Achieving homeostasis. *Nurse Prescribing*, 4(11), 446-453.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Klee, G. (2008). Laboratory techniques for recognition of endocrine disorders. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kronenberg, H., Melmed, S., Polonsky, K., & Larsen, P. R. (Eds.). (2008). *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Lamberts, S. (2008). Endocrinology and aging. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 65

- Belavic, J. (2010). Drug approvals. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(2), 12-23.
- Collins, M., & Claros, E. (2011). Recognizing the face of dehydration. *Nursing2011*, 41(8), 26-31.
- Cook, L. (2009). Pheochromocytoma. *AJN*, 109(2), 50-53.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). Balancing act: Na⁺ and K⁺. *Nursing2011*, 41(7), 44-50.
- Daub, K. (2008). Pheochromocytoma: An elusive diagnosis. *Nursing2008*, 38(1), 56hn1-56hn2.
- Fitzgerald, M. (2008). Hyponatremia associated with SSRI use in a 65-year-old woman. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(2), 11-12.
- Fraser, L., & Van Uum, S. (2010). Work-up for Cushing syndrome. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 182(6), 584-587.
- Graham, S. M., Iseli, T. A., Karnell, L. H., Clinger, J. D., Hitchon, P. W., & Greenlee, J. D. (2009). Endoscopic approach for pituitary surgery improves rhinologic outcomes. *Annals of Otolaryngology & Laryngology*, 118(9), 630-635.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Melmed, S., & Kleinberg, D. (2008). Anterior pituitary. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 155-261). Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Radovich, P. (2010). Primary adrenal insufficiency: Elusive and potentially life-threatening. *American Nurse Today*, 5(3), 37-39.
- Robinson, A., & Verbalis, J. (2008). Posterior pituitary. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 263-295). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Rottmann, C. (2007). SSRIs and the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion. *AJN*, 107(1), 51-58.
- Simmons, S. (2010). Flushing out the truth about diabetes insipidus. *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 55-59.
- Stewart, P. (2008). The adrenal cortex. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 445-503). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Tsegay, E., Anyango, G., Van Sell, S., & Miller-Anderson, M. (2008). Pheochromocytoma: A rare tumor in adults and children. *RN*, 71(6), 31-34.
- Young, W. (2008). Endocrine hypertension. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 505-537). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Chapter 66**
- Al-Shakhray, I. (2008). Radioprotection using iodine-131 for thyroid cancer and hyperthyroidism: A review. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(6), 905-912.
- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 00-300M—No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Aschenbrenner, D. (2009). Treatment for Graves' disease poses risk of liver failure. *AJN*, 109(10), 33.
- Brent, G., Larsen, P. R., & Davies, T. (2008). Hypothyroidism and thyroiditis. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 377-409). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Burton, J. (2011). Hyperthyroidism. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(3), 152-153.
- Crawford, A., & Harris, H. (2011). Balancing act: Hypomagnesemia and hypermagnesemia. *Nursing2011*, 41(10), 52-55.
- Davies, T., & Larsen, P. R. (2008). Thyrotoxicosis. In H. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 333-375). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Devdhar, M., Ousman, Y., & Burman, K. (2007). Hypothyroidism. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America*, 36(4), 595-615.
- Kasputin, J. (2010). Hypothyroidism: An evidence-based approach to a complex disorder. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(8), 44-53.
- Kessenich, C., & Higgs, D. (2010). Understanding amiodarone-induced hypothyroidism. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(6), 14-15.
- Kronenberg, H., Melmed, S., Polonsky, K., & Larsen, P. R. (Eds.). (2008). *Williams' textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Leung, M.-K., Platt, M., & Metson, R. (2009). Revision endoscopic orbital decompression in the management of Graves' orbitopathy. *Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery*, 141(1), 46-51.
- McAdams-Jones, D. (2008). Calming a thyroid storm. *American Nurse Today*, 3(12), 31.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Simmons, S. (2010). A delicate balance: Detecting thyroid disease. *Nursing2010*, 40(7), 29.
- Snissarenko, E. P., Kim, G. H., Simental, A. A., Jr., Zwart, J. E., Ransbarger, D. M., & Kim, P. D. (2009). Minimally invasive video-assisted thyroidectomy: A retrospective study over two years of experience. *Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery*, 141(1), 29-33.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Chapter 67**
- Acee, A. (2010). Detecting and managing depression in type II diabetes: PHQ-9 is the answer! *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(1), 32-37.
- American Association of Diabetes Educators (AADE). (2008). Position statement: Diabetes and exercise. *The Diabetes Educator*, 34(1), 37-40.
- American Association of Diabetes Educators (AADE). (2009a). Position statement: Diabetic kidney disease. *The Diabetes Educator*, 35(Suppl. 3), 53-56.
- American Association of Diabetes Educators (AADE). (2009b). Position statement: Primary prevention of type 2 diabetes. *The Diabetes Educator*, 35(Suppl. 3), 57-59.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2008). Position statement: Nutritional recommendations and interventions for diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 31(Suppl. 1), 61-78.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2009). ADA Workgroup report: International expert committee report on the role of the A_{1c} assay in the diagnosis of diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 32(7), 1327-1334.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010a). Position statement: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 14.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010b). Position statement: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2010. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 11-61.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2010c). Executive summary: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2010. *Diabetes Care*, 33(Suppl. 1), 4-10.
- American Diabetes Association (ADA). (2011). National diabetes fact sheet. Retrieved September 2011 from www.diabetes.org/diabetes-basics/diabetes-statistics/.
- Appel, S. (2011). Tapping incretin-based therapy for type 2 diabetes. *Nursing2011*, 41(3), 49-51.
- Appel, S., Wright, M., Hill, A., & Ovalle, F. (2008). Uncovering imperative interventions in prediabetes & type 2 diabetes. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(8), 20-26.
- Bedlack, R. (2009). The management of diabetic neuropathy and glycemic control in long-term care facilities. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 17(4), 4-9.
- Belavic, J. (2010). A new treatment option for type 2 diabetes. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(1), 51-52.
- Cranwell-Bruce, L. (2009). Update in diabetes management. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(1), 51-53.

- Deatcher, J. (2008). Prediabetes. *AJN*, 108(7), 77-79.
- Fleury-Milfort, E. (2009). Optimizing outcomes with incretin-based therapies: Practical information for nurse practitioners to share with patients. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(Suppl. 1), 642-650.
- Flood, L. (2009). Nurse-patient interactions related to diabetes foot care. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(6), 361-368.
- Foot care for people with diabetes. (2010). *Nursing2010*, 40(1), 33.
- Fowler, M. (2009). Hyperglycemic crisis in adults: Pathophysiology, presentation pitfalls, and prevention. *Clinical Diabetes*, 27(1), 19-23.
- Hill, A., & Appel, S. (2009). Signs of improvement: Diabetes update 2009. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(6), 12-22.
- Longo, R. (2010). Understanding oral antidiabetic agents: How to make sense of this vast armamentarium. *AJN*, 110(2), 49-52.
- Martin, C. (2010). DPP-4 inhibitors: A new option for diabetes management. *American Nurse Today*, 35(11), 29-31.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (Eds.). (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults & children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Meneilly, G. (2010). Pathophysiology of diabetes in the elderly. *Clinical Geriatrics*, 18(4), 25-28.
- Moghissi, E. S., Korytkowski, M. T., DiNardo, M., Einhorn, D., Hellman, R., Hirsch, I. B., et al. (2009). American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American Diabetes Association consensus statement on inpatient glycemic control. *Diabetes Care*, 32(6), 1119-1131.
- Mozaffarian, D., Kamineni, A., Carnethon, M., Djoussé, L., Mukamal, K. J., & Siscovick, D. (2009). Lifestyle risk factors and new onset diabetes mellitus in older adults: The cardiovascular health study. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 169(8), 798-807.
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) of the National Institutes of Health. (2011). National Diabetes Information Clearing House: National diabetes statistics, 2011. Retrieved March, 2011, from www.diabetes.niddk.nih.gov/dm/pubs/statistics/.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Peyrot, M., Rubin, R., Kruger, D., & Travis, L. (2010). Correlates of insulin injection omission. *Diabetes Care*, 33(2), 240-245.
- Roberts, R. O., Geda, Y. E., Knopman, D. S., Christianson, T. J., Pankratz, V. S., Boeve, B. F., et al. (2008). Association of duration and severity of diabetes mellitus with mild cognitive impairment. *Archives of Neurology*, 65(8), 1066-1073.
- Robertson, C. (2009). New developments in incretin-based therapies: The current state of the field. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(Suppl. 1), 631-641.
- Roelker, E. (2008). Screening for coronary artery disease in patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Spectrum*, 21(3), 166-171.
- Voda, S. (2008). Improving diabetes education for minority groups. *Nursing2008*, 38(7), 12-13.
- Wick, A., & Newlin, K. (2009). Incretin-based therapies: Therapeutic rationale and pharmacological promise for type 2 diabetes. *Journal of the American Academy of Nurse Practitioners*, 21(Suppl. 1), 623-630.
- Young, J. (2011). Educating staff nurses on diabetes: Knowledge enhancement. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 20(3), 143-146, 150.
- Brenner, B. M. (Ed.). (2008). *Brenner & Rector's the kidney* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Counts, C. (Ed.). (2008). *Core curriculum for nephrology nursing* (5th ed.). Pitman, NJ: American Nephrology Nurses Association.
- Daniel, K., & Cason, C. (2007). Estimating glomerular filtration rate in the elderly. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners*, 3(4), 242-244.
- Dong, K., & Quan, D. (2010). Appropriately assessing renal function for drug dosing. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(3), 304-308.
- Fields, W., Tedeschi, C., Foltz, J., Myers, T., Heaney, K., Bosak, K., et al. (2008). Reducing preventable safety events by recognizing renal risk. *Clinical Nurse Specialist*, 22(2), 73-78.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Gray-Vickery, P. (2010). Gathering "pearls" of knowledge for assessing older adults. *Nursing2010*, 40(3), 34-42.
- Harris, T. A. (2010). Changing practice to reduce the use of urinary catheters. *Nursing2010*, 40(2), 18-20.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kohtz, C., & Thompson, M. (2007). Preventing contrast medium-induced nephropathy. *AJN*, 107(9), 40-49.
- Matteucci, R. (2009). *Urinary catheter use and prevention of infection. Evidence-Based Care Sheet*, Glendale, CA: CINAHL Information Systems.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Morrell, G. (2010). False reading of retained urine from a bladder scan. *Urologic Nursing*, 30(2), 147-148.
- Newman, D. (2009). Talking to patients about bladder control problems. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(12), 33-45.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Potter, P., Perry, A., Stockert, P., & Hall, A. (2011). *Basic nursing* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- U.S. Renal Data Systems. (2010). *USRDS 2009 annual data report*. Bethesda, MD: The National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). National Institutes of Health.
- Voss, A. (2009). Incidence and duration of urinary catheters in hospitalized older adults before and after implementing a geriatric protocol. *Journal of Gerontological Nursing*, 35(6), 35-41.
- Wein, A. J., Kavoussi, L. R., Novick, A. C., Partin, A. W., & Peters, C. A. (2007). *Campbell-Walsh urology* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Woodward, S. (2010). The need for best practice in catheterization. *British Journal of Nursing*, 19(12), 740.

Chapter 69

- *Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR). (1996). (Revised 2001a). *Urinary incontinence in adults: Acute and chronic management. Clinical practice guideline*. AHCPR Publication No. 96-0682. Rockville, MD: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Chapter 68

- Bixby, M., & Giuliano, K. (2008). Bladder pressure monitoring. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 19(4), 349-353.

- *Agency for Health Care Policy and Research (AHCPR). (1996). (Revised 2001b). *Urinary incontinence in adults: Helping people with incontinence. Clinical practice guideline*. AHCPR Publication No. 96-0683. Rockville, MD: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 01-300M-5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Belavic, J. (2009). Fesoterodine for the treatment of overactive bladder. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(8), 14-15.
- Bixby, M., & Giuliano, K. (2008). Bladder pressure monitoring. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 19(4), 349-353.
- Bowen, A., & Hellstrom, W. J. G. (2007). Urinary tract infections: A primer for clinicians. Retrieved June 15, 2007, from www.Medscape.com.
- Bradway, C., & Rodgers, J. (2009). Evaluation and management of genitourinary emergencies. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(5), 36-43.
- Bray, B., Van Sell, S., & Miller-Anderson, M. (2007). Stress incontinence: It's no laughing matter. *RN*, 70(4), 25-29.
- Brenner, B. (2008). *Brenner & Rector's the kidney* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Carpenter, D., & Visovsky, C. (2010). Stress urinary incontinence: A review of treatment options. *AORN Journal*, 91(4), 471-480.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2009). Guideline for prevention of catheter-associated urinary tract infections, 2009. Retrieved October 15, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/hicpac/cauti/001_cauti.html.
- Crestodina, L. (2007). Assessment and management of urinary incontinence in the elderly male. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(9), 26-34.
- Dowling-Castronovo, A., & Specht, J. (2009). Assessment of transient urinary incontinence in older adults. *AJN*, 109(2), 62-71.
- Ellsworth, P., & Kirshenbaum, E. (2010). Update on the pharmacologic management of overactive bladder: The present and the future. *Urologic Nursing*, 30(1), 29-38, 53.
- Elpern, E. H., Killeen, K., Ketchum, A., Wiley, A., Patel, G., & Lateef, O. (2009). Reducing use of indwelling urinary catheters and associated urinary tract infections. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 18(6), 535-541.
- Evans, R. J., & Sant, G. R. (2007). Current diagnosis of interstitial cystitis: An evolving paradigm. *Urology*, 69(Suppl. 4), S64-S72.
- Forrest, J. B., & Dell, J. R. (2007). Successful management of interstitial cystitis in clinical practice. *Urology*, 69(Suppl. 4), S82-S86.
- Gemmill, R., Ferrell, B., Krouse, R., & Grant, M. (2010). Going with the flow: Quality-of-life outcomes of cancer survivors with urinary diversion. *Journal of the Wound, Ostomy and Continence Nurses*, 37(1), 65-72.
- Gray, M. (2010). Reducing catheter-associated urinary tract infections in the critical care unit. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(3), 247-257.
- Harris, T. (2010). Changing practice to reduce the use of urinary catheters. *Nursing2010*, 40(2), 18-20.
- Kannankeril, A., Lam, H., Reyes, E., & McCartney, J. (2011). Urinary tract infection rates associated with re-use of catheters in clean intermittent catheterization of male veterans. *Urologic Nursing*, 31(1), 41-48.
- Katz, A. (2009). When worlds collide: Urinary incontinence and female sexuality. *AJN*, 109(3), 59-63.
- Kessenich, C. (2010). Urosepsis in the elderly. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 35(11), 10-11.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- McDermott, P. (2009). Painful bladder syndrome/interstitial cystitis (history, epidemiology, symptoms, diagnosis and treatments). *International Journal of Urological Nursing*, 3(1), 16-23.
- Newman, D. (2009). Talking to patients about bladder control problems. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(12), 33-45.
- Newman, D., & Willson, M. (2011). Review of intermittent catheterization and current best practices. *Urologic Nursing*, 31(1), 12-29, 48.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pelter, M., & Stephens, K. (2008). Evaluation of a device to facilitate female catheterization. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(1), 19-25.
- Pelvic Pain and Urgency Frequency symptom scale: PUF questionnaire. (2005). Retrieved June 17, 2007, from www.orthoelmiron.com/orthoelmiron/hcptools_puf.html?host=www.orthoelmiron.com.
- Saldano, D. (2008). Urinary tract infection: Finding an answer when conventional testing is not helpful. *Urologic Nursing*, 28(4), 267-268.
- Siegel, J., Sand, P., & Sasso, K. (2008). Vulvodynia and pelvic pain? Think interstitial cystitis. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 33(10), 40-45.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- U.S. Renal Data Systems. (2010). *USRDS 2009 annual data report*. Bethesda, MD: The National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). National Institutes of Health.
- Washburn, D. (2007). Intravesicular antineoplastic therapy following transurethral resection of bladder tumors: Nursing implications from the operating room to discharge. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(4), 553-559.
- Zurakowski, T., Taylor, M., & Bradway, C. (2006). Effective teaching strategies for the older adult with urologic concerns. *Urologic Nursing*, 26(5), 355-360.

Chapter 70

- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Report No. 00-300M-No. 5008.11. Atlanta: Author.
- Bilous, R. (2010). Diabetic nephropathy: Diagnosis, screening and management. *Diabetes & Primary Care*, 12(2), 105-114.
- Brenner, B. (Ed.). (2008). *Brenner & Rector's the kidney* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Byar, K., & Workman, M. (2012). Targeted therapies to treat cancer. In J. Kee, E. Hayes, & L. McCuiston (Eds.), *Pharmacology: A nursing process approach* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- *Cope, D., & Reb, A. (Eds.). (2006). *An evidence-based approach to the treatment and care of the older adult with cancer*. Pittsburgh: Oncology Nursing Society.
- Creel, P. (2009). Management of mTOR inhibitor side effects. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 19-23.
- De Zeeuw, D. (2007). Albuminuria: A target for treatment of type 2 diabetic nephropathy. *Seminars in Nephrology*, 27(2), 172-181.

- Dong, K., & Quan, D. (2010). Appropriately assessing renal function for drug dosing. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(3), 304-308.
- Garcia, J. A., & Rini, B. I. (2007). Recent progress in the management of advanced renal cell carcinoma. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 57(2), 112-125.
- Gomez, N. (Ed.). (2008). *Core curriculum for nephrology nursing* (5th ed.). Pitman, NJ: American Association of Nephrology Nurses.
- Jemal, A., Siegel, R., Ward, E., Murray, T., Xu, J., & Thun, M. J. (2007). Cancer statistics, 2007. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 57(1), 43-67.
- Joseph, J., & Chowdhury, P. (2009). Percutaneous renal biopsy. *British Journal of Hospital Medicine*, 70(4), M59-M61.
- Kidney Cancer Association. (2010). About kidney cancer. Retrieved September 2011, from www.kidneycancer.org/.
- Kodner, C. (2009). Nephrotic syndrome in adults: Diagnosis and management. *American Family Physician*, 80(10), 1129-1134, 1136.
- LeHir, M., & Kriz, W. (2007). New insights into structural patterns encountered in glomerulosclerosis. *Current Opinions in Nephrology and Hypertension*, 16(3), 184-191.
- Malizzia, L., & Hsu, A. (2008). Temsirolimus, an mTOR inhibitor for treatment of patients with advanced renal cell carcinoma. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 12(4), 639-646.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Moldawer, N., & Figlin, R. (2008). Renal cell carcinoma: The translation of molecular biology into new treatments, new patient outcomes, and nursing implications. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 35(4), 699-708.
- National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE). (2008). *Chronic kidney disease: Early identification and management of chronic kidney disease in adults in primary and secondary care* (Clinical guideline; No. 73). Retrieved October 20, 2010, from www.guideline.gov/content.aspx?id=14330.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Polycystic Kidney Disease Foundation. (2010). 10 things every nephrologists should know about PKD. Retrieved September 2011 from www.pkdcure.org/home.html.
- Russell, S. (2008). Responding to threats to the kidney. *Nursing2008*, 38(2), 36-40.
- Shoham, D. A., Vupputuri, S., Diez Roux, A. V., Kaufman, J. S., Coresh, J., Kshirsagar, A. V., et al. (2007). Kidney disease in life-course socioeconomic context: The Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) Study. *American Journal of Kidney Disease*, 49(2), 217-226.
- Thompson, J. (2009). Metastatic renal cell carcinoma: Current standards of care. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 8-12.
- Touhy, T., & Jett, K. (2010). *Ebersole and Hess' gerontological nursing & healthy aging* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- U.S. Renal Data Systems. (2010). *USRDS 2009 annual data report*. Bethesda, MD: The National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). National Institutes of Health.
- Walker, P. (2009). The renal biopsy. *Archives of Pathological and Laboratory Medicine*, 133(2), 181-188.
- Wood, L. (2007). Sorafenib: A promising new targeted therapy for renal cell carcinoma. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(5), 649-656.
- Wood, L. (2009a). Management of vascular endothelial growth factors and multikinase inhibitor side effects. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 13-18.
- Wood, L. (2009b). Renal cell carcinoma: Screening, diagnosis, and prognosis. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 13(6), 3-7.
- Wood, L. (2010). New therapeutic strategies for renal cell carcinoma. *Urologic Nursing*, 30(1), 40-53.

Chapter 71

- Alcaraz, M., Brzostowicz, M., & Moran, J. (2008). Decreasing peritonitis infection rates. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 35(4), 421-423.
- Ali, B., & Gray-Vickrey, P. (2011). Limiting the damage from acute kidney injury. *Nursing2011*, 41(3), 22-31.
- Ali, T., Khan, I., Simpson, W., Prescott, G., Townend, J., Smith, W., et al. (2007). Incidence and outcomes in acute kidney injury: A comprehensive population-based study. *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, 18(4), 1282-1298.
- Bagshaw, S. M. (2008). Short- and long-term survival after acute kidney injury. *Nephrology Dialysis Transplant*, 23(7), 2126-2128.
- *Barone, C., Martin-Watson, A., & Barone, G. (2004). The postoperative care of the adult renal transplant recipient. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 13(5), 296-302.
- Basile, C. (2008). The long-term prognosis of acute kidney injury: Acute renal failure as a cause of chronic kidney disease. *Journal of Nephrology*, 21(5), 657-662.
- Bednarski, D., Castner, D., & Douglas, C. (2009). Interventions for acute tubular necrosis. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 34(8), 7-10.
- Beto, J., & Nicholas, M. (2009). So just what can I eat? Nutritional care in patients with diabetes mellitus and chronic kidney disease. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 36(5), 497-505.
- Boyle, M., & Baldwin, I. (2010). Understanding the continuous replacement therapy circuit for acute renal failure support. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(4), 367-375.
- Brites, F. D., Fernandez, K. M., Verona, J., Malusardi, M. C., Ischoff, P., Beresan, H., et al. (2007). Chronic renal failure in diabetic patients increases lipid risk factors for atherosclerosis. *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice*, 75(1), 35-41.
- Broden, C. (2009). Acute renal failure and mechanical ventilation: Reality or myth? *Critical Care Nurse*, 29(2), 62-75.
- Brown, L. J., Clark, P. C., Armstrong, K. A., Liping, Z., & Dunbar, S. B. (2010). Identification of modifiable chronic kidney disease risk factors by gender in an African-American cohort. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(2), 133-142.
- Cano, N. (2007). Nutritional supplementation in adult patients on hemodialysis. *Journal of Renal Nutrition*, 17(1), 103-105.
- Castner, D. (2008). Kidney dialysis. *Nursing2008*, 38(9), 45.
- Castner, D. (2010). Understanding the stages of chronic kidney disease. *Nursing2010*, 40(5), 25-31.
- Castro, M. (2009). Kidney transplant. *Nursing2009*, 39(3), 33.
- Catizone, R., Malacarne, F., Bortot, A., Annaloro, M., Russo, G., Barilla, A., et al. (2010). Renal replacement therapy in elderly patients: Peritoneal dialysis. *Journal of Nephrology*, 23(Suppl. 15), S90-S97.
- Chen, S., Chang, J., Chou, M., Lin, M., Chen, J., Sun, J., et al. (2008). Slowing renal function decline in chronic kidney disease patients after nephrology referral. *Nephrology*, 13(8), 730-736.

- Chow, S., & Wong, F. (2010). Health-related quality of life in patients undergoing peritoneal dialysis: Effects of a nurse-led case management program. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 66(8), 1780-1792.
- Coorey, G. M., Paykin, C., Singleton-Driscoll, L. C., & Gaston, R. S. (2009). Barriers to preemptive kidney transplantation. *AJN*, 109(11), 28-37.
- Crowley, S. T., & Peixoto, A. J. (2009). Acute kidney injury in the intensive care unit. *Clinical Chest Medicine*, 30(1), 28-43.
- Denhaerynck, K., Manhaeve, D., Dobbles, F., Garzoni, D., Nolte, C., & De Geest, S. (2007). Prevalence and consequences of nonadherence to hemodialysis regimens. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 16(3), 222-235.
- Dinwiddie, L. (2008). A new long-term vascular access device for catheter dependent patients. *Nephrology Nursing*, 35(2), 170.
- Dirkes, S. (2011). Acute kidney injury: Not just acute renal failure anymore? *Critical Care Nurse*, 31(1), 37-49.
- Dirkes, S., & Hodge, K. (2007). Continuous renal replacement therapy in the adult intensive care unit: History and current trends. *Critical Care Nurse*, 27(2), 61-80.
- Doss, S., Schiller, B., & Moran, J. (2008). Buttonhole cannulation: An unexpected outcome. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 35(4), 417-419.
- Eskridge, M. (2010). Hypertension and chronic kidney disease: The role of lifestyle modification and medication management. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(1), 55-60, 99.
- Gevirtz, C. (2009). Controlling pain: Managing post-transplantation pain syndromes. *Nursing2009*, 39(2), 60-61.
- Jepson, R. (2009). Protect your patient from dialysis hypotension. *Nursing2009*, 39(11), 55-56.
- Jepson, R., & Alonso, E. (2009). Overheated dialysate: A case report and review. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 36(5), 551-553.
- Kohtz, C., & Thompson, M. (2007). Preventing contrast medium-induced nephropathy. *AJN*, 107(9), 40-49.
- Kopyt, N. (2007). Management and treatment of chronic kidney disease. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(11), 14-23.
- Kuchta, K., VanBuskirk, S., & Hougum, M. (2007). Helping patients with end-stage renal disease. *AJN*, 107(5), 35-36.
- Landreneau, K., Lee, K., & Landreneau, M. (2010). Quality of life in patients undergoing hemodialysis and renal transplantation: A meta-analytic review. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(1), 37-45.
- LaRocco, S. (2011). Treatment options for patients with kidney failure. *AJN*, 111(10), 57-62.
- Lopez, C. (2008). Cultural diversity and the renal diet: The Hispanic population. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 35(1), 69-72.
- Lowell, J., Go, A., Chertow, G., McCulloch, C., Fan, D., Ordonez, J., et al. (2009). Dialysis-requiring acute renal failure increases the risk of progressive chronic kidney failure. *Kidney International*, 76(8), 893-899.
- Mahoney, C. (2007). Should patients eat during dialysis? *Nursing2007*, 37(10), 57-58.
- Martchev, D. (2008). Improving quality of life for patients with kidney failure. *RN*, 71(4), 31-36.
- Martin, R. (2010). Acute kidney injury: Advances in definition, pathophysiology, and diagnosis. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(4), 350-356.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V., & Rote, N. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mehrotra, R. (2009). Long-term outcomes in automated peritoneal dialysis: Similar or better than continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis? *Peritoneal Dialysis International*, 29(Suppl. 2), S111-S114.
- Merhaut, S., & Trupp, R. (2010). Cardiorenal dysfunction. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 21(4), 357-364.
- Myers, L. (2008). Novel therapies to reduce rejection in kidney transplant recipients. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 35(6), 591-593.
- National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). (2010a). *Treatment methods for kidney failure: Hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis, kidney transplantation*. Retrieved September 2011 from <http://kidney.niddk.nih.gov/kudiseases/pubs/>.
- National Kidney & Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). (2010b). *Vascular access for hemodialysis*. Retrieved September 2011 from <http://kidney.niddk.nih.gov/kudiseases/pubs/vascularaccess/index.htm>.
- Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Okusa, M. D., Chertow, G. M., Portilla, D.; Acute Kidney Injury Advisory Group of the American Society of Nephrology. (2009). The nexus of acute kidney injury, chronic kidney disease and World Kidney Day 2009. *Clinical Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, 4(3), 520-522.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pathophysiology review. (2010). *Nursing2010*, 40(4), 46-47.
- Peacock, P., & Sinert, R. (2010). *Acute renal failure*. Retrieved February 2011, from www.emedicine.medscape.com/article/243492-overview.
- Pearce, J. (2007). Documenting peritoneal dialysis. *Nursing2007*, 37(10), 28.
- Pradeep, A., & Verrelli, M. (2010). *Chronic renal failure*. Retrieved February 2011, from www.emedicine.medscape.com/article/238798-overview.
- Sahjian, M., & Frakes, M. (2007). Crush injuries: Pathophysiology and current treatment. *The Nurse Practitioner*, 32(9), 13-18.
- Salinitri, F., Berlie, H., & Desai, N. (2009). Pharmacotherapeutic blood pressure management in a chronic kidney disease patient. *AACN Advanced Critical Care*, 20(3), 205-213.
- Smith, K., & Smelt, S. (2009). Consequences of chronic kidney disease—mineral and bone disorder: A progressive disease. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 36(1), 49-55.
- Solomon, D. (2010). *Patient information: Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)*. Retrieved February 2011, from www.update.com/contents/patient-information-nonsteroidal-antiinflammatory-drugs-nsaids.
- Stall, S. (2008). Protein recommendations for individuals with CKD stages 1-4. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 35(3), 279-282.
- Szromba, C. (2010). Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) in patients on hemodialysis: An update. *Nephrology Nursing Journal*, 37(2), 185-187.
- Tseke, P., Androulaki, M., & Andrikos, E. (2010). Peritoneal dialysis versus hemodialysis: Comparing the comparable. *International Journal of Artificial Organs*, 33(6), 408-409.
- United Network for Organ Sharing (UNOS) online. (2011). Living donation types. Retrieved September 2011 from www.unos.org.
- U.S. Renal Data Systems (USRDS). (2010). *USRDS 2009 annual data report*. Bethesda, MD: The National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NKUDIC). National Institutes of Health.

- Venkataraman, R., & Kellum, J. (2007). Prevention of acute renal failure. *Chest*, 131(1), 300-308.
- Warise, L. (2010). Update: Diuretic therapy in acute renal failure: A clinical case study. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 19(3), 149-152.
- Zeigler, S. (2007). Prevent dangerous hemodialysis catheter disconnection. *Nursing2007*, 37(3), 70.

Chapter 72

- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010). *Cancer facts and figures 2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2011). *Guidelines for the early detection of cancer*. Atlanta: Author.
- Dean, R. A. K. (2010). Cultural competence: Nursing in a multicultural society. *Nursing for Women's Health*, 14(1), 50-59.
- Gordon, M. (2011). *Manual of nursing diagnosis* (12th ed.). New York: Jones & Bartlett.
- Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Lowdermilk, D. L., & Perry, S. E. (2011). *Maternity and women's health care* (10th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Ruhl, C. (2010). Sleep is a vital sign: Why assessing sleep is an important part of women's health. *Nursing for Women's Health*, 14(3), 243-247.
- Wallace, M. A. (2008). Assessment of sexual health in older adults: Using the PLISSIT model to talk about sex. *AJN*, 108(7), 52-60.

Chapter 73

- Aitaoto, N., Tsark, J., Tomiyasu, D., Yamashita, B., & Braun, K. (2009). Strategies to increase breast and cervical cancer screening among Hawaiian, Pacific Islander, and Filipina women in Hawai'i. *Hawaii Medical Journal*, 68(9), 215-222.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010a). *Breast cancer facts & figures 2009-2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010b). *Breast cancer detailed guide*. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010c). *Breast cancer facts & figures for African Americans 2009-2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010d). *Breast cancer facts & figures for Hispanics/Latinos 2009-2011*. Atlanta: Author.
- American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG). (2011). Annual mammogram should start at age 40 years. *Contemporary OB/GYN*, 56(9), 20.
- Association of Women's Health, Obstetric, and Neonatal Nursing (AWHONN). (2010). Breast cancer screening: A AWHONN position statement. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, & Neonatal Nursing*, 39(5), 608-610.
- Bluming, A. Z., & Tavis, C. (2009). Hormone replacement therapy: Real concerns and false alarms. *Cancer Journal*, 15(2), 93-104.
- Burstein, H. (2010). Avastin, ODAC, and the FDA: Are we drafting the right players? *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network*, 8(8), 833-834.
- Camp-Sorrell, D. (2009). Cancer and its treatment effect on young breast cancer survivors. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 25(4), 251-258.
- Cangiarella, J., Guth, A., Axelrod, D., Darvishian, F., Singh, B., Simsir, A., et al. (2008). Is surgical excision necessary for the management of atypical lobular hyperplasia and lobular carcinoma in situ diagnosed on core needle biopsy? A report of 38 cases and review of the literature. *Archives of Pathology & Laboratory Medicine*, 132(6), 979-983.
- Cunningham, J., Montero, A., Garrett-Mayer, E., Berkel, H., & Ely, B. (2010). Racial differences in the incidence of breast cancer subtypes defined by combined histologic grade and hormone receptor status. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 21(3), 399-409.
- Dizon, D. (2009). Quality of life after breast cancer: Survivorship and sexuality. *The Breast Journal*, 15(5), 500-504.
- Enderlin, C., Coleman, E., Stewart, C., & Hakkak, R. (2009). Dietary soy intake and breast cancer risk. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 36(5), 531-539.
- English, K., Fairbanks, J., Finster, C., Rafelito, A., Luna, J., & Kennedy, M. (2008). A socioecological approach to improving mammography rates in a tribal community. *Health Education & Behavior*, 35(3), 396-409.
- Food and Drug Administration (FDA). (2010). *Summary minutes of the Oncologic Drugs Advisory Committee, July 10, 2010*. Washington, D.C.: Author. Retrieved October 30, 2010, from www.fda.gov.
- Fu, M., Axelrod, D., & Haber, J. (2008). Breast-cancer-related lymphedema: Information, symptoms, and risk-reduction behaviors. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 40(4), 341-348.
- Han, H-R., Lee, J-E., Kim, J., Hedlin, H. K., Song, H., & Kim, M. T. (2009). A meta-analysis of interventions to promote mammography among ethnic minority women. *Nursing Research*, 58(4), 246-254.
- Hines, L., Risendal, B., Slattery, M., Baumgartner, K., Giuliano, A., Sweeney, C., et al. (2010). Comparative analysis of breast cancer risk factors among Hispanic and non-Hispanic white women. *Cancer*, 116(13), 3215-3223.
- Jemal, A., Siegel, R., Xu, J., & Ward, E. (2010). Cancer statistics, 2010. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 60(5), 277-300.
- Lally, R. (2010). Acclimating to breast cancer: A process of maintaining self-integrity in the pretreatment period. *Cancer Nursing*, 33(4), 268-279.
- Lee, E. (2009). Evidence-based management of benign breast diseases. *American Journal for Nurse Practitioners*, 13(7-8), 22-29.
- Liu, M., Huang, W., Wang, A., Huang, C., Huang, C., Chang, T., et al. (2010). Prediction of outcome of patients with metastatic breast cancer: Evaluation with prognostic factors and Nottingham prognostic index. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, 18(12), 1553-1564.
- Mattarella, A. (2010). Breast cancer in men. *Radiologic Technology*, 81(4), 361M-378M.
- Maughan, K., Lutterbie, M., & Ham, P. (2010). Treatment of breast cancer. *American Family Physician*, 81(11), 1339-1346.
- McLachlan, K. (2009). Information and support needs of young women with breast cancer. *Cancer Nursing Practice*, 8(8), 21-24.
- Morris, L. (2010). Targeting the red-hot danger of inflammatory breast cancer. *Nursing2010*, 40(9), 58-62.
- Muggerud, A., Hallett, M., Johnsen, H., Kleivi, K., Zhou, W., Tahmasebpour, S., et al. (2010). Molecular diversity in ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) and early invasive breast cancer. *Molecular Oncology*, 4(4), 357-368.
- Nothacker, M., Duda, V., Hahn, M., Warm, M., Degenhardt, F., Madjar, H., et al. (2009). Early detection of breast cancer: Benefits and risks of supplemental breast ultrasound in asymptomatic women with mammographically dense breast tissue. A systematic review. *BMC Cancer*, 9, 335.
- Owens, B., Jackson, M., & Berndt, A. (2009). Pilot study of a structured aerobic exercise program for Hispanic women

- during treatment for early-stage breast cancer. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(1), 23-30.
- Pollán, M. (2010). Epidemiology of breast cancer in young women. *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 123(Suppl. 1), 3-6.
- Skaane, P. (2009). Studies comparing screen-film mammography and full-field digital mammography in breast cancer screening: Updated review. *Acta Radiologica*, 50(1), 3-14.
- Smith, B., Arthur, D., Buchholz, T., Haffty, B., Hahn, C., Hardenbergh, P., et al. (2009). Accelerated partial breast irradiation consensus statement from the American Society for Radiation Oncology (ASTRO). *International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics*, 74(4), 987-1001.
- Sotiriou, C., & Puztai, L. (2009). Gene-expression signatures in breast cancer. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360(8), 790-800.
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF). (2009). Screening for breast cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendations statement. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 151, 716-726.
- Wanchai, A., Armer, J. M., & Stewart, B. R. (2010). Complementary and alternative medicine use among women with breast cancer: A systematic review. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 14(4), 45-55.
- Weaver, C. (2009). Caring for a patient after mastectomy. *Nursing2009*, 39(5), 44-48.
- Weigelt, B., Geyer, F., & Reis-Filho, J. (2010). Histological types of breast cancer: How special are they? *Molecular Oncology*, 4(3), 192-208.
- Wingo, P., King, J., Swan, J., Coughlin, S., Kaur, J., Erb-Alvarez, J., et al. (2008). Breast cancer incidence among American Indian and Alaska Native women: US, 1999-2004. *Cancer*, 113(Suppl. 5), 1191-1202.
- Wyatt, G., Sikorskii, A., Wills, C., & Su, H. (2010). Complementary and alternative medicine use, spending, and quality of life in early stage breast cancer. *Nursing Research*, 59(1), 58-66.
- Xie, L., Brisson, J., Holowaty, E., Villeneuve, P., & Mao, Y. (2010). The influence of cosmetic breast augmentation on the stage distribution and prognosis of women subsequently diagnosed with breast cancer. *International Journal of Cancer*, 126(9), 2182-2190.
- Zakhireh, J., Fowble, B., & Esserman, L. (2010). Application of screening principles to the reconstructed breast. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28(1), 173-180.
- Everett, T. R., & Crawford, R. A. (2010). Laparoscopic assisted vaginal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy as a day surgery procedure: A promising option. *Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 30(7), 697-700.
- Fanning, J., Hojat, R., Johnson, J., & Fenton, B. (2010). Laparoscopic cytoreduction for primary advanced ovarian cancer. *Journal of the Society of Laparoscopic Surgeons*, 14(1), 80-82.
- Fanning, J., & Hossler, C. (2010). Laparoscopic conversion rate for uterine cancer surgical staging. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 116(6), 1354-1357.
- *Kelley, C. (2007). Estrogen and its effect on vaginal atrophy in post-menopausal women. *Urologic Nursing*, 27(1), 40-45.
- Lowdermilk, D. L., & Perry, S. E. (2011). *Maternity and women's health care* (10th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *MacDonald, D. J., Sarna, L., Ulman, G. C., Grant, M., & Weitzel, J. (2006). Cancer screening and risk-reducing behaviors of women seeking genetic cancer risk assessment for breast and ovarian cancers. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 33(2), 27-35.
- *Martin, V. R. (2007). Ovarian cancer: An overview of treatment options. *Clinical Journal of Oncology Nursing*, 11(2), 201-207.
- Matthews, C. A., Reid, N., Ramakrishnan, V., Hull, K., & Cohen, S. (2010). Evaluation of the introduction of robotic technology on route of hysterectomy and complications in the first year of use. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 203(5), 499.e1-5.
- McCance, K. L., Huether, S. E., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biological basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Mirsaidi, N. (2009). Looking into problems with transvaginal mesh. *Nursing2009*, 39(7), 54.
- *Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Schiech, L. (2010). HPV-related cancer. *Nursing2010*, 40(10), 22-28.
- Stone, P., Burnett, A., Burton, B., & Roman, J. (2010). Overcoming extreme obesity with robotic surgery. *International Journal of Medical Robotics*, 6(4), 382-385.
- Wells, S. F. (2008). Cervical cancer: An overview with suggested practice and policy goals. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(1), 43-51.

Chapter 74

American Cancer Society (ACS). (2010). *Cancer facts and figures 2010*. Atlanta: Author.

- Ayers, D. M., & Montgomery, M. (2009). Putting a stop to dysfunctional uterine bleeding. *Nursing2009*, 39(1), 44-50.
- Blewitt, K. (2010). Ovarian cancer: Listen for the disease that whispers. *Nursing2010*, 40(11), 24-32.
- *Bohnenkamp, S., LeBaron, V., & Yoder, L. H. (2007a). The medical-surgical nurse's guide to ovarian cancer: Part I. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(4), 259-266.
- *Bohnenkamp, S., LeBaron, V., & Yoder, L. H. (2007b). The medical-surgical nurse's guide to ovarian cancer: Part II. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 16(5), 323-330.
- *Cayir, G., Beji, N. K., & Yalcin, O. (2007). Effectiveness of nursing care after surgery for stress incontinence. *Urological Nursing*, 27(1), 25-33.

Chapter 75

- Agbabiaka, T. B., Pittler, M. H., Wider, B., & Ernst, E. (2009). *Serenoa repens* (saw palmetto): A systematic review of adverse events. *Drug Safety*, 32(8), 637-647.
- American Cancer Society (ACS). (2011). *Testicular cancer*. Retrieved April 19, 2011, from www.cancer.org/cancer/testicularcancer/detailedguide/testicular-cancer-key-statistics.
- Bohenkamp, S., & Yoder, L. H. (2009). The medical-surgical nurse's guide to testicular cancer. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 18(2), 116-124.
- Eltabay, M. A., Sherif, H., & Hussein, A. A. (2010). Holmium laser enucleation versus transurethral resection of the prostate. *Canadian Journal of Urology*, 17(6), 5447-5452.
- Hamilton-Reeves, J. M., Rebello, S. A., Thomas, W., Kurzer, M. S., & Slaton, J. W. (2008). Effects of soy protein isolate consumption on prostate cancer biomarkers in men with HGPIN, ASAP, and low-grade prostate cancer. *Nutrition and Cancer*, 60(1), 7-13.

- Held-Warmkessel, J. (2008). Caring for a patient with metastatic prostate cancer. *Nursing* 2008, 38(6), 52-56.
- Hemminki, K., Sundquist, J., & Bermejo, J. L. (2008). Familial risks for cancer as the basis for evidence-based clinical referral and counseling. *The Oncologist*, 13(3), 239-247.
- Johnson, T. V., Abbasi, A., Ehrlich, S. S., Kleris, R. S., Chirumamilla, S. L., Schoenberg, E. D., et al. (2010). Major depression drives severity of American Urological Association Symptom Index. *Urology*, 76(6), 1317-1320.
- *Leman, E. S., Cannon, G. W., Trock, B. J., Sokoll, L. J., Chan, D. W., Mangold, R., et al. (2007). EPCA-2: A highly specific serum marker for prostate cancer. *Urology*, 69(4), 714-720.
- *Matthews, P. A. (2007). Hormone ablation therapy: Lightening the load for today's prostate cancer patient. *Urology Nursing*, 27(Suppl.), 3-11.
- McCance, K., Huether, S., Brashers, V. L., & Rote, N. R. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- *National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN). (2007). NCCN Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology. *Prostate cancer early detection*. Retrieved April 18, 2011, from www.nccn.org/professionals.
- Pagana, K. D., & Pagana, T. J. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pesquera, M., Yoder, L., & Lynk, M. (2008). Improving cross-cultural awareness and skills to reduce health disparities in cancer. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(2), 114-121.
- Roehrborn, C. G. (2011). Male lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) and benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). *Medical Clinics of North America*, 95(1), 87-100.
- Slovin, S. F. (2008). Pitfalls or promise in prostate cancer immunotherapy: Which is winning? *Cancer Journal*, 14(1), 26-34.
- Strief, D. M. (2008). An overview of prostate cancer: Diagnosis and treatment. *MEDSURG Nursing*, 17(4), 258-264.
- Tackland, J., MacDonald, R., Rutks, I., & Wilt, T. J. (2009). *Serenoa repens* for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Cochrane Database Systematic Reviews*, April 15(2), CD001423. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19370565.
- *Wallace, M., & Storms, S. (2007). The needs of men with prostate cancer: Results of a focus group study. *Applied Nursing Research*, 20(4), 181-187.
- Wang, C. J., Lin, Y. N., Huang, S. W., & Chang, C. H. (2011). Low dose oral desmopressin for nocturnal polyuria in patients with benign prostatic hyperplasia: A double-blind, placebo controlled, randomized study. *Journal of Urology*, 185(1), 219-223.
- Zarowitz, B. J. (2010). Opportunity to optimize management of benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Geriatric Nursing*, 31(6), 441-445.
- for treatment of gonococcal infections. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 56(14), 332-336.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2007b). Quadrivalent human papilloma virus vaccine: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 56(RR-2), 1-24.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2008). Summary of notifiable diseases—United States, 2006. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 55(53), 1-94. Retrieved December 11, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5553a1.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2009). *Sexually transmitted disease surveillance, 2008*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Retrieved January 14, 2011, from www.cdc.gov/std/stats08/default.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010a). Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(RR-12), 1-110.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010b). Seroprevalence of herpes simplex virus type 2 among persons aged 14-49 years—United States, 2005-2008. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(15), 456-459.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010c). *Basic information about antibiotic-resistant gonorrhea (ARG)*. Retrieved January 14, 2011, from www.cdc.gov/std/gonorrhea/arg/basic.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010d). *Pelvic inflammatory disease: CDC fact sheet*. Retrieved December 12, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/std/PID/STDFact-PID.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010e). *Legal status of expedited partner therapy (EPT)*. Retrieved December 12, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/std/ept/legal/default.htm.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010f). Youth risk behavior surveillance—United States, 2009: Surveillance summaries, June 4, 2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(SS-5), 1-148.
- Chaturvedi, A. K., Engels, E. A., Anderson, W. F., & Gillison, M. L. (2008). Incidence trends for human papillomavirus-related and -unrelated oral squamous cell carcinomas in the United States. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 26(4), 612-619.
- *Datta, S. D., Sternberg, M., Johnson, R. E., Berman, S., Papp, J. R., McQuillan, G., et al. (2007). Gonorrhea and chlamydia in the United States among persons 14 to 39 years of age, 1999 to 2002. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 147(2), 89-96.
- Drugge, J. M., & Allen, P. J. (2008). A nurse practitioner's guide to the management of herpes simplex virus-1 in children. *Dermatology Nursing*, 20(6), 455-466.
- *Dunne, E. F., Unger, E. R., Sternberg, M., McQuillan, G., Swan, D., Patel, S. S., et al. (2007). Prevalence of HPV infection among females in the United States. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 297(8), 813-819.
- Fortuna, R. F., Robbins, B. R., & Halterman, J. S. (2009). Ambulatory care among young adults in the United States. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 151(6), 379-385.
- Holmes, K. K., Sparling, P. F., Stamm, W. E., Wasserheit, J. N., Corey, L., et al. (Eds.). (2008). *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Johns Hopkins Point of Care-IT Center. (2010). *Antibiotic guide*. Retrieved November 15, 2010, from <http://hopkins-abxguide.org/>.
- Kim, J. J. (2010). Targeted human papillomavirus vaccination of men who have sex with men in the USA: A cost-effectiveness

Chapter 76

- Bavis, M. P., Smith, D. Y., & Siomos, M. Z. (2009). Genital herpes: Diagnosis, treatment, and counseling in the adolescent patient. *Journal for Nurse Practitioners*, 5(6), 415-420.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2006). *Expedited partner therapy in the management of sexually transmitted diseases*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Retrieved September 27, 2010, from www.cdc.gov/std/treatment/EPTFinalReport2006.pdf.
- *Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2007a). Update to CDC's sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2006: Fluoroquinolones no longer recommended

- modeling analysis. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases*, 10(12), 845-852.
- *Lajiness, M. J. (2007). The new vaccine to prevent HPV. *Urologic Nursing*, 27(2), 153-154.
- Muñoz, N., Kjaer, S. K., Sigurdsson, K., Iversen, O. E., Hernandez-Avila, M., Wheeler, C. M., et al. (2010). Impact of human papillomavirus (HPV)-6/11/16/18 vaccine on all HPV-associated genital diseases in young women. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 102(5), 325-329.
- Owusu-Edusei, K., Jr., Gift, T. L., & Chesson, H. W. (2010). Treatment cost of acute gonococcal infections: Estimates from employer-sponsored private insurance claims data in the United States, 2003-2007. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 37(5), 316-318.
- Pagana, K., & Pagana, T. (2010). *Mosby's manual of diagnostic and laboratory tests* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Pultorak, E., Wong, W., Rabins, C., & Mehta, S. D. (2009). Economic burden of sexually transmitted infections: Incidence and direct medical cost of chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis among Illinois adolescents and young adults, 2005-2006. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 36(10), 629-636.
- Spinola, S. M. (2008). Chancroid and *Haemophilus ducreyi*. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. 689-699). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Stamm, W. E. (2008a). Chlamydia trachomatis infections of the adult. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. 575-593). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Stamm, W. E. (2008b). Lymphogranuloma venereum. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. 595-605). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- *Telle, S., Shang, A., Nartey, L., Cassell, J. A., & Low, N. (2007). Improved effectiveness of partner notification for patients with sexually transmitted infections: Systematic review. *BMJ*, 334(7589), 354.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (USDHHS), Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (2010). *Healthy People 2020*. Retrieved September 27, 2011, from www.healthypeople.gov/hp2020/.
- U.S. Preventive Service Task Force (USPSTF), Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. (2010). *Guide to clinical preventive services, 2010-2011*. Retrieved September 27, 2011, from www.ahrq.gov/clinic/pocketgd.htm.
- Winer, R. L., & Koutsky, L. A. (2008). Genital human papillomavirus infection. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. 489-508). New York: McGraw-Hill.

A

Do-Not-Use Abbreviations and Symbols

Symbol or Abbreviation	Intended Meaning	Potential Problem	Preferred Term
µg	Microgram	Mistaken as “mg” (milligram)	Use “mcg”
℥	Dram	Symbol for dram mistaken as “3”	Use the metric system
℥	Minim	Symbol for minim mistaken as “mL” (milliliter)	Use the metric system
@	At	Mistaken as “2”	Use “at”
&	And	Mistaken as “2”	Use “and”
+	Plus or and	Mistaken as “4”	Use “and”
°	Hour	Mistaken as a zero (e.g., q2° seen as “q20”)	Use “hr,” “h,” or “hour”
Ø	Zero, null sign	Mistaken as the numerals 4, 6, or 9	Use the number “0” or the word “zero”
i/d	One daily	Mistaken as “tid” (three times daily)	Use “1 daily”
/ (slash mark)	Separates two doses or indicates “per”	Mistaken as the number 1 (e.g., “25 units/10 units” misread as “25 units” and “110 units”)	Use “per” rather than a slash mark to separate doses
> and <	Greater than and less than	Mistaken as opposite of intended; mistakenly use incorrect symbol; “<10” mistaken as “40”	Use “greater than” or “less than”
AD, AS, AU	Right ear, left ear, each ear	Mistaken as OD, OS, OU (right eye, left eye, each eye)	Use “right ear,” “left ear,” or “each ear”
ARA A	vidarabine	Mistaken as cytarabine (ARA C)	Use complete drug name
AZT	zidovudine (Retrovir)	Mistaken as azathioprine or aztreonam	Use complete drug name
BT	Bedtime	Mistaken as “BID” (twice daily)	Use “bedtime”
cc	Cubic centimeter	Mistaken as “u” (unit)	Use “mL” (milliliter)
CPZ	Compazine (prochlorperazine)	Mistaken as chlorpromazine	Use complete drug name
D/C	Discharge or discontinue	Premature discontinuation of medications if D/C (intended to mean “discharge”) has been misinterpreted as “discontinued” when followed by a list of discharge medications	Use “discharge” and “discontinue”
DPT	Demerol-Phenergan-Thorazine	Mistaken as diphtheria-pertussis-tetanus (vaccine)	Use complete drug name
DTO	Diluted tincture of opium, or deodorized tincture of opium (Paregoric)	Mistaken as tincture of opium	Use complete drug name
HCl	hydrochloric acid or hydrochloride	Mistaken as potassium chloride (the “H” is misinterpreted as “K”)	Use complete drug name unless expressed as a salt of a drug
HCT	hydrocortisone	Mistaken as hydrochlorothiazide	Use complete drug name

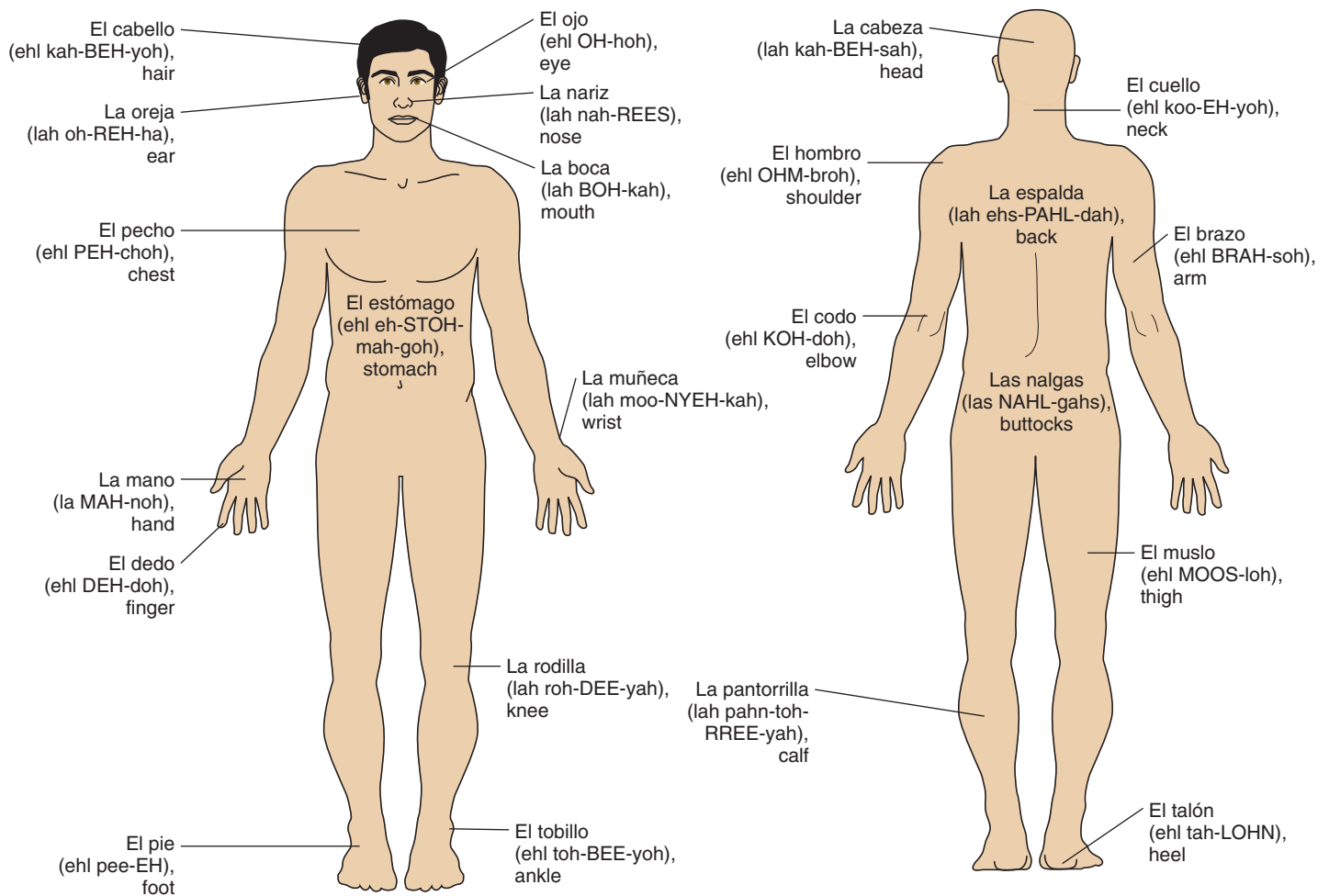
Symbol or Abbreviation	Intended Meaning	Potential Problem	Preferred Term
HCTZ	hydrochlorothiazide	Mistaken as hydrocortisone (seen as HCT250 mg)	Use complete drug name
HS	Half-strength	Mistaken as bedtime	Use “half-strength” or “bedtime”
hs	At bedtime, hours of sleep	Mistaken as half-strength	Use “half-strength” or “bedtime”
IJ	Injection	Mistaken as “IV” or “intrajugular”	Use “injection”
IN	Intranasal	Mistaken as “IM” or “IV”	Use “intranasal” or “NAS”
IU	International unit	Mistaken as IV (intravenous) or 10 (ten)	Use “unit”
“IV Vanc”	Intravenous vancomycin	Mistaken as Invanz	Use complete drug name
MgSO ₄	Magnesium sulfate	Mistaken as morphine sulfate	Use complete drug name
MS, MSO ₄	Morphine sulfate	Mistaken as magnesium sulfate	Use complete drug name
MTX	methotrexate	Mistaken as mitoxantrone	Use complete drug name
“Nitro” drip	nitroglycerin infusion	Mistaken as sodium nitroprusside infusion	Use complete drug name
“Norflox”	norfloxacin	Mistaken as Norflex	Use complete drug name
OD, OS, OU	Right eye, left eye, each eye	Mistaken as AD, AS, AU (right ear, left ear, each ear)	Use “right eye,” “left eye,” or “each eye”
o.d. or OD	Once daily	Mistaken as “right eye” (OD—oculus dexter), leading to oral liquid medications administered in the eye	Use “daily”
OJ	Orange juice	Mistaken as OD or OS (right or left eye); drugs meant to be diluted in orange juice may be given in the eye	Use “orange juice”
PCA	procainamide	Mistaken as patient-controlled analgesia	Use complete drug name
Per os	By mouth, orally	The “os” can be mistaken as “left eye” (OS—oculus sinister)	Use “PO,” “by mouth,” or “orally”
PTU	propylthiouracil	Mistaken as mercaptopurine	Use complete drug name
q.d. or QD	Every day	Mistaken as q.i.d., especially if the period after the “q” or the tail of the “q” is misunderstood as an “i”	Use “daily”
qhs	Nightly at bedtime	Mistaken as “qhr” or every hour	Use “nightly”
qn	Nightly or at bedtime	Mistaken as “qh” (every hour)	Use “nightly” or “at bedtime”
q.o.d. or QOD	Every other day	Mistaken as “q.d.” (daily) or “q.i.d.” (four times daily) if the “o” is poorly written	Use “every other day”
q1d	Daily	Mistaken as q.i.d. (four times daily)	Use “daily”
q6PM, etc.	Every evening at 6 PM	Mistaken as every 6 hours	Use “daily at 6 PM” or “6 PM daily”
SC, SQ, sub q	Subcutaneous	SC mistaken as SL (sublingual); SQ mistaken as “5 every”; the “q” in “sub q” has been mistaken as “every” (e.g., a heparin dose ordered “sub q 2 hours before surgery” misunderstood as every 2 hours before surgery)	Use “subcut” or “subcutaneously”
ss	Sliding scale (insulin) or ½ (apothecary)	Mistaken as “55”	Spell out “sliding scale”; use “one-half” or “½”
SSRI	Sliding scale regular insulin	Mistaken as selective-serotonin reuptake inhibitor	Spell out “sliding scale (insulin)”
SSI	Sliding scale insulin	Mistaken as Strong Solution of Iodine (Lugol’s)	Spell out “sliding scale (insulin)”

Symbol or Abbreviation	Intended Meaning	Potential Problem	Preferred Term
T3	Tylenol with codeine No. 3	Mistaken as liothyronine	Use complete drug name
TAC	triamcinolone	Mistaken as tetracaine, Adrenalin, cocaine	Use complete drug name
TNK	TNKase	Mistaken as “TPA”	Use complete drug name
TIW or tiw	3 times a week	Mistaken as “3 times a day” or “twice in a week”	Use “3 times weekly”
U or u	Unit	Mistaken as the number 0 or 4, causing a tenfold overdose or greater (e.g., 4U seen as “40” or 4u seen as “44”); mistaken as “cc” so dose given in volume instead of units (e.g., 4u seen as “4cc”)	Use “unit”
×3d	For 3 days	Mistaken as “3 doses”	Use “for 3 days”
ZnSO ₄	zinc sulfate	Mistaken as morphine sulfate	Use complete drug name
Trailing zero after decimal point (e.g., 1.0 mg)	1 mg	Mistaken as 10 mg if the decimal point is missed	Do not use trailing zeroes for doses expressed in whole numbers
No leading zero before a decimal dose (e.g., .5 mg)	0.5 mg	Mistaken as 5 mg if the decimal point is not seen	Use zero before a decimal point when the dose is less than a whole unit
Drug name and dose run together (especially problematic for drug names that end in “l,” such as Inderal40 mg; Tegretol300 mg)	Inderal 40 mg Tegretol 300 mg	Mistaken as Inderal 140 mg Mistaken as Tegretol 1300 mg	Place adequate space between the drug name, dose, and unit of measure
Numerical dose and unit of measure run together (e.g., 10mg, 100mL)	10 mg 100 mL	The “m” is sometimes mistaken as a zero or two zeros, risking a 10- to 100-fold overdose	Place adequate space between the dose and unit of measure
Abbreviations such as mg. or mL. with a period after the abbreviation	mg mL	The period is unnecessary and could be mistaken as the number 1 if written poorly	Use mg, mL, etc. without a terminal period
Large doses without properly placed commas (e.g., 100000 units; 1000000 units)	100,000 units 1,000,000 units	100000 has been mistaken as “10,000” or “1,000,000”; 1000000 has been mistaken as “100,000”	Use commas for dosing units at or above 1,000, or use words such as 100 “thousand” or 1 “million” to improve readability

Data from Institute for Safe Medication Practices (www.ismp.org): ISMP's list of error-prone abbreviations, symbols, and dose designations, 2010; and The Joint Commission (www.jointcommission.org): The official “do not use” list, 2005.

Communication Quick Reference for Spanish-Speaking Patients

The Body—El Cuerpo (ehl koo-EHR-poh)



Common Instructions to Be Used with the Body Parts

Move the
Touch the
Point to the

Mueva
Toque
Señale

(mooh-EH-bah)
(TOH-keh)
(seh-NYAH-leh)

More Parts of the Body

Armpit	la axila	(lah ahk-SEE-lah)
Breasts	los senos	(lohs SEH-nohs)
Collarbone	la clavícula	(lah klah-BEE-koo-lah)
Diaphragm	el diafragma	(ehl dee-ah-FRAHG-mah)
Forearm	el antebrazo	(ehl ahn-teh-BRAH-soh)
Groin	la ingle	(lah EEN-gleh)
Hip	la cadera	(lah kah-DEH-rah)
Kneecap	la rótula	(lah ROH-too-lah)
Nail	la uña	(lah OO-nyah)
Pelvis	la pelvis	(lah PEHL-bees)
Rectum	el recto	(ehl REHK-toh)
Rib	la costilla	(lah kohs-TEE-yah)
Spine	la espina dorsal	(lah ehs-PEE-nah DOHR-sahl)
Throat	la garganta	(lah gahr-GAHN-tah)
Tongue	le lengua	(lah LEHN-goo-ah)

Organs

Appendix	el apéndice	(ehl ah-PEHN-dee-seh)
Bladder	la vejiga	(lah beh-HEE-gah)
Brain	el cerebro	(ehl seh-REH-broh)
Colon	el colon	(ehl KOH-lohn)
Esophagus	el esófago	(ehl eh-SOH-fah-goh)
Gallbladder	la vesícula biliar	(lah beh-SEE-koo-lah bee-lee-AHR)
Genitals	los genitales	(lohs heh-nee-TAH-lehs)
Heart	el corazón	(ehl koh-rah-SOHN)
Kidney	el riñón	(ehl ree-NYOHN)
Large intestine	el intestino grueso	(ehl een-tehs-TEE-noh groo-EH-soh)
Liver	el hígado	(ehl EE-gah-doh)
Lungs	los pulmones	(lohs pool-MOH-nehs)
Pancreas	el páncreas	(ehl PAHN-kreh-ahs)
Small intestine	el intestino delgado	(ehl een-tehs-TEE-noh dehl-GAH-doh)
Spleen	el bazo	(ehl BAH-soh)
Thyroid gland	la tiroides	(lah tee-ROH-ee-dehs)
Tonsils	las amígdalas	(lahs ah-MEEG-dah-lahs)
Uterus	el útero	(ehl OO-teh-roh)

Essential Phrases

Good morning.	Buenos días.	Boo-EH-nohs DEE-ahs.
Good afternoon.	Buenas tardes.	Boo-EH-nahs TAHR-dehs.
Good night.	Buenas noches.	Boo-EH-nahs NOH-chehs.
Hello.	Hola.	OH-lah.
How are you?	¿Cómo está?	¿KOH-moh ehs-TAH?
Good (Fine).	Bien.	Bee-EHN.
Bad, Better, Worse.	Mal, Mejor, Peor.	Mahl, Meh-OHR, Peh-OHR.
The same.	Igual.	Ee-GOO-ahl.
Do you speak English?	¿Habla Inglés?	¿AH-blah een-GLEHS?
I don't understand.	No comprendo.	Noh kom-PREHN-doh.
Excuse me.	Discúlpeme.	Dees-KOOL-peh-meh.
Please speak slowly.	Por favor, hable más lento.	Pohr fah-VOHR, AH-bleh mahs LEHN-toh.
Are you in pain?	¿Está adolorido(a)?	¿Ehs-TAH ah-doh-loh-REE-doh(dah)?

Essential Phrases—cont'd

Yes, No.

Tell me where it hurts.

Here, There.

Sí, No.

Dígame donde le duele.

Aquí, Ahí.

See, Noh.

DEE-gah-meh DOHN-deh leh doo-EH-leh.

Ah-KEE, Ah-EE.

Description of Pain

Is your pain ...

burning?

constant?

dull?

intermittent?

mild?

severe?

sharp?

throbbing?

worse?

Tiene un dolor ...

¿que arde?

¿constante?

¿amortiguado?

¿intermitente?

¿moderado?

¿muy fuerte?

¿agudo?

¿pulsante?

¿peor?

Tee-EH-neh oon doh-LOHR ...

¿keh AHR-deh?

¿kohns-TAHN-teh?

¿ah-MOHR-tee-goo-AH-doh?

¿een-tehr-mee-TEHN-teh?

¿moh-deh-RAH-doh?

¿MOO-ee foo-EHR-teh?

¿ah-GOO-doh?

¿pool-SAHN-teh?

¿peh-OHR?

Are you allergic to any medication?

I'm here to help you.

Calm down.

Please.

Thank you.

You're welcome.

May I?

Who, What, When, Where?

Zero, One, Two, Three, Four

Five, Six, Seven, Eight, Nine,
Ten

¿Es usted alérgico(a) a algún medicamento?

Estoy aquí para ayudarle.

Cálmese.

Por favor.

Gracias.

De nada.

¿Puedo?

¿Quién, Qué, Cuándo, Dónde?

Cero, Uno, Dos, Tres, Cuatro

Cinco, Seis, Siete, Ocho, Nueve,
Diez

¿Ehs oos-TEHD ah-LEHR-hee-koh(kah) ah ahl-GOON meh-dee-kah-MEHN-toh?

Ehs-TOH-ee ah-KEE pah-rah ah-yoo-DAHR-leh.

KAHL-meh-seh.

Pohr fah-VOHR.

GRAH-see-ahs.

Deh NAH-dah.

¿Poo-EH-doh?

¿Kee-EHN, Keh, Koo-AHN-doh, DOHN-deh?

SEH-roh, OO-noh, dohs, trehs, koo-AH-troh

SEEN-koh, SEH-ees, see-EH-teh, OH-choh, noo-EH-beh, dee-EHS

Preliminary Examination

My name is ____, and I am your nurse.

I'm going to ...

take your vital signs.

weigh you.

take your blood pressure.

Extend your arm and relax.

Me llamo ____, y soy su enfermera(o).

Le voy a ...

tomar los signos vitales.

pesar.

tomar la presión.

Extienda su brazo y descánselo.

Meh YAH-moh ____, ee SOH-ee soo ehnh-fehr-MEH-rah(roh).

Leh VOH-ee ah ...

toh-MAHR lohs SEEG-nohs vee-TAH-lehs.

peh-SAHR.

toh-MAHR lah preh-see-OHN.

Ehks-tee-EHN-dah soo BRAH-soh ee dehs-KAHN-seh-loh.

Leh voy ah toh-MAHR ...

ehl POOL-soh.

soo tehnh-peh-rah-TOO-rah.

VOH-ee ah kohn-TAHR soos rehsh-pee-rah-see-OH-nehs.

I'm going to take your ...

pulse.

temperature.

I'm going to count your respirations.

Le voy a tomar ...

el pulso.

su temperatura.

Voy a contar sus respiraciones.

Obtaining a Blood Sample

I need to draw a blood sample.

Please give me your arm.

It may cause a little discomfort.

I am going to put a tourniquet around your arm.

I am going to draw blood from this vein.

Necesito tomar una muestra de la sangre.

Por favor, déme el brazo.

Le puede causar alguna molestia.

Le voy a poner una liga alrededor del brazo.

Voy a sacar la sangre de esta vena.

Neh-seh-SEE-toh toh-MAHR OO-nah moo-EHS-trah deh lah SAHN-greh.

Pohr fah-VOHR, DEH-meh ehl BRAH-soh.

Leh poo-EH-deh kah-OO-sahr ahl-GOO-nah moh-LEHS-tee-ah.

Leh VOH-ee ah poh-NEHR OO-nah LEE-gah ahl-reh-deh-DOHR dehl BRAH-soh.

VOH-ee ah sah-KAHR lah SAHN-greh deh EHS-tah VEH-nah.

Obtaining Blood from a Finger Stick

I need to take a few drops of blood from your finger.

Necesito sacar unas gotas de sangre de uno de sus dedos.

Neh-seh-SEE-toh sah-KAHR OO-nahs GOH-tahs deh SAHN-greh deh OO-noh deh soos DEH-dohs.

Obtaining a Urine Sample

We also need a urine sample.

También necesitamos una muestra de la orina.

Tahm-bee-EHN neh-seh-see-TAH-mohs OO-nah moo-EHS-trah deh lah oh-REE-nah.

It has to be from the middle of the stream.

Tiene que ser de la mitad del chorro.

Tee-EH-neh keh sehr deh lah mee-TAHD dehl CHOH-rroh.

Put the urine in this cup.

Ponga la orina en esta tasa.

POHN-gah lah oh-REE-nah ehn EHS-tah TAH-sah.

Obtaining a Stool Specimen

I need a sample of your stool.

Necesito una muestra de su excremento.

Neh-seh-SEE-toh OO-nah moo-EHS-trah deh soo ehks-kreh-MEN-toh.

Please put a small amount in this cup.

Por favor ponga un poco en esta tasa.

Pohr fa-VOHR POHN-gah oon POH-koh ehn EHS-tah TAH-sah.

Obtaining a Sputum Specimen

I need a sample of your sputum.

Necesito una muestra de su esputo.

Neh-seh-SEE-toh OO-nah MWEHS-trah deh soo ehs-POO-toh.

Please spit in this cup.

Por favor, escupa en este vaso.

Pohr fah-VOHR, ehs-KOO-pah ehn EHS-teh VAH-soh.

Orders

You need...

Necesita ...

Neh-seh-SEE-tah...

a bandage.

un vendaje.

oon behn-DAH-heh.

a blood transfusion.

una transfusión de sangre.

OO-nah trahns-foo-see-OHN deh SAHN-greh.

a cast.

un molde de yeso.

oon MOHL-deh deh YEH-soh.

gauze.

la gasa.

lah GAH-sah.

intensive care.

cuidado intensivo.

koo-ee-DAH-doh een-tehn-SEE-boh.

intravenous fluids.

líquidos intravenosos.

LEE-kee-dohs een-trah-beh-NOH-sohs.

an operation.

una operación.

OO-nah oh-peh-rah-see-OHN.

physical therapy.

terapia física.

teh-RAH-pee-ah FEE-see-kah.

a shot.

una inyección.

OO-nah een-yehk-see-OHN.

x-rays.

rayos equis.

RAH-yohs EH-kees.

We're going to ...

Vamos a ...

VAH-mohs ah ...

change the bandage.

cambiarle el vendaje.

kahm-bee-AHR-leh ehl behn-DAH-heh.

give you a bath.

darle un baño.

DAHR-leh oon BAH-nyoh.

take out the I.V.

sacarle el tubo intravenoso.

sah-KAHR-leh ehl TOO-boh een-trah-beh-NOH-soh.

Description of Tubes

The tube in your ...

El tubo en su ...

Ehl TOO-boh ehn soo ...

arm is for I.V. fluids.

brazo es para líquidos intravenosos.

BRAH-soh ehs PAH-rah LEE-kee-dohs een-trah-beh-NOH-sohs.

bladder is for urinating.

vejiga es para orinar.

beh-HEE-gah ehs PAH-rah oh-ree-NAHR.

stomach is for the food.

estómago es para los alimentos.

ehs-TOH-mah-goh ehs PAH-rah loh ah-lee-MEN-tohs.

throat is for breathing.

garganta es para respirar.

gahr-GAHN-tah ehs PAH-rah reh-pee-RAHR.

A

A delta fiber Myelinated fiber found primarily in the skin and muscle; carries rapid, sharp, pricking, or piercing sensations that can generally be localized to a well-defined area; also called “mechanical nociceptor.”

abdominoperineal (AP) resection The surgical removal of the sigmoid colon, rectum, and anus through combined abdominal and perineal incisions. This resection is performed when rectal tumors are present.

ablation The process or act of removing.

abscess A localized collection of pus caused by an inflammatory response to bacteria in tissues or organs.

absence seizure A type of generalized seizure consisting of brief periods of loss of consciousness and blank staring, as if daydreaming. The patient returns to baseline immediately after the seizure. This type is more common in children and tends to run in families. Left untreated, seizures may occur frequently throughout the day, interfering with daily life.

absolute neutrophil count (ANC) The percentage and actual number of mature circulating neutrophils; used to measure a patient’s risk for infection. The higher the numbers, the greater the resistance to infection.

absorbable suture A type of suture digested over time by body enzymes.

absorption The uptake from the intestinal lumen of nutrients produced by digestion.

abstinence syndrome Symptoms that occur when a patient who is physically dependent on opioids abruptly ceases using them. Slowly tapering (weaning) the drug dosage lessens or alleviates the physical withdrawal symptoms in a patient who is opioid dependent.

acalculia Difficulty with math calculations; caused by brain injury or disease.

acalculous cholecystitis Inflammation of the gallbladder occurring in the absence of gallstones; typically associated with biliary stasis caused by any condition that affects the regular filling or emptying of the gallbladder.

acceleration-deceleration Forces involved in high-speed crashes or falls from a great height; produce injury by tearing, shearing, and compressing anatomic structures.

acclimatization The process of adapting to a high altitude; involves physiologic changes that help the body compensate for less available oxygen in the atmosphere.

accommodation The process of maintaining a clear visual image when the gaze is shifted from a distant object to a near object. The eye adjusts its focus by changing the curvature of the lens.

achalasia An esophageal motility disorder believed to result from esophageal denervation; involves a failure to relax the smooth muscle fibers of the gastrointestinal tract and

characterized by chronic and progressive dysphagia. The term is typically used to refer to failure of the lower esophageal sphincter to relax properly with swallowing and to the replacement of normal peristalsis of the esophagus with abnormal contractions.

achlorhydria The absence of hydrochloric acid from gastric secretions.

acid A substance that releases hydrogen ions when dissolved in water. The strength of an acid is measured by how easily it releases hydrogen ions in solution.

acidosis An acid-base imbalance in which blood pH is below normal.

acinus The structural unit of the lower respiratory tract consisting of a respiratory bronchiole, an alveolar duct, and an alveolar sac.

Acorn cardiac support device A polyester mesh jacket that is placed over the ventricles to provide support and avoid overstretching the myocardial muscle in the patient with heart failure; reduces heart muscle hypertrophy and assists with improvement of ejection fraction.

acoustic neuroma A benign tumor of cranial nerve VIII; symptoms include damage to hearing, facial movements, and sensation. The tumor can enlarge into the brain, damaging structures in the cerebellum.

activated protein C An enzyme that helps prevent inappropriate clot formation. It is activated when it binds to healthy endothelial cells of the blood vessels; reduced levels are an indicator of sepsis and septic shock.

active euthanasia Purposeful action that directly causes death; not supported by most professional organizations, including the American Nurses Association.

active immunity Resistance to infection that occurs when the body responds to an invading antigen by making specific antibodies against the antigen. Immunity lasts for years and is natural by infection or artificial by stimulation (e.g., vaccine) of the body’s immune defenses.

activities of daily living (ADLs) The activities performed in the course of a normal day, such as bathing, dressing, feeding, and ambulating.

activity therapist A member of the rehabilitation health care team who works to help patients continue or develop hobbies or interests; also called “recreational therapist.”

acupoint One of the specific areas for acupressure and acupuncture located on meridians throughout the body.

acupressure A traditional Chinese medicine therapy in which the fingers are used to press certain points on the body to increase the flow of energy and promote the body’s self-healing ability.

acupuncture A traditional Chinese medicine therapy in which tiny needles are inserted into the skin and subcutaneous tissues at certain

areas of the body to deliver manual vibration or electrical stimulation.

acute Having relatively greater intensity; marked by a sudden onset and short duration.

acute adrenal insufficiency A life-threatening event in which the need for cortisol and aldosterone is greater than the available supply; also called “Addisonian crisis.”

acute arterial occlusion The sudden blockage of an artery, typically in the lower extremity, in the patient with chronic peripheral arterial disease.

acute compartment syndrome (ACS) A complication of a fracture characterized by increased pressure within one or more compartments and causing massive compromise of circulation to the area. Compartments are sheaths of inelastic fascia that support and partition muscles, blood vessels, and nerves in the body.

acute coronary syndrome (ACS) A disorder, including unstable angina and myocardial infarction, that results from obstruction of the coronary artery by ruptured atherosclerotic plaque and leads to platelet aggregation, thrombus formation, and vasoconstriction.

acute gastritis Inflammation of the gastric mucosa or submucosa after exposure to local irritants. Various degrees of mucosal necrosis and inflammatory reaction occur in acute disease. Complete regeneration and healing usually occur within a few days.

acute hematogenous infection An infection resulting from bacteremia, disease, or nonpenetrating trauma that is disseminated by the blood through the circulation.

acute ischemic stroke (AIS) A stroke caused by the occlusion (blockage) of a cerebral artery by either a thrombus or an embolus.

acute kidney failure A rapid decrease in kidney function that leads to the accumulation of metabolic wastes in the body. It is caused by inadequate kidney perfusion; damage to the glomeruli, interstitial tissue, or tubules; or obstructed urine flow. It can progress to end-stage kidney disease in patients with chronic renal insufficiency.

acute kidney injury A rapid decrease in kidney function, leading to the collection of metabolic wastes in the body; formerly called “acute renal failure (ARF).”

acute pain The unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with tissue damage that results from acute injury, disease, or surgery.

acute pancreatitis A serious inflammation of the pancreas characterized by a sudden onset of abdominal pain, nausea, and vomiting. It is caused by premature activation of pancreatic enzymes that destroy ductal tissue and pancreatic cells and results in autodigestion and fibrosis of the pancreas.

acute paronychia Inflammation of the skin around the nail, which usually occurs with a torn cuticle or an ingrown toenail.

acute pericarditis An inflammation or alteration of the pericardium, the membranous sac that encloses the heart; may be fibrous, serous, hemorrhagic, purulent, or neoplastic.

acute pyelonephritis Active bacterial infection in the kidney.

acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) Respiratory failure marked by hypoxemia that persists even when 100% oxygen is given, as well as decreased pulmonary compliance, dyspnea, noncardiac-associated bilateral pulmonary edema, and dense pulmonary infiltrates on x-ray.

acute sialadenitis Inflammation of a salivary gland; can be caused by infectious agents, irradiation, or immunologic disorders.

adaptive immunity The immunity that a person's body makes (or can receive) as an adaptive response to invasion by organisms or foreign proteins; occurs either naturally or artificially through lymphocyte responses and can be either active or passive.

adaptive mechanism The means of producing compensation; also called "compensatory mechanism."

addiction A primary, chronic neurobiologic disease characterized by impaired control over drug use, compulsive use, continued use despite harm, and craving.

adisonian crisis Acute adrenal insufficiency; a life-threatening event in which the need for cortisol and aldosterone is greater than the available supply.

additive In pharmacology, a drug that adds an effect, either harmful or beneficial, when given with another drug.

adenocarcinoma Tumor that arises from the glandular epithelial tissue.

adenohypophysis The anterior lobe of the pituitary gland, which makes up about 70% of the gland.

adiponectin An anti-inflammatory and insulin sensitizing hormone.

adipose Fatty.

adjuvant A substance that aids another substance, such as a cancer treatment that uses chemotherapy in addition to surgery.

adjuvant drug Drug used to relieve pain either alone or in combination with an analgesic to enhance the effectiveness of the analgesic.

adjuvant therapy Chemotherapy that is used along with surgery or radiation.

adrenal crisis Acute adrenocortical insufficiency, which can be life threatening.

adrenal Cushing's disease An excess of glucocorticoids caused by a problem in the adrenal cortex, usually a benign tumor (adrenal adenoma). This usually occurs in only one adrenal gland.

adrenal steroid Any of the hormones produced and secreted by the adrenal cortex; also called "corticosteroid."

advance directive A written document prepared by a competent person to specify what,

if any, extraordinary actions he or she would want when no longer able to make decisions about personal health care.

adverse drug event (ADE) An unintended harmful reaction to an administered drug.

aerophagia The excessive swallowing of air.

aerosolization Transmission via fine airborne droplets.

aesthetic plastic surgery Plastic surgery that is cosmetic and aims to alter a person's physical appearance.

afferent arteriole The smallest, most distal portion of the renal arterial system that supplies blood to the nephron. From the afferent arteriole, blood flows into the glomerulus, a series of specialized capillary loops.

afferent loop syndrome Chronic partial obstruction of the duodenal loop after partial gastrectomy and gastrojejunostomy, resulting in abdominal bloating and pain after eating; often followed by nausea and vomiting.

after-drop A continued decrease in core body temperature after a victim is removed from a cold environment; results from equilibration of core and peripheral blood temperature and counter-current cooling of the blood perfusing cold tissue.

afterload The pressure or resistance that the ventricles must overcome to eject blood through the semilunar valves and into the peripheral blood vessels; the amount of resistance is directly related to arterial blood pressure and blood vessel diameter.

agglutination A clumping action that results during the antibody-binding process when antibodies link antigens together to form large and small immune complexes.

aggregation Clumping together.

agnosia A general term for a loss of sensory comprehension; may include an inability to write, comprehend reading material, or use an object correctly.

agraphia Loss of the ability to write; caused by brain injury or disease.

Airborne Precautions Infection control guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; used for patients with infections spread by the airborne transmission route, such as tuberculosis. Negative airflow rooms are required to prevent the airborne spread of microbes.

akinesia Slow or no movement, as seen in a patient with Parkinson disease; also called "bradykinesia."

alanine aminotransferase (ALT) An enzyme found in the liver. Levels of this enzyme are elevated in patients with liver disease, infectious mononucleosis, and other disorders.

albuminuria The presence of albumin in the urine.

alcohol abuse A condition in which a person has problems related to alcohol use but does not have a strong craving for alcohol, loss of control, or physical dependence.

alcoholic hepatitis Liver inflammation caused by the toxic effect of alcohol on hepatocytes. The liver becomes enlarged, with cellular

degeneration and infiltration by fat, leukocytes, and lymphocytes.

alcoholism A disease in which a person has a strong need or compulsion to consume alcohol, is unable to quit once he or she begins drinking, experiences a physical dependence, and needs to increase the amount of alcohol to get "high."

aldosterone The chief mineralocorticoid produced by the adrenal cortex. Aldosterone increases kidney reabsorption of sodium and water, thus restoring blood pressure, blood volume, and blood sodium levels. Aldosterone secretion is regulated by the renin-angiotensin system, serum potassium ion concentration, and adrenocorticotrophic hormone.

alert Awake and responsive to stimulation.

alexia Problems understanding written language; caused by brain injury or disease.

alkaline reflux gastropathy A complication of gastric surgery in which the pylorus is bypassed or removed. Endoscopic examination reveals regurgitated bile in the stomach and mucosal hyperemia. Symptoms include early satiety, abdominal discomfort, and vomiting; also called "bile reflux gastropathy."

alkalosis An acid-base imbalance in which blood pH is above normal.

allele An alternate form (or variation) of a gene.

allergen A foreign protein that is capable of causing a hypersensitivity response, or allergy, that ranges from uncomfortable (itchy, watery eyes or sneezing) to life threatening (allergic asthma, anaphylaxis, bronchoconstriction, or circulatory collapse); causes a release of natural chemicals, such as histamine, in the body.

allergy An increased or excessive response to the presence of a foreign protein or allergen (antigen) to which the patient has been previously exposed.

allogenic Having cell types that are antigenically distinct; for example, bone marrow transplantation in which the patient receives bone marrow or peripheral blood taken from a healthy donor. Compare with autologous bone marrow transplantation, in which patients receive their own cells, which were collected earlier.

allogenic bone marrow transplantation The transplantation of bone marrow from a sibling.

allogenic transplant Type of bone marrow transplant in which a closely HLA-matched sibling or an unrelated but matched donor provides the stem cells.

allograft A graft of tissue or bone between individuals of the same species but a different genotype; the donor may be a cadaver or a living person, either related or unrelated; also called "homograft."

alopecia Hair loss.

alveolitis Inflammation of the alveoli.

Alzheimer's disease (AD) A chronic, progressive, degenerative disease that accounts for 60% of the dementias occurring in people older than 65 years; characterized by loss of

- memory, judgment, and visuospatial perception and by a change in personality. Over time, the patient becomes increasingly cognitively impaired. Severe physical deterioration takes place, and death occurs as a result of complications of immobility; also called “dementia, Alzheimer type.”
- amaurosis fugax** A transient, brief episode of blindness in one eye.
- ambulatory** A term that refers to a patient who goes to the hospital or physician's office and returns home on the same day.
- ambulatory aid** Assistive device such as a cane or a walker.
- ambulatory pump** Infusion therapy pump generally used with a home care patient to allow a return to his or her usual activities while receiving infusion therapy.
- amebic hepatic abscess** A liver abscess caused by the protozoan *Entamoeba histolytica*; may occur after amebic dysentery and usually occurs as a single abscess in the right hepatic lobe.
- amenorrhea** The absence of menstrual periods in women.
- amnesia** Loss of memory.
- amputation** The removal of a limb or other appendage of the body.
- amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)** A progressive and degenerative disease of the motor system that is characterized by atrophy of the hands, forearms, and legs and results in paralysis and death. There is no known cause, no cure, no specific treatment, no standard pattern of progression, and no method of prevention; also called “Lou Gehrig's disease.”
- anabolic hormone** A hormone that stimulates growth.
- anabolic steroids** Synthetic substances that mimic the actions of testosterone. Prescribed for people with hormonal difficulties such as delayed puberty or impotence and misused by athletes to increase strength and performance.
- anaerobic** Lacking adequate oxygen.
- anaerobic cellular metabolism** Metabolism without oxygen.
- anal fissure** A painful ulcer at the margin of the anus.
- analgesia** Pain relief or pain suppression.
- analgesia team** Team typically consisting of one or more nurses, pharmacists, case managers, and physicians who consult with staff and prescribers on how best to control the patient's pain; also called “multidisciplinary pain team.”
- anaphylaxis** The widespread reaction that occurs in response to contact with a substance to which the person has a severe allergy (antigen); characterized by blood vessel and bronchiolar smooth muscle involvement causing widespread blood vessel dilation, decreased cardiac output, and bronchoconstriction; results in cell damage and the release of large amounts of histamine, severe hypovolemia, vascular collapse, decreased cardiac contraction, and dysrhythmias and causes extreme whole-body hypoxia.
- anasarca** Generalized edema.
- anastomosis** Surgical reattachment; also a general term meaning a connection.
- anatomic dead space** Places in which air flows but the structures are too thick for gas exchange.
- androgen** Any substance, such as testosterone, that promotes masculinization; male hormones.
- anemia** A clinical sign of some abnormal condition related to a reduction in one of the following: number of red blood cells, amount of hemoglobin, or hematocrit (percentage of packed red blood cells per deciliter of blood).
- anergy** The inability to mount an immune response to an antigen.
- anesthesia** An induced state of partial or total loss of sensation with or without loss of consciousness.
- anesthetic** Agent that produces loss of sensation.
- aneuploid** An abnormal karyotype with more or fewer than 23 pairs of chromosomes.
- aneurysm** A permanent localized dilation of an artery (to at least two times its normal diameter) that forms when the middle layer (media) of the artery is weakened, stretching the inner (intima) and outer (adventitia) layers. As the artery widens, tension in the wall increases and further widening occurs, thus enlarging the aneurysm.
- aneurysmectomy** A surgical procedure performed to excise an aneurysm.
- angina pectoris** Literally, “strangling of the chest”; a temporary imbalance between the ability of the coronary arteries to supply oxygen and the demand for oxygen by the cardiac muscle. As a result, the patient experiences chest discomfort.
- angioedema** Diffuse swelling resulting from a vascular reaction in the deep tissues; can occur in a patient having an anaphylactic reaction.
- anion** Ion that has a negative charge.
- anisocoria** A difference in the size of the pupils.
- ankle-brachial index (ABI)** A ratio derived by dividing the ankle blood pressure by the brachial blood pressure; this calculation is used to assess the vascular status of the lower extremities. To obtain the ABI, a blood pressure cuff is applied to the lower extremities just above the malleoli. The systolic pressure is measured by Doppler ultrasound at both the dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses. The higher of these two pressures is then divided by the higher of the two brachial pulses.
- ankylosing spondylitis** A form of rheumatoid arthritis that affects the vertebral column and causes spinal deformities.
- anomia** Inability to find words.
- anorectal abscess** A localized induration and fluctuance that is caused by inflammation of the soft tissue near the rectum or anus and is most often the result of obstruction of the ducts of glands in the anorectal region by feces, foreign bodies, or trauma.
- anorectic drugs** Drugs that suppress appetite, which reduces food intake and, over time, may result in weight loss; may be prescribed for obese patients in a comprehensive weight reduction program.
- anorexia** The loss of appetite for food.
- anorexia nervosa** An eating disorder of self-induced starvation resulting from a fear of fatness, even though the patient is underweight.
- anorexin** Neuropeptide that decreases appetite.
- anoxic** Completely lacking oxygen.
- antalgic gait** A term that refers to an abnormality in the stance phase of gait. When part of one leg is painful, the person shortens the stance phase on the affected side.
- anterior colporrhaphy** Surgery for severe symptoms of cystocele in which the pelvic muscles are tightened for better bladder support.
- anterior cord syndrome** A condition caused by cervical injuries; results from damage to the anterior portion of both the gray and white matter of the spinal cord, usually as a result of decreased blood supply. Motor function and pain and temperature sensation are lost below the level of injury, but the sensations of touch, position, and vibration remain intact.
- anterior nares** The nostrils or external openings into the nasal cavities.
- antibody-mediated immune system** The defense response that produces antibodies directed against certain pathogens. The antibodies inactivate the pathogens and protect against future infection from that microorganism.
- anticoagulant** Something that limits blood clot formation.
- antidepressants** A group of drugs that help manage clinical depression.
- antiepileptic drugs (AEDs)** A class of drugs used to control seizures; also called “anticonvulsants.”
- antigen** A foreign protein or allergen that is capable of causing an immune response; protein on the surface of a cell.
- antiplatelet agents** Drugs that destroy blood platelets.
- anuria** Complete lack of urine output; usually defined as less than 100 mL/24 hr.
- anuric** Characterized by anuria (complete lack of urine output).
- aortic regurgitation** The flow of blood from the aorta back into the left ventricle during diastole; occurs when the aortic valve leaflets do not close properly during diastole and the annulus (the valve ring that attaches to the leaflets) is dilated or deformed.
- aortic stenosis** Narrowing of the aortic valve orifice and obstruction of left ventricular outflow during systole.
- aortic valve** The semilunar valve of the heart that separates the left ventricle from the aorta.
- aphasia** Inability to use or comprehend spoken or written language due to brain injury or disease.
- aphonia** Inability to produce sound; complete but temporary loss of the voice.
- aphthous stomatitis** Noninfectious stomatitis.

apical impulse The pulse located at the left fifth intercostal space in the midclavicular line in the mitral area (the apex of the heart); also called the “point of maximal impulse.”

aplastic anemia A deficiency of circulating red blood cells because of failure of the bone marrow to produce these cells; usually occurs with leukopenia and thrombocytopenia.

apolipoprotein E One of several regulators of lipoprotein metabolism.

apoptosis Programmed cell death that occurs when deoxyribonucleic acid in the telomere is gone and the chromosomes unravel.

appendectomy Surgical removal of the inflamed appendix.

appendicitis Acute inflammation of the vermiform appendix, which is the blind pouch attached to the cecum of the colon, which is usually located in the right iliac region just below the ileocecal valve.

approximated In a clean laceration or a surgical incision to be closed with sutures or staples, the act of bringing together the wound edges with the skin layers lined up in correct anatomic position so they can be held in place until healing is complete.

apraxia The loss of the ability to carry out a purposeful motor activity.

aqueous humor The clear, watery fluid that is continually produced by the ciliary processes and fills the anterior and posterior chambers of the eye. This fluid drains through the canal of Schlemm into the blood to maintain balanced intraocular pressure (pressure within the eye).

arcus senilis An opaque ring within the outer edge of the cornea caused by fat deposits. Its presence does not affect vision.

areflexic bladder Urinary retention and overflow (dribbling) caused by injuries to the lower motor neuron at the spinal cord level of S2 to S4 (e.g., multiple sclerosis and spinal cord injury below T12). Bladder emptying may be achieved by performing a Valsalva maneuver or tightening the abdominal muscles. The effectiveness of these maneuvers should be ascertained by catheterizing the patient for residual urine after voiding. Also called “flaccid bladder.”

aromatherapy A complementary therapy that uses essential oils obtained from plants to enhance psychological and physical well-being; may be applied in compresses, used in baths, or applied topically to the skin.

arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy (dysplasia) A form of cardiomyopathy that results from the replacement of myocardial tissue with fibrous and fatty tissue.

arterial revascularization The surgical procedure most commonly used to increase arterial blood flow in the affected limb of a patient with peripheral arterial disease.

arterial ulcers A painful complication in the patient with peripheral arterial disease. Typically, the ulcer is small and round, with a “punched out” appearance and well-defined borders. Ulcers develop on the toes (often the great toe), between the toes, or on the upper

aspect of the foot. With prolonged occlusion, the toes can become gangrenous.

arteriography Angiography of the arterial vessels; this invasive diagnostic procedure involves fluoroscopy and the use of a contrast medium and is performed when an arterial obstruction, narrowing, or aneurysm is suspected.

arteriosclerosis A thickening, or hardening, of the arterial wall.

arteriotomy A surgical opening into an artery.

arteriovenous malformation (AVM) An abnormality that occurs during embryonic development, resulting in a tangled mass of malformed, thin-walled, dilated vessels. The congenital absence of a capillary network in these vessels forms an abnormal communication between the arterial and venous systems and increases the risk that the vessels may rupture, causing bleeding into the subarachnoid space or into the intracerebral tissue. In the absence of the capillary network, the thin-walled veins are subjected to arterial pressure.

arteritis Inflammation of arterial walls.

arthralgia Pain in a joint.

arthritis Inflammation of one or more joints.

arthrodesis The surgical fusion of a joint.

arthrogram An x-ray study of a joint after contrast medium (air or solution) has been injected to enhance its visualization.

arthroscopy Examination of the interior of a joint with an arthroscope (a fiberoptic tube).

articulations Joint surfaces.

artifact In the electrocardiogram, interference that is seen on the monitor or rhythm strip and may look like a wandering or fuzzy baseline; can be caused by patient movement, loose or defective electrodes, improper grounding, or faulty equipment.

ascending paralysis Paralysis that begins in the legs and spreads to the arms and upper body.

ascending tracts Groups of nerves that originate in the spinal cord and end in the brain.

ascites The accumulation of free fluid within the peritoneal cavity. Increased hydrostatic pressure from portal hypertension causes this fluid to leak into the peritoneal cavity.

aseptic meningitis A type of meningitis that often occurs after viral illnesses such as measles, herpes simplex, coxsackievirus, and echovirus and is marked by inflammation over the cerebral cortex, white matter, and meninges. The formation of exudate (common in bacterial meningitis) does not occur, and no organisms are obtained from the cerebrospinal fluid. Also called “viral meningitis.”

aseptic necrosis See *avascular necrosis (AVN)*.

ASKED Model of Cultural Competence created by Dr. Josie Campinha-Bacote that provides a beginning self-assessment tool for cultural competence.

aspartate aminotransferase (AST) An enzyme found in the liver. Levels of this enzyme are elevated in patients with liver disorders and are highest in conditions that cause necrosis, such as severe viral hepatitis.

assistive/adaptive device Any item that enables the patient to perform all or part of an activity independently.

asterixis A coarse tremor characterized by rapid, nonrhythmic extensions and flexions in the wrists and fingers; a motor disturbance seen in portal-systemic encephalopathy; also called a “liver flap” or “flapping tremor.”

astigmatism A refractive error caused by unevenly curved surfaces on or in the eye (especially of the cornea) that distort vision.

asynchronous (fixed-rate) pacing mode

The mode of temporary cardiac pacing in which the pulse generator does not sense any intrinsic beats of the patient but fires at a fixed rate, regardless of the intrinsic rhythm. Used when the patient is asystolic or profoundly bradycardic, as may occur after open-heart surgery.

ataxia Gait disturbance or loss of balance.

atelectasis Collapse of alveoli.

atherectomy An invasive nonsurgical technique in which a high-speed, rotating metal burr uses fine abrasive bits to scrape plaque from inside an artery while minimizing damage to the vessel surface.

atherosclerosis A type of arteriosclerosis that involves the formation of plaque within the arterial wall; the leading contributor to coronary artery and cerebrovascular disease.

atonic (akinetic) seizure A type of generalized seizure characterized by a sudden loss of muscle tone that lasts for seconds and is followed by postictal confusion. These seizures usually cause the patient to fall, which may result in injury.

atresia Congenital absence of a normal body orifice or tubular organ, such as the ear canal.

atrial fibrillation (AF) A cardiac dysrhythmia in which multiple rapid impulses from many atrial foci, at a rate of 350 to 600 times per minute, depolarize the atria in a totally disorganized manner, with no P waves, no atrial contractions, a loss of the atrial kick, and an irregular ventricular response.

atrial flutter A cardiac dysrhythmia that involves rapid atrial depolarization and occurs at a rate of 250 to 350 times per minute.

atrial gallop An abnormal fourth heart sound that occurs as blood enters the ventricles during the active filling phase at the end of ventricular diastole; may be heard in patients with hypertension, anemia, ventricular hypertrophy, myocardial infarction, aortic or pulmonic stenosis, and pulmonary emboli.

atrial overdrive pacing A type of pacing that may be used to terminate symptomatic tachydysrhythmias such as atrial flutter or atrial fibrillation. Overdrive pacing is accomplished by rapidly pacing the atrium to capture the heart and control depolarization and is followed by no pacing in the hope that the sinus node will regain control of the heart.

atrioventricular (AV) block The delay or blockage of supraventricular impulses in the

atrioventricular node or intraventricular conduction system; usually classified as first-, second-, or third-degree block. Conduction may be transiently or permanently abnormal.

atrioventricular (AV) junction In the cardiac conduction system, the area consisting of a transitional cell zone, the atrioventricular (AV) node itself, and the bundle of His. The AV node lies just beneath the right atrial endocardium, between the tricuspid valve and the ostium of the coronary sinus.

at-risk drinking Drinking behavior in which five or more alcoholic beverages for men (four or more for women) are consumed.

atrophic gastritis A type of chronic gastritis that is seen most often in older adults. It can occur after exposure to toxic substances in the workplace (e.g., benzene, lead, and nickel) or *Helicobacter pylori* infection, or it can be related to autoimmune factors.

attenuated The quality of making a substance weaker; for example, antigens that are used to make vaccines are specially processed to make them less likely to grow in the body.

atypical angina Angina that manifests itself as indigestion, pain between the shoulders, an aching jaw, or a choking sensation that occurs with exertion. Many women experience atypical angina.

atypical migraine The least common of the three types of migraine headaches, after migraines with aura and migraines without aura; the atypical category includes menstrual and cluster migraines.

audiogram The graphic record of the results of pure-tone audiometry.

audiometer An electronic device that produces pure tones at various frequencies; used in determining hearing acuity.

aura A sensation that signals the onset of a headache or seizure; the patient may experience visual changes, flashing lights, or double vision.

autoamputation of the distal digits A condition in which the tips of the digits fall off spontaneously; can occur in severe cases of Raynaud's phenomenon.

autoantibodies Antibodies directed against self tissues of cells.

autocontamination The occurrence of infection in which the patient's own normal flora overgrows and penetrates the internal environment.

autodigestion Self-digestion. Specifically, the process of the stomach digesting itself if there is a break in its protective mucosal barrier.

autoimmune pancreatitis A chronic inflammatory form of pancreatitis that can also affect the bile ducts, kidneys, and other major connective tissues.

autologous blood transfusion Reinfusing the patient's own blood during surgery.

autologous donation The donation of a patient's own blood before scheduled surgery for use, if needed, during the surgery to eliminate transfusion reactions and reduce the risk of bloodborne disease.

autologous transplant A type of bone marrow transplant in which patients receive their own stem cells, which were collected before high-dose therapy.

autolysis The spontaneous disintegration of tissue by the action of the patient's own cellular enzymes.

automaticity The ability of a cell to initiate an impulse spontaneously and repetitively; in cardiac electrophysiology, the ability of primary pacemaker cells (SA node, AV junction) to generate an electrical impulse.

automatism Behavior of which the patient is not aware and which is not under the patient's control, such as lip smacking or picking at clothes; occurs in some types of seizure disorders.

autonomic dysreflexia A syndrome that affects the patient with an upper spinal cord injury; characterized by severe hypertension and headache, bradycardia, nasal stuffiness, and flushing; caused by a noxious stimulus, usually a distended bladder or constipation. This is a neurologic emergency and must be promptly treated to prevent a hypertensive brain attack.

autonomic nervous system (ANS) The part of the nervous system that is not under conscious control; consists of the sympathetic nervous system and the parasympathetic nervous system.

autoregulation The tendency of an organ or system to maintain blood flow at a fairly constant rate by dilating or constricting arteries in response to changes in blood pressure, carbon dioxide tension, and oxygen tension.

autosome Any of the 22 pairs of human chromosomes containing genes that code for all the structures and regulatory proteins needed for normal function but do not code for the sexual differentiation of a person.

avascular Lacking a blood supply.

avascular necrosis (AVN) The death of bone tissue, usually because the blood supply to the bone is disrupted. It is usually a complication of a hip fracture or any fracture in which there is displacement of bone; also called "osteonecrosis."

axial loading A mechanism of injury that involves vertical compression. An example is a diving accident, in which the blow to the top of the head causes the vertebrae to shatter and pieces of bone enter the spinal canal and damage the cord.

azoospermia The absence of living sperm in the semen.

azotemia An excess of nitrogenous wastes (urea) in the blood.

B

B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) A peptide produced and released by the ventricles when the patient has fluid overload as a result of heart failure (HF).

Babinski's sign Dorsiflexion of the great toe and fanning of the other toes, which is an abnormal reflex in response to testing the plantar reflex with a pointed (but not sharp)

object; indicates the presence of central nervous system disease. The normal response is plantar flexion of all toes.

bacteremia The presence of bacteria in the bloodstream.

bacteriuria Bacteria in the urine.

bad death A death embodied by pain, not having one's wishes followed at the end of one's life, isolation, abandonment, and constant agonizing about losses associated with death.

Baker's cyst Enlarged popliteal bursa.

balanced analgesia See *multimodal analgesia*.

balanitis circinata Ringlike inflammation of the glans penis.

Ballance's sign During percussion, resonance over the right flank with the patient lying on the left side; this is an abnormal sign associated with abdominal trauma and is found with a ruptured spleen.

ballottement A maneuver to detect fluid in the knee by grasping the medial and lateral aspect of the knee between the thumb and third finger and pushing down on the top surface of the patella with the forefinger. If fluid is present, the patella can be pressed down a distance and rises back up when the forefinger is removed.

banding See *endoscopic variceal ligation*.

barbiturate coma The use of drugs such as pentobarbital sodium or sodium thiopental at dosages to maintain complete unresponsiveness; used for patients whose increased intracranial pressure cannot be controlled by other means. These drugs decrease the metabolic demands of the brain and cerebral blood flow, stabilize cell membranes, decrease the formation of vasogenic edema, and produce a more uniform blood supply. The patient in a barbiturate coma requires mechanical ventilation, sophisticated hemodynamic monitoring, and intracranial pressure monitoring.

bariatrics Branch of medicine that manages obesity and its related diseases.

barium enema See *lower GI series*.

baroreceptors Sensory receptors in the arch of the aorta and at the origin of the internal carotid arteries that are stimulated when the arterial walls are stretched by an increased blood pressure.

barotrauma An injury caused by rapid changes of pressure; usually refers to injury to the eardrum caused by an increase in pressure within the middle ear or to lung damage from excessive pressure.

Barrett's epithelium Columnar epithelium (instead of the normal squamous cell epithelium) that develops in the lower esophagus during the process of healing from gastroesophageal reflux disease. It is considered premalignant and is associated with an increased risk of cancer in patients with prolonged disease.

Barrett's esophagus Ulceration of the lower esophagus caused by exposure to acid and pepsin, leading to the replacement of normal

distal squamous mucosa with columnar epithelium as a response to tissue injury.

basal insulin secretion The low levels of insulin that are secreted during fasting.

basal rate A type of regimen for continuous infusion of patient-controlled analgesia that provides more consistent analgesia.

base A substance that binds (reduces) free hydrogen ions in solution. Strong bases bind hydrogen ions easily; weak bases bind less readily.

Bell's palsy Acute paralysis of cranial nerve VII; characterized by a drawing sensation and paralysis of all facial muscles on the affected side. The patient cannot close the eye, wrinkle the forehead, smile, whistle, or grimace. The face appears masklike and sags; also called "facial paralysis."

beneficence The ethical principle of preventing harm and ensuring the patient's well-being.

benign Altered cell growth that is harmless and does not require intervention.

benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) Age-associated enlargement of the prostate gland in men, which may cause bladder compression and can obstruct urinary flow.

benign tumor cells Normal cells growing in the wrong place or at the wrong time.

bereavement Grief and mourning experienced by the survivor before and after a death.

bicaval technique Surgical technique in heart transplantation in which the intact right atrium of the donor heart is preserved by anastomoses at the recipient's superior and inferior vena cavae.

bifurcation The point of division of a single structure into two branches.

bigeminy A type of premature complex that exists when normal complexes and premature complexes occur alternately in a repetitive two-beat pattern, with a pause occurring after each premature complex so that complexes occur in pairs.

bilateral orchiectomy The surgical removal of both testes, typically performed as palliative surgery in patients with prostate cancer. It is not intended to cure the prostate cancer but to arrest its spread by removing testosterone.

bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO) Surgical removal of both fallopian tubes and both ovaries.

biliary colic Intense pain due to obstruction of the cystic duct of the gallbladder from a stone moving through or lodged within the duct. Tissue spasm occurs in an effort to mobilize the stone through the small duct.

biliary stent A plastic or metal device that is placed percutaneously to keep a duct of the biliary system open in patients experiencing biliary obstruction.

biofilm A complex group of microorganisms that functions within a "slimy" gel coating on medical devices.

biological response modifiers (BRMs) A class of immunomodulating drugs that attempt to modify the course of disease.

biologically based therapies Therapies that use natural substances for healing, including herbs, foods, vitamins, and minerals.

bivalve To cut a cast lengthwise into two equal pieces.

black box warning A governmental designation indicating that a drug has at least one serious side effect and must be used with caution.

bladder ultrasound Less invasive test to determine postvoiding residual urine volumes for the patient with a reflex (upper motor neuron) or uninhibited bladder; often used to measure residual urine in the bladder of patients with spinal cord injury.

blanch To whiten.

blast effect Injury resulting from impact forces such as that of an exploding bomb.

blast phase cell Immature cell that divides.

blepharitis An inflammation of the eyelid edges.

bloodborne metastasis The release of tumor cells into the blood; the most common cause of cancer spread.

blood pressure (BP) The force of blood exerted against the vessel walls.

Blumberg's sign Pain felt on abrupt release of steady pressure (rebound tenderness) over the site of abdominal pain.

blunt trauma Injury resulting from impact forces such as those sustained in a motor vehicle crash or a fall.

body mass index (BMI) A measure of nutritional status that does not depend on frame size; indirectly estimates total fat stores within the body by the relationship of weight to height.

bolus feeding A method of tube feeding that involves intermittent feeding of a specified amount of enteral product at specified times during a 24-hour period, typically every 4 hours.

bone mineral density (BMD) The quality of bone that determines bone strength. It peaks between 30 and 35 years of age, when both bone resorption activity and bone-building activity occur at a constant rate. When bone resorption activity exceeds bone-building activity, bone density decreases.

bone remodeling The process of bone tissue constantly undergoing change.

bone resorption Loss of bone density due to demineralization resulting from the release of calcium from storage areas in bones.

bone scan A radionuclide test in which radioactive material is injected for visualization of the entire skeleton; used to detect tumors, arthritis, osteomyelitis, osteoporosis, vertebral compression fractures, and unexplained bone pain.

bony ossicle Small bone; in the ear, the malleus, the incus, and the stapes, which are found in the epitympanum.

borborygmus (borborygmi) Bowel sounds, especially loud gurgling sounds, resulting from hypermotility of the bowel.

boring In pain, the type of intense pain that feels like it is going through the body.

botulism A paralytic disease resulting from ingestion of a toxin in food contaminated with *Clostridium botulinum*. Botulism is associated with home-canned foods, commercially prepared products, and products not adequately heated to destroy toxins. Initial symptoms include diplopia, dysphagia, and dysarthria. Illness may be mild or severe, with paralysis, respiratory failure, and death.

Bouchard's nodes Swelling at the proximal interphalangeal joints in osteoarthritis involving the hands.

bowel training A program for patients with neurologic problems that is designed to include a combination of suppository use and a consistent toileting schedule.

boxer's ear See *cauliflower ear*.

bradycardia Slowness of the heart rate; characterized as a pulse rate less than 50 to 60 beats/min.

bradydysrhythmia An abnormal heart rhythm characterized by a heart rate less than 60 beats/min.

bradykinesia Slow or no movement, as seen in a patient with Parkinson disease; also called "akinesia."

brain abscess A collection of pus that forms in the extradural, subdural, or intracerebral area of the brain as a result of a purulent infection, usually due to bacteria invading the brain directly or indirectly.

brain attack Stroke; disruption in the normal blood supply to the brain, either as an interruption in blood flow (ischemic stroke) or as bleeding within or around the brain (hemorrhagic stroke). A medical emergency that occurs suddenly, a stroke should be treated immediately to prevent neurologic deficit and permanent disability. Formerly called "cerebrovascular accident," the National Stroke Association now uses the term "brain attack" to describe stroke.

brain herniation syndrome In the patient with untreated increased intracranial pressure, protrusion (herniation) of the brain downward toward the brainstem or laterally from a unilateral lesion within one cerebral hemisphere, causing irreversible brain damage and possibly death.

breast One of a pair of mammary glands that develop in response to secretions from the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, and ovaries. Breasts are an accessory of the reproductive system meant to nourish the infant after birth. They also are organs for sexual arousal in the mature adult.

breast augmentation Cosmetic surgical procedure to enhance the size, shape, or symmetry of the breasts.

breast-conserving surgery Surgical method for breast cancer that removes the bulk of the tumor rather than the entire breast.

Broca's aphasia See *expressive aphasia*.

Broca's area An important speech area of the cerebrum. It is located in the frontal lobe and is composed of neurons responsible for the formation of words, or speech.

bronchoscopy Insertion of a tube in the airway, usually as far as the secondary bronchi, for the purpose of visualizing airway structures and obtaining tissue samples for biopsy or culture.

Brown-Séquard syndrome A condition caused by cervical injuries; generally results from penetrating injuries that cause hemisection of the spinal cord or injuries that affect half of the spinal cord. Motor function, proprioception, vibration, and deep touch sensations are lost on the same side of the body as the lesion (ipsilateral). On the opposite side of the body (contralateral), the sensations of pain, temperature, and light touch are affected.

bruit Swishing sound in the larger arteries (carotid, aortic, femoral, and popliteal) that can be heard with a stethoscope or Doppler probe; may indicate narrowing of the artery and is usually associated with atherosclerotic disease.

bulbar Pertaining to the muscles involved in facial expression, chewing, and speech.

bulimia nervosa An eating disorder that is characterized by episodes of binge eating in which the patient ingests a large amount of food in a short time, followed by purging behavior such as self-induced vomiting or excessive use of laxatives and diuretics.

bunion Hallux valgus deformity of the foot in which lateral deviation of the great toe causes the first metatarsal head to become enlarged.

bunionectomy Surgical removal of the hallux valgus deformity (bunion) of the foot.

bursae The small sacs lined with synovial membrane that are located at joints and bony prominences to prevent friction between bone and structures adjacent to bone.

butterfly rash A dry, scaly, raised rash on the face; the major skin manifestation of systemic lupus erythematosus.

C

C fiber Unmyelinated or poorly myelinated fiber found in muscle, periosteum, and viscera; conducts thermal, chemical, and strong mechanical impulses that produce diffuse, persistent, and dull, burning, or aching sensations.

cachexia Extreme body wasting and malnutrition that develop from an imbalance between food intake and energy use.

calculi An abnormal formation of a mass of mineral salts that can occur in the body; forms in the kidney when excess calcium precipitates out of solution; also called "stones."

calculous cholecystitis Inflammation of the gallbladder usually following and created by obstruction of the cystic duct by a stone (calculus).

callus The loose, fibrous, vascular tissue that forms at the site of a fracture as the first phase of healing and is normally replaced by hard bone as healing continues.

calyx The anatomic term for a cuplike structure.

Canadian Triage Acuity Scale (CTAS) A standardized model for triage in which lists of

descriptors are used to establish the triage level.

cancellous The softer tissue inside bones that contains large spaces, or trabeculae, that are filled with red and yellow marrow.

cancer control See *cytoreductive surgery*.

candidiasis An infection caused by the fungus *Candida albicans*.

canthus The place where the upper and lower eyelids meet at the corner of either side of the eye.

capillary closing pressure The amount of pressure needed to occlude skin capillary blood flow.

capillary leak syndrome The response of capillaries to the presence of biologic chemicals (mediators) that change blood vessel integrity and allow fluid to shift from the blood in the vascular space into the interstitial tissues.

Caplan's syndrome The presence of pneumoconiosis and rheumatoid nodules in the lungs; noted primarily in coal miners and asbestos workers.

capsule The layer of fibrous tissue on the outer surface of the kidney, which provides protection and support. The renal capsule itself is surrounded by layers of fat and connective tissue.

carboxyhemoglobin Carbon monoxide on oxygen-binding sites of the hemoglobin molecule.

carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) An oncofetal antigen that may be elevated in 70% of people with colorectal cancer. CEA is not specifically associated with the colorectal cancer and may be elevated in the presence of other benign or malignant diseases and in smokers. CEA is often used to monitor the effectiveness of treatment and to identify disease recurrence.

carcinogen Any substance that changes the activity of the genes in a cell so that the cell becomes a cancer cell.

carcinogenesis Cancer development.

cardiac axis In electrocardiography (ECG), the direction of electrical current flow in the heart. The relationship between the cardiac axis and the lead axis is responsible for the deflections seen on the ECG pattern.

cardiac catheterization The most definitive but most invasive test in the diagnosis of heart disease; involves passing a small catheter into the heart and injecting contrast medium.

cardiac index A calculation of cardiac output requirements to account for differences in body size; determined by dividing the cardiac output by the body surface area.

cardiac output (CO) The volume of blood ejected by the heart each minute; normal range in adults is 4 to 7 L/min.

cardiac rehabilitation The process of actively assisting the patient with cardiac disease to achieve and maintain a productive life while remaining within the limits of the heart's ability to respond to increases in activity and stress. *Phase 1* begins with the acute illness and ends with discharge from the hospital. *Phase 2*

begins after discharge and continues through convalescence at home. *Phase 3* refers to long-term conditioning.

cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT) In patients with some types of heart failure, the use of a permanent pacemaker alone or in combination with an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator to provide biventricular pacing.

cardiac tamponade Compression of the myocardium by fluid that has accumulated around the heart; this compresses the atria and ventricles, prevents them from filling adequately, and reduces cardiac output.

cardiogenic shock Post-myocardial infarction heart failure in which necrosis of more than 40% of the left ventricle has occurred; also called "class IV heart failure."

cardiomegaly Enlarged heart.

cardiomyopathy A subacute or chronic disease of cardiac muscle; classified into four categories based on abnormalities in structure and function: dilated, hypertrophic, restrictive, and arrhythmogenic.

cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) Diversion of the blood from the heart to a bypass machine, where it is heparinized, oxygenated, and returned to the circulation through a cannula placed in the ascending aortic arch or femoral artery to provide oxygenation, circulation, and hypothermia during induced cardiac arrest for coronary artery bypass surgery. This process ensures a motionless operative field and prevents myocardial ischemia.

cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) A procedure that involves ventilating the patient who has stopped breathing, as well as giving chest compressions in the absence of a carotid pulse.

cardioversion A synchronized countershock that may be performed in emergencies for hemodynamically unstable ventricular or supraventricular tachydysrhythmias or electively for stable tachydysrhythmias that are resistant to medical therapies. The shock depolarizes a critical mass of myocardium simultaneously during intrinsic depolarization and is intended to stop the re-entry circuit and allow the sinus node to regain control of the heart.

carina The point at which the trachea branches into the right and left mainstem bronchi.

caring A process, set of actions, and attitude that show genuine physical and emotional concern for others.

carotid endarterectomy Removal of atherosclerotic plaque from the inner lining of the carotid artery to open the artery enough to re-establish blood flow and decrease risk for brain attack. This surgical procedure prevents progression of brain attack in symptomatic patients with recurrent transient ischemic attacks or carotid stenosis.

carotid sinus massage A method of vagal stimulation of the cardiac conduction system in which the physician massages over one carotid artery for a few seconds and observes for a change in cardiac rhythm. Massaging the

carotid sinus causes vagal stimulation, thus slowing sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodal conduction.

carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS) A common condition in which the median nerve in the wrist becomes compressed, causing pain and numbness.

carrier (1) A person who harbors an infectious agent without symptoms of active disease; (2) in genetics, a person who has one mutated allele for a recessive genetic disorder. A carrier does not usually have any manifestations of the disorder but can pass the mutated allele to his or her children.

case management The process of assessment, planning, implementation, evaluation, and interaction for patients who have complex health problems and incur a high cost to the health care system. Goals include promoting quality of life, decreasing fragmentation and duplication of care across health care settings, and maintaining cost-effectiveness.

caseation necrosis A type of necrosis in which tissue is turned into a granular mass.

cast A rigid device that immobilizes the affected body part while allowing other body parts to move. It is most commonly used for fractures but may also be applied to correct deformities (e.g., clubfoot) or to prevent deformities (e.g., those seen in some patients with rheumatoid arthritis).

catabolism Any destructive metabolic process by which organisms convert substances into excreted compounds.

cataract A lens opacity that distorts the image projected onto the retina.

catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) inhibitors Enzymes that inactivate dopamine, thereby blocking dopamine activity and increasing the effectiveness of levodopa; a class of drugs prescribed for patients with Parkinson disease.

catecholamines Hormones (dopamine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine) released by the adrenal medulla in response to stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system.

cation Ion that has a positive charge.

cauliflower ear A deformed and hardened auricle caused by trauma and resulting in a hematoma that hardens unless the blood is removed by needle aspiration; also called "boxer's ear."

cell-mediated immunity Microbial resistance that is mediated by the action of specifically sensitized T-lymphocytes.

cellulitis An acute, spreading, edematous inflammation of the deep subcutaneous tissues; usually caused by infection of a wound or burn.

central cord syndrome A condition caused by cervical injuries that involve lesions of the central portion of the spinal cord. Loss of motor function is more pronounced in the upper extremities than in the lower extremities; varying degrees and patterns of sensation remain intact.

central IV therapy IV therapy in which a vascular access device (VAD) is placed in a

central blood vessel, such as the superior vena cava.

cerebral angiography (arteriography) Visualization of the cerebral circulation (carotid and vertebral arteries) after injecting a contrast medium into an artery (usually the femoral).

cerebral blood flow (CBF) Useful in evaluating cerebral vasospasm; can be measured in many areas of the brain with the use of radioactive substances.

cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) The pressure gradient over which the brain is perfused. It is influenced by oxygenation, cerebral blood volume, blood pressure, cerebral edema, and intracranial pressure (ICP) and is determined by subtracting the mean ICP from the mean arterial pressure. A cerebral perfusion pressure above 70 mm Hg is generally accepted as an appropriate goal of therapy.

cerebral salt-wasting (CSW) The primary cause of hyponatremia in the neurosurgical population; characterized by hyponatremia, decreased serum osmolality, and decreased blood volume. It is thought to result from the extrarenal influence of atrial natriuretic factor.

cerumen The wax produced by glands within the external ear canal; helps protect and lubricate the ear canal.

cervical polyp Tumor that arises from the mucosa and extends to the opening of the cervical os. Polyps result from hyperplasia of the endocervical epithelium, inflammation, or an abnormal local response to hormonal stimulation or localized vascular congestion of the cervical blood vessels. Polyps are the most common benign growth of the cervix.

cervix The lower, narrowed portion of the uterus that extends into the vagina. It is the passage site for sperm to enter the uterus and the passage site for menstrual flow to exit the uterus.

chalazion An inflammation of a sebaceous gland in the eyelid.

chancre The ulcer that is the first sign of syphilis. It develops at the site of entry (inoculation) of the organism, usually 3 weeks after exposure. The lesion may be found on any area of the skin or mucous membranes but occurs most often on the genitalia, lips, nipples, and hands and in the oral cavity, anus, and rectum.

chancroid A sexually transmitted disease characterized by painful genital ulcerations and caused by infection with *Haemophilus ducreyi*. Infection develops as a result of sexual exposure or self-contamination from a lesion elsewhere on the body. Incubation period varies from 3 to 10 days. A tender papule appears at the site of inoculation and rapidly breaks down to form an irregularly shaped, deep ulcer that has a purulent discharge and bleeds easily.

chelation A general term referring to a drug or substance that binds or attaches to another substance.

chemoreceptor Specialized sensory receptor in the bifurcation of the carotid arteries and in the aortic arch; sensitive to hypoxemia.

When stimulated, the carotid chemoreceptors send impulses along Hering's nerves and the aortic chemoreceptors send impulses along the vagus nerves to activate a vasoconstrictor response.

chemotaxin Substance secreted by damaged tissues and blood vessels that attracts neutrophils and macrophages so that phagocytosis can occur; also called "leukotaxin."

chemotherapy The treatment of cancer with chemical agents that have systemic effects; used to cure and to increase survival time.

chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy (CIPN) The loss of sensory or motor function of peripheral nerves associated with exposure to certain anticancer drugs.

chest tube A drain placed in the pleural space to allow closed-chest drainage, which restores intrapleural pressure and allows re-expansion of the lung after surgery in patients who have undergone thoracotomy (incision of the chest wall).

Cheyne-Stokes respirations Common sign of nearing death in which apnea alternates with periods of rapid breathing.

choked disc See *papilledema*.

cholecystectomy The surgical removal of the gallbladder.

cholecystitis Inflammation of the gallbladder.

cholecystokinin A hormone that stimulates digestive juices and may work with leptin to increase or decrease appetite.

choledochojejunostomy Surgical anastomosis of the common bile duct with the jejunum.

cholelithiasis The presence of gallstones.

cholesteatoma A benign overgrowth of squamous cell epithelium.

cholinergic crisis Overmedication with cholinesterase inhibitors.

cholinesterase inhibitors Drugs that improve cholinergic neurotransmission in the central nervous system by delaying the destruction of acetylcholine by acetylcholinesterase, thus delaying the onset of cognitive decline. These are approved for symptomatic treatment of Alzheimer's disease but do not affect the course of the disease.

chondrogenic Originating from cartilage.

chondroitin A supplement that may play a role in strengthening cartilage.

choreiform movement Rapid, jerky movement.

chorioretinitis Inflammation of both the choroid and the retina.

chronic Having a slow onset and symptoms that persist for an extended period.

chronic calcifying pancreatitis (CCP) Alcohol-induced chronic pancreatitis that is characterized by protein precipitates that plug the ducts and lead to ductal obstruction, atrophy, and dilation. The epithelium of the ducts undergoes histologic changes, resulting in metaplasia (cell replacement) and ulceration. This inflammatory process causes fibrosis of the pancreatic tissue.

chronic cancer pain Persistent or recurrent pain that results from cancer or another progressive disease or life-threatening condition.

chronic constrictive pericarditis A fibrous thickening of the pericardium that prevents adequate filling of the ventricles and eventually results in cardiac failure; caused by chronic pericardial inflammation due to tuberculosis, radiation therapy, trauma, kidney failure, or metastatic cancer.

chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) A chronic illness characterized by severe fatigue for 6 months or longer, usually following flu-like symptoms. At least four of the following criteria are required for diagnosis: sore throat; substantial impairment in short-term memory or concentration; tender lymph nodes; muscle pain; multiple joint pain with redness or swelling; headaches of a new type, pattern, or severity; unrefreshing sleep; and postexertional malaise lasting more than 24 hours.

chronic gastritis A patchy, diffuse inflammation of the mucosal lining of the stomach. Chronic gastritis usually heals without scarring but can progress to hemorrhage and ulcer formation.

chronic health problem A condition that has existed for at least 3 months.

chronic hepatitis Chronic liver inflammation that usually occurs as a result of hepatitis B or C. Superimposed infection with hepatitis D (HDV) in patients with chronic HBV may also result in chronic hepatitis. Can lead to cirrhosis and liver cancer.

chronic non-cancer pain Persistent or recurrent pain associated with a tissue injury that has healed or is not associated with cancer, such as arthritis.

chronic obstructive pancreatitis Pancreatitis that develops from inflammation, spasm, and obstruction of the sphincter of Oddi. Inflammatory and sclerotic lesions occur in the head of the pancreas and around the ducts, causing obstruction and backflow of pancreatic secretions.

chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) Any lung disease characterized by bronchospasm and dyspnea, such as emphysema and chronic bronchitis.

chronic osteomyelitis Bone infection that persists over a long time due to misdiagnosis or inadequate treatment; also called "sub-chronic osteomyelitis."

chronic pain Pain that persists or recurs for indefinite periods (usually more than 3 months), often involves deep body structures, is poorly localized, and is difficult to describe. Also called "persistent pain."

chronic pancreatitis A progressive, destructive disease of the pancreas characterized by remissions and exacerbations. Inflammation and fibrosis of the tissue contribute to pancreatic insufficiency and diminished function of the organ.

chronic paronychia Inflammation of the skin around the nail that persists for months. People at risk for chronic paronychia are those with frequent exposure to water, such as homemakers, bartenders, and laundry workers.

chronic pyelonephritis A kidney disorder that results from repeated or continued upper

urinary tract infections or the effects of such infections.

chronic stable angina (CSA) Type of angina characterized by chest discomfort that occurs with moderate to prolonged exertion and in a pattern that is familiar to the patient.

chyme The liquid formed when food is transformed during the digestion process in the gastrointestinal tract.

cilia Hairlike projections from epithelial cells; also, the eyelids or eyelashes.

circle of Willis At the base of the brain, the ring formed by the anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries where they are joined together by small communicating arteries.

circumcision The surgical removal of the prepuce or foreskin of the penis.

circumferential Referring to something that completely surrounds an extremity or the thorax.

cirrhosis Liver disease that is characterized by extensive scarring of the liver and is usually caused by a chronic irreversible reaction to hepatic inflammation and necrosis; disease typically develops insidiously and has a prolonged, destructive course.

classic heat stroke A form of heat stroke in which the body's ability to dissipate heat is significantly impaired; occurs over time as a result of long-term exposure to a hot, humid environment such as a home without air-conditioning in the high heat of the summer.

claudication Pain in the muscles resulting from an inadequate blood supply.

climacteric The phase of a woman's life from the initial decline in the amount of estrogen produced by the ovaries to the end of symptoms. The lay term for this phase is "the change of life."

clinical practice guideline An "official recommendation" based on evidence to diagnose and/or manage a health problem (e.g., pain management).

clinically competent The condition of being legally competent and having decisional capacity.

clitoris A small, cylindric organ of the external female genitalia that is composed of erectile tissue with a high concentration of sensory nerve endings.

clonic Pertaining to a state of alternating muscle stiffness followed by rhythmic jerking motions, as in a tonic-clonic seizure.

clonic seizure A type of generalized seizure lasting several minutes and characterized by muscle contraction and relaxation.

clonus The sudden, brief, jerking contraction of a muscle or muscle group often seen in seizures.

closed fracture A fracture that does not extend through the skin and therefore has no visible wound; also called "simple fracture."

closed head injury A type of traumatic primary brain injury that occurs as the result of blunt trauma; the integrity of the skull is not violated, and damage to brain tissue depends on the degree and mechanisms of injury.

closed reduction A nonsurgical method for managing a simple fracture. While applying a manual pull, or traction, on the bone, the health care provider manipulates the bone ends so they realign.

clubbing Changes in the tissue beds of the fingers and toes, with the base of the nail becoming spongy; results from chronic oxygen deprivation in the tissue beds.

cluster headache A type of oculotemporal or oculofrontal headache marked by unilateral, excruciating, nonthrobbing pain that is felt deep in and around the eye and may radiate to the forehead, temple, cheek, ear, occiput, or neck. Average duration is 10 to 45 minutes. Headaches occur every 8 to 12 hours and up to 24 hours daily at the same time for about 6 to 8 weeks (hence the term "cluster"), followed by remission for 9 months to a year. Cause and mechanism are unknown but have been attributed to vasoreactivity and oxyhemoglobin desaturation.

CO₂ narcosis Loss of sensitivity to high levels of PaCO₂. For these patients, the stimulus to breathe is a decreased arterial oxygen level.

coagulopathy Clotting abnormalities.

cochlea The spiral organ of hearing within the inner ear.

cognition The ability of the brain to process, store, retrieve, and manipulate information.

cognitive therapist A member of the rehabilitative health care team, usually a neuropsychologist, who works primarily with patients who have experienced head injuries and have cognitive impairments.

cohorting The practice of grouping patients who are colonized or infected with the same pathogen.

coitus Sexual intercourse.

cold antibody anemia A form of immunohemolytic anemia (in which the immune system attacks a person's own red blood cells for unknown reasons) that occurs with complement protein fixation on immunoglobulin M (IgM). In this condition, the arteries in the hands and feet constrict profoundly in response to cold temperatures or stress.

cold phase A phase after peripheral nerve trauma resulting in complete denervation in which the skin appears cyanotic, mottled, or reddish blue and feels cool compared with the contralateral, unaffected extremity. The cold phase follows the warm phase, which lasts 2 to 3 weeks after injury.

colectomy Surgical removal of part or all of the colon.

collaboration The planning, implementing, and evaluation of patient care using an interdisciplinary (ID) plan of care.

collaborative nursing function Activity that is mutually determined by the nurse and the physician or other health care team member or that is directed or prescribed by the health care provider but requires nursing judgment to perform.

collateral circulation Circulation that provides blood to an area with altered

tissue perfusion through smaller vessels that develop and compensate for the occluded vessels.

colon interposition A surgical procedure that may be performed in patients with an esophageal tumor when the tumor involves the stomach or the stomach is otherwise unsuitable for anastomosis. In colon interposition, a section of right or left colon is removed and brought up into the thorax to substitute for the esophagus.

colon resection Surgery performed for colorectal cancer in which the tumor and regional lymph nodes are removed.

colonization The presence of microorganisms in the tissues of the host without causing symptomatic disease.

colonoscopy The endoscopic examination of the entire large bowel.

colostomy The surgical creation of an opening between the colon and the surface of the abdomen.

colposcopy Examination of the cervix and vagina using a colposcope, which allows three-dimensional magnification and intense illumination of epithelium with suspected disease. This procedure can locate the exact site of precancerous and malignant lesions for biopsy.

comatose A state of being unconscious and unarousable.

comedones Plural form of “comedo.” Blackheads and whiteheads, the noninflammatory lesions of acne.

command center See *emergency operations center*.

commando (co-mandible) procedure (COMBined neck dissection, MANDibulectomy, and Oropharyngeal resection)

A procedure in which the surgeon removes a segment of the mandible with the oral lesion and performs a radical neck dissection.

comminuted fracture A type of fracture that involves fragmentation of the bone.

commitment Occurrence in which early embryonic cells start changing into differentiated cells.

communicable The ability of an infection, such as influenza, to be transmitted from person to person.

comorbidity Pre-existing disease state that must be included in patient assessment in regard to how the condition might adversely affect a seemingly unrelated health problem.

compartment syndrome A condition in which increased tissue pressure in a confined anatomic space causes decreased blood flow to the area, leading to hypoxia and pain.

compensated cirrhosis A form of cirrhosis in which the liver has significant scarring but is still able to perform essential functions without causing significant symptoms.

compensatory mechanism The means of producing compensation; also called “adaptive mechanism.”

complement activation and fixation Actions triggered by some classes of antibodies that can remove or destroy antigen.

complementary and alternative medicine

The broad range of healing philosophies, approaches, and therapies that mainstream Western medicine does not commonly use.

complete spinal cord injury An injury in which the spinal cord has been severed or damaged in a way that eliminates all innervation below the level of the injury.

complex partial seizure A type of partial seizure that occurs in patients with epilepsy, causing loss of consciousness for 1 to 3 minutes. Characteristic behaviors known as “automatisms” may occur, such as lip smacking or picking at clothes. The patient may experience amnesia after the seizure. Because the area of the brain most often involved is the temporal lobe, complex partial seizures are often called “psychomotor seizures” or “temporal lobe seizures.”

complex regional pain syndrome (CRPS) A complex disorder that includes debilitating pain, atrophy, autonomic dysfunction (excessive sweating, vascular changes), and motor impairment (most notably muscle paresis), probably caused by an abnormally hyperactive sympathetic nervous system. This syndrome most often results from traumatic injury and commonly occurs in the feet and hands; formerly called “reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD).”

compliance In respiratory physiology, a measure of elasticity within the lung. Also, a patient’s fulfillment of a caregiver’s prescribed course of treatment.

compound fracture See *open fracture*.

compression fracture A fracture that is produced by a loading force applied to the long axis of cancellous bone. These fractures commonly occur in the vertebrae of patients with osteoporosis.

computed tomography coronary angiography (CTCA) 64-slice diagnostic scan used to diagnose coronary artery disease in symptomatic patients.

computed tomography (CT) scanning Use of a computer to take pictures at many horizontal levels, or slices, of the area being studied. The cross-sectional slices build up three-dimensional pictures; a contrast medium may be used to enhance the image.

concentration gradient Movement across a membrane from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.

concussion A type of closed head injury that is caused by blunt trauma (e.g., a blow to the head) and is characterized by a brief loss of consciousness.

conductive hearing loss Hearing loss that results from any physical obstruction of sound wave transmission (e.g., a foreign body in the external canal, a retracted or bulging tympanic membrane, or fused bony ossicles).

conductivity The ability of a cell to transmit an electrical stimulus from cell membrane to cell membrane.

congestive heart failure (CHF) Former term for “left-sided heart failure.” Categorized as either systolic heart failure or diastolic heart

failure that may be acute or chronic and mild to severe.

conization The removal of a cone-shaped sample of tissue from the cervix for cytologic study.

conjunctivae The mucous membranes of the eye that line the undersurface of the eyelids (palpebral conjunctiva) and cover the sclera (bulbar conjunctiva).

connective tissue disease (CTD) A group of diseases that are the major focus of rheumatology (the study of rheumatic diseases); most are musculoskeletal disorders.

consensual response In assessing pupillary reaction to light, a slight constriction of the pupil of the eye not being tested when a penlight is brought in from the side of the patient’s head and shined into the eye being tested as soon as the patient opens his or her eyes.

consolidation Solidification; lack of air spaces in the lung, such as occurs in pneumonia.

contact laser prostatectomy (CLP) Procedure for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia that uses laser energy to coagulate excess tissue. Also called “interstitial laser coagulation (ILC).”

Contact Precautions Infection control guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; used for patients with infections spread by direct contact or contact with items in the patient’s environment, such as pediculosis.

contiguous Something in direct contact with, or adjacent to, another area or structure.

continence The ability to voluntarily control emptying the bladder and colon. Continence is a learned behavior whereby a person can suppress the urge to urinate until a socially appropriate location is available.

continuous feeding A method of tube feeding in which small amounts of enteral product are continuously infused (by gravity drip or by a pump or controller device) over a specified time.

continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) A respiratory treatment that improves obstructive sleep apnea in patients with heart failure.

contractility The ability of a cell to contract in response to an impulse. In cardiac electrophysiology, the ability of atrial and ventricular muscle cells to shorten their fiber length in response to electrical stimulation, generating sufficient pressure to propel blood forward. Contractility is the mechanical activity of the heart.

contraction The closure of a wound as new collagen replaces damaged tissue, pulling the wound edges inward along the path of least resistance.

contralateral Pertaining to the opposite side.

contrecoup injury Bruising of the brain tissue, with damage occurring on the side opposite the site of impact.

controller A stationary, pole-mounted electronic device that uses a sensor to monitor fluid flow during infusion therapy and to detect flow interruption.

contusion A bruise; when referring to closed head injury, a bruising of brain tissue usually found at the site of impact (coup injury). Compare with *contrecoup injury*.

cor pulmonale Right-sided heart failure caused by pulmonary disease.

cordectomy Excision of a vocal cord in surgery for laryngeal cancer.

cordotomy Surgical technique in which the surgeon cuts the pain pathways at the midline portion of the spinal cord, before nerve impulses ascend to the spinothalamic tract. Used to relieve intractable pain in patients with metastatic cancer by interrupting the transmission of pain.

cornea The clear layer that forms the external coat on the front of the eye.

corneal abrasion Scrape or scratch of the cornea that disrupts its integrity.

corneal ulceration Deep disruption of the corneal epithelium that extends into the stromal layer and is caused by bacteria, protozoa, or fungi.

coronary artery bypass graft A surgical procedure in which occluded coronary arteries are bypassed with the patient's own venous or arterial blood vessels or synthetic grafts.

coronary artery calcium (CAC) score A measure of the amount of coronary artery calcification present.

coronary artery disease (CAD) Disease affecting the arteries that provide blood, oxygen, and nutrients to the myocardium; partial or complete blockage of the blood flow through the coronary arteries, causing ischemia and infarction of the myocardium, angina pectoris, and acute coronary syndromes.

coronary artery vasculopathy (CAV) A form of coronary artery disease that presents as diffuse plaque in the arteries of the donor heart in patients who have received a heart transplant.

cortex The outer layer of an organ or body structure.

cortical A term referring to compact bone of the shaft of a bone.

corticosteroids The hormones produced and secreted by the adrenal cortex; also called "adrenal steroids."

cortisol The main glucocorticoid produced by the adrenal cortex.

coryza The common cold, or acute viral rhinitis.

cough assist A technique for assisting the tetraplegic patient to cough. Place his or her hands on either side of the rib cage or upper abdomen below the diaphragm; then, as the patient exhales, push upward to help expand the lungs and cough.

craniotomy Surgical incision into the cranium.

creatine kinase (CK) An enzyme specific to cells of the brain, myocardium, and skeletal muscle. Its appearance in the blood indicates tissue necrosis or injury, with levels following a predictable rise and fall during a specified period.

Crédé maneuver A technique used to assist in urination in which a patient places his or her hand in a cupped position directly over the bladder area and pushes inward and downward gently as if massaging the bladder to empty.

cremasteric reflex Stimulation of the skin on the front and inner side of the thigh retracts the testicle and scrotum on the same side. An intact reflex indicates integrity of the first lumbar nerve segment of the spinal cord.

crepitus (crepitation) A continuous grating sensation caused when irregular cartilage or bone fragments rub together and which may be felt or heard as a joint is put through passive range of motion; also, a crackling sensation that can be felt on a patient's chest, indicating that air is trapped within the tissues.

CREST syndrome In patients with systemic sclerosis, the combination of *cal*cinosis (calcium deposits), *R*aynaud's phenomenon, *e*sophageal dysmotility, *s*clerodactyly (scleroderma of the digits), and *t*elangiectasia (spider-like hemangiomas).

cricothyroidotomy Surgical procedure in which an opening is made between the thyroid cartilage and cricoid cartilage ring and results in a tracheostomy; also called "cricothyrotomy." The procedure is used in an emergency for access to the lower airways.

crises In the patient with sickle cell disease, periodic episodes of extensive cellular sickling that have a sudden onset and can occur as often as weekly or as seldom as once a year.

critical access hospital A small rural facility of 15 or fewer inpatient beds that provides around-the-clock emergency care services 7 days per week. Considered a necessary provider of health care to community residents who are not close to other hospitals in a given region.

critical thinking Purposeful, outcome-directed thinking that is used to make clinical judgments based on scientific evidence rather than on tradition or conjecture (guesswork).

cross-contamination A type of contamination in which organisms from another person or from the environment are transmitted to the patient.

cryoanalgesia The use of cold to achieve permanent ablation of nerve roots.

cryoprecipitate A highly concentrated blood product that is derived from plasma and includes clotting factors VIII and XIII, von Willebrand's factor, and fibrinogen.

cryosurgery Destruction of tissue by applying extreme cold; may reduce pain and tumor size in patients with metastatic cancer.

cryotherapy (1) A way of decreasing muscle pain by "cooling down" the area with a local, short-acting gel or cream, such as after physical therapy; (2) in ophthalmologic surgery, use of a freezing probe to repair retinal detachment.

cryptorchidism Failure of the testes to descend into the scrotum.

Cullen's sign The presence of a bluish discoloration around the umbilicus, which is an indication of intra-abdominal bleeding.

cultural competence The ability of health care provider or organization to understand and respond effectively to the cultural and linguistic needs that patients bring to the health care setting.

cultural diversity The differences among people, which may or may not be visible.

cultural sensitivity The way that one responds to cultural differences.

culture (1) A procedure for identifying a microorganism by cultivating and isolating it in tissue cultures or artificial media; (2) an integrated pattern of human behavior that is learned and transmitted to succeeding generations and includes thought, speech, action, and artifacts.

curandero A folk healer in the Mexican-American medicine system who considers health and health care from a holistic, spiritual perspective rather than the traditional scientific viewpoint.

curative surgery Surgery done to remove all cancer tissue.

Curling's ulcer Acute ulcerative gastroduodenal disease, which may develop within 24 hours of a severe burn injury because of reduced gastrointestinal blood flow and mucosal damage.

Cushing's disease (Cushing's syndrome) Hypercortisolism caused by oversecretion of hormones by the adrenal cortex.

Cushing's triad A classic yet late sign of increased intracranial pressure (ICP) manifested by severe hypertension with a widened pulse pressure and bradycardia. As ICP increases, the pulse becomes thready, irregular, and rapid. Cerebral blood flow increases in response to hypertension.

Cushing's ulcer Acute ulcerative gastroduodenal disease that may develop as a result of increased intracranial pressure.

cutaneous reflexes Superficial reflexes. Usually the plantar and abdominal reflexes are tested.

cuticle A layer of keratin at the nail fold, which attaches the nail plate to the soft tissue of the nail fold.

cyanosis Bluish or darkened discoloration of the skin and mucous membranes; results from an increased amount of deoxygenated hemoglobin.

cyclic feeding A method of tube feeding similar to continuous feeding (see definition of *continuous feeding*) except the infusion is stopped for a specified time in each 24-hour period ("down time"); the down time typically occurs in the morning to allow bathing, treatments, and other activities.

cyst Firm, flesh-colored nodule that contains liquid or semisolid material.

cystectomy (1) Removal of a cyst; (2) surgical removal of the bladder and surrounding tissue.

cystitis Inflammation of the bladder.

cystocele Herniation of the bladder into the vagina.

cytokines Small protein hormones produced by white blood cells.

cytopenia Low blood count.

cytoprotectant Drug that protects specific healthy cells; given to patients to decrease the impact of chemotherapy on normal tissues.

cytoreductive surgery Surgery done to remove part of a tumor while leaving a known amount of gross tumor behind; also called “cancer control.”

cytotoxic Having cell-damaging effects.

D

dandruff An accumulation of patchy or diffuse white or gray scales on the surface of the scalp.

dawn phenomenon In the patient with diabetes, a condition of fasting hyperglycemia resulting from a nighttime release of growth hormone that causes blood glucose elevations at about 5 to 6 AM. Providing more insulin for the overnight period helps avoid this condition.

death When illness or trauma overwhelms the compensatory mechanisms of the body and the lungs and heart cease to function.

death rattle Loud, wet respirations caused by secretions in the respiratory tract and oral cavity of a patient who is near death.

débridement The removal of infected tissue from a healing wound.

debriefing After a mass casualty incident or disaster, (1) the provision of sessions for small groups of staff in which teams are brought in to discuss effective coping strategies (critical incident stress debriefing), and (2) the administrative review of staff and system performance during the event to determine opportunities for improvement in the emergency management plan.

debris Dead cells and tissues in a wound.

decerebrate posturing Abnormal posturing and rigidity characterized by extension of the arms and legs, pronation of the arms, plantar flexion, and opisthotonos; usually associated with dysfunction in the brainstem area. Also called “decerebration.”

decerebration See *decerebrate posturing*.

decompensated cirrhosis A form of cirrhosis in which liver function is significantly impaired with obvious manifestations of liver failure.

decompressive laminectomy Removal of one or more laminae in the patient with spinal cord injury and compression; allows for cord expansion from edema if more conventional measures fail to prevent neurologic deterioration.

decorticate posturing Abnormal posturing seen in the patient with lesions that interrupt the corticospinal pathways. The arms, wrists, and fingers are flexed with internal rotation and plantar flexion of the legs. Also called “decortication.”

decortication See *decorticate posturing*.

deep tendon reflexes Tested as part of the neurologic assessment. An intact reflex arc is indicated when the muscle contracts in response to the tendon being struck with a hammer.

deep vein thrombophlebitis Presence of a thrombus associated with inflammation in the deep veins, usually in the legs. Compared with superficial thrombophlebitis, it presents a greater risk for pulmonary embolism; also called “deep vein thrombosis.”

deep vein thrombosis (DVT) Common term for deep vein thrombophlebitis.

defibrillation An asynchronous countershock that depolarizes a critical mass of myocardium simultaneously to stop the re-entry circuit, allowing the sinus node to regain control of the heart.

degradation The process of breaking down.

dehiscence A partial or complete separation of the outer layers of a wound, sometimes described as a “splitting open” of the wound.

dehydration Fluid intake less than what is needed to meet the body’s fluid needs.

delayed union Term describing a fracture that has not healed within 6 months of injury.

delegation The process of transferring to a competent person the authority to perform a selected nursing task or activity in a selected patient care situation.

delirium An acute state of confusion, usually short-term and reversible within 3 weeks. Often seen among older adults in a hospital or other unfamiliar setting.

delirium tremens (DTs) Tremors of the entire body; a symptom of alcohol withdrawal.

demand dose An amount of drug specified by the health care provider that is programmed into a patient-controlled analgesia infusion pump.

dementia A syndrome of slowly progressive cognitive decline with global impairment of intellectual function. The most common type is Alzheimer’s disease.

demyelination Destruction of myelin between the nodes of Ranvier; a major pathologic finding in Guillain-Barré syndrome.

demyelination Occurrence of multiple sclerosis in which the myelin sheath is damaged and its thickness is reduced.

deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) The basic genetic material required for cell division and growth.

dependence A condition that causes a habitual, compulsive, and uncontrollable urge to use a substance; without the substance, the body experiences severe physiologic, psychological, and emotional disturbances.

depolarization The ability of a cell to respond to a stimulus by initiating an impulse; also called “excitability.”

depressant A drug that reduces the activity of the central nervous system, such as a benzodiazepine or barbiturate.

depressed fracture A type of skull fracture in which the bone is pressed inward into the brain tissue.

depression A response to multiple life stresses, a single situation, a primary disorder, or a problem associated with dementia; this response can range from mild, transient feelings of sadness to a severe sense of helplessness and hopelessness.

dermal appendages Collectively, the sweat and oil glands and the hair follicles. The depth of dermal appendages varies from one body area to another.

dermal papillae Fingerlike projections of dermal tissue that anchor the epidermis to the dermis.

dermatomes Specific areas of the skin that receive sensory input from spinal nerves.

dermatomyositis Polymyositis that is accompanied by a rash.

descending tracts Groups of nerves that begin in the brain and end in the spinal cord.

desquamation The shedding or peeling of skin.

diagnostic peritoneal lavage (DPL) Test that determines the presence of internal bleeding following abdominal trauma.

diagnostic surgery Surgery done to remove all or part of a suspected lesion for examination and testing; also called “biopsy.”

dialysate The solution used in dialysis. It is composed of water, glucose, sodium chloride, potassium, magnesium, calcium, and bicarbonate; dialysate composition may be altered according to the patient’s needs for treatment of electrolyte imbalances.

dialyzer The apparatus used to perform hemodialysis. Also known as the “artificial kidney,” it has four parts: a blood compartment, a dialysate compartment, a semipermeable membrane, and an enclosed structure to support the membrane.

diaphoresis Abnormally profuse sweating.

diaphysis The shaft, or elongated cylindrical portion, between the ends of a long bone.

diastole The phase of the cardiac cycle that consists of relaxation and filling of the atria and ventricles; normally about two thirds of the cardiac cycle.

diastolic blood pressure The amount of pressure/force against the arterial walls during the relaxation phase of the heart.

diastolic heart failure Heart failure that occurs when the left ventricle is unable to relax adequately during diastole, which prevents the ventricle from filling with sufficient blood to ensure adequate cardiac output.

diathermy The use of a high-frequency current to heat body tissues.

Dietary Guidelines for Americans Recommendations made by the USDA and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services to help people maintain nutritional health; updated every 5 years.

dietitian A member of the health care team who ensures patients meet their nutritional needs. Also called “nutritionist.”

diffuse axonal injury (DAI) A type of closed head injury that is usually related to high-speed acceleration/deceleration, as with motor vehicle crashes. There is significant damage to axons in the white matter, and there are lesions in the corpus callosum, midbrain, cerebellum, and upper brainstem. Patients with severe injury may present with immediate coma, and most survivors require long-term care.

diffuse light reflex A description of a light reflex that is spotty or multiple because of a changed eardrum shape from either retraction or bulging.

diffuse scleroderma Skin thickening on the trunk, face, and proximal and distal extremities in patients with systemic sclerosis.

diffusion The spontaneous, free movement of particles (solute) across a permeable membrane down a concentration gradient; that is, from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.

digestion The mechanical and chemical process in which complex foodstuffs are broken down into simpler forms that can be used by the body.

digitalis toxicity A reaction to therapy with digitalis derivatives (digoxin) that is identified by monitoring serum digoxin and potassium levels (hypokalemia potentiates digitalis toxicity). Signs of toxicity are nonspecific (anorexia, fatigue, changes in mental status). Toxicity may cause dysrhythmia, most commonly premature ventricular contractions.

dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) A type of cardiomyopathy that involves extensive damage to the myofibrils and interference with myocardial metabolism. There is normal ventricular wall thickness but dilation of both ventricles and impairment of systolic function.

dilation Increase in the diameter of blood vessels.

diplopia Double vision.

direct contact A mode of infection transmission in which microorganisms are transferred directly by physical contact from one person to another.

direct current stimulation (DCS) The placement of an implantable device to promote bone fusion; used as an adjunct for patients for whom spinal fusion may be difficult.

direct inguinal hernia A sac formed from the peritoneum that contains a portion of the intestine and passes through a weak point in the abdominal wall.

direct response Pupil constriction in response to bringing a penlight in from the side of the patient's head and shining the light in the eye being tested as soon as the patient opens his or her eyes.

directly observed therapy (DOT) A technique in which a health care professional watches the patient swallow prescribed drugs.

disabling health problem Any physical or mental health problem that can cause disability.

disaster A mass casualty incident in which the number of casualties exceeds the resource capabilities of a particular community or hospital facility.

disaster triage tag system A system that categorizes triage priority by colored and numbered tags.

discoid lesion Round lesion in patients who have discoid lupus erythematosus; evident when exposed to sunlight or ultraviolet light.

disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) Drugs prescribed to slow the progression of mild rheumatoid disease before it worsens, such as hydroxychloroquine, sulfasalazine, or minocycline.

disequilibrium A condition in which the hydrostatic pressure is not the same in the two fluid spaces on either side of a permeable membrane.

disinfection A method of infection control in which the level of disease-causing organisms is reduced but the organisms are not killed; adequate when an item is entering a body area that has resident bacteria or normal flora, such as the respiratory tract.

diskitis Disk inflammation.

dislocation of a joint Occurrence of the articulating surfaces of two or more bones moving away from each other.

dissociate The act of separating and releasing ions.

distal protection device A device that is placed beyond (distal to) the stenosis during an angioplasty/stenting procedure for the purpose of catching debris that breaks off during the procedure.

divalent cation An ion having two positive charges.

diverticula Sacs resulting from the herniation of the mucosa and submucosa of a tubular organ into surrounding tissue.

diverticulitis The inflammation of one or more diverticula.

diverticulosis The presence of many abnormal pouchlike herniations (diverticula) in the wall of the intestine.

dizziness A disturbed sense of a person's relationship to space.

DNA replication The process of making a new copy of an entire strand of DNA.

dopamine agonist A class of drugs that mimic dopamine. Dopamine agonists stimulate dopamine receptors and are typically the most effective during the first 3 to 5 years of use. Prescribed for the patient with Parkinson disease to reduce dyskinesias (problems with movement).

dose (1) In radiation therapy, the amount of radiation absorbed by recipient tissue during radiation therapy as determined by intensity of exposure, duration of exposure, and closeness of the radiation source to the cells; (2) the amount of drug or other substance to be administered at one time.

dose-dense chemotherapy Chemotherapy that uses higher doses more often for aggressive cancer treatment, especially breast cancer.

double-barrel stoma The least common type of colostomy, which is created by dividing the bowel and bringing both the proximal and distal portions to the abdominal surface to create two stomas.

doubling time The amount of time it takes for a tumor to double in size.

Dressler's syndrome Pericarditis, fever, and pericardial and pleural effusions occurring together from 1 to 12 weeks after myocardial infarction.

droplet The small particles produced when a person coughs or sneezes; may be involved in indirect transmission of infection.

Droplet Precautions Infection control guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; used for patients with infections spread by the droplet transmission route, such as influenza.

drug holiday Period of time lasting up to 10 days in which the patient with Parkinson disease receives no drug therapy.

dual x-ray absorptiometry (DXA) A type of radiographic scan that measures bone mineral density in the hip, wrist, or vertebral column; used as a screening and diagnostic tool for diagnosis and for follow-up evaluation of treatment of osteoporosis.

ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) An early, noninvasive form of breast cancer in which cancer cells are located within the duct and have not invaded the surrounding fatty breast tissue.

ductal ectasia A benign breast disease caused by dilation and thickening of the collecting ducts in the subareolar area. The ducts become distended and filled with cellular debris, which activates an inflammatory response. It is usually seen in women approaching menopause.

dull A term that describes the medium-pitched, soft, thudlike sound over a solid organ (e.g., liver) that is obtained upon percussion of the abdomen.

dumping syndrome A constellation of vasomotor symptoms that typically occur within 30 minutes after eating; believed to occur as a result of the rapid emptying of gastric contents into the small intestine, which shifts fluid into the gut and causes abdominal distention. Early manifestations include vertigo, tachycardia, syncope, sweating, pallor, and palpitations.

Dupuytren's contracture A slowly progressive contracture of the palmar fascia that results in flexion of the fourth or fifth digit of the hand and occasionally affects the third digit. Although a fairly common problem, the cause is unknown. It usually occurs in older men, tends to occur in families, and can be bilateral.

durable power of attorney (DPOA) for health care A legal document in which a person appoints someone else to make health care decisions in the event he or she becomes incapable of making decisions.

dysarthria Slurred speech.

dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB) A nonspecific term to describe bleeding that is excessive or abnormal in amount or frequency without predisposing anatomic or systemic conditions. Such bleeding occurs most often at either end of the span of a woman's reproductive years, when ovulation is becoming established or when it is becoming irregular at menopause.

dyskinesia Difficulty with movement.

dysmenorrhea Painful menstruation.

dysmetria The inability to direct or limit movement.

dyspareunia Painful sexual intercourse.

dyspepsia Indigestion or heartburn following meals.

dysphagia Difficulty in swallowing.

dyspnea Difficulty in breathing or breathlessness.

dyspnea on exertion (DOE) Dyspnea that is associated with activity, such as climbing stairs.

dysrhythmia A disorder of the heartbeat involving a disturbance in cardiac rhythm; irregular heartbeat.

dystrophic Pertaining to or characterized by dystrophy; abnormal.

dystrophin A muscle protein that maintains muscle integrity by sending signals to coordinate smooth, synchronous muscle fiber contraction. Faulty action of this protein causes muscular dystrophy.

dysuria Painful urination.

E

early-onset seizure Seizure that occurs within 7 days of a head injury.

Eaton-Lambert syndrome A form of myasthenia gravis that affects the muscles of the trunk and the pelvic and shoulder girdles; often observed in combination with small cell carcinoma of the lung. Although weakness increases after exertion, there may be a temporary increase in muscle strength during the first few contractions, followed by a rapid decline.

ecchymoses Large purple, blue, or yellow bruises of the skin resulting from small hemorrhages; these bruises are larger than petechiae.

ecchymotic Pertaining to a bruise.

ECG caliper A measurement tool used in analysis of an electrocardiographic (ECG) rhythm strip.

echocardiography In cardiovascular assessment, the use of ultrasound waves to assess cardiac structure and mobility, particularly of the valves; a noninvasive, risk-free test that is easily performed at the bedside or on an ambulatory care basis.

echolalia Automatic repetition of what another person says.

ectopic Out of place.

ectopic beats Heartbeats generated outside the normal conduction system in the ventricles; a cardiac manifestation of hyperkalemia.

ectropion A turning outward and sagging of the eyelid, which is caused by relaxation of the orbicular muscle.

edema Tissue swelling as a result of the accumulation of excessive fluid in the interstitial spaces.

edentulous Without teeth.

efferent arterioles The extremely small blood vessels that carry the remaining blood out of the glomerulus (once the glomerulus has filtered the blood to make urine) and into one of two additional capillary systems (the peritubular capillaries or the vasa recta).

effluent Drainage.

effusion An accumulation of fluid, such as in a joint (where it may limit movement).

ejection fraction The percentage of blood ejected from the heart during systole.

elastin The major component of the elastic fibers that are scattered among the collagen fibers. Elasticity of the skin depends on both the amount and quality of the elastic fibers.

electrical bone stimulation The use of an electronic device (e.g., magnetic coils applied on the skin or over a cast to deliver a pulsed magnetic field) to promote bone union after a fracture. The exact mechanism of action is unknown, but this procedure is based on research showing that bone has inherent electrical properties that are used in healing.

electrocardiogram (ECG) A graphic recording of the electrical current generated by the heart. The ECG provides information about cardiac dysrhythmias, myocardial ischemia, site and extent of myocardial infarction, cardiac hypertrophy, electrolyte imbalances, and effectiveness of cardiac drugs. It is a routine part of cardiovascular evaluation and is a valuable diagnostic test.

electroencephalography (EEG) A recording of the electrical activity of the cerebral hemispheres; it represents the voltage changes in various areas of the brain as determined by recording the difference between two electrodes.

electrolyte A substance in body fluids that carries an electrical charge; also called an "ion."

electromyography (EMG) A recording of the electrical activity of peripheral nerves by testing muscle activity.

electrophysiologic study (EPS) In cardiovascular assessment, an invasive procedure performed in a catheterization laboratory during which programmed electrical stimulation of the heart is used to induce and evaluate lethal dysrhythmias and conduction abnormalities to permit accurate diagnosis and effective treatment. The study is used in patients who have survived cardiac arrest, have recurrent tachydysrhythmias, or experience unexplained syncopal episodes.

electrovaporization of the prostate (EVAP) Procedure for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia with high-frequency electrical current to cut and vaporize excess tissue.

emboli (1) Tumor pieces that spread to distant body areas; (2) small blood clots that can enter circulation.

embolic protection device (EPD) A device that is placed beyond the stenosis during an angioplasty/stenting procedure to catch debris that breaks off during the procedure.

embolus The occurrence of inflammation and thickening of the vein wall around a clot (thrombus).

emergence Recovery from anesthesia.

emergency medical technician (EMT) Pre-hospital care provider who supplies basic life-support interventions such as oxygen, basic wound care, splinting, spinal immobilization, and monitoring of vital signs.

emergency medicine physician A member of the emergency health care team with education and training in the specialty of emergency patient management.

emergency operations center (EOC) A designated location in the Hospital Incident Command System (HICS) with accessible communication technology; also called the "command center."

emergency preparedness A goal or plan to meet the extraordinary need for hospital beds, staff, drugs, personal protective equipment, supplies, and medical devices such as mechanical ventilators.

Emergency Severity Index (ESI) A standardized model for triage that categorizes both patient acuity and resource utilization into five levels, from most urgent to least urgent.

emergent triage In a three-tiered triage scheme, the category that includes any condition or injury that poses an immediate threat to life or limb, such as crushing chest pain or active hemorrhage.

emetogenic A substance that induces nausea and vomiting.

emission The first stage of the male orgasm in which the prostate gland secretes its fluid at the same time as the vas deferens.

emmetropia The state of perfect refraction of the eye; with the lens at rest, light rays from a distant source are focused into a sharp image on the retina.

emotional abuse The intentional use of threats, humiliation, intimidation, and isolation to another person.

emotional lability Having uncontrollable emotions; for example, the patient laughs and then cries unexpectedly for no apparent reason.

empyema A collection of pus in the pleural space.

encephalitis An inflammation of the brain parenchyma (brain tissue) and meninges that affects the cerebrum, brainstem, and cerebellum; usually caused by a virus.

endogenous Originating inside the body.

endometrial ablation Procedure for dysfunctional uterine bleeding that removes a built-up uterine lining using a laser, roller ball, or balloon.

endometrial cancer Cancer of the inner uterine lining.

endometriosis The abnormal occurrence of endometrial tissue outside the uterine cavity.

endometritis An infection of the endometrium.

endorphins Morphine-like substances in the body that are released when the large-diameter nerve fibers are stimulated. They close the gate and decrease pain transmission.

endoscope A tube that allows viewing and manipulation of internal body areas.

endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) The visual and radiographic examination of the liver, gallbladder, bile ducts, and pancreas by means of an endoscope and the injection of radiopaque dye to identify the cause and location of obstruction.

endoscopic variceal ligation (EVL) The application of small “O” bands around the base of the esophageal varices to cut off their blood supply; also called “banding.”

endoscopy The direct visualization of the gastrointestinal tract by means of a flexible fiberoptic endoscope.

endothelin A secretion produced by the endothelial cells when they are stretched.

endotoxin Any toxic substance that is produced in the cell walls of certain bacteria and released only with cell lysis. Typhoid and meningococcal diseases are caused by endotoxins.

endovascular stent graft The repair of an abdominal aortic aneurysm using a stent made of flexible material; the stent is inserted through a skin incision into the femoral artery by way of a catheter-based system.

endoventricular circular patch cardioplasty In the patient with heart failure, a procedure in which the surgeon removes portions of the cardiac septum and left ventricular wall and grafts a circular patch (synthetic or autologous) into the opening. This procedure provides a more normal shape to the left ventricle to improve hemodynamics.

end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) Acute renal failure combined with chronic renal insufficiency, resulting in the inability of the kidney to excrete waste products normally. The patient may need hemodialysis or a kidney transplant.

energy conservation Strategies to reduce the fatigue associated with chronic and disabling conditions, such as allowing rest periods and setting priorities.

engraftment The successful transplantation of cells in the patient's bone marrow.

enophthalmos Backward displacement of the eyeball into the orbit so that the eye appears sunken.

enteroscopy Visualization of the small intestine.

enterostomal feeding tube A tube used for patients who need long-term enteral feeding; the physician directly accesses the gastrointestinal tract using surgical, endoscopic, and laparoscopic techniques.

entropion The turning inward of the eyelid, causing the eyelashes to rub against the eye.

enucleation The surgical removal of the entire eyeball.

envenomation Venom injection from a snake bite.

epididymectomy Surgical excision of the epididymis from the testicle.

epididymis The cordlike structure along the posterior border of the testis; it is the first portion of a ductal system that transports sperm from the testes to the urethra.

epididymitis Inflammation of the epididymis.

epidural Term for the space between the dura mater and vertebrae; it consists of fat, connective tissue, and blood vessels.

epidural analgesia The instillation of a pain-blocking agent into the epidural space

(between the dura mater and the vertebral column).

epidural catheter A transducer or sensor that is placed between the skull and the dura (leaving the dura intact) to monitor intracranial pressure.

epidural hematoma An accumulation of clotted blood resulting from arterial bleeding into the space between the dura and the skull; a neurosurgical emergency.

epidural hemorrhage Arterial bleeding into the space between the dura and the skull.

epiglottis A leaf-shaped, elastic structure that is attached along one edge to the top of the larynx; it closes over the glottis during swallowing to prevent food from entering the trachea and opens during breathing and coughing.

epilepsy A chronic disorder characterized by recurrent, unprovoked seizure activity; may be caused by an abnormality in electrical neuronal activity, an imbalance of neurotransmitters, or a combination of both.

epiphyses The two knoblike ends of a long bone.

epistaxis Nosebleed.

epitympanum The upper portion of the tympanic cavity; a compartment containing the three bony ossicles.

equianalgesic Refers to the dose and route of administration of one drug that produces approximately the same degree of analgesia as the given dose and route of another drug.

equilibrium (1) A state of balance; (2) a condition in which there is no hydrostatic pressure difference between the two fluid spaces on either side of a permeable membrane.

erectile dysfunction (ED) The inability to achieve or maintain a penile erection sufficient for sexual intercourse.

ergonomics An applied science in which the workplace is designed to increase worker comfort (thus reducing injury) while increasing efficiency and productivity.

erosion Ulceration.

eructation The act of belching.

erythema Redness of the skin.

erythema migrans A round or oval flat or slightly raised rash.

erythrocyte A red blood cell. Red blood cells are the major cells in the blood and are responsible for tissue oxygenation.

erythroplakia A velvety red mucosal lesion, most often occurring in the oral cavity.

erythroplasia Red, velvety patches on a mucous membrane.

erythropoiesis The selective maturation of stem cells into mature erythrocytes.

eschar The crust of dead tissue that forms from coagulated particles of destroyed dermis in a patient with a full-thickness burn injury.

escharotomy Incision made through tight eschar to relieve pressure and allow normal blood flow and breathing.

esophageal stricture Narrowing of the esophageal opening.

esophageal varices The distention of fragile, thin-walled esophageal veins due to increased

pressure; the increased pressure is a result of portal hypertension, in which the blood backs up from the liver and enters the esophageal and gastric vessels that carry it into the systemic circulation.

esophagectomy The surgical removal of all or part of the esophagus.

esophagitis Inflammation of the esophagus.

esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) The visual examination of the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum by means of a fiberoptic endoscope.

esophagogastrostomy The surgical creation of a communication between the stomach and the esophagus; it involves the removal of part of the esophagus and proximal stomach.

esophagomyotomy A surgical procedure in which the lower esophageal sphincter is incised to facilitate the passage of food for patients with achalasia.

essential hypertension Elevated blood pressure that is not caused by a specific disease. The major risk factor is a family history of hypertension; also called “primary hypertension.”

ethnopharmacology The study of how ethnicity affects how drugs work in the body, including drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion.

euploid Having the correct number of chromosome pairs for the species.

euploidy The normal diploid number for a cell.

eustachian tube Tube that connects the nasopharynx with the middle ear and opens during swallowing to equalize pressure within the middle ear.

euthyroid Having normal thyroid function.

evidence-based practice Care that nurses provide that is based on research and identified standards and considers the patient's preferences and values and the nurse's clinical expertise.

evisceration The total separation of all layers of a wound and the protrusion of internal organs through the open wound.

evoked potentials Tests to measure the electrical signals to the brain generated by hearing, touch, or sight; also called “evoked response.”

exacerbate To increase in severity of disease or its symptoms.

exacerbation An increase in severity of a disease; also called “flare-up.”

excision Removal of a lesion and local surrounding tissue.

excitability The ability of a cell to respond to a stimulus by initiating an impulse; also called “depolarization.” In cardiac electrophysiology, it is the ability of non-pacemaker myocardial cells to respond to an electrical impulse generated from pacemaker cells and to depolarize.

exercise electrocardiography In cardiovascular assessment, a test that assesses cardiovascular response to an increased workload; also called “exercise tolerance” or a “stress test.” Exercise electrocardiography helps determine the functional capacity of the heart, screens for coronary artery disease, and identifies

dysrhythmias that develop during exercise. It also aids in evaluating the effectiveness of anti-dysrhythmic drugs.

exertional dyspnea Breathlessness or difficulty breathing that develops during activity or exertion.

exertional heat stroke A form of heat stroke with a sudden onset, typically due to strenuous physical activity in hot, humid conditions. Lack of acclimatization to hot weather and wearing clothing too heavy for the environment are common contributing factors.

exogenous Originating outside the body.

exogenous hyperthyroidism Hyperthyroidism caused by excessive use of thyroid replacement hormones.

exophthalmos Abnormal protrusion of the eyeball (proptosis).

exotoxin Any toxic substance that is produced and released by certain bacteria into the surrounding environment. Botulism, tetanus, and diphtheria are attributed to exotoxins.

expedited partner therapy (EPT) Therapy used to treat chlamydia in which patients are given a drug or prescription with specific instructions for administration to their partners without direct evaluation by a health care provider; also called “patient-delivered partner therapy.”

exploratory laparotomy A surgical opening of the abdominal cavity to investigate the cause of an obstruction or peritonitis.

exposure (1) The final component of the primary survey that allows for thorough assessment of the trauma patient; (2) in radiation therapy, the amount of radiation that is delivered to a tissue.

expressed gene When a particular gene has been “turned on.”

expression (gene) The selective activation of a particular gene in a specific cell type.

expressive aphasia A type of aphasia resulting from damage in Broca’s area of the frontal lobe of the brain. A motor speech problem in which the patient understands what is said but is unable to communicate verbally and has difficulty writing; rote speech and automatic speech, such as responses to a greeting, are often intact. The patient is aware of the deficit and may become frustrated and angry. Also called “Broca’s aphasia” or “motor aphasia.”

expressivity In genetics, the degree of expression a person has when a specific autosomal dominant gene is present. The gene is always expressed, but some people have more severe results.

external catheter An epidural catheter, a portion of which exits the skin.

external fixation A system in which pins or wires are passed through skin and bone and connected to a rigid external frame to immobilize a fracture during healing.

external hemorrhoid A hemorrhoid that lies below the anal sphincter and can be seen on inspection of the anal region.

external otitis A painful irritation or infection of the skin of the external ear, with resulting allergic response or inflammation. When

it occurs in patients who participate in water sports, external otitis is called “swimmer’s ear.”

external urethral sphincter The sphincter composed of the skeletal muscle that surrounds the urethra.

extracapsular Located outside the joint capsule.

extracellular fluid (ECF) The portion of total body water (about one third) that is in the space outside the cells. This space also includes interstitial fluid, blood, lymph, bone, and connective tissue water, and the transcellular fluids.

extracranial-intracranial bypass A surgical procedure in which the surgeon performs a craniotomy and bypasses the blocked artery by making a graft (bypass) from the first artery to the second artery to establish blood flow around the blocked artery and re-establish blood flow to the involved areas.

extramedullary tumor A tumor found within the spinal dura but outside the cord.

extrapulmonary Involving nonpulmonary tissues.

extravasation Escape of fluids or drugs into the subcutaneous tissue; a complication of intravenous infusion.

extrinsic factor In hematology, an event (e.g., trauma) that occurs outside the blood to cause platelet plugs to form.

extubation The removal of an endotracheal tube.

exudate Pus.

F

facial paralysis See *Bell’s palsy*.

facilitated diffusion Diffusion across a cell membrane that requires the assistance of a transport system or membrane-altering system; also called “facilitated transport.”

facilitated transport See *facilitated diffusion*.

failed back surgery syndrome (FBSS) A combination of organic, psychological, and socioeconomic factors in patients for whom back surgery is not successful. Discouraged by repeated surgical procedures, these patients must continue long-term nonsurgical management of pain, including nerve blocks.

fall An unintentional change in body position that results in the patient’s body coming to rest on the floor or ground.

fallophobia In some older adults, the fear of falling and sustaining a serious injury.

fallopian tubes The tubes that insert into the fundus of the uterus, extending laterally close to the ovaries, and provide a duct between the ovaries and uterus for the passage of ova and sperm; also called “uterine tubes.”

far point of vision The farthest point at which the eye can see an object.

fascia An inelastic tissue that surrounds groups of muscles, blood vessels, and nerves in the body.

fasciculation Abnormal, involuntary twitching of a muscle.

fasciotomy A surgical procedure in which an incision is made through the skin and subcutaneous tissues into the fascia of the affected

compartment to relieve the pressure in and restore circulation to the affected area in the patient with acute compartment syndrome.

fat embolism syndrome (FES) A serious complication, usually resulting from a fracture, in which fat globules are released from the yellow bone marrow into the bloodstream. This syndrome usually occurs within 48 hours of the fracture and can result in respiratory failure or death, often from pulmonary edema.

fatigue (stress) fracture A fracture that results from excessive or repeated strain and stress on a bone.

fatty liver (steatosis) Caused by the accumulation of fats in and around the hepatic cells. It may be caused by alcohol abuse or other factors.

fecal occult blood test (FOBT) A diagnostic test that measures the presence of blood in the stool from gastrointestinal bleeding; this is a common finding associated with colorectal cancer.

Felty’s syndrome The combination of rheumatoid arthritis, hepatosplenomegaly (enlarged liver and spleen), and leukopenia.

femoral hernia A hernia that protrudes through the femoral ring.

fetor hepaticus The distinctive fruity or musty breath odor of chronic liver disease and portal-systemic encephalopathy.

fibrinolysis The breakdown of a clot.

fibrinolytic Drug that targets the fibrin component of the coronary thrombosis; used to dissolve thrombi in the coronary arteries and restore myocardial blood flow; examples include tissue plasminogen activator, anisoylated plasminogen-streptokinase activator complex, and reteplase.

fibroadenoma A solid, slowly enlarging, benign mass of connective tissue that is unattached to the surrounding breast tissue and is typically discovered by the patient herself. The mass is usually round, firm, easily movable, nontender, and clearly delineated from the surrounding tissue.

fibrocystic breast condition (FBC) Physiologic nodularity of the breast that is thought to be caused by an imbalance in the normal estrogen-to-progesterone ratio. It is the most common breast problem of women between 20 and 30 years of age.

fibrogenic Originating from fibrous tissue.

fibroids See *leiomyomas*.

fibromyalgia syndrome (FMS) A chronic pain syndrome characterized by pain and tenderness at specific sites in the back of the neck, upper chest, trunk, low back, and extremities along with fatigue, sleep disturbances, and headache.

fibrosis Replacement of normal cells with connective tissue and collagen (scar tissue).

filter The movement of fluid from the space with higher hydrostatic pressure through the membrane into the space with lower hydrostatic pressure.

filtration The movement of fluid through a cell or blood vessel membrane because of

hydrostatic pressure differences on both sides of the membrane.

financial abuse Mismanagement or misuse of the patient's property or resources.

first intention healing Healing in which the wound can be easily closed and dead space eliminated without granulation, which thus shortens the phases of tissue repair. Inflammation resolves quickly, and connective tissue repair is minimal, resulting in a thin scar.

fistula An abnormal opening between two adjacent organs or structures.

five cardinal manifestations of inflammation Warmth, redness, swelling, pain, and decreased function.

fixed occlusion Wiring the jaws together in the mouth closed position.

flaccid bladder See *areflexic bladder*.

flaccid paralysis Paralysis of a part of the body that is characterized by loss of muscle tone due to hypotonia; may be seen in the patient who has experienced a brain attack.

flail chest Inward movement of the thorax during inspiration, with outward movement during expiration; results from multiple rib fractures caused by blunt chest trauma that leaves a segment of the chest wall loose.

flatulence The presence of an excessive amount of gas in the stomach or intestines.

fluid overload An excess of body fluid. Also called "overhydration."

folliculitis A superficial bacterial infection involving only the upper portion of the hair follicle.

forced expiratory volume in the first second (FEV₁) Volume of air blown out as hard and fast as possible during the first second of the most forceful exhalation after the greatest full inhalation.

forced vital capacity (FVC) Volume of air exhaled from full inhalation to full exhalation.

forensic nurse examiner Emergency department specialist who is trained to recognize evidence of abuse and to intervene on the patient's behalf and who obtains patient histories, collects forensic evidence, and offers counseling and follow-up care for victims of rape, child abuse, and domestic violence.

fracture A break or disruption in the continuity of a bone.

frameshift mutation A mutation that occurs as a result of adding or deleting a single base or a group of bases.

fremitus Vibration.

frequency (1) The highness or lowness of tones (expressed in hertz). The greater the number of vibrations per second, the higher the frequency (pitch) of the sound; the fewer the number of vibrations per second, the lower the pitch; (2) an urge to urinate frequently in small amounts.

fresh frozen plasma (FFP) Plasma that is frozen immediately after donation so that the clotting factors are preserved.

friable Easily crumbled or damaged.

frostbite A cold injury characterized by the degree of tissue freezing and the resultant

damage it produces. Frostbite injuries can be superficial, partial, or full thickness.

frostnip A form of superficial frostbite (typically on the face, fingers, or toes) that produces pain, numbness, and pallor but is easily remedied with the application of warmth and does not induce tissue injury.

full agonist Morphine-like opioid analgesic that binds to mu receptors and blocks the release of substance P, preventing the transmission of pain; the most potent of all analgesics.

Fulmer SPICES A framework that identifies six serious "marker conditions" that can lead to longer hospital stays for patients, higher medical costs, and deaths.

fulminant hepatitis A severe acute and often fatal form of hepatitis caused by failure of the liver cells to regenerate, with progression to necrosis.

fundoplication A procedure in which the fundus of the stomach is wrapped around the lower end of the esophagus to anchor it and reinforce the lower esophageal sphincter; the most common surgical technique for hiatal hernia repair. A laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication is one variation of this type of procedure; a traditional, open surgical approach (using a large abdominal incision) is another variation.

furuncle A localized inflammation of the skin caused by bacterial infection, usually *Staphylococcus*, of a hair follicle; also called "a boil."

G

G₁ phase Phase of cell division in which the cell gets ready for division by taking on extra nutrients, making more energy, growing extra membrane, and increasing the amount of cytoplasm.

G₂ phase Phase of cell division in which the cell makes proteins that will be used in actual cell division and in normal physiologic function after cell division is complete.

gallium scan A test that is similar to the bone scan but uses the radioisotope *gallium citrate* and is more specific and sensitive in detecting bone problems. This substance also migrates to brain, liver, and breast tissue and therefore is used to examine these structures when disease is suspected.

gamma globulin See *immunoglobulin*.

ganglion A round, cystlike lesion, often overlying a wrist joint or tendon.

gas bloat syndrome A common, usually temporary, complication of fundoplication surgery. In this syndrome, patients are unable to voluntarily eructate (belch).

gastrectomy The surgical removal of part or all of the stomach.

gastric bypass (Roux-en-Y gastric bypass) A type of gastric restriction surgery in which gastric resection is combined with malabsorption surgery. The patient's stomach, duodenum, and part of the jejunum are bypassed so that fewer calories can be absorbed.

gastric lavage Procedure of irrigating the stomach in which a large-bore nasogastric

tube is inserted into the stomach and room-temperature solution is instilled in volumes of 200 to 300 mL. The solution and blood are repeatedly withdrawn manually until returns are clear or light pink and without clots.

gastrinoma A non-β cell islet tumor of the pancreas; the usual cause of Zollinger-Ellison syndrome.

gastritis An inflammation of the gastric mucosa (stomach lining).

gastroenteritis An increase in the frequency and water content of stools or vomiting as a result of inflammation of the mucous membranes of the stomach and intestinal tract. It affects primarily the small bowel and can be of either viral or bacterial origin.

gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD) An upper gastrointestinal disease caused by the backward flow (reflux) of gastrointestinal contents into the esophagus.

gastrojejunostomy Surgical anastomosis of the stomach to the jejunum.

gastroparesis Delay in gastric emptying.

gastrostomy A stoma created from the abdominal wall into the stomach.

gate control theory A theory to explain the observed relationship between pain and emotion; a gating mechanism occurs in the spinal cord. Nerve fibers (A delta and C fibers) transmit pain impulses from the periphery of the body. The impulses travel to the dorsal horns of the spinal cord, specifically to the *substantia gelatinosa*. The cells of the *substantia gelatinosa* can inhibit or facilitate the pain impulses transmitted to the trigger cells (T-cells). When T-cell activity is inhibited, the gate is closed and impulses are less likely to be transmitted to the brain. When the gate is opened, pain impulses ascend to the brain.

gel phenomenon In patients with rheumatoid arthritis, morning stiffness that lasts between 45 minutes and several hours after awakening.

gene The deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) in the form of chromosomes within the nucleus of each cell that contains the instructions for making all the different proteins any organism makes. Every human cell with a nucleus contains the entire set of human genes.

general anesthesia A reversible loss of consciousness induced by inhibiting neuronal impulses in the central nervous system.

generalized seizure One of the three broad categories of seizure disorders along with partial seizures and unclassified seizures. There are six types: tonic-clonic, tonic, clonic, absence, myoclonic, and atonic (akinetic).

generation time The time it takes one cell to divide into two cells.

genetics The science concerned with the general mechanisms of heredity and the variation of inherited traits.

genital herpes (GH) An acute, recurring, incurable viral disease of the genitalia caused by the herpes simplex virus and transmitted through contact with an infected person. An outbreak typically is preceded by a tingling sensation of the skin followed by the

appearance of vesicles (blisters) on the penis, scrotum, vulva, perineum, vagina, cervix, or perianal region. The blisters rupture spontaneously, leaving painful erosions. After the lesions heal, the virus remains dormant, periodically reactivating with a recurrence of symptoms.

genome The complete set of human genes. Each human cell with a nucleus contains the entire set of human genes. The human genome contains about 35,000 individual genes.

genomics The science focusing on the function of all of the human DNA, including genes and noncoding DNA regions.

genomic health care The application of known genetic variation to enhance health care to individuals and their families.

genotype The actual alleles for a genetic trait, not just what can be observed.

genu valgum A deformity in which the knees are abnormally close together and the space between the ankles is increased; also called “knock-knee.”

genu varum A deformity in which the knees are abnormally separated and the lower extremities are bowed inward; also called “bowleg.”

Geriatric Depression Scale—Short Form A valid and reliable screening tool to help determine if an older patient has clinical depression.

geriatric failure to thrive (GFTT) A complex syndrome including under-nutrition, impaired physical functioning, depression, and cognitive impairment.

Ghon tubercle A mass of necrotic lung tissue, visible on x-ray, that is the primary lesion of tuberculosis.

ghrelin The “hunger hormone” that is secreted in the stomach; increases in a fasting state and decreases after a meal.

Glasgow Coma Scale An objective and widely accepted tool for neurologic assessment and documentation of level of consciousness. It establishes baseline data for eye opening, motor response, and verbal response. The patient is assessed and assigned a numerical score for each of these areas. A score of 15 represents normal neurologic functioning, and a score of 3 represents a deep coma state.

glaucoma A group of ocular diseases resulting in increased intraocular pressure, causing reduced blood flow to the optic nerve and retina and followed by tissue damage.

glomerulus A series of specialized capillary loops that receive blood from the afferent arteriole and then filter water and small particles from the blood to make urine. The remaining blood leaves the glomerulus via the efferent arteriole.

glossectomy The partial or total surgical removal of the tongue.

glossitis A smooth, beefy red tongue.

glottis The opening between the true vocal cords inside the larynx.

glucagon A hormone secreted by the pancreas that increases blood glucose levels. It is a

“counterregulatory” hormone that has actions opposite those of insulin. It causes the release of glucose from cell storage sites whenever blood glucose levels are low.

gluconeogenesis The conversion of proteins and amino acids to glucose in the body.

glucosamine A supplement that may decrease inflammation.

glycemic A term referring to blood glucose.

glycogenesis The production of glycogen in the body.

glycogenolysis The breakdown of glycogen into glucose.

glycoprotein IIa/IIIb inhibitors Drugs that target the platelet component of the thrombus. They are administered intravenously to prevent fibrinogen from attaching to activated platelets at the site of a thrombus and are given to patients with acute coronary syndromes (especially unstable angina and non-Q-wave myocardial infarction). Examples include abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban.

“go bag” See *personal readiness supplies*.

goiter Enlargement of the thyroid gland.

gonadotropins Hormones that stimulate the ovaries and testes to produce sex hormones.

gonads The male and female reproductive endocrine glands. Male gonads are the testes, and female gonads are the ovaries.

goniometer An instrument for measuring angles; also refers to a tool used to measure joint range of motion.

good death A death that is free from avoidable distress and suffering for patients, families, and caregivers; in agreement with patients’ and families’ wishes; and consistent with clinical practice standards.

gout A systemic disease in which urate crystals deposit in the joints and other body tissues, causing inflammation.

gradient A graded difference of hydrostatic pressure in a state of disequilibrium; that is, one fluid space has a higher hydrostatic pressure than the other.

grading System of classifying cellular aspects of a cancer tumor.

granulation The formation of scar tissue for wound healing to occur.

granulocyte Neutrophil that contains a large number of granules.

granuloma Growth that develops in the lungs of patients with sarcoidosis and contains lymphocytes, macrophages, epithelioid cells, and giant cells; scar tissue.

granuloma inguinale An ulcerative disease of the genital area that appears as a painless nodule.

Graves’ disease Toxic diffuse goiter characterized by hyperthyroidism, enlargement of the thyroid gland, abnormal protrusion of the eyes, and dry, waxy swelling of the front surfaces of the lower legs.

gray (gy) Unit of measurement for an absorbed radiation dose.

gray matter In the spinal cord, neuron cell bodies.

grief The emotional feeling related to the perception of loss.

grommet A polyethylene tube that is surgically placed through the tympanic membrane to allow continuous drainage of middle-ear fluids in the patient with otitis media.

ground substance A lubricant composed of protein and sugar groups that surrounds the dermal cells and fibers and contributes to the skin’s normal suppleness and turgor.

guardian A person appointed to make health care decisions for a patient who is determined to not be legally competent.

guided imagery An alternative therapy technique in which the patient is provided with images or prompts by a nurse, family member, or friend or via a tape.

Guillain-Barré syndrome (GBS) An acute autoimmune disorder characterized by varying degrees of motor weakness and paralysis. It may be referred to by a variety of other names, such as “acute idiopathic polyneuritis” and “polyradiculoneuropathy.”

gynecomastia Abnormal enlargement of the breasts in men.

H

H₂-receptor antagonists A group of drugs that inhibit gastric acid secretion by blocking the effects of histamine on parietal cell receptors in the stomach.

halitosis A foul odor of the mouth.

hallucinogens Chemical substances that possess mind-altering or perception-altering properties, such as lysergic acid (LSD), phenylcyclidine (PCP), and marijuana.

hallux valgus A common deformity of the foot that occurs when the great toe deviates laterally at the metatarsophalangeal joint; sometimes referred to as a “bunion.”

halo fixator A static traction device used for immobilization of the cervical spine. Four pins or screws are inserted into the skull, and a metal halo ring is attached to a plastic vest or cast when the spine is stable, allowing increased patient mobility.

hammertoe The dorsiflexion of any metatarsophalangeal joint with plantar flexion of the adjacent proximal interphalangeal joint. The second toe is most often affected.

hand hygiene Infection control protocol that refers to both handwashing and alcohol-based hand rubs.

handwashing The process of wetting, soaping, lathering, applying friction under running water for at least 15 seconds, rinsing, and drying the hands; an important part of infection control.

health care-acquired infections (HAIs) Infections that are associated with the provision of health care; for example, microorganisms can enter the body through the genitourinary tract in patients with indwelling urinary catheters.

Healthy People 2020 A program created by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services with the goal of eliminating differences in health status among racial and ethnic minorities while continually improving the overall health of all Americans through

research, preventive programs, and inclusion of members of minority groups.

heart failure A general term for the inadequacy of the heart to pump blood throughout the body, causing insufficient perfusion of body tissues with vital nutrients and oxygen; also called “pump failure.”

heart rate (HR) Term referring to the number of times the ventricles contract each minute.

heart reduction surgery Partial left ventriculectomy; in the patient with heart failure, a surgical procedure to remove a triangle-shaped section of the weakened heart in the left lateral ventricle to reduce the ventricle's diameter and decrease wall tension.

heart transplantation A surgical procedure in which a heart from a donor with a comparable body weight and ABO compatibility is transplanted into a recipient less than 6 hours after procurement. It is the treatment of choice for patients with severe dilated cardiomyopathy and may be considered for patients with restrictive cardiomyopathy.

heat exhaustion A syndrome primarily caused by dehydration from heavy perspiration and inadequate fluid and electrolyte consumption during heat exposure over hours to days; if left untreated, can be a precursor to heat stroke.

heat stroke A true medical emergency in which the victim's heat regulatory mechanisms fail and are unable to compensate for a critical elevation in body temperature; if uncorrected, organ dysfunction and death will ensue.

Heberden's nodes Swelling at the distal interphalangeal joints in osteoarthritis that involves the hands.

helminths Parasitic worms that are capable of causing infectious disease with gastrointestinal symptoms in humans. The three general categories are roundworms (nematodes), flukes (trematodes), and tapeworms (cestodes).

hematemesis The vomiting of blood.

hematochezia The passage of red blood via the rectum.

hematocrit The percentage of packed red blood cells per deciliter of blood.

hematogenous Disseminated by the blood through the circulation.

hematogenous tuberculosis A form of tuberculosis that spreads throughout the body when a large number of organisms enter the blood. Also called “miliary tuberculosis.”

hematopoiesis The production of blood cells, which occurs in the red marrow of bones.

hematuria Blood in the urine.

hemianopsia Blindness in half of the visual field of one or both eyes; also called “hemianopia.”

hemiarthroplasty Surgical replacement of part of the shoulder joint, typically the humeral component, as an alternative to total shoulder arthroplasty.

hemiparesis Weakness on one side of the body.

hemiplegia Paralysis on one side of the body.

hemoconcentration Elevated plasma levels of hemoglobin, hematocrit, serum osmolality, glucose, protein, blood urea nitrogen, and electrolytes that occur when only the water is lost and other substances remain.

hemodilution Excessive water in the vascular space.

hemodynamic monitoring An invasive system that directly measures pressures in the heart and great vessels; used in critical care areas to provide quantitative information about vascular capacity, blood volume, pump effectiveness, and tissue perfusion.

hemoglobin A (HbA) Normal adult hemoglobin. The molecule has two alpha chains and two beta chains of amino acids.

hemolytic The characteristic of destroying red blood cells.

hemoptysis Coughing up blood or blood-stained sputum.

hemorrhoid Unnaturally swollen or distended vein in the anorectal region.

hemorrhoidectomy The excision of a hemorrhoid.

hemostasis The multi-step process of controlled blood clotting.

heparin-induced thrombocytopenia and thrombosis (HIT) The aggregation of platelets into “white clots” that can cause thrombosis, usually in the form of an acute arterial occlusion; occurs with heparin administration; also called “white clot syndrome.”

hepatic coma See *portal-systemic encephalopathy*.

hepatic encephalopathy See *portal-systemic encephalopathy*.

hepatitis The widespread inflammation of liver cells.

hepatitis A Hepatitis that is caused by the hepatitis A virus (HAV) and is characterized by a mild course similar to that of a typical viral syndrome and often goes unrecognized. It is spread via the fecal-oral route by oral ingestion of fecal contaminants. Sources of infection include contaminated water, shellfish caught in contaminated water, and food contaminated by infected food handlers. The virus may also be spread by oral-anal sexual activity. The incubation period is usually 15 to 50 days. The disease is usually not life threatening but may be more severe in people older than 40 years. It can also complicate pre-existing liver disease.

hepatitis B A form of hepatitis that is caused by the hepatitis B virus, which is shed in the body fluids of infected people and asymptomatic carriers. It is spread through unprotected sexual intercourse with an infected partner, needle sharing, blood transfusions, and other modes. Symptoms usually occur within 25 to 180 days of exposure and include nausea, fever, fatigue, joint pain, and jaundice. Most adults who get hepatitis B recover, clear the virus from their body, and develop immunity; however, up to 10% of patients with the disease do not develop immunity and become carriers.

hepatitis C Hepatitis that is caused by the hepatitis C virus. Transmission is blood to

blood, most commonly by needle sharing or needle stick injury with contaminated blood. The rate of sexual transmission is very low; it is not spread by casual contact and is rarely transmitted from mother to fetus. The average incubation period is 7 weeks. Most people are asymptomatic and are not diagnosed until long after the initial exposure when an abnormality is detected during a routine laboratory evaluation or when symptoms of liver impairment appear. Hepatitis C causes chronic inflammation in the liver that eventually causes the hepatocytes to scar and may progress to cirrhosis.

hepatitis carrier Person who has had hepatitis B but has not developed immunity. Hepatitis carriers can infect others even though they are not sick and demonstrate no obvious signs of disease. Chronic carriers are at high risk for cirrhosis and liver cancer.

hepatitis D The hepatitis D virus (HDV) co-infects with hepatitis B virus (HBV) and needs the presence of HBV for viral replication. HDV can co-infect a patient with HBV or can occur as a superinfection in a patient with chronic HBV. Superinfection usually develops into chronic HDV infection. The incubation period is 14 to 56 days. As with HBV, the disease is transmitted primarily by parenteral routes.

hepatitis E Hepatitis E virus (HEV) was originally identified by its association with waterborne epidemics of hepatitis in the Indian subcontinent. Since then, it has occurred in epidemics in Asia, Africa, the Middle East, Mexico, and Central and South America, typically after heavy rains and flooding. In the United States, hepatitis E has been found only in travelers returning from endemic areas. The virus is transmitted via the fecal-oral route, and the clinical course resembles that of hepatitis A. HEV has an incubation period of 15 to 64 days. There is no evidence at this time of a chronic form of hepatitis E.

hepatocyte Liver cell.

hepatomegaly Enlargement of the liver.

hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) A state of progressive oliguric renal failure associated with hepatic failure, resulting in functional impairment of kidneys with normal anatomic and morphologic features. It indicates a poor prognosis for the patient with hepatic failure and is often the cause of death in patients with cirrhosis.

herbal preparation Plant used for medicinal purposes.

hereditary chronic pancreatitis Pancreatitis that may be associated with *SPINK1* and *CFTR* gene mutations.

heritability The risk that a disorder can be transmitted to one's children in a recognizable pattern.

hernia A weakness in the abdominal muscle wall through which a segment of the bowel or other abdominal structure protrudes.

herniated nucleus pulposus (HNP) The protrusion (herniation) of the pulpy material from the center of a vertebral disk; herniated

disks occur most often between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae (L4-5) but may occur at other levels. A herniation in the lumbosacral area can press on the adjacent spinal nerve (usually the sciatic nerve), causing severe burning or stabbing pain into the leg or foot, or it may press on the spinal cord itself, causing leg weakness and bowel and bladder dysfunction. The specific area of pain depends on the level of herniation.

hernioplasty Surgical repair of a hernia in which the surgeon reinforces the weakened outside muscle wall with a mesh patch.

herniorrhaphy The surgical repair of a hernia.

heterotopic ossification Abnormal bony overgrowth, often into muscle; seen as a complication of prolonged immobility in patients with spinal cord injury.

hiatal hernia Protrusion of the stomach through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm and into the thorax; also called “diaphragmatic hernia.”

high altitude Elevations above 5000 feet, which can produce a range of physiologic consequences in the body.

high altitude disease (HAD) Pathophysiologic responses in the body caused by exposure to low partial pressure of oxygen at high elevations.

high altitude pulmonary edema (HAPE) A form of acute mountain sickness often seen with high altitude cerebral edema. Clinical indicators include persistent dry cough, cyanosis of the lips and nail beds, tachycardia and tachypnea at rest, and rales auscultated in one or both lungs. Pink, frothy sputum is a late sign.

highly sensitive C-reactive protein (hsCRP) A serum marker of inflammation and a common and critical component to the development of atherothrombosis.

high-output heart failure Heart failure that occurs when cardiac output remains normal or above normal. It is usually caused by increased metabolic needs or hyperkinetic conditions such as septicemia (fever), anemia, and hyperthyroidism. This type of heart failure is different from left- and right-sided heart failure, which are typically low-output states, and is not as common as other types.

hilum The area of the kidney in which the renal artery and nerve plexus enter and the renal vein and ureter exit. This area is not covered by the renal capsule.

hirsutism Abnormal growth of body hair, especially on the face, chest, and the linea alba of the abdomen of women.

holistic care The connection and integration of the mind, body, and spirit.

homeopaths Care providers who plan individualized care by prescribing small doses of specially prepared plant and animal extracts and minerals to promote healing.

homeopathic medicine Practice of medicine that uses small doses of specially prepared plant extracts and minerals to promote healing.

homeostasis The narrow range of normal conditions (e.g., body temperature, blood

electrolyte values, blood pH, blood volume) in the human body; the tendency to maintain a constant balance in normal body states.

homeostatic mechanism A safeguard or control mechanism within the human body that prevents dangerous changes.

homocysteine An essential sulfur-containing amino acid that is produced when dietary protein breaks down; elevated values (greater than 15 mmol/L) may be a risk factor for the development of cardiovascular disease.

homonymous hemianopsia Condition in which there is blindness in the same side of both eyes.

hordeolum An infection of the sweat glands in the eyelid.

hormone Chemical produced in the body that exerts its effects on specific tissues known as “target tissues.”

hospice care An interdisciplinary approach to facilitate quality of life and a “good” death for patients near the end of their lives, with care provided in a variety of settings.

Hospital Incident Command System (HICS) An organizational model for disaster management in which roles are formally structured under the hospital or long-term care facility incident commander, with clear lines of authority and accountability for specific resources.

hospital incident commander As defined in a hospital’s emergency response plan, the person (either an emergency physician or administrator) who assumes overall leadership for implementing the institutional plan at the onset of a mass casualty incident. The hospital incident commander has a global view of the entire situation, facilitates patient movement through the system, and brings in resources to meet patient needs.

hospitalist Family practitioner or internist employed by a hospital.

Huber needle A noncoring port access needle used in central IV therapy.

human leukocyte antigen (HLA) Antigen that is present on the surfaces of nearly all body cells as a normal part of the person and acts as an antigen only if it enters another person’s body.

human papilloma virus (HPV) test A test that can identify many high-risk types of HPV associated with the development of cervical cancer.

humoral immunity A type of immunity provided by antibodies circulating in body fluids.

Huntington disease (HD) A hereditary disorder transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait at the time of conception (formerly called “Huntington chorea”). Men and women between 35 and 50 years of age are affected; clinical onset is gradual. The two main symptoms are progressive mental status changes (leading to dementia) and choreiform movements (rapid, jerky movements) in the limbs, trunk, and facial muscles.

hydrocephalus The abnormal accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid within the skull.

hydronephrosis Abnormal enlargement of the kidney caused by a blockage of urine lower in the tract and filling of the kidney with urine.

hydrophilic Tending to absorb water readily.

hydrophobic Not readily absorbing water; waterproof.

hydrostatic pressure The force of the weight of water molecules pressing against the confining walls of a space.

hydrotherapy The application of water for treatment of injury or disease.

hydroureter Abnormal distention of the ureters.

hyperacusis An intolerance for sound levels that do not bother other people.

hyperaldosteronism Excessive mineralocorticoid production.

hypercalcemia A total serum calcium level above 10.5 mg/dL or 2.75 mmol/L, which can cause fatigue, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, constipation, polyuria, and serious damage to the urinary system.

hypercapnia Increased arterial carbon dioxide levels.

hypercarbia Increased partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide (Paco₂) levels.

hypercellularity An abnormal number of cells.

hyperemia Increased blood flow to an area.

hyperesthesia Abnormally increased sensation.

hyperextension A mechanism of injury that occurs when a part of the body is suddenly accelerated and then decelerated, causing extreme extension.

hyperflexion A mechanism of injury that occurs when a part of the body is suddenly and forcefully accelerated forward, causing extreme flexion.

hyperglycemia Abnormally high levels of blood glucose.

hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state (HHS) State of increased blood osmolarity caused by hyperglycemia.

hyperinsulinemia Chronic high blood insulin levels.

hyperkalemia An elevated level of potassium in the blood.

hyperlipidemia An elevation of serum lipid (fat) levels in the blood.

hypermagnesemia A serum magnesium level above 2.1 mEq/L.

hypernatremia An excessive amount of sodium in the blood.

hyperopia An error of refraction that occurs when the eye does not refract light enough, causing images to fall (converge) behind the retina and resulting in poor near vision; also called “farsightedness.”

hyperosmotic Describes fluids with osmolarities (solute concentrations) greater than 300 mOsm/L; hyperosmotic fluids have a greater osmotic pressure than do isosmotic fluids and tend to pull water from the isosmotic fluid space into the hyperosmotic fluid space until an osmotic balance occurs. Also called “hypertonic.”

hyperphosphatemia A serum phosphorus level above 4.5 mg/dL.

hyperpituitarism Hormone oversecretion that occurs with pituitary tumors or hyperplasia.

hyperplasia Growth that causes tissue to increase in size by increasing the number of cells; abnormal overgrowth of tissue.

hyperpnea An abnormal increase in the depth of respiratory movements.

hypersensitivity An overreaction to a foreign substance.

hypertension A cardiovascular condition pertaining to people who have a systolic blood pressure of 140 mm Hg or higher or a diastolic blood pressure of 90 mm Hg or higher or who take medication to control blood pressure; approximately 1 of every 5 Americans has hypertension.

hyperthermia Elevated body temperature; fever.

hyperthyroidism A condition caused by excessive production of thyroid hormone.

hypertonia A condition of excessive muscle tone, which tends to cause fixed positions or contractures of the involved extremities and restricted range of motion of the joints.

hypertonic See *hyperosmotic*.

hypertriglyceridemia Elevated levels (150 mg/dL or above) of triglyceride in the blood.

hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) A type of cardiomyopathy that involves disarray of the myocardial fibers and asymmetric ventricular hypertrophy; leads to a stiff left ventricle that results in diastolic filling abnormalities.

hypertrophy The enlargement or overgrowth of an organ; tissue increases in size by the enlargement of each cell.

hyperuricemia An excess of uric acid in the blood.

hyperventilation A state of increased rate and depth of breathing.

hyperviscosity Excessively thick or concentrated, as of the blood.

hyperviscous The quality of being thicker than normal.

hypervolemia Increased plasma volume; or fluid excess.

hyphema A hemorrhage in the anterior chamber of the eye that occurs when a force is applied to the eye and breaks the blood vessels.

hypnosis An altered state of consciousness in which a person enters a trance and loses an overall sense of reality.

hypocalcemia A total serum calcium level below 9.0 mg/dL or 2.25 mmol/L.

hypocapnia Decreased arterial carbon dioxide levels.

hypodermoclysis The slow infusion of isotonic fluids into subcutaneous tissue.

hypoesthesia Abnormally decreased sensation.

hypoglycemia Abnormally low levels of glucose in the blood.

hypokalemia A decreased serum potassium level; a common electrolyte imbalance.

hypomagnesemia Decreased serum magnesium levels.

hyponatremia A serum sodium level below 136 mEq/L (mmol/L).

hypo-osmotic Describes fluids with osmolarities of less than 270 mOsm/L. Hypo-osmolar fluids have a lower osmotic pressure than isosmotic fluids, and water tends to be pulled from the hypo-osmotic fluid space into the isosmotic fluid space until an osmotic balance occurs. Also called "hypotonic."

hypoperfusion Decreased blood flow through an organ.

hypophonia Soft voice.

hypophosphatemia Inadequate levels of phosphate in the blood (below 3.0 mg/dL).

hypophysectomy Surgical removal of the pituitary gland.

hypoplasia Reduced production of cells.

hypoproteinemia A decrease in serum proteins.

hyporeflexia A decreased response to deep tendon reflex stimulation.

hyposthenuria The inability to form urine of high specific gravity; loss of urine-concentrating ability.

hypothalamic-hypophyseal portal system The small, closed circulatory system that the hypothalamus shares with the anterior pituitary gland, which allows hormones produced in the hypothalamus to travel directly to the anterior pituitary gland.

hypothalamus A structure within the brain; an integral part of autonomic nervous system control (controlling temperature and other functions) that is essential in intellectual function.

hypothermia A core body temperature less than 95° F (35° C).

hypotonia An abnormal condition of inadequate muscle tone, with an inability to maintain balance.

hypotonic See *hypo-osmotic*.

hypoventilation A state in which gas exchange at the alveolar-capillary membrane is inadequate so that too little oxygen reaches the blood and carbon dioxide is retained.

hypovolemia Abnormally decreased volume of circulating fluid in the body; fluid deficit.

hypoxemia (hypoxemic) Decreased blood oxygen levels; hypoxia.

hypoxia (hypoxic) A reduction of oxygen supply to the tissues.

hysterosalpingogram An x-ray of the cervix, uterus, and fallopian tubes that is performed after injection of a contrast medium. This test is used in infertility workups to evaluate tubal anatomy and patency and uterine problems such as fibroids, tumors, and fistulas.

hysteroscopy Examination of the interior of the uterus and cervical canal using an endoscope.

I

icterus Yellow discoloration of the sclerae.

idiopathic chronic pancreatitis Pancreatitis that may be associated with *SPINK1* and *CFTR* gene mutations.

idiopathic epilepsy See *primary epilepsy*.

idiopathic seizure See *unclassified seizure*.

idioventricular rhythm A heart rhythm in which the ventricular nodal cells pace the ventricles at a rate that is usually less than 40 beats/min; also called "ventricular escape rhythm."

ileostomy The surgical creation of an opening into the ileum, usually by bringing the end of the terminal ileum through the abdominal wall and forming a stoma, or ostomy.

imagery In complementary medicine, a mind-body therapy or form of distraction in which the patient is encouraged to visualize or think about some pleasant or desirable feeling, sensation, or event.

immediate memory Short-term or new memory. Test by asking the patient to repeat two or three unrelated words to make sure they were heard; after about 5 minutes, while continuing the examination, ask the patient to repeat the words.

immunity Resistance to infection; usually associated with the presence of antibodies or cells that act on specific microorganisms.

immunocompetence Full immunity, which requires the interaction of the processes of inflammation, antibody-mediated immunity (humoral immunity), and cell-mediated immunity.

immunocompetent Having proper functioning of the body's ability to maintain itself and defend against disease.

immunoglobulin Antibody; also called "gamma globulin."

impedance The pressure that the heart must overcome to open the aortic valve. The amount of impedance depends on aortic compliance and total systemic vascular resistance, a combination of blood viscosity and arteriolar constriction.

impedance cardiography (ICG) A noninvasive monitoring system that measures the total impedance (resistance) to the flow of electricity in the heart and provides measures of thoracic fluid, left ventricular function (cardiac output and cardiac index), preload, afterload, and contractility of the heart.

impermeable Not porous.

implanted port A device used for long-term or frequent infusion therapy; consists of a portal body, a dense septum over a reservoir, and a catheter that is surgically implanted on the upper chest or upper extremity.

inactivation The process of binding an antibody to an antigen to cover the antigen's active site and to make the antigen harmless without destroying it; also called "neutralization."

incisional hernia Protrusion of the intestine at the site of a previous surgical incision resulting from inadequate healing. Most often caused by postoperative wound infections, inadequate nutrition, and obesity.

incomplete spinal cord injury An injury in which the spinal cord has been damaged in a way that allows some function or movement below the level of the injury.

incontinence Involuntary loss of urine or stool severe enough to cause social or hygienic problems.

incus One of the three bony ossicles of the ear; also called the “anvil.”

independent living skills See *instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs)*.

independent nursing function A nursing function initiated and carried out by the nurse without direction from the health care provider.

indirect contact A mode of infection transmission in which microorganisms are transferred passively from a contaminated inanimate object to a susceptible person.

indirect inguinal hernia A sac formed from the peritoneum that contains a portion of the intestine or omentum. The hernia pushes downward at an angle into the inguinal canal. In males, indirect inguinal hernias can become large and often descend into the scrotum.

indolent Slow-growing.

induration Hardening.

infarction Necrosis, or cell death.

infective endocarditis A microbial infection (e.g., viruses, bacteria, fungi) involving the endocardium; previously called “bacterial endocarditis.”

inferior vena cava filtration Surgical procedure in which the surgeon inserts a filter device percutaneously into the inferior vena cava of a patient with recurrent deep vein thrombosis (to prevent pulmonary emboli) or pulmonary emboli that do not respond to medical treatment. The device is meant to trap emboli in the inferior vena cava before they progress to the lungs. Holes in the device allow blood to pass through, thus not significantly interfering with the return of blood to the heart.

inferior wall myocardial infarction A type of myocardial infarction that occurs in patients with obstruction of the right coronary artery, causing significant damage to the right ventricle.

infertility Difficulty becoming pregnant.

infiltrating ductal carcinoma The most common type of breast cancer; it originates in the mammary ducts and grows in the epithelial cells lining these ducts.

infiltration The leakage of IV solution into the tissues around the vein.

inflammatory breast cancer A rare but highly aggressive form of invasive breast cancer. Symptoms include swelling, skin redness, and pain in the breasts.

inflammatory cytokines Proteins produced primarily by white blood cells that assist in the inflammatory and immune responses of the body (e.g., tumor necrosis factor, interleukins).

inflow disease Chronic peripheral arterial disease with obstruction at or above the common iliac artery, abdominal aorta, or profunda femoris artery. The patient experiences discomfort in the lower back, buttocks, or thighs after walking a certain distance. The pain usually subsides with rest.

informatics A specialized computer science that involves using information and

technology to communicate, manage knowledge, mitigate error, and support decision making.

infrapatellar notch The area directly below the knee.

infratentorial Located below the tentorium of the cerebellum.

infusate A solution that is infused into the body.

infusion therapy The delivery of parenteral medications and fluids through a variety of catheter types and locations using multiple techniques and procedures, such as intravenous and intra-arterial therapy to deliver solutions into the vascular system.

inhalants Breathable chemical vapors that produce psychoactive effects.

initial First or, in phases of shock, early.

initiation In oncology, the first step in carcinogenesis; caused by damage to the genes.

innate-native immunity Also called “natural immunity”; a type of immunity that cannot be developed or transferred from one person to another and is not an adaptive response to exposure or invasion by foreign proteins.

inpatient A patient who is admitted to a hospital.

insensible water loss Water loss from the skin, lungs, and stool that cannot be controlled.

instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs) Special activities performed in the course of a day such as using the telephone, shopping, preparing food, and housekeeping. Also called “independent living skills.”

insufflation The practice of injecting gas or air into a cavity before surgery to separate organs and improve visualization.

insulin resistance A reduced ability of most cells to respond to insulin. It is associated with type 2 diabetes.

insulinoma A usually benign tumor of the islets of Langerhans that causes excessive insulin secretion and subsequent hypoglycemia (low serum glucose); the most common type of neuroendocrine pancreatic tumor, even though it is rare.

integrative medicine Practice of medicine that combines therapies from traditional Western medicine and complementary and alternative medicine (CAM).

intensity A quality of sound that is expressed in decibels; generally, having a high degree of energy or activity.

intensivist A physician who specializes in critical care.

intention tremor A tremor that occurs when performing an activity.

interbody cage fusion Cagelike spinal device that is implanted into the space where a disk was removed. Bone graft tissue grows into and around the cage and creates a stable spine at that level.

intercostally Located between the ribs.

interdisciplinary pain team Team typically consisting of one or more nurses, pharmacists, case managers, and physicians who consult with staff and prescribers on how best to

control the patient’s pain; also called “analgesia team.”

intermittent claudication A characteristic leg pain experienced by patients with chronic peripheral arterial disease. Typically, patients can walk only a certain distance before a cramping muscle pain forces them to stop. As the disease progresses, the patient can walk only shorter and shorter distances before pain recurs. Ultimately, pain may occur even at rest.

internal derangement A broad term for disturbances of an injured knee joint.

internal fixation The use of metal pins, screws, rods, plates, or prostheses to immobilize a fracture during healing. The surgeon makes an incision (open reduction) to gain access to the broken bone and implants one or more devices.

internal hemorrhoid A hemorrhoid that is located above the anal sphincter and cannot be seen on inspection of the perineal area.

internal urethral sphincter The smooth detrusor muscle that lines the interior of the bladder neck.

interstitial cystitis A bladder inflammation of unknown etiology that occurs predominantly in women and is characterized by urinary frequency and pain on bladder filling.

interstitial fluid A portion of the extracellular fluid that is between cells, sometimes called the “third space.”

interstitial laser coagulation (ILC) Procedure for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia that uses laser energy to coagulate excess tissue. Also called “contact laser prostatectomy (CLP).”

intra-abdominal hypertension (IAH) Condition of sustained or repeated intra-abdominal pressure of 12 mm Hg or higher.

intra-abdominal pressure Pressure contained within the abdominal cavity.

intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) An intra-aortic counterpulsation device. It may be used as an invasive intervention to improve myocardial perfusion during an acute myocardial infarction, reduce preload and afterload, and facilitate left ventricular ejection. It is also used when patients do not respond to drug therapy with improved tissue perfusion, decreased workload of the heart, and increased cardiac contractility.

intra-arterial thrombolysis Therapy for brain attack that delivers the thrombolytic agent directly into the thrombus within 6 hours of the attack’s onset.

intracapsular Located within the joint capsule.

intracellular fluid (ICF) The portion of total body water (about two thirds) that is found inside the cells.

intracerebral hemorrhage Bleeding within the brain tissue caused by the tearing of small arteries and veins in the subcortical white matter.

intracorporeal Situated or occurring inside the body.

intractable pain Chronic pain that cannot be managed using standard therapies.

intramedullary tumor Tumor originating within the spinal cord in the central gray matter and anterior commissure. It is often malignant.

intraocular pressure (IOP) Pressure of the fluid within the eye; may be measured by methods that involve direct contact with the eye or by noncontact techniques.

intraoperative During surgery.

intraosseous (IO) therapy Infusion therapy that is delivered to the vascular network in the long bones.

intraperitoneal (IP) therapy The administration of antineoplastic agents into the peritoneal cavity.

intrapulmonary Within the respiratory tract.

intrarenal/intrinsic renal failure Decreased renal function resulting from damage to the glomeruli, interstitial tissue, or tubules. It can contribute to acute renal failure.

intrathecal Referring to the spine.

intrathecal (subarachnoid) analgesia The introduction of a pain-blocking agent into the space between the arachnoid mater and pia mater of the spinal cord (where the cerebrospinal fluid is located).

intravascular ultrasonography (IVUS) In cardiac catheterization, the use of a flexible catheter with a miniature transducer that emits sound waves. Sound waves are reflected off the plaque and the arterial wall, creating an image of the blood vessel; used as an alternative to injecting a contrast medium into the coronary arteries.

intravenous (systemic) fibrinolytic therapy The intravenous administration of thrombolytic agents to dissolve a thrombus.

intraventricular catheter (IVC) A small tube that is inserted into the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle of the nondominant cerebral hemisphere to monitor intracranial pressure; can also be used to drain cerebrospinal fluid to decrease pressure and obtain specimens for laboratory analysis.

intravesical Situated inside the bladder.

intrinsic factor A substance normally secreted by the gastric mucosa and needed for intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂. A deficiency of intrinsic factor and the resulting failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂ leads to pernicious anemia.

intussusception The telescoping of a segment of the intestine within itself.

invasive Pertaining to the ability to penetrate nearby tissue; said of cancers.

invasive temporary pacemaker A cardiac pacing system consisting of an external battery-operated pulse generator and pacing electrodes, or lead wires, that attach to the generator on one end and are in contact with the heart on the other end. Electrical pulses are emitted from the negative terminal of the generator, flow through a lead wire, and stimulate the cardiac cells to depolarize. The current seeks ground by returning through the other lead wire to the positive terminal of the generator, thus completing a circuitous route.

ion A substance found in body fluids that carries an electrical charge; also called "electrolyte."

iontophoresis A treatment for lower back pain in which a small electrical current and dexamethasone are typically used.

ipsilateral Occurring on the same side.

iris The colored portion of the external eye; its center opening is the pupil. Muscles of the iris contract and relax to control pupil size and the amount of light entering the eye.

iritis Inflammation of the iris.

irreducible hernia A hernia that cannot be reduced or placed back into the abdominal cavity; requires immediate surgical evaluation.

irreversible stage The former name for the refractory stage of shock. See *refractory stage*.

irritability An overresponse to stimuli.

irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) A chronic gastrointestinal disorder characterized by chronic or recurrent diarrhea, constipation, and/or abdominal pain and bloating; also called "spastic colon," "mucous colon," or "nervous colon."

ischemia Blockage of blood flow through a blood vessel. Prolonged severe ischemia can cause irreversible damage to tissue.

ischemic Cell dysfunction or death from a lack of oxygen resulting from decreased blood flow in a body part.

ischemic stroke A type of brain attack caused by occlusion of a cerebral artery by either a thrombus or an embolus. About 80% of all brain attacks are ischemic.

Ishihara chart The most commonly used tool for testing color vision. The chart shows numbers composed of dots of one color within a circle of dots of a different color. Each eye is tested separately by asking the patient what numbers he or she sees on the chart; reading the numbers correctly indicates normal color vision.

isoelectric Having equal electric potentials, such as in the heart.

isosmotic Having the same osmotic pressures; also called "isotonic" or "normotonic."

isosthenuria Excretion of urine with the same osmolality as that of plasma; occurs in patients with declining renal function due to chronic renal failure.

isotonic See *isosmotic*.

isotope A different form of a specific element; has a slightly different atomic weight and number of neutrons.

"itch-scratch-itch" cycle A pattern seen in patients with pruritus who try to relieve the itching sensation by scratching the skin, further stimulating the itch receptors and causing the itching sensation to continue.

J

jaundice A syndrome characterized by excessive circulating bilirubin levels. Liver cells cannot effectively excrete bilirubin, and skin and mucous membranes become characterized by a yellow coloration.

jejunostomy The surgical creation of an opening between the jejunum and the surface of the abdominal wall.

joint The place at which two or more bones come together; also referred to as "articulation" of the joint. The primary function is to provide movement and flexibility in the body.

journaling A mind-body therapy in which the patient records the process of life and reflects on it to express feelings, gain new perspectives, and pay attention to what is in the unconscious.

jugular venous distention (JVD) Enlargement of the jugular vein of the neck; caused by an increase in jugular venous pressure.

justice The ethical principle that refers to patient equality.

juxtaglomerular complex Specialized cells that produce and store renin in the afferent arteriole, efferent arteriole, and distal collecting tubule; taken together, the juxtaglomerular cells and the macula densa.

K

karyotype Technique used to make an organized arrangement of all the chromosomes within one cell during the metaphase section of mitosis.

Kehr's sign Pain in the left shoulder resulting from diaphragmatic irritation; may be present in splenic injury.

keratin The protein produced by keratinocytes; makes the outermost skin layer waterproof.

keratoconjunctivitis sicca A condition of the eyes that results from changes in tear composition, lacrimal gland malfunction, or altered tear distribution; also called "dry eye syndrome."

keratoconus The degeneration of the corneal tissue resulting in abnormal corneal shape.

keratoplasty Corneal transplant. The surgical removal of diseased corneal tissue and replacement with tissue from a human donor cornea.

ketogenesis The conversion of fats to acids in the body.

ketone bodies Substances, including acetone, that are produced as by-products of the incomplete metabolism of fatty acids. When insulin is not available (as in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus), they accumulate in the blood and cause metabolic acidosis; also called "ketones."

ketorolac (Toradol) Popular nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug prescribed for short-term use in acute pain because it can be given orally, intramuscularly, or by IV push.

knee height caliper Device that uses the distance between the patella and heel to estimate height.

Kupffer cells Phagocytic cells that are part of the body's reticuloendothelial system and are involved in the protective function of the liver. Kupffer cells engulf harmful bacteria and anemic red blood cells.

Kussmaul respiration A type of breathing that occurs when excess acids caused by the absence of insulin increase hydrogen ion and carbon dioxide levels in the blood. This state triggers an increase in the rate and depth of

respiration in an attempt to excrete more carbon dioxide and acid.

kwashiorkor Lack of protein quantity and quality in the presence of adequate calories. Body weight is somewhat normal, and serum proteins are low.

kypophlasty A minimally invasive surgery for managing vertebral fractures in patients with osteoporosis. Bone cement is injected into the fracture site to provide pain relief, and an inflated balloon is used to restore height to the vertebra.

L

labia majora Two vertical folds of adipose tissue that extend posteriorly from the mons pubis to the perineum.

labia minora Two thinner, vertical folds of reddish epithelium that are surrounded by the labia majora.

labyrinthectomy Surgical removal of the labyrinth; used as a radical treatment of Ménière's disease when medical therapy is ineffective and the patient already has significant hearing loss.

labyrinthitis An infection of the labyrinth of the ear; may occur as a complication of acute or chronic otitis media.

laceration A type of wound characterized by tearing or mangling and usually caused by sharp objects and projectiles.

lacrimal gland A small gland that produces tears; located in the upper outer part of each ocular orbit.

lacto-ovo-vegetarian A vegetarian diet pattern in which milk, cheese, eggs, and dairy foods are eaten but meat, fish, and poultry are avoided.

lactose intolerance The inability to convert lactose (found in milk and dairy products) to glucose and galactose in the body.

lacto-vegetarian A vegetarian diet pattern in which milk, cheese, and dairy foods are eaten but meat, fish, poultry, and eggs are avoided.

lacunae Small, deep cavities within the brain that result from occlusion of a small vessel; this leads to infarct and necrosis of the area of the brain supplied by the affected vessel.

laparoscopy A minimally invasive procedure in which the surgeon makes several small incisions near the umbilicus through which a small endoscope is placed to examine the abdomen; direct examination of the pelvic cavity through an endoscope.

laparotomy An open surgical approach in which a large abdominal incision is made.

laryngitis Inflammation of the mucous membranes lining the larynx.

laryngectomy A person who has had a laryngectomy.

laryngopharynx The area behind the larynx that extends from the base of the tongue to the esophagus. It is the critical dividing point at which solid foods and fluids are separated from air.

larynx The "voice box"; it is composed of several cartilages and is located above the trachea and just below the throat at the base

of the tongue; part of the upper respiratory tract.

laser An acronym for **light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation**. As a surgical tool, a laser emits a high-powered beam of light that cuts tissue more cleanly than do scalpel blades. A laser creates intense heat, rapidly clots blood vessels or tissue, and turns target tissue (e.g., a tumor) into vapor.

laser-assisted angioplasty A procedure using heat from a laser probe that is advanced through a cannula to vaporize arteriosclerotic plaque and open the occluded or stenosed artery.

latency period The time between the initiation of a cell and the development of an overt tumor.

late-onset seizure Seizure that occurs initially more than 7 days after a head injury.

latex allergy Reactions to exposure to latex in gloves and other medical products; reactions include rashes, nasal or eye symptoms, and asthma.

latrodectism A syndrome caused by the venom of a black widow spider bite in which neurotransmitter releases from nerve terminals to cause severe abdominal pain, muscle rigidity and spasm, hypertension, and nausea and vomiting.

lead In an ECG, the provider of one view of the heart's electrical activity.

lead axis In electrocardiography, the imaginary line that joins the positive and negative poles of the lead systems.

left shift An increase in the band cells (immature neutrophils) in the white blood cell differential count; an early indication of infection.

left-sided heart (ventricular) failure Inadequacy of the left ventricle of the heart to pump adequately; results in decreased tissue perfusion from poor cardiac output and pulmonary congestion from increased pressure in the pulmonary vessels; typical causes include hypertensive, coronary artery, or valvular disease involving the mitral or aortic valve. Most heart failure begins with failure of the left ventricle and progresses to failure of both ventricles.

legally competent A person 18 years of age or older, a pregnant or a married minor, a legally emancipated (free) minor who is self-supporting, or a person not declared incompetent by a court of law.

leiomyomas Benign, slow-growing solid tumors of the uterine myometrium (muscle layer). These are the most commonly occurring pelvic tumors; also called "myomas" and "fibroids."

lens The circular, convex structure of the eye that lies behind the iris and in front of the vitreous body. Normally transparent, the lens bends the rays of light entering through the pupil so they focus on the retina. The curve of the lens changes to focus on near or distant objects.

leprosy (Hansen's disease) A chronic, contagious, systemic mycobacterial infection of the peripheral nervous system with skin involvement. The clinical course is either

progressive or self-limiting depending on the immunologic status of the host. Although the exact mechanism of infection remains unknown, studies suggest transmission via the airborne route, by insects, or through direct contact with skin lesions.

leptin A hormone that is released by fat cells and possibly by gastric cells; it also acts on the hypothalamus to control appetite.

lethargic A state of drowsiness or sleepiness.

leukemia A type of cancer with uncontrolled production of immature white blood cells in the bone marrow; the bone marrow becomes overcrowded with immature, nonfunctional cells, and the production of normal blood cells is greatly decreased.

leukocyte White blood cell (WBC); this immune system cell protects the body from the effects of invasion by organisms.

leukocytosis An elevated white blood cell count.

leukopenia A reduction in the number of white blood cells.

leukoplakia White, patchy lesions on a mucous membrane.

level I trauma center According to the American College of Surgeons, a regional resource facility that is capable of "providing leadership and total care for every aspect of injury, from prevention through rehabilitation."

level II trauma center A community facility that is capable of providing care to the vast majority of injured patients but may not be able to meet the resource needs of patients who require very complex injury management.

level III trauma center A critical link to higher-capability trauma centers in communities that do not have ready access to level I or level II centers; the primary focus is injury stabilization and patient transfer.

level IV trauma center A facility that offers advanced life support care in rural or remote settings that do not have ready access to a higher-level trauma center, such as a ski area.

LGBT Acronym for "lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender" culture.

libido Sexual desire.

lichenification An abnormal thickening of the skin to a leathery appearance; can occur in patients with chronic dermatitis because of their continual rubbing of the area to relieve itching.

Lichtenberg figures Branching or ferning marks that appear on the skin as a result of a lightning strike; also called "keraunographic markings" or "erythematous arborization."

life review A structured process of reflecting on one's life that is often facilitated by an interviewer.

ligament One of many bands of tissue that attach bones to other bones at joints and serve to support joints.

light reflex The reflection of the otoscope's light off the eardrum in the form of a clearly demarcated triangle of light in the normal ear.

limited scleroderma Thick skin that is limited to sites distal to the elbow and knee but also involves the face and neck.

linear fracture A type of bone fracture involving a simple, clean break in which the impacted area of bone bends inward and the area around it bends outward.

lipid Fat, including cholesterol and triglycerides, that can be measured in the blood.

lipoatrophy The loss or atrophy of subcutaneous fat; in patients with diabetes, the loss of fat tissue in areas of repeated insulin injection.

lipohypertrophy The enlargement or hypertrophy of subcutaneous fat; in patients with diabetes, an increased swelling of fat that occurs at the site of repeated insulin injections.

lipolysis The decomposition or splitting up of fat to provide fuel for energy when liver glucose is unavailable.

liposuction A cosmetic procedure to reduce the amount of adipose tissue in selected areas of the body.

lithotripsy The use of sound, laser, or dry shock wave energy to break a kidney stone into small fragments; also called “extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy.”

living will A legal document that instructs physicians and family members about what life-sustaining treatment is wanted (or not wanted) if the patient becomes unable to make decisions.

lobectomy Surgical removal of an entire lung lobe.

lobular carcinoma in situ (LCIS) A noninvasive form of breast cancer that does not show up as a calcified cluster on a mammogram and is therefore most often diagnosed incidentally during a biopsy for another problem.

local anesthesia Anesthesia that is delivered by applying it to the skin or mucous membranes of the area to be anesthetized or by injecting it directly into the tissue around an incision, wound, or lesion.

localized pain Confined to the site of origin.

lockout interval A specific interval between doses programmed into a patient-controlled analgesia infusion pump. No drug is administered if the patient attempts to access the drug before the interval has elapsed.

locus The specific chromosome location for a gene.

log rolling Turning technique in which the patient turns all at once while his or her back is kept as straight as possible.

long-term nonprogressor (LTNP) A person who has been infected with the human immune deficiency virus for at least 10 years and has remained asymptomatic with CD4+ cell counts within a normal range. About 1% of those infected are long-term nonprogressors.

loop electrosurgical excision procedure (LEEP) Diagnostic procedure/treatment in which a thin loop-wire electrode that transmits a painless electrical current is used to cut away affected cervical cancer tissue.

lordosis The anterior concavity in the curvature of the lumbar and cervical spine when viewed from the side; a common finding in pregnancy and abdominal obesity.

Lou Gehrig's disease See *amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)*.

low back pain (LBP) Pain in the lumbosacral region of the back caused by muscle strain or spasm, ligament sprain, disk degeneration, or herniation of the nucleus pulposus from the center of the disk. Herniated disks occur most often between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae (L4-5) but may occur at other levels.

lower esophageal sphincter (LES) The portion of the esophagus proximal to the gastroesophageal junction; when at rest, the sphincter is closed to prevent reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus.

lower GI series Radiographic visualization of the large intestine; usually ordered for a patient with a complaint of blood or mucus in the stool or a change in bowel pattern, such as diarrhea or constipation; also called a “barium enema.”

lower motor neurons Neurons that carry motor impulses to skeletal muscles. Patients with spinal cord injuries involving lower motor neuron lesions experience muscle wasting due to long-term flaccid paralysis.

lower urinary tract symptom (LUTS) Any of a collection of symptoms seen in benign prostatic hyperplasia, including hesitancy, intermittency, reduced force and size of the urinary stream, a sensation of incomplete bladder emptying, and postvoid dribbling.

low-intensity pulsed ultrasound A method using ultrasonic waves to promote bone union in slow-healing fractures or for new fractures as an alternative to surgery.

low-profile gastrostomy device (LPGD) A gastrostomy device that uses a firm or balloon-style internal bumper or retention disk; an antireflux valve keeps gastric contents from leaking onto the skin.

loxoscelism Systemic effects from the injected toxin of a spider bite.

lumbar puncture The insertion of a spinal needle into the subarachnoid space between the third and fourth (sometimes the fourth and fifth) lumbar vertebrae to withdraw spinal fluid for analysis; also called a “spinal tap.”

lumen The inside cavity of a tube or tubular organ, such as a blood vessel or airway.

lung compliance The quality of elasticity of the lungs.

lunula The white crescent-shaped portion of the nail at the lower end of the nail plate.

lurch An abnormality in the swing phase of gait; occurs when the muscles in the buttocks or legs are too weak to allow the person to change weight from one foot to the other.

luteal Pertaining to the post-ovulation phase of the menstrual cycle.

Lyme disease A systemic infectious disease that is caused by the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi* and results from the bite of an infected deer tick. Signs and symptoms include a large “bull's-eye” circular rash, malaise, fever, headache, and muscle or joint aches.

lymph Fluid that has moved out of the capillaries and is returned to the systemic circulation.

lymphadenopathy Persistently enlarged lymph nodes.

lymphedema Abnormal accumulation of protein fluid in the subcutaneous tissue of the affected limb after a mastectomy.

lymphoblastic Pertaining to abnormal leukemic cells that come from the lymphoid pathways and develop into lymphocytes.

lymphocytic Pertaining to abnormal leukemic cells that come from the lymphoid pathways.

lymphokine Cytokine produced by T-cells.

lysergic acid (LSD) The prototype major hallucinogenic drug that is odorless and colorless with a slightly bitter taste; also called “acid.”

lysis Breakage, for example, of a cell membrane.

lysozyme A component that is present in large quantities in many body secretions and dissolves the cell walls of some bacteria.

M

M phase The phase of cell division in which a single cell splits into two cells (actual mitosis).

macrocytic anemia A form of vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia characterized by abnormally large precursor cells.

macrovascular Referring to large blood vessels.

macular A term referring to a macula, a discolored spot on the skin that is not raised above the surface.

macular degeneration The deterioration of the macula, the area of central vision.

magnesium (Mg²⁺) A mineral that forms a cation when dissolved in water.

magnetoencephalography (MEG) A noninvasive imaging technique that measures the magnetic fields produced by electrical activity in the brain via extremely sensitive devices such as superconducting quantum interference devices (SQUIDS).

malabsorption A syndrome associated with a variety of disorders and intestinal surgical procedures and characterized by impaired intestinal absorption of nutrients.

malignant Referring to cancer.

malignant cell growth Altered cell growth that is serious and, without intervention, leads to death; cancer.

malignant hypertension A severe type of elevated blood pressure that rapidly progresses, with systolic blood pressure greater than 200 mm Hg and diastolic blood pressure greater than 150 mm Hg (greater than 130 mm Hg when there are pre-existing complications).

malignant transformation The process of changing a normal cell into a cancer cell.

malleus The outermost bony ossicle of the ear; also called the “hammer.”

malpighian layers The stratified layers of the epithelium that are formed when older keratinocytes are pushed upward.

mammography An x-ray of the soft tissue of the breast.

mandibulectomy Surgical removal of the jaw.

Manning criteria A collective term for the characteristic symptoms of irritable bowel

- syndrome: abdominal pain relieved by defecation or associated with changes in stool frequency or consistency, abdominal distention, the sensation of incomplete evacuation of stool, and the presence of mucus with stool passage.
- marasmic-kwashiorkor** A combined protein and energy malnutrition that often presents clinically when metabolic stress is imposed on a chronically starved patient.
- marasmus** A calorie malnutrition in which body fat and protein are wasted but serum proteins are often preserved.
- marsupialization** Surgical formation of a pouch that is a new duct opening.
- masklike facies** Facial expression characterized by wide-open, fixed, staring eyes caused by rigidity of the facial muscles; often seen in patients with Parkinson disease.
- mass casualty event** A situation affecting the public health that is defined based on the resource availability of a particular community or hospital facility. When the number of casualties exceeds the resource capabilities, a disaster situation is recognized to exist.
- massage** The use of various strokes and pressure to manipulate soft tissues for therapeutic purposes.
- mastication** The process of chewing.
- mastoid process** The bony ridge located over the temporal bone behind the pinna; part of the external ear.
- mastoiditis** An acute or chronic infection of the mastoid air cells caused by untreated or inadequately treated otitis media.
- matrix** In referring to bone, the substance of bone consisting chiefly of collagen, mucopolysaccharides, and lipids. Deposits of inorganic calcium salts (carbonate and phosphate) in the matrix provide the hardness of bone.
- maze procedure** An open chest surgical technique often performed with coronary artery bypass grafting for patients in atrial fibrillation with decompensation.
- McMurray test** A common diagnostic technique for the patient with a torn meniscus. The examiner flexes and rotates the knee and then presses on the medial aspect while slowly extending the leg. The test result is positive if clicking is palpated or heard; however, a negative finding does not rule out a tear.
- mean arterial pressure (MAP)** The arterial blood pressure (between 60 and 70 mm Hg) necessary to maintain perfusion of major body organs, such as the kidneys and brain.
- mechanical débridement** Method of debriding a wound by mechanical entrapment and detachment of dead tissue.
- mechanical obstruction** The physical obstruction of the bowel by disorders outside the intestine (e.g., adhesions or hernias) or by blockages in the lumen of the intestine (e.g., tumors, inflammation, strictures, or fecal impactions).
- mechanical patient lift** Electrically operated device used to lift, transfer, move, and reposition patients.
- mechanism of injury (MOI)** The manner in which a patient's traumatic event occurred, such as a high-speed motor vehicle crash or gunshot wound.
- mediastinal shift** A shift of central thoracic structures toward one side; seen on chest x-ray.
- mediastinitis** Infection of the mediastinum.
- medical command physician** As defined in a hospital's emergency response plan, the person responsible for determining the number, acuity, and medical resource needs of victims arriving from the incident scene and for organizing the emergency health care team response to injured or ill patients.
- medical harm** Physician incidents and all errors caused by members of the health care team or system that lead to patient injury or death.
- medical nutritional supplements (MNSs)** Enteral products taken by patients who cannot consume enough nutrients in their usual diet (e.g., Ensure, Boost).
- medication overuse headache** See *rebound headache*.
- meditation** A mind-body therapy using self-directed practices to relax the body and calm the mind.
- medulla** A general term for the most interior portion of an organ or structure.
- melena** Blood in the stool, with the appearance of black tarry stools.
- memory cell** A type of B-lymphocyte that remains sensitized but does not start to produce antibodies until the next exposure to the same antigen.
- menarche** A female's first menstruation, which is one sign of puberty.
- Ménière's disease** Tinnitus, one-sided sensorineural hearing loss, and vertigo that is related to overproduction or decreased reabsorption of endolymphatic fluid and causes a distortion of the entire inner canal system.
- meninges** The immediate protective covering of the brain and the spinal cord.
- meningioma** A type of benign brain tumor that arises from the coverings of the brain (the meninges) and causes compression and displacement of adjacent brain tissue.
- meningitis** Inflammation, usually bacterial or viral, of the arachnoid and pia mater of the brain and spinal cord and the cerebrospinal fluid. May be caused by bacteria or viruses; symptoms are the same regardless of the causative organism.
- meniscectomy** Surgical excision of a meniscus, as in a knee joint.
- menopause** The end of menstruation and the biologic end of reproductive ability. The term applies only to the last menstrual period. The actual date of menopause cannot be determined until at least 1 year has passed without menses.
- menses** The monthly flow of blood from the genital tract of women.
- menstruation** The cyclic shedding of the endometrial lining of the uterus.
- metabolic syndrome** A collection of related health problems with insulin resistance as a main feature. Other features include obesity, low levels of physical activity, hypertension, high blood levels of cholesterol, and elevated triglyceride levels. Metabolic syndrome increases the risk for coronary heart disease. Also called "syndrome X."
- metastasis** The growth and spread of cancer.
- metastasize** To spread cancer from the main tumor site to many other body sites.
- metastatic** Referring to disease, such as cancer, that transfers from one organ to another organ or part not directly connected; pertains to additional tumors that form after cancer cells move from the primary location by breaking off from the original group and establishing remote colonies.
- methemoglobinemia** The conversion of normal hemoglobin to methemoglobin.
- microalbuminuria** The presence of very small amounts of albumin in the urine that are not measurable by a urine dipstick or usual urinalysis procedures. Specialized assays are used to analyze a freshly voided urine specimen for microscopic levels of albumin.
- microcytic** Abnormally small in size, such as an abnormally small red blood cell.
- microvascular** Referring to small blood vessels.
- microvascular decompression** A surgical procedure to relieve the pain of trigeminal neuralgia by relocating a small artery that compresses the trigeminal nerve as it enters the pons. The surgeon carefully lifts the loop of the artery off the nerve and places a small silicone sponge between the vessel and the nerve.
- midline catheter** A type of catheter that is 6 to 8 inches long and inserted through the veins of the antecubital fossa; used in therapies lasting from 1 to 4 weeks.
- migraine headache** An episodic familial disorder manifested by a unilateral, frontotemporal, throbbing pain that is often worse behind one eye or ear. It is often accompanied by a sensitive scalp, anorexia, photophobia, and nausea with or without vomiting. Three categories of migraine headache are migraines with aura, migraines without aura, and atypical migraines.
- migratory arthritis** In the early stage of rheumatoid arthritis, symptoms that are migrating or involve more joints.
- miliary tuberculosis** See *hematogenous tuberculosis*.
- mineralocorticoids** Corticosteroids produced in the zona glomerulosa of the adrenal gland to help control the body's sodium and potassium content.
- minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass (MIDCAB)** Surgical procedure that does not require cardiopulmonary bypass and may be used for patients with a lesion of the left anterior descending artery.
- minimally invasive esophagectomy (MIE)** A laparoscopic surgical procedure to remove part of the esophagus; may be performed in patients with early-stage cancer.

minimally invasive inguinal hernia repair (MIIHR) Surgical repair of an inguinal hernia through a laparoscope, which is the treatment of choice.

minimally invasive surgery (MIS) A general term for any surgery performed using laparoscopic technique.

miosis Constriction of the pupil of the eye.

mitochondria Within the cytoplasm of cells, the sites of production of adenosine triphosphate.

mitosis Cell division.

mitotic index The percentage of actively dividing cells within a tumor.

mitral (bicuspid) valve The atrioventricular valve that separates the left atrium of the heart from the left ventricle.

mitral regurgitation Inability of the mitral valve to close completely during systole, which allows the backflow of blood into the left atrium when the left ventricle contracts; usually due to fibrosis and calcification caused by rheumatic disease. Also called "mitral insufficiency."

mitral stenosis Thickening of the mitral valve due to fibrosis and calcification and usually caused by rheumatic fever. The valve leaflets fuse and become stiff, the chordae tendineae contract, and the valve opening narrows, preventing normal blood flow from the left atrium to the left ventricle. As a result, left atrial pressure rises, the left atrium dilates, pulmonary artery pressures increase, and the right ventricle hypertrophies.

mitral valve prolapse (MVP) Dysfunction of the mitral valve that occurs because the valvular leaflets enlarge and prolapse into the left atrium during systole; usually benign but may progress to pronounced mitral regurgitation.

mixed conductive-sensorineural hearing loss A profound hearing loss that results from a combination of both conductive and sensorineural types of hearing loss.

modifiable risk factor A factor in disease development that can be altered or controlled by the patient. Examples include elevated serum cholesterol levels, cigarette smoking, hypertension, impaired glucose tolerance, obesity, physical inactivity, and stress.

modified radical mastectomy Surgical procedure for breast cancer in which the affected breast is completely removed.

monokine Cytokine made by macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils, and monocytes.

monosyllabic One-syllable words, such as *day*, *toe*, and *ran*, used in speech discrimination testing to determine the patient's ability to discriminate among similar sounds or among words that contain similar sounds.

mons pubis The fat pad that covers the symphysis pubis and protects it during sexual intercourse; it becomes prominent and covered with hair during puberty.

morbid obesity A weight that has a severely negative effect on health; usually more than 100% above ideal body weight or a body mass index greater than 40.

morbidity An illness or an abnormal condition or quality.

mortality Death.

Morton's neuroma Plantar digital neuritis, a condition in which a small tumor grows in a digital nerve of the foot. The patient usually describes the pain as an acute, burning sensation in the web space that involves the entire surface of the third and fourth toes.

motor Facilitating movement.

motor aphasia See *expressive aphasia*.

motor cortex Area in the frontal lobe of the brain that controls voluntary movement.

motor end plate The junction of a peripheral motor nerve and the muscle cells that it supplies.

mourning The outward social expression of loss.

mu opioids Drugs that cause side effects that include constipation, nausea and vomiting, urinary retention, pruritus (itching), sedation, and respiratory depression because of their action on the mu receptor, the most important type of opioid receptor.

mucosa The innermost layer of the gastrointestinal tract; consists of a thin layer of smooth muscle and specialized exocrine gland cells.

mucositis Open sores on mucous membranes.

multi-casualty event A disaster event in which a limited number of victims or casualties are involved and can be managed by a hospital using local resources.

multifocal Having multiple points of origin.

multigated blood pool scanning In nuclear cardiology, cardiac blood pool imaging is a noninvasive test to evaluate cardiac motion and calculate ejection fraction by using a computer to synchronize the patient's electrocardiogram with pictures obtained by a gamma-scintillation camera. In multigated blood pool scanning, the computer breaks the time between R waves into fractions of a second, called "gates." The camera records blood flow through the heart during each gate. By analyzing information from multiple gates, the computer can evaluate ventricular wall motion and calculate ejection fraction (percentage of the left ventricular volume that is ejected with each contraction) and ejection velocity.

multimodal analgesia The use of a combination of opioids, non-opioids, and local anesthetics for postoperative pain; also called "balanced analgesia."

multiple organ dysfunction syndrome (MODS) The sequence of inadequate blood flow to body tissues, which deprives cells of oxygen and leads to anaerobic metabolism with acidosis, hyperkalemia, and tissue ischemia; this is followed by dramatic changes in vital organs and leads to the release of toxic metabolites and destructive enzymes.

multiple sclerosis (MS) A chronic autoimmune disease that affects the myelin sheath and conduction pathway of the central nervous system. It is one of the leading causes of neurologic disability in persons 20 to 40 years of age.

murmur Abnormal heart sound that reflects turbulent blood flow through normal or abnormal valves; murmurs are classified according to their timing in the cardiac cycle (systolic or diastolic) and their intensity depending on their level of loudness.

Murphy's sign A sign of gallbladder disease consisting of pain that increases with deep inspiration with right subcostal palpation.

muscle biopsy The extraction of a muscle specimen for the diagnosis of atrophy (as in muscular dystrophy) and inflammation (as in polymyositis).

muscular dystrophy (MD) A group of degenerative myopathies characterized by weakness and atrophy of muscle without nervous system involvement. At least nine types have been clinically identified and can be broadly categorized as slowly progressive or rapidly progressive.

mutation A change in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) that is passed from one generation to another.

myalgia Muscle aches/muscle pain.

myasthenia gravis (MG) A chronic autoimmune disease of the neuromuscular junction. It is characterized by remissions and exacerbations, with fatigue and weakness primarily in the muscles innervated by the cranial nerves and in the skeletal and respiratory muscles. It ranges from mild disturbances of the ocular muscles to a rapidly developing, generalized weakness that may lead to death from respiratory failure.

myasthenic crisis Undermedication with cholinesterase inhibitors.

mydriasis Dilation of the pupil of the eye.

myelin sheath A white, lipid covering of the axon.

myelocytic Pertaining to leukemias in which the abnormal cells come from the myeloid pathways.

myelogenous Pertaining to leukemias in which the abnormal cells come from the myeloid pathways.

myelography Radiography of the spine after injection of contrast medium into the subarachnoid space of the spine; used to visualize the vertebral column, intervertebral disks, spinal nerve roots, and blood vessels.

myelosuppression Suppression of bone marrow activity that causes decreased numbers of blood cells (pancytopenia).

myocardial contractility The force of cardiac contraction independent of preload.

myocardial hypertrophy Enlargement of the myocardium.

myocardial infarction (MI) Injury and necrosis of myocardial tissue that occurs when the tissue is abruptly and severely deprived of oxygen; usually caused by atherosclerosis of a coronary artery, rupture of the plaque, subsequent thrombosis, and occlusion of blood flow.

myocardial nuclear perfusion imaging (MNPI) The use of radionuclide techniques in which radioactive tracer substances are used to view, record, and evaluate cardiovascular abnormalities; useful for detecting myocardial

infarction and decreased myocardial blood flow and for evaluating left ventricular ejection.

myocardium The heart muscle.

myoclonic seizure A type of generalized seizure characterized by a brief jerking or stiffening of the extremities. The contractions last for just a few seconds and may be symmetric or asymmetric.

myofibril sarcomere The basic contractile unit of the myocardial cell.

myoglobin A low-molecular-weight heme protein found in cardiac and skeletal muscle; an early marker of myocardial infarction.

myoglobinuria The release of muscle myoglobin into the urine.

myoglobinuric renal failure Renal failure that is caused by the release of myoglobin (muscle protein) from injured muscle tissues into the circulation. Myoglobin, which is believed to have a direct toxic effect on the kidney, can occlude the distal convoluted tubule and precipitate acute renal failure.

myomectomy The surgical removal of leiomyomas with preservation of the uterus.

myometrium The thick, middle, muscular layer of the body of the uterus. Contraction of these muscle fibers can expel the products of conception and can constrict the blood vessels to control bleeding after childbirth.

myopathy A problem in muscle tissue.

myopia An error of refraction that occurs when the eye over-refracts or over-bends the light and focuses images in front of the retina; this results in normal near vision but poor distance vision; also called "nearsightedness."

myositis Inflammation of a muscle.

myosplint Electrical stimulation of tension splints in the heart to help the ventricle change to a more normal shape in the patient with heart failure; under investigation in Europe and the United States.

myringoplasty Surgical reconstruction of the eardrum.

myringotomy The surgical creation of a hole in the eardrum; performed to drain middle-ear fluids and relieve pain in the patient with otitis media (middle-ear infection).

myxedema Dry, waxy swelling of the skin that is accompanied by nonpitting edema (especially around the eyes, in the hands and feet, and between the shoulder blades) and is associated with primary hypothyroidism.

myxedema coma A rare, serious complication of untreated or poorly treated hypothyroidism in which decreased metabolism causes the heart muscle to become flabby and the chamber size to increase, resulting in decreased cardiac output and decreased perfusion to the brain and other vital organs.

N

nadir In chemotherapy, the period of greatest bone marrow suppression, when the patient's platelet count may be very low.

nasoduodenal tube (NDT) A tube that is inserted through a nostril and into the small intestine.

nasoenteric tube (NET) Any feeding tube that is inserted nasally and then advanced into the gastrointestinal tract.

nasogastric (NG) tube A tube that is inserted through a nostril and into the stomach for liquid feeding or for withdrawing gastric contents.

nasotracheal The route for inserting a tube into the trachea via the nose.

National Patient Safety Goals Goals published by The Joint Commission that require health care organizations to focus on specific priority safety practices.

natural chemical débridement Method of debriding a wound by creating an environment that promotes self-digestion of dead tissues by bacterial enzymes.

naturopath Holistic care provider who uses a combination of physical therapies, herbal preparations, homeopathic remedies, acupuncture, and lifestyle changes to improve health.

naturopathic medicine The practice of medicine that incorporates herbs and nutrition into its health care practice.

near point of vision The closest distance at which the eye can see an object clearly.

near-drowning Recovery after submersion in a liquid medium (usually water); this term is no longer used because language that describes drowning incidents has been standardized.

near-euglycemic A term that refers to near-normal blood glucose levels.

near-syncope Dizziness with an inability to remain in an upright position.

necrosis Cell death, or infarction.

necrotic arachnidism A necrotic wound resulting from a spider bite.

necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis (NHP) Inflammation of the pancreas that is characterized by diffusely bleeding pancreatic tissue with fibrosis and tissue death. This form affects about 20% of patients with pancreatitis.

necrotizing vasculitis A group of diseases whose primary manifestation is inflammation of arterial walls, which causes ischemia in the tissues usually supplied by the involved vessels.

needle thoracostomy A quick, temporary method of chest decompression in which a large-bore needle is used to vent trapped air pending chest tube insertion.

negative deflection In electrocardiography, the flow of electrical current in the heart (cardiac axis) away from the positive pole and toward the negative pole.

negative feedback control mechanism The condition of maintaining a constant output of a system by exerting an inhibitory control on a key step by a product of that system. Used in a series of reactions that control hormone secretion and cellular activity based on responses to correct any movement away from normal function. An example of a simple negative feedback hormone response is the control of insulin secretion in which the action of insulin (decreasing blood glucose levels) is the opposite of the condition that stimulated insulin secretion (elevated blood glucose levels).

negative nitrogen balance A net loss of protein that occurs when the breakdown (degradation) of protein exceeds buildup (synthesis).

neglect In nursing, failure to provide for a patient's basic needs.

neoadjuvant therapy Treatment of a cancerous tumor with chemotherapy to shrink the tumor before it is surgically removed.

neoplasia Any new or continued cell growth not needed for normal development or replacement of dead and damaged tissues.

nephrectomy The surgical removal of the kidney.

nephrolithiasis The formation of stones in the kidney.

nephron The "working" unit of the kidney where urine is formed from blood. Each kidney consists of about 1 million nephrons, and each nephron separately makes urine. There are two types of nephrons: cortical and juxtamedullary.

nephropathy Pathologic change in the kidney that reduces kidney function and leads to renal failure.

nephrosclerosis Thickening in the nephron blood vessels that results in narrowing of the vessel lumen, with decreased renal blood flow and chronically hypoxic kidney tissue.

nephrostomy The surgical creation of an opening directly into the kidney; performed to divert urine externally and prevent further damage to the kidney when a stricture is causing hydronephrosis and cannot be corrected with urologic procedures.

nephrotic syndrome (NS) A condition of increased glomerular permeability that allows larger molecules to pass through the membrane into the urine and be removed from the blood. This process causes massive loss of protein into the urine, edema formation, and decreased plasma albumin levels.

nephrotoxicity (nephrotoxic) The disruption of kidney function.

neuritic plaques Degenerating nerve terminals found particularly in the hippocampus, an important part of the limbic system, and marked by increased amounts of an abnormal protein called "beta amyloid"; a characteristic change of the brain found in patients with Alzheimer's disease.

neuroaxial Referring to the epidural or spinal area.

neuroendocrine regulation The regulation of overall body function by the combined actions of the endocrine system and the nervous system.

neurofibrillary tangles Tangled masses of fibrous elements throughout the neurons; a classic finding at autopsy in the brains of patients with Alzheimer's disease.

neurogenic shock Hypotension and bradycardia associated with cervical spinal injuries and caused by a loss of autonomic function. The patient is at greatest risk in the first 24 hours after injury.

neuroglial cells Cells of varying size and shape that provide protection, structure, and nutrition for the neurons.

neurohypophysis The posterior lobe of the pituitary gland that stores hormones produced in the hypothalamus.

neurolysis Permanent nerve destruction.

neuroma A sensitive tumor consisting of nerve cells and nerve fibers.

neuropathic pain A type of chronic noncancer pain that results from a nerve injury. Examples of causes include diabetic neuropathy, postherpetic neuralgia, radiculopathy (spinal nerve damage), and trigeminal neuralgia. Neuropathic pain is described as burning, shooting, stabbing, and the sensation of “pins and needles.”

neuropathy A progressive deterioration of nerves that results in loss of nerve function. A common complication of diabetes, it often involves all parts of the body.

neurotransmitter Regulatory chemical that exerts inhibitory (slowing down) or excitatory (speeding up) activity at postsynaptic nerve cell membranes. Acetylcholine, norepinephrine, epinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin are neurotransmitters.

neurovascular assessment Assessment of the neuromuscular system that includes inspection of skin color, temperature, and capillary refill distal to an injury, surgical procedure, or cast. Palpation of pulses in the extremities below level of injury and assessment of sensation, movement, and pain in the injured part give a complete assessment.

neutralization See *inactivation*.

neutropenia Decreased numbers of leukocytes, especially neutrophils, which causes immunosuppression.

neutrophilia Increased number of circulating neutrophils.

nevus A mole; a benign skin growth of the pigment-forming cells.

new-onset angina Cardiac chest pain that occurs for the first time.

nitroglycerin (NTG) A drug prescribed for patients with angina. It increases collateral blood flow, redistributes blood flow toward the subendocardium, and causes dilation of the coronary arteries.

nits Lice eggs.

NMDA (*N*-methyl-D-aspartate) receptor antagonist A group of drugs that block excess amounts of glutamate, which damages nerve cells in the brain; used to treat Alzheimer's disease.

nociceptive pain Pain related to the skin, musculoskeletal structures, or body organs.

nocturia The need to urinate excessively at night. Also called “nocturnal polyuria.”

nocturnal polyuria See *nocturia*.

nodule A small node. In the vocal cords, enlarged fibrous tissue caused by infectious processes or overuse of the voice.

nonabsorbable suture Suture that becomes encapsulated in the tissue during the healing process and remains in the tissue unless removed; made of silk, cotton, steel, nylon, polyester, or other synthetic material.

nonadherence In health care, accidental failure by a patient to take medication.

noncompliance In health care, deliberate failure by a patient to take medication.

non-exertional heat stroke See *classic heat stroke*.

noninvasive temporary pacing (NTP) Cardiac pacing that is accomplished through the application of two large external electrodes attached to an external pulse generator; used as an emergency measure to provide demand ventricular pacing in a profoundly bradycardic or asystolic patient until invasive pacing can be instituted or the patient's intrinsic rate returns to normal.

nonmechanical obstruction Intestinal obstruction that does not involve a physical obstruction in or outside the intestine. Instead, decreased or absent peristalsis results in a slowing of the movement or a backup of intestinal contents. This is also known as “paralytic ileus” or “adynamic ileus” because it is a result of neuromuscular disturbance.

nonmodifiable risk factor Factor in disease development that cannot be altered or controlled by the patient. Examples include age, gender, family history, and ethnic background.

nonprogressive (compensatory) stage of shock The stage of shock that occurs when kidney and hormonal mechanisms are activated because cardiovascular compensation alone is not enough to maintain mean arterial pressure and supply needed oxygen to the vital organs.

nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) Potent anti-inflammatory agents that inhibit the synthesis of prostaglandins, thus decreasing pain and inflammation.

nonsustained ventricular tachycardia (NSVT) Occurrence of three or more successive premature ventricular complexes.

non tunneled percutaneous central catheter A type of catheter, usually 15 to 20 cm long and with dual or triple lumens, that is inserted through the subclavian vein in the upper chest or through the jugular veins in the neck using sterile technique.

nonurgent In a three-tiered triage scheme, the category that includes patients who can generally tolerate waiting several hours for health care services without a significant risk of clinical deterioration, such as those with sprains, strains, or simple fractures.

“normal” adult blood pressure According to 2003 guidelines, blood pressure less than 120 mm Hg systolic and less than 80 mm Hg diastolic in adults.

normal flora The microorganisms living in or on the human host without causing disease; the bacteria that are characteristic of each body location. Normal flora often compete with and prevent infection from unfamiliar microorganisms attempting to invade a body site.

normal sinus rhythm (NSR) The rhythm originating from the sinoatrial node (dominant pacemaker), with atrial and ventricular rates of 60 to 100 beats/min and regular atrial and ventricular rhythms.

normotonic See *isosmotic*.

North American pit vipers The Crotalidae, one of two families of indigenous poisonous snakes in North America; named for the characteristic depression between each eye and nostril. They include rattlesnakes, copperheads, and water moccasins and account for most poisonous snakebites in the United States.

nosocomial infection Acquired in an inpatient health care setting; for example, infections that were not present at hospital admission; also called “hospital-acquired infections” and “health care-associated infections.”

nothing by mouth (NPO) No eating, drinking (including water), or smoking.

nuchal rigidity Stiff neck, which can be a sign of cerebrospinal fluid leak; nuchal rigidity is not checked until a spinal cord injury has been ruled out.

nucleoside What the four bases in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) (adenine, guanine, cytosine, thymine) become when a five-sided sugar (deoxyribose sugar) attaches to them.

nucleotide The final form of a base that actually gets put into the strand of deoxyribonucleic acid. A nucleoside becomes a complete nucleotide by the attachment of phosphate groups.

nulliparity The condition of never having given birth.

nurse technician See *nursing assistant*.

nursing assistant A member of the rehabilitative health care team who assists the registered nurse in the care of patients.

nutritional screening A screening by the health care provider that includes visual inspection, measured height and weight, weight history, usual eating habits, ability to chew and swallow, and any recent changes in appetite or food intake. The screening is a way to determine which patients need more extensive nutritional assessment.

nutritional status Reflects the balance between nutrient requirements and intake.

nutritionist A member of the health care team who ensures patients meet their nutritional needs. Also called “dietitian.”

nystagmus Involuntary, rapid eye movements.

O

obesity An increase in body weight at least 20% above the upper limit of the normal range for ideal body weight, with an excess amount of body fat; in an adult, a body mass index greater than 30.

obligatory urine output The minimum amount of urine per day needed to dissolve and excrete toxic waste products.

obstipation The inability to pass stool; intractable constipation.

obstruction Blockage.

obstructive jaundice Jaundice caused by an impediment to the flow of bile from the liver to the duodenum; may be caused by edema of the ducts or gallstones.

- occlusion** Blockage.
- occlusive stroke** A type of brain attack caused by ischemia (interruption in blood flow) in the brain tissue supplied by the affected artery.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)** A federal agency that protects workers from injury or illness at their place of employment.
- occupational therapist (OT, OTR)** A member of the rehabilitation health care team who works to develop the patient's fine motor skills used for activities of daily living and the skills related to coordination and cognitive retraining.
- odynophagia** Pain on swallowing.
- oligomenorrhea** Scant or infrequent menses.
- oligospermia** Low sperm count.
- oliguria** Decreased excretion of urine in relation to amount of fluid intake; usually defined as urine output less than 400 mL/day.
- omentectomy** Surgical removal of the connective tissues covering the pelvic organs.
- oncogene** Proto-oncogene that has been "turned on" and can cause cells to change from normal cells to cancer cells.
- oncogenesis** Cancer development.
- oncogenic osteomalacia** Osteomalacia that is caused by malignant tumors of the bone; also called "tumor-induced osteomalacia."
- oncovirus** Virus that causes cancer.
- oophorectomy** Surgical removal of the ovary.
- open fracture** A fracture in which the skin surface over the broken bone is disrupted, causing an external wound; also called "compound fracture."
- open head injury** A type of traumatic primary brain injury that occurs with a skull fracture or when the skull is pierced by a penetrating object. The integrity of the brain and the dura is violated and there is exposure to outside contaminants, with damage to the underlying vessels, dural sinus, brain, and cranial nerves.
- open reduction** The reduction of a fracture after surgical incision into the site to allow direct visualization of the fracture. See *internal fixation*.
- ophthalmoplegia** Paralysis or weakness of the eye muscles.
- opioids** Any of a group of drugs made from the Asian poppy or produced as a synthetic drug that produces the same effects of the opium plant. The street term for opioids is "narcotics" or "narcs."
- opportunistic infection** Infection caused by organisms that are present as part of the normal environment and would be kept in check by normal immune function.
- optic disc** The point at the inside back of the eye where the optic nerve enters the eyeball. It appears as a creamy pink to white depressed area in the retina and contains only nerve fibers and no photoreceptor cells.
- optic fundus** The area at the inside back of the eye that can be seen with an ophthalmoscope.
- optic nerve** The nerve of sight; connects the optic disc to the brain.
- orbit** The bony socket of the skull that surrounds and protects the eye along with the attached muscles, nerves, vessels, and tear-producing glands.
- orchiectomy** The surgical removal of one or both testes.
- orchitis** An acute testicular inflammation resulting from trauma or infection.
- orexin** Neuropeptide that is an appetite stimulant.
- organ of Corti** The receptor end-organ of hearing located on the basilar membrane of the cochlea; contains hair cells that detect vibration from sound and stimulate the eighth cranial nerve.
- orotracheal** The route for inserting a tube into the trachea via the mouth.
- orthopnea** Shortness of breath that occurs when lying down but is relieved by sitting up.
- orthostatic** Pertaining to or caused by standing erect.
- orthostatic hypotension** A decrease in blood pressure (20 mm Hg systolic and/or 10 mm Hg diastolic) that occurs during the first few seconds to minutes after changing from a sitting or lying position to a standing position; also called "postural hypotension."
- orthotopic transplantation** The most common type of transplantation procedure in which a diseased organ is removed and a donor organ is grafted in its place. For example, during heart transplantation, the surgeon removes the diseased heart and leaves the posterior walls of the patient's atria, which serve as the anchor for the donor heart; anastomoses are made between the recipient and donor atria, aorta, and pulmonary arteries.
- osmolality** The number of milliosmoles in a kilogram of solution.
- osmolarity** The number of milliosmoles in a liter of solution.
- osmosis** The movement of a solvent across a semipermeable membrane (a membrane that allows the solvent, but not the solute, to pass through) from a lesser to a greater concentration.
- osteitis deformans** A metabolic disorder of bone remodeling, or turnover, in which increased resorption or loss results in bone deposits that are weak, enlarged, and disorganized; also called "Paget's disease."
- osteoarthritis** Noninflammatory form of arthritis characterized by the progressive deterioration and loss of cartilage in one or more joints; most common form of arthritis.
- osteoblast** Cell associated with formation of bone.
- osteoblastic** Referring to bone production activity.
- osteoclast** Cell associated with destruction or resorption of bone.
- osteoclastic** Referring to bone destruction.
- osteocyte** Bone cell.
- osteogenic** Originating from bone.
- osteomalacia** Abnormal softening of the bone tissue characterized by inadequate mineralization of osteoid. It is the adult equivalent of rickets (vitamin D deficiency) in children.
- osteomyelitis** An inflammation of bone tissue caused by pathogenic microorganisms; produces an increased vascularity and edema often involving the surrounding soft tissues.
- osteonecrosis** See *avascular necrosis*.
- osteopenia** A condition of low bone mass that occurs when there is a disruption in the bone remodeling process.
- osteophyte** Bone spur.
- osteoporosis** A metabolic disease in which bone demineralization results in decreased density and subsequent fractures.
- osteotomy** Surgical resection of bone.
- ostomate** A patient with an ostomy.
- ostomy** The surgical creation of an opening, usually referring to an opening in the abdominal wall; stoma.
- otorrhea** Ear discharge.
- otosclerosis** Irregular bone growth around the ossicles.
- otoscope** An instrument used to examine the ear; consists of a light, a handle, a magnifying lens, and a pneumatic bulb for injecting air into the external canal to test mobility of the eardrum.
- ototoxic** Having a toxic effect on the inner ear structures.
- ototoxicity** Disruption of hearing and/or balance.
- outflow disease** Chronic peripheral arterial disease with obstruction at or below the superficial femoral or popliteal artery. The patient experiences burning or cramping in the calves, ankles, feet, and toes after walking a certain distance; the pain usually subsides with rest.
- outpatient** A patient who goes to the hospital for treatment and returns home on the same day.
- ovaries** A pair of almond-shaped organs that are located near the lateral walls of the upper pelvic cavity. They develop and release ova and produce the sex steroid hormones (estrogen, progesterone, androgen, and relaxin).
- overflow (urinary) incontinence** The involuntary loss of urine when the bladder is overdistended.
- overhydration** See *fluid overload*.
- overweight** An increase in body weight for height compared with a reference standard (e.g., the Metropolitan Life height and weight tables) or 10% greater than ideal body weight. However, this weight may not reflect excess body fat, which in an adult is a body mass index of 25 to 30.
- ovoid pupil** In evaluating pupils for size and reaction to light, the midstage between a normal-size pupil and a dilated pupil; indicates the development of increased intracranial pressure.
- ovulation** The cyclic maturation of a dominant follicle (the graafian follicle) in the ovary and the subsequent release of the ovum.
- oxygen concentrator** A machine that removes nitrogen, water vapor, and hydrocarbons from room air.
- oxygen dissociation** The transfer of oxygen from hemoglobin to tissues.

P

P wave In the electrocardiogram, the deflection representing atrial depolarization.

pacemaker In the cardiac conduction system, the sinus node.

pack-years The number of packs of cigarettes per day multiplied by the number of years the patient has smoked; used in recording the patient's smoking history.

Paget's disease An alternative name for "osteitis deformans," a metabolic disorder of bone remodeling, or turnover, in which increased resorption or loss results in bone deposits that are weak, enlarged, and disorganized.

pain An unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage; the most reliable indication of pain is the patient's self-report.

palliation Relieving symptoms.

palliative care A compassionate and supportive approach to patients and families who are living with life-threatening illnesses; involves a holistic approach that provides relief of symptoms experienced by the dying patient.

palliative sedation A care management approach involving the administration of drugs such as benzodiazepines for the purpose of lowering of patient consciousness.

palliative surgery Surgery done to make the patient more comfortable.

palpitations A feeling of fluttering in the chest, an unpleasant awareness of the heartbeat, and an irregular heartbeat; may result from a change in heart rate or rhythm or from an increase in the force of heart contractions.

pancreatic abscess A collection of purulent material that results from extensive inflammatory necrosis of the pancreas after infection by organisms such as *Escherichia coli*; the most serious complication of pancreatitis. It is fatal if left untreated.

pancreatic pseudocyst A false cyst, so named because, unlike a true cyst, it does not have an epithelial lining. It is an encapsulated saclike structure that forms on or surrounds the pancreas and develops as a complication of acute or chronic pancreatitis. It may contain up to several liters of straw-colored or dark-brown viscous fluid, the enzymatic exudate of the pancreas.

pancreaticojejunostomy Surgical anastomosis of the pancreatic duct with the jejunum.

pancytopenia A deficiency of all three cell types (red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets) of the blood.

pandemic A general epidemic spread over a wide geographic area and affecting a large proportion of the population.

panhypopituitarism The decreased production of all anterior pituitary hormones; an extremely rare condition.

panniculectomy The surgical removal of any panniculus, most often the abdominal apron; usually done as a follow-up to bariatric surgery in an obese patient.

panniculitis Infection of the panniculus.

panniculus A layer of membrane; also used to refer to skinfold areas in the obese patient.

pannus Vascular granulation tissue composed of inflammatory cells that forms in a joint space; erodes articular cartilage and eventually destroys bone.

Papanicolaou test (Pap smear) A cytologic study that is effective in detecting precancerous and cancerous cells obtained from the cervix.

papilla The anatomic term for a small, nipple-shaped projection or structure.

papilledema Edema and hyperemia of the optic disc; a sign of increased intracranial pressure found on ophthalmoscopic examination; also called a "choked disc."

papilloma A pedunculated outgrowth of tissue.

papillotomy An incision of a papilla, a small nipple-shaped projection or structure.

papular Referring to a papule, a small, solid elevation of the skin.

paracentesis A procedure in which the physician inserts a trocar catheter into the abdomen to remove and drain ascitic fluid from the peritoneal cavity.

paradoxical blood pressure (paradoxical pulse) An exaggerated decrease in systolic pressure by more than 10 mm Hg during the inspiratory phase of the respiratory cycle (normal is 3 to 10 mm Hg); clinical conditions that may produce a paradoxical blood pressure include pericardial tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, and pulmonary hypertension.

paradoxical chest movement The "sucking inward" of the loose chest area during inspiration and a "puffing out" of the same area during expiration in a patient with a flail chest.

paradoxical splitting Abnormal splitting of the S₂ heart sound heard in patients with severe myocardial depression; causes early closure of the pulmonic valve or a delay in aortic valve closure.

paralysis Absence of movement.

paralytic ileus Absence of peristalsis.

paramedic Prehospital care provider for patients who require care that exceeds basic life support resources. Advanced life support (ALS) may include cardiac monitoring, advanced airway management and intubation, establishing IV access, and administering drugs en route to the emergency department.

paranasal sinuses The air-filled cavities within the bones that surround the nasal passages. Lined with ciliated membrane, the sinuses provide resonance during speech and decrease the weight of the skull.

paraparesis Weakness that involves only the lower extremities, as seen in lower thoracic and lumbosacral injuries or lesions.

paraplegia Paralysis that involves only the lower extremities, as seen in lower thoracic and lumbosacral injuries or lesions.

parathyroid hormone (PTH) A hormone released from the parathyroid glands in response to decreased serum calcium levels.

parenchyma A general term for the functional elements of an organ as differentiated from its framework (stroma).

paresis Weakness.

paresthesia Abnormal or unusual nerve sensations of touch, such as tingling and burning.

parietal cells Cells lining the wall of the stomach that secrete hydrochloric acid and produce intrinsic factor.

Parkinson disease (PD) A debilitating neurologic disease that affects motor ability and is characterized by four cardinal symptoms: tremor, rigidity, akinesia (slow movement), and postural instability. It is the third most common neurologic disorder of older adults; also called "paralysis agitans."

parotidectomy The surgical removal of the parotid glands.

paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND) In the patient with heart disease, difficulty breathing that develops after lying down for several hours and causes the patient to awaken abruptly with a feeling of suffocation and panic. Occurs because the heart is unable to compensate for the increased volume when blood from the lower extremities is redistributed to the venous system, which increases venous return to the heart. A diseased heart is ineffective in pumping the additional fluid into the circulatory system, and pulmonary congestion results.

paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (PSVT) A form of supraventricular tachycardia that occurs when the rhythm is intermittent, initiated suddenly by a premature complex such as a premature atrial complex, and terminated suddenly with or without intervention.

partial seizure One of the three broad categories of seizure disorders along with generalized seizure and unclassified seizure. Partial seizures are of two types: complex and simple. Partial seizures begin in a part of one cerebral hemisphere; some can evolve into generalized tonic-clonic, tonic, or clonic seizures. They are most often seen in adults and in general are less responsive to medical treatment; also called "focal seizures" or "local seizures."

passive euthanasia See *withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy*.

passive immunity Resistance to infection that is of short duration (days or months) and either natural by transplacental transfer from the mother or artificial by injection of antibodies (e.g., immunoglobulin).

passive smoking The exposure to second-hand smoke produced by a person smoking cigarettes.

pathogen Any microorganism capable of producing disease.

pathogenicity The ability to cause disease.

pathologic (spontaneous) fracture A fracture that occurs after minimal trauma to a bone that has been weakened by a disease such as bone cancer or osteoporosis.

patient-centered care Care that recognizes the patient or designee as the source of control

and full partner in providing compassionate and coordinated care based on respect for the patient's preferences, values, and needs.

patient-controlled analgesia A method that allows the patient to control the dosage of opioid analgesia received by using an infusion pump to deliver the desired amount of medication through a conventional IV route.

patients Recipients of care in mutually trusting relationships with nurses and other members of the health care team.

PDSA Acronym for **plan, do, study, analysis**.

peak expiratory flow (PEF) The fastest airflow rate reached at any time during exhalation.

peau d'orange A dimpled appearance of the skin, resembling an orange peel.

pedal Pertaining to the feet.

pediculosis An infestation by human lice.

pedigree A graph of a family history for a specific trait or health problem over several generations.

pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) Any infection of the pelvis involving the upper genital tract beyond the cervix in women. It occurs when organisms from the lower genital tract migrate from the endocervix upward through the uterine cavity into the fallopian tubes.

pemphigus vulgaris A rare, chronic blistering disease that can occur anywhere on the skin and is associated with high morbidity and mortality rates. It is caused by an autoimmune disorder that occurs most often during middle and old age.

penectomy Surgical removal of the penis.

penetrance In genetics, how often or how well a gene is expressed when it is present within a population.

penetrating injury See *penetrating trauma*.

penetrating trauma Injuries caused by piercing; classified by the velocity of the vehicle (e.g., knife or bullet) causing the injury. Low-velocity injuries from knife wounds cause damage directly at the site; high-velocity injuries from gunshot wounds cause both direct and indirect damage; also called "penetrating injury."

penis An organ for urination and intercourse. It consists of the body or shaft and the glans penis (the distal end of the penis).

peptic ulcer A mucosal lesion of the stomach or duodenum.

peptic ulcer disease (PUD) The impairment of gastric mucosal defenses so they no longer protect the epithelium from the effects of acid and pepsin.

percussion notes The sounds heard upon striking a part of the body with short, sharp blows; aids diagnosis through a systematic assessment of changes in the sound quality obtained.

percutaneous Performed through the skin.

percutaneous alcohol septal ablation Surgical procedure for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) in which alcohol is injected into a target septal branch of the left anterior descending coronary artery to produce a small

septal infarction. This procedure also widens the left ventricular outflow tract.

percutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (PENS) See *transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS)*.

percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) A stoma created from the abdominal wall into the stomach for insertion of a short feeding tube.

percutaneous stereotactic rhizotomy (PSR) Procedure performed under general anesthesia to treat trigeminal neuralgia; a hollow needle is passed through the inside of the patient's cheek into the trigeminal nerve fibers, and a heating current (radiofrequency thermocoagulation) goes through the needle to destroy some of the fibers.

percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC) The radiographic study of the biliary duct system using an iodinated dye instilled via a percutaneous needle inserted through the liver into the intrahepatic ducts. It may be performed when a patient has jaundice or persistent upper abdominal pain, even after cholecystectomy, but it is rarely performed as a diagnostic procedure.

percutaneous transluminal angioplasty (PTA) A nonsurgical method of improving arterial flow by opening the vessel lumen and creating a smooth inner vessel surface. One or more arteries are dilated with a balloon catheter advanced through a cannula, which is inserted into or above an occluded or stenosed artery.

percutaneously Performed through the skin and other tissues.

perforate To break open or pierce through a part.

pericardial effusion Complication of pericarditis that occurs when the space between the parietal and visceral layers of the pericardium fills with fluid.

pericardial friction rub An abnormal sound that originates from the pericardial sac and occurs with the movements of the heart during the cardiac cycle; usually transient and a sign of inflammation, infection, or infiltration; may be heard in patients with pericarditis resulting from myocardial infarction, cardiac tamponade, or post-thoracotomy.

pericardiectomy Surgical excision of the pericardium (the sac around the heart).

pericardiocentesis Withdrawal of pericardial fluid through a catheter inserted into the pericardial space to relieve the pressure on the heart.

perichondrium A tough, fibrous tissue layer that surrounds the ear cartilage and gives shape to the pinna.

perimenopause Menopause transition; changes in spontaneous ovarian function that precede the last menstrual period and occur gradually. Common features are a change in the woman's usual menstrual periods and the beginning of vasomotor symptoms, such as hot flushes and night sweats.

perineum The area between the vaginal opening and the anus. The skin of the

perineum covers the muscles, fascia, and ligaments that support the pelvic structures.

periodontal disease Gum disease in which mandibular bone loss has occurred.

perioperative The operative experience consisting of the preoperative, intraoperative, and postoperative time periods.

peripheral blood stem cells (PBSCs) Stem cells that are collected from peripheral blood for transplantation into the patient.

peripheral chemoreceptors Several 1- to 2-mm collections of tissue identified in the carotid arteries and along the aortic arch.

peripheral IV therapy IV therapy in which a vascular access device (VAD) is placed in a peripheral vein, usually in the arm.

peripheral neuropathy (PN) A general term for inflammation of peripheral nerves; also called "polyneuritis" and "polyneuropathy."

peripheral vascular disease (PVD) Any disorder that alters the natural flow of blood through the arteries and veins of the peripheral circulation.

peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) A long catheter inserted through a vein of the antecubital fossa (inner aspect of the bend of the arm) or the middle of the upper arm.

peritonitis Acute inflammation of the visceral/parietal peritoneum and endothelial lining of the abdominal cavity, or peritoneum.

peritonsillar abscess (PTA) A complication of acute tonsillitis. The infection spreads from the tonsil to the surrounding tissue, which forms an abscess.

periungual lesion Skin lesion around the nail bed.

permeable The quality of being porous.

pernicious anemia A form of megaloblastic anemia caused by failure to absorb vitamin B₁₂ because of a deficiency of intrinsic factor (normally secreted by the gastric mucosa) needed for intestinal absorption of vitamin B₁₂.

PERRLA An acronym that stands for the phrase "Pupils should be equal in size, round and regular in shape, and react to light and accommodation."

persistent pain See *chronic pain*.

personal emergency preparedness plan An individual plan that outlines specific arrangements in the event of disaster, such as child-care, pet care, and older adult care.

personal protective equipment (PPE) Infection control protocol that refers to the use of gloves, isolation gowns, face protection, and respirators with N95 or higher filtration.

personal readiness supplies A preassembled disaster supply kit for the home and/or automobile that contains clothing and basic survival supplies; also called a "go bag."

petechiae Pinpoint red spots on the mucous membranes, palate, conjunctivae, or skin.

pH A measure of the free hydrogen ion level in body fluid.

phagocytosis The process of engulfing, ingesting, killing, and disposing of an invading

organism by neutrophils and macrophages; a key process of inflammation.

Phalen's maneuver (or Phalen's wrist test) Test to determine the presence of carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS); a positive test for CTS cause paresthesia in the medial nerve distribution of the palm of the hand in 60 seconds.

phantom limb pain (PLP) A frequent complication of amputation in which the patient perceives sensation in the absent (amputated) foot or hand. This sensation usually diminishes over time.

pharmacologic stress echocardiogram A form of echocardiography in which either dobutamine (increases heart's contractility) or adenosine (dilates coronary arteries) is given to the patient; usually used when patients cannot tolerate exercise.

pharynx The throat, which extends from the soft palate to the esophagus and is lined with mucous membrane; part of the upper respiratory tract.

phenotype Any genetic characteristic that can actually be observed or, in some cases, determined by laboratory test.

pheochromocytoma A tumor of the adrenal medulla, which can cause excessive secretion of catecholamines.

pheresis A procedure in which whole blood is withdrawn from the patient, a blood component (such as stem cells) is filtered out, and the plasma is returned to the patient.

phimosis A tight foreskin of the penis, which cannot be retracted.

phlebitis Inflammation of a vein, which can predispose patients to thrombosis.

phlebothrombosis Presence of a thrombus in a vein without inflammation.

phlebotomy Drawing of blood from a vein.

phonation Normal speech.

phonophobia Abnormal sensitivity to sound.

phonophoresis Treatment for back pain in which a topical drug (e.g., lidocaine, hydrocortisone) is applied followed by continuous ultrasound for 10 minutes.

photocoagulation Use of a laser, such as in treatment of retinal detachment.

photophobia Abnormal sensitivity to light.

photopsia The appearance of bright flashes of light due to the onset of retinal detachment.

physiatrist A physician who specializes in rehabilitative medicine.

physical abuse The use of a physical force, such as hitting, burning, pushing, and molesting the patient, that results in bodily injury.

physical dependence The adaptation manifested by a drug class-specific withdrawal syndrome. Manifestations can be produced by abrupt cessation, rapid dose reduction, decreasing blood level of the drug, or administration of an antagonist.

physical therapist (PT, RPT) A member of the rehabilitation health care team who helps the patient achieve mobility and who teaches techniques for performing certain activities of daily living.

piggyback set See *secondary administration set*.

pilonidal cyst A lesion of the sacral area that often has a sinus track extending into deeper tissue structures.

pinna The external ear, which is composed of cartilage covered by skin.

pitting Indentation of the skin; often occurs with edema.

pituitary Cushing's disease Oversecretion of ACTH by the anterior pituitary gland, which causes hyperplasia of the adrenal cortex in both adrenal glands and an excess of most hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex.

placebo Substance or action that produces an effect regardless of its known intrinsic value or specific physical or chemical properties.

placebo effect A patient's favorable response to a placebo.

plantar fasciitis An inflammation of the plantar fascia, which is located in the area of the arch of the foot. It is often seen in athletes, especially runners.

plasma cell A short-lived B-lymphocyte that begins functioning immediately to produce antibodies against sensitizing antigens.

plasmapheresis The separation of plasma from whole blood, after which the blood cells are returned to the patient without the plasma to eliminate antibodies.

pleiotropic Having widespread or numerous effects.

plethoric A flushed appearance of the skin.

pleura The continuous smooth membrane composed of two surfaces that totally enclose the lungs.

pleural effusion Fluid in the pleural space.

pleuritic chest pain A stabbing pain on taking a deep breath.

pleurodesis An inflammation created by instilling a sclerosing agent through a chest tube into the pleural space, which causes the pleura to stick to the chest wall and prevent formation of effusion fluid.

plexus Cluster of nerves.

ploidy The number and appearance of chromosomes; used to describe cancer cells.

pluripotency The unlimited potential of early embryonic cells to mature into any body cell; also called "multipotency" or "totipotency."

pluripotent stem cell The precursor cell involved in the production of red blood cells.

pneumonectomy Removal of an entire lung, including all blood vessels.

pneumothorax Air in the pleural (chest) cavity.

podagra Inflammation of the metatarsophalangeal joint of the great toe.

point of maximal impulse (PMI) See *apical impulse*.

point mutation The substitution of one base for another.

polyarthralgia Aching around multiple joints.

polycystic kidney disease (PKD) An inherited disorder in which fluid-filled cysts develop in the kidneys.

polycythemia An excess of red blood cells.

polycythemia vera (PV) A disease that involves massive production of red blood cells, leukocytes, and platelets.

polydipsia Excessive intake of water.

polymedicine The use of many drugs to treat multiple health problems for older adults.

polymorphism A variation in form.

polymyalgia rheumatica (PMR) A clinical syndrome characterized by stiffness, weakness, aching of the proximal musculature (the shoulder and pelvic girdles), and systemic manifestations such as low-grade fever, arthralgias and stiffness, fatigue, and weight loss.

polymyositis A diffuse inflammatory disease of skeletal (striated) muscle that causes symmetric weakness and atrophy.

polyp An abnormal outgrowth from a mucous membrane.

polypectomy Surgical removal of a polyp, such as a nasal polyp.

polyphagia Excessive eating.

polypharmacy The use of many drugs to treat multiple health problems for older adults.

polyuria Frequent and excessive urination.

pores Openings or spaces.

portal hypertension An abnormal persistent increase in pressure within the portal vein; a major complication of cirrhosis.

portal hypertensive gastropathy A complication that can occur in patients with portal hypertension, with or without esophageal varices. Slow gastric mucosal bleeding may result in chronic slow blood loss, occult positive stools, and anemia.

portal-systemic encephalopathy (PSE) A clinical disorder seen in hepatic failure and cirrhosis; it is manifested by neurologic symptoms and is characterized by an altered level of consciousness, impaired thinking processes, and neuromuscular disturbances; also called "hepatic encephalopathy" and "hepatic coma."

positive deflection In electrocardiography, the flow of electrical current in the heart (cardiac axis) toward the positive pole.

positive inotropic agents Drugs that increase myocardial contractility and are prescribed to improve cardiac output.

positron emission tomography (PET) A diagnostic tool that provides information about the function of the brain, specifically glucose and oxygen metabolism and cerebral blood flow. The patient is injected with the molecule *deoxyglucose*, which is tagged to an isotope. The isotope emits activity in the form of positrons, which are scanned and converted into a color image by a computer.

postanesthesia care unit (PACU) Recovery room.

postcholecystectomy syndrome (PCS) The occurrence of the clinical manifestations of biliary tract disease following cholecystectomy; caused by residual or recurring calculi, inflammation, or stricture of the common bile duct.

post-concussion syndrome A group of clinical manifestations following a concussion that consist of personality changes, irritability, headaches, dizziness, restlessness, nervousness, insomnia, memory loss, and depression.

The prolonged pattern is classified as post-trauma syndrome.

posterior colporrhaphy The surgical procedure to repair a rectocele by strengthening pelvic supports and reducing the bulging.

posterior cord lesion A condition caused by cervical injuries; results from damage to the posterior gray and white matter of the spinal cord. Motor function remains intact, but the patient experiences a loss of vibratory sense, crude touch, and position sensation; this is the opposite of anterior cord syndrome.

posteroanterior Back to front; position for standard chest x-rays.

postherpetic neuralgia Pain that persists after herpes zoster lesions have resolved.

postictal stage Referring to the time immediately after a seizure.

postoperative After surgery.

postpericardiotomy syndrome Symptoms, including pericardial and pleural pain, pericarditis, friction rub, elevated temperature and white blood cell count, and dysrhythmias, that occur in patients after cardiac surgery; may occur days to weeks after surgery and seems to be associated with blood that remains in the pericardial sac.

postrenal failure Decrease in renal function related to an obstruction in the flow of urine. It can progress to acute renal failure.

postural (orthostatic) hypotension A decrease of more than 20 mm Hg of systolic pressure or more than 10 mm Hg of diastolic pressure, with a 10% to 20% increase in heart rate; patients may report dizziness or lightheadedness when they move from a lying to a sitting or standing position.

post-void residual (PVR) The amount of urine remaining in the bladder within 20 minutes after voiding.

potency The ability to have and sustain an erection.

PQRST A mnemonic (memory device) that may help in the current problem assessment of patients with gastrointestinal tract disorders. The letters represent the following areas **P**, precipitating or palliative (What brings it on? What makes it better or worse?); **Q**, quality or quantity (How does it look, feel, or sound?); **R**, region or radiation (Where is it? Does it spread anywhere?); **S**, severity scale (How bad is it [on a scale of 1 to 10]? Is it getting better, worse, or staying the same?); **T**, timing (Onset, duration, and frequency?).

PR interval In the electrocardiogram, the interval measured from the beginning of the P wave to the end of the PR segment; represents the time required for atrial depolarization as well as impulse delay in the atrioventricular node and travel time to the Purkinje fibers.

PR segment In the electrocardiogram, the isoelectric line from the end of the P wave to the beginning of the QRS complex, when the electrical impulse is traveling through the atrioventricular node, where it is delayed.

prandial insulin secretion The increased levels of insulin that are secreted after eating.

Within 10 minutes of eating, an early burst of insulin secretion occurs, which is followed by an increasing insulin release that lasts as long as hyperglycemia is present.

prealbumin (PAB) A protein secreted by the liver that binds thyroxine.

precipitation The formation of large, insoluble antigen-antibody complexes during the antibody-binding process.

prediabetes An impaired fasting glucose (IFG) or impaired glucose tolerance (IGT).

pre-emptive analgesia A technique to decrease postoperative pain and the requirements for analgesia, improve morbidity, and decrease hospital stay by administering local anesthetics, opioids, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in the preoperative, intraoperative, or postoperative period.

prehospital care provider Typically, any of the first caregivers encountered by the patient if he or she is transported to the emergency department by an ambulance or helicopter.

prehypertension A blood pressure category that includes blood pressure readings of 120 to 139 mm Hg systolic or 80 to 89 mm Hg diastolic. Prehypertensive patients are at a higher risk for the development of hypertension.

preictal phase Referring to events that a patient experiences before a seizure, such as the presence of an aura.

preinfarction angina Chest pain that occurs in the days or weeks before a myocardial infarction.

preload The degree of myocardial fiber stretch at the end of diastole and just before contraction; determined by the amount of blood returning to the heart from both the venous system (right heart) and the pulmonary system (left heart).

premature atrial complex (PAC) In the electrocardiogram, an early complex that occurs when atrial tissue becomes irritable. This ectopic focus fires an impulse before the next sinus impulse is due, thus usurping the sinus pacemaker. The premature P wave from the atrial focus is early and has a shape different from that of the P wave generated from the sinus node.

premature complex In the electrocardiogram, an early complex that occurs when a cardiac cell or cell group other than the sinoatrial node becomes irritable and fires an impulse before the next sinus impulse is generated. After the premature complex, there is a pause before the next normal complex, which creates an irregularity in the rhythm.

premature ventricular complex (PVC) In the electrocardiogram, an early ventricular complex is followed by a pause that results from increased irritability of ventricular cells. The QRS complexes may be unifocal or uniform (of the same shape), or multifocal or multiform (of different shapes).

premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD) A more disabling and severe form of premenstrual syndrome.

premenstrual syndrome (PMS) A collection of symptoms that occur in the 2 weeks before menstruation and are followed by relief with menses and a symptom-free phase. Symptoms may include emotional, physical, and cognitive manifestations such as irritability, breast tenderness, and short-term memory problems.

preoperative Before surgery.

prepuce The foreskin of the penis.

prerenal failure Condition that causes inadequate kidney perfusion; can progress to acute renal failure.

presbycusis The loss of hearing, especially for high-pitched sounds; occurs as a result of aging.

presbyopia An age-related impairment of vision characterized by a loss of lens elasticity and the ability of the eye to accommodate. The near point of vision increases, and near objects must be placed farther from the eye to be seen clearly.

presence A type of communication that consists of listening and acknowledging the legitimacy of the patient's and/or family's pain.

pressure ulcer Tissue damage caused when the skin and underlying soft tissue are compressed between a bony prominence and an external surface for an extended period; commonly occurs over the sacrum, hips, and ankles.

pretibial Pertaining to the front of the leg below the knee.

pretibial myxedema Dry, waxy swelling of the front surfaces of the lower legs.

preventive therapy drugs For asthma, drugs that are used every day regardless of symptoms to change airway responsiveness and prevent asthma attacks from occurring.

priapism An abnormal, long-maintained erection without sexual desire, which causes the penis to become large, hard, and painful. It can occur from neural, vascular, or pharmacologic causes.

primary angle-closure glaucoma A form of glaucoma characterized by a narrowed angle and forward displacement of the iris so that movement of the iris against the cornea narrows or closes the chamber angle, obstructing the outflow of aqueous humor. It can have a sudden onset and is an emergency; also called "closed-angle glaucoma," "narrow-angle glaucoma," or "acute glaucoma."

primary arthroplasty A total joint arthroplasty procedure that has been performed for the first time.

primary epilepsy Epilepsy that is not associated with any identifiable brain lesion or other specific cause; however, genetic factors most likely play a role in its development.

primary gout The most common type of gout; results from one of several inborn errors of purine metabolism.

primary lesions In describing skin disease, the initial reaction to a problem that alters one of the structural components of the skin.

primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG) The most common form of primary glaucoma;

characterized by reduced outflow of aqueous humor through the chamber angle. Because the fluid cannot leave the eye at the same rate it is produced, intraocular pressure gradually increases.

primary prevention Strategies used to avoid or delay the actual occurrence of a specific disease.

primary progressive multiple sclerosis A type of multiple sclerosis (MS) that involves a steady and gradual neurologic deterioration without remission of symptoms. Patients with this type of MS are usually between 40 and 60 years of age at onset of the disease and experience progressive disability with no acute attacks.

primary survey Priorities of care addressed in order of immediate threats to life as part of the initial assessment in the emergency department. Survey is based on an “ABC” mnemonic with “D” and “E” added for trauma patients: airway/cervical spine (A), breathing (B), circulation (C), disability (D), and exposure (E).

primary tumor The original tumor, usually identified by the tissue from which it arose (parent tissue), such as in breast cancer or lung cancer.

progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) Rare disease affecting the white matter of the brain caused by a virus that attacks the cells that make myelin; occurs most often in patients who are immunosuppressed.

progressive stage of shock The stage of shock that occurs with a sustained decrease in mean arterial pressure, when compensatory mechanisms are functioning but are no longer delivering sufficient oxygen, even to vital organs.

progressive-relapsing multiple sclerosis A type of multiple sclerosis (MS) that occurs in only 5% of patients with MS. It is characterized by the absence of periods of remission, and the patient's condition does not return to baseline. Progressive cumulative symptoms and deterioration occur over several years.

proinsulin A precursor of insulin that includes the alpha and beta chains of the insulin molecule.

projected pain Pain that occurs along a specific nerve or nerves.

proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR) A form of retinopathy associated with diabetes mellitus in which a network of fragile new blood vessels develops, leaking blood and protein into surrounding tissue. The new blood vessels are stimulated by retinal hypoxia that results from poor capillary perfusion of the retinal tissues. New blood vessels grow in the retina, onto the iris, and into the back of the vitreous. The vitreous contracts and pulls away from the retina, causing blood vessels to break and bleed into the vitreous.

promoter In oncology, a substance that promotes or enhances growth of the initiated cancer cell; may be a hormone, drug, or chemical.

pronator drift Occurs in a patient with muscle weakness due to cerebral or brainstem reasons. The arm on the weak side tends to fall, or “drift,” with the palm pronating (turning inward) after the patient has closed his or her eyes and held the arms perpendicular to the body with the palms up for 15 to 30 seconds; part of the neurologic assessment.

prophylactic mastectomy Highly controversial practice of surgically removing the breast in order to reduce the risk of breast cancer.

prophylactic surgery Surgery done to remove “at-risk” tissue to prevent cancer development.

proportional pulse pressure A measurement of cardiac output that is calculated from blood pressure measurements, as follows: subtract diastolic from systolic blood pressure, and divide the result by systolic blood pressure. A proportional pulse pressure less than 25% indicates severely compromised cardiac output.

proprioception Position sense.

proprioceptive Awareness of body position.

prosopagnosia The inability to recognize oneself and other familiar faces; occurs in patients in the later stages of Alzheimer's disease.

prostaglandins Chemicals that are produced in the cells and cause inflammation and swelling.

prostate gland A large accessory gland of the male reproductive system. It secretes a milky alkaline fluid that adds bulk to the semen, enhances sperm motility, and neutralizes acidic vaginal secretions.

prostatectomy Surgical removal of the prostate.

prostate-specific antigen (PSA) A glycoprotein produced solely by the prostate. The normal blood level of PSA is less than 4 ng/mL; levels are higher in patients with increased prostatic tissue as a result of benign prostatic hyperplasia, prostatic infarction, prostatitis, and prostate cancer. Levels associated with prostate cancer are usually much higher than those occurring with other prostate tissue enlargement.

prostatitis Inflammation of the prostate.

prostatodynia Pain in the prostate with manifestations of prostatitis but no inflammation of the prostate and a negative urine culture.

prostration Extreme exhaustion.

protein-calorie malnutrition (PCM) A disorder of nutrition that may present in three forms: marasmus, kwashiorkor, and marasmic-kwashiorkor; also called “protein-energy malnutrition.”

protein-energy malnutrition (PEM) See *protein-calorie malnutrition*.

protein synthesis The process by which genes are used to make the proteins needed for physiologic function.

proteinuria The presence of protein in the urine.

proteolysis The breakdown of proteins to provide fuel for energy when liver glucose is unavailable.

proton-pump inhibitor (PPI) A group of drugs that inhibit the proton pump in the stomach to decrease gastric acid production.

pruritus An unpleasant itching sensation.

pseudoaddiction An iatrogenic syndrome created by the undertreatment of pain and characterized by patient behaviors such as anger and escalating demands for more or different medications; results in suspicion and avoidance by staff. Pseudoaddiction can be distinguished from true addiction because the behaviors resolve when pain is effectively treated.

pseudogout A disease that mimics the clinical manifestations of gout; however, the crystals deposited in the joints are calcium pyrophosphate, not sodium urate.

psoriatic arthritis (PsA) A syndrome of inflammatory arthritis associated with psoriasis, the skin condition characterized by a scaly, itchy rash.

psychiatric crisis nurse team An emergency department specialty team whose nurses interact with patients and families in crisis.

psychotropic drugs Antipsychotic and neuroleptic drugs. These are appropriately given to patients with emotional and behavioral health problems (e.g., hallucinations and delusions) that accompany dementia but are sometimes inappropriately used for agitation, combativeness, or restlessness. They are considered chemical restraints because they decrease mobility and patients' ability to care for themselves.

ptosis Drooping of the eyelid.

pulmonary artery occlusive pressure (PAOP)
See *pulmonary artery wedge pressure*.

pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP) Measurement of pressure in the left atrium using a balloon-tipped catheter introduced into the pulmonary artery. When the balloon at the catheter tip is inflated, the catheter advances and wedges in a branch of the pulmonary artery. The tip of the catheter is able to sense pressures transmitted from the left atrium, which reflect left ventricular end-diastolic pressure; also called “pulmonary artery occlusive pressure.”

pulmonary autograph The relocation of the patient's own pulmonary valve to the aortic position for aortic valve replacement (Ross procedure).

pulmonary embolism (PE) A collection of particulate matter, most commonly a blood clot, that enters venous circulation and lodges in the pulmonary vessels, obstructing pulmonary blood flow and leading to decreased systemic oxygenation, pulmonary tissue hypoxia, and potential death.

pulmonic valve The semilunar valve of the heart that separates the right ventricle from the pulmonary artery.

pulse deficit The difference between the apical and peripheral pulses.

pulse pressure The difference between the systolic and diastolic pressures.

pulse therapy Any therapy given at a high dose for a short duration.

pulsus alternans A type of pulse in which a weak pulse alternates with a strong pulse despite a regular heart rhythm; seen in patients with severely depressed cardiac function.

pump A pole-mounted or portable device that pumps medication or fluid under pressure during infusion therapy.

pump failure See *heart failure*.

punctum The opening through which tears drain; located at the nasal side of the eyelid edges.

pupil The opening through which light enters the eye; located in the center of the iris of the eye.

pure tones Tones generated by an audiometer to determine hearing acuity.

Purkinje cells In the cardiac conduction system, the cells that make up the bundle of His, bundle branches, and terminal Purkinje fibers. These cells are responsible for the rapid conduction of electrical impulses throughout the ventricles, leading to ventricular depolarization and subsequent ventricular muscle contraction.

purpura Purple patches on the skin that may be caused by blood disorders, vascular abnormalities, or trauma.

pyelolithotomy The surgical removal of a stone from the kidney.

pyelonephritis A bacterial infection in the kidney and renal pelvis (the upper urinary tract).

pyloromyotomy An incision through the serosa and muscularis of the pylorus, down to the mucosa; created to prevent gastric motility disturbances in patients who have undergone esophagectomy.

pyogenic liver abscess A liver abscess resulting from bacterial infection by *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Staphylococcus*, and *Enterococcus* species. A pyogenic abscess is generally solitary and is confined to the right lobe, but occasionally abscesses are multiple.

pyramid The fan-shaped structures that constitute the medulla of the kidney. Each kidney has 12 to 18 pyramids.

pyuria The presence of white blood cells (pus) in the urine.

Q

QRS complex In the electrocardiogram, the portion consisting of the Q, R, and S waves, representing ventricular depolarization.

QRS duration In the electrocardiogram, the time required for depolarization of both ventricles; measured from the beginning of the QRS complex to the J point (the junction where the QRS complex ends and the ST segment begins).

QT interval In the electrocardiogram, the time from the beginning of the QRS complex to the end of the T wave. It represents the total time required for ventricular depolarization and repolarization.

quadriceps-setting exercise Postoperative leg exercise performed by straightening the

legs and pushing the back of the knees into the bed.

quadrigeminy A type of premature complex consisting of a repetitive four-beat pattern; usually occurs as three sequential normal complexes followed by a premature complex and a pause, with the same pattern repeating itself in a four-beat pattern.

quadripareisis Weakness that involves all four extremities; seen with cervical spinal cord injury.

qualitative question A clinical question that focuses on the meanings and interpretations of human phenomena or experience of people and usually analyzes the content of what a person says during an interview or what a researcher observes.

quality improvement A competency that nurses can achieve by using data to monitor the outcomes of care processes and using improvement methods to design and test changes to continuously improve the quality and safety of health care systems.

quantitative question A clinical question that asks about the relationship between or among defined, measurable phenomena and includes statistical analysis of information that is collected to answer a question.

R

Rad Older acronym for “radiation absorbed dose.”

radiating pain Diffuse, unlocalized pain around the site of origin.

radiation dose The amount of radiation absorbed by the tissue.

radiation exposure The amount of radiation delivered to a tissue during radiation therapy.

radiation proctitis Rectal mucosa inflammation that results from external beam radiation therapy.

radical cystectomy Removal of the bladder and surrounding tissue with urinary diversion.

radical vulvectomy The surgical removal of the entire vulva skin, labia, clitoris, subcutaneous tissues, and possibly inguinal and femoral node dissection.

radicular Referring to a nerve root.

radiculopathy Referring to radicular pain; spinal nerve root involvement.

radiofrequency ablation The use of heat to achieve permanent ablation of nerve roots.

radiofrequency catheter ablation An invasive procedure that uses radiofrequency waves to abolish an irritable focus that is causing a supraventricular or ventricular tachyarrhythmia.

Rapid Response Team Team of critical care experts that save lives and decrease the risk for harm by providing care to patients before a respiratory or cardiac arrest occurs. Also called “Medical Emergency Team.”

rebound headache Headache that occurs as a side effect of a drug that has relieved an initial migraine headache; also called “medication overuse headache.”

recall memory Recent memory, which can be tested during the history taking by asking about items such as the dates of clinic or physician appointments.

receptive aphasia A type of aphasia caused by injury to Wernicke’s area in the temporoparietal area of the brain and characterized by an inability to understand the spoken and written word; both reading and writing ability are equally affected. Although the patient can talk, the language is often meaningless and neologisms (made-up words) are common parts of speech. Also called “Wernicke’s aphasia” or “sensory aphasia.”

reconstructive plastic surgery Type of plastic surgery that corrects or improves functional defects that have occurred as a result of congenital problems, trauma and scarring, or other types of therapy.

reconstructive surgery Surgery done to increase function, enhance appearance, or both; also called “rehabilitative surgery.”

recreational exercise A type of exercise that includes hobbies and sports, with no planned purpose other than relaxation.

recreational therapist A member of the health care team who works to help patients continue or develop hobbies or interests; also called “activity therapist.”

rectocele A protrusion of the rectum through a weakened vaginal wall.

red reflex A reflection of light on the retina seen as a red glare during ophthalmoscopic examination. An absent red reflex may indicate a lens opacity or cloudiness of the vitreous.

redirection An intervention to help with communication problems in patients with dementia; consists of attracting the patient’s attention before conversing, keeping the environment as free of distractions as possible, and speaking directly to the patient in a distinct manner using clear and short sentences.

reducible hernia A hernia that can be placed back into the abdominal cavity by gentle pressure.

reduction mammoplasty Breast reduction surgery in which the surgeon removes excess breast tissue and then repositions the nipple and remaining skin flaps to produce an optimal cosmetic effect.

Reed-Sternberg cell A specific cancer cell type, found in lymph nodes, that is a marker for Hodgkin’s lymphoma.

re-epithelialization In partial-thickness (superficial) wounds involving damage to the epidermis and upper layers of the dermis, a form of healing by means of the production of new skin cells by undamaged epidermal cells in the basal layer of the dermis.

refeeding syndrome Life-threatening metabolic complication that can occur when nutrition is restarted for a patient who is in a starvation state.

referred pain Perceived pain in an area distant from the site of painful stimuli.

reflex arc A closed circuit of spinal and peripheral nerves that requires no control by the brain.

reflex bladder Incontinence characterized by sudden, gushing voids, usually without completely emptying the bladder; caused by neurologic problems affecting the upper motor neuron, such as with spinal cord injuries above the twelfth thoracic vertebra; also called “spastic bladder.”

reflex sympathetic dystrophy (RSD) See *complex regional pain syndrome*.

reflux Reverse or backward flow.

reflux esophagitis Damage to the esophageal mucosa, often with erosion and ulceration, in patients with gastroesophageal reflux disease.

refract To cause to bend.

refraction The bending of light rays.

refractory stage The stage of shock that occurs when too much cell death and tissue damage result from too little oxygen reaching the tissues; the vital organs have overwhelming damage, and the body is unable to respond effectively to interventions. Formerly called the “irreversible stage.”

regional anesthesia A type of local anesthesia that blocks multiple peripheral nerves in a specific body region.

regurgitation Flowing in the opposite direction from normal, as the occurrence of warm fluid traveling up the throat, unaccompanied by nausea, in the patient with gastroesophageal reflux disease.

rehabilitation The process of learning to live with chronic and disabling conditions by returning the patient to the fullest possible physical, mental, social, vocational, and economic capacity.

rehabilitation case manager Nurse or other health care professional who coordinates health care for patients undergoing rehabilitation in home or acute care settings.

rehabilitation nurse Nurse who coordinates the efforts of health care team members for patients undergoing rehabilitation in the inpatient setting; may be designated as the patient’s case manager.

rehabilitative surgery See *reconstructive surgery*.

relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis A type of multiple sclerosis that occurs in 85% of cases and is characterized by a mild or moderate course, depending on the degree of disability. Relapses develop over 1 to 2 weeks and resolve over 4 to 8 months, after which the patient returns to baseline.

religion The formal expression of spirituality.

relocation stress syndrome Physiologic or psychosocial distress following transfer from one environment to another, such as after admission to a hospital or nursing home; also called “relocation trauma.”

reminiscence The process of randomly reflecting on memories of events in one’s life.

remote memory Long-term memory of events; can be tested by asking patients about their birth date, schools attended, city of birth, or anything from the past that can be verified.

renal calculi Kidney stones.

renal colic Severe pain associated with distention or spasm of the ureter, such as with an obstruction or the passing of a stone; the pain radiates into the perineal area, groin, scrotum, or labia. Pain may be intermittent or continuous and may be accompanied by pallor, diaphoresis, and hypotension.

renal columns Cortical tissue that dips into the interior of the kidney and separates the pyramids in the medulla; also called “columns of Bertin.”

renal cortex The outermost layer of functional kidney tissue lying beneath the renal capsule.

renal osteodystrophy The problems in bone metabolism and structure caused by renal failure-induced hypocalcemia and hyperphosphatemia.

renal pelvis The expansion from the upper end of the ureter into which the calices of the kidney open.

renal threshold The limit to the amount of glucose that the kidney can reabsorb as glucose is filtered from the blood; also called the “transport maximum.”

renin A hormone that is produced in the juxtaglomerular complex of the kidney and helps regulate blood flow, glomerular filtration rate, and blood pressure. Renin is secreted when sensing cells (macula densa) in the distal convoluted tubule sense changes in blood volume and pressure.

repetitive stress injury (RSI) Injury caused by repeated movements of the same part of the body (e.g., carpal tunnel syndrome).

replication The reproduction of DNA that occurs each time a cell divides.

repolarization A return to baseline after depolarization.

rescue drugs For asthma, drugs that are used to actually stop an asthma attack once it has started.

reservoir In health care, a source of infectious agents. Animate reservoirs include people, animals, and insects. Inanimate reservoirs include environmental sources and medical equipment. Community reservoirs include sewage, contaminated water, and improperly handled foods.

resistin A hormone produced by fat cells that creates resistance to insulin activity.

resorption In referring to bone, the loss of bone minerals and density; the release of free calcium from bone storage sites directly into the extracellular fluid.

restorative aid A member of the health care team, often with the nursing department, who assists the therapists, especially in the long-term care setting.

restraint Any device (physical restraint) or drug (chemical restraint) that prevents the patient from moving freely.

restrictive cardiomyopathy A form of cardiomyopathy that restricts the filling of the ventricles; a type of lung disease that prevents good expansion and recoil of the gas exchange unit.

restrictive disorders Disorders that prevent good expansion and recoil of the gas exchange unit.

restrictive lung disorder Any lung disorder that prevents good expansion and recoil of the gas exchange unit.

resurfacing Regrowth of new skin cells across the open area of a wound as it heals.

resuscitation phase The first phase of a burn injury, beginning at the onset of injury and continuing to about 48 hours.

rete pegs The fingers of epidermal tissue that project into the dermis.

reticular activating system (RAS) Special cells throughout the brainstem that constitute the system that controls awareness and alertness.

retina The innermost layer of the eye, made up of sensory receptors that transmit impulses to the optic nerve. It contains blood vessels and two types of photoreceptors called “rods” and “cones.” Rods work at low light levels and provide peripheral vision; cones are active at bright light levels and provide color and central vision.

retinal detachment Separation of the retina from the epithelium.

retinal hole A break in the retina; can be caused by trauma or can occur with aging.

retinal tear Jagged and irregularly shaped break in the retina resulting from traction on the retina.

retinitis Inflammation of the retina.

retinopathy Inflammation of the retina; also used as a general term for vision problems.

retrograde Going against the normal direction of flow.

retrograde ejaculation Condition in which semen flows backwards into the bladder so that only a small amount is ejaculated from the penis.

retroviruses The family of viruses that includes the human immune deficiency virus.

reversible ischemic neurologic deficit (RIND) A type of transient focal neurologic dysfunction resulting from a brief interruption in cerebral blood flow; symptoms last longer than 24 hours but less than a week.

revision arthroplasty Surgical replacement of a prosthesis that has loosened and is causing pain.

rhabdomyolysis The breakdown or disintegration of muscle tissue; associated with excretion of myoglobin in the urine.

rheumatic carditis Inflammatory lesions in the heart due to a sensitivity response that develops after an upper respiratory tract infection with group A beta-hemolytic streptococci, which occurs in about 40% of patients with rheumatic fever. Inflammation results in impaired contractile function of the myocardium, thickening of the pericardium, and valvular damage.

rheumatic disease Any disease or condition involving the musculoskeletal system.

rheumatoid arthritis (RA) A chronic, progressive, systemic, inflammatory autoimmune disease process that primarily affects the

synovial joints; one of the most common connective tissue diseases and the most destructive to the joints.

rhinitis An inflammation of the nasal mucosa.

rhinitis medicamentosa Nasal congestion from overuse of nose drops or sprays.

rhinoplasty A surgical reconstruction of the nose done for cosmetic purposes and improvement of airflow.

rhinorrhea Watery drainage from the nose; a “runny” nose.

rhizotomy Surgical technique in which sensory nerve roots are destroyed where they enter the spinal cord; used to interrupt the transmission of pain.

rhytidectomy Plastic surgery to eliminate wrinkles from the facial skin; commonly known as a “face lift.”

rickets Vitamin D deficiency in children.

right-sided heart (ventricular) failure The inability of the right ventricle to empty completely, resulting in increased volume and pressure in the systemic veins and systemic venous congestion with peripheral edema.

rigidity Abnormal resistance to passive movement of the extremities, an early sign of Parkinson disease.

rigors Severe chills.

Romberg sign Swaying or falling when the patient is standing with arms at the sides, feet and knees close together, and eyes closed; a test of equilibrium in neurologic assessment.

rotation A mechanism of injury in which the head is turned excessively beyond the normal range.

rubor Dusky red discoloration of the skin.

rugae Folds, as of a mucous membrane.

S

S phase The phase of cell division in which the cell doubles its deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) content by separating the double strands of DNA and building a new strand complementary to the original strand (DNA synthesis).

S₃ gallop The third heart sound; an early diastolic filling sound that indicates an increase in left ventricular pressure and may be heard on auscultation in patients with heart failure.

salpingitis Infection of the fallopian tube.

sanguineous Having a bloody appearance.

sarcoidosis A granulomatous disorder of unknown cause that can affect any organ but most often involves the lung.

SBAR Acronym for a formal method of communication between two or more members of the health care team. It is used most often when there is an unmet patient need or problem but can also be used to communicate continuing care issues when a patient is discharged from one agency to another. It consists of four steps **S**ituation, **B**ackground, **A**ssessment, **R**ecommendation.

scabies A contagious skin disease caused by mite infestations.

sclera The external white layer of the eye.

scleroderma See *systemic sclerosis*.

sclerosing agent An irritant that causes inflammation; often used to relieve pleural effusion.

sclerotherapy The injection of a sclerosing agent via a catheter, usually in an endoscopic procedure, to stop variceal bleeding.

sclerotic Hard, or hardening.

scoliosis An abnormal lateral curve in the spine, which normally should be a straight vertical line.

scotoma Blind spot in the visual field.

scrotum A thin-walled, fibromuscular pouch that lies behind the penis and is suspended below the pubic bone. This pouch protects the testes, epididymis, and vas deferens in a space that is slightly cooler than inside the abdominal cavity.

seborrhea Excessive secretion of sebum, resulting in greasy, itchy scaling.

sebum A mildly bacteriostatic, fat-containing substance produced by the sebaceous glands. Sebum lubricates the skin and reduces water loss from the skin surface.

second intention healing Healing of deep tissue injuries or wounds with tissue loss in which a cavity-like defect requires gradual filling of the dead space with connective tissue, which prolongs the repair process.

secondary administration set A short conduit that is attached to the primary administration set at a Y-injection site and is used to deliver intermittent medications; also called a “piggyback set.”

secondary gout Gout involving hyperuricemia.

secondary hypertension Elevated blood pressure that is related to a specific disease (e.g., kidney disease) or medication (e.g., estrogen).

secondary lesion Describing skin disease in terms of changes in the appearance of the primary lesion. These changes occur with progression of an underlying disease or in response to a topical or systemic therapeutic intervention.

secondary prevention Early detection of a disease or condition, sometimes before signs and symptoms are evident, to prevent or limit permanent disability or death.

secondary progressive multiple sclerosis A type of multiple sclerosis that begins with a relapsing-remitting course and later becomes steadily progressive. Attacks and partial recoveries may continue to occur.

secondary seizure Non-epileptic seizure that results from an underlying brain lesion, most commonly a tumor or trauma.

secondary survey In the emergency department, a more comprehensive head-to-toe assessment performed to identify other injuries or medical issues that need to be managed or that might impact the course of treatment.

secondary tumor Additional tumor that is established when cancer cells move from the primary location to another area in the body; also called “metastatic tumor.”

second-look surgery Surgery done to assess the disease status in patients who have been

treated and have no symptoms of remaining cancer tumor.

segmentectomy A lung resection (segmental resection) that includes the bronchus, pulmonary artery and vein, and tissue of the involved lung segment or segments, which are divisions of lobes.

seizure An abnormal, sudden, excessive, uncontrolled electrical discharge of neurons within the brain that may result in an alteration in consciousness, motor or sensory ability, and/or behavior. A single seizure may occur for no known reason; however, seizures may be due to a pathologic condition of the brain, such as a tumor.

self-determination An individual sense of autonomy; capable of making informed decisions about care. Also called “self-management.”

self-management See *self-determination*.

self-tolerance In immunology, the ability to recognize self cells versus non-self cells, which is necessary to prevent healthy body cells from being destroyed along with invading cells.

semicircular canals Within the inner ear, tubes made of cartilage that contain fluid and hair cells and are connected to the sensory nerve fibers of the vestibular portion of the eighth cranial nerve. The fluid and hair cells within the canals help maintain the sense of balance.

sensitivity The likelihood that infecting bacterial organisms will be killed or stopped by a particular antibiotic drug. Sensitivity is determined by testing different antibiotics against the organisms. Organisms are “sensitive” if the antibiotic is effective in stopping their growth; organisms are “resistant” if the antibiotic is not effective.

sensorineural hearing loss Hearing loss that results from a defect in the cochlea, the eighth cranial nerve, or the brain itself. Exposure to loud noises and music may cause this type of hearing loss as a result of damage to the cochlear hair cells.

sensory Facilitating sensation.

sensory aphasia See *receptive aphasia*.

sepsis Systemic infection.

septic shock The type of shock that occurs when large amounts of toxins and endotoxins produced by bacteria are released into the blood, causing a whole-body inflammatory reaction.

septicemia Systemic disease associated with sepsis; the presence of pathogens in the blood.

sequestrum A piece of necrotic bone that has separated from surrounding bone tissue; a common complication of osteomyelitis.

serologic testing Laboratory testing that is performed to identify pathogens by detecting antibodies to the organism.

serositis Inflammation of a serous membrane, such as the pleura or peritoneum.

serous Having a serum-like appearance, or yellow color.

serum sickness A type III hypersensitivity reaction that develops first as a skin rash and occurs within 3 to 21 days of

the administration of antivenin (Crotalidae) polyvalent. This allergic response is often accompanied by other manifestations such as fever, arthralgias (joint pains), and pruritus (itching).

severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)

An easily spread respiratory infection first identified in China in November 2002. At first appearing as an atypical pneumonia, it is caused by a new, more virulent form of coronavirus, and there is no known effective treatment.

severe sepsis The progression of sepsis with an amplified inflammatory response.

sex chromosomes The pair of chromosomes containing the genes for sexual differentiation in humans. In males, the sex chromosomes are an X and a Y; in females, the sex chromosomes are two Xs.

sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) Any of a group of diseases caused by infectious organisms that have been passed from one person to another through intimate contact. Some organisms that cause these diseases are transmitted only through sexual contact. Other organisms are transmitted by parenteral exposure to infected blood, fecal-oral transmission, intrauterine transmission to the fetus, and perinatal transmission from mother to neonate.

SHARE Acronym standing for **S**tandardize critical content, **H**ardwire within your system, **A**llow opportunity to ask questions, **R**einforce quality and measurement, **E**ducate and coach.

shift to the left An increased number of immature neutrophils found on a differential count in patients with infections; can be characterized by changes in percentages of different types of leukocytes.

shock The whole-body response to poor tissue oxygenation. Any problem that impairs oxygen delivery to tissues and organs can start the syndrome of shock and lead to a life-threatening emergency.

short peripheral catheter A catheter that consists of a plastic cannula built around a sharp stylet for venipuncture, which extends slightly beyond the cannula and is advanced into the vein.

sialagogue An agent that stimulates the flow of saliva.

simple fracture See *closed fracture*.

simple partial seizure A type of partial seizure in which the patient remains conscious, often reporting an aura (e.g., perception of an offensive smell) before the seizure occurs. Characterized by unilateral movement of an extremity, unusual sensations, and autonomic or psychic symptoms. Autonomic changes include a change in heart rate, skin flushing, and epigastric discomfort.

single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) A diagnostic tool using a radiopharmaceutical (agent that enables radioisotopes to cross the blood-brain barrier) that is administered by IV injection, after which the patient is scanned.

sinoatrial (SA) node In the cardiac conduction system, the primary pacemaker of the heart; located close to the epicardial surface of the right atrium near its junction with the superior vena cava. It can spontaneously and rhythmically generate electrical impulses at a rate of 60 to 100 beats/min; also called the "sinus node."

sinus arrhythmia A variant of normal sinus rhythm that results from changes in intrathoracic pressure during breathing; heart rate increases slightly during inspiration and decreases slightly during exhalation. Atrial and ventricular rates are between 60 and 100 beats/min, and atrial and ventricular rhythms are irregular.

sinus bradycardia A cardiac dysrhythmia caused by a decreased rate of sinus node discharge, with a heart rate that is less than 60 beats/min.

sinusitis An inflammation of the mucous membranes of the sinuses.

Sjögren's syndrome In patients with advanced rheumatoid arthritis, the triad of dry eyes, dry mouth, and dry vagina caused by the obstruction of secretory ducts and glands by inflammatory cells and immune complexes.

skin fold measurement Measurement that estimates body fat.

skinning vulvectomy The surgical removal of superficial vulvar skin (without removal of the clitoris) and the replacement of removed skin with split-thickness grafts.

sleep apnea A breathing disruption during sleep that lasts at least 10 seconds and occurs a minimum of 5 times in an hour.

sliding board Alternative transfer technique for a patient who cannot bear weight but who has balance skills.

smart pump An infusion pump with dosage calculation software.

smegma A white, cheesy secretion from the sebaceous glands in the glans; may accumulate under the foreskin of the penis. This secretion is not present in the circumcised male.

social worker Member of the health care team who helps patients identify support services and resources and who coordinates transfers to or discharges from the rehabilitation setting.

sodium (Na⁺) A mineral that is the major cation in the extracellular fluid and maintains extracellular fluid (ECF) osmolarity.

solubility The degree to which a solute dissolves in water.

solute A particle dissolved or suspended in the water portion (solvent) of body fluids; a solution consists of a solute and a solvent.

solvent The water portion of fluids.

Somogyi's phenomenon In the patient with diabetes, morning hyperglycemia from the effective counterregulatory response to nighttime hypoglycemia. Treat by ensuring adequate dietary intake at bedtime and by evaluating the insulin dose and exercise programs to prevent conditions that lead to hypoglycemia.

spastic bladder See *reflex bladder*.

spastic paralysis Paralysis of a part of the body that is characterized by spasticity of muscles due to hypertonia; may be seen in the patient who has experienced a brain attack.

specialized nutritional support (SNS) Total nutritional intake orally or intravenously with commercially prepared products (either total enteral nutrition or total parenteral nutrition).

speech-language pathologist (SLP) A member of the rehabilitation health care team who evaluates and retrains patients with speech, language, or swallowing problems.

spermatogenesis Normal sperm production and maturation.

sphincter of Oddi The sheath of muscle fibers surrounding the papillary opening of the duodenum.

sphincterotomy A procedure for opening a sphincter.

spica cast A type of cast that encases a portion of the trunk and one or two extremities; contrasted with a body cast, which encircles the trunk of the body.

spider angiomas Vascular lesions with a red center and radiating branches; also called "telangiectasias," "spider nevi," or "vascular spiders."

spinal fusion (arthrodesis) A surgical procedure to stabilize the spine after repeated laminectomies have been unsuccessful. Chips of bone are removed (typically from the iliac crest) or are obtained from donor bone; the chips are grafted between the vertebrae for support and to strengthen the back.

spinal shock See *spinal shock syndrome*.

spinal shock syndrome Loss of reflex activity below the level of a spinal lesion; occurs immediately after injury as a result of disruption in the communication pathways between the upper motor neurons and the lower motor neurons; also called "spinal shock."

spinal stenosis Narrowing of the spinal canal; typically seen in people older than 60 years.

spirituality The connection to self, others, the environment, and a "higher power."

spiritual counselor Counselor who specializes in spiritual assessments and care, usually a member of the clergy.

splenectomy Surgical removal of the spleen.

splenomegaly Enlargement of the spleen.

splint Any object or device that extends to the joints above and below a fracture to immobilize it.

splinter hemorrhage Black longitudinal line or small red streak on the distal third of the nail bed; seen in patients with infective endocarditis.

spondee Two-syllable words in which there is generally equal stress on each syllable, such as *airplane*, *railroad*, and *cowboy*; used in testing speech reception threshold.

spondylolisthesis Condition in which one vertebra slips forward on the one below it, often as a result of spondylolysis. This problem causes pressure on the nerve roots, leading to pain in the lower back and into the buttocks.

spondylolysis A defect in one of the vertebrae; usually found in the lumbar spine.

spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) Bacterial infection of the abdominal peritoneum caused by ascites; often seen in patients with cirrhosis of the liver.

spore An encapsulated, inactive organism.

sprain Excessive stretching of a ligament.

ST segment In the electrocardiogram, the line (normally isoelectric) representing early ventricular repolarization. It occurs from the J point to the beginning of the T wave.

staging System of classifying clinical aspects of a cancer tumor.

Standard Precautions Infection control guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention stating that all body excretions, secretions, and moist membranes and tissues are potentially infectious; combines protective measures from Universal Precautions and Body Substance Isolation.

stapes One of the three bony ossicles of the ear; also called the “stirrup.”

stasis dermatitis In patients with venous insufficiency, discoloration of the skin along the ankles, which extends up to the calf.

stasis ulcer In patients with long-term venous insufficiency, ulcer formed as a result of edema or minor injury to the limb; typically occurs over the malleolus.

status epilepticus Prolonged seizures lasting more than 5 minutes or repeated seizures over the course of 30 minutes; a potential complication of all types of seizures.

steatorrhea An excessive amount of fat in the stool.

stem cell An immature, undifferentiated cell produced by the bone marrow.

stent A small tube that is placed in a tubular structure to dilate it; a wirelike device that may be used along with percutaneous transluminal angioplasty to help keep the vessel open.

stereotactic pallidotomy A surgical treatment for the patient with Parkinson disease when drugs are ineffective in symptom management. An electrode is used to create a lesion in a targeted area within the pallidum, with the goal of reducing tremor and rigidity.

stereotyping Assuming that all people in a particular culture have the group's values and beliefs or practice the group's customs.

sterilization A method of infection control in which all living organisms and bacterial spores are destroyed; used on items that invade human tissue where bacteria are not commonly found.

stimulant Any of a group of drugs that excite the cerebral cortex of the brain, producing a variety of behavioral responses and causing an increase in body activity, such as caffeine, nicotine, amphetamines, and methamphetamines.

stimulation test A type of test for pituitary function that involves injecting agents known to stimulate secretion of specific pituitary hormones and then measuring the response.

stoma The surgical creation of an opening; usually refers to an opening in the abdominal wall.

stomatitis Inflammation of the oral mucosa; characterized by painful single or multiple ulcerations that impair the protective lining of the mouth. The ulcerations are commonly referred to as “canker sores.”

strain Excessive stretching of a muscle or tendon when it is weak or unstable; sometimes referred to as “muscle pulls.”

strangulated hernia A tightly constricted hernia that compromises the blood supply to the herniated segment of the bowel as a result of pressure from the hernial ring (the band of muscle around the hernia); leads to ischemia and obstruction of the bowel loop, with necrosis of the bowel and possibly bowel perforation.

strangulated obstruction Intestinal obstruction with compromised blood flow.

stratum corneum The outermost layer of the skin.

stress test See *exercise electrocardiography*.

stress ulcers Multiple shallow erosions of the proximal stomach and occasionally the duodenum.

stress urinary incontinence Loss of urine during activities that increase intra-abdominal pressure, such as laughing, coughing, sneezing, or lifting heavy objects.

striae Reddish purple streaks on the skin, also called “stretch marks.”

stricture Narrowing.

stridor A high-pitched crowing sound caused by laryngospasm or edema above or below the glottis; heard during respiration.

stroke Former name for “brain attack”; see *brain attack*.

stroke volume The amount of blood ejected by the left ventricle during each heartbeat.

stuporous A state of being arousable only with vigorous or painful stimulation.

subarachnoid See *subarachnoid space*.

subarachnoid screw or bolt A hollow device placed into the subarachnoid space for direct measurement of intracranial pressure. It does not allow drainage of cerebrospinal fluid to treat increased pressure, but it is less invasive, which lowers the risk of infection. Compare with “intraventricular catheter.”

subarachnoid space Term for the space between the arachnoid mater and pia mater of the spinal cord; also called “subarachnoid.”

subcutaneous emphysema The presence of bubbles under the skin because of air trapping; an uncommon late complication of fracture.

subcutaneous nodule Characteristic round, movable, nontender swelling under the skin of the arm or fingers in patients with severe rheumatoid arthritis.

subcutaneous therapy Infusion therapy that is delivered under the skin when patients cannot tolerate oral medications, when intramuscular injections are too painful, or when vascular access is not available.

subdural hematoma (SDH) The collection of clotted blood that typically results from venous bleeding into the space beneath the dura and above the arachnoid.

subdural hemorrhage Venous bleeding into the space beneath the dura and above the arachnoid.

subdural space Term for the space between the dura mater and the middle layer (arachnoid).

subendocardial myocardial infarction An infarction that involves only the subendocardium, the inner layer of the cardiac muscle.

subluxation Partial joint dislocation.

submucous resection (SMR) Surgical procedure to straighten a deviated septum when chronic symptoms or discomfort occur; also called “nasoseptoplasty.”

substance abuse The overindulgence of a chemical substance and the resulting dependence that interferes with life's activities.

substance misuse The taking of chemicals for reasons other than their intended action.

substance use The taking of chemicals for pleasure without dependence.

substernally Located below the ribs.

subtotal thyroidectomy The surgical removal of part of the thyroid tissue.

sundowning In patients with Alzheimer's disease, increased confusion at night or when excessively fatigued.

superinfection Reinfection or a second infection of the same type.

supervision Guidance or direction, evaluation, and follow-up by the nurse to ensure that the task or activity is performed appropriately.

suppressed gene A particular gene that has been “turned off.”

suprapatellar area The area directly above the knee.

supratentorial Located within the cerebral hemispheres, in the area above the tentorium of the cerebellum; the tentlike fold of dura that surrounds the cerebellar hemisphere and supports the occipital lobe.

supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) A form of tachycardia that involves the rapid stimulation of atrial tissue at a rate of 100 to 280 beats/min. It is most often due to a re-entry mechanism in which one impulse circulates repeatedly throughout the atrial pathway, re-stimulating the atrial tissue at a rapid rate.

surfactant A fatty protein secreted by type II pneumocytes to reduce surface tension in the alveoli.

surgical débridement Method of debriding a wound by removing thick, adherent wound crust using a scalpel or scissors.

surveillance Term used to describe the tracking of infections by health care agencies.

susceptibility The risk of the host to infection; may be increased by the breakdown of host defenses against pathogens.

swimmer's ear See *external otitis*.

sympathectomy Surgical cutting of the sympathetic nerve branches via endoscopy through a small axillary incision.

sympathetic tone A state of partial blood vessel constriction caused when nerves from the sympathetic division of the autonomic

nervous system continuously stimulate vascular smooth muscle.

synapse The area through which impulses are transmitted to their eventual destination.

synchronous (demand) pacing mode The mode of temporary cardiac pacing in which the pacemaker's sensitivity is set to sense the patient's own beats. When the patient's intrinsic rate is above the rate set on the pulse generator, the pacemaker is inhibited from firing. When the patient's rate is below that set on the generator, the pacemaker fires electrical impulses to stimulate depolarization.

syncope Transient loss of consciousness (blackouts), most commonly caused by decreased perfusion to the brain.

syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (SIADH) Persistent hyponatremia, hypovolemia, and inappropriately elevated urine osmolality that occurs when vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone) is secreted even when plasma osmolality is low or normal.

syndrome X See *metabolic syndrome*.

syngeneic transplant Bone marrow transplant in which stem cells are taken from the patient's own identical sibling.

synovectomy The surgical removal of synovium.

synovial joint Type of joint lined with synovium, a membrane that secretes synovial fluid for lubrication and shock absorption.

synovitis Inflammation of synovial membrane.

synthesis The process of building up.

syphilis A complex sexually transmitted disease that can become systemic and cause serious complications and even death. It is caused by the spirochete *Treponema pallidum*, which is found in the mouth, intestinal tract, and genital areas of people and animals. The infection is usually transmitted by sexual contact, but transmission can occur through close body contact and kissing.

syringe pump Pump for infusion therapy that uses a battery-powered piston to push the plunger continuously at a selected mL/hr rate; limited to small-volume continuous or intermittent infusions.

systemic Affecting the body system as a whole.

systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) A chronic, progressive, inflammatory connective tissue disorder that can cause major body organs and systems to fail; characterized by spontaneous remissions and exacerbations.

systemic sclerosis (SSc) A chronic connective tissue disease characterized by inflammation, fibrosis, and sclerosis of the skin and vital organs; also called "scleroderma" and formerly called "progressive systemic sclerosis."

systemic vascular resistance The resistance to the flow of blood through the body's blood vessels; it increases when vessels constrict and decreases when vessels dilate.

systole The phase of the cardiac cycle that consists of the contraction and emptying of the atria and ventricles.

systolic blood pressure The amount of pressure/force generated by the left ventricle to distribute blood into the aorta with each contraction of the heart.

systolic heart failure (systolic ventricular dysfunction) Heart failure that results when the heart is unable to contract forcefully enough during systole to eject adequate amounts of blood into the circulation.

T

T wave In the electrocardiogram, the deflection that follows the ST segment and represents ventricular repolarization.

tachycardia An excessively fast heart rate; characterized as a pulse rate greater than 100 beats/min.

tachydysrhythmia An abnormal heart rhythm with a rate greater than 100 beats/min.

tachypnea An increased rate of breathing.

tactile (vocal) fremitus A vibration of the chest wall produced when the patient speaks; can be palpated on the chest wall.

tai chi A holistic movement therapy derived from a traditional Chinese martial art; has been adapted as a mind-body exercise that integrates body movements, mental concentration, muscle relaxation, and breathing to promote the flow of *qi*, or energy, in the body.

target tissues The tissues that respond specifically to a given hormone.

taut Tightly stretched.

telemetry In electrocardiography (ECG), the use of a battery-powered transmitter system for monitoring an ambulatory patient; allows freedom of movement within a certain radius without losing transmission of the ECG.

telesurgery The use of robotics to perform surgical procedures over long distances.

telomeres The "tips" of the chromosomes.

temporal field blindness A decrease in lateral peripheral vision.

temporary pacing A nonsurgical intervention for cardiac dysrhythmia that provides a timed electrical stimulus to the heart when either the impulse initiation or the intrinsic conduction system of the heart is defective.

tendon Any one of many bands of tough, fibrous tissue that attach muscles to bones.

tendon transplant Removal of a tendon from one part of the body and transplantation into the affected area to replace a ruptured tendon that cannot be repaired surgically.

tenesmus Straining, especially painful straining to defecate.

tension headache A type of headache characterized by neck and shoulder muscle tenderness and bilateral pain at the base of the skull and in the forehead; usually treated with non-opioid analgesics such as acetaminophen, aspirin, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs.

teratogenic Tending to produce birth defects.

tetany Continuous contractions of muscle groups; hyperexcitability of nerves and muscles.

tetraplegia Another term for quadriplegia (paralysis that involves all four extremities).

thalamotomy An alternative to stereotactic pallidotomy as a surgical treatment for the patient with Parkinson disease; uses thermocoagulation of brain cells to reduce tremor. Usually only unilateral surgery is performed to benefit the side of the body most affected by the disease.

thalamus A structure within the brain; functions as the "central switchboard" for the central nervous system.

thallium scan A test that is similar to the bone scan but uses the radioisotope *thallium* and is more sensitive in diagnosing the extent of disease in patients with osteosarcoma.

The Joint Commission An organization that offers peer evaluation for accreditation every 3 years for all types of health care agencies that meet their standards. Formerly known as the "Joint Commission for Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO)."

therapeutic exercise A type of exercise that includes carefully planned activities designed to improve muscle strength, muscle tone, and joint range of motion and to reduce pain and improve the patient's psychological health.

thermotherapy Technique for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia that uses a variety of heat methods to destroy excess prostate tissue.

third intention healing Delayed primary closure of a wound with a high risk for infection. The wound is intentionally left open for several days until inflammation has subsided and is then closed by first intention.

thoracentesis The aspiration of pleural fluid or air from the pleural space.

threshold In evaluating hearing, the lowest level of intensity at which pure tones and speech are heard by a patient; in general, the lowest level at which a stimulus is perceived.

thrombectomy Removal of a clot (thrombus) from a blood vessel.

thrombocytopenia A reduction in the number of blood platelets below the level needed for normal coagulation, resulting in an increased tendency to bleed.

thrombophlebitis The presence of a thrombus associated with inflammation; usually occurs in the deep veins of the lower extremities.

thrombosis The formation of a blood clot (thrombus) within a blood vessel.

thrombus A blood clot believed to result from an endothelial injury, venous stasis, or hypercoagulability.

thymectomy Removal of the thymus gland.

thymoma An encapsulated tumor of the thymus gland.

thyrocalcitonin (TCT) A hormone produced and secreted by the parafollicular cells of the thyroid gland to help regulate serum calcium levels; secreted in response to excess plasma calcium.

thyroid storm (thyroid crisis) A life-threatening event that occurs in patients with uncontrolled hyperthyroidism and is usually caused by Graves' disease. Key manifestations include fever, tachycardia, and systolic hypertension.

thyrotoxicosis The condition caused by excessive amounts of thyroid hormones.

thyroxine (T₄) A hormone that is produced by the follicular cells of the thyroid gland and increases metabolism.

Tinel's sign Test that confirms a diagnosis of carpal tunnel syndrome; a positive test causes palmar paresthesias when the area of the median nerve is tapped lightly.

tinnitus A continuous ringing or noise perception in the ears.

titration Adjustment of IV fluid rate on the basis of the patient's urine output plus serum electrolyte values.

TNM (tumor, node, metastasis) System developed by the American Joint Committee on Cancer to describe the anatomic extent of cancers.

toe brachial pressure index (TBPI) Toe systolic pressure divided by brachial (arm) systolic pressure; may be performed instead of or in addition to ankle-brachial index to determine arterial perfusion in the feet and toes.

tolerance A state of adaptation in which exposure to a drug induces changes that result in a decrease in one or more of the drug's effects over time.

tomography An imaging technique that produces planes, or slices, for focus and blurs the images of other structures; different from standard x-rays, which superimpose one structure on another.

tonic Pertaining to a state of stiffening or rigidity of the muscles, particularly of the arms and legs, and immediate loss of consciousness.

tonic seizure A type of generalized seizure characterized by an abrupt increase in muscle tone, loss of consciousness, and loss of autonomic signs; lasts from 30 seconds to several minutes.

tonic-clonic seizure A type of generalized seizure consisting of a tonic phase (characterized by stiffening or rigidity of the muscles and immediate loss of consciousness); this is followed by clonic or rhythmic jerking of the extremities and lasts 2 to 5 minutes. The patient may bite his or her tongue and may become incontinent of urine or feces. Fatigue, confusion, and lethargy may last up to an hour after the seizure.

tonsillitis An inflammation and infection of the tonsils and lymphatic tissues located on each side of the throat.

tophi A collection of uric acid crystals that form hard, irregular, painless nodules on the ears, arms, and fingers of patients with gout.

torsades de pointes A type of ventricular tachycardia that is related to a prolonged QT interval.

total body surface area (TBSA) The total amount of skin surface for one person.

total hysterectomy Removal of the uterus and cervix; the procedure may be vaginal or abdominal.

total joint arthroplasty (TJA) Surgical creation of a joint, or total joint replacement; commonly performed in patients with

osteoarthritis. Also called "total joint replacement (TJR)."

total joint replacement (TJR) See *total joint arthroplasty*.

total parenteral nutrition (TPN) Provision of intensive nutritional support for an extended time; delivered to the patient through access to central veins, usually the subclavian or internal jugular veins.

total thyroidectomy The surgical removal of all of the thyroid tissue.

touch discrimination Part of the neurologic examination. The patient closes his or her eyes while the practitioner touches the patient with a finger and asks that the patient point to the area touched.

toxic and drug-induced hepatitis Liver inflammation resulting from exposure to hepatotoxins (e.g., industrial toxins, alcohol, and medications).

toxic epidermal necrolysis (TEN) A rare acute drug reaction of the skin that results in diffuse erythema and blister formation, with mucous membrane involvement and systemic toxicity.

toxic megacolon Acute enlargement of the colon along with fever, leukocytosis, and tachycardia; usually associated with ulcerative colitis.

toxic multinodular goiter Hyperthyroidism caused by multiple thyroid nodules, which may be enlarged thyroid tissues or adenomas, and a goiter that has been present for several years.

toxic shock syndrome (TSS) A severe illness caused by a toxin produced by certain strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*. It was first recognized in 1980 as related to menstruation and tampon use. It is characterized by abrupt onset of a high fever and headache, sore throat, vomiting, diarrhea, generalized rash, and hypotension. The most common manifestations are skin changes (initially a rash that resembles a severe sunburn and changes to a macular erythema similar to a drug-related rash).

toxin Protein molecule released by bacteria that affects host cell at a distant site. Continued multiplication of a pathogen is sometimes accompanied by toxin production.

trabecular Spongy bone; also called "cancellous bone."

trabeculation An abnormal thickening of the bladder wall caused by urinary retention and obstruction.

tracheostomy The (tracheal) stoma, or opening, that results from a tracheotomy.

tracheotomy The surgical incision into the trachea for the purpose of establishing an airway.

trachoma A chronic conjunctivitis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*.

traction The application of a pulling force to a part of the body to provide reduction, alignment, and rest.

transcellular fluid Any of the fluids in special body spaces, including cerebrospinal fluid, synovial fluid, peritoneal fluid, and pleural fluid.

transcultural nursing The area of study and practice that focuses on the care, health, and illness patterns of people with similarities and differences in their cultural beliefs, values, and practices; also, care that considers the cultural aspects of the patient.

transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) The use of a battery-operated device to deliver small electrical currents to the skin and underlying tissues for pain management; also called "percutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (PENS)."

transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) A form of echocardiography performed transesophageally (through the esophagus); an ultrasound transducer is placed immediately behind the heart in the esophagus or stomach to examine cardiac structure and function.

transferrin An iron-transport protein that can be measured directly or calculated as an indirect measurement of total iron-binding capacity.

transient ischemic attack (TIA) A brief attack (lasting a few minutes to less than 24 hours) of focal neurologic dysfunction caused by a brief interruption in cerebral blood flow, possibly resulting from cerebral vasospasm or transient systemic arterial hypertension. Repeated attacks may damage brain tissue; multiple attacks indicate significant increased risk for brain attack.

transmitted In genetics, the passage of a gene for a specific trait from one human generation to the next.

transmural myocardial infarction An infarction that involves all three layers of cardiac muscle.

transmyocardial laser revascularization A new surgical procedure for patients with unstable angina and inoperable coronary artery disease with areas of reversible myocardial ischemia. After a single-lung intubation, a left anterior thoracotomy is performed and the heart is visualized. A laser is used to create 20 to 24 long, narrow channels through the left ventricular muscle to the left ventricle. The channels eventually allow oxygenated blood to flow from the left ventricle during diastole to nourish the muscle.

transport maximum See *renal threshold*.

transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT) Procedure for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia using high temperatures to heat and destroy excess tissue.

transurethral needle ablation (TUNA) Procedure for treating benign prostatic hyperplasia using low radiofrequency energy to shrink the prostate.

transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP) The traditional "closed" surgical procedure for removal of the prostate. In this procedure, the surgeon inserts a resectoscope (an instrument similar to a cystoscope, but with a cutting and cauterizing loop) through the urethra. The enlarged portion of the prostate gland is then resected in small pieces.

trauma Bodily injury.

trauma activation criteria Certain injury mechanisms associated with life-threatening consequences that serve as criteria for summoning the trauma team for a rapid and coordinated resuscitation response.

trauma center Specialty care facility that provides competent and timely trauma services to patients depending on its designated level of capability.

trauma nursing Nursing specialty that encompasses the continuum of care from injury prevention and prehospital services to acute care, rehabilitation and, ultimately, community reintegration.

trauma system An organized and integrated approach to trauma care designed to ensure that all critical elements of trauma care delivery are aligned to meet the injured patient's needs.

triage In the emergency department, sorting or classifying patients into priority levels depending on illness or injury severity, with the highest acuity needs receiving the quickest evaluation and treatment.

triage officer In a hospital's emergency response plan, the person who rapidly evaluates each patient who arrives at the hospital. In a large hospital, this person is generally a physician who is assisted by triage nurses; however, a nurse may assume this role when physician resources are limited.

tricuspid valve The atrioventricular valve of the heart; separates the right atrium from the right ventricle.

tricyclic antidepressants Drugs used to treat depression.

trigeminy A type of premature complex consisting of a repetitive three-beat pattern; usually occurs as two sequential normal complexes followed by a premature complex and a pause, with the same pattern repeating itself in triplets.

trigger points In patients with fibromyalgia syndrome, tender areas that can typically be palpated to elicit pain in a predictable, reproducible pattern.

triiodothyronine (T₃) A hormone produced by the follicular cells of the thyroid gland.

tropic hormones Hormones secreted by the anterior pituitary gland that stimulate other endocrine glands.

tropical sprue A disease caused by an infectious agent that has not been identified but is thought to be bacterial. Tropical sprue results in malabsorption of fat, folic acid, and vitamin B₁₂ in later stages of the disease.

troponin A myocardial muscle protein released into the bloodstream after injury to myocardial muscle. Because it is not found in healthy patients, any rise in values indicates cardiac necrosis or acute myocardial infarction.

truss A device, usually a pad made with firm material, that is held in place over the hernia with a belt to keep the abdominal contents from protruding into the hernial sac.

tube thoracostomy A method of chest decompression performed after needle thoracostomy in which a chest tube is inserted in

the fifth intercostal space, just anterior to the midaxillary line, to promote air and fluid drainage.

tuberculosis (TB) A highly communicable disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*. It is the most common bacterial infection worldwide.

tumescence The condition of being swollen.

tumor-induced osteomalacia See *oncogenic osteomalacia*.

tunneled central venous catheter A type of catheter used for long-term infusion therapy in which a portion of the catheter lies in a subcutaneous tunnel, separating the points where the catheter enters the vein from where it exits the skin.

turbidity Cloudiness of a solution.

turbinates Three bony projections that protrude into the nasal cavities from the walls of the internal portion of the nose.

turgor The condition of being swollen and congested; indicates the amount of skin elasticity; the normal resiliency of a pinched fold of skin.

Turner's sign Ecchymosis on either flank, which may indicate retroperitoneal bleeding into the abdominal wall.

tympanic A term that describes the high-pitched, loud, musical sound heard over an air-filled intestine; obtained upon percussion of the abdomen.

tympanic membrane The eardrum; a thick, transparent sheet of tissue that provides a barrier between the external ear and the middle ear.

type A gastritis A form of chronic gastritis associated with the presence of antibodies to parietal cells and intrinsic factor. An autoimmune pathogenesis for this type of gastritis has been proposed.

type B gastritis The most common form of chronic gastritis; caused by *Helicobacter pylori* infection; 50% of patients who have gastric ulcers have associated chronic gastritis.

tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs) Drugs with the main action of inhibiting activation of tyrosine kinases. There are many different TKIs. Some are unique to the cell type; others may be present only in cancer cells that express a specific gene mutation. As a result, the different TKI drugs are effective in disrupting the growth of some cancer cell types and not others.

U

U wave In the electrocardiogram, the deflection that follows the T wave and may result from slow repolarization of ventricular Purkinje fibers. When present, it is of the same polarity as the T wave, although generally smaller. Abnormal prominence of the U wave suggests an electrolyte abnormality or other disturbance.

ulcerative colitis (UC) A chronic inflammatory process that affects the mucosal lining of the colon or rectum; one of a group of bowel diseases of unknown etiology characterized by remissions and exacerbations. It can result in

loose stools containing blood and mucus, poor absorption of vital nutrients, and thickening of the colon wall.

umbilical hernia Protrusion of the intestine at the umbilicus; can be congenital or acquired. Congenital umbilical hernias appear in infancy. Acquired umbilical hernias directly result from increased intra-abdominal pressure and are most commonly seen in obese people.

unclassified seizure One of the three broad categories of seizure disorders along with partial seizure and generalized seizure. They occur for no known reason, do not fit into the generalized or partial classifications, and account for about half of all seizure activity; also called "idiopathic seizures."

uncus The inner part of the temporal lobe of the brain that can move downward and cause pressure on the brainstem; the vital sign center.

undermining Separation of the skin layers at the wound margins from the underlying granulation tissue.

unilateral body neglect syndrome In the patient who has had a brain attack, an unawareness of the existence of the paralyzed side. For example, the patient may believe he or she is sitting up straight when actually he or she is leaning to one side. Another typical example is the patient who washes or dresses only one side of the body.

uninhibited bladder May occur with a neurologic problem that affects the cortical bladder center of the brain (frontal lobe), such as brain attack or brain injury. The patient has little sensorimotor control and cannot wait until he or she is on the commode or bedpan before voiding.

Unna boot A wound dressing constructed of gauze moistened with zinc oxide; used to promote venous return in the ambulatory patient with a stasis ulcer and to form a sterile environment for the ulcer. The boot is applied to the affected limb, from the toes to the knee, after the ulcer has been cleaned with normal saline solution and covered with an elastic wrap. The dressing hardens like a cast.

unroofing Lifting or puncturing of the outer surface of a skin lesion to obtain specimens for bacterial culture.

unstable angina Chest pain or discomfort that occurs at rest or with exertion and causes marked limitation of activity; characterized by an increase in the number of attacks and an increase in the intensity of pain. Pain may last longer than 15 minutes or may be poorly relieved by rest or nitroglycerin.

upper esophageal sphincter (UES) The ringlike band of muscle fibers at the upper end of the esophagus. When at rest, the sphincter is closed to prevent air from entering into the esophagus during respiration.

upper GI (gastrointestinal) radiographic series The radiographic visualization of the gastrointestinal tract from the oral part of the pharynx to the duodenojejunal junction; used to detect disorders of structure or function of

the esophagus (barium swallow), stomach, or duodenum.

upper motor neurons Neurons that carry motor impulses from the cerebral cortex to the cerebral nerves. Patients with spinal cord injuries involving upper motor neuron lesions experience muscle spasticity, which can lead to contractures after spinal shock has resolved.

uremia The accumulation of nitrogenous wastes in the blood (azotemia); a result of renal failure, with clinical symptoms including nausea and vomiting.

uremic frost A layer of urea crystals from evaporated sweat; may appear on the face, eyebrows, axilla, and groin in patients with advanced uremic syndrome.

uremic syndrome The systemic clinical and laboratory manifestations of end-stage kidney disease.

ureterolithiasis Formation of stones in the ureter.

ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) The narrow area in the upper third of the ureter at the point at which the renal pelvis becomes the ureter.

ureteroplasty Surgical repair of the ureter.

ureterovesical junction (UVJ) The point at which each ureter becomes narrow as it enters the bladder.

urethral meatus The opening at the endpoint of the urethra.

urethral stricture An obstruction that occurs low in the urinary tract due to decreased diameter of the urethra, causing bladder distention before hydronephrosis and hydronephrosis.

urethritis An inflammation of the urethra that causes symptoms similar to urinary tract infection.

urethroplasty Surgical treatment of the urethral stricture to remove the affected area with or without grafting to create a larger opening.

urgency The feeling that urination will occur immediately.

urgent triage In a three-tiered triage scheme, the category that includes patients who should be treated quickly but in whom an immediate threat to life does not currently exist, such as those with abdominal pain or displaced fractures or dislocations.

urinary tract infection (UTI) An infection in the normally sterile urinary system. The unobstructed and complete passage of urine from the renal and urinary systems is critical in maintaining a sterile urinary tract. When any structural abnormality is present, the risk for damage as a result of infection is greatly increased.

urolithiasis The presence of calculi (stones) in the urinary tract.

urosepsis The spread of an infection from the urinary tract to the bloodstream, resulting in systemic infection accompanied by fever, chills, hypotension, and altered mental status.

urticaria A transient vascular reaction of the skin marked by the development of wheals (hives).

uterine artery embolization Treatment for leiomyomas in which a radiologist uses a percutaneous catheter inserted through the femoral artery to inject polyvinyl alcohol pellets into the uterine artery. The resulting blockage starves the tumor of circulation, allowing it (or them) to shrink.

uterine prolapse Downward displacement of the uterus into the vagina.

uvea The middle layer of the eye, which consists of the choroid, ciliary body, and iris. The choroid has many blood vessels that supply nutrients to the retina.

uveitis Inflammation of part or all of the uvea.

V

vagal maneuver Nonsurgical management of cardiac dysrhythmias that is intended to induce vagal stimulation of the cardiac conduction system, specifically the sinoatrial and atrioventricular nodes. Vagal maneuvers may be attempted to terminate supraventricular tachydysrhythmia.

vagina The collapsible hollow tube with thin, muscular walls lined by mucous membrane and many blood vessels; extends from the vestibule to the uterus. It is the channel for the passage of menstrual flow, allows reception of the penis during intercourse, and allows passage of the fetus during a vaginal birth.

vaginectomy Surgical removal of part or all of the vagina.

vagotomy syndrome Diarrhea that develops as a result of the interruption of vagal fibers to the abdominal viscera during esophageal surgery.

validation therapy For the patient with moderate or severe Alzheimer's disease, the process of recognizing and acknowledging the patient's feelings and concerns without reinforcing an erroneous belief (e.g., if the patient is looking for his or her deceased mother).

Valsalva maneuver A form of vagal stimulation of the cardiac conduction system in which the health care provider instructs the patient to bear down as if straining to have a bowel movement.

variant (Prinzmetal's) angina A type of angina caused by coronary vasospasm (vessel spasm); usually associated with elevation of the ST segment on an electrocardiogram obtained during anginal attacks.

varicocele The surgical removal of a varicocele (a cluster of dilated veins behind and above the testis).

varicose veins Distended, protruding veins that appear darkened and tortuous; common in patients older than 30 years whose occupations require prolonged standing. As the vein wall weakens and dilates, venous pressure increases and the valves become incompetent (defective). The incompetent valves enhance the vessel dilation, and the veins become tortuous and distended.

vas deferens A firm, muscular tube that continues from the tail of each epididymis and is

a reservoir for sperm and tubular fluids. They merge with ducts from the seminal vesicle to form the ejaculatory ducts at the base of the prostate gland. Sperm from the vas deferens and secretions from the seminal vesicles are transported through the ejaculatory duct to mix with prostatic fluids in the prostatic urethra. Also called "ductus deferens."

vascular access device A catheter; a plastic tube placed in a blood vessel to deliver fluids and medications.

vasculitis Blood vessel inflammation.

vasoconstriction Decrease in diameter of blood vessels.

vaso-occlusive event (VOE) A blood vessel obstruction caused by masses of sickled RBCs.

vasopressin Secretion of the posterior pituitary gland, also known as "antidiuretic hormone" or "ADH."

vasospasm A sudden and transient constriction of a blood vessel.

Vaughn-Williams classification System used to categorize antidysrhythmic agents according to their effects on the action potential of cardiac cells.

vegan A vegetarian diet pattern in which only foods of plant origin are eaten.

venous beading A complication of diabetes; the abnormal appearance of retinal veins in which areas of swelling and constriction along a segment of vein resemble links of sausage. Such bleeding occurs in areas of retinal ischemia and is a predictor of proliferative diabetic retinopathy.

venous duplex ultrasonography A noninvasive test using ultrasonic waves; the preferred diagnostic test for deep vein thrombosis.

venous insufficiency Alteration of venous efficiency by thrombosis or defective valves; caused by prolonged venous hypertension, which stretches the veins and damages the valves, resulting in further venous hypertension, edema and, eventually, venous stasis ulcers, swelling, and cellulitis.

venous thromboembolism (VTE) A term that refers to both deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism; obstruction by a thrombus.

ventilation assistance Process or devices to help the patient breathe easily (e.g., mechanical ventilation assistance).

ventral hernia Protrusion of the intestine at the site of a previous surgical incision resulting from inadequate healing. Most often caused by postoperative wound infections, inadequate nutrition, and obesity.

ventricular asystole The complete absence of any ventricular rhythm. There are no electrical impulses in the ventricles and therefore no ventricular depolarization, no QRS complex, no contraction, no cardiac output, and no pulse, respirations, or blood pressure. The patient is in full cardiac arrest.

ventricular fibrillation (VF) A cardiac dysrhythmia that results from electrical chaos in the ventricles; impulses from many irritable foci fire in a totally disorganized manner so

that ventricular contraction cannot occur; there is no cardiac output or pulse and therefore no cerebral, myocardial, or systemic perfusion. This rhythm is rapidly fatal if not successfully terminated within 3 to 5 minutes.

ventricular gallop An abnormal third heart sound that arises from vibrations of the valves and supporting structures and is produced during the rapid passive filling phase of ventricular diastole when blood flows from the atrium to a noncompliant ventricle. In patients older than 35 years, it is an early sign of heart failure or ventricular septal defect.

ventricular remodeling (1) Progressive myocyte (myocardial cell) contractile dysfunction over time; results from activation of the renin-angiotensin system caused by reduced blood flow to the kidneys, a common occurrence in low-output states; (2) after a myocardial infarction, permanent changes in the size and shape of the left ventricle due to scar tissue; such remodeling may decrease left ventricular function, cause heart failure, and increase morbidity and mortality.

ventricular tachycardia (VT) An abnormal heart rhythm that occurs with repetitive firing of an irritable ventricular ectopic focus, usually at a rate of 140 to 180 beats/min or more.

ventriculomyomectomy The surgical excision of a portion of the hypertrophied ventricular septum to create a widened outflow tract in patients with obstructive hypertrophic cardiomyopathy.

ventriculostomy The surgical placement of an intraventricular catheter to drain cerebrospinal fluid in patients with increased intracranial pressure and rapidly deteriorating neurologic function.

vertebroplasty A minimally invasive surgery for managing vertebral fractures in patients with osteoporosis. Bone cement is injected directly into the fracture site to provide immediate pain relief.

vertigo A sense of spinning movement that may result from diseases of the inner ear.

vesicant Chemical that causes tissue damage on direct contact.

vesicant medication A drug that causes tissue damage when extravasated.

vesicle In health care, a small bladder or blister.

vestibule A longitudinal area between the labia minora, the clitoris, and the vagina that contains Bartholin glands and the openings of the urethra, Skene's glands (paraurethral glands), and vagina.

viral hepatitis Inflammation of the liver that results from an infection caused by one of five major categories of viruses (hepatitis A, B, C, D, or E). Viral hepatitis is the most common type and can be either acute or chronic.

viral load testing Test that measures the presence of human immune deficiency virus genetic material (ribonucleic acid) or other viral proteins in the patient's blood.

viral meningitis A type of meningitis that often occurs after viral illnesses such as

measles, herpes simplex, coxsackievirus, and echovirus; it is marked by inflammation over the cerebral cortex, white matter, and meninges. The formation of exudate (common in bacterial meningitis) does not occur, and no organisms are obtained from the cerebrospinal fluid. Also called "aseptic meningitis."

Virchow's triad The occurrence of stasis of blood flow, endothelial injury, or hypercoagulability; often associated with thrombus formation.

viremia The presence of viruses in the blood.

virilization The presence of male secondary sex characteristics.

virtual colonoscopy A noninvasive alternative to the colonoscopy procedure. A scanner is used to view the colon.

virulence A term used to describe the frequency with which a pathogen causes disease (degree of communicability) and its ability to invade and damage a host. Virulence can also indicate the severity of the disease; often used as a synonym for pathogenicity.

visceral proteins Proteins such as albumin that circulate in the bloodstream and may be produced by the liver.

viscous Of thick consistency.

vitaligo An abnormality of the skin characterized by patchy areas of pigment loss with increased pigmentation at the edges. It is seen with primary hypofunction of the adrenal glands and is due to autoimmune destruction of melanocytes in the skin.

vitrectomy The surgical removal of the vitreous.

vitreous body The clear, thick gel that fills the vitreous chamber of the eye (the space between the lens and the retina). This gel transmits light and shapes the eye.

vocational counselor A member of the rehabilitative health care team who assists the patient with job placement, training, or further education.

volutrauma Damage to the lung by excess volume delivered to one lung over the other.

volvulus Obstruction of the bowel caused by twisting of the bowel.

vulva The external female genitalia; extends from the mons pubis to the anal opening.

vulvar self-examination (VSE) A method for self-examination of the external female genitalia for early detection of diseases of the vulva.

vulvectomy Surgical removal of the vulva, labia majora, labia minora, and, possibly, the clitoris.

vulvovaginitis Inflammation of the lower genital tract resulting from a disturbance of the balance of hormones and flora in the vagina and vulva.

W

warm antibody anemia A form of immunohemolytic anemia (in which the immune system attacks a person's own red blood cells for unknown reasons) that occurs with immunoglobulin G antibody excess and may be

triggered by drugs, chemicals, or other autoimmune problems.

warm phase A phase lasting 2 to 3 weeks after peripheral nerve trauma resulting in complete denervation; the extremity is warm, and the skin appears flushed or rosy. The warm phase is gradually superseded by a cold phase.

water brash Reflex salivary hypersecretion that occurs in response to reflux in the patient with gastroesophageal reflux disease.

wean The process of going from ventilatory dependence to spontaneous breathing.

"wearing off" phenomenon Loss of response over time to a medication.

wedge resection Removal of small, localized areas of disease.

Wernicke's aphasia See *receptive aphasia*.

Wernicke's area An important speech area of the cerebrum. It is located in the temporal lobe and plays a significant role in higher-level brain function. It enables the processing of words into coherent thought and recognition of the idea behind written or printed words (language).

Whipple procedure (radical pancreaticoduodenectomy) A surgical treatment for cancer of the head of the pancreas. The procedure entails removal of the proximal head of the pancreas, the duodenum, a portion of the jejunum, the stomach (partial or total gastrectomy), and the gallbladder, with anastomosis of the pancreatic duct (pancreaticojejunostomy), the common bile duct (choledochojejunostomy), and the stomach (gastrojejunostomy) to the jejunum.

white matter In the spinal cord, myelinated axons that surround the gray matter (neuron cell bodies).

Williams position A position in which the patient lies in the semi-Fowler's position and flexes the knees to relax the muscles of the lower back and relieve pressure on the spinal nerve root. This is typically more comfortable and therapeutic for the patient with low back pain.

withdrawal syndrome Symptoms that occur when a patient who is physically dependent on opioids abruptly stops using them. Slowly tapering (weaning) the drug dosage lessens or alleviates the physical withdrawal symptoms in a patient who is opioid dependent. Also called "abstinence syndrome."

withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy (WWLST) The withdrawal or withholding of one or more therapies that might prolong the life of a person who cannot be cured by the therapy; the withdrawal of therapy does not directly cause death. Formerly called "passive euthanasia."

work-related musculoskeletal disorders (MSDs) Disorders caused by heavy lifting and dependent transfers by staff members.

X

xenograft Tissue transplanted (grafted) from another species; for example, a heart valve transplanted from a pig to a human.

xeroradiography A diagnostic x-ray technique in which images are produced electrically rather than chemically, permitting lower exposure times and radiation energies than those of ordinary x-rays. The images exhibit “edge contrast,” which is useful for identifying minute calcifications in the breast.

xerosis Abnormally dry skin.

xerostomia Abnormal dryness of the mouth caused by a severe reduction in the flow of saliva.

x-ray Radiation that is generated by machine.

Z

Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (ZES) The occurrence of upper gastrointestinal tract

ulceration, increased gastric acid secretion, and the presence of a non-beta cell islet tumor of the pancreas, called a “gastrinoma.” Affected people may have more than one gastrinoma.

NCLEX® EXAMINATION CHALLENGES— ANSWER KEY

Chapter 2

- p. 10 B
- p. 13 A, B, C, D, E

Chapter 3

- p. 18 A
- p. 22 A

Chapter 4

- p. 33 C

Chapter 5

- p. 49 D
- p. 52 0.25 mL
- p. 56 B

Chapter 8

- p. 94 B
- p. 104 D

Chapter 9

- p. 113 B, C, D, E
- p. 114 B, C, D, F

Chapter 10

- p. 127 B
- p. 128 B, C, D, E, A
- p. 134 B

Chapter 11

- p. 139 C
- p. 153 D
- p. 148 B, C, D, E
- p. 152 A

Chapter 12

- p. 158 C
- p. 161 B, C

Chapter 13

- p. 171 C
- p. 180 A
- p. 182 C
- p. 187 D
- p. 190 A

Chapter 14

- p. 203 A

Chapter 15

- p. 213 D
- p. 216 125 mL/hr

Chapter 16

- p. 246 B
- p. 247 D
- p. 248 C
- p. 252 C
- p. 254 A

Chapter 17

- p. 266 C
- p. 270 B
- p. 275 D

Chapter 18

- p. 285 D
- p. 289 C
- p. 292 A
- p. 295 B

Chapter 20

- p. 328 B, D, E
- p. 331 A
- p. 336 B, C, D, E, F
- p. 347 C
- p. 350 A

Chapter 21

- p. 369 A
- p. 375 C
- p. 375 C
- p. 377 B

Chapter 22

- p. 386 B
- p. 394 B

Chapter 24

- p. 410 D
- p. 414 C
- p. 421 C
- p. 422 B
- p. 433 C

Chapter 25

- p. 440 C
- p. 443 A, B, D, E

Chapter 26

- p. 454 D
- p. 463 A
- p. 468 A

Chapter 27

- p. 472 B
- p. 477 D
- p. 488 A
- p. 501 C
- p. 507 A

Chapter 28

- p. 515 D
- p. 523 B
- p. 523 A
- p. 526 B
- p. 527 A
- p. 528 C
- p. 532 D
- p. 539 A

Chapter 29

- p. 548 B
- p. 551 D
- p. 555 C
- p. 556 A
- p. 560 C

Chapter 30

- p. 565 A
- p. 570 D
- p. 574 B
- p. 575 C

Chapter 31

- p. 583 B
- p. 584 D
- p. 591 C
- p. 595 D

Chapter 32

- p. 610 A
- p. 617 D
- p. 620 C
- p. 622 B
- p. 631 C
- p. 637 A

Chapter 33

- p. 645 B
- p. 647 D
- p. 657 B

Chapter 34

- p. 667 D
- p. 668 A
- p. 675 C
- p. 679 C
- p. 681 B

Chapter 35

- p. 694 C
- p. 708 C

Chapter 36

- p. 721 B
- p. 731 B
- p. 732 C
- p. 737 C
- p. 738 A, D, C, B, E

Chapter 37

- p. 749 A, B, E
- p. 752 B
- p. 753 B
- p. 763 D

Chapter 38

- p. 775 C
- p. 784 D

- p. 789 B
- p. 795 B
- p. 801 C
- p. 803 C
- p. 804 A

Chapter 39

- p. 812 D
- p. 819 A
- p. 822 B

Chapter 40

- p. 834 B, C, D, F
- p. 840 D
- p. 849 B

Chapter 41

- p. 859 B
- p. 863 D
- p. 866 A

Chapter 42

- p. 873 D
- p. 875 A
- p. 878 D
- p. 881 A
- p. 885 B
- p. 891 C
- p. 896 A
- p. 901 A

Chapter 43

- p. 919 A
- p. 922 B

Chapter 44

- p. 931 D
- p. 936 B, D, E
- p. 951 C
- p. 953 A

Chapter 45

- p. 965 D
- p. 972 B

Chapter 46

- p. 990 D
- p. 994 A, B, C, E
- p. 995 A, C, E, F

Chapter 47

- p. 1007 B
- p. 1013 D
- p. 1017 C
- p. 1026 D
- p. 1035 C

Chapter 48

- p. 1045 D
- p. 1048 C

Chapter 49

p. 1056 D
p. 1059 B
p. 1062 C
p. 1067 B
p. 1070 B
p. 1075 C

Chapter 50

p. 1082 D
p. 1086 C

Chapter 51

p. 1090 D
p. 1096 B
p. 1097 A

Chapter 52

p. 1112 B, C
p. 1117 C

Chapter 53

p. 1124 B
p. 1131 D

Chapter 54

p. 1154 B, C, D
p. 1164 C
p. 1169 C, D, E, F

Chapter 55

p. 1184 C, A, B, D
p. 1187 A

Chapter 56

p. 1195 B
p. 1200 A, C, D, E

Chapter 57

p. 1208 D
p. 1212 A, C, D, E

Chapter 58

p. 1225 B, E, F
p. 1228 D
p. 1234 A, C, E

Chapter 59

p. 1245 D
p. 1251 A, C

Chapter 60

p. 1270 B, C, D
p. 1274 B
p. 1278 C
p. 1287 C

Chapter 61

p. 1299 C, D, E
p. 1305 A

Chapter 62

p. 1320 D
p. 1328 B
p. 1333 A, B, E

Chapter 63

p. 1339 49.1
p. 1344 A, C, D, F

Chapter 64

p. 1364 C
p. 1367 B

Chapter 65

p. 1373 C
p. 1378 D
p. 1380 B
p. 1381 B
p. 1388 A

Chapter 66

p. 1396 C
p. 1403 A
p. 1404 A
p. 1405 B

Chapter 67

p. 1413 C
p. 1416 A
p. 1418 D
p. 1430 C
p. 1431 C
p. 1439 B

Chapter 68

p. 1476 B
p. 1482 C
p. 1486 A

Chapter 69

p. 1494 C
p. 1504 B
p. 1507 D
p. 1515 A

Chapter 70

p. 1523 D
p. 1526 C
p. 1532 D

Chapter 71

p. 1543 C
p. 1546 B
p. 1546 B
p. 1548 D
p. 1551 B
p. 1555 A

Chapter 72

p. 1583 C
p. 1586 B

Chapter 73

p. 1594 B
p. 1603 D

Chapter 74

p. 1614 A
p. 1620 A

Chapter 75

p. 1636 D
p. 1645 A

Chapter 76

p. 1656 A
p. 1665 D

Chapter 2

2-1, From Potter, P.A., & Perry, A.G. (2001). *Fundamentals of nursing* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **2-2**, from Grodner, M., Roth, S.L., & Walkingshaw, B.C. (2012). *Nutritional foundations and clinical applications: A nursing approach* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **2-3**, **2-4**, from Potter, P.A., & Perry, A.G. (2009). *Fundamentals of nursing* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 3

3-3, From the Aging Clinical Research Center (ACRC), a joint project of Stanford University and the VA Palo Alto Health Care System, Palo Alto, CA, funded by the National Institute of Aging and the Department of Veterans Affairs.

Chapter 4

4-1, **4-3**, From Harkreader, H., Hogan, M.A., & Thobaben, M. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 5

5-2, From Melzack, R. (1975). The McGill Pain Questionnaire: Major properties and scoring methods. *Pain*, 1, 272-281; **5-3**, Simple Descriptive Pain Distress Scale, 0-10 Numeric Pain Distress Scale, and Visual Analog Scale redrawn from Acute Pain Management Guideline Panel. (1992). *Acute pain management: Operative or medical procedures and trauma. Clinical practice guideline*. AHCPR Pub. No. 92-0032. Rockville, MD: Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services; Pain Relief Visual Analog Scale redrawn from Fishman, B., Pasternak, S., Wallenstein, S.L., Houde, R.W., Holland, J.C., & Foley, K.M. (1987). The Memorial Pain Assessment Card: A valid instrument for the evaluation of cancer pain. *Cancer*, 60(5), 1151-1158; Percent Relief Scale redrawn from the Brief Pain Inventory. Pain Research Group, Department of Neurology, University of Wisconsin—Madison; **5-4**, CADD-PCA is a registered trademark of Pharmacia Deltec, St. Paul, MN; **5-5**, courtesy Medtronic, Inc., Columbia Heights, MN.

Chapter 6

6-2, Modified from Nussbaum, R., McInnes, R., & Willard, H. (2007). *Thompson & Thompson: Genetics in medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **6-7**, modified from Jorde, L., Carey, J., Bamshad, M., & White, R. (2000). *Medical genetics* (2nd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **6-10**, modified from Jorde, L., Carey, J., & Bamshad, M. (2010). *Medical genetics* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 7

7-1, © 2010. Rona F. Levin & Jeffrey M. Keefer; **7-2**, © 2010. R.E. Burke & R.F. Levin; **7-3**, © 2007. Visiting Nurse Service of New York and Rona F. Levin.

Chapter 8

8-4, From Potter, P., & Perry, A. (2009). *Fundamentals of nursing* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 9

9-1, © 2005. National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization, 2007 Revised. All rights reserved. Reproduction and distribution by an organization or organized group without the written permission of the National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization is expressly forbidden. Visit caringinfo.org for more information.

Chapter 10

10-3, From Henry M., & Stapleton, E. (2010). *EMT prehospital care* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 11

11-1, From Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Michael Cardwell & Carl Barden Venom Laboratory; **11-2**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Sherman Minton, MD; **11-3**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Michael Cardwell & Jude McNally; **11-4**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Indiana University Medical Center; **11-5**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Paul Auerbach, MD; **11-6**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; **11-7**, from Auerbach, P.S. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Cameron Bangs, MD.

Chapter 12

12-2, Courtesy Ann Breslin; **12-3**, courtesy Jeanne McConnell, MSN, RN.

Chapter 13

13-2, **13-7**, **13-10**, ©1992 by M. Linda Workman. All rights reserved.

Chapter 14

14-3, **14-12**, ©1992 by M. Linda Workman. All rights reserved.

Chapter 15

15-1, From Perry, A., & Potter, P. (2010). *Clinical nursing skills & techniques* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **15-2**, courtesy Becton Dickinson Infusion Therapy Systems, Sandy, UT; **15-3**, courtesy AccuVein, LLC; **15-7**, courtesy Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA; **15-11**, courtesy NowMedical, Chadds Ford, PA; **15-12**, from Potter, P., & Perry, A. (2009). *Fundamentals of nursing* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **15-13**, courtesy I-Flow, Inc., Lake Forest, CA; **15-14**, courtesy Venetec International, San Diego, CA; **15-15**, courtesy I.V. House, Hazelwood, MO.

Chapter 16

16-1, From Association of periOperative Registered Nurses: *Comprehensive surgical checklist*. Retrieved October 27, 2010, from www.aorn.org/docs/assets/6014C0F7-B3AB-38C4-C3D370D159B8B068/ComprehensiveSurgicalChecklist.pdf. © 2010. AORN, Inc. Used with permission. **16-2**, **16-6**, courtesy Christiana Care Health Services, Newark, DE; **16-4**, from

Perry, A.G., & Potter, P.A. (2010). *Clinical nursing skills and techniques* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **16-5, A**, courtesy The Kendall Healthcare Company, Mansfield, MA; **16-5, B**, courtesy Venodyne, Inc., Norwood, MA; **16-5, C**, courtesy Huntleigh Healthcare, Eatontown, NJ.

Chapter 17

17-1, Courtesy Christiana Care Health Services, Newark, DE; **17-5**, redrawn with permission by Intuitive Surgical, Inc., 2007.

Chapter 18

18-1, Courtesy Forrest General Hospital, Hattiesburg, MS; **18-2, 18-5**, from Harkreader, H., Hogan, M.A., & Thobaben, M. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **18-3, C, D**, courtesy CR Bard, Inc., Covington, GA.

Chapter 19

19-3, Modified from Goldman, L., & Schafer, A. (Eds.). (2012). *Goldman's Cecil medicine* (24th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 20

20-2, A, From Jebson, L.R., & Coons, D.D. (1998). Total hip arthroplasty. *Surgical Technologist*, 30(10), 12-21; **B**, from Mercier, L.R. (2000). *Practical orthopaedics* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **20-5**, from Damjanov, I. (2006). *Pathophysiology for the health professions* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **20-8**, from Goldman L., & Ausiello, D. (2007). *Cecil medicine* (23rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 21

21-1, From Kumar, V., Abbas, A., & Fausto, N. (2010). *Robbins & Cotran pathologic basis of disease* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **21-4**, from McCance, K.L., & Huether, S.E. (2002). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **21-5**, from The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *HIV surveillance report: Diagnosis of HIV infection and AIDS in the United States and dependent areas*, 2009. Vol. 21, Atlanta: Author; **21-6**, from Marks, J., & Miller, J. (2006). *Lookingbill & Marks' principles of dermatology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **21-7**, from Leonard, P.C. (2009). *Building a medical vocabulary* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.

Chapter 22

22-2, Courtesy Dey, Napa, CA; **22-3**, from Auerbach, P. (2008). *Wilderness medicine* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Sheryl Olson.

Chapter 23

23-6, From American Cancer Society. *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Atlanta, GA: Author.

Chapter 24

24-3, From Weinzwieg, J., & Weinzwieg, N. (2005). *The mutilated hand*. St. Louis: Mosby; **24-4**, from Workman, M.L., & LaCharity, L. (2011). *Understanding pharmacology: Essentials for medication safety*. St. Louis: Saunders; **24-5**, from Kee, J., Hayes, E., & McCuiston, L. (2012). *Pharmacology: A nursing process approach*. St. Louis: Saunders; **24-7**, from Forbes, C.D.,

& Jackson, W.F. (2003). *Colour atlas and text of clinical medicine* (3rd ed.). London: Mosby.

Chapter 25

25-1, A, From deWit, S.C. (2009). *Fundamental concepts and skills for nursing* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **B**, from Elkin, M.C., Perry, A., & Potter, P.A. (2007). *Nursing interventions and clinical skills* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; courtesy Kimberly-Clark Health Care, Roswell, GA.

Chapter 26

26-14, From Marks, J., & Miller, J. (2007). *Lookingbill and Marks' principles of dermatology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 27

27-2, Modified from Swaim, S.F. (1980). *Surgery of traumatized skin*. Philadelphia: Saunders; **27-4**, from Barbara Braden & Nancy Bergstrom. © 1988. Reprinted with permission; **27-5**, illustrations from the National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel and European Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel. (2009). *Pressure ulcer prevention and treatment: Clinical practice guideline*. Washington, DC: NPUAP. Used with permission; **27-9**, from The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA (www.bt.cdc.gov/agent/anthrax/anthrax-images/); **27-10**, from Marks, J., & Miller, J. (2006). *Lookingbill & Marks' principles of dermatology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **27-12**, from Lookingbill, D.P., & Marks, J.G. (2000). *Principles of dermatology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **27-17**, courtesy Stevens Johnson Syndrome Foundation, Littleton, CO.

Chapter 28

28-1, Modified from Moritz, A.R. (1947). Studies of thermal injuries. II: The relative importance of time and surface temperature in causation of cutaneous burns. *American Journal of Pathology*, 23, 695; **28-14**, from Hanke, C.W., & Sattler, G. (2006). *Procedures in cosmetic dermatology series: Liposuction*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 29

29-12, From Young, A.P., & Proctor, D. (2008). *Kinn's the medical assistant: An applied learning approach* (10th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders; **29-13**, from Harkreader, H., Hogan, M.A., & Thobaben, M. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 30

30-3, 30-9, 30-10, From Perry, A.G., & Potter, P.A. (2010). *Clinical nursing skills and techniques* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **30-11**, courtesy Chad Therapeutics, Chatsworth, CA; **30-13**, courtesy Mallinckrodt, Inc., Shiley Tracheostomy Products, St. Louis, MO; **30-14**, courtesy J.T. Posey Company, Arcadia, CA; **30-15**, courtesy Dale Medical Products, Inc., Plainville, MA.

Chapter 31

31-1, From Tardy, M.E. (1997). *Rhinoplasty: The art and science*. Philadelphia: Saunders. Used with permission; **31-2, A**, courtesy Invotec International, Jacksonville, FL; **31-5**, courtesy InHealth Technologies, a division of Helix Medical, LLC, Carpinteria, CA.

Chapter 32

32-3, From Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **32-4**, from Aehlert, B. (2011). *Paramedic practice today: Above and beyond*. St. Louis: Mosby; **32-11**, modified from Gift, A. (1989). A dyspnea assessment guide. *Critical Care Nurse*, 9(8), 79. Used with permission; **32-12**, from Swartz, M.H. (2009). *Textbook of physical diagnosis: History and examination* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **32-13**, courtesy Axcan Pharma, Mont-Saint-Hilaire, Quebec, Canada; **32-18**, courtesy Atrium Medical Corporation, Hudson, NH.

Chapter 33

33-1, Courtesy Covidien, AG, Switzerland; **33-2**, illustration from Workman, M.L., & LaCharity, L. (2011). *Understanding pharmacology*. St. Louis: Saunders; photo from Kumar, V., Abbas, A., Fausto, N., & Aster, J. (2009). *Robbins and Cotran pathologic basis for disease* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **33-3**, from Zitelli, B.J., & Davis, H.W. (2007). *Atlas of pediatric physical diagnosis* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; courtesy Kenneth Schuitt, MD; **33-4**, courtesy Uvex Safety, Smithfield, RI.

Chapter 34

34-2, Modified from Gift, A. (1989). A dyspnea assessment guide. *Critical Care Nurse*, 9(8), 79. Used with permission; **34-3, A**, courtesy Sims Porter, Inc.; **34-4**, © Dräger Medical AG & Co. KG, Lübeck, Germany. All rights reserved. Not to be reproduced without written permission, not to be saved or copied in any electronic format, not to be transmitted electronically or mechanically by way of photocopying or photographing, in any way, shape or form, whether fully or partially; **34-5**, from McCance, K.L. Huether S.E., Brashers, V.L., & Rote, N.S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 36

36-14, 36-16, Courtesy Medtronic, Inc., Minneapolis, MN. Reproduced with permission; **36-15**, courtesy Philips Medical Systems, Andover, MA.

Chapter 37

37-1, From McCance, K.L., & Huether, S.E. (2002). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **37-2**, courtesy Abiomed, Inc., Danvers, MA; **37-3, A, B**, courtesy Medtronic, Inc., Minneapolis, MN; **C** courtesy Baxter Healthcare Corporation, Edwards CVS Division, Santa Ana, CA.

Chapter 38

38-4, From Brooks, M., & Jenkins, M.P. (2008). Acute and chronic ischaemia of the limb. *Surgery* 26(1), 17-20; **38-8**, from Rutherford, R. (2005). *Vascular surgery* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **38-9**, from Forbes, C.D., & Jackson, W.F. (2003). *Colour atlas and text of clinical medicine* (3rd ed.). London: Mosby.

Chapter 40

40-1, From Huether S.E., McCance, K.L., Brashers, V.L., & Rote, N.S. (2008). *Understanding pathophysiology* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 42

42-3, From Feldman, M., Friedman, L., & Brandt, L. (2010). *Sleisenger and Fordtran's gastrointestinal and liver disease* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **42-4**, from Leonard, P.C. (2009). *Building a medical vocabulary: With Spanish translations* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders; **42-7**, from DeWit, S.C. (2009). *Concepts and skills for nursing* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.

Chapter 44

44-1, From Salvo, S.G. (2009). *Mosby's pathology for massage therapists* (2nd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **44-2, A**, from Mini-Mental State Examination © 1975, 1998, 2001 by MiniMental, LLC. All rights reserved. Published 2001 by Psychological Assessment Resources, Inc. May not be reproduced in whole or in part in any form or by any means without written permission of Psychological Assessment Resources, Inc., 16204 N. Florida Ave., Lutz, FL 33549; (800) 331-8378, www4.parinc.com/. **B**, from Seidel, H.M., Ball, J.W., Dains, J.E., Benedict, G.W. (2003). *Mosby's guide to physical examination* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 45

45-5, From Harkreader, H. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing: Caring and clinical judgment* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 47

47-3, From Seidel, H.M., Ball, J.W., Dains, J.E., Flynn, J.A., Solomon, B.S., & Stewart, R.W. (2011). *Mosby's guide to physical examination* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **B**, modified from Stein, H.A., Slatt, B.J., & Stein, R.M. (1994). *The ophthalmic assistant* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby. **47-10**, from Flint, P.W., Haughey, B.H., Lund, V.J., Niparko, J.K., Richardson, M.A., Robbins, K.T., et al. (2010). *Cummings otolaryngology: Head & neck surgery* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby; courtesy Elekta, Inc.

Chapter 48

48-8, Courtesy the National Society to Prevent Blindness; **48-13**, courtesy Medtronic Ophthalmics, Minneapolis, MN.

Chapter 49

49-4, Courtesy John A. Costin, MD; **49-6**, from Patton, K.T., & Thibodeau, G.A. (2010). *Anatomy and physiology* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **49-8**, from Workman, M.L., LaCharity, L., & Kruchko, S.C. (2011). *Understanding pharmacology*. St. Louis: Saunders; courtesy Pfizer, Inc., New York; **49-9**, from Workman, M.L., LaCharity, L., & Kruchko, S.C. (2011). *Understanding pharmacology*. St. Louis: Saunders.

Chapter 52

52-4, Modified from Jarvis, C. (2012). *Physical examination and health assessment* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.

Chapter 54

54-3, 54-4, 54-9, Courtesy Smith & Nephew, Inc., Orthopaedics Divisions, Memphis, TN; **54-5**, from Christensen, B.L., & Kockrow, E.O. (2011). *Adult health nursing* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **54-6**, from McCance, K.L., Huether, S.E., Brashers, V.L., & Rote, N.S. (2010). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **54-13**, courtesy Zimmer, Inc., Warsaw, IN.

Chapter 56

56-1, From Friedman-Kien, A.E., & Cockerell, C.J. (1996). *Color atlas of AIDS* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 59

59-3, From Swartz, M. (2009). *Textbook of physical diagnosis: History and examination* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **59-7**, from Evans, S. (2009). *Surgical pitfalls*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 60

60-3, B, From Perry, A.G., & Potter, P.A. (2006). *Clinical nursing skills & techniques* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; courtesy ConvaTec, Princeton, NJ; **60-5**, courtesy ConvaTec, a Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, Princeton, NJ.

Chapter 63

63-1, From U.S. Department of Agriculture, 2011, www.ChooseMyPlate.gov; **63-2**, © Société des Produits Nestlé S.A., Vevey, Switzerland, Trademark Owners; **63-3, A**, from Lilley, L., Rainforth Collins, S., Harrington, S., & Snyder, J. (2011). *Pharmacology and the nursing process* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby; **B**, from Harkreader, H. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders; courtesy C.R. Bard, Inc., Billerica, MA; **C**, from Harkreader, H. (2007). *Fundamentals of nursing* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders; courtesy Ballard Medical Products, Draper, UT.

Chapter 64

64-4, From Guyton, A., & Hall, J. (2006). *Textbook of medical physiology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 65

65-1, From Mendelhoff, A., & Smith, D.E. (Eds.). (1956). Acromegaly, diabetes, hypermetabolism, proteinuria, and heart failure. Clinical Pathological Conference, *American Journal of Medicine*, 20, 133; **65-2**, from Chabner, D.E. (2011). *The language of medicine* (9th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders; **65-3**, from Wilson J.D., Foster, D., Kronenberg, H., & Larsen, P.R. (1998). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; courtesy Dr. H. Patrick Higgins; **65-4**, from Wenig B.M., Heffess, C.S., & Adair, C.F. (1997). *Atlas of endocrine pathology*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 67

67-6, 67-8, Courtesy MiniMed, Inc., Northridge, CA; **67-7**, courtesy Becton, Dickinson and Company, Franklin Lakes, NJ; **67-9**, from Frykberg, R.G., Zgonis, T., Armstrong, D.G.,

Driver, V.R., Giurini, J.M., Kravitz, S.R., et al. (2006). Diabetic foot disorders: A clinical practice guideline—2006 revision. *The Journal of Foot and Ankle Surgery*, 45(5), S1-S66.

Chapter 68

68-10, Courtesy Verathon Corporation, Bothell, WA.

Chapter 69

69-1, A, Courtesy ConvaTec, A Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, a Division of E.R. Squibb & Sons, Inc., Princeton, NJ; **69-2**, from Pollack, H.M. (2000). *Clinical urography* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **69-3**, modified from Singal, R.K., & Denstedt, J.D. (1997). Contemporary management of ureteral stones. *The Urologic Clinics of North America*, 24(1), 59-70.

Chapter 70

70-2, From Kumar, V., Abbas, A., Fausto, N., & Aster, J. (2010). *Robbins and Cotran pathologic basis of disease* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Chapter 71

71-1, Courtesy Kendall Company, Bothell, WA; **71-5**, courtesy GAMBRO Healthcare, Stockholm, Sweden; **71-10, A**, from Geary, D.F., & Schaefer, F. (2008). *Comprehensive pediatric nephrology*. Philadelphia: Mosby; **71-15**, courtesy Baxter International, Inc., Deerfield, IL.

Chapter 73

73-1, From Swartz, M.H. (2009). *Textbook of physical diagnosis: History and examination* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders; **73-2**, from Mansel, R., & Bundred, N. (1995). *Color atlas of breast disease*. St. Louis: Mosby; **73-3**, from Gallagher, H.S., Leis, H.P. Jr., Snyderman, R.K., & Urban, J.A. (1978). *The breast*. St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 75

75-2, From American Urological Association Practice Guidelines Committee. (2003). Guideline on the management of benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). *Journal of Urology*, 170(2 Pt 1), 530-547; **75-6**, from Seidel H.M., Ball, J.W., Dains, J.E., Flynn, J.A., Solomon, B.S., & Stewart, R.W. (2011). *Mosby's guide to physical examination* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Chapter 76

76-1, 76-2, From Morse, S., Ballard, R., Holmes, K., & Moreland, A. (2003). *Atlas of sexually transmitted diseases and AIDS* (3rd ed.). Edinburgh: Mosby.

- A**
 A delta fiber, 41-43
 AAA; *See* Abdominal aortic aneurysm
 Abacavir, 371, 372b-374b
 Abatacept, 338b-339b, 340
 ABC assessment
 in abdominal trauma, 1258
 in chest trauma, 682, 1162
 in esophageal trauma, 1218
 in fracture, 1150, 1150b
 in spinal cord injury, 969
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025
 in upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1231b
 ABCDE skin assessment, 459
 Abciximab
 for coronary artery disease, 839
 for peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
 for venous thromboembolism, 802
 Abdomen, quadrants of, 1183f, 1183t
 Abdominal aorta, 1466f
 Abdominal aortic aneurysm, 792
 Abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 794-795, 794b
 Abdominal assessment, 1183, 1183f, 1183t
 in cirrhosis, 1297-1298, 1298f
 in colorectal cancer, 1246-1247
 in Crohn's disease, 1281
 in hematologic assessment, 863
 in herniation, 1244
 in kidney evaluation, 1475-1476
 in spinal cord injury, 970
 in urinary incontinence, 1500
 Abdominal bruit, 1184
 Abdominal distention
 in diverticular disease, 1285
 in enteral nutrition, 1346
 in gastroenteritis, 1271b
 in intestinal obstruction, 1255
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1241
 in strangulated hernia, 1243
 Abdominal fistula in chronic pancreatitis, 1328
 Abdominal girth measurement, 1298, 1298f
 Abdominal herniation, 1243-1245, 1243f
 Abdominal mass, 1183b
 in ovarian cancer, 1626
 Abdominal myocutaneous flap, 1604t
 Abdominal pain
 in acute pancreatitis, 1322-1324
 in appendicitis, 1267, 1267f
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in botulism, 1290
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 in cholecystitis, 1317
 in chronic pancreatitis, 1326
 in coral snake envenomation, 142
 in Crohn's disease, 1281
 in diverticulitis, 1285
 evaluation of, 1182
 in gastric cancer, 1235
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1522-1523
 in intestinal obstruction, 1255
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
 in pancreatic cancer, 1330
 Abdominal pain (*Continued*)
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in peritonitis, 1269
 in sickle cell disease, 872
 in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 Abdominal radiography
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256
 in peritonitis, 1269
 Abdominal surgery
 delayed peristalsis after, 290
 for peritonitis, 1269
 skin preparation for, 255f
 Abdominal thrust maneuver, 588f
 Abdominal trauma, 1162, 1258-1260, 1258b
 Abdominal ultrasonography
 in diverticular disease, 1285
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in reproductive assessment, 1584
 Abdominoperineal resection, 1248
 Abducens nerve, 912t
 Abduction, 1112f
 ABGs; *See* Arterial blood gases
 ABI; *See* Ankle-brachial index
 AbioCor Implantable Replacement Heart, 754f
 Ablative surgery
 for bone cancer, 1136
 for cervical cancer, 1625b
 for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 for liver cancer, 1311
 percutaneous alcohol septal ablation in, 768
 percutaneous radiofrequency catheter ablation in, 728
 for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 for thyroid cancer, 1405-1406
 transurethral needle ablation in, 1635
 Abnormal heart sounds, 700-701
 ABO system, 899t
 Abortive therapy in migraine, 929-930, 930t
 Above-knee amputation, 1163f
 Abrasion, corneal, 1057
 Abscess
 in amebiasis, 1288-1289
 anorectal, 1287, 1287b
 brain, 1036
 hepatic, 1310
 inadequate antimicrobial therapy and, 443-444
 intra-abdominal, 1444
 lung, 658
 pancreatic, 1328-1329
 peritonsillar, 644
 prostatic, 1649
 in pyelonephritis, 1523-1524
 regional anesthesia-associated, 276
 in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
 Absence seizure, 932
 Absolute granulocyte count, 307
 Absolute homelessness, 32
 Absolute neutrophil count, 307
 Absorbable sutures, 281
 Absorption, 1178-1179
 Absorption atelectasis, 564, 564b
 Abstinence syndrome, 44-45
 Acalculia, 1009
 Acalculous cholecystitis, 1316
 Acarbose, 1423b-1427b, 1429
 ACC/AHA staging system, 745
 Accelerated graft atherosclerosis, 315
 Acceleration injury, 1021, 1022f, 1148
 Acceleration-deceleration injury, 131-132
 Accessory duct of Santorini, 1180f
 Accessory muscles of respiration, 547
 Accessory nerve, 912t
 Accidental decannulation, 571, 571b, 575b
 Accidental extubation, 675
 Acclimatization, 151
 Accolate; *See* Zafirlukast
 Accommodation, 1043
 Accutane; *See* Isotretinoin
 AccuVein AV300 vein illumination device, 214, 214f
 ACE inhibitors; *See* Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors
 Acebutolol, 723b-726b
 Acetaminophen, 51
 for fever, 446
 for lupus, 346
 for migraine, 929-930
 nephrotoxicity of, 1475
 for osteoarthritis pain, 322
 for sinusitis, 642
 Acetazolamide, 152
 Acetoacetic acid, 1420
 Acetone, 1413, 1420
 Acetylcholine, 941
 Acetylcholine receptor antibodies, 992
 Acetylcholinesterase, 944, 952
 Acetylcysteine, 619
 Achilles' reflex, 917f
 Achilles tendon rupture, 1172
 Achlorhydria, 1234
 Acid burn, 518
 Acid deficit, 207, 207f
 Acid suppression
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1231-1232
 in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234
 Acid-base assessment, 199b, 204b
 Acid-base balance, 196-201
 acids and, 197, 197f
 bases and, 197
 bicarbonate ions and, 198, 198f
 buffers and, 197-198, 197f-198f
 carbon dioxide and hydrogen ions and, 198-199, 198f-199f
 kidney role in regulation of, 1468
 postoperative assessment of, 289
 regulatory actions and mechanisms in, 199-201, 199b, 200t
 chemical, 200
 compensation process and, 201
 kidney and, 201
 respiratory, 200-201, 201f
 sources of acids and bicarbonate, 199
 Acid-base imbalance, 202-209
 acidosis in, 202-204, 203t, 204b
 combined metabolic and respiratory, 204
 history in, 204
 laboratory assessment in, 205-206, 205b, 206f
 metabolic, 202-203
 physical assessment in, 204-205, 204b
 psychosocial assessment in, 205
 respiratory, 203-204, 206-207
 alkalosis in, 207-208, 207f, 207t, 208b
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
 older adult and, 202b
 Acidosis, 202-204, 203t, 204b
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
 Acidosis (*Continued*)
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
 combined metabolic and respiratory, 204
 in diabetic ketoacidosis, 1456
 history in, 204
 in hypovolemic shock, 813
 laboratory assessment in, 205-206, 205b, 206f
 metabolic, 202-203, 203t
 in chronic kidney disease, 1551
 combined respiratory and, 197-198
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 in intestinal obstruction, 1254
 laboratory assessment in, 205, 205b
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 physical assessment in, 204-205, 204b
 psychosocial assessment in, 205
 respiratory, 203-204, 203t, 206-207
 combined metabolic and, 197-198
 laboratory assessment in, 205, 205b
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 Acid(s), 197, 197f
 kidney formation of, 201
 sources of, 199
 Acinus, 546, 547f
 Aciphex; *See* Rabeprazole
 Acitretin, 353
 Acne, 508-509, 1385-1386
 Acorn cardiac support device, 754
 Acoustic neuroma, 1031, 1097
 Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 358-380
 antibody tests in, 368-369
 classification of, 360, 360t
 community-based care in, 378-380
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
 confusion in, 377-378
 diarrhea in, 376-377
 drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
 endocrine complications in, 367, 368t
 genetic considerations in, 360b
 health care resources for, 380
 history in, 365
 HIV genotype test in, 369b
 home care management in, 378-379, 379b
 immune enhancement for, 375
 incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
 infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
 infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
 key features of, 365b
 lymphocyte counts in, 368
 malignancies in, 367, 367f
 nutrition and, 376
 older adult and, 361b, 375b
 opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
 oral disorders in, 1193
 oral hairy leukoplakia in, 1195
 oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
 pain management in, 376
 parenteral transmission of, 362-363
 perinatal transmission of, 363
 postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
 progression of, 361
 psychosocial assessment in, 368
 psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
 self-esteem and, 378
 sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
 skin integrity and, 377

Page numbers followed by "f" indicate figures, "t" indicate tables, and "b" indicate boxes.

- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
(*Continued*)
social contact and, 378
teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
testing for, 363-364, 364b
transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
viral load testing in, 369
women and, 361b
- Acromegaly, 1374, 1375f, 1376b
- Actemra; *See* Tocilizumab
- ACTH; *See* Adrenocorticotrophic hormone
- Acticoat, 534b-535b
- Actinic keratosis, 502, 502t
- Actinic lentigo, 456f
- Activated partial thromboplastin time
perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
in pulmonary embolism, 665
before unfractionated heparin therapy, 800, 800b
- Activated protein C, 824
- Active euthanasia, 119
- Active immunity, 312, 435
- Active range of motion, 1111-1112
- Activities of daily living
bone cancer and, 1136
dyspnea and, 551t
myasthenia gravis and, 994
peripherally inserted central catheter and, 217
pressure ulcer and, 482
rehabilitation and, 94
spinal cord injury and, 974
- Activity
after hysterectomy, 1620
in asthma, 611
coronary artery disease and, 833
heart failure and, 756-757
leukemia and, 890, 890b
older adult and, 17-18, 18f
postoperative, 294
- Activity therapist, 91
- Activity tolerance
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621-622
in coronary artery disease, 840-841, 840b-841b
- Activity-exercise pattern
in acid-base assessment, 204b
in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
in endocrine assessment, 1366b
in hematologic assessment, 861b
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110b
in neurologic assessment, 914b
in respiratory assessment, 550b
- Actonel; *See* Risedronate
- Actoplus Met, 1423b-1427b
- Actos; *See* Pioglitazone
- Acular; *See* Ketorolac
- Acu-Moxa; *See* Acupuncture and moxibustion
- Acupoints, 12-13
- Acupressure, 12-13
for migraine, 931
- Acupuncture, 12-13
for migraine, 931
for pain management, 61
- Acupuncture and moxibustion, 1242
- Acute abdomen series, 1185-1186
- Acute adrenal insufficiency, 1381-1382
in Cushing's disease, 1389
emergency care in, 1382b
- Acute bacterial prostatitis, 1649
- Acute care center in disaster, 159
- Acute cholecystitis, 1316, 1316f
- Acute compartment syndrome
in abdominal trauma, 1259
fracture and, 1145-1146, 1146b
monitoring for, 1156, 1157b
- Acute coronary syndromes, 701, 829-831, 830f-831f
- Acute gastritis, 1220-1221, 1222b
- Acute gastroduodenal ulcer after burn injury, 517
- Acute glaucoma, 1063
- Acute glomerulonephritis, 1527, 1527t, 1528b
after streptococcal infection, 642, 643t
- Acute gout, 349
- Acute hematogenous osteomyelitis, 1131
- Acute idiopathic polyneuritis, 987
- Acute inflammatory bowel disorders, 1266-1272
appendicitis in, 1267-1268, 1267b, 1267f
gastroenteritis in, 1270-1272, 1270t, 1271b-1272b
peritonitis in, 1268-1270, 1268b-1269b
- Acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, 987
- Acute ischemic stroke, 1014
- Acute kidney injury, 1538-1541
abdominal aortic aneurysm resection-related, 794
after liver transplantation, 1312t
characteristics of, 1538t
classification of risk for, 1538-1539, 1539t
continuous renal replacement therapy for, 1546
dialysis therapies for, 1545-1546, 1545f
drug therapy for, 1543, 1544b
etiology of, 1540
health promotion and maintenance in, 1540-1541
history in, 1541
imaging assessment in, 1543
incidence and prevalence of, 1540
kidney biopsy in, 1543
laboratory assessment in, 1542-1543, 1542b
nutrition therapy for, 1543-1545
pathophysiology of, 1538-1540
phases of, 1540t
physical assessment in, 1541-1542, 1541b
posthospital care in, 1546
potentially nephrotoxic substances and, 1540t
in tumor lysis syndrome, 432-433
types of, 1539-1540, 1539t
volume depletion in, 1541b
- Acute leukemia, 882b, 883-884
- Acute low back pain, 962
- Acute lung injury, 671, 672t
- Acute lymphocytic leukemia, 881
- Acute mountain sickness, 151
- Acute myelogenous leukemia, 881
- Acute myocardial infarction, 829-831
cardiac rehabilitation after, 851, 851b
chest pain in, 696t
COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b
electrocardiographic changes and patterns in, 831f
fibrinolytic drugs for, 862
heart failure after, 842, 842t
home care management after, 850b
key features of, 835b
older adult and, 835b
reperfusion therapy for, 839-840
risk in diabetes mellitus, 1413
during surgery, 243-244
twelve-lead electrocardiogram in, 835
- Acute nephritic syndrome, 1527
- Acute normovolemic hemodilution, 901
- Acute osteomyelitis, 1132, 1132b
- Acute otitis media, 1092
- Acute pain, 41
characteristics of, 40t
fentanyl for, 52
in peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230
physical assessment in, 46
psychosocial assessment in, 40
- Acute pancreatitis, 1321-1322
community-based care in, 1325-1326
complications of, 1322, 1322t, 1324b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1322
history in, 1322-1323
imaging assessment in, 1324
incidence and prevalence of, 1322
laboratory assessment in, 1323-1324, 1323t
nutrition in, 1325
pain management in, 1324-1325
pathophysiology of, 1321-1322, 1321f
physical assessment in, 1323, 1323b
psychosocial assessment in, 1323
respiratory status in, 1325b
- Acute paronychia, 465
- Acute pericarditis, 765
- Acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 791-792, 792b
- Acute pharyngitis, 642
- Acute phase of burn, 530
burn wound infection and, 533-536, 534b-535b
cardiopulmonary assessment in, 530
immune assessment in, 530, 530t-531t
maintenance of mobility in, 536-538, 537f
musculoskeletal assessment in, 530
neuroendocrine assessment in, 530
positioning to prevent contractures in, 537b
supporting self-image in, 538
weight loss control in, 536
wound care in, 531-533, 532t, 533f
- Acute protein-energy malnutrition, 1340
- Acute pyelonephritis, 1523, 1524b
- Acute radiation cystitis, 1640
- Acute rehabilitation, 90
- Acute rejection, 315
of kidney transplant, 1570, 1570t
of liver transplant, 1312t
- Acute renal failure; *See* Acute kidney injury
- Acute respiratory distress syndrome, 671-672, 672b, 672t
burn-related, 529-530
in septic shock, 823
- Acute respiratory failure, 669-671, 670t, 671f
- Acute sialadenitis, 1200-1201
- Acute thyroiditis, 1404
- Acute transfusion reactions, 900-901
- Acute tubular necrosis, 1539, 1570
- Acute viral rhinitis, 641
- Acyclovir
for Bell's palsy, 1001
for genital herpes, 1657
for herpes simplex stomatitis, 1195
for viral encephalitis, 941
for viral skin infection, 494
- Adalat PA; *See* Nifedipine
- Adalimumab
for Crohn's disease, 1282
for psoriasis, 500, 501b
for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 340
for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Adam's apple, 545f
- Adaptive devices for functional mobility, 99, 100t
- Adaptive immunity, 312
- Addiction, 44-45
- Addisonian crisis, 1381-1382
- Addison's disease, 1382, 1382b
- Add-on device in infusion therapy, 221
- Adduction, 1112f
- Adenine, 67, 67f
- Adenocarcinoma
colorectal, 1245
esophageal, 1211-1212
gastric, 1234
prostate, 1637
renal, 1532
- Adenocard; *See* Adenosine
- Adenohypophysis, 1361, 1372
- Adenoidectomy, 644
- Adenoids, 544f, 545
- Adenoma
pituitary, 1374
testicular, 1643
- Adenosine, 723b-726b, 733
- Adenosine triphosphate, 862
- ADH; *See* Antidiuretic hormone
- Adhesive transparent film dressing, 486t
- Adiponectin, 1349
- Adipose tissue, 247, 452
- Adjustable gastric band, 1353, 1354f
- Adjuvant analgesics, 50t, 58-59
- Adjuvant therapy
for breast cancer, 1604-1607
for cancer, 414
- Administration set, 220-222, 222f, 225
- Administrative review after critical event, 163
- Adrenal cortex, 1362, 1362f
hormones secreted by, 1359t, 1362t
interaction with hypothalamus and anterior pituitary, 1360-1361, 1360f
- Adrenal crisis, 1381
- Adrenal Cushing's disease, 1385
- Adrenal gland, 1362-1363, 1362f, 1362t-1363t, 1466f
hyperfunction of, 1384-1385
Cushing's disease in, 1384-1385, 1384f, 1385b, 1385t
hyperaldosteronism in, 1390
pheochromocytoma in, 1390-1391
hypofunction of, 1381-1382
drug therapy for, 1383, 1384b
emergency care in, 1382b
history in, 1382
imaging assessment in, 1383
laboratory assessment in, 1383, 1383b
pathophysiology of, 1381-1382, 1382t
physical assessment in, 1382, 1382b, 1383f
psychosocial assessment in, 1383
- Adrenal glucocorticoids
for rheumatoid arthritis, 340
role in bone growth and metabolism, 1108
- Adrenal insufficiency
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367
after nephrectomy, 1533
- Adrenal medulla, 1362-1363, 1362f
- Adrenal steroids, 1362
- Adrenalectomy, 1387
- Adrenalin; *See* Epinephrine
- Adrenal-mediated hypertension, 777
- Adrenergic agonists for glaucoma, 1066b-1067b
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone, 1361t, 1362
corticotropin-releasing hormone stimulation of, 1360-1361, 1360f
deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
overproduction of, 1374, 1376b
paraneoplastic syndromes associated with lung cancer and, 631t
- Adrenocorticotrophic hormone stimulation test, 1383
- Adriamycin; *See* Doxorubicin
- Adrucil; *See* 5-Fluorouracil
- Adsorbocarpine; *See* Pilocarpine
- Adult health nursing, 1
- Adult respiratory distress syndrome, 671
- Advance directives, 107-108, 278, 757
- Advanced Cardiac Life Support, 127, 127t, 729, 736-737
- Advanced cirrhosis, 1296
- Advanced Disaster Life Support, 158
- Advanced older adult population, 16

- Advancing Research and Clinical Practice through Close Collaboration model of evidence-based practice, 83-84
- Adventitious breath sounds, 554, 555t
- Adverse drug effects, 20, 21t
- Adverse event during emergency care, 125
- Advicor, 775
- Aerophagia, 1211
- Aerosol inhaler, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
- Aerosol mask, 567-568, 568t
- Aerosolization of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, 653, 654f
- Aesthetic plastic surgery, 505
- Afferent arteriole, 1467, 1467f-1468f, 1469t, 1470f
- Afferent loop syndrome, 1237
- Afferent neuron, 906
- Afferent pathway, 910
- Afinitor; *See* Everolimus
- Africanized bees, 145
- After-drop in hypothermia, 149
- Afterload, 690, 747, 751
- Age
- bone healing and, 1145b
 - cancer development and, 404-405, 405b
 - coronary artery disease and, 831b
 - increased surgical risk with, 244t
 - potassium loss and, 184
 - urinary tract infection and, 1490t
- Age-related macular degeneration, 1068
- Agglutination, 311, 311f
- Aggrastat; *See* Tirofiban
- Aging
- cardiovascular changes with, 692, 692b
 - endocrine changes with, 1365, 1365b
 - eye changes with, 1043-1044, 1043b, 1044f
 - fluid balance changes with, 170b
 - gastrointestinal changes with, 1180-1181, 1181b
 - hearing changes with, 1079, 1080b
 - hematologic changes with, 860
 - immune function changes with, 304b
 - increasing complications in burn and, 521b
 - musculoskeletal changes with, 1109, 1109b
 - neurologic changes with, 911-913, 912b
 - renal changes with, 1472, 1473b
 - reproductive system changes in, 1578, 1579b
 - respiratory changes with, 548, 549b
 - with spinal cord injury, 975b
- Agitation
- in Alzheimer's disease, 953
 - management in end-of-life care, 115, 115b
- Agnosia
- in Alzheimer's disease, 948
 - in stroke, 1009-1011
- Agaphia, 1009
- AIDS; *See* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
- AIDS dementia complex, 368
- AIDS wasting syndrome, 368
- Air embolism
- central venous catheter-related, 231t
 - changing administration set and, 225
- Air warming and humidification in tracheostomy, 574, 574b
- Airborne precautions, 440, 442t
- in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 - in tuberculosis, 657, 657f
- Airborne transmission, 436
- Air-fluidized therapy, 101
- Airway, 546, 546f-547f
- direct injury in burn, 521
 - primary survey and, 132-134, 132b, 132f, 134t
- Airway assessment
- after discharge from PACU, 288b
 - in burn injury, 521-522, 521t
 - in facial trauma, 583
 - in laryngeal trauma, 586, 586b
- Airway management
- in burn injury, 525-526
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618-621, 619b
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989, 989b
 - in laryngeal trauma, 586, 586b
 - in lung cancer, 637-638
 - in oral cancer, 1197, 1199b
 - postoperative, 293-294
 - in bariatric surgery, 1354
 - in head and neck surgery, 592 - in spinal cord injury, 971, 971b
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1025, 1025b
- Airway obstruction, 586-588, 588f
- burn-related, 521t
 - in facial trauma, 583
 - in head and neck cancer, 590-594
 - in pharyngitis, 643b
 - in pneumonia, 651
 - respiratory acidosis and, 203
 - in status asthmaticus, 611
 - in tonsillitis, 644
 - in vocal cord paralysis, 585
- Airway pressure-release ventilation, 672-673, 678
- Akarpine; *See* Pilocarpine
- AKI; *See* Acute kidney injury
- Akinesia, 941
- Akinetic seizure, 932
- Alanine aminotransferase
- in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
 - in cirrhosis, 1298, 1299t
 - in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185
 - in hepatitis, 1308
 - normal adult range for, 1186b
- Alarm system of ventilator, 679-680, 680t
- Albumin, 856
- in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 - as buffer, 200
 - in cirrhosis, 1298-1299
 - levels in burn assessment, 524b
 - normal adult range for, 1186b
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 336b
- Albuminuria
- in diabetes mellitus, 1413, 1450
 - in diabetic nephropathy, 1531
- Albuterol
- for asthma, 607b-608b, 609
 - for bronchospasm in bee sting, 146
- Alcohol
- acute pancreatitis and, 1323
 - chronic gastritis and, 1221
 - coronary artery disease and, 833
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1439
 - esophageal cancer and, 1212
 - hypoglycemia and, 1453
 - interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 - older adult and, 24-25
 - osteoporosis and, 1121
- Alcohol-based hand rubs, 438
- Alcoholic cirrhosis, 1294
- Alcoholic hepatitis, 1296
- Alcohol-Related Problems Survey, 24-25
- Aldactone; *See* Spironolactone
- Aldolase, 1114b
- Aldosterone, 171, 1362
- hyperaldosteronism and, 1390
 - impaired cortisol secretion and, 1381
 - influence on kidney function, 1471, 1471t
 - in regulation of water and sodium, 1467-1468, 1468f
- Aldosterone receptor antagonists, 781b-782b, 783
- Alefacept, 353, 500, 501b
- Alendronate
- for osteoporosis, 1125, 1125b-1126b
 - for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Alexia, 1009
- Alfentanil, 274t, 276
- Alfuzosin, 1633
- ALG; *See* Antilymphocyte globulin
- Alginate dressing, 486t
- Alginic acid and sodium bicarbonate, 1207b
- Alimentary canal, 1178
- Alimta; *See* Pemetrexed
- Aliskiren, 781b-782b, 783
- Alkali burn, 518
- Alkaline phosphatase, 1114, 1114b
- in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
 - in bone cancer, 1135
 - in cirrhosis, 1299t
 - normal adult range for, 1186b
 - in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Alkaline reflux gastropathy, 1236-1237
- Alkalosis, 207-208, 207f, 207t, 208b
- combined metabolic and respiratory, 205b
 - metabolic, 207, 207t, 1254
 - respiratory, 151, 207, 207t
- Alkeran; *See* Melphalan
- Alkylating agents, 414, 415t-416t, 1606t
- ALL; *See* Acute lymphocytic leukemia
- Allele, 68, 69f
- Allerdryl; *See* Diphenhydramine
- Allergen in allergic rhinitis, 384, 385f
- Allergic asthma, 603, 629b
- Allergic conjunctivitis, 1056
- Allergic rhinitis, 384-385, 385f, 641
- Allergic transfusion reaction, 901
- Allergy, 384-391
- allergic rhinitis in, 384-385, 385f
 - anaphylaxis in, 387-391, 812
 - in bee sting, 145
 - cultural considerations in, 388b
 - emergency care in, 389, 390b
 - key features of, 389b, 389f
 - pathophysiology of, 387, 388t
 - prevention of, 387-388, 388b, 388f
 - to antibiotics, 446b, 446t
 - to benzathine penicillin G, 1656b
 - integumentary assessment and, 457-458
 - intraoperative care and, 278
 - latex, 391, 439
 - to monoclonal antibodies, 430
 - respiratory assessment and, 550, 550b
 - to transfusion, 278
- Allergy testing, 385-386
- Allogeneic bone marrow transplantation, 885, 1607
- Allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, 880
- Allogeneic transplant, 885, 886t
- Allograft
- in bone cancer, 1136
 - for burn wound, 532
- Allopurinol
- for gout, 350
 - for hyperoxaluria, 1511
 - interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
- Alopecia, chemotherapy-related, 419, 422-424, 633, 884, 1623
- Alosetron, 1242, 1242b
- Aloxil; *See* Palonosetron
- ALP; *See* Alkaline phosphatase
- Alpha adrenergic receptors, 1363, 1363t
- Alpha cell, 1364f, 1411
- Alpha globulin, 336b
- Alpha particles, 411, 411f
- 5-Alpha reductase inhibitors, 1633, 1633b
- Alpha-1 selective blocking agents, 1633, 1633b
- Alpha-adrenergic antagonists, 784
- Alpha-antitrypsin deficiency, 613, 613b, 613t
- Alpha-fetoprotein
- in liver cancer, 1311
 - in uterine cancer, 1622
- Alphagan; *See* Brimonidine tartrate
- Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, 1423b-1427b, 1429
- Alprazolam, 58
- ALS; *See* Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
- ALT; *See* Alanine aminotransferase
- Alteplase, 665, 666b
- Altitude-related illnesses, 150-152, 151b-152b
- Altretamine, 415t-416t, 418t
- Aluminum carbonate gel, 1544b
- Aluminum hydroxide gel, 1544b
- Aluminum salts
- for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
 - for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
- Alveolar duct, 546, 546f
- Alveolar-capillary diffusion, 203-204
- Alveolitis, 627
- Alveolus, 546, 546f, 549b
- Alzheimer's disease, 23, 946-955
- behavioral problems in, 954t
 - caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
 - chronic confusion in, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
 - genetic considerations in, 947b
 - health care resources for, 955
 - health teaching in, 955
 - history in, 947-948, 948t
 - home care management in, 954-955
 - imaging assessment in, 950
 - injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
 - laboratory assessment in, 950
 - pathophysiology of, 946-947
 - physical assessment in, 948-949, 948b, 949f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 949-950
- Amantadine
- for influenza, 645
 - for Parkinson disease, 944
- Amaryl; *See* Glimepiride
- Amaurosis fugax, 1011
- Ambien; *See* Zolpidem tartrate
- Ambulation
- after burn injury, 537
 - after vision loss, 1074
 - postoperative, 294
- Ambulatory aids, 97-98, 98b, 98f
- Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring, 784
- Ambulatory pH monitoring in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
- Ambulatory pump, 222
- Ambulatory surgery, 240
- AMD; *See* Age-related macular degeneration
- Amebiasis, 1288
- Amebic hepatic abscess, 1310
- Amebic meningoencephalitis, 940
- Amenorrhea, 1578
- in cirrhosis, 1298
 - in hypopituitarism, 1372
- American College of Cardiology staging system, 745
- American College of Gastroenterologists classification of ulcerative colitis severity, 1273t
- American Heart Association staging system, 745
- American Sign Language, 1104
- American Society of Anesthesiologists physical status system, 271
- Amersol; *See* Ibuprofen
- Amevive; *See* Alefacept
- Amidate; *See* Etomidate
- Amiloride
- for hypertension, 780
 - for hypokalemia, 186
- Amino acids, 70, 70f, 70t

- Aminoglycosides**
for infection prevention in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
nephrotoxicity of, 1451, 1540t
- Aminophylline**, 610
- Aminosilicates**, 1274
- Amiodarone**, 723b-726b, 732
for atrial fibrillation, 727
for cardiac arrest, 734b
damaging effects on thyroid gland, 1402
idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis and, 628
for valvular heart disease, 761
venous irritation and, 211b
- Amisulpride**
after head and neck surgery, 593
for Alzheimer's disease, 952
for fibromyalgia, 354
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for pain management, 58
- Amitria**; *See* Lubiprostone
- AML**; *See* Acute myelogenous leukemia
- Amlodipine**, 775, 780, 781b-782b
- Ammonia**
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185
kidney formation of, 201
levels in cirrhosis, 1298-1299, 1299t
normal adult range for, 1186b
- Amnesia**, 271
in complex partial seizure, 932-933
in traumatic brain injury, 1024
- Amniotic membrane** for burn wound dressing, 532
- Amoxicillin**
for anthrax, 659, 659b
for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
for sinusitis, 642
for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Amoxicillin/clavulanate**, 1495b-1496b
- Amphiarthrodial joint**, 1108
- Amphojel**; *See* Aluminum hydroxide gel
- Amphotericin B**
for esophagitis in HIV infection, 376
for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
- Amplifier**, 1100
- Ampulla of Vater**, 1180f
- Amputation**, 1163-1168
body image and lifestyle adaptation in, 1167-1168
collaborative care in, 1165-1166, 1166b, 1168b
community-based care in, 1168, 1168b
complications of, 1164, 1164b
in diabetes mellitus, 1446
diagnostic assessment in, 1165
emergency care in, 1165
health promotion and maintenance in, 1164-1165
infection prevention in, 1166
levels of, 1163-1164, 1163f, 1164b
mobility and prosthesis in, 1166-1167, 1167f
physical assessment in, 1165
psychosocial assessment in, 1165
types of, 1163
- AMS**; *See* Acute mountain sickness
- Amulet**, 36-37, 37f
- Amylase**, 1323
- Amylin analog**, 1423b-1427b, 1430
- Amyloid beta protein precursor**, 950
- Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis**, 983-984, 983b-984b
- Anabolic effects of insulin**, 1365t
- Anaerobic metabolism**, 199, 812
- Anakinra**, 338b-339b, 340
- Anal fissure**, 1287-1288
- Anal fistula**, 1288
- Analgesia**, 271
- Analgesia team**, 40
- Analgesics**
adjuvant, 58-59
for biliary pain, 1318
for brain tumor, 1033
classification of, 50t
epidural, 56-57, 58f, 963
for external otitis, 1090
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
intrathecal, 57-58
for chronic back pain, 965
in spinal fusion, 963
non-opioid, 49-51
opioid, 50t, 51-58, 53t
for acute pancreatitis, 1324
for anesthesia, 274t
for fracture pain, 1154
overdose of, 299b
for pain in HIV infection and AIDS, 376
parenteral routes of, 54-58, 55t-56t
for postoperative pain, 297
side effects of, 53-54, 53t
for urolithiasis, 1510
patient-controlled, 54-56, 54f
preemptive, 41
routes of administration of, 55t-56t
for sickle cell crisis, 874
for sinusitis, 642
- Anaphylactoid reaction**, 384
- Anaphylaxis**, 812
in bee sting, 145
cultural considerations in, 388b
emergency care in, 389, 390b
key features of, 389b, 389f
pathophysiology of, 387, 388t
prevention of, 387-388, 388b, 388f
- Anaplastic thyroid carcinoma**, 1405
- Anasarca**, 697
- Anaspaz**; *See* Hyoscyamine
- Anastomosis**
in bariatric surgery, 1354b
in colorectal cancer surgery, 1249
in total gastrectomy, 1236f
- Anastrozole**, 425
- Anatomic dead space**, 565
- Androblastoma**, 1643
- Androgen deprivation therapy**, 1640
- Androgen therapy**, 1373
- Androgen(s)**, 1362
for hormonal manipulation of cancer, 425t
prostate cancer and, 1637
- Anectine**; *See* Succinylcholine
- Anemia**, 857, 870-878
after total hip arthroplasty, 327
aplastic, 878
chemotherapy-related, 419, 421
in chronic kidney disease, 1549
clinical manifestations of, 871b
in colorectal cancer, 1246
common causes of, 870t
in Crohn's disease, 1281
in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
folic acid deficiency, 878
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, 876
immunohemolytic, 876
iron deficiency, 876-877, 877b
in leukemia, 881
in older adult, 876b
pernicious, 1221
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
in sickle cell disease, 870-878, 870t
community-based care in, 875-876
etiology and genetic risk in, 871, 871f
history in, 872-873
imaging assessment in, 873
incidence and prevalence of, 872
infection prevention in, 874
laboratory assessment in, 873
multiple organ dysfunction syndrome in, 874-875
pain in, 873-874, 874b
- Anemia (Continued)**
pathophysiology of, 870-876, 871f
physical assessment in, 872-873
pregnancy and, 875b
psychosocial assessment in, 873
vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, 877-878, 877f
- Anergy**, 366-367, 655
- Aneroid pressure manometer**, 574, 574f
- Anesthesia**, 270-277
advantages and disadvantages of various types, 272t
allergy to, 278
emergency care in malignant hyperthermia, 273b
general, 271-275, 272t, 274t
local or regional, 275-276, 275t, 276f-277f
moderate sedation, 276-277, 277t
for pain in burn injury, 528
- Anesthesia station**, 268f
- Anesthesiologist**, 264
- Aneuploidy**, 402-403
- Aneurysm**, 792-796
in arteriovenous fistula, 1562
cerebral, 1519
community-based care in, 795-796
critical rescue in, 795b
imaging assessment in, 793
in Marfan syndrome, 352
nonsurgical management of, 794
pathophysiology of, 792-796, 793f
peripheral artery, 796
physical assessment in, 793
postoperative graft occlusion or rupture in, 794b
stroke and, 1005f, 1006
surgical management of, 739, 794-795
- Aneurysmectomy**, 794
- Angina**, 696t
- Angina pectoris**, 829
drug therapy for, 836-837
emergency care in, 836, 836b
key features of, 835b
- Angioedema**, 388-389, 389f
- Angiogenesis**, 309
- Angiogenesis inhibitors**, 429t, 430
- Angiography**
in cardiovascular assessment, 703
cerebral, 912t, 919-921
fluorescein, 1050
renal, 1485
- Angiomax**; *See* Bivalirudin
- Angiotensin converting enzyme**, 173
- Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors**
for coronary artery disease, 839
for diabetic nephropathy, 1451
for heart failure, 751, 751b
for hypertension, 781b-782b, 783
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for nephrotic syndrome, 1530
for polycystic kidney disease, 1521
for renovascular disease, 1531
- Angiotensin I**, 172f, 173, 1362, 1468f
- Angiotensin II**, 172f, 173, 1362
influence on kidney function, 1471
in regulation of water and sodium, 1468f
- Angiotensinogen**, 172f, 173, 1362, 1468f
- Angiotensin-receptor blockers**
for coronary artery disease, 839
for diabetic nephropathy, 1451
for heart failure, 751, 751b
for hypertension, 781b-782b, 783
- Angle of Louis**, 552f
- Animal-assisted therapy**, 11-12
- Anion**, 180
- Anisocoria**, 1046
- Ankle**
arthroplasty of, 331
fracture of, 1162
positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
skin preparation for surgery of, 255f
- Ankle-brachial index**, 699, 787, 1165
- Ankylosing spondylitis**, 351-352, 351b
- Ann Arbor Staging Criteria for Hodgkin's Lymphoma**, 893t
- Annular lesion**, 462t
- Annuloplasty**, 761
- Annulus of eardrum**, 1078-1079, 1078f
- Anomia**, 948, 952
- Anorectal abscess**, 1287, 1287b
- Anorectal hemorrhoids**, 1260-1262, 1261f
- Anorectic drugs**, 1352, 1353b
- Anorexia**, 1182
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
in cholecystitis, 1317
in chronic kidney disease, 1549
in leukemia, 882
in lung cancer, 632
in right-sided heart failure, 748
- Anorexia nervosa**, 1340, 1372
- Anorexins**, 1349
- Anovulatory dysfunctional uterine bleeding**, 1613
- Anoxia**, 813
- ANP**; *See* Atrial natriuretic peptide
- Antacids**
for gastric irritation in Cushing's disease, 1388
for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
for peptic ulcer disease, 1230, 1230b
- Antalgic gait**, 1111
- Anterior cerebral artery**, 908, 908f, 1009b
- Anterior cervical disectomy and fusion**, 966, 966b-967b
- Anterior chamber**, 1040f-1041f
- Anterior chamber hemorrhage**, 1071
- Anterior colporrhaphy**, 1616-1617
- Anterior communicating artery**, 908f
- Anterior cruciate ligament injury**, 1170
- Anterior inferior cerebellar artery**, 908f
- Anterior nares**, 544-545
- Anterior nosebleed**, 582b
- Anterior pectoral nodes**, 1577f
- Anterior pituitary**, 1361f, 1372-1378
hormones of, 1359t, 1361t
hyperpituitarism and, 1374-1378, 1375f, 1376b
drug therapy for, 1375
genetic considerations in, 1374b
home care management after surgery in, 1377b
surgical management of, 1376-1378, 1376f, 1377b
hypopituitarism and, 1372-1373, 1373b
interaction with hypothalamus and adrenal cortex, 1360-1361, 1360f
- Anterior segment of eye**, 1040f-1041f
- Anterior spinal artery**, 908f
- Anterior spinocerebellar tract**, 909, 909f
- Anterior uveitis**, 1068
- Anterior vaginal repair**, 1503t
- Anterior wall myocardial infarction**, 831, 841
- Anthracycines**, 1606t
- Anthralin**, 500
- Anthrax**, 448t, 449
cutaneous, 494-495, 495f
inhalation, 658-659, 658b-659b
- Anthropometric measurements**, 1337-1340
- Antiandrogens**
for hormonal manipulation of cancer, 425t
for prostate cancer, 1640
- Antianxiety agents**
for anxiety in pulmonary embolism, 668
for pain management, 58
- Antibiotic sensitivity testing**, 445

- Antibiotic(s), 445
 for acute necrotizing pancreatitis, 1324
 allergic reactions to, 446b, 446t
 for anthrax, 495, 659, 659b
 antitumor, 415t-416t, 416
 for bacterial infection in cirrhosis, 1302
 for bacterial rhinitis, 641
 for brain abscess, 1037
 as cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 for cyst infection in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 for cystitis, 1494
 for diverticular disease, 1285
 for external otitis, 1089, 1089b, 1089f
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for gastroenteritis, 1272
 for gonorrhea, 1659-1660
 for hepatic encephalopathy, 1303
 inadequate therapy with, 443-444
 for infection in burn, 536
 for infection in leukemia, 884
 for infection prevention in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
 for infective endocarditis, 764
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 nephrotoxicity of, 1540t
 for osteomyelitis, 1132, 1132b
 ototoxic, 1082t
 for peritonsillar abscess, 644
 for respiratory infection in dying patient, 114
 for salmonellosis, 1290
 for sexually transmitted disease, 1665b
 for sinusitis, 642
 for tonsillitis, 644
 for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
 venous irritation and, 211b
- Antibody, 312, 312t
- Antibody test in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 368-369
- Antibody-antigen binding, 311
- Antibody-antigen complex, 391-392, 391f
- Antibody-mediated immunity, 309-313, 437
 acquiring of, 312-313
 age-related changes in, 304b
 antibody classification and, 312, 312t
 antigen-antibody interactions in, 309-312, 310f-311f
 immune functions of leukocytes in, 305t
 role of leukocytes in, 857t
- Anticholinergic drugs
 for asthma, 610
 for dying patient, 114
 for malabsorption syndrome, 1263
 for Parkinson disease, 944
- Anticholinergics
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504, 1504b
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b
- Anticholinesterases, 993
- Anticlotting forces, 859-860, 860f
- Anticoagulants, 861
 after total hip arthroplasty, 327
 for atrial fibrillation, 727
 blood tests for monitoring of, 667b
 for deep vein thrombosis, 800
 in hemodialysis, 1560
 patient safety and, 668b, 801b
 for peripheral venous disease, 801b, 803b
- Antidepressants
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
- Antidepressants (*Continued*)
 for fibromyalgia, 354
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 older adult and, 22, 22b, 990b
 for pain management, 58
 for Parkinson disease, 944
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b
- Antidiabetic drugs, 1421-1430
- Antidiarrheals
 for irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
 for malabsorption syndrome, 1263
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Antidiuretic hormone, 171, 1361t, 1371
 decrease in blood osmolarity and, 1477
 deficiency of, 1373b
 diabetes insipidus and, 1378-1380, 1378b
 hypovolemic shock and, 813
 influence on kidney function, 1471t
 paraneoplastic syndromes associated with lung cancer and, 631t
 in reabsorption of sodium and water, 1470, 1470f
 syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone and, 1380-1381, 1380t
 after craniotomy, 1035-1036
 in brain tumor, 1031
 cancer-related, 430-431, 1380t
 lung cancer and, 631t
- Antiemeticism stockings, 257, 258f
- Antiemetics
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
 for M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
- Antiepileptic drugs, 933, 934b
 for chronic low back pain, 962
 for cluster headache, 932
 for migraine, 930
 for pain management, 58
 for restless leg syndrome, 999
 for traumatic brain injury, 1028
- Antiestrogens, 425t
- Antifactor Xa test, 866
- Antifungals, 445
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for infection in leukemia, 884
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 nephrotoxicity of, 1451
- Antigen, 303
 hypersensitivity and, 383-384
 immune complexes and, 391-392, 391f
 in leukemia, 882-883
- Antigen-antibody interactions, 309-312, 310f-311f
- Antihemophilic drugs, 897t
- Antihistamines
 for allergic rhinitis, 387
 for anaphylaxis, 390, 390b
 for bee sting, 146
 for itching in skin inflammation, 498
 for M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 for pruritus, 472
 for rhinitis, 641
 for urticaria, 472
- Antihyperlipoproteinemics, 775
- Antihypertensives, 780, 781b-782b
 angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors in, 783, 783b
 beta-adrenergic blockers as, 781b-782b, 783
 calcium channel blockers as, 780, 781b-782b
 cautions in using thiazide and loop diuretics, 780b
 diuretics as, 780, 780b-782b
 for hypertension in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
- Antiinflammatory drugs, 50-51
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 for asthma, 607b-608b, 610-611
 for carpal tunnel syndrome, 1172
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for lupus, 346
 nephrotoxicity of, 1451, 1475, 1540t
 for osteoarthritis pain, 322
 ototoxic, 1082t
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 peptic ulcer disease and, 1227
 for pericarditis, 765
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 337, 338b-339b
 risk for acute gastritis and, 1221
 for tendinopathy, 1172
 as trigger for asthma, 602
- Antilymphocyte globulin, 316
- Antimetabolites, 415t-416t, 416, 1606t
- Antimicrobials, 445, 446b; *See also* Antibiotics
- Antimitotic agents, 415t-416t, 416
- Antinuclear antibody test, 335, 336b
- Antiplatelet agents, 862
 for coronary artery disease, 838b
 patient safety and, 668b
 before percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, 844
 for peripheral arterial disease, 789
- Antipsychotics
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 as chemical restraint, 27-28
 for Huntington disease, 956
 older adult and, 28b
- Antipyretics, 446, 641
- Antispasmodics, 1495b-1496b
- Antistreptolysin-O titer, 1528
- Antithrombin III, 859-860
- Antithymocyte globulin, 878
- Antithyroglobulin antibody, 1396b
- Antithyroid drugs, 1397, 1398b
- Antitumor antibiotics, 415t-416t, 416
- Antivenom
 for coral snake envenomation, 142
 for pit viper envenomation, 141
- Antivert; *See* Meclizine
- Antivirals, 445
 for Bell's palsy, 1001
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for herpes simplex stomatitis, 1195
 for infection in leukemia, 884
 for viral encephalitis, 941
 for viral skin infection, 494
- Antrum of stomach, 1179
- Anuria, 1474t
 in intrarenal azotemia, 1542
 in renal colic, 1508
- Anus, 1178f, 1287-1288
 anal fissure and, 1287-1288
 anal fistula and, 1288
 anorectal abscess and, 1287, 1287b
 hemorrhoids and, 1260-1262, 1261f
- Anvil, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Anxiety
 in anaphylaxis, 389
 chest pain in, 696t
 in chronic kidney disease, 1558
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621
 in coronary artery bypass graft, 846
 dying patient and, 114
 in facial trauma, 583
 in head and neck cancer, 595-596
 in hearing loss, 1104
 preoperative, 258-259
 in pulmonary embolism, 668
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
- Anzemet; *See* Dolasetron
- Aorta, 688f, 692b
- Aortic arch syndrome, 351
- Aortic area for auscultation, 700f
- Aortic dissection, 792, 796-797
- Aortic regurgitation, 352, 759b, 760
- Aortic stenosis, 759-760, 759b
- Aortic valve, 688, 688f
- Aortic valvuloplasty, 761
- Aortofemoral bypass surgery, 790, 790f
- Aortoiliac bypass surgery, 790, 790f
- APAP; *See* Autotitrating positive airway pressure
- Aphasia
 in Alzheimer's disease, 952
 in stroke, 1009, 1018, 1018t
- Aphonia, 586
- Aphthous ulcer, 1193
- Apical impulse, 699
- Aplastic anemia, 870t, 878
- Apnea
 at end of life, 110
 sleep, 569, 569f, 584-585
- Apocrine sweat gland, 451, 453-454, 454f
- Apolipoprotein E, 950, 1349
- Apoptosis, 398
- Appendectomy, 1267-1268
- Appendicitis, 1267-1268, 1267b, 1267f
- Appliance, 1249-1250
- Approximated wound, 472
- Apraclonidine, 1066b-1067b
- Apraxia
 in Alzheimer's disease, 948, 952
 in stroke, 1009-1011, 1019
- Aprepitant, 423b
- Apriso; *See* Mesalamine
- APRV; *See* Airway pressure-release ventilation
- Aptivus; *See* Tipranavir
- aPTT; *See* Activated partial thromboplastin time
- Aquacel Ag, 534b-535b
- Aqueous humor, 1040-1041, 1041f
- Arachnoid, 906
- Aranesp; *See* Darbepoietin
- Arava; *See* Leflunomide
- Arboviral encephalitis, 940
- ARCC model of evidence-based practice, 83-84
- Archiving, 371
- Arcuate artery, 1467f
- Arcuate vein, 1467f
- Arcus senilis, 456f, 1043, 1044f
- Ardeparin, 801
- ARDS; *See* Acute respiratory distress syndrome
- Aredia; *See* Pamidronate
- Areflexic bladder, 101, 102t
- Arformoterol, 619
- Arganova; *See* Argatroban
- Argatroban, 800-801
- Arimidex; *See* Anastrozole
- Arixtra; *See* Fondaparinux
- Arm
 fracture of, 1159
 nerve block in, 276f
 sites for peripheral catheter placement, 215f
- Arm cast, 1151
- Aromatase inhibitors, 1594b, 1606-1607
- Aromatherapy, 10, 113
- ARPS; *See* Alcohol-Related Problems Survey
- Arranon; *See* Nalrabine
- Arrhythmias, 718; *See also* Dysrhythmias
- Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy, 768
- Arsenic trioxide, 415t-416t
- Artane; *See* Trihexyphenidyl
- Arterial aneurysm, 792-796
 community-based care in, 795-796
 critical rescue in, 795b
 imaging assessment in, 793
 nonsurgical management of, 794
 pathophysiology of, 792-796, 793f
 peripheral artery, 796

- Arterial aneurysm (*Continued*)
 physical assessment in, 793
 postoperative graft occlusion or rupture in, 794b
 surgical management of, 794-795
- Arterial baroreceptor, 776
- Arterial blood gases
 in acidosis, 205, 205b
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 in alkalosis, 208
 in asthma, 605
 in burn assessment, 524b
 in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616-617
 for determining need for oxygen therapy, 563
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989
 in heart failure, 750
 in lung cancer, 633
 in pneumonia, 650
 postoperative, 293
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 in respiratory assessment, 556, 557b
- Arterial embolization in infective endocarditis, 764
- Arterial pulses, 699, 699f
- Arterial revascularization, 789
- Arterial system, 691
- Arterial ulcer, 788b
- Arterial vasoconstriction in heart failure, 747
- Arteriography
 in Buerger's disease, 797
 in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in peripheral arterial disease, 787
 renal, 1485
- Arteriole, 690
- Arteriosclerosis, 772-775
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 775
 drug therapy for, 775, 775b, 775t
 laboratory assessment in, 774
 nutrition therapy for, 774-775
 pathophysiology of, 772-773, 773f, 773t
 physical assessment in, 773-774, 774b
- Arteriectomy, 792
- Arteriovenous fistula, 1560, 1561f, 1562b
- Arteriovenous graft, 1561, 1562b
- Arteriovenous malformation, 1005f, 1007, 1007f, 1016, 1016f
- Arteriovenous rewarming in hypothermia, 149
- Arteritis, 351
- Artery, 690
 central venous catheter-related puncture of, 231t
 changes associated with aging, 692b
- Arthralgia, 1110
 in ankylosing spondylitis, 351
 in growth hormone overproduction, 1374
 in hepatitis, 1307
 in systemic sclerosis, 347
- Arthritis, 319
 common disorders associated with, 342f, 353
 infectious, 352
 osteoarthritis, 319-320
 chronic pain in, 321-331
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 323, 323b
 drug therapy for, 322
 etiology and genetic risk for, 319b, 320
 hand and foot arthroplasties in, 331
 health care resources for, 332-333
 health promotion and maintenance in, 320
 health teaching in, 332, 332b
 history in, 320
- Arthritis (*Continued*)
 home care management in, 332
 imaging assessment in, 321
 improving mobility in, 331-332, 332b
 incidence and prevalence of, 320
 laboratory assessment in, 321
 pathophysiology of, 319-320, 319f
 physical assessment in, 320-321, 321t
 psychosocial assessment in, 321
 total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
 total hip arthroplasty in, 324-329
 total knee arthroplasty in, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 total shoulder arthroplasty in, 331
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1129
 psoriatic, 353
 rheumatoid, 333-343
 arthrocentesis in, 336, 336b
 body image and, 342
 carpal tunnel syndrome and, 1170-1171
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 341
 exercise in, 332b
 fatigue in, 342, 342b
 health care resources for, 343
 health teaching in, 343
 home care management in, 342, 342f
 inflammation and pain management in, 337-341, 337b-340b
 laboratory assessment in, 335-336, 336b
 nonpharmacologic interventions in, 341
 osteoarthritis *versus*, 321t
 pathophysiology of, 333
 physical assessment in, 334-335, 334b, 334f
 psychosocial assessment in, 335
 self-management in, 341-342
- Arthritis Foundation, 333
- Arthrocentesis, 336, 336b
- Arthrodesis
 in benign bone tumor, 1134
 spinal, 963
- Arthroplasty
 in bone cancer, 1137
 elbow, 331
 hand and foot, 331
 hip, 324-329
 knee, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 shoulder, 331
 total hip, 324-329
 bleeding and anemia after, 327
 infection prevention after, 327
 mobility and activity after, 328, 328b
 neurovascular compromise after, 327-328, 328b
 older adult and, 326b
 pain management after, 328
 postoperative care in, 325-329, 325t
 preoperative care in, 324
 prevention of hip dislocation after, 325-326, 326f
 self-management after, 327b, 328-329
 venous thromboembolism after, 326-327
- Arthropod bites and stings, 142-146
 bees and wasps in, 145-146
 black widow spider in, 144
 brown recluse spider in, 142-143, 143f
 prevention of, 143b
 scorpion in, 144-145, 145f
- Arthroscopy
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1116-1117, 1116b, 1117f
 in osteoarthritis, 323
- Articular cartilage, 1109f
- Articulation, 331, 341
- Artifact in electrocardiogram, 717
- Artificial airway, 570-578
 air warming and humidification in, 574, 574b
 bronchial and oral hygiene for, 576
 care of, 575-576, 575b-576b, 576f
 communication and, 577
 community-based care in, 578
 complications of, 571-572, 571b
 focused assessment of, 576b
 nutrition and, 577, 577b
 older adult and, 578b
 postoperative care in, 571
 preoperative care in, 571
 preventing tissue damage from, 573-574
 psychosocial needs and self-image and, 577
 suctioning of, 574-575, 574b
 vertical tracheal incision for, 571, 571f
 weaning from, 577-578
- Artificial fingernails, 439
- Artificial passive immunity, 313
- Artificial saliva, 393
- Artificial skin
 for burn wound, 532
 for venous leg ulcer, 804
- Artificial sphincter, 1503t
- Artificial tears, 393, 1056
- Arytenoid cartilage, 545, 545f
- Arzerra; *See* Ofatumumab
- Asacol; *See* Mesalamine
- Asbestosis, 629b
- Ascending colostomy, 1250f
- Ascending limb of loop of Henle, 1469t, 1470f
- Ascending paralysis in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987, 988t
- Ascending tracts, 909, 909f
- Ascites
 in cirrhosis, 1294, 1300b
 nutrition therapy for, 1300
 in pancreatic cancer, 1330
 spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in, 1295
- Asepsis in burn injury, 536
- Aseptic necrosis, 1147
- ASKED Model of Cultural Competence, 31, 31t
- Asmanex; *See* Mometasone
- Asparaginase, 415t-416t
- Aspartate aminotransferase, 1114, 1114b
 in cirrhosis, 1298, 1299t
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185
 in hepatitis, 1308
 normal adult range for, 1186b
- Aspiration
 bone marrow, 866-867
 in esophageal cancer, 1213b
 in head and neck cancer, 594-595, 595b
 in oral cancer, 1197b
 in stroke, 1017
 tracheostomy and, 577b
 in vocal cord paralysis, 585
- Aspiration pneumonia, 1346b
- Aspirin
 for angina, 836-837
 avoidance in peptic ulcer disease, 1233b
 for coronary artery disease, 838b
 gastritis and, 1221-1222
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 for peripheral arterial disease, 789
 for stroke, 1015
 as trigger for asthma, 602
- Assay
 chromatographic, 1369
 in endocrine assessment, 1369
 enzyme-linked immunosorbent for genital herpes, 1657
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1228-1229
 for hepatitis C, 1308
 for human immunodeficiency virus, 369
- Assay (*Continued*)
 glycosylated hemoglobin, 1370, 1419-1420, 1419b
 polymerase chain reaction for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, 1662
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for *Treponema pallidum*, 1655-1656
- Assist-control ventilation, 677-678
- Assistive devices
 for ambulation, 97-98, 98f
 for functional mobility, 99, 100t
 for hearing loss, 1100
- Assistive technology, 99
- AST; *See* Aspartate aminotransferase
- Asterix
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 in cirrhosis, 1298
- Asthma, 601-611
 aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 exercise and activity in, 611
 history in, 603
 incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b
 laboratory assessment in, 605
 levels of control in, 603b
 occupational, 629b
 oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b
 pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f
 physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f
 pulmonary function tests in, 605
 smoking cessation and, 605b
 status asthmaticus and, 611
 step system for medication use in, 604b
 teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b
 using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f
- Astigmatism, 1043, 1070
- Asymmetry of reflexes, 917, 917f
- Asynchronous pacing, 735
- Asystole, ventricular, 730-731
- Atasol; *See* Acetaminophen
- Ataxia, 151
- Atazanavir/ritonavir, 357, 371
- Atelectasis
 after craniotomy, 1035
 oxygen therapy-related, 564, 564b
 surfactant and, 546
 surgery in older adult and, 244
- Atenolol, 781b-782b, 783
- ATG; *See* Antithymocyte globulin
- Atherectomy, 789, 845
- Atherosclerosis, 772-775
 aneurysm and, 793
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 775
 coronary artery disease and, 831
 drug therapy for, 775, 775b, 775t
 laboratory assessment in, 774
 nephrosclerosis and, 1530
 nutrition therapy for, 774-775
 pathophysiology of, 772-773, 773f, 773t
 peripheral artery disease and, 785
 physical assessment in, 773-774, 774b
 plaque rupture in, 830f
 renovascular disease and, 1531
- Ativan; *See* Lorazepam
- ATN; *See* Acute tubular necrosis
- Atonic seizure, 932
- Atopic allergy, 384
- Atopic asthma, 603
- Atopic dermatitis, 497, 498b
- Atovaquone, 375
- Atracurium, 274t
- Atresia of auditory canal, 1088-1089, 1089f

- Atrial dysrhythmias, 721-728
 atrial fibrillation in, 722-728, 727b, 727f
 premature atrial complexes in, 721-722
 supraventricular tachycardia in, 722
- Atrial fibrillation, 722-728, 727b, 727f
- Atrial fibrosis, 722
- Atrial gallop, 700
- Atrial natriuretic peptide, 171-172
- Atrioventricular block, 731
- Atrioventricular junctional area, 712
- Atrioventricular node, 712, 712f
- Atrioventricular valve, 688
- Atripla; *See* Emtricitabine/tenofovir/efavirenz
- Atropine; *See* Atropine sulfate
- Atrophic gastritis, 1221
- Atrophy, 460f-461f
 in myasthenia gravis, 992
 in older adult, 1109b
 in osteoarthritis, 320
 in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
- Atropine sulfate, 723b-726b
 for amebiasis, 1289
 for dysrhythmias, 733
 for malabsorption syndrome, 1263
 for Parkinson disease, 944
 for spinal cord injury, 972
- Atrovent; *See* Ipratropium
- Attenace; *See* Modafinil
- Attention, assessment of, 914
- Attenuated virus, 645
- Atypical angina, 834b
- Atypical chest pain, 1204
- Atypical migraine, 928-929
- Audiometry, 1085, 1085t, 1100
- Audioscopy, 1084
- Auditory assessment, 1084
- Auditory brainstem-evoked response, 1086
- Auditory canal atresia, 1088-1089, 1089f
- Auditory evoked potentials, 923
- Augmentation mammoplasty, 507t
- Augmentin; *See* Amoxicillin/clavulanate
- Aura in migraine, 928-929
- Aureomycin; *See* Chlortetracycline
- Auscultation
 in abdominal assessment, 1184
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616
 in endocrine assessment, 1368
 of lungs, 553, 554f
 of major arteries, 699
 in precordial assessment, 699-700
- Autoamputation of distal digits, 347-348
- Autoantibody, 392, 1416-1417
- Autocontamination
 in burn injury, 533
 in leukemia, 883
- Autodigestion, 1221, 1321, 1321f
- Autograft
 for burn wound, 533, 533f
 in peripheral arterial disease, 789
- Autoimmune diseases, 319, 393t
 ankylosing spondylitis in, 351-352, 351b
 autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura in, 895-896
 chronic fatigue syndrome in, 354
 fibromyalgia syndrome in, 353-354
 Goodpasture's syndrome in, 394
 lupus erythematosus in, 343-347, 344b, 344f, 346b
 multiple sclerosis in, 978-983
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 982-983
 concept map for, 980f-981f
 drug therapy for, 980-982, 982b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 979
 health care resources for, 983
 health teaching in, 983
- Autoimmune diseases (*Continued*)
 history in, 979
 home care management in, 983
 incidence and prevalence of, 979
 laboratory assessment in, 980
 mobility problems in, 982
 pathophysiology of, 978-979
 physical assessment in, 979-980, 979b
 psychosocial assessment in, 980
 sexual function in, 980b
 myasthenia gravis in, 991-996, 991b
 diagnostic assessment in, 992-993, 992b
 drug therapy for, 993-994, 993b
 health care resources for, 996
 health teaching in, 996, 996b, 996t
 home care management in, 996
 myasthenic and cholinergic crises in, 993, 994t
 nutrition issues in, 994-995, 995b
 pathophysiology of, 991
 physical assessment in, 991-992
 plasmapheresis in, 994
 respiratory support in, 993, 993b
 surgical management of, 995, 995b
 non-Hodgkin lymphoma and, 893
 Reiter's syndrome in, 352
 rheumatoid arthritis in, 333-343
 arthrocentesis in, 336, 336b
 body image and, 342
 carpal tunnel syndrome and, 1170-1171
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 341
 exercise in, 332b
 fatigue in, 342, 342b
 health care resources for, 343
 health teaching in, 343
 home care management in, 342, 342f
 inflammation and pain
 management in, 337-341, 337b-340b
 laboratory assessment in, 335-336, 336b
 nonpharmacologic interventions in, 341
 osteoarthritis *versus*, 321t
 pathophysiology of, 333
 physical assessment in, 334-335, 334b, 334f
 psychosocial assessment in, 335
 self-management in, 341-342
 scleroderma in, 347
 Sj[um]ogren's syndrome in, 335, 393-394
 systemic sclerosis in, 344b, 347, 348b, 348f
 type 1 diabetes mellitus in, 1416, 1416b
 women and, 393b
- Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, 870t, 876
- Autoimmune pancreatitis, 1326
- Autoimmune response, 383
- Autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura, 895-896
- Autoimmunity, 392-395
- Autologous blood transfusion, 244, 278, 278b, 901
- Autologous bone marrow transplantation, 1607
- Autologous transplant, 885, 886t
- Autolysis in enzymatic d[ac]ebridement, 531
- Automated peritoneal dialysis, 1566, 1566f
- Automatic epinephrine injector, 388b
- Automatic external defibrillation, 738, 738f
- Automaticity of heart, 712
- Automatisms, 932
- Autonomic dysreflexia, 973b-974b
- Autonomic nervous system
 dysfunction in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987-988
 structure and function of, 911
- Autonomic neuropathy, 1415, 1415t
 cardiovascular, 1416
 diabetic foot care and, 1446
- Autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance, 73
- Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease, 1519b, 1520f
- Autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance, 74, 74f
- Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease, 1519
- Autosome, 68
- Autotitrating positive airway pressure, 585
- Avandamet, 1423b-1427b
- Avandaryl, 1423b-1427b
- Avandia; *See* Rosiglitazone
- Avascular full-thickness burn wound, 515
- Avascular necrosis
 fracture and, 1147
 of hip, 1159-1160
- Avastin; *See* Bevacizumab
- Avian influenza, 157, 646
- Avinza; *See* Morphine
- Avirax; *See* Acyclovir
- Avlosulfon; *See* Dapsone
- AVM; *See* Arteriovenous malformation
- Avodart; *See* Dutasteride
- Avoidance therapy, 386
- Avonex; *See* Interferon-beta
- AVPU mnemonic, 133
- Axial loading injury of spine, 967, 968f
- Axid; *See* Nizatidine
- Axilla, positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Axillary line, 552f
- Axillary lymph node dissection, 1600-1601
- Axillary nerve, 997f
- Axillary vein for peripheral catheter placement, 215f
- Axillofemoral bypass surgery, 790, 790f
- Axon, 906, 906f
- Azacididine, 415t-416t, 880
- Azathioprine
 for lupus, 346
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for pulmonary fibrosis, 628
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 341
- Azilect; *See* Rasagiline mesylate
- Azithromycin
 for chlamydial infection, 1662
 for gastroenteritis, 1272
 for gonorrhea, 1661
 for tonsillitis, 644
- Azoospermia, 1644
- Azopt; *See* Brinzolamide
- Azotemia, 1474t, 1541-1542
 in acute kidney injury, 1538
 in chronic kidney disease, 1547
 surgery for diabetes mellitus and, 1445
- Azulfidine; *See* Sulfasalazine
- B**
- Babinski's sign, 916-917, 976-977
- Bacille Calmette-Gu[ac]erin vaccine, 654, 1513
- Bacillus anthracis*, 448t, 494
- Back pain, 960-965
 acute low back pain in, 962
 chronic low back pain in, 962, 962b
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 962-963
 health care resources for, 965
 health promotion and maintenance in, 960-961, 961b
 health teaching in, 965, 965b
 home care management in, 964-965
- Back pain (*Continued*)
 imaging assessment in, 961
 large-breasted woman and, 1590
 in osteoporosis, 1122
 pathophysiology of, 960, 960b, 960f
 physical assessment in, 961
 in scoliosis, 1140
 surgical management of, 963-964, 964b
- Baclofen
 for Parkinson disease, 944
 for spinal cord injury, 972
 for trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
- Bacteremia, 436, 1132
- Bacteria
 colonization of, 1490
 normal flora, 435
 in urine, 1478b, 1480
 vaginal, 1577
- Bacterial infection
 after burn injury, 516-517, 530, 530t-531t
 in Bartholin cyst, 1620-1621
 in conjunctivitis, 1056
 cultures for, 467
 cutaneous, 490-492, 491b, 492f
 in anthrax, 494-495, 495f
 in leprosy, 509
 in cystitis, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
- in epididymitis, 1650
 in food poisoning, 1270-1272, 1270t
 in inhalation anthrax, 658-659, 658b-659b
 in laryngitis, 644-645
 in lung abscess, 658
 in meningitis, 937-940, 938b-939b
 after craniotomy, 1035
 laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
 labyrinthitis and, 1095
 neurologic status in, 939b
- in orchitis, 1650
 in osteomyelitis, 1131
 oxygen therapy-related, 565, 565b
 in peritonsillar abscess, 644
 in pharyngitis, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 in pneumonia, 647-652
 airway obstruction in, 651
 concept map for, 648f-649f
 etiology of, 647, 647t
 health care resources for, 652
 history in, 648
 home care management in, 652, 652b
 hypoxemia in, 651
 imaging assessment in, 650
 incidence and prevalence of, 647
 laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 pathophysiology of, 647
 physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
 prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 psychosocial assessment in, 650
 sepsis in, 651-652
 teaching for self-management in, 652
 ventilator-associated, 648b
 in prostatitis, 1649

- Bacterial infection (*Continued*)
- in pulmonary empyema, 659-660
 - in pyelonephritis, 1523-1526
 - community-based care in, 1526
 - end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 - history in, 1524-1525
 - imaging assessment in, 1525
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 - indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 - laboratory assessment in, 1525
 - pain in, 1525
 - pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 - physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1525
 - risk for
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
 - in cystic fibrosis, 624
 - HIV-infected patient and, 366
 - in sickle cell disease, 874
 - in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 652-653, 653b
 - in sexually transmitted infections, 1653t
 - in sinusitis, 641-642, 642b
 - in tonsillitis, 644, 644b
 - in tuberculosis, 653-658, 654f
 - in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367
 - airborne precautions in, 657, 657f
 - diagnosis of, 655, 655f
 - drug therapy for, 655, 656b
 - health care resources for, 658
 - history in, 654
 - home care management in, 657
 - physical assessment in, 654-655
 - teaching for self-management in, 657-658
 - in urethritis, 352, 1496-1497
- Bacterial overgrowth, 1263
- Bacterial transfusion reaction, 901
- Bacterial vaginosis, 1666
- Bacteriuria, 1490
- Bacteroides* sinusitis, 641
- Bacteruria, intermittent catheterization-associated, 102
- Bactrim; *See* Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
- Bad death, 107
- Baker's cyst, 334
- Balance testing, 1086
- Balanced analgesia, 56
- Balanced anesthesia, 272t, 273
- Balanced diet, 1352
- Balanced suspension traction, 1153, 1153t
- Balanitis circinata, 352
- Ball-and-socket joint, 1108-1109
- Balloon angioplasty, 1531
- Balloon brachytherapy, 1605
- Balloon valvuloplasty, 761
- Balsalazide, 1275t
- Band neutrophil, 306
 - in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
 - values in white blood cell count, 307t
- Bandage
 - for fracture, 1151
 - for stump, 1167, 1167f
- Bandemia, 293, 307
- Barbita; *See* Phenobarbital
- Barbiturate coma, 1028
- BARD PowerPort, 218-219
- Bariatrics, 1353, 1354f
- Barium enema, 1187
 - in colorectal cancer, 1247
 - in diverticular disease, 1285
- Barium swallow with fluoroscopy
 - in esophageal cancer, 1213
 - in hiatal hernia, 1209
- Bark scorpion, 137, 145f
- Barmine; *See* Dicyclomine
- Baroreceptor, 691, 692b
- Barotrauma, 680-681, 1094
- Barrel chest, 604f
- Barrett's epithelium, 1204
- Barrett's esophagus, 1212
- Bartholin cyst, 1620-1621
- Bartholin gland, 1576
- Basal cell carcinoma, 502t, 503, 503f
 - in oral cancer, 1196
- Basal ganglia, 907
- Basal insulin secretion, 1411
- Basal layer, 452f
- Basal rate in patient-controlled analgesia, 54
- Basaljel; *See* Aluminum carbonate gel
- Base addition mutation, 72
- Base deficit, 202-203, 1548
- Base deletion mutation, 72
- Base pair, 66, 66f
- Base(s), 197
 - of deoxyribonucleic acid, 66-67
- Basic Cardiac Life Support, 736
- Basic Disaster Life Support, 158
- Basic life support, 127, 127t
- Basilar artery, 908f
- Basilar skull fracture, 1021
- Basilic vein, 215f
- Basiliximab, 316
- Basophil, 307, 857t
 - asthma and, 601
 - immune function of, 305t
 - in white blood cell differential count, 307t, 557b
- Battle sign, 583
- BBB; *See* Blood-brain barrier
- B-cell, 857t
 - in antibody-mediated immunity, 309
 - differentiation, maturation, and function of, 309f
 - immune function of, 305t
- B-cell lymphoma, 367
- BCG; *See* Bacille Calmette-Gu[ac]erin vaccine
- BCNU; *See* Carmustine
- BD Insyte Autogard IV catheter, 213f
- Beau's grooves, 466t
- Becker muscular dystrophy, 1141t
- Bed to wheelchair or chair transfer, 97
- Bedbugs, 496-497
- Bedside sonography, 1482, 1482f
- Bee sting, 145-146
- Beers criteria, 21, 21t
- Behavior
 - acidosis and, 205
 - acute pain and, 41
 - Alzheimer's disease and, 949, 954t
 - hypokalemia and, 184
 - hyponatremia and, 181
 - hypovolemic shock and, 817
 - traumatic brain injury and, 1028-1029
- Behavioral health problems, older adult and, 22-25
- Behavioral management
 - of obesity, 1353
 - of reflex incontinence, 1505
 - of urge incontinence, 1504-1505, 1504b
- Belching
 - in cholecystitis, 1317
 - in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
 - in hiatal hernia, 1209
- Belimumab, 346
- Bell's palsy, 1001-1002
- Below-knee amputation, 1163f, 1164
- Benadryl; *See* Diphenhydramine
- Bendamustine, 415t-416t, 884
- Beneficence, 4
- Benemid; *See* Probenecid
- Benign breast disorders, 1588-1591, 1589t
 - ductal ectasia in, 1590
 - fibroadenoma in, 1589
- Benign breast disorders (*Continued*)
- fibrocystic breast condition in, 1589-1590
 - gynecomastia in, 1591, 1604f
 - intraductal papilloma in, 1590
 - large-breasted women and, 1590
 - small-breasted women and, 1590-1591, 1590b
- Benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
- community-based care in, 1636-1637
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 1633
 - concept map for, 1633f-1634f
 - drug therapy for, 1633, 1633b
 - history in, 1630, 1631f-1632f
 - imaging assessment in, 1633
 - laboratory assessment in, 1632
 - noninvasive procedures for, 1635
 - pathophysiology of, 1630, 1630f
 - physical assessment in, 1630
 - prostate cancer and, 1637f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1630-1632
 - surgical management of, 1635-1636, 1635f, 1636b
- Benign tumor
 - acoustic neuroma, 1097
 - bone, 1133-1134
 - of brain, 1031, 1031t
 - cutaneous, 501-502, 501f-502f
 - glomus jugulare, 1094
 - gynecologic, 1617-1621
 - Bartholin cyst in, 1620-1621
 - ovarian cyst in, 1617
 - uterine leiomyoma in, 1617-1620, 1617f
 - pituitary adenoma, 1374
 - tissue of origin in, 401t
- Benign tumor cell, 398-399
- Benign X-linked muscular dystrophy, 1141t
- Benlysta; *See* Belimumab
- Bentyl; *See* Dicyclomine
- Benuryl; *See* Probenecid
- Benzathine penicillin G, 1656, 1656b
- Benzodiazepines
 - for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
 - for dying patient, 114
 - for heat stroke, 139
 - overdose of, 293, 293b
 - for restless legs syndrome, 999
- Benzotropine, 944
- Bereavement, 117-118
- Berylliosis, 629b
- Beta adrenergic receptors, 1363, 1363t
- Beta amyloid, 947
- Beta cell, 1179, 1364f, 1411
- Beta globulin, 336b
- Beta particles, 411, 411f
- Beta-adrenergic agonists
 - for asthma, 607b-608b, 609
 - for heart failure, 753
 - for pneumonia, 651
- Beta-adrenergic blockers
 - for atrial fibrillation, 727
 - for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 - for coronary artery disease, 838b-839b, 839
 - for dysrhythmias, 732
 - for glaucoma, 1066b-1067b
 - for heart failure, 753
 - home care management and, 757b
 - for hypertension, 781b-782b, 783
 - for hyperthyroidism, 1397
 - interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 - for migraine, 930, 930b
- Betagan; *See* Levobunolol
- Beta-hydroxybutyric acid, 1420
- Betaloc; *See* Metoprolol
- Betamethasone, 1054b
- Betapace; *See* Sotalol
- Betaseron; *See* Interferon-beta
- Betaxolol hydrochloride, 1066b-1067b
- Bethanechol, 1505
- Betimol; *See* Timolol
- Betopic; *See* Betaxolol hydrochloride
- Bevacizumab, 429
 - for brain tumor, 1033
 - for breast cancer, 1066
 - for colorectal cancer, 1248
 - for macular degeneration, 1068-1069
- Biaxial joint, 1108-1109
- Biaxin; *See* Clarithromycin
- Bicalutamide, 1640
- Bicarbonate, 198, 198f
 - acid-base assessment and, 199b
 - adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
 - for diabetic ketoacidosis, 1456
 - in kidney disease, 1542b
 - kidney movement of, 201
 - reabsorption in proximal convoluted tubule, 1470
 - in respiratory assessment, 557b
 - sources of, 199
 - values in acid-base imbalances, 205b
- Bicaval technique in heart transplantation, 769
- Biceps reflex, 917f
- Bicillin; *See* Penicillin G benzathine
- BiCNU; *See* Carmustine
- Bicuspid valve, 688
- Bifidobacterium*, 10
- Bifurcation, 1006
- Big block method of heart rate determination, 717, 717f
- Bigeminy, 720
- Biguanides, 1423b-1427b, 1428
- Bilateral orchiectomy, 1639
- Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, 1619t
 - in ovarian cancer, 1626
 - in uterine cancer, 1622
- Bile, 1179
- Bile acid breath test, 1263
- Bile duct inflammation, 1316
- Bile reflux gastropathy, 1236-1237
- Bile salt deficiency, 1262
- Bilevel positive airway pressure, 569, 677
 - in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 984
 - in myasthenia gravis, 993
 - in obstructive sleep apnea, 585
 - oxygen therapy and, 564
- Biliary cirrhosis, 1294, 1296
- Biliary colic, 1317, 1317b
- Biliary obstruction
 - after liver transplantation, 1312
 - in cirrhosis, 1294-1295
 - in gallstones, 1316, 1316f
 - laboratory assessment in, 1298
- Biliary problems, 1315-1334
 - cholecystitis in, 1316-1317
 - acute, 1316, 1316f
 - chronic, 1316-1317
 - diagnosis of, 1318
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1317, 1317t
 - nonsurgical management of, 1318
 - older adult and, 1317b-1318b
 - physical assessment in, 1317-1318, 1317b
 - surgical management of, 1318-1320, 1319b, 1320t
 - women and, 1317b
 - gallbladder cancer in, 1320
- Biliary stent, 1331
- Bilirubin
 - in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
 - in cirrhosis, 1299t
 - in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185
 - normal adult range for, 1186b
 - in urine, 1478b
- Bimatoprost, 1066b-1067b
- Biochemical markers in osteoporosis, 1123
- Biofilm, 441
- Biologic dressings, 486t, 531-532, 532t
- Biologic ecology, 35

- Biological response modifiers
 for ankylosing spondylitis, 352
 for cancer, 426-427, 427t
 immune deficiency and, 381
 for infection risk in neutropenia, 419
 for lung cancer, 633
 for psoriasis, 500
 for psoriatic arthritis, 353
 for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 337-340, 338b-339b
- Biopsy
 bone marrow, 866-867, 882-883, 889f
 brain, 1033
 breast, 1599
 endometrial
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in uterine cancer, 1622
 intestinal
 in celiac sprue, 1263
 of polyp, 1260
 kidney, 1486-1487
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 lung, 560-561
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1116
 prostate, 1638
 in reproductive assessment, 1585-1586, 1585b
 sentinel lymph node, 1600-1601
 in sinus cancer, 583
 skin, 468
 of thyroid nodule, 1370
- Biosynthetic wound dressings, 532
- Bioterrorism, 448t-449t, 449
- Biotherapy
 for head and neck cancer, 591
 for skin cancer, 505
- Bio-Well; *See* Lindane
- BiPAP; *See* Bilevel positive airway pressure
- Bipolar limb leads, 713
- Bird fancier's lung, 629b
- Bird flu, 157, 646
- Bisacodyl, 103
- Bisexual health issues, 33, 33b
- Bisoprolol
 for heart failure, 753
 for hypertension, 783
- Bisphosphonates
 for bone cancer, 1135
 for osteoporosis, 1125, 1125b-1126b
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Bites and stings, 142-146
 bees and wasps in, 145-146
 black widow spider in, 144
 brown recluse spider in, 142-143, 143f
 prevention of, 143b
 scorpion in, 144-145, 145f
- Bitolterol, 609
- Bivalirudin
 for deep vein thrombosis, 800-801
 for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, 844
- Bivalve of cast, 1151
- Bi-ventricular pacing, 728
- Black box warning, 1429
- Black cohosh, 244t
- Black eye, 1071
- Black lung disease, 629b
- Black widow spider, 144
- Bladder, 1466f, 1471-1472
 adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 assessment of, 1475-1476
 benign prostatic hyperplasia and, 1630, 1630f
 cystitis and, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
- Bladder (*Continued*)
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
 dysfunction of
 in multiple sclerosis, 980, 982
 in spinal cord injury, 973, 973b-974b
 in spinal cord tumor, 977
 in stroke, 1018
 trauma to, 1515
- Bladder cancer, 1512
 diagnostic assessment of, 1513
 health care resources for, 1515
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1512
 nonsurgical management of, 1513
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 1512
 physical assessment in, 1512
 psychosocial assessment in, 1512-1513
 sexual expression and quality of life in, 1515b
 surgical management of, 1493b, 1513-1514
 teaching for self-management in, 1515
- Bladder compression techniques, 1505
- Bladder outlet obstruction, 1630, 1630f
- Bladder retraining, 101-102, 102t
- Bladder scan, 1482, 1482f
- Bladder training program
 after stroke, 1018
 for urge incontinence, 1504, 1504b
- Bladder ultrasonography
 in prostate cancer, 1633
 in spinal cord injury, 973
- BladderScan, 101
- Blanching
 in burn injury, 514, 514f
 in pressure ulcer, 479-480
- Blast effect injury, 131-132
- Blast phase cell, 882-883
- Bleeding
 brain herniation and, 1022-1023
 conjunctival, 1056
 in diverticular disease, 1284-1285
 in epistaxis, 582-583, 582b, 582f
 of esophageal varices, 1294, 1302-1303
 in gastritis, 1222
 in hemodialysis vascular access, 1562t
 in hemothorax, 684
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1226-1227, 1226f
 postoperative
 in amputation, 1164
 in coronary artery bypass graft, 848b
 in glaucoma surgery, 1067
 in kidney biopsy, 1487
 in laryngectomy, 592
 in nephrectomy, 1533
 in total hip arthroplasty, 325t, 327
 prevention during chemotherapy, 422b
 in pulmonary embolism, 668, 668b-669b
 risk in leukemia, 889, 892b
 in spinal cord injury, 969
 in stress ulcer, 1226
 during thyroid surgery, 1399
 tracheostomy-related, 572
 in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
 vitreous, 1067-1068
- Bleeding disorders, 896-897
 hemophilia in, 896, 896b, 897t
 heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in, 896-897
- Bleeding tests, 865-866
- Blenoxane; *See* Bleomycin
- Bleomycin, 415t-416t
- Blepharitis, 1053
- Blepharoplasty, 507t
- Blind spot, 1040, 1040f
- Blindness, 1073-1075
 in diabetes mellitus, 1414
 in glaucoma, 1063
 in retinitis pigmentosa, 1069-1070
- Blink reflex, 1046
- Blister
 in frostbite, 150, 150f
 in genital herpes, 1657
- Bloating
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
- Blocadren; *See* Timolol
- Blom-Singer Trapdoor Prosthesis, 594f
- Blood, 856-858, 857f, 857t
 accessory organs in formation of, 858
 stem cell differentiation and maturation and, 305f
- Blood clotting, 858-859, 859f, 860t
 anti-clotting forces and, 859-860, 860f
 hypercalcemia and, 191
 nutritional status and, 862
- Blood coagulation studies, 703
- Blood culture in pyelonephritis, 1525
- Blood disorders, 869-901
 coagulation disorders in, 895-897
 autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura in, 895-896
 hemophilia in, 896, 896b, 897t
 heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in, 896-897
 thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura in, 896
 leukemia in, 880-892
 conserving energy in, 890, 890b
 drug therapy for, 883-884
 etiology and genetic risk in, 880-881
 health care resources for, 890-891
 hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for, 885-889
 history in, 881-882
 home care management in, 890, 891b
 imaging assessment in, 883
 incidence and prevalence of, 881
 infection prevention in, 883-889, 883b
 laboratory assessment in, 882-883, 882f
 pathophysiology of, 880-892
 physical assessment, 882, 882b
 psychosocial assessment in, 882
 psychosocial preparation for, 891
 risk for bleeding in, 892b
 teaching for self-management in, 890-891, 891b
- red blood cell disorders in, 870-901
 anemia in, 870-878
 aplastic anemia in, 878
 folic acid deficiency anemia in, 878
 glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency anemia in, 876
 iron deficiency anemia in, 876-877, 877b
 myelodysplastic syndromes in, 879-895
 polycythemia in, 878-879, 879b
 sickle cell disease in, 870-878
 vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia in, 877-878, 877f
- Blood disorders (*Continued*)
 transfusion therapy in, 897-900
 acute transfusion reactions in, 900-901
 autologous, 901
 blood administration setup for, 899f
 cryoprecipitate, 900
 indications for, 897t
 older adult and, 899b
 plasma, 900
 platelet, 900, 900b
 pretransfusion responsibilities in, 897-898, 898b
 red blood cell, 899-900, 899t
 white blood cell, 900
- Blood flow
 amputation and, 1165
 to burn injury area, 514-515
 fracture and, 1146
 pulmonary, 547
 renal, 1466, 1467f
 shock and, 811
 through heart, 688f, 689
- Blood glucose, 1419b
- Blood glucose management
 in diabetes mellitus, 1436-1438, 1438f
 diabetic ketoacidosis and, 1455
 hospitalized patient and, 1442-1443
 hypoglycemia and, 1452
 retinopathy and, 1449
 in hypoglycemia, 1452
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823t, 826
- Blood loss
 in bleeding esophageal varices, 1294
 hypovolemic shock and, 812
 in liver trauma, 1310
 in posterior nasal bleeding, 582, 582f
 during Whipple procedure, 1332
- Blood osmolarity
 kidney and, 1477
 in kidney disease, 1542b
- Blood pH
 in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 in kidney disease, 1542b
- Blood pressure, 691
 after discharge from PACU, 288b
 in cardiovascular assessment, 698-699
 hypertension and, 698, 775-785
 adherence to plan of care in, 784
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 classifications of, 776-777, 776t
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 780
 concept map for, 689f
 coronary artery disease and, 833
 cultural considerations in, 777b
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413-1414, 1450
 diagnostic assessment in, 778
 drug therapy for, 780-784, 781b-782b
 effects on vision, 1044
 etiology and genetic risk in, 777, 777t
 gonadotropin deficiency and, 1373
 health care resources for, 785
 health promotion and maintenance in, 777
 health teaching in, 784
Healthy People 2020 objectives for, 776t
 hemorrhagic stroke and, 1005f
 history in, 777-778
 home care management in, 784, 785b
 hyperglycemia and, 1416
 hypertensive urgency or crisis in, 784b
 incidence and prevalence of, 777
 lifestyle changes for, 778-780
 mechanisms influencing blood pressure and, 775-776
 in metabolic syndrome, 1417

- Blood pressure (*Continued*)
 in nephrosclerosis, 1530
 in nephrotic syndrome, 1529-1530
 in pheochromocytoma, 1391
 physical assessment in, 778, 778f
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1519, 1521-1522, 1522b
 psychosocial assessment in, 778
 renin-angiotensin II pathway and, 173
 in renovascular disease, 1531
 in scorpion bite, 144-145
 in thyroid storm, 1397, 1399
 hypotension and
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 in acute pancreatitis, 1323b
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 831
 after total hip arthroplasty, 325t
 following esophageal surgery, 1216
 in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 989
 in heat stroke, 138
 in hypothyroidism, 1402-1403
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 in pneumonia, 650
 in pulmonary embolism, 667-668
 in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025
 hypovolemic shock and, 816, 816b
 intracranial hypertension and
 after hypophysectomy, 1377
 in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 in meningitis, 939
 in stroke, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
 measurement during infusion therapy, 224b
 mechanisms influencing, 775-776
 primary survey and, 133
 pulmonary hypertension and, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 in systemic sclerosis, 348
 renin in regulation of, 1467-1468, 1468f
 renin-angiotensin II pathway and, 172, 172f
 Blood replacement therapy, 211-212, 212f, 897-900
 acute transfusion reactions in, 900-901
 allergy to, 278
 in aplastic anemia, 878
 autologous, 278, 278b, 901
 blood administration setup for, 899f
 cryoprecipitate in, 900
 in hypovolemic shock, 818
 indications for, 897t
 in leukemia, 890
 older adult and, 899b
 plasma in, 900
 platelets in, 900, 900b
 pretransfusion responsibilities in, 897-898, 898b
 red blood cells in, 899-900, 899t
 in sepsis and septic shock, 826
 in sickle cell crisis, 875
 white blood cells in, 900
 Blood sampling
 from central venous catheter, 226
 from peripherally inserted central catheter, 217
 Blood stem cell, 856, 857f
 Blood tests
 in endocrine assessment, 1369b
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1222
 to monitor anticoagulation therapy, 667b
 in renal assessment, 1476-1477, 1477b
 in respiratory assessment, 557b
 for syphilis, 1655
 for tuberculosis, 655
 Blood urea nitrogen, 1477, 1477b
 adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1632
 intrarenal pressure and, 1538
 in kidney disease, 1542b, 1552
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 Blood urea nitrogen/creatinine ratio, 1477, 1477b
 Blood vessels
 adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 optic, 1041
 shock and, 809-811, 811f
 Bloodborne metastasis, 401
 Blood-brain barrier, 909
 Bloodroot, 244t
 Bloodstream infection
 in cancer, 430
 inadequate antimicrobial therapy and, 444
 indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 Blumberg's sign, 1184, 1318
 Blunt trauma, 131-132
 abdominal, 1258
 to bladder, 1516
 renal, 1533-1534, 1534f
 vascular, 805
 Blurred vision in hyperglycemia, 1414
 BMD; *See* Bone mineral density
 BMI; *See* Body mass index
 BNP; *See* B-type natriuretic peptide
 Body cast, 1152, 1152t
 Body defenses
 against infection, 437
 role of skin in, 452, 452f
 Body fluids, 169-171, 170b, 170t-171t
 abnormal electrolyte values in, 170t
 age-related changes in, 170b
 bicarbonate ions and, 198, 198f
 carbon dioxide and hydrogen ions relationship and, 198-199, 198f-199f
 electrolyte composition of, 180, 180f
 fluid compartment volumes in dehydration and, 174f
 physiologic influences on, 166-169
 diffusion in, 167-168, 168f
 filtration in, 166-169, 167f
 osmosis in, 168-169, 169f
 Body image
 after burn injury, 538
 amputation and, 1167-1168
 rheumatoid arthritis and, 342
 Body lice, 496
 Body mass index, 1339
 obesity and, 1349
 Body piercing, 463
 Body temperature
 cardiovascular assessment and, 697
 changes resulting from burn, 512
 fever and
 in dehydration, 176
 in infection, 444-446, 446b
 in influenza, 645
 in pericarditis, 765
 in pharyngitis, 642
 in pneumonia, 650t
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335
 in scorpion bite, 144-145
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 in strangulated hernia, 1243
 in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 in thyroid storm, 1397, 1399
 in toxic shock syndrome, 1615
 findings in palpation of skin, 464t
 focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b
 in heat stroke, 138
 hypothermia and, 148
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 831
 environmental, 148-149, 149b
 Body temperature (*Continued*)
 in near-drowning, 153
 postoperative, 293
 in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 neurovascular status in fracture and, 1149b
 sensory function assessment and, 915
 skin role in regulation of, 454t
 Body weight, reference standards for, 1339
 Boil, 490-491, 492f
 Bolus feeding, 1345
 Bone, 1107-1108, 1107f
 fracture of, 1144-1159
 acute compartment syndrome and, 1145-1146, 1146b
 ankle, 1162
 chest and pelvis, 1162
 chronic complications in, 1147
 classification of, 1144-1145, 1144f
 community-based care in, 1158-1159
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 1154-1155
 crush syndrome and, 1146
 emergency care of, 1150, 1150b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1147-1148
 fat embolism syndrome and, 1146-1147, 1147b
 femur, 1161
 foot and toe, 1162
 health care resources for, 1158
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1148
 hip, 1159-1161, 1160f
 history in, 1148
 home care management in, 1158
 hypovolemic shock and, 1146
 imaging assessment in, 1150
 improving physical mobility in, 1157-1158, 1158f
 incidence and prevalence of, 1148
 infection and, 1147, 1157, 1157b
 knee, 1161
 laboratory assessment in, 1150
 mandibular, 583
 monitoring for neurovascular compromise, 1156-1157, 1157b
 nasal, 581, 581f
 neurovascular assessment in, 1149b
 nonsurgical management of, 1150-1155, 1151f, 1152t
 osteoporotic, 1121
 pain in, 1150-1156
 physical assessment in, 1148-1149, 1148b
 physical therapy for, 1156
 procedures for nonunion of, 1156
 psychosocial assessment in, 1149
 rib, 682, 1162
 skull, 1021
 stages of bone healing and, 1145, 1145b, 1145f
 surgical management of, 1148-1159, 1155f
 teaching for self-management in, 1158, 1158b
 tibia and fibula, 1162
 traction for, 1153-1154, 1153t, 1154b, 1154f
 upper extremity, 1159-1163
 venous thromboembolism and, 1147
 vertebral, 1162, 1163b
 healing of, 1145, 1145b, 1145f
 hypocalcemia and, 190
 Paget's disease of, 1128-1129, 1129b
 parathyroid hormone effects on, 1364, 1364f
 Bone banking, 1156
 Bone cancer, 409, 1134-1138
 Bone density
 aging adult and, 1109b
 lung cancer and, 632
 Bone diseases, 1120-1131
 osteomalacia in, 1127-1128, 1127t
 chronic kidney disease and, 1127, 1127t
 osteoporosis in, 188b, 1120-1127
 community-based care in, 1125-1127
 drug therapy for, 1124-1125, 1125b-1126b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1122
 hip fracture and, 1160
 hypocalcemia and, 190
 imaging assessment in, 1123-1124
 incidence and prevalence of, 1121-1122, 1121b-1122b
 laboratory assessment in, 1123
 lifestyle changes for, 1124
 nutrition therapy in, 1124
 osteomalacia *versus*, 1127t
 pathophysiology of, 1120-1122, 1120t
 physical assessment in, 1122, 1123f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1122-1123
 Paget's disease of bone in, 1128-1129, 1129b
 Bone graft, 1156
 Bone marrow, 304, 856, 856f
 Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy, 866-867, 882-883, 889f
 Bone marrow harvesting, 886
 Bone marrow hypoplasia, 880
 Bone marrow suppression in chemotherapy, 419-421, 419b-420b
 Bone marrow transplantation, 885-889
 Bone mineral density
 dual x-ray absorptiometry for, 1123-1124
 in osteoporosis, 1120
 Bone morphogenetic protein-2 gene, 1121b
 Bone pain, 1111
 in multiple myeloma, 894
 in osteomyelitis, 1132
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1129
 Bone remodeling, 1120
 Bone resorption, 1108
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548-1549, 1552
 in hyperparathyroidism, 1406
 in leukemia, 883
 Bone scan
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 in reproductive assessment, 1583
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 336
 Bone spur, 966
 Bone tumor
 benign, 1133-1134
 malignant, 1134-1138
 osteomalacia and, 1127
 Boneset, 244t
 Bone-specific alkaline phosphatase, 1123
 Boniva; *See* Ibandronate
 Bony ossicle, 1078
 BOOP; *See* Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia
 Borborygmus, 1184, 1255
Borrelia burgdorferi, 352
 Bortezomib, 316, 429-430, 894-895
 Bosentan
 for pulmonary arterial hypertension, 627
 for systemic sclerosis, 348
 Botulism, 448t, 1289t, 1290
 Botulinum antitoxin, 1290
 Bouchard's node, 320

- Bowel dysfunction
in multiple sclerosis, 980
in Parkinson disease, 943
rehabilitation and, 102-103, 103b, 103t
in spinal cord injury, 973, 973b-974b
in spinal cord tumor, 977
in stroke, 1018
in ulcerative colitis, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
- Bowel preparation, 1249
older adult and, 1483b
preoperative, 253-254
- Bowel retraining, 103
- Bowel sounds
in abdominal assessment, 1184
in abdominal trauma, 1258
after burn injury, 524
in gastroenteritis, 1271b
in herniation, 1244
in intestinal obstruction, 1255
postoperative, 290
- Bowel training program, 1018
- Bowlegged deformity, 1113
- Bowman's capsule, 1467, 1467f-1469f, 1469t
- Boxer's ear, 1089
- BPH; *See* Benign prostatic hyperplasia
- Brace cast, 1152t
- Brace for carpal tunnel syndrome, 1172
- Brachial nodes, 1577f
- Brachial plexus, 997f
- Brachial plexus block, 276f
- Brachial pulse, 699f
- Brachial vein, 215f
- Brachioradialis reflex, 917f
- Brachytherapy, 412, 413b
for bone cancer, 1135-1136
for breast cancer, 1605, 1605b
for oral cancer, 1197
for prostate cancer, 1640
for uterine cancer, 1622-1623, 1623b
- Braden Scale, 477, 478f
- Bradycardia, 718, 720-721
in near-drowning, 153
in spinal cord injury, 969-970
- Bradydysrhythmias, 719b, 720, 740b
- Bradykinesia in Parkinson disease, 941, 942b
- Bradykinins, 1321-1322, 1471, 1471t
- Brain, 906-909
circulation in, 908-909, 908f
gate control theory of pain and, 43, 44f
glucose as fuel for, 1411-1412
major parts of, 907-908, 907f
traumatic injury of, 1020-1024
determining brain death in, 1027-1028
drug therapy for, 1028
etiology of, 1023
fluid and electrolyte management in, 1028
health care resources for, 1031
health promotion and maintenance in, 1024
health teaching in, 1030-1031, 1030b
history in, 1024, 1025b
home care management in, 1030
imaging assessment in, 1026
incidence and prevalence of, 1024
increased intracranial pressure in, 1027, 1027b
laboratory assessment in, 1026
minor, 1030b
nutritional status in, 1028
physical assessment in, 1024-1026, 1025b
primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
psychosocial assessment in, 1026
secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
sensory, cognitive, and behavioral changes in, 1028-1029
- Brain (*Continued*)
surgical management of, 1029-1030, 1029t
types of force in, 1021, 1022f
- Brain abscess, 1036
- Brain attack, 1005-1007
bladder and bowel continence in, 1018
cardiovascular assessment in, 1012
cerebral perfusion and, 1013-1017, 1013b-1014b
communication and, 1017-1018, 1018t
dysphagia in, 1017
endovascular interventions in, 1014
etiology and genetic risk in, 1007, 1008b
health care resources for, 1020
health promotion and maintenance in, 1007, 1007b, 1008t
health teaching in, 1019-1020, 1019f
Healthy People 2020 objectives for, 776t
history in, 1008
home care management in, 1019
imaging assessment in, 1012-1013
incidence and prevalence of, 1007, 1007b
increased intracranial pressure in, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
laboratory assessment in, 1012
left *versus* right hemisphere, 1011b
mobility and self-care in, 1017b, 1018
monitoring complications in, 1015
National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale in, 1009, 1010t-1011t
nonsurgical interventions in, 1008b, 1015-1016
ongoing drug therapy for, 1015
pathophysiologic changes in brain in, 1005
physical assessment in, 1009-1012, 1009b
psychosocial assessment in, 1012
sensory and perceptual changes in, 1018-1019
surgical management of, 1016-1017, 1016b
transfer techniques for, 97b
types of, 1005-1007, 1005f, 1006t, 1007f
unilateral body neglect and, 1019
visual loss in, 1011, 1012f
- Brain biopsy, 925, 1033
- Brain death, 1027-1028
- Brain disorders, 927-958
Alzheimer's disease in, 946-955
behavioral problems in, 954t
caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
chronic confusion in, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
genetic considerations in, 947b
health care resources for, 955
health teaching in, 955
history in, 947-948, 948t
home care management in, 954-955
imaging assessment in, 950
injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
laboratory assessment in, 950
pathophysiology of, 946-947
physical assessment in, 948-949, 948b, 949f
psychosocial assessment in, 949-950
encephalitis in, 940-941, 941b
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366
West Nile virus in, 941b
headache in, 928-932, 928b
cluster, 931-932
migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
Huntington disease in, 955-956, 956b
meningitis in, 937-940, 938b-939b
after craniotomy, 1035
after pituitary gland removal, 1377
- Brain disorders (*Continued*)
gonorrhea and, 1661
laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
labyrinthitis and, 1095
neurologic status in, 939b
Parkinson disease in, 941-946, 942b-943b, 942t, 943f
drug therapy for, 943-944, 944b-945b
genetic considerations in, 942b
psychosocial support in, 945-946
surgical management of, 946
seizures and epilepsy in, 932-937
drug therapy for, 933, 933b-934b
emergency care in, 935-936, 936b
etiology and genetic risk in, 933
health teaching in, 933-935, 935b
older adult and, 932b
seizure precautions and management in, 935, 935b-936b
surgical management of, 936-937
types of, 932-933
- Brain herniation syndromes, 1022-1023, 1024f
- Brain natriuretic peptide, 171-172
- Brain tumor, 1031-1036, 1032b
classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
community-based care in, 1036
complications of, 1031
drug therapy for, 1032-1033
incidence and prevalence of, 1032
motor and sensory deficits in, 409
postoperative complications in, 1035-1036, 1035t
sites of metastasis of, 401t
stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033, 1033f
surgical management of, 1033-1036, 1034b
- Brainstem, 907f
functions of, 908t
tumor of, 1032b
- Brainstem auditory evoked response, 923
- BRCA1 and BRCA2 gene mutations, 407, 1579, 1592b
- Breast, 1577, 1577f, 1588-1610
benign disorders of, 1588-1591, 1589t
ductal ectasia in, 1590
fibroadenoma in, 1589
fibrocystic breast condition in, 1589-1590
gynecomastia in, 1591, 1604f
intraductal papilloma in, 1590
large-breasted women and, 1590
small-breasted women and, 1590-1591, 1590b
clinical examination of, 1595-1597, 1596f
mammography and, 1583
mass in, 1580
ultrasound of, 1584
- Breast augmentation surgery, 507t, 1590, 1590b
- Breast biopsy, 1586, 1599
- Breast cancer, 1591-1597
adjuvant therapy for, 1604-1607
BRCA1 and BRCA2 gene mutations in, 407, 1579, 1592b
breast biopsy in, 1599
breast mass assessment and, 1598b
breast reconstruction and, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
breast self-awareness/self examination and, 1594-1595, 1595f
changes in cognitive function in, 424
chemotherapy for, 1605-1606, 1606b, 1606t
clinical breast examination and, 1595-1597, 1596f
complementary and alternative medicine for, 1600, 1600b, 1600t
coping strategies in, 1599, 1599b
- Breast cancer (*Continued*)
cultural considerations in, 1594b, 1597b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1592-1593, 1592b, 1593t
health care resources for, 1609
health promotion and maintenance and, 1593-1597
history in, 1597-1598
home care management in, 1607, 1607b-1608b
hormonal therapy for, 1606-1607
imaging assessment in, 1598-1599
incidence and prevalence of, 1593
invasive, 1592, 1592f
laboratory assessment in, 1598
mammography and, 1594
in men, 1592
metastasis in, 1599-1607
noninvasive, 1591-1592
options for high-risk women, 1597
pathophysiology of, 1591-1597
physical assessment in, 1598
postmastectomy exercises and, 1603b
psychosocial assessment in, 1598
psychosocial support in, 1608-1609
radiation therapy for, 1605, 1605b
sites of metastasis in, 401t
soy intake and risk for, 1600b
stem cell transplantation for, 1607
surgical management of, 1600-1607, 1601f-1602f, 1602b
targeted therapy for, 1606
teaching for self-management in, 1607-1608, 1608b
in young women, 1592
- Breast evaluation form, 1596f
- Breast history, 1596, 1596f
- Breast reconstruction, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
- Breast reduction surgery, 507t
- Breast self-examination, 1594-1595, 1595f
- Breast-conserving surgery, 1602
- Breast-specific gamma imaging, 1598-1599
- Breath sounds
adventitious, 554, 555t
bronchial, 650
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616
normal, 553-554, 554t
- Breathing
accessory muscles of respiration and, 547
difficulties in lung cancer, 632
focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b
primary survey and, 132-133, 134t
purposes of, 544
- Breathing exercises
for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618, 619b
patient and family education in, 256b
postoperative, 256, 294
- Breathing management
in pneumonia, 650
in spinal cord injury, 971, 971b
in traumatic brain injury, 1025, 1025b
- Breathlessness; *See* Dyspnea
- Brethaire; *See* Terbutaline
- Brevibloc; *See* Esmolol
- Brevital; *See* Methohexital sodium
- Bright's disease, 1475
- Brimonidine tartrate, 1066b-1067b
- Brinzolamide, 1066b-1067b
- Brinzolamide tartrate and timolol maleate, 1066b-1067b
- BRMs; *See* Biologic response modifiers
- Broad ligament, 1576f
- Broca's aphasia, 1018
- Broca's area, 907
- Bromfenac, 1054b

- Bromocriptine
for hyperpituitarism, 1375
for Parkinson disease, 944
- Bronchial breath sounds, 554, 554t, 650
- Bronchial hygiene in tracheostomy, 576
- Bronchiole, 546f, 1363t
- Bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia, 630
- Bronchodilators
for asthma, 607b-608b, 609-610
for bronchospasm near death, 114
for pneumonia, 651
- Bronchogenic carcinoma, 630
- Bronchoscopy, 559
in burn injury, 525
in head and neck cancer, 590
- Bronchospasm
in asthma, 601-602
in bee sting, 146
during suctioning of tracheostomy, 575
- Bronchovesicular breath sounds, 554t
- Bronchus, 546f
- Bravana; *See* Arformoterol
- Brown recluse spider, 142-143, 143f
- Bruising, 462
after craniotomy, 1034
assessment of, 863
in cirrhosis, 1297
in fracture, 1149
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t
in multiple myeloma, 894
in pit viper envenomation, 140
- Bruit, 699
abdominal, 1184
in abdominal aortic aneurysm, 793
in leukemia, 882
renal artery, 1476
in vascular disease, 774
- Bru-ton's agammaglobulinemia, 382
- BSAP; *See* Bone-specific alkaline phosphatase
- BSE; *See* Breast self-examination
- BSO; *See* Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
- B-type natriuretic peptide, 747, 750
- Bubble humidifier in oxygen therapy, 565f
- Buccal mucosa, 1179
- Buck's traction, 1153, 1153t, 1160
- Budesonide, 610-611
- Buerger's disease, 797
- Buffalo hump in Cushing's syndrome, 1384f, 1385
- Buffers, 197-198, 197f-198f
- Bulbar conjunctiva, 1041
- Bulbar involvement in myasthenia gravis, 991-992
- Bulbourethral gland, 1578f
- Bulimia nervosa, 1340
- Bullae, 460f-461f
in emphysema, 612, 612f
- Bull's-eye lesion in Lyme disease, 352
- Bumetanide, 183
- Bumex; *See* Bumetanide
- BUN; *See* Blood urea nitrogen
- Bundle of His, 712, 712f
- Bunion, 1138, 1138f
- Bunionectomy, 1138
- Burch colposuspension, 1503t
- Burkholderia cepacia*, 624
- Burkitt's lymphoma, 367
- Burn, 511-540
acute phase of, 530
burn wound infection and, 533-536, 534b-535b
cardiopulmonary assessment in, 530
immune assessment in, 530, 530t-531t
maintenance of mobility in, 536-538, 537f
musculoskeletal assessment in, 530
neuroendocrine assessment in, 530
- Burn (*Continued*)
positioning to prevent contractures in, 537b
supporting self-image in, 538
weight loss control in, 536
wound care in, 531-533, 532t, 533f
- burn center referral criteria and, 513t
- cardiac changes resulting from, 516
- compensatory responses to, 517, 518f
- depth of, 512-515, 513t, 514f
deep full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
partial-thickness wound in, 514-515, 514f-515f
superficial-thickness wound in, 513-514
- etiology of, 517-519, 519f
- gastrointestinal changes resulting from, 517
- immunologic changes resulting from, 517
- incidence and prevalence of, 519
- intensity of heat and duration of exposure in, 513f
- in lightning strike injury, 147
- metabolic changes resulting from, 517
- during minimally invasive and robotic surgery, 267
- prevention of, 519-520
- pulmonary changes resulting from, 516-517
- rehabilitative phase of, 538-540, 539t
health care resources for, 539-540
home care management in, 539
psychosocial support during, 539
teaching for self-management in, 539
- resuscitation phase of, 520, 520b
acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
airway management in, 525-526
carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
cardiovascular assessment in, 522-523
drug therapy in, 527
fluid resuscitation in, 526b-527b, 526t
gastrointestinal assessment in, 524
history in, 520-521
hypovolemic shock and, 526-527
imaging assessment in, 524
laboratory assessment in, 524, 524b
pain management during, 527-529, 528b-529b
pulmonary fluid overload in, 522, 522b
respiratory assessment in, 521-522, 521b, 521t
skin assessment in, 523-524, 523f
surgical management in, 527, 528f
urinary assessment in, 523
skin changes resulting from, 512-515
vascular changes resulting from, 516, 516f
- Burn center referral criteria, 513t
- Burn fluid resuscitation formulas, 511
- Burn wound sepsis, 530, 530t-531t
- Bursae, 1108
- Busulfan, 415t-416t
- Busulfex; *See* Busulfan
- Butorphanol, 297, 298b
- Butterfly needle, 214-215
- Butterfly rash, 344, 344f
- Buttonhook, 100t
- Byetta; *See* Exenatide
- C**
C fiber, 43
- CA-125 cancer antigen test
in ovarian cancer, 1626
in uterine cancer, 1622
- Cabazitaxel, 415t-416t
- CABG; *See* Coronary artery bypass graft surgery
- Cachexia, 409, 1340
- CAD; *See* Coronary artery disease
- Caduet, 775
- CAGE questionnaire, 24-25
- Calan; *See* Verapamil
- Calciferol, 1407b
- Calcipotriene, 500
- Calcitonin, 1108
for osteoporosis, 1125
for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
for phantom limb pain, 1166
- Calcium, 187-191
abnormal values of, 170t
adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
in blood clotting, 860t
in body fluids, 180f
in bone, 1108
chronic kidney disease and, 1548, 1548f
deficiency after gastric surgery, 1237
hypocalcemia and, 190-191, 190t
calcium supplementation-related, 1125
in cancer, 431
as cause of urinary stones, 1508t
in chronic kidney disease, 1557
in hyperparathyroidism, 1406
lung cancer and, 631t
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
total parenteral nutrition and, 1348
- hypocalcemia and, 188-190, 189f, 189t
alkalosis and, 208
cardiac manifestations of, 703
in chronic kidney disease, 1548-1549
in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
thyroid surgery-related, 1399
- lactose intolerance and, 188b
- normal adult range for, 1186b
- osteoporosis and, 188b, 1121
- Paget's disease of bone and, 1130
- parathyroid hormone balance of, 1364, 1364f
- plasma values in older adult, 170b
- reabsorption in proximal convoluted tubule, 1470
- supplementation of
after coronary artery bypass graft, 847-848
for osteoporosis, 1125, 1126b
during steroid therapy, 340
twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
values in acid-base imbalances, 205b
- Calcium carbonate, 1230
- Calcium channel blockers
for acute kidney injury, 1543
for coronary artery disease, 839
for dysrhythmias, 732-733
for hypertension, 780, 781b-782b
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for migraine, 930, 930b
for polycystic kidney disease, 1521
for pulmonary arterial hypertension, 627
- Calcium chelators
for hypercalcemia, 191
for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
- Calcium chloride, 734b
- Calcium oxalate stones, 1511t
- Calcium phosphate stones, 1511t
- Calculus cholecystitis, 1316
- Calf circumference, 1339-1340
- Callus, 1139t, 1145, 1145f
- CaloMist; *See* Cyanocobalamin
- Caloric testing, 1086
- Calyx, 1466, 1467f
- CAM; *See* Complementary and alternative medicine
- Campinha-Bacote's ASKED Model of Cultural Competence, 31, 31t
- Camptosar; *See* Irinotecan
- Campylobacter* enteritis, 1270, 1270t
- Canada Food Guide, 1336-1337
- Canadian Triage Acuity Scale, 128
- Canal of Schlemm, 1040, 1040f-1041f
- Canasa; *See* Mesalamine
- Cancellous bone, 1107, 1107f
loss in osteoporosis, 1120
- Cancer, 396-407
bladder, 1512
diagnostic assessment of, 1513
health care resources for, 1515
health promotion and maintenance in, 1512
nonsurgical management of, 1513
older adult and, 405b
pathophysiology of, 1512
physical assessment in, 1512
psychosocial assessment in, 1512-1513
sexual expression and quality of life in, 1515b
surgical management of, 1493b, 1513-1514
teaching for self-management in, 1515
- bone, 409, 1134-1138
- brain tumor, 1031-1036, 1032b
classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
community-based care in, 1036
complications of, 1031
drug therapy for, 1032-1033
incidence and prevalence of, 1032
postoperative complications in, 1035-1036, 1035t
stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033, 1033f
surgical management of, 1033-1036, 1034b
- breast, 1591-1597
adjuvant therapy for, 1604-1607
BRCA1 and BRCA2 gene mutations in, 1579
breast biopsy in, 1599
breast mass assessment and, 1598b
breast reconstruction and, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
breast self-awareness/self examination in, 1594-1595, 1595f
changes in cognitive function in, 424
chemotherapy for, 1605-1606, 1606b, 1606t
clinical breast examination and, 1595-1597, 1596f
complementary and alternative medicine in, 1600, 1600b, 1600t
coping strategies in, 1599, 1599b
cultural considerations in, 1594b, 1597b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1592-1593, 1592b, 1593t
health care resources for, 1609
health promotion and maintenance and, 1593-1597
history in, 1597-1598
home care management in, 1607, 1607b-1608b
hormonal therapy for, 1606-1607
imaging assessment in, 1598-1599
incidence and prevalence of, 1593
invasive, 1592, 1592f
laboratory assessment in, 1598
mammography and, 1594
in men, 1592
metastasis in, 1599-1607
noninvasive, 1591-1592
options for high-risk women, 1597
pathophysiology of, 1591-1597
physical assessment in, 1598

Cancer (*Continued*)

postmastectomy exercises and, 1603b

psychosocial assessment in, 1598

psychosocial support in, 1608-1609

radiation therapy for, 1605, 1605b

sites of metastasis in, 401t

soy intake and risk for, 1600b

stem cell transplantation for, 1607

surgical management of, 1600-1607, 1601f-1602f, 1602b

targeted therapy for, 1606

teaching for self-management in, 1607-1608, 1608b

in young women, 1592

cervical, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b, 1658

chemotherapy for, 414-424

alopecia in, 422-424

bone marrow suppression in, 419-421, 419b-420b

categories of drugs in, 414-416, 415t-416t

cognitive changes in, 424

combination, 416

infection prevention in, 420b

injury and bleeding prevention in, 422b

mucositis in, 422, 424b

nausea and vomiting in, 421-422, 421b-423b

oral agents in, 418t

peripheral neuropathy in, 424, 425b

pharmacogenomics and, 416b

side effects of, 419

thrombocytopenia in, 421b

treatment issues in, 416-419, 417b, 417f

classification by tissue of origin, 401t

colorectal, 1245-1246

colostomy management in, 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f, 1252b-1253b

drug therapy for, 1248

etiology and genetic risk in, 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b

grieving in, 1251-1252

health care resources for, 1253-1254

health promotion and maintenance in, 1246, 1246b

history in, 1246

home care management in, 1252

imaging assessment in, 1247

incidence and prevalence in, 1246

laboratory assessment in, 1247

metastasis in, 1247-1251

older adult and, 405b

pathophysiology of, 1245-1246, 1245f

physical assessment in, 1246-1247, 1247f

postoperative care in, 1249-1251

preoperative care in, 1248-1249, 1249t

psychosocial assessment in, 1247

radiation therapy for, 1248

sexuality concerns with ostomies in, 1253b

sites of metastasis in, 401t

surgical management of, 1248-1251, 1248t, 1250f

teaching for self-management in, 1252-1253, 1252b

ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease and, 1273t

wound management in, 1251, 1251b

development of, 399-406, 399t

cancer classification and, 401, 401t

cancer grading, ploidy, and staging in, 401-403, 402t-403t

carcinogenesis/oncogenesis and, 399-401

Cancer (*Continued*)

cultural considerations in, 406b

external factors in, 403-404, 404b, 404t

genetic considerations in, 405b, 406t

incidence and death by site and gender, 402f

metastasis and, 400, 400f, 401t

older adult and, 405b

personal factors in, 404-406, 405t

racial differences in, 406t

disease-related consequences of, 409-410

altered gastrointestinal structure and function in, 409

motor and sensory deficits in, 409

reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409

reduced oxygenation in, 410

esophageal, 1211-1212

diagnosis of, 1213

drug therapy for, 1214

genetic considerations in, 1212b

health care resources for, 1217

history in, 1212

home care management in, 1217

nasogastric tube after surgery and, 1216, 1216b

nutrition considerations in, 1213-1217, 1213b

physical assessment in, 1212, 1213b

postoperative wound management in, 1216, 1216b

psychosocial assessment in, 1212-1213

surgical management of, 1214-1217, 1215f, 1216b

teaching for self-management in, 1217

gallbladder, 1320

gastric, 1234-1238

altered gastrointestinal structure and function in, 409

chronic gastritis and, 1221

early *versus* advanced, 1235b

etiology and genetic risk in, 1234, 1234b

health care resources for, 1238

home care management in, 1238

postoperative dumping syndrome and, 1236, 1237t

surgical management of, 1235-1237, 1236f

teaching for self-management in, 1238

grading of, 402t

head and neck, 588-589

airway obstruction in, 590-594

anxiety in, 595-596

aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b

etiology of, 589

health care resources for, 597-598

history in, 589

home care management in, 596, 596b

imaging assessment in, 589-590

incidence and prevalence of, 589

laboratory assessment in, 589

pathophysiology of, 588-589

physical assessment in, 589, 589t

psychosocial assessment in, 589

psychosocial support in, 597

self-concept in, 596

smoking cessation and, 598b

speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f

surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b

teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f

hormonal manipulation for, 424-425, 425t

Cancer (*Continued*)

immunotherapy for, 426-427, 427t

leukemia, 880-892

conserving energy in, 890, 890b

drug therapy for, 883-884

etiology and genetic risk in, 880-881

health care resources for, 890-891

hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for, 885-889

history in, 881-882

home care management in, 890, 891b

imaging assessment in, 883

incidence and prevalence of, 881

infection prevention in, 883-889, 883b

laboratory assessment in, 882-883, 882f

older adult and, 405b

pathophysiology of, 880-892

physical assessment, 882, 882b

psychosocial assessment in, 882

psychosocial preparation for, 891

reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409

risk for bleeding in, 892b

teaching for self-management in, 890-891, 891b

liver, 1310-1311

lung, 630-638

chemotherapy for, 633

chest tube for, 634-638, 635b, 635f-636f, 637b

diagnosis of, 632-633

etiology and genetic risk in, 631, 631b

health promotion and maintenance in, 631

history in, 631-638, 631t

incidence and prevalence of, 630-631

older adult and, 405b

pain management in, 637

pathophysiology of, 630-631, 631t

photodynamic therapy for, 633-634

physical assessment in, 632

pneumonectomy care in, 638

psychosocial assessment in, 632

radiation therapy for, 633

reduced oxygenation in, 410

respiratory management in, 637-638

sites of metastasis in, 401t

surgical management of, 634-638, 634f

lymphoma, 892-895

Hodgkin's lymphoma in, 892-893, 893t

multiple myeloma in, 894-895

non-Hodgkin lymphoma in, 893-894

reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409

risk in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367

nose and sinus, 583

oncologic emergencies in, 430-433

hypercalcemia in, 431

sepsis and disseminated intravascular coagulation in, 430

spinal cord compression in, 431

superior vena cava syndrome in, 431-432, 432f

syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone in, 430-431

tumor lysis syndrome in, 432-433, 432f

oral, 1195-1200, 1196b

basal cell carcinoma in, 1196

cervical lymph nodes and, 1196f

Cancer (*Continued*)

health care resources for, 1200

home care management in, 1199, 1200b

Kaposi's sarcoma in, 1196

nonsurgical management of, 1197-1198, 1197b-1198b

self-management in, 1200

squamous cell carcinoma in, 1196

surgical management of, 1198-1199, 1199b

ovarian, 1626-1627, 1626t

pancreatic, 1329-1333

community-based care in, 1333

genetic considerations in, 1329b

nonsurgical management of, 1330-1331

physical assessment in, 1330, 1330b

postoperative care in, 1331-1333

surgical management of, 1331-1333, 1331f, 1332t

pathophysiology of, 396-399, 397f

abnormal cell biology and, 398-399, 398t

benign tumor cells and, 398-399

features of cancer cells and, 399

normal cell biology and, 397-398, 397f-398f

penile, 1647-1648

photodynamic therapy for, 425-426, 426b

prevention of, 406-407

prostate, 1637

chemotherapy for, 1640

expectant therapy in, 1638

genetic considerations in, 1637b

health care resources for, 1641-1642

health promotion and maintenance in, 1637

history in, 1637

home care management in, 1641

hormone therapy for, 1640, 1640b

laboratory assessment in, 1638

older adult and, 405b

pathophysiology of, 1637, 1637f

physical assessment in, 1638

psychosocial assessment in, 1638

radiation therapy in, 1640

sites of metastasis of, 401t

surgical management of, 1639-1640, 1639b

teaching for self-management in, 1641, 1641b

transrectal ultrasonography in, 1638, 1638b

radiation therapy for, 411-414, 411f-412f

delivery methods and devices in, 412-413

sealed implants of radioactive sources in, 413b

side effects of, 413

skin protection during, 413b-414b

renal cell carcinoma, 1532-1533, 1532t

risk in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367, 367f

skin, 502-505

biotherapy for, 505

drug therapy for, 504

etiology and genetic risk in, 502-503, 503f

experimental therapy for, 505

incidence and prevalence of, 503

pathophysiology of, 502-505, 502t

prevention of, 503-504, 503b

radiation therapy for, 505

surgical management of, 504

surgery for, 410-411

targeted therapy for, 427-430, 428f-429f, 429t

angiogenesis inhibitors in, 430

epidermal growth factor/receptor inhibitors in, 428

- Cancer (Continued)**
 monoclonal antibodies in, 430
 multikinase inhibitors in, 429
 proteasome inhibitors in, 429-430
 tyrosine kinase inhibitors in, 428-430
 vascular endothelial growth factor/
 receptor inhibitors in, 429
 testicular, 1643
 chemotherapy for, 1645
 classification of tumors in, 1643t
 community-based care in, 1646
 external beam radiation therapy
 for, 1646
 genetic considerations in, 1643b
 laboratory assessment in, 1644
 physical assessment in, 1643-1644,
 1644b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1644
 sperm banking and, 1644b
 surgical management of, 1645,
 1645b
 testicular self-examination and,
 1643b
 thyroid, 1405-1406
 uterine, 1621, 1622t
Cancer control surgery, 410
Cancer therapy symptom distress, 419
Candidiasis, 491b, 493
 in acquired immunodeficiency
 syndrome, 366, 366f
 in cystitis, 1491
 oral, 1193, 1193b, 1194f
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
 sexually-transmitted, 1666
 in stomatitis, 1193
Cane, 98b, 98f, 1157-1158
Canker sore, 1193
Cannabinoids, 58
Canthus, 1041
Capecitabine, 415t-416t, 423t
 for colorectal cancer, 1248
 for pancreatic cancer, 1330
Capillary, 167f, 690
**Capillary closing pressure, pressure ulcer
 and, 477**
Capillary leak syndrome, 812
 in burn injury, 516, 516f
 histamine and, 384
 in septic shock, 820
Capillary refill time
 in hypovolemic shock, 816
 neurovascular status in fracture and,
 1149b
 in septic shock, 820
Capital hip fracture, 1160f
Caplan's syndrome, 335
Capnography, 556-558
Capnometry, 556-558, 1346
Capoten; See Captopril
Capsaicin, 323, 1449
Captopril
 for cystinuria, 1511
 for hypertension, 783
 for renovascular disease, 1531
Carbachol, 1066b-1067b
Carbamazepine, 934b
 for restless legs syndrome, 999
 for trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
Carbatrol; See Carbamazepine
Carbohydrate antigen 19-9, 1186b
Carbohydrate counting, 1410, 1439
Carbon dioxide
 hydrogen ions and, 198-199,
 198f-199f
 perioperative assessment of,
 249b-250b
 respiratory acid-base control and, 200
Carbon dioxide narcosis, 564
Carbon monoxide poisoning, 522, 522t
**Carbonated beverages, osteoporosis and,
 1122**
Carbonic acid, 198
**Carbonic anhydrase equation, 198,
 198f**
Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors,
 1066b-1067b
Carboplatin, 415t-416t
 for cervical cancer, 1626
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for ovarian cancer, 1627
Carboprost; See Carbachol
Carboxyhemoglobin, 244
 in burn assessment, 524b
Carcinoembryonic antigen, 1186b
 in colorectal cancer, 1247
 in pancreatic cancer, 1330
Carcinogenesis, 399-401, 399t
Carcinogens, 399-400
Carcinoma in situ
 cervical, 1624
 penile, 1647-1648
Cardiac arrest, 730
 cardiopulmonary resuscitation for,
 736
 drug therapy for, 733, 734b
 in hypothermia, 149
 in lightning strike, 147
 regional anesthesia-associated, 276
Cardiac axis, 713, 713f
Cardiac blood pool imaging, 707
**Cardiac catheterization, 703-705, 704t,
 705f, 836**
**Cardiac conduction system, 711-713,
 712f**
Cardiac cycle, 689, 690f
Cardiac disease; See Heart disease
Cardiac dysrhythmias, 711-743
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 after thoracic aortic aneurysm repair,
 795
 atrial, 721-728
 atrial fibrillation in, 722-728, 727b,
 727f
 premature atrial complexes in,
 721-722
 supraventricular tachycardia in,
 722
 atrioventricular blocks in, 731
 cardiac conduction system and,
 711-713, 712f
 classification of, 720-731
 community-based care, 739-742
 in coronary artery disease, 841
 drug therapy for, 723b-726b
 electrocardiography and, 713-718,
 713f
 complexes, segments, and intervals
 in, 715-717, 716f
 continuous electrocardiographic
 monitoring and, 714-715, 715f
 heart rate determination using,
 717-718, 717f
 heart rhythm analysis using, 718
 lead systems in, 713-714, 714t
 in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 989
 health care resources for, 741-742
 health teaching in, 740-741,
 740b-741b
 home care management in, 739-740
 in hyperkalemia, 187
 in hypokalemia, 184-185
 nonsurgical management of, 732-738
 automatic external defibrillation in,
 738, 738f
 cardiopulmonary resuscitation in,
 736
 cardioversion for, 737, 737b
 defibrillation in, 737, 737b
 drug therapy for, 732-733, 734b
 medication errors in, 732b
 radiofrequency catheter ablation in,
 738
 temporary pacing for, 733-736,
 735f-736f
 vagal maneuvers for, 733, 733b
 normal sinus rhythm and, 718-719,
 719f
 older adult and, 740b
 patient safety in, 731b
Cardiac dysrhythmias (Continued)
 in pneumonia, 650
 sinus, 720-721, 720b, 721f
 bradycardia in, 720-721
 tachycardia in, 720
 surgery for, 738-739
 coronary artery bypass grafting in,
 739
 implantable cardioverter/
 defibrillator in, 739, 742b
 open-chest cardiac massage in, 739
 permanent pacemaker insertion in,
 738, 739f
 sustained tachydysrhythmias and
 bradydysrhythmias in, 719b
 terminology in, 719-720
 ventricular, 728-731
 premature ventricular complexes
 in, 728, 729f
 ventricular asystole in, 730-731
 ventricular fibrillation in, 729-730,
 730f
 ventricular tachycardia in, 728-729,
 729b, 729f
Cardiac failure; See Heart failure
Cardiac glycosides, 1544b
Cardiac index, 689
Cardiac markers, 701
Cardiac monitoring
 in hypercalcemia, 191
 in hyperkalemia, 187
 postoperative, 288
Cardiac muscle, 1109
Cardiac output, 689
 after burn injury, 516
 blood pressure and, 691
 chronic kidney disease and, 1555
 heart failure and, 745-746
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
Cardiac pressure waveforms, 709f
Cardiac rehabilitation, 840, 840b, 851
Cardiac resynchronization therapy, 754
Cardiac tamponade
 after coronary artery bypass graft,
 848b
 in pericarditis, 765-766
Cardiac troponin, 702b
Cardiac valves, 688, 692b
Cardinal ligament, 1576f
Cardinal positions of gaze, 1047, 1047f
Cardiogenic shock, 811-812, 842
 functional impairment in, 810t
 in myocardial infarction, 841
 in older adult, 823b
**Cardiomyopathy, 767-770, 767t, 769b,
 769f**
 in sickle cell disease, 873
 uremic, 1549
Cardiopulmonary bypass, 846-847, 846f
 in hypothermia rewarming, 149
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation, 736
 DNR order and, 107-108
 in lightning strike injury, 147
Cardiovascular assessment, 686-710
 arteriography in, 703
 in burn, 522-523, 530
 cardiac catheterization in, 703-705,
 704t, 705f
 chest radiography in, 703
 current health problems in, 695-696,
 696t
 echocardiography in, 706-707
 electrocardiogram in, 705-706
 electronic-beam computed
 tomography scan in, 708
 electrophysiologic studies in, 706
 family history and genetic risk in,
 694-695, 695b
 functional history in, 696, 697t
 Gordon's functional health patterns
 in, 693b
 in hematologic assessment, 863
 hemodynamic monitoring in,
 708-710, 708b, 709f
 impedance cardiography in, 710
Cardiovascular assessment (Continued)
 laboratory assessment in, 701-703,
 702b
 magnetic resonance imaging in,
 707-708
 myocardial nuclear perfusion imaging
 in, 707
 nutrition history in, 694
 older adult and, 696b
 patient history in, 692-696
 physical assessment in, 697-701
 blood pressure in, 698-699
 extremities and, 697-698, 698f
 general appearance and, 697
 precordium and, 699-701, 700f,
 701t
 skin and, 697
 venous and arterial pulses in, 699,
 699f
 psychosocial assessment in, 701
 in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
 in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 stress test in, 706
 in stroke, 1012
 transesophageal echocardiography in,
 707
 women's health considerations in,
 693b, 695b
**Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy,
 1416**
**Cardiovascular disease, 687, 772-807;
 See also Heart disease**
 acute peripheral arterial occlusion in,
 791-792, 792b
 aneurysms in, 792-796
 community-based care in, 795-796
 critical rescue in, 795b
 imaging assessment in, 793
 nonsurgical management of, 794
 pathophysiology of, 792-796, 793f
 peripheral artery, 796
 physical assessment in, 793
 postoperative graft occlusion or
 rupture in, 794b
 surgical management of, 794-795
 aortic dissection in, 796-797
 arteriosclerosis and atherosclerosis in,
 772-775
 complementary and alternative
 medicine for, 775
 drug therapy for, 775, 775b, 775t
 laboratory assessment in, 774
 nutrition therapy for, 774-775
 pathophysiology of, 772-773, 773f,
 773t
 physical assessment in, 773-774,
 774b
 Buerger's disease in, 797
 COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b
 genetic considerations in, 695b
 hypertension in, 775-785
 adherence to plan of care in, 784
 classifications of, 776-777, 776t
 complementary and alternative
 medicine for, 780
 concept map for, 689f
 diagnostic assessment in, 778
 drug therapy for, 780-784,
 780b-783b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 777,
 777t
 health care resources for, 785
 health promotion and maintenance
 in, 777
 health teaching in, 784
Healthy People 2020 objectives for,
 776t
 history in, 777-778
 home care management in, 784,
 785b
 hypertensive urgency or crisis in,
 784b
 incidence and prevalence of, 777,
 777b
 lifestyle changes for, 778-780

- Cardiovascular disease (*Continued*)
 mechanisms influencing blood pressure and, 775-776
 physical assessment in, 778, 778f
 psychosocial assessment in, 778
 peripheral arterial disease in, 785-791
 community-based care in, 791, 791b
 cultural considerations in, 786b
 imaging assessment in, 787
 lower extremity ulcers in, 788b
 nonsurgical management of, 787-789
 pathophysiology of, 785-791, 786b, 786f
 physical assessment in, 786-787, 787f
 postoperative graft occlusion in, 791b
 surgical management of, 789-791, 789b, 790f
 peripheral venous disease in, 798-805
 anticoagulant therapy for, 801b, 803b
 phlebitis in, 805
 thrombolytic therapy for, 802, 802b
 varicose veins in, 805
 vascular trauma and, 805
 venous insufficiency in, 803-805, 804b
 venous thromboembolism in, 799-803, 799f, 800b
 Raynaud's phenomenon and disease in, 798, 798f
 risk in diabetes mellitus, 1413-1414
 smoking and, 693
 subclavian steal in, 797
 thoracic outlet syndrome in, 797-798
- Cardiovascular status
 in infective endocarditis, 763-764
 in liver dysfunction, 1297f
 in meningitis, 938, 940
 in nutrient deficiencies, 1341t
 preoperative assessment of, 246
 in shock, 810b
- Cardiovascular system
 acidosis and, 204-205, 204b
 acute leukemia and, 882, 882b
 alkalosis and, 196, 208
 anemia and, 871b
 changes of aging as surgical risk factor and, 245b
 chronic kidney disease and, 1551, 1551b
 complications of immobility and, 99t
 Cushing's disease and, 1385b, 1386
 dehydration and, 175
 fluid overload and, 179b
 hypercalcemia and, 191
 hyperkalemia and, 187
 hyponatremia and, 183
 hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 hypocalcemia and, 189
 hypokalemia and, 184
 hyponatremia and, 182
 hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 hypovolemic shock and, 816
 nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
 potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 sepsis and septic shock and, 823
 sickle cell disease and, 872
 Cardioversion, 728, 737, 737b
 Cardizem; *See* Diltiazem
 Cardura; *See* Doxazosin
 Caregiver role strain in Alzheimer's disease, 954, 954b
 Carina, 546
 endotracheal intubation and, 664b, 674
 Carmustine, 415t-416t, 977-978, 1033
 Carotid artery
 palpation of, 774
 rupture after head and neck surgery, 593, 593b
- Carotid artery angioplasty with stenting, 1015
 Carotid atherosclerosis, 1414
 Carotid endarterectomy, 1016, 1016b
 Carotid pulse, 699f
 Carotid sinus massage, 733
 Carpal tunnel syndrome, 1170-1172, 1171b
 Carrier, 74, 435
 hepatitis, 1306
 Carrier testing, 75t
 Carteolol, 1066b-1067b
 Cartilage
 articular, 1109f
 degeneration in older adult, 1109b
 osteoarthritis and, 319, 319f
 Cartrol; *See* Carteolol
 Carvedilol
 for coronary artery disease, 838b, 839
 for heart failure, 753
 Case management, 4
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673-674
 in emergency care, 129
 Caseation necrosis in tuberculosis, 653
 Casodex; *See* Bicalutamide
 Cast, 1151-1153, 1151f, 1152t, 1158b
 Cast syndrome, 1152
 Casts, renal, 1478b, 1480
 Catabolism after burn injury, 517
 Catapres; *See* Clonidine
 Cataract, 1040-1041, 1059-1062
 diabetes mellitus and, 1414
 home care management in, 1061, 1062b, 1062f
 pathophysiology of, 1059-1060, 1059f, 1060t
 physical assessment in, 1060, 1060f
 surgery for, 1060-1061, 1061f
 Catechol O-methyltransferases, 944
 Catecholamine receptors, 1363t
 Catecholamine-producing tumor, 1390
 Catecholamine(s), 1362
 twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
- Catheter
 central venous
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 blood sampling from, 226
 complications of, 232t
 home care of, 891b
 in hypovolemic shock, 819
 nontunneled percutaneous, 217-218, 218f
 peripherally inserted, 216-217, 217f
 tunneled, 218, 218f
 for chemotherapy, 235-236
 for epidural analgesia, 57
 epistaxis, 582, 582f
 hemodialysis, 220, 1545f
 migration of, 232t
 for monitoring intracranial pressure, 1029t
 in peripheral infusion therapy
 flushing of, 225-226, 225b
 insertion and placement methods
 for, 213-214, 213t, 214b, 214f
 midline, 215-216, 215f
 older adult and, 227-233
 short, 213-215, 213f
 site selection and skin preparation
 for, 214-215, 214b, 215f
 peritoneal dialysis, 1564f
 securement of, 224-225, 224b, 224f, 230b, 233f
 spinal, 57, 58f
 urinary
 in cystoscopy or cystourethroscopy, 1485-1486
 home care management of, 1641b
 infection and, 441
 intermittent, 102
 in laparoscopy of reproductive system, 1584-1585
- Catheter (*Continued*)
 in transurethral resection of prostate, 1635
 Catheter embolism, 230t
 Catheter maze procedure, 728
 Catheter-directed embolization, 1231
 Catheterized urine specimen, 1479t
 Catheter-related infection, 227
 biofilm and, 441
 central venous catheter and, 232t
 in cystitis, 1491, 1492b
 needleless connector and, 222
 patient safety and, 1492b
 peripherally inserted central catheter and, 216
 Cation, 180
 Cauliflower ear, 1089
 Causalgia, 1168
 Cavernous urethra, 1472
 CBC; *See* Complete blood count
 CCNU; *See* Lomustine
 CD4 T-cell, 358, 358f-359f
 CD4+ T-cell count, 360, 368
 CD8+ T-cell count, 368
 CD4 T-cell receptor, 358-359, 358f-359f
 CDC; *See* Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
 CEA; *See* Carcinoembryonic antigen
 Cecum, 1180
 CeeNu; *See* Lomustine
 Cefadroxil, 1495b-1496b
 Cefixime
 for gonorrhea, 1661
 for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
 Cefixox; *See* Ceftriaxone
 Ceftriaxone
 for bacterial infection in cirrhosis, 1302
 for gonorrhea, 1661
 Celebrex; *See* Celecoxib
 Celecoxib, 51
 for heterotopic ossification in spinal cord injury, 972
 for osteoarthritis pain, 322
 Celiac sprue, 1262
 Cell biology, 396
 abnormal, 398-399, 398t
 benign tumor cell and, 398-399
 features of cancer cell and, 399
 normal, 397-398, 397f
 Cell cycle, 67, 397, 397f
 Cell division, 67
 CellCept; *See* Mycophenolate
 Cell-mediated immunity, 313-314, 437
 age-related changes in, 304b
 cell types involved in, 313-314
 cytokines and, 314, 314t
 immune functions of leukocytes in, 305t
 role of leukocytes in, 857t
 transplant rejection and, 315
 Cellular layer of epidermis, 452f
 Cellulitis, 490-491, 491b
 mastoiditis and, 1094
 pressure ulcer and, 480
 Center for Transforming Health Care, 4, 5t
 Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
 classification of AIDS-defining conditions, 360t
 in tracking of infections, 435
 transmission-based guidelines of, 440, 441t-442t
 Central alpha agonists, 783
 Central artery aneurysm, 792-796
 community-based care in, 795-796
 critical rescue in, 795b
 imaging assessment in, 793
 nonsurgical management of, 794
 pathophysiology of, 792-796, 793f
 physical assessment in, 793
- Central artery aneurysm (*Continued*)
 postoperative graft occlusion or rupture in, 794b
 surgical management of, 794-795
 Central axillary nodes, 1577f
 Central cyanosis, 697
 Central dual x-ray absorptiometry, 1123-1124
 Central herniation of brainstem, 1024f
 Central infusion therapy, 216-220
 hemodialysis catheters in, 220
 implanted ports in, 218-220, 219b, 219f
 nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheters in, 217-218, 218f
 peripherally inserted central catheters in, 216-217, 217f
 tunneled central venous catheters in, 218, 218f
 Central nervous system; *See also* Neurologic system
 leukemia and, 882
 sickle cell disease and, 873
 structure and function of, 906-910
 brain in, 906-909, 907f-908f, 907t-908t
 spinal cord in, 909-910, 909f
 Central nervous system disorders, 927-958
 Alzheimer's disease in, 946-955
 behavioral problems in, 954t
 caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
 chronic confusion in, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
 genetic considerations in, 947b
 health care resources for, 955
 health teaching in, 955
 history in, 947-948, 948t
 home care management in, 954-955
 imaging assessment in, 950
 injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
 laboratory assessment in, 950
 pathophysiology of, 946-947
 physical assessment in, 948-949, 948b, 949f
 psychosocial assessment in, 949-950
 amyotrophic lateral sclerosis in, 983-984, 983b-984b
 back pain in, 960-965
 acute low back pain in, 962
 chronic low back pain in, 962, 962b
 complementary and alternative medicine in, 962-963
 health care resources for, 965
 health promotion and maintenance in, 960-961, 961b
 health teaching in, 965, 965b
 home care management in, 964-965
 imaging assessment in, 961
 pathophysiology of, 960, 960b, 960f
 physical assessment in, 961
 surgical management of, 963-964, 964b
 cervical neck pain in, 966, 966b-967b
 encephalitis in, 940-941, 941b
 headache in, 928-932, 928b
 cluster, 931-932
 migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
 Huntington disease in, 955-956, 956b
 meningitis in, 937-940, 938b-939b
 after craniotomy, 1035
 after pituitary gland removal, 1377
 gonorrhea and, 1661
 laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
 labyrinthitis and, 1095
 neurologic status in, 939b
 multiple sclerosis in, 978-983
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 982-983
 concept map for, 980f-981f
 drug therapy for, 980-982, 982b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 979
 health care resources for, 983

- Central nervous system disorders
(Continued)
health teaching in, 983
history in, 979
home care management in, 983
incidence and prevalence of, 979
laboratory assessment in, 980
mobility problems in, 982
pathophysiology of, 978-979
physical assessment in, 979-980, 979b
psychosocial assessment in, 980
sexual function in, 980b
Parkinson disease in, 941-946, 942b-943b, 942t, 943f
drug therapy for, 943-944, 944b-945b
genetic considerations in, 942b
psychosocial support in, 945-946
surgical management of, 946
seizures and epilepsy in, 932-937
drug therapy for, 933, 933b-934b
emergency care in, 935-936, 936b
etiology and genetic risk in, 933
health teaching in, 933-935, 935b
older adult and, 932b
seizure precautions and management in, 935, 935b-936b
surgical management of, 936-937
types of, 932-933
spinal cord injury in, 967-976
adjustment to major life changes in, 973-974
airway management in, 971, 971b
drug therapy for, 972
etiology of, 968
health care resources for, 975-976, 976f
health teaching in, 974-975, 975b
history in, 968-969
home care management in, 974
imaging assessment in, 970
impaired mobility and self-care deficit in, 973
incidence and prevalence of, 968
injury prevention in, 971-973, 971b, 972f
laboratory assessment in, 970
mechanism of injury in, 967-968, 967f-968f
neurogenic shock in, 971, 971b
physical assessment in, 969-970, 969b
psychosocial assessment in, 970
surgical management in, 972-973, 972b
urinary and bowel dysfunction in, 973, 973b-974b
spinal cord tumors in, 976-978, 977b
- Central venous catheter
in acute kidney injury, 1543
blood sampling from, 226
complications of, 232t
home care of, 891b
in hypovolemic shock, 819
nontunneled percutaneous, 217-218, 218f
peripherally inserted, 216-217, 217f
tunneled, 218, 218f
- Centriacinar emphysema, 602f
- Centrilobular emphysema, 602f, 612
- Cephalexin, 1510-1511
- Cephalic vein, 214b, 215f
- Cephalosporins
for gonorrhea, 1659-1660
for infection prevention in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Cerebellar function assessment, 916
- Cerebellar pontine angle tumor, 1031
- Cerebellum, 907
- Cerebral abscess, 1036
- Cerebral aneurysm
repair of, 1016-1017
risk in polycystic kidney disease, 1519
stroke and, 1005f
- Cerebral angiography, 912t, 919-921
- Cerebral circulation, 908-909, 908f
evaluation of, 923
hyperperfusion syndrome and, 1015-1016
- Cerebral cortex, 907
- Cerebral edema
in brain tumor, 1031
high altitude, 151
in hyponatremia, 181
increased intracranial pressure and, 1022
- Cerebral hemisphere, 906
- Cerebral infarction, 1005
- Cerebral perfusion, 1013-1017, 1013b-1014b
- Cerebral perfusion pressure, 1022
- Cerebral salt wasting, 1036
- Cerebral tumor, 1031-1036, 1032b
classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
community-based care in, 1036
complications of, 1031
drug therapy for, 1032-1033
incidence and prevalence of, 1032
motor and sensory deficits in, 409
postoperative complications in, 1035-1036, 1035t
sites of metastasis of, 401t
stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033, 1033f
surgical management of, 1033-1036, 1034b
- Cerebral vasospasm in stroke, 1015
- Cerebrospinal fluid, 906, 909
- Cerebrospinal fluid analysis
in encephalitis, 941
in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 988
in meningitis, 939t
- Cerebrospinal fluid leak
after lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
in nasal fracture, 581
- Cerebrum, 907
- Cerebyx; See Fosphenytoin
- Certican; See Everolimus
- Certification in emergency care, 127, 127t
- Certified emergency nurse, 127t
- Certified prosthetist-orthotist, 1166
- Certified registered nurse anesthetist, 264
- Certified registered nurse first assistant, 264
- Certified surgical technologist, 266
- Certolizumab pegol, 1282, 1282b
- Cerubidine; See Daunorubicin
- Cerumen, 1077-1078
cultural considerations in, 1083b
impaction of, 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
removal of, 1081b
- Cervarix vaccine, 1624, 1659
- Cervical ablation therapy, 1625b
- Cervical biopsy, 1585, 1585b
- Cervical cancer, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b, 1658
- Cervical fusion, 972
- Cervical halter, 1153t
- Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, 1624
- Cervical lymph nodes, 1196f
- Cervical plexus block, 276f
- Cervical spine
injury of, 588
axial loading, 967, 968f
halo fixator for, 971, 971b, 972f
hyperextension, 968f, 969
hyperflexion, 967, 967f
neck pain and, 966, 966b-967b
primary survey and, 132, 134t
tumor of, 977b
- Cervix, 1576f, 1577
colposcopy and, 1584
polyp of, 1621
- Cetuximab
for colorectal cancer, 1248
for esophageal cancer, 1214
for head and neck cancer, 591
for oral cancer, 1198
- Chalazion, 1055-1056
- Chancres, 1654
- Chancroid, 1666
- Charcot foot, 1446, 1446f
- Chart review before surgery, 259
- Checklist of Nonverbal Pain Indicators, 49
- Chelating therapy in myelodysplastic syndromes, 880
- Chemical acid-base control, 200, 200t
- Chemical buffers, 200
- Chemical burn, 518, 520b
esophageal, 1218
- Chemical carcinogenesis, 403
- Chemical d[ac]ebriement of pressure ulcer, 483
- Chemical-induced distributive shock, 812
- Chemical(s)
leukemia and, 880
nephrotoxicity of, 1540t
- Chemoprevention, 406
- Chemotaxins, 308
- Chemotherapy, 414-424
alopecia in, 422-424
for bone cancer, 1135
bone marrow suppression in, 419-421, 419b-420b
for brain tumor, 1032-1033
for breast cancer, 1605-1606, 1606b, 1606t
categories of drugs in, 414-416, 415t-416t
cognitive changes in, 424
for colorectal cancer, 1248
combination, 416
for esophageal cancer, 1214
for gastric cancer, 1235
for head and neck cancer, 590-591
infection prevention in, 420b
injury and bleeding prevention in, 422b
intra-arterial catheter for, 235-236
for liver cancer, 1311
for lung cancer, 633
mucositis in, 422, 424b
nausea and vomiting in, 421-422, 421b-423b
nephrotoxicity of, 1540t
oral agents in, 418t
ototoxic agents in, 1082t
for pancreatic cancer, 1330
peripheral neuropathy in, 424, 425b
pharmacogenomics and, 416b
for prostate cancer, 1640
for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
side effects of, 419
for sinus cancer, 583
for spinal cord tumor, 977
for testicular cancer, 1645
thrombocytopenia in, 421b
treatment issues in, 416-419, 417b, 417f
for uterine cancer, 1623
- Chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy, 424, 425b
- Cherry angioma, 457f
- Chest
anterior and posterior landmarks of, 552f
changes with aging, 549b
expansion in respiratory acidosis, 203
palpation of, 553
percussion of, 553, 553f-554f, 553t
positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Chest leads, 713
- Chest pain, 695, 695b
in chronic stable angina pectoris, 829
drug therapy for, 836-837
- Chest pain (Continued)
emergency care in, 836, 836b
in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204
home care management of, 852b
in lung cancer, 632, 638
physical assessment in, 834
respiratory assessment and, 551
in tuberculosis, 654-655
types of, 696t
in unstable angina pectoris, 829
- Chest physiotherapy
in cystic fibrosis, 624, 625f
in oral cancer, 1197
- Chest radiography
in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
in cardiovascular assessment, 703
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
in heart failure, 750
in pneumonia, 650
preoperative, 248
in pulmonary embolism, 664
in pulmonary empyema, 660
in reproductive assessment, 1583
in respiratory assessment, 556
- Chest surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Chest trauma, 682-684
flail chest in, 683, 683f
hemothorax in, 684
pneumothorax in, 683
pulmonary contusion in, 682
rib fracture in, 682, 1162
tension pneumothorax in, 683-684
tracheobronchial trauma in, 684
- Chest tube
in lung cancer, 634-638, 635b, 635f-636f, 637b
in pulmonary empyema, 660
- Chest wall
changes with aging, 549b
retraction in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
- Cheyne-Stokes respirations, 110
- Chickenpox, 310
- Chills
in influenza, 645
in pulmonary empyema, 659
- Chimerism, 887
- Chlamydia trachomatis, 1056
co-infection with gonorrhea, 1661
in epididymitis, 1650
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
in sexually transmitted infection, 1662, 1662b
in urethritis, 1496-1497
- Chlorambucil, 415t-416t, 418t, 628
- Chlorhexidine, 438-439
- Chloride, 194
abnormal values of, 170t
in body fluids, 180f
levels in burn assessment, 524b
perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
plasma values in older adult, 170b
reabsorption in proximal convoluted tubule, 1470
twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
values in acid-base imbalances, 205b
- Chloride shift, 194
- Chlorpheniramine, 146
- Chlorpromazine, 139
- Chlorpropamide, 1379b
- Chlortetracycline, 1054b
- Chlor-Trimeton; See Chlorpheniramine
- Choked disc, 1026
- Cholangitis, 1316
- Cholecystectomy
in gallbladder cancer, 1320
in gallstones, 1318

- Cholecystitis, 1316-1317
 acute, 1316, 1316f
 chronic, 1316-1317
 diagnosis of, 1318
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1317, 1317t
 nonsurgical management of, 1318
 older adult and, 1317b-1318b
 physical assessment in, 1317-1318, 1317b
 surgical management of, 1318-1320, 1319b, 1320t
 women and, 1317b
- Cholecystokinin, 1349
- Choledochojunostomy, 1331, 1331f
- Choledocholithiasis, 1316
- Cholelithiasis, 1316
- Cholesteatoma, 1095
- Cholesterol, 702, 702b
 atherosclerosis and, 774
 coronary artery disease and, 832
 diabetes mellitus and, 1413-1414
 levels in malnutrition, 1342
 normal adult range for, 1186b
- Cholesterol stones, 1316
- Cholinergic agonists, 1066b-1067b
- Cholinergic antagonists
 for asthma, 607b-608b, 610
 for dying patient, 114
 for Parkinson disease, 944
- Cholinergic crisis, 993, 994t
- Cholinesterase inhibitors
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 for myasthenia gravis, 993-994, 993b
- Chondrogenic tumor, 1133
- Chondroitin, 323
- Chondroma, 1133
- Chondrosarcoma, 1134
- Chopart amputation, 1163-1164, 1163f
- Choreiform movements in Huntington disease, 955-956
- Chorioretinitis, 1068
- Choroid, 1040, 1040f
- Choroidal hemorrhage after glaucoma surgery, 1067
- Christianity, end of life and death rituals in, 116t
- Chromographic assay, 1369
- Chromosome, 66f, 68, 68f
- Chronic airflow limitation, 601-623, 602f
 in asthma, 601-611
 aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 exercise and activity in, 611
 history in, 603
 incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b
 laboratory assessment in, 605
 levels of control in, 603b
 oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b
 pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f
 physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f
 pulmonary function tests in, 605
 smoking cessation and, 605b
 status asthmaticus and, 611
 step system for medication use in, 604b
 teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b
 using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 611-623
 activity tolerance and, 621-622
 anxiety in, 621
 breathing techniques for, 618, 619b
 chronic bronchitis in, 612-613
 complications of, 613-614, 614b
- Chronic airflow limitation (*Continued*)
 cultural considerations in, 613b
 drug therapy for, 619
 effective coughing for, 618-619
 emphysema in, 611-612, 612f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 613, 613b, 613t
 exercise conditioning in, 619-620
 health care resources for, 622, 623b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 614
 history in, 614
 home care management in, 622
 hydration in, 620
 imaging assessment in, 617
 incidence and prevalence of, 613
 laboratory assessment in, 616-617
 lung transplantation for, 620-621
 monitoring for respiratory status changes in, 618
 oxygen therapy for, 619, 619b
 physical assessment in, 614-616, 614f, 616f
 positioning for, 618
 positive expiratory pressure device for, 620, 620f
 psychosocial assessment in, 616
 respiratory infections and, 622
 severity classification in, 617t
 suctioning in, 620
 teaching for self-management in, 622
 weight loss in, 621
- Chronic atrophic gastritis, 1221
- Chronic bacterial prostatitis, 1649
- Chronic bronchitis, 602f, 612-613
- Chronic calcifying pancreatitis, 1326
- Chronic cancer pain, 41f-42f
- Chronic cholecystitis, 1316-1317
- Chronic confusion, 23
- Chronic constrictive pericarditis, 765
- Chronic fatigue syndrome, 354
- Chronic gastritis, 1220-1221, 1222b
- Chronic glomerulonephritis, 1528-1529
- Chronic gout, 349-350
- Chronic health problems, rehabilitation for, 89-105
 community-based care and, 104-105
 complications of immobility and, 98, 99t
 concepts related to, 90
 establishing bowel continence and, 102-103, 103b, 103t
 establishing urinary continence and, 101-102, 102t
 functional assessment in, 94
 gait training and, 97-99, 98b, 98f
 health care resources for, 105
 health teaching in, 104-105
 history in, 92
 home care management after, 104
 improvement of physical mobility and, 95-99, 96f-97f, 97b
 increasing functional mobility and, 99-100, 100t
 maintaining skin integrity and, 100-101
 older adult and, 92b
 physical assessment in, 92-94, 92t
 psychosocial assessment in, 94
 rehabilitation team in, 90-92, 91f, 91t
 vocational assessment in, 95
- Chronic hepatitis, 1306
- Chronic inflammatory bowel disease, 1272-1287
 Crohn's disease in, 1280-1284
 community-based care in, 1284
 drug therapy for, 1282, 1282b
 fistula management in, 1282-1283, 1282b, 1283f
 nutrition therapy for, 1282
 pathophysiology of, 1280-1281, 1280f
 physical assessment in, 1281, 1281b
- Chronic inflammatory bowel disease (*Continued*)
 surgical management of, 1283-1284
 ulcerative colitis *versus*, 1272t
 diverticular disease in, 1284-1287, 1284f, 1286b
 ulcerative colitis in, 1272-1273
 complications of, 1273t
 Crohn's disease *versus*, 1272t
 diagnosis of, 1274
 diarrhea and bowel incontinence in, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1273
 health care resources for, 1279-1280
 history in, 1273
 home care management in, 1278, 1280b
 incidence and prevalence of, 1273
 laboratory assessment in, 1274
 lower gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1278, 1278b
 pain in, 1278, 1278b
 pathophysiology of, 1272-1273, 1273t
 physical assessment in, 1274
 psychosocial assessment in, 1274
 surgical management of, 1275-1278, 1276f-1277f, 1277b
 teaching for self-management in, 1278-1279, 1279b
- Chronic interstitial nephritis, 1530
- Chronic irritation, carcinogenesis and, 404
- Chronic kidney disease, 1547-1550
 anxiety in, 1558
 cardiac changes in, 1549
 cardiac output in, 1555
 characteristics of, 1538t
 diabetes mellitus and, 1416
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1549, 1550t
 fatigue in, 1557
 focused assessment in, 1571b
 gastrointestinal changes in, 1549
 in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 health care resources for, 1572
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1550, 1550b
 hematologic changes in, 1549
 hemodialysis in, 1558-1564
 anticoagulation in, 1560
 complications of, 1563-1564, 1563b
 dialysis settings in, 1558-1559
 dialyzable and vasoactive drugs after, 1563t
 nursing care in, 1562, 1563b
 older adult and, 1563b
 patient selection for, 1558
 peritoneal dialysis *versus*, 1558t
 post-dialysis care and, 1562-1563
 procedure in, 1559-1560, 1559f-1560f
 vascular access in, 1560-1562
 history in, 1550-1551
 home care management in, 1571-1572
 imaging assessment in, 1552
 incidence and prevalence of, 1549-1550
 infection prevention in, 1556
 injury prevention in, 1556-1557, 1557b
 kidney changes in, 1547
 kidney transplantation for, 1567-1571
 candidate selection criteria in, 1568
 complications of, 1570, 1570t
 donors in, 1568, 1568f
 immunosuppressive drug therapy in, 1570-1571, 1571b
 operative procedures in, 1569, 1569f
 postoperative care in, 1569-1570, 1570b
 preoperative care in, 1568-1569
- Chronic kidney disease (*Continued*)
 laboratory assessment in, 1552
 management of fluid volume in, 1553, 1553b
 metabolic changes in, 1547-1549, 1548f
 nutrition and, 1555-1556, 1555t
 osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t
 pathophysiology of, 1547-1550, 1547b
 peritoneal dialysis in, 1564-1567, 1564t
 complications in, 1566-1567
 dialysate additives for, 1564
 nursing care in, 1567b
 patient selection for, 1564
 procedure in, 1564, 1564f
 types of, 1564-1566, 1565f-1566f
 physical assessment in, 1551-1552, 1551b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1552
 psychosocial support in, 1572
 pulmonary edema in, 1553-1555
 in sickle cell disease, 872
 stages of, 1547, 1547t
 teaching for self-management in, 1572
- Chronic low back pain, 962, 962b
- Chronic lymphocytic leukemia, 881
- Chronic mountain sickness, 151b
- Chronic myelogenous leukemia, 881
- Chronic nephritic syndrome, 1528
- Chronic non-cancer pain, 40-41
- Chronic obstructive pancreatitis, 1326
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 601, 602f, 611-623
 activity tolerance and, 621-622
 anxiety in, 621
 barrel chest in, 604f
 breathing techniques for, 618, 619b
 chronic bronchitis in, 612-613
 complications of, 613-614, 614b
 concept map for respiratory acidosis in, 614f-615f
 cultural considerations in, 613b
 drug therapy for, 619
 effective coughing for, 618-619
 emphysema in, 611-612, 612f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 613, 613b, 613t
 exercise conditioning in, 619-620
 health care resources for, 622, 623b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 614
 history in, 614
 home care management in, 622
 hydration in, 620
 imaging assessment in, 617
 incidence and prevalence of, 613
 laboratory assessment in, 616-617
 lung transplantation for, 620-621
 monitoring for respiratory status changes in, 618
 oxygen therapy for, 619, 619b
 physical assessment in, 614-616, 614f, 616f
 positioning for, 618
 positive expiratory pressure device for, 620, 620f
 psychosocial assessment in, 616
 respiratory infections and, 622
 severity classification in, 617t
 suctioning in, 620
 teaching for self-management in, 622
 weight loss in, 621
- Chronic osteomyelitis, 1131, 1132b
- Chronic otitis media, 1092
- Chronic pain, 41
 in cancer, 409
 characteristics of, 40t
 epidural analgesia for, 57, 236
 invasive techniques for, 61
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
 in osteoarthritis, 321-331
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230
 physical assessment in, 46

- Chronic pain (*Continued*)
 psychosocial assessment in, 49
 in trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
- Chronic pancreatitis, 1326-1328,
 1326b-1328b
 malabsorption syndrome and, 1262
- Chronic paronychia, 465
- Chronic pelvic pain syndrome, 1649
- Chronic peripheral arterial disease,
 786b
- Chronic protein-energy malnutrition,
 1340
- Chronic pyelonephritis, 1523, 1524b
- Chronic rejection of transplant, 315,
 1570t
- Chronic stable angina pectoris, 829
- Chronic thyroiditis, 1404-1405
- Chronic tophaceous gout, 349
- Chvostek's sign, 189, 189f
- Chyllothorax, central venous
 catheter-related, 231t
- Chyme, 1178-1179
- Cialis; *See* Tadalafil
- Cilia, nasal, 545
- Ciliary body, 1040, 1040f-1041f
- Ciliary processes, 1040f
- Cimetidine, 1388
- Cimzia; *See* Certolizumab pegol
- Cingulate gyrus herniation, 1024f
- Ciprofloxacin
 Achilles tendon rupture and, 1172
 for anthrax, 659, 659b
 for bacterial infection in cirrhosis,
 1302
 for cutaneous anthrax, 495
 for cyst infection in polycystic kidney
 disease, 1521
 for diverticular disease, 1285
 for eye inflammation and infection,
 1054b
 for gastroenteritis, 1272
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents,
 1428t
 for salmonellosis, 1290
 for urinary tract infection,
 1495b-1496b
 venous irritation and, 211b
- Circadian rhythm disorders, 913
- Circinate lesion, 462t
- Circle of Willis, 908, 908f
- Circular muscle layer, 1178f
- Circulating nurse, 264
- Circulation
 cast-related impairment of, 1153
 cerebral, 908-909, 908f
 coronary, 688f
 primary survey and, 133, 134t
 pulmonary, 547, 549b
- Circulatory overload
 in fluid resuscitation for burn,
 521-522, 521b, 521t
 intravenous therapy-related, 230t
 in transfusion, 901
- Circumcision, 1577
 female, 1476
 penile cancer and, 1648
 for phimosis, 1648
- Circumduction, 1112f
- Circumferential burn injury, 515
- Circumflex coronary artery, 688f, 689
 myocardial infarction and, 831
- Circumscribed lesion, 462t
- Cirrhosis, 1293-1296
 after liver transplantation, 1312
 ascites and esophageal varices in,
 1294, 1300b
 biliary obstruction in, 1294-1295
 bleeding episodes in, 1302-1303
 community-based care in, 1303-1305
 concept map for, 1299f-1301f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1296,
 1296t
 health care resources for, 1304
 hepatic encephalopathy in,
 1294-1295, 1295t
- Cirrhosis (*Continued*)
 hepatorenal syndrome in, 1295-1296
 history in, 1296
 home care management in, 1303-1304
 imaging assessment in, 1299
 incidence and prevalence of, 1296
 jaundice in, 1294-1295, 1295t, 1300b
 laboratory assessment in, 1298-1299,
 1299t
 management of excess fluid volume
 in, 1299-1302, 1300b
 pathophysiology of, 1294-1296
 physical assessment in, 1296-1298,
 1297f
 portal hypertension in, 1294
 psychosocial assessment in, 1298
 spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in,
 1295, 1300
 teaching for self-management in,
 1304, 1304b
- Cisatracurium, 274t
- Cisplatin, 415t-416t
 for cervical cancer, 1626
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for liver cancer, 1311
 for ovarian cancer, 1627
 for prostate cancer, 1640
- Cistern, 909
- Cladribine, 415t-416t
- Clarithromycin
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
- Class I antidysrhythmic drugs,
 723b-726b, 732
- Class II antidysrhythmic drugs,
 723b-726b, 732
- Class III antidysrhythmic drugs,
 723b-726b, 732
- Class IV antidysrhythmic drugs,
 723b-726b, 732-733
- Classic heat stroke, 137-138
- Claudication
 in Buerger's disease, 797
 in peripheral arterial disease, 786,
 786b
- Clavicle fracture, 1159
- Clavulin; *See* Amoxicillin/clavulanate
- Claw toe deformity, 1446
- Clean-catch urine specimen, 1479t
- Cleocin; *See* Clindamycin
- Clevidipine butyrate, 780-783
- Cleviprex; *See* Clevidipine butyrate
- Clindamycin
 for anthrax, 659b
 for methicillin-resistant
Staphylococcus aureus, 495b
- Clinical breast examination, 1595-1597,
 1596f
- Clinical practice guideline, 81, 81f
- Clinical psychologist, 92
- Clinical question, 85
- Clinical staging, 403
- Clinical variants of Guillain-Barr[ac]e
 syndrome, 988t
- Clinically competent, 22
- Clipping of aneurysm, 1016
- Clitoris, 1576
- CLL; *See* Chronic lymphocytic
 leukemia
- Clofarabine, 415t-416t
- Clonazepam, 58, 934b
- Clonic seizure, 932
- Clonidine, 783
- Clonus, 917
- Clopidogrel
 for coronary artery disease, 838b
 before percutaneous transluminal
 coronary angioplasty, 844
 for peripheral arterial disease, 789
- Clorazepate, 934b
- Closed fracture, 1144, 1144f
- Closed head injury, 1020-1021, 1021f
- Closed meniscectomy, 1169-1170
- Closed reduction, 1150-1153
 of nasal fracture, 581
- Closed system infusion container, 220
- Closed-loop obstruction, 1254
- Clostridium botulinum*, 448t, 1289t,
 1290, 1290b
- Clostridium difficile*, 449, 1185
- Clotting, 858-859, 859f, 860t
 after peritoneal dialysis, 1567
 anti-clotting forces and, 859-860, 860f
 in hemodialysis vascular access, 1561,
 1562t
 hypercalcemia and, 191
 necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis
 and, 1322
- Clotting factor disorders, 896-897
 hemophilia in, 896, 896b, 897t
 heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
 in, 896-897
- Clotting factors, 858, 859f, 860t
- CLP; *See* Contact laser prostatectomy
- Clubbing, 466t, 697, 698f
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary
 disease, 616, 616f
- Cluster headache, 931-932
- Clustered lesion, 462t
- CMG; *See* Cystometrography
- CML; *See* Chronic myelogenous
 leukemia
- CMV; *See* Cytomegalovirus
- Coagulation, 858-859, 859f, 860t
 anti-clotting forces and, 859-860, 860f
 dysfunction in pit viper
 envenomation, 140
 hypercalcemia and, 191
- Coagulation disorders, 895-897
 autoimmune thrombocytopenic
 purpura in, 895-896
 as complication of necrotizing
 hemorrhagic pancreatitis, 1322
 hemophilia in, 896, 896b, 897t
 heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
 in, 896-897
 thrombotic thrombocytopenia
 purpura in, 896
- Coagulation tests, 865-866
- Coal miner's disease, 629b
- Coalesced lesion, 462t
- Coarse crackles, 555t
- Cobalt-60 in gamma knife procedure,
 1033
- Cocaine hydrochloride, 1054b
- Coccidioidomycosis, 550
- Cochlea, 1079
- Cochlear implant, 1101
- Codeine, 51-52, 297, 298b
- Codon, 70t
- Cogentin; *See* Benztropine
- Cognition-perceptual pattern
 in acid-base assessment, 204b
 in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
 in hearing assessment, 1080b
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110b
 in neurologic assessment, 914b
 in vision assessment, 1045b
- Cognitive function
 after stroke, 1009
 Alzheimer's disease and, 948
 changes in older adult, 912b, 913
 chemotherapy-related changes in, 424
 hyperglycemia and, 1414
 hypothyroidism and, 1403
 multiple sclerosis and, 982, 982b
 in neurologic assessment, 915
 traumatic brain injury and, 1028-1029
- Cognitive rehabilitation in traumatic
 brain injury, 1029
- Cognitive therapist, 92
- Cognitive-behavioral pain management,
 60-61
- Cognitively impaired patient, pain
 considerations in, 45, 48-49
- Cogwheel rigidity in Parkinson disease,
 942
- Cohorting, 440
- Coitus, 1576
- Colace; *See* Docusate sodium
- Colchicine, 350
- Cold antibody anemia, 876
- Cold application
 for back pain, 962
 for osteoarthritis pain, 322, 323b
 for pain management, 59-60
- Cold sore, 1656
- Cold-related illnesses, 148-150
 frostbite in, 149-150, 150f
 hypothermia in, 148-149, 149b
- Colectomy, 1248
- Collaboration, 4-5, 5t
- Collaborative care in amputation,
 1165-1166, 1166b, 1168b
- Collagen, 452
- Collagenase with Polysporin powder,
 534b-535b
- Collateral circulation, peripheral arterial
 disease and, 787-788
- Collecting duct, 1467f, 1469t, 1470f
- Colles' fracture, 1159
- Colloids for hypovolemic shock, 818
- Colon, 1178f, 1180
- Colon interposition, 1215, 1215f
- Colon obstruction, 1254-1255, 1254f,
 1255b-1256b, 1258b
- Colon resection, 1248, 1286
- Colonization of bacteria, 435, 1490
- Colonoscopy, 1189, 1189b-1190b
 in colorectal cancer, 1247
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256
 in ulcerative colitis, 1274
- Colony-stimulating factor, 308
- Color
 of nails, 464, 465f, 465t
 of skin, 458-459
 common alterations in, 459t
 cultural considerations in, 465b
 of urine, 1477, 1478b
- Color vision, 1043b, 1047-1048, 1048f
- Colorectal cancer, 1245-1246
 colostomy management in,
 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f,
 1252b-1253b
 drug therapy for, 1248
 etiology and genetic risk in,
 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b
 grieving in, 1251-1252
 health care resources for, 1253-1254
 health promotion and maintenance
 in, 1246, 1246b
 history in, 1246
 home care management in, 1252
 imaging assessment in, 1247
 incidence and prevalence in, 1246
 laboratory assessment in, 1247
 metastasis in, 1247-1251
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 1245-1246, 1245f
 physical assessment in, 1246-1247,
 1247f
 postoperative care in, 1249-1251
 preoperative care in, 1248-1249, 1249t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1247
 radiation therapy for, 1248
 sexuality concerns with ostomies in,
 1253b
 sites of metastasis in, 401t
 surgical management of, 1248-1251,
 1248t, 1250f
 teaching for self-management in,
 1252-1253, 1252b
 ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease
 and, 1273t
 wound management in, 1251, 1251b
- Colostomy, 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f,
 1252b
 in diverticular disease, 1286
 home care assessment of, 1253b
 sexuality changes and, 1253b
- Colporrhaphy, 1503t
- Colposcopy, 1584, 1625
- Colsalide; *See* Colchicine
- Coltsfoot, 244t
- Column of Bertin, 1467f

- Coma
barbiturate, 1028
in heat stroke, 138
in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
myxedema, 1403, 1403b
- Combigen; *See* Brinzolamide tartrate and timolol maleate
- Combination chemotherapy, 416
for acute leukemia, 884
for breast cancer, 1605
for cervical cancer, 1626
for gastric cancer, 1235
for testicular cancer, 1645
- Combination drug therapy
for anthrax, 659, 659b
for diabetes mellitus, 1423b-1427b, 1430
for hepatitis C, 1309
for tuberculosis, 655, 656b
- Combined metabolic and respiratory acidosis, 204, 205b
- Combined metabolic and respiratory alkalosis, 205b
- Combined ventilatory and oxygenation failure, 670
- Combivir; *See* Lamivudine/zidovudine
- Combustion in oxygen therapy, 563-564
- Comedone, 508
- Command center in emergency, 159
- Commando procedure, 1198
- Comminuted fracture, 1144f
of skull, 1021
- Commissurotomy, 761
- Committed stem cell, 856, 857f
- Common bile duct, 1179-1180, 1180f
obstruction in gallstones, 1316, 1316f
- Common cold, 641
- Common peroneal nerve, 997f
- Common variable immune deficiency, 382
- Communicable infection, 434-435
- Communicating hydrocephalus, 1023
- Communication
after laryngectomy, 597, 597f
in Alzheimer's disease, 952, 952b
in genetic counseling, 77
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990
hand-off communication in emergency care, 123-124
hearing loss and, 1103-1104, 1103b
improvement of, 4
language barriers and, 33, 33b
during mechanical ventilation, 679
in minimizing preoperative anxiety, 258-259
with patient unable to speak, 587b
stroke and, 1017-1018, 1018t
tracheostomy and, 577
vision loss and, 1074
- Community Emergency Response Team, 158
- Community relations officer, 160, 160t
- Community-acquired pneumonia, 647, 647t, 648f-649f
- Community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 443
- Community-based care
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 378-380
in acute pancreatitis, 1325-1326
in amputation, 1168, 1168b
in aneurysms, 795-796
in back surgery, 964-965
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1636-1637
in bladder cancer, 1515
in bone cancer, 1137-1138
in burns, 539-540, 539t
in cataracts, 1053, 1062b, 1062f
in chronic kidney disease, 1571-1572
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 622-623
in chronic pancreatitis, 1328, 1328b
in cirrhosis, 1303-1305
- Community-based care (*Continued*)
in colorectal cancer, 1252-1254
in coronary artery disease, 850-853
in Crohn's disease, 1284
in cystitis, 1494-1496
in diabetes mellitus, 1458-1462
in diverticular disease, 1286-1287
in dysrhythmias, 739-742
in esophageal cancer, 1217
in fractures, 1158-1159
in gastric cancer, 1238
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990-991
in head and neck cancer, 596-598
in hepatitis, 1309, 1309b
in hiatal hernia, 1211
in hypertension, 784-785
in hypothyroidism, 1403-1404
in hypovolemic shock, 819
in infection, 447-449
in infective endocarditis, 764-765
in intestinal obstruction, 1257-1258
in leukemia, 890
in lupus, 346-347, 346b
in malnutrition, 1348
in myasthenia gravis, 995-996, 996b, 996t
in obesity, 1355-1356
in oral cancer, 1199-1200
in osteoarthritis, 332-333, 332b
in osteoporosis, 1125-1127
in ovarian cancer, 1627
in oxygen therapy, 569-570
in pain, 61-62
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1665-1666
in peptic ulcer disease, 1221
in peripheral arterial disease, 791, 791b
in peritonitis, 1269-1270
in pneumonia, 652, 652b
postoperative, 299-300
in pressure ulcer, 488-490
in pulmonary embolism, 668-669
in pyelonephritis, 1526
rehabilitation and, 104-105
in renal trauma, 1535
in rheumatoid arthritis, 342-343, 342f
in sepsis, 826
in sickle cell disease, 875-876
in spinal cord injury, 974-976, 975b
in spinal cord tumor, 978
in stroke, 1019-1020, 1019f
in systemic sclerosis, 349
in testicular cancer, 1646
in tracheostomy, 578
in traumatic brain injury, 1030-1031, 1030b
in tuberculosis, 657-658
in ulcerative colitis, 1278-1280
in urinary incontinence, 1506-1507
in uterine cancer, 1623-1624
in uterine leiomyomas, 1620
in valvular heart disease, 762-763, 763b
in venous insufficiency, 804-805
in venous thromboembolism, 802-803
- Compartment syndrome
in acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 792
fracture-related, 1145-1146, 1146b
intraosseous therapy-related, 235
- Compensated cirrhosis, 1294, 1296
- Compensation, 201
- Compensatory mechanisms
in burn injury, 517, 518f
in heart failure, 745-747, 746f
in hypovolemic shock, 816
- Complement, 308, 311
- Complementary and alternative medicine, 8-14
for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 375
for allergic rhinitis, 387
for atherosclerosis, 775
- Complementary and alternative medicine (*Continued*)
for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
for breast cancer, 1600, 1600b, 1600t
for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 422
for dying patient
nausea and vomiting management and, 112-113
pain management and, 112-113
restlessness and agitation management and, 115
for elevated serum lipid levels, 833
for fracture pain, 1154-1155
for gastritis and peptic ulcer disease, 1225t
for hypertension, 780
for irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
manipulative and body-based therapies in, 13
massage in, 13, 13f
tai chi in, 13
for migraine, 931
mind-body therapies in, 10-13
acupressure and acupuncture in, 12-13
imagery in, 11
meditation in, 11, 11f
music therapy in, 11, 12b
pet therapy in, 11-12
yoga in, 12, 12f
for multiple sclerosis, 982-983
National Center for Complementary and Alternative medicine and, 9, 9t
natural products in, 9-10, 9b-10b, 10t
for obesity, 1353
for osteoarthritis, 323, 323b
for pain management, 61
after total knee arthroplasty, 329
in back pain, 962-963
in burn injury, 528
in end-of-life care, 112-113
postoperative, 297-299
for peptic ulcer disease, 1230
for postoperative anxiety in coronary artery disease, 852
reiki in, 14
for rheumatoid arthritis, 341
for rhinitis, 641
for sickle cell disease, 874
therapeutic touch in, 13, 14f
for ulcerative colitis, 1275
for urolithiasis, 1510
- Complementary base pair, 67, 67f
- Complete blood count, 864
- Complete heart block, 731
- Complete partial seizure, 935b
- Complete spinal cord injury, 967
- Complex inheritance and familial clustering, 74
- Complex partial seizure, 932-933
- Complex regional pain syndrome, 1154, 1168-1169
- Composite resection in head and neck cancer, 594
- Composite urine collection, 1480-1481, 1481b
- Compound fracture, 1144, 1144f
- Compress, ocular, 1055b
- Compression fracture, 1144-1145
in osteoarthritis, 1122
of spine, 1162, 1163b
- Compression screw for hip fracture, 1160f
- Computed tomography
in acute kidney injury, 1543
in aneurysm, 793
in bladder cancer, 1513
in cardiovascular assessment, 708
in colorectal cancer, 1247
in endocrine assessment, 1370
in esophageal trauma, 1218
in fracture, 1150
in gallbladder cancer, 1320
in gastric cancer, 1235
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185-1187
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988
in head and neck cancer, 589
in hearing assessment, 1084
in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
in infection diagnosis, 445
in intestinal obstruction, 1256
in kidney disease, 1483t, 1484-1485
in lung cancer, 632
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1115
in neurologic assessment, 912t, 921
in oral cancer, 1197
in ovarian cancer, 1626
in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
in pulmonary embolism, 664
in renal assessment, 1484-1485
in renal trauma, 1535
in reproductive assessment, 1583
in respiratory assessment, 556
in spinal cord injury, 970
in stroke, 1012
in testicular cancer, 1644
in traumatic brain injury, 1026
in ulcerative colitis, 1274
in urolithiasis, 1509
in vision assessment, 1048
- Computed tomography angiography, 835, 912t, 921
- Computed tomography colonography, 1189
- Comtan; *See* Entacapone
- COMTs; *See* Catechol O-methyltransferases
- Concept map
for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633f-1634f
for chronic cancer pain, 41f-42f
for cirrhosis, 1299f-1301f
for diabetes mellitus, 1421f-1422f
for end-stage kidney disease, 1553f-1554f
for hypertension, 689f
for hypovolemic shock, 814f-815f
for multiple sclerosis, 980f-981f
for pneumonia, 648f-649f
for pressure ulcer, 483f-484f
for primary open-angle glaucoma, 1063f-1064f
for respiratory acidosis in COPD, 614f-615f
- Concussion, 1021
- Condom, 362b, 1658b
- Conduction system, 692b, 711-713, 712f
- Conductive hearing loss, 1084, 1097, 1097f
in otitis media, 1092
sensorineural *versus*, 1098t
- Conductivity of heart cells, 712
- Conduit, 1514f
- Condylar type of synovial joint, 1108-1109
- Condylomata acuminata, 1614, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
- Condylomata lata, 1659
- Condylox; *See* Podofilox
- Cones, 1040
- Confidentiality in genetic testing, 76-77
- Confusion
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 377-378
after hip fracture, 1161

- Confusion (*Continued*)
 in Alzheimer's disease, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
 in heat stroke, 138
 hospitalized older adult and, 26-28
 opioid-induced, 53t
 postoperative, 1636b
- Confusion Assessment Method, 24, 24t
- Congenital immune deficiencies, 381-382
- Congenital scoliosis, 1140
- Congestive heart failure, 745; *See also* Heart failure
- Conivaptan
 for fluid overload, 179
 for hyponatremia, 182
- Conization, 1585, 1626
- Conjugated bilirubin, 1186b
- Conjunctiva, 1040f, 1041
- Conjunctival hemorrhage, 1056
- Conjunctivitis, 1056
- Connective tissue diseases, 318-356
 ankylosing spondylitis in, 351-352, 351b
 chronic fatigue syndrome in, 354
 common disorders associated with arthritis in, 342f, 353
 fibromyalgia syndrome in, 353-354
 gout in, 349-350, 350f
 infectious arthritis in, 352
 lupus erythematosus in, 343-347, 344b, 344f, 346b
 Lyme disease in, 352-353, 353b
 Marfan syndrome in, 352, 352b
 mixed connective tissue disease in, 354
 osteoarthritis in, 319-320
 chronic pain in, 321-331
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 323, 323b
 drug therapy for, 322
 etiology and genetic risk for, 319b, 320
 hand and foot arthroplasties in, 331
 health care resources for, 332-333
 health promotion and maintenance in, 320
 health teaching in, 332, 332b
 history in, 320
 home care management in, 332
 imaging assessment in, 321
 improving mobility in, 331-332, 332b
 incidence and prevalence of, 320
 laboratory assessment in, 321
 pathophysiology of, 319-320, 319f
 physical assessment in, 320-321, 321t
 psychosocial assessment in, 321
 total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
 total hip arthroplasty in, 324-329
 total knee arthroplasty in, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 total shoulder arthroplasty in, 331
 polymyalgia rheumatica and temporal arteritis in, 351, 351b
 polymyositis/dermatomyositis in, 351
 pseudogout in, 353
 psoriatic arthritis in, 353
 Reiter's syndrome in, 352
 rheumatoid arthritis in, 333-343
 arthrocentesis in, 336, 336b
 body image and, 342
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 341
 exercise in, 332b
 fatigue in, 342, 342b
 health care resources for, 343
 health teaching in, 343
 home care management in, 342, 342f
 inflammation and pain management in, 337-341, 337b-340b
- Connective tissue diseases (*Continued*)
 laboratory assessment in, 335-336, 336b
 nonpharmacologic interventions in, 341
 osteoarthritis *versus*, 321t
 pathophysiology of, 333
 physical assessment in, 334-335, 334b, 334f
 psychosocial assessment in, 335
 self-management in, 341-342
 systemic necrotizing vasculitis in, 351
 systemic sclerosis in, 347, 348b, 348f
- Conn's syndrome, 1390
- Consensual response of pupil, 919, 1046
- Consolidation in lobar pneumonia, 647
- Consolidation therapy in leukemia, 884
- Constipation
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 dying patient and, 114
 hemorrhoids and, 1261
 opioid-induced, 53, 53t, 1154
 in Parkinson disease, 943
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 postoperative, 290-291
 rehabilitation setting and, 103
- Constipation-predominant irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
- Contact burn, 517-518
- Contact dermatitis, 497, 498b
- Contact inhibition in cell division, 398
- Contact laser prostatectomy, 1635
- Contact lenses, 1070
- Contact precautions, 440, 442t
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
- Contact transmission, 436
- Container in infusion system, 220, 220b
- Contamination
 of food, 449
 of oxygen delivery system, 565, 565b
 of pressure ulcer, 482
- Contiguous osteomyelitis, 1131
- Continence, 1472, 1497
 rehabilitation and, 101-102, 102t
- Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis, 1565, 1565f
- Continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration with dialysis, 1546
- Continuous blood glucose monitoring, 1437-1438
- Continuous electrocardiographic monitoring, 714-715, 715f
- Continuous feeding, 1345
- Continuous femoral nerve blockade, 330
- Continuous passive motion machine, 329, 330b, 330f
- Continuous positive airway pressure, 569, 569f, 678
 for decreased reflux at night, 1206
 for heart failure, 753-754
 for obstructive sleep apnea, 585
 oxygen therapy and, 564
- Continuous renal replacement therapy, 1546
- Continuous subcutaneous infusion of insulin, 1434, 1434f
- Continuous sutures, 282f
- Continuous venovenous hemodiafiltration, 1546
- Continuous venovenous hemofiltration, 1546
- Continuous wet gauze dressing, 483t
- Continuous-cycle peritoneal dialysis, 1566
- Contractility of heart muscle, 712
- Contraction in wound healing, 473, 474f
- Contracture
 after lower extremity amputation, 1164
 Dupuytren's, 1138
 positioning to prevent, 537b
- Contrast medium, 1484b
- Contrast-enhanced cardiovascular magnetic resonance imaging, 835
- Contrast-enhanced computed tomography, 218-219
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Contrast-induced kidney failure, 1483
- Contrast-induced nephrotoxicity, 1483
- Contrecoup injury, 1021, 1021f
- Control therapy drugs for asthma, 606-609
- Contusion, 1021
 ocular, 1071
 pulmonary, 682
 renal, 1534, 1534f
- Convergence, 1043
- Cooling methods in heat stroke, 138-139
- Coomb's test, 864, 865b
- Copaxone; *See* Glatiramer acetate
- COPD; *See* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Coping
 in breast cancer, 1599, 1599b
 in coronary artery disease, 841
 with isolation in infection, 446-447
 in uterine cancer, 1623
- Coping-stress tolerance pattern in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
- Copperhead snake, 139, 139f
- Cor pulmonale
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613, 614b
 in sarcoidosis, 627
- Coral snake, 141-142, 141f
- Cord blood harvesting, 886
- Cordarone; *See* Amiodarone
- Corpectomy, 591, 591t
- Coriotomy, 1136
- Core competencies, 3-6
 in emergency nursing, 125-127
 evidence-based practice in, 2-3
 informatics in, 6, 6f
 patient-centered care in, 3-4, 3t
 quality improvement in, 5-6
 safety in, 6
 teamwork and collaboration in, 4-5, 5t
- Core rewarming methods, 149
- Coreg; *See* Carvedilol
- Corium, 452
- Corlopam; *See* Fenoldopam
- Corn, 1139t
- Cornea, 1040, 1040f, 1057-1059
 abrasion, ulceration, and infection of, 1057
 activities increasing intraocular pressure and, 1059t
 assessment of, 1046
 changes with aging, 1043b
 keratoconus and corneal opacities and, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f
 laceration of, 1071
 Corneal light reflex, 1047
- Corneal staining, 1048
- Corneal transplantation, 1058, 1058f
- Corona, 1578f
- Coronary arteries, 688-689, 689f
- Coronary arteriography, 704t, 705
- Coronary artery bypass graft surgery, 739, 845-849, 846f-847f
 bleeding after, 848b
 cardiac rehabilitation after, 851, 851b
 cardiac tamponade after, 848b
 maze procedure with, 728
 neurologic status after, 848, 848b-849b
 older adult and, 850b
- Coronary artery calcium score, 708
- Coronary artery disease, 828-853
 activity tolerance and, 840-841, 840b-841b
 cardiac catheterization in, 836
 cardiopulmonary tissue perfusion in, 837-840, 839b, 840t
- Coronary artery disease (*Continued*)
 coping with, 841
 drug therapy for chest pain in, 836-837, 838b
 dysrhythmias in, 711-743, 841
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 atrial fibrillation in, 722-728, 727b, 727f
 atrioventricular blocks in, 731
 automatic external defibrillation for, 738, 738f
 cardiac conduction system and, 711-713, 712f
 cardiopulmonary resuscitation for, 736
 cardioversion for, 737, 737b
 classification of, 720-731
 community-based care, 739-742
 coronary artery bypass grafting for, 739
 defibrillation for, 737, 737b
 drug therapy for, 723b-726b, 732-733, 734b
 electrocardiography and, 713-718, 713f
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989
 health care resources for, 741-742
 health teaching in, 740-741, 740b-741b
 home care management in, 739-740
 implantable cardioverter/defibrillator for, 739, 742b
 medication errors in, 732b
 normal sinus rhythm and, 718-719, 719f
 older adult and, 740b
 open-chest cardiac massage for, 739
 patient safety in, 731b
 permanent pacemaker insertion for, 738, 739f
 premature atrial complexes in, 721-722
 premature ventricular complexes in, 728, 729f
 radiofrequency catheter ablation for, 738
 sinus, 720-721, 720b, 721f
 sinus bradycardia in, 720-721
 sinus tachycardia in, 720
 supraventricular tachycardia in, 722
 sustained tachydysrhythmias and bradydysrhythmias in, 719b
 temporary pacing for, 733-736, 735f-736f
 terminology in, 719-720
 vagal maneuvers for, 733, 733b
 ventricular asystole in, 730-731
 ventricular fibrillation in, 729-730, 730f
 ventricular tachycardia in, 728-729, 729b, 729f
 electrocardiography in, 835
 emergency care in chest pain and, 836, 836b
 exercise tolerance testing in, 836
 health care resources for, 853
 health promotion and maintenance and, 831-853
 complementary and alternative medicine in, 833
 cultural considerations in, 833b
 eliminating tobacco use in, 833
 factors for metabolic syndrome and, 834, 834t
 increasing physical activity in, 833
 prevention of coronary artery disease in, 832b
 reducing elevated serum lipid levels in, 832
 health teaching in, 851-852, 852b
 heart failure in, 841-844
 history in, 834

- Coronary artery disease (*Continued*)
 home care management in, 850-851, 850b-851b
 imaging assessment in, 835
 laboratory assessment in, 835
 obesity and, 1349
 pathophysiology of, 829-831
 acute coronary syndromes and, 829-831, 830f-831f
 chronic stable angina pectoris and, 829
 etiology and genetic risk in, 831, 831b
 incidence and prevalence in, 831, 831b-832b
 women and, 829b
 physical assessment in, 834-835, 834b-835b
 psychosocial assessment in, 835
 recurrent symptoms in, 844-850
 cardiac tamponade and, 848b
 coronary artery bypass graft for, 845-849, 846f-847f, 848b-849b
 endovascular vessel harvesting and, 849
 minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass for, 849
 off-pump coronary artery bypass for, 850
 percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty for, 844-845, 845b, 845f
 postpericardiotomy syndrome and, 849
 robotic heart surgery for, 850
 stent for, 845, 845f
 transmyocardial laser revascularization for, 850
 smoking and, 693
 Coronary artery vasculopathy, 770
 Coronary circulation, 688f
 Coronary sinus, 687f
 Coronary stent, 845, 845f
 Coronaviruses, 652-653
 Corpus callosum, 907
 Corpus cavernosum, 1578f
 Corpus of stomach, 1179
 Corpus spongiosum, 1578f
 Cortef; *See* Hydrocortisone
 Cortex
 of bone, 1107
 cerebral, 907
 renal, 1466, 1467f
 Cortical bone loss in osteoporosis, 1120
 Cortical nephron, 1467
 Corticospinal tract, 907, 909-910, 909f
 Corticosteroids, 1362
 for acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
 for allergic rhinitis, 387
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for asthma, 607b-608b, 610-611
 for bee sting, 146
 for Bell's palsy, 1001
 for bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia, 630
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
 for external otitis, 1089, 1089b
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 gastritis risk and, 1225
 for Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 immune deficiency and, 380
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for myasthenia gravis, 994
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for psoriasis, 499-500
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 340
 for sarcoidosis, 628
 for skin inflammation, 497, 497b
 topical, 497b
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
 Corticotropin, 1361t
 Corticotropin-releasing hormone, 1360-1362, 1360f
 Cortisol, 1362
 adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
 hypercortisolism and, 1384-1385
 acute adrenal insufficiency in, 1389
 etiology of, 1385, 1385t
 fluid volume balance in, 1386-1388
 health care resources for, 1390
 history in, 1385
 home care management in, 1389
 imaging assessment in, 1386
 incidence and prevalence of, 1385
 infection prevention in, 1388-1389
 laboratory assessment in, 1386
 pathophysiology of, 1384-1385, 1384f
 physical assessment in, 1385-1386, 1385b
 prevention of injury in, 1388
 psychosocial assessment in, 1386
 surgical management of, 1387-1388
 teaching for self-management in, 1389-1390, 1389b
 Cortisol replacement therapy, 1389b
 Cortisone, 1384b
 Corvert; *See* Ibutilide
Corynebacterium diphtheriae, 643
 Coryza, 641
 Cosmegen; *See* Dactinomycin
 Cosmetic surgery, 243t, 505-508
 after burn injury, 538
 common procedures in, 507t
 history before, 505
 physical assessment before, 505
 postoperative care in, 506-508
 preoperative care in, 506
 psychosocial assessment before, 505-506
 Costal angle, 552f
 Costochondral junction, 552f
 Costovertebral angle, 1475-1476
 Cotrim; *See* Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
 Cotton gauze dressing, 486t
 Cottonmouth water moccasin, 139, 139f
 Cough
 in asthma, 603
 in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 in pneumonia, 650t
 respiratory assessment and, 551
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 in tuberculosis, 654-655
 Cough assist technique, 971
 Coughing exercises
 for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618-619
 to prevent postoperative respiratory complications, 256
 Coumadin; *See* Warfarin
 Counseling, genetic, 77-78
 Counterimmunoelectrophoresis in meningitis, 939
 Counterregulatory hormones, 1412
 Coup injury, 1021, 1021f
 Cowper's gland, 1578f
 Cozaar; *See* Losartan
 CPAP; *See* Continuous positive airway pressure
 C-peptide, 1420
 CPR; *See* Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
 Crab lice, 496
 Crackles, 555t
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616
 in fluid overload in burn resuscitation, 522
 in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 in left-sided heart failure, 749
 in pneumonia, 650
 Cranberry juice, 1494
 Cranial nerve diseases, 999-1002
 facial paralysis in, 1001-1002
 trigeminal neuralgia in, 1000-1001, 1000f, 1001b
 Cranial nerve testing
 in meningitis, 939
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025-1026
 Cranial nerve(s), 906, 912t
 assessment of, 915
 in innervation of eye, 1041
 involvement in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 987-988, 987b
 stroke and, 1011-1012
 Cranial polyneuritis, 1001
 Craniofacial disjunction, 583
 Craniotomy
 for brain biopsy, 1033
 in increased intracranial pressure, 1030
 C-reactive protein, 703
 in osteoarthritis, 321
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 in ulcerative colitis, 1274
 Creatine kinase, 702, 702b, 1114b
 Creatine kinase-MB, 702b
 Creatinine
 disruption by kidney failure, 1547-1548
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
 Creatinine clearance, 1481
 older adult and, 20
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 Cred[ac] maneuver, 101-102, 1505
 Crepitus, 1112
 in neck trauma, 588
 in osteoarthritis, 320
 palpation of chest and, 553
 Crescentic glomerulonephritis, 1528
 CREST syndrome, 347
 CRH; *See* Corticotropin-releasing hormone
 Cricoid cartilage, 545, 545f
 Cricothyroid membrane, 545, 545f
 Cricothyroidotomy, 545
 in facial trauma, 583-584
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
 Critical access hospital, 121-122
 Critical incident stress debriefing, 162-163
 Critically ill patient, 1004-1038
 acute respiratory distress syndrome in, 671-672, 672b, 672t
 acute respiratory failure in, 669-671, 670t, 671f
 assessing pain in, 48-49
 brain abscess in, 1036
 brain tumor in, 1031-1036, 1032b
 classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
 community-based care in, 1036
 complications of, 1031
 drug therapy for, 1032-1033
 incidence and prevalence of, 1032
 postoperative complications in, 1035-1036, 1035t
 stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033, 1033f
 surgical management of, 1033-1036, 1034b
 burn injuries in, 511-540
 acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
 age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
 airway management in, 525-526
 burn center referral criteria and, 513t
 burn wound infection and, 533-536, 534b-535b
 carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
 cardiac changes resulting from, 516

- Critically ill patient (*Continued*)
 ventilator alarms and, 679-680, 680t
 ventilator controls and settings in, 678-679
 weaning from, 681, 681b, 682t
 pulmonary embolism in, 663-669
 anxiety in, 668
 bleeding in, 668, 668b
 drug therapy for, 666b-667b
 health care resources for, 669, 669b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b
 history in, 664
 home care management in, 668-669
 hypotension in, 667-668
 hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b
 imaging assessment in, 664
 laboratory assessment in, 664
 pathophysiology of, 663
 physical assessment in, 664, 664b
 psychosocial assessment in, 664
 surgical management of, 667
 teaching for self-management in, 669, 669b
 reversible ischemic neurologic deficit in, 1005
 stroke in, 1005-1007
 bladder and bowel continence in, 1018
 cardiovascular assessment in, 1012
 cerebral perfusion and, 1013-1017, 1013b-1014b
 communication and, 1017-1018, 1018t
 dysphagia in, 1017
 endovascular interventions in, 1014
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1007, 1008b
 health care resources for, 1020
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1007, 1007b, 1008t
 health teaching in, 1019-1020, 1019f
 history in, 1008
 home care management in, 1019
 imaging assessment in, 1012-1013
 incidence and prevalence of, 1007, 1007b
 increased intracranial pressure in, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 laboratory assessment in, 1012
 left *versus* right hemisphere, 1011b
 mobility and self-care in, 1017b, 1018
 monitoring complications in, 1015
 National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale in, 1009, 1010t-1011t
 nonsurgical interventions in, 1008b, 1015-1016
 ongoing drug therapy for, 1015
 pathophysiology changes in brain in, 1005
 physical assessment in, 1009-1012, 1009b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1012
 sensory and perceptual changes in, 1018-1019
 surgical management of, 1016-1017, 1016b
 types of, 1005-1007, 1005f, 1006t, 1007f
 unilateral body neglect and, 1019
 visual loss in, 1011, 1012f
 transient ischemic attack in, 1005, 1005b
 traumatic brain injury in, 1020-1024
 determining brain death in, 1027-1028
 drug therapy for, 1028
 etiology of, 1023
 fluid and electrolyte management in, 1028
 health care resources for, 1031
- Critically ill patient (*Continued*)
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1024
 health teaching in, 1030-1031, 1030b
 history in, 1024, 1025b
 home care management in, 1030
 imaging assessment in, 1026
 incidence and prevalence of, 1024
 increased intracranial pressure in, 1027, 1027b
 laboratory assessment in, 1026
 minor, 1030b
 nutritional status in, 1028
 physical assessment in, 1024-1026, 1025b
 primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1026
 secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
 sensory, cognitive, and behavioral changes in, 1028-1029
 surgical management of, 1029-1030, 1029t
 types of force in, 1021, 1022f
 Crixivan; *See* Indinavir
 Crohn's disease, 1280-1284
 community-based care in, 1284
 drug therapy for, 1282, 1282b
 fistula management in, 1282-1283, 1282b, 1283f
 nutrition therapy for, 1282
 pathophysiology of, 1280-1281, 1280f
 physical assessment in, 1281, 1281b
 surgical management of, 1283-1284
 ulcerative colitis *versus*, 1272t
 Cromolyn sodium, 387
 Cromones, 607b-608b
 Cross-contamination
 in burn injury, 533
 in leukemia, 883
 Crotalidae Polyvalent Immune Fab, 141
 Crush syndrome, 1146
 Crusts and oozing, 460f-461f
 Crutches, 1157, 1158f
 Cryoablation for bone cancer, 1136
 Cryoprecipitate, 897t, 900
 Cryosurgery
 for bone cancer, 1136
 for skin cancer, 504
 Cryotherapy
 for cervical cancer, 1625-1626
 for genital warts, 1659, 1659b
 for liver cancer, 1311
 for oral cancer, 1198
 for pain management, 59
 for retinal detachment, 1069
 Cryothermia, 271, 272t
 Cryptococcosis
 in HIV-infected patient, 366
 in meningitis, 937-938
 Cryptorchidism, 1643
Cryptosporidium, 366, 1288
 Crystalloids for hypovolemic shock, 818
 Crystals in urine, 1478b, 1480, 1549
 CT; *See* Computed tomography
 C-telopeptide, 1123
 Cul-de-sac of Douglas, 1576f
 Cullen's sign, 1183-1184
 Cultural competence, 31-32, 31f, 31t
 Cultural considerations, 30-38
 in advance directives, 108b
 in anaphylaxis, 388b
 in biologic ecology, 35
 in bone marrow donation, 886b
 in breast cancer, 1594b, 1597b
 in cancer, 406b, 406t
 in cerumen, 1083b
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613b
 in coronary artery disease, 832b-834b
 in culture and cultural competence, 31-32, 31f, 31t
 in diabetes mellitus, 1418b
 in emergency care, 126b, 129b
 in end-of-life care, 110b
- Cultural considerations (*Continued*)
 in end-stage kidney disease, 1530b
 in family and workplace issues, 33-35
 in food preferences, 1336b
 in gastric cancer, 1234b
 in genetic biology, 71b
 in glomerular filtration rate, 1473b
 in health and health care disparities, 32
 in health care practices and practitioners, 36-37, 37f
 in human immunodeficiency virus infection, 361b, 361f
 in hypertension, 777b
 in lactose intolerance, 188b
 in lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender health, 33, 33b
 in lower extremity amputations, 1164b
 in lupus, 344b
 in malnutrition, 1340b
 in nutrition, 35-36
 in nutrition history, 1181b
 in osteoporosis, 1121b
 in pallor and cyanosis, 863b
 Purnell's domains of culture and, 32-37, 32t, 33b
 in reproductive assessment, 1579b
 in respiratory assessment, 548b
 in skin color, 465b
 in spirituality, 36
 in stroke, 1007b-1008b
 in syphilis, 1654b
 in ulcerative colitis, 1273b
 in urolithiasis, 1508b
 Cultural diversity, 31
 Cultural sensitivity, 31
 Culture, 31-32, 31f, 31t
 Culture and sensitivity, 444-445
 urine for, 1480
 in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
 vaginal, 1581
 Cultured skin for burn wound, 532
 Cuprimine; *See* Penicillamine
 Curandera, 37
 Curandero, 37, 37f
 Curative surgery, 243t, 410
 Curettage and electrodesiccation for skin cancer, 504
 Curling's ulcer, 517, 1226
 Cushing's disease, 1376b, 1384-1385
 acute adrenal insufficiency in, 1389
 etiology of, 1385, 1385t
 fluid volume balance in, 1386-1388
 health care resources for, 1390
 history in, 1385
 home care management in, 1389
 imaging assessment in, 1386
 incidence and prevalence of, 1385
 infection prevention in, 1388-1389
 laboratory assessment in, 1386
 lung cancer and, 631t
 pathophysiology of, 1384-1385, 1384f
 physical assessment in, 1385-1386, 1385b
 prevention of injury in, 1388
 psychosocial assessment in, 1386
 secondary hypertension and, 777
 surgical management of, 1387-1388
 teaching for self-management in, 1389-1390, 1389b
 Cushing's syndrome, 1385
 Cushing's triad, 1025
 Cushing's ulcer, 1226
 Cutaneous anthrax, 494-495, 495f
 Cutaneous infection, 490-494
 bacterial, 490-492, 492f
 fungal, 492-493
 history in, 493-494
 laboratory assessment in, 487-488, 495b
 physical assessment in, 494
 prevention of, 493, 493b
 viral, 492, 492f
 Cutaneous reflexes, 916-917
- Cutaneous stimulation for pain management, 59
 Cuticle, 453, 453f
 Cyanide poisoning, 525
 Cyanocobalamin, 877-878
 Cyanosis, 459t, 466, 467b
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 assessment of, 863
 cardiovascular assessment and, 697
 in dark-skinned patient, 786b
 in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 in hypovolemic shock, 816
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 in sickle cell disease, 872
 Cyclic adenosine monophosphate, 609
 Cyclic feeding, 1345
 Cyclins, 397
 Cyclobenzaprine hydrochloride, 322
 Cyclofen; *See* Danazol
 Cyclooxygenase, 308-309
 Cyclophosphamide, 415t-416t
 for multiple sclerosis, 982
 for pulmonary fibrosis, 628
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 341
 for Sj[um]gren's syndrome, 393
 Cyclosporine
 for aplastic anemia, 878
 immune deficiency and, 381
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315, 1570-1571
 Cymbalta; *See* Duloxetine
 Cyst, 460f-461f, 501-502
 Baker's, 334
 Bartholin's, 1620-1621
 in fibrocystic breast condition, 1589
 ovarian, 1617
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1518
 Cystectomy, 1513
 Cystic duct, 1180f
 obstruction in gallstones, 1316, 1316f
 Cystic fibrosis, 623-626
 bacterial infection risk in, 624
 chest physiotherapy in, 624, 625f
 genetic considerations in, 623b
 pathophysiology of, 623-626
 surgical management of, 625-626
 Cystine stones, 1511t
 Cystinuria, 1508t, 1511
 Cystitis, 1490-1492
 acute radiation, 1640
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 prostatitis and, 1649
 surgical management of, 1494
 Cystocele, 1500, 1505, 1615, 1616f
 Cystography, 1483t, 1485-1486, 1516
 Cystometry, 1486, 1500
 Cystoscopy, 1483t, 1485-1486
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 in bladder cancer, 1513
 in cystitis, 1493-1494
 Cystospaz; *See* Hyoscyamine
 Cystourethrography, 1485, 1525
 Cystourethrosocopy, 1485-1486, 1500
 Cytarabine, 415t-416t
 Cytokines, 314, 314t
 in Crohn's disease, 1281
 in inflammation, 308
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1241
 obesity and, 1349

- Cytologic testing
in gastritis, 1222
in lung cancer, 632
- Cytomegalovirus infection
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367
in acute sialadenitis, 1200
after liver transplantation, 1312
- Cytoreduction in ovarian cancer, 1627
- Cytoreductive surgery, 410
- Cytosar; *See* Cytarabine
- Cytosine, 67, 67f
- Cytotec; *See* Misoprostol
- Cytotoxic drugs, 380, 414
- Cytotoxic edema, 1022
- Cytotoxic hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 391
- Cytotoxic/cytolytic T-cell, 313-314, 857t
immune function of, 305t
transplant rejection and, 314-315
- Cytoxin; *See* Cyclophosphamide
- D**
- da Vinci Surgery System, 269f
- Dacarbazine, 415t-416t
- Daclizumab, 316
- Dacogen; *See* Decitabine
- Dactinomycin, 415t-416t
- DAI; *See* Diffuse axonal injury
- Daily-wear contact lenses, 1070
- Dalteparin
after total hip arthroplasty, 327
for venous thromboembolism, 801
- Danaparoid, 801
- Danazol, 1589
- Dandelion, 244t
- Dandruff, 463
- Danocrine; *See* Danazol
- Dapsone, 375
- Darbepoietin, 421, 427t, 1544b
- Darifenacin, 1242
- Darker skinned patient
integumentary assessment in, 465-467, 465b, 467b
osteoporosis in, 1121b
oxygen saturation and, 548b
- Darunavir/ritonavir, 357, 371
- Dasatinib, 418t
- Daunomycin; *See* Daunorubicin
- Daunorubicin, 415t-416t
- Dawn phenomenon, 1433, 1434f
- DDAVP; *See* Desmopressin
- D-dimer test, 800
- Death and dying, 106-120
advance directives and, 107-108
cultural preferences in end-of-life care, 110b
desired outcomes for end-of-life care, 108
DNR orders and, 107-108
durable power of attorney for health care and, 108, 109f
dyspnea management in, 113-114, 113b
in emergency department, 129-130
euthanasia and, 119, 119t
hospice and palliative care and, 108-110, 108b, 118b
incidence of, 107, 107t
nausea and vomiting management in, 114-115
pain management in, 112-113, 112b
pathophysiology of, 107
perception of, 106-107
physical assessment in, 111, 111b
postmortem care and, 118, 118b-119b
psychosocial assessment in, 111-112, 112b
psychosocial management in, 115-118, 116b-117b, 117f
refractory symptoms of distress management in, 115
religious death rituals and, 116t
restlessness and agitation management in, 115, 115b
- Death and dying (*Continued*)
seizure management in, 115
signs and symptoms at end of life, 110-118, 110b
weakness management in, 113
- Death rattle, 114
- D[ac]ebridement
in burn injury, 531
of diabetic wound, 1448
in facial trauma, 584
in frostbite, 150
of pressure ulcer, 483-485, 483t
of surgical wound, 296
- Debriefing after disaster, 162-163, 162b
- Debris from wound, 472-473
- Decadron; *See* Dexamethasone
- Decannulation, accidental, 571, 571b, 575b
- Deceleration injury, 1021, 1022f, 1148
- Decerebrate posturing, 918-919, 918f, 1026
- Decibel intensity of sounds, 1085, 1085t
- Decitabine, 415t-416t, 880
- Decompensated cirrhosis, 1294
- Decompression
endolymphatic, 1097
for trigeminal neuralgia, 1001
- Decompressive laminectomy, 972
- Decongestants
for allergic rhinitis, 387
for rhinitis, 641
for sinusitis, 642
- Decorticate posturing, 918-919, 918f, 1026
- Deep brain stimulation
in cluster headache, 932
in Parkinson disease, 946
- Deep breathing exercises
after burn injury, 525-526
after Nissen fundoplication, 1211
in back surgery, 964
patient and family education in, 256b
in removal of vascular access device, 226
- Deep cervical chain of lymph nodes, 1196f
- Deep full-thickness burn, 513t, 515, 515f
- Deep palpation, 1184
- Deep partial-thickness burn, 513t, 514, 514f-515f
- Deep peroneal nerve, 997f
- Deep tendon reflexes, 916, 917f
- acidosis and, 205
alkalosis and, 208
in spinal cord injury, 969
- Deep vein thrombophlebitis, 799
- Deep vein thrombosis, 799, 799f
in fracture, 1147
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990
impaired mobility and, 1017
preoperative assessment for, 256
pulmonary embolism and, 663
- Deer tick, Lyme disease and, 352
- Defibrillation, 737, 737b
- Degenerative joint disease, 319-320
chronic pain in, 321-331
complementary and alternative medicine for, 323, 323b
drug therapy for, 322
etiology and genetic risk for, 319b, 320
health care resources for, 332-333
health promotion and maintenance in, 320
health teaching in, 332, 332b
history in, 320
home care management in, 332
imaging assessment in, 321
improving mobility in, 331-332, 332b
incidence and prevalence of, 320
laboratory assessment in, 321
pathophysiology of, 319-320, 319f
physical assessment in, 320-321, 321t
psychosocial assessment in, 321
- Degenerative joint disease (*Continued*)
surgical management of, 323-331
hand and foot arthroplasties in, 331
total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
total hip arthroplasty in, 324-329
total knee arthroplasty in, 329-330, 330b, 330f
total shoulder arthroplasty in, 331
- Degenerative kidney disease, 1530-1532
diabetic nephropathy in, 1531-1532, 1531t
nephrosclerosis in, 1530, 1530b
renovascular disease in, 1530-1531, 1531b
- Dehiscence, 291, 291f, 296
- DEHP; *See* Di-2-ethylhexyl-phthalate
- Dehydration, 173-180, 173b, 173t
in acute sialadenitis, 1201
adaptive mechanisms to preserve perfusion during, 174f
changes in fluid compartment volumes with, 174f
in diabetes insipidus, 1378
in diabetes mellitus, 1412-1413
dying patient and, 113
in enteral nutrition, 1347
falls precautions in, 176, 176b
fever-related, 446b
fluid replacement for, 176, 177b, 177t
in gastroenteritis, 1271b
Gordon's functional health patterns in, 175b
health promotion and maintenance in, 174-175
history in, 175
physical assessment of, 175-176, 176b
- Delavirdine, 371
- Delayed gastric emptying
after gastric surgery, 1237
in peptic ulcer disease, 1225
- Delayed healing, 294-297, 295f, 296b
- Delayed hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 392
- Delayed union, 1147
- Delegation, 5
- Delirium
after hip fracture, 1161
dementia *versus*, 25t
dying patient and, 115
in older adult, 23-24
- Delta cell, 1364f
- Delta hepatitis, 1306
- Delta-Cortef; *See* Prednisolone
- Deltasone; *See* Prednisone
- Demadex; *See* Torsemide
- Demand dose in patient-controlled analgesia, 54
- Dementia, 23
in Alzheimer's disease, 23, 946-955
behavioral problems in, 954t
caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
chronic confusion in, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
genetic considerations in, 947b
health care resources for, 955
health teaching in, 955
history in, 947-948, 948t
home care management in, 954-955
imaging assessment in, 950
injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
laboratory assessment in, 950
pathophysiology of, 946-947
physical assessment in, 948-949, 948b, 949f
psychosocial assessment in, 949-950
delirium *versus*, 25t
pain in older adult with, 50b
- Demerol; *See* Meperidine
- Demyelination
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987
in multiple sclerosis, 978
- Dendrite of neuron, 906, 906f
- Deoxyribonucleic acid, 66-68
chromosomes and, 66f, 68, 68f
protein synthesis and, 70-71, 70f, 70t
replication of, 67, 67f
structure of, 66-67, 66f-67f
- Deoxyribose sugar, 67
- Depacon; *See* Valproate
- Depakene; *See* Valproic acid
- Depakote; *See* Divalproex
- Depolarization, 712
- Deprenyl; *See* Selegiline
- Depressed skull fracture, 1021
- Depression
in coronary artery disease, 841
at end of life, 112b
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990
older adult and, 22-23, 23f, 24b
urinary incontinence in, 1499b
- Depression, range of motion movement, 112f
- Dermabrasion, 507t
- Dermal filling, 506
- Dermal papilla, 452f, 453
- Dermatitis, 498b
atopic, 497
contact, 497
nonspecific eczematous, 497
stasis, 803
- Dermatomes, 910-911, 910f
- Dermatomyositis, 351
- Dermatophytosis, 491b, 492-493
- Dermis, 452, 452f
changes resulting from burn, 512, 514f
changes with aging, 451
function of, 454t
- Deronil; *See* Dexamethasone
- Descending colostomy, 1250f
- Descending Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988t
- Descending limb of loop of Henle, 1469t, 1470f
- Descending tracts, 909-910, 909f
- Descriptive pain distress scale, 48f
- Desensitization therapy, 387
- Desflurane, 274t
- Desipramine, 1502b
- Desmopressin, 1379, 1379b
- Desquamation in superficial-thickness burn, 514
- Desyrel; *See* Trazodone
- Detensol; *See* Propranolol
- Detrol; *See* Tolterodine
- Detrusor hyperreflexia, 1498t
in multiple sclerosis, 982
- Detrusor muscle, 1471, 1472f, 1473
- Dexamethasone
for acute mountain sickness, 152
for anaphylaxis, 390b
for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
for multiple myeloma, 894-895
- Dexamethasone suppression testing in
Cushing's disease, 1386
- Dexlansoprazole, 1206
- Dextran, 972
- DHA; *See* Docosahexaenoic acid
- Diabetes insipidus, 1378-1380, 1378b-1379b
in brain tumor, 1031
- Diabetes mellitus, 1410-1462
absence of insulin in, 1412-1413, 1412t
atherosclerosis and, 773
blood glucose control in hospitalized patient, 1442-1443
blood glucose monitoring in, 1436-1438, 1438f
cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
chalcystitis and, 1317b
chronic kidney disease and, 1416, 1549
chronic pancreatitis and, 1326, 1328

- Diabetes mellitus (*Continued*)
 classification of, 1411, 1411t
 complications of, 1413
 adjustments for, 1441
 cardiovascular disease in, 1413-1414
 chronic, 1413-1414
 diabetic nephropathy in, 1416, 1450-1451
 diabetic neuropathy in, 1415-1416, 1415t, 1446-1447, 1447b
 eye and vision, 1414-1415, 1414f, 1415b, 1449-1450
 male erectile dysfunction in, 1416
 risk for surgical complications and, 1444
 stroke in, 1414
 concept map for, 1421f-1422f
 coronary artery disease and, 833
 cultural considerations in, 1418b
 diabetic ketoacidosis in, 1454-1456, 1454f, 1455t
 differentiation of type 1 and type 2, 1417t
 drug therapy for, 1421-1438, 1423b-1428b, 1428t
 effects on vision, 1044
 endocrine pancreas and, 1411, 1411f
 exercise therapy in, 1441-1442, 1442b
 focused assessment in, 1461b
 foot care in, 1445-1446, 1445b, 1446f, 1447, 1448b, 1448f
 gestational, 1411t
 glucose homeostasis and, 1411-1412
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1418
 history in, 1418-1458
 home care management in, 1461
 hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state in, 1457-1458, 1457f
 hypoglycemia in, 1421-1444, 1421f-1422f, 1451-1454
 blood glucose management and, 1452
 critical rescue in, 1453b
 drug therapy for, 1452-1453
 home care management of, 1453b
 hyperglycemia *versus*, 1452t
 nutrition therapy for, 1452
 older adult and, 1454b
 patient and family education in, 1453-1454
 symptoms of, 1451t
 incidence and prevalence of, 1417
 insulin therapy for, 1430-1438
 alternative methods of insulin administration in, 1433-1434, 1434f
 complications of, 1433, 1434f
 factors influencing insulin absorption in, 1432-1433, 1433f
 mixing of insulins in, 1433, 1433t, 1435b
 noncompliance with, 1432b
 patient education in, 1434-1436, 1435f
 regimens in, 1431-1432
 subcutaneous administration of, 1435b
 types of insulin in, 1430-1431, 1431t
 kidney transplant risks in, 1568
 laboratory assessment in, 1418-1421, 1419b, 1420t
 nephrosclerosis and, 1530
 neuropathic pain in, 1449
 nutrition therapy in, 1438-1441, 1440t
 older adult and, 1440b, 1442b
 activity program for, 1442b
 hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state in, 1440b, 1457b
 hypoglycemia and, 1454b
 safety assessment in, 1441-1442
 screening for, 1420
- Diabetes mellitus (*Continued*)
 sick-day rules in, 1456b
 surgical management of, 1443-1444
 intraoperative care in, 1445
 postoperative care in, 1445
 preoperative care in, 1444-1445
 teaching for self-management in, 1458-1460, 1461t
 travel tips for, 1460b
 type 1, 1416-1417, 1416b
 type 2, 1417, 1418t-1419t
 urine tests in, 1420
 wound care in, 1448-1449
- Diabetic ketoacidosis, 1454-1456, 1454f, 1455t
- Diabetic nephropathy, 1416, 1450-1451, 1531-1532, 1531t
- Diabetic neuropathy, 1415-1416, 1415t, 1446-1447, 1447b
- Diabetic retinopathy, 1414, 1414f
 blood glucose management in, 1449
 exercise adjustments in, 1441
- Diabetic ulcer, 788b
- Diabinese; *See* Chlorpropamide
- Diagnostic peritoneal lavage, 1259
- Diagnostic surgery, 243t, 410
- Dialysate
 in continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration with dialysis, 1546
 in hemodialysis, 1559
 leakage from catheter exit site, 1567
- Dialysate additives, 1564
- Dialysis
 hemodialysis in, 1558-1564
 in acute kidney injury, 1545, 1545f
 anticoagulation in, 1560
 complications of, 1563-1564, 1563b
 dialysis settings in, 1558-1559
 dialyzable and vasoactive drugs after, 1563t
 dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 in hypothermia rewarming, 149
 nursing care in, 1562, 1563b
 older adult and, 1563b
 patient and family education in, 1572
 patient selection for, 1558
 peritoneal dialysis *versus*, 1558t
 post-dialysis care and, 1562-1563
 procedure in, 1559-1560, 1559f-1560f
 vascular access in, 1560-1562
 for hypercalcemia, 191
- peritoneal, 1564-1567, 1564t
 in acute kidney injury, 1545
 complications in, 1566-1567
 dialysate additives for, 1564
 dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 hemodialysis *versus*, 1558t
 nursing care in, 1567b
 patient and family education in, 1572
 patient selection for, 1564
 procedure in, 1564, 1564f
 types of, 1564-1566, 1565f-1566f
- Dialysis catheter, 220
- Dialysis disequilibrium syndrome, 1563, 1563b
- Dialyzable drugs after hemodialysis, 1563t
- Dialyzer, 1559, 1559f
- Diamox; *See* Acetazolamide
- Diaphoresis
 in aortic dissection, 796
 in hyperthyroidism, 1394-1395
 in renal colic, 1508
- Diaphragm, 546f, 1180f
 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and, 612f
- Diaphragmatic breathing
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618, 619b
 patient and family education in, 256b
- Diaphragmatic hernia, 1208
- Diaphysis, 1107, 1107f
- Diarrhea
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 376-377
 after esophageal surgery, 1216-1217
 in *Cryptosporidium* infection, 1288
 in enteral nutrition, 1347
 in food poisoning, 1289
 in gastroenteritis, 1270
 in giardiasis, 1288
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
 in malabsorption syndrome, 1262
 metformin-induced, 1428
 skin care in, 1263b
 in ulcerative colitis, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
- Diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
- Diarthrodial joint, 1108
- Diascopy, 468
- Diastole, 689, 690f
- Diastolic blood pressure, 691
- Diastolic heart failure, 745
- Diastolic murmur, 700-701
- Diathermy
 for osteoarthritis pain, 322
 for retinal detachment, 1069
- Diazepam, 934b
 for anxiety in head and neck cancer, 595-596
 for heat stroke, 139
 for moderate sedation, 276
 for restless legs syndrome, 999
 for status epilepticus, 936
- Diazoxide, 1452-1453
- Dibucaine, 1261
- DIC; *See* Disseminated intravascular coagulation
- Diclofenac
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for pain management, 59
- Dicyclomine, 1502b, 1503-1504
- Didanosine, 371, 372b-374b
- Didronel; *See* Etidronate
- Diencephalon, 907, 907f
- Diet
 after burn injury, 536
 cancer development and, 404, 404b
 in chronic kidney disease, 1555, 1555t
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621
 in diabetes mellitus, 1418
 in diverticular disease, 1286
 in dumping syndrome, 1237t
 hemorrhoids and, 1261
 in hepatitis, 1308-1309
 in hiatal hernia, 1209b
 malabsorption syndrome and, 1263
 in M[glv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 obesity and, 1350
 in osteoarthritis, 323
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1230, 1230b
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521-1522
 preoperative restrictions in, 252-253
 for promotion of wound healing, 299
- Diet programs for obesity, 1351-1352
- Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 1336, 1336t
- Dietary supplements, 9
- Di-2-ethylhexyl-phthalate, 220
- Diffuse axonal injury, 1021
- Diffuse cutaneous systemic sclerosis, 347
- Diffuse interstitial fibrosis, 629b
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
- Diffuse lesion, 462t
- Diffuse light reflex, 1083
- Diffuse nail pigmentation, 465f
- Diffuse neuropathies in diabetes mellitus, 1415, 1415t
- Diffusion, 167-168, 168f
 in dialysis, 1559
- Diffusion capacity of carbon monoxide, 558t
- Diffusion imaging, 921
- Diffusion test, 617
- Diflucan; *See* Fluconazole
- Digestion, 1178-1179
- Digital mammography, 1598
- Digital rectal examination, 1500
- Digitek; *See* Digoxin
- Digoxin, 723b-726b, 733
 for acute kidney injury, 1544b
 for atrial fibrillation, 727
 for chronic kidney disease, 1557, 1557b
 for heart failure, 753, 753b
 home care management and, 757b
- Digoxin toxicity, 753b
- Dihydroergotamine, 930
- Dihydrotestosterone, 1637
- Dilantin; *See* Phenytoin
- Dilated cardiomyopathy, 767t, 768
- Dilaudid; *See* Hydromorphone
- Diltiazem, 723b-726b, 732-733
 for atrial fibrillation, 727
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, 844
 for pulmonary arterial hypertension, 627
 for valvular heart disease, 761
- Diovan; *See* Valsartan
- Diphenhydramine
 for anaphylaxis, 390, 390b
 for bee sting, 146
 for urticaria, 472
- Diphtheria, 643
- Dipivefrin hydrochloride, 1066b-1067b
- Diplococcus* sinusitis, 641
- Diplopia
 in hypopituitarism, 1372
 in migraine, 928
 in multiple sclerosis, 979, 982
 in myasthenia gravis, 991
 in stroke, 1019
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025-1026
- Diprivan; *See* Propofol
- Dipyridamole stress test, 707
- Direct bilirubin, 1186b
- Direct commissurotomy, 761
- Direct contract transmission, 436
- Direct Coomb's test, 864, 865b
- Direct current stimulation device, 963
- Direct inguinal hernia, 1243, 1243f
- Direct laryngoscopy, 590
- Direct response of pupil, 919
- Directed blood donation, 245
- Directly observed therapy, 443
 in tuberculosis, 657-658
- Disability, primary survey and, 133, 134t
- Disabling health problems, rehabilitation for, 89-105
 community-based care and, 104-105
 complications of immobility and, 98, 99t
 concepts related to, 90
 establishing bowel continence and, 102-103, 103b, 103t
 establishing urinary continence and, 101-102, 102t
 functional assessment in, 94
 gait training and, 97-99, 98b, 98f
 health care resources for, 105
 health teaching in, 104-105
 history in, 92
 home care management after, 104
 improvement of physical mobility and, 95-99, 96f-97f, 97b
 increasing functional mobility and, 99-100, 100t
 maintaining skin integrity and, 100-101
 older adult and, 92b
 physical assessment in, 92-94, 92t

- Disabling health problems, rehabilitation for (*Continued*)
 psychosocial assessment in, 94
 rehabilitation team in, 90-92, 91f, 91t
 vocational assessment in, 95
- Disaster Medical Assistance Team, 159
- Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Team, 159
- Disaster preparedness, 155-164
 hospital incident command system and, 159-160, 160t
 impact of disasters and, 156-157, 156f-157f
 mass casualty triage and, 157-158, 157b, 158t
 notification and activation of emergency plans in, 159
 role of nurse in, 163
 role of nursing in health care facility and, 160-162
 types of disasters and, 155-156, 156b
- Disaster triage tag system, 158
- Discharge
 from nipple, 1597
 from reproductive tract, 1580
 vaginal
 in chlamydial infection, 1662, 1662b
 in gonorrhea, 1660
 in vulvovaginitis, 1613
- Discharge instructions
 in bariatric surgery, 1355b
 in burn injury, 528f
 from emergency department, 129, 129b
 in endoscopic therapies for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1208b
- Discharge planning, 246
- Discoid lesion, 344
- Discoid lupus erythematosus, 343
- Discoidin domain receptor 2, 319b
- Disconnect system in peritoneal dialysis, 1565-1566
- Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs
 for ankylosing spondylitis, 352
 immune deficiency and, 381
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 337
- Disequilibrium, 166
- Disinfection, 439-440
- Diskitis, 963
- Dislocation, 1172-1173
 after total hip arthroplasty, 325-326, 325t
- Dislodgement and accidental decannulation, 571, 571b
- Dislodgement of central venous catheter, 232t
- Disopyramide phosphate, 723b-726b
- Displaced fracture, 1144f
- Dissecting aneurysm, 792
- Dissecting hematoma, 796
- Disseminated gonorrhea, 1661
- Disseminated intravascular coagulation
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 in cancer, 430
 in necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis, 1322
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823
- Dissociates, 197, 197f
- Dissociation of hemoglobin, 547
- Distal convoluted tubule, 1467, 1467f-1468f, 1469f, 1470, 1470f
- Distal humerus fracture, 1159
- Distal interphalangeal joint, 1112-1113, 1113f
- Distal symmetric polyneuropathy, 1415t
- Distal/embolic protection device, 1015
- Distraction
 for pain management, 60
 for preoperative anxiety, 259
 for removal of vascular access device, 226
- Distributive shock, 812
 functional impairment in, 810t
 in older adult, 823b
- Ditropan; *See* Oxybutynin
- Diuretics
 for acute kidney injury, 1543
 for ascites, 1300
 cautions in use of thiazides, 780b
 for dying patient, 114
 for edema around eyes, 1400
 for fluid overload, 179
 for heart failure, 752, 752b
 for hypercalcemia, 191
 for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 for hypertension, 780, 780b-782b
 ototoxic, 1082t
 side effects of, 780b
 for syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1381
- Divalproex, 934b
- Diverticula, esophageal, 1217-1218
- Diverticular disease, 1284-1287, 1284f, 1286b
- Diverticulitis, 1284
- Diverticulosis, 1284
- Diving accident, neck injury in, 967
- Diving reflex, 153
- Dix-Hallpike test, 1086
- Dizziness, 1095
 in M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 in multiple sclerosis, 979
- D₁CO; *See* Diffusion capacity of carbon monoxide
- DLE; *See* Discoid lupus erythematosus
- DMARDs; *See* Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs
- Dobutamine, 843b
 for cardiac arrest, 734b
 for heart failure, 753, 842
 for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 for pulmonary embolism, 667-668
 for stress test, 707
- Dobutrex; *See* Dobutamine
- Docetaxel, 415t-416t
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Docosahexaenoic acid, 833
- Documentation
 of extravasation, 417b
 of infusion therapy, 226-227
- Docusate sodium, 1262
- Dofetilide, 723b-726b
- Dolasetron, 423b
- Dolophine; *See* Methadone
- Donor
 in kidney transplantation, 1568, 1568f
 in liver transplantation, 1311
- Do-Not-Resuscitate order, 107-108, 278
- Dopamine, 843b
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for cardiac arrest, 734b
 for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 Parkinson disease and, 941
- Dopamine agonists
 for Parkinson disease, 943-944, 944b
 for restless leg syndrome, 999
- Doppler ultrasonography in amputation, 1165
- Doppler-derived maximal systolic acceleration, 787
- Dornase alfa, 619
- Dorsal metacarpal vein, 215f
- Dorsal recumbent position during surgery, 280, 280f
- Dorsal venous arch, 215f
- Dorsalis pedis pulse, 699f
- Doryx; *See* Doxycycline
- Dorzolamide, 1066b-1067b
- Dose-dense chemotherapy, 416
- Dose-track technology, 223
- DOT; *See* Directly observed therapy
- Double vision
 in hypopituitarism, 1372
 in migraine, 928
- Double vision (*Continued*)
 in multiple sclerosis, 979, 982
 in myasthenia gravis, 991
 in stroke, 1019
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025-1026
- Double-barrel stoma, 1249, 1250f
- Doubling time of tumor, 403
- Dovonex; *See* Calcipotriene
- Dowager's hump, 1123f
- Doxazosin
 for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 for hypertension, 784
- Doxil; *See* Doxorubicin
- Doxorubicin, 415t-416t, 1311
- Doxycycline
 for anthrax, 495, 659, 659b
 for chlamydial infection, 1662
 for gonorrhea, 1661
- DPL; *See* Diagnostic peritoneal lavage
- DPP-4 inhibitors, 1423b-1427b, 1430
- Drain
 after exploratory laparotomy, 1269
 in cystectomy, 1514
 postoperative care of, 295
 preoperative preparation for, 254
 for surgical wound, 291, 292f
- Drainage from perineal wound, 1251
- Dramamine; *See* Meclizine
- Dressings
 after burn injury skin grafts, 537-538, 537f
 in back surgery, 964b
 for burn wound, 531-532, 532t
 for craniotomy, 1034
 in infusion therapy, 224-225, 224b, 224f
 for nasal fracture, 581, 581f
 postoperative changing of, 294-295, 295f
 for pressure ulcer, 483-485, 483t
 for surgical wound, 281, 291
 for tracheostomy, 576f
- Drithochrome; *See* Anthralin
- Driving safety, 19-20, 20b
- Dronedrone, 723b-726b, 727
- Droplet precautions, 440, 442t
 in meningitis, 940b
- Droplet transmission, 436
- Drowning, 152-154
- Droxia; *See* Hydroxyurea
- Drug abuse, increased risk for surgical complications and, 243
- Drug eruption, 497b
- Drug history
 in cardiovascular assessment, 694
 in chronic kidney disease, 1550
 in fracture, 1148
 in renal assessment, 1475
 in respiratory assessment, 549
 in stomatitis, 1194
 in vision assessment, 1045, 1045t
- Drug holiday, 944
- Drug therapy
 for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 370-375, 371b-374b
 for acute kidney injury, 1543, 1544b
 for acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
 for adrenal insufficiency, 1383, 1384b
 for allergic rhinitis, 386-387
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for anthrax, 659, 659b
 for ascites, 1300
 for asthma, 604b, 606-611, 607b-608b
 for atherosclerosis, 775, 775b, 775t
 for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633, 1633b
 for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 for bone cancer, 1135
 for brain abscess, 1037
 for brain tumor, 1032-1033
- Drug therapy (*Continued*)
 for burn injury
 for infection in, 536
 for infection prevention in, 533, 534b-535b
 for mechanical ventilation in, 525
 for pain management in, 527-528
 for shock prevention in, 527
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 421-422, 423b
 for chest pain, 836-837, 838b
 for chronic leukemia, 884
 for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 619
 for cirrhosis, 1304
 for cluster headache, 932
 for colorectal cancer, 1248
 for corneal disorders, 1057
 for coronary artery disease, 837-839, 838b, 852
 for Crohn's disease, 1282, 1282b
 for cystitis, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 for deep vein thrombosis, 800-802
 for dehydration, 177, 177t
 for diabetes insipidus, 1379b
 for diabetes mellitus, 1421-1438, 1423b-1428b, 1428t
 for diabetic ketoacidosis, 1456
 for diabetic nephropathy, 1451
 for hypoglycemia, 1452-1453
 dietary and herbal supplements and, 10b
 for dysrhythmias, 723b-726b, 732-733, 734b
 effects on older adult, 20, 21t
 for erectile dysfunction, 1642
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for eye problems, 1054b
 for fever, 445
 for fibrocystic breast condition, 1589, 1589b
 for fluid balance in chronic kidney disease, 1553
 for fluid overload, 179
 in Cushing's disease, 1387
 for fracture pain, 1154
 for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b, 1225t
 for gastroenteritis, 1271-1272
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206-1208, 1207b
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for genital warts, 1659
 for glaucoma, 1065, 1066b-1067b, 1067f
 for gonorrhea, 1661
 for Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 for gout, 350
 for Guillain-Barré[ac]e syndrome, 988-989, 989b
 for hearing loss, 1100
 for heart failure, 750-754, 751t, 842, 843b
 ACE inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers in, 751, 751b
 beta-adrenergic blockers in, 753
 digoxin in, 753, 753b
 diuretics in, 752, 752b
 home care management and, 757, 757b
 human B-type natriuretic peptides in, 751, 751b
 inotropic drugs in, 753
 for hepatic encephalopathy, 1299-1303
 for hypercalcemia, 191
 for hypercalcemia, 1511
 for hyperglycemia, 1421-1438
 for hyperkalemia, 187
 for hyponatremia, 183
 for hyperoxaluria, 1511
 for hyperpituitarism, 1375
 for hypertension, 780-784, 780b-783b
 for hyperthyroidism, 1397, 1397b-1398b
 for hypocalcemia, 190

Drug therapy (*Continued*)

for hypokalemia, 185, 185b
 for hyponatremia, 182
 for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 for idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
 ileostomy and, 1279b
 interactions in
 with hematologic system, 862t
 with sulfonyleurea drugs, 1428t
 intravenous, 212
 for irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
 for leukemia, 883-884
 for lung cancer, 638
 for lupus, 346
 for malabsorption syndrome, 1263
 for malnutrition, 1343
 for M[gv]en[ac]re's disease, 1096
 for methicillin-resistant
 Staphylococcus aureus, 495b
 for migraine, 929, 930t
 for multiple sclerosis, 980-982, 982b
 for myasthenia gravis, 993-994, 993b
 for osteoarthritis, 322
 for osteomyelitis, 1132, 1132b
 for osteoporosis, 1124-1125,
 1125b-1126b
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 for pain management, 49-59, 50t
 adjuvant analgesics in, 58-59
 epidural analgesia in, 56-57, 58f
 evidence-based practice in, 50b
 intrathecal analgesia in, 57-58
 non-opioid analgesics in, 49-51
 older adult and, 51b
 opioid analgesics in, 51-58, 53t
 patient-controlled analgesia in,
 54-56, 54f
 routes of analgesic administration
 in, 55t-56t
 for Parkinson disease, 943-944,
 944b-945b
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230
 for peripheral arterial disease, 789
 for phantom limb pain, 1166
 preoperative, 253, 260
 for pressure ulcer, 485
 for prostate cancer, 1640-1641,
 1640b
 for pulmonary arterial hypertension,
 627
 for pulmonary embolism, 665,
 666b-667b, 667-668
 for pyelonephritis, 1525
 for reflex incontinence, 1505
 for respiratory acidosis, 206
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 337-341,
 337b-340b
 for rhinitis, 641
 for seizures, 933, 933b-934b
 for sepsis and septic shock, 825
 for sickle cell crisis, 874
 for skin cancer, 504
 for skin infection, 494, 495b
 for spinal cord injury, 972
 for stomatitis, 1194
 for stroke, 1015
 for syndrome of inappropriate
 secretion of antidiuretic
 hormone, 1381
 for syphilis, 1656
 for traumatic brain injury, 1028
 for trigeminal neuralgia, 1000-1001
 for tuberculosis, 655, 656b
 for ulcerative colitis, 1274-1275
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
 for urinary elimination problems, 102
 for urinary incontinence, 1501, 1502b
 for urolithiasis, 1510-1511
 for infection in, 1510
 for urinary obstruction in, 1511
 for valvular heart disease, 760-761,
 760b
 for wound infection, 296

Drug-induced disorders

anaphylaxis in, 388t
 diabetes insipidus in, 1378
 hepatitis in, 1305
 hypokalemia in, 184
 immune deficiencies in, 380-381
 immunologic interstitial and
 tubulointerstitial disorders in,
 1530
 leukemia in, 880
 secondary hypertension in, 777
 toxic epidermal necrolysis in, 508
 urinary incontinence in, 1499b
 Drug-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, 652
 Dry age-related macular degeneration,
 1068
 Dry eyes, 1056
 artificial tears for, 393, 1056
 in Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 393
 Dry heat injury, 517
 Dry mouth
 after oral cancer surgery, 1199
 in post-irradiation sialadenitis, 1201
 radiation therapy-related, 414, 591
 in Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 335, 393
 Dry powder inhaler, 609, 610b, 610f
 Dry skin, 457f, 462, 471, 471b
 DTIC; *See* Dacarbazine
 DTRs; *See* Deep tendon reflexes
 Dual x-ray absorptiometry,
 1123-1124
 Dual-lumen cuffed tracheostomy tube,
 573, 573f
 DUB; *See* Dysfunctional uterine
 bleeding
 Duct of Wirsung, 1180f
 Ductal carcinoma in situ, 1591
 Ductal ectasia, 1589t, 1590
 Duetact, 1423b-1427b
 Dulcolax; *See* Bisacodyl
 Dull percussion note, 553t, 1184
 Duloxetine
 for fibromyalgia, 354
 for neuropathic pain, 1449
 for pain management, 58
 Dumping syndrome, 1236, 1237t, 1355
 Duodenal papillae, 1180f
 Duodenal ulcer, 1225, 1226f, 1228t
 Duodenum, 1178f, 1180
 DuPen Silastic catheter for epidural
 analgesia, 57
 Duplex Doppler ultrasonography in
 erectile dysfunction, 1642
 Dupuytren's contracture, 1138
 Dura mater, 906
 Durable power of attorney for health
 care, 108, 109f
 Duragesic; *See* Fentanyl
 Duricef; *See* Cefadroxil
 Dutasteride, 1633
 DVT; *See* Deep vein thrombosis
 Dwarfism, 35
 DXA; *See* Dual x-ray absorptiometry
 Dying patient, 106-120
 advance directives and, 107-108
 cultural preferences in end-of-life
 care, 110b
 desired outcomes for end-of-life care,
 108
 DNR orders and, 107-108
 durable power of attorney for health
 care and, 108, 109f
 dyspnea management for, 113-114,
 113b
 euthanasia and, 119, 119t
 hospice and palliative care for,
 108-110, 108b, 118b
 incidence of death and, 107, 107t
 nausea and vomiting management for,
 114-115
 pain management for, 112-113, 112b
 pathophysiology of death and, 107
 perception of death, 106-107
 physical assessment of, 111, 111b

Dying patient (*Continued*)

postmortem care and, 118,
 118b-119b
 psychosocial assessment of, 111-112,
 112b
 psychosocial management of,
 115-118, 116b-117b, 117f
 refractory symptoms of distress
 management for, 115
 religious death rituals and, 116t
 restlessness and agitation
 management for, 115, 115b
 seizure management for, 115
 signs and symptoms at end of life,
 110-118, 110b
 weakness management for, 113
 Dyrenium; *See* Triamterene
 Dysarthria
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983b
 in multiple sclerosis, 982
 in myasthenia gravis, 994
 in Parkinson disease, 942b, 943
 Dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613,
 1613t
 Dyskinesia, 943-944
 Dyslexia, 1009
 Dysmetria, 979
 Dyspareunia
 in anal fissure, 1287
 in Bartholin cyst, 1621
 in endometriosis, 1612
 in hypopituitarism, 1372
 in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
 Dyspepsia, 1182
 in cholecystitis, 1317
 in gastritis, 1222
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease,
 1204-1205
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
 Dysphagia
 after Nissen fundoplication, 1211
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis,
 983b
 in dying patient, 113
 in esophageal cancer, 1212
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease,
 1205
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990
 in hiatal hernia, 1209
 in lung cancer, 632, 638
 in malnutrition, 1341b
 in myasthenia gravis, 991
 in stomatitis, 1194
 in stroke, 1011-1012, 1017
 in systemic sclerosis, 347
 in thyroid cancer, 1405
 Dyspnea
 activities of daily living and, 551t
 in acute respiratory failure, 670-671,
 671f
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 984
 in asthma, 603
 cardiovascular assessment and, 695
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary
 disease, 616, 616f, 621
 dying patient and, 113-114, 113b
 in facial trauma, 583
 in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
 in heart failure, 748
 in hepatopulmonary syndrome,
 1300-1302
 in laryngeal trauma, 586
 in lung cancer, 632, 638
 noninvasive positive-pressure
 ventilation for, 569
 in pneumonia, 650t
 in pulmonary arterial hypertension,
 626
 radiation therapy-related, 590
 respiratory assessment and, 551
 in thyroid cancer, 1405
 Dyspnea on exertion, 695
 Dysrhythmias, 711-743
 after coronary artery bypass graft,
 849

Dysrhythmias (*Continued*)

atrial, 721-728
 atrial fibrillation in, 722-728, 727b,
 727f
 premature atrial complexes in,
 721-722
 supraventricular tachycardia in,
 722
 atrioventricular blocks in, 731
 cardiac conduction system and,
 711-713, 712f
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary
 disease, 614
 classification of, 720-731
 community-based care, 739-742
 in coronary artery disease, 841
 drug therapy for, 723b-726b
 electrocardiography and, 713-718,
 713f
 complexes, segments, and intervals
 in, 715-717, 716f
 continuous electrocardiographic
 monitoring and, 714-715, 715f
 heart rate determination using,
 717-718, 717f
 heart rhythm analysis using, 718
 lead systems in, 713-714, 714t
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989
 health care resources for, 741-742
 health teaching in, 740-741,
 740b-741b
 home care management in, 739-740
 in hyperkalemia, 187
 in hypokalemia, 184-185
 nonsurgical management of, 732-738
 automatic external defibrillation in,
 738, 738f
 cardiopulmonary resuscitation in,
 736
 cardioversion for, 737, 737b
 defibrillation in, 737, 737b
 drug therapy for, 732-733, 734b
 medication errors in, 732b
 radiofrequency catheter ablation in,
 738
 temporary pacing for, 733-736,
 735f-736f
 vagal maneuvers for, 733, 733b
 normal sinus rhythm and, 718-719,
 719f
 older adult and, 740b
 patient safety in, 731b
 in pneumonia, 650
 sinus, 720-721, 720b, 721f
 bradycardia in, 720-721
 tachycardia in, 720
 surgery for, 738-739
 coronary artery bypass grafting in,
 739
 implantable cardioverter/
 defibrillator in, 739, 742b
 open-chest cardiac massage in, 739
 permanent pacemaker insertion in,
 738, 739f
 sustained tachydysrhythmias and
 bradydysrhythmias in, 719b
 terminology in, 719-720
 ventricular, 728-731
 premature ventricular complexes
 in, 728, 729f
 ventricular asystole in, 730-731
 ventricular fibrillation in, 729-730,
 730f
 ventricular tachycardia in, 728-729,
 729b, 729f
 Dystrophic nails, 463
 Dystrophin, 1140b
 Dysuria, 1474t
 after prostate surgery, 1636
 in cervical cancer, 1625
 in chlamydial infection, 1662, 1662b
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1520
 preoperative assessment of, 246
 in prostatitis, 1649
 in urinary tract infection, 1492

- E**
- EAI; *See* Elder Assessment Instrument
- Ear, 1077-1087
- cerumen removal and, 1081b, 1083b
 - external, 1077-1078, 1078f
 - function of, 1079
 - hearing assessment and
 - audiometry in, 1085, 1085t
 - auditory brainstem-evoked response in, 1086
 - balance testing in, 1086
 - external ear and mastoid assessment in, 1082-1083
 - family history and genetic risk in, 1081-1082, 1081b
 - general auditory assessment in, 1084
 - Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1080b
 - history in, 1080-1082
 - imaging assessment in, 1084-1085
 - laboratory assessment in, 1084
 - otoscopic assessment in, 1083, 1083f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1084
 - typanometry in, 1085-1086
 - hearing changes associated with aging, 1079, 1080b
 - inner, 1079
 - middle, 1078-1079, 1078f-1079f
 - ototoxic drugs and, 1082t
- Ear pain, 1092
- in external otitis, 1089
 - in foreign body in ear, 1090
 - in furuncle, 1090
 - in otitis media, 1092
- Ear problems, 1088-1105
- external, 1088-1092
 - cerumen or foreign bodies in, 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
 - external otitis in, 1089-1090, 1089b, 1089f
 - furuncle in, 1090
 - perichondritis in, 1090
 - health care resources for, 1104
 - hearing loss in, 1097-1105
 - assistive devices for, 1100
 - communication and, 1103-1104, 1103b
 - conductive *versus* sensorineural, 1098t
 - drug therapy for, 1100
 - focused assessment in, 1099b
 - genetic considerations in, 1098b
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1098
 - hearing aid for, 1100, 1101b
 - history in, 1098-1099
 - imaging assessment in, 1100
 - incidence among older adults, 1099b
 - laboratory assessment in, 1100
 - pathophysiology of, 1097-1098, 1097f
 - physical assessment in, 1099-1100
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1100
 - stapedectomy for, 1102-1103, 1103f
 - totally implanted device for, 1103
 - typanoplasty for, 1101-1102, 1101f-1102f
 - home care management in, 1104
 - inner, 1095-1097
 - acoustic neuroma in, 1097
 - labyrinthitis in, 1095-1096
 - M[*g*v]en[*i*]ac[*j*er]e's disease in, 1096-1097
 - tinnitus in, 1095
 - vertigo and dizziness in, 1095
 - middle, 1092-1095
 - mastoiditis in, 1093-1094
 - otitis media in, 1092-1093, 1092f-1093f
 - recovery from surgery of, 1094b
 - neoplasms in, 1094-1095
- Ear problems (*Continued*)
- prevention of infection or trauma in, 1102b
 - resource agencies for, 1095t
 - teaching for self-management in, 1104
 - trauma in, 1094
- Eardrops, 1089b, 1089f
- Eardrum, 1078-1079, 1078f-1079f
- Early dementia, Alzheimer type, 946
- Early-onset seizure in head injury, 1028
- Earwax impaction, 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
- Earwick, 1089f
- Eaton-Lambert syndrome, 992
- EBP; *See* Evidence-based practice
- EBRT; *See* External beam radiation therapy
- Ecchymosis, 462
- after craniotomy, 1034
 - assessment of, 863
 - in cirrhosis, 1297
 - in fracture, 1149
 - in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
 - intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t
 - in multiple myeloma, 894
 - in pit viper envenomation, 140
- Eccrine sweat gland, 451, 453, 454f
- ECF; *See* Extracellular fluid
- ECG; *See* Electrocardiography
- Echocardiography, 835
- in cardiovascular assessment, 706-707
 - in infective endocarditis, 764
 - pharmacologic stress, 707
 - in sickle cell disease, 873
 - transesophageal, 707
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 707
 - in pulmonary embolism, 664
 - in valvular heart disease, 760
- Echolalia, 942b
- Echothiophate, 1066b-1067b
- Ecotrin; *See* Aspirin
- Ectopic heart rhythms, 740b
- in hyperkalemia, 187
- Ectropion, 1053
- Eczema, 497
- Edema, 167
- in bee sting, 145
 - cardiovascular assessment and, 696
 - cerebral
 - in brain tumor, 1031
 - high altitude, 151
 - in hyponatremia, 181
 - increased intracranial pressure and, 1022
 - in fracture, 1146, 1149
 - in frostbite, 150, 150f
 - in inflammation, 308
 - palpation of, 464t
 - pitting, 178-179, 178f
 - pulmonary
 - after craniotomy, 1035
 - in burn, 522, 525
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1553-1555
 - in Cushing's disease, 1387
 - in heart failure, 755, 755b
 - high altitude, 151
 - in scorpion bite, 144-145
 - in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1381
 - regional anesthesia-associated, 276
 - taut skin in, 462
- Edrophonium chloride in tensilon testing, 992
- Edwards Lifescience PreSep central venous catheter, 218f
- EEG; *See* Electroencephalography
- Efavirenz, 371, 372b-374b
- Efferent arteriole, 1467, 1467f-1468f, 1469t
- Efferent neuron, 906
- Efferent pathway, 910
- Effexor; *See* Venlafaxine
- Effient; *See* Prasugrel
- Effluent, 1282-1283
- Efudex; *See* 5-Fluorouracil
- EGD; *See* Esophagogastroduodenoscopy
- Eicosapentaenoic acid, 833
- Eighteen-lead electrocardiogram, 713
- Ejaculation, retrograde, 1636
- Ejaculatory duct, 1578f
- Ejection fraction, 745
- Elastase, acute pancreatitis and, 1321-1322
- Elastic shoelaces, 100t
- Elastic wrap, 257
- Elastin, 453
- Elavil; *See* Amitriptyline
- Elbow
- fracture of, 1159
 - positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Elbow surgery
- nerve block for, 276f
 - skin preparation for, 255f
 - total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
- Eldepryl; *See* Selegiline
- Elder Assessment Instrument, 25
- Elder neglect and abuse, 25
- Elderly; *See* Older adult
- Elective surgery, 243t
- Electric shock in lightning injury, 146
- Electrical bone stimulation, 1156
- Electrical burn, 518, 519f, 520b
- Electrical stimulation
- for pressure ulcer, 485
 - for urge incontinence, 1505
- Electrocardiograph caliper, 718
- Electrocardiography, 713-718, 713f
- in burn injury, 523
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 705-706
 - complexes, segments, and intervals in, 715-717, 716f
 - continuous electrocardiographic monitoring and, 714-715, 715f
 - in coronary artery disease, 835
 - in heart failure, 750
 - heart rate determination using, 717-718, 717f
 - heart rhythm analysis using, 718
 - in hyperthyroidism, 1396
 - lead systems in, 713-714, 714t
 - in myocardial infarction, 831f
 - preoperative, 248
 - in sickle cell disease, 873
 - in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445
- Electroencephalography
- in Alzheimer's disease, 950
 - in encephalitis, 941
 - in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
 - in neurologic assessment, 922-923, 922b
- Electrolarynges, 593, 594f
- Electro-Larynx, 594f
- Electrolyte imbalances, 180-194
- abnormal values in, 170t
 - after coronary artery bypass graft, 847-848
 - calcium, 187-191
 - hypercalcemia in, 190-191, 190t
 - hypocalcemia in, 188-190, 189f, 189t
 - lactose intolerance and, 188b
 - osteoporosis and, 188b
 - chloride, 194
 - magnesium, 192-194, 193t
 - hypermagnesemia in, 193-194
 - hypomagnesemia in, 193
 - phosphorus, 191-192, 192t
 - hyperphosphatemia in, 192
 - hypophosphatemia in, 191-192, 192b
 - potassium, 183-187
 - hyperkalemia in, 186-187, 186t, 188b
- Electrolyte imbalances (*Continued*)
- hypokalemia in, 183-186, 184t, 185b
 - sodium, 180-183
 - hyponatremia in, 182-183, 182t
 - hyponatremia in, 181-182, 181t
 - in total parenteral nutrition, 1348
 - transfusion-related, 899
 - in tube feeding, 1346-1347
- Electrolyte(s), 166
- in body fluids, 180, 180f
 - kidney role in regulation of, 1468
 - levels in burn assessment, 524b
 - normal plasma electrolyte values for older adult, 170b
 - physiologic influences on, 166-169
 - diffusion in, 167-168, 168f
 - filtration in, 166-169, 167f
 - osmosis in, 168-169, 169f
 - postoperative assessment of, 289
- Electromyography
- in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 984
 - in back pain, 961
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988
 - in musculoskeletal assessment, 1116
 - in myasthenia gravis, 992
 - in neurologic assessment, 922
 - of perineal muscles, 1486
 - in urinary incontinence, 1500
- Electronic health record, 6, 6f
- Electronic infusion device, 222
- Electronic-beam computed tomography scan, 708
- Electronic-mail, 4
- Electronystagmography, 1086
- Electrophysiologic studies
- in cardiovascular assessment, 706
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988
- Electroretinography, 1051
- Electrovaporization of prostate, 1635
- Eletriptan, 930
- Elevation, 1112f
- Elimination pattern
- in acid-base assessment, 204b
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
 - in endocrine assessment, 1366b
 - in fluid and electrolyte assessment, 205b
 - in gastrointestinal assessment, 1182b
 - in renal assessment, 1474b
- Elimite; *See* Permethrin
- ELISA; *See* Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
- Ellence; *See* Epirubicin
- Eloxatin; *See* Oxaliplatin
- Elspar; *See* Asparaginase
- E-mail, 4
- Embolectomy
- in acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 792
 - in pulmonary embolism, 667
 - in stroke, 1014
- Embolic stroke, 1005f, 1006, 1006t
- Embolism
- in acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 791-792
- air
- central venous catheter-related, 231t
 - changing administration set and, 225
- fat
- after lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
 - in fracture, 1146-1147, 1147b
 - yellow marrow and, 1107
- intravenous therapy-related, 230t
- pulmonary, 663-669
- anxiety in, 668
 - bleeding in, 668, 668b
 - drug therapy for, 666b-667b
 - health care resources for, 669, 669b
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b
 - history in, 664
 - home care management in, 668-669

Embolism (Continued)

- hypotension in, 667-668
 - hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b
 - imaging assessment in, 664
 - laboratory assessment in, 664
 - pathophysiology of, 663
 - physical assessment in, 664, 664b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 664
 - surgical management of, 667
 - teaching for self-management in, 669, 669b
 - in stroke, 1005
 - venous thromboembolism, 799-803, 799f, 800b
 - after hip surgery, 324, 325t
 - atrial fibrillation and, 722-727
 - impaired mobility and, 1017
 - in pancreatic cancer, 1329
 - postoperative assessment for, 288
 - preoperative assessment for, 256
- Embolization**
- of arteriovenous malformation, 1016, 1016f
 - of uterine artery, 1618, 1618b
- Embolus, 799**
- Emcyt; See Estramustine**
- Emend; See Aprepitant**
- Emergence from general anesthesia, 271-273**
- Emergency and disaster preparedness, 155-164**
- event resolution and debriefing and, 162-163, 162b
 - hospital incident command system and, 159-160, 160t
 - impact of disasters and, 156-157, 156f-157f
 - mass casualty triage and, 157-158, 157b, 158t
 - notification and activation of
 - emergency plans in, 159
 - personal preparedness and, 161, 161b, 161t
 - psychosocial response of survivors and, 163-164
 - role of nurse in, 163
 - role of nursing in health care facility and, 160-162
 - types of disasters and, 155-156, 156b
- Emergency care**
- in abdominal trauma, 1259
 - in acute adrenal insufficiency, 1382b
 - in acute cardiac tamponade, 766
 - in amputation, 1165
 - in anaphylaxis, 389, 390b
 - in anterior nosebleed, 582b
 - in autonomic dysreflexia, 974b
 - in benzodiazepine overdose, 293b
 - in burn, 520, 520b
 - acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
 - age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
 - airway management in, 525-526
 - carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
 - cardiovascular assessment in, 522-523
 - drug therapy in, 527
 - fluid resuscitation in, 526b-527b, 526t
 - gastrointestinal assessment in, 524
 - history in, 520-521
 - hypovolemic shock and, 526-527
 - imaging assessment in, 524
 - inflammatory compensation and, 517
 - laboratory assessment in, 524, 524b
 - pain management during, 527-529, 528b-529b
 - pulmonary fluid overload in, 522, 522b
 - respiratory assessment in, 521-522, 521b, 521t
 - skin assessment in, 523-524, 523f

Emergency care (Continued)

- surgical management in, 527, 528f
- urinary assessment in, 523
- in chest pain, 836, 836b
- in cholinergic crisis, 994
- emergency nursing concepts in, 121-135
 - case management and, 129
 - considerations for older adults and, 126b
 - core competencies and, 125-127
 - cultural considerations and, 126b, 129b
 - death in emergency department and, 129-130
 - homeless patients and, 130b
 - inpatient unit staff and, 123-124
 - interdisciplinary team collaboration and, 122-124
 - patient and family education and, 129
 - patient disposition and, 128-130, 129b
 - patient safety and, 124-125, 124b-125b
 - physicians and, 123
 - prehospital care providers and, 122-123, 123f
 - special nursing teams and, 122
 - staff safety and, 124, 124b
 - support staff and, 123
 - training and certification in, 127, 127t
 - triage and, 127-128, 128f, 128t
- endotracheal intubation in, 675b
- in environmental emergencies, 136-154
 - altitude-related illnesses in, 150-152, 151b-152b
 - bee and wasp stings in, 145-146
 - black widow spider bite in, 144
 - brown recluse spider bite in, 142-143, 143f
 - drowning in, 152-154
 - frostbite in, 149-150, 150f
 - heat-related illnesses in, 136-139, 137b-139b
 - hypothermia in, 148-149, 149b
 - lightning injuries in, 146-148, 147b
 - scorpion bite in, 144-145, 145f
 - snake bites in, 139-142, 139f, 140b, 141f, 141t
- in fracture, 1150, 1150b
- in malignant hyperthermia, 273b
- in myasthenic crisis, 994
- in myxedema coma, 1403b
- in oncologic emergencies, 430-433
 - hypercalcemia in, 431
 - sepsis and disseminated
 - intravascular coagulation in, 430
 - spinal cord compression in, 431
 - superior vena cava syndrome in, 431-432, 432f
 - syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone in, 430-431
 - tumor lysis syndrome in, 432-433, 432f
- in opioid overdose, 299b
- in priapism, 1649
- in spinal cord tumor, 977
- in sports-related injuries, 1169b
- in status epilepticus, 935-936, 936b
- in surgical wound evisceration, 296b
- in thyroid storm, 1400b
- trauma nursing principles in, 130-134
 - mechanism of injury and, 131-132
 - patient disposition and, 134
 - primary survey and resuscitation
 - interventions and, 132-134, 132b-133b, 132f
 - secondary survey and resuscitation interventions and, 134

Emergency care (Continued)

- trauma centers and, 130-131, 131t
- trauma systems and, 131
- in upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1231, 1231b
 - in ventricular asystole, 730-731, 731b
 - in ventricular fibrillation, 730
- Emergency department, 122-124
- Emergency management plan, 155
- Emergency medical technician, 122-123
- Emergency medicine physician, 123
- Emergency nurse, 123
- Emergency operations center, 159
- Emergency preparedness, 157
- Emergency Severity Index, 128
- Emergent surgery, 243t
- Emergent triage, 127-128, 128t
- Emerging infections, 448t-449t, 449
- Emetogenic drugs, 421
- EMG; *See* Electromyography
- EMLA cream, 59
- Emmetropia, 1042, 1042f
- Emotional abuse of older adult, 25
- Emotional lability
 - after stroke, 1012
 - in hyperthyroidism, 1394b
- Emotional signs of approaching death, 112b
- Emotional stress
 - heart disease and, 834
 - irritable bowel syndrome and, 1241
 - older adult and, 18-19, 19b
- Empyema, 602f, 611-612, 612f
- Emprin; *See* Aspirin
- Empyema, pulmonary, 659-660
- EMT; *See* Emergency medical technician
- Emtricitabine, 371, 372b-374b
- Emtricitabine/tenofovir, 357
- Emtricitabine/tenofovir/efavirenz, 372b-374b
- Emtriva; *See* Emtricitabine
- Enablex; *See* Darifenacin
- Enalapril, 781b-782b, 783
- Enbrel; *See* Etanercept
- Encephalitis, 940-941, 941b
 - in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366
 - West Nile virus in, 941b
- Encephalopathy, hepatic, 1294-1295, 1295t
- Endaural approach to ear, 1102f
- Endocarditis, gonorrhea and, 1661
- Endocardium, 688f
- Endocet; *See* Oxycodone with acetaminophen
- Endochondroma, 1133
- Endocrine assessment, 1358-1370
 - current health problems in, 1367
 - family history and genetic risk in, 1367
 - Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1366b
 - imaging assessment in, 1370
 - laboratory assessment in, 1369-1370, 1369b
 - nutrition history in, 1366-1367
 - patient history in, 1365-1367
 - physical assessment in, 1367-1368, 1368f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1368-1369
- Endocrine disorders
 - in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367, 368t
 - adrenal gland
 - Cushing's disease in, 1384-1385, 1384f, 1385b, 1385t
 - hyperaldosteronism in, 1390
 - hypofunction in, 1381-1382, 1384b
 - pheochromocytoma in, 1390-1391
 - diabetes mellitus in, 1410-1462
 - absence of insulin in, 1412-1413, 1412t
 - atherosclerosis and, 773

Endocrine disorders (Continued)

- blood glucose control in
 - hospitalized patient, 1442-1443
 - blood glucose monitoring in, 1436-1438, 1438f
 - cardiovascular disease and, 1413-1414
 - cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 - cholecystitis and, 1317b
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1416, 1549
 - chronic pancreatitis and, 1326, 1328
 - classification of, 1411, 1411t
 - complications of, 1413
 - concept map for, 1421f-1422f
 - coronary artery disease and, 833
 - cultural considerations in, 1418b
 - diabetic ketoacidosis in, 1454-1456, 1454f, 1455t
 - diabetic nephropathy in, 1416, 1450-1451
 - diabetic neuropathy in, 1415-1416, 1415t, 1446-1447, 1447b
 - differentiation of type 1 and type 2, 1417t
 - drug therapy for, 1421-1438, 1423b-1428b, 1428t
 - effects on vision, 1044
 - endocrine pancreas and, 1411, 1411f
 - exercise therapy in, 1441-1442, 1442b
 - eye and vision complications in, 1414-1415, 1414f, 1415b, 1449-1450
 - focused assessment in, 1461b
 - foot care in, 1445-1446, 1445b, 1446f, 1447t, 1448b, 1448f
 - gestational, 1411t
 - glucose homeostasis and, 1411-1412
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1418
 - history in, 1418-1458
 - home care management in, 1461
 - hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state in, 1457-1458, 1457f
 - hypoglycemia in, 1421-1444, 1421f-1422f, 1451-1454
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1417
 - insulin therapy for, 1430-1438
 - kidney transplant risks in, 1568
 - laboratory assessment in, 1418-1421, 1419b, 1420t
 - male erectile dysfunction in, 1416
 - nephrosclerosis and, 1530
 - neuropathic pain in, 1449
 - nutrition therapy in, 1438-1441, 1440t
 - older adult and, 1440b, 1442b
 - risk for surgical complications and, 1444
 - safety assessment in, 1441-1442
 - screening for, 1420
 - sick-day rules in, 1456b
 - stroke in, 1414
 - surgical management of, 1443-1444
 - teaching for self-management in, 1458-1460, 1461t
 - travel tips for, 1460b
 - type 1, 1416-1417, 1416b
 - type 2, 1417, 1418t-1419t
 - urine tests in, 1420
 - wound care in, 1448-1449
- parathyroid gland**
- hyperparathyroidism and, 1406-1408, 1406t, 1407b
 - hypoparathyroidism and, 1408
- pituitary gland**
- diabetes insipidus in, 1031, 1378-1380, 1378b-1379b

- Endocrine disorders (*Continued*)
- hyperpituitarism and, 1374-1378, 1375f, 1376b
 - hypopituitarism and, 1372-1373, 1373b
 - syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone and, 1380-1381, 1380t
 - tumor in, 1031
 - thyroid, 1393-1406
 - cancer in, 1405-1406
 - hyperthyroidism in, 1393-1394
 - hypothyroidism in, 1400-1401
 - thyroiditis in, 1404-1405
- Endocrine pancreas, 1179, 1364
- diabetes mellitus and, 1411, 1411f
- Endocrine system, 1359-1365
- adrenal glands in, 1362-1363, 1362f, 1362t-1363t
 - age-related changes in fluid balance and, 170b
 - changes associated with aging, 1365, 1365b
 - glands in, 1359, 1359f
 - gonads in, 1361-1362
 - hormones in, 1359, 1359t
 - hypothalamus and pituitary glands in, 1361, 1361f, 1361t
 - manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f
 - negative feedback control mechanism in, 1359-1360, 1360f
 - pancreas in, 1364-1365, 1364f, 1365t
 - parathyroid gland in, 1364, 1364f
 - thyroid gland in, 1363-1364, 1363f, 1363t
- Endodan; *See* Oxycodone with aspirin
- End-of-life care, 106-120
- advance directives and, 107-108
 - cultural preferences in, 110b
 - desired outcomes for, 108
 - DNR orders and, 107-108
 - durable power of attorney for health care and, 108, 109f
 - dyspnea management in, 113-114, 113b
 - euthanasia and, 119, 119t
 - hospice and palliative care in, 108-110, 108b, 118b
 - incidence of death and, 107, 107t
 - nausea and vomiting management in, 114-115
 - pain management in, 112-113, 112b
 - pathophysiology of dying and, 107
 - perception of death and, 106-107
 - physical assessment in, 111, 111b
 - postmortem care and, 118, 118b-119b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 111-112, 112b
 - psychosocial management in, 115-118, 116b, 117f
 - refractory symptoms of distress management in, 115
 - religious death rituals and, 116t
 - restlessness and agitation management in, 115, 115b
 - seizure management in, 115
 - signs and symptoms at end of life, 110-118, 110b
 - weakness management in, 113
- Endogenous osteomyelitis, 1131
- Endoluminal gastroplication, 1208
- Endolymph, 1079
- Endolymphatic decompression, 1097
- Endometrial ablation, 1613
- Endometrial biopsy, 1585-1586
- in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 - in uterine cancer, 1622
- Endometrial cancer, 1621, 1622t
- Endometriosis, 1611-1612, 1612f
- Endometritis, 1659
- Endometrium, 1576f
- Endorphins, 43
- Endoscope, 267, 269f
- Endoscopic carpal tunnel release, 1172
- Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography, 1188
- acute pancreatitis after, 1322
 - in cholecystitis, 1318
 - in cirrhosis, 1299
 - in gallbladder cancer, 1320
 - in pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Endoscopic sclerotherapy for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
- Endoscopic ultrasonography, 1191
- in gastric cancer, 1235
- Endoscopic variceal ligation, 1302
- Endoscopic vessel harvesting, 849
- Endoscopy
- in bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 - in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1208, 1208b
 - in gastrointestinal assessment, 1187-1190
 - in peptic ulcer disease, 1231
 - in reproductive assessment, 1584-1585, 1584f
 - in respiratory assessment, 559, 559b
- Endothelin, heart failure and, 747
- Endothelin receptor antagonists, 348
- Endotoxin, 435
- Endotracheal intubation, 674-675, 674f, 675b-676b
- complications during intraoperative period, 275
 - oral hygiene during, 1193b
 - in upper airway obstruction, 587
- Endotracheal tube, 674-675, 674f
- Endovascular interventions in stroke, 1014
- Endovascular repair of abdominal aortic aneurysm, 795
- Endovascular stent graft, 795
- Endovascular vessel harvesting, 849
- Endoventricular circular patch cardioplasty, 754
- End-stage kidney disease, 1537-1538
- acute kidney injury and, 1538
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1547
 - concept map for, 1553f-1554f
 - cultural considerations in, 1530b
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1416, 1531
 - hemodialysis in, 1558-1564
 - anticoagulation in, 1560
 - complications of, 1563-1564, 1563b
 - dialysis settings in, 1558-1559
 - dialyzable and vasoactive drugs after, 1563t
 - dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 - in hypothermia rewarming, 149
 - nursing care in, 1562, 1563b
 - older adult and, 1563b
 - patient selection for, 1558
 - peritoneal dialysis *versus*, 1558t
 - post-dialysis care and, 1562-1563
 - procedure in, 1559-1560, 1559f-1560f
 - vascular access in, 1560-1562
 - kidney transplantation in, 1567-1571
 - candidate selection criteria in, 1568
 - complications of, 1570, 1570t
 - donors in, 1568, 1568f
 - in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 - immunosuppressive drug therapy in, 1570-1571, 1571b
 - operative procedures in, 1569, 1569f
 - postoperative care in, 1569-1570, 1570b
 - preoperative care in, 1568-1569
 - nephrosclerosis and, 1530
 - older adult and, 1563b
 - peritoneal dialysis in, 1564-1567, 1564t
 - in acute kidney injury, 1545
 - complications in, 1566-1567
 - dialysate additives for, 1564
 - dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 - hemodialysis *versus*, 1558t
- End-stage kidney disease (*Continued*)
- nursing care in, 1567b
 - patient selection for, 1564
 - procedure in, 1564, 1564f
 - types of, 1564-1566, 1565f-1566f
 - polycystic kidney disease and, 1521-1522, 1522b
 - pyelonephritis and, 1525-1526
- End-stage liver failure, 1296
- End-tidal carbon dioxide, 557
- Energy balance, 1335-1336
- Energy conservation
- in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621
 - in heart failure, 754
 - in leukemia, 890, 890b
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 342, 342b
- Enflurane, 274t
- Enfuvirtide, 372b-374b
- ENG; *See* Electronystagmography
- Engraftment in stem cell transplantation, 887
- Enophthalmos, 1046
- Enoxaparin
- after total hip arthroplasty, 327
 - for atrial fibrillation, 727
 - for pulmonary embolism, 666b
 - for venous thromboembolism, 801
- Entacapone, 944
- Entamoeba histolytica*, 1288, 1310
- Enteral nutrition, 1343-1347
- abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting in, 1346
 - in acute pancreatitis, 1325
 - after head and neck surgery, 593
 - complications of, 1345-1347, 1345b
 - in esophageal cancer, 1213
 - fluid and electrolyte imbalances in, 1346-1347
 - in gastric cancer, 1236
 - methods of administration of, 1344-1345, 1344f
 - tube feeding care and maintenance in, 1345b-1346b
 - tube misplacement and dislodgement in, 1346, 1346b
- Enterobacter*
- in cystitis, 1491
 - in prostatitis, 1649
- Enterococcus*, 435
- in liver abscess, 1310
 - in pyelonephritis, 1524
 - vancomycin-resistant, 443
- Enterocutaneous fistula, 1280f, 1282
- Enterocutaneous fistula, 1280f, 1282
- Enterohemorrhagic *Escherichia coli*, 1290
- Enterostomy, 1188
- Enterostomal feeding tube, 1344
- Enterovaginal fistula, 1282
- Enterovesical fistula, 1282
- Enteroviral encephalitis, 940
- Entrapment neuropathies, 1415, 1415t
- Entropion, 1053
- Entry inhibitors, 358-359, 371-375, 372b-374b
- Enucleation
- for corneal laceration, 1072
 - insertion and removal of ocular prosthesis, 1073b
- Envenomation
- bees and wasps, 145-146
 - black widow spider, 144
 - brown recluse spider, 142-143, 143f
 - coral snake, 141-142, 141f
 - pit viper, 140-141, 141t
 - prevention of, 140, 140b
 - scorpion, 144-145, 145f
- Environmental control
- for pain in burn injury, 528
 - standard precautions and, 441t
- Environmental emergencies, 136-154
- altitude-related illnesses in, 150-152, 151b-152b
- Environmental emergencies (*Continued*)
- arthropod bites and stings in, 142-146
 - bees and wasps in, 145-146
 - black widow spider in, 144
 - brown recluse spider in, 142-143, 143f
 - prevention of, 143b
 - scorpion in, 144-145, 145f
 - cold-related, 148-150
 - frostbite in, 149-150, 150f
 - hypothermia in, 148-149, 149b
 - drowning in, 152-154
 - heat-related, 136-139, 137b-139b
 - lightning injuries in, 146-148, 147b
 - snake bites in, 139-142
 - coral snakes and, 141-142, 141f
 - North American pit vipers and, 139f, 140-141, 141t
 - prevention of, 140b
 - Enzymatic d[ac]ebriement in burn injury, 531
 - in pressure ulcer, 483t
- Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
- for genital herpes, 1657
 - for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1228-1229
 - for hepatitis C, 1308
 - for HIV infection, 369
- Enzymes
- in defense against infection, 437
 - pancreatic, 1179
 - salivary, 1192
- Eosinophil, 307, 857t
- in differential white blood cell count, 557b
 - immune function of, 305t
 - values in white blood cell differential count, 307t
- EPA; *See* Eicosapentaenoic acid
- Ephedra, 244t
- Ephedrine sulfate, 390b
- Epidermal growth factor receptor blockers, 428, 429t, 591
- Epidermis, 452f, 453
- changes resulting from burn, 512, 514f
 - changes with aging, 451
 - functions of, 454t
- Epididymectomy, 1650
- Epididymis, 1577, 1578f
- spermatocele and, 1647, 1647f
- Epididymitis, 1649-1650
- Epidural analgesics, 55t-56t, 56-57, 58f, 297
- in spinal fusion, 963
- Epidural anesthesia, 275t
- administration of, 277f
 - postoperative motor and sensory assessment and, 289
- Epidural catheter, 1029t
- Epidural hematoma, 1022-1023, 1023f
- Epidural infusion, 236
- Epidural space, 906
- Epigastric area for auscultation, 700f
- Epigastric pain, 1228
- Epiglottitis, 544f-545f, 545
- Epiglottitis, 643
- Epilepsy, 932-937
- drug therapy for, 933, 933b-934b
 - emergency care in, 935-936, 936b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 933
 - health teaching in, 933-935, 935b
 - older adult and, 932b
 - seizure precautions and management in, 935, 935b-936b
 - surgical management of, 936-937
 - types of seizures and, 932-933
- Epinephrine
- adrenal medulla secretion of, 1362
 - for anaphylaxis, 387, 389-390, 390b
 - for cardiac arrest, 733, 734b
- EpiPen, 387, 388b, 388f
- for bee sting, 146
- Epiphysis, 1107, 1107f
- Epirubicin, 415t-416t

- Epistaxis, 582-583, 582b, 582f
in Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 393
- Epithalamic nucleus, 907f
- Epithelial growth factor receptor, 1214
- Epitympanum, 1078
- Epivir; *See* Lamivudine
- Eplerenone, 781b-782b, 783
- Epoetin alfa, 421, 427t, 1544b
- Epogen; *See* Epoetin alfa
- Epoprostenol, 627
- EPSS; *See* Electrophysiologic studies
- Epstein-Barr virus
cancers associated with, 404t
oral hairy leukoplakia and, 1195
- Eptifibatide
for coronary artery disease, 839
for peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
for venous thromboembolism, 802
- Epizcom; *See* Lamivudine/abacavir
- Equilibrium, 166
- Equilibrium testing, 916
- Erbix; *See* Cetuximab
- ERCP; *See* Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
- Erectile dysfunction, 1642, 1642b
after prostatectomy, 1640
in diabetes mellitus, 1416
- Ergonomically appropriate workstation, 1171
- Ergonomics, 961
- Ergotamine preparations
for cluster headache, 932
for migraine, 930
- Eribulin mesylate, 415t-416t
- Erlotinib, 418t
for brain tumor, 1033
for esophageal cancer, 1214
for oral cancer, 1198
for pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Erosion, 460f-461f
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204
- Eructation
in cholecystitis, 1317
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
in hiatal hernia, 1209
- Erythema, 459t
in anaphylaxis, 388-389
in sunburn, 472
in vulvovaginitis, 1614
- Erythema migrans, 352
- Erythrocyte, 856-857, 857f, 870
- Erythrocyte count, 703
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate, 445
in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
in brain abscess, 1037
in osteoarthritis, 321
in osteomyelitis, 1132
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
in rheumatoid arthritis, 336b
in ulcerative colitis, 1274
- Erythrocytosis, 1532
- Erythromycin
for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
gastritis risk and, 1225
for Lyme disease, 352
- Erythroplakia, 588-589, 1195
- Erythropoiesis, 857
- Erythropoiesis-stimulating agents, 421
- Erythropoietin, 314t, 857, 1471, 1471t, 1557
- Eschar
in brown recluse spider bite, 143, 143f
in pressure ulcer, 480
- Escharotomy, 515, 527, 528f
- Escherichia coli*
in acute sialadenitis, 1200
in Bartholin cyst, 1621
in cystitis, 1491
in epididymitis, 1650
in food poisoning, 1289t, 1290, 1290b
in gastroenteritis, 1270, 1270t
- Escherichia coli* (Continued)
in liver abscess, 1310
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
in prostatitis, 1649
in pyelonephritis, 1524
- Escherichia coli* 0157:H7, 435
- Eskalith; *See* Lithium carbonate
- Esmolol, 723b-726b, 727, 732
- Esomeprazole
for gastric irritation in Cushing's disease, 1388
for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
for peptic ulcer disease, 1229
- Esophageal dilation in esophageal cancer, 1214
- Esophageal manometry, 1205
- Esophageal problems, 1203-1219
diverticula in, 1217-1218
gastroesophageal reflux disease in, 1203-1208
diagnosis of, 1205
drug therapy for, 1206-1208, 1207b
endoscopic therapies for, 1208, 1208b
nonsurgical management of, 1205-1208, 1206b
older adult and, 1205b
pathophysiology of, 1203-1204, 1204t
physical assessment in, 1204-1205, 1204b
surgical management of, 1208
- hiatal hernia in, 1208-1211, 1209b
community-based care in, 1211
health teaching in, 1209b
pathophysiology of, 1208-1209, 1209f
postoperative complications in, 1210b-1211b
surgical management of, 1210-1211, 1210b, 1210f
- trauma in, 1218, 1218t
- tumors in, 1211-1212
diagnosis of, 1213
drug therapy for, 1214
genetic considerations in, 1212b
health care resources for, 1217
history in, 1212
home care management in, 1217
nasogastric tube after surgery and, 1216, 1216b
nutrition considerations in, 1213-1217, 1213b
physical assessment in, 1212, 1213b
postoperative wound management in, 1216, 1216b
psychosocial assessment in, 1212-1213
surgical management of, 1214-1217, 1215f, 1216b
teaching for self-management in, 1217
- Esophageal speech, 593
- Esophageal stent, 1302
- Esophageal stricture, 1204
- Esophageal ultrasonography, 1213
- Esophageal varices
bleeding of, 1302-1303
in cirrhosis, 1294, 1300b
- Esophageal-gastric pain, 696t
- Esophagectomy, 1214, 1216b
- Esophagitis
bisphosphonate-related, 1125
in systemic sclerosis, 348b
- Esophagogastrroduodenoscopy, 1187-1188, 1188f
in cirrhosis, 1299
in esophageal cancer, 1213
in gastric cancer, 1235
in gastritis, 1222
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
- Esophagogastrroduodenoscopy (Continued)
in peptic ulcer disease, 1229, 1231, 1231b
- Esophagogastrrostomy, 1214, 1215f
- Esophagoscopy, 590
- Esophagus, 544f, 1178f, 1179
injury in neck trauma, 588
- ESR; *See* Erythrocyte sedimentation rate
- Essential hypertension, 776-777
- Essential oils, 10
- Esteem system, 1103
- Estracyte; *See* Estramustine
- Estradiol, 1582b
- Estramustine, 415t-416t
- Estriol, 1582b
- Estrogen agonist/antagonists, 1125, 1126b
- Estrogen receptor down-regulators, 1594b
- Estrogen replacement therapy
cardiovascular assessment and, 694
for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for stress incontinence, 1501, 1502b
- Estrogen(s), 1362
for hormonal manipulation of cancer, 425t
laboratory assessment of, 1582b
role in bone growth, 341
- ESWL; *See* Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy
- Etanercept
for psoriasis, 500, 501b
for psoriatic arthritis, 353
for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 340
- Ethambutol, 655, 656b
- Ethical issues
in DNR orders, 107-108
in enteral nutrition, 1343
in euthanasia, 119t
in genetic testing, 76-77
- Ethmoid sinus, 545f
- Ethnicity, 31
- Ethnopharmacology, 35
- Ethosuximide, 934b
- Ethrane; *See* Enflurane
- Etidronate, 1130
- Etomidate, 274t, 276
- Etoposide, 415t-416t, 1640
- Etravirine, 371
- Eulexin; *See* Flutamide
- Euploid, 68
- Euploidy, 398, 402-403
- Eustachian tube, 544f, 545, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Euthanasia, 119, 119t
- Evacuation plan, 156
- EVAP; *See* Electrovaporization of prostate
- Everolimus, 315-316, 418t
- Eversion, 1112f
- Evidence-based practice, 2-3, 79-88
acute pain management in hip fracture, 1161b
definitions of, 79-80
dietary soy intake and breast cancer risk, 1600b
effect of multiple sclerosis on sexual function, 980b
hearing loss among older adults, 1099b
hematopoietic stem cell transplantation nursing, 888b
insulin injection omission, 1432b
manual disimpaction for bowel control in spinal cord injury, 103b
manual turning in mechanical ventilation, 673b
- Evidence-based practice (Continued)
models for implementation of, 83-84
ARCC model in, 83-84
improvement model in, 84-88, 85f, 87t
Iowa model in, 83
Reavy and Tavernier model in, 83, 84t
music therapy for pain in burn injury, 529b
obesity and atrial fibrillation, 727b
older adult participation in cardiac post-acute care programs, 851b
oral hygiene during critical illness, 1193b
osteoporosis underdiagnosis in skilled nursing facilities, 1122b
pain in older adult with dementia, 50b
prediction of nonexertional heat stroke, 138b
preoperative fasting duration and medication instruction, 253b
procalcitonin levels, 824b
process of, 80-83
clinical questions in, 80-81, 81t
critical appraisal and synthesis of evidence in, 82-83
evaluating outcomes in, 83
finding best evidence in, 80-82, 81f, 82t
making and implementing recommendations in, 83
reducing emergency department visits by homeless adults, 130b
reflective activities and depression in older adults, 24b
Reiki intervention in colonoscopy, 1189b
relaxation and music therapy for postoperative pain, 12b
self-management of blood pressure, 785b
sexual expression in bladder cancer, 1515b
skin care products reduction of radiation effects, 414b
smoking cessation in head and neck cancer, 598b
strokes in ethnic groups, 1008b
telehealth in medication regimens in Parkinson disease, 945b
telephone visits in heart failure, 758b
- Evil eye, 36-37
- Evisceration, 291, 291f, 296, 296b
- Evista; *See* Raloxifene
- Evoked potentials, 923
- Ewing's sarcoma, 1134
- Exacerbation
in chronic pancreatitis, 1328b
in multiple sclerosis, 978
in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 343
- Exacerbation therapy in cystic fibrosis, 624
- Exchange system, 1439
- Excisional biopsy, 453
in skin cancer, 504
- Excitability of heart cells, 712
- Excretory urography, 1483t, 1484b
- Exelon; *See* Rivastigmine
- Exenatide, 1423b-1427b, 1429
- Exercise
in asthma, 611
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 619-620
for chronic or postoperative low back pain, 962b
in diabetes mellitus, 1441-1442, 1442b
in fibromyalgia, 354
hypoglycemia and, 1440
obesity and, 1352
older adult and, 17-18, 18f
in osteoarthritis, 331, 332b
in osteoporosis, 1124
in peripheral arterial disease, 787-788

- Exercise (*Continued*)
 postmastectomy, 1603b
 preoperative instructions for
 postoperative procedures and,
 254-258
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 332b
 tolerance changes with aging, 549b
 in urge incontinence, 1505
- Exercise electrocardiography, 706
- Exercise tolerance testing, 706
 after myocardial infarction, 836
 in coronary artery disease, 836
 in peripheral arterial disease, 787
 in respiratory assessment, 558-559
 in valvular heart disease, 760
- Exertional dyspnea, 748
- Exertional heat stroke, 137-138
- Exfoliative psoriasis, 499
- Exocrine pancreas, 1179, 1364
- Exogenous hyperthyroidism, 1394
- Exogenous osteomyelitis, 1131
- Exophthalmos, 1046, 1394, 1395f
- Exotoxin, 435
- Expansion breathing, 256b
- Expectant therapy in prostate cancer,
 1638
- Expedited partner therapy
 in chlamydial infection, 1662
 in gonorrhea, 1661
- Experimental therapy for skin cancer, 505
- Exploratory laparotomy
 in abdominal trauma, 1260
 in appendicitis, 1268
 in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 in peritonitis, 1269
- Exposure
 primary survey and, 133-134, 133b,
 134t
 to radiation, 411, 412f
- Expressive aphasia, 1018, 1018t
- Expressivity of gene, 73
- Extended shoehorn, 100t
- Extended-wear contact lenses, 1070
- Extension, 1112f
- Extension exercises, 962b
- External beam radiation therapy
 in oral cancer, 1197
 in prostate cancer, 1640
 in testicular cancer, 1646
 in uterine cancer, 1623
- External canal of ear, 1078-1079, 1078f
- External catheter for epidural analgesia,
 57
- External disaster, 155
- External ear, 1077-1078, 1078f,
 1082-1083
- External ear problems, 1088-1092
 cerumen or foreign bodies in,
 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
 external otitis in, 1089-1090, 1089b,
 1089f
 furuncle in, 1090
 perichondritis in, 1090
- External enterocutaneous fistula, 1280f
- External fixation of fracture, 1155, 1155f
- External fixator, 1155
- External genitalia of female, 1576
- External hemorrhoids, 1260, 1261f
- External insulin pump, 1434, 1434f
- External otitis, 1089-1090, 1089b, 1089f
- External sphincter muscle, 1472f
- External urethral sphincter, 1472
- Extracapsular hip fracture, 1159-1160,
 1160f
- Extracellular fluid, 166
 bicarbonate and, 199
 dehydration and, 173-174, 174f
 electrolytes in, 180, 180f
 fluid overload and, 178, 178f
 hyperkalemia and, 186
 sodium in, 180
- Extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy,
 1510
 in gallstones, 1318
 in urolithiasis, 1509f
- Extracranial-intracranial bypass, 1016
- Extradural analgesia, 56
- Extrahepatic obstructive jaundice, 1316
- Extramedullary spinal cord tumor, 976
- Extraocular muscles, 1041, 1042f, 1042t
 changes with aging, 1043b
 function testing of, 1047, 1047f
- Extrapulmonary ventilatory failure, 670,
 670t
- Extrapyramidal system, 910
- Extravasation
 during chemotherapy, 417, 417b, 417f
 in intravenous therapy, 211b,
 228t-229t
 vesicant medications and, 216
- Extremities
 cardiovascular assessment and,
 697-698, 698f
 manifestations of nutrient deficiencies
 and, 1341t
 musculoskeletal assessment of, 1112
 nutritional screening assessment and,
 1337b
- Extremity fracture
 care after removal of cast, 1158b
 emergency care of, 1150b
 lower, 1159-1162, 1160f
 upper, 1159-1163
- Extrinsic allergic alveolitis, 629b
- Extrinsic factors, 858, 859f
- Extubation
 accidental, 675
 in mechanical ventilation, 681-682
- Exudate
 in meningitis, 937
 in pressure ulcer, 482t
- Exudate macular degeneration, 1068
- Exudate retinal detachment, 1069
- Eye, 1040-1045
 adrenal medullary hormone
 stimulation of, 1363t
 changes with aging, 1043-1044,
 1043b, 1044f
 donation of, 1059
 external structures of, 1041, 1042f
 facial trauma and, 583
 function of, 1041-1043, 1042f-1043f
 health promotion and maintenance
 of, 1044-1045
 involvement in rheumatoid arthritis,
 335
 layers of, 1040, 1040f
 manifestations of nutrient deficiencies
 and, 1341t
 muscles, nerves, and blood vessels of,
 1041, 1042f, 1042t
 refractive structures and media of,
 1040-1041, 1041f
 using eyedrops and, 1044b, 1050b
- Eye chart, 1046, 1047f
- Eye muscles, 1041, 1042f, 1042t
- Eye patch
 after corneal transplantation, 1059
 after retinal detachment repair, 1069
 application of, 1055b
 for ocular foreign body, 1071
- Eye problems, 1052-1076
 application of eye patch in, 1055b
 cataract in, 1059-1062
 home care management in, 1061,
 1062b, 1062f
 pathophysiology of, 1059-1060,
 1059f, 1060t
 physical assessment in, 1060, 1060f
 surgery for, 1060-1061, 1061f
 conjunctival hemorrhage in, 1056
 conjunctivitis in, 1056
 corneal disorders in, 1057-1059
 activities increasing intraocular
 pressure and, 1059t
 corneal abrasion, ulceration, and
 infection in, 1057
 keratoconus and corneal opacities
 in, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f
 drug therapy for, 1054b
- Eye problems (*Continued*)
 eyelid disorders in, 1052-1056
 blepharitis in, 1053
 chalazion in, 1055-1056
 entropion and ectropion in, 1053
 hordeolum in, 1053-1054
 instillation of ophthalmic ointment
 for, 1053b, 1053f
 glaucoma in, 1062-1067,
 1063f-1064f
 drug therapy for, 1065, 1066b-
 1067b, 1067f
 pathophysiology of, 1062-1067,
 1063t
 physical assessment in, 1063
 in Graves' disease, 1395, 1395f, 1400
 infection in, 1044, 1044b
 keratoconjunctivitis sicca in, 1056
 ocular compress for, 1055b
 ocular melanoma in, 1072-1073,
 1073b
 older adult and, 1065b
 reduced vision in, 1073-1075, 1074b
 refractive errors in, 1070-1071
 retinal disorders in, 1068-1070
 macular degeneration in,
 1068-1069
 retinal holes, tears, and
 detachments in, 1069
 retinitis pigmentosa in, 1069-1070,
 1070b
 trachoma in, 1056
 trauma in, 1071-1072
 contusion in, 1071
 foreign bodies in, 1071, 1072b
 hyphema in, 1071
 lacerations in, 1071-1072
 penetrating injuries in, 1072
 uveitis in, 1068
 vitreous hemorrhage in, 1067-1068
- Eye protection, standard precautions
 and, 441t
- Eyedrops, 1044b, 1050b
 for glaucoma, 1065, 1066b-1067b
 punctal occlusion in instillation of,
 1067f
 Xal-Ease adaptive device for
 self-administering of, 1062f
- Eyeglasses, 1070
- Eyelid, 1041
 eversion of, 456f
- Eyelid disorders, 1052-1056
 blepharitis in, 1053
 chalazion in, 1055-1056
 entropion and ectropion in, 1053
 hordeolum in, 1053-1054
 instillation of ophthalmic ointment
 for, 1053b, 1053f
- Ezetimibe, 775
- F**
- Face shield, 441t
- Face tent, 567-568, 568t
- Facelift, 506, 507t
- Facemask, 565-566, 567f
- Facial expression
 in myasthenia gravis, 991-992
 in Parkinson disease, 943, 943f
- Facial nerve, 912t
 salivary gland tumor and, 1201
- Facial paralysis, 1001-1002
- Facial trauma, 583-584
- Facilitated diffusion, 168
- Facilitated transport, 168
- Facioscapulohumeral dystrophy, 1141t
- Failed back surgery syndrome, 965
- Fallopian tube, 1576f, 1577
- Salpingitis and, 1578-1579
- Falls
 hospitalized older adult and, 26-28
 prevention of, 19-20, 27b
 in dehydration, 176, 176b
 in emergency room, 125, 125b
- False vocal cord, 545f
- Famciclovir
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for viral skin infection, 494
- Familial adenomatous polyposis, 1245b,
 1260
- Family
 cultural aspects of, 33-35
 preoperative anxiety and, 259
- Family history
 of breast cancer, 1592
 of cancer, 407
 in cardiovascular assessment,
 694-695, 695b
 of colorectal cancer, 1255
 in endocrine assessment, 1367
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1182
 in hearing assessment, 1081-1082,
 1081b
 in hematologic assessment, 862
 increased surgical risk and, 244t
 in integumentary assessment, 458
 in musculoskeletal assessment,
 1110-1111
 in neurologic assessment, 913
 of polycystic kidney disease, 1520
 in renal assessment, 1475
 in reproductive assessment, 1579
 in respiratory assessment, 550
 of skin problems, 458
 of testicular cancer, 1643b
 in vision assessment, 1046
- Family tree, 72, 72f
- Famotidine
 for gastric irritation in Cushing's
 disease, 1388
 for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease,
 1206, 1207b
- Famvir; *See* Famciclovir
- FAP; *See* Familial adenomatous
 polyposis
- Far point of vision, 1044
- Farmer's lung, 629b
- Farsightedness, 1042, 1042f
- Fasciulations
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983b
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 tension testing-related, 992-993
- Fasciotomy
 for acute compartment syndrome,
 1157
 for full-thickness burn wound, 515
- Fasigyn; *See* Tinidazole
- Faslodex; *See* Fulvestrant
- FAST; *See* Focused abdominal
 sonography for trauma
- Fasting, preoperative, 252-253, 253b
- Fasting blood glucose, 249b-250b, 1412,
 1419b
- Fasting plasma glucose, 1419
- Fasting total cholesterol, 832
- Fat cell
 adrenal medullary hormone
 stimulation of, 1363t
 effects of insulin on, 1365t
- Fat embolism syndrome
 after lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
 in fracture, 1146-1147, 1147b
 yellow marrow and, 1107
- Fat emulsion, 1347, 1347b
- Fat tissue, 452
- Fatigue
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983
 in anemia, 862
 cardiovascular assessment and, 695
 in chronic and disabling conditions,
 100
 in chronic kidney disease, 1557
 in heart failure, 754-755
 in high altitude pulmonary edema,
 151
 in influenza, 645
 in leukemia, 881
 in lung cancer, 632
 in multiple myeloma, 894

Fatigue (*Continued*)

- in multiple sclerosis, 979
- in pancreatic cancer, 1330
- in pulmonary arterial hypertension, 626
- radiation therapy-related, 413
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335, 342, 342b
- in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
- Fatigue fracture, 1144-1145
- Fatty liver, 1309-1310
- Fatty streak, 773, 773f, 830f
- Faucial tonsil, 544f
- Fc receptor, 311, 311f
- Fear, dying patient and, 114
- Febrile transfusion reaction, 900-901
- Febuxostat, 350
- Fecal immunochemical test, 1185
- Fecal impaction, 1258b
- Fecal occult blood test, 1185, 1247
- Federal Emergency Management Agency, 158
- Feeding tube, 1343-1347
 - abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting in, 1346
 - in acute pancreatitis, 1325
 - after head and neck surgery, 593
 - complications of, 1345-1347, 1345b
 - in esophageal cancer, 1213
 - fluid and electrolyte imbalances in, 1346-1347
 - methods of administration of, 1344-1345, 1344f
 - tube feeding care and maintenance in, 1345b-1346b
 - tube misplacement and dislodgement in, 1346, 1346b
- Felbamate, 934b
- Felbatol; *See* Felbamate
- Felty's syndrome, 335
- Female
 - acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and, 361b
 - autoimmune disorders and, 393b
 - blood cell counts and, 861b
 - breast cancer in, 1591-1597
 - adjuvant therapy for, 1604-1607
 - BRCA1 and BRCA2 gene mutations in, 407, 1579, 1592b
 - breast biopsy in, 1599
 - breast mass assessment and, 1598b
 - breast reconstruction and, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
 - breast self-awareness/self examination and, 1594-1595, 1595f
 - changes in cognitive function in, 424
 - chemotherapy for, 1605-1606, 1606b, 1606t
 - clinical breast examination and, 1595-1597, 1596f
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 1600, 1600b, 1600t
 - coping strategies in, 1599, 1599b
 - cultural considerations in, 1594b, 1597b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1592-1593, 1592b, 1593t
 - health care resources for, 1609
 - health promotion and maintenance and, 1593-1597
 - history in, 1597-1598
 - home care management in, 1607, 1607b-1608b
 - hormonal therapy for, 1606-1607
 - imaging assessment in, 1598-1599
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1593
 - invasive, 1592, 1592f
 - laboratory assessment in, 1598
 - mammography and, 1594
 - in men, 1592
 - metastasis in, 1599-1607
 - noninvasive, 1591-1592

Female (*Continued*)

- options for high-risk women, 1597
- pathophysiology of, 1591-1597
- physical assessment in, 1598
- postmastectomy exercises and, 1603b
- psychosocial assessment in, 1598
- psychosocial support in, 1608-1609
- radiation therapy for, 1605, 1605b
- sites of metastasis in, 401t
- soy intake and risk for, 1600b
- stem cell transplantation for, 1607
- surgical management of, 1600-1607, 1601f-1602f, 1602b
- targeted therapy for, 1606
- teaching for self-management in, 1607-1608, 1608b
- in young women, 1592
- cancer incidence and death and, 402f
- cardiovascular assessment and, 693b, 695b
- gallstones and, 1317b
- gynecologic problems in, 1611-1628
 - Bartholin cyst in, 1620-1621
 - brachytherapy for cancers in, 1623b
 - cervical cancer in, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b
 - cervical polyp in, 1621
 - common gynecology surgeries for, 1619t
 - complications of hysteroscopic surgery and, 1619b
 - dysfunctional uterine bleeding in, 1613
 - endometrial cancer in, 1621, 1622t
 - endometriosis in, 1611-1612, 1612f
 - ovarian cancer in, 1626-1627, 1626t
 - ovarian cyst in, 1617
 - pelvic organ prolapse in, 1615-1617, 1616f
 - postoperative care after hysterectomy and, 1620b
 - toxic shock syndrome in, 1614-1615, 1615b
 - uterine leiomyoma in, 1617-1620, 1617f
 - vulvovaginitis in, 1613-1614, 1614b
- heart disease and, 829b
 - age and, 831b
 - atypical angina and, 834b
 - menopause and, 831b
- hematologic assessment and, 861b
- human immunodeficiency virus transmission and, 362
- menopause and, 831b
- nutrition history and, 1579
- osteoporosis in, 188b, 1120-1127
 - aging adult and, 1109
 - community-based care in, 1125-1127
 - compression fracture of spine in, 1122
 - drug therapy for, 1124-1125, 1125b-1126b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
 - growth hormone deficiency and, 1372
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1122
 - hip fracture and, 1160
 - hypocalcemia and, 190
 - imaging assessment in, 1123-1124
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1121-1122, 1121b-1122b
 - laboratory assessment in, 1123
 - lifestyle changes for, 1124
 - nutrition therapy in, 1124
 - osteomalacia *versus*, 1127t
 - pathophysiology of, 1120-1122, 1120t
 - physical assessment in, 1122, 1123f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1122-1123

Female (*Continued*)

- ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease and, 1273t
- pelvic inflammatory disease in, 1659, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
- receiving recombinant tissue plasminogen activator in stroke and, 1013b
- respiratory assessment and, 548b
- sexually transmitted disease and, 1653b
- sickle cell disease and, 875b
- total body water in, 171b
- urinary tract infection and, 1490t, 1494b
- Female circumcision, 1476
- Female reproductive system, 1576-1577
 - breast in, 1577, 1577f
 - changes with aging, 1579b
 - external genitalia in, 1576
 - Gordon's Functional Health Patterns and, 1580b
 - internal genitalia in, 1576-1577, 1576f
 - physical assessment of, 1580-1581
- Femoral artery aneurysm, 796
- Femoral fracture, 1161
 - osteoporotic, 1122
- Femoral hernia, 1243, 1243f
- Femoral neck fracture, 1160f
- Femoral nerve, 997f
- Femoral pulse, 699f
- FemTone vaginal weights, 1503f
- Fenoldopam, 843b
- Fentanyl, 52, 274t
 - epidural, 56
 - for moderate sedation, 276
 - for pain in traumatic brain injury, 1028
- Ferritin, 858
- Ferrous sulfate, 1544b
- Fesoterodine, 1242
- FESS; *See* Functional endoscopic sinus surgery
- Fetal tissue transplantation in Parkinson disease, 946
- Fetor hepaticus, 1298
- FEV₁; *See* Forced expiratory volume in 1 second
- Fever
 - in dehydration, 176
 - in infection, 444-446, 446b
 - in influenza, 645
 - in pericarditis, 765
 - in pharyngitis, 642
 - in pneumonia, 650t
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335
 - in scorpion bite, 144-145
 - in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 - in strangulated hernia, 1243
 - in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 - in thyroid storm, 1397, 1399
 - in toxic shock syndrome, 1615
- Feverfew, 244t
- FFP; *See* Fresh frozen plasma
- Fiberglass synthetic cast, 1151, 1151f
- Fiberoptic bronchoscopy, 632
- Fiberoptic transducer-tipped catheter, 1029t
- Fibrillation
 - atrial, 722-728, 727b, 727f
 - ventricular, 729-730, 730f
- Fibrin, 856
- Fibrin clot, 858, 860f
- Fibrinogen, 856, 859f, 860t
- Fibrinolysis, 672, 859, 860f
- Fibrinolytics, 861-862
 - for myocardial infarction, 839
 - patient safety and, 668b
 - for pulmonary embolism, 665
 - for stroke, 1013, 1013b
- Fibroadenoma of breast, 1589, 1589t
- Fibroblast, 452
- Fibrocystic breast condition, 1589-1590, 1589t
- Fibrogenic tumor, 1133

- Fibroids, 1613, 1617-1620, 1617f
- Fibromyalgia syndrome, 353-354
- Fibrosarcoma, 1134
- Fibrosis
 - in fibrocystic breast condition, 1589
 - in infiltrating ductal carcinoma, 1592, 1592f
 - in intestinal obstruction, 1254
 - in sarcoidosis, 627
- Fibrotic lung diseases, 627
- Fibrous plaque, 773, 773f
- Fibular fracture, 1155f, 1162
- Field block, 275t
- Filgrastim, 427t
- Filter, 166
 - in infusion therapy, 221
 - in intraspinal infusion, 237
- Filtering microsurgery, 1067
- Filtration, 166-169, 167f
- Financial abuse of older adult, 25
- Finasteride, 1633
- Fine crackles, 555t
- Fine needle aspiration of breast, 1589
- Fine rales, 555t
- Finger
 - clubbing of, 466t, 697, 698f
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616, 616f
 - fracture of, 1159
 - positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Fingolimod, 982
- Fire
 - in health care facility, 156b
 - oxygen therapy-related, 563-564
 - in surgical suite, 266
- Fire risk assessment, 265f
- First aid
 - in bee sting, 145-146
 - in black widow spider bite, 144
 - in brown recluse spider bite, 143
 - in coral snake envenomation, 142
 - in frostbite, 150
 - in heat stroke, 138
 - in high altitude-related illness, 151-152
 - in hypothermia, 148
 - in lightning strike injury, 147
 - in near-drowning, 153
 - in pit viper envenomation, 140
- First heart sound, 690f, 700
- First intention healing, 472, 474f
- First-degree atrioventricular block, 731
- First-degree frostbite, 150
- First-degree sprain, 1173
- Fish oil, 833
- Fissure, 460f-461f
 - anal, 1287-1288
- Fistula
 - after Whipple procedure, 1332
 - anal, 1288
 - arteriovenous, 1560, 1561f, 1562b
 - in Crohn's disease, 1273t, 1280-1283, 1282b, 1283f
 - tracheoesophageal, 572t
 - tracheo-innominate artery, 572t
- Fistula in ano, 1288
- Fixed occlusion in facial trauma, 584
- Flaccid bladder, 101, 102t, 973
- Flaccid bowel, 103t
- Flaccid paralysis
 - in peripheral nerve trauma, 998
 - in stroke, 1009-1011
- Flagyl; *See* Metronidazole
- Flail chest, 683, 683f
- Flamazine; *See* Silver sulfadiazine
- Flame burn, 520b
- FLAMP; *See* Fludarabine
- Flank pain
 - assessment of, 1476
 - in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1522-1523
 - in polycystic kidney disease, 1520
 - in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
 - in urolithiasis, 1508

- Flap
in breast reconstruction, 1604, 1604t
in laryngectomy, 592
in pressure ulcer surgery, 487, 487f
- Flash burn, 518-519
- Flat bone, 1107
- Flat percussion note, 553t
- Flatulence
in cholecystitis, 1317
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
in irritable bowel syndrome, 1241
- Flavoxate, 1503-1504
- Flecainide acetate, 723b-726b
- Flector; *See* Diclofenac
- Flexeril; *See* Cyclobenzaprine hydrochloride
- Flexion, 1112f
- Flexion contracture after lower extremity amputation, 1164
- Flexion exercises, 962b
- Floating rib, 552f
- Flolan; *See* Epoprostenol
- Flomax; *See* Tamsulosin
- Florinef; *See* Fludrocortisone
- Flovent; *See* Fluticasone
- Flow volume curves, 617
- Flowtron DVT calf garment, 258f
- Floxin; *See* Ofloxacin
- Floxuridine, 415t-416t
- Flu, 645
- Fluconazole, 376
- Fludarabine, 415t-416t
- Fludrocortisone, 1383-1384, 1384b
- Fluid and electrolyte imbalances, 165-195
after coronary artery bypass graft, 847-848
after craniotomy, 1035
in appendicitis, 1267b
in ascites, 1302
body fluids and, 169-171, 170b, 170t-171t
electrolyte composition of, 180, 180f
in burn, 516
calcium imbalances in, 187-191
hypercalcemia in, 190-191, 190t
hypocalcemia in, 188-190, 189f, 189t
lactose intolerance and, 188b
osteoporosis and, 188b
chloride imbalances in, 194
in chronic kidney disease, 1553, 1553b
in cirrhosis, 1299-1302, 1300b
in Crohn's disease, 1282b
dehydration in, 173-180, 173b, 173t
adaptive mechanisms to preserve perfusion during, 174f
changes in fluid compartment volumes with, 174f
falls precautions in, 176, 176b
fluid replacement for, 176, 177b, 177t
Gordon's functional health patterns in, 175b
health promotion and maintenance in, 174-175
history in, 175
physical assessment of, 175-176, 176b
in diabetic ketoacidosis, 1455-1456
in diabetic nephropathy, 1451
fluid overload in, 178-180, 178f, 179b
homeostasis and, 166, 166f
hormonal regulation of fluid balance and, 171-172
magnesium imbalances in, 192-194, 193t
hypermagnesemia in, 193-194
hypomagnesemia in, 193
manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f
- Fluid and electrolyte imbalances
(Continued)
phosphorus imbalances in, 191-192, 192t
hyperphosphatemia in, 192
hypophosphatemia in, 191-192, 192b
physiologic influences on fluid and electrolyte balance and, 166-169
diffusion in, 167-168, 168f
filtration in, 166-169, 167f
osmosis in, 168-169, 169f
potassium imbalances in, 183-187
hyperkalemia in, 186-187, 186t, 188b
hypokalemia in, 183-186, 184t, 185b
renin-angiotensin II pathway and, 172-173, 172f
sodium imbalances in, 180-183
hyponatremia in, 182-183, 182t
hyponatremia in, 181-182, 181t
in total parenteral nutrition, 1348
in traumatic brain injury, 1028
in tube feeding, 1346-1347
- Fluid balance, 169-173
body fluids and, 169-171, 170b, 171t
abnormal electrolyte values in, 170t
age-related changes in, 170b
in Cushing's disease, 1386-1388
Gordon's functional health patterns and, 175b
hormonal regulation of, 171-172
kidney role in, 1468
postoperative assessment of, 289
renin-angiotensin II pathway and, 172-173, 172f
- Fluid challenge in acute kidney injury, 1543
- Fluid intake, 171, 171t
after oral surgery, 1199
after prostate surgery, 1636
in chronic kidney disease, 1553b
dying patient and, 113
in myasthenia gravis, 994-995
in sickle cell disease, 874
in urinary tract infection, 1492
in urolithiasis, 1508
- Fluid loss, 171
- Fluid overload, 173t, 178-180, 178f, 179b
in enteral nutrition, 1346
in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1381
- Fluid replacement
in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
in burn, 526, 526b-527b, 526t
in dehydration, 176, 177b, 177t
in diabetic ketoacidosis, 1455
in gastroenteritis, 1271
in hypercalcemia, 191
in hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state, 1458
in hypovolemic shock, 818
in intestinal obstruction, 1256
in peritonitis, 1269
in postanesthesia care unit, 289
in pulmonary embolism, 667
in renal trauma, 1535
in upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1231
- Fluid restriction
in chronic kidney disease, 1553, 1555t
in heart failure, 751
in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380
- Fluid retention
fluid overload and, 179
in hypercortisolism, 1387
in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380
- Fluid shift
in burn injury, 516, 516f
in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380
- Fluid volume deficit
in acute kidney injury, 1541b
after lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
- Flumadine; *See* Rimantadine
- Fluorescein angiography, 1050
- Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test, 1655-1656
- Fluorometholone, 1054b
- Fluor-Op; *See* Fluorometholone
- Fluoroplex; *See* 5-Fluorouracil
- Fluoroquinolones
Achilles tendon rupture and, 1172
for anthrax, 659, 659b
for bacterial infection in cirrhosis, 1302
for cutaneous anthrax, 495
for cyst infection in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
for cystitis, 1494
for diverticular disease, 1285
for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
for gastroenteritis, 1272
interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
for salmonellosis, 1290
for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
venous irritation and, 211b
- Fluothane; *See* Halothane
- 5-Fluorouracil, 415t-416t
for cervical cancer, 1626
for colorectal cancer, 1248
for esophageal cancer, 1214
for liver cancer, 1311
for pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Flurbiprofen, 1054b
- Flushing
of catheter in infusion therapy, 225-226, 225b
of implanted port, 219-220
of peripherally inserted central catheter, 217b
- Flutamide, 1640
- Fluticasone, 607b-608b, 610-611
- Flutter valve mucus clearance device, 620, 620f
- Foam buildups, 100t
- Foam dressing, 486t
- FOBT; *See* Fecal occult blood test
- Focal ischemia, 1415t
- Focal neuropathies in diabetes mellitus, 1415, 1415t
- Focal seizure, 932
- Focused abdominal sonography for trauma, 1259
- Focused assessment
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 379b
in chronic kidney disease, 1571b
in diabetes mellitus, 1461b
in hearing loss, 1099b
in pneumonia, 652b
postoperative, 288b
preoperative, 250b
in seizures, 936b
in sexually transmitted disease, 1655b
in testicular mass, 1644b
in total abdominal hysterectomy, 1620b
in tracheostomy, 576b
in urinary incontinence, 1500b
- Foley catheter
after kidney transplantation, 1569
after urinary stent procedure, 1510
- Folic acid, 1544b
- Folic acid deficiency anemia, 870t, 878
after gastric surgery, 1237
presbycusis and, 1098
- Folk medicine, 36
- Follicle-stimulating hormone, 1361-1362, 1361t
deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
erectile dysfunction and, 1642
overproduction of, 1376b
paraneoplastic syndromes associated with lung cancer and, 631t
serum, 1581-1582, 1582b
- Follicular thyroid cancer, 1405
- Folliculitis, 490-491, 491b
- Folstein's Mini-Mental State Examination, 948, 949f
- Fondaparinux, 327
- Food
anaphylaxis and, 388t
contaminated, 449
preferences for, 1336b
rituals and customs surrounding, 35-36
- Food intake
dying patient and, 113
hypoglycemia and, 1453
in myasthenia gravis, 994-995
- Food intolerance, 36
- Food poisoning, 1270, 1289-1290, 1289t, 1290b
- Foodborne infection, 449
- Foot
arthroplasty of, 331
deformities of, 1138-1139, 1138f-1139f, 1139t
fracture of, 1162
Morton's neuroma of, 1139
plantar fasciitis of, 1139
skin preparation for surgery of, 255f
- Foot care
in diabetes mellitus, 1445-1446, 1445b, 1446f, 1447t, 1448b, 1448f
in peripheral arterial disease, 791b
- Foot drop, 281b
- Footwear for diabetic patient, 1447
- Foradil; *See* Formoterol
- Forane; *See* Isoflurane
- Forced expiratory volume in 1 second, 558t, 605
- Forced vital capacity, 558t, 605
- Forearm
fracture of, 1159
skin preparation for surgery of, 255f
Volkman's contracture of, 1146
- Forearm splint, 1151f
- Forebrain, 907
- Foreign body
in ear, 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
in eye, 1071, 1072b
- Forensic nurse examiner, 122
- Foreskin, penile cancer and, 1648
- Formoterol, 609-610
- Forniceal disruption, 1534, 1534f
- Forleo; *See* Teriparatide
- Fosamax; *See* Alendronate
- Fosamprenavir, 371, 372b-374b
- Fosfomycin, 1495b-1496b
- Fosphenytoin, 934b, 936
- Fourth heart sound, 690f
- Fourth-degree frostbite, 150
- Fovea centralis, 1040, 1040f
- Fraction of inspired oxygen, 563, 566t, 678
- Fracture, 1144-1159
acute compartment syndrome and, 1145-1146, 1146b
ankle, 1162
chest, 1162
chronic complications in, 1147
classification of, 1144-1145, 1144f
community-based care in, 1158-1159
complementary and alternative medicine for, 1154-1155
crush syndrome and, 1146
emergency care of, 1150, 1150b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1147-1148

- Fracture (*Continued*)
 fat embolism syndrome and, 1146-1147, 1147b
 femur, 1161
 foot and toe, 1162
 health care resources for, 1158
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1148
 hip, 1159-1161, 1160f, 1161b
 acute pain management in, 1161b
 long-term use of proton pump inhibitors and, 1206-1208
 older adult and, 1160b
 osteoporotic, 1122
 types of, 1160f
 history in, 1148
 home care management in, 1158
 hypovolemic shock and, 1146
 imaging assessment in, 1150
 improving physical mobility in, 1157-1158, 1158f
 incidence and prevalence of, 1148
 infection and, 1147, 1157, 1157b
 knee, 1161
 laboratory assessment in, 1150
 mandibular, 583
 monitoring for neurovascular compromise, 1156-1157, 1157b
 nasal, 581, 581f
 neurovascular assessment in, 1149b
 nonsurgical management of, 1150-1155, 1151f, 1152b-1153b, 1152t
 osteoporotic, 1121
 pain in, 1150-1156
 pathologic, 1144-1145
 in Cushing's disease, 1388
 metastatic bone cancer and, 1134
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1129
 pelvic, 1162
 physical assessment in, 1148-1149, 1148b
 physical therapy for, 1156
 procedures for nonunion of, 1156
 psychosocial assessment in, 1149
 rib, 682, 1162
 skull, 1021
 stages of bone healing and, 1145, 1145b, 1145f
 surgical management of, 1148-1159, 1155f
 teaching for self-management in, 1158, 1158b
 tibia and fibula, 1162
 traction for, 1153-1154, 1153t, 1154b, 1154f
 upper extremity, 1159-1163
 venous thromboembolism and, 1147
 vertebral, 1162, 1163b
 Fragmented fracture, 1144f
 Fragmin; *See* Dalteparin
 Frameshift mutation, 71-72
 Free hydrogen ions, 196
 acidosis and, 202
 alkalosis and, 207
 Free thyroxine index, 1396b
 Fremitus, 553
 in lung cancer, 632
 in pneumonia, 650
 Frequency, 1474t, 1492
 Frequency of sound, 1085
 Frequency-dysuria syndrome, 1497
 Fresh frozen plasma, 897t, 900
 Friction
 fracture and, 1148
 pressure ulcer and, 475, 476f
 Frontal lobe, 907, 907f, 907t
 Frontal sinus, 544f-545f
 Frostbite, 149-150, 150f
 Frostnip, 149-150
 Fructosamine, 1420
 FSH; *See* Follicle-stimulating hormone
 FUDR; *See* Floxuridine
 Full agonists, 51
 Full-thickness burn, 513t, 514f-515f, 515
 Full-thickness wound, 473
 Fulminant hepatitis, 1306
 Fulvestrant, 1606-1607
 Functional assessment
 of mobility, 1111-1112, 1112f
 in rehabilitation, 94
 Functional endoscopic sinus surgery, 642, 657b
 Functional history in cardiovascular assessment, 696, 697t
 Functional incontinence, 1498t, 1499
 Functional Independence Measure, 94
 Functional magnetic resonance imaging, 921
 Functional mobility, rehabilitation and, 99-100, 100t
 Functional urinary incontinence, 1505-1506
 Fundus
 of stomach, 1179
 uterine, 1576f, 1577
 Fungal infection
 after burn injury, 530, 530t-531t
 in candidiasis, 491b, 493
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366, 366f
 in cystitis, 1491
 oral, 1193, 1193b, 1194f
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
 sexually-transmitted, 1666
 in stomatitis, 1193
 in *Cryptococcus neoformans* meningitis, 937-938
 cultures for, 467
 cutaneous, 491b, 492-493
 in cystitis, 1491
 in osteomyelitis, 1131
 Fungizone; *See* Amphotericin B
 Furacin; *See* Nitrofurazone
 Furofentanyl; *See* Nitrofurantoin
 Furosemide
 for acute kidney injury, 1543
 for ascites, 1300
 for dying patient, 114
 for fluid overload, 179
 for hypernatremia, 183
 for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 for hypertension, 780, 781b-782b
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for pulmonary edema in chronic kidney disease, 1553
 Furuncle, 490-491, 491b, 492f, 1090
 Fusiform aneurysm, 792
 Fusion
 anterior cervical disectomy and, 966, 966b-967b
 cervical, 972
 spinal, 963, 972b
 Fusion inhibitors, 371, 372b-374b
 Fuzeon; *See* Enfuvirtide
 FVC; *See* Forced vital capacity
- G**
 Gabapentin, 934b
 for Bell's palsy, 1002
 for chronic low back pain, 962
 for neuropathic pain, 1449
 for pain management, 58
 for restless legs syndrome, 999
 for trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
 Gabitril; *See* Tiagabine
 Gait assessment, 1111, 1111f
 Gait testing, 916
 Gait training, 97-99, 98b, 98f
 Galactorrhea, 1374
 Gallbladder, 1178f, 1179-1180, 1180f
 Gallbladder cancer, 1320
 Gallop, 700
 Gallstones, 1316-1317
 acute, 1316, 1316f
 chronic, 1316-1317
 diagnosis of, 1318
 Gallstones (*Continued*)
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1317, 1317t
 nonsurgical management of, 1318
 older adult and, 1317b-1318b
 physical assessment in, 1317-1318, 1317b
 surgical management of, 1318-1320, 1319b, 1320t
 women and, 1317b
 Gamma globulin, 312, 336b
 Gamma knife, 1016, 1033, 1033f
 Gamma ray, 411, 411f
 Gamma-aminobutyric acid, 956
 Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase, 1298
 Ganglion, 1138
 Gangrene
 appendicitis-related, 1267
 regional anesthesia-associated, 276
 Gantrisin; *See* Sulfisoxazole
 Gardasil vaccine, 407, 1624, 1659
Gardnerella vaginalis, 1663
 Garlic, 10t
 for elevated serum lipid levels, 833
 potential effects on surgery, 244t
 Gas bloat syndrome, 1211
 Gas exchange, 546
 after burn injury, 525
 combined ventilatory and oxygenation failure and, 670
 in heart failure, 750
 in HIV infection, 375
 Gastrectomy
 in gastric cancer, 1236, 1236f
 in Whipple procedure, 1331
 Gastric acid
 high secretion in duodenal ulcer, 1225
 suppression in peptic ulcer disease, 1231-1232
 Zollinger-Ellison syndrome and, 1234
 Gastric analysis, 1190
 Gastric bypass, 1354, 1354f
 Gastric cancer, 1234-1238
 altered gastrointestinal structure and function in, 409
 chronic gastritis and, 1221
 early *versus* advanced, 1235b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1234, 1234b
 health care resources for, 1238
 home care management in, 1238
 postoperative dumping syndrome and, 1236, 1237t
 surgical management of, 1235-1237, 1236f
 teaching for self-management in, 1238
 Gastric distention, 1204
 Gastric lavage, 1231
 Gastric outlet obstruction, 1227, 1232
 Gastric restriction surgery, 1353
 Gastric surgery, malabsorption syndrome following, 1262
 Gastric ulcer, 1225, 1226f, 1228t
 Gastrinoma, 1233
 Gastritis, 1220-1225
 drug therapy for, 1222, 1223b-1224b, 1225t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1221
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1221-1222, 1222b
 pathophysiology of, 1221
 physical assessment in, 1222, 1222b
 types of, 1221
 Gastroenteritis, 1270-1272, 1270t, 1271b-1272b
 Gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1203-1208
 diagnosis of, 1205
 drug therapy for, 1206-1208, 1207b
 endoscopic therapies for, 1208, 1208b
 esophageal adenocarcinoma and, 1212
 nonsurgical management of, 1205-1208, 1206b
 older adult and, 1205b
 Gastroesophageal reflux disease (*Continued*)
 pathophysiology of, 1203-1204, 1204t
 physical assessment in, 1204-1205, 1204b
 surgical management of, 1208
 as trigger for asthma, 602
 Gastrointestinal assessment, 1177-1191
 in burn, 524
 colonoscopy in, 1189, 1189b-1190b
 current health problems in, 1182
 endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography in, 1188
 endoscopic ultrasonography in, 1191
 endoscopy in, 1187-1190
 esophagogastroduodenoscopy in, 1187-1188, 1188f
 family history and genetic risk in, 1182
 gastric analysis in, 1190
 Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1182b
 imaging assessment in, 1185-1187
 laboratory assessment in, 1184-1185, 1186b
 liver-spleen scan in, 1191
 nutrition history in, 1181-1182, 1181b
 patient history in, 1181
 physical assessment in, 1183-1184, 1183f, 1183t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1184
 in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
 sigmoidoscopy in, 1190
 small bowel capsule endoscopy in, 1188-1189
 in spinal cord injury, 970
 ultrasonography in, 1190
 virtual colonoscopy in, 1189-1190
 Gastrointestinal bleeding
 in Cushing's disease, 1388
 lower
 common causes of, 1247f
 in ulcerative colitis, 1278, 1278b
 upper, 1227b
 common causes of, 1226f
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1230-1232, 1231b
 Gastrointestinal disorders
 biliary, 1315-1334
 cholecystitis in, 1316-1317
 gallbladder cancer in, 1320
 esophageal, 1203-1219
 diverticula in, 1217-1218
 gastroesophageal reflux disease in, 1203-1208; *See also* Gastroesophageal reflux disease
 hiatal hernia in, 1208-1211, 1209b
 trauma in, 1218, 1218t
 tumors in, 1211-1212
 hepatic, 1293-1314
 cirrhosis in, 1293-1296
 fatty liver in, 1309-1310
 hepatitis in, 1305-1307
 liver transplantation in, 1311-1313, 1312b-1313b, 1312t
 osteomalacia associated with, 1127
 trauma in, 1310, 1310b
 inflammatory intestinal, 1266-1292
 anal fissure in, 1287-1288
 anal fistula in, 1288
 anorectal abscess in, 1287, 1287b
 appendicitis in, 1267-1268, 1267b, 1267f
 Crohn's disease in, 1280-1284
 diverticular disease in, 1284-1287, 1284f, 1286b
 food poisoning in, 1289-1290, 1289t, 1290b
 gastroenteritis in, 1270-1272, 1270t, 1271b-1272b
 parasitic infection in, 1288-1289, 1289b

- Gastrointestinal disorders (*Continued*)
- perineal comfort measures in, 1287b
 - peritonitis in, 1268-1270, 1268b-1269b
 - ulcerative colitis in, 1272-1273
- noninflammatory intestinal, 1240-1265
- abdominal trauma in, 1258-1260, 1258b
 - colorectal cancer in, 1245-1246
 - hemorrhoids in, 1260-1262, 1261f
 - herniation in, 1243-1245, 1243f
 - intestinal obstruction in, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
 - intestinal polyps in, 1260, 1260f
 - irritable bowel syndrome in, 1240-1242, 1242b
 - malabsorption syndrome in, 1262-1263, 1263b
- oral cavity, 1192-1202
- acute sialadenitis in, 1200-1201
 - erythroplakia in, 1195
 - leukoplakia in, 1195
 - maintenance of health oral cavity and, 1193b
 - oral cancer in, 1195-1200, 1196b
 - oral care in, 1194b
 - oral hygiene during intubation and, 1193b
 - oral tumors in, 1195-1200
 - post-irradiation sialadenitis in, 1201
 - salivary gland tumors in, 1201
 - stomatitis in, 1193-1195, 1193b-1194b, 1194f
- pancreatic, 1321-1334
- acute pancreatitis in, 1321-1322
 - chronic pancreatitis in, 1326-1328
 - pancreatic abscess in, 1328-1329
 - pancreatic cancer in, 1329-1333
 - pancreatic pseudocyst in, 1329
- stomach, 1220-1239
- gastric cancer in, 1234-1238
 - gastritis in, 1220-1225
 - peptic ulcer disease in, 1225-1227
 - Zollinger-Ellison syndrome in, 1233-1234
- Gastrointestinal system, 1178-1179
- acute leukemia and, 882, 882b
 - adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 - cancer and, 409
 - changes associated with aging, 1180-1181, 1181b
 - changes resulting from burn, 517
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1549, 1551b, 1552
 - complications of immobility and, 99t
 - esophagus in, 1179
 - fluid overload and, 179b
 - function of, 1178-1179
 - hypercalcemia and, 191
 - hyperkalemia and, 187
 - hyperparathyroidism and, 1406
 - hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 - hypocalcemia and, 190
 - hypokalemia and, 184
 - hypomagnesemia and, 193
 - hyponatremia and, 182
 - hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 - large intestine in, 1180
 - liver and gallbladder in, 1179-1180
 - liver dysfunction manifestations and, 1297f
 - nutrient deficiencies and, 1341t
 - nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
 - oral cavity in, 1179
 - pancreas in, 1179, 1180f
 - parathyroid hormone effects on, 1364, 1364f
 - potential complications of surgery and, 286t
- Gastrointestinal system (*Continued*)
- shock manifestations and, 810b
 - side effects of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs and, 50b
 - small intestine in, 1180
 - stomach in, 1179
 - structure of, 1178, 1178f
- Gastrojejunostomy, 1331, 1331f
- Gastroparesis, 1416
- Gastrostomy, 593, 1344-1345
- Gastrostomy tube, 1344f
- Gate control theory of pain, 43, 44f
- Gatifloxacin, 1495b-1496b
- Gaviscon, 1206
- Gay health issues, 33, 33b
- Gaze, six cardinal positions of, 1047, 1047f
- G-CSF; *See* Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor
- Gefitinib, 418t
- for brain tumor, 1033
 - for esophageal cancer, 1214
- Gel pad, 100t
- Gel phenomenon, 334
- Gemcitabine, 415t-416t, 1330
- Gemzar; *See* Gemcitabine
- Gender
- blood cell counts and, 861b
 - cancer incidence and death by, 402f
 - human immunodeficiency virus transmission and, 362
 - urinary tract infection and, 1490t
- Gene, 65
- expressivity of, 73
 - structure and function of, 68-70, 69f
- Gene amplification test for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, 1662
- Gene expression, 70
- Gene mutation, 71-72, 71b
- in alpha₁-antitrypsin deficiency, 613b, 613t
 - in Alzheimer's disease, 947b
 - in breast cancer, 1579, 1592b
 - in cancer, 407
 - in hearing loss, 1081b
 - in prostate cancer, 1637b
- Gene therapy in heart failure, 754
- General anesthesia, 271-275
- administration of, 273, 274t
 - advantages and disadvantages of, 272t
 - complications from, 273-275, 273b
 - gastrointestinal upset after, 290
 - stages of, 271-273, 272t
- General appearance
- cardiovascular assessment and, 697
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 614
 - in Cushing's disease, 1385, 1385b
 - endocrine assessment and, 1367
 - respiratory assessment and, 555
- Generalized osteoporosis, 1120
- Generalized seizure, 932
- Generation time of cell, 397
- Genetic biology, 64-78, 66f
- deoxyribonucleic acid in, 66-68
 - chromosomes and, 68, 68f
 - replication of, 67, 67f
 - structure of, 66-67, 66f-67f
 - essential genetic competencies and, 65t
 - gene expression in, 70
 - gene mutations in, 71-72, 71b
 - gene structure and function in, 68-70, 69f
 - genetic counseling and, 77-78
 - genetic testing and, 74-77, 75t
 - patterns of inheritance in, 72-74, 72f, 73t
 - autosomal dominant, 73
 - autosomal recessive, 74, 74f
 - complex inheritance and familial clustering and, 74
 - sex-linked, 74, 74f
 - protein synthesis in, 70-71, 70f, 70t
- Genetic considerations
- in acute pancreatitis, 1322
 - in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 671-672, 672b
 - in altitude-related illnesses, 151b
 - in Alzheimer's disease, 947b
 - in ankylosing spondylitis, 351b
 - in asthma, 601-603, 601b
 - in cancer, 403-406, 405b, 406t
 - breast, 1592-1593, 1592b, 1593t
 - colorectal, 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b
 - esophageal, 1212b
 - gastric, 1234, 1234b
 - leukemia, 880-881
 - lung, 631, 631b
 - pancreatic, 1329b
 - prostate, 1637b
 - skin, 502-503
 - testicular, 1643b
 - uterine, 1621, 1622t
- in cardiovascular assessment, 694-695, 695b
- in cataracts, 1059
- in chemotherapy, 416b
- in cholecystitis, 1317, 1317t
- in chronic kidney disease, 1549, 1550t
- in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613, 613b, 613t
- in cirrhosis, 1296, 1296t
- in coronary artery disease, 831, 831b, 833b-834b
- in cystic fibrosis, 623b
- in cystitis, 1491-1492
- in diabetes mellitus, 1416-1417, 1416b
- in endocrine assessment, 1367
- in epilepsy, 933
- in gastritis, 1221
- in gastrointestinal assessment, 1182
- in hearing assessment, 1081-1082, 1081b
- in hearing loss, 1098b
- in hematologic assessment, 862
- in hemophilia, 896b
- in human immunodeficiency virus infection, 360b
- in Huntington disease, 956b
- in hypertension, 777, 777t
- in hyperthyroidism, 1394, 1394b
- in integumentary assessment, 458
- in lupus, 344b
- in malignant hyperthermia, 275b
- in Marfan syndrome, 352b
- in multiple sclerosis, 979
- in muscular dystrophy, 1140b
- in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110-1111
- in neurologic assessment, 913
- in obesity, 1350, 1350b
- in osteoarthritis, 319b, 320
- in osteoporosis, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
- in Paget's disease of bone, 1129b
- in Parkinson disease, 942b
- in peptic ulcer disease, 1227
- in polycystic kidney disease, 1519, 1519b, 1520f
- in psoriasis, 498b
- in pulmonary arterial hypertension, 600
- in pyelonephritis, 1524
- in renal assessment, 1475
- in reproductive assessment, 1579
- in respiratory assessment, 550
- in retinitis pigmentosa, 1070b
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 333, 333b
- in sickle cell disease, 871, 871f
- in stroke, 1007
- in ulcerative colitis, 1273
- in urinary incontinence, 1499
- in urolithiasis, 1508, 1508t
- in vision assessment, 1046
- in warfarin therapy, 665b
- Genetic counseling, 76b, 77-78
- Genetic testing, 74-77, 75t, 76b, 405
- Genetic(s), 64
- Gengraf; *See* Cyclosporine
- Genital herpes, 1656-1657, 1657b
- Genital warts, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
- Genitalia
- female, 1576, 1576f
 - male, 1577-1578, 1578f
 - manifestations of endocrine dysfunction and, 1368
- Genitourinary assessment, 970
- Genitourinary surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Genome, 65
- Genomic health care, 64
- Genoptic; *See* Gentamicin
- Genotype, 70
- Gen-Probe, 642
- Gentak Alcomycin; *See* Gentamicin
- Gentamicin
- for burn injury, 534b-535b
 - for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 - for infection prevention in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
- Genu valgum, 1113
- Genu varum, 1113
- GERD; *See* Gastroesophageal reflux disease
- Geriatric Depression Scale-Short Form, 22, 23f
- Geriatric failure to thrive, 17
- Germ cell tumor, 1643, 1643t
- Germline mutation, 71
- Gestational diabetes mellitus, 1411t, 1419-1420
- GFR; *See* Glomerular filtration rate
- GGT; *See* Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase
- Ghon's tubercle, 653
- Ghrelin, 1349
- Giant cell arteritis, 351, 351b
- Giant cell tumor, 1133-1134
- Giardiasis, 1288
- Gilenya; *See* Fingolimod
- Ginkgo biloba, 10t
- Ginseng, 10t, 244t
- Glands, 451, 1359, 1359f
- Glans penis, 1577
- Glasgow Coma Scale
- primary survey and, 133
 - rapid neurologic assessment and, 917, 918f
 - in spinal cord injury, 969
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1020, 1025-1026
- Glatiramer acetate, 980, 982b
- Glaucoma, 1041, 1062-1067, 1063f-1064f
- concept map for, 1063f-1064f
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1414
 - drug therapy for, 1065, 1066b-1067b, 1067f
 - pathophysiology of, 1062-1067, 1063t
 - physical assessment in, 1063
- Gleevec; *See* Imatinib mesylate
- Gliadel; *See* Carmustine
- Glimepiride, 1423b-1427b
- Glipizide, 1423b-1427b
- Global aphasia, 1018t
- Globulins, 200, 856
- Glocovance, 1423b-1427b
- Glomerular filtrate, 1468-1469
- Glomerular filtration, 1468-1469
- Glomerular filtration rate, 1469
- in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 - changes associated with aging, 1472, 1473b
 - in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1547, 1547f, 1556
 - cultural considerations in, 1473b
 - in diabetes mellitus, 1450
 - in diabetic nephropathy, 1531
 - in nephrotic syndrome, 1530
 - RIFLE classification of acute kidney injury and, 1539t

- Glomerulonephritis
acute, 1527, 1527t, 1528b
chronic, 1528-1529
in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
intrarenal acute kidney injury in, 1539
rapidly progressive, 1528
- Glomerulus, 1467, 1467f-1468f, 1469t, 1470f
- Glomus jugulare tumor, 1094
- Glossectomy, 1198
- Glossitis, 877, 877f
- Glossopharyngeal nerve, 912t
- Glottis, 544f-545f, 545
- Gloving, 270, 271f
for infection control, 439, 439b
standard precautions and, 441t
- GLP-1 agonist, 1423b-1427b, 1429
- Glucagon, 1179
for hypoglycemia, 1452-1453
in increase of blood glucose levels, 1412
insulin and, 1411
pancreatic secretion of, 1364
- Glucocorticoids, 1362, 1362t
for rheumatoid arthritis, 340
role in bone growth and metabolism, 1108
for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Gluconeogenesis, 1381, 1412
- Glucophage; *See* Metformin
- Glucosamine, 10t, 323, 323b
- Glucose
adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
burn assessment and, 524b
Cushing's disease and, 1386
homeostasis of, 1411-1412
perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
renal threshold for reabsorption of, 1470
testing in endocrine assessment, 1370
in urine, 1478b, 1480
- Glucose dehydrogenase
pyrroloquinoline quinone, 1437
- Glucose tolerance test, 1419b
- Glucose transport proteins, 1412
- Glucose-dye-oxidoreductase, 1437
- Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
deficiency anemia, 870t, 876
- Glucotrol; *See* Glipizide
- Glucovance, 1430
- Glutamate
Alzheimer's disease and, 952
Huntington disease and, 956
- Glycemic control, 1410-1411
- Glycocalyx, 441
- Glycogenesis, 1412
- Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors, 839, 839b
- Glycosaminoglycans, 1400
- Glycosylated hemoglobin assay, 1370, 1419-1420, 1419b
- Glycosylated serum albumin, 1420
- Glycosylated serum protein, 1420
- Glycosylation, 1420
- Glyset; *See* Miglitol
- GM-CSF; *See* Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor
- Goggles, 441t
- Goiter
classification of, 1395t
in hyperthyroidism, 1394, 1395f
- Goldenseal, 244t
- Goldman's applanation tonometer, 1049, 1049f
- Golimumab
for psoriatic arthritis, 353
for rheumatoid arthritis, 340
- Gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists, 1618
- Gonadotropin(s)
deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
erectile dysfunction and, 1642
overproduction of, 1376b
- Gonads, 1361-1362
- Goniometer, 1111-1112
- Gonioscopy, 1051
- Gonorrhea, 1659-1660, 1660f
- Good death, 107
- Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
- Gordon's Functional Health Patterns
in acid-base assessment, 204b
in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
in dehydration, 175b
in endocrine assessment, 1366b
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1182b
in hearing assessment, 1080b
in hematologic assessment, 861, 861b
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110b
in neurologic assessment, 914b
in renal assessment, 1473, 1474b
in reproductive assessment, 1580b
in respiratory assessment, 550b
in vision assessment, 1045b
- Goserelin
for breast cancer, 1606
for prostate cancer, 1640
for uterine leiomyomas, 1618
- Gout, 349-350, 350f
Paget's disease of bone and, 1130
tophi on pinna in, 1082
- Gowning, 270, 271f, 441t
- Gradient, 166
- Grading of cancer, 401-403, 402t
- Graduated compression stockings, 804
- Graft
arteriovenous, 1561, 1562b
bone, 1156
endovascular stent, 795
in peripheral arterial disease, 789
- Graft occlusion after arterial revascularization, 791b
- Graft rejection
in corneal transplant, 1059
in heart transplant, 770b
in kidney transplant, 1570, 1570t
in pancreas transplant, 1443
- Graft-versus-host disease
in stem cell transplantation, 888, 889f
transfusion-associated, 901
- Granisetron, 423b
- Granulation
in pressure ulcer, 480
in wound healing, 473, 474f
- Granulation tissue, 1145f
- Granulocyte, 306
- Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor, 314t
- Granulocyte transfusion, 900
- Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor, 314t
- Granuloma, 627
- Granuloma inguinale, 1666
- Granulomatous thyroiditis, 1404
- Graves' disease, 1394, 1394b
- Gravity
hydrostatic pressure and, 692
shearing forces and, 475-476
- Gravity drain, 292f
- Gray, 411-412
- Gray matter, 906, 909, 909f
- Greenstick fracture, 1144f
- Grief, 115
- Grieving process, 115-117
- Grommet, 1093, 1093f
- Ground substance, 452
- Growth factor therapy, 421
- Growth factor(s), 314t
- Growth hormone, 1361t
deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
oversecretion of, 1374, 1376b
role in bone growth and metabolism, 1108
- Guaifenesin, 619
- Guanine, 67, 67f
- Guardian, 22
- Guided imagery, 11, 378
- Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987-991, 987b
airway management in, 989, 989b
cardiac dysfunction in, 989
clinical variants of, 988t
communication in, 990
community-based care in, 990-991
drug therapy and plasmapheresis for, 988-989, 989b
immobility in, 989-990
pain in, 990, 990b
pathophysiology of, 987, 987t
psychosocial support in, 990
- Gum disease, 1196
- Gusperimus, 315
- GVHD; *See* Graft-versus-host disease
- Gynecologic examination, 1580-1581
- Gynecologic problems, 1611-1628
benign neoplasms in, 1617-1621
Bartholin cyst in, 1620-1621
ovarian cyst in, 1617
uterine leiomyoma in, 1617-1620, 1617f
cervical polyp in, 1621
common gynecology surgeries for, 1619t
complications of hysteroscopic surgery and, 1619b
dysfunctional uterine bleeding in, 1613
endometriosis in, 1611-1612, 1612f
gynecologic cancers in, 1621
brachytherapy for, 1623b
cervical cancer in, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b
endometrial cancer in, 1621, 1622t
ovarian cancer in, 1626-1627, 1626t
pelvic inflammatory disease in, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
gonorrhea and, 1659
pelvic organ prolapse in, 1615-1617, 1616f
postoperative care after hysterectomy and, 1620b
toxic shock syndrome in, 1614-1615, 1615b
vulvovaginitis in, 1613-1614, 1614b
- Gynecologic surgery
for cervical cancer, 1625-1626
complications of hysteroscopic surgery, 1619b
for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
for endometriosis, 1612
for ovarian cancer, 1627
for pelvic organ prolapse, 1616-1617
skin preparation for, 255f
types of, 1619t
for uterine cancer, 1622
for uterine leiomyomas, 1618-1619
- Gyneomastia, 1591, 1604f
cancer therapy-related, 425
in cirrhosis, 1298
LH-RH agonists and, 1640b
in lung cancer, 631t
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
in testicular cancer, 1643
testosterone therapy-related, 1373
- H**
- HAART; *See* Highly active antiretroviral therapy
- Habit training for urge incontinence, 1504-1505, 1504b-1505b
- HACE; *See* High altitude cerebral edema
- Haemophilus influenzae type B
in meningitis, 938
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
in pink eye, 1056
risk in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
in sinusitis, 641
in tonsillitis, 644
- HAI; *See* Health care-associated infection
- Hair
assessment of, 463
changes with aging, 451, 457f
manifestations of nutrient deficiencies and, 1341t
structure of, 452f, 453, 454f
Hair follicle, 452f, 453
changes resulting from burn, 512
furuncle and, 1090
- Hair loss, 463
chemotherapy-related, 422-424, 633, 884, 1623
- Halaven; *See* Eribulin mesylate
- Haldol; *See* Haloperidol
- Halitosis
in chronic kidney disease, 1549
in esophageal cancer, 1212
Hallux valgus deformity, 1138, 1138f
Halo fixator, 971, 971b, 972f, 975b
Haloperidol, 115
Halothane, 274t
Hammer, 1078, 1078f-1079f
Hammertoe, 1138-1139, 1139f
- Hand
arthroplasty of, 331
Dupuytren's contracture of, 1138
fracture of, 1159
ganglion of, 1138
musculoskeletal assessment of, 1112-1113, 1113f
Raynaud's phenomenon and, 798, 798f
sites for peripheral catheter placement, 215f
- Hand brace for carpal tunnel syndrome, 1172
- Hand hygiene
catheter-related bloodstream infection and, 227
in infection control, 438, 438b
standard precautions and, 441t
- Hand motion acuity, 1047
- Hand surgery
nerve block for, 276f
skin preparation for, 255f
- Hand wall climbing exercise, 1603
- Hand-off communication in emergency care, 123-124
- Hand-off report, postoperative, 285, 285b
- Handwashing, 438
- Hansen's disease, 509
- Hantavirus, 550
- HAPE; *See* High altitude pulmonary edema
- Hard contact lenses, 1070
- Hard palate, 544f, 1179
- Harmonic scalpel, 1261
- Hashimoto's disease, 1404
- Haversian system, 1107, 1107f
- Hawthorn, 244t
- Hay fever, 384-385, 385f, 641
- Hazardous materials training, 156, 156f
- HAZMAT; *See* Hazardous materials training
- hCG; *See* Human chorionic gonadotropin
- HCTZ; *See* Hydrochlorothiazide
- Head
hematologic assessment and, 863
positioning in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Head and neck cancer, 588-589
airway obstruction in, 590-594
anxiety in, 595-596
aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b
etiology of, 589
health care resources for, 597-598
history in, 589
home care management in, 596, 596b

- Head and neck cancer (*Continued*)
 imaging assessment in, 589-590
 incidence and prevalence of, 589
 laboratory assessment in, 589
 pathophysiology of, 588-589
 physical assessment in, 589, 589t
 psychosocial assessment in, 589
 psychosocial support in, 597
 self-concept in, 596
 smoking cessation and, 598b
 speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f
 surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
 teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f
- Head injury, 1020-1024
 determining brain death in, 1027-1028
 drug therapy for, 1028
 etiology of, 1023
 fluid and electrolyte management in, 1028
 health care resources for, 1031
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1024
 health teaching in, 1030-1031, 1030b
 history in, 1024, 1025b
 home care management in, 1030
 imaging assessment in, 1026
 incidence and prevalence of, 1024
 increased intracranial pressure in, 1027, 1027b
 laboratory assessment in, 1026
 minor, 1030b
 nutritional status in, 1028
 physical assessment in, 1024-1026, 1025b
 primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1026
 secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
 sensory, cognitive, and behavioral changes in, 1028-1029
 surgical management of, 1029-1030, 1029t
 types of force in, 1021, 1022f
- Head lice, 496
- Head surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Headache, 928-932, 928b
 after craniotomy, 1035
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 cluster, 931-932
 in coral snake envenomation, 142
 in heat exhaustion, 137
 in hypopituitarism, 1372
 in influenza, 645
 migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 in toxic shock syndrome, 1615
- Headache diary, 928b
- Healing, 291
 bone, 1145, 1145b, 1145f
 delayed, 294-297, 295f, 296b
 diet for, 299
 impaired, 475t
 phases of, 472-473, 473t, 474f
- Health and illness, cultural aspects of, 30-38
 biologic ecology and, 35
 culture and cultural competence in, 31-32, 31f, 31t
 family and workplace issues and, 33-35
 health and health care disparities and, 32
 health care practices and practitioners in, 36-37, 37f
 lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender health in, 33, 33b
 nutrition and, 35-36
 Purnell's domains of culture and, 32-37, 32t, 33b
 spirituality and, 36
- Health care disparities, 32
- Health care facility
 emergency preparedness and response and, 160-162
 fire in, 156b
- Health care personnel
 hospital emergency preparedness and, 159-162, 160t
 post-traumatic stress disorder after critical event and, 162, 162b
 prevention of hepatitis in, 1307b
 transmission of human immunodeficiency virus and, 363, 364b
- Health care practices, 36-37, 37f
- Health care practitioner, 36-37, 37f
- Health care resources
 for acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 380
 after hospital discharge, 300
 for Alzheimer's disease, 955
 for back pain, 965
 for bladder cancer, 1515
 for bone cancer, 1138
 for breast cancer, 1609
 for burn injuries, 539-540
 for cataracts, 1062
 for chronic kidney disease, 1572
 for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 622, 623b
 for cirrhosis, 1304
 for colorectal cancer, 1253-1254
 for coronary artery disease, 853
 for Cushing's disease, 1390
 for dysrhythmias, 741-742
 for ear problems, 1095t, 1104
 for esophageal cancer, 1217
 for fractures, 1158
 for gastric cancer, 1238
 for head and neck cancer, 597-598
 for heart failure, 757-758
 for hypertension, 785
 for hypothyroidism, 1404, 1405b
 for infection, 447
 for intestinal obstruction, 1258
 for leukemia, 890-891
 for malnutrition, 1349
 for multiple sclerosis, 983
 for myasthenia gravis, 996
 for oral cancer, 1200
 for osteoarthritis, 332-333
 for pain management, 62
 for pancreatic cancer, 1333
 for pelvic inflammatory disease, 1666
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1233
 for pneumonia, 652
 for polycystic kidney disease, 1522
 for pressure ulcer, 490
 for prostate cancer, 1641-1642
 for pulmonary embolism, 669, 669b
 for pyelonephritis, 1526
 for rehabilitation, 105
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 343
 for spinal cord injury, 975-976, 976f
 for stroke, 1020
 for traumatic brain injury, 1031
 for tuberculosis, 658
 for ulcerative colitis, 1279-1280
 for urinary incontinence, 1506-1507
 for uterine cancer, 1624
 for valvular heart disease, 763
- Health care-associated infection, 227, 436-438
 after vascular surgery, 795
 central venous catheter and, 232t
 in cystitis, 1491, 1492b
 needleless connector and, 222
 patient safety and, 1492b
 peripherally inserted central catheter and, 216
- Health care-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 442, 442b
- Health perception-health management pattern
 in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
 in hearing assessment, 1080b
 in neurologic assessment, 914b
 in reproductive assessment, 1580b
 in respiratory assessment, 550b
- Health promotion and maintenance
 in acute kidney injury, 1540-1541
 in Alzheimer's disease, 947
 in amputation, 1164-1165
 in amputations, 1164-1165
 in avoiding drowning incidents, 152-153
 in back pain, 960-961, 961b
 in bladder cancer, 1512
 in breast cancer, 1593-1597
 in burns, 519-520
 in cataracts, 1060
 in cervical cancer, 1624-1625
 in chronic kidney disease, 1550, 1550b
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 614
 in cold-related injuries, 148-150
 in colorectal cancer, 1246, 1246b
 in coronary artery disease, 831-853
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 833
 cultural considerations in, 833b
 eliminating tobacco use in, 833
 factors for metabolic syndrome and, 834, 834t
 increasing physical activity in, 833
 prevention of, 832b
 reducing elevated serum lipid levels in, 832
 in cystitis, 1492
 in dehydration, 174-175
 in diabetes mellitus, 1418
 in fractures, 1148
 in gastritis, 1221-1222, 1222b
 in hearing loss, 1098
 in heat-related illnesses, 137, 137b
 in hemorrhoids, 1261
 in herniation, 1243-1244
 in human immunodeficiency virus transmission, 361-370, 362b
 in hypertension, 777
 in hypovolemic shock, 814
 in infection control, 437-440, 437b
 in influenza, 645
 in lightning strike prevention, 147b
 in lung cancer, 631
 nutrition standards for, 1336-1337, 1336b, 1336f, 1336t
 in obesity, 1350, 1351t
 in osteoarthritis, 320
 in osteomalacia, 1128
 in osteoporosis, 1122
 in ovarian cancer, 1626
 in pandemic influenza, 646
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1227
 in pneumonia, 647-648, 648b
 in pressure ulcer, 476-479, 476b
 in prevention of anaphylaxis, 387-388, 388b, 388f
 in prostate cancer, 1637
 in pulmonary embolism, 663-664, 663b
 in repetitive stress injury, 1171, 1171b
 in sepsis and septic shock, 822
 in skin cancer, 503-504, 503b
 in skin infections, 493, 493b
 in snake bite prevention, 140, 140b
 in stroke, 1007, 1007b, 1008t
 in syphilis, 1654-1655, 1655t
 in traumatic brain injury, 1024
 in venous thromboembolism, 799
 in vision, 1044-1045
- Health teaching: *See* Patient and family education
- Health-enhancing behaviors, 16
- Health-protecting behaviors, 16
- Healthy People 2020* objectives, 32
 for heart disease and stroke, 776t
 for heart failure, 748t
 for nutrition and weight status, 1351t
 for sexually transmitted disease, 1655t
- Hearing, 1079, 1080b
- Hearing aid, 1100, 1101b
- Hearing assessment, 1080-1086
 audiometry in, 1085, 1085t
 auditory brainstem-evoked response in, 1086
 balance testing in, 1086
 external ear and mastoid assessment in, 1082-1083
 family history and genetic risk in, 1081-1082, 1081b
 general auditory assessment in, 1084
 Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1080b
 history in, 1080-1082
 imaging assessment in, 1084-1085
 laboratory assessment in, 1084
 otoscopic assessment in, 1083, 1083f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1084
 tympanometry in, 1085-1086
- Hearing loss, 1097-1105
 in acoustic neuroma, 1097
 assistive devices for, 1100
 communication and, 1103-1104, 1103b
 conductive *versus* sensorineural, 1098t
 drug therapy for, 1100
 in external otitis, 1089
 focused assessment in, 1099b
 genetic considerations in, 1098b
 in glomus jugulare tumor, 1094
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1098
 hearing aid for, 1100, 1101b
 history in, 1098-1099
 imaging assessment in, 1100
 incidence among older adults, 1099b
 laboratory assessment in, 1100
 in labyrinthitis, 1096
 in M[g]v[en]i[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 in multiple sclerosis, 979
 in otitis media, 1092
 pathophysiology of, 1097-1098, 1097f
 physical assessment in, 1099-1100
 psychosocial assessment in, 1084, 1100
 stapedectomy for, 1102-1103, 1103f
 totally implanted device for, 1103
 tympanoplasty for, 1101-1102, 1101f-1102f
 in vertigo, 1095
- Heart, 687-690
 adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 changes resulting from burn, 516
 chronic kidney disease and, 1549
 conduction system of, 711-713, 712f
 Cushing's disease and, 1385b, 1386
 function of, 689-690, 690f
 hypermagnesemia and, 193
 hypophosphatemia and, 192
 infusion therapy in older adult and, 233-234
 mechanical properties of, 689-690
 structure of, 687-689, 687f-688f
- Heart block, 731
- Heart disease, 828-853
 activity tolerance and, 840-841, 840b-841b
 cardiac catheterization in, 836
 cardiomyopathy in, 767-770, 767t, 769b, 769f
 cardiopulmonary tissue perfusion in, 837-840, 839b, 840t
 coping with, 841
 drug therapy for chest pain in, 836-837, 838b
 dysrhythmias in, 711-743, 841
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 849

Heart disease (*Continued*)

- atrial fibrillation in, 722-728, 727b, 727f
- atrioventricular blocks in, 731
- automatic external defibrillation for, 738, 738f
- cardiac conduction system and, 711-713, 712f
- cardiopulmonary resuscitation for, 736
- cardioversion for, 737, 737b
- classification of, 720-731
- community-based care, 739-742
- coronary artery bypass grafting for, 739
- in coronary artery disease, 841
- defibrillation for, 737, 737b
- drug therapy for, 723b-726b, 732-733, 734b
- electrocardiography and, 713-718, 713f; *See also* Electrocardiography
- in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 989
- health care resources for, 741-742
- health teaching in, 740-741, 740b-741b
- home care management in, 739-740
- implantable cardioverter/defibrillator for, 739, 742b
- medication errors in, 732b
- normal sinus rhythm and, 718-719, 719f
- older adult and, 740b
- open-chest cardiac massage for, 739
- patient safety in, 731b
- permanent pacemaker insertion for, 738, 739f
- premature atrial complexes in, 721-722
- premature ventricular complexes in, 728, 729f
- radiofrequency catheter ablation for, 738
- sinus, 720-721, 720b, 721f
- sinus bradycardia in, 720-721
- sinus tachycardia in, 720
- supraventricular tachycardia in, 722
- sustained tachydysrhythmias and bradydysrhythmias in, 719b
- temporary pacing for, 733-736, 735f-736f
- terminology in, 719-720
- vagal maneuvers for, 733, 733b
- ventricular asystole in, 730-731
- ventricular fibrillation in, 729-730, 730f
- ventricular tachycardia in, 728-729, 729b, 729f
- electrocardiography in, 835
- emergency care in chest pain and, 836, 836b
- exercise tolerance testing in, 836
- health care resources for, 853
- health promotion and maintenance in, 831-853
 - complementary and alternative medicine in, 833
 - cultural considerations in, 833b
 - eliminating tobacco use in, 833
 - factors for metabolic syndrome and, 834, 834t
 - increasing physical activity in, 833
 - prevention of coronary artery disease in, 832b
 - reducing elevated serum lipid levels in, 832
- health teaching in, 851-852, 852b
- Healthy People 2020* objectives for, 776t
- heart failure in, 745-758, 841-844
 - See also* Heart failure
- history in, 834

Heart disease (*Continued*)

- home care management in, 850-851, 850b-851b
- homeless population and, 32
- imaging assessment in, 835
- increased risk for anesthetic complications and, 243-244
- infective endocarditis in, 763-765, 764b
- laboratory assessment in, 835
- pathophysiology of, 829-831
 - acute coronary syndromes and, 829-831, 830f-831f
- chronic stable angina pectoris and, 829
- etiology and genetic risk in, 831, 831b
- incidence and prevalence in, 831, 831b-832b
- women and, 829b
- pericarditis in, 765, 766b
- physical assessment in, 834-835, 834b-835b
- psychosocial assessment in, 835
- recurrent symptoms in, 844-850
 - cardiac tamponade and, 848b
 - coronary artery bypass graft for, 845-849, 846f-847f, 848b-849b
 - endovascular vessel harvesting and, 849
 - minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass for, 849
 - off-pump coronary artery bypass for, 850
 - percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty for, 844-845, 845b, 845f
 - postpericardiotomy syndrome and, 849
 - robotic heart surgery for, 850
 - stent for, 845, 845f
 - transmyocardial laser revascularization for, 850
- rheumatic carditis in, 766-767
- valvular, 758-763, 759b
 - aortic regurgitation in, 760
 - aortic stenosis in, 759-760
 - drug therapy for, 760-761, 760b
 - health care resources for, 763
 - health teaching in, 762-763, 763b
 - home care management in, 762
 - mitral regurgitation in, 759
 - mitral stenosis in, 758-759, 762b
 - mitral valve prolapse in, 759
 - noninvasive heart valve reparative procedures for, 761, 761b
 - surgical management of, 761-762, 762f
- Heart failure, 745-758
 - after burn injury, 525
 - avoidance of antacids in, 1230
 - cardiac resynchronization therapy for, 754
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
 - classification and staging of, 745
 - compensatory mechanisms in, 745-747, 746f
 - continuous positive airway pressure for, 753-754
 - drug therapy for, 750-754, 751t
 - ACE inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers in, 751, 751b
 - beta-adrenergic blockers in, 753
 - digoxin in, 753, 753b
 - diuretics in, 752, 752b
 - human B-type natriuretic peptides in, 751, 751b
 - inotropic drugs in, 753
 - etiology of, 747, 747t
 - fatigue and weakness in, 754-755
 - gene therapy for, 754
 - health care resources for, 757-758

Heart failure (*Continued*)

- health teaching in, 756-757, 756t, 757b
- Healthy People 2020* objectives for, 748t
- history in, 748
- home care management in, 756, 756b
- imaging assessment in, 750
- improving gas exchange in, 750
- incidence and prevalence of, 747
- in infective endocarditis, 764
- laboratory assessment in, 749-750
- in mitral stenosis, 758
- nutrition therapy for, 751-752
- older adult and, 747b
- physical assessment in, 748-749, 749b
- post-myocardial, 842, 842t
- psychosocial assessment in, 749
- pulmonary edema in, 755, 755b
- in rheumatic carditis, 766
- in sickle cell disease, 872
- surgical management of, 754, 754f
- telephone visits in, 758b
- types of, 745
- Heart murmur, 700-701, 701t
- Heart rate, 689
 - after burn injury, 516
 - cardiac output and, 689
 - determination using electrocardiography, 717-718, 717f
- Heart reduction surgery, 754
- Heart rhythm analysis, 718
- Heart sounds, 288, 690f, 700
- Heart transplantation
 - in cardiomyopathy, 768, 769f
 - critical rescue in, 769b
 - for heart failure, 754
- Heart valve reparative procedures, 761, 761b
- Heart valve replacement procedures, 761-762, 762f
- Heart valve(s), 688, 692b
- Heartburn
 - in gastric cancer, 1235
 - in gastritis, 1222
 - in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204
 - in hiatal hernia, 1209
 - in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
- Heat application
 - for back pain, 962
 - for osteoarthritis pain, 322
 - for pain management, 59-60
 - for rheumatoid arthritis, 341
- Heat exhaustion, 137
- Heat stroke, 137-139, 138b
- Heat-related illnesses, 136-139, 137b-139b
- Heavy metals, nephrotoxicity of, 1540t
- Heberden's node, 320
- Heimlich maneuver, 588f
- Helicobacter pylori*
 - in acute gastritis, 1221
 - gastric cancer risk and, 1234
 - gastroesophageal reflux disease and, 1204
 - in peptic ulcer disease, 1225, 1227
 - serologic testing for, 1228-1229
- Helper/inducer T-cell, 305t, 313, 857t
- Hematemesis
 - in bleeding esophageal varices, 1294
 - in gastritis, 1222
 - in peptic ulcer disease, 1226-1227
- Hematochezia, 1246
- Hematocrit, 865b
 - in anemia, 870
 - in burn assessment, 524b
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 - in colorectal cancer, 1247
 - in diverticular disease, 1285
 - in gastric cancer, 1235
 - in heart failure, 749-750
 - in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 - in kidney disease, 1542b

Hematocrit (*Continued*)

- in malnutrition, 1342
- in peptic ulcer disease, 1229
- perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 - in respiratory assessment, 557b
- Hematogenous osteomyelitis, 1131
- Hematogenous tuberculosis, 653
- Hematologic assessment, 855-868
 - bone marrow aspiration and biopsy in, 866-867
 - current health problems in, 862
 - family history and genetic risks in, 862
 - Gordon's functional health patterns and, 861b
 - history in, 861-862
 - imaging assessment in, 866
 - laboratory assessment in, 864-866, 865b
 - nutrition status in, 862
 - older adult and, 861b
 - physical assessment in, 862-864, 863b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 864
 - women's health considerations in, 861b
- Hematologic disorders, 869-901
 - coagulation disorders in, 895-897
 - autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura in, 895-896
 - hemophilia in, 896, 896b, 897t
 - heparin-induced thrombocytopenia in, 896-897
 - thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura in, 896
 - leukemia in, 880-892
 - conserving energy in, 890, 890b
 - drug therapy for, 883-884
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 880-881
 - health care resources for, 890-891
 - hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for, 884-889
 - history in, 881-882
 - home care management in, 890, 891b
 - imaging assessment in, 883
 - incidence and prevalence of, 881
 - infection prevention in, 883-889, 883b
 - laboratory assessment in, 882-883, 882f
 - pathophysiology of, 880-892
 - physical assessment, 882, 882b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 882
 - psychosocial preparation for, 891
 - risk for bleeding in, 892b
 - teaching for self-management in, 890-891, 891b
 - malignant lymphomas in, 892-895
 - Hodgkin's lymphoma in, 892-893, 893t
 - multiple myeloma in, 894-895
 - non-Hodgkin lymphoma in, 893-894
- red blood cell disorders in, 870-901
 - anemia in, 870-878; *See also* Anemia
 - aplastic anemia in, 878
 - folic acid deficiency anemia in, 878
 - glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency anemia in, 876
 - iron deficiency anemia in, 876-877, 877b
 - myelodysplastic syndromes in, 879-895
 - polycythemia in, 878-879, 879b
 - sickle cell disease in, 870-878; *See also* Sickle cell disease
 - vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia in, 877-878, 877f
- transfusion therapy in, 897-900
 - acute transfusion reactions in, 900-901

- Hematologic disorders (Continued)**
autologous, 901
blood administration setup for, 899f
cryoprecipitate, 900
indication for, 897t
older adult and, 899b
plasma, 900
platelet, 900, 900b
pretransfusion responsibilities in, 897-898, 898b
red blood cell, 899-900, 899t
white blood cell, 900

Hematologic system, 856-860, 856f
accessory organs of blood formation in, 858
anti-clotting forces in, 859-860, 860f
blood in, 856-858, 857f, 857t
bone marrow in, 856, 856f
changes associated with aging, 860
chronic kidney disease and, 1549, 1551-1552, 1551b
drugs impairing function of, 862t
hemostasis and, 858-859, 859f, 860t
manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f
manifestations of nutrient deficiencies and, 1341t

Hematoma
bone healing and, 1145f
intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t

Hematopoiesis, 1107
cancer and, 409

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation
in aplastic anemia, 878
conditioning regimen in, 886-887, 887f
engraftment in, 887
evidence-based practice in, 888b
in leukemia, 884-889
in myelodysplastic syndromes, 880
prevention of complications in, 887-889
in sickle cell disease, 875

Hematuria
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
after kidney biopsy, 1487
after pancreas transplantation, 1444
assessment of, 863
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
in cervical cancer, 1625
in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
in prostate cancer, 1637
in urinary tract infection, 1493
in urolithiasis, 1508-1509

Hemianopsia, 1011, 1012f

Hemiarthroplasty, 331

Hemilaryngectomy, 591t

Hemiparesis, 1009

Hemiplegia, 1009

Hemoconcentration, 176
in burn, 516
in diabetes mellitus, 1412-1413

Hemodialysis
in acute kidney injury, 1545, 1545f
in chronic kidney disease, 1558-1564
anticoagulation in, 1560
complications of, 1563-1564, 1563b
dialysis settings in, 1558-1559
dialyzable and vasoactive drugs after, 1563t
nursing care in, 1562, 1563b
older adult and, 1563b
patient selection for, 1558
peritoneal dialysis *versus*, 1558t
post-dialysis care and, 1562-1563
procedure in, 1559-1560, 1559f-1560f
vascular access in, 1560-1562
dietary restrictions in, 1555t
in hypothermia rewarming, 149
patient and family education in, 1572

Hemodialysis catheter, 220

Hemodialysis circuit, 1559f

Hemodialysis machine, 1560f

Hemodilution, 179

Hemodynamic monitoring
in abdominal trauma, 1259
in cardiovascular assessment, 708-710, 708b, 709f

Hemoglobin
as buffer, 200
in burn assessment, 524b
in cardiovascular assessment, 703
in colorectal cancer, 1247
in diverticular disease, 1285
in heart failure, 749-750
in hypovolemic shock, 817b
in kidney disease, 1542b
laboratory profile of, 865b
in malnutrition, 1342
oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve and, 547-548, 547f
in peptic ulcer disease, 1229
perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
pulse oximetry and, 556
red blood cell production of, 857

Hemoglobin A, 870

Hemoglobin A_{1c}, 1370, 1413, 1419, 1419b, 1420t

Hemoglobin electrophoresis, 864, 865b

Hemoglobin S, 870-871

Hemolytic anemia
in brown recluse spider bite, 143
in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, 876
in sickle cell disease, 871

Hemolytic jaundice, 1295t

Hemolytic transfusion reaction, 901

Hemophilia, 896, 896b, 897t

Hemoptysis
in laryngeal trauma, 586
in pulmonary embolism, 664
respiratory assessment and, 551

Hemorrhage
brain herniation and, 1022-1023
conjunctival, 1056
in diverticular disease, 1284-1285
in epistaxis, 582-583, 582b, 582f
of esophageal varices, 1294, 1302-1303
in gastritis, 1222
in hemodialysis vascular access, 1562t
in hemothorax, 684
in peptic ulcer disease, 1226-1227, 1226f
postoperative
in amputation, 1164
in coronary artery bypass graft, 848b
in glaucoma surgery, 1067
in kidney biopsy, 1487
in laryngectomy, 592
in nephrectomy, 1533
in pancreatic cancer, 1332
in total hip arthroplasty, 325t, 327
prevention during chemotherapy, 422b
in pulmonary embolism, 668, 668b-669b
risk in leukemia, 889, 892b
in spinal cord injury, 969
in stress ulcer, 1226
during thyroid surgery, 1399
tracheostomy-related, 572
in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
vitreous, 1067-1068

Hemorrhagic stroke, 1005f, 1006-1007, 1006t

Hemorrhoidectomy, 1261

Hemorrhoids, 1260-1262, 1261f

Hemostasis, 858-859, 859f, 860t

Hemothorax, 231t, 684

Hemovac drain, 292f, 295

HEPA respirator, 657, 657f

Heparin
after total hip arthroplasty, 327
for anticoagulation in hemodialysis, 1560, 1564
for atrial fibrillation, 727
interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, 844
for pulmonary embolism, 665, 665b-666b

Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, 800, 896-897

Hepatic abscess, 1288-1289, 1310

Hepatic arterial infusion, 1311

Hepatic artery embolization, 1311

Hepatic disorders, 1293-1314
cirrhosis in, 1293-1296
ascites and esophageal varices in, 1294, 1300b
biliary obstruction in, 1294-1295
bleeding episodes in, 1302-1303
community-based care in, 1303-1305
concept map for, 1299f-1301f
etiology and genetic risk in, 1296, 1296t
health care resources for, 1304
hepatic encephalopathy in, 1294-1295, 1295t
hepatorenal syndrome in, 1295-1296
history in, 1296
home care management in, 1303-1304
imaging assessment in, 1299
incidence and prevalence of, 1296
jaundice in, 1294-1295, 1295t, 1300b
laboratory assessment in, 1298-1299, 1299t
management of excess fluid volume in, 1299-1302, 1300b
pathophysiology of, 1294-1296
physical assessment in, 1296-1298, 1297f
portal hypertension in, 1294
psychosocial assessment in, 1298
spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in, 1295, 1300
teaching for self-management in, 1304, 1304b
fatty liver in, 1309-1310
hepatitis in, 1305-1307
cancers associated with, 404t
classification and etiologies of, 1305-1306, 1305t
community-based care in, 1309, 1309b
complications of, 1306
history in, 1307
incidence and prevalence of, 1306
laboratory assessment in, 1308
liver biopsy in, 1308
physical assessment in, 1307
prevention in health care workers, 1307b
prevention of, 1307b
psychosocial assessment in, 1308
vaccination for, 1306-1307
liver transplantation in, 1311-1313, 1312b-1313b, 1312t
osteomalacia associated with, 1127
trauma to liver in, 1310, 1310b

Hepatic duct, 1180f

Hepatic encephalopathy, 1294-1295, 1295t

Hepatitis, 1305-1307
cancers associated with, 404t
classification and etiologies of, 1305-1306, 1305t
community-based care in, 1309, 1309b
complications of, 1306
health care worker and, 1307b

Hepatitis (Continued)
history in, 1307
incidence and prevalence of, 1306
laboratory assessment in, 1308
liver biopsy in, 1308
physical assessment in, 1307
prevention of, 1307b
psychosocial assessment in, 1308
vaccination for, 1306-1307

Hepatitis A, 1305, 1305t, 1308

Hepatitis B, 1305-1306
cancers associated with, 404t
in chronic kidney disease, 1563
cirrhosis in, 1296
laboratory assessment in, 1308
risk for liver cancer and, 1311

Hepatitis C, 1306
cancers associated with, 404t
in chronic kidney disease, 1563
cirrhosis and liver failure in, 1296
combination drug therapy for, 1309
laboratory assessment in, 1308
risk for liver cancer and, 1311

Hepatitis carrier, 1306

- Hiatal hernia, 1208-1211, 1209b
community-based care in, 1211
health teaching in, 1209b
pathophysiology of, 1208-1209, 1209f
postoperative complications in, 1210b-1211b
surgical management of, 1210-1211, 1210b, 1210f
- Hiccups
in chronic kidney disease, 1549
in esophageal cancer, 1212
- High altitude cerebral edema, 151
- High altitude disease, 150
- High altitude illnesses, 150-152
- High altitude pulmonary edema, 151
- High-alert drug, 1015
insulin as, 1435-1436
- High-density lipoproteins, 702, 702b
atherosclerosis and, 774
coronary artery disease and, 832
- High-dose rate implant radiation, 412-413
- High-efficiency particulate air respirator, 657, 657f
- Higher intellectual functions assessment, 915
- High-fiber diet
in diabetes mellitus, 1439
in diverticular disease, 1286
- High-flow oxygen delivery systems, 566-568, 568f, 568t
- Highly active antiretroviral therapy, 370, 371b
- Highly selective direct thrombin inhibitors, 800-801
- Highly sensitive C-reactive protein, 703
- High-output heart failure, 745
- High-pitched rales, 555t
- High-pressure alarm, 680t
- High-sensitivity C-reactive protein
in osteoarthritis, 321
in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
- HILEP; *See* Holmium enucleation of prostate
- Hilum, renal, 1466, 1467f
- Hinge joint, 1108-1109
- Hip
fracture of, 1159-1161, 1160f, 1161b
acute pain management in, 1161b
long-term use of proton pump inhibitors and, 1206-1208
older adult and, 1160b
osteoporotic, 1122
types of, 1160f
positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
skin preparation for surgery of, 255f
total hip arthroplasty and, 324-329
bleeding and anemia after, 327
infection prevention after, 327
mobility and activity after, 328, 328b
neurovascular compromise after, 327-328, 328b
older adult and, 326b
pain management after, 328
postoperative care in, 325-329, 325t
preoperative care in, 324
prevention of hip dislocation after, 325-326, 326f
self-management after, 327b, 328-329
venous thromboembolism after, 326-327
- Hip prosthesis, 1160f
- Hirsutism, 463
in Cushing's disease, 1385
endocrine dysfunction and, 1368
- Histamine, 384, 385f
- Histamine₂-receptor antagonists
for gastric irritation in Cushing's disease, 1388
for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
- Histamine₁-receptor antagonists
(*Continued*)
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for peptic ulcer disease, 1230
- Histoplasmosis, 366, 550
- History
in acidosis, 204
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 365
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1527
in acute kidney injury, 1541
in acute pancreatitis, 1322-1323
in adrenal insufficiency, 1382
in allergic rhinitis, 385
in Alzheimer's disease, 947-948, 948t
in asthma, 603
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630, 1631f-1632f
in breast cancer, 1597-1598
in burn, 520-521
in cardiovascular assessment, 692-696
in cataracts, 1060
in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
in chronic kidney disease, 1550-1551
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 614
in cirrhosis, 1296
in colorectal cancer, 1246
in coronary artery disease, 834
in Cushing's disease, 1385
in dehydration, 175
in diabetes mellitus, 1418-1458
in endocrine assessment, 1365-1367
in esophageal cancer, 1212
in fracture, 1148
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1181
in head and neck cancer, 589
in hearing assessment, 1080-1082
in hearing loss, 1098-1099
in heart failure, 748
in hepatitis, 1307
in hypertension, 777-778
in hyperthyroidism, 1394-1395, 1395f
in hypothyroidism, 1402
in hypovolemic shock, 814-816
increased surgical risk and, 244t
in infection, 444
in integumentary assessment, 454-458, 458b
in intestinal obstruction, 1255
intraoperative care and, 277-279
in leukemia, 881-882
in lung cancer, 631-638, 631t
in malnutrition, 1341
in multiple sclerosis, 979
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110-1111
in osteoarthritis, 320
of pain, 46
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
in peptic ulcer disease, 1227-1228
before plastic surgery, 505
in pneumonia, 648
in polycystic kidney disease, 1520
postoperative plan of care and, 285
preoperative, 242-246
in pressure ulcer, 479
in prostate cancer, 1637
in psoriasis, 499
in pulmonary embolism, 664
in pyelonephritis, 1524-1525
in rehabilitation, 92
in renal assessment, 1473-1475, 1474b
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532-1533
in reproductive assessment, 1578-1580, 1580b
in respiratory assessment, 548-551
in sepsis, 823
in sickle cell disease, 872-873
in skin infection, 493-494
in spinal cord injury, 968-969
in stroke, 1008
in traumatic brain injury, 1024, 1025b
in tuberculosis, 654
- History (*Continued*)
in ulcerative colitis, 1273
in urinary incontinence, 1499-1500, 1500b
in vision assessment, 1045-1046, 1045b, 1045t
- HIT; *See* Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia
- HIV; *See* Human immunodeficiency virus infection
- HIV-associated dementia complex, 368
- Hives, 472
in anaphylaxis, 388-389
in serum sickness, 141
- HLAs; *See* Human leukocyte antigens
- HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, 775, 775b, 775t
- H5N1 avian virus, 646
- HNPCC; *See* Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer
- Hoarseness
radiation therapy-related, 590
in vocal cord nodules and polyps, 585
in vocal cord paralysis, 585
- Hodgkin's lymphoma, 367, 892-893, 893t
- Holding area nurse, 264
- Holiday heart syndrome, 722
- Holistic care, 8
- Holmium enucleation of prostate, 1635
- Home care agency, 300
- Home care management
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 378-379, 379b
after hypophysectomy, 1377b
after rehabilitation, 104
in Alzheimer's disease, 954-955
in amputation, 1168b
in back pain, 964-965
in bone cancer, 1137
in breast cancer, 1607, 1607b-1608b
in burn injury, 539
in cataracts, 1061, 1062b, 1062f
in chronic kidney disease, 1571-1572
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 622
in cirrhosis, 1303-1304
in colorectal cancer, 1252
in coronary artery disease, 850-851, 850b-851b
in Cushing's disease, 1389
in diabetes mellitus, 1453b, 1461
in dysrhythmias, 739-740
in ear problems, 1104
in esophageal cancer, 1217
in fracture, 1158
in gastric cancer, 1238
in head and neck cancer, 596, 596b
in heart failure, 756, 756b
in hypertension, 784, 785b
in hypothyroidism, 1404
in infection, 447
in intestinal obstruction, 1258
in leukemia, 890, 891b
in malnutrition, 1348
in multiple sclerosis, 983
in myasthenia gravis, 996
in oral cancer, 1199, 1200b
in osteoarthritis, 332
in oxygen therapy, 569-570, 570f
in pain, 61
in pancreatic cancer, 1333
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1665
in peptic ulcer disease, 1233, 1233b
in peripheral arterial disease, 791b
in pneumonia, 652, 652b
postoperative, 299
in pressure ulcer, 488-489, 490b
in prostate cancer, 1641
in pulmonary embolism, 668-669
in pyelonephritis, 1526
in rheumatoid arthritis, 342, 342f
in sepsis, 826, 826b
in spinal cord injury, 974
in stroke, 1019
- Home care management (*Continued*)
in thyroid dysfunction, 1405b
in traumatic brain injury, 1030
in tuberculosis, 657
in ulcerative colitis, 1278, 1280b
in urinary incontinence, 1506
in uterine cancer, 1623
in valvular heart disease, 762
- Home hospice symptom relief kit, 118b
- Home infusion therapy for pain management, 61
- Home oxygen therapy, 569, 570f
in pulmonary fibrosis, 628
- Homeless patient, emergency care for, 130b
- Homelessness, 32-33, 33b
- Homeopath, 8-9
- Homeostasis, 166, 166f, 1359
glucose, 1411-1412
skin role in, 454t
- Homeostatic mechanisms, 166
- Homocysteine, 702-703, 834
- Homograft, 532
- Homonymous hemianopsia, 1011, 1012f
- Hook and loop fastener, 100t
- Hope, dying patient and, 117
- Hordeolum, 1053-1054
- Hormone antagonists, 425, 425t
- Hormone replacement therapy
cardiovascular assessment and, 694
for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
fibrocystic breast condition and, 1589
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for stress incontinence, 1501, 1502b
- Hormone therapy
for breast cancer, 1606-1607, 1606t
for cancer, 424-425, 425t
for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
for prostate cancer, 1640, 1640b
- Hormone(s), 1359
adrenal, 1359t, 1362t
in bone growth and metabolism, 1108
counterregulatory, 1412
incretin, 1412
natriuretic, 1471t
negative feedback control mechanism of, 1359-1360, 1360f
pituitary, 1361, 1361t
in regulation of fluid balance, 171-172
renal, 1470-1471, 1471t
sex, 1362, 1372
- Horny layer of epidermis, 452f, 453
- Hospice care, 108-110, 108b, 118b, 638
- Hospital Emergency preparedness, 159-162
- Hospital incident command system, 159-160, 160t
- Hospital incident commander, 159-160, 160t
- Hospital-acquired infection
emergency care and, 125
health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
infection control and, 437-438, 437b
- Hospital-acquired pneumonia, 647, 647t
- Hospitalist, 3
- Host factors in infection, 435, 435t
- HPV; *See* Human papilloma virus
- HSCT; *See* Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation
- HSV; *See* Herpes simplex virus
- Huber implanted port, 219
- Human B-type natriuretic peptides, 751
- Human chorionic gonadotropin, 1664
- Human immunodeficiency virus
genotype test, 369b
- Human immunodeficiency virus
infection, 358-380
antibody tests in, 368-369
classification of, 360, 360t
community-based care in, 378-380

- Human immunodeficiency virus infection (*Continued*)
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
 confusion in, 377-378
 diarrhea in, 376-377
 drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
 endocrine complications in, 367, 368b
 genetic considerations in, 360b
 health care resources for, 380
 history in, 365
 HIV genotype test in, 369b
 home care management in, 378-379, 379b
 immune enhancement for, 375
 incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
 infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
 infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
 key features of, 365b
 lymphocyte counts in, 368
 malignancies in, 367, 367f
 nutrition and, 376
 older adult and, 361b, 375b
 opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
 oral disorders in, 1193
 oral hairy leukoplakia in, 1195
 oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
 pain management in, 376
 parenteral transmission of, 362-363
 perinatal transmission of, 363
 postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
 progression of, 361
 psychosocial assessment in, 368
 psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
 risk in hemodialysis, 1563-1564
 self-esteem and, 378
 sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
 skin integrity and, 377
 social contact and, 378
 teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
 testing for, 363-364, 364b
 transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
 viral load testing in, 369
 women and, 361b
- Human immunodeficiency virus testing, 363-364, 364b, 1582
- Human leukocyte antigens, 303, 303f, 336b
- Human lice, 496
- Human lymphotropic virus type I, 404t
- Human lymphotropic virus type II, 404t
- Human papilloma virus
 cancers associated with, 404t
 in cervical cancer, 1624
 in genital warts, 1658
 testing for, 1581
 vaccination for, 407
- Human waste management after emergency event, 163
- Humeral shaft fracture, 1159
- Humidification in tracheostomy care, 574
- Humira; *See* Adalimumab
- Humoral immunity, 309, 311
- Humulin R, 1431t
- Huntington disease, 955-956, 956b
- Hyalgan; *See* Hyaluronate
- Hyaluronate, 322
- Hycamtin; *See* Topotecan
- Hycort; *See* Hydrocortisone
- Hydration
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 620
 in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency anemia, 876
 for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 older adult and, 16-17
- Hydration (*Continued*)
 postoperative assessment of, 289
 for sickle cell disease, 874
 skin health and, 458
 in tumor lysis syndrome, 433
- Hydrea; *See* Hydroxyurea
- Hydrocele, 1646-1647, 1647f
- Hydrocephalus
 after craniotomy, 1035
 in brain tumor, 1031
 in meningitis, 939
 in stroke, 1015
 traumatic brain injury and, 1023
- Hydrochloric acid, 1180-1181, 1221
- Hydrochlorothiazide
 for heart failure, 752
 for hypertension, 780, 781b-782b
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
- Hydrocodone, 52
- Hydrocolloidal dressing, 486t
- Hydrocortisone
 for adrenal insufficiency, 1384b
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for glucocorticoid deficiency, 1383
- Hydrogel dressing, 486t
- Hydrogen breath test, 1260
- Hydrogen ions, 198, 198f-199f
- Hydrogenation, 1350
- Hydromorphone, 52
 for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 for biliary pain, 1318
 epidural, 56
 for postoperative pain, 284, 297, 1533
 for sickle cell crisis, 874
- Hydronephrosis, 1522-1523, 1522f
 after spinal cord injury, 973
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
 in urolithiasis, 1508
- Hydrophilic dressing, 485
- Hydrophilic lotion, 471
- Hydrophobic dressing, 483-485
- Hydrops diet, 1096
- Hydrostatic pressure, 166, 692
- Hydrotherapy, 531
- Hydrourer, 1507-1508, 1522-1523, 1522f, 1630
- Hydroxychloroquine
 for lupus, 346
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 337, 337b-339b
- Hydroxyurea, 415t-416t, 418t, 874
- Hygiene
 skin problems and, 457, 462-463
 of surgical team, 267
- Hylan GF 20, 322
- Hyoid bone, 544f-545f
- Hyoscyamine, 1495b-1496b
- Hyperactive delirium, 23
- Hyperactive reflexes, 917
- Hyperacusis, 1082
- Hyperacute rejection, 315, 1570t
- Hyperaldosteronism, 1390
- Hyperbaric oxygen therapy
 for osteomyelitis, 1133
 for pressure ulcer, 485-487
- Hypercalcemia, 190-191, 190t
 calcium supplementation-related, 1125
 in cancer, 431
 as cause of urinary stones, 1508t
 in chronic kidney disease, 1557
 in hyperparathyroidism, 1406
 lung cancer and, 631t
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
 in total parenteral nutrition, 1348
- Hypercapnia, 691
 in hypokalemia, 186
 in traumatic brain injury, 1024-1025
- Hypercarbia
 in acute respiratory failure, 671
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616-617
 in facial trauma, 583
 hypoxic drive in, 564
- Hypercarbia (*Continued*)
 oxygen therapy for, 563
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
- Hypercellularity in polycythemia vera, 879
- Hypercortisolism, 1384-1385
 acute adrenal insufficiency in, 1389
 etiology of, 1385, 1385t
 fluid volume balance in, 1386-1388
 health care resources for, 1390
 history in, 1385
 home care management in, 1389
 imaging assessment in, 1386
 incidence and prevalence of, 1385
 infection prevention in, 1388-1389
 laboratory assessment in, 1386
 pathophysiology of, 1384-1385, 1384f
 physical assessment in, 1385-1386, 1385b
 prevention of injury in, 1388
 psychosocial assessment in, 1386
 surgical management of, 1387-1388
 teaching for self-management in, 1389-1390, 1389b
- Hyperemia, 308
- Hyperesthesia, 969
- Hyperextension injury of cervical spine, 968f, 969
- Hyperflexion injury of cervical spine, 967, 967f
- Hyperfunction of adrenal gland, 1384-1385
 Cushing's disease in, 1384-1385
 acute adrenal insufficiency in, 1389
 etiology of, 1385, 1385t
 fluid volume balance in, 1386-1388
 health care resources for, 1390
 history in, 1385
 home care management in, 1389
 imaging assessment in, 1386
 incidence and prevalence of, 1385
 infection prevention in, 1388-1389
 laboratory assessment in, 1386
 pathophysiology of, 1384-1385, 1384f
 physical assessment in, 1385-1386, 1385b
 prevention of injury in, 1388
 psychosocial assessment in, 1386
 surgical management of, 1387-1388
 teaching for self-management in, 1389-1390, 1389b
- hyperaldosteronism in, 1390
- pheochromocytoma in, 1390-1391
- Hyperglycemia
 absence of insulin and, 1412, 1412t
 after Whipple procedure, 1332-1333
 blurred vision in, 1414
 cognitive impairment in, 1414
 conditions resulting in, 1411t
 in diabetes mellitus, 1411, 1421-1444
 diabetic ketoacidosis and, 1454-1455
 drug therapy for, 1421-1438
 in medical-surgical patient, 1443
 in growth hormone overproduction, 1374
 hypertension and, 1416
 in hyperthyroidism, 1394
 hypoglycemia *versus*, 1452t
 in metabolic syndrome, 1417
- Hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state, 1455t, 1457-1458, 1457f
- Hyperinsulinemia, 1440
- Hyperkalemia, 186-187, 186t, 188b
 acidosis and, 204-205
 in acute adrenal insufficiency, 1372, 1382
 in burn, 516
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 diuretics and, 780b
 in enteral nutrition, 1347
 in hypovolemic shock, 813
 in polycythemia vera, 879
- Hyperkalemia (*Continued*)
 preoperative assessment of, 248
 surgery for diabetes mellitus and, 1445
 transfusion-related, 899
 in tumor lysis syndrome, 432-433
- Hyperketonuria, 1420
- Hyperkinetic pulse, 699
- Hyperlipidemia
 atherosclerosis and, 773
 in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 diabetes mellitus and, 1410-1411
 in metabolic syndrome, 1417
- Hypermagnesemia, 193-194, 193t
- Hypermetabolism after burn injury, 517
- Hypermetropia, 1042, 1042f, 1070
- Hypernatremia, 182-183, 182t
 after craniotomy, 1034
 changes associated with aging, 1472
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
- Hyperopia, 1042, 1042f, 1070
- Hyperosmotic fluid, 168-169
- Hyperoxaluria, 1508t, 1511
- Hyperparathyroidism, 1406-1408, 1406t, 1407b
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Hyperperfusion syndrome, 1015-1016
- Hyperphosphatemia, 192
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548-1549
- Hyperpituitarism, 1374-1378, 1375f, 1376b
 drug therapy for, 1375
 genetic considerations in, 1374b
 home care management after surgery in, 1377b
 surgical management of, 1376-1378, 1376f, 1377b
- Hyperplasia, 397, 397f
 benign prostatic, 1630
 community-based care in, 1636-1637
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 1633
 concept map for, 1633f-1634f
 drug therapy for, 1633, 1633b
 history in, 1630, 1631f-1632f
 imaging assessment in, 1633
 laboratory assessment in, 1632
 noninvasive procedures for, 1635
 pathophysiology of, 1630, 1630f
 physical assessment in, 1630
 psychosocial assessment in, 1630-1632
 surgical management of, 1635-1636, 1635f, 1636b
- parathyroid, 1408
- Hyperpnea
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 in chronic kidney disease, 1551
- Hyperresonance, percussion note, 553t
- Hypersensitivity, 383-395
 mechanisms and types of, 384t
 rapid, 384-391
 allergic rhinitis in, 384-385, 385f
 anaphylaxis in, 387-391; *See also* Anaphylaxis
 latex allergy in, 391
 suppressor T-cells and, 313
- Hypersensitivity vasculitis, 351
- Hypertension, 698, 775-785
 adherence to plan of care in, 784
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 classifications of, 776-777, 776t
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 780
 concept map for, 689f
 coronary artery disease and, 833
 cultural considerations in, 777b
 in diabetes mellitus, 1450
 diagnostic assessment in, 778
 drug therapy for, 780-784, 780b-783b
 effects on vision, 1044

- Hypertension (*Continued*)
 etiology and genetic risk in, 777, 777t
 gonadotropin deficiency and, 1373
 health care resources for, 785
 health promotion and maintenance in, 777
 health teaching in, 784
Healthy People 2020 objectives for, 776t
 hemorrhagic stroke and, 1005f
 history in, 777-778
 home care management in, 784, 785b
 hyperglycemia and, 1416
 hypertensive urgency or crisis in, 784b
 incidence and prevalence of, 777
 intracranial
 after hypophysectomy, 1377
 in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 in meningitis, 939
 in stroke, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
 lifestyle changes for, 778-780
 mechanisms influencing blood pressure and, 775-776
 in metabolic syndrome, 1417
 in nephrosclerosis, 1530
 in nephrotic syndrome, 1529-1530
 in pheochromocytoma, 1391
 physical assessment in, 778, 778f
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1519, 1521-1522, 1522b
 psychosocial assessment in, 778
 pulmonary, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t
 in mitral stenosis, 762b
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 in systemic sclerosis, 348
 renin-angiotensin II pathway and, 173
 in renovascular disease, 1531
 in scorpion bite, 144-145
 in thyroid storm, 1397, 1399
 Hypertensive urgency or crisis, 784b
 Hyperthermia, 444-445
 malignant, 273, 273b
 Hyperthyroidism, 1393-1394
 diagnosis of, 1396
 drug therapy for, 1397, 1397b-1398b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1394, 1394b
 history in, 1394-1395, 1395f
 incidence and prevalence of, 1394
 laboratory assessment in, 1396, 1396b
 pathophysiology of, 1393-1394, 1394b
 physical assessment in, 1395, 1395f, 1395t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1395-1396
 safety precautions in unsealed radioactive isotope for, 1398b
 surgical management of, 1397-1400, 1399b
 thyroid storm and, 1400, 1400b
 Hypertonia, 1009-1011
 Hypertonic saline, 1381
 Hypertonic solution, 168-169, 211
 Hypertriglyceridemia, 774
 Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 767t, 768
 Hypertrophic ungual labium, 1139t
 Hypertrophy, 397, 397f
 Hyperuricemia, 349
 as cause of urinary stones, 1508t
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 Hyperventilation
 acid-base balance and, 200
 in electroencephalography, 923
 respiratory alkalosis and, 207
 Hyperviscosity of blood, 878, 1412-1413
 Hypervolemia, 182
 Hyphema, 1071
 Hypoanesthesia, 271, 272t
 Hypnosis for pain management, 60-61, 271
 Hypoactive delirium, 23, 115
 Hypoactive reflexes, 917
 Hypoalbuminemia, 1235
 Hypocalcemia, 188-190, 189f, 189t
 alkalosis and, 208
 cardiac manifestations of, 703
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548-1549
 in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
 thyroid surgery-related, 1399
 Hypocapnia, 151
 Hypodermoclysis, 234
 Hypoesthesia, 969
 Hypofunction of adrenal gland, 1381-1382
 drug therapy for, 1383, 1384b
 emergency care in, 1382b
 history in, 1382
 imaging assessment in, 1383
 laboratory assessment in, 1383, 1383b
 pathophysiology of, 1381-1382, 1382t
 physical assessment in, 1382, 1382b, 1383f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1383
 Hypogammaglobulinemia, 382
 Hypoglossal nerve, 912t
 Hypoglycemia
 in acute adrenal insufficiency, 1372
 after Whipple procedure, 1332-1333
 in diabetes mellitus, 1421-1444, 1421f-1422f, 1451-1454
 blood glucose management and, 1452
 critical rescue in, 1453b
 drug therapy for, 1452-1453
 home care management of, 1453b
 hyperglycemia *versus*, 1452t
 nutrition therapy for, 1452
 older adult and, 1454b
 patient and family education in, 1453-1454
 prevention of, 1443, 1451-1454
 symptoms of, 1451t
 double vision in, 1414
 exercise-induced, 1440
 gastroparesis and, 1416
 impaired cortisol secretion and, 1381
 from insulin excess, 1433
 lung cancer and, 631t
 Hypokalemia, 183-186, 184t, 185b
 after craniotomy, 1034
 alkalosis and, 208
 in burn, 516
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 diuretics and, 752, 780b
 preoperative assessment of, 248
 prevention of, 740b
 surgery for diabetes mellitus and, 1445
 Hypokinetic pulse, 699
 Hypomagnesemia, 193, 193t
 cardiac manifestations of, 703
 in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
 Hyponatremia, 181-182, 181t
 in burn, 516
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
 in enteral nutrition, 1347
 in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380
 Hypo-osmotic fluid, 169
 Hypoparathyroidism, 1406t, 1408
 Hypophonia, 942b, 943
 Hypophosphatemia, 191-192, 192b
 in chronic kidney disease, 1557
 in hyperparathyroidism, 1406
 osteomalacia and, 1127
 Hypophysectomy, 1377b
 for hypercortisolism, 1387
 for hyperpituitarism, 1376, 1377b
 Hypophysis, 908
 Hypopituitarism, 1372-1373, 1373b
 Hypoplasia
 bone marrow, 880
 in leukemia, 880
 Hypoproteinemia, 1340
 Hyporeflexia, 184
 Hypotension
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 in acute pancreatitis, 1323b
 in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 989
 in heat stroke, 138
 in hypothyroidism, 1402-1403
 orthostatic, 698
 angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor-related, 783b
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 in cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, 1416
 in dehydration, 175
 in hypertension, 778
 in pneumonia, 650
 in rehabilitation setting, 97b
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 postoperative
 in coronary artery bypass graft, 831
 in esophageal surgery, 1216
 in total hip arthroplasty, 325t
 in pulmonary embolism, 667-668
 in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025
 Hypothalamic-hypophyseal portal system, 1361
 Hypothalamus, 907, 907f, 1361, 1361f, 1361t
 hormones secreted by, 1359t
 interaction with anterior pituitary and adrenal cortex, 1360-1361, 1360f
 Hypothermia
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 831
 environmental, 148-149, 149b
 in near-drowning, 153
 postoperative, 293
 in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 Hypothyroidism, 1400-1401
 cognitive function and, 1403
 community-based care, 1403-1404
 etiology of, 1401, 1401t
 health care resources for, 1404, 1405b
 history in, 1402
 home care management in, 1404
 hypotension in, 1402-1403
 incidence and prevalence of, 1401
 laboratory assessment in, 1396b, 1402
 myxedema coma in, 1403, 1403b
 pathophysiology of, 1400-1401, 1401b, 1401f
 physical assessment in, 1402
 psychosocial assessment in, 1402
 respiratory function and, 1402
 teaching for self-management in, 1404, 1404b
 Hypotonia, 1009-1011
 Hypotonic solution, 169, 211
 Hypoventilation
 acid-base balance and, 200
 anesthesia-induced, 275
 in combined ventilatory and oxygenation failure, 670
 oxygen-induced, 564
 prevention during surgery, 281-282
 Hypovolemia
 abdominal aortic aneurysm resection-related, 794
 in dehydration, 173-174
 in diabetes mellitus, 1412-1413
 hyponatremia and, 182
 in intestinal obstruction, 1254
 Hypovolemic shock, 811-819, 814f-815f
 adaptive responses and events during, 813t
 in burn, 526-527
 community-based care in, 819
 concept map for, 814f-815f
 fracture-related, 1146
 functional impairment in, 810t
 history in, 814-816
 laboratory assessment in, 817, 817b
 in liver trauma, 1310
 management of, 818-819, 819b
 Hypovolemic shock (*Continued*)
 in older adult, 823b
 pathophysiology of, 812-814
 patient safety in, 818b
 in peritonitis, 1268
 physical assessment in, 816-817
 prevention of, 814
 psychosocial assessment in, 817
 stages of, 813-814
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025
 Hypoxemia
 in acute respiratory failure, 669-670
 in asthma, 604-605
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613, 616-617
 in hypokalemia, 186
 oxygen therapy for, 563
 in pneumonia, 650t, 651
 postoperative, 293-294, 293b
 in pulmonary embolism, 663-667, 665b
 in sickle cell crisis, 871
 in tracheobronchial trauma, 684
 Hypoxia
 in asthma, 604-605
 in diabetes mellitus, 1412-1413
 erythropoietin and, 857
 in facial trauma, 583
 hypovolemic shock and, 813
 in myocardial infarction, 829-830
 in near-drowning, 153
 oxygen therapy for, 563
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 tracheostomy and, 575
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
 in vaso-occlusive event, 870-871
 Hypoxic drive, 564
 Hysterectomy, 1620b
 in cervical cancer, 1626
 in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 in ovarian cancer, 1627
 in pelvic organ prolapse, 1617
 in uterine cancer, 1622
 in uterine leiomyomas, 1619
 Hysterosalpingography, 1583
 Hysteroscopy, 1585
 Hytrin; *See* Terazosin
 I
 IABP; *See* Intra-aortic balloon pump
 Iatrogenic hypoparathyroidism, 1408
 Ibuprofen
 gastritis risk and, 1225
 for gout, 350
 for migraine, 929-930
 nephrotoxicity of, 1451
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 for postoperative pain, 298b
 Ibutilide, 723b-726b, 732
 ICD; *See* Implantable cardioverter/defibrillator
 ICF; *See* Intracellular fluid
 ICH; *See* Intracerebral hemorrhage
 Icodextrin, 1437
 Icterus in cholecystitis, 1316
 Idamycin; *See* Idarubicin
 Idarubicin, 415t-416t
 Ideal body weight, 1339
 Idiopathic chronic pancreatitis, 1326
 Idiopathic hypoparathyroidism, 1408
 Idiopathic hypopituitarism, 1372
 Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis, 628
 Idiopathic scoliosis, 1140
 Idiopathic seizure, 933
 Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895-896
 Ifex; *See* Ifosfamide
 Ifosfamide, 415t-416t
 ILC; *See* Interstitial laser coagulation
 Ileal reservoir, 1514f
 Ileal-anal reservoir, 1276f

- Ileostomy
 care of, 1279b
 total proctocolectomy with, 1277, 1277f
 in ulcerative colitis, 1276, 1276f
 Ileum, 1178f, 1180
 Iliac crest, 1466f
 Ilizarov technique of circular external fixation, 1155
 Ilotycin; *See* Erythromycin
 Imagery, 11, 60, 378
 Imaging assessment
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in adrenal insufficiency, 1383
 in Alzheimer's disease, 950
 in aneurysm, 793
 in back pain, 961
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 in breast cancer, 1598-1599
 in burn, 524
 in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in colorectal cancer, 1247
 in coronary artery disease, 835
 in Cushing's disease, 1386
 in cystitis, 1493-1494
 in endocrine assessment, 1370
 in fracture, 1150
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185-1187
 in head and neck cancer, 589-590
 in hearing assessment, 1084-1085
 in hearing loss, 1100
 in heart failure, 750
 in hematologic assessment, 866
 in infection, 445
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256
 in leukemia, 883
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1114-1115, 1116b
 in neurologic assessment, 912t, 919-922
 cerebral angiography in, 919-921, 921b
 cerebral blood flow evaluation in, 923
 computed tomography in, 921
 electroencephalography in, 922-923, 922b
 electromyography in, 922
 evoked potentials in, 923
 laboratory assessment in, 919
 lumbar puncture in, 923-925, 924t, 925b
 magnetic resonance imaging in, 921-922
 magnetoencephalography in, 922
 muscle and nerve biopsies in, 925
 in osteoarthritis, 321
 in osteoporosis, 1123-1124
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1229
 in peripheral arterial disease, 787
 in pneumonia, 650
 preoperative, 248
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in renal assessment, 1482-1486, 1483t
 computed tomography in, 1484-1485
 cystography and
 cystourethrography in, 1485
 cystoscopy and cystourethroscopy in, 1485-1486
 intravenous urography in, 1482-1484, 1484b
 kidney, ureter, and bladder x-rays in, 1482
 kidney scan in, 1485
 renal arteriography in, 1485
 ultrasonography in, 1485
 in reproductive assessment, 1583
 in respiratory assessment, 556
- Imaging assessment (*Continued*)
 in sickle cell disease, 873
 in spinal cord injury, 970
 in stroke, 1012-1013
 in traumatic brain injury, 1026
 in urinary incontinence, 1500
 in vision assessment, 1048
 Imatinib mesylate, 418t, 884
 Imdur; *See* Isosorbide mononitrate
 Imidazole cream, 494
 Imipramine
 for pain management, 58
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b, 1503-1504
 Imiprex; *See* Sumatriptan
 Immediate hypersensitivity, 384-391, 384t
 allergic rhinitis in, 384-385, 385f
 anaphylaxis in, 387-391
 cultural considerations in, 388b
 emergency care in, 389, 390b
 key features of, 389b, 389f
 pathophysiology of, 387, 388t
 prevention of, 387-388, 388b, 388f
 latex allergy in, 391
 Immediate memory, 914
 Immediate reperfusion, 844
 Immobility
 complications of, 98, 99t
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989-990
 Immobilization
 of fracture, 1150-1153, 1151f
 in knee injury, 1170, 1170f
 in spinal cord injury, 971-972
 Immune complex, 311, 311f
 in glomerulonephritis, 1527, 1527f
 Immune complex-mediated hypersensitivity, 384t, 391-392, 391f
 Immune deficiencies, 357-382
 Bruton's agammaglobulinemia in, 382
 common variable immune deficiency in, 382
 congenital, 381-382
 HIV infection and AIDS in, 358-380
 antibody tests in, 368-369
 classification of, 360, 360t
 community-based care in, 378-380
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
 confusion in, 377-378
 diarrhea in, 376-377
 drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
 endocrine complications in, 367, 368t
 genetic considerations in, 360b
 health care resources for, 380
 history in, 365
 HIV genotype test in, 369b
 home care management in, 378-379, 379b
 immune enhancement for, 375
 incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
 infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
 infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
 key features of, 365b
 lymphocyte counts in, 368
 malignancies in, 367, 367f
 nutrition and, 376
 older adult and, 361b, 375b
 opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
 oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
 pain management in, 376
 parenteral transmission of, 362-363
 perinatal transmission of, 363
 postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
 progression of, 361
- Immune deficiencies (*Continued*)
 psychosocial assessment in, 368
 psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
 self-esteem and, 378
 sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
 skin integrity and, 377
 social contact and, 378
 teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
 testing for, 363-364, 364b
 transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
 viral load testing in, 369
 women and, 361b
 leukemia in, 880-881
 selective immunoglobulin A deficiency in, 381-382
 therapy-induced, 380-381
 Immune enhancement in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 375
 Immune function
 assessment after burn injury, 530, 530t-531t
 cancer development and, 404
 development of infection and, 435, 435t
 Immune response, 302-317
 aging-related changes in, 304b
 infection and, 306
 inflammation and, 305-309, 306f
 basophils in, 307
 eosinophils in, 307
 macrophages in, 307, 307t
 neutrophils in, 306-307, 306f
 phagocytosis and, 307-308, 308f
 white blood cell differential count and, 307t
 leukocytes in, 305t
 organization of immune system and, 304-305, 305f
 self versus non-self and, 303-304, 303f-304f
 Immune system
 aging-related changes in, 304b
 changes resulting from burn, 517
 Cushing's disease and, 1385b, 1386
 manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f
 organization of, 304-305, 305f
 Immunity, 309-316, 309f
 antibody-mediated, 309-313, 437
 acquiring of, 312-313
 age-related changes in, 304b
 antibody classification and, 312, 312t
 antigen-antibody interactions in, 309-312, 310f-311f
 immune functions of leukocytes in, 305t
 role of leukocytes in, 857t
 cancer and, 409
 cell-mediated, 313-314, 437
 age-related changes in, 304b
 cell types involved in, 313-314
 cytokines and, 314, 314t
 immune functions of leukocytes in, 305t
 role of leukocytes in, 857t
 transplant rejection and, 315
 infection risk and, 435, 435t
 purpose of, 303
 transplant rejection and, 314-316
 acute, 315
 chronic, 315
 hyperacute, 315
 management of, 315-316
 Immunoglobulin A, 312t
 selective immunoglobulin A deficiency and, 381-382
 Immunoglobulin D, 312t
 Immunoglobulin E, 312t
 rapid hypersensitivity reactions and, 384
 Immunoglobulin G, 312, 312t
- Immunoglobulin M, 312, 312t
 Immunoglobulin(s), 312, 312t
 Immunohemolytic anemia, 876
 Immunologic kidney disorders, 1526-1530, 1526t, 1527f
 acute glomerulonephritis in, 1527, 1527t, 1528b
 chronic glomerulonephritis in, 1528-1529
 interstitial and tubulointerstitial, 1530
 nephrotic syndrome in, 1529-1530, 1530b
 rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis in, 1528
 Immunomodulators for ulcerative colitis, 1275
 Immunosuppressives
 for aplastic anemia, 878
 for kidney transplantation, 1570-1571, 1571b
 for multiple sclerosis, 982
 for myasthenia gravis, 993-994
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 393
 Immunotherapy in cancer, 426-427, 427t
 Imodium; *See* Loperamide
 Impact of Event Scale-Revised, 163-164
 Impacted fracture, 1144f
 Impaired fasting glucose, 1417
 Impaired glucose tolerance, 1417
 Impedance, 690
 Impedance cardiography, 710
 Impedance plethysmography, 800
 Implant surgery
 in breast reconstruction, 1604t
 cochlear, 1101
 in erectile dysfunction, 1643
 in interbody cage fusion, 963
 Implantable cardioverter/defibrillator, 739, 741, 742b
 Implanted port, 218-220, 219b, 219f
 Implanted stent for glaucoma, 1067
 Impotence, 1642, 1642b
 Imuran; *See* Azathioprine
 Inactivation process in immunity, 312
 Incarcerated hernia, 1243
 Incentive spirometry
 after Nissen fundoplication, 1211
 in pneumonia, 651
 to prevent postoperative respiratory complications, 256, 256f
 Incision and drainage
 in anorectal abscess, 1287
 in Bartholin cyst, 1621
 Incisional hernia, 1243, 1243f
 Incisional injury, fracture and, 1148
 Incomplete fracture, 1144
 Incomplete spinal cord injury, 967
 Incontinence, 1475, 1497-1499
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1499
 functional, 1505-1506
 health care resources for, 1506-1507
 history in, 1499-1500, 1500b
 home care management in, 1506
 hospitalized older adult and, 26
 imaging assessment in, 1500
 incidence and prevalence in, 1499
 laboratory assessment in, 1500
 older adult and, 17b, 1499b
 in Parkinson disease, 943
 pathophysiology of, 1497-1499
 physical assessment in, 1500
 pressure ulcer and, 477
 psychosocial support in, 1506
 reflex, 1505
 stress, 1501-1502, 1501b-1502b, 1503f, 1503t
 teaching for self-management in, 1506, 1507b
 total or mixed, 1506
 types of, 1498t
 urge, 1503-1505, 1504b
 urodynamic studies in, 1500

- Increased intracranial pressure
 after craniotomy, 1035
 after hypophysectomy, 1377
 in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 in meningitis, 939
 in stroke, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
- Incretin hormones, 1412
- Incretin mimetics, 1423b-1427b, 1429
- Incus, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Independent living skills, rehabilitation and, 94
- Inderal; *See* Propranolol
- Indinavir, 371, 372b-374b
- Indirect bilirubin, 1186b
- Indirect contact transmission, 436
- Indirect Coomb's test, 864, 865b
- Indirect inguinal hernia, 1243, 1243f
- Indirect laryngoscopy, 590
- Indocin; *See* Indomethacin
- Indomethacin, 350
- Inducer T-cell, 857t
- Induction therapy in leukemia, 884
- Indwelling urinary catheter
 home care of, 1641b
 infection and, 441
 in transurethral resection of prostate, 1635
- Infarction
 cerebral, 1005
 myocardial, 829-831
 cardiac rehabilitation after, 851, 851b
 chest pain in, 696t
 COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b
 electrocardiographic changes and patterns in, 831f
 fibrinolytic drugs for, 862
 heart failure after, 842, 842t
 home care management after, 850b
 key features of, 835b
 older adult and, 835b
 reperfusion therapy for, 839-840
 risk in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 during surgery, 243-244
 twelve-lead electrocardiogram in, 835
 pituitary, 1372
- Infection, 434-450
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366
 in acute nephritic syndrome, 1527
 after burn injury, 530, 530t-531t, 533-536
 aging related susceptibility to, 549b
 allergic reactions to antibiotics and, 446b, 446t
 in Bartholin cyst, 1620-1621
 bioterrorism and emerging infections and, 448t-449t, 449
 burn-related, 516-517
 in candidiasis, 491b, 493
 under cast, 1153
 in common cold, 641
 in condylomata acuminata, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
 in conjunctivitis, 1056
 cultures for, 467-468
 cutaneous, 490-492, 491b, 492f
 in anthrax, 494-495, 495f
 bacterial, 490-492, 492f
 fungal, 492-493
 history in, 493-494
 laboratory assessment in, 487-488, 495b
 in leprosy, 509
 physical assessment in, 494
 prevention of, 493, 493b
 viral, 492, 492f
 in cystitis, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
- Infection (*Continued*)
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
 in encephalitis, 940-941, 941b
 in epididymitis, 1650
 fever in, 445-446, 446b
 in food poisoning, 1270-1272, 1270t
 fracture and, 1147, 1157, 1157b
 in genital herpes, 1656-1657, 1657b
 health care resources for, 447
 health care-associated, 227, 436-438
 after vascular surgery, 795
 central venous catheter and, 232t
 in cystitis, 1491, 1492b
 needleless connector and, 222
 patient safety and, 1492b
 peripherally inserted central catheter and, 216
 health teaching in, 447
 in hemodialysis vascular access, 1562, 1562t
 in hepatitis, 1305-1307
 cancers associated with, 404t
 classification and etiologies of, 1305-1306, 1305t
 community-based care in, 1309, 1309b
 complications of, 1306
 health care workers and, 1307b
 history in, 1307
 incidence and prevalence of, 1306
 laboratory assessment in, 1308
 liver biopsy in, 1308
 physical assessment in, 1307
 prevention of, 1307b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1308
 vaccination for, 1306-1307
 history in, 444
 home care management in, 447
 homeless population and, 32-33
 human immunodeficiency virus, 358-380
 antibody tests in, 368-369
 classification of, 360, 360t
 community-based care in, 378-380
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
 confusion in, 377-378
 diarrhea in, 376-377
 drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
 endocrine complications in, 367, 368t
 genetic considerations in, 360b
 health care resources for, 380
 history in, 365
 HIV genotype test in, 369b
 home care management in, 378-379, 379b
 immune enhancement for, 375
 incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
 infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
 infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
 key features of, 365b
 lymphocyte counts in, 368
 malignancies in, 367, 367f
 nutrition and, 376
 older adult and, 361b, 375b
 opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
 oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
 pain management in, 376
- Infection (*Continued*)
 parenteral transmission of, 362-363
 perinatal transmission of, 363
 postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
 progression of, 361
 psychosocial assessment in, 368
 psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
 self-esteem and, 378
 sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
 skin integrity and, 377
 social contact and, 378
 teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
 testing for, 363-364, 364b
 transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
 viral load testing in, 369
 women and, 361b
 imaging assessment in, 445
 inadequate antimicrobial therapy and, 443-444
 inflammation in, 306
 in influenza, 645-647
 in inhalation anthrax, 658-659, 658b-659b
 laboratory assessment in, 444-445
 in laryngitis, 644-645
 in lung abscess, 658
 mechanical ventilation-related, 681
 in meningitis, 937-940, 938b-939b
 after craniotomy, 1035
 after pituitary gland removal, 1377
 Cryptococcus neoformans, 937-938
 gonorrhea and, 1661
 laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
 labyrinthitis and, 1095
 neurologic status in, 939b
 multidrug-resistant organisms and, 440-443, 443b
 methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 442-443, 442b
 vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 443
 vancomycin-resistant enterococcus in, 443
 vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 443
 occupational exposure to, 443
 ocular, 1044, 1044b
 after cataract surgery, 1061
 conjunctivitis in, 1056
 corneal, 1057
 drug therapy for, 1054b
 hordeolum in, 1053-1054
 trachoma in, 1056
 older adult and, 436b
 in orchitis, 1650
 in osteomyelitis, 1131
 oxygen therapy-related, 565, 565b
 patient feelings of isolation in, 446-447
 peritoneal dialysis and, 1567
 in peritonsillar abscess, 644
 in pharyngitis, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 physical assessment in, 444
 physiologic defenses against, 437
 in pneumonia, 647-652
 airway obstruction in, 651
 concept map for, 648f-649f
 etiology of, 647, 647t
 health care resources for, 652
 history in, 648
 home care management in, 652, 652b
 hypoxemia in, 651
 imaging assessment in, 650
 incidence and prevalence of, 647
 laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 pathophysiology of, 647
 physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
- Infection (*Continued*)
 prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 psychosocial assessment in, 650
 sepsis in, 651-652
 teaching for self-management in, 652
 ventilator-associated, 648b
 postoperative
 in liver transplantation, 1312, 1312t
 in lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
 in nephrectomy, 1533
 in prostatitis, 1649
 psychosocial assessment in, 444
 in pulmonary empyema, 659-660
 in pyelonephritis, 1523-1526
 community-based care in, 1526
 end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 history in, 1524-1525
 imaging assessment in, 1525
 incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 laboratory assessment in, 1525
 pain in, 1525
 pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1525
 in rhinitis, 641
 risk for
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
 in cystic fibrosis, 624
 HIV-infected patient and, 366
 host factors in, 435, 435t
 in leukemia, 883-889, 883b
 in neutropenia, 419, 419b
 older adult and, 436b
 patient safety and, 437b
 in sickle cell disease, 874
 septic shock and, 820
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 652-653, 653b
 sexually transmitted, 1652-1667, 1653t
 chlamydia infection in, 1662, 1662b
 complications of, 1653t
 condom use for prevention of, 362b
 focused assessment in, 1655b
 genital herpes in, 1656-1657, 1657b
 genital warts in, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
 gonorrhea in, 1659-1660, 1660f
 Healthy People 2020 objectives in, 1655t
 oral antibiotic therapy for, 1665b
 pelvic inflammatory disease in, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
 syphilis in, 1654-1655, 1654b, 1654f, 1656b
 urethritis in, 1496-1497
 use of condoms and, 1658b
 vaginal infections in, 1666
 women's health considerations in, 1653b
 in sinusitis, 641-642, 642b
 surgical wound, 281
 in tonsillitis, 644, 644b
 tracheostomy-related, 572
 transmission of infectious agents in, 435-437, 435t
 in tuberculosis, 653-658, 654f
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367
 airborne precautions in, 657, 657f
 diagnosis of, 655, 655f
 drug therapy for, 655, 656b
 health care resources for, 658
 history in, 654
 home care management in, 657
 physical assessment in, 654-655
 teaching for self-management in, 657-658

Infection (Continued)

- in urethritis, 352, 1496-1497
- urinary tract, 436, 1490-1497
 - clinical manifestations of, 1493b
 - cystitis in, 1490-1492
 - in diabetes mellitus, 1450-1451
 - factors contributing to, 1490t
 - factors influencing outcome of, 1491t
 - older adult and, 1492b
 - prevention of, 1493b
 - pyelonephritis in, 1523-1526
 - in rehabilitation setting, 102, 102b
 - in vulvovaginitis, 1613-1614, 1614b
- wound, 294-297, 295f, 296b
 - after craniotomy, 1035
 - after peripheral arterial disease surgery, 791
 - emergency care of evisceration in, 296b
 - prevention of, 294-297, 295f
 - at surgical site, 281
- Infection control and prevention
 - in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 370-375, 370b-371b, 379b
 - during chemotherapy, 420b
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1556
 - in community-based settings, 438
 - in Cushing's disease, 1388-1389
 - in ear problems, 1102b
 - gloves in, 439b
 - hand hygiene in, 438b-439b
 - in inpatient health care agencies, 437-438, 437b, 439f
 - during intraoperative care, 281, 282f
 - in leukemia, 883-889, 883b
 - methods of, 438-440
 - in oral cancer, 1199
 - patient and family education in, 826b
 - postoperative
 - in amputation, 1166
 - in total hip arthroplasty, 325t, 327
 - in pressure ulcer, 488, 489b
 - in self-monitoring of blood glucose, 1437
 - in sickle cell disease, 874
 - standard precautions in, 440, 441t
 - transmission-based precautions in, 440, 442t
 - in urolithiasis, 1510-1511
- Infection control nurse liaison, 439
- Infection control program, 438
- Infection precautions, 826b
- Infectious arthritis, 352
- Infective endocarditis, 763-765, 764b
- Inferior oblique muscle, 1042f, 1042t
- Inferior punctum, 1042f
- Inferior rectus muscle, 1042f, 1042t
- Inferior turbinate, 544f
- Inferior vena cava, 687f-688f, 1466f
- Inferior vena cava filter
 - in pulmonary embolism, 667
 - in venous thromboembolism, 802
- Inferior wall myocardial infarction, 831, 841
- Infiltrating ductal carcinoma, 1592
- Infiltration, intravenous therapy-related, 211, 228t-229t
- Infiltration scale, 233t
- Inflammation, 305-309, 306f
 - in acute gout, 349
 - in acute pancreatitis, 1322
 - in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 671
 - in acute sialadenitis, 1200
 - after burn injury, 517
 - age-related changes in, 304b
 - in asthma, 601
 - basophils in, 307
 - in blepharitis, 1053
 - in bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia, 630
 - in burn, 517
 - in chronic bronchitis, 612

Inflammation (Continued)

- in dark skinned patient, 466, 467b
- as defense against infection, 437
- eosinophils in, 307
- in epididymitis, 1649-1650
- in gastritis, 1220-1221
- in laryngitis, 644
- leukocytes in, 305t, 857t
- macrophages in, 307, 307t
- neutrophils in, 306-307, 306f
- in orchitis, 1650
- phagocytosis and, 307-308, 308f
- in pharyngitis, 642
- in prostatitis, 1649
- purpose of, 303
- radiation therapy-related, 413
- in rapid hypersensitivity reactions, 384
- regional anesthesia-associated, 276
- in rhinitis, 641
- sequence of, 308-309
- in sinusitis, 641
- in tonsillitis, 644
- white blood cell differential count and, 307t
- Inflammatory breast cancer, 1592
- Inflammatory intestinal disorders, 1266-1292
 - anal fissure in, 1287-1288
 - anal fistula in, 1288
 - anorectal abscess in, 1287, 1287b
 - appendicitis in, 1267-1268, 1267b, 1267f
 - Crohn's disease in, 1280-1284
 - community-based care in, 1284
 - drug therapy for, 1282, 1282b
 - fistula management in, 1282-1283, 1282b, 1283f
 - nutrition therapy for, 1282
 - pathophysiology of, 1280-1281, 1280f
 - physical assessment in, 1281, 1281b
 - surgical management of, 1283-1284
 - diverticular disease in, 1284-1287, 1284f, 1286b
 - food poisoning in, 1289-1290, 1289t, 1290b
 - gastroenteritis in, 1270-1272, 1270t, 1271b-1272b
 - parasitic infection in, 1288-1289, 1289b
 - perineal comfort measures in, 1287b
 - peritonitis in, 1268-1270, 1268b-1269b
 - ulcerative colitis in, 1272-1273
 - complications of, 1273t
 - Crohn's disease *versus*, 1272t
 - diagnosis of, 1274
 - diarrhea and bowel incontinence in, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1273
 - health care resources for, 1279-1280
 - history in, 1273
 - home care management in, 1278, 1280b
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1273
 - laboratory assessment in, 1274
 - lower gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1278, 1278b
 - pain in, 1278, 1278b
 - pathophysiology of, 1272-1273, 1273t
 - physical assessment in, 1274
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1274
 - surgical management of, 1275-1278, 1276f-1277f, 1277b
 - teaching for self-management in, 1278-1279, 1279b
- Inflammatory phase of healing, 473t
- Infliximab
 - for ankylosing spondylitis, 352
 - for Crohn's disease, 1282, 1282b
 - for psoriasis, 500, 501b

Infliximab (Continued)

- for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 340
- for sarcoidosis, 628
- for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Inflow disease, 786-787
- Influenza
 - pandemic, 645-647
 - seasonal, 645
- Informatics, 6, 6f
- Informed consent, preoperative, 250, 251f
- Inframammary ridge, 1595
- Inframedullary spinal cord tumor, 976
- Infrapatellar notch, joint effusion in osteoarthritis and, 320
- Infratentorial brain tumor, 1031
- Infratentorial craniotomy, 1034
- Infusate, 211
- Infusion container, 220
- Infusion nurse, 211
- Infusion pressure, 225
- Infusion system, 220-223
 - administration sets in, 220-222, 222f
 - containers in, 220, 220b
 - rate-controlling infusion devices in, 222-223, 223f
- Infusion therapy, 210-238
 - alternative sites for, 234-237
 - intra-arterial therapy and, 235-236
 - intraosseous therapy and, 234-235, 235f
 - intraperitoneal infusion and, 236
 - intraspinal infusion and, 236-237
 - subcutaneous infusion and, 234
 - blood and blood products in, 211-212, 212f
 - blood pressure measurement and, 224b
 - blood sampling from central venous catheters and, 226
 - central, 216-220
 - hemodialysis catheters in, 220
 - implanted ports in, 218-220, 219b, 219f
 - nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheters in, 217-218, 218f
 - peripherally inserted central catheters in, 216-217, 217f
 - tunneled central venous catheters in, 218, 218f
 - changing administration sets and needleless connectors in, 225
 - complications in, 227
 - central venous catheter and, 232t
 - infiltration scale and, 233t
 - insertion-related, 231t
 - localized, 228t-229t
 - phlebitis scale and, 233t
 - systemic, 230t
 - controlling infusion pressure in, 225
 - documentation of, 226-227
 - extravasation in, 211b
 - flushing catheter in, 225-226, 225b
 - infusion systems in, 220-223
 - administration sets in, 220-222, 222f
 - containers in, 220, 220b
 - rate-controlling infusion devices in, 222-223, 223f
 - intravenous drugs and, 212
 - intravenous solutions for, 211
 - nursing assessment in, 223-224
 - older adult and, 227-234
 - cardiac and renal status changes and, 233-234
 - catheter securement and, 230b
 - skin care in, 227
 - vein and catheter selection in, 227-233
 - patient education in, 223
 - peripheral, 213-216
 - insertion and placement methods in, 213-214, 213t, 214b, 214f

Infusion therapy (Continued)

- midline catheters in, 215-216, 215f
- short peripheral catheters in, 213-215, 213f
- site selection and skin preparation for, 214-215, 214b, 215f
- prescribing of, 212
- removal of vascular access device and, 226
- securing and dressing the catheter in, 224-225, 224b, 224f
- vascular access devices in, 212-213
- Ingrown nail, 1139t
- Inguinal hernia, 1578
- INH; *See* Isoniazid
- Inhalation anesthesia, 272t, 274t
- Inhalation anthrax, 658-659, 658b-659b
- Inhalation burn injury, 516-517, 521
- Inheritance patterns, 72-74, 72f, 73t
 - autosomal dominant, 73
 - autosomal recessive, 74, 74f
 - complex inheritance and familial clustering and, 74
 - for genetic disorders, 73t
 - pedigree and, 72, 72f
 - sex-linked, 74, 74f
- Inhibitory concentration, 370-371
- Injury prevention
 - after spinal cord injury, 971-973, 971b, 972f
 - in Alzheimer's disease, 952-954, 953b
 - during chemotherapy, 422b
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1556-1557, 1557b
 - in Cushing's disease, 1388
 - during intraoperative care, 279-280, 280f, 281b
 - in leukemia, 889
 - in pulmonary embolism, 669b
 - in tracheostomy, 573-574
- In-line filter, 237
- Innate-native immunity, 305
- Inner ear, 1079
- Inner ear problems, 1095-1097
 - acoustic neuroma in, 1097
 - labyrinthitis in, 1095-1096
- M[*g*]v[*e*n]i[*a*]c[*e*r]e's disease in, 1096-1097
- tinnitus in, 1095
- vertigo and dizziness in, 1095
- Inner maxillary fixation, 584
- Innervation of eye, 1041, 1041f
- Innohep; *See* Tinzaparin
- Inotropic drugs, 843b
 - for cardiac arrest, 734b
 - for heart failure, 753, 842, 842b
 - for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 - for pulmonary embolism, 667-668
- Inpatient surgery, 240
- Inpatient unit staff in emergency care, 123-124
- INR; *See* International Normalized Ratio
- Insensible water loss, 171
- Insertion-related complications in infusion therapy, 231t
- Inspection
 - in abdominal assessment, 1183-1184
 - in cardiac examination, 699
 - in endocrine assessment, 1367-1368
 - of eyes, 1046
 - of female genitalia, 1581
 - in head and neck cancer, 589
 - of lungs and thorax, 552-555, 552f
 - in musculoskeletal assessment, 1111-1112, 1111f
 - of nose, 551
 - of skin, 458-463
- Inspra; *See* Eplerenone
- Instillation
 - of eyedrops, 1050b
 - of ophthalmic ointment, 1053b, 1053f
- Institute of Medicine, 3-6
- Instrumental activities of daily living, rehabilitation and, 94
- Insufflation, 267

- Insulase; *See* Chlorpropamide
- Insulin, 1179
- absence in diabetes mellitus, 1412-1413, 1412t
 - anabolic effects of, 1365t
 - fasting state and, 1412
 - negative feedback mechanism and, 1360
 - pancreatic production of, 1364, 1411
 - paraneoplastic syndromes associated with lung cancer and, 631t
- Insulin autoantibodies, 1416-1417
- Insulin detemir, 1431, 1431t
- Insulin glargine, 1431, 1431t
- Insulin needle, 1434-1435, 1435f
- Insulin pump, 1434, 1434f
- Insulin resistance, 1417
- Insulin secretagogues, 1421, 1423b-1427b
- Insulin sensitizers, 1428-1429
- Insulin syringe, 1434-1435
- Insulin therapy, 1430-1438
- alternative methods of insulin administration in, 1433-1434, 1434f
 - complications of, 1433, 1434f
 - excess of, 1453
 - factors influencing insulin absorption in, 1432-1433, 1433f
 - for hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state, 1458
 - mixing of insulins in, 1433, 1433t, 1435b
 - noncompliance with, 1432b
 - patient education in, 1434-1436, 1435f
 - regimens in, 1431-1432
 - subcutaneous administration of, 1435b
 - types of insulin in, 1430-1431, 1431t
- Intake and output monitoring
- in fluid overload, 179
 - in hypercortisolism, 1387
 - in hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 - postoperative, 289
- Integrase, 358-359, 358f
- Integrase inhibitors, 372b-374b, 375
- Integrative medicine, 8
- Integrilin; *See* Eptifibatide
- Integumentary assessment, 451-469
- common alterations in skin color and, 459t
 - family history and genetic risk in, 458
 - hair assessment in, 463
 - history in, 454-458, 458b
 - inspection of skin in, 458-463
 - laboratory assessment in, 467-468
 - nail assessment in, 463-465, 465f, 465t-466t
 - nutrition status in, 458
 - palpation of skin in, 463, 464t
 - patient with darker skin and, 465-467, 465b, 467b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 467
 - in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 94
 - skin lesions and, 459, 460f-462f, 462t
- Integumentary system, 452, 452f; *See also* Skin
- acute leukemia and, 882b
 - anemia and, 871b
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1551b
 - complications of immobility and, 99t
 - manifestations of shock and, 810b
 - nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
- Intelligence; *See* Etarvirine
- Intensity of sound, 1085, 1085t
- Intensity-modulated radiation therapy, 412, 583, 1640
- Intensivist, 3
- Intention tremor, 979
- Intentional injury, 130
- Interbody cage fusion, 963
- Intercostal nerve, 997f
- Intercostal nerve block, 276f
- Intercostal retraction in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
- Intercostal space, 552
- Interdisciplinary team
- in emergency care, 122-124
 - in pain management, 40
 - in trauma care, 134
- Interferon alfa, 1309
- Interferon-beta, 980, 982b
- Interferon(s)
- for cancer, 427
 - for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
- Interleukin-1, 314t
- Interleukin-2, 314t, 1533
- Interleukin-6, 314t
- in Crohn's disease, 1281
 - in sepsis and septic shock, 824
- Interleukin-8, 1281
- Interleukin-10, 824
- Interleukin(s), 314, 314t
- in cancer, 426
 - in Crohn's disease, 1281
 - in irritable bowel syndrome, 1241
- Interlobar arteries of kidney, 1467f
- Intermediate-acting insulins, 1410, 1431
- Intermittent administration set, 221
- Intermittent catheterization, 102
- Intermittent claudication
- cardiovascular assessment and, 696
 - in peripheral arterial disease, 786, 786b
- Intermittent peritoneal dialysis, 1566
- Intermittent positive-pressure ventilation, 984
- Intermittent self-catheterization, 1505-1506
- Internal auditory artery, 908f
- Internal carotid artery, 908, 908f
- stroke and, 1009b
- Internal derangement of knee, 1169
- Internal disaster, 155
- Internal fixation of fracture, 1155
- Internal genitalia
- female, 1576-1577, 1576f
 - male, 1577-1578, 1578f
- Internal hemorrhoids, 1260, 1261f
- Internal mammary artery graft, 847, 847f
- Internal mammary nodes, 1577f
- Internal urethral sphincter, 1472
- International Medical Surgical Response Team, 159
- International normalized ratio, 703, 866
- in cirrhosis, 1298-1299
 - perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
- International Prostate Symptom Score, 1630, 1631f-1632f
- International Society of Blood Transfusion universal bar-coding system, 211-212, 212f
- Interpreter, 33
- Interrupted sutures, 282f
- Interstitial brachytherapy, 1605
- Interstitial cell tumor, 1643
- Interstitial cell-stimulating hormone, 1361t
- Interstitial cystitis, 1490
- Interstitial edema, 1022
- Interstitial fluid, 180f
- Interstitial immunologic renal disease, 1530
- Interstitial laser coagulation, 1635
- Interstitial lung diseases, 627-628
- Interstitial radiation therapy, 1197
- Intertrigo, 1351
- Intertrochanteric hip fracture, 1160f
- Interventional radiologic procedures, 1231
- Interventional radiology
- in bone cancer, 1136
 - in cerebral aneurysm, 1016
- Interview, sexual identity questions in, 35t
- Intestinal biopsy
- for celiac sprue, 1263
 - of intestinal polyp, 1260
- Intestinal disorders, 1240-1292
- abdominal trauma in, 1258-1260, 1258b
 - anal fissure in, 1287-1288
 - anal fistula in, 1288
 - anorectal abscess in, 1287, 1287b
 - appendicitis in, 1267-1268, 1267b, 1267f
 - colorectal cancer in, 1245-1246
 - colostomy management in, 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f, 1252b-1253b
 - drug therapy for, 1248
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b
 - grieving in, 1251-1252
 - health care resources for, 1253-1254
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1246, 1246b
 - history in, 1246
 - home care management in, 1252
 - imaging assessment in, 1247
 - incidence and prevalence in, 1246
 - laboratory assessment in, 1247
 - metastasis in, 1247-1251
 - pathophysiology of, 1245-1246, 1245f
 - physical assessment in, 1246-1247, 1247f
 - postoperative care in, 1249-1251
 - preoperative care in, 1248-1249, 1249t
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1247
 - radiation therapy for, 1248
 - sexuality concerns with ostomies in, 1253b
 - surgical management of, 1248-1251, 1248t, 1250f
 - teaching for self-management in, 1252-1253, 1252b
 - wound management in, 1251, 1251b
- Crohn's disease in, 1280-1284
- community-based care in, 1284
 - drug therapy for, 1282, 1282b
 - fistula management in, 1282-1283, 1282b, 1283f
 - nutrition therapy for, 1282
 - pathophysiology of, 1280-1281, 1280f
 - physical assessment in, 1281, 1281b
 - surgical management of, 1283-1284
- diverticular disease in, 1284-1287, 1284f, 1286b
- food poisoning in, 1289-1290, 1289t, 1290b
- gastroenteritis in, 1270-1272, 1270t, 1271b-1272b
- hemorrhoids in, 1260-1262, 1261f
- herniation in, 1243-1245, 1243f
- intestinal obstruction in, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
- intestinal polyps in, 1260, 1260f
- irritable bowel syndrome in, 1240-1242, 1242b
- malabsorption syndrome in, 1262-1263, 1263b
- parasitic infection in, 1288-1289, 1289b
- perineal comfort measures in, 1287b
- peritonitis in, 1268-1270, 1268b-1269b
- ulcerative colitis in, 1272-1273
- complications of, 1273t
 - Crohn's disease *versus*, 1272t
 - diagnosis of, 1274
 - diarrhea and bowel incontinence in, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1273
 - health care resources for, 1279-1280
- Intestinal disorders (*Continued*)
- history in, 1273
 - home care management in, 1278, 1280b
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1273
 - laboratory assessment in, 1274
 - lower gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1278, 1278b
 - pain in, 1278, 1278b
 - pathophysiology of, 1272-1273, 1273t
 - physical assessment in, 1274
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1274
 - surgical management of, 1275-1278, 1276f-1277f, 1277b
 - teaching for self-management in, 1278-1279, 1279b
- Intestinal ischemia, 1254-1255
- Intestinal obstruction, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
- in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
- Intestinal polyp, 1260, 1260f
- Intestinal preparation, preoperative, 253-254
- Intestinal villi, 1180
- Intra-abdominal abscess, 1444
- Intra-abdominal hypertension, 1259
- Intra-abdominal pressure monitoring, 1259
- Intra-aortic balloon pump, 842-844
- Intra-arterial chemotherapy, 417
- Intra-arterial therapy, 235-236
- Intracapsular hip fracture, 1159-1160, 1160f
- Intracellular fluid, 166
- dehydration and, 173-174, 174f
 - electrolytes in, 180, 180f
 - fluid overload and, 178, 178f
 - hyperkalemia and, 186
 - sodium in, 180
- Intracerebral hemorrhage, 1006
- Intracranial hypertension
- after hypophysectomy, 1377
 - in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 - in meningitis, 939
 - in stroke, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
- Intracranial pressure monitoring devices, 1029-1030, 1029t
- Intractable pain, 57
- Intradermal testing, 386
- Intraductal papilloma, 1589t, 1590
- Intradural spinal cord tumor, 976
- Intrahepatic obstructive jaundice, 1295t, 1309, 1316
- Intramural leiomyoma, 1617, 1617f
- Intramuscular drug administration, 55t-56t
- Intranasal drug administration, 55t-56t
- Intraocular pressure, 1041
- activities increasing, 1059t
 - after cataract surgery, 1061
 - glaucoma and, 1062
- Intraoperative care, 263-283
- anesthesia and, 270-277, 272t
 - emergency care in malignant hyperthermia and, 273b
 - general, 271-275, 272t, 274t
 - local or regional, 275-276, 275t, 276f-277f
 - moderate sedation, 276-277, 277t
 - hyperventilation prevention and, 281-282
 - identification of patient, procedure, and surgical site, 265f
 - infection prevention and, 281, 282f
 - injury prevention and, 279-280, 280f, 281b
 - medical record review and, 278-279, 278b-279b
 - patient history and, 277-278
 - in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445

- Intraoperative care (*Continued*)
 surgical suite preparation and, 266-270
 health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
 layout of suite and, 266-267, 268f
 minimally invasive and robotic surgery and, 267, 269f
 surgical attire and, 267-270, 270f
 surgical scrub and, 270, 271f
 surgical team members and, 264-266, 266f
- Intraoperative radiation therapy, 1605
- Intraosseous therapy, 234-235, 235f
- Intraperitoneal chemotherapy, 417
- Intraperitoneal infusion, 236
- Intrapulmonary ventilatory failure, 670, 670t
- Intrarenal acute kidney injury, 1538-1539, 1539t
- Intrarenal azotemia, 1541b, 1542
- Intrarenal pressure, 1538
- Intraspinal infusion, 236-237
- Intrathecal analgesia, 55t-56t, 57-58
 for chronic back pain, 965
 in spinal fusion, 963
- Intrathecal chemotherapy, 417
- Intrathecal contrast-enhanced computed tomography, 912t, 921
- Intrathecal infusion, 236
- Intravaginal pessary, 1505
- Intravascular rewarming in hypothermia, 149
- Intravascular ultrasonography, 705
- Intravenous access, primary survey and, 133
- Intravenous anesthesia, 272t, 274t
- Intravenous chemotherapy, 417
- Intravenous drug administration, 55t-56t
- Intravenous drug(s), 212
- Intravenous fibrinolytic therapy, 1013
- Intravenous immunoglobulin
 for Guillain-Barré syndrome, 988
 for myasthenia gravis, 994
- Intravenous pump, 222
- Intravenous pyelography, 1483t
- Intravenous solutions, 211
- Intravenous therapy, 210-238
 alternative sites for, 234-237
 intra-arterial therapy and, 235-236
 intraosseous therapy and, 234-235, 235f
 intraperitoneal infusion and, 236
 intraspinal infusion and, 236-237
 subcutaneous infusion and, 234
 blood and blood products in, 211-212, 212f
 blood pressure measurement and, 224b
 blood sampling from central venous catheters and, 226
 central, 216-220
 hemodialysis catheters in, 220
 implanted ports in, 218-220, 219b, 219f
 nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheters in, 217-218, 218f
 peripherally inserted central catheters in, 216-217, 217f
 tunneled central venous catheters in, 218, 218f
 changing administration sets and needleless connectors in, 225
 complications in, 227
 central venous catheter and, 232t
 infiltration scale and, 233t
 insertion-related, 231t
 localized, 228t-229t
 phlebitis scale and, 233t
 systemic, 230t
 controlling infusion pressure in, 225
 for dehydration, 177, 177t
 documentation of, 226-227
- Intravenous therapy (*Continued*)
 extravasation in, 211b
 flushing of catheter in, 225-226, 225b
 for hypovolemic shock, 818
 infusion systems in, 220-223
 administration sets in, 220-222, 222f
 containers in, 220, 220b
 rate-controlling infusion devices in, 222-223, 223f
 intravenous drugs and, 212
 intravenous solutions for, 211
 nursing assessment in, 223-224
 older adult and, 227-234
 cardiac and renal status changes and, 233-234
 catheter securement and, 230b
 skin care in, 227
 vein and catheter selection in, 227-233
 patient education in, 223
 peripheral, 213-216
 insertion and placement methods in, 213-214, 213t, 214b, 214f
 midline catheters in, 215-216, 215f
 short peripheral catheters in, 213-215, 213f
 site selection and skin preparation for, 214-215, 214b, 215f
 postoperative assessment of, 288b, 289
 prescribing of, 212
 for pulmonary embolism, 667
 removal of vascular access device and, 226
 securing and dressing the catheter in, 224-225, 224b, 224f
 vascular access devices in, 212-213
 Intravenous urography, 1482-1484, 1484b
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1523
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in renal trauma, 1535
 in urolithiasis, 1509
- Intraventricular catheter, 1029t
- Intraventricular chemotherapy, 417
- Intraventricular chemotherapy, 417
- Intrinsic acute kidney injury, 1538, 1539t
- Intrinsic azotemia, 1541b, 1542
- Intrinsic factor, 858, 859f, 877, 1179
- Intropin; *See* Dopamine
- Intubation, 674-682
 complications during intraoperative period, 275
 nasoduodenal, 1344, 1344f
 nasogastric, 1344
 nasogastric
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 in bariatric surgery, 1354b
 in colorectal cancer surgery, 1249
 to control esophageal bleeding, 1293
 decreased esophageal sphincter function and, 1204
 in diverticular disease, 1285-1286
 in emergency care of surgical wound evisceration, 296
 for enteral nutrition, 1344
 in esophageal surgery, 1216, 1216b
 in gastric analysis, 1190
 in gastric cancer surgery, 1236
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256, 1256b
 in Nissen fundoplication, 1211
 patient preparation for, 254
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1231, 1232b
 in peritonitis, 1269
 postoperative assessment of, 290
 for pyloric obstruction, 1232
 in upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1231
- Intubation (*Continued*)
 nasotracheal, 587, 676b
 oral hygiene during, 1193b
 orotracheal, 587
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
 Intussusception, 1254, 1254f
 Invasive breast cancer, 1592, 1592f
 Invasive hemodynamic monitoring, 750
 Invasive techniques in pain management, 61
 Invasive temporary pacemaker, 735, 735f-736f
 Inverse square law of radiation exposure, 411, 412f
 Inversion, 1112f
 Invisage; *See* Saquinavir
 Involuntary active euthanasia, 119t
 Iodine
 in production of thyroid hormones, 1363-1364
 for thyrotoxicosis, 1398b
 Iodine-based contrast agent, 921b
 Ionizing radiation
 carcinogenesis and, 404
 leukemia and, 880
 in radiation therapy, 411
 Ions, 180
 Iontophoresis, 962, 1156
 IOP; *See* Intraocular pressure
 Iopidine; *See* Apraclonidine
 Iowa model of evidence-based practice, 83
 Ipilimumab, 505
 IPPV; *See* Intermittent positive-pressure ventilation
 Ipratropium, 607b-608b, 610
 Iressa; *See* Gefitinib
 Irinotecan, 415t-416t, 1214
 Iris, 1040, 1040f, 1042f
 arcus senilis of, 456f
 changes with aging, 1043b
 Iritis
 in ankylosing spondylitis, 351
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 Iron
 hemoglobin and, 857
 laboratory profile of, 865b
 overload in transfusion therapy, 875
 supplementation in malnutrition, 1343
 Iron deficiency anemia, 870t, 876-877, 877b
 after gastric surgery, 1237
 Iron dextran, 877, 877b
 Irreducible hernia, 1243
 Irregular bone, 1107
 Irreversible shock, 814
 Irrigation
 of external ear, 1081b, 1090f, 1091b
 ocular, 1072b
 of wound, 1269
 Irritability, 182
 Irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1242, 1242b
 Irritant-induced asthma, 629b
 I-SBAR method, 4
 I-SBAR-R method, 4
 Ischemia
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 fracture and, 1146
 in hypovolemic shock, 813
 intestinal, 1254-1255
 myocardial, 829
 in pressure ulcer, 480-482
 six P's of, 792
 in vascular access in hemodialysis, 1562
 Ischemic heart disease, 740b
 Ischemic necrosis, 1147
 Ischemic stroke, 1005-1006, 1005f
 Isentress; *See* Raltegravir
 Ishihara chart, 1047-1048, 1048f
 Islam, end of life and death rituals in, 116t
 Islet cell antibodies, 1416-1417, 1420
- Islet cell transplantation, 1444
- Islets of Langerhans, 1179, 1364, 1364f
- Isoelectric line, 713
- Isoenzymes of creatine kinase, 1114
- Isoflurane, 274t
- Isolated systolic hypertension, 777
- Isolation precautions, 440
- Isolation therapy
 in burn injury, 536
 coping with, 446-447
- Isoniazid
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for tuberculosis, 655, 656b
- Isophane insulin, 1431t
- Isoproterenol
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for cardiac arrest, 734b
- Isoptin; *See* Verapamil
- Isopto; *See* Carbachol
- Isopto Carpine; *See* Pilocarpine
- Isordil; *See* Isosorbide dinitrate
- Isosmotic fluid, 168
- Isosorbide dinitrate, 828
- Isosorbide mononitrate, 828
- Isosthenuria, 1547
- Isotonic dehydration, 173-174
- Isotonic fluid, 168, 211
- Isotretinoin, 508
- Istalol; *See* Timolol
- Isuprel; *See* Isoproterenol
- Itching, 471-472
 in anaphylaxis, 388-389
 in bee sting, 145
 epidural opioid-associated, 57
 in gallstones, 1316-1317
 in pediculosis, 496
 in serum sickness, 141
 in skin lesions, 459
 in uremia, 1552
 in vulvovaginitis, 1613
- Itch-scratch-itch cycle, 471-472, 1614
- ITP; *See* Idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
- IV House UltraDome, 233f
- IVIG; *See* Intravenous immunoglobulin
- IVUS; *See* Intravascular ultrasonography
- Ixabepilone, 415t-416t
- Ixempria; *See* Ixabepilone
- J**
- Jackknife position during surgery, 280f
- Jackson-Pratt drain, 292f, 295
 after mastectomy, 1602, 1602f
- Jaeger card, 1047
- Jantoven; *See* Warfarin
- Janumet, 1423b-1427b
- Januvia; *See* Sitagliptin
- Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction, 1656
- Jaundice
 in cholecystitis, 1316
 in cirrhosis, 1294-1295, 1295t, 1300b
 in dark skinned patient, 466, 467b
 in gastrointestinal disorders, 1182
 in hepatitis, 1305, 1307
 in pancreatic cancer, 1330
 in sickle cell disease, 872
- Jaw fracture, 583
- Jaw osteonecrosis, bisphosphonate-related, 1125
- Jaw removal, 1198
- Jejunostomy, 1345
 after esophageal surgery, 1216
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 in Whipple procedure, 1331, 1331f
- Jejunum, 1178f, 1180
- Jevtana; *See* Cabazitaxel
- Job analysis, rehabilitation and, 95
- Jobst stockings, 257
- Joint capsule, 1109f
- Joint Commission, 2
 on informed consent, 250
 on marking of surgical site, 278
 on perioperative activities for patient safety, 241f

Joint disorders

- osteoarthritis in, 319-320
 - chronic pain in, 321-331
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 323, 323b
 - drug therapy for, 322
 - etiology and genetic risk for, 319b, 320
 - hand and foot arthroplasties in, 331
 - health care resources for, 332-333
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 320
 - health teaching in, 332, 332b
 - history in, 320
 - home care management in, 332
 - imaging assessment in, 321
 - improving mobility in, 331-332, 332b
 - incidence and prevalence of, 320
 - laboratory assessment in, 321
 - pathophysiology of, 319-320, 319f
 - physical assessment in, 320-321, 321t
 - psychosocial assessment in, 321
 - total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
 - total hip arthroplasty in, 324-329
 - total knee arthroplasty in, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 - total shoulder arthroplasty in, 331
- rheumatoid arthritis in, 333-343
 - arthrocentesis in, 336, 336b
 - body image and, 342
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 341
 - exercise in, 332b
 - fatigue in, 342, 342b
 - health care resources for, 343
 - health teaching in, 343
 - home care management in, 342, 342f
- inflammation and pain
 - management in, 337-341, 337b-340b
- laboratory assessment in, 335-336, 336b
- nonpharmacologic interventions in, 341
- osteoarthritis *versus*, 321t
- pathophysiology of, 333
- physical assessment in, 334-335, 334b, 334f
- psychosocial assessment in, 335
- self-management in, 341-342

Joint effusion

- in knee, 1113
- in osteoarthritis, 320
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 334

Joint replacement surgery

- in bone cancer, 1137
- elbow, 331
- hand and foot, 331
- hip, 324-329; *See also* Total hip arthroplasty
- knee, 329-330, 330b, 330f
- shoulder, 331

Joint stiffness

- in Lyme disease, 352
- in osteoarthritis, 320
- in rheumatoid arthritis, 333-334
- in systemic sclerosis, 347

Joint(s), 1108-1109, 1109f

- dislocation of, 1172-1173
- of hand, 1112-1113, 1113f
- protection instructions for, 332b

J-pouch, 1276-1277, 1276f

- Judaism, end of life and death rituals in, 116t

Jugular venous distention, 699

- Juxtaglomerular complex, 173, 1467-1468, 1468f

Juxtamedullary nephron, 1467, 1467f

K

Kadian; *See* Morphine

Kaletra; *See* Lopinavir/ritonavir

Kallidin, 1321-1322

Kallikrein, 1321-1322

Kapixid; *See* Dexlansoprazole

Kaposi's sarcoma, 367, 367f, 1196

Karyotype, 68

Kava, 244t

Kayexalate; *See* Sodium polystyrene sulfonate

Keflex; *See* Cephalexin

Kegel exercises

for pelvic organ prolapse, 1616

for urinary incontinence, 1501, 1501b

Keloid, 501-502, 502f

Kemadrin; *See* Procyclidine

Kemstro; *See* Baclofen

Kendall SCD machine, 258f

Keppra; *See* Levetiracetam

Keratin, 453

Keratinocyte, 453

Keratoconjunctivitis sicca, 1056

Keratoconus, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f

Keratoplasty, 1058, 1058f

Keratinosis, 588-589

Ketalar; *See* Ketamine

Ketamine, 274t, 528

Ketoconazole

for esophagitis in HIV infection, 376

for fungal skin infection, 494

interaction with antacids, 1230

for prostate cancer, 1640-1641

Ketogenesis, 1412

Ketone bodies, 1412, 1420, 1478b, 1480

Ketorolac

for biliary pain, 1318

for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b

for postoperative pain, 297, 298b

for urolithiasis, 1510

17-Ketosteroids, 1582b

Keyhole craniotomy, 1029-1030

Kidney, 1466-1471

in acid-base balance, 200t, 201

acute leukemia and, 882b

adrenal medullary hormone

stimulation of, 1363t

age-related changes in fluid balance and, 170b

assessment of, 1475-1476, 1476f

burn injury and, 523

changes associated with aging, 1472, 1473b

changes in chronic kidney disease, 1547

dehydration and, 176

function of, 1468-1471, 1469t, 1470f

gross anatomy of, 1466, 1466f-1467f

hematologic assessment and, 863

hepatorenal syndrome and, 1295-1296

hormonal functions of, 1470-1471, 1471t

hypovolemic shock and, 816

infusion therapy in older adult and, 233-234

manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f

manifestations of shock and, 810b

microscopic anatomy of, 1466-1468, 1467f-1469f

monitoring in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445

parathyroid hormone effects on, 1364, 1364f

in regulation of blood pressure, 691

in regulation of water and sodium balance, 172

septic shock and, 824

sickle cell disease and, 872

systemic sclerosis and, 348

trauma to, 1533-1536, 1534b, 1534f

Kidney, ureter, and bladder x-rays, 1482, 1483t

in pyelonephritis, 1525

in reproductive assessment, 1583

in urolithiasis, 1509, 1509f

Kidney biopsy, 1486-1487

in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528

in acute kidney injury, 1543

in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529

Kidney compensation, 201

Kidney disease, 1518-1536

acute kidney injury in, 1538-1541

characteristics of, 1538t

classification of risk for, 1538-1539, 1539t

continuous renal replacement

therapy for, 1546

dialysis therapies for, 1545-1546, 1545f

drug therapy for, 1543, 1544b

etiology of, 1540

health promotion and maintenance in, 1540-1541

history in, 1541

imaging assessment in, 1543

incidence and prevalence of, 1540

kidney biopsy in, 1543

laboratory assessment in, 1542-1543, 1542b

nutrition therapy for, 1543-1545

pathophysiology of, 1538-1540

phases of, 1540t

physical assessment in, 1541-1542, 1541b

posthospital care in, 1546

potentially nephrotoxic substances and, 1540t

in tumor lysis syndrome, 432-433

types of, 1539-1540, 1539t

volume depletion in, 1541b

chronic, 1547-1550

anxiety in, 1558

cardiac changes in, 1549

cardiac output in, 1555

characteristics of, 1538t

diabetes mellitus and, 1416

etiology and genetic risk in, 1549, 1550t

fatigue in, 1557

focused assessment in, 1571b

gastrointestinal changes in, 1549

in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394

health care resources for, 1572

health promotion and maintenance in, 1550, 1550b

hematologic changes in, 1549

hemodialysis in, 1558-1564

history in, 1550-1551

home care management in, 1571-1572

imaging assessment in, 1552

incidence and prevalence of, 1549-1550

infection prevention in, 1556

injury prevention in, 1556-1557, 1557b

kidney changes in, 1547

kidney transplantation for, 1567-1571

laboratory assessment in, 1552

management of fluid volume in, 1553, 1553b

metabolic changes in, 1547-1549, 1548f

nutrition and, 1555-1556, 1555t

osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t

pathophysiology of, 1547-1550, 1547b

peritoneal dialysis in, 1564-1567, 1564t

physical assessment in, 1551-1552, 1551b

psychosocial assessment in, 1552

psychosocial support in, 1572

pulmonary edema in, 1553-1555

in sickle cell disease, 872

stages of, 1547, 1547t

teaching for self-management in, 1572

COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b

Kidney disease (*Continued*)

- degenerative, 1530-1532
 - diabetic nephropathy in, 1531-1532, 1531t
 - nephrosclerosis in, 1530, 1530b
 - renovascular disease in, 1530-1531, 1531b
- in diabetes mellitus, 1413, 1450-1451
- hydronephrosis, hydroneureter, and urethral stricture in, 1522-1523, 1522f
- immunologic, 1526-1530, 1526t, 1527f
 - acute glomerulonephritis in, 1527, 1527t, 1528b
 - chronic glomerulonephritis in, 1528-1529
 - interstitial and tubulointerstitial, 1530
 - nephrotic syndrome in, 1529-1530, 1530b
 - rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis in, 1528
- osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t
- polycystic, 1518-1520
 - constipation in, 1521
 - diagnosis of, 1521
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1519, 1519b, 1520f
- health care resources for, 1522
- history in, 1520
- hypertension and end-stage kidney disease in, 1521-1522, 1522b
- incidence and prevalence of, 1520
- pain in, 1521
- physical assessment in, 1520, 1520b
- psychosocial assessment in, 1521
- pyelonephritis in, 1523-1526
 - community-based care in, 1526
 - end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 - history in, 1524-1525
 - imaging assessment in, 1525
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 - laboratory assessment in, 1525
 - pain in, 1525
 - pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 - physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1525
- renal cell carcinoma in, 1532-1533, 1532t
- secondary hypertension and, 777
- serum creatinine levels in, 1466, 1477b
- unbalanced body water, electrolytes, and waste products in, 1518, 1519f

Kidney scan, 1485

Kidney stones, 1507-1512

- after spinal cord injury, 973
- assessment in, 1508-1509, 1509f
- cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
- cultural considerations in, 1508b
- dietary treatment for, 1511, 1511t
- etiology and genetic risk in, 1508, 1508t
- high levels of parathyroid hormone and, 1406
- incidence and prevalence of, 1508
- pain in, 1509-1510
- pathophysiology of, 1507-1512
- prevention of infection in, 1510-1511
- stricture caused by, 1523
- surgical management of, 1510
- teaching for self-management in, 1512, 1512b
- urinary obstruction in, 1511-1512

Kidney transplantation, 1567-1571

- candidate selection criteria in, 1568
- complications of, 1570, 1570t
- donors in, 1568, 1568f

- Kidney transplantation (*Continued*)
in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
immunosuppressive drug therapy in, 1570-1571, 1571b
operative procedures in, 1569, 1569f
postoperative care in, 1569-1570, 1570b
preoperative care in, 1568-1569
Killer bees, 145
Killip classification of heart failure, 842, 842t
Kineret; *See* Anakinra
Kistner tracheostomy tube, 578
Klebsiella
in cystitis, 1491
in liver abscess, 1310
in pyelonephritis, 1524
Klonopin; *See* Clonazepam
Knee
anterior cruciate ligament injuries of, 1170
fracture of, 1161
joint effusion of, 1113
meniscus injuries of, 1169-1170, 1170f
patellofemoral pain syndrome and, 1169
total knee arthroplasty and, 329-330, 330b, 330f
Knee height caliper, 1339
Knee immobilizer, 1170, 1170f
Knee-to-chest exercise, 962b
Knock-knee deformity, 1113
Knowledge, skills, and attitudes, 3, 3t
Koebner's phenomenon
in psoriasis, 498
in skin cancer, 504
KOH test, 494
Koilonychia, 466t
Krystexxa; *See* Pegloticase
KSAs; *See* Knowledge, skills, and attitudes
KUB; *See* Kidney, ureter, and bladder x-rays
Kupffer cell, 1179
Kussmaul respiration
in acidosis, 205
in chronic kidney disease, 1548
in diabetic ketoacidosis, 1454-1455
in metabolic acidosis, 1413
Kwashiorkor, 1340
Kwell; *See* Lindane
Kyphoplasty, 1162, 1163b
Kyphosis, 1109b, 1111f
- L**
Labia majora, 1576
Labia minora, 1576
Laboratory assessment
in acid-base assessment, 199b
in acidosis, 205-206, 205b, 206f
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
in acute kidney injury, 1542-1543, 1542b
in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324, 1323t
in adrenal insufficiency, 1383, 1383b
in allergic rhinitis, 385
in Alzheimer's disease, 950
in asthma, 605
in atherosclerosis, 774
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1632
in breast cancer, 1598
in burn, 524, 524b
in cardiovascular assessment, 701-703, 702b
in chronic kidney disease, 1552
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616-617
in cirrhosis, 1298-1299, 1299t
in colorectal cancer, 1247
in coronary artery disease, 835
in Cushing's disease, 1386
in cystitis, 1493
in dehydration, 176
Laboratory assessment (*Continued*)
in diabetes mellitus, 1418-1421, 1419b, 1420t
in endocrine assessment, 1369-1370, 1369b
in fracture, 1150
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1184-1185, 1186b
in head and neck cancer, 589
in hearing assessment, 1084
in hearing loss, 1100
in heart failure, 749-750
in hematologic assessment, 864-866, 865b
in hepatitis, 1308
in HIV infection and AIDS, 368-369
in hyperthyroidism, 1396, 1396b
in hypothyroidism, 1402
in hypovolemic shock, 817, 817b
in infection, 444-445
in integumentary assessment, 467-468
in intestinal obstruction, 1256
intraoperative care and, 278-279
in leukemia, 882-883, 882f
in lupus, 345
in malnutrition, 1342
in meningitis, 939, 939t
in multiple sclerosis, 980
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1113-1114, 1114b
in neurologic assessment, 919
in osteoarthritis, 321
in osteoporosis, 1123
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
in peptic ulcer disease, 1228-1229
in pneumonia, 650, 650f
postoperative, 293
preoperative, 247-248, 249b-250b
in pressure ulcer, 482
in prostate cancer, 1638
in pulmonary embolism, 664
in pyelonephritis, 1525
in renal assessment, 1476-1482
bedside sonography and bladder scan in, 1482, 1482f
blood tests in, 1476-1477, 1477b
urine tests in, 1477-1482, 1478b, 1479t, 1481b
in reproductive assessment, 1581-1583, 1582b
in respiratory assessment, 556, 557b
in rheumatoid arthritis, 335-336, 336b
in sepsis and septic shock, 824-825
in sickle cell disease, 873
in skin infection, 487-488, 495b
in spinal cord injury, 970
in stroke, 1012
in systemic sclerosis, 348
in testicular cancer, 1644
in traumatic brain injury, 1026
in ulcerative colitis, 1274
in urinary incontinence, 1500
in uterine cancer, 1622
in vision assessment, 1048
Labyrinth, 11
Labyrinthectomy, 1096-1097
Labyrinthitis, 1095-1096
Laceration
of cerebral cortex, 1021
ocular, 1071-1072
renal, 1534, 1534f
Lacrimal gland, 1041, 1042f
Lacrimal sac, 1042f
Lactase deficiency, 1262
Lactate, 199b
Lactate dehydrogenase, 1114b
in cirrhosis, 1298, 1299t
in Ewing's sarcoma, 1135
Lactic acid, 817b
Lactic acidosis, 202
metformin-induced, 1428, 1428b
Lactobacillus, 10
Lacto-ovo-vegetarian, 1336
Lactose intolerance, 188b, 1242, 1336b
Lactose intolerance test, 1263
Lacto-vegetarian, 1336
Latrosectomy, 144
Lactulose, 1303
Laennec's cirrhosis, 1294
Lamictal; *See* Lamotrigine
Lamin AC gene mutation, 722
Lamivudine, 371, 372b-374b
Lamivudine/abacavir, 372b-374b
Lamivudine/zidovudine, 372b-374b
Lamivudine/zidovudine/abacavir, 372b-374b
Lamotrigine, 934b
Landouzy-Dejerine dystrophy, 1141t
Langerhans' cell, 452
Language barriers, 33, 33b
emergency care and, 126b
Language Line Services, 33
Language Services Associates, 33
Lanoxicaps; *See* Digoxin
Lanoxin; *See* Digoxin
Lansoprazole
for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1207b
for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
for peptic ulcer disease, 1229
for Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234
Lantus; *See* Insulin glargine
Laparoscope, 269f
Laparoscopic adjustable gastric band, 1353, 1354f
Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, 1319
Laparoscopic distal pancreatectomy, 1328
Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1208
in hiatal hernia, 1210
postoperative complications in, 1211b
postoperative instructions for, 1210b
Laparoscopic radical prostatectomy, 1639
Laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy, 1353
Laparoscopy; *See also* Minimally invasive surgery
in appendicitis, 1267-1268
in diverticular disease, 1286
in reproductive assessment, 1584-1585, 1584f
in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
Laparotomy
in abdominal trauma, 1260
in appendicitis, 1268
in intestinal obstruction, 1257
in peritonitis, 1269
Lapatinib, 418t
Large intestine, 1180
obstruction of, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
of older adult, 1181b
Large-volume parenteral infusion, 234
Laryngeal edema in anaphylaxis, 389
Laryngeal nerve damage in thyroid surgery, 1399
Laryngectomy, 593
Laryngectomy, 591
home care management in, 584, 596b-597b
self-concept and, 596
Laryngectomy tube, 592, 592f
Laryngitis, 644-645
Laryngofissure, 591t
Laryngopharynx, 544f, 545
Laryngoscopy, 559, 590
Larynx, 544f-545f, 545
cancer of, 588-589
airway obstruction in, 590-594
anxiety in, 595-596
aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b
etiology of, 589
health care resources for, 597-598
history in, 589
home care management in, 596, 596b
Larynx (*Continued*)
imaging assessment in, 589-590
incidence and prevalence of, 589
laboratory assessment in, 589
pathophysiology of, 588-589
physical assessment in, 589, 589t
psychosocial assessment in, 589
psychosocial support in, 597
self-concept in, 596
smoking cessation and, 598b
speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f
surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f
changes with aging, 549b
infection of, 644-645
physical assessment of, 552
trauma to, 586
vocal cord nodules and polyps and, 585-586, 586f, 587b
vocal cord paralysis and, 585
Laser; *See* Anthralin
Laser imaging of retina and optic nerve, 1051
Laser in-situ keratomileusis, 1070-1071
Laser light therapy for cancer, 426
Laser nurse coordinator, 266
Laser specialty nurse, 266
Laser therapy for cervical cancer, 1625
Laser thermolysis, 963
Laser trabeculoplasty, 1067
Laser-assisted laparoscopic lumbar discectomy, 963
LASIK; *See* Laser in-situ keratomileusis
Lasix; *See* Furosemide
Latanoprost, 1066b-1067b
Late adulthood, 15-16
Latency period in carcinogenesis, 400
Latent syphilis, 1654
Late-onset seizure in head injury, 1028
Lateral position during surgery, 280, 280f
Lateral rectus muscle, 1040f, 1042f, 1042t
Lateral wall myocardial infarction, 831
Latex allergy, 391, 439
Latissimus dorsi musculocutaneous flap, 1604t
Laundry, standard precautions and, 441t
Lavage in peptic ulcer disease, 1231, 1232b
Layout of surgical suite, 266-267, 268f
LDH; *See* Lactate dehydrogenase
Le Fort fracture, 583
LEAD; *See* Lower extremity arterial disease
Lead axis, 713, 713f
Lead pipe rigidity, 942
Lead systems in electrocardiography, 713-714, 714t
Leave-of-absence visit, 104
LEEP procedure, 1625-1626
Leftunomide, 337, 338b-339b
Left anterior descending artery, 688f, 689, 831
Left atrium, 687f-688f, 688
Left coronary artery, 688-689, 688f
Left hemisphere stroke, 1011b
Left lower quadrant of abdomen, 1183f, 1183t
Left pulmonary artery, 687f-688f
Left shift, 293, 307, 445
in cystitis, 1493
in sepsis, 822
Left upper quadrant of abdomen, 1183f, 1183t
Left ventricle, 687f-688f, 688, 692b
Left-sided heart catheterization, 704-705, 704t, 705f
Left-sided heart failure, 745
compensatory mechanisms in, 746f
in coronary artery disease, 841-844

- Left-sided heart failure (*Continued*)
 history in, 748
 physical assessment in, 748-749, 749b
- Leg
 amputation of, 1163, 1163f, 1164b, 1168b
 arterial disease in, 785, 786f
 cast for, 1152t
 positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
 postoperative exercises for, 257, 257b
 ulcer of, 788b, 872
- Leg cast, 1151
- Leg surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Legal blindness, 1414
- Legally competent, 22
- Leiomyoma, 1613, 1617-1620, 1617f
- Lenalidomide, 418t
 for multiple myeloma, 894-895
 for myelodysplastic syndromes, 880
- Lens, 1040-1041, 1040f
 cataracts of, 1040-1041, 1059-1062
 home care management in, 1061, 1062b, 1062f
 pathophysiology of, 1059-1060, 1059f, 1060t
 physical assessment in, 1060, 1060f
 surgery for, 1060-1061, 1061f
 changes with aging, 1043b
- Lepirudin, 800-801
- Leprosy, 509
- Leptin, 1349, 1350b
- Leptin resistance, 1349
- Lesbian, gay, bisexual and transgender health, 33-34, 33b, 35t
- Lesions, 459, 460f-462f
 around nails, 465
 configurations of, 462t
 purpuric, 462
 unroofing of, 467
- Leucorvin, 1248
- Leukemia, 880-892
 conserving energy in, 890, 890b
 drug therapy for, 883-884
 etiology and genetic risk in, 880-881
 health care resources for, 890-891
 history in, 881-882
 home care management in, 890, 891b
 imaging assessment in, 883
 incidence and prevalence of, 881
 infection prevention in, 883-889, 883b
 injury prevention in, 889
 laboratory assessment in, 882-883, 882f
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 880-892
 physical assessment, 882, 882b
 psychosocial assessment in, 882
 psychosocial preparation for, 891
 reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409
 risk for bleeding in, 892b
 teaching for self-management in, 890-891, 891b
- Leukeran; *See* Chlorambucil
- Leukine; *See* Sargramostim
- Leukocyte, 305t, 857, 857t, 880
 differentiation and maturation of, 305f
 immune functions of, 305t
- Leukocyte alkaline phosphatase, 864
- Leukocyte count
 in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 in respiratory assessment, 557b
- Leukocytosis
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in appendicitis, 1267
- Leukoesterase
 in urinary tract infection, 1493
 in urine, 1478b, 1480
- Leukopenia, 878
- Leukoplakia, 588-589, 1195
- Leukotriene antagonists, 387, 641
- Leukotriene modifiers, 607b-608b, 611
- Leuprolide
 for breast cancer, 1606
 for prostate cancer, 1640
 for uterine leiomyomas, 1618
- Leustatin; *See* Cladribine
- Levalbuterol, 609
- Levaquin; *See* Levofloxacin
- Levate; *See* Amitriptyline
- Level I trauma center, 130-131, 131t
- Level II trauma center, 131, 131t
- Level III trauma center, 131, 131t
- Level IV trauma center, 131, 131t
- Level of consciousness
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 848
 in encephalitis, 940-941
 in hypovolemic shock, 816-817
 in neurologic assessment, 914, 914b
 in spinal cord injury, 969
 in traumatic brain injury, 1025
- Levels of evidence, 81, 81f, 82t
- Levemir; *See* Insulin detemir
- Levetiracetam, 934b
- Levin tube, 290
- Levitra; *See* Vardenafil
- Levobunolol, 1066b-1067b
- Levodopa-carbidopa
 for Parkinson disease, 944
 for restless legs syndrome, 999
- Levofloxacin
 Achilles tendon rupture and, 1172
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for gastroenteritis, 1272
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Levophed; *See* Norepinephrine
- Levosimendan, 753
- Lexiva; *See* Fosamprenavir
- Leydig cell-stimulating hormone, 1361t
- LH; *See* Luteinizing hormone
- LH-RH agonists
 for breast cancer, 1606t
 for prostate cancer, 1640
- Libido, 1578
- LH-RH agonists and, 1640b
- thiazide diuretics and, 780b
- Lice, 496
- Lichen planus, 508
- Lichenification, 459, 460f-461f, 471
- Licorice, 244t
- Lidocaine, 723b-726b
 for hemorrhoids, 1261
 for pain management, 59, 1218
- Life review at end of life, 116-117
- Lifestyle changes
 after amputation, 1167-1168
 for diabetes mellitus, 1440-1441
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205, 1206b
 for hypertension, 778-780
 for osteoarthritis, 320
 for osteoporosis, 1124
 to promote wellness, 16b
- Ligament, 1109
 sprain of, 1173
- Ligand chain reaction test, 1662
- Light palpation, 1184
- Light perception, 1047
- Light reflex, 1078-1079, 1078f, 1083
- Light touch discrimination, 915
- Lightning injury, 146-148, 147b
- Limb leads, 713
- Limb-girdle dystrophy, 1141t
- Limbic lobe, 907t
- Limited cutaneous systemic sclerosis, 347
- Lindane, 496
- Linear lesion, 462t
- Linear scleroderma, 347
- Linear skull fracture, 1021
- Linezolid, 495b
- Lingual tonsil, 544f
- Lioresal; *See* Baclofen
- Lip, 1179
 basal cell carcinoma of, 1196
- Lipase
 in acute pancreatitis, 1323
 in necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis, 1321
- Lipids, hyperlipidemia and, 773
- Lipoatrophy, insulin injection-related, 1433
- Lipolysis, 1412
- Lipoprotein-a, 702
- Liposuction, 507t, 1353
- Lip-reading, 1104
- Liquid formula diet, 1351-1352
- Liquid oxygen, 570, 570f
- Liquifilm; *See* Fluorometholone
- Liquorperesis, 988
- Liraglutide, 1423b-1427b, 1429
- Lisfranc amputation, 1163-1164, 1163f
- Lisinopril, 781b-782b, 783
- Lispro insulin, 1430-1431, 1431t
- Lithium carbonate
 diabetes insipidus and, 1378
 for hyperthyroidism, 1397, 1398b
- Lithobid; *See* Lithium carbonate
- Lithonate; *See* Lithium carbonate
- Lithotomy position during surgery, 280, 280f
- Lithotripsy, 1510
- Little people, 35
- Liver, 1179-1180, 1180f, 1293-1314
 abscess of, 1288-1289, 1310
 as accessory organ of blood formation, 858
 acetaminophen and, 322b
 adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 cancer of, 1310-1311
 cirrhosis and, 1293-1296
 ascites and esophageal varices in, 1294, 1300b
 biliary obstruction in, 1294-1295
 bleeding episodes in, 1302-1303
 community-based care in, 1303-1305
 concept map for, 1299f-1301f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1296, 1296t
 health care resources for, 1304
 hepatic encephalopathy in, 1294-1295, 1295t
 hepatorenal syndrome in, 1295-1296
 history in, 1296
 home care management in, 1303-1304
 imaging assessment in, 1299
 incidence and prevalence of, 1296
 jaundice in, 1294-1295, 1295t, 1300b
 laboratory assessment in, 1298-1299, 1299t
 management of excess fluid volume in, 1299-1302, 1300b
 pathophysiology of, 1294-1296
 physical assessment in, 1296-1298, 1297f
 portal hypertension in, 1294
 psychosocial assessment in, 1298
 spontaneous bacterial peritonitis in, 1295, 1300
 teaching for self-management in, 1304, 1304b
 effects of insulin on, 1365t
 fatty, 1309-1310
 hepatitis and, 1305-1307
 cancers associated with, 404t
 classification and etiologies of, 1305-1306, 1305t
 community-based care in, 1309, 1309b
 complications of, 1306
 history in, 1307
- Liver (*Continued*)
 incidence and prevalence of, 1306
 laboratory assessment in, 1308
 liver biopsy in, 1308
 physical assessment in, 1307
 prevention in health care workers, 1307b
 prevention of, 1307b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1308
 vaccination for, 1306-1307
 of older adult, 1181b
 osteomalacia associated with disorders of, 1127
 palpation of, 863
 trauma to, 1258-1259, 1310, 1310b
- Liver biopsy
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in hepatitis, 1308
- Liver spots, 456f
- Liver transplantation, 1311-1313, 1312b-1313b, 1312t
- Liver-spleen scan, 1191
- Living donor
 in kidney transplantation, 1568
 in liver transplantation, 1311-1312
- Living related donor in kidney transplantation, 1568
- Living will, 107
- LNF; *See* Laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication
- Lobar bronchus, 546, 546f
- Lobar pneumonia with consolidation, 647
- Lobectomy, 634
- Lobelia, 244t
- Lobes of lung, 546f
- Lobular carcinoma in situ, 1591-1592
- LOC; *See* Level of consciousness
- Local anesthesia, 272t, 275-276
- Local anesthesia infusion pump, 58-59
- Local seizure, 932
- Localized complications in infusion therapy, 228t-229t
- Localized pain, 46
- Lock and key hormone-receptor binding, 1359, 1360f
- Lockout interval in patient-controlled analgesia, 54
- Locus, 66, 68
- Log rolling after back surgery, 964
- Lomustine, 415t-416t, 418t
 for brain tumor, 1033
 for spinal cord tumor, 977-978
- Long bone, 1107, 1107f
- Long-acting beta₂ agonists, 607b-608b, 609-610
- Long-acting insulin, 1410, 1431
- Long-duration headache, 928
- Long-handled reacher, 100t
- Longitudinal muscle layer, 1178f
- Long-term care, functional mobility and, 99
- Long-term memory, 914
- Long-term nonprogressors, 360b
- Loop diuretics
 for fluid overload, 179
 for hypertension, 780, 780b
 for pulmonary edema in chronic kidney disease, 1553
- Loop electrosurgical excision procedure, 1625-1626
- Loop ileostomy, 1276f
- Loop of Henle, 1467, 1467f, 1469t, 1470f
- Loop stoma, 1249
- Loperamide
 for gastroenteritis, 1271-1272
 for irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Lopinavir/ritonavir, 371, 372b-374b
- Lopressor; *See* Metoprolol
- Lorazepam, 934b
 for anxiety in head and neck cancer, 595-596
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b

- Lorazepam (*Continued*)
 for dying patient, 115b
 for pain management, 58
 for status epilepticus, 936
 for stroke-related seizure, 1015
- Lordosis, 1111f, 1112
 in scoliosis, 1140
- Losartan, 781b-782b, 783
- Losec; *See* Omeprazole
- Loss, older adult and, 18-19
- Lotronox; *See* Alossetron
- Lou Gehrig disease, 983-984, 983b-984b
- Lovaza, 775, 833
- Lovenox; *See* Enoxaparin
- Lovett's scale for muscle strength, 1113t
- Low back pain, 960-965
 acute, 962
 chronic, 962, 962b
 complementary and alternative medicine in, 962-963
 health care resources for, 965
 health promotion and maintenance in, 960-961, 961b
 health teaching in, 965, 965b
 home care management in, 964-965
 imaging assessment in, 961
 pathophysiology of, 960, 960b, 960f
 physical assessment in, 961
 surgical management of, 963-964, 964b
- Low-density lipoproteins, 702, 702b
 coronary artery disease and, 832
 diabetes mellitus and, 1413-1414
- Low-dose brachytherapy in prostate cancer, 1640
- Lower esophageal sphincter, 1179
 gastroesophageal reflux disease and, 1204, 1204t
- Lower extremity amputation, 1163, 1163f, 1164b, 1168b
- Lower extremity arterial disease, 785, 786f
- Lower extremity cast, 1152t
- Lower extremity traction, 1153t
- Lower extremity ulcer, 788b, 872
- Lower gastrointestinal bleeding
 common causes of, 1247f
 in ulcerative colitis, 1278, 1278b
- Lower gastrointestinal series, 1187
- Lower leg surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Lower motor neuron, 909-911
- Lower motor neuron lesions, 102-103, 970
- Lower nephron nephrosis, 1539
- Lower respiratory tract, 546-547
 accessory muscles of respiration in, 547
 airways in, 546, 546f-547f
 lungs in, 546-547
- Lower respiratory tract disorders
 asthma in, 601-611
 aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 exercise and activity in, 611
 history in, 603
 incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b
 laboratory assessment in, 605
 levels of control in, 603b
 oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b
 pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f
 physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f
 pulmonary function tests in, 605
 smoking cessation and, 605b
 status asthmaticus and, 611
 step system for medication use in, 604b
- Lower respiratory tract disorders (*Continued*)
 teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b
 using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f
- pneumonia in, 647-652
 after burn injury, 525
 after craniotomy, 1035
 airway obstruction in, 651
 aspiration, 1346b
 bronchiolitis obliterans organizing, 630
 concept map for, 648f-649f
 etiology of, 647, 647t
 health care resources for, 652
 in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 history in, 648
 home care management in, 652, 652b
 hypoxemia in, 651
 imaging assessment in, 650
 incidence and prevalence of, 647
 laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 pathophysiology of, 647
 physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
- Pneumocystis jiroveci*, 366, 375
 prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 psychosocial assessment in, 650
 sepsis in, 651-652
 in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 teaching for self-management in, 652
 ventilator-associated, 648b, 681
- Low-flow oxygen delivery systems, 565-566, 566t
 facemasks in, 565-566, 567f
 nasal cannula in, 565, 567f
- Low-intensity pulsed ultrasound, for fracture healing, 1156
- Low-molecular-weight heparin
 after total hip arthroplasty, 327
 for atrial fibrillation, 727
 for pulmonary embolism, 666b
 for venous thromboembolism, 801
- Low-pitched crackles, 555t
- Low-pressure alarm, 680t
- Low-profile gastrostomy device, 1344-1345
- Loxoscelism, 142
- LPGD; *See* Low-profile gastrostomy device
- Lubiprostone, 1242
- Lucentis; *See* Ranibizumab
- Luer-Lok device, 221, 236b
- Luken's tube for sputum specimen, 650f
- Lumbar puncture, 912t, 923-925, 924t, 925b, 941
- Lumbar spine
 assessment of, 1112
 axial loading injury of, 967, 968f
 tumor of, 977b
- Lumbosacral back pain; *See* Low back pain
- Lumbosacral plexus, 997f
- Lumbosacral spine tumor, 977b
- Lumen, 1178
- Lumen occlusion in central venous catheter, 232t
- Lumigan; *See* Bimatoprost
- Luminal; *See* Phenobarbital
- Lumpectomy with lymph node dissection, 1601f
- Lung, 546-547, 546f
 abscess of, 658
 changes with aging, 549b
 injury of
 from inhalation burn, 516
 from oxygen toxicity, 564
 percussion of, 553, 553f-554f, 553t
- Lung (*Continued*)
 physical assessment of, 552-555, 552f
 systemic sclerosis and, 348
- Lung biopsy, 560-561
- Lung cancer, 630-638
 chemotherapy for, 633
 chest tube for, 634-638, 635b, 635f-636f, 637b
 diagnosis of, 632-633
 etiology and genetic risk in, 631, 631b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 631
 history in, 631-638, 631t
 incidence and prevalence of, 630-631
 older adult and, 405b
 pain management in, 637
 pathophysiology of, 630-631, 631t
 photodynamic therapy for, 633-634
 physical assessment in, 632
 pneumonectomy care in, 638
 psychosocial assessment in, 632
 radiation therapy for, 633
 reduced oxygenation in, 410
 respiratory management in, 637-638
 sites of metastasis in, 401t
 surgical management of, 634-638, 634f
- Lung compliance
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 671
 in sarcoidosis, 627
- Lung diseases
 asthma in, 601-611
 aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 exercise and activity in, 611
 history in, 603
 incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b
 laboratory assessment in, 605
 levels of control in, 603b
 oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b
 pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f
 physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f
 pulmonary function tests in, 605
 smoking cessation and, 605b
 status asthmaticus and, 611
 step system for medication use in, 604b
 teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b
 using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in, 601, 602f, 611-623
 activity tolerance and, 621-622
 anxiety in, 621
 barrel chest in, 604f
 breathing techniques for, 618, 619b
 chronic bronchitis in, 612-613
 complications of, 613-614, 614b
 cultural considerations in, 613b
 drug therapy for, 619
 effective coughing for, 618-619
 emphysema in, 611-612, 612f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 613, 613b, 613t
 exercise conditioning in, 619-620
 health care resources for, 622, 623b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 614
 history in, 614
 home care management in, 622
 hydration in, 620
 imaging assessment in, 617
 incidence and prevalence of, 613
 laboratory assessment in, 616-617
 lung transplantation for, 620-621
 monitoring for respiratory status changes in, 618
- Lung diseases (*Continued*)
 oxygen therapy for, 619, 619b
 physical assessment in, 614-616, 614f, 616f
 positioning for, 618
 positive expiratory pressure device for, 620, 620f
 psychosocial assessment in, 616
 respiratory infections and, 622
 severity classification in, 617t
 suctioning in, 620
 teaching for self-management in, 622
 weight loss in, 621
 interstitial, 627-628
 occupational, 628-630, 629b
 oxygenation failure in, 670
 pneumonia in, 647-652
 after burn injury, 525
 after craniotomy, 1035
 airway obstruction in, 651
 concept map for, 648f-649f
 etiology of, 647, 647t
 health care resources for, 652
 in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 history in, 648
 home care management in, 652, 652b
 hypoxemia in, 651
 imaging assessment in, 650
 incidence and prevalence of, 647
 laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 pathophysiology of, 647
 physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
- Pneumocystis jiroveci*, 366, 375
 prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 psychosocial assessment in, 650
 sepsis in, 651-652
 in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 teaching for self-management in, 652
 ventilator-associated, 648b
 pulmonary arterial hypertension in, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t
 sarcoidosis in, 627-628
- Lung reduction surgery, 620
- Lung transplantation
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 620-621
 in cystic fibrosis, 625-626
 in pulmonary fibrosis, 628
- Lung volume
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 671
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
- Lunula, 453, 453f
- Lupus erythematosus, 343-347, 344b, 344f, 346b
- Lupus nephritis, 343
- Lupuzor, 346
- Lurch, 1111
- Lutein, 1068
- Luteinizing hormone, 1361-1362, 1361t
 deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
 erectile dysfunction and, 1642
 overproduction of, 1376b
 serum, 1581-1582, 1582b
- Luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone, 425t
- Lyme disease, 352-353, 353b
- Lymphadenopathy, 444
- Lymphangiography in testicular cancer, 1644
- Lymphatic drainage of female breast, 1577f
- Lymphatic spread of cancer cells, 401
- Lymphedema after breast cancer surgery, 1608, 1608b
- Lymphoblastic leukemia, 880

- Lymphocyte
in differential white blood cell count, 557b
values in white blood cell differential count, 307t
- Lymphocyte count in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 368
- Lymphocytic leukemia, 880
- Lymphogranuloma venereum, 1666
- Lymphokines, 313-314
- Lymphomas, 892-895
Hodgkin's lymphoma in, 892-893, 893t
multiple myeloma in, 894-895
non-Hodgkin lymphoma in, 893-894
reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409
risk in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367
- Lyphocin; *See* Vancomycin
- Lyricea; *See* Pregabalin
- Lysis, 311, 876
- M**
- Machine operator's lung, 629b
- Macrobid; *See* Nitrofurantoin
- Macrocytic anemia, 877
- Macrodermatin; *See* Nitrofurantoin
- Macrophage, 305t, 307, 307t, 857t
- Macrovascular complications in diabetes mellitus, 1413-1414
- Macula densa, 1467-1468, 1468f
- Macula lutea, 1040, 1040f
- Macular degeneration, 1068-1069
- Macular rash, 463
- Macule, 460f-461f
- Mafenide acetate, 533, 534b-535b
- MAG3 study, 1483t, 1543
- Magnesium, 192-194, 193t
abnormal values of, 170t
in body fluids, 180f
hypermagnesemia and, 193-194
hypomagnesemia and, 193
values for older adult, 170b
- Magnesium salts
for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
- Magnesium sulfate, 723b-726b
for dysrhythmias, 733
for hypomagnesemia, 193
- Magnetic resonance angiography
in neurologic assessment, 912t, 921
in renovascular disease, 1531
- Magnetic resonance
cholangiopancreatography
in gallbladder cancer, 1320
in gallstones, 1318
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1187
- Magnetic resonance direct thrombus imaging, 800
- Magnetic resonance imaging
in bladder cancer, 1513
of breast, 1598-1599
in cardiovascular assessment, 707-708
in cirrhosis, 1299
in colorectal cancer, 1247
in endocrine assessment, 1370
in fracture, 1150
in gastric cancer, 1235
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185-1187
in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 988
in head and neck cancer, 589
in hearing assessment, 1085
in infection diagnosis, 445
in kidney disease, 1483t
in lung cancer, 633
in migraine, 929
in neurologic assessment, 912t, 921-922
in oral cancer, 1197
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
in reproductive assessment, 1584
- Magnetic resonance imaging
(*Continued*)
in spinal cord injury, 970
in stroke, 1012
in testicular cancer, 1644
in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
in vision assessment, 1048
- Magnetic resonance spectroscopy, 912t, 921
- Magnetic resonance-guided focused ultrasound, 1618
- Magnetoencephalography, 922
- Mahurkar catheter, 1545f
- Mainstem bronchus, 546, 546f
- Maintenance therapy
in cystic fibrosis, 624
in leukemia, 884
in transplantation, 315
- Major burn, 513t
- Major calyx, 1467f
- Major histocompatibility complex, 304
- Major surgery, 243t
- Mal de ojo, 36-37
- Malabsorption, 1262-1263, 1263b
in chronic pancreatitis, 1326-1327
in folic acid deficiency anemia, 878
osteomalacia and, 1127
in systemic sclerosis, 347
in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
- Malabsorption surgery, 1354
- Malathion, 496
- Male
breast cancer in, 1592
gynecomastia in, 1591, 1604f
cancer therapy-related, 425
in cirrhosis, 1298
LH-RH agonists and, 1640b
in lung cancer, 631t
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
in testicular cancer, 1643
testosterone therapy-related, 1373
osteoporosis in, 1120-1121
- Male reproductive problems, 1629-1651
benign prostatic hyperplasia in, 1630
community-based care in, 1636-1637
complementary and alternative medicine for, 1633
concept map for, 1633f-1634f
drug therapy for, 1633, 1633b
history in, 1630, 1631f-1632f
imaging assessment in, 1633
laboratory assessment in, 1632
noninvasive procedures for, 1635
pathophysiology of, 1630, 1630f
physical assessment in, 1630
psychosocial assessment in, 1630-1632
surgical management of, 1635-1636, 1635f, 1636b
epididymitis in, 1650
erectile dysfunction in, 1642, 1642b
hydrocele in, 1646-1647, 1647f
orchitis in, 1650
penile cancer in, 1647-1648
phimosis and paraphimosis in, 1648
prostate cancer in, 1637
chemotherapy for, 1640
expectant therapy in, 1638
genetic considerations in, 1637b
health care resources for, 1641-1642
health promotion and maintenance in, 1637
history in, 1637
home care management in, 1641
hormone therapy for, 1640, 1640b
laboratory assessment in, 1638
older adult and, 405b
pathophysiology of, 1637, 1637f
physical assessment in, 1638
psychosocial assessment in, 1638
radiation therapy in, 1640
sites of metastasis of, 401t
- Male reproductive problems (*Continued*)
surgical management of, 1639-1640, 1639b
teaching for self-management in, 1641, 1641b
transrectal ultrasonography in, 1638, 1638b
prostatitis in, 1649
spermatocele in, 1647, 1647f
testicular cancer in, 1643
chemotherapy for, 1645
classification of tumors in, 1643t
community-based care in, 1646
external beam radiation therapy for, 1646
genetic considerations in, 1643b
laboratory assessment in, 1644
physical assessment in, 1643-1644, 1644b
psychosocial assessment in, 1644
sperm banking and, 1644b
surgical management of, 1645, 1645b
testicular self-examination and, 1643b
varicocele in, 1647, 1647f
- Male reproductive system, 1577-1578, 1578f
changes with aging, 1579b
Gordon's Functional Health Patterns and, 1580b
physical assessment of, 1581
- Male urethra, 1472
benign prostatic hyperplasia and, 1630f
- Malignancy; *See* Cancer
- Malignant cell growth, 396
- Malignant hypertension, 777
- Malignant hyperthermia, 273, 273b
- Malignant lymphomas, 892-895
Hodgkin's lymphoma in, 892-893, 893t
multiple myeloma in, 894-895
non-Hodgkin lymphoma in, 893-894
reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409
risk in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 367
- Malignant otitis, 1089
- Malignant transformation, 399, 400f
- Malleus, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Malnutrition, 1340
in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
in cirrhosis, 1300
drug therapy for, 1343
in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 990
health care resources for, 1349
history in, 1341
home care management in, 1348
laboratory assessment in, 1342
mechanical ventilation-related, 681
nutrition management in, 1342-1343, 1342b-1343b
older adult and, 1340b, 1342b
parenteral nutrition in, 1347-1348
partial or peripheral nutrition in, 1347, 1347b
total parenteral nutrition in, 1347-1348, 1348b
pathophysiology of, 1340
physical assessment in, 1341-1342, 1341t
psychosocial assessment in, 1342
risk assessment for, 1340b
teaching for self-management in, 1348-1349
total enteral nutrition in, 1343-1347
abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting in, 1346
complications of, 1345-1347, 1345b
fluid and electrolyte imbalances in, 1346-1347
methods of administration of, 1344-1345, 1344f
- Malnutrition (*Continued*)
tube feeding care and maintenance in, 1345b-1346b
tube misplacement and dislodgement in, 1346, 1346b
Malpighian layer, 452f, 453
Malpositioned central venous catheter, 231t
- MALT lymphoma, 1234
- Malunion, 1147
- Mammalian target of rapamycin, 430
- Mammography, 1583, 1594, 1598
- Mandibular division of trigeminal nerve, 1000f
- Mandibular fracture, 583
- Mandibular nerve, 1000f
- Mandibulectomy, 1198
- Manipulative and body-based therapies, 13
massage in, 13, 13f
tai chi in, 13
- Mannitol, 1028
- Mantoux test, 655, 655f
- Manual irrigation of wound, 1269
- Manual resuscitation bag, 737
- Manubrium, 552f
- MAP; *See* Mean arterial pressure
- Marasmic-kwashiorkor, 1340
- Marasmus, 1340
- Maraviroc, 372b-374b
- Marfan syndrome, 352, 352b
- Marie-Str[um]umpell disease, 351
- Marijuana, 58
- Marker protein, 313
- Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz colposuspension, 1503t
- Marsupialization, 1621
- Mask, standard precautions and, 441t
- Masklike facies in Parkinson disease, 943, 943f
- Mass
abdominal, 1183b
breast, 1580, 1598b
testicular, 1580, 1643-1644, 1644b
Mass casualty event, 155
Mass casualty triage, 157-158, 157b, 158t
Mass spectrometry, 1369
Massage, 13, 13f
for dying patient, 112-113
postoperative, 298
Massive ascites, 1297
Massive hemothorax, 684
- Mast cell
asthma and, 601
rapid hypersensitivity reactions and, 385f
- Mast cell stabilizers, 387, 641
- Mastectomy, 1601f
patient and family education in, 1607b
postmastectomy exercises and, 1603b
prophylactic, 1597
- Mastication, 1179
- Mastoid process, 1077-1078, 1082-1083
- Mastoiditis, 1093-1094
- Matrix of bone, 1107
- Matulane; *See* Procarbazine
- Maturation phase of healing, 473t
- MAWDS mnemonic, 744
- Maxair; *See* Pirbuterol
- Maxillary and nasoethmoid complex fracture, 583
- Maxillary nerve, 1000f
- Maxillary sinus, 545f
- Maximal barrier precautions, 227
- Maximum mandatory ventilation, 678
- Maxitrol; *See* Neomycin sulfate with polymyxin B sulfate and dexamethasone
- Maze procedure, 728
- McBurney's point, 1267, 1267f
- McGill-Melzack Pain Questionnaire, 47f
- MCH; *See* Mean corpuscular hemoglobin

- MCHC; *See* Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration
- McMurray test, 1169
- MCV; *See* Mean corpuscular volume
- MDCTA; *See* Multidetector computer tomographic angiography
- MDS; *See* Minimum Data Set
- Meal planning strategies, 1439-1441
- Mean arterial pressure, 689
- in continuous arteriovenous hemofiltration, 1546
 - shock and, 809, 811f, 812
- Mean corpuscular hemoglobin, 864, 865b, 1262-1263
- Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration, 864, 865b, 1262-1263
- Mean corpuscular volume, 864, 865b, 1262-1263
- Mean plasma glucose, 1420t
- Mechanical d[ac]ebridement
- in burn injury, 531
 - in pressure ulcer, 483
- Mechanical forces in pressure ulcer, 475-476, 476f
- Mechanical nociceptor, 41-43
- Mechanical obstruction, 1254, 1254f
- Mechanical traction, 1153
- Mechanical ventilation, 675-682, 677b
- after burn injury, 525
 - after coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 - after craniotomy, 1034
 - after head and neck surgery, 592
 - complications in, 680-681
 - endotracheal intubation in, 674-675
 - extubation in, 681-682
 - manual turning during, 673b
 - modes of ventilation in, 677-678
 - monitoring in, 679-681, 679b
 - in myasthenia gravis, 993
 - oral care during, 648b
 - for respiratory acidosis, 207
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1027
 - types of ventilators in, 675-677, 677f
 - ventilator alarms and, 679-680, 680t
 - ventilator controls and settings in, 678-679
 - weaning from, 681, 681b, 682t
- Mechanically regulated device, 223
- Mechanism of injury, 131-132
- Mechlorethamine, 415t-416t
- Mechizine, 290
- Medial nerve block, 276f
- Medial rectus muscle, 1040f, 1042f, 1042t
- Median basilic vein, 215f
- Median cephalic vein, 215f
- Median nerve, 997f
- carpal tunnel syndrome and, 1170
 - intravenous catheter insertion and, 214b
- Median vein, 215f
- Mediastinal shift, 560
- Mediastinitis
- after coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 - following esophageal surgery, 1216
- Mediastinoscopy, 559
- Medical command physician, 160, 160t
- Medical Emergency Team, 2-3
- Medical errors during emergency care, 125
- Medical harm, 2
- Medical history; *See* History
- Medical language interpreter, 33
- Medical nutritional supplements, 1342b
- Medical record review during
- intraoperative period, 278-279, 278b-279b
- Medical Reserve Corps, 159
- Medical-surgical nursing, 1-7
- core competencies and, 3-6
 - emergency nursing and, 125-127
 - evidence-based practice in, 2-3
 - informatics in, 6, 6f
 - patient-centered care in, 3-4, 3t
- Medical-surgical nursing (*Continued*)
- quality improvement in, 5-6
 - safety in, 6
 - teamwork and collaboration in, 4-5, 5t
 - essential genetic competencies for, 65t
 - evidence-based practice and, 2-3, 79-88
 - ARCC model in, 83-84
 - clinical questions in, 80-81, 81t
 - critical appraisal and synthesis of evidence in, 82-83
 - definitions of, 79-80
 - evaluating outcomes in, 83
 - finding best evidence in, 80-82, 81f, 82t
 - improvement model in, 84-88, 85f, 87t
 - Iowa model in, 83
 - making and implementing recommendations in, 83
 - Reavy and Tavernier model in, 83, 84t
 - National Patient Safety Goals and, 2
 - patient safety and, 2-3, 2t, 6
 - role in emergency preparedness and response
 - in community, 163
 - in health care facility, 160-162
- Medicare, 18, 108
- Medication errors, 212
- in dysrhythmias, 732b
- Medication history
- in cardiovascular assessment, 694
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1550
 - in fracture, 1148
 - in renal assessment, 1475
 - in skin problems, 458
 - in vision assessment, 1045, 1045t
- Medication overuse headache, 930
- Medications; *See also* Drug therapy
- affecting eyes and vision, 1045t
 - increased surgical risk and, 244t
 - intravenous, 212
 - preoperative administration of
 - regularly scheduled drugs, 253
- Medicine wheel, 117b, 117f
- Meditation, 11, 11f
- Medulla, 907f
- functions of, 908t
 - renal, 1466, 1467f
- Medullary thyroid carcinoma, 1405
- MEG; *See* Magnetoencephalography
- Megakaryocyte, 857-858
- Megaloblastic anemia, 877
- Meglitinide analogs, 1421, 1423b-1427b
- Melanocyte, 453
- Melanocyte-stimulating hormone, 1361t, 1374
- Melanoma, 502t, 503, 503f
- ocular, 1072-1073, 1073b
 - sites of metastasis of, 401t
- Melatonin, 999
- Melena
- in bleeding esophageal varices, 1294
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1551-1552
 - in gastritis, 1222
 - in peptic ulcer disease, 1227
 - in ulcerative colitis, 1278b
- Melphalan, 415t-416t, 418t
- Memantine, 952
- Membranous urethra, 1472, 1578f
- Memory
- changes in older adult, 912b, 913
 - in neurologic assessment, 914
- Memory cell, 305t, 311, 857t
- Memory loss
- in Alzheimer's disease, 948
 - chemotherapy-related, 424
 - in complex partial seizure, 932-933
 - in stroke, 1019
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1024
- Memory method of heart rate determination, 717
- MEN-1 syndrome, 1234
- Mended Hearts, 853
- M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096-1097
- Meniett device, 1096
- Meninges, 906
- Meningioma, 1031
- Meningitis, 937-940, 938b-939b
- after craniotomy, 1035
 - after pituitary gland removal, 1377
 - gonorrhea and, 1661
 - laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
 - labyrinthitis and, 1095
 - neurologic status in, 939b
- Meningococcal meningitis, 938
- Meniscectomy, 1169-1170
- Meniscus injury, 1169-1170, 1170f
- Menopause, coronary artery disease
- after, 831b
- Menorrhagia, 862
- Menses, 1613
- Mental health disorders
- homeless population and, 33
 - hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 - hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 - irritable bowel syndrome and, 1241
 - older adult and, 22-25
- Mental status assessment
- after discharge from PACU, 288b
 - in neurologic assessment, 913-915, 914b
- Mental status changes
- in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 - in coral snake envenomation, 142
 - in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
 - in heat stroke, 138
 - in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 - in hypovolemic shock, 817
 - in multiple sclerosis, 980
 - in older adult, 913
 - in pressure ulcer, 477
- Meperidine, 52-53
- contradiction in older adult, 1154
- for priapism, 1649
- Mepilex Ag, 534b-535b
- Mepron; *See* Atovaquone
- 6-Mercaptopurine, 415t-416t, 418t
- Mesalamine, 1274-1275, 1275t
- Meshed autograft for burn wound, 533, 533f
- Messenger ribonucleic acid, 70-71
- Mestinin; *See* Pyridostigmine
- Metabolic acidosis, 202-203, 203t
- in chronic kidney disease, 1551
 - combined metabolic and respiratory acidosis and, 197-198
 - in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 - in intestinal obstruction, 1254
 - laboratory assessment in, 205, 205b
 - in pulmonary embolism, 664
- Metabolic alkalosis, 207, 207t
- in intestinal obstruction, 1254
 - laboratory assessment in, 205b
- Metabolic bone diseases
- osteomalacia in, 1127-1128, 1127t
 - osteoporosis in, 188b, 1120-1127
 - community-based care in, 1125-1127
 - drug therapy for, 1124-1125, 1125b-1126b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1122
 - hypocalcemia and, 190
 - imaging assessment in, 1123-1124
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1121-1122, 1121b-1122b
 - laboratory assessment in, 1123
 - lifestyle changes for, 1124
 - nutrition therapy in, 1124
 - osteomalacia *versus*, 1127t
 - pathophysiology of, 1120-1122, 1120t
 - physical assessment in, 1122, 1123f
- Metabolic bone diseases (*Continued*)
- psychosocial assessment in, 1122-1123
 - Paget's disease of bone in, 1128-1129, 1129b
- Metabolic syndrome, 834, 834t
- atherosclerosis and, 774
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1417
- Metabolism
- changes resulting from burn, 517
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1547-1549, 1548f
 - hyperthyroidism and, 1394, 1394b
 - hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 - as source of acids and bicarbonate, 199
 - thyroid hormone control of, 1363
- Metacarpal arthroplasty, 331
- Metacarpal fracture, 1159
- Metacarpophalangeal joint, 1112-1113, 1113f
- Metaglip, 1423b-1427b
- Metaphase chromosome, 68, 68f
- Metastasis, 400, 400f, 401t
- brain cancer and, 1032
 - in breast cancer, 401t, 1599-1607
 - in colorectal cancer, 401t, 1245, 1247-1251
 - in esophageal cancer, 1211-1212
 - in gallbladder cancer, 1320
 - in head and neck cancer, 589
 - in lung cancer, 630
 - in oral cancer, 1198
 - osteosarcoma and, 1134
 - in prostate cancer, 401t, 1637
 - in thyroid cancer, 1405
 - in uterine cancer, 1622-1623
- Metastatic calcifications, 1549
- Metastatic tumor, 400, 400f
- Metatarsal arthroplasty, 331
- Metered-dose inhaler
- for acute respiratory failure, 671
 - for asthma, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
- Metformin, 1423b-1427b, 1428
- Methacholine, 605
- Methadone, 52
- Methemoglobinemia, 559, 559b
- Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 442-443, 442b
- open fracture and, 1147
 - in osteomyelitis, 1131
 - preventing spread of, 493b
 - in skin infection, 491-492
- Methimazole, 1397b-1398b
- Methohexital sodium, 274t
- Methotrexate, 415t-416t
- for ankylosing spondylitis, 352
 - for brain tumor, 1033
 - for lupus, 346
 - for psoriatic arthritis, 353
 - for pulmonary fibrosis, 628
 - for rheumatoid arthritis, 337, 338b-339b
 - for Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 393
- Methylprednisolone
- for anaphylaxis, 390b
 - for multiple sclerosis, 982
 - for spinal cord injury, 972
- Metoclopramide
- for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
 - for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1207b
- Metolazone, 752
- Metoprolol
- for atrial fibrillation, 727
 - for coronary artery disease, 838b
 - for heart failure, 753
 - for hypertension, 781b-782b, 783
- Metronidazole
- for amebiasis, 1289
 - for brain abscess, 1037
 - for diverticular disease, 1285
 - for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 - for giardiasis, 1289

- Metronidazole (*Continued*)
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
 for hepatic encephalopathy, 1303
 Mexate; *See* Methotrexate
 Mexiletine, 58, 723b-726b
 MGUS; *See* Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance
 Miacalcin; *See* Calcitonin
 Microalbuminuria, 703, 1480
 in diabetes mellitus, 1416, 1450
 Microcytic anemia, 876-877
 Microdiskectomy, 963
 Microhemagglutination assay for
Treponema pallidum, 1655-1656
 Microplating surgery in facial fracture, 584
 Microprocessor ventilator, 665b, 677
 Microscopic endoscopic diskectomy, 963
 Microthrombi in systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 820, 821f
 Microvascular bone transfer, 1133
 Microvascular complications in diabetes mellitus, 1414-1416
 Microvascular decompression in trigeminal neuralgia, 1001
 Micturition, 1472, 1474t
 Midamor; *See* Amiloride
 Midarm circumference, 1339-1340
 Midarm muscle mass, 1339-1340
 Midazolam, 274t, 276
 Midbrain, 907f, 908t
 Mid-clavicular catheter, 216
 Midclavicular line, 552f
 Middle cerebral artery, 908, 908f
 embolic stroke and, 1006, 1009b
 superficial temporal artery-to-middle cerebral artery graft and, 1016
 Middle ear, 1078-1079, 1078f-1079f
 Middle ear problems, 1092-1095
 hearing loss in, 1099-1100
 mastoiditis in, 1093-1094
 otitis media in, 1092-1093, 1092f-1093f
 recovery from surgery of, 1094b
 Middle turbinate, 544f
 Mid-foot amputation, 1163-1164, 1163f
 Midline catheter, 215-216, 215f
 Midrin, 930
 Midscapular line, 552f
 Midsternal line, 552f
 Midurethral sling procedures, 1503t
 Miglitol, 1423b-1427b, 1429
 Migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
 Migratory arthritis, 333-334
 Mild traumatic brain injury, 1020
 Miliary tuberculosis, 653
 Miller Fisher Variant of Guillain-Barré syndrome, 988t
 Milrinone, 843b
 for heart failure, 753
 for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 for pulmonary embolism, 667-668
 Mind-body therapies, 10-13
 acupressure and acupuncture in, 12-13
 imagery in, 11
 meditation in, 11, 11f
 music therapy in, 11, 12b
 pet therapy in, 11-12
 yoga in, 12, 12f
 Mineralocorticoids, 1362
 Mini Nutritional Assessment, 1337, 1338f
 Mini-Cog, 24
 Minimal ascites, 1297
 Minimally invasive direct coronary artery bypass, 849
 Minimally invasive esophagectomy, 1214-1215
 Minimally invasive inguinal repair, 1244
 Minimally invasive surgery, 243t
 in appendicitis, 1267-1268
 in back pain, 963
 bariatric, 1353
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1635
 Minimally invasive surgery (*Continued*)
 in colorectal cancer, 1249
 in craniotomy, 1033-1034
 in diverticular disease, 1286
 in gastric cancer, 1235
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1208
 in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 to monitor intracranial pressure, 1029-1030
 in pancreatic cancer, 1331
 in pancreatic pseudocyst, 1325
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1232, 1233f
 in percutaneous cervical diskectomy, 966
 in prostate cancer, 1639
 surgical suite for, 267, 269f
 in testicular cancer, 1645
 in urolithiasis, 1510
 MiniMed Paradigm insulin pump, 1438f
 Mini-Mental State Examination, 948, 949f
 Minimum Data Set, 94
 Minipress; *See* Prazosin
 Minirin; *See* Desmopressin
 Minitran; *See* Nitroglycerin patch
 Minnesota tube, 1302
 Minor brain injury, 1030b
 Minor burn, 513t
 Minor calyx, 1467f
 Minor head injury, 1020
 Minor surgery, 243t
 Miosis, 1043, 1043f
 Miostat; *See* Carbachol
 Mirapex; *See* Pramipexole
 MIS; *See* Minimally invasive surgery
 Misoprostol
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for NSAID-related gastrointestinal problems, 337
 Mite infestation, 496, 496f
 Mithracin; *See* Pllicamycin
 Mithramycin, 1407
 Mitomycin, 415t-416t, 1626
 Mitosis, 67, 396-397, 398f
 Mitotic index, 403
 Mitoxantrone, 415t-416t, 982
 Mitral area for auscultation, 700f
 Mitral regurgitation, 759, 759b
 Mitral stenosis, 758-759, 759b, 762b
 Mitral valve, 688, 688f
 Mitral valve annuloplasty, 761
 Mitral valve prolapse, 352, 759, 759b
 Mitral valvuloplasty, 761
 Mivacron; *See* Mivacurium
 Mivacurium, 274t
 Mixed aphasia, 1018, 1018t
 Mixed conductive-sensorineural hearing loss, 1084, 1097, 1097f
 Mixed connective tissue disease, 354
 Mixed delirium, 23
 Mixed incontinence, 1498t, 1499, 1506
 Mixing of insulins, 1433, 1433t, 1435b
 MMSE; *See* Mini-Mental State Examination
 Mobile chest drainage system, 636-637, 636f
 Mobility
 after burn injury, 536-538
 assessment of, 1111-1112, 1112f
 fracture and, 1157-1158, 1158f
 multiple sclerosis and, 982
 older adult and, 17-18, 18f
 osteoarthritis and, 331-332, 332b
 postoperative, 257
 in amputation, 1166-1167, 1167f
 in total hip arthroplasty, 328, 328b
 pressure ulcer and, 477
 rehabilitation and
 functional, 99-100, 100t
 physical, 95-99, 96f-97f, 97b
 spinal cord injury and, 973
 spinal cord tumor and, 976-977
 stroke and, 1017b, 1018
 Modafinil, 585
 Models for implementing evidence-based practice, 83-84
 ARCC model in, 83-84
 improvement model in, 84-88, 85f, 87t
 Iowa model in, 83
 Reavy and Tavernier model in, 83, 84t
 Moderate burn, 513t
 Moderate sedation, 276-277, 277t
 Moderate traumatic brain injury, 1020
 Modes of ventilation, 677-678
 Modifiable risk factors, 693, 831
 Modified Brooke formula, 511
 Modified linear accelerator, 1033
 Modified Parkland formula, 511
 Modified radical mastectomy, 1601f, 1602
 MODS; *See* Multiple organ dysfunction syndrome
 Mohs' surgery, 504
 Moist heat injury, 517
 Moisture content of skin, 462, 464t
 Moisture-retentive dressing for pressure ulcer, 483t
 Mole, 502
 Molecular testing for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, 1660-1661
 Mometasone, 610-611
 Moniliasis, 1193
 Monitoring
 for acute compartment syndrome, 1156, 1157b
 after nephrectomy, 1533
 ambulatory blood pressure, 784
 ambulatory pH, 1205
 of anticoagulation therapy, 667b
 blood glucose, 1437-1438, 1438f
 continuous electrocardiographic, 714-715, 715f
 hemodynamic, 750
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 in cardiovascular assessment, 708-710, 708b, 709f
 in hypercalcemia, 191
 in hyperkalemia, 187
 in hypokalemia, 186
 intake and output
 in fluid overload, 179
 in hypercortisolism, 1387
 in hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 postoperative, 289
 of intra-abdominal pressure, 1259
 of intracranial pressure, 1029t
 of mechanical ventilation, 679-681, 679b
 for neurovascular compromise in fracture, 1156-1157, 1157b
 postoperative, 288
 of pressure ulcer, 489b
 in pulmonary embolism, 665
 for respiratory status changes in COPD, 618
 in stroke, 1015
 in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445
 Monoamine oxidase inhibitors
 interaction with sulfonylureas, 1428t
 for Parkinson disease, 944, 944b
 Monoclonal antibodies
 for asthma, 611
 for cancer, 429t, 430
 for chronic leukemia, 884
 for Crohn's disease, 1282
 to prevent transplant rejection, 316
 Monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance, 894
 Monocyte, 307, 857t
 in differential white blood cell count, 307t, 557b
 immune function of, 305t
 Monodox; *See* Doxycycline
 Monokines, 314
 Mons pubis, 1576
 Montelukast, 607b-608b, 611
 Montgomery straps, 295f
 Monurol; *See* Fosfomycin
Moraxella catarrhalis, 613
 Morbid obesity, 1349
 Morbidity, 246
 Morphine, 52
 for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 for angina, 837
 for biliary pain, 1318
 for dyspnea near death, 114
 epidural, 56
 for heart failure, 752
 for moderate sedation, 276
 for pain in traumatic brain injury, 1028
 for postoperative pain, 297, 298b, 1533
 for pulmonary edema in chronic kidney disease, 1553-1555
 for sickle cell crisis, 874
 for urolithiasis, 1510
 Morse Falls Scale, 26-27
 Mortality, 246
 Morton's neuroma, 1139
 Motherwort, 244t
 Motor aphasia, 1018
 Motor cortex, 907
 Motor end plate, 1109
 Motor function
 after stroke, 1009-1011
 in cancer, 409
 in carpal tunnel syndrome, 1171
 in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 987, 987b
 in spinal cord injury, 969, 969b
 Motor function assessment, 289, 916, 916f
 Motor neuron, 906
 Motor vehicle accident
 acceleration and deceleration injuries in, 1021, 1022f
 older adult and, 19
 Motrin; *See* Ibuprofen
 Mourning, 115
 Moustache dressing, 581f
 Mouth, 1178f, 1179
 Mouth problems, 1192-1202
 acute sialadenitis in, 1200-1201
 erythroplakia in, 1195
 leukoplakia in, 1195
 maintenance of health oral cavity and, 1193b
 oral cancer in, 1195-1200, 1196b
 basal cell carcinoma in, 1196
 cervical lymph nodes and, 1196f
 health care resources for, 1200
 home care management in, 1199, 1200b
 Kaposi's sarcoma in, 1196
 nonsurgical management of, 1197-1198, 1197b-1198b
 self-management in, 1200
 squamous cell carcinoma in, 1196
 surgical management of, 1198-1199, 1199b
 oral care in, 1194b
 oral hygiene during intubation and, 1193b
 oral tumors in, 1195-1200
 post-irradiation sialadenitis in, 1201
 salivary gland tumors in, 1201
 stomatitis in, 1193-1195, 1193b-1194b, 1194f
 Movement
 neurovascular status in fracture and, 1149b
 postoperative, 294
 MRCP; *See* Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography
 MRI; *See* Magnetic resonance imaging
 MRSA; *See* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
 MS; *See* Multiple sclerosis
 MSF; *See* Melanocyte-stimulating hormone

- mTOR; *See* Mammalian target of rapamycin
- MTX; *See* Methotrexate
- Mu opioids, 53
- Mucomyst; *See* Acetylcysteine
- Mucosa, 1178, 1178f
- Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma, 893, 1234
- Mucosal barrier fortifiers
for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
for peptic ulcer disease, 1230
- Mucosal erythroplasia, 1196
- Mucosil; *See* Acetylcysteine
- Mucositis, chemotherapy-related, 419, 422, 424b, 633
- Mucous colon, 1240-1241
- Mucous membranes
as defense against infection, 437
fluid overload and, 179b
nasal, 544-545, 583
oxygen therapy drying of, 564-565, 565f
respiratory assessment and, 555
sinusitis and, 641
- Mucus secretions
after laryngectomy, 597
in asthma, 601, 603f
- Multaq; *See* Dronedrone
- Multi-casualty event, 155
- Multidetector computer tomographic angiography, 664
- Multidrug-resistant organisms, 440-443, 443b
methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 442-443, 442b
vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 443
vancomycin-resistant enterococcus in, 443
vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in, 443
- Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis, 657
- Multigated blood pool scanning, 707
- Multikinase inhibitors, 429, 429t
- Multimodal analgesia, 56
- Multimodal therapy in oral cancer, 1197
- Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 syndrome, 1234, 1374b, 1390
- Multiple myeloma, 894-895
- Multiple organ dysfunction syndrome, 814
in abdominal trauma, 1259
in heat stroke, 138
in necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis, 1322
septic shock and, 821f
in sickle cell disease, 874-875
- Multiple sclerosis, 978-983
complementary and alternative medicine for, 982-983
concept map for, 980f-981f
drug therapy for, 980-982, 982b
etiology and genetic risk in, 979
health care resources for, 983
health teaching in, 983
history in, 979
home care management in, 983
incidence and prevalence of, 979
laboratory assessment in, 980
mobility problems in, 982
pathophysiology of, 978-979
physical assessment in, 979-980, 979b
psychosocial assessment in, 980
sexual function in, 980b
- Mumps orchitis, 1650
- Murmur, 700-701, 701t, 882
- Muromonab-CD3, 316
- Muscarinic-receptor antagonists, 1242
- Muscle atrophy
in myasthenia gravis, 992
in older adult, 1109b
in osteoarthritis, 320
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
- Muscle biopsy, 925
- Muscle enzymes, 1114, 1114b
- Muscle flap
for bony defect in osteomyelitis, 1133
for pressure ulcer, 487, 487f
- Muscle relaxants, 322
- Muscle spasm
in black widow spider bite, 144
in hypocalcemia, 189
in multiple sclerosis, 979
in traction patient, 1154
- Muscle strength
changes with aging, 549b
Lovett's scale for, 1113t
- Muscle weakness, 645, 1243
in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983
in black widow spider bite, 144
fracture and, 1146
in heart failure, 754-755
in heat exhaustion, 137
in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
in hypercalcemia, 191
in hypernatremia, 183
in hypokalemia, 184
in hypovolemic shock, 817
in influenza, 645
in leukemia, 881
management in end-of-life care, 113
mechanical ventilation-related, 681
musculoskeletal assessment in, 1111
in osteomalacia, 1128
in peripheral nerve trauma, 998
in pit viper envenomation, 140
in strangulated hernia, 1243
- Muscle(s), 1109
age-related changes in fluid balance and, 170b
alkalosis and, 208
assessment of, 1113, 1113t
effects of insulin on, 1365t
hyperkalemia and, 187
hypernatremia and, 183
hypocalcemia and, 189
hypovolemic shock and, 817
movements of, 1112f
myasthenia gravis and, 992
strain of, 1173
- Muscular dystrophy, 1140-1141, 1140b, 1141t
- Muscularis, 1178
- Musculocutaneous nerve, 997f
- Musculoskeletal assessment, 1106-1118
arthroscopy in, 1116-1117, 1116b, 1117f
biopsies in, 1116
in burn injury, 530
current health problems in, 1111
electromyography in, 1116
family history and genetic risk in, 1110-1111
Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1110b
in hematologic assessment, 863
imaging assessment in, 1114-1115, 1116b
laboratory assessment in, 1113-1114, 1114b
mobility and functional assessment in, 1111-1112, 1112f
muscular system and, 1113, 1113t
neurovascular assessment in, 1113, 1113b
nutrition history in, 1110
in Paget's disease of bone, 1129
patient history in, 1110-1111
posture and gait in, 1111, 1111f
preoperative, 247
psychosocial assessment in, 1113
in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93-94
specific areas in, 1112-1113, 1113f
- Musculoskeletal problems, 1119-1142
benign bone tumors in, 1133-1134
bone cancer in, 1134-1138
Dupuytren's contracture in, 1138
foot deformities in, 1138-1139, 1138f-1139f, 1139t
- Musculoskeletal problems (*Continued*)
ganglion in, 1138
osteomalacia in, 1127-1128, 1127t
osteomyelitis in, 1131-1133, 1131b-1132b, 1131f
osteoporosis in, 1120-1127
community-based care in, 1125-1127
drug therapy for, 1124-1125, 1125b-1126b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
health promotion and maintenance in, 1122
imaging assessment in, 1123-1124
incidence and prevalence of, 1121-1122, 1121b-1122b
laboratory assessment in, 1123
lifestyle changes for, 1124
nutrition therapy in, 1124
osteomalacia *versus*, 1127t
pathophysiology of, 1120-1122, 1120t
physical assessment in, 1122, 1123f
psychosocial assessment in, 1122-1123
Paget's disease of bone in, 1128-1129, 1129b
progressive muscular dystrophies in, 1140-1141, 1140b, 1141t
scoliosis in, 1139-1140
- Musculoskeletal system
acute leukemia and, 882b
aging-related changes as surgical risk factor, 245b
changes related to aging, 1109, 1109b
chronic kidney disease and, 1551b, 1552
complications of immobility and, 99t
Cushing's disease and, 1385b, 1386
hyperkalemia and, 187
hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
hypocalcemia and, 189
hypokalemia and, 184
hypophosphatemia and, 192
hypothyroidism and, 1401b
muscular system and, 1109
musculoskeletal differences in selected groups, 1107t
sickle cell disease and, 872
skeletal system and, 1107-1109
bones in, 1107-1108, 1107f
joints in, 1108-1109, 1109f
- Musculoskeletal trauma, 1143-1174
amputations in, 1163-1168
body image and lifestyle adaptation in, 1167-1168
collaborative care in, 1165-1166, 1166b, 1168b
community-based care in, 1168, 1168b
complications of, 1164, 1164b
diagnostic assessment in, 1165
emergency care in traumatic amputation, 1165
health promotion and maintenance in, 1164-1165
infection prevention in, 1166
levels of, 1163-1164, 1163f, 1164b
mobility and prosthesis in, 1166-1167, 1167f
physical assessment in, 1165
psychosocial assessment in, 1165
types of, 1163
carpal tunnel syndrome in, 1170-1172, 1171b
complex regional pain syndrome in, 1168-1169
fractures in, 1144-1159
acute compartment syndrome and, 1145-1146, 1146b
ankle, 1162
chest and pelvis, 1162
chronic complications in, 1147
classification of, 1144-1145, 1144f
- Musculoskeletal trauma (*Continued*)
community-based care in, 1158-1159
complementary and alternative medicine for, 1154-1155
crush syndrome and, 1146
emergency care of, 1150, 1150b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1147-1148
fat embolism syndrome and, 1146-1147, 1147b
femur, 1161
foot and toe, 1162
health care resources for, 1158
health promotion and maintenance in, 1148
hip, 1159-1161, 1160f
history in, 1148
home care management in, 1158
hypovolemic shock and, 1146
imaging assessment in, 1150
improving physical mobility in, 1157-1158, 1158f
incidence and prevalence of, 1148
infection and, 1147, 1157, 1157b
knee, 1161
laboratory assessment in, 1150
monitoring for neurovascular compromise, 1156-1157, 1157b
neurovascular assessment in, 1149b
nonsurgical management of, 1150-1155, 1151f, 1152t
pain in, 1150-1156
physical assessment in, 1148-1149, 1148b
physical therapy for, 1156
procedures for nonunion of, 1156
psychosocial assessment in, 1149
stages of bone healing and, 1145, 1145b, 1145f
surgical management of, 1148-1159, 1155f
teaching for self-management in, 1158, 1158b
tibia and fibula, 1162
traction for, 1153-1154, 1153t, 1154b, 1154f
upper extremity, 1159-1163
venous thromboembolism and, 1147
vertebral, 1162, 1163b
knee, 1169
anterior cruciate ligament injuries in, 1170
fracture of, 1161
meniscus injuries in, 1169-1170, 1170f
patellofemoral pain syndrome in, 1169
rotator cuff injuries in, 1173
sports-related, 1152b, 1169-1173
sprains and strains in, 1173
tendinopathy and joint dislocation in, 1172-1173
- Music therapy, 11, 12b
for dying patient, 113
for pain in burn injury, 529b
- Mustargen; *See* Mechlorethamine
- Mutamycin; *See* Mitomycin
- Mutation, 71-72, 71b
- Myalgia
in hepatitis, 1307
in influenza, 645
in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
- Myasthenia gravis, 991-996, 991b
diagnostic assessment in, 992-993, 992b
drug therapy for, 993-994, 993b
health care resources for, 996
health teaching in, 996, 996b, 996t
home care management in, 996
myasthenic and cholinergic crises in, 993, 994t

- Myasthenia gravis (*Continued*)
 nutrition issues in, 994-995, 995b
 pathophysiology of, 991
 physical assessment in, 991-992
 plasmapheresis in, 994
 respiratory support in, 993, 993b
 surgical management of, 995, 995b
- Myasthenic crisis, 993, 994t
- Mycobacterium avium* complex, 366
- Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, 653
- Mycophenolate, 315
- Mycostatin; *See* Nystatin
- Mydriasis, 1043, 1043f
- Myelin sheath, 906
- Myelocytic leukemia, 880
- Myelodysplastic syndromes, 879-895
- Myelogenous leukemia, 880
- Myelosuppression
 chemotherapy-related, 419
 in multiple myeloma therapy, 895
- Myenteric nerve plexus, 1178f
- Myfortic; *See* Mycophenolate
- Myoblast transfer therapy, 1141
- Myocardial contractility, 690
 drugs enhancing, 752-753
- Myocardial fibrosis, 347-348
- Myocardial hypertrophy, 747
- Myocardial infarction, 829-831
 cardiac rehabilitation after, 851, 851b
 chest pain in, 696t
 COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b
 electrocardiographic changes and patterns in, 831f
 fibrinolytic drugs for, 862
 heart failure after, 842, 842t
 home care management after, 850b
 key features of, 835b
 older adult and, 835b
 reperfusion therapy for, 839-840
 risk in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 during surgery, 243-244
 twelve-lead electrocardiogram in, 835
- Myocardial inspection and auscultation, 699, 700f
- Myocardial ischemia, 829
- Myocardial nuclear perfusion imaging, 707
- Myocarditis, 335
- Myocardium, 687, 688f, 828
- Myoclonic seizure, 932
- Myoclonus, 917
- Myofibril sarcomere, 689
- Myoglobin, 702, 702b
 burn injury and, 523
- Myoglobinuria
 in coral snake envenomation, 142
 in malignant hyperthermia, 273
- Myoglobinuric renal failure, 1146
- Myoma, 1617-1620, 1617f
- Myomectomy, 1618-1619
- Myometrium, 1576f
- Myopathy, 1111
- Myopia, 1042f, 1043, 1070
- Myositis, 345
- Myosplint, 754
- Myotonic muscular dystrophy, 1141t
- Myringoplasty, 1101, 1101f
- Myringotomy, 1093, 1093f
- Mysoline; *See* Primidone
- Myxedema, 1400, 1401f
- Myxedema coma, 1400-1401, 1403, 1403b
- N**
- N95 respirator mask, 439f
- Nadir, 889
- Nafacillin sodium, 1037
- Nails
 artificial, 439
 assessment of, 463-465, 465f, 465t
 changes with aging, 451, 457f
 common variations in, 466t
 manifestations of endocrine dysfunction and, 1368
 structure of, 453, 453f
- Nalarabine, 415t-416t
- Naloxone, 837
 for epidural opioid-associated itching, 57
 for opioid reversal, 297
- Namenda; *See* Memantine
- Naprosyn; *See* Naproxen
- Naproxen
 gastritis risk and, 1225
 for migraine, 929-930
 nephrotoxicity of, 1451
- Narcan; *See* Naloxone
- Nares, 544f
- Nasal cannula, 565, 566t, 567f
- Nasal drainage, 385
- Nasal fracture, 581, 581f
- Nasal polyp, 583
- Nasalcrom; *See* Cromolyn sodium
- Nasoduodenal tube, 1344, 1344f
- Nasoenteric tube, 1344
- Nasoethmoid complex fracture, 583
- Nasogastric tube
 in abdominal trauma, 1259
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 in bariatric surgery, 1354b
 calculation of drainage from, 290t
 in colorectal cancer surgery, 1249
 to control esophageal bleeding, 1293
 decreased esophageal sphincter function and, 1204
 in diverticular disease, 1285-1286
 in emergency care of surgical wound evisceration, 296
 for enteral nutrition, 1344
 in esophageal surgery, 1216, 1216b
 in gastric analysis, 1190
 in gastric cancer surgery, 1236
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256, 1256b
 in Nissen fundoplication, 1211
 patient preparation for, 254
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1231, 1232b
 in peritonitis, 1269
 postoperative assessment of, 290
 for pyloric obstruction, 1232
 in upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1231
- Nasolacrimal duct, 1042f
- Nasopharyngoscopy, 590
- Nasopharynx, 544f, 545
- Nasoseptoplasty, 581
- Nasotracheal intubation, 587, 676b
- Natacyn; *See* Natamycin
- Natalizumab
 for Crohn's disease, 1282, 1282b
 for multiple sclerosis, 980, 982b
- Natamycin, 1054b
- Nateglinide, 1421, 1423b-1427b
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative medicine, 9, 9t
- National Disaster Medical System, 159
- National Fibromyalgia Association, 354
- National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale, 1009, 1010t-1011t
- National Patient Safety Goals, 2
 fall risk assessment and, 26
 informed consent and, 250
- National Psoriasis Foundation, 353
- National Veterinary Response Team, 159
- Natrecor; *See* Nesiritide
- Natriuresis, 751
- Natriuretic hormones, 1471t
- Natriuretic peptides, 171-172, 747
- Natulan; *See* Procarbazine
- Natural active immunity, 312-313
- Natural chemical d[ac]ebridement of pressure ulcer, 483
- Natural immunity, 305
- Natural killer cell, 313-314, 857t
 immune function of, 305t
 transplant rejection and, 314-315
- Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery, 1319
 in appendicitis, 1267-1268
 in ulcerative colitis, 1276
- Natural passive immunity, 313
- Natural products, 9-10, 9b-10b, 10t
- Naturopath, 8-9
- Nausea
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in botulism, 1290
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 chemotherapy-related, 421-422, 421b-423b
 in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 in coral snake envenomation, 142
 in enteral nutrition, 1346
 in food poisoning, 1289
 in gastric cancer, 1235
 in heat exhaustion, 137
 in leukemia, 882
 in lung cancer, 632
 management at end of life, 114-115
 opioid-induced, 53, 53t
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 postoperative, 290-291
 in renal colic, 1508
 in right-sided heart failure, 748
 in strangulated hernia, 1243
 in vertigo, 1095
- Navelbine; *See* Vinorelbine
- Near point of vision, 1044
- Near vision, 1047
- Near-drowning, 152
- Nearsightedness, 1042f, 1043, 1070
- Nebulizer treatment for COPD, 619
- Neck
 axial loading injury of, 967, 968f
 cancer of, 588-589
 airway obstruction in, 590-594
 anxiety in, 595-596
 aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b
 etiology of, 589
 health care resources for, 597-598
 history in, 589
 home care management in, 596, 596b
 imaging assessment in, 589-590
 incidence and prevalence of, 589
 laboratory assessment in, 589
 pathophysiology of, 588-589
 physical assessment in, 589, 589t
 psychosocial assessment in, 589
 psychosocial support in, 597
 self-concept in, 596
 smoking cessation and, 598b
 speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f
 surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
 teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f
 halo fixator for injury of, 971, 971b, 972f
 hematologic assessment and, 863
 hyperextension injury of, 968f, 969
 hyperflexion injury of, 967, 967f
 nerve block in, 276f
 positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
 trauma to, 588
- Neck dissection, 591
 in oral cancer, 1198
 in thyroid cancer, 1405-1406
- Neck pain, 966, 966b-967b
- Neck vein distention
 in dehydration, 175
 in hypernatremia, 183
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
- Necrosis (*Continued*)
 in frostbite, 150
 ischemic, 1147
 regional anesthesia-associated, 276
- Necrotizing hemorrhagic pancreatitis, 1321, 1328
- Necrotizing otitis, 1089
- Necrotizing vasculitis, 351
- Nedocromil, 607b-608b, 611
- NEECHAM Confusion Scale, 24
- Needle
 insulin, 1435f
 standard precautions and, 441t
- Needle biopsy
 of bone, 1135
 in fibrocystic breast condition, 1589
 of thyroid nodule, 1370
- Needle bladder neck suspension, 1503t
- Needle stick injury, HIV transmission and, 363
- Needless connection device, 221-222, 222f
- Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act, 221-222
- Negative deflection, 713, 713f
- Negative feedback control mechanism of endocrine system, 1359-1360, 1360f
- Negative nitrogen balance, 1394
- Negative pressure wound therapy, 485, 485b
- Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, 1659, 1663
- Neisseria meningitidis*, 435, 938
- Nelfinavir, 371, 372b-374b
- Nembutal; *See* Pentobarbital sodium
- Neoadjuvant chemotherapy, 1605
- Neodermis for burn wound, 532
- Neomycin, 1303
- Neomycin sulfate with polymyxin B sulfate and dexamethasone, 1054b
- Neoplasia, 397
- Neoral; *See* Cyclosporine
- Neostigmine bromide, 992
- Neo-Synephrine; *See* Phenylephrine
- Nephrectomy
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 in renal trauma, 1535
- Nephritis, 1475
- Nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, 1378
- Nephrolithiasis, 1507
- Nephrolithotomy, 1510
- Nephron, 1466, 1467f
 ischemia in acute kidney injury and, 1538
 sodium and water reabsorption in, 1470f
 vascular and tubular components of, 1469t
- Nephronex; *See* Nitrofurantoin
- Nephropathy, diabetic, 1413, 1531-1532, 1531t
- Nephrosclerosis, 1530, 1530b
- Nephrosis, 1475
- Nephrostomy tube
 critical rescue in, 1523b
 in cystectomy, 1514
 for hydronephrosis, 1523
 for urolithiasis, 1510
- Nephrotic syndrome, 1529-1530, 1530b
- Nephrotomography, 1483t
- Nephrotoxicity
 of acetaminophen, 51
 acute kidney injury and, 1540, 1540t
 of antifungals and aminoglycosides, 1451
 of antiviral drugs, 884
 contrast-induced, 1483
- Nerve biopsy, 925
- Nerve block, 275t, 276f
 for chronic pain, 61
 for complex regional pain syndrome, 1168
 for pain after total knee arthroplasty, 330

- Nerve compression in neck pain, 966
- Nerve conduction studies
in back pain, 961
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988
- Nerve damage
cast-related, 1153
intravenous therapy-related,
228t-229t
- Nerve graft, 998-999
- Nerve impulse, 906
- Nerve root pain in spinal cord tumor,
976
- Nervous colon, 1240-1241
- Nesiritide, 751, 751b
- Nettle, 244t
- Neulasta; *See* Pegfilgrastim
- Neumega; *See* Oprelvekin
- Neupogen; *See* Filgrastim
- Neural-induced distributive shock, 812
- Neuritic plaque, 947
- Neuroaxial anesthesia, 324-325
- Neuroendocrine assessment, 530
- Neuroendocrine regulation, 1359
- Neurofibrillary tangles, 947
- Neurogenic bladder, 102t
- Neurogenic bowel, 103t
- Neurogenic pulmonary edema, 1035
- Neurogenic shock in spinal cord injury,
971, 971b
- Neurohypophysis, 1361, 1361f, 1378
- Neuroimaging in migraine, 929
- Neurokinin receptor antagonists, 423b
- Neuroleptic drugs
for Alzheimer's disease, 952
for Huntington disease, 956
- Neurologic assessment, 905-926
- cerebellar function assessment in, 916
- in chronic kidney disease, 1551,
1551b
- cranial nerves assessment in, 915
- Gordon's functional health patterns
in, 914b
- in hematologic assessment, 863-864
- imaging assessment in, 912t, 919-922
- cerebral angiography in, 919-921,
921b
- cerebral blood flow evaluation in,
923
- computed tomography in, 921
- electroencephalography in,
922-923, 922b
- electromyography in, 922
- evoked potentials in, 923
- lumbar puncture in, 923-925, 924t,
925b
- magnetic resonance imaging in,
921-922
- magnetoencephalography in, 922
- muscle and nerve biopsies in, 925
- plain x-rays in, 919
- positron emission tomography in,
922
- single photon emission
computerized tomography in,
922
- transcranial Doppler
ultrasonography in, 925
- laboratory assessment in, 919
- mental status assessment in, 913-915,
914b
- motor function assessment in, 916,
916f
- patient history in, 913, 913b
- postoperative, 288-289, 289t
- preoperative, 247
- psychosocial assessment in, 919
- rapid, 917-919
- reflex activity assessment in, 916-917,
917f
- in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93-94
- sensory assessment in, 915-916
- in traumatic brain injury, 1025-1026
- Neurologic deficits
after stroke, 1018-1019
in brain tumor, 1031-1032
- Neurologic deficits (*Continued*)
in hypopituitarism, 1372
in liver dysfunction, 1297f
in nutrient deficiencies, 1341t
- Neurologic disorders, 927-958
- Alzheimer's disease in, 946-955
- behavioral problems in, 954t
- caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
- chronic confusion in, 950-952,
950t, 951b-952b
- genetic considerations in, 947b
- health care resources for, 955
- health teaching in, 955
- history in, 947-948, 948t
- home care management in, 954-955
- imaging assessment in, 950
- injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
- laboratory assessment in, 950
- pathophysiology of, 946-947
- physical assessment in, 948-949,
948b, 949f
- psychosocial assessment in,
949-950
- brain abscess in, 1036
- brain tumor in, 1031-1036, 1032b
- classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
- community-based care in, 1036
- complications of, 1031
- drug therapy for, 1032-1033
- incidence and prevalence of, 1032
- postoperative complications in,
1035-1036, 1035t
- stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033,
1033f
- surgical management of,
1033-1036, 1034b
- cranial nerve diseases in, 999-1002
- facial paralysis in, 1001-1002
- trigeminal neuralgia in, 1000-1001,
1000f, 1001b
- encephalitis in, 940-941, 941b
- Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome in,
987-991, 987b
- airway management in, 989, 989b
- cardiac dysfunction in, 989
- clinical variants of, 988t
- communication in, 990
- community-based care in, 990-991
- drug therapy and plasmapheresis
for, 988-989, 989b
- immobility in, 989-990
- pain in, 990, 990b
- pathophysiology of, 987, 987t
- psychosocial support in, 990
- headache in, 928-932, 928b
- cluster, 931-932
- migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
- in HIV infection and AIDS, 377-378
- Huntington disease in, 955-956, 956b
- meningitis in, 937-940, 938b-939b
- after craniotomy, 1035
- after pituitary gland removal, 1377
- gonorrhea and, 1661
- laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
- labyrinthitis and, 1095
- neurologic status in, 939b
- myasthenia gravis in, 991-996, 991b
- diagnostic assessment in, 992-993,
992b
- drug therapy for, 993-994, 993b
- health care resources for, 996
- health teaching in, 996, 996b, 996t
- home care management in, 996
- myasthenic and cholinergic crises
in, 993, 994t
- nutrition issues in, 994-995, 995b
- pathophysiology of, 991
- physical assessment in, 991-992
- plasmapheresis in, 994
- respiratory support in, 993, 993b
- surgical management of, 995, 995b
- Parkinson disease in, 941-946,
942b-943b, 942t, 943f
- drug therapy for, 943-944,
944b-945b
- Neurologic disorders (*Continued*)
genetic considerations in, 942b
- psychosocial support in, 945-946
- surgical management of, 946
- peripheral nerve trauma in, 997-999,
997f-998f, 999b
- restless legs syndrome in, 999
- reversible ischemic neurologic deficit
in, 1005
- seizures and epilepsy in, 932-937
- drug therapy for, 933, 933b-934b
- emergency care in, 935-936, 936b
- etiology and genetic risk in, 933
- health teaching in, 933-935, 935b
- older adult and, 932b
- seizure precautions and
management in, 935,
935b-936b
- surgical management of, 936-937
- types of, 932-933
- stroke in, 1005-1007
- bladder and bowel continence in,
1018
- cardiovascular assessment in, 1012
- cerebral perfusion and, 1013-1017,
1013b-1014b
- communication and, 1017-1018,
1018t
- dysphagia in, 1017
- endovascular interventions in, 1014
- etiology and genetic risk in, 1007,
1008b
- health care resources for, 1020
- health promotion and maintenance
in, 1007, 1007b, 1008t
- health teaching in, 1019-1020,
1019f
- history in, 1008
- home care management in, 1019
- imaging assessment in, 1012-1013
- incidence and prevalence of, 1007,
1007b
- increased intracranial pressure in,
1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
- laboratory assessment in, 1012
- left *versus* right hemisphere, 1011b
- mobility and self-care in, 1017b,
1018
- monitoring complications in, 1015
- National Institutes of Health Stroke
Scale in, 1009, 1010t-1011t
- nonsurgical interventions in,
1008b, 1015-1016
- ongoing drug therapy for, 1015
- pathophysiologic changes in brain
in, 1005
- physical assessment in, 1009-1012,
1009b
- psychosocial assessment in, 1012
- sensory and perceptual changes in,
1018-1019
- surgical management of,
1016-1017, 1016b
- types of, 1005-1007, 1005f, 1006t,
1007f
- unilateral body neglect and, 1019
- visual loss in, 1011, 1012f
- transient ischemic attack in, 1005,
1005b
- traumatic brain injury in, 1020-1024
- determining brain death in,
1027-1028
- drug therapy for, 1028
- etiology of, 1023
- fluid and electrolyte management
in, 1028
- health care resources for, 1031
- health promotion and maintenance
in, 1024
- health teaching in, 1030-1031,
1030b
- history in, 1024, 1025b
- home care management in, 1030
- imaging assessment in, 1026
- incidence and prevalence of, 1024
- Neurologic disorders (*Continued*)
increased intracranial pressure in,
1027, 1027b
- laboratory assessment in, 1026
- minor, 1030b
- nutritional status in, 1028
- physical assessment in, 1024-1026,
1025b
- primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
- psychosocial assessment in, 1026
- secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
- sensory, cognitive, and behavioral
changes in, 1028-1029
- surgical management of,
1029-1030, 1029t
- types of force in, 1021, 1022f
- Neurologic status
after coronary artery bypass graft,
848, 848b
- in meningitis, 939b
- Neurologic system
acidosis and, 204b, 205
- acute leukemia and, 882, 882b
- age-related changes in fluid balance
and, 170b
- alkalosis and, 196, 208
- anemia and, 871b
- changes of aging as surgical risk factor
and, 245b
- chronic kidney disease and, 1551,
1551b
- complications of immobility and, 99t
- dehydration and, 176
- fluid overload and, 179b
- hypermagnesemia and, 193
- hyponatremia and, 182-183
- hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
- hypokalemia and, 184
- hypomagnesemia and, 193
- hyponatremia and, 181
- hypophosphatemia and, 192
- hypothyroidism and, 1401b
- hypovolemic shock and, 816
- lightning strike injury and, 147
- manifestations of liver dysfunction
and, 1297f
- manifestations of nutrient deficiencies
and, 1341t
- neuroglial cells in, 906
- neurons in, 906, 906f
- potential complications of surgery
and, 286t
- systemic lupus erythematosus and,
345
- Neuroma
acoustic, 1097
- after upper extremity amputation,
1164
- Neuromuscular blockers, 274t
- Neuromuscular changes
in acidosis, 204b, 205
- in alkalosis, 208, 208b
- in hypercalcemia, 191
- in hyperkalemia, 187
- in hypermagnesemia, 193
- in hypomagnesemia, 193
- in hyponatremia, 181
- in shock, 810b
- Neuromuscular scoliosis, 1140
- Neurotin; *See* Gabapentin
- Neuropathic pain, 41, 43t, 1449
- Neurotin; *See* Gabapentin
- Neurotoxin, 448t
- Neurotransmitters, 906
- Neurovascular assessment
after bone cancer surgery, 1136-1137
- after coronary artery bypass graft,
849b
- after total hip arthroplasty, 327-328,
328b
- in fracture, 1149b, 1156-1157, 1157b
- in musculoskeletal assessment, 1113,
1113b
- in peripheral nerve trauma, 999b
- Neutraceuticals, 9

- Neutralization, 312
- Neutropenia
chemotherapy-related, 419, 419b-420b, 890
in myelodysplastic syndromes, 879
- Neutrophil, 306-307, 306f, 857t
in differential white blood cell count, 557b
immune function of, 305t
- Neutrophilia, 308
- Nevirapine, 371
- Nevus, 502
- New York Heart Association Functional Classification, 696, 697t, 745
- New-onset angina, 829
- Nexavar; *See* Sorafenib
- Nexium; *See* Esomeprazole
- Niacin, 775
- Niaspan; *See* Nicotinic acid
- Nicotinic acid
for atherosclerosis, 775
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for M[gy]eni[ac]jere's disease, 1096
- Nifedipine
for high altitude pulmonary edema, 152
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for pulmonary arterial hypertension, 627
- Night sweats
in pulmonary empyema, 659
in tuberculosis, 654-655
- Nilandron; *See* Nilutamide
- Nilotinib, 418t
- Nilutamide, 1640
- Nimbex; *See* Cisatracurium
- Nipent; *See* Pentostatin
- Nipple discharge, 1597
- Nipride; *See* Sodium nitroprusside
- Nitrates, 843b
for acute heart failure, 752
for coronary artery disease, 828
urinary tract infection and, 1493
in urine, 1478b, 1480
- Nitrek; *See* Nitroglycerin patch
- Nitro-Dur; *See* Nitroglycerin patch
- Nitrofurantoin
for cystitis, 1494
for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Nitrofurazone, 534b-535b
- Nitroglycerin, 843b
for angina, 837
for coronary artery disease, 828
for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, 844
- Nitroglycerin patch, 828
- Nitrolingual translingual spray, 828, 852b
- Nitroprusside, 667-668, 843b
- NitroQuick; *See* Nitroglycerin
- Nitrostat; *See* Nitroglycerin
- Nitrous oxide, 274t, 528
- Nizatidine
for gastric irritation in Cushing's disease, 1388
for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
- Nizoral; *See* Ketoconazole
- NMDA receptor antagonist, 952
- N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonist, 952
- Noiceptive pain, 41, 43t
- Nocturia, 1475
aging and, 1473b
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
hospitalized older adult and, 27
in hyperaldosteronism, 1390
in polycystic kidney disease, 1520
preoperative assessment of, 246
in prostate cancer, 1637
- Nocturnal penile tumescence test, 1642
- Nocturnal polyuria, 1472
- Nodes of Ranvier, 906, 906f
- Nodule, 460f-461f
in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335
vocal cord, 585-586, 586f, 587b
- Nonabsorbable suture, 281
- Nonadherence, 443
- Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, 1309
- Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis, 1309
- Nonbacterial prostatitis, 1649
- Noncompliance, 443
- Noncoring needle, 219, 219f
- Nondisplaced fracture, 1144f
- Non-English speaking patient, 33b
- Nonerosive chronic gastritis, 1221
- Non-exertional heat stroke, 137-138, 138b
- Non-germ cell tumor, 1643, 1643t
- Non-heart-beating donor in kidney transplantation, 1568
- Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, 367, 893-894
- Noninflammatory intestinal disorders, 1240-1265
abdominal trauma in, 1258-1260, 1258b
colorectal cancer in, 1245-1246
colostomy management in, 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f, 1252b-1253b
drug therapy for, 1248
etiology and genetic risk in, 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b
grieving in, 1251-1252
health care resources for, 1253-1254
health promotion and maintenance in, 1246, 1246b
history in, 1246
home care management in, 1252
imaging assessment in, 1247
incidence and prevalence in, 1246
laboratory assessment in, 1247
metastasis in, 1247-1251
pathophysiology of, 1245-1246, 1245f
physical assessment in, 1246-1247, 1247f
postoperative care in, 1249-1251
preoperative care in, 1248-1249, 1249t
psychosocial assessment in, 1247
radiation therapy for, 1248
sexuality concerns with ostomies in, 1253b
surgical management of, 1248-1251, 1248t, 1250f
teaching for self-management in, 1252-1253, 1252b
wound management in, 1251, 1251b
- hemorrhoids in, 1260-1262, 1261f
- herniation in, 1243-1245, 1243f
- intestinal obstruction in, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
- intestinal polyps in, 1260, 1260f
- irritable bowel syndrome in, 1240-1242, 1242b
- malabsorption syndrome in, 1262-1263, 1263b
- Noninvasive breast cancer, 1591-1592
- Noninvasive heart valve reparative procedures, 761, 761b
- Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation, 568-569, 569f, 585
- Noninvasive temporary pacing, 735
- Nonmechanical obstruction, 1254
- Nonmodifiable risk factors, 831
- Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 359, 371, 372b-374b
- Nonoliguric acute kidney injury, 1540
- Non-opioid analgesics, 49-51, 50t
- Nonpharmacologic interventions for pain, 59-61
cognitive-behavioral pain management in, 60-61
complementary and alternative therapies in, 61
- Nonpharmacologic interventions for pain (*Continued*)
at end of life, 114
physical measures in, 59-60, 60f
postoperative, 284, 297-299
- Nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy, 1414, 1414f
- Non-rebreather mask, 566, 566b, 566t, 567f
- Non-small cell lung cancer, 630
- Nonspecific eczematous dermatitis, 497, 498b
- Non-ST elevation myocardial infarction, 829, 836
- Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, 50-51
after head and neck surgery, 593
for carpal tunnel syndrome, 1172
for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for lupus, 346
nephrotoxicity of, 1451, 1475, 1540t
for osteoarthritis pain, 322
ototoxic, 1082t
for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
peptic ulcer disease and, 1227
for pericarditis, 765
for rheumatoid arthritis, 337, 338b-339b
risk for acute gastritis and, 1221
for tendinopathy, 1172
as trigger for asthma, 602
- Nonsustained ventricular tachycardia, 728
- Nontunneled percutaneous central venous catheter, 217-218, 218f
- Nonunion, 1147, 1156
- Nonurgent triage, 127-128, 128t
- Norcuron; *See* Vecuronium
- Norepinephrine
adrenal medulla secretion of, 1362
for anaphylaxis, 390b
for cardiac arrest, 733
for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
- Norfloracin
for bacterial infection in cirrhosis, 1302
for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Normal breath sounds, 553-554, 554t
- Normal flora, 435
- Normal saline for hypovolemic shock, 818, 818b
- Normal sinus rhythm, 718-719, 719f
- Normeperidine, 52-53
- Normiflo; *See* Ardeparin
- Noroxin; *See* Norfloxacin
- Norpace; *See* Disopyramide
- phosphate
- Norpramin; *See* Desipramine;
- Nortriptyline
- North American pit vipers, 139f, 140-141, 141t
- Northyx; *See* Methimazole
- Nortriptyline
for fibromyalgia, 354
for urinary incontinence, 1502b
for pain management, 58
- Norvasc; *See* Amlodipine
- Norvir; *See* Ritonavir
- Norwalk virus, 1270-1271, 1270t
- Nose, 544-545, 544f-545f
allergic rhinitis and, 384-385, 385f
cancer of, 583
fracture of, 581, 581f
physical assessment of, 551-552
polyps of, 583
rhinitis and, 641
- Nosebleed, 582-583, 582b, 582f
in Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 393
- Nosocomial infection, 267, 437-438; *See* also Health care-associated infection
- NOTES; *See* Natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery
- Novantrone; *See* Mitoxantrone
- Novapressin; *See* Terlipressin
- Novelty diet, 1352
- Novofuran; *See* Nitrofurantoin
- Novonidazole; *See* Metronidazole
- Novopentobarb; *See* Pentobarbital sodium
- Novo-Pramine; *See* Imipramine
- Novoprofen; *See* Ibuprofen
- NPO status, 252-253
- NPPV; *See* Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation
- NSAIDs; *See* Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs
- NSVT; *See* Nonsustained ventricular tachycardia
- N-telopeptide, 1123
- N-type calcium channel blockers, 965
- Nuchal rigidity
in meningitis, 938
in traumatic brain injury, 1026
- Nuclear, biologic, and chemical threats, 156
- Nucleic acid amplification test
for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, 1662
for gonorrhea, 1660-1661
for tuberculosis, 655
- Nucleoside analog reverse transcriptase inhibitors, 359, 371, 372b-374b
- Nucleotide, 66f, 67
- Nulliparity, breast cancer risk and, 1592-1593
- Numeric pain distress scale, 48, 48f
- Nupercainal; *See* Dibucaine
- Nurse
circulating, 264
holding area, 264
infusion, 211
postanesthesia unit, 285
in response to health care facility fire, 156b
role in emergency and disaster preparedness, 159, 163
scrub, 266, 266f, 271f
specialty, 266
- Nursing assistant, 92
- Nursing technician, 92
- Nutrient deficiencies, 1341t
- Nutrition
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and, 376
acute pancreatitis and, 1325
after burn injury, 536
after head and neck surgery, 593
chronic kidney disease and, 1555-1556, 1555t
cultural aspects of, 35-36
esophageal cancer and, 1213-1217, 1213b
hyperkalemia and, 188b
ileostomy and, 1279b
impairment in cancer, 409
malabsorption syndrome and, 1263
myasthenia gravis and, 994-995, 995b
older adult and, 16-17, 26
osteoporosis and, 1121
pressure ulcer prevention and, 101, 476
standards for health promotion and maintenance, 1336-1337, 1336b, 1336f, 1336t
tracheostomy and, 577, 577b
- Nutrition history
in cardiovascular assessment, 694
in dehydration, 175
in endocrine assessment, 1366-1367
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1181-1182, 1181b
in musculoskeletal assessment, 1110
in obesity, 1351
in renal assessment, 1474-1475
in reproductive assessment, 1579
in vision assessment, 1045

- Nutrition therapy
 in acute kidney injury, 1543-1545
 in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
 in ascites, 1300
 in atherosclerosis, 774-775
 in chronic kidney disease, 1555-1556
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621
 in cirrhosis, 1304
 in Crohn's disease, 1282
 in cystitis, 1494
 in diabetes mellitus, 1438-1441, 1440t
 hypoglycemia and, 1452
 kidney disease and, 1451
 in diverticular disease, 1285-1286
 in esophageal diverticula, 1217-1218
 in fluid overload, 179
 in gout, 350
 in heart failure, 751-752, 757
 in hepatic encephalopathy, 1299
 in HIV infection and AIDS, 376
 in hypercortisolism, 1387
 in hyponatremia, 183
 in hypocalcemia, 190
 in hyponatremia, 182
 in hypophosphatemia, 192
 in leukemia, 890
 in malnutrition, 1342-1343, 1342b-1343b
 in M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 in obesity, 1352
 in osteoporosis, 1124
 postoperative
 in diabetes mellitus, 1445
 in esophageal surgery, 1216
 in head and neck surgery, 593
 in pressure ulcer, 485
 in prevention of obstruction in urolithiasis, 1511, 1511t
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in ulcerative colitis, 1275
 in urge incontinence, 1504
 in urinary incontinence, 1501
 in urolithiasis, 1511, 1511t
- Nutritional assessment, 1337-1340
 anthropometric measurements in, 1337-1340
 initial screening in, 1337, 1337b, 1338f
 older adult and, 17b, 1339b
- Nutritional screening, 1336b, 1337, 1338f
- Nutritional status, 1337
 in hematologic assessment, 862
 in integumentary assessment, 458
 preoperative assessment of, 247
 in pressure ulcer, 477
 in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
 in respiratory assessment, 550
 socioeconomic status and, 1182
 in traumatic brain injury, 1028
- Nutritional supplements, 1343
- Nutritional-metabolic pattern
 in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
 in endocrine assessment, 1366b
 in fluid and electrolyte assessment, 205b
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1182b
 in hematologic assessment, 861b
 in renal assessment, 1474b
- NYHA staging system, 745
- Nystagmus, 979, 1047
- Nystatin, 1195
- O**
- Obesity, 1349-1350
 atrial fibrillation and, 727b
 behavioral management of, 1353
 breast cancer risk and, 1593
 community-based care in, 1355-1356
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 1353
 complications of, 1350, 1350t
 in Cushing's disease, 1384f
- Obesity (*Continued*)
 diet programs for, 1351-1352
 drug therapy for, 1352-1353, 1353b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1350, 1350b
 exercise program for, 1352
 gallstones and, 1317b
 gastroesophageal reflux disease and, 1206
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1350, 1351t
 herniation and, 1243-1244
 in metabolic syndrome, 1417
 nutrition therapy for, 1352
 pathophysiology of, 1349-1350
 physical assessment in, 1351
 preoperative assessment of, 247
 psychosocial assessment in, 1351
 risk for coronary artery disease and, 694, 833
 surgical management of, 1353-1355, 1354b-1355b, 1354f
- Obligatory solute excretion, 1481-1482
- Obligatory urine output, 171
- Oblique fracture, 1144f
- Obstruction
 airway, 586-588, 588f
 burn-related, 521t
 in facial trauma, 583
 in head and neck cancer, 590-594
 in pharyngitis, 643b
 in pneumonia, 651
 respiratory acidosis and, 203
 in status asthmaticus, 611
 in tonsillitis, 644
 in vocal cord paralysis, 585
 biliary
 after liver transplantation, 1312
 in cirrhosis, 1294-1295
 in gallstones, 1316, 1316f
 laboratory assessment in, 1298
 bladder outlet, 1630, 1630f
 intestinal, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b, 1273t
 pyloric, 1227
 of tracheostomy tube, 571
 urinary
 cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1522-1523, 1522f
 reduced urine formation in, 1538
 in urolithiasis, 1511-1512
- Obstructive jaundice
 in cholecystitis, 1316
 in cirrhosis, 1295t, 1309
- Obstructive shock, 812
 functional impairment in, 810t
 in older adult, 823b
- Obstructive sleep apnea, 584-585
- Occipital lobe, 907, 907t
- Occipital lymph nodes, 1196f
- Occipital-to-posterior inferior cerebellar artery bypass, 1016
- Occlusive dressing, 804
- Occupational exposure to infection, 443
- Occupational pulmonary disease, 628-630, 629b
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 443
- Occupational therapist, 91, 91f
- Octreotide
 for acromegaly, 1375-1376
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 for sulfonylurea-induced hypoglycemia, 1452-1453
 to suppress gastric acid secretion, 1231
- OCTT; *See* Oral glucose tolerance test
- Ocu-Caine; *See* Proxymetacaine
- Ocu-Carpine; *See* Pilocarpine
- Ocufen; *See* Flurbiprofen
- Ocuflox; *See* Ofloxacin
- Ocular compress, 1055b
- Ocular irrigation, 1072b
- Ocular melanoma, 1072-1073, 1073b
- Ocular prosthesis, 1073b
- Ocular trauma, 1071-1072
 contusion in, 1071
 foreign bodies in, 1071, 1072b
 hyphema in, 1071
 lacerations in, 1071-1072
 penetrating injuries in, 1072
- Oculomotor nerve, 912t
- Ocu-Pred; *See* Prednisolone
- Ocupress; *See* Carteolol
- Ocusert; *See* Pilocarpine
- Odor of urine, 1478b
- Odynophagia
 in esophageal cancer, 1212
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
 in pharyngitis, 642
- Ofatumumab, 884
- Off-pump coronary artery bypass, 850
- Ofloxacin
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- OKT3; *See* Muromonab-CD3
- Older adult, 15-29
 acid-base imbalance in, 202b
 acquired immunodeficiency syndrome in, 361b, 375b
 acute glomerulonephritis in, 1528b
 Alzheimer's disease in, 23, 946-955
 behavioral problems in, 954t
 caregiver role strain in, 954, 954b
 chronic confusion in, 950-952, 950t, 951b-952b
 genetic considerations in, 947b
 health care resources for, 955
 health teaching in, 955
 history in, 947-948, 948t
 home care management in, 954-955
 imaging assessment in, 950
 injury prevention in, 952-954, 953b
 laboratory assessment in, 950
 pathophysiology of, 946-947
 physical assessment in, 948-949, 948b, 949f
 psychosocial assessment in, 949-950
 anemia in, 876b
 appendicitis in, 1267b
 asthma in, 603b
 body weight and body mass index of, 1339b
 bone healing in, 1145b
 burn in, 521b, 527b
 cancer in
 bladder, 405b
 chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting and, 422b
 chemotherapy-induced neutropenia and, 419b
 colorectal, 405b
 leukemia in, 405b
 lung, 405b
 malignant external otitis media in, 1131b
 oral, 1199b
 prostate, 405b
 cardiovascular assessment in, 696b
 causes of cognitive impairment in, 948t
 cerumen impaction in, 1091b
 changes in fluid balance in, 170b
 chronic respiratory problems in, 601b
 clinical breast examination in, 1597b
 coronary artery disease in, 841b
 decreased mobility in, 17-18, 18f
 decreased nutrition and hydration in, 16-17
 dehydration in, 176f
 dementia in, 23, 50b
 depression in, 22-23, 23f, 24b, 112b
- Older adult (*Continued*)
 diabetes mellitus in, 1440b, 1442b
 activity program for, 1442b
 diabetic retinopathy and, 1415b
 hyperglycemic-hyperosmolar state in, 1440b, 1457b
 hypoglycemia and, 1454b
 dietary and herbal supplements and, 9b
 diverticulitis in, 1286b
 driving safety and, 19-20, 20b
 elder neglect and abuse and, 20-22
 adverse effects of drugs and, 20, 21t
 drug dosages and, 51b
 medication assessment and health teaching in, 21-22, 21t
 self-administration of drugs and, 20-21, 21f
 tricyclic antidepressants and, 22b
 dysrhythmias in, 740b
 elder neglect and abuse and, 25
 emergency care of, 122b
 discharge from emergency department and, 129b
 patient assessment and, 126b
 endocrine system of, 1365, 1365b
 end-of-life care for
 depression and, 112b
 end-of-life symptoms and, 110b
 hospice and, 108b
 pain management in, 112b
 epilepsy in, 932b
 eye problems in, 1065b
 fall prevention and, 19
 fecal impaction in, 1258b
 fracture in, 436b
 Clostridium difficile and, 449
 hip, 1160b-1161b
 gallstones in, 1317b-1318b
 gastroesophageal reflux disease in, 1205b
 gastrointestinal system of, 1181b
 head injury in, 1025b
 hearing changes in, 1080b
 hearing loss in, 1099b
 heart failure in, 747b, 750b
 heat-related illness in, 137b
Helicobacter pylori infection in, 1229b
 hematologic assessment in, 861b
 hemodialysis and, 1563b
 hospitalized or institutionalized, 26-28
 confusion, falls, and skin breakdown in, 26-28
 sleep, nutrition, and incontinence issues in, 26
 immune function and, 304b
 impaired vision in, 1065b
 infection risk in
 Clostridium difficile and, 449
 fracture and, 1157b
 infusion therapy in, 227-234
 cardiac and renal status changes and, 233-234
 catheter securement and, 230b
 skin care in, 227
 vein and catheter selection in, 227-233
 loop diuretics and, 780b
 low back pain in, 960b
 malnutrition in, 1335, 1340b, 1342b-1343b
 mental health and behavioral health problems in, 22-25
 alcohol use and abuse in, 24-25
 delirium in, 23-24
 dementia in, 23
 depression in, 22-23, 23f, 24b
 musculoskeletal assessment in, 1109, 1109b
 myocardial infarction in, 835b
 neurologic changes in, 912b
 normal plasma electrolyte values for, 170b
 nutritional screening and, 1339b

Older adult (*Continued*)

oral candidiasis in, 1193b
 oral hygiene during intubation, 1193b
 pain and, 44b-45b
 peritonitis in, 1285b
 pneumonia in, 650b
 pressure ulcer in, 476b
 rehabilitation and, 92b
 renal changes associated with aging in, 1473b
 renal function studies in, 1477b
 reproductive system of, 1579b
 seizure in, 932b-933b
 shock in, 823b
 skin of, 451
 spinal cord injury in, 975b
 stress and loss and, 18-19
 surgery and
 bowel preparation in, 1483b
 confusion after, 1636b
 coronary artery bypass graft in, 850b
 increased risk for surgical complications and, 243, 245b
 intraoperative care and, 279b
 postoperative skin care and, 294b
 preoperative care and, 245b-246b
 total hip arthroplasty in, 326b
 syncope in, 696b
 tai chi and, 13b
 thyroid problems in, 1404b
 tracheostomy in, 578b
 transfusion therapy in, 899b
 tricyclic antidepressants and, 990b
 urinary incontinence in, 17b, 1499b
 ventilator dependence and, 681b
 vision problems in, 1065b
 wound healing in, 473b
 Oclecranon fracture, 1159
 Olfactory nerve, 544-545, 912t
 Oligomenorrhea, 1385
 Oligospermia, 1644
 Oliguria, 1474t
 in acute kidney injury, 1538
 in intrarenal azotemia, 1542
 preoperative assessment of, 246
 in renal colic, 1508
 Oliguric acute kidney injury, 1539, 1540t
 Olsalazine, 1275t
 Olympic tracheostomy button, 578
 Omalizumab, 611, 611b
 Omega-3 ethyl esters, 775
 Omega-3 fatty acids
 for elevated serum lipid levels, 833
 prostate cancer and, 1637
 Omeprazole
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1229
 for Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234
 Omeprazole/sodium bicarbonate, 1206
 Oncaspar; *See* Pegaspargase;
 Procabazine
 Oncofetal antigens, 1185
 Oncogene, 399
 Oncogene activation, 403
 Oncogenesis, 399-401, 399t
 Oncogenic osteomalacia, 1127
 Oncologic emergencies, 430-433
 hypercalcemia in, 431
 sepsis and disseminated intravascular coagulation in, 430
 spinal cord compression in, 431
 superior vena cava syndrome in, 431-432, 432f
 syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone in, 430-431
 tumor lysis syndrome in, 432-433, 432f
 Oncovin; *See* Vincristine
 Ondansetron
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b

Ondansetron (*Continued*)

 for postoperative nausea and vomiting, 290
 Onglyza; *See* Saxagliptin
 On-Q PainBuster pump, 223, 223f
 Onychomycosis, 464
 Oophorectomy, 1597
 Opacity, corneal, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f
 Open carpal tunnel release, 1172
 Open colon resection, 1249
 Open commissurotomy, 761
 Open fracture, 1144, 1144f
 Open head injury, 1020-1021
 Open meniscectomy, 1169-1170
 Open orchiectomy, 1645, 1645b
 Open radical prostatectomy, 1639, 1639b
 Open reduction with internal fixation, 1155
 in hip fracture, 1160, 1160f, 1161b
 in jaw fracture, 584
 Open retroperitoneal lymph node dissection, 1646
 Open skull fracture, 1021
 Open surgical approach for Nissen fundoplication, 1210, 1210f
 Open ureterolithotomy, 1510
 Open-angle glaucoma, 1063, 1063f-1064f, 1063t
 Open-chest cardiac massage, 739
 Operating room, 266-270
 health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
 layout of, 266-267, 268f
 minimally invasive and robotic surgery and, 267, 269f
 patient transfer to, 260
 surgical attire and, 267-270, 270f
 surgical scrub and, 270, 271f
 Operating room staff, 264-266
 Operating room technician, 266
 Ophthalmic artery, 1041
 Ophthalmic division of trigeminal nerve, 1000f
 Ophthalmic nerve, 1000f
 Ophthalmic ointment, 1053b, 1053f
 Ophthalmoplegia, 988t
 Ophthalmoscopy, 1049, 1049f, 1050t
 Ophthet; *See* Proxymetacaine
 Ophtho-Tate; *See* Prednisolone
 Opioid analgesics, 50t, 51-58, 53t
 for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 for anesthesia, 274t
 for angina, 837
 for biliary pain, 1318
 for dyspnea near death, 114
 epidural, 56
 for fracture pain, 1154
 for head and neck surgery, 593
 for heart failure, 752
 for moderate sedation, 276
 overdose of, 299b
 for pain in HIV infection and AIDS, 376
 parenteral routes of, 54-58, 55t-56t
 for postoperative pain, 297, 298b, 1533
 for pulmonary edema in chronic kidney disease, 1553-1555
 for sickle cell crisis, 874
 side effects of, 53-54, 53t
 for traumatic brain injury, 1028
 for urolithiasis, 1510
 Opportunistic infections
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 360, 365-367, 366f
 after liver transplantation, 1312
 Oprelvekin, 421, 427t
 Optic disc, 1040, 1040f
 Optic fundus, 1040, 1040f
 Optic nerve, 912t, 1040f-1041f, 1041f
 laser imaging of, 1051
 Optical Immunoassay, 642

Oral cancer, 1195-1200, 1196b

 basal cell carcinoma in, 1196
 cervical lymph nodes and, 1196f
 health care resources for, 1200
 home care management in, 1199, 1200b
 Kaposi's sarcoma in, 1196
 nonsurgical management of, 1197-1198, 1197b-1198b
 self-management in, 1200
 squamous cell carcinoma in, 1196
 surgical management of, 1198-1199, 1199b
 Oral candidiasis, 366, 366f, 1193, 1193b, 1194f
 Oral cavity, 1179
 Oral cavity problems, 1192-1202
 acute sialadenitis in, 1200-1201
 erythroplakia in, 1195
 leukoplakia in, 1195
 maintenance of health oral cavity and, 1193b
 oral cancer in, 1195-1200, 1196b
 basal cell carcinoma in, 1196
 cervical lymph nodes and, 1196f
 health care resources for, 1200
 home care management in, 1199, 1200b
 Kaposi's sarcoma in, 1196
 nonsurgical management of, 1197-1198, 1197b-1198b
 self-management in, 1200
 squamous cell carcinoma in, 1196
 surgical management of, 1198-1199, 1199b
 oral care in, 1194b
 oral hygiene during intubation and, 1193b
 oral tumors in, 1195-1200
 post-irradiation sialadenitis in, 1201
 salivary gland tumors in, 1201
 stomatitis in, 1193-1195, 1193b-1194b, 1194f
 Oral cavity tumor, 1195-1200
 Oral chemotherapeutic agents, 418, 418t
 Oral contraceptives
 cardiovascular assessment and, 694
 for dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 for endometriosis, 1612
 for fibrocystic breast condition, 1589
 Oral drug administration, 55t-56t
 Oral endotracheal tube, 676b
 Oral food challenge, 386
 Oral glucose tolerance test, 1370, 1419-1420, 1419b
 Oral hairy leukoplakia, 1195
 Oral hygiene, 1194b
 during chemotherapy, 422, 424b
 in HIV infection and AIDS, 376
 during intubation, 1193b
 in lung cancer, 633
 during mechanical ventilation, 648b
 in oral cancer, 1197
 tracheostomy and, 576
 Oral phosphates for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
 Oral rehydration therapy, 177
 Orbit, 1040
 Orbital-zygoma fracture, 583
 Orchiectomy
 in epididymitis, 1650
 in testicular cancer, 1645
 Orchitis, 1578
 Orencia; *See* Abatacept
 Orexins, 1349
 Organ of Corti, 1079
 Organic erectile dysfunction, 1642
 Organ; *See* Danaparoid
 Orientation assessment, 914
 ORIF; *See* Open reduction with internal fixation
 Orlistat, 1352
 Oropharyngeal airway, 737

Oropharynx, 544f, 545

 peritonsillar abscess and, 644
 pharyngitis and, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 tonsillitis and, 644, 644b
 Orotracheal intubation, 587
 Orthopnea, 551
 in acute respiratory failure, 671
 cardiovascular assessment and, 695
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 614-616, 614f
 in heart failure, 748
 Orthopneic position, 614, 614f
 Orthostatic hypotension, 698
 angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor-related, 783b
 bromocriptine-related, 1375
 in cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, 1416
 in dehydration, 175
 in hypertension, 778
 in pneumonia, 650
 in rehabilitation setting, 97b
 Orthotopic heart transplantation, 769, 769f
 Oseltamivir, 645-646
 OSHA; *See* Occupational Safety and Health Administration
 Osmitol; *See* Mannitol
 Osmolality, 168
 Osmolarity, 168
 of blood, 1477
 of body fluids, 180f
 of enteral feeding products, 1346-1347
 of urine, 1481-1482
 Osmoreceptor, 169
 Osmosis, 168-169, 169f
 Osmotic dehydration, 1347
 Ossiculoplasty, 1101, 1101f
 Osteitis deformans, 1128-1129
 Osteoarthritis, 319-320
 chronic pain in, 321-331
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 323, 323b
 drug therapy for, 322
 etiology and genetic risk for, 319b, 320
 health care resources for, 332-333
 health promotion and maintenance in, 320
 health teaching in, 332, 332b
 history in, 320
 home care management in, 332
 imaging assessment in, 321
 improving mobility in, 331-332, 332b
 incidence and prevalence of, 320
 laboratory assessment in, 321
 pathophysiology of, 319-320, 319f
 physical assessment in, 320-321
 psychosocial assessment in, 321
 rheumatoid arthritis *versus*, 321t
 surgical management of, 323-331
 hand and foot arthroplasties in, 331
 total elbow arthroplasty in, 331
 total hip arthroplasty in, 324-329
 total knee arthroplasty in, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 total shoulder arthroplasty in, 331
 Osteoarthritis, 319
 Osteoblast, 1107
 Osteoclast, 1107
 Osteocyte, 1107, 1107f
 Osteodystrophy, 1552
 Osteogenic sarcoma, 1134
 genetic considerations in, 1110-1111
 Paget's disease of bone and, 1129-1130
 Osteogenic tumor, 1133
 Osteoid, 1107
 Osteomalacia, 1127-1128, 1127t
 chronic kidney disease and, 1127, 1127t
 Osteomyelitis, 1131-1133, 1131b-1132b, 1131f, 1147

- Osteonecrosis
fracture and, 1147
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
total joint arthroplasty for, 323
- Osteopenia, 1109, 1120
- Osteophyte, 319, 966
- Osteoporosis, 188b, 1120-1127
aging adult and, 1109
community-based care in, 1125-1127
compression fracture of spine in, 1122
drug therapy for, 1124-1125, 1125b-1126b
etiology and genetic risk in, 1120-1121, 1120b-1121b
growth hormone deficiency and, 1372
health promotion and maintenance in, 1122
hip fracture and, 1160
hypocalcemia and, 190
imaging assessment in, 1123-1124
incidence and prevalence of, 1121-1122, 1121b-1122b
laboratory assessment in, 1123
lifestyle changes for, 1124
nutrition therapy in, 1124
osteomalacia *versus*, 1127t
pathophysiology of, 1120-1122, 1120t
physical assessment in, 1122, 1123f
psychosocial assessment in, 1122-1123
ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease and, 1273t
- Osteoprotegerin, 1121b
- Osteosarcoma, 1134
- Osteotomy
in bunionectomy, 1138
in hammertoe surgery, 1139
in osteoarthritis, 323
- Ostomate, 1276
- Ostomy, 1253b, 1277
- Otitis, external, 1089-1090, 1089b, 1089f
- Otitis media, 1092-1093, 1092f-1093f
- Otorrhea, 937
- Otosclerosis, 1095
- Otoscope, 1083, 1083f
- Otoscopic examination, 1083, 1083f, 1099
- Ototoxic drugs, 884, 1081, 1082t
- Outflow disease, 786-787, 787f
- Outpatient surgery, 240
- Ova and parasites, 1185
- Oval window of middle ear, 1079
- Ovarian cancer, 1579, 1626-1627, 1626t
- Ovarian cyst, 1617
- Ovarian hormones, 1359t
- Ovary, 1576f, 1577
- Overactive bladder, 101, 1497-1499
- Overdose
of anesthesia, 275
of benzodiazepines, 293, 293b
of opioid analgesics, 299b
- Overflow incontinence, 1498t, 1499
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
urethral stricture and, 1497
- Overhydration, 178
- Over-the-counter drugs
nonsteroidal antiinflammatory, 50
older adult and, 20
- Overweight, 694, 1349
- Ovide; *See* Malathion
- Ovoid pupil in traumatic brain injury, 1025
- Ovulatory dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
- Oxaliplatin, 415t-416t
for colorectal cancer, 1248
for esophageal cancer, 1214
- Oxazepam, 58
- Oxcarbazepine, 934b, 962
- Oxybutynin
for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
for urinary incontinence, 1502b
for urolithiasis, 1510
- Oxycodone, 52, 297, 298b
- Oxycodone with acetaminophen, 298b
- Oxycodone with aspirin, 298b
- Oxygen concentrator, 570
- Oxygen delivery systems, 565-569
high-flow, 566-568, 568t
face tent, aerosol mask, tracheostomy collar, and T piece in, 567-568, 568f
Venturi mask in, 567, 568f
low-flow, 565-566, 566t
nasal cannula in, 565, 567f
non-rebreather mask in, 566, 566b, 566t, 567f
partial rebreather mask in, 565-566, 567f
simple facemask in, 565, 567f
- Oxygen dissociation, 857
- Oxygen saturation
in acute respiratory failure, 669-670
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
cultural considerations in, 548b
hypovolemic shock and, 816
postoperative, 293
in respiratory assessment, 557b
in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
- Oxygen therapy, 563-570, 563f
in acute respiratory failure, 671
after pneumonectomy, 637-638
in angina, 837
in asthma, 611, 611b
in burn injury, 525
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 619, 619b
in dyspnea near death, 114
hazards and complications of, 563-565, 563b
absorption atelectasis in, 564, 564b
bacterial contamination of oxygen delivery system in, 565, 565b
combustion in, 563-564
drying of mucous membranes in, 564-565, 565f
oxygen toxicity in, 564
oxygen-induced hypoventilation in, 564
in heart failure, 750b
in heat stroke, 138-139
high-flow delivery systems for, 566-568, 568f, 568t
home care management in, 569-570, 570f
in hypovolemic shock, 818
low-flow delivery systems for, 565-566, 566t
facemasks in, 565-566, 567f
nasal cannula in, 565, 567f
in lung cancer, 638
noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in, 568-569, 569f
in pneumonia, 651
postoperative, 293-294
in pulmonary embolism, 665
in pulmonary fibrosis, 628
in respiratory acidosis, 206-207
in sepsis and septic shock, 825
in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
in sickle cell crisis, 875
smoking contraindication in, 570b
transtracheal, 569
- Oxygen toxicity, 564
- Oxygenation
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and, 375-376
cancer and, 410
cardiovascular system in, 687
hematologic system role in, 855, 856f
oxygen therapy and, 562, 563f
rapid-onset acute respiratory problems and, 662, 663f
red blood cells and, 870
respiratory system role in, 544, 544f
shock and, 809-811, 809f, 811f
- Oxygenation failure, 670, 670t
- Oxygenation saturation, 556
- Oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve, 547-548, 547f
- Oxygen-induced hypoventilation, 564
- Oxytocin, 1361t
- P**
- P wave, 715, 716f, 718
- PACE method for patient reporting, 4
- Pacemaker, sinus node as, 720
- Pacemaker insertion, 738, 739f, 741b
- Pacerone; *See* Amiodarone
- Packed red blood cells, 897t
- Pack-years, 549, 693
- Paclitaxel, 415t-416t
for cervical cancer, 1626
for esophageal cancer, 1214
- PACU; *See* Postanesthesia care unit
- PAD; *See* Peripheral arterial disease
- Paget's disease of bone, 1128-1129, 1129b
- Pain, 39-63
abdominal
in acute pancreatitis, 1322-1325
in appendicitis, 1267, 1267f
in black widow spider bite, 144
in botulism, 1290
bromocriptine-related, 1375
in cholecystitis, 1317
in chronic pancreatitis, 1326
in coral snake envenomation, 142
in Crohn's disease, 1281
in diverticulitis, 1285
evaluation of, 1182
in gastric cancer, 1235
in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1522-1523
in intestinal obstruction, 1255
in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
in pancreatic cancer, 1330
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
in peritonitis, 1269
in sickle cell disease, 872
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 376
acute, 41
characteristics of, 40t
fentanyl for, 52
in peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230
physical assessment in, 46
psychosocial assessment in, 40
addiction, pseudoaddiction, tolerance, and physical dependence and, 44-45
in anorectal abscess, 1287
in aortic dissection, 796
attitudes and practices related to, 43
back, 960-965
acute low back pain in, 962
chronic low back pain in, 962, 962b
complementary and alternative medicine in, 962-963
health care resources for, 965
health promotion and maintenance in, 960-961, 961b
health teaching in, 965, 965b
home care management in, 964-965
imaging assessment in, 961
pathophysiology of, 960, 960b, 960f
physical assessment in, 961
surgical management of, 963-964, 964b
in benign bone tumor, 1134
in burn, 512, 527-529, 528b-529b
in cancer, 409
categorization of, 40-41, 40t
chest, 695, 695b
in chronic stable angina pectoris, 829
drug therapy for, 836-837
emergency care in, 836, 836b
- Pain (*Continued*)
in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204
home care management of, 852b
in lung cancer, 632, 638
physical assessment in, 834
respiratory assessment and, 551
in tuberculosis, 654-655
types of, 696t
in unstable angina pectoris, 829
chronic, 41
in cancer, 409
characteristics of, 40t
epidural analgesia for, 57, 236
invasive techniques for, 61
in irritable bowel syndrome, 1240-1241
in osteoarthritis, 321-331
in peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230
physical assessment in, 46
psychosocial assessment in, 49
in trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
community-based care in, 61-62
definitions of, 40
in diabetes mellitus, 1449
drug therapy for, 49-59, 50t
adjuvant analgesics in, 58-59
epidural analgesia in, 56-57, 58f
evidence-based practice in, 50b
intrathecal analgesia in, 57-58
non-opioid analgesics in, 49-51
older adult and, 51b
opioid analgesics in, 51-58, 53t
patient-controlled analgesia in, 54-56, 54f
routes of analgesic administration in, 55t-56t
in endometriosis, 1612
in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
in fibrocystic breast condition, 1589
in fracture, 1148b, 1150-1156
in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990, 990b
headache, 928-932, 928b
after craniotomy, 1035
bromocriptine-related, 1375
cluster, 931-932
in coral snake envenomation, 142
in heat exhaustion, 137
in hypopituitarism, 1372
in influenza, 645
migraine, 928-931, 929b-931b, 930t
in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
in toxic shock syndrome, 1615
health care resources for, 62
health teaching in, 61
in hemorrhoids, 1260-1261
in hiatal hernia, 1209
in hip fracture, 1161b
history of, 46
home care management in, 61
invasive techniques for, 61
kidney, 1475
in lung abscess, 658
in lung cancer, 637-638
in Lyme disease, 352
management at end of life, 112-113, 112b
in multiple myeloma, 894
musculoskeletal assessment in, 1111
neck, 966, 966b-967b
nonpharmacologic interventions for, 59-61
cognitive-behavioral pain management in, 60-61
complementary and alternative therapies in, 61
physical measures in, 59-60, 60f
older adult and, 44b-45b
in osteoarthritis, 320-331
in osteomyelitis, 1132
in osteoporosis, 1122
in Paget's disease of bone, 1129

- Pain (*Continued*)
- in peptic ulcer disease, 1229-1230, 1229b-1230b
 - perception of, 44
 - in pericarditis, 765-766
 - during peritoneal dialysis, 1567
 - phantom limb, 1164, 1166, 1166b
 - in pharyngitis, 642
 - physical assessment in, 40, 47f-48f
 - physiologic sources of, 43t
 - in pit viper envenomation, 140
 - in plantar digital neuritis, 1139
 - in plantar fasciitis, 1139
 - in pneumonia, 650t
 - in polycystic kidney disease, 1520-1521
 - postoperative, 291-292
 - in amputation, 1166
 - in bariatric surgery, 1354
 - in coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 - drug therapy for, 297, 298b
 - epidural infusion for, 236
 - in head and neck surgery, 593
 - management of, 297-299, 298b-299b
 - in nephrectomy, 1533
 - in oral cancer, 1199
 - peripheral nerve blockade for, 330
 - preemptive analgesia for, 41
 - relaxation and music therapy for, 12b
 - in total hip arthroplasty, 328
 - psychosocial assessment in, 49
 - in pyelonephritis, 1525
 - in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
 - in rotator cuff injury, 1173
 - scope of problem, 40, 40t
 - in scorpion bite, 144-145
 - sensory function assessment and, 915
 - in spinal cord tumor, 976
 - in stomatitis, 1193
 - in strangulated hernia, 1243
 - in sunburn, 472
 - theoretical bases for, 41-44
 - traction patient and, 1154
 - transmission of, 41-43, 44f
 - in ulcerative colitis, 1278, 1278b
 - in urolithiasis, 1509-1510
 - in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
- Pain rating scales, 48, 48f
- Pain relief visual analog scale, 48, 48f
- Palanostrom, 423b
- Palatine tonsil, 544f, 545
- Palliation, 630
- Palliative care, 108-110, 108b, 118b
- Palliative sedation, 115
- Palliative surgery, 410
- Pallor, 459t
 - in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 - assessment of, 863
 - in darker skinned patient, 465-466
 - in hypovolemic shock, 816
 - in leukemia, 882
 - in renal colic, 1508
 - in sickle cell disease, 872
- Palmoplantar pustulosis, 499
- Palpation
 - in abdominal assessment, 1184
 - of chest, 553
 - in endocrine assessment, 1368
 - in head and neck cancer, 589
 - of kidney, 1476, 1476f
 - of skin, 463, 464t
 - of thyroid, 1368, 1368f
- Palpebral conjunctiva, 1041
- Palpitations, 696, 720
- Pamelor; *See* Nortriptyline
- Pamidronate, 1125
 - for bone cancer, 1135
 - for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Panacinar emphysema, 602f
- Pancreas, 1178f, 1179, 1180f, 1364-1365, 1364f, 1365t
 - adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1411, 1411f
 - hormones secreted by, 1359t
 - of older adult, 1181b
- Pancreas transplantation, 1443
 - in cystic fibrosis, 625
- Pancreatectomy, 1328
- Pancreatic abscess, 1328-1329
- Pancreatic cancer, 1329-1333
 - community-based care in, 1333
 - genetic considerations in, 1329b
 - nonsurgical management of, 1330-1331
 - physical assessment in, 1330, 1330b
 - postoperative care in, 1331-1333
 - surgical management of, 1331f, 1332t
- Pancreatic disorders, 1321-1334
 - acute pancreatitis in, 1321-1322
 - community-based care in, 1325-1326
 - complications of, 1322, 1322t, 1324b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1322
 - history in, 1322-1323
 - imaging assessment in, 1324
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1322
 - laboratory assessment in, 1323-1324, 1323t
 - nutrition in, 1325
 - pain management in, 1324-1325
 - pathophysiology of, 1321-1322, 1321f
 - physical assessment in, 1323, 1323b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1323
 - respiratory status in, 1325b
 - chronic pancreatitis in, 1326-1328, 1326b-1328b
 - osteomalacia and, 1127
 - pancreatic abscess in, 1328-1329
 - pancreatic cancer in, 1329-1333
 - community-based care in, 1333
 - genetic considerations in, 1329b
 - nonsurgical management of, 1330-1331
 - physical assessment in, 1330, 1330b
 - postoperative care in, 1331-1333
 - surgical management of, 1331-1333, 1331f, 1332t
 - pancreatic pseudocyst in, 1329

Pancreatic duct, 1180f

Pancreatic enzyme replacement therapy, 1327, 1327b

Pancreatic enzyme(s), 1179

Pancreatic pseudocyst, 1329

Pancreaticoduodenectomy

 - in pancreatic cancer, 1331, 1331f
 - in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234

Pancreaticojejunostomy, 1331, 1331f

Pancreatitis

 - acute, 1321-1322
 - community-based care in, 1325-1326
 - complications of, 1322, 1322t, 1324b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1322
 - history in, 1322-1323
 - imaging assessment in, 1324
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1322
 - laboratory assessment in, 1323-1324, 1323t
 - nutrition in, 1325
 - pain management in, 1324-1325
 - pathophysiology of, 1321-1322, 1321f
 - physical assessment in, 1323, 1323b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1323
 - respiratory status in, 1325b
 - chronic, 1262, 1326-1328, 1326b-1328b

sitagliptin and, 1430

Pancuronium, 274t

Pancytopenia

 - after hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, 888
 - in aplastic anemia, 878
 - in lupus, 345
 - in myelodysplastic syndromes, 879

Pandemic, 157, 449

Pandemic influenza, 645-647

Panendoscopy in head and neck cancer, 590

Panhypopituitarism, 1372

Panhysterectomy, 1619t

Panitumumab, 1198

Panje Voice Button, 593-594, 594f

Panlobular emphysema, 602f, 612

Panniculectomy, 1355-1356

Panniculitis, 1351

Panniculus, 1351, 1355-1356

Pannus, 333

Pantoprazole, 1207b

 - for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 - for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206
 - for peptic ulcer disease, 1229

PAOP; *See* Pulmonary artery occlusive pressure

Papanicolaou test, 1581

 - in cervical cancer, 1624
 - for human papillomavirus, 1658

Papilla

 - gastric, 1179, 1180f
 - renal, 1466, 1467f

Papillary thyroid carcinoma, 1405

Papilledema

 - in brain tumor, 1032
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1026

Papilloma, intraductal, 1589t, 1590

Papillotomy, 1188

Papular rash, 463

Papule, 460f-461f

Paracentesis for ascites, 1300, 1300b

Parachlorometaxyleneol, 438-439

Paradoxical chest movement, 683, 683f

Paradoxical blood pressure, 698

Paradoxical pulse, 766

Paradoxical splitting, 700

Paraesophageal hernia, 1208-1209, 1209b, 1209f

Paraffin dip in rheumatoid arthritis, 341

Paralysis

 - assessment in rehabilitation setting, 93
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987
 - in lightning strike injury, 147
 - vocal cord, 585

Paralysis agitans, 941

Paralytic ileus, 1254, 1256

 - after burn injury, 524
 - in hypokalemia, 184
 - postoperative, 290
 - in abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 795
 - in lumbar spinal surgery, 964b

Paramedic, 122-123

Paranasal sinuses, 545, 545f

Paraneoplastic syndromes, 630, 631t, 1532

Paraparesis, 969

Paraphimosis, 1648

Paraplatin; *See* Carboplatin

Paraplegia, 969

Paraprotein, 894

Parasectal emphysema, 612

Parasites in urine, 1478b

Parasitic disorders, 496-497

 - bedbugs in, 496-497
 - intestinal, 1288-1289, 1289b
 - pediculosis in, 496
 - scabies in, 496, 496f

Parasympathetic cell, 911

Parasympathetic nervous system, 689, 911

Parathyroid gland, 1364, 1364f

 - hormones secreted by, 1359t
 - hyperparathyroidism and, 1406-1408, 1406t, 1407b
 - hypoparathyroidism and, 1408

Parathyroid hormone

 - calcium and, 188, 1364, 1364f
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1548-1549, 1548f
 - osteoporosis and, 1121
 - paraneoplastic syndromes associated with lung cancer and, 631t
 - phosphorus and, 191
 - physiologic actions of, 1406, 1406f
 - renal cell carcinoma and, 1532
 - role in bone growth and metabolism, 1108

Parathyroidectomy, 1407

Parenchyma, renal, 1466, 1467f

Parenteral nutrition, 1347-1348

 - partial or peripheral, 1347, 1347b
 - total parenteral nutrition in, 1347-1348, 1348b

Parenteral solutions, 211

Parenteral transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, 362-363

Paresis, 93

Paresthesia

 - in back pain, 961
 - in black widow spider bite, 144
 - in carpal tunnel syndrome, 1171
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 987
 - in hyperaldosteronism, 1390
 - in hyperkalemia, 187
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 - in vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, 877

Parietal cell, 1179

Parietal lobe, 907, 907t

Parietal pericardium, 688f

Parkinson disease, 941-946, 942b-943b, 943f

 - drug therapy for, 943-944, 944b-945b
 - genetic considerations in, 942b
 - psychosocial support in, 945-946
 - stages of, 927
 - surgical management of, 946

Parkland formula, 511

Parlodel; *See* Bromocriptine

Paronychia, 465

Parotid gland, 1178f

Parotidectomy, 1201

Paroxetine, 952

Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, 551

 - cardiovascular assessment and, 695
 - in heart failure, 748

Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, 722

Pars flaccida of eardrum, 1078-1079, 1078f

Pars tensa of eardrum, 1078-1079, 1078f

Partial corpus callosotomy, 937

Partial cystectomy, 1513

Partial laryngectomy, 591

Partial nephrectomy, 1535

Partial parenteral nutrition, 1347, 1347b

Partial penectomy, 1648

Partial pressure of arterial carbon dioxide

 - acid-base assessment and, 199b
 - in acid-base imbalances, 205, 205b
 - in acute respiratory failure, 669-670
 - in burn assessment, 524b
 - in hypercarbia, 564
 - in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 - in kidney disease, 1542b
 - in respiratory assessment, 557b

Partial pressure of arterial oxygen

 - acid-base assessment and, 199b
 - in acid-base imbalances, 205, 205b
 - in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672
 - in acute respiratory failure, 669-670
 - in burn assessment, 524b
 - in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 - in respiratory assessment, 557b

- Partial rebreather mask, 565-566, 566f, 567f
- Partial seizure, 932, 935b
- Partial thromboplastin time, 703, 866
for monitoring of anticoagulation therapy, 667b
in pulmonary embolism, 665
- Partial-breast irradiation, 1605
- Partial-thickness burn, 514-515, 514f-515f
- Partial-thickness wound, 473, 475f
- Passive euthanasia, 119, 119t
- Passive immunity, 313, 435
- Passive range of motion, 1111-1112
- Passive smoking, 631, 833
- PASV; *See* Pressure-activated safety valve
- Patch, 460f-461f
- Patch testing, 392
- Patellar fracture, 1161
- Patellar reflex, 917f
- Patellofemoral pain syndrome, 1169
- Patent feeding tube, 1346b
- Pathogen, 434-437
- Pathogenic infection, 365
- Pathogenicity, 434-435
- Pathologic fracture, 1144-1145
in Cushing's disease, 1388
metastatic bone cancer and, 1134
in Paget's disease of bone, 1129
- Pathologic staging, 403
- Patient and family education
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
in Alzheimer's disease, 955
in arthropod bite/sting prevention, 143b
in asthma
self-management and, 606b
smoking cessation and, 605b
using inhaler and, 609b, 609f
using peak flowmeter and, 606b
in automatic epinephrine injectors, 388b
in back pain, 965, 965b
exercises for chronic or postoperative low back pain, 962b
positioning to prevent back injury after surgery, 965b
prevention of low back pain and injury, 961b
in bariatric surgery, 1355b
in beta blocker/digoxin therapy, 757b
in cancer
bone, 1137-1138
esophageal, 1217
infection prevention during chemotherapy and, 420b
mouth care for mucositis and, 424b
oral, 1200b
photodynamic therapy and, 426b
prevention of injury or bleeding and, 422b
prevention of skin cancer and, 503b
recovery from breast cancer surgery and, 1607b
in cervical ablation therapies, 1625b
in cervical biopsy, 1585b
in chronic pancreatitis, 1327b-1328b
in cirrhosis, 1304, 1304b
in coronary artery disease, 851-852
chest pain management and, 852b
physical activity and, 852b
prevention of, 832b
in cortisol replacement therapy, 1389b
in diabetes mellitus
diabetic ketoacidosis and, 1456
exercise and, 1442, 1442b
foot care and, 1448b
hypoglycemia and, 1453-1454, 1453b
nutrition plan and, 1439
outcome criteria for, 1461t
peripheral neuropathy and, 1447b
sick-day rules and, 1456b
travel tips and, 1460b
- Patient and family education (*Continued*)
in dysrhythmias, 740-741, 740b-741b
in ear problems, 1104
in emergency care, 129
in emotional signs of approaching death, 112b
in energy conservation in arthritis, 342b
in excretory urogram, 1484b
in foods and drugs interfering with warfarin, 803b
in fracture, 1158, 1158b
care of extremity after cast removal and, 1158b
in gastritis prevention, 1222b
in gastroenteritis, 1272, 1272b
in genital herpes, 1657-1658, 1657b
in genital warts, 1659, 1659b
in glucosamine supplements, 323b
in gonorrhea, 1661-1662
in heart failure, 756-757, 756f, 757b
in hiatal hernia, 1209b
in home care of central venous catheter, 891b
in home laryngectomy care, 597b
in human immunodeficiency virus infection
HIV testing and, 364b
infection prevention and, 370b
postexposure prophylaxis to HIV and, 363b
in hyperkalemia, 188b
in hypertension, 784
in hysterectomy, 1620b
in infection, 447
in infection control and prevention, 826b, 891b
during chemotherapy, 420b
Lyme disease and, 353b
methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* and, 493b
pneumonia and, 648b
West Nile virus and, 941b
in infusion therapy, 223
in insulin therapy, 1434-1436, 1435f
in intestinal obstruction, 1258
in joint protection, 332b
in kidney and genitourinary trauma, 1534b
in kidney and urinary problems, 1550b
in lifestyle changes to control reflux, 1206b
in maintaining healthy oral cavity, 1193b
in malnutrition, 1348-1349
in minor head injury, 1030b
in multiple sclerosis, 983
in myasthenia gravis, 996, 996b, 996t
in osteoarthritis, 332, 332b
in pain management, 61
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1665, 1665b
in pelvic muscle exercises, 1501b
in peripheral arterial disease, 791b
in polycystic kidney disease, 1522b
in polycythemia vera, 879b
in postmastectomy exercises, 1603b
in postoperative leg exercises, 257, 257b
in postoperative procedures and exercises, 254-258, 256b-257b, 256f, 258f
in postoperative self-management, 299-300
preoperative, 248-258, 252t
in preparing for self-management, 16b
in pyelonephritis, 1526
in rehabilitation, 104-105
in rheumatoid arthritis, 332b, 343
in risk for bleeding in leukemia, 892b
in safety precautions in unsealed radioactive isotope for hyperthyroidism, 1398b
- Patient and family education (*Continued*)
in seizures and epilepsy, 933-935, 935b
in Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, 1290b
in sickle cell crisis, 875b
in signs and symptoms of approaching death, 111b
in signs that death has occurred, 118b
in skin problems
in lupus, 346b
prevention of dry skin and, 471b
in snake bite prevention, 140b
in sperm banking, 1644b
in spinal cord injury, 974-975, 975b
in stroke, 1007b, 1019-1020, 1019f
in supraglottic method of swallowing, 595b
in syphilis, 1656, 1656b
in testicular self-examination, 1643b
in total hip arthroplasty, 327b
in traumatic brain injury, 1030-1031, 1030b
in ulcerative colitis, 1278-1279, 1279b
in urinary calculi, 1512b
in urinary incontinence, 1507b
in urinary tract infection prevention, 1493b
in use of halo device, 975b
in using eyedrops, 1044b
in vaginal infections, 1614b
in valvular heart disease, 762-763, 763b
in venous insufficiency, 804b
in viral hepatitis, 1307b, 1309b
in vulvovaginitis, 1614b
- Patient disposition
after emergency care, 128-130, 129b
in trauma care, 134
- Patient history; *See* History
- Patient identification
in emergency care, 124-125
in surgical suite, 265f
- Patient positioning
in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672-673, 673b
after burn injury, 525-526, 537, 537b
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618
in esophageal diverticula, 1217-1218
in head and neck cancer, 590
of head in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
in osteoarthritis, 322
in peripheral arterial disease, 787-788
postoperative, 293
repositioning of bed bound patient and, 479
during surgery, 279-280, 280f, 281b
for thoracentesis, 559-560, 560f
- Patient preparation
for allergy testing, 385-386
for bone marrow aspiration and biopsy, 866-867
for bronchoscopy, 559
for cardiac catheterization, 703-704
for colonoscopy, 1189
for cystoscopy or cystourethroscopy, 1485
for endoscopic surgery, 267
for endotracheal intubation, 675
for intravenous urography, 1482-1484
for kidney biopsy, 1486-1487
for lung biopsy, 560
for nephrostomy, 1523
preoperative, 259-260
for pulmonary function tests, 558
for reproductive laparoscopy, 1584
for skin biopsy, 468
for stress test, 706
for thoracentesis, 559-560, 560f
for tubes, drains, and vascular access, 254
- Patient safety, 2-3, 2t, 6
in acute adrenal insufficiency, 1382b
in altitude-related illnesses, 152b
in anterior nosebleed, 582b
in anticoagulant therapy, 668b, 801b
in arteriovenous fistula or graft, 1562b
in benzodiazepine overdose, 293b
in bladder training and habit training, 1504b
in carpal tunnel syndrome, 1171b
in catheter-related infection, 1492b
in chemotherapy-related neutropenia, 420b
in chemotherapy-related thrombocytopenia, 421b
in chest tube, 637b
in colonoscopy, 1190b
communicating with non-English speaking patients and, 33b
in communication with patient unable to speak, 587b
in continuous passive motion machine, 330b
in contrast medium procedures, 1484b
in dehydration, 176, 176b-177b
in diabetic peripheral neuropathy, 1447b
dietary and herbal supplements and, 10b
in documentation of extravasation, 417b
in dysrhythmias, 731b
in ear irrigation, 1091b
in electroencephalography, 922b
in emergency care, 124-125, 124b-125b
of burns, 520b, 526b
of malignant hyperthermia, 273b
in endocrine testing, 1369b
in esophagitis in systemic sclerosis, 348b
in fluid overload, 179
in gait training, 98b
genetic testing and counseling and, 76b
in genital herpes, 1657b
hand hygiene and, 438b
in health care facility fire, 156b
in heat stroke, 139b
in hemodialysis, 1563b
hospitalized immunosuppressed patient and, 371b
in hypokalemia, 185b
in hypovolemic shock, 818b
infection control for home care in AIDS and, 379b
in insertion and removal of ocular prosthesis, 1073b
in instillation of eardrops, 1089b, 1089f
in instillation of eyedrops, 1050b
in instillation of ophthalmic ointment, 1053b
in intraoperative autologous blood salvage and transfusion, 278b
intraoperative positioning and, 281b
in intravenous administration of recombinant tissue plasminogen activator, 1014b
iodine-based contrast agent and, 921b
in management of fluid volume in chronic kidney disease, 1553b
in mechanical ventilation, 677b
in meningitis, 939b
in myxedema coma, 1403b
nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
in ocular irrigation, 1072b
older adult and
assessing and preventing falls and, 27b
driver safety and, 20b

- Patient safety (*Continued*)
- minimizing effects of relocation stress and, 19b
 - nutritional screening and, 17b
 - in open radical prostatectomy, 1639b
 - in oral hygiene, 1194b
 - in oxygen therapy, 563b
 - in paracentesis, 1300b
 - in Parkinson disease, 943b
 - in pericarditis, 766b
 - perineal comfort and, 1287b
 - in peritoneal dialysis, 1567b
 - in placement of short peripheral venous catheter, 214b
 - in plasmapheresis, 989b
 - in positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
 - postexposure prophylaxis for occupational HIV exposure and, 364b
 - postoperative
 - in breast reconstruction, 1605b
 - in heart transplantation rejection, 770b
 - in hypophysectomy, 1377b
 - in nasogastric tube after esophageal surgery, 1216b
 - in sinus surgery, 642b
 - in swallowing after laryngectomy, 595b
 - in pressure ulcer monitoring of, 489b
 - prevention of, 476b
 - in preventing ventilator-associated pneumonia, 648b
 - in prevention of hepatitis in health care worker, 1307b
 - in prevention of HIV transmission by health care worker, 364b
 - psychosocial interventions for dying patient and, 116b
 - in pulmonary embolism, 663b, 665b
 - in reduced vision, 1074, 1074b
 - in risk for infection, 437b
 - in sealed implants of radioactive sources, 413b
 - in securing oral or nasal endotracheal tube, 676b
 - in seizure, 935b
 - in sickle cell crisis, 874b
 - in skin care in chronic diarrhea, 1263b
 - in suctioning artificial airway, 574b
 - Surgical Care Improvement Project Core Measurements and, 242t
 - symptom relief kit for home hospice, 118b
 - in thrombocytopenia, 889b
 - in thyroid storm, 1400b
 - in total parenteral nutrition, 1348b
 - in tracheostomy care, 576b
 - in transfer of stroke patient, 97b
 - in transfusion therapy, 898b-899b
 - in transurethral resection of prostate, 1636b
 - in tube feeding care and maintenance, 1345b-1346b
 - in unsealed radioactive isotope for hyperthyroidism, 1398b
 - using restraint alternatives and, 28b
 - in vertebroplasty and kyphoplasty, 1164b
 - in wound management of pressure ulcer, 483b
 - in Z-track method in iron dextran administration, 877b
- Patient selection
- for hemodialysis, 1558
 - for peritoneal dialysis, 1564
- Patient Self-Determination Act of 1990, 108, 252
- Patient transfer
- infection control principles for, 440
 - to surgical suite, 260
- Patient-centered care, 3-4, 3t
- Patient-controlled analgesia, 54-56, 54f, 55t-56t
- for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 - for fracture pain, 1154
 - for Guillain-Barré syndrome, 990
 - postoperative, 297
 - in back surgery, 964
 - in bariatric surgery, 1354
 - in head and neck surgery, 593
- Patterns of inheritance, 72-74, 72f
- autosomal dominant, 73
 - autosomal recessive, 74, 74f
 - complex inheritance and familial clustering and, 74
 - for genetic disorders, 72, 72f
 - pedigree and, 72, 72f
 - sex-linked, 74, 74f
- Pavulon; *See* Pancuronium
- PAWP; *See* Pulmonary artery wedge pressure
- Paxil; *See* Paroxetine
- Pazopanib, 418t
- PCA; *See* Patient-controlled analgesia
- PCWP; *See* Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure
- PDSA cycles, 84-87
- Peak airway pressure, 678
- Peak expiratory flow
- in asthma, 605
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
- Peak flowmeter, 606b, 606f
- Peau d'orange appearance of breast, 1592, 1592f
- Pediatric advanced life support, 127t
- Pedicle flap for pressure ulcer, 487, 487f
- Pedicle injury, 1534, 1534f
- Pediculosis, 496
- Pedigree, 72, 72f, 74f
- Pedunculated polyp, 1260, 1260f
- PEEP; *See* Positive end-expiratory pressure
- PEG; *See* Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy
- Pegaspargase, 415t-416t
- Pegfilgrastim, 427t
- Pegloticase, 350
- Pegvisomant, 1375-1376
- Pelvic examination
- in endometriosis, 1612
 - in ovarian cancer, 1626
 - in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 - in pelvic organ prolapse, 1615
- Pelvic floor exercise therapy, 1501, 1501b, 1616
- Pelvic fracture, 1162
- Pelvic inflammatory disease, 1659, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
- Pelvic organ prolapse, 1615-1617, 1616f
- Pelvic pouch, 1276-1277, 1276f
- Pelvic sling, 1153t
- Pelvic tilt exercise, 962b
- Pelvic traction, 1153t
- Pemetrexed, 415t-416t
- Pemphigus vulgaris, 508
- Pendramine; *See* Penicillamine
- Penectomy, 1648
- Penetrance, 73
- Penetrating trauma, 132
- abdominal, 1258
 - to bladder, 1516
 - ocular, 1072
 - of skull, 1021
 - of spinal cord, 967
- Penicillamine
- for hypercalcemia, 191
 - for hyperparathyroidism, 1407
- Penicillin, 644, 1495b-1496b
- Penicillin G benzathine, 1037
- Penile clamp, 1505-1506
- Penile implant, 1643
- Penis, 1577, 1578f
- cancer of, 1647-1648
 - erectile dysfunction and, 1642, 1642b
- Penis (*Continued*)
- phimosis and paraphimosis and, 1648
 - priapism and, 1648-1649
 - uncircumcised, 1648f
- Penrose drain, 292f, 295
- Pentacarinat; *See* Pentamidine isethionate
- Pentamidine isethionate, 375
- Pentasa; *See* Mesalamine
- Pentobarbital sodium, 528
- Pentostatin, 415t-416t
- Pentothal; *See* Thiopental sodium
- Pentoxifylline, 789
- Pepcid; *See* Famotidine
- Peptic ulcer disease, 1225-1227
- acid suppression for, 1231-1232
 - chronic gastritis and, 1221
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 - community-based care in, 1221
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 1230
 - complications of, 1226-1227, 1226f, 1227b
 - diet therapy for, 1230, 1230b
 - endoscopic therapy for, 1231
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1227
 - health care resources for, 1233
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 1227
 - history in, 1227-1228
 - home care management in, 1233, 1233b
 - imaging assessment in, 1229
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1227
 - interventional radiologic procedures for, 1231
 - laboratory assessment in, 1228-1229
 - most common sites for, 1226f
 - nasogastric tube placement and lavage in, 1231, 1232b
 - pain in, 1229-1230, 1229b-1230b
 - physical assessment in, 1228, 1228t
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1228
 - surgical management of, 1232, 1233f
 - teaching for self-management in, 1233, 1233b
 - types of ulcers in, 1225-1226, 1226f
 - upper gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1230-1232, 1231b
- Percent relief scale, 48f
- Perception of pain, 44
- Percocet; *See* Oxycodone with acetaminophen
- Percodan; *See* Oxycodone with aspirin
- Percussion
- in abdominal assessment, 1184
 - of bladder, 1476
 - of chest, 553, 553f-554f, 553t
 - in chest physiotherapy, 625f
- Percussion notes, 1184
- Percutaneous alcohol septal ablation, 768
- Percutaneous cervical discectomy, 966
- Percutaneous endoscopic discectomy, 963
- Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy, 1028, 1344-1345
- Percutaneous ethanol injection for liver cancer, 1311
- Percutaneous liver biopsy, 1299
- Percutaneous lung biopsy, 560-561
- Percutaneous radiofrequency catheter ablation, 728
- Percutaneous stereotactic rhizotomy, 932, 1000, 1001b
- Percutaneous transhepatic biliary catheter
- in cholecystitis, 1318
 - in pancreatic cancer, 1330
- Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography, 1187
- Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty, 789, 840, 844-845, 845b, 845f
- Percutaneous ureterolithotomy, 1510
- Percutaneous ventricular assist device, 844
- Perennial rhinitis, 641
- Pereyra procedure, 1503t
- Perforation
- of gastric and duodenal ulcers, 1227
 - of tympanic membrane, 1092, 1092f-1093f
 - in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
- Pericardial effusion, 765-766
- Pericardial friction rub, 701, 765
- Pericardial space, 688f
- Pericardiectomy, 765-766
- Pericardiocentesis, 766, 766b
- Pericarditis, 765, 766b
- chest pain in, 696t
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1549
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 - in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
- Pericardium, 687
- Perichondritis, 1090
- Perichondrium, 1090
- Peridol; *See* Haloperidol
- Peridural analgesia, 56
- Perilymph, 1079
- Perimetry, 1051
- Perinatal transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, 363
- Perineal comfort measures, 1287b
- Perineal muscle electromyography, 1486
- Perineal wound care, 1251, 1251b
- Perineum, 1576
- Periodontal disease, 1196
- Perioperative nursing staff, 264-266
- Perioperative patient
- intraoperative care and, 263-283
 - emergency care in malignant hyperthermia and, 273b
 - general anesthesia and, 271-275, 272t, 274t
 - health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
 - hypoventilation prevention and, 281-282
 - identification of patient, procedure, and surgical site, 265f
 - infection prevention and, 281, 282f
 - injury prevention and, 279-280, 280f, 281b
 - layout of surgical suite and, 266-267, 268f
 - local or regional anesthesia and, 275-276, 275t, 276f-277f
 - medical record review and, 278-279, 278b-279b
 - minimally invasive and robotic surgery and, 267, 269f
 - moderate sedation and, 276-277, 277t
 - patient history review and, 277-278
 - surgical attire and, 267-270, 270f
 - surgical scrub and, 270, 271f
 - surgical team members and, 264-266, 266f
 - postoperative care and, 284-300
 - cardiovascular assessment in, 288
 - dressings and drains and, 291, 292f
 - fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance and, 289
 - focused assessment in, 288b
 - gastrointestinal assessment in, 284, 290t
 - health care resources after discharge, 300
 - history review in, 285
 - home care management and, 299
 - hypoxemia prevention and, 293-294, 293b
 - impaired wound healing and, 291, 291f
 - laboratory assessment in, 293
 - motor and sensory function and, 289

- Perioperative patient (*Continued*)
 neurologic assessment in, 288-289, 289t
 pain and, 291-292
 pain management in, 297-299, 298b-299b
 postanesthesia care unit record and, 287f
 postoperative hand-off report and, 285, 285b
 potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 psychosocial assessment in, 292
 renal assessment in, 289-290
 respiratory assessment in, 286-288, 286b
 skin assessment in, 291
 skin care in, 294b
 teaching for self-management, 299-300
 wound infection and delayed healing and, 294-297, 295f, 296b
 preoperative care and, 239-262
 categories and purposes of surgery and, 240, 243t
 comprehensive surgical checklist and, 241f
 dietary restrictions and, 252-253
 electrocardiography and, 248
 focused assessment of, 250b
 history of, 242-246
 imaging assessment of, 248
 informed consent and, 250, 251f
 intestinal preparation and, 253-254
 laboratory assessment of, 247-248, 249b-250b
 minimizing anxiety in, 258-259
 older adult, 245b-246b
 patient education and, 248-258, 252t
 patient self-determination and, 252
 physical assessment of, 246-247
 potential effects of herbs on surgery, 244t
 preoperative chart review and, 259
 preoperative checklist and, 261f
 preoperative drugs and, 260
 preoperative fasting and, 253b
 preoperative patient preparation and, 259-260
 preparation for tubes, drains, and vascular access, 254
 psychosocial assessment of, 247
 regularly scheduled drugs and, 253
 risk for postoperative complications and, 243, 244t
 skin preparation and, 254, 255f
 Surgical Care Improvement Project Core Measurement overview and, 242t
 surgical settings and, 240
 teaching postoperative procedures and exercises, 254-258, 256b-257b, 256f, 258f
 transfer to surgical suite, 260
 Periorbital ecchymosis, 1071
 Periorbital edema, 1034
 Periosteum, 1107f
 Peripheral arterial disease, 785-791
 community-based care in, 791, 791b
 cultural considerations in, 786b
 diabetic foot care and, 1446
 imaging assessment in, 787
 lower extremity ulcers in, 788b
 nonsurgical management of, 787-789
 pathophysiology of, 785-791, 786b, 786f
 physical assessment in, 786-787, 787f
 postoperative graft occlusion in, 791b
 surgical management of, 789-791, 789b, 790f
 Peripheral artery aneurysm, 796
 Peripheral blood smear, 864
 Peripheral blood stem cell harvesting, 886
 Peripheral chemoreceptor, 691
 Peripheral cyanosis, 697
 Peripheral dual x-ray absorptiometry, 1123-1124
 Peripheral edema, 697-698
 Peripheral infusion therapy, 213-216
 insertion and placement methods in, 213-214, 213t, 214b, 214f
 midline catheters in, 215-216, 215f
 short peripheral catheters in, 213-215, 213f
 site selection and skin preparation for, 214-215, 214b, 215f
 Peripheral nerve blockade, 330
 Peripheral nerve trauma, 997-999, 997f-998f, 999b
 cast-related, 1153
 Peripheral nervous system, 997f
 cranial nerves in, 912t
 structure and function of, 910-911, 910f-911f
 Peripheral neuropathy, 986-1003
 chemotherapy-related, 424, 425b
 cranial nerve diseases in, 999-1002
 facial paralysis in, 1001-1002
 trigeminal neuralgia in, 1000-1001, 1000f, 1001b
 in diabetes mellitus, 1415-1416, 1415t, 1446-1447, 1447b
 Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome in, 987-991, 987b
 airway management in, 989, 989b
 cardiac dysfunction in, 989
 clinical variants of, 988t
 communication in, 990
 community-based care in, 990-991
 drug therapy and plasmapheresis for, 988-989, 989b
 immobility in, 989-990
 pain in, 990, 990b
 pathophysiology of, 987, 987t
 psychosocial support in, 990
 interferon therapy-related, 427
 myasthenia gravis in, 991-996, 991b
 diagnostic assessment in, 992-993, 992b
 drug therapy for, 993-994, 993b
 health care resources for, 996
 health teaching in, 996, 996b, 996t
 home care management in, 996
 myasthenic and cholinergic crises in, 993, 994t
 nutrition issues in, 994-995, 995b
 pathophysiology of, 991
 physical assessment in, 991-992
 plasmapheresis in, 994
 respiratory support in, 993, 993b
 surgical management of, 995, 995b
 peripheral nerve trauma in, 997-999, 997f-998f, 999b
 restless legs syndrome in, 999
 Peripheral oxygen saturation, 557b
 Peripheral parenteral nutrition, 1347, 1347b
 Peripheral quantitative ultrasonography, 1124
 Peripheral vascular assessment, 288
 Peripheral vascular disease, 693
 Peripheral vascular resistance, 691
 Peripheral venous disease, 798-805
 anticoagulant therapy for, 801b, 803b
 phlebitis in, 805
 thrombolytic therapy for, 802, 802b
 varicose veins in, 805
 vascular trauma and, 805
 venous insufficiency in, 803-805, 804b
 venous thromboembolism in, 799-803, 799f, 800b
 Peripheral-acting analgesics, 50
 Peripherally inserted central catheter, 216-217, 217f
 Peristalsis
 peritonitis and, 1268
 postoperative related delay of, 290
 Peritoneal cavity, intraperitoneal infusion and, 236
 Peritoneal dialysis, 1564-1567, 1564t
 in acute kidney injury, 1545
 complications in, 1566-1567
 dialysate additives for, 1564
 dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 hemodialysis *versus*, 1558t
 nursing care in, 1567b
 patient and family education in, 1572
 patient selection for, 1564
 procedure in, 1564, 1564f
 types of, 1564-1566, 1565f-1566f
 Peritoneal dialysis catheter, 1564f
 Peritoneal dialysis solution, 1437
 Peritoneal effluent, 1564
 Peritoneal membrane as dialyzing membrane, 1565f
 Peritonitis, 1268-1270, 1268b-1269b
 appendicitis-related, 1267
 fistula and, 1332
 in gallstones, 1316
 in gastric ulcer perforation, 1227
 older adult and, 1285b
 peritoneal dialysis and, 1566
 Peritonsillar abscess, 644
 Peritubular capillary, 1467, 1469t
 Peritumoral lesions
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 in systemic sclerosis, 347-348
 Periurethral injection of collagen, 1503t
 Permanent pacemaker insertion, 738, 739f, 741b
 PermCath catheter, 1545f
 Permethrin, 496
 Pernicious anemia, 877, 1221
 PERRLA mnemonic, 919, 1046
 Persistent pain, 40t, 41
 Personal emergency preparedness, 161, 161b, 161t
 Personal protective equipment, 439, 439f
 avian influenza and, 646
 severe acute respiratory syndrome and, 653b
 standard precautions and, 441t
 Personal readiness supplies, 161b, 161t
 Personality changes in Alzheimer's disease, 949
 Person-to-person transmission, 436
 PET; *See* Positron emission tomography
 Pet therapy, 11-12
 Petechiae, 462, 462f
 assessment of, 863
 in cirrhosis, 1297
 in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
 in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
 in infective endocarditis, 764
 in leukemia, 882
 pH, 196
 acid-base assessment and, 199b
 in acid-base imbalances, 205b
 in acute respiratory failure, 669-670
 in burn assessment, 524b
 in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 of intravenous solutions, 211
 in respiratory assessment, 557b
 of urine, 1478, 1478b
 Phacoemulsification, 1061, 1061f
 Phagocytosis, 307-308, 308f, 437
 Phagosome, 308
 Phalangeal fracture, 1159, 1162
 Phalangeal joint arthroplasty, 331
 Phalen's maneuver, 1171
 Phantom limb pain, 1164, 1166, 1166b
 Phantom limb sensation, 1164
 Pharmacogenomics, 416b
 Pharmacologic stress echocardiogram, 707
 Pharyngeal tonsil, 544f
 Pharyngitis, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 radiation therapy-related, 590
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
 Pharynx, 545, 1192
 changes with aging, 549b
 physical assessment of, 552
 Phenazopyridine, 1495b-1496b
 Phenobarbital, 934b
 Phenothiazines, 1428t
 Phenotype, 70
 Phenylephrine
 for cardiac arrest, 733
 for hypovolemic shock, 819b
 for sinusitis, 642
 Phenytoin, 934b
 for brain tumor, 1033
 interaction with antacids, 1230
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 for traumatic brain injury, 1028
 Pheochromocytoma, 777, 1390-1391
 Pheochromocytoma-paraganglioma syndrome, 1390
 Pheresis
 in peripheral blood stem cell harvesting, 886
 in polycythemia vera, 879
 Philadelphia chromosome, 883
 Phimosis, 1648
 Phlebitis, 799, 805
 intravenous therapy-related, 211, 211b, 228t-229t
 peripherally inserted central catheter-related, 216-217
 Phlebitis scale, 233t
 Phlebostatic axis, 708b
 Phlebothrombosis, 799
 Phonation in head and neck cancer, 589
 Phonophobia, 929
 Phonophoresis, 962
 Phosphate
 chronic kidney disease and, 1548, 1548f
 reabsorption in proximal convoluted tubule, 1470
 Phosphate binders
 for acute kidney injury, 1544b
 for chronic kidney disease, 1557
 Phosphodiesterase inhibitors
 for erectile dysfunction, 1642, 1642b
 for heart failure, 753
 Phospholine iodide; *See* Echothiophate
 Phosphorus, 191-192, 192t
 abnormal values of, 170t
 in bone, 1108
 chronic kidney disease and, 1548, 1548f, 1555t, 1556
 hyperphosphatemia and, 192
 hypophosphatemia and, 191-192, 192b
 values in older adult, 170b
 Photic stimulation in
 electroencephalography, 923
 Photocoagulation in retinal detachment, 1069
 Photodynamic therapy, 425-426, 426b
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for lung cancer, 633-634
 Photofrin; *See* Porphimer sodium
 Photophobia
 in corneal disorders, 1057
 drug-induced, 1045
 in hyperthyroidism, 1395, 1400
 in keratoconjunctivitis sicca, 1056
 in meningitis, 937
 in migraine, 929
 in stroke, 1014
 Photopsia in retinal detachment, 1069
 Photovoice, 975-976
 Phrenic nerve, 997f
 Physiatrist, 90
 Physical abuse of older adult, 25

- Physical activity
after hysterectomy, 1620
in asthma, 611
coronary artery disease and, 833
heart failure and, 756-757
leukemia and, 890, 890b
older adult and, 17-18, 18f
postoperative, 294
- Physical assessment
in acidosis, 204-205, 204b
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1527-1528
in acute kidney injury, 1541-1542, 1541b
in acute pancreatitis, 1323, 1323b
in adrenal insufficiency, 1382, 1382b, 1383f
in allergic rhinitis, 385
in Alzheimer's disease, 948-949, 948b, 949f
in aneurysm, 793
in asthma, 604-605, 604f
in atherosclerosis, 773-774, 774b
in back pain, 961
in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
in bladder cancer, 1512
in brain abscess, 1036-1037
in breast cancer, 1598
in burn, 521-524
airway obstruction and, 521t
cardiopulmonary assessment and, 530
cardiovascular manifestations and, 522-523
direct airway injury and, 521
gastrointestinal system and, 524
immune assessment and, 530
musculoskeletal problems and, 530
neuroendocrine assessment and, 530
renal function and, 523
signs of infection and, 530t
skin assessment and, 523-524, 523f
in cardiovascular assessment, 697-701
blood pressure in, 698-699
extremities and, 697-698, 698f
general appearance and, 697
precordium and, 699-701, 700f, 701t
skin and, 697
venous and arterial pulses in, 699, 699f
in cataracts, 1060, 1060f
in cervical cancer, 1625
in cholecystitis, 1317-1318, 1317b
in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
in chronic kidney disease, 1551-1552, 1551b
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 614-616, 614f, 616f
in cirrhosis, 1296-1298, 1297f
in colorectal cancer, 1246-1247, 1247f
in coronary artery disease, 834-835, 834b-835b
in Crohn's disease, 1281, 1281b
in Cushing's disease, 1385-1386, 1385b
in cystitis, 1492-1493
in dehydration, 175-176, 176b
in endocrine assessment, 1367-1368, 1368f
in end-of-life care, 111, 111b
in esophageal cancer, 1212, 1213b
in fracture, 1148-1149, 1148b
in gallstones, 1317-1318, 1317b
in gastritis, 1222, 1222b
in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204-1205, 1204b
in gastrointestinal assessment, 1183-1184, 1183f, 1183t
in glaucoma, 1063
in head and neck cancer, 589, 589t
in hearing loss, 1099-1100
in heart failure, 748-749, 749b
- Physical assessment (*Continued*)
in hematologic assessment, 862-864, 863b
in hepatitis, 1307
in human immunodeficiency virus infection, 365-368, 365b, 366f
in hypertension, 778, 778f
in hyperthyroidism, 1395, 1395f, 1395t
in hypothyroidism, 1402
in hypovolemic shock, 816-817
in infection, 444
intraoperative care and, 279
in leukemia, 882, 882b
in lung cancer, 632
in lupus, 344-345, 344f
in malnutrition, 1341-1342, 1341t
in meningitis, 938
in multiple sclerosis, 979-980, 979b
in myasthenia gravis, 991-992
in obesity, 1351
in osteoarthritis, 320-321, 321t
in osteoporosis, 1122, 1123f
in Paget's disease of bone, 1129-1130
of pain, 40, 47f-48f
in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664, 1664t
in peptic ulcer disease, 1228, 1228t
in peripheral arterial disease, 786-787, 787f
in pneumonia, 648-650, 650t
in polycystic kidney disease, 1520, 1520b
postoperative, 286-292, 287f
in amputation, 1165
cardiovascular system and, 288
dressings and drains and, 291, 292f
fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance and, 289
gastrointestinal system and, 284, 290t
impaired wound healing and, 291, 291f
motor and sensory function and, 289
neurologic system and, 288-289, 289t
pain and, 291-292
renal system and, 289-290
respiratory system and, 286-288, 286b
skin and, 291
preoperative, 246-247
in plastic surgery, 505
in pressure ulcer, 479
in prostate cancer, 1638
in psoriasis, 499, 499f
in pulmonary embolism, 664, 664b
in pyelonephritis, 1524-1525, 1524b
in rehabilitation, 92-94, 92t
in renal assessment, 1475-1476, 1476f
in renal cell carcinoma, 1532
in reproductive assessment, 1580-1581
female, 1580-1581
male, 1581
in respiratory assessment, 551-555
adventitious breath sounds in, 554, 555t
indicators of respiratory adequacy and, 555
inspection of lungs and thorax in, 552-555, 552f
normal breath sounds in, 553-554, 554t
nose and sinuses in, 551-552
palpation of chest in, 553
percussion of chest in, 553, 553f-554f, 553t
pharynx, trachea, and larynx in, 552
in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335, 334b, 334f
in sepsis and septic shock, 823-824, 823t
- Physical assessment (*Continued*)
in sickle cell disease, 872-873
in skin infection, 494
in spinal cord injury, 969-970, 969b
in stroke, 1009-1012, 1009b
in systemic sclerosis, 347-348
in testicular cancer, 1643-1644, 1644b
in traumatic brain injury, 1024-1026, 1025b
in tuberculosis, 654-655
in ulcerative colitis, 1274
in urinary incontinence, 1500
in vision assessment, 1046-1048
- Physical carcinogenesis, 404
Physical dependence, 44-45
Physical measures in pain management, 59-60, 60f
Physical mobility; *See* Mobility
Physical restraints, 953b
Physical status system of American Society of Anesthesiologists, 271
Physical therapist, 91, 91f
Physical therapy
in fracture, 1156
in pressure ulcer, 485
Physician in emergency care, 123
Physician-assisted suicide, 119t
Physiologic defenses against infection, 437
Phytonadione vitamin K₁, 667
Pia mater, 906
PICO(T) format, 80-81, 81t
PID; *See* Pelvic inflammatory disease
Piggyback set, 220-221
Pigment stones, 1316
Pigmentation
in chronic kidney disease, 1552
in primary adrenocortical insufficiency, 1383f
Pilocarpine, 1066b-1067b
Pilonidal cyst, 501
Piloctic; *See* Pilocarpine
Pilostat; *See* Pilocarpine
PIN; *See* Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia
Pink eye, 1056
Pinna, 1077-1078, 1078f, 1088-1089, 1089f
tophi on, 1082
Pioglitazone, 1423b-1427b, 1428
Pirbuterol, 609
Pit viper, 139f, 140-141
Pitressin, 1379b
Pitting edema, 178-179, 178f, 698
Pitting nails, 466t
Pituitary, 908, 1361, 1361f, 1361t
dysfunction in brain tumor, 1031
hormones secreted by, 1361, 1361t
hyperpituitarism and, 1374-1378, 1375f, 1376b
drug therapy for, 1375
genetic considerations in, 1374b
home care management after surgery in, 1377b
surgical management of, 1376-1378, 1376f, 1377b
hypopituitarism and, 1372-1373, 1373b
syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone and, 1380-1381, 1380t
after craniotomy, 1035-1036
in brain tumor, 1031
in cancer, 430-431
lung cancer and, 631t
tumor of, 1031, 1374
Pituitary Cushing's disease, 1385
Pivot joint, 1108-1109
PKD; *See* Polycystic kidney disease
Placebo effect, 40
Plague, 448t, 449
Plain abdominal film, 1185
Plan, do, study, act cycles, 84-87
Plantar digital neuritis, 1139
Plantar fasciitis, 1139
- Plantar ulcer, 1446
Plaque, 460f-461f
Plaquenil; *See* Hydroxychloroquine
Plasma, 856
electrolytes in, 180f
for hypovolemic shock, 818
Plasma cell, 311, 857t
immune function of, 305t
multiple myeloma and, 894
Plasma exchange
in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
in rheumatoid arthritis, 341
Plasma high-density lipoproteins, 702b
Plasma low-density lipoproteins, 702b
Plasma proteins, 303, 303f, 856
Plasma transfusion, 900
Plasma volume expanders, 1535
Plasmapheresis
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 988-989, 989b
in myasthenia gravis, 994
in rheumatoid arthritis, 341
Plasmin, 860f, 861-862
Plasminogen, 860f, 861-862
Plaster traction, 1153t
Plaster-of-Paris cast, 1151, 1152b
Plastic rigidity in Parkinson disease, 942
Plastic surgery, 505-508
common procedures in, 507t
history before, 505
physical assessment before, 505
postoperative care in, 506-508
preoperative care in, 506
psychosocial assessment before, 505-506
Plate guard and spork, 100t
Platelet aggregation, 858, 866
Platelet count, 864, 865b
Platelet inhibitors, 802, 862
Platelet transfusion, 900, 900b
in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
indications for, 897t
Platelet(s), 857-858, 895-896
autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura and, 895-896
reduction in leukemia, 881
thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura and, 896
Platinol; *See* Cisplatin
Plavix; *See* Clopidogrel
Pleiomorphic cytokine, 314
Plethoric appearance in polycythemia vera, 879
Plethysmography
in Burger's disease, 797
in peripheral arterial disease, 787
Pleura, 546f, 547
Pleural cavity, 546f
Pleural effusion, 553
in acute pancreatitis, 1322
in lung cancer, 638
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
Pleural friction rub, 555t
Pleur-evac drainage system, 636f
Pleurisy, 335
Pleuritic pain
in lung abscess, 658
in pneumonia, 650t
Pleuripulmonary pain, 696t
Plexus, 911
Plicamycin, 191
Ploidy, 401-403
Pluripotent stem cell, 304, 878
PND; *See* Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
Pneumatic compression device, 257, 258f
Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine, 647
Pneumococcus
in meningitis, 938
in tonsillitis, 644
Pneumoconiosis, 629b

- Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, 366, 375
- Pneumnectomy, 634, 634f, 638
- Pneumonia, 647-652
- after burn injury, 525
 - after craniotomy, 1035
 - airway obstruction in, 651
 - aspiration, 1346b
 - bronchiolitis obliterans organizing, 630
 - concept map for, 648f-649f
 - etiology of, 647, 647t
 - health care resources for, 652
 - in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 - history in, 648
 - home care management in, 652, 652b
 - hypoxemia in, 651
 - imaging assessment in, 650
 - incidence and prevalence of, 647
 - laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 - oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 - pathophysiology of, 647
 - physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
 - Pneumocystis jiroveci*, 366, 375
 - prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 650
 - sepsis in, 651-652
 - in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
 - teaching for self-management in, 652
 - ventilator-associated, 648b, 681
- Pneumonitis, 335
- Pneumothorax, 560, 683
- central venous catheter-related, 231t
 - tension, 683-684
 - tracheostomy-related, 571
- Podagra, 349
- Podofilox, 1659
- Point mutation, 71
- Point of maximal impulse, 699
- Poisoning
- carbon monoxide, 522, 522t
 - cyanide, 525
 - food, 1270, 1289-1290, 1289t, 1290b
 - smoke, 522
- Polyarthritis nodosa, 351
- Polyarthralgia, 351
- Polycystic kidney disease, 1518-1520
- constipation in, 1521
 - diagnosis of, 1521
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1519, 1519b, 1520f
 - health care resources for, 1522
 - history in, 1520
 - hypertension and end-stage kidney disease in, 1521-1522, 1522b
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1520
 - pain in, 1521
 - physical assessment in, 1520, 1520b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1521
- Polycythemia, 870, 878-879, 879b
- Polycythemia vera, 879
- Polydipsia
- in diabetes mellitus, 1412
 - in hyperaldosteronism, 1390
- Polymedicine, 20
- PolyMem, 534b-535b
- Polymerase chain reaction assay for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, 1662
- for genital herpes, 1657
- Polymorphism, 71
- Polymorphonuclear neutrophil, 306, 437
- Polymyalgia rheumatica, 351, 351b
- Polymyositis, 351
- Polymyxin, 534b-535b
- Polyp
- cervical, 1621
 - intestinal, 1260, 1260f
 - nasal, 583
 - vocal cord, 585-586, 586f, 587b
- Polypectomy, 583
- Polyphagia, 1412
- Polypharmacy, 20
- Polyradiculoneuropathy, 987
- Polysomnography, 584-585
- Polyuria, 1474t
- in diabetes insipidus, 1378
 - in diabetes mellitus, 1412
 - in hyperaldosteronism, 1390
- Polyvinyl chloride infusion container, 220
- Pons, 907f, 908t
- Pontine artery, 908f
- PONV; *See* Postoperative nausea and vomiting
- Popliteal artery aneurysm, 796
- Popliteal pulse, 699f
- Pore, 167
- Porfimer sodium, 1214
- Portable amplifier, 1100
- Portable chest drainage system, 636-637, 636f
- Portable liquid oxygen, 570, 570f
- Port-A-Cath, 57
- Portal hypertension, 1294
- Portal hypertensive gastropathy, 1294
- Portal of exit, 437
- Portal-systemic encephalopathy, 1295, 1295t
- Positioning
- in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672-673, 673b
 - after burn injury, 525-526, 537, 537b
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618
 - for esophageal diverticula, 1217-1218
 - in head and neck cancer, 590
 - of head in traumatic brain injury, 1027, 1027b
 - in osteoarthritis, 322
 - in peripheral arterial disease, 787-788
 - postoperative, 293
 - in preventing pressure ulcers, 476
 - repositioning of bed bound patient, 479
 - during surgery, 279-280, 280f, 281b
 - for thoracentesis, 559-560, 560f
- Positive deflection, 713, 713f
- Positive end-expiratory pressure, 678
- in acute respiratory distress syndrome, 672-673
 - in burn injury, 529
 - oxygen therapy and, 564
- Positive expiratory pressure device, 620, 620f
- Positive inotropic drugs
- for heart failure, 753
 - for hypovolemic shock, 818, 819b
 - for pulmonary embolism, 667-668
- Positron emission mammography, 1598-1599
- Positron emission tomography
- in cardiovascular assessment, 707
 - in esophageal cancer, 1213
 - in gastric cancer, 1235
 - in head and neck cancer, 590
 - in lung cancer, 633
 - in neurologic assessment, 912t, 922
- Postanesthesia care unit, 285
- fluid replacement in, 289
 - focused assessment after discharge from, 288b
 - pain assessment in, 292
- Postanesthesia care unit record, 287f
- Postauricular lymph nodes, 1196f
- Postcholecystectomy syndrome, 1320, 1320t
- Post-concussion syndrome, 1020, 1030b
- Posterior cerebral artery, 908, 908f, 1009b
- Posterior cervical lymph nodes, 1196f
- Posterior chamber of eye, 1040f-1041f
- Posterior colporrhaphy, 1617
- Posterior communicating artery, 908f
- Posterior descending coronary artery, 688f
- Posterior inferior cerebellar artery, 908f, 1016
- Posterior nasal bleeding, 582, 582f
- Posterior pituitary, 1361f, 1378-1381
- diabetes insipidus and, 1378-1380, 1378b-1379b
 - hormones of, 1359t, 1361t
 - syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone and, 1380-1381, 1380t
- Posterior segment of eye, 1040f-1041f
- Posterior tibial pulse, 699f
- Posterior urethra, 1472f
- Posterior uveitis, 1068
- Posterior vertebral artery, 908, 908f
- Posterior wall myocardial infarction, 831
- Posterior white columns, 909
- Posteroanterior chest x-ray, 556, 703
- Postexposure prophylaxis to human immunodeficiency virus, 363b-364b
- Postherpetic neuralgia, 492
- Posthospital care in acute kidney injury, 1546
- Postictal stage, 932, 932b
- Post-irradiation sialadenitis, 1201
- Postmastectomy exercises, 1603b
- Postmortem care, 118, 118b-119b
- Postnecrotic cirrhosis, 1294
- Postoperative bleeding
- in amputation, 1164
 - in coronary artery bypass graft, 848b
 - in glaucoma surgery, 1067
 - in kidney biopsy, 1487
 - in laryngectomy, 592
 - in nephrectomy, 1533
 - in pancreatic cancer, 1332
 - in total hip arthroplasty, 325t, 327
- Postoperative care, 284-300
- in abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 794-795
 - in abdominal herniation, 1244
 - in back surgery, 963-964
 - in bariatric surgery, 1354-1355
 - in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1629
 - in bone cancer, 1136-1137
 - in breast reconstruction, 1605b
 - in cataract surgery, 1061
 - in colorectal cancer, 1249-1251
 - in corneal transplantation, 1058
 - in coronary artery bypass graft, 847-849
 - in craniotomy, 1034-1036
 - in Cushing's disease, 1387-1388
 - in cystectomy, 1513
 - in esophageal cancer, 1215-1217, 1216b
 - focused assessment in, 288b
 - in fracture surgery, 1155-1156
 - in head and neck cancer surgery, 591-592
 - health care resources after discharge and, 300
 - in heart transplantation, 769-770
 - in hiatal hernia, 1210-1211
 - history review in, 285
 - home care management and, 299
 - hypoxemia prevention and, 293-294, 293b
 - in hysterectomy, 1619, 1620b
 - in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 - in kidney transplantation, 1569-1570, 1570b
 - laboratory assessment in, 293
 - in lung reduction surgery, 620-621
 - in lung transplantation, 626
 - in mastectomy, 1602-1607
 - in myringotomy, 1093, 1094b
 - in open ureterolithotomy, 1510
 - in oral cancer, 1198-1199
 - pain management in, 297-299, 298b-299b
 - in peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
 - physical assessment in, 286-292, 287f
 - cardiovascular system and, 288
 - dressings and drains and, 291, 292f
 - fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base balance and, 289
- Postoperative care (*Continued*)
- gastrointestinal system and, 284, 290t
 - impaired wound healing and, 291, 291f
 - motor and sensory function and, 289
 - neurologic system and, 288-289, 289t
 - pain and, 291-292
 - renal system and, 289-290
 - respiratory system and, 286-288, 286b
 - skin and, 291
 - in pituitary gland removal, 1376-1378
 - in plastic surgery, 506-508
 - in pneumonectomy, 634-638, 635f-636f
 - postoperative hand-off report and, 285, 285b
 - potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 - in pressure ulcer, 487-488
 - in prostatectomy, 1639-1640, 1639b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 292
 - in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 - in retinal detachment, 1069
 - in sinusitis, 642b
 - skin care and, 294b
 - in stapedectomy, 1094b, 1102-1103
 - in stress incontinence surgery, 1502
 - in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445
 - teaching for self-management, 299-300
 - in testicular cancer, 1645
 - in thyroid surgery, 1399-1400
 - in total gastrectomy, 1236-1237
 - in total hip arthroplasty, 325-329, 325t, 326b
 - in total knee arthroplasty, 329-330, 330b, 330f
 - in tracheostomy, 571
 - in tympanoplasty, 1102
 - in ulcerative colitis, 1277-1278
 - in Whipple procedure, 1331-1333, 1332t
 - wound infection and delayed healing and, 294-297, 295f, 296b
- Postoperative graft occlusion, 791b, 794b
- Postoperative hand-off report, 285, 285b
- Postoperative infection
- in liver transplantation, 1312, 1312t
 - in lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
 - in nephrectomy, 1533
- Postoperative nausea and vomiting, 290-291
- Postoperative pain, 291-292
- in amputation, 1166
 - in bariatric surgery, 1354
 - in coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 - drug therapy for, 297, 298b
 - epidural infusion for, 236
 - in head and neck surgery, 593
 - management of, 297-299, 298b-299b
 - in nephrectomy, 1533
 - in oral cancer, 1199
 - peripheral nerve blockade for, 330
 - preemptive analgesia for, 41
 - relaxation and music therapy for, 12b
 - in total hip arthroplasty, 328
- Postpartum hemorrhage, 1372
- Postpericardiotomy syndrome, 849
- Postrenal acute kidney injury, 1538, 1539t, 1541b, 1542
- Postrenal azotemia, 1539
- Post-traumatic stress disorder
- after mass casualty event, 163
 - critical incident stress debriefing and, 162
- Postural hypotension, 698
- angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor-related, 783b
 - bromocriptine-related, 1375
 - in cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, 1416

- Postural hypotension (*Continued*)
 in dehydration, 175
 in hypertension, 778
 in pneumonia, 650
 in rehabilitation setting, 97b
 Posture assessment, 1111, 1111f
 Posturing, 918-919, 918f
 Post-void residual, 101, 1500
 Potassium, 183-187
 abnormal values of, 170t
 in acid-base imbalances, 205b, 206f
 in chronic kidney disease, 1548
 in hypovolemic shock, 817b
 adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
 aldosterone secretion and, 1362
 in body fluids, 180f
 hyperkalemia and, 186-187, 186t, 188b
 hypokalemia and, 183-186, 184t, 185b
 lack of insulin and, 1413
 levels in brain assessment, 524b
 normal adult range for, 1186b
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 restriction in chronic kidney disease, 1555t
 supplementation in gastroenteritis, 1271
 values in older adult, 170b
 Potassium hydroxide test, 494
 Potassium-sparing diuretics
 for hypertension, 780
 for hypokalemia, 186
 Pouch care, 1279b
 Povidone-iodine, 438-439
 PPE; *See* Personal protective equipment
 PQRST mnemonic, 46, 1182
 PR interval, 715, 716f, 718
 PR segment, 715, 716f
 Pramipexole, 999
 Pramlintide, 1423b-1427b, 1430
 PrandiMet, 1423b-1427b
 Prandin; *See* Repaglinide
 Prasugrel, 838b, 844
 Prayer, 10
 Prazosin, 784
 Preadmission testing, 247-248
 Prealbumin, 1342
 Preauricular lymph nodes, 1196f
 Precipitation, 312
 Precordial leads, 713
 Precordium assessment, 699-701, 700f, 701t
 auscultation in, 699-700
 inspection in, 699
 Precose; *See* Acarbose
 Precursor cell, 856
 Prediabetes, 1417
 Prednisolone
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
 Prednisone
 for adrenal insufficiency, 1384b
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for aplastic anemia, 878
 for asthma, 607b-608b
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for myasthenia gravis, 994
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 340
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
 Pregabalin
 for fibromyalgia, 354
 for neuropathic pain, 1449
 for pain management, 58
 for trigeminal neuralgia, 1000
 Pregnancy
 methotrexate use during, 337
 sickle cell disease and, 875b
 urinary tract infection during, 1494b
 Pregnanediol, 1582b
 Prehospital care providers, 122-123, 123f
 Prehypertension, 776, 776t
 Preictal stage, 933
 Pre-infarction angina, 829
 Preload, 689-690, 751-752
 Premalignant oral lesions, 1195
 Premature atrial complexes, 721-722
 Premature complexes, 720, 740b
 Premature ventricular complexes, 728, 729f
 Preoperative anxiety, 258-259, 846
 Preoperative care, 239-262
 in abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 794
 in back surgery, 963
 in bariatric surgery, 1353
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1635
 in bone cancer, 1136
 in cataract surgery, 1060-1061
 categories and purposes of surgery and, 240, 243t
 in colorectal cancer, 1241, 1248-1249, 1249t
 comprehensive surgical checklist and, 241f
 in corneal transplantation, 1058
 in coronary artery bypass graft surgery, 846
 in craniotomy, 1033
 in Cushing's disease, 1387
 in cystectomy, 1513
 dietary restrictions and, 252-253
 electrocardiography and, 248
 in epilepsy surgery, 937
 in esophageal cancer, 1215
 focused assessment of, 250b
 in fracture surgery, 1155
 in gastric cancer surgery, 1236
 in head and neck surgery, 591
 in heart transplantation, 768-769
 in hiatal hernia, 1210
 history of, 242-246
 imaging assessment of, 248
 informed consent and, 250, 251f
 in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 intestinal preparation and, 253-254
 in kidney transplantation, 1568-1569
 laboratory assessment of, 247-248, 249b-250b
 in lung reduction surgery, 620
 in lung transplantation, 626
 in mastectomy, 1601-1602
 minimizing anxiety in, 258-259
 in myringotomy, 1093
 older adult and, 245b-246b
 in open ureterolithotomy, 1510
 in oral cancer, 1198
 patient education and, 248-258, 252t
 patient self-determination and, 252
 in peripheral arterial disease, 789-790
 physical assessment of, 246-247
 in pituitary gland removal, 1376-1378
 in plastic surgery, 506
 in pneumonectomy, 634
 potential effects of herbs on surgery, 244t
 preoperative chart review and, 259
 preoperative checklist and, 261f
 preoperative drugs and, 260
 preoperative fasting and, 253b
 preoperative patient preparation and, 259-260
 preparation for tubes, drains, and vascular access, 254
 in pressure sore, 487
 in prostate cancer, 1639
 psychosocial assessment of, 247
 regularly scheduled drugs and, 253
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 in retinal detachment surgery, 1069
 risk for postoperative complications and, 243, 244t
 skin preparation and, 254, 255f
 in stapedectomy, 1102-1103, 1102b, 1103f
 Preoperative care (*Continued*)
 in stress incontinence surgery, 1502
 in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1444-1445
 Surgical Care Improvement Project Core Measurement overview and, 242t
 surgical settings and, 240
 teaching postoperative procedures and exercises, 254-258, 256b-257b, 256f, 258f
 in testicular cancer, 1645
 in thyroid surgery, 1397-1399
 in total hip arthroplasty, 324
 in total knee arthroplasty, 329
 in tracheostomy, 571
 transfer to surgical suite, 260
 in tympanoplasty, 1101
 in ulcerative colitis, 1276
 in Whipple procedure, 1331
 Preoperative chart review, 259
 Preoperative fasting, 252-253, 253b
 Prepucce, penile cancer and, 1648
 Prerenal acute kidney injury, 1538, 1539t
 Prerenal azotemia, 1539, 1541-1542, 1541b
 Presbycusis, 1098
 Presbyopia, 19, 1044, 1070, 1459
 Prescribing of infusion therapy, 212, 212b
 Presence at end of life, 116
 Presenile dementia, Alzheimer type, 946
 Pressure dressings after burn injury, 537-538, 537f
 Pressure necrosis, cast-related, 1153
 Pressure support ventilation, 682t
 Pressure ulcer, 474-490
 concept map for, 483f-484f
 health care resources for, 490
 history in, 479
 home care management in, 488-489, 490b
 identification of high-risk patient, 477, 478f
 incidence and prevalence of, 476
 infection prevention in, 488, 489b
 laboratory assessment in, 482
 mechanical forces in, 475-476, 476f
 nutrition and, 101
 older adult and, 476b
 pathophysiology of, 474-479
 physical assessment in, 479
 from positioning during surgery, 296-297
 pressure-relieving and pressure-reducing techniques for, 477-479
 prevention of, 476-479, 476b
 psychosocial assessment in, 482
 rehabilitation setting and, 94
 staging of, 481f
 surgical management of, 487-488, 487f
 teaching for self-management of, 489-490
 wound assessment in, 479-482, 480b, 481f, 482t
 wound care in, 483-488, 483b, 483t, 486t
 Pressure-activated safety valve, 216
 Pressure-cycled ventilator, 677
 Pressure-reducing devices, 101
 Pressure-reducing techniques, 477-479
 Pressure-relieving devices, 101
 Pressure-relieving techniques, 477-479
 Presurgical checklist, 261f
 Pretibial myxedema, 1394
 Prevacid; *See* Lansoprazole
 Preventive therapy for migraine, 930, 930b
 Prezista; *See* Darunavir/ritonavir
 Prialt; *See* Ziconotide
 Priapism, 872, 1648-1649
 Prick test, 385
 Prilosec; *See* Omeprazole
 Primacor; *See* Milrinone
 Primary adrenal insufficiency, 1382t
 Primary aldosteronism, 777
 Primary angle-closure glaucoma, 1063, 1063t
 Primary arthroplasty, 324
 Primary biliary cirrhosis, 1296
 Primary brain injury, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
 Primary bronchus, 546
 Primary diabetes insipidus, 1378
 Primary epilepsy, 933
 Primary glomerular diseases and syndromes, 1526t
 Primary gout, 349
 Primary immune deficiencies, 381-382
 Primary open-angle glaucoma, 1063, 1063f-1064f, 1063t
 Primary osteoarthritis, 319
 Primary osteoporosis, 1120, 1120b
 Primary prevention, 406-407
 Primary progressive multiple sclerosis, 978
 Primary skin lesions, 459, 460f-461f
 Primary stomatitis, 1193
 Primary survey, 132-134, 132b-133b, 132f, 1150
 Primary syphilis, 1654
 Primary tumor, 400
 Primidone, 934b
 Principle of double effect, 119t
 Prinivil; *See* Lisinopril
 Prinzmetal's angina, 829
 Prioderm; *See* Malathion
 Priority setting in emergency care, 126
 Privacy in genetic counseling, 77
 Proaccelerin, 860t
 Pro-Banthine; *See* Propantheline bromide
 Probenecid
 for gout, 350
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 Probiotics, 9, 1242
 Procainamide, 732
 Procalcitonin, 824, 824b
 Procarbazine, 415t-416t, 418t, 1033
 Procardia; *See* Nifedipine
 Pro-cell division signal transduction pathway, 428f-429f
 Proconvertin, 860t
 Procrit; *See* Epoetin alfa
 Procydine, 944
 Procytox; *See* Cyclophosphamide
 Prodiem; *See* Phenazopyridine
 Progesterone, 1582b
 Progestin, 425t
 Proglycem; *See* Diazoxide
 Prograf; *See* Tacrolimus
 Programmed cell death, 398
 Progressive muscle relaxation, 11
 Progressive muscular dystrophies, 1140-1141, 1140b, 1141t
 Progressive-relapsing multiple sclerosis, 978
 Pro-inflammatory cytokines, 314t
 Proinsulin, 1411, 1411f
 Projected pain, 46
 Prokine; *See* Sargramostim
 Prokinetic agents
 for chemotherapy-related nausea and vomiting, 423b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1207b
 Prolactin, 1361t
 oversecretion of, 1374, 1376b
 serum, 1581-1582, 1582b
 Prolactin-secreting tumor, 1374
 Prolapse of pelvic organs, 1615-1617, 1616f
 Prolapsed hemorrhoids, 1261f
 Proliferative diabetic retinopathy, 1414, 1414f
 Proliferative phase of healing, 473t
 Promotors, carcinogenesis and, 400
 Prompted voiding, 1505

- Pronation, 1112f
 Pronator drift, 916
 Prone position during surgery, 280, 280f
 Prone push-ups, 962b
 Pronestyl; *See* Procainamide
 Propafenone hydrochloride, 723b-726b
 Propantheline bromide
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b
 for urolithiasis, 1510
 Proparacaine hydrochloride, 1054b
 Prophylactic mastectomy, 1597
 Prophylactic oophorectomy, 1597
 Prophylactic surgery, 410
 Prophylactic therapy in sickle cell disease, 874
 Propine; *See* Dipivefrin hydrochloride
 Propofol, 274t, 276
 Propranolol, 723b-726b, 732
 for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 for hyperthyroidism, 1397
 for migraine, 930
 Proprioception, 909
 after stroke, 1009
 sensory deficits and, 915-916
 Propylthiouracil, 1397b-1398b
 Proscar; *See* Finasteride
 Prosopagnosia, 951
 Prostacyclin, 1471
 Prostaglandin agonists, 1066b-1067b
 Prostaglandin E₂, 1471
 Prostaglandin(s), 1471, 1471t
 gastritis and, 1221
 migraine and, 928
 Prostate, 1472f, 1577-1578, 1578f
 benign prostatic hyperplasia and, 1630
 community-based care in, 1636-1637
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 1633
 concept map for, 1633f-1634f
 drug therapy for, 1633, 1633b
 history in, 1630, 1631f-1632f
 imaging assessment in, 1633
 laboratory assessment in, 1632
 noninvasive procedures for, 1635
 pathophysiology of, 1630, 1630f
 physical assessment in, 1630
 psychosocial assessment in, 1630-1632
 surgical management of, 1635-1636, 1635f, 1636b
 inflammation of, 1649
 Prostate biopsy, 1586, 1638
 Prostate cancer, 1637
 chemotherapy for, 1640
 expectant therapy in, 1638
 genetic considerations in, 1637b
 health care resources for, 1641-1642
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1637
 history in, 1637
 home care management in, 1641
 hormone therapy for, 1640, 1640b
 laboratory assessment in, 1638
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 1637, 1637f
 physical assessment in, 1638
 psychosocial assessment in, 1638
 radiation therapy in, 1640
 sites of metastasis of, 401t
 surgical management of, 1639-1640, 1639b
 teaching for self-management in, 1641, 1641b
 transrectal ultrasonography in, 1638, 1638b
 Prostatectomy
 contact laser, 1635
 erectile dysfunction after, 1642
 in prostate cancer, 1639, 1639b
 Prostate-specific antigen, 1582, 1582b
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1632
 in prostate cancer, 1638
 Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia, 1637
 Prostatic stent, 1635
 Prostatic urethra, 1472, 1578f
 Prostatitis, 1630, 1649
 Prostatodysnia, 1649
 Prosthesis
 for amputation, 1166-1167, 1167f, 1168b
 hip, 1160f
 penile, 1643
 in stapedectomy, 1103f
 Protamine sulfate, 667
 Protease inhibitors, 359, 371, 372b-374b
 Proteasome inhibitors, 429-430, 429t
 Protective gene, 71
 Protein
 in body fluids, 180f
 bone density and, 1121
 in production of thyroid hormones, 1363-1364
 restriction in chronic kidney disease, 1555-1556, 1555t
 synthesis of, 70-71, 70f, 70t
 thyroid hormones and, 1394
 twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
 in urine, 1478b, 1480
 Protein buffers, 200
 Protein C, 824, 859-860
 Protein S, 859-860
 Protein-calorie malnutrition, 1340
 Protein-energy malnutrition, 1340
 Protein-sparing modified fast, 1351-1352
 Proteinuria, 1480
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 in diabetic nephropathy, 1531-1532
 in nephrotic syndrome, 1529-1530
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 Proteolysis, 1321, 1412
Proteus
 in cystitis, 1491
 in prostatitis, 1649
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
 Prothrombin, 859f, 860t
 Prothrombin time, 703, 865b, 866
 in cirrhosis, 1298-1299
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1184-1185
 for monitoring of anticoagulation therapy, 667b
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 Proton pump inhibitors
 for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 for gastritis, 1222, 1223b-1224b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1229
 for Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234
 Protonix; *See* Pantoprazole
 Protozoal infection, 366
 Protraction, 1112f
 Provence; *See* Sipeleucel-T
 Proventil; *See* Albuterol
 Provigil; *See* Modafinil
 Proximal convoluted tubule, 1467, 1467f-1468f, 1469-1470, 1469t, 1470f
 Proximal humerus fracture, 1159
 Proximal interphalangeal joint, 1112-1113, 1113f
 Proximal tibial intraosseous access, 235, 235f
 Proxymetacaine, 1054b
 Pruritus, 471-472
 in anaphylaxis, 388-389
 in bee sting, 145
 drug-induced, 1045
 dry skin and, 471
 epidural opioid-associated, 57
 in gallstones, 1316-1317
 in pediculosis, 496
 in serum sickness, 141
 in skin lesions, 459
 Pruritus (*Continued*)
 in uremia, 1475, 1552
 in vulvovaginitis, 1613
 PSA; *See* Prostate specific antigen
 Pseudoaddiction, 44-45
 Pseudocyst, pancreatic, 1329
 Pseudogout, 353
Pseudomonas aeruginosa
 in osteomyelitis, 1131
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
 Psoralen and ultraviolet radiation treatment, 500
 Psoriasis, 498-501, 498b, 499f, 501b
 Psoriasis vulgaris, 499, 499f
 Psoriatic arthritis, 353
 PSVT; *See* Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia
 Psychiatric crisis nurse team, 122
 Psychological factors in heart disease, 694
 Psychomotor seizure, 932-933
 Psychosocial assessment
 in acidosis, 205
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 368
 in acute pancreatitis, 1323
 in adrenal insufficiency, 1383
 in Alzheimer's disease, 949-950
 in amputation, 1165
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630-1632
 in bladder cancer, 1512-1513
 in breast cancer, 1598
 in cardiovascular assessment, 701
 in cataracts, 1060
 in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616
 in cirrhosis, 1298
 in colorectal cancer, 1247
 in coronary artery disease, 835
 in Cushing's disease, 1386
 in endocrine assessment, 1368-1369
 in end-of-life care, 111-112, 112b
 in esophageal cancer, 1212-1213
 in fracture, 1149
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1184
 in head and neck cancer, 589
 in hearing assessment, 1084
 in hearing loss, 1100
 in heart failure, 749
 in hematologic assessment, 864
 in hepatitis, 1308
 in hypertension, 778
 in hyperthyroidism, 1395-1396
 in hypothyroidism, 1402
 in hypovolemic shock, 817
 in hysterectomy, 1619
 in infection, 444
 in integumentary assessment, 467
 in leukemia, 882
 in lung cancer, 632
 in lupus, 345
 in malnutrition, 1342
 in multiple sclerosis, 980
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1113
 in neurologic assessment, 919
 in obesity, 1351
 in osteoarthritis, 321
 in osteoporosis, 1122-1123
 in pain, 49
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
 before plastic surgery, 505-506
 in pneumonia, 650
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 postoperative, 292
 preoperative, 247
 in pressure ulcer, 482
 in prostate cancer, 1638
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in rehabilitation, 94
 in renal assessment, 1476
 in reproductive assessment, 1581
 Psychosocial assessment (*Continued*)
 in respiratory assessment, 555-556
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 335
 in sepsis, 824
 in sickle cell disease, 873
 in spinal cord injury, 970
 in stroke, 1012
 in testicular cancer, 1644
 in traumatic brain injury, 1026
 in ulcerative colitis, 1274
 in uterine cancer, 1622
 in vision assessment, 1048
 Psychosocial response of survivor, 163-164
 Psychosocial support
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 379-380
 in breast cancer, 1608-1609
 in burn injury, 539
 in chronic kidney disease, 1572
 in diabetes mellitus, 1460-1461
 in end-of-life care, 115-118, 116b-117b, 117f
 in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 990
 in head and neck cancer, 597
 in labyrinthitis, 1096
 in leukemia, 891
 in ostomy, 1253, 1253b
 in Parkinson disease, 945-946
 in psoriasis, 500-501
 in tracheostomy, 577
 in trigeminal neuralgia, 1001
 in urinary incontinence, 1506
 Psychotropic drugs
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 for Huntington disease, 956
 Psyllium, 1242
 PT; *See* Prothrombin time
 PTA; *See* Percutaneous transluminal angioplasty
 PTC; *See* Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
 Ptoxis, 1046
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in cluster headache, 931
 in myasthenia gravis, 991
 in stroke, 1011
 PTSD; *See* Post-traumatic stress disorder
 PTT; *See* Partial thromboplastin time
 PTU; *See* Propylthiouracil
 Ptyalin, 1179
 Pubic lice, 496
 Public information officer, 160, 160t
 Pubovaginal sling procedures, 1503t
 Pudendal plexus, 997f
 Pulley exercise, 1603
 Pulmicort; *See* Budesonide
 Pulmonary arterial hypertension, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t
 Pulmonary artery occlusive pressure, 708
 Pulmonary artery wedge pressure, 709, 709f
 Pulmonary autograft, 762
 Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure, 672
 Pulmonary circulation, 547, 549b
 Pulmonary contusion, 682
 Pulmonary disorders
 acute respiratory distress syndrome in, 671-672, 672b, 672t
 acute respiratory failure in, 669-671, 670t, 671f
 asthma in, 601-611
 aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 exercise and activity in, 611
 history in, 603

Pulmonary disorders (*Continued*)

incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b

laboratory assessment in, 605

levels of control in, 603b

oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b

pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f

physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f

pulmonary function tests in, 605

smoking cessation and, 605b

status asthmaticus and, 611

step system for medication use in, 604b

teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b

using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f

bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia in, 630

burn-related, 516-517

chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in, 601, 602f, 611-623

activity tolerance and, 621-622

anxiety in, 621

barrel chest in, 604f

breathing techniques for, 618, 619b

chronic bronchitis in, 612-613

complications of, 613-614, 614b

cultural considerations in, 613b

drug therapy for, 619

effective coughing for, 618-619

emphysema in, 611-612, 612f

etiology and genetic risk in, 613, 613b, 613t

exercise conditioning in, 619-620

health care resources for, 622, 623b

health promotion and maintenance in, 614

history in, 614

home care management in, 622

hydration in, 620

imaging assessment in, 617

incidence and prevalence of, 613

laboratory assessment in, 616-617

lung transplantation for, 620-621

monitoring for respiratory status changes in, 618

oxygen therapy for, 619, 619b

physical assessment in, 614-616, 614f, 616f

positioning for, 618

positive expiratory pressure device for, 620, 620f

psychosocial assessment in, 616

respiratory infections and, 622

severity classification in, 617t

suctioning in, 620

teaching for self-management in, 622

weight loss in, 621

cystic fibrosis in, 623-626

bacterial infection risk in, 624

chest physiotherapy in, 624, 625f

genetic considerations in, 623b

pathophysiology of, 623-626

surgical management of, 625-626

dying patient and, 114

endotracheal intubation in, 674-675, 674f, 675b-676b

idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis in, 628

inhalation anthrax in, 658-659, 658b-659b

interstitial lung diseases in, 627-628

lung abscess in, 658

lung cancer in, 630-638

chemotherapy for, 633

chest tube for, 634-638, 635b, 635f-636f, 637b

diagnosis of, 632-633

etiology and genetic risk in, 631, 631b

health promotion and maintenance in, 631

history in, 631-638, 631t

Pulmonary disorders (*Continued*)

incidence and prevalence of, 630-631

pain management in, 637

pathophysiology of, 630-631, 631t

photodynamic therapy for, 633-634

physical assessment in, 632

pneumectomy care in, 638

psychosocial assessment in, 632

radiation therapy for, 633

respiratory management in, 637-638

surgical management of, 634-638, 634f

mechanical ventilation for, 675-682, 677b

complications in, 680-681

extubation in, 681-682

modes of ventilation in, 677-678

monitoring in, 679-681, 679b

types of ventilators in, 675-677, 677f

ventilator alarms and, 679-680, 680t

ventilator controls and settings in, 678-679

weaning from, 681, 681b, 682t

occupational pulmonary disease in, 628-630, 629b

older adult and

asthma and, 603b

chronic respiratory disorders and, 601b

oxygen therapy for, 563-570, 563f

absorption atelectasis in, 564, 564b

bacterial contamination of oxygen delivery system in, 565, 565b

combustion in, 563-564

drying of mucous membranes in, 564-565, 565f

facemasks in, 565-566, 567f

high-flow delivery systems for, 566-568, 568f, 568t

home care management in, 569-570, 570f

nasal cannula in, 565, 567f

noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in, 568-569, 569f

oxygen toxicity and, 564

oxygen-induced hypoventilation and, 564

smoking contraindication in, 570b

transtracheal, 569

pandemic influenza in, 645-647

pneumonia in, 647-652

airway obstruction in, 651

concept map for, 648f-649f

etiology of, 647, 647t

health care resources for, 652

history in, 648

home care management in, 652, 652b

hypoxemia in, 651

imaging assessment in, 650

incidence and prevalence of, 647

laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f

oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b

pathophysiology of, 647

physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t

prevention of, 647-648, 648b

psychosocial assessment in, 650

sepsis in, 651-652

teaching for self-management in, 652

ventilator-associated, 648b

pulmonary arterial hypertension in, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t

pulmonary embolism in, 663-669

anxiety in, 668

bleeding in, 668, 668b

drug therapy for, 666b-667b

health care resources for, 669, 669b

health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b

history in, 664

home care management in, 668-669

hypotension in, 667-668

hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b

imaging assessment in, 664

laboratory assessment in, 664

pathophysiology of, 663

physical assessment in, 664, 664b

preoperative assessment for, 256

psychosocial assessment in, 664

surgical management of, 667

Pulmonary disorders (*Continued*)

health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b

history in, 664

home care management in, 668-669

hypotension in, 667-668

hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b

imaging assessment in, 664

laboratory assessment in, 664

pathophysiology of, 663

physical assessment in, 664, 664b

psychosocial assessment in, 664

surgical management of, 667

teaching for self-management in, 669, 669b

pulmonary empyema in, 659-660

severe acute respiratory syndrome in, 652-653, 653b

tracheostomy for, 570-578

air warming and humidification in, 574, 574b

bronchial and oral hygiene for, 576

care of, 575-576, 575b-576b, 576f

communication and, 577

community-based care in, 578

complications of, 571-572, 571b

focused assessment of, 576b

nutrition and, 577, 577b

older adult and, 578b

postoperative care in, 571

preoperative care in, 571

preventing tissue damage from, 573-574

psychosocial needs and self-image and, 577

suctioning of, 574-575, 574b

swallowing and, 595

vertical tracheal incision for, 571, 571f

weaning from, 577-578

tuberculosis in, 653-658, 654f

in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367

airborne precautions in, 657, 657f

diagnosis of, 655, 655f

drug therapy for, 655, 656b

health care resources for, 658

history in, 654

home care management in, 657

physical assessment in, 654-655

teaching for self-management in, 657-658

Pulmonary edema

after craniotomy, 1035

in burn, 522, 525

in chronic kidney disease, 1553-1555

in Cushing's disease, 1387

in heart failure, 755, 755b

high altitude, 151

in scorpion bite, 144-145

in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1381

Pulmonary embolism, 663-669

in abdominal trauma, 1259

anxiety in, 668

atrial fibrillation and, 722-727

bleeding in, 668, 668b

drug therapy for, 666b-667b

fracture-related, 1147

in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990

health care resources for, 669, 669b

health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b

history in, 664

home care management in, 668-669

hypotension in, 667-668

hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b

imaging assessment in, 664

laboratory assessment in, 664

pathophysiology of, 663

physical assessment in, 664, 664b

preoperative assessment for, 256

psychosocial assessment in, 664

surgical management of, 667

Pulmonary embolism (*Continued*)

teaching for self-management in, 669, 669b

Pulmonary empyema, 659-660

Pulmonary fibrosis, 628

Pulmonary function tests, 558, 558t

in asthma, 605

in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617

in lung cancer, 633

Pulmonary hygiene in leukemia, 885

Pulmonary hypertension, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t

in mitral stenosis, 762b

in rheumatoid arthritis, 335

in systemic sclerosis, 348

Pulmonary rehabilitation in COPD, 619-620

Pulmonary secretions

after laryngectomy, 597

traumatic brain injury and, 1027

Pulmonary tuberculosis, 653-658, 654f

in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367

airborne precautions in, 657, 657f

diagnosis of, 655, 655f

drug therapy for, 655, 656b

health care resources for, 658

history in, 654

home care management in, 657

physical assessment in, 654-655

teaching for self-management in, 657-658

Pulmonic area for auscultation, 700f

Pulmonic valve, 688, 688f

Pulmozyme; *See* Dornase alfa

Pulse

cardiovascular assessment and, 699, 699f

focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b

hypernatremia and, 183

neurovascular status in fracture and, 1149b

Pulse deficit, postoperative, 288

Pulse oximetry, 556, 558f

in hypovolemic shock, 816

in pneumonia, 651

postoperative, 293

Pulse pressure, 698

Pulse therapy for rheumatoid arthritis, 340

Pulsus alternans, 748-749

Pulsus paradoxus, 766

Pump failure, 745

Punch biopsy, 453

Punctal occlusion in eyedrops

instillation, 1067f

Punctum, 1041

Pupil, 1040, 1040f, 1042f

assessment of, 1046

changes in traumatic brain injury, 1025

changes with aging, 1043b

constriction and dilation of, 1043, 1043f

Pure motor Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 988t

Pure-tone air-conduction testing, 1085

Pure-tone audiometry, 1085

Pure-tone bone-conduction testing, 1085

Purified protein derivative, 655, 655f

Purinethol; *See* 6-Mercaptopurine

Purinol; *See* Allopurinol

Purkinje fiber, 712-713, 712f

Purnell's domains of culture, 32-37, 32t, 33b

Purpuric lesion, 462

Pursed-lip breathing, 618, 619b

Purulent exudate, 482t

Pustule, 460f-461f

PUVA; *See* Psoralen and ultraviolet radiation treatment

PVD; *See* Peripheral vascular disease

- Pyelogram, 1486
 Pyelolithotomy, 1510, 1525
 Pyelonephritis, 1523-1526
 community-based care in, 1526
 end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 history in, 1524-1525
 imaging assessment in, 1525
 incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 laboratory assessment in, 1525
 pain in, 1525
 pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1525
 Pyloric obstruction, 1227, 1232
 Pyloromyotomy, 1215
 Pylorus, 1179
 Pyogenic liver abscess, 1310
 Pyramid, 1466, 1467f
 Pyramidal tract, 907, 909-910
 Pyrazinamide, 656b
 Pyridate; *See* Phenazopyridine
 Pyridium; *See* Phenazopyridine
 Pyridostigmine, 993
 Pyridoxine, 1511
 Pyuria
 in urethritis, 1497
 in urinary tract infection, 1493
 Pyuria-dysuria syndrome, 1497
 PZA; *See* Pyrazinamide
- Q**
 Q wave, 715-716, 716f
 QRS complex, 715-716, 716f
 QRS duration, 716, 716f, 718
 QT interval, 716f, 717
 Quadrants of abdomen, 1183f, 1183t
 Quadriceps-setting exercises, 327
 Quadrigeminy, 720
 Quadriplegia, 969
 Quadripod cane, 98f
 Quadruple gallop, 700
 Qualitative question, 80
 Quality and Safety Education for Nurses, 3
 Quality improvement, 5-6
 QuantiFERON-TB Gold test, 654
 Quantitative computed tomography, 1124
 Quantitative question, 80
 Quantitative RNA assay, 369
 Quixín; *See* Levofloxacin
- R**
 R788 drug for rheumatoid arthritis, 341
 R wave, 715-716, 716f
 Rabepazole
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1206, 1207b
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1229
 Rad, 411-412
 Radial nerve, 997f
 Radial nerve block, 276f
 Radial pulse, 699f
 Radial vein, 215f
 Radiating pain, 46
 Radiation dose, 411
 Radiation exposure, 411, 412f
 burn injury in, 519, 520b
 carcinogenesis and, 404
 immune deficiencies after, 381
 Radiation proctitis, 1640
 Radiation therapy, 411-414, 411f-412f
 for acute hyperpituitarism, 1376
 for bone cancer, 1135-1136
 for brain tumor, 1032
 for breast cancer, 1605, 1605b
 for cervical cancer, 1626
 for colorectal cancer, 1248
 delivery methods and devices in, 412-413
 Radiation therapy (*Continued*)
 for esophageal cancer, 1214
 for head and neck cancer, 590
 for hypercortisolism, 1387
 for lung cancer, 633, 638
 for ocular melanoma, 1072
 for oral cancer, 1197
 for pancreatic cancer, 1331
 for prostate cancer, 1640
 sealed implants of radioactive sources
 in, 413b
 side effects of, 413
 for skin cancer, 505
 skin protection during, 413b-414b
 for spinal cord tumor, 977
 for thyroid cancer, 1405-1406
 for uterine cancer, 1622-1623
 Radical cystectomy, 1512
 Radical hysterectomy, 1619t
 Radical neck dissection, 1198
 Radical pancreaticoduodenectomy, 1331, 1331f
 Radical surgery, 243t
 Radicular pain, 976
 Radiculopathy, 961, 964b
 Radio frequency identification, 6
 Radioactive iodine therapy, 1397
 Radioactive iodine uptake, 1396
 Radioactive isotope for
 hyperthyroidism, 1398b
 Radiofrequency ablation
 in bone cancer, 1136
 in liver cancer, 1311
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 Radiofrequency catheter ablation, 738
 Radiography
 abdominal
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256
 in peritonitis, 1269
 chest
 in acute respiratory distress
 syndrome, 672
 in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary
 disease, 617
 in heart failure, 750
 in pneumonia, 650
 preoperative, 248
 in pulmonary embolism, 664
 in pulmonary empyema, 660
 in reproductive assessment, 1583
 in respiratory assessment, 556
 in fracture, 1150
 of kidney, ureter, and bladder, 1482, 1483t
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in reproductive assessment, 1583
 in urolithiasis, 1509, 1509f
 in musculoskeletal assessment, 1114
 in neurologic assessment, 919
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 336
 of skull, 919
 Radioisotope scan, 1048
 Radionuclide studies
 in heart failure, 750
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 Radiosurgery in trigeminal neuralgia, 1000-1001
 RAIU; *See* Radioactive iodine uptake
 Rales, 555t
 Raloxifene, 1125, 1126b
 Raltegravir, 372b-374b, 375
 Ramsay Sedation Scale, 276, 277t
 Ranexa; *See* Ranolazine
 Range of motion, 1111-1112
 assessment in rehabilitation setting, 93-94
 of hand, 1112-1113, 1113f
 older adult and, 1109b
 Range-of-motion exercises after burn
 injury, 537
 Ranibizumab, 1068-1069
 Ranitidine
 for acute pancreatitis, 1324
 for gastric irritation in Cushing's
 disease, 1388
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for gastroesophageal reflux disease,
 1206, 1207b
 for NSAID-related gastrointestinal
 problems, 337
 RANKL; *See* Receptor activator of
 nuclear factor kappa-B ligand
 Ranolazine, 839
 Rapafla; *See* Silodosin
 Rapamune; *See* Sirolimus
 Rapid antigen test for streptococcal
 infection, 642
 Rapid hypersensitivity reactions,
 384-391
 allergic rhinitis in, 384-385, 385f
 anaphylaxis in, 387-391
 cultural considerations in, 388b
 emergency care in, 389, 390b
 key features of, 389b, 389f
 pathophysiology of, 387, 388t
 prevention of, 387-388, 388b, 388f
 latex allergy in, 391
 Rapid neurologic assessment, 917-919,
 918f
 Rapid plasma reagin test, 1655
 Rapid Response Team, 2-3
 Rapid urease testing, 1222
 Rapid-acting insulins, 1410, 1431
 Rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis,
 1528
 RAS; *See* Reticular activating system
 Rasagiline mesylate, 944
 Rash, 497-498, 498b
 assessment of, 863
 in cirrhosis, 1297
 in fat embolism syndrome, 1147
 in idiopathic thrombocytopenic
 purpura, 895
 in infective endocarditis, 764
 in leukemia, 882
 in syphilis, 1654, 1654f
 in toxic shock syndrome, 1615
 Rate-controlling infusion device,
 222-223, 223f
 Rattlesnake, 139
 Raynaud's phenomenon/disease, 798,
 798f
 in systemic lupus erythematosus,
 345
 in systemic sclerosis, 347-348
 Reavy and Tavernier model of
 evidence-based practice, 83, 84t
 Rebif; *See* Interferon-beta
 Rebleeding of arteriovenous
 malformation, 1015
 Rebound headache, 930
 Rebound tenderness in appendicitis,
 1267, 1267f
 Recall memory, 914
 Recent memory, 914
 Receptive aphasia, 1018, 1018t
 Receptor activator of nuclear factor
 kappa-B ligand
 osteoporosis and, 1121b
 Paget's disease of bone and, 1129b
 Reclast; *See* Zoledronic acid
 Recombinant human bone
 morphogenetic protein-2, 1157
 Recombinant immunoblot assay, 1308
 Recombinant tissue plasminogen
 activator, 1013, 1013b-1014b
 Reconstructive surgery, 410, 505-508
 after burn injury, 538
 in bone cancer, 1137
 of breast, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
 common procedures in, 507t
 history before, 505
 physical assessment before, 505
 postoperative care in, 506-508
 preoperative care in, 506
 Reconstructive surgery (*Continued*)
 psychosocial assessment before,
 505-506
 in scoliosis, 1140
 Recovery score rating, 286
 Recreational exercise, 331
 Recreational therapist, 91
 Rectal bleeding
 in colorectal cancer, 1246
 in hemorrhoids, 1260-1261
 Rectal drug administration, 55t-56t
 Rectocele, 1615, 1616f
 Rectouterine pouch, 1576f
 Rectovesical pouch, 1578f
 Rectum, 1178f
 colorectal cancer and, 1245-1246
 colostomy management in,
 1249-1253, 1250b, 1250f,
 1252b-1253b
 drug therapy for, 1248
 etiology and genetic risk in,
 1245-1246, 1245b, 1251b
 grieving in, 1251-1252
 health care resources for,
 1253-1254
 health promotion and maintenance
 in, 1246, 1246b
 history in, 1246
 home care management in, 1252
 imaging assessment in, 1247
 incidence and prevalence in, 1246
 laboratory assessment in, 1247
 metastasis in, 1247-1251
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 1245-1246,
 1245f
 physical assessment in, 1246-1247,
 1247f
 postoperative care in, 1249-1251
 preoperative care in, 1248-1249,
 1249t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1247
 radiation therapy for, 1248
 sexuality concerns with ostomies
 in, 1253b
 sites of metastasis in, 401t
 surgical management of,
 1248-1251, 1248t, 1250f
 teaching for self-management in,
 1252-1253, 1252b
 wound management in, 1251,
 1251b
 hemorrhoids and, 1260-1262, 1261f
 Red blood cell, 856-857, 857f
 in urine, 1478b
 Red blood cell count, 865b
 in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 in respiratory assessment, 557b
 Red blood cell disorders, 870-901
 anemia in, 870-878
 aplastic anemia in, 878
 folic acid deficiency anemia in, 878
 glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
 deficiency anemia in, 876
 iron deficiency anemia in, 876-877,
 877b
 myelodysplastic syndromes in,
 879-895
 polycythemia in, 878-879, 879b
 sickle cell disease in, 870-878, 870t
 community-based care in, 875-876
 etiology and genetic risk in, 871,
 871f
 history in, 872-873
 imaging assessment in, 873
 incidence and prevalence of, 872
 infection prevention in, 874
 laboratory assessment in, 873
 multiple organ dysfunction
 syndrome in, 874-875
 pain in, 873-874, 874b
 pathophysiology of, 870-876, 871f
 physical assessment in, 872-873
 pregnancy and, 875b
 psychosocial assessment in, 873

- Red blood cell disorders (*Continued*)
 vitamin B₁₂ deficiency anemia in, 877-878, 877f
- Red blood cell transfusion, 899-900, 899t
 indications for, 897t
 in sickle cell crisis, 875
- Red marrow, 1107
- Reflex, 1049-1050
- Redirection in Alzheimer's disease, 952
- Reducible hernia, 1243
- Reduction mammoplasty, 507t, 1590
- Reduction of fracture, 1150
- Reed Sternberg cell, 892
- Re-epithelialization, 473, 475f
- Refeeding syndrome, 1345-1346, 1345b
- Referred pain, 46
- Reflex arc, 911, 911f
- Reflex bowel, 103t
- Reflex incontinence, 1498t, 1505
- Reflex sympathetic dystrophy; *See* Complex regional pain syndrome
- Reflexes, 911, 916-917, 917f
- Refludan; *See* Lepirudin
- Reflux, 1203, 1523
- Reflux esophagitis, 1204
- Refracting media, 1040
- Refraction, 1042, 1042f, 1070
- Refractive errors, 1070-1071
- Refractory symptoms of distress
 management in end-of-life care, 115
- Regeneration of peripheral nerve, 998f
- Regional anesthesia, 272t, 275-276, 275t
- Regional osteoporosis, 1120
- Registered dietitian, 92
- Reglan; *See* Metoclopramide
- Regonol; *See* Pyridostigmine
- Regurgitation, 688
 in esophageal cancer, 1212
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
 in hiatal hernia, 1209
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1225
- Rehabilitation, 89-105
 after colorectal cancer surgery, 1252-1253
 after total hip arthroplasty, 328-329
 bowel continence and, 102-103, 103b, 103t
 in burn injury, 538-540, 539t
 health care resources for, 539-540
 home care management in, 539
 psychosocial support during, 539
 teaching for self-management in, 539
 community-based care and, 104-105
 complications of immobility and, 98, 99t
 concepts related to, 90
 in fracture, 1156
 functional assessment in, 94
 gait training and, 97-99, 98b, 98f
 health care resources for, 105
 health teaching in, 104-105
 history in, 92
 home care management after, 104
 improvement of physical mobility and, 95-99, 96f-97f, 97b
 increasing functional mobility and, 99-100, 100t
 maintaining skin integrity and, 100-101
 older adult and, 92b
 physical assessment in, 92-94, 92t
 psychosocial assessment in, 94
 rehabilitation team in, 90-92, 91f, 91t
 urinary continence and, 101-102, 102t
 vocational assessment in, 95
- Rehabilitation case manager, 91
- Rehabilitation nurse, 90-91, 91t
- Rehabilitation team, 90-92, 91f, 91t
- Rehabilitative surgery, 410
- Rehydration in heat exhaustion, 137
- Reiki, 14, 1189b
- Reiter's syndrome, 352
- Rejection
 of corneal transplant, 1059
 of heart transplant, 770b
 of kidney transplant, 1570, 1570t
 of pancreas transplant, 1443
- Relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis, 978
- Relative homelessness, 32
- Relaxation techniques for pain
 management, 60
- Relenza; *See* Zanamivir
- Reliever drugs for asthma, 606-609
- Religion, 36
 death rituals and, 116t
- Relocation stress syndrome, 18-19, 19b
- Relpax; *See* Eletriptan
- Remicade; *See* Infliximab
- Remifentanyl, 274t
- Reminiscence at end of life, 116-117
- Reminiscence therapy, 951
- Remodeling
 bone, 1120
 ventricular, 830-831
- Remodulin; *See* Treprostinil
- Remote memory, 914
- Renal angiography, 1485
- Renal angioplasty, 1531
- Renal arteriography, 1485
- Renal arteriole, 1467f
- Renal artery, 1466f-1467f, 1530-1531
- Renal artery bruit, 1476
- Renal artery stenosis, 777, 1570
- Renal assessment, 1465-1488
 commonly used renal and urinary terms in, 1474t
 current health problems in, 1475
 family history and genetic risk in, 1475
 in hematologic assessment, 863
 imaging assessment in, 1482-1486, 1483t
 computed tomography in, 1484-1485
 cystography and cystourethrography in, 1485
 cystoscopy and cystourethroscopy in, 1485-1486
 intravenous urography in, 1482-1484, 1484b
 kidney, ureter, and bladder x-rays in, 1482
 kidney scan in, 1485
 renal arteriography in, 1485
 ultrasonography in, 1485
 kidney biopsy in, 1486-1487
 laboratory assessment in, 1476-1482
 bedside sonography and bladder scan in, 1482, 1482f
 blood tests in, 1476-1477, 1477b
 urine tests in, 1477-1482, 1478b, 1479t, 1481b
 medication history in, 1475
 nutrition history in, 1474-1475
 patient history in, 1473-1475, 1474b
 physical assessment in, 1475-1476, 1476f
 postoperative, 289-290
 preoperative, 246
 psychosocial assessment in, 1476
 in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
 urodynamic studies in, 1486
- Renal biopsy, 1486-1487
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 in acute kidney injury, 1543
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
- Renal blood flow, 691
- Renal calculi, 1507-1512
 after spinal cord injury, 973
 assessment in, 1508-1509, 1509f
 cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 cultural considerations in, 1508b
 dietary treatment for, 1511, 1511t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1508, 1508t
- Renal calculi (*Continued*)
 high levels of parathyroid hormone and, 1406
 incidence and prevalence of, 1508
 pain in, 1509-1510
 pathophysiology of, 1507-1512
 prevention of infection in, 1510-1511
 surgical management of, 1510
 teaching for self-management in, 1512, 1512b
 urinary obstruction in, 1511-1512
- Renal capsule, 1466, 1467f
- Renal cell carcinoma, 1532-1533, 1532t
- Renal colic, 1475, 1508
- Renal column, 1466, 1467f
- Renal cortex, 1466, 1467f
- Renal disorders, 1518-1536
 acute kidney injury in, 1538-1541
 characteristics of, 1538t
 classification of risk for, 1538-1539, 1539t
 continuous renal replacement therapy for, 1546
 dialysis therapies for, 1545-1546, 1545f
 drug therapy for, 1543, 1544b
 etiology of, 1540
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1540-1541
 history in, 1541
 imaging assessment in, 1543
 incidence and prevalence of, 1540
 kidney biopsy in, 1543
 laboratory assessment in, 1542-1543, 1542b
 nutrition therapy for, 1543-1545
 pathophysiology of, 1538-1540
 phases of, 1540t
 physical assessment in, 1541-1542, 1541b
 posthospital care in, 1546
 potentially nephrotoxic substances and, 1540t
 in tumor lysis syndrome, 432-433
 types of, 1539-1540, 1539t
 volume depletion in, 1541b
- chronic kidney disease in, 1547-1550
 anxiety in, 1558
 cardiac changes in, 1549
 cardiac output in, 1555
 characteristics of, 1538t
 diabetes mellitus and, 1416
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1549, 1550t
 fatigue in, 1557
 focused assessment in, 1571b
 gastrointestinal changes in, 1549
 in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 health care resources for, 1572
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1550, 1550b
 hematologic changes in, 1549
 hemodialysis in, 1558-1564
 history in, 1550-1551
 home care management in, 1571-1572
 imaging assessment in, 1552
 incidence and prevalence of, 1549-1550
 infection prevention in, 1556
 injury prevention in, 1556-1557, 1557b
 kidney changes in, 1547
 kidney transplantation for, 1567-1571
 laboratory assessment in, 1552
 management of fluid volume in, 1553, 1553b
 metabolic changes in, 1547-1549, 1548f
 nutrition and, 1555-1556, 1555t
 osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t
 pathophysiology of, 1547-1550, 1547b
- Renal disorders (*Continued*)
 peritoneal dialysis in, 1564-1567, 1564t
 physical assessment in, 1551-1552, 1551b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1552
 psychosocial support in, 1572
 pulmonary edema in, 1553-1555
 in sickle cell disease, 872
 stages of, 1547, 1547t
 teaching for self-management in, 1572
 COX-2 inhibiting drugs and, 322b
 cystitis in, 1490-1492
 acute radiation, 1640
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 prostatitis and, 1649
 surgical management of, 1494
 degenerative, 1530-1532
 diabetic nephropathy in, 1531-1532, 1531t
 nephrosclerosis in, 1530, 1530b
 renovascular disease in, 1530-1531, 1531b
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413, 1450-1451
 hepatorenal syndrome in, 1295-1296
 hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture in, 1522-1523, 1522f
- immunologic, 1526-1530, 1526t, 1527f
 acute glomerulonephritis in, 1527, 1527t, 1528b
 chronic glomerulonephritis in, 1528-1529
 interstitial and tubulointerstitial, 1530
 nephrotic syndrome in, 1529-1530, 1530b
 rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis in, 1528
 osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t
- polycystic, 1518-1520
 constipation in, 1521
 diagnosis of, 1521
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1519, 1519b, 1520f
 health care resources for, 1522
 history in, 1520
 hypertension and end-stage kidney disease in, 1521-1522, 1522b
 incidence and prevalence of, 1520
 pain in, 1521
 physical assessment in, 1520, 1520b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1521
- pyelonephritis in, 1523-1526
 community-based care in, 1526
 end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 history in, 1524-1525
 imaging assessment in, 1525
 incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 laboratory assessment in, 1525
 pain in, 1525
 pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1525

- Renal disorders (*Continued*)
- renal cell carcinoma in, 1532-1533, 1532t
 - secondary hypertension and, 777
 - unbalanced body water, electrolytes, and waste products in, 1518, 1519f
- Renal failure
- abdominal aortic aneurysm resection-related, 794
 - acute; *See* Acute kidney injury
 - after liver transplantation, 1312t
 - after spinal cord injury, 973
 - contrast-induced, 1483
 - diabetes mellitus and, 1416
 - in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 - myoglobinuric, 1146
 - in sickle cell disease, 872
- Renal function tests, 1477b
- in diabetes mellitus, 1420
- Renal hilum, 1466, 1467f
- Renal hormones, 1470-1471, 1471t
- Renal insufficiency, 1538
- Renal medulla, 1466, 1467f
- Renal osteodystrophy, 1549
- Renal pelvis, 1466
- Renal pelvis trauma, 1534f, 1535
- Renal replacement therapies, 1558-1571
- hemodialysis in
 - in acute kidney injury, 1545, 1545f
 - anticoagulation in, 1560
 - complications of, 1563-1564, 1563b
 - dialysis settings in, 1558-1559
 - dialyzable and vasoactive drugs after, 1563t
 - dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 - in hypothermia rewarming, 149
 - nursing care in, 1562, 1563b
 - older adult and, 1563b
 - patient selection for, 1558
 - peritoneal dialysis *versus*, 1558t
 - post-dialysis care and, 1562-1563
 - procedure in, 1559-1560, 1559f-1560f
 - vascular access in, 1560-1562
 - peritoneal dialysis in, 1564-1567, 1564t
 - in acute kidney injury, 1545
 - complications in, 1566-1567
 - dialysate additives for, 1564
 - dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 - hemodialysis *versus*, 1558t
 - nursing care in, 1567b
 - patient selection for, 1564
 - procedure in, 1564, 1564f
 - types of, 1564-1566, 1565f-1566f
- Renal scan, 1483t
- Renal system, 1466-1473
- changes associated with aging, 1472-1473, 1473b
 - changes of aging as surgical risk factor and, 245b
 - complications of immobility and, 99t
 - kidney in, 1466-1471; *See also* Kidney
 - changes associated with aging, 1472, 1473b
 - function of, 1468-1471, 1469t, 1470f
 - gross anatomy of, 1466, 1466f-1467f
 - hormonal functions of, 1470-1471, 1471t
 - microscopic anatomy of, 1466-1468, 1467f-1469f
 - manifestations of shock and, 810b
 - nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
 - potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 - sickle cell disease and, 872
 - ureters in, 1471, 1472f
 - urethra in, 1472
 - urinary bladder in, 1471-1472
- Renal threshold for glucose reabsorption, 1470
- Renal ultrasonography
- in acute kidney injury, 1543
 - in urolithiasis, 1509
- Renal vein, 1466f-1467f
- Renal vein thrombosis, 1529-1530
- Renin, 172, 1362, 1467-1468, 1468f, 1470-1471, 1471t
- Renin inhibitors, 781b-782b, 783
- Renin substrate, 1362, 1468f
- Renin-angiotensin II pathway, 172-173, 172f, 747
- Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system, 776
- Renovascular disease, 1530-1531, 1531b
- ReoPro; *See* Abciximab
- Repaglinide, 1421, 1423b-1427b
- Repeat open application testing, 386
- Reperfusion therapy, 839-840
- Repetitive nerve stimulation, 992
- Repetitive stress injury, 1171
- Replication of deoxyribonucleic acid, 67, 67f
- Repositioning of bed bound patient, 479
- Repositioning patient in wheelchair, 100
- Reproductive assessment, 1575-1587
- biopsy studies in, 1585-1586, 1585b
 - cultural considerations in, 1579b
 - current health problems in, 1580, 1580b
 - endoscopic studies in, 1584-1585, 1584f
 - family history and genetic risk in, 1579
 - imaging assessment in, 1583
 - laboratory assessment in, 1581-1583, 1582b
 - nutrition history in, 1579
 - patient history in, 1578-1580, 1580b
 - physical assessment in, 1580-1581
 - female, 1580-1581
 - male, 1581
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1581
- Reproductive problems
- female, 1611-1628
 - Bartholin cyst in, 1620-1621
 - cervical cancer in, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b
 - cervical polyp in, 1621
 - common gynecology surgeries for, 1619t
 - complications of hysteroscopic surgery and, 1619b
 - dysfunctional uterine bleeding in, 1613
 - endometrial cancer in, 1621, 1622t
 - endometriosis in, 1611-1612, 1612f
 - ovarian cancer in, 1626-1627, 1626t
 - ovarian cyst in, 1617
 - pelvic inflammatory disease in, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
 - pelvic organ prolapse in, 1615-1617, 1616f
 - postoperative care after
 - hysterectomy and, 1620b
 - toxic shock syndrome in, 1614-1615, 1615b
 - uterine leiomyoma in, 1617-1620, 1617f
 - vulvovaginitis in, 1613-1614, 1614b
 - male, 1629-1651
 - benign prostatic hyperplasia in, 1630
 - epididymitis in, 1650
 - erectile dysfunction in, 1642, 1642b
 - hydrocele in, 1646-1647, 1647f
 - orchitis in, 1650
 - penile cancer in, 1647-1648
 - phimosis and paraphimosis in, 1648
 - prostate cancer in, 1637
 - prostatitis in, 1649
 - spermatocele in, 1647, 1647f
 - testicular cancer in, 1643
 - varicocele in, 1647, 1647f
- Reproductive system
- changes associated with aging, 1578, 1579b
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1551b
 - female, 1576-1577
 - breast in, 1577, 1577f
 - external genitalia in, 1576
 - internal genitalia in, 1576-1577, 1576f
 - nutrition history and, 1579
 - physical assessment of, 1580-1581
 - hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 - hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 - male, 1577-1578, 1578f
 - changes with aging, 1579b
 - Gordon's Functional Health Patterns and, 1580b
 - physical assessment of, 1581
 - Requip; *See* Ropinirole
 - Rescriptor; *See* Delavirdine
 - Rescue therapy
 - in bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 - in transplant rejection, 316
 - Resection
 - of abdominal aortic aneurysm, 794-795
 - abdominoperineal, 1248
 - in bladder cancer, 1513
 - of colon, 1248, 1286
 - in endometrial cancer, 1619
 - of gastric tumor, 1235
 - in head and neck cancer, 594
 - in lung cancer, 634
 - in nasal fracture, 581
 - in prostate cancer, 1635, 1635f, 1636b
 - Reservoir, 435
 - Residual urine, 1500, 1633
 - Residual volume, 558t
 - Residual(s), 1344-1345
 - Resistance gene, 71
 - Resistin, 1349
 - Resonance, percussion note, 553t
 - Resorption of bone, 1108
 - in hyperparathyroidism, 1406
 - in leukemia, 883
 - Respiration
 - accessory muscles of, 547
 - focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b
 - primary survey and, 132-133, 134t
 - purposes of, 544
 - Respirator mask, 439f
 - Respiratory acid-base control, 200-201, 200t, 201f
 - Respiratory acidosis, 203-204, 203t, 206-207
 - combined metabolic and respiratory acidosis and, 197-198
 - concept map for, 614f-615f
 - laboratory assessment in, 205, 205b
 - in pulmonary embolism, 664
 - Respiratory alkalosis, 207, 207t
 - in acclimatization to high altitude, 151
 - laboratory assessment in, 205b
 - Respiratory anthrax, 658-659, 658b-659b
 - Respiratory assessment, 543-561, 550t
 - capnometry and capnography in, 556-558
 - cultural considerations in, 548b
 - current health problems in, 550-551, 551t
 - endoscopic examinations in, 559, 559b
 - exercise testing in, 558-559
 - family history and genetic risk in, 550
 - Gordon's functional health patterns in, 550b
 - in hematologic assessment, 863
 - imaging assessment in, 556
 - laboratory assessment in, 556, 557b
 - lung biopsy in, 560-561
 - nutrition status in, 550
 - patient history in, 548-551
 - Respiratory assessment (*Continued*)
 - physical assessment in, 551-555
 - adventitious breath sounds in, 554, 555t
 - indicators of respiratory adequacy and, 555
 - inspection of lungs and thorax in, 552-555, 552f
 - normal breath sounds in, 553-554, 554t
 - nose and sinuses in, 551-552
 - palpation of chest in, 553
 - percussion of chest in, 553, 553f-554f, 553t
 - pharynx, trachea, and larynx in, 552
 - postoperative, 286-288, 286b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 555-556
 - pulmonary function tests in, 558, 558t
 - pulse oximetry in, 556, 558f
 - in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
 - skin tests in, 559
 - in spinal cord injury, 969-970
 - thoracentesis in, 559-560, 560f
 - women's health considerations in, 548b
 - Respiratory bronchiole, 546, 547f
 - Respiratory care
 - in esophageal cancer, 1216b
 - patient and family education in, 256b
 - in *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, 375
 - Respiratory compensation, 201
 - Respiratory depression
 - opioid-induced, 53, 53t
 - in respiratory acidosis, 203
 - Respiratory distress
 - in epistaxis, 582
 - in Guillain-Barré syndrome, 989b
 - in laryngeal trauma, 586, 586b
 - during mechanical ventilation, 679b
 - in peritonitis, 1268
 - thyroid surgery-related, 1399
 - Respiratory failure
 - acute, 669-671, 670t, 671f
 - in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983
 - in hypothyroidism, 1402
 - Respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette, 440, 441t
 - Respiratory infection
 - in cystic fibrosis, 624
 - risk in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613, 622
 - Respiratory problems
 - acute respiratory distress syndrome in, 671-672, 672b, 672t
 - acute respiratory failure in, 669-671, 670t, 671f
 - asthma in, 601-611
 - aerosol inhaler for, 609, 609b, 609f-610f
 - drug therapy for, 606-611, 607b-608b
 - dry powder inhaler for, 609, 610b, 610f
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 601-603, 601b
 - exercise and activity in, 611
 - history in, 603
 - incidence and prevalence of, 603, 603b
 - laboratory assessment in, 605
 - levels of control in, 603b
 - oxygen therapy for, 611, 611b
 - pathophysiology of, 601-611, 603f
 - physical assessment in, 604-605, 604f
 - pulmonary function tests in, 605
 - smoking cessation and, 605b
 - status asthmaticus and, 611
 - step system for medication use in, 604b
 - teaching for self-management in, 605-606, 606b
 - using peak flowmeter in, 606b, 606f

Respiratory problems (*Continued*)

bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia in, 630
 burn-related, 516-517
 in chest trauma, 682-684
 flail chest in, 683, 683f
 hemothorax in, 684
 pneumothorax in, 683
 pulmonary contusion in, 682
 rib fracture in, 682
 tension pneumothorax in, 683-684
 tracheobronchial trauma in, 684
 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in, 601, 602f, 611-623
 activity tolerance and, 621-622
 anxiety in, 621
 barrel chest in, 604f
 breathing techniques for, 618, 619b
 chronic bronchitis in, 612-613
 complications of, 613-614, 614b
 cultural considerations in, 613b
 drug therapy for, 619
 effective coughing for, 618-619
 emphysema in, 611-612, 612f
 etiology and genetic risk in, 613, 613b, 613t
 exercise conditioning in, 619-620
 health care resources for, 622, 623b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 614
 history in, 614
 home care management in, 622
 hydration in, 620
 imaging assessment in, 617
 incidence and prevalence of, 613
 laboratory assessment in, 616-617
 lung transplantation for, 620-621
 monitoring for respiratory status changes in, 618
 oxygen therapy for, 619, 619b
 physical assessment in, 614-616, 614f, 616f
 positioning for, 618
 positive expiratory pressure device for, 620, 620f
 psychosocial assessment in, 616
 respiratory infections and, 622
 severity classification in, 617f
 suctioning in, 620
 teaching for self-management in, 622
 weight loss in, 621
 cystic fibrosis in, 623-626
 bacterial infection risk in, 624
 chest physiotherapy in, 624, 625f
 genetic considerations in, 623b
 pathophysiology of, 623-626
 surgical management of, 625-626
 dying patient and, 114
 endotracheal intubation in, 674-675, 674f, 675b-676b
 epistaxis in, 582-583, 582b, 582f
 facial trauma in, 583-584
 head and neck cancer in, 588-589
 airway obstruction in, 590-594
 anxiety in, 595-596
 aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b
 etiology of, 589
 health care resources for, 597-598
 history in, 589
 home care management in, 596, 596b
 imaging assessment in, 589-590
 incidence and prevalence of, 589
 laboratory assessment in, 589
 pathophysiology of, 588-589
 physical assessment in, 589, 589t
 psychosocial assessment in, 589
 psychosocial support in, 597
 self-concept in, 596
 smoking cessation and, 598b
 speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f

Respiratory problems (*Continued*)

surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
 teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f
 idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis in, 628
 inhalation anthrax in, 658-659, 658b-659b
 interstitial lung diseases in, 627-628
 laryngeal trauma in, 586
 laryngitis in, 644-645
 lung abscess in, 658
 lung cancer in, 630-638
 chemotherapy for, 633
 chest tube for, 634-638, 635b, 635f-636f, 637b
 diagnosis of, 632-633
 etiology and genetic risk in, 631, 631b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 631
 history in, 631-638, 631t
 incidence and prevalence of, 630-631
 pain management in, 637
 pathophysiology of, 630-631, 631t
 photodynamic therapy for, 633-634
 physical assessment in, 632
 pneumonectomy care in, 638
 psychosocial assessment in, 632
 radiation therapy for, 633
 respiratory management in, 637-638
 surgical management of, 634-638, 634f
 mechanical ventilation in, 675-682, 677b
 complications in, 680-681
 extubation in, 681-682
 modes of ventilation in, 677-678
 monitoring in, 679-681, 679b
 types of ventilators in, 675-677, 677f
 ventilator alarms and, 679-680, 680t
 ventilator controls and settings in, 678-679
 weaning from, 681, 681b, 682t
 nasal fracture in, 581, 581f
 nasal polyps in, 583
 neck trauma in, 588
 nose and sinus cancer in, 583
 obstructive sleep apnea in, 584-585
 occupational pulmonary disease in, 628-630, 629b
 older adult and
 asthma and, 603b
 chronic respiratory problems in, 601b
 tracheostomy in, 578b
 ventilator dependence and, 681b
 oxygen therapy for, 563-570, 563f
 absorption atelectasis in, 564, 564b
 bacterial contamination of oxygen delivery system in, 565, 565b
 combustion in, 563-564
 drying of mucous membranes in, 564-565, 565f
 facemasks in, 565-566, 567f
 high-flow delivery systems for, 566-568, 568f, 568t
 home care management in, 569-570, 570f
 nasal cannula in, 565, 567f
 noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation in, 568-569, 569f
 oxygen toxicity and, 564
 oxygen-induced hypoventilation and, 564
 smoking contraindication in, 570b
 transtracheal, 569
 pandemic influenza in, 645-647
 peritonsillar abscess in, 644
 pharyngitis in, 642-644, 643b, 643t

Respiratory problems (*Continued*)

pneumonia in, 647-652
 airway obstruction in, 651
 concept map for, 648f-649f
 etiology of, 647, 647t
 health care resources for, 652
 history in, 648
 home care management in, 652, 652b
 hypoxemia in, 651
 imaging assessment in, 650
 incidence and prevalence of, 647
 laboratory assessment in, 650, 650f
 oral care during mechanical ventilation in, 648b
 pathophysiology of, 647
 physical assessment in, 648-650, 650t
 prevention of, 647-648, 648b
 psychosocial assessment in, 650
 sepsis in, 651-652
 teaching for self-management in, 652
 ventilator-associated, 648b
 pulmonary arterial hypertension in, 626-627, 626b-627b, 627t
 pulmonary embolism in, 663-669
 anxiety in, 668
 bleeding in, 668, 668b
 drug therapy for, 666b-667b
 health care resources for, 669, 669b
 health promotion and maintenance in, 663-664, 663b
 history in, 664
 home care management in, 668-669
 hypotension in, 667-668
 hypoxemia in, 664-667, 665b
 imaging assessment in, 664
 laboratory assessment in, 664
 pathophysiology of, 663
 physical assessment in, 664, 664b
 psychosocial assessment in, 664
 surgical management of, 667
 teaching for self-management in, 669, 669b
 pulmonary empyema in, 659-660
 rhinitis in, 641
 sarcoidosis in, 627-628
 seasonal influenza in, 645
 severe acute respiratory syndrome in, 652-653, 653b
 sinusitis in, 641-642, 642b
 tonsillitis in, 644, 644b
 tracheostomy for, 570-578
 air warming and humidification in, 574, 574b
 bronchial and oral hygiene for, 576
 care of, 575-576, 575b-576b, 576f
 communication and, 577
 community-based care in, 578
 complications of, 571-572, 571b
 focused assessment of, 576b
 nutrition and, 577, 577b
 older adult and, 578b
 postoperative care in, 571
 preoperative care in, 571
 preventing tissue damage from, 573-574
 psychosocial needs and self-image and, 577
 suctioning of, 574-575, 574b
 swallowing and, 595
 vertical tracheal incision for, 571, 571f
 weaning from, 577-578
 tuberculosis in, 653-658, 654f
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367
 airborne precautions in, 657, 657f
 diagnosis of, 655, 655f
 drug therapy for, 655, 656b
 health care resources for, 658
 history in, 654
 home care management in, 657
 physical assessment in, 654-655

Respiratory problems (*Continued*)

teaching for self-management in, 657-658
 upper airway obstruction in, 586-588, 588f
 vocal cord nodules and polyps in, 585-586, 586f, 587b
 vocal cord paralysis in, 585
 Respiratory rate
 during oxygen therapy, 564
 in pneumonia, 650t
 Respiratory status
 in acute pancreatitis, 1325b
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 618
 in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 989
 preoperative assessment of, 246
 Respiratory support
 after burn injury, 525
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 after craniotomy, 1034
 after head and neck surgery, 592
 in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 984
 in ascites, 1300-1302
 in heart failure, 750
 in myasthenia gravis, 993, 993b
 oral care during, 648b
 in respiratory acidosis, 207
 in traumatic brain injury, 1027
 Respiratory system, 544-548
 acidosis and, 204b, 205
 acute leukemia and, 882, 882b
 alkalosis and, 208, 208b
 anemia and, 871b
 changes associated with aging, 548, 549b
 changes of aging as surgical risk factor and, 245b
 changes resulting from burn, 516-517
 chronic kidney disease and, 1551, 1551b
 complications of immobility and, 99t
 dehydration and, 175
 fluid overload and, 179b
 hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 hypokalemia and, 184
 hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 hypovolemic shock and, 816
 liver dysfunction and, 1297f
 lower respiratory tract in, 546-547
 accessory muscles of respiration in, 547
 airways in, 546, 546f-547f
 lungs in, 546-547
 nutritional screening assessment and, 1337b
 oxygen delivery and oxygen-hemoglobin dissociation curve and, 547-548, 547f
 pathogen transmission and, 436
 potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 role in oxygenation and tissue perfusion, 544, 544f
 sepsis and septic shock and, 823
 shock and, 810b
 upper respiratory tract in, 544-545, 544f
 larynx in, 545, 545f
 nose and sinuses in, 544-545, 545f
 pharynx in, 545
 Respiratory tract
 lower, 546-547
 accessory muscles of respiration in, 547
 airways in, 546, 546f-547f
 lungs in, 546-547
 upper, 544-545, 544f
 larynx in, 545, 545f
 nose and sinuses in, 544-545, 545f
 pharynx in, 545
 Rest
 in deep vein thrombosis, 800
 in hepatitis, 1308
 in HIV infection and AIDS, 375-376

- Rest (*Continued*)
 in osteoarthritis, 322
 in otitis media, 1092
 preoperative anxiety and, 259
 in ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Rest pain, 786, 786b
- Restless legs syndrome, 999
- Restlessness management in end-of-life care, 115, 115b
- Restorative aide, 91
- Restorative feeding problems, 1342b
- Restorative proctocolectomy with ileo pouch-anal anastomosis, 1276-1277, 1276f
- Restorative surgery, 243t
- Restraint, 953b
 alternatives to, 28b
 antipsychotics as, 27-28
 hospitalized older adult and, 27
- Restrictive cardiomyopathy, 768
- Restrictive lung diseases, 627
- Resurfacing of skin in wound, 473
- Resuscitation phase of burn, 520, 520b
 acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
 age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
 airway management in, 525-526
 carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
 cardiovascular assessment in, 522-523
 drug therapy in, 527
 fluid resuscitation in, 526b-527b, 526t
 gastrointestinal assessment in, 524
 history in, 520-521
 hypovolemic shock and, 526-527
 imaging assessment in, 524
 inflammatory compensation during, 517
 laboratory assessment in, 524, 524b
 pain management during, 527-529, 528b-529b
 pulmonary fluid overload in, 522, 522b
 respiratory assessment in, 521-522, 521b, 521t
 skin assessment in, 523-524, 523f
 surgical management in, 527, 528f
 urinary assessment in, 523
- Rete peg, 452f, 453
- Retention bridge skin closure, 282f
- Retention suture, 282f
- Reteplase, 802
- Reticular activating system, 908
- Reticular formation, 907f
- Reticulocyte, 864
- Reticulocyte count, 865b
- Retina, 1040, 1040f, 1068-1070
 diabetic retinopathy and, 1413-1414, 1414f
 holes, tears, and detachments of, 1069
 laser imaging of, 1051
 macular degeneration and, 1068-1069
 retinitis pigmentosa and, 1069-1070, 1070b
- Retinitis, 1068
- Retinitis pigmentosa, 1069-1070, 1070b
- Retinopathy, diabetic, 1413-1414, 1414f
- Retraction, 1112f
- Retrograde cystoscopy, 1472
- Retrograde ejaculation, 1636
- Retrograde procedures, 1486
- Retrograde ureteroscopy, 1510
- Retropubic suspension, 1503t
- Retrovir; *See* Zidovudine
- Retroviruses, 359
- Reverse transcriptase, 358-359, 358f
- Reversible ischemic neurologic deficit, 1005
- Revimine; *See* Dopamine
- Revised European-American Lymphoma classification system, 893
- Revision arthroplasty, 324
- Revlimid; *See* Lenalidomide
- Rewarming methods
 in frostbite, 150
 in hypothermia, 149
- Reyataz; *See* Atazanavir/ritonavir
- Rhabdomyolysis, 192, 1146
- Rhegmatogenous retinal detachment, 1069
- Rheumatic carditis, 766-767
- Rheumatic disease, 319
- Rheumatic endocarditis, 766
- Rheumatoid arthritis, 333-343
 arthrocentesis in, 336, 336b
 body image and, 342
 carpal tunnel syndrome and, 1170-1171
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 341
 exercise in, 332b
 fatigue in, 342, 342b
 health care resources for, 343
 health teaching in, 343
 home care management in, 342, 342f
 inflammation and pain management in, 337-341, 337b-340b
 laboratory assessment in, 335-336, 336b
 nonpharmacologic interventions in, 341
 osteoarthritis *versus*, 321t
 pathophysiology of, 333
 physical assessment in, 334-335, 334b, 334f
 psychosocial assessment in, 335
 self-management in, 341-342
- Rheumatoid factor, 335, 336b
- Rheumatoid spondylitis, 351
- Rheumatology, 319
- Rheumatrex; *See* Methotrexate
- Rhinitis, 641
 allergic, 384-385, 385f
- Rhinitis medicamentosa, 641
- Rhinoplasty, 506, 507t, 581, 581f
- Rhinorrhea
 in allergic rhinitis, 385
 in cluster headache, 931
 in meningitis, 937
- Rhynchus, 555t
- Rhytidectomy, 506, 507t
- Rib fracture, 682, 1162
- Ribavirin
 for hepatitis C, 1309
 for influenza, 645
- RICE therapy, 1172
- Rickets, 1127
- Rifampin
 for anthrax, 659b
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 for tuberculosis, 655, 656b
- Rifaximin
 for hepatic encephalopathy, 1303
 for irritable bowel syndrome, 1242
- RIFLE classification of acute kidney injury, 1539, 1539t
- Right atrium, 687-688, 687f-688f
- Right bundle branch, 712f
- Right coronary artery, 688-689, 688f, 831
- Right hemisphere stroke, 1011b
- Right lower quadrant of abdomen, 1183f, 1183t
- Right pulmonary artery, 687f-688f
- Right upper quadrant of abdomen, 1183f, 1183t
- Right ventricle, 687f-688f, 688
- Right ventricular area for auscultation, 700f
- Right-sided heart catheterization, 704t
- Right-sided heart failure, 745
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613, 614b
 in coronary artery disease, 844
 history in, 748
 in mitral stenosis, 758
 physical assessment in, 749, 749b
 in sarcoidosis, 627
- Rigidity
 in black widow spider bite, 144
 in Parkinson disease, 942
- Rigors in platelet transfusion, 900
- Rilutek; *See* Riluzole
- Riluzole, 984
- Rimantadine, 645
- RIND; *See* Reversible ischemic neurologic deficit
- Rinne tuning fork test, 1084
- Risedronate
 for osteoporosis, 1125, 1126b
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Risk assessment for malnutrition, 1340b
- Ritonavir, 371
- Rituxan; *See* Rituximab
- Rituximab, 430
 for chronic leukemia, 884
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b, 340
- Rivastigmine, 944
- Robotic surgery
 cardiac, 850
 surgical suite for, 267, 269f
- Rocephin; *See* Ceftriaxone
- Rods, 1040
- Role-relationship pattern, 693b
- Rolling hiatal hernia, 1208-1209, 1209b, 1209f
- Romberg sign, 916
- Rope turning exercise, 1603
- Ropinore, 999
- Rosenbaum Pocket Vision Screener, 1047
- Rosiglitazone, 1423b-1427b, 1428
- Rotation, 1112f
- Rotation injury of neck, 967
- Rotator cuff injuries, 1173
- Rotaviral gastroenteritis, 1270-1271, 1270t
- Rotter's nodes, 1577f
- Round ligament, 1576f
- Round window of middle ear, 1079
- Roux-en Y gastric bypass, 1354, 1354f
- Rowasa; *See* Mesalamine
- Roxanol; *See* Morphine
- Rubex; *See* Doxorubicin
- Rugae, 1221
- Rule of nines, 523, 523f
- Runner's knee, 1169
- Running traction, 1153
- Rupture
 Achilles tendon, 1172
 of arteriovenous malformation, 1015
 of central venous catheter, 232t
 of cerebral aneurysm, 1006-1007
- RV; *See* Residual volume
- Rythmol; *See* Propafenone hydrochloride
- S**
- S₁ gallop, 749
- Saccular aneurysm, 792
- Sacral spine assessment, 1112
- Safe injection practices, 440
- Safe patient handling practices, 95-97, 96f
- Safe Return Program, 952-953
- Safe sex practices, 362, 362b, 1655
- Safety; *See* Patient safety
- SAH; *See* Subarachnoid hemorrhage
- Saint John's wort, 244t
- Salem pump, 290
- Salem sump, 1256
- Saline breast implant, 1590
- Saline lock, 214
- Saliva, 1179
- Salivary amylase, 1179
- Salivary cortisol, 1386
- Salivary enzymes, 1192
- Salivary gland, 1178f, 1179
 acute sialadenitis and, 1200-1201
 post-irradiation sialadenitis and, 1201
 tumor of, 1201
- Salmeterol, 607b-608b, 609-610
- Salmonella, 1289-1290, 1289t
 in liver abscess, 1310
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
- Salpingitis, 1578-1579
 gonorrhea and, 1659, 1660f
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
- Salpingo-oophorectomy, 1619t
 in ovarian cancer, 1626
 in uterine cancer, 1622
- Salt water aspiration, 153
- Samsca; *See* Tolvaptan
- Sanctura; *See* Trosipium
- Sancuso; *See* Granisetron
- Sandimmune; *See* Cyclosporine
- Sandostatin; *See* Octreotide
- Sanguineous drainage, 291
- Santyl; *See* Collagenase with Polysporin powder
- Saphenous nerve, 997f
- Saphenous vein graft, 847, 847f
- Saquinavir, 371, 372b-374b
- Sarcoidosis, 627-628
- Sarcoma
 Kaposi's, 367, 367f
 osteogenic, 1134
 genetic considerations in, 1110-1111
 Paget's disease of bone and, 1129-1130
- Sargramostim, 427t
- SARS; *See* Severe acute respiratory syndrome
- Saw palmetto, 10t, 1633
- Saxagliptin, 1423b-1427b, 1430
- SBAR communication technique, 4, 968
- Scabies, 496, 496f
- Scald injury, 517
- Scale, 460f-461f
- Scapular fracture, 1159
- Scheduled toileting for urge incontinence, 1504-1505, 1504b
- Schilling test, 1263
- Sciatic nerve, 997f
- Sclera, 1040, 1040f, 1042f, 1046
- Sclerectomy, 1067
- Scleritis, 335
- Scleroderma, 347
- Sclerotherapy
 for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
 for varicose veins, 805
- Scoliosis, 1111f, 1112, 1139-1140
 in Marfan syndrome, 352
- Scopolamine, 114
- Scorpion, 144-145, 145f
- Scotoma, 979
- Scratch test, 385
- Screening
 for cancer, 407
 breast, 1593
 colorectal, 1246, 1246b
 prostate, 1637
 for coronary artery disease before exercise program, 1441
 for diabetes mellitus, 1420
 for tuberculosis, 655
- Scrotum, 1577, 1584
- Scrub attire, 267, 270f
- Scrub nurse, 266, 266f, 271f
- Sealed implants of radioactive sources, 413b
- Seasonal influenza, 645
- Sebaceous gland, 452f, 453, 454f
- Seborrhea, 1053
- Seborrheic keratosis, 501, 501f
- Sebum, 453
- Second heart sound, 690f, 700
- Second intention healing, 472, 474f
- Secondary administration set, 220-221
- Secondary adrenal insufficiency, 1382t
- Secondary brain injury, 1021-1023, 1023f
- Secondary bronchus, 546
- Secondary diabetes insipidus, 1378
- Secondary glomerular diseases and syndromes, 1526t

- Secondary gout, 349
 Secondary hyperparathyroidism, 1130
 Secondary hypertension, 777
 Secondary osteoarthritis, 319-320
 Secondary osteoporosis, 1120, 1120t
 Secondary prevention, 407
 of breast cancer, 1597
 Secondary progressive multiple sclerosis, 978
 Secondary seizure, 933
 Secondary skin lesions, 459, 460f-461f
 Secondary stomatitis, 1193
 Secondary survey, 134
 in fracture, 1150
 Secondary syphilis, 1654, 1659
 Secondary tuberculosis, 654, 654f
 Secondary tumor, 400, 400f
 Second-degree atrioventricular block, 731
 Second-degree frostbite, 150
 Second-degree sprain, 1173
 Secondhand smoke, 631
 Second-look surgery, 410
 Sactal; *See* Acebutolol
 Securing catheter in infusion therapy, 224-225, 224b, 224f, 230b, 233f
 Sedation
 opioid-induced, 53, 53t
 palliative, 115
 Sedation scale, 53, 53t
 Sedentary lifestyle, risk for heart disease and, 694
 Sediment in urine, 1480
 Segmental bronchus, 546, 546f
 Segmental systolic blood pressure measurement, 787
 Segmented neutrophil, 306, 306f
 in differential white blood cell count, 307t
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
 Seizure, 932-937
 in Alzheimer's disease, 953
 drug therapy for, 933, 933b-934b
 emergency care in, 935-936, 936b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 933
 health teaching in, 933-935, 935b
 in heat stroke, 138
 in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
 in hypocalcemia, 190
 management in end-of-life care, 115
 in meningitis, 938
 older adult and, 932b
 in pit viper envenomation, 140
 seizure precautions and management in, 935, 935b-936b
 in sickle cell disease, 873
 in stroke, 1015
 surgical management of, 936-937
 in traumatic brain injury, 1028
 types of, 932-933
 Seizure precautions, 935, 935b-936b
 Selective estrogen receptor modulators, 1606, 1606t
 Selective hypopituitarism, 1372
 Selective immunoglobulin A deficiency, 381-382
 Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 for depression in older adult, 22
 Selegiline, 944
 Self *versus* non-self, 303-304, 303f
 Self-care deficit in spinal cord injury, 973
 Self-determination, 4
 Self-esteem
 acquired immunodeficiency syndrome and, 378
 burn injury and, 538
 head and neck cancer and, 596
 mastectomy and, 1608
 psoriasis and, 500-501
 tracheostomy and, 577
 Self-management, 4
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 379, 379b
 Self-management (*Continued*)
 after vision loss, 1074-1075
 in Alzheimer's disease, 949
 in asthma, 605-606, 606b
 in bladder cancer, 1515
 in breast cancer, 1607-1608, 1608b
 in burn injury, 539
 in chronic kidney disease, 1572
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 622
 in cirrhosis, 1304, 1304b
 in colorectal cancer, 1252-1253, 1252b
 in Cushing's disease, 1389-1390, 1389b
 in diabetes mellitus, 1458-1460, 1461t
 in ear problems, 1104
 in esophageal cancer, 1217
 in gastric cancer, 1238
 in gastroenteritis, 1272, 1272b
 in genital herpes, 1657-1658, 1657b
 in genital warts, 1659, 1659b
 in gonorrhea, 1661-1662
 in head and neck cancer, 596-597, 597b, 597f
 in hypothyroidism, 1404, 1404b
 in infection and sepsis prevention, 826, 826b
 in intestinal obstruction, 1258
 in joint protection, 332b
 in leukemia, 890-891, 891b
 lifestyles and practices to promote wellness and, 16b
 in malnutrition, 1348-1349
 in oral cancer, 1200
 in osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis, 332b
 in pancreatic cancer, 1333
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1665, 1665b
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1233, 1233b
 in pneumonia, 652
 postoperative, 299-300
 in bariatric surgery, 1355b
 in cataract surgery, 1061-1062, 1062b, 1062f
 in total hip arthroplasty, 327b, 328-329
 in pressure ulcer, 489-490
 in prostate cancer, 1641, 1641b
 in pulmonary embolism, 669, 669b
 in pyelonephritis, 1526
 in removal of cerumen, 1081b
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 341-342
 in stroke, 1017b, 1018
 in syphilis, 1656, 1656b
 in tuberculosis, 657-658
 in ulcerative colitis, 1278-1279, 1279b
 in urinary incontinence, 1506, 1507b
 in urolithiasis, 1512, 1512b
 in uterine cancer, 1624
 Self-monitoring of blood glucose, 1436
 Self-perception/self-concept pattern in reproductive assessment, 1580b
 Self-tolerance, 303
 Selzentry; *See* Maraviroc
 Semicircular canal, 1078f, 1079
 Semi-Fowler's position
 in head and neck cancer, 590
 postoperative, 293
 Seminal vesicle, 1578f
 Semi-sit-ups, 962b
 Semmes-Weinstein monofilaments testing, 1446-1447, 1448f
 Sengstaken-Blakemore tube, 1302
 Senile angioma, 457f
 Senna, 244t
 Sensation
 neurovascular status in fracture and, 1149b
 phantom limb, 1164
 Sensorineural hearing loss, 1084, 1097, 1097f
 in acoustic neuroma, 1097
 conductive *versus*, 1098t
 in M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 Sensory aphasia, 1018
 Sensory assessment, 915-916
 hearing, 1080-1086
 audiometry in, 1085, 1085t
 auditory brainstem-evoked response in, 1086
 balance testing in, 1086
 external ear and mastoid assessment in, 1082-1083
 family history and genetic risk in, 1081-1082, 1081b
 general auditory assessment in, 1084
 Gordon's functional health patterns in, 1080b
 history in, 1080-1082
 imaging assessment in, 1084-1085
 laboratory assessment in, 1084
 otoscopic assessment in, 1083, 1083f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1084
 tympanometry in, 1085-1086
 postoperative, 289
 in spinal cord injury, 969
 vision, 1039-1051
 fluorescein angiography in, 1050
 imaging assessment in, 1048
 inspection of eyes in, 1046
 laboratory assessment in, 1048
 ophthalmoscopy in, 1049, 1049f, 1050t
 patient history in, 1045-1046, 1045b, 1045t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1048
 slit-lamp examination in, 1048, 1049f
 tonometry in, 1049, 1049f
 vision testing in, 1046-1048, 1047f-1048f
 Sensory function
 cancer and, 409
 Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome and, 987, 987b
 peripheral nerve trauma and, 997
 stroke and, 1011, 1018-1019
 traumatic brain injury and, 1028-1029
 Sensory neuron, 906
 Sensory problems
 ear, 1088-1105
 acoustic neuroma in, 1097
 cerumen or foreign bodies in, 1090-1092, 1090f, 1091b
 external otitis in, 1089-1090, 1089b, 1089f
 furuncle in, 1090
 health care resources for, 1104
 hearing loss in, 1097-1105
 home care management in, 1104
 labyrinthitis in, 1095-1096
 mastoiditis in, 1093-1094
 M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease in, 1096-1097
 neoplasms in, 1094-1095
 otitis media in, 1092-1093, 1092f-1093f
 perichondritis in, 1090
 prevention of infection or trauma in, 1102b
 recovery from surgery of, 1094b
 resource agencies for, 1095t
 teaching for self-management in, 1104
 tinnitus in, 1095
 trauma in, 1094
 vertigo and dizziness in, 1095
 eye, 1052-1076
 activities increasing intraocular pressure and, 1059t
 application of eye patch in, 1055b
 blepharitis in, 1053
 cataract in, 1059-1062
 chalazion in, 1055-1056
 conjunctival hemorrhage in, 1056
 conjunctivitis in, 1056
 contusion in, 1071
 Sensory problems (*Continued*)
 corneal abrasion, ulceration, and infection in, 1057
 drug therapy for, 1054b
 entropion and ectropion in, 1053
 foreign bodies in, 1071, 1072b
 glaucoma in, 1062-1067, 1063f-1064f
 hordeolum in, 1053-1054
 hyphema in, 1071
 infection in, 1044, 1044b
 instillation of ophthalmic ointment for, 1053b, 1053f
 keratoconjunctivitis sicca in, 1056
 keratoconus and corneal opacities in, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f
 lacerations in, 1071-1072
 macular degeneration in, 1068-1069
 ocular compress for, 1055b
 ocular melanoma in, 1072-1073, 1073b
 older adult and, 1065b
 penetrating injuries in, 1072
 reduced vision in, 1073-1075, 1074b
 refractive errors in, 1070-1071
 retinal holes, tears, and detachments in, 1069
 retinitis pigmentosa in, 1069-1070, 1070b
 trachoma in, 1056
 uveitis in, 1068
 vitreous hemorrhage in, 1067-1068
 Sensory receptor, 911
 Sentinel lymph node biopsy, 1600-1601
 Sepsis, 819-826, 820f
 burn wound, 530, 530t-531t
 in cancer, 430
 etiology of, 822, 822t
 history in, 823
 home care management in, 826b, 827
 infection and, 820
 infection risk in neutropenia and, 419
 laboratory assessment in, 824-825, 824b
 older adult and, 823b
 physical assessment in, 823-824, 823t
 in pneumonia, 651-652
 prevention of, 822
 psychosocial assessment in, 824
 severe, 821-822
 systemic inflammatory response syndrome and, 820, 821f, 821t
 teaching for self-management in, 826, 826b
 in urinary tract infection, 1492
 Sepsis management bundle, 825t
 Sepsis resuscitation bundle, 825, 825t
 Sepsis-induced distributive shock, 444
 Septal myocardial infarction, 831
 Septic shock, 812, 819-826, 820f
 in bloodstream infection, 444
 bundles for resuscitation in, 825, 825t
 etiology of, 822, 822t
 infection in, 820
 laboratory assessment in, 824-825, 824b
 older adult and, 823b
 physical assessment in, 823-824, 823t
 prevention of, 822
 psychosocial assessment in, 824
 systemic inflammatory response syndrome and, 820, 821f, 821t
 Septicemia
 in cancer, 430
 inadequate antimicrobial therapy and, 444
 indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 in peritonitis, 1268
 Septra; *See* Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
 Sequestosome, 1129b
 Sequestrectomy, 1133
 Sequestrum, 1131, 1131f

- Serax; *See* Oxazepam
 Serevent; *See* Salmeterol
 Serial-seven test, 914
 SERMs; *See* Selective estrogen receptor modulators
 Serologic testing, 445
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1228-1229
 Serosa, 1178, 1178f
 Serosanguineous exudate, 482t
 Serositis, 345
 Serotonin antagonists, 423b
 Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors, 58
 Serous drainage, 291
 Serpiginous lesion, 462t
 Sertan; *See* Primidone
 Sertoli cell-stimulating hormone, 1361t
 Sertraline, 952
 Serum albumin, 1342
 Serum alkaline phosphatase
 in bone cancer, 1135
 in Paget's disease of bone, 1130
 Serum amylase, 1185, 1186b
 Serum calcium, 1114b
 in kidney disease, 1542b
 parathyroid function and, 1406, 1407b
 Serum cardiac enzymes, 702b
 Serum complement, 335, 336b
 Serum creatine, 1542b
 Serum creatine kinase, 1114, 1114b
 Serum creatinine, 1476-1477, 1477b
 in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 RIFLE classification of acute kidney injury and, 1539t
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
 Serum electrolytes
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 after coronary artery bypass graft, 847-848
 in heart failure, 749-750
 Serum enzymes
 in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
 in cirrhosis, 1298, 1299t
 in hepatitis, 1308
 Serum ferritin, 864, 865b
 Serum follicle-stimulating hormone, 1581-1582, 1582b
 Serum lactate, 823t
 Serum lipase, 1185, 1186b
 Serum lipids, 702, 702b, 832
 Serum luteinizing hormone, 1581-1582, 1582b
 Serum magnesium, 1407b
 Serum markers of myocardial damage, 701-702, 702b
 Serum muscle enzymes, 1114b
 Serum parathyroid hormone, 1407b
 Serum phosphate, 1114b, 1406, 1407b, 1542b
 Serum potassium
 in diabetes mellitus, 1413
 in kidney disease, 1542b
 Serum prolactin, 1581-1582, 1582b
 Serum protein electrophoresis
 in myasthenia gravis, 992
 in rheumatoid arthritis, 336b
 Serum proteins, 1299t
 Serum sickness, 141, 392
 Serum sodium, 1542b
 Serum studies
 in burn assessment, 524b
 in cardiovascular assessment, 702-703
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1184-1185
 in reproductive assessment, 1582b
 Serum thyroxine, 1396b
 Serum transferrin, 1342
 Serum triiodothyronine, 1396b
 Sesamoid bones, 1107
 Sessile polyp, 1260, 1260f
 Severe acute respiratory syndrome, 652-653, 653b
 Severe head injury, 1020
 Severe sepsis, 821-822
 Sevoflurane, 274t
 Sex chromosomes, 68, 69f
 Sex drive, 1578
 Sex hormones, 1362
 deficiency of, 1372
 Sex-linked pattern of inheritance, 74, 74f
 Sexual activity
 after hysterectomy, 1620
 as cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 cultural considerations in, 1579b
 during genital herpes outbreak, 1657b
 reproductive history and, 1579
 Sexual assault forensic examiner, 122
 Sexual assault nurse examiner, 122
 Sexual history in prostate cancer, 1637
 Sexual identity, 34, 35t
 Sexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, 362, 362b
 Sexuality
 bladder cancer and, 1515b
 breast cancer in young woman and, 1592
 multiple sclerosis and, 980, 980b
 ostomy and, 1253b
 spinal cord injury and, 974-975
 testicular cancer and, 1644
 Sexuality-reproductive pattern
 in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
 in endocrine assessment, 1366b
 in reproductive assessment, 1580b
 Sexually transmitted diseases, 1652-1667, 1653t
 chlamydia infection in, 1662, 1662b
 complications of, 1653t
 condom use for prevention of, 362b
 focused assessment in, 1655b
 genital herpes in, 1656-1657, 1657b
 genital warts in, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
 gonorrhea in, 1659-1660, 1660f
 Healthy People 2020 objectives in, 1655t
 human immunodeficiency virus infection in
 antibody tests in, 368-369
 classification of, 360, 360t
 community-based care in, 378-380
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
 confusion in, 377-378
 diarrhea in, 376-377
 drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
 endocrine complications in, 367, 368t
 genetic considerations in, 360b
 health care resources for, 380
 history in, 365
 HIV genotype test in, 369b
 home care management in, 378-379, 379b
 immune enhancement for, 375
 incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
 infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
 infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
 key features of, 365b
 lymphocyte counts in, 368
 malignancies in, 367, 367f
 nutrition and, 376
 older adult and, 361b, 375b
 opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
 oral disorders in, 1193
 oral hairy leukoplakia in, 1195
 oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
 pain management in, 376
 parenteral transmission of, 362-363
 perinatal transmission of, 363
 postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
 Sexually transmitted diseases
 (Continued)
 progression of, 361
 psychosocial assessment in, 368
 psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
 risk in hemodialysis, 1563-1564
 self-esteem and, 378
 sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
 skin integrity and, 377
 social contact and, 378
 teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
 testing for, 363-364, 364b
 transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
 viral load testing in, 369
 women and, 361b
 oral antibiotic therapy for, 1665b
 pelvic inflammatory disease in, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
 prostatitis with, 1649
 syphilis in, 1654-1655, 1654b, 1654f, 1656b
 urethritis in, 1496-1497
 use of condoms and, 1658b
 vaginal infections in, 1666
 women's health considerations in, 1653b
 Sexually transmitted infections, 1652
 SHARE acronym, 4, 5t
 Sharps, standard precautions and, 441t
 Sharps injury, HIV transmission and, 363
 Shave biopsy, 453
 Shear
 fracture and, 1148
 pressure ulcer and, 475, 476f
 Sheehan's syndrome, 1372
 Shift to left, 445
 Shiga toxin, 1290
 Shiga toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*, 1290, 1290b
 Shigellosis, 1270, 1270t
 Shilling test, 877-878
 Shingles, 492, 492f
 Shock, 808-827
 in acute pancreatitis, 1322
 cardiogenic, 811-812, 842
 functional impairment in, 810t
 in myocardial infarction, 841
 in older adult, 823b
 functional impairment in, 810b, 810t
 hypovolemic, 812-819, 814f-815f
 adaptive responses and events during, 813t
 in burn, 526-527
 community-based care in, 819
 concept map for, 814f-815f
 history in, 814-816
 laboratory assessment in, 817, 817b
 management of, 818-819, 819b
 pathophysiology of, 812-814
 patient safety in, 818b
 physical assessment in, 816-817
 prevention of, 814
 psychosocial assessment in, 817
 stages of, 813-814
 oxygenation and tissue perfusion in, 809-811, 809f, 811f
 sepsis and septic, 819-826, 820f
 bundles for resuscitation in, 825, 825t
 etiology of, 822, 822t
 history in, 823
 home care management in, 826b, 827
 infection in, 820
 laboratory assessment in, 824-825, 824b
 older adult and, 823b
 physical assessment in, 823-824, 823t
 prevention of, 822
 psychosocial assessment in, 824
 Shock (Continued)
 severe, 821-822
 systemic inflammatory response syndrome and, 820, 821f, 821t
 teaching for self-management in, 826, 826b
 spinal, 969
 types of, 811-812
 Shock lung, 671
 Shoe horn, 100t
 Short Alcohol-Related Problems Survey, 24-25
 Short bone, 1107
 Short Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test-Geriatric Version, 24
 Short peripheral catheter, 213-215, 213f, 214b
 Short-acting beta₂ agonists, 607b-608b, 609
 Short-acting insulins, 1410, 1431
 Shortness of breath; *See* Dyspnea
 Short-statured, 35
 Short-term fasting program, 1351
 Short-term memory loss in Alzheimer's disease, 948
 Shoulder
 musculoskeletal assessment of, 1112
 positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
 rotator cuff injury of, 1173
 total shoulder arthroplasty and, 331
 SIADH; *See* Syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone
 Sialadenitis, 1200-1201
 Sialogogues, 1201
 Sick-day rules in diabetes mellitus, 1456b
 Sickle cell crisis, 871, 874b-875b
 after burn injury, 524b
 Sickle cell disease, 870-878, 870t
 chronic kidney disease and, 872
 community-based care in, 875-876
 etiology and genetic risk in, 871, 871f
 history in, 872-873
 imaging assessment in, 873
 incidence and prevalence of, 872
 infection prevention in, 874
 laboratory assessment in, 873
 multiple organ dysfunction syndrome in, 874-875
 pain in, 873-874, 874b
 pathophysiology of, 870-876, 871f
 physical assessment in, 872-873
 pregnancy and, 875b
 priapism in, 1649
 psychosocial assessment in, 873
 Sickle cell trait, 871, 871f
 Sigmoid colon, 1180, 1466f
 diverticular disease and, 1284, 1284f
 Sigmoid colostomy, 1250f
 Sigmoidoscopy, 1190
 in colorectal cancer, 1247
 in intestinal obstruction, 1256
 Sigmoidostomy, 1514f
 Sign language, 1104
 Silastic peritoneal dialysis catheter, 1564f
 Sildenafil, 1642
 Silicone breast implant, 1590
 Silirosis, 629b
 Silodosin, 1633
 Silvadene; *See* Silver sulfadiazine
 Silver sulfadiazine, 533, 534b-535b
 Simdax; *See* Levosimendan
 Simon's foci, 654
 Simple descriptive pain distress scale, 48, 48f
 Simple facemask, 565, 566f, 567f
 Simple fracture, 1144
 Simple hemothorax, 684
 Simple mastectomy, 1601f
 Simple partial seizure, 933
 Simple surgery, 243t
 Simponi; *See* Golimumab
 Simulect; *See* Basixlimab

- SIMV; *See* Synchronized intermittent mandatory ventilation
- Sinemet; *See* Levodopa-carbidopa
- Single nucleotide polymorphism, 71
- Single photon emission computerized tomography
- in head and neck cancer, 590
 - in neurologic assessment, 922
- Single-fiber electromyography, 992
- Single-lumen cannula cuffed
- tracheostomy tube, 573f
- Singular; *See* Montelukast
- Sinoatrial node, 712, 712f
- Sinus arrhythmias, 718
- Sinus bradycardia, 720, 721f
- Sinus dysrhythmias, 720-721, 720b, 721f
- bradycardia in, 720-721
 - tachycardia in, 720
- Sinus tachycardia, 720, 720b, 721f
- Sinuses, 544-545, 545f
- cancer of, 583
 - physical assessment of, 551-552
- Sinusitis, 641-642, 642b
- Sipeleucel-T, 427t
- Sirdalud; *See* Tizininidine
- Sirolimus, 315-316
- SIRS; *See* Systemic inflammatory response syndrome
- Sitagliptin, 1423b-1427b, 1430
- Site infection, intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t
- Six cardinal positions of gaze, 1047, 1047f
- Six-second strip method of heart rate determination, 717
- Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 335, 393-394
- Skeletal muscle, 1109
- alkalosis and, 208
 - hyperkalemia and, 187
 - hypernatremia and, 183
 - hypovolemic shock and, 817
 - movements of, 1112f
- Skeletal muscle atrophy
- in myasthenia gravis, 992
 - in older adult, 1109b
 - in osteoarthritis, 320
 - in systemic lupus erythematosus, 345
- Skeletal muscle relaxants, 972
- Skeletal system, 1107-1109
- bones in, 1107-1108, 1107f
 - chronic kidney disease and, 1552
 - joints in, 1108-1109, 1109f
- Skeletal traction, 1153-1154, 1153t
- Skelid; *See* Tiludronate
- Skene's glands, 1576
- Skin
- acidosis and, 204b, 205
 - adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 - age-related changes in fluid balance and, 170b
 - breakdown in hospitalized older adult, 26-28
 - burn injury of, 511-540
 - acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
 - age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
 - airway management in, 525-526
 - burn center referral criteria and, 513t
 - burn wound infection and, 533-536, 534b-535b
 - carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
 - cardiac changes resulting from, 516
 - cardiovascular assessment in, 522-523, 530
 - compensatory responses to, 517, 518f
 - deep full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
 - depth of, 512-515, 513t, 514f
 - drug therapy in, 527
 - emergency care in, 520, 520b
- Skin (*Continued*)
- etiology of, 517-519, 519f
 - fluid resuscitation in, 526b-527b, 526t
 - full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
 - gastrointestinal assessment in, 524
 - gastrointestinal changes resulting from, 517
 - health care resources for, 539-540
 - history in, 520-521
 - home care management in, 539
 - hypovolemic shock and, 526-527
 - imaging assessment in, 524
 - immune assessment in, 530, 530t-531t
 - immunologic changes resulting from, 517
 - incidence and prevalence of, 519
 - intensity of heat and duration of exposure in, 513f
 - laboratory assessment in, 524, 524b
 - in lightning strike injury, 147
 - maintenance of mobility in, 536-538, 537f
 - metabolic changes resulting from, 517
 - musculoskeletal assessment in, 530
 - neuroendocrine assessment in, 530
 - pain management in, 527-529, 528b-529b
 - partial-thickness wound in, 514-515, 514f-515f
 - positioning to prevent contractures in, 537b
 - psychosocial support during, 539
 - pulmonary changes resulting from, 516-517
 - pulmonary fluid overload in, 522, 522b
 - rehabilitative phase of, 538-540, 539t
 - respiratory assessment in, 521-522, 521b, 521t
 - skin assessment in, 523-524, 523f
 - skin changes resulting from, 512-515
 - superficial-thickness wound in, 513-514
 - supporting self-image in, 538
 - surgical management in, 527, 528f
 - teaching for self-management in, 539
 - urinary assessment in, 523
 - vascular changes resulting from, 516, 516f
 - weight loss control in, 536
 - wound care in, 531-533, 532t, 533f
- cardiovascular assessment and, 697
- changes in HIV infection, 368
- changes with aging, 454, 455b-456b
- actinic lentigo in, 456f
 - senile angiomas in, 457f
 - as surgical risk factor, 245b
 - wrinkles in, 456f
 - xerosis in, 457f
- chronic kidney disease and, 1551b, 1552
- complications of immobility and, 99t
 - Cushing's syndrome and, 1385, 1385b
 - as defense against infection, 437
 - dehydration and, 175, 176b, 176f
 - fluid overload and, 179b
 - functions of, 454, 454t
 - hydration and, 458
 - hyperthyroidism and, 1394b
 - hypothyroidism and, 1401b
 - hypovolemic shock and, 816
 - leukemia and, 882
 - lupus and, 344, 344f, 346b
 - manifestations of endocrine dysfunction and, 1367
 - manifestations of liver dysfunction and, 1297f
- Skin (*Continued*)
- manifestations of nutrient deficiencies and, 1341t
 - manifestations of shock and, 810b
 - potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 - respiratory assessment and, 555
 - role in body protection, 452, 452f
 - sepsis and, 823-824
 - sickle cell disease and, 872
 - structure of, 452-453, 452f
 - systemic sclerosis and, 347, 348f
- Skin appendages, 453-454
- Skin assessment, 458-463
- allergy history in, 457-458
 - in burn, 523-524, 523f
 - common alterations in color of skin and, 459t
 - in darker skinned patient, 465-467, 465b, 467b
 - in hematologic assessment, 863
 - inspection in, 458-463
 - laboratory assessment in, 467-468
 - palpation in, 463, 464t
 - postoperative, 291, 291f
 - preoperative, 247
 - psychosocial assessment in, 467
 - in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 94
- Skin barrier, 1282-1283, 1283f
- Skin biopsy, 345, 468
- Skin cancer, 502-505
- biotherapy for, 505
 - drug therapy for, 504
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 502-503, 503f
 - experimental therapy for, 505
 - incidence and prevalence of, 503
 - older adult and, 405b
 - pathophysiology of, 502-505, 502t
 - prevention of, 503-504, 503b
 - radiation therapy for, 505
 - sites of metastasis of, 401t
 - surgical management of, 504
- Skin care
- after radiation therapy, 633, 1200
 - in chronic diarrhea, 1263b
 - in Cushing's disease, 1388
 - in gastroenteritis, 1272
 - in ileostomy, 1279b
 - in infusion therapy, 227
 - in leukemia, 885
 - in ostomy, 1278, 1278b
 - in peripheral nerve trauma, 999
 - postoperative, 294b
 - in preventing pressure ulcers, 476
 - during radiation therapy, 413, 413b-414b
 - in rehabilitation setting, 100-101
 - in skin infection, 494
- Skin closures, 281, 282f
- Skin color, 458-459
- common alterations in, 459t
 - cultural considerations in, 465b
 - in fracture, 1149b
- Skin graft
- for burn wound, 532
 - for pressure sore, 487
- Skin integrity
- in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 377
 - assessment of, 462
 - during emergency care, 125
 - during rehabilitation, 100-101
 - tape or dressings and, 227
- Skin lesions, 459, 460f-462f, 462t
- around nails, 465
 - configurations of, 462t
 - purpuric, 462
 - unroofing of, 467
- Skin preparation
- in colostomy care, 1252
 - for electrocardiogram, 714
 - for peripheral catheter placement, 214-215
 - preoperative, 254, 255f
- Skin problems, 470-510
- acne in, 508-509
 - benign tumors in, 501-502, 501f-502f
 - common infections in, 490-494
 - bacterial, 490-492, 492f
 - fungal, 492-493
 - history in, 493-494
 - laboratory assessment in, 487-488, 495b
 - physical assessment in, 494
 - prevention of, 493, 493b
 - viral, 492, 492f
 - common inflammations in, 497-498, 498b
 - cutaneous anthrax in, 494-495, 495f
 - leprosy in, 509
 - lichen planus in, 508
 - minor skin irritations in, 471-472
 - dryness in, 471, 471b
 - pruritus in, 471-472
 - sunburn in, 472
 - urticaria in, 472
- nursing history in, 458b
- parasitic disorders in, 496-497
- bedbugs in, 496-497
 - pediculosis in, 496
 - scabies in, 496, 496f
- pemphigus vulgaris in, 508
- plastic surgery for, 505-508
- common procedures in, 507t
 - history before, 505
 - physical assessment before, 505
 - postoperative care in, 506-508
 - preoperative care in, 506
 - psychosocial assessment before, 505-506
- pressure ulcer in, 474-490
- concept map for, 483f-484f
 - health care resources for, 490
 - history in, 479
 - home care management in, 488-489, 490b
 - identification of high-risk patient, 477, 478f
 - incidence and prevalence of, 476
 - infection prevention in, 488, 489b
 - laboratory assessment in, 482
 - mechanical forces in, 475-476, 476f
 - nutrition and, 101
 - older adult and, 476b
 - pathophysiology of, 474-479
 - physical assessment in, 479
 - from positioning during surgery, 296-297
 - pressure-relieving and pressure-reducing techniques for, 477-479
 - prevention of, 476-479, 476b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 482
 - rehabilitation setting and, 94
 - surgical management of, 487-488, 487f
 - teaching for self-management of, 489-490
 - wound assessment in, 479-482, 480b, 481f, 482t
 - wound care in, 483-488, 483b, 483t, 486t
- psoriasis in, 498-501, 498b, 499f, 501b
- Stevens-Johnson syndrome in, 508, 509f
- toxic epidermal necrolysis in, 508
- trauma in, 472-473
- burns in; *See* Burn
 - full-thickness wounds in, 473
 - impaired wound healing in, 475t
 - older adult and, 473b
 - partial-thickness wounds in, 473, 475f
 - phases of wound healing in, 472-473, 473t, 474f
- Skin self-examination, 503-504
- Skin stimulation for pain management, 59
- Skin substitutes, 487

- Skin tests
for allergy, 385-386
in respiratory assessment, 559
- Skin traction, 1153, 1153t, 1154f, 1160
- Skin turgor, 463, 464t
- Skin wafer, 1282-1283, 1283f
- Skinfold measurements, 1339
- Skull
fracture of, 1021
malignant external otitis media and, 1131b
penetrating trauma to, 1021
- Skull radiography, 919
- SLE; *See* Systemic lupus erythematosus
- Sleep, hospitalized older adult and, 26
- Sleep apnea, 569, 569f, 584-585
- Sleep-rest pattern
in cardiovascular assessment, 693b
in endocrine assessment, 1366b
- Sliding hiatal hernia, 1208, 1209b, 1209f
- Slit-lamp examination, 1048, 1049f
- Small bowel capsule endoscopy, 1188-1189
- Small bowel follow-through, 1186-1187
- Small bowel radiographic series, 1187
- Small cell lung cancer, 630
- Small intestine, 1180
- Small-bowel obstruction, 1254-1255, 1254f, 1255b-1256b, 1258b
- Smallpox, 448t
- Smart pump, 222-223
- SMAS-T-G; *See* Short Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test-Geriatric Version
- Smoke poisoning, 522
- Smoking
after laryngectomy, 597, 598b
asthma and, 605b
Buerger's disease and, 797
cancer and, 403, 404t
colorectal, 1245-1246
esophageal, 1212
lung, 630-631
cardiovascular disease and, 693
chronic gastritis and, 1221
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and, 613
contraindication in oxygen therapy, 570b
coronary artery disease and, 833
diabetic kidney disease and, 1450
osteoporosis and, 1121
peripheral arterial disease and, 788-789
respiratory assessment and, 549
women and, 548b
- Smooth muscle, 1109
- Snake bite, 139-142
coral snakes and, 141-142, 141f
North American pit vipers and, 139f, 140-141, 141t
prevention of, 140b
- Snellen chart, 1046, 1047f
- SNS; *See* Sympathetic nervous system
- Social contact, acquired
immunodeficiency syndrome and, 378
- Social history
in cardiovascular assessment, 694
in skin problems, 458
- Social justice, 4
- Social worker, 92
- Sodium, 180-183
abnormal values of, 170t
adrenal gland assessment and, 1383b
in body fluids, 180f
excretion changes in chronic kidney disease, 1548
hypernatremia and, 182-183, 182t
after craniotomy, 1034
changes associated with aging, 1472
in chronic kidney disease, 1548
hyponatremia and, 181-182, 181t
in burn, 516
in chronic kidney disease, 1548
- Sodium (*Continued*)
in enteral nutrition, 1347
in syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380
levels in burn assessment, 524b
perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
plasma values in older adult, 170b
reabsorption in nephron, 1470f
twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
- Sodium bicarbonate, 734b
- Sodium nitroprusside, 818, 819b, 843b
- Sodium polystyrene sulfonate, 187
- Sodium restriction
in ascites, 1300
in chronic kidney disease, 1555t
in heart failure, 751
- Sodium retention
in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
in chronic kidney disease, 1548
- Sodium-potassium pump, 183
- Soft contact lenses, 1070
- Soft palate, 544f, 1179
- Solubility, 169
- Solu-Cortef; *See* Hydrocortisone
- Solu-Medrol; *See* Methylprednisolone
- Solutes, 166
- Solvent, 166
- Soma of neuron, 906, 906f
- Somatic mutation, 71
- Somatic pain, 43t
- Somatosensory evoked potentials, 923
- Somatostatin
ischemic complications of, 1302b
pancreatic secretion of, 1364
- Somatostatin analogs, 1375-1376
- Somavert; *See* Pegvisomant
- Somogyi phenomenon, 1433, 1434f
- Sonohysterography, 1613
- Sonoran coral snake, 141f
- Sorafenib, 418t
for liver cancer, 1311
for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
- Sorbitol, 1415
- Sore throat, 642-644, 643b, 643t
radiation therapy-related, 590
in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
- Soriatane; *See* Acitretin
- Sotalol, 723b-726b, 732
- Sound, decibel intensity of, 1085, 1085t
- Southern copperhead snake, 139f
- Soy intake and risk for breast cancer, 1600b
- Spacer in inhaler, 609, 609b, 609f
- Spanidin; *See* Gusperimus
- Sparfloxacin, 1495b-1496b
- Spastic bladder, 101, 102t
- Spastic colon, 103t, 1240-1241
- Spastic paralysis, 1009-1011
- Spasticity
in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983
in multiple sclerosis, 982
- Speak-Up campaign, 3-4
- Specialized nutrition support, 1343
- Specialty bed, 101
- Specialty nurse, 266
- Specific gravity of urine, 1478, 1478b
- SPECT; *See* Single photon emission computerized tomography
- Speech
head and neck cancer and, 593-594, 594f
Parkinson disease and, 942b, 943
- Speech audiometry, 1085
- Speech discrimination testing, 1085
- Speech reception threshold, 1085
- Speech-language pathologist, 91
- Speed shock in intravenous therapy, 230t
- Sperm banking, 1644b
- Spermatocele, 1647, 1647f
- Spermicide-coated condom, 1658
- Sphenoid sinus, 544f-545f
- Sphincter of Oddi, 1180, 1180f
- Sphincterotomy, 1325
- Spica cast, 1152
- Spider angioma, 1297
- Spinal anesthesia, 275t
administration of, 277f
postoperative motor and sensory assessment and, 289
- Spinal catheter, 57, 58f
- Spinal column traction, 1153t
- Spinal cord, 909-910, 909f
compression in cancer, 431
gate control theory of pain and, 43, 44f
- Spinal cord disorders, 959-985
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis in, 983-984, 983b-984b
back pain in, 960-965
acute low back pain in, 962
chronic low back pain in, 962, 962b
complementary and alternative medicine in, 962-963
health care resources for, 965
health promotion and maintenance in, 960-961, 961b
health teaching in, 965, 965b
home care management in, 964-965
imaging assessment in, 961
pathophysiology of, 960, 960b, 960f
physical assessment in, 961
surgical management of, 963-964, 964b
cervical neck pain in, 966, 966b-967b
multiple sclerosis in, 978-983
complementary and alternative medicine for, 982-983
concept map for, 980f-981f
drug therapy for, 980-982, 982b
etiology and genetic risk in, 979
health care resources for, 983
health teaching in, 983
history in, 979
home care management in, 983
incidence and prevalence of, 979
laboratory assessment in, 980
mobility problems in, 982
pathophysiology of, 978-979
physical assessment in, 979-980, 979b
psychosocial assessment in, 980
sexual function in, 980b
spinal cord tumors in, 976-978, 977b
- Spinal cord injury, 967-976
adjustment to major life changes in, 973-974
airway management in, 971, 971b
drug therapy for, 972
etiology of, 968
health care resources for, 975-976, 976f
health teaching in, 974-975, 975b
history in, 968-969
home care management in, 974
imaging assessment in, 970
impaired mobility and self-care deficit in, 973
incidence and prevalence of, 968
injury prevention in, 971-973, 971b, 972f
laboratory assessment in, 970
mechanism of injury in, 967-968, 967f-968f
neurogenic shock in, 971, 971b
physical assessment in, 969-970, 969b
psychosocial assessment in, 970
surgical management in, 972-973, 972b
urinary and bowel dysfunction in, 973, 973b-974b
- Spinal cord stimulation for pain management, 61
- Spinal cord tumor, 409, 976-978, 977b
- Spinal drug administration, 55t-56t
- Spinal fusion, 963, 972b
- Spinal nerve, 910, 910f
- Spinal radiography
in neurologic assessment, 919
in osteoporosis, 1123
- Spinal shock syndrome, 969
- Spinal stenosis, 960
- Spinal tap, 923-925
- Spine
assessment of, 1112
compression fracture of, 1162
deformities of, 1111f
osteoarthritis of, 320
osteoporosis and, 1122, 1123f
Paget's disease of bone and, 1129
scoliosis and, 1139-1140
- Spine stabilization in near-drowning, 153
- Spinocerebellar tracts, 909, 909f
- Spinothalamic tracts, 909, 909f
- Spiral computed tomography, 970
- Spiral fracture, 1144f
- Spiritual counselor, 92
- Spirituality, 36
dying patient and, 117, 117b, 117f
- Spiriva; *See* Tiotropium
- Spirometry, 651
- Spiroglactone
for ascites, 1300
for hyperaldosteronism, 1391
for hypertension, 780, 781b-782b
for hypokalemia, 186
- Spleen, 1180f
in blood cell regulation, 858
infarction in infective endocarditis, 764
liver-spleen scan and, 1191
trauma to, 1258-1259
- Splenomegaly, 863, 1184
in cirrhosis, 1298
in portal hypertension, 1294
in portal hypertensive gastropathy, 1294
- Sploit
for carpal tunnel syndrome, 1172
for fracture, 1150, 1151f
for nasal fracture, 581, 581f
- Splinting of surgical incision, 256b
- Splitting of heart sounds, 700
- Spondee, 1085
- Spondylolisthesis, 960
- Spondylolysis, 960
- Spongy bone loss in osteoporosis, 1120
- Spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, 1295, 1300
- Spontaneous fracture, 1144-1145
- Spoon nails, 466t
- Spore, anthrax, 658
- Sports-related musculoskeletal trauma, 1152b, 1169-1173
- S-pouch, 1276-1277, 1276f
- Sprain, 1173
- Sprycel; *See* Dasatinib
- Sputum analysis
in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 617
in pneumonia, 650, 650f
in respiratory assessment, 551, 556
in tuberculosis, 655
- Squamous cell carcinoma, 502-503, 502t, 503f
esophageal, 1211-1212
oral, 1196
- Squamous metaplasia, 588-589
- SSRIs; *See* Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
- ST segment, 716-717, 716f
- Stable plaque rupture, 773
- Stadol; *See* Butorphanol
- Staff safety
in emergency care, 124, 124b
post-traumatic stress disorder after critical event and, 162, 162b
- Staging
of cancer, 401-403, 403t
bone, 1135
colorectal, 1248

- Staging (*Continued*)
 kidney, 1532t
 lung, 630
 multiple myeloma, 894
 non-Hodgkin lymphoma, 893
 of heart failure, 745
 of pressure ulcer, 481f
- Stamey procedure, 1503t
- Standard precautions, 440, 441t
- Stapedectomy, 1102-1103, 1103f
- Stapes, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Staphylococcus*
 in acute sialadenitis, 1200
 in cystitis, 1491
 in epididymitis, 1650
 in food poisoning, 1289t, 1290
 in liver abscess, 1310
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663
 in skin infections, 490-491
- Staphylococcus aureus*
 in acute sialadenitis, 1200
 in Bartholin cyst, 1621
 in chronic wound infection, 441
 in furuncle, 1090
 in infectious arthritis, 352
 methicillin-resistant, 442-443, 442b
 in osteomyelitis, 1131
 in pink eye, 1056
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
 in tonsillitis, 644
 in toxic shock syndrome, 1614-1615
 vancomycin-intermediate, 443
 vancomycin-resistant, 443
 in vascular access infection, 1562
- Staples, 282f, 295
- Starlix; *See* Nateglinide
- Stasis dermatitis, 803
- Stasis ulcer, 803
- Staxex; *See* Morphine
- Statins, 775, 775b
- Stationary chest tube drainage system, 634-635
- StatLock intravenous stabilization device, 224, 224f
- Status asthmaticus, 611
- Status epilepticus, 935-936, 936b
- Stavudine, 371, 372b-374b
- Stay sutures, 282f
- Steal syndrome, 1562
- Steatorrhea, 1185
 in chronic cholecystitis, 1318
 in chronic pancreatitis, 1327
 in Crohn's disease, 1281
 in cystic fibrosis, 624
 in malabsorption syndrome, 1262
 in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1233-1234
- Steatosis, 1309-1310
- Steinert dystrophy, 1141t
- Stelara; *See* Ustekinumab
- ST-elevation myocardial infarction, 829, 836
- Stem cell, 304, 305f
- Stem cell transplantation
 in aplastic anemia, 878
 in breast cancer, 1607
 conditioning regimen in, 886-887, 887f
 engraftment in, 887
 evidence-based practice in, 888b
 in leukemia, 884-889
 in myelodysplastic syndromes, 880
 prevention of complications in, 887-889
 in sickle cell disease, 875
- Stenosis
 aortic, 759-760, 759b
 mitral, 758-759, 759b, 762b
 renal artery, 777
 spinal, 960
 tracheal, 572t
- Stent
 biliary, 1331
 cardiac, 845, 845f
 esophageal, 1302
- Stent (*Continued*)
 prostatic, 1635
 for urolithiasis, 1510
- Stereotactic body radiotherapy, 412
- Stereotactic pallidotomy/thalamotomy, 946
- Stereotactic radiosurgery, 1033
- Stereotyping, 31
- Sterile table, 266, 266f
- Sterilization, 439-440
- Sternal angle, 552f
- Sternal split procedure for thymoma, 995
- Steroid therapy, 1362
 for acute respiratory distress syndrome, 673
 for allergic rhinitis, 387
 for anaphylaxis, 390b
 for asthma, 607b-608b, 610-611
 for bee sting, 146
 for Bell's palsy, 1001
 for bronchiolitis obliterans organizing pneumonia, 630
 for chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, 423b
 for external otitis, 1089, 1089b
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 gastritis risk and, 1225
 for Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
 immune deficiency and, 380
 interaction with sulfonyleurea agents, 1428t
 for myasthenia gravis, 994
 to prevent transplant rejection, 315
 for psoriasis, 499-500
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 340
 for sarcoidosis, 628
 for skin inflammation, 497, 497b
 topical, 497b
 for ulcerative colitis, 1275
- Stevens-Johnson syndrome, 508, 509f
- Stiff neck
 in meningitis, 938
 in traumatic brain injury, 1026
- Stimate; *See* Desmopressin
- Stimulated hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 392
- Stimulation tests in endocrine assessment, 1369
- Stirrup, 1078, 1078f-1079f
- Stoma
 care after total laryngectomy, 592, 597
 in total proctocolectomy with ileostomy, 1277b, 1277f
 in ulcerative colitis, 1276
- Stomach, 1179, 1181b
- Stomach disorders, 1220-1239
 gastric cancer in, 1234-1238
 early *versus* advanced, 1235b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1234, 1234b
 health care resources for, 1238
 home care management in, 1238
 postoperative dumping syndrome and, 1236, 1237t
 surgical management of, 1235-1237, 1236f
 teaching for self-management in, 1238
 gastritis in, 1220-1225
 drug therapy for, 1222, 1223b-1224b, 1225t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1221
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1221-1222, 1222b
 pathophysiology of, 1221
 physical assessment in, 1222, 1222b
 types of, 1221
 peptic ulcer disease in, 1225-1227
 acid suppression for, 1231-1232
 community-based care in, 1221
 complementary and alternative medicine for, 1230
- Stomach disorders (*Continued*)
 complications of, 1226-1227, 1226f, 1227b
 diet therapy for, 1230, 1230b
 endoscopic therapy for, 1231
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1227
 health care resources for, 1233
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1227
 history in, 1227-1228
 home care management in, 1233, 1233b
 imaging assessment in, 1229
 incidence and prevalence of, 1227
 interventional radiologic procedures for, 1231
 laboratory assessment in, 1228-1229
 most common sites for, 1226f
 nasogastric tube placement and lavage in, 1231, 1232b
 pain in, 1229-1230, 1229b-1230b
 physical assessment in, 1228, 1228t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1228
 surgical management of, 1232, 1233f
 teaching for self-management in, 1233, 1233b
 types of ulcers in, 1225-1226, 1226f
 upper gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1230-1232, 1231b
 Zollinger-Ellison syndrome in, 1233-1234
- Stomach lying exercise, 962b
- Stomatitis, 1193-1195, 1193b-1194b, 1194f
 chemotherapy-related, 422, 884
 in chronic kidney disease, 1549
- Stool culture, 1185
- Stool softeners
 after colon resection, 1252b
 after hemorrhoidectomy, 1262
- Stool test, 1185
- Straight cane, 98f
- Strain, 1173
- Strangulated hernia, 1243
- Strangulated obstruction, 1254
- Stratum corneum, 452f, 453
- Stratum granulosum, 452f
- Streptococcal infection
 acute glomerulonephritis after, 642, 643t, 1528
 in peritonsillar abscess, 644
 in prostatitis, 1649
 in tonsillitis, 644
 in toxic shock syndrome, 1614-1615
- Streptococcus pneumoniae*
 in acute sialadenitis, 1200
 in meningitis, 938
 in pneumonia, 652
 risk in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 613
 in sinusitis, 641
- Streptozocin, 415f-416t
- Stress
 gastritis and, 1221
 heart disease and, 834
 irritable bowel syndrome and, 1241-1242
 older adult and, 18-19, 19b
- Stress fracture, 1144-1145
- Stress incontinence, 1498t, 1501-1502, 1501b-1502b, 1503f, 1503t
 in pelvic organ prolapse, 1615
- Stress test
 after myocardial infarction, 836
 in cardiovascular assessment, 706
 in coronary artery disease, 836
 in peripheral arterial disease, 787
 in valvular heart disease, 760
- Stress ulcer, 517, 1225
 mechanical ventilation-related, 681
- Stretch marks
 in Cushing's syndrome, 1385
 manifestations of endocrine dysfunction and, 1368
- Stretta procedure, 1208, 1208b
- Striae
 in Cushing's syndrome, 1385
 manifestations of endocrine dysfunction and, 1368
- Stricture
 esophageal, 1204
 urethral, 1522-1523, 1522f
- Strictureplasty, 1284
- Stridor
 after extubation in mechanical ventilation, 682
 in anaphylaxis, 389
 in facial trauma, 583
 postoperative, 287-288
 thyroid surgery-related, 1399, 1399b
- Stroke, 1005-1007
 bladder and bowel continence in, 1018
 cardiovascular assessment in, 1012
 cerebral perfusion and, 1013-1017, 1013b-1014b
 communication and, 1017-1018, 1018t
 dysphagia in, 1017
 endovascular interventions in, 1014
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1007, 1008b
 health care resources for, 1020
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1007, 1007b, 1008t
 health teaching in, 1019-1020, 1019f
Healthy People 2020 objectives for, 776t
 history in, 1008
 home care management in, 1019
 in idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, 895
 imaging assessment in, 1012-1013
 incidence and prevalence of, 1007, 1007b
 increased intracranial pressure in, 1014-1015, 1014b-1015b
 laboratory assessment in, 1012
 left *versus* right hemisphere, 1011b
 mobility and self-care in, 1017b, 1018
 monitoring complications in, 1015
 National Institutes of Health Stroke Scale in, 1009, 1010t-1011t
 nonsurgical interventions in, 1008b, 1015-1016
 ongoing drug therapy for, 1015
 pathophysiologic changes in brain in, 1005
 physical assessment in, 1009-1012, 1009b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1012
 risk in diabetes mellitus, 1414
 sensory and perceptual changes in, 1018-1019
 in sickle cell disease, 873
 surgical management of, 1016-1017, 1016b
 transfer techniques for, 97b
 types of, 1005-1007, 1005f, 1006t, 1007f
 unilateral body neglect and, 1019
 visual loss in, 1011, 1012f
- Stroke volume, 689
 cardiac output and, 689
 heart failure and, 746
 hypovolemic shock and, 816
 in sepsis and septic shock, 823t
- Stromelysin, 319
- Struvite stones, 1508t, 1511, 1511t
- Stump wrapping, 1167, 1167f
- Stupor in high altitude cerebral edema, 151
- Stye, 1053-1054
- Subacute thyroiditis, 1404
- Subarachnoid analgesia, 57

- Subarachnoid bolt, 1029t
 Subarachnoid hemorrhage, 1006
 Subarachnoid infusion, 236
 Subarachnoid space, 906
 Subcapital hip fracture, 1160f
 Subclavian artery, 797
 Subclavian dialysis catheter, 1545f
 Subclavian nodes, 1577f
 Subclavian steal, 797
 Subclavian vein, 215f
 Subcutaneous drug administration, 55t-56t
 of insulin, 1435b
 Subcutaneous emphysema, 553
 in fracture, 1149
 in laryngeal trauma, 586
 in pneumothorax, 683
 tracheostomy-related, 571-572
 Subcutaneous fat, 452, 452f
 Subcutaneous infusion, 234
 Subcutaneous nodule, 334-335
 Subcutaneous tissue, 452, 452f
 changes resulting from burn, 514f
 changes with aging, 451
 function of, 454t
 Subdural catheter, 1029t
 Subdural hematoma, 1023, 1023f
 Subdural space, 906
 Subendocardial myocardial infarction, 830
 Sublimaze; *See* Fentanyl
 Sublingual drug administration, 55t-56t
 Subluxation, 1172
 after total hip arthroplasty, 325
 after total shoulder arthroplasty, 331
 Submaxillary lymph nodes, 1196f
 Submental lymph nodes, 1196f
 Submucosa, 1178, 1178f
 Submucosal leiomyoma, 1617, 1617f
 Submucosal nerve plexus, 1178f
 Submucosal resection in nasal fracture, 581
 Subscapular nodes, 1577f
 Subscapular skinfold measurement, 1339
 Subsegmental bronchus, 546, 546f
 Subserosal leiomyoma, 1617, 1617f
 Substance abuse, 243
 Substantia gelatinosa, 43, 44f
 Substantia nigra, 942
 Substernal retraction, 672
 Subthalamic nucleus, 907f
 Subtotal thyroidectomy, 1397
 Subtrochanteric hip fracture, 1160f
 Succinylcholine, 274t
 Sucralfate, 1223b-1224b
 for gastritis, 1222
 for peptic ulcer disease, 1230
 Sucrose, 1439
 Suction lipectomy, 507t
 Suctioning
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 620
 of laryngectomy tube, 592
 of tracheostomy, 574-575, 574b
 Sufentanil, 274t
 Suicide
 older adult and, 22
 physician-assisted, 119t
 Sulfamylon; *See* Mafenide acetate
 Sulfasalazine
 for ankylosing spondylitis, 352
 for psoriatic arthritis, 353
 for rheumatoid arthritis, 338b-339b
 for ulcerative colitis, 1274, 1275b, 1275t
 Sulfisoxazole, 1054b
 Sulfonamides, 1428t
 Sulfonylurea agents, 1421, 1423b-1427b, 1428t
 Sumatriptan, 930
 Summation, 700
 Sunburn, 472
 Sundowning, 949
 Sunitinib, 418t, 429
- Superconducting quantum interference device, 922
 Superficial cervical lymph nodes, 1196f
 Superficial partial-thickness burn, 513t, 514, 514f
 Superficial peroneal nerve, 997f
 Superficial reflexes, 916-917
 Superficial temporal artery-to-middle cerebral artery graft, 1016
 Superficial-thickness burn, 513-514, 513t, 514f
 Superinfection, 447
 Superior canaliculus, 1042f
 Superior cerebellar artery, 908f
 Superior oblique muscle, 1042f, 1042t
 Superior punctum, 1042f
 Superior rectus muscle, 1042f, 1042t
 Superior turbinate, 544f
 Superior vena cava, 216, 687f-688f
 Superior vena cava syndrome, 431-432, 432f, 632
 Supervision, 5
 Supination, 1112f
 Supine position during surgery, 280, 280f
 Supplemental oxygen; *See* Oxygen therapy
 Support staff in emergency care, 123
 Suppression tests
 in endocrine assessment, 1369
 in hyperpituitarism, 1374
 Suppressor gene, 397
 Suppressor T-cell, 313
 Supraclavicular lymph nodes, 1196f
 Supraglottic method of swallowing, 595b
 Supraglottic partial laryngectomy, 591t
 Suprane; *See* Desflurane
 Suprapatellar area, 320
 Suprasternal notch, 552f
 Supratentorial brain tumor, 1031
 Supratentorial surgery, 1034
 Supraventricular tachycardia, 722
 Suprax; *See* Cefixime
 Sural nerve, 997f
 Surfactant, 546
 acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 671
 aspiration of water and, 153
 Surgeon, 264
 Surgery
 in abdominal herniation, 1244-1245
 in abdominal trauma, 1260
 in acute pancreatitis, 1325
 anesthesia and, 270-277, 272t
 emergency care in malignant hyperthermia and, 273b
 general, 271-275, 272t, 274t
 local or regional, 275-276, 275t, 276f-277f
 moderate sedation, 276-277, 277t
 in aneurysm, 794-795
 in anorectal abscess, 1287
 in appendicitis, 1267-1268
 autologous blood transfusion and, 244
 in back pain, 963-964, 964b
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1635-1636, 1635f, 1636b
 in burn injury, 526-527, 528f, 532-533, 533f
 in cancer, 410-411
 bladder, 1493b, 1513-1514
 bone, 1136-1137
 breast, 1600-1607, 1601f-1602f, 1602b
 cervical, 1625-1626
 colorectal, 1248-1251, 1248t, 1250f
 esophageal, 1214-1217, 1215f, 1216b
 gastric, 1235-1237, 1236f
 head and neck, 580, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
 lung, 634-638, 634f
 oral, 1198-1199, 1199b
 ovarian, 1627
 prostate, 1639-1640, 1639b
- Surgery (*Continued*)
 skin, 504
 spinal cord tumor, 977
 testicular, 1645, 1645b
 uterine, 1622
 in cardiomyopathy, 768-770
 categories and purposes of, 240, 243t
 in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 620-621
 in chronic pancreatitis, 1327-1328
 comprehensive surgical checklist for, 241f
 coronary artery bypass graft, 845-849, 846f-847f, 848b-849b
 in Crohn's disease, 1283-1284
 in Cushing's disease, 1387-1388
 in cystic fibrosis, 625-626
 in cystitis, 1494
 in diabetes mellitus, 1443-1444
 intraoperative care in, 1445
 postoperative care in, 1445
 preoperative care in, 1444-1445
 risk for surgical complications and, 1444
 in diverticular disease, 1286
 in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 in dysrhythmias, 738-739
 coronary artery bypass grafting in, 739
 implantable cardioverter/defibrillator in, 739, 742b
 open-chest cardiac massage in, 739
 permanent pacemaker insertion in, 738, 739f
- ear
 in M[gv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096-1097
 myringotomy in, 1093, 1093f
 recovery from, 1094b
 stapedectomy in, 1102-1103, 1103f
 totally implanted device for hearing loss in, 1103
 tympanoplasty in, 1101-1102, 1101f-1102f
 in endometriosis, 1612
- eye
 for cataracts, 1060-1061, 1061f, 1062b
 for glaucoma, 1067
 for refractive errors, 1070-1071
 in retinal detachment, 1069
 in vitreous hemorrhage, 1068
 in fracture, 1148-1159, 1155f
 in gallstones, 1318-1320, 1319b, 1320t
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1208
 in heart failure, 754, 754f
 in hiatal hernia, 1210-1211, 1210b, 1210f
 in hyperparathyroidism, 1407-1408
 in hyperthyroidism, 1397-1400, 1399b
 hypoventilation prevention and, 281-282
 identification of patient, procedure, and surgical site in, 265f
 infective endocarditis, 764
 injury prevention and, 279-280, 280f, 281b
 in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 medical record review and, 278-279, 278b-279b
 in myasthenia gravis, 995, 995b
 in obesity, 1353-1355, 1354b-1355b, 1354f
 in osteoarthritis, 323-331
 in osteomyelitis, 1133
 in Parkinson disease, 946
 patient history and, 277-278
 patient self-determination and, 252
 patient transfer to surgical suite, 260
 in pelvic organ prolapse, 1616-1617
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1232, 1233f
- Surgery (*Continued*)
 in peripheral arterial disease, 789-791, 789b, 790f
 in peritonitis, 1269
 in pheochromocytoma, 1391
 plastic, 505-508
 common procedures in, 507t
 history before, 505
 physical assessment before, 505
 postoperative care in, 506-508
 preoperative care in, 506
 psychosocial assessment before, 505-506
 in poorly healing wound, 296
 postoperative care in, 284-300
 in abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 794-795
 in abdominal herniation, 1244
 in back surgery, 963-964
 in bariatric surgery, 1354-1355
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1629
 in bone cancer, 1136-1137
 in breast reconstruction, 1605b
 in cataract surgery, 1061
 in colorectal cancer, 1249-1251
 in corneal transplantation, 1058
 in coronary artery bypass graft, 847-849
 in craniotomy, 1034-1036
 in Cushing's disease, 1387-1388
 in cystectomy, 1513
 in esophageal cancer, 1215-1217, 1216b
 focused assessment in, 288b
 in fracture surgery, 1155-1156
 in head and neck cancer surgery, 591-592
 health care resources after
 discharge and, 300
 in heart transplantation, 769-770
 in hiatal hernia, 1210-1211
 history review in, 285
 home care management and, 299
 hypoxemia prevention and, 293-294, 293b
 in hysterectomy, 1619, 1620b
 in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 in kidney transplantation, 1569-1570, 1570b
 laboratory assessment in, 293
 in lung reduction surgery, 620-621
 in lung transplantation, 626
 in mastectomy, 1602-1607
 in myringotomy, 1093, 1094b
 in open ureterolithotomy, 1510
 in oral cancer, 1198-1199
 pain management in, 297-299, 298b-299b
 in peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
 physical assessment in, 286-292, 287f
 in pituitary gland removal, 1376-1378
 in plastic surgery, 506-508
 in pneumonectomy, 634-638, 635f-636f
 postoperative hand-off report and, 285, 285b
 potential complications of surgery and, 286t
 in pressure ulcer, 487-488
 in prostatectomy, 1639-1640, 1639b
 psychosocial assessment in, 292
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
 in retinal detachment, 1069
 in sinusitis, 642b
 skin care and, 294b
 in stapedectomy, 1094b, 1102-1103
 in stress incontinence surgery, 1502
 in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445
 teaching for self-management, 299-300

Surgery (*Continued*)

- in testicular cancer, 1645
- in thyroid surgery, 1399-1400
- in total gastrectomy, 1236-1237
- in total hip arthroplasty, 325-329, 325t, 326b
- in total knee arthroplasty, 329-330, 330b, 330f
- in tracheostomy, 571
- in tympanoplasty, 1102
- in ulcerative colitis, 1277-1278
- in Whipple procedure, 1331-1333, 1332t
- wound infection and delayed healing and, 294-297, 295f, 296b
- potential complications of, 286t
- potential effects of herbs on, 244t
- preoperative care in, 239-262
 - in abdominal aortic aneurysm resection, 794
 - in back surgery, 963
 - in bariatric surgery, 1353
 - in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1635
 - in bone cancer, 1136
 - in cataract surgery, 1060-1061
 - categories and purposes of surgery and, 240, 243t
 - in colorectal cancer, 1241, 1248-1249, 1249t
 - comprehensive surgical checklist and, 241f
 - in corneal transplantation, 1058
 - in coronary artery bypass graft surgery, 846
 - in craniotomy, 1033
 - in Cushing's disease, 1387
 - in cystectomy, 1513
 - dietary restrictions and, 252-253
 - electrocardiography and, 248
 - in epilepsy surgery, 937
 - in esophageal cancer, 1215
 - focused assessment of, 250b
 - in fracture surgery, 1155
 - in gastric cancer surgery, 1236
 - in head and neck surgery, 591
 - in heart transplantation, 768-769
 - in hiatal hernia, 1210
 - history of, 242-246
 - imaging assessment of, 248
 - informed consent and, 250, 251f
 - in intestinal obstruction, 1257
 - intestinal preparation and, 253-254
 - in kidney transplantation, 1568-1569
 - laboratory assessment of, 247-248, 249b-250b
 - in lung reduction surgery, 620
 - in lung transplantation, 626
 - in mastectomy, 1601-1602
 - minimizing anxiety in, 258-259
 - in myringotomy, 1093
 - older adult and, 245b-246b
 - in open ureterolithotomy, 1510
 - in oral cancer, 1198
 - patient education and, 248-258, 252t
 - patient self-determination and, 252
 - in peripheral arterial disease, 789-790
 - physical assessment of, 246-247
 - in pituitary gland removal, 1376-1378
 - in plastic surgery, 506
 - in pneumonectomy, 634
 - potential effects of herbs on surgery, 244t
 - preoperative chart review and, 259
 - preoperative checklist and, 261f
 - preoperative drugs and, 260
 - preoperative fasting and, 253b
 - preoperative patient preparation and, 259-260

Surgery (*Continued*)

- preparation for tubes, drains, and vascular access, 254
- in pressure sore, 487
- in prostate cancer, 1639
- psychosocial assessment of, 247
- regularly scheduled drugs and, 253
- in renal cell carcinoma, 1533
- in retinal detachment surgery, 1069
- risk for postoperative complications and, 243, 244t
- skin preparation and, 254, 255f
- in stapedectomy, 1102-1103, 1102b, 1103f
- in stress incontinence surgery, 1502
- in surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1444-1445
- Surgical Care Improvement Project
 - Core Measurement overview and, 242t
 - surgical settings and, 240
 - teaching postoperative procedures and exercises, 254-258, 256b-257b, 256f, 258f
- in testicular cancer, 1645
- in thyroid surgery, 1397-1399
- in total hip arthroplasty, 324
- in total knee arthroplasty, 329
- in tracheostomy, 571
- transfer to surgical suite and, 260
- in tympanoplasty, 1101
- in ulcerative colitis, 1276
- in Whipple procedure, 1331
- in pressure ulcer, 487-488, 487f
- in pulmonary embolism, 667
- in pyelonephritis, 1525
- radiation therapy during, 1605
- risk for postoperative complications, 243, 244t
- in scoliosis, 1140
- in seizures and epilepsy, 936-937
- settings for, 240
- in sinusitis, 642, 657b
- in spinal cord injury, 972-973, 972b
- in stress incontinence, 1502, 1503t
- in stroke, 1016-1017, 1016b
- surgical suite preparation and, 266-270
 - health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
 - layout of suite and, 266-267, 268f
 - minimally invasive and robotic surgery and, 267, 269f
 - surgical attire and, 267-270, 270f
 - surgical scrub and, 270, 271f
 - surgical team members and, 264-266, 266f
- in traumatic brain injury, 1029-1030, 1029t
- in trigeminal neuralgia, 1001
- in ulcerative colitis, 1275-1278, 1276f-1277f, 1277b
- in upper airway obstruction, 587
- in urolithiasis, 1510
- in uterine leiomyomas, 1618-1619
- in valvular heart disease, 761-762, 762f
- in varicose veins, 805
- wound infection and delayed healing and, 294-297, 295f, 296b
- Surgical assistant, 264
- Surgical attire, 267-270, 270f
- Surgical Care Improvement Project Core Measurements, 242t
- Surgical consent form, 251f
- Surgical d[ac]ebridement
 - in facial trauma, 584
 - in pressure sore, 487
- Surgical excision of burn wound, 533
- Surgical positions, 279-280, 280f
- Surgical scrub, 270, 271f
- Surgical site
 - emergency care of evisceration at, 296b

Surgical site (*Continued*)

- focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b
- identification of, 265f
- infection at, 281, 296
- marking of, 278
- Surgical staging, 403
- Surgical suite, 266-270
 - health and hygiene of surgical team and, 267
 - layout of, 266-267, 268f
 - minimally invasive and robotic surgery and, 267, 269f
 - patient transfer to, 260
 - surgical attire and, 267-270, 270f
 - surgical scrub and, 270, 271f
- Surgical team, 264-266, 266f
 - anesthesia providers in, 264
 - health and hygiene of, 267
 - perioperative nursing staff in, 264-266
 - surgeon and surgical assistant in, 264
- Surgical technologist, 266
- Surgical wound infection, 281, 296
- Surveillance in infection control, 435
- Survivor bereavement, 117-118
- Survivor response to mass casualty event, 163-164
- Susceptibility gene, 71
- Suspensory ligament, 1578f
- Sustained immunity, 312
- Sustained ventricular tachycardia, 729f
- Sustiva; *See* Efavirenz
- Sutent; *See* Sunitinib
- Sutures, 281, 295
- SUX; *See* Succinylcholine
- SVT; *See* Supraventricular tachycardia
- Swallowing
 - after laryngectomy, 595, 595b
 - difficulty in
 - after Nissen fundoplication, 1211
 - in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983b
 - in dying patient, 113
 - in esophageal cancer, 1212
 - in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1205
 - in Guillain-Barr[ac]e syndrome, 990
 - in hiatal hernia, 1209
 - in lung cancer, 632, 638
 - in malnutrition, 1341b
 - in myasthenia gravis, 991
 - in stomatitis, 1194
 - in stroke, 1011-1012, 1017
 - in systemic sclerosis, 347
 - in thyroid cancer, 1405
 - supraglottic method of, 595b
 - tracheostomy and, 577b
- Swallowing therapy in esophageal cancer, 1213-1214
- Sweat gland, 452f, 453
 - changes resulting from burn, 512
 - changes with aging, 451
- Sweating
 - in aortic dissection, 796
 - in hyperthyroidism, 1394-1395
 - in renal colic, 1508
- Sweeteners, diabetes mellitus and, 1439
- Swelling; *See* Edema
- Swimmer's ear, 1089
- Swine flu, 645-646
- Syme amputation, 1163-1164, 1163f
- Symlyn; *See* Pramlinide
- Symmetrel; *See* Amantadine
- Sympathectomy, 1168-1169
- Sympathetic nervous system
 - compensation after burn injury and, 517, 518f
 - heart rate and, 689
 - stimulation in heart failure, 746-747
- Sympathomimetics, 843b, 1428t
- Synapse, 906
- Synaptic cleft, 906
- Synaptic knob, 906
- Synarthrodial joint, 1108

- SynchroMed pump, 57, 58f
- Synchronizing intermittent mandatory ventilation, 678, 682t
- Synchronous pacing, 735
- Syncope
 - cardiovascular assessment and, 696
 - in cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy, 1416
 - in complex partial seizure, 932-933
 - in mitral valve prolapse, 759
 - in pulmonary embolism, 664
- Syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1380-1381, 1380t
 - after craniotomy, 1035-1036
 - in brain tumor, 1031
 - in cancer, 430-431
 - lung cancer and, 631t
- Syndrome X, 834, 1417
- Syngeneic transplant, 885, 886t
- Synovectomy, 1172
- Synovial joint, 1108, 1109f
- Synovitis, 1170-1171
- Synovium, 1108, 1109f
- Synthetic dressing, 532
- Synvisc; *See* Hyal GF 20
- Syphilis, 1654-1655, 1654b, 1654f, 1656b
- Syringe, insulin, 1434-1435
- Syringe pump, 222
- Systemic complications in infusion therapy, 230t
- Systemic inflammatory response syndrome, 820, 821f, 821t
- Systemic lupus erythematosus, 343, 344b, 344f
- Systemic necrotizing vasculitis, 351
- Systemic sclerosis, 344b, 347, 348b, 348f
- Systemic vascular resistance, 690
- Systole, 689, 690f
- Systolic blood pressure, 691
- Systolic heart failure, 745
- Systolic murmur, 700-701
- Systolic ventricular dysfunction, 745

T

- T wave, 716f, 717
- TAA; *See* Thoracic aortic aneurysm
- Tabloid; *See* 6-Thioguanine
- Tachycardia, 718, 720
 - in abdominal trauma, 1259
 - in acute pancreatitis, 1323b
 - in heat stroke, 138
 - in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 - in pulmonary embolism, 664
 - in scorpion bite, 144-145
 - in strangulated hernia, 1243
 - supraventricular, 722
 - in thyroid storm, 1399
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1025
 - ventricular, 728-729, 729b, 729f
- Tachydysrhythmias, 719, 719b
- Tachypnea
 - in chronic kidney disease, 1551
 - in heat stroke, 138
 - in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
- Tacrolimus, 315-316
- Tactile fremitus, 553
- Tactile stimulation for pain in burn injury, 528
- Tadalafin, 1642
- Tai chi, 13
- Takayasu's arteritis, 351
- Talcosis, 629b
- Tambocor; *See* Flecainide acetate
- Tamiflu; *See* Oseltamivir
- Tampon, toxic shock syndrome and, 1614-1615
- Tamsulosin, 1633
- Tapazole; *See* Methimazole
- Tape skin closure, 282f
- Tar preparations for psoriasis, 500
- Tarceva; *See* Erlotinib
- Target tissues, 1359

- Targeted therapy for cancer, 427-430, 428f-429f, 429t
 angiogenesis inhibitors in, 430
 breast cancer and, 1606, 1606t
 epidermal growth factor/receptor inhibitors in, 428
 esophageal cancer and, 1214
 lung cancer and, 633
 monoclonal antibodies in, 430
 multikinase inhibitors in, 429
 pancreatic cancer and, 1331
 proteasome inhibitors in, 429-430
 tyrosine kinase inhibitors in, 428-430
 vascular endothelial growth factor/receptor inhibitors in, 429
- Tasigna; *See* Nilotinib
- Taste alteration
 after oral cancer surgery, 1200
 radiation therapy-related, 413
- Tattoo, 463
- Taxanes
 for breast cancer, 1606t
 for ovarian cancer, 1627
- Taxol; *See* Paclitaxel
- Taxotere; *See* Docetaxel
- Tazarotene, 500
- Tazorac; *See* Tazarotene
- TBSA; *See* Total body surface area
- T-cell, 313, 857t
 delayed hypersensitivity reactions and, 392
 differentiation, maturation, and function of, 309f
- Teamwork, 4-5, 5t
- Tears, 1041, 1043b
- Technetium scan, 707
- TED stockings, 257, 258f
- TEE; *See* Transesophageal echocardiography
- Teeth, 1179
- TEF; *See* Tracheoesophageal fistula
- Tegretol; *See* Carbamazepine
- Tektura; *See* Aliskiren
- Telemetry system of electrocardiogram, 714
- Telephone amplifier, 1100
- Telephone visits in heart failure, 758b
- Teletherapy, 412
- Temodar; *See* Temozolomide
- Temozolomide, 415t-416t, 418t, 1033
- Temporal arteritis, 351, 351b
- Temporal field blindness, 1037
- Temporal herniation, 1024f
- Temporal lobe, 907, 907t
- Temporal lobe seizure, 932-933
- Temporal pulse, 699f
- Temporary loop ileostomy, 1276f
- Temporary pacing, 733-736, 735f-736f
- Temporary subcutaneous hemodialysis access, 1562, 1562f
- Temporomandibular joint arthritis, 334
- Temsirolimus, 1533
- Tendinopathy, 1172-1173
- Tendon, 1109, 1109f
- Tendon transplant, 1172
- Tenesmus
 in intestinal parasitic infection, 1288
 in ulcerative colitis, 1272-1273
- Teniposide, 415t-416t
- Tenofovir, 371
- Tenormin; *See* Atenolol
- TENS; *See* Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
- Tensilon testing, 992-993, 992b
- Tension pneumothorax, 683-684
- Tentorium, 906
- Tequin; *See* Gatifloxacin
- Terazosin
 for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 for hypertension, 784
- Terbutaline, 609
- Teriparatide, 1125
- Terlipressin
 ischemic complications of, 1302b
 to suppress gastric acid secretion, 1231
- Terminal bronchiole, 546, 547f
- Terminal knob, 906
- Tertiary syphilis, 1654
- Testicular cancer, 1643
 chemotherapy for, 1645
 classification of tumors in, 1643t
 community-based care in, 1646
 external beam radiation therapy for, 1646
 genetic considerations in, 1643b
 laboratory assessment in, 1644
 physical assessment in, 1643-1644, 1644b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1644
 sperm banking and, 1644b
 surgical management of, 1645, 1645b
 testicular self-examination and, 1643b
- Testicular self-examination, 1643b
- Testicular torsion, 1647f
- Testis, 1577, 1578f
 hormones secreted by, 1359t
 hydrocele and, 1646-1647, 1647f
 mass in, 1580
 orchitis and, 1578
 spermatocoele and, 1647, 1647f
 varicocele and, 1647, 1647f
- Testosterone, 1577
 erectile dysfunction and, 1642
 laboratory assessment of, 1582b
 prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia and, 1637
- Tetany, 208
 thyroid surgery-related, 1399
- Tetrabenazine, 956
- Tetracaine hydrochloride, 1054b
- Tetracycline
 for gastritis, 1223b-1224b
 for *Helicobacter pylori*, 1229
 interaction with antacids, 1230
 for stomatitis, 1194-1195
- Tetraplegia, 969
- Texture of skin, 464t
- Thalamotomy, 946
- Thalamus, 907, 907f
- Thalidomide
 for cancer, 427
 for multiple myeloma, 894-895
 for sarcoidosis, 628
- Thallium imaging scan, 707, 835, 1115
- Thalomid; *See* Thalidomide
- Theophylline, 610
- Therapeutic exercise, 331
- Therapeutic hypothermia, 737
- Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes diet, 775
- Therapeutic touch, 13, 14f
 for dying patient, 113
- Therapy-induced immune deficiencies, 380-381
- Thermal ablation techniques for bone cancer, 1136
- Thermal injury, 522; *See also* Burn
 electrical, 518-519
 during minimally invasive and robotic surgery, 267
- Thermazene; *See* Silver sulfadiazine
- Thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1635
- Thiazide diuretics
 cautions in use of, 780b
 for heart failure, 752
 for hypercalciuria, 1511
 for hypertension, 780, 780b
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
- Thiazolidinediones, 1423b-1427b, 1428
- Thienopyridines, 838b
- Thigh and leg surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- 6-Thioguanine, 415t-416t, 418t
- Thiopental sodium, 274t
- Thiopeta, 415t-416t
- Thioplex; *See* Thiopeta
- Third heart sound, 690f, 749
- Third intention healing, 472-473, 474f
- Third spacing, 516, 516f, 1268
- Third-degree atrioventricular block, 731
- Third-degree frostbite, 150
- Third-degree sprain, 1173
- Thirst, 169
- Thoracentesis, 559-560, 560f, 638
- Thoracic aortic aneurysm, 792-793
- Thoracic aortic aneurysm repair, 795, 795b
- Thoracic outlet syndrome, 797-798
- Thoracic spine
 assessment of, 1112
 tumor of, 977b
- Thoracoabdominal surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
- Thoracolumbar autonomic nervous system, 911
- Thoracoscopy, 632-633
- Thoracotomy, 684
- Thorax
 barrel chest and, 604f
 physical assessment of, 552-555, 552f
- Thorazine; *See* Chlorpromazine
- Thorough skin self-examination, 503-504
- Three-dimensional computed tomography, 912t
- Threshold of hearing, 1085, 1085t
- Throat, 545
 sore, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 radiation therapy-related, 590
 in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 653
- Throat culture, 642
- Thrombectomy
 in acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 792
 critical rescue after, 792b
 in peripheral arterial disease, 790
 in venous thromboembolism, 802
- Thrombin, 858, 859f-860f
- Thromboangiitis obliterans, 797
- Thrombocyte count, 864
- Thrombocytopenia, 895
 in acute pancreatitis, 1324
 in aplastic anemia, 878
 in brown recluse spider bite, 143
 chemotherapy-related, 419, 421, 421b, 633
 heparin-induced, 896-897
 in myelodysplastic syndromes, 879
 patient safety in, 889b
 unfractionated heparin-related, 327
- Thromboembolism, venous, 799-803, 799f, 800b
 after hip surgery, 324, 325t
 impaired mobility and, 1017
 postoperative assessment for, 288
 preoperative assessment for, 256
- Thrombolytic drugs, 861-862
 for acute peripheral arterial occlusion, 792, 792b
 contraindications to, 840t
 for myocardial infarction, 839, 839b
 for peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
 for peripheral venous disease, 802, 802b
 for stroke, 1013, 1014b
 for venous thromboembolism, 802
- Thrombophlebitis, 799
 intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t
 peripherally inserted central catheter-related, 216-217
- Thrombopoietin, 314t, 858
- Thrombosis, 799
 after kidney transplantation, 1570
 in atherosclerotic plaque rupture, 773
 gonadotropin deficiency and, 1373
 intravenous therapy-related, 211, 228t-229t
 in ischemic stroke, 1005
 in polycythemia vera, 879
 vascular access in hemodialysis and, 1561
- Thrombotic stroke, 1005-1006, 1005f, 1006t
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura, 896
- Thrombus, 799
- Thrush, 366, 366f
- Thymectomy, 995
- Thymine, 67, 67f
- Thymoma, 991, 995
- Thyrocalcitonin, 188, 1363
- Thyrohyoid membrane, 545f
- Thyroid, 1363-1364, 1363f
 hormones secreted by, 1359t, 1363t
 palpation of, 1368, 1368f
- Thyroid antibodies, 1396b
- Thyroid cancer, 1405-1406
- Thyroid cartilage, 544f-545f, 545
- Thyroid crisis, 1399, 1400b
- Thyroid disorders, 1393-1406
 hyperthyroidism in, 1393-1394
 diagnosis of, 1396
 drug therapy for, 1397, 1397b-1398b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1394, 1394b
 history in, 1394-1395, 1395f
 incidence and prevalence of, 1394
 laboratory assessment in, 1396, 1396b
 pathophysiology of, 1393-1394, 1394b
 physical assessment in, 1395, 1395f, 1395t
 psychosocial assessment in, 1395-1396
 safety precautions in unsealed radioactive isotope for, 1398b
 surgical management of, 1397-1400, 1399b
 thyroid storm and, 1400, 1400b
- hypothyroidism in, 1400-1401
 cognitive function and, 1403
 community-based care, 1403-1404
 etiology of, 1401, 1401t
 health care resources for, 1404, 1405b
 history in, 1402
 home care management in, 1404
 hypotension in, 1402-1403
 incidence and prevalence of, 1401
 laboratory assessment in, 1402
 myxedema coma in, 1403, 1403b
 pathophysiology of, 1400-1401, 1401b, 1401f
 physical assessment in, 1402
 psychosocial assessment in, 1402
 respiratory function and, 1402
 teaching for self-management in, 1404, 1404b
 thyroid cancer in, 1405-1406
 thyroiditis in, 1404-1405
- Thyroid function tests, 992
- Thyroid hormones, 1359t, 1363, 1363t
 hyperthyroidism and, 1393-1394
 hypothyroidism and, 1400, 1401t
- Thyroid notch, 545f
- Thyroid scan, 1396
- Thyroid stimulation test, 1396b
- Thyroid storm, 1397, 1399-1400, 1400b
- Thyroid suppression test, 1396b
- Thyroidectomy, 1397
- Thyroiditis, 1404-1405
- Thyroid-releasing hormone, 1363
- Thyroid-releasing hormone stimulation test, 1396b
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone, 1361t, 1363
 deficiency of, 1372, 1373b
 hypothyroidism and, 1400
 normal range for, 1396b
 overproduction of, 1376b
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone stimulation test, 1396b
- Thyrototoxicosis, 1393
 drug therapy for, 1398b
 in myasthenia gravis, 992

- Thyrotropin, 1361t
Thyrotropin receptor antibodies, 1396b
Thyroxine, 1363, 1363t
 hypothyroidism and, 1402
 role in bone growth and metabolism, 341
TIA; *See* Transient ischemic attack
Tiagabine, 934b
TIBC; *See* Total iron-binding capacity
Tibial fracture, 1155f, 1162
Tibial nerve, 997f
Tic douloureux, 1000-1001, 1000f
Tick, Lyme disease and, 352
Tidal volume, 678
Tidaling, 635
Tikosyn; *See* Dofetilide
Tilade; *See* Nedocromil
Tiludronate, 1130
Time-cycled ventilator, 677
Timolol
 for glaucoma, 1066b-1067b
 for migraine, 930
Timoptic; *See* Timolol
Tinea, 492-493
Tinel's sign, 1171
Tinidazole, 1289
Tinnitus, 1082
 in acoustic neuroma, 1097
 in cerebellar pontine angle tumor, 1031
 in glomus jugulare tumor, 1094
 history of, 1080-1081
 in M[glv]eni[ac]ere's disease, 1096
 in multiple sclerosis, 979
 in vertigo, 1095
Tinzaparin, 327
Tiotropium
 for asthma, 610
 for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 619
Tipranavir, 371, 372b-374b
TIPS; *See* Transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt
Tirofiban
 for coronary artery disease, 839
 for peripheral arterial disease, 790-791
 for venous thromboembolism, 802
Tissue expander in breast reconstruction, 1604t
Tissue perfusion
 after amputation, 1166
 cardiovascular system in, 687
 coronary artery disease and, 837-840, 839b, 840t
 hematologic system role in, 855, 856f
 oxygen therapy and, 562, 563f
 rapid-onset acute respiratory problems and, 662, 663f
 red blood cells and, 870
 respiratory system role in, 544, 544f
 shock and, 809-811, 809f, 811f
 sickle cell disease and, 871
Tissue plasminogen activator
 for pulmonary embolism, 665, 666b
 for venous thromboembolism, 802
Tissue thromboplastin, 860t
Titration in urine output, 527
Tizididine, 972
TLV; *See* Total lung capacity
TMJ; *See* Temporomandibular joint
TNF; *See* Tumor necrosis factor
TNM system, 403, 403t
Tobacco use
 after laryngectomy, 597, 598b
 asthma and, 605b
 Buerger's disease and, 797
 cancer and, 403, 404t
 colorectal, 1245-1246
 esophageal, 1212
 lung, 630-631
 cardiovascular disease and, 693
 chronic gastritis and, 1221
 chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and, 613
Tobacco use (*Continued*)
 contraindication in oxygen therapy, 570b
 coronary artery disease and, 833
 diabetic kidney disease and, 1450
 osteoporosis and, 1121
 peripheral arterial disease and, 788-789
 respiratory assessment and, 549
 women and, 548b
TobraDex; *See* Tobramycin with dexamethasone
Tobramycin, 1054b
Tobramycin with dexamethasone, 1054b
Tobrex; *See* Tobramycin
Tocainide hydrochloride, 723b-726b
Tocilizumab, 340
Toe
 amputation of, 1163f
 fracture of, 1162
Toe brachial pressure index, 699
Toe surgery, skin preparation for, 255f
Tofranil; *See* Imipramine
Toileting in Alzheimer's disease, 951
Tolerance, 44-45
Tolterodine
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b
Tolvaptan
 for fluid overload, 179
 for hyponatremia, 182
 for syndrome of inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone, 1381
Tomography; *See* Computed tomography
Tongue, 544f, 1179
 removal of, 1198
 vitamin B₁₂ deficiency and, 877, 877f
Tonic seizure, 932
Tonic-clonic seizure, 932, 935b
Tonocard; *See* Tocainide hydrochloride
Tonometry, 1049, 1049f
Tono-Pen, 1049, 1049f
Tonsillar lymph nodes, 1196f
Tonsillectomy, 644
Tonsillitis, 644, 644b
Tooth decay, radiation therapy-related, 414
Topamax; *See* Topiramate
Topotecan, 415t-416t, 418t
Tophi, 349, 350f, 1082
Topical antibiotics, 533
Topical antifungals, 494
Topical antivirals, 1054b
Topical chemical d[ac]ebridement of pressure ulcer, 483
Topical drugs
 administration of, 55t-56t
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for pain management, 59
 in esophageal trauma, 1218
 in osteoarthritis, 322
Topical enzyme preparations for pressure ulcer, 483t
Topical growth factors, 487
Topical steroids
 for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 for psoriasis, 499-500
 for skin inflammation, 497, 497b
Topiramate, 934b
 for migraine, 930
 for pain management, 58
Topoisomerase inhibitors, 415t-416t, 416
Toprol; *See* Metoprolol
Toradol; *See* Ketorolac
Torisel; *See* Temsirolimus
Tornalate; *See* Bitolterol
Torsades de pointes, 703, 717, 733
Torsemide, 780
Torsion, testicular, 1647f
Total abdominal hysterectomy, 1619, 1619t, 1620b
Total bilirubin, 1186b
Total body surface area, 512, 523
Total body water, 166, 166f
Total calcium, 1186b
Total catecholamines, 1481b
Total elbow arthroplasty, 331
Total enteral nutrition, 1343-1347
 abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting in, 1346
 complications of, 1345-1347, 1345b
 fluid and electrolyte imbalances in, 1346-1347
 methods of administration of, 1344-1345, 1344f
 tube feeding care and maintenance in, 1345b-1346b
 tube misplacement and dislodgement in, 1346, 1346b
Total estrogens, 1582b
Total gastrectomy, 1236, 1236f
Total granulocyte count, 307
Total hemoglobin
 perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 in respiratory assessment, 557b
Total hip arthroplasty, 324-329
 bleeding and anemia after, 327
 infection prevention after, 327
 mobility and activity after, 328, 328b
 neurovascular compromise after, 327-328, 328b
 older adult and, 326b
 pain management after, 328
 postoperative care in, 325-329, 325t
 preoperative care in, 324
 prevention of hip dislocation after, 325-326, 326f
 self-management after, 327b, 328-329
 venous thromboembolism after, 326-327
Total hysterectomy
 in cervical cancer, 1626
 in ovarian cancer, 1627
 in uterine cancer, 1622
Total iron-binding capacity, 864, 865b
Total joint arthroplasty, 323, 325f
Total joint replacement, 323
Total knee arthroplasty, 329-330, 330b, 330f
Total laryngectomy, 591-592, 591t
Total lipids, 702b
Total lung capacity, 558t
Total lymphocyte count, 1342
Total parenteral nutrition, 1347-1348, 1348b
 in acute kidney injury, 1545
 in acute pancreatitis, 1325
 after surgery for diabetes mellitus, 1445
 in esophageal trauma, 1218
 in gastric cancer, 1236
 pH of solutions for, 211
 in ulcerative colitis, 1275
Total penectomy, 1648
Total proctocolectomy with permanent ileostomy, 1277, 1277f
Total protein
 in burn assessment, 524b
 in cirrhosis, 1298-1299
Total serum cholesterol, 774
Total shoulder arthroplasty, 331
Total thyroidectomy
 in hyperthyroidism, 1397
 in thyroid cancer, 1405-1406
Total urinary incontinence, 1506
Total vaginal hysterectomy, 1619, 1620b
Totally implanted device for hearing loss, 1103
Touch discrimination, 915
Toviaz; *See* Fesoterodine
Toxic cataracts, 1060t
Toxic diffuse goiter, 1394
Toxic epidermal necrolysis, 508
Toxic hepatitis, 1305
Toxic megacolon
 drug therapy for, 1275
 in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease, 1273t
Toxic multinodular goiter, 1394
Toxic shock syndrome, 1614-1615, 1615b
Toxin, 435
Toxoplasmosis encephalitis, 366
tPA; *See* Tissue plasminogen activator
T-piece, 567-568, 568f, 568t
T-piece technique in weaning from ventilator, 682t
TPN; *See* Total parenteral nutrition
Trabecular bone loss in osteoporosis, 1120
Trabeculation in cystitis, 1493-1494
Trachea, 545f-546f, 546
 physical assessment of, 552
 trauma to, 684
Tracheal stenosis, 572t
Tracheobronchial trauma, 684
Tracheobronchial tree, 546
Tracheoesophageal fistula, 572t
Tracheoesophageal puncture, 593-594, 594f
Tracheo-innominate artery fistula, 572t
Tracheomalacia, 572t
Tracheostomy, 570-578
 air warming and humidification in, 574, 574b
 bronchial and oral hygiene for, 576
 care of, 575-576, 575b-576b, 576f
 communication and, 577
 community-based care in, 578
 complications of, 571-572, 571b
 focused assessment of, 576b
 in head and neck surgery, 591
 nutrition and, 577, 577b
 for obstructive sleep apnea, 585
 older adult and, 578b
 in oral cancer, 1198
 postoperative care in, 571
 preoperative care in, 571
 preventing tissue damage from, 573-574
 psychosocial needs and self-image and, 577
 suctioning of, 574-575, 574b
 swallowing and, 595
 vertical tracheal incision for, 571, 571f
 weaning from, 577-578
Tracheostomy button, 578
Tracheostomy collar, 567-568, 568t
Tracheostomy tube, 572-573, 573f
 dislodgement and accidental decannulation of, 571, 571b
 obstruction of, 571
 weaning from, 577-578
Tracheotomy, 570, 571f
 in burn injury, 526
 in facial trauma, 583-584
 in head and neck surgery, 594
 in upper airway obstruction, 587
Trachoma, 1056
Tracleer; *See* Bosentan
Tracrium; *See* Atracurium
Traction, 1153-1154, 1153t, 1154b, 1154f
Traction retinal detachment, 1069
Traditional cholecystectomy, 1319-1320
Trained medical interpreter, 33
Training and certification in emergency care, 127, 127t
TRAM flap, 1604
Tramadol, 354
Trans fatty acids, 1350
Transabdominal ultrasonography, 1633
Transbronchial biopsy, 560
Transbronchial needle aspiration, 560
Transcervical approach in thymectomy, 995
Transcervical endometrial resection, 1619

- Transcranial Doppler ultrasonography, 925
- Transcription factors, 427
- Transcultural nursing, 30
- Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, 59, 60f
- Transdermal drug administration, 55t-56t
- Transesophageal echocardiography in cardiovascular assessment, 707
- in pulmonary embolism, 664
- in valvular heart disease, 760
- Transfer of stroke patient, 97b
- to surgical suite, 260
- Transferrin, 864
- Transformation zone of cervix, 1624
- Transfusion therapy, 211-212, 212f, 897-900
- acute transfusion reactions in, 900-901
- allergy to, 278
- in aplastic anemia, 878
- autologous, 278, 278b, 901
- blood administration setup for, 899f
- cryoprecipitate, 900
- in hypovolemic shock, 818
- indications for, 897t
- in leukemia, 890
- older adult and, 899b
- plasma, 900
- platelet, 900, 900b
- pretransfusion responsibilities in, 897-898, 898b
- red blood cell, 899-900, 899t
- in sepsis and septic shock, 826
- in sickle cell crisis, 875
- white blood cell, 900
- Transfusion-associated graft-versus-host disease, 901
- Transfusion-related acute lung injury, 671
- Transgender health issues, 33, 33b
- Transient ischemic attack, 1005, 1005b
- Transjugular intrahepatic portal-systemic shunt, 1302
- Transmission-based precautions, 440, 442t
- in skin infections, 494
- Transmucosal drug administration, 55t-56t
- Transmural myocardial infarction, 830
- Transmyocardial laser revascularization, 850
- Transoral cordectomy, 591t
- Transplant rejection, 314-316
- acute, 315
- chronic, 315
- hyperacute, 315
- of liver, 1312, 1312b, 1312t
- management of, 315-316
- Transplantation bone marrow, 885-889
- corneal, 1058, 1058f
- islet cell, 1444
- kidney, 1567-1571
- candidate selection criteria in, 1568
- complications of, 1570, 1570t
- donors in, 1568, 1568f
- in Goodpasture's syndrome, 394
- immunosuppressive drug therapy in, 1570-1571, 1571b
- operative procedures in, 1569, 1569f
- postoperative care in, 1569-1570, 1570b
- preoperative care in, 1568-1569
- liver, 1311-1313, 1312b-1313b, 1312t
- pancreas, 1443
- stem cell in aplastic anemia, 878
- in breast cancer, 1607
- conditioning regimen in, 886-887, 887f
- engraftment in, 887
- Transplantation (*Continued*) evidence-based practice in, 888b
- in leukemia, 884-889
- in myelodysplastic syndromes, 880
- prevention of complications in, 887-889
- in sickle cell disease, 875
- tendon, 1172
- Transport maximum for glucose reabsorption, 1470
- Transrectal ultrasonography, 1584
- in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
- in prostate cancer, 1638, 1638b
- Transsphenoidal approach to pituitary, 1376, 1376f, 1377b
- Transthoracic echocardiography, 760
- Transtracheal oxygen therapy, 569
- Transurethral microwave therapy, 1635
- Transurethral needle ablation, 1635
- Transurethral resection of bladder, 1513
- Transurethral resection of prostate, 1635, 1635f, 1636b
- Transvaginal repair for pelvic organ prolapse, 1616
- Transvaginal ultrasonography, 1584
- in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
- in ovarian cancer, 1626
- in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
- in uterine cancer, 1622
- in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
- Transverse colostomy, 1250f
- Transverse rectus abdominis myocutaneous flap, 1604
- Trastuzumab, 428
- for breast cancer, 1606
- for esophageal cancer, 1214
- Trauma, 130
- abdominal, 1162, 1258-1260, 1258b
- acute back pain in, 960
- to bladder, 1515
- burn, 511-540
- acute respiratory distress syndrome and, 529-530
- age-related changes increasing complications in, 521b
- airway management in, 525-526
- burn center referral criteria and, 513t
- burn wound infection and, 533-536, 534b-535b
- carbon monoxide poisoning and, 522, 522t
- cardiac changes resulting from, 516
- cardiovascular assessment in, 522-523, 530
- compensatory responses to, 517, 518f
- deep full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
- depth of, 512-515, 513t, 514f
- drug therapy in, 527
- emergency care in, 520, 520b
- etiology of, 517-519, 519f
- fluid resuscitation in, 526b-527b, 526t
- full-thickness wound in, 515, 515f
- gastrointestinal assessment in, 524
- gastrointestinal changes resulting from, 517
- health care resources for, 539-540
- history in, 520-521
- home care management in, 539
- hypovolemic shock and, 526-527
- imaging assessment in, 524
- immune assessment in, 530, 530t-531t
- immunologic changes resulting from, 517
- incidence and prevalence of, 519
- intensity of heat and duration of exposure in, 513f
- laboratory assessment in, 524, 524b
- in lightning strike injury, 147
- maintenance of mobility in, 536-538, 537f
- Trauma (*Continued*) metabolic changes resulting from, 517
- musculoskeletal assessment in, 530
- neuroendocrine assessment in, 530
- pain management in, 527-529, 528b-529b
- partial-thickness wound in, 514-515, 514f-515f
- positioning to prevent contractures in, 537b
- psychosocial support during, 539
- pulmonary changes resulting from, 516-517
- pulmonary fluid overload in, 522, 522b
- rehabilitative phase of, 538-540, 539t
- respiratory assessment in, 521-522, 521b, 521t
- skin assessment in, 523-524, 523f
- skin changes resulting from, 512-515
- superficial-thickness wound in, 513-514
- supporting self-image in, 538
- surgical management in, 527, 528f
- teaching for self-management in, 539
- urinary assessment in, 523
- vascular changes resulting from, 516, 516f
- weight loss control in, 536
- wound care in, 531-533, 532t, 533f
- chest, 682-684
- flail chest in, 683, 683f
- hemothorax in, 684
- pneumothorax in, 683
- pulmonary contusion in, 682
- rib fracture in, 682
- tension pneumothorax in, 683-684
- tracheobronchial trauma in, 684
- to ear, 1094, 1102b
- esophageal, 1218, 1218t
- facial, 583-584
- head, 1020-1024
- determining brain death in, 1027-1028
- drug therapy for, 1028
- etiology of, 1023
- fluid and electrolyte management in, 1028
- health care resources for, 1031
- health promotion and maintenance in, 1024
- health teaching in, 1030-1031, 1030b
- history in, 1024, 1025b
- home care management in, 1030
- imaging assessment in, 1026
- incidence and prevalence of, 1024
- increased intracranial pressure in, 1027, 1027b
- laboratory assessment in, 1026
- minor, 1030b
- nutritional status in, 1028
- physical assessment in, 1024-1026, 1025b
- primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
- psychosocial assessment in, 1026
- secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
- sensory, cognitive, and behavioral changes in, 1028-1029
- surgical management of, 1029-1030, 1029t
- types of force in, 1021, 1022f
- hepatic, 1310, 1310b
- to kidney, 1533-1536, 1534b, 1534f
- in lightning injury, 146-148, 147b
- during minimally invasive and robotic surgery, 267
- musculoskeletal, 1143-1174
- amputations in, 1163-1168; *See also* Amputation
- Trauma (*Continued*) anterior cruciate ligament injuries in, 1170
- carpal tunnel syndrome in, 1170-1172, 1171b
- complex regional pain syndrome in, 1168-1169
- fractures in, 1144-1159; *See also* Fracture
- meniscus injuries in, 1169-1170, 1170f
- patellofemoral pain syndrome in, 1169
- rotator cuff injuries in, 1173
- sports-related, 1152b, 1169-1173
- strains and sprains in, 1173
- tendinopathy and joint dislocation in, 1172-1173
- neck, 588
- ocular, 1071-1072
- contusion in, 1071
- foreign bodies in, 1071, 1072b
- hyphema in, 1071
- lacerations in, 1071-1072
- penetrating injuries in, 1072
- outcome of urinary tract infection and, 1491t
- peripheral nerve, 997-999, 997f-998f, 999b
- skin, 472-473
- full-thickness wounds in, 473
- impaired wound healing in, 475t
- older adult and, 473b
- partial-thickness wounds in, 473, 475f
- phases of wound healing in, 472-473, 473t, 474f
- spinal cord, 967-976
- adjustment to major life changes in, 973-974
- airway management in, 971, 971b
- drug therapy for, 972
- etiology of, 968
- health care resources for, 975-976, 976f
- health teaching in, 974-975, 975b
- history in, 968-969
- home care management in, 974
- imaging assessment in, 970
- impaired mobility and self-care deficit in, 973
- incidence and prevalence of, 968
- injury prevention in, 971-973, 971b, 972f
- laboratory assessment in, 970
- mechanism of injury in, 967-968, 967f-968f
- neurogenic shock in, 971, 971b
- physical assessment in, 969-970, 969b
- psychosocial assessment in, 970
- surgical management in, 972-973, 972b
- urinary and bowel dysfunction in, 973, 973b-974b
- tracheobronchial, 684
- vascular, 805
- Trauma center, 130-131, 131t
- Trauma nursing, 130-134
- mechanism of injury and, 131-132
- patient disposition in, 134
- primary survey in, 132-134, 132b-133b, 132f
- secondary survey in, 134
- trauma centers and, 130-131, 131t
- trauma systems and, 131
- Trauma system, 131
- Traumatic amputation, 1163
- Traumatic brain injury, 1020-1024
- determining brain death in, 1027-1028
- drug therapy for, 1028
- etiology of, 1023
- fluid and electrolyte management in, 1028

- Traumatic brain injury (*Continued*)
 health care resources for, 1031
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1024
 health teaching in, 1030-1031, 1030b
 history in, 1024, 1025b
 home care management in, 1030
 imaging assessment in, 1026
 incidence and prevalence of, 1024
 increased intracranial pressure in, 1027, 1027b
 laboratory assessment in, 1026
 minor, 1030b
 nutritional status in, 1028
 physical assessment in, 1024-1026, 1025b
 primary, 1020-1021, 1021b, 1021f
 psychosocial assessment in, 1026
 secondary, 1021-1023, 1023f
 sensory, cognitive, and behavioral changes in, 1028-1029
 surgical management of, 1029-1030, 1029t
 types of force in, 1021, 1022f
- Traumatic cataracts, 1060t
- Traumatic relocation syndrome, 950
- Travatan; *See* Travoprost
- Travel tips for diabetes mellitus, 1460b
- Traveler's diarrhea, 1271
- Travoprost, 1066b-1067b
- Trazodone, 354
- Treadmill stress test
 after myocardial infarction, 836
 in coronary artery disease, 836
 in peripheral arterial disease, 787
 in valvular heart disease, 760
- Treanda; *See* Bendamustine
- Trelstar; *See* Triptorelin
- Tremelimumab, 505
- Tremor, 979
- Trendelenburg position during surgery, 280f
- Trendelenburg test, 805
- Trental; *See* Pentoxifylline
- Tréponema pallidum*, 1654
- Treprostinil, 627
- TRH; *See* Thyroid-releasing hormone
- Triage, 127-128, 128f, 128t
 mass casualty, 157-158, 157b, 158t
- Triage officer, 160, 160t
- Triamterene
 for hypertension, 780
 for hypokalemia, 186
- Triceps reflex, 917f
- Triceps skinfold measurement, 1339
- Trichomonas*, 1666
 in cystitis, 1491
 in urethritis, 1496-1497
- Tricuspid area for auscultation, 700f
- Tricuspid valve, 688, 688f
- Tricyclic antidepressants
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 for Alzheimer's disease, 952
 for fibromyalgia, 354
 interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
 older adult and, 22b, 990b
 for pain management, 58
 for urge incontinence, 1503-1504
 for urinary incontinence, 1502b
- Tridil; *See* Nitroglycerin
- Trifluridine, 1054b
- Trigeminal autonomic cephalgia, 931
- Trigeminal nerve, 912t, 1000f
- Trigeminal neuralgia, 1000-1001, 1000f, 1001b
- Trigeminy, 720
- Trigger avoidance and management in migraine, 930, 931b
- Trigger points in fibromyalgia, 353
- Triglycerides, 702, 702b
 atherosclerosis and, 774
 coronary artery disease and, 832
- Trigone, 1471, 1472f
- Trigonitis syndrome, 1497
- Trihexyphenidyl, 944
- Triiodothyronine, 1363, 1363t, 1402
- Triiodothyronine resin uptake, 1396b
- Trileptal; *See* Oxcarbazepine
- Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
 for cyst infection in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 for cystitis, 1494
 for diverticular disease, 1285
 for *Pneumocystis jiroveci* pneumonia, 375
 for shigellosis, 1272
 for urinary tract infection, 1495b-1496b
- Trimox; *See* Amoxicillin
- Tripod position, 614, 614f
- Triptans
 for cluster headache, 932
 for migraine, 930, 930b
- Triptorelin, 1640
- Trisenox; *See* Arsenic trioxide
- Trizivir; *See* Lamivudine/zidovudine/abacavir
- Trochlear nerve, 912t
- Tropic hormones, 1361, 1361t
- Tropical sprue, 1262
- Troponins, 701, 702b
- Tropium, 1502b
- Trousseau's sign, 189, 189f
- True vocal cord, 545f
- Trusopt; *See* Dorzolamide
- Truss for abdominal herniation, 1244
- Truvada; *See* Emtricitabine/tenofovir
- T-score in bone mineral density testing, 1120
- TSH; *See* Thyroid-stimulating hormone
- TSSE; *See* Thorough skin self-examination
- TTE; *See* Transthoracic echocardiography
- TTP; *See* Thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura
- T-tube drain, 292f, 1319, 1319b
- Tube feeding, 1343-1347
 abdominal distention, nausea, and vomiting in, 1346
 in acute pancreatitis, 1325
 after head and neck surgery, 593
 complications of, 1345-1347, 1345b
 in esophageal cancer, 1213
 fluid and electrolyte imbalances in, 1346-1347
 methods of administration of, 1344-1345, 1344f
 tube feeding care and maintenance in, 1345b-1346b
 tube misplacement and dislodgement in, 1346, 1346b
- Tuberculin test, 655, 655f
- Tuberculosis, 653-658, 654f
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366-367
 airborne precautions in, 657, 657f
 diagnosis of, 655, 655f
 drug therapy for, 655, 656b
 health care resources for, 658
 history in, 654
 home care management in, 657
 physical assessment in, 654-655
 teaching for self-management in, 657-658
- Tube(s)
 focused assessment after discharge from PACU, 288b
 preoperative preparation for, 254
- Tubular filtrate, 1469
- Tubular reabsorption, 1469-1470
- Tubular secretion, 1470
- Tubulointerstitial immunologic renal disease, 1530
- Tumescence, 1642
- Tumor; *See also* Cancer
 bone
 benign, 1134-1138
 osteomalacia and, 1127
- Tumor (*Continued*)
 brain, 1031-1036, 1032b
 classification of, 1031-1032, 1031t
 community-based care in, 1036
 complications of, 1031
 drug therapy for, 1032-1033
 incidence and prevalence of, 1032
 postoperative complications in, 1035-1036, 1035t
 stereotactic radiosurgery for, 1033, 1033f
 surgical management of, 1033-1036, 1034b
 catecholamine-producing, 1390
 of ear, 1094-1095
 esophageal, 1211-1212
 diagnosis of, 1213
 drug therapy for, 1214
 genetic considerations in, 1212b
 health care resources for, 1217
 history in, 1212
 home care management in, 1217
 nasogastric tube after surgery and, 1216, 1216b
 nutrition considerations in, 1213-1217, 1213b
 physical assessment in, 1212, 1213b
 postoperative wound management in, 1216, 1216b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1212-1213
 surgical management of, 1214-1217, 1215f, 1216b
 teaching for self-management in, 1217
- gastrinoma, 1233
- glomus jugulare, 1094
- hepatic, 1310-1311
- of nasal cavity and sinuses, 583
- oral, 1195-1200
- pancreatic, 1329-1333
 community-based care in, 1333
 genetic considerations in, 1329b
 nonsurgical management of, 1330-1331
 physical assessment in, 1330, 1330b
 postoperative care in, 1331-1333
 surgical management of, 1331-1333, 1331f, 1332t
- pituitary adenoma, 1374
- prolactin-secreting, 1374
- in renal cell carcinoma, 1532-1533, 1532t
- salivary gland, 1201
- spinal cord, 409, 976-978, 977b
- testicular, 1643
 chemotherapy for, 1645
 classification of, 1643t
 community-based care in, 1646
 external beam radiation therapy for, 1646
 genetic considerations in, 1643b
 laboratory assessment in, 1644
 physical assessment in, 1643-1644, 1644b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1644
 sperm banking and, 1644b
 surgical management of, 1645, 1645b
 testicular self-examination and, 1643b
- Tumor, node, metastasis system, 403, 403t
- Tumor lysis syndrome, 432-433, 432f
- Tumor necrosis factor, 314t
 in control of osteoclasts, 1121b
 for renal cell carcinoma, 1533
- Tumor necrosis factor-alpha
 in Crohn's disease, 1281
 in irritable bowel syndrome, 1241
- Tumor-induced osteomalacia, 1127
- TUMT; *See* Transurethral microwave therapy
- TUNA; *See* Transurethral needle ablation
- Tuning fork test, 1084, 1099
- Tunnel infection in peritoneal dialysis, 1567
- Tunneled central venous catheter, 218, 218f
- Turbidity of urine, 1477, 1478b, 1509
- Turbinates, 544f, 545
- Turgor, 463, 464t
 dehydration and, 175, 176b, 176f
- TURP; *See* Transurethral resection of prostate
- Twelve-lead electrocardiogram, 713, 714t, 835
- Twenty-four-hour ambulatory esophageal pH monitoring, 1205
- Twenty-four-hour urine collection, 1479t, 1528
- Two-point discrimination, 915
- Tykerb; *See* Lapatinib
- Tylenol; *See* Acetaminophen
- Tylox; *See* Oxycodone with acetaminophen
- Tympanic membrane, 1077-1079, 1078f
 external otitis and, 1089
 otitis media and, 1092, 1092f
 perforation of, 1092, 1092f-1093f
 trauma to, 1094
- Tympanometry, 1085-1086
- Tympanoplasty, 1101-1102, 1101f-1102f
- Tympany, percussion note, 553t, 1184
- Type A chronic gastritis, 1221
- Type B gastritis, 1221
- Type I: rapid hypersensitivity reactions, 384-391, 384t
 allergic rhinitis in, 384-385, 385f
 anaphylaxis in, 387-391
 cultural considerations in, 388b
 emergency care in, 389, 390b
 key features of, 389b, 389f
 pathophysiology of, 387, 388t
 prevention of, 387-388, 388b, 388f
 latex allergy in, 391
- Type I diabetes mellitus, 1411t, 1416-1417
 genetic considerations in, 1416, 1416b
 history in, 1418
 hypoglycemic unawareness in, 1451
 kidney disease in, 1531t
 nutrition therapy in, 1440
 presbyopia in, 1459
 screening for, 1420
 type 1 *versus*, 1417t
- Type II: cytotoxic hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 391
- Type II diabetes mellitus, 1411t, 1417
 diagnosis of, 1419t
 drug therapy for, 1421-1438, 1423b-1427b
 history in, 1418
 lifestyle changes in, 1440-1441
 metabolic syndrome and, 1417
 screening for, 1420
 testing for, 1418t
 type 1 *versus*, 1417t
- Type II pneumocyte, 546
- Type III: immune complex-mediated hypersensitivity, 384t, 391-392, 391f
- Type IV: delayed hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 392
- Type V: stimulated hypersensitivity reactions, 384t, 392
- Tyrosine, 1363-1364
- Tyrosine kinase inhibitors, 428-430, 429t, 1331
- Tysabri; *See* Natalizumab
- Tzanck smear, 494

U

- U wave, 716f, 717
- UFH; *See* Unfractionated heparin
- Ulcer, 460f-461f
 aphthous, 1193
 corneal, 1057
 Curling's, 517

- Ulcer (*Continued*)
 in gastroesophageal reflux disease, 1204
 leg, 788b, 872
 lower extremity, 788b
 plantar, 1446
 pressure, 474-490
 concept map for, 483f-484f
 health care resources for, 490
 history in, 479
 home care management in, 488-489, 490b
 identification of high-risk patient, 477, 478f
 incidence and prevalence of, 476
 infection prevention in, 488, 489b
 laboratory assessment in, 482
 mechanical forces in, 475-476, 476f
 nutrition and, 101
 older adult and, 476b
 pathophysiology of, 474-479
 physical assessment in, 479
 from positioning during surgery, 296-297
 pressure-relieving and pressure-reducing techniques for, 477-479
 prevention of, 476-479, 476b
 psychosocial assessment in, 482
 rehabilitation setting and, 94
 surgical management of, 487-488, 487f
 teaching for self-management of, 489-490
 wound assessment in, 479-482, 480b, 481f, 482t
 wound care in, 483-488, 483b, 483t, 486t
 stasis, 803
- Ulcerative colitis, 1272-1273
 complications of, 1273t
 Crohn's disease *versus*, 1272t
 diagnosis of, 1274
 diarrhea and bowel incontinence in, 1274-1278, 1275b, 1275t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1273
 health care resources for, 1279-1280
 history in, 1273
 home care management in, 1278, 1280b
 incidence and prevalence of, 1273
 laboratory assessment in, 1274
 lower gastrointestinal bleeding in, 1278, 1278b
 pain in, 1278, 1278b
 pathophysiology of, 1272-1273, 1273t
 physical assessment in, 1274
 psychosocial assessment in, 1274
 surgical management of, 1275-1278, 1276f-1277f, 1277b
 teaching for self-management in, 1278-1279, 1279b
- Ulnar fracture, 1159
 Ulnar nerve, 997f
 Ulnar nerve block, 276f
 Ulnar pulse, 699f
 Ulnar vein, 215f
 Uloric; *See* Febuxostat
 Uthane; *See* Sevoflurane
 Ultiva; *See* Remifentanyl
 Ultram; *See* Tramadol
- Ultrasonography
 in aneurysm, 793
 of breast, 1598
 in cholecystitis, 1318
 in cirrhosis, 1299
 in diverticular disease, 1285
 esophageal, 1213
 in gallbladder cancer, 1320
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1190
 for infection diagnosis, 445
 in kidney disease, 1483t
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in renal assessment, 1485
- Ultrasonography (*Continued*)
 in reproductive assessment, 1583-1584
 in testicular cancer, 1644
 of thyroid gland, 1396
 transrectal, 1584
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 in prostate cancer, 1638, 1638b
 transvaginal, 1584
 in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 in ovarian cancer, 1626
 in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 in uterine cancer, 1622
 in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
 in vision assessment, 1048
- Ultrasound-guided peripheral intravenous insertion, 214
- Ultraviolet light therapy for psoriasis, 500
- Ultraviolet radiation
 carcinogenesis and, 404
 vitamin D in epidermis and, 453
- Umbilical herniation, 1243, 1243f
- Umbo of eardrum, 1078-1079, 1078f
- Unbalanced low-energy diet, 1352
- Uncal herniation, 1024f
- Unclassifiable delirium, 23
- Unclassified seizure, 933
- Unconjugated bilirubin, 1186b
- Uncus, 1023
- Undermining in pressure ulcer, 480
- Undernutrition; *See* Malnutrition
- Unfractionated heparin
 after total hip arthroplasty, 327
 for deep vein thrombosis, 800-801
- Unilateral body neglect syndrome, 1011, 1019
- Unintentional injury, 130
- Unipen; *See* Nafcillin sodium
- Unipolar limb leads, 713
- United Ostomy Associations of America, Inc., 1253
- United States Department of Agriculture
 MyPlate, 1336, 1336f
- Universal lesion, 462t
- Unna boot, 804
- Unrelieved pain, 40t
- Unroofing of skin lesion, 467
- Unstable angina pectoris, 829
- Unstable plaque rupture, 773
- Upper airway obstruction, 586-588, 588f
- Upper esophageal sphincter, 1179, 1204
- Upper extremity amputation, 1163
- Upper extremity cast, 1152t
- Upper extremity fracture, 1159-1163
- Upper extremity traction, 1153t
- Upper gastrointestinal bleeding, 1227b
 common causes of, 1226f
 in peptic ulcer disease, 1230-1232, 1231b
- Upper gastrointestinal radiographic series, 1186-1187
- Upper motor neuron diseases
 after spinal cord injury, 970
 bowel incontinence and, 102
 urinary incontinence and, 101
- Upper respiratory problems
 epistaxis in, 582-583, 582b, 582f
 facial trauma in, 583-584
 head and neck cancer in, 588-589
 airway obstruction in, 590-594
 anxiety in, 595-596
 aspiration prevention in, 594-595, 595b
 etiology of, 589
 health care resources for, 597-598
 history in, 589
 home care management in, 596, 596b
 imaging assessment in, 589-590
 incidence and prevalence of, 589
 laboratory assessment in, 589
- Upper respiratory problems (*Continued*)
 pathophysiology of, 588-589
 physical assessment in, 589, 589t
 psychosocial assessment in, 589
 psychosocial support in, 597
 self-concept in, 596
 smoking cessation and, 598b
 speech and language rehabilitation in, 593-594, 594f
 surgery for, 591-594, 591t, 592f, 593b
 teaching for self-management in, 596-597, 597b, 597f
 laryngeal trauma in, 586
 laryngitis in, 644-645
 nasal fracture in, 581, 581f
 nasal polyps in, 583
 neck trauma in, 588
 nose and sinus cancer in, 583
 obstructive sleep apnea in, 584-585
 peritonsillar abscess in, 644
 pharyngitis in, 642-644, 643b, 643t
 rhinitis in, 641
 sinusitis in, 641-642, 642b
 tonsillitis in, 644, 644b
 upper airway obstruction in, 586-588, 588f
 vocal cord nodules and polyps in, 585-586, 586f, 587b
 vocal cord paralysis in, 585
- Upper respiratory tract, 544-545, 544f
 inhalation burn injury and, 521
 larynx in, 545, 545f
 nose and sinuses in, 544-545, 545f
 pharynx in, 545
- Upper trunk extension exercise, 962b
- Urea, 1547-1548
- Urea nitrogen
 in burn assessment, 524b
 twenty-four-hour urine collection and, 1481b
- Ureaplasma urethritis, 1496-1497
- Urease, 1225
- Urecholine; *See* Bethanechol
- Uremia, 1474t, 1475, 1547b
 in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
 in chronic kidney disease, 1547
 dietary restrictions in, 1555t
 of end-stage kidney disease, 1538
- Uremic cardiomyopathy, 1549
- Uremic frost, 1552
- Uremic lung, 1551
- Uremic syndrome, 1547
- Ureter, 1466f, 1471, 1472f
 assessment of, 1475-1476
 hydroureter and, 1522-1523, 1522f
 trauma to, 1535
- Ureterolithiasis, 1507, 1509f
- Ureteropelvic junction, 1471
- Ureteroplasty, 1525
- Ureterostomy, 1514f
- Ureterovesical junction, 1471, 1472f
- Urethra, 1466f, 1472, 1472f
 assessment of, 1476
 benign prostatic hyperplasia and, 1630f
- Urethral plug, 1502
- Urethral pressure profilometry, 1486, 1500
- Urethral stricture, 1497, 1522-1523, 1522f
- Urethral syndrome, 1497
- Urethritis, 1496-1497
 bacterial prostatitis with, 1649
 in Reiter's syndrome, 352
- Urethrogram, 1486
- Urethroplasty, 1497
- Urge incontinence, 1497-1499, 1498t, 1503-1505, 1504b
 after prostatectomy, 1640
- Urgency, 1474t
 changes associated with aging, 1472
- Urgent surgery, 243t
- Urgent triage, 127-128, 128t
- Uric acid, 1130
- Uric acid stones, 1511t
- Urinalysis, 1477-1480, 1478b
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1632
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 in cystitis, 1493
 in heart failure, 750
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1523
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 postoperative, 293
 in pyelonephritis, 1525
 in renal cell carcinoma, 1532-1533
 in renal trauma, 1535
 in urinary incontinence, 1500
 in urolithiasis, 1509
- Urinary antiseptics, 1495b-1496b
- Urinary assessment
 in burn, 523
 in hematologic assessment, 863
 postoperative, 289-290
 in rehabilitation setting, 92t, 93
- Urinary bladder, 1466f, 1471-1472
 adrenal medullary hormone stimulation of, 1363t
 assessment of, 1475-1476
 benign prostatic hyperplasia and, 1630, 1630f
 cystitis and, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
 dysfunction of
 in multiple sclerosis, 980, 982
 in spinal cord injury, 973, 973b-974b
 in spinal cord tumor, 977
 in stroke, 1018
 trauma to, 1515
- Urinary bladder cancer, 1512
 diagnostic assessment of, 1513
 health care resources for, 1515
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1512
 nonsurgical management of, 1513
 older adult and, 405b
 pathophysiology of, 1512
 physical assessment in, 1512
 psychosocial assessment in, 1512-1513
 sexual expression and quality of life in, 1515b
 surgical management of, 1493b, 1513-1514
 teaching for self-management in, 1515
- Urinary catheterization
 in cystoscopy or cystourethroscopy, 1485-1486
 home care management of, 1641b
 infection and, 441
 intermittent, 102
 in laparoscopy of reproductive system, 1584-1585
 in transurethral resection of prostate, 1635
- Urinary diversion procedures
 for bladder cancer, 1514f
 sexual expression after, 1515b
- Urinary hydroxyproline, 1130

- Urinary incontinence, 1475, 1497-1499
 after prostatectomy, 1640
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1630
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1499
 functional, 1505-1506
 health care resources for, 1506-1507
 history in, 1499-1500, 1500b
 home care management in, 1506
 hospitalized older adult and, 26
 imaging assessment in, 1500
 incidence and prevalence in, 1499
 laboratory assessment in, 1500
 in older adult, 17b, 26, 1499b
 in Parkinson disease, 943
 pathophysiology of, 1497-1499
 physical assessment in, 1500
 pressure ulcer and, 477
 psychosocial support in, 1506
 reflex, 1505
 stress, 1501-1502, 1501b-1502b, 1503f, 1503t
 teaching for self-management in, 1506, 1507b
 total or mixed, 1506
 types of, 1498t
 urge, 1503-1505, 1504b
 urodynamic studies in, 1500
- Urinary obstruction
 cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1522-1523, 1522f
 reduced urine formation in, 1538
 in urolithiasis, 1511-1512
- Urinary problems, 1489-1517
 bladder trauma in, 1515
 cystitis in, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
 in multiple sclerosis, 980
 prevention of, 1550b
 in spinal cord injury, 973, 973b-974b
 in spinal cord tumor, 977
 urethral strictures in, 1497
 urethritis in, 1496-1497
 urinary incontinence in, 1497-1499
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1499
 functional, 1505-1506
 health care resources for, 1506-1507
 history in, 1499-1500, 1500b
 home care management in, 1506
 imaging assessment in, 1500
 incidence and prevalence in, 1499
 laboratory assessment in, 1500
 older adult and, 1499b
 pathophysiology of, 1497-1499
 physical assessment in, 1500
 psychosocial support in, 1506
 reflex, 1505
 stress, 1501-1502, 1501b-1502b, 1503f, 1503t
 teaching for self-management in, 1506, 1507b
 total or mixed, 1506
 types of, 1498t
 urge, 1503-1505, 1504b
 urodynamic studies in, 1500
 urolithiasis in, 1507-1512
 assessment in, 1508-1509, 1509f
 cultural considerations in, 1508b
- Urinary problems (*Continued*)
 dietary treatment for, 1511, 1511t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1508, 1508t
 incidence and prevalence of, 1508
 pain in, 1509-1510
 pathophysiology of, 1507-1512
 prevention of infection in, 1510-1511
 surgical management of, 1510
 teaching for self-management in, 1512, 1512b
 urinary obstruction in, 1511-1512
 urothelial cancer in, 1512
 diagnostic assessment of, 1513
 health care resources for, 1515
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1512
 nonsurgical management of, 1513
 pathophysiology of, 1512
 physical assessment in, 1512
 psychosocial assessment in, 1512-1513
 sexual expression and quality of life in, 1515b
 surgical management of, 1493b, 1513-1514
 teaching for self-management in, 1515
- Urinary retention
 after lumbar spinal surgery, 964b
 epidural analgesia-related, 57
 in hydronephrosis, hydroureter, and urethral stricture, 1523
- Urinary stent, 1510
- Urinary stones, 1507-1512
 assessment in, 1508-1509, 1509f
 cause of urinary tract infection, 1490t
 cultural considerations in, 1508b
 dietary treatment for, 1511, 1511t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1508, 1508t
 incidence and prevalence of, 1508
 pain in, 1509-1510
 pathophysiology of, 1507-1512
 prevention of infection in, 1510-1511
 surgical management of, 1510
 teaching for self-management in, 1512, 1512b
 urinary obstruction in, 1511-1512
- Urinary tract infection, 436, 1490-1497
 clinical manifestations of, 1493b
 cystitis in, 1490-1492
 catheter-related, 1492b
 community-based care in, 1494-1496
 drug therapy for, 1494, 1495b-1496b
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1491-1492
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1492
 imaging assessment in, 1493-1494
 incidence and prevalence of, 1492
 laboratory assessment in, 1493
 nutrition therapy for, 1494
 pathophysiology of, 1490-1492
 physical assessment in, 1492-1493
 surgical management of, 1494
 in diabetes mellitus, 1450-1451
 factors contributing to, 1490t
 factors influencing outcome of, 1491t
 older adult and, 1492b
 prevention of, 1493b
 pyelonephritis in, 1523-1526
 community-based care in, 1526
 end-stage kidney disease in, 1525-1526
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1524
 history in, 1524-1525
 imaging assessment in, 1525
 incidence and prevalence of, 1524
 indwelling urinary catheter and, 441
 laboratory assessment in, 1525
- Urinary tract infection (*Continued*)
 pain in, 1525
 pathophysiology of, 1523-1524, 1524f
 physical assessment in, 1524-1525, 1524b
 psychosocial assessment in, 1525
 in rehabilitation setting, 102, 102b
- Urine
 changes in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 crystals in, 1478b, 1480
 specific gravity of, 1478, 1478b
- Urine albumin, 1420
- Urine amylase, 1185
- Urine color, 1477
- Urine crystals, 1478b, 1480, 1549
- Urine culture
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1632
 in cystitis, 1493
- Urine cyclic adenosine monophosphate, 1406, 1407b
- Urine electrolytes, 1481, 1481b
- Urine glucose testing, 1420
- Urine osmolality, 1481-1482
- Urine output
 in burn, 523, 527
 in chronic glomerulonephritis, 1529
 in chronic kidney disease, 1552
 in dehydration, 176
 in hypovolemic shock, 816
 normal, 1475
 in polycystic kidney disease, 1521
 postoperative, 290
 in kidney transplantation, 1569
 in transurethral resection of prostate, 1636b
 in Whipple procedure, 1332
 RIFLE classification of acute kidney injury and, 1539t
 in septic shock, 824
- Urine pH, 1509
- Urine specimen collection, 1479t
- Urine stream interruption test, 1500
- Urine stream testing, 1486
- Urine tests, 1477-1482, 1478b, 1479t, 1481b
 in Cushing's disease, 1386
 in diabetes mellitus, 1420
 in endocrine assessment, 1369-1370, 1369b
 in gastrointestinal assessment, 1185
 postoperative, 293
 in reproductive assessment, 1582b
- Urine urobilinogen, 1185
- Urispas; *See* Flavoxate
- Uristat; *See* Phenazopyridine
- Uritol; *See* Furosemide
- Urodynamic studies
 in benign prostatic hyperplasia, 1633
 in renal assessment, 1486
 in urinary incontinence, 1500
- Uroflowmetry, 1500
- Urogenital diaphragm, 1578f
- Urography, 1500
- Urolithiasis, 1507-1512
 assessment in, 1508-1509, 1509f
 cultural considerations in, 1508b
 dietary treatment for, 1511, 1511t
 etiology and genetic risk in, 1508, 1508t
 incidence and prevalence of, 1508
 pain in, 1509-1510
 pathophysiology of, 1507-1512
 prevention of infection in, 1510-1511
 surgical management of, 1510
 teaching for self-management in, 1512, 1512b
 urinary obstruction in, 1511-1512
- Urosepsis, 1492
- Urothelial cancer, 1512
 diagnostic assessment of, 1513
 health care resources for, 1515
 health promotion and maintenance in, 1512
- Urothelial cancer (*Continued*)
 nonsurgical management of, 1513
 pathophysiology of, 1512
 physical assessment in, 1512
 psychosocial assessment in, 1512-1513
 sexual expression and quality of life in, 1515b
 surgical management of, 1493b, 1513-1514
 teaching for self-management in, 1515
- Urothelium, 1471, 1472f, 1512
- Urotoxin; *See* Nitrofurantoin
- Uroxatral; *See* Alfuzosin
- Ursodeoxycholic acid, 1318
- Urticaria, 472
 in anaphylaxis, 388-389
 in bee sting, 145
 in serum sickness, 141
- Ustekinumab, 353, 500, 501b
- Usual body weight, 1339
- Uterine artery embolization, 1618, 1618b
- Uterine cancer, 1621, 1622t
- Uterine fibroid, 1613
- Uterine fibroid embolization, 1618, 1618b
- Uterine leiomyoma, 1617-1620, 1617f
- Uterus, 1466f, 1576f, 1577
 dysfunctional bleeding of, 1613, 1613t
 endometrial biopsy and, 1585-1586
 endometriosis and, 1611-1612, 1612f
 leiomyomas of, 1617-1620, 1617f
 prolapse of, 1615-1617, 1616f
- UTI; *See* Urinary tract infection
- Uvea, 1040
- Uveitis, 1068
- V**
- Vaccination
 bacille Calmette-Gu[ac]erin, 654
 for cancer, 407
 for hepatitis, 1306-1307
 for human papilloma virus, 407, 1624, 1659
 for influenza, 645
 for meningitis, 938b
 for pneumonia, 647, 648b
- Vacuum constriction device, 1642
- Vacuum-assisted wound closure
 for Crohn's disease fistula, 1283
 for open fracture, 1157
 for pressure ulcer, 485, 485b
- VAD; *See* Vascular access device
- Vagal maneuvers for dysrhythmias, 733, 733b
- Vagal nerve stimulation, 575, 936-937
- Vagina, 1576, 1576f
- Vaginal bleeding
 in cervical cancer, 1625
 in uterine cancer, 1621-1622
 in uterine leiomyomas, 1618
- Vaginal cone therapy, 1501-1502, 1503f
- Vaginal culture, 1581
- Vaginal discharge
 in chlamydial infection, 1662
 in gonorrhea, 1660
 in vulvovaginitis, 1613
- Vaginal infection
 prevention of, 1614b
 self-management in, 1614b
 sexually transmitted, 1666
 vulvovaginitis in, 1613-1614
- Vaginal vestibule, 1576
- Vagotomy, 1232, 1233f
- Vagotomy syndrome, 1216-1217
- Vagus nerve, 689, 912t
- Valacyclovir
 for Bell's palsy, 1001
 for genital herpes, 1657
 for viral skin infection, 494
- Valerian
 potential effects on surgery, 244t
 for restless legs syndrome, 999
- Validation therapy, 951

- Valium; *See* Diazepam
- Valosin-containing gene of complement binding protein, 1129b
- Valproate, 934b
- Valproic acid, 934b
- Valrubicin, 415t-416t
- Valsalva maneuver
- diabetic retinopathy and, 1441
 - mechanical ventilation and, 680
 - sinus bradycardia and, 720
- Valsartan, 781b-782b, 783
- Valtrex; *See* Valacyclovir
- Valvular heart disease, 758-763, 759b
- aortic regurgitation in, 760
 - aortic stenosis in, 759-760
 - drug therapy for, 760-761, 760b
 - health care resources for, 763
 - health teaching in, 762-763, 763b
 - home care management in, 762
 - mitral regurgitation in, 759
 - mitral stenosis in, 758-759, 762b
 - mitral valve prolapse in, 759
 - noninvasive heart valve reparative procedures for, 761, 761b
 - surgical management of, 761-762, 762f
- Vancocin; *See* Vancomycin
- Vancomycin
- for anthrax, 659b
 - for brain abscess, 1037
 - for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 495b
 - venous irritation and, 211b
- Vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus*, 443
- Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*, 443
- Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 443
- Vanillylmandelic acid, 1391
- VAP; *See* Ventilator-associated pneumonia
- Vaprisol; *See* Conivaptan
- Vardenafil, 1642
- Variant angina, 829, 836
- Varicella-zoster virus, 367, 492, 492f
- Varicocele, 1647, 1647f
- Varicolectomy, 1647
- Varicose veins, 805
- Variola virus, 448t
- Vas deferens, 1577, 1578f
- Vasa recta, 1467
- Vascular access device, 212-213
- preoperative preparation for, 254
 - removal of, 226
- Vascular access in hemodialysis, 1560-1562, 1560t
- arteriovenous fistula in, 1560, 1561f
 - arteriovenous graft in, 1561
 - complications of, 1561-1562, 1562t
 - precautions in, 1561, 1562b
 - temporary, 1562, 1562f
- Vascular autoregulation, 776
- Vascular degeneration in Alzheimer's disease, 947
- Vascular disease, 772-807
- acute peripheral arterial occlusion in, 791-792, 792b
 - aneurysms in, 792-796
 - community-based care in, 795-796
 - critical rescue in, 795b
 - imaging assessment in, 793
 - nonsurgical management of, 794
 - pathophysiology of, 792-796, 793f
 - peripheral artery, 796
 - physical assessment in, 793
 - postoperative graft occlusion or rupture in, 794b
 - surgical management of, 794-795
 - aortic dissection in, 796-797
 - arteriosclerosis and atherosclerosis in, 772-775
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 775
 - drug therapy for, 775, 775b, 775t
 - laboratory assessment in, 774
- Vascular disease (*Continued*)
- nutrition therapy for, 774-775
 - pathophysiology of, 772-773, 773f, 773t
 - physical assessment in, 773-774, 774b
 - Buerger's disease in, 797
 - hypertension in, 775-785
 - adherence to plan of care in, 784
 - classifications of, 776-777, 776t
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 780
 - concept map for, 689f
 - diagnostic assessment in, 778
 - drug therapy for, 780-784, 780b-783b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 777, 777t
 - health care resources for, 785
 - health promotion and maintenance in, 777
 - health teaching in, 784
 - Healthy People 2020* objectives for, 776t
 - history in, 777-778
 - home care management in, 784, 785b
 - hypertensive urgency or crisis in, 784b
 - incidence and prevalence of, 777, 777b
 - lifestyle changes for, 778-780
 - mechanisms influencing blood pressure and, 775-776
 - physical assessment in, 778, 778f
 - psychosocial assessment in, 778
 - peripheral arterial disease in, 785-791
 - community-based care in, 791, 791b
 - cultural considerations in, 786b
 - imaging assessment in, 787
 - lower extremity ulcers in, 788b
 - nonsurgical management of, 787-789
 - pathophysiology of, 785-791, 786b, 786f
 - physical assessment in, 786-787, 787f
 - postoperative graft occlusion in, 791b
 - surgical management of, 789-791, 789b, 790f
 - peripheral venous disease in, 798-805
 - anticoagulant therapy for, 801b, 803b
 - phlebitis in, 805
 - thrombolytic therapy for, 802, 802b
 - varicose veins in, 805
 - vascular trauma and, 805
 - venous insufficiency in, 803-805, 804b
 - venous thromboembolism in, 799-803, 799f, 800b
 - Raynaud's phenomenon and disease in, 798, 798f
 - subclavian steal in, 797
 - thoracic outlet syndrome in, 797-798
 - Vascular endothelial growth factor inhibitors, 429, 429t, 1068-1069
 - Vascular leak syndrome, 307
 - Vascular system, 690-692
 - arterial, 691
 - changes resulting from burn, 516, 516f
 - venous, 691-692
 - Vascular trauma, 805
 - Vasculitis
 - intrarenal acute kidney injury and, 1539
 - in lupus, 343
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 333, 335
 - systemic necrotizing, 351
- Vasoactive drugs
- after hemodialysis, 1563t
 - for bleeding esophageal varices, 1302
- Vasoconstriction in shock, 809-811
- Vasoconstrictors, 819b
- Vasodilation promotion in peripheral arterial disease, 788-789
- Vasodilators, 667-668, 843b
- Vasogenic edema
- in brain tumor, 1031
 - in increased intracranial pressure, 1022
- Vaso-occlusive event, 870-871
- Vasopressin, 1361t, 1371
- See also* Antidiuretic hormone
 - for cardiac arrest, 734b
 - deficiency of, 1373b
 - for diabetes insipidus, 1379b
 - influence on kidney function, 1471t
 - sodium and water reabsorption and, 1470
- Vasopressors, 390b
- Vasospasm
- in aneurysm rupture, 1006-1007
 - in Raynaud's phenomenon, 798, 798f
 - in stroke, 1015
- Vasotec; *See* Enalapril
- Vasovagal attack, 740b
- Vatrolal; *See* Ephedrine sulfate
- Vaughn-Williams classification, 732
- Vectibix; *See* Panitumumab
- Vecuronium, 274t
- Vegan, 1336
- Vein, 691
- Velban; *See* Vinblastine
- Velbe; *See* Vinblastine
- Velcade; *See* Bortezomib
- Velcro shoe closure, 100t
- Velcro straps, 100t
- Velcro tracheostomy tube holder, 576f
- Velsar; *See* Vinblastine
- Velstar; *See* Valrubicin
- Venereal Disease Research Laboratory serum test, 1655
- Venereal warts, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
- Venipuncture
- median nerve and, 214b
 - for peripheral catheter placement, 214-215, 215f
 - vein and catheter selection in, 227-233
- Venlafaxine
- for pain management, 58
 - for Parkinson disease, 944
- Venodyne pneumatic compression system, 258f
- Veno-occlusive disease, 888-889
- Venous beading, 1414
- Venous distention, intravenous therapy-related, 230
- Venous drainage of kidney, 1466
- Venous insufficiency, 803-805, 804b
- Venous port, 219
- Venous pulses, 699, 699f
- Venous sampling, 1369
- Venous spasm, intravenous therapy-related, 228t-229t
- Venous stasis, 256
- Venous system, 691-692
- Venous thromboembolism, 799-803, 799f, 800b
- after hip surgery, 324, 325t
 - atrial fibrillation and, 722-727
 - fracture-related, 1147
 - impaired mobility and, 1017
 - in pancreatic cancer, 1329
 - postoperative assessment for, 288
 - preoperative assessment for, 256
 - pulmonary embolism and, 663
- Venous ulcer, 788b
- Venovenous rewarming in hypothermia, 149
- Ventilation assistance
- after burn injury, 525
 - in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 984
 - in heart failure, 750
 - in myasthenia gravis, 993, 993b
 - oral care during, 648b
- Ventilation assistance (*Continued*)
- postoperative
 - in coronary artery bypass graft, 849
 - in craniotomy, 1034
 - in head and neck surgery, 592
 - in respiratory acidosis, 207
 - in traumatic brain injury, 1027
 - Ventilation/perfusion mismatch, 670
 - Ventilator, 675-677, 677f
 - alarm systems of, 679-680, 680t
 - controls and settings of, 678-679
 - Ventilator dependence, 681, 681b
 - Ventilator-associated pneumonia, 647, 648b, 681
 - Ventilatory failure, 670, 670t
 - Ventolin; *See* Albuterol
 - Ventral hernia, 1243
 - Ventricular assist device, 754, 754f
 - Ventricular asystole, 730-731, 730f
 - Ventricular dysrhythmias, 728-731
 - premature ventricular complexes in, 728, 729f
 - ventricular asystole in, 730-731, 730f
 - ventricular fibrillation in, 729-730, 730f
 - ventricular tachycardia in, 728-729, 729b, 729f
 - Ventricular fibrillation, 729-730, 730f
 - Ventricular gallop, 700
 - Ventricular remodeling, 747, 830-831
 - Ventricular tachycardia, 728-729, 729b, 729f
 - Ventriculomyectomy, 768
 - Ventriculostomy, 1035
 - Venturi mask, 567, 568f, 568t
 - VePesid; *See* Etoposide
 - Verapamil, 723b-726b, 732-733, 780, 781b-782b
 - Versed; *See* Midazolam
 - Vertebral artery, 908f
 - Vertebral column
 - osteoporosis and, 1123f
 - Paget's disease of bone and, 1129
 - scoliosis and, 1139-1140
 - Vertebral fracture, 1162, 1163b
 - Vertebral line, 552f
 - Vertebrobasilar artery stroke, 1009b
 - Vertebroplasty, 1136, 1162, 1163b
 - Vertical laryngectomy, 591t
 - Vertigo, 1082, 1095
 - Dix-Hallpike test for, 1086
 - history of, 1080-1081
 - in M[g]v[en]i[ac]e[re]'s disease, 1096
 - in multiple sclerosis, 979
 - Very-low-calorie diet, 1351-1352
 - Very-low-density lipoproteins, 702b
 - Vesicants, 216
 - extravasation of, 417, 417f
 - Vesicle, 460f-461f, 1657
 - Vesicoureteral reflux, 1490t
 - Vesicular breath sounds, 554t
 - Vestibule
 - of inner ear, 1079
 - vaginal, 1576
 - Vestibulocochlear nerve, 912t, 1078f
 - Viagra; *See* Sildenafil
 - Vibramycin; *See* Doxycycline
 - Vibration technique in chest physiotherapy, 625f
 - Victoza; *See* Liraglutide
 - Vidarabine
 - for eye inflammation and infection, 1054b
 - for viral encephalitis, 941
 - Vidaza; *See* Azacitidine
 - Videx; *See* Didanosine
 - Vinblastine, 415t-416t
 - Vincristine, 415t-416t, 1033
 - Vinorelbine, 415t-416t
 - Vira-A; *See* Vidarabine
 - Viracept; *See* Nelfinavir
 - Viral carcinogenesis, 404, 404t

- Viral infection**
in common cold, 641
in condylomata acuminata, 1658, 1659b, 1659f
cultures for, 467-468
cutaneous, 491b, 492, 492f
in encephalitis, 940-941
in food poisoning, 1270-1272, 1270t
in genital herpes, 1656-1657, 1657b
in hepatitis, 1305-1307
cancers associated with, 404t
classification and etiologies of, 1305-1306, 1305t
community-based care in, 1309, 1309b
complications of, 1306
history in, 1307
incidence and prevalence of, 1306
laboratory assessment in, 1308
liver biopsy in, 1308
physical assessment in, 1307
prevention in health care workers, 1307b
prevention of, 1307b
psychosocial assessment in, 1308
vaccination for, 1306-1307
human immunodeficiency virus, 358-380
antibody tests in, 368-369
classification of, 360, 360t
community-based care in, 378-380
complementary and alternative medicine for, 375
confusion in, 377-378
diarrhea in, 376-377
drug therapy for, 370-375, 371b-374b
endocrine complications in, 367, 368t
genetic considerations in, 360b
health care resources for, 380
history in, 365
HIV genotype test in, 369b
home care management in, 378-379, 379b
immune enhancement for, 375
incidence and prevalence of, 361, 361b, 361f
infection prevention in, 370-375, 370b-371b
infectious process in, 358-361, 358f-359f
key features of, 365b
lymphocyte counts in, 368
malignancies in, 367, 367f
nutrition and, 376
older adult and, 361b, 375b
opportunistic infections in, 365-367, 366f
oxygenation enhancement in, 375-376
pain management in, 376
parenteral transmission of, 362-363
perinatal transmission of, 363
postexposure prophylaxis to, 363b-364b
progression of, 361
psychosocial assessment in, 368
psychosocial preparation in, 379-380
self-esteem and, 378
sexual transmission of, 362, 362b
skin integrity and, 377
social contact and, 378
teaching for self-management in, 379, 379b
testing for, 363-364, 364b
transmission and health care workers, 363, 364b
viral load testing in, 369
women and, 361b
in influenza
pandemic, 645-647
seasonal, 645
- Viral infection (Continued)**
in meningitis, 937-940, 938b-939b
laboratory assessment in, 939, 939t
neurologic status in, 939b
in osteomyelitis, 1131
in pharyngitis, 642-644
in severe acute respiratory syndrome, 652-653, 653b
in tonsillitis, 644
Viral load testing in HIV infection, 369
Viramune; *See* Nevirapine
Virazole; *See* Ribavirin
Virchow's triad, 799
Viread; *See* Tenofovir
Viremia, 362
Virilization, 1373
Viropic; *See* Trifluridine
Virtual colonoscopy, 1189-1190
Virulence, 434-435
VISA; *See* Vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus*
Visceral pain, 43t
Visceral pericardium, 688f
Visceral proteins, 1342
Visceralostomy, 1067
Vision, 1040, 1044-1045
Vision assessment, 1039-1051
in facial trauma, 583
fluorescein angiography in, 1050
imaging assessment in, 1048
inspection of eyes in, 1046
laboratory assessment in, 1048
ophthalmoscopy in, 1049, 1049f, 1050t
patient history in, 1045-1046, 1045b, 1045t
psychosocial assessment in, 1048
slit-lamp examination in, 1048, 1049f
tonometry in, 1049, 1049f
vision testing in, 1046-1048, 1047f-1048f
Vision loss, 1073-1075, 1074b
in brain abscess, 1037
in cataracts, 1059f, 1060
in glaucoma, 1063
older adult and, 1065b
in retinitis pigmentosa, 1069-1070
in stroke, 1011, 1012f
in traumatic brain injury, 1025
Vision problems, 1052-1076
application of eye patch in, 1055b
cataract in, 1059-1062
home care management in, 1061, 1062b, 1062f
pathophysiology of, 1059-1060, 1059f, 1060t
physical assessment in, 1060, 1060f
surgery for, 1060-1061, 1061f
conjunctival hemorrhage in, 1056
conjunctivitis in, 1056
corneal disorders in, 1057-1059
activities increasing intraocular pressure and, 1059t
corneal abrasion, ulceration, and infection in, 1057
keratoconus and corneal opacities in, 1057-1059, 1057f-1058f
in diabetes mellitus, 1414-1415, 1414f, 1415b, 1449-1450
drug therapy for, 1054b
eyelid disorders in, 1052-1056
blepharitis in, 1053
chalazion in, 1055-1056
entropion and ectropion in, 1053
hordeolum in, 1053-1054
instillation of ophthalmic ointment for, 1053b, 1053f
glaucoma in, 1062-1067, 1063f-1064f
drug therapy for, 1065, 1066b-1067b, 1067f
pathophysiology of, 1062-1067, 1063t
physical assessment in, 1063
in Graves' disease, 1395, 1395f, 1400
in hypopituitarism, 1372
- Vision problems (Continued)**
keratoconjunctivitis sicca in, 1056
ocular compress for, 1055b
ocular melanoma in, 1072-1073, 1073b
ocular trauma in, 1071-1072
contusion in, 1071
foreign bodies in, 1071, 1072b
hyphema in, 1071
lacerations in, 1071-1072
penetrating injuries in, 1072
older adult and, 1065b
reduced vision in, 1073-1075, 1074b
refractive errors in, 1070-1071
retinal disorders in, 1068-1070
macular degeneration in, 1068-1069
retinal holes, tears, and detachments in, 1069
retinitis pigmentosa in, 1069-1070, 1070b
trachoma in, 1056
uveitis in, 1068
vitreous hemorrhage in, 1067-1068
Vision testing, 1046-1048, 1047f-1048f
Visual acuity tests, 1046, 1047f
Visual Analog Dyspnea Scale, 616, 616f
Visual analog scale, 48, 48f
Visual evoked potentials, 923
Visual field testing, 1047
Vital signs
after craniotomy, 1034b
after extubation in mechanical ventilation, 682
focused assessment after discharge from PACU and, 288, 288b
in traumatic brain injury, 1025
Vitamin B₆, 1511
Vitamin B₁₂, 1221, 1225
Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency
after gastric surgery, 1237
anemia in, 870t, 877-878, 877f
in gastric cancer, 1235
malabsorption syndrome and, 1262
presbycusis and, 1098
vegan diet and, 1336
Vitamin D
activation in kidney, 1471, 1471t
in epidermis, 453
osteoporosis and, 1121
parathyroid function and, 1407b
role in bone growth and metabolism, 1108
skin changes resulting from burn and, 512
Vitamin D deficiency
after gastric surgery, 1237
in chronic kidney disease, 1548-1549, 1548f
in hypoparathyroidism, 1408
osteomalacia and, 1127, 1127t
Vitamin D supplementation
for osteomalacia, 1128
for osteoporosis, 1125, 1126b
during steroid therapy, 340
Vitamin K
in production of blood clotting factors, 858, 859f
for warfarin reversal, 667, 801b
Vitamin(s)
skin role in synthesis of, 454t
supplementation of
in chronic kidney disease, 1556
in cirrhosis, 1300
in gastritis and peptic ulcer disease, 1225t
in malnutrition, 1343
Vitiligo, 1367
Vitreotomy, 1068
Vitreous body, 1040f-1041f, 1041
Vitreous hemorrhage, 1067-1068
Vitreous humor, 1041
Vocal cord, 544f-545f
Vocal cord nodules and polyps, 585-586, 586f, 587b
- Vocal cord paralysis, 585**
Vocal fremitus, 553
Vocal resonance, 554-555
Vocational assessment in rehabilitation, 95
Vocational counselor, 92
Voice box, 545
Voice sounds, 554-555
Voice test for hearing, 1084
Voided urine specimen, 1479t
Voiding, 1472
Voiding cystourethrography, 1483t, 1485
in bladder trauma, 1516
in urinary incontinence, 1500
Volkman's canal, 1107
Volkman's contracture, 1146
Voltaren; *See* Diclofenac
Volume expanders, 1535
Volume-cycled ventilator, 677
Voluntary active euthanasia, 119t
Voltrauma, 680-681
Volvulus, 1208, 1254, 1254f
Vomiting
in acute glomerulonephritis, 1528
in black widow spider bite, 144
in botulism, 1290
chemotherapy-related, 421-422, 421b-423b
in chronic kidney disease, 1549
in coral snake envenomation, 142
in enteral nutrition, 1346
in esophageal cancer, 1212
in food poisoning, 1289
in gastric cancer, 1235
in heat exhaustion, 137
in lung cancer, 632
management at end of life, 114-115
opioid-induced, 53, 53t
in peptic ulcer disease, 1228
in pit viper envenomation, 140
postoperative, 290-291
in renal colic, 1508
in strangulated hernia, 1243
in vertigo, 1095
Von Hippel-Landau disease, 1390
Vorinostat, 415t-416t, 418t
Votrient; *See* Pazopanib
VP-16; *See* Etoposide
VRE; *See* Vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus*
VRSA; *See* Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
VTE; *See* Venous thromboembolism
VUG; *See* Voiding cystourethrography
Vulva, 1576
Bartholin cyst and, 1620-1621
Vulvovaginitis, 1613-1614, 1614b
Vumon; *See* Teniposide
- W**
Waist circumference, 1349
Waist-to-hip ratio, 1350
Walker, 98b, 98f, 1157
Walking meditation, 11
Walking with crutches, 1157, 1158f
Walking wounded, 158
Wandering in Alzheimer's disease, 952, 953b
Warfarin
after total hip arthroplasty, 327
for atrial fibrillation, 727
foods and drugs interfering with, 803b
genetic tests before use of, 665b
interaction with sulfonylurea agents, 1428t
for pulmonary embolism, 665-667, 666b
for valvular heart disease, 761
for venous thromboembolism, 801-802
Warm antibody anemia, 876
Washed red blood cells, 897t
Wasp sting, 145-146

- Waste management after emergency event, 163
- Watch test for hearing, 1084
- Water
- homeostasis and, 166
 - reabsorption in nephron, 1470, 1470f
 - renal regulation of, 172
 - safety after emergency event, 163
- Water brash, 1205
- WCD; *See* Wearable cardioverter/defibrillator
- Weakness, 1243
- in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 983
 - in black widow spider bite, 144
 - in fracture, 1146
 - in heart failure, 754-755
 - in heat exhaustion, 137
 - in high altitude pulmonary edema, 151
 - in hypercalcemia, 191
 - in hypernatremia, 183
 - in hypokalemia, 184
 - in hypovolemic shock, 817
 - in influenza, 645
 - in leukemia, 881
 - management in end-of-life care, 113
 - mechanical ventilation-related, 681
 - musculoskeletal assessment in, 1111
 - in osteomalacia, 1128
 - in peripheral nerve trauma, 998
 - in pit viper envenomation, 140
 - in strangulated hernia, 1243
- Weaning
- from mechanical ventilation, 678, 681, 681b, 682t
 - from tracheostomy tube, 577-578
- Weapons of mass destruction, 156
- Wearable cardioverter/defibrillator, 739
- Wearing off phenomenon, 943-944
- Weber tuning fork test, 1084
- Wedge resection in lung cancer, 634
- Weight control
- for chronic back pain, 962
 - for obstructive sleep apnea, 585
 - for osteoarthritis, 323
- Weight gain
- in fluid overload, 179
 - in rehabilitation setting, 97
- Weight loss
- after burn injury, 536
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 621
 - in Crohn's disease, 1281
 - in esophageal cancer, 1213
 - in gastric cancer, 1235
 - in leukemia, 882
 - in lung cancer, 632
 - in pulmonary empyema, 659
 - reduced diabetes risk and, 1417
 - in rheumatoid arthritis, 334-335
- Wellness, lifestyles and practices for, 16b
- Wernicke's aphasia, 1018
- Wernicke's area, 907
- West Nile virus, 940, 941b
- Western blot
- for genital herpes, 1657
 - for human immunodeficiency virus, 369
- Wet age-related macular degeneration, 1068
- Wet-to-damp saline-moistened gauze dressing, 483t
- Wheal, 460f-461f
- Wheal-and-flare skin reaction, 145
- Wheelchair, repositioning patient in, 100
- Wheelchair to chair or bed transfer, 97
- Wheezing, 555t
- in asthma, 603
 - in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, 616
 - in left-sided heart failure, 749
 - in lung cancer, 632
 - in pneumonia, 650
- Whipple procedure
- in pancreatic cancer, 1331, 1331f
 - in Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1234
- Whipple's disease, 1263
- White blood cell, 305, 857, 857t
- differentiation and maturation of, 305f
 - leukemia and, 880-892
 - conserving energy in, 890, 890b
 - drug therapy for, 883-884
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 880-881
 - health care resources for, 890-891
 - hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for; *See also* Stem cell transplantation, 885-889
 - history in, 881-882
 - home care management in, 890, 891b
 - imaging assessment in, 883
 - incidence and prevalence of, 881
 - infection prevention in, 883-889, 883b
 - injury prevention in, 889
 - laboratory assessment in, 882-883, 882f
 - older adult and, 405b
 - pathophysiology of, 880-892
 - physical assessment, 882, 882b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 882
 - psychosocial preparation for, 891
 - reduced immunity and blood-producing functions in, 409
 - risk for bleeding in, 892b
 - teaching for self-management in, 890-891, 891b
 - in urine, 1478b
- White blood cell count, 865b
- in acute pancreatitis, 1323-1324
 - in appendicitis, 1267
 - in brain abscess, 1037
 - in burn, 524
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 703
 - in cirrhosis, 1298-1299
 - in cystitis, 1493
 - in diverticular disease, 1285
 - in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1664
 - in pericarditis, 765
 - perioperative assessment of, 249b-250b
 - in peritonitis, 1269
 - in respiratory assessment, 557b
 - in ulcerative colitis, 1274
 - in urolithiasis, 1509
- White blood cell count with differentiation, 307t
- in respiratory assessment, 557b
 - for suspected infection, 445
- White blood cell transfusion, 897t, 900
- White matter, 906, 909, 909f
- WHO; *See* World Health Organization
- Whole-pancreas transplantation, 1443-1444
- Wide excision surgery in skin cancer, 504
- Wild-type gene sequence, 71
- Williams position for acute low back pain, 962
- Wind chill, 148
- Windpipe, 546
- Winged needle, 214-215
- Winpred; *See* Prednisone
- Wireless network connection in smart pump, 223
- Withdrawal from opioids, 44-45
- Withdrawing or withholding life-sustaining therapy, 119, 119t
- Women's health considerations
- in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 361b
 - in autoimmune disorders, 393b
 - in Bartholin cyst, 1620-1621
 - in benign neoplasms, 1617-1621
- Women's health considerations
- (Continued)
- in breast cancer, 1591-1597
 - adjuvant therapy for, 1604-1607
 - BRCA1 and BRCA2 gene mutations in, 407, 1579, 1592b
 - breast biopsy in, 1599
 - breast mass assessment and, 1598b
 - breast reconstruction and, 1603-1604, 1604t, 1605b
 - breast self-awareness/self examination and, 1594-1595, 1595f
 - changes in cognitive function in, 424
 - chemotherapy for, 1605-1606, 1606b, 1606t
 - clinical breast examination and, 1595-1597, 1596f
 - complementary and alternative medicine for, 1600, 1600b, 1600t
 - coping strategies in, 1599, 1599b
 - cultural considerations in, 1594b, 1597b
 - etiology and genetic risk in, 1592-1593, 1592b, 1593t
 - health care resources for, 1609
 - health promotion and maintenance and, 1593-1597
 - history in, 1597-1598
 - home care management in, 1607, 1607b-1608b
 - hormonal therapy for, 1606-1607
 - imaging assessment in, 1598-1599
 - incidence and prevalence of, 1593
 - invasive, 1592, 1592f
 - laboratory assessment in, 1598
 - mammography and, 1594
 - in men, 1592
 - metastasis in, 1599-1607
 - noninvasive, 1591-1592
 - options for high-risk women, 1597
 - pathophysiology of, 1591-1597
 - physical assessment in, 1598
 - postmastectomy exercises and, 1603b
 - psychosocial assessment in, 1598
 - psychosocial support in, 1608-1609
 - radiation therapy for, 1605, 1605b
 - sites of metastasis in, 401t
 - soy intake and risk for, 1600b
 - stem cell transplantation for, 1607
 - surgical management of, 1600-1607, 1601f-1602f, 1602b
 - targeted therapy for, 1606
 - teaching for self-management in, 1607-1608, 1608b
 - in young women, 1592
 - in cardiovascular assessment, 693b, 695b
 - in cervical polyp, 1621
 - in dysfunctional uterine bleeding, 1613
 - in endometriosis, 1611-1612, 1612f
 - in gallstones, 1317b
 - in gonorrhea, 1659
 - in gynecologic cancers, 1621
 - brachytherapy for, 1623b
 - cervical cancer in, 1622t, 1624-1625, 1625b
 - endometrial cancer in, 1621, 1622t
 - ovarian cancer in, 1626-1627, 1626t
 - in heart disease, 829b
 - age and, 831b
 - atypical angina and, 834b
 - menopause and, 831b
 - in hematologic assessment, 861b
 - in osteoporosis, 188b
 - in ovarian cyst, 1617
 - in pelvic inflammatory disease, 1663, 1663f, 1664t
 - in pelvic organ prolapse, 1615-1617, 1616f
- Women's health considerations
- (Continued)
- in respiratory assessment, 548b
 - in sexually transmitted disease, 1653b
 - in sickle cell disease, 875b
 - in stroke, 1013b
 - in toxic shock syndrome, 1614-1615, 1615b
 - in urinary tract infection, 1494b
 - in uterine leiomyoma, 1617-1620, 1617f
 - in vulvovaginitis, 1613-1614, 1614b
- Wong-Baker FACES Pain Rating Scale, 48
- Wood's light examination, 468
- Workplace issues, cultural aspects of, 33-35
- Work-related musculoskeletal disorders, 95
- World Health Organization
- classification of lymphoma, 893
 - on perioperative activities for patient safety, 241f
- Wound care
- in burn injury, 531-533
 - in diabetes mellitus, 1448-1449
 - postoperative
 - in abdominoperineal resection, 1251, 1251b
 - in colostomy, 1251, 1251b
 - in esophageal cancer, 1216, 1216b
 - in kidney transplantation, 1570
 - in laryngectomy, 592
 - in mastectomy, 1602b
 - in peritonitis, 1269
 - in testicular cancer, 1646
 - in pressure ulcer, 483-488, 483b, 483t, 486t
- Wound dressings, 531-532
- Wound healing, 291
- diet for, 299
 - impaired, 291, 291f-292f, 475t
 - phases of, 472-473, 473t, 474f
- Wound infection
- biofilm and, 441
 - emergency care of evisceration in, 296b
 - postoperative
 - in craniotomy, 1035
 - in esophageal surgery, 1216
 - in peripheral arterial disease surgery, 791
 - at surgical site, 281
 - in pressure ulcer, 482, 488
 - prevention of, 294-297, 295f
- Wrapping of amputation stump, 1167, 1167f
- Wrinkles, 456f
- Wrist
- arthroplasty of, 331
 - carpal tunnel syndrome and, 1170-1172
 - fracture of, 1159
 - osteoporotic fracture of, 1122
 - positioning to prevent contractures, 537b
- Wrist drop, 281b
- X**
- X chromosome, 74
 - Xalatan; *See* Latanoprost
 - Xal-Ease adaptive device for self-administering of eyedrops, 1062f
 - Xanax; *See* Alprazolam
 - Xanthines, 610
 - Xeloda; *See* Capecitabine
 - Xenazine; *See* Tetrabenazine
 - Xenical; *See* Orlistat
 - Xenograft for burn wound, 532
 - Xenon computed tomography, 912t, 921
 - Xerosis, 457f, 462, 471, 471b
 - Xerostomia
 - after oral cancer surgery, 1199
 - in post-irradiation sialadenitis, 1201

- Xerostomia (*Continued*)
 radiation therapy-related, 414, 591
 in Sj[um]ogren's syndrome, 335, 393
- Xibrom; *See* Bromfenac
- Xifaxan; *See* Rifaximin
- Xiphoid process, 552f
- Xolair; *See* Omalizumab
- Xopenex; *See* Levalbuterol
- Xylocaine; *See* Lidocaine
- Xylose absorption, 1186b
- Y**
- Y chromosome, 74
- Yeast infection, 491b, 493
 in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome, 366, 366f
 in cystitis, 1491
 oral, 1193, 1193b, 1194f
 in pyelonephritis, 1524
- Yeast infection (*Continued*)
 sexually-transmitted, 1666
 in stomatitis, 1193
- Yellow marrow, 1107
- Yersinia pestis*, 448t
- Yoga, 12, 12f
- Y-transfer set, 1565-1566
- Z**
- Z mutation, 613b
- Zafirlukast, 611
- Zagam; *See* Sparfloxacin
- Zanaflex; *See* Tizanidine
- Zanamivir
 for influenza, 645
 for pandemic influenza, 646
- Zanosar; *See* Streptozocin
- Zantac; *See* Ranitidine
- Zapex; *See* Oxazepam
- Zarontin; *See* Ethosuximide
- Zaroxolyn; *See* Metolazone
- Zeaxanthin, 1068
- Zebeta; *See* Bisoprolol
- Zegerid; *See* Omeprazole/sodium bicarbonate
- Zenapax; *See* Daclizumab
- Zenker's diverticula, 1217
- Zerit; *See* Stavudine
- Zestril; *See* Lisinopril
- Zetia; *See* Ezetimibe
- Ziagen; *See* Abacavir
- Ziconotide, 57-58, 965, 965b
- Zidovudine, 371, 372b-374b
- Zileuton
 for allergic rhinitis, 387
 for asthma, 611
- Zithromax; *See* Azithromycin
- Zofran; *See* Ondansetron
- Zoledronic acid, 1125, 1126b
 for bone cancer, 1135
 for Paget's disease of bone, 1130
- Zolinza; *See* Vorinostat
- Zolmitriptan, 930
- Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, 1233-1234
- Zolpidem tartrate, 944
- Zometa; *See* Zoledronic acid
- Zomig; *See* Zolmitriptan
- Zonegran; *See* Zonisemide
- Zonisemide, 934b
- Zostavax, 492
- Zovirax; *See* Acyclovir
- Z-track method in iron dextran administration, 877, 877b
- Zyflo; *See* Zileuton
- Zyloprim; *See* Allopurinol
- Zymar; *See* Gatifloxacin
- Zyvox; *See* Linezolid

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: MOBILITY, SENSATION, AND COGNITION

UNIT X PROBLEMS OF MOBILITY, SENSATION, AND COGNITION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

- 43 Assessment of the Nervous System, 905
- 44 Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Brain, 927
- 45 Care of Patients with Problems of the Central Nervous System: The Spinal Cord, 959
- 46 Care of Patients with Problems of the Peripheral Nervous System, 986
- 47 Care of Critically Ill Patients with Neurologic Problems, 1004

UNIT XI PROBLEMS OF SENSATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE SENSORY SYSTEM

- 48 Assessment of the Eye and Vision, 1039
- 49 Care of Patients with Eye and Vision Problems, 1052
- 50 Assessment of the Ear and Hearing, 1077
- 51 Care of Patients with Ear and Hearing Problems, 1088

UNIT XII PROBLEMS OF MOBILITY: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

- 52 Assessment of the Musculoskeletal System, 1106
- 53 Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal Problems, 1119
- 54 Care of Patients with Musculoskeletal Trauma, 1143

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: NUTRITION, METABOLISM, AND BOWEL ELIMINATION

UNIT XIII PROBLEMS OF DIGESTION, NUTRITION, AND ELIMINATION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE GASTROINTESTINAL SYSTEM

- 55 Assessment of the Gastrointestinal System, 1177
- 56 Care of Patients with Oral Cavity Problems, 1192
- 57 Care of Patients with Esophageal Problems, 1203
- 58 Care of Patients with Stomach Disorders, 1220
- 59 Care of Patients with Noninflammatory Intestinal Disorders, 1240
- 60 Care of Patients with Inflammatory Intestinal Disorders, 1266
- 61 Care of Patients with Liver Problems, 1293

- 62 Care of Patients with Problems of the Biliary System and Pancreas, 1315
- 63 Care of Patients with Malnutrition and Obesity, 1335

UNIT XIV PROBLEMS OF REGULATION AND METABOLISM: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

- 64 Assessment of the Endocrine System, 1358
- 65 Care of Patients with Pituitary and Adrenal Gland Problems, 1371
- 66 Care of Patients with Problems of the Thyroid and Parathyroid Glands, 1393
- 67 Care of Patients with Diabetes Mellitus, 1410

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: URINARY ELIMINATION

UNIT XV PROBLEMS OF EXCRETION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE RENAL/URINARY SYSTEM

- 68 Assessment of the Renal/Urinary System, 1465
- 69 Care of Patients with Urinary Problems, 1489
- 70 Care of Patients with Renal Disorders, 1518
- 71 Care of Patients with Acute Kidney Injury and Chronic Kidney Disease, 1537

CONCEPT OVERVIEW: SEXUALITY

UNIT XVI PROBLEMS OF REPRODUCTION: MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH PROBLEMS OF THE REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

- 72 Assessment of the Reproductive System, 1575
- 73 Care of Patients with Breast Disorders, 1588
- 74 Care of Patients with Gynecologic Problems, 1611
- 75 Care of Male Patients with Reproductive Problems, 1629
- 76 Care of Patients with Sexually Transmitted Disease, 1652

Bibliography, 1668

Appendixes

- A Do-Not-Use Abbreviations and Symbols, 1720
- B Communication Quick Reference for Spanish-Speaking Patients, 1723

Glossary, 1727

NCLEX® Examination Challenge Answer Key, AK-1

Illustration Credits, IC-1